

SPRINGER
REFERENCE

Marc D. Gellman *Editor*

Encyclopedia of Behavioral Medicine

Encyclopedia of Behavioral Medicine

Marc D. Gellman
Editor

Encyclopedia of Behavioral Medicine

With 109 Figures and 54 Tables

 Springer

Editor

Marc D. Gellman
Behavioral Medicine Research Center
Department of Psychology
University of Miami
Miami, FL, USA

ISBN 978-3-030-39901-6 ISBN 978-3-030-39903-0 (eBook)
ISBN 978-3-030-39902-3 (print and electronic bundle)
<https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-39903-0>

1st edition: © Springer Science+Business Media New York 2013

2nd edition: © Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed.

The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.

The publisher, the authors, and the editors are safe to assume that the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication. Neither the publisher nor the authors or the editors give a warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the material contained herein or for any errors or omissions that may have been made. The publisher remains neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG.
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Opening Quotations to the First Edition

Some of the unhealthful behaviors that make the greatest contribution to the current burden of disease are cigarette smoking, the abuse of alcohol and drugs, the overeating and underexercise that produce obesity, and Type A behavior. Unfortunately, these behaviors are stubbornly resistant to change and discouragingly subject to relapse. Thus, for behavioral scientists to promise to achieve too much too soon is to court disastrous disillusionment. But any contributions that behavioral scientists can make to reduce any of them will have highly significant implications for health.

Miller, N. E. (1983). Behavioral medicine: Symbiosis between laboratory and clinic. *Annual Reviews of Psychology*, 34, 1–31.

As behavioral medicine researchers, we must become more directly involved in translating gains in the science of clinical and community (disease) prevention to gains in public policy. We have an unprecedented window of opportunity given the growing recognition at all levels of health care and government that clinical and community interventions that promote and support health behaviors will be essential for success in reducing the nation's most prevalent and costly health problems and untenable health-care costs and disparities. This is the kind of opportunity that propelled the founders of our field 25 years ago, and we are better prepared than ever in our history to seize it.

Ockene, J. K., & Orleans, C. T. (2010). Behavioral medicine, prevention, and health reform: Linking evidence-based clinical and public health strategies for population health behavior change. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 1021–1035). New York: Springer.

The extent to which behavioral medicine can become a successful part of health care delivery systems will in large part depend upon investigators in the field being able to master clinical translational research, moving from efficacy to effectiveness with a high ratio of benefit to cost. . . . Because Behavioral Medicine has been constructed based on the understanding of relationships among behavior, psychosocial processes and sociocultural contexts, the field is well-positioned to take a leadership role in informing future health care policies. The field of Behavioral Medicine appears to have a bright, important future.

Schneiderman, N. (2012). A personal view of behavioral medicine's future. This volume.

Foreword to the First Edition

Early Developments in the Field of Behavioral Medicine

At the editors' request, this Foreword provides a personal account of the early development of behavioral medicine. With many colleagues, I was fortunate to play a role in bringing together behavioral and biomedical sciences in such a way that the synergism resulting from this interaction resulted in ideas, conceptualizations, models, and ultimately interventions that were truly different from preexisting approaches to health and illness. As noted in the Preface, the contents of this encyclopedia bear witness to the manner in which behavioral medicine has matured during the past 30 years, illustrating current activities in the domains of basic research, clinical investigation and practice, and public health policy.

In 1963, I was a psychology intern in the Department of Medical Psychology at the University of Oregon Medical School (now called the Oregon Health Sciences Center). Under the guidance of Joseph Matarazzo, chair of the department, the relationship between medicine and psychology was undergoing an historic realignment. Joe had a fascinating and exciting perspective on the nature of such relationships and on psychology's potential to make those relationships mutually rewarding for both patients and practitioners. I consider myself fortunate to have been "in the right place at the right time" when a request came from the Division of Cardiothoracic Surgery for psychological and psychiatric consultation on a problem that was mystifying the surgeons.

Under the leadership of Albert Starr, surgeons were performing groundbreaking procedures known as "open heart surgery" on patients who had been incapacitated, typically for many years, by their heart conditions. These surgeries offered them the opportunity to reclaim their earlier lives as active members of society, and, in some cases, to take on roles that were denied to them since childhood. Paradoxically, following surgery, many patients, rather than expressing their gratitude for the opportunity to be "made whole again," become angry, depressed, and suicidal. With colleagues from the departments of psychology and psychiatry, we begin a search for the "underlying mental illness" that must have been uncovered by the stress of the surgery. However, rather than discovering the presence of psychiatric illness, it was found that the *absence of psychological strength* was a key factor associated with the behavioral anomalies. This finding led to the development of a program to psychologically evaluate a candidate's readiness to undergo surgery and to better prepare psychologically vulnerable candidates for the recovery experience.

My dissertation on psychological adjustment following open heart surgery led me to the Division of Psychosomatic Medicine in the Department of

Psychiatry at the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, and to the application of psychodynamic theory to problems as diverse as diabetes, cardiovascular disease, cancer, and transgender surgery. In 1974, I accepted a position at the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI) of the National Institutes of Health (NIH) as chief of a unit that would eventually become the Behavioral Medicine Branch. The first year was *very* difficult since I was essentially the only behavioral scientist at NHLBI, and no one understood exactly what I was supposed to do and why I was there. However, I considered this to be a singular opportunity to bring the behavioral and biological sciences together, if only we could come up with a model, a theoretical framework that made sense to both groups and was scientifically viable.

Good problem-solving strategies break the overall problem down into more manageable pieces. The first was to address the lack of fundable studies in the NHLBI portfolio, which comprised a total of four regular research grants (R01s). The institute director commented to me that behavioral scientists must not be very good scientists as their applications were routinely disapproved or failed to make the funding payline. However, investigation revealed that the 25 “behavioral” applications submitted for the current round were scattered among 14 different study sections. Two issues became evident: (1) many of the behavioral applications were biologically weak and (2) the multidisciplinary expertise necessary to properly review applications that had both behavioral and biological endpoints was missing from the various study sections to which the applications had been assigned.

It became clear that two efforts were needed. First, it was necessary to make both biomedical and behavioral scientists aware of the need for a collaborative “biobehavioral” approach involving top-tier expertise in both areas when submitting grant applications. Second, it was necessary to campaign within the NIH for a study section that could provide relevant peer review for these biobehavioral applications. NIH agreed to convene an “ad hoc” temporary review group (the Behavioral Medicine Study Section) to assess whether there really was a need for such a group. Clearly there was, since 3 years later the study section was formally chartered as a standing study section.

Meanwhile, it became obvious that to develop and sustain meaningful research programs within the NIH would require organized, active, outside constituencies of scientists and clinicians who could provide peer review to all aspects of NIH program development and scientific leadership, i.e., partnerships with academic and professional societies that could provide advice and guidance were needed. With specific regard to biobehavioral research, the need for credible representation led us to Neal Miller, a behavioral scientist who was well known to, and highly respected by, the biomedically oriented Institute staff. Neal had performed landmark studies of learning and biofeedback. He was persuaded to serve as keynote speaker for the 1975 NHLBI Working Conference on Health Behavior. The 3 days of intensive deliberations between senior behavioral and biomedical scientists were summarized and published as a proceedings to serve as the public blueprint for the Institute’s future biobehavioral scientific agenda.

Along with the 1977 Yale Conference on Behavioral Medicine sponsored by NIH, this meeting set the stage for a 1978 organizational meeting hosted by

David Hamburg, President of the Institute of Medicine of the National Academy of Sciences. The deliberations of this two-day gathering of highly respected biomedical and behavioral scientists gave birth to two organizations, the Society of Behavioral Medicine (SBM) and the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research (ABMR). The founding leaderships of these organizations agreed to be complementary rather than competitive in mission and purpose, with SBM serving both scientific and professional interests of all persons interested in the field and ABMR being a small invitation-only group of distinguished senior scientists dedicated to identifying and promoting “gold standard” science in behavioral medicine. SBM created a newsletter that became the high-quality scientific and professional journal *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, and ABMR published an annual volume, *Perspectives on Behavioral Medicine*, summarizing scientific presentations at their annual retreat meeting.

During this early developmental period, a potentially divisive issue arose among the cadre of behavioral medicine pioneers: Exactly what is meant by the term “behavioral medicine?” Agreement on a common definition of the field was clearly necessary. One contingent defined behavioral medicine primarily as “behavior modification with medical patients,” while another contingent took a broader view which included the aforementioned aspect, but challenged both the behavioral and biomedical communities to join forces as “the interdisciplinary field concerned with the development and integration of behavioral and biomedical science knowledge and techniques relevant to the understanding of health and illness, and the application of this knowledge and these techniques to prevention, diagnosis, treatment and rehabilitation.” The latter became the agreed-upon definition by both behavioral medicine organizations and survived intact for a decade until the founders of the International Society of Behavioral Medicine proposed in 1990 that “psycho-social” be added to “behavioral and biomedical” to better align the definition with the charters of the emerging European national and regional behavioral medicine organizations.

The underlying concepts of behavioral medicine are perhaps thousands of years old. Prior to the emergence of behavioral medicine in the mid to late 1970s, the most recent effort to capture mind-body interactions can be attributed to those engaged in research and practice of psychosomatic medicine. Primarily psychodynamically oriented psychiatrists, they began to take note of behavioral medicine, initially identifying the fledgling organizations with the first definition mentioned previously (behavior modification with medical patients) whereas their interests were principally focused upon how the principles of psychoanalysis could be applied to the treatment of somatic disorders. However, as the second definition gained traction among the rank and file of the behavioral medicine community, psychosomatic medicine scientists and practitioners were challenged to either resist or join forces with the newcomers. Over the next decade, it became clear that, while psychoanalytic theory was intellectually provocative, it lacked the tools of modern day science to test its theories, and hence such theorizing remained in the realm of speculation. Behavioral medicine, on the other hand, took full advantage of the new monitoring instrumentation generated in large part by the U.S. space

program's need for ambulatory monitoring of physiological processes via telemetry. Such instrumentation facilitated exploration in the laboratory and in real life of how variation in biological processes may be stimulated by behavioral inputs, as well as how biological processes may impact behavior. Over the next 20 years, the membership of the American Psychosomatic Society and the organization's flagship journal, *Psychosomatic Medicine*, shifted their emphasis to one indistinguishable from that of organized behavioral medicine.

During this time, biobehavioral scientific programs were beginning to develop within several institutes at NIH, and funding for biobehavioral research increased exponentially, albeit unevenly. An inter-institute Committee on Health and Behavior was formed, with Matilda White Riley from the National Institute on Aging as its first chair. This committee served in an advisory capacity to the individual institute directors as well as to the NIH director, becoming the precursor for the Office of Behavioral and Social Science Research, Office of the Director, NIH, which is now under the leadership of Robert Kaplan, past president of both SBM and ABMR.

Although research funding was increasing, another challenge became evident: Where were the *training* resources to support new entrants to the field? Typically, research training programs in the biological and biomedical sciences relied on NIH support; it became obvious that such resources needed to be developed to establish a pipeline for "biobehavioral" scientists-in-training to receive both individual and institutional support. Donald Cannon, chief of the training branch at NHLBI, the unit responsible for supporting both types of awards at NHLBI became interested in the issue, and met with senior behavioral medicine researchers who could apply for such awards based on their research programs and the resources of their institutions. Over the next 3 years, 12 institutional awards were made to support cardiovascular behavioral medicine training for both behavioral/social scientists and biomedical/biological scientists, further solidifying the scientific base for the field.

These developments within the United States were mirrored in other parts of the Western world, with emerging organizations in several European countries grappling with the relevance of the behavioral medicine concept to their perspectives on health and illness. In the mid-1980s, discussions at an SBM annual conference with international attendees resulted in an agreement to form an International Society of Behavioral Medicine (ISBM) dedicated to supporting the emergence of new as well as existing national and regional behavioral medicine organizations. Funds to support several planning meetings were provided by the Rockefeller family and the Duke University Behavioral Medicine Research Center, and the first International Congress of Behavioral Medicine took place in 1990 in Uppsala, Sweden. The International Society (members are national or regional societies rather than individuals) represented seven national and regional societies at this first meeting. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine* became the scientific outlet for behavioral medicine studies of international relevance. By 2012, 26 (and counting. . .) national/regional societies from every continent formed the membership of ISBM.

Finally, one important element of the behavioral medicine paradigm deserves mention, as it is illustrative of the basic conceptual infrastructure of biomedical and behavioral *integration*. Often, biomedical and behavioral scientists pose the question of treatment efficacy in terms of which is more effective, pharmacologic or behavioral treatments. Rather than “either/or,” the behavioral medicine position is to determine how both treatments, perhaps in combination or in sequence, may provide a more effective treatment than either alone. Several examples come to mind, for example, smoking cessation, hypertension treatment, and cardiovascular disease prevention. Using a drug to lower blood pressure or cholesterol can provide a window of opportunity to use non-pharmacologic strategies to maintain lowered blood pressure/cholesterol, thereby reducing/eliminating reliance on the medication. Smoking cessation programs typically are more effective when both behavioral and pharmacologic treatments are combined to sustain cessation. Pharmacologic agents are typically more efficient at creating the desired effect but may have long-term side effects; behavioral treatments may be less efficient at creating change but may be more effective at sustaining conditions that have been achieved pharmacologically. The bottom line is straightforward: Rather than asking which approach is superior, use the strengths of both areas of science creatively to achieve a sustainable treatment effect that minimizes unwanted side effects and could not be attained by using either approach by itself.

In summary, I have tried to provide a few personal insights into the events leading to the formalization of behavioral medicine as a viable, vibrant perspective on the promotion of health and the prevention and treatment of disease and as the multidisciplinary inquiry into the underlying mechanisms involving brain, genes, behavior, and physiology/biology. I hope that this provides a useful historical “snapshot” as you immerse yourself in the impressive array of accomplishments chronicled in this encyclopedia.

The following Foreword by Neil Schneiderman presents a personal view of behavioral medicine’s future.

Stephen M. Weiss

Foreword to the First Edition

A Personal View of Behavioral Medicine's Future

The field of behavioral medicine appears to have a bright, important future. That is because contemporary scholarship in behavioral medicine has been constructed upon a solid foundation consisting of basic biological and behavioral science, population-based studies, and randomized clinical trials (RCT). The edifice that is emerging derives its strength and form from its interdisciplinary structure. It derives its reach and potential for future growth from its selection of key building materials and tools including the study of etiology, pathogenesis, diagnosis, treatment, rehabilitation, prevention, health promotion and community health. Because behavioral medicine approaches to prevention, treatment, and health promotion involve important relationships among behavior, psychosocial processes, and the sociocultural context, the roof of this structure will both consist of and benefit from the support of informed patients and populations, thoughtful educated health-care providers and involved communities.

Let us begin with population-based studies. During the second half of the twentieth century, epidemiological studies described important associations between traditional risk factors on the one hand and morbidity and mortality on the other, but elucidated relatively few of the variables mediating these associations. In my own area of cardiovascular disease (CVD) research, considerable attention has now focused upon obesity, inflammation, insulin resistance, oxidative stress, and hemostatic mechanisms as potential mediators. In this respect, traditional large-scale multicenter population-based studies have done a better job of describing the association between traditional risk factors (abnormal lipids, hypertension, smoking, diabetes, age) and CVD and their putative mediators than they have in describing the associations between biobehavioral, psychosocial, and sociocultural risk factors and CVD, and their mediators. However, this is now beginning to be addressed in such National Institute of Health (NIH) multicenter studies as the Hispanic Community Health Study/Study of Latinos (HCHS/SOL), Coronary Risk Development in Young Adults (CARDIA), and Multi-Ethnic Study of Atherosclerosis (MESA). Some of these studies are employing such preclinical measures of disease as carotid intimal-medial wall thickness and plaque by ultrasonography and coronary artery calcium by computed tomography to examine the progression of disease processes relating risk factors and CVD.

The examination of preclinical markers of disease as mediators between biobehavioral, psychosocial, and sociocultural risk factors on the one hand and chronic diseases on the other has been facilitated by the availability of commercial assays. These assays have permitted the study of biomarkers involved

in preclinical disease processes including adhesion molecules, pro-inflammatory cytokines, and oxidative stress in both animal and human studies. We can expect that many further advances will be made in the development of commercially available research methods and that they will increase our understanding of relationships among biobehavioral, psychosocial, and sociocultural risk factors and the pathophysiology of CVD, cancer, and other chronic diseases.

Although a wide range of epidemiological studies have called attention to potentially modifiable risk factors, and most chronic disease risk factors are modifiable (Yusuf et al. 2004), it should be recognized that chronic disease outcomes are the result of the joint effects of risk genes, the environment, and behavior upon these risk factors. One can therefore expect that on the basis of genomic analyses, future studies will begin to identify the extent to which particular individuals are vulnerable to specific risk factors and diseases and may be candidates for targeted behavioral as well as pharmacological interventions. Thus, in the coming era of personalized or tailored medicine, we may expect that behavioral medicine research will play an important role both in understanding the antecedents of disease that interact with genomic predispositions and in selecting appropriate treatment interventions.

The future for behavioral medicine science playing an essential role in population-based observational studies appears to be inevitable. This will occur because both the fields of behavioral medicine and epidemiology have expanded their horizons based upon important scientific findings. Early epidemiological studies focused upon hygiene and infectious diseases. By the middle of the twentieth century, epidemiological studies were examining the prevalence of multiple risk factors (e.g., smoking, dyslipidemia, hypertension) and disease outcomes (e.g., coronary heart disease [CHD], stroke, cancers). However, more recent multicenter observational studies have increasingly identified behavioral, psychosocial, and sociocultural variables as potential risk factors for chronic diseases. Thus, future multicenter observational studies will likely include demographic (e.g., racial/ethnic background, sex, socioeconomic status, neighborhood environments), psychosocial (e.g., temperament and personality, marital and work stressors, social support), lifestyle (e.g., medication adherence, diet, sleep, physical activity, smoking), biomarkers (e.g., immune, inflammatory, hemostatic, imaging), and genomic factors that influence disease outcomes. An important trend that is likely to increase in the future is the development of consortia of population-based studies (e.g., Population of Architecture using Genomics and Epidemiology: PAGE) whose purpose is to investigate mature genetic variants associated with complex diseases in large diverse populations. Such consortium studies are each beginning to include well over 100,000 participants. Perhaps most importantly the constituent studies and the consortia will be able to follow participants over the course of many years, providing important incidence data that will allow us to examine the specific causal variables influencing the course of disease. This represents an important opportunity for behavioral medicine scientists.

Traditional observational studies have often reported findings using odds ratios, which provide estimates (with confidence interval) for the relationship between binary variables. Such studies have also permitted assessment of the

effects of other variables on specific relationships using regression analyses. More recently, scientific interest in understanding the role of potential mediators of relationship between risk factors and disease outcomes has increasingly led to the use of analytic techniques such as structural equation modeling including path analysis, which until now have mostly been used in the social sciences. We can expect that a dramatic improvement in our understanding of the mediators between risk factors and disease outcomes will occur in the coming years.

The completion of the Human Genome Project in 2003 led to an increased interest in gene-environment interactions within the behavioral medicine research community. Such interactions occur when genetic factors affect measured phenotypes differentially, for example, when men with the E4 allele of the apolipoprotein E gene (APOE) were shown to have an increased smoking related risk for CHD events (Humphries et al. 2001). Other studies have shown that the interaction of the alpha 2 β -adrenergic receptor polymorphism with job strain is related to elevated blood pressure (Ohlin et al. 2007), and several other studies have related gene polymorphisms with cardiovascular reactivity to mental challenge. Most behavioral studies that have examined gene-environment interactions have been carried out on relatively small samples, but it appears inevitable that a large number of high-quality, well-powered, gene-environment studies of direct relevance to behavioral medicine will be initiated during the next few years.

In addition to the structural genomics exemplified in gene-environment interaction studies, functional genomic studies are also likely to become of increasing interest to behavioral medicine investigators. Briefly, functional genomics focuses on the basics of protein synthesis, which is how genes are “switched on” to provide messenger RNA (mRNA). Francis Crick, who along with James Watson discovered the structure of the DNA molecule, originally thought that each gene, consisting of a particular DNA sequence, codes for one specific mRNA molecule that in turn codes for a specific protein (Crick 1970). Subsequently, it became evident that after being transcribed, most mRNA molecules undergo an editing process with some segments being spliced out. In this way, a gene can lead to more than one type of mRNA molecule and consequently more than one type of protein. Thus human cells, which each contain about 25,000 genes, are able to synthesize more than 100,000 different proteins.

Epigenetics refers to the altering of gene function without changes in the DNA sequence. This can occur either by methylation of the DNA itself or by remodeling of the chromatin structure in which the DNA is packaged. Because of these processes, in utero exposure to nutrition or social factors can cause permanent modification of gene expression patterns that may lead to increased risk of mental disorders, diabetes, cancer, or cardiovascular diseases (Jirtle and Skinner 2007). As an example of how social exposure in early life can have long-duration epigenetic and phenotypic influences, Meaney and Szyf (2005) showed that neonatal rodents who received high levels of postpartum nurturing revealed diminished cortisol responses to stressful experiences when they reached adulthood. Such studies are providing a strong basis for future epigenetic behavioral medicine research.

The important advances made by observational and mechanistic studies relevant to behavioral medicine research are paralleled by a few RCT that have provided evidence that behavioral interventions aimed at modifying lifestyle or psychosocial variables can help prevent morbidity and/or mortality in high-risk populations. Thus, for example, the Diabetes Prevention Program trial (Knowler et al. 2002) in the United States and the Finnish Diabetes Prevention Trial (Tuomilehto et al. 2001) each observed that lifestyle interventions targeting weight loss and an increase in physical activity can reduce the incidence of diabetes in prediabetic patients. Based upon the success of these trials, the NIH has sponsored Look AHEAD (Action for Health in Diabetes), an RCT that is scheduled to last for 11.5 years. This trial is specifically examining whether an intensive lifestyle intervention similar to that used in the Diabetes Prevention Program can prevent major CVD events in obese participants with type 2 diabetes. Whereas the diabetes prevention projects and the Look AHEAD trial are essential for establishing that lifestyle interventions can prevent type 2 diabetes and reduce CVD risk in diabetic patients, subsequent investigation will be needed for us to learn how such interventions can be applied to clinical practice.

Although psychosocial-behavioral RCT conducted upon patients following major adverse coronary events (e.g., myocardial infarction) have yielded both positive and null results, the three major trials that have reported positive results share important similarities that differentiate them from the studies reporting null results (Friedman et al. 1986; Gulliksson et al. 2011; Orth-Gomér et al. 2009). Thus, the participants in the three major RCT reporting positive results all received group-based cognitive behavior therapy that included, in addition to cognitive behavior therapy, relaxation training and attention to lifestyle problems. The interventions all included up to 20 sessions over a year or more and used therapists specifically trained to use behavior change techniques in order to conduct behavioral interventions with cardiac patients. Treatment began at least several months after the CHD event and patients were followed up for an average of 4.5–7.8 years. Although the trials yielding positive results each studied between 237 and 862 participants, the size of each study was insufficient to permit assessment of the efficacy of specific intervention components, the role of potential biological mediators or the applicability of the intervention to populations differing in terms of important demographic characteristics. Thus there is still a need to replicate and amplify the results of the previously successful trials in rigorous, large-scale, multicenter RCT that can identify the demographic, psychosocial, and lifestyle variables that influence specific behavioral and biological determinants of risk.

In the future, evidence-based medicine will play an ever-increasing role in clinical health care. The extent to which behavioral medicine can become a successful part of health-care delivery systems will in large part depend upon investigators in the field being able to master clinical translational research, moving from efficacy to effectiveness with a high ratio of benefit to cost. Thus, for example, the Diabetes Prevention Program (Knowler et al. 2002) showed that in high-risk patients, a lifestyle intervention reduced the incidence of diabetes significantly better than a pharmacological intervention and that

both interventions were superior to a placebo condition. However, the lifestyle intervention was labor intensive and required considerable effort to get participants to maintain improvement. In contrast, maintaining adherence to taking a pill once daily may pose a less daunting task. However, recent advances in web-based intervention research may level the playing field. Thus, automatic e-mail reminders, phone or e-mail based consultations with a health-care professional, interaction with web-based programs, and the instant availability of important specially tailored information on an interactive website can all help patient adherence. To the extent that weight loss programs that involve diet and exercise do more than only decrease the risk of type 2 diabetes but also improve other aspects of CVD risk, such programs are particularly valuable in terms of health promotion.

The RCT that decreased morbidity or mortality rate in CHD patients each required 20 or more group-based sessions (Friedman et al. 1986; Gulliksson et al. 2011; Orth-Gomér et al. 2009). When amortized over the length of the 4.5–7.8 year follow-up period, however, the cost compares favorably with that of most drugs also used in treatment. Participating in 20 or more sessions also poses a personal cost and some hardship for many people. However, the implementation of interactive web-based group sessions using both sound and video could obviate the need for most face-to-face meetings and allow interpersonal interactions to continue over long periods of time. It therefore seems apparent that the rapid advances taking place in science and practice during the internet era will prove helpful in making behavioral medicine an important ingredient of future health-care systems.

Future health-care systems could be strengthened by well-informed patients and by health-care providers who are grounded in behavioral medicine concepts as well as clinical medicine. Attention to the human and health-influencing aspects of neighborhoods (i.e., the built environment) are also important and dependent on informed public policy. Because Behavioral Medicine has been constructed based on the understanding of relationships among behavior, psychosocial processes, and sociocultural contexts, the field is well positioned to take a leadership role in informing future health-care policies. The field of behavioral medicine appears to have a bright, important future.

Neil Schneiderman

References

- Crick, F. (1970). Central dogma of molecular biology. *Nature*, 227, 561–563. PMID: 4913914.
- Friedman, M., Thoresen, C. E., Gill, J. J., Ulmer, D., Powell, L. H., & Price, V. A., et al. (1986). Alteration of type A behavior and its effect on cardiac recurrences in post myocardial infarction patients: Summary results of the recurrent coronary prevention project. *American Heart Journal*, 112, 653–655. PMID: 3766365.

- Gulliksson, M., Burell, G., Vessby, B., Lundin, L., Toss, H., & Svärdsudd, K. (2011). Randomized controlled trial of cognitive behavioral therapy vs standard treatment to prevent recurrent cardiovascular events in patients with coronary heart disease: Secondary prevention in Uppsala primary health care project (SUPRIM). *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 171, 134–140. PMID: 21263103.
- Humphries, S. E., Talmud, P. J., Hawe, E., Bolla, M., Day, I. N., Miller, G. J. (2001). Apolipoprotein E4 and coronary heart disease in middle-aged men who smoke: A prospective study. *Lancet*, 385, 115–119. PMID: 11463413.
- Jirtle, R. L., & Skinner, M. K. (2007). Environmental epigenomics and disease susceptibility. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 8, 253–262. PMID: 17363974.
- Knowler, W. C., Barrett-Connor, E., Fowler, S. E., Hamman, R. F., Lachin, J. M., et al., & Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group. (2002). Reduction in the incidence of type 2 diabetes with lifestyle intervention or metformin. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 346, 393–403. PMID: 11832527.
- Meaney, M. J., & Szyf, M. (2005). Environmental programming of stress responses through DNA methylation life at the interface between a dynamic environment and a fixed genome. *Dialogues in Clinical Neuroscience*, 7, 103–123. PMID: 16262207.
- Ohlin, S. E., Berglund, G., Nilsson, P., & Melander, O. (2007). Job strain, decision latitude and alpha 2 β -adrenergic receptor polymorphisms significantly interact and associate with high blood pressure in men. *Journal of Hypertension*, 25, 1613–1619. PMID: 18622236.
- Orth-Gomér, K., Schneiderman, N., Wang, H., Walldin, C., Bloom, M., & Jernberg, T. (2009). Stress reduction prolongs life in women with coronary disease: The Stockholm Women's Intervention Trial for Coronary Heart Disease (SWITCHD). *Circulation: Cardiovascular Quality and Outcomes*, 2, 25–32. PMID: 20031809.
- Tuomilehto, J., Lindström, J., Eriksson, J. G., Valle, T. T., Hämäläinen, H., et al., & Finnish Diabetes Prevention Study Group. (2001). Prevention of type 2 diabetes mellitus by changes in lifestyle among subjects with impaired glucose tolerance. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 344, 1343–1350. PMID: 11333990.
- Yusuf, S., Hawken, S., Ounpuu, S., Dans, T., Avezum, A., Lanus, F., & McQueen, M., et al. (2004). Effect of potentially modifiable risk factors associated with myocardial infarction in 52 countries: The INTERHEART study: case-control study. *Lancet*, 364, 937–952. PMID: 15364185.

Preface to the Second Edition

Since its initial publication in 2013, the Encyclopedia of Behavioral Medicine has been well utilized by professionals and students wishing to learn more about the interdisciplinary field of behavioral medicine. As noted in the Preface to that edition of the Encyclopedia, it provided a “snapshot in time” of its subject. It was also noted that the Editors hoped subsequent editions would provide additional snapshots in due course. Accordingly, I am very pleased that this second edition has now been published. As for the first edition, entries fall into three categories or domains that represent issues of interest: basic sciences, clinical investigation, and public health and public policy.

The continued growth of the field is witnessed by the increasing membership in, and attendance at the annual scientific meetings of, its primary professional organizations. A further example of its progression and evolution is the founding, in 2018, of the Behavioral Medicine Research Council, an autonomous joint committee of the Society for Health Psychology, the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research, the American Psychosomatic Society, and the Society of Behavioral Medicine (Freedland 2019). With this rapid growth and expansion, many new terms have been established in the field, be they in public health, clinical medicine, or the physical and social sciences. Additionally, considerable progress has been made in existing areas within the field covered in the first edition of the Encyclopedia. This expansion brought about the need for this second edition of the Encyclopedia of Behavioral Medicine.

Many of the 1200 entries in the first edition have been updated considerably, and over 450 new entries have been added. These updated and new entries discuss new terms that are now part of the behavioral medicine lexicon. Several examples are highlighted here in bold font. In the area of digital health and mHealth/eHealth, new terms such as **behavioral informatics**, the collecting, analyzing, and interpreting heterogeneous data to model and shape human behavior (chapter “Behavioral Informatics” by Singh and Ghosh), and **digital health coaching**, using digital technologies to help patients identify and work toward behavior change, are now firmly established (chapter “Digital Health Coaching” by Sargent and Tomasino). In the basic sciences, researchers in behavioral medicine have begun examining brain–gut interactions and in particular the **gut microbiome** (chapter “Gut Microbiome” by Gellman). Within the domain of intervention research can be found the newly-emerging framework for developing efficient, cost-effective, and

scalable behavioral interventions known as **multiphase optimization strategy** or MOST (chapter “Multiphase Optimization Strategy (MOST)” by Goldstein and Kugler). As for the first edition, it is hoped that this new edition will prove useful to students, teachers, researchers, clinicians, and individuals engaged in public health and public policy pursuits. In a world in which the pace of change seems always to be increasing, there is no doubt that the field of behavioral medicine will continue to evolve rapidly. In due course, therefore, another edition may be published. In the meantime, this edition provides a comprehensive current resource that encapsulates key aspects of our discipline and also generates an architectural framework for its further evolution. For readers who are students, it is also hoped that you will become motivated to contribute to behavioral medicine’s future.

Miami, Florida
September 2020

Marc D. Gellman

References

Freedland, K. E. (2019). The Behavioral Medicine Research Council: Its origins, mission, and methods. *Health Psychology, 38*(4), 277–289. <https://doi.org/10.1037/hea0000731>.

Preface to the First Edition

The establishment, advancement, and maturation of the field of behavioral medicine bears witness to interest among research scientists, clinicians, and policy makers in psychological, behavioral, and social influences on health and disease from the perspective of both the individual patient and global public health. It has become increasingly clear that such influences may negatively impact health and well-being and, equally importantly, that behavioral interventions may be protective and curative.

Neal Miller (1909–2002), an American psychologist and recipient of the National Medal of Science in 1964, is often credited as being the founder of behavioral medicine. He made significant contributions to our understanding of the relationship between reinforcement mechanisms and the control of autonomic behavior, and in pioneering the field of biofeedback, which is used successfully today to treat a variety of medical conditions. The original definition of behavioral medicine was developed at the Yale Conference on Behavioral Medicine and later published by Gary Schwartz and Stephen Weiss (1977):

“Behavioral medicine” is the field concerned with the development of behavioral science knowledge and techniques relevant to the understanding of physical health and illness, and the application of this knowledge and these techniques to diagnosis, prevention, treatment and rehabilitation.

While this definition remains the cornerstone of our interdisciplinary and integrative field, developments in many relevant subfields have advanced at rapid rates, and whole new specialties have arisen. This evolution was well exemplified by the publication in 2010 of the *Handbook of Behavioral Medicine* (Steptoe 2010). Relevant knowledge and understanding of issues of interest in behavioral medicine is now contributed by the disciplines of and expertise from anthropology, behavioral and molecular genetics, behavioral science, biostatistics, clinical medicine, cultural studies, epidemiology, health economics, general medicine, genomics, psychiatry, psychology, physiology, public health and public health policy, and sociology, to name but a few. It was therefore considered an opportune and appropriate time to create the *Encyclopedia of Behavioral Medicine*, whose publication coincides with the 12th International Congress of Behavioral Medicine, held on August 29th to September 1st, 2012, in Budapest, with attendees representing multiple disciplines and many countries around the globe. The theme of the meeting is “Behavioral Medicine: From Basic Science to Clinical Investigation and Public Health,” the theme around which this *Encyclopedia* has been developed.

Accordingly, the *Encyclopedia* contains entries falling into three categories or domains that represent issues of interest: basic research, clinical investigation and practice, and public health and public health policy. The domain of basic research addresses the key questions of mechanisms of action, both in terms of how behavior can have a deleterious impact on health and how a change in behavior can be beneficial, either preventively or therapeutically. The domain of clinical investigation and practice translates this basic knowledge into clinical interventions on a patient-by-patient basis. Finally, the domain of public health and public health policy takes a broader view of how behavioral medicine research and interventions can impact the health of populations at the community, regional, national, and global levels. This includes addressing the system-wide/public education and advocacy/political activities that are needed to facilitate maximum benefits at the global level.

It can immediately be seen that behavioral medicine is indeed a multidisciplinary and interdisciplinary field. Researching mechanisms of action requires a detailed level of human biology, starting from the molecular genetic level and progressing from cellular to organ to whole-body study. A thorough understanding of environmental interactions with biological functioning is also necessary. The domains of basic research and clinical investigation and practice are linked by the increasingly important concept of translational medicine, that is, how to translate our mechanistic knowledge and understanding into successful clinical interventions most effectively and efficiently. The final challenge, likely the most challenging but ultimately providing the greatest benefit, is to address these interventions at the public health level.

Within these overarching categories, it is possible to group together various entries into categories of interest to individual readers or groups of readers pursuing their own research in cross-cutting areas. One example might be the impact of behavioral medicine research and interventions across the life span, that is, taking a life cycle approach. Entries in the *Encyclopedia* such as Children's Health Study, Elderly, End-of-Life Care, Geriatric Medicine, Life Span, Obesity in Children, and Successful Aging might be instructive in this case.

A second example might be looking at genetic predisposition to the deleterious impact of environmental factors and, equally of interest, to the therapeutic benefit of certain behavioral medicine interventions. Entries of interest here might be Family Studies (Genetics), Gene-Environment Interaction, Gene Expression, Genome-wide Association Study, and Twin Studies. While not always intuitively obvious, one of the most powerful ways to study the effects of environmental (behavioral) factors on a phenotype of interest (e.g., a given disease state or condition of clinical concern) is to study genetic influence on that phenotype (Plomin et al. 1997). Having done so, it is possible to remove from consideration the individual variation attributable to genetic influence and hence to focus on variation attributable to environmental and gene-environment interaction influences. We are certain that readers will find many such groupings of entries relevant to their own interests and research.

Additional evidence of the growth of the discipline of behavioral medicine is provided by the fact that training in the field can be found in universities around the world, ensuring that the next generation of researchers and

practitioners will be trained by current experts. Before going on to specialize in behavioral medicine research or clinical practice, individuals often receive their terminal degrees in disciplines such as medicine, public health, nursing, and psychology. Such diversity is a tremendous strength in this interdisciplinary field.

Like all such printed endeavors, the *Encyclopedia* proves a “snapshot in time” of its subject. Research during the past 30 years has provided the solid foundation from which future advances will be made, and it will be of great interest to all of us in behavioral medicine to follow its further development. We are grateful to Stephen Weiss for providing a Foreword entitled “Early Developments in the Field of Behavioral Medicine,” which reviews important events in the discipline’s evolution, and to Neil Schneiderman for providing a Foreword entitled “A Personal View of Behavioral Medicine’s Future,” which provides an insightful view of likely trajectories and benefits of our discipline. We hope that subsequent editions will provide additional snapshots in due course.

Miami
July 2012

Marc D. Gellman
J. Rick Turner

References

- Plomin, R., DeFries, J. C., McClearn, G. E., & Rutter, M. (1997). *Behavioral genetics* (3rd ed.). New York: WH Freeman & Company.
- Schwartz, G., & Weiss, S. (1977). What is behavioral medicine. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 39(6), 377–381.
- Steptoe, A. (Ed.) (2010). *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications*. New York: Springer.

List of Authors

David B. Abrams, P. 1, 2075
Howard Aizenstein, P. 1330
Tatsuo Akechi, P. 120, 633
Mustafa al’Absi, P. 143, 957, 1279, 1494, 1502, 1693
Jessica Alcorso, P. 1315
Melissa A. Alderfer, P. 1340, 1640
Sarah Aldred, P. 124, 1506, 1596, 2141
Katie E. Alegria, P. 496
Nida Ali, P. 87, 445
Julia Allan, P. 485, 2230
Peter Allebeck, P. 1000, 1024
Josh Allen, P. 161
Bruce S. Alpert, P. 267
Leila Anane, P. 1145
David E. Anderson, P. 1204
Giles M. Anderson, P. 972
Norman B. Anderson, P. 105
Gerhard Andersson, P. 2244
Tetusya Ando, P. 908, 1804
Mike Antoni, P. 1389
Hannah Appleseth, P. 1234
William Arguelles, P. 2183
Danielle Arigo, P. 1674
Wiebke Arlt, P. 1473
Arpo Aromaa, P. 1399
Elva Arredondo, P. 582
Lisa G. Aspinwall, P. 1713
Kristin J. August, P. 2095
Robin Austin, P. 538
Kieran Ayling, P. 215
Simon L. Bacon, P. 372, 409, 810, 882, 966
Rachel N. Baek, P. 15
Jonathan Z. Bakdash, P. 1107
Elizabeth Baker, P. 2069, 2071
Priya Balaji, P. 1094, 1100, 1101, 1104
Austin S. Baldwin, P. 179, 1170
Chad Barrett, P. 106, 233, 603, 1515, 1656, 1877, 2279

Jennifer A. Bartz, P. 1599
Abigail Batchelder, P. 979
Michele Crites Battié, P. 811
G. David Batty, P. 782, 1417, 2085, 2108
Carolyn Baum, P. 1546
Linda C. Baumann, P. 7, 55, 150, 260, 309, 544, 744, 755, 1010, 1175, 1738, 1977, 2242
Elliott A. Beaton, P. 293, 295, 1128, 1482
C. Andres Bedoya, P. 685
Catherine Benedict, P. 253, 356, 358, 786, 2147
M. Bernardine, P. 1665
Ryan M. Beveridge, P. 849, 861
Stephen Birch, P. 236, 567, 1007
Orit Birnbaum-Weitzman, P. 793, 1406, 2083, 2105, 2198, 2199
Kacie Allen Blackman, P. 1852
Twyla Blackmond Larnell, P. 1833, 1835
James A. Blumenthal, P. 2210
Guy Bodenmann, P. 851, 2234
Marie Boltz, P. 542, 1133
Susan J. Bondy, P. 1966
Stephan Bongard, P. 110
Brian Borsari, P. 248
Jos A. Bosch, P. 1141, 1145, 1149
Stephanie Bowlin, P. 2334
Sophia Brady, P. 1677
Nicole Brandt, P. 18, 123, 682, 701, 702, 1993
Lauren Brenner, P. 735
Dana Brimmer, P. 226
Carrie Brintz, P. 899, 1055
Caitlin A. Bronson, P. 383
J. F. Brosschot, P. 1245, 1650, 2359
Frankie F. Brown, P. 1319, 1323
Jennifer L. Brown, P. 2019
Bonnie Bruce, P. 997
Vaughn Bryant, P. 1462
Patrícia Cardoso Buchain, P. 26, 1794, 1799
Tony W. Buchanan, P. 1776
Ross Buck, P. 516
Romola S. Bucks, P. 2252
Donna C. Burdzy, P. 1729
Rachel J. Burns, P. 203
Michelle Nicole Burns, P. 729
Victoria E. Burns, P. 1145
David Busse, P. 1333
Natalie E. Bustillo, P. 1351, 1459
Colin D. Butler, P. 719
Jorie Butler, P. 727, 1983
Melissa M. A. Buttner, P. 2367

John T. Cacioppo, P. 1302
Demetria Cain, P. 1418
Matthew Calamia, P. 549
David Cameron, P. 1994, 2003, 2006
Linda D. Cameron, P. 496, 498
Nerissa Campbell, P. 1682
Tavis S. Campbell, P. 486, 868, 914, 926, 1348, 2289, 2323
Turhan Canli, P. 2016
Leeanne M. Carey, P. 1546
Rachel Carey, P. 206
Jordan Carlson, P. 807, 1283, 1291, 1293
Adriana Carrillo, P. 265, 865, 866, 1197, 1567, 1807
Douglas Carroll, P. 740, 1122, 1169, 1775, 1806, 2312
Judith Carroll, P. 2254
Linda Carroll, P. 25, 1631, 1737, 1747
Jennifer Carter, P. 168
Charles Carver, P. 550
Pedro C. Castellon, P. 1422
Fong Chan, P. 1780
Sherilynn F. Chan, P. 1646
Matthieu Chansard, P. 1627
Stephenie Chaudoir, P. 2142
Margaret A. Chesney, P. 425, 1204
Ornit Chiba-Falek, P. 924, 1481
Yoichi Chida, P. 1043
Olveen Carrasquillo Chief, P. 1001, 1020, 1078
Michael S. Chmielewski, P. 884
Julie Chronister, P. 1780
Linda Cillessen, P. 1396
Molly S. Clark, P. 130, 1123, 1709, 1987
Tyler Clark, P. 444, 1684
Benjamin L. Clarke, P. 58
Tainya C. Clarke, P. 333
Lindy Clemson, P. 835
Stephen Clift, P. 2041
Lorenzo Cohen, P. 29
Susan E. Collins, P. 8, 79
Persis Commissariat, P. 15
Félix R. Compen, P. 1396
Richard J. Contrada, P. 383
Michael James Coons, P. 959, 961, 963, 1117, 1603, 1608, 1611, 1617, 1620, 1623
Susannah D. Copland, P. 1166
Quirino Cordeiro, P. 26, 1794, 1799
Erin S. Costanzo, P. 1593, 2304
Simon J. Craddock Lee, P. 1447
Monique F. Crane, P. 1574
Jennifer Creek, P. 2240

Matthew Cribbet, P. 1651
Hugo Critchley, P. 741
Crista N. Crittenden, P. 503, 504, 505
Sierra Cronan, P. 1226
Andrea Croom, P. 763, 1087
Rick Crosby, P. 532
Jennifer Cumming, P. 972, 1800, 1801
Cassie Cunningham, P. 1638
Maurizio Cutolo, P. 790
Elizabeth da Silva Cardoso, P. 1780
Amber Daigre, P. 886
Catherine Darker, P. 1925
Karina Davidson, P. 469
Gary Davis, P. 825
Mary C. Davis, P. 153
Karen Dawe, P. 215
Marijke De Couck, P. 669, 1492
Stefanie De Jesus, P. 1682, 2078
Karla Espinosa de los Monteros, P. 872
Alexandra Martini de Oliveira, P. 26, 1794, 1799
Maartje de Wit, P. 645, 1024, 1818, 1820
Denise de Ybarra Rodríguez, P. 2073
Scott DeBerard, P. 159, 1039, 1068, 1282, 1284
Joost Dekker, P. 614
Alan M. Delamater, P. 1201, 1365, 1391, 1524, 2257, 2283
Kelly S. DeMartini, P. 78
Michael I. Demidenko, P. 1053, 1068
Johan Denollet, P. 1469, 2089, 2285
Ellen-ge Denton, P. 631
Stuart Derbyshire, P. 452
Martin Deschner, P. 103
Tamer F. Desouky, P. 995
Mary Amanda Dew, P. 1567
Sally Dickerson, P. 2098
Andrea F. DiMartini, P. 1567
Joel E. Dimsdale, P. 664
Ding Ding, P. 242, 312, 715
Genevieve A. Dingle, P. 2041
Beate Ditzen, P. 571, 769, 1338, 1660
Diane Dixon, P. 666
Kelly Doran, P. 870, 1941
Susan Dorsey, P. 1502
Monica Dowling, P. 635
Mark T. Drayson, P. 1177
Michelle Drerup, P. 229
Frank A. Drews, P. 1107
Suzana Drobnjak, P. 308, 1366
Joan L. Duda, P. 1677, 1971

Alejandra Duenas, P. 570
Joan Duer-Hefelee, P. 469
Mariam Dum, P. 2198, 2199
Jennifer Duncan, P. 322
Christine Dunkel Schetter, P. 1732, 1899
Valerie Earnshaw, P. 2142
Lisa A. Eaton, P. 537
Moritz Thede Eckart, P. 410
Ulrike Ehlert, P. 945, 1886
Alexandre Elhalwi, P. 810, 966
Lorin Elias, P. 301
Helio Elkis, P. 1794, 1799
Lee Ellington, P. 408
Christopher G. Engeland, P. 2360
Elissa S. Epel, P. 2227
Jennifer Toller Erausquin, P. 919
Alexandra Erdmann, P. 2304
Sabrina Esbitt, P. 978
Shaniff Esmail, P. 1420, 1849
Paul Estabrooks, P. 1852
Susan A. Everson-Rose, P. 1094, 1100, 1101, 1104
Rachel Faller, P. 919
Anja C. Feneberg, P. 1439
Sally A. M. Fenton, P. 1509, 1677, 1958, 1971
Susan J. (Sue) Ferguson, P. 1082, 1711
Cristina A. Fernandez, P. 1452
Tania C. T. Ferraz Alves, P. 26
Angela Fidler Pfammatter, P. 798, 1895, 2259
Tiffany Field, P. 1338
Robyn Fielder, P. 2020, 2023
David J. Finitis, P. 1265
Simona Fischbacher, P. 1886
Susanne Fischer, P. 1902, 2179
Skye Fitzpatrick, P. 251
Kelly Flannery, P. 1119
Magne Arve Flaten, P. 1508, 1693
Sara Fleszar, P. 498
Serina Floyd, P. 844
Rachel Flurie, P. 18, 123, 682
Susan Folkman, P. 2177, 2327
Katherine T. Fortenberry, P. 130, 1123, 1709, 1987
Andrew Fox, P. 1370
Kristen R. Fox, P. 1567
Christopher France, P. 101, 261
Janis L. France, P. 261
Renée-Louise Franche, P. 1849
Anne Frankel, P. 1462
Elizabeth J. Franzmann, P. 53, 367, 369

Fred Friedberg, P. 874
Georita Marie Frierson, P. 1403, 1665
Shin Fukudo, P. 102, 912, 1190, 1247
Terry Fulmer, P. 10
Julianne Holt-Lunstad Fulton, P. 1335
Jens Gaab, P. 1080
Amiram Gafni, P. 236, 567, 1007
Elizabeth Galik, P. 911, 1196, 1514
Stephen Gallagher, P. 1871, 1881, 2123
Steven Gambert, P. 676, 677, 1517, 1521, 1742
Luis I. García, P. 918, 1113
M. Kay Garcia, P. 29
Ryan Garcia, P. 1563, 1564, 1656
Luz M. Garcini, P. 1403
Stephanie L. Garey, P. 350
Mariana Garza, P. 1063
Robert J. Gatchel, P. 1489
Klaus Gebel, P. 242
Pamela A. Geller, P. 1181
Marc D. Gellman, P. 35, 223, 267, 780, 974, 1810, 2015
Login S. George, P. 1349, 1876
William Gerin, P. 380
Denis Gerstorf, P. 1309, 2313
Isha Ghosh, P. 218
Yori Gidron, P. 34, 73, 85, 145, 158, 292, 472, 515, 672, 673, 724, 725, 815, 816, 878, 891, 913, 965, 971, 981, 1019, 1026, 1085, 1314, 1424, 1425, 1434, 1486, 1487, 1488, 1499, 1500, 1637, 1645, 1869, 1930, 1951, 1960, 1970, 2082, 2201, 2203, 2214, 2255, 2258
Supria K. Gill, P. 1053, 1068
Annie T. Ginty, P. 266, 275, 276, 466, 538, 655, 1047, 1770, 2220
Karen Glanz, P. 2044
Elizabeth Gleyzer, P. 523, 2290
Ronald Goldberg, P. 705
Carly M. Goldstein, P. 1429, 2092, 2138, 2308
Stephanie P. Goldstein, P. 2308
Peter M. Gollwitzer, P. 1159
Heather Honoré Goltz, P. 346, 354, 1752, 1753, 1837
Carley Gomez-Meade, P. 265, 865, 866, 1807
Jeffrey S. Gonzalez, P. 15, 978, 979, 1745
Patricia Gonzalez, P. 2105
Jeffrey L. Goodie, P. 472
Daniel Gorrin, P. 395, 611
John Grabowski, P. 624, 2188
Douglas A. Granger, P. 1933
Douglas P. Gross, P. 811, 900, 1420, 1537, 1849, 2318
Beth Grunfeld, P. 1912
Jessica Haberer, P. 1361
Tibor Hajos, P. 1024, 1818

Chanita H. Halbert, P. 584
Judith A. Hall, P. 693
Katherine S. Hall, P. 1282
Martica H. Hall, P. 1195, 1454, 2048, 2059, 2066
Peter A. Hall, P. 805, 1210, 1644, 1704, 1767, 2228
Heidi Hamann, P. 303
Mark Hamer, P. 1034, 1774, 1775, 2182, 2339
Fiona Louise Hamilton, P. 736
Kyra Hamilton, P. 2151
Margaret Hammersla, P. 1681
Reiner Hanewinkel, P. 2247
Nelli Hankonen, P. 1231
Kazuo Hara, P. 2325, 2326
Samantha M. Harden, P. 1852
Manjunath Harlapur, P. 43, 127, 867, 877, 1297, 1299, 1580, 1741, 2297
John Harlow, P. 66
Victoria Harms, P. 301
Lisa Harnack, P. 1519
Stacey L. Hart, P. 346, 354, 1752, 1753, 1837
Briain O. Hartaigh, P. 590, 2018
Alison Hartman, P. 1181
Steven Harulow, P. 2116
Toshihide Hashimoto, P. 1914
Masahiro Hashizume, P. 255
Brant P. Hasler, P. 683
Misty A. W. Hawkins, P. 1011
Louise C. Hawkley, P. 1303
Calvin Haws, P. 1537
Laura L. Hayman, P. 989
Jennifer Heaney, P. 20, 560, 778, 1127, 1693
Christine Heim, P. 1660, 2167
Eric B. Hekler, P. 66
Lois Jane Heller, P. 2221
Miranda Hellman, P. 573, 757, 1253, 1257, 1260, 1261, 1262, 1545, 1802, 2356
Whitney M. Herge, P. 407, 1720
Patricia Cristine Heyn, P. 1282
Emma Hiatt, P. 1780
Angela M. Hicks, P. 172
Benjamin Hidalgo, P. 246, 517
Catharina Hjortsberg, P. 1015
Clare Hocking, P. 1540
Richard Hoffman, P. 1496, 1961
Sara A. Hoffman, P. 798, 1895, 2259
Maxine Holmqvist, P. 1759, 1761, 1765
Emily D. Hooker, P. 982
Stephanie Ann Hooker, P. 244, 365, 377, 1930, 1975, 2009, 2035, 2105
Monica Webb Hooper, P. 325, 823, 2069, 2071, 2073

Christiane A. Hoppmann, P. 1309, 2313
M. Bryant Howren, P. 36, 1823
Brian M. Hughes, P. 270
Ryan Hulla, P. 1489
Mann Hyung Hur, P. 759
Seth Hurley, P. 114, 116
Mustafa M. Husain, P. 1627
John Hustad, P. 248
Shannon Idzik, P. 1740, 1742, 1743
Shuji Inada, P. 198, 2328
Salvatore Insana, P. 1513, 1827, 1882, 2056, 2068
Leah Irish, P. 1561
Daisuke Ito, P. 1768
Makiko Ito, P. 1803
Satoru Iwase, P. 1622
Karen Jacobs, P. 573, 757, 1253, 1257, 1260, 1261, 1262, 1545, 1802, 2213, 2356
Farrah Jacquez, P. 840
Denise Janicki-Deverts, P. 503, 504, 505
Kate L. Jansen, P. 130, 1123, 1709, 1987
Imke Janssen, P. 887
Lisa M. Jaremka, P. 849, 861
Elissa Jelalian, P. 1523, 1525, 1528
Chad D. Jensen, P. 1523, 1525, 1528
Jason Jent, P. 428, 435, 856
Rong Jiang, P. 925, 1642
Alvin Jin, P. 655
Debra Johnson, P. 57, 60, 92
Jillian A. Johnson, P. 486, 868, 914, 926, 1348, 2289, 2323
Sara B. Johnson, P. 1933
Derek Johnston, P. 94, 96
Marie Johnston, P. 206
Phil Jones, P. 940
Sarah Jones, P. 2138
Randall Steven Jorgensen, P. 1910
Melissa Julian, P. 1732, 1899
Kauhanen Jussi, P. 1271
Vanessa Juth, P. 2098
Yoshinobu Kanda, P. 1049
Maria Kangas, P. 12, 49
Afton N. Kapuscinski, P. 2120, 2127, 2218
Mardís Karlsdóttir, P. 1648
Yoko Katayori, P. 102
Erin E. Kauffman, P. 2099
Francine Kaufman, P. 640
Peter Kaufmann, P. 1266
Jacob J. Keech, P. 2151
Quinn D. Kellerman, P. 774

Alan Kessedjian, P. 1471, 2216
Riyad Khanfer, P. 1329, 1466
Falk Kiefer, P. 1279
Hiroe Kikuchi, P. 353, 991, 993, 1639, 1868
Kristin Kilbourn, P. 796
Christopher J. Kilby, P. 761, 1275
Tereza Killianova, P. 890, 1928
Jeong Han Kim, P. 2316
Youngmee Kim, P. 98, 2164
Pamela S. King, P. 670, 752, 753, 1357, 1410
Megan Kirouac, P. 79
Clemens Kirschbaum, P. 561, 2275
George D. Kitas, P. 1677, 1971
Mika Kivimaki, P. 2140
Predrag Klasnja, P. 66
Maria Kleinstäuber, P. 1413, 2373
Wendy Kliewer, P. 817
Christopher E. Kline, P. 20, 1700, 2061, 2064
Anna K. Koch, P. 575, 1203
Dorothea König, P. 746
Carolyn Korbel, P. 172, 609
Rachel Kornfield, P. 663
Emily Kothe, P. 1289, 2086
Michael Kotlyar, P. 316, 1973
Marc A. Kowalkowski, P. 346, 354, 1752, 1753, 1837
Tara Kraft, P. 2334
Jean L. Kristeller, P. 1392
Kurt Kroenke, P. 2110
Stefan Krumm, P. 1241
Ulrike Kübler, P. 2185
Laura D. Kubzansky, P. 1597
Brigitte M. Kudielka, P. 638
Kari C. Kugler, P. 1429
Masayoshi Kumagai, P. 200
Keiki Kumano, P. 2137
Yoshihiko Kunisato, P. 2284
Elyse Kupperman, P. 15
Annette M. La Greca, P. 407, 1646, 1720
Pearl La Marca-Ghaemmaghami, P. 945
Seppo Laaksonen, P. 2208
Lara LaCaille, P. 311, 711, 2231
Rick LaCaille, P. 1234, 1786, 2172
Laura H. Lacritz, P. 1435
Karl-Heinz Ladwig, P. 1359
Nathan Landers, P. 1489
Ryan R. Landoll, P. 407
Joshua Landvatter, P. 1226
Tanja Lange, P. 459

Brittney Lange-Maia, P. 887
Jost Langhorst, P. 575, 1203
David Latini, P. 346, 354, 1752, 1753, 1837
Emily Lattie, P. 735
Kim Lavoie, P. 125, 440
Lauren Law, P. 1980
Hannah G. Lawman, P. 1980
David J. Lee, P. 333, 1452
Emily E. Lenk, P. 769
Carter A. Lennon, P. 74
Wen B. Leong, P. 1377
Stephen J. Lepore, P. 817
Bonnie S. LeRoy, P. 931
Yvonne Leung, P. 1643
Bonnie Levin, P. 617
Helena Lewis-Smith, P. 283
Bingshuo Li, P. 143
Roselind Lieb, P. 1707
Jane Limmer, P. 844
Bernt Lindahl, P. 1920
Martin Lindström, P. 2079
Megan R. Lipe, P. 343
Steven E. Lipshultz, P. 1450
Cecilia W. P. Li-Tsang, P. 2240
Maria Magdalena Llabre, P. 2183
Judy D. Lobo, P. 1076
Valerie G. Loehr, P. 1170
Joanna Long, P. 1150, 1800, 1801
Kristin A. Long, P. 1340
Sana Loue, P. 577
William R. Lovallo, P. 1776
Travis I. Lovejoy, P. 321, 1053, 1068
Wei Lü, P. 270
Tana M. Luger, P. 999, 2215
Anna Luke, P. 2092
Mark A. Lumley, P. 107
M. Kathleen B. Lustyk, P. 1864
Faith S. Luyster, P. 703, 2052, 2055
Kristin L. MacGregor, P. 78
Anna MacKinnon, P. 1426
Shannon Madore, P. 796
Nicole E. Mahrer, P. 1732, 1899
Elizabeth A. Majka, P. 1302
Jamil A. Malik, P. 1273
Neena Malik, P. 855
Elizabeth M. Maloney, P. 1549
Tsipora Mankovsky, P. 453
Amy Jo Marcano-Reik, P. 31, 113, 122, 474

Judy A. Marciel, P. 588
Kristen K. Marciel, P. 588
Erin N. Marcus, P. 1020
Seth A. Margolis, P. 1745
Michela (Micky) Marinelli, P. 699
Jacqueline Markowitz, P. 573, 757, 1253, 1257, 1260, 1261, 1262, 1545, 1802, 2356
David G. Marrero, P. 644
Meghan L. Marsac, P. 1640
Elaine Marshall, P. 1786
Alexandra Martin, P. 26, 1794, 1799, 1917
Kevin S. Masters, P. 307, 679, 826, 1244, 2125
Della Matheson, P. 99, 1199
Yoshinobu Matsuda, P. 357
Hiromichi Matsuoka, P. 351
Yutaka Matsuyama, P. 1059
Sonia Matwin, P. 609
Alfred L. McAlister, P. 1003
Lisa M. McAndrew, P. 507, 995
Jeanette McCarthy, P. 933, 939, 1664
Shawn McClintock, P. 1627
Lance M. McCracken, P. 1609
James A. McCubbin, P. 766
Hayley McDonald, P. 148
Bonnie McGregor, P. 358
Brooke McInroy, P. 100
David McIntyre, P. 199
Tara McMullen, P. 1978, 1986, 1990
Marcia D. McNutt, P. 823
Tamar Mendelson, P. 2170
Luigi Meneghini, P. 246, 641, 642, 964, 991, 1202, 2282
Melissa Merrick, P. 428, 435
Shelby Messerschmitt-Coen, P. 851
Sarah Messiah, P. 276, 286, 288
Miriam A. Mestre, P. 1450
Elizabeth Mezick, P. 2058, 2063
Kathleen Michael, P. 643
Susan Michie, P. 206
Eleanor Miles, P. 63, 259
Donna Miller, P. 1452
Robert Miller, P. 2275
Tracie L. Miller, P. 1450
Rachel Millstein, P. 61, 137, 281
Faisal Mir, P. 2216
Karlle M. Mirabelli, P. 661
Akihisa Mitani, P. 162, 163, 166, 450, 1313, 1813
Jason W. Mitchell, P. 918, 1073, 2025
Laura A. Mitchell, P. 502

Koji Miyazaki, P. 476
Marilyn Moffat, P. 1685
David C. Mohr, P. 729
Kristine M. Molina, P. 793, 1005, 1833, 1835
Ivan Molton, P. 739, 941
Jane Monaco, P. 397, 500, 714, 1911, 2330
Enid Montague, P. 2294
Miranda Montrone, P. 2204
Pablo A. Mora, P. 507, 995, 1997
Theresa A. Morgan, P. 884, 1277
Matthis Morgenstern, P. 2247
Chica Mori, P. 1622
Yoshiya Moriguchi, P. 905
Alexandre Morizio, P. 882
Eleshia J. P. Morrison, P. 1403
Anett Mueller, P. 2016
Hanna M. Mües, P. 2028
Matthew Muldoon, P. 1552
Barbara Mullan, P. 1157
Tomohiko Muratsubaki, P. 1247
Elizabeth Murray, P. 736
Julie Murray, P. 159, 1039, 1284
Seema Mutti, P. 1332
Yoko Nagai, P. 741
Eun-Shim Nahm, P. 1586
Motohiro Nakajima, P. 1502
Misuzu Nakashima, P. 213, 231
Benjamin H. Natelson, P. 1360
Urs M. Nater, P. 87, 445, 788, 1368, 1439, 1660, 2028, 2179
Gabriana Navarrete, P. 1864
Astrid Nehlig, P. 477
Alexandra Nelson, P. 1181
Ashley M. Nelson, P. 1593
Kimberly Nelson, P. 628
Jonathan Newman, P. 1032, 1051, 1243, 1294, 1433, 1699, 1736, 2109, 2181, 2302, 2306, 2351
Sarah J. Newman, P. 859
Darren Nickel, P. 183
Nicole Nisly, P. 90
Karen Niven, P. 62, 63
Kyle R. Noll, P. 1435
Wynne E. Norton, P. 678
Kathryn Noth, P. 686
Ciara M. O'Brien, P. 1971
Eoin O'Brien, P. 1689
Julianne O'Daniel, P. 932
Michael O'Hara, P. 2347
Lindsay Oberleitner, P. 107

Gabriele Oettingen, P. 1159
Ken Ohashi, P. 2135
Keisuke Ohta, P. 44
Michele L. Okun, P. 293, 1505, 1724, 1735
Toru Okuyama, P. 141, 329, 1757
Ellinor K. Olander, P. 2357
Brian Oldenburg, P. 1550
Sheina Orbell, P. 977
Tracy Orleans, P. 1578
Kristina Orth-Gomér, P. 1582
Patricia Osborne, P. 1745
Kenneth J. Ottenbacher, P. 1587
Margaret E. Ottenbacher, P. 1587
Nicole Overstreet, P. 1070
Jan R. Oyeboode, P. 968, 969
Gozde Ozakinci, P. 1997
Debbie Palmer, P. 431
Steven C. Palmer, P. 340, 1093
Kenneth Pargament, P. 1729
Crystal L. Park, P. 1349, 1876
Joanne Park, P. 1420, 1537, 1849
Alyssa Parker, P. 392, 857, 1118, 1126
Kristen Pasko, P. 1674
Seema M. Patidar, P. 785
Anna Maria Patino-Fernandez, P. 118, 314, 712, 1376
David Pearson, P. 2354
Hollie Pelloosmaa, P. 1090
Jennifer Pellowski, P. 917, 1457, 1461
Frank J. Penedo, P. 358
Watcharaporn Pengchit, P. 1713
Donald Penzien, P. 1383
Deidre Pereira, P. 343, 350, 785, 935
Edward L. Perkins, P. 690
Richard Peter, P. 1358
Anna C. Phillips, P. 1177, 1646
Alison Phillips, P. 507
Sarah Piper, P. 373, 1843, 1845
Alefiyah Z. Pishori, P. 622
Helene J. Polatajko, P. 1546
Lynda H. Powell, P. 887
Glenn Pransky, P. 1613, 1615
Harry Prapavessis, P. 674, 1682
Aric A. Prather, P. 2037
Courtney C. Prather, P. 2099
Sarah D. Pressman, P. 982, 2334
James O. Prochaska, P. 2266
Elizabeth R. Pulgaron, P. 147, 165, 1524, 1595, 2283
Naum Purits, P. 828

Pekka Puska, P. 2249
Conny W. E. M. Quaedflieg, P. 2161
Mashfiqui Rabbi, P. 1632
Whitney Raglin, P. 840
Jeanetta Rains, P. 1383
P. H. Amelie Ramirez, P. 1748
Isabel F. Ramos, P. 1732
Ashley K. Randall, P. 851, 2234
Sheah Rarback, P. 789, 1027, 1312, 1444
Holly Rau, P. 1136, 1138
Maija Reblin, P. 391
Jerrald Rector, P. 1145
Gabriela Reed, P. 842, 848
William Reeves, P. 1368
Emily W. Reid, P. 2270
Ulf-Dietrich Reips, P. 1216
Anthony Remaud, P. 1250
Kirsten Rene, P. 1773
Michiel F. Reneman, P. 900, 2318
Barbara Resnick, P. 71, 366, 943, 944, 1451, 1459, 2193
Spencer M. Richard, P. 1284
Michael Richter, P. 186, 188, 1626, 2211
Nina Rieckmann, P. 708
Winfried Rief, P. 2113, 2114
Kristen Riley, P. 240
Deborah Rinehart, P. 988
Lynnee Roane, P. 1115
Christopher Robert, P. 1489
Osvaldo Rodriguez, P. 1078
Laura Rodriguez-Murillo, P. 439, 555, 698, 922, 940, 1059, 1082, 1112, 1192, 1856
Kathryn A. Roecklein, P. 1964
Megan Roehrig, P. 322
Nicolas Rohleder, P. 1187, 1210, 2280
Chelsea Romney, P. 1899
Karen S. Rook, P. 2095
Jed E. Rose, P. 1504
Leah Rosenberg, P. 373, 375, 559, 881, 1123, 1295, 1649, 1843, 1845, 2257, 2305
Debra Roter, P. 693
Alexander J. Rothman, P. 203
Eric Roy, P. 299, 492, 493, 494
Rachel S. Rubinstein, P. 383
John Ruiz, P. 1063, 2099
John Ryan, P. 1330
Valerie Sabol, P. 707, 1046, 1815
Rany M. Salem, P. 439, 555, 698, 922, 940, 1059, 1082, 1112, 1192, 1856
Kristen Salomon, P. 655, 1373, 1648, 1688, 2146, 2158
Janine Sanchez, P. 543, 652, 760, 960, 1201

Lee Sanders, P. 521, 1017
Timothy S. Sannes, P. 935
Elizabeth Sargent, P. 658
Amy F. Sato, P. 1523, 1525, 1528
Eve Saucier, P. 1772
Shekhar Saxena, P. 2357
Wolff Schlotz, P. 2154
Havah Schneider, P. 978
Neil Schneiderman, P. 1062, 1212, 1955
Beth Schroeder, P. 151, 171, 612
James W. Schroeder, P. 782
Marie-Louise Schult, P. 1258
Brandon K. Schultz, P. 661
M. Di Katie Sebastiano, P. 278, 903
Sabrina Segal, P. 1515, 2212
Theresa Senn, P. 2026, 2032
Jonathan A. Shaffer, P. 422, 2129
Kelly M. Shaffer, P. 2164
Peter A. Shapiro, P. 1040
Leigh A. Sharma, P. 1501
Marianne Shaughnessy, P. 463, 533, 1755, 1893
Christopher Shaw, P. 2324
William S. Shaw, P. 1613, 1615
Tamara Goldman Sher, P. 686
Kerry Sherman, P. 283, 606, 761, 1275, 2204
Simon Sherry, P. 251, 1426
Vivek Shetty, P. 257
Akihito Shimazu, P. 1269
Daichi Shimbo, P. 43, 127, 376, 867, 877, 1297, 1299, 1580, 1741, 2297
Erica Shreck, P. 979
Koseki Shunsuke, P. 1985
Johannes Siegrist, P. 1534, 2038
Matthew A. Simonson, P. 936, 1830
Kit Sinclair, P. 2240
Abanish Singh, P. 54, 84, 529, 1706
Vivek K. Singh, P. 218
Bengt H. Sjölund, P. 1860
Celeste Sugg Skinner, P. 2223
Michelle Skinner, P. 748, 750
Nadine Skoluda, P. 1906
Tom Smeets, P. 2161
Alicia K. Smith, P. 782
Barbara Smith, P. 438
Lauren Smith, P. 1063
Timothy W. Smith, P. 1035, 1223
Howard Sollins, P. 692, 1014, 2207
Colin L. Soskolne, P. 719
Ana Victoria Soto, P. 157, 370, 604
Anne E. M. Speckens, P. 1396

Mary Spiers, P. 291, 399, 2270
Kevin S. Spink, P. 183
Bonnie Spring, P. 798, 1895, 2259
Sara Mijares St. George, P. 2090
Tobias Stalder, P. 561
Annette L. Stanton, P. 304
Shannon L. Stark, P. 153
Adrienne Stauder, P. 2010
Michael E. Stefanek, P. 329
Jeremy Steglitz, P. 1603, 1617
Nikola Stenzel, P. 1241
Colleen Stiles-Shields, P. 1953, 2294
Anna M. Stone, P. 1377
Madison E. Stout, P. 1011
Mark Stoutenberg, P. 1670
Jana Strahler, P. 1381, 1929
Deborah M. Stringer, P. 1469
Victoria Anne Sublette, P. 1287
Madalina L. Sucala, P. 1556
Alyson Sularz, P. 322
Michael J. L. Sullivan, P. 197, 453
Hannah Süß, P. 1902
Shin-ichi Suzuki, P. 1760, 1768, 1797, 1985, 2284
Melanie Swan, P. 1824
C. Renn Upchurch Sweeney, P. 599, 654, 717
Sefik Tagay, P. 1943
Shahrad Taheri, P. 1377
Misato Takada, P. 1558
Yoshiyuki Takimoto, P. 791, 792, 957, 1191, 1196
Yukari Tanaka, P. 912, 1190
Molly L. Tanenbaum, P. 15
Asuka Tanoue, P. 1760
Marc Taylor, P. 2172
Robert N. Taylor, P. 769
Jacqueline A. ter Stege, P. 606
Julian F. Thayer, P. 187, 1048, 1650
Töres Theorell, P. 1254
G. Neil Thomas, P. 1377
Roland Thomeé, P. 1905
Dylan Thompson, P. 45
Rebecca C. Thurston, P. 1343
Warren Tierney, P. 1871, 1881, 2123
Jasmin Tiro, P. 1447
Emil C. Toescu, P. 402, 1477
Fumiharu Togo, P. 465
Akihiro Tokoro, P. 323, 324
Kathryn N. Tomasino, P. 658
A. Janet Tomiyama, P. 2227
Hansel Tookes, P. 1467

George J. Trachte, P. 400, 784, 1884, 2307
Lara Traeger, P. 400, 442, 487, 498, 681
Vincent Tran, P. 1022, 1708, 1727, 1769
William Trim, P. 45
Wendy Troxel, P. 229, 1193, 1335
Emiko Tsuchiya, P. 102
Viana Turcios-Cotto, P. 2174
Barbara Turner, P. 1748
J. Rick Turner, P. 6, 65, 83, 146, 201, 241, 247, 396, 398, 401, 416, 467, 468, 475, 521, 526, 535, 548, 576, 600, 601, 613, 622, 653, 677, 702, 726, 727, 812, 814, 839, 854, 879, 929, 930, 933, 939, 1061, 1129, 1192, 1215, 1246, 1301, 1335, 1349, 1354, 1374, 1388, 1409, 1410, 1439, 1473, 1512, 1531, 1532, 1625, 1658, 1691, 1700, 1744, 1745, 1756, 17771, 1817, 1841, 1857, 1859, 1866, 1892, 1945, 2043, 2132, 2133, 2136, 2186, 2217, 2294, 2301, 2302
James Edward Turner, P. 45, 367, 591, 1151, 1319, 1323, 1346
Bert N. Uchino, P. 1226
Jane Upton, P. 26, 202, 792, 1141, 1402, 1763, 1795, 2008
Antti Uutela, P. 2298
Julia R. Van Liew, P. 1302
Kavita Vedhara, P. 215
Jet J. C. S. Veldhuijzen van Zanten, P. 574, 771, 1677, 2158
Bart Verkuil, P. 1245, 1650, 2359
Andrea C. Villanti, P. 2075
Ana Vitlic, P. 1473
Adriana Dias Barbosa Vizzotto, P. 26, 1794, 1799
Catharina Vogt, P. 1906
John P. Vuchetich, P. 316, 1973
Katarzyna Wac, P. 1819
Amy Wachholtz, P. 523, 2290
Anton J. M. Wagenmakers, P. 1947
Melanie Wakefield, P. 1695
Andrea Wallace, P. 1992
Margaret Wallhagen, P. 1029, 1030
Melissa Walls, P. 2108
Kenneth A. Wallston, P. 1423
Jenny T. Wang, P. 650, 859, 864
Jennifer L. Warnick, P. 798, 1895, 2259
Andrew J. Wawrzyniak, P. 892, 896
Thomas L. Webb, P. 1994, 2003, 2006
Lisa Juliane Weckesser, P. 2275
Mark Vander Weg, P. 417
Stephen M. Weiss, P. 2331
Jennifer Wessel, P. 506, 531, 690, 1057, 1412, 1859, 2281
William Whang, P. 142, 157, 168, 370, 535, 557, 604, 1034, 1355, 1357, 1517, 2353
Anthony J. Wheeler, P. 159, 1282
Angela White, P. 2014
Anna C. Whittaker, P. 119, 121, 1281, 1925

Timothy Whittaker, P. 1056
Timothy H. Wideman, P. 197
Deborah J. Wiebe, P. 192, 985
Friedrich Wieser, P. 769
Diana Wile, P. 147
James D. Wilkinson, P. 1450
Paula Williams, P. 1136, 1138, 1651
Redford B. Williams, P. 2341, 2344
Virginia P. Williams, P. 2341
Dawn Wilson, P. 1980, 2090
Oliver J. Wilson, P. 1947
Kelly Winter, P. 1165
Katie Witkiewitz, P. 2376
Michael Withthöft, P. 795, 1634
Jutta M. Wolf, P. 1187, 1772, 1773
Oliver T. Wolf, P. 1086
Timothy Wolf, P. 1848
Patricia Woltz, P. 317
Cara Wong, P. 221
Patricia M. Wong, P. 1964
Jennifer Wortmann, P. 1873
Emily M. Wright, P. 442, 487
Rex A. Wright, P. 186, 188, 1626, 2211
Ellen Wuest, P. 573, 757, 1253, 1257, 1260, 1261, 1262, 1545, 1802, 2356
Alexandra Wuttke-Linnemann, P. 1439
Naoya Yahagi, P. 44, 200
Yu Yamada, P. 424, 1555
Yoshiharu Yamamoto, P. 86
Yuko Yanai, P. 1797
Betina R. Yanez, P. 304
Samantha Yard, P. 628
M. Taghi Yasamy, P. 2357
Siqin Ye, P. 31, 113, 371, 427, 530, 555, 557, 755, 1031, 1081, 1250
Jason S. Yeh, P. 650, 1166
Ilona S. Yim, P. 1333
Alyssa Ylinen, P. 7, 55, 150, 260, 309, 544, 744, 755, 1010, 1175, 1738, 1977, 2242
Deborah Lee Young-Hyman, P. 1455, 1456
Xiaohui Yu, P. 1094, 1100, 1101, 1104
Lauren Zagorski, P. 678
Ydwine Zanstra, P. 94
Alex Zautra, P. 153
Chris Zehr, P. 1354, 1644, 1704
Kristin A. Zernicke, P. 486, 868, 914, 926, 1348, 2289, 2323
Emily Zielinski-Gutierrez, P. 226
Cortney Taylor Zimmerman, P. 1720
Sheryl Zimmerman, P. 1630
Tanja Zimmermann, P. 571

Acknowledgments

For this second edition of the *Encyclopedia of Behavioral Medicine*, I must begin by acknowledging the original creator of the idea for this Encyclopedia, the now-retired former Senior Editor from Springer Nature, Janice Stern. Janice was the driving force for the first edition when she approached me at the International Congress of Behavioral Medicine held in Tokyo, August 2008, to discuss this project and subsequently assisted through the publication process with its release in the Summer of 2012, in conjunction the International Congress of Behavioral Medicine held in Budapest. It was a few short years after the publication of the first edition that Janice was busy convincing me that it was time to begin preparing the second edition that you are now reading. Janice stayed with the project until her retirement at the end of 2017. I am indebted to her for her friendship.

A heartfelt thanks to all authors of the entries in both editions of the Encyclopedia. You are experts in your respective fields, and you have done a great service to the discipline of behavioral medicine by contributing to this authoritative resource for researchers, practicing clinicians, and the students that are the future of our discipline.

While no longer serving as the co-editor for the *Encyclopedia of Behavioral Medicine*, J. Rick Turner has always been available as a consultant for this second edition. He has assisted on various projects and contributed with new entries. For this, I will always be grateful for his friendship, guidance, thoughtfulness, and writing skills.

Next I must acknowledge the Associate Editors. They come from multiple regions of the world and hence permit this work to be truly an international collaboration. Without their hard work and dedication to this project, we would not have the *Encyclopedia of Behavioral Medicine* in the form that you see it. They assisted in the selection of the terms that are included in the *Encyclopedia* and in the selection of the authors who developed each of the entries: sincere thanks to all of you.

I am beholden to the Springer Nature Major Reference Works team including Alexa Steele and Mary Baker. Mary was the editorial assistant that kept track of all of the new and updated entries, and in many ways was instrumental in bringing this second edition of the *Encyclopedia* to fruition.

Lastly, to my loving wife Jill. She has, and continues to be my co-pilot and life partner. Jill has been by my side throughout the development of both the first and second editions of the *Encyclopedia*. I could not have done this without your support.

Marc D. Gellman

About the Editor



Marc D. Gellman Editor-in-Chief, Encyclopedia of Behavioral Medicine

Marc D. Gellman, Ph.D., is a Research Associate Professor of Psychology at the University of Miami. He is also the Associate Director of the Behavioral Medicine Research Center and Associate Director of the Training Program in Cardiovascular Behavioral Medicine, located at the Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, where he holds a Secondary Appointment in the Department of Medicine. He has been a member of the faculty of the University of Miami since 1986, having previously received all of his formal training (B.S., M.S., and Ph.D. degrees) there.

Since 1986, Dr. Gellman has been continuously funded by the National Institutes of Health, primarily in the area of Cardiovascular Behavioral Medicine. He has published in a variety of journals including: *Journal of the American Medical Association*, *Psychosomatic Medicine*; *Health Psychology*, *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, *Genome Biology*, *Addictive Behaviors*, *Psychophysiology*, and many others. Dr. Gellman currently serves on the Editorial Advisory Board for the McGraw Hill *Annual Editions: Drugs, Society and Behavior*. He previously served on the Editorial Board of the Sage Publications scientific book series Behavioral Medicine and Health Psychology from 1997 to 2004, edited by Dr. J. Rick Turner, his co-editor for the first edition of this Encyclopedia.

Dr. Gellman is a former Board Member of the International Society of Behavioral Medicine, serving as its Secretary from 2004 to 2008 and Chair of the Communications Committee from 2000 to 2004. From 2004 to 2006 he served as

Program Co-chair for the International Congress of Behavioral Medicine. He is a long-time Board Member of the Society of Behavioral Medicine, serving in various capacities from 1996 to 2007. He continues to serve as a member of the Wisdom Council for the Society of Behavioral Medicine.

Dr. Gellman is the recipient of the Distinguished Service Award from the Society of Behavioral Medicine (multiple times) and the Outstanding Service Award from the International Society of Behavioral Medicine. He is a Fellow of the Society of Behavioral Medicine, and also a member of American Psychological Association, Society for Health Psychology, American Psychosomatic Society, and the International Society of Behavioral Medicine. In 2016, he received the Distinguished Career Contribution Award from the International Society of Behavioral Medicine.

In his spare time, Dr. Gellman is an avid bicycle rider and enjoys “out of car experiences” with his wife Jill, touring numerous countries on their tandem bicycle. He is a wine aficionado, an enthusiast of rock, jazz, and reggae music, and occasionally lectures on the influence drugs have on culture, being inspired by his attendance at the historic Woodstock Music and Art Festival in 1969.

Associate Editors



Mustafa al'Absi

University of Minnesota Medical School
Duluth, USA



Alan J. Christensen

Department of Psychology
The University of Iowa Spence
Iowa City, USA



Alan M. Delamater

University of Miami Miller School of Medicine
Miami, USA

**Yori Gidron**

Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile
Lille, France

**Michele L. Okun**

University of Colorado Colorado Springs
Colorado Springs, USA

**Martica H. Hall** University of Pittsburgh
Pittsburgh, USA**Tavis S. Campbell**

University of Calgary
Calgary, Canada



Simon L. Bacon

Concordia University and Montreal
Behavioural Medicine Centre
CIUSSS du Nord-de-l'île-de-Montréal
Montreal, Canada



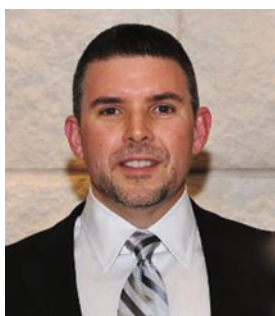
Steven A. Safren

University of Miami
Coral Gables, USA



Urs M. Nater

University of Vienna
Vienna, Austria



Frank J. Penedo

Northwestern University
Chicago, USA



Anna C. Whittaker
University of Stirling
Stirling, UK



Barbara Resnick
University of Maryland
Baltimore, USA



Marie Boltz
Pennsylvania State University
University Park, USA



J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy
and Health Sciences
Buies Creek, USA



Linda C. Baumann
University of Wisconsin-Madison
Madison, USA



Deborah J. Wiebe
University of California, Merced
Merced, USA



Kazuhiro Yoshiuchi
Department of Stress Sciences and
Psychosomatic Medicine
Graduate School of Medicine
Bunkyo-ku, Japan



Marc D. Gellman
Behavioral Medicine Research Center
Department of Psychology
University of Miami
Miami, USA



Emily Lattie
Northwestern University
Chicago, USA



Kerry A. Sherman
Macquarie University
Sydney, Australia

Advisory Board

Linda D. Cameron The University of Auckland, Auckland, New Zealand

Margaret A. Chesney University of California, San Francisco, San Francisco, CA, USA

Joel E. Dimsdale University of California San Diego, La Jolla, CA, USA

Laura L. Hayman College of Nursing and Health Sciences, University of Massachusetts Boston, Director of Research, GoKids Boston, Boston, MA, USA

Norito Kawakami Graduate School of Medicine, University of Tokyo, Tokyo, Japan

Brian Oldenburg Department of Epidemiology and Preventive Medicine, Faculty of Medicine, Nursing and Health Sciences, Monash University, Victoria, Australia

Winfried Rief Philipps-Universität Marburg, Marburg, Germany

Neil Schneiderman Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

Andrew Steptoe Department of Epidemiology and Public Health, University College London, London, UK

Stephen M. Weiss Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, University of Miami Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Redford B. Williams Division of Behavioral Medicine, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Contributors

David B. Abrams Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health, The Schroeder Institute for Tobacco Research and Policy Studies at Legacy, Washington, DC, USA

Howard Aizenstein Geriatric Psychiatry Neuroimaging, Western Psychiatric Institute and Clinic, University of Pittsburgh Medical Center, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Tatsuo Akechi Department of Psychiatry and Cognitive-Behavioral Medicine, Graduate School of Medical Sciences, Nagoya City University, Mizuho-cho, Mizuho-ku, Nagoya, Japan

Mustafa al'Absi University of Minnesota Medical School, School of Medicine, University of Minnesota, Duluth, MN, USA

Jessica Alcorso Macquarie University, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Melissa A. Alderfer Division of Oncology, The Children's Hospital of Philadelphia, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Sarah Aldred School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Katie E. Alegria Psychological Sciences, University of California, Merced, Merced, CA, USA

Nida Ali Department of Psychology, University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria

Julia Allan School of Medicine and Dentistry, University of Aberdeen, Aberdeen, Scotland, UK

Peter Allebeck Department of Public Health Sciences, Karolinska Institute, Stockholm, Sweden

Josh Allen Care and Compliance Group, Inc., American Assisted Living Nurses Association, Wildomar, CA, USA

Bruce S. Alpert Department of Pediatrics, University of Tennessee Health Science Center, Memphis, TN, USA

Leila Anane School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

David E. Anderson Division of Nephrology, Department of Medicine, University of California, San Francisco, CA, USA

Giles M. Anderson Oxford Brookes University, Oxford, UK

Norman B. Anderson Faculty Leadership Development Program, Florida State University, Tallahassee, FL, USA

Gerhard Andersson Department of Behavioural Science and Learning, Linköping University, Linköping, Sweden

Tetusya Ando Department of Psychosomatic Research, National Institute of Mental Health, National Center of Neurology and Psychiatry, Kodaira-shi, Tokyo, Japan

Mike Antoni Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Sylvester Cancer Center, Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Hannah Appleseth University of Minnesota Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

William Arguelles Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

Danielle Arigo Department of Psychology, Rowan University, Glassboro, NJ, USA

Wiebke Arlt Institute of Metabolism and Systems Research, The University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

Arpo Aromaa Health and Functional Capacity, National Institute for Health and Welfare, Helsinki, Finland

Elva Arredondo Division of Health Promotion and Behavioral Sciences, San Diego State University, San Diego, CA, USA

Lisa G. Aspinwall Department of Psychology, The University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Kristin J. August Department of Psychology, Rutgers University, Camden, NJ, USA

Robin Austin School of Nursing, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Kieran Ayling Division of Primary Care, School of Medicine, University of Nottingham, Nottingham, UK

Simon L. Bacon Department of Exercise Science, Concordia University and Montreal Behavioural Medicine Centre, CIUSSS-NIM: Hopital du Sacre-Coeur de Montreal, Montreal, QC, Canada

Department of Health, Kinesiology, and Applied Physiology, Concordia University and Montreal Behavioural Medicine Centre, CIUSSS du Nord-de-l'île-de-Montréal, Montreal, QC, Canada

Rachel N. Baek Clinical Psychology, Health Emphasis, Ferkauf Graduate School of Psychology, Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

Jonathan Z. Bakdash Department of Psychology and Special Education, Texas A&M–Commerce, Commerce, TX, USA

Elizabeth Baker Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

Priya Balaji Department of Medicine and Program in Health Disparities Research, University of Minnesota Medical School, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Austin S. Baldwin Department of Psychology, Southern Methodist University, Dallas, TX, USA

Chad Barrett Department of Psychology, University of Colorado, Denver, CO, USA

Jennifer A. Bartz Department of Psychology, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Abigail Batchelder Diabetes Research Center, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

Michele Crites Battié Department of Physical Therapy, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

G. David Batty Department of Epidemiology and Public Health, University College London, London, UK

Carolyn Baum Program in Occupational Therapy, Washington University School of Medicine in St. Louis, St. Louis, MO, USA

Linda C. Baumann School of Nursing, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

Elliott A. Beaton Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences and the M.I.N.D. Institute, University of California-Davis, Sacramento, CA, USA

C. Andres Bedoya Behavioral Medicine Service Department of Psychiatry, Massachusetts General Hospital, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA

Catherine Benedict Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

M. Bernardine Centers for Behavioral and Preventive Medicine, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA

Ryan M. Beveridge Department of Psychological and Brain Sciences, University of Delaware, Newark, DE, USA

Stephen Birch Clinical Epidemiology and Biostatistics (CHEPA), McMaster University, Hamilton, ON, Canada

Orit Birnbaum-Weitzman Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Kacie Allen Blackman Department of Human Nutrition, Foods, and Exercise, Virginia Tech, Blacksburg, VA, USA

Twyla Blackmond Larnell Loyola University Chicago, Chicago, IL, USA

James A. Blumenthal Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC, USA

Guy Bodenmann Department of Psychology, University of Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland

Marie Boltz The Pennsylvania State University College of Nursing, State College, PA, USA

Susan J. Bondy Dalla Lana School of Public Health, University of Toronto, Toronto, ON, Canada

Stephan Bongard Department of Psychology, Goethe-University, Frankfurt am Main, Germany

Brian Borsari Department of Veterans Affairs Medical Center, Mental Health Service, San Francisco, CA, USA

Department of Behavioral and Social Sciences, Center for Alcohol and Addiction Studies, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA

Jos A. Bosch Department of Clinical Psychology, Faculty of Social and Behavioral Sciences, University of Amsterdam, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Stephanie Bowlin Department of Psychology, University of Kansas, Lawrence, KS, USA

Sophia Brady School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation Sciences, University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

Nicole Brandt School of Pharmacy, University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Lauren Brenner Center for Behavioral Intervention Technologies, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Dana Brimmer Division of High-Consequence Pathogens and Pathology, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, McKing Consulting Corporation, Atlanta, GA, USA

Carrie Brintz Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

Caitlin A. Bronson Department of Psychology, Rutgers, The State University of New Jersey, Piscataway, NJ, USA

J. F. Brosschot Clinical, Health and Neuro Psychology, Leiden University, Leiden, The Netherlands

Frankie F. Brown Department for Health, University of Bath, Bath, UK

Jennifer L. Brown Department of Behavioral Sciences and Health Education, Emory University School of Public Health, Atlanta, GA, USA

Bonnie Bruce Division of Immunology and Rheumatology, Stanford University Department of Medicine, Palo Alto, CA, USA

Vaughn Bryant Behavioral and Social Sciences, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA

Patrícia Cardoso Buchain Occupational Therapist of the Occupational Therapy Service, Institute of Psychiatry – Hospital das Clínicas University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

Tony W. Buchanan Department of Psychology, Saint Louis University, Saint Louis, MO, USA

Ross Buck Communication Sciences and Psychology, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Romola S. Bucks School of Psychological Science, The University of Western Australia (M304), Perth, WA, Australia

Donna C. Burdzy Department of Psychology, Bowling Green State University, Bowling Green, OH, USA

Rachel J. Burns Department of Psychiatry, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Michelle Nicole Burns Feinberg School of Medicine, Department of Preventive Medicine, Center for Behavioral Intervention Technologies, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Victoria E. Burns School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

David Busse Department of Psychology and Social Behaviour, University of California, Irvine, Irvine, CA, USA

Natalie E. Bustillo Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

Colin D. Butler National Centre for Epidemiology and Population Health, Australian National University, Canberra, ACT, Australia
College of Arts, Humanities and Social Sciences, Flinders University, Adelaide, Australia

Jorie Butler Department of Psychology, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Melissa M. A. Buttner Department of Psychology, University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

John T. Cacioppo Department of Psychology, The University of Chicago, Chicago, IL, USA

Demetria Cain Center for Health Intervention and Prevention, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Matthew Calamia Department of Psychology, University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

David Cameron Information School, The University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

Linda D. Cameron Psychological Sciences, University of California, Merced, Merced, CA, USA

Nerissa Campbell Exercise and Health Psychology Laboratory, The University of Western Ontario, London, ON, Canada

Tavis S. Campbell Department of Psychology, University of Calgary, Calgary, AB, Canada

Turhan Canli Department of Psychology, Stony Brook University Psychology B-214, Stony Brook, NY, USA

Leeanne M. Carey Occupational Therapy, School of Allied Health, La Trobe University, Melbourne, VIC, Australia

Rachel Carey University College London, London, UK

Jordan Carlson Public Health, San Diego State University, University of California San Diego, San Diego, CA, USA

Adriana Carrillo Department of Pediatrics, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Douglas Carroll School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Judith Carroll Cousins Center for Psychoneuroimmunology, University of California, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Linda Carroll Department of Public Health Sciences, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Jennifer Carter The University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Charles Carver Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

Pedro C. Castellon Epidemiology and Public Health, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Fong Chan Department of Rehabilitation Psychology and Special Education, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

Sherilynn F. Chan Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center, University of Cincinnati College of Medicine, Cincinnati, OH, USA

Matthieu Chansard Department of Psychiatry, The University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center at Dallas Columbia University/New York State Psychiatric Institute, Dallas, TX, USA

Stephenie Chaudoir Department of Psychology, Bradley University, Peoria, IL, USA

Margaret A. Chesney Department of Medicine and Osher Center for Integrative Medicine, University of California, San Francisco, CA, USA

Ornit Chiba-Falek Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC, USA

Yoichi Chida Faculty of Human Happiness Office 4, Happy Science University 4F, Chosei-mura, Chosei-gun, Japan

Department of Medical Science, Happy Science Clinic, Kawasaki City, Japan

Olveen Carrasquillo Chief Division of General Internal Medicine, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Michael S. Chmielewski Department of Psychology, University of Toronto, Toronto, ON, Canada

Julie Chronister Department of Counseling, San Francisco State University, San Francisco, CA, USA

Linda Cillessen Center for Mindfulness, Department of Psychiatry, Radboud University Medical Center, Nijmegen, The Netherlands

Donders Institute for Brain, Cognition and Behaviour, Radboud University, Nijmegen, The Netherlands

Molly S. Clark Midwestern University College of Health Sciences, Clinical Psychology, Glendale, AZ, USA

Tyler Clark School of Psychology, The University of Sydney, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Benjamin L. Clarke Academic Health Center, School of Medicine-Duluth Campus, University of Minnesota, Duluth, MN, USA

Tainya C. Clarke Department of Epidemiology and Public Health, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Lindy Clemson Ageing, Work and Health Research Unit, Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Sydney, Lidcombe, NSW, Australia

Stephen Clift Sidney de Haan Research Centre for Arts and Health, Canterbury Christ Church University, Canterbury, UK

Lorenzo Cohen Department of Palliative, Rehabilitation, and Interactive Medicine, Division of Cancer Medicine, The University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center, Houston, TX, USA

Susan E. Collins Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, University of Washington, Harborview Medical Center, Seattle, WA, USA

Persis Commissariat Clinical Psychology, Health Emphasis, Ferkauf Graduate School of Psychology, Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

Félix R. Compen Center for Mindfulness, Department of Psychiatry, Radboud University Medical Center, Nijmegen, The Netherlands

Donders Institute for Brain, Cognition and Behaviour, Radboud University, Nijmegen, The Netherlands

Richard J. Contrada Department of Psychology, Rutgers, The State University of New Jersey, Piscataway, NJ, USA

Michael James Coons Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Susannah D. Copland Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Reproductive Endocrinology and Fertility, Duke Fertility Center, Durham, NC, USA

Quirino Cordeiro Department of Psychiatry and Psychological Medicine, Santa Casa Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

Erin S. Costanzo Department of Psychiatry, Carbone Cancer Center, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

Simon J. Craddock Lee Department of Clinical Sciences, The University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Monique F. Crane Macquarie University, North Ryde/Sydney, NSW, Australia

Jennifer Creek Occupational Therapist, Guisborough, North Yorkshire, UK

Matthew Cribbet Department of Psychology, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Hugo Critchley Brighton and Sussex Medical School, University of Sussex, Brighton, East Sussex, UK

Crista N. Crittenden Department of Psychology, Carnegie Mellon University, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Sierra Cronan Department of Psychology and Health Psychology Program, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Andrea Croom Department of Psychology, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Rick Crosby University of Kentucky, Lexington, KY, USA

Jennifer Cumming School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Cassie Cunningham College of Public Health, University of Iowa, Liberty, IA, USA

Maurizio Cutolo Department of Internal Medicine, Research Laboratories and Academic Unit of Clinical Rheumatology, University of Genova, Genoa, Italy

Elizabeth da Silva Cardoso Department of Educational Foundations and Counseling Programs, The City University of New York-Hunter College, New York, NY, USA

Amber Daigre Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Catherine Darker Public Health and Primary Care, Institute of Population Health, School of Medicine, Trinity College Dublin, The University of Dublin, Dublin, Ireland

Karina Davidson Department of Medicine, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Gary Davis Medical School Duluth, University of Minnesota, Duluth, MN, USA

Mary C. Davis Department of Psychology, Arizona State University, Tempe, AZ, USA

Karen Dawe School of Social and Community Medicine, University of Bristol, Bristol, UK

Marijke De Couck Free University of Brussels (VUB), Jette, Belgium

Stefanie De Jesus Exercise and Health Psychology Laboratory, The University of Western Ontario, London, ON, Canada

Karla Espinosa de los Monteros Clinical Psychology, SDSU/UCSD Joint Doctoral Program in Clinical Psychology, San Diego, CA, USA

Alexandra Martini de Oliveira Occupational Therapy Service, Institute of Psychiatry – Hospital das Clínicas University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

Maartje de Wit Medical Psychology, VU University Medical Center, Amsterdam, North Holland, The Netherlands

Denise de Ybarra Rodríguez Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

Scott DeBerard Department of Psychology, Utah State University, Logan, UT, USA

Joost Dekker Department of Psychiatry and Department of Rehabilitation Medicine, VU University Medical Centre, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Alan M. Delamater Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Kelly S. DeMartini Division of Substance Abuse, School of Medicine, Yale University, New Haven, CT, USA

Michael I. Demidenko VA Portland Health Care System, Portland, OR, USA
Oregon Health and Science University, Portland, OR, USA

Johan Denollet CoRPS – Center of Research on Psychology in Somatic diseases, Tilburg University, Tilburg, The Netherlands

Ellen-ge Denton Department of Medicine Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Stuart Derbyshire National University of Singapore, Singapore, Singapore

Martin Deschner Psychiatry, Division of Psychology, The University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center at Dallas, Dallas, TX, USA

Tamer F. Desouky Department of Psychology, The University of Texas at Arlington, Arlington, TX, USA

Mary Amanda Dew School of Medicine and Medical Center, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Sally Dickerson Pace University, New York, NY, USA

Andrea F. DiMartini School of Medicine and Medical Center, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Joel E. Dimsdale Department of Psychiatry, University of California San Diego, La Jolla, CA, USA

Ding Ding Graduate School of Public Health/Department of Family Preventive Medicine, San Diego State University/University of California San Diego, San Diego, CA, USA

Genevieve A. Dingle The University of Queensland, Brisbane, QLD, Australia

Beate Ditzen Department of Psychosocial Medicine, Heidelberg University, Heidelberg, Germany

Diane Dixon Department of Psychology, University of Strathclyde, Scotland, UK

Kelly Doran University of Maryland, Baltimore School of Nursing, Baltimore, MD, USA

Susan Dorsey School of Nursing, University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Monica Dowling Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Mark T. Drayson College of Medical and Dental Sciences, University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Michelle Drerup Sleep Disorders Center Neurological Institute, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH, USA

Frank A. Drews Department of Psychology, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Center for Human Factors in Patient Safety, VA Salt Lake City Health Care System, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Suzana Drobnjak Department of Psychology, University of Zurich, Binzmuehlestrasse, Switzerland

Joan L. Duda School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation Sciences, University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

Alejandra Duenas School of Management, IESEG, Paris, France

Joan Duer-Hefe Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Mariam Dum Jackson Memorial Hospital, Miami, FL, USA

Jennifer Duncan Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Christine Dunkel Schetter Department of Psychology, University of California, Los Angeles (UCLA), Los Angeles, CA, USA

Valerie Earnshaw Department of Public Health, Yale University, New Haven, CT, USA

Lisa A. Eaton Center for Health, Intervention, and Prevention, University of Connecticut, New Haven, CT, USA

Moritz Thede Eckart General and Biological Psychology, Department of Psychology, University of Marburg, Marburg, Germany

Ulrike Ehlert Department of Psychology, University of Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland

Alexandre Elhalwi McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Lorin Elias Department of Psychology, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon, SK, Canada

Helio Elkis Department and Institute of Psychiatry, University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

Lee Ellington Department of Nursing, College of Nursing, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Christopher G. Engeland Department of Biobehavioral Health, The Pennsylvania State University, University Park, PA, USA

Elissa S. Epel Department of Psychiatry, Weill Institute for Neurosciences, University of California, San Francisco, CA, USA

Jennifer Toller Erausquin Department of Public Health Education, University of North Carolina at Greensboro, Greensboro, NC, USA

Alexandra Erdmann Department of Psychiatry, Carbone Cancer Center, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

Sabrina Esbitt Clinical Psychology, Health Emphasis, Ferkauf Graduate School of Psychology, Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

Shaniff Esmail Department of Occupational Therapy, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Paul Estabrooks Department of Health Promotions, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Susan A. Everson-Rose Department of Medicine and Program in Health Disparities Research, University of Minnesota Medical School, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Rachel Faller Department of Public Health Education, University of North Carolina at Greensboro, Greensboro, NC, USA

Anja C. Feneberg Department of Applied Psychology: Health, Development, Enhancement and Intervention, Faculty of Psychology, University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria

Sally A. M. Fenton School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation Sciences, University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

Susan J. (Sue) Ferguson Department of Psychology, Macquarie University, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Cristina A. Fernandez Department of Epidemiology and Public Health, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Tania C. T. Ferraz Alves Department and Institute of Psychiatry, University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

Angela Fidler Pfammatter Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Tiffany Field Touch Research Institute, University of Miami, School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Robyn Fielder Center for Health and Behavior, Syracuse University, Syracuse, NY, USA

David J. Finitis Department of Psychology, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Simona Fischbacher Klinische Psychologie und Psychotherapie, Universität Zürich, Zürich, Switzerland

Susanne Fischer Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy, Institute of Psychology, University of Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland

Skye Fitzpatrick Department of Psychology, Ryerson University, Toronto, ON, Canada

Kelly Flannery School of Nursing, University of Maryland Baltimore, Baltimore, MD, USA

Magne Arve Flaten Department of Psychology, University of Tromsø, Tromsø, Norway

Sara Fleszar University of California, Merced, Merced, CA, USA

Serina Floyd Obstetrics and Gynecology, Duke Hospital, Raleigh, NC, USA

Rachel Flurie University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Susan Folkman Department of Medicine, School of Medicine, University of California San Francisco, San Mateo, CA, USA

Katherine T. Fortenberry Department of Family and Preventative Medicine, The University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Andrew Fox Recovery and Wellbeing Inpatient Services, Birmingham and Solihull Mental Health NHS Trust, Birmingham, West Midlands, UK

Kristen R. Fox Nationwide Childrens Hospital, Columbus, OH, USA

Christopher France Department of Psychology, Ohio University, Athens, OH, USA

Janis L. France Department of Psychology, Ohio University, Athens, OH, USA

Renée-Louise Franche School of Population and Public Health, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada

WorkSafe BC, Vancouver, BC, Canada

Institute for Work and Health, Toronto, ON, Canada

Anne Frankel Robert Stempel College of Public Health and Social Work, Florida International University, Miami, FL, USA

Elizabeth J. Franzmann Department of Otolaryngology, Division of Head and Neck Surgery, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Fred Friedberg Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Stony Brook University Medical Center, Stony Brook, NY, USA

Georita Marie Frierson Department of Psychology, Southern Methodist University, Dallas, TX, USA

Shin Fukudo Department of Behavioral Medicine, School of Medicine, Tohoku University Graduate, Seiryomachi, Aoba-ku, Sendai, Japan

Terry Fulmer Bouvé College of Health Sciences, Northeastern University, Boston, MA, USA

Julianne Holt-Lunstad Fulton Department of Psychology, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT, USA

Jens Gaab Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy, Department of Psychology, University of Basel, Basel, Switzerland

Amiram Gafni Department of Clinical Epidemiology and Biostatistics, Centre for Health Economics and Policy Analysis, McMaster University, Hamilton, ON, Canada

Elizabeth Galik School of Nursing, University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Stephen Gallagher Department of Psychology, Faculty of Education and Health Sciences, University of Limerick, Castletroy, Limerick, Ireland

Steven Gambert Department of Medicine, School of Medicine, University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Luis I. García Center for AIDS Intervention Research, Medical College of Wisconsin, Milwaukee, WI, USA

M. Kay Garcia Department of Palliative, Rehabilitation, and Interactive Medicine, Division of Cancer Medicine, The University of Texas MD Anderson Cancer Center, Houston, TX, USA

Ryan Garcia University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center at Dallas, Dallas, TX, USA

Luz M. Garcini Ethnic Minority and Multicultural Health SBM SIG Co-Chair, SDSU/UCSD Joint Doctoral Program in Clinical Psychology, San Diego, CA, USA

Stephanie L. Garey Department of Clinical and Health Psychology, College of Clinical Health and Health Professions, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL, USA

Mariana Garza Department of Psychology, University of North Texas, Denton, TX, USA

Robert J. Gatchel Department of Psychology, College of Science, University of Texas at Arlington, Arlington, TX, USA

Klaus Gebel School of Education, University of Newcastle, University Drive, Callaghan, NSW, Australia

City Futures Research Centre, University of New South Wales, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Pamela A. Geller Department of Psychology, Drexel University; Drexel University College of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Marc D. Gellman Behavioral Medicine Research Center, Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Login S. George Department of Psychology, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

William Gerin The College of Health and Human Development, University Park, PA, USA

Denis Gerstorff Institute of Psychology, Humboldt University, Berlin, Germany

Isha Ghosh School of Communication and Information, Rutgers University, New Brunswick, NJ, USA

Yori Gidron SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Supria K. Gill VA Portland Health Care System, Portland, OR, USA
Palo Alto University, Palo Alto, CA, USA

Annie T. Ginty School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Karen Glanz Schools of Medicine and Nursing, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Elizabeth Gleyzer Department of Psychology, William James College, Newton, MA, USA

Ronald Goldberg Diabetes Research Institute, University of Miami Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Carly M. Goldstein The Weight Control and Diabetes Research Center, The Miriam Hospital, Providence, RI, USA

Warren Alpert Medical School, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA

Stephanie P. Goldstein Warren Alpert Medical School, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA

Peter M. Gollwitzer Department of Psychology, New York University, New York, NY, USA

Heather Honoré Goltz HSR&D Center of Excellence, Michael E. DeBakey VA Medical Center (MEDVAMC 152), Houston, TX, USA

Department of Social Sciences, University of Houston-Downtown, Houston, TX, USA

Carley Gomez-Meade Department of Pediatrics, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Jeffrey S. Gonzalez Departments of Medicine and Epidemiology & Public Health, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Bronx, NY, USA

Patricia Gonzalez Institute for Behavioral and Community Health (IBACH), Graduate School of Public Health, San Diego State University, San Diego, CA, USA

Jeffrey L. Goodie Department of Medical and Clinical Psychology, Uniformed Services University of the Health Sciences, Bethesda, MD, USA

Daniel Gorrin Department of Physical Therapy, University of Delaware, Newark, DE, USA

John Grabowski Department of Psychiatry, Medical School, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Douglas A. Granger Center for Interdisciplinary Salivary Bioscience Research, School of Nursing, Bloomberg School of Public Health, and School of Medicine The Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, MD, USA

Douglas P. Gross Department of Physical Therapy, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Beth Grunfeld Department of Psychological Sciences, Birkbeck College, University of London, London, UK

Jessica Haberer Medicine and Center for Global Health, Massachusetts General Hospital, Harvard University, Boston, MA, USA

Tibor Hajos Medical Psychology, VU University Medical Center, Amsterdam, North Holland, The Netherlands

Chanita H. Halbert School of Medicine, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Judith A. Hall Department of Psychology, Northeastern University, Boston, MA, USA

Katherine S. Hall Durham VA Medical Center Geriatric Research, Education, and Clinical Center, Durham, NC, USA

Martica H. Hall Department of Psychiatry, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Peter A. Hall Faculty of Applied Health Sciences, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Heidi Hamann Department of Psychiatry, UT Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Mark Hamer Epidemiology and Public Health, Division of Population Health, University College London, London, UK

Fiona Louise Hamilton University College London, London, UK

Kyra Hamilton School of Applied Psychology, Menzies Health Institute Queensland, Griffith University, Brisbane, QLD, Australia

Margaret Hammersla University of Maryland School of Nursing, Baltimore, MD, USA

Reiner Hanewinkel Institute for Therapy and Health Research, Kiel, Germany

Nelli Hankonen Department of Lifestyle and Participation, National Institute for Health and Welfare University of Helsinki, Helsinki, Finland

Kazuo Hara Department of Metabolic Diseases, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Samantha M. Harden Department of Human Nutrition, Foods, and Exercise, Virginia Tech, Blacksburg, VA, USA

Manjunath Harlapur Center of Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Division of General Medicine, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

John Harlow School for the Future of Innovation in Society, Arizona State University, Tempe, AZ, USA

Victoria Harms Department of Psychology, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon, SK, Canada

Lisa Harnack Division of Epidemiology and Community Health, School of Public Health, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Stacey L. Hart Department of Psychology, Ryerson University, Toronto, ON, Canada

Briain O. Hartaigh School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Alison Hartman Department of Psychology, Drexel University, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Steven Harulow Royal College of Speech and Language Therapists, London, UK

Toshihide Hashimoto Division of Rehabilitation, Joumou Hospital, Maebashi, Japan

Masahiro Hashizume Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, Faculty of Medicine, Toho University, Ota-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Brant P. Hasler Western Psychiatric Institute and Clinic University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Misty A. W. Hawkins Department of Psychology, Oklahoma State University, Stillwater, OK, USA

Louise C. Hawkley Academic Research Centers, NORC at the University of Chicago, Chicago, IL, USA

Calvin Haws Workers' Compensation Board of Alberta Millard Health, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Laura L. Hayman College of Nursing and Health Sciences, University of Massachusetts Boston, Boston, MA, USA

Jennifer Heaney Clinical Immunology Service, The University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

Christine Heim Institute of Medical Psychology, Charité University Medicine Berlin, Berlin, Germany

Eric B. Hekler Nutrition Program, School of Nutrition and Health Promotion, Arizona State University, Phoenix, AZ, USA

Lois Jane Heller Department of Biomedical Sciences, University of Minnesota Medical School – Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

Miranda Hellman Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

Whitney M. Herge Department of Psychology, Texas Scottish Rite Hospital for Children, Dallas, TX, USA

Patricia Cristine Heyn Department of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation, University of Colorado Denver Anschutz Medical Campus School of Medicine, Aurora, CO, USA

Emma Hiatt Rehabilitation Psychology and Special Education, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

Angela M. Hicks Department of Psychology, Westminster College, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Benjamin Hidalgo Department of Psychiatry, Medical College of Wisconsin, Milwaukee, WI, USA

Catharina Hjortsberg The Swedish Institute for Health Economics, Lund, Sweden

Clare Hocking Faculty of Health and Environmental Sciences, Auckland University of Technology, Auckland, New Zealand

Richard Hoffman Academic Health Center, School of Medicine-Duluth Campus University of Minnesota, Duluth, MN, USA

Sara A. Hoffman Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Evanston, IL, USA

Maxine Holmqvist Clinical Health Psychology, University of Manitoba, Winnipeg, MB, Canada

Emily D. Hooker Psychology and Social Behaviour, University of California, Irvine, Irvine, CA, USA

Stephanie Ann Hooker Department of Psychology, University of Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Monica Webb Hooper Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

Christiane A. Hoppmann Department of Psychology, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada

M. Bryant Howren Department of Psychology, The University of Iowa and Iowa City VA Healthcare System, Iowa City, IA, USA

Brian M. Hughes School of Psychology, National University of Ireland, Galway, Galway, Ireland

Ryan Hulla Department of Psychology, College of Science, University of Texas at Arlington, Arlington, TX, USA

Mann Hyung Hur Public Administration, Chung-Ang University, Seoul, Korea

Seth Hurley Department of Psychology, University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Mustafa M. Husain Department of Psychiatry, The University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center at Dallas Columbia University/New York State Psychiatric Institute, Dallas, TX, USA

John Hustad Department of Medicine and Public Health Sciences, Penn State College of Medicine, Hershey, PA, USA

Shannon Idzik University of Maryland School of Nursing, Baltimore, MD, USA

University of Maryland Upper Chesapeake Health Comprehensive CARE Center, Bel Air, MD, USA

Shuji Inada Department of Stress Science and Psychosomatic Medicine, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Tokyo, Japan

Salvatore Insana Western Psychiatric Institute and Clinic, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Leah Irish Department of Psychiatry, School of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Daisuke Ito Department Clinical Psychology, Graduate School of Education, Hyogo University of Teacher Education, Kato, Hyogo, Japan

Makiko Ito Department of Stress Science and Psychosomatic Medicine, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Satoru Iwase Department Of Palliative Medicine, The University of Tokyo Hospital, Tokyo, Japan

Karen Jacobs Occupational Therapy, College of Health and Rehabilitation Science, Sargent College, Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

Farrah Jacquez Department of Psychology, University of Cincinnati, Cincinnati, OH, USA

Denise Janicki-Deverts Department of Psychology, Carnegie Mellon University, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Kate L. Jansen Behavioral Health, Midwestern University, Glendale, AZ, USA

Department of Family Medicine, University of Mississippi Medical Center, Jackson, MS, USA

Imke Janssen Department of Preventive Medicine, Rush University Medical Center, Chicago, IL, USA

Lisa M. Jaremka Department of Psychological and Brain Sciences, University of Delaware, Newark, DE, USA

Elissa Jelalian Department of Psychiatry, Rhode Island Hospital, Brown Medical School, Providence, RI, USA

Chad D. Jensen Department of Psychology, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT, USA

Jason Jent Department of Pediatrics, Mailman Center for Child Development, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Rong Jiang Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Alvin Jin Department of Psychology, University of South Florida College of Arts and Sciences, Tampa, FL, USA

Debra Johnson Department of Psychology, University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Jillian A. Johnson Department of Psychology, University of Calgary, Calgary, AB, Canada

Sara B. Johnson School of Medicine and Bloomberg School of Public Health, Johns Hopkins School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA

Derek Johnston School of Psychology, University of Aberdeen, Aberdeen, UK

Marie Johnston School of Medicine and Dentistry, University of Aberdeen, Aberdeen, UK

Phil Jones School of Geography, Earth and Environmental Sciences, University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Sarah Jones Skidmore College, Saratoga Springs, NY, USA

Randall Steven Jorgensen Department of Psychology, Syracuse University, Syracuse, USA

Melissa Julian George Washington University, Washington, DC, USA

Kauhanen Jussi Institute of Public Health and Clinical Nutrition, University of Eastern Finland, Kuopio, Finland

Vanessa Juth Nursing Science, University of California Irvine, Irvine, CA, USA

Yoshinobu Kanda Division of Hematology, Jichi Medical University Saitama Medical Center, Omiya-ku, Saitama, Japan

Maria Kangas Department of Psychology, Centre for Emotional Health, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Afton N. Kapuscinski Psychology Department, Syracuse University, Syracuse, NY, USA

Mardís Karlsdóttir Department of Psychology, The University of Iceland School of Health Sciences, Reykjavík, Iceland

Yoko Katayori Department of Behavioral Medicine, School of Medicine, Tohoku University Graduate, Seiryō-machi, Aoba-ku, Sendai, Japan

Erin E. Kauffman Department of Psychology, University of North Texas, Denton, TX, USA

Francine Kaufman Medtronic, Northridge, CA, USA

Peter Kaufmann Division of Prevention and Population Sciences, National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute Clinical Applications and Prevention Branch, Bethesda, MD, USA

Jacob J. Keech School of Applied Psychology, Menzies Health Institute Queensland, Griffith University, Brisbane, QLD, Australia

Quinn D. Kellerman Department of Psychology, University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Alan Kessedjian Clinical Psychologist, Birmingham, UK

Riyad Khanfer School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Falk Kiefer Department of Addictive Behaviour and Addiction Medicine, Central Institute of Mental Health, Mannheim, Germany

Hiroe Kikuchi Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, Center Hospital, National Center for Global Health and Medicine, Tokyo, Japan

Kristin Kilbourn Department of Psychology, University of Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Christopher J. Kilby Centre for Emotional Health, Department of Psychology, Macquarie University, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Tereza Killianova Free University of Brussels (VUB), Jette, Belgium

Jeong Han Kim Department of Clinical Counseling and Mental Health, Texas Tech University Health Science Center, Lubbock, TX, USA

Youngmee Kim Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

Pamela S. King Pediatric Prevention Research Center, Department of Pediatrics, Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Megan Kirouac Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, University of Washington, Harborview Medical Center, Seattle, WA, USA

Clemens Kirschbaum Department of Psychology, Faculty of Psychology, Technische Universität Dresden, Dresden, Germany

George D. Kitas Russells Hall Hospital, The Dudley Group NHS Foundation Trust, Dudley, UK

George D. Kitas Department of Rheumatology, Russells Hall Hospital, Dudley Group NHS Foundation Trust, Dudley, UK

Mika Kivimaki Epidemiology and Public Health, University College London, London, UK

Predrag Klasnja Group Health Research Institute, Seattle, WA, USA
School of Information, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI, USA

Maria Kleinstäuber Department of Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy,
Philipps University, Marburg, Germany

Wendy Klierer Department of Psychology, Virginia Commonwealth
University, Richmond, VA, USA

Christopher E. Kline Department of Health and Physical Activity, Univer-
sity of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Anna K. Koch University of Duisburg-Essen, Essen, Germany

Dorothea König Faculty of Psychology, University of Vienna, Vienna,
Austria

Carolyn Korbel The Neurobehavioral Clinic and Counseling Center, Lake
Forest, CA, USA

Rachel Kornfield Department of Communication Studies, Northwestern
University, Evanston, IL, USA

Emily Kothe School of Psychology, University of Sydney, Sydney, NSW,
Australia

Michael Kotlyar Department of Experimental and Clinical Pharmacology,
College of Pharmacy, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Marc A. Kowalkowski HSR&D Center of Excellence, Michael E. DeBakey
VA Medical Center (MEDVAMC 152), Houston, TX, USA

Department of Social Sciences, University of Houston-Downtown, Houston,
TX, USA

Tara Kraft Department of Psychology, University of Kansas, Lawrence, KS,
USA

Jean L. Kristeller Department of Psychology, Indiana State University,
Terre Haute, IN, USA

Kurt Kroenke Department of Medicine, Indiana University, Indianapolis,
IN, USA

Regenstrief Institute, Indianapolis, IN, USA

VA HSR&D Center for Implementing Evidence-Based Practice, Indianapolis,
IN, USA

Stefan Krumm University of Muenster, Muenster, Germany

Ulrike Kübler Department of Psychology, University of Zurich,
Binzmuehlestrasse, Zurich, Switzerland

Laura D. Kubzansky Department of Society, Human Development, and
Health, Harvard School of Public Health, Boston, MA, USA

Brigitte M. Kudielka Department of Medical Psychology, Psychological Diagnostics and Research Methodology, University of Regensburg, Regensburg, Germany

Kari C. Kugler Department of Biobehavioral Health, The Pennsylvania State University, University Park, PA, USA

Masayoshi Kumagai Department of Metabolic Diseases, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Tokyo, Japan

Keiki Kumano Department of Cell Therapy and Transplantation Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Yoshihiko Kunisato School of Human Sciences, Senshu University, Kawasaki, Kanagawa, Japan

Elyse Kupperman Clinical Psychology, Health Emphasis, Ferkauf Graduate School of Psychology, Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

Annette M. La Greca Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Pearl La Marca-Ghaemmaghami Department of Psychology, Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy, University of Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland

Seppo Laaksonen University of Helsinki, Helsinki, Finland

Lara LaCaille Department of Psychology, University of Minnesota Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

Rick LaCaille Psychology Department, University of Minnesota Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

Laura H. Lacritz Department of Psychology, The University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center at Dallas, Dallas, TX, USA

Karl-Heinz Ladwig Institut für Epidemiologie, GmbH, Neuherberg, Germany

Nathan Landers Department of Psychology, College of Science, University of Texas at Arlington, Arlington, TX, USA

Ryan R. Landoll Uniformed Services University of the Health Sciences, F. Edward Hebert School of Medicine, Bethesda, MD, USA

Joshua Landvatter Department of Psychology and Health Psychology Program, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Tanja Lange Department of Neuroendocrinology, University of Luebeck, Lübeck, Germany

Brittney Lange-Maia Department of Preventive Medicine, Rush University Medical Center, Chicago, IL, USA

Jost Langhorst Department for Internal and Integrative Medicine, Klinikum Bamberg, Bamberg, Germany

David Latini Scott Department of Urology, Baylor College of Medicine, Houston, TX, USA

Emily Lattie Center for Behavioral Intervention Technologies, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Kim Lavoie Department of Psychology, Montreal Behavioural Medicine Centre, University of Québec at Montreal (UQAM), Montréal, QC, Canada

Lauren Law Department of Psychology, University of South Carolina, Columbia, SC, USA

Hannah G. Lawman Department of Psychology, University of South Carolina, Columbia, SC, USA

David J. Lee Department of Epidemiology and Public Health, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Emily E. Lenk Wake Forest School of Medicine, Winston-Salem, NC, USA

Carter A. Lennon Department of Psychology, University of Connecticut, Center for Health, Intervention and Prevention, Storrs, CT, USA

Wen B. Leong Institute for Applied Health Research, The University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

Stephen J. Lepore Department of Public Health, Temple University, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Bonnie S. LeRoy Department of Genetics Cell Biology and Development, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Yvonne Leung Department of Psychosocial Oncology and Palliative Care, Princess Margaret Hospital, University Health Network/University of Toronto, Toronto, ON, Canada

Bonnie Levin Department of Neurology, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Helena Lewis-Smith Centre for Appearance Research, University of the West of England, Bristol, UK

Bingshuo Li University of Minnesota Medical School, School of Medicine, University of Minnesota, Duluth, MN, USA

Roselind Lieb Department of Psychology, Division of Clinical Psychology and Epidemiology, Basel, Switzerland

Jane Limmer Obstetrics and Gynecology, Duke Hospital, Durham, NC, USA

Bernt Lindahl Occupational and Environmental Medicine, Department of Public Health and Clinical Medicine, Umeå University, Umeå, Sweden

Martin Lindström Department of Clinical Sciences, Malmö, Sweden

Megan R. Lipe Department of Clinical Health and Psychology, University of Florida, College of Public Health and Health Professions, Gainesville, FL, USA

Steven E. Lipshultz Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Cecilia W. P. Li-Tsang Department of Rehabilitation Sciences, The Hong Kong Polytechnic University, Kowloon, Hong Kong, China

Maria Magdalena Llabre Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

Judy D. Lobo Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Valerie G. Loehr Department of Psychology, Southern Methodist University, Dallas, TX, USA

Joanna Long School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Kristin A. Long Department of Psychology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Sana Loue Department of Epidemiology and Biostatistics, Case Western Reserve University, School of Medicine, Cleveland, OH, USA

William R. Lovallo Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, University of Oklahoma Health Sciences Center and VA Medical Center, Oklahoma City, OK, USA

Travis I. Lovejoy Department of Psychiatry and School of Public Health, Oregon Health and Science University, Portland, OR, USA

Wei Lü Shaanxi Key Laboratory of Behavior and Cognitive Neuroscience, School of Psychology, Shaanxi Normal University, Xi'an, China

Tana M. Luger Department of Psychology, University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Anna Luke Department of Psychology, Kent State University, Kent, OH, USA

Mark A. Lumley Department of Psychology, Wayne State University, Detroit, MI, USA

M. Kathleen B. Lustyk Department of Behavioral and Social Sciences, Embry–Riddle Aeronautical University, Prescott, AZ, USA

Faith S. Luyster School of Nursing, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Kristin L. MacGregor Department of Psychology, Syracuse University, Syracuse, NY, USA

Anna MacKinnon Department of Psychology, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Shannon Madore Department of Psychology, University of Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Nicole E. Mahrer Department of Psychology, University of La Verne, La Verne, CA, USA

Elizabeth A. Majka Department of Psychology, The University of Chicago, Chicago, IL, USA

Jamil A. Malik National Institute of Psychology, Quaid-i-Azam University/ VU University Amsterdam, Islamabad, Pakistan

Neena Malik Department of Pediatrics, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Elizabeth M. Maloney Formerly of the Viral and Rickettsial Division, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, USA

Tsipora Mankovsky Department of Psychology, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Amy Jo Marciano-Reik Department of Bioethics, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH, USA

Center for Genetic Research Ethics and Law, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, OH, USA

Judy A. Marciel Perioperative Services, East Tennessee Children's Hospital, Knoxville, USA

Kristen K. Marciel Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, USA

Erin N. Marcus Division of General Internal Medicine, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Seth A. Margolis Clinical Psychology, Health Emphasis, Ferkauf Graduate School of Psychology, Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

Michela (Micky) Marinelli Department of Cellular and Molecular Pharmacology, Rosalind Franklin University of Medicine and Science, North Chicago, IL, USA

Jacqueline Markowitz Occupational Therapy, College of Health and Rehabilitation Science, Sargent College, Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

David G. Marrero Diabetes Translational Research Center, Indiana University School of Medicine, Indianapolis, IN, USA

Meghan L. Marsac Department of Pediatrics, Kentucky Children's Hospital and College of Medicine, University of Kentucky, Lexington, PA, USA

Elaine Marshall University of Minnesota Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

Alexandra Martin Friedrich-Alexander University Erlangen-Nürnberg, University Hospital, Erlangen, Erlangen, Germany

Kevin S. Masters Department of Psychology, University of Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Della Matheson Diabetes Research Institute, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Yoshinobu Matsuda National Hospital Organization, Kinki-Chuo Chest Medical Center, Sakai shi, Osaka, Japan

Hiromichi Matsuoka Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, Kinki University Faculty of Medicine, Osakasayama, Osaka, Japan

Yutaka Matsuyama Department of Biostatistics, School of Public Health, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Sonia Matwin Department of Psychiatry, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA

Alfred L. McAlister Behavioral Sciences, University of Texas School of Public Health, Austin, TX, USA

Lisa M. McAndrew War Related Illness and Injury Study Center, Veterans Affairs NJ Healthcare System, East Orange, NJ, USA

Jeanette McCarthy Community and Family Medicine, Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC, USA

Shawn McClintock Department of Psychiatry, The University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center at Dallas Columbia University/New York State Psychiatric Institute, Dallas, TX, USA

Lance M. McCracken Psychology Department, Institute of Psychiatry, King's College London, London, UK

James A. McCubbin Department of Psychology, Clemson University, Clemson, SC, USA

Hayley McDonald Centre for Emotional Health, Macquarie University, Macquarie Park, NSW, Australia

Bonnie McGregor Fred Hutchinson Cancer Research Center, Seattle, WA, USA

Brooke McInroy The University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

David McIntyre School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Tara McMullen Doctoral Program in Gerontology, University of Maryland Baltimore and Baltimore County, Baltimore, MD, USA

Marcia D. McNutt Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

Tamar Mendelson Mental Health, Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, MD, USA

Luigi Meneghini Diabetes Research Institute, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Melissa Merrick Division of Violence Prevention, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, USA

Shelby Messerschmitt-Coen Counselor Education and Supervision, The Ohio State University, Columbus, OH, USA

Sarah Messiah Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Miriam A. Mestre Department of Pediatrics, Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Elizabeth Mezick Department of Psychology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Kathleen Michael School of Nursing, University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Susan Michie University College London, London, UK

Eleanor Miles Department of Psychology, The University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

Donna Miller Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Health Statistics, Hyattsville, MD, USA

Robert Miller Faculty of Psychology, Technische Universität Dresden, Dresden, Germany

Tracie L. Miller Department of Pediatrics, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Rachel Millstein Clinical Psychology, University of California, San Diego/ San Diego State University, San Diego, CA, USA

Faisal Mir School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Karlie M. Mirabelli East Carolina University, Greenville, NC, USA

Akihisa Mitani Department of Respiratory Medicine, The University of Tokyo Hospital, Tokyo, Japan

Department of Respiratory Medicine, Mitsui Memorial Hospital, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Jason W. Mitchell Center for AIDS Intervention Research, Medical College of Wisconsin, Milwaukee, WI, USA

Laura A. Mitchell Department of Psychology, School of Life Sciences, Glasgow Caledonian University, Glasgow, Scotland, UK

Koji Miyazaki Department of Hematology, Kitasato University School of Medicine, Sagamihara, Kanagawa, Japan

Marilyn Moffat Department of Physical Therapy, New York University, New York, NY, USA

David C. Mohr Feinberg School of Medicine, Department of Preventive Medicine, Center for Behavioral Intervention Technologies, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Kristine M. Molina Department of Psychological Sciences, University of California, Irvine, Irvine, CA, USA

Ivan Molton Department of Rehabilitation Medicine, University of Washington, Seattle, WA, USA

Jane Monaco Department of Biostatistics, The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

Enid Montague DePaul University, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Miranda Montrone Counselling Place, Glebe, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Pablo A. Mora Department of Psychology, The University of Texas at Arlington, Arlington, TX, USA

Theresa A. Morgan Alpert Medical School of Brown University, Department of Psychiatry, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA

Matthis Morgenstern Institute for Therapy and Health Research, Kiel, Germany

Chica Mori Department of Palliative Medicine, The University of Tokyo Hospital, Tokyo, Japan

Yoshiya Moriguchi Department of Psychophysiology, National Institute of Mental Health, National Center of Neurology and Psychiatry, Kodaira, Tokyo, Japan

Alexandre Morizio Department of Exercise Science, Concordia University, Montreal Behavioral Medicine Centre, Montreal, QC, Canada

Eleshia J. P. Morrison Department of Psychology, Ethnic Minority and Multicultural Health SBM SIG Chair, The Ohio State University, Columbus, OH, USA

Anett Mueller Department of Psychology, State University of New York at Stony Brook, Stony Brook, NY, USA

Hanna M. Mües Department of Clinical and Health Psychology, Faculty of Psychology, University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria

Matthew Muldoon Department of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Barbara Mullan Centre for Medical Psychology and Evidence-based Decision-making, University of Sydney, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Tomohiko Muratsubaki Department of Behavioral Medicine, School of Medicine, Tohoku University, Sendai, Japan

Elizabeth Murray University College London, London, UK

Julie Murray Utah State University, Logan, UT, USA

Seema Mutti School of Public Health and Health Systems, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Yoko Nagai Brighton and Sussex Medical School, University of Sussex, Brighton, East Sussex, UK

Eun-Shim Nahm School of Nursing, University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Motohiro Nakajima University of Minnesota Medical School, School of Medicine, University of Minnesota, Duluth, MN, USA

Misuzu Nakashima Hizen Psychiatric Center, Saga, Japan

Benjamin H. Natelson Department of Pain Medicine and Palliative Care, Beth Israel Medical Center and Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Bronx, NY, USA

Urs M. Nater Department of Psychology, University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria

Gabriana Navarrete Department of Behavioral and Social Sciences, Embry–Riddle Aeronautical University, Prescott, AZ, USA

Astrid Nehlig U666, INSERM, Faculty of Medicine, University of Strasbourg, Strasbourg, France

Alexandra Nelson Child and Family Psychological Services/Integrated Behavioral Associates, Weymouth, MA, USA

Ashley M. Nelson Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, MA, USA

Kimberly Nelson Department of Psychology, University of Washington, Seattle, WA, USA

Jonathan Newman Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Sarah J. Newman Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Darren Nickel Department of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon, SK, Canada

Nicole Nisly Department of Internal Medicine, University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Karen Niven Manchester Business School, The University of Manchester, Manchester, UK

Kyle R. Noll Department of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation, Baylor College of Medicine, Houston, TX, USA

Wynne E. Norton Department of Health Behavior, School of Public Health, University of Alabama at Birmingham, Birmingham, AL, USA

Kathryn Noth Illinois Institute of Technology, College of Psychology, Chicago, IL, USA

Ciara M. O'Brien School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation Sciences, University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

Eoin O'Brien The Conway Institute, University College Dublin, Belfield, Dublin, Ireland

Julianne O'Daniel Illumina Inc, San Diego, CA, USA

Michael O'Hara Department of Psychology, University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Lindsay Oberleitner Department of Psychology, Wayne State University, Detroit, MI, USA

Gabriele Oettingen Department of Psychology, New York University, New York, NY, USA

Ken Ohashi Department of General Internal Medicine, National Cancer Center Hospital, Chuo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Keisuke Ohta Department of Metabolic Diseases, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Tokyo, Japan

Michele L. Okun Department of Psychology, University of Colorado Colorado Springs, Colorado Springs, CO, USA

Toru Okuyama Division of Psycho-oncology and Palliative Care, Nagoya City University Hospital, Nagoya, Aichi, Japan

Ellinor K. Olander City, University of London, London, UK

Brian Oldenburg School of Population and Global Health, The University of Melbourne, Melbourne, VIC, Australia

Sheina Orbell Department of Psychology, University of Essex, Essex, UK

Tracy Orleans Robert Wood Johnson Foundation, Princeton, NJ, USA

Kristina Orth-Gomér Department of Clinical Neuroscience, Karolinska Institute, Stockholm, Sweden

Patricia Osborne Clinical Psychology, Health Emphasis, Ferkauf Graduate School of Psychology, Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

Kenneth J. Ottenbacher Division of Rehabilitation Sciences, University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston, TX, USA

Margaret E. Ottenbacher Institute for Translational Sciences, University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston, TX, USA

Nicole Overstreet Social Psychology, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Jan R. Oyebode Dementia Care, University of Bradford, Bradford, UK

Gozde Ozakinci Health Psychology, School of Medicine, University of St Andrews, St Andrews, UK

Debbie Palmer Department of Psychology, University of Wisconsin-Stevens Point, Stevens Point, WI, USA

Steven C. Palmer Abramson Cancer Center, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Kenneth Pargament Department of Psychology, Bowling Green State University, Bowling Green, OH, USA

Crystal L. Park Department of Psychology, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Joanne Park Workers' Compensation Board of Alberta Millard Health, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Department of Occupational Therapy, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Alyssa Parker UTSW Health Systems, South Western Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Kristen Pasko Department of Psychology, Rowan University, Glassboro, NJ, USA

Seema M. Patidar Department of Clinical and Health Psychology, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL, USA

Anna Maria Patino-Fernandez Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

David Pearson School of Psychology, University of Aberdeen, Aberdeen, UK

Hollie Pelloso Tusculum University, Greeneville, TN, USA

Jennifer Pellowski Department of Behavioral and Social Sciences, Brown University School of Public Health, Providence, RI, USA

Frank J. Penedo Department of Psychology, University of Miami and Cancer Survivorship Program, Sylvester Comprehensive Cancer Center, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Watcharaporn Pengchit Faculty of Psychology, Chulalongkorn University, Bangkok, Thailand

Donald Penzien Wake Forest School of Medicine, Winston-Salem, NC, USA

Deidre Pereira Department of Clinical Health and Psychology, University of Florida, College of Public Health and Health Professions, Gainesville, FL, USA

Edward L. Perkins Biomedical Sciences, Mercer University School of Medicine, Savannah, GA, USA

Richard Peter Institute of Epidemiology and Medical Biometry, University of Ulm, Ulm, Germany

Anna C. Phillips School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation Sciences, University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Alison Phillips Department of Psychology, Iowa State University, Ames, IA, USA

Sarah Piper Institute of Metabolic Science, Addenbrookes Hospital, Metabolic Research Laboratories, University of Cambridge, Cambridge, UK

Alefiah Z. Pishori Department of Psychology, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Helene J. Polatajko Department of Occupational Therapy and Occupational Science, Faculty of Medicine, University of Toronto, Toronto, ON, Canada

Lynda H. Powell Department of Preventive Medicine, Rush University Medical Center, Chicago, IL, USA

Glenn Pransky Center for Disability Research, Liberty Mutual Research Institute for Safety, Hopkinton, MA, USA
University of Massachusetts Medical School, Worcester, MA, USA

Harry Prapavessis Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Western Ontario, London, ON, Canada

Aric A. Prather Center for Health and Community, University of California, San Francisco, CA, USA

Courtney C. Prather Department of Psychology, University of North Texas, Denton, TX, USA

Sarah D. Pressman Psychology and Social Behaviour, University of California, Irvine, CA, USA

James O. Prochaska Clinical and Health Psychology, University of Rhode Island, Kingston, RI, USA

Elizabeth R. Pulgaron Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Naum Purits Stockholm, Sweden

Pekka Puska National Institute for Health and Welfare (THL), Helsinki, Finland

Conny W. E. M. Quaedflieg Faculty of Psychology and Neuroscience, Maastricht University, Maastricht, MD, The Netherlands

Mashfiqui Rabbi Harvard University, Cambridge, MA, USA

Whitney Raglin Department of Psychology, University of Cincinnati, Cincinnati, OH, USA

Jeanetta Rains Center for Sleep Evaluation, Elliot Hospital, Manchester, NH, USA

P. H. Amelie Ramirez Department of Epidemiology and Biostatistics, The University of Texas Health Science Center at San Antonio, San Antonio, TX, USA

Isabel F. Ramos Department of Psychology, UCLA, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Ashley K. Randall College of Integrative Sciences and Arts, Arizona State University, Tempe, AZ, USA

Sheah Rarback Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Holly Rau Department of Psychology, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Maija Reblin College of Nursing, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Jerrald Rector Purdue University, West Lafayette, IN, USA

Gabriela Reed Psychiatry, Children's Medical Center, UT Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

William Reeves Office of Surveillance, Epidemiology and Laboratory Services Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, USA

Emily W. Reid Department of Psychology, Drexel University, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Ulf-Dietrich Reips Department of Psychology, Universität Konstanz, Konstanz, Germany

Anthony Remaud Elisabeth Bruyere Research Institute, University of Ottawa, Ottawa, ON, Canada

Kirsten Rene Department of Psychology, Brandeis University, Waltham, MA, USA

Michiel F. Reneman Department of Rehabilitation Medicine, University of Groningen, University Medical Center Groningen, Groningen, The Netherlands

Barbara Resnick School of Nursing, University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Spencer M. Richard Department of Psychology, Utah State University, Logan, UT, USA

Michael Richter Department of Psychology, University of Geneva, Geneva, Switzerland

Nina Rieckmann Berlin School of Public Health, Charité Universitätsmedizin, Berlin, Germany

Winfried Rief Department of Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy, Philipps University of Marburg, Marburg, Germany

Kristen Riley Department of Psychology, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Deborah Rinehart Denver Health and Hospital Authority, Denver, CO, USA

Lynnee Roane School of Nursing, University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Christopher Robert Department of Psychology, College of Science, University of Texas at Arlington, Arlington, TX, USA
University of Missouri, Columbia, MO, USA

Oswaldo Rodriguez Miami VA Healthcare System, Miami, FL, USA

Laura Rodriguez-Murillo Department of Psychiatry, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Kathryn A. Roecklein Department of Psychology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Megan Roehrig Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Nicolas Rohleder Department of Psychology, Brandeis University, Waltham, MA, USA

Chelsea Romney University of California, Los Angeles (UCLA), Los Angeles, CA, USA

Karen S. Rook Department of Psychology and Social Behavior, University of California Irvine, Irvine, CA, USA

Jed E. Rose Department of Psychiatry, Duke Center for Nicotine and Smoking Cessation Research, Durham, NC, USA

Leah Rosenberg Department of Medicine, School of Medicine, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Debra Roter Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health, Baltimore, MD, USA

Alexander J. Rothman Department of Psychology, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Eric Roy Department of Kinesiology, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Rachel S. Rubinstein Department of Psychology, Rutgers, The State University of New Jersey, Piscataway, NJ, USA

John Ruiz Department of Psychology, University of Arizona, Tucson, AZ, USA

John Ryan Department of Psychiatry, Western Psychiatric Institute and Clinic, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Valerie Sabol School of Nursing, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Rany M. Salem Broad Institute, Cambridge, MA, USA
Cambridge Center, Cambridge, MA, USA

Kristen Salomon Department of Psychology, University of South Florida College of Arts and Sciences, Tampa, FL, USA

Janine Sanchez Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Lee Sanders Center for Health Policy and Primary Care Outcomes Research, Stanford University, Stanford, CA, USA

Timothy S. Sannes Department of Clinical and Health Psychology, College of Clinical Health and Health Professions, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL, USA

Elizabeth Sargent Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Amy F. Sato Department of Psychology, Kent State University, Kent, OH, USA

Eve Saucier Brandeis University, Waltham, MA, USA

Shekhar Saxena Department of Mental Health and Substance Abuse, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Wolff Schlotz Institute of Experimental Psychology, University of Regensburg, Regensburg, Germany

Havah Schneider Ferkauf Graduate School of Psychology, Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

Neil Schneiderman Department of Psychology, Behavioral Medicine Research Center, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

Beth Schroeder University of Delaware, Newark, DE, USA

James W. Schroeder Genetics and Molecular Biology Program, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

Marie-Louise Schult Karolinska Institute, Department of Clinical Sciences, Department of Neurobiology, Care Sciences and Society, The Rehabilitation Medicine, University Clinic Danderyd Hospital, Stockholm, Sweden

Brandon K. Schultz East Carolina University, Greenville, NC, USA

M. Di Katie Sebastiano Kinesiology, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Sabrina Segal Department of Neurobiology and Behavior, University of California, Irvine, CA, USA

Theresa Senn Center for Health and Behavior, Syracuse University, Syracuse, NY, USA

Jonathan A. Shaffer Department of Medicine/Division of General Medicine, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Kelly M. Shaffer University of Virginia School of Medicine, Charlottesville, VA, USA

Peter A. Shapiro Department of Psychiatry, Columbia University Medical Center, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Leigh A. Sharma Department of Psychology, University of Iowa, Kenosha, WI, USA

Marianne Shaughnessy School of Nursing, University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Christopher Shaw Deakin University, Melbourne, VIC, Australia

William S. Shaw Center for Disability Research, Liberty Mutual Research Institute for Safety, Hopkinton, MA, USA

University of Massachusetts Medical School, Worcester, MA, USA

Tamara Goldman Sher The Family Institute at Northwestern University, Evanston, IL, USA

Kerry Sherman Department of Psychology, Centre for Emotional Health, Macquarie University, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Simon Sherry Department of Psychology, Dalhousie University, Halifax, NS, Canada

Vivek Shetty Oral and Maxillofacial Surgery, University of California, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Akihito Shimazu Department of Mental Health, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Daichi Shimbo Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Erica Shreck Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

Koseki Shunsuke Faculty of Psychology and Education, J. F. Oberlin University, Machida-shi, Tokyo, Japan

Johannes Siegrist Work Stress Research, Centre for Health and Society
Faculty of Medicine, University of Düsseldorf, Life Science Center,
Düsseldorf, Germany

Matthew A. Simonson Institute for Behavioural Genetics, Boulder, CO,
USA

Kit Sinclair School of Medical and Health Sciences, Tung Wah College,
Kowloon, Hong Kong, China

Abanish Singh Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC, USA

Vivek K. Singh School of Communication and Information, Rutgers
University, New Brunswick, NJ, USA

Bengt H. Sjölund University of Southern Denmark, Odense, DK, Denmark

Celette Sugg Skinner Clinical Sciences, The University of Texas Southwest-
ern Medical Center at Dallas Harold C. Simmons Cancer Center, Dallas, TX,
USA

Michelle Skinner Department of Psychology, University of Utah, Salt Lake
City, UT, USA

Nadine Skoluda Faculty of Psychology, University of Vienna, Vienna,
Austria

Tom Smeets Department of Medical and Clinical Psychology, Tilburg
School of Social and Behavioral Sciences, Tilburg University, Tilburg, The
Netherlands

Alicia K. Smith Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Emory University
SOM, Atlanta, GA, USA

Barbara Smith School of Nursing, University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD,
USA

Lauren Smith Department of Psychology, University of North Texas,
Denton, TX, USA

Timothy W. Smith Department of Psychology, University of Utah,
Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Howard Sollins Attorneys at Law, Shareholder at Baker Donelson in the
BakerOber Health Law Group, Baltimore, MD, USA

Colin L. Soskolne School of Public Health, University of Alberta, Edmon-
ton, AB, Canada

Ana Victoria Soto Medicine – Residency Program, Columbia University
Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Anne E. M. Speckens Center for Mindfulness, Department of Psychiatry,
Radboud University Medical Center, Nijmegen, The Netherlands

Mary Spiers Department of Psychology, Drexel University, Philadelphia,
PA, USA

Kevin S. Spink College of Kinesiology, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon, SK, Canada

Bonnie Spring Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Sara Mijares St. George Department of Public Health Sciences, University of Miami Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Tobias Stalder University Siegen, Siegen, Germany

Annette L. Stanton Department of Psychology, University of California, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Shannon L. Stark Department of Psychology, Arizona State University, Tempe, AZ, USA

Adrienne Stauder Institute of Behavioural Sciences, Semmelweis University Budapest, Budapest, Hungary

Michael E. Stefanek Department of Psychological Sciences, Augusta University, Augusta, GA, USA

Jeremy Steglitz Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Clinical Psychology Division, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Nikola Stenzel Department of Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy, Philipps University of Marburg, Marburg, Germany

Colleen Stiles-Shields Loyola University, Chicago, IL, USA
Northwestern University, The University of Chicago, Chicago, IL, USA

Anna M. Stone Thornley Street Surgery, Wolverhampton, UK

Madison E. Stout Department of Psychology, Oklahoma State University, Stillwater, OK, USA

Mark Stoutenberg Department of Kinesiology, Temple University, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Jana Strahler Clinical Biopsychology, Department of Psychology, University of Marburg, Marburg, Germany

Deborah M. Stringer Department of Psychology, University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Victoria Anne Sublette School of Public Health, University of Sydney, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Madalina L. Sucala Johnson & Johnson, Health and Wellness Solutions, New Brunswick, NJ, USA

Alyson Sularz Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Michael J. L. Sullivan Department of Psychology, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Hannah Süß Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy, Institute of Psychology, University of Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland

Shin-ichi Suzuki Faculty of Human Sciences, Graduate School of Human Sciences, Waseda University, Tokorozawa-shi, Saitama, Japan

Melanie Swan Philosophy Department, Purdue University, West Lafayette, IN, USA

C. Renn Upchurch Sweeney Salt Lake City Healthcare System, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Sefik Tagay Department of Psychosomatic Medicine and Psychotherapy, University of Duisburg-Essen, Essen, North Rhine-Westphalia, Germany

Shahrad Taheri Research Division, Weill Cornell Medicine, Doha, Qatar

Misato Takada Department of Socio-Economics, Faculty of Economics, Daito Bunka University, Higashimatsuyama-shi, Saitama, Japan

Yoshiyuki Takimoto Department of Stress Science and Psychosomatic Medicine, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Yukari Tanaka Department of Behavioral Medicine, School of Medicine, Tohoku University Graduate, Seiryomachi, Aoba-ku, Sendai, Japan

Molly L. Tanenbaum Clinical Psychology, Health Emphasis, Ferkauf Graduate School of Psychology, Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

Asuka Tanoue Advanced Research Center for Human Science, Waseda University, Tokorozawa, Saitama, Japan

Marc Taylor Behavioral Sciences and Epidemiology, Naval Health Research Center, San Diego, CA, USA

Robert N. Taylor Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Wake Forest School of Medicine, Winston-Salem, NC, USA

Jacqueline A. ter Stege Psychosocial Research and Epidemiology, Netherlands Cancer Institute, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Julian F. Thayer Department of Psychology, The Ohio State University, Columbus, OH, USA

Töres Theorell Stress Research Institute, Stockholm University, Stockholm, Sweden

G. Neil Thomas Institute for Applied Health Research, The University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

Roland Thomeé Department of Rehabilitation Medicine, Sahlgrenska University Hospital, Göteborg, Sweden

Dylan Thompson Department for Health, University of Bath, Bath, UK

Rebecca C. Thurston Department of Psychiatry, School of Medicine, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Warren Tierney Department of Psychology, Faculty of Education and Health Sciences, University of Limerick, Castletroy, Limerick, Ireland

Jasmin Tiro Department of Clinical Sciences, The University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Emil C. Toescu Division of Medical Sciences, The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Fumiharu Togo Graduate School of Education, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Akihiro Tokoro Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, National Hospital Organization, Kinki-Chuo Chest Medical Center, Sakai, Osaka, Japan

Kathryn N. Tomasino Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

A. Janet Tomiyama Rutgers University, New Brunswick, NJ, USA

Hansel Tookes Department of Epidemiology and Public Health, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

George J. Trachte Academic Health Center, School of Medicine-Duluth Campus, University of Minnesota, Duluth, MN, USA

Lara Traeger Behavioral Medicine Service, Massachusetts General Hospital/Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA

Vincent Tran Southwestern Medical Center, University of Texas, Dallas, TX, USA

William Trim Department for Health, University of Bath, Bath, UK

Wendy Troxel Psychiatry and Psychology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Emiko Tsuchiya Department of Behavioral Medicine, School of Medicine, Tohoku University Graduate, Seiryomachi, Aoba-ku, Sendai, Japan

Viana Turcios-Cotto Department of Psychology, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Barbara Turner The University of Texas Health Science Center at San Antonio, San Antonio, TX, USA

J. Rick Turner Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

James Edward Turner Department for Health, University of Bath, Bath, UK

Bert N. Uchino Department of Psychology and Health Psychology Program, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Jane Upton Department of Psychology, William James College, Newton, MA, USA

Antti Uutela Department for Lifestyle and Health, National Institute for Health and Welfare, Helsinki, Province of Uusimaa, Finland

Julia R. Van Liew Department of Psychology, University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Kavita Vedhara Division of Primary Care, School of Medicine, University of Nottingham, Nottingham, UK

Jet J. C. S. Veldhuijzen van Zanten School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation Sciences, University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

Bart Verkuil Clinical, Health and Neuro Psychology, Leiden University, Leiden, The Netherlands

Andrea C. Villanti Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health, The Schroeder Institute for Tobacco Research and Policy Studies at Legacy, Washington, DC, USA

Ana Vitlic University of Huddersfield, Huddersfield, UK

Adriana Dias Barbosa Vizzotto Occupational Therapist of the Occupational Therapy Service, Institute of Psychiatry – Hospital das Clínicas University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

Catharina Vogt RespectResearchGroup, University of Hamburg, Hamburg, Germany

John P. Vuchetich Department of Psychiatry, University of Minnesota School of Medicine, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Katarzyna Wac University of Copenhagen, Copenhagen, Denmark
QoL Lab, University of Geneva, Geneva, Switzerland

Amy Wachholtz Department of Psychology, University of Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Anton J. M. Wagenmakers Research Institute for Sport and Exercise Sciences, Liverpool John Moores University, Liverpool, UK

Melanie Wakefield Centre for Behavioural Research in Cancer, Cancer Council Victoria, Melbourne, VIC, Australia

Andrea Wallace College of Nursing, University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Margaret Wallhagen Department of Physiological Nursing, University of California San Francisco School of Nursing, San Francisco, CA, USA

Melissa Walls Biobehavioral Health and Population Sciences, University of Minnesota Medical School – Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

Kenneth A. Wallston School of Nursing, Vanderbilt University, Nashville, TN, USA

Jenny T. Wang Department of Medical Psychology, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Jennifer L. Warnick University of Florida, Gainesville, FL, USA

Andrew J. Wawrzyniak Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, University of Miami Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Thomas L. Webb Department of Psychology, The University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

Lisa Juliane Weckesser Faculty of Psychology, Technische Universität Dresden, Dresden, Germany

Mark Vander Weg Department of Internal Medicine, The University of Iowa and Iowa City VA Health Care System, Iowa City, IA, USA

Stephen M. Weiss Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Jennifer Wessel Public Health, School of Medicine, Indiana University, Indianapolis, IN, USA

William Whang Division of Cardiology, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Anthony J. Wheeler Department of Psychology, Utah State University, Logan, UT, USA

Angela White Department of Psychology, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Anna C. Whittaker School of Sport, Faculty of Health Science and Sport, University of Stirling, Stirling, UK

Timothy Whittaker The International Register of Herbalists and Homeopaths, Cinderford, Glos, UK

Timothy H. Wideman Department of Psychology, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Deborah J. Wiebe Psychological Sciences, University of California, Merced, Merced, CA, USA

Friedrich Wieser Department of Gynecology and Obstetrics, Emory University School of Medicine, Atlanta, GA, USA

Diana Wile Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

James D. Wilkinson Wayne State University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Paula Williams Department of Psychology, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Redford B. Williams Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Division of Behavioral Medicine, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Virginia P. Williams Williams LifeSkills, Inc., Durham, NC, USA

Dawn Wilson Department of Psychology, University of South Carolina, Columbia, SC, USA

Oliver J. Wilson Institute for Sport, Physical Activity and Leisure, Leeds Beckett University, Leeds, UK

Kelly Winter Epidemiology, Florida International University, Miami, FL, USA

Katie Witkiewitz University of New Mexico, Albuquerque, NM, USA

Michael Witthöft Psychologisches Institut Abteilung Klinische Psychologie und Psychotherapie, Johannes Gutenberg Universität Mainz, Mainz, Germany

Jutta M. Wolf Department of Psychology, Brandeis University, Waltham, MA, USA

Oliver T. Wolf Department of Cognitive Psychology, Ruhr-Universität Bochum, Bochum, Germany

Timothy Wolf Department of Occupational Therapy and Neurology, Program in Occupational Therapy, St. Louis, MO, USA

Patricia Woltz School of Nursing, University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Cara Wong School of Psychology, University of Sydney, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Patricia M. Wong Department of Psychology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Jennifer Wortmann Mental Health and Chaplaincy, VA Mid-Atlantic MIRECC, Durham, NC, USA

Emily M. Wright Department of Psychiatry, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, MA, USA

Rex A. Wright Department of Psychology, College of Arts and Sciences, University of North Texas, Denton, TX, USA

Ellen Wuest Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

Alexandra Wuttke-Linnemann Center for Mental Health in Old Age, Landeskrankenhaus (AöR), Mainz, Germany

Department of Psychiatry and Psychotherapy, University Medical Center Mainz, Mainz, Germany

Naoya Yahagi Department of Metabolic Diseases, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Tokyo, Japan

Yu Yamada Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, Kyushu University, Fukuoka, Japan

Yoshiharu Yamamoto Educational Physiology Laboratory, Graduate School of Education The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Yuko Yanai Department of Psycho-Oncology, National Cancer Center Japan, Chuo-ku, Japan

Betina R. Yanez Department of Psychology, University of California, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Samantha Yard Department of Psychology, University of Washington, Seattle, WA, USA

M. Taghi Yasamy Department of Mental Health and Substance Abuse, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Siqin Ye Division of Cardiology, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Jason S. Yeh Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Reproductive Endocrinology and Fertility, Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC, USA

Ilona S. Yim Department of Psychology and Social Behaviour, University of California, Irvine, Irvine, CA, USA

Alyssa Ylinen Allina Health System, St. Paul, MN, USA

Deborah Lee Young-Hyman Department of Pediatrics, Georgia Prevention Institute Georgia Health Sciences University, Augusta, GA, USA

Xiaohui Yu Department of Medicine and Program in Health Disparities Research, University of Minnesota Medical School, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Lauren Zagorski Department of Psychology, The University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Ydwine Zanstra The Amsterdam University College, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Alex Zautra Department of Psychology, Arizona State University, Tempe, AZ, USA

Chris Zehr Department of Health Studies and Gerontology, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Kristin A. Zernicke Department of Psychology, University of Calgary, Calgary, AB, Canada

Emily Zielinski-Gutierrez Division of Vector-Borne Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Ft. Collins, CO, USA

Cortney Taylor Zimmerman Department of Pediatrics, Baylor College of Medicine/Texas Children's Hospital, Houston, TX, USA

Sheryl Zimmerman School of Social Work, The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

Tanja Zimmermann Department of Clinical Psychology, Psychotherapy and Diagnostics, University of Braunschweig, Braunschweig, Germany

A

A1C

- ▶ [Glycosylated Hemoglobin](#)
- ▶ [HbA1c](#)

Abdominal Obesity

- ▶ [Central Adiposity](#)

Abnormal Psychology

- ▶ [Psychological Pathology](#)

Abrams, David B. (1951–)

David B. Abrams
Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health, The Schroeder Institute for Tobacco Research and Policy Studies at Legacy, Washington, DC, USA

Biographical Information



David Abrams was born in Johannesburg, South Africa, on September 6, 1951. He married Marion Wachtenheim in 1981. He has three

children, Tanya, Aaron, and Daniel, who passed away in 2008. He holds a B.Sc. (honors) degree in computer science and psychology from University of Witwatersrand, Johannesburg, South Africa (1974), during which time he studied under Alma Hannon (who also taught Joseph Wolpe, Arnie Lazarus, Terry Wilson, and Ray Rosen). Abrams completed his doctorate in clinical psychology under Terry Wilson at Rutgers University, earning his Ph.D. in 1981, and his internship under David Barlow at Brown University in 1979. Joining the new Division of Behavioral Medicine at Miriam Hospital, founded by Michael Follick, Abrams was the first coordinator of the Behavioral Medicine Risk Factors Clinic.

Abrams is currently Professor, Department of Health, Behavior and Society at The Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health and Executive Director of the Schroeder Institute for Tobacco Research and Policy Studies at Legacy[®]. From 2005 to 2008, he directed the Office of Behavioral and Social Sciences Research (OBSSR) at the National Institutes of Health (NIH). From 1978 to 2004, Abrams rose through the ranks at Alpert Medical School of Brown University, becoming Professor of Psychiatry and Human Behavior, Professor of Community Health, and founding Director of the Transdisciplinary Centers for Behavioral and Preventive Medicine. Abrams is a licensed clinical psychologist specializing in health psychology, tobacco use behavior, addictions, and lifestyle and contextual pathways to population health, conceptualized from a transdisciplinary “systems” framework.

In 1969, Abrams received the Old Parktonian university scholarship from Parktown Boys High School and the IBM undergraduate computer science award in 1973. He has published over 250 scholarly articles. He is the lead author of *The Tobacco Dependence Treatment Handbook: A Guide to Best Practices*, a recipient of a book of the year award. Abrams was a member of the Board of Scientific Advisors of the National Cancer Institute and served on several committees for the Institute of Medicine of the National Academies. He received the Joseph Cullen Memorial Award from the American Society for Preventive

Oncology for lifetime contributions to tobacco control. He was President of the Society of Behavioral Medicine in 2003 and a recipient of their Distinguished Scientist, Distinguished Research Mentorship, and Service awards. Abrams is a fellow of the American Psychological Association, The American Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research, The American Academy of Health Behavior, and the Society of Behavioral Medicine. He received the Musiker-Meranda award for contributions to mental health from the Rhode Island Psychological Association and a distinguished alumnus award from Rutgers University.

Major Accomplishments

Abrams is recognized for strategic and scientific contributions to disease prevention, particularly in tobacco control, addictions, and related risk factors. An integrative, “systems thinking” framework permeates his work. His accomplishments fall into two broad dimensions, reflecting the development of strategic research structures, frameworks, and organizations, and his personal research contributions.

He began his focus on strategic research frameworks in basic human physiology and human laboratory studies and in how basic science can inform clinical applications in behavior therapy. He then extended research to dissemination-implementation topics, focusing on worksites, the harnessing new informatics technologies, and the use of policy levers for large-scale impact on population health. John and Sonja McKinlay influenced his public health perspective on frameworks for making a cost-efficient (reach $\times$ effectiveness/cost) impact on populations. At Brown University, Abrams envisioned one of the early Transdisciplinary Centers for Behavioral and Preventive Medicine. He advocated for a Center with the organizational structure and function to foster the development of complex systems frameworks and simulation models to improve science-informed policy. He forged partnerships to integrate biopsychosocial and population sciences across disciplines, departments, and institutions.

In 1988, Abrams founded the Centers for Behavioral and Preventive Medicine, bridging basic, clinical, and public health sciences; medical school and campus departments; the Brown-affiliated teaching hospitals; and local institutions (University of Rhode Island; R.I. Dept. of Health). Abrams was instrumental in forging ties to obtain National Institutes of Health (NIH) grants and program project awards, the first of which was founded in 1989 to establish one of the first National Cancer Institute (NCI) Cancer Prevention Research Units (CPRU). Abrams jointly codirected the CPRU for over a decade with James Prochaska and Wayne Velicer, University of Rhode Island. Regional collaborators were also added from Yale, Brandeis, Tufts, Boston, and Harvard Universities. Abrams was a member of the Robert Wood Johnson's Tobacco Etiology Research Network (TERN), where working with Richard Clayton, Dennis Prager, and the TERN team influenced his own research and vision for transdisciplinary science.

Over the years at Brown University, Abrams nurtured the Centers' faculty and the infrastructure that supported over 30 faculty and many trainees. The Centers evolved in the 2000s to house programs in the leading risk factors and major chronic diseases, including physical activity (Bess Marcus, Director); weight control, obesity, and diabetes (Rena Wing, Director); nicotine dependence and tobacco control (Ray Niaura, Director); and crosscutting programs in cancer, cardiovascular diseases, stress management, underserved populations, comorbidities across psychiatric, alcohol and substance abuse disorders, and HIV-AIDS. Teaching programs ranged from undergraduate and graduate classes to a health psychology internship and postdoctoral and early career fellowships supported by NIH training grant awards. From his arrival at Brown University in 1977 as a psychology intern to his departure in 2004 to become director of OBSSR at NIH, Abrams left a legacy and a culture of support, individual excellence and creativity, and a passion for transdisciplinary team collaboration to address complex problems in health behavior.

In 2005, Abrams was appointed Director of the Office of Behavioral and Social Sciences

Research (OBSSR) and Associate Director of the National Institutes of Health (NIH). He was responsible for being the chief spokesperson for the NIH and the nation on matters of behavioral and social sciences and for advising the NIH Director, congress, and other government leaders on matters relating to the role human behavior plays in health and illness. He was responsible for strategic planning of behavioral and social sciences across all 27 of the NIH Institutes and Centers. Abrams spearheaded a new strategic prospectus for OBSSR with Alan Best, John McKinlay, and other consultants. He emphasized that the basic and applied sciences of behavior and behavior change are the bridge between biology and society. The social science scientific disciplines are as much a key to improving population health as are the biomedical and natural science disciplines. Abrams stressed the need for more collaborative interdisciplinary science, integrative thinking, and a robust systems science perspective to address complex pathways to disease prevention and health promotion.

Abrams added a communications office to the mission of OBSSR to showcase the achievements of the behavioral and social sciences across NIH. Returning to his undergraduate roots in computer sciences, he also embraced the use of new informatics, communications, computational, engineering, and mathematical modeling sciences as critical tools for the twenty-first-century transformation of the behavioral social and population sciences. Thus while at OBSSR, Abrams created a transdisciplinary vision for integrating "genomics" and "populomics" via epigenetics (the biological embedding of early experience) over the lifespan and across generations. The OBSSR strategic plan helped make visible and credible the investments in, and rigorous scientific contributions of, the behavioral, social, and population sciences to the NIH mission to improve the nation's health.

At Rutgers from 1974 to 1978, Abrams' early personal line of research interests blossomed under Terry Wilson's able mentorship, focusing on basic science of the cognitive-behavioral and physiological mechanisms in tobacco, alcohol use, and mood states (e.g., the role of stress and expectancy in alcohol and tobacco relapse risk).

His masters thesis examined the reactivity of self-monitoring during smoking cessation, and in his doctoral dissertation and related studies, Abrams investigated pharmacological and expectancy effects of alcohol on physiological arousal, stress, and tension reduction theory (under Terry Wilson, Ray Rosen, and Peter Nathan). Moving to Brown University, Abrams developed ideas (with Ovide Pomerleau) on use of standardized cue exposure and stress reactivity paradigms to elucidate basic mechanisms in nicotine dependence, craving, and relapse and thereby link human laboratory work to clinical treatment. Abrams also collaborated with Peter Monti to develop a parallel line of work in cue reactivity in alcohol use. Human laboratory research on cue reactivity and treatment implications has continued for over a decade with Ray Niaura and others taking a lead role, funded by the National Heart Lung and Blood Institute under Steve Weiss and Sally Shumaker.

Abrams branched out to work on self-help interventions to reach populations on a larger scale (dissemination/implementation and policy research) with grants from the National Cancer Institute under Tom Glynn. He developed and evaluated treatment programs at the worksite in a “systems” conceptual framework (with Lois Biener, Laura Linnan, Mike Follick, and Karen Emmons) to examine multilevel interactions of individual and cluster influences on behavior change in worksites. Abrams researched environmental and policy variables regarding secondhand smoke exposure with Karen Emmons and Bess Marcus. He conducted randomized controlled clinical trials of combined pharmacotherapy and behavior therapy treatment for smoking cessation with Michael Goldstein. In collaboration with Michael Follick, Abrams used randomized trials to evaluate worksite obesity treatments. They developed then evaluated an early form of the concept of harnessing intergroup competition and within-group cooperation to motivate weight loss among teams formed at worksites. Abrams research was consolidated when he became one of the principal investigators in a multicenter cooperative trial of cancer control at the workplace – the Working Well Project, funded by the NCI from 1989 to 1999.

Abrams also continued to collaborate on work in the addictions with interest in the comorbidity of alcohol-tobacco interactions with Damaris Rohsenow and in evaluating the physical activity to prevent weight gain in tobacco cessation treatment for women with Bess Marcus. Abrams helped develop the theme for a National Institutes of Alcoholism and Alcohol Abuse (NIAAA) conference on the need for a strategic research plan to examine alcohol-tobacco interactions from cells to society. He authored several chapters in the 1995 NIAAA conference monograph (No. 30) on Alcohol and Tobacco: from Basic Science to Policy.

In 1999, Abrams became a principal investigator of one of the seven NCI Transdisciplinary Tobacco Use Research Centers (TTURCs). He directed the TTURC with Ray Niaura and Steve Buka until appointed Director of OBSSR at NIH in 2005. This TTURC focused on phenotypes of tobacco use and related comorbidities to inform the intergenerational transmission of nicotine dependence and the tailoring of treatments. The TTURC followed up on the three generations of participants derived from the New England Cohort (originally with Lewis Lipsitt at Brown’s psychology department) of the National Collaborative Perinatal Project, begun in 1959. Abrams continues to publish findings from the TTURC project with his colleagues, including a recent 2011 paper with Suzanne Colby on a lifetime measure of tobacco use patterns and trajectories, on generalizing from clinical trials to community samples with Amanda Graham, and on comorbidity of personality and alcohol and substance use disorders with Chris Kahler.

Abrams participated in a Robert Wood Johnson Foundation round table on consumer demand led by Tracy Orleans. He worked with David Levy on a series of computer simulation models to demonstrate the potential impact of putting what is known about evidence-based treatments and policies into widespread practice. These models informed Abrams membership in and contributions to the Institute of Medicine of the National Academies books “Bridging the Evidence Gap in Obesity Prevention (2010) and Ending the Tobacco Problem: A Blueprint for the Nation (2007).”

In 2008, Abrams became the Executive Director of the newly established Steven Schroeder National Institute for Tobacco Research and Policy Studies at Legacy and Professor at Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health. There, he continues to promote the need for efficient delivery of population level interventions and policies, with Donna Vallone, Cheryl Heaton, and Legacy colleagues. Abrams continues collaborating with Amanda Graham and Nate Cobb on NCI-funded trials to evaluate Internet smoking cessation treatments and to examine social networks and social media phenomena for making an impact on populations. Together with Ray Niaura, Andrea Villanti, Jennifer Pearson, Mitch Zeller, Tom Kirchner, David Levy, and others, he is also developing and implementing strategic frameworks and studies whereby research can be strategically positioned to inform the Food and Drug Administration's 2009 congressional mandate to regulate tobacco products to reduce their population harms.

Cross-References

- [Addictive Behaviors](#)
- [Diabetes](#)
- [Physical Activity](#)
- [Population Health](#)
- [Tobacco Control](#)

References and Readings

- Abrams, D. B. (1986). Roles of psychosocial stress, smoking cues, and coping in smoking-relapse prevention. *Health Psychology, 5*, 91–92.
- Abrams, D. B. (1995). Integrating basic, clinical, and public health research for alcohol-tobacco interactions. In J. B. Fertig & J. P. Allen (Eds.), *Alcohol and tobacco: From basic science to policy* (NIAAA alcohol research monograph 30). Bethesda: U.S. Dept. of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism.
- Abrams, D. B. (1999). Nicotine addiction: Paradigms for research in the 21st century. *Nicotine & Tobacco Research, 1*(Suppl. 2), S211–S215. PMID: 11768182.
- Abrams, D. B. (2006). Applying transdisciplinary research strategies to understanding and eliminating health disparities. *Health Education & Behavior, 33*(4), 515–531.
- Abrams, D. B., & Biener, L. (1992). Motivational characteristics of smokers: A public health challenge. *Preventive Medicine, 21*(6), 679–687. PMID: 1438114.
- Abrams, D. B., & Follick, M. J. (1983). Behavioral weight-loss intervention at the worksite: Feasibility and maintenance. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 51*(2), 226–233.
- Abrams, D. B., & Wilson, G. T. (1979). Effects of alcohol on social anxiety in women: Cognitive versus physiological processes. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology, 88*(2), 161–173.
- Abrams, D. B., Monti, P. M., Pinto, R. P., Elder, J. P., Brown, R. A., & Jacobus, S. I. (1987). Psychosocial stress and coping in smokers who relapse or quit. *Health Psychology, 6*(4), 289–303.
- Abrams, D. B., Monti, P. M., Carey, K. B., Pinto, R. P., & Jacobus, S. I. (1988). Reactivity to smoking cues and relapse: Two studies of discriminant validity. *Behaviour Research and Therapy, 26*(3), 225–233.
- Abrams, D. B., Rohsenow, D. J., Niaura, R. S., Pedraza, M., Longabaugh, R., Beattie, M. C., et al. (1992). Smoking and treatment outcome for alcoholics: Effects on coping skills, urge to drink, and drinking rates. *Behavior Therapy, 23*(2), 283–297.
- Abrams, D. B., Boutwell, W. B., Grizzle, J., Heimendinger, J., Sorensen, G., & Varnes, J. (1994). Cancer control at the workplace: The working well trial. *Preventive Medicine, 23*(1), 15–27.
- Abrams, D. B., Orleans, C. T., Niaura, R. S., Goldstein, M. G., Prochaska, J. O., & Velicer, W. (1996). Integrating individual and public health perspectives for treatment of tobacco: A combined stepped care and matching model. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine, 18*(4), 290–304.
- Abrams, D. B., Mills, S., & Bulger, D. (1999). Challenges and future directions for tailored communication research. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine, 21*(4), 299–306. PMID: 10721436.
- Abrams, D. B., Leslie, F., Mermelstein, R., Kobus, K., & Clayton, R. R. (2003). Transdisciplinary tobacco use research. *Nicotine & Tobacco Research, 5*(Suppl. 1), S5–S10.
- Abrams, D. B., Graham, A. L., Levy, D. T., Mabry, P. L., & Orleans, C. T. (2010). Boosting population quits through evidence-based cessation treatment and policy. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 38*(3 Suppl), S351–S363. PMID: 20176308.
- Cobb, N., & Abrams, D. B. (2011). E-cigarette or drug-delivery device? Regulating novel nicotine products. *New England Journal of Medicine, 365*(3), 193–195.
- Mabry, P. L., Olster, D. H., Morgan, G. D., & Abrams, D. B. (2008). Interdisciplinarity and systems science to improve population health: A view from the NIH Office of Behavioral and Social Sciences Research. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 35*(2 Suppl), S211–S224.

- Niaura, R. S., Rohsenow, D. J., Binkoff, J. A., Monti, P. M., Pedraza, M., & Abrams, D. B. (1988). Relevance of cue reactivity to understanding alcohol and smoking relapse. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, 97(2), 133–152.
- Villanti, A. C., Vargyas, E. J., Niaura, R. S., Beck, S. E., Pearson, J. L., & Abrams, D. B. (2011). FDA regulation of tobacco: Integrating science, law, policy and advocacy. *American Journal of Public Health*, 101(7), 1160–1162.

Absolute Risk

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Absolute risk is best defined in conjunction with relative risk. For this example, we can define risk as the likelihood of an adverse consequence in two behavioral medicine interventions, Treatment A and Treatment B. Imagine that the risk is 1 in 10 for Treatment A and 2 in 10 for Treatment B. In this case, a relative risk statement can be made, saying that the probability of the event occurring following Treatment B is twice the probability of the event occurring following Treatment A. However, the same relative risk statement can be made for probabilities of 1 in 1,000,000 and 2 in 1,000,000. However, the absolute risks are vastly different: 1 and 2 in 10; and 1 and 2 in a million.

Description

Imagine that an intervention with beneficial therapeutic properties increased your risk of an adverse consequence (an event) from 1 in 10 to 2 in 10. It is possible that some individuals may consider that the risk is too great, and that they are not prepared to take this risk. Now imagine a different intervention with similarly beneficial properties that increases the risk of

an event from 1 in a million to 2 in a million. In contrast to the first scenario, some individuals may feel that, while the relative risk has also doubled, the absolute risk has changed extremely slightly. Therefore, the expression of a risk in different ways, absolute and relative, can influence decisions made upon risk information.

Literature on risk reduction well exemplifies this. Statements of relative risk reduction can look considerably more impressive than statements of absolute risk reduction even though they are based on identical data. Consider that a decrease in risk from 6% to 3% is a 50% relative risk reduction. However, expressed in absolute terms, it is a 3% reduction. The same 50% relative risk reduction would be associated with a decrease in risk from 60% to 30%, but the absolute reduction of 30% would be much more important from a public health perspective. It is therefore very useful to patients and their physicians that risk information be provided in both absolute and relative terms.

Gordon-Lubitz (2003) commented as follows:

Identical risk information may be presented in different ways, resulting in “framing bias.” Perceptions of risk are particularly susceptible to framing effects. For example, patients are much more likely to favor radiation treatment over surgery when radiation is presented as having a 90% survival rate than when it is presented as having a 10% mortality rate. Although both numbers describe identical risks, the latter is perceived as more dangerous. Another common framing effect involves absolute and relative risks. For example, if a medication reduces an adverse outcome from 25% to 20%, then the absolute risk reduction is 5% and the relative risk reduction is 25%. Although the absolute and relative risk estimates are derived from the same data, patients are more strongly persuaded by the larger changes in relative risk.

Cross-References

► [Relative Risk](#)

References and Further Reading

Gordon-Lubitz, R. J. (2003). Risk communication: Problems of presentation and understanding. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 289, 95.

Abstinence

Linda C. Baumann¹ and Alyssa Ylinen²

¹School of Nursing, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

²Allina Health System, St. Paul, MN, USA

Definition

Abstinence is the avoidance of sexual activity, usually referring to intercourse.

Description

Abstinence is defined as the restraint from indulging in bodily activities that are experienced as giving pleasure. In medical settings this usually refers to drugs, alcohol, and most often sexual activity. Depending on the perspective, abstinence from sex can mean that all sexual activities are avoided, but it can also mean that only sexual intercourse is avoided. Abstinence is also considered a form of contraception; in fact it is the only form of contraception that prevents pregnancy with a 0% failure rate. Abstinence also prevents the spread of sexually transmitted infections.

In recent years, the issue between abstinence-only sex education and comprehensive or abstinence plus sex education has been widely debated. An abstinence-only sex education program focuses on promoting abstinence from sex until marriage due to the possibility of pregnancy and the spread of sexually transmitted infections. Morality is also discussed as a driving factor to remain abstinent. This approach avoids topics such as contraception or condom use and abortion and rarely acknowledges that many teenagers are sexually active outside of marriage. An abstinence

plus sex education program also promotes abstinence but in addition also provides adolescents with discussion and information about contraception use, abortion, and sexually transmitted infections including HIV.

Research on abstinence-only programs shows little evidence that this type of program has much positive impact on teenage behavior and may even put them at risk of being uninformed when it comes to matters of sexual activity. Research on comprehensive sex education programs show that these programs do not increase sexual activity among teens or increase the number of sexual partners, which has been a major concern of advocates of abstinence-only sex education. Research also shows that a comprehensive education program can reduce sexual behaviors that put teens at risk for pregnancy and acquiring sexually transmitted infections and therefore better prepares them to safely deal with the issue of sexual activity and the associated health risks.

As with abstinence and sex education, there is controversy over the effectiveness of many programs that promote abstinence with regards to drugs and alcohol. Drug Abuse Resistance Education (DARE) is one of the most widely implemented programs that teaches abstinence from alcohol, drugs, and violence. DARE reaches kids in over 75% of the United States school districts and is in over 43 countries worldwide. Research evidence, however, raises questions about the effectiveness of the program. In a 2001 report of the US Surgeon General, DARE was categorized as a program that “does not work.”

References and Further Readings

About D.A.R.E. (2016). *D.A.R.E.*. Retrieved 4 Jan 2016, from http://www.dare.com/home/about_dare.asp

Abstinence. (2016). *Planned parenthood*. Retrieved 4 Jan 2016, from <http://www.plannedparenthood.org/health-topics/birth-control/abstinence-4215.htm>

Abstinence and Sex Education. (2016). *Avert*. Retrieved 4 Jan 2016, from <http://www.avert.org/abstinence.htm>

Kohler, P. K., Manhart, L. E., & Lafferty, W. E. (2008). Abstinence-only and comprehensive sex education and the initiation of sexual activity and teen pregnancy. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 47(5), 344–351.

- Ott, M. A., & Santelli, J. S. (2007). Abstinence and abstinence-only education. *Current Opinion in Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 19(5), 446–452.
- Satcher, D. (2001). Prevention and intervention. In *Youth violence, a report of the surgeon general*. Retrieved 4 Jan 2016, from <http://www.surgeongeneral.gov/library/youthviolence/chapter5/sec4.html#IneffectivePrimaryPrevention>

Abstinence Violation Effect

Susan E. Collins¹ and Katie Witkiewitz²

¹Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, University of Washington, Harborview Medical Center, Seattle, WA, USA

²University of New Mexico, Albuquerque, NM, USA

Synonyms

AVE

Definition

The abstinence violation effect (AVE) refers to the negative cognitive (i.e., internal, stable, uncontrollable attributions; cognitive dissonance) and affective responses (i.e., guilt, shame) experienced by an individual after a return to substance use following a period of self-imposed abstinence from substances (Curry et al. 1987).

Description

AVE in the Context of the Relapse Process

The AVE was introduced into the substance abuse literature within the context of the “relapse process” (Marlatt and Gordon 1985, p. 37). Relapse has been variously defined, depending on theoretical orientation, treatment goals, cultural context, and target substance (Miller 1996; White 2007). It is, however, most commonly used to refer to a resumption of substance use behavior after a period of abstinence from substances (Miller

1996). The term *relapse* may be used to describe a prolonged return to substance use, whereas *lapse* may be used to describe discrete, circumscribed “slips” during sustained abstinence (Marlatt and Gordon 1985, p. 32).

As originally described by Marlatt and Gordon (1985), the relapse process typically begins when a person who has achieved abstinence encounters a situation that puts them at high risk for relapse (i.e., a high-risk situation). If the person is able to cope effectively with the high-risk situation, they may experience increased self-efficacy (i.e., confidence to avoid a lapse). If, on the other hand, they are unable to cope with the high-risk situation, they may experience decreased self-efficacy. If this decreased self-efficacy is paired with positive outcome expectancies for substance use, a person may have a heightened risk for a lapse. If a lapse occurs, it may be experienced as a “violation” of self-imposed abstinence, which gave rise to the term AVE. The AVE may, in turn, precipitate a relapse if the person turns to substances repeatedly to cope with the resulting negative cognitive and affective reactions of the AVE.

AVE: Cognitive and Affective Responses to a Lapse

The AVE is characterized by a lapse paired with a specific constellation of negative cognitive and affective reactions. The role of cognitions stems from attributional theory (Weiner 1974): a person might attribute their lapse to factors that are internal, global, and uncontrollable. For example, people may believe the lapse occurred due to their own, irreparable character defects or chronic disease determinants. The associated affective component stems from dissonance between the lapse and one’s perceived self-image as an abstainer, which, together with the attributions, can lead to feelings of guilt, shame, and hopelessness (Marlatt and Gordon 1985). People who experience the AVE are more likely to progress from a lapse to a relapse (Miller et al. 1996), and several studies have demonstrated the role of the AVE in predicting relapse among drinkers (Collins and Lapp 1991), smokers (Curry et al. 1987), dieters (Mooney et al. 1992), and marijuana users (Stephens et al. 1994).

In contrast, if people attribute the lapse to external, unstable (i.e., changeable), and controllable causes, they may not interpret the lapse as a threat to their self-image and may instead view it as a unique occurrence that can be avoided in the future. This attributional style may diffuse the person's affective response to the lapse and reduces the likelihood of a progression from lapse to relapse (Laws 1995; Marlatt and Gordon 1985; Walton et al. 1994). Averting the AVE may have lasting effects: as the situation is less affectively charged, the individual might be open to exploring the determinants of the lapse and to experimenting with alternative coping strategies in the future. This may, in turn, lead to increased self-efficacy and more effective coping across various high-risk situations (Marlatt and Gordon 1985).

Preventing the AVE Response

Clinicians may help clients interrupt the relapse process at various points and ultimately avoid the AVE. First, clinicians can help clients identify and apply effective behavioral and cognitive strategies in high-risk situations to avoid the initial lapse altogether. If a lapse occurs, clinicians should be empathetic and nonjudgmental in their approach (Miller and Rollnick 2002) and should help clients reframe the lapse as the product of multiple factors (versus only internal factors), as being controllable (versus uncontrollable), and as situation specific (versus global; Larimer et al. 1999). A step-by-step exploration may help clients learn how to interrupt the relapse process at various points to avoid future lapses, the AVE, and/or relapses (Larimer et al. 1999). Further, the clinician may elicit and positively reinforce clients' existing coping skills to support the clients' self-efficacy and may teach clients additional behavioral and cognitive coping strategies for application in future high-risk situations, as necessary (Witkiewitz and Marlatt 2007). Finally, clinicians should assess whether clients are coping adequately with the negative affective component of the AVE, which may otherwise precipitate future lapses or relapses.

Cross-References

- Addictive Behaviors
- Alcohol Abuse and Dependence
- Binge Drinking
- Health Risk (Behavior)
- National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism
- Relapse, Relapse Prevention

References and Further Readings

- Collins, R. L., & Lapp, W. M. (1991). Restraint and attributions: Evidence of the abstinence violation effect in alcohol consumption. *Cognitive Therapy and Research, 15*, 69–84.
- Curry, S., Marlatt, G. A., & Gordon, J. R. (1987). Abstinence violation effect: Validation of an attributional construct with smoking cessation. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 55*, 145–149.
- Larimer, M. E., Palmer, R. S., & Marlatt, G. A. (1999). Relapse prevention: An overview of Marlatt's cognitive-behavioral model. *Alcohol Research & Health, 23*, 151–160.
- Laws, D. R. (1995). Central elements in relapse prevention procedures with sex offenders. *Psychology Crime and Law, 2*, 41–53.
- Marlatt, G. A., & Gordon, J. R. (1985). *Relapse prevention: Maintenance strategies in the treatment of addictive behaviors*. New York: The Guilford Press.
- Miller, W. R. (1996). What is relapse? Fifty ways to leave the wagon. *Addiction, 91*(Suppl), S15–S27.
- Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (2002). *Motivational interviewing: Preparing people for change* (2nd ed.). New York: US Guilford Press.
- Miller, W. R., Westerberg, V. S., Harris, R. J., & Tonigan, J. S. (1996). What predicts relapse? Prospective testing of antecedent models. *Addiction, 91*(Suppl), 155–171.
- Mooney, J. P., Burling, T. A., Hartman, W. M., & Brenner-Liss, D. (1992). The abstinence violation effect and very low calorie diet success. *Addictive Behaviors, 19*, 23–32.
- Stephens, R. S., Curtin, L., Simpson, E. E., & Roffman, R. A. (1994). Testing the abstinence violation effect construct with marijuana cessation. *Addictive Behaviors, 19*, 23–32.
- Walton, M. A., Castro, F. G., & Barrington, E. H. (1994). The role of attributions in abstinence, lapse and relapse following substance abuse treatment. *Addictive Behaviors, 19*, 319–331.
- Weiner, B. (1974). *Achievement motivation and attribution theory*. Morristown: General Learning Press.
- White, W. L. (2007). Addiction recovery: Its definition and conceptual boundaries. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment, 33*, 229–241.

Witkiewitz, K., & Marlatt, G. A. (2007). Relapse prevention for alcohol and drug problems. In G. A. Marlatt & D. M. Donovan (Eds.), *Relapse prevention: Maintenance strategies in the treatment of addictive behaviors* (2nd ed.). New York: The Guilford Press.

Abuse, Elder

Terry Fulmer
Bouv  College of Health Sciences, Northeastern
University, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

Family violence

Definition

The National Research Council defines elder mistreatment as “intentional actions that cause harm or create a serious risk of harm (whether or not harm is intended) to a vulnerable elder by a caregiver or other person who stands in a trust relationship to the elder or failure by a caregiver to satisfy the elder’s basic needs or to protect the elder from harm” (Bonnie and Wallace 2003, p. 40).

Description

EM may occur in the community setting (domestic EM) or in institutional settings, such as nursing homes and adult family homes. In the United States, data about EM among community-dwelling, vulnerable older adults suggest that victimization will rise from 1.25 million in 2010 to 2.2 million in 2030 based on the aging demographics of America. Further, it is estimated that for every case of EM that is reported, more than five cases go unreported (Tatara 1997). This means that there will be over 6.6 million unreported cases by 2020 and over 11.7 million unreported cases by 2030, leading to

extraordinary suffering and disability among vulnerable older adults.

Elder mistreatment is the outcome of actions which include neglect, physical, sexual, and emotional/psychological abuse; financial and material exploitation; and abandonment. When domestic violence (DV) occurs in situations in which the older adult is vulnerable, domestic violence in later life (DVLL) is a form of elder mistreatment. While self-neglect in community-dwelling older adults, resident-on-resident aggression in long-term care settings and “stranger crimes” (e.g., sweetheart scams; assaults by strangers) are serious issues, they are considered separately from elder mistreatment. Older adults who self-neglect are not necessarily vulnerable adults and there is no caregiving dyad involving a “trusted other” (Bonnie and Wallace 2003; Dong et al. 2009). Resident-on-resident aggression involves vulnerable adults, but they are not in a caregiving dyad with each other, as they rely on professional staff for care (Lachs et al. 2007). Stranger crimes also do not necessarily involve vulnerable older adults or trusted others with a duty of care (Bonnie and Wallace 2003).

Neglect of community-dwelling vulnerable older adults by trusted others is the most prevalent type of domestic EM, with over 70–80% of cases in that category. Recent estimates of domestic EM place the prevalence since reaching age 60 years and past-year prevalence of psychological mistreatment at 13.5% and 4.6%; physical mistreatment at 1.8% and 1.6%; and sexual mistreatment at 0.3% and 0.6%, respectively. The estimated past-year prevalence of financial mistreatment by family members is 5.2% (Acierno et al. 2010). The prevalence of EM in institutional settings is unknown, but the problem is thought to be widespread and serious (Hawes 2003). For example, from January 1999 to January 2001, there were 5283 nursing home citations for almost 9000 abuse violations (Minority Staff SID 2001). Regardless of the type(s) of elder mistreatment experienced by vulnerable older adults, EM imposes serious consequences for the health and safety of its victims, including a three-times

higher adjusted risk of death for community-dwelling older adults (Lachs et al. 1998).

Domestic elder mistreatment is a form of family violence in that the vast majority (90%) of abusers are family members. Adult children are the more prevalent (47%) perpetrators of domestic EM, followed by spouses/partners (19%) and other family members (Tatara 1997). Perpetrators of institutional EM include staff and family or friends who visit (Hawes 2003).

EM risk involves characteristics of both the vulnerable older adult and the caregiver. Risk factors in community-dwelling older adults include older age (>70), low social support, and the number of self-care deficits that lead to dependence on others for care (Acierno et al. 2010). Characteristics of adult children who are likely to mistreat their vulnerable parents include dependence of the adult child on the parent for housing and financial support; substance abuse; mental illness; and poor social integration. If the abuser is a spouse or partner, abuse may be the continuation of existing domestic violence into later life; new behavior in the caregiving spouse/partner; or a new relationship in which there is partner violence (Bonnie and Wallace 2003).

EM risk in institutional settings may be related to characteristics of staff caregivers. For example, psychological abuse of residents was related to higher caregiver work stress (role strain, demand, and work overload) and lower caregiver educational level (Wang et al. 2009). Risk for all mistreatment types is related to the degree to which residents are dependent on staff for care (Cohen et al. 2010; Post et al. 2010).

Action steps for prevention and early intervention of elder mistreatment include appropriate assessment and screening policies with clear clinical practice protocols for staff to follow; protocols to guide staff in reporting cases to proper authorities; mechanisms for participating in complaint investigations to ensure that accusations of mistreatment are verified and handled appropriately; educational programs, consultation and follow-up protocols for healthcare professionals; and research and public policy actions to address the issue.

Cross-References

► Family Violence

References and Readings

- Acierno, R., Hernandez, M. A., Amstadter, A. B., Resnick, H. S., Steve, K., Muzzy, W., et al. (2010). Prevalence and correlates of emotional, physical, sexual, and financial abuse and potential neglect in the United States: The National Elder Mistreatment Study. *American Journal of Public Health, 100*(2), 292–297.
- Bonnie, R. J., & Wallace, R. (Eds.). (2003). *Elder mistreatment: Abuse, neglect, and exploitation in an aging America*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press.
- Cohen, M., Halevy-Levin, S., Gagin, R., Priltuzky, D., & Friedman, G. (2010). Elder abuse in long-term care residences and the risk indicators. *Ageing & Society, 30*, 1027–1040.
- Dong, X., Simon, M., Mendes de Leon, C., Fulmer, T., Beck, T., Hebert, L., et al. (2009). Elder self-neglect and abuse and mortality risk in a community-dwelling population. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 302*(5), 517–526.
- Hawes, C. (2003). Elder abuse in residential long-term care settings: What is known and what information is needed? In R. J. Bonnie & R. Wallace (Eds.), *Elder mistreatment: Abuse, neglect, and exploitation in an aging America*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press.
- Lachs, M. S., Williams, C. S., O'Brien, S., Pillemer, K. A., & Charlson, M. E. (1998). The mortality of elder mistreatment. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 280*(5), 428–432.
- Lachs, M., Bachman, R., Williams, C. S., & O'Leary, J. R. (2007). Resident-to-resident elder mistreatment and police contact in nursing homes: Findings from a population-based cohort. *Journal of American Geriatrics Society, 55*(6), 840–845.
- Minority Staff SID, C. o. G. R., U.S. House of Representatives. (2001, July 30). *Abuse of residents is a major problem in U.S. nursing homes*. Washington, DC: Author.
- Post, L., Page, C., Conner, K. O., Prokhorov, A., Fang, Y., & Biroscak, J. (2010). Elder abuse in long-term care: Types, patterns, and risk factors. *Research on Aging, 32*(3), 323–348.
- Tatara, T. (1997). *The national elder abuse incidence study: Executive summary*. New York City: Human Services Press.
- Wang, J. J., Lin, M. F., Tseng, H. F., & Chang, W. Y. (2009). Caregiver factors contributing to psychological elder abuse behavior in long-term care facilities: a structural equation model approach. *International Psychogeriatrics, 21*(2), 314–320.

Accelerometry

► [Actigraphy \(Wrist, for Measuring Rest/Activity Patterns and Sleep\)](#)

Acceptance and Commitment Therapy

Maria Kangas

Department of Psychology, Centre for Emotional Health, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Synonyms

[ACT](#)

Definition

Acceptance and commitment therapy (ACT) is considered one of the third wave of behavioral therapies (Hayes 2016). The term ACT (articulated as one word, Hayes et al. 1999) describes the three core functional components of this form of therapy, specifically (1) *accepting* what a person has and cannot be changed; (2) *choosing* to live life according to one's values; and (3) *taking action* to live a meaningful life aligning with one's values (Hayes et al. 1999). Notably, the overarching objective of ACT is to enhance psychological flexibility to help individuals live a purposeful life consistent with their values (Hayes 2016).

Description

Brief History of Behavioral Therapies

Over the past 70 years, behavioral therapies (BTs) have evolved over three generations (Hayes 2016). The first generation comprises the traditional BTs derived from the principles of operant

and classical conditioning theories. The second generation encompasses the traditional cognitive therapy (CT) and cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT) interventions and includes the pioneering work by Aaron T. Beck and Albert Ellis to CT and rational emotive behavior therapy (REBT), respectively. The third wave of BTs is contextually focused and includes ACT and other mindfulness-based approaches (e.g., mindfulness-based cognitive therapy (MBCT); dialectical behavior therapy (DBT)).

A core differentiating principle between the second and third wave therapeutic approaches pertains to the focus of the change process in therapy. Notably, whereas the goal of ACT is to change the *function* of events and how the individual relates to their intrapersonal and contextual experiences, the objective of the traditional CT and CBT approaches has been to directly challenge the individual's psychological events (i.e., thoughts, perceptions, beliefs, and cognitive schemas) (Hayes et al. 2006).

Philosophical Basis and Conceptual Framework

ACT is part of the behavioral analytic tradition and is based on functional contextualism. In line with this approach, events are conceptualized as a set of ongoing interactions between organisms and situationally defined contexts. In particular, ACT is derived from basic research on language and cognition (Hayes 2016), and the core theory underpinning ACT is the relational frame theory (RFT) (Hayes et al. 2001). In line with RFT, human language and cognition are dependent on relation frames. For example, when we listen to others with understanding, we derive meaning by establishing relations between the events and semantic/verbal words conveyed. In accord with RFT, ACT targets two central components pertaining to human suffering: (1) experiential avoidance (including failure to suppress) to escape or avoid internal and external cues perceived as threatening and (2) cognitive fusion which entails being attached (or fused) to one's thoughts or beliefs dominated by verbal cues and evaluations (Hayes 2016).

Six Core Components of ACT

The epistemological foundation of ACT views emotional suffering as a common human experience, which is amplified with psychological inflexibility. Hence, the objective of ACT is to enhance psychological flexibility to facilitate clients to move in a personally valued direction to derive purpose and meaning in their lives via six core processes, conceptualized as positive psychological skills (Hayes et al. 2006). These six core processes comprise acceptance, cognitive defusion, contact with present moment, self-as-context, values, and committed action. These core components are nonlinear, interrelated processes forming the ACT hexaflex model to collectively enhance psychological flexibility (Hayes et al. 2006).

Acceptance

Acceptance in ACT is not merely tolerating. Rather, it entails actively embracing one's experiences (both positive and negative), and hence, involves exposure to previously avoided or suppressed cues. The process of acceptance facilitates the enhancement of value-based actions. For example, individuals suffering from chronic pain are taught methods to let go of their emotional distress with pain (based on techniques derived from the six core principles) in order to live a purposeful life aligning with one's values, despite any physical constraints and/or disabilities (e.g., Wicksell et al. 2008).

Cognitive Defusion

The goal of cognitive defusion techniques is to help individuals form a different relationship with their thoughts and beliefs, rather than changing their form or frequency. A variety of methods are used to help the client defuse from thoughts and cognitive schemas they are struggling to let go off. For example, a depressed individual with chronic pain who is fused with the thought "I am useless" may be encouraged to label the process of their thinking when feeling depressed (e.g., "I am having the thought I am useless"), as well as applying other defusion strategies (such as repeatedly saying the word out loud, rapidly for a minute) to

weaken the literal language of the fused targeted word (e.g., "useless") (cf. Hayes 2016).

Contact with Present Moment

To enhance psychological flexibility, being present in the moment (in the here and now) is facilitated by applying experiential and mindfulness exercises so that the individual learns to embrace events in a nonjudgmental manner. This process is purported to enhance one's self-as-process.

Self-As-Context

Similarly, the fourth component of ACT, "self-as-context," is also cultivated by applied mindfulness and experiential exercises, as well as metaphors. The objective is to enhance one's distinct sense of self as a point of focus, which is separate from one's fused internal experiences. This component allows individuals to transcend thoughts and feelings they are fused with, by learning to focus on the context of "I-here-now" by utilizing their observing (conscious) "self-as-context" (Hayes 2016).

Values

A central component of ACT is explicitly focusing on one's values. Values are defined as "chosen qualities of purposive action" (Hayes et al. 2006, p.8). Values clarification typically occurs early on in therapy by asking clients to identify values in different life domains (including family, social relations, health, career, spirituality, etc.), by using different exercises to reflect on what clients want their life to stand for, despite ongoing challenges and adversity.

Committed Action

Once values are clarified, achievable, concrete goals that underpin the client's values are identified. Clients are encouraged to engage in these goals which are facilitated by conventional behavioral strategies to initiate and sustain behavioral change. Such methods may include skills acquisition and exposure exercises.

These six core processes are interrelated in therapy. The ultimate goal is to help the client reflect and learn (or relearn) to act in accordance with their values (e.g., re-establishing meaningful

personal relationships), by learning to accept in a nonjudgmental manner their experiences, and to commit to living their life in accordance with their valued goals, despite challenges and ongoing stressors.

Evidence Base for ACT and Applications in Behavioral Medicine

Over the past two decades, there is a growing evidence base for the efficacy of ACT in the treatment of anxiety and depression, as well as distress and discomfort associated with physical health problems. Several meta-analytical reviews based on randomized controlled trials (RCTs) of ACT have reported at least moderate to large effect sizes on primary outcomes following treatment completion, especially when compared to non-active, control groups (e.g., Powers et al. 2009; Ruiz 2010). However, to date, the efficacy of ACT when compared to active psychotherapy interventions (including CBT) is more equivocal for anxiety and depressive symptom reduction (e.g., Hacker et al. 2016; Ost 2008).

Given the objective of ACT is to enhance psychological flexibility by focusing on valued actions to bring about behavior change, despite challenges, ACT may serve as a useful therapy option for distressed health populations. To this end, there is an evolving and promising evidence base for the efficacy of ACT as applied to specific health populations. To date, the strongest evidence is in the treatment of chronic pain in adults (e.g., Hann and McCracken 2014; Hughes et al. 2017). There is also provisional evidence for the efficacy of ACT in other health populations including oncology patients (e.g., Fashler et al. 2018), and for individuals with body image problems (e.g., Griffiths et al. 2018).

Notably, despite this emerging body of research, the efficacy of ACT in behavioral medicine settings is still very much in its infancy. Large-scale, rigorously conducted RCT studies are clearly warranted to strengthen the evidence base for ACT as applied to various health populations. Moreover, given that the focus of ACT is in improving functionality by way of enhancing psychological flexibility, future studies in this field need to include appropriate, validated measures which assess these variables as primary

outcome measures, in place of solely focusing on symptom reduction per se.

Cross-References

- Behavior Change
- Behavior Change Techniques
- Behavior Modification
- Behavioral Therapy
- eHealth and Behavioral Intervention Technologies
- Fear and Fear Avoidance
- Pain, Psychosocial Aspects
- Psychological Disorder
- Psychological Stress
- Psychosocial Adjustment

References and Further Reading

- Fashler, S. R., Weinrib, A. Z., Azam, M. A., & Katz, J. (2018). The use of acceptance and commitment therapy in oncology settings: A narrative review. *Psychological Reports*, 121, 229–252. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0033294117726061>.
- Griffiths, C., Williamson, H., Zucchelli, F., Paraskeva, N., & Moss, T. (2018). A systematic review of the effectiveness of acceptance and commitment therapy (ACT) for body image dissatisfaction and weight self-stigma in adults. *Journal of Contemporary Psychotherapy*, 48, 189–204. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10879-018-9384-0>.
- Hacker, T., Stone, P., & MacBeth, A. (2016). Acceptance and commitment therapy – Do we know enough? Cumulative and sequential meta-analyses of randomized controlled trials. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 190, 551–565. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jad.2015.10.053>.
- Hann, K. E. J., & McCracken, L. M. (2014). A systematic review of randomized controlled trials of acceptance and commitment therapy for adults with chronic pain: Outcome domains, design quality and efficacy. *Journal of Contextual Behavioral Science*, 3, 217–227. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jcbs.2014.10.001>.
- Hayes, S. C., Strosahl, K. D., & Wilson, K. G. (1999). *Acceptance and commitment therapy: An experiential approach to behavior change*. New York: The Guilford Press.
- Hayes, S. C., Barnes-Holmes, D., & Roche, B. (Eds.). (2001). *Relational frame theory: A post-Skinnerian account of human language and cognition*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Hayes, S. C., Luoma, J. B., Bond, F. W., Masuda, A., & Lillis, J. (2006). Acceptance and commitment therapy: Model, processes and outcomes. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 44, 1–25. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.brat.2005.06.006>.

- Hayes, S.C. (2016). Acceptance and Commitment Therapy, relational frame theory, and the third wave of behavioral and cognitive therapies – Republished article. *Behavior Therapy*, 47, 869–885. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0005-7894\(04\)80013-3](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0005-7894(04)80013-3).
- Hughes, L. S., Clark, J., Colclough, J. A., Dale, E., & McMillan, D. (2017). Acceptance and commitment therapy (ACT) for chronic pain: A systematic review and meta-analyses. *Clinical Journal of Pain*, 33, 552–568. <https://doi.org/10.1097/AJP.0000000000000425>.
- Ost, L.G. (2008). Efficacy of the third wave of behavioral therapies: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 46, 296–321. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.brat.2007.12.005>
- Powers, M. B., Vording, V. S., Zum, M. B., & Emmelkamp, P. M. G. (2009). Acceptance and commitment therapy: A meta-analytic review. *Psychotherapy and Psychosomatics*, 78, 73–80. <https://doi.org/10.1159/000190790>.
- Ruiz, F. J. (2010). A review of acceptance and commitment therapy (ACT) empirical evidence: Correlational, experimental psychopathology, component and outcome studies. *International Journal of Psychology and Psychological Therapy*, 10, 125–162.
- Wicksell, R. K., Ahlqvist, J., Bring, A., Melin, L., & Olsson, G. L. (2008). Can exposure and acceptance strategies improve functioning and life satisfaction in people with chronic pain and whiplash-associated disorders (WAD)? A randomized controlled trial. *Cognitive Behaviour Therapy*, 37, 169–182.

Acculturation

Molly L. Tanenbaum¹, Persis Commissariat¹, Elyse Kupperman¹, Rachel N. Baek¹ and Jeffrey S. Gonzalez²

¹Clinical Psychology, Health Emphasis, Ferkauf Graduate School of Psychology, Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

²Departments of Medicine and Epidemiology & Public Health, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Bronx, NY, USA

Definition

Definition and Theoretical Background

Acculturation is the process by which migrants to a new culture develop relationships with the new culture and maintain their original culture (Berry and Sam 1997). Acculturation has been classically defined as the changes that develop

when groups of individuals come into contact with a different culture (Redfield et al. 1936). This process was initially conceptualized as unidimensional, in which retention of the original culture and acquisition of the new host culture were cast at opposing ends of a single continuum (Schwartz et al. 2010). According to this unidimensional model, migrants were expected to acquire the values, practices, and beliefs of their new homelands and discard those from their cultural heritage. Acculturation is now more often conceptualized as complex and multidimensional, meaning that both cultures change under the influence of each other and acculturation is influenced by a number of contextual factors (Berry and Sam 1997; Sam and Berry 2006).

According to Berry and Sam (1997), acculturation involves four strategies: assimilation, separation, integration, and marginalization. Assimilation means immersion in the new culture and breaking from the original culture; separation refers to the nondominant group distancing themselves from the new, dominant culture and holding onto original cultural practices and beliefs; integration is when individuals maintain both their original cultural identity while taking part in the new culture's practices; marginalization refers to what occurs when individuals leave behind their original cultural identity but do not take part in the new culture.

Some researchers feel that definitions of acculturation need to move beyond behavioral indicators and include other factors such as language use, values, and attitudes (Thomson and Hoffman-Goetz 2009). Investigators stress the importance of emigration and immigration contexts as modifiers of the acculturation experience (Thomson and Hoffman-Goetz 2009).

Description

Measuring Acculturation

While no definitive framework for acculturation has been defined, Berry and Sam (1997) suggest a composite framework for measuring acculturation including: societies of origin and settlement,

psychological acculturation, and the moderating factors that contribute to and arise from it, and the eventual shift to psychological and sociocultural adaptation. Acculturation can be affected by a number of variables, such as age, gender, race, ethnicity, and socioeconomic status, which in turn affects the behaviors and values of a person (Maxwell 2006). These variables all play a role in the acculturation process, though no single measurement scale has been able to extensively study all of these factors. The acculturation process is generally accepted to be bidirectional (Sam and Berry 2006), which assumes that both cultures can change under the influence of each other, but do not necessarily reach a neutral point. Due to the complexity of acculturation, accurate measurement is challenging.

Scales have been developed to measure acculturation for a number of different ethnic groups including Mexican Americans, Chinese Americans, European Americans, and Cuban Americans. These scales often include items assessing native and host language usage, language usage inside and outside the family, ties to country of origin, cultural familiarity and pride, length of stay in host country, personal values, and interpersonal relations. Some scales also examine concepts of independence, gender, culture, fashion, food, music, and movie preferences (Acculturation Depot 1998; Maxwell 2006).

Psychological Acculturation

Graves (1967) makes a distinction between acculturation as a collective or group-level phenomenon, and psychological acculturation, a change in the psychology of the individual. The internal processes of change that immigrants experience when they come into direct contact with members of the host culture constitute psychological acculturation. This construct is conceptualized as a resocialization process involving psychological changes in attitudes, values, and identification; the acquisition of new social skills and norms; changes in reference-group and membership-group affiliations; and adjustment or adaptation to a changed environment (Berry et al. 1992; Sam 1994). Psychological adaptations to acculturation involve learning a new behavioral

repertoire that is appropriate for the new cultural context (Berry and Sam 1997). If individuals cannot easily change their repertoire, they may experience acculturative stress, the psychological, somatic, and social difficulties that may accompany acculturation processes. This stress may lead to serious psychological disturbances such as clinical depression and anxiety when environmental stressors exceed the individual's capacity to cope.

While the concept of acculturation has become widely used in cross-cultural psychology, it is important to distinguish it from the concepts of assimilation and adaptation. Assimilation is a process of cultural absorption of a minority group into the main cultural body. While acculturation implies a mutual influence in which elements of two cultures merge, assimilation implies a tendency of the ruling cultural group to enforce the adoption of their values rather than the blending of values (Maxwell 2006). Berry (1984) defined psychological adaptation as the individual behaviors that are linked to acculturation experience, either as "shifts" of the preexisting customs or habits in language, beliefs, attitudes, values, or abilities, or as "acculturative stress" which is generated during acculturation. In the recent literature on psychological adaptation to acculturation, a distinction has been drawn between psychological and sociocultural adaptation. Psychological adaptation mostly involves one's psychological well-being and satisfaction in a new cultural context, whereas sociocultural adaptation refers to one's ability to acquire culturally appropriate knowledge and skills and to interact with the new culture and manage daily life (Ward et al. 2001).

Acculturation and Its Effect on Health Behaviors

Acculturation has been linked to changes in health behaviors – including eating, sexual health behaviors, accessing health services, and other behaviors – as well as changes in knowledge and beliefs. Studies have shown that acculturation to the USA may serve as a health risk or as a protective factor depending on the ethnic group, health behavior in question, and other variables such as gender. Acculturation may lead to the adoption of unhealthy behaviors such as smoking and eating

a more high-fat diet or may lead to an increase in healthy behaviors such as exercise (Abraído-Lanza et al. 2006). Recently, Landrine and Klonoff (2004) proposed an operant model of acculturation as a way to guide to health behavior interventions. The operant model of acculturation looks at prevalence of certain health behaviors in an ethnic group's home country and new culture to predict the likelihood of adoption of those health behaviors depending on level of acculturation.

Among Hispanics and Asians in the United States, acculturation has been shown to influence diet, cancer screenings, and smoking, among other health behaviors, often with studies comparing more and less acculturated members of the same ethnic group (Landrine and Klonoff 2004). The effects of acculturation on health behaviors differ from ethnic group to ethnic group; for example, Japanese-American men who adhere more to Japanese culture are less likely to develop coronary heart disease (CHD) than more acculturated Japanese-American men, while this change in risk of developing CHD has not been found in Irish-American men. Other factors, such as gender, may play a role in the effect of acculturation on a health behavior. For example, acculturation has been found to increase smoking among Latino women and decrease smoking among Latino men (Perez-Stable et al. 2001). Due to the complex relationship between these variables, acculturation has been shown to have both positive and detrimental effects on an individual's health and well-being, and more research is needed to examine these processes further.

Cross-References

- ▶ Cultural and Ethnic Differences
- ▶ Cultural Competence
- ▶ Cultural Factors
- ▶ Ethnicity
- ▶ Hispanic/Latino Health
- ▶ Minority Health
- ▶ Sociocultural Differences

References and Readings

- Abraído-Lanza, A. F., Armbrister, A. N., Flórez, K. R., & Aguirre, A. N. (2006). Toward a theory-driven model of acculturation in public health research. *American Journal of Public Health*, 96, 1342–1346.
- Acculturation Depot. (1998). University of California, Berkeley. Retrieved February 5, 2011, from <http://www.ocf.berkeley.edu/~psych/depot.html#Scales>
- Berry, J. W. (1984). Multicultural policy in Canada: A social psychological analysis. *Canadian Journal of Behavioral Science*, 16, 353–370.
- Berry, J. W. (2003). Conceptual approaches to acculturation. In K. M. Chun, P. B. Organista, & G. Marin (Eds.), *Advances in theory, measurement and applied research* (pp. 17–38). Washington, DC: American Psychology Association.
- Berry, J. W., & Sam, D. L. (1997). Acculturation and adaptation. In J. W. Berry, M. H. Segall, & C. Kagitcibasi (Eds.), *Handbook of cross-cultural psychology* (Vol. 3, 2nd ed., pp. 291–326). Boston: Allyn and Bacon.
- Berry, J. W., Poortinga, Y. H., Segall, M. H., & Dasen, P. R. (1992). *Cross-cultural psychology: Research and applications*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Graves, T. (1967). Psychological acculturation in a tri-ethnic community. *South-Western Journal of Anthropology*, 23, 337–350.
- Jasso, G., Massey, D. S., Rosenzweig, M. R., & Smith, J. P. (2004). Immigrant health – selectivity and acculturation. In N. B. Anderson, R. A. Bulatao, & B. Cohen (Eds.), *Critical perspectives on racial and ethnic differences in health in late life* (pp. 227–266). Washington, DC: The National Academies Press.
- Landrine, H., & Klonoff, E. A. (2004). Culture change and ethnic-minority health behavior: An operant theory of acculturation. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 27, 527–555.
- Maxwell, A. E. (2006). Acculturation. In L. Breslow (Ed.), *Encyclopedia of public health*. Gale Cengage, 2002. Retrieved February 5, 2011, from <http://www.enotes.com/public-health-encyclopedia/acculturation>
- Perez-Stable, E. J., Ramirez, A., Villareal, R., Talavera, G. A., Trapido, E., Suarez, L., et al. (2001). Cigarette smoking behavior among U.S. Latino men and women from different countries of origin. *American Journal of Public Health*, 91(9), 1424–1430.
- Redfield, R., Linton, R., & Herskovits, M. (1936). Memorandum on the study of acculturation. *American Anthropologist*, 38, 149–152.
- Sam, D. L. (1994). *Acculturation of young immigrants in Norway. A psychological and socio-cultural adaptation*. Bergen: University of Bergen.
- Sam, D., & Berry, J. W. (2006). Acculturation: Conceptual background. In D. Sam & J. W. Berry (Eds.), *The Cambridge handbook of acculturation psychology* (pp. 17–18). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Schwartz, S. J., Unger, J. B., Zamboanga, B. L., & Szapocznik, J. (2010). Rethinking the concept of

- acculturation: Implications for theory and research. *American Psychologist*, 65, 237–251.
- Thomson, M. D., & Hoffman-Goetz, L. (2009). Defining and measuring acculturation: A systematic review of public health studies with Hispanic populations in the United States. *Social Science & Medicine*, 69, 983–991.
- Ward, C., Bochner, S., & Furnham, A. (2001). *The psychology of culture shock*. London: Routledge.

Acetylcholine

Nicole Brandt¹ and Rachel Flurie²

¹School of Pharmacy, University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

²University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Definition

Acetylcholine is a naturally occurring monoamine neurotransmitter found in both the peripheral and central nervous systems. It is the primary transmitter for the autonomic nervous system and the somatic efferent nerves that innervate skeletal muscle. It was first discovered in 1914 by Sir Henry Dale and colleagues. Acetylcholine is synthesized inside the terminal endings of cholinergic nerve cells where choline is taken up into the nerve terminal and reacts with acetyl coenzyme A via the enzyme choline acetyltransferase.

Description

Once acetylcholine is synthesized, it is stored in vesicles until the nerve is stimulated by calcium entry into the nerve terminal. Stimulation causes the vesicles to release acetylcholine into the synapses between the pre- and postsynaptic nerve fibers. Acetylcholine crosses the synapse and binds to receptors on the postsynaptic cell, exerting its effect. It causes increased permeability of the cell to the cations sodium, potassium, and calcium, resulting in cell depolarization. The two types of receptors on which acetylcholine acts

are the nicotinic and muscarinic receptors, so named because they were discovered using the two compounds muscarine and nicotine. The nicotinic receptors are found on all preganglionic autonomic nerve fibers, somatic efferent nerve fibers that connect to skeletal muscle, and the central nervous system. Nicotinic receptors have two subtypes: muscle and neuronal. The muscle subtype is found in skeletal muscle at the neuromuscular junction. The neuronal subtype is found in the peripheral and central nervous systems and in nonneuronal tissues (adrenal medulla). The muscarinic receptors are found on all postganglionic parasympathetic nerve fibers and postganglionic sympathetic nerve fibers that terminate at sweat glands, and in the central nervous system. Muscarinic receptors have five subtypes: M₁, M₂, M₃, M₄, and M₅. The subtypes are distributed throughout different areas of the brain, in autonomic ganglia, and in certain glands (gastric, salivary, and smooth muscle).

The action of acetylcholine is terminated by the enzyme acetylcholinesterase found in the synaptic cleft. The mechanism of action of several drugs, including the drugs used for Alzheimer's disease, relies on the inhibition of this enzyme. Drugs that act on the synthesis, storage, and release process of acetylcholine are not very selective and therefore are not good as systemic therapy.

Acetylcholine affects several organs in the body. The heart has M₂ receptors, and stimulation of those receptors causes vasodilation, decreased heart rate, decreased conduction velocity of the AV node, and decreased force of contraction. Acetylcholine works on M₃ receptors in the lungs to cause bronchoconstriction. It works on M₂ and M₃ receptors in the bladder to cause inhibition of smooth muscle relaxation. In the gastrointestinal tract, acetylcholine works on M₁, M₂, and M₃ receptors to control motility and gastric and salivary gland secretions. Acetylcholine also acts on M₃ receptors in the eye to cause pupillary and ciliary muscle contraction. All five muscarinic receptor subtypes are found in the CNS and cause a variety of actions such as increased cognitive function, increased seizure activity, regulation of dopamine release, neuronal

inhibition, analgesia, appetite regulation, and augmentation of drug-seeking behavior and reward.

Drugs that affect the action of acetylcholine are divided according to their physiological site of action. They are muscarinic agonists, muscarinic antagonists, ganglion-stimulating drugs, ganglion-blocking drugs, neuromuscular-blocking drugs, and drugs that enhance cholinergic transmission. Clinically, muscarinic agonists are used locally to treat glaucoma (pilocarpine) by lowering the intraocular pressure and to help with bladder emptying or stimulate gastrointestinal motility (bethanechol). Many more muscarinic antagonists are used clinically. Atropine is used in people with bradycardia and gastrointestinal hypermotility, but it is also used to reduce secretions and inhibit bronchoconstriction in the respiratory tract. Scopolamine is used to treat motion sickness. Ipratropium and tiotropium are used via inhalation in people with asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease to inhibit bronchoconstriction, and ipratropium is additionally used to treat rhinorrhea. Muscarinic antagonists used to reduce frequency of muscle contractions seen in urinary incontinence include oxybutynin, tolterodine, trospium chloride, darifenacin, solifenacin, and fesoterodine. Pirenzepine inhibits gastric acid secretion and is used to treat peptic ulcers. Drugs that cause pupil dilation and ciliary muscle paralysis are used to treat uveitis and include homatropine hydrobromide, cyclopentolate hydrochloride, and tropicamide. Benztropine mesylate, trihexyphenidyl hydrochloride, and biperiden are used in Parkinson's disease because of their regulation of dopamine. Antipsychotics used for schizophrenia and other neurologic disorders have various degrees of muscarinic antagonism, which can help decrease the extrapyramidal side effects of these drugs but also cause worsening cognition.

Drugs that act at the ganglionic and motor endplate receptors act specifically at nicotinic receptors. The only nicotinic agonists with a therapeutic use are nicotine for smoking cessation and suxamethonium for muscle relaxation, but lobeline, epibatidine, and dimethyphenylpiperazinium

are also agonists of the nicotine receptor. Nicotinic antagonists have limited clinical use because nicotinic receptors are found in both divisions of the autonomic nervous system and skeletal muscle; therefore, they cause severe postural and post-exercise hypotension. Trimetaphan is used for some types of anesthetic procedures, and pancuronium, atracurium, and vecuronium can be used as muscle relaxants in anesthesia.

Neuromuscular-blocking agents can work either presynaptically or postsynaptically, although all of the drugs used clinically work postsynaptically. They work by either blocking the acetylcholine receptor and ion channels or as agonists at the receptors. They are used mainly in anesthesia to produce muscle relaxation. These drugs are tubocurarine, pancuronium, vecuronium, atracurium, mivacurium, and suxamethonium.

Finally, drugs that enhance cholinergic transmission work either by inhibiting the enzyme acetylcholinesterase or by increasing acetylcholine release from the nerve terminal. These drugs work to increase the effect of acetylcholine in the autonomic nervous system, at the neuromuscular junction, and in the central nervous system. Neostigmine is used after an operation to reverse the anesthesia and for myasthenia gravis. Donepezil, rivastigmine, and galantamine are used to treat Alzheimer's disease dementia.

Acetylcholine is vital to so many systems that understanding the physiology will help to understand the mechanisms of various medications used to address multiple medical conditions.

References and Readings

- Brunton, L. L., Chabner, B. A., & Knollmann, B. C. (2010). *Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (12th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Professional.
- Rang, H. P., Dale, M. M., Ritter, J. M., & Flower, R. J. (2007). *Rang and Dale's pharmacology* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone/Elsevier.
- Trevor, A. J., Katzung, B. G., & Masters, S. B. (2010). *Pharmacology: Examination and board review* (9th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

ACT

► [Acceptance and Commitment Therapy](#)

ACTH

Jennifer Heaney

Clinical Immunology Service, The University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) is a polypeptide hormone that is synthesized and secreted by the anterior pituitary gland. ACTH forms part the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis (HPA axis), and its production is stimulated by corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) from the hypothalamus. ACTH acts on the adrenal cortex, by increasing the conversion of cholesterol to pregnenolone, to stimulate the release of mineralocorticoids, androgenic steroids, and glucocorticoids, namely, cortisol (Martin et al. 1977).

Along with CRH, ACTH is produced in the response to stress, stimulating an increase in production and secretion of cortisol. The secretion of ACTH is subject to negative feedback, where increased cortisol levels reduce the secretion of ACTH. It also controls its own secretion through short loop feedback via CRH. ACTH is not only secreted in response to stress but also a pulsatile manner, which is under neural control (Martin et al. 1977). The circadian secretion of ACTH increases prior to awakening and then declines progressively throughout the day.

Overproduction or blunted levels of ACTH can occur as a result of a disease. For example, increased levels of ACTH occur as a result of Addison's disease and Cushing's disease. Alternatively, ACTH levels may be reduced due to adrenal insufficiency or pituitary disease or as a result of a cortisol-secreting tumor (Greenspan and Forsham 1983).

Cross-References

► [Hypothalamus](#)

References and Further Reading

Greenspan, F. S., & Forsham, P. H. (1983). *Basic & clinical endocrinology*. California: Lange Medical Publications.
 Martin, J. B., Reichlin, S., & Brown, G. M. (1977). *Clinical neuroendocrinology*. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis Company.

Actigraphy (Wrist, for Measuring Rest/Activity Patterns and Sleep)

Christopher E. Kline

Department of Health and Physical Activity, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Accelerometry](#); [Actimetry](#); [Activity monitor](#)

Definition

Actigraphy is a method of objective sleep assessment in which sleep/wake status is estimated from bodily movement, typically of the wrist.

Description

Background and Use

As an alternative to laboratory polysomnography (PSG), actigraphy involves the use of an accelerometer to estimate sleep/wake status. Although initially developed in the 1970s, there has been an exponential increase in the use and development of actigraphy over the past 20 years. Due to technological developments, actigraphs are now unobtrusive (similar in size, look, and feel to a wrist watch) and inexpensive, capable of collecting data for multiple weeks, and able to provide rapid feedback on

sleep patterns due to automated software algorithms. Many actigraphs now record ambient light exposure and have the ability to mark the timing of specific events (e.g., bedtime). Some devices, including many commercial-based devices, now record additional physiological signals (e.g., heart rate, skin temperature).

Actigraphs are most commonly used for the evaluation of sleep/wake patterns in the home. Typically worn on the nondominant wrist (or ankle for infants), an actigraph continuously collects information on the frequency and intensity of movement with a sensitive multi-axis accelerometer. Upon download of data, each epoch of activity data is classified as sleep or wake based upon algorithms that have typically been developed against PSG, the gold standard for objective sleep assessment. Most algorithms incorporate movement counts for the epoch in question and the immediate surrounding epochs; the epoch is scored as sleep or wake based on whether the activity counts are below or above a particular threshold, respectively. Actigraphs incorporating additional signals (e.g., heart rate, skin temperature) incorporate these data into sleep/wake algorithms along with movement based on knowledge that these physiological signals vary based upon sleep/wake status and sleep stage (Fig. 1).

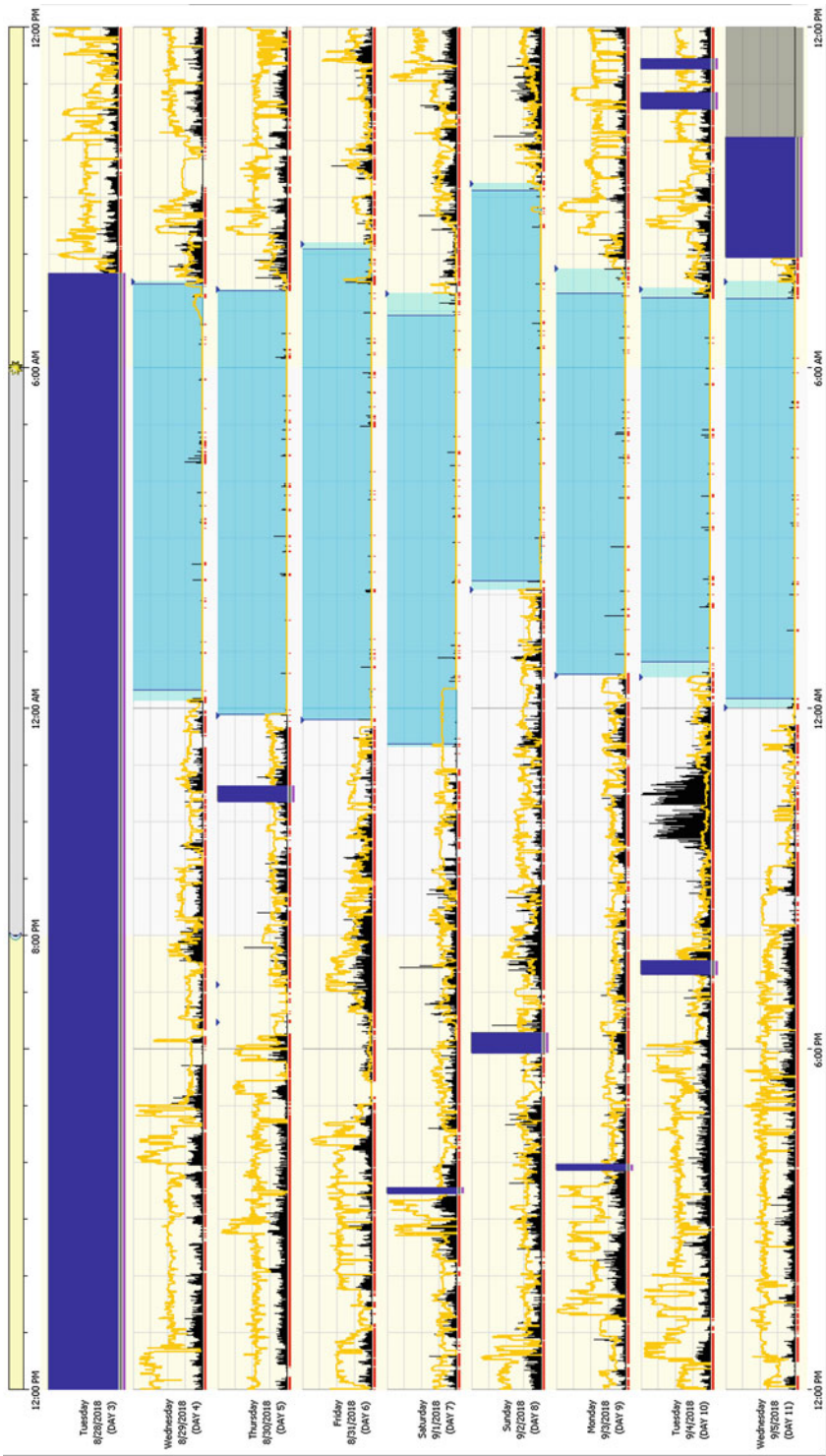
Common sleep measures obtainable via actigraphy include sleep onset latency (i.e., the length of time it takes for one to fall asleep), wakefulness after sleep onset (i.e., the amount of time spent awake after initially falling asleep), time in bed (i.e., the amount of time during which sleep is attempted), total sleep time (i.e., the total amount of time spent asleep during a specified interval of time), sleep efficiency (i.e., the ratio of time spent asleep to the amount of time attempting sleep), the number and duration of nighttime awakenings, and daytime napping duration. While sleep stage classification is not possible if relying solely on movement, devices incorporating additional physiological signals claim to estimate specific sleep stages.

Patients are commonly instructed to wear the actigraph for ≥ 5 consecutive days (including 1 weekend day), though longer periods of data collection (typically 1–3 weeks) are preferred.

Actigraphs should be continuously worn (i.e., 24 h/day), only removing the actigraph when it will be immersed in water, as most actigraphs are not completely waterproof. Daily sleep diaries are often completed concurrent while wearing an actigraph, as they provide useful information on, among other things, when the watch was removed, times of daytime napping, the time at which sleep was first attempted (i.e., bedtime), and the time at which one got out of bed for the final time (i.e., risetime).

Although useful for evaluating the sleep/wake patterns of any individual presenting with a sleep complaint, actigraphy is especially useful for characterizing the sleep/wake patterns of patients with insomnia (Smith et al. 2018). Sleep patterns of adults with insomnia show substantial night-to-night variability, and actigraphy provides an objective documentation of these patterns. In a similar way, actigraphy is valuable for tracking the altered timing of sleep/wake patterns of individuals with circadian rhythm sleep disorders (Smith et al. 2018).

Increased interest in objective quantification of movement behaviors across the 24-h day (i.e., the “24-hour activity cycle”) highlights the potential value of actigraphs for the assessment of both daytime and nocturnal movement (Rosenberger et al. 2019). Although not as sensitive as trunk placement for the accurate assessment of different physical activity intensities (i.e., sedentary behavior, light-intensity activity, moderate- to vigorous-intensity activity), wrist actigraphy can estimate activity with adequate precision. While few devices currently demonstrate validation support for both sleep/wake detection and classification of physical activity, many more devices will likely have this capability soon. Finally, because actigraphy typically provides data of multiple consecutive 24-h periods, evaluation of rest-activity rhythms is possible. In this measurement approach, raw activity data – irrespective of sleep/wake classification – are evaluated for their amplitude, stability within and across days, and most and least active periods each day (Calogiuri et al. 2013). Irregular and/or blunted rest-activity rhythms have been associated with various health outcomes (e.g., depressive symptoms, obesity, and mortality).



Actigraphy (Wrist, for Measuring Rest/Activity Patterns and Sleep), activity counts plotted for each minute of data collection. Inverted triangles represent times at which patient pressed an event marker. Shaded areas (light blue) indicate times at which patient was in bed attempting to sleep. Used with permission from Philips Respironics (Bend, OR)

Fig. 1 Actigraph output, providing a plot of activity counts over multiple days (Actiwatch Spectrum, Philips Respironics Actiware v. 6.09 software, Bend, OR). Each row represents a separate 24-h period (shown here beginning at noon), with

Validity

A multitude of actigraph models are available for commercial and research- or clinical-based purposes. Each actigraph model utilizes a different accelerometer, method of processing raw data, and algorithm for estimation of sleep/wake status. Nevertheless, actigraphy has generally been shown to demonstrate a strong ability for detecting sleep (i.e., sensitivity) but relatively poor at detecting wakefulness (i.e., specificity), with overall epoch-by-epoch agreement between actigraphy and PSG often exceeding 80% for differentiating sleep from wake (Sadeh 2011). New models that integrate additional physiological signals with movement to estimate sleep/wake show significant promise at improving specificity (de Zambotti et al. 2019). Algorithm accuracy is reduced for individuals with significantly disturbed sleep (e.g., individuals with frequent awakenings and/or reduced total sleep time) and in populations in which there is substantial activity during sleep (e.g., children, adults with movement disorders) or minimal activity during wakefulness (e.g., patients with insomnia) (Conley et al. 2019).

Despite the validity of actigraphy for estimating many common sleep parameters, much less support exists for the actigraphic estimation of daytime napping and sleep onset latency – particularly if there is no documentation (via event markers and/or daily log) of the timing of daytime napping or bedtime, respectively. Actigraphy often overestimates sleep during the day, as daytime periods of sedentary wakefulness are commonly classified as sleep via actigraphic algorithms. Likewise, sleep onset latency is often underestimated with actigraphy, particularly if the patient is able to lie awake with minimal movement.

Because actigraphic devices differ in how their accelerometer data are processed, algorithms for sleep/wake estimation are typically device-specific. Furthermore, although the amount of activity during sleep may differ according to developmental stage and/or clinical morbidity (e.g., infants, individuals with sleep apnea), there have been minimal attempts to optimize algorithm accuracy for specific populations of individuals.

Advantages to Other Methods of Sleep Assessment

Laboratory PSG is considered the gold standard for objective sleep assessment. However, for assessment of sleep/wake patterns over multiple days and nights, PSG is often not feasible. In addition, participants often note that sleep is impaired during PSG due to the numerous wires, belts, and devices attached to the head and body during sleep. Therefore, actigraphy may be a preferred alternative to PSG when large numbers of patients need to be studied, when multiple nights of assessment are needed, and/or when daytime napping needs to be objectively assessed.

An exclusive reliance on sleep diaries for the evaluation of sleep/wake patterns is often not recommended, because diary reports sometimes show significant divergence from actual sleep/wake patterns. Because actigraphy provides an objective estimate of sleep/wake activity, actigraphy is often used as a supplement to sleep diaries.

Limitations of Actigraphy

Actigraphy is limited in the amount of information it can provide. For instance, whereas PSG is able to provide detailed information on the duration and distribution of specific sleep stages (i.e., rapid eye movement [REM] sleep, stages 1–3 non-REM sleep), sleep stage assessment is not possible with actigraphic models that rely solely on movement. New models that integrate signals like heart rate or skin temperature along with movement have been able to estimate specific sleep stages but with only modest accuracy at this time (de Zambotti et al. 2019). In addition, actigraphy is limited in its ability to successfully identify wakefulness, which could pose a particular problem for assessing sleep in populations with significant amounts of nocturnal wakefulness due to disturbed sleep.

Due to different technologies and algorithms employed by different actigraph manufacturers, the accuracy of sleep/wake estimation can vary considerably across different actigraph models. Many actigraphs – especially commercial devices – have minimal to no published validation support. However, when available, it is important to note that actigraphic algorithms are device-

mode-, and (if validated) population-specific. Because there has been little standardization of actigraph models and algorithms across studies, clinicians and researchers should choose actigraphs that provide the desired technological features (e.g., light sensor, event marker) and whose algorithms have been validated in the population of interest.

Despite awareness regarding its importance and recent attempts at standardization (Patel et al. 2015), consensus guidelines regarding the editing and processing of actigraphy data do not exist (Ancoli-Israel et al. 2015). As a result, considerable variation could occur between technicians and laboratories when evaluating actigraphic data. When scoring actigraphy, standard operating procedures should be developed, specifically addressing how to identify daytime nap periods, when the watch was removed, and the beginning and end of the nocturnal rest period. Use of ambient light data (when available) is helpful in identifying bedtime, since there is often a sharp decrease in light levels at this time. Furthermore, although sleep diaries are typically completed concurrent with actigraphy to inform the scorer of sleep/wake patterns, use of event markers should be encouraged to identify times of attempted sleep during the day and night. This is especially true if accurate determination of daytime napping is desired, since in some sedentary individuals, multiple periods of low daytime activity could be interpreted as napping.

Cross-References

- [Insomnia](#)
- [Polysomnography](#)
- [Sleep](#)
- [Sleep and Health](#)
- [Sleep Continuity](#)
- [Sleep Duration](#)
- [Sleep Fragmentation](#)
- [Sleep Quality](#)

References and Further Reading

- Ancoli-Israel, S., Martin, J. L., Blackwell, T., Buenaer, L., Liu, L., Meltzer, L. J., Sadeh, A., Spira, A. P., & Taylor, D. J. (2015). The SBSM guide to actigraphy monitoring: Clinical and research applications. *Behavioral Sleep Medicine*, 13, S4–S38.
- Calogiuri, G., Weydahl, A., & Carandente, F. (2013). Methodological issues for studying the rest-activity cycle and sleep disturbances: A chronobiological approach using actigraphy data. *Biological Research for Nursing*, 15, 5–12.
- Conley, S., Knies, A., Batten, J., Ash, G., Miner, B., Hwang, Y., Jeon, S., & Redeker, N. S. (2019). Agreement between actigraphic and polysomnographic measures of sleep in adults with and without chronic conditions: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Sleep Medicine Reviews*, 46, 151–160.
- de Zambotti, M., Cellini, N., Goldstone, A., Colrain, I. M., & Baker, F. C. (2019). Wearable sleep technology in clinical and research settings. *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise*, 51, 1538–1557.
- Patel, S. R., Weng, J., Rueschman, M., Dudley, K. A., Lored, J. S., Mossavar-Rahmani, Y., Ramirez, M., Ramos, A. R., Reid, K., Seiger, A. N., Sotres-Alvarez, D., Zee, P. C., & Wang, R. (2015). Reproducibility of a standardized actigraphy scoring algorithm for sleep in a US Hispanic/Latino population. *Sleep*, 38, 1497–1503.
- Rosenberger, M. E., Fulton, J. E., Buman, M. P., Troiano, R. P., Grandner, M. A., Buchner, D. M., & Haskell, W. L. (2019). The 24-hour activity cycle: A new paradigm for physical activity. *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise*, 51, 454–464.
- Sadeh, A. (2011). The role and validity of actigraphy in sleep medicine: An update. *Sleep Medicine Reviews*, 15, 259–267.
- Smith, M. T., McCrae, C. S., Cheung, J., Martin, J. L., Harrod, C. G., Heald, J. L., & Carden, K. A. (2018). Use of actigraphy for the evaluation of sleep disorders and circadian rhythm sleep-wake disorders: An American Academy of sleep medicine clinical practice guideline. *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*, 14, 1231–1237.
- Stone, K. L., & Ancoli-Israel, S. (2017). Actigraphy. In M. H. Kryger, T. Roth, & W. C. Dement (Eds.), *Principles and practice of sleep medicine* (6th ed., pp. 1671–1678). Philadelphia: Elsevier.

Actimetry

- [Actigraphy \(Wrist, for Measuring Rest/Activity Patterns and Sleep\)](#)

Activation

- [Affect Arousal](#)

Active Aging

- [Positive Aging](#)

Active Coping

Linda Carroll
Department of Public Health Sciences, University
of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Synonyms

[Adaptive coping](#); [Constructive coping](#)

Definition

Coping is the set of intentional, goal-directed efforts people engage in to minimize the physical, psychological, or social harm of an event or situation (Lazarus and Folkman 1984; Lazarus 1999). There are many different theoretical and empirical frameworks for understanding coping, and many different ways of classifying coping strategies, but one such classification is “active coping.” In general, active coping refers to the utilization of those psychological or behavioral coping efforts that are characterized by an attempt to use one’s own resources to deal with a problem situation (Zeidner and Endler 1996). These responses are designed either to change the nature of the stressful situation or event in order to decrease the

problematic nature of that situation or event, or to modify how one thinks and feels about it in order to change one’s reactions to it. Examples include solving problems, reframing the meaning of the problems, or seeking information. Active coping is thought to be an adaptive way of dealing with stressful events and to be a vital component of resilience in the face of stress, health problems, and other adversity.

Cross-References

- [Coping](#)
- [Problem-Focused Coping](#)

References and Further Readings

- Lazarus, R. S. (1999). *Stress and emotion: A new synthesis*. New York: Springer.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Zeidner, M., & Endler, N. S. (1996). *Handbook of coping: Theory, research, applications*. New York: Wiley.

Active Sleep

- [REM Sleep](#)

Active Way of Life

- [Lifestyle, Active](#)

Activities of Daily Life Assessment

- [Health Assessment Questionnaire](#)

Activities of Daily Living (ADL)

Jane Upton
Department of Psychology, William James
College, Newton, MA, USA

Synonyms

Frailty assessment; Level of occupational performance; Physical ability/disability

Definition

An activities of daily living (ADL) evaluation is an assessment of an individual's physical and sometimes mental skills. In the area of physical or occupational therapy, it reflects how well a disabled patient or someone recovering from disease or accident can function in daily life. It is also used to determine how well patients relate to and participate in their environment (Krapp and Cengage 2006). Common examples of ADL include personal hygiene and feeding oneself.

Cross-References

► Occupational Therapy

References and Further Reading

Krapp, K., & Cengage, G. (2006). Activities of daily living evaluation. In *Encyclopedia of nursing & allied health* (2002). Detroit: Gale Group. eNotes.com. Retrieved from <http://www.enotes.com/nursing-encyclopedia/activities-daily-living-evaluation>

Activity Level

Patrícia Cardoso Buchain¹, Adriana Dias Barbosa Vizzotto², Alexandra Martini de Oliveira², Tania C. T. Ferraz Alves³ and Quirino Cordeiro⁴

¹Occupational Therapist of the Occupational Therapy Service, Institute of Psychiatry – Hospital das Clínicas University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

²Occupational Therapy Service, Institute of Psychiatry – Hospital das Clínicas University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

³Department and Institute of Psychiatry, University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

⁴Department of Psychiatry and Psychological Medicine, Santa Casa Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

Synonyms

Grade of activity

Definition

The level of activity is related to the complexity of the skills that demands and has an impact on an individual's occupational performances. This term is related to several characteristics that might influence the type and amount of effort required from the individual to perform a specific activity, task, or occupation. The term “activity level” is of great importance when designing occupational therapy interventions.

Description

When describing a person's activity level of daily living, it is possible to use the terms occupation and activity synonymously. However, these terms are not fully interchangeable as they describe two different aspects of the same

function (Christiansen and Townsend 2004; Hinojosa and Kramer 1997). Occupation is the “active process of living: from the beginning to the end of life, occupations are all the active processes of looking after ourselves and others, enjoying life, and being socially and economically productive over the lifespan and in various contexts” (Willard and Spackman’s 2008). Activity is a fundamental aspect of human existence, and each activity is usually composed by several tasks to be performed. Different activities might be combined in one routine and contribute to different occupations. Activity synthesis is the integration of some or all of these performance components with an appropriate theory that is consistent with the client’s goals and present status (Söderback 2009).

Factors Influencing Activity Level

Individual’s State of Flow

An individual’s present activity level is influenced by the interaction between his or her present mental status and the challenge and skill level of an activity, according to Csikszentmihalyi’s (1988) proposed theoretical model “Flow: The Psychology of Optimal Experience.” There is a complex interaction between the emotional state, the environment, and the ability to perform a specific task. It is suggested that someone might be able to perform a task in one condition and not in another one because of the relation to different aspects, for example, environment, engagement, mood, that is, angst, arousal, flow, worry, control, apathy, boredom, and relaxation. When optimal conditions occur, there is a state of flow that might allow people to feel in control of their environment and, thus, be able to perform a meaningful task. In this context, it is possible to find a person without any disability or mental declining health that due to anxiety or another negative feeling is unable to perform a specific task or fails to complete an assignment. In this case, the person is not per se unable to perform the tasks, but due to his or her own perception, it turns into a failure. Here, some

factors such as positive thinking, stable mood, and engagement might support a task toward a positive solution, and on the other hand, anxiety, negative thoughts, depression, and cognitive decline might prevent that the task is fulfilled.

Individual’s Personal Factors

It is likely that an individual has a great variation in his or her activity level to perform different activities depending on his or her cognitive integrity, familiarity of the present environment, support from other people, and perception of the meaningfulness when an activity is performed (Pool 2008). For example, in order to keep the person with cognitive impairment engaged in an activity, an enriched environment must be constructed and suitable degree of difficulty chosen to maintain flow and skills; thus, the activity is ended up with an expected product or performance.

Individual’s Past Experiences

Level of engagement in an activity is related to the individual’s past experiences (Kielhofner 2004, 2008), which can be summarized in positive or negative thoughts and feelings regarding a specific task. An individual with a positive approach interprets difficulty as part of the situation. They will engage in correcting and improving their performances. On the other hand, an individual with a negative approach will experience difficulty as failure and therefore, stop the ongoing activity. The last aspect may be observed among people with depressive or mild cognitive impairment.

Individual’s Dysfunctions

Cognitive functions and all mental processes that impair the symbolic operations, perception, memory, creation of imagery, thinking, reasoning, and judgment will affect how well activities are realized. Therefore, it is important to identify and assess how these cognitive functions influence the individual’s activity level. These assessment’s results may be helpful for therapists to guide an individual toward the most appropriate activity

level he or she is able to be engaged in and is able to perform as expected (Baum 1995; Söderback 1988). The engagement in an activity in a cognitive aspect could be planned, explanatory, sensory, or reflex (Pool 2008).

An important context for management of older adults with Alzheimer's disease (AD) activity level is proposed by Csikszentmihalyi (1988). The findings support the importance of keeping the person with AD engaged in occupational pursuits to sustain best functional level and moderate, appropriate behavior and habits.

Generally, people should keep themselves actively engaged; otherwise, disharmony or strain between individual and environment will arise, resulting in negative stress (Baum and Edwards 1993).

Conclusion

Activity is an essential component of human existence. The activity level is essential to be diagnosed, evaluated, and properly treated among individuals who show a reduced activity level, due to medical diagnosis, present life situation, personality, or inappropriate present environment. In this sense, it is fundamental for therapists and health-care providers to be well prepared and having appropriate knowledge, for example, in medicine, occupational therapy, and psychology, to meet the challenge of upholding requested activity level.

Cross-References

► Activities of Daily Living (ADL)

References and Further Reading

- Baum, C. M. (1995). The contribution of occupation to function in persons with Alzheimer's disease. *Journal of Occupational Science: Australia*, 2(2), 59–67.
- Baum, C. M., & Edwards, D. F. (1993). Cognitive performance in senile dementia of the Alzheimer's type: The kitchen task – American assessment. *The American Journal of Occupational Therapy*, 47(5), 431–436.
- Blesedell, C. E., Cohn, E. S., & Boyt, S. A. (2008). *Willard and Spackman's occupational therapy* (11th ed.). Boston: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

- Christiansen, C. H., & Townsend, E. A. (Eds.). (2004). *Introduction to occupation: The art and science of living*. Upper Saddle River: Prentice Hall.
- Csikszentmihalyi, M. (1988). *A theoretical model for enjoyment. Beyond boredom and anxiety* (pp. 1–231). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Fillenbaum, G. G., Dellinger, D., Maddox, G., & Pfeiffer, E. (1978). Assessment of individual functional status in a program evaluation and resource allocation model. In *Multidimensional functional assessment: The OARS methodology* (2nd ed.). Durham: Center for the Study of Aging and Human Development, Duke University.
- Hinojosa, J., & Kramer, P. (1997). Fundamental concepts of occupational therapy: Occupation, purposeful activity, and function (statement). *The American Journal of Occupational Therapy*, 51(10), 864–866.
- Jefferson, A. L., Robert, H. P., Ozonoff, A., & Cohen, R. A. (2006). Evaluating elements of executive functioning as predictors of instrumental activities of daily living (IADLs). *Archives of Clinical Neuropsychology*, 21(2006), 311–332.
- Kielhofner, G. (2004). *Terapia ocupacional: modelo de ocupación humana: teoría y aplicación*. Ed. Médica Panamericana
- Kielhofner, G., Mallinson, T., Crawford, C., Nowak, M., Rigby, M. Henry, A., et al., (2008). Occupational performance history interview II (OPHI-II) Version 2.1. In: Kielhofner, G. The model of human occupation: Theory and application. Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins. Retrieved July 05, 2011, <http://www.uic.edu/depts/moho/assess/ophi%202.1.html>.
- Pool, J. (2008). *The pool activity level (PAL) instrument for occupational profiling* (pp. 1–173). Philadelphia: Jessica Kingsley.
- Rivlin, A. M., & Wiener, J. M. (1988). *Caring for the disabled elderly: Who will pay?* (pp. 1–318). Washington, DC: Brookings Institution Press.
- Söderback, I. (1988). *Intellectual function training and intellectual housework training in patients with acquired brain damage. A study of occupational therapy methods*. (Dissertation from Department of Rehabilitation Medicine, Danderyd Hospital; The Department of Social Care and Rehabilitation, Stockholm College of Health and Caring Sciences; Department of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation, Karolinska Institute: Stockholm 1988) (pp 1–55).
- Söderback, I. (Ed.). (2009). *International handbook of occupational therapy interventions* (pp. 1–553). Dordrecht/London: Springer.
- Spector, W. D., Katz, S., Murphy, J. B., & Fulton, J. P. (1987). The hierarchical relationship between activities of daily living and instrumental abilities. *Journal of Chronic Diseases*, 40(6), 481–489.

Activity Limitations

► Disability

Activity Monitor

- [Actigraphy \(Wrist, for Measuring Rest/Activity Patterns and Sleep\)](#)
-

Activity Trackers

- [Physical Activity Monitors](#)
-

Acts of Commission

- [Child Abuse](#)
-

Acupressure

- [Acupuncture](#)
-

Acupuncture

M. Kay Garcia and Lorenzo Cohen
Department of Palliative, Rehabilitation, and
Interactive Medicine, Division of Cancer
Medicine, The University of Texas MD Anderson
Cancer Center, Houston, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Acupressure](#); [Integrative medicine](#); [Traditional Chinese medicine](#)

Definition

Acupuncture is a traditional therapy used to treat a variety of health-related problems. It involves assessment of the condition and development of a differential diagnosis followed by the insertion and manipulation of thin, solid metal needles at

specific locations on the body. Various techniques are used to stimulate the needles and improve the therapeutic effects, including manual manipulation or adding a mild electrical current.

There are many different types of acupuncture. For example, auricular acupuncture involves placement of stainless steel or gold (semipermanent) needles or “studs” at specific points on the ears. These are often left in place for 3–5 days. Other treatments such as acupressure (applying pressure or massaging acupoints), *gua sha* (scraping), moxibustion, or cupping are also used as adjuncts to acupuncture therapy. Moxibustion is a technique for providing heat to the needles. It involves placement of a special herb onto the needle and igniting it to bring mild warmth to the local area. Cupping involves the creation of a negative vacuum in a jar that is placed onto the skin surface. The negative pressure causes local congestion and vasodilation and may be used to help relieve pain (Deng et al. [1997](#)).

Description

Traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) is a complete system of healthcare delivery used for the prevention and treatment of a wide-range of health-related conditions. The therapeutic approaches of TCM include acupuncture, herbs, food therapy, *tui na* (bodywork), *tai chi* (therapeutic exercise), and *qi gong* (meditative/energy therapy). Acupuncture originated in China over 2500 years ago and remains one of the most popular therapies within TCM today. According to the World Health Organization, it is used in at least 70 countries worldwide (World Health Organization [2002](#)). There has been documented use of acupuncture in the United States for over 200 years, and, in 1996, the United States Food and Drug Administration approved acupuncture needles as medical devices (Code of Federal Regulations n.d.).

Acupuncture treatments are generally considered safe. Commonly reported risks include fainting, bruising, infection, and mild discomfort. Serious adverse events are rare when treatments

are provided by a qualified practitioner. Licensing requirements for acupuncturists vary. Some countries do not require a license to practice, but, in the United States, training programs have a standardized, clinically based curriculum and are formally accredited by the Accreditation Commission for Acupuncture and Oriental Medicine (Accreditation Commission for Acupuncture and Oriental Medicine n.d.). The National Certification Commission for Acupuncture and Oriental Medicine (NCCAOM), a nonprofit organization established in 1982, also promotes nationally recognized standards of competence and safety by examining and certifying individuals through national board examinations. Most states in the United States require NCCAOM certification in order to obtain a license to practice acupuncture (National Certification Commission for Acupuncture and Oriental Medicine n.d.).

Acupuncturists use many different models and approaches to understand and apply treatment. These models range from a metaphysical paradigm used by those traditionally trained to a strictly neurophysiologic approach incorporated into pain control regimens. According to ancient theory, acupuncture is based on the belief that energy flows through the body in channels known as meridians. This energy is also referred to as Qi (pronounced chee). A block in the meridians denies the surrounding tissues of Qi and creates an imbalance of health. Qi flow can be restored by inserting needles at specific locations on the body. With restored Qi, imbalances in absorption of nutrients and circulation of blood and fluids to the body's organs can be corrected (Deng et al. 1997).

Although acupuncture is used to treat a wide variety of health problems, human data from rigorous placebo controlled, randomized controlled trials has increased in recent years. The most compelling evidence supporting the use of acupuncture treatment for symptom control is its use for the management of nausea/vomiting and pain; however, studies have also shown that acupuncture may be useful for reducing hot flashes, xerostomia (chronic dry mouth), fatigue,

mood disorders, sleep disturbances, and peripheral neuropathy (National Institutes of Health n.d.-a, -b).

How acupuncture works is not well understood, but laboratory, animal, and human studies have attempted to differentiate the multiple putative mechanisms involved. In the late 1970s and early 1980s, researchers demonstrated acupuncture analgesia was associated with the stimulation of endogenous opioid peptides and biogenic amines through the central nervous system (Helms 1997). Subsequent brain imaging studies clearly demonstrated central nervous system activation differentiating real versus sham acupuncture (National Institutes of Health n.d.-b). Although these findings helped give acupuncture scientific credibility, quality research is needed to make clear recommendations as specific mechanisms may be dependent upon the symptom being treated, which point is stimulated, and the type of stimulation used.

References and Further Readings

- Accreditation Commission for Acupuncture and Oriental Medicine (ACAOM). (n.d.). Laurel. <http://acaom.org/>. Accessed 27 Aug 2019.
- Code of Federal Regulations (21CFR880.5580). (n.d.) US Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services. [61FR 64617, December 6, 1996, revised April 1, 2011].
- Deng, L., Gan, Y., He, S., et al. (1997). Acupuncture techniques. In Y. Cheng (Ed.), *Chinese acupuncture and moxibustion*. Beijing: Foreign Languages Press.
- Helms, J. M. (1997). *Acupuncture energetics: A clinical approach for physicians*. Berkeley: Medical Acupuncture Publishers.
- National Certification Commission for Acupuncture and Oriental Medicine (NCCAOM). (n.d.). Jacksonville. <http://www.nccaom.org/>. Accessed 27 Aug 2019.
- National Institutes of Health (NIH). (n.d.-a). National Center for Complementary and Integrative Health (NCCIH). Bethesda. <http://nccih.nih.gov/>. Accessed 27 Aug 2019a.
- National Institutes of Health (NIH). (n.d.-b). National Cancer Institute (NCI). Acupuncture PDQ. Bethesda. <http://www.cancer.gov/>. Accessed 27 Aug 2019b.
- World Health Organization. (2002). *WHO traditional medicine strategy 2002–2005*. Geneva: World Health Organization.

Acute Care

► [Acute Disease](#)

Acute Condition

► [Acute Disease](#)

Acute Disease

Amy Jo Marcano-Reik
Department of Bioethics, Cleveland Clinic,
Cleveland, OH, USA
Center for Genetic Research Ethics and Law, Case
Western Reserve University, Cleveland, OH,
USA

Synonyms

[Acute care](#); [Acute condition](#); [Acute illness](#); [Acute infection](#)

Definition

Acute diseases tend to have very quick onsets and typically last for only a brief period. By defining a disease as an acute disease, it does not necessarily address the severity of the disease. In fact, it typically only refers to the length of the disease or illness. Acute diseases, as opposed to chronic diseases, include a very rapid onset and/or a short course. Acute diseases can occur throughout all bodily systems. Examples of acute diseases include appendicitis, acute leukemia, and strep throat. Some acute diseases do not require hospitalization or medical treatments, such as influenza, whereas others, such as pneumonia and acute myocardial infarction, may require medical attention and extended treatment.

Cross-References

► [Disease Onset](#)

References and Readings

- Fisher, S. R., Goodwin, J. S., Protas, E. J., Kuo, Y.-F., Graham, J. E., Ottenbacher, K. J., & Ostir, G. V. (2010). ERRATUM. Ambulatory activity of older adults hospitalized with acute medical illness. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 59(4), 777.
- Knaus, W. A., Draper, E. A., Wagner, D. P., & Zimmerman, J. E. (1985). Apache II: A severity of disease classification system. *Critical Care Medicine*, 13(10), 818–829.
- Knaus, W. A., Zimmerman, J. E., Wagner, D. P., Draper, E. A., Elizabeth, A., & Lawrence, D. E. (1981). Apache: Acute physiology and chronic health evaluation: A physiologically based classification system. *Critical Care Medicine*, 9(8), 591–597.

Acute Illness

► [Acute Disease](#)

Acute Infection

► [Acute Disease](#)

Acute Myocardial Infarction

Siqin Ye
Division of Cardiology, Columbia University
Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Acute myocardial infarction (AMI), also known as heart attack or acute coronary syndrome (ACS), is a clinical condition that occurs when blood flow to regions of the heart is suddenly interrupted, causing myocardial ischemia and eventually cell death. Most commonly this is caused by coronary

atherosclerosis and is initiated by the rupture or erosion of a complex, lipid-laden plaque that then triggers thrombus formation causing the total or subtotal occlusion of the coronary artery in question. Rarely, non-atherosclerotic processes such as vasospasm, vasculitis, and spontaneous coronary artery dissection may also lead to myocardial infarction.

Acute myocardial infarction is further classified into ST-elevation myocardial infarction (STEMI) and non-ST-elevation myocardial infarction (NSTEMI), depending on the presence of ST-segment elevation on the 12-lead electrocardiogram (ECG). ST-segment elevation is typically associated with thrombi that are completely occlusive, leading to a large zone of infarction involving the full or nearly full thickness of the affected portion of the ventricle. NSTEMIs, on the other hand, are thought to be due to thrombi that cause subtotal occlusions severe enough to lead to myocardial necrosis. The term unstable angina (UA) is used to refer to situations in which cell deaths do not occur despite the presence of subtotally occlusive thrombi and clinical symptoms of ischemia such as chest pain. These three entities, STEMI, NSTEMI, and UA, together constitute the spectrum of acute coronary syndrome, a clinically important concept that is the foundation of current diagnostic and management pathways.

Despite recent declines, acute myocardial infarction remains a significant public health burden in the United States, affecting as many as 785,000 Americans in 2010. This is in part due to the high burden of risk factors such as hypertension, hyperlipidemia, diabetes mellitus, tobacco smoking, obesity, and physical inactivity in the general population. Patients with acute myocardial infarction typically present with chest pain or pressure radiating to the arm or jaw that is worse with exertion and is associated with shortness of breath, nausea, vomiting, or diaphoresis. Elderly patients and diabetics can often present with atypical symptoms. Upon presentation, timely performance of ECG is essential to determine the presence of ST-segment changes, and biomarkers such as cardiac troponins or the MB

fraction of creatine kinase (CK) are used to confirm myocardial necrosis. Noninvasive imaging modalities such as stress echocardiography or nuclear stress testing can be helpful in equivocal cases. In order to standardize case definition for both clinical practice and research, current guidelines have recommended that at least two of the following three criteria be met for the diagnosis of acute myocardial infarction: characteristic symptoms, ECG changes, and a typical rise and fall of biomarkers.

For patients with STEMI, the cornerstone of care is timely reperfusion therapy through percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) or fibrinolysis, which has been shown to improve survival in multiple studies. In the absence of contraindications, it is recommended that patients should undergo emergent PCI within 90 min of presentation or to receive fibrinolytics within 30 min of arrival in settings where PCI is not available or will be delayed. For patients with NSTEMI, an early invasive strategy utilizing PCI is recommended for those with high-risk features such as positive biomarkers or significant ST-segment changes. Regardless of the type of myocardial infarction, occasionally urgent or emergent coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) may be required depending on findings on coronary angiography. In terms of pharmacological therapy, both STEMI and NSTEMI patients have been shown to benefit from aspirin; antiplatelet agents such as clopidogrel, beta-blockers, statins, ACE inhibitors, and angiotensin receptor blockers; and anticoagulants such as heparin, low-molecular-weight heparin, and bivalirudin. Nitrates and morphine are often used for symptom relief but have not been shown to improve survival. Despite these therapeutic advances, myocardial infarction is the cause of death for more than 140,000 Americans annually.

Patients who survive the initial episode of myocardial infarction are also at risk for a number of complications, including heart failure, ventricular free wall rupture or ventricular septal defect, ventricular tachyarrhythmias, left ventricular thrombus, and recurrent myocardial

infarction. Careful follow-up and adherence to the prescribed medical regimen is essential for secondary prevention. In addition, lifestyle changes such as smoking cessation, regular exercise, weight loss, and dietary modifications have been shown to be beneficial, but substantial challenges remain in motivating patients to maintain healthy behavioral changes over time. Of note, psychosocial factors such as depression and poor social support have also been shown to be independent risk factors for major adverse cardiovascular events after myocardial infarction, but thus far there is only limited evidence that interventions targeting these can reduce adverse outcomes.

References and Further Reading

- American Heart Association Statistics Committee and Stroke Statistics Subcommittee. (2010). Heart disease and stroke statistics 2010 update: A report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*, 121, e46–e215.
- Amssterdam, E. A., Wenger, N. K., Brindis, R. G., Casey, D. E., Ganiats, T. G., Holmes, D. R., Jaffe, A. S., Jneid, H., Kelly, R. F., Kontos, M. C., Levine, G. N., Liebson, P. R., Mukherjee, D., Peterson, E. D., Sabatine, M. S., Smalling, R. W., & Zieman, S. J. (2014). 2014 AHA/ACC guideline for the management of patients with non-ST-elevation acute coronary syndromes. *Circulation*, 130, e344–e426.
- Antman, E. M. (2008). ST-elevation myocardial infarction: Management. In P. Libby, R. O. Bonow, D. L. Mann, D. P. Zipes, & E. Braunwald (Eds.), *Braunwald's heart disease: A textbook of cardiovascular medicine* (pp. 1233–1299). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Antman, E. M., & Braunwald, E. (2008). ST-elevation myocardial infarction: Pathology, pathophysiology, and clinical features. In P. Libby, R. O. Bonow, D. L. Mann, D. P. Zipes, & E. Braunwald (Eds.), *Braunwald's heart disease: A textbook of cardiovascular medicine* (pp. 1207–1232). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Cannon, C. P., & Braunwald, E. (2008). Unstable angina and non-ST elevation myocardial infarction. In P. Libby, R. O. Bonow, D. L. Mann, D. P. Zipes, & E. Braunwald (Eds.), *Braunwald's heart disease: A textbook of cardiovascular medicine* (pp. 319–1351). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Cannon, C. P., & Lee, T. H. (2008). Approach to the patient with chest pain. In P. Libby, R. O. Bonow, D. L. Mann, D. P. Zipes, & E. Braunwald (Eds.), *Braunwald's heart disease: A textbook of cardiovascular medicine* (pp. 1195–1205). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- O'Gara, P. T., Kushner, F. G., Ascheim, D., Casey, D. E., Chung, M. K., de Lemos, J. A., Ettinger, S. M., Fang, J. C., Fesmire, F. M., Franklin, B. A., Granger, C. B., Krumholz, H. M., Linderbaum, J. A., Morrow, D. A., Newby, L. K., Ornato, J. P., Ou, N., Radford, M. J., Tamis-Holland, J. E., Tommaso, C. L., Tracy, C. M., Woo, Y. J., & Zhao, D. X. (2012). 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of ST-elevation myocardial infarction. *Circulation*. <https://doi.org/10.1161/CIR.0b013e3182742cf6>.
- The Joint ESC/ACCF/AHA/WHF (2012). Task Force for the Universal Definition of Myocardial Infarction. Third universal definition of myocardial infarction. *Circulation*, 126(16), 2010–2035.

Acute Phase Proteins

- C-Reactive Protein (CRP)

Adaptive Coping

- Active Coping

Adaptive Interventions

- Stepped Care Models

Addiction

- Addictive Behaviors

Addiction Rehabilitation

- Substance Abuse: Treatment

Addictive Behaviors

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Synonyms

[Addiction](#)

Definition

Addictive behaviors (AB) are a cluster of persistent compulsive behaviors which people feel an uncontrolled urge to perform, without which they fear experiencing loss of control or a very negative outcome. The American Psychiatric Association defines substance dependence as: “When an individual persists in use of alcohol or other drugs despite problems related to use of the substance, substance dependence may be diagnosed. Compulsive and repetitive use may result in tolerance to the effect of the drug and withdrawal symptoms when use is reduced or stopped. This, along with Substance Abuse are considered Substance Use Disorders. . .” (DSM-IV & DSM-IV-TR: Substance Dependence).

Description

AB include smoking, ingesting street and medical drugs, alcohol consumption, or even other normally healthy activities such as sports, among other behaviors. There is often comorbidity between AB and mental health problems. In the AB, there is a repetitive form of behavior lasting various periods of time from perhaps months to years and an eventual dependence on the sought material or activity. The prevalence of AB varies according to the type of AB, gender, age group, and geographic region. For example, a national survey conducted in the USA in over 43,000 people found a lifetime prevalence of alcohol dependence of 12.5% (Hasin et al. 2007).

Among 12th grade American students, 6.1% take marijuana daily (National Institute of Drug Abuse). When researching risk factors of AB, one needs to distinguish between abuse of certain agents (e.g., drug abuse) and dependence on such agents, resulting in AB. Risk factors of AB vary between ages and genders. In youth, these can include peer pressure and parental behavior (in favor and against). In adults, unmarried people, men, and low income are among the socioeconomic correlates of alcohol dependence (Hasin et al. 2007). A review of studies on life events and alcohol found that the type of event mattered – while health and financial problems predicted reduced alcohol intake, life events related to the spouse, friends, or retiring predicted increases in alcohol consumption in longitudinal studies (Veenstra et al. 2006). Over-attention to environmental cues associated with alcohol in alcoholics, as measured by the emotional Stroop test, was found in another study to be associated with alcoholism (Lusher et al. 2004). The latter finding also reveals that weaker inhibitory control, an element of executive functioning, is related to AB. Among the different mechanisms proposed to account for AB are operant conditioning – the consumed material produces a feeling of reward, pleasure, or reduction in distress, all of which serve as reinforcements and eventually form the basis for the dependence on the consumed material and the AB. Neural mechanisms underlying AB include activation of dopamine-rich regions in the brain. One study found that the mesencephalon, a dopamine-rich region, showed higher activity specifically in response to drug-related words in cocaine users than in healthy controls (Goldstein et al. 2009). In summary, AB are a severe public health problem worldwide, with multiple risk factors spanning from socioeconomic, perceptual, environmental, and neurobiological, hence requiring an interdisciplinary type of intervention.

Cross-References

► [Alcohol Abuse and Dependence](#)

References and Further Readings

- Goldstein, R. Z., Tomasi, D., Alia-Klein, N., Honorio Carrillo, J., Maloney, T., Woicik, P. A., Wang, R., Telang, F., & Volkow, N. D. (2009). Dopaminergic response to drug words in cocaine addiction. *Journal of Neuroscience*, 29, 6001–6006.
- Hasin, D. S., Stinson, F. S., Ogburn, E., & Grant, B. F. (2007). Prevalence, correlates, disability, and comorbidity of DSM-IV alcohol abuse and dependence in the United States: Results from the national epidemiologic survey on alcohol and related conditions. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 64, 830–842.
- Lusher, J., Chandler, C., & Ball, D. (2004). Alcohol dependence and the alcohol Stroop paradigm: Evidence and issues. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, 75, 225–231.
- Veenstra, M. Y., Lemmens, P. H., Friesema, I. H., Garretsen, H. F., Knottnerus, J. A., & Zwietering, P. J. (2006). A literature overview of the relationship between life-events and alcohol use in the general population. *Alcohol and Alcoholism*, 41, 455–463.

Ader, Robert

Marc D. Gellman
Behavioral Medicine Research Center,
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Biographical Information



Robert Ader was born in 1932. He was a native of the Bronx, New York, and a graduate of Tulane University. He received his Ph.D. at Cornell University. He then joined the faculty at the University of Rochester Medical Center and quickly rose through the ranks, becoming a professor of psychiatry and psychology in 1968. He held numerous positions and titles during his tenure at the University of Rochester, including the George Engel Professor of Psychosocial Medicine and Distinguished University Professor. He retired in July 2011 as professor emeritus. He had received an honorary doctor of science degree from Tulane and an honorary medical degree from Trondheim University in Norway.

Major Accomplishments

Ader coined the word psychoneuroimmunology to describe the field of study he helped create. He was editor and later coeditor of the book *Psychoneuroimmunology*, first published in 1981, that details the research supporting the proposition that the brain and immune system is an integrated system. He was the founder and past president of the Psychoneuroimmunology Research Society and also past president of the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research and the American Psychosomatic Society. He launched the journal *Brain, Behavior and Immunity*, and in 2002, the Psychoneuroimmunology Research Society created an award, the Robert Ader New Investigator Award, to be given to promising young scientists.

His theories that the human mind could significantly affect the ability of the immune system to fight disease were initially greeted with heated skepticism and sometimes scorn when he proposed them more than 30 years ago. However, they are now applied and studied in many medical specialties, as well as by researchers around the world.

In the early 1970s, in what would become one of his most distinctive experiments, Ader was studying taste aversion conditioning in rats. In the experiment, rats drank different volumes of a saccharin solution and also were injected with a dose of Cytoxan, an immunosuppressive drug that induces gastrointestinal upset. The rats “learned,” or were conditioned, to avoid consuming the

solution. When he stopped giving the rats the drug but continued to give them the saccharin solution, not only did the rats avoid drinking the solution but also some of the animals died. The magnitude of the avoidance response of the rats was directly related to the volume of solution consumed. Additionally, the mortality rate varied with the amount of solution consumed. Ader believed that this orderly relationship could not be due to chance. It was through these experiments that he discovered that the rat immune system can be conditioned to respond to external stimuli. This was one of the first scientific experiments that demonstrated that the nervous system can affect the immune system.

In an interview conducted in 2010 that appeared in the newsletter of the American Institute of Stress, Ader commented as follows:

As a psychologist, I was unaware that there were no connections between the brain and the immune system so I was free to consider any possibility that might explain this orderly relationship between the magnitude of the conditioned response and the rate of mortality. A hypothesis that seemed reasonable to me was that, in addition to conditioning the avoidance response, we were conditioning the immunosuppressive effects (of Cytoxan). It seems to me that basic research on the interactions among behavior, neuroendocrine and immune processes has a bright future that promises new developments in our understanding of adaptive processes with profound consequences for the maintenance of health and for the treatment of disease.

This hypothesis was tested and confirmed in a classic study employing deliberately immunized animals, the results of which were published in 1975 in the journal *Psychosomatic Medicine*. Conditioning is one form of learning and, as such, involves the higher centers of the brain. Ader's study, clearly demonstrating that immune responses could be modified by classical conditioning, meant there were connections between the brain and the immune system and that the mind could have profound effects on the body's functions that were thought to be independent.

In his paper published in 2010 in the journal *Psychosomatic Medicine*, Ader and his fellow Medical Center researchers described the use of a placebo effect to successfully treat psoriasis patients with a quarter to a half of the usual dose of a widely used steroid medication. Early results in human

patients suggest that this new technique could improve treatment for several chronic diseases that involve mental state or the immune system. Following publication of this paper, Ader observed that "Our study provides evidence that the placebo effect can make possible the treatment of psoriasis with an amount of drug that should be too small to work. . . . While these results are preliminary, we believe the medical establishment needs to recognize the mind's reaction to medication as a powerful part of many drug effects, and start taking advantage of it."

Cross-References

- ▶ [Behavioral Immunology](#)
- ▶ [Immune Function](#)
- ▶ [Immune Responses to Stress](#)
- ▶ [Neuroimmunology](#)
- ▶ [Neuroimmunomodulation](#)
- ▶ [Psychoneuroimmunology](#)

References and Further Readings

- Ader, R. (2003). Conditioned immunomodulation: Research needs and directions. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 17(Suppl. 1), 51–57.
- Ader, R., & Cohen, N. (1982). Behaviorally conditioned immunosuppression and murine systemic lupus erythematosus. *Science*, 215, 1534–1536.
- Ader, R., Felten, D. L., & Cohen, N. (2006). *Psychoneuroimmunology* (4th ed., Vol. 1–2). Burlington: Academic. ISBN 0-12-088576-X.
- Ader, R., Mercurio, M. G., Walton, J., James, D., Davis, M., Ojha, V., et al. (2010). Conditioned pharmacotherapeutic effects: A preliminary study. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 72, 192–197.

Adherence

M. Bryant Howren
Department of Psychology, The University of Iowa and Iowa City VA Healthcare System,
Iowa City, IA, USA

Synonyms

[Patient compliance](#)

Definition

Adherence is a term used to describe the extent to which an individual's behavior coincides with health-related instructions or recommendations given by a health-care provider in the context of a specific disease or disorder. The term has been used extensively in psychology and medicine in reference to acute, chronic, and preventive treatment regimens (e.g., a course of prescribed medication, wound self-care), preventive health screenings, dietary restriction, exercise recommendations, smoking cessation, and other health behaviors. Although *adherence* is synonymous with *compliance* in many contexts, the former is often preferred by behavioral scientists and allied health professionals given its emphasis of patient-provider collaboration as opposed to a more authoritarian, provider-centered exchange.

Description

Extent and Implications of Nonadherence

Despite significant advances in biomedical science related to the treatment of disease, the problem of nonadherence remains pervasive. Although estimates of nonadherence vary considerably as a function of (a) the length and complexity of the treatment regimen, (b) setting and population, and (c) assessment method, data suggest that rates of nonadherence range from 20% to 80%. From an economic standpoint, medication nonadherence has been estimated to cost upward of \$300 billion annually in avoidable medical spending in the USA alone, a figure that does not include the cost implications of nonadherence to all health-care regimens. In addition to the enormous monetary cost, nonadherence also has implications for the efficacy and effectiveness of medical treatment regimens. Specifically, not only has patient nonadherence been linked to treatment failures, but it also may directly undermine future treatment efficacy due to its contribution to the development of drug-resistant disease strains as well as complications regarding the establishment of empirically based guidelines.

Assessing Adherence

Numerous strategies for assessing adherence behavior have been employed by researchers and clinicians alike. These include patient self-report, clinician judgment, clinical/health outcomes, medication measurement, electronic medication monitors, computerized pharmacy records, biological indicators, and directly observed therapy. Each strategy is reviewed here in turn.

Patient Self-Report

Subjective patient reports remain the most widely used assessment method largely because they are quick and inexpensive and can be administered by persons with little or no technical expertise. Furthermore, self-report may be the only method of ascertaining patient attitudes and experiences related to a specific treatment regimen. For example, a patient choosing to split dosages in order to share medication with a significant other will not necessarily be identified as nonadherent through objective assessment methods (reviewed below). Despite these benefits, however, evidence indicates that patients significantly *underestimate* rates of nonadherence. In addition to memory biases inherent in retrospective recall of behavioral events, patients may be hesitant to report nonadherent behavior to health-care providers or behavioral scientists for fear of rebuke.

Recognizing the limitations associated with patient self-report – particularly when requested over an extended period, such as days or weeks – many have advocated the use of *ecological momentary assessment* (EMA), a method in which patients are asked to report about their behavior over several, discrete points in time. Because EMA captures events in “real time,” it minimizes recall biases; however, it is important to note that EMA does require considerably greater patient burden and still may be subject to certain methodological issues, such as poor adherence to the self-assessment protocol itself.

Clinician Judgment

Similar to evidence regarding patient self-report, health-care providers also significantly underestimate rates of nonadherence in their patients. Evidence suggests that less experienced providers are

the least likely to recognize nonadherence, but identification of such patients is difficult for providers at all levels and specialties. This may be due, in part, to stereotypes about what constitutes an adherent patient including gender and race, attributes which are not consistently related to adherence behavior. Collectively, this overall lack of provider awareness of patient non-adherence has clinical implications regarding adjustments to patient treatment regimens as well as the frequency and aggressiveness of patient follow-up over time.

Clinical Outcomes

Adherence researchers have also utilized clinical outcomes – such as infection resolution or changes in blood pressure or interdialytic weight gain – as proxies of treatment adherence. These measurements must be interpreted with caution, however. Evidence indicates that poor physical health is significantly predictive of treatment non-adherence, clouding any interpretation of an association between clinical outcomes and adherence behavior. In addition, the extent to which many clinical and health outcomes are related to adherence behavior either varies considerably or is largely unknown, further complicating the use of such measures as indicators of adherence.

Medication Measurement

Medication measurement methods, such as pill counts or the weighing of liquid medication, represent a straightforward, objective way of estimating adherence. Much like self-report methods, however, medication measurement is subject to several limitations. In particular, pill counts have been repeatedly shown to be an insensitive index of nonadherence. One possible explanation is the phenomenon of medication “dumping” in which patients choose to discard unused medication for fear of appearing nonadherent. Patients may also share medications with family members on the same (or similar) treatment regimen. Even if patients are not actively engaging in deception or sharing, medication measurement methods are further limited because they provide no indication of regimen fidelity (i.e., whether the medication, if ingested, was taken as directed).

Electronic Medication Monitors

A more advanced method of tracking medication usage is through the use of electronic medication monitors. In contrast to more simplistic medication measurement – such as pill counts – electronic monitoring allows a clinician or researcher to capture some information regarding regimen fidelity. For example, one of the most widely used systems is the Medication Event Monitoring System (MEMS), which may be used with any regimen consisting of pills or capsules. The MEMS “Track Cap” records the date and time of each cap removal, which is stored in a small chip affixed to the bottle and may later be downloaded to a computer for analysis. Evidence indicates that systems like MEMS are a more sensitive measure of adherence when compared to other measurement methods including clinician judgment, patient self-report, and pill counts. Although electronic monitoring methods may alleviate some concerns associated with other assessment strategies, they are not without limitations. Much like pill counts, electronic methods also are tied to the assumption that medication removal may be equated with medication ingestion.

Computerized Pharmacy Records

Behavioral scientists have developed methods that utilize prescription refill records from computerized pharmacy databases to obtain estimates of adherence. These methods, often referred to as *refill compliance* (RC) measures, ascertain the timing of medication refills and calculate the percentage of time patients have a necessary supply of medication(s) during a specific time frame. RC estimates utilize a considerable amount of information including the drug name, dosage, quantity dispensed, and date of refill; thus, RC estimates may be computed for individual medications, specific classes of medications, and/or across all prescription agents taken by a particular patient.

Much like the methods already reviewed, RC estimates, too, are limited. For example, while a patient may obtain prescription refills on a regular basis, RC measures do not provide information as to whether a patient takes the drug(s) as directed. Furthermore, abrupt, provider-directed changes to

a patient's regimen may not be accurately captured. Lastly, RC methods are not useful for estimating adherence to short-term or discretionary treatments, such as a brief course of antibiotics or prescription analgesics used "as needed." On balance, however, increasing evidence supports the validity of RC methods with strong associations reported between pharmacy records and other measures of adherence including medication measurement, biochemical assays, and other clinical outcomes.

Biological Indicators

Clinical analyses, such as biochemical assays and other laboratory tests, may be used to estimate adherence through measurement of medication, metabolites, or drug tracers in serum or urine. Such methods are free of subjective biases, but may be limited in several other ways. Biochemical assays are, at present, only available for a limited number of patient drugs and are influenced by individual differences in drug metabolism. Moreover, these methods are often quite costly, precluding their use in routine clinical care. Lastly, even biological indicators may be compromised if a patient alters adherence behavior close to the time of analysis.

One example of an oft-used, widely available laboratory test is the hemoglobin A1C assay (aka, glycosylated hemoglobin), a reliable and valid clinical indicator of glycemic control in diabetic patients. Because diabetic patients must adhere to a complex self-care regimen in order to maintain blood glucose control (e.g., insulin injections, restricted diet, exercise, frequent blood glucose testing), self-reported adherence may be especially biased and/or difficult to capture given the array of relevant behaviors to be measured. The hemoglobin A1C assay provides a more stable – though imperfect – proxy of adherence (i.e., glycemic control) over the previous 2–3 months. Hemoglobin A1C levels are now routinely used in both clinical care and research and have become the gold standard with respect to diabetes diagnosis and care.

Directly Observed Therapy (DOT)

Finally, DOT – as indicated by its name – requires the direct observation of patients as they complete

each treatment or dose to confirm adherence. DOT was developed in the context of tuberculosis (cf. Bayer and Wilkinson 1995), an infectious disease requiring complex, months-long treatment and, consequently, is fraught with challenges to patient adherence. In particular, those most affected by tuberculosis (e.g., IV drug users, the homeless) were also those least likely to adhere to treatment. Besides tuberculosis treatment, DOT has proven a successful adherence strategy in studies of patients with HIV, pertussis, and hepatitis C. Overall, DOT may be most useful in the context of those illnesses that mutate quickly and are highly contagious or where patient adherence is the primary barrier to treatment effectiveness.

Determinants of Adherence

Over the past 50 years, much research has worked to identify determinants of patient adherence. Although health-care providers typically attribute nonadherent behavior to patient characteristics, the determinants of nonadherence are multifaceted and quite complex. Reviewed below are several characteristics known to be associated with patient adherence.

Characteristics of the Treatment Regimen

Relative to the other general categories of adherence determinants, characteristics of the treatment regimen have been less studied. Despite the paucity of data in this context, however, research consistently indicates that the complexity of the specific treatment regimen appears to substantially influence adherence behavior. For example, much evidence demonstrates that patients have more trouble adhering to prescribed treatments when multiple (vs. single) doses are required throughout the day or are attached to certain caveats (e.g., "take with food"). Moreover, multifaceted regimens have been shown to yield poor adherence behavior as well. For example, diabetic patients (i.e., those required to meet multiple, complex self-care responsibilities) often have the highest levels of nonadherence compared to other patient populations. Of note, the correlations among various facets of complex treatment regimens are known to be quite low, suggesting that

otherwise adherent patients may have trouble navigating multiple, complex treatment demands.

Patient Characteristics

Research regarding patient characteristics has typically focused on either (a) sociodemographic or (b) psychological correlates of adherence behavior. With respect to the former, few consistent patterns have emerged, perhaps with the exceptions of patient age and socioeconomic status (SES). Across numerous treatment settings and patient populations, younger individuals tend to exhibit poorer adherence behaviors as compared to older adults, although not uniformly. Patients of lower SES also tend to have increased rates of nonadherence irrespective of the treatment setting.

Patient psychological characteristics, such as personality traits and individual differences related to patient beliefs and expectancies, have been extensively studied in the context of treatment adherence. For example, the five-factor model personality trait of conscientiousness – reflecting self-control, dependability, deliberation, and the will to achieve – has been related to adherence in some (e.g., dietary adherence in end-stage renal disease patients), but not all, contexts. In addition, *health locus of control* (HLC), or the extent to which one believes that good health is a product of one's own behaviors as opposed to external or chance factors, has been shown to be associated with better adherence in several studies. In some instances, patients believing that health outcomes are due largely to their own behaviors (i.e., *internal* health locus of control, IHLC) exhibit more favorable adherence; however, other researches have failed to demonstrate any association between IHLC and adherence, while still others have found it to be associated with *worse* adherence. At best, the relationship between HLC and adherence is unclear. Some have speculated that patients with an IHLC orientation may demonstrate poorer adherence in contexts where self-care demands are minimal and patient control over health outcomes is limited.

Adherence researchers have also shown a decided interest in patient self-efficacy or the

extent to which an individual believes he/she is capable of performing the behavior(s) needed to bring about a certain outcome. Much evidence has consistently demonstrated the importance of patient self-efficacy in multiple treatment contexts, including diabetes, chronic kidney disease, HIV, transplant recipients, and post-MI recovery. Notably, some evidence suggests that locus of control and self-efficacy – distinct, yet complementary constructs – best predict adherence when considered in tandem, suggesting avenues for future research.

Patient Depression

Patient experience of psychological distress, particularly depression, has been investigated extensively in the context of patient adherence. Hallmarks of clinical depression include decreased motivation, negative mood, psychomotor retardation, and cognitive deficits, all of which seemingly may impact adherence intentions and subsequent behaviors. While not all studies have demonstrated a link between depression and nonadherence, much work has indeed identified a relationship. Studies (including meta-analyses) in multiple patient populations – including cancer, cardiovascular disease, chronic kidney disease, and HIV – have shown that as depression increases, so does nonadherence.

Inconsistencies, to some extent, may be due to the method in which depression is captured (i.e., via self-report vs. diagnostic interview) and the context in which adherence is measured. Any relationship between depression and nonadherence is likely to be a function of the neurovegetative symptoms of depression noted above, each of which may be less likely in patients with subclinical depression. Consistent with this line of thought, research using self-report measures to capture depressive affect (vs. structured clinical interview) tends to show weaker associations with adherence outcomes. Furthermore, some evidence demonstrates that as self-care demands increase, so do associations between depression and nonadherence, making the specific disease context in which adherence is measured extremely important.

Provider Characteristics

Health-care provider (and practice style) characteristics have not been extensively considered in the context of adherence, nor have many significant associations materialized. While provider age, gender, and race/ethnicity seem to have little to do with the level of patient adherence, limited evidence suggests that the degree of information provision afforded patients is related to adherence; however, this variable seems to be more strongly associated with patient satisfaction than patient adherence.

Patient-Provider Interaction

Perhaps more important is the *interaction* between patient and provider. Health-care delivery is decidedly interpersonal; thus, it seems remiss not to consider the patient-provider dyad in the context of adherence. Indeed, a growing body of evidence suggests that the symmetry, or match, between a patient and his/her provider on health-related attitudes toward illness and the health-care context itself may be important for patient adherence. Christensen and his colleagues have done considerable work in this area, finding that patients and providers with similar attitudes regarding control over one's health (i.e., IHLC; see above) as well as preference for self-management and shared decision-making regarding treatment are predictive of adherence. Future research regarding patient-provider interaction in the context of treatment adherence may shed additional light on some of the issues reviewed heretofore.

Socio-environmental Characteristics

Although considerable research underscores the importance of perceived quality and availability of social support in the context of adherence, the totality of evidence is, at best, mixed. Several studies in various disease contexts have found social support to be either unrelated or inconsistently related to adherence; still, others have reported social support to be related to poorer treatment adherence within certain contexts. In such instances, researchers have speculated that social support may confer a barrier to adherence –

such as increased social obligations or stigma – particularly when a regimen requires changes in dietary behavior, which is known to be heavily influenced by social factors.

Facilitating Adherence

Strategies aimed at facilitating, or increasing, patient adherence may be classified in one of the three general categories: behavioral, psychoeducational, and socio-environmental. Behavioral strategies – such as patient self-monitoring, contingency contracting, stimulus control, and behavioral cues/reminders – have been implemented widely in the context of chronic treatment regimens. Collectively, such strategies have yielded modest success in facilitating patient adherence. For example, behavioral techniques have been commonly used to help improve adherence among diabetic patients; in particular, self-monitoring strategies have resulted in improved adherence to dietary guidelines and, as such, have been touted as a crucial component of modern diabetic therapy.

Psychoeducational strategies, including the provision of written or computer-based education, appear to be most effective when patients are given explicit, tailored recommendations relative to their disease and treatment versus interventions that impart more general health-related information. Although briefer psychoeducational interventions have demonstrated reasonable success, clinicians and researchers should be aware that multifaceted regimens (e.g., those associated with diabetes, transplant recovery) likely require considerably more instruction to confer a significant benefit.

Finally, several socio-environmental strategies have also been used to facilitate adherence. The most common strategy increases contact between the patient and health-care provider, such as the treating physician or study nurse, with mixed success. Similarly, patient support groups and enhancement of the patient's family support structure through counseling have been attempted with some success. Much of this work, however, has been plagued by inattention to theory and poor methodology, highlighting the need for further investigation.

Technology and Adherence

The substantial growth of telemedicine in addition to the pervasiveness of personal computers, tablets, mobile phones, and other wireless communication devices has ushered in a new era of adherence intervention strategies in which technology-based methods are employed. These include Mobile Health or “mHealth” programs, home telemonitoring systems, web-based support, and patient portals and personal health records. In particular, mHealth – which encompasses interactive voice response (IVR) phone calls, text message reminders, and downloadable smartphone “apps” which may help track caloric intake, blood pressure/heart rate, and blood glucose – has garnered much attention because of the increasing adoption of mobile smartphones and tablet computers as well as the obvious appeal of monitoring adherence in real time. These methods may also increase access, reduce patient burden, improve patient autonomy, provide considerable cost savings, and are viewed favorably by users.

Overall, mHealth has shown promise as a means to improve adherence and self-management with studies reporting benefit in the context of physical activity regimens, preventive screenings, diabetes management, anti-retroviral therapy, and smoking cessation, among others. However, evidence has not been entirely consistent; thus, mHealth should not be viewed as a panacea. Indeed, such methods still face issues regarding patient privacy, cross-platform compatibility, and user error. Moreover, there is concern that some of these interventions have not been appropriately tested in randomized trials prior to widespread dissemination and/or there is little or no theoretical foundation for their development.

Conclusions

Patient adherence is as fundamental a component of effective health care as the treatment regimen itself. However, despite extensive study over five decades, nonadherence remains a significant

problem. In both research and clinical care settings, measurement of patient adherence behavior may take many forms, all with considerable strengths and weaknesses. Many determinants of adherence remain unknown, underscoring not only the remarkable complexity of patient adherence but also the difficulty in reliably predicting behaviors often associated with enormous health-related consequences and, ultimately, the need for further investigation of this dynamic phenomenon.

Cross-References

- [Health Promotion](#)
- [Human Factors/Ergonomics](#)
- [Medical Utilization](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bayer, R., & Wilkinson, D. (1995). Directly observed therapy for tuberculosis: History of an idea. *Lancet*, 345, 1545–8.
- Christensen, A. J. (2004). *Patient adherence to medical treatment regimens: Bridging the gap between behavioral science and biomedicine*. New Haven: Yale University Press.
- Christensen, A. J., Howren, M. B., Hillis, S. L., Kaboli, P., Carter, B. L., et al. (2010). Patient and physician beliefs about control over health: Association of symmetrical beliefs with medication regimen adherence. *Journal of General Internal Medicine*, 25, 397–402.
- DiMatteo, M. R. (2004). Variations in patients' adherence to medical recommendations: A quantitative review of 50 years of research. *Medical Care*, 42, 200–209.
- DiMatteo, M. R., Giordani, P. J., Lepper, H. S., & Croghan, T. W. (2002). Patient adherence and medical treatment outcomes: A meta-analysis. *Medical Care*, 40, 794–811.
- Dunbar-Jacob, J., & Schlenk, E. (2001). Patient adherence to treatment regimen. In A. Baum, T. A. Revenson, & J. E. Singer (Eds.), *Handbook of health psychology* (pp. 571–580). Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Eisenthal, S., Emery, R., Lazare, A., & Udin, H. (1979). “Adherence” and the negotiated approach to patienthood. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 36, 393–398.
- Haynes, R. B., Ackloo, E., Sahota, N., McDonald, H. P., & Yao, X. (2008). Interventions for enhancing medication adherence. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*,

(2), Article CD000011. <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD000011.pub3>.

- Howren, M.B., Cozad, A.J., & Christensen, A.J. The interactive effects of patient control beliefs on adherence to fluid-intake restrictions in hemodialysis: Results from a randomized controlled trial. *J Health Psychology*. Online ahead of print <https://doi.org/10.1177/1359105316631813>.
- Howren, M. B., Van Lieu, J. R., & Christensen, A. J. (2013). Advances in patient adherence to medical treatment regimens: The emerging role of technology in adherence monitoring and management. *Social & Personality Psychology Compass – Health Series*, 7, 427–443.
- Kardas, P., Lewek, P., & Matyjaszczyk, M. (2013). Determinants of patient adherence: A review of systematic reviews. *Frontiers in Pharmacology*, 4, 91.
- Mathes, T., Jaschinski, T., & Pieper, D. (2014). Adherence influencing factors: A systematic review of systematic reviews. *Archives of Public Health*, 72, 37.
- Steiner, J. F., & Prochazka, A. V. (1997). The assessment of refill compliance using pharmacy records: Methods, validity, and applications. *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 50, 105–116.
- Stone, A. A., Turkkan, J., Jobe, J., Kurtzman, H., & Cain, V. (2000). *The science of self-report*. Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Van Dulmen, S., Sluijs, E., Van Dijk, L., De Ridder, D., Heerdink, R., & Bensing, J. (2007). Patient adherence to treatment: A review of reviews. *BMC Health Services Research*, 7, 55.

Adhesion Molecules

Manjunath Harlapur¹ and Daichi Shimbo²

¹Center of Behavioral Cardiovascular Health,
Division of General Medicine, Columbia
University, New York, NY, USA

²Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health,
Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Cell adhesion molecule](#)

Definition

Adhesion molecules are the protein molecules that are situated on the surface of the cells or the intracellular organelle.

Description

The adhesion molecules attach to adjacent cells and help with binding with these cells or extracellular structures. There are several functions described like transmitting the information (cellular signaling pathways) to communicate between cells and within the cells. The adhesion molecules usually share a common basic structure that they have extracellular and intracellular domains that are connected to transcellular domain. This facilitates their function to act as messenger across the cellular membrane on either side.

Adhesion molecules are classified based on the function, structure, and location. Cadherins, integrins, selectins, and immunoglobulin (Ig)-related cell adhesion molecules (CAMS) are four major types of adhesion molecules. Brief summary of these molecules are described below.

The cadherins are calcium-dependent adhesion molecules, and they are activated when the extracellular domain is attached to calcium. The intracellular domain connects to various intracellular proteins to perform several functions. The details about epithelial (E)-cadherin, neural (N)-cadherin, and placental (P)-cadherin have been described in relation to several tissue function and also embryogenesis.

The integrins are transmembrane proteins that are composed of different subunits (e.g., alpha and beta subunits). These have been described in the signal transfer from within cell to extracellular matrix and also from extracellular to intracellular structures.

The selectins are the type of adhesion molecules, and they are glycoproteins in their composition. When the specific carbohydrate related to cellular signaling pathway attaches to the extracellular domain, these selectins transmit the signal across the cellular membrane. Platelet-selectins, leukocyte-selectins, and endothelial-selectins are subtypes of selectins, and they are involved with various functions related to platelet, leukocyte, and platelet activity at the cellular level.

The immunoglobulin (Ig)-related cellular adhesion molecules (CAM) are independent of

calcium for their activity. Vascular-cell adhesion molecules (VCAM-1), neural (N)-cell adhesion molecule (NCAM), intercellular adhesion molecule (ICAM), and platelet-endothelial cell adhesion molecule (PECAM) have been related to dysregulations of the vascular system, nervous system, and platelet-thrombosis.

These adhesion molecules may be involved with each other in the process of various functions of the cellular signaling pathway. For example, during the inflammatory process, white blood cells (leukocytes) are transferred across the endothelial lining to the subendothelial layer of the vasculature which is a multistep process and an important part of the early pathogenesis of atherosclerosis. Initially, leukocytes come in close proximity to endothelial cells which are selectin mediated. The integrins activate the surface adhesion molecules in the presence of several pro-inflammatory factors including various extracellular proteins and cytokines. The integrins also help with the attachment of the leukocytes to the endothelium. With the help of PECAM, the leukocytes migrate across the endothelium (diapedesis) to the subendothelial space. Subsequent complex changes occur, leading to the development and progression of atherosclerosis. Various adhesion molecules have been described in the context of cancer metastasis, growth of tumor cells, and embryogenesis.

Cross-References

- [Atherosclerosis](#)
- [Heart Disease](#)
- [Inflammation](#)

References and Further Reading

- Fuster, V., Lois, F., & Franco, M. (2010). Early identification of atherosclerotic disease by noninvasive imaging. *Nature Reviews Cardiology*, 7(6), 327–333.
- Gahmberg, C. G., Valmu, L., Kotovuori, A., Kotovuori, P., Hilden, T. J., Fagerholm, S., & Tian, L. (1999). Leukocyte adhesion-an integrated molecular process at the leukocyte plasma membrane. *Bioscience Reports*, 19(4), 273–281.

- Gonzalez-Amaro, R., & Sanchez-Madrid, F. (1999). Cell adhesion molecules: Selectins and integrins. *Critical Reviews in Immunology*, 19(5–6), 389–429.
- Worthylake, R. A., & Burridge, K. (2001). Leukocyte transendothelial migration: Orchestrating the underlying molecular machinery. *Current Opinion in Cell Biology*, 13(5), 569–577.

Adipose Tissue

Keisuke Ohta and Naoya Yahagi
Department of Metabolic Diseases, Graduate
School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo,
Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

[Body fat](#)

Definition

Adipose tissue is a loose connective tissue composed of adipocytes. It is composed of roughly only 80% fat. Adipocytes are the cells specialized in storing energy as fat. Adipose tissue also serves as an important endocrine organ by producing hormone such as leptin (Kershaw and Flier 2004).

There are two types of adipose tissue, white adipose tissue (WAT) and brown adipose tissue (BAT). White adipose tissue is involved in the storage of energy, whereas brown adipose tissue serves as a thermogenic organ.

Cross-References

- [Body fat](#)
- [Leptin](#)

References and Readings

- Kershaw, E. E., & Flier, J. S. (2004). Adipose tissue as an endocrine organ. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 89(6), 2548–2556.

Adipose Tissue Dysfunction

William Trim, Dylan Thompson and James Edward Turner

Department for Health, University of Bath, Bath, UK

Synonyms

Adipose tissue dysregulation

Definition

The impairment of normal adipose tissue function, characterized by changes to the structure and cellular composition of the tissue microenvironment, resulting in abnormal secretions derived predominantly, but not exclusively, from adipocytes (i.e., fat cells) and localized immune cells. These changes can be instigated by energy imbalance and are commonly observed with aging and obesity. The result is expansion of abdominal subcutaneous and visceral (intra-abdominal) adipose tissue, but for women, especially, gluteofemoral (hip and legs) adipose stores. The broader consequences are local and systemic inflammation, impaired tissue-specific and whole-body insulin sensitivity, and poor metabolic control. Thus, adipose tissue dysfunction is implicated in the pathogenesis of type-II diabetes, hypertension, cancer, cognitive dysfunction, and atherosclerosis.

Description

Background and Overview

Traditionally, adipose tissue was considered an inert storage depot, despite evidence from the mid-1900s showing that this tissue is a metabolically active organ, regulated by nervous and endocrine factors (Wertheimer and Shapiro 1948). Critically, in 1993, it was first established, by culturing explants ex-vivo, that the inflammatory, insulin-desensitizing cytokine, tumor

necrosis factor- α (TNF- α) was produced by adipose tissue (Hotamisligil et al. 1993). A decade later, macrophages – major inflammatory immune cells and producers of TNF- α – were found to surround dysfunctional adipocytes (Weisberg et al. 2003). It is now known that within the stromal, nonfat cell fraction of adipose tissue, a wide array of immune cells reside, integrating metabolic and immunological processes. Examples include energetic redistribution during periods of infection and the immuno-modulatory effects of starvation (Hotamisligil 2006; Schipper et al. 2012). However, adipose-resident immune cells can also cause inflammation and impair insulin sensitivity, interacting with other cells, such as fibroblasts and endothelial cells, influencing adipose tissue dysfunction leading to immunometabolic disease(s).

Changes to the Structure, Function, and Cellular Composition of Adipose Tissue

Adipocyte hypertrophy – an increase in cell volume – is a hallmark of adipocyte dysfunction. In obesity, expanded adipocytes and an accumulation of macrophages are key characteristics of pro-inflammatory dysfunctional adipose tissue. The trigger for this inflammatory response is unknown, but several mechanisms have been proposed. For example, stimulation of immune cells by dietary or endogenously derived lipids, gut-derived antigens (e.g., lipopolysaccharide), or danger signals from apoptotic and necrotic adipocytes due to tissue hypoxia have been implicated, along with mechanical stress-induced adipocyte dysfunction (Reilly and Saltiel 2017). These effects including alterations to the composition of the extracellular matrix and reduced blood flow to hypertrophic adipocytes (i.e., hypoperfusion) lead to an accumulation of dead or dying adipocytes, which macrophages encircle in so-called “crown-like” structures. Locally produced adipokines and cytokines in obesity stimulate macrophages to adopt a pro-inflammatory phenotype. Other infiltrating immune cells – most significantly T-cells – promote a local pro-inflammatory response with increasing adiposity. However, anti-inflammatory regulatory T-cell accumulations may provide a compensatory

mechanism (Travers et al. 2015). Hypoperfusion, hypoxia, and adipocyte expansion result in reactive oxygen species production causing oxidative damage, providing an additional inflammatory stimulus (Hosogai et al. 2007). Consequently, these structural and cellular alterations to adipose tissue result in impaired insulin signaling which drives hyperglycemia and the development of metabolic diseases such as type-II diabetes.

Cells other than mature adipocytes and those of the immune system influence adipose tissue dysfunction. Preadipocytes – the stem cell precursors to adipocytes – represent one of the largest cell fractions in adipose tissue (Stout et al. 2017), primarily regulating tissue turnover and expandability (Lafontan 2014). In a pro-inflammatory environment, preadipocytes adopt a secretory profile similar to activated macrophages and can differentiate into tissue-remodeling cells. A similar preadipocyte profile is present with advancing chronological age, inhibiting healthy adipose tissue expansion (Tereshina and Ivanenko 2014). Fibroblasts and endothelial cells also influence adipose tissue health with obesity (Lafontan 2014). Fibrosis – an excessive deposition of connective tissue such as collagen – is a hallmark of obesity-related adipose tissue dysfunction (Lafontan 2014). For example, expression of the fibrotic element, *COL6A3*-subunit mRNA, in adipose tissue positively correlates with body mass index and increases inflammation, recruiting macrophages via endothelial cell interactions (Lafontan 2014; Pasarica et al. 2009a). Chronic endothelial cell exposure to TNF- α leads to a senescence-associated secretory phenotype (Pasarica et al. 2009b), and the subsequent endothelial cell dysfunction alters adhesion molecule expression, promoting immune cell entry into adipose tissue (Lafontan 2014). More broadly, angiogenesis – the process of capillary formation – is impaired, exacerbating tissue hypoxia, further stimulating immune cell accumulation (Pasarica et al. 2009b; Thompson et al. 2012). Thus, alterations to the tissue microenvironment, whether driven by adipocytes, immune cells, stem cells, fibroblasts, or endothelial cells, influence adipose tissue functionality, impacting immunometabolic health.

Changes to the Secretion Profile of Adipose Tissue

In dysfunctional adipose tissue, adipocyte hypertrophy leads to accumulation of lipid derivatives and misfolded proteins triggering endoplasmic reticulum stress and the cellular stress response (Hotamisligil 2006). This state disrupts insulin signaling, triggering insulin resistance, and activating pro-inflammatory and pro-oxidant signaling cascades within adipocytes (Hosogai et al. 2007; Hotamisligil 2006). The subsequent inflammatory environment stimulates – in a feed-forward manner – adipocytes and immune cells to produce inflammatory mediators (Donath and Shoelson 2011). Indeed, adipocytes produce an array of adipokines, which via paracrine and endocrine mechanisms modulate appetite, bone health, insulin sensitivity, and systemic inflammation (Donath and Shoelson 2011). Some of the key secretions that are increased from dysfunctional adipose tissue are TNF- α , interleukin-6 (IL-6), and leptin. For example, obese subcutaneous adipose tissue is thought to produce up to one third of circulating IL-6 (Mohamed-Ali et al. 1997), evoking a systemic inflammatory response, stimulating C-reactive protein production by the liver. Although mechanistically implicated in insulin resistance, IL-6 is a pleiotropic adipokine, cytokine, and myokine, eliciting different effects (e.g., insulin-sensitizing vs. insulin-insensitizing, or anti-inflammatory vs. pro-inflammatory) dependent on the cell type or tissue of origin (Pal et al. 2014). Adipose-derived TNF- α is similarly implicated in the development of insulin resistance by targeting insulin receptor signaling, impacting glucose metabolism, and activating inflammatory pathways via nuclear factor- κ B. The on-going production of inflammatory adipokines reduces the synthesis of other adipose-derived proteins, including adiponectin, which normally activates energy-sensing pathways, blocking inflammatory cascades, stimulating an insulin-sensitizing effect (Chandran et al. 2003). In addition, increased leptin production with adipose tissue expansion leads to leptin resistance, influencing appetite, increasing energy intake, and reducing energy expenditure (Oswal and Yeo 2010). This altered adipose tissue secretory profile exacerbates

adipocyte dysfunction, preventing cells expanding healthily by hyperplasia (i.e., cell multiplication), limiting their growth to hypertrophic expansion. At a systemic level, adipose secretions drive the low-grade chronic inflammation and poor metabolic control exhibited by older, physically inactive, and obese individuals.

Broader Implications of Adipose Tissue Dysfunction

In human obesity, circulating free-fatty acids are not elevated with increasing adiposity, probably due to the compensatory actions of hyperinsulinemia reducing the rate of lipolysis in individual adipocytes. However, impaired adipose tissue fat storage may drive free-fatty acid supply to nonadipose tissues such as the liver, skeletal muscle, and the epicardium – the outer layer of the heart – contributing to tissue-specific insulin resistance, impaired function, and local inflammation (Karpe et al. 2011; McQuaid et al. 2011). For example, increased lipid supply to skeletal muscle increases inter- and intramuscular adipose tissue and lipid deposition, promoting metabolic dysfunction (Addison et al. 2014). Intramuscular lipid deposition overwhelms mitochondrial oxidative capacity, causing toxic lipid intermediate accumulation, which modulate insulin signaling and reduce glucose transporter-4 (GLUT-4) translocation toward the plasma membrane. As skeletal muscle is the main tissue responsible for the removal of glucose from blood, reduced GLUT-4 translocation results in periods of hyperglycemia, stimulating adipocytes to take up excess glucose, leading to oxidative stress and inflammation that exacerbates adipose dysfunction (Meugnier et al. 2007). In cardiac tissue, excessive epicardial adipose tissue deposition is implicated in coronary atherogenesis and myocardial dysfunction. Secretions from epicardial adipose tissue are implicated in cardiovascular disease because there is no fascial barrier (fibrous sheath) between the epicardium and myocardium to block free-fatty acids and adipokines entering coronary arteries or myocardiocytes (Sacks and Fain 2007).

Another pertinent question in adipose tissue biology is whether dysfunction of the less

abundant but highly inflammatory visceral adipose tissue drives age- and obesity-associated inflammation, or whether dysfunction of the more abundant but typically less inflammatory subcutaneous adipose tissue is responsible. Visceral adiposity is implicated in obesity-induced health impairments due to free-fatty acids and pro-inflammatory factors, produced by dysfunctional visceral adipose tissue, draining into portal circulation and the liver. This process promotes hepatocyte dysfunction, steatosis (i.e., infiltration of fat into hepatocytes), and fatty liver disease, impacting metabolic health (Item and Konrad 2012).

Summary

The role of adipose tissue is no longer thought to be limited to energy storage, and there is a wider appreciation that a normal function of this organ is metabolic and endocrine regulation. However, when the structure, cellular composition, and secretory profile of adipose tissue become dysfunctional, this organ has a mechanistic role in insulin resistance, inflammation, and cardio-metabolic disease. Despite on-going research, many questions remain unanswered, and a major uncertainty is whether inflammation is a cause or consequence of insulin resistance.

Cross-References

- [Adipose Tissue](#)
- [Aging](#)
- [Blood Glucose](#)
- [Body Composition](#)
- [Body Mass Index](#)
- [Caloric Intake](#)
- [Central Adiposity](#)
- [Chronic Disease or Illness](#)
- [C-Reactive Protein \(CRP\)](#)
- [Cytokines](#)
- [Diabetes](#)
- [Dyslipidemia](#)
- [Endothelial Function](#)
- [Fatty Acids, Free](#)
- [Gene Expression](#)
- [Glucose](#)

- ▶ Glucose: Levels, Control, Intolerance, and Metabolism
- ▶ Heart Disease
- ▶ Heart Disease and Cardiovascular Reactivity
- ▶ Hyperglycemia
- ▶ Immune Function
- ▶ Inflammation
- ▶ Insulin
- ▶ Insulin Resistance (IR) Syndrome
- ▶ Insulin Sensitivity
- ▶ Interleukins, -1 (IL-1), -6 (IL-6), -18 (IL-18)
- ▶ Leptin
- ▶ Lifestyle, Sedentary
- ▶ Lipid Metabolism
- ▶ Macrophages
- ▶ Metabolic Syndrome
- ▶ Metabolism
- ▶ Obesity
- ▶ Obesity: Causes and Consequences
- ▶ Oxidative Stress
- ▶ Physical Activity and Health
- ▶ Physical Inactivity
- ▶ Sedentary Behaviors
- ▶ Tumor Necrosis Factor-Alpha (TNF-Alpha)
- ▶ Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus

References and Further Reading

- Addison, O., Marcus, R. L., LaStayo, P. C., & Ryan, A. S. (2014). Intermuscular fat: A review of the consequences and causes. *International Journal of Endocrinology*, 2014, 309570. <https://doi.org/10.1155/2014/309570>.
- Chandran, M., Phillips, S. A., Ciaraldi, T., & Henry, R. R. (2003). Adiponectin: More than just another fat cell hormone? *Diabetes Care*, 26(8), 2442–2450. <https://doi.org/10.2337/diacare.26.8.2442>.
- Donath, M. Y., & Shoelson, S. E. (2011). Type 2 diabetes as an inflammatory disease. *Nature Reviews. Immunology*, 11(2), 98–107. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nri2925>.
- Frayn, K. N., Karpe, F., Fielding, B. A., Macdonald, I. A., & Coppack, S. W. (2003). Integrative physiology of human adipose tissue. *International Journal of Obesity and Related Metabolic Disorders*, 27(8), 875–888. <https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.ijo.0802326>.
- Hosogai, N., Fukuhara, A., Oshima, K., Miyata, Y., Tanaka, S., Segawa, K., Furukawa, S., Tochino, Y., Komuro, R., Matsuda, M., & Shimomura, I. (2007). Adipose tissue hypoxia in obesity and its impact on adipocytokine dysregulation. *Diabetes*, 56(4), 901–911. <https://doi.org/10.2337/db06-0911>.
- Hotamisligil, G. S. (2006). Inflammation and metabolic disorders. *Nature*, 444(7121), 860–867. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nature05485>.
- Hotamisligil, G. S., Shargill, N. S., & Spiegelman, B. M. (1993). Adipose expression of tumor necrosis factor- α : Direct role in obesity-linked insulin resistance. *Science*, 259(5091), 87–91. <https://doi.org/10.1126/science.7678183>.
- Item, F., & Konrad, D. (2012). Visceral fat and metabolic inflammation: The portal theory revisited. *Obesity Reviews*, 13(Suppl 2), 30–39. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-789X.2012.01035.x>.
- Karpe, F., Dickmann, J. R., & Frayn, K. N. (2011). Fatty acids, obesity, and insulin resistance: Time for a reevaluation. *Diabetes*, 60(10), 2441–2449. <https://doi.org/10.2337/db11-0425>.
- Lafontan, M. (2014). Adipose tissue and adipocyte dysregulation. *Diabetes & Metabolism*, 40(1), 16–28. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.diabet.2013.08.002>.
- McQuaid, S. E., Hodson, L., Neville, M. J., Dennis, A. L., Cheeseman, J., Humphreys, S. M., Ruge, T., Gilbert, M., Fielding, B. A., Frayn, K. N., & Karpe, F. (2011). Downregulation of adipose tissue fatty acid trafficking in obesity: A driver for ectopic fat deposition? *Diabetes*, 60(1), 47–55. <https://doi.org/10.2337/db10-0867>.
- Meugnier, E., Faraj, M., Rome, S., Beauregard, G., Michaut, A., Pelloux, V., Pelloux, V., Chiasson, J. L., Laville, M., Clement, K., Vidal, H., & Rabasa-Lhoret, R. (2007). Acute hyperglycemia induces a global downregulation of gene expression in adipose tissue and skeletal muscle of healthy subjects. *Diabetes*, 56(4), 992–999. <https://doi.org/10.2337/db06-1242>.
- Mohamed-Ali, V., Goodrick, S., Rawesh, A., Katz, D. R., Miles, J. M., Yudkin, J. S., Klein, S., & Coppack, S. W. (1997). Subcutaneous adipose tissue releases interleukin-6, but not tumor necrosis factor- α , in vivo. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 82(12), 4196–4200. <https://doi.org/10.1210/jcem.82.12.4450>.
- Oswal, A., & Yeo, G. (2010). Leptin and the control of body weight: A review of its diverse central targets, signaling mechanisms, and role in the pathogenesis of obesity. *Obesity*, 18(2), 221–229. <https://doi.org/10.1038/oby.2009.228>.
- Ouchi, N., Parker, J. L., Lugus, J. J., & Walsh, K. (2011). Adipokines in inflammation and metabolic disease. *Nature Reviews. Immunology*, 11(2), 85–97. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nri2921>.
- Pal, M., Febbraio, M. A., & Whitham, M. (2014). From cytokine to myokine: The emerging role of interleukin-6 in metabolic regulation. *Immunology and Cell Biology*, 92(4), 331–339. <https://doi.org/10.1038/icb.2014.16>.
- Pasarica, M., Gowronska-Kozak, B., Burk, D., Remedios, I., Hymel, D., Gimble, J., Ravussin, E., Bray, G. A., & Smith, S. R. (2009a). Adipose tissue collagen VI in obesity. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 94(12), 5155–5162. <https://doi.org/10.1210/jc.2009-0947>.

- Pasarica, M., Sereda, O. R., Redman, L. M., Albarado, D. C., Hymel, D. T., Roan, L. E., Rood, J. C., Burk, D. H., & Smith, S. R. (2009b). Reduced adipose tissue oxygenation in human obesity. Evidence for rarefaction, macrophage chemotaxis, and inflammation without an angiogenic response. *Diabetes*, 58(3), 718–725. <https://doi.org/10.2337/db08-1098>.
- Reilly, S. M., & Saltiel, A. R. (2017). Adapting to obesity with adipose tissue inflammation. *Nature Reviews. Endocrinology*. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nrendo.2017.90>.
- Sacks, H. S., & Fain, J. N. (2007). Human epicardial adipose tissue: A review. *American Heart Journal*, 153(6), 907–917. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ahj.2007.03.019>.
- Schipper, H. S., Prakken, B., Kalkhoven, E., & Boes, M. (2012). Adipose tissue-resident immune cells: Key players in immunometabolism. *Trends in Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 23(8), 407–415. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tem.2012.05.011>.
- Stout, M. B., Justice, J. N., Nicklas, B. J., & Kirkland, J. L. (2017). Physiological aging: Links among adipose tissue dysfunction, diabetes, and frailty. *Physiology*, 32(1), 9–19. <https://doi.org/10.1152/physiol.00012.2016>.
- Tchkonina, T., Morbeck, D. E., Von Zglinicki, T., Van Deursen, J., Lustgarten, J., Scoble, H., Khosla, S., Jensen, M. D., & Kirkland, J. L. (2010). Fat tissue, aging, and cellular senescence. *Ageing Cell*, 9(5), 667–684. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1474-9726.2010.00608.x>.
- Tereshina, E. V., & Ivanenko, S. I. (2014). Age-related obesity is a heritage of the evolutionary past. *Biochemistry*, 79(7), 581–592. <https://doi.org/10.1134/S0006297914070013>.
- Thompson, D., Manolopoulos, K., & Bouloumie, A. (2012). Arterio-venous differences in peripheral blood mononuclear cells across human adipose tissue and the effect of adrenaline infusion. *International Journal of Obesity*, 36(9), 1256–1258. <https://doi.org/10.1038/ijo.2011.219>.
- Travers, R. L., Motta, A. C., Betts, J. A., Bouloumie, A., & Thompson, D. (2015). The impact of adiposity on adipose tissue-resident lymphocyte activation in humans. *International Journal of Obesity*, 39, 762–769. <https://doi.org/10.1038/ijo.2014.195>.
- Weisberg, S. P., McCann, D., Desai, M., Rosenbaum, M., Leibel, R. L., & Ferrante, A. W. (2003). Obesity is associated with macrophage accumulation in adipose tissue. *Journal of Clinical Investigation*, 112(12), 1796–1808. <https://doi.org/10.1172/jci200319246>.
- Wertheimer, E., & Shapiro, B. (1948). The physiology of adipose tissue. *Physiological Reviews*, 28(4), 451–464.

Adjustment Disorders in Health

Maria Kangas

Department of Psychology, Centre for Emotional Health, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Definition

An adjustment disorder (AD) is a diagnosis typically considered for individuals who fail to adjust following an identifiable stressful life event and which leads to substantial emotional distress and/or has a detrimental impact on an individuals' functioning. This disorder is intended to describe the short-term emotional and functional impact of stressful life events.

Description

Brief History

The term “adjustment disorder” (AD) was first introduced in the third edition of the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-III; American Psychiatric Association, 1980). In contrast, AD was introduced for the first time in the tenth edition of the International Classification of Diseases (ICD; World Health Organization (WHO) 1992) categories. Previous editions of the ICD have referred to AD as “adjustment reaction” and “transient situational disturbances” (Kazlauskas et al. 2018). Similarly, earlier editions of DSM referred to adjustment problems as “transient situational personality disorder” and “transient situational disorder” (Bachem and Casey 2018).

Current Diagnostic Criteria

Adjustment disorder (AD) is one of the mental health conditions included in the new category, Trauma and Stress-related Disorders, introduced in DSM-5 (American Psychiatric Association, 2013). In particular, AD comprises 5 core criteria (American Psychiatric Association, 2013). Criterion A specifies the cause and onset criterion for

Adipose Tissue Dysregulation

► Adipose Tissue Dysfunction

this condition. Specifically, the emotional and/or behavioral symptoms develop in response to an identifiable stressor that has occurred within 3 months from the onset of the stressor(s). Criterion B specifies the detrimental impact of the stressor on the individual by way of (a) heightened distress disproportionate to the stressor severity and intensity *and/or* (b) significant impairment in daily and important areas of functioning including occupational and social activities. Criterion C is considered a “rule-out” criterion in that the symptom presentation is not due to the new onset of any other type of mental disorder(s) (such as post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD)) or is an exacerbation of preexisting mental disorder(s) (e.g., chronic depression). Criterion D specifies that the symptoms cannot be due to normal bereavement reactions. The final, Criterion E, stipulates the duration of symptoms required, notably that the symptoms resolve within 6 months following the stressor and its consequences. DSM-5 also includes five specific types of AD that include the following specifiers: either with depressed mood, anxiety, mixed anxiety and depressed mood, and disturbance of conduct or with missed disturbance of emotions and conduct. A sixth “unspecified” category is used for responses that do not align with any of the five specific sub-types.

The newly released ICD-11 criteria for AD (WHO 2018) differ from the DSM-5 criteria. First, for the ICD-11 criteria, the symptoms occur within the initial month following the stressor onset, whereas the DSM-5 has a broader time range for symptom onset (within 3 months post-stressor). Second, there is no comparable DSM-5 Criterion B for ICD-11. However, AD in ICD-11 is included in the new chapter, “Disorders Specifically Associated with Stress,” and has more clearly defined symptoms which cover both emotional distress and detrimental impacts on functioning. Notably, two specific types of symptoms are included in ICD-11: (1) preoccupation with the stressor or its consequences, including excessive worry, and/or rumination, and/or recurrent distressing thoughts, and (2) failure to adapt to the stressor as indicated by significant impairment in one or more areas of functioning

(WHO 2018). Hence, the ICD-11 criteria require individuals to demonstrate both symptom distress and impairment in functioning to qualify for this diagnosis. This is in contrast with the DSM-5 AD criteria where individuals only have to report *either* heightened distress or impairment in functioning (as part of Criterion B). For this reason, the ICD-11 criteria for AD in combination are considered as more of a “full threshold” disorder relative to the DSM-5 AD criteria, considering that for the latter, impairment in functioning is not an essential criterion on its own (Bachem and Casey 2018).

Prevalence and Diagnostic Controversies

AD is one of the most frequently used and diagnosed mental health disorders worldwide (Bachem and Casey 2018; Kazlauskas et al. 2018; Zelviene and Kazlauskas 2018). For example, in a meta-analysis based on 94 studies across oncological, haematological, and palliative care settings, AD alone was reported in 15.4% of patients (Mitchell et al. 2011). Serious illness has been found to be one of the top three chronic stressors associated with significant increased risk for AD, along with financial difficulties and conflicts (Glaesmer et al. 2015). Indeed, in a recent study based on 330 persons who had lost their jobs involuntarily, the 12-month prevalence for AD was 15.5% based on ICD-11 (Perkonig et al. 2018).

The high prevalence rates for AD across studies may in part be due to the broad stressor criteria. Notably, in contrast to the PTSD criteria (for both DSM and ICD codes), any type of stressful or traumatic event can give rise to AD symptoms including situational stressors to more extreme traumatic adversities. Indeed, concerns have been raised that the AD diagnosis does not adequately differentiate between normal reactions to stressors relative to more severe, dysfunctional stress responses in the initial months following a stressor (Semprini et al. 2010).

Despite the high prevalence rates, historically this disorder has been, and continues to be, controversial, primarily because it is poorly defined and considered to be a “subthreshold,” “default,”

“residual,” “transient,” or “provisional” category, due to the relative absence of a unique symptom profile and its relative transient duration criteria of a maximum of 6 months (Bachem and Casey 2018; Maercker et al. 2013). Moreover, with the DSM-5 AD criteria, this disorder still maintains a “subthreshold” status given that an AD diagnosis can only be given if the individual does not meet criteria for any other mental health disorder (Zelviene and Kazlauskas 2018). Due to the lack of clearly delineated criteria within and between the diagnostic nomenclatures, this has contributed to this disorder being under-researched relative to other mental health conditions. There is a notable paucity of systematic research focusing on the prevalence, course, and treatment outcomes for this disorder (Bachem and Casey 2018; Zelviene and Kazlauskas 2018).

Assessment Measures

Until recently, there has also been a paucity of specific validated instruments available to specifically screen and diagnose AD. Traditionally, structured diagnostic interviews that have included AD as a screening module (e.g., Structured Clinical Interview for DSM; SCID-DSM-IV-TR; First et al. 1996) have been used to *screen* individuals who have been exposed to stressors but do not meet diagnostic criteria for any other condition. More recently, a specific interview to diagnose AD, the Diagnostic Interview for Adjustment Disorder (DIAD; Cornelius et al. 2014) was developed for diagnosing AD rather than simply being a screener. The DIAD is based on DSM-IV criteria and comprises 29 items which focus on identifying and specifying the stressor (s) including onset and duration, as well as levels of distress caused by the stressor(s), including impairment. Given the recency of this measure, beyond the initial validation study (Cornelius et al. 2014), the validity of the DIAD has yet to be established in large-scale longitudinal epidemiological and treatment outcome trials.

Based on the ICD-11 AD criteria, a self-report questionnaire, the Adjustment Disorder New Module (ADNM-29) scale, has been initially validated with German samples (Einsle et al. 2010),

which includes a shortened version comprising 20 items (the ADNM-20, Glaesmer et al. 2015). Comparable with the DIAD, the ADNM-29 and ADNM-20 need to be further validated in larger-scale studies and using more diverse samples.

Interventions

Proposed models for AD conceptualize this condition as a stress-response syndrome. It is proposed that AD occurs when an individual is unable to successfully adapt to stressful life events (Maercker et al. 2007). Hence, for individuals who are struggling to adapt to stressful experiences, particularly beyond the 6-month duration criteria, these individuals may benefit from short-term interventions to prevent chronic psychopathology, particularly as a recent longitudinal study has shown that AD can persist up to at least 12 months post-stressor and can morph into other mental health disorders (O'Donnell et al. 2016).

Given the paucity of research with AD, including longitudinal assessment studies, this also extends to treatment outcome trials. However, in the past decade, several clinical trials based on various therapeutic modalities including cognitive behavior therapy (CBT), brief psychodynamic therapy, problem-solving approach, supportive therapy, Gestalt therapy, eye movement desensitization and reprocessing (EMDR), and client-centered therapy have been tested with promising findings (Bachem and Casey 2018). Moreover, it has been proposed that low-intensity interventions and self-help programs may be particularly suitable given AD covers an acute period of psychopathology, and emerging trials have also shown potentially promising outcomes (Bachem and Maercker 2016).

In summary, with the recent changes to the diagnostic criteria for AD across both DSM and ICD codes, coupled with the development of several recent measures to assess AD, it is timely to conduct longitudinal assessment trials to evaluate the trajectory of AD across various stress-exposed samples which may not necessarily qualify for a diagnosis for PTSD. This line of research is also important to delineate which factors predict better

versus worse adaptations to stressors across the life span. Moreover, it is also timely to test brief, low-intensity therapies including e-therapy interventions for individuals experiencing elevated distress several months following exposure to stressful life events to determine which programs may be effective in strengthening resiliency and reducing the risk of chronic psychopathology, particularly in populations susceptible to chronic and repeated stress exposure.

Cross-References

- Anxiety
- Asthma and Stress
- Depression: Symptoms
- Heart Disease and Stress
- Mental Illness
- Mental Stress
- Pain Anxiety
- Pain-Related Fear
- Passive Coping Strategies
- Perceptions of Stress
- Psychiatric Diagnosis
- Psychiatric Illness
- Psychological Disorder
- Psychological Pathology
- Psychological Stress
- Psychosocial Adjustment
- Psychosocial Factors and Traumatic Events
- Social Stress
- Stress
- Stress Management
- Stress Responses
- Stress, Emotional
- Stress, Posttraumatic
- Stress-Related Disorders
- Worry

References and Further Reading

- Bachem, R., & Casey, P. (2018). Adjustment disorder: A diagnosis whose time has come. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 227, 243–253. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jad.2017.10.034>.
- Bachem, R., & Maercker, A. (2016). Self-help interventions for adjustment disorder problems: A randomised wait-list controlled study in a sample of burglary victims. *Cognitive Behavior Therapy*, 45, 397–413. <https://doi.org/10.1080/16506073.2016.1191083>.
- Cornelius, L. R., Brouwer, S., de Boer, M. R., Groothoff, J. W., & van der Klink, J. J. L. (2014). Development and validation of the diagnostic interview adjustment disorder (DIAD). *International Journal of Methods in Psychiatric Research*, 23, 192–207. <https://doi.org/10.1002/mpr.1418>.
- Einsle, F., Kollner, V., Dannemann, S., & Maercker, A. (2010). Development and validation of a self-report for the assessment of adjustment disorders. *Psychology, Health & Medicine*, 15, 584–595. <https://doi.org/10.1080/13548506.2010.487107>.
- First, M. B., Spitzer, R. L., Gibbon, M., Williams, J. B. W. (1996) Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV Axis I Disorders—Clinician Version. American Psychiatric Press: NY.
- Glaesmer, H., Romppel, M., Brahler, E., Hinz, A., & Maercker, A. (2015). Adjustment disorder as proposed for ICD-11: Dimensionality and symptom differentiation. *Psychiatry Research*, 229, 940–948. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.psychres.2015.07.010>.
- Kazlauskas, E., Zelviene, P., Lorenz, L., Quero, S., & Maercker, A. (2018). A scoping review of ICD-11 adjustment disorder research. *European Journal of Psychotraumatology*, 8, 1421819. <https://doi.org/10.1080/20008198.2017.1421819>.
- Maercker, A., Einsle, F., & Kollner, V. (2007). Adjustment disorders as stress response syndromes: A new diagnostic concept and its exploration in a medical sample. *Psychopathology*, 40, 135–146.
- Maercker, A., Brewin, C. R., Bryant, R. A., Cloitre, M., van Ommeren, M., Jones, L. M., et al. (2013). Diagnosis and classification of disorders specifically associated with stress: Proposals for ICD-11. *World Psychiatry*, 12, 198–206. <https://doi.org/10.1002/wps.20057>.
- Mitchell, A. J., Chan, M., Bhatti, H., rassi, L., Johansen, C., & Meader, N. (2011). Prevalence of depression, anxiety, and adjustment disorder in oncological, haematological, and palliative-care settings: A meta-analysis of 94 interview-based studies. *Lancet Oncology*, 12, 160–174. [https://doi.org/10.1016/s1470-2045\(11\)70002-X](https://doi.org/10.1016/s1470-2045(11)70002-X).
- O'Donnell, M. L., Alkemade, N., Creamer, M., McFarlane, A. C., Silove, D., Bryant, R. A., . . . Forbes, D. (2016). A longitudinal study of adjustment disorder after trauma exposure. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 173, 1231–1238. <https://doi.org/10.1176/appi.ajp.2016.16010071>.
- Perkonig, A., Lorenz, L., & Maercker, A. (2018). Prevalence and correlates of ICD-11 adjustment disorder: Findings from the Zurich adjustment disorder study. *International Journal of Clinical and Health Psychology*. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijchp.2018.05.001>.
- Semprini, F., Fava, G. A., & Sonino, N. (2010). The spectrum of adjustment disorders: Too broad to be clinically helpful. *CNS Spectrum*, 15, 382–388. <https://doi.org/10.1017/S1092852900029254>.

- World Health Organization. (1992). *International classification of diseases* (10th ed.). Geneva: World Health Organisation.
- World Health Organization. (2018). *International classification of diseases* (11th ed.). Retrieved from <https://icd.who.int/browse11/l-m/en#/http%3a%2f%2fid.who.int%2fid%2fentfity%2f264310751>.
- Zelviene, P., & Kazlauskas, E. (2018). Adjustment disorder: current perspectives. *Neuropsychiatric Disease and Treatment*, 14, 375–381. <https://www.dovepress.com/> by 137.111.13.161.

Adjuvant Chemotherapy

Elizabeth J. Franzmann

Department of Otolaryngology, Division of Head and Neck Surgery, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Definition

Antineoplastic medication given following the primary cancer treatment, usually surgery or radiation, with the goal to improve relapse-free survival.

Description

Paul Ehrlich, a famous German chemist, was the first to coin the term “chemotherapy” or the use of chemicals to treat disease in the early 1900s (DeVita and Chu 2008). While known for his work on drugs to treat infectious disease, he also worked with anticancer agents. However, his work and the work of others that followed him, usually with single agents, were fraught with challenges (DeVita and Chu). The idea that cancers could be cured with chemotherapy first became widely accepted around 1970 with successes in both childhood leukemia and Hodgkin’s lymphoma using multi-agent regimens (DeVita and Chu; Frei 1985). Prior to this time, surgery and radiation were the mainstay for solid tumor treatment. However, even for the most aggressive surgical or radiotherapy regimens, cure rates did not exceed 33% (DeVita and Chu 2008).

Interest in adjuvant chemotherapy arose from experiments in animal models showing that chemotherapy, though minimally effective against large tumors, may be curative against microscopic disease (DeVita and Chu 2008; Frei 1985). Work by Howard Skipper showed that a given dose of chemotherapy killed a constant fraction of tumor cells rather than a constant number (DeVita and Chu 2008; Skipper 1978). This inverse relationship between tumor cell number and curability suggested that drugs used against advanced disease might work better after the tumor was eradicated with primary treatment such as surgery (DeVita and Chu 2008).

Even after optimal local control is achieved with surgery and/or radiotherapy, advanced stage tumors and aggressive pathology findings are often associated with a high likelihood of disseminated micrometastases or microscopic residual disease (Skipper 1978). In such cases, administration of additional or adjuvant treatment may eradicate microscopic disease and decrease chances of relapse. These concepts were first tested and reported for breast cancer in the mid-1970s with successful results (DeVita and Chu 2008; Frei 1985). This success triggered a plethora of adjuvant studies in breast and other tumors such as colorectal cancer (DeVita and Chu 2008). The resulting therapies have contributed significantly to the national decline in breast and colorectal cancer mortality noted a decade ago (DeVita and Chu 2008). Adjuvant chemotherapy modifications driven by patient- and tumor-related characteristics have emerged for both breast and colon cancer and are associated with further improvements in survival (Gradishar et al. 2017; Benson et al. 2018). Other solid tumors have also shown benefit with adjuvant chemotherapy (DeVita and Chu 2008). These include cervical cancer, gastric cancer, head and neck cancers, pancreas cancer, melanoma, non-small cell lung cancer, osteogenic sarcoma, and ovarian carcinoma (DeVita and Chu 2008). Adjuvant therapies have recently been further refined for many other solid tumors, including head and neck cancer (Adelstein et al. 2017).

Chemotherapy, radiation therapy, immunotherapy, hormonal therapy, and targeted therapy have all been used as adjuvant treatments. Each of these

is associated with specific side effects that can be severe and must be weighed against the potential benefits. Side effects of chemotherapy, for example, can include nausea, vomiting, hair loss, and drops in blood cell counts. Patients who experience treatment-related adverse effects are more likely to discontinue adjuvant therapy (Burstein et al. 2010). Thus the decision to proceed with adjuvant treatment can be complicated, especially when the disease appears to be eradicated and may indeed never return, even without further treatment (Burstein et al.). This is even a more difficult decision if the primary treatment was physically and emotionally draining for the patients, such as a disfiguring and debilitating surgery (Burstein et al.). The decision to proceed with adjuvant therapy requires a thorough discussion between the patient and their surgical, medical, and radiation oncologists with thorough explanation of the potential risks and benefits.

Cross-References

► [Carcinoma](#)

References and Readings

- Adelstein, D., Gillison, M. L., Pfister, D. G., Spencer, S., Adkins, D., Brizel, D. M., et al. (2017). *Journal of the National Comprehensive Cancer Network*, 15, 761–770.
- Benson, A. B., Venook, A. P., Al-Hawary, M. M., Cederquist, L., Chen, y., & Ciombor, K. K. (2018). NCCN guidelines insights colon cancer, version 2.218 featured updates to the NCCN guidelines. *Journal of the National Comprehensive Cancer Network*, 16, 359–369.
- Burstein, H. J., Prestrud, A. A., Seidenfeld, J., Anderson, H., Buchholz, T. A., Davidson, N. E., et al. (2010). American Society of Clinical Oncology clinical practice guideline: Update on adjuvant endocrine therapy for women with hormone receptor-positive breast cancer. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 28, 3784–3796.
- DeVita, V. T., & Chu, E. (2008). A history of cancer chemotherapy. *Cancer Research*, 68, 8643–8653.
- Frei, E., III. (1985). Curative cancer chemotherapy. *Cancer Research*, 45, 6523–6537.
- Gradishar, W. J., Anderson, B. O., Balassanian, R., Blair, S. L., Burnstein, H. J., Cyr, S., et al. (2017). NCCN guidelines insights breast cancer, version 1.2017. *Journal of the National Comprehensive Cancer Network*, 14, 433–451.
- Skipper, H. E. (1978). Adjuvant chemotherapy. *Cancer*, 41, 936–940.

Admixture

Abanish Singh
Duke University Medical Center, Durham,
NC, USA

Definition

The use of racial classification in medicine and biomedical research has become a popular tool and is very helpful in understanding racial and ethnic differences in the causes, expression, and prevalence of disease traits. Usually, human society is classified based on color and linguistic and cultural differences. However, these classifications often ignore the availability of interbreeding. Breeding between members of different classes can result in the exchange of genetic information which can further affect genetic disease profiles.

The phenomenon of interbreeding between the members of two or more different population groups is known as genetic admixture. It results in continued, long-term exchange of genes among the various human society classifications. The admixture process creates linkage disequilibrium between loci in a hybrid population and its magnitude is guided by several factors such as time duration, dynamics, recombination rate, and allele frequency differential in parental populations. Admixture can be estimated reliably from the genetic similarities if the accurate identities of parental populations in the hybrid population are available.

Cross-References

► [Allele](#)
► [Gene](#)

- [Genome-Wide Association Study \(GWAS\)](#)
- [Locus \(Genetics\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Burchard, E. G., Ziv, E., Coyle, N., Gomez, S. L., Tang, H., Karter, A. J., et al. (2003). The Importance of race and ethnic background in biomedical research and clinical practice. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 348(12), 1170–1175.
- Chakraborty, R., & Weiss, K. M. (1988). Admixture as a tool for finding linked genes and detecting that difference from allelic association between loci. *Genetics*, 85, 9119–9123.
- Indrani, H., & Shriver, M. D. (2003). Measuring and using admixture to study the genetics of complex diseases. *Human Genomics*, 1(1), 52–62.
- McKeigue, P. M., Carpenter, J., Parra, E. J., & Shriver, M. D. (2000). Estimation of admixture and detection of linkage in admixed populations by a Bayesian approach: Application to African-American populations. *Annals of Human Genetics*, 64, 171–186.
- Patterson, N., et al. (2004). Methods for high-density admixture mapping of disease genes. *American Journal of Human Genetics*, 74, 979–1000.
- Patterson, N., et al. (2010). Genetic structure of a unique admixed population: Implications for medical research. *Human Molecular Genetics*, 19(3), 411–419. <https://doi.org/10.1093/hmg/ddp505>.
- Pfaff, C. L., Parra, E. J., Bonilla, C., et al. (2001). Population structure in admixed populations: Effects of admixture dynamics on the pattern of linkage disequilibrium. *American Journal of Human Genetics*, 68, 198–207.
- Stephens, J. C., Briscoe, D., & O'Brien, S. J. (1994). Mapping by admixture linkage disequilibrium in human populations: Limits and guidelines. *American Journal of Human Genetics*, 55, 809–824.

Adolescent Psychology

- [Child Development](#)

Adrenal Cortex

- [Adrenal Glands](#)

Adrenal Glands

Linda C. Baumann¹ and Alyssa Ylinen²

¹School of Nursing, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

²Allina Health System, St. Paul, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Adrenal cortex](#); [Adrenal medulla](#); [Endocrine gland](#); [Kidney](#)

Definition

The adrenal glands are part of the endocrine system that is comprised of various glands that are located throughout the body. These glands are responsible for synthesizing and producing hormones that communicate regulatory information to cells and organs. The adrenal glands are primarily responsible for the stress response in the human body secondary to physical or emotional stimuli. The two adrenal glands are pyramid-shaped organs located directly anterior to the kidneys and behind the peritoneum. Each adrenal gland consists of two distinct portions: an inner medulla and an outer cortex. Each portion has differing but interrelated structures and hormonal functions.

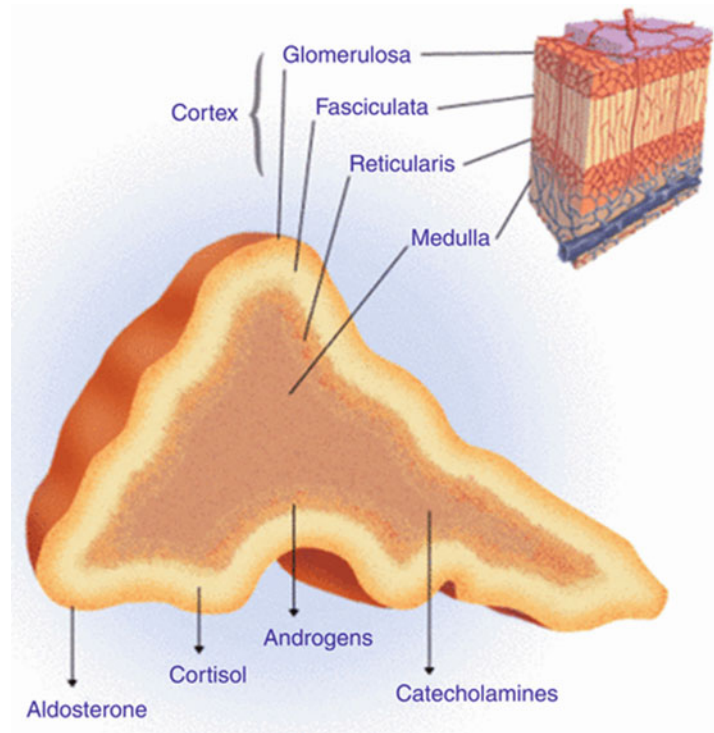
Description

The adrenal medulla synthesizes and secretes the catecholamines epinephrine and norepinephrine. Major effects of catecholamines are increased rate and force of contraction of the heart muscle, constriction of blood vessels, dilation of bronchioles, stimulation of lipolysis in fat cells, increased metabolic rate, dilation of the pupils, and inhibition of nonessential processes.

The adrenal cortex is subdivided into three layers that are primarily responsible for producing

Adrenal Glands,

Fig. 1 The zona glomerulosa, the zona fasciculata, and the zona reticularis



corticosteroids (see Fig. 1). The outer layer, the zona glomerulosa, is responsible for secreting the mineralocorticoid aldosterone. The middle layer, the zona fasciculata, and the inner layer, the zona reticularis, produce adrenal androgens and estrogens and glucocorticoids such as cortisol. Aldosterone, the major mineralocorticoid, is necessary for survival and is responsible for increases in sodium reabsorption from the renal tubule, saliva, and gastric juice which results in increased reabsorption of water. Secondary actions of aldosterone include maintenance of blood pressure and potassium regulation. Cortisol, the most potent of the glucocorticoids, is responsible for stimulation of gluconeogenesis, mobilization of amino acids from extrahepatic tissues, inhibition of glucose uptake in muscle and adipose tissue, and stimulation of fat breakdown. Cortisol also has potent anti-inflammatory and immunosuppressive properties. In the absence of corticosteroids, the stress response would induce hypotension, shock, and death.

In general, an individual will experience a stress response when a stimulus exceeds their coping abilities that can result in disturbances of cognition, emotion, and behavior. The stress response starts in the central nervous system and endocrine system. It is cyclical in nature and will continue as long as the stimulus is present. Stress responses can be either acute or chronic in nature. Acute stress responses are a result of an immediate threat: subconscious, false, or perceived. The process will elicit a reaction most commonly known as the fight or flight response. In this circumstance, individuals may exhibit behaviors secondary to physiologic changes including anxiety, rapid speech, restlessness, facial tics, teeth grinding, and nail biting to name a few. Once an acute stressor is eliminated or overcome, the body shuts down the process through a negative feedback system, and hormone levels eventually return to normal. Not all stressful situations are detrimental and at times may be desirable. It can prompt individuals to work toward worthwhile goals,

relieve monotony, and can play a part in pleasurable activities.

In a chronic stress response, the stress cycle is continually activated leading to elevated hormone levels. Chronic stress can be related to weight gain and obesity. Individuals crave salt, fat, and sugar in an attempt to counteract tension secondary to the sustained release of cortisol into the bloodstream. Sustained levels of stress hormones have also been detected in individuals with eating disorders such as anorexia nervosa and bulimia. Chronic stress can lead to insomnia and impaired memory and concentration. It can also contribute to major anxiety, depression, and suicidal ideations, as well as behaviors such as alcohol and drug misuse.

Personality traits, such as Type A personality, can contribute to a maladaptive stress response. Type A personality is characterized by hostility, impatience, and competitiveness. These traits can lead to an increased risk of hypertension, heart disease, job stress, alcoholism, and social alienation.

Individual reactions to stress depend on factors such as knowledge about the stress response, learned behaviors, personality type, and attitudes about controlling, altering, and adapting to stressful situations. The importance of healthy stress management can reduce some of the maladaptive behaviors associated with the adrenal glands and the stress response.

Cross-References

► [Stress Reactivity](#)

References and Further Readings

- Elbstrup, J., Eplov, L., Pisinger, C., & Jorgensen, T. (2011). Association between the five factor personality traits and perceived stress: Is the effect mediated by general self-efficacy? *Anxiety, Stress, and Coping*, 6, 1–13.
- Howard, J. (1990). Type A behavior, personality, and sympathetic response. *Behavioral Medicine*, 16(4), 149–160.

McCance, K., & Huether, S. (2006). *Pathophysiology: The biologic basis for disease in adults and children* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

McPhee, S., & Papadakis, M. (2010). *Current medical diagnosis and treatment*. New York: McGraw Hill.

Pathology Outlines. (2016). *Adrenal gland and paranglia*. Retrieved 27 Mar 2016, from www.pathologyoutlines.com/adrenal.html#top

Adrenal Medulla

► [Adrenal Glands](#)

Adrenergic Activation

Debra Johnson

Department of Psychology, University of Iowa,
Iowa City, IA, USA

Definition

Adrenalin/epinephrine is a neurotransmitter produced by and released from the adrenal glands. Release of this chemical activates the sympathetic nervous system through the alpha-adrenergic and beta-adrenergic receptor families and produces the classic “fight-or-flight response” including increased blood pressure, heart rate, and respiratory rate. While this system is adaptive in the context of acutely stressful events, prolonged stress can produce a chronic overactivation of the adrenergic system. This overactivation is implicated in the development and progression of chronic health problems including hypertension and coronary artery disease.

Cross-References

► [Sympatho-adrenergic Stimulation](#)

Adrenocorticotropin

Benjamin L. Clarke

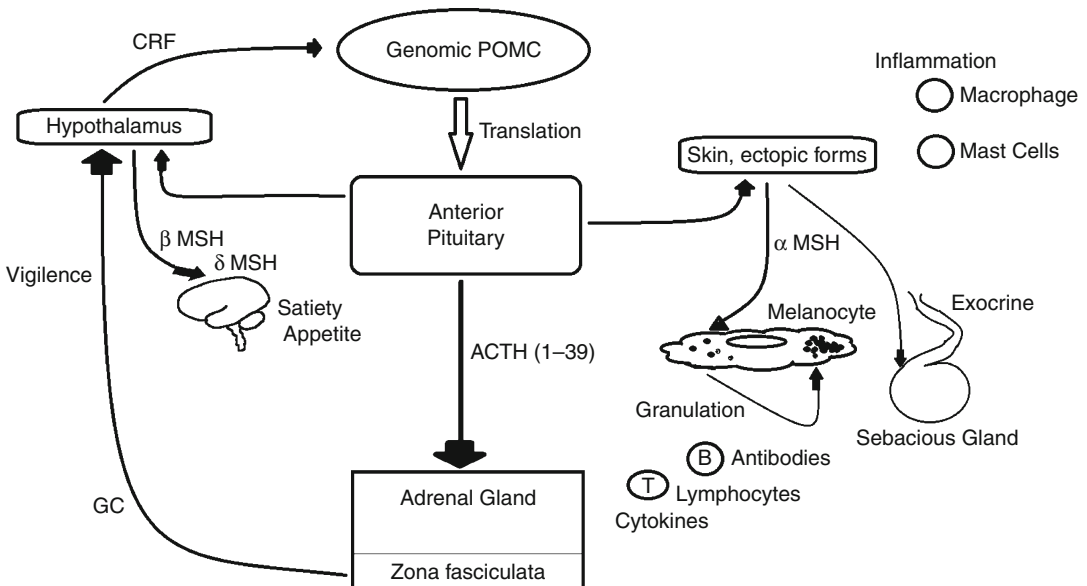
Academic Health Center, School of Medicine-
Duluth Campus, University of Minnesota,
Duluth, MN, USA

Definition

Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) is a peptide hormone produced by corticotropin cells of the anterior pituitary. Discovery of ACTH and subsequent characterization focused on a pituitary substance known to stimulate glucocorticoid synthesis from the adrenal cortex; hence, the name reflects this tropic hormone function. Pituitary production of ACTH is stimulated by corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), a peptide hormone emanating from the “nuclei” neurons found in the hypothalamus (see Fig. 1). Released CRH then passes through the hypophyseal portal vessels into the anterior pituitary to target corticotropin cells. The hypothalamus provides a

cognitive nexus for translating central nervous system (CNS) activity into an endocrine signaling pathway responsible for stimulating the adrenal cortex. This triad of hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenals activity is often referred to as the HPA axis. A large number of behavioral and physiological responses are controlled by the HPA in order to sustain physiological homeostasis. The canonical HPA activity is CNS control of glucocorticoid release following physical or emotional stress to promote physical responses. The “fight or flight” response is a common behavioral pattern regulated by the HPA. Heightened HPA activity increases cognitive vigilance, plasma glucose, and metabolic activity while suppressing tissue repair and anabolic processes. Excessive HPA activity is often associated with behavior conditions like anxiety and depression, and medical conditions such as fluid retention and obesity.

ACTH is coded by the proopiomelanocortin (POMC) gene located on Chromosome 2 in humans. The initial gene product is a pro-form protein that is differentially processed into active peptide hormones within corticotropin cells of the anterior pituitary. In the precursor form, POMC is



Adrenocorticotropin, Fig. 1 Generation of ACTH

a polypeptide consisting of 241 amino acids. Embedded in the polypeptide POMC are several different peptide hormones. Due to “tissue-specific processing” of POMC, a large number of peptide hormones are produced at the site of action. Specific POMC-derived hormones are revealed by the action of pro-hormone convertases (PC). This differential processing is controlled by the expression of two different PCs, (PC1 and PC2) that are localized to different tissues. The majority of POMC peptide is produced in the anterior pituitary and the proteolytic fragments are redistributed to distal sites for additional processing. Corticotropin cells in the anterior pituitary express PC1 which hydrolyzes POMC to first form pro-ACTH and beta lipotropin hormone (β -LPH). A second round of hydrolysis by PC1 on pro-ACTH produces ACTH and N-POMC. A third round of hydrolysis by PC1 on N-POMC produces pro- γ -MSH and a joining peptide (JP) fragment. The most abundant form of ACTH has 39 amino acids, ACTH (1–39); however, minor amounts of several smaller sized ACTH are also produced. Several other peptide hormones are also derived from POMC using a second convertase expressed in the hypothalamus and skin. Products from differential processing by PC1 in the pituitary are distributed to distal tissues to be further processed by PC2. This process of disseminating ACTH peptides to other sites

provides specificity for biological activity. The pro- γ -MSH is converted to γ -MSH by PC2. ACTH (1–39) is converted by PC2 to form ACTH (1–17) and corticotropin-like intermediate peptide (CLIP). ACTH (1–17) is then converted into α -MSH by the sequential action of carboxypeptidase E, peptidyl-amidating monooxygenase, and N-acetyl transferase. Beta-lipotropin hormone is converted into γ -LPH and beta-endorphin by PC2, and γ -LPH is converted by PC2 into beta-melanocyte-stimulating hormone (β -MSH). The two major corticotropins, ACTH and α -MSH, share the first 13 amino acids. However, α -MSH has two important chemical changes that alter solubility and transport properties; the amino terminal serine is acylated and the carboxyl terminal valine is amidated. Common to all corticotropins is a tetra-amino acid sequence of histidine-phenylalanine-arginine-tryptophan (H-F-R-W). Point substitutions within the HFRW sequence completely oblates the activity of ACTH, α -MSH, β -MSH, and γ -MSH.

Cellular recognition of ACTH and MSH molecules has been attributed to melanocortin receptors (MCRs) (see Table 1). Five different G-protein-coupled receptors have been cloned and characterized for biological activity. Specific binding of POMC-derived peptides are dependent on the presence of the HFRW sequence embedded

Adrenocorticotropin, Table 1 Melanocortin receptors

	MC1R	MC2R	MC3R	MC4R	MC5R
Predominate agonist	α/β -MSH	ACTH (1–39)	γ -MSH	α -MSH	α -MSH
Site of expression	Skin	Adrenal glomerulosa, adrenal fasciculata, adipose	Hypothalamus, gut, heart, kidney, and placenta	Brain and spinal cord	Widely expressed at low density
Physiological activity	Pigmentation, anti-inflammation, anti-pyretic	Steroidogenesis	Satiety, cardiovascular, energy homeostasis	Appetite, energy homeostasis, anti-pyretic, pain, penile erections	Exocrine, immunoregulatory
Behavioral activity	Coat/skin color	Hypervigilance	Feeding	Feeding	Male dominance
Native antagonist	Agouti protein		Agouti protein	Agouti protein	

Adrenocorticotropin, Table 2 Melanocortin peptides

<i>MC(1–5)R MC2R only</i>
ACTH (1–39) NH ₂ - SYSMEHFRWGKPVGKKRRPVKV PNGAEDESAEAPLEF-OH
α-MSH Ac-SYSMEHFRWGKPV-NH ₂
β-MSH NH ₂ -AEJJKEGPYRMEHFRWGSPPKD-OH
γ-MSH NH ₂ -YVMGHFRWDRF-OH

within the hormone sequence (see Table 2). Selectivity between potential hormone ligands is the HFRW sequence, peptide length, and chemical modification of the peptide termini. The steroidogenic receptor for ACTH is MC2R has the highest stringency requiring both the HFRW sequence plus a highly anionic tetra peptide sequence of lysine-lysine-arginine-arginine (KKRR) at positions 15–18. The MSH peptides do not possess the KKRR sequence and are not ligands for MC2R. The other four receptors (MC1, MC3, MC4, and MC5) have comparably binding affinities for all ACTH and MSH peptides. Each MC receptor is localized to different tissues. The MC1R is abundant in melanotropic cells found in the skin and regulates skin and coat pigmentation. Adrenal glands express the MC2R high expression levels in the fasciculata zone (glucocorticoids) and the glomerulosa zone (mineralocorticoids), plus lower expression of MC5R. The brain expresses the MCRs is several regions.

Advance Care Planning

- ▶ End-of-Life

Adversarial Growth

- ▶ Benefit Finding
- ▶ Posttraumatic Growth

Adverse Drug Events

- ▶ Drug, Adverse Effects/Complications

Adverse Drug Reaction

Debra Johnson
Department of Psychology, University of Iowa,
Iowa City, IA, USA

Definition

An adverse event is a negative change in health observed in individuals participating in clinical drug trials or trials of medical devices. These events may occur during the trial or within a short time after the trial ends. They may or may not be due to the drug or device and can be categorized as minor (i.e., hypotension) or serious (i.e., life-threatening complications or even death). Minor adverse events are reported to the facility’s institutional review board and to the sponsor of the trial. Serious events must additionally be reported to the regulatory agencies (i.e., FDA). In recent years, several large clinical trials have been halted because of serious adverse events observed in the patient groups.

Adverse Drug Reactions

- ▶ Drug, Adverse Effects/Complications

Adversity, Early Life

- ▶ Stress, Early Life

Aerobic Exercise

Rachel Millstein

Clinical Psychology, University of California,
San Diego/San Diego State University,
San Diego, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Exercise](#); [Moderate-vigorous physical activity](#)

Definition

Aerobic exercise refers to the type of repetitive, structured physical activity that requires the body's metabolic system to use oxygen to produce energy. Aerobic exercise improves the capacity of the cardiovascular system to uptake and transport oxygen. Aerobic activity can be undertaken in many different forms, with the common feature that it is achieved at a heart rate of 70–80% of a person's age-appropriate maximum. Aerobic exercise is considered the cornerstone of endurance training, characterized by moderate energy expenditure over a prolonged period of time. Aerobic power or endurance is measured by VO_2 max, a person's maximal oxygen uptake.

Description

Aerobic exercise is different from, though related to, physical activity and exercise in general. Physical activity is a broad category that refers to all bodily movements that require skeletal muscle contraction and energy expenditure. Exercise is a subset of physical activity, requiring specifically planned, structured, and repetitive movements with a goal of improving performance or fitness (Caspersen et al. 1985). Aerobic exercise can be undertaken in many different forms, such as brisk walking, running, cycling, swimming, cross-country skiing, and dancing. In contrast,

anaerobic exercise involves high-intensity work done for shorter periods of time. The anaerobic metabolic system does not require oxygen to be used for energy.

Aerobic exercise was popularized by Dr. Kenneth Cooper, following the publication of his 1968 book, *Aerobics*. Since that time, the research and knowledge of the health benefits of aerobic exercise have grown and are widely known. The many health benefits of regular aerobic exercise include improved cardio-respiratory endurance, improved muscular endurance and strength, improved body composition, reduced risk of type 2 diabetes, reduced risk of osteoporosis and several cancers, and improved mental health (anxiety and depression symptom reduction).

Several authoritative groups have set forth recommended aerobic physical activity guidelines for health benefits. The United States' Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2008) recommend that adults achieve at least 150 min of moderate-intensity or 75 min of vigorous-intensity aerobic physical activity each week. Youth are recommended to accumulate 60–90 min or more, or physical activity a day. Moderate-intensity physical activity requires about 3–6 times as much energy as resting (i.e., brisk walking), and vigorous-intensity physical activity requires about 7 times as much energy as resting (i.e., jogging).

Cross-References

- [Exercise](#)
- [Physical Activity and Health](#)
- [Physical Fitness](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bouchard, C., Shepard, R. J., Stephens, T., & McPherson, B. (Eds.). (1990). *Exercise, fitness, and health: A consensus of current knowledge*. Champaign: Human Kinetics Books.
- Bouchard, C., Shepard, R. J., & Stephens, T. (Eds.). (1994). *Physical activity, fitness, and health:*

- International proceedings and consensus statement.* Champaign: Human Kinetics Books.
- Caspersen, C. J., Powell, K. E., & Christensen, G. M. (1985). Physical activity, exercise, and physical fitness: Definitions and distinctions for health-related research. *Public Health Reports*, 100, 126–131.
- Cooper, K. H. (1968). *Aerobics*. New York: Bantam Publishing.
- Physical Activity Guidelines for Americans. (2008). Retrieved on 20 Oct 2010 from www.health.gov/paguidelines/default.aspx
- Sallis, J. F., & Owen, N. (1999). *Physical activity & behavioral medicine*. Thousand Oaks: Sage.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (1996). *Physical Activity and Health: A Report of the Surgeon General*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion.
- Wilmore, J. H., & Costill, D. L. (1994). *Physiology of sport and exercise*. Champaign: Human Kinetics.

Affect

Karen Niven
Manchester Business School, The University of Manchester, Manchester, UK

Synonyms

[Affective state](#); [Emotion](#); [Feeling](#); [Feeling state](#); [Mood](#)

Definition

Affect is the collective term for describing *feeling states* like emotions and moods. Affective states may vary in several ways, including their duration, intensity, specificity, pleasantness, and level of arousal, and they have an important role to play in regulating cognition, behavior, and social interactions.

Description

Affect is the experiential state of feeling. In everyday language, terms like affect, emotion, and

mood are often used interchangeably. Affect is the superordinate category; emotions and moods are states belonging to this category. Emotions and moods are mainly distinguished by their duration, and by whether they are directed at a specific cause. Emotions are fairly fleeting and intense experiences that are elicited in response to specific external stimuli (i.e., objects or events), and may arise relatively automatically, or following a cognitive appraisal of a stimulus (e.g., How does the stimulus relate to my goals? How personally relevant is this stimulus?). Moods last somewhat longer than emotions, and are more diffuse in nature. For instance, a generalized feeling of sadness with no specific cause would be considered a mood state. People's experiences of affect over a long period of time can be summarized to represent their subjective well-being, i.e., their global assessment of happiness and satisfaction with life.

Describing and Distinguishing Affective States

Affective states are typically distinguished along the dual dimensions of pleasure and arousal. Pleasure concerns the hedonic properties of the state, ranging from unpleasant to pleasant, and arousal concerns the level of engagement or alertness of the state, ranging from activated to deactivated. So, for example, "anxiety" is a low pleasure high arousal state. Pleasure is usually measured by self-report (i.e., asking people how pleasant they feel), while arousal can be measured by self-report or by using physiological data (e.g., heart rate, epinephrine).

There are at least five "basic" emotions – anger, disgust, fear, happiness, and sadness – that are thought to be highly idiosyncratic and distinguishable according to a particular pattern of cognitions, physiology, facial expressions, and "action tendencies" that predispose a person to act in a certain way. For instance, the emotion of fear is distinguished by the cognitive appraisal of danger, physiological arousal in terms of higher heart rate, blood pressure, and perspiration, a facial expression involving widened eyes, dilated pupils and drawn brows, and the action tendency of fleeing a situation. More complex emotions like jealousy, shame, and pride may have distinguishable cognitive and expressive elements, but may not be

reliably associated with specific patterns of physiological arousal or action tendencies.

Functions of Affect

Affect has important cognitive functions, being used as a source of information when judging the value or valance of objects or people, priming congruent memories, and influencing decision-making and information processing and possibly decisions. Positive affect appears to be linked to broadening of attention, with benefits for creativity and problem solving, while negative affect is associated with narrowing of attention, with benefits for more focused tasks. Affect also serves a function in regulating behavior. Mood states give rise to broad tendencies toward approach or avoidance behaviors (pleasant moods are associated with a drive to approach a stimulus, whereas unpleasant moods are associated with avoidance), while emotions are associated with specific action tendencies (e.g., anger is associated with the tendency to “fight”). Similarly, anticipated affect drives our behavior, such that we pursue those behaviors we deem likely to result in desirable affective outcomes, and avoid those likely to result in undesirable affect. Affect may also function to regulate social behavior, by communicating information to others about how we would like them to engage with us (e.g., guilt signals a desire to be forgiven).

Individual Differences in Affect

Some people are more prone than others to experiencing particular affective states. Those with high negative affectivity tend to experience unpleasant affect much of the time, while those with high positive affectivity tend to experience pleasant affect. People may also be more or less reactive to affective stimuli. Those who are high in trait neuroticism are thought to have a lower threshold for reacting to stimuli, and also appear to react more intensely. Individual differences in the extent to which people outwardly communicate their affect (expressivity), and the extent to which people are able to deliberately control their experienced and expressed affect (affect regulation), have also been observed.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Affect Arousal](#)
- ▶ [Emotional Responses](#)
- ▶ [Emotions: Positive and Negative](#)
- ▶ [Mood](#)

References and Further Readings

- Batson, C. D., Shaw, L. L., & Oleson, K. C. (1992). Differentiating affect, mood, and emotion. In M. S. Clarke (Ed.), *Emotion* (pp. 294–326). Newbury Park: Sage.
- Lewis, M., Haviland-Jones, J. M., & Feldman Barrett, L. (2008). *Handbook of emotions* (3rd ed.). New York: Guilford Press.
- Mauss, I. B., & Robinson, M. D. (2009). Measures of emotion: A review. *Cognition and Emotion*, 23, 209–237.
- Russell, J. A. (1980). A circumplex model of affect. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 39, 1161–1178.

Affect Arousal

Karen Niven¹ and Eleanor Miles²

¹Manchester Business School, The University of Manchester, Manchester, UK

²Department of Psychology, The University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

Synonyms

[Activation](#); [Arousal](#); [Energy](#); [Tension](#)

Definition

Affect arousal is the state of being activated, either physiologically or psychologically, and is one dimension of our affective response to emotional stimuli. Psychological characteristics of arousal include feelings of vigor, energy, and tension. Physiological symptoms of arousal include increased heart rate and blood pressure, among other changes.

Description

Affect arousal describes the state of feeling awake, activated, and highly reactive to stimuli. There are both psychological and physiological components to the state of arousal. Psychologically, the state of arousal is associated with the subjective experience of feelings including high energy and tension. Physiologically, the body is in a state of relative heightened responsiveness, and is prepared for action through the activation of various neural (limbic) and bodily systems (e.g., the sympathetic nervous system). The state of arousal is usually prompted by external, typically highly emotive, stimuli (such as being in a dangerous situation, or watching a scary movie). Some argue that arousal occurs immediately after exposure to an emotive stimulus; others suggest that exposure to a high arousal stimulus first prompts the person to appraise the personal meaning of the stimulus (Is it congruent or incongruent to my goals? Is it important to my survival?), with arousal experienced as a result of the appraisal.

Psychological and Physiological Components of Arousal

Affective states are typically described in terms of their valence (pleasure-displeasure) and their arousal (high activation-low activation). Thus, psychological arousal is one dimension of our affective response to external stimuli. High activation or arousal is characterized by feelings of energy for pleasurable states (e.g., excitement), or tension for unpleasant states (e.g., fear). These can be distinguished from low arousal states such as calmness and depression. Arousal can also be distinguished from intensity, which is a separate dimension; both high and low arousal states may be experienced more or less intensely. It has been argued that there is a second arousal dimension of sleepiness energy that follows circadian rhythms.

Several systems underlie physiological arousal, including the autonomic nervous system, the reticular activating system, and also the endocrine system, which releases hormones including adrenalin and noradrenalin into the bloodstream. The physiological symptoms of arousal are

diverse, and include increases in heart rate, blood pressure, perspiration, respiration rate, muscle tension and metabolic rate, and changes in the electrical activity of the brain – in its regions, hemispheres, and in the connectivity between regions.

Functions of Arousal

High affective arousal prepares the body to respond to stimuli, priming us for “fight or flight.” Arousal also influences cognitive processing in ways that may be adaptive for survival. Arousal appears to influence attention, with high arousal stimuli capturing attention more efficiently, thus recruiting more processing and coping resources; this may be why high arousal stimuli are also evaluated and responded to more quickly than low arousal stimuli. Arousal also has implications for memory. Studies have observed enhanced memory for arousing events, although high states of arousal can also cause short-term impairments in retrieval of memories. In addition, retrieval of memories is facilitated when experiencing a similar level of arousal to that during encoding. Arousal may also function to regulate task performance. Most agree that the relationship between arousal and performance takes the form of an inverted U-shaped curve, such that states of either extremely low or extremely high arousal are detrimental to performance.

Individual Differences in Arousal

Individual differences in arousal may underlie core personality traits. According to a theory originally proposed by Eysenck, differences in baseline physiological levels of arousal (i.e., autonomic nervous system and reticular activating systems) cause people to be more or less extraverted. For example, low baseline arousal is associated with high extraversion, because people seek the stimulation they lack from their external environment. Likewise, the trait of neuroticism is thought to reflect a person’s threshold for activation in the autonomic nervous system. People with higher levels of neuroticism have a lower threshold, and are therefore less able to inhibit their emotional reactions.

Cross-References

- [Affect](#)
- [Energy](#)
- [Physiological Reactivity](#)

References and Further Readings

- Cannon, W. B. (1932). *The wisdom of the body*. New York: WW Norton.
- Russell, J. A. (1980). A circumplex model of affect. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 39, 1161–1178.
- Storbeck, J., & Clore, G. L. (2008). Affective arousal as information: How affective arousal influences judgments, learning, and memory. *Social and Personality Psychology Compass*, 2, 1824–1843.
- Strelau, J., & Eysenck, H. J. (1987). *Personality dimensions and arousal*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Thayer, R. E. (1978). Toward a psychological theory of multidimensional activation (arousal). *Motivation and Emotion*, 2, 1–34.

Affective Hostility

- [Hostility](#)

Affective Responses

- [Emotional Responses](#)

Affective State

- [Affect](#)
- [Mood](#)

Affiliation

- [Interpersonal Circumplex](#)

Aged

- [Elderly](#)

Age-Related Cognitive Decline

- [Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine](#)

Aggregate Data

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Aggregate measures](#); [Descriptive data](#); [Summary data](#)

Definition

Aggregate measures, or data, are summaries of observations, or measurements, derived from individuals in the group or groups of interest.

This is a wide-ranging term used in many circumstances. The key concept is that data used are not individual measures, but a summary statistic reached by aggregating large amounts of data from individual subjects, geographic regions, socioeconomic classes, etc.

Measures of central tendency are useful aggregate data. Commonly used measures include the arithmetic mean (usually called simply the mean), median, and mode. For example, median family income in a given region, state, or country would be aggregate data. Proportions are also useful, e.g., the proportion of a given identified population that smokes cigarettes.

Cross-References

- [Data](#)
- [Median](#)
- [Mode](#)

Aggregate Measures

- [Aggregate Data](#)

Aggression

- [Hostility](#)
- [Hostility, Psychophysiological Responses](#)

Agile Science

Eric B. Hekler¹, Predrag Klasnja^{2,3} and John Harlow⁴

¹Nutrition Program, School of Nutrition and Health Promotion, Arizona State University, Phoenix, AZ, USA

²Group Health Research Institute, Seattle, WA, USA

³School of Information, University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, MI, USA

⁴School for the Future of Innovation in Society, Arizona State University, Tempe, AZ, USA

Synonyms

[Design thinking](#); [Evaluation](#); [Experimental design](#); [Implementation science](#); [Iteration](#); [Prototyping](#)

Definition

Agile Science moves scientific inquiry from asking “what works on average?” to “what works for me?”

To do so, it uses evolution-inspired iterative creation, optimization, and repurposing to develop repurposable interventions and components organized by when, where, and for whom they work. Agile science (Hekler et al. 2016) is a process for creating useful and usable behavior change interventions and corresponding usable evidence for supporting decision-making of individuals/patients, practitioners, and policy-makers. The process starts with *creating* many variations of plausibly useful behavior change interventions for a “niche,” i.e., specified people, places, and times. This is followed by *optimizing* those behavior change interventions for that targeted niche. Optimization tests whether the interventions produce the desired real-world success, with definitions of success and failure called optimization criteria. If the interventions are useful for a given niche, they are repurposed for others who might benefit from them. *Repurposing* involves either modularizing interventions or providing decision policies that match interventions with other people, places, and times (niches), or both. Modularization is modeled on how technology tools, such as application programming interfaces (APIs), reduce a service to its most fundamental use to increase its potential to be repurposed, think of Google Maps used across a variety of contexts. Similarly, agile science reduces its interventions down into the smallest, meaningful, and self-contained elements possible to enable repurposing to other domains. The creation and evaluation of decision policies for matchmaking uses scientific methods that study an intervention and its components, as well as the decision policies used to select one intervention over another. Complementary to this, agile science uses techniques from informatics to organize and *curate* scientific knowledge across studies.

Description

Process Overview

The agile science process (Hekler et al. 2016) was inspired by evolution. Specifically, central to the create phase is the production of variability in terms of behavior change interventions, niche specification (i.e., meaningful clustering of

people, places, and times for use of the interventions), and specification of competing definitions of success (e.g., the classic design trope; you can design a system to be fast, cheap, or good; pick 2), called optimization criteria. Variations of behavior change interventions, niches, and optimization criteria, along with causal models that provide a structure on how these elements are linked, are the basic building blocks of the next stage, optimization. In evolution, out-compete other organisms via natural selection; in agile science, the analogous approach is optimization, which maps on to methods being advanced in the multiphase optimization strategy most, (Collins et al. 2016). If behavior change interventions are useful for a given niche, meaning that in an optimization trial, the optimization criteria/definition of success is met, then the next step is warranted. In the case of evolution, this is niche expansion, and the analogous processes within agile science involve:

- Modularizing an intervention to its smallest, meaningful, and self-contained element
- Engaging in a science of matchmaking that systematically studies the decision policies used to match interventions with other people, places, and times.

The ultimate goal is to produce both the specific tools (e.g., software, treatment protocols, templates) that enact an intervention, *and* the corresponding evidence of when, where, for whom, and in what state to use a given tool. As the goal is making both tools and evidence usable in real-world context, there is a requirement for a robust process for curating the scientific knowledge-base to maximize the usability and repurposability of all tools and evidence (Fig. 1).

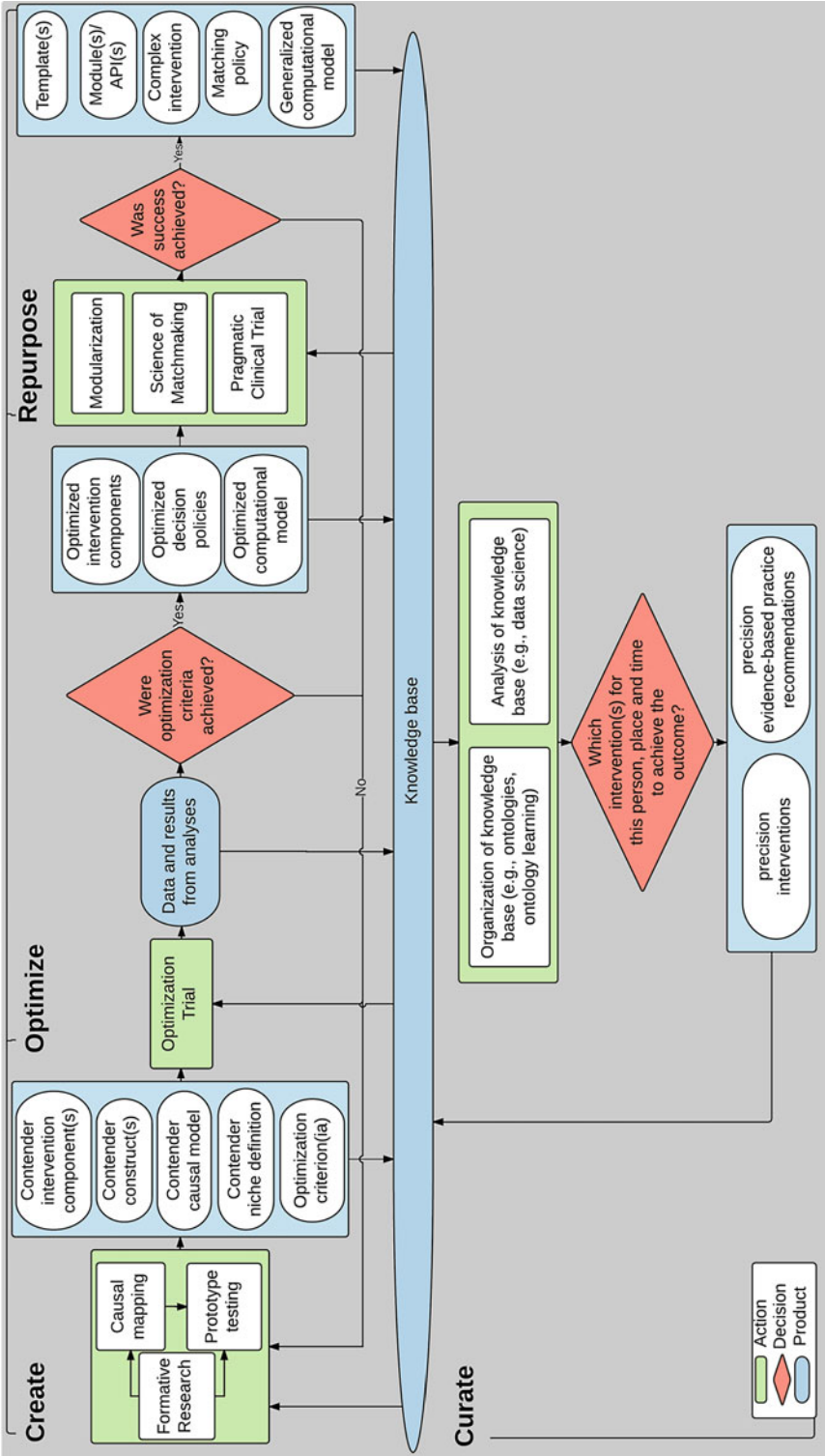
Create Phase

The create phase maps on to human-centered design with added features. Unique to agile science, the goal of the create phase is not only to create specific solutions for specific problems (arguably the focus of human-centered design)

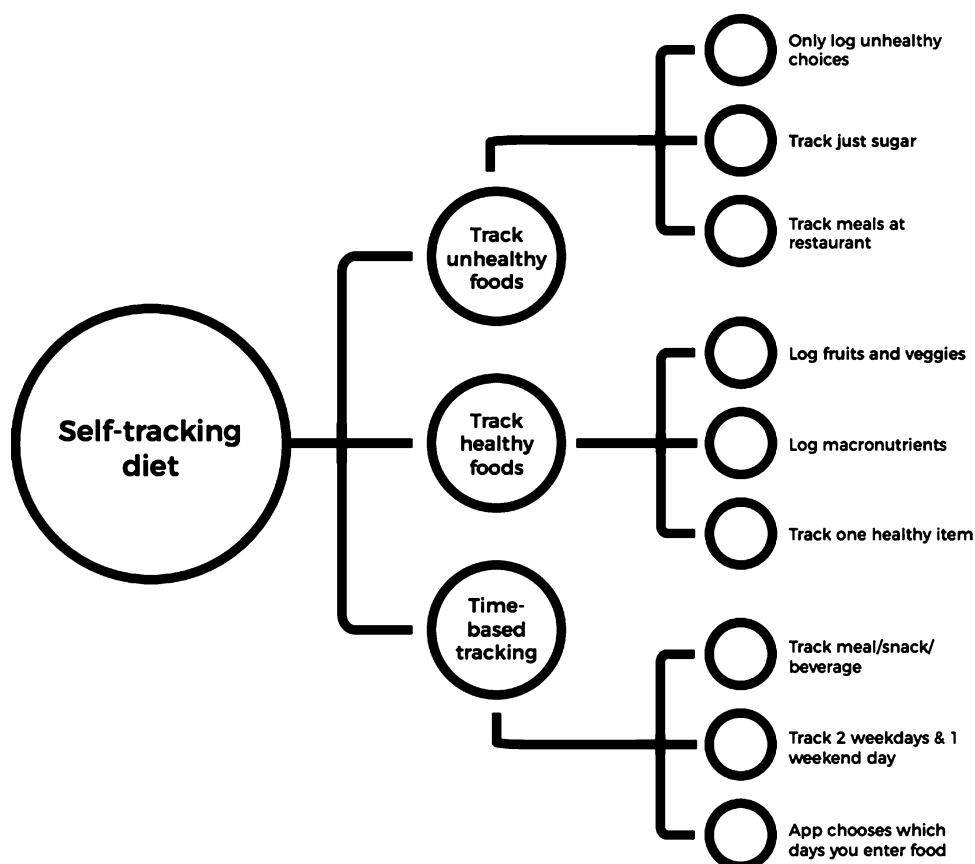
but also to establish a subsequent research agenda of these specific solutions. Based on this, the create phase emphasizes dramatically increasing the variability and number of ideas in early research. This provides a grounding for individuals to think more carefully about exactly *what* they are studying and, perhaps more importantly, what they are *not* studying *at this time*. Is it an abstract idea, with many possible implementations, or a concrete implementation that may not be representative of a broader abstract idea? This is well-illustrated with a mind-map visualization that begins with a contender abstract concept, from which variations are created, then potential prototypes are chosen (Fig. 2).

Within the create phase, another product is a causal model. A causal model illustrates beliefs about how an intervention influences targeted outcomes in a series of steps within a given niche. For example: Variable daily step goals maintain novelty of app use, which drives ongoing self-monitoring, and that is known to increase motivation, which can lead to achievement of physical activity goals. One key purpose of causal modeling is to recognize the preconditions that must be present for an intervention to produce a desired effect. In the above example, the ability, opportunity, and motivation to change walking behavior in a given moment are “preconditions” and can be specified in a causal model. Preconditions are particularly valuable to understand for repurposing, because they provide insights on for whom, when, and where a given intervention might be useful.

The final targeted product from the create phase is optimization criteria. Inspired by the MOST (Collins et al. 2016), optimization criteria define the success and failure of a given intervention. Clear definitions of success and failure can be used to judge, and thus, iteratively improve and optimize, an intervention for a target niche. In the steps example, imagine that success for this intervention is walking 10,000 steps per day for 1 week. That concrete, specified target enables a wide range of experimental designs to be used in the optimize phase, such as between-person factorial trials, micro-randomization, and control systems engineering trials.



Agile Science, Fig. 1 Process v0.4. The above figure is a diagram of the overall agile science process, which involves creating, optimizing, repurposing, and curating behavioral tools and evidence



Agile Science, Fig. 2 Mindmap of Intervention Variations. This figure visualizes different levels of abstraction for a concept. The circle on the left is the most abstract whereas the nine variations on the right are plausible, concrete

operationalizations of the abstract concept. This map is used to provide clarity on what an abstract concept is by recognizing plausibly meaningful variations on how to operationalize it

Optimize Phase

The optimize phase tests and, if necessary, supports data-driven iterative improvement of interventions in relation to optimization criteria for a target niche. This builds on the logic of optimization methods from MOST with at least four different types of optimization trials:

1. Between-person factorial trials as screening experiments for intervention components.
2. Sequential multiple assignment randomized trial (SMART) to optimize adaptive interventions that are structured after clinical care.
3. Micro-randomization trials to optimize digital interventions that involve frequent adaptation,

and may require optimization of the timing of the delivery of an intervention.

4. Control engineering optimization trials can optimize digital health interventions that likely require a high degree of personalization and frequent adaptation (e.g., daily).

If the optimization criteria from these trials are met, it provides evidence that the intervention has value for producing the desired outcomes for a targeted niche.

While the primary target of these optimization trials is often components of interventions, there are two other products that can feasibly come out of these optimization trials. One is a computational model that quantifies how interventions,

individuals, and context interact, vetted via an optimization trial, particularly either a control engineering optimization trial or a micro-randomization trial. An optimized computational model is a better specification, and thus testable translation, of the causal model from the create phase. While not always produced, it can be valuable for the repurpose phase.

The second feasible target of the optimize phase is an optimized decision policy that provides insights on the selection of interventions for a given person, place, or time. It provides an answer (at least partially) to this question: “Which behavior change intervention(s) should be used for this individual, at this time, in this context, to achieve a desired outcome?” Model predictive control, recommender systems, agent-based modeling, and Bayesian network analysis are a few (of many) ways to specify decision policies, which can be vetted using the optimization trials described above.

Repurpose Phase

Once interventions are optimized for a niche, they are repurposed for other niches that might benefit from them. This phase either modularizes an intervention or evaluates decision policies that support broader repurposing. The creation and evaluation of decision policies for matchmaking uses similar scientific methods from the optimization phase but, at this point, the focus becomes more squarely on systematically testing utility across niches and, thus, requires a wider range of niches to be present. Modularization is modeled on how technology tools, such as APIs, reduce a service to its most fundamental use to increase its potential to be repurposed, think of Google Maps used across a variety of contexts. Similarly, agile science reduces its interventions down into the smallest, meaningful, and self-contained elements possible to enable repurposing to other domains. The optimization methods described above each have the potential to be used to support a science of matchmaking whereby moderation hypotheses are articulated about the match/mismatch of intervention components to target niches and then, through strategies such as stratification or measurement of time-varying moderators (e.g., stress,

busyness), the decision policies that define when, where, and for whom to use one intervention type or dose can be studied.

Curate Phase

The curate phase is focused on making scientific knowledge and tools accessible and up-to-date for all. In this phase, which occurs synchronously to all the other phases, information that could be valuable to others, such as empirical results or hypotheses, is extracted from scientific publications (a process called ontology learning). The extracted information is then organized to make it easily searchable and otherwise accessible for purposes beyond those specified by the original research. The organization of information relies on taxonomies and ontologies that enable rigorous querying of the scientific knowledge base. For example, front-end tools like www.metabus.org can support automated meta-analysis of research questions by incorporating all potentially relevant data.

Cross-references

- [Behavior Change](#)
- [Behavior Change Techniques](#)
- [Causal Diagrams](#)
- [Construct Validity](#)
- [eHealth and Behavioral Intervention Technologies](#)
- [Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine \(EBBM\)](#)
- [Experimental Designs](#)
- [Intervention Theories](#)
- [Translational Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Usability Testing](#)

References and Further Readings

- Collins, L. M., Kugler, K. C., & Gwadz, M. V. (2016). Optimization of multicomponent behavioral and biobehavioral interventions for the prevention and treatment of HIV/AIDS. *AIDS and Behavior*, 20(1), 197–214.
- Hekler, E. B., Klasnja, P., Riley, W. T., Buman, M. P., Huberty, J., Rivera, D. E., & Martin, C. A. (2016). Agile science: Creating useful products for behavior

change in the real world. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 6(2), 317–328.

Klasnja, P., Hekler, E. B., Korinek, E. V., Harlow, H., & Mishra, S. R. (2017). Toward usable evidence: Optimizing knowledge accumulation in HCI research on health behavior change. In *Proceedings of the 2017 CHI Conference on Human Factors in Computing Systems* (CHI '17), ACM, New York, pp. 3071–3082. <https://doi.org/10.1145/3025453.3026013>.

Aging

Barbara Resnick
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

Alter; Changing; Grown; Progress

Definition

Aging relates to the developmental process of growth and senescence over time. *Age-related* refers to how age is taken into account in health and social systems.

Description

Many of the changes associated with aging result from gradual loss. These losses may often begin in early adulthood, but individuals are usually not affected by changes until the loss is fairly extensive. Most organ systems seem to lose function at about 1% a year beginning around age 30 years. The loss of function in an organ, for example, does not become significant until it crosses a given level. Thus the functional performance of an organ in an older person depends on two principal factors: (1) the rate of deterioration and (2) the level of performance needed. It is not surprising then to learn that most older persons will have normal laboratory values, normal heart

rate and blood pressure, and normal vision and hearing. It is possible, however, when stressed such as by doing exercise that the heart then does not respond appropriately or when it is dark the eyes do not adjust in a timely fashion. The health care provider must appreciate and utilize the notion of variability in aging to help individuals make lifestyle and treatment choices to optimize their own aging. As noted, changes occur over time but there is no known way in which to predict the rate of decline in any individual. There is, however, much evidence to support the benefit of lifestyle interventions, specifically diet and physical activity that will help to overcome some of the physical changes that can occur with age, and may improve overall health and quality of life. With regard to diet, repeatedly it has been noted that there are protective effects to diets low in saturated fats and high in fruits and vegetables. Likewise, engaging in regular physical activity, at least 30 min daily, has been noted to have not only physical but mental health benefits. Behavior change interventions are critical to facilitate adherence to these behaviors at any point in the lifespan.

It is impossible to address aging without considering the psychosocial aspects that occur in addition to the more visible biological and physical changes. Transitions associated with aging are commonly noted around retirement, loss of a spouse or significant other, pet, home, car, and ability to drive, as well as the loss of sensory function (hearing and vision) or ambulatory ability or capacity. Many fear the loss of independence with age, cognitive decline and worry about having an acute catastrophic problem such as a hip fracture or stroke. Conversely, many older adults are quite resilient in the face of these losses and have much to teach the younger generation on how to respond to loss, optimize remaining function and ability, and adjust.

Recognizing the consequences and anticipated changes that will occur with age are important to help facilitate the process and optimize outcomes in adults as they progress through the lifespan. Critical to the process is adherence to healthy lifestyle behaviors as well as a willingness to adjust and adapt to the changes that are occurring.

In so doing adults can age successfully, regardless of underlying disease or disability.

At this point in time there is still relatively little known about the aging process and how to separate aging and age-related changes from disease. Behavioral medicine can help manage both sources of change, although understanding and knowing the difference is critical so as to optimize outcomes. For example, it is possible that cognitive changes are occurring because of an elevated blood sugar in the individual or a low sodium. Treating this with cognitive interventions may help but will not optimize outcomes as much as combining this treatment with medical management. Conversely, it is critical to avoid treating changes medically when behavioral interventions would result in better and safer outcomes.

Many of the changes associated with aging result from gradual loss. These losses generally begin in young to middle adulthood. Fortunately, however, the changes are not noted until there is a critical mass of cell death or functional change that alters the underlying system. The changes in organ function depend on two principal factors: (1) the rate of deterioration and (2) the level of performance needed. Thus under normal circumstances the older adult may function within normal. However, when he or she undergoes some type of stress the body is not able to compensate and changes are noted in major organs such as the brain, kidney, heart, lungs, or liver. Behavioral interventions can help to optimize response in times of stress by preparing individuals for such these experiences. An older adult who exercises regularly prior to breaking a hip or undergoing a joint replacement will recover quicker than an individual who has not been regularly exercising.

Aging is a complex and multifactorial process that combines life experiences and behaviors and genetics particularly. It is critical to remember, however, that the genetic impact of life span accounts for 35% of its variance, whereas environmental and behavioral factors account for >65% of the variance.

Changes associated with aging are believed to be a combination of normal change over time and disease. Often individuals do not notice aging until they hit a certain threshold of loss or change.

For example, the loss of function does not become significant until it crosses a given level. Likewise, the loss of function in an organ such as the liver is not noticed until there is sufficient amount of cell death that functional change occurs. Thus aging is noted based on two principal factors: (1) the rate of deterioration and (2) the level of performance needed. A good example of the impact of aging on the system occurs with regard to cardiovascular function and health. An older individual may have a normal resting pulse and normal cardiac output when engaging in routine daily activities. When he or she tries to exercise, however, the heart rate and cardiac output do not respond in the way that would be anticipated in a younger individual (i.e., neither the pulse or the output increase sufficiently to withstand the activity).

Unfortunately, much of what we know about aging is based on studies doing using cross-sectional samples of individuals of different ages that are compared in terms of group averages. Such an approach generally reveals a gradual decline in organ function with age, beginning in early middle life. A few studies have followed cohorts of people longitudinally as they age. Their conclusions are quite different. When evaluated over time some characteristics and aspects of aging may actually improve rather than decline. Individual variation may be particularly important to aging. Individuals who have been physically active throughout their lifespan will be more likely to recover optimally following a hip fracture, for example, than those who have been sedentary.

Aging is not simply a series of biological changes. It is also an accumulation of life experiences and accrued knowledge. It may also be associated with multiple losses such as the loss of social roles such as work, motherhood, loss of income, loss of friends and relatives. These losses can result in fear of loneliness, financial insecurity, fear of dependency, and fear of one's own death. Despite these fears and challenges most older adults cope with multiple losses and limitations and enjoy this time in life.

Increasingly it is recognized that aging occurs differently depending on the person. The changing composition of today's older adults compared

with that of a generation ago may actually reflect a bimodal shift wherein there are both more disabled people and more healthy older people. We continue to learn more and more about healthy or successful aging through hearing the stories of the growing number of centenarians. Generally the consensus is that moderation in all areas (e.g., food intake, alcohol intake), regular physical activity, and an engaging social life are critical to successful aging.

Cross-References

- [Immunosenescence](#)
- [Older Adult](#)
- [Successful Aging](#)

References and Readings

- American Geriatrics Society. *Geriatrics review syllabus*. Retrieved September, 2011, from https://fulfillment.frycomm.com/ags/grs7_order_form.asp.
- Goldsmith, T. C. (2006). *The evolution of aging* (2nd ed.). Annapolis: Azinet Press.

Aging of the Immune System

- [Immunosenescence](#)

Agonist

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

An agonist is any molecule which binds to a receptor on a cell, which then can potentially

lead to subsequent changes in the cell's functions. While agonists activate or trigger a process that follows their binding to a receptor, an antagonist inhibits these effects, and an inverse agonist results in opposite effects to those of the agonist. In pharmacology, this issue is pivotal, as certain medications can act as agonists of receptors, where they mimic the effects of a natural compound or ligand that normally binds to the same receptor. However, the synthetic compound can possibly lead to similar cellular changes without unwanted side effects or to compensate for a deficiency in the natural ligand. Indeed, receptors can be activated by endogenous agonists – a natural compound which binds to a receptor. In contrast, receptors can also be activated by exogenous agonists – synthetic medications or compounds which activate a receptor. An example of an endogenous agonist is acetylcholine which activates the acetylcholine receptor. One important measure concerning agonists is their affinity to a receptor – the degree to which they structurally and functionally fit a receptor. Consequently, there are full and partial agonists. These influence the subsequent effects of an agonist on a cell's function. Another measure of the efficacy of an agonist is its EC_{50} – the concentration of agonist needed to elicit half the biological response to that agonist. The potency of an agonist is inversely related to the EC_{50} value, as a more potent agonist requires lower concentrations to yield a certain response than a weaker agonist. Multiple agonists are used in research and clinical applications, of relevance to behavioral medicine as well. For example, isoproterenol is a drug that stimulates the sympathetic response since it is an agonist of beta-adrenoceptors, mimicking the effects of epinephrine (Goodman et al. 2008). Some compounds can have both agonist and antagonist characteristics. An intriguing example is tamoxifen, which is an antagonist of estrogen used in cancer treatment, yet it is also an agonist of breast cancer cells for certain functions, inducing cell cycle-related gene activity (Hodges et al. 2003). Thus, agonists reflect a basic biochemical process at cellular levels and play numerous roles in health and disease.

Cross-References

► [Neurotransmitter](#)

References and Further Readings

- Goodman, L. S., Gilman, A., & Brunton, L. L. (2008). *Goodman and Gilman's manual of pharmacology and therapeutics* (11th ed., p. 14). New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.
- Hodges, L. C., Cook, J. D., Lobenhofer, E. K., Li, L., Bennett, L., Bushel, P. R., et al. (2003). Tamoxifen functions as a molecular agonist inducing cell cycle-associated genes in breast cancer cells. *Molecular Cancer Research*, 1, 300–311.

AIDS Dementia Complex

► [HIV-Associated Neurocognitive Disorder](#)

AIDS Prevention

► [HIV Prevention](#)

AIDS Wasting

► [Cachexia \(Wasting Syndrome\)](#)

AIDS: Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome

Carter A. Lennon
Department of Psychology, University of
Connecticut, Center for Health, Intervention and
Prevention, Storrs, CT, USA

Synonyms

Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV); Opportunistic infections; Sexually transmitted disease/infection (STD/STI)

Definition

Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) is the final stage of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) defined by a marked decline in an individual's immune system. Specifically, when an individual's CD4 lymphocyte/helper T cell count falls under 200 per microliter (μL) of blood, the individual is diagnosed with AIDS (Crooks and Baur 2005; Shibley Hyde and Delamater 2008). AIDS is defined as a syndrome because its presence is often accompanied by a grouping of illnesses that signal the progression of HIV to AIDS (Kelly 2008). These AIDS-defining illnesses, termed opportunistic infections, include, but are not limited to, *Pneumocystis carinii*, Kaposi's sarcoma, cervical cancer, and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (Crooks and Baur 2005; Jekel et al. 2001; Shibley Hyde and Delamater 2008; World Health Organization 2010b).

Description

History of AIDS

AIDS was first recognized as a disease in 1981 by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. It was not until 1984 when Luc Montagnier's team at the Pasteur Institute in France and Robert Gallo's team at the National Institute of Health in the United States discovered that HIV was the cause of AIDS (Shibley Hyde and Delamater 2008). In the United States, the epidemic was first extensively identified in men who have sex with men (MSM) and was therefore called "gay-related immune deficiency" (GRID; Shilts 1987). As outbreaks of HIV/AIDS were also seen among injection drug users (IDUs), Haitian immigrants, and hemophiliacs, the disease was renamed AIDS (Shilts 1987). Around the world, AIDS is mainly a disease affecting heterosexual individuals; in the United States, MSM still comprise the majority of HIV/AIDS cases (Crooks and Baur 2005).

Epidemiology

HIV/AIDS is largely considered a global pandemic (Crooks and Baur 2005). It is now the leading cause of death worldwide in women

between the ages of 15 and 49 (UNAIDS 2010a). According to the 2010 UNAIDS Global Report (2010b), there were 1.8 million AIDS-related deaths worldwide in 2009. Sub-Saharan Africa accounts for the overwhelming majority of these deaths. By region, AIDS-related deaths are as follows (UNAIDS 2010b):

- Sub-Saharan Africa: 1.3 million (72.2%)
- South and Southeast Asia: 260,000 (14.4%)
- Eastern Europe and Central Asia: 76,000 (4.2%)
- Central and South America: 58,000 (3.2%)
- East Asia: 36,000 (2.0%)
- North America: 26,000 (1.4%)
- Middle East and North Africa: 24,000 (1.3%)
- Caribbean: 12,000 (0.67%)
- West and Central Europe: 8,500 (0.47%)
- Oceania: 1,400 (0.07%)

On the whole, AIDS-related deaths worldwide have stabilized, mainly due to the advent of highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) in 1996 (UNAIDS 2010b). North America and Central and Western Europe have seen a decline in AIDS-related deaths since 1996, while deaths in Sub-Saharan Africa and the Caribbean have been decreasing since 2005 (UNAIDS 2010b). AIDS-related deaths in Central and South America and parts of Asia have remained constant; however, deaths in Eastern Europe and Central Asia are still increasing (UNAIDS 2010b). Globally, 70% of infections are transmitted through heterosexual sex, especially in Africa and Asia (Crooks and Baur 2005). In the United States, the epidemic is still predominantly in MSM, but rates are rising in heterosexuals, especially ethnic minority women (Crooks and Baur 2005). In Russia, and other parts of Eastern Europe, the epidemic is due mainly to injection drug use.

Diagnosis

AIDS is the final stage of HIV and is diagnosed when the individual's immune system becomes severely compromised. Specifically, a diagnosis of AIDS is given when CD4 levels fall below 200 per microliter (μL) of blood (normal levels

are between 600 and 1,200; Crooks and Baur 2005; Shibley Hyde and Delamater 2008). On average, HIV progresses to AIDS 8–11 years after contracting HIV (Crooks and Baur 2005). An AIDS diagnosis is often accompanied by a number of opportunistic infections and other AIDS-related illness. Opportunistic infections are illnesses that are usually not present in humans and signal a severely weakened immune system (Shibley Hyde and Delamater 2008); these include *Pneumocystis carinii*, Kaposi's sarcoma, toxoplasmosis, advanced cervical cancer, meningitis, encephalitis, and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (Crooks and Baur 2005, Jekel et al. 2001; Maartens 2008; Shibley Hyde and Delamater 2008). Other AIDS-related symptoms include severe weight loss ("wasting syndrome"), diarrhea, neurological decline, and infection of most organs (NIAID 2009b). AIDS is the end stage of HIV and is eventually fatal. However, life can be prolonged with antiretrovirals, which suppress the virus, usually resulting in an increase in CD4 cell count.

Treatment

There is no known cure for HIV/AIDS. In 1996, highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) was introduced (Wood 2008), which combines multiple types of antiretrovirals to suppress HIV viral load in order to stop the progression of AIDS. There are five classes of antiretrovirals (NIAID 2009a):

1. Reverse transcriptase inhibitors: prevent HIV from replicating in healthy cells
2. Protease inhibitors: block protease, which is used to replicate HIV
3. Fusion/entry inhibitors: block HIV from binding to healthy cells
4. Integrase inhibitors: block integrase, which helps HIV combine its RNA with the healthy cell's DNA
5. Multidrug combination products (HAART): a combination of the above classes of drugs; the World Health Organization currently recommends combining at least three classes of drugs (2010a)

Adherence to these medications is vitally important. Nonadherence can result in resistance to antiretrovirals and a resurgence of the virus in the individual (NIAID 2010). Adherence is difficult, due to the many side effects that accompany these drugs (Shibley Hyde and Delamater 2008) and myths that circulate about the dangers of antiretroviral use (Kalichman et al. 2009). It is also important to keep in mind the treatment of psychological side effects of HIV/AIDS, including depression (Shibley Hyde and Delamater 2008).

Prevention

There are two types of prevention relevant to HIV/AIDS interventions. Primary prevention is concerned with preventing an HIV– individual from contracting the disease; secondary prevention is concerned with preventing someone who is HIV+ from transmitting the virus to someone who is HIV– (Jekel et al. 2001). Behavioral HIV/AIDS prevention interventions typically include three components: information, motivation, and behavioral skills training (Fisher and Fisher 2000). Interventions typically address how HIV/AIDS is transmitted and how to prevent it. Known behaviors that can decrease the likelihood of HIV/AIDS transmission include consistent condom use, using clean needles to inject drugs, abstinence, decreasing number of sexual partners, and remaining monogamous (NIAID 2009c). Additionally, interventions are conducted at multiple levels (individual, dyadic, small group, community, mass media, structural).

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC 2009b) have put forth criteria to define what constitutes an effective behavioral HIV/AIDS prevention intervention. These criteria set guidelines for quality of design, implementation, and data analysis, as well as what constitutes support for intervention effectiveness. In addition to targeting high-risk behaviors (usually sex- or drug-related), the results of these interventions must show (a) a marked decrease in risk behaviors (sex- or drug-related), (b) a decrease in the rate of

new infections, and/or (c) an increase in protective behavior (e.g., condom use). To date, there are over 40 best evidence prevention interventions that meet these criteria and can be found on two websites (CDC 2009a; DEBI 2010). Known as DEBIs (Diffusion of Effective Behavioral Interventions), these HIV/AIDS prevention interventions are conducted at the individual, group, and/or community level and are targeted toward specific groups (HIV + individuals, HIV – individuals, heterosexuals, MSM, IDUs, males, females, racial minorities, transgender individuals, couples, etc.).

Biologically, using antiretroviral therapy can prevent transmission of HIV/AIDS from mother to child (Shibley Hyde and Delamater 2008). A vaccine to cure AIDS is not yet available, though research continues. Recently, preexposure prophylaxis (PrEP; CDC 2010), microbicides (Kelly 2008; Shibley Hyde and Delamater 2008), and circumcision (CDC 2008) have all offered promising results in the prevention of HIV/AIDS. PrEP is a chemoprophylaxis; it is thought that by having antiretrovirals present in the body's system before HIV enters the body, infection can be prevented (CDC 2010). Microbicides are gels or other substances that can be inserted into the vagina or rectum with the potential to kill HIV before it can enter the individual's body (Shibley Hyde and Delamater 2008). Finally, circumcision has been repeatedly shown in interventions to decrease the rate of HIV transmission because circumcision decreases the amount of Langerhans cells and skin tears present on the male penis, where HIV can enter the body (CDC 2008). Research is continuing to make great strides in the fight to prevent and treat HIV/AIDS.

Cross-References

- Cachexia (Wasting Syndrome)
- Cancer, Cervical
- Condom Use

- HIV Infection
- HIV Prevention
- Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV)
- Immune Function
- Kaposi's Sarcoma
- Prevention: Primary, Secondary, Tertiary
- Sexual Risk Behavior

References and Readings

- CDC. (2008). *HIV/AIDS fact sheets: Male circumcision and risk for HIV transmission and other health conditions: Implications for the United States*. Retrieved December 2010, from <http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/resources/factsheets/circumcision.htm>
- CDC. (2009a). *Best-evidence interventions*. Retrieved December 2010, from <http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/topics/research/prs/best-evidence-intervention.htm#completelist>
- CDC. (2009b). *PRS efficacy criteria for best-evidence (tier 1) individual-level and group-level interventions (ILIs/GLIs)*. Retrieved December 2010, from http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/topics/research/prs/efficacy_best-evidence_ILIs-GLIs.htm
- CDC. (2010). *HIV/AIDS: Pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP)*. Retrieved December 2010, from <http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/prep/>
- Crooks, R., & Baur, K. (2005). *Our sexuality* (9th ed.). Belmont: Thomson Wadsworth.
- DEBI. (2010). *Diffusion of effective behavioral interventions*. Retrieved December 2010, from: <http://effectiveinterventions.org>
- Fisher, J. D., & Fisher, W. A. (2000). Theoretical approaches to individual-level change in HIV risk behavior. In R. J. DiClemente (Ed.), *Handbook of HIV prevention* (pp. 3–55). Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Jekel, J. F., Katz, D. L., & Elmore, J. G. (2001). *Epidemiology, biostatistics, and preventive medicine* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Kalichman, S. C., Amaral, C. M., White, D., Swetsze, C., Pope, H., Kalichman, M. O., et al. (2009). Prevalence and clinical implications of interactive toxicity beliefs regarding mixing alcohol and antiretroviral therapies among people living with HIV/AIDS. *AIDS Patient Care and STDs*, 23, 449–454. <https://doi.org/10.1089/apc.2008.0184>.
- Kelly, G. F. (2008). *Sexuality today* (9th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Maartens, G. (2008). Prevention of opportunistic infections in adults. In S. S. Abdoool Karim & Q. Abdoool Karim (Eds.), *HIV/AIDS in South Africa* (pp. 454–462). New York: Cambridge University Press.
- NIAID. (2009a). *HIV/AIDS: Classes of HIV/AIDS antiretroviral drugs*. Retrieved December 2010, from <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/topics/HIVAIDS/Understanding/Treatment/Pages/arvDrugClasses.aspx>
- NIAID. (2009b). *HIV/AIDS: More on how HIV causes AIDS*. Retrieved December 2010, from <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/topics/HIVAIDS/Understanding/howHIVCausesAIDS/Pages/howhiv.aspx>
- NIAID. (2009c). *HIV/AIDS: Prevention*. Retrieved December 2010, from <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/topics/HIVAIDS/Understanding/Prevention/Pages/prevention.aspx>
- NIAID. (2010). *HIV/AIDS: Adherence and drug resistance*. Retrieved December 2010, from <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/topics/HIVAIDS/Understanding/Treatment/Pages/adherence.aspx>
- Shibley Hyde, J., & Delamater, J. D. (2008). *Understanding human sexuality* (10th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Shilts, R. (1987). *And the band played on: Politics, people and the AIDS epidemic*. New York: St. Martins Press.
- UNAIDS. (2010a). *Fact sheet: Women, girls and HIV*. Retrieved December 2010, from http://data.unaids.org/pub/FactSheet/2010/20100302_fs_womenhiv_en.pdf
- UNAIDS. (2010b). *Global report: UNAIDS report on the global AIDS epidemic 2010*. Retrieved December 2010, from http://www.unaids.org/globalreport/Global_report.htm
- Wood, R. (2008). Antiretroviral therapy. In S. S. Abdoool Karim & Q. Abdoool Karim (Eds.), *HIV/AIDS in South Africa* (pp. 504–523). New York: Cambridge University Press.
- World Health Organization. (2010a). *HIV/AIDS: Antiretroviral therapy*. Retrieved December 2010, from: <http://www.who.int/hiv/topics/treatment/en/index.html>
- World Health Organization. (2010b). *HIV/AIDS: Online Q&A*. Retrieved December 2010, from <http://www.who.int/features/qa/71/en/index.html>

All

- Angiotensin

Alcohol

- Binge Drinking

Alcohol Abuse

► Lifestyle Changes

Alcohol Abuse and Dependence

Kelly S. DeMartini¹ and Kristin L. MacGregor²

¹Division of Substance Abuse, School of Medicine, Yale University, New Haven, CT, USA

²Department of Psychology, Syracuse University, Syracuse, NY, USA

Synonyms

Substance abuse; Substance dependence

Definition

Alcohol abuse (AA), as defined by the DSM-IV, is characterized by a maladaptive pattern of alcohol use that leads to clinically significant impairment or distress, manifesting in at least one of the following recurrent symptoms: failure to fulfill major role obligations at work, school, and/or home; use in situations in which it would be physically hazardous (e.g., while driving); alcohol-related legal problems; and/or interpersonal problems associated with alcohol use (American Psychiatric Association [APA] 2000). The most commonly endorsed symptom of alcohol abuse is use in physically hazardous situations, and the most common situation is driving while under the influence (Harford et al. 2005; Hasin and Paykin 1999). A diagnosis of AA, therefore, is characterized not by obtaining a certain level of alcohol consumption but by the experience of alcohol-related problems. It is a widespread problem in the United States that has estimated 12-month and lifetime prevalence rates of 4.7% and 17.8%, and prevalence rates have increased steadily over the past two decades (Grant et al. 2004; Hasin et al. 2007). It is most prevalent in younger, white, unmarried men, yet

there is evidence to suggest that this gender difference is decreasing in younger age cohorts. AA often co-occurs with other mental health disorders, including other substance abuse, nicotine dependence, panic disorder, depression, and bipolar disorder (Swendsen et al. 2010; Zvolensky et al. 2006). The existence of preexisting mental health disorders predicts the transition from regular alcohol use to AA, and the odds of developing AA greatly increase when three or more mental health disorders are present (Swendsen et al. 2010).

Alcohol dependence (AD), as defined by the DSM-IV, is characterized by a maladaptive pattern of alcohol use leading to clinically significant impairment or distress. The pattern is manifested by the existence of three or more of the following symptoms: tolerance; withdrawal; using alcohol in larger amounts or over a longer period of time than intended; persistent desire or unsuccessful efforts to cut down; spending a great deal of time to obtain, use, or recover from alcohol; giving up social, occupational, or recreational activities because of alcohol use; continuing alcohol use despite knowledge of a persistent or recurrent physical or psychological problem that is likely to have been caused by alcohol. AD can occur with or without physiological dependence. Once a diagnosis of AD exists, a person cannot again meet criteria for AA (APA 2000). Epidemiological estimates from 2001 to 2002 indicate that the 12-month prevalence rate of AD is 3.81%, which is a decrease from the 1991 to 1992 12-month prevalence estimate of 4.38% (Hasin et al. 2007). Rates of AD are higher in males (5.42%) than females (2.32%). Whites, Native Americans, and Hispanics have higher rates of AD than Asians. Lifetime prevalence of AD is estimated to be 12.5% (Hasin et al. 2007). The clinical course of AD includes fluctuations in the intensity of difficulties with alcohol and a high likelihood of recurrent cycles of abstinence that last several months or more followed by recurrent use (see Schuckit et al. 1997). Broadly, interpersonal and occupational problems, as well as tolerance, escalate by the mid- to late 20s, and more serious medical problems and alcohol-related abstinence syndromes are experienced by the mid-30s to early 40s (Schuckit et al. 1998). Those with

physiological dependence experience more binge drinking, alcohol-related problems, physiological complications, and more alcohol-related psychiatric problems (Schuckit et al. 1998).

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed., text revision). Washington, DC: Author.
- Cassidy, F., Ahearn, E. P., & Carroll, B. J. (2001). Substance abuse in bipolar disorder. *Bipolar Disorder*, 3(4), 181–188.
- Cosci, F., Schruers, K. R. J., Abrams, K., & Griez, E. J. L. (2007). Alcohol use disorders and panic disorder: A review of the evidence of a direct relationship. *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, 68, 874–880.
- Grant, B. F., Dawson, D. A., Stinson, F. S., Chou, S. P., Dufour, M. C., & Pickering, R. P. (2004). The 12-month prevalence and trends in DSM-IV alcohol abuse and dependence: United States, 1991–1992 and 2001–2002. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, 74, 223–234.
- Harford, T. C., Grant, B. F., Yi, H. Y., & Chen, C. M. (2005). Patterns of DSM-IV alcohol abuse and dependence criteria among adolescents and adults: Results from the 2001 National Household Survey on drug abuse. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, 29, 810–828.
- Hasin, D., & Paykin, A. (1999). Alcohol dependence and abuse diagnoses: Concurrent validity in a nationally representative sample. *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, 23, 144–150.
- Hasin, D. S., Stinson, F. S., Ogburn, E., & Grant, B. F. (2007). Prevalence, correlates, disability, and comorbidity of DSM-IV alcohol abuse and dependence in the United States: Results from the National Epidemiologic Survey on alcohol and related conditions. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 64(7), 830–842.
- Kessler, R. C., Berglund, A., Demler, O., Jin, R., Merikangas, K. R., & Walters, E. E. (2005). Lifetime prevalence and age-of-onset distributions of DSM-IV disorders in the national comorbidity survey replication. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 62, 593–602.
- Keyes, K. M., Grant, B. F., & Hasin, D. S. (2008). Evidence for a closing gender gap in alcohol use, abuse, and dependence in the United States population. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, 93, 21–29.
- Schuckit, M. A., & Smith, T. L. (2001). The clinical course of alcohol dependence associated with a low level of response to alcohol. *Addiction*, 96, 903–910.
- Schuckit, M. A., Tipp, J. E., Smith, T. L., & Bucholz, K. K. (1997). Periods of abstinence following the onset of alcohol dependence in 1,853 men and women. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, 58, 581–589.
- Schuckit, M. A., Daepfen, J. B., Tipp, J. E., Hesselbrock, M., & Bucholz, K. K. (1998a). The clinical course of alcohol-related problems in alcohol dependent and nonalcohol dependent drinking women and men. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, 59, 581–590.
- Schuckit, M. A., Smith, T. L., Daepfen, J., Eng, M., Hesselbrock, V. M., Nummerger, J. I., et al. (1998b). Clinical relevance of the distinction between alcohol dependence with and without a physiological component. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 155, 733–740.
- Swendsen, J., Conway, K. P., Degenhardt, L., Glantz, M., Jin, R., Merikangas, K. R., et al. (2010). Mental disorders as risk factors for substance use, abuse and dependence: Results from the 10-year follow-up of the National Comorbidity Survey. *Addiction*, 105, 1117–1128.
- Zvolensky, M. J., Bernstein, A., Marshall, E. C., & Feldner, M. T. (2006). Panic attacks, panic disorder, and agoraphobia: Associations with substance use, abuse, and dependence. *Current Psychiatry Report*, 8, 279–285.

Alcohol Consumption

Susan E. Collins and Megan Kirouac
Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral
Sciences, University of Washington, Harborview
Medical Center, Seattle, WA, USA

Synonyms

[Alcohol use](#); [Drinking](#)

Definition

Alcohol consumption, as the term is used in clinical and research applications, refers to the act of ingesting – typically orally – a beverage containing ethanol. Ethyl alcohol or ethanol (CH₃CH₂OH) is the only type of alcohol that is safe for human consumption. Other types of alcohol, such as isopropyl and methyl alcohol, are toxic and potentially lethal. Alcoholic beverages that are typically consumed may include beer, wine, distilled spirits, and beverages that contain combinations of these or other additives, including malt liquor, fortified wine, liqueur, and cordials. In certain populations, nonbeverage alcohol (e.g., hand sanitizer, vanilla extract, cooking wine) may also be consumed.

Description

Relevance to Behavioral Medicine

Alcohol consumption is an important construct in behavioral medicine because alcohol is a psychoactive substance that affects the body in various ways. In addition to its acute effects, it can have longer-term medical, psychiatric/psychological, social, economic, and occupational effects on individuals, families, communities, and society at large.

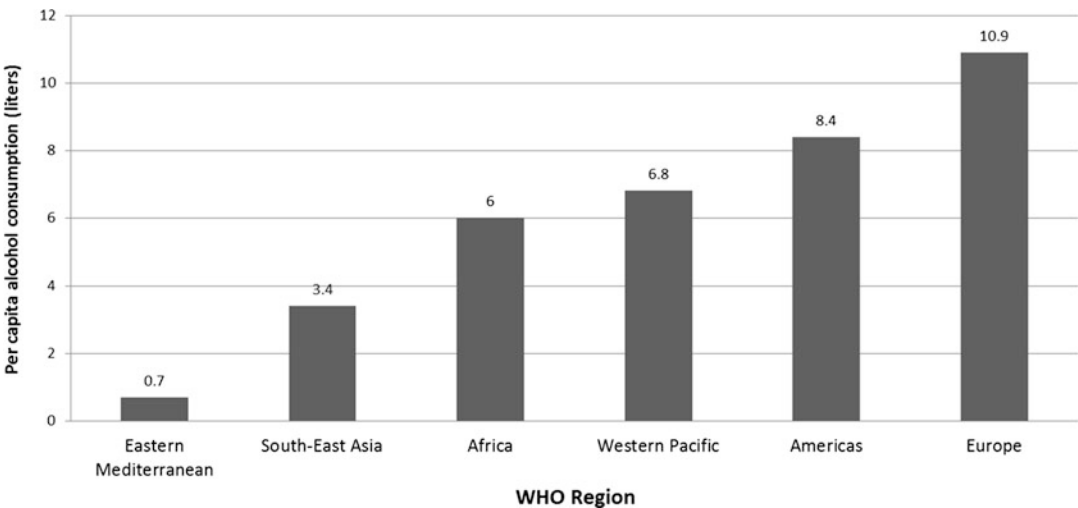
Cultural and Historical Factors Influencing Alcohol Consumption

Alcoholic beverages have been crafted and consumed for millennia. Alcohol consumption patterns have, however, varied widely depending on broader macrofactors, such as historical time, cultural context, and geopolitical forces, as well as microfactors such as individuals’ gender, family background, local environment, religion, and socioeconomic position (Edwards 2000; Gately 2008). Alcohol consumption is often regulated by law and may be shaped by cultural norms, values, and local knowledge. Some early cultures and developing communities have relied on alcoholic beverages to quench thirst when clean water was unavailable, to supplement their diet, and to

stave off hunger when food was scarce (Blocker 2006; Denning and Little 2012; Martin 2006; Molamu and Macdonald 1996). Consequently, alcohol has been provided in rations as a form of payment to workers throughout history, from ancient Egyptian builders to feudal European serfs to US troops during the Vietnam War (Gately 2008). Alcohol consumption has also played key roles in religious and spiritual ceremonies, social celebrations, and medicine (Gately 2008). A recent report from the World Health Organization (2014) suggests that per capita alcohol consumption is currently highest in the WHO European region and the Region of the Americas (see Fig. 1 for per capital alcohol consumption in various WHO regions).

Neurobiological Effects of Alcohol Consumption

When alcohol is consumed, it is absorbed into the bloodstream via the stomach lining and small intestines and then crosses the blood-brain barrier to affect the central nervous system. Its effects are dose dependent and include changes in memory, cognition, perception, coordination, and emotion (Dodgen and Shea 2000). Table 1 shows possible effects of alcohol at different blood alcohol levels. These changes in the brain likely result from



Alcohol Consumption, Fig. 1 Numbers are based on 2010 data reported in WHO (2014). Alcohol consumption data are represented in liters of pure alcohol consumed per

capita (inhabitants ages 15 and older). Statistics are grouped by WHO regions

Alcohol Consumption, Table 1 Possible and/or common effects of alcohol consumption at various blood alcohol levels

Blood alcohol level	Possible and/or common effects
0.02	Subtle effects that may be detected with special tests
0.04	Effects of intoxication, especially among people with lower alcohol tolerance
0.08	Relaxation, concentration difficulties, and impaired judgment about one's own capabilities
0.10	Nausea, slurred speech, and decreased reasoning and depth perception
0.20	Impaired balance and movement; increased risk for memory loss (blackouts) and accidental injury
0.30	Extreme physical and cognitive impairment. Memory loss (blackouts) and alcohol poisoning are common among young adults
0.40	Loss of consciousness; increased risk for alcohol poisoning and alcohol-induced coma
0.45	Median lethal dose ($LD_{50} = 0.45$)

ethanol’s effect on dopamine, acetylcholine, serotonin, NMDA, and GABA receptors (Shuckit 2000). Studies have suggested that the activation of GABA_A, a specific GABA subtype, and decreased NMDA glutaminergic neurotransmission both lead to the increased sedation and decreased anxiety that are hallmarks of alcohol intoxication (Nestler and Self 2010).

Alcohol Metabolism

Alcohol is metabolized in the liver, where an enzyme called alcohol dehydrogenase (ADH) transforms it into acetaldehyde (CH₃CHO). Acetaldehyde is a toxic compound that is, in turn, quickly metabolized by another enzyme, aldehyde dehydrogenase (ALDH), into a less toxic compound called acetate. Acetate is finally broken down into water and carbon dioxide by various other tissues and eliminated from the body. The toxic compound, acetaldehyde, is believed to play a causal role in some alcohol-related morbidity, such as liver cirrhosis and cancer (Zakhari 2006).

Subjective Effects of Alcohol Consumption

Although pharmacological research has indicated that alcohol is a depressant, alcohol consumption has been associated with subjectively perceived biphasic effects (Winger et al. 2004). Thus, drinkers may report experiencing feelings of stimulation and euphoria during the ascending curve of their blood alcohol level. At higher levels of alcohol consumption (blood alcohol levels >0.08) and/or during the descent of the blood alcohol curve, drinkers may report experiencing more depressant effects of alcohol, including sedation and/or dysphoria. Drinkers with lower sensitivity to these depressant effects of alcohol may be at greater risk for alcohol use disorders (Schuckit and Smith 2000). Although recent research has indicated some support for these biphasic effects, it has also shown that subjective experiences of alcohol effects vary widely and warrant further study (Morean and Corbin 2009).

Consequences Associated with Alcohol Consumption

Alcohol consumption is responsible for 5.9% of deaths recorded worldwide and a global loss of 139 million disability-adjusted life years (WHO 2014). The alcohol-related disease burden is precipitated in part by acute intoxication, which is known to decrease reaction time, perceptual/motor skills, and inhibitions and is thereby associated with increased risk for traffic accidents, self-inflicted injury/suicide, falls, drownings, alcohol poisoning, and interpersonal violence. Longer-term effects of alcohol consumption also contribute to the disease burden by way of various medical conditions (e.g., cancer, cardiovascular disease, and liver cirrhosis) and psychiatric disorders (e.g., depression, alcohol dependence and abuse).

While the global alcohol-related disease burden is considerable, low-to-moderate alcohol consumption has been shown to have protective effects against cardiovascular heart disease, ischemic stroke, diabetes, and gallstones. “Moderate” alcohol consumption has been variously defined across cultures. According to a report on national health agency guidelines in over 30 countries, moderate alcohol consumption guidelines range

from 14 g (one standard drink) to 70 g (approximately five standard drinks) per day (International Center for Alcohol Policies 2003). According to the US measurement standards, a “standard drink” refers to a 12 oz of beer, 5 oz of wine, or 1.5 oz of distilled spirits (National Institutes on Alcoholism and Alcohol Abuse [NIAAA] 2005). US guidelines distinguish between (a) “moderate drinking,” which is defined as daily alcohol consumption ≤ 1 standard drink for women and ≤ 2 for men (US Department of Agriculture and US Department of Health and Human Services 2010), and (b) “low-risk drinking,” which is defined as consuming ≤ 3 standard drinks a day and ≤ 7 per week for women or ≤ 4 per day and ≤ 14 per week for men (National Institutes on Alcoholism and Alcohol Abuse [NIAAA] 2005).

Assessment of Alcohol Consumption

Measuring alcohol consumption and its potential effects on an individual is an important and challenging task for health-care professionals that often requires triangulation among self-report measures, diagnostic interviews, behavioral observation, psychological testing, examination of archival data, collection of collateral data, and biological measurement. Measures used should evince adequate reliability and validity and, if applicable, sensitivity and specificity. Screening measures such as the four-item CAGE (Mayfield et al. 1974), 25-item Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (MAST; Selzer 1971), and Alcohol Use Disorder Identification Test (AUDIT; Babor et al. 1991) are often used to indicate the need for further questioning regarding alcohol consumption. Health-care providers should then inquire about the quantity and frequency of alcohol consumption during typical and peak drinking occasions within a clinically relevant time period to document current use. Retrospective (e.g., Timeline Followback; Sobell and Sobell 1992) or prospective (drinking diary) measures may be used to document daily drinking over time and thereby identify individuals’ longitudinal drinking patterns. Assessment of drinking patterns is important because research has indicated that alcohol consumption – even among heavier drinkers – may be best conceptualized as fluid

and dynamic (Klingemann et al. 2010; Pandina and Johnson 2005).

The potential negative psychological effects of alcohol consumption may be assessed using structured diagnostic interviews, such as the Structured Clinical Interview for the DSM-5 (SCID; First et al. 2015) or the WHO’s Composite International Diagnostic Interview (CIDI; World Health Organization [WHO] 1990), which systematically assess the lifetime and current presence of alcohol use disorders according to either DSM-5 or ICD-10 criteria. Finally, negative physiological effects of alcohol consumption may be assessed using blood tests to detect elevated liver enzymes (GGT, ALT, AST), increased red blood cell size (MCV), and/or carbohydrate-deficient transferrin (CDT), which, taken together, may indicate damage due to heavy alcohol use (Warner and Sharma 2009).

Cross-References

- Addictive Behaviors
- Alcohol Abuse and Dependence
- Binge Drinking
- Health Risk (Behavior)
- National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism

References and Further Readings

- Babor, T. F., Higgins-Biddle, J. C., Saunders, J. B., & Monteiro, M. G. (1991). *The alcohol use disorders identification test: Guidelines for use in primary care* (2nd ed.). Geneva: World Health Organization.
- Blocker, J. S. (2006). Kaleidoscope in motion: Drinking in the United States, 1400–2000. In M. P. Holt (Ed.), *Alcohol: A social and cultural history* (pp. 225–240). Oxford: Berg.
- Denning, P., & Little, J. (2012). *Practicing harm reduction psychotherapy: An alternative approach to addictions* (2nd ed.). New York: Guilford Press.
- Dodgen, C. E., & Shea, W. M. (2000). Clinical pharmacology and clinical epidemiology of psychoactive substances. In *Substance use disorders: Assessment and treatment* (pp. 1–28). San Diego: Academic.
- Edwards, G. (2000). *Alcohol: The world’s favorite drug*. London: Penguin.
- First, M. B., Williams, J. B. W., Karg, R. S., & Spitzer, R. L. (2015). *Structured clinical interview for DSM-5, research version (SCID-5 for DSM-5, research version;*

- SCID-5-RV). Arlington: American Psychiatric Association.
- Gately, I. (2008). *Drink: A cultural history of alcohol*. New York: Gotham Books.
- International Center for Alcohol Policies. (2003). *ICAP reports 14: International drinking guidelines*. Washington, DC: International Center for Alcohol Policies.
- Klingemann, H. K.-H., Sobell, M. B., & Sobell, L. C. (2010). Continuities and changes in self-change research. *Addiction*, 105, 1510–1518. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1360-0443.2009.02770.x>.
- Martin, A. L. (2006). Drinking and alehouses in the diary of an English mercer's apprentice, 1663–1674. In M. P. Holt (Ed.), *Alcohol: A social and cultural history* (pp. 93–106). Oxford: Berg.
- Mayfield, D., McLeod, G., & Hall, P. (1974). CAGE questionnaire: Validation of a new alcoholism screening instrument. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 131, 1121–1123.
- Molamu, L., & Macdonald, D. (1996). Alcohol abuse among the Basarwa of the Kgalagadi and Ghanzi districts of Botswana. *Drugs: Education, Prevention, and Policy*, 3, 145–152.
- Morean, M. E., & Corbin, W. R. (2009). Subjective response to alcohol: A critical review of the literature. *Alcoholism, Clinical and Experimental Research*, 34, 385–395. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1530-0277.2009.01103.x>.
- National Institutes on Alcoholism and Alcohol Abuse. (2005). *Helping patients who drink too much: A clinician's guide updated* (2005th ed.). Bethesda: National Institutes on Alcoholism and Alcohol Abuse.
- Nestler, E. J., & Self, D. W. (2010). Neuropsychiatric aspects of ethanol and other chemical dependencies. In S. C. Yudofsky & R. E. Hales (Eds.), *Essentials of neuropsychiatry and behavioral neurosciences* (2nd ed.). Arlington: American Psychiatric Publishing.
- Pandina, R. J., & Johnson, V. L. (2005). Lifespan development and drugs. In R. H. Coombs (Ed.), *Addiction counseling review: Preparing for comprehensive, certification and licensing* (pp. 105–128). Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Shuckit, M. A., & Smith, T. L. (2000). The relationships of a family history of alcohol dependence, a low level of response to alcohol and six domains of life functioning to the development of alcohol use disorders. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, 61, 827–835.
- Selzer, M. L. (1971). The Michigan Alcoholism Screening Test (MAST): The quest for a new diagnostic instrument. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 127, 1653–1658.
- Shuckit, M. A. (2000). *Drug and alcohol abuse: A clinical guide to diagnosis and treatment* (5th ed.). New York: Kluwer/Plenum.
- Sobell, L. C., & Sobell, M. B. (1992). Timeline followback: A technique for assessing self-reported ethanol consumption. In J. Allen & R. Z. Litten (Eds.), *Measuring alcohol consumption: Psychosocial and biological methods* (pp. 41–72). Totowa: Humana Press.
- US Department of Agriculture, & US Department of Health and Human Services. (2010). *Dietary guidelines for Americans, 2010* (7th ed.). Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office.
- Warner, E. A., & Sharma, N. (2009). Laboratory diagnosis. In R. K. Ries, S. C. Miller, D. A. Fiellin, & R. Saitz (Eds.), *Principles of addiction medicine*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- WHO. (1990). *Composite international diagnostic interview (CIDI)*. Geneva: WHO.
- WHO. (2014). *Global status report on alcohol 2014*. Geneva: WHO. Retrieved from http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/112736/1/9789240692763_eng.pdf.
- Winger, G., Woods, J. H., & Hofmann, F. G. (2004). Depressants of the central nervous system: Alcohol, barbiturates, and benzodiazepines. In G. Winger, J. H. Woods, & F. G. Hofmann (Eds.), *A handbook on drug and alcohol abuse: The biomedical aspects* (4th ed., pp. 55–80). Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Zakhari, S. (2006). Overview: How is alcohol metabolized by the body? *Alcohol Research & Health*, 29, 245–254.

Alcohol Use

► Alcohol Consumption

Alertness

► Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine

Allele

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Alleles are alternate forms of a gene, with any given gene having one or more alleles. While humans, for example, share the same genes, each human does not have an identical pattern of alleles. If the two alleles at a particular locus are

the same, that locus is homozygous; if they are different, it is heterozygous. Alleles influence phenotypes and contribute to the differences between individuals. Alleles for genes occur in pairs.

Imagine that a specific gene has two alleles, represented by the upper case letter G and the lower case letter g. At a certain address on each of two homologous chromosomes, there will be one of these alleles. There are four possible combinations:

- G and G
- G and g
- g and G
- g and g

The combination of the two alleles determines what phenotype results from a particular pairing of alleles. If the allele G is dominant (and the allele g is therefore recessive), the phenotype encoded by the G allele will occur for each of the first three combinations. Only in the fourth combination, where the recessive allele is present on both chromosomes, will the phenotype encoded by the g allele occur. The terms autosomal dominant inheritance and autosomal recessive inheritance are used in this context.

Cross-References

- [Chromosomes](#)
- [Dominant Inheritance](#)
- [Gene](#)
- [Recessive Inheritance](#)

References and Further Reading

- Britannica. (2009). *The Britannica guide to genetics* (Introduction by Steve Jones). Philadelphia: Running Press.
- Edelson, E. (1999). *Gregor Mendel and the roots of genetics*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Allele Heterogeneity

Abanish Singh

Duke University Medical Center, Durham,
NC, USA

Definition

The complement of an individual's genes is known as the genotype, and observable traits such as physical characteristics (height, weight, skin color and eye color, etc.) and disease status such as diabetes and heart disease are known as phenotypes. A process known as natural selection provides a mechanism of evolution along with mutation, migration, and genetic drift in DNA. Mutations cause changes in genetic code and create diversity or allelic variation in genotypes. The alteration in DNA sequence at a single nucleotide is known as single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP). Though often it was believed that a phenotype is caused by a single SNP or a cluster of SNPs in linkage disequilibrium, it remains no more a rule. There have been several lines of evidence that different SNPs within a gene can cause the same phenotype. This phenomenon of different mutations at a single locus causing the same phenotype is known as allelic heterogeneity.

There are several examples where allelic heterogeneity has been observed, such as β -thalassemias, in which several mutations in β -globin locus cause the disease phenotype. Different mutations in dystrophin locus causes Duchenne dystrophy, and multiple mutations in CFTR cause cystic fibrosis.

Cross-References

- [Genotype](#)
- [Phenotype](#)
- [Single Nucleotide Polymorphism \(SNP\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Cystic Fibrosis (CF). (2010). In: *Online mendelian inheritance in man, OMIM*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press. Accessed June 9, 2010., from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/omim/219700>. Updated April 29, 2010.
- Faucz, F. R., Souza, D. A. S., Olandoski, M., & Raskin, S. (2010). CFTR allelic heterogeneity in Brazil: Historical and geographical perspectives and implications for screening and counseling for cystic fibrosis in this country. *Journal of Human Genetics*, 55, 71–76. <https://doi.org/10.1038/jhg.2009.123>.

Allergy: Behavioral Treatment, Risk Factors, and Psychosocial Aspects

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

Allergies are a group of immune-mediated diseases characterized by excessive inflammatory responses to otherwise innocuous environmental compounds. Allergies include excessive white blood cell recruitment, due to elicitation of immunoglobulin E, upon exposure to such compounds. Allergies include allergic rhinitis, asthma, hay fever, eczema, food sensitivities, and hypersensitivities to insect bites (Kay 2000). Allergic disorders are highly prevalent, and some estimate that 25% of children are affected by them (Torres-Borrego et al. 2008). Symptoms of allergic rhinitis include excessive sneezing, tearing, runny nose, and itching nose, throat, eyes, and ears. Symptoms of asthma include wheezing, coughing, shortness of breath, and chest pain and tightness. Symptoms of food allergies are very heterogeneous and include swelling or tingling in the mouth and lips, swelling in other body parts, wheezing and nasal congestion, breathing

problems, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting or diarrhea, dizziness, and in rare occasions shock or fainting.

No clear consensus exists for their risk factors, but these may include genetic predisposition and exposure to pollution (e.g., diesel fuel). Several studies have proposed that psychosocial factors increase the risk of various types of allergies including asthma. Yet, many studies were cross-sectional, making the inferential validity questionable. One important research has also shown that family (parental) stress synergistically interacts with exposure to traffic pollution in prospectively predicting new onset of asthma: the effects of pollution on asthma onset were stronger and significant only in children with parental stress (Shankardass et al. 2009). Furthermore, allergies have profound effects on patients' physical, psychological, and social dimensions of quality of life.

A few meta-analyses were conducted testing the overall effects of psychological interventions on asthma. While some promising effects emerged on medication needs, other effects were weaker, and study quality and heterogeneity did not enable to draw firm conclusions (Yorke et al. 2007). Clearly, the role of psychosocial factors in allergies is an important domain for further investigation, given the high prevalence and impact of such health problems, and the findings relating psychosocial factors with allergy onset.

Cross-References

- [Asthma and Stress](#)
- [Asthma: Behavioral Treatment](#)

References and Further Readings

- Kay, A. B. (2000). Overview of 'allergy and allergic diseases: With a view to the future'. *British Medical Bulletin*, 56, 843–864.

- Shankardass, K., McConnell, R., Jerrett, M., Milam, J., Richardson, J., & Berhane, K. (2009). Parental stress increases the effect of traffic-related air pollution on childhood asthma incidence. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 106, 12406–12411.
- Torres-Borrego, J., Molina-Terán, A. B., & Montes-Mendoza, C. (2008). Prevalence and associated factors of allergic rhinitis and atopic dermatitis in children. *Allergologia et Immunopathologia*, 36, 90–100.
- Yorke, J., Fleming, S. L., & Shuldham, C. (2007). Psychological interventions for adults with asthma: A systematic review. *Respiratory Medicine*, 101, 1–14.

Allostasis, Allostatic Load

Yoshiharu Yamamoto

Educational Physiology Laboratory, Graduate School of Education The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Definition

The process by which the body responds to stressors in order to regain homeostasis.

Description

Allostasis: Achieving stability through change; the ability to adapt successfully to the challenges of daily life by feedforward mechanisms to maintain viability, emphasizing the biological imperative that “an organism must vary all the parameters of its internal milieu and match them appropriately to environmental demands” (Sterling and Eyer 1988). This is an extension of homeostasis, that is, stability through constancy, maintaining constancy of a vital variable by sensing its deviation from a set point and providing feedback to correct the error. Allostasis describes mechanisms that change the variable by predicting what level will be needed and then overriding local feedback to meet anticipated demand

(Sterling 2004). As such mechanisms require higher brain functions, in most cases, the allostasis deals with cephalic involvement in systemic physiological regulation, including behavioral and/or psychosocial impact. Feedforward mechanisms associated with fear, anxiety, addiction, etc., are typical examples. The neuroendocrine system, autonomic nervous system, and immune system are the primary mediators. When they are in a state of heightened activity, this is referred to as an allostatic “state.”

Allostatic Load: A measure of the cumulative burden that reflects the continued operation of the allostatic state or overactivation of allostatic responses. When the adaptive responses to challenge lie chronically outside normal operating ranges, wear and tear on regulatory systems occurs, and the allostatic load accumulates as a “cost” of adaptation (McEwen 1998). Best known and studied is the effect of the primary hormonal mediators of the stress response, glucocorticoids and catecholamines, where in the short term, they are essential for adaptation, maintenance of homeostasis, and survival, but over longer periods of time, they exact a cost that can accelerate disease processes (McEwen 2000). The resultant secondary outcomes associated with increased risk of diseases include neuronal atrophy or hippocampal loss, atherosclerotic plaques, abdominal fat deposition, left ventricular hypertrophy, glycosylated hemoglobin, high cholesterol, low high-density lipoprotein, and chronic pain and fatigue associated with imbalance of immune mediators (McEwen 2004). This diversity of the secondary outcomes – which demarcates the allostatic load from Selye’s general adaptation syndrome – sharing the primary mediators is considered to explain the presence of a variety of comorbidity patterns of chronic illnesses (e.g., depression and diabetes, colon cancer and coronary heart disease, depression and cardiovascular disease), especially in the elderly. Thus, the allostatic load, if successfully measured, is expected to be an early warning system of biomarkers that can signal early signs of dysregulation across

multiple biological systems (Singer et al. 2004). Various attempts have been made to quantify the cumulative burden by accounting for abnormalities in the primary mediators (e.g., urinary cortisol and catecholamines) and the secondary outcomes (e.g., blood pressure and glycosylated hemoglobin), but there is as yet no established measure for the allostatic load. This is partially because the primary mediators also vary dramatically as normal physiological responses in the allostatic state, and profiling the secondary outcomes tends to focus on specific, not diverse, pathophysiology. The characterization of the allostatic load (and state) to overcome these limitations is the future challenge.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Homeostasis](#)
- ▶ [Stress Response](#)

References and Further Reading

- McEwen, B. S. (1998). Protective and damaging effects of stress mediators. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 338, 171–179.
- McEwen, B. S. (2000). Allostasis and allostatic load: Implications for neuropsychopharmacology. *Neuropsychopharmacology*, 22, 108–124.
- McEwen, B. S. (2004). Protective and damaging effects of the mediators of stress and adaptation: Allostasis and allostatic load. In J. Schulkin (Ed.), *Allostasis, homeostasis, and the cost of physiological adaptation*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Singer, B., Ryff, C. D., & Seeman, T. (2004). Operationalizing allostatic load. In J. Schulkin (Ed.), *Allostasis, homeostasis, and the cost of physiological adaptation*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Sterling, P. (2004). Principles of allostasis: Optimal design, predictive regulation, pathophysiology, and rational therapeutics. In J. Schulkin (Ed.), *Allostasis, homeostasis, and the cost of physiological adaptation*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Sterling, P., & Eyer, J. (1988). Allostasis: A new paradigm to explain arousal pathology. In S. Fisher & J. Reason (Eds.), *Handbook of life stress, cognition, and health*. New York: Wiley.

Alpha-Amylase

Urs M. Nater and Nida Ali

Department of Psychology, University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria

Definition

Salivary alpha-amylase (sAA) is an enzyme proposed to reflect stress-related changes in the body.

Description

Salivary measures have become increasingly important in behavioral medicine (Nater et al. 2013). Substances such as the hormone cortisol or the immune parameter salivary IgA can be measured in saliva as meaningful markers for various normal and pathological processes in the body. The enzyme salivary alpha-amylase (sAA) has been suggested to reflect stress-related changes in the body (Chatterton et al. 1996). Its secretion is elicited by activation of the autonomic nervous system (ANS) which controls the salivary glands.

Salivary alpha-amylase (α -1,4- α -D-glucan 4-glucanohydrolase; EC 3.2.1.1) is one of the most important enzymes in saliva. It accounts for 40–50% of the total salivary gland-produced protein, most of the enzyme being synthesized in the parotid glands (80% of the total). It is a calcium-containing metalloenzyme that hydrolyzes the α -1,4 linkages of starch into glucose and maltose. However, sAA also has important antibacterial functions. The components of saliva are primarily produced by so-called acinar cells. Acinar cells are innervated by both the sympathetic and the parasympathetic branches of the ANS. Beta-adrenergic mechanisms are the main contributing factor for the release of sAA, as numerous animal and human studies have demonstrated. As an example, studies have shown a sympathetic response by cold water immersion or by

administering propranolol (a beta-adrenergic blocker). Exposure to cold water raises sAA activity in the parotid gland, whereas propranolol leads to a reduction of sAA activity. It has also been shown that yohimbine hydrochloride, an alpha-2-adrenergic receptor antagonist, resulted in significant increases in sAA activity relative to a placebo condition. These findings suggest that the changes in sAA might be regarded as an indirect indicator of changes in autonomic activation (Ehlert et al. 2006; van Stegeren et al. 2005).

Since the release of sAA is governed by activation of the ANS, an increase in sAA may be expected during psychological stress, i.e., when autonomic activation is high. In a seminal paper, Chatterton et al. published their findings of increases in sAA during a written examination (Chatterton et al. 1996). sAA increases have also been reported in response to other psychologically stressful conditions, such as the experience of medical procedures, adverse musical stimuli, mothers watching their children being exposed to a stressful task, the cold pressor test, achievement and interpersonal stress, driving simulation, the use of noise exposure, mental arithmetic tasks, oral academic examinations, and affective picture viewing. (Nater and Rohleder 2009). Almost uniformly, these tests have resulted in sAA increases. This suggests that sAA is a highly sensitive parameter reflecting changes caused by *acute* psychological stressors. In contrast, only a handful of studies have reported associations between *chronic* stress and sAA. The resulting evidence indicates that altered sAA secretion patterns, such as blunted awakening levels, and hyper- or hypo-secretions diurnally, and/or in reaction to acute stress, exist in chronic stress-related conditions. Accordingly, there is a broad potential of measuring sAA as an index of chronic stress in selected high-risk populations (Ali and Nater 2020).

Measurement of Salivary Alpha-Amylase in Behavioral Medicine

Based on the knowledge that has accumulated about the role of stress and its underlying physiological mechanisms in the secretion of sAA, it

seems reasonable to conclude that sAA activity can serve as an index for dysregulation of the ANS in specific clinical and subclinical conditions. As an example, at-risk groups exposed to chronic levels of stress due to occupational demands, such as nurses (Wingenfeld et al. 2010) or office workers (Marchand et al. 2016); or familial caregiving responsibilities, such as family members of patients with dementia (Liu et al. 2017); or brain cancer (Rohleder et al. 2009) show significantly altered sAA profiles over the course of the day. Likewise, anxiety-related conditions have also been found to be accompanied by the autonomic changes as reflected by the altered sAA levels (Schumacher et al. 2013).

In addition, sAA might be also measured in the context of somatic disorders, in which autonomic dysregulation has been observed. Exaggerated autonomic responses to different stimuli or basal autonomic dysregulation can be observed in individuals with rheumatoid arthritis, asthma patients, hypertensive patients, or patients with HIV or with atopic diseases. Moreover, a number of functional somatic syndromes, such as chronic fatigue syndrome or irritable bowel syndrome have also been shown to be associated with a dysregulation of the ANS. It is particularly interesting to see whether these alterations are reflected in altered sAA levels in future studies.

Summary

sAA activity is a potential indicator of autonomic activation. Numerous studies have shown that the changes in sAA can be elicited by stressful stimuli, whether they are physiological or psychological in nature (Rohleder and Nater 2009). The biological meaning of this phenomenon remains to be clarified though. Physiological stress reactions comprise orchestrated actions throughout the body, putting the organism in a state of overall preparedness to engage in fight or flight (Nater 2018). Thus, increases in sAA activity may be one of many actions involved in activating the body's resources to cope with stressful events or threats to homeostasis. However, this explanation only applies to responses to short-term, acute stressors.

Further studies are needed to examine the long-term changes in sAA activity, which are of particular interest in disorders associated with autonomic dysfunction.

Further studies are needed to elucidate the mechanisms underlying elevations in sAA in response to stress. Although a variety of studies have examined the physiological mechanisms of sAA production and secretion in animals, studies in humans are scarce. The use of pharmacological agents that inhibit or activate the ANS may prove particularly useful here, providing more detailed insights into the branches of the ANS responsible for increases in sAA. Also, electrical stimulation techniques in awake or anesthetized humans, e.g., in the clinical context of a hospital, may be useful. Measurement of direct sympathetic nerve activity via microneurography is considered to be the most accurate technique for assessing sympathetic activation. Beyond peripheral measurements, the relationship between central parameters and changes in sAA might prove very interesting.

Future studies will show to what extent the sAA will play a role within the research of pathophysiological mechanisms and treatment of stress-related disorders (Strahler et al. 2017). Given findings of the role of stress in clinical populations, the use of sAA to measure the effects of stress management training is expected to be a promising approach for studies of treatment effects. Also, measurement of sAA in clinical population seems very useful in ambulatory settings where saliva collection might present an easy, noninvasive, and efficient sampling method (Linnemann et al. 2017).

References and Further Reading

- Ali, N., & Nater, U. M. (2020). Salivary alpha-amylase as a biomarker of stress in behavioral medicine. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 27(3), 337–342.
- Chatterton, R. T., Jr., Vogelsong, K. M., Lu, Y. C., Ellman, A. B., & Hudgens, G. A. (1996). Salivary alpha-amylase as a measure of endogenous adrenergic activity. *Clinical Physiology*, 16(4), 433–448.
- Ehlert, U., Erni, K., Hebisch, G., & Nater, U. (2006). Salivary alpha-amylase levels after yohimbine challenge in healthy men. *The Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 91(12), 5130–5133.
- Linnemann, A., Strahler, J., & Nater, U. M. (2017). Assessing the effects of music listening on psychobiological stress in daily life. *Journal of Visualized Experiments*, 120, e54920.
- Liu, Y., Granger, D. A., Kim, K., Klein, L. C., Almeida, D. M., & Zarit, S. H. (2017). Diurnal salivary alpha-amylase dynamics among dementia family caregivers. *Health Psychology*, 36(2), 160–168.
- Marchand, A., Juster, R. P., Lupien, S. J., & Durand, P. (2016). Psychosocial determinants of diurnal alpha-amylase among healthy Quebec workers. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 66, 65–74.
- Nater, U. M. (2018). The multidimensionality of stress and its assessment. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 73, 159–160.
- Nater, U. M., & Rohleder, N. (2009). Salivary alpha-amylase as a non-invasive biomarker for the sympathetic nervous system: Current state of research. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 34(4), 486–496.
- Nater, U. M., Skoluda, N., & Strahler, J. (2013). Biomarkers of stress in behavioural medicine. *Current Opinion in Psychiatry*, 26(5), 440–445.
- Rohleder, N., & Nater, U. M. (2009). Determinants of salivary alpha-amylase in humans and methodological considerations. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 34(4), 469–485.
- Rohleder, N., Marin, T. J., Ma, R., & Miller, G. E. (2009). Biologic cost of caring for a cancer patient: Dysregulation of pro- and anti-inflammatory signaling pathways. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 27(18), 2909–2915.
- Schumacher, S., Kirschbaum, C., Fydrich, T., & Strohle, A. (2013). Is salivary alpha-amylase an indicator of autonomic nervous system dysregulations in mental disorders? – A review of preliminary findings and the interactions with cortisol. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 38(6), 729–743.
- Strahler, J., Skoluda, N., Kappert, M. B., & Nater, U. M. (2017). Simultaneous measurement of salivary cortisol and alpha-amylase: Application and recommendations. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 83, 657–677.
- van Stegeren, A., Rohleder, N., Everaerd, W., & Wolf, O. T. (2005). Salivary alpha amylase as marker for adrenergic activity during stress: Effect of betablockade. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 31, 137–141.
- Wingenfeld, K., Schulz, M., Damkroeger, A., Philippson, C., Rose, M., & Driessen, M. (2010). The diurnal course of salivary alpha-amylase in nurses: An investigation of potential confounders and associations with stress. *Biological Psychology*, 85(1), 179–181.

Alpha-Linolenic Acid

► Omega-3 Fatty Acids

Alter

► Aging

Altered Appearance

► Body Image and Appearance-Altering Conditions

Alternative Medicine

Nicole Nisly
Department of Internal Medicine, University of
Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Synonyms

Complimentary and alternative medicine; Integrative medicine

Definition

Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) encompasses a broad and diverse range of therapies, practices, and products which are not considered a part of conventional scientific medicine. It may be utilized in conjunction with (complementary) or in place of (alternative) conventional health care. They are widely utilized by patients to improve health and well-being; however, they have not yet had adequate research, are not commonly taught in the health-care professional curriculum, and are not incorporated in health-care systems, although this has been rapidly changing over the last two decades, with rising patient interest, federally funded research, and education initiatives. Patient utilization is significant, with approximately 38% of US adults aged 18 years and over and approximately 12%

of children using some form of CAM (Barnes et al. 2004; Eisenberg 2005).

What Are the Types of Modalities Encompassed in the CAM Definition?

The NCCAM classifies CAM modalities into four broad groups. Some modalities may belong to more than one group (<http://nccam.nih.gov/health/whatisacam/#types>).

1. Natural products: This include herbs, vitamins, minerals, fatty acids, and digestive enzymes, to name a few. Many of these products are regulated as dietary supplements (see below).
2. Mind-body medicine: These practices bring together the mind, body, and brain to improve health. Some of the modalities include meditation, Yoga, Tai Chi, acupuncture, and guided imagery. Some of these modalities are thousands of years old.
3. Manipulative or body-based therapies such as chiropractic care and massage therapy.
4. Other forms of healing include energy medicine such as healing touch and Reiki, movement therapies such as Alexander technique and Feldenkrais, and whole systems of healing such as TCM, Ayurvedic medicine, and naturopathy.

What Is a Dietary Supplement, and How Are These Regulated by FDA?

The 1994 Dietary Supplement and Health Education Act (DSHEA) defines dietary supplements as products intended to supplement diet; they may include a vitamin or mineral, a herb or botanical, enzymes, amino acid, or other extracts. They are regulated under the general umbrella of food and not drugs. Manufacturers are responsible for appropriate product labeling and following good manufacturing practices. The FDA must prove that a product is unsafe before it can be removed from the market. Patient's use of dietary supplement is substantial.

In the US adult population aged 20 and over, the percentage of people who used at least one dietary supplement increased from 42% in 1988–1994 to 53% in 2003–2006 (www.fda.gov Gahche et al. 2011).

Description

As health-care complexity, knowledge basis, and technology grow with resulting improved life expectancy and quality of life, patients are growing more interested in a health care perceived as more holistic and congruent with their values and philosophical beliefs (Eisenberg 2005).

Unfortunately, this growth in patient engagement and health-care knowledge is not being matched at the same speed by health-care training in a more participatory and collaborative health care. While medicine is moving toward a patient-centered care, this is too slow of a movement in a field where health-care students and practitioners still have very limited curriculum preparing them to incorporate patients' beliefs, values, and cultural background in the health-care plan. Many providers have very limited knowledge and skills in addressing the use of complementary and alternative care by patients, including use of dietary supplements and nutrition and collaboration with holistic medicine providers, while their patients' knowledge and CAM use are growing rapidly (Chao et al. 2008; Bardia et al. 2007).

In an age of spiraling health-care costs and national debt, health-care reform will be inevitable. This is a time where patient engagement, empowerment, and knowledge provide a significant opportunity to explore a health-care system geared toward wellness and prevention and to pursue healthier living in body and mind, where patients and health-care providers can work collaboratively toward a more sustainable and holistic health care. Patient and consumer interest and engagement are reflected on the fact that out-of-pocket expenditure for CAM exceeds that for traditional health-care expenditure (Davis et al. 2011; Eisenberg 2007; Nahim 2007).

A new discipline called integrative medicine has emerged over the last two decades where health-care providers bring together scientific evidence-based medicine with complementary and alternative therapies to provide patients a more holistic and values-centered care. A growing number of academic centers now offer integrative medicine programs, and medical schools' curriculum and residencies are offering more training programs on how to integrate the evidence-based medical knowledge with CAM. The academic organization "Consortium of Academic Health Centers for Integrative Medicine" has brought together academic centers dedicated to conducting research, education, and providing patient care in this exciting new health-care field, which brings together many conventional health-care practitioners such as physicians, behavioral health specialists, nutritionists, and CAM providers such as acupuncturists, chiropractors, and massage therapists.

While some of the modalities utilized in CAM and integrative medicine are ancient, Yoga and Tai Chi, for example, have been practiced for thousands of years. Others have emerged in the last decade or so. What unifies this vast and diverse field of treatments and techniques is the lack of adequate research on efficacy, safety, and the understanding of their mechanisms of action. Since 1998, however, the National Institutes of Health through the National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) has been funding and conducting extensive research on this broad field and better understanding on how these therapies work is growing (<http://nccam.nih.gov/>).

Cross-References

- [Acupuncture](#)
- [Dean Ornish](#)
- [Herbal Medicines](#)
- [Integrative Medicine](#)
- [Spirituality and Health](#)
- [Yoga](#)

References and Readings

- Bardia, A., Nisly, N. L., Zimmerman, M. B., Gryzlak, B. M., & Wallace, R. B. (2007). Use of herbs among adults based on evidence-based indications: Findings from the National Health Interview Survey. *Mayo Clinic Proceedings*, 82(5), 561–566.
- Barnes, P. M., Powell-Griner, E., McFann, K., & Nahin, R. L. (2004). Complementary and alternative medicine use among adults: United States, 2002. *Advance Data*, 343, 1–19.
- Chao, M. T., Wade, C., & Kronenberg, F. (2008). Disclosure of complementary and alternative medicine to conventional medical providers: Variation by race/ethnicity and type of CAM. *Journal of the National Medical Association*, 100(11), 1341–1349.
- Clinical practice guidelines on complementary and alternative medicine*. Retrieved from <http://nccam.nih.gov/health/providers/clinicalpractice.htm>
- Complementary and alternative medicine for HealthCare providers reliable information*. Retrieved from <http://nccam.nih.gov/health/providers/>
- Consortium of Academic Health Centers for Integrative Medicine, with membership list. Retrieved from <http://www.imconsortium.org/> and <http://www.imconsortium.org/members/home.html>
- Davis, M. A., West, A. N., Weeks, W. B., & Sirovich, B. E. (2011). Health behaviors and utilization among users of complementary and alternative medicine for treatment versus health promotion. *Health Services Research*, 46(5), 1402–1416.
- Eisenberg, D. M. (2005). The Institute of Medicine report on complementary and alternative medicine in the United States—personal reflections on its content and implications. *Alternative Therapies in Health and Medicine*, 11(3), 10–15.
- Federal drug administration definition of dietary supplements*. Retrieved from <http://www.fda.gov/Food/DietarySupplements/ConsumerInformation/ucm110417.htm>
- Gahche, J., Bailey, R., Burt, V., Hughes, J., Yetley, E., Dwyer, J., et al. (2011). *Dietary supplement use among U.S. adults has increased since NHANES III (1988–1994) (NCHS Data Brief No. 61)*. Hyattsville: National Center for Health Statistics.
- Nahin, R. L., Barnes, P. M., Stussman, B. J., & Bloom, B. (2009). Costs of complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) and frequency of visits to CAM practitioners: United States, 2007. *National Health Statistics Reports*, 18, 1–14.
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) at National Institutes of Health. Retrieved from <http://nccam.nih.gov/about/atag glance/index.htm>
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) at National Institutes of Health. Retrieved from <http://nccam.nih.gov/health/whatis cam/#types>
- Tindle, H. A., Davis, R. B., Phillips, R. S., & Eisenberg, D. M. (2005). Trends in use of complementary and alternative medicine by US adults: 1997–2002. *Alternative Therapies in Health and Medicine*, 11(1), 42–49.

Alzheimer's Disease

Debra Johnson

Department of Psychology, University of Iowa,
Iowa City, IA, USA

Synonyms

Cortical dementia; Dementia

Definition

Alzheimer's disease, the most common form of cortical dementia, was first described by Alois Alzheimer in 1906. It is a progressive dementia characterized by a downward decline in cognitive functioning, typically ending in death within 15 years.

Description

While memory loss is a common symptom of Alzheimer's disease, memory loss by itself is not pathognomic. Patients experience significant impairments in intellectual functioning that interfere with normal activities and relationships. They lose functionality in many realms of cognitive functioning – including the ability to use language, to think abstractly, to solve problems, and to maintain emotional control. Additionally, they may experience personality changes and behavioral problems, such as agitation, delusions, and hallucinations.

Early in the disease, word-finding difficulties are common. Memory impairments impact short-term memories, while long-term memories tend to remain intact until much later in the progression of the disease. Eventually, long-term memory and knowledge bases are compromised.

Communication becomes more and more difficult, and the person loses the ability to perform activities of daily living (dressing, preparing meals, personal hygiene). In the very advanced stages of the disease, individuals with the disease may become incommunicative and require significant care taking.

Alzheimer's disease is characterized by profound changes in the brain. At a gross level, the brain shows significant volume reduction. The loss of tissue results in widening of the sulci and gyri and smoothing of the brain surface. Microscopic inspection of brain tissue reveals loss of neurons throughout the brain as well as the presence of large numbers of pathological changes. Neurofibrillary tangles (aberrant strands of intracellular tau protein) and senile plaques (aggregates of extracellular amyloid protein) are evident throughout the brain. The development of these pathologies is thought to be mediated by abnormal proteins (tau and beta-amyloid) (Tiraboschi et al. 2004). Many neurotransmitter systems including acetylcholine, glutamate, and norepinephrine have been implicated in the development and progression the disease.

There are two widely recognized forms of the disease – a sporadic/age-related form and a genetic/familial form. In the vast majority of cases, the slow steady buildup of risk factors over a lifetime are thought to produce pathological brain changes which in turn produce changes in cognitive functioning. Not surprisingly, prevalence of the disease increases dramatically with advancing age. Overall prevalence in the USA is 1.6% in the 65–74 age group but it rises to 19% in people aged 75–84 and 42% in the 84+ age group (Liddell et al. 1994).

The genetic form (also called “early-onset AD”) is atypical – accounting for less than 5% of all cases – and is associated with onset of symptoms before the age of 65. This form of the disease is particularly aggressive – with progression to death happening more rapidly than in the age-related form. Autosomal dominance patterns involve three gene families – presenilin 1, presenilin 2, and amyloid precursor protein (APP). All of these gene families code for the production of brain proteins thought to produce the cellular level changes associated with the disease.

Although sporadic cases lack autosomal dominant genetic determination, genetic predispositions have been identified. For example, individuals with the E4 allele of the apoprotein E (APOE) gene are at an increased risk of developing AD (Hebert et al. 2003). People with one copy of the E4 allele have a three times greater risk than those without the E4 allele, while people with two copies of the E4 allele have a 15 times greater risk of developing the disease. It is important to note that the E4 allele is one of many risk factors that have been identified. Other risk factors include increased age, poverty, and history of head injury. It is most likely that environmental and lifestyle factors interact with genetic risk factors to produce the disease.

Studies find that people who lead interesting, active lives (intellectually stimulating, socially involved, physically active) have a lower risk of developing the disease.

Several pharmaceutical agents are available to palliate the cognitive decline associated with disease, but no cure exists. Most of these drugs are cholinergic agonists, although one is an NMDA receptor antagonist.

Affecting more than 26 million people worldwide, Alzheimer's disease places enormous strains on families and social institutions. Governmental agencies in many countries struggle to meet the needs of the increasing numbers of patients as our populations continue to age (Brookmeyer et al. 2007).

Cross-References

- [Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine](#)
- [Dementia](#)

References and Reading

- Brookmeyer, R., Johnson, E., Ziegler-Graham, K., & Arrighi, H. M. (2007). Forecasting the global burden of Alzheimer's disease. *Alzheimer's and Dementia*, 3(3), 186–191.
- Hebert, L. E., Scherr, P. A., Bienias, J. L., Bennett, D. A., & Evans, D. A. (2003). Alzheimer disease in the US population: Prevalence estimates using the 2000 census. *Archives of Neurology*, 60(8), 1119–1122.

- Liddell, M., Williams, J., Bayer, A., Kaiser, F., & Owen, M. (1994). Confirmation of association between the e4 allele of apolipoprotein E and Alzheimer's disease. *Journal of Medical Genetics*, 31(3), 197–200.
- Tiraboschi, P., Hansen, L. A., Thal, L. J., & Corey-Bloom, J. (2004). The importance of neuritic plaques and tangles to the development and evolution of AD. *Neurology*, 62(11), 1984–1989.

Ambulatory Blood Pressure

Derek Johnston¹ and Ydwine Zanstra²

¹School of Psychology, University of Aberdeen, Aberdeen, UK

²The Amsterdam University College, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Synonyms

[Real-life blood pressure monitoring](#)

Definition

Ambulatory blood pressure is arterial blood pressure measured in real-life settings by an automatic device.

Description

Blood pressure (BP) was first measured in the eighteenth century by Halles following Harvey's work on the circulation of blood. It has been measured in the clinic and operating theater since the early part of the twentieth century and its utility as a predictor of cardiovascular disease established in the second half of the century. The ambulatory measurement of BP (ABPM) outside the clinic or laboratory is a development of the later part of the century. Despite its comparatively recent origin, it is now regarded as the measure of choice clinically since it provides a more reliable and valid measure of an individual's BP and is a better predictor of later disease, perhaps because it reduces "white coat" hypertension, the elevation

of BP produced in some individuals when BP is measured in a medical setting. The majority of ambulatory BP monitors are automatic miniaturized versions of the standard sphygmomanometer and can measure systolic and diastolic BP at pre-determined times, often every 20 or 30 min during the day, less frequently when the participant is asleep. There are also devices that measure BP continuously, the most successful of which use the vascular unloading technique first described by Penaz (1973). Continuous measurement is not widely used but has considerable advantages for psychophysiological studies since it greatly improves the power of studies to detect the relationship between BP and environmental events or psychological phenomena that might be transitory, as well as providing repeated measurement during more enduring events. The Penaz-derived devices also enable one to determine the mechanisms, vascular or cardiac, that underlie the elevations in blood pressure. Alternatively, the underlying mechanisms can be determined by combining intermittent ABPM with cardiac output measured by ambulatory measures of cardiac impedance. Whether infrequent or continuous, ambulatory blood pressure is affected by many factors that are often noise with respect to the question under study. The most important of these are movement and posture, and they are usually controlled either through questionnaires completed at the time of measurement or, more satisfactorily, through direct measurement and recording with accelerometer-based devices.

While ABPM was developed to deal with clinical issues, it has great relevance for behavioral medicine. Most psychophysiological studies of the cardiovascular system are conducted in the laboratory for reasons of convenience, control, and the accuracy of measurement. ABPM allows the study of the psychological processes that in part determine BP to be extended to real life with obvious benefits in ecological validity (although at the cost of loss of control) and a potential increase in understanding of the role of stress in hypertension and cardiovascular disease. ABPM can also provide insight into psychological processes that have effects on the cardiovascular (CV) system by providing sophisticated measures

of autonomic arousal that illuminate or index processes that cannot be studied by observation or self-report.

BP is elevated in many situations that are conventionally seen as stressful, such as public speaking or examination. This was originally shown in laboratory studies but has been confirmed in field studies using ABPM when it is often found that the responses are considerably larger than in the laboratory simulations of these situations. Interpersonal conflict, often difficult to study meaningfully in the laboratory, is also associated with elevated BP in field settings. Perhaps unsurprisingly, it has also been shown that heightened subjective feelings of anxiety or arousal are associated with increased BP, as are variations in the demand that people feel they are under or their perception of the control that they feel they have over the situation since high demand and low control has been widely shown to be associated with increased strain. Such effects are moderated by personality with, for example, some studies showing that highly hostile people had high BP whatever their mood, while the less hostile had high BP only when in a negative mood. The highly hostile are also less likely to show a reduction in stress-related BP with social support. There is an additional evidence of gender moderating the effects of stress on BP with women benefiting more than men from social support during stressful situations. The effects of social interaction are subtle with interactions with a person with whom one has an ambivalent relationship leading, in one study, to greater BP elevations than interactions with people that were more clearly either liked or disliked. Such studies have also shown that it can be the nature of the relationship rather than the nature of a specific interaction that relates to BP. This information on complex and subtle social situations could only be obtained in real life using ABPM.

BP is determined by the interplay of cardiac output and vascular resistance. Laboratory studies suggest that objectively different situations and subjectively different appraisal of these situations can affect the determinants of BP. Tasks that involve active coping or the related appraisal of situations as challenging are associated with

cardiac effects, while tasks involving passive coping or the appraisal of a situation as threatening, leading to a vascular response. While this has not been studied extensively in real life, in one study, challenge appraisals were related to cardiac effects in people making an academic presentation and threat with a more vascular response. More vascular responses have been reported in lonely people who are hypothesized to adopt passive coping strategies.

An enduring issue in laboratory and ambulatory studies of the effects of stress has been the extent to which responses seen in the laboratory generalize to real life. The response to laboratory stressors is a poor candidate as an index of the risk of disease if it relates only weakly, or not at all, to the response in real life. The issue is controversial, but the most recent studies using the best available measurement and analytic techniques suggested that reliable CV (heart rate and BP) responses to laboratory stressors, obtained by combining the responses to several stressors, do relate to the CV response to objective stressful environments, negative emotions, and perceptions of the situation as stressful.

The reactivity hypothesis has been the dominant theory in cardiovascular behavior medicine since 1980. In its simplest form, this theory states that individuals who show an excessive CV response to stress, the hyperreactive, are at increased risk of CV disease. Recently it has been proposed that hyporeactivity is also a risk factor for CV disease (the “blunting hypothesis”). Prospective studies using the CV response to laboratory stressors to predict cardiovascular disease endpoint have had mixed findings at best. However, hyperreactivity is not enough since a hyperreactive person has to be reacting to something. A vulnerability factor, like hyperreactivity, needs an appropriate environment to actually become a risk factor. Laboratory studies only establish the vulnerability. Ambulatory studies can go some way to establishing if the appropriate environment also exists and there is evidence that increased BP during periods of high strain (high demand and low control) in real life is associated with subclinical arterial disease.

Cross-References

- [Ambulatory Monitoring](#)
- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)

References and Further Readings

- Penaz, J. (1973). Photoelectric measurement of blood pressure volume and flow in the finger. In *Digest of the international conference on medicine and biological engineering* (pp. 104–104). Dresden.
- Septeoe, A. (2001). Ambulatory monitoring of blood pressure in daily life: A tool for investigating psychosocial processes. In J. Fahrenberg & M. Myrtek (Eds.), *Progress in ambulatory monitoring* (pp. 257–269). Seattle: Hogrefe & Huber.
- White, W. B. (2007). *Blood pressure monitoring in cardiovascular medicine and therapeutics*. Totowa: Humana Press.
- Zanstra, Y. J., & Johnston, D. W. (2011). Cardiovascular reactivity in real life settings: Measurement, mechanism and meaning. *Biological Psychology*, 86, 98–105.

Ambulatory Blood Pressure Measurement (ABPM)

- [Blood Pressure Classification](#)

Ambulatory Monitoring

Derek Johnston
School of Psychology, University of Aberdeen,
Aberdeen, UK

Definition

In behavioral medicine, ambulatory monitoring has two components: the measurement in real life of some physiological parameter and the real-time measurement of behavior, emotion, or psychological process. Studies can, but do not always, involve both types of measurement.

Description

The initial drivers for ambulatory physiological recorders were largely clinical. The ambulatory recording of physiological signals started with Holter's experimental development, shortly after the Second World War, of a very bulky physiological ambulatory monitor which later became a useful device to measure and record the electrocardiogram (ECG, Holter 1961). Such devices, often still called Holter monitors, were developed primarily for diagnostic purposes and are routinely used in the diagnosis of coronary heart disease. Much later, this was followed by ambulatory blood pressure monitors (ABPM) which are now the method of choice in the diagnosis and management of hypertension. Advances in the miniaturization of electronic devices and developments in solid-state memory (and to a lesser extent telemetry) have led to the development of a variety of multipurpose ambulatory recorders that can record and store virtually all the systems that were once measured solely in the laboratory. This includes ECG, electroencephalogram (EEG), electromyogram (EMG), blood pressure (BP) measured both discontinuously and continuously, the impedance cardiogram, measures of local blood flow with photoelectric devices, skin temperature, and skin conductance. These measures are derived from conventional electrophysiological techniques, impedance technology, BP from sophisticated fast-acting pumps on finger cuffs, and many functions from devices placed in purposely built vests or shirts worn by participants (sometimes called smart clothes). From these devices, one can measure a wide range of cardiovascular and respiratory parameters including heart rate and heart rate variability, blood pressure, cardiac output and vascular resistance, and features of cardiac activity like pre-ejection time, as well neural signals. Many of these measures reflect the functioning of the autonomic nervous system. The advances in electronic technology has been matched by developments in software, and most systems are sold with sophisticated software packages to handle signal detection, data reduction, and other aspects of data processing. There are also stand-alone software

packages that work with a variety of ambulatory recording systems.

As well as measures of physiological systems, there are devices based on accelerometers that can measure activity, posture, and details of limb movement and gait. The simplest of these are single axial accelerometers mounted in some convenient place, such as the waist, to measure activity through to complex systems of multiple accelerometers attached to different parts of the body that are claimed to be able to measure different categories of movement such as speed of walking or running, cycling, standing, and rate of change of such activities. One device uses the combination of heart rate from the ECG and activity from a chest-mounted accelerometer to derive well-validated measures of energy expenditure. Such activity measures are also important in interpreting the autonomic measures since heart rate and blood pressure are profoundly influenced by metabolic demand, and it is very helpful to account for this when interpreting changes in cardiac activity.

The measurement of some aspects of behavior can be achieved by direct objective measurement of limb movement and, in much prescribed circumstances, by body-mounted cameras or by direct observation. However, most behavioral measurement in real life is through self-report; participants' record in real time what they are doing, thinking, and feeling. Such methods, often called ecological momentary assessment or experience sampling, are most often achieved by used electronic devices on which the participants complete questionnaires about their current behavior. Such devices, which are readily programmed using specialist software or purchased from specialist companies, are generally acceptable and provide high-quality time-stamped information. Traditional paper and pencil diaries can also be used and have the obvious advantage of cheapness but lack time stamping, and hence, the investigator cannot know then the diary entry was actually made. However, with well-motivated participants and when information is gathered quite infrequently, perhaps weekly, then they may well be the most cost-effective method. The electronic measurement is usually on PDAs (personal data

assistant), smart phones, or, if recording is infrequent and of a summary nature, on home personal computers using the internet. Responses can be self-ratings, text, or brief audio recordings. The smart phone and internet realizations of EMA allow the possibility of interaction with the recording system so that it can respond to missing data or particular responses or to deliver interventions, perhaps contingent on behavior. Global positioning systems are also being used in conjunction with EMA devices to gather information on a participant's behavior and to target appropriate interventions.

An interesting variant of EMA is the Day Reconstruction Method (DRM) developed by Kahneman et al. (2004) and colleagues for use in large surveys where EMA is impractical. In DRM, participants retrospectively structure their day into meaningful units then recall and rate their behavior or mood during these units. This method has been implemented face to face, singly, or in groups and can be used online. It produces systematic data that relates sensibly to known diurnal variations in mood and arousal, heart rate measured throughout the day, and mood assessed in real time using EMA. The method has been influential in attempts to estimate national well-being by economists.

The rapid developments in ambulatory physiological and behavioral measurement technology have been matched by the increasing sophistication of the statistical tools used to analyze such repeated, heavily autocorrelated, and multilevel data. Multilevel random effects modeling of ambulatory data is now almost universal, and most widely used statistical packages allow some form of multilevel modeling, and the specialist programs have become much more user friendly.

The methods of ambulatory physiological and activity recording and EMA have been successfully applied to a wide range of practical and theoretical problems in many areas of behavioral medicine and related fields such as clinical, health, and occupational psychology. Among the issues illuminated by such methods are cardiovascular reactivity, hypertension, addiction, disability, pain, adherence to treatment regimes, sleep,

occupational and other kinds of stress, the effects of surgery, and patient and staff safety in medical settings.

Cross-References

- [Ambulatory Blood Pressure](#)
- [Blood Pressure, Measurement of](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bolger, N., Davis, A., & Rafaeli, E. (2003). Diary methods: Capturing life as it is lived. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 54, 579–616.
- Holter, N. J. (1961). A new method for recording in heart studies: Continuous electrocardiography of active subjects. *Science*, 134, 1214–1220.
- Kahneman, D., Krueger, A. B., Schkade, D. A., Schwartz, N., & Stone, A. A. (2004). A survey method for characterizing daily life experience: The day reconstruction method. *Science*, 306, 1776–1780.
- Wilhelm, F. H., & Grossman, P. (2010). Emotions beyond the laboratory: Theoretical fundamentals, study design, and analytic strategies for advanced ambulatory assessment. *Biological Psychology*, 84, 552–569.

American Cancer Society

Youngmee Kim
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Coral Gables, FL, USA

Basic Information

The American Cancer Society (ACS) is the nationwide, community-based, voluntary health organization dedicated to eliminating cancer as a major health problem by preventing cancer, saving lives, and diminishing suffering from cancer through research, education, advocacy, and service. Global headquartered in Atlanta, Georgia, the ACS has regional and local offices throughout the country, supporting 6 geographic regions with regional offices and more than 300 local offices in those regions and with a presence in more than 5000 communities.

The Society's research program is composed of two main divisions: extramural and intramural research. The Extramural Grant Department reviews and administers both Research Grants and Health Professional Training Grants. The ACS focuses its extramural funding on investigator-initiated, peer-reviewed proposals. Intramural research is composed of four programs: epidemiology, surveillance and health services, economic and health policy, and statistics and evaluation center. All intramural department staff conduct applied cancer research in-house.

Major Impact on the Field

The Extramural Grant Department has supported groundbreaking studies. Forty-seven investigators who were supported by ACS went on to win the Nobel Prize. The Society's intramural research program has provided population-based surveillance systems and other national and international databases to evaluate trends and population variability in cancer incidence and mortality, behavioral risk factors, early detection and treatment patterns, and economic factors in tobacco control. This research has helped monitor progress in cancer control and provide evidence for policy and advocacy initiatives. The ACS is one of the first organizations to recognize the importance of psychosocial and behavioral factors in cancer prevention and control.

The ACS has also implemented numerous programs in communities, guided by its mission statement. For example, to help people stay healthy, ACS distributes the Healthy Living Newsletter, which provides educational materials about healthy lifestyle habits that have been found to reduce the risk of cancer and other major diseases. Other programs for this effort are for employees (the Active For Life program) and school-age children (the School Health program) to become more active and to improve healthy diet. The Society's website, cancer.org, provides the most up-to-date information about cancer information and support available at the local and the national level for patients, survivors, and caregivers. Some example programs include the Cancer Survivors Network, the online

community by and for people with cancer and their family; the Road to Recovery, which provides transportation service for cancer patients who need rides to treatment; the Hope Lodge, which is free lodging available for patients and their families; the I Can Cope, which provides educational classes about cancer and treatment and which is available in person or online; and the Patient Navigator Program, a personalized cancer guide.

Several events organized by the ACS, such as Making Strides Against Breast Cancer and Relay For Life, raise funds to support the community and research effort in making a difference in the fight against cancer.

Cross-References

- [Cancer Prevention](#)
- [Cancer Survivorship](#)
- [Epidemiology](#)
- [Quality of Life](#)

References and Readings

- Blanchard, C. M., Courneya, K. S., & Stein, K. D. (2008). Cancer survivors' adherence to lifestyle behavior recommendations and associations with health-related quality of life: Results from the ACS SCS-II. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 26, 2198–2204.
- Calle, E. E., Feigelson, H. S., Hildebrand, J. S., Teras, L. R., Thun, M. J., & Rodriguez, C. (2009). Postmenopausal hormone use and breast cancer associations differ by hormone regimen and histologic subtype. *Cancer*, 115, 936–945.
- Fedewa, S. A., Ward, E. M., & Edge, S. B. (2010). Delays in adjuvant chemotherapy treatment among black cancer patients are more likely in black and Hispanic populations: A national cohort study 2004–2006. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 28, 4135–4141.
- <http://www.cancer.org>. Accessed 18 Mar 2012.
- Kim, Y., & Given, B. A. (2008). Quality of life of family caregivers of cancer survivors across the trajectory of the illness. *Cancer*, 112(Suppl. 11), 2556–2568.
- Rodriguez, C., Jacobs, E. J., Deka, A., et al. (2009). Use of blood-pressure-lowering medication and risk of prostate cancer in the cancer prevention study II nutrition cohort. *Cancer Causes & Control*, 20, 671–679.
- Smith, R. A., Cokkinides, V., Brooks, D., Saslow, D., & Brawley, O. W. (2010). Cancer screening in the United States, 2010: A review of current American Cancer Society guidelines and issues in cancer screening. *CA: A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 60, 99–119.
- Thun, M. J., Hannan, L. M., & DeLancey, J. O. (2009). Alcohol consumption not associated with lung cancer mortality in lifelong nonsmokers. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 18, 2269–2272.
- Zhang, X., Albanes, D., Beeson, W. L., et al. (2010). Risk of colon cancer and coffee, tea, and sugar-sweetened soft drink intake: Pooled analysis of prospective cohort studies. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 102, 771–783.

American Diabetes Association

Della Matheson

Diabetes Research Institute, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Basic Information

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) is a leading United States-based nonprofit organization providing funding for diabetes research, professional and lay education, and advocacy for people with diabetes. Their mission as stated is: “to prevent and cure diabetes and to improve the lives of all people affected by diabetes.”

The organization was founded in 1940 by a group of physicians and scientists with the goal of providing education and support to physicians and health-care professionals. In the 1960s, the organization expanded its membership to include general members and heightened its services to provide education and support to the community at large. There are currently 97 local affiliate offices distributed throughout 47 states.

Major Impact on the Field

ADA programs and activities include:

Publications – a large library of informational books, magazines, and journals for both medical professionals and consumers are available.

Professional meetings – serve to educate and stimulate collaborative efforts in the delivery of health care to people with diabetes and to enhance research efforts of scientists involved in diabetes

research. The two largest meetings that occur annually are the ADA Postgraduate Course held in winter of each year and the ADA Scientific Sessions held in the summer each year.

Public meetings – in addition to multiple local chapter offerings, the Diabetes Expo provides a 1-day public program in major markets throughout the USA that includes lectures, large vendor display area, and informational services.

Funding of research – supports basic and clinical diabetes research aimed at prevention, better treatment, and a cure. The research funding program is designed to complement government-funded research through the National Institutes of Health which serves to amplify the effectiveness of the millions of dollars provided by ADA (\$42.5 million in 2008).

Family link – a program that provides information to families about living with diabetes and provides information and tool kits for families of children newly diagnosed with diabetes, parent to parent mentoring programs, and school initiatives aimed at enhancing safety for children with diabetes while in school.

Diabetes camps – there are over 60 camps for children between the ages of 4 and 17 years supported by the ADA. Camps consist of residential week-long programs, day camps, family camps, and teen adventure camps. The camping experience offers children with diabetes the opportunity to interact with other children with diabetes, increase their knowledge of diabetes self-management, and enhance independence in a safe environment, while also having fun!

Fund-raising events – Walk to Fight Diabetes, Tour de Cure, School Walk for Diabetes, and Bikers Against Diabetes. The ADA website also includes links for personal gifts as well. ADA currently receives over \$250 million dollars through their fund-raising efforts annually.

Advocacy – this mission involves a goal of improving access to health care for people with diabetes and to eliminate discrimination against people at school, in the workplace, or elsewhere in their lives. On a biennial bases, the ADA has organized an event, the Association's Call to Congress, that facilitates the meeting of advocates and

members of the ADA to meet with their US Representatives and Senators to discuss how diabetes affects their lives and how health-care legislation can be directed to improve living with diabetes.

How to contact ADA:

National Call Center (1-800-DIABETES or 1-800-342-2383)

Website: <http://www.diabetes.org>

Cross-References

► [Diabetes](#)

References and Readings

American Diabetes Association. 2008–2011 Strategic plan American Diabetes Association Website. Retrieved from <http://www.diabetes.org>

Pickup, J., & Williams, G. (1991). *Textbook of diabetes* (Vol. 2, Chap. 102, pp. 965–968). Malden, MA: Blackwell Scientific Publications.

American Heart Association

Brooke McInroy

The University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Basic Information

The American Heart Association (AHA) is a non-profit health organization in the United States. Its headquarters are in Dallas, Texas, and it maintains offices in 48 states and Puerto Rico. Founded in 1924 by a group of cardiologists, the current mission of the organization is to “build healthier lives, free of cardiovascular diseases and stroke.” Its main website is www.heart.org.

The main expenditures of the AHA are on research and educational programs, including an emphasis on cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) and first aid training. The AHA publishes scientific journals and offers a membership

program for science and health-care professionals as well as research grants and fellowships. The AHA is affiliated with the American Stroke Association (ASA), which was founded in 1997 with a focus on “prevention, diagnosis, and treatment to save lives from stroke.”

Cross-References

- Cardiology
- Cardiovascular Disease

American Psychological Association Division 38 (Health Psychology)

Christopher France
Department of Psychology, Ohio University,
Athens, OH, USA

Basic Information

With more than 154,000 members as of 2011, the American Psychological Association (APA) represents the largest scientific and professional organization of psychologists in the world. The mission of APA is to advance the creation, communication, and application of psychological knowledge to benefit society and improve people's lives. In addition to this primary association, there are currently 54 divisions of APA which represent specific interest groups and maintain their own memberships, eligibility criteria, and officers.

APA Division 38 (Health Psychology) was established in 1978 and currently has approximately 3,000 members. From the beginning, APA Division 38 has been broadly focused on issues related to both the science and practice of health psychology, and this broad mission has included the following three components: (1) advancing psychology's contributions to the understanding of health and illness through basic and clinical

research and through the integration of biomedical information about health and illness with current psychological knowledge, (2) promoting professional education and services related to health and illness, and (3) ensuring that the psychological, biomedical, and lay public communities are aware of the results of current research and service activities in this area.

The importance of health psychology as a discipline is best illustrated by the fact that behavioral factors predispose, precipitate, and perpetuate many of the leading causes of illness and death in the USA and around the world. And, perhaps more importantly, behavioral and psychological interventions have been shown to encourage disease prevention, enhance coping with acute and chronic illness, and improve health outcomes when delivered in isolation and in conjunction with existing medical procedures. To promote further progress in each of these areas, APA Division 38 supports the educational, scientific, and professional efforts within psychology to understand the etiology, promotion, and maintenance of health in the prevention, diagnosis, treatment, and rehabilitation of physical illness; conduct research related to the psychological, social, emotional, and behavioral factors that contribute to physical illness; make active contributions to improving the health care system; and assist in the formulation of health policy.

Consistent with its goal of promoting the science and practice of health psychology, APA Division 38 maintains an active website (www.health-psych.org); publishes the leading scientific journal in the field, *Health Psychology* (www.apa.org/pubs/journals/hea/index.aspx), as well as a Division newsletter, *The Health Psychologist* (<http://www.health-psych.org/ResourcesNewsletters.cfm>); and maintains a range of educational and training resources for those interested in the profession. Participation and affiliation with APA Division 38 is encouraged through a variety of mechanisms, including professional membership (open to existing APA members), professional affiliates (including psychologists, physicians, and other health professionals who are not APA members), international affiliates (including health

psychologists living and working outside of the United States or Canada), and student affiliates (including those enrolled in accredited programs of psychology, medicine, and related fields).

As models of health care evolve in the United States and around the world, APA Division 38 is working to establish liaisons between researchers, clinicians, and policymakers to encourage the use of psychological science in the promotion of health and prevention of illness.

American Psychosomatic Society

Shin Fukudo, Emiko Tsuchiya and Yoko Katayori
Department of Behavioral Medicine, School of
Medicine, Tohoku University Graduate,
Seiryō-machi, Aoba-ku, Sendai, Japan

Basic Information

History

There has been a perception of mind–body interaction in many fields of study in recent centuries (Levenson 1994, p. 1). The American Psychosomatic Society (APS) was founded in response to the desire for cross-discipline study of the people of psychiatry, internal medicine, physiology, and other fields.

With philanthropic support, *Psychosomatic Medicine* was published in 1939 and the journal's board voted to establish the "American Society for Research in Psychosomatic Problems" in December 1942. These founders included Drs. George Daniels, George Draper, and Helen Dunbar. The name was changed to "The American Psychosomatic Society" in 1948 (American Psychosomatic Society 2010a).

Today, APS has become an international society. It offers a website, journal, and annual meeting. Researchers and clinicians use various approaches to investigate the links among mind, brain, body, and social issues for curing disease

and promoting health (American Psychosomatic Society 2011a). The Council members have expanded pediatrics, neuroanatomy, physiological sciences, neurophysiology, psychophysiology, clinical psychology, sociology, anthropology, and public health. (American Psychosomatic Society 2010a).

Major Impact on the Field

Mission

The mission of the APS is "to promote and advance the scientific understanding and multidisciplinary integration of biological, psychological, behavioral and social factors in human health and disease, and to foster the dissemination and application of this understanding in education and health care (American Psychosomatic Society 2011b)."

Awards and Scholarships

Awards include Alvin P. Shapiro Award, American Psychosomatic Society Scholar Awards, Cousins Center Global Outreach Awards, Donald Oken Fellowship, Herbert Weiner Early Career Award, Medical Student/Resident/Fellow Travel Scholarships, Minority Initiative Awards, Patricia R. Barchas Award in Sociophysiology, Paul D. MacLean Award, President's Award, and Travel Awards for MacLean Scholars (American Psychosomatic Society 2011b).

Annual Meeting

The APA holds an annual 3-day open meeting in March. In this scientific and clinical assembly, investigators communicate, consider problems of conceptual relationships, and develop ideas that will stimulate further research (American Psychosomatic Society 2011b). During the meeting, the APS members present scientific papers, participate in symposia, workshops, poster sessions, and invited lectures and addresses.

Journal

Psychosomatic Medicine: Journal of Biobehavioral Medicine founded in 1939 by the editor

Dr. Dunbar, is the official and international peer-reviewed journal of APS. It is devoted to experimental and clinical research of interdisciplinary fields: behavioral biology, psychiatry, psychology, physiology, anthropology, and clinical medicine. It includes experimental and clinical studies on various perspectives and effects of the relationships among social, psychological, and behavioral factors, and physical processes in humans and animals. It publishes in print nine times a year, and most articles are online ahead of print (American Psychosomatic Society 2010b).

Committees and Memberships

There are 10 committees such as Ad-Hoc Journal, Ad-Hoc Website, Awards, Fundraising, Liaison, Membership, Nominating, Past Leaders, Professional Education, and Program Committees (American Psychosomatic Society 2010a).

There are four categories of memberships – Regular, Emeritus, Corresponding, and Associate (for students and trainees). Committee members are professionals and specialists from medical and health-related fields in behavioral and social sciences. A short membership is available as well (American Psychosomatic Society 2011b).

Membership benefits (American Psychosomatic Society 2011b) include:

- Subscription to printed and online *Psychosomatic Medicine*.
- Discount registration fees for the APS annual meeting.
- Networking and professional development in the society.
- Newsletter and e-newsletter (both three times a year).
- Opportunity of becoming a member of committees.
- Awards for professionals, students and trainees.
- Access to the APS international online membership directory.

References and Readings

- American Psychosomatic Society (APS). (2010a). *About APS*. Retrieved March 20, 2011, from <http://www.psychosomatic.org/about/index.cfm>
- American Psychosomatic Society (APS). (2010b). *About psychosomatic medicine: Journal of biobehavioral medicine*. Retrieved March 20, 2011, from <http://www.psychosomaticmedicine.org/site/misc/about.xhtml>
- American Psychosomatic Society (APS). (2011a). New Editor-in-Chief for *Psychosomatic Medicine*. Retrieved April 3, 2011, from <http://www.psychosomaticmedicine.org/site/misc/kopeditor.xhtml>
- American Psychosomatic Society (APS). (2011b). *69th annual scientific meeting, March 9–12, 2011, biobehavioral processes and health: Understanding mechanisms, implementing interventions [Brochure]*. McLean: American Psychosomatic Society.
- Levenson, D. (1994). *Mind, body, and medicine: A history of the American Psychosomatic Society*. McLean: American Psychosomatic Society.

Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis

► Neuromuscular Diseases

Anabolic Resistance

► Sarcopenia

Analgesia

Martin Deschner
Psychiatry, Division of Psychology, The
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
at Dallas, Dallas, TX, USA

Definition

The term “analgesia” derives from the Greek words *an* (without) and *algesis* (pain) for “without

pain” (Webster’s Ninth New Collegiate Dictionary 1988). It refers to relief from the sensation of pain or the loss of ability to feel pain while still remaining conscious. This term is to be distinguished from the broader term “anesthesia,” which refers to a loss of sensation of all types, including pain, with or without loss of consciousness.

Analgesia can refer to partial or total relief from pain. When pain is reduced, some sensation persists but often without it being experienced as painful. Analgesia is often discussed in terms of medications or medical procedures. For example, opiate medications such as morphine, oxycodone, or hydrocodone are frequently used for their analgesic effects as are steroidal and non-steroidal anti-inflammatory medications. Devices such as spinal cord stimulators, TENS units, and intrathecal pain medication pumps, as well as injections such as selective nerve root blocks, facet injections, or epidural steroid injections are also used for their analgesic effects, with varying degrees of success.

Behavioral medicine addresses analgesia from a biopsychosocial perspective. Psychologists and other behavioral health specialists frequently work in conjunction with medical and other professionals such as physical therapists, to help patients reduce and learn to cope with their acute or chronic pain. By improving the patient’s understanding of his or her pain and emotional coping behaviors while also improving his or her capacity to reduce somatic tension and arousal, perceived pain is often reduced. Capacity to cope with remaining pain is generally increased through greater understanding of issues related to pain and mastery of pain management techniques.

Behavioral medicine approaches frequently involve education to improve understanding of the pain-causing condition. Education tends to reduce the patient’s fear, feelings of powerlessness, and tendency to distort or catastrophically appraise their painful condition based on faulty information or assumptions.

Behavioral medicine uses cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) approaches to help the patient to

examine and change his or her irrational beliefs generally, and dysfunctional pain-specific beliefs in particular. CBT focuses on improving emotional coping skills, using cognitive behavioral training techniques such as reframing, correcting negative thinking patterns such as catastrophizing or overgeneralizing, and improving communication and assertiveness skills. Correcting negative thinking patterns improves the patient’s sense of mastery and provides him or her with effective tools to cope rationally with pain (Okifuji and Ackerlind 2007).

Stress management training reduces the patient’s somatic reactivity to pain by improving the patient’s capacity to activate their parasympathetic response to pain. Patients are often taught such skills as diaphragmatic breathing, progressive muscle relaxation, meditation, and imagery techniques to help them break the vicious cycle of stress intensifying pain. Biofeedback training is often used to help the patient graphically see his or her somatic reactivity and also provides the patient with objective evidence as to the efficacy of the stress management techniques they are learning.

Cross-References

- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- [Stress Management](#)

References and Readings

- Gatchel, R. J. (Ed.). (2004). *Clinical essentials of pain management*. Washington, DC: APA Books.
- Okifuji, A., & Ackerlind, S. (2007). Behavioral medicine approaches to pain. *Anesthesiology Clinics*, 25, 709–719.
- Turk, D. C., & Gatchel, R. J. (Eds.). (2002). *Psychological approaches to pain management: A practitioner’s handbook* (2nd ed.). New York: Guilford Press.
- Webster’s Ninth New Collegiate Dictionary. (1988). Springfield: Merriam-Webster.
- Weiner, R. S. (Ed.). (2002). *Pain management: A practical guide for clinicians* (6th ed.). New York: CRC Press.

Analytes

► [Salivary Biomarkers](#)

Anderson, Norman B. (1955–)

Norman B. Anderson
Faculty Leadership Development Program,
Florida State University, Tallahassee, FL, USA

Biographical Information



A graduate of the North Carolina Central University in Durham, NC, Norman B. Anderson earned masters and doctoral degrees in clinical psychology from the University of North Carolina at Greensboro. He received additional clinical and research training at the Schools of Medicine at Brown and Duke Universities, including postdoctoral fellowships in psychophysiology and aging at Duke.

Anderson is the Chief Executive Officer and Executive Vice President of the American Psychological Association (APA). With 137,000 members and affiliates, APA is the largest and oldest of the world's psychological societies. Headquartered on Capitol Hill in Washington, DC, APA has a staff of over 550 and an annual budget of over \$112 million. As the Chief

Executive Officer, he is responsible for overseeing the overall management of the Association and works closely with the APA Board of Directors.

Major Accomplishments

Among his numerous accomplishments at APA, Anderson recently led a successful effort to create the first strategic plan in the 120-year history of the Association and oversaw APA's efforts to foster the inclusion of integrated care, health promotion and disease prevention, and mental health care in the new health care reform legislation.

Anderson was the founding Associate Director of the National Institutes of Health (NIH) in charge of behavioral and social science and was the first Director of the NIH Office of Behavioral and Social Sciences Research (OBSSR). At NIH, he was charged with facilitating behavioral and social sciences research across all of the [then] 24 Institutes and Centers of the National Institutes of Health. Under his purview was behavioral and social research in such areas as cancer, heart disease, child health, mental health, diabetes, aging, oral health and others. His special interest at NIH was advancing an integrated, transdisciplinary approach to health science, prevention, and health care.

Appointed to NIH in 1995, Anderson worked closely with the scientific community nationally to quickly establish the Office's long-term goals and to develop strategies for achieving them, resulting in the first OBSSR strategic plan. Under his leadership, the Office organized trans-institute funding initiatives totaling over \$90 million in 5 years. The success of the Office prompted Congress to triple its budget, enabling it to have greater latitude in developing NIH-wide collaborative funding activities.

Anderson has held faculty appointments at both Duke University School of Medicine and the Harvard School of Public Health. He is well-known for his research and writings on health disparities and health behavior. He has received several awards for his research, including the

1986 New Investigator Award from the Society of Behavioral Medicine, the 1991 Award for Outstanding Contributions to Health Psychology from the American Psychological Association, and at least ten other significant awards from scientific societies and universities. He has been awarded three honorary doctorate degrees.

Anderson is a Fellow of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, American Psychological Association, Association for Psychological Science, the Society of Behavioral Medicine, and the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research. He is a Past President of the Society of Behavioral Medicine, served as President of the Board of Directors for the Starbright Foundation of Los Angeles (now the Starlight Children's Foundation), and is currently a Trustee of the Starlight Children's Foundation. He currently serves on the National Advisory Council for the National Institute on Aging at NIH the National Academic Affiliations Council in the Department of Affairs, the Board of Directors for the American Psychological Foundation, and the Board of Directors for the Excellence Foundation of the University of North Carolina at Greensboro. He also chaired the National Academy of Sciences Panel on Understanding Racial and Ethnic Health Disparities in Late Life.

He is the author and editor of several books, including serving as Editor-in-Chief of the two-volume *Encyclopedia of Health and Behavior*. He is also Editor-in-Chief of the flagship journal of APA, the *American Psychologist*.

Androgen

Chad Barrett
Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Synonyms

[Androgenic hormone](#); [Testoid](#)

Definition

Androgens are a group of hormones that are present in males and females (though at lower levels) and which primarily promote the development, and maintenance, of masculine traits. Androgens are produced in the testes, ovaries, placenta, and adrenal cortex. The most prominent androgen is testosterone. Other androgens include androstenedione, androstenediol, androsterone, dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) and dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate (DHEA sulfate), and dihydrotestosterone (DHT). Androgens are necessary for differentiation of male reproductive organs during fetal development, sexual maturation, spermatogenesis, genital function, and the development of male secondary sexual characteristics (Chang 2002). Increases in androgens are associated with the maturational changes that occur in puberty. In addition, they play a role in the growth and functioning of muscles, bones, kidneys, liver, and the regeneration of red blood cells (Bagatell and Bremer 2003). Androgens also influence aggression (Giammanco et al. 2005) and sexual desire, performance, and satisfaction (Hutchinson 1995).

Androgens can reduce the risk of cardiovascular diseases, obesity, diabetes, bone loss, and Alzheimer's (Clarke and Khosla 2009; Manolakou et al. 2009). In men with prostate cancer, hormone therapies may be used that reduce androgen levels in order to slow the growth of cancer cells. Low levels of androgen can increase the risk of cardiovascular diseases, obesity, diabetes, bone loss, Alzheimer's, and high cholesterol (Jordan and Don Carlos 2008). Low levels of androgens are also related to reduced libido, erectile dysfunction, anemia, loss of muscle mass, weight gain, fatigue, and depression. Androgen supplements can often protect against these risks.

In women, high levels of androgen are associated with hirsutism, balding, acne, menstrual disorders, insulin resistance, diabetes, high cholesterol, high blood pressure, and cardiovascular diseases. Low levels are associated with low libido, fatigue, depression, and increased susceptibility to bone disease (Cheung 1999).

Cross-References

► [Sex Hormones](#)

References and Readings

- Bagatell, C. J., & Bremer, W. J. (Eds.). (2003). *Androgens in health and disease*. Totowa: Humana.
- Chang, C. (2002). *Androgens and androgen receptor: Mechanisms, functions, and clinical applications*. Norwell: Kluwer Academic.
- Cheung, T. (1999). *Androgen disorders in women: The most neglected hormone problem*. Alameda: Hunter House.
- Clarke, B. L., & Khosla, S. (2009). Androgens and bone. *Steroids*, 74, 296–305.
- Giammanco, M., Tabacchi, G., Giammanco, S., Di Majo, D., & La Guardia, M. (2005). Testosterone and aggressiveness. *Medical Science Monitor*, 11, 136–145.
- Hutchinson, K. A. (1995). Androgens and sexuality. *The American Journal of Medicine*, 98(Suppl. 1), 111–115.
- Jordan, C. L., & Don Carlos, L. (2008). Androgens in health and disease: An overview. *Hormones and Behavior*, 53, 589–595.
- Manolakou, P., Angelopoulou, R., Bakayiannis, C., & Bastounis, E. (2009). The effects of endogenous and exogenous androgens on cardiovascular disease risk factors and progression. *Reproductive Biology and Endocrinology*, 7, 44. Available from www.rbej.com/content/7/1/44.

Androgenic Hormone

► [Androgen](#)

Ang II

► [Angiotensin](#)

Anger

- [Anger Management](#)
- [Hostility](#)
- [Hostility, Psychophysiological Responses](#)
- [Negative Thoughts](#)

Anger Assessment

► [Anger, Measurement](#)

Anger Management

Mark A. Lumley and Lindsay Oberleitner
Department of Psychology, Wayne State
University, Detroit, MI, USA

Synonyms

[Anger](#); [Emotion](#); [Emotion regulation](#); [Stress management](#)

Definition

Anger management is a broad term referring to various techniques designed to help individuals manage or reduce their experience and expression of anger so that they will have better psychological, physical, and social health.

Description

Anger is a normal human emotion that is adaptive when elicited by appropriate social circumstances, specifically threatened or actual violation of something that one values. The experience and expression of anger in such circumstances can be healthy, but anger that is experienced or expressed too intensely or frequently and in inappropriate circumstances can contribute to many problems, including mood and anxiety disorders, cardiovascular disease, persistent pain, digestive problems, substance abuse, relational difficulties, and social disorder (Miller et al. 1996). Anger management, therefore, is targeted for patients whose anger is viewed by themselves or others as excessive, out of control, or having negative effects. People sometimes recognize their excessive anger and seek to manage it better, but more often, anger

management is recommended or required by others who recognize that a person is too angry or expressing it too often or intensely (Saini 2009).

Anger management typically refers to a program of specific intervention techniques that target different processes in the sequence of anger elicitation, experience, and expression. Anger management strategies can be placed in two general categories – strategies that directly avoid or reduce the experience and expression of anger, and strategies that facilitate identifying, experiencing, and adaptively expressing anger. The first category is more popular and is how anger management is traditionally defined (Glancy and Saini 2005). This approach stems from research and practice on people who have excessive anger, such as cardiac patients with the Type A behavior pattern or people referred for treatment of aggressive behavior. The second category represents a newer, alternative view of the value of anger and other emotions (Gross 2002). These two categories are discussed next.

Anger Avoidance and Reduction Strategies

A basic strategy to decrease anger is to identify and avoid specific anger triggers. For some individuals, anger is reliably elicited by certain people, situations, and activities, such as interacting with difficult coworkers or participating in competitive sports. An initial strategy, especially if other approaches are less successful, is to simply avoid those triggers.

Yet, behavioral avoidance often is not feasible or desirable and typically is considered a rather unsophisticated approach. Other anger management strategies can be used when encounters with anger triggers are inevitable. One such strategy is to reduce physiological activation when angered. This typically is done by applying relaxation techniques (e.g., deep breathing, imagery, and progressive muscle relaxation) or distraction by engaging in pleasurable activities (e.g., exercise, playing a game, and reading). Such downregulation techniques can lower cardiovascular activity, increase calmness, and reduce tension until thoughts and feelings of anger have

subsided. These techniques are particularly appropriate when situations are not controllable or when anger is only experienced occasionally (“state anger”) (Del Vecchio and O’Leary 2004).

Cognitive reappraisal techniques are used to identify, question, and modify the thoughts or interpretations that underlie anger. Reappraisal often involves evaluating and changing patterns of faulty thinking that are especially potent in anger, such as overgeneralization and exaggeration. For example, beliefs like “the world is always against me” can be examined and challenged with contradictory information. A specific cognitive reappraisal program has been developed by Williams and Williams (1993) that teaches people to question whether an anger-inducing situation is important, whether anger is appropriate and will change the outcome, and whether the expected outcome is worthwhile. Such questioning requires a pause in the anger experience, and allows the person to examine the situation and his or her reactions more logically. If any of the key questions are answered in the negative, then the anger experience can be aborted, or some alternative anger management strategy can be used, such as downregulation. Affirmative answers to these questions can lead to a decision to express anger in an adaptive manner.

There are several higher order, more sophisticated cognitive strategies to help manage anger. Perspective-taking or empathy-building refers to the ability to “walk in someone else’s shoes,” to feel what another person is feeling, and to see a situation from another’s point of view. This approach may be helpful when the behavior of the anger-inducing person is not changeable, or when anger stems from victimization or abuse during childhood or when committed by strangers (e.g., being mugged or assaulted). The angry person is challenged to understand the circumstances that may have led to the offender’s actions. This technique may help to attenuate anger, especially when added to the next technique.

An approach that stems from perspective-taking is to engage in forgiveness or “letting go.” Anger typically follows victimization, and although anger may be justified, chronic anger

eventually harms the person experiencing it. Forgiveness exercises help offended people free themselves from ongoing resentment, first by perspective-taking, and then by volitionally deciding to reduce the blame of the other person and to forgive them or let go of the resentment, whether or not the other person has apologized or made amends. Forgiveness or letting go returns control to victims, allowing them to view themselves as having the power and ability to heal. Although not necessary for forgiveness, many people incorporate this technique as part of their religious or spiritual practices (Lin et al. 2004).

Anger Awareness, Experience, and Expression Strategies

It is important to recognize that anger is a vital, evolutionarily based, adaptive emotion when experienced and expressed appropriately. The experience of anger informs the person about actual or potential victimization or unjust experiences and motivates action to protect oneself or loved ones. Anger energizes and directs needed defense, protection, and the righting of social wrongs. Thus, it can be maladaptive to deny, disavow, or suppress anger, or transform it into sadness, guilt, or shame. Although in many social situations it is wise to suppress the expression of anger, a lack of anger awareness and chronic anger suppression can be detrimental (Iyer et al. 2010). Research suggests that the suppression of anger can increase pain, disrupt cognition, trigger depression, and impair intimacy (Burns et al. 2008). Furthermore, chronic anger sometimes stems from the failure to express one's needs, opinions, or dissatisfactions directly and effectively toward the appropriate person or target. Therefore, alternative approaches to managing anger involve strategies or techniques that facilitate the awareness and adaptive expression of anger. Anger awareness and expression strategies can be divided into two types – assertiveness training and experiential exercises.

Assertiveness training is a popular approach found in many anger management programs, but it is fundamentally different from the anger

reduction strategies described above. Training in assertion helps a person directly and honestly express thoughts and feelings to another person, while remaining mindful of the desired outcome and respecting the other person's experience. Assertive communication requires identifying one's own thoughts or desires and then directly yet skillfully expressing them verbally and non-verbally, without excessive apology, blame, or threat. Such direct assertion adaptively expresses anger, decreases feelings of victimization and helplessness that trigger mood and health problems, and helps prevent the inappropriate transfer or generalization of anger to innocent targets (Rakos 1991).

Experiential techniques are relatively new approaches to dealing with anger. Training in mindfulness or meditation appears to help people recognize and experience their anger and other emotions in a nonjudgmental manner, and to distinguish awareness from action. Written emotional disclosure, or expressive writing, is a technique that helps people voice suppressed thoughts and feelings and narrate them into a story, thereby facilitating extinction of anger and/or the making of meaning and changes in understanding (Graham et al. 2008). Finally, experiential psychotherapy has developed several techniques that help people to experience and process unexpressed anger, including empty chair work and two-chair dialogues. All of these techniques can help people identify, clarify, and voice emotions, including anger, thereby helping them to develop insight, resolve conflicts, and make needed behavioral and interpersonal changes.

It is likely that the optimal approach to dealing with anger depends on individual differences among people in their usual anger regulation style. People who experience excessive anger or express it too readily likely need some of the traditional anger reduction techniques such as trigger avoidance, arousal downregulation, distraction, cognitive reappraisal, perspective-taking, and forgiveness. In contrast, people who are prone to excessive anger inhibition or suppression are more likely to benefit from techniques

that help them experience and adaptively express anger, including assertiveness training and experiential exercises. This proposal, however, awaits empirical study.

Cross-References

► [Anger, Measurement](#)

References and Readings

- Burns, J. W., Quartana, P. J., & Bruehl, S. (2008). Anger inhibition and pain: Conceptualizations, evidence, and new directions. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 31, 259–279.
- Del Vecchio, T., & O’Leary, K. D. (2004). The effectiveness of anger treatments for specific anger problems: A meta-analytic review. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 24, 15–34.
- Glancy, G., & Saini, M. A. (2005). An evidenced-based review of psychological treatments of anger and aggression. *Brief Treatment and Crisis Intervention*, 5, 229.
- Graham, J., Lobel, M., Glass, P., & Lokshina, I. (2008). Effects of written anger expression in chronic pain patients: Making meaning from pain. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 31, 201–212.
- Gross, J. J. (2002). Emotion regulation: Affective, cognitive, and social consequences. *Psychophysiology*, 39, 281–291.
- Iyer, P., Korin, M. R., Higginbotham, L., & Davidson, K. W. (2010). Anger, anger expression, and health. In J. M. Suls, K. W. Davidson, & R. M. Kaplan (Eds.), *Handbook of health psychology and behavioral medicine* (pp. 120–132). New York: Guilford Press.
- Lin, W.-F., Mack, D., Enright, R. D., Krahn, D., & Baskin, T. W. (2004). Effects of forgiveness therapy on anger, mood, and vulnerability to substance use among inpatient substance-dependent clients. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 72, 1114–1121.
- Miller, T., Smith, T., Turner, C., Guijarro, M., & Hallet, A. (1996). A meta-analytic review of research on hostility and physical health. *Psychological Bulletin*, 119, 322–348.
- Rakos, R. F. (1991). *Assertive behavior: Theory, research, and training*. New York: Routledge.
- Saini, M. (2009). A meta-analysis of the psychological treatment of anger: Developing guidelines for evidence-based practice. *The Journal of the American Academy of Psychiatry and the Law*, 37, 473–488.
- Williams, R., & Williams, V. (1993). *Anger kills: Seventeen strategies for controlling the hostility that can harm your health*. New York: HarperCollins.

Anger, Measurement

Stephan Bongard

Department of Psychology, Goethe-University,
Frankfurt am Main, Germany

Synonyms

[Anger assessment](#); [Operationalization of anger](#)

Definition

Assessment of states of anger or of the personality disposition for anger responses.

Description

Anger is usually considered as a basic emotion that emerged during evolution because it served the function of preparing the organism for fight against enemies and to overcome obstacles (Plutchik 1994). Therefore, it is associated with a specific response pattern that communicates to the environment preparedness for fight and that supplies the body with metabolic demands for fight or flight. The response pattern is thought to be independent of cultural influences while so-called display rules regulate under which conditions the expression of anger is appropriate or not. Another component characteristic of the state of anger is specific cognitions (appraisals). Measurements of anger aim at assessing responses of one or more of these components. Consequently, instruments for collecting self-reports, behavioral observations, and physiological measures for the assessment of anger have been developed. Measures of anger should be able to discriminate anger from other emotional states, provide some quantification of anger, and deliver results that are free from deliberate manipulations by respondents.

Self-reports

The most common way to assess anger is the use of psychometric self-reports in which individuals

respond to statements describing their cognitions, feelings, attitudes, and behavior. Anger can be measured as a state, that is, an acute condition of feelings ranging in intensity from mild irritation or annoyance to intense fury and rage, or anger can be measured as a trait, that is, an enduring behavior disposition for anger states. Individuals high in trait anger are assumed to experience state anger more often, more intensely and longer than individuals low in state anger (Spielberger et al. 1985). Table 1 lists some often-used instruments for the assessment of anger.

Self-reports are usually specific to anger and provide an easy means of quantification (e.g., counting the “Yes” answers) but they can also easily be manipulated by respondents.

Behavioral Observations

The experience of anger often goes along with a characteristic facial expression but it does not have to. Depending on situational conditions, social norms, and individual differences, the expression of anger is more or less appropriate. However, if anger is expressed in the face, the inner eyebrows are lowered and brought closer together. Often, this is accompanied by glaring

eyes, widened nostrils, lips that are tightly pressed together, or flashing of the teeth. This facial behavior pattern can be coded using the Facial Action Coding System (FACS; Ekman and Friesen 1978). The central and most important movement for anger is the constriction of the eyebrows. The facial expression of basic emotions such as anger is assumed to be hereditary. It can already be observed in young children. Figure 1 shows the facial expression of a 5-year-old boy after he was asked to display anger.

While facial expression can validly be assessed by trained raters, this measure provides only a moderate quantification of anger. Usually, one can discriminate between weak and strong anger. Though humans can control facial expressions, they are difficult to manipulate convincingly to an experienced rater.

Physiological Measures

The state of anger is associated with feelings of hyperactivation, restlessness, tension, and power. These feelings are caused by an activation of the sympathetic branch of the autonomic nerve system combined with vagal withdrawal. This activation can be measured using, for example, blood pressure and heart rate readings or by registration for electrodermal activity. Physiological response patterns of emotional activation are usually unspecific and it is not possible to draw conclusions from the observed pattern of activation to

Anger, Measurement, Table 1 Examples of self-report instruments for the assessment of anger (in chronically order)

Scale	Author/s
Picture-Frustration Test (PFT)	Rosenzweig (1945)
Cook-Medley Hostility Scale (Ho-Scale)	Cook and Medley (1954)
Buss-Durkee Hostility Scale (BDHS)	Buss and Durkee (1957)
Harburg-Items	Harburg et al. (1973)
Novaco Anger Inventory	Novaco (1975)
Framingham Anger Items	Haynes et al. (1978)
Subjective Anger Scale (SAS)	Knight et al. (1985)
Multidimensional Anger Inventory (MAI)	Siegel (1986)
State Trait Anger Expression Inventory (STAXI)	Spielberger et al. (1985)
State Trait Anger Expression Inventory 2 (STAXI-2)	Spielberger (1999)



Anger, Measurement, Fig. 1 Facial expression of a 5-year-old boy after he was asked to display anger

the underlying emotional quality. However, when people report being angry it is usually accompanied by increases in systolic and particularly diastolic blood pressure and total peripheral resistance. Also, increased heart rates, number of skin conductance responses, and muscle activity are often reported (Stemmler 2010).

Studies using brain-imaging methods (fMRI, PET) report activation of the orbitofrontal cortex during episodes of anger (Murphy et al. 2003). Further, anger seems to be associated with an asymmetric activation of the frontal cortex. Measuring spontaneous EEG activity, Harmon-Jones (2003) reported greater activation of the left frontal brain relative to the right frontal brain.

Physiological measures provide very exact, but unspecific quantifications. Many physiological responses can be observed during other emotional states as well. So far, no response pattern has been defined that is unique to the state of anger. Though biofeedback studies show that physiological states, too, can be manipulated after extensive training, there is almost no way to do this spontaneously.

Conclusion

Anger manifests itself on the level of subjective experiences, observable behavior, and physiological activation. For each of these qualities, there are standardized measures for the assessment of anger: self-reports, facial expression coding, and physiological registration. However, since each of these measures has specific strengths and weaknesses, anger should be assessed on at least two different levels.

Cross-References

- [Affect](#)
- [Affect Arousal](#)
- [Emotional Control](#)
- [Emotional Responses](#)

References and Readings

- al'absi, M., & Bongard, S. (2006). Neuroendocrine and behavioral mechanisms mediating the relationship between anger expression and cardiovascular risk: Assessment consideration and improvements. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 29, 573–591.
- Buss, A., & Durkee, A. (1957). An inventory for assessing different kinds of hostility. *Journal of Consulting Psychology*, 21, 343–349.
- Cook, W. W., & Medley, D. M. (1954). Proposed hostility and pharisaic-virtue scales for the MMPI. *The Journal of Applied Psychology*, 38, 414–418.
- Ekman, P., & Friesen, W. V. (1978). *Facial action coding system*. Palo Alto: Consulting Psychologists Press.
- Harburg, E., Erfurt, J. C., Hauenstein, L. S., Chape, C., Schull, W. J., & Schork, M. A. (1973). Socio-ecological stress, suppressed hostility, skin color, and black-white male blood pressure: Detroit. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 35, 276–296.
- Harmon-Jones, E. (2003). Anger and the behavioural approach system. *Personality and Individual Differences*, 35, 995–1005.
- Haynes, S., Levine, S., Scotch, N., Feinleib, M., & Kannel, W. B. (1978). The relationship of psychosocial factors to coronary heart disease in the Framingham Study. I. Methods and risk factors. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 107, 362–383.
- Knight, R. G., Ross, R. A., Collins, J. I., & Parmenter, S. A. (1985). Some norms, reliability and preliminary validity data for an S-R inventory of anger: The Subjective Anger Scale (SAS). *Personality and Individual Differences*, 6, 331–339.
- Murphy, F. C., Nimmo-Smith, I., & Lawrence, A. D. (2003). Functional neuroanatomy of emotions: A meta-analysis. *Cognitive, Affective, & Behavioral Neuroscience*, 3, 207–233.
- Novaco, R. W. (1975). *Anger control: The development and evaluation of an experimental treatment*. Lexington: Lexington Books.
- Plutchik, R. (1994). *The psychology and biology of emotion*. New York: Harper.
- Potegal, M., Stemmler, G., & Spielberger, C. D. (Eds.). (2010). *International handbook of anger*. New York: Springer.
- Rosenzweig, S. (1945). The Picture-Association Method and its application in a study of reactions to frustration. *Journal of Personality*, 14, 3–23.
- Siegel, J. M. (1986). The multidimensional anger inventory. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 51, 191–200.
- Spielberger, C. D. (1999). *Professional manual for the State-Trait Anger Expression Inventory-2 (STAXI-2)*. Odessa: Psychological Assessment Resources.
- Spielberger, C. D., Johnson, E. H., Russell, S. F., Crane, R. J., Jacobs, G. A., & Worden, T. J. (1985). The experience and expression of anger: Construction and validation of an anger expression scale. In M. A. Chesney & R. H. Roseman (Eds.), *Anger and hostility*

in cardiovascular and behavioral disorders (pp. 5–30). New York: Hemisphere/McGraw-Hill.

Stemmler, G. (2010). Somatovisceral activation during anger. In M. Potegal, G. Stemmler, & C. D. Spielberger (Eds.), *International handbook of anger* (pp. 103–121). New York: Springer.

cardiomyopathy or general conditions such as tachycardia, anemia, sepsis, or thyrotoxicosis that often exacerbate cardiac ischemia in patients with underlying coronary atherosclerotic disease (Cannon and Lee 2008). The appropriate management of angina pectoris depends on the underlying cause.

A

Angina Pectoris

Siqin Ye

Division of Cardiology, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Chest pain](#)

Definition

Angina pectoris is the classic manifestation of cardiac ischemia, which occurs when there is a mismatch between myocardial oxygen supply and demand. The sensation is typically described as substernal chest pressure or tightness, often accompanied by shortness of breath, and often radiates to the jaw, neck, and left arm or shoulder. It can also be associated with nausea, vomiting, and diaphoresis. The onset typically occurs over several minutes and is frequently triggered by physical activity and emotional stress (Panju et al. 1998).

The most common cause of angina pectoris is coronary atherosclerosis, either via stable but flow-limiting stenotic lesions or via acute rupture of a vulnerable plaque that causes total or subtotal occlusion of a coronary artery. Other conditions that limit myocardial oxygen supply and thereby cause angina include coronary vasospasm, vasculitides of the coronary vasculature, myocardial bridge, dissection of the coronary arteries, or other congenital anomalies of the coronary arteries that can cause impairment of blood flow. Conditions that can increase myocardial oxygen demand include aortic stenosis or hypertrophic

Cross-References

► [Chest Pain](#)

References and Readings

- Cannon, C. P., & Lee, T. H. (2008). Approach to the patient with chest pain. In P. Libby, R. O. Bonow, D. L. Mann, D. P. Zipes, & E. Braunwald (Eds.), *Braunwald's heart disease: A textbook of cardiovascular medicine* (pp. 1195–1205). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Panju, A. A., Hemmelgarn, B. R., Guyatt, G. H., & Simel, D. L. (1998). Is this patient having a myocardial infarction? *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 280(14), 1250–1263.

Angiogram

► [Angiography/Angioplasty](#)

Angiography/Angioplasty

Amy Jo Marcano-Reik

Department of Bioethics, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH, USA

Center for Genetic Research Ethics and Law, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, OH, USA

Synonyms

[Angiogram](#); [Angioplasty](#); [Arteriography](#)

Definition

Angioplasty is a medical technique that allows for visualization of the inside of blood vessels and various organs of the body. This is a moderately invasive procedure, which involves a widening of narrowed or obstructed blood vessels to increase blood flow (<http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/health-topics/topics/angioplasty/>). This procedure may involve the insertion of a mesh stent or balloon to open the blocked arteries (Fischman et al. 1994, New England Journal of Medicine). Angioplasty is a common procedure for atherosclerosis, which is the buildup of a fatty substance, called plaque, in the arteries. The angiogram is the physical record produced from the procedure.

Cross-References

- [Atherosclerosis](#)
- [Cardiac Surgery](#)
- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- [Coronary Artery Disease](#)

References and Reading

- Cleland, J. G., Calvert, M., Freemantle, N., Arrow, Y., Ball, S. G., Bonser, R. S., et al. (2011). The Heart Failure Revascularization Trial (HEART). *European Journal of Heart Failure*, 13(2), 227–233.
- Fischman, D. L., Leon, M. B., Baim, D. S., Schatz, R. A., Savage, M. P., Penn, I., et al. (1994). A randomized comparison of coronary-stent placement and balloon angioplasty in the treatment of coronary artery disease. Stent restenosis study investigators. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 331(8), 496–501.
- Retrieved from <http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/health-topics/topics/angioplasty/>

Angioplasty

- [Angiography/Angioplasty](#)

Angiotensin

Seth Hurley

Department of Psychology, University of Iowa,
Iowa City, IA, USA

Synonyms

[AII](#); [Ang II](#)

Definition

Angiotensin II is a polyfunctional octapeptide generated in response to stress and challenges to body fluid homeostasis. This peptide primarily acts on metabotropic angiotensin II type 1 (AT₁) receptors to accomplish its behavioral and physiological effects. Angiotensin II acts as both a hormone and, in the brain, as a neuromodulator.

Biosynthesis – Angiotensin II is the product of a multienzyme, multisubstrate biosynthesis pathway known as the renin-angiotensin system (RAS). In the classic and best studied RAS, renin is released from the granular cells of the juxtaglomerular apparatus cells of the kidney by various stimuli, including activation of the sympathetic nervous system. Renin acts on constitutively present angiotensinogen in the plasma to catalyze the conversion of angiotensinogen to angiotensin I, an inactive precursor to angiotensin II. Circulating angiotensin I is converted by angiotensin-converting enzyme, located primarily in the lungs, into the bioactive peptide angiotensin II. Researchers are now aware that there are many RASs. In contrast to angiotensin II's system-wide generation, many cells including cardiac myocytes and brain neurons have localized intracellular components of the RAS.

Stimuli for release – Common stimuli for activation of the RAS are perturbations of body fluid homeostasis. For example, loss of extracellular

fluid and low plasma sodium activate the RAS. Environmental stressors also stimulate renin release from the kidneys and downstream angiotensin II synthesis via activation of the renal sympathetic nerve. Thus, angiotensin II is a stress hormone. Furthermore, pathologies such as hypertension and heart failure are associated with elevated activity of the systemic or cellular RASs.

Physiological effects – Initially, circulating angiotensin II was studied for its pressor effects in the periphery. In addition to a direct effect on cardiovascular smooth muscle, angiotensin II enhances the release of norepinephrine from sympathetic neurons and potentiates the effects of norepinephrine on vasoconstriction. Importantly, through AT₁ receptors in the brain, angiotensin II acts to promote water- and salt-seeking behaviors, release vasopressin, and initiate a centrally mediated pressor response. Vasopressin acts as a hormone at the kidney to decrease diuresis and thus conserve water. In addition, angiotensin II stimulates the adrenal gland to release aldosterone. Aldosterone is a hormone that signals the kidney to retain sodium and the brain to promote salt-seeking behaviors (Jackson 2010).

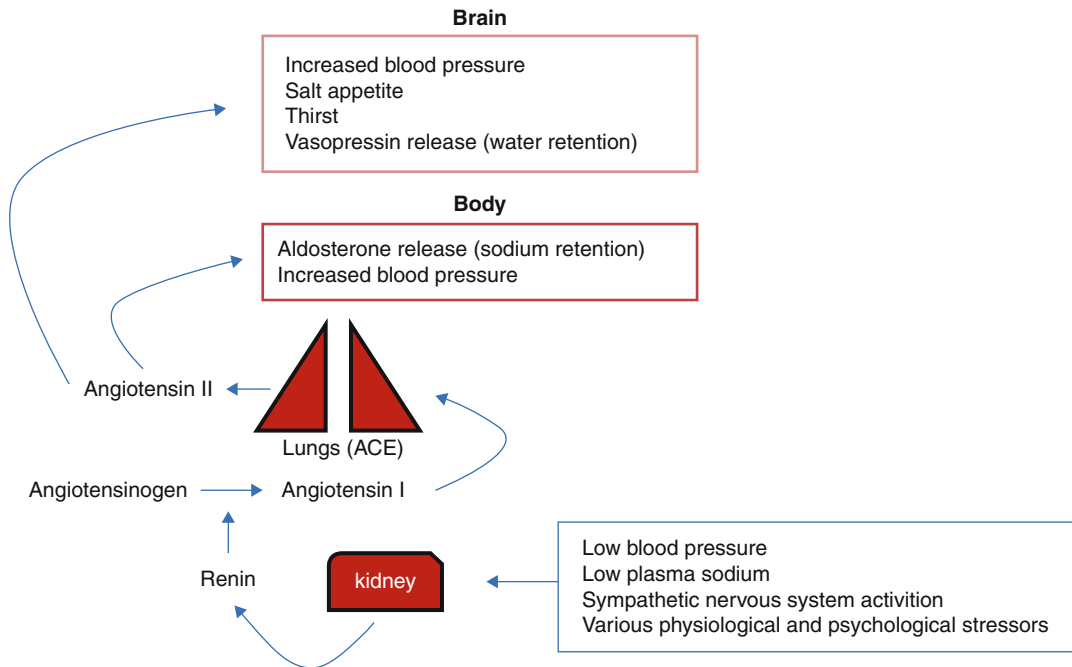
Psychological effects – Since the discovery that angiotensin II acts as a neuromodulator in the brain, researchers have been interested in psychological effects of angiotensin II, for example, recent evidence has supported a role for angiotensin II in the stress response. Stressors cause increased angiotensin II synthesis and release. Administration of candesartan, an AT₁ receptor antagonist, in doses that access the brain attenuates the hormonal response to stressors in rats, including decreases in corticosterone, adrenocorticotrophic hormone, epinephrine, norepinephrine, and aldosterone. Evidence from preclinical models also indicates that angiotensin II produces anxiety-like behavior, and blocking angiotensin II ameliorates these effects. Furthermore, it is likely that angiotensin II has a role in depression. Preclinical models of depression show that angiotensin II antagonists reduce

depressive-like behavior and antidepressants antagonize the thirst and smooth muscle contraction effects of angiotensin II (Gard 2002; Saavedra et al. 2005). Drugs that inhibit the synthesis of angiotensin II are also reported to be mood enhancing. Finally, in nonhuman animals learning and memory are enhanced through central AT₄ receptor activation (Wright und Harding 2004).

Given the various psychological effects of angiotensin II, it is likely that individuals with cardiovascular disorders associated with increased circulating angiotensin II, such as hypertension and chronic heart failure, are more likely to suffer psychological disorders. Numerous studies have found an association between heart failure and depression, and preclinical models show that heart failure can cause anhedonia, a symptom of major depressive disorder (Johnson und Grippo 2006). Furthermore, evidence indicates an association between hypertension and depression (Lobo-Escolar et al. 2008). Whether blocking angiotensin II ameliorates psychological pathologies in patients with cardiovascular disorders remains to be validated (Fig. 1).

Synthesis and effector pathway for hormonal angiotensin II. Various stimuli cause renin release from the kidneys which acts on constitutively present angiotensinogen in blood plasma to generate angiotensin I. Angiotensin I is converted by angiotensin converting enzyme into bioactive angiotensin II. Angiotensin II acts in the brain and in the body to protect body fluid homeostasis.

The classic renin-angiotensin system. Stimuli such as low blood pressure, plasma sodium, or environmental stressors cause the kidney to release renin into blood plasma. Renin is an enzyme that catalyzes the conversion of plasma angiotensinogen into angiotensin I. Circulating angiotensin I is converted by angiotensin-converting enzyme, located primarily in the lungs, into angiotensin II. Angiotensin II acts through the periphery and central nervous system to expand body fluids.



Angiotensin, Fig. 1 Synthesis and effector pathway for hormonal angiotensin II. Various stimuli cause renin release from the kidneys which acts on constitutively present angiotensinogen in blood plasma to generate

angiotensin I. Angiotensin I is converted by angiotensin converting enzyme into bioactive angiotensin II. Angiotensin II acts in the brain and in the body to protect body fluid homeostasis

Cross-References

- ▶ Heart Disease and Stress
- ▶ Heart Failure
- ▶ Hypertension
- ▶ Stress

References and Readings

- Gard, P. (2002). The role of angiotensin II in cognition and behaviour. *European Journal of Pharmacology*, 438 (1–2), 1–14.
- Jackson, E. (2010). Renin and Angiotensin. In J. G. Hardman & L. E. Limbird (Eds.), *Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (Chap. 30, 11th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill. Retrieved from <http://www.accessmedicine.com/content.aspx?aID=944099>
- Johnson, A. K., & Grippo, A. J. (2006). Sadness and broken hearts: Neurohumoral mechanisms and co-morbidity of ischemic heart disease and psychological depression. *Journal of Physiology and Pharmacology*, 57(Suppl. 11), 5–29.
- Lobo-Escobar, A., Roy, J., Saz, P., De-la-Cámara, C., Marcos, G., & Lobo, A. (2008). Association of hypertension with depression in community-dwelling elderly persons:

Results from the ZARADEMP project. *Psychotherapy and Psychosomatics*, 77(5), 323–325.

- Saavedra, J., Ando, H., Armando, I., Baiardi, G., Bregonzio, C., Juorio, A., et al. (2005). Anti-stress and anti-anxiety effects of centrally acting angiotensin II AT1 receptor antagonists. *Regulatory Peptides*, 128(3), 227–238.
- Wright, J. W., & Harding, J. W. (2004). The brain angiotensin system and extracellular matrix molecules in neural plasticity, learning, and memory. *Progress in Neurobiology*, 72(4), 263–293.

Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme Inhibitors (ACE Inhibitors)

Seth Hurley
Department of Psychology, University of Iowa,
Iowa City, IA, USA

Definition

Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors are a class of drugs that inhibit ACE activity. ACE

is a key enzyme of the renin-angiotensin system (RAS), the synthesis pathway of angiotensin II. Antagonizing ACE activity prevents the conversion of biologically inactive angiotensin I into bioactive angiotensin II (for details of the RAS and the effects of angiotensin II, see ► [Angiotensin](#), this volume).

Therapeutic use – ACE inhibitors are commonly used to treat cardiovascular disorders such as hypertension and chronic heart failure. Both of these disorders are associated with increased activity of the renin-angiotensin system, which through angiotensin II action has detrimental effects on the cardiovascular system. In addition to increasing blood pressure, angiotensin II causes both cardiovascular remodeling (changes in cardiovascular tissue distribution) and cardiovascular hypertrophy (increased growth of cardiovascular tissue). In hypertensive patients, ACE inhibitors are used to reduce blood pressure. In patients with left ventricular systolic dysfunction, ACE inhibitors are particularly effective in delaying or preventing congestive heart failure. Finally, in patients with myocardial infarctions, ACE inhibitors reduce overall mortality.

ACE inhibition and aldosterone breakthrough – ACE inhibitors chronically reduce circulating angiotensin II; however, they may only acutely reduce circulating aldosterone. In a phenomenon known as aldosterone breakthrough, aldosterone, a downstream hormone activated by the renin-angiotensin system, rises after chronic ACE inhibition. Aldosterone breakthrough occurs in hypertensive and heart failure patients receiving ACE inhibitors. Aldosterone has detrimental effects on the cardiovascular system and synergizes with angiotensin II to increase blood pressure and produce cardiovascular remodeling and hypertrophy. Thus, combined treatment of aldosterone synthesis blockers and ACE inhibitors is reported to be more successful in treating cardiovascular disorders (Jackson 2010; Sato and Saruta 2003).

Psychological effects of ACE administration – Consistent with the idea that angiotensin II contributes to lowered mood (see ► [Angiotensin](#), this volume), ACE inhibitors are

reported to enhance mood in samples with cardiovascular disorders. One study reported a greater incidence of depressed mood associated with anxiety and decreased cognitive function in patients with hypertension. These deficits were absent in hypertensives taking ACE inhibitors (Braszko et al. 2003). Interestingly, patients taking ACE inhibitors or angiotensin II receptor antagonists are more likely to continue drug therapy compared to patients taking other antihypertensive medications (Elliott et al. 2007). However, it is unclear if this is caused by mood-elevating effects of ACE inhibitors or less severe side effects of ACE inhibitors relative to other cardiovascular disorder medications.

Cross-References

- [Angiotensin](#)
- [Heart Failure](#)
- [Hypertension](#)

References and Readings

- Braszko, J., Karwowska-Polecka, W., Halicka, D., & Gard, P. (2003). Captopril and enalapril improve cognition and depressed mood in hypertensive patients. *Journal of Basic and Clinical Physiology and Pharmacology*, 14(4), 323.
- Elliott, W., Plauschinat, C., Skrepnek, G., & Gause, D. (2007). Persistence, adherence, and risk of discontinuation associated with commonly prescribed antihypertensive drug monotherapies. *The Journal of the American Board of Family Medicine*, 20(1), 72.
- Jackson, E. (2010). Renin and Angiotensin. In J. G. Hardman & L. E. Limbird (Eds.), *Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (Chap. 30, 11th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill. Retrieved from <http://www.accessmedicine.com/content.aspx?aID=944099>
- Sato, A., & Saruta, T. (2003). Aldosterone breakthrough during angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor therapy. *American Journal of Hypertension*, 16(9), 781–788.

Anorexia Nervosa

Anna Maria Patino-Fernandez

Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Definition

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fourth edition, text revision (APA 2000) includes as the essential features of anorexia nervosa the following: (1) refusal to maintain body weight: weight at least 15% below what is considered normal for others of the same height and age; (2) intense fear of gaining weight or becoming fat; (3) disturbance in body image or denial of seriousness of current low body weight; belief that the one is overweight though in reality they are underweight; and (4) amenorrhea: missing at least three consecutive menstrual cycles (if a female of childbearing age).

There are two types of anorexia nervosa: restricting and binge-eating/purging (APA 2000). Many individuals with anorexia will severely restrict their calories sometimes taking in only a few hundred calories a day or just water. This is called the restricting type. Other individuals who eat and then fear weight gain may vomit or exercise; this type of anorexia is called the binge eating/purging type. The majority of patients with this disorder are female. This is a potentially very dangerous psychiatric disorder as fatal health complications may occur if untreated.

Warning signs for anorexia nervosa include the following (NIMH 2011):

- (a) Intense, persistent fear of putting on weight.
- (b) Low self-esteem related to appearance.
- (c) Desire to lose weight.
- (d) Body dissatisfaction.
- (e) Food preoccupation.
- (f) Deliberate self-starvation with weight loss.
- (g) Refusal to eat or highly restrictive eating.

- (h) Excessive facial/body hair because of inadequate protein in the diet.
- (i) Compulsive exercise.
- (j) Abnormal weight loss.
- (k) Sensitivity to cold: People with anorexia nervosa often complain of feeling cold (hypothermia) because their body temperature drops.
- (l) Absent or irregular menstruation.
- (m) Hair loss: Individual may develop lanugo (a term used to describe the fine hair on a newborn) on their body.

Treatment of Anorexia Nervosa

The first goal for treatment is to ensure the person's physical health, which involves restoring a healthy weight. Reaching this goal may require hospitalization. Once a person's physical condition is stable, treatment usually involves individual psychotherapy and family therapy. Supportive group therapy may follow, and self-help groups within communities may provide ongoing support. Based on existing, limited evidence, it appears that behavioral family therapy may be considered a reasonable first-line approach for treatment of anorexia in adolescents (Lock et al. 2010).

Another positive development in the treatment of anorexic patients who have regained their weight is in the area of psychopharmacology. While drug treatments such as antidepressants have had little effect combating the symptoms of anorexia, researchers are now finding that medication can help if the patient's weight has returned to normal. In one study (Couturier and Lock 2007), two thirds of anorexics who took Prozac after they had recovered their weight did not relapse, compared with 16% who took a placebo. Atypical antipsychotics, especially olanzapine, have been tried in open-label non-randomized single-case studies and suggest a possible benefit in increasing weight and decreasing weight obsession. At present, there are no randomized trials using psychopharmacological interventions in children.

Cross-References

- [Eating Disorders: Anorexia and Bulimia Nervosa](#)

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: Author. Text Revision.
- Couturier, J., & Lock, J. (2007). A review of medication use for children and adolescents with eating disorders. *Journal of Canadian Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*, 16, 173–176.
- Lock, J., Le Grange, D., Agras, W. S., Moye, A., Bryson, S. W., & Jo, B. (2010). Randomized clinical trial comparing family-based treatment to adolescent focused individual therapy for adolescents with anorexia nervosa. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 67, 1025–1032. <https://doi.org/10.1001/archgenpsychiatry.2010.128>.
- National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). (2011). *Eating disorders*. Retrieved from <http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/publications/eating-disorders/complete-index.shtml>

Antagonism

- [Hostility, Psychophysiological Responses](#)

Anterior Hypothalamic Area

- [Hypothalamus](#)

Anthropometric

- [Body Mass Index](#)

Anthropometrics

- [Body Composition](#)

Antianxiety Drug

- [Anxiolytic](#)

Antibodies

Anna C. Whittaker
School of Sport, Faculty of Health Science
and Sport, University of Stirling,
Stirling, UK

Synonyms

[Immunoglobulins](#)

Definition (and Description)

Antibodies are proteins secreted by white blood cells (B lymphocytes). Their task is to circulate in the body and tag, destroy, or neutralize bacteria, viruses, or other harmful or foreign materials (antigens). They do this by opsonizing or coating foreign materials which marks them for destruction or neutralization.

Antibodies are also called immunoglobulins (Ig), which are present on the surface of B cells and act as receptors for foreign materials. Immunoglobulins can be classified into several classes, IgA, IgE, IgM, IgG, and IgD, some of which have further subtypes. Each type of antibody has a range of different immune functions. IgA is found at the mucosal surfaces (e.g., mouth, nose, gastrointestinal tract) and can be measured in saliva. IgM is the first type of antibody produced in response to a novel foreign material. IgG is the most common antibody found in the body.

Cross-References

- [Antigens](#)
- [Immunoglobulins](#)

References and Further Readings

- Goldsby, R. A., Kindt, T. J., Osborne, B. A., & Kuby, J. (2003). *Immunology* (5th ed.). New York: W.H. Freeman.
- Janeway, C. A. J., Travers, P., Walport, M., & Schlomchik, M. J. (2005). *Immunobiology: The immune system in health and disease* (6th ed.). London: Taylor and Francis.

Antibody Generators Pathogens

- [Antigens](#)

Antidepressant Medications

Tatsuo Akechi
Department of Psychiatry and Cognitive-Behavioral Medicine, Graduate School of Medical Sciences, Nagoya City University, Mizuho-cho, Mizuho-ku, Nagoya, Japan

Synonyms

[Antidepressants](#)

Definition

Effective drugs for treatment of patients with depressive disorders

Description

History of antidepressants began in the 1950s when imipramine, currently known as one of the

tricyclic antidepressants (TCA), appeared. Imipramine was initially developed as a derivative of chlorpromazine (antipsychotic agent), and it was hoped that imipramine would be an effective antipsychotic drug (Hales and Yudofsky 2003; Sadock and Sadock 2003). Interestingly, imipramine did not have antipsychotic efficacy; however, it was shown to be effective in the treatment of depression. Subsequently, many other antidepressants have been developed, and there are approximately 30 different antidepressants now, although some antidepressants are not available in some countries.

Antidepressant medications are most popular treatments for patients with depressive disorders, especially patients with mild to moderate major depression (Association American Psychiatric 2010). Although there are several different types of antidepressants including TCA, tetracyclic antidepressants, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRI), serotonin noradrenaline reuptake inhibitors (SNRI), monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), and other antidepressants, the effectiveness of these antidepressant medications is generally comparable between classes and within classes of medications (Association American Psychiatric 2010; Hales and Yudofsky 2003; Sadock and Sadock 2003). On the other hand, side effect profiles clearly differ among the different classes of antidepressants.

Antidepressants affect the serotonergic and/or catecholaminergic systems in the central nervous system, and these changes are considered to be associated with treatment effect for patients with depressive disorders. The effect of the antidepressants will be gradually observed after a couple of weeks since implementation of the pharmacotherapy.

Most TCAs inhibit the reuptake of norepinephrine, serotonin, and, to a lesser extent, dopamine. Furthermore, TCAs also block muscarinic cholinergic receptors, H1 histamine receptors, and α 1-adrenergic receptors. Most side effect profiles of the TCAs are mainly produced by these mechanisms. Potential side effects of TCAs include arrhythmias, orthostatic hypotension, sedation, constipation, dry mouth, urinary

hesitancy, and so on. Currently available TCAs are imipramine, amitriptyline, nortriptyline, clomipramine, etc. Tetracyclic antidepressants are developed to reduce side effect profiles of TCAs; however, these drugs have similar side effect profiles. Tetracyclic antidepressants include maprotiline and mianserin.

In 1980s, SSRIs, specifically inhibiting the reuptake of serotonin, were developed as antidepressants. First, SSRI is fluoxetine and other SSRIs, including paroxetine, sertraline, citalopram, escitalopram, and so on, are also available now. Side effects of SSRIs are nausea, vomiting, insomnia, activation (e.g., restlessness, agitation), sexual dysfunction, gastrointestinal bleeding, etc. We can also use some SNRIs which specifically inhibit the reuptake of serotonin and norepinephrine. Usable SNRIs are venlafaxine, milnacipran, duloxetine, and so on. In general, side effect profiles of SNRIs are similar to the ones of SSRIs; however, some SNRIs can cause hypertension and urinary retention.

MAOIs increase concentration of monoamines through inhibiting monoamine oxidase. MAOIs currently used as antidepressants include phenelzine, moclobemide, and so on. MAOIs have unique pharmacological property, and this has been characterized by showing to be effective in treating depressed patients, with atypical features (e.g., reactive mood, sensitivity to rejection).

Other types of antidepressants include bupropion (dopamine norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor), mirtazapine (norepinephrine-serotonin modulator), trazodone (serotonin modulator), nefazodone (serotonin modulator), and so on. Bupropion is classified as a dopamine norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor, the effect of dopamine, however, is relatively weak. Mirtazapine is thought to work through noradrenergic and serotonergic mechanisms despite of not being a reuptake inhibitor.

In addition to efficacy for depressive disorders, antidepressants are also effective for treatment of patients with anxiety disorders (Hales and Yudofsky 2003; Sadock and Sadock 2003). Recent studies suggest that antidepressants are

also useful for treating other medical condition such as neuropathic pain and depressive and negative symptoms of schizophrenia. Some antidepressants have efficacy for other medical conditions. For example, SSRIs are used for treatment of bulimia nervosa. Bupropion can be a choice for patients who would like to quit smoking. Thus, although antidepressants were initially developed for treatment of depression, these medications have been known to be useful for broader medical conditions.

Cross-References

► [Neurotransmitter](#)

References and Readings

- Association American Psychiatric. (2010). Practice guideline for the treatment of patients with major depressive disorder, 3 edition. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 167(Suppl), 1–118.
- Hales, R. E., & Yudofsky, S. C. (2003). *Textbook of clinical psychiatry* (4th ed.). Arlington: The American psychiatric Publishing.
- Sadock, B. J., & Sadock, V. A. (2003). *Kaplan & Sadock's synopsis of psychiatry* (9th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins.

Antidepressants

► [Antidepressant Medications](#)

Antigens

Anna C. Whittaker
School of Sport, Faculty of Health Science and Sport, University of Stirling, Stirling, UK

Synonyms

[Antibody generators pathogens](#)

Definition (and Description)

Antigens are antibody generators, any foreign material which is recognized by the body as foreign and causes the production of antibodies.

Antigens can be bacteria, viruses, toxins, or foreign nonself materials. A molecular part of a microorganism or foreign material that is recognized by immune cells is the part which is called antigen. Certain cells of the immune system (B and T lymphocytes) recognize antigen by their specific receptors. B cells (matured in the bone marrow) are the immune cells that recognize antigen via their surface receptors or antibody. T cells (matured in the thymus) recognize antigen via their T-cell receptor, but only after antigens have been processed into smaller peptides by antigen-presenting immune cells. Vaccines work by presenting a dead or altered form of an antigen to the immune system in order to provoke a response.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Antibodies](#)
- ▶ [Immunoglobulins](#)

References and Further Readings

Goldsby, R. A., Kindt, T. J., Osborne, B. A., & Kuby, J. (2003). *Immunology* (5th ed.). New York: W.H. Freeman.

Antihypertensive

- ▶ [Antihypertensive Medications](#)

Antihypertensive Drugs

- ▶ [Antihypertensive Medications](#)

Antihypertensive Medications

Amy Jo Marcano-Reik

Department of Bioethics, Cleveland Clinic,
Cleveland, OH, USA

Center for Genetic Research Ethics and Law,
Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland,
OH, USA

Synonyms

[Antihypertensive](#); [Antihypertensive drugs](#); [High blood pressure medications](#)

Definition

Antihypertensive medications are a class of medicines/drugs that are used to treat hypertension or high blood pressure. High blood pressure has been associated with kidney malfunction, heart disease, stroke, and other conditions. By decreasing blood pressure, antihypertensive medications may help to alleviate, if not prevent, these conditions from developing and/or progressing. As with most medical conditions, lifestyle changes tend to be the first direction to take when a person suffers from hypertension. These changes may include decreased salt intake, altered diet, increased physical activity, and stress reduction techniques. If the initial approaches and methods are not effective in reducing blood pressure, then the medicinal route is often the next step in treatment. There are many classes of antihypertensive medications. Some examples include thiazide diuretics, which decrease the amount of fluid in blood vessels and help to dilate blood vessels, increase blood flow, and decrease blood pressure. Another type of antihypertensive medication includes angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors. ACE inhibitors act on the renin/kidney-angiotensin-aldosterone system to reduce blood pressure by blocking the conversion of certain proteins, which ultimately increases cardiac output, decreases circulation of sodium throughout the system, and increases sodium excretion. Beta-

adrenergic blocking agents, or beta-blockers, are also commonly administered to lower blood pressure by blocking the effects of epinephrine, or adrenaline, and other stress-related hormones; however, beta-blockers have also been associated with adverse effects in other bodily systems and, for this reason, are not commonly the first antihypertensive medication prescribed. Calcium channel blockers (CCBs) may also be administered to treat hypertension. CCBs decrease cardiac contractions, which results in a decrease in cardiac output, and, ultimately, a decrease in blood pressure throughout the entire body. There are other antihypertensive medications that, depending on the patient, severity of hypertension, and potential secondary bodily system consequences, may be more effective. Although antihypertensive medications are effective in reducing high blood pressure, it is important to consider each patient's medical history, lifestyle, and potential complications when prescribing antihypertensive medications, such as cardiac disease, history of stroke or epilepsy, or other serious medical conditions.

Cross-References

- [Cardiac Output](#)
- [Hypertension](#)
- [Renin](#)
- [Salt, Intake](#)
- [Sodium, Sodium Sensitivity](#)

References and Readings

- Beers, M., Berkow, R. (2000). Cardiovascular disorders: Hypertension (p. 833). *The Merck manual of geriatrics*. (3rd ed.). Whitehouse Station: Merck and Company.
- Chobanian, A. V., Bakris, G. L., Black, H. R., Cushman, W. C., Green, L. A., Izzo, J. L., Jr., et al. (2003). The seventh report of the Joint National Committee on prevention, detection, evaluation, and treatment of high blood pressure. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 289(19), 2560–2572.
- Fuchs, L. C., Landas, S. K., & Johnson, A. K. (1997). Behavioral stress alters coronary vascular reactivity in borderline hypertensive rats. *Journal of Hypertension*, 15, 301–307.
- Kirby, R. F., & Johnson, A. K. (1992). Regulation of sodium and body fluid homeostasis during development: Implications for the pathogenesis of hypertension. *Experientia*, 48, 345–351.
- Nelson, M. (2010). Drug treatment of elevated blood pressure. *Australian Prescriber*, 33, 108–112.

Anti-inflammatory Medications

Nicole Brandt¹ and Rachel Flurie²

¹School of Pharmacy, University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

²University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Nonsteroidal Anti-inflammatory Medications \(NSAIDs\)](#)

Definition

Anti-inflammatory medications work by suppressing the inflammatory process in the body caused by certain disease states, immune reactions, or any type of noxious agent. There are several clinical symptoms that present when the body's inflammatory process is stimulated: warmth, pain, redness, and swelling. The process of inflammation is a sequence of events that lead to local vasodilation and increased capillary permeability, recruitment of leukocytes and phagocytic cells to the inflamed area, and tissue degeneration and fibrosis.

There are many classes of drugs that affect different cells involved in the inflammatory process (e.g., antihistamines, leukotriene modifiers, glucocorticoids) but the classic anti-inflammatory agents are those that inhibit an enzyme called cyclooxygenase. Cyclooxygenase converts arachidonic acid to prostaglandins (PG) which are essential to the inflammatory process. There are two cyclooxygenases: COX-1 and COX-2. COX-1 is responsible for creating PG involved in gastrointestinal protection, platelet aggregation, vasoconstriction, and renal function.

COX-2 is responsible for creating PG involved in renal function, vasodilation, platelet aggregation, inflammation, pain, and fever. The primary target of anti-inflammatory drugs is COX-2, but selectivity is difficult to achieve due to the conformation of the active sites on the enzymes.

The biggest class of anti-inflammatory drugs are the nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAID). As a class, they are competitive, reversible, active site inhibitors of the COX enzymes. Within the class, they can be further divided based on their chemical makeup and their selectivity of the COX enzymes (i.e., selective, nonselective). Inhibition of COX-2 provides the basis for the therapeutic effect of NSAIDs (antipyretic, analgesic, anti-inflammatory) while inhibition of COX-1 leads to a majority of the adverse effects (gastrointestinal). Aspirin is an irreversible inhibitor of COX-1 and COX-2, and therefore, the duration of action of aspirin depends on the lifetime of the COX enzyme at different target tissues. Of note, the inhibition of COX-1 that leads to platelet disaggregation lasts for the lifetime of the platelet (8–12 days). This is why aspirin is used for cardiovascular and stroke prevention.

Anti-inflammatory medications can be used for a variety of disorders and disease states. They provide symptomatic relief from pain and inflammation associated with musculoskeletal disorders such as rheumatoid arthritis and osteoarthritis. Their analgesic effects are generally only effective for mild to moderate intensity pains and especially when inflammation is the underlying cause of the pain.

Cross-References

- [Aspirin](#)
- [Inflammation](#)

References and Readings

Barrett, K. E., Barman, S. M., Boitano, S., & Brooks, H. (2010). *Ganong's review of medical physiology* (23rd ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Brunton, L. L., Chabner, B. A., & Knollmann, B. C. (2011). *Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (12th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Antioxidant

Sarah Aldred
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The
University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Definition

An antioxidant is a substance that has the ability to prevent oxidation. An antioxidant can act to inhibit an oxidant or reactions promoted by reactive oxygen species. Reactive oxygen species (ROS) comprise free radicals (pro-oxidant molecules such as superoxide) and non-radical species (such as hydrogen peroxide) and are produced in normal bodily processes such as metabolism or respiration. ROS are aptly named as they are indeed very reactive, and will oxidize proteins, lipids, or DNA that they come into contact with, causing adducts or altering the function of these bodily molecules. Antioxidants serve to prevent damage or dysfunction by balancing ROS production and effectively neutralizing them. Examples of antioxidants in the body may be endogenous (produced by the body) or exogenous (taken in via the diet). Endogenous antioxidants, including the enzymes superoxide dismutase and catalase, may be upregulated, or increased, in response to ROS release. Examples of exogenous antioxidants include vitamins A, C, and E.

References and Further Reading

Gutteridge, J. M. C., & Halliwell, B. (1995). *Antioxidants in nutrition, health, and disease*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Antiplatelet Therapy

► [Aspirin](#)

Antiserum

► [Serum](#)

Anxiety

Kim Lavoie
Department of Psychology, Montreal Behavioural
Medicine Centre, University of Québec at
Montreal (UQAM), Montréal, QC, Canada

Synonyms

[Anxiety disorder](#); [Fear](#); [Performance anxiety](#);
[State anxiety](#); [Stranger anxiety](#)

Definition

Anxiety may be defined as an “apprehensive anticipation of future danger or misfortune accompanied by a feeling of dysphoria or somatic symptoms of tension,” (American Psychiatric Association 2000, p. 820) (American Psychiatric Association 2000). The origin of the word anxiety is “to vex or trouble,” and is often associated with feelings of fear, worry, discomfort, and dread (Antony and Barlow 1996). Anxiety is often considered synonymous with *fear*, and though related, they are, in fact, conceptually and clinically distinct. Whereas anxiety may be conceptualized as a negative mood state that may occur in the absence of a specific trigger, fear is better conceptualized as an emotional response to a real or perceived threat. Fear is also more closely related to escape

and avoidance behaviors, where anxiety may be experienced in situations that are perceived as either uncontrollable or unavoidable (Cannon 1929).

Description

Anxiety has many dimensions, including emotional, cognitive, behavioral, and somatic, which characterize many of the responses seen in anxious individuals (Dugas and Ladouceur 2000). For example, anxiety-related emotional responses include feelings of fear, worry, and apprehension; anxiety-related cognitive responses include anticipation of negative outcomes, biases in information processing, and distorted beliefs; anxiety-related behavioral responses include distraction, procrastination, avoidance, compulsions, and distraction; and anxiety-related somatic or physiological responses include those that signal increases in autonomic (i.e., sympathetic) responses such as increased heart rate, blood pressure and respiration rate, sweating, dizziness, and trembling. Anxiety also has some well-established *biological bases* beyond being associated with increased sympathetic arousal. For example, neural circuits involving the amygdala (emotion-processing center of the brain) and hippocampus (memory center of the brain) have been strongly implicated in various manifestations of anxiety. Moreover, low levels of at least two neurotransmitters, *gamma*-aminobutyric acid (GABA), which reduces activity in the central nervous system, and serotonin, a neurotransmitter implicated in mood regulation, have both been associated with increased anxiety (Cannon 1929).

Normal Versus Abnormal Anxiety

Like other negative mood states (e.g., depression, anger), anxiety may be experienced only briefly, and may often be considered a normal or adaptive reaction to situational demands or stress by promoting effective coping. One example of adaptive anxiety relates to performance. Optimal

performance on various behavioral tasks (e.g., playing a musical instrument, sharp shooting) may require experiencing at least moderate levels of anxiety (known as the *Yerkes-Dodson law*) (Selye 1956), which dictates that performance generally increases with moderate increases in mental and physiological arousal. However, performance starts to decline when anxiety (and mental and physiological arousal) becomes too intense. This relationship is often illustrated graphically by an inverted U-curve. Other adaptive forms of anxiety may also be closely tied to the “*fight or flight*” response, originally proposed by Walter Cannon (1929) and Ohman (2000). Cannon’s theory postulated that animals react to stressful situations, particularly those involving threats of bodily harm or injury, with a sudden activation of the sympathetic nervous system, which is said to prime the animal for fighting or fleeing the threat. This theory was later extended to humans and recognized as the initial stage of the *general adaptation syndrome* (described by Hans Selye) (Riggs and Keane 2006) that regulates stress responses among humans and other organisms.

On the other hand, when anxiety becomes excessive or exaggerated, which may be determined by its intensity and rationale in relation to a particular event or situation, it may be classified as an *anxiety disorder* (discussed in greater detail in the next section). Anxiety disorders represent a group of syndromes that are described in the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders-4th Edition Revised (DSM-IV-R) (American Psychiatric Association 2000), that characterize various types of abnormal or pathological anxiety. The DSM-IV-R has defined six anxiety disorders, including generalized anxiety disorder, panic disorder (with or without agoraphobia), obsessive-compulsive disorder, phobias (including social anxiety disorder), posttraumatic stress disorder, and childhood anxiety disorders (including separation anxiety disorder). Anxiety disorders are very common, and are estimated to affect approximately 18% of Americans (American Psychiatric Association 2000).

Anxiety Subtypes

Aside from pathological or “psychiatric” levels of anxiety that generally characterized anxiety disorders, there are several other forms of anxiety that tend to fall somewhere between normal and pathological, and will probably be experienced by most people at some point in their lives.

Performance anxiety As mentioned above, Yerkes and Dodson (Selye 1956) described a phenomenon linking anxiety-related arousal to performance on various behavioral tasks. They discovered that a moderate level of mental and physiological arousal was necessary to ensure optimal performance on various tasks, and that performance decreased as anxiety either increased or decreased from this minimal or moderate level. This is best depicted by an inverted U-shaped curve, and became known as the Yerkes-Dodson law (Selye 1956). This phenomenon is what best describes modern day test anxiety and its associated performance.

Stranger and social anxiety Although “social anxiety disorder” represents one of the anxiety disorders described in the DSM-IV-R, there exist milder, less debilitating forms of stranger or social anxiety. This type of anxiety is normally experienced in childhood when introduced to new or unfamiliar people and may be adaptive (i.e., prevent abduction or abuse by strangers); however, this type of anxiety may persist into adulthood with little to no purpose (American Psychiatric Association 2000).

Choice or decision anxiety Anxiety induced by the need to choose between similar options is increasingly being recognized as a problem for individuals and for organizations, as it has been related to increased procrastination and lost productivity. This type of anxiety, when it becomes exaggerated, closely resembles one of the manifestations of “generalized anxiety disorder,” which characterizes individuals with a high intolerance to uncertainty and a high tendency to worry about the negative consequences of making a

wrong decision (Yerkes and Dodson 1908; Dugas and Ladouceur 2000).

State versus trait anxiety Anxiety can either be experienced acutely and briefly, or represent a more stable and enduring underlying personality trait. The term “state” anxiety has been used to describe anxiety experienced “in the moment” in response to a particular event or situation. It is typically brief and short lived. In behavioral medicine, this can be manifested, for example, by a person experiencing state anxiety related to a medical procedure such as a blood test or undergoing brain scanning. On the other hand, the term “trait” anxiety has been used to describe a more stable tendency to respond with state anxiety when anticipating or faced with potentially threatening situations. Historically, “trait anxiety” has been closely linked to the personality trait of “neuroticism.” Trait anxiety has also been related mainly to self-reported negative health outcomes, but also to objectively defined outcomes.

Cross-References

- [Anxiety Disorder](#)
- [Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine](#)
- [Dyspnea](#)
- [Mental Stress](#)
- [Negative Thoughts](#)
- [Nocebo and Nocebo Effect](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Further Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed.). Arlington: American Psychiatric Press.
- Antony, M. M., & Barlow, D. H. (1996). Emotion theory as a framework for explaining panic attacks and panic disorder. In R. M. Rapee (Ed.), *Current Controversies in the Anxiety Disorder* (pp. 55–76). New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum.
- Cannon, W. B. (1929). *Bodily changes in pain, hunger, fear, and rage*. New York: Appleton.
- Dugas, M. J., & Ladouceur, R. (2000). Targeting intolerance of uncertainty in two types of worry. *Behavior Modification*, 24, 635–657.
- Ohman, A. (2000). Fear and anxiety: Evolutionary, cognitive, and clinical perspectives. In M. Lewis & J. M. Haviland-Jones (Eds.), *Handbook of emotions* (pp. 573–593). New York: Guilford Press.
- Riggs, D., & Keane, T. M. (2006). Assessment strategies in the anxiety disorders. In B. O. Rothbaum (Ed.), *Pathological Anxiety: Emotional Processing in Etiology and Treatment* (pp. 91–114). New York: Guilford Press.
- Selye, H. (1956). *The stress of life*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Yerkes, R. M., & Dodson, J. D. (1908). The relation of strength of stimulus to rapidity of habit-formation. *Journal of Comparative Neurology and Psychology*, 18, 459–482.

Anxiety and Cardiovascular Disease

- [Anxiety and Heart Disease](#)

Anxiety and Heart Disease

Manjunath Harlapur¹ and Daichi Shimbo²

¹Center of Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Division of General Medicine, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

²Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Anxiety and cardiovascular disease](#)

Definition

Anxiety is an emotional response to a situation, which has both psychological and physiological consequences. Anxiety may be a normal response to daily life situations. However, a heightened or

an inappropriate level of anxiety may lead to several deleterious consequences to overall health. There is mounting research about the role of anxiety in the pathophysiology of heart disease.

Description

In the past decade, there has been increasing interest in the relationship between anxiety and heart disease. As reviewed by Rozanski et al. (1999) prior to 1999, there were a limited number of prospective studies demonstrating a relationship between anxiety and subsequent cardiovascular disease (CVD) outcomes in healthy populations and in patients with prevalent CVD.

After these initial studies, additional prospective studies examining the relationship between anxiety and CVD outcomes in participants without prior CVD history have been published. For example, Albert et al. (2005) investigated the relationship between anxiety and CVD events in women without a history of CVD and found that anxiety was associated with a higher risk of sudden cardiac death and fatal coronary heart disease. However, these relationships were attenuated after adjustment for medical factors. On the other hand, Shen et al. (2008) showed that in older men without CVD history, anxiety was associated with incident myocardial infarction even after adjustment for medical factors, medication use, adverse health behaviors, and other psychosocial factors including depression. More recently, Janszky et al. (2010) showed that in young Swedish men, anxiety was associated with an increased risk of incident coronary heart disease events including myocardial infarction during long-term follow-up (mean = 37-year follow-up) in unadjusted and adjusted multivariable models. In 2010, Roest et al. (2010a) published a meta-analysis of 20 studies showing that anxiety was associated with incident coronary heart disease events and cardiac death, independent of medical factors and health behaviors. No relationship was found between anxiety and non-fatal myocardial infarction in five studies that

examined myocardial infarction as a separate outcome.

Additional prospective studies have also examined the relationship between anxiety and CVD outcomes in participants with prevalent CVD. For instance, Shibeshi et al. (2007) showed in patients with coronary artery disease that a high level of anxiety over time predicted an increased risk of nonfatal myocardial infarction or death after adjustment for possible confounders. Huffman et al. (2008) showed that anxiety was associated with an increased risk of CVD complications during a hospitalization for a myocardial infarction in adjusted models. More recently, Martins et al. (2010) demonstrated that anxiety was independently associated with CVD events in men with stable coronary artery disease. In 2010, Roest et al. (2010b) published a meta-analysis examining the relationship between anxiety and CVD outcomes in post-myocardial infarction patients. Anxiety was associated with an increased risk of CVD events independent of other prognostic factors.

Although the evidence base is growing in the area of anxiety and heart disease, several questions remain.

First, given that depression is highly comorbid with anxiety, it has not been determined with a high level of certainty whether the relationship of anxiety with CVD events is independent of depression. In the meta-analysis by Roest et al. (2010b), which included participants without CVD history, only 5 of the 20 studies adjusted for depression, although the associations in 4 of the 5 studies remained significant. In patients with preexisting CVD, this issue may be more complex. Few studies have ascertained the independent contributions of anxiety and depression on CVD outcomes. Strik et al. (2003) found that although both anxiety and depression were separately associated with increased CVD events in post-myocardial infarction patients, the association between anxiety (and not depression) and CVD events remained significant when both psychosocial factors were placed into the same multivariable model. Doering et al. (2010) showed

that in adjusted models, the combined presence of persistent anxiety and depression over 3 months was associated with mortality in patients with ischemic heart disease, whereas persistent anxiety only and persistent depression only were not. In addition to depression, some evidence suggests that the combination of anxiety and Type D personality may be cardiotoxic. van den Broek et al. (2009) showed that anxiety was associated with ventricular arrhythmias in patients with implantable cardioverter-defibrillators but only in the presence of Type D personality. Therefore, the CVD risk associated with anxiety may depend on comorbid depression and/or Type D personality. The contributions of other psychosocial/personality factors remain unknown.

Second, the mechanisms underlying the association between anxiety and CVD events also are unknown. Possible candidates include accelerated subclinical atherosclerosis, autonomic dysregulation, ventricular electrical instability, unhealthy lifestyles, and reduced treatment adherence.

Third, the construct of anxiety is broad, and it is unclear what constitutes the main “ingredients” of anxiety-associated CVD risk. In the prospective studies of non-CVD and CVD participants, anxiety has been assessed using self-report measures and also by interviewer assessment. Further, phobic anxiety, generalized anxiety, neurotic anxiety, somatic symptoms of anxiety, social introversion, manifest anxiety, and psychasthenia are among the different manifestations of anxiety that have been associated with increased CVD risk.

Lastly, it is currently not known whether treating anxiety using pharmacologic or non-pharmacologic strategies reduces the risk of CVD events.

Cross-References

- [Anxiety and Its Measurement](#)
- [Anxiety Disorder](#)
- [Coronary Artery Disease](#)

References and Further Reading

- Albert, C. M., Chae, C. U., Rexrode, K. M., Manson, J. E., & Kawachi, I. (2005). Phobic anxiety and risk of coronary heart disease and sudden cardiac death among women. *Circulation*, *11*, 480–487.
- Doering, L. V., Moser, D. K., Riegel, B., McKinley, S., Davidson, P., Baker, H., Meischke, H., & Dracup, K. (2010). Persistent comorbid symptoms of depression and anxiety predict mortality in heart disease. *International Journal of Cardiology*, *145*, 188–192.
- Huffman, J. C., Smith, F. A., Blais, M. A., Jannuzzi, J. L., & Fricchione, G. L. (2008). Anxiety, independent of depressive symptoms, is associated with in-hospital cardiac complications after acute myocardial infarction. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, *65*, 557–563.
- Janszky, I., Ahnve, S., Lundberg, I., & Hemmingsson, T. (2010). Early-onset depression, anxiety, and risk of subsequent coronary heart disease: 37-year follow-up of 49,321 young Swedish men. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, *56*, 31–37.
- Martins, E. J., de Jonge, P., Beeya, N. A., Cohen, B. E., & Whooley, M. A. (2010). Scared to death? Generalized anxiety disorder and cardiovascular events in patients with stable coronary heart disease: The heart and soul study. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, *67*(7), 750–758.
- Roest, A. M., Martens, E. J., de Jonge, P., & Denollet, J. (2010a). Anxiety and risk of incident coronary heart disease: A meta-analysis. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, *56*, 38–46.
- Roest, A. M., Martens, E. J., Denollet, J., & Jonge, P. (2010b). Prognostic association of anxiety post myocardial infarction with mortality and new cardiac events: A meta-analysis. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, *72*, 563–569.
- Rozanski, A., Blumenthal, J. A., & Kaplan, J. (1999). Impact of psychological factors on the pathogenesis of cardiovascular disease and implications for therapy. *Circulation*, *99*, 2192–2217.
- Shen, B. J., Avivi, Y. E., Todaro, J. F., Spiro, A., III, Laurenceau, J.-P., Ward, K. D., et al. (2008). Anxiety characteristics independently and prospectively predict myocardial infarction in men: The unique contribution of anxiety among psychological factors. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, *51*, 113–119.
- Shibeshi, W. A., Young-Zu, Y., & Blatt, C. M. (2007). Anxiety worsens prognosis in patients with coronary artery disease. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, *49*, 2021–2027.
- Strik, J. M. H., Denollet, J. K. L., Lousberg, R., & Honig, A. (2003). Comparing symptoms of depression and anxiety as predictors of cardiac events and increased health care consumption after myocardial infarction. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, *42*(10), 1801–1807.

van den Broek, K. C., Nyklicek, I., van der Voort, P. H., Alings, M., Meijer, A., & Denollet, J. (2009). Risk of ventricular arrhythmia after implantable defibrillator treatment in anxious type D patients. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 54(6), 531–537.

Anxiety and Its Measurement

Kate L. Jansen¹, Katherine T. Fortenberry² and Molly S. Clark³

¹Behavioral Health, Midwestern University, Glendale, AZ, USA

²Department of Family and Preventative Medicine, The University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

³Midwestern University College of Health Sciences, Clinical Psychology, Glendale, AZ, USA

Synonyms

[Anxiousness](#); [Worry](#)

Definition

Anxiety is a psychological and physiological state characterized by cognitive, physiological, and behavioral components. It is described as the “apprehensive anticipation of future danger or misfortune accompanied by a feeling of worry, distress, and/or somatic symptoms of tension” (American Psychiatric Association [APA] 2013, p. 818). The ICD-10 defines anxiety as a combination of symptoms including feelings of apprehension, muscle tension, restlessness, irritability, and autonomic arousal such as sweating or shaking (World Health Organization [WHO] 1993). These components can be measured through self-report instruments, clinical interview, and behavioral observations.

Description

Several types of assessment measures can be used in the evaluation and treatment of anxiety. Screening questions and instruments are often used first when anxiety is suspected in a clinical setting. These can include single-item questions or brief screening instruments to determine whether further evaluation is warranted. Self-report measures are commonly used in both research and clinical settings. Individuals complete these measures individually and report their perspective of the symptoms they are experiencing. This type of measure allows the individual to complete the information independently, minimizing assessor’s time investment. However, this format does not allow individuals to elaborate on their answers and decreases qualitative information obtained regarding the symptoms. Clinical interviews may consist of structured or unstructured series of questions asked by the administrator regarding the client’s symptomatology. This format allows for the administrator to gather more information from the client regarding their answers, and structured interviews can be formatted in such a way that symptoms are unlikely to be missed. One disadvantage of clinical interviews is a greater time investment from the administrator to conduct the interview. Finally, anxiety may be assessed by behavioral observation, particularly via observation of a client in an anxiety-provoking situation.

Selection of an appropriate measure depends largely on what information the assessor wishes to obtain and what purpose the information will serve. Functions of anxiety measurement include data collection, differential diagnosis, clinical description, case formulation, treatment planning, and evaluating outcome. If differential diagnosis is the purpose of assessment, it is particularly important to ensure that the measure or technique chosen addresses the suspected disorder. Some measures (e.g., the structured clinical interview Anxiety and Related Disorder Interview Schedule or ADIS-5) are designed to assess all diagnoses classified by the DSM-5 as anxiety disorders whereas many self-report measures address only

specific disorders or symptoms (e.g., the Yale-Brown Obsessive Compulsive Scale). Measures used to aid clinical description can help to identify particular symptoms of concern, as well as provide information to help the assessor better understand the individual's experience. For example, the Beck Anxiety Inventory measures specific physical symptoms related to an individual's anxiety, as well as the degree of severity or frequency with which the anxiety is experienced. Although these measures are not sufficient unto themselves for a diagnosis of an anxiety disorder, they provide a better understanding of the individual's perception of the problem. Similarly, assessment measures may be used to clarify case conceptualization and treatment plan. Use of a measure such as the Trimodal Anxiety Questionnaire can help focus treatment onto the aspect of anxiety most distressing to the client: somatic, behavioral, or cognitive. Anxiety measures may also be used to address treatment outcome. This may be done in one of several ways. Measures with a particular diagnostic cutoff score (such as the ADIS) can be used to help determine if the individual continues to meet criteria for diagnosis. Other measures, like the Beck Anxiety Inventory, which measures symptoms along a continuum, may be used to assess improvement of certain symptoms over time.

There are several important factors to consider when selecting a measure of anxiety, including the age, culture, and education level of the individual or group of individuals (Derogatis and Lynn 2000). This factor is particularly important when assessing children/adolescents or older adults. In both groups there are measures developed to specifically address the presentation of anxiety unique to that age. Language and cultural considerations are also important. Anxiety is often expressed differently across cultures; for example, an individual from a culture that expresses anxiety primarily somatically would score inappropriately low on a measure of anxiety that focuses on cognitive components. Intellectual ability and reading level are other factors to consider in choosing an assessment measure. Effort should be made to

match the measure to the individual's ability, particularly on self-report measures that require the individual to interpret and respond to question without the assessor's assistance. Finally, time commitment and cost of the measure should be considered. A screening questionnaire may be appropriate for a large-scale research study, whereas a lengthy clinical interview would be impractical.

There are numerous measures of anxiety that utilize different formats and address different symptoms of anxiety disorders. Though not exhaustive of all available measures of anxiety, listed below are samples of the measures available that have been empirically validated (Table 1) (Roemer 2001). Included in the table is the main reference for the measure, the type of measurement (specifically self-report or clinician administered), a brief description of what the measure intended to address, and the appropriate age range for administration.

The measurement of anxiety serves one of several functions and can encompass one or more aspects of its presentation. Peter Lange, a prominent theorist in the field of anxiety, suggested that anxiety consists of three components: cognitive, physiological, and behavioral (Antony 2001). Cognitive aspects of anxiety consist of thoughts and beliefs that are irrational or otherwise unhelpful to the situation. Examples may include the thought that if something can go wrong it will, or the belief that it is best to prepare for the worst possible outcome of a situation. These thoughts are related to physiological aspects of anxiety such as sweating, accelerated heart rate, or muscle tension. Physiological components of anxiety may be misinterpreted by the individual, as well as by health care providers, as symptoms of physical illness. For example, chronic gastrointestinal issues may be the result of underlying anxiety or panic-induced heart palpitations and shortness of breath may be misinterpreted as a heart condition. Behavioral responses to anxiety include the methods an individual uses to cope with distressing thoughts and physical reactions such as avoiding triggers to

Anxiety and Its Measurement, Table 1 Selected measures of anxiety

Measure name	References	Items	Description	Age
Acceptance and action questionnaire-II	Bond et al. (2011)	10 item self-report	Measures emotional acceptance and avoidance	Adult
Affective control scale	Williams (1992)	42 item self-report	Measures fear of loss of control	Adult
Anxiety and depression detector	(Means-Christensen et al. 2006)	5 item self-report	Measures panic, PTSD, specific phobia, generalized anxiety, and depression	Adult
Anxiety and related disorder interview schedule	Brown and Barlow (2014)	Clinician administered	Measures anxiety disorder symptoms	Adult
Anxiety attitude and belief scale	Brown et al. (2000)	36 item self-report	Measures vulnerability to an anxiety disorder	Adult
Anxiety control questionnaire	Rapee et al. (1996)	30 item self-report	Measures perceived control over events and situations	Adult
Anxiety screening questionnaire	Wittchen and Boyer (1998)	15 item self-report	Measures anxiety, intended for primary care settings	Adult
Anxiety sensitivity index	Reiss et al. (1986)	16 item self-report	Measures the fear of anxiety symptoms	Age 12-adult
Anxious self-statements questionnaire	Kendall and Hollon (1989)	32 item self-report	Measures anxiety-related thoughts	Adult
Anxious thoughts and tendencies scale	Ganellen et al. (1986)	19 item self-report	Measures anxious thought styles	Adult
Anxious thoughts inventory	Wells (1994)	22 item self-report	Measures dimensions of worry: Social health and meta	Adult
Beck anxiety inventory	Beck et al. (1988)	21 item self-report	Measures symptoms of anxiety, used specifically to differentiate anxiety from depression	Adult
Beck anxiety inventory for youth	(Beck et al. 2001)	20 item self-report	Measures symptoms of anxiety separate from depression in youth	Age 7–14
Cardiac anxiety questionnaire	Eifert et al. (2000)	18 item self-report	Measures heart-related anxiety for individuals with and without heart disease	Adult
Children's Yale-brown obsessive-compulsive scale	Goodman et al. (1986)	Clinician administered	Measures children's obsessions and compulsions	Age 6–14
Cognition checklist	Beck et al. (1987)	26 item self-report	Measures frequency of depression and anxiety-related thoughts	Adult
Cognitive somatic anxiety questionnaire	(Schwartz et al. 1978)	14 item self-report	Measures cognitive and somatic aspects of anxiety	Adult
Composite international diagnostic interview	Kessler and Üstün (2004)	40 section computerized self-report	Structured interview covers multiple anxiety disorders including specific phobia, social phobia, agoraphobia, and generalized anxiety disorder	Adult
Dental anxiety scale	Corah (1969)	4 item self-report	Measures dental anxiety	Adult
Dental fear survey	Kleinknecht et al. (1973)	20 item self-report	Measures dental anxiety	Adult
Depression and anxiety in youth scales	(Newcomer et al. 1994)	45–30 parent, teacher, and child report	Measures children's symptoms of depression and anxiety	Age 6–19

(continued)

Anxiety and Its Measurement, Table 1 (continued)

Measure name	References	Items	Description	Age
Depression anxiety stress scale	Lovibond and Lovibond (1995)	42 item self-report	Measures anxiety, depression, and stress	Adult
Discomfort intolerance scale	(Schmidt et al. 2006)	5 item self-report	Measures how individual tolerate bodily sensations	Adult
Endler multidimensional anxiety scales	(Endler et al. 1991)	60 item self-report	Measures state, trait, and perception of anxiety	Age 12-adult
Fear of pain questionnaire III	McNeil and Rainwater (1998)	30 item self-report	Measures fear of pain for chronic pain, general medical and nonmedical populations	Adult
Fear questionnaire	(Marks and Mathews 1979)	24 item self-report	Measure phobias and associated anxiety and depression	Adult
Four-dimensional anxiety and depression scale	Bystritsky et al. (1995)	24 item self-report	Measures four dimensions of anxiety and depression: Emotional, physical, cognitive, and behavioral	Adult
Four systems anxiety questionnaire	Koksal and power (1990)	60 item self-report	Measures four components of anxiety: Cognitive, feelings, behavioral, and somatic	Adult
Frost multidimensional perfectionism scale	Frost et al. (1990)	35 item self-report	Measures perfectionism	Adult
Hamilton anxiety rating scale	Hamilton (1959)	Clinician administered	Measure generalized anxiety symptoms	Adult
Health anxiety inventory	(Salkovskis et al. 2002)	18 item self-report	Measures health anxiety	Adult
Health anxiety questionnaire	Lucock and Morley (1996)	21 item self-report	Measures health-related concerns	Adult
Hospital anxiety and depression scale	Zigmond and Snaith (1983)	14 item self-report	Measures depression and anxiety in medical patients	Adult
Liebowitz social anxiety scale	Fresco et al. (2001)	24 item self-report	Measures social discomfort	Adult
Looming maladaptive style questionnaire – Revised	Riskind (1997)	6 vignettes with 8 questions each	Measures general cognitive style	Adult
Metacognitions questionnaire	Cartwright-Hatton and Wells (1997)	65 item self-report	Measures beliefs about worries and thoughts	Adult
Mood anxiety symptom questionnaire	Watson and Walker (1996)	90 item self-report	Measures tripartite model of anxiety and depression	Adult
Multidimensional anxiety questionnaire	Reynolds (1999)	40 item self-report	Measures total anxiety symptoms over the past month	Adult
Multidimensional anxiety scale for children	March (1997)	39 item self-report	Measures symptoms of anxiety disorders	Age 8–19
Multidimensional perfectionism scale	Hewitt et al. (1991)	45 item self-report	Measures three subscales of perfectionism: Self-oriented, other-oriented, and socially prescribed	Adult

(continued)

Anxiety and Its Measurement, Table 1 (continued)

Measure name	References	Items	Description	Age
Obsessive-compulsive inventory – Revised	Foa et al. (2002)	18 item self-report	Measures symptoms of obsessive compulsive disorder	Adult
Pain anxiety symptoms scale	(McCracken et al. 1992)	40 item self-report	Measures fear of pain	Adult
Penn state worry questionnaire	Meyer et al. (1990)	16 item self-report	Measures degree of worry	Adult
Positive and negative affect scales	Watson et al. 1988	20 item self-report	Measures positive and negative affect	Adult
Pregnancy anxiety scale (revised)	Levin (1991)	10 item self-report	Measures anxiety about pregnancy, birth, and hospitalization	Adult
Pregnancy-specific anxiety scale	(Roesch et al. 2004)	4 item self-report	Measures pregnancy anxiety	Adult
Reactions to tests	Sarason 1984	40 item self-report	Measures test-taking anxiety	Adult
Revised children's manifest anxiety scale	Reynold and Richmond (1979)	37 item self-report	Measures children and adolescent symptoms of anxiety	Age 6–19
Self-rating anxiety scale	Zung (1971)	20 item self-report	Measures symptoms of anxiety	Adult
Self-report for childhood anxiety-related disorders	Birmaher et al. (1997)	41 item parent and self-report	Measures general anxiety, separation anxiety, social phobia, school phobia, and physical symptoms of anxiety.	Age 8+
Short dental fear question	Jaakkola et al. (2009)	1 item self-report	Measures dental anxiety	Adult
Social interaction anxiety scale	Mattick and Clark (1998)	19 item self-report	Measures social interaction fears	Adult
Spence children's anxiety scale	(Spence et al. 2003)	45 item self and parent report	Measures children's symptoms of anxiety disorders	Age 2.5–6.5 and 8–12
State-trait anxiety inventory (form y)	Spielberger et al. (1983)	20 item self-report	Measures state and trait anxiety	Adult
State-trait anxiety inventory for children	(Spielberger et al. 1983)	Clinician administered	Measures both state and trait anxiety symptoms	Age 9–12
Taylor manifest anxiety scale	Taylor (1953)	50 item self-report	Measures anxiety symptoms	Adult
Test anxiety inventory	Spielberger (1980)	20 item self-report	Measures level of test-taking anxiety	Adult
Thought control questionnaire	Wells and Davies (1994)	30 item self-report	Measures strategies for controlling unpleasant thoughts	Adult
Trimodal anxiety questionnaire	Lehrer and Woolfolk (1982)	36 item self-report	Measures somatic, behavioral, and cognitive aspects of anxiety	Adult
White bear suppression inventory	Wegner and Zanakos (1994)	15 item self-report	Measures thought suppression	Adult
Worry-emotionality scale – Revised	(Morris et al. 1981)	10 item self-report	Measures test taking anxiety	Adult

(continued)

Anxiety and Its Measurement, Table 1 (continued)

Measure name	References	Items	Description	Age
Yale-brown obsessive-compulsive scale	Goodman et al. (1989)	Clinician administered	Measures obsessions and compulsions	Adult

anxiety or engaging in behaviors designed to prevent negative events from occurring. Different anxiety disorders have specific behavioral responses to anxiety, such as compulsive behaviors present in obsessive compulsive disorder, or avoidance of social interactions in social phobia. In addition to the three components identified by Lange, an emotional aspect of anxiety has been recognized. Similarly to depression and fear, anxiety has been conceptualized as the experience of high negative affect and low positive affect (Barlow 2004). Anxiety measures are designed to assess one or more of these anxiety components.

Cross-References

- Anxiety
- Anxiety and Heart Disease
- Anxiety Disorder
- Post Traumatic Stress Disorder
- Trait Anxiety
- Worry

References and Further Reading

American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders (DSM-5®)*. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Publishing.

Antony, M. (2001). Assessment of anxiety and the anxiety disorders: An overview. In M. M. Antony & S. M. Orsillo (Eds.), *Practitioner's guide to empirically based measures of anxiety* (AABT Clinical Assessment Series, pp. 9–17). New York: Kluwer/Plenum Press.

Barlow, D. H. (2004). *Anxiety and its disorders: The nature and treatment of anxiety and panic*. New York: Guilford Press.

Beck, A. T., Brown, G., Steer, R. A., Eidelson, J. I., & Riskind, J. H. (1987). Differentiating anxiety and depression: A test of the cognitive content-specicity hypothesis. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, 96, 179–185.

Beck, A. T., Epstein, N., Brown, G., & Steer, R. A. (1988). An inventory for measuring clinical anxiety: Psychometric properties. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 56, 893–897.

Beck, J. S., Beck, A. T., Jolly, J., & Steer, R. A. (2001). *Manual for the Beck youth inventories of emotional and social impairment* (2nd ed.). San Antonio: Harcourt Assessment.

Birmaher, B., Khetarpal, S., Brent, D., Cully, M., Balach, L., Kaufman, J., et al. (1997). The screen for child anxiety related emotional disorders (SCARED): Scale construction and psychometric characteristics. *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*, 36, 545–553.

Bond, F. W., Hayes, S. C., Baer, R. A., Carpenter, K. M., Guenole, N., Orcutt, H. K., Waltz, T., & Zettle, R. D. (2011). Preliminary psychometric properties of the acceptance and action questionnaire–II: A revised measure of psychological inflexibility and experiential avoidance. *Behavior Therapy*, 42(4), 676–688.

Brown, T. A., & Barlow, D. H. (2014). *Anxiety disorders interview schedule for DSM-5: Adult and lifetime version: Clinician manual*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Brown, G. P., Craske, M. G., Tata, P., Rassovsky, Y., & Tsao, J. C. I. (2000). The anxiety attitude and belief scale: Initial psychometric properties in an undergraduate sample. *Clinical Psychology & Psychotherapy*, 7, 230–239.

Bystritsky, A., Waikar, S., & Vapnik, T. (1995). The four-dimensional anxiety and depression scale. *Anxiety*, 2, 47–50.

Cartwright-Hatton, S., & Wells, A. (1997). Beliefs about worry and intrusions: The metacognitions questionnaire and its correlates. *Journal of Anxiety Disorders*, 11, 279–296.

Corah, N. L. (1969). Development of a dental anxiety scale. *Journal of Dental Research*, 48(4), 596–596.

Derogatis, L. R., & Lynn, L. L. I. (2000). Screening and monitoring psychiatric disorder in primary care populations. In M. E. Maruish (Ed.), *Handbook of psychological assessment in primary care settings* (pp. 115–152). Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Eifert, G. H., Thompson, R. N., Zvolensky, M. J., Edwards, K., Haddad, J. H., Frazer, N. L., et al. (2000). The cardiac anxiety questionnaire: Development and preliminary validity. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 38, 1039–1053.

Endler, N. S., Edwards, J. M., & Vitelli, R. (1991). *Endler multidimensional anxiety scales (EMAS): Manual*. Los Angeles: Western Psychological Services.

- Foa, E. B., Huppert, J. D., Leiberg, S., Langner, R., Kichic, R., Hajcak, G., et al. (2002). The obsessive-compulsive inventory: Development and validation of a short version. *Psychological Assessment*, 10, 206–214.
- Fresco, D. M., Coles, M. E., Heimberg, R. G., Liebowitz, M. R., Hami, S., Stein, M. B., et al. (2001). The Liebowitz social anxiety scale: A comparison of the psychometric properties of self-report and clinician-administered formats. *Psychological Medicine*, 31, 1025–1035.
- Frost, R. O., Marten, P., Lahart, C., & Rosenblate, R. (1990). The dimensions of perfectionism. *Cognitive Therapy and Research*, 14(5), 449–468.
- Ganellen, R. J., Matuzas, W., Uhlenhuth, E. H., Glass, R., & Easton, C. R. (1986). Panic disorder, agoraphobia, and anxiety-relevant cognitive style. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 11, 219–225.
- Goodman, W. K., Rasmussen, S. A., Price, L. H., & Rapaport, J. L. (1986). *Children's yale brown obsessive-compulsive scale (CY-BOCS)*. Unpublished manuscript.
- Goodman, W., Price, L., Rasmussen, S., Mazure, C., Fleischmann, R., Hill, C., et al. (1989). The yale-brown obsessive compulsive scale: I. Development, use, and reliability. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 46, 1006–1011.
- Hamilton, M. (1959). The assessment of anxiety states by rating. *The British Journal of Medical Psychology*, 32, 50–55.
- Hazlett-Stevens, H. (2009). Assessment and treatment of anxiety in primary care. In L. C. James & W. T. O'Donohue (Eds.), *The primary care toolkit: Practical resources for the integrated behavioral care provider* (pp. 169–182). New York: Springer.
- Hewitt, P. L., Flett, G. L., Turnbull-Donovan, W., & Mikail, S. (1991). The multidimensional perfectionism scale: Reliability, validity, and psychometric properties in psychiatric sample. *Psychological Assessment*, 3, 464–468.
- Hunter, C. L., Goodie, J. L., Oordt, M. S., & Dobmyer, A. C. (2009). *Integrated behavioral health in primary care: Step-by step guidance for assessment and intervention*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Jaakkola, S., Rautava, P., Alanen, P., Aromaa, M., Pienihäkkinen, K., Räihä, H., & Sillanpää, M. (2009). Dental fear: One single clinical question for measurement. *The Open Dentistry Journal*, 3(1), 161–216.
- Kendall, P. C., & Hollon, S. D. (1989). Anxious self-talk: Development of the anxious self-statements questionnaire (ASSQ). *Cognitive Therapy and Research*, 13, 81–93.
- Kessler, R. C., & Üstün, T. B. (2004). The world mental health (WMH) survey initiative version of the world health organization (WHO) composite international diagnostic interview (CIDI). *International Journal of Methods in Psychiatric Research*, 13(2), 93–121.
- Kleinknecht, R. A., Klepac, R. K., & Alexander, L. D. (1973). Origins and characteristics of fear of dentistry. *The Journal of the American Dental Association*, 86(4), 842–848.
- Köksal, F., & Power, K. (1990). Four systems anxiety questionnaire (FSAQ). A self-report measure of somatic, cognitive, behavioral and feeling components. *Journal of Personality Assessment*, 54, 534–544.
- Lehrer, P. M., & Woolfolk, R. L. (1982). Self-report assessment of anxiety: Somatic, cognitive, and behavioral modalities. *Behavioral Assessment*, 4, 167–177.
- Levin, J. S. (1991). The factor structure of the pregnancy anxiety scale. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 32, 368–381.
- Lovibond, S. H., & Lovibond, P. F. (1995). *Manual for the depression anxiety stress scales* (2nd ed.). Sydney: Psychological Foundation of Australia.
- Lucock, M., & Morley, S. (1996). The health anxiety questionnaire. *British Journal of Health Psychology*, 1, 137–150.
- March, J. S. (1997). *Manual for the multidimensional anxiety scale for children (MASC)*. Toronto: Multi-Health Systems.
- Marks, I. M., & Mathews, A. M. (1979). Brief standard self-rating for phobic patients. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 17, 263–267.
- Mattick, R. P., & Clarke, J. C. (1998). Development and validation of measures of social phobia scrutiny fear and social interaction anxiety. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 36, 455–470.
- McCracken, L. M., Zayfert, C., & Gross, R. T. (1992). The pain anxiety symptoms scale: Development and validation of a scale to measure fear of pain. *Pain*, 50, 67–73.
- McNeil, D. W., & Rainwater, A. J. (1998). Development of the fear of pain questionnaire – III. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 21, 389–410.
- Means-Christensen, A. J., Sherbourne, C. D., Roy-Byrne, P. P., Craske, M. G., & Stein, M. B. (2006). Using five questions to screen for five common mental disorders in primary care: Diagnostic accuracy of the anxiety and depression detector. *General Hospital Psychiatry*, 28(2), 108–118.
- Meyer, T., Miller, M., Metzger, R., & Borkovec, T. D. (1990). Development and validation of the Penn State worry questionnaire. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 28, 487–495.
- Morris, L. W., Davis, M. A., & Hutchings, C. H. (1981). Cognitive and emotional components of anxiety: Literature review and a revised worry-emotionality scale. *Journal of Educational Psychology*, 73, 541–555.
- Newcomer, P. L., Berenbaum, E. M., & Bryant, B. R. (1994). *Depression and anxiety in youth scale: Examiner's manual*. Austin: PRO-ED.
- Rapee, R. M., Craske, M. G., Brown, T. A., & Barlow, D. H. (1996). Measurement of perceived control over anxiety-related events. *Behavior Therapy*, 27, 279–293.
- Reiss, S., Peterson, R. A., Gursky, D. M., & McNally, R. J. (1986). Anxiety sensitivity, anxiety frequency, and the

- prediction of fearfulness. *Behavior Research and Therapy*, 24, 1–8.
- Reynolds, W. M. (1999). *Multidimensional anxiety questionnaire*. Odessa: Psychological Assessment Resources.
- Reynolds, C. R., & Richmond, O. B. (1979). What I think and feel: A revised measure of children's manifest anxiety. *Journal of Personality Assessment*, 43, 281–283.
- Riskind, J. H. (1997). Looming vulnerability to threat: A cognitive paradigm for anxiety. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 35, 386–404.
- Roemer, L. (2001). Measures for anxiety and related constructs. In M. M. Antony & S. M. Orsillo (Eds.), *Practioner's guide to empirically based measures of anxiety* (AABT Clinical Assessment Series, pp. 49–83). New York: Kluwer/Plenum Press.
- Roesch, S. C., Schetter, C. D., Woo, G., & Hobel, C. J. (2004). Modeling the types and timing of stress in pregnancy. *Anxiety, Stress, and Coping*, 17(1), 87–102.
- Salkovskis, P. M., Rimes, K. A., Warwick, H. M. C., & Clark, D. M. (2002). The health anxiety inventory: Development and validation of scales for the measurement of health anxiety and hypochondriasis. *Psychological Medicine*, 32(05), 843–853.
- Sarason, I. G. (1984). Stress, anxiety, and cognitive interference: Reactions to tests. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 46, 929–938.
- Schmidt, N. B., Richey, J. A., & Fitzpatrick, K. K. (2006). Discomfort intolerance: Development of a construct and measure relevant to panic disorder. *Journal of Anxiety Disorders*, 20, 263–280.
- Schwartz, G. E., Davidson, R. J., & Goleman, D. J. (1978). Patterning of cognitive and somatic processes in the self-regulation of anxiety: Effects of meditation versus exercise. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 40, 321–328.
- Seligman, M. E. P., Walker, E. F., & Rosenhan, D. L. (2001). *Abnormal psychology* (4th ed.). New York: W.W. Norton.
- Spence, S. H., Barrett, P. M., & Turner, C. M. (2003). Psychometric properties of the spence children's anxiety scale with young adolescents. *Journal of Anxiety Disorders*, 17(6), 605–625.
- Spielberger, C. D. (1980). *Test anxiety inventory. Preliminary professional manual*. Palo Alto: Consulting Psychologists Press.
- Spielberger, C. D., Gorsuch, R. L., Lushene, R., Vagg, P. R., & Jacobs, G. A. (1983). *Manual for the state-trait anxiety inventory*. Palo Alto: Consulting Psychologists Press.
- Taylor, J. A. (1953). A personality scale of manifest anxiety. *Journal of Abnormal and Social Psychology*, 48(2), 285–290.
- Watson, D., & Walker, L. M. (1996). The long-term stability and predictive validity of trait measures of affect. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 70, 567–577.
- Watson, D., Clark, L. A., & Tellegen, A. (1988). Development and validation of brief measures of positive and negative affect: The PANAS scales. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 54, 1063–1070.
- Wegner, D. M., & Zanakos, S. (1994). Chronic thought suppression. *Journal of Personality*, 62, 615–640.
- Wells, A. (1994). A multi-dimensional measure of worry: Development and preliminary validation of the anxious thoughts inventory. *Anxiety, Stress and Coping*, 6, 289–299.
- Wells, A., & Davies, M. I. (1994). The thought control questionnaire: A measure of individual differences in the control of unwanted thoughts. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 32, 871–878.
- Williams, K. E. (1992). *An analogue study of panic onset*. Unpublished doctoral dissertation. Department of Psychology, American University, Washington, DC.
- Wittchen, H. U., & Boyer, P. (1998). Screening for anxiety: Sensitivity and specificity of the anxiety screening questionnaire (ASQ-15). *The British Journal of Psychiatry*, 173(Suppl 34), 10–17.
- World Health Organization. (1993). *The ICD-10 classification of mental and behavioral disorders: Diagnostic criteria for research*. Geneva: Author.
- Zigmond, A. S., & Snaith, R. P. (1983). The hospital anxiety and depression scale. *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica*, 67, 361–370.
- Zung, W. W. K. (1971). A rating instrument for anxiety disorders. *Psychosomatics*, 12, 371–379.

Anxiety Disorder

Rachel Millstein
Clinical Psychology, University of California,
San Diego/San Diego State University,
San Diego, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Anxiety](#); [Stress disorder](#)

Definition

Anxiety disorders are a group of disorders characterized by intense or excessive fear, nervousness, dread, or worry. While normal anxiety can create feelings of stress or worry, it typically abates once a stressor is eliminated. Pathological anxiety, of the type experienced in an anxiety disorder, is of a high intensity, lasts for a long duration (typically over 6 months), and interferes

with daily life. It is estimated that about 8–18% of the U.S. adult population experiences at least one anxiety disorder each year.

Description

There are eight types of anxiety disorders recognized by the American Psychiatric Association's Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (4th edition; DSM-IV-TR). Each has different specific symptoms, but the symptoms all involve elements of excessive fear or worry. Cognitive Behavioral Therapy and medication are commonly used treatment approaches that have been empirically supported for a variety of anxiety disorders.

Panic Disorder With or Without Agoraphobia

Description and Symptoms

Panic disorder occurs when a person experiences repeated, unexpected, and feared panic attacks. A panic attack is a sudden, discrete (approximately 5–30 min), and intense anxiety reaction that typically includes several of the following symptoms: pounding heart or accelerated heart rate, sweating, trembling or shaking, feelings of smothering or shortness of breath, feelings of choking, chest pain, nausea, feeling dizzy or faint, feeling detached from reality or oneself, fear of losing control or going crazy, fear of dying, chills or hot spells, and numbness or tingling. Panic disorder is diagnosed by the presence of panic attacks, plus the accompanying fear of having attacks in the future or their implications. A commonly held fear of a person suffering from panic disorder is experiencing an embarrassing or noticeable attack while in public. Thus, agoraphobia is often comorbid with panic disorder. Agoraphobia is the fear and avoidance of being in public places, crowds, or places from which escape may be difficult.

Treatment

Treatment is inherently individualized, and includes analyzing the triggers of panic attacks, restructuring distorted anxious and catastrophic thoughts, relaxation training, habituation to the somatic symptoms of panic, lifestyle changes, and medication usually (SSRI antidepressants or benzodiazepines).

Generalized Anxiety Disorder (GAD)

Description and Symptoms

GAD is characterized by persistent worry on most days for at least 6 months. The worry may focus on two or more stressful situations, or it may be generalized to most life domains. The worry involved with GAD is out of proportion of the actual stressors and causes distress or impairment in daily life. Symptoms of GAD include feeling restless or on edge, being easily fatigued, difficulty concentrating or remembering, irritability, muscle tension, and sleep disturbance.

Treatment

Common therapeutic techniques for GAD include relaxation training, cognitive restructuring of dysfunctional thoughts, problem solving, lifestyle changes and distraction, and medication.

Social Phobia

Description and Symptoms

Social phobia (or social anxiety disorder) is the excessive or irrational fear of public embarrassment or perceived scrutiny. Social phobia can cause people to avoid certain social situations or endure them with distress, to the point where the fear negatively impacts quality of life. People with social phobia recognize that their fear is excessive. Common social phobias involve public speaking, eating in public, blushing, writing in public, and using public restrooms.

Treatment

Social phobia typically responds well to Cognitive Behavioral Therapy to examine and replace distorted thoughts that perpetuate the fears. Relaxation training, exposure to feared situations, social skills assertiveness training, and medications are also empirically supported treatments. Group therapy can be helpful for people with social phobia.

Specific Phobia

Description and Symptoms

Specific phobias are excessive and irrational fear or avoidance of one or more objects or situations. The types recognized by the DSM-IV-TR include animals (e.g., snakes, spiders), natural environment (e.g., heights, storms), blood or injections, situational (e.g., flying, elevators), and others (e.g., vomiting, loud sounds). Criteria for diagnosis of a specific phobia, like social phobia, include persistent anxiety and fear of the object or situation, recognition that the fear is excessive, avoidance of the feared stimulus or enduring it with distress, and interference with daily life.

Treatment

Like social phobia, specific phobias respond well to Cognitive Behavioral Therapy and relaxation training. Graded exposures are very common and effective for phobias. People suffering from a phobia are asked to develop a hierarchy of imaginal and real stimuli that evoke the fear. Clients are then exposed to each step of the hierarchy gradually, with the support of a therapist and relaxation practice, until they can face the highest or most feared object or situation.

Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder (OCD)

Description and Symptoms

Obsessions are anxiety-inducing repeated, intrusive, unwanted, and uncontrollable recurrent thoughts or ideas. Compulsions are excessive, ritualistic, repetitive, intentional behaviors, rules, or thoughts done to allay the anxiety associated

with obsessions. OCD involves having obsessions and/or compulsions that are time consuming (more than 1 h a day), recognition that they are irrational, and cause a person significant distress and impairment of daily functioning. Common obsessions are contamination/germs, symmetry, and hoarding. Common compulsions are washing, checking, and counting.

Treatment

OCD can respond well to Cognitive Behavioral Therapy and/or medication, depending on a variety of factors including severity. Psychological treatments include relaxation training, cognitive restructuring of catastrophic or maladaptive thoughts, and exposure and response prevention (ERP). ERP involves exposure to the obsessional object or thought, and then enforced (by a therapist or companion) prevention from performing the compulsion or gradually reducing the number of times it is performed, until the behavior is extinguished and the obsession becomes less anxiety provoking. ERP is an empirically supported treatment for OCD.

Posttraumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD)

Description and Symptoms

PTSD can occur after witnessing or having experienced a severe trauma that involved the threat of or actual violence and/or death and feelings of horror or helplessness. Not everyone who experiences a traumatic event will develop PTSD, and the precise mechanisms of etiology are unknown but likely involve a complex interplay of genetic predisposition, environmental, personality, and other psychological factors. The symptoms of PTSD fall into three groups: re-experiencing the trauma in dreams or intrusive thoughts (flashbacks), emotional numbing, detachment, and avoidance, and hyperarousal that includes irritability and excessive startle responses to stimuli. PTSD may be acute or chronic, depending on the duration: (whether or not symptoms last longer than 3 months).

Treatment

PTSD responds to several of the cognitive and medication methods described for the previous anxiety disorders. Exposure therapy is used heavily, to assist the person with re-experiencing the feared experience, with the goal of ultimately reducing anxiety and arousal through habituation and cognitive restructuring. Support groups for PTSD may also be helpful. Eye-movement desensitization and reprocessing therapy (EMDR) is a newer empirically supported treatment for PTSD. It involves having the victim hold the feared memory in his or her mind, and then watching the therapist's fingers move rapidly in a diagonal, back-and-forth motion, to alter the vividness and anxiety provoked by the images.

Acute Stress Disorder

Acute stress disorder is a newer diagnosis that may be a precursor to PTSD. It involves developing anxiety responses (similar to those in PTSD) following a stressful event. However, for this diagnosis, the symptoms must appear and retreat within a month.

Anxiety Disorder due to a General Medical Condition and Substance-Induced Anxiety Disorder

Description and Symptoms

Both of these types of anxiety disorders draw on externally identifiable stimuli as the primary source of the anxiety; the anxiety displayed is not better attributable to one of the other, previously described disorders.

Treatment

Treatment of the anxiety in both of these situations involves treating the underlying cause: medical or drug related.

Several of the above-mentioned anxiety disorders can be associated with health conditions and may also have medical consequences of relevance to behavioral medicine. For example, PTSD has

been found to result in some people from myocardial infarctions, and PTSD predicts future cardiac events.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Adrenocorticotropin](#)
- ▶ [Alcohol Abuse and Dependence](#)
- ▶ [Antidepressant Medications](#)
- ▶ [Anxiety](#)
- ▶ [Anxiety and Heart Disease](#)
- ▶ [Anxiety and Its Measurement](#)
- ▶ [Anxiolytic](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- ▶ [Coping](#)
- ▶ [Coping Strategies](#)
- ▶ [Cortisol](#)
- ▶ [Daily Stress](#)
- ▶ [Depression: Symptoms](#)
- ▶ [Epinephrine](#)
- ▶ [Fear and Fear Avoidance](#)
- ▶ [Mental Illness](#)
- ▶ [Norepinephrine/Noradrenaline](#)
- ▶ [Panic Attack](#)
- ▶ [Panic Disorder](#)
- ▶ [Post Traumatic Stress Disorder](#)
- ▶ [Psychiatric Disorder](#)
- ▶ [Psychiatric Illness](#)
- ▶ [Psychological Disorder](#)
- ▶ [Psychological Pathology](#)
- ▶ [Psychological Stress](#)
- ▶ [Stress](#)
- ▶ [Stress: Appraisal and Coping](#)
- ▶ [Stressor](#)
- ▶ [Substance Abuse: Treatment](#)
- ▶ [Worry](#)

References and Further Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association.
- Andreasen, N. C., & Black, D. W. (2006). *Introductory textbook of psychiatry* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Publishing.

- Barlow, D. H. (Ed.). (2008). *Clinical handbook of psychological disorders* (4th ed.). New York: Guilford Press.
- Bourne, E. J. (2000). *The anxiety & phobia workbook* (3rd ed.). Oakland: New Harbinger.
- Kessler, R. C., Chiu, W. T., Demler, O., & Walters, E. E. (2005). Prevalence, severity, and comorbidity of twelve-month DSM-IV disorders in the National Comorbidity Survey Replication (NCS-R). *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 62(6), 617–627.
- National Alliance on Mental Illness (NAMI). Retrieved 10 Jan 2011 From <http://www.nami.org>.
- National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). *Anxiety disorders*. Retrieved 10 Jan 2011 From <http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/publications/anxiety-disorders/introduction.shtml>.

Anxiolytic

Toru Okuyama

Division of Psycho-oncology and Palliative Care,
Nagoya City University Hospital, Nagoya, Aichi,
Japan

Synonyms

Antianxiety drug; Minor tranquilizer

Definition

Anxiolytics can be defined as a drug used to treat anxiety. In current medicine, however, anxiety is treated using a variety of drugs including antidepressants, antipsychotics, and anticonvulsants. Recent evidence indicates that even the first choice for the treatment of anxiety disorders such as panic disorder and social anxiety disorder is antidepressants. Therefore, the term anxiolytics is recently defined more appropriately as a drug whose main target symptom is anxiety. Anxiolytics are originally referred to as minor tranquilizers to be distinguished from antipsychotics as major tranquilizers.

Description

Main examples of anxiolytics are barbiturates, benzodiazepines, azapirones, and hydroxyzine. In the historical point of view, barbiturates were the first drugs used to treat anxiety. But later on, they have been prescribed rarely and were replaced by benzodiazepines because they have strong physical and psychological addiction potential. On the other hand, barbiturates are still used for the treatment of epilepsy and general anesthesia, and for the short-term treatment of severe insomnia, especially in case of benzodiazepine-refractory insomnia.

In 1960, chlordiazepoxide, the first benzodiazepine anxiolytic, was made available, followed by diazepam in 1963. The mechanism of action of benzodiazepines includes their bindings to gamma amino butyric acids (GABA)-A receptors, which increase the affinity of GABA and their receptors, resulting in the increase of opening frequency of GABA-A receptors and therefore of potentiating GABAergic neurotransmission. Benzodiazepines have been used widely in clinical practice for the treatment of, for example, anxiety associated with psychiatric disorders including anxiety disorders, mood disorders, insomnia, seizures, alcohol withdrawal syndrome, and agitation. Most of the side effects caused by benzodiazepines are related to their sedating and muscle relaxing effects, such as drowsiness, lightheadedness, lack of coordination, and amnesia. Apart from these side effects, benzodiazepines are basically safe and effective in the short term. But in the long term, they may cause tolerance, dependence, and withdrawal. Risk factors of benzodiazepine dependence include a longer duration of use and a history of substance (alcohol or drug) abuse. Short-half-life benzodiazepine agents are more likely to develop withdrawal symptoms. Therefore, when long-term users of short-half-life benzodiazepine agents stop the use, gradual decrease or once switching with long-half-life benzodiazepine agents may be necessary to prevent withdrawal symptoms.

Azapirones are one of the alternatives to benzodiazepines. They exert their antianxiety effects by potentiating postsynaptic serotonin1A

receptors. Only three agents, buspirone, gepirone, and tandospirone, are currently available for clinical use. Effectiveness of azapirones on anxiety associated with general anxiety disorder was shown by meta-analysis. Efficacy of azapirones on anxiety associated with other anxiety disorders has not been established yet. The advantage of azapirones over benzodiazepines is that they do not cause sedation, cognitive dysfunction, or addictive/dependence potential. But azapirones may not be superior to benzodiazepines in the antianxiety effects. Common side effects are headaches, dizziness, nausea, and diarrhea.

Hydroxyzine, an antihistamine, also possesses anxiolytic properties. Although little evidence indicates the usefulness of hydroxyzine in clinical anxiety, it was shown that it is as effective as benzodiazepines in the treatment of generalized anxiety disorder while causing fewer side effects.

Cross-References

- [Anxiety Disorder](#)
- [Dependence, Drug](#)
- [Insomnia](#)
- [Panic Disorder](#)
- [Substance Abuse](#)

References and Readings

- Chessick, C. A., Allen, M. H., Thase, M., Batista Miralha da Cunha, A. B., Kapczinski, F. F., de Lima, M. S., et al. (2006). Azapirones for generalized anxiety disorder. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 3, CD006115.
- Nemeroff, C. B. (2003). Anxiolytics: Past, present, and future agents. *The Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, 64 (Suppl. 3), 3–6.
- Ravindran, L. N., & Stein, M. B. (2010). The pharmacologic treatment of anxiety disorders: A review of progress. *The Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, 71(7), 839–854.

Apolipoproteins: APOA-I, APOA-IV, APOE

William Whang
Division of Cardiology, Columbia
University Medical Center, New York,
NY, USA

Definition

Apolipoproteins are proteins that bind to lipids and are required for the assembly and function of lipoproteins, which transport lipids through the blood and lymph systems. ApoA-I is synthesized in the liver and intestine and is found on virtually all high-density lipoprotein particles. ApoA-I Milano, a naturally occurring variant identified in rural Italy, is associated with very low high-density lipoprotein levels and lower-than-expected risk of coronary artery disease (Nissen et al. 2003). A randomized trial of recombinant ApoA-I Milano administered intravenously produced significant regression of coronary atherosclerosis as measured by intravascular ultrasound. ApoE, synthesized in the liver, is present in chylomicrons, very low-density lipoproteins, and intermediate-density lipoproteins and is important in the metabolism of triglyceride-rich particles (Corder et al. 1993). The isoform ApoE4 has been associated with increased risk of Alzheimer's disease and coronary artery disease. A meta-analysis of ApoE genotypes found relationships to low-density lipoprotein cholesterol and coronary artery disease risk (Bennet et al. 2007). APOA-IV, synthesized in the intestine, is present in chylomicron remnants, intermediate-density lipoproteins, and high-density lipoproteins (Rader and Hobbs 2008). Its function in lipoprotein metabolism is currently unknown. Please also refer to the "lipoprotein" entry in this encyclopedia for related information.

Anxiousness

- [Anxiety and Its Measurement](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bennet, A. M., Di Angelantonio, E., Ye, Z., Wensley, F., Dahlin, A., Ahlbom, A., et al. (2007). Association of apolipoprotein E genotypes with lipid levels and coronary risk. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 298(11), 1300–1311.
- Corder, E. H., Saunders, A. M., Strittmatter, W. J., Schmechel, D. E., Gaskell, P. C., Small, G. W., et al. (1993). Gene dose of apolipoprotein E type 4 allele and the risk of Alzheimer's disease in late onset families. *Science*, 261(5123), 921–923.
- Nissen, S. E., Tsunoda, T., Tuzcu, E. M., Schoenhagen, P., Cooper, C. J., Yasin, M., et al. (2003). Effect of recombinant ApoA-I Milano on coronary atherosclerosis in patients with acute coronary syndromes: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 290(17), 2292–2300.
- Rader, D. J., & Hobbs, H. H. (2008). Chapter 350: Disorders of lipoprotein metabolism. In A. S. Fauci, E. Braunwald, D. L. Kasper, S. L. Hauser, D. L. Longo, J. L. Jameson, & J. Loscalzo (Eds.), *Harrison's principles of internal medicine* (Vol. 17e). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Description

The desire for food intake is important in addressing energy and metabolic needs for survival of the organism. The process is regulated by several central brain and peripheral mechanisms. These mechanisms are governed by both homeostatic needs and external cues that may influence desire for food consumption. Several well-studied factors, which regulate food desirability, directly influence appetite, including biological, behavioral, cognitive, and hedonic factors. For example, sensory information and memorial representations of food and associated emotions and motivation state may increase appetite for certain food items.

The involvement of central nervous system in appetite occurs at different levels. For example, signaling related to metabolic needs are received by the brain from different parts of the body that are involved in metabolic activities. One of the receiving structures is the arcuate nucleus (ARC) of the hypothalamus. The ARC coordinate with other nuclei within the hypothalamus information related to the metabolic-homeostatic needs. Experimental research has demonstrated the role of the ARC as a feeding control center. Research has shown that lesion of the ARC leads to overeating and obesity.

The ARC integrates hormonal signals and contains populations of neurons that express neuropeptide Y (NPY) which is involved in regulating energy balance. In addition to NPY, neurons within the ARC express agouti-related protein and proopiomelanocortin. The latter produces α -melanocyte-stimulating hormone, an important appetite regulating peptide and energy regulation; evidence suggests that animals and humans who genetically lack this hormone are likely to be obese. In addition to the ARC, the ventromedial hypothalamus (VMH), the paraventricular nucleus (PVN), and lateral hypothalamic (LH) are also involved in energy balance. Lesions to the PVN, for example, lead to increased feeding behavior and weight gain. These central structures receive information from other parts of the brain through both neuronal and hormonal signaling

Appearance Evaluation

- [Body Image](#)
- [Body Image and Appearance-Altering Conditions](#)

Appetite and Appetite Regulation

Mustafa al'Absi and Bingshuo Li
University of Minnesota Medical School, School of Medicine, University of Minnesota, Duluth, MN, USA

Definition

Appetite is the desire for food intake that may be produced by normal metabolic and energy needs or be other cues that may increase desire for food intake, including appearance, taste, and smell.

systems. Vagal afferent pathways and peripheral peptides carry information related to energy needs and metabolic status to the ARC and other structures where additional sensory information is also integrated to influence appetite.

There are several hormones that are directly involved in regulating appetite and energy balance. These are briefly described here, but will also be presented elsewhere in this encyclopedia. Leptin is a hormone involved in regulating energy homeostasis and is released from adipose tissue. Administering leptin reduces food intake and may result in loss of body weight. Ghrelin is released mostly by the stomach and is involved in meal initiation and termination. In contrast with leptin, there is inverse association between ghrelin and adiposity. Administering ghrelin increases food intake in humans. Glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-I) is a hormone produced primarily by L cells of the small intestine and is usually increased following a meal. This hormone reduces appetite and food intake. Insulin has a direct impact on metabolic status and dietary intake. It is produced by the pancreas, and similar to leptin, it is associated with energy balance and total body fat stores and fat distribution. Its secretion increases immediately following a meal. Animal studies have shown that administering insulin reduces food intake and body weight.

Cognitive-hedonic processes, including sensory perceptions of food and food-related memory representations and emotions, have potent effects on appetite regulation. Experiments have shown that perceptions or memory representations of food or food-related cues modulate not only neural activity in specific brain areas involved in cognitive control of eating behaviors, but also eating-related physiological responses such as saliva, gastric acid, and insulin secretion. Recent findings suggest that neural circuits in the nucleus accumbens and ventral pallidum play key roles in the neuromechanism of liking palatable food. In addition, dopaminergic system from the ventral tegmental area of midbrain to the nucleus accumbens is critical to the neuromechanism of wanting of food.

Appetite and Obesity

Dysregulation of metabolic homeostatic and cognitive-hedonic appetite regulatory processes dispose people to obesity. In this case, increased appetite leads to excessive energy intake, and this energy excess is readily stored as fat by the body for later use. Several possible causes of appetite dysregulation have been identified and are currently under active investigation. These causes include abnormal nutrient sensing, overstimulation of food-related reward mechanisms, emotion dysregulation, and negative environmental influences. Pharmacological interventions for obesity and targeting at the dysregulation endocrine and neuronal appetite regulatory processes are also under development. Although many signaling chemicals and brain areas involved in appetite regulation have been identified. The therapeutic potential of this knowledge and individual differences relevant to how they increase risk for obesity remain to be elucidated. Psychotherapeutic interventions, aiming at enhancing self-control over excessive appetite and promoting healthy food-related choices and lifestyles, are believed to be more effective than pharmacological interventions in the fight against obesity.

Cross-References

- [Hormones](#)
- [Leptin](#)
- [Obesity](#)

References and Readings

- He, W., Lam, T. K. T., Obici, S., & Rossetti, L. (2006). Molecular disruption of hypothalamic nutrient sensing induces obesity. *Nature Neuroscience*, 9(2), 227–233. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nn1626>.
- Saper, C. B., Chou, T. C., & Elmquist, J. K. (2002). The need to feed: Homeostatic and hedonic control of eating. *Neuron*, 36(2), 199–211. [https://doi.org/10.1016/s0896-6273\(02\)00969-8](https://doi.org/10.1016/s0896-6273(02)00969-8).
- Woods, S. C., Schwartz, M. W., Baskin, D. G., & Seeley, R. J. (2000). Food intake and the regulation of body weight. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 51, 255–277. <https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.psych.51.1.255>.

Apple Shaped

► Central Adiposity

Applied Behavior Analysis

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

Applied behavior analysis (ABA) reflects a systematic description and implementation of a therapeutic intervention to change a given behavior, based on the principles of the science of learning and behavior (Sulzer-Azaroff and Mayer 1991). This process involves an analytic investigation of various triggers that determine and modulate behavior. The determinants are usually environmental and include cues, reinforcements, or punishments, and these are time-linked to observed behavioral responses. This is often done in clinical psychopathological studies but has also been used to investigate behavior at the workplace.

One area where ABA has been extensively used is the study and treatment of autism (Vismara and Rogers 2010). Interventions in developmental disorders would, for example, include an initial analysis of existing behavior as a function of its environmental modulators (e.g., aggression in a child with developmental disorders, in response to a material trigger or reinforcement). The child then learns self-control as modulated by an intervention (signaling delayed rewards). The ABA enables to observe systematic changes in behavior due to existing environmental determinants or due to therapeutically manipulated interventions, using multiple observations and a within-subject detailed observation and recording of behavior.

ABA is also useful to analyze and treat behaviors which may result from or that occur in the context of medical procedures. Surgery for

removal of a craniopharyngioma often results in physiological and behavioral changes. In one case study, a 6-year-old girl exhibited severe aggression following surgery for this rare tumor. The aggression was negatively reinforced by escaping certain task demands and positively reinforced by preferred food. Following a highly structured behavioral intervention with extinction and reinforcement of alternative behaviors, her aggression declined to below 88% from baseline levels (Hammond and Hall 2011). These results exemplify how ABA is very useful for analyzing the determinants of aberrant behavior and how it may be successful in a therapeutic intervention context in various clinical settings.

Cross-References

- [Behavior Modification](#)
- [Behavioral Intervention](#)

References and Further Readings

- Hammond, J. L., & Hall, S. S. (2011). Functional analysis and treatment of aggressive behavior following resection of a craniopharyngioma. *Developmental Medicine and Child Neurology*, 53, 369–374.
- Sulzer-Azaroff, B., & Mayer, R. (1991). *Behavior analysis for lasting change*. Fort Worth: Holt, Reinhart & Winston.
- Vismara, L. A., & Rogers, S. J. (2010). Behavioral treatments in autism spectrum disorder: What do we know? *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology*, 27, 447–468.

Appreciation

- [Respect](#)

Arbitrary Inference

- [Catastrophizing/Catastrophic Thinking](#)

Arcuate Nucleus

► Hypothalamus

Area Under the Curve (AUC)

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

Area under the curve across all time

Definition

A common use of the term “area under the curve” (AUC) is found in pharmacokinetic literature. It represents the area under the plasma concentration curve, also called the plasma concentration-time profile. It is of interest to know the area under the curve, i.e., the area defined by the plasma concentration curve at the top and the x-axis (time) at the bottom. The AUC is a measure of total systemic exposure to the drug.

AUC is one of several important pharmacokinetic terms that are used to describe and quantify aspects of the plasma concentration-time profile of an administered drug (and/or its metabolites, which may or may not be pharmacologically active themselves). These include:

- $C_{\max}$: The maximum concentration or maximum systemic exposure
- $T_{\max}$: The time of maximum concentration or maximum systemic exposure
- $t_{1/2}$ or half-life: The time required to reduce the plasma concentration to one-half of its initial value

Integral calculus is used to calculate AUC, as can be done for other areas defined by a curve. This calculation requires a starting point and an ending point. The starting point is typically the time of administration, represented as time zero, to any subsequent time point, represented as t . This is denoted as $AUC_{(0-t)}$. It is also common to calculate AUC across all time, which is a measure of total systemic exposure. This is denoted as $AUC_{(0-\infty)}$.

Cross-References

- [Pharmaceutical Industry: Research and Development](#)

References and Further Reading

- Dhillon, S., & Kostrzewski, A. (Eds.). (2006). *Clinical pharmacokinetics*. London: Pharmaceutical Press.
- Mulder, G. J., & Powers, W. J. (Eds.). (2006). *Pharmaceutical toxicology*. London: Pharmaceutical Press.

Area Under the Curve Across All Time

- [Area Under the Curve \(AUC\)](#)

Arithmetic Mean

- [Mean \(Average\)](#)

Arousal

- [Affect Arousal](#)

Arrhythmia

Elizabeth R. Pulgaron and Diana Wile
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

Dysrhythmia

Definition

A normal heart beat in a healthy individual consists of electrical impulses, which engage all four ventricles of the heart, producing a smooth ebb and flow of electrical impulses and contractions to pump blood throughout the human body. An arrhythmia is an aberrant heart rhythm, which is either a change in the speed or pattern of the heart. Palpitations, near syncope and syncope (suddenly feeling light-headed or losing consciousness), chest pain, and shortness of breath are symptoms commonly associated with arrhythmias (American Heart Association 2011). Arrhythmias can result in tachycardia (increase in heart rate) or bradycardia (decrease in heart rate) which in severe cases could lead to sudden death.

There are four main types of arrhythmias: premature beats, supraventricular arrhythmias, ventricular arrhythmias, and bradyarrhythmias. Premature beats are the most common type of arrhythmia. They are often asymptomatic and do not require treatment. They can occur in the atria (the two upper chambers of the heart; premature atrial contractions) or in the ventricles (the two lower chambers of the heart; premature ventricular contractions). Premature beats often occur in healthy adults, but certain heart diseases can cause premature beats. Stress, exercise, or excessive caffeine intake or nicotine use can trigger

premature beats. Supraventricular arrhythmias are tachycardias that start in the atria or the atrio-ventricular node. Types of supraventricular arrhythmias include atrial fibrillation, atrial flutter, paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia, and Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome. Supraventricular tachycardia is the most common abnormal tachycardia in children. Of the more severe arrhythmias, atrial fibrillation is the most common. It occurs when the heart's electrical signal does not travel as it should through the chambers, and as a result, blood is not pumped into the lower two chambers of the heart. Ventricular arrhythmias can be life threatening and need immediate medical attention. Bradyarrhythmias cause the heart to beat slower than normal which may result in decreased blood flow to the brain and loss of consciousness (National Heart Lung and Blood Institute 2009).

In an otherwise healthy adult heart, arrhythmias can be caused by scar tissue as a result of a heart attack, heart disease, high blood pressure, diabetes, hyperthyroidism, smoking, and excessive alcohol and/or caffeine intake, illegal drug use, stress, or prescription medications as well as dietary supplements. Arrhythmias can also occur as a comorbid condition due to a diseased or deformed heart, which is typically the case with pediatric patients. Some arrhythmias occur without significant effects, but others can result in fainting, cardiac arrest, severe organ damage, and/or stroke. In the most severe cases, cardiac arrhythmias may result in sudden death.

Treatment of arrhythmias depends on severity. More mild cases may be treated solely with medication. The disadvantage of being treated with medication is that pills must be taken daily and indefinitely. Common side effects include nausea, fatigue, headaches, dizziness, palpitations, and skin rash (Horovitz 1997). One of the more concerning side effects is proarrhythmia, which results in recurrent subsequent arrhythmias which can be more intense than the original arrhythmias. Medication side effects often result in a lack of adherence. Other cases may require

surgery to either permanently stop tachycardia or implant a pacemaker to regulate the heart beat. The most severe cases may require radio-frequency catheter ablation, an invasive procedure which requires several catheters to be inserted into the heart through a vessel in the groin or arm. The catheter is moved to the site of the arrhythmia, and radiofrequency ablation (very-high-frequency radio waves are used to heat the tissue) or cryoablation (an extremely cold substance is used to freeze the tissue) is used to destroy the site.

Cross-References

- [Coronary Heart Disease](#)
- [Heart](#)

References and Readings

- American Heart Association. (2011). *Symptoms, diagnosis & monitoring of arrhythmia*. Retrieved 26 Jan 2011 from http://www.heart.org/HEARTORG/Conditions/Arrhythmia/SymptomsDiagnosisMonitoringofArrhythmia/Symptoms-Diagnosis-Monitoring-of-Arrhythmia_UCM_002025_Article.jsp
- Horovitz, E. (1997). *Arrhythmias, a patient's guide*. Menlo Park: Health Trend Publishing.
- National Heart Lung and Blood Institute. (2009). *Arrhythmia*. Retrieved 12 Jan 2011 from http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/dci/Diseases/arr/arr_all.html

ART

- [In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology](#)

Art Psychotherapy

- [Art Therapy](#)

Art Therapy

Hayley McDonald

Centre for Emotional Health, Macquarie University, Macquarie Park, NSW, Australia

Synonyms

[Art psychotherapy](#); [Expressive art therapy](#)

Definition

The profession of art therapy has been well established and recognized in many countries such as the UK, the USA, and Europe since the 1940s. The use of this type of therapy is regulated around the world by organizations such as the British Association of Art Therapists, the American Art Therapy Association, and the Australian, New Zealand and Asian Creative Arts Therapies Association. Art therapy has a dual heritage from art and psychodynamic theories. Although historically influenced by psychoanalysis, modern art therapy has been inspired by theories such as attachment-based psychotherapy and can be combined with other therapeutic interventions, such as cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) psychoeducation, mindfulness and mentalization-based treatments, compassion-focused and cognitive analytic therapies, and socially engaged practice (Case and Dalley 2014). As a result of this broad heritage and applications, there is a spectrum of definitions and ways of working within art therapy. Some therapists emphasize the art-making process itself as healing, whereas others focus on the therapeutic relationship with the therapist in the context of image-making as additional communication.

At its core, art therapy is a form of psychotherapy that uses art media as its primary mode of expression and communication. Within this context, art is not used as diagnostic tool but as a medium to address emotional issues which may be confusing and distressing (Case and Dalley 2014). Art therapists work with children, young people, adults, and the elderly. Clients may have a

wide range of difficulties, disabilities, or diagnoses. These include emotional, behavioral, or mental health problems related to physical disabilities, life-limiting conditions, neurological conditions, and physical illnesses. Depending on client needs, this treatment modality can be delivered individually or in groups.

Description

The presence of the art object made within the session makes art therapy distinct from other verbal psychotherapies (Ramm 2005). The essence of art therapy lies in creating something (Case and Dalley 2014). The image is of great significance in the symbolic representation of inner experience. This process of creativity and its product, the art form, are of central importance within the therapeutic encounter. The art process can facilitate the emergence of inner experience and feelings, expressed both consciously and unconsciously through the art materials. Even in a raw form, the art product can be the starting point for reflection and understanding between therapist and client (Ramm 2005).

Following an initial assessment, the treatment can be brief – up to 20 sessions – or long term (Uttley et al. 2015). Wherever the art therapist is working, a therapeutic contract between patient and therapist provides the framework, such as the time (the beginning and the end) of the session, the consistent space where the work takes place, and some understanding about duration of treatment (such as whether there is a time limit to the work). By placing boundaries around the sessions in terms of time and place, a sense of safety, confidentiality, and trust is created, allowing the therapeutic relationship to develop (Case and Dalley 2014). The maintenance of these boundaries makes room for the image to emerge in a contained setting and enables the expression of deep feelings and experiences. Where a therapeutic contract has been established between therapist and patient, following an initial assessment period, most art therapy sessions involve a combination of image-making, talking, and reflection on the issues that have surfaced (Ramm 2005). To

practice as an art therapist, training must be undertaken to qualify for membership with the relevant country's governing body.

A recent review article by Uttley et al. (2015) examined the evidence for clinical effectiveness of art therapy in populations with nonpsychotic mental health disorders. In addition to being a cost-effective intervention compared to waitlist, in 10 of the 15 randomized control trials included in the review, art therapy was associated with significant positive effects when compared with a control for a number of different clinical profiles. While there is limited research in the area of the efficacy of art therapy in health-related conditions, the available literature does suggest a significant positive effect on health outcomes across a variety of health conditions, such as adult and pediatric cancer populations (Stuckey and Nobel 2010). In a qualitative study (Reynolds and Lim 2007) investigating ongoing cancer-related difficulties such as fear for the future, pain, sleeplessness, role loss, activity restriction, reduced self-confidence, and altered social relationships in women with breast cancer, it was found that engaging in different types of visual art (textiles, card making, collage, pottery, watercolor, acrylics) helped these women in four major ways. First, it helped them focus on positive life experiences, relieving their ongoing preoccupation with cancer. Second, it enhanced their self-worth and identity by providing them with opportunities to demonstrate continuity, challenge, and achievement. Third, it enabled them to maintain a social identity that resisted being defined by cancer. Finally, it allowed them to express their feelings in a symbolic manner, especially during chemotherapy. The use of the arts in healing does not contradict the medical view in bringing emotional, somatic, artistic, and spiritual dimensions to learning. Rather, it complements the biomedical view by focusing on not only sickness and symptoms themselves, but the holistic nature of the person (Stuckey and Nobel 2010). When people are invited to work with creative and artistic processes that affect more than their identity with illness, they are more able to decrease psychological distress by creating congruence between their affective states and their conceptual

sense making (Stuckey and Nobel 2010). Through creativity and imagination, individuals are able to find their identity and reservoir of healing (Case and Dalley 2014).

Description

An elastic blood vessel that carries oxygenated blood

References and Further Reading

- Case, C., & Dalley, T. (2014). *The handbook of art therapy* (3rd ed.). Routledge.
- Ramm, A. (2005). What is drawing? Bringing the art into art therapy. *International Journal of Art Therapy*, 10(2), 63–77. <https://doi.org/10.1080/17454830500347393>.
- Reynolds, F., & Lim, K. H. (2007). Contribution of visual art-making to the subjective well-being of women living with cancer: A qualitative study. *The Arts in Psychotherapy*, 34(1), 1–10. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aip.2006.09.005>.
- Stuckey, H. L., & Nobel, J. (2010). The connection between art, healing, and public health: a review of current literature. *American Journal of Public Health*, 100(2), 254–263. <https://doi.org/10.2105/AJPH.2008.156497>.
- Uttley, L., Scope, A., Stevenson, M., Rawdin, A., Taylor Buck, E., Sutton, A., ... Wood, C. (2015). Systematic review and economic modelling of the clinical effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of art therapy among people with non-psychotic mental health disorders. *Health Technology Assessment*, 19(18), 1–120. <https://doi.org/10.3310/hta19180>.

ART, Assisted Reproductive Technology

► Surrogacy

Arteries

Linda C. Baumann¹ and Alyssa Ylinen²

¹School of Nursing, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

²Allina Health System, St. Paul, MN, USA

Synonyms

Arteriola

Definition

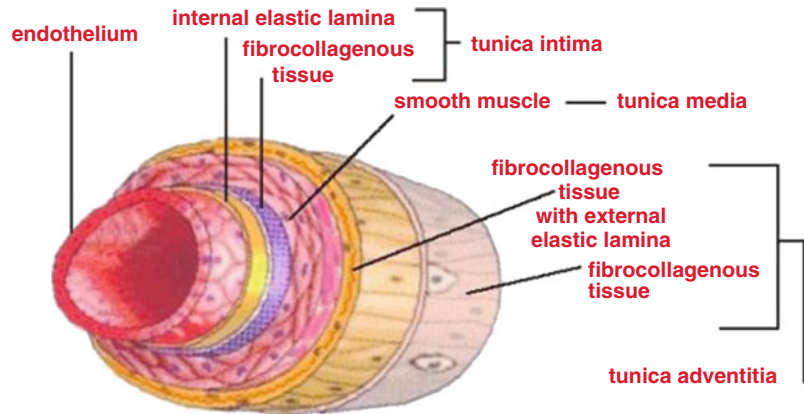
Arteries are blood vessels that carry blood away from the heart. In most cases, arteries carry oxygenated blood. The exception is pulmonary arteries which carry deoxygenated blood from the heart to the lungs to become oxygenated. Because the arterial system is a high-pressure system due to the pressure created by ventricular contraction, arterial walls are generally thick in structure. The two main arteries branching from the heart are the pulmonary artery, which carries blood to the pulmonary circulation, and the aorta, which carries blood into systemic circulation.

Arteries contain smooth muscle and elastic fibers to allow arterial walls to stretch with ventricular contraction and then recoil pushing blood forward. Large arteries such as the aorta and pulmonary artery are composed mainly of elastic tissue and a smaller proportion of smooth muscle, while smaller arteries or arterioles are composed mostly of smooth muscle with little elastic tissue. The contraction and relaxation of smooth muscle dilates or constricts the arterioles and controls blood pressure and blood flow distribution.

Structurally, arteries have three layers. The outermost layer is called the tunica adventitia. It mostly consists of fibrous connective tissue and provides support and prevents tearing of the vessel walls. The middle layer is the tunica media and is composed of a layer of smooth muscle and a layer of elastic tissue. This is the thickest layer and is responsible for the changes in diameter when the artery contracts and dilates. The innermost layer is referred to as the tunica intima and is made up of endothelium, which form a smooth lining.

Atherosclerosis is a common disorder of the arteries in which plaque – the accumulation of fatty acids, cholesterol, calcium, and other cellular waste products – forms in the arteries and can block

Arteries, Fig. 1 Cross section of an artery



blood flow. Although the exact cause of atherosclerosis is unknown, there are many behavioral risk factors. These include excessive alcohol use, high-fat diets, obesity, and smoking (Fig. 1).

Cross-References

- [Peripheral Arterial Disease \(PAD\)/Vascular Disease](#)

References and Further Readings

- Atherosclerosis. (2010a). *American Heart Association*. Retrieved 13 Aug, from <http://www.americanheart.org/presenter.jhtml?identifier=4440>
- Atherosclerosis. (2010b). *Medline Plus*. Retrieved 20 Mar, from <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000171.htm>
- Jarvis, C. (2008). *Physical examination and health assessment* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby Elsevier.
- Lewis, S. L., Heitkemper, M. M., Dirksen, S. R., O'Brien, P. G., & Bucher, L. (2007). *Medical surgical nursing: Assessment and management of clinical problems* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby Elsevier.
- Thibodeau, G. A., & Patton, K. T. (2007). *Anatomy and physiology* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby Elsevier.

Arteriography

- [Angiography/Angioplasty](#)

Arteriola

- [Arteries](#)

Arteriosclerosis

- [Atherosclerosis](#)

Arthritis

Beth Schroeder
University of Delaware, Newark, DE, USA

Synonyms

[Joint inflammation](#); [Joint pain](#)

Definition

Arthritis is a general term used to describe inflammation of one or more joints of the body and/or their surrounding connective tissues. This is can be a progressive condition in which the articular cartilage covering the bones at the joint surfaces begins deteriorating, leading to a loss of smooth and friction-free movement. The

cartilage is also responsible for absorbing some of the mechanical forces transmitted through the joint. As the cartilage is lost, the joint space between the articulating bones begins to narrow, altering the distribution of mechanical forces through the joint. As the arthritis progresses, it may lead to bone cyst or osteophyte formation, as well as exposure of the subchondral bone surfaces.

The symptoms of arthritis often include pain, swelling, and stiffness of the involved joints, which all may lead to limited range of motion and mobility. Treatment of arthritis is based upon its cause, but it is initially directed toward reducing pain and swelling and restoring mobility. Exercise is known to be beneficial for bone and joint health, as it helps to maintain range of motion as well as to increase bone and muscle strength. Continual activity and movement of joints is also necessary to provide nutrients and remove wastes, since articular cartilage lacks its own blood supply.

While it is known that trauma, bacteria, or infections may cause arthritis, often the trigger for the pathology is unknown. Some of the most common forms of arthritis include osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, juvenile idiopathic arthritis, psoriatic arthritis, infectious arthritis, and reactive arthritis.

Osteoarthritis (OA), also known as degenerative joint disease, commonly affects the major weight-bearing joints of the knee and hip, but it can affect any joint in the body. It is a result of an imbalance in the remodeling process of joints, as connective tissue and bone destruction outweighs its repair. This imbalance affects the joint capsule, and many individuals with OA may complain of joint instability.

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) is an autoimmune condition in which the synovial lining of a joint is affected. It is characterized by periods of exacerbation and remission, and it also includes systemic symptoms, such as fatigue, fever, and impaired cardiopulmonary function.

Juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA) is a catch-all term for arthritides that begin before the age of 16, with each type having unique characteristics and impairments.

Psoriatic arthritis is a type of arthritis that occurs in patients with the skin condition psoriasis. Most often, the joints in the spine and at the ends of the fingers and toes are affected.

Sometimes bacteria, a fungus, or a virus may infect a joint and lead to arthritis. This is known as septic or infectious arthritis. The effects from this type of arthritis are local, affecting the specific joint in the body that the foreign organism attacks. It also typically has an acute onset, and it may be accompanied by other symptoms, such as fever or chills.

Reactive arthritis is similar to infectious arthritis. It is caused by an infection; however, the arthritic symptoms will occur at a site other than the one actually infected. This type of arthritis is often associated with Reiter syndrome, a condition which includes arthritis, urethritis, and conjunctivitis.

Cross-References

► [Arthritis: Psychosocial Aspects](#)

References and Readings

- A.D.A.M. Medical Encyclopedia [Internet]. Atlanta (GA): A.D.A.M., Inc.; ©2010. Arthritis; [last reviewed 2010 Feb 05; cited 2011 April 18]; [about 7 p.]. Available from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmedhealth/PMH0002223>
- A.D.A.M. Medical Encyclopedia [Internet]. Atlanta (GA): A.D.A.M., Inc.; ©2010. Psoriatic arthritis; [last reviewed 2010a May 13; cited 2011 April 18]; [about 2 p.]. Available from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmedhealth/PMH0001450/>
- A.D.A.M. Medical Encyclopedia [Internet]. Atlanta (GA): A.D.A.M., Inc.; ©2010. Rheumatoid arthritis; [last reviewed 2010b Feb 07; cited 2011 April 18]; [about 6 p.]. Available from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmedhealth/PMH0001467/>
- Goodman, C. C., & Fuller, K. S. (2009). *Pathology: Implications for the physical therapist* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Saunders Elsevier.
- Hansen, J. T. (2010). *Netter's clinical anatomy*. Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Kisner, C., & Colby, L. A. (2002). *Therapeutic exercise*. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis Company.

Arthritis: Psychosocial Aspects

Mary C. Davis, Alex Zautra and Shannon L. Stark
Department of Psychology, Arizona State
University, Tempe, AZ, USA

Synonyms

Arthritis; Chronic pain; Musculoskeletal pain

Definition

The psychosocial aspects of arthritis encompass both stable and dynamic psychological and social factors that play a role in the etiology of and adaptation to musculoskeletal pain conditions.

Description

Psychosocial Factors in Arthritis

Because the course of arthritis varies considerably across individuals, investigators have attempted to identify factors that predict the extent to which patients with arthritis are able to minimize symptoms and maximize well-being. Somewhat surprisingly, radiographic and other objective assessments of disease activity do not reliably predict the experience symptoms and disability among patients. In contrast, psychosocial factors play an important role in the etiology and course of rheumatic diseases, over and above objective disease markers.

In this chapter, stress and stress responses are considered central to understanding how psychosocial factors contribute to adaptation in rheumatic disease. A stressor is defined as an event that is perceived as threatening or beyond one's ability to cope and that evokes physiological, affective, cognitive, and behavioral responses. Stressors may be brief or long term and range in magnitude from minor events to major or traumatic events. In this framework, the pain, disability, and other demands imposed by the pain condition itself can act as a stressor. Stress

responses vary between individuals, depend on current context, and may be key mediators in the link between stress and mental and physical health outcomes in rheumatic illness. Thus, it is useful to ask not only *who* is most affected by illness and other stressors but also *when* are individuals most vulnerable.

Much of the literature on stress and adaptation has focused on factors that place individuals at greater risk of poor functioning. More recently, though, research efforts have broadened to include not only risk but also "resilience factors," that is, factors that help individuals recover from episodes of stress and preserve their well-being despite pain and other stressors. In the sections that follow, affective, cognitive, and social factors that moderate responses to stress in patients with arthritis are first considered, followed by discussion of interventions that target these factors to promote better adaptation among individuals with rheumatic conditions.

Stress

The association between stressful life events and the etiology and course of rheumatic disease depends on the timing and magnitude of the events. For example, traumatic events experienced in childhood, including abuse, neglect, and parental loss, significantly increase the risk of developing chronic inflammation and chronic pain and have been linked to the severity of pain in adulthood (Von Korff et al. 2010). Traumatic events in adulthood also increase disease severity, particularly for individuals who experience post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) symptoms. Several mechanisms may account for the trauma-disease severity link. Trauma exposure may trigger PTSD and other affective symptoms, which in turn increase symptom severity. Additionally, traumatic events may disrupt the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal-cortical axis (HPAC), an important component of physiological stress response system. For example, childhood maltreatment reported by women with fibromyalgia and osteoarthritis (OA) have been linked to elevated cortisol, a key stress hormone associated with the HPAC (Nicolson et al. 2010). HPAC dysregulation, reflected in both hypo- and

hypercortisol reactivity, has been associated with traumatic experiences and PTSD and with vulnerability to disease activity.

Major and minor life events also predict symptom severity in rheumatic illness. For example, patients with rheumatoid arthritis (RA) experienced reduced symptoms in the weeks following a major life event, but increased symptoms in the weeks following minor stressors (Potter and Zautra 1997). One possible explanation for this finding is that a major event can elicit an increase in cortisol, which acts to dampen immune functioning. Minor life events, on the other hand, may enhance immune stimulating hormones and make cortisol less effective in dampening immune function (Davis et al. 2008). Clearly, stressors themselves are important factors in the experience of chronic pain, but psychological and social factors that influence coping responses are also likely to play a significant role. Coping factors can be categorized as primarily affective, cognitive, or social.

Affective Components

The stable trait-like aspects as well as the fluctuating state aspects of affect have both been linked to adaptation in rheumatic disease. Although much of the literature has focused on the detrimental role of negative affect, positive affect also plays a role in determining how individuals respond to stress. One of the most frequently studied affective disorders in rheumatic disease patients is depression. Depression is so highly prevalent among chronic pain patients that some investigators have suggested that depressive symptoms should be considered part of the experience of pain. In fact, neuroimaging studies have revealed that pain activates brain regions associated with both sensory and affective components of pain (Tolle et al. 1999). Current depression as well as a history of recurrent depression predict greater pain during episodes of increased stress and more distress during episodes of increased pain among RA patients (Zautra et al. 2007). Because depression and stress are both associated with inflammatory activity in RA, each of these factors may increase disease activity. Thus, depression may increase vulnerability to

increased pain and inflammation during episodes of stress among patients with rheumatic disease.

Individual differences in negative and positive affectivity have also been linked to vulnerability to the detrimental effects of stress among pain patients. For example, neuroticism is a personality trait characterized by elevated negative affect and has been linked to elevated pain in both cross-sectional and longitudinal studies of pain patients (Charles et al. 1999). Conversely, greater positive affectivity is related to decreased pain and increased functional ability in patients with rheumatic disease (Villanueva et al. 1999).

Within-person changes in affect may also have implications for illness severity and course. Studying the day-to-day variations in mood can yield information about times *when* patients are most or least vulnerable to the effects of stress. Because both negative and positive emotions make unique contributions to quality of life and adaptation, it is important to consider how variations in both affective states over time relate to the course of rheumatic disease. Increases in negative affect have been linked to increased pain and greater sensitization to pain, as well as to increases in stress (Janssen 2002). Thus, negative affect may be not only a part of the experience of pain itself but also a response to stress in pain patients. Positive affect, in contrast, helps to decrease vulnerability to both pain and stress in rheumatic patients (Zautra et al. 2005).

Cognitive Components

Cognitive stress responses reflect patients' appraisals of the stressor and of their ability to manage it and typically have been characterized as dimensions of coping. A key aspect of this appraisal process is the extent to which individuals perceive a sense of control or lack thereof. In the case of rheumatic illness, an important sense of control centers on an individual's confidence in her or his ability to manage pain and other symptoms that are often unpredictable. One widely used instrument developed to quantify these control beliefs, the Arthritis Self-Efficacy Scale, yields scores that reflect a sense of control over pain, function, and other arthritis symptoms (Lorig et al. 1993). High arthritis self-efficacy

scores consistently relate to better functional health in arthritis patients. For example, higher levels of arthritis self-efficacy relate to higher pain thresholds and increased tolerance to standardized pain stimuli in RA (Keefe et al. 1997). Similarly, arthritis self-efficacy predicts lower pain and better physical functioning in OA.

In contrast to arthritis self-efficacy, pain catastrophizing is characterized by beliefs about a lack of control of symptoms. Among arthritis patients, catastrophic pain beliefs relate to higher ratings of pain intensity, more frequent pain behaviors, and greater pain-related disability, disease activity, and health-care utilization (Keefe et al. 2001). Neuroimaging studies have linked pain catastrophizing with greater activation of brain regions associated with anticipation of pain, emotional aspects of pain, and attention to pain (Gracely et al. 2004). Pain catastrophizing is also related to decreased noxious inhibitory control of pain, indicating less effective modulation of pain signaling at the level of the spinal cord. Thus, pain catastrophizing may impact pain via a number of mechanisms, including directly by amplifying the central nervous system's processing of pain and indirectly by hampering the endogenous descending inhibitory pathway.

Arthritis self-efficacy and pain catastrophizing are among the most frequently studied cognitive factors in rheumatic disease, but others have received some empirical attention as well. More recently, interest has been directed toward evaluating the contribution of pain acceptance to adaptation in rheumatic disease. The capacity to accept pain without trying to alter or avoid it has emerged as a moderator of pain-related disability and distress among arthritis patients. For example, OA and fibromyalgia patients who were more versus less able to accept their pain showed smaller increases in negative affect during weeks of elevated pain and reported higher overall levels of positive affect (Kratz et al. 2007). In instances of uncontrollable pain in particular, pain acceptance may be a valuable cognitive resource to preserve affective and physical health. Beyond cognitive factors that are specific to pain or stress management, those that reflect broader beliefs regarding one's own resilience are emerging as key to health

in rheumatic disease. For example, recent evidence suggests that a sense of a purpose in life and belief in one's own capacity to bounce back from difficulty relate to faster habituation to thermal pain stimuli (Smith et al. 2009). Thus, "resilience" factors are gaining traction as important predictors of successful coping.

Social Factors

Social relationships are ever-present sources of both stress and fulfillment in everyday life and play an important role in adaptation to rheumatic disease. Social pain is recognized as a concept that focuses on the interplay between social relationships and physical pain. Social pain is an emotional response to perceived exclusion from desired social relationships or perceived devaluation or rejection from significant members of an individual's social network. Just as physical pain is adaptive in signaling a threat of physical harm, social pain is adaptive because it signals a need for social connectedness. Findings from neuroimaging studies suggest that the neural circuitry underlying physical and social pain overlap; the affectively distressing components of both activate the anterior cingulate cortex. Social pain may have special relevance for patients with rheumatic conditions for several reasons. Patients may experience social pain related to their condition, when they perceive that important others do not understand their pain. The resulting sense of stigma and estrangement can further exacerbate their physical and social pain. In addition, physical pain episodes themselves may make patients more vulnerable to social pain, potentially creating a downward spiral of increasing pain, isolation, and disability.

On the positive side of social relations, social connectedness can reduce pain intensity, increase pain tolerance, and dampen stress-related changes in mood and symptoms. One proposed pathway through which social connectedness affects health outcomes is by buffering individuals from the negative effects of increased pain and stress. For example, an investigation of fibromyalgia patients revealed that when a significant other was present, patients reported less sensitivity to thermal pain and showed diminished pain-related brain

activity, compared to when they were alone (Montoya et al. 2004). Thus, social connections are double-edged; they can both help and hinder rheumatic patients' capacity to respond effectively to pain and stress. To sustain health and well-being, individuals with rheumatic conditions must have the ability not only to sustain strong social connections but also to draw on them during difficulty.

Psychosocial Interventions for Arthritis

At present, cognitive-behavioral treatment (CBT) for pain is widely considered to be among the most efficacious behavioral interventions available (Morley et al. 1999). CBT explicitly targets maladaptive ways of thinking, feeling, and behaving in response to the illness and yields improvements in pain, coping, and social role functioning compared to other psychosocial treatments and standard medical care. However, it yields less substantial improvements in mood disturbance, possibly because it does not target the emotion regulation problems that are common among rheumatic disease patients.

Accruing evidence highlights the potential value of a mindful-acceptance-based approach to enhance the capacity of patients to manage the physical, emotional, and social demands of their illness. Rather than encouraging control of pain and dysfunctional thoughts, an approach grounded in mindful-acceptance targets enhanced awareness and acceptance of current experiences, including pain and other stresses. An expanded awareness of current experience also incorporates attention to the positive features of the moment. Some treatments go further and explicitly include an emphasis on engagement in rewarding activity to bolster social connectedness and positive affect. The goal of these approaches is to build both psychological and social resources and the capacity to access and utilize those resources when needed. Further, the benefits of an acceptance-based approach may be most apparent for those patients who are most vulnerable to emotion dysregulation. For example, in RA patients with a history of recurrent depression, mindful-acceptance treatment yielded greater improvements in pain, fatigue, positive and

negative affect, and inflammation at posttreatment and 6 month follow-up compared to CBT and an education control (Zautra et al. 2008). Thus, the capacity to attend to both positive and negative experiences in an intentional way and to build greater social connectedness may be key to promoting functional health in arthritis patients.

Existing evidence points to the key roles of psychosocial risk and resilience factors in adaptation to rheumatic disease and encourages continued efforts to advance understanding of how biological, psychological, and social factors interact to promote health and well-being in patients with rheumatic conditions.

Cross-References

- [Arthritis](#)
- [Pain Management/Control](#)
- [Psychosocial Characteristics](#)
- [Psychosocial Factors](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Reading

- Charles, S. T., Gatz, M., Pedersen, N. L., & Dahlberg, L. (1999). Genetic and behavioral risk factors for self-reported joint pain among a population-based sample of Swedish twins. *Health Psychology, 18*(6), 644–654.
- Davis, M. C., Zautra, A. J., Younger, J., Motivila, S., Attrep, J., & Irwin, M. (2008). Chronic stress and regulation of cellular markers of inflammation in rheumatoid arthritis. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity, 22*, 24–32.
- Gracely, R. H., Geisser, M. E., Giesecke, M. A. B., Petzke, F., Williams, D. A., & Clauw, D. J. (2004). Pain catastrophizing and neural responses to pain among persons with fibromyalgia. *Brain, 127*, 835–843.
- Janssen, S. A. (2002). Negative affect and sensitization to pain. *Scandinavian Journal of Psychology, 73*, 212–220.
- Keefe, F. J., Affleck, G., Lefebvre, J. C., Starr, K., Caldwell, D. S., & Tennen, H. (1997). Coping strategies in rheumatoid arthritis: A daily process analysis. *Pain, 69*, 43–48.
- Keefe, F. J., Lumley, M., Anderson, T., Lunch, T., & Carson, K. L. (2001). Pain and emotion: New research directions. *Journal of Clinical Psychology, 57*, 587–607.
- Kratz, A. L., Davis, M. C., & Zautra, A. J. (2007). Pain acceptance moderates the relation between pain and negative affect in female osteoarthritis and

fibromyalgia patients. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 33, 291–301.

- Lorig, K. R., Mazonson, P. D., & Holman, H. R. (1993). Evidence suggesting that health education for self-management in patients with chronic arthritis has sustained health benefits while reducing health care costs. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 36, 439–446.
- Montoya, P., Larbig, W., Braum, C., Preissl, H., & Niels, B. (2004). Influence of social support and emotional context on pain processing and magnetic brain responses in fibromyalgia. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 50, 4035–4044.
- Morley, S., Eccleston, C., & William, A. (1999). Systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials of cognitive behavior therapy and behavior therapy for chronic pain in adults, excluding headache. *Pain*, 80, 1–13.
- Nicolson, N. A., Davis, M. C., Kruszewski, D., & Zautra, A. J. (2010). Childhood maltreatment and diurnal cortisol patterns in women with chronic pain. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 72, 471–480.
- Potter, P. T., & Zautra, A. J. (1997). Stressful life events' effects on rheumatoid arthritis disease activity. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 65, 319–323.
- Smith, B. W., Tooley, E. M., Montague, E. Q., Robinson, A. E., Cosper, C. J., & Mullins, P. G. (2009). The role of resilience and purpose in life in habituation to heat and cold pain. *The Journal of Pain*, 10, 493–500.
- Tolle, T. R., Kaufmann, T., Siessmeir, T., Lautenbacher, S., Berthele, A., Munz, F., et al. (1999). Region-specific encoding of sensory and affective components of pain in the human brain: A positron emission tomography correlation analysis. *Annals of Neurology*, 45, 40–47.
- Villanueva, I., Cornett, M., Yocum, D., & Castro, W. L. (1999). Living healthy with arthritis: Individual's positive affect predicts outcomes of a community based multidisciplinary interventional program focusing on wellness and preventive care in arthritis. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 42, S1244.
- Von Korff, M., Alonso, J., Ormel, J., Angermeyer, M., Bruffaerts, R., Fleiz, C., et al. (2010). Childhood psychosocial stressors and adult onset arthritis: Broad spectrum risk factors and allostatic load. *Pain*, 143, 76–83.
- Zautra, A. J., Johnson, L. M., & Davis, M. C. (2005). Positive affect as a source of resilience for women in chronic pain. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 73, 212–220.
- Zautra, A. J., Parrish, B. P., Van Puymbroeck, C. M., Tennen, H., Davis, M. C., Reich, J. W., et al. (2007). Depression history, stress, and pain in rheumatoid arthritis patients. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 30, 187–197.
- Zautra, A. J., Davis, M. C., Reich, J. W., Nicassio, P., Tennen, H., Finan, P., et al. (2008). Comparison of cognitive behavioral and mindfulness meditation interventions on adaptation to rheumatoid arthritis for patients with and without history of recurrent depression. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 3, 408–421.

Artificial Environment

► Virtual Reality

Artificial Intelligence

► Virtual Reality

Aspirin

William Whang¹ and Ana Victoria Soto²

¹Division of Cardiology, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

²Medicine – Residency Program, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Antiplatelet therapy](#)

Definition

Drug that inhibits platelet aggregation.

Aspirin inhibition of the enzyme cyclooxygenase-1 (COX-1) in platelets prevents arachidonic acid-induced production of thromboxane A₂, a potent mediator of platelet aggregation, as well as vasoconstriction. The half-life of aspirin is only 20 min in the plasma, but due to its irreversible effects on COX-1, the therapeutic effects can last the lifetime of the platelet, up to 1 week following administration (Patrono et al. 1985). Aspirin has been shown to reduce cardiovascular events in the setting of acute myocardial infarction and acute stroke (Antithrombotic Trialists' (ATT) Collaboration 2002). It is also recommended that aspirin be administered (300–350 mg) to patients undergoing stent placement (Schwartz et al. 1988). Higher doses of aspirin (≥300 mg/day) have been shown to produce a greater effect on COX-2, thereby achieving

anti-inflammatory and analgesic properties as well. Aspirin at those higher doses, though, has been shown to have gastrointestinal side effects such as bleeding by eroding the protective prostaglandins in the gut mucosa (Roderick et al. 1993).

For primary prevention of cardiovascular events, meta-analyses have indicated a reduction in myocardial infarction risk that is offset by an increase in risk of major gastrointestinal and extracranial bleeding. However, no reduction in cardiovascular events has been shown in a meta-analysis of studies involving patients with diabetes (Antithrombotic Trialists' (ATT) Collaboration 2009; Stavrakis et al. 2011).

percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 318, 1714–1719.
Stavrakis, S., Stoner, J. A., Azar, M., Wayangankar, S., & Thadani, U. (2011). Low-dose aspirin for primary prevention of cardiovascular events in patients with diabetes: A meta-analysis. *The American Journal of the Medical Sciences*, 341, 1–9.

Cross-References

► [Coagulation of Blood](#)

References and Further Reading

- Antithrombotic Trialists' (ATT) Collaboration. (2002). Collaborative meta-analysis of randomized trials of antiplatelet therapy for prevention of death, myocardial infarction, and stroke in high risk patients. *British Medical Journal*, 324, 71–86.
- Antithrombotic Trialists' (ATT) Collaboration. (2009). Aspirin in the primary and secondary prevention of vascular disease: Collaborative meta-analysis of individual participant data from randomised trials. *Lancet*, 373, 1849–1860.
- King, S. B., 3rd, Smith, S. C., Jr., Hirshfeld, J. W., Jr., Jacobs, A. K., Morrison, D. A., Williams, D. O., et al. (2008). 2007 focused update of the ACC/AHA/SCAI 2005 guideline update for percutaneous coronary intervention: A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 51, 172–209.
- Patrono, C., Ciabattini, G., Patrignani, P., Pugliese, F., Filabozzi, P., Catella, F., et al. (1985). Clinical pharmacology of platelet cyclooxygenase inhibition. *Circulation*, 72, 1177–1184.
- Roderick, J. P., Wilkes, H. C., & Meade, T. W. (1993). The gastrointestinal toxicity of aspirin: An overview of randomized controlled trials. *British Journal of Clinical Pharmacology*, 35, 219–226.
- Schwartz, L., Bouassa, M. G., Lesperance, J., Aldridge, H. E., Kazim, F., Salvatori, V. A., et al. (1988). Aspirin and dipyridamole in the prevention of restenosis after

Assertiveness Training

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Definition

Assertiveness training (AT) is a behavioral intervention, often part of cognitive behavior therapy (CBT), stress management, or anger management. In AT, people learn to express themselves in social contexts, despite having barriers. These include learning to express socially “unaccepted” emotions such as anger, disliking others’ behavior, and requests for someone to change their behavior. In a typical assertive statement, there are often identifying a problem in another person’s behavior, a request to change, and, if needed, a statement of the consequences if one’s request is not met. Such a statement can also include one’s attitude or experienced emotions due to the other person’s behavior. Yet, all these need to be done while respecting the other person.

AT is often taught in a group format and is usually done in a gradual manner. People first learn to state simple requests such as “I cannot see, can you please move a bit?” until they are able to state difficult statements such as “yesterday, you made me angry and humiliated me in front of everyone. I ask you please not to say those things again in public; otherwise, I will need to consider our friendship.” In an intervention done on hostility reduction, Gidron and Davidson (1996) and Gidron et al. (1999) used AT as part of a CBT intervention. Their CBT yielded greater

reduction in hostility in healthy and cardiac patients and greater reductions in blood pressure in the latter study, compared to a minimal attention education-control group. Furthermore, in a reanalysis pertinent to AT, Davidson et al. (1999) found that greater constructive anger expression mediated the effects of hostility reduction (group) on blood pressure changes. Constructive anger expression was the aim of the AT element of their program. In another study, hypertensive patients were found to exhibit less assertiveness than normotensive patients. Additionally, especially during confrontation, overt anger expression led to elevated physiological responses in hypertensive patients (Larkin and Zayfert 2004). These results demonstrate the important role of anger expression and of learning AT for the cardiac system.

In other domains in behavior medicine, AT can be of great importance. For example, training patients to communicate their concerns and symptoms more adequately to physicians could be an important application of AT in medicine. This can be important in empowering patients to take more control over their health care. AT could be especially important for patients with an introverted or type D personality, who were found not to communicate their symptoms to doctors (Schiffer et al. 2007). AT may be of benefit for such patients. Another example is the use of AT in communication between health professionals working in teams, often under immense psychosocial pressures and hierarchical tension, such as in the operating room (Buback 2004). The domain of AT exemplifies the multiple roles of behavior medicine – increasing the knowledge of the effects of behavior on the body and implementing such knowledge in patient interventions and in stress management among medical teams as well.

Cross-References

- [Anger Management](#)
- [Stress Management](#)

References and Further Readings

- Buback, D. (2004). Assertiveness training to prevent verbal abuse in the OR. *AORN Journal*, 79, 148–150. 153–158, 161–164.
- Davidson, K., Macgregor, M. W., Stuhr, J., & Gidron, Y. (1999). Increasing constructive anger verbal behavior decreases resting blood pressure: A secondary analysis of a randomized controlled hostility intervention. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 6, 268–278.
- Gidron, Y., & Davidson, K. (1996). Development and preliminary testing of a brief intervention for modifying CHD-predictive hostility components. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 19, 203–220.
- Gidron, Y., Davidson, K., & Bata, I. (1999). The short-term effects of a hostility-reduction intervention on male coronary heart disease patients. *Health Psychology*, 18, 416–420.
- Larkin, K. T., & Zayfert, C. (2004). Anger expression and essential hypertension: Behavioral response to confrontation. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 56, 113–118.
- Schiffer, A. A., Denollet, J., Widdershoven, J. W., Hendriks, E. H., & Smith, O. R. (2007). Failure to consult for symptoms of heart failure in patients with a type-D personality. *Heart*, 93, 814–818.

Assessment

Anthony J. Wheeler¹, Scott DeBerard¹ and Julie Murray²

¹Department of Psychology, Utah State University, Logan, UT, USA

²Utah State University, Logan, UT, USA

Synonyms

[Intellectual testing](#); [Psychological testing](#)

Definition

Assessment in behavioral medicine aims to evaluate the biological, psychological, and social functioning of a patient. This may involve assessing physiological, mood, cognitive, and social functioning and integrating these findings to inform appropriate research and practice.

Description

The overall purpose of assessment is to examine characteristics of patients or research participants. Assessment in behavioral medicine can include a wide variety of possible domains (e.g., physical, cognitive, mood, quality of life, health behaviors, etc.). Assessment can also take on different forms, such as a patient-reported survey, a rating scale filled out by a health-care practitioner, or a device which measures physiological functioning. Users of such assessments are tasked with using and administering assessment instruments that have demonstrated reliability and validity. Regardless of the manner in which assessment data are gathered, they can be used to identify health problems, guide practitioners in making treatment decisions, and measure progress of health interventions.

Assessing physical functioning is a common practice in behavioral medicine as it can identify physical health problems or risk factors for future problems and provide benchmarks for treatment (Vingerhoets 2001). Common examples of physical assessment are biofeedback, electrocardiography, and endocrine system function. These assessments may be carried out by physicians, nurses, or other health-care providers. In each of these cases, the assessment tool can yield important information about a patient's current physical status, which can then be used to recommend appropriate interventions, if necessary.

Cognitive assessments may be used when deficits of learning, memory, and problem-solving capabilities are suspected. These instruments frequently involve hands-on tasks such as assembling figures and solving visual puzzles as well as more verbal types of tasks that require basic problem-solving abilities and general knowledge. The Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale-IV is a good example of one such cognitive test (Lichtenberger and Kaufman 2009). Cognitive assessments are often administered by psychologists, and the findings may be used to guide psychological, medical, or occupational interventions.

Assessing psychological characteristics relative to mood states and personality is another

useful assessment activity conducted by behavioral medicine practitioners. These tools are most often paper and pencil surveys which assess various symptom constellations. Psychological assessments range in length and time required to complete the inventory. The Beck Depression Inventory-II, for example, has 21 multiple-choice items and takes about 5 min to complete. The Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory-II has several 100 items and takes at least an hour to complete (Butcher 2011). Psychologists are the most frequent administrators and interpreters of these types of tests.

Identifying and measuring health behaviors is yet another type of assessment conducted in behavioral medicine. This might involve measuring diet, alcohol intake, exercise activity, or sleep habits, among others. Such behaviors are often the focus of interventions in behavioral medicine and are often associated with both psychological and physical health status (Vingerhoets 2001). Further, health behavior assessment can be used to identify risk factors for diseases such as diabetes, substance dependence, or hypertension.

An increasingly popular area of assessment is in patient quality of life (Ware and Gandek 1998). These assessments are patient-reported surveys that include measures of physical disability, pain and suffering, and self-efficacy. A common example is the Short Form (36) Health Survey, a 36-item survey of daily functioning and health status. These survey data are commonly used in research and practice to evaluate the effectiveness of pharmacological or surgical treatments and establish functional benefit for patients (O'Connor et al. 2009).

Finally, it should be noted that in most areas of medicine, especially in clinical trials, a typical approach for assessing patient outcomes is to include both disease-specific and overall quality of life measures. This approach to assessment ensures that changes both to specific disease processes and also patient-relevant outcomes in terms of functional abilities are equally considered.

Assessment can take on many forms and purposes in behavioral medicine. Assessment is a commonplace and useful tool for the behavioral

medicine practitioner. It can be used to identify risk for pathology, inform interventions, and mark progress to change.

Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2009(3), CD001431.

Vingerhoets, A. J. J. M. (2001). *Assessment in behavioral medicine*. New York: Brunner-Routledge.

Ware, J. E., Jr. (2000). SF-36 health survey update. *Spine*, 25(24), 3130–3139.

A

Cross-References

- ▶ Ambulatory Blood Pressure
- ▶ Anxiety and Its Measurement
- ▶ Beck Depression Inventory (BDI)
- ▶ Depression: Measurement
- ▶ Health Assessment Questionnaire
- ▶ Health Behaviors
- ▶ Health Outcomes Research
- ▶ Health-Related Quality of Life
- ▶ Hospital Anxiety Depression Scale
- ▶ McGill Pain Questionnaire
- ▶ Measures of Quality of Life
- ▶ Medical Outcomes Study
- ▶ Patient-Reported Outcome
- ▶ Physical Activity and Health
- ▶ Quality of Life: Measurement
- ▶ Reliability and Validity
- ▶ SF-36
- ▶ Validity
- ▶ Vocational Assessment

References and Further Reading

- Butcher, J. N. (2011). *A beginner's guide to the MMPI-2* (3rd ed.). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Gregory, R. J. (2010). *Psychological testing: History, principles, and applications*. Saddle River: Prentice Hall.
- Lichtenberger, E. O., & Kaufman, A. S. (2009). *Essentials of WAIS-IV assessment* (Essentials of psychological assessment). Hoboken: Wiley.
- Marek, R. J., & Ben-Porath, Y. S. (2017). Using the Minnesota multiphasic personality inventory-2-restructured form (MMPI-2-RF) in behavioral medicine settings. In *Handbook of psychological assessment in primary care settings* (pp. 631–662). New York: Routledge.
- Maruish, M. E. (Ed.). (2017). *Handbook of psychological assessment in primary care settings*. New York: Taylor & Francis.
- O'Connor, A. M., Bennett, C. L., Stacey, D., Barry, M., Col, N. F., Eden, K. B., et al. (2009). Decision aids for people facing health treatment or screening decisions.

Assisted Living

Josh Allen

Care and Compliance Group, Inc., American Assisted Living Nurses Association, Wildomar, CA, USA

Definition

Assisted living is a state regulated and monitored residential long-term care option. Assisted living provides or coordinates oversight and services to meet the residents' individualized scheduled needs, based on the residents' assessments and service plans and their unscheduled needs as they arise.

Services

Services allowed are typically outlined in state law and regulation, and typically include:

- 24-h awake staff to provide oversight and meet scheduled and unscheduled needs
- Provision and oversight of personal and supportive services (assistance with activities of daily living and instrumental activities of daily living)
- Medication management
- Health-related services (e.g., coordination of nursing services, hospice, home health, etc.)
- Social services
- Recreational activities
- Meals and snacks
- Housekeeping and laundry
- Transportation

A resident has the right to make choices and receive services in a way that will promote the resident's dignity, autonomy, independence, and quality of life (Adapted from the Assisted Living Workgroup report 2003).

Environment

Assisted living has a look and feel that is distinctly different from the physical plant in more institutional long-term care settings. The assisted living environment emphasizes the creation of a home-like atmosphere, and while health services are often provided or directed onsite, they are carried out in a manner that encourages privacy. For example, most institutional nursing facilities feature a large "nurses station" that houses charts, medical equipment, and personnel. While many assisted living communities have a similar space, it is usually held behind closed doors so as not to dominate the environment.

References and Readings

Assisted Living Workgroup. (2003). The Assisted Living Workgroup: A report to the U.S. Senate Special Committee on aging. <http://www.theceal.org/assets/PDF/ALWReportIntro.pdf>. Accessed 3 Apr 2012

Assisted Reproductive Technology

► [In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology](#)

Assisted Reproductive Technology (ART)

► [Infertility and Assisted Reproduction: Psychosocial Aspects](#)

Assisted Suicide

► [Euthanasia](#)

Associate

► [Co-workers](#)

Asthma

Akihisa Mitani

Department of Respiratory Medicine, The University of Tokyo Hospital, Tokyo, Japan
Department of Respiratory Medicine, Mitsui Memorial Hospital, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Definition

Asthma is characterized by a chronic airway inflammation, causing bronchial hyperresponsiveness and reversible airway obstruction. The patients with asthma suffer from cough, recurrent wheeze, recurrent chest tightness, and recurrent difficult breathing. Inhaled glucocorticoid-based medication plays a starring role in controlling asthma. The avoidance of the risk factors and the development of a partnership with the patient are also important.

Description

Asthma is one of the most common chronic diseases, and may develop at any age, although new-onset asthma is less frequent in the elderly. Many adolescents experience a remission of childhood asthma symptoms before they have fully matured, with recurrence several years later.

Asthma is characterized by a chronic inflammatory disorder of the airways, airflow obstruction which could be at least partly reversed, and bronchial hyperresponsiveness.

In not a few cases, asthma can be diagnosed on the basis of a patient's symptoms and medical

history. The patient has history of any of the following: cough, recurrent wheeze, recurrent chest tightness, and recurrent difficult breathing. These symptoms are usually associated with air-flow limitation and occur or worsen in the presence of various stimuli, including animals, changes in temperature, drugs (aspirin), respiratory infections, smoke, exercise, and emotional stress. The patient also might have atopic diseases and a family history of asthma. The airway obstruction measured by lung function test may help confirm the diagnosis of asthma.

When asthma is well controlled, the patient can avoid various unpleasant symptoms, risk of exacerbations is reduced, and decline in lung function slows down. In order to achieve this goal, various components of treatment are required.

First of all, the development of a partnership between the patients and their health care team is required. The shared vision of the goal is essential. The patients also have to acquire a certain level of knowledge about asthma, which enables them to avoid risk factors, take medications correctly, monitor their status, and seek medical help appropriately.

Next, the patients should avoid the risk factors that make their asthma control worse, including smoke, drugs, food, house dust, and animals. For example, up to 28% of adult patients with asthma respond to aspirin, resulting in asthma exacerbations. The drugs that cause symptoms should be completely avoided. Influenza vaccination is also recommended for the patients, because infection itself worsens asthma control and the patients are at risk for complications of infection.

Medications take a starring role in controlling asthma, which are divided into two categories, reliever medication and controller medications. Reliever medication (preferably a short-acting beta agonist (SABA)) provides the patient a quick relief from acute symptoms. The patient should be encouraged to take it as needed. However, SABA does not treat the airway inflammation underlying asthma, although useful for symptom control. No patient with persistent asthma should be treated by only SABA. They need to take regularly one or more controller medications. These medications

prevent symptoms or attacks from occurring. Inhaled glucocorticoids (often called inhaled corticosteroids (ICS)) are recommended as the initial and primary therapy in all patients with moderate persistent asthma. Other controller medications include a long-acting beta agonist (LABA) (combination inhaler with ICS is in widespread use), theophylline, and leukotriene-modifying agents. The difficult-to-treat asthma patient might be introduced of oral glucocorticoids and/or anti-IgE treatment.

References and Further Reading

- Expert panel report 3: Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of asthma, National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute. (2007). (Item No. 08-4051). Full text available online at www.nhlbi.nih.gov/guidelines/asthma/asthgdln.htm.
- Global strategy for asthma management and prevention, global initiative for asthma (GINA). (2017). Full text available online at www.ginasthma.org.
- Weiss, S. T., & Speizer, F. E. (1993). Epidemiology and natural history. In E. B. Weiss & M. Stein (Eds.), *Bronchial asthma mechanisms and therapeutics* (3rd ed.). Boston: Little, Brown.

Asthma and Stress

Akihisa Mitani

Department of Respiratory Medicine, The University of Tokyo Hospital, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

[Stress-induced Asthma](#)

Definition

It is well accepted that stress is a modulator increasing the frequency, duration, and severity of the asthma symptoms. However, little is known about the underlying mechanisms, although there are some reasonable models, such

as decreased corticosteroid signals. Further investigations are needed.

Description

Asthma has been long considered as primarily psychogenic, often called asthma nervosa, until the inflammatory basis of the disease was revealed in the latter half of the twentieth century. In recent years, it is widely accepted that asthma is caused by chronic inflammation in the airway, and inhaled glucocorticoids which can inhibit the inflammation are recommended as the initial and primary therapy. Furthermore, because asthma itself in turn produces stress, the correlation between asthma and stress might be arise only from asthma-induced stress. Still, various observational studies indicate that asthma is greatly influenced by psychosocial factors and stress. Between 20% and 30% of patients with asthma experience acute exacerbations when they are really feeling the stress. Nowadays, stress is seen as a modulator that accentuates the airway inflammatory response to environmental triggers, increasing the frequency, duration, and severity of the symptoms.

Stress is considered the common state that occurs when demands from environmental challenge an individual's adaptive capacity, or ability to cope. It is still under investigation through which mechanism stress worsens asthma control. However, there are some popular hypotheses.

When the body is challenged physically or psychologically, short-term activation of neuroendocrine and autonomic nervous systems adapt to the stress for surviving during the period of challenge. Acute stress, which you have to adapt to quickly, causes the immediate activation of hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis and sympathetic-adrenal-medullary (SAM) axis, which induce the release of various hormones. It might be said that the HPA axis and the SAM axis can convert the stress detected by brain to the physiological signal.

It is well known that the activation of HPA axis increases the secretion of corticosteroids from the adrenal cortex, and the activation of SAM axis causes the increased release of epinephrine and

norepinephrine. This fact evokes a certain paradox. Corticosteroids inhibit the inflammation in the airways, and beta-stimulants such as epinephrine might work as a bronchodilator. These hormones seem to be beneficial in controlling asthma.

Explanations that could resolve this paradox are mainly based on the hormone depletion, and the resistance of receptors under chronic stress matters more than acute stress in the issue of clinical practice. There is some evidence that the prolonged stress continues the releases of various stress hormones, which is exhausted at last. When chronic stress first begins, there is an initial elevation of the corticosteroids level. But as time passes this elevation diminishes. It is also argued that receptors for stress hormones become down regulated after prolonged exposure, making immune cells less sensitive to not only endogenous signaling, but also medications.

Recent research has begun to focus on the genes that regulate behavioral, autonomic, neuroendocrine, and immunologic responses to stress. The allelic variation in these genes, as well as stress-induced changes in DNA methylation patterns and gene expression, has been reported.

However, stress could worsen asthma in other ways. Stress can have an influence on self-management of asthma, including drug adherence and avoidance of risk factors, which might make the control of asthma difficult. Stress also can change a perception of asthma symptoms and make the patients believe that their condition is getting worse. In extreme cases, an occurrence of hyperventilation caused by a panic disorder makes a medical treatment for asthma exacerbation complicated and increases the frequency of hospitalization. Others suggest that psychological stress might be associated with increased risk of respiratory infection, which is an exacerbating factor of asthma.

It is true that the above models are reasonable enough, but there remain many problems to be solved. Does stress worsen asthma symptoms eventually by increasing inflammatory responses? To what extent is decreased sensitivity to glucocorticoids and epinephrine responsible for excessive inflammation in the patients with asthma? To answer these questions, well-organized

prospective investigations in human clinical research are needed, in which clinical, immunological, and psychological variables are correctly and frequently evaluated.

Cross-References

- [Asthma](#)
- [Asthma: Behavioral Treatment](#)

References and Further Reading

- Alvarez, G. G., & Fitzgerald, J. M. (2007). A systematic review of the psychological risk factors associated with near fatal asthma or fatal asthma. *Respiration*, 74(2), 228.
- Busse, W. W., & Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K. (1995). NHLBI workshop summary. Stress and asthma. *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*, 151(1), 249.
- Chen, E., & Miller, G. E. (2007). Stress and inflammation in exacerbations of asthma. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 21(8), 993.
- Haczku, A., & Panettieri, R. A. (2010). Social stress and asthma: The role of corticosteroid insensitivity. *The Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology*, 125(3), 550.
- Rosenberg, S. L., Miller, G. E., Brehm, J. M., & Celedón, J. C. (2014). Stress and asthma: Novel insights on genetic, epigenetic, and immunologic mechanisms. *The Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology*, 134(5), 1009.
- Vig, R. S., & Forsythe, P. (2006). The role of stress in asthma: Insight from studies on the effect of acute and chronic stressors in models of airway inflammation. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 1088, 65.

Asthma Education and Prevention Program

Elizabeth R. Pulgaron
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Asthma interventions](#)

Definition

The National Asthma Education and Prevention Program (NAEPP) was initiated in March 1989 by the National Heart Lung and Blood Institute (NHLBI) to address the needs of those affected by asthma in the United States. The goals of the NAEPP include raising awareness of asthma as a serious chronic illness, teaching how to recognize symptoms of asthma and facilitating appropriate diagnosis, promoting effective control of asthma via treatment, and conducting education programs (National Heart Lung and Blood Institute [NHLBI] n.d.). Some of the recommendations for education programs provided by the NAEPP include educating patients from the time of diagnosis and integrating education into every phase of asthma care, education being provided by all members of the health care team, teaching asthma self-management while being culturally sensitive, developing treatment goals with the patient rather than for the patient, having a written action plan (especially for those with moderate-to-severe asthma), and promoting adherence through communication and family involvement.

Description

Various asthma education programs are in existence, and some have been empirically tested. Gibson et al. (2009) reviewed 36 trials that compared self-management education for adults with asthma to usual care. Overall, results indicated that self-management education reduced complications, emergency care visits, unscheduled visits to the doctors, decreased number of days off from work or school, and improved quality of life. Changes in lung function as a result of participating in these interventions were minimal. The conclusions from this meta-analysis stated that asthma self-management programs that include self-monitoring of symptoms or peak flow readings in conjunction with regular medical visits and written action plans are the most effective at improving health outcomes for adults. One factor to consider when creating and assessing these types of programs is the audience they are intended for. Inadequate health literacy has been

identified as an area of concern for many adults and parents of children with chronic conditions. In adults with asthma, health literacy has been strongly correlated with poorer disease knowledge and improper metered-dose inhaler (MDI) use (Williams et al. 1998).

In the pediatric asthma literature, Bernard-Bonnin et al. (1995) did not report findings nearly as positive as those seen in the adult literature. From their meta-analysis of 11 randomized controlled trials of self-management programs for children with asthma, they concluded that self-management teaching did not reduce the number of days missed from school, asthma attacks, hospitalizations, or the number of emergency room visits. The authors recognized the limitations of their review, including the small number of studies included, the pooling of studies without regard for sociodemographic factors or disease severity, and the broad study criteria for being included in the analysis. Yet at the present time, this is the only pediatric asthma education program meta-analysis currently available. Other, more recent, pediatric programs in the literature have exhibited success across morbidity, knowledge, and psychosocial outcomes. For example, Krishna et al. (2003) examined the effectiveness of a self-management education program delivered through interactive multimedia sessions conducted during a family's standard clinic visit compared to just receiving standard-of-care asthma education. Compared to those children who only received standard education, those who participated in the interactive multimedia program displayed increased asthma knowledge, decreased number of days asthma symptoms were experienced, and decreased number of emergency department visits and used lower daily doses of inhaled corticosteroids at a follow-up visit.

Cross-References

- Asthma
- Asthma and Stress
- Asthma: Behavioral Treatment
- Lung Function

References and Readings

- Bernard-Bonnin, A. C., Stachenko, S., Bonin, D., Charette, C., & Rousseau, E. (1995). Self-management teaching programs and morbidity of pediatric asthma: A meta-analysis. *The Journal of Allergy and Clinical Immunology*, 95, 34–41.
- Brewin, A. M., & Hughes, J. A. (1995). Effect of patient education on asthma management. *British Journal of Nursing*, 4, 81–101.
- Gibson, P. G., Powell, H., Wilson, A., Abramson, M. J., Haywood, P., Bauman, A., et al. (2009). Self management education and regular practitioner review for adults with asthma. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 3, 1–81. <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD001117>.
- Krishna, S., Francisco, B. D., Balas, E. A., König, P., Graff, G. R., & Madsen, R. W. (2003). Internet-enabled interactive multimedia asthma education program: A randomized trial. *Pediatrics*, 111, 503–510. <https://doi.org/10.1542/peds.111.3.503>.
- National Heart Lung and Blood Institute. (n.d.). *National asthma education and prevention program*. Retrieved 1 Feb 2011 from http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/about/naepp/naep_pd.htm
- Williams, M. V., Baker, D. W., Honig, E. G., Lee, T. M., & Nowlan, A. (1998). Inadequate literacy is a barrier to asthma knowledge and self-care. *Chest*, 114(4), 1008–1015.

Asthma Interventions

- Asthma Education and Prevention Program

Asthma: Behavioral Treatment

Akihisa Mitani
Department of Respiratory Medicine, The University of Tokyo Hospital, Tokyo, Japan
Department of Respiratory Medicine, Mitsui Memorial Hospital, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

Behavior modification program; Behavior therapy; Bronchial asthma

Definition

It is well accepted that psychogenic factor has a close relationship with asthma symptoms. Some patients with asthma experience acute exacerbations preceded by emotional stress. This fact has made us expect the use of psychological in addition to conventional physical and pharmacological interventions, in order to achieve the successful management of asthma. Relaxation training, systematic desensitization, and assertive training were tested with enthusiasm especially in the 1970s, but later experiments and analyses have thrown doubt on them. Application of biofeedback techniques to asthma treatment has been still discussed (Ritz and Dahme 2004). Biofeedback techniques consist of direct and indirect techniques. In direct techniques, including respiratory resistance feedback, spirometric biofeedback, and trachea-noise biofeedback, lung function itself is measured and modified. Most of indirect techniques have targeted facial muscle EMG, heart rate, and heart rate variability. However, it has not been proved that they can contribute as adjunctive treatments of asthma. Furthermore, these techniques are technically difficult in practice, and the procedure, especially in the case of direct techniques, might worsen asthma symptoms.

The self-management of asthma plays a central role in asthma treatment, and psychological factors may influence not only the symptoms but also the management of asthma in many ways (Clark and Mitchell 2009). The patients have to acquire a certain level of knowledge about asthma, which enables them to avoid risk factors, take medications correctly, monitor their status, and seek medical help appropriately. It is clear that self-management encompasses very much more than patient education. It implies involving patients in the care they receive and encouraging them to become active partners in managing their illness. Behavioral and cognitive process, such as operant behavior, in the self-management has also been eagerly investigated. The successful performance of self-management skills to avoid an asthma attack is, conversely, an example of negative reinforcement. Adequate coping can facilitate

the self-management. Conditioned fear and anxiety to asthma derived from previous traumatic experiences such as acute exacerbation sometimes alters the way of recognition of asthmatic symptoms (Creer 2008). Inadequate symptom perception might be associated with an overuse of reliever medication, irrespective of lung function, causing the unnecessary side effects. It is, therefore, suggested that psychological interventions may be appropriate for patients who are unable to achieve the self-management of asthma because they might have behavioral or cognitive problems.

There is not enough evidence that behavioral treatment can contribute substantially to the treatment of asthma (Dahl and Gustafsson 1990; King 1980). This is due to the poor methodology of the studies as well as the inherent problems of conducting such trials. It is recommended that larger and well-conducted randomized trials use valid outcome measures to evaluate the effectiveness of psychological interventions for adults with asthma.

Cross-References

- [Asthma](#)
- [Asthma and Stress](#)
- [Biofeedback](#)

References and Reading

- Clark, N. M., & Mitchell, H. E. (2009). Effectiveness of educational and behavioral asthma interventions. *Pediatrics*, 123(Suppl 3), S185.
- Creer, T. L. (2008). Behavioral and cognitive processes in the self-management of asthma. *The Journal of Asthma*, 45(2), 81.
- Dahl, J., & Gustafsson, D. (1990). Effects of a behavioral treatment program on children with asthma. *The Journal of Asthma*, 27(1), 41.
- King, N. J. (1980). The behavioral management of asthma and asthma-related problems in children: A critical review of the literature. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 3(2), 169.
- Ritz, T., & Dahme, B. (2004). Behavioral interventions in asthma: Biofeedback techniques. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 56(6), 711.

Atherogenesis

► Atherosclerosis

Atherosclerosis

Jennifer Carter

The University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Synonyms

Arteriosclerosis; Atherogenesis; Atherosclerotic plaque

Definition

Atherosclerosis is the thickening and hardening of artery walls that occurs as the immune system responds to injuries to the single-layer endothelial wall of an artery. These injuries can be caused by a variety of insults, including cigarette smoke derivatives, toxins, infectious agents, elevated circulating lipids or glucose, and increased blood pressure. Monocytes and platelets are recruited to the site of injury. Monocytes cross the endothelial layer into the subintimal space where they become macrophages and phagocytose oxidized lipoproteins, forming foam cells. These foam cells accumulate in the subintimal space forming fatty streaks on the endothelial wall. Smooth muscle cells wall off the lipid plaque, forming a layer of collagen known as a fibrous cap between the plaque in the subintima and the endothelial wall. Eventually, the plaque may bulge into the arterial lumen, partially occluding the artery. If the artery becomes so occluded that blood flow is critically decreased, an infarct occurs. If this occurs on a coronary artery, a myocardial infarct, or heart attack, occurs. Health behavior change is a critical component in atherosclerosis prevention. Helping patients stop smoking and prevent or treat hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and impaired glucose

tolerance are effective methods for preventing the progression of atherosclerosis.

References and Readings

- Gropper, S., Smith, J., & Groff, J. (2005). *The role of lipids and lipoproteins in atherogenesis advanced nutrition and human metabolism* (4th ed., pp. 166–167). Belmont: Thomson Wadsworth.
- Ignarro, L. J., Balestrieri, M. L., & Napoli, C. (2007). Nutrition, physical activity, and cardiovascular disease: An update [Review]. *Cardiovascular Research*, 73(2), 326–340. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cardiores.2006.06.030>.
- Kumar, V., Robbins, S. L., & Cotran, R. S. (2003). *Arteriosclerosis Robbins basic pathology* (7th ed., pp. 328–338). Philadelphia/London: WB Saunders.
- Ross, R. (1999). Atherosclerosis – An inflammatory disease. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 340(2), 115–126. <https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM199901143400207>.

Atherosclerotic Plaque

► Atherosclerosis

Atrial Fibrillation

William Whang

Division of Cardiology, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Definition

Atrial fibrillation is a cardiac rhythm disorder characterized by chaotic atrial electrical activation, resulting in an irregular heartbeat.

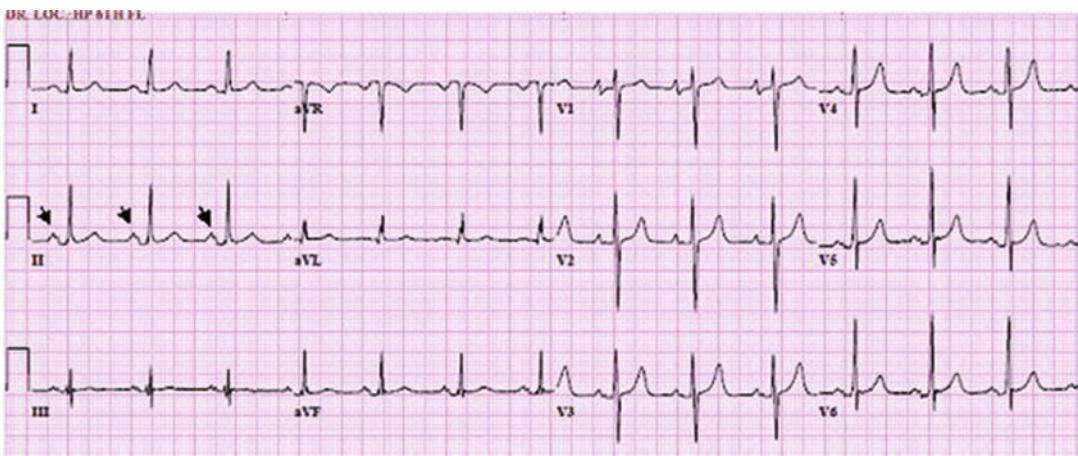
Description

Atrial fibrillation (AF) is the most common type of cardiac rhythm disorder and affects 1–2% of the general population (Camm et al. 2010). It is characterized by chaotic electrical activation in

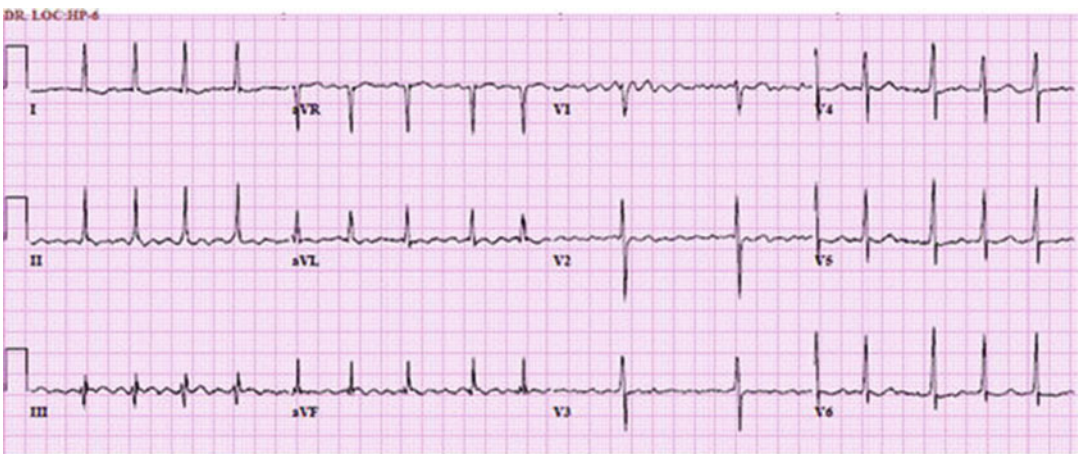
the left and right atria, usually at rates of 200–300 beats per minute. Normally, cardiac activation begins with depolarization in the sinus node in the right atrium. The right and left atria are activated via intercellular gap junctions, and atrial depolarization is represented on the surface electrocardiogram (ECG) by the P wave (Fig. 1). The difference between normal rhythm and atrial fibrillation is exemplified by the ECGs seen in Fig. 2. AF is usually diagnosed on ECG by the presence of an irregularly irregular cardiac rhythm, without visible P waves.

Numerous factors are associated with the development of AF, including cardiovascular conditions such as hypertension, heart failure, and coronary artery disease and valvular heart disease (Camm et al. 2010). Aging, hyperthyroid, obesity, and diabetes mellitus have also been related to risk of AF.

Individuals with AF usually present with symptoms including palpitations, fatigue, shortness of breath, and/or light-headedness. However, a significant proportion of patients with AF are asymptomatic, especially older patients. In



Atrial Fibrillation, Fig. 1 Twelve-lead electrocardiogram during normal sinus rhythm, with arrows pointing to P waves that indicate organized atrial activity



Atrial Fibrillation, Fig. 2 Twelve-lead electrocardiogram during atrial fibrillation, with lack of P waves and an irregularly irregular rhythm

observational studies, AF is associated with worse cardiovascular prognosis, including increased risk of stroke, heart failure, cardiac hospitalizations, and mortality. However, it is not yet clear whether mitigation of AF itself improves these risks or whether it is more a marker of other pathology.

The most established health risk for most patients with AF is the risk of stroke, and this risk is related to several possible mechanisms (Camm et al. 2010). For instance, patients with AF have been shown to have relative stasis of blood flow in the left atrium, which is thought to lead to greater risk of clot formation. Abnormalities of the inner surface of the heart, the endocardium, and clotting and platelet activation have also been described. The decision to treat with anticoagulating medication (anticoagulants) to prevent stroke is usually based on the number of stroke risk factors.

The CHADS2 score is often used to estimate clinical suspicion for stroke in the setting of AF (Camm et al. 2010). The components of the CHADS2 score include congestive heart failure, hypertension, age >75, diabetes, and history of stroke (counted twice). The estimated risk of stroke for someone with CHADS2 score of zero is about 1.9% per year, and this risk increases to about 18.2% per year for someone with the maximum CHADS2 score of 6. Meta-analyses of stroke prevention trials have estimated that a relative risk reduction of 64% versus placebo from anticoagulant medication such as warfarin.

Over time, long-lasting atrial fibrillation leads to changes in atrial size including dilatation and scarring. The typical pattern of AF involves a progression from short, infrequent episodes to longer frequent attacks, to sustained AF. AF is categorized by the length of time it lasts with each episode. Paroxysmal AF terminates spontaneously and lasts as long as 7 days at a time (Camm et al. 2010). Persistent AF lasts longer than 7 days or requires termination through antiarrhythmic medication or with DC cardioversion. Permanent AF occurs when the constant presence of AF is accepted by both patient and physician, and efforts are directed at controlling the heart rate despite continued presence of an irregular rhythm.

Independent of treatment for stroke prevention, strategies for therapy of AF are broadly divided into rate control and rhythm control. Rate control consists of an emphasis on preventing sustained episodes of fast heart rate (>100 beats per minute), usually through medications that can slow conduction from the atria to the ventricles such as beta blockers, calcium channel blockers, and digoxin. Rhythm control involves a focus on maintaining normal sinus rhythm usually through antiarrhythmic medications or through surgical or catheter-based procedures to treat AF. The Atrial Fibrillation Follow-Up Investigation of Rhythm Management (AFFIRM) trial showed in a group of 4060 patients with AF who were 65 or older or who had other risk factors for stroke, rate control and rhythm control (which consisted mainly of treatment with amiodarone) were equivalent in terms of 5-year mortality (Wyse et al. 2002). In a number of patients, however, symptoms from AF are detrimental to quality of life such that this becomes the main reason to pursue a rhythm control strategy.

Ablative therapy for AF is a growing treatment that involves creating barriers to electrical conduction in atrial tissue, typically with radio-frequency energy often delivered via catheters. In particular, tissue at the junction of the left atrium and the pulmonary veins has been noted to be a frequent trigger of AF, and electrical isolation of the pulmonary veins is especially effective at reducing AF in patients with paroxysmal episodes.

There is some evidence that psychosocial symptoms may be related to atrial fibrillation. Lange and colleagues showed in a group of 54 patients with persistent AF that depressive mood was associated with greater risk of recurrence after DC cardioversion (Lange 2007). In a triggering analysis that used event monitoring and electronic diaries, Lampert and colleagues observed in 75 patients with paroxysmal or persistent AF that arrhythmia episodes were more likely preceded by negative emotions and less likely by happiness (Lampert et al. 2008). Analyses of the Framingham Offspring Study have found that baseline levels of tension, anger, and

hostility predicted increased 10-year risk of AF in men, but not in women (Eaker et al. 2004, 2005).

References and Further Reading

- Camm, A. J., Kirchhof, P., Lip, G. Y., Schotten, U., Savelieva, I., Ernst, S., et al. (2010). Guidelines for the management of atrial fibrillation: The task force for the management of atrial fibrillation of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). *European Heart Journal*, 31, 2369–2429.
- Eaker, E. D., Sullivan, L. M., Kelly-Hayes, M., D'Agostino, R. B., Sr., & Benjamin, E. J. (2004). Anger and hostility predict the development of atrial fibrillation in men in the Framingham offspring study. *Circulation*, 109, 1267–1271.
- Eaker, E. D., Sullivan, L. M., Kelly-Hayes, M., D'Agostino, R. B., Sr., & Benjamin, E. J. (2005). Tension and anxiety and the prediction of the 10-year incidence of coronary heart disease, atrial fibrillation, and total mortality: The Framingham offspring study. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 67, 692–696.
- Lampert, R. B. M., Brandt, C., Dziura, J., Liu, H., Donovan, T., Soufer, R., et al. (2008). Impact of emotions on triggering of atrial fibrillation. *Circulation*, 118, S640.
- Lange, H. W., & Herrmann-Lingen, C. (2007). Depressive symptoms predict recurrence of atrial fibrillation after cardioversion. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 63(5), 509–513.
- Wyse, D. G., Waldo, A. L., DiMarco, J. P., Domanski, M. J., Rosenberg, Y., Schron, E. B., et al. (2002). A comparison of rate control and rhythm control in patients with atrial fibrillation. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 347, 1825–1833.

chronic stressors being applied to the body. Chronic stressors are things such as a physical injury, disease pathology, or immobilization and disuse. It is commonly seen as a symptom in neuromuscular and musculoskeletal conditions or injury, but atrophy may affect any body system or structure.

Description

When cells of the body are under stressors such as those listed above, there is a potential for cellular injury and cell damage. These cellular injuries may include lack of blood flow to the area, which is known as ischemia, infection, immune system responses, lack of adequate nutrition, or physical trauma. If the stressors persist, cells will attempt to make cellular adaptations in order to maintain homeostasis to withstand them. Examples of cellular adaptations include atrophy, hypertrophy, hyperplasia, metaplasia, or dysplasia may occur. By adapting, the cells are able to avoid injury or cell death.

In the human body atrophy may occur for physiologic or pathologic reasons. Physiologic atrophy is associated with the natural aging process, and it usually involves things such as general muscle wasting and bone loss. Pathologic atrophy is the result of some form of cellular injury, such as a neuromuscular condition, cancer, peripheral vascular disorders resulting in inefficient blood flow, or spinal cord injury.

The musculoskeletal system can become atrophied for two general reasons: disuse atrophy or neurogenic atrophy. With disuse atrophy, skeletal muscles may atrophy due to immobilization and disuse, which often occurs following an injury, such as an ankle sprain, or surgery, such as a joint replacement procedure. Individuals may also immobilize themselves if movement causes significant pain or discomfort. In neurogenic atrophy, the nerve supply to the affected muscle is disrupted in some way. This type of muscle atrophy may also occur with a lower motor neuron injury, such as a cut peripheral nerve or spinal cord injury. After this type of injury, the involved muscles become partially or completely

Atrophy

Beth Schroeder
University of Delaware, Newark, DE, USA

Synonyms

[Muscle wasting](#)

Definition

Atrophy in the simplest sense is a type of cellular adaptation in which a cell, tissue, or organ of the body reduces in size. It is often the result of

denervated, meaning that the nerve supply to the muscle is disrupted. This results in less voluntary movement and control of the involved muscles. It is thought that this lack of use is responsible for the physiological changes that occur in muscles that ultimately result in their atrophy.

Several morphological changes occur in the muscles when they atrophy. A loss in the contractile proteins actin and myosin occurs, as well as changes in the blood supply, as the capillary density of these muscles decrease. When these skeletal muscle proteins are lost, a decrease in muscle fiber length and diameter will occur, and ultimately atrophy of the muscle as a whole. This loss of muscle mass also leads to weakness, as the muscles are no longer capable of producing the same amount of force. This is an important factor for patients undergoing surgery. Postsurgical patients are a population of individuals that often have disuse atrophy of their muscles. For example, patients undergoing an anterior cruciate ligament (ACL) repair surgery tend to have weak, atrophied quadriceps after the surgery. For this reason, patients often participate in strengthening programs before the surgery.

Atrophy does not need to be caused by an injury as described above. It can also be due to a genetic condition. Spinal muscular atrophy (SMA) is a genetic condition resulting from loss of ventral horn cells in the spinal cord that are responsible for motor function. Individuals with this condition suffer from skeletal muscle atrophy, weakness, and hypotonia. Complaints of fatigue are also common in this population. Those with SMA may experience respiratory problems as well because the diaphragm is a skeletal muscle often affected. As the condition progresses, the use of assistive devices, such as a wheelchair, for mobility may become necessary.

The treatment of atrophy depends upon its cause as well as its impact on the individual. Those with disuse atrophy may reverse the effects of atrophy from physical therapy or a simple exercise program. If the cause of the atrophy is more genetic or permanent in nature, like that occurs with SMA or spinal cord injury patients, exercise

will still be beneficial, but the treatments may need to be augmented with the use of adaptive equipment, such as splints or braces.

Cross-References

► [Stressor](#)

References and Readings

- Drake, R. L., Wayne Vogl, A., & Mitchell, A. W. M. (2010). *Gray's anatomy for students* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier.
- Goodman, C. C., & Fuller, K. S. (2009). *Pathology: Implications for the physical therapist* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Saunders.
- Kisner, C., & Colby, L. A. (2007). *Therapeutic exercise* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: F.A. Davis Company.
- MedlinePlus [Internet]. Muscle atrophy. Bethesda: National Library of Medicine (US), (updated 2010 Feb 6; cited 2011 April 4), (about 2 p.). Available from <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/003188.htm>
- Purves, D., Augustine, G. J., Fitzpatrick, D., Hall, W. C., LaMantia, A., McNamara, J. O., & White, L. E. (2008). *Neuroscience* (4th ed.). Sunderland: Sinauer Associates.
- Robinson, A. J., & Snyder-Mackler, L. (2008). *Clinical electrophysiology* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott.

Attachment Theory

Angela M. Hicks¹ and Carolyn Korbel²

¹Department of Psychology, Westminster College, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

²The Neurobehavioral Clinic and Counseling Center, Lake Forest, CA, USA

Definition

Bowlby (1969, 1988) described an attachment as an emotional bond that is characterized by the tendency to seek out and maintain proximity to a specific attachment figure, particularly during times of distress.

Description

Overview of Attachment Theory

Normative processes. Bowlby's attachment theory (e.g., Bowlby 1969, 1988) suggests that humans' most intimate relationship partners serve important functions related to distress alleviation. More specifically, he theorized that *people* rely on *their* primary caregivers, or *attachment figures*, for feelings of comfort and security, especially during times of distress. According to Bowlby, the attachment system evolved in order to keep vulnerable human infants within close proximity to their caregivers. Normatively, when an infant experiences distress, the attachment system will be activated. The infant will then signal its distress to the caregiver who will respond in an appropriate manner and the infant's distress will be alleviated. Over time, the infant develops an emotionally primary bond with its caregiver such that caregiver proximity in and of itself provides feelings of comfort/security. Bowlby suggested that four specific attachment behaviors are present in such relationships. First, the infant relies on the attachment figure as a source of comfort, or *safe haven* to turn to when distressed. Once a sense of comfort and security is established, the infant uses the caregiver as a *secure base* from which to explore the environment. Because the attached person relies on the caregiver for feelings of comfort and safety, infants *seek proximity* to their attachment figures and experience significant distress when separated from them (*separation distress*).

With increasing age, individuals rely less on actual proximity to attachment figures and more on *internalized representations* of these individuals (Bowlby 1969, 1988; Bretherton 1985). Specifically, through repeated emotionally relevant interactions with attachment figures, people are theorized to develop unconscious representations of those relationships, termed *internal working models* (IWMs). Under conditions of distress, in which the attachment system is activated, individuals derive feelings of emotional security through the IWM when their attachment figures are not physically present.

While Bowlby (1969, 1988) initially conceptualized attachment theory with regard to relationship processes during infancy and childhood, such bonds are thought to be influential during adolescence and adulthood as well. In adulthood, attachment bonds are formed primarily within the context of romantic relationships (e.g., Hazan and Shaver 1987; Weiss 1988). Adult romantic relationships have increasingly been conceptualized as attachment bonds characterized by the same central components as attachment bonds in infancy: heightened proximity maintenance, resistance to separation, and utilization of the partner as a preferred target for comfort- and security-seeking (Hazan and Zeifman 1999). As noted earlier, attachment theory proposes that internal working models are representations of the caregiving, distress-alleviating functions of attachment figures. If, as Bowlby argued, the attachment system operates in this fashion "from the cradle to the grave," then it follows that internalized representations of *adult* attachment figures – romantic partners – should function to promote distress alleviation among adults in the same way that internalized representations of caregivers are hypothesized to do in infancy and childhood. A growing body of research suggests that romantic partners do, in fact, seek one another out during times of distress and, alternatively, offer comfort and support to their partners (e.g., Collins and Feeney 2000).

Internal working models were originally conceptualized as a set of expectations about the self and close others, based in previous experiences, which guide cognitive, emotional, and behavioral responses to current experiences. More recently, however, such models are thought to reflect an individual's capacity and typical strategies for managing positive and negative emotional arousal, processes that are collectively known as *emotion regulation* (Mikulincer and Shaver 2007). The increasing attention paid to the emotion regulating functions of the internal working model is important in light of the concurrent focus on emotion processing as one mechanism through which close relationships influence health (Diamond 2001; Diamond and Fagundes 2010; Diamond and Hicks 2004; Ryff et al. 2001).

Individual differences. The normative perspective contends that all humans are innately predisposed to form attachment bonds. Yet, attachment theory suggests that not all attachment relationships are of similar *quality*. Specifically, individuals whose caregivers provided consistent and responsive distress alleviation are theorized to develop secure working models of attachment (Ainsworth et al. 1978; Bowlby 1969, 1988). Conversely, those who did not experience consistent or responsive caregiving develop insecure models. A student of Bowlby's, Mary Ainsworth, and her colleagues identified three patterns. Each pattern is thought to reflect a specific history of caregiver interaction and emotion processing. Specifically, *secure* persons are described as having experienced consistent and responsive caregiving. As a result, they associate proximity to caregivers with effective distress alleviation, see others as willing to provide responsive care, and themselves as worthy of it. *Anxious* persons are described as having experienced inconsistently responsive caregiving, resulting in uncertainty about whether proximity to caregivers will result in distress alleviation. They therefore develop an internal working model in which they are unworthy of love and comfort and in which attachment figures are unreliable. *Avoidant* persons are described as having experienced consistently unresponsive caregiving. Hence, they do not associate proximity to caregivers with feelings of comfort or distress alleviation, and therefore develop an interpersonal style that emphasizes self-reliance and involves distancing themselves from others during times of stress. Such "attachment styles" were initially conceptualized as a relatively stable trait-like individual difference dimension. Individual differences in patterns of attachment are thought to shape emotional processing, relational cognition, and relationship behavior over the life course.

Much like the normative aspects of attachment, there are also parallels between infant caregiver and adult romantic relationships on the individual difference dimension. In their groundbreaking study, Hazan and Shaver (1987) found evidence for three similar patterns of difference in adults with respect to their romantic partners. For

example, adults that were identified as *secure* reported feeling comfortable with closeness and experiencing reciprocal support provision in relationships. Those identified as *anxious* reported wanting more closeness than relationship partners were willing to provide, and feeling uncertain about their partners' devotion. Adults classified as *avoidant* reported feeling uncomfortable with closeness and preferring more emotional distance from their partners.

Measurement. Across the lifecourse, measures of attachment assess the extent to which one is comfortable relying on their attachment figure when under distress. Such measures aim to tap into the content of the internal working model and differentiate between those with a secure, anxious, or avoidant "attachment style." The primary measure to assess attachment in infancy is the *strange situation*, a laboratory procedure during which the infant experiences brief separations and reunions with the primary caregiver providing the opportunity for researchers to observe the infants' tendency to seek proximity to and derive comfort from the caregiver when under distress (Ainsworth et al. 1978). Methods for assessing attachment from middle childhood through adolescence have been slower to emerge. As noted earlier, with increasing cognitive capabilities, children come to rely less and less on actual physical proximity to the caregiver and more on representations of the attachment relationship that are contained within the internal working model. From middle to late childhood three different measurement approaches have been utilized to assess the child's attachment representation/s. These methods include projective measures of attachment (e.g., Separation Anxiety Test), structured interviews (e.g., Child Attachment Interview), and questionnaires (e.g., Security Scale). During adolescence, methods which mirror those used with adults are utilized. A slightly modified version of the Adult Attachment Interview assesses adolescents' states of mind with regard to attachment. Other studies use a revised version of the Experiences in Close Relationships (described below) to identify attachment-related anxiety and avoidance in primary attachment relationships.

When considering issues of measurement in adulthood, it is important to note that adult attachment research has grown almost independently within two research traditions (reviewed by Crowell et al. 2008). The measures used by the two traditions reflect differences of opinion regarding the extent to which the content of the internal working model is consciously accessible. The first line of work uses measures that tap into nonconscious perceptions and beliefs about close relationships. These measures assess either (1) adults' current state of mind with respect to early attachment relationships, as assessed by the Adult Attachment Interview, or (2) the coherence of adults' descriptions of their current romantic relationships, as assessed by the Current Relationships Index. The second line of research uses the Experiences in Close Relationships (ECR) inventory; a paper and pencil measure assessing consciously accessible levels of comfort with closeness to and heightened vigilance regarding the availability of romantic partners. Finally, although attachment patterns have historically been viewed as discrete prototypes (i.e., secure, anxious, and avoidant), more current research measures these dimensions as continuous, rather than categorical, attributes (i.e., Fraley et al. 2000). The current entry will make reference secure, anxious, and avoidant "types" for the sake of clarity and to reflect the categorical approach pervasive in prior literature.

Implications for Behavioral Medicine

The last 15 years have seen a dramatic proliferation of research evidence pointing to the influence of attachment experiences and relationships on important markers of physical health. One important theoretical framework that helps ground this work emphasizes the influence of attachment histories and relationships on emotion regulation as one important mechanism linking attachment to health outcomes (Diamond and Hicks 2004). This perspective aligns nicely with a growing body of research implicating emotions as a central mechanism in links between relationships and health (Ryff et al. 2001). Thus, it is important to integrate this discussion of the health

implications of attachment with a brief review of the impacts of attachment processes on emotional experience. Research evidence examining links between relationships and health suggests that both the normative and individual differences components of attachment relationships are important.

Attachment security conveys multiple emotion regulation benefits during childhood and adolescence. Securely attached children are more likely to view themselves as worthy of love and caring as noted above. As such, they value their health and well-being. Perceiving attachment figures as available and helpful in times of distress allows securely attached children to acknowledge their discomfort and seek support when needed. The adaptive emotion regulation strategies that secure children use promote healthy social (i.e., increased social competence, positive peer and family relationships), emotional (i.e., lower levels of depression, anxiety, and social anxiety, and fewer concerns about loneliness), and behavioral functioning (i.e., fewer somatic complaints, fewer behavioral concerns or conduct problems).

Unlike their securely attached counterparts, insecurely attached children develop strategies that are less adaptive. Anxiously attached children tend to utilize hyperactivating strategies, and display heightened distress to promote proximity to attachment figures. Because they are so sensitive to distress and use such ineffective support-seeking strategies, they are unable to effectively regulate their negative affect. Anxious children therefore more often display frequent and intense expressions of negative affect (i.e., tantrums), behavioral dysregulation, anxiety, and depression. Anxiously attached children and adolescents also tend to be clingy toward attachment figures, display a high need for approval, and report having lower self-esteem. In contrast, avoidant children have learned to use deactivating emotion regulation strategies that minimize negative affect and support-seeking behaviors. However, their deactivating strategies may not be very effective at regulating negative emotion, as avoidantly attached adolescents are more likely to display conduct disordered and

criminal behavior than those with other attachment organizations.

Attachment and emotion regulation. As with attachment patterns in infancy and childhood, adult attachment styles are associated with robust individual differences in emotion regulation processes (e.g., Mikulincer and Shaver 2007). Attachment theory maintains that internal working models impact attention and processing of affectively relevant information. For example, secure individuals are more likely to interpret benign stimuli in more neutral or even positive ways, and they are more likely to offer the benefit of the doubt when a relationship partner engages in ambiguous, yet potentially threatening behaviors. Individuals with more secure working models are also more comfortable relying on others for support during times of distress. They also report engaging in more constructive intra- and interpersonal regulatory strategies. It follows, then, that secure individuals report more frequent and intense bouts of positive emotion, and less frequent and less intense negative emotion.

While secure attachment is conceptualized as a resource that promotes effective regulation, attachment insecurity appears to interfere with the ability to effectively modulate emotional experience. Specifically, those characterized as *anxious* are likely to interpret neutral stimuli as more hostile and negative. They are also more likely to make negative, blaming attributions of partners' ambiguous behaviors. They tend to engage in indirect and ineffective support seeking and less constructive regulatory strategies. Not surprisingly, then, anxious individuals report more intense and more frequent negative emotional experiences. They report less positive emotions as well, and do not always derive the same benefits from positive events or experiences. Attachment avoidance is conceptualized as involving minimization and suppression of emotional experience. Supporting this view, persons endorsing high levels of avoidance report low levels of both negative and positive emotions, and high levels of emotional control. Rather than seeking support, avoidant individuals tend to distance themselves from others especially when

levels of distress appear to be high. Recent research suggests that avoidant individuals report such low levels of emotional activation because they use a preemptive strategy of focusing attention away from affectively relevant stimuli and events.

Attachment and health. In general, research demonstrating associations between attachment and physical health across the life span takes three different approaches. The first describes a developmental neuroscience-based approach for understanding how early experiences with primary caregivers "tune" developing neurobiological systems' sensitivity to stress, and in essence predispose individuals toward regulatory strategies that are highly influenced by early attachment experiences. The second emphasizes the moderating effects of attachment on "microlevel" physiological processes, such as autonomic nervous system and hypothalamic pituitary adrenocortical (HPA) axis functioning. The third takes a more macrolevel approach, investigating the incidence and management of specific diseases and conditions. The most robust findings from each of these literatures are described below.

An emerging neuroscience literature has begun to demonstrate compelling links between affectively rich, synchronous mother-infant interactions with the development and functioning of the relational right brain and the orbitofrontal system. These neuroanatomical structures are directly responsive to the infant's affective and relational environment; in this way, the affective tone of repeated interactions with caregivers influences the "hardwiring" of pathways that are implicated in emotion regulation (Schoore 2000). Thus early experiences serve to create a template for emotion regulation at the neurophysiological level. This compelling research suggests that one of the ways relationships "get under our skin" is that they shape the development of stress responses through psychoneurobiologically mediated pathways.

Studies linking adult attachment HPA axis functioning typically assess salivary cortisol, while those examining sympathetic and parasympathetic branches of the autonomic nervous

system typically assess heart rate, blood pressure, respiratory sinus arrhythmia, and electrodermal activity. Each of these systems is important from a behavioral medicine perspective, as dysregulation of each system has been linked to potentially deleterious health outcomes. This research primarily emphasizes differences in baseline, or resting levels as well as short-term reactivity to laboratory stressors (though at least one study had examined reactivity to daily relationship events). In general, insecurely attached individuals show heightened HPA and ANS stress reactivity. For example, anxious individuals are found to experience heightened electrodermal, heart rate, and blood pressure reactivity to general laboratory stressors (such as difficult mathematical tasks with frustrating interruptions). They also demonstrated greater electrodermal and HPA reactivity during laboratory conflict with their romantic partners. Consistent with their heightened concerns around attachment figure availability, anxious persons have also demonstrated heightened cortisol to stimuli priming thoughts of abandonment in a laboratory, as well as heightened daily cortisol output during a brief travel-related separation from their romantic partner. In terms of basal levels, anxious persons have been found to have suppressed resting parasympathetic and HPA activity, both presumed to indicate a dysregulation in those systems. All of these findings are consistent with the evidence demonstrating anxious individuals' heightened emotional reactivity as well (discussed earlier).

Avoidant individuals, on the other hand, tend to report blunted emotional experiences; they report neither high negative nor positive emotions generally, and demonstrate little emotional reactivity to laboratory stressors. Yet, they have been found to demonstrate heightened physiological reactivity to lab stressors. For example, avoidant individuals showed heightened HPA reactivity to an in-lab conflict with their romantic partners, as well as to exposure to stimuli priming thoughts of abandonment. In other studies, they experienced heightened sympathetic and electrodermal reactivity to nonrelationship laboratory stress tasks (i.e., stressful mathematical tasks). Further, they

have been found to show a blunted basal parasympathetic activity. Thus, some researchers suggest that avoidant individuals' defensive regulatory strategy, while effective at suppressing intense affective states, may come at a physiological cost.

Another line of research examines empirical associations between attachment and health across a range of health-related domains. While some studies find that having a chronic illness itself does not increase one's odds of developing an insecure attachment, other researchers find a greater frequency of insecure attachment classifications, particularly anxious attachment, among pediatric populations (i.e., among premature infants, infants with congenital heart disease, and in pediatric patients with cerebral palsy, epilepsy, cleft lip, and cystic fibrosis; Feeney 2000; Minde 1999). Although the influence of child and disease-specific factors is likely to exert some influence on attachment, poor maternal and family relationship quality are thought to provide a more robust influence on children's attachment organizations. Insecure attachments among adolescents and adults have also been associated with psychosomatic illnesses, physical complaints, symptom reporting, anxiety, and depression (Maunder and Hunter 2001). Attachment insecurity has also been linked to greater emotion-focused coping among children with asthma and also among healthy university students. Among adults with diabetes mellitus, avoidant attachment has been associated with poor metabolic control, adherence, and less health care utilization. Diabetic adults with anxious attachments had high health care utilization costs and, surprisingly more optimal metabolic control levels (Ciechanowski et al. 2004).

A growing and compelling literature suggests that attachment-related processes broadly predict personal well-being, coping, physiological responses to stress, and health-related behaviors and illness management across the life span. Additional research that examines the emotion regulation pathways by which these associations are mediated will increase the field's understanding of how primary attachment relationships interact with critical psychobiological mechanisms to influence health across the life span.

Cross-References

- [Anxiety and Its Measurement](#)
- [Avoidance](#)
- [Child Development](#)
- [Emotional Control](#)
- [Emotional Expression](#)
- [Emotional Responses](#)
- [Emotions: Positive and Negative](#)
- [Family, Relationships](#)

References and Readings

- Ainsworth, M. D. S., Blehar, M. C., Waters, E., & Wall, S. (1978). *Patterns of attachment: A psychological study of the Strange Situation*. Hillsdale: Erlbaum.
- Bowlby, J. (1969). *Attachment*. New York: Basic Books.
- Bowlby, J. (1988). *A secure base: Parent-child attachment and healthy human development*. London: Basic Books.
- Bretherton, I. (1985). Attachment theory: Retrospect and prospect. In I. Bretherton & E. Waters (Eds.), *Growing points of attachment theory and research. Monographs of the Society for Research in Child Development*, 209 (1–2), 3–35.
- Cassidy, J., & Shaver, P. R. (2008). *Handbook of attachment: Theory, research, and clinical applications*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Ciechanowski, P., Russo, J., Katon, W., Von Korff, M., Ludman, E., Lin, E., et al. (2004). Influence of patient attachment style on self-care and outcomes in diabetes. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 66, 720–728.
- Collins, N. L., & Feeney, B. C. (2000). A safe haven: An attachment theory perspective on support seeking and caregiving in intimate relationships. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 78(6), 1053–1073.
- Crowell, J. A., Fraley, R. C., & Shaver, P. R. (2008). Measurement of individual differences in adolescent and adult attachment. In J. Cassidy & P. R. Shaver (Eds.), *Handbook of attachment: Theory, research, and clinical applications* (2nd ed., pp. 599–634). New York: Guilford Press.
- Diamond, L. M. (2001). Contributions of psychophysiology to research on adult attachment: Review and recommendations. *Personality and Social Psychology Review*, 5, 276–295.
- Diamond, L. M., & Fagundes, C. P. (2008). Developmental perspectives on links between attachment and affect regulation over the lifespan. *Advances in Child Behavior and Development*, 36, 83–134.
- Diamond, L. M., & Fagundes, C. P. (2010). Psychobiological research on attachment. *Journal of Social and Personal Relationships*, 27, 218–225.
- Diamond, L. M., & Hicks, A. M. (2004). Psychobiological perspectives on attachment: Implications for mental and physical health. In S. R. R. J. Simpson (Ed.), *Adult attachment: Emerging issues and new directions*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Feeney, J. A. (2000). Implications of attachment style for patterns of health and illness. *Child: Care, Health and Development*, 26, 277–288.
- Fraley, R. C., Waller, N. G., & Brennan, K. A. (2000). An item response theory analysis of self-report measures of adult attachment. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 78(2), 350–365.
- Hazan, C., & Shaver, P. R. (1987). Romantic love conceptualized as an attachment process. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 52(3), 511–524.
- Hazan, C., & Zeifman, D. (1999). Pair bonds as attachments: Evaluating the evidence. In J. Cassidy & P. R. Shaver (Eds.), *Handbook of attachment theory and research*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Maunder, R. G., & Hunter, J. J. (2001). Attachment and psychosomatic medicine: Developmental contributions to stress and disease. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 63, 556–567.
- Mikulincer, M., & Shaver, P. R. (2007). *Attachment in adulthood: Structure, dynamics, and change*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Minde, K. (1999). Mediating attachment patterns during a serious medical illness. *Infant Mental Health Journal*, 20(1), 105–122.
- Ryff, C. D., Singer, B. H., Wing, E., & Love, G. D. (2001). Elective affinities and uninvited agonies. In B. H. Singer & C. D. Ryff (Eds.), *Emotions, social relationships, and health* (pp. 133–175). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Schore, A. N. (2000). Attachment and the regulation of the right brain. *Attachment and Human Development*, 2, 23–47.
- Weiss, R. S. (1988). Loss and recovery. *Journal of Social Issues*, 44, 37–52.

Attention

- [Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine](#)

Attention Training

- [Meditation](#)
- [Transcendental Meditation](#)

Attitudes

Austin S. Baldwin

Department of Psychology, Southern Methodist University, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

Beliefs; Evaluations

Definition

An attitude is broadly defined as a tendency to evaluate a particular entity with some degree of favor or disfavor (Eagly and Chaiken 1993). Ajzen and Fishbein (2005), two preeminent attitude researchers, have distinguished between two general types of attitudes: attitudes toward objects and attitudes toward behavior. Attitudes toward behavior, specifically health behavior, are more relevant to behavioral medicine.

Description

Attitudes and Health Behavior

Current understanding of attitudes is based in an expectancy-value framework in which an attitude toward a behavior is a function of (a) beliefs that engaging in the behavior will result in certain outcomes (positive and negative), and (b) evaluations associated with outcomes that result from engaging in the behavior (positive and negative). For example, a person's attitude toward engaging in physical activity is a function of his or her beliefs about the consequences of exercising (e.g., improved health and appearance, time taken from other activities) and evaluations associated with the outcomes of exercise (e.g., increased energy, body soreness). The belief and evaluation components can also be conceptualized as cognitive (beliefs) and affective (evaluations) components.

Attitudes toward engaging in health behaviors are central to understanding how people make health-related decisions. A person's belief about whether taking his or her hypertension medication is beneficial to his or her health, jointly with an evaluation of whether the effects of taking the medication are positive or aversive, will to some degree, influence his or her decision to take the medication. The centrality of attitudes to health decision making is evidenced in the fact that (a) attitudes are found in all prominent theories of health behavior, and (b) health message campaigns are largely based on the assumption that changing attitudes will result in behavior change. In the next section, the most prominent health behavior theories will be described, including how attitudes are conceptualized in the models and the evidence for the influence of attitudes on behavior. In the following section, different approaches to changing health behavior through changing attitudes will be described. Finally, a brief overview on the limits of the influence of attitudes on behavior will be provided.

Health Behavior Theories

Health Belief Model. The Health Belief Model (HBM) includes six constructs that are proposed to guide decisions to engage in health-related behaviors. The constructs are (1) perceived susceptibility to the health threat, (2) perceived severity of the health threat, (3) perceived benefits of engaging in the behavior, (4) perceived barriers to engaging in the behavior, (5) cues to action, and (6) self-efficacy to engage in the behavior. Although not explicitly described as attitudes, the constructs of perceived benefits and perceived barriers to engaging in the behavior fit the definition of attitudes well. The measurement of these two constructs captures people's positive (benefits) and negative (barriers) beliefs and evaluations of engaging in the behavior. According to the HBM, both constructs have a direct influence on behavior.

Across a variety of health behaviors, evidence suggests that higher benefits and lower barriers (i.e., more favorable attitudes) are associated with a greater likelihood to engage in health behaviors.

For example, higher benefits and lower barriers have been shown to be associated with higher levels of mammogram adherence (Friedman et al. 1998) and condom use (Volk and Koopman 2001). The strength of the influence of benefits and barriers on behavior, as well as the influence of other constructs in the model, varies across different domains. Perceived barriers, however, have been shown to be the strongest predictor of behavior across all behavioral domains (Champion and Skinner 2008).

Theory of Planned Behavior. The Theory of Planned Behavior (TPB) suggests that health behaviors are influenced most proximally by intentions to engage in the behavior. Intentions are influenced by attitudes toward the behavior, perceived norms to engage in the behavior, and perceived control over the behavior. In the model, attitudes are conceptualized and measured as both beliefs about engaging in the behavior and evaluations of the associated outcomes. Because attitudes are thought to be proximal predictors of intentions rather than behaviors, attitudes have an indirect influence on behavior through intentions.

Evidence across a variety of health behavior domains, including exercise, smoking cessation, cancer screenings, substance use, and safe sex practices indicate that attitudes are an important predictor of behavior. As with the HBM, however, the strength of the influence of attitudes varies across different behavioral domains (Ajzen et al. 2007).

Transtheoretical Model of Behavior Change. The Transtheoretical Model (TTM) of behavior change assumes that behavior change is best understood as a process through which people progress through a series of discrete stages. Specifically, people go from not thinking about the behavior (precontemplation), to thinking about the behavior (contemplation), to considering the behavior (preparation), to engaging in the behavior (action). There is also a stage that considers continued behavior over time (maintenance). An important factor in the progression of stages is the weighing of the pros and cons for engaging in the relevant behavior. The TTM labels this factor decisional balance. As with the HBM, decisional

balance is not explicitly described as an attitude but it captures people's beliefs and evaluations of the benefits (pros) and costs (cons) of engaging in the behavior. Thus, it fits the definition of attitudes well. According to the TTM, as people progress through the stages toward engaging in the behavior, decisional balance systematically changes such that pros increase and cons decrease.

The systematic shifting in pros and cons is characteristic of stage progression, and there is evidence for this shifting across many health behavior domains (e.g., smoking cessation, exercise, sunscreen use, safer sex practices; Prochaska et al. 2008). In fact, evidence across many health domains suggests that moving from precontemplation to action requires a 1 standard deviation increase in perceived pros of engaging in the behavior (pros) and a .50 standard decrease in the perceived cons. Thus, people's evaluations of the benefits and costs of engaging in the behavior are central to behavior change.

Precaution Adoption Process Model. The Precaution Adoption Process Model (PAPM) is also a stage-based model of behavior change in which it is assumed that people progress from being unaware of the health issue to acting through a series of discrete stages. Unlike the TTM, the PAPM specifies the processes that are thought to guide movement between specific stages. For example, when people progress from being undecided about acting (Stage 3) to deciding to act (Stage 5) or not (Stage 4), beliefs about the effectiveness and difficulty of engaging in the behavior are thought to be critical at that stage (Weinstein et al. 2008). These particular beliefs are thought to be less important, however, at other stages of the change process. As with the HBM and TTM, beliefs about the effectiveness and difficulty of engaging in the behavior are not explicitly described as attitudes. Yet, as with the other models, these beliefs capture people's evaluations of the behavior that fits the description of attitudes well.

Unlike the other models, there is much less evidence from research on the PAPM on the specific role of attitudes in influencing behavior. There is evidence that PAPM-based interventions are effective (Weinstein et al. 2008), but little

attention has been paid specifically to the influence of beliefs about effectiveness and difficulty on behavior.

Attitude Change to Change Health Behavior

Evidence from persuasion research suggests that persuasive messages can change attitudes through two processes: one in which people process message content deeply and deliberately, the other in which peripheral aspects of the message (e.g., credibility of the source, people's mood) influence attitudes (Chaiken et al. 1989; Petty and Cacioppo 1986). Depending on the circumstances in which the communication occurs, attitudes can be influenced through one process or the other, or they can operate jointly. Attitudes are more likely to change and persist, however, when the message content is processed deeply and deliberately. Message content is more likely to be processed deeply and deliberately when it is personally relevant.

Health campaigns are largely based on the assumption that changing attitudes will result in behavior change. This is evidenced by the fact that many health campaigns focus on making people aware of the costs and benefits of engaging (or not engaging) in behaviors. Different types of health communications and messages have been shown to be effective in changing attitudes and behavior. Three types of health messages are described below.

Message Framing. The effect of a health message on attitudes and health behaviors can differ depending on whether the message content is framed in terms of what one stands to gain (gain frame) or what one stands to lose (loss frame) by engaging (or not engaging) in a behavior. Whether a gain- or loss-framed message is more effective depends on the level of risk or uncertainty associated with engaging in the behavior. When risk or uncertainty is high, loss-frame messages should be more effective; when risk or uncertainty is low, gain-frame messages should be more effective. For example, loss-frame messages (i.e., what one stands to lose by not engaging in the behavior) are more effective in promoting illness-detecting behaviors (e.g., cancer screening) because there is some uncertainty about whether one will detect an unwanted outcome (e.g., a lump in a breast). In

contrast, gain-frame messages (i.e., what one stands to gain by engaging in the behavior) are more effective in promoting prevention behaviors (e.g., sunscreen use) because there is little or no uncertainty associated with engaging in the recommended behavior (Rothman and Salovey 1997).

Message Tailoring. Messages that are individually tailored to a person's attributes, interests, and/or concerns tend to be more effective in changing people's attitudes and health behaviors than standardized messages (Noar et al. 2007). For example, a person who is not yet convinced of the health benefits of regular exercise should find a message that focuses on the benefits of exercise (i.e., tailored to current concerns) to be more relevant and convincing than a message that focuses on the variety of ways one can exercise (i.e., not tailored to concerns). The reason that tailored messages are more effective than standardized messages is because they are more personally relevant to the recipients, and thus people are more likely to process the message content (Kreuter et al. 1999).

Fear Appeals. Fear appeals are messages that are designed to evoke fear and worry about a health threat as a means to change attitudes and behavior. The rationale underlying fear appeals is that if people are made to feel anxious or worried about a health threat, they will develop a more favorable attitude about taking preventive action and will be more likely to behave accordingly. Thus, fear appeals target the affective component of attitudes. The effectiveness of fear appeals in changing behavior is mixed. Evidence suggests that fear appeals that contain clear and simple recommendation about how to take preventive action are more effective than appeals lacking behavioral recommendations (Witte and Allen 2000).

Limits of the Influence of Attitudes on Behavior

It seems intuitive that prior to engaging in any health behavior, a sufficiently favorable attitude toward the behavior is needed. For example, it is quite unlikely that a person would get a colonoscopy without the belief that doing so would be

beneficial to his or her health. But even when people hold favorable attitudes toward the behavior, they may not engage in it. In other words, attitudes are best thought of as a necessary, but not sufficient, influence on behavior.

There are various reasons why attitudes might not be sufficient to influence behavior change, or why messages aimed at changing attitudes are not effective. First, factors other than attitudes also influence behavior. Drawing from the Theory of Planned Behavior, social norms, perceived behavioral control, and behavioral intentions are other constructs known to influence behavior. In some contexts, people may hold favorable attitudes toward engaging in a behavior, but because of normative influences or a lack of control over the behavior, they will be unlikely to engage in the behavior. For example, young adult women may hold a favorable attitude about getting the HPV vaccine, but because they believe their parents would not approve (social norms), or they lack the proper insurance coverage (control), they would be unlikely to receive the vaccine.

Second, health communications and messages typically target the cognitive component of people's attitudes (e.g., beliefs that engaging in the behavior will result in beneficial outcomes), often ignoring the affective component (i.e., evaluation of the outcomes of the behavior). For example, women may believe that having a mammogram is a good thing for their health (cognitive component), but also may feel discomfort or embarrassment about the procedure (affective component). To the extent that health messages focus only on the health benefits, and fail to address aspects of engaging in the behavior that are affective in nature, their effectiveness in changing attitudes and behavior may be limited.

Third, attitudes and behavior must be assessed at the same level of specificity in order for a strong relation between the two to exist. For example, a general attitude about overall health behaviors (e.g., "How do you feel about engaging in healthy habits?") is unlikely to have a strong relation with exercising regularly, eating sufficient amounts of fruits and vegetables, seeing a physician for regular medical screenings, and engaging in safe sex practices. Instead, attitudes that are as specific as

the behaviors (e.g., "How do you feel about exercising regularly?") will have a stronger relation to the behaviors than a more general attitude. Thus, attitudes toward a behavior need to be targeted (e.g., in health communications) at the same level of specificity as the target behavior.

Cross-References

- [Beliefs](#)
- [Health Beliefs/Health Belief Model](#)
- [Tailored Communications](#)
- [Transtheoretical Model of Behavior Change](#)

References and Readings

- Ajzen, I., & Fishbein, M. (2005). The influence of attitudes on behavior. In D. Albarracín, B. T. Johnson, & M. P. Zanna (Eds.), *The handbook of attitudes* (pp. 173–221). Mahwah: Erlbaum.
- Ajzen, I., Albarracín, D., & Hornik, R. (Eds.). (2007). *Prediction and change of health behavior: Applying the reasoned action approach*. Mahwah: Erlbaum.
- Chaiken, S., Liberman, A., & Eagly, A. H. (1989). Heuristic and systematic information processing within and beyond the persuasion context. In J. S. Uleman & J. A. Bargh (Eds.), *Unintended thought* (pp. 212–252). New York: Guilford Press.
- Champion, V. L., & Skinner, C. S. (2008). The health belief model. In K. Glanz, B. K. Rimer, & K. Viswanath (Eds.), *Health behavior and health education: Theory, research, and practice* (4th ed., pp. 45–65). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Eagly, A. H., & Chaiken, S. (1993). *The psychology of attitudes*. Fort Worth: Harcourt.
- Friedman, L. C., Neff, N. E., Webb, J. A., & Latham, C. K. (1998). Age-related differences in mammography use and in breast cancer knowledge, attitudes, and behaviors. *Journal of Cancer Education*, 13, 26–30.
- Kreuter, M. W., Bull, F. C., Clark, E. M., & Oswald, D. L. (1999). Understanding how people process health information: A comparison of tailored and nontailored weight-loss materials. *Health Psychology*, 18, 487–494.
- Noar, S. M., Benac, C. N., & Harris, M. S. (2007). Does tailoring matter? Meta-analytic review of tailored print health behavior change interventions. *Psychological Bulletin*, 133, 673–693.
- Petty, R. E., & Cacioppo, J. T. (1986). *Communication and persuasion: Central and peripheral routes to attitude change*. New York: Springer.
- Prochaska, J. O., Redding, C. A., & Evers, K. E. (2008). The transtheoretical model and stages of change. In

- K. Glanz, B. K. Rimer, & K. Viswanath (Eds.), *Health behavior and health education: Theory, research, and practice* (4th ed., pp. 97–121). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Rothman, A. J., & Salovey, P. (1997). Shaping perceptions to motivate healthy behavior: The role of message framing. *Psychological Bulletin*, 121, 3–19.
- Volk, J. E., & Koopman, C. (2001). Factors associated with condom use in Kenya: A test of the health belief model. *The AIDS Education and Prevention Journal*, 13, 495–508.
- Weinstein, N. D., Sandman, P. M., & Blalock, S. J. (2008). The precaution adoption process model. In K. Glanz, B. K. Rimer, & K. Viswanath (Eds.), *Health behavior and health education: Theory, research, and practice* (4th ed., pp. 123–147). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Witte, K., & Allen, M. (2000). A meta-analysis of fear appeals: Implications for effective public health campaigns. *Health Education & Behavior*, 27, 591–615.

Attribution Theory

Kevin S. Spink¹ and Darren Nickel²

¹College of Kinesiology, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon, SK, Canada

²Department of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation, University of Saskatchewan, Saskatoon, SK, Canada

Synonyms

Causes; Explanations; Failure; Reasons; Success

Definition

Attribution theory is concerned with the conventions that individuals use in attempting to explain their behavior (Weiner 1986).

Description

According to Bernard Weiner, one of the main contributors in this area, there is no one single attribution theory. Rather, there are a number of attribution-based theories, and attribution is better described as a field of study than as a single

encompassing theory (Weiner 2008). Notwithstanding this clarification, the premise is simple – interpretation of what caused an outcome is proposed to influence future behavior.

In terms of motivation, it has been suggested that individuals seek the causes of outcomes because they want to understand and explain those outcomes and predict future outcomes. Causes are sought for important outcomes, especially where the outcome was not expected. As one example, individuals who ask why they did not finish all of their cardiac rehabilitation classes and then generate responses such as too busy, lazy, tired, or the instructor was poor are using an attribution-based theory of motivation.

It is important to recognize that one's explanations are perceptions that may or may not capture the actual cause. In the previous example, one's failure to attend all the cardiac classes may have been caused by poor time management skills (too busy), but the individual may attribute it to laziness. An individual's perceptions of what caused an outcome can influence expectations for future outcomes, emotions, persistence, and ultimately future behavior. Using this example, the individual who attributed not finishing all of the classes to being lazy, while feeling some shame, would likely put little effort into being active in the future if laziness is considered a character trait that is not going to change! On the other hand, an explanation that time management skills were not effective provides some hope for increased attendance at more classes in the future as these skills could be improved. So, it would appear that attributions might matter.

This was certainly the stance adopted by Fritz Heider, who is known as the “father” of attribution. In his 1958 book, *The Psychology of Interpersonal Relations*, Heider laid out his common-sense approach that captured the beliefs of the “person in the street.” In his naïve action of analysis, Heider (1958) reasoned that individuals endeavor to structure and control their actions by understanding the causes of outcomes thereby improving the prediction of future events. In terms of perceived causes of success and failure for an outcome, Heider identified two internal causes (ability and effort) and one external cause

(task difficulty). While the contributions of a number of other researchers helped to deliver the idea of attributions into mainstream social psychology, arguably, it was the publication of the book *Attribution: Perceiving the causes of behavior* (Jones et al. 1972) that served to solidify the study of attribution as a legitimate form of inquiry that endures today.

Weiner was one of the editors of that seminal book. He postulated that individuals search for the causes of important outcomes because the interpretation of the past (perceived causes of past events) determines what will be done in the future. Weiner (2010) suggested that individuals often use four factors to explain outcomes – ability, effort, task difficulty, and luck. For instance, one's failure to resist eating that very tasty, but calorie-rich, bowl of chocolate ice cream while on a diet could be ascribed to a lack of willpower (ability as a type of personal trait), not trying hard enough to resist (lack of effort), the appeal of the ice cream (task too difficult), or the fact that it was served during a state of hunger (bad luck), or some combination of these causes.

While identifying the causes for these outcomes is important, Weiner (1986) argued that the properties underlying the specific causes may be of greater significance because they influence emotions, future expectations, and motivation. Although Weiner (2010) suggested the possibility that other causal properties exist, his attribution-based theory affords the classification of causal ascriptions along three property dimensions – locus, stability, and controllability. First, a causal locus denotes that we tend to attribute causes to factors either within ourselves or the environment (i.e., internal or external to ourselves). Second, as some causes are relatively constant while others are more variable, stability of attributions also is important (stable vs. unstable). For example, while ability is typically perceived as stable, effort may fluctuate. Third, while some attributions are under volitional control, others are not (controllable vs. uncontrollable). For example, failure to comply completely with a physician's prescription to lose weight ascribed to the cause of low effort may be controllable, whereas failure because of an untimely illness may not.

Beyond qualification of attributions along dimensions, one of the main tenets of Weiner's model is that these dimensions lead to predictable psychological consequences (cognitive and affective). The dimensions of locus of causality and controllability are believed to interact with perceived outcomes in determining affective reactions. In terms of affective consequences, Weiner (1986) makes it clear that both outcomes and attribution dimensions are important precursors. The stability dimension, however, relates more to cognitive consequences in the form of expectations regarding future outcomes (Weiner 2010).

The important contribution of an attribution-based theory is the assertion that it is *how* we explain the outcomes (i.e., attributions) and not just the outcomes themselves that influences affective experiences. Weiner (2010) noted that feelings of pride and self-esteem following an outcome are expected to be influenced by locus. Increases in pride and self-esteem are expected when a positive outcome is attributed internally (e.g., high aptitude). Also, guilt and shame are believed to be influenced chiefly by the controllability dimension. Guilt is expected when a negative outcome is seen as caused by something personally controllable (e.g., lack of effort), while shame is expected when a negative outcome is caused by a personal attribute about which one can do nothing (e.g., low aptitude). Further, all of these emotional responses are believed to influence future decisions and actions (Weiner 1986).

In terms of specific predictions for future expectations, one would expect a similar future outcome when an outcome is attributed to a stable cause (e.g., task was too difficult). It is less clear, however, whether expected future outcomes will be similar or not when an outcome is attributed to an unstable cause that could change (e.g., lack of effort). Future expectations, in turn, are believed to play an important role in determining intentions and future behavior (Weiner 1986).

Attributions have certainly played out in the health area. For instance, using attributions that are stable (e.g., an explanation that one is good at managing time around exercise) to explain typical exercise levels (health-enhancing

behavior) predicted intention to maintain those levels during a forthcoming time period (Spink and Nickel 2010). Those who felt that the causes of their typical levels of exercise were stable also intended to maintain those levels throughout a subsequent period. In addition to relationships with health-enhancing behaviors, attributions also have been associated with self-efficacy, which has been identified as an important cognition associated with an array of health behaviors. Self-efficacy is defined as beliefs in one's capabilities to successfully execute a course of action (Bandura 1997). As an example of the attribution/self-efficacy relationship, it has been demonstrated that the interpretation of one's past activity behavior (as reflected in attribution dimensions) improved the prediction of self-efficacy over and above that predicted by past behavior only (Nickel and Spink 2010).

Attributions also appear to be associated with the illness end of the health continuum. Similar to research with asymptomatic populations, it has been reported that both attributional explanations about one's past health-related activity and past behavior predicted self-efficacy for those with multiple sclerosis (Nickel et al. 2014) and self-reported arthritis (Spink et al. 2016). In both studies, it was found that while perceived differences in success and failure were associated with efficacy beliefs, greater differences emerged when perceived outcomes were attributed to stable factors.

In a meta-analysis examining psychological adjustment to disease, Roesch and Weiner (2001) reported that, for the most part, individuals who explained their disease as being caused by more internal, unstable, and controllable causes (e.g., overweight) also reported that they used more adaptive forms of coping (e.g., coping self-efficacy). These individuals were ultimately more well-adjusted than those who used more external, stable, and uncontrollable causes (e.g., exposure from the environment). In contrast, those who experienced negative psychological adjustment tended to use stable and uncontrollable attributions (e.g., it is in the genes) to explain their illness. These patterns appear consistent with Weiner's (2010) contention that attributing failure

to stable causes impedes hope and motivation, whereas ascribing failure to unstable causes creates hope and facilitates motivation.

Given that attributions are perceptions, interventions could be designed to alter unhealthy behavior by changing maladaptive attributions. One study examining the activity of older adults underscores this point (Sarkisian et al. 2009). Consistent with other research, it was assumed that older adults would report the cause of a failure to be active as "old age." As theory would suggest that stable and uncontrollable attributions for failure are especially detrimental to motivation, these individuals were retrained to attribute failure to be active to controllable factors. After the attribution retraining, it was revealed that the older adults increased their walking by over 4 km per week. Results such as these are encouraging and suggest that attribution retraining programs may provide an effective method to improve health behaviors when perceived causes for failure are maladaptive and, at the very least, deserve future research attention.

Cross-References

► Self-Efficacy

References and Further Reading

- Bandura, A. (1997). *Self-efficacy: The exercise of control*. New York: Freeman.
- Heider, F. (1958). *The psychology of interpersonal relations*. New York: Wiley.
- Jones, E. E., Kanouse, D. E., Kelley, H. H., Nisbett, R. E., Valins, S., & Weiner, B. (Eds.). (1972). *Attribution: Perceiving the causes of behavior*. Morristown: General Learning Press.
- Nickel, D., & Spink, K. S. (2010). Attributions and self-regulatory efficacy for health-related physical activity. *Journal of Health Psychology, 15*, 53–63.
- Nickel, D., Spink, K. S., Andersen, M., & Knox, K. (2014). Attributions and self-efficacy for physical activity in multiple sclerosis. *Psychology, Health & Medicine, 19*, 433–441.
- Roesch, S. C., & Weiner, B. (2001). A meta-analytic review of coping with illness: Do causal attributions matter? *Journal of Psychosomatic Research, 50*, 205–219.

- Sarkisian, C. A., Prohaska, T. R., Davis, C., & Weiner, B. (2009). Pilot test of an attributional retraining intervention to raise walking levels in sedentary older adults. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 55, 1842–1846.
- Spink, K. S., & Nickel, D. (2010). Self-regulatory efficacy as a mediator between attributions and intention for health-related physical activity. *Journal of Health Psychology*, 15, 75–84.
- Spink, K. S., Brawley, L. R., & Gyuresik, N. G. (2016). Perceived success/failure and attributions predict self-regulatory efficacy to meet physical activity recommendations for women with arthritis. *Women & Health*, 56, 767–783.
- Weiner, B. (1986). *An attributional theory of motivation and emotion*. New York: Springer.
- Weiner, B. (2008). Reflections on the history of attribution theory and research: People, personalities, publications, problems. *Social Psychology*, 39, 151–156.
- Weiner, B. (2010). The development of an attribution-based theory of motivation: A history of ideas. *Educational Psychologist*, 45, 28–36.

Attributional Style

- [Locus of Control](#)

Attributional Style Questionnaire (ASQ)

- [Optimism and Pessimism: Measurement](#)

Autism Spectrum Disorders

- [Developmental Disabilities](#)

Autoimmune Diabetes

- [Insulin-Dependent Diabetes Mellitus \(IDDM\)](#)

Autoimmune Diabetes Mellitus

- [Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus](#)

Autonomic

- [Heart Rate Variability](#)

Autonomic Activation

Michael Richter¹ and Rex A. Wright²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Geneva, Geneva, Switzerland

²Department of Psychology, College of Arts and Sciences, University of North Texas, Denton, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Autonomic arousal](#); [Autonomic reactivity](#)

Definition

Autonomic activation refers to an increase in the activity of the autonomic nervous system, the physical system responsible for nonconsciously maintaining bodily homeostasis and coordinating bodily responses. It is assessed by comparing autonomic values obtained during a test period to those obtained during a rest or baseline period. Baseline measures commonly are taken shortly before test periods. However, they can be taken well in advance of test periods or after them. Autonomic activation can pertain to neuronal activity or activity of visceral structures affected by it, such as the ones involved in circulation, respiration, and digestion. The distinction between neuronal activation and visceral structure activation is not trivial given that an increase in the activity of a visceral structure may be caused

by a decrease in neuronal activity. For instance, increases in the frequency of the heart beat – which are often interpreted as signals of autonomic activation – can be due to reduced activity in the parasympathetic branch of the autonomic nervous system.

References and Readings

- Berne, R. M., Levy, M. N., Koeppen, B. M., & Stanton, B. A. (2004). *Physiology* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Cacioppo, J. T., & Tassinari, L. G. (1990). *Principles of psychophysiology: Physical, social, and inferential elements*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Cacioppo, J. T., Tassinari, L. G., & Berntson, G. G. (2000). *Handbook of psychophysiology* (2nd ed.). New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Ganong, W. F. (2005). *Review of medical physiology* (22nd ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Levick, J. R. (2009). *An introduction to cardiovascular physiology* (5th ed.). London: Hodder.

Autonomic Arousal

► Autonomic Activation

Autonomic Balance

Julian F. Thayer

Department of Psychology, The Ohio State University, Columbus, OH, USA

Synonyms

Inflammation; Parasympathetic; Sympathetic

Definition

There is growing evidence for the role of the autonomic nervous system (ANS) in a wide range of somatic and mental diseases. The ANS is generally conceived to have two major branches: the sympathetic system, associated

with energy mobilization, and the parasympathetic system, associated with vegetative and restorative functions. Normally, the activity of these branches is in dynamic balance. When this changes into a static imbalance, for example, under environmental pressures, the organism becomes vulnerable to pathology.

Resting heart rate (HR), by virtue of its dominant control via parasympathetic mechanisms (Levy 1997; Uijtdehaage and Thayer 2000), can be used as a rough indicator of autonomic balance, and several large studies have shown a largely linear, positive dose-response relationship between resting HR and all-cause mortality (see Habib 1999, for a review). This association was independent of gender and ethnicity, and showed a three-fold increase in mortality in persons with resting HR over 90 beats per minute (bpm) compared to those with resting HRs of less than 60 bpm.

Brook and Julius (2000) have detailed how autonomic imbalance in the sympathetic direction is associated with a range of metabolic, hemodynamic, trophic, and rheologic abnormalities that contribute to elevated cardiac morbidity and mortality. Autonomic balance has been shown to be associated with diabetes mellitus, and decreased HRV has been shown to precede evidence of disease provided by standard clinical tests (Ziegler et al. 2001). In addition, autonomic balance and decreased parasympathetic activity is also associated with immune dysfunction and inflammation, which have been implicated in a wide range of conditions including cardiovascular disease, diabetes, osteoporosis, arthritis, Alzheimer's disease, periodontal disease, and certain types of cancers as well as declines in muscle strength and increased frailty and disability (Ershler and Keller 2000; Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 2002). The common mechanism seems to involve excess pro-inflammatory cytokines such as interleukin 1 and 6 and tumor necrosis factor. Importantly, increased parasympathetic activity and acetylcholine (the primary parasympathetic neurotransmitter) have been shown to attenuate release of these pro-inflammatory cytokines, and sympathetic hyperactivity is associated with their increased production (Tracey 2002; Thayer and Sternberg 2010). Thus, autonomic imbalance may

be a final common pathway to increased morbidity and mortality from a host of conditions and diseases.

Although the idea is not new (Sternberg 1997), several recent reviews have provided strong evidence linking negative affective states and dispositions to disease and ill health (Friedman and Thayer 1998; Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 2002; Thayer et al. 2010). All of these reviews implicate altered ANS function and decreased parasympathetic activity as a possible mediator in this link. An additional pathway between psychosocial stressors and ill health is an indirect one, in which psychosocial factors lead to poor lifestyle choices, including a lack of physical activity and the abuse of tobacco, alcohol, and drugs. Both sedentary lifestyle and substance abuse are associated with autonomic imbalance and decreased parasympathetic activity (Ingjaldsson et al. 2003; Thayer and Lane 2007; Thayer et al. 2010). In fact, the therapeutic effectiveness of smoking cessation, reduced alcohol consumption, and increased physical activity rest in part on their ability to restore autonomic balance and increase parasympathetic activity.

Cross-References

► [Heart Rate Variability](#)

References and Readings

- Brook, R. D., & Julius, S. (2000). Autonomic imbalance, hypertension, and cardiovascular risk. *American Journal of Hypertension*, 13, 112S–122S.
- Ershler, W., & Keller, E. (2000). Age-associated increased interleukin-6 gene expression, late life diseases, and frailty. *Annual Review of Medicine*, 51, 245–270.
- Friedman, B. H., & Thayer, J. F. (1998). Autonomic balance revisited: Panic anxiety and heart rate variability. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 44, 133–151.
- Habib, G. B. (1999). Reappraisal of heart rate as a risk factor in the general population. *European Heart Journal Supplements*, 1(H), H2–H10.
- Ingjaldsson, J. T., Laberg, J. C., & Thayer, J. F. (2003). Reduced heart rate variability in chronic alcohol abuse: Relationship with negative mood, chronic thought suppression, and compulsive drinking. *Biological Psychiatry*, 54, 1427–1436.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., McGuire, L., Robles, T. F., & Glaser, R. (2002). Emotions, morbidity, and mortality: New perspectives from psychoneuroimmunology. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 53, 83–107.
- Levy, M. N. (1997). Neural control of cardiac function. *Baillière's Clinical Neurology*, 6, 227–244.
- Sternberg, E. M. (1997). Emotions and disease: From balance of humors to balance of molecules. *Nature Medicine*, 3, 264–267.
- Thayer, J. F., & Lane, R. D. (2007). The role of vagal function in the risk for cardiovascular disease and mortality. *Biological Psychology*, 74, 224–242.
- Thayer, J. F., & Sternberg, E. M. (2010). Neural aspects of immunomodulation: Focus on the vagus nerve. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 24, 1223–1228.
- Thayer, J. F., Yamamoto, S. S., & Brosschot, J. F. (2010). The relationship of autonomic imbalance, heart rate variability and cardiovascular disease risk factors. *International Journal of Cardiology*, 141, 122–131.
- Tracey, K. J. (2002). The inflammatory reflex. *Nature*, 420, 853–859.
- Uijdehaage, S. B. H., & Thayer, J. F. (2000). Accentuated antagonism in the control of human heart rate. *Clinical Autonomic Research*, 10, 107–110.
- Ziegler, D., Laude, D., Akila, F., & Elghozi, J. L. (2001). Time and frequency domain estimation of early diabetic cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy. *Clinical Autonomic Research*, 11(6), 369–376.

Autonomic Nervous System (ANS)

Michael Richter¹ and Rex A. Wright²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Geneva, Geneva, Switzerland

²Department of Psychology, College of Arts and Sciences, University of North Texas, Denton, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Vegetative nervous system](#); [Visceral nervous system](#)

Definition

The autonomic nervous system (ANS) is a part of the efferent (i.e., outgoing) division of the peripheral nervous system. It adapts the organism to

internal and external changes, maintaining bodily homeostasis and coordinating bodily responses.

Description

The autonomic nervous system (also known as the visceral nervous system and vegetative nervous system) combines with the somatic nervous system to form the efferent (i.e., outgoing) division of the peripheral nervous system. It innervates glands, the heart, and smooth muscles of all visceral structures and adapts the organism to internal and external changes by regulating a wide range of bodily functions such as blood circulation, body temperature, respiration, and digestion. The basic tasks of the autonomic nervous system are to maintain bodily homeostasis and coordinate bodily responses. In contrast to regulatory processes of the somatic nervous system, regulatory processes of the autonomic nervous system do not require conscious or voluntary control.

Anatomical Structure

The autonomic nervous system is comprised of two main branches or subsystems, (1) the sympathetic nervous system and (2) the parasympathetic nervous system. A third nervous system – the enteric system – is considered by some physiologists to be a part of the autonomic nervous system and by others to be independent of that system. The enteric nervous system consists of two large nerve networks located in the walls of the digestive tract, identified as the submucosal plexus and the myenteric plexus. It innervates the smooth muscle cells of the digestive tract as well as exocrine and endocrine cells, controlling local activity within the digestive tract (e.g., secretion of digestive juices and digestive motility). The enteric system can act autonomously, but also in response to sympathetic and parasympathetic input.

Basic functional units of the sympathetic and the parasympathetic nervous systems are preganglionic and postganglionic neurons.

Preganglionic neurons have cell bodies in the spinal cord or brainstem and axons that extend to cell bodies of postganglionic neurons. Postganglionic neurons have cell bodies that are clustered in so-called ganglia and axons that innervate target visceral structures. Notably, preganglionic neurons typically synapse with more than one postganglionic neuron. Similarly, postganglionic neurons typically synapse with visceral structures in multiple locations, allowing pervasive structural influence. An anatomical exception to the above is seen in the adrenal medulla. Although the adrenal medulla is a part of the adrenal gland, its cells are modified postganglionic neurons directly innervated by preganglionic neurons.

The major anatomical difference between the sympathetic nervous system and the parasympathetic nervous system is the location of neuronal cell bodies. Sympathetic preganglionic neurons are located in the thoracic and upper lumbar segment of the spinal cord, whereas parasympathetic preganglionic neurons lie in the brainstem and the sacral spinal cord. Postganglionic neurons of the sympathetic system are located either in one of the sympathetic ganglion chains (sympathetic trunk, also called paravertebral ganglia) along the spinal cord or in the prevertebral ganglia in front of the spinal cord. Parasympathetic postganglionic neurons are located either in terminal ganglia that lie near the target organ or directly in the organ wall. Given the difference in the position of the ganglia, sympathetic preganglionic fibers are usually shorter than parasympathetic preganglionic fibers and sympathetic postganglionic fibers are usually longer than parasympathetic postganglionic fibers.

Sympathetic and Parasympathetic Innervations of Visceral Structures and Functioning

Most visceral structures have both sympathetic and parasympathetic innervations. Exceptions are the skin, most blood vessels and most sweat glands, which are only sympathetically innervated. In visceral structures with dual innervations, the sympathetic and parasympathetic

systems work together to regulate bodily function. It is common for the sympathetic and parasympathetic systems to exert complementary influences on visceral structures, with sympathetic arousal leading to adjustments suitable for high activity (“fight and flight”) and parasympathetic arousal leading to adjustments suitable for low activity and bodily restoration (“rest and digest”). Examples of high activity adjustments are constriction of blood vessels in the gastrointestinal (GI) tract, dilation of blood vessels in the skeletal muscles and lungs, and improved heart rate and contraction force. Examples of low activity and restorative adjustments are the reverse: dilation of blood vessels in the GI tract, constriction of blood vessels in the skeletal muscles and lungs, and decreased heart rate and contraction force. However, there are multiple exceptions to this complementary influence rule. Consider, for example, sympathetic and parasympathetic influence on salivation. Both sympathetic arousal and parasympathetic arousal increase salivary flow, although to different degrees and yielding different compositions of saliva. It also is noteworthy that the systems may exert an activating or an inhibiting effect depending on the innervated structure. For instance, increased sympathetic arousal increases heart rate but decreases motility in the digestive tract. Parasympathetic activity activates digestion, but slows heart rate.

In working together, the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems typically do not function in an all-or-none fashion, but rather activate to different degrees. Depending on the affected visceral structure and situation, one of the two systems may be more active than the other. For instance, at rest heart rate is mainly under parasympathetic nervous system control, subject to a negligible sympathetic influence. By contrast, at high levels of physical activity, it is mainly under sympathetic nervous system control. Shifts in sympathetic and parasympathetic influence can occur locally within a single visceral structure (e.g., the eye) or across visceral structures. Shifts in local influence occur to meet highly specialized demands (e.g., the change in pupil size to adapt to a change in ambient light). Global shifts adapt the body to large-scale

environmental changes (e.g., the appearance of a substantial physical threat).

Neurotransmitters and Receptors

In addition to differing anatomically, the sympathetic and the parasympathetic nervous systems differ with respect to their neurotransmitters and the receptors that mediate their effects on visceral structures. The most important receptors are (1) cholinergic receptors stimulated by the neurotransmitter acetylcholine and (2) adrenergic receptors stimulated by the neurotransmitters norepinephrine and epinephrine. Acetylcholine is the neurotransmitter between all pre- and postganglionic neurons as well as between parasympathetic postganglionic neurons and visceral structures. Acetylcholine is also the neurotransmitter of the sympathetic postganglionic neurons that innervate the eccrine sweat glands and of sympathetic postganglionic neurons that innervate skeletal muscle vessels and cause vasodilation. All other sympathetic postganglionic neurons release norepinephrine. The adrenal medulla constitutes an exception. Despite the fact that cells of the adrenal medulla are modified sympathetic postganglionic cells, they release epinephrine and norepinephrine directly into the blood stream. It is noteworthy that acetylcholine and norepinephrine are the major neurotransmitters of the sympathetic and the parasympathetic nervous system, but co-transmitters like vasoactive intestinal polypeptide (VIP), adenosine triphosphate (ATP), or neuropeptide Y are frequent.

Central Control

An afferent (i.e., incoming) nervous system conveys information about the current state of the organism to structures in the central nervous system. These structures exert a regulatory impact by way of autonomic efferents. Central nervous system structures that control autonomic nervous system activity vary depending on afferent information that is received. The hypothalamus plays a central role in regulating activity of the autonomic

nervous system by integrating autonomic, somatic, and endocrine responses that accompany different organism states. This central nervous system structure receives afferent input from visceral sensory neurons and is subject to the modulating impact of other central nervous system structures such as the amygdala and insular cortex. It influences autonomic centers located in the brainstem and can directly affect preganglionic neurons.

Summary

The autonomic nervous system is a part of the efferent (outgoing) division of the peripheral nervous system. It innervates glands, the heart, and smooth muscles of all visceral structures and adapts the organism to internal and external changes, maintaining bodily homeostasis and coordinating bodily responses without requiring conscious or voluntary control. Two branches or subsystems of the autonomic nervous system are the sympathetic nervous system and the parasympathetic nervous system. These commonly – but not always – work in a complementary fashion to regulate bodily function, with sympathetic arousal leading to adjustments suitable for high activity (“fight and flight”) and parasympathetic arousal leading to adjustments suitable for low activity and bodily restoration (“rest and digest”). In working together, the sympathetic and parasympathetic branches do not function in an all-or-none fashion, but rather activate to different degrees. Shifts in sympathetic and parasympathetic influence can occur locally within a single visceral structure or across visceral structures, with local shifts occurring to meet highly specialized demands and global shifts adapting the body to large-scale environmental changes. The sympathetic and the parasympathetic nervous systems differ anatomically and with respect to their neurotransmitters and the receptors that mediate their effects on visceral structures. Autonomic control is maintained by structures in the central nervous system that receive visceral information by way of an afferent (incoming) nervous system. A key central nervous system structure is the

hypothalamus, which integrates autonomic, somatic, and endocrine responses that accompany different organism states.

Cross-References

- [Acetylcholine](#)
- [Autonomic Activation](#)
- [Autonomic Balance](#)
- [Autonomic Nervous System \(ANS\)](#)
- [Epinephrine](#)
- [Parasympathetic Nervous System \(PNS\)](#)
- [Sympathetic Nervous System \(SNS\)](#)

References and Readings

- Berne, R. M., Levy, M. N., Koeppen, B. M., & Stanton, B. A. (2004). *Physiology* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Cacioppo, J. T., & Tassinary, L. G. (1990). *Principles of psychophysiology: Physical, social, and inferential elements*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Cacioppo, J. T., Tassinary, L. G., & Berntson, G. G. (2000). *Handbook of psychophysiology* (2nd ed.). New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Ganong, W. F. (2005). *Review of medical physiology* (22nd ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Levick, J. R. (2009). *An introduction to cardiovascular physiology* (5th ed.). London: Hodder.

Autonomic Reactivity

- [Autonomic Activation](#)

AVE

- [Abstinence Violation Effect](#)

Average

- [Mean \(Average\)](#)

Avoidance

Deborah J. Wiebe

Psychological Sciences, University of California,
Merced, Merced, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Avoidance coping](#); [Avoidance goals](#); [Avoidance motivation](#); [Health information avoidance](#)

Definition

Avoidance and approach represent two fundamental organizing principles underlying human behavior. Avoidance involves movement away from threats or negative outcomes, while approach involves movement toward rewards or positive outcomes. These avoidance and approach tendencies are expressed in cognitive, affective, and behavioral domains. In behavioral medicine, avoidance has been commonly examined in the interrelated contexts of avoidance coping, avoidance-based self-regulation, and health information avoidance. Generally speaking, avoidance-based activities are associated with poorer psychological, behavioral, and physical health outcomes than are approach-based activities. However, avoidance is functional and can be critical to survival if it allows individuals to avert urgent dangers. There are also broader contexts in which avoidance may be relatively adaptive (e.g., in the early stages of coping with stress; when there is little that can be done to alter the threat).

Description

Introduction

Human behavior is widely believed to be regulated by an approach system that orients appetitive behavior toward potential rewards and an avoidance system that orients behavior away from potential threats and punishment. These two systems have distinct underlying neurobiological substrates, where approach behaviors

characterized by heightened sensitivity to reward are organized by the behavioral activation system (BAS) and avoidance behaviors characterized by heightened sensitivity to threat are organized by the behavioral inhibition system (BIS) (Gray 1990). Avoidance can thus be defined as a system that regulates behavior around escaping or distancing oneself away from threats or punishments. Avoidance can be a relatively stable disposition but can also be activated by situational cues.

Avoidance motivation serves important functions but can also be problematic. Activation of the avoidance system increases alertness, focuses attention, and promotes systematic thinking about the source of threat. These processes can be critical to survival, allowing one to escape in the face of acute and urgent dangers. However, such processes can be problematic in the long term because they arouse negative emotions such as fear and anxiety, deplete energy and self-control resources, and can undermine performance on tasks that require flexible information processing and holistic thinking (Roskes et al. 2014). Within behavioral medicine, avoidance has been most commonly examined in the contexts of avoidance coping, avoidance goals and the self-regulation of health behavior, and health information avoidance.

Avoidance Coping

Coping refers to behavioral, cognitive, and affective strategies one engages in to reduce the experience and impact of stressful events. Avoidance coping represents one of several broad dimensions of coping strategies characterized by efforts to escape or distance oneself from stressful events and associated feelings of distress. This contrasts with approach coping strategies which are characterized by efforts to engage with and directly alter the demands of the stressor. Avoidance coping strategies can take different forms. Folkman and Moskowitz (2004) distinguished between distancing strategies where one recognizes the stressor but makes efforts to put it out of mind and strategies to escape the stressor or its implications such as using alcohol or other substances. Avoidance coping shares features with emotion-focused coping strategies, which involve efforts to minimize the emotional consequences of stressful

events rather than to alter the stressor directly. However, the coping literature now indicates that emotion-focused coping strategies can include both emotion-approach and emotion-avoidance strategies.

The use of avoidance coping reflects both dispositional and situational factors. Individuals who have personality traits that are linked to the behavioral inhibition system (e.g., neuroticism) are more likely to utilize avoidance coping strategies than those who have traits that are linked to the behavioral activation system (e.g., optimism; extraversion). One's personal and environmental resources also influence the use of avoidance coping strategies. For example, Holahan and Moos (1987) found that avoidance coping was more common among individuals who had fewer personal (e.g., self-efficacy beliefs; internal locus of control), economic, and social resources. Finally, avoidance coping is partially determined by the demands of the stressor. Most people utilize multiple types of coping strategies in the course of dealing with the changing demands of stressful events. Avoidance coping is more common when one is dealing with situations that cannot be actively altered. For example, Lazarus and Folkman examined the coping strategies of students before and after an important exam. Most students utilized more active approach-based coping strategies before the exam when their efforts would be effective at enhancing achievement. After the exam, however, when students could do little more than simply wait for their results, avoidance strategies increased.

As a general rule, avoidance coping is less adaptive than approach coping, as evidenced by its associations with poorer subjective well-being, psychological adjustment, and physical health. These associations may occur for several reasons. First, avoidance coping by definition does not alter the stressful situation. Thus, to the extent that one's coping efforts may be beneficial to health by minimizing the intensity, duration, or recurrence of a stressful event, avoidance coping may be harmful because it increases or prolongs exposure to the health-damaging consequences of stress. Second, avoidance coping requires effort and may consume resources that are not then available for other more adaptive coping

strategies. Finally, some avoidance strategies may be damaging because they involve unhealthy risk behaviors that have fairly direct adverse health effects. For example, escape-avoidance strategies that involve trying to minimize distress through alcohol or substance use and poor dietary practices may have direct adverse health consequences.

Although avoidance coping is generally related to poorer health outcomes, there are some exceptions when avoidance coping may not be harmful and may be adaptive. Avoidance strategies that occur in the early stages of dealing with a stressful event appear to be adaptive (Suls and Fletcher 1985), potentially because one needs time to develop or activate resources and skills to manage stress effectively. Similarly, avoidance strategies such as distancing may be adaptive when dealing with uncontrollable stressful events such as those associated with loss and bereavement (Carver 2006; Folkman and Moskowitz 2004).

Self-Regulation and Health-Relevant Avoidance Goals

Self-regulation has been defined as the process by which people pursue and achieve goals. Self-regulation models argue that human behavior is motivated by a set of hierarchically arranged goals (Carver 2006). The highest and most abstract goals reveal self-defining principles (e.g., to be of service to others), while the lowest and most concrete goals reflect behaviors that can be taken to reach the higher-level goal (e.g., to donate time and money to the food bank). Although multiple goals are likely to be active simultaneously and may even conflict with each other, behavior is organized around movement toward accomplishing salient goals. Through positive and negative feedback loops analogous to a thermostat or a homeostatic process, individuals are believed to feel distress when their movement toward goal achievement is thwarted. From this perspective, stress can be conceptualized as the disruption of one's goal pursuits.

Self-regulation theory has been applied to health and illness management behaviors by examining how people set and strive to achieve health-relevant goals (Mann et al. 2013). Health-relevant

approach goals are oriented around achieving desired health behaviors and outcomes (e.g., to exercise 5 days/week; to stay healthy), while avoidance goals are oriented around avoiding undesired health behaviors and outcomes (e.g., to avoid eating junk food; to not get cancer). Approach goals are more consistently achieved than are avoidance goals, potentially because approach goals have clear criteria for progress and successful achievement, while avoidance goals do not.

These self-regulation processes have implications for promoting health behavior change. For example, interventions to reframe health-relevant avoidance goals as an approach goal have been associated with enhanced achievement of the health behavior goal. However, individual differences in the extent to which one has a predominantly approach or avoidance motivational orientation may influence how well approach versus avoidance goals motivate health behavior. A given health behavior can be framed as an approach goal by focusing on the positive outcomes the behavior may achieve (e.g., flossing my teeth will result in healthy gums and fresh breath) or as an avoidance goal by focusing on the negative outcomes the behavior may avoid (e.g., flossing my teeth will prevent gum disease). Health behavior messages are more likely to motivate behavior change if the frame of the message is congruent with an individual's predominant motivation, a process known as the "congruency effect" (Covey 2014). That is, individuals with a predominant avoidance orientation are more likely to change their behavior when the message frame emphasizes an avoidance goal. Tailoring health messages to an individual's avoidance motivation may thus be important for promoting healthy behaviors.

Health Information Avoidance

Health information avoidance refers to motivated decisions and behaviors to prevent or delay the acquisition of available but unwanted health information (e.g., choosing not to know results of medical tests that indicate risk or diagnosis of a serious illness) (Howell et al. 2019). Health information avoidance may be particularly problematic

if it delays knowledge of one's high risk for preventable or manageable diseases.

Both dispositional and situational factors are linked to health information avoidance. Information avoidance is less likely among individuals who have higher openness to new information and more psychosocial resources (e.g., coping, social support) and who perceive the health condition as more controllable. Health information avoidance is believed to be motivated by threats to how people wish to feel, think, and behave. For example, avoidance is more likely when individuals anticipate the health information will threaten emotional well-being (e.g., increase negative affect or undermine positive affect) or valued self-images (e.g., belief that one is healthy and responsible) or will obligate an individual to engage in unwanted behaviors (e.g., complex or unpleasant behaviors to prevent or manage disease). Interventions that alter these underlying motivations may reduce health information avoidance. For example, information avoidance has been reduced by perceived control interventions which prompt people to think about the aspects of the threat they can control and by self-affirmation interventions which prompt people to focus on their positive self-views that are not threatened.

Cross-References

- [Behavioral Inhibition](#)
- [Coping](#)
- [Escape-Avoidance Coping](#)
- [Fear and Fear Avoidance](#)
- [Negative Thoughts](#)
- [Passive Coping Strategies](#)
- [Self-regulation Model](#)

References and Further Reading

- Carver, C. S. (2006). Approach, avoidance, and the self-regulation of affect and action. *Motivation and Emotion*, 30, 105–110.
- Covey, J. (2014). The role of dispositional factors in moderating message framing effects. *Health Psychology*, 33, 52–65.

- Folkman, S., & Moskowitz, J. T. (2004). Coping: Pitfalls and promise. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 55, 745–774.
- Gray, J. A. (1990). Brain systems that mediate both emotion and cognition. *Cognition & Emotion*, 4, 269–288.
- Holahan, C. J., & Moos, R. H. (1987). Personal and contextual determinants of coping strategies. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 52, 946–955.
- Howell, J. L., Lipsey, N., & Shepperd, J. A. (2019). Health information avoidance. In K. Sweeny & M. Robbins (Eds.), *The Wiley encyclopedia of health psychology: Volume II, The social bases of health behavior*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.
- Mann, T., de Ridder, D., & Fujita, K. (2013). Self-regulation of health behavior: Social psychological approaches to goal setting and goal striving. *Health Psychology*, 32, 487–498.
- Penley, J. A., Tomaka, J., & Wiebe, J. S. (2002). The association of coping to physical and psychological health outcomes: A meta-analytic review. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 25, 551–603.
- Roskes, M., Elliot, A. J., & DeDreu, C. K. W. (2014). Why is avoidance motivation problematic and what can be done about it? *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 23, 133–138.
- Suls, J., & Fletcher, B. (1985). The relative efficacy of avoidant and nonavoidant coping strategies: A meta-analysis. *Health Psychology*, 4, 249–288.
- Sweeny, K., Melnyk, D., Miller, W., & Shepperd, J. A. (2010). Information avoidance: Who, what, when, and why. *Review of General Psychology*, 14, 340–353.

Avoidance Coping

- [Avoidance](#)

Avoidance Goals

- [Avoidance](#)

Avoidance Motivation

- [Avoidance](#)

Avoidant Coping

- [Defensiveness](#)

B

Back Pain

Timothy H. Wideman and Michael J. L. Sullivan
Department of Psychology, McGill University,
Montreal, QC, Canada

Synonyms

[Backache](#); [Dorsalgia](#); [Lumbago](#)

Definition

Pain located between the base of the neck and the gluteal folds that can also be associated with radiating pain in the lower extremities.

Description

Back pain is one of the most prevalent and costly conditions in the industrialized world. An estimated 80% of individuals will experience back pain at some point in their life. The vast majority of back pain episodes have an unknown etiology and are self-limiting. Approximately 80–90% of cases resolve within the first 6 weeks of onset. The relatively small percentage of individuals who develop chronic back pain (symptoms lasting longer than 3 months), however, account for the majority of the disability expenditures that are associated with this condition.

Criteria used to classify back pain are numerous and, in certain instances, divergent. For example, the classification of back pain has been based on the duration and location of symptoms, the underlying spinal pathology, the presence of spinal instability, and the quality of spinal movements. Current biopsychosocial models emphasize the importance of classifying back pain based on the presence of risk factors for severe illness or prolonged disability.

A detailed history and physical exam are used to screen for the presence of *Red Flags* and *Yellow Flags* in individuals presenting with acute back pain (less than 6 weeks since the onset of symptoms). Red Flags are signs and symptoms that suggest the possibility of serious pathology, such as carcinoma, immunodeficiency, damage to the spinal cord or cauda equina, and inflammatory disorders. Red Flags are identified via the following signs and symptoms: a history of severe trauma, significant weight loss, neurological signs and symptoms, severe worsening of pain, and/or systemic illness. Emergency medical attention is required in the relatively rare incidence in which a patient with back pain presents with a Red Flag. In the absence of Red Flags, screening for Yellow Flags is indicated. Yellow Flags are psychosocial signs and symptoms that suggest an elevated risk for prolonged pain and disability. Yellow Flags include: depressed mood, belief that physical activity and pain are damaging, job dissatisfaction, and a history of back pain or work disability. The presence of Yellow Flags calls for

risk-factor-targeted interventions that aim to prevent long-term disability.

In the absence of Red or Yellow Flags, clinical practice guidelines recommend minimal treatment for acute back pain. Recommendations emphasize the importance of reassuring patients that back pain is not commonly associated with serious pathology, that back pain typically resolves in the first 6 weeks following symptom onset, and that a prompt return to regular physical activities is indicated. Simple analgesic medication, such as acetaminophen (paracetamol) or Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs (NSAIDs), and a brief course of manual therapy have been shown to be effective for symptom management. Imaging investigations are not warranted in these instances.

Cross-References

- [Chronic Pain](#)
- [Pain Management/Control](#)
- [Pain, Psychosocial Aspects](#)

References and Further Readings

- Airaksinen, O., Brox, J. I., Cedraschi, C., Hildebrandt, J., Kläber-Moffett, J., Kovacs, F., Mannion, A. F., Reis, S., Staal, J. B., Ursin, H., & Zanoli, G. (2006). Chapter 4: European guidelines for the management of chronic nonspecific low back pain. *European spine journal: Official publication of the European Spine Society, the European Spinal Deformity Society, and the European Section of the Cervical Spine Research Society*, 15 (Suppl 2), S192–S300.
- The New Zealand Acute Low Back Pain Guide. (n.d.) Prepared by the New Zealand Accident Compensation Corporation (ACC), and endorsed by the New Zealand Guidelines group; available online at www.acc.co.nz.
- Waddell, G. (2004). *The back pain revolution* (2nd ed.). London: Churchill Livingstone.

Bariatric Surgery

Shuji Inada

Department of Stress Science and Psychosomatic Medicine, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

[Weight loss surgery](#)

Definition

Bariatric surgery is a surgery for weight loss.

Since original bariatric surgery, jejunocolic bypass, was introduced in 1954, safer procedures have been developed.

Weight loss is thought to be achieved by reducing gastric volume and/or by causing intestinal malabsorption. It is also implied that changes in the entero-endocrine axis might affect body weight (Tadross and le Roux 2009). Only bariatric surgery can produce durable long-term weight loss (Colquitt et al. 2009).

Procedures commonly performed are as follows (Bult et al. 2008; Jaunoo and Southall 2010):

1. Adjustable gastric banding. This procedure involves placing a silicon band horizontally around the proximal part of stomach. The band can be inflated via a subcutaneous port and be adjusted to an extent of restriction without an operation.
2. Roux-en-Y gastric bypass. This procedure includes division of the upper stomach to the small pouch and connection of intestine to the pouch. This procedure achieves both reduction of gastric volume and malabsorption.
3. Biliopancreatic diversion (with duodenal switching). This procedure is developed as a malabsorptive procedure. Biliopancreatic duct and duodenum are removed from the tract and anastomosed to a more distal part of the ileum.

Backache

- [Back Pain](#)

4. Sleeve gastrectomy. Though this procedure has been performed as the first stage of biliopancreatic diversion with duodenal switching in high-risk patients, it has been proved to achieve significant weight loss in some patients. If patients fail to lose weight with this procedure, the last part of biliopancreatic diversion is performed.

The mean percentage of excess weight loss was 61.2% for all patients undergoing bariatric surgery (Buchwald et al. 2004). Mortality at 30 or less days after bariatric surgery was 0.1% for purely restrictive procedure, 0.5% for gastric bypass procedures, and 1.1% for biliopancreatic diversion (Buchwald et al. 2004).

Major complications of bariatric surgery are vomiting and leakage. Malabsorptive procedures may cause anemia and protein malnutrition.

Bariatric surgery is recommended for obese patients with a BMI over 40 kg/m² or with a BMI between 35 and 39.9 and a serious obesity-related health problem such as type 2 diabetes, coronary heart disease, or severe sleep apnea (National Heart Lung and Blood Institute 2000; NICE clinical guideline 43 2006).

Preoperative comprehensive assessments including psychosocial assessments are necessary for a risk-benefit analysis. While there are no uniform guidelines for psychosocial assessments, psychosocial assessments are usually focused on knowledge about bariatric surgery, weight and diet history, social status, and psychiatric comorbidity such as depression, eating disorders, and personality disorders (Bauchowitz et al. 2005; Wadden and Sarwer 2006).

Contraindications to bariatric surgery include poor myocardial reserve, significant chronic obstructive airways disease or respiratory dysfunction, noncompliance with medical treatment, and psychological disorders of a significant degree (Jaunoo and Southall 2010; Walfish et al. 2007).

Cross-References

[Obesity: Prevention and Treatment](#)

References and Readings

- Bauchowitz, A. U., Gonder-Frederick, L. A., Olbrisch, M., Azarbad, L., Ryee, M., Woodson, M., et al. (2005). Psychosocial evaluation of bariatric surgery candidates: A survey of present practices. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 67, 825–832.
- Buchwald, H., Avidor, Y., Braunwald, E., Jensen, M. D., Pories, W., Fahrbach, K., et al. (2004). Bariatric surgery a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 292, 1724–1737.
- Bult, M. J. F., van Dalen, T., & Muller, A. F. (2008). Surgical treatment of obesity. *European Journal of Endocrinology*, 158, 135–145.
- Colquitt, J. L., Picot, J., Loveman, E., & Glegg, A. J. (2009). Surgery for obesity. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, (2).
- Jaunoo, S. S., & Southall, P. J. (2010). Bariatric surgery. *International Journal of Surgery*, 8, 86–89.
- National Heart Lung and Blood Institute. (2000). The practical guide to identification, education and treatment of overweight and obesity in adults. NIH Pub no. 00-4084.
- National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence. (2006). Obesity: The prevention, identification, assessment and management of overweight and obesity in adults and children. NICE clinical guideline 43. <http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG43>
- Tadross, J. A., & le Roux, C. W. (2009). The mechanisms of weight loss after bariatric surgery. *International Journal of Obesity*, 33, S28–S32.
- Wadden, T. A., & Sarwer, D. B. (2006). Behavioral assessment of candidates for bariatric surgery: A patient-oriented approach. *Obesity*, 14, 53S–62S.
- Walfish, S., Vance, D., & Fabricatore, A. N. (2007). Psychological evaluation of bariatric surgery applicants: Procedures and reasons for delay or denial of surgery. *Obesity Surgery*, 17, 1578–1583.

Baroreceptors

David McIntyre
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Definition

Baroreceptors are mechanoreceptors that contribute to the autonomic regulation of blood pressure. Baroreceptors can be divided into the arterial baroreceptors, primarily involved in the short-term regulation

of blood pressure, and the cardiopulmonary baroreceptors, which react to changes in blood volume or central venous pressure.

Arterial baroreceptors, situated in the aortic arch and carotid sinus, increase their afferent output in response to distension of the arterial wall caused by increases in blood pressure within the vessel. They are sensitive to absolute pressure and rate of change of pressure, both of which vary over the cardiac cycle. The arrival of the pulse pressure wave at the baroreceptors causes distension of the vessel wall and generates pulse synchronous afferent firing that is maximal during early systole (Eckberg and Sleight 1992).

The afferent traffic from the arterial baroreceptors provides the primary input to the baroreflex mechanism, which maintains short-term blood pressure homeostasis primarily by regulating heart rate and peripheral resistance via parasympathetic and sympathetic pathways. Increased baroreceptor activation depresses heart rate via vagal parasympathetic motor neurons and leads to dilation of blood vessels within the musculature through decreased sympathetic outflow. Conversely, decreased activation of the arterial baroreceptors leads to increased heart rate and constriction of blood vessels within the musculature (Jordan 1995).

Behavioral interactions with arterial baroreceptor activation and the baroreflex are well documented. For example, physiological arousal is associated with an inhibition of the baroreflex (Marshall 1995) and increased activation of the arterial baroreceptors has been associated with a dampening of cortical and behavioral activity (Berntson and Cacioppo 2007; Eckberg and Sleight 1992).

Cardiopulmonary baroreceptors are mechanoreceptors situated in the walls of the heart chambers and in the large blood vessels leading to the heart. Their primary role is in the regulation of blood volume such that increases in blood volume or central venous pressure result in reflex forearm vasodilation together with increased salt and water excretion (Eckberg and Sleight 1992). There is evidence that cardiopulmonary baroreceptors also have an interactive effect on central arterial baroreflex interneurons (Eckberg and Sleight 1992).

Cross-References

► Blood Pressure

References and Further Reading

- Berntson, G. G., & Cacioppo, J. T. (2007). Integrative physiology: Homeostasis, allostasis, and the orchestration of systemic physiology. In J. T. Cacioppo, L. G. Tassinary, & G. G. Berntson (Eds.), *Handbook of psychophysiology* (pp. 433–451). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Eckberg, D. L., & Sleight, P. (1992). *Human baroreflexes in health and disease*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Jordan, D. (1995). Central nervous integration of cardiovascular regulation. In D. Jordan & J. M. Marshall (Eds.), *Cardiovascular regulation* (pp. 1–14). London: The Physiological Society.
- Marshall, J. M. (1995). Cardiovascular changes associated with behavioural alerting. In D. Jordan & J. M. Marshall (Eds.), *Cardiovascular regulation* (pp. 37–59). London: The Physiological Society.

Barrier Method of Protection

► Condom Use

Basal Metabolic Rate

Masayoshi Kumagai and Naoya Yahagi
Department of Metabolic Diseases, Graduate
School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo,
Tokyo, Japan

Definition

Basal metabolic rate (BMR) is the minimum level of energy required to sustain vital functions of organs such as the heart, lungs, liver, kidneys, intestine, nervous system, sex organs, muscles, and skin. It is measured at complete rest, in a neutrally temperate environment, in a fasting state, and measured by the heat production or oxygen consumption per unit time, and expressed

as the calories released per kilogram of body weight or per square of body surface per hour. Although there are several equations to estimate BMR, it is affected by a variety of factors such as age, hormones, exercise, body temperature, nutritional status, climate, or pregnancy.

Total energy expenditure (TEE) is the amount of energy needed by a person to meet the overall physical demands, which is the sum of basal metabolic rate (BMR), dietary-induced thermogenesis, and energy consumption during activity (Ravussin et al. 1986). BMR is the largest component of TEE, accounting for about 60–80% of TEE in ordinary people (Ravussin and Bogardus 1989). Energy consumed by muscles accounts for up to 20% of BMR, and the brain, heart, liver, and kidneys also account for a large proportion in BMR (Elia 1992a). BMR is the concept that was born in an attempt to evaluate minimum energy required for human to survive, and the word “basal metabolism” was first described by Magnus-Levy in 1899. It represents the integration of minimal activity of all the tissues or organs in a body under a steady-state condition.

Although accurate measurements of BMR require strict conditions and equipments, approximate estimation can be acquired through an equation. There are several predictive equations for BMR. In the early twentieth century, DuBois produced an equation using “surface area law” (DuBois and DuBois 1915). It was later superseded by Harris-Benedict equation, which is now widely used (Harris and Benedict 1919):

BMR for males (kcal/day) :

$$66.4730 + 13.7516W + 5.0033S - 6.7750A$$

BMR for females (kcal/day) :

$$665.0955 + 9.5634W + 1.8496S - 4.6756A$$

(W = weight in kilograms, S = stature in centimeters, A = ages in years)

Although Harris-Benedict equation might overestimate BMR in some cases (Daly et al. 1985), it is widely used because of its simplicity and usability.

Cross-References

► [Energy: Expenditure, Intake, Lack of](#)

References and Readings

- Daly, J. M., Heymsfield, S. B., Head, C. A., Harvey, L. P., Nixon, D. W., Katzeff, H., et al. (1985). Human energy requirements: Overestimation by widely used prediction equation. *The American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 42(6), 1170–1174.
- DuBois, D., & DuBois, E. F. (1915). The measurements of the surface area of man. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 15, 868–875.
- Elia, M. (1992). Energy expenditure in the whole body. In J. M. Kinney & H. N. Tucker (Eds.), *Energy metabolism: Tissue determinants and cellular corollaries* (pp. 19–59). New York: Raven.
- Harris, J. A., & Benedict, F. G. (1919). *A biometric study of basal metabolism in man* (p. 279). Washington, DC: Carnegie Institute of Washington Publication. Publication No.
- Ravussin, E., & Bogardus, C. (1989). Relationship of genetics, age, and physical fitness to daily energy expenditure and fuel utilization. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 49(Suppl. 5), 968–975.
- Ravussin, E., Lillioja, S., Anderson, T. E., Christin, L., & Bogardus, C. (1986). Determinants of 24-hour energy expenditure in man. Methods and results using a respiratory chamber. *Journal of Clinical Investigation*, 78(6), 1568–1578.

Baseline

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

The determination of an intervention’s efficacy requires a comparison between a measure of the biological characteristic of interest (including psychological parameters) before the intervention is administered and at the end of its administration. Data collected before its administration are called Baseline data.

Calculation of efficacy requires comparison of the Baseline and end-of-treatment data,

usually presented in the form of a change score(s) of some type. If the characteristic of interest is a continuous variable, e.g., blood pressure (BP), a subject's end-of-treatment BP can be subtracted from his or her Baseline BP. In a study of an intervention to lower blood pressure, it may be seen that, overall, subjects' BPs are lower at the end of treatment than at Baseline. This reduction can be calculated in absolute terms as the mean reduction in millimeters of mercury (mmHg), e.g., 15 mmHg, or in percentage terms, e.g., 8%. Analyses can then be conducted to determine if the treatment has led to a statistically significant reduction in BP as compared with similar data collected from a control treatment group.

For other characteristics, other analyses are appropriate. For example, subjects may be rated at Baseline as mildly depressed, moderately depressed, and severely depressed based on their score(s) from an appropriate questionnaire/assessment tool. In this case, a shift analysis can be conducted to determine the numbers (and percentages) of subjects who moved category. In the case of a behavioral intervention for depression (perhaps cognitive behavioral therapy given for a certain number of weeks/sessions), it may be seen that a certain percent of the subjects "shifted" from the moderately depressed category at Baseline to the mildly depressed category at the end of the treatment period, and a different percentage shifted from the severely depressed category to the mildly depressed category.

Cross-References

- [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- [Efficacy](#)

B-Cell Stimulatory Factor 2

- [Interleukins, -1 \(IL-1\), -6 \(IL-6\), -18 \(IL-18\)](#)

Beck Depression Inventory (BDI)

Jane Upton

Department of Psychology, William James College, Newton, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Depression](#)

Definition

The Beck Depression Inventory is a 21-item multiple choice self-report inventory widely used measure of the presence and degree of depression in adolescents and adults.

The most recent version is the Beck Depression Inventory[®]-II (BDI[®]-II), constructed by Aaron T. Beck and colleagues (Beck et al. 1996a). The BDI[®]-II can be self-administered or verbally by a trained administrator, is validated for completion by 13- to 80-year-old individuals, and is available from <http://www.pearsonassessments.com/HAIWEB/Cultures/en-us/Productdetail.htm?Pid=015-8018-370&Mode=summary>. It has high test-retest reliability (Pearson $r = 0.93$) (Beck et al. 1996b). It also has high internal consistency (Alpha 0.91) (Beck et al. 1996a).

The BDI includes both cognitive and somatic symptoms of depression, unlike the Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale which was developed for use with somatic illness patients, and therefore excludes somatic symptoms of depression to reduce confounding. The inclusion of somatic symptoms in the BDI enables the user to identify different types of depression in individuals (Canals et al. 2001).

Cross-References

- [Cognitive Function](#)
- [Depression: Symptoms](#)
- [HADS](#)
- [Somatic Symptoms](#)

References and Further Reading

- Beck, A. T., Steer, R. A., Ball, R., & Ranieri, W. (1996a). Comparison of Beck depression inventories – IA and II in psychiatric outpatients. *Journal of Personality Assessment*, 67(3), 588–597. https://doi.org/10.1207/s15327752jpa6703_13. Accessed 14 Apr 2011.
- Beck, A. T., Steer, R. A., & Brown, G. K. (1996b). *Manual for the Beck depression inventory-II*. San Antonio: Psychological Corporation.
- Canals, J., Blade, J., Carbajo, G., & Domenech-Llaberia, E. (2001). The Beck depression inventory: Psychometric characteristics and usefulness in non clinical adolescents. *European Journal of Psychological Assessment*, 17, 63–68.

Behavior Change

Rachel J. Burns¹ and Alexander J. Rothman²

¹Department of Psychiatry, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

²Department of Psychology, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Synonyms

Health behavior change

Definition

Behavior change is the process of modifying a behavior, often to produce a desired outcome. Behavior change usually involves the substitution of one pattern of behavior for another.

Description

National and international health entities encourage people to engage in a range of behavioral strategies, including attending cancer screenings, being physically active, refraining from tobacco use, and using methods that protect against sexually transmitted infections. These efforts can prevent, delay, or decrease the severity of several prevalent chronic health conditions

(U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2015; World Health Organization 2010). Accordingly, behavior change is a central component of the prevention and treatment of various health conditions, especially the management of chronic disease. For instance, dietary changes and restrictions are essential in the management of diabetes mellitus and celiac disease (Evert et al. 2013; Rubio-Tapia et al. 2013). Behavior change is thus a cornerstone of preventive measures and treatments that aim to promote, protect, and restore health and well-being.

The significance of behavior change has prompted the development of several theoretical models that delineate the processes underlying behavior change and elucidate conditions that inhibit and facilitate behavior change. These models focus predominantly on individual-level factors (e.g., attitudes, perceived norms, intentions) and fall into one of two categories: continuum-based and stage-based. Continuum-based models rely on linear combinations of specified variables to predict the likelihood of a behavior (e.g., theory of planned behavior (Ajzen 1991), social cognitive theory (Bandura 1986)). In contrast, stage-based models assume that behavior change involves movement through a series of qualitatively distinct stages and that a unique set of factors facilitate transitions between stages (Weinstein et al. 1998; e.g., transtheoretical model of behavior change (Prochaska and Velicer 1997), precaution adoption process model (Weinstein 1988)).

Behavior change is a process that unfolds over time. The behavior must first be initiated and then, depending on the nature of the behavior, may have to be maintained over time (Rothman 2000). For example, simple preventive behaviors, such as vaccinations, typically require a single performance of the target behavior to achieve the desired health benefit. In contrast, more complex behaviors, such as physical activity or taking antiretroviral drugs, must be sustained over time in order to achieve the desired health benefit. However, extant models of behavior change have tended to focus on elucidating factors that predict the initiation of the behavior change process and have given

relatively less consideration to factors that predict maintenance of the target behavior. Indeed, most models of behavior change fail to distinguish between initiation and maintenance phases of the behavior change process.

The initiation and maintenance of behavior have been conceptualized as distinct phases in the behavior change process, and distinct factors are thought to influence the behavioral decisions that are made during each phase (Rothman 2000). The distinction between initiation and maintenance has been further refined into a four-phase process model (Rothman et al. 2011). Each phase is qualitatively distinct, and the transition between stages is determined by a unique set of decision criteria. The initial response phase encompasses the initial effort put forth by an individual who is seeking to make a behavioral change. For instance, during this phase a person may decide to become physically active and begin attending exercise classes. If one has strong efficacy beliefs and positive expectations about the outcomes associated with the target behavior, the target behavior is likely to be enacted reliably. Consistent performance of the target behavior demarcates the beginning of the continued response phase, in which one continues to expend effort in order to establish the target behavior. During this phase, the individual may struggle to remain motivated to engage in the behavior and to manage the conflict between continuing to enact the new behavior and its associated challenges and costs. For example, during the continued response phase, a person who has recently started an exercise program may struggle to continue attending exercise classes after encountering barriers, such as sore joints or financial constraints. The realization of initial rewards, sustained self-efficacy beliefs, sustained outcome expectations, and the ability to overcome obstacles facilitate movement from the continued response phase to the maintenance phase.

During the maintenance phase, individuals no longer struggle to engage in the behavior; however, enactment of the behavior continues to require effort. Individuals also remain sensitive to the costs and benefits associated with the behavior and are particularly attuned to the value

of achieved outcomes (Rothman et al. 2011). Thus, someone who has been exercising regularly may be conscious of the physiological changes that have resulted from exercising and will compare the benefits of these outcomes to the costs of exercising. Satisfaction with the outcomes of the new pattern of behavior becomes a key determinant of maintenance. If the perceived costs of the behavior exceed the perceived benefits of the outcomes, then the behavior will be discontinued. Finally, the transition from maintenance to the habit phase, in which the behavioral pattern becomes self-perpetuating and automatic, occurs when people cease to regularly assess the perceived value of the behavior and its associated outcomes.

Models of behavior change are particularly useful in that they permit the identification of precise constructs to target when seeking to change behavior. Thus, theoretical models guide the design and implementation of interventions that promote behavior change (Michie and Prestwich 2010). By identifying candidate targets for interventions, theoretical models also provide insight into the relative effectiveness of intervention strategies because intervention strategies are differentially suited to target particular constructs. For instance, a theoretical model may suggest that skill acquisition is a chief antecedent of behavior change thereby identifying skill development as a central goal of an intervention.

Models of health behavior change that focus on individual-level factors (e.g., attitudes, perceived norms, intentions) guide the design of interventions that seek to change how people think and feel about particular behaviors. However, some models adopt an ecological perspective and focus on the structural and environmental factors that promote and inhibit behavior change (e.g., Stokols 1992). These types of models are useful in guiding the development of structural interventions, such as policy changes. Several attempts have been made to integrate individual-level and ecological models (e.g., Kremers 2010). These integrative frameworks are useful in designing multilevel interventions because they suggest how specific combinations of individual-level (e.g., attitudes, perceived norms, intentions) and

structural-level factors (e.g., laws, access to resources) interact.

When thinking about behavior change, it is also important to consider how the many properties of the behavior itself may influence the change process. For example, behavior change may involve the adoption or cessation of a behavior. Adoption requires the performance of a new behavior, such as beginning a new exercise routine (e.g., going to the gym three times a week), whereas cessation involves discontinuing a behavior, such as quitting smoking. Some behavior change may involve concurrent adoption and cessation behaviors. For instance, changing one's eating behavior can involve beginning to eat vegetables with dinner and ceasing to eat fried foods at dinner. The nature of the target behavior offers insight into the theoretical model that is best suited to guide behavior change. For instance, operant conditioning theory distinguishes between reinforcement and punishment (Skinner 1938). Reinforcement involves the use of strategies that increase the frequency of the target behavior. In contrast, punishment involves the use of strategies that decrease the frequency of the target behavior. Accordingly, reinforcement-based models might be best suited for thinking about how to promote adoption behaviors, whereas punishment-based models might be best suited for thinking about how to promote cessation behaviors. It is also important to recall that there are particular challenges associated with changes in specific behavioral domains. Simple preventive behaviors, such as getting a vaccine, which require that the behavior be enacted once, or very infrequently, to achieve the desired outcome may involve very different challenges than complex preventive health behaviors, such as exercising regularly, which require that a behavior be enacted repeatedly before the desired outcome is obtained (e.g., time commitment).

In conclusion, behavior change is an important process in the prevention and treatment of illness. Several theoretical models have been developed to elucidate the processes involved in behavior change. Many prominent models focus on predictors of behavior change at the individual level; however, it is important to also consider

environmental and structural influences on behavior change. Although many theoretical models fail to distinguish between the initiation and maintenance of behavior, these phases are qualitatively distinct and are driven by distinct factors. Theoretical models are essential in the development of effective behavior change interventions. The properties of the target behavior can also have implications for the intervention strategy that is adopted.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Ex-smokers](#)
- ▶ [Health Behavior Change](#)
- ▶ [Health Behaviors](#)
- ▶ [Lifestyle, Modification](#)
- ▶ [Risk Factors and Their Management](#)
- ▶ [Smoking and Health](#)
- ▶ [Smoking Behavior](#)

References and Further Readings

- Ajzen, I. (1991). The theory of planned behavior. *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes*, 50, 179–211.
- Bandura, A. (1986). *Social foundations of thought and action*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.
- Evert, A. B., Boucher, J. L., Cypress, M., Dunbar, S. A., Franz, M. J., Mayer-Davis, E. J., . . . & Yancy, W. S. (2013). Nutrition therapy recommendations for the management of adults with diabetes. *Diabetes Care*, 36, 3821–3842.
- Kremers, S. P. J. (2010). Theory and practice in the study of influence on energy balance-related behaviors. *Patient Education and Counselling*, 79, 291–298.
- Michie, S., & Prestwich, A. (2010). Are interventions theory-based? Development of a theory coding scheme. *Health Psychology*, 29, 1–8.
- Prochaska, J. O., & Velicer, W. F. (1997). The trans-theoretical model of health behavior change. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 12, 38–48.
- Rothman, A. J. (2000). Toward a theory-based analysis of behavioral maintenance. *Health Psychology*, 19, 64–69.
- Rothman, A. J., Baldwin, A. J., Hertel, A. W., & Fuglestad, P. (2011). Self-regulation and behavior change: Disentangling behavioral initiation and behavioral maintenance. In K. D. Vohs & R. F. Baumeister (Eds.), *Handbook of self-regulation: Research, theory and applications* (pp. 106–124). New York: Guilford Press.

- Rubio-Tapia, A., Hill, I. D., Kelly, C. P., Calderwood, A. H., & Murray, J. A. (2013). ACG clinical guidelines: Diagnosis and management of celiac disease. *American Journal of Gastroenterology*, 108, 656–676.
- Skinner, B. F. (1938). *The behavior of organisms: An experimental analysis*. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts.
- Stokols, D. (1992). Establishing and maintaining health environments: Toward a social ecology of health promotion. *American Psychologist*, 47, 6–22.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2015). Office of Disease Prevention and Health Promotion. (n.d.). *Healthy people 2020 objectives*. Retrieved September 29, 2015, from <http://www.healthypeople.gov/2020/topics-objectives> Weinstein.
- Weinstein, N. D. (1988). The precaution adoption process. *Health Psychology*, 7, 355–386.
- Weinstein, N. D., Rothman, A. J., & Sutton, S. R. (1998). Stage theories of health behavior. *Health Psychology*, 17, 290–299.
- World Health Organization. (2010). Guidelines for the management of sexually transmitted infections. Retrieved October 2, 2011, from http://whqlibdoc.who.int/publications/2010/9789241599979_eng.pdf

- Specified by an active verb and clarity about the desired behavior change targeted with enough detail to achieve good agreement between experts

A BCT is the smallest component of an intervention compatible with retaining the postulated active ingredients, and can be used alone or in combination with other BCTs. BCTs meet the criteria for a good intervention module, namely smallest, meaningful, self-contained, and repurposable (Hekler et al. 2016). A BCT should be well specified so that effectiveness of the BCT can be evaluated (e.g., in randomized controlled trials, in factorial experimental designs (Collins et al. 2011), or N-of-1 studies).

It should be noted that BCTs have the potential to bring about change but that the evidence base for effectiveness may or may not have been established.

A BCT does not specify the *how*, that is, the mode of delivery, and it is possible for a given BCT to be delivered in many different ways. For example, feedback may be delivered digitally or face-to-face, to groups or to an individual, synchronously (in real-time) or asynchronously.

Behavior Change Techniques

Susan Michie¹, Marie Johnston² and Rachel Carey¹

¹University College London, London, UK

²School of Medicine and Dentistry, University of Aberdeen, Aberdeen, UK

Definition

A behavior change technique (BCT) is a systematic procedure included as an active component of an intervention designed to change behavior.

The defining characteristics of a BCT are that it is:

- A component of an intervention designed to change a specified behavior
- The smallest (or smallest for the particular purpose) component that can be postulated to be an active ingredient within the intervention
- An observable activity
- Replicable

Description

Behavior change interventions may influence behavior in several ways: behavior can be initiated or terminated, or increased or decreased in frequency, duration, or intensity. For most behaviors, there is variation within and between people over time in all of these dimensions, influenced by environmental, social, cognitive, and emotional variables. Studies of how behavior varies within and between people have led to an understanding of how to use external factors to modify behavior. Technologies of behavior change have been developed within disciplines of applied psychology (e.g., clinical, educational, health) and adopted and extended in a wide variety of intervention functions and policies, such as commercial advertising and social marketing (Michie et al. 2011c). These technologies are made up of individual BCTs.

Examples of BCTs are: “Prompts/cues,” “Information about health consequences,” “Self-monitoring of behavior,” “Action planning,” “Behavioral practice/rehearsal,” “Graded tasks,” “Salience of consequences,” and “Habit formation.” BCT definitions specify the minimum content of *what* must be delivered to constitute that BCT (e.g., feedback must involve providing the target audience with information about their specific behavior). Behavior change interventions may include one, but more likely several, BCT(s). Some well-recognized behavior change interventions contain reliable combinations of BCTs, for example, relapse prevention includes both *problem solving* and *action planning*, whereas more general labels may contain variable combinations of BCTs, for example, the contents of “cognitive behavior therapy” are variable (Gatchel et al. 2007).

For full specification of a behavior change intervention, both the active content, that is, the BCTs, and the mode of delivery need to be described (Davidson et al. 2003). The TIDieR template (Hoffmann et al. 2014) specifies the information required to describe any intervention, whether behavioral or not; this includes not only the active ingredients and mode of delivery, but other information such as the rationale or theory, materials used, person delivering the intervention, fidelity of delivery, and scope for tailoring.

Why Is It Important to Specify Interventions in Terms of Behavior Change Techniques?

There is growing evidence that behavior influences health outcomes (e.g., Kontis et al. 2014; Yoon et al. 2014), and an increasing urgency to develop behavior change interventions to improve these outcomes. As a result, there has been investment by funding governments and scientific bodies in the development and evaluation of interventions to change population, patient, and practitioner behaviors. An example is the US National Institutes of Health’s Office of Behavioral and Social Sciences Research (OBSSR), founded in 1995 with a budget of \$27 million a year, in recognition of the key role that behavioral and social factors play in illness and health.

Interventions to change behavior and their constituent BCTs are often poorly described in research protocols and published reports (Michie et al. 2009b). They are typically complex, involving many interacting components (Craig et al. 2008) which may be described in terms that are vague, general, and/or ambiguous. For example, labels such as “behavioral counseling” can mean different things to different researchers or practitioners. In contrast, biomedical interventions are likely to be more precisely specified (e.g., the pharmacological “ingredients” of prescribed drugs, their dose, and frequency of administration). McCleary et al. (2013) found that published reports of behavioral interventions were less likely to include the active components of the intervention in the title and abstract (i.e., materials screened for inclusion in systematic reviews) than was found in descriptions of pharmacological interventions (56% vs. 90% of published studies). Further, the same component techniques within behavioral interventions have often been described in protocols and published reports with different labels (e.g., “self-monitoring” may be labeled “daily diaries”). Conversely, the same labels have often been applied to different techniques (e.g., “behavioral counseling” may involve “educating patients” or “feedback, self-monitoring, and reinforcement”).

This lack of precision, lack of consensually agreed terms, and poor reporting acts as a barrier to replication, the essential cornerstone for scientific progress. The poor specification of behavior change interventions has led to problems in replication in primary research, in evidence synthesis in systematic reviews, and in implementation in practice. It also undermines the task of establishing BCTs that are effective in changing behavior and understanding the causal mechanisms underlying behavior change. If intervention descriptions are idiosyncratic or ambiguous, and cannot therefore be interpreted reliably, it is impossible to aggregate the evidence to ascertain their effectiveness. Additionally, there is no value in evaluating an intervention if one cannot identify and describe what is being evaluated and how competently it was delivered; it would be impossible to implement even if shown to be effective.

The absence of an internationally agreed method to specify and report the content of behavior change interventions has hampered the development of effective interventions.

Although the CONSORT Statement for randomized trials of “nonpharmacologic” interventions calls for precise details of interventions in research, including a description of the different intervention components (Boutron et al. 2008), it gives no guidance as to what these details are. The UK Medical Research Council’s guidance (Craig et al. 2008) for developing and evaluating complex interventions acknowledges this problem and also the problem of lack of consistency and consensus in use of terminology (Michie et al. 2008). An international collaboration of researchers, methodologists, guideline developers, funders, consumer advocacy groups, service providers, and journal editors has developed an official extension of the CONSORT Statement to improve reporting of complex interventions (Montgomery et al. 2013, 2018). It recommends that reports should supply: “sufficient details to allow replication,” underlining the need for better descriptions of intervention components and precision in specifying BCTs.

The Development of a Method of Specifying BCTs

These problems have been addressed by the development of systematically generated and applied collections or “taxonomies” of BCTs. These have been constructed by identifying BCTs within written reports of the interventions, or texts describing interventions. They have been developed in relation to different behavior types: physical activity and healthy eating (Abraham and Michie 2008; Michie et al. 2011a), smoking (Michie et al. 2011b; West et al. 2011), excessive alcohol use (Michie et al. 2012), and condom use (Abraham et al. 2011).

Building on these domain-specific taxonomies, and with the aim of providing a unified method for specifying the potentially active ingredients of behavior change interventions, a cross-behavior taxonomy of BCTs has been developed. This was achieved by analyzing a wide range of published reports of behavior change

interventions; 400 experts from 11 countries were engaged in its development (Michie et al. 2013, 2015). The resulting taxonomy, BCT Taxonomy Version 1 (BCTTv1), is an extensive, cross-domain classification system consisting of 93 distinct, clearly labeled and precisely defined BCTs, together with examples of each BCT.

To increase ease and accuracy of use of the taxonomy, the 93 BCTs are hierarchically organized into 16 groupings; for example, the BCT “Goal setting (behavior)” is in a “Goals and planning” group. BCTTv1 has been widely used, across a variety of behavioral domains and countries, to specify intervention content (e.g., Young et al. 2015; Webb et al. 2016; Smith et al. 2013) and synthesize evidence (e.g., Gardner et al. 2016; Presseau et al. 2015).

The process of coding interventions into component BCTs is a highly skilled task requiring familiarity with BCT labels and definitions. Training is required to ensure BCTs can be identified with high levels of reliability and validity. An open access online training program has been developed (Wood et al. 2014) and has been evaluated as effective for identifying the most frequently occurring BCTs (Abraham et al. 2015; <http://www.bct-taxonomy.com>). There is some evidence that training in coding BCTs enhances the ability to recognize the content of a behavior change intervention (Johnston et al. 2018b).

How BCT Taxonomies Have Been Used

Using BCT taxonomies with standardized, shared labels and definitions has improved practice by ensuring that a technique is always described by the same label and that a label is always used for the same technique. Specifying interventions by BCTs allows for statistical analyses to identify specific BCTs associated with effective interventions (i.e., the “active ingredients”). Heterogeneous, complex interventions have been synthesized to identify effective component BCTs using a variety of methodologies and statistical techniques (Michie et al. 2018), including: experiments (e.g., Newbury-Birch et al. 2014; O’Carroll et al. 2014), meta-analyses of experimental studies (e.g., Arnott et al. 2014; Bishop et al. 2015; Bull et al. 2018), correlational studies

(e.g., Hankonen et al. 2014; Murray et al. 2013), meta-regression (e.g., Dombrowski et al. 2012; Michie et al. 2009a), and meta-CART (Classification and Regression Trees; e.g., Dusseldorp et al. 2013; Bull et al. 2018). Peters et al. (2015) have suggested additional methods. Finally, BCT effectiveness has been evaluated by characterizing effective interventions (i.e., by identifying BCTs included in interventions found to be effective). For example, the “active ingredients” have been identified in the English Stop Smoking Services by analyzing protocols for behavioral support for smoking cessation in terms of BCTs and investigating associations with a national database of carbon monoxide verified quit rates (West et al. 2010).

In addition to specifying the BCTs, it will be important to develop shared methods of reporting on both the methods of delivery (Gatchel et al. 2007) and the competence with which they are delivered. An ontology for the former includes a five-level hierarchical structure comprising 69 unique entities, reflecting the extent to which modes of delivery vary in intervention reports (<https://osf.io/73bmq/>). Frameworks for the latter (i.e., specification of professional competences for the delivery of BCTs) have been developed and used to advise national governments (Dixon and Johnston 2010) and as a basis for a national training program (NHS Centre for Smoking Cessation and Training (NCSCT) 2011).

The Benefits of the BCT Approach

1. *Developing behavior change interventions:* Intervention developers are able to use a comprehensive list of BCTs (rather than relying on the limited set they are aware of) to design interventions.
2. *Reporting interventions:* Specifying intervention content by BCT facilitates well-defined, detailed, accurate, replicable descriptions of behavior change interventions. Both intervention and control conditions can be specified using BCTs in randomized controlled trials.
3. *Implementing effective interventions in practice:* BCT specification facilitates faithful implementation of interventions found to be effective.
4. *Replicating interventions and control conditions:* Specifying interventions by BCTs aids the replication of both intervention and control conditions in subsequent investigations.
5. *Synthesizing evidence:* Systematic reviewers can use a reliable method for extracting information about intervention content, thus identifying and synthesizing discrete, replicable, potentially active ingredients associated with effectiveness.
6. *Linking to theory:* Linking BCTs with theories of behavior change allows reviewers to investigate possible mechanisms of action (Michie et al. 2009; Dombrowski et al. 2012).
7. *Accumulating scientific knowledge about behavior change:* A shared terminology for specifying behavior change interventions allows more efficient accumulation of knowledge and investigations of generalization across behaviors, populations, and settings.

Linking BCTs to Mechanisms of Action

A well-developed system of defining and labeling BCTs allows the science of behavior change to more efficiently accumulate evidence and advance theory. Evaluation of the effectiveness of combinations of BCTs can help test theories of behavior change. While the intervention content describes what is done to change behavior, theory explains how and why behavior change occurs and how components should be combined (Ruiter et al. 2014). The need to systematically apply theory to the design of interventions is reflected in the UK Medical Research Council’s Guidance for complex interventions (Craig et al. 2008). So, for example, a finding that interventions with a combination of self-monitoring and feedback are effective would support the mechanisms of change proposed by Carver and Scheier’s Control Theory (Carver and Scheier 1982).

Interventions are often designed to include specific BCTs based on the theoretical constructs they are hypothesized to change. For example, an intervention that is based on Bandura’s theory of self-efficacy (Bandura 1977) might prompt participants to practice the target behavior, in order to increase their beliefs about their capabilities to do this behavior. However, despite the importance of applying

theory to the development of interventions, interventions described as “theory-based” often differ widely in the extent to which they draw on theory and/or target individual theoretical constructs. Links between BCTs and the theoretical constructs they are proposed to change (i.e., their “mechanisms of action”) are not fully understood. This has limited our understanding of the processes of change for individual BCTs, and the extent to which theory can be systematically applied to the design of interventions. A better understanding of links between BCTs and their mechanisms of action would improve the design of interventions, and help us to better understand intervention effects.

Building on recent advances in behavioral science, research has begun to systematically examine links between BCTs and mechanisms of action (the range of theoretical constructs that represent processes through which individual BCTs have their effects) (Michie et al. 2016). Across two studies, researchers have identified links described in published interventions (Carey et al. 2018), and those agreed in a consensus exercise by international experts in behavioral science (Connell Bohlen et al. 2018). Triangulation of the data obtained by these two methods shows substantial agreement and when synthesized, produced a final dataset of 92 links, covering 51 BCTs and 26 theoretical mechanisms of action (Johnston et al. 2018a). Further work will investigate patterns of co-occurring BCTs in published interventions and explore whether commonly occurring patterns give an index of implicit theory held by intervention designers.

This work is an important step toward developing an understanding of how and why active components work within complex interventions that is essential for designing more effective interventions. To help with the latter, an interactive tool of BCT-mechanism links has been developed for researchers and intervention developers (“The Theory and Technique Tool”; see <https://theoryandtechniquetool.humanbehaviourchange.org/>). For each link, users can locate data on the strength of the link, upload other data and relevant research information, and suggest ideas for collaborative research.

Advancing the Science of Behavior Change

For these methods to maximize scientific advance, we need a shared system for describing behavior change interventions, including not only their BCTs, but also their mode of delivery, mechanism of action, context, etc. This will require collaborative work to develop agreed labels and definitions and reliable procedures for their application across disciplines and countries. Even the “best” taxonomy is inevitably a work-in-progress as new BCTs are likely to continue to emerge from ongoing research and practice, in the same way that the labeling of peptides and botanical taxonomies continue to be developed.

Knowledge about how behavior can be changed, and the processes through which this occurs, is at the heart of behavior change science and its application in behavioral medicine. To optimize the value of evidence being generated, an “ontology” of behavior change interventions is being developed as a structure for organizing the knowledge being acquired (Michie and Johnston 2017). The ontology is being developed in collaboration between behavioral and computer sciences to build an automated knowledge system that efficiently brings together and interprets the rapidly accumulating published evidence about behavior change interventions (Michie et al. 2017). Evidence about BCTs, their modes of delivery, mechanisms of action, and target behaviors along with modifying influences of populations and settings will be integrated to address the question “What works how well, for whom, in what settings, for what behaviors, and why?” (for more information, see www.humanbehaviourchange.org).

Cross-References

- Behavior Change
- Behavior Modification
- Cognitive Behavioral Therapy (CBT)
- Population Health
- Randomized Clinical Trial
- Theory

References and Further Reading

- Abraham, C., & Michie, S. (2008). A taxonomy of behaviour change techniques used in interventions. *Health Psychology, 27*, 379–387.
- Abraham, C., Good, A., Warren, M. R., Huedo-Medina, T., & Johnson, B. (2011). Developing and testing a SHARP taxonomy of behaviour change techniques included in condom promotion interventions. *Psychology & Health, 26*(Suppl 2), 299.
- Abraham, C., Wood, C. E., Johnston, M., Francis, J. J., Hardeman, W., Richardson, M., et al. (2015). Reliability of identification of behaviour change techniques in intervention descriptions. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine, 49*(6), 885–900.
- Arnott, B., Rehackova, L., Errington, L., Sniehotta, F. F., Roberts, J., & Araujo-Soares, V. (2014). Efficacy of behavioural interventions for transport behaviour change: Systematic review, meta-analysis and intervention coding. *International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity, 11*, 133.
- Bandura, A. (1977). Self-efficacy: Toward a unifying theory of behavioral change. *Psychological Review, 84*, 191–215.
- Bishop, F. L., Fenge-Davies, A. L., Kirby, S., & Geraghty, A. W. A. (2015). Context effects and behaviour change techniques in randomised trials: A systematic review using the example of trials to increase adherence to physical activity in musculoskeletal pain. *Psychology & Health, 30*(1), 104–121. <https://doi.org/10.1080/08870446.2014.953529>.
- Boutron, I., Moher, D., Altman, D. G., Schulz, K. F., & Ravaud, P. (2008). Extending the CONSORT statement to randomized trials of nonpharmacologic treatment: Explanation and elaboration. *Annals of Internal Medicine, 148*(4), 295–309.
- Bull, E. R., McCleary, N., Li, X., Dombrowski, S. U., Dusseldorp, E., & Johnston, M. (2018). Interventions to promote healthy eating, physical activity and smoking in low-income groups: A systematic review with meta-analysis of behavior change techniques and delivery/context. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12529-018-9734-z>.
- Carey, R. N., Connell, L., Johnston, M., Rothman, A., de Bruin, M., Kelly, M. P., & Michie, S. (2018). Behaviour change techniques and their mechanisms of action: A synthesis of links described in published intervention literature. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*. <https://doi.org/10.1093/abm/kay078>.
- Carver, C. S., & Scheier, M. F. (1982). Control theory: A useful conceptual framework for personality-social, clinical, and health psychology. *Psychological Bulletin, 92*(1), 111–135.
- Collins, L. M., Baker, T. B., Mermelstein, R. J., Piper, M. E., Jorenby, D. E., Smith, S. S., et al. (2011). The multiphase optimization strategy for engineering effective tobacco use interventions. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine, 41*(2), 208–226.
- Connell Bohlen, L. E., Carey, R. N., Johnston, M., Rothman, A. J., de Bruin, M., Kelly, M. P., & Michie, S. (2018). Links between behaviour change techniques and mechanisms of action: An expert consensus study. Pre-print available at: <https://psyarxiv.com/fge86/>
- Craig, P., Dieppe, P. A., Macintyre, S., Michie, S., Nazareth, I., & Petticrew, M. (2008). Developing and evaluating complex interventions: The new Medical Research Council guidance. *British Medical Journal, 337*, a1655.
- Davidson, K. W., Goldstein, M., Kaplan, R. M., Kaufmann, P. G., Knatterud, G. L., Orleans, C. T., et al. (2003). Evidence-based behavioral medicine: What is it and how do we achieve it? *Annals of Behavioral Medicine, 26*(3), 161–171.
- Dixon, D., & Johnston, M. (2010). *Health behaviour change competency framework: Competences to deliver interventions to change lifestyle behaviours that affect health (monograph on the Internet)*. Edinburgh: The Scottish Government. www.healthscotland.com/documents/4877.aspx. Cited 8 Dec 2011.
- Dombrowski, S. U., Sniehotta, F. F., Avenell, A., Johnston, M., MacLennan, G., & Araujo-Soares, V. (2012). Identifying active ingredients in complex behavioral interventions for obese adults with obesity-related co-morbidities or additional risk factors for co-morbidities: A systematic review. *Health Psychology Review, 6*, 7–32.
- Dusseldorp, E., van Genugten, L., van Buuren, S., Verheijden, M. W., & van Empelen, P. (2013). Combinations of techniques that effectively change health behavior: Evidence from meta-CART analysis. *Health Psychology, 33*(12), 1530–1540. <https://doi.org/10.1037/hea0000018>.
- Gardner, B., Lorencatto, F., Hamer, M., & Biddle, S. (2016). How to reduce sitting time? A review of behaviour change strategies used in sedentary behaviour reduction interventions among adults. *Health Psychology Review, 10*(1), 89–112.
- Gatchel, R. J., Peng, Y. B., Peters, M. L., Fuchs, P. N., & Turk, D. C. (2007). The biopsychosocial approach to chronic pain: Scientific advances and future directions. *Psychological Bulletin, 133*(4), 581–624.
- Hankonen, N., Sutton, S., Prevost, A. T., Simmons, R. K., Griffin, S. J., Kinmonth, A. L., & Hardeman, W. (2014). Which behavior change techniques are associated with changes in physical activity, diet and body mass index in people with recently diagnosed diabetes? *Annals of Behavioral Medicine, 49*(1), 7–17. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12160-014-9624-9>.
- Hekler, E. B., Klasnja, P., Riley, W. T., Buman, M. P., Huberty, J., Rivera, D. E., & Martin, C. A. (2016). Agile science: Creating useful products for behavior change in the real world. *Translational Behavioral Medicine, 6*(2), 317–328. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s13142-016-0395-7>.

- Hoffmann, T. C., Glasziou, P. P., Boutron, I., Milne, R., Perera, R., Moher, D., Altman, D. G., Barbour, V., Macdonald, H., Johnston, M., & Lamb, S. E. (2014). Better reporting of interventions: Template for intervention description and replication (TIDieR) checklist and guide. *British Medical Journal*, *348*, 1687.
- Johnston, M., Carey, R. N., Connell, L. E., Johnston, D., Rothman, A. J., de Bruin, M., Kelly, M. P., Groarke, H., & Michie, A. (2018a). Linking behaviour change techniques and mechanisms of action: Triangulation of findings from literature synthesis and expert consensus. Pre-print available at: <https://psyarxiv.com/ur6kz/>
- Johnston, M., Johnston, D., Wood, C. E., Hardeman, W., Francis, J., & Michie, S. (2018b). Communication of behaviour change interventions: Can they be recognised from written descriptions? *Psychology & Health*, *33*(6), 713–723.
- Kontis, V., Mathers, C. D., Rehm, J., et al. (2014). Contribution of six risk factors to achieving the 25 × 25 non-communicable disease mortality reduction target: A modelling study. *Lancet*, *384*(9941), 427–437.
- McCleary, N., Duncan, E. M., Stewart, F., & Francis, J. J. (2013). Active ingredients are reported more often for pharmacologic than non-pharmacologic interventions: An illustrative review of reporting practices in titles and abstracts. *Trials*, *14*, 146–154.
- Michie, S., & Johnston, M. (2017). Optimising the value of the evidence generated in implementation science: The use of ontologies to address the challenges. *Implementation Science*, *12*(1), 131–134. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s13012-017-0660-2>.
- Michie, S., Johnston, M., Francis, J., Hardeman, W., & Eccles, M. (2008). From theory to intervention: Mapping theoretically derived behavioural determinants to behaviour change techniques. *Applied Psychology*, *57*, 660–680.
- Michie, S., Abraham, C., Whittington, C., McAteer, J., & Gupta, S. (2009a). Effective techniques in healthy eating and physical activity interventions: A meta-regression. *Health Psychology*, *28*(6), 690–701.
- Michie, S., Fixsen, D., Grimshaw, J., & Eccles, M. (2009b). Specifying and reporting complex behaviour change interventions: The need for a scientific method. *Implementation Science*, *4*, 40.
- Michie, S., Ashford, S., Sniehotta, F. F., Dombrowski, S. U., Bishop, A., & French, D. P. (2011a). A refined taxonomy of behaviour change techniques to help people change their physical activity and healthy eating behaviours – The CALO-RE taxonomy. *Psychology & Health*, *26*(11), 1479–1498.
- Michie, S., Hyder, N., Walia, A., & West, R. (2011b). Development of a taxonomy of behaviour change techniques used in individual behavioural support for smoking cessation. *Addictive Behaviors*, *36*(4), 315–319.
- Michie, S., van Stralen, M. M., & West, R. (2011c). The behaviour change wheel: A new method for characterising and designing behaviour change interventions. *Implementation Science*, *6*, 42.
- Michie, S., Whittington, C., Hamoudi, Z., Zarnani, F., Tober, G., & West, R. (2012). Identification of behaviour change techniques to reduce excessive alcohol consumption. *Addiction*, *107*(8), 1431–1440. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1360-0443.2012.03845.xs>.
- Michie, S., Richardson, M., Johnston, M., Abraham, C., Francis, J., Hardeman, W., . . . , & Wood, C. (2013). The behaviour change technique taxonomy (v1) of 93 hierarchically clustered techniques: Building an international consensus for the reporting of behavior change interventions. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, *46*(1), 81–95. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12160-013-9486-6>.
- Michie, S., Wood, C., Johnston, M., Abraham, C., Francis, J., & Hardeman, W. (2015). Behaviour change techniques: The development and evaluation of a taxonomic method for reporting and describing behaviour change interventions. *Health Technology Assessment*, *19*(99), 1. <https://doi.org/10.3310/hta19990>.
- Michie, S., Carey, R. N., Johnston, M., Rothman, A., de Bruin, M., Kelly, M., & Connell, L. E. (2016). From theory-inspired to theory-based interventions: A protocol for developing and testing a methodology for linking behaviour change techniques to theoretical mechanisms of action. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, *52*(6), 501–512. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12160-016-9816-6>.
- Michie, S., Thomas, J., Johnston, M., Mac Aonghusa, P., Shawe-Taylor, J., Kelly, M. P., Deleris, L., Finnerty, A. N., Marques, M. M., Norris, E., & O'Mara-Eves, A. (2017). The Human Behaviour-Change Project: Harnessing the power of artificial intelligence and machine learning for evidence synthesis and interpretation. *Implementation Science*, *12*(1), 121–132. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s13012-017-0641-5>.
- Michie, S., West, R., Sheals, K., & Godinho, C. A. (2018). Evaluating the effectiveness of behavior change techniques in health-related behavior: A scoping review of methods used. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, *8*(2), 212–224. <https://doi.org/10.1093/tbm/ibx019>.
- Montgomery, P., Mayo-Wilson, E., Hopewell, S., Macdonald, G., Moher, D., & Grant, S. (2013). Developing a reporting guideline for social and psychological intervention trials. *American Journal of Public Health*, *103*(10), 1741–1746.
- Montgomery, P., Grant, S., Mayo-Wilson, E., Macdonald, G., Michie, S., Hopewell, S., & Moher, D. (2018). Reporting randomised trials of social and psychological interventions: The CONSORT-SPI 2018 Extension. *Trials*, *19*, 407. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s13063-018-2733-1>.
- Murray, R. L., Szatkowski, L., & Ussher, M. (2013). Evaluation of a refined, nationally disseminated self-help intervention for smoking cessation (“quit kit-2”). *Nicotine & Tobacco Research*, *15*(8), 1365–1371. <https://doi.org/10.1093/ntr/nts286>.

- Newbury-Birch, D., Coulton, S., Bland, M., Cassidy, P., Dale, V., Deluca, P., . . . , & Drummond, C. (2014). Alcohol screening and brief interventions for offenders in the probation setting (SIPS trial): A pragmatic multi-centre cluster randomized controlled trial. *Alcohol and Alcoholism*, 49(5), 540–548.
- NHS Centre for Smoking Cessation and Training (NCSCT). (2011). UK: NCSCT; c2011. <http://www.ncsct.co.uk/>. Accessed 8 Dec 2011.
- O'Carroll, R. E., Chambers, J. A., Dennis, M., Sudlow, C., & Johnston, M. (2014). Improving medication adherence in stroke survivors: Mediators and moderators of treatment effects. *Health Psychology*, 33(10), 1241–1250.
- Peters, G. J. Y., de Bruin, M., & Crutzen, R. (2015). Everything should be as simple as possible, but no simpler: Towards a protocol for accumulating evidence regarding the active content of health behaviour change interventions. *Health Psychology Review*, 9(1), 1–14.
- Presseau, J., Ivers, N. M., Newham, J. J., Knittle, K., Danko, K. J., & Grimshaw, J. (2015). Using a behaviour change techniques taxonomy to identify active ingredients within trials of implementation interventions for diabetes care. *Implementation Science*, 10(55), 1–10.
- Ruiter, R. A., Kessels, L. T., Peters, G. J. Y., & Kok, G. (2014). Sixty years of fear appeal research: Current state of the evidence. *International Journal of Psychology*, 49(2), 63–70.
- Smith, S., Fielding, S., Murchie, P., Johnston, M., Wyke, S., Powell, R., Devereux, G., Nicolson, M., Macleod, U., Wilson, P., & Ritchie, L. (2013). Reducing the time before consulting with symptoms of lung cancer: A randomised controlled trial in primary care. *British Journal of General Practice*, 63(606), e47–e54.
- Webb, J., Foster, J., & Poulter, E. (2016). Increasing the frequency of physical activity very brief advice for cancer patients. Development of an intervention using the behaviour change wheel. *Public Health*, 139, 121–133. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.puhe.2015.12.009>.
- West, R., Walia, A., Hyder, N., Shahab, L., & Michie, S. (2010). Behavior change techniques used by the English Stop Smoking Services and their associations with short-term quit outcomes. *Nicotine & Tobacco Research*, 12(7), 742–747.
- West, R., Evans, A., & Michie, S. (2011). Behavior change techniques used in group-based behavioral support by the English Stop-Smoking Services and preliminary assessment of association with short-term quit outcomes. *Nicotine & Tobacco Research*, 13, 1316–1320.
- Wood, C. E., Richardson, M., Johnston, M., Abraham, C., Francis, J., Hardeman, W., et al. (2014). Applying the behaviour change technique (BCT) taxonomy v1: A study of user training. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 5, 134–148.
- Yoon, P. W., Bastian, B., Anderson, R. N., Collins, J. L., & Jaffe, H. W. (2014). Potentially preventable deaths from the five leading causes of death – United States, 2008–2010. *MMWR. Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 63(17), 369–374.
- Young, M. D., Plotnikoff, R. C., Collins, C. E., Callister, R., & Morgan, P. J. (2015). Impact of a male-only weight loss maintenance programme on social-cognitive determinants of physical activity and healthy eating: A randomized controlled trial. *British Journal of Health Psychology*, 20, 724–744.

Behavior Modification

Misuzu Nakashima

Hizen Psychiatric Center, Saga, Japan

Synonyms

Behavior therapy

Definition

Behavior modification is to change behavior by techniques to improve behavior, such as altering behavior and reaction to stimuli through positive and negative reinforcement of adaptive behavior and/or the reduction of maladaptive behavior through positive and negative punishment. The techniques used in behavior modification are based on principle of learning.

Description

Behavior modification and behavior therapy have been used almost interchangeably in literature, although they have some very minor differences. Some people think behavior modification to be a part of behavior therapy; other people think that behavior modification contains behavior therapy. In addition, some people use term behavior therapy only in the context of the medical field.

The term behavior modification was created earlier than behavior therapy because the first use of the term behavior modification appears to have been by Edward Thorndike in 1911, and afterward, Skinner, B.F., continued to use the term behavior therapy. The principles to change behavior in the behavior modification or behavior therapy will be introduced. In the treatment of mental disorders, please refer to the page on behavior therapy.

The Representative Theory and Technique of the Behavior Therapy/ Behavior Modification

Applied Action Analytical Model

Skinner, B. F., paid attention to the action of an individual and its relationship to the environment, and he came up with operant conditioning. He proved through experiments that frequency of behavior freely changes by operating on its environment. Behavior analysis chooses a target behavior to become the object of the treatment and clarifies contingency as a result of this method. In behavior analysis, they investigate mutual relations of antecedent, behavior, and consequence and inspect the hypothesis on the causes which results to the target behavior. Reinforcement plays a key role for intervention, and it is called by techniques such as shaping or token economy. Refer to a page on operant conditioning for more details.

Neobehavioristic Mediational S–R Theory

This is a theory based on drive reduction theory proposed by Hull, C.L. In this theory, it is explained that the motivated behavior is roused by a drive, and the desire is the intervening variable, and the behavior that these drive and desire satisfies and reduced is reinforced. For Skinner, B.F. who aimed at predicting and controlling behavior (a dependent variable) only in an environmental condition (an independent variable), this model considers drive to be any factors in the living body (a parameter). With this model, Eysenck, H.J., and Wolpe, J., produced cures for

neurotic behavior that focuses on fear as the drive among these neurotic behaviors. Systematic desensitization method or flooding is nominated for representative technique.

Social Learning Theory Model

This is the model that was proposed by Bandura, A. Observational learning plays a key role in social learning, and the person takes action not only in reaction to the stimulation from the outside world but also by mediation of cognition. He raised external reinforcement, expectation, and self-efficacy as factors of behavior modification. Modeling and self-control are representative techniques.

Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy Model

This is a model I consider when I regard cognition as important as an intervening factor in modifying actions because cognition always influences behavior. A change of the cognition is indispensable since this is the goal of behavior change and treatment. Cognitive restructuring and self-instructional training are representative techniques.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Behavior Therapy](#)
- ▶ [Behavioral Therapy](#)
- ▶ [Lifestyle, Modification](#)
- ▶ [Operant Conditioning](#)

References and Readings

- Bandura, A. (1963). *Social learning and personality development*. New York: International Thomson.
- Bellack, A. S., Hersen, M., & Kadin, A. E. (1990). *International handbook of behavior modification and therapy*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Eysenck, H. J. (1960). *Behavior therapy and the neuroses*. Oxford: Pergamon Press.
- Gambrill, E. D. (1977). *Behavior modification – handbook of assessment, intervention, and evaluation*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Hull, C. L. (1943). *Principle of behavior*. New York: Appleton Century.

Skinner, B. F. (1959). *Cumulative record*. New York: Appleton Century.

Thorndike, E. L. (1911). *Animal intelligence*. New York: The Macmillan.

Wolpe, J. (1958). *Psychotherapy by reciprocal inhibition*. Stanford: Stanford University Press.

Behavior Modification Program

► [Asthma: Behavioral Treatment](#)

Behavior Therapy

► [Asthma: Behavioral Treatment](#)

► [Behavior Modification](#)

Behavioral Analytics

► [Behavioral Informatics](#)

Behavioral Disengagement

► [Distraction \(Coping Strategy\)](#)

Behavioral Disorder

► [Psychological Disorder](#)

Behavioral Ecological Model

► [Ecological Models: Application to Physical Activity](#)

Behavioral Endocrinology

► [Psychoneuroendocrinology](#)

Behavioral Immunology

Kieran Ayling¹, Karen Dawe² and Kavita Vedhara¹

¹Division of Primary Care, School of Medicine, University of Nottingham, Nottingham, UK

²School of Social and Community Medicine, University of Bristol, Bristol, UK

Synonyms

[Psychoneuroendocrinology](#); [Psychoneuroimmunology](#)

Definition

“Behavioral immunology” refers to the branch of behavioral medicine concerned with bidirectional interactions between behavior and the immune system.

Description

The field of psychoneuroimmunology is providing growing evidence that psychosocial factors can influence immunity and health through both direct and indirect routes, including behavioral modifiers. There are a number of pathways of communication that provide potential mechanisms of bidirectional interaction between the distributed elements of the immune system and the central nervous system (CNS) that ultimately orchestrate behavior. Transmitted signals can, therefore, be a cause or consequence of behavioral actions.

Endocrine-released hormones, such as cortisol and prolactin, are one such mechanism of communication from CNS to immune system (Daruna 2004). Many immune cells present receptors on

their surface for hormones, which are implicated in regulating a number of immune functions including cell trafficking, production, maturation, and differentiation.

Cytokines, chemical messengers used by the immune system, are another mechanism by which immune-CNS signals are transmitted. It has been shown that following infection by a pathogen (e.g., virus or bacteria), macrophages (a type of white blood cell) release the cytokine interleukin-1 (IL-1) into the bloodstream. Circulating IL-1 is known to induce alterations in brain activity and changes in the metabolism of central brain chemicals and neurotransmitters such as norepinephrine, serotonin, and dopamine in discrete brain areas. Such chemicals are, in turn, known to regulate mood, reward, appetite, sleep, and reproduction. IL-1 has been shown to be able to communicate with the brain via peripheral nerves such as the vagus nerve. The vagus nerve is a branch of the autonomic nervous system with both afferent and efferent fibers and is ideally situated to convey immune information. The peripheral IL-1 signal is transduced into neuronal information, which is transmitted to the brain by the vagus nerve. This signal is then retransduced into chemical information in the form of IL-1 synthesized centrally in the brain itself (Evans et al. 2000).

An additional pathway of communication comes from afferent nerve fibers that extend directly from the CNS to lymphoid organs (Yan 2012). These fibers have receptors for cytokines and other similar molecules produced by immune cells and may also directly communicate with, and influence the actions of, cells within those lymphoid organs.

Through the mechanisms described above, the brain is capable of influencing immune processes and vice versa. However, long before the mechanisms of interaction between the brain and immune system were known, it was discovered that the immune system of rats could be trained by classical Pavlovian conditioning to respond to a neutral stimulus previously paired with a stimulus with direct immune-modulatory properties (Ader and Cohen 1975 in Contrada and Baum 2011). Humans have since been shown to respond in the

same way. The effects of conditioning are varied, so it is likely that a number of mechanisms are involved. Some evidence suggests that T cells may play an important role in conditioning of the immune system. Other research has suggested that conditioning of the immune system requires the involvement of opioid-mediated circuits within the central nervous system. However, the exact mechanism is yet to be elucidated.

The field of behavioral immunology is also concerned with the effect of volitional behaviors, such as sleep, physical activity, nutrition, and substance abuse on the workings of the immune system.

Sleep-immune links are substantial. Immune components including cytokines, monocytes, and dendritic cells demonstrate circadian fluctuations that peak, or nadir, during sleep. Prolonged sleep is hypothesized to be immunologically restorative, with sleep duration typically extended in humans and other animals following infection. Normal sleep is associated with redistribution of circulating lymphocyte subsets, an increase of NK cell activity, increases in certain cytokines, and a relative shift toward Th1 cytokine expression. Slow wave sleep – a specific sleep stage identified by characteristic high-amplitude waves when measured by electroencephalogram (EEG) – may be of particular importance in this immunological restoration process. Slow wave sleep is the stage of sleep most notably extended during infection and is associated with multiple endocrine changes – including cortisol, growth hormone, and prolactin secretion – these in turn can impact on immunological function (Bosch et al. 2013). It has been suggested that loss of sleep, or disordered sleep, adversely impacts on resistance to infection, increases cancer risk, lowers adaptive immune responses to foreign antigens, alters inflammatory disease progression, and reduces NK cell counts. Further, it has even been suggested that disordered sleep, a symptom of clinical depression, may be a crucial behavioral factor that mediates the relationship between depression and alterations in immune system functioning. The relationship between sleep and immune functioning is a bidirectional one; animal

studies have shown cytokines to have both sleep-promoting and inhibitory effects depending on the cytokine in question, plasma levels, and circadian phase. Less is known about the interaction between sleep and cytokines in humans. Human studies are necessarily limited by a lack of means to measure cytokine levels in the brain as systemic levels of cytokines may not be an accurate reflection of brain cytokine activity. However, these basic findings have informed theories on the role of the cytokines in clinical contexts, including the inflammation theory of depression and daytime fatigue in conditions such as chronic fatigue and cancer.

Nutrition is also well recognized as influencing the immune system. The production of immune cells requires an appropriate supply of various proteins and micronutrients for optimal assembly. Deficiencies in such dietary factors have been associated with wide-ranging impacts on immunological functioning including reductions in the number and function of lymphocytes, NK cells and, neutrophils (Calder and Yaqoob 2013).

Physical exercise has also been shown to influence immune parameters in a variety of populations (Bosch et al. 2013). In response to a single bout of exercise, a number of transient immunological changes have been consistently observed. These include changes to levels of circulating cytokines such as IL-6, NK cell activity, and lymphocyte distributions. The clinical effects of these changes as a result of exercise appear to depend on the length and intensity of the exercise in question. Short, moderate bouts of exercise are thought to be immune-enhancing, resulting in a redistribution of immune cells around the body to better protect the host should an immune challenge occur. However, prolonged intense bouts of exercise have been associated with short-lived adverse immunological consequences including greater susceptibility to infection. When considering exercise performance over time, regular exercise is found to be beneficial for immunological function. Regular exercisers show different immune profiles to sedentary individuals, with increased T-cell proliferation *in vitro*, longer leukocyte telomere lengths, and greater IL-2 production among some of the differences observed.

Smoking cigarettes has effects on the immune system which may be direct or may occur via endocrine-mediated mechanisms. Nicotine is reported to affect both humoral and cellular immunity. Compared to nonsmokers, adult smokers have higher white blood cell counts and lower natural killer (NK) cell activity (Irwin and Cole in Vedhara and Irwin 2007).

Alcohol use is also known to suppress immune system functioning and may act directly or indirectly via gonadal steroid hormones (Penedo and Dahn in Vedhara and Irwin 2007). Further, alcohol use in the context of clinical depression acts in a synergistic manner to suppress the immune system; while alcohol and depression each have a suppressant effect on the immune system, the interaction of alcohol, substance abuse, and affective disorders may result in significantly greater immune impairment than either condition alone.

Cocaine is thought to negatively alter the responsiveness of the immune system via its effects on the functioning of NK cells, T cells, neutrophils, and macrophages and by dysregulating the production of cytokines.

In diseases of the immune system, such as the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), health behaviors that can directly influence immune functioning, such as substance abuse and adherence to medication regimes, have serious clinical implications (Pereira and Penedo in Vedhara and Irwin 2007). Among HIV-positive individuals, cigarette smoking increases the risk of developing opportunistic respiratory infections, oropharyngeal candidiasis, and cervical and anal neoplasia. Alcohol consumption is associated with impaired immune and viral responses to antiretroviral treatment among HIV+ individuals, while cocaine use has been linked to impaired immune functioning, enhanced HIV infectivity, and replication.

In some clinical conditions, such as cancer or hepatitis C, large doses of cytokines are given therapeutically. Treatment such as this is often associated with depressed mood, anhedonia, fatigue, poor concentration, and disordered sleep. In the absence of disease, administration of inflammatory cytokines leads to depressed mood, increased somatic concern, cognitive

impairment, and difficulties with flexible thinking. The effects are similar following physiological activation of the body's own cytokines; the experimental administration of bacterial endotoxin results in activation of pro-inflammatory cytokines which leads to depressed mood, anxiety, and impaired performance on verbal and non-verbal memory functions.

Findings from experimental situations such as these can be extended to clinical contexts in which levels of pro-inflammatory cytokines are increased as the consequence of invasion by a pathogen. Replication of invading pathogens triggers a stereotypical immune response which is coordinated by inflammatory cytokines. Cytokines direct white blood cells to the site of infection and induce them to proliferate, differentiate, and activate mechanisms involved in pathogen destruction. The crucial cytokines to this process are IL-1b, IL-6, and tumor necrosis factor- α . Elimination of invading pathogens in this way results in a characteristic set of symptoms that are experienced as clinical illness. In addition to disease-specific symptoms that are dependent on the nature of the pathogen, infections are also associated with a host of nonspecific symptoms including fever, malaise, increased sleep, anorexia, anhedonia, reduced reproductive behavior, and social withdrawal. This coordinated behavioral response to infection has been termed "sickness behavior." The result of interactions between cytokines and the central nervous system, sickness behavior is considered an evolutionary strategy to maximize chances of survival after infection and represents an attempt to conserve energy by limiting functions not essential to fighting the infection. Sickness behavior is coordinated by the brain with the cytokine IL-1 being the key molecule signaling between macrophages and the brain (Evans et al. 2000).

Cross-References

- [Psychoneuroimmunology](#)
- [Sickness Behavior](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bosch, J., Phillips, A., & Lord, J. (Eds.). (2013). *Immunosense: Psychosocial and behavioral determinants*. London: Springer Science.
- Calder, P. C., & Yaqoob, P. (Eds.). (2013). *Diet, immunity and inflammation. Diet, immunity and inflammation*. Cambridge, UK: Woodhead Publishing Limited.
- Contrada, R., & Baum, A. (Eds.). (2011). *The handbook of stress science: Biology, psychology and health*. New York: Springer Publishing Company, LLC.
- Daruna, J. H. (2004). *Introduction to psychoneuroimmunology. Introduction to psychoneuroimmunology*. <https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-012203456-5/50009-2>.
- Evans, P., Hucklebridge, F., & Clow, A. (2000). *Mind, immunity and health*. London: Free Association Books.
- Kandel, E. R., Schwartz, J. H., & Jessell, T. M. (Eds.). (2000). *Principles of neural science*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Vedhara, K., & Irwin, M. (Eds.). (2007). *Human psychoneuroimmunology*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Yan, Q. (Ed.). (2012). *Psychoneuroimmunology: methods and protocols*. Springer Science+Business Media, LLC.

Behavioral Informatics

Vivek K. Singh and Isha Ghosh
School of Communication and Information,
Rutgers University, New Brunswick, NJ, USA

Synonyms

[Behavioral analytics](#); [Health informatics](#); [Human-centered data science](#)

Definition

The field of **Behavioral Informatics** focuses on collecting, analyzing, and interpreting heterogeneous data to model and shape human behavior. The goal is to identify techniques and technologies that can sense implicit and explicit behaviors as well as help identify novel interventions to shape complex human behavior. Behavioral

informatics aims to catalyze research and innovation in the domains of clinical health and wellness, sociology, economics, communication studies, and psychology through the use of emerging computational devices, tools, and methodologies.

Description

Over the last decade, substantial research has been devoted to achieve a better understanding of the rules and structures governing various facets of human behavior (Shmueli et al. 2014). While the study of human behavior has been an area of focus for over a century, previous research has typically relied on self-reports (e.g., surveys, diaries) to learn about human behavior. However, these instruments are fraught with issues such as self-reported bias, sparsity of data, and lack of continuity between discrete questionnaires (Giles 2012). This absence of rich, continuous data also makes it harder to construct comprehensive predictive models of attitudes and states, traits, and dispositions governing human behavior. Recent research has explored the possibility of using automated data-collection based methods for sensing, shaping, and understanding human behavior.

The field of *Behavioral Informatics* focuses on collecting, analyzing, and interpreting heterogeneous data to model and shape human behavior. The goal is to identify techniques and technologies that can sense implicit and explicit behaviors as well as help identify novel interventions to shape complex human behavior. Behavioral informatics aims to catalyze research and innovation in the domains of clinical health and wellness, sociology, economics, communication studies, and psychology through the use of emerging computational devices, tools, and methodologies.

The field of Behavioral Informatics explores challenges at the intersection of Big Data Analytics, Computational Social Science, and Multimedia Information Systems. A key focus area in this field is not just supporting the collection of data from multiple sources (e.g., World Wide Web,

phones, wearable sensors, etc.) about the individual, but also supporting the aggregation and analysis of information in order to respond to unique user situations (e.g., detecting addiction, stress, mental illness, etc.) (Saeb et al. 2015).

Opportunities

Some of the opportunities for behavioral informatics lie in improving and abetting:

1. **Objectivity and scale:** Human behavior is often influenced by contextual factors; therefore, it would be beneficial to merge different data sources in trying to understand behavior. Complementing current sources of data with emerging sensor-based data sources can help expose underlying behavioral patterns leading to a deeper understanding of behavior. For example, evidence from brain imaging data while interacting with documents can be taken as being objective and less subject to multiple biases (e.g., subjectivity bias and reporting bias). The use of sensor based data can also help increase the scale at which scientists can study human behavior. For example, capturing physical and social behaviors using phones and other devices used by billions of individuals on a daily basis could yield newer insights for personal health.
2. **“In the wild” observations:** An ability to study users in their natural settings rather than a lab-based environment is an important design goal for behavioral health studies. Sensors worn and carried by users in their everyday life (e.g., phones, fitness trackers, cameras) yield valuable insights about daily activities, behaviors, and routines of individuals. For example, different lifelogging applications are allowing researchers to better quantify activities and lifestyles of patients and wellbeing-motivated users in everyday settings.
3. **Complementarity of information channels:** Understanding human behavior is often a complex process and complementary information from various channels, some focusing on the cognitive and experiential aspects, along with

others focusing on the behavioral aspects (e.g., via a combination of surveys, interviews, lifelogs, fMRI, and phone logs) could provide a more holistic view of the underlying patterns.

Challenges

There remain multiple challenges in the process:

1. **Cost and awareness:** While some sensor-based devices for capturing behavioral data are becoming more and more common (wristbands, activity trackers), there still remain economic and technical challenges to prevent their widespread adoption in society. An fMRI machine for example costs several thousand dollars and requires extensive training for use. These suggest opportunities to leverage cross-departmental collaborations by researchers to counter some of these challenges. Many of the above-mentioned sensors and behavioral data are being utilized in new medically relevant contexts for the first time. Hence, there is a need to create broader awareness on the opportunities (and challenges) associated with their use. This includes raising awareness in the diverse research community as well as the wider set of stakeholders including practitioners, publishers, and funding agencies.
2. **Privacy and ethics:** While understanding human behavior is helpful in multiple scientific and business contexts, such advantages need to be balanced with the ethical and privacy needs of individuals. In the age of “big data” it is important to raise questions about the ownership and control of this sensitive information. Data recording human behavior in its richest context also makes it possible for inappropriate agents to repurpose the data for ulterior purposes.
3. **“Big data hubris”:** An important challenge is to avoid the trap of assuming that “more” data is necessarily a good thing. Multiple recent research efforts have identified the problems with “overfitting” the data or simply employing the wrong type of data to tackle the problem encountered (Lazer et al. 2014). Hence, identifying the right processes for

deciding on when to use which channel of information is an important challenge.

Sample Application Areas

1. **Early detection of mental and physical diseases:** Many of the mental and physical diseases show early signs, which may not be obvious to a casual observer but might become obvious with a systematic analysis of different sensors capturing everyday behavior. For instance, slight delays in gaze focus or changes in speech patterns might indicate early signs of Alzheimer’s disease.
2. **Modeling individual propensities using behavioral data:** While social scientists have been using self-reported surveys to understand individual propensities to trust others, cooperate, and be happy, passively collected behavioral data could help scale some of these studies and generate robust, cost-effective, in-the-wild models (Singh and Agarwal 2016; Bati and Singh 2018).
3. **Designing behavioral interventions to improve life outcomes:** The collection of behavioral data makes certain patterns “obvious,” which can in turn be used to raise awareness and nudge human behavior in different scenarios. For instance, users could be made aware of the effect of social connections on their self-reported happiness levels, which may in turn nudge them toward a more socially active lifestyle.

Looking Ahead

Emerging trends on “big data” imply that computational systems now have access to information at scales and resolution levels that were never captured before. For example, today every gaze, glance, heartbeat, emotion, movement, financial activity, and social activity of a person can be digitally captured and shared with the community if the person chooses to do so. This implies that systems can be personalized in ways not possible before. Similarly, satellite imagery, Internet-of-Things-based devices, sensor networks, and projects such as the Planetary Pulse are channeling data coming from more parts of planet Earth in more detail than ever before to users and their

mobile applications. Data gathered from these sources can be used to gain a better understanding of personal as well as societal and group behaviors. In such a context, there will be an unprecedented need to collect, analyze, and interpret heterogeneous data to model and shape human behavior. We expect the research activities in these areas to crystallize under the umbrella of **Behavioral Informatics** and have benefits that will impact multiple walks of human life including health, wellbeing, and civic society.

References and Further Reading

- Bati, G. F., & Singh, V. K. (2018). "Trust us": Mobile phone use patterns can predict individual trust propensity. In: *Proceedings of the 2018 CHI conference on human factors in computing systems* (In press), ACM, New York.
- Giles, J. (2012). Making the links. *Nature*, 488(7412), 448–450.
- Lazer, D., Kennedy, R., King, G., & Vespignani, A. (2014). The parable of Google Flu: Traps in big data analysis. *Science*, 343(6176), 1203–1205.
- Saeb, S., Zhang, M., Karr, C. J., Schueller, S. M., Corden, M. E., Kording, K. P., & Mohr, D. C. (2015). Mobile phone sensor correlates of depressive symptom severity in daily-life behavior: An exploratory study. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 17(7), e175.
- Shmueli, E., Singh, V. K., Lepri, B., & Pentland, A. (2014). Sensing, understanding, and shaping social behavior. *IEEE Transactions on Computational Social Systems*, 1(1), 22–34.
- Singh, V. K., & Agarwal, R. R. (2016). Cooperative phoneotypes: Exploring phone-based behavioral markers of cooperation. In: *Proceedings of the 2016 ACM international joint conference on pervasive and ubiquitous computing*, ACM, New York, pp. 646–657.

Behavioral Inhibition

Cara Wong
School of Psychology, University of Sydney,
Sydney, NSW, Australia

Synonyms

Cognitive control; Response inhibition; Self-control

Definition

Behavioral inhibition can be generally defined as an individual's ability to inhibit a desired behavior, or prepotent response. It belongs to a subset of "executive functions" which are the top-down self-regulatory functions that allow us to consciously control our actions afforded by the frontal cortex (Fuster 1997).

Behavioral inhibition can be divided into three interrelated processes: (a) inhibition of an initial prepotent response to an event; (b) cessation of an ongoing response, which allows a delay in the decision to respond; and (c) the protection of this period of delay and the self-directed responses that occur within it from disruption by competing events and responses (interference control). Behavioral inhibition also involves overriding or inhibiting competing urges, and delaying gratification (Barkley 1997; Muraven and Baumeister 2000; Shallice and Burgess 1993).

Characteristics

Refraining from performing an immediate desire often requires more effort than taking action, (for example, it is more difficult for a smoker to refrain from smoking, than to gratify their desire to smoke) and involves more than just passive inaction. There are many situations where an individual may be required to use inhibition, where something is desired but not the right thing to do. Circumstances that involve temporal delays (i.e., delay of gratification), conflicts in temporally related consequences, or where there is a need to generate a novel response may rely heavily on behavioral inhibition. Consequently, inhibition is particularly relevant for addictive or impulsive behaviors for example drug use, smoking, or gambling, and health behaviors such as making healthy versus unhealthy food choices, exercising, etc. The Temporal Self-regulation Theory (Hall and Fong 2007) is a relatively recent theory of behavior that includes behavioral inhibition and self-regulation as additional determinants of behavior. The theory predicts that the likelihood of performing a behavior is a function of both an individual's self-

regulatory capacity (including behavioral inhibition), and the presence or absence of cues to that behavior in the environment.

Problems with behavioral inhibition are typically seen in children, individuals with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), or patients with frontal lobe damage/disorders (Barkley 1997; Shallice and Burgess 1991). Common symptoms of disinhibition in these groups of people include: acting out on impulses or desires, a strong inclination to seek immediate reinforcement or gratification, and difficulty inhibiting an action once it has begun. In normal children, behavioral inhibition (as well as other executive functions) improves with age, which coincides with the development and maturation of the frontal cortex (Russell 1948).

Behavioral inhibition or self-control can be thought of as one of a subset of controlled or effortful cognitive processes (Hasher and Zacks 1979). This is because the individual or self exerts control over its own responses rather than allowing them to proceed in their normal or automatic fashion (Muraven and Baumeister 2000). In contrast, most behaviors occur automatically and do not require active participation or need the self to override the natural response and implement a different one (Bargh 1994). The benefit of having automatic behaviors is that they are performed more efficiently; however, the disadvantage is that they are more rigid and difficult to change. Although controlled processes require more effort and resources, they are much more flexible.

Assessment of Behavioral Inhibition

Behavioral inhibition is assessed by performance on cognitive and behavioral tasks that require withholding of responding, delayed responding, cessation of ongoing responses, and resisting distraction or disruption by competing events. These include the Stroop color-word interference task, where the participant must override the prepotent response to read the word instead of say the color; and the stop-signal task where the participant is required to stop a just-begun or well-along-the-way motor response, and the delay of gratification paradigm where participants have a choice of a smaller immediate reward or a later, larger reward.

Cross-References

► Social Inhibition

References and Further Readings

- Bargh, J. A. (1994). The four horsemen of automaticity: Awareness, intention, efficiency, and control in social cognition. In *Handbook of Social Cognition: Basic Processes* (Vol. 1, pp. 1–40). Hillsdale: Erlbaum.
- Barkley, R. A. (1997). Behavioral inhibition, sustained attention, and executive functions: Constructing a unifying theory of ADHD. *Psychological Bulletin*, 121(1), 65.
- Fuster, J. M. (1997). *The prefrontal cortex*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven.
- Hall, P. A., & Fong, G. T. (2007). Temporal self-regulation theory: A model for individual health behavior. *Health Psychology Review*, 1(1), 6–52.
- Hasher, L., & Zacks, R. T. (1979). Automatic and effortful processes in memory. *Journal of Experimental Psychology General*, 108(3), 356–388.
- Muraven, M., & Baumeister, R. F. (2000). Self-regulation and depletion of limited resources: Does self-control resemble a muscle? *Psychological Bulletin*, 126(2), 247–259.
- Russell, W. R. (1948). Functions of the frontal lobes. *Lancet*, 1(6497), 356.
- Shallice, T., & Burgess, P. (1991). Higher-order cognitive impairments and frontal lobe lesions in man. In H. S. Levin & H. M. Eisenberg (Eds.), *Frontal lobe function and dysfunction* (pp. 125–138). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Shallice, T., & Burgess, P. (1993). Supervisory control of action and thought selection. In A. Baddeley & L. Weiskrantz (Eds.), *Attention: Selection, Awareness, and Control* (pp. 171–187). Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Behavioral Intervention

► Lifestyle, Modification

Behavioral Intervention Technologies

► eHealth and Behavioral Intervention Technologies

Behavioral Medicine

Marc D. Gellman

Behavioral Medicine Research Center,
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Definition

Behavioral medicine is an interdisciplinary field concerned with the development and integration of sociocultural, psychosocial, behavioral, and biomedical knowledge and techniques relevant to the understanding of health and illness and the application of this knowledge and these techniques to disease prevention, public health and health promotion, health policy, etiology, diagnosis, treatment, rehabilitation, and care. The original definition of the field of behavioral medicine was developed at the Yale Conference on Behavioral Medicine and later published by Gary Schwartz and Stephen Weiss (1977). Since that time, there have been various refinements to the definition as reflected in the preceding definition.

Neal Miller (1909–2002), an American psychologist and recipient of the National Medal of Science (1964), is often credited as being the founder of behavioral medicine. He made significant contributions to our understanding of the relationship between reinforcement mechanisms and the control of autonomic behavior and in pioneering the field of biofeedback, which is used successfully today to treat a variety of medical conditions.

Description

Foundation of Behavioral Medicine

One of the earliest articles discussing issues that now fall within the discipline of behavioral medicine was published in 1956 in the *Journal of Medical Education* and entitled “Premedical school education in the social and behavioral sciences” (Lidz and Pilot 1956). The first book title to include the term was published in 1973 (Birk

1973). The *Journal of Behavioral Medicine* was first published by Plenum in 1978 and is now published by Springer. When the first edition of this entry was written in 2011, a Medline search of the term behavioral medicine found over 27,000 references. When this entry was written in 2019, that number had climbed to over 97,000, clear evidence that the growth in this field continues to be enormous.

The discipline’s first professional organization, the Society of Behavioral Medicine (SBM), was founded in 1979 and headquartered in the United States. In the following years, similar professional organizations were founded in Europe and Asia. The late 1980s saw the birth of the International Society of Behavioral Medicine (ISBM), which initially linked together six member societies. These organizations have grown substantially over the past two decades. The ISBM now reports over 25 affiliated member societies, including those in Australia, Brazil, Chile, China, Denmark, Finland, Germany, Hungary, Italy, Japan, Mexico, the Netherlands, Norway, Romania, Slovakia, South Africa, South Korea, Spain, Sweden, Thailand, the United Kingdom, and Venezuela. Additional societies are continuously being formed and joining the ISBM federation.

The SBM holds annual meetings, and the ISBM holds meetings every 2 years (the planning is considerably more complex given the very diverse membership and the international locations). The active participation by members in these meetings is reflected in the excellent attendance statistics. Approximately 2000 attendees participate in the annual SBM meetings, with approximately 1000 attendees participating in the ISBM’s biannual International Congress of Behavioral Medicine. The first International Congress was held in Uppsala, Sweden, in 1990. Subsequent meetings have been held in Hamburg, Germany (1992); Amsterdam, the Netherlands (1994); Washington DC, USA (1996); Copenhagen, Denmark (1998); Brisbane, Australia (2000); Helsinki, Finland (2002); Mainz, Germany (2004); Bangkok, Thailand (2006); Tokyo, Japan (2008); and Washington DC, USA (2010); Budapest, Hungary (2012); Groningen, The Netherlands (2014); Melbourne, Australia (2016); and

Santiago, Chile (2018). The 2020 meeting will be held in Glasgow, Scotland.

Educating and Training the Next Generation of Behavioral Medicine Researchers and Practitioners

Further evidence of the growth of the discipline of behavioral medicine is provided by the fact that training in this field can be found in universities around the world, ensuring that the next generation of researchers and practitioners will be trained by current experts. Before going on to specialize in behavioral medicine research or clinical practice, individuals often receive their terminal degrees in disciplines such as medicine, public health, nursing, and psychology.

In 2004, the Institute of Medicine's Committee on Behavioral and Social Sciences in Medical School Curricula (Institute of Medicine 2004) issued the report "Improving Medical Education: Enhancing the Behavioral and Social Sciences Content of Medical School Curricula." This report identified six major domains of knowledge that should be represented in undergraduate medical education. They include (1) mind-body interactions in health and disease, (2) patient behavior, (3) physician role and behavior, (4) physician-patient interactions, (5) social and cultural issues in health care, and (6) health policy and economics.

The Liaison Committee on Medical Education (LCME), the nationally recognized accrediting authority for medical education programs leading to the M.D. degree in the United States and Canadian medical schools, now requires that the curriculum of a medical education program must include behavioral and socioeconomic topics in addition to basic science and clinical disciplines. Furthermore, the medical education program must demonstrate its ability to provide students with an understanding of the manner in which people of diverse cultures and belief systems perceive health and illness and respond to various symptoms, diseases, and treatments.

More recently, Goldstein et al. (2017) discussed the enhancement of education and

training for behavioral medicine graduate students and postdoctoral fellows. They listed seven key areas for improved preparation of the next generation of behavioral medicine scientists and practitioners: (1) grant writing, (2) interdisciplinary teamwork, (3) advanced statistics and research methods, (4) how to build evolving research programs, (5) working towards publications in peer-reviewed journals based on coursework, (6) evolution and use of theory, and (7) nontraditional career paths in behavioral medicine. With regard to the last area, trainees should be exposed to these careers through exposure to panel discussions involving external experts, obtaining guidance from their institutions career services, and maximizing participation in networking activities at professional meetings.

Another aspect of education is disseminating information about behavioral medicine to the general public. One recent proposal (Wallston 2019) is that SBM's Scientific and Professional Liaison Council and its Civic and Public Engagement Committee should join forces to do whatever is necessary in this regard, with the goal that, by the society's 50th anniversary in 2028, the field of behavioral medicine should be recognized and understood by at least 80% of college graduates and 90% of policy-makers.

Digital Health

As digital influences continue to pervade almost all aspects of our lives, personal and professional, digital health platforms represent an increasingly important springboard for increasing the effectiveness and broadening the reach of behavioral medicine interventions (Christensen 2019). Technologies of interest in this developing field include mobile applications, social media, and wearable devices. However, while the opportunities here are intriguing, several aspects will require concerted attention. First, the privacy and data security landscape will need to be carefully considered, not only from ethical but also from legal perspectives. Second, from the device perspective, compelling evidence of a digital device's accuracy, precision, and reliability will need to be

generated. Then, once such evidence has been obtained in pilot studies using relatively small numbers of devices, appropriate manufacturing capacity and successful implementation of scalable effective interventions become the next challenge (Arigo et al. 2019).

Collaborations Within the Field of Behavioral Medicine

The Behavioral Medicine Research Council (BMRC) is a recently formed (2018), independent joint committee of four of the leading behavioral medicine research organizations, including the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research (ABMR), the Society for Health Psychology (SfHP), the Society of Behavioral Medicine (SBM), and the American Psychosomatic Society (APS). Its mission is to identify and prioritize strategic research goals in behavioral medicine and to encourage multidisciplinary, multicenter research networks to pursue them. The BMRC commissions expert writing groups to produce scientific statements on major preclinical and clinical research goals and encourages the formation of multidisciplinary research networks to pursue these goals. Most BMRC statements pertain to behavioral or psychosocial risk factors for the onset or progression of cancer, cardiovascular disease, diabetes, pulmonary disease, or other chronic or life-threatening conditions. The statements will be co-published in several of the leading journals in the field. The research initiatives are expected to culminate in large, multicenter, randomized controlled trials with behavioral or psychosocial targets of intervention and clinically important outcomes such as disease onset, hospitalization, morbidity, or mortality. The research networks will also be encouraged to proceed from positive RCTs to effectiveness, dissemination, and implementation research (Freedland 2019).

Collaborations with Additional Disciplines

While individuals from psychology and healthcare professions have been (and still are) central to many aspects of behavioral medicine, other

disciplines can offer us other exciting opportunities for collaborative research. These include sociology, geography, and economics and more specialized aspects of medical science including immunology, cardiology, and genetics. Such collaborations need to be undertaken wholeheartedly, embracing opportunities to co-design research projects employing research methodologies from other disciplines, and the willingness to read the literature in those disciplines (Johnston and Johnston 2017).

Such diversity and collaboration are tremendous strengths in the interdisciplinary field of behavioral medicine.

Cross-References

- [Health Psychology](#)
- [International Society of Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Pilot study](#)
- [Society of Behavioral Medicine](#)

References and Further Readings

- Arigo, D., Jake-Schoffman, D. E., Wolin, K., Beckjord, E., Hekler, E. B., & Pagoto, S. L. (2019). The history and future of digital health in the field of behavioral medicine. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 42, 67–83.
- Birk, L. (1973). *Biofeedback: Behavioral medicine*. New York: Grune and Stratton.
- Christensen, A. J. (2019). Looking back, looking forward: Forty years of the Journal of Behavioral Medicine. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 42, 12–15.
- Freedland, K. E. (2019). The Behavioral Medicine Research Council: Its origins, mission, and methods. *Health Psychology*, 38(4), 277–289. <https://doi.org/10.1037/hea0000731>.
- Goldstein, C. M., Minges, K. E., Schoffman, D. E., & Cases, M. G. (2017). Preparing tomorrow's behavioral medicine scientists and practitioners: A survey of future directions for education and training. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 40, 214–226.
- Institute of Medicine Report. (2004) Improving medical education: Enhancing the behavioral and social science content of medical school curricula.
- Johnston, M., & Johnston, D. (2017). What is Behavioural medicine? Commentary on definition proposed by Dekker, Stauder and Penedo. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 24, 8–11.

- Lidz, T., & Pilot, M. L. (1956). Premedical school education in the social and behavioral sciences. *Journal of Medical Education*, 31(10 Part 1), 692–696.
- Schwartz, G., & Weiss, S. (1977). What is behavioral medicine. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 39(6), 377–381.
- Wallston, K. A. (2019). Historical perspective on behavioral medicine's success in bringing different disciplines to the table. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 42, 95–101.

Behavioral Oncology

► Cancer: Psychosocial Treatment

Behavioral Sciences at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention

Dana Brimmer¹ and Emily Zielinski-Gutierrez²

¹Division of High-Consequence Pathogens and Pathology, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, McKing Consulting Corporation, Atlanta, GA, USA

²Division of Vector-Borne Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Ft. Collins, CO, USA

Synonyms

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention

Basic Information

Behavioral science is an integral part of the United States (US) Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), an agency under the Department of Health and Human Services, which is the lead public health organization for the United States. The Communicable Disease Center, as it was first known, was a unit of the Public Health Service

founded in Atlanta, Georgia, on July 1, 1946 (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] 1996). Its mission was to fight communicable diseases, in particular malaria. The mandate to eradicate malaria by eliminating mosquitoes stemmed from the Malaria Control in Wartime Areas agency during the Second World War, and thus the agency originally employed more engineers and entomologists than public health doctors (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] 2011a). The agency mission eventually grew beyond communicable diseases to include the prevention of disease, injury, and disability, promotion of good health, and preparation for new public health threats. As a result, the name was changed in 1970 to the Centers for Disease Control, with the words “and Prevention” added in 1992 (CDC 1996).

Today the agency is responsible for public health planning, research, and prevention of infectious and chronic diseases, occupational health, health statistics, and the health component of national emergencies, from hurricanes to natural outbreaks to bioterrorism. CDC is comprised of the Center for Global Health, National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, and 10 different offices (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] 2011b). Within each office, there are national centers, divisions, branches, and programs, for example, the Office of Infectious Diseases houses the National Center for Emerging and Zoonotic Infectious Diseases, to which the Division of High-Consequence Pathogens and Pathology, and Chronic Viral Disease Branch belongs (CDC 2011b). While both CDC and the US National Institutes of Health (NIH) fall under the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, CDC engages in disease investigation and epidemiology, public health service – such as diagnostic reference services and compilation of reportable disease statistics – and applied prevention and response, as compared to the medical research agency objectives of the NIH. While CDC does provide extramural funding to health departments and service organizations, and some

research funding to universities and other organizations, CDC extramural funding is markedly lower than that provided via NIH.

Behavioral scientists at the CDC work in a variety of public health areas such as health communication, HIV, autism, injury, chronic and infectious diseases, and birth defects (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] 2006). Although the behavioral sciences were not formally incorporated at the CDC until the 1980s, this branch of science has become increasingly important to control and prevent both chronic and infectious diseases (CDC 2006). In 1995, social and behavioral scientists at the CDC established the Behavioral and Social Sciences Working Group (BSSWG) to bring awareness to the fields in which the behavioral sciences contribute (CDC 2006). Today, the group has approximately 700 members with oversight by the Office of the Associate Director for Science (CDC 2006).

Behavioral scientists bring with them the research methods from psychology, sociology, anthropology, and communications, which allow scientists to look at the intersecting impact of the environment, culture, and sociodemographic factors on public health problems. As noted in a 2006 article in CDC's Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report, behavioral scientists use "qualitative, quantitative, or multiple methods to explore the effects of behavioral, social, and cultural factors on public health problems." Using a mixed research approach that includes qualitative and quantitative methods, behavioral science provides insight into the depth and breadth of public health problems.

CDC behavioral scientists bring experience in survey construction and implementation, often working collaboratively with epidemiologists and other staff. The Behavioral Risk Factor Surveillance System (BRFSS), which monitors behavioral risk factors that influence health outcomes, is a good example of behavioral science at work in the world of survey design (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] 2011c). This annual survey, conducted by CDC, collects

behavioral health data in all 50 states, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico, the US Virgin Islands, and Guam. Analysis of BRFSS data informs health policy and prioritizes resources for public health problems. Many behavioral scientists also specialize in the field of evaluation, which allows CDC to critically evaluate whether programs are reaching the targets set and permits a process of continual refinement to meet the community and programmatic needs.

Behavioral scientists at CDC combine biomedical knowledge with systematically gathered information about communities to construct appropriate, effective interventions and health messages. Behavioral scientists can identify how best to implement interventions and evaluate outcomes to allow for sustainable and cost-effective programs. The role of behavioral scientists at CDC can be illustrated through the public health issues of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), vaccine safety, and chronic fatigue syndrome.

The importance of the role played by professionals who study human behavior and who suggest ways to intervene in human practices was exemplified by CDC's response to the epidemic of HIV, which involved engaging populations who were at risk for HIV infection in a process of behavior change. The fact that behaviors such as sexual activity and drug use were sensitive and often covert emphasized the need for qualitative and quantitative research and creative methodologies. For example, Semaan et al., in a meta-analysis looked at the effects of HIV prevention in drug users and found interventions with this population significantly reduced risky sexual behaviors (Semaan et al. Semaan et al. 2002a, b).

Conducting needs assessments through focus groups and individual interviews within target communities are examples of how behavioral scientists get involved in the formative phase of interventions, such as in the area of vaccine safety. Outbreaks of measles and pertussis in the USA attest to the public health impact of lowered vaccination rates and yet there are population groups in which resistance to childhood vaccination is

prominent (Feiken et al. 2000). In the case of childhood vaccination, members of the public are often challenged to interpret potentially frightening information, and health professionals are at a loss to comprehend why people would reject lifesaving tools. Behavioral medicine methodologies can work between these views, seeking ways to translate concerns, information, and perspectives of the community so policy makers and education experts can develop effective health communication interventions that meet the goals of public health and constituents.

An example of integrating behavioral science and epidemiology at the CDC is the chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS) program. This program has conducted several population-based studies as well as a general clinic research study to assess the prevalence and incidence of CFS, risk factors, and biological aspects associated with the condition. From the behavioral science perspective, the program was the first to publish research in the USA evaluating healthcare providers' perceptions, knowledge, attitudes, and beliefs on CFS. For example, one study measured how physicians and healthcare providers perceive CFS and how their perceptions may affect the diagnosis and management of the illness (Brimmer et al. 2010). A separate study examining continuing medical education showed that when targeting healthcare providers at conferences, the conference size, theme, and mode of education courses may increase education efforts, which help direct resources for future initiatives (Brimmer et al. 2009).

CDC has a rich history of using behavioral scientists and behavioral science methods to prevent, control, and conduct surveillance on infectious and chronic diseases. The advent of the BSSWG has further augmented the role of behavioral science within the CDC while increasing communication and strengthening agency objectives. Whether behavioral scientists work to prevent infectious disease or promote healthy lifestyles to reduce chronic disease morbidity, they use the fundamentals of evidence-based research, and quantitative and qualitative methods to meet public health goals.

Cross-References

- Behavior Change
- Chronic Fatigue Syndrome
- Epidemiology
- Fatigue
- Health Communication
- Infectious Diseases
- Public Health
- Qualitative Research Methods
- Research Methodology
- Study Methodology
- Surveys

References and Readings

- Brimmer, D. J., Fridinger, F., Lin, J. M., & Reeves, W. C. (2010). U.S. healthcare providers' knowledge, attitudes, and beliefs concerning chronic fatigue syndrome. *BMC Family Practice*, 21(11), 28.
- Brimmer, D. J., McCleary, K. K., Lupton, T. A., Faryna, K. M., & Reeves, W. C. (2009). Continuing medical education challenges in chronic fatigue syndrome. *BMC Medical Education*, 2(9), 70.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (1996). History of CDC. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 45, 526–528.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2006). Behavioral and social sciences and public health at CDC. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 55 (Suppl. 2), 14–16.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2011a). *Our history, our story*. Retrieved from <http://www.cdc.gov/about/history/ourstory.htm>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2011b). *CDC organization*. Retrieved from <http://cdc.gov/about/organization/cio.htm>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2011c). *Behavioral risk factor surveillance system: Turning information into health*. Retrieved from <http://www.cdc.gov/BRFSS/>
- Feiken, D. R., Lezotte, D. C., Hamman, R. F., Salmon, D. A., Chen, R. T., & Hoffman, D. E. (2000). Individual and community risk of measles and pertussis associated with personal exemptions to immunization. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 284(24), 3145–3150.
- National Institutes of Health. (2011). *About NIH*. Retrieved from <http://www.nih.gov/about>
- Semaan, S., Des Jarlais, D. C., Sogolow, E., Johnson, W., Hedges, L., Ramirez, G., et al. (2002a). A meta-analysis of the effect of HIV prevention interventions on the sex behaviors of drug users in the United States.

Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes, 30 (Suppl. 1), S73–S93.

Semaan, S., Kay, L., Strouse, D., Sogolow, E., Mullen, P., Neumann, M., et al. (2002b). A profile of U.S.-based trials of behavioral and social interventions for HIV risk reduction. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*, 30(Suppl. 1), S30–S50.

Behavioral Sleep Medicine

Wendy Troxel¹ and Michelle Drerup²

¹Psychiatry and Psychology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

²Sleep Disorders Center Neurological Institute, Cleveland Clinic, Cleveland, OH, USA

Definition

The field of behavioral sleep medicine (BSM) is a burgeoning, multidisciplinary specialty that represents the integration of clinical sleep medicine and health psychology. Although the field of BSM was initiated by psychologists, individuals from other related disciplines, including nursing, psychiatry, and general medicine, have also contributed to the growth and diversity of the field. In general, BSM specialists focus on the identification and treatment of the psychological or behavioral factors that contribute to the development and/or maintenance of sleep disorders, including factors that may influence adherence to prescribed sleep treatments. In particular, BSM techniques have been applied to the treatment of nightmares (i.e., imagery rehearsal therapy; Hasler and Germain 2009; Moore and Krakow 2007), narcolepsy and idiopathic hypersomnias (Garma and Marchand 1994; Mullington and Broughton 1993), and adherence to continuous positive airway pressure treatment of obstructive sleep apnea (Aloia et al. 2004; Means and Edinger 2007). This entry will focus on the principles of cognitive behavioral treatment of insomnia, as this is arguably the most well-known and rigorously tested application of BSM techniques.

Description

Cognitive behavioral therapy for insomnia (CBT-I) involves a diverse set of prescriptions designed to improve sleep consolidation and quality by modifying thoughts and behaviors that interfere with sleep. CBT-I combines several non-pharmacological interventions to help patients learn strategies to enhance sleep, examine beliefs and practices that hinder sleep, and adopt behaviors to promote sleep. CBT-I improves sleep and daytime functioning in 70 to 80% of treated persons. Patients generally maintain gains after completing treatment and understand how to manage insomnia if it recurs. These treatments can be administered in individual or group formats and typically range from four to eight sessions in length. Evidence suggests that these treatments are preferred by patients and have consistent strong short-term and long-term efficacy (Irwin et al. 2006; Morin et al. 2006) with few apparent side effects. CBT-I was recently recommended as standard, first-line treatment for insomnia per published clinical guidelines by the American College of Physicians (Qaseem et al. 2016).

Techniques Utilized in CBT-I

Stimulus control therapy (Bootzin et al. 1991; Morin et al. 1999) aims to reinforce associations between sleepiness, sleep, and the sleep environment. The patient is instructed to go to bed only when feeling sleepy and to use the bed and bedroom for sleep and sex only. If awake in bed for extended periods of time (e.g., 20 min or longer), the individual is instructed to get out of bed and leave the bedroom until feeling sleepy again.

Sleep restriction therapy is designed to increase sleep efficiency and consolidate sleep by restricting the time spent in bed, only to the amount of time the patient is actually sleeping (Spielman et al. 1983, 1987). Sleep restriction is often associated with slight-to-moderate sleep deprivation, which increases sleepiness and enhances the ability to fall asleep and to maintain

sleep. Given that sleep restriction may lead to increased daytime sleepiness (temporarily, usually), patients should be cautioned about operating machinery of performing duties that require high levels of alertness. This strategy is not a good option for patients that already report excessive daytime sleepiness symptoms, which may be due to untreated obstructive sleep apnea or other conditions, or patients that have a history of mania/hypomania or seizures.

Relaxation techniques aim to reduce physical and emotional tensions that are incompatible with sleep (Coursey et al. 1980; Hauri 1991; Jacobs et al. 1993). Several specific relaxation techniques have been evaluated for insomnia, including autogenic training, progressive muscle relaxation, and biofeedback.

Cognitive therapy is based on the premise that maladaptive thoughts and beliefs about sleep and the consequences of sleep loss (e.g., I can't function without 8 h of sleep) increase tension and arousal, which perpetuates insomnia. In turn, cognitive techniques aim to help patients identify and correct these maladaptive thoughts and beliefs about sleep (Harvey 2002; Harvey et al. 2005).

Sleep hygiene refers to practices, habits, and environmental factors that facilitate getting good quality sleep. Exercising, having a pre-bedtime "wind-down" routine, avoiding stimulants and naps, and limiting alcohol intake are examples of behaviors that may enhance sleep quality. Sleep hygiene has limited efficacy as a stand-alone treatment for insomnia (Lacks and Morin 1992); however, it is often useful in conjunction with other behavioral interventions.

Summary

Behavioral sleep medicine is a burgeoning, multidisciplinary field that has developed a diverse set of psychological and behavioral treatments to treat sleep disorders. As a field, BSM has actively promoted the dissemination of empirically supported treatments, with the most solid evidence base in support of cognitive-behavioral interventions for insomnia. Although in person delivery of this intervention has the greatest evidence of efficacy, web-based programs have been developed to increase

access to this empirically based treatment intervention. Challenges for this field will be to continue to train and accredit BSM providers, to ensure proper reimbursement for services, and to continue to develop empirical support for BSM techniques in diverse populations.

Cross-References

- [Insomnia](#)
- [Sleep](#)

References and Further Reading

- Aloia, M. S., Arnedt, J. T., Riggs, R. L., Hecht, J., & Borrelli, B. (2004). Clinical management of poor adherence to CPAP: Motivational enhancement. *Behavioral Sleep Medicine*, 2, 205–222.
- Bootzin, R. R., Epstein, D., & Wood, J. M. (1991). Stimulus control instructions. In P. J. Hauri (Ed.), *Case studies in insomnia* (pp. 19–28). New York: Plenum Publishing.
- Coursey, R. D., Frankel, B. L., Gaarder, K. R., & Mott, D. E. (1980). A comparison of relaxation techniques with electrosleep therapy for chronic, sleep-onset insomnia a sleep-EEG study. *Biofeedback and Self-Regulation*, 5, 57–73.
- Garma, L., & Marchand, F. (1994). Non-pharmacological approaches to the treatment of narcolepsy. *Sleep*, 17, S97–S102.
- Harvey, A. G. (2002). A cognitive model of insomnia. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 40, 869–893.
- Harvey, A. G., Tang, N. K., & Browning, L. (2005). Cognitive approaches to insomnia. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 25, 593–611.
- Hasler, B. P., & Germain, A. (2009). Correlates and treatments of nightmares in adults. *Sleep Medicine Clinics*, 4, 507–517.
- Hauri, P. J. (1991). Sleep hygiene, relaxation therapy, and cognitive interventions. In P. J. Hauri (Ed.), *Case studies in insomnia* (pp. 65–84). New York: Plenum Publishing.
- Irwin, M. R., Cole, J. C., & Nicassio, P. M. (2006). Comparative meta-analysis of behavioral interventions for insomnia and their efficacy in middle-aged adults and in older adults 55+ years of age. *Health Psychology*, 25, 3–14.
- Jacobs, G. D., Rosenberg, P. A., Friedman, R., Matheson, J., Peavy, G. M., Domar, A. D., et al. (1993). Multifactor behavioral treatment of chronic sleep-onset insomnia using stimulus control and the relaxation response. A preliminary study. *Behavior Modification*, 17, 498–509.
- Lacks, P., & Morin, C. M. (1992). Recent advances in the assessment and treatment of insomnia. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 60, 586–594.

- Means, M. K., & Edinger, J. D. (2007). Graded exposure therapy for addressing claustrophobic reactions to continuous positive airway pressure: A case series report. *Behavioral Sleep Medicine*, 5, 105–116.
- Moore, B. A., & Krakow, B. (2007). Imagery rehearsal therapy for acute posttraumatic nightmares among combat soldiers in Iraq. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 164, 683–684.
- Morin, C. M., Hauri, P. J., Espie, C. A., Spielman, A. J., Buysse, D. J., & Bootzin, R. R. (1999). Non-pharmacologic treatment of chronic insomnia. An American Academy of sleep medicine review. *Sleep*, 22, 1134–1156.
- Morin, C. M., Bootzin, R. R., Buysse, D. J., Edinger, J. D., Espie, C. A., & Lichstein, K. L. (2006). Psychological and behavioral treatment of insomnia: An update of recent evidence (1998–2004). *Sleep*, 29, 1398–1414.
- Mullington, J., & Broughton, R. (1993). Scheduled naps in the management of daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy-cataplexy. *Sleep*, 16, 444–456.
- Qaseem, A., Kansagara, D., Forcica, M. A., Cooke, M., & Denberg, T. D. (2016). Management of chronic insomnia disorder in adults: A clinical practice guideline from the American College of Physicians. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 165, 125–133.
- Spielman, A. J., Saskin, P., & Thorpy, M. J. (1983). Sleep restriction treatment of insomnia. *Sleep Research*, 12, 286.
- Spielman, A. J., Saskin, P., & Thorpy, M. J. (1987). Treatment of chronic insomnia by restriction of time in bed. *Sleep*, 10, 45–56.

psychotherapy aimed at behavior modification where focus was assigned to an action, and to the understanding of the problem of the person in structure and the function of the action and form called the context. The characteristic of the behavior therapy is a point which the learning theory arrived at after identifying the problem and making the hypothesis through an experimental study.

Eileen, D.G., indicates that there are seven characteristics of behavior modification:

- Assessment and intervention informed by behavioral principles
- Emphasis on identification of current controlling conditions
- Deemphasize on labeling
- Emphasis on observable, countable responses
- Emphasis on positive, not punitive change method
- Emphasis on measurement of effects
- Rejection of special causative factors related to “problematic” behavior

Description

History

When learning a theory and its techniques, it is important to understand the history of behavior therapy because it is in behavior therapy where various psychological studies and knowledge of the clinical field were interlaced. It is difficult to express it by a word or single thought and theory.

The origin of behavior therapy dates back to behaviorism in the 1920s whose “heart” was on objectivity and scientific analyzes. Watson, J.B., has already applied the principle of respondent conditioning of Pavlov, I., to behavior disorder those days. In the early 1950s, Skinner, B.F., in the USA treated mental patients with operant conditioning and had already used the term behavior therapy. At the same time, Wolpe, J., in South Africa developed a technique called systematic desensitization from a study of neurosis and its cure. In the UK, Eysenk, H.J., performed a case study on neurosis and behavioral disorder using the techniques of experimental psychology. These knowledge and methodologies whose methods and objects are different were integrated

Behavioral Therapy

Misuzu Nakashima

Hizen Psychiatric Center, Saga, Japan

Synonyms

[Behavior modification](#)

Definition

The term behavior therapy was suggested for the first time as the treatment concept that unified all behavior modification of whose foundation was an experiment based on a learning theory by Eysenk, H.J., in 1959. Plural studies and theories were accumulated, and behavior therapy expanded to a treatment theory, technique, and its coverage afterward. The definition of behavior therapy has become largely extended. Behavior therapy is

to encompass the basic foundations of behavior therapy in the 1950s. Also, applied behavior analysis and neobehavioristic mediational S-R theory which were the representative theories of behavior therapy were also developed by this time. In addition, based on these theories, the techniques such as operant reinforcement, token economy, systematic desensitization method, and flooding were developed. There were only a few theories that could be compared with the theories and the resulting theory and technique of behavior therapy was clear and strong. In the early days, behavior therapy emphasized to put foundations on objectivity and in the scientific theory, and it accomplished remarkable development. Social learning theory was proposed after this, and the current cognitive-behavioral therapy led it. Most of neobehaviorists of that time performed theorization and the inspection through animal experiment, but Bandura, A., brought about the social learning theory that could explain the learning and the modification of social behavior among human beings. By this theory, he suggested observational learning and technique called modeling where there was more focus on cognition than was given the past learning theory. He considered expectation or self-efficacy to be a factor of reinforcement operation in behavior modification. In the 1960s, the rise of criticisms that human cognitive processes cannot be fully grasped through observed data only brought attention to cognition as a factor that effects treatment.

It was during this time that putting together various theories and techniques and every clinical object and purpose to develop a single technique package emerged. Treatment packages became more complicated when techniques were collected from a number of theories. Furthermore, in the USA, Ellis, A., produced rational-emotive therapy, and Beck, S.J., came up with cognitive therapy. They aimed at the intervention on the cognition domain and made remarkable effect on the treatment of patients with depression. It attracted more attention when patients who went through behavior therapy but did not benefit from it showed remarkable change when introduced to cognitive therapy. Both Ellis and Beck started as therapists in the field of psychoanalysis, and they were both influenced

by psychoanalysis, philosophy, behavior psychology, cognitive psychology, and personal construct psychology of Kelly, G.A. They emphasized the importance of the cognition of the patient. Both of them assumed the model that most disorders occur from wrong cognition or wrong process of cognition. Currently, among the models of behavior therapy and the models of the cognitive therapy, there is a difference in positioning of the cognition and action in the treatment. However, researchers and therapists called this using the general term "the cognitive-behavioral therapy," and this has increased popularity worldwide. A lot of these experimental studies are performed and attracted attention as a treatment based on the evidences gathered. In addition, with the increasing social needs, its coverage continues to spread.

Procedure for Treatment

Behavior therapy has many procedures for treatment. I will indicate the basic common features here. The process consists of four parts. The treatment goes on from 1 to 4, but it is necessary to go back to 1 or 2 when therapist gets new data or when treatment is not effective.

1. Assessment: Therapists assess client without labeling or categorizing them as "wimpy" or with "low self-esteem." They concretely collect data about the behavior, thought, feeling, environment, and so on. The goal of intervention is clearly stated between therapist and clients because of the data gathered.
2. Case formulation: Once enough interviews or observations or tests are conducted, the gathered data are analyzed, and relations or patterns are identified. Target behavior (or thought or environment) that has a tendency to change or to affects client's life or has profound influence on other problem is chosen. Case formulation is made with clients and shared.
3. Intervention: Intervention is conducted using appropriate technique.
4. Evaluation: Therapists or/and clients collect quantitative data to examine the effects of intervention. The frequency, magnitude, or duration of behavior, thought, or feeling before and intervention is compared.

Application

Initially, behavior therapy was intended for use in psychiatry or clinical psychology, but it later became useful also for education and other fields such as psychosomatic medicine, physical disease, preventive medicine, public health, and living environment. In the field of psychiatry, behavior therapy is used for the treatment of anxiety disorder (exposure) such as obsessive-compulsive disorder, space phobia and social phobia or the single phobia, and schizophrenia (token economy, Social Skills Training, family behavior therapy). In addition, it is also used in behavior medicine, such as for muscle-contraction headache and hypertensive treatment (biofeedback and various relaxation training) and corpulence (stimulation control, self-control).

Cross-References

- [Applied Behavior Analysis](#)
- [Behavior Change](#)
- [Behavior Modification](#)
- [Behavioral Intervention](#)
- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Behavioral Therapy](#)
- [Classical Conditioning](#)
- [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- [Cognitive Restructuring](#)
- [Operant Conditioning](#)
- [Self-efficacy](#)
- [Systematic Desensitization](#)

References and Readings

- Eysenck, H. J. (1960). *Behavior therapy and the neuroses 1960*. Oxford: The Pergamon Press.
- Eysenck, H. J., & Martin, I. (1987). *Theoretical foundations of behavior therapy*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Gambrill, E. D. (1977). *Behavior modification -handbook of assessment, intervention, and evaluation*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Wilson, G. T., & Frank, C. M. (1982). *Contemporary behavior therapy, conceptual and empirical foundations*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Wolpe, J. (1969). *The practice of behavior therapy*. New York: Pergamon Press.

Beliefs

Chad Barrett

Department of Psychology, University of Colorado, Denver, CO, USA

Synonyms

[Attitudes](#); [Cognitions](#); [Health beliefs](#)

Definition

Beliefs refer to a conviction, or an attitude, that affirms something to be true. Belief involves a mental state of having a particular attitude, stance, or opinion about something. Belief can refer to expectations and assumptions about mundane matters concerning rules in the physical, social, and/or spiritual worlds (e.g., assuming that a chair can support your weight, that it is improper behavior to laugh during a eulogy, or that supernatural beings cause diseases), or they may also refer to existential, ethical, political, philosophical, theological, or scientific matters, among others as well. Many beliefs are the result of past experience (e.g., if I smile when I meet people, then they are more likely to be friendly toward me), cultural influence (e.g., it is wrong to eat pork), and from deliberate and critical reflection. Beliefs are often constructed by observing the behavior of others and by observing the consequences of others' actions. For example, individuals may acquire the belief that seatbelts are not that important if, while growing up, their parents did not wear seatbelts and were never injured in a car accident. Alternatively, if one's parents were seriously injured as a result of not wearing their seatbelt, then one might likely conclude that seatbelts are indeed important. Similarly, beliefs can be transmitted through explicit and implicit instruction from a variety of agents including family, friends, community members, educational and religious institutions, and various forms of media. Further, beliefs are often constructed through a dynamic interaction with other members of the same

culture. Some beliefs may receive greater reinforcement, while others may receive greater discouragement or punishment.

Description

Beliefs can potentially have important influences on individuals, groups, and societies. Cognitive-behavioral theory highlights the importance of beliefs in how they may influence a person's mental and physical health. A variety of unhealthy beliefs have been associated with elements of mental health problems. For example, perfectionist beliefs are often associated with anxiety, depression, and anger. Treatment for many mental health-related problems typically involves identifying and challenging unhealthy beliefs and replacing them with healthier and more adaptive beliefs.

Beliefs can affect people's health-related behaviors which in turn affect their health (Wilkinson et al. 2009). According to the Health Belief Model, people are more likely to engage in health-promoting behaviors if they believe they are susceptible to a certain disease or condition and if they believe that the benefits of engaging in health-promoting behaviors outweigh the challenges to engaging in those behaviors (Rosenstock et al. 1988). Bandura (1977, 1986) suggested that individuals' health-related behaviors are influenced by their beliefs about self-efficacy (i.e., the degree to which people believe they are capable of performing a certain behavior or making health-promoting changes in behavior) and whether they expect the positive benefits to outweigh any negative aspects. According to the Theory of Reasoned Action (Ajzen und Fishbein 1980), health-related behaviors are primarily influenced by a person's intentions to engage in any particular health-related behavior. These intentions are shaped by attitudes and subjective norms. Attitudes are derived from an individual's beliefs about the consequences of certain health-related behaviors. Subjective norms are derived from individuals' beliefs about how important others think they should behave and their motivations to comply with such beliefs. In addition, according to the Theory of Planned Behavior

(Ajzen 1991), persons' intentions to engage in a particular health-related behavior are affected by their beliefs regarding the extent to which various factors may impede or facilitate performing the health-related behavior. Each theory underscores the impact of belief on health-related behaviors.

Health beliefs often include beliefs about illness, treatment, adherence, self-efficacy, locus of control, and perceptions of one's relationship with health-care providers. A recent meta-analysis (Gherman et al. 2011) examined the association between health beliefs related to diabetes and adherence to treatment for diabetes. Beliefs about self-efficacy, perceiving a positive relationship with health-care providers, and beliefs about the personal consequences of treatment adherence strongly predicted greater adherence to treatment for diabetes among patients. The more adherent patients tended to have greater levels of confidence in their ability to follow medical recommendations, and they expected more meaningfully positive consequences from adhering to treatment. They also viewed their relationships with health-care providers as more positive.

People's beliefs can also affect the likelihood that they will seek medical help when needed and engage in preventative behaviors (Fischer und Farina 1995; Godin und Conner 2008). For example, people may be less likely to seek out mental health treatment if they have negative attitudes about mental health services and cultural beliefs that view mental illness as shameful for the individual and the individual's family (Jang et al. 2011). People who have fatalistic views about health (i.e., believe certain health conditions such as cancer cannot be prevented or cured) are less likely to engage in preventative behaviors, seek medical help early, and adhere to treatment recommendations (e.g., Monteros und Gallo 2011). Certain religious beliefs may also influence help-seeking behavior. People who see health providers as "doing God's work" are more likely to seek help and adhere to treatment. People who see a conflict between medical science and their religious beliefs are sometimes less likely to seek early treatment and/or comply with medical recommendations (Exline und Rose 2005; Miller und Kelley 2005).

Sociodemographic variables appear to influence health-related beliefs and behaviors. Generally, people of higher socioeconomic status (SES) typically have more accurate health beliefs and are more likely to engage in healthy behaviors (Wilkinson et al. 2009). This may reflect a variety of the advantages that come with higher SES such as increased access to health care and higher levels of education. Also, compared to men, women tend to report more accurate health beliefs and engage in more health-promoting behaviors and less risky health behaviors. There also appear to be differences between racial and ethnic groups. To summarize the results of one study, European Americans tended to report healthier beliefs and greater medical compliance relative to Asian Americans, Hispanics, and African Americans (Courtenay et al. 2002). These findings may be related to SES and may partly reflect the advantages of higher SES.

Cross-References

- [Attitudes](#)
- [Cognitions](#)
- [Cognitive Factors](#)
- [Cognitive Mediators](#)
- [Health Behaviors](#)
- [Health Risk \(Behavior\)](#)
- [Meaning \(Purpose\)](#)
- [Norms](#)
- [Religion/Spirituality](#)
- [Religious Social Support](#)
- [Religiousness/Religiosity](#)
- [Theory of Reasoned Action](#)

References and Readings

- Ajzen, I. (1991). The theory of planned behavior. *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes*, 50, 179–211.
- Ajzen, I., & Fishbein, M. (1980). *Understanding attitudes and predicting social behavior*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.
- Bandura, A. (1977). Self-efficacy: Toward a unifying theory of behavioral change. *Psychology Review*, 84, 191–215.

- Bandura, A. (1986). *Social foundations of thought and action: A social cognitive theory*. New York: Prentice-Hall.
- Courtenay, W. H., McCreary, D. R., & Merighi, J. R. (2002). Gender and ethnic differences in health beliefs and behaviours. *Journal of Health Psychology*, 7, 219–231.
- Exline, J. J., & Rose, E. (2005). Religious and spiritual struggles. In R. F. Paloutzian & C. L. Park (Eds.), *Handbook of the psychology of religion and spirituality* (pp. 435–459). New York: Guilford.
- Fischer, E., & Farina, A. (1995). Attitudes toward seeking professional psychological help: A shortened form and consideration for research. *Journal of College Student Development*, 36, 368–373.
- Gherman, A., Schnur, J., Montgomery, G., Sassu, R., Veresiu, I., & David, D. (2011). A meta-analysis of health beliefs and diabetes self-care. *The Diabetes Educator*, 37, 392–408.
- Godin, G., & Conner, M. (2008). Intention-behavior relationship based on epidemiologic indices: An application to physical activity. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 22, 180–182.
- Jang, Y., Chiriboga, D. A., Herrera, J. R., Martinez Tyson, D., & Schonfeld, L. (2011). Attitudes toward mental health services in Hispanic older adults: The role of misconceptions and personal beliefs. *Community Mental Health Journal*, 47, 164–170.
- Miller, L., & Kelley, B. S. (2005). Relationships of religiosity and spirituality with mental health and psychopathology. In R. F. Paloutzian & C. L. Park (Eds.), *Handbook of the psychology of religion and spirituality* (pp. 435–459). New York: Guilford.
- Monteros, K. E., & Gallo, L. C. (2011). The relevance of fatalism in the study of Latina's cancer screening behavior: A systematic review of the literature. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 18, 310–318.
- Rosenstock, I. M., Strecher, V. J., & Becker, M. H. (1988). Social learning theory and the health belief model. *Health Education Quarterly*, 15, 175–183.
- Wilkinson, A. V., Vasudevan, V., Honn, S. E., Spitz, M. R., & Chabernain, R. M. (2009). Sociodemographic characteristics, health beliefs, and the accuracy of cancer knowledge. *Journal of Cancer Education*, 24, 58–64.

Beliefs About Stress

- [Stress Mindset](#)

Bender

- [Binge Drinking](#)

Benefit Evaluation in Health Economic Studies

Amiram Gafni¹ and Stephen Birch²

¹Department of Clinical Epidemiology and Biostatistics, Centre for Health Economics and Policy Analysis, McMaster University, Hamilton, ON, Canada

²Clinical Epidemiology and Biostatistics (CHEPA), McMaster University, Hamilton, ON, Canada

Synonyms

Cost-benefit analysis (CBA); Cost-effectiveness analysis (CEA); Cost-utility analysis (CUA); Healthy-years equivalents (HYEs); Quality-adjusted life years (QALYs); Willingness-to-pay (WTP)

Definition

The rationale for economic evaluation of healthcare programs arises from the concepts of scarcity, choice, and opportunity cost. In the presence of scarcity, economic evaluation is about "...ensuring that the *value* of what is gained from an activity outweighs the *value* of what has to be sacrificed" (Williams 1983).

Three techniques have been used for comparisons of consequences (what is gained) and costs (what is sacrificed) in economic evaluations of healthcare interventions: cost-benefit analysis (CBA), cost-effectiveness analysis (CEA), and cost-utility analysis (CUA). This entry describes three outcome/consequences valuation techniques: quality-adjusted life-years (QALYs), Healthy-years equivalents (HYEs), and Willingness-to-pay (WTP). Comments on their appropriateness and validity from an economic perspective are provided.

Description

Economic Evaluation and Implications for Outcome Measurement

Where interest lies in solving resource allocation problems (i.e., *economic* evaluations) it is important that the methods used to measure consequences (what is gained) are consistent with the discipline of *economics*. The most commonly cited goal of economic evaluations is to maximize the health-related well-being of the population (i.e., the gains) from available resources. Thus, the methods used to measure health-related well-being must be consistent with the underlying welfare economic theory on which the analysis is based on. The "welfarist" approach is the one most commonly used. An extra-welfarist approach has been suggested, but there are many issues related to whether there is any "extra" in the extra-welfarist approach (Birch and Donaldson 2003). The requirements of the measurement methods in order that these methods are valid ways of measuring outcomes for use in economic evaluations are briefly described. More details can be found in Gafni and Birch (1995).

The Internal Structure of Preference Formulation

Under the welfarist approach to economics, an individual's preferences are embodied in that individual's utility function. Thus, for a measure of outcome to be consistent with the welfarist approach it must be consistent with a theory of utility. Users can choose between alternative theories based on how they would like individuals to behave (i.e., based on its normative appeal). Alternatively, they might choose to be guided by the approach that individuals are the best judges of their own welfare and hence choose a theory based on its accuracy in measuring the individual's true preferences, irrespective of how they feel about these preferences.

Attitudes Toward Risk

Preferences can be measured under conditions of certainty or uncertainty. When projects are

approved from a societal perspective, it has been suggested that risk to the individual can be ignored and mean values can be used for a measure of outcome, but, health outcomes are intrinsic to individuals and cannot be redistributed among individuals. Hence, social decision-making concerning health outcomes should incorporate individuals' attitudes to risk if it is to reflect individuals' preferences (Ben-Zion and Gafni 1983).

Aggregation of Individual Preferences

Different models exist for aggregating preferences, each of which is based on restrictions imposed on the set of preferences and/or the aggregation rules. The aggregation of individuals' utilities, necessarily involves attaching weights to the utilities of different individuals or groups (i.e., equity considerations are an intrinsic part of any social utility function). Hence, the calculation of a social utility function must reflect the equity criterion adopted in the analysis. If externalities (i.e., the effect of one person's health status on another person's utility) exist, they should be taken into account when constructing the social utility function.

The Meaning of Validity in Outcome Assessment

The basic concepts that are involved in determining the quality of a measurement are validity and reliability. In addition, measures should be tested to determine whether the measurement task is feasible and acceptable (e.g., clarity of the presentation, length of the interview, etc.). The difference between the "classical" psychometric approach and the economic approach is in the way that the validity of an instrument is determined. In economics, the validity of the instrument stems from the validity of the theory, which the instrument is derived from. It is often the case that researchers introduce additional assumptions, to those underlying the utility theory chosen (e.g., to simplify the measurement process). In this case, the validity of these additional assumptions should also be determined.

Quality-Adjusted Life-Years (QALYs)

The most commonly used measure of outcome in economic evaluations (CUA and CEA) is QALYs. QALYs are computed by adjusting each unit of time by a weight that reflects the quality of life in that unit of time and then discount it. By combining aspects of quality and quantity of life the QALY enables comparison of interventions that affect both of these dimensions. Moreover, it allows comparisons of effects on different dimensions of quality of life (e.g., pain versus hearing). In addition, the QALY is intuitively appealing to decision-makers as it can be "thought of as an equivalent number of years in full health – a number of quality adjusted life years" (Weinstein and Stason 1977). It is presumably the lack of intuitive appeal that inhibited the use of the utility function directly (i.e., the meaning of a "util" (the unit of measurement) is not so easily understood by decision-makers). "The policy objective underlying the QALY literature is the maximization of the community's health. An individual's health is measured in terms of QALYs, and the community's health is measured as the sum of QALYs" (Wagstaff 1991).

Although there is much agreement about the structure of the QALY measure (i.e., time durations weighted to reflect their quality of life and discounted), there is no agreement about the methods to be used to measure the weights. Unfortunately, different methods result in different numbers. This implies that the different methods cannot be measuring the same thing. The most commonly used approach is to assume that all individuals are expected utility maximizers (i.e., a theory of choice under uncertainty) and to use the standard gamble (SG) or time trade-off (TTO) approaches to measure these weights directly or indirectly (Drummond et al. 2005). However, for QALYs to represent individuals' preferences for health requires additional conditions (i.e., in addition to those required by expected utility theory) to be satisfied (Gafni and Birch 1995). Many studies have shown that expected utility is descriptively inaccurate and that people violate expected utility in systematic

ways (Starmer 2000). Furthermore, the additional conditions also lack empirical or normative support. Recognizing this fact, there are constant attempts in the literature to redefine QALYs (e.g., Weinstein et al. 2009) or to use other utility theories as the foundation for the QALYs, which result in changing the way in which the weights should be measured (e.g., Bleichrodt and Pinto 2006). Regardless of the recognition of the major problems associated with the QALY measure and some suggestions on how to deal with them, in empirical application it seems that nothing has changed. It might be that the ease of implementation might explain the lack of change. Researchers and practitioners seem to like simple solutions to complex problems (even if they might be wrong).

In terms of the implications for social preferences, as mentioned above, the health-related well-being of the community is calculated by summing individuals' QALY values. This implied the equity assumption that a QALY is a QALY regardless of who gains it and who loses it. This assumption has been widely criticized, and attempts are made to address this issue by developing a social weighing system (e.g., Dolan and Tsuchiya 2006). The fact that the QALY metric is not likely to represent individuals' true preferences implies that a simple aggregation of QALYs is not likely to represent the community preference. A simple example is the case of a community of identical individuals. We need to ask only one individual for her preferences to know the community's preferences. But if the method used to measure the preferences does not represent the individual's true preferences, it cannot represent the community's preferences.

Healthy-Years Equivalent (HYE)

The HYE provides a user-friendly metric that is needed to improve communication as explained above. Unlike QALYs that mean different things to different people (and hence the need to distinguish the HYE from the QALY), the HYE means only one thing – it is a utility-based concept, derived from the individual's utility function by measuring the number of years in full health,

holding other arguments in the utility function constant, that produces the same level of utility to the individual as produced by the potential lifetime health profile following a given intervention (Gafni and Birch 1997). The measurement of HYE requires that individuals be allowed to reveal their true preferences, which is consistent with the welfarist approach. It also seems reasonable when asking the public to assist in the determination of healthcare priorities, to choose measurement techniques that allow the public to reveal their true preferences. If not, why do we bother asking them at all?

Can an algorithm be developed to measure HYE that (a) does not require additional assumptions (i.e., in addition to the assumptions underlying the utility theory chosen) and (b) is feasible to use with the intended subjects (e.g., the number and complexity of questions asked is not too burdensome)? The concept of HYE does not require that an individual subscribe to expected utility theory. Any type of utility theory can be used as a basis for generating algorithms to measure HYE, and the choice of utility theory will determine the method of measurement. The only requirement is that preferences for health profiles are measured under uncertainty. For an individual who maximizes expected utility an algorithm that describes how to measure HYE without the additional assumptions of the QALY model is described in Johannesson (1995). In terms of feasibility of the HYE measure, “the jury is still out.” Measuring HYE is likely to involve greater response burden, mainly in terms of the number of questions being asked. The need to simplify the assessment task (i.e., reduce the number of questions asked to generate HYE scores) is most evident in the case of large decision trees. This is because the number of different potential life-time health profiles is likely to be large. Recently a method was suggested, which uses conjoint analysis that makes it feasible to generate the large number of HYE scores required (Johnson et al. 2009).

Willingness-to-Pay (WTP)

The maximum amount that an individual is willing-to-pay is the measure typically used in

cost-benefit analysis (CBA). WTP is appealing because it has its theoretical foundation in welfare economics and in particular, in the potential Pareto improvement criterion (Drummond et al. 2005). This criterion recognizes that often a policy, resulting in resource allocation, will create gainers and losers in welfare. But if the gainers could fully compensate the losers and remain better off themselves after the change, then society as a whole has benefited. Because compensation does not actually have to occur, it is called “potential” improvement. The measurement of benefit (gains) is the maximum that an individual is willing-to-pay for a good or service. The measurement of cost (losses) is the minimum amount that an individual is willing-to-accept (WTA) as compensation for the loss. A program is worth doing (i.e., cost beneficial) if the total WTP exceeds the total WTA.

Unlike CEA and CUA where the cost and consequences are measured using different units, in CBA the costs and consequences are measured using commensurate (typically monetary) units. This makes it easier to determine if a program is worth implementing or not. WTP is also appealing because it allows intersectoral comparisons, allows trade-offs between health and other goods, can capture externalities, the most sensitive outcome, and can be modified to capture the unique nature of health as a good (Gafni 1997). The main objection to the WTP approach is that using a measure that is heavily influenced by ability to pay (i.e., WTP) will lead to evaluations favoring the rich. However, this objection was never tested empirically. Donaldson et al. (2002) show that the same income-distributional concerns apply to non-monetary valuations of health consequences, to measurement of costs, and to the decision rules of CUA/CEA. Hence, adopting CUA/CEA over CBA cannot be justified on the basis of avoiding distributional considerations.

A WTP instrument typically has two components: A description of the programs (or interventions) to be valued and a payment method to elicit an individual's WTP for the program in question. O'Brien and Gafni (1996) developed a set of questions to help researchers and practitioners to determine how to design a proper WTP instrument for their evaluation.

Examples of different approaches to elicit WTP values can be found in Gafni (1997), Drummond et al. (2005), and Donaldson et al. (2006).

References and Further Readings

- Ben-Zion, U., & Gafni, A. (1983). Evaluation of public investment in health care: Is the risk irrelevant? *Journal of Health Economics*, 2, 161–165.
- Birch, S., & Donaldson, C. (2003). Valuing the benefits and costs of health care programmes: Where's the 'extra' in extra-welfarism? *Social Science & Medicine*, 56, 1121–1133.
- Bleichrodt, H., & Pinto, J. L. (2006). Conceptual foundations for health utility measurement. In A. M. Jones (Ed.), *The Elgar companion to health economics* (pp. 347–358). Cheltenham: Edward Elgar.
- Dolan, P., & Tsuchiya, A. (2006). The elicitation of distributional judgements in the context of economic evaluations. In A. M. Jones (Ed.), *The Elgar companion to health economics* (pp. 382–391). Cheltenham: Edward Elgar.
- Donaldson, C., Birch, S., & Gafni, A. (2002). The distribution problem in economic evaluation: income and the valuation of costs and consequences of health care programmes. *Health Economics*, 11, 55–70.
- Donaldson, C., Mason, H., & Shackley, P. (2006). Contingent valuation in health care. In A. M. Jones (Ed.), *The Elgar companion to health economics* (pp. 392–404). Cheltenham: Edward Elgar.
- Drummond, M. F., Sculpher, M. J., Torrance, G. W., O'Brien, B. J., & Stoddart, G. L. (2005). *Methods for the economic evaluation of health care programmes* (3rd ed.). Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Gafni, A. (1997). Willingness-to-pay in the context of an economic evaluation of healthcare programs: Theory and practice. *The American Journal of Managed Care*, 3(Supplement), S21–S32.
- Gafni, A., & Birch, S. (1995). Preferences for outcomes in economic evaluations: An economic approach to addressing economic problems. *Social Science & Medicine*, 40, 767–776.
- Gafni, A., & Birch, S. (1997). QALYs and HYE: Spotting the differences. *Journal of Health Economics*, 16, 601–608.
- Johannesson, M. (1995). The ranking properties of healthy years equivalents and quality adjusted life years under certainty and uncertainty. *International Journal of Health Technology Assessment in Health Care*, 11, 40–48.
- Johnson, F. R., Hauber, B., & Ozdemir, S. (2009). Using conjoint analysis to estimate healthy years equivalents for acute conditions: An application to vasomotor symptoms. *Value in Health*, 12, 146–152.
- O'Brien, B., & Gafni, A. (1996). When do the 'dollars' make sense? Toward a conceptual framework for contingent valuation studies in health care. *Medical Decision Making*, 16, 288–299.

- Starmer, C. (2000). Developments in non-expected utility theory: A hunt for descriptive theory of choice under uncertainty. *Journal of Economic Literature*, 28, 332–382.
- Wagstaff, A. (1991). QALYs and the equity efficiency trade-off. *Journal of Health Economics*, 10, 21.
- Weinstein, M. C., & Stason, W. B. (1977). Foundations of cost effectiveness analysis for health and medical practices. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 296, 716–721.
- Weinstein, M. C., Torrance, G. W., & McGuire, A. (2009). QALYs: The basics. *Value in Health*, 12(Supplement 1), S5–S9.
- Williams, A. (1983). The economic role of 'health indicators'. In G. Teeling Smith (Ed.), *Measuring the social benefits of medicine* (pp. 63–67). London: Office of Health Economics.

Benefit Finding

Kristen Riley

Department of Psychology, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Synonyms

Adversarial growth; Posttraumatic growth; Stress-related growth

Definition

Benefit finding refers to a reported positive life change resulting from the struggle to cope with a challenging life event such as trauma, illness, or other negative experiences. The positive psychology movement has recently driven a shift toward an emphasis on the positive consequences of negative events. The discovery of benefits by individuals experiencing adversity is well documented and plays a prominent role in theories of cognitive adaptation to threatening circumstances and in emerging literature on posttraumatic growth and psychological thriving. It is highly prevalent, has been studied in a variety of settings, has an association with personality and emotional well-being, and can predict health outcomes months and even years later. Benefit finding enhances emotional and physical adaptation in the face of adversity.

By definition, some view benefit finding as searching for benefits, that is, as a verb (Tennen and Affleck 2009), while others measure it as a form of growth, as a noun. Additionally, benefit finding, the phenomenon of positive life changes that people report following their struggle to cope with negative life experiences, is often also referred to as stress-related growth, adversarial growth, or posttraumatic growth. While some have attempted to define these constructs as separate and distinct, others have used the terms interchangeably, and there is a consensus for the need to more narrowly define these terms for consistency across the field (Park et al. 2009).

Tennen and Affleck (2002) are careful to distinguish benefit finding from other terms as a perception of positive change rather than veridical change. Those who choose to view benefit finding as veridical change have measurement difficulties, as most measures used to assess growth are based on self-report, and therefore are inherently only perceptions of change.

Benefit finding manifests itself in a variety of ways. Individuals often report a newfound appreciation for their strength and resilience. Some benefit from negative experience in a social context, claiming that their relationships are stronger, that they feel more emotionally connected, and that they feel more compassionate or altruistic. Others emphasize developing the ability to recognize the important parts of life, redirecting priorities, and even openness to religion and spirituality. While there is a focus on positive psychological benefits, research suggests that benefit finding may also have a positive impact on physical health (Bower et al. 2008).

Benefit finding has also been conceptualized in myriad ways: as cognitive reappraisal, as a personality characteristic, and even as a coping mechanism. However, there has been an emphasis on the distinction between active efforts to recall benefits as a coping strategy during difficult times, deemed benefit reminding, and benefit finding (i.e., benefit-related cognitions as adaptive beliefs).

Benefit finding and stress-related growth have been studied mainly in the context of health and medical illness. Medical illness often induces feelings of uncertainty, fear, and loss. Growth and benefit finding is also widely reported as a result

of illness. Research has proliferated from early studies on the impact of myocardial infarction to interest in the role of benefit finding and growth in cancer, HIV, lupus, infertility, arthritis, psoriasis, and other health problems. However, growth varies in the context of medical illness due to variation in symptom onset, etiology, threat to life, recovery trajectory, chronicity, permanence of change, and life context. Additional research is required to understand how benefit finding and growth function along these dimensions.

Cross-References

- [Coping](#)
- [Hardiness](#)
- [Optimism](#)
- [Perceived Benefits](#)
- [Positive Psychology](#)
- [Posttraumatic Growth](#)
- [Resilience](#)

References and Readings

- Affleck, G., & Tennen, H. (1996). Construing benefits from adversity: Adaptational significance and dispositional underpinnings. *Journal of Personality*, 64(4), 899–922.
- Bower, J. E., Low, C. A., Moskowitz, J. T., Sepah, S., & Epel, E. (2008). Benefit finding and physical health: Positive psychological changes and enhanced allostaticity. *Social and Personality Psychology Compass*, 2, 223–244.
- Helgeson, V. S., Reynolds, K. A., & Tomich, P. L. (2006). A meta-analytic review of benefit finding and growth. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 74(5), 797–816.
- Joseph, S., & Linley, P. A. (Eds.). (2008). *Trauma, recovery, and growth: Positive psychological perspectives on posttraumatic stress*. Hoboken: Wiley.
- Linley, P. A., & Joseph, S. (2004). Positive change following trauma and adversity: A review. *Journal of Traumatic Stress*, 17(1), 11–21.
- Lopez, S. J., & Snyder, C. R. (Eds.). (2009). *Oxford handbook of positive psychology* (2nd ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Park, C. L., & Helgeson, V. S. (2006). Growth following highly stressful life events: Current status and future directions. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 74(5), 791–796.
- Park, C. L., Lechner, S. C., Antoni, M. H., & Stanton, A. L. (Eds.). (2009). *Medical illness and positive life change: Can crisis lead to personal transformation?* Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Tennen, H., & Affleck, G. (2002). Benefit-finding and benefit-reminding. In C. R. Snyder & S. J. Lopez (Eds.), *Handbook of positive psychology* (pp. 584–597). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Tennen, H., & Affleck, G. (2009). Assessing positive life change: In search of meticulous methods. In C. L. Park, S. C. Lechner, M. H. Antoni, & A. L. Stanton (Eds.), *Medical illness and positive life change: Can crisis lead to personal transformation?* (pp. 31–49). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Benefit-Risk Estimation

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Benefit-risk profile](#); [Benefit-risk ratio](#); [Risk-benefit assessment](#); [Risk-benefit ratio](#)

Definition

The benefit-risk estimate can be determined as follows:

$$\text{Benefit-risk estimate} = \frac{\text{Estimate (probability and degree) of benefit}}{\text{Estimate (probability and degree) of harm}}$$

In addition to the likelihood (probability) of benefit and of harm, the degree of both likely occurrences is important. For a given likelihood of a certain benefit, a 1 in 100 chance of a very mild adverse consequence (event) may be acceptable to a patient, but a 1 in 100 chance of a severe event might not.

The term “estimated” is used rather than calculated since, while a calculation (a division) is performed, the two values involved in the calculation are themselves estimates rather than precise quantitative statements (An analogous argument is used in the entry titled ► [“Sample Size Estimation”](#)). The term “benefit-risk ratio” is commonly

seen in the literature, but, following this argument, the term “ratio” can be seen to imply a degree of precision that is not (currently) possible in benefit-risk assessment.

The term “benefit-risk balance” is also meaningful. A favorable benefit-risk balance is one in which the estimate of benefit is sufficiently greater than the estimate of harm to make a decision to proceed with an intervention, and an unfavorable balance is one in which the estimate of benefit is not so. For a given intervention, the benefit-risk balance can differ for individual patients. While two patients may be considered likely to gain similar therapeutic benefit from the intervention, it is possible that concurrent illnesses, genetic susceptibility, and/or other factors present in one of them may increase the likelihood of harm to the point where the balance becomes unfavorable.

Benefit-risk assessments for an intervention are also potentially influenced by the availability of subsequent interventions. A new intervention may offer additional therapeutic benefit while maintaining a given level of safety. This would lessen the relative benefit-risk profile of the older intervention. The same would be true for a new intervention offering similar therapeutic benefit but doing so in such a way that the estimate of harm is decreased.

Cross-References

- [Efficacy](#)
- [Sample Size Estimation](#)

Benefit-Risk Profile

- [Benefit-Risk Estimation](#)

Benefit-Risk Ratio

- [Benefit-Risk Estimation](#)

Benefits of Exercise

Klaus Gebel^{1,2} and Ding Ding³

¹School of Education, University of Newcastle, University Drive, Callaghan, NSW, Australia

²City Futures Research Centre, University of New South Wales, Sydney, NSW, Australia

³Graduate School of Public Health/Department of Family Preventive Medicine, San Diego State University/University of California San Diego, San Diego, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Exercise](#); [Motor behavior](#); [Physical activity](#)

Definition

Physical activity is defined as body movement produced by skeletal muscle that results in energy expenditure above resting level and can be accumulated at any time, for example, during work, household, transportation, or during leisure time. Exercise is a subset of leisure-time physical activity that is usually structured, planned, repetitive, and has the purpose of providing recreation, improving or maintaining physical fitness, or enhancing other components of health or well-being (US Department of Health and Human Services 1996). Physical fitness includes cardiorespiratory fitness, muscle strength, body composition, and flexibility (Thompson et al. 2003). Metabolic fitness is also increasingly recognized as an important component of fitness which is closely related to physical activity levels, as well as cardiovascular and musculoskeletal fitness (Hassinen et al. 2010).

Description

Physical activity recommendations were traditionally only focused on vigorous exercise to achieve fitness and health benefits (American College of Sports Medicine 1978). However, in the

following years, emerging evidence from clinical and epidemiological studies showed that moderate-intensity physical activity, such as walking, is also associated with significant health benefits (Dunn et al. 1999). This has led to a shift in the physical activity paradigm from a sole focus on fitness and performance to a broader public health perspective (Haskell 2009). The current physical activity guidelines from major governmental and professional organizations state that health benefits can be gained through moderate physical activity, vigorous exercise, or a combination of both (Haskell et al. 2007; Nelson et al. 2007; US Department of Health and Human Services 2008; World Health Organization 2010).

These recommendations and guidelines are based on numerous epidemiological and clinical studies that have established the health benefits of regular physical activity and exercise (Bassuk and Manson 2009; Lee and Paffenbarger Jr. 1998; Lee et al. 2003; Sesso et al. 2000). There is a broad base of evidence that an active life-style reduces the risk of coronary heart disease, stroke, type 2 diabetes, some cancers, and osteoporosis; improves mental health and lipid profiles; lowers blood pressure; facilitates weight loss and maintenance; and increases longevity (Courneya and Friedenreich 2011; Dishman et al. 2004; Haskell et al. 2007; US Department of Health and Human Services 1996; Bouchard et al. 2012).

There are specific recommendations for physical activity and exercise for different age groups. Children and adolescents (5–17) should engage in moderate- to vigorous-intensity physical activity for 60 min or more per day. On at least 3 days per week, this should include vigorous exercise with muscle- and bone-strengthening activities (US Department of Health and Human Services 2008). Of particular relevance to children and adolescents is that physical activity and exercise promote a healthy growth and positively affect the social (Malina et al. 2004) and cognitive development (Sibley and Etnier 2003).

Adults aged 18–65 should accumulate at least 150 min of moderate physical activity per week, such as walking, on at least five, preferably all, days of the week, or alternatively at least 75 min

of vigorous exercise per week. For more significant health benefits, adults should engage in 300 min of moderate physical activity or 150 min of vigorous exercise per week. Additionally, twice a week, adults should engage in exercise that maintains or increases muscular strength or endurance (Haskell et al. 2007; US Department of Health and Human Services 2008).

The recommendations for older adults (65+ years) are similar to those for adults with additional emphasis on exercise that improves flexibility and balance (Nelson et al. 2007). Of particular relevance to the elderly is that exercise reduces the risk of falls and associated injuries and has therapeutic benefits for various chronic diseases, such as coronary heart disease, hypertension, osteoarthritis, claudication, and chronic pulmonary disease. Furthermore, physical activity and exercise help in the treatment of depression and anxiety disorders, delay cognitive impairment and disability, and improve functional ability, mobility, and overall quality of life in the elderly. Maintaining a sufficient level of mobility is critical to independent living for older adults (Nelson et al. 2007). Therefore, physical activity and exercise can not only add years to life, but life to years.

Cross-References

► Physical Activity and Health

References and Readings

- American College of Sports Medicine. (1978). The recommended quantity and quality of exercise for developing and maintaining fitness in healthy adults. *Medicine & Science in Sports*, 10, VII–X.
- Bassuk, S. S., & Manson, J. E. (2009). Physical activity, fitness, and the prevention of cardiovascular disease. In I.-M. Lee, S. N. Blair, J. Manson, & R. S. Paffenbarger Jr. (Eds.), *Epidemiologic methods in physical activity studies* (pp. 158–177). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Bouchard, C., Blair, S. N., & Haskell, W. (Eds.). (2012). *Physical activity and health* (2nd ed.). Champaign: Human Kinetics.
- Courneya, K., & Friedenreich, C. (Eds.). (2011). *Physical activity and cancer*. Heidelberg: Springer.

- Dishman, R. K., Washburn, R. A., & Heath, G. W. (2004). *Physical activity epidemiology*. Champaign: Human Kinetics.
- Dunn, A. L., Marcus, B. H., Kampert, J. B., Garcia, M. E., Kohl, H. W., III, & Blair, S. N. (1999). Comparison of lifestyle and structured interventions to increase physical activity and cardiorespiratory fitness. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 281, 327–334.
- Haskell, W. (2009). Evolution of physical activity recommendations. In I.-M. Lee, S. N. Blair, J. E. Manson, & R. S. Paffenbarger (Eds.), *Epidemiologic methods in physical activity studies* (pp. 283–301). Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Haskell, W. L., Lee, I.-M., Pate, R. R., Powell, K. E., Blair, S. N., Franklin, B. A., et al. (2007). Physical activity and public health: Updated recommendation for adults from the American College of Sports Medicine and the American Heart Association. *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise*, 39, 1423–1434.
- Hassinen, M., Lakka, T. A., Hakola, L., Savonen, K., Komulainen, P., Litmanen, H., et al. (2010). Cardiorespiratory fitness and metabolic syndrome in older men and women: The dose responses to Exercise Training (DR's EXTRA) study. *Diabetes Care*, 33, 1655–1657.
- Lee, I.-M., & Paffenbarger, R. S., Jr. (1998). Physical activity and stroke incidence: The Harvard Alumni Health Study. *Stroke*, 29, 2049–2054.
- Lee, I.-M., Sesso, H. D., Oguma, Y., & Paffenbarger, R. S., Jr. (2003). Relative intensity of physical activity and risk of coronary heart disease. *Circulation*, 107, 1110–1116.
- Malina, R., Bouchard, C., & Bar-Or, O. (2004). *Growth, maturation, and physical activity* (2nd ed.). Champaign: Human Kinetics.
- Nelson, M. E., Rejeski, W. J., Blair, S. N., Duncan, P. W., Judge, J. O., King, A. C., et al. (2007). Physical activity and public health in older adults: Recommendation from the American College of Sports Medicine and the American Heart Association. *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise*, 39, 1435–1445.
- Sesso, H. D., Paffenbarger, R. S., Jr., & Lee, I.-M. (2000). Physical activity and coronary heart disease in men: The Harvard Alumni Health Study. *Circulation*, 102, 975–980.
- Sibley, B. A., & Etnier, J. L. (2003). The relationship between physical activity and cognition in children: A meta-analysis. *Pediatric Exercise Science*, 15, 243–256.
- Thompson, P. D., Buchner, D., Pina, I. L., Balady, G. J., Williams, M. A., Marcus, B. H., et al. (2003). Exercise and physical activity in the prevention and treatment of atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease: A statement from the Council on Clinical Cardiology (Subcommittee on Exercise, Rehabilitation, and Prevention) and the Council on Nutrition, Physical Activity, and Metabolism (Subcommittee on Physical Activity). *Circulation*, 107, 3109–3116.
- US Department of Health and Human Services. (1996). *Physical activity and health – A report of the surgeon general*. Atlanta: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.
- US Department of Health and Human Services. (2008). *2008 Physical activity guidelines for Americans*. Washington, DC: US Department of Health and Human Services.
- World Health Organization. (2010). *Global recommendations on physical activity for health*. Geneva: World Health Organization.

Benson, Herbert

Stephanie Ann Hooker
Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Biographical Information

Dr. Herbert Benson



Herbert Benson was born in 1935 in Yonkers, New York. He graduated from Wesleyan University in 1957 with a B.A. in Biology and received his medical degree from the Harvard Medical School in 1961. He is currently the Director Emeritus of the Benson-Henry Institute (BHI) and the Mind/Body Medical Institute Associate Professor of Medicine at Harvard Medical School. In his career, spanning more than 40 years, Benson is considered to be the pioneer of mind/body

medicine and to be one of the first Western physicians to integrate spirituality and healing into medicine (Massachusetts General Hospital 2011a).

Major Accomplishments

Benson recognized that in contrast to the “fight-or-flight response” to stress, there must be an opposite physiological reaction to bring the body back to a state of homeostasis; this he defined as the relaxation response (Benson 1975). This response is identified by marked decreases in respiration rate, metabolism, and heart rate and increases in alpha brain waves. Furthermore, Benson argued that this response could be mentally controlled and induced, similarly to biofeedback responses. Thus, he studied practitioners of Yoga, Zen, and Transcendental Meditation to fully understand this process. Interestingly, he found that individuals who were recently trained in the relaxation response had similar physiological responses during practice to highly trained experts in Yoga or Zen (Benson 1975). Indeed, subsequent studies showed that these responses were not unique to Transcendental Meditation, but could be harnessed in a restful, hypometabolic state and, therefore, can be elicited through activities such as diaphragmatic breathing, knitting, chi gong, prayer, Yoga, jogging, Tai Chi, and progressive muscle relaxation. The key to eliciting the relaxation response is a repetitive thought, prayer, or movement and a casual return to that repetition if an intruding thought enters the mind (Massachusetts General Hospital 2011b). Benson continues to teach and lecture about the beneficial effects of the relaxation response in counteracting stress. The revolutionary book, *The Relaxation Response*, was first published in 1975 and continues to be reprinted and translated into many different languages.

In addition to his work on the relaxation response, Benson advocates mind-body medicine through his work at the Benson-Henry Institute for Mind-Body Medicine at Massachusetts

General Hospital. There, he supports a three-part system for treating patients: (1) pharmaceuticals, (2) surgery and procedures, and (3) “self-care” composed of mind/body interactions like nutrition, relaxation, exercise, and spirituality. He believes that this system is best because many patients are affected by stress-related conditions and need self-care to treat the person as a whole (Massachusetts General Hospital 2011b).

Benson has authored more than 180 scientific publications and 12 books. More than five million copies of his books have been printed and translated into many languages. Many institutions have supported his research, including the National Institutes of Health, The John Templeton Foundation, and the Fetzer Institute. He has received numerous awards, including Fellow for the American College of Cardiology, a Presidential Citation from the American Psychological Association, and four honorary doctorates. Benson continues to lecture widely about mind/body medicine, striving to build awareness of the field and bridge the gap between Eastern and Western medicine.

References and Reading

- Benson, H. (1975). *The relaxation response*. New York: Morrow.
- Benson, H. (1979). *The mind/body effect*. New York: Simon & Schuster.
- Benson, H. (1984). *Beyond the relaxation response*. New York: Times Books.
- Benson, H. (1996). *Timeless healing: The power of biology and belief*. New York: Scribner.
- Benson, H. (2000). *The relaxation response – Updated and expanded* (25th Anniversary ed.). New York: Avon.
- Benson, H., & Proctor, W. (2003). *The breakout principle*. New York: Scribner.
- Benson, H., & Proctor, W. (2010). *Relaxation revolution*. New York: Scribner.
- Benson, H., Stuart, E., & The Staff of the Mind/Body Medical Institute. (1994). *The wellness book*. New York: Carol.
- Casey, A., & Benson, H. (2004). *Mind your heart*. New York: Free Press.
- Casey, A., & Benson, H. (2006). *The Harvard Medical School guide to lowering your blood pressure*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

Massachusetts General Hospital. (2011a). *Dr. Herbert Benson*. Retrieved 15 July 2011, from <http://www.massgeneral.org/bhi/about/benson.aspx>

Massachusetts General Hospital. (2011b). *Benson-Henry Institute for Mind-Body Medicine*. Retrieved 15 July 2011, from <http://www.massgeneral.org/bhi/about/>

Bereavement

Benjamin Hidalgo
Department of Psychiatry, Medical College of
Wisconsin, Milwaukee, WI, USA

Synonyms

Grief; Mourning

Definition

Bereavement is the state of being deprived of something or someone, especially a loved one lost to death. Persons in a state of bereavement experience grief, as a normal emotional reaction to the major loss.

Cross-References

- Caregiver/Caregiving and Stress
- Death, Sudden
- End-of-Life Care
- Grief Counseling
- Grieving

References and Readings

Corless, I., Germino, B. B., & Pittman, M. A. (Eds.). (2003). *Dying, death, and bereavement: A challenge for living* (2nd ed.). New York: Springer.

Dunn, D. S., & Civitello, T. (2009). Grief is many things: Current perspectives on bereavement. *Journal of Social and Clinical Psychology*, 28(7), 937–939.

Hardy-Bougere, M. (2008). Cultural manifestations of grief and bereavement: A clinical perspective. *Journal of Cultural Diversity*, 15(2), 66–69.

Morgan, J. D., Laungani, P., & Palmer, S. (Eds.). (2009). *Death and bereavement around the world* (Reflective essays) (Vol. 5). Amityville: Baywood.

Qualls, S. H., & Kasl-Godley, J. E. (Eds.). (2011). *End-of-life issues, grief, and bereavement: What clinicians need to know*. Hoboken: Wiley.

Stroebe, M. S., Hansson, R. O., Schut, H., Stroebe, W., & Van den Blink, E. (2008). *Handbook of bereavement research and practice: Advances in theory and intervention*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Bereavement Counseling

- Grief Counseling

Bereavement Therapy

- Grief Counseling

Beta Cells

Luigi Meneghini
Diabetes Research Institute, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

Insulin-producing cell

Definition

Beta cells are cells contained within the islets of Langerhans (islets), which specifically produce and secrete insulin into the circulation, in response to a variety of stimuli, most notably blood glucose. Beta cells are part of the endocrine system and are essential in glucose

regulation and homeostasis. They achieve this through a balance with counter regulatory hormones, such as glucagon, which is produced by the beta cell's neighbor in the islet, the alpha cell. When beta cells have difficulty in secreting insulin properly (type 2 diabetes) or are completely nonfunctional (type 1 diabetes), diabetes develops. The beta cells co-secrete with insulin a peptide called amylin, which is thought to also be important in metabolic regulation, by slowing gastric emptying, suppressing glucagon secretion, and increasing satiety. Beta cells can also be stimulated to release insulin by a number of antidiabetic medications such as sulfonylureas, glinides, GLP (glucagon-like peptide)-1 receptor agonists, and DPP (dipeptidyl peptidase)-4 inhibitors. Beta cells can also be used to reverse hyperglycemia when islet cells are isolated from cadaveric donors and transplanted into the liver of patients with type 1 diabetes.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Type 1 Diabetes](#)
- ▶ [Type 2 Diabetes](#)

References and Readings

Joslin, E. P., & Kahn, C. R. (2005). *Joslin's diabetes mellitus* (14th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Bias

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Participation bias](#); [Selection bias](#); [Systematic bias](#)

Definition

Bias is the difference between the true value of a particular quantity and an estimate of the quantity obtained from scientific investigation. Randomization is a process designed to reduce bias as much as possible.

Description

Various influences can introduce error into the assessment of treatment effects: As an example, here systematic bias is discussed. If all of the subjects in one treatment group share a characteristic that is not present in any of the subjects in the other treatment group(s), it is not possible to ascribe differences between the groups to the influence of central interest in the study, i.e., the different treatments received by the groups. Putting all relatively tall subjects in one group and all relatively short subjects in another group would be an example of systematic bias. Another example would be putting all relatively heavy subjects in one group and all relatively less heavy subjects in the other. If the behavioral intervention (treatment) of interest was a putative means of reducing blood pressure, there is a certain degree of biological plausibility that the difference in body weights in the treatment groups could influence the results.

Participation bias (Volunteer bias): Participation bias refers to the differential likelihood of certain individuals accepting invitations to participate in a research investigation (often in a survey) and others not responding or declining to participate.

Recruitment of subjects for participation in various types of experimental methodologies has to acknowledge certain biases. Consider the randomized controlled clinical trial. Subjects are recruited before randomization to treatment groups occurs, and it is the intent that subjects complete their participation in the trial regardless of which treatment they were randomized to. (In the classic double-blind trial, they would not know to which treatment they had been randomized.) In contrast, consider mailed (or electronically mailed) invitations to participate in a research survey. If the survey

addresses a disease that you have, or that close friends or family members have, there is a higher likelihood that you will agree to take part in the research study by answering the questions asked by the survey than there is for healthy subjects who have little knowledge of (and possibly little interest in) the disease or condition of research interest.

Selection bias: Selection bias occurs when study subjects are allowed to select into which treatment group in the study they would like to be placed.

Cross-References

► [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)

Big Five, The

► [Five-Factor Model of Personality](#)

Binge

► [Binge Drinking](#)

Binge Drinking

Brian Borsari^{1,2} and John Hustad³

¹Department of Veterans Affairs Medical Center, Mental Health Service, San Francisco, CA, USA

²Department of Behavioral and Social Sciences, Center for Alcohol and Addiction Studies, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA

³Department of Medicine and Public Health Sciences, Penn State College of Medicine, Hershey, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Alcohol](#); [Bender](#); [Binge](#); [Blood alcohol concentration](#); [College students](#); [Dangerous drinking](#);

[Excessive drinking](#); [Harmful drinking](#); [Heavy episodic drinking](#); [High-risk drinking](#); [Intoxication](#); [Problem drinking](#); [Risky drinking episode](#)

Definition

A widely used and accepted (Courtney and Polich 2009) contemporary definition of the phrase “binge drinking” was published on February 5, 2004, by the NIAAA National Advisory Council. This definition for binge drinking put forth by a special task force assigned the responsibility of defining binge drinking and its differentiations from other patterns of alcohol use states that:

A ‘binge’ is a pattern of drinking alcohol that brings blood alcohol concentration to 0.08 g percent or above. For the typical adult, this pattern corresponds to consuming 5 or more drinks (male), or 4 or more drinks (female) in about 2 h. Binge drinking is clearly dangerous for the drinker and for society (National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism 2004).

This definition was released with the following caveats:

1. A “drink” refers to half an ounce of alcohol (e.g., one 12 oz. beer, one 5 oz. glass of wine, or one 1.5 oz. shot of distilled spirits).
2. Binge drinking is different from “risky drinking” (reaching a peak BAC of 0.05 g percent to 0.08 g percent) and a “bender” (2 or more days of sustained heavy drinking).
3. For some individuals (e.g., older people or people taking other drugs or certain medications), the number of drinks needed to reach a binge-level BAC is lower than the “typical adult.”
4. People with risk factors for the development of alcoholism have increased risk with any level of consumptions.
5. For pregnant women, any drinking presents risk to the fetus.
6. Drinking by persons under the age of 21 is illegal.

Description

Multiple definitions of the term “binge drinking” have existed and been revised overtime. Prior to 1991, a “binge” was often defined as an intense, multi-day or week long period of drinking that often done in a solitary fashion. The purpose of binge drinking was to become intoxicated, and a loss of control was a component of such a binge drinking episode. The binge was often accompanied by significant consequences such as black-outs, injuries, and altercations and the binge often ended in incarceration, alcohol poisoning, and/or inpatient treatment (detoxification). Although a binge was occasionally referred to as a single event, the amounts of alcohol consumed were related to high levels of intoxication and related impairment over more than 1 day. Furthermore, binge drinking episodes, or binges, would often be separated by extended periods of sobriety.

In the United States, the meaning behind the phrase “binge drinking” underwent a drastic change after the term became widely used in the research of college student drinking in the early 1990s. Specifically, Dr. Henry Wechsler of the Harvard School of Public Health started to conduct large-scale surveys of college student alcohol use – the College Alcohol Survey (CAS). The CAS surveyed over 50,000 students at 140 colleges and universities in the United States. The first of these surveys was conducted in 1993, and subsequent surveys were conducted in 1997, 1999, and 2001 (Wechsler and Wuethrich 2002). Originally defined as having 5 drinks per occasion, the definition was later amended to 5 drinks on one occasion for men and 4 drinks on one occasion for women. Furthermore, this definition lacked a time frame during which the drinks were consumed. Through the many research articles published from the CAS, as well as subsequent articles by other researchers that examined the phenomenon, “binge drinking” was conceptualized as the threshold for which alcohol-related harms became significantly more likely for the drinker. Furthermore, students who shared the environment with students engaging in binge

drinking also experienced consequences such as having their sleep and studies disturbed, their property damaged, and even being assaulted. These “secondary effects” were also a source of concern for school administrators, and a commonly cited reason to increase prevention and intervention efforts on college campuses. Dr. Wechsler’s revised definition of the term binge was frequently used outside of research by the media to describe many high-profile alcohol-related fatalities and other related consequences. Thus, the revised definition of binge drinking was integrated into popular terminology.

During the 1990s and early 2000s, there was debate regarding the updated definition of “binge drinking” as Dr. Wechsler’s definition of binge drinking was markedly different than the historical definition of a multiday episode of heavy alcohol use. One concern about Dr. Wechsler’s definition is that it failed to differentiate between individuals who drank to the point of unconsciousness (e.g., BACs of 0.30 g/dL and higher) and individuals who met the binge drinking threshold but reached low levels of intoxication. In addition, the term binge drinking was often used in the media to describe sensational events related to high levels of intoxication. There was some concern that the use of binge drinking to primarily describe excessive levels of consumption would cause some individuals to falsely believe that the term binge drinking was synonymous to extreme intoxication. Furthermore, there was debate regarding whether the use of Dr. Wechsler’s definition of binge drinking led to inaccurate beliefs about the actual occurrence of risky alcohol use at a time where a growing body of research indicated that overestimates about the frequency of alcohol use was positively related to increased personal use.

Synonyms of the term binge drinking were introduced to differentiate the historical and the current definition of binge drinking, and these synonyms included heavy episodic drinking, risky drinking episode, harmful drinking, dangerous drinking, excessive drinking, and problem drinking (Carey 2001). In addition, NIAAA attempted to address

limitations regarding Dr. Wechsler's definition of binge drinking by including the level of intoxication as a criterion for whether a binge drinking episode occurred, as well as highlighting the importance of individual differences since some individuals may be at a heightened level of risk depending on their predisposition. Concurrent with the focus on binge drinking in the United States as a single, discrete drinking event researchers and policymakers around the world attempted to determine how many drinks needed to be consumed to constitute a binge drinking episode. Indeed, global cutoffs included a half bottle of spirits or two bottles of wine on one occasion (Sweden); double the daily recommended amount of alcohol – about 2–3 drinks (or 1 or 2 for women) (England); 6 bottles of beer (Finland); and 6 or more units of alcohol (women) and 8 or more units of alcohol for men (United Kingdom). However, to date, there is no worldwide consensus on the amount of alcohol that needs to be consumed to qualify as a binge drinking episode. Currently, “high-risk drinking” as measured by the National Epidemiologic Survey of Alcohol and Related Conditions Survey (NESARC) is defined as 4 drinks on one occasion for women and 5 drinks per occasion for men (Grant et al. 2017).

As with the term “binge drinking,” there is a lack of consensus regarding how many binge drinking episodes one must experience in order to be classified as a “binge drinker.” Researchers have used time frames to capture binge drinking episodes that ranged from the past week to the past year. Overall, a 6-month time frame has been determined to be most informative in linking binge drinking to alcohol-related consequences. Dr. Wechsler and colleagues further differentiated between binge drinkers (one or two binge drinking episodes in the past 2 weeks) and frequent binge drinkers (two or more binge episodes in the past 2 weeks). However, this definition has not been universally accepted.

Because no stable definition of the term binge drinking or binge drinker exists, care must be taken to clearly define binge drinking when interpreting or disseminating research findings, especially when including different studies. As the definition of binge drinking has been clarified (defined in most studies as five or more drinks on

one occasion for men and women) since 1991, research has implemented the construct into interviews and surveys with a variety of populations. That said, it is possible to identify some trends in the literature on binge drinking. Binge drinking typically peaks in adolescence and then declines as people get older, with the lowest rates found in individuals over 65 years old. Binge drinking is the most common style of drinking among adolescents, with over 90% of the alcohol consumed by high school students being imbibed while binge drinking. This is of concern as establishing this pattern of alcohol use early in life may lead to continued binge drinking throughout the lifespan, as well as increase the risk for developing alcohol dependence. Research with adolescents and adults consistently indicates that binge drinking is related to injuries, violence, driving while intoxicated, unsafe sexual practices, and death. In addition, binge drinking in pregnant women can cause significant danger to the fetus such as fetal alcohol spectrum disorders. In the elderly, preliminary evidence suggests that binge drinking may be associated with the onset of dementia. The association of binge drinking with the concurrent use of other substances, such as tobacco, is also a public health concern.

Regarding gender differences in binge drinking, men continue to binge drink more than women, accounting for as many as 81% of adult binge drinking episodes. Recent data comparing national surveys on alcohol use from 2001–2002 to 2012–2013 found increased weekly binge drinking, especially for women (Grant et al. 2017).

Given the health implications, binge drinking has been the target of a variety of prevention and intervention efforts. In the college setting, the social norms marketing campaigns (SNM) became a widespread approach, with mixed results. In college students and other populations, individual brief motivational interventions (BMIs) have been administered in a wide variety of contexts, formats, and settings, and research indicates a consistent small to moderate effect on decreasing the frequency of binge drinking and related consequences. Interventions administered via the Internet have also demonstrated efficacy with college

students and adults, and new approaches to screening and intervention through the web continue to be developed.

Cross-references

- ▶ Alcohol Abuse and Dependence
- ▶ Alcohol Consumption
- ▶ Cultural and Ethnic Differences
- ▶ Elderly
- ▶ eHealth and Behavioral Intervention Technologies
- ▶ Gender Differences
- ▶ Prevention: Primary, Secondary, Tertiary
- ▶ Motivational Interviewing

References and Further Readings

- Alcohol: Problems and Solutions site, maintained by Dr. David Hanson. Retrieved from <http://www2.potsdam.edu/hansondj/index.html>.
- Carey, K. B. (2001). Understanding binge drinking: Introduction to the special issue. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors*, 15, 283–286.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2013). Percentage of adults aged 18 and over who had five or more drinks in 1 day at least once in the past year: United States; 1997–June 2013. Hyattsville: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.
- Courtney, K. E., & Polich, J. (2009). Binge drinking in young adults: Data, definitions, and determinants. *Psychological Bulletin*, 135(1), 142–156. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0014414>.
- Dr. Wechsler's College Alcohol Survey website. Retrieved from <http://www.hsph.harvard.edu/cas/About/index.html>.
- Grant, B. F., Chou, S. P., Saha, T. D., Pickering, R. P., Kerridge, B. T., Ruan, W. J., ... & Hasin, D. S. (2017). Prevalence of 12-month alcohol use, high-risk drinking, and DSM-IV alcohol use disorder in the United States, 2001–2002 to 2012–2013: Results from the National Epidemiologic Survey on alcohol and related conditions. *JAMA Psychiatry*, 74, 911.
- Herring, R., Berridge, V., & Thom, B. (2008). Binge drinking: An exploration of a confused concept. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 62, 476–479.
- National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. (2004). NIAAA council approves definition of binge drinking. *NIAAA Newsletter*, 3, 3.
- The National Institute of Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism website. Retrieved from <https://www.niaaa.nih.gov/alcohol-health/overview-alcohol-consumption/mode-rate-binge-drinking>.

The Nemours Center for Children's Health Media's website addressing binge drinking in adolescents: <http://kidshealth.org/en/teens/binge-drink.html>.

Wechsler, H., & Wuethrich, B. (2002). *Dying to drink: Confronting binge drinking on college campuses*. Emmaus: Rodale.

Binge Eating

Simon Sherry¹ and Skye Fitzpatrick²

¹Department of Psychology, Dalhousie University, Halifax, NS, Canada

²Department of Psychology, Ryerson University, Toronto, ON, Canada

Definition

Binge eating involves rapidly eating a very large amount of food in a relatively short period of time. Other key characteristics of binge eating include feeling out of control when eating, eating until uncomfortably full, eating apart from others, eating in the absence of hunger, and marked distress regarding overeating. Binge eating is distinguishable from other symptoms of disordered eating. Bulimia nervosa, for example, is a broader pattern of disordered eating including not only binge eating but also compensatory behaviors (e.g., dieting, purging, or exercising to avoid weight gain) and excessive concerns over body size, shape, and weight.

Description

Binge eating is usually conceptualized with reference to either a dimensional framework (with binge eating understood as lying along a continuum of severity ranging from mild to severe) or a categorical framework (with individuals suffering from severe binge eating understood as belonging to a qualitatively discrete diagnostic category). Binge Eating Disorder is a provisional diagnostic criteria set provided for further study in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (American Psychiatric Association 2000). Binge

Eating Disorder generally appears to represent a reliable and a valid diagnostic category. Subdiagnostic symptoms of binge eating are also important, as such symptoms negatively impact health and functioning and may herald the occurrence of more severe symptoms of disordered eating.

Epidemiological data suggest binge eating is a common and an impairing problem that most frequently occurs in wealthy, industrialized nations. The onset of binge eating is usually in late adolescence or in young adulthood. With a female-to-male ratio of 3-to-2, binge eating is the least gender-specific form of disordered eating. The prevalence of Binge Eating Disorder ranges from 1% to 4% in samples of community members and from 15% to 50% in samples from weight-control programs. An estimated 8% of individuals who are obese have Binge Eating Disorder. Binge eating is tied to health problems such as obesity, diabetes, and gastrointestinal dysfunction. Moreover, psychiatric difficulties and binge eating frequently co-occur, with mood, anxiety, substance use, and personality problems often accompanying binge eating. Binge eating is also associated with functional impairment in social, personal, familial, and occupational roles.

Several putative factors are involved in the onset and the maintenance of binge eating. Both personality traits (such as perfectionism) and Personality Disorders (such as Borderline Personality Disorder) are risk factors for binge eating. Negative affect is also implicated in binge eating, with binge eating conceptualized as a way of momentarily escaping negative affect. Evidence suggests unsatisfying interpersonal relationships (e.g., hostile interactions) and other interpersonal problems (e.g., evaluative fears) are related to binge eating. Cognitive biases such as strongly basing self-worth on control over eating are also tied to binge eating, and dietary restraint appears to play a key role in binge eating, with binge eating representing an attempt to compensate for caloric deprivation. Ultimately, no one single factor is responsible for binge eating and a confluence of the above factors appears to trigger and to maintain binge eating.

Binge eating is a treatable problem. Randomized controlled trials indicate cognitive behavioral therapy (Wilson and Fairburn 2007) and interpersonal psychotherapy (Tanofsky-Kraff and Wilfley 2010) are efficacious interventions for binge eating. Cognitive behavioral therapy focuses on establishing behavioral patterns that reduce binge eating (e.g., regular, moderate meals and snacks) and challenging dysfunctional cognitions that maintain binge eating (e.g., irrational cognitive distortions about dieting). Interpersonal psychotherapy focuses on identifying current interpersonal problem areas contributing to binge eating (e.g., marital disputes) and then improving those problem areas. Randomized trials also suggest antidepressants, especially selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, are linked to short-term decreases in binge eating (Bodell and Devlin 2010). Long-term effects of medications on binge eating are unknown. Combining psychotherapy and medication does not appear to result in greater reductions in binge eating.

Cross-References

- [Bulimia](#)
- [Obesity](#)
- [Randomized Controlled Trial](#)

References and Further Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association.
- Bodell, L. P., & Devlin, M. J. (2010). Pharmacotherapy for binge-eating disorder. In C. M. Grilo & J. E. Mitchell (Eds.), *The treatment of eating disorders: A clinical handbook* (pp. 402–413). New York: Guilford Press.
- Tanofsky-Kraff, M., & Wilfley, D. E. (2010). Interpersonal psychotherapy for the treatment of eating disorders. In W. S. Agras (Ed.), *The Oxford handbook of eating disorders* (pp. 348–372). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Wilson, G. T., & Fairburn, C. G. (2007). Treatments for eating disorders. In P. E. Nathan & J. M. Gorman (Eds.), *A guide to treatments that work* (pp. 579–609). New York: Oxford University Press.

Biobehavioral Mechanisms

Catherine Benedict

Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Coral Gables, FL, USA

Synonyms

Biomarkers

Definition

Biobehavioral mechanisms within behavioral medicine refer to the interaction of biological, psychosocial, behavioral, and environmental factors that contribute to health-related outcomes and disease status. Biological processes are believed to mediate the influence of psychosocial, behavioral, and environmental factors on health and disease outcomes.

Description

Research concerned with biobehavioral mechanisms of health and disease has primarily focused on the impact of psychosocial, behavioral, and environmental factors on biological processes of the immune and endocrine systems. These factors can impact biological responses individually and/or synergistically and may include both acute and chronic effects. Psychological distress in response to stressors (i.e., negative life events, both acute and chronic) has been related to alterations in immune and endocrine functioning and much of this work has focused on the effects of stress on immunocompetence and inflammatory responses. Importantly, relationships among relevant biological, psychosocial, behavioral, and environmental factors are often bidirectional and synergistic in nature.

“Biobehavioral mechanism” is a term used to suggest biomarker research linked to psychological, behavioral, and sociocultural factors. Pioneering work first discovered the interrelationship between psychological stress and physiologic

responses of the nervous, endocrine, and immune systems. Among the first researchers to evaluate these relationships were Walter Cannon and Hans Selye. It was Cannon (1939) who first identified the role of the autonomic nervous system (ANS) in the fight-or-flight stress response. Selye (1952, 1975) later demonstrated interactions of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis and the sympathetic nervous system (SNS) that lead to subsequent changes in immune functioning and the lymphoid organs in response to psychological stress. This led to a global immunosuppression model of stress and immunity. Over the years and with advancing technology, increasingly sophisticated methods for evaluating these relationships have been developed and our understanding of the mechanisms by which psychological and behavioral factors influence biological processes and health outcomes has advanced. Psychoneuro-immunology (PNI) has emerged as a field of study that is primarily concerned with interactions between the central nervous system, the endocrine system, and the immune system and the impact of these interactions on health and disease. The HPA axis and the sympathetic-adrenal medullary (SAM) axis are the primary pathways by which these systems interact. Much of this work has been concerned with the systemic effects of psychological stress on the regulatory processes of the HPA and SAM axes and the association between chronic inflammation and acute and/or chronic health conditions. Biomarkers are used to objectively measure (ab)normal biological processes, pathogenic processes, disease progression, and response to treatment or intervention.

The HPA and SAM axes produce glucocorticoid hormones (e.g., cortisol) and catecholamines in response to stress. These neuroendocrine products bind to receptors on a number of immune cells, such as lymphocytes, monocytes, macrophages, and granulocytes, altering cellular activity and immune functioning (e.g., cell trafficking, proliferation, cytokine secretion, antibody production, and cytolytic activity; Padgett and Glaser 2003; Rabin 1999). Cytokines mediate and control inflammatory and immune responses. One of the effects of chronic activation of the stress response is down-regulation of cortisol production and increases in

the release of various pro-inflammatory cytokines such as C-reactive protein (CRP), interleukin-2 (IL-2), interleukin-6 (IL-6), and tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-alpha). The nature and duration of stress (e.g., acute vs. chronic) has been identified as determining factors influencing the degree to which psychological stress leads to alterations in neuroendocrine functioning and immune dysregulation. Although both acute and chronic stress has been related to increased activation of inflammatory responses and alterations in immune function, longer-term or chronic stressors have been shown to have a more substantial impact.

"Biobehavioral mechanisms within behavioral medicine" is also a term that has been used to imply markers of disease activity. Both animal and human models have demonstrated that the interaction of the neuroendocrine and immune systems in response to stress influence a number of health-related outcomes. A lot of the emphasis looking at biobehavioral mechanisms has evaluated the interaction of stress and biomarker activity. Classic studies linking psychological and behavioral factors to biological mechanisms have demonstrated the negative effects of stress on immune functioning. Psychological stress has been shown to exacerbate viral and bacterial pathogenesis, increases susceptibility to viruses, slows wound healing, and alters autoimmune diseases (Black 2003; Cohen et al. 1991; Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 1995; Padgett et al. 1998). Studies have demonstrated that subjects inoculated with a vaccine show poorer immunologic responses during times of stress (e.g., medical students during exams, caregiving for a spouse with dementia and Alzheimer's disease; Glaser et al. 1992, 2000, 2001; Jabaaij et al. 1996; Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 1996; Vedhara et al. 1999) and this relationship has been shown to be dose dependent (Cohen et al. 1991). Furthermore, individuals who show delayed, weaker, or shorter-lived responses to vaccines are more likely to experience clinical illness and longer-lasting infections (Padgett and Glaser 2003). Stress-induced alterations in neuroendocrine and immune responses have also been studied within a number of disease models including insulin resistance and type II diabetes (Black 2003), cardiovascular health (e.g., atherosclerotic

disease and hypertension; Black 2003), cancer (Andersen et al. 1994; Andersen et al. 1998), human immunodeficiency virus (HIV; Antoni et al. 1990; Cruess et al. 2000), and multiple sclerosis (Ackerman et al. 1998).

Psychological stress may also impact biological processes indirectly through related effects on health behaviors. That is, efforts undertaken to manage the demands of stress or cope with an acute or ongoing stressor may lead to unhealthy behavior changes. For example, distressed individuals often have appetite and/or sleep disturbances and are more likely to self-medicate with alcohol and other drugs, including caffeine use and cigarette smoking. Likewise, health behaviors may have a direct effect on biological processes, independent of psychological stress. Immune functioning has been related to objective measures of sleep, nutrition, alcohol intake, and drug use. These factors may contribute independent effects and/or their interaction may lead to additive affects on neuroendocrine and immune functioning. For example, substance abuse has been directly related to immune dysfunction and indirectly through related effects on nutrition. Overall, poor health behaviors may interact with psychological and biological processes in bidirectional ways, contributing to and exacerbating the effects of stress on health and disease.

Cross-References

- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Psychoneuroimmunology](#)

References and Readings

- Ackerman, K. D., Martino, M., Heyman, R., Moyna, N. M., & Rabin, B. S. (1996). Immunologic response to acute psychological stress in MS patients and controls. *Journal of Neuroimmunology*, 68, 85–94.
- Ackerman, K. D., Martino, M., Heyman, R., Moyna, N. M., & Rabin, B. S. (1998). Stressor-induced alteration of cytokine production in multiple sclerosis patients and controls. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 60, 484–491.
- Ader, R., Cohen, N., & Felten, D. (1995). Psychoneuroimmunology: Interactions between the nervous system and the immune system. *Lancet*, 345, 99–103.

- Ader, R., Felten, D. L., & Cohen, N. (2001). *Psychoneuroimmunology* (3rd ed.). San Diego: Academic Press.
- Andersen, B. L., Farrar, W. B., Golden-Kreutz, D., Kutz, L. A., MacCallum, R., Courtney, M. E., et al. (1998). Stress and immune responses after surgical treatment for regional breast cancer. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 90, 30–36.
- Andersen, B. L., Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., & Glaser, R. (1994). A biobehavioral model of cancer stress and disease course. *American Psychologist*, 49(5), 389–404.
- Antoni, M. H., August, S., LaPerriere, A., Baggett, H. L., Klimas, N., Ironson, G., et al. (1990). Psychological and neuroendocrine measures related to functional immune changes in anticipation of HIV-1 serostatus notification. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 52, 496–510.
- Aragona, M., Muscatello, M. R. A., Losi, E., Panetta, S., la Torre, F., Pastura, G., et al. (1996). Lymphocyte number and stress parameter modifications in untreated breast cancer patients with depressive mood and previous life stress. *Journal of Experimental Therapeutics and Oncology*, 1, 354–360.
- Benjamini, E., Coico, R., & Sunshine, G. (2000). *Immunology: A short course* (4th ed.). New York: Wiley-Liss.
- Biondi, M. (2001). Effects of stress on immune functions: An overview. In R. Ader, D. L. Felten, & N. Cohen (Eds.), *Psychoneuroimmunology* (3rd ed., pp. 189–226). San Diego: Academic Press.
- Black, P. H. (2003). The inflammatory response is an integral part of the stress response: Implications for atherosclerosis, insulin resistance, type II diabetes and metabolic syndrome X. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 17, 350–364.
- Cannon, W. B. (1939). *The wisdom of the body*. New York: Norton.
- Cohen, S., Tyrrell, D. A. J., & Smith, A. P. (1991). Psychological stress and susceptibility to the common cold. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 325(9), 606–612.
- Cruess, D. G., Antoni, M. H., McGregor, B. A., Kilbourn, K. M., Boyers, A. E., Alferi, S. M., et al. (2000). Cognitive-behavioral stress management reduces serum cortisol by enhancing benefit finding among women being treated for early stage breast cancer. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 62, 304–308.
- Cruess, S., Antoni, M., Kilbourn, K., Ironson, G., Klimas, N., Fletcher, M. A., et al. (2007). Optimism, distress, and immunologic status in HIV-infected gay men following Hurricane Andrew. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 7, 160–182.
- Glaser, R., Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Bonneau, R. H., Malarkey, W., Kennedy, S., & Hughes, J. (1992). Stress-induced modulation of the immune response to recombinant hepatitis B vaccine. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 54, 22–29.
- Glaser, R., Sheridan, J., Malarkey, W. B., MacCallum, R. C., & Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K. (2000). Chronic stress modulates the immune response to a pneumococcal pneumonia vaccine. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 62, 804–807.
- Glaser, R., MacCallum, R. C., Laskowski, B. F., Malarkey, W. B., Sheridan, J. F., & Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K. (2001). Evidence for a shift in the Th-1 to Th-2 cytokine response associated with chronic stress and aging. *Journal of Gerontology: Medicine Sciences*, 56(8), M477–M482.
- Jabaaij, L., van Hattum, J., Vingerhoets, J. J. M., Oostveen, F. G., Duijvenvoorden, H. J., & Ballieux, R. E. (1996). Modulation of immune response to rDNA hepatitis B vaccination by psychological stress. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 41(2), 129–137.
- Kang, D., Rice, M., Park, N., Turner-Henson, A., & Downs, C. (2010). Stress and inflammation: A biobehavioral approach for nursing research. *Western Journal of Nursing Research*, 32(6), 730–760.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Marucha, P. T., Mercado, A. M., & Glaser, R. (1995). Slowing of wound healing by psychological stress. *The Lancet*, 346, 1194–1196.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Glaser, R., Gravenstein, S., Malarkey, W. B., & Sheridan, J. (1996). Chronic stress alters the immune response to influenza virus vaccine in older adults. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, United States of America*, 93, 3043–3047.
- Padgett, D. A., Sheridan, J. F., Dorne, J., Bernston, G. G., Candelora, J., & Glaser, R. (1998). Social stress and the reactivation of latent herpes simplex virus type 1. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 95, 7231–7235.
- Padgett, D. A., & Glaser, R. (2003). How stress influences the immune response. *TRENDS in Immunology*, 24(8), 444–448.
- Rabin, B. S. (1999). *Stress, immune function, and health: The connection*. New York: Wiley Liss.
- Segerstrom, S. C., & Miller, G. E. (2004). Psychological stress and the human immune system: A meta-analytic study of 30 years of inquiry. *Psychological Bulletin*, 130(4), 601–630.
- Selye, H. (1952). *The story of the adaptation syndrome*. Montreal: Acta.
- Vedhara, K., Cox, N. K., Wilcock, G. K., Perks, P., Hunt, M., Anderson, S., et al. (1999). Chronic stress in elderly carers of dementia patients and antibody response to influenza vaccination. *Lancet*, 353(9153), 627–631.

Biofeedback

Masahiro Hashizume

Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, Faculty of Medicine, Toho University, Ota-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

Biofeedback control; Biofeedback therapy

Definition

Biofeedback denotes the use of electronic methods to amplify or convert imperceptible bodily information and feed this information back to the person concerned in a perceptible form such as light, sound, vibration, numbers, or graphical representation for the purposes of improving health and performance. This feedback can be used in training aimed at developing self-control over physiological functions and autonomic responses that are difficult to treat using conventional methods. This kind of therapy is known as biofeedback therapy or biofeedback control.

Description

Research on biofeedback began around 1960. Biofeedback involves two basic processes – the perception of physiological functions and the control of those functions. The physiological function to be brought under control must be continuously monitored with sufficient sensitivity to detect in real time change, and the change in the physiological measure must be reflected immediately to the person attempting to control the process.

In learning theory terms, biofeedback involves the operant conditioning of neuromuscular and autonomic nervous activity. Bodily reactions such as changes in muscle tone or heart rate are operant behavior that can be controlled through feedback. This control is based on the principle that if a certain reaction results in a reward, and if that response is rewarded every time it occurs, it will occur with increasing frequency. As a form of applied psychophysiology, clinical biofeedback assists persons to alter their own behaviors through systematic feedback of such physiological responses.

Biofeedback therapy can be applied to a wide range of vital reactions, including blood pressure, heart rate, heart rate variability (HRV), skin temperature, skin potential reflex, sweat gland action potential, electrocardiogram (ECG), electrogastrogram, electromyogram (EMG), respiration, and electroencephalogram (EEG). Especially, biofeed back displaying real-time

electroencephalography is also called neurofeedback. Biofeedback therapy methods can be divided into those that seek to directly control bodily reactions associated with a specific condition and those that seek to indirectly control the condition through full body relaxation.

Biofeedback has been applied to many different fields. In medical care, it is used mainly to treat or prevent psychosomatic conditions such as bronchial asthma, hypertension, arrhythmia, tension-type headache, migraine, writer's cramp, and spasmodic torticollis. It is also said to be effective in the field of sports psychology to manage and relax the body and mind of athletes prior to competing, with electromyogram and skin temperature biofeedback being the most frequently used. Biofeedback is also deemed to be effective for post-stroke rehabilitation. The final goal in gaining control over a reaction is to be able to control the reaction with just one's own powers, without using a monitor.

References and Readings

- James, R. E. (1999). *Introduction to quantitative EEG and neurofeedback*. San Diego: Academic Press.
- Pearce, S. (1999). *The practice of behavioural medicine*. Oxford: Oxford Science.
- Schwartz, M. S. (2005). *Biofeedback: A practitioner's guide* (3rd ed.). New York: Guilford Press.

Biofeedback Control

- [Biofeedback](#)

Biofeedback Therapy

- [Biofeedback](#)

Biological Indicators

- [Biomarkers](#)

Biological Markers

► Biomarkers

Biomarkers

Vivek Shetty

Oral and Maxillofacial Surgery, University of California, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Synonyms

Biological indicators; Biological markers

Definition

1. A biomarker is a characteristic that is objectively measured and evaluated as an indicator of normal biological processes, pathogenic processes, or pharmacologic responses to a therapeutic intervention.
2. A biomolecule whose presence, absence, or abnormal concentration in blood, urine, saliva, or other body fluids, and/or tissues indicates normal or diseased processes in the body.

Description

The body's adaptive response to psychological and physical stressors produces detectable changes in multiple biochemical and physiological processes, and potentially, any of these alterations may be used as biomarkers. As measurable characteristics that reflect the biological underpinnings of health and disease, biomarkers are increasingly used to augment self-report measures of stress and to illuminate the interactions between social, environmental, and behavioral factors with health outcomes. The attractiveness of biomarkers in behavioral medicine stems from their potential to reduce the reliability and validity issues inherent to subjective self-report assessments. Of

particular interest are readily obtained, quantifiable and reliable biological measures that reveal existing psychological states and serve as harbingers of future health disorders.

Most biomarkers used in behavioral medicine are selected for their ability to reflect activity in one or more of the three main stress response systems: the sympathetic-adrenal-medullary (SAM) axis, the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis, and the immune system. Activation of the SAM axis is the body's immediate physiological response to acute stressors and the released catecholamines, epinephrine, and norepinephrine are commonly used as biomarkers to reflect SAM axis activity. HPA axis activation is a longer-term hormonal response that starts manifesting 15–20 min following stressor onset. Primary indicators of the HPA axis activation include cortisol, dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA), its sulfated form (DHEA-S), and adrenocorticotropin hormone (ACTH). Crosstalk with the neuroendocrine system also produces alterations in the immune system that vary according to stressor duration. For instance, short-term stressors provoke increases in the levels of the quick-acting, all-purpose immune cells such as the natural killer (NK) cells. Prolonged or chronic stressors produce more robust changes in immune biomarkers, including suppressed activity and proliferation of NK cells, and increases in inflammatory markers such as proinflammatory cytokines (e.g., IL-6, TNF- α) and C-reactive protein (CRP). Alternate expressions of stress-related immunosuppression include slower wound healing and weaker seroconversion rates following vaccination.

Utilized individually or as part of a panel representing the multiple response pathways, biomarkers can be used to identify the risk of developing disease (antecedent biomarkers), screen for subclinical disease (screening biomarkers), recognize overt disease (diagnostic biomarkers), categorize disease severity (staging biomarkers), or predict disease course and response to therapy (prognostic biomarkers). Recognizing that simple, univariate tactics (i.e., use of one biomarker) do not fully address the complex process of adjustment and adaptation to multiple recurring stressors, biobehavioral researchers are

progressively transitioning to more comprehensive, multivariate approaches (i.e., use of multiple biomarkers). An illustrative example is the integration of hormonal mediators of the stress response, cortisol and epinephrine, with blood pressure and waist-hip ratio to operationalize the construct of allostatic load, the cumulative physiological toll exacted by the body's efforts to adapt to life experiences. By using an allostatic load index representing neuroendocrine, immune, metabolic, and cardiovascular system functioning, a variety of studies have demonstrated greater prediction of age-related health and cognitive declines over and beyond traditional methods employed in biopsychosocial investigations.

The intrinsic value of any biomarker derives from its measurement properties and as such, an ideal biomarker should be accurate (i.e., match the actual value of the health construct being measured), have high sensitivity and specificity for the outcome of interest, and explain a reasonable proportion of the outcome, independent of other established predictors. However, the desirable properties of a biomarker can vary with its intended use. Features such as low costs and high sensitivity, specificity, and predictive values are important for a screening biomarker. In contrast, features such as costs, sensitivity, and specificity are less important in prognostic biomarkers because only individuals with disease are tested and they serve as their own controls (i.e., baseline values are compared with follow-up values). The transition from putative biomarker to a known valid biomarker status occurs through a multistep confirmatory process. Although the biomarker literature frequently uses the term "biomarker validation" to describe the authentication process, it is important to distinguish between validation (assay or method validation) and qualification (or clinical validation or evaluation). Method validation refers to the process of assessing the assay or measurement performance characteristics (e.g., accuracy, precision, selectivity, sensitivity, and reproducibility). Biomarker qualification is the more appropriate term for describing the graded, evidentiary process for linking the biomarker with

biological processes and clinical endpoints relevant to the intended application.

On a practical level, a biomarker can have clinical utility only if it can be extracted easily and unobtrusively, is reproducibly obtained in a standardized fashion, and the measurement is readily accessible and easy to interpret by the end-user. These practical considerations drive the concomitant development of robust, low-cost, and portable biosensors that will allow biomarkers to be detected and measured reliably in places as diverse as remote field environments, community hospitals, or even at home. The truncated biosampling-reporting cycle afforded by these point-of-care biosensors will eventually allow a time-sampling protocol that is sensitive to common sources of biomarker variability (e.g., diurnal variation, timing of collection relative to stressor) and enable time-series psychophysiological measurements in naturalistic settings. As advances in behavioral research and biomarker development converge with innovations in biosensing technology and systems biology, one can expect that the ready access to accurate and reliable biomarker information will enable more precise, predictive, and personalized health care.

Cross-References

- [Biobehavioral Mechanisms](#)
- [Salivary Biomarkers](#)

References and Readings

- Atkinson, A. J., Colburn, W. A., DeGruttola, V. G., DeMets, D. L., Downing, G. J., Hoth, D. F., et al. (2001). Biomarkers and surrogate endpoints: Preferred definitions and conceptual framework. *Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, 69(3), 89–95.
- Gruenewald, T. L., Seeman, T. E., Karlamangla, A. S., & Sarkisian, C. A. (2009). Allostatic load and frailty in older adults. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 57(9), 1525–1531.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., McGuire, L., Robles, T. F., & Glaser, R. (2002). Psychoneuroimmunology: Psychological

- influences on immune function and health. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 70(3), 537–547.
- Piazza, J. R., Almeida, D. M., Dmitrieva, N. O., & Klein, L. C. (2010). Frontiers in the use of biomarkers of health in research on stress and aging. *The Journals of Gerontology, Series B: Psychological Sciences and Social Sciences*, 65B(5), 513–525.
- Shetty, V., Zigler, C., Robles, T. F., Elashoff, D., & Yamaguchi, M. (2011). Developmental validation of a point-of-care, salivary α -amylase biosensor. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 36(2), 193–199.
- Singh, I., & Rose, N. (2009). Biomarkers in psychiatry. *Nature*, 460(7252), 202–220.

Biomedical Factors

► Clinical Predictors

Biophysical Converter

► Transducer

Biopsychosocial Model

Eleanor Miles
Department of Psychology, The University of
Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

Definition

The view that illness and health can be best understood as a result of the interaction between physiological, psychological, and sociocultural factors.

Description

The biopsychosocial model, originally advanced by George L. Engel (1977), views disease and

health as the product of physiological, psychological, and sociocultural variables. This viewpoint stands in contrast to the biomedical model, in which disease is viewed in terms of deviation from normal biological functioning, and where the experience and etiology of illness are understood solely in terms of biological factors, such as genetic predispositions or physiological dysfunctions. Engel argued that this model was too narrowly focused, and that a greater emphasis needed to be placed on the role of psychosocial factors.

The idea that psychological and sociocultural factors could have an influence upon illness had already been recognized (in the field of psychosomatic medicine, for example). For example, factors such as negative beliefs about an illness (e.g., helplessness) and avoidance behaviors may act to worsen symptoms, whereas the presence of active coping strategies and social support may have a positive effect on the course of an illness. A key aspect of the biopsychosocial model is the importance it places on the interconnections between the three domains of biological, psychological, and social functioning. For example, psychological factors can both influence biological functioning (e.g., alterations in autonomic nervous system function and hormone production), and can also be influenced by biological functioning (e.g., disease may cause cognitive impairments or contribute to depression and anxiety). The model holds that an illness can be best understood by considering its psychological and sociocultural effects as well as its biological ones, and that the cause and progression of an illness can also be influenced by all three of these factors, not just biological ones. In other words, the biopsychosocial model suggests that both the etiology and the expression or prognosis of illness are best understood as the result of an interaction between biological, psychological, and sociocultural variables.

The biopsychosocial model can help to explain why patients with the same disease or physical pathology may experience their illness, and respond to treatment, in very different ways. In

terms of clinical practice, the model encourages clinicians to consider all relevant psychological and social factors when making a diagnosis, and implies that treatment should address all of these factors rather than just the biological component of illness. More generally, the model has also been influential in encouraging researchers and clinicians to integrate knowledge from different domains in order to better understand illnesses and how they can be treated (see Borrell-Carrio et al. 2004, for further discussion). The field of behavioral medicine can be seen as an application of the principles of the biopsychosocial model to medical practice and research. The recent growth in application of psychological theories to understanding and influencing health behavior (such as the theory of planned behavior) is also a reflection of the biopsychosocial model's influence. Numerous studies have validated this model by showing that psychosocial factors predict onset and progression of cardiac diseases, the common cold, recovery from surgery and cancer prognosis, independent of biomedical and demographic variables, and that psychological interventions may also improve the health outcomes of some of these conditions.

Cross-References

- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Engel, George](#)
- [Sociocultural Differences](#)

References and Further Readings

- Borrell-Carrio, F., Suchman, A. L., & Epstein, R. M. (2004). The biopsychosocial model 25 years later: Principles, practice, and scientific inquiry. *Annals of Family Medicine*, 2(6), 576–582.
- Engel, G. L. (1977). The need for a new medical model: A challenge for biomedicine. *Science*, 196(4286), 129–136.
- Quill, T. E., Frankel, R. M., & McDaniel, S. H. (Eds.). (2004). *The biopsychosocial approach: Past, present and future*. Rochester: University of Rochester Press.
- White, P. (Ed.). (2005). *Biopsychosocial medicine: An integrated approach to understanding illness*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Bipolar Disorder, with Seasonal Pattern

- [Seasonal Affective Disorder](#)

Birth Control

- [Contraception](#)
- [Family Planning](#)

Birth Planning

- [Family Planning](#)

Birth Prevention

- [Family Planning](#)

Birth Weight

Linda C. Baumann¹ and Alyssa Ylinen²
¹School of Nursing, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA
²Allina Health System, St. Paul, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Full term newborn](#); [Low birth weight](#)

Definition

The birth weight of a newborn is an indicator of chance for survival and long-term development and can also reflect the health status of the birth mother. Normal birth weight is classified as babies born between the 10th and 90th percentiles of all babies of the same gestational age. Low birth

weight is a major problem of newborns worldwide. There are three categories of low birth weight: low birth weight (LBW) is less than 2,500 g or about 5.5 lb; very low birth weight (VLBW) is less than 1,500 g; and extremely low birth weight (ELBW) is less than 1,000 g. Low-birth-weight infants are either born small for their gestational age (SGA) or born prematurely. A preterm birth is a gestation of less than 37 weeks and is a major cause of LBW. Small for gestational age births are more common in developing countries.

High birth weight is far less common worldwide but can still have major consequences on the health of both the mother and the infant. High birth weight or large for gestational age (LGA) babies weigh greater than the 90th percentile of all babies of the same gestational age, which for full-term infants is about 4,000–4,500 g. Maternal diabetes is the most common cause of LGA babies. Maternal risks associated with LGA babies include increased vaginal delivery time, increased chance of a cesarean delivery, lacerations of the birth canal, and maternal hemorrhage. The newborn is at risk of problems related to glucose regulation and respiratory distress.

Low-birth-weight infants are at increased risk of mortality and morbidity throughout their lives. As infants, risks include an inability to maintain body temperature, infection, difficulty gaining weight, respiratory distress syndrome, neurological problems, and sudden unexpected infant death. Later in life, they are at risk for poor muscle development, cognitive disabilities, and are more likely to remain below average on height and weight charts.

Demographic, medical, behavioral, and environmental maternal risk factors for having a LBW infant include age <18 or >35, low socioeconomic status, low education level, and ethnicity (African Americans have increased risk of having LBW infants when compared to Latina American and Caucasian mothers). Risk factors include a previous LBW infant and a woman who was herself a LBW infant, infection, placental problems, poor weight gain/poor nutrition, or first or second trimester bleeding. Behavioral risk factors include smoking and use of drugs or alcohol during pregnancy. Environmental risk factors include poverty, maternal stress, and delayed or a lack of prenatal care.

Description

Birth weight is the body weight of a baby at its birth; 5% of births fall outside an average birth weight of 7.7 to 11 pounds.

References and Further Readings

- Bradley, P. F., & Zimmerman, J. (2006). *Pediatric critical care* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Mosby Elsevier.
- Normal birthweight is critical to the future health and development. (2009). Retrieved 2 Aug 2016, from http://www.childinfo.org/low_birthweight_overview.html
- Tausch, H. W., Ballard, R. A., & Gleason, C. A. (2005). *Avery's diseases of the newborn* (8th ed.). Philadelphia: Mosby Elsevier.
- The Children's Hospital of Philadelphia. (2010a). *Large for gestational age*. Retrieved 17 Dec 2010, from <http://www.chop.edu/healthinfo/large-for-gestational-age-lga.html>
- The Children's Hospital of Philadelphia. (2010b). *Low birth weight*. Retrieved 16 Aug 2010, from <http://www.chop.edu/healthinfo/low-birthweight.html>
- Wong, D., Hockenberry, M., Wilson, D., Perry, S., & Lowdermilk, D. (2006). *Maternal child nursing care* (3rd ed.). St Louis: Mosby Elsevier.

Bladder Carcinoma

- [Cancer, Bladder](#)

Blood Alcohol Concentration

- [Binge Drinking](#)

Blood Donation

Christopher France and Janis L. France
Department of Psychology, Ohio University,
Athens, OH, USA

Description

The blood donation process places a unique set of physiological and psychological demands on the

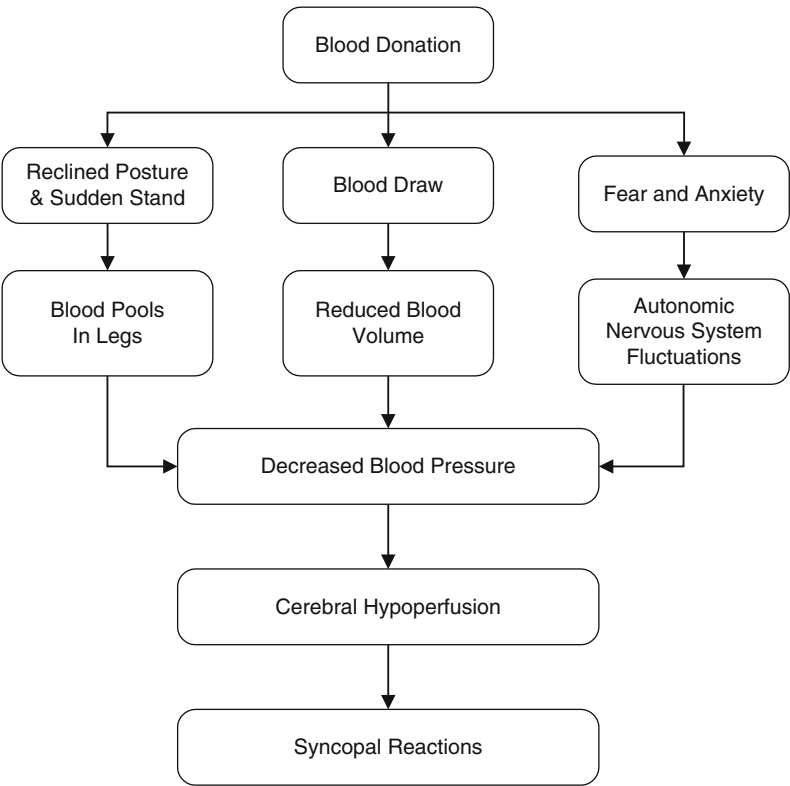
donor. As shown in Fig. 1, these include postural challenge upon standing after a prolonged period of reclined seating, loss of blood volume, and potential fear and anxiety. These factors can combine to produce reductions in cerebral perfusion that, in turn, can result in a range of reactions from mild presyncopal (i.e., pre-faint) symptoms such as dizziness or lightheadedness to periods of syncope (i.e., fainting or loss of consciousness) that can last for a few seconds in mild cases to minutes in more severe cases.

Risk of Syncopal Reactions to Blood Donation

Overall, the risk for presyncopal and syncopal symptoms is low, with a recent study of over six million whole blood donors reporting presyncopal reactions in 2.5% of all donations and loss of consciousness in only 0.1% (Eder et al. 2008a).

However, in a related report, it was noted that 16–17-year-old donors had a presyncopal rate of 8.9% and a loss of consciousness rate of 0.3% (Eder et al. 2008b). These findings are consistent with other reports that presyncopal symptoms occur 2.6–9 times more often among first-time blood donors as compared to repeat donors. And young, female, first-time donors are at particularly high risk with on-site syncopal reactions rates as high as 16.1%. Importantly, additional reactions can occur after a donor leaves the blood collection site, and analysis of reported cases indicate that 10–15% of all syncopal episodes occur off-site (Kamel et al. 2010; Newman 2004). These off-site reactions are particularly problematic as they are more likely to be associated with a fall and an injury to the head. It has been estimated that 1 in 9300 donations results in a health-care visit due to syncopal reactions and that one third of such visits relate to an injury sustained during a fall (Newman 2004).

Blood Donation,
Fig. 1 Potential contributors to syncopal reactions in response to blood donation



Impact of Syncopal Reactions on Blood Donor Retention

Although a number of factors shape individual decisions to donate, retrospective studies of existing blood donors demonstrate that the experience of adverse reactions is a particularly important barrier to retention. For example, in a retrospective survey of over 30,000 blood donors (Thomson et al. 1998), donors' perception of physical well-being during or after donation was the single strongest predictor of intent to donate again. Donors who rated their physical well-being during or after donation as "fair to poor" reported an anticipated attrition rate that was six times higher than those who rated their well-being as "good to excellent." Similarly, a comparison of current versus "lapsed" donors (i.e., previous donors who had not donated within the past 2 years) revealed that a positive donation experience was one of the most important determinants of return behavior (Germain et al. 2007). Similar findings have also been observed in prospective analyses of donor behavior. For example, a study of nearly 90,000 whole blood donors revealed that those who did not experience a presyncopal or syncopal reaction returned to donate at a rate of 64% in the following year as compared to a rate of 40% for donors who experienced a reaction (France et al. 2005).

Reducing the Risk of Syncopal Reactions

A number of intervention strategies have been adapted to the blood donation context to address the specific physiological and psychological demands illustrated in Fig. 1. These include applied muscle tensing techniques to enhance venous return, predonation water consumption to acutely increase total peripheral resistance and resting blood pressure, and distraction techniques to reduce fear and anxiety.

Using Applied Muscle Tension to Attenuate Venous Pooling. Repeated, rhythmic muscle contraction procedures have been used for decades to

treat fainting reactions in individuals with blood and injury/injection phobia. For example, individuals with blood and injury phobia can learn to make voluntary muscular contractions when faced with feared stimuli, and these actions can increase blood flow to the brain and prevent faintness (Foulds et al. 1990). Because this technique has obvious practical implications for preventing blood donation reactions, they have also been attempted with volunteer blood donors. In a series of studies, donors were randomly assigned to either donation-as-usual or an applied muscle tension group that watched a brief predonation video on the use of applied muscle tension during donation (Ditto and France 2006; Ditto et al. 2007; Ditto et al. 2003a, b). On the whole, these studies demonstrated that compared to controls who did not watch the video, donors who learned the muscle tensing technique (1) reported lower levels of presyncopal symptoms, (2) were less likely to have their donation chair reclined by the phlebotomist, and (3) expressed greater confidence that they would donate blood again in the future. Interestingly, while the beneficial effects of muscle tensing have been demonstrated in both males and females (Ditto and France 2006; Ditto et al. 2007; Ditto et al. 2003b), in some studies, these effects have been restricted to female donors (Ditto et al. 2003a). In part, more consistent findings for female donors may be related to the fact that they are, on average, at greater risk for reactions.

Using Water to Compensate for Blood Volume Reductions. Drinking water elicits acute increases in sympathetic nervous system activity and total peripheral resistance that may help maintain blood pressure during donation, and this simple intervention has been shown to significantly delay syncopal reactions to head-up tilt testing (Lu et al. 2003). Although water consumption immediately prior to donation will do little to restore blood volume reductions at the time of donation (due to delays in absorption time), the acute cardiovascular effects of drinking water may help to offset the reductions in blood pressure that can occur with the loss of approximately

500 ml of blood. Consistent with this notion, healthy young blood donors who drank 500 ml of bottled water approximately 30 min prior to donation reported reduced presyncopal symptoms as compared to donors who did not drink water (Hanson and France 2004). Further, there was no relationship between total body water levels at baseline and reported reactions, suggesting that the benefit of predonation water loading arises from acute rather than chronic hydration. The beneficial effects of predonation water consumption were subsequently replicated in a sample of nearly 9000 high school donors, and findings from this study suggested that this intervention was most effective when the donor consumed the water closer to the time of the actual blood draw (Newman et al. 2007).

Using Distraction to Reduce Donation Anxiety.

For many years, patients have been encouraged to divert their attention from stressful medical procedures as a means of reducing pain and distress. Empirical evidence suggests that many diversions such as music, videos, and reading can have significant benefits by reducing patient anxiety. In the blood donation context, donors who engage in coping strategies that involve either thinking about being elsewhere or explicitly trying to divert attention away from the donation procedures experience less distress (Kaloupek, White, & Wong, 1984; Kaloupek and Stoupakis 1985). Conversely, those who do not engage in distraction report a decreased likelihood of making future donations (Kaloupek et al. 1984). More recently, audiovisual distraction was assessed as a potential method of reducing presyncopal reactions in first-time blood donors (Bonk et al. 2001). Results indicated that donors who preferred avoidant coping (e.g., turning away from the sight of the needle) were less likely to experience negative reactions when they watched a 3-D movie while giving blood. Those who preferred vigilant coping (e.g., attending to the donation process) were neither helped nor hurt by watching the movie (Bonk et al. 2001). Combined with other studies that did not observe a similar benefit of distraction (Ferguson et al. 1997), these

findings suggest that individual differences in coping style preferences, opportunities for choice, and perceptions of control may play an important role in reducing anxiety and risk for syncopal reactions.

Conclusion

Although the overall rate of syncopal and pre-syncopal reactions is low, they remain a safety concern and a deterrent to both initial and repeat donation attempts. Even a small reduction in the percentage of first-time donors who experience a syncopal reaction would have a major impact on the blood supply, as a positive initial donation experience can be the difference between a single unit of blood donated and a lifetime contribution of several hundred units. Further, failing to address the experience of such reactions may have a reverberating negative impact on donor recruitment; donors share their stories and in so doing may discourage others in their circle of friends and family from future donations. As described above, a number of strategies may help to reduce the risk for syncopal reactions; however, this is a relatively new area of research and additional studies are needed to address such questions as: (1) Who is most likely to benefit from these interventions? (2) What is the optimum timing for the application of individual strategies relative to the blood draw? (3) What procedures are most practical and effective in the blood donation context? (4) What methods of instruction will maximize donor adherence?

References and Readings

- Bonk, V. A., France, C. R., & Taylor, B. K. (2001). Distraction reduces self-reported physiological reactions to blood donation in novice donors with a blunting coping style. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 63(3), 447–452.
- Ditto, B., & France, C. R. (2006). The effects of applied tension on symptoms in French-speaking blood donors: A randomized trial. *Health Psychology*, 25(3), 433–437.

- Ditto, B., France, C. R., Albert, M., & Byrne, N. (2007). Dismantling applied tension: Mechanisms of a treatment to reduce blood donation-related symptoms. *Transfusion*, 47(12), 2217–2222.
- Ditto, B., France, C. R., Lavoie, P., Roussos, M., & Adler, P. S. (2003a). Reducing reactions to blood donation with applied muscle tension: A randomized controlled trial. *Transfusion*, 43(9), 1269–1275.
- Ditto, B., Wilkins, J. A., France, C. R., Lavoie, P., & Adler, P. S. (2003b). On-site training in applied muscle tension to reduce vasovagal reactions to blood donation. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 26(1), 53–65.
- Eder, A. F., Dy, B. A., Kennedy, J. M., Notari, E. P., IV, Strupp, A., Wissel, M. E., et al. (2008a). The American Red Cross donor hemovigilance program: Complications of blood donation reported in 2006. *Transfusion*, 48(9), 1809–1819.
- Eder, A. F., Hillyer, C. D., Dy, B. A., Notari, E. P., 4th, & Benjamin, R. J. (2008b). Adverse reactions to allogeneic whole blood donation by 16- and 17-year-olds. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 299(19), 2279–2286.
- Fergusson, E., Singh, A. P., & Cunningham-Snell, N. (1997). Stress and blood donation: Effects of music and previous donation experience. *British Journal of Psychology*, 88(2), 277–294.
- Foulds, J., Wiedmann, K., Patterson, J., & Brooks, N. (1990). The effects of muscle tension on cerebral circulation in blood-phobic and non-phobic subjects. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 28(6), 481–486.
- France, C. R., Rader, A., & Carlson, B. (2005). Donors who react may not come back: Analysis of repeat donation as a function of phlebotomist ratings of vasovagal reactions. *Transfusion and Apheresis Science*, 33(2), 99–106.
- Germain, M., Glynn, S. A., Schreiber, G. B., Gélina, S., King, M., Jones, M., et al. (2007). Determinants of return behavior: A comparison of current and lapsed donors. *Transfusion*, 47(10), 1862–1870.
- Hanson, S. A., & France, C. R. (2004). Predonation water ingestion attenuates negative reactions to blood donation. *Transfusion*, 44(6), 924–928.
- Kaloupek, D. G., & Stoupakis, T. (1985). Coping with a stressful medical procedure: Further investigation with volunteer blood donors. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 8(2), 131–148.
- Kaloupek, D. G., White, H., & Wong, M. (1984). Multiple assessment of coping strategies used by volunteer blood donors: Implications for preparatory training. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 7(1), 35–60.
- Kamel, H., Tomasulo, P., Bravo, M., Wiltbank, T., Cusick, R., James, R. C., et al. (2010). Delayed adverse reactions to blood donation. *Transfusion*, 50(3), 556–565.
- Lu, C. C., Diedrich, A., Tung, C. S., Paranjape, S. Y., Harris, P. A., Byrne, D. W., et al. (2003). Water ingestion as prophylaxis against syncope. *Circulation*, 108(21), 2660–2665.
- Newman, B. H. (2004). Blood donor complications after whole-blood donation. *Current Opinion in Hematology*, 11(5), 339–345.
- Newman, B., Tammolillo, E., Andreozzi, C., Joychan, S., Pocedic, J., & Heringhausen, J. (2007). The effect of a 473-mL (16-oz) water drink on vasovagal donor reaction rates in high-school students. *Transfusion*, 47(8), 1524–1533.
- Thomson, R. A., Bethel, J., Lo, A. Y., Ownby, H. E., Nass, C. C., & Williams, A. E. (1998). Retention of ‘safe’ blood donors. The Retrovirus Epidemiology Donor Study. *Transfusion*, 38(4), 359–367.

Blood Glucose

Adriana Carrillo and Carley Gomez-Meade
Department of Pediatrics, Miller School of
Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

Blood sugar

Definition

Blood glucose concentrations are maintained by tight regulation of glucose production and glucose utilization by insulin- and non-insulin-dependent tissues. Blood glucose levels are usually in the range of 70–99 mg/dL during fasting. Postprandial blood glucose levels might rise up to 140 mg/dL transiently. Blood glucose less than 70 mg/dL is considered hypoglycemia. Three main sources of glucose include gut absorption after ingestion of carbohydrates, endogenous glucose production from glycogenolysis (breakdown of glycogen), and gluconeogenesis (formation of glucose from amino acids, lactate, and glycerol). Only the liver and kidney provide the enzymes necessary for these two processes. The brain depends on continuous plasma glucose supply and cannot use free fatty acid as an energy source. Normoglycemia is essential to preserve cognitive functions, and long-term hypoglycemia or

hyperglycemia can result in serious neurological sequela. Tissue-specific transport proteins are responsible for glucose transport from the extracellular to the intracellular space. GLUT-1 and GLUT-3 are glucose transporters that are non-insulin dependent but could be upregulated in prolonged hypoglycemia (Kronenber et al. 2008; Lifshitz 2007).

Hormones that Regulate Glucose

Insulin is the main glucose-lowering hormone and acts by suppressing glucose production and enhancing glucose use by insulin-dependent tissues. Insulin secretion is tightly regulated by many factors including exogenous glucose, hormones, and the autonomic nervous system. Counter-regulatory hormones including glucagon, growth hormone, cortisol, and catecholamines increase glucose concentration by stimulating glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis. Response to hypoglycemia involves a decrease in insulin levels, increase in glucagon levels stimulating glycogenolysis, and secretion of epinephrine that stimulates glucose production from liver and kidney and decreases glucose use. Growth hormone and cortisol stimulate glucose production and limit glucose use. Hormonal response to hypoglycemia occurs in a timely manner having acute lowering of insulin and increases in glucagon within minutes, and epinephrine being a critical hormone in a defect of glucagon. Growth hormone and cortisol are secreted in prolonged hypoglycemia, and their deficiency should be suspected in infants or children with persistent hypoglycemia (Lifshitz 2007).

Blood Glucose Measurements

Blood glucose can be measured in plasma or in whole blood. Glucose concentration is lower in whole blood than in plasma. To convert whole blood glucose to plasma requires multiplication

by 1.15. The majority of laboratories provide reports of plasma glucose. Blood glucose is reported in mg/dl in the United States, but other countries use international units. To convert to IU requires division of mg/dl by 18 and equals mmol/L (Kronenber et al. 2008).

Cross-References

- [Hyperglycemia](#)
- [Hypoglycemia](#)

References and Readings

- Kronenber, H., Melmed, S., Polonsky, K., & Larsen, P. R. (2008). *Williams textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Lifshitz, F. (2007). *Pediatric endocrinology* (5th ed.). New York: Informa Healthcare.

Blood Pressure

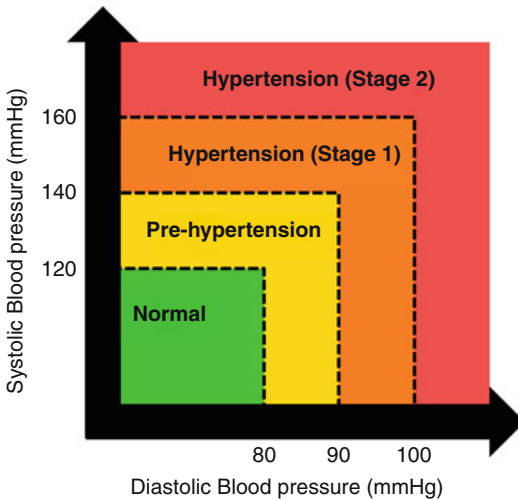
Annie T. Ginty
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The
University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Diastolic blood pressure \(DBP\)](#); [Systolic blood pressure \(SBP\)](#)

Definition

Blood pressure is the hydrostatic pressure exerted by circulating blood on the walls of a blood vessel; it is highest in the aorta and large systemic areas. Blood pressure is recorded by two values: systolic blood pressure, which is measured after the heart contracts, and diastolic blood pressure,



Blood Pressure, Fig. 1 Categories of blood pressure

which is measured before the heart contracts. Systolic blood pressure <120 mmHg and diastolic blood pressure <80 mmHg are considered within normal range. A person is considered to have hypertension when their systolic blood pressure is greater than 140 mmHg or their diastolic blood pressure is greater than 90 mmHg. See chart below for blood pressure classifications. Blood pressure is commonly used by physicians as a way to gauge overall cardiovascular function and health of individuals (Fig. 1).

Cross-References

- [Blood Pressure, Elevated](#)
- [Blood Pressure, Measurement of](#)
- [Diastolic Blood Pressure \(DBP\)](#)
- [Systolic Blood Pressure \(SBP\)](#)

References and Readings

Tortora, G. J., & Grabowski, S. R. (1996). Principles of anatomy and physiology (8th ed.). New York: Harper Collins College Publishers.

Blood Pressure (BP)

- [Blood Pressure Classification](#)

Blood Pressure Classification

Bruce S. Alpert¹ and Marc D. Gellman²

¹Department of Pediatrics, University of Tennessee Health Science Center, Memphis, TN, USA

²Behavioral Medicine Research Center, Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Ambulatory blood pressure measurement \(ABPM\)](#); [Blood pressure \(BP\)](#); [Diastolic blood pressure \(DBP\)](#); [Office blood pressure measurement \(OBPM\)](#); [Systolic blood pressure \(SBP\)](#)

Definition

Blood pressure (BP) as utilized in human research and medical care is the hydrostatic pressure exerted by blood contained within systemic arteries. Blood pressure is usually reported as the combination of two values: systolic (SBP), which is the highest BP value as the heart muscle contracts, and diastolic (DBP), the lowest value of BP that occurs just before the heart begins to contract again. The units used in the United States are mmHg.

Description

Accurate BP Estimation

Intra-arterial catheterization is the only way to measure BP; all noninvasive assessments of BP are

estimates. Traditional auscultatory estimation was described by Korotkoff in 1905 (Korotkoff 1905). It still represents a “gold standard” against which to compare other, usually automated, techniques.

To insure reliable, repeatable resting BP values, the American Heart Association (Pickering et al. 2005) has described the proper subject/patient preparation:

1. Seated comfortably
2. Legs uncrossed
3. Feet flat on the floor
4. Back, elbow, and forearm supported
5. Middle of BP cuff at the level of the heart
6. No talking or activity
7. Wait 5 min before taking a reading

The selection of the cuff is also critical. The upper arm must be measured at the midpoint, with all clothing removed so the cuff is on bare skin. The width of the bladder of the cuff should be 40% of the arm circumference. Cuffs that are too small will result in falsely elevated BP values.

In many areas of clinical care, the above requirements are not performed. In behavioral medicine research, it is critical to “follow the rules” to achieve optimal data.

Because of a lack of attention to detail by medical staff performing manual BP estimates, automated sphygmomanometers have become the method of choice. The only devices that should be used are those that have passed strict validation testing (Association for the Advancement of Medical Instrumentation 2013). Almost all current devices estimate BP by oscillometric technology (Alpert et al. 2014). The cuff serves as the transducer, and the oscillations of the artery are sensed, and proprietary algorithms are developed to estimate SBP and DBP.

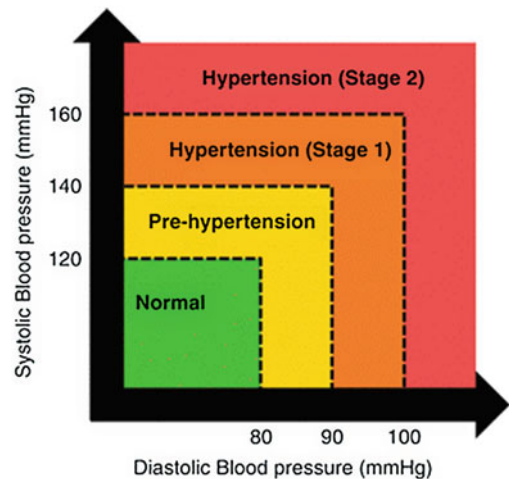
Because of concerns regarding white coat hypertension, the elevation of BP when measured in the physician’s office in the presence of physicians, nurses, etc., a recent technology has been popularized called automated office BP (Whelton et al. 2017). It involves an automated device that can be programmed to wait a few minutes before starting its estimates and will take several BPs,

which are averaged. This has largely replaced manual BP in medical research.

The technique that has the highest correlation to cardiovascular target organ damage is 24-h ambulatory BP measurement (ABPM) (Whelton et al. 2017). The devices can be programmed to cycle and record for 24 h. The standard protocol currently performed takes readings every 20–30 min during waking hours and every 30–60 min during the night. Diaries of awake/asleep times improve data quality. Twenty-four-hour ABPM solves the issues of possible white coat hypertension (above), in which office BP suggests high BP, but during the remainder of the 24 h, the BP is normal. Twenty-four-hour ABPM also has made possible the diagnosis of masked hypertension, in which BP is normal in the physician’s office but elevated during the 24-h monitoring period. The definitions of normal vs. elevated will be in the concluding section of this entry.

Blood Pressure Classification, Table 1 Equivalence of BP values (SBP/DBP)

Clinic	Home	ABPM – day	ABPM – night	ABPM – 24 h
140/90	135/85	135/85	120/70	130/80



Blood Pressure Classification, Fig. 1 Categories of blood pressure

Blood Pressure Classification, Table 2 Blood pressure categories according to ESC/ESH and ACC/AHA

Category	ESC/ESH		ACC/AHA	
	Systolic (mmHg)	Diastolic (mmHg)	Systolic (mmHg)	Diastolic (mmHg)
Optimal	<120	<80		
Normal	120–129	80–84	<120	<80
High normal/elevated	130–139	85–89	120–129	<80
Grade 1/stage 1 hypertension	140–159	90–99	130–139	80–89
Grade 2/stage 2 hypertension	160–179	100–109	≥140	≥90
Grade 3 hypertension	≥180	≥110		

ESC/ESH European Society of Cardiology/European Society of Hypertension (Williams et al. 2018), ACC/AHA American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association (Whelton et al. 2017)

Because of the relative affordability of “home” automated devices, the routine estimation of BP by patients in their own homes has become standard. Usually two readings are done, one in the morning and one in the evening, for 7 days. In addition to measurements done in the patients’ homes, there are public kiosks that have been validated in many pharmacies nationwide.

Clinical Guidelines

Recently, numerous prestigious clinical organizations jointly published guidelines for BP classification ranges (Whelton et al. 2017). With respect to all the scenarios discussed above, the equivalence values are (Table 1):

Note that the values differ widely per the sampling venue and time.

In the previous encyclopedia “► Blood Pressure,” the clinical guidelines shown were different from the current version (Whelton et al. 2017). As shown in Fig. 1, normal BP was at ≤ 120 systolic and ≤ 80 diastolic. The next classification was called prehypertension, with the SBP upper limit of 140 and the DBP upper limit 90. Hypertension stage 1 (less severe) had an upper limit SBP of 160 and an upper limit DBP of 100. Hypertension stage 2 (more severe) had pressures above stage 1 values.

During 2017 and 2018, organizations in the United States and Europe published guidelines for BP classification ranges. The US guidelines were published under the lead of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association (ACC/AHA) (Whelton et al. 2017). The

Blood Pressure Classification, Table 3 Office blood pressure measurement procedure as defined in the ESC/ESH and ACC/AHA guidelines

ESC/ESH	ACC/AHA
Three BP measurements should be recorded, 1–2 min apart, and additional measurements only if the first two readings differ by >10 mmHg. BP is recorded as the average of the last two BP readings	Use an average of ≥ 2 readings obtained on ≥ 2 occasions to estimate the individual’s level of BP

ESC/ESH European Society of Cardiology/European Society of Hypertension (Williams et al. 2018), ACC/AHA American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association (Whelton et al. 2017)

European guidelines were published by the European Society of Cardiology and the European Society of Hypertension (ESC/ESH) (Williams et al. 2018). The new guidelines (Whelton et al. 2017; Williams et al. 2018) are significantly different both from previous guidelines and from each other (Table 2) (Vischer et al. 2019). Based on OBPM, both guidelines defined BP ranges for BP categories which are used to predict a patient’s cardiovascular risk (Table 2) (Vischer et al. 2019). Further, the procedure to obtain OBPM values was re-defined in both guidelines (Table 3) (Vischer et al. 2019). Thus, the two guidelines differ in both the BP ranges for BP categories and the OBPM procedures.

Note that the new term, “high normal/elevated,” has replaced the former term, “borderline.” These

new guidelines will result in almost half of the adult US population being assigned in an abnormal category.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Ambulatory Blood Pressure](#)
- ▶ [Ambulatory Monitoring](#)
- ▶ [Blood Pressure](#)
- ▶ [Blood Pressure, Elevated](#)
- ▶ [Diastolic Blood Pressure \(DBP\)](#)
- ▶ [Hypertension](#)
- ▶ [Systolic Blood Pressure \(SBP\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Alpert, B. S., Quinn, D., & Gallick, D. (2014). Oscillometric blood pressure: A review for clinicians. *Journal of the American Society of Hypertension*, 8, 930–938.
- Association for the Advancement of Medical Instrumentation. (2013). *American National Standard: Non-invasive sphygmomanometers – Part 2: Clinical investigation of automated measurement type ANSI/AAMI/ISO 81060-2:2013*. Arlington: AAMI.
- Korotkoff, N. S. (1905). On the subject of methods of measuring blood pressure. *Bulletin of the Imperial Military Medical Academy*, 11, 365–367.
- Pickering, T. G., Hall, J. E., Appel, L. J., Falkner, B. E., Graves, J., Hill, M. N., Jones, D. W., Kurtz, T., Sheps, S. G., & Roccella, E. J. (2005). Recommendations for blood pressure measurement in humans and experimental animals, part I: Blood pressure measurement in humans. A statement for professionals from the subcommittee of professional and public education of the American Heart Association Council on High Blood Pressure Research. *Circulation*, 111, 697–716.
- Vischer, A. S., Socrates, T., Winterhalder, C., Eckstein, J., Mayr, M., & Burkard, T. (2019). Impact of single-visit American versus European office blood pressure measurement procedure on individual blood pressure classification: A cross-sectional study. *Clinical Research in Cardiology*. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00392-019-01426-w>.
- Whelton, P. K., Carey, R. M., Aronow, W. S., Casey, D. E., Jr., Collins, K. J., Himmelfarb, D. C., DePalma, S. M., Gidding, S., Jamerson, K. A., Jones, D. W., MacLaughlin, E. J., Muntner, P., Oviagele, B., Smith, S. C., Jr., Spencer, C. C., Stafford, R. S., Taler, S. J., Thomas, R. J., Williams, K. A., Sr., Williamson, J. D., & Wright, J. T., Jr. (2017). ACC/AHA/AAPA/ABC/ACPM/AGS/APhA/ASH/ASPC/NMA/PCNA guideline for the prevention, detection, evaluation, and management of high blood pressure in adults: Executive summary. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2017.11.005>.
- Williams, B., Mancia, G., Spiering, W., Agabiti Rosei, E., Azizi, M., Burnier, M., Clement, D. L., Coca, A., de Simone, G., Dominiczak, A., Kahan, T., Mahfoud, F., Redon, J., Ruilope, L., Zanchetti, A., Kerins, M., Kjeldsen, S. E., Kreutz, R., Laurent, S., Lip, G. Y. H., McManus, R., Narkiewicz, K., Ruschitzka, F., Schmieder, R. E., Shlyakhto, E., Tsioufis, C., Aboyans, V., & Desormais, I. (2018). ESC/ESH guidelines for the management of arterial hypertension. *European Heart Journal*, 39(33), 3021–3104. <https://doi.org/10.1093/eurheartj/ehy33>.

Blood Pressure Reactivity or Responses

Brian M. Hughes¹ and Wei Lü²

¹School of Psychology, National University of Ireland, Galway, Galway, Ireland

²Shaanxi Key Laboratory of Behavior and Cognitive Neuroscience, School of Psychology, Shaanxi Normal University, Xi'an, China

Synonyms

[Cardiovascular response/reactivity](#); [Cardiovascular stress responses](#); [Hemodynamic response/reactivity](#); [Hemodynamic stress responses](#)

Definition

A blood pressure *response* is a change in blood pressure that occurs following exposure to a stimulus. In behavioral medicine, the term is reserved for responses to psychological stress. Blood pressure responses can be quantified as the arithmetic difference between blood pressure measured during a true resting state and that measured during exposure to a stressor. Blood pressure *reactivity* refers to an individual's characteristic pattern of blood pressure responses across time.

Description

Basis of the Blood Pressure Response to Stress

Because mental stress is disruptive to a person's resting state, it is associated with visceral neurological changes in brain function caused by the contemplation, initiation, and maintenance of those activities required by the mental stress response. As a consequence, psychological stress can be expected to result in an investment of mental resources that precipitates observable physiological responses.

Specifically, responding to stressors involves immediate psychological processes relating to emotion, working memory, and decision-making, which in turn invoke neurological activity in the frontal cortex, as well as in the amygdala and the bed nuclei of the stria terminalis within the limbic system. This neurological activity establishes outflow beyond the prefrontal cortex via the brainstem and the hypothalamus, which is intrinsic to the person's psychological and behavioral response (Lavallo and Gerin 2003). The hypothalamus is also responsible for moderating a number of the body's metabolic regulatory functions; as such, hypothalamic mediation of psychological responses to stress results in virtually simultaneous effects on autonomic and endocrinal outputs, including shifts in cardiovascular function. Indeed, parameters of cardiovascular function are known to be highly sensitive to mental stress, such that even small changes in mental activity (e.g., the shifting of attention from one visual stimulus to another) will be followed by measurable changes in many cardiovascular functions, including blood pressure.

Reactivity as a Stable Pattern of Responses

To date, a large body of research has examined the nature, extent, and consequences of blood pressure responding to psychological stress. Such research has established that cardiovascular responding is temporally stable within persons (i.e., that a person will tend to exhibit uniform levels of reactivity across tasks, relative to other people) and across time (i.e., that a person's

characteristic level of reactivity in early life will reflect their level of reactivity later in life).

A key feature of the way blood pressure responds to mental stress is that response patterns, while differing across individuals, appear to be stable within individuals. A number of empirical studies have suggested that the magnitude of a person's cardiovascular responses to stress can maintain consistency across very long periods of time, including weeks, years, and even decades (e.g., Hassellund et al. 2010). Further indication of the biologically inherent nature of cardiovascular response patterns can be gleaned from the fact that similar patterns of long-term consistency have been observed across species (De Jonge et al. 1996). An important implication of this phenomenon is that people can be classified with some reliability in terms of their dispositional response tendencies. It is this consistent and dispositional pattern of blood pressure responses that is generally referred to as blood pressure "reactivity."

Accordingly, while some stressors are associated with greater cardiovascular responses than others, people's dispositional patterns of blood pressure reactivity appear to maintain further consistency across situations. A number of studies have suggested that people's characteristic levels of blood pressure responding to mental stress tasks (i.e., whether people are consistently low or high reactors when compared with peers) generalize broadly across task domains, including mental arithmetic, public speaking, and reaction-time testing, albeit with some individual differences.

The majority of studies of blood pressure responses to stress seek to elicit stress responses experimentally using to standardized presentations of contrived mental stressors, such as cognitive stress (e.g., mental arithmetic), social stress (e.g., speech), or emotional stress (e.g., anger recall). Typically, researchers seek to present mental challenges that are novel to participants, in order to avoid the confounding of stress responses with participants' prior experience of performing particular tasks. This raises the question as to

whether such laboratory-based measures validly reflect blood pressure responses to stress that occur in daily life surroundings. Studies that specifically assess laboratory-to-field comparability have confirmed that there is some similarity between artificial research tasks and naturalistic environmental stressors, although little such research has examined the generalizability of cardiovascular variables other than systolic blood pressure, diastolic blood pressure, and heart rate.

Etiological Significance

The usual function of a blood pressure change is to prepare the organism to respond behaviorally to stress by providing nutritional supply to the major organs needed for physical action. However, as pointed out by Cannon (1929) in his description of the fight-or-flight response, such physical readiness is of less relevance when the threats in the environment require predominantly psychological responses rather than predominantly physical ones. As such, it can be said that psychological stress provokes a degree of cardiovascular responding beyond that which is metabolically necessary. It has been demonstrated that the decrement between such elevated cardiovascular responses and metabolic needs is such that even relatively mild mental stress can exert an impact on the cardiovascular system equivalent to that of rigorous physical exercise. Further, the extent of this exaggeration appears to be greater among persons who have higher resting blood pressure (Balanos et al. 2010). The fact that blood pressure responses to stress are disproportionate to physiological demands is believed to contribute to the onset and progression of cardiovascular disease in individuals in whom such responses are particularly elevated (Obrist 1981). This implication of elevated blood pressure responding in the etiology of cardiovascular disease is commonly referred to as the “cardiovascular reactivity hypothesis.”

The reactivity hypothesis offers a number of possible explanations for the centuries-old observation that psychological stress can damage physical health. Several underlying mechanisms have been proposed. Because of their metabolic disproportionality to physical demands, blood pressure responses to psychological stress may

serve to permanently disrupt physiological homeostasis in ways that lead to the gradual re-setting of blood pressure (Obrist 1981). In addition, the sustained eliciting of responses may contribute to cardiac and vascular hypertrophy (Lovallo and Gerin 2003). Elevated levels of blood pressure reactivity may enhance disease risk by increasing serum levels of low-density lipoproteins, while lowering levels of high-density lipoproteins (Raitakari et al. 1997). Further, elevated reactivity may be part of the exaggerated sympathetic responding that leads to increased blood insulin concentrations, which themselves are known to increase hypertension risk (Nazzaro et al. 2002). Finally, elevated reactivity may contribute to atherosclerosis through raising serum concentrations of pro-inflammatory cytokines (Georgiades 2007).

A number of empirical studies have corroborated such interpretations by linking heightened cardiovascular reactivity with future hypertension development (e.g., Carroll et al. 2001), atherosclerosis (e.g., Jennings et al. 2004), increased left ventricular mass (e.g., Murdison et al. 1998), and coronary heart disease morbidity and mortality (e.g., Treiber et al. 2003).

Most research has studied the adverse implications of blood pressure responses that are elevated. However, two important caveats have emerged. Firstly, while consistent elevations in blood pressure can be expected to precipitate adverse outcomes over protracted periods of time, they may be beneficial for health when elicited over the short term in response to acute stress. Previous research has suggested that acute stress can stimulate immune effectiveness and, crucially, that cardiovascular reactivity is positively associated with indices of enhanced immune responding (Phillips et al. 2009). The detrimental cardiovascular impact of sustained elevations in blood pressure tends to be lessened by the fact that responses to stressors reduce over time due to processes of adaptation (Hughes et al. 2011; Kelsey et al. 2000). Adaptation (or habituation) of stress responses refers to degree of response reduction during repeated or sustained stress exposures. Better adaptation can be presumed to confer favorable health outcomes

and is associated with several indices of good psychological health (e.g., low neuroticism, trait rumination, trait dominance, type D personality, high body esteem, social support, extraversion, openness, trait resilience; cf., Hughes et al. in press).

Secondly, blood pressure responses that are unusually *low* may also be detrimental to health. A number of cross-sectional screening studies have found significant associations between low acute responding and markers of poor health, including elevated levels of depression, obesity, post-traumatic stress disorder, and impulsive behavior (Phillips et al. 2013). In addition, blunted stress reactivity has also been linked to poor psychological functioning, such as high type D personality (Kupper et al. 2013) and low agreeableness and openness (Bibbey et al. 2013).

In summary, elevated blood pressure responses to stress may reflect advantageous processes in the short term (as suggested by the association between short-term response and immune strength), so long as such responses are not sustained in the longer term (as implied by associations between elevated reactivity [i.e., sustained responding] and cardiovascular disease end points). Correspondingly, suppressed blood pressure responses may reflect a maladaptive physiological pattern, associated with generally poor health.

Measurement Issues

Blood pressure responses to stress are typically investigated using orthodox measures of systolic and diastolic blood pressure, which collectively represent the impact of circulating blood on the walls of blood vessels. For many decades, these variables, along with heart rate, have comprised the most technically feasible and thus most studied indices of cardiovascular function in behavioral medicine research. Due to the fact that direct arterial assessment of blood pressure would be particularly invasive (and thus stressful), most studies of blood pressure responses to stress have utilized automated sphygmomanometry. Laboratory and field studies usually employ table-top and ambulatory monitors, respectively. However, while much epidemiological data exists

on systolic and diastolic blood pressure and their associated psychosomatic pathways, these variables lack granularity when compared to the multifaceted biodynamics underlying cardiovascular function as a whole, which although more informative are also more difficult to measure. In addition, conventional measurement of blood pressure tends to be noncontinuous and so does not facilitate real-time tracking. Instead, measures are based on episodic readings returned no more frequently than around once every two minutes.

Alternative technological approaches have been developed to enable real-time tracking of cardiovascular function by returning continuous beat-to-beat measurement of systolic and diastolic blood pressure, as well as ready monitoring of a range of hemodynamic variables underlying these parameters. Such underlying variables may include specific dimensions of cardiac function (such as cardiac output, stroke volume, heart rate variability) and vascular function (such as total peripheral resistance, total arterial compliance, and aortic impedance), as well as neurological variables (such as baroreflex sensitivity). Measurement of such variables is facilitated by photoelectric plethysmography, typically via a finger cuff, which is suitably noninvasive (and thus non-stressful) for most psychological research.

Influencing Factors

Blood pressure responding to stressors is sensitive to a range of contextual and environmental cues and contingencies. Among the main categories of factors that have been found to be relevant are task-specific factors (aspects of stressors that influence the degree of cardiovascular impact, such as computational complexity, task feedback, emotional content, personal or social significance), environmental factors (contextual aspects that influence the degree of cardiovascular impact, such as immediate physical environment, time of day, work, or home location), physiological factors (aspects of personal biological function that influence the degree of cardiovascular impact, such as sleep levels, habitual and acute caffeine intake, habitual tobacco use, oral contraception use, body mass index, age), social factors (social or interpersonal variables that influence the degree

of cardiovascular impact, such as social assistance during stressors, audiences during stressors, availability of social support, aspects of personal social network), and person-level psychological factors (psychological or emotional variables that influence the degree of cardiovascular impact, such as depression, anxiety, or other psychiatric symptoms and personality types, subtypes, and traits).

Accumulating evidence of the associations between such variables and blood pressure responses to stress is important in three respects. Firstly, it enables researchers to adequately control extraneous influences on blood pressure responses when conducting studies examining disease-relevant physiological mechanisms. Secondly, it provides insight into the ways in which these variables themselves contribute to cardiovascular disease. For example, associations between particular personality traits and blood pressure reactivity may help explain why these same traits emerge as correlates of disease outcomes in epidemiological research. And thirdly, it frames predictions for future research into the way personality and context influence disease mechanisms mediated by blood pressure responses to stress.

Cross-References

- [Blood Pressure](#)
- [Blood Pressure, Measurement of](#)
- [Cardiovascular Risk Factors](#)
- [Diastolic Blood Pressure \(DBP\)](#)
- [Heart Disease and Cardiovascular Reactivity](#)
- [Physiological Reactivity](#)
- [Psychophysiologic Reactivity](#)
- [Stress Reactivity](#)
- [Stress Responses](#)
- [Systolic Blood Pressure \(SBP\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Balanos, G. M., Phillips, A. C., Frenneaux, M. P., McIntyre, D., Lykidis, C., Griffin, H. S., & Carroll, D. (2010). Metabolically exaggerated cardiac reactions to acute psychological stress: The effects of resting blood pressure status and possible underlying mechanisms. *Biological Psychology*, 85, 104–111.
- Bibbey, A., Carroll, D., Roseboom, T. J., Phillips, A. C., & de Rooij, S. R. (2013). Personality and physiological reactions to acute psychological stress. *International Journal of Psychophysiology*, 90, 28–36.
- Cannon, W. B. (1929). *Bodily changes in pain, hunger, fear, and rage*. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts.
- Carroll, D., Smith, G. D., Shipley, M. J., Steptoe, A., Brunner, E. J., & Marmot, M. G. (2001). Blood pressure reactions to acute psychological stress and future blood pressure status: A 10-year follow-up of men in the Whitehall II study. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 63, 737–743.
- De Jonge, F. H., Bokkers, E. A. M., Schouten, W. G. P., & Helmond, F. A. (1996). Rearing piglets in a poor environment: Developmental aspects of social stress in pigs. *Physiology and Behaviour*, 60, 389–396.
- Georgiades, A. (2007). Hyperreactivity (cardiovascular). In G. Fink (Ed.), *Encyclopedia of stress* (2nd ed., pp. 372–376). Burlington: Academic.
- Hassellund, S. S., Flaa, A., Sandvik, L., Kjeldsen, S. E., & Rostrup, M. (2010). Long-term stability of cardiovascular and catecholamine responses to stress tests: An 18-year follow-up study. *Hypertension*, 55, 131–136.
- Hughes, B. M., Howard, S., James, J. E., & Higgins, N. M. (2011). Individual differences in adaptation of cardiovascular responses to stress. *Biological Psychology*, 86.
- Hughes, B. M., Howard, S., & Lü, W. (in press). Cardiovascular stress-response adaptation: Conceptual basis, empirical findings, and implications for disease processes. *International Journal of Psychophysiology*.
- Jennings, J. R., Kamarck, T. W., Everson-Rose, S. A., Kaplan, G. A., Manuck, S. B., & Salonen, J. T. (2004). Exaggerated blood pressure responses during mental stress are prospectively related to enhanced carotid atherosclerosis in middle-aged Finnish men. *Circulation*, 110, 2198–2203.
- Kelsey, R. M., Blascovich, J., Leitten, C. L., Schneider, T. S., Tomaka, J., & Wiens, S. (2000). Cardiovascular reactivity and adaptation to recurrent psychological stress: The moderating effects of evaluative observation. *Psychophysiology*, 37, 748–756.
- Kupper, N., Denollet, J., Widdershoven, J., & Kop, W. J. (2013). Type D personality is associated with low cardiovascular reactivity to acute mental stress in heart failure patients. *International Journal of Psychophysiology*, 90, 44–49.
- Lovallo, W. R., & Gerin, W. (2003). Psychophysiological reactivity: Mechanisms and pathways to cardiovascular disease. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65, 36–45.
- Murdison, K. A., Treiber, F. A., Mensah, G., Davis, H., Thompson, W., & Strong, W. B. (1998). Prediction of left ventricular mass in youth with family histories of essential hypertension. *American Journal of the Medical Sciences*, 315, 118–123.
- Nazzaro, P., Ciancio, L., Vulpis, V., Triggiani, R., Schirosi, G., & Pirrelli, A. (2002). Stress-induced hemodynamic responses are associated with insulin resistance in mild

hypertensives. *American Journal of Hypertension*, 15, 865–871.

Obrist, P. (1981). *Cardiovascular psychophysiology: A perspective*. New York: Plenum.

Phillips, A. C., Carroll, D., Burns, V. E., & Drayson, M. (2009). Cardiovascular activity and the antibody response to vaccination. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 67, 37–43.

Phillips, A. C., Ginty, A. T., & Hughes, B. M. (2013). The other side of the coin: Blunted cardiovascular and cortisol reactivity are associated with negative health outcomes. *International Journal of Psychophysiology*, 90, 1–7.

Raitakari, O. T., Pitkänen, O.-P., Lehtimäki, T., Lahdenperä, S., Iida, H., Ylä-Herttua, S., Luoma, J., Mattila, K., Nikkari, T., Taskinen, M.-R., Viikari, J. S. A., & Knuuti, J. (1997). In vivo low density lipoprotein oxidation relates to coronary reactivity in young men. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 30, 97–102.

Treiber, F. A., Kamarck, T., Schneiderman, N., Sheffield, D., Kapuku, G., & Taylor, T. (2003). Cardiovascular reactivity and development of preclinical and clinical disease states. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65, 46–62.

Definition

Hypertension (elevated blood pressure) refers to sustained high blood pressure in the arteries. A systolic blood pressure greater than 140 mmHg or a diastolic blood pressure higher than 90 mmHg (millimeters of mercury) is classified as hypertensive. The elevated arterial pressure requires the heart to use more energy to pump; this can eventually lead to myocardial infarction (heart attack) or heart failure. Individuals with hypertension are at an increased risk for cardiovascular disease and have a shorter life expectancy. Hypertension or high blood pressure cannot be attributed to any one identifiable cause. Some causes include diet, lack of exercise, stress, metabolic defects, and heredity factors. A more complete list is displayed in the figure below. Hypertension is more common in industrialized societies (Fig. 1).

Cross-References

- [Blood Pressure, Measurement of](#)
- [Diastolic Blood Pressure \(DBP\)](#)
- [Systolic Blood Pressure \(SBP\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Carretero, O. A., & Oparil, S. (2000). Essential hypertension, Part 1: Definition and etiology. *Circulation*, 101, 329–335.
- Vanden, A. J., Sherman, J. H., & Luciano, D. S. (2001). *Human physiology: Mechanisms of body function*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

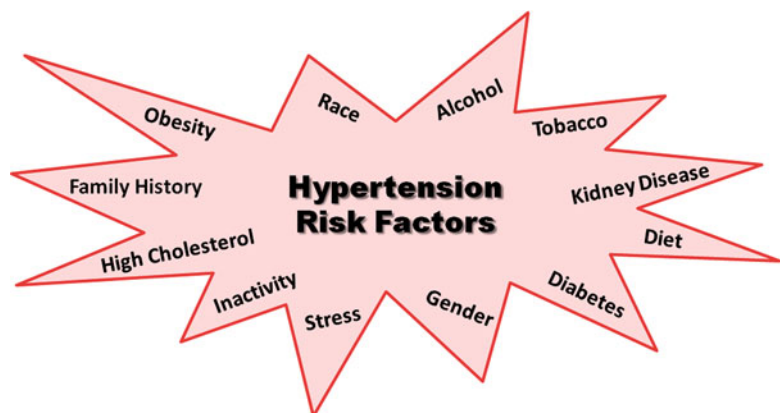
Blood Pressure, Elevated

Annie T. Ginty
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[High blood pressure](#)

Blood Pressure, Elevated, Fig. 1 Risk factors for elevated blood pressure



Blood Pressure, Measurement of

Annie T. Ginty
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Elevated blood pressure](#); [Hypertension](#)

Definition

Blood pressure is often measured using a noninvasive technique called a sphygmomanometer. Sphygmomanometer is derived from the Greek word sphygmōs, meaning “pulse.” A cuff is wrapped around the upper arm of the individual and inflated to a level which is much higher than the expected systolic blood pressure measurement. Then a stethoscope is placed over the brachial artery and when no sounds are picked up it means the artery has been collapsed by the pressure against the walls preventing blood from flowing. Systolic blood pressure is measured by slowly releasing the pressure in the cuff until it eventually reaches a point where tapping sounds are heard, which is caused by blood spurting with each pulse. This occurs during ventricular contraction. Diastolic blood pressure is measured by continuing to let the air out of the cuff, and when sounds are no longer heard, a reading is taken; no sounds mean blood is continuously flowing through the artery. This occurs during ventricular relaxation.

Measuring blood pressure is a quick and noninvasive way to obtain a general index of cardiovascular function of individuals. It is also one of the most common physiological measures used in behavioral medicine research (Andreassi 2006).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Diastolic Blood Pressure \(DBP\)](#)
- ▶ [Hypertension](#)
- ▶ [Systolic Blood Pressure \(SBP\)](#)

References and Further Reading

Andreassi, J. L. (2006). *Psychophysiology: Human behavior and physiological response*. Hillsdale: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Blood Sugar

- ▶ [Blood Glucose](#)

Blood Vessel Wall

- ▶ [Endothelial Function](#)

Body Composition

Sarah Messiah
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Anthropometrics](#); [Body mass index](#); [Fat mass](#); [Fat-free mass](#)

Definition

Body composition is the proportion of fat, muscle, and bone of an individual's body. It is most often expressed as percentage of body fat and percentage of lean body mass (LBM) or as a ratio of lean mass to fatty mass. Lean mass includes muscle, bone, skin, internal organs, and body water. Fatty

mass consists primarily of body fat (subcutaneous fat) and internal essential fat surrounding organs (visceral or intra-abdominal fat). Two people of the same height and same body weight can appear completely different from each other due to different body compositions. Body composition can provide important information about an individual's possible risk for cardiovascular disease or diabetes.

The American Dietetic Association recommends that a healthy adult male's body should have between 8% and 17% fat and a female should have 10–21% (ADA 2009). Levels significantly above these amounts may indicate excess body fat. Athletes, leaner individuals, and more muscular individuals will have a body fat percentage lower than these levels.

Body Composition Measurement

Body composition (particularly body fat percentage) can be measured in several ways. Anthropometric measurements usually include height, weight, body mass index (BMI), waist circumference, waist-to-hip ratio, and percentage of body fat. These measures are then compared to reference standards to assess weight status and the risk for various diseases. Anthropometric measurements require precise measuring techniques to be valid but are the simplest and least expensive way to measure body composition.

Body mass index (BMI) is defined as an individual's body weight divided by the square of his or her height (kg/m^2). It is used to estimate an individual's adiposity based on his/her height, assuming an average body composition. BMI is not a direct measure of percentage body fat, but because of the simplicity of measurement and calculation, it is the most widely used diagnostic tool to identify those who are underweight, normal, overweight, obese, or morbidly obese.

Waist Circumference. A high waist circumference (WC) is associated with an increased risk for type 2 diabetes, dyslipidemia, hypertension, and cardiovascular disease when BMI is between 25 and 34.9. (In adults, a BMI greater than 25 is considered overweight and a BMI greater than 30 is considered obese.) Changes in WC over

time can indicate an increase or decrease in abdominal fat. Increased abdominal fat is associated with an increased risk of heart disease. WC is measured by locating the upper hip bone and placing a measuring tape around the abdomen (ensuring that the tape measure is horizontal).

Waist-to-Hip Ratio. The waist-to-hip ratio (WHR) has been used as an indicator of potential risk of developing serious health conditions. Research shows that people with “apple-shaped” bodies (with more weight around the waist) face more health risks than those with “pear-shaped” bodies who carry more weight around the hips. While the subject is standing, hip circumference is measured at the point yielding the maximum circumference over the buttocks using a tape measure to measure to the nearest 1 cm. The waist-hip ratio equals the waist circumference divided by the hip circumference.

Percent Body Fat. The most common method of measuring body fat is to assess skinfold thickness using a set of measurement calipers to measure the depth of subcutaneous fat in multiple places on the body. These measurements are then used to estimate total body fat with a margin of error of approximately 4% points. The measurement can use three to nine different standard anatomical sites around the body but typically include the abdominal area, the subscapular region, arms, buttocks, and thighs. The right side is usually only measured for consistency. The tester pinches the skin at the appropriate site to raise a double layer of skin and the underlying adipose tissue, but not the muscle. The calipers are then applied 1 cm below and at right angles to the pinch, and a reading in millimeters (mm) is taken 2 s later. The mean of two measurements should be taken. If the two measurements differ greatly, a third should then be done, then the median value taken.

Another common method of measuring body composition is bioelectrical impedance analysis (BIA), which uses the resistance of electrical flow through the body to estimate body fat. Partly because of a demand for faster and easier methods of evaluating body composition, BIA has become a widely used method of estimating percent body

fat. The use of BIA is based on the principle that the conductivity of an electrical impulse is greater through fat-free tissue than it is through fatty tissue. Current-injector electrodes are placed just below the phalangeal-metacarpal joint in the middle of the dorsal side of the right hand and below the metatarsal arch on the superior side of the right foot. Detector electrodes are placed on the posterior side of the right wrist, midline to the pisiform bone on the medial (fifth phalangeal) side with the foot semiflexed.

Total body or estimated total body scans using dual energy x-ray absorptiometry (DEXA) give accurate and precise measurements of body composition, including bone mineral content (BMC), bone mineral density (BMD), lean tissue mass, fat tissue mass, and percent body fat results. The person lays on the whole body scanner, with the x-ray sources mounted beneath a table and a detector overhead. The person is scanned with photons that are generated by two low-dose x-rays at different energy levels. The body's absorption of the photons at the two levels is measured. The ratios can be then used to predict total body fat, fat-free mass, and total body bone mineral content. The procedure can take about 10–20 min. DEXA can also distinguish regional as well as whole body parameters of body composition. As such, it is considered a reference standard.

Body composition is also estimated using cross-sectional imaging methods like magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and computed tomography (CT). Since MRI and CT give the most precise body composition measures to date, many pharmaceutical companies are very interested in these new procedures to estimate body composition measures before and after drug therapy, especially in drugs that might change body composition.

Cross-References

► [Body Mass Index](#)

References and Readings

Position of the American Dietetic Association. (2009). Weight management. *Journal of the American Dietetic Association*, 109, 330–346.

Body Esteem

► [Body Image](#) and [Appearance-Altering Conditions](#)

Body Fat

M. Di Katie Sebastiano
Kinesiology, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Synonyms

[Adipose tissue](#)

Definition

Body fat generally refers to adipose tissue, a complex connective tissue with specific roles in metabolism and endocrine function. While the terms “adipose tissue” and “body fat” can be used synonymously, body fat is most often used in the context of body composition, while adipose tissue is more often used when describing the physiological properties of fat. Fat consists of a variety of different cells including adipocytes (fat storage cells), connective tissue matrix (nonliving material to nourish the cells), nerve tissue, stromal vascular cells, and immune cells. Traditionally, adipose tissue was thought of as a passive storage depot of excess energy; however, recently, the specific roles of adipose tissue in endocrine function and metabolism have been identified.

Description

Body composition describes the proportion of lean and fat mass a person carries. Often, percent (%) body fat is used as a descriptor of body composition. Lohman et al. (1997) created recommended % body fat levels for children and physically active adults. They suggest average % body fat for healthy adults aged to be 18–35 is 13% for males and 28% for females or 18% for males and 32% for females aged 36–55. Severe excess of body fat, when compared to lean body mass, is known as obesity. An obese individual has a percentage of body fat greater than 22% in males and greater than 35% in females aged 18–35. For an older adult population (aged 36–55), obesity is defined as a body fat of greater than 25% for males and 38% for females (Lohman et al. 1997). The World Health Organization provides general classifications of overweight and obese individuals derived from population. These classifications are based on body mass index (BMI), one of the most common classifications of excessive body fat. BMI provides a ratio of a person's weight (in kg) to their height (in meters squared). Overweight individuals have BMI greater than 25.0 kg/m² and less than 29.9 kg/m² while individuals classified as obese have a BMI greater than 30 kg/m². Morbid obesity occurs in anyone with a BMI greater than 35 kg/m² (WHO 2006). While BMI provides a quick and easy measure of body composition, it does not give any indication of % body fat. There are other methods available to provide a more complete description of body composition. These techniques, unlike weight and BMI, allow for the more precise measurement of body fat and fat-free mass (FFM) to better identify individuals who have excessive body fat.

Bioelectrical impedance analysis (BIA) crudely measures FFM and body fat. It measures body density based on the conduction of an electrical current applied to the organism. The intra- and extracellular fluids serve as electrical conductors for the current, while the cellular membranes act as electrical condensers. Lean body

tissue contains a greater percentage of water (70–75%) while fat mass contains only 10–15% water (Kyle et al. 2004a). As such lean tissue conducts the current better than fat mass. BIA is based on the relationship between lean tissue's water concentration and conductance. BIA generates a resistance and reactance value that can then be used to calculate total body water, FFM, and body fat. There are many different equations that have been developed to determine FFM and body fat from BIA measures and they range from generalized equations to population specific equations; it is up to the evaluator to choose the most appropriate equation. There are two excellent reviews that discuss the various equations for BIA analysis (see Kyle et al. 2004a, b). BIA is still a rather crude measure of body composition as it is based on many assumptions and the status of the participant, such as hydration level, fasting state, and caffeine ingestion, can significantly influence the results of BIA analysis. It, however, is easily accessible and does not require a trained technician to use.

Another method of body composition analysis that is often used in the field to measure body fat is the anthropometric measure of skinfold thickness. Skinfold thickness is often employed in combination with other anthropometric measures such as height, weight, and body circumference to create a general description of a participant's body composition. Also, skinfold measures are inexpensive and require little equipment, i.e., they can be easily used in a variety of settings. Skinfold measures are based on the premise that 30–70% of body fat is located subcutaneously, or just below the skin, and is proportional to visceral fat, or fat surrounding the internal organs and tissue. Calipers are then used to measure the thickness of subcutaneous fat (Heyward 2006). From the skinfold measures, many equations have been developed to calculate the body density, percentage of body fat. Again these equations can be generalized to healthy or specific clinical populations. However, skinfold measures are still based on a variety of assumptions and requires skilled technicians for accurate measures. It is also a relatively

insensitive measure of body fat and cannot detect differences over a short term.

Hydrostatic weight was at one time considered to be a gold standard of body composition analysis. It works by measuring the body volume of an individual submerged underwater. From body volume, body density is then calculated. One can then estimate body fat and fat-free mass from density values described in the literature. While hydrostatic weighing provides a reliable and valid measure of body density and body fat, it has a high subject burden (underwater submersion), it cannot differentiate between the different components of fat-free mass (muscle, organs, etc.) and relies on the assumed densities of FFM and body fat (Heyward 2006).

Air displacement plethysmography (ADP) works on the same principle as hydrostatic weighing. However, body volume is determined via air displacement instead of water displacement. It has much less subject burden than hydrostatic weighing and is fast, noninvasive, and accessible to a wider range of body compositions. However, it also has the same limitations as hydrostatic weighing in that it cannot differentiate between the different components of fat mass and relies on the assumed densities of FFM and body fat (Heyward 2006).

Dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry (DXA) uses very low dose radiation to differentiate between soft tissue and bone. Fat tissue is then estimated from the specific attenuation characteristics of soft tissue. DXA is able to distinguish between body fat, lean tissue, and bone, unlike any of the previously mentioned methods of body composition analysis. It is highly precise, and allows for the separation between different regions of the body. DXA, however, cannot differentiate between different compartments (i.e., visceral, subcutaneous, etc.) of fat and lean tissue (Heymsfield et al. 1997).

Computerized tomography (CT) uses X-ray attenuation to detect the different tissues and reconstruct an image of specific fat tissues (i.e., subcutaneous versus visceral), lean tissues (i.e., skeletal muscle, kidneys, liver), and bones. A trained technician can then use software to precisely quantify the amount of muscle and adipose tissue from just a single CT image. CT image

analysis also allows differentiation between adipose tissue depots and individual muscle. CT imaging, however, exposes the participant to large doses of radiation, is very expensive, and requires highly skilled technicians to not only take the scan, but also to precisely quantify the amount of muscle and fat. It is still one of the most accurate methods to determine body composition at the tissue-organ level (Heymsfield 2008).

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is also one of the most accurate methods to determine body composition. MRI involves the generation of a magnetic field where atomic protons behave like magnets and become aligned in the magnetic field. The protons are then activated by radio waves and absorb energy. A signal is then generated and is used to develop regional and cross-sectional images of the whole body. Fat, muscle, visceral organs, and bone are then precisely quantified (Heymsfield 2008). MRI has the benefit of trivial radiation exposure, which lowers the risk for the participant. It is also the best method of body fat analysis as it can use multiple images and whole body or serial measures to get a precise measure of body fat and lean tissue. Again, it is very expensive, requires high technical skill, and the images can be affected by respiration.

Each of these methods can generate the amount of body fat and the % of body fat an individual possesses with varying degrees of accuracy and ease of use and cost. It is within the discretion of the individual to determine the most appropriate method.

Cross-References

- [Adipose Tissue](#)
- [Body Composition](#)
- [Body Mass Index](#)
- [Obesity](#)

References and Further Readings

- Heymsfield, S. B. (2008). Development of imaging methods to assess adiposity and metabolism. *Internal Journal of Obesity*, 32(Suppl 7), S76–S82.

- Heymsfield, S. B., Wang, Z., Baumgartner, R. N., & Ross, R. (1997). Human body composition: Advances in models and methods. *Annual Review of Nutrition*, 17, 527–558.
- Heyward, V. H. (2006). Assessing body composition. In *Advanced fitness assessment and exercise prescription* (5th ed., pp. 171–211). Windsor: Human Kinetics.
- Kyle, U. G., Bosaeus, I., DeLorenzo, A. D., Deurenberg, P., Ellis, M., Gomez, J. M., & Pichard, C. (2004a). Bioelectrical impedance analysis – part I: Review of principles and methods. *Clinical Nutrition*, 23(6), 1226–1243.
- Kyle, U. G., Bosaeus, I., DeLorenzo, A. D., Deurenberg, P., Ellis, M., Gomez, J. M., & Pichard, C. (2004b). Bioelectrical impedance analysis – part II: Utilization in clinical practice. *Clinical Nutrition*, 23(6), 1430–1453.
- Lohman, T. G., Houtkooper, L., & Going, S. (1997). Body fat measurement goes high-tech: Not all are created equal. *ACSM's Health and Fitness Journal*, 16, 92–96.
- World Health Organization (WHO). (2006). *Global database on body mass index*. <http://apps.who.int/bmi/index.jsp?introPage=intro.html>. Accessed Jan 2011.

Body Image

Rachel Millstein
Clinical Psychology, University of California,
San Diego/San Diego State University, San
Diego, CA, USA

Synonyms

Appearance evaluation; Body perception; Body size satisfaction

Definition

Body image refers to how a person experiences or feels about his or her body size, weight, shape, or functionality. Body image is a broadly defined and measured construct. Some of the more commonly studied aspects are: body size satisfaction, body size estimation, weight appropriateness, self-perceived overweight, figure rating scale: current-ideal discrepancy, and appearance evaluation. Body image can influence weight-loss behaviors, emotional well-being, and health behaviors.

Description

Body image is a central component of emotional well-being and self-perception, involving the subjective experience and evaluations of the appearance of one's body. Body size satisfaction is the attitudinal component of body image, reflecting the feelings about one's own body, versus perceptual body image which describes one's estimated size. Media, peer, environmental, and personality characteristics can influence a person's body image and satisfaction. Satisfaction with body image is a major factor which determines self-esteem and health-related behaviors, such as smoking, healthful nutrition patterns, and engaging in physical activity.

Approximately two-thirds of the US adult population is overweight (BMI $> = 25$ – 29.9 kg/m^2) or obese (BMI $> = 30 \text{ kg/m}^2$) and excess weight is a known risk factor for diseases such as cardiovascular disease, type 2 diabetes, cancer, and mental illness. Concomitant with the increasing body size among the US population have been the counter-influences of national public health initiatives to reduce obesity and cultural preferences toward leaner figures. Obesity and overweight are also associated with decreased quality of life and poor body image. Poor or distorted body image can be a key factor in the etiology of eating disorders (anorexia and bulimia nervosa) and depression. Body Dysmorphic Disorder (BDD) is a newly recognized mental health condition characterized by an excessive concern with one's body image. While most of the body size satisfaction literature addresses weight concerns, it could also encompass feelings about one's height or specific body areas. Understanding the interrelationships between actual body size, perceived body size, and body image can be useful in determining motivation for weight loss, weight-control practices, and improving self-concept.

In studies of body image, women have consistently been found to view themselves as heavier than they actually are and desire a thinner figure. Research shows that African-American, Hispanic, and American Indian/Alaska native women all tend to display higher levels of satisfaction than

white women. Many studies have also found the pattern of white women expressing greater body size dissatisfaction and at lower BMIs than their African-American or Hispanic peers. Women also show body size dissatisfaction at a lower BMI than men. National surveys have shown men to be more satisfied with their body size, even if they are overweight. Overall, men tend to show less awareness of being overweight and the necessity of losing weight if overweight or obese. Men appear to ascribe less importance to their body size than do women, which may account for these discrepancies in image and weight-control behaviors. Men who are dissatisfied with their size or weight tend to be split between wanting to gain muscle weight and wanting to lose excess fat, generally striving toward the muscular ideal male body type.

The associations between body size satisfaction and weight-loss practices are complex and depend on a variety of factors, such as actual or perceived body size, psychological factors, and health status, and they may differ by race and sex. In general, more people who report poor body image are likely to indicate that they are trying to lose weight, compared to those with low or no body image dissatisfaction. Traditionally, it has been reported that women who are dissatisfied with their body size or image tend to choose diet as a weight-loss strategy, while men dissatisfied with their bodies or body image focus more on exercise and diet in order to build muscle and lose weight. Dissatisfaction with body size and poor body image may lead women to avoid physical activity. Attempts to promote healthy weight loss, weight maintenance strategies, and positive body image may be best suited to encouraging appropriate physical activity, nutrition behaviors, and realistic body image and beauty expectations.

Cross-References

- [Anorexia Nervosa](#)
- [Binge Eating](#)

- [Body Composition](#)
- [Body Fat](#)
- [Body Image and Appearance-Altering Conditions](#)
- [Body Mass Index](#)
- [Bulimia](#)
- [Obesity](#)
- [Overweight](#)
- [Self-Concept](#)
- [Self-Esteem](#)
- [Self-Image](#)

References and Readings

- Anderson, L. A., Eyler, A. A., Galuska, D. A., Brown, D. R., & Brownson, R. C. (2002). Relationship of satisfaction with body size and trying to lose weight in a national survey of overweight and obese women aged 40 and older, United States. *Preventive Medicine, 35*, 390–396.
- Cash, T. F., & Pruzinsky, T. (Eds.). (1990). *Body images: Development, deviance, and change*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Cash, T. F., & Pruzinsky, T. (Eds.). (2004). *Body image: A handbook of theory, research, and clinical practice*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Chang, V. W., & Christakis, N. A. (2003). Self-perception of weight appropriateness in the United States. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 24*, 332–339.
- Flynn, K. J., & Fitzgibbon, M. (1998). Body images and obesity risk among black females: A review of the literature. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine, 20*, 13–24.
- Friedman, K. E., Reichmann, S. K., Costanzo, P. R., & Musante, G. J. (2002). Body image partially mediates the relationship between obesity and psychological distress. *Obesity Research, 10*, 33–41.
- Grogan, S. (2006). Body image and health: Contemporary perspectives. *Journal of Health Psychology, 11*, 523–530.
- McCabe, M. P., & Ricciardelli, L. A. (2004). Body image dissatisfaction among males across the lifespan: A review of past literature. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research, 56*, 675–685.
- Must, A., Spadano, J., Coakley, E. H., Field, A. E., Colditz, G., & Dietz, W. H. (1999). The disease burden associated with overweight and obesity. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 282*, 1523–1529.
- Ogden, C. L., Carroll, M. D., Curtin, L. R., McDowell, M. A., Tabak, C. J., & Flegal, K. M. (2006). Prevalence of overweight and obesity in the United States, 1999–2004. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 295*, 1549–1555.

Body Image and Appearance-Altering Conditions

Helena Lewis-Smith¹ and Kerry Sherman²

¹Centre for Appearance Research, University of the West of England, Bristol, UK

²Department of Psychology, Centre for Emotional Health, Macquarie University, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Synonyms

Altered appearance; Appearance evaluation; Body esteem; Body image; Body perception; Body size satisfaction; Chronic condition; Self-image; Visible difference

Definition

“Body image” is a multidimensional construct and refers to a person’s perceptions, thoughts, feelings, and behaviors, in relation to their body (Grogan 2008). This encompasses the body’s functions and capabilities, in addition to its appearance.

Description

An altered appearance, or one considered different from the “norm,” can be a consequence of congenital conditions, injuries, disease, or treatments for disease. Some congenital conditions present appearance differences from birth, but their visibility may reduce over time following treatment. These include craniofacial irregularities (e.g., cleft lip and/or palate; Treacher Collins syndrome), vascular anomalies (e.g., hemangiomas; port-wine stains), and congenital limb defects (e.g., absence of a limb, fusion of fingers or toes). Other congenital conditions, such as neurocutaneous syndromes

(e.g., neurofibromatosis; tuberous sclerosis), may develop over time, with the associated appearance alterations becoming more visible with age.

Visible differences to appearance can also be acquired at any point across the lifespan. Some alterations (e.g., burns) occur quite suddenly as a result of a traumatic event, such as a fire or traffic accident. Other acquired changes to appearance can be a manifestation of a disease, such as skin conditions (e.g., acne, vitiligo, psoriasis). Further, appearance can be altered as an indirect effect of treatment for disease, such as cancer. While surgical interventions (e.g., mastectomy for breast cancer; lower limb amputation for diabetes-related peripheral neuropathy) can bring about permanent changes to appearance including scarring, medical treatment may lead to temporary changes (e.g., cancer-related chemotherapy causing hair loss; hormone therapy increasing weight gain and hot flushes in women with breast cancer).

Psychosocial Challenges Faced by Individuals with an Appearance-Altering Condition

Regardless of whether an altered appearance is congenital or acquired later in life, research indicates that affected individuals can often experience poor body image, low self-worth, and negative affect (Rumsey and Harcourt 2011). For example, a review found that young people and adults with cleft lip and/or palate tended to exhibit lower self-worth and facial satisfaction (Hunt et al. 2005). It also identified that individuals who were less accepting of their cleft experienced lower self-esteem and more depressive symptoms. Similarly, another review relating to cancer patients revealed a high prevalence of body image concerns among individuals diagnosed with head and neck cancer (up to 75%) and those with breast cancer diagnoses (up to 33%; Fingeret et al. 2014), with issues being found to persist in the long term. Concerns about body image in cancer populations are wide ranging, from

embarrassment about visible scarring, and anger and negative affect associated with diminished and compromised body functioning. In oncology populations, increased body image concerns have been associated with greater anxiety and depression and poorer quality of life. However, despite extensive studies identifying body image concerns in cancer survivors, when considering only those studies with healthy case controls, the evidence is less clearly defined with one review noting almost as many studies reporting no differences in body image between cancer survivors and healthy controls, as those reporting greater body image in cancer populations (Lehmann et al. 2015).

Other challenges reported by people with an altered appearance relate to social interactions. Affected individuals can experience social anxiety and fear of negative evaluation, and this is associated with greater appearance-related avoidance of social situations (e.g., with head and neck cancer; Fingeret et al. 2012). This is unsurprising, as many people with a highly visible altered appearance (e.g., on the face) report experiencing staring, unsolicited questioning, or avoidant behavior altogether. It can be particularly challenging for children with a very visible appearance-altering condition (e.g., cleft lip and/or palate, birthmarks, burns), as they can experience appearance-related teasing and bullying and encounter problems making friends. Sadly, these social experiences can have a spiraling adverse effect, whereby the affected individual anticipates a negative reaction from others and consequently behaves in a shy or defensive manner. This behavior in itself ends up evoking negativity from others and thus perpetuates social anxiety.

Particular aspects relating to the condition can also exacerbate social concerns and induce psychological distress. For example, some skin conditions (e.g., eczema, psoriasis) can be mistakenly perceived as contagious, thus leading people to avoid coming into contact with affected individuals. It can also be challenging in the case of conditions that are associated with disruptions to facial muscles, due to their consequential impact on the ability to express nonverbal emotions (e.g., facial paralysis), making it difficult for others to

recognize their emotions, potentially leading to social awkwardness. For individuals with a visible difference that is usually hidden by clothes (e.g., mastectomy; orchiectomy – surgical removal of testicles), participation in social activities involving a level of undress (such as swimming) can be anxiety provoking, as can the formation of intimate relationships, as they will ultimately have to “disclose” their altered bodily appearance.

Current Knowledge on Factors Influencing Adjustment to an Altered Appearance

Traditionally, a medicalized approach has been adopted to explore influences on body image among individuals with an altered appearance, whereby attention has been focused on the size, severity, location, and visibility, of the particular feature. However, research suggests that these objective indicators are not reliable predictors of psychological adjustment, with the individual's subjective perceptions of their altered appearance and its severity being stronger influences (Rumsey and Harcourt 2011).

Other sociocultural and psychological factors have also been suggested to influence adjustment, with some more prominent with respect to whether the appearance-altering condition is congenital and present at birth or acquired later in life. For example, in congenital conditions like cleft lip and/or palate, appraisals and support received from others are key influences (Stock et al. 2016). Having a supportive family who are accepting of the cleft is associated with better adjustment, as is a supportive peer network in childhood who can help protect the child from bullying and teasing from others. Relatedly, social confidence and humor can foster resilience and help individuals to live with the myriad of social challenges encountered when having a cleft (Stock et al. 2016). An individual's outlook can also influence adjustment, whereby acceptance, optimism, and determination have been identified as protective factors among this group.

For individuals who have acquired a visible difference later in life, such as due to cancer treatment or a burn injury, other intrapersonal factors can influence body image and adjustment. For example, higher investment in appearance and

lower self-compassion are associated with greater distress following treatment for breast cancer, including for women who have undergone breast reconstruction (Fingeret et al. 2014; Sherman et al. 2017). Relatedly, women who feel in greater control and prepare for the anticipated appearance changes after cancer treatment (e.g., by shaving their hair) experience better adjustment. Romantic partners also play a salient role for women adjusting to appearance changes associated with breast surgery, with perceptions of lower emotional involvement and adverse partner reactions being associated with poorer body image.

Current Knowledge on Interventions

Systematic reviews of psychosocial interventions to improve the body image and adjustment of individuals with any appearance-altering condition (e.g., Norman and Moss 2015) have highlighted the beneficial effects of cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) and social interaction skills training (SIST). One promising intervention of this type among individuals with both congenital and acquired visible differences is the web-based “Face IT” (Bessell et al. 2012). Comprising eight sessions of didactic materials, videos, and homework activities, Face IT teaches verbal and nonverbal communication skills, helpful approaches to manage social stigma (e.g., unsolicited questioning), and strategies for skillful social interactions, such as assertiveness and humor. A randomized controlled trial conducted among individuals with a variety of appearance-altering conditions (e.g., craniofacial conditions, skin conditions, scarring due to burns, cancer, and other traumatic injuries) found that Face IT significantly improved body image, distress, and anxiety at 6 months relative to a nonintervention control group. Importantly, the intervention compared favorably with a more costly and less accessible face-to-face therapist-delivered version of the intervention.

While interventions employing CBT and SIST have demonstrated effectiveness with regard to helping individuals adjust to an altered appearance, researchers have begun to explore other potentially beneficial approaches, such as mindfulness and self-compassion. For example, “My Changed Body” is an online self-compassion-

focused writing activity designed to address body image concerns (Sherman et al. 2018). A randomized controlled trial found that breast cancer survivors undertaking the My Changed Body writing improved in body dissatisfaction, body appreciation, and self-compassion, relative to a control group after completing the online intervention (Sherman et al. 2018). It is therefore recommended that future research continues to explore these and other avenues for intervention, which target identified influences on body image and adjustment among these groups.

Cross-References

- Appearance Evaluation
- Body Image
- Body Perception
- Body Size Satisfaction
- Self-image

References and Further Reading

- Bessell, A., Brough, V., Clarke, A., Harcourt, D., Moss, T. P., & Rumsey, N. (2012). Evaluation of the effectiveness of Face IT, a computer-based psychosocial intervention for disfigurement-related distress. *Psychology, Health & Medicine*, 17(5), 565–577. <https://doi.org/10.1080/13548506.2011.647701>.
- Fingeret, M. C., Yuan, Y., Urbauer, D., Weston, J., Nipomnick, S., & Weber, R. (2012). The nature and extent of body image concerns among surgically treated patients with head and neck cancer. *Psycho-Oncology*, 21(8), 836–844. <https://doi.org/10.1002/pon.1990>.
- Fingeret, M. C., Teo, I., & Epner, D. E. (2014). Managing body image difficulties of adult cancer patients: Lessons from available research. *Cancer*, 120(5), 633–641. <https://doi.org/10.1002/cncr.28469>.
- Grogan, S. (2008). *Body image: Understanding body dissatisfaction in men, women and children*. London: Routledge.
- Hunt, O., Burden, D., Hepper, P., & Johnston, C. (2005). The psychosocial effects of cleft lip and palate: A systematic review. *European Journal of Orthodontics*, 27(3), 274–285. <https://doi.org/10.1093/ejo/cji004>.
- Lehmann, V., Hagedoorn, M., & Tuinman, M. A. (2015). Body image in cancer survivors: A systematic review of case-control studies. *Journal of Cancer Survivorship*, 9(2), 339–348. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11764-014-0414-y>.

Norman, A., & Moss, T. P. (2015). Psychosocial interventions for adults with visible differences: A systematic review. *PeerJ*, 3, e870. <https://doi.org/10.7717/peerj.870>.

Rumsey, N., & Harcourt, D. (2011). Body image and congenital conditions resulting in visible difference. In T. F. Cash & L. Smolak (Eds.), *Body image: A handbook of science, practice, and prevention* (Vol. 1, 2nd ed., pp. 253–260). New York: Guilford Press.

Sherman, K. A., Woon, S., French, J., & Elder, E. (2017). Body image and psychological distress in nipple-sparing mastectomy: The roles of self-compassion and appearance investment. *Psycho-Oncology*, 26, 337–345. <https://doi.org/10.1002/pon.4138>.

Sherman, K. A., Przewdziecki, A., Alcorso, J., Kilby, C. J., Elder, E., Boyages, J., . . . Mackie, H. (2018). Reducing body image-related distress in women with breast cancer using a structured online writing exercise: Results from the My Changed Body randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 36(19), 1930–1940. <https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2017.76.3318>.

Stock, N. M., Feragen, K. B., & Rumsey, N. (2016). Adults’ narratives of growing up with a cleft lip and/or palate: Factors associated with psychological adjustment. *The Cleft Palate-Craniofacial Journal*, 53(2), 222–239. <https://doi.org/10.1597/14-269>.

Body Language

- Communication, Nonverbal
- Nonverbal Communication

Body Mass Index

Sarah Messiah
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

Anthropometric; Body measurement; Height; Weight

Definition

Body mass index (BMI) is defined as an individual’s body weight divided by the square of his or her height (standard unit of measure is kg/m²) (Table 1). It is used to estimate an individual’s adiposity based on his/her height, assuming an average body composition. BMI is not a direct measure of percentage body fat, but because of the simplicity of its measurement and calculation, it is the most widely used diagnostic tool to identify those who are underweight, normal weight, overweight, obese, or morbidly obese. The most significant limitation of BMI is that the formula does not take into account phenotypical characteristics such as muscle mass (e.g., athletes who may be classified as “overweight” or “obese” according to their BMI, yet have a very low overall percent of body fat), bone mass, and frame size as well as varying proportions of fat, cartilage, and water weight. However, research has shown that BMI correlates well with direct measures of body fat, such as underwater weighing and dual energy x-ray absorptiometry (DEXA) (Mei et al. 2002; Garrow and Webster 1985).

Since the early 1980s, the World Health Organization (WHO) has used BMI as the standard for recording obesity statistics worldwide (World Health Organization 1995, 2000, 2004) (Table 2). In the United States, The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) monitor BMI in both the pediatric and adult populations to generate prevalence estimates of underweight, normal weight, and overweight in the population (Ogden et al. 2010). For adults 20 years old and

Body Mass Index, Table 1 How to calculate body mass index (BMI)

SI units	BMI = mass (kg)/(height (m)) ²
	Note: Since height is commonly measured in centimeters, divide height in centimeters by 100 to obtain height in meters
Imperial/US customary units	BMI = mass (lb) × 703/(height (in)) ²
	BMI = mass (lb) × 4.88/(height (ft)) ²

Body Mass Index, Table 2 The international classification of adult underweight, overweight, and obesity according to body mass index

Classification	BMI(kg/m ²)	
	Principal cutoff points	Additional cutoff points
Underweight	<18.50	<18.50
Severe thinness	<16.00	<16.00
Moderate thinness	16.00–16.99	16.00–16.99
Mild thinness	17.00–18.49	17.00–18.49
Normal range	18.50–24.99	18.50–22.99
		23.00–24.99
Overweight	≥25.00	≥25.00
Pre-obese	25.00–29.99	25.00–27.49
		27.50–29.99
Obese	≥30.00	≥30.00
Obese class I	30.00–34.99	30.00–32.49
		32.50–34.99
Obese class II	35.00–39.99	35.00–37.49
		37.50–39.99
Obese class III	≥40.00	≥40.00

Source: Adapted from WHO (1995, 2000, 2004)

older, BMI is interpreted using standard weight status categories that are the same for all ages and for both men and women.

For children and teens in the range of ages 2–20 years, the interpretation of BMI is both age and sex specific. While the BMI number is calculated the same way for children and adults, the criteria used to interpret the meaning of the BMI number for children and teens are different from those used for adults. For children and teens, BMI age- and sex-specific percentiles are used for two reasons: (1) the amount of body fat changes with age and (2) the amount of body fat differs by gender. Because of these factors, the interpretation of BMI is both age and sex specific for children and teens. Therefore, the CDC BMI-for-age growth charts take into account these differences and allow translation of a BMI number into a percentile for a child’s sex and age. The percentiles fall into specific categories to define underweight, normal weight, overweight, and obese (Table 3).

For infants and children ages 0–24 months, the CDC recommends that health-care providers use the WHO growth standards to monitor growth via weight-for-length measurements that are sex

Body Mass Index, Table 3 Weight status categories for the calculated BMI-for-age percentile, United States pediatric population

Weight status category	Percentile range
Underweight	Less than the 5th percentile
Healthy weight	5th percentile to less than the 85th percentile
Overweight	85th to less than the 95th percentile
Obese	Equal to or greater than the 95th percentile
Morbidly obese	Equal to or greater than the 97th percentile

specific to identify how children should grow when provided optimal conditions.

BMI is used as a screening tool to identify possible weight problems in both. However, BMI is not a diagnostic tool. For example, a person may have a high BMI, but to determine if excess weight is a health risk, a health-care provider would need to perform further assessments. These assessments might include skinfold thickness measurements; evaluations of diet, physical activity, and family history; and other appropriate health screenings and laboratory tests.

Cross-References

- [Body Composition](#)
- [Obesity](#)
- [Overweight](#)

References and Readings

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Division of Nutrition, Physical Activity and Obesity, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion. (2011). Body mass index. Accessed 4 Jan 2011 from <http://www.cdc.gov/healthyweight/assessing/bmi/index.html>
- Garrow, J. S., & Webster, J. (1985). Quetelet's index (W/H²) as a measure of fatness. *International Journal of Obesity*, 9, 147–153.
- Mei, Z., Grummer-Strawn, L. M., Pietrobelli, A., Goulding, A., Goran, M. I., & Dietz, W. H. (2002). Validity of body mass index compared with other body-composition screening indexes for the assessment of body fatness in children and adolescents. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 75(6), 978–985.
- Ogden, C. L., Carroll, M. D., Curtin, L. R., Lamb, M. M., & Flegal, K. M. (2010). Prevalence of high body mass index in US children and adolescents, 2007–2008. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 303, 242–249.
- World Health Organization. (1995). *Physical status: the use and interpretation of anthropometry* (Report of a WHO expert committee. WHO technical report series 854). Geneva: Author.
- World Health Organization. (2000). *Obesity: Preventing and managing the global epidemic* (Report of a WHO consultation. WHO technical report series 894). Geneva: Author.
- World Health Organization Expert Consultation. (2004). Appropriate body-mass index for Asian populations and its implications for policy and intervention strategies. *The Lancet*, 363, 157–163.

Body Measurement

- [Body Mass Index](#)

Body Perception

- [Body Image](#)
- [Body Image](#) and [Appearance-Altering Conditions](#)

Body Size Satisfaction

- [Body Image](#)
- [Body Image](#) and [Appearance-Altering Conditions](#)

Bogalusa Heart Study

Sarah Messiah

Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Childhood origins of cardiovascular disease; Cohort study; Longitudinal study](#)

Definition

The Bogalusa Heart Study, originating in Bogalusa, Louisiana, has been focused on examining the early natural history of cardiovascular disease (CVD), coronary artery disease, and essential hypertension among a semirural community-based cohort of black and white children and young adults for over 30 years.

Description

The Bogalusa Heart Study, originating in Bogalusa, Louisiana, has been focused on examining the early natural history of cardiovascular disease (CVD), coronary artery disease, and essential hypertension among a semirural community-based cohort of black and white children and young adults (Freedman et al. 2010; Voors et al. 1976). For over 30 years, study subjects identified in early childhood have been followed, and their anthropometrics, blood pressure, heart rate, blood cholesterol levels, as well as several other clinical end points that characterize CVD have been periodically measured (Voors et al. 1977). The investigators have described the incidence and

prevalence of biologic and behavioral CVD risk factors in these children. Their population has enabled them to document differences not only between males and females but also between blacks and whites. The results from the Bogalusa Heart Study have clearly documented that atherosclerosis has its basis in childhood and that prevention can and must begin at the early ages and have resulted in hundreds of publications in the scientific literature (National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, <http://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT00005129>).

Design

The initial survey of over 3,500 children was initiated in 1973–1974 and was restricted to children from ages 2 ½ to 14 (Webber et al. 1987). A physical examination that included collecting anthropometric data, hemoglobin, blood pressure, serum lipids, and a health history was conducted. In 1976–1977, the second cross-sectional survey of over 4,000 children expanded the eligibility criteria to include children ages 5–17 years old. This survey included information on salt intake, smoking, health beliefs, and attitudes, and for girls ages 8–17, menstrual history and oral contraceptive use. The third survey of over 3,500 children in 1978–1979 also collected skinfold thickness and two measurements of heart rate. The fourth survey of over 3,300 children in 1981–1982 added data on alcohol use, type A behavior, peer networks, and dieting habits.

The Bogalusa Heart Study continued to use a cross-sectional and longitudinal design with the general cross-sectional survey of approximately 3,700 Bogalusa children ages 5–17 in 1988–1989 in the sixth screen and additional longitudinal studies to recall children in defined subgroups for more intensive evaluation. Half of the 12,000 children screened since 1973 had been studied three or more times. There were several other cohort groups and studies. The Newborn-Infant Cohort Study was designed to describe distributions, interrelationships, and trends through time for blood pressure, serum lipid and lipoprotein concentrations, dietary intake patterns, and anthropometric

measurements. Four hundred and forty infants born between January 1, 1974, and June 30, 1975, were examined at birth, at 6 months, and yearly at ages 1–4 and at 7, 10, and 13 years for cardiovascular risk factor variables. The Post-High School Study examined young adults ages 21–30 who previously were examined as children ages 5–14 in the first Bogalusa Heart Study screening in 1973–1974. The population included approximately 4,603 young adults originally screened and any other children or adolescents examined for the first time in any subsequent surveys.

The fifth screening began in 1988 and extended through December 1991. The Pediatric Pathology Risk Factor Program, which began in 1978, documented the relationship of cardiovascular disease risk factors to anatomic and pathologic changes. A local information system was established to obtain family or coroner's consent to autopsy any deceased resident between the ages of 3 and 26 in the Bogalusa area. Autopsy specimens were collected from over 100 deceased children and young adults, of whom approximately 40% had been previously examined in the Bogalusa Heart Study. Major activity during 1988–1991 involved 24-h dietary recall collections on all the 1963, 1966, and 1968 birth cohorts attending the Post-High School Study. A food frequency questionnaire was also self-administered to all the Post-High School Study participants. The use of these two dietary methodologies, 24-h dietary recall and food frequency questionnaire, provided data to assess the nutrient composition of diets of young adults, assess the weekly consumption of individual foods, compare nutrient composition data with food frequency data, and compare dietary intakes at the post-high school age with those of school age.

Several substudies were conducted using the Bogalusa Heart Study population. Among them were the impact of childhood obesity on risk factors, the relationship of apolipoproteins A-I and B in children to parental myocardial infarction, and the relationship between left ventricular size, as demonstrated by echocardiography and blood pressure distribution (Freedman et al. 2008). The study was renewed in Fiscal Year 1992 in order to follow up the previously

examined young adults for development of abnormal levels of cardiovascular risk factors and clinical disease.

In 1997, the study was renewed and extended through June 2002 in order to study the impact of genetic factors on the evolution from childhood cardiovascular risk factors to subclinical and clinical morbidity in an adult population, ages 20–40, who had been followed over a long period of time. The study also seeks to study the association of risk factor phenotypes to anatomic changes in the cardiovascular system, as seen by necropsy. The population for genotype-phenotype studies includes approximately 1,400 siblings derived from 178 longitudinal birth cohorts. The cardiovascular phenotypes include obesity, blood pressure, lipids, lipoproteins, apoproteins, homocysteine, glucose-insulin, fibrinogen, plasminogen activator inhibitor-1, and von Willebrand factor. Environmental risk factors consist of sociodemographic characteristics, tobacco and alcohol use, oral contraception, physical activity, and diet. Subclinical morbidity includes echo-Doppler measurements of cardiac-carotid structure and function. Using robust sibling pair linkage methods, a genome-wide search involving 391 markers with spacing of 10 cM is conducted for genes which influence quantitative traits. This is supplemented with 41 highly polymorphic markers located in or near candidate genes likely to be related to obesity, lipoprotein metabolism, blood pressure, insulin resistance, diabetes, atherogenesis, and thrombosis. The study is shifting from a population-based epidemiologic study to a family-based genetic epidemiologic study.

Over the past three decades, the Bogalusa Heart study has resulted in the following key scientific findings:

- Observations clearly show that the major etiologies of adult heart disease, atherosclerosis, coronary heart disease, and essential hypertension begin in childhood. Documented anatomic changes occur by 5–8 years of age.
- CVD risk factors can be identified in early life. Normative values from a large biracial (black-white) population (approximately 10,000 individuals) are available for comparison.

- The levels of risk factors in childhood are different than those in the adult years. Levels change with growth phases, i.e., in the first year of life, during puberty and adolescence, in the transition to young adulthood, and in adulthood.
- Autopsy studies show atherosclerotic lesions in the aorta and coronary vessels, and changes in the kidney vasculature relate strongly to clinical CVD risk factors, clearly indicating atherosclerosis and hypertension begin in early life.
- Gender and race contrasts are a major contribution to the research findings. It is well known that blacks have more hypertension and diabetes, white males have more early coronary artery disease, and women show a lag in the development of heart disease.
- Environmental factors are significant and influence dyslipidemia, hypertension, and obesity. Those that are controllable include diet, exercise, and cigarette smoking.
- Lifestyles and behaviors that influence CVD risk are learned and begin early in life. Healthy lifestyles should be adopted in childhood because they are critical to modulation of risk factors later in life. Primary care physicians, pediatricians, and cardiologists can play a major leadership role in the prevention of adult heart diseases beginning in childhood. Physicians are encouraged to obtain risk factor profiles on children, along with a family history of heart disease.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Coronary Heart Disease](#)
- ▶ [Health Disparities](#)
- ▶ [Hypertension](#)

References and Further Reading

- Freedman, D. S., Patel, D. A., Srinivasan, S. R., Chen, W., Tang, R., Bond, M. G., et al. (2008). The contribution of childhood obesity to adult carotid intima-media thickness: The Bogalusa Heart Study. *International Journal of Obesity*, 32(5), 749–756.
- Freedman, D. S., Fulton, J. E., Dietz, W. H., Pan, L., Nihiser, A. J., Srinivasan, S. R., et al. (2010). The

identification of children with adverse risk factor levels by body mass index cutoffs from 2 classification systems: The Bogalusa Heart Study. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 92(6), 1298–1305.

Voors, A. W., Foster, T. A., Frerichs, R. R., Webber, L. S., & Berenson, G. S. (1976). Studies of blood pressure in children, ages 5–14 years, in a total biracial community: The Bogalusa Heart Study. *Circulation*, 54(2), 319–327.

Voors, A. W., Webber, L. S., Frerichs, R. R., & Berenson, G. S. (1977). Body height and body mass as determinants of basal blood pressure in children—The Bogalusa Heart Study. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 106(2), 101–108.

Webber, L. S., Frank, G. C., Smoak, C. G., Freedman, D. S., & Berenson, G. S. (1987). Cardiovascular risk factors from birth to 7 years of age: the Bogalusa Heart Study. Design and participation. *Pediatrics*, 80, 767–778.

result from a number of conditions including disease (e.g., dementias) and developmental conditions (e.g., autism, learning disabilities), the term “brain damage” is usually associated with brain injury. Brain injuries fall into two general categories related to mechanism of injury: traumatic and nontraumatic. Traumatic brain injuries (TBI) result from external forces and are often the result of falls, motor vehicle accidents, or being struck or assaulted. In wartime, blast injuries may also cause TBI. Nontraumatic brain injuries may result from a variety of events or infectious processes including, for example, cerebral vascular accidents (i.e., stroke), anoxia, tumor, seizures/epilepsy, or encephalitis. Brain damage typically results in impairment in brain functioning compared to previous or age-appropriate levels of functioning. The degree and pattern of behavioral change following brain damage is associated with the severity and location of injury.

Brain

► [Brain, Cortex](#)

Brain and Spinal Cord

► [Central Nervous System](#)

Brain Damage

Mary Spiers
Department of Psychology, Drexel University,
Philadelphia, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Brain injury](#); [Brain trauma](#)

Definition

Brain damage causes physical damage to the brain that may range from microscopic neuronal damage to damage that extends over a large area of the brain. Although, technically, brain damage may

Cross-References

► [Brain, Injury](#)
► [Brain, Imaging](#)
► [Traumatic Brain Injury](#)

References and Readings

Zillmer, E. A., Spiers, M. V., & Culbertson, W. C. (2008). *Principles of neuropsychology* (2nd ed.). Belmont: Wadsworth/Thompson Learning.

Brain Imaging

► [Brain, Imaging](#)
► [Neuroimaging](#)

Brain Injury

► [Brain Damage](#)
► [Traumatic Brain Injury](#)

Brain Lesion

► [Brain, Injury](#)

Brain Pathology

► [Brain, Injury](#)

Brain Trauma

► [Brain Damage](#)
 ► [Traumatic Brain Injury](#)

Brain Tumor

Yori Gidron
 SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
 Lille, France

Definition

Brain tumors (BT) are tumors which reside in the brain or spinal cord. They include abnormal cell proliferation of neurons or glial cells, in the cranial nervous, in the skull, in the limbic system, in the brain stem, or in the spinal cord. Metastasis may develop in the cortex. The severity of BT varies greatly, since this depends on their size, location, type, and stage of development upon detection. Those all are referred to as primary BT. Since often BT are hidden from the eye due to the skull, BT may be directly detected only via brain scans. Another type of BT is secondary BT, where peripheral tumors metastasize to the brain, mainly seen in lung, breast, and colon cancers and melanoma. Primary BT are among the ten most fatal cancers, with over 51,000 new cases diagnosed every year in the USA alone (Starkweather et al. 2011).

The most common type of BT is astrocytoma, where 75 % of patients die within 5 years of diagnosis. Glioblastomas are one type of BT, with a median survival time of 14.6 months (Schneider et al. 2010). Among the proven risk factors of BT are high-dose ionizing radiation, inherited genetic syndromes, and brain lymphomas associated with AIDS (Davis 2007). The role of cellular phones in the etiology of BT is still under intense investigation. Often, psychological aspects are uniquely affected in BT, given the location of the tumor and its possible impact on mood, behavior, and cognition (Weitzner 1999). Psychological factors such as depressive symptoms have been found to independently predict poor prognosis in BT (Starkweather et al. 2011). Furthermore, the latter authors reviewed studies and suggest that the neuroimmune interactions, which are under control of astrocytes, can in fact contribute to the depressive symptoms and to the changes in tumor microenvironment seen in astrocytoma. These can be crucial for prognosis because the tumor microenvironment plays a crucial role in tumorigenesis. Given the poor prognosis, observed psychological changes, and understood fear of having a BT, patients and close ones often require special psychological help for this type of tumor. Thus, BT are clear examples where behavior medicine can play a pivotal role in both research and treatment.

Cross-References

► [Cancer Survivorship](#)

References and Further Readings

- Davis, F. S. (2007). Epidemiology of brain tumors. *Expert Review of Anticancer Therapy*, 7, S3–S6.
- Schneider, T., Mawrin, C., Scherlach, C., Skalej, M., & Firsching, R. (2010). Gliomas in adults. *Deutsches Ärzteblatt International*, 107, 799–807.
- Starkweather, A. R., Sherwood, P., Lyon, D. E., McCain, N. L., Bovbjerg, D. H., & Broaddus, W. C. (2011). A biobehavioral perspective on depressive symptoms

in patients with cerebral astrocytoma. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 43, 17–28.

Weitzner, M. A. (1999). Psychosocial and neuropsychiatric aspects of patients with primary brain tumors. *Cancer Investigation*, 17, 285–291.

Brain Wave

Michele L. Okun

Department of Psychology, University of Colorado Colorado Springs, Colorado Springs, CO, USA

Synonyms

Cortical activity; EEG

Definition

Brain waves are the physical representation of the brain's electrical charge and activity. Electroencephalography (EEG) is the technique used to record electrical activity. EEG measures voltage fluctuations resulting from ionic current flows within the neurons of the brain. Brain wave activity is recorded from different standard sites on the scalp according to the international electrode placement system. Recording electrical activity requires measurement of voltage between two electrode sites. The electrical activity between electrode pairs is evaluated in terms of amplitude and frequency. Amplitude ranges from 5 to 200 μ V. Frequency of EEG activity generally ranges from 0 to 100 Hz (American EEG Society 1994; Niedermeyer and da Silva 2004; Towle et al. 1993).

Brain wave activity can be recorded during wakefulness as well as sleep. With regards to sleep, stage N1 sleep or drowsiness is characterized by a fading of the alpha waves and increases in beta activity and a small increase in theta activity. As sleep deepens, high-voltage, single or complex theta or delta waves, which are called vertex sharp waves, appear. Stage N2 sleep is characterized by increased numbers of vertex sharp waves (K-complexes) and centrally

predominant spindle waves, sinusoidal 12–14 Hz activity. Stage N3 sleep or slow-wave sleep (SWS) is characterized by progressively higher amplitude and low-frequency delta waves (American EEG Society 1994).

The frequencies are indicated by Greek letters:

- Delta – 0–4 Hz
- Theta – 4–8 Hz
- Alpha – 8–12 Hz
- Beta – 12–32 Hz
- Gamma – 3–100 Hz

Cross-References

- Brain
- Sleep

References and Further Reading

- American EEG Society. (1994). Guideline fifteen: Guidelines for polygraphic assessment of sleep-related disorders (polysomnography). *Journal of Clinical Neurophysiology*, 11(1), 116–124.
- Niedermeyer, E., & da Silva, F. L. (2004). *Electroencephalography: Basic principles, clinical applications, and related fields*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Towle, V. L., Bolaños, J., Suarez, D., Tan, K., Grzeszczuk, R., Levin, D. N., et al. (1993). The spatial location of EEG electrodes: Locating the best-fitting sphere relative to cortical anatomy. *Electroencephalography and Clinical Neurophysiology*, 86(1), 1–6.

Brain, Cortex

Elliott A. Beaton

Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences and the M.I.N.D. Institute, University of California-Davis, Sacramento, CA, USA

Synonyms

Brain; Cerebrum; Fissure; Frontal; Gyrus/Gyri (pl); Lobes; Occipital; Parietal; Sulcus; Telencephalon; Temporal

Definition

The cerebral cortex is the outermost gray matter layer of the telencephalon or cerebrum of the brain.

Description

This entry describes the cerebral cortex in humans. Although there is a high degree of conservation across vertebrate species and especially in mammals, readers should refer elsewhere for phenotypic and functional details regarding other animals.

The cerebral cortex (Latin for “Brain” and “Bark” respectively) is the outermost layer of the cerebrum (also known as the telencephalon). The wrinkled or undulating appearance of the cortex is a result of folding that allows for greater surface area within the confines of the skull. The furrows are referred to as “sulci” (plural for sulcus and Latin for “furrow”) or “fissures” which are simply larger sulci that serve as important navigational landmarks. The rounded ridges between the sulci are the gyri (plural for “gyrus” and Latin from *gyre* meaning whirling or circular). There are individual differences in the patterning of the gyri and sulci, but the general pattern is highly correlated across individuals within species. The cerebral cortex consists of two hemispheres (right and left) that are connected by large bundles axons called commissures: the anterior, the posterior, and the corpus callosum. The largest of these white matter bundles is the corpus callosum and its fibers connect to corresponding regions of each hemisphere.

The surface of the cortex can be described in terms of the superolateral, medial, and inferior surfaces. The inferior surface can be further divided into the orbital and tentorial surfaces but it is commonly described according to the four of six visible lobes from anterior (front) to posterior (back) in a transverse or sagittal view: frontal cortex, temporal cortex, parietal cortex, and occipital cortex (there are also the insular and limbic subcortical lobes). These are named for

the cranial bones they sit below and are demarcated by certain sulci and fissures and by hemisphere (i.e., right and left). The frontal and parietal lobes are divided by the central sulcus also known as the sulcus of Rolando. The temporal lobe is divided from the frontal and parietal lobes by the lateral sulcus also known as the Sylvian fissure. The occipital lobe is roughly delimited from the parietal and temporal lobes by the parieto-occipital sulcus converging with a line drawn upward from the preoccipital notch where the cerebellum meets the cerebral cortex.

The phylogenic history and evolution of the human brain is represented in the layers of the cortex. The outermost is the neocortex (Latin for “new bark”) also known as the neopallium (Latin = “new mantle”) or isocortex (Greek = “equal rind”). After the neocortex is the phylogenically older allocortex (Greek = “other cortex” also known as the archipallium). Next is the older still paleocortex or paleopallium (Greek = “old cortex”) and the oldest of all, the archaocortex or archipallium.

In humans, the cerebral cortical surface area is on average between 2,200 and 2,850 cm². Typically, cortex is further organized by cell type in six layers or *laminae* that vary in total thickness from 5 mm at the precentral gyrus to 1.5 mm at the frontal and temporal poles with an average thickness of 3 mm. From the surface to the interior, the six layers of the cortex include: (1) molecular layer with mostly dendrites and long axons; (2) external granular layer with mostly small pyramidal cells; (3) pyramidal cell layer; (4) internal granular layer with small pyramidal and stellate cells; (5) inner pyramidal layer of large pyramidal cells; and, (6) the multiform or spindle-cell layer. The neurons of these layers number between 2.6 and 20 billion in the cortex with 0.6×10^9 synapses per mm³. Regions of the cortex vary in terms of *laminae* thickness, in addition to cellular morphology, which involves the appearance of cells and their axons and dendrites.

There are a variety of other systems for mapping out the cortex including three-dimensional stereotactic coordinates or regions divided based on underlying cytoarchitectonic organization of

the cortical tissue referred to as Brodmann's areas (BA). The cortex can also be classified by the general function associated with tissue within the region boundary but it should be noted that brain function requires coordination across and among a variety of brain regions.

For example, the primary visual cortex (also known as striate cortex; BA17) is part of the occipital lobe and is involved in processing visual information. Primary auditory cortex (BA41) is found on the lower surface of the lateral fissure that separates the temporal lobe from the frontal and parietal lobes. Somatosensory information processing occurs in the postcentral gyrus (also known as the primary somatosensory area; BA1,2,3) of the parietal lobe. Integration of visual and somatosensory information also occurs in the parietal lobe. Anterior to the somatosensory cortex are the primary (BA4) and secondary (BA6) motor cortices. Groups of cells within these regions can be quite specialized for a given perceptual or motor function.

Broadly, interpretation, planning, action, learning, and memory occur in the rest of the cerebral cortex in the association areas. The central sulcus serves to divide the adjacent anterior and posterior cortical regions into the motor association cortex (also called the pre-motor cortex; BA6) and somatosensory association cortex respectively. The visual association cortex abuts the primary visual cortex in the most posterior part of the occipital lobes and the somatosensory association cortex in the parietal lobes, encompassing the lower half of the occipital and extending along the lateroventral temporal lobes.

The auditory association cortex encompasses roughly the upper temporal lobe. The language cortex is lateralized with the dominant hemisphere (commonly the left hemisphere) engaged in reception and production of language, and analogous areas in the non-dominant hemisphere (commonly the right hemisphere) that are involved in producing and understanding voice inflection and tone that provide information about the emotional content of speech. Within this region is a receptive language region known as Wernicke's area (BA22) that extends from the

angular (BA39) and supramarginal (BA40) gyri. The expressive language area known as Broca's area (BA44 and 45) is located in the inferior frontal gyrus.

Particularly developed in humans is the most anterior part of the frontal cortex (often called the prefrontal cortex), which is rostral to the motor association cortex. The prefrontal cortex (PFC) is the slowest to mature and continues to develop well into young adulthood. The PFC is further divided into regions such as the orbitomedial (BA11 and 12) and dorsolateral (BA 9 and 10) PFC. These areas are associated with particular aspects of executive function such as impulse control, emotion regulation and reactivity, planning, judgment, working memory, and abstract reasoning.

References and Readings

- Fuster, J. (2008). *The prefrontal cortex* (4th ed.). London: Academic/Elsevier.
- Gazzaniga, M. S. (Ed.). (2004). *The cognitive neurosciences* (4th ed.). Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Kandel, E. R., Schwartz, J. H., & Jessell, T. M. (Eds.). (2000). *Principles of neuroscience* (4th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Nolte, J. (2009). *The human brain: An introduction to its functional anatomy* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Mosby/Elsevier.

Brain, Imaging

Elliott A. Beaton

Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences and the M.I.N.D. Institute, University of California-Davis, Sacramento, CA, USA

Synonyms

Brain imaging; Computerized tomography (CT); Diffuse optical imaging (DOI); Event-related optical imaging (EROI); Functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI); Imaging; Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI); Positron emission tomography (PET)

Definition

Neuroimaging broadly refers to the relatively non-invasive technologies and techniques for localizing, measuring, and visualizing central nervous system function and structure. Common neuroimaging methodologies include magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), positron emission tomography (PET), and computerized tomography (CAT/CT).

Description

Neuroimaging refers to a collection of techniques used to noninvasively view structure and function of living brain tissue. The methods used to visualize brain tissue have evolved significantly over the last several decades from using x-ray technologies to the more recent and increasingly ubiquitous (nuclear) magnetic resonance imaging.

Contrast X-rays and Computerized Axial Tomography (CAT/CT)

X-ray photography creates images by passing x-rays through the body and onto a photographic plate by taking advantage of variation in x-ray radiation absorption of different tissues. Certain molecules and denser materials absorb more radiation and thus less reaches the photographic plate. This method is excellent for seeing skeletal bones that appear on the photographic plate with a high degree of contrast compared to surrounding tissues. It is less useful for tissues that do not strongly differ in x-ray radiation absorption such as parts of the brain. One method to get around this is to introduce a radiopaque agent to increase contrast by differentially absorbing x-rays. This allows for the visualization of the cerebral ventricular and circulatory systems. Pneumoencephalography involves injecting air into the cerebral ventricular system to briefly displace cerebral spinal fluid (CSF), and cerebral angiography involves injecting a radiopaque dye into a cerebral artery. These methods are limited in the information they produce but can be used to examine

general brain atrophy, damage, or displacement of blood vessels.

The next step in the evolution of x-ray imaging of the living brain was the introduction of computed tomography (CT) which is sometimes referred to as computerized axial tomography (CAT). However, CT is more appropriate, because “axial” merely refers to the plane of image acquisition, and images can just as easily be acquired in the coronal or sagittal planes. CT utilizes an x-ray detector rather than a photographic plate. The x-ray source and detector are mounted opposite one another on a rotating ring inside a tube that encircles the person being scanned. The CT scanner captures numerous images of the brain from several angles as the x-ray source and detector rotate around the head. These images are then reconstructed by a computer to make three-dimensional multi-slice images of the living brain. The brighter and darker areas of the images are described as “hyperdense” and “hypodense,” respectively, with grayish components of the images as “isodense.” Water and CSF appears almost black, white matter darker than gray matter, and skull as nearly white. Variation in image intensity is more carefully delineated in Hounsfield units (HU) with water having an HU of 0, CSF an HU between 8 and 18, gray matter and white matter HU = 37–41 and 30–34, respectively, and bone HU = 600–2,000. CT scans have the benefit of being relatively inexpensive and having very fast acquisition times making them particularly valuable tools for detecting recent brain trauma and intracranial lesions in emergency situations. Limitations of CT scanning include poorer contrast between brain tissue types and the number of CT scan any one person can have at a given time is limited because of safety requirements to limit exposure to x-ray radiation. Furthermore, while CT can be used to visualize brain structure, it is not useful for measuring brain function while engaging in a process or activity. Other methods allowing for accurate localization of brain function include positron emission tomography (PET) and functional magnetic

resonance imaging (fMRI). Imaging equipment that combine CT and PET technologies in one package are now commonly available and increase information yield and utility with the practical benefit of taking up less space than dedicated CT and PET scanners.

Single Photon/Positron Emission Tomography (SPECT/PET)

Positron emission tomography (PET) and single photon emission computerized tomography (SPECT) are used to image brain activity. This method also uses radiation and radiation detectors but rather than shooting an x-ray through the material to be imaged, PET utilizes radiolabeled tracers in the form of chemicals that have specific actions within the brain. For example, fluorine-18-labeled 2-fluoro-2-deoxy-D-glucose (18F-FDG) is a commonly used radiotracer. When 18F-FDG is injected into the carotid artery, it is rapidly taken up by metabolically active neurons during an experimental task as it very similar to glucose. However, it cannot be metabolized like glucose and thus accumulates in active brain regions where it slowly breaks down. The radioactive label (or ligand) gives off photons (i.e., SPECT) as a result of a nuclear process where a proton in the nucleus is converted into a neutron, neutrino, and a positron (i.e., PET). Both the neutrino and the positron are then ejected from the nucleus. The kinetic energy of the ejected positron both varies and declines at a rate that depends on the nature of the surrounding material. When an ejected positron meets an electron, it creates an annihilation reaction where the electron and the positron turn into two photons that travel in opposite directions (180°) of each other. These photons are measured as a line by two of a series of scintillation detectors mounted in opposition from one another. The images created by the PET scanner are not images of the brain itself; rather, they are images created from the relative distributions of detected amounts of radioactivity in brain regions of interest.

PET is powerful methodology that can be used to study hemodynamics, drug action

localization, receptor function, metabolism, and even molecular processes including DNA synthesis. PET is particularly valuable in detecting disease processes that may be evident as metabolic variation but are not yet manifested as anatomical abnormality that could be detected using CT or MRI. However, PET images can be effectively combined with CT or MRI images providing accurate localization of accumulated radioactivity. PET is also advantageous in that radiation exposure is relatively limited. The primary limitation of PET is the necessity for local access to a cyclotron to produce radiotracers. The radiotracers have a very short half-life and thus must be made in close physical proximity to the PET scanner and utilized quickly. The limitations of PET and CT have led to a significant increase in application of methods that do not utilize hard radiation like x-rays or radiolabels that are expensive to produce. Structural and functional magnetic resonance imaging (sMRI and fMRI, respectively) and the recent emergence of near infrared spectroscopic imaging (NIRSI) allow for detailed analyses of both brain structure and function in the living brain.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)/Functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging (fMRI)

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) methods produce images of the brain and other bodily regions that are high in both contrast and resolution. Although some MRI methods utilize contrast agents, MRI does not expose patients or study participants to ionizing radiation. Rather, this technique utilizes a very powerful homogeneous and stable electromagnetic field.

This brief description of how MRI works is limited to “classical”/Newtonian physics, but quantum mechanical descriptions are available elsewhere. Protons are found in all of the nuclei of the atoms that make up the body, but conventional MRI utilizes hydrogen protons. Hydrogen protons spin randomly with their magnetic moments “pointing” in random directions until

they are in the influence of the strong magnetic field of the MRI scanner where they all align in parallel with the direction (z -axis) of the external field generated by the electromagnet. Application of a radiofrequency (RF) pulse is applied to the z -axis aligned hydrogen protons with an excitation/receiver coil. As a result of absorbed energy from the RF pulse, the hydrogen protons move or “flip” into a higher energy state that is antiparallel to the z -axis toward the x - y plane. With the removal of the RF pulse, the hydrogen protons “relax” or move back into alignment with the external electromagnetic field along the z -axis and release the absorbed energy form the RF pulse as electromagnetic waves that are detected by the excitation/receiver coil and other magnetic gradient coils in three dimensions.

Static contrast methodologies are used to generate anatomical images of the brain. Depending on the type of RF pulse applied, the images highlight different types of tissue or fluids. Static contrast between tissue types is achieved by three properties of protons in tissues: (1) the proton density (i.e., how many hydrogen protons are in the region), (2) proton relaxation times along the z -axis (i.e., the longitudinal relaxation time or T_1), and (3) proton relaxation times along the x - y plane (i.e., the transverse relaxation time or T_2). Motion contrasts detect dynamic properties of protons in tissues and fluids to generate images of blood flow, capillary irrigation, perfusion, and diffusion of water.

Functional MRI (fMRI) refers to MRI methodologies that estimate brain activity. Brain slices are repeatedly imaged over time allowing for statistical contrast of experimental manipulations. The most common is blood oxygen level–dependent (BOLD) fMRI. BOLD fMRI methods exploit changes in levels of oxygen in the blood that result from the metabolic demands of brain tissue during neural activity. Active brain tissue utilizes oxygen and the change from an oxygenated state to a deoxygenated state can be detected because deoxygenated blood is paramagnetic. Other methods include perfusion or dynamic-contrast MRI, which measures

changes in blood volume using an injected paramagnetic contrast agent such as gadolinium, or magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS) which measures localized levels of brain metabolites. There is also diffusion MRI that measures diffusion coefficients of water in brain tissue. Diffusion tensor imaging (DTI) examines the water diffusion coefficients in neighboring voxels to estimate the shapes and directions of white matter tracts.

MRI possesses advantages over CT and PET including very high-resolution images that can be acquired without ionizing radiation. In most MRI procedures, no contrast agent is needed and the procedures are completely noninvasive. MRI still requires significant safety procedures though. The magnet is always active, and any objects that are susceptible to magnetism can become dangerous projectiles within the boundaries of the field. Furthermore, patients and study participants must be screened for metallic objects or medical devices such as pacemakers in and on their bodies.

Diffuse Optical Imaging or Tomography (DOI/DOT) and Near Infrared Spectroscopy (NIRS)

Diffuse optical imaging (DOI) and near infrared spectroscopy (NIRS) are relatively new applications for measuring relative changes in blood volume and oxygenation via hemoglobin levels as a proxy for cellular metabolism. These methods exploit changes in the properties of near IR light projected through tissue in the absorptive spectra and light scattering properties of water, oxygenated hemoglobin, and deoxygenated hemoglobin. Like BOLD fMRI, DOI measures the hemodynamic response as blood flows to the active tissue supplying oxygen to satisfy the metabolic needs of neurons in the active region. Changes in the way that light moves through brain tissue from the IR source to the IR detector can be computationally modeled and blood flow to particular brain regions can be examined based on the placement of the IR source and detectors.

Modeling how light moves through the various tissues of the head is a complex process that contributes to DOI and NIRS limitations. One method of simplifying the model is to assume the brain region being scanned is essentially “flat” and that the tissues do not differ in their optical properties. However, anatomical MRI can be combined with DOI/NIRS to provide a better model of absorption and scattering of light with bone and other head tissues. Advantages of this technology include a high degree of portability, rapid data acquisition, relative low cost, and complete noninvasiveness. The primary disadvantages result from the lack of robust spatial resolution and that imaging is limited to surface and near-surface brain tissue.

Cross-References

- [Magnetic Resonance Imaging \(MRI\)](#)
- [Neuroimaging](#)

References and Readings

- Azar, F., & Intes, X. (Eds.). (2008). *Translational multimodal optical imaging*. Norwood: Artech House.
- Christian, P. E., & Waterstram-Richm, K. M. (Eds.). (2012). *Nuclear medicine and PET/CT technology and techniques* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Hanson, S. J., & Bunzl, M. (Eds.). (2010). *Foundational issues in human brain mapping*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Huttel, S. A., Song, A. W., & McCarthy, G. (2008). *Functional magnetic resonance imaging* (2nd ed.). Sunderland: Sinauer.
- Jezzard, P., Mathews, P. M., & Smith, S. S. (2001). *Functional MRI: An introduction to methods*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Jiang, H. (2010). *Diffuse optical tomography*. Boca Raton: CRC Press/Taylor & Francis.
- Mettler, F. A., & Guiberteau, M. J. (2006). *Essentials of nuclear medicine imaging* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders/Elsevier.
- Romans, L. (2011). *Computed tomography for technologists: A comprehensive text*. Baltimore: Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Wahl, R. L., & Beanlands, R. S. B. (Eds.). (2009). *Principles and practice of PET and PET/CT* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins/Wolters Kluwer.

Brain, Injury

Eric Roy

Department of Kinesiology, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Synonyms

[Brain damage](#); [Brain lesion](#); [Brain pathology](#)

Definition

A brain injury refers to any damage that occurs to the brain. Brain injuries can be classified in various ways: specific types of injury, primary and secondary, focal and diffuse.

Description

Types of Injury

Brain injuries can be developmental in origin while others are acquired through trauma, stroke, or neurodegenerative processes such as Alzheimer disease. The focus here will be on brain injury acquired through trauma. Regardless of etiology, brain injury can have primary and secondary as well as focal and diffuse effects (Jallo and Loftus 2009; Weber and Maas 2007).

Primary Versus Secondary Injury

A primary injury arises during the initial blow to the brain. At the moment of trauma, the physical structures of the brain are displaced. This displacement results in a contusion or bruise to the brain, damage to blood vessels, and stretching or tearing of axons. The blood–brain barrier and the tissues covering the brain called the meninges may also be damaged. As well the cells in the brain may be damaged and die. Different tissues in the brain have varying thresholds of deformation or response to mechanical loading and so

vary in their potential for injury. Depending on the location and intensity of the forces during the initial traumatic event, some tissues in the brain may experience greater forces and so may be more affected than others.

There are two principal mechanisms of primary injury. One involves actual trauma to the brain arising from the brain coming in contact with the inside of the skull. The point of initial contact results in what is called the coup injury. Depending on the forces involved in the trauma, the brain may in a sense bounce off the coup location inside the skull and move in the opposite direction. The point at which the brain contacts the skull results in the contrecoup injury. Depending on the force of the trauma, there can be a bleeding or hemorrhaging in the brain. This bleeding can be epidural or extradural meaning outside the dura mater, the outer most of three membranes or meninges covering the brain. There may also be subdural bleeding. This bleeding can lead to an epidural or subdural contusion or hematoma.

The other mechanism of primary injury arises from the whiplash effect with the head rotating on the neck due to the acceleration and deceleration forces present in some traumatic accidents such as in motor vehicle accidents. These acceleration-deceleration forces result in shearing strains which may cause tearing of blood vessels deep in the brain resulting in petechial hemorrhages. These strains also causing tearing of the axons or diffuse axonal injury.

The primary injuries lead to secondary injuries which result from processes precipitated by the trauma. Secondary injury begins within hours of the primary injury and plays an important role in the eventual outcome. While most people who suffer a traumatic brain injury recover to varying degrees, about 40% deteriorate due this secondary damage. Secondary injury results from complications associated with the primary injury which include cerebral hypoxia (low oxygen levels in the brain), hypotension (low blood pressure), cerebral edema (brain swelling), and increased intracranial pressure (pressure within the skull). Large increases in intracranial pressure can lead to pushing the brain (herniation) through the hole in the base of the skull called the foramen magnum.

Other secondary damage includes meningitis, acidosis (high acid levels in the blood), and hypercapnia (high levels of carbon dioxide in the blood). Secondary injury can also be caused by release and imbalances in brain chemicals called neurotransmitters. One effect is called excitotoxicity which can cause neurodegeneration through the action of free radicals. Cerebral autoregulation is another type of secondary injury which affects the regulation of blood flow to the brain. Breakdown in the blood-brain barrier as well as cerebral ischemia are also secondary changes in brain function following injury.

Focal and Diffuse Injury

Focal injury refers to injury which occurs in a specific location in the brain. Diffuse injuries involve damage over a more widespread region. Focal injuries arise from a blow to the head which affects the underlying brain area. Diffuse injuries most often arise from acceleration-deceleration forces rather than a blow to the head. It is common for these types of injury to occur at the same time. Focal and diffuse injuries can occur in the context of trauma but also from other forms of brain injury such as stroke.

In the context of trauma, a focal injury arises from direct forces such as when the head strikes the inside of the windshield in a motor vehicle accident or the ice surface in a hockey game. These types of focal injury involve the skull remaining intact. Other focal injuries involve penetration of the skull such as in gunshot wounds to the head. Focal injuries are associated with symptoms arising from damage to the affected brain area such as the loss of hand function on one side of the body due to damage in the motor area on the opposite side of the brain.

Diffuse injury involves damage to the brain over a more widespread area. Diffuse may be a misnomer for this type of injury since the damage often involves multiple focal injuries spread over wide areas in the brain. In the context of trauma, such injuries arise from shearing forces associated with acceleration-deceleration forces resulting in diffuse axonal injuries and tearing of blood vessels. In the context of stroke, diffuse injury arises

from multiple strokes occurring around the same time in different brain areas.

Diffuse axonal injury is most often seen in traumatic brain injury and refers to damage to the white matter tracts arising from rotational shearing forces associated most often with deceleration forces in assaults or motor vehicle accidents. The major source of injury is to the axons, the part of the neuron that affords communication between the neurons. The axon appears white due to the myelination and so is called white matter and collectively these axons form white matter tracts. When the brain is decelerated, parts which vary in their densities and distances from the point of rotation slide over one another and so create shearing forces which serve to tear these tracts. The most common locations for diffuse axonal injuries include white matter tracts of the cerebral cortex, basal ganglia, thalamus, and the deep hemispheric nuclei. Diffuse axonal injury involves axonal separation at the point of the stretch with the part of the axon distal to this tear degrading. It was thought that the major reason for the axonal injury was due to the mechanical forces present at the moment of trauma (the primary injury). Now, it is believed that there are a series of biochemical changes which occur in response to the primary injury hours to days after the primary injury due to shearing forces.

Cross-References

- [Anger Management](#)
- [Anxiety](#)
- [Brain Damage](#)
- [Brain, Imaging](#)
- [CAT Scan](#)
- [Cognitive Impairment](#)
- [Dementia](#)
- [Depression: Symptoms](#)
- [Neuroimaging](#)
- [Neuropsychology](#)
- [Speech Therapy](#)
- [Therapy, Occupational](#)
- [Therapy, Physical](#)
- [Trail-Making Test](#)
- [Traumatic Brain Injury](#)

References and Readings

- Coles, J. (2007). Imaging after brain injury. *British Journal of Anesthesia*, 99, 49–60.
- Jallo, J., & Loftus, C. (2009). *Neurotrauma and critical care of the brain*. New York: Thieme Medical Publishers.
- Weber, J., & Maas, A. (2007). *Neurotrauma: New insights into and treatment*. New York: Elsevier.

Brain, Tissue

Victoria Harms and Lorin Elias
Department of Psychology, University of
Saskatchewan, Saskatoon, SK, Canada

Definition

Neural or brain tissue is specialized for communication through the transmission of electrical signals. The majority (approximately 98%) of neural tissue is found within the brain and the spinal cord. It is composed of two basic classes of cells: nerve cells (or neurons), which transmit communication signals, and glial cells, which act to support both the structure and function of neurons (Carlson 2004).

Neurons

The basic functional unit of the brain is the neuron. Its functional role is to send and receive the electrical impulses that communicate messages about sensory, motor, and cognitive events throughout the brain. The average brain contains roughly 100 billion neurons. Although there are upwards of 1,000 different types of neurons, they all have the same basic structure and function.

Each neuron has a soma, or cell body, that performs all the basic metabolic functions required to keep the cell alive and functioning. At one end of the cell body are the dendrites; these are fine processes or branches that receive incoming information from other neurons. Together the cell bodies and dendrites of neurons compose the gray matter of the brain, so named for its pinkish-gray coloration. At the other end of the cell body is

the axon, a long cylindrical projection that conducts signals from the cell body for transmission to other neurons. Most axons are surrounded by a fatty layer of tissue, called the myelin sheath, which helps speed the conduction of electrical signals along the axon. White matter is composed mostly of axons and is so named for the whitish appearance created by the myelin sheath (Nolte 2009).

Information is transferred from one cell to another at communication sites called synapses. Individual neurons are not physically connected to one another; rather between two communicating cells is a tiny gap called the synaptic cleft. The electrical signals transmitted along the axon of the sending (presynaptic) cell trigger the release of specific chemicals (neurotransmitters) which travel across the synaptic cleft and bind to receptor sites on the receiving (postsynaptic) cell (Connors 2005).

Glial Cells

Greek for “nerve glue,” neuroglia, or glial cells, are the support cells of the brain. Outnumbering neurons at a ratio of approximately 10:1, glial cells make up over half of the volume of the brain (Pinel 2006). Glia were traditionally thought to physically hold neurons together. However, it is now known that glial cells provide structure and support for neurons by surrounding the cell bodies and processes of neurons (Kandel 1991). Although not directly responsible for information processing and transmission, glial cells do play a variety of essential roles in maintaining and supporting the function of neurons:

- Glial cells act to support neurons and, in doing so, provide the overall physical structure for the brain.
- Specialized glial cells (oligodendrocytes in the central nervous system, Schwann cells in the peripheral nervous system) produce and maintain the myelin sheath that insulates axons.
- Glial cells act as a supply system providing oxygen and nutrients to neurons.
- Some glia (e.g., astrocytes and microglia) perform important cleaning and protective roles,

removing excess neurotransmitters, pathogens, and cellular debris left following cell death.

- During the process of development, specialized glia (radial glial cells) act to guide the migration of neurons to their specific locations in the brain and to direct the path of axon growth.

Cell type	Function
Astrocyte	Structural support, regulation of ion concentrations in the extracellular fluid, provide nutrients to neurons, and clean up debris following neuronal death (phagocytosis)
Oligodendrocytes	Produce the myelin sheath around axons
Radial glia	Specialized astrocyte, directs the path of migrating neurons and guides axon growth during development
Ependymal glia	Create the wall of ventricles and secrete cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)
Microglia	Phagocytosis and immune function protecting the brain from microorganisms; also produce the inflammatory response following brain injury

Cross-References

- Brain
- Brain, Cortex

References and Readings

Carlson, N. R. (2004). *Physiology of behavior* (8th ed.). Toronto: Pearson.

- Conners, B. W. (2005). Synaptic transmission in the nervous system. In W. F. Boron & E. L. Boulpaep (Eds.), *Medical physiology* (pp. 295–324). Amsterdam: Elsevier/Saunders.
- Kandel, E. R. (1991). Nerve cells and behavior. In E. R. Kandel, J. H. Schwartz, & T. M. Jessell (Eds.), *Principles of neuroscience* (4th ed., pp. 19–35). Toronto: McGraw-Hill.
- Nolte, J. (2009). *The human brain: An introduction to its functional neuroanatomy* (6th ed.). Amsterdam: Elsevier/Mosby.
- Pinel, J. P. (2006). *Biopsychology* (6th ed.). Toronto: Pearson.

Brain-Behavior Relationships

► Neuropsychology

BRCA1 and BRCA2

Heidi Hamann
Department of Psychiatry, UT Southwestern
Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

Breast cancer genes; Breast/ovarian genetic testing

Definition

BRCA1 and BRCA2 are breast and ovarian cancer susceptibility genes first identified in the mid-1990s (Miki et al. 1994; Wooster et al. 1995). Mutations in BRCA1 and BRCA2 (BRCA1/2) are associated with significantly increased risks of breast and ovarian cancer among women and smaller increases in breast and prostate cancer among men. The development of predictive genetic testing for BRCA1/2 mutations was accompanied by concerns about psychological and behavioral consequences of

learning one's test results (Lerman et al. 2002). However, a meta-analysis by Hamilton et al. (2009) concluded that although general and cancer-specific psychological distress may rise immediately after testing for mutation carriers, it tends to return to baseline levels over time. Mutation noncarriers tend to report short-term decreases in anxiety and long-term decreases in cancer-specific distress. Despite these overall findings, there is a need to more fully understand the social context associated with BRCA1/2 testing; for example, Hamann et al. (2008) found that siblings who had different genetic test results experienced more negative interpersonal responses than siblings who shared the same test result.

In addition to investigations of psychological reactions to BRCA1/2 testing, increased attention has been paid to the behavioral consequences of testing. Among mutation carriers, prophylactic breast and ovarian surgeries dramatically reduce associated cancer risks (Domchek et al. 2010). Although the evidence for risk reduction is less clear, BRCA carriers may also receive recommendations for intensive breast (e.g., mammogram, breast MRI) and ovarian (e.g., CA125, transvaginal ultrasound) surveillance. Of note is a recent study of long-term behavioral outcomes which reported that over 80% of female mutation carriers had obtained risk-reducing breast or ovarian surgeries, compared to much lower levels among women with uninformative or negative results (Schwartz et al. 2011). Rates of mammography were generally high for all tested women (66–92%); ovarian screening was less well utilized, but still higher among mutation carriers. In general, results indicate that BRCA testing has favorable effects on behaviors associated with cancer risk reduction.

Despite the accumulated data on BRCA1/2 testing, there is a continued need for outcome assessment among understudied groups, including racial and ethnic minorities and underinsured populations. A more complete picture of the psychosocial and behavioral correlates of BRCA testing will emerge with studies that include more diverse populations.

Cross-References

- [Breast Cancer](#)
- [Cancer Risk Perceptions](#)
- [Ovarian Cancer](#)
- [Genomics](#)

References and Readings

- Domchek, S. M., Friebel, T. M., Singer, C. F., et al. (2010). Association of risk-reducing surgery in BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutation carriers with cancer risk and mortality. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 304, 967–975.
- Hamann, H. A., Smith, T. W., Smith, K. R., Croyle, R. T., Ruiz, J. M., Kircher, J. C., et al. (2008). Interpersonal responses among sibling dyads tested for BRCA1/BRCA2 gene mutations. *Health Psychology*, 27, 100–109.
- Hamilton, J. G., Lobel, M., & Moyer, A. (2009). Emotional distress following genetic testing for hereditary breast and ovarian cancer: A meta-analytic review. *Health Psychology*, 28, 510–518.
- Lerman, C., Croyle, R. T., Tercyak, K. P., & Hamann, H. (2002). Genetic testing: Psychological aspects and implications. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 70(3), 784–797.
- Miki, Y., Swenson, J., Shattuck-Evans, D., Futreal, P. A., Harshman, K., Tavtigian, S., et al. (1994). A strong candidate for the breast and ovarian cancer susceptibility gene BRCA1. *Science*, 266, 66–71.
- Schwartz, M. D., Isaacs, C., Graves, K. D., Poggi, E., Peshkin, B. N., Gell, C., et al. (2011). Long-term outcomes of BRCA1/BRCA2 testing: Risk reduction and surveillance. *Cancer*. <https://doi.org/10.1002/cncr.26294>.
- Wooster, R., Bignell, G., Lancaster, J., Swift, S., Seal, S., Mangion, J., et al. (1995). Identification of the breast cancer susceptibility gene BRCA2. *Nature*, 378, 789–792.

Definition

Breast cancer is a disease that involves uncontrolled division of abnormal cells in breast tissues, typically the ducts (tubes that carry milk to the nipple) and lobules (glands that make milk). Several different forms of breast cancer exist, which have implications for distinct medical treatments. Breast cancer cells can spread through the blood and lymph systems to other parts of the body.

Description

In the United States, breast cancer is the most common form of cancer in women and their second leading cause of cancer death (after lung cancer). It is estimated that more than 230,000 women and 2000 men will be diagnosed with breast cancer in 2011, and nearly 40,000 adults will die of the disease (Siegel et al. 2011). Approximately one in eight women will be diagnosed with breast cancer in her lifetime. Incidence and mortality rates for breast cancer have decreased in the past decade. Health disparities exist, however; for example, African American women are less likely to be diagnosed with breast cancer than are white women, but more likely to die from the disease. In addition, women with no greater than a high school education are more likely to die from breast cancer than are more educated women. Worldwide, breast cancer is the most common cancer in women, with increasing incidence and much lower survival rates in developing and low-income countries.

Researchers and clinicians in behavioral medicine, health psychology, and related fields are contributing to understanding and improving the lives of women with breast cancer in at least four ways. First, researchers have focused on understanding and promoting early detection of breast cancer, which contributes to enhanced survival. Barriers to obtaining mammograms to detect breast cancer are well characterized, including contextual factors such as having no regular physician and no physician's recommendation for mammography, language barriers, lack of health

Breast Cancer

Annette L. Stanton and Betina R. Yanez
Department of Psychology, University of
California, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Breast carcinoma](#); [Breast neoplasm](#)

insurance and access to screening, low education, and low social support for screening. Individual factors including lack of knowledge regarding breast cancer screening, low perceived risk of and worry about breast cancer, embarrassment about screening, and fatalistic beliefs that cancer is incurable also serve as barriers to early detection. Provision of reminders (e.g., letter, phone) for screening, video and print materials, and one-on-one education to overcome barriers are effective methods for increasing mammogram use (Baron et al. 2008). Although mammography rates have risen dramatically in the past three decades, a minority of eligible women have never had a mammogram, and many more do not receive mammograms on the recommended schedule. Effective interventions targeted to these groups are needed.

Researchers in behavioral medicine and health psychology also are investigating biobehavioral factors that might contribute to breast cancer initiation and progression. Behavioral factors that play a role in poorer breast cancer prognosis include lack of physical activity, weight gain/obesity, alcohol use, and nonadherence to breast cancer treatments (e.g., McTiernan et al. 2010). It is crucial to note that no psychological factor has been demonstrated to promote the initiation of breast cancer. Plausible models through which psychosocial and environmental factors might promote disease progression exist, however, and experimental research with nonhuman animals suggests that chronically stressful environments might contribute to the spread of breast cancer once it has developed (Antoni et al. 2006). Application of these findings to humans must proceed only through very carefully conducted research.

Characterizing processes of psychological and physical adjustment to breast cancer and its treatment and delineating factors that help and hinder women as they confront the disease represent another important area of research in behavioral medicine and health psychology. Clearly, diagnosis of and treatments for breast cancer often constitute profound stressors for women (e.g., Stanton 2006). Best demonstrated in prospective research (i.e., studies in which psychological and physical health indicators are assessed prior to and

after breast cancer diagnosis), women who are diagnosed with breast cancer evidence significant declines in physical, emotional, and social functioning/roles relative to women who are not diagnosed with breast cancer. Women are most prone to distress and life disruption during particular phases of the cancer trajectory (e.g., diagnosis and treatment, medical treatment completion, cancer recurrence). For most women, psychological and physical adjustment improves such that overall quality of life is positive and indistinguishable from that of the general population by approximately 2 years after diagnosis. Specific problems can persist for some women, however, such as fatigue/sleep problems, cognitive disruption during and after chemotherapy (e.g., memory problems), depression, fear of cancer recurrence, and sexual problems (e.g., Bower 2008). Intimate partners and other loved ones also face challenges as they go through the breast cancer experience (Andersen 2009; Manne and Badr 2008).

Longitudinal studies reveal contextual and individual factors that predict psychological adjustment in women who confront breast cancer diagnosis and treatment. For example, low education, social isolation or lack of interpersonal support, lack of satisfaction with the medical team, and holding negative expectancies about general and cancer-specific outcomes can contribute to an increase in distress in women with breast cancer. Coping through attempting to avoid thoughts and feelings related to breast cancer also predicts decrements in adjustment, whereas engagement in approach-oriented coping strategies (e.g., problem-focused coping, seeking social support, emotional expression, positive reappraisal) often is associated with more favorable psychological status across time. Treatment-related alterations in biological systems also may contribute to negative side effects of breast cancer, such as cancer-related fatigue. Theories of adjustment and associated research demonstrate that multiple aspects of the environment and the individual influence women's psychological and physical health during and after the breast cancer experience.

Finally, researchers and clinicians have developed and tested the efficacy of psychosocial and behavioral interventions to promote well-being

and health in women with breast cancer. Although findings are not completely consistent, reviews of this literature suggest that such approaches as cognitive-behavioral interventions, relaxation techniques, and psychoeducational strategies are effective in improving psychological status (e.g., distress, depressive symptoms, anxiety), fatigue, and pain (e.g., Duijts et al. 2011; Tatrow and Montgomery 2006; Zimmerman et al. 2007). Interventions to promote physical activity also appear effective in improving fatigue, body image, depressive symptoms, quality of life, and physical functioning in women with breast cancer (e.g., Duijts et al. 2011; McNeely et al. 2006). Psychosocial interventions also can affect physiological parameters, although the question of whether they can affect important health outcomes in women with breast cancer is far more controversial (McGregor and Antoni 2009).

In sum, theory and research in behavioral medicine, health psychology, and associated fields have promoted early detection of breast cancer, contributed to delineation of biobehavioral factors relevant to disease progression, advanced the understanding of women's experience of breast cancer, and offered effective interventions to enhance quality of life and health in breast cancer survivors. Ongoing and future research promises to extend these findings to underserved groups (e.g., women with advanced breast cancer, low educational resources, diverse ethnicities) and to create maximally effective and efficient interventions for women and loved ones who confront the disease.

Cross-References

- ▶ [American Cancer Society](#)
- ▶ [Cancer Risk Perceptions](#)
- ▶ [Cancer Screening/Detection/Surveillance](#)
- ▶ [Cancer Survivorship](#)
- ▶ [Cancer Treatment and Management](#)
- ▶ [Coping](#)
- ▶ [Coping Strategies](#)
- ▶ [Fatigue](#)
- ▶ [National Cancer Institute](#)
- ▶ [Psychosocial Impact](#)

References and Readings

- Andersen, B. L. (2009). In sickness and in health: Maintaining intimacy after breast cancer recurrence. *Cancer Journal*, 15, 70–73.
- Antoni, M. H., Lutgendorf, S. K., Cole, S. W., Dhanhar, F. S., Sephton, S. E., McDonald, P. G., et al. (2006). The influence of bio-behavioural factors on tumour biology: Pathways and mechanisms. *Nature Reviews Cancer*, 6, 240–248.
- Baron, R. C., Rimer, B. K., Breslow, R. A., Coates, R. J., Kerner, J., Melillo, S., et al. (2008). Client-directed interventions to increase community demand for breast, cervical, and colorectal cancer screening: A systematic review. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 35 (Suppl. 1), S34–S55.
- Bower, J. E. (2008). Behavioral symptoms in patients with breast cancer and survivors. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 26, 768–777.
- Duijts, S. F. A., Faber, M. M., Oldenburg, H. S. A., van Beurden, M., & Aaronson, N. K. (2011). Effectiveness of behavioral techniques and physical exercise on psychosocial functioning and health-related quality of life in breast cancer patients and survivors—a meta-analysis. *Psycho-Oncology*, 20, 115–126.
- Manne, S., & Badr, H. (2008). Intimacy and relationship processes in couples' psychosocial adaptation to cancer. *Cancer*, 112(Suppl. 11), 2541–2555.
- McGregor, B. A., & Antoni, M. H. (2009). Psychological intervention and health outcomes among women treated for breast cancer: A review of stress pathways and biological mediators. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 23, 159–166.
- McNeely, M. L., Campbell, K. L., Rowe, B. H., Klassen, T. P., Mackey, J. R., & Courneya, K. S. (2006). Effects of exercise on breast cancer patients and survivors: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 175, 34–41.
- McTiernan, A., Irwin, M., & Vongruenigen, V. (2010). Weight, physical activity, diet, and prognosis in breast and gynecologic cancers. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 28, 4074–4080.
- Siegel, R., Ward, E., Brawley, O., & Jemal, A. (2011). Cancer statistics, 2011: The impact of eliminating socioeconomic and racial disparities on premature cancer deaths. *CA: Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 61(4), 212–236.
- Stanton, A. L. (2006). Psychosocial concerns and interventions for cancer survivors. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 24, 5132–5137.
- Tatrow, K., & Montgomery, G. H. (2006). Cognitive behavioral therapy techniques for distress and pain in breast cancer patients: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 29, 17–27.
- Zimmerman, T., Heinrich, N., & Baucom, D. H. (2007). “Does one size fit all?” Moderators in psychosocial interventions for breast cancer patients: A meta-analysis. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 34, 225–239.

Breast Cancer Genes

- [BRCA1 and BRCA2](#)

Breast Carcinoma

- [Breast Cancer](#)

Breast Neoplasm

- [Breast Cancer](#)

Breast/Ovarian Genetic Testing

- [BRCA1 and BRCA2](#)

Brief Multidimensional Measure of Religiousness/Spirituality (BMMRS)

Kevin S. Masters
Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Synonyms

[Multidimensional measure of religiousness/spirituality](#)

Definition

The Brief Multidimensional Measure of Religiousness/Spirituality (BMMRS) is a paper-pencil, self-report measure of different dimensions or facets of religiousness and spirituality (R/S) that was

developed in 1999 by a US national working group of experts supported by the Fetzer Institute in collaboration with the US National Institute on Aging (NIA), part of the National Institutes of Health. The group's primary mission was to develop items for assessing health-relevant domains of religiousness and spirituality. Thus, the measure was specifically designed for use in health outcomes and other health research. It contains 38 items across 11 dimensions with two additional meaning dimension items in an appendix.

Description

Research into the relations between religiousness and spirituality (R/S) and health outcomes has increased in recent years. Scholars from many different disciplines including psychology, medicine, epidemiology, public health, sociology, nursing, anthropology, and other fields have launched empirical investigations not only to determine if there is a relation between R/S and health but also to ascertain the direction and strength of that relation and, more importantly for present purposes, its precise nature. That is, scholars recognize that both R/S and health are complex multidimensional constructs. Thus, questions at the global level (e.g., "Does R/S predict health?") are necessarily limited. More precise questions of the type "what aspects of R/S predict what dimensions or measures of health?" are likely to produce stronger and more consistent empirical findings.

It is in this context that the BMMRS was conceptualized and developed. Idler and colleagues (2003) describe specific procedures regarding delineation of domains as well as development and selection of items. An excellent summary may be found in Piedmont, Mapa, and Williams (2007). Briefly, the BMMRS was designed to provide a single-source measure of what are considered important domains of R/S that are likely to be significant for health outcomes research. Further, the instrument was to include both religiousness and spirituality. It was understood that though these terms are related, many investigators

view them as distinguishable from one another. Thus, the authors of the BMMRS concluded that spirituality is generally concerned with the transcendent, addressing ultimate questions about life's meaning with the guiding belief that there is more to life than only what is seen or understood. Religiousness, on the other hand, is often the path to development of spirituality, but it also includes specific behavioral, social, doctrinal, and denominational characteristics that may or may not promote spiritual development. According to this formulation, it is possible to be religious and not spiritual, spiritual and not religious, or both spiritual and religious. Measures of both spirituality and religiousness were included in the BMMRS.

The specific dimensions assessed by the BMMRS include daily spiritual experiences (six items), values/beliefs (two items), forgiveness (three items), private religious practices (five items), religious and spiritual coping (seven items), religious support (four items), religious/spiritual history (three items), commitment (three items), organizational religiousness (two items), religious preference (one item), and overall self-ranking of religiousness and spirituality (two items). An appendix consists of two items assessing meaning. As intended, the BMMRS (or subscales) has begun to receive attention and use by investigators analyzing R/S and health outcomes. Recently, four studies (Masters et al. 2009; Neff 2006; Piedmont et al. 2007; Stewart and Koeske 2006) investigated the psychometric properties of versions of the scale (including both the longer scale and the BMMRS). Generally, these studies provide empirical support for the multidimensional construction of the scale, though it is also clear that these dimensions are considerably correlated with one another. This led Piedmont et al. (2007) to suggest that perhaps the scale should be considered multifaceted rather than multidimensional, a characterization that Masters and colleagues (2009) supported.

Cross-References

- Religion/Spirituality
- Religiousness/Religiosity

- Spirituality
- Spirituality and Health
- Spirituality, Measurement Of

References and Readings

- Fetzer Institute. (1999). *Multidimensional measurement of religiousness/spirituality for use in health research: A report of the Fetzer Institute/National Institute of Aging working group*. Kalamazoo: Author.
- Idler, E. L., Musick, M. A., Ellison, C. G., George, L. K., Krause, N., & Williams, D. R. (2003). Measuring multiple dimensions of religion and spirituality for health research. *Research on Aging*, 25, 327–365. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0164027503252749>.
- Masters, K. S., Carey, K. B., Maisto, S. A., Caldwell, P. E., Wolfe, T. V., Hackney, H. L., et al. (2009). Psychometric examination of the Brief Multidimensional Measure of Religiousness/Spirituality among college students. *The International Journal for the Psychology of Religion*, 19, 106–120. <https://doi.org/10.1080/10508610802711194>.
- Neff, J. A. (2006). Exploring the dimensionality of “religiosity” and “spirituality” in the Fetzer multidimensional measure. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 45, 449–459.
- Piedmont, R. L., Mapa, A. T., & Williams, J. E. G. (2007). A factor analysis of the Fetzer/NIA Brief Multidimensional Measure of Religiousness/Spirituality (MMRS). *Research in the Social Scientific Study of Religion*, 17, 177–196.
- Stewart, C., & Koeske, G. F. (2006). A preliminary construct validation of the multidimensional measurement of religiousness/spirituality instrument: A study of Southern USA samples. *The International Journal for the Psychology of Religion*, 16, 181–196.

Brief Symptom Inventory

Suzana Drobnjak

Department of Psychology, University of Zurich,
Binzmuehlestrasse, Switzerland

Definition

The Brief Symptom Inventory (BSI) is a 53-item-self-report instrument. It is a short alternative to the complete Symptom Checklist-90-Revised (SCL-90-R). The BSI was designed to assess psychological symptoms during the last 7 days in medical patients, non-patients, and subjects for

experimental studies. It can be used in both cross-sectional and longitudinal studies, and it can measure chronological sequences as well as pre- and post-ratings.

The BSI is composed of nine primary symptom dimensions (somatization, obsessive-compulsive, interpersonal sensitivity, depression, anxiety, hostility, phobic anxiety, paranoid ideation, and psychoticism). It includes three global indices of distress (Global Severity Index, Positive Symptom Distress Index, and Positive Symptom Total), which measure the overall psychological distress level, the intensity of symptoms, and the number of self-reported symptoms. Each item of individual psychological stress can be answered on a 5-point scale, ranging from 0 = “not at all” to 4 = “extremely.” It takes 8–10 min to answer all items.

The interpretation of the BSI is carried out in three steps. First, the three global indices of overall distress are used. Second, each primary symptom dimension is considered in order to determine the specific areas of psychopathology. Third, individual items are focused on discrete symptoms. The optimal interpretation is dependent on the integration of information from all three source levels. The test scores are reported in terms of standardized area T-scores.

For the evaluation of the BSI, different normative data for different samples were consulted. Among these were adult non-patients, adult psychiatric outpatients, adult psychiatric inpatients, and adolescent non-patients.

Based on a sample of 719 psychiatric outpatients, reliability coefficients were established. Internal consistency (Cronbach’s alpha: 0.71 for psychoticism to 0.85 for depression) and test-retest reliabilities (Cronbach’s alpha: 0.68 for somatization to 0.91 for phobic anxiety) show a high reliability. The Global Severity Index also revealed an excellent stability coefficient of 0.90. All primary symptom dimensions of the BSI also correlate highly with the comparable dimensions of the SCL-90-R, which makes the BSI a particularly apt shorter inventory. Moreover, the BSI has a high convergent, discriminant, and construct validity.

The BSI is used by professionals like psychologists, psychiatrists, physicians, nurses, and other

healthcare professionals. It helps them to assess the psychological problems of their patients, to find an adequate support for care management decisions, and to measure and monitor patient progress during and after treatment. Furthermore, by providing aggregated patient information, the BSI is an effective tool to measure the outcome of treatment programs. The BSI is used worldwide and therefore has been translated into two dozen languages, such as Spanish, French, and Italian.

More recently, the BSI-18 has been developed. The BSI-18 is a brief 18-item-screening inventory designed to screen for psychiatric disorder in medical and community populations. The items are selected from the anxiety, depression, and somatization dimensions of the SCL-90-R and BSI.

References and Readings

- Derogatis, L. R. (1993). *BSI brief symptom inventory: Administration, scoring, and procedures manual* (4th ed.). Minneapolis: National Computer Systems.
- Derogatis, L. R., & Melisaratos, N. (1983). The brief symptom inventory: An introductory report. *Psychological Medicine*, 13(3), 595–605.
- Zabora, J., Brintzenhofesoc, K., Jacobsen, P., Curbow, B., Piantodosi, S., Hooker, C., et al. (2001). A new psychosocial screening instrument for use with cancer patients. *Psychosomatics*, 42, 241–246.

Bronchial Asthma

► Asthma: Behavioral Treatment

Bronchitis

Linda C. Baumann¹ and Alyssa Ylinen²

¹School of Nursing, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

²Allina Health System, St. Paul, MN, USA

Synonyms

Common cold

Definition

Bronchitis is a respiratory condition in which there is inflammation of the bronchi and excess mucus secretion in the airway. This excess secretion of mucus often causes a partial obstruction of the bronchi. Bronchitis can either be short lived and self-limiting (acute) or present with a recurrent productive cough (chronic).

Description

Most cases of acute bronchitis are preceded by an acute viral infection of the upper respiratory tract, but bacterial causes are also not uncommon. The most common symptom is a persistent cough accompanied by excessive production of mucus. Other symptoms include headache, chest discomfort, and shortness of breath, which is often made worse with exertion. Because acute bronchitis is generally self-limiting and will subside within 7–10 days, treatment is often supportive and antibiotic treatment is not recommended. Supportive treatment consists of fluids, rest, anti-inflammatory medications such as aspirin or acetaminophen, the use of a humidifier, and occasionally bronchodilators and cough suppressants.

Chronic bronchitis is characterized by persistent cough with excessive sputum production for at least 3 months for two consecutive years. Along with emphysema, a disease characterized by enlargement of alveoli distal to the terminal bronchiole, chronic bronchitis is one of the two major forms of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). The conditions most often coexist, and COPD is usually discussed as one disease state.

Chronic bronchitis is characterized by chronic inflammation of the airway, lung parenchyma, and vasculature. The inflamed airways result in hypertrophy of mucous glands causing excessive mucus in the airway and occlusion of small bronchi. Cycles of injury and repair of small airways cause narrowing and fibrosis. Changes in lung parenchyma result in emphysema and destruction

of the lungs over time. Typically patients have problems with hypoxemia, airflow limitation, and hyperinflation of the lungs, gas exchange abnormalities, and pulmonary hypertension.

COPD is a major cause of death in the USA and worldwide. Smoking tobacco is the major behavioral risk factor for developing COPD. Although there has been a decrease in cigarette smoking in the USA, there has been a marked increase in developing countries. Other risk factors in the development of COPD are exposure to occupational chemicals and dust, air pollution, infections, and deficiency of the α_1 -antitrypsin, which is a genetic risk factor.

COPD has both physiological and psychological consequences. Persons with COPD, when compared to the general population, experience higher rates of depression and anxiety, which can further complicate respiratory symptoms. Anxiety and depression negatively impact the quality of life of persons with COPD.

Nonpharmacological treatment modalities for COPD include cognitive behavioral therapy and pulmonary rehabilitation. Through progressive exercise, training of respiratory function, breathing exercises, education about medications, smoking cessation, and physical activity, persons with COPD are often able to achieve an increased tolerance for exercise, decreased shortness of breath, and an improved quality of life.

Pharmacological interventions include tricyclic antidepressants and selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs). Benzodiazepines can also be used but the possibility of respiratory depression can be a serious side effect and therefore they should not be a first-line medication. Although presently no drug can reduce decline in lung function associated with COPD, bronchodilators can be used to improve ventilation. Commonly used bronchodilators include β_2 -adrenergic agonists, anticholinergic agents, and methylxanthines. Oxygen therapy is also often used in treatment by raising partial pressure of O_2 in inspired air. Long-term O_2 therapy can improve survival, exercise capacity, and cognitive performance.

References and Further Readings

- Baum, A., Newman, S., Weinman, J., West, R., & McManus, C. (1997). *Cambridge handbook of psychology, health and medicine*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
- Brenes, G. A. (2003). Anxiety and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: Prevalence, impact, and treatment. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65, 963–970.
- Dains, J. E., Baumann, L. C., & Scheibel, P. (2016). *Advanced health assessment and clinical diagnosis in primary care* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Jarvis, C. (2008). *Physical examination and health assessment* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby Elsevier.
- Lewis, S. L., Heitkemper, M. M., Dirksen, S. R., O'Brien, P. G., & Bucher, L. (2007). *Medical surgical nursing: Assessment and management of clinical problems* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby Elsevier.
- Mikkelsen, R., Middelboe, T., Pisinger, C., & Stage, K. (2004). Anxiety and depression in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). A review. *Nordic Journal of Psychiatry*, 58(1), 65–70.
- West, J. B. (2008). *Pulmonary pathophysiology: The essentials* (7th ed.). Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Kelly D. Brownell was born in 1951. He completed his undergraduate education at Purdue University and earned his Ph.D. in clinical psychology at Rutgers University in 1977. He then joined the faculty in the Department of Psychiatry at the University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine where he worked for 13 years. Since 1991, Brownell has been on the faculty at Yale University where he has served in a number of leadership roles including Master of Silliman College and Chair of the Department of Psychology.

Brownell is a professor, scientist, and internationally known expert on obesity. He is the co-founder and director of the Rudd Center for Food Policy and Obesity, the director of the Yale Center for Eating and Weight Disorders, and professor of psychology, epidemiology, and public health; institute for social and policy studies; and forestry and environmental studies at Yale University.

Brownell, Kelly D. (1951—)

Lara LaCaille
Department of Psychology, University of
Minnesota Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

Biographical Information



Major Accomplishments

Brownell's early research focused predominantly on the treatment of obesity. His "Learn Program for Weight Management" (Brownell 2004), a treatment manual for patients, was first published in 1987 and has become the gold standard for behavioral weight loss interventions. Over the past decade, Brownell's emphasis has shifted to examining the deleterious effects of the "toxic food environment," the importance of obesity prevention, and the role of public policy in fighting the obesity epidemic. In particular, he has advocated for prohibiting fast foods and soft drinks in schools, restructuring school lunch programs, regulating food advertising aimed at children, taxing foods with poor nutritional value, and subsidizing the sale of healthy foods. His leadership in these efforts has been highly regarded. Time magazine identified Brownell as one of the "World's 100 Most Influential People" and referred to him as an "Obesity Warrior" due to

his extensive efforts to translate science into public policy.

Brownell has published 14 books and over 300 scientific articles and chapters. His paper on “Understanding and Preventing Relapse” (Brownell et al. 1986), published in the *American Psychologist*, was listed as one of the most frequently cited papers in psychology. He has been the recipient of numerous prestigious awards including the James McKeen Cattell Award from the New York Academy of Sciences, the award for Outstanding Contribution to Health Psychology from the American Psychological Association, the Lifetime Achievement Award from Rutgers University, and the Distinguished Alumni Award from Purdue University. In addition, Brownell has served as president of many national and international organizations, including the Society for Behavioral Medicine, the Society for Advancement of Behavior Therapy, and the Division of Health Psychology of the American Psychological Association. He was elected to membership in the Institute of Medicine in 2006.

Cross-References

► [Obesity: Prevention and Treatment](#)

References and Reading

- Brownell, K. D. (2004). *The LEARN program for weight management*. Dallas: American Health Publishing Company.
- Brownell, K. D., & Frieden, T. R. (2009). Ounces of prevention: The public policy case for taxes on sugared beverages. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 360, 1805–1808.
- Brownell, K. D., & Horgen, K. B. (2004). *Food fight: The inside story of the food industry, America's obesity crisis, and what we can do about it*. New York: McGraw-Hill/Contemporary Books.
- Brownell, K. D., & Rodin, J. (1994). The dieting maelstrom: Is it possible and advisable to lose weight? *The American Psychologist*, 49, 781–791.
- Brownell, K. D., Marlatt, G. A., Lichtenstein, E., & Wilson, G. T. (1986). Understanding and preventing relapse. *The American Psychologist*, 41, 765–782.
- Fairburn, C. G., & Brownell, K. D. (Eds.). (2002). *Eating disorders and obesity: A comprehensive handbook* (2nd ed.). New York: Guilford Press.

Built Environment

Ding Ding

Graduate School of Public Health/Department of Family Preventive Medicine, San Diego State University/University of California San Diego, San Diego, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Physical environment](#)

Definition

The widely accepted definition for the built environment was provided by the Transportation Research Board and Institute of Medicine (2005). Broadly defined, the built environment refers to “land use patterns, the transportation system, and design features that together provide opportunities for travel and physical activity” (Transportation Research Board and Institute of Medicine 2005). Specifically, land use patterns refer to “spatial distribution of human activities,” such as land use for residential, business, and recreational purposes. The transportation system refers to the “physical infrastructure and services that provide the spatial links or connectivity among activities.” Examples of the transportation system include roads, public transit, sidewalks, and bike lanes. Design refers to the “aesthetic, physical and functional qualities of the built environment.” Design features are related to both land use and the transportation system, such as greeneries, architectural design, and streetscape. The field of built environment is drawn upon interdisciplinary collaboration from urban planning, architecture, design, engineering, policy, economics, and many other areas.

Description

There has been increasing recognition in recent years about the link between the built environment

and public health. Research in this area has been guided by ecological models (Berrigan and McKinnon 2008), which emphasize multi-level environmental influences on behaviors (Hovell et al. 2009; Sallis et al. 2008). Built environment attributes of neighborhoods, such as land use, zoning, layout, design, recreation facilities, and transportation infrastructures, are associated with a series of health behaviors and outcomes (Renalds et al. 2010). The most frequently examined health outcome is obesity, as behaviors related to both energy consumption (e.g., dietary behaviors) and energy expenditure (e.g., physical activity) are influenced by the built environment (Papas et al. 2007; Sallis and Glanz 2009).

Dietary Behaviors

Food can be accessed from stores, markets, and restaurants. The number, type, location, and accessibility of food outlets are directly associated with individuals' food choices (Glanz et al. 2005). Studies consistently found that individuals living in neighborhoods with better access to healthy food outlets (e.g., grocery stores) have healthier dietary behaviors and weight outcomes (Morland et al. 2002, 2006). Conversely, individuals living in neighborhoods with little or no access to healthy food options (i.e., "food deserts" (Smith and Morton 2009)) or with concentrated fast-food restaurants have poorer diets and worse weight outcomes (Li et al. 2009; Moore et al. 2009).

Physical Activity

The association between the built environment and physical activity is complex due to the multidimensionality of both built environment and physical activity (Sallis et al. 2011). Built environment attributes related to physical activity are usually categorized as neighborhood design, transportation infrastructures, and recreation facilities.

Walkable neighborhoods (sometimes synonymous with "traditional neighborhoods" or "smart growth" neighborhoods), characterized by high residential density, good street connectivity, and

mixed land use, support physical activity, especially active transport (e.g., walking, biking for transport purpose). These types of neighborhoods provide destinations within close proximity and direct routes for walking and biking (Owen et al. 2004; Saelens and Handy 2008; Saelens et al. 2003). Access to and quality of transportation infrastructures such as sidewalks, bike lanes, and public transit systems provide opportunities for transport physical activity (Saelens et al. 2003; Sallis et al. 2009). Recreational facilities such as public parks and neighborhood streets provide locations for leisure-time physical activity (Sallis et al. 2011). On a "micro" scale, features, conditions, and amenities within parks and streetscapes such as aesthetics, cleanliness, and vegetation are related to individuals' physical activity in these locations (Ellaway et al. 2005; Kaczynski et al. 2008).

Environmental Quality

Unsustainable planning and development bring hazards and threats to the natural environment, which, in turn, affect public health (Deary 2004; Frumkin et al. 2004). Current patterns of land use and development have led to environmental consequences such as natural habitat loss, fragmentation, and water shortage (Environmental Protection Agency 2001). Urban sprawl and increasing automobile travels contribute to air and water pollutions (Deary 2004; Frumkin et al. 2004). Auto-dependent neighborhoods encourage driving, which accounts for a large proportion of greenhouse gasses emission, a major cause of global climate change (Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change 2007).

In addition to the evidence from the above areas, other studies have found associations between the built environment and other aspects of public health, such as mental health, social capital, and alcohol abuse (Renalds et al. 2010). With emerging evidence supporting the link between the built environment and public health, better policies and planning are needed to engineer health-promoting and environmentally sustainable neighborhoods.

References and Readings

- Berrigan, D., & McKinnon, R. A. (2008). Built environment and health. *Preventive Medicine*, 47(3), 239–240.
- Deary, A. (2004). Impacts of our built environment on public health. *Environmental Health Perspectives*, 112(11), A600–A601.
- Ellaway, A., Macintyre, S., & Bonnefoy, X. (2005). Graffiti, greenery, and obesity in adults: Secondary analysis of European cross sectional survey. *British Medical Journal*, 331(7517), 611–612.
- Environmental Protection Agency, U. S. (2001). *Our built and natural environments: A technical review of the interactions between land use, transportation, and environmental quality*. Washington, DC: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.
- Frumkin, H., Frank, L., & Jackson, R. (2004). *Urban sprawl and public health: Designing, planning, and building for healthy communities*. Washington, DC: Island Press.
- Glanz, K., Sallis, J. F., Saelens, B. E., & Frank, L. D. (2005). Healthy nutrition environments: Concepts and measures. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 19(5), 330–333.
- Hovell, M. F., Wahlgren, D. R., & Adams, M. (2009). The logical and empirical basis for the behavioral ecological model. In R. J. DiClemente, R. Crosby, & M. Kegler (Eds.), *Emerging theories and models in health promotion research and practice: Strategies for enhancing public health* (2nd ed.). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. (2007). *Climate change 2007: Climate change impacts, adaptation and vulnerability. Summary for policymakers. Contribution of working group II to the fourth assessment report of the intergovernmental panel on climate change*. Geneva: World Meteorological Organization.
- Kaczynski, A. T., Potwarka, L. R., & Saelens, B. E. (2008). Association of park size, distance, and features with physical activity in neighborhood parks. *American Journal of Public Health*, 98(8), 1451–1456.
- Li, F., Harmer, P., Cardinal, B. J., Bosworth, M., & Johnson-Shelton, D. (2009). Obesity and the built environment: Does the density of neighborhood fast-food outlets matter? *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 23(3), 203–209.
- Moore, L. V., Diez Roux, A. V., Nettleton, J. A., Jacobs, D. R., & Franco, M. (2009). Fast-food consumption, diet quality, and neighborhood exposure to fast food: The multi-ethnic study of atherosclerosis. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 170(1), 29–36.
- Morland, K., Wing, S., & Roux, A. D. (2002). The contextual effect of the local food environment on residents' diets: The atherosclerosis risk in communities study. *American Journal of Public Health*, 92(11), 1761–1767.
- Morland, K., Diez Roux, A. V., & Wing, S. (2006). Supermarkets, other food stores, and obesity: The atherosclerosis risk in communities study. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 30(4), 333–339.
- Owen, N., Humpel, N., Leslie, E., Bauman, A., & Sallis, J. F. (2004). Understanding environmental influences on walking: Review and research agenda. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 27, 67–76.
- Papas, M. A., Alberg, A. J., Ewing, R., Helzlouer, K. J., Gary, T. L., & Klassen, A. C. (2007). The built environment and obesity. *Epidemiologic Reviews*, 29, 129–143.
- Renalds, A., Smith, T. H., & Hale, P. J. (2010). A systematic review of built environment and health. *Family & Community Health*, 33(1), 68–78.
- Saelens, B. E., & Handy, S. L. (2008). Built environment correlates of walking: A review. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, 40(7 Suppl), S550–S566.
- Saelens, B. E., Sallis, J. F., & Frank, L. D. (2003). Environmental correlates of walking and cycling: Findings from the transportation, urban design, and planning literatures. *Annals of Behavioural Medicine*, 25(2), 80–91.
- Sallis, J. F., & Glanz, K. (2009). Physical activity and food environments: Solutions to the obesity epidemic. *The Milbank Quarterly*, 87(1), 123–154.
- Sallis, J. F., Owen, N., & Fisher, E. B. (2008). Ecological models of health behavior. In K. Glanz, B. K. Rimer, & K. Viswanath (Eds.), *Health behavior and health education: Theory, research, and practice* (4th ed.). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Sallis, J. F., Bowles, H. R., Bauman, A., et al. (2009). Neighborhood environments and physical activity among adults in 11 countries. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 36(6), 484–490.
- Sallis, J. F., Adams, M. A., & Ding, D. (2011). Physical activity and the built environment. In J. Cawley (Ed.), *The Oxford handbook of the social science of obesity*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Smith, C., & Morton, L. W. (2009). Rural food deserts: Low-income perspectives on food access in Minnesota and Iowa. *Journal of Nutrition Education and Behavior*, 41(3), 176–187.
- Transportation Research Board and Institute of Medicine. (2005). *Does the built environment influence physical activity? Examine the evidence 2005*. Washington, DC: Transportation Research Board.

Bulimia

Anna Maria Patino-Fernandez

Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Definition

The Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, fourth edition, Text Revision (APA

2000), includes as the essential features of bulimia nervosa: (1) recurrent episodes of binge eating, characterized by eating in a discrete period of time an amount of food that would be considered excessive and a sense of lack of control over eating during the episode; (2) at least two binge/purge cycles a week, on average, for at least 3 months; (3) recurrent compensatory behaviors in order to prevent weight gain, such as vomiting, fasting, excessive exercise, and/or misuse of laxatives, diuretics, enemas, or other medications; and (4) self-evaluation is unduly influenced by body shape and weight. There are more women than men affected by this disorder which is often accompanied by depression and substance abuse.

Warning signs for bulimia nervosa (NIMH 2011) include the following:

- (a) Preoccupation with food
- (b) Binge eating, usually in secret
- (c) Vomiting after bingeing
- (d) Abuse of laxatives, diuretics, and diet pills
- (e) Denial of hunger or drugs to induce vomiting
- (f) Compulsive exercise
- (g) Swollen parotid glands
- (h) Broken blood vessels in the eyes

Treatment of Bulimia Nervosa

Unless malnutrition is severe, the goal of treatment is to reduce or eliminate the person's binge eating and purging behavior. Psychotherapy has proven effective in helping to prevent the eating disorder from recurring and in addressing issues that led to the disorder (le Grange et al. 2007). As with anorexia, family therapy is recommended. Cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) has also proven effective. Research has found that family-based treatment for adolescent bulimia nervosa is more effective and shows faster treatment effects than individual-based supportive psychotherapy (le Grange et al. 2007). CBT is an effective intervention for the purging and eating behaviors and associated symptoms of depression that often accompany bulimia nervosa (Agras et al. 2000). CBT for

this disorder includes psychoeducation, self-monitoring (e.g., keeping a food diary as a way of becoming more aware of the types of situations that trigger bingeing), eliminating rigid dieting, strategies to reduce bingeing and purging, and application of behavioral strategies to establish more regular eating habits (e.g., self-reward for three meals plus two snacks at regular times of the day). CBT may also involve addressing cognitive distortions (e.g., certain foods are good or bad) and using exposure techniques for avoided food or anxiety-evoking situations. CBT is often combined with nutritional counseling and/or antidepressant medications. Reviews of antidepressant trials in adults have found short-term improvements in bulimic symptoms and a small improvement in depressive symptoms (Romano et al. 2002). No studies with antidepressants have been conducted in children with bulimia.

Cross-References

► [Eating Disorders: Anorexia and Bulimia Nervosa](#)

References and Further Reading

- Agras, W. S., Walsh, B. T., Fairburn, C. G., Wilson, G. T., & Kraemer, H. C. (2000). A multicenter comparison of cognitive-behavioral therapy and interpersonal psychotherapy for bulimia nervosa. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 57, 459–466.
- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: Author. Text Revision.
- le Grange, D., Crosby, R. D., Rathouz, P. J., & Leventhal, B. L. (2007). A randomized controlled comparison of family-based treatment and supportive psychotherapy for adolescent bulimia nervosa. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 64, 1049–1056.
- National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH). (2011). *Eating disorders*. Retrieved 12 Jan 2011 from <http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/publications/eating-disorders/complete-index.shtml>.
- Romano, S. J., Halmi, K. J., Sarkar, N. P., Koke, S. C., & Lee, J. S. (2002). A placebo-controlled study of fluoxetine in continued treatment of bulimia nervosa after successful acute fluoxetine treatment. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 151, 96–102.

Bupropion (Wellbutrin, Zyban)

Michael Kotlyar¹ and John P. Vuchetich²

¹Department of Experimental and Clinical Pharmacology, College of Pharmacy, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN, USA

²Department of Psychiatry, University of Minnesota School of Medicine, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Synonyms

Wellbutrin[®]; Zyban[®]

Definition

Bupropion is a medication that is currently approved in the United States for the treatment of major depressive disorder, seasonal affective disorder, and to assist in smoking cessation (Product Information 2010a, b). Although its mechanism of action is not clear, it (or its metabolite) appears to inhibit the reuptake of norepinephrine and dopamine with little effect on serotonin reuptake (Baldessarini 2006; Product Information 2010a). Bupropion is available in three formulations: immediate release (usually taken three times daily), sustained release (usually taken twice daily), and extended release (taken once daily) (Teter et al. 2008). When used for smoking cessation, it is recommended that bupropion be initiated 1–2 weeks prior to the day that the patient is planning to quit smoking and treatment should be continued for 7–12 weeks, with longer therapy considered to prevent relapse for those who successfully quit during initial therapy (Fiore et al. 2008; Product Information 2010b). When used to treat depression, the full therapeutic effects of bupropion may not occur for up to 8 weeks after treatment initiation, although some symptoms may start to improve sooner (American Psychiatric Association 2010; Finley 2009). The length of treatment depends on patient characteristics such

as severity of the episode of depression and number of previous episodes. Clinicians should consult the latest clinical practice guidelines for the treatment of depression for specific recommendations regarding the length of time patients should be maintained on antidepressant treatment, but depending on patient characteristics the recommendations currently range from 4 months of therapy (from the time of symptom improvement) to indefinite maintenance of therapy (American Psychiatric Association 2010; Finley 2009). Due to bupropion's activity as both an antidepressant and a drug that increases smoking cessation rates, this medication may be a good choice for patients being treated for depression who would also like to quit smoking (American Psychiatric Association 2010).

Side effects commonly associated with the use of bupropion include dry mouth, insomnia, agitation, jitteriness, skin reactions, and gastrointestinal complaints (such as nausea and vomiting) (American Psychiatric Association 2010; Teter et al. 2008). Bupropion can increase the risk of seizures and is contraindicated in patients with seizure disorders or who may be at increased seizure risk (e.g., someone with a history of eating disorder or head injury, someone who may be withdrawing from alcohol or sedative hypnotic drugs) (Product Information 2010a). Risk of seizures when using bupropion can be minimized by avoiding high doses, avoiding rapid titration, and being sure to split the total daily dose as recommended in the product labeling (e.g., three times daily and twice daily dosing for the immediate and sustained release formulations, respectively) (American Psychiatric Association 2010; Product Information 2010a). As with all antidepressants, bupropion carries a warning regarding increased suicidality, particularly in children and young adults during the initial stages of therapy (Product Information 2010a). Bupropion can also be involved in drug-drug interactions since it is a potent inhibitor of the cytochrome P450 (CYP450) 2D6 isoenzyme which is responsible for metabolizing a large number of medications (Finley 2009). Therefore, the potential for drug interactions should be considered prior to initiating or discontinuing therapy and managed as appropriate.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Cessation Intervention \(Smoking or Tobacco\)](#)
- ▶ [Depression: Symptoms](#)

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2010). Practice guideline for the treatment of patients with major depressive disorder. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 167 (10 Suppl), 1–124. Third Edition.
- Baldessarini, R. J. (2006). Drug therapy of depression and anxiety disorders. In L. S. Goodman, A. Gilman, L. L. Brunton, J. S. Lazo, & K. L. Parker (Eds.), *Goodman & Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (11th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill, Medical Publishing Division.
- Finley, P. R. (2009). Mood disorders: Major depressive disorders. In M. A. Koda-Kimble, L. Y. Young, B. K. Alldredge, R. L. Corelli, B. J. Guglielmo, W. A. Kradjan, & B. R. Williams (Eds.), *Applied therapeutics: The clinical use of drugs* (9th ed.). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Fiore, M. C., Jaén, C. R., Baker, T. B., Bailey, W. C., Benowitz, N. L., Curry, S. J., et al. (2008). *Treating tobacco use and dependence: 2008 update. Clinical practice guidelines*. Rockville: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Public Health Service.
- Product Information. (2010a). *Wellbutrin XL (bupropion hydrochloride) Extended-Release tablet*. Research Triangle Park: GlaxoSmithKline.
- Product Information. (2010b). *Zyban (bupropion hydrochloride) sustained-release tablet*. Research Triangle Park: GlaxoSmithKline.
- Teter, C. J., Kando, J. C., Wells, B. G., & Hayes, P. E. (2008). Depressive disorders. In J. T. DiPiro, R. L. Talbert, G. C. Yee, G. R. Matzke, B. G. Wells, & L. M. Posey (Eds.), *Pharmacotherapy: A pathophysiologic approach* (7th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

Definition

Coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) is a revascularization procedure used to treat the advanced manifestations of coronary artery disease (CAD). In this type of heart surgery, healthy arteries or veins from elsewhere in the body are grafted to coronary arteries to increase blood flow and oxygen supply to the myocardium (heart muscle). Grafts are placed to bypass coronary arteries significantly narrowed (stenosed) by atherosclerosis.

Description

Coronary artery bypass surgery is one of the most common operations performed in the world. The goals of CABG are to prolong survival or to relieve symptoms of myocardial ischemia (e.g., angina). Other symptoms that may be improved following CABG include dyspnea, exercise tolerance, and quality of life. First introduced in the 1950s, today's conventional CABG procedure uses cardiopulmonary bypass (a heart-lung machine) and cardioplegia (intentional paralysis of the heart). Newer alternatives in CABG include off-pump (i.e., without cardiopulmonary bypass support), beating heart, and minimally invasive endoscopic approaches. A combination of approaches may be used during a single CABG procedure depending on the assessment of patient risks and benefits and provider preference and experience. Rapid evolution of new technologies in CABG as well as in the alternative therapies available to treat CAD has resulted in conflicting evidence from disparate clinical trials and registries. Consequently, consensus is lacking about the superiority of one approach over another (Eagle et al. 2004; Morrison 2008).

Indications

The risks of CABG should be balanced against the expected symptom relief and survival benefit. CABG does not treat CAD pathophysiology. Vessel restenosis and graft blockage is common within 10–12 years following CABG (Eagle et al. 2005). Angina relieved by CABG typically recurs within 5–10 years (Bravata et al. 2007).

Bypass Surgery

Patricia Woltz
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Coronary artery bypass graft \(CABG\); Heart bypass surgery](#)

Ideally, a patient under consideration for CABG has developed medically refractory myocardial ischemia in the setting of optimal drug therapy. Indications for CABG outlined by the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association guidelines for patients with stable angina, unstable angina, or myocardial infarction (MI) are based on the extent of CAD and left ventricular function (Eagle et al. 2004). Criteria include >70% narrowing of three, and in some cases two major coronary arteries, >50% narrowing of the left main coronary artery, or left ventricular ejection fraction <0.55. The risk factors associated with mortality following CABG are the priority of the operation (emergent, urgent, or elective), advanced age, prior CABG, female gender, left ventricular ejection fraction <0.40, number of major coronary arteries with significant stenoses, and percent stenosis of the left main coronary artery. While CABG continues to be the standard of care for patients with left main and three-vessel disease (Lee et al. 2009), the evidence supporting this is being challenged by newer, alternative therapies (below).

Surgery

Prior to surgery, a coronary angiogram is conducted to estimate the extent of vessel blockage. Patients may have additional functional stress testing and perfusion imaging studies to evaluate the degree of inducible ischemia and myocardial viability.

Surgery begins with graft preparation. Internal mammary artery (IMA) grafts are preferred over other grafts because they demonstrate superior long-term patency (Umakanthan et al. 2010). When feasible to preserve its native blood flow, an IMA graft is left in situ (connected) to the subclavian artery and its peripheral end anastomosed to the coronary artery beyond the area of stenosis. Saphenous veins harvested endoscopically with small incisions at the groin and knee may be used for multiple grafts.

The number of bypasses in a single operation may range from one to six. In conventional CABG, the chest is opened via a median sternotomy. Venous blood, which must be anticoagulated and kept warm, is rerouted to a

cardiopulmonary bypass machine where it is oxygenated and then redirected back to the systemic arterial circulation. To stabilize the myocardium during graft placement, the heart is temporarily stopped using a potassium solution. Risks associated with use of cardiopulmonary bypass (e.g., thrombosis, emboli, bleeding, fluid shifts, and temporary organ dysfunction) limit the length of CABG with cardiopulmonary bypass to less than 4 h, after which time the heart is restarted with controlled electrical shocks and the sternum wired closed (Gravlee et al. 2008). The usual length of hospitalization following a conventional procedure is 4–6 days. For adequate wound healing, patients must avoid activities that put strain on the sternal incision for 12 weeks. Benefits of endoscopic CABG are smaller incisions, faster wound healing, shorter recovery times, and cost savings (Bravata et al. 2007). However, use of robotic devices, beating heart grafting, and limited visualization with endoscopic CABG procedures demand a high level of surgical skill and are more likely to result in incomplete revascularization. Recommended resources describing CABG approaches are Gomez and Gibson webcast (2007), Kuss et al. (2010), Sellke et al. (2005), and Umakanthan et al. (2010).

Complications

People undergoing CABG are at risk for the same complications as any surgery, plus some adverse events more common with or unique to CABG. The major complications associated with CABG are related to procedural success and durability. These include death, MI, stroke, neurocognitive impairment, renal dysfunction, mediastinitis, non-closure of the sternum, and need for revascularization. Myocardial infarction and stroke can occur due to emboli. Neurological abnormalities range from deterioration of intellectual function or memory to stupor or coma and may arise from hypoxia, emboli, hemorrhage, and metabolic abnormalities experienced during CABG (Knipp et al. 2004; Pepper 2005). Mediastinitis and non-closure of the wound may arise with use of IMA grafts, which alter blood flow in the chest. Restenosis and graft blockage requiring

revascularization can occur within months to years. Adverse events related to CABG surgery may be classified as perioperative or short-term (within 30 days of surgery), early (within the first year), and late effects (after the first year).

Alternative Therapy

Alternative therapies for CAD are risk factor modification, medical management, and percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI). Behavioral risk factor modification is a powerful tool that is often underemphasized in the treatment of CAD. Smoking cessation, diet modification, exercise, weight loss, and tight glycemic control in diabetics limit the progression of arteriosclerosis and prolong survival. Medical therapy for CAD includes aspirin, lipid-lowering agents (especially statins), beta-blockers, and angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors and/or angiotensin receptor blockers. Each of these drugs increases survival and has relatively few adverse outcomes (Morrison 2006). Percutaneous coronary intervention is a group of catheter-based approaches that includes balloon angioplasty, bare metal stents, and drug-eluting stents. Percutaneous methods are revascularization alternatives to CABG surgery that are less costly, less invasive, performed more rapidly, and have shorter recovery times.

Whether to manage patients medically and whether to revascularize using CABG or PCI are current controversies. Revascularization is recommended for unstable angina and evolving MI; however, it is less clear how to best manage patients with stable angina. A recent study found that medical therapy plus CABG improved long-term outcomes over medical therapy alone in the management of asymptomatic patients with severe left ventricular dysfunction (Velazquez et al. 2011). In general, the incidence of restenosis is greater in PCI compared to CABG, while CABG has greater risks of mortality, stroke, and neurological complications. Percutaneous intervention is generally indicated over CABG in the setting of an acute MI or with comorbidities other than diabetes (Morrison 2008). The newest PCI technology is drug-eluting stents which are designed to minimize restenosis in stented

vessels, a common complication of bare metal stents. Drug eluting stents challenge the superiority of CABG to PCI and comparative study is currently underway. Overall, the decision to use CABG or PCI appears to be evolving to one that focuses on the complexity of coronary anatomy, patient preferences, and potential risk and benefits depending on patients' medical states and their comorbidities (Lee et al. 2009).

References and Readings

- Bravata, D. M., Gienger, A. L., McDonald, K. M., Sundaram, V., Perez, M. V., Varghese, R., et al. (2007). Systematic review: The comparative effectiveness of percutaneous coronary interventions and coronary artery bypass graft surgery. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 147(10), 703–716.
- Eagle, K. A., Guyton, R. A., Davidoff, R., Edwards, F. H., Ewy, G. A., Gardner, T. J., et al. (2004). ACC/AHA 2004 guideline update for coronary artery bypass graft surgery: Summary article: A report of the American college of cardiology/American heart association task force on practice guidelines (committee to update the 1999 guidelines for coronary artery bypass graft surgery). *Circulation*, 110(9), 1168–1176. <https://doi.org/10.1161/01.CIR.0000138790.14877.7D>.
- Eagle, K., Guyton, R., Davidoff, R., Edwards, F., Ewy, G., Gardner, T., et al. (2005). ACC/AHA pocket guideline. In *Coronary artery bypass surgery*. Retrieved from www.americanheart.org/downloadable/heart/1112977349318CABG%202005pocket.pdf
- Gomez, M., & Gibson, D. (2007). Off pump coronary artery bypass – A beating heart procedure. In *Live webcast*. Houston: Memorial Hermann Heart & Vascular Institute. Retrieved from <http://video.google.com/videoplay?docid=9014695099760440284#>.
- Gravlee, G., Davis, R., Stammers, A., & Ungerleider, R. (2008). *Cardiopulmonary bypass: Principals and practice* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Knipp, S. C., Matatko, N., Wilhelm, H., Schlamann, M., Massoudy, P., Forsting, M., et al. (2004). Evaluation of brain injury after coronary artery bypass grafting. A prospective study using neuropsychological assessment and diffusion-weighted magnetic resonance imaging. *European Journal of Cardio-Thoracic Surgery: Official Journal of the European Association for Cardio-Thoracic Surgery*, 25(5), 791–800. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejcts.2004.02.012>.
- Kuss, O., von Salviati, B., & Börgermann, J. (2010). Off-Pump versus on-pump coronary artery bypass grafting: A systematic review and meta-analysis of propensity score analyses. *The Journal of Thoracic and Cardiovascular Surgery*, 140(4), 829–835. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jtcvs.2009.12.022.835>. e1–13.

- Lee, T. H., Hillis, L. D., & Nabel, E. G. (2009). CABG vs. Stenting – Clinical implications of the SYNTAX trial. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 360, e10.
- Morrison, D. (2006). PCI versus CABG versus medical therapy in 2006. *Minerva Cardioangiologica*, 54(4), 643–672.
- Morrison, D. A. (2008). Extent of atherosclerotic disease and left ventricular function. In *Textbook of interventional cardiology* (5th ed., pp. 72–84). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Pepper, J. (2005). Controversies in off-pump coronary artery surgery. *Clinical Medicine & Research*, 3(1), 27.
- Sellke, F. W., DiMaio, J. M., Caplan, L. R., Ferguson, T. B., Gardner, T. J., Hiratzka, L. F., et al. (2005). Comparing on-pump and off-pump coronary artery bypass grafting: Numerous studies but few conclusions: A scientific statement from the American heart association council on cardiovascular surgery and anesthesia in collaboration with the interdisciplinary working group on quality of care and outcomes research. *Circulation*, 111(21), 2858–2864. <https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.105.165030>.
- Umakanthan, R., Solenkova, N. V., Leacche, M., Byrne, J. G., & Ahmad, R. M. (2010). Coronary artery bypass surgery. In P. Toth & C. Cannon (Eds.), *Comprehensive cardiovascular medicine in the primary care setting* (pp. 263–279). New York: Springer. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-60327-963-5_13.
- Velazquez, E. J., Lee, K. L., Deja, M. A., Jain, A., Jain, A., Marchenko, A., et al. (2011). Coronary-artery bypass surgery in patients with left ventricular dysfunction. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 364(17), 1607–1616. <https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1100358>.

C

CABG

- [Coronary Artery Bypass Graft \(CABG\)](#)

Cachectin

- [Tumor Necrosis Factor-Alpha \(TNF-Alpha\)](#)

Cachexia (Wasting Syndrome)

Travis I. Lovejoy
Department of Psychiatry and School of Public Health, Oregon Health and Science University, Portland, OR, USA

Synonyms

[AIDS wasting](#); [Cancer cachexia](#); [Cardiac cachexia](#); [HIV wasting](#); [Slim disease](#)

Definition

Cachexia is a syndrome characterized by the loss of lean body tissue, often including involuntary weight loss, accompanied by increased metabolic and proinflammatory cytokine activity. It is distinct from mere weight loss due to anorexia and from

sarcopenia, which is characterized by the loss of lean body tissue replaced by fat mass with little or no resulting weight loss. Cachexia occurs in patients with chronic illnesses such as cancer, HIV/AIDS, chronic kidney disease, chronic heart failure, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

Description

Etiology

The etiology of cachexia is multifactorial. Increased inflammatory processes in the form of cytokine production lead to metabolic dysregulation, such as increased resting energy expenditure, and may contribute to heightened protein degradation accompanied by decreased protein synthesis. Many patients with cachexia will also experience anorexia (i.e., a loss of appetite) and decreased nutrient absorption in the gastrointestinal tract, which accounts for concomitant weight loss. However, the overall loss of lean body tissue observed in patients with cachexia occurs independent of nutrient uptake.

Diagnosis

The multifactorial etiology and absence of a consensus definition for cachexia presents challenges to diagnostic uniformity. Most current diagnostic systems for cachexia assess at least some of the following: (1) percentage of unintentional body weight lost in a specific time frame (e.g., the past 12 months); (2) proportion of lean body mass to

fat mass; (3) body mass index; (4) the presence of clinical symptoms such as decreased muscle strength, fatigue, and decreased appetite; and (5) abnormal biochemistry such as increased inflammatory markers.

Treatment

Treatments for cachexia aim to restore lean body mass and improve quality of life. Pharmacological treatments have focused on (1) increasing appetite and caloric intake through the use of appetite stimulants; (2) maintaining and/or restoring lean body mass with testosterone, anabolic steroids, or human growth hormone; and (3) downregulating cytokine activity through the use of systemic anti-inflammatory medications. Non-pharmacological treatments include resistance training for muscle retention, nutritional counseling and supplementation to ensure adequate macro- and micronutrient intake, and targeted amelioration of conditions that may exacerbate cachexia such as opportunistic infections in those with compromised immune systems.

Psychosocial Impact of Wasting

Although cachexia has a gradual onset, its clinical manifestation occurs somewhat rapidly and often during advanced disease stages. Considerable reductions in physical activity, coupled with decreased appetite and metabolic changes, have a significant impact on patients' quality of life. Many patients with cachexia feel shame or embarrassment about their bodily changes and distance themselves from loved ones. Decreased libido may have deleterious effects on individuals' romantic partnerships.

The Role of Behavioral Medicine

Behavioral medicine plays a key role in the treatment of patients with cachexia. Behavioral medicine professionals can provide patient education regarding cachexia treatment options, deliver interventions to improve medication adherence, and offer counseling and instruction for tailored nutrition and exercise programs. The provision of psychotherapy that addresses acute psychiatric conditions, adjustment to chronic illness, and couples issues pertaining to sexuality can help to improve overall quality of life for persons diagnosed with cachexia.

Cross-References

- [Body Composition](#)
- [Cytokines](#)
- [Sarcopenia](#)
- [Tumor Necrosis Factor-Alpha \(TNF-Alpha\)](#)

References and Readings

- Mantovani, G., Anker, S. D., Inui, A., Morley, J. E., Fanelli, F. R., Scevola, D., et al. (2006). *Cachexia and wasting: A modern approach*. New York: Springer.
- Springer, J., von Haehling, S., & Anker, S. D. (2006). The need for a standardized definition for cachexia in chronic illness. *Nature Clinical Practice Endocrinology & Metabolism*, 2, 416–417.
- Wanke, C., Kohler, D., & HIV Wasting Collaborative Consensus Committee. (2004). Collaborative recommendations: The approach to diagnosis and treatment of HIV wasting. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*, 37, S284–S288.

Caffeine

- [Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine](#)

Caloric Intake

Megan Roehrig, Jennifer Duncan and Alyson Sularz
Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Energy In; Energy Intake](#)

Definition

Caloric intake is defined as the amount of energy consumed via food and beverage. A calorie is a

unit of energy that is defined as the amount of heat energy required to raise 1 g of water by 1 °C. Calories are units that measure the energy in food as well as the energy produced, stored, and utilized by living organisms.

Daily caloric intake needs are determined by a variety of factors such as age, gender, height, weight, activity level, and genetics. Three well-documented formulas are used to calculate daily caloric needs: the Harris-Benedict equation (1919), the Mifflin-St Jeor equation (1990), and the Institute of Medicine's Dietary Reference Intake equation (2002). These equations determine the resting metabolic rate (RMR), which represents the minimum energy needed to maintain vital body functions. While the terms RMR and basal metabolic rate (BMR) are often used interchangeably, the BMR requires more stringent testing conditions and factor in calories needed based on the individual's activity level. The HHS/USDA 2005 recommendations for daily caloric intake requirements for healthy weight maintenance and prevention of obesity according to age, gender, and activity level are available at <http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/public/heart/obesity/wecan/downloads/calreqtips.pdf>.

Caloric intake can be measured using objective and subjective methods. Common objective methods are calorimetry and the doubly labeled water technique, while common subjective methods are 24-h dietary recall interviews and food diaries. Objective measurements are highly accurate but costly to implement, while subjective measurements are less expensive but subject to greater error. In fact, subjective estimates can be off by as many as 800 kcal (Beasley et al. 2004).

One pound of body weight is equal to approximately 3,500 cal. When caloric intake is equal to caloric expenditure, an energy balance is achieved and body weight is maintained. Weight loss occurs when caloric expenditure is greater than caloric intake. Conversely, weight gain is the result of greater caloric intake than caloric expenditure. Caloric imbalances in either extreme have multiple health risk implications, including obesity and eating disorders and their associated medical comorbidities.

Cross-References

► [Fat, Dietary Intake](#)

References and Readings

- Harris, J. A., & Benedict, F. G. (1919). *A biometric study of basal metabolism in man*. Washington, DC: Carnegie Institution of Washington.
- Mifflin, M., St Jeor, S., Hill, L., Scott, B., & Daugherty, S. (1990). A new predictive equation for resting energy expenditure in healthy individuals. *The American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 51(2), 241–247.
- Rolls, B., & Barnett, R. (2000). *The volumetrics weight-control plan*. New York: Harper Collins.
- Trumbo, P., Schlicker, S., Yates, A. A., Poos, M., & Food and Nutrition Board of the Institute of Medicine, The National Academies. (2002). Dietary reference intakes for energy, carbohydrate, fiber, fat, fatty acids, cholesterol, protein and amino acids. *Journal of the American Dietetic Association*, 102(11), 1621–1630.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services and U.S. Department of Agriculture. (2005). *Dietary guidelines for Americans*. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.

Cancer and Cigarette Smoking

► [Cancer and Smoking](#)

Cancer and Diet

Akihiro Tokoro

Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, National Hospital Organization, Kinki-Chuo Chest Medical Center, Sakai, Osaka, Japan

Synonyms

[Diet and cancer](#)

Definition

A field in which the relationship between cancer and diet is examined from the interdisciplinary

perspectives of basic medicine, clinical epidemiology, preventive medicine, and behavioral medicine.

Description

The relationship between diet and cancer has recently been recognized as an area of scientific interest. Dietary factors are thought to be involved in 30% of cases of cancer in developed countries and in 20% in developing countries (Marian 2010).

In 2004, the American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO) announced a goal of achieving prophylactic intervention for cancer prevention, with a focus placed on reduction of tobacco use, control of obesity, cancer-causing infections, and environmental carcinogens (Lippman and Bernard 2004).

A WHO report (<http://www.who.int/gho/en/>) showed that 35% of adults aged ≥ 20 years old worldwide were overweight (body mass index [BMI]: ≥ 25 kg/m²) and 12% were obese (BMI: ≥ 30 kg/m²) in 2008. The rate of obesity has more than doubled since 1980.

Previous studies have suggested that unhealthy eating and lack of physical activity can affect the development and prognosis of some cancers, including breast cancer, colon cancer, and prostate cancer.

Research into the details of the association of diet with development of cancer is limited. However, a report by the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) in 2002 showed that being overweight or obese is associated with an increased risk of cancer in both men and women (International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) 2002).

Based on these data, the American Cancer Society (ACS) guidelines (American Cancer Society guidelines on nutrition and physical activity for cancer prevention <http://caonline.amcancersoc.org/content/vol56/issue5/>) recommend:

1. Maintenance of a healthy weight throughout life
2. Adoption of a physically active lifestyle
3. Consumption of a healthy diet, with an emphasis on plant sources
4. Limited consumption of alcoholic beverages

Further research is required to examine the relationship between single dietary factors and development or progression of cancer and between health behaviors, including dietary lifestyle, and cancer.

Cross-References

► [Cancer Prevention](#)

References and Readings

- American Cancer Society guidelines on nutrition and physical activity for cancer prevention. <http://caonline.amcancersoc.org/content/vol56/issue5/>
<http://www.who.int/gho/en/>
- International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC). (2002). Weight control and physical activity. In H. Vanio & F. Biaciani (Eds.), *IARC handbooks of cancer preventive effects*. Lyons: IARC Press.
- Lippman, S. M., & Bernard, L. (2004). Cancer prevention and the American Society of Clinical Oncology. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 22(19), 3848–3851.
- Marian, L. (2010). Diet and cancer. In *Psycho-Oncology* (2nd ed., pp. 22–27). New York: Oxford University Press.

Cancer and Physical Activity

Akihiro Tokoro

Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, National Hospital Organization, Kinki-Chuo Chest Medical Center, Sakai, Osaka, Japan

Synonyms

[Exercise and cancer](#); [Physical activity and cancer](#)

Definition

A field in which the relationship between cancer and physical activity is examined from the interdisciplinary perspectives of basic medicine,

clinical epidemiology, preventive medicine, rehabilitation, and behavioral medicine.

Description

The relationship between physical activity and cancer has recently been recognized as an area of scientific interest. The role of physical activity in preventing cancer has been examined in several epidemiological studies and several reviews of publications. An appropriate physical activity may reduce cancer risk and improve the quality of life of cancer patients (Marian 2010).

Epidemiological evidence suggests that physical activity is associated with a reduced risk of colon and breast cancers. Some studies have also reported the link between physical activity and a reduced risk of endometrial (uterus), lung, and prostate cancers. More good news – physically active lifestyle helps you reduce your risk of heart disease, diabetes, and osteoporosis (American Cancer Society guidelines on nutrition and physical activity for cancer prevention <http://www.cancer.org/acs/groups/cid/documents/webcontent/002577>).

Based on several publications such as the American Cancer Society (ACS) guidelines (American Cancer Society guidelines on nutrition and physical activity for cancer prevention <http://www.cancer.org/acs/groups/cid/documents/webcontent/002577>), the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) (State indicator report on physical activity 2010) and the American Institute for Cancer Research (AICR) (http://www.aicr.org/reduce-your-cancer-risk/recommendations-for-cancer-prevention/recommendations_02_activity.html) recommend at least 30 min of moderate to vigorous physical activity, above usual activities, 5 or more days a week, and they say 45–60 min of intentional physical activity is more beneficial.

Further research is required to examine the role of physical activity in cancer survivorship and its correlation with quality of life and reduced cancer risk. The National Cancer Institute (NCI)-funded studies are exploring the ways in which physical activity may improve the prognosis and quality of life of cancer patients and

survivors (National Cancer Institute fact, sheet, physical activity and cancer).

Cross-References

- [Cancer and Diet](#)
- [Cancer Prevention](#)
- [Exercise](#)
- [Physical Fitness](#)

References and Readings

- American Cancer Society guidelines on nutrition and physical activity for cancer prevention. <http://www.cancer.org/acs/groups/cid/documents/webcontent/002577>
- http://www.aicr.org/reduce-your-cancer-risk/recommendations-for-cancer-prevention/recommendations_02_activity.html
- Marian, L. (2010). Exercise and cancer. In *Psychoncology* (2nd ed., pp. 28–32). New York: Oxford University Press.
- National Cancer Institute fact, sheet, physical activity and cancer. <http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/factsheet/prevention/physicalactivity>
- State indicator report on physical activity. (2010). http://www.cdc.gov/physicalactivity/downloads/PA_State_Indicator_Report_2010

Cancer and Smoking

Monica Webb Hooper

Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Coral Gables, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Cancer and cigarette smoking](#); [Cancer and tobacco smoking](#); [Lung cancer and smoking](#)

Definition

A cancer diagnosis represents a heterogeneous class of diseases characterized by uncontrolled growth of malignant cells in the body. These cells form a tumor that starts in the epithelium,

invades organs of the body and nearby tissue, has the capacity to metastasize to other sites through the bloodstream or lymph nodes, and may recur after surgical removal. The development of cancer may be influenced by hereditary and/or environmental factors.

Tobacco smoking is defined as the practice of burning and inhaling tobacco. The combustion from the burning allows the nicotine, tar, and other chemicals and toxins to be absorbed through the lungs. Cigarette smoking is the most prevalent form of consuming tobacco. Most national surveys define a current smoker as having smoked at least 100 (five packs) cigarettes in their lifetime and currently smokes on at least some days.

Description

Over 46 years of scientific research, including 29 reports from the US Surgeon General, has led to the unequivocal conclusion that cigarette smoking causes cancer. But, Dr. John Hill, first deduced that snuff (smokeless tobacco) might be cancerous in “Cautions Against the Immoderate Use of Snuff,” written in 1761 (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services [USDHHS] 1982). The earliest scientific investigations on the positive association between smoking and cancer were published in the 1920s and 1930s (USDHHS 1982). In 1950, four retrospective studies examining the smoking histories of lung cancer patients compared to controls were published, all indicating a positive link between smoking and cancer. The first Surgeon General’s report with sufficient evidence to declare that smoking causes lung cancer was published in 1964 (U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare [USDEW] 1964). At that time, smoking was causally linked to lung cancer among men, but there was insufficient evidence among women. Early on, the most prevalent lung cancers, squamous cell and epidermoid, were specifically associated with smoking. It was also found that the frequency of oat-cell and adenocarcinoma was greater among smokers compared to nonsmokers. In 1968, the Surgeon General’s report concluded that smoking also caused lung

cancer in women (USDHEW 1968). Lung cancer remains the most common form of cancer among men and women.

Cigarette smoking is responsible for the majority of deaths due to cancer. Between 1995 and 1999, over 70% of cancer deaths among US males were attributable to smoking (USDHHS 2004). During the same years, over 50% of cancer deaths among women were due to smoking. This corresponds to almost 1.5 million years of potential life lost among men, and almost 1 million years among women (USDHHS).

Some have questioned how a causal relationship could be determined between cigarette smoking and cancer. This is largely because random assignment and a control group are necessary preconditions to conclude that a cause-and-effect connection exists. However, the accumulation of robust associations over a long period of time can also be used to establish causality. The criteria used by the Surgeon General’s report included the following: (1) the consistency of association; (2) the robustness of association; (3) the specificity of association; (4) the temporal nature of association; (5) the rationality of association; and (6) experimental and clinical autopsy-based evidence (USDHEW 1967). Using these criteria, there is no doubt that cancer is caused by smoking.

Since the finding that smoking definitively causes cancer, the prevalence of cigarette smoking has declined. In 1965, the overall smoking prevalence was 42%, which decreased to 33% by 1971 (USDHEW 1971). The rates of smoking sharply declined in the USA, although there was no change in the absolute number of smokers (53 million) over the 20-year period between 1951 and 1971. Since 2004, smoking rates have leveled off at about 20%. In 2010, 19.3% of adults (45 million) were current smokers (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2011). The past decade witnessed an overall decline in the prevalence of cancer in the USA, which is directly related to declines in smoking.

With each Surgeon General’s report, the evidence explicating the types of cancers caused by smoking have increased. It is now well established that smoking damages almost every

organ in the human body and causes at least 15 types of cancer (Table 1). There is a dose–response relationship between cancer mortality and the number of cigarettes smoked per day (USDHHS 1982). Smoking a greater number of daily cigarettes leads to increased exposure to the 7,000 chemicals and toxins contained in each cigarette (USDHHS 2010). Although addictive, the nicotine in cigarettes is not the source of cancer development. Rather, it likely results from the effects of the 69 carcinogens contained in cigarettes (USDHHS 2010). There are several key chemicals in cigarettes that are known to be cancer causing in humans (Table 2). Among these dangerous chemicals are formaldehyde and arsenic.

The mechanisms that explain the causal relationship between smoking and cancer are complex. Genetic predisposition and polymorphisms

are related to cancer risk among smokers and non-smokers (USDHHS 2010). Inhalation of the chemicals and toxins in cigarette smoke initiates genetic and cellular processes that lead to malignant tumor development. To date, the unique contribution of the carcinogens found in cigarettes to cancer is not fully known. But the evidence suggests that cigarette smoking leads to DNA damage. Repeated exposure to cancer-causing agents alters major cellular pathways through genetic mutation and the growth of DNA adducts. DNA adducts (i.e., DNA pieces that are chemically bonded to a carcinogen) are formed by cytochrome P-450 enzymes, which metabolize the carcinogens in cigarette smoke. Smokers with polymorphisms in the GSTM1 and CYP1A1 genes appear to have greater frequencies of DNA adducts compared to those without these polymorphisms. These processes facilitate unconstrained cell increases and inhibit the immune system’s ability to reduce their progression and range.

Cigarette smoking is the single most important avoidable cancer risk behavior. Smoking cessation is the only method for stopping the pathogenic processes that ultimately lead to cancer. Thus, quitting smoking reduces the likelihood of a cancer diagnosis. A former smoker’s chance of developing cancer declines gradually over time and depends on the extent of exposure to cigarette smoke. With the increasing duration of cessation, the overall rate of cancer mortality approaches that of nonsmokers (USDHHS 1982). Ex-smokers of 15 years or more have lung cancer rates only two times greater than never-smokers.

The prevalence of smoking among people diagnosed with cancer approximates the national average. Many people erroneously believe that once a person has been diagnosed with cancer, the damage is already done; thus, there is no benefit of smoking cessation (USDHHS 1990). However, the evidence indicates that continued smoking among cancer patients negatively affects their prognosis. Specifically, smoking is associated with increased risks of recurrence, a second cancer, and decreased efficacy of cancer treatment. Thus, smoking cessation is also important for cancer patients and survivors.

Cancer and Smoking, Table 1 List of cancers caused by smoking

Lung cancer	Acute myeloid leukemia
Esophageal	Larynx
Stomach	Oral cavity
Pancreatic	Pharynx
Bronchial	Trachea
Kidney	Renal pelvis
Uterine cervical	Nasal cavity
Urinary bladder	

Cancer and Smoking, Table 2 Examples of known carcinogens in cigarette smoke (humans)

Category	Name
Aldehydes	Formaldehyde
Aromatic amines	2-naphthylamine
	4-aminobiphenyl
Metals and inorganic compounds	Arsenic
	Beryllium
	Nickel
	Chromium (hexavalent)
	Cadmium
Organic compounds	Vinyl chloride
Volatile hydrocarbons	Benzene

National Toxicology Program (2011)

In summary, cigarette smoking causes cancer. Indeed, smoking is the leading preventable cause of multiple cancers, including lung cancer. There is a dose–response relationship between daily smoking intensity and cancer mortality, but there is no safe level of smoking. The prevalence of smoking has declined since the first Surgeon General’s report directly linking smoking to cancer, but about 20% of the US population continues to smoke. All of the biological mechanisms by which smoking leads to cancer are not yet elucidated; but it is known that smoking leads to DNA damage and reduces the immune system’s ability to rid the body of cell overgrowth. Smoking cessation is the best way to reduce the risk of cancer and is beneficial even after a cancer diagnosis.

Cross-References

► Smoking Cessation

References and Readings

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2011). Vital signs: Current cigarette smoking among adults aged ≥ 18 years – United States, 2005–2010. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 60, 1207–1212.
- National Toxicology Program. (2011). *Report on carcinogens* (12th ed., 499 p.). Research Triangle Park: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Toxicology Program.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (1982). *The health consequences of smoking: Cancer. A report of the surgeon general*. Rockville: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Office on Smoking and Health. DHHS Publication No. (PHS) 82-50179.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (1990). *The health benefits of smoking cessation. A Report of the Surgeon General*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Office on Smoking and Health. DHHS Publication No. (CDC) 90-8416.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2004). *The health consequences of smoking: A report of the surgeon general*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Office on Smoking and Health.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2010). *How tobacco smoke causes disease: The biology and behavioral basis for smoking-attributable disease: A report of the surgeon general*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Office on Smoking and Health.
- U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare. (1964). *Smoking and health: Report of the advisory committee to the surgeon general of the public health service*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, Public Health Service, Center for Disease Control. PHS Publication No. 1103.
- U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare. (1967). *The health consequences of smoking. A public health service review: 1967*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, Public Health Service, Health Services and Mental Health Administration. PHS Publication No. 1696.
- U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare. (1968). *The health consequences of smoking. 1968 supplement to the 1967 public health service review*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, Public Health Service, 1. DHEW Publication No. 1696 (Suppl.).
- U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare. (1971). *The health consequences of smoking. A report of the surgeon general: 1971*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, Public Health Service, Health Services and Mental Health Administration. DHEW Publication No. (HSM) 71-7513.

Cancer and Tobacco Smoking

► Cancer and Smoking

Cancer Cachexia

► Cachexia (Wasting Syndrome)

Cancer of the Uterine Cervix

► Cancer, Cervical

Cancer Prevention

Toru Okuyama

Division of Psycho-oncology and Palliative Care,
Nagoya City University Hospital, Nagoya, Aichi,
Japan

Synonyms

Screening

Definition

Despite the development of modern medicine, cancer is a leading cause of death and disability. Since the development of cancer is associated with many genetic and environmental factors, efforts to prevent cancer by decreasing environmental factors have been made.

There are three levels in the cancer prevention strategy. The primary prevention is to reduce exposures to risk factors contributing to develop cancer. It includes smoking cessation, treatment of viral infections including papillomavirus, hepatitis B and C virus, diet, physical activity, reducing exposures to sunshine, ionizing radiation, or some harmful material such as aniline dyes, benzenes, and asbestos. Currently, at least one-third of all cancer cases are thought to be preventable via avoiding these risk factors.

The secondary prevention intends to promote early detection and early treatment and, therefore, reduces significant morbidity or mortality by cancer. Screening cancers is the main attempt but has been proven effective for relatively few types of cancer, with a few exceptions. The U.S. Preventive Services Task Force currently recommends cervical cytology testing for cervical cancer screening, mammography for screening breast cancer, and fecal occult blood testing, sigmoidoscopy, or colonoscopy for screening colorectal cancer.

Tertiary prevention involves activities to minimize the negative impact or outcome of cancer and maximizing the quality of life after developing cancer. Some risk factors for the development of

cancer may accelerate the advance of cancer and result in early recurrence or shorter survival. Examples include negative effects of continued smoking after development of lung cancer on survival and high fat consumption in promoting breast cancer recurrence. This level also includes rehabilitation programs and patient support programs.

Cross-References

- [Cancer Screening/Detection/Surveillance](#)
- [Prevention: Primary, Secondary, Tertiary](#)

References and Readings

- American Cancer Society Cancer Prevention & Early Detection Facts & Figures. (2008). Retrieved March 29, 2012, from <http://www.cancer.org/Research/CancerFactsFigures/CancerPreventionEarlyDetectionFactsFigures/cancer-prevention-early-detection-facts-figures-2008>
- Smith, R. A., Cokkinides, V., Brooks, D., Saslow, D., Shah, M., & Brawley, O. W. (2011). Cancer screening in the United States, 2011: A review of current American Cancer Society guidelines and issues in cancer screening. *CA: A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 61(1), 8–30.
- U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Retrieved March 29, 2012, from <http://www.ahrq.gov/clinic/uspstfix.htm>

Cancer Risk Perceptions

Michael E. Stefanek

Department of Psychological Sciences, Augusta
University, Augusta, GA, USA

Synonyms

Health risk; Likelihood judgments; Risk perception

Definition

Risk is the likelihood that something will happen. *Risk* is a combined function of the probability of loss and the consequences of loss (e.g.,

severity of loss in the physical, psychological, social, and economic realms).

Risk is a population-based measure, the chance of something happening, as determined by its occurrence among a large group of people over time. An individual's risk varies considerably within a given numerical boundary of a population's risk, due to variations in personal, genetic, environmental, and behavioral factors.

Risk communication is the communication with individuals (not necessarily face to face) which addresses knowledge, perceptions, attitudes, and behavior related to risk.

Cancer risk perception is the judgment, based on cognitive and affective factors, of the chances that a given individual will develop cancer over a certain period of time. It can be significantly influenced by the way in which an individual's risk is communicated to him or her. Both "thinking" and "feeling" are critical components of risk perception in general and cancer risk perception in particular.

Description

The issue of risk perception and communication in the cancer arena has received increasing attention over the past decade (Klein and Stefanek 2007; Peters et al. 2006; Rothman and Kivniemi 1999). This is due in large part to the increasing awareness that the judgment that people make about their likelihood of developing cancer has important implications. At the level of the individual, risk perceptions guide protective action, such as not smoking, exercise and dieting behavior, and undergoing screening tests for early detection of cancer. If the perception of risk is underestimated, such protective action may not occur. If the perception exceeds the objective risk, such perception may cause anxiety, depression, and stress or may even result in excessive screening behaviors or indulgence in "alternative" health practices that have no evidence base. At the community level, risk perceptions may guide responses by communities concerned about "cancer clusters" in their immediate environment,

what might be causing such excess cancers, and what is needed to fix the problem. At the policy level, risk perceptions may influence funding for cancer research and the development of guidelines for screening to detect cancer early or genetic tests to identify individuals who may inherit a higher risk of developing cancer.

Risk Perceptions and Health Behavior

Arguably the most critical issue determining the importance of risk perceptions is determining if such perceptions promote healthy behavior. Outside of the cancer realm, a recent meta-analysis of vaccination behaviors did indeed find a consistent relationship between risk perceptions and behavior, supporting the role of risk perceptions as a core concept in health behavior theories (Brewer et al. 2007). Reviewing the link between risk perception and behavior in cancer, the relationship is present, but appears modest. A solid summary of this data is provided by McCaul et al. (2009) and a systematic review by Edwards et al. (2006) focusing upon personalized risk communication for informed decision making related to screening tests. These summaries note a generally positive relationship in areas such as mammography screening and smoking cessation, but also report that such relationships may have any number of mediators or moderators involved in this risk perception – health behavior link, including worry, barriers to change, or the presence of a family history of cancer. Given the modest relationship between risk perceptions and health behaviors linked to cancer prevention or early detection, it is not surprising that direct evidence that changing risk perceptions will cause subsequent changes in behavior is less available. However, there is indirect evidence that such changes may occur. McClure (2002) reviewed a series of studies of interventions that have provided biomarker data (carbon monoxide feedback to smokers) and supported the role of changes in risk perception in smoking cessation. There is also some evidence that using "teachable moments" such as the diagnosis of cancer to

support smoking cessation may be productive, linked perhaps to a new appreciation of one's risk of death (McBride and Ostroff 2003).

In sum, risk perception is but one of a number of variables impacting health behaviors most critical to cancer control such as healthy eating, physical activity, tobacco use, excessive alcohol intake, excessive sun exposure, and appropriate utilization of cancer screening tests.

Given the data to date that support the role of risk perception in cancer control, it is important to have an understanding of the processes involved in how people develop their perception of risk, how it is measured, and future research needed to develop our understanding of cancer risk perceptions.

Risk Perception: The Role of Affect and Cognition

How do people think about risk? It is now recognized that our perceptions of risk are influenced by a host of cognitive and affective variables. In addition, "how" risk is communicated impacts how our perception of the risk of cancer may be formed. These processes often lead to biases and misperceptions that influence both laypeople and health-care providers. There are a host of such processes to consider, many reviewed by Klein and Stefanek (2007), Peters et al. (2006), and McCaul et al. (2009) in the context of cancer control and well explained by Slovic (2010) in a more general overview of risk and risk communication. A number of such cognitive processes involve mental "shortcuts" or "heuristics." Very briefly, these heuristics can be thought of as "rules of thumb" that are used often automatically to influence the perception of risk. These include the availability heuristic, representativeness heuristic, the anchoring heuristic, and the affect heuristic. As one example, the availability heuristic refers to the common practice of making judgments about the frequency of an event based upon the information that is most readily available. If such information is unrepresentative or incomplete, the subsequent

judgment will be inaccurate. For instance, if someone is in the process of scheduling a flight and is exposed to several stories of airline crashes, this may make the person feel relatively more at risk than driving to his or her destination. Likewise, when someone hears a story of celebrities developing cancer, perhaps by repeated media exposure, he or she may overestimate the risk of developing similar cancers. While such "heuristics" may indeed be helpful and accurate, they hold the potential for very inaccurate estimates of risk.

In addition to cognitive influences, there is a growing appreciation of the role of "affect" or emotion in risk perception (Slovic 2010). It has become clearer that people process information through two distinct modes: deliberative and experiential (Slovic 2010), following what has become known as the "dual process" theory of thinking, with the "deliberative" system being logical, analytical, slower, and the "experiential" system being more affective, intuitive, and fast. While it is assumed that these systems interact in forming risk perceptions, much work is needed to determine how this process plays out in forming risk perceptions. The role of the "experiential" system may be even more contributory in the area of cancer risk perception, given the fear and anxiety that accompanies the image of cancer development and treatment.

Confidence in one's risk judgments may impact decision making and behavior. Uncertainty may reduce the motivation to take protective action. With greater conviction of perceived risk, the level of perceived risk may be more predictive of behavior (Taber and Klein 2016). Finally, individual differences in time orientation may impact behavior change based upon risk perception. More specifically, time orientation includes how much people think about and plan for future consequences. Those who are future oriented may be more likely to have formulated risk perceptions related to illness, feel more confident about their predictions of risk, which may impact behavior. This may also be a cultural difference, as well as an individual one (Lee et al. 2017).

Conveying Risk Estimates

Thus, how risk is presented may significantly influence the perception of risk which then may impact health behavior. Risk estimates can be provided in ways that differ only in format. For instance, relative risk (RR) is most commonly used (e.g., the risk of cancer is 25% higher in group A than in group B) in medical journals and the media. Another approach is to provide the number needed to treat (NNT) (e.g., 300 people need to take medicine A in order to save 1 life). Finally, the information can be presented as an absolute frequency (1000 people took medicine A and 3 developed cancer; 1000 people did not take medicine A and 4 developed cancer). Formats for conveying risk are critical since individuals are not mathematically fluent, nor do they have stable opinions about the magnitude of any given risk (Lipkus 2007). This issue of presentation format becomes key, given the recognition over the past several years of the influence of numeracy in risk communication.

Whether perceptions of risk impact decisions and behavior relies on how messages of risk magnitudes are conveyed. It is important to emphasize that communicating risk is not equivalent to communicating numbers. In fact, there is some controversy in the field of risk perception about the degree to which presenting risk in numerical format is critical to an individual's understanding of risk over time and links to behavior change. That is, what may be key is not specific numerical reasoning, but simply whether an individual has an understanding of the risk in a general fashion, whether she or he understands the "gist" of the risk (Reyna 2004). Presenting risk verbally (e.g., "you have a somewhat higher than average risk") provides an overall sense of risk, but may fail to communicate the exact magnitude of risk, and is not helpful in making direct comparisons of risk across individuals. Numbers may be more precise than verbal representations of risk and provide a bit of scientific credibility to the risk communication, and most people express a preference for numbers. However, they do not address "gut" reactions or intuition well and do not provide clear information to individuals who may struggle

with numerical competency. This latter issue of "innumeracy" is a critical one since increasing evidence indicates that a large proportion of individuals, even highly educated ones, struggle with numbers (Lipkus et al. 2001; Schwartz et al. 1997). In fact, Schwartz et al. (1997) found that numeracy was strongly linked to being able to accurately use information about the benefit of mammography and called for more effective formats to present risks and benefits of mammography. Overall, there are few "best practices" cleanly established, although the call to present information both numerically and visually (graphs, tables) has been proposed (Lipkus 2007).

Summary and Future Directions

It is clear that cancer risk perceptions are but one of many influences on health behavior related to cancer control. However, there is growing evidence that risk perception generally and cancer risk perception specifically can impact health behavior. In addition to cognitive influences on risk perception, it is essential to acknowledge the role of affect in the perception of risk. This includes not only incident affect (emotional state when risk information is communicated) but also "integral" affect (i.e., affect specifically related to the risk in question). It is not in the too distant past that cancer was viewed as a death sentence, with disfiguring and toxic treatments. Thus, the image of or beliefs surrounding cancer can clearly "link" to negative affect, which may then influence the perception of risk. Another key issue is how best to convey risk information. In addition, numeracy impacts the perception of risk. Many people have problems dealing with frequencies, percentages, or fractions, which impacts accurate risk representations, and the use of verbal labeling to transmit risk information risks being less than specific and perhaps quite different in meaning than the communicator(s) of such risk meant to transmit.

Continuing research is needed to determine how best to present risk while also utilizing what we do know about presenting such information in as "transparent" a manner as possible (Kutz-Micke et al. 2008). We must also continue to

explore cultural differences in risk perception and how such influences may impact both perceptions and risk communication in order to intervene most effectively to enhance cancer control behaviors.

Cross-References

- [Cancer Survivorship](#)
- [Doctor-Patient Communication: Why and How Communication Contributes to the Quality of Medical Care](#)
- [Health Literacy](#)
- [Perceived Risk](#)

References and Further Reading

- Brewer, N. T., Chapman, G. B., Gibbons, F. X., Gerrard, M., McCaul, K. D., & Weinstein, N. D. (2007). Meta-analysis of the relationship between risk perception and health behavior: The example of vaccination. *Health Psychology, 26*(2), 136–145.
- Edwards, A. G. K., Evans, R., Dundon, J., Haigh, S., Hood, K., & Elwyn, G. J. (2006). Personalised risk communication for informed decision making about taking screening tests. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 4*, 1–66. <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD001865.pub2>.
- Klein, W. M., & Stefanek, M. (2007). Cancer risk elicitation and communication: Lessons from the psychology of risk perception. *CA: a Cancer Journal for Clinicians, 57*, 147–167.
- Kutz-Micke, E., Gigerenzer, G., & Martignon, L. (2008). Transparency in risk communication: Graphical and analog tools. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences, 1128*, 18–28.
- Lee, S., Liu, M., & Hu, M. (2017). Relationship between future time orientation and item nonresponse on subjective probability questions: A cross-cultural analysis. *Journal of Cross-Cultural Psychology, 48*, 698–717.
- Lipkus, I. M. (2007). Numeric, verbal, and visual formats of conveying health risks: Suggested best practices and future recommendations. *Medical Decision Making, 27*, 696–713.
- Lipkus, I. M., Samsa, G., & Rimer, B. (2001). General performance on a numeracy scale among highly educated samples. *Medical Decision Making, 21*, 7–44.
- McBride, C. M., & Ostroff, J. S. (2003). Teachable moments for promoting smoking cessation: The context of cancer care and survivorship. *Cancer Control, 10*, 325–333.
- McCaul, K. D., Magnan, R. E., & Dillard, A. (2009). Understanding and communicating about cancer risk. In S. M. Miller, D. J. Bowen, R. T. Croyle, & J. H. Rowland (Eds.), *Handbook of cancer control and behavioral science* (pp. 133–150). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association Press.
- McClure, J. B. (2002). Are biomarkers useful treatment aids for promoting health behavior change? *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 22*, 200–207.
- Peters, E., McCaul, K., Stefanek, M., & Nelson, W. (2006). A heuristics approach to understanding cancer risk perception: Contributions from judgment and decision-making research. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine, 31*(1), 45–52.
- Reyna, V. F. (2004). How people make decisions that involve risk. *Current Directions in Psychological Science, 13*(2), 60–66.
- Rothman, A. J., & Kiviniemi, M. T. (1999). Treating people with information: An analysis and review of communicating health risk information. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute Monographs, 25*, 44–51.
- Schwartz, L. M., Woloshin, S., Black, W. C., & Welch, G. H. (1997). The role of numeracy in understanding the benefit of screening mammography. *Annals of Internal Medicine, 127*, 966–972.
- Slovic, P. (2010). *The feeling of risk*. Washington, DC: Earthscan.
- Taber, J. M., & Klein, W. M. (2016). The role of conviction in personal disease risk perceptions: What can we learn from research on attitude strength? *Social and Personality Psychology Compass, 10*, 202–218.

Cancer Screening/Detection/Surveillance

Tainya C. Clarke and David J. Lee

Department of Epidemiology and Public Health,
Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Cancer prevention](#)

Definition

Cancer screening is the use of diagnostic tests and procedures to detect the presence of cancerous tissue before it is symptomatic. There are recommended routine screening tests for some of the more prevalent cancers. The parameters (such as age, time intervals) set for screening

recommendations increase the likelihood that tests may detect the disease rather than the disease presenting itself symptomatically.

Description

According to the President's Cancer Panel, 41% of Americans will develop cancer in their lifetime (Reuben 2010); however, data from the National Health Interview Survey indicates that only 75% of the US population adheres to recommended routine colorectal, breast, cervical, and prostate cancer screenings (National Health Interview Survey [NHIS] 1997–2010). Screening is important because it increases the probability of finding a cancerous growth in its early stage, despite the lack of any noticeable symptoms. Finding a cancerous growth in its earliest stage (i.e., during its period of *sojourn*), or in some cases before it becomes *palpable*, increases the likelihood of successfully treating the disease before it spreads. Additionally, there must be sufficient evidence that treatment initiated earlier as a result of screening will lead to an improved outcome (National Cancer Institute [NCI] 2011).

Cancer screening may reveal no tumor or the presence of a cancerous growth, which is then classified by stage. The concept of *staging* as a general classification of localized, regional, and distant disease was developed in the 1940s (NCI 2011). Staging describes the severity of a person's cancer based on the extent of the primary tumor. One of the more detailed and more widely used staging systems is the *Tumor, Node, Metastasis (TNM) system*. In the TNM system, the tumor size, the status of the lymph nodes, as well as the status of distant metastases (spreading to other parts of the body) are also categorized (NCI 2011). The statuses of these core elements are aggregated into stages 0 through 4 and are associated with the likelihood of disease survival. Adherence to recommended routine screenings usually leads to discovery of tumors in their earliest stage. This includes *in situ*, where any abnormal cells present are only in the layer of cells in which they developed, or *localized*, wherein the

cancer is limited to the organ in which it originated, and has not spread.

There are several recommended routine cancer screenings, most of which are age specific, some of which are gender specific (Table 1). Recommendations to patients are usually made by primary care physicians, but most screening tests are performed by physicians or technicians specializing in that particular field. Adherence to recommended routine cancer screening has led to the discovery of early stage tumors and has prevented the development of advance stage cancers. This has in turn resulted in an increase in quality adjusted life years and saves thousands of dollars in medical expenditure. There are several cancer registries in the USA which maintain records of reported tumors and that work closely with hospitals, cancer research centers, and agencies responsible for cancer surveillance. The continued surveillance of screening behavior within the population, the chronicling of cancer staging in addition to monitoring associated morbidity and mortality rates provide valuable information treatment and survival.

Cancer surveillance and screening are carried out by several agencies and responsible programs such as the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program of the National Cancer Institute (NCI), and the Center for Disease Control's National Program of Cancer Registries-Cancer Surveillance System (NPCR-CSS). Cancer surveillance involves the measurement and monitoring of cancer incidence, survival, morbidity, and mortality for persons with cancer. Surveillance also assesses of genetic predisposition of a population, environmental risks in addition to population cancer health and risk behavior (NCI 2010a).

Cancer screening is not without controversy, and there are ongoing debates regarding whether the harms associated with some tests outweigh their benefits. Screening tests may present unnecessary physical and psychological risks for persons being tested. Some screening procedures have been known to cause bleeding, while others have resulted in perforation of the lining of sensitive organs (Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report [MMWR] 2010) (see Table 1). The risks

Cancer Screening/Detection/Surveillance, Table 1 Advantages and disadvantages of some common cancer screening tests

Screening exam		Current recommendations	Benefits/advantages	Risks/disadvantages
Breast cancer screening	Mammography (a digital or film x-ray picture of the breast)	Women ≥ 40 years should have mammograms every 1–2 years	Only proven reliable method of detection of small abnormal tissue growths confined to the milk ducts (ductal carcinoma in situ)	False positive- which may lead to unnecessary additional testing
		Women who are at higher than average risk of breast cancer should talk with their health care providers regarding frequency of screening and age at which to start	Detects all types of breast cancers, including invasive ductal and lobular cancers	Over diagnosis may lead to the treatment of clinically insignificant cancers. This may result in breast deformity, thromboembolic events, lymphedema, development of new cancers, or toxicities due to chemotherapy
	Clinical breast exam	Every 3 years for women in their 20s and 30s and every year for women ≥ 40 years	Lead to a decrease in breast cancer cause specific mortality among women 50–69 years	False-negatives lead to a false sense of security and a delay in cancer diagnosis
Cervical cancer screening	Pap test	Recommended for women at least 3 years after having first vaginal intercourse, but no later than 21 years old	Reduces mortality from cervical cancer by finding cancers when they are most treatable	Regular Pap tests lead to additional diagnostic procedures (e.g., colposcopy) and treatment for low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (LSIL), with long-term consequences for fertility and pregnancy
		Regular Pap test every 1 year or newer liquid-based Pap test every 2 years		
		Women ≥ 30 who have had 3 consecutive normal Pap test results may get screened every 2–3 years. Women ≥ 30 years may also get screened every 3 years with either the conventional or liquid-based Pap test, in addition to the human papilloma virus (HPV) test		
		Women ≥ 70 years with three or more consecutive normal Pap tests in and no abnormal Pap test results in the last 10 years may choose to stop having Pap tests		
		Women who have had a total hysterectomy for non-cancer related		

(continued)

Cancer Screening/Detection/Surveillance, Table 1 (continued)

Screening exam		Current recommendations	Benefits/advantages	Risks/disadvantages
		reasons may stop having Pap-tests		
Colorectal screening	Flexible sigmoidoscopy	Men and women ≥ 50 years	Allows the doctor to view the rectum and the entire colon	Examines only the rectum and the lower part of the colon. Any polyps in the upper part of the colon will be missed
		Every 5 years ^a , or	Doctor can perform a biopsy and remove polyps or other abnormal tissue during the test, as needed	
	Colonoscopy	Every 10 years, or		Requires thorough cleansing of the colon before the test. Some form of sedation is used in most cases
	CT colonography (virtual colonoscopy)	Every 5 years ^a		Risks tearing or perforation of the lining of the colon
	Double-contrast barium enema	Every 5 years ^a , or		cannot perform a biopsy or remove polyps during the test
	Fecal occult blood test (gFOBT)	Annually ^b , or	Not an invasive procedure, hence complications are rare	Additional procedures are necessary if the test indicates an abnormality
	Fecal immunochemical test (iFOBT/FIT)	Annually ^b , or	No sedation is necessary	Fecal tests fail to detect most polyps and some cancers
			No cleansing of the colon is necessary	Dietary changes recommended a few days prior to gFOBT but not iFOBT
			FOBT does not cause bleeding, tearing or perforation of the lining of the colon	Colonoscopy required if the test indicates an abnormality
Digital rectal exam (DRE)	Annually	Interval uncertain (possibly 3–5 years) ^b	No cleansing of the colon is necessary	Only detects abnormalities in the lower part of the rectum
Stool DNA test (sDNA)	Interval uncertain (possibly every 3–5 years)			
Prostate cancer screening	Prostate specific antigen (PSA) blood test	Discuss with physician the pros and cons of receiving a baseline PSA and if conducted, when another test would be necessary	Detects the disease in its early stage among high risk men	Detects small non life threatening cancers that leads to over diagnosis and complications from unnecessary treatment
	PSA velocity test (How PSA measures rise over time)			Causes unnecessary anxiety
	PSA density test (Ratio of PSA level to size of prostate gland)	Men at higher than normal risk (Blacks, men whose father, brother or		Elevated PSA levels may be due to other noncancerous conditions such as benign prostatic

(continued)

Cancer Screening/Detection/Surveillance, Table 1 (continued)

Screening exam		Current recommendations	Benefits/advantages	Risks/disadvantages
		son have been diagnosed with prostate cancer)		hyperplasia and prostatitis
	Percent-free PSA (Ratio of unattached PSA in blood to total PSA)	Discuss screening with physician at 45 years		
	Age-specific PSA range	Men ≥50 years discuss the harms and benefits of PSA screening with physician		
	Digital rectal exam	Men with a previous PSA of ≥4 ng/ml in the blood, should be retested if discussion with physician dictates a necessity		

^aIf the test is positive, a colonoscopy should be done
^bThe multiple stool take-home tests should be used. One test done by the doctor in the office is not adequate for testing. A colonoscopy should be done if the test is positive

of screening tests may be further increased as the test results may not always be valid (i.e., a test may fail to detect a cancerous growth, and this kind of *false-negative* result can lead to a delay in treatment and/or removal of the cancer). Contrarily, sometimes a test may detect a cancer when there is none present. This *false-positive* test result causes undue stress and anxiety and usually leads to the patient being submitted to further tests, which may also have risks (Levin et al. 2008).

The ability of a screening test to detect cancer in a person who truly has the disease (*sensitivity*) or failure to find cancer in a person who is truly negative for the disease (*specificity*) is of outmost importance in determining the gold standard for screening tests. A reliable screening test should have both high sensitivity and high specificity.

History of Screening

While cancers were being surgically removed as early as the 1700s, screening for the disease did not begin until the late nineteenth century. This was as a result of an insightful discovery by a mid-nineteenth century, German pathologist named Rudolf Virchow. Virchow discovered that cancerous tumors were the result of abnormal growth of

normal cells (McNeely 2002), which laid the foundation for early detection.

Cancer screening has evolved since its institution in the early 1900s, and advances in detection techniques have resulted in the early discovery of cancerous cell growth. This is attributed to the highly sophisticated screening tools used for various tests and procedures. The most common types of screening tests are imaging and laboratory tests. Imaging tests include x-ray mammograms for breast cancer screening and computed tomography (CT) scans used to detect or confirm the presence of brain, lung, and bone cancers, among others. Papanicolaou (Pap) tests for cervical cancer screening and prostate-specific antigen (PSA) tests for prostate cancer screening are typically confirmed by laboratory tests. Other screening tools include ultrasound, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and fine-needle biopsy. Additionally, proteomics have been used to diagnose and identify the best treatment for specific individuals, and genetic testing has been used to confirm whether women tested may have an increased probability of developing a certain type of cancer (NCI 2011).

The use of vaginal smears (Pap test) for cervical cancer screening was established in the late



1930s by George Papanicolaou (Papanicolaou and Traut 1941). Colorectal screening began in the 1940s and was conducted with a rigid proctoscope until the introduction of the flexible sigmoidoscope in the 1980s (Grossman 1998). Breast cancer screening was implemented in the 1960s (Fletcher 2011), while PSA serum test was approved for prostate cancer screening by the Food and Drug Administration in the early 1990s (NCI 2010b).

Recommending Authorities

Several authorities on cancer issues periodically update screening guidelines. Some of the more prominent agencies which make screening recommendations include the following: the American Cancer Society (ACS), the American College of Radiology (ACR), the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG), and the National Cancer Institute (NCI). The ACS, the ACR, and the NCI issue guidelines for all cancer types considered amenable to screening, while the ACOG makes recommendations for female gender-related cancers such as breast and cervical cancer screening (American Cancer Society [ACS] 2011b; American College of Obstetrics and Gynecologists [ACOG] 2009, 2011; NCI 2011). The United States Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF) is another organization that makes screening recommendations. They are a small independent panel of nongovernment medical experts who have a strong foundation in preventive and evidence-based medicine (United States Preventive Services Task Force [USPSTF] 2011). The panel usually comprises of general doctors (such as family physicians, internists, physician specialists, pediatricians, nurses, and health behavior specialists). There is some amount of disagreement regarding some screening guidelines among these different groups, especially with reference to the recent controversial changes in breast cancer screening.

The USPSTF assigns one of five letter grades to each of its recommendations; a level of certainty regarding net benefits accompanies each letter grade (USPSTF 2011). The USPSTF also

uses an I-statement/grade when there is insufficient evidence to assess the balance of benefits and harms of the recommended service. These recommendation processes and methods are outlined in a procedure manual and are based on evidence-based medicine (USPSTF 2011).

Controversial Recommendations

In 2009, the USPSTF recommended changing the breast cancer screening guidelines for women from annual mammograms beginning at age 40 to every other year beginning at age 50 after determining that the benefits of annual mammograms beginning at age 40 did not outweigh the potential risks (Pickert 2011). They argued that increased mammography screenings would lead to a greater likelihood of false positives, psychological stress, depression, overexposure to radiation, and unnecessary surgery.

The scientific panel supporting the USPSTF's decision strongly believes that much of the abnormal cell growth detected in women in their 40s could be detected in their 50s with no adverse effects from the delay. However, there have been numerous studies, including that by Anders et al. (2008), which show aggressive fast-growing cancers in younger women, which would in fact contradict the USPSTF. The ACS, ACR, ACOG, and the NCI still recommend annual screenings, beginning at age 40 (ACOG 2011; ACR 2008; ACS 2011a; NCI 2011).

Prostate cancer screening is equally contentious and is notorious for detecting false positives and false negatives. PSA testing does not distinguish tumors that would cause no harm from clinically significant tumors, which results in overdiagnosis and overtreatment (Pickert 2011). In October 2011, the USPSTF issued a 'D' grade for PSA screening, thus recalling previous recommendations of annual screenings for men who do not have an increased risk of getting the disease. The USPSTF has determined that there is a moderate or high certainty that PSA screening offers no net benefit and that the harms from associated tests and exams outweigh the benefits of the screening.

As agencies try to improve on screening recommendations and clinical practice, careful consideration must be made with regard to the public health message being communicated to the general population. New scientific discoveries, frequent changes in recommendations, and disagreements between recommending authorities cast doubts among the general public and dissuade persons from adhering to recommended screenings. In an effort to increase the number of early detections and reduce the incidence of avoidable cancers within the population, it is important to resolve existing controversies and reduce the frequency of changes in recommendations. These inconsistencies may result in confusion, mistrust, and a negative attitude and behavior toward recommended cancer screenings.

Surveillance

Public health officials often consider the proportion of the population that must participate in a screening program for one death to be prevented within a defined time interval. This proportion is dependent on the disease characteristics as well as other population parameters. Epidemiologists and population scientists often investigate the measures of risks within a particular population; this translates to the implementation of public health policy and screening guidelines as well as helps dictate the actions taken by medical practitioners.

Ongoing surveillance conducted by the aforementioned recommending authorities has identified disproportionately lower screening behavior among certain subsets of the US population. African American and Hispanics are less likely to seek recommended cancer screening compared to their non-Hispanic White counterparts (Vidal et al. 2009). Uninsured Americans and those living below the poverty income level are less likely to report having a routine place of care and thus less likely to get recommended screening advice from a medical professional. Blue-collar workers and workers in the service industry are less likely to adhere to recommended screenings when compared to persons employed in the white-collar job sector (Vidal et al. 2009). In the United States,

this information (on the noninstitutionalized civilian population) is collected and stored in several population health databases. As such, epidemiologists and behavioral scientists are able to assess the adherence to screening in conjunction with some of the more common social determinants of health and demographic information. With this information, we are also able to correctly identify groups of persons that are at a higher risk and therefore require more frequent screening. These analyses lead to reports which further drive policies and influence research and investigations into current recommendations and screening practices. It is of utmost importance to not only recommend cancer screening but also provide the public with information on the associated harms and benefits to early detection and encourage persons to take a more active role in managing cancer-related and other preventive health behavior.

The information in the table below has been adopted from the American Cancer Society and the National Cancer Institute. It provides an overview of general screening recommendations and their associated advantages and disadvantages.

Cross-References

- American Cancer Society
- National Cancer Institute

References and Readings

- American Cancer Society. (2011a). *Guidelines for early the detection of cancer*. Retrieved August 26, 2011, from <http://www.cancer.org>
- American Cancer Society. (2011b). *Cancer facts and figures 2011*. Atlanta: American Cancer Society. Retrieved August 25, 2011, from <http://www.cancer.org>
- American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. (2011). Breast cancer screening. *Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 118, 372. ACOG Practice Bulletin No. 122.
- American College of Obstetrics and Gynecologists. (2009). *ACOG announces new pap smear and cancer screening guidelines*. Retrieved August 26, 2011, from <http://www.acog.org>

- American College of Radiology. (2008). *ACR practice guideline for the performance of screening and diagnostic mammography*. Retrieved August 26, 2011, from <http://www.acr.org>
- Anders, C. K., Hsu, D. S., Broadwater, G., Acharya, C. R., Foekens, J. A., Zhang, Y., et al. (2008). Young age at diagnosis correlates with worse prognosis and defines a subset of breast cancers with shared patterns of gene expression. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 26, 3324–3330.
- Fletcher, S. W. (2011). Breast cancer screening: A 35-year perspective. *Epidemiologic Reviews*, 133, 165–175.
- Grossman, S. (1998). A new era in colorectal screening and surveillance. *The Permanente Journal*, 2, 1.
- Levin, B., Lieberman, D. A., McFarland, B., Smith, R. A., Brooks, D., Andrews, K. S., et al. (2008). Screening and surveillance for the early detection of colorectal cancer and adenomatous polyps: A joint guideline from the American Cancer Society, the US Multi-Society Task Force on Colorectal Cancer, and the American College of Radiology. *CA: A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 58, 130.
- McNeely, I. F. (2002). *Medicine on a grand scale: Rudolf Virchow, liberalism, and the public health*. London: Wellcome Trust Centre for the History of Medicine at University College.
- Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR). (2010). Surveillance of screening detected cancers (colon and rectum, breast, and cervix)-United States, 2004–2006. Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report. *Surveillance Summaries*, 59, 1.
- National Cancer Institute. (2010a). Cancer trends progress report – 2009/2010. Retrieved August 23, 2011 from <http://progressreport.cancer.gov>
- National Cancer Institute. (2010b). Cancer advances in focus: Prostate Cancer. Retrieved August 23, from <http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/factsheet/cancer-advances-in-focus/prostate>
- National Cancer Institute. (2011). *Cancer screening overview*. Retrieved August 29, 2011, from <http://www.cancer.gov>
- National Health Interview Survey (NHIS). 1997–2010. Retrieved September 3, 2011, from http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhis/quest_data_related_1997_forward.htm
- Papanicolaou, G. N., & Traut, H. F. (1941). The diagnostic value of vaginal smears in carcinoma of the uterus. *American Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 42, 193–206.
- Pickert, K. (2011, June 2). The screening dilemma. *Time Magazine* on line. Retrieved August 26, 2011, from http://www.time.com/time/specials/packages/article/0,28804,2075133_2075127_2075108-2,00.html
- Reuben, S. H. (2010). *Reducing environmental cancer risk: What we can do now*. President's Cancer Panel. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2008–2009 Annual Report.
- United States Preventive Task Force. (2011). *Recommendations*. Retrieved August 26, 2011, from <http://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org>
- Vidal, L., LeBlanc, W. G., McCollister, K. E., Arheart, K. L., Chung-Bridges, K., Christ, S., Caban-Martinez, A. J., Lewis, J. E., Lee, D. J., Clark, J., 3rd, Davila, E. P., & Fleming, L. E. (2009). Cancer screening in US workers. *American Journal of Public Health*, 99(1), 59–65.

Cancer Survivor

► Cancer Survivorship

Cancer Survivorship

Steven C. Palmer
Abramson Cancer Center, University of
Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Synonyms

Cancer survivor

Definition

Cancer survivorship, as a construct, is a recognition of the large number of individuals living with cancer and its aftermath. The term represents an expanded emphasis placing quality of life on a par with efforts to prolong and lengthen survival. Although there is general agreement that “cancer survivorship” represents a distinct concept within the cancer experience trajectory, the definition of *who* is a survivor and *when* one transitions from patient to survivor status is less clear and depends more on sociological and political considerations than empirical data. The most common definition and that preferred by the Office of Cancer Survivorship at the National Cancer Institute is that cancer survivorship starts at “the time of diagnosis” and continues “through the balance of (the survivor’s) life. Family members, friends, and caregivers are also impacted by the survivorship experience and are therefore included in this definition.”

Description

Origin

Cancer survivorship is a relatively new area of study. Only since the 1970s could more than half of those adults diagnosed with cancer expect to live at least 5 years. “Cancer survivorship,” as a construct, was introduced in the mid-1980s by the National Coalition for Cancer Survivorship. The definition introduced by the founder of that organization defines an individual as a cancer survivor from diagnosis throughout the remainder of his or her life and includes family, friends, and informal caregivers. Thus, survivorship was broadly defined and inclusive of those with whom the patient interacted intimately and from whom the patient received support. The impetus for this definition appears to be a desire to shift the focus away from the concept of the “cancer victim” to one in which individuals were seen as actively coping with the range of physical, psychological, and social sequelae that occur throughout the cancer experience from diagnosis to end of life.

Although this is the most common view of when cancer survivorship begins, other views exist, as well. Historically, the medical field has endorsed a more circumscribed definition of a cancer survivor as an individual who has completed active cancer treatment and experienced a period of at least 5 years of disease-free status. Thus, survivorship is more or less equated with “cure” of primary disease, and the focus is clearly on the aftereffects of cancer and its treatment. Others have defined a cancer survivor as “someone who has completed initial treatment and has no apparent evidence of active disease, or is living with progressive disease and may be receiving treatment but is not in the terminal phase of illness, or someone who has had cancer in the past.” Again, this focuses away from the immediate effects of cancer and treatment and toward issues of posttreatment well-being.

Characteristics of Cancer Survivors

As of 2008, there were approximately 11,900,000 cancer survivors in the United States, representing about 4% of the population. As can be seen in Table 1, cancer is disproportionately a disease of

Cancer Survivorship, Table 1 Cancer survivorship in USA by age group (2008)

Age group	Proportion of survivors
Less than 19 years	<1%
20–39 years	4%
40–64 years	36%
+65 years	59%

older adults, and almost 60% of cancer survivors are aged 65 and older, although these individuals represent only about 12% of the total population, while less than 1% of cancer survivors are aged 19 or younger. Thus, issues of cancer survivorship occur most commonly in the context of physical comorbidities that are frequent among older adults.

The number of cancer survivors is growing in the USA, due to earlier detection of breast, prostate, and colorectal cancer and, to a lesser extent, improved treatments. Currently, more than 66% of adults diagnosed with cancer can expect to live at least 5 years and 75% of children can expect to live at least 10 years following a cancer diagnosis. The total number of survivors is expected to increase at even a faster pace as the number of individuals aged 60 and older increases due to population growth and the aging of the “baby boomer” population. Simultaneously, the number of individuals who have survived cancer for a long period of time is expected to increase. Currently, more than 15% of cancer survivors have lived 20 or more years from initial diagnosis.

In terms of specific cancer sites, female breast cancer survivors represent the plurality of survivors (22%), followed by prostate cancer survivors (20%), colorectal cancer survivors (9%), gynecological cancer survivors (8%), hematological cancer survivors (8%), urinary tract cancer survivors (7%), and melanoma survivors (7%).

Racial and ethnic minorities are somewhat underrepresented among cancer survivors, particularly African Americans who represent approximately 13% of the total population but only 8% of cancer survivors. Considering all cancers, African Americans are more likely than other racial groups to die following a cancer diagnosis and

less likely to survive for extended periods (e.g., ≥ 10 years). The precise reasons for this disparity are presently unknown, but likely include a complex interplay of social, cultural, and economic factors, with access to adequate medical care and poverty playing key roles. What is clear is that following diagnosis, racial and ethnic minorities experience relatively worse outcomes including greater chance of cancer recurrence, increased mortality, and decreased overall survival times.

Seasons of Cancer Survival

In 1985, Mullen described the “seasons” of survival, each of which is centered around a different stage of disease and treatment, and each of which focuses on a specific set of concerns. These seasons, acute, extended, and permanent survival, are described in Table 2.

Long-Term and Late Effects of Cancer and Its Treatment

As noted, long-term survival is now the norm for most cancer patients. This increased survival time has come with a cost; cancer and its treatment can and often do lead to decreased quality of life. Some of these effects are caused directly by tumor burden itself, while others are related to treatment exposures. That is, they are the unintended consequences of exposure to surgery, toxic chemotherapy, and ionizing radiation, among other treatments. The side effects of cancer and its treatment can occur in physical, psychological, or social domains and are often conceptualized in terms of long-term or late effects.

Long-term effects are those side effects that arise during cancer treatment and persist following the treatment period. These effects can last for months or years following cancer treatment, but

may resolve over time. For example, many people treated with certain chemotherapies develop peripheral nerve damage during treatment that can affect hearing, balance, or touch for years afterward. *Late effects* on the other hand, are those symptoms or toxicities that are either undetected or absent during active treatment but arise only afterward. In many cases, late effects may not be recognized for years following cancer treatment. Research into the long-term and late effects of cancer and its treatment is ongoing, better understood in cases of pediatric cancer than adult-onset cancer, and not well-developed in terms of prevalence estimates or an understanding of when they might arise or how long they might last before resolving. Although many long-term and late effects of treatment are specific to particular cancer sites or treatment regimens, there are a number of common symptoms and experiences.

Physical Effects of Cancer and Its Treatment

The most common physical symptom reported by cancer patients regardless of cancer site or treatment is fatigue, with more than 50% of cancer patients reporting fatigue at some point in the survivorship trajectory. Pain is also a common long-term effect of cancer treatment, with more than 40% of cancer patients reporting pain at some point and more than one-fifth reporting pain as long as 2 years after diagnosis, most commonly resulting from surgical intervention. Other physical effects that can arise from cancer, surgery, radiation, chemotherapy, or hormonal exposures include second cancers, bone difficulties such as osteoporosis, cardiovascular and coronary dysfunction, fertility difficulties, hormonal deficiencies, sexual dysfunction, hematological problems,

Cancer Survivorship, Table 2 Seasons of survival (Mullen 1985)

Season	Disease and treatment stage	Physical concerns	Psychosocial concerns
Acute survival	Diagnosis, primary treatment	Pain control, side effects	Mortality issues, fear, distress, coping with treatment
Extended survival	Remission, completion of primary treatment	Physical limitations, treatment effects, loss of strength, fatigue	Fear of recurrence, body image
Permanent survival	Cure of disease	Long-term and late effects of treatment, second tumors, reproductive health	Employment, insurance, coping with diminished health

immunosuppression, lymphedema, pulmonary difficulties, and problems with renal function.

Psychosocial Effects of Cancer and Its Treatment

The term “distress” has been used to describe the emotional experience of cancer survivors in a nonpathologizing and nonstigmatizing manner. The most commonly used conceptualization of distress, from the National Comprehensive Cancer Network, defines it as “a multifactorial unpleasant emotional experience of a psychological (cognitive, behavioral, emotional), social, and/or spiritual nature that may interfere with the ability to cope effectively with cancer, its physical symptoms and its treatment. Distress extends along a continuum, ranging from common normal feelings of vulnerability, sadness, and fears to problems that can become disabling, such as depression, anxiety, panic, social isolation, and existential and spiritual crisis.” Thus, distress encompasses a broad range of emotional experiences that range from normative feelings of sadness and fear about the future to more chronic and interfering experiences such as depression and anxiety.

Psychosocial difficulties such as distress appear to be fairly common among early cancer survivors, although many of these difficulties are mild in severity and tend to decrease over time from diagnosis. One exception to this appears to be an increase in negative emotional experience among individuals nearing end of life or entering into palliative care.

Essentials of Survivorship Care

To improve the outcomes achieved by the ever increasing number of cancer survivors, the Institute of Medicine has outlined four components essential to quality survivorship care. First, survivorship care should focus on *prevention* of new and recurrent cancers, as well as other late effects of treatment. Second, there should be an emphasis on *surveillance* for new, recurrent, or spread of cancer as well as medical and psychosocial late effects. Third, there is a need for *intervention* to assist survivors in dealing with the consequences of cancer and its treatment. Fourth, given the

complex medical environments in which cancer survivors find themselves, *coordination of care*, particularly between specialty and primary providers, is essential to ensuring that survivors’ needs are met.

References and Readings

- Ganz, P. A. (2009). Survivorship: Adult cancer survivors. *Primary Care: Clinics in Office Practice*, 36, 721–741.
- Harrington, C. B., Hansen, J. A., Moskowitz, M., Todd, B. L., & Feuerstein, M. (2010). It’s not over when it’s over: Long-term symptoms in cancer survivors – A systematic review. *International Journal of Psychiatry in Medicine*, 40(2), 163–181.
- Hewitt, M., Greenfield, S., & Stovall, E. (Eds.). (2006). *From cancer patient to cancer survivor: Lost in transition*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press.
- Mullen, F. (1985). Seasons of survival: Reflections of a physician with cancer. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 313, 270–273.

Cancer Treatment and Management

Deidre Pereira and Megan R. Lipe

Department of Clinical Health and Psychology,
University of Florida, College of Public Health
and Health Professions, Gainesville, FL, USA

Synonyms

Chemotherapy; Radiation therapy; Surgery;
Surgical resection

Definition

Medical intervention in cancer commonly involves multiple modalities including surgery, systemic chemotherapy, and radiation therapy. For patients newly diagnosed with cancer, surgery is typically the first of these methods as it is commonly used to confirm a diagnosis, determine the severity of the disease (i.e., stage and grade),

and in some cases, for “tumor debulking.” Radiation therapy is used in more than half of all patients with cancer, either as a definitive treatment, or in combination with surgical interventions and/or chemotherapy. Finally, chemotherapy involves the use of drugs to target and destroy rapidly dividing cancer cells. As a treatment, its effectiveness is dependent upon the type and severity of disease, but it can be used to shrink tumors, control the spread of disease, or cure cancer (i.e., remission).

Description

Cancer patients are at an increased risk for psychological and physiological distress throughout the treatment and management of their disease. The most common types of treatment, as previously discussed, impact the body physically, mentally, and emotionally. Behavioral and psychosocial strategies can not only be used to supplement these medical treatments but also reduce the physical and psychological side effects of cancer treatment and management. The primary symptom of concern and of focus in the psychosocial treatment of individuals with cancer is *distress*. The National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN), an organization that has composed widely used guidelines for distress management, posits that the term “distress” is more acceptable in its use because it carries a less stigmatizing connotation. NCCN defines distress in cancer as “A multifactorial unpleasant emotional experience of a psychological (cognitive, behavioral, emotional), social, and/or spiritual nature that may interfere with the ability to cope effectively with cancer, its physical symptoms and its treatment.”

Patients are at an increased risk for distress if they have a history of a psychiatric disorder or substance abuse, are cognitively impaired, have language, literacy, or physical barriers to communication, have severe comorbid illness, experience uncontrolled physical symptoms, have spiritual/religious concerns, have inadequate social support, or have additional stressors including family conflict, financial stressors, dependent children,

limited access to healthcare, or have a history of abuse. Providers participating in the care of cancer patients should assess for these risks and also be aware of times associated with increased vulnerability for distress. Periods of increased vulnerability are often marked by times of change or novelty in a patient’s cancer experience or feelings of uncertainty. For example, awaiting diagnosis and/or treatment, altering treatment modality, transitioning into survivorship, recurrence, and end of life are often circumstances under which distress may be more likely to manifest.

In addition, distress is associated with physical side effects of disease and/or cancer treatment including pain, fatigue, nausea, and insomnia. These symptoms are very common in cancer patients and often result from psychological distress and physiological effects of cancer treatment. As such, there is a bidirectional relationship among these symptoms and distress such that unpleasant physical side effects may prompt distress while the experience of emotional distress may also exacerbate and maintain these physical symptoms.

Psychosocial cancer management and treatment must first begin with a brief distress screening. It is optimal that these be completed earlier in a patient’s cancer experience (i.e., upon diagnosis). NCCN provides a brief, validated distress screening tool that measures recent distress and the presence of factors (i.e., practical, family, emotion, spiritual, or physical problems) that may contribute to distress. Patients who endorse clinically significant levels of distress should then be referred to the appropriate service(s), depending on their individual needs. Cancer patients experiencing distress may benefit from assistance from a mental health professional, social worker, and/or chaplain.

Patients referred to a mental health professional should undergo a more comprehensive evaluation in order to further understand the difficulties they are having and to inform treatment decisions. These evaluations will commonly assess for suicidality, mood or anxiety disorders, adjustment disorders, substance-abuse disorders, personality disorders, and cognitive impairments secondary to disease and/or cancer treatment.

Sleep disorders are assessed through a thorough sleep and medical history and objective evaluations such as polysomnography. Results from these evaluations are disseminated to all other providers involved in the patient's care in order to ensure that their comprehensive treatment plan is tailored to their individual needs.

Treatment for distress and its associated symptoms secondary to cancer is multifaceted in nature. While psychotherapy is indicated in patients with mild to severe distress, antidepressants and anxiolytics can be used to supplement psychotherapy in individuals with moderate to severe distress. Psychological interventions including cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT), supportive psychotherapy, and family or couples therapy have been shown to help cancer patients manage distress and improve quality of life. Cognitive-behavioral treatments in cancer often focus on increasing problem solving skills and addressing maladaptive thought patterns that promote feelings of depression, anxiety, and/or guilt. Behavioral management strategies are also used with cancer patients to decrease the psychosomatic manifestation of distress. Fatigue in cancer can be managed through the practice of relaxation, distraction, exercising to increase energy, improving sleep, and emotional support. Individuals with insomnia benefit from behavioral treatments that place focus on creating a comfortable sleep environment that promotes sleep (i.e., stimulus control), avoiding behaviors that contribute to poor sleep such as drinking caffeine and napping, and addressing any emotional concerns that may contribute to poor sleep. Behavioral techniques can also be used in addition to anti-nausea/vomiting medications and analgesics to help patients relax and feel more in control of nausea and/or pain following cancer treatment. Guided imagery allows the patient to mentally transition to a more pleasant, safe place, and to distract oneself from the nausea and/or pain. Likewise, cancer patients can utilize hypnosis or learn self-hypnosis in order to block physical discomfort and pain during and after treatment procedures. Lastly, progressive muscle relaxation and biofeedback can also be used to help patients increase awareness of tension, anxiety, and other bodily

changes in order to achieve relaxation and prevent nausea, pain, or insomnia.

The initial screening, comprehensive evaluation, and treatment are essential to ensuring that cancer patients navigate their experiences effectively; however, it is also important to conduct assessments of distress at further points along the cancer experience. As previously mentioned, there are periods of time in which patients may have an increased vulnerability to distress and it is during these transitional periods in which their distress should be reassessed and treated as necessary.

Given its complex nature, physical and psychological distress throughout the process of cancer treatment should be assessed and managed through comprehensive involvement by all providers in the patient's healthcare team. This requires that the patient's healthcare team function in an environment in which interdisciplinary work is promoted and in which there is regular, open communication among all providers involved in the patient's care and management of their disease.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Cancer Prevention](#)
- ▶ [Cancer Survivorship](#)
- ▶ [Cancer, Types of](#)
- ▶ [Cancer: Psychosocial Treatment](#)

References and Readings

- Abeloff, M. D., Armitage, J. O., Niederhuber, J. E., Kastan, M. B., & Gillies McKenna, W. (2008). *Clinical oncology* (4th ed.). Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone.
- American Cancer Society. (2010a). *Fatigue in people with cancer*. Retrieved May 26, 2011, from <http://www.cancer.org>
- American Cancer Society. (2010b). *Nausea and vomiting*. Retrieved May 26, 2011, from <http://www.cancer.org>
- American Cancer Society. (2010c). *Pain control: A guide for those with cancer and their loved ones*. Retrieved May 26, 2011, from <http://www.cancer.org>
- National Cancer Institute. (2010a). *Nausea and vomiting PDQ*. Retrieved May 26, 2011, from <http://www.cancer.gov>

National Cancer Institute. (2010b). *Pain PDQ*. Retrieved May 26, 2011, from <http://www.cancer.gov>

National Cancer Institute. (2010c). *Sleep disorders PDQ*. Retrieved May 26, 2011, from <http://www.cancer.gov>

National Comprehensive Cancer Network. (2011). *The NCCN clinical practice guidelines in oncology: Distress management* [Version 1.011]. Retrieved May 26, 2011, from <http://www.nccn.org>

Cancer Treatment-Swelling

► Lymphedema

Cancer Types

► Cancer, Types of

Cancer, Bladder

Heather Honoré Goltz^{1,2},

Marc A. Kowalkowski^{1,2},

Stacey L. Hart³ and David Latini⁴

¹HSR&D Center of Excellence, Michael E. DeBakey VA Medical Center (MEDVAMC 152), Houston, TX, USA

²Department of Social Sciences, University of Houston-Downtown, Houston, TX, USA

³Department of Psychology, Ryerson University, Toronto, ON, Canada

⁴Scott Department of Urology, Baylor College of Medicine, Houston, TX, USA

Synonyms

Bladder carcinoma; Urothelial carcinoma of the bladder

Definition

Bladder cancer research has almost exclusively employed epidemiological or clinical research

approaches, leaving it understudied from a behavioral medicine perspective. Yet, research provides many opportunities for clinicians and researchers to develop targeted bladder cancer prevention and survivorship interventions for mental health, diet and exercise, fatigue, smoking cessation, and other areas.

Description

Bladder Anatomy and Histopathology

Bladder cancer originates in the urinary bladder, a hollow, muscular organ that collects urine from the kidneys via the ureters and excretes it via the urethra (Konety and Carroll 2007; Pashos et al. 2002). Before excretion, urine is stored in the lumen, which is surrounded by several cell layers comprising the bladder wall. The innermost layer, or urothelium (epithelium), directly contacts urine in the lumen. The second layer, or lamina propria, consists of subepithelial connective tissue. The third layer, the muscularis propria, contains smooth muscle. The final layer contains perivesical fat tissue.

Approximately 70–80% of newly diagnosed US bladder cancers are confined to the urothelium or lamina propria (i.e., Ta, Tis, T1; also called superficial or nonmuscle invasive [NMIBC]; Sexton et al. 2010). Remaining diagnoses are classified as muscle invasive (MIBC), where the tumor has invaded the muscularis propria (i.e., T2, T3). Once a bladder tumor begins invading surrounding organs, it becomes T4 (Jacobs et al. 2010; Konety and Carroll 2007; Pashos et al. 2002). Most US bladder cancer patients (90%) have transitional cell carcinoma; the remaining have squamous cell carcinomas (5%), adenocarcinomas (1–2%), primary small cell carcinoma, or other tumor histologies (Sexton et al. 2010).

Bladder Cancer Epidemiology and Risk Factors

Bladder cancer incidence, morbidity, and mortality vary by country (Botteman et al. 2003). It is the fifth most common cancer in the United States and

the second most commonly diagnosed urologic cancer (Altekruse et al. 2010). From 1988 to 2008, the number of US diagnoses increased by more than 50% (Shariat et al. 2009). The United States had an estimated 70,530 new bladder cancer diagnoses and 14,680 deaths in 2010 (Jacobs et al. 2010).

While many cases contain no explicit ties to carcinogenic exposure, bladder cancer has several well-established biological, sociodemographic, and environmental risk factors (Pashos et al. 2002). Men are three to four times more likely to receive a diagnosis than women. While men have higher lifetime risk for developing bladder cancer, women tend to present with later-stage disease and worse prognosis for 5-year survival, even controlling for tumor stage and grade (Jacobs et al. 2010; Pashos et al. 2002; Shariat et al. 2009). Bladder cancer diagnoses among adolescents and young adults remain relatively rare (Sexton et al. 2010). Over three quarters of cases occur in individuals 60 years and over. Race/ethnicity is also important. Caucasian Americans are twice as likely to develop bladder cancer as African Americans. Despite lower incidence, African Americans are diagnosed at advanced-stage disease and have higher mortality rates, even after controlling for tumor characteristics (Konety and Carroll 2007; Pashos et al. 2002; Sexton et al. 2010).

Environmental risk factors for developing bladder cancer include behavioral risk factors and occupational or chemical exposures (Pashos et al. 2002; Sexton et al. 2010). Less than 10% of individuals diagnosed with bladder cancer report a positive family health history. Smoking is the primary environmental risk factor (Jacobs et al. 2010; Pashos et al. 2002; Sexton et al. 2010). Additional behavioral risk factors include diet/nutrition, specific herbal supplements, chronic urinary tract infection or inflammation, parasitic infection, arsenic-contaminated water, and pelvic radiation. Chemicals linked to increased bladder cancer risk include aniline dyes, aromatic amines, cyclophosphamide, and specific analgesics. At-risk occupations include autoworkers; metalworkers; hairdressers; painters; and paper, leather,

dye, and rubber plant workers (Jacobs et al. 2010; Sexton et al. 2010).

Bladder Cancer Symptoms and Detection

Approximately 80–90% of patients diagnosed with bladder cancer present with gross or microscopic amounts of blood in the urine (hematuria; Pashos et al. 2002). As there is a small latent period between bladder cancer development and symptom onset, hematuria is considered the most important symptom (Pashos et al.; Sexton et al. 2010). Twenty percent of patients report other symptoms, including flank pain, painful urination (dysuria), increased urgency or frequency of urination, and inability to urinate (Pashos et al. 2002). Many bladder cancer symptoms, particularly hematuria, are also symptomatic of urinary tract infections, benign prostatic hyperplasia, and other benign conditions. Women may inadvertently be misdiagnosed with gynecological conditions or chronic urinary tract infections in lieu of bladder cancer, contributing to delayed diagnosis (Jacobs et al. 2010).

Physicians suspecting bladder cancer as a potential explanation for these symptoms perform a physical exam and health-history assessment, including smoking history/status and chemical/occupational exposures (Pashos et al. 2002). Clinicians may use intravenous or retrograde pyelography, ultrasound, computed tomography, positron emission tomography, or magnetic resonance imaging to check for urinary tract tumors (Sexton et al. 2010). More commonly, physicians rely on cystoscopy, involving insertion of a camera attached to flexible tubing into the bladder via the urethra while the patient is under local anesthetic (Pashos et al. 2002; Sexton et al. 2010). This procedure is considered the “gold standard” for detecting bladder cancer and allows direct visualization of the urethra and urothelium for tumors (Sexton et al.). Urine cytology, or a bladder wash, is often performed adjunctive to cystoscopy to check for hematuria and bladder cancer cells pre-treatment and during posttreatment surveillance (Pashos et al. 2002; Sexton et al. 2010; see below). Early detection of cancer recurrence is linked to reduced morbidity and mortality,

although only 40% of bladder cancer survivors are adherent with surveillance (Schrage et al. 2003). Behavioral medicine interventions are warranted in this particular area of cancer control.

Nonmuscle-Invasive Bladder Cancer (NMIBC) Treatment

Transurethral resection of the bladder tumor (TURBT) is a first-line treatment for NMIBC. TURBT may be performed under anesthesia and serves diagnostic, prognostic, and therapeutic functions. Individuals with low risk for progression (i.e., those with low-grade Ta tumors) may be treated using TURBT alone. A repeat TURBT may be performed to restage individuals with high risk for progression (e.g., high-grade T1) within the first month of initial diagnosis (Jacobs et al. 2010; Konety and Carroll 2007; Sexton et al. 2010). Intravesical chemotherapies such as mitomycin C and immunotherapies such as bacillus Calmette-Guérin (BCG) may be used immediately post-TURBT or as maintenance therapy to treat persistent microscopic tumors, prevent reimplantation or tumor formation, and reduce the chance of stage/grade progression (Jacobs et al. 2010; Konety and Carroll 2007; Sexton et al. 2010). Common side effects of TURBT include bleeding and infection, whereas intravesical therapies are associated with dysuria, fever, chills, and increased frequency of urination (Pashos et al. 2002; Shariat et al. 2009). BCG intravesical therapy is linked to erectile difficulties; there may also be treatment-related female sexual issues. Patients who have recurrent, high-grade NMIBC unresponsive to intravesical therapy may eventually undergo partial or radical cystectomy (Pashos et al. 2002; Sexton et al. 2010; see below).

Muscle-Invasive Bladder Cancer (MIBC) Treatment

Individuals with MIBC may require more intensive treatment. A “curative” treatment involves radical cystectomy, in which the entire bladder is removed and some adjacent lymph nodes and

organs. Male patients may have the prostate and seminal vesicles removed, while women may have their uterus, fallopian tubes, ovaries, and anterior vagina wall removed (Konety and Carroll 2007). Patients then receive some form of urinary diversion so that they can continue to collect and excrete urine. Options include ileal conduit (i.e., urine is stored in a small portion of intestine and drained through a stoma in the abdomen into an ostomy bag), neobladder (i.e., urine is collected in a section of small intestine connected to the urethra, allowing “normal” urination), and continent cutaneous pouch (i.e., urine is stored in a small portion of the intestine and drained through a stoma via catheter; Jacobs et al. 2010; Konety and Carroll 2007; Pashos et al. 2002).

Postoperative complication rates and side effects vary by diversion type. Daytime and nighttime incontinence, urinary retention, internal bleeding, infection, wasting syndrome, diarrhea, renal failure, and vitamin deficiencies are some short- and long-term effects (Pashos et al. 2002). Additional side effects include sexual dysfunction and infertility. While cystectomy is considered the gold standard for MIBC treatment, there are bladder-preservation alternatives for poor surgical candidates due to age, health status, or other factors, or whose beliefs and values preclude surgery. Alternatives include TURBT alone or in combination with external-beam radiation therapy and/or systemic chemotherapy; however, survival rates are generally lower than those from radical cystectomy (Konety and Carroll 2007).

Bladder Cancer Surveillance

The risk for bladder cancer recurrence is higher than for any other cancer but varies by tumor grade. For example, the 3-year recurrence rates for Ta- and T1-stage tumors are 40–70% and 50–80%, respectively (Schrage et al. 2003). Therefore, surveillance is an important disease-management strategy.

Bladder cancer is also the most expensive cancer in terms of cost per patient per year and lifetime costs per patient. Current estimates place

total patient costs at almost \$3 billion US dollars per year, of which an estimated 60% goes to monitoring and treatment of recurrence. NMIBC treatment and monitoring represents a substantial portion of these costs (Botteman et al. 2003).

Physicians vary in terms of their surveillance protocols. American Urological Association guidelines recommend intensive follow-up consisting of cystoscopy and cytology every 3 months in years 1 and 2, semiannual cystoscopy and cytology in years 3 and 4, and annual cystoscopy and cytology in years 5–10 or for life (American Urological Association 2007). Given that cystoscopic examinations are time-consuming and invasive, current adherence rates to bladder surveillance are estimated at about 40% (Schrage et al. 2003). Individuals who are older, non-Caucasian, less-educated, and living in urban geographic locales or low-income areas are significantly more likely to be nonadherent with surveillance (Schrage et al.).

Issues in Bladder Cancer Survivorship

More than 500,000 bladder cancer survivors currently live in the United States (Altekruse et al. 2010), yet little is known about their survivorship needs, particularly those stemming from gender and race/ethnic disparities or psychosocial factors (e.g., fear of recurrence, social constraint and support, psychological distress, and anxiety) (Botteman et al. 2003). Given the chronic nature of this disease and related symptoms, bladder cancer survivors may benefit from targeted, culture- and literacy-appropriate patient health education interventions that impact lifestyle/behavior change, symptom management, health-related quality of life, and treatment/surveillance adherence. Limited patient education materials are available from The American Cancer Society (www.cancer.org), Bladder Cancer Advocacy Network (www.bcan.org), and National Cancer Institute (www.cancer.gov). There are few research-tested bladder cancer interventions; however, interventions designed for prostate cancer may be helpful to survivors.

Cross-References

- ▶ [American Cancer Society](#)
- ▶ [Cancer and Smoking](#)
- ▶ [Health Disparities](#)
- ▶ [National Cancer Institute](#)
- ▶ [Occupational Health](#)
- ▶ [Smoking and Health](#)

References and Readings

- Altekruse, S. F., Kosary, C. L., Krapcho, M., Neyman, N., Aminou, R., Waldron, W., et al. (Eds.). (2010). *SEER cancer statistics review, 1975–2007*. Retrieved 17 Jan 2011, from http://seer.cancer.gov/csr/1975_2007
- American Urological Association. (2007). *American Urological Association: Guideline for the management of nonmuscle invasive bladder cancer: (Stages Ta, T1, and Tis): 2007 update*. Baltimore: Author.
- Botteman, M. F., Pashos, C. L., Hauser, R. S., Laskin, B. L., & Redaelli, A. (2003a). Quality of life aspects of bladder cancer: A review of the literature. *Quality of Life Research*, 12, 675–688.
- Botteman, M. F., Pashos, C. L., Redaelli, A., Laskin, B. L., & Hauser, R. S. (2003b). The health economics of bladder cancer: A comprehensive review of the published literature. *Pharmacoeconomics*, 21, 1315–1330.
- Jacobs, B. L., Lee, C. T., & Montie, J. E. (2010). Bladder cancer in 2010: How far have we come? *CA: a Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 60, 244–272.
- Konety, B. R., & Carroll, P. R. (2007). Urothelial carcinoma: Cancers of the bladder, ureter, & renal pelvis. In E. A. Tanagho & J. W. McAninch (Eds.), *Smith's general urology* (17th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Professional.
- Pashos, C. L., Botteman, M. F., Laskin, B. L., & Redaelli, A. (2002). Bladder cancer epidemiology, diagnosis, and management. *Cancer Practice*, 10(6), 311–322.
- Schrage, D., Hsieh, L. J., Rabbani, F., Bach, P. B., Herr, H., & Begg, C. (2003). Adherence to surveillance among patients with superficial bladder cancer. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 95(8), 588–597.
- Sexton, W. J., Wiegand, L. R., Correa, J. J., Politis, C., Dickinson, S. I., & Kang, L. C. (2010). Bladder cancer: A review of non-muscle invasive disease. *Cancer Control*, 17(4), 256–268.
- Shariat, S. F., Sfakianos, J. P., Droller, M. J., Karakiewicz, P. I., Meryn, S., & Bochner, B. H. (2009). The effect of age and gender on bladder cancer: A critical review of the literature. *British Journal of Urology International*, 105, 300–308.

Cancer, Cervical

Deidre Pereira¹ and Stephanie L. Garey²

¹Department of Clinical Health and Psychology, University of Florida, College of Public Health and Health Professions, Gainesville, FL, USA

²Department of Clinical and Health Psychology, College of Clinical Health and Health Professions, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL, USA

Synonyms

Cancer of the uterine cervix; Cervical adenocarcinoma; Invasive cervical cancer; Squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix (SCCC)

Definition

Cervical cancer is a slow-growing cancer that develops in the lower portion of the uterus, known as the cervix. Approximately 1 in every 145 women will develop invasive cervical cancer in her lifetime. In 2010, an estimated 12,200 women were diagnosed with cervical cancer (ACS 2010). Significant racial/ethnic disparities exist in cervical cancer incidence rates, with African American and Hispanic/Latino women having elevated rates compared to White, Asian American/Pacific Islander, and American Indian/Alaska Native women (NCI 2011).

Cervical cancer typically begins as a precancerous condition, known as cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN; (ACS 2011)). Patients who do not undergo regular pelvic exams and Pap tests are likely to develop one of the two main types of cervical cancer: squamous cell cervical carcinoma or cervical adenocarcinoma. The majority of cases, approximately 80–90%, are squamous cell carcinomas of the cervix (ACS). Persistent infection with human papillomaviruses (HPVs) has been identified as the cause of cervical cancer in the majority of cases. There are over 150 types of HPV, including

40 types that are transmitted sexually (NCI). HPV types 16 and 18 are considered to be carcinogenic (cancer-causing) to humans and have been classified as Group 1 carcinogens by the International Agency for Research on Cancer/World Health Organization. Accordingly, cervical infection with HPV types 16 and 18 confers high risk for the transformation of CIN to cervical cancer and causes over 70% of all cervical cancers (ACS). In contrast, HPV types 6 and 11 have been classified as possibly carcinogenic to humans (Class 2B carcinogens) and are mostly implicated in the development of anogenital condylomata (genital warts; (ACS)). Women who are sexually active at a young age or have many sexually partners are at a greater risk for HPV infection. As of 2011, the Federal Drug Administration (FDA) has approved the use of two vaccines for the prevention of the most common types of HPV infection (ACS; NCI). One vaccine prevents four HPV types (6, 11, 16, and 18) and is indicated for use in females and males 9–26 years of age. A second vaccine protects against two HPV types (16 and 18) and is indicated for use only in females 10–25 years of age (NCI). Additional risk factors for cervical cancer include smoking cigarettes and exposure to secondhand smoke, a high number of full-term pregnancies, long-term use of oral contraceptives, and immunosuppression (ACS).

Screening for cervical cancer includes regular pelvic exams and a Papanicolaou (Pap) test to screen for precancerous or malignant changes in cervical cells (ACS). If the Pap test detects abnormal cells, an HPV DNA test is conducted to determine whether HPV infection is present (NCI). Furthermore, a colposcopic examination can be performed to identify abnormal areas on the cervix visually and allow for a biopsy of cervical tissue (ACS). If invasive cancer is identified, additional imaging studies may be conducted to determine if the cancer has metastasized (spread) to distant organs and facilitate staging. Women who have early-stage cervical cancer often do not experience any symptoms; however, once the cancer has progressed and spread to proximal tissues, women may experience

abnormal vaginal bleeding, unusual discharge, and pain during intercourse (ACS).

Treatment of cervical cancer can include surgery, chemotherapy, and radiation therapy. As with all cancers, the appropriate treatment choice depends largely on the stage of disease. Surgical methods for treating cervical cancer include cryosurgery, laser surgery, conization, hysterectomy, and trachelectomy (NCI). Pelvic exenteration or lymph node dissection may be performed when there has been spread or recurrence of cervical cancer (ACS; NCI). The most common types of chemotherapy that target cervical cancer include cisplatin, paclitaxel, topotecan, ifosfamide, and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU; ACS)). Six to seven weeks of radiation treatment may also be used to treat cervical cancer (ACS). Certain stages of cervical cancer may require a combination of chemotherapy and radiation, known as chemoradiation.

The 5-year survival rate of cervical cancer is 71% (ACS). While the number of deaths due to cervical cancer has decreased across the last several decades, mortality rates have remained steady since approximately 2003. African American women have the highest cervical cancer mortality rates compared to all other racial/ethnic groups, which may be partly due to the fact that African American women are less likely to be diagnosed with early-stage cervical cancer than White women (ACS).

Cross-References

- [Cancer Prevention](#)
- [Cancer Survivorship](#)
- [Cancer, Types of](#)
- [Cancer: Psychosocial Treatment](#)
- [Reproductive Health](#)
- [Women's Health](#)

References and Readings

- American Cancer Society. (2010). *Cancer facts & figures 2010*. Atlanta: Author.
- American Cancer Society. (2011). Cervical cancer. In *Learn about cancer*. Retrieved February 27, 2011,

from <http://www.cancer.org/cancer/cervicalcancer/index>

National Cancer Institute. (2011). Cervical cancer. In *Cancer topics*. Retrieved February 27, 2011, from <http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/types/cervical>

Cancer, Colorectal

Hiromichi Matsuoka

Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, Kinki University Faculty of Medicine, Osakasayama, Osaka, Japan

Synonyms

[Colorectal cancer](#)

Definition

Colorectal cancer (CRC) is the third most frequently diagnosed cancer in men and women in the United States. Patients with localized colon cancer have a 90% five-year survival rate (Jemal et al. 2009).

Colorectal cancer mortality can be reduced by early diagnosis and by cancer prevention through polypectomy. Therefore, the goal of CRC screening (CRCS) is to detect cancer at an early, curable stage as well as to detect and remove clinically significant adenomas (Levin et al. 2008).

Screening tests that can detect both early cancer and adenomatous polyps are encouraged. Current technology falls into two broad categories: structural tests and stool/fecal-based tests. Regular screening with the fecal occult blood test (FOBT) or sigmoidoscopy facilitates earlier detection of CRC and lowers mortality. Screening colonoscopy may decrease CRC incidence through early detection and removal of precancerous polyps. Reported interventions to promote the FOBT have included patient reminders through use of personal media, approaches that reduce structural barriers such as mailing of FOBT kits, and use of provider assessment and feedback

(Baron et al. 2008; Hardcastle et al. 1996; Kronborg et al. 1996; Mandel et al. 1993; Selby et al. 1992; Shapiro et al. 2008; Winawer et al. 1993).

Other preventive health behaviors are positively associated with CRCS, including a recent mammogram or Pap test for women, a recent prostate-specific antigen (PSA) test for men, a cholesterol test, dental visit, seat belt use, fruit and vegetable consumption, and physical activity (Seeff et al. 2004).

CRC is predominantly a disease of Westernized countries, indicating that components of the Western lifestyle may contribute to the risk. A large body of evidence has implicated modifiable lifestyle factors as causes of colorectal cancer, including smoking, lack of physical activity, body composition, alcohol intake, and diet (Shapiro et al. 2001).

Aspirin taken for several years at doses of at least 75 mg daily reduced long-term incidence and mortality due to colorectal cancer. Benefit was greatest for cancers of the proximal colon, which are not otherwise prevented effectively by screening with sigmoidoscopy or colonoscopy (Rothwell et al. 2010).

Type C has emerged as a behavioral pattern, coping style, or personality type that predisposes people to or is a risk factor for the onset and progression of cancer. Type C has been described as a personality that is overcooperative, stoical, unassertive, patient, avoiding conflict, compliant with external authorities, unexpressive through suppression or denial of negative emotions, self-sacrificing, and predisposed to experiencing hopelessness and depression. There is evidence of connections among personality, stress and cancer, as well as among personality, stress, and the autonomic, endocrinological, and immune systems. These psychological characteristics can be considered as cancer risk factors. Nevertheless, a type C or cancer-prone personality should be understood in terms of its synergic interactions with genetic, biological, and environmental factors (Eysenck 1994).

Significant barriers to advanced cancer patients receiving mental health treatment for distress have been reported in the literature. Monthly monitoring of distress in older patients using telephone

monitoring and educational materials, along with referral for appropriate help, has been found to be efficient means of reducing anxiety and depression, compared with patients who received only educational materials (Kornblith et al. 2006).

Acupuncture, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation, supportive group therapy, self-hypnosis, and massage therapy may provide cancer pain relief in dying patients (Pan et al. 2000).

Cross-References

- ▶ Aspirin
- ▶ Colorectal Cancer
- ▶ Lifestyle

References and Readings

- Baron, R. C., Rimer, B. K., Breslow, R. A., et al. (2008). Client-directed interventions to increase community demand for breast, cervical, and colorectal cancer screening. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 35(1S), S34–S55.
- Eysenck, H. J. (1994). Personality, stress and cancer prediction and prophylaxis. *Advances in Behavior Research and Therapy*, 16, 167–215.
- Hardcastle, J. D., Chamberlain, J. O., Robinson, M. H. E., et al. (1996). Randomized controlled trial of fecal-occult-blood screening for colorectal cancer. *Lancet*, 348(9040), 1472–1477.
- Jemal, A., Siegel, R., Ward, E., Hao, Y., Xu, J., & Thun, M. J. (2009). Cancer statistics, 2009. *CA: A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 59, 225–249.
- Kornblith, A. B., Dowell, J. M., Herndon, J. E., 2nd, Engelman, B. J., Bauer-Wu, S., Small, E. J., et al. (2006). Telephone monitoring of distress in patients aged 65 years or older with advanced stage cancer: A cancer and leukemia group B study. *Cancer*, 107(11), 2706–2714.
- Kronborg, O., Fenger, C., Olsen, J., Jorgensen, O. D., & Sondergaard, O. (1996). Randomized study of screening for colorectal cancer with fecal-occult-blood test. *Lancet*, 348, 1467–1471.
- Levin, B., Lieberman, D. A., McFarland, B., et al. (2008). Screening and surveillance for the early detection of colorectal cancer and adenomatous polyps, 2008: A joint guideline from the American Cancer Society, the US Multi-Society Task Force on Colorectal Cancer, and the American College of Radiology. *CA: A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 58, 130–160.
- Mandel, J. S., Bond, J. H., Church, T. R., et al. (1993). Reducing mortality from colorectal cancer by screening for fecal occult blood. Minnesota Colon Cancer

- Control Study. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 328(19), 1365–1371.
- Pan, C. X., Morrison, R. S., Ness, J., Fugh-Berman, A., & Leipzig, R. M. (2000). Complementary and alternative medicine in the management of pain, dyspnea, and nausea and vomiting near the end of life. A systematic review. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, 20(5), 374–387.
- Rothwell, P. M., Wilson, M., Elwin, C. E., Norrving, B., Algra, A., Warlow, C. P., et al. (2010). Long-term effect of aspirin on colorectal cancer incidence and mortality: 20-year follow-up of five randomised trials. *Lancet*, 376(9754), 1741–1750. Epub 2010 Oct 21.
- Seeff, L. C., Nadel, M. R., Klabunde, C. N., et al. (2004). Patterns and predictors of colorectal cancer test use in the adult US population: Results from the 2000 National Health Interview Survey. *Cancer*, 100(10), 2093–2103.
- Selby, J. V., Friedman, G. D., Quesenberry, C. P., Jr., & Weiss, N. S. (1992). A case–control study of screening sigmoidoscopy and mortality from colorectal cancer. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 326(10), 653–657.
- Shapiro, J. A., Seeff, L. C., & Nadel, M. R. (2001). Colorectal cancer-screening tests and associated health behaviors. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 21(2), 132–137.
- Shapiro, J. A., Seeff, L. C., Thompson, T. D., Nadel, M. R., Klabunde, C. N., & Vernon, S. W. (2008). Colorectal cancer test use from the 2005 National Health Interview Survey. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 17(7), 1623–1630.
- Winawer, S. J., Zauber, A. G., Ho, M. N., The National Polyp Study Workgroup, et al. (1993). Prevention of colorectal cancer by colonoscopic polypectomy. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 329, 1977–1981.

Cancer, Lymphatic

Hiroe Kikuchi

Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, Center Hospital, National Center for Global Health and Medicine, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

[Lymphoma](#)

Definition

Lymphatic cancer is a cancer of the lymphatic system, which is part of the immune system.

Description

The new World Health Organization classification (Swerdlow et al. 2017) is usually used to classify lymphoma, and lymphoma is divided into Hodgkin lymphoma and non-Hodgkin lymphoma (B cell and T/NK cell). Staging is basically based on distribution of the lesions. Non-Hodgkin lymphoma is clinically classified into indolent, aggressive, and highly aggressive.

Although lymphoma commonly affects lymph node, it also affects other organs such as the spleen. Symptoms and signs of lymphoma are lymphadenopathy which is without tenderness and mobile, fever, fatigue, nocturnal sweating, weight loss, bloating sensation, etc.

In classical Hodgkin lymphoma and nodular lymphocyte-predominant Hodgkin lymphoma of an advanced stage, chemotherapy with or without radiotherapy is used. In nodular lymphocyte-predominant Hodgkin lymphoma of a limited stage, radiotherapy is used. High-dose chemotherapy with autologous hematopoietic stem cell transplantation is considered for recurrent or refractory cases.

In non-Hodgkin lymphoma, treatment is selected depending on the pathological classification and the grade of malignancy. In B cell indolent lymphoma, radiotherapy is used for a limited stage, and chemotherapy or careful follow-up without any therapy is selected for an advanced stage. Monoclonal antibody called rituximab is also used. In aggressive B cell lymphoma, chemotherapy combined with Rituximab is generally used, and radiotherapy is combined for a limited stage. High-dose chemotherapy with autologous peripheral blood stem cell transplantation is conducted at first remission in a high-risk group. In highly aggressive B cell lymphoma, treatment which is used for acute lymphoblastic leukemia is applied. Although no standard therapy is established for T cell lymphoma, chemotherapy is often applied. Eradication of *Helicobacter pylori* is used for gastric mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) lymphoma.

Cross-References

► [Chemotherapy](#)

References and Further Reading

Swerdlow, S. H., Campo, E., Harris, N. L., Jaffe, E. S., Pileri, S. A., et al. (Eds.). (2017). *WHO classification of tumours of haematopoietic and lymphoid tissues*. Lyon: IARC.

Cancer, Prostate

Marc A. Kowalkowski^{1,2}, Heather Honoré Goltz^{1,2}, Stacey L. Hart³ and David Latini⁴

¹HSR&D Center of Excellence, Michael E. DeBakey VA Medical Center (MEDVAMC 152), Houston, TX, USA

²Department of Social Sciences, University of Houston-Downtown, Houston, TX, USA

³Department of Psychology, Ryerson University, Toronto, ON, Canada

⁴Scott Department of Urology, Baylor College of Medicine, Houston, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Carcinoma of the prostate](#); [Neoplasm of the prostate](#); [Prostatic adenocarcinoma](#)

Definition

Prostate cancer originates in the prostate, a walnut-shaped gland in the male reproductive system. Fluid secreted by the prostate nourishes and transports sperm. Over 95% of cancers of the prostate are adenocarcinomas, originating in glandular tissue. The prostate is made up of three distinct zones of glandular tissue. Approximately 70% of cancers develop in the peripheral zone, 10–20% in the transition zone, and 5–10% in the central zone. Most prostate cancers are slow growing, and survival rates are high, particularly for men with localized disease.

Description

Prostate Cancer Epidemiology

Aside from skin cancer, prostate cancer is the most common malignancy and the second most common cause of cancer death among men in the United States. Roughly 1 in 6 men will be diagnosed with prostate cancer in their lifetime. In 2010, an estimated 220,000 incident cases of prostate cancer were diagnosed in America, mostly among men over age 70. Additionally, more than 30,000 prostate cancer deaths were projected, second only to lung cancer for cancer deaths among American men.

The etiology of prostate cancer is not well understood. However, the male sex hormone testosterone, particularly at high levels, can accelerate the reproduction and growth of existing cancer cells in the prostate. Increasing age is the most important risk factor for prostate cancer. A positive family history is also associated with increased risk. Additionally, African American men have higher incidence and mortality rates than Whites. Since 1975, incidence rates in the United States have fluctuated, slightly decreasing since 2000. Substantial changes can be traced to the introduction of the prostate-specific antigen (PSA) screening test in the 1980s.

Prostate Cancer Screening

Screening for prostate cancer includes serum PSA testing and digital rectal examination. Due to the widespread implementation of PSA testing, over 90% of prostate cancers are detected at early stages, when the disease is localized to the prostate and easiest to treat. However, PSA testing is not without controversy, and guidelines for screening differ. Please see ► [“Prostate-Specific Antigen \(PSA\)”](#) for additional information.

Prostate Cancer Diagnosis

Prostate cancer may be suspected if the PSA level is greater than 4 ng per mL. When prostate cancer is suspected, a core needle biopsy is performed for tissue analysis. If the tissue biopsy confirms the

presence of cancer, further testing (e.g., computed tomography or magnetic resonance imaging) may be completed to determine whether the cancer has spread to other parts of the body. A Gleason score (range: 2–10) is also calculated to evaluate the growth rate of the cancer, dependent on the appearance of tumor cells under microscope. A high Gleason score indicates advanced disease. Together, tumor stage and Gleason score are used to determine prognosis and to direct treatment decisions. Today, nearly all prostate cancers are detected when tumors are confined to the prostate (i.e., Gleason score 6 or 7).

Prostate Cancer Treatment

Many treatment options are available to men diagnosed with localized prostate cancer (e.g., active surveillance, radiotherapy, and surgery). However, there is currently no consensus regarding optimal treatment. Each treatment impacts quality of life differently – ranging from urinary, sexual, and bowel dysfunction to more systemic concerns, such as weight gain, bone loss, hot flashes, and depression. Therefore, individuals must make decisions based upon their own personal preferences, clinical characteristics, and a variety of external factors, including provider recommendations. Most men experience decreased sexual potency, regardless of treatment. However, men undergoing radical prostatectomy suffer most from urinary problems, while radiotherapy is associated with poor bowel function. The physical side effects associated with prostate cancer treatment can severely affect a man's quality of life. Additionally, the emotional and psychological distress associated with symptoms, as well as complications in spouse or partner relationships, can further diminish quality of life. Given the slow-growing nature of most prostate cancers, some individuals may consider deferring treatment to maintain better quality of life. Active surveillance involves routine monitoring of patients diagnosed with early-stage, low-grade prostate cancer, in lieu of definitive treatment. However, this option carries its own burden,

primarily the uncertainty and anxiety associated with having an “untreated” cancer. For men with advanced stages of disease, additional treatment options are available (e.g., hormonal therapy, chemotherapy).

Current Medical Research and Interventions in Prostate Cancer

A major concentration in current prostate cancer research focuses on the evaluation of potential factors affecting the observed racial disparity. Several projects are attempting to identify genetic and other variants that may increase incidence and mortality in African American men. Furthermore, there is an emphasis on identifying additional biomarkers to improve detection and prognostic accuracy. Studies are also being conducted to compare the effectiveness of active surveillance for disease management with immediate treatment. Finally, for men with advanced hormone-refractory disease, improved chemotherapy regimens are being evaluated (e.g., docetaxel and cabazitaxel).

Current Behavioral Medicine Research and Interventions in Prostate Cancer

Given the array of treatment options available to men and the lack of consensus concerning best practices, decision-making tools are essential to assist in determining which treatment option is most in congruence with their values and lifestyle preferences. In a review of treatment decision-aid studies, aids were found to decrease distress, increase knowledge, and support shared decision making.

Additionally, only a limited number of evidence-based behavioral medicine interventions have been developed to address quality-of-life concerns in this population. The first of these interventions was developed from work done in breast cancer and shown to be effective in improving quality of life. Unfortunately, the results have been more mixed in interventions focusing on improving psychosocial distress. Reductions in distress have generally been modest and of short

duration. However, other research suggests that men adjust to changes in functional status and symptom distress improves over time.

Developing these materials and programs should be an immediate priority for behavioral medicine researchers. Promising results have been shown in adapting cognitive behavioral stress-management programs, peer-support, nurse-led, and telephone-based interventions. Less work has been done with subgroups among prostate cancer patients and survivors. Only one intervention has been developed to provide psychosocial support for men on active surveillance. Little data exist on gay and bisexual men with prostate cancer. No interventions have focused on the particular needs of single men, for whom treating erectile dysfunction related to prostate cancer may be particularly challenging.

Cross-References

► [Prostate-Specific Antigen \(PSA\)](#)

References and Readings

- American Cancer Society. (2010). *Cancer facts and figures 2010*. Atlanta: Author.
- Bailey, D. E., Jr., Wallace, M., & Mishel, M. H. (2007). Watching, waiting and uncertainty in prostate cancer. *Journal of Clinical Nursing*, 16, 734–741.
- Eton, D. T., & Lepore, S. J. (2002). Prostate cancer and HRQOL: A review of the literature. *Psychooncology*, 11, 307–326.
- Gore, J. L., Gollapudi, K., Bergman, J., Kwan, L., Krupski, T. L., & Litwin, M. S. (2010). Correlates of bother following treatment for clinically localized prostate cancer. *Journal of Urology*, 184, 1309–1315.
- Green, G. L., Sands, L. P., Latini, D. M., Kani, P., Barker, J. C., Chren, M. M., et al. (2009). Values insight and balance scales (VIBES-PC): Psychometric characteristics in the prostate cancer clinical setting. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 37, S37.
- Knight, S. J., & Latini, D. M. (2009). Sexual side effects and prostate cancer treatment decisions: Patient information needs and preferences. *Cancer Journal*, 15, 41–44.
- Latini, D. M., Elkin, E., Cooperberg, M. R., Sadetsky, N., DuChane, J., Carroll, P. R., et al. (2006). Differences in clinical characteristics and disease-free survival for Latino, African-American, and non-Latino white men with localized prostate cancer: Data from CaPSURE™. *Cancer*, 106, 789–795.
- Latini, D. M., Hart, S. L., Coon, D. W., & Knight, S. J. (2010). Sexual rehabilitation after prostate cancer: Current interventions and future directions. In V. T. DeVita, T. S. Lawrence, & S. A. Rosenberg (Eds.), *Cancer: Principles & practice of oncology – Advances in oncology* (Vol. 1, pp. 22–28). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Lin, G. A., Aaronson, D. S., Knight, S. J., Carroll, P. R., & Dudley, R. A. (2009). Patient decision aids for prostate cancer treatment: A systematic review of the literature. *CA: a Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 59, 379–390.
- Litwin, M. S., Hays, R. D., Fink, A., Ganz, P. A., Leake, B., Leach, G. E., et al. (1995). QoL outcomes in men treated for localized prostate cancer. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 273, 129–135.
- Rottman, N., Dalton, S. O., Bidstrup, P. E., Würtzen, H., Hoybye, M. T., Ross, L., et al. (2011). No improvement in distress and quality of life following psychosocial cancer rehabilitation. A randomised trial. *Psychooncology*. <https://doi.org/10.1002/pon.192>. Accessed 8 Feb 2011. [Epub ahead of print].
- Tanagho, E. A., & McAninch, J. W. (Eds.). (2008). *Smith's general urology* (17th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Cancer, Testicular

Catherine Benedict

Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Coral Gables, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Nonseminoma](#); [Seminoma](#); [Testicular neoplasms](#)

Definition

Testicular cancer is a type of cancer that forms in the tissue of one or both testicles, the male reproductive glands located in the scrotum. There are several different types of testicular cancer but most cases originate in germ cells (cells that make sperm) and are called testicular germ cell tumors. Testicular germ cell tumors may be further categorized into seminomas and non-seminomas. Seminoma tumors are a slower growing and less aggressive form of testicular cancer. They are usually isolated to the testicle or testes and are particularly sensitive to radiation treatment. Nonseminoma tumors are faster

growing and more aggressive. This form of testicular cancer tends to occur in younger men.

Description

Testicular cancer is not common and accounts for only 1% of all cancers in men. There are an estimated 8,290 new diagnoses and about 350 deaths due to testicular cancer each year. It is most common in young and middle-aged men such that about 9 out of 10 testicular cancers occur in men between the ages of 20 and 54. Treatment is very successful and the risk of dying from testicular cancer is low.

Factors that may increase the risk for developing testicular cancer include abnormal testicle development, such as Klinefelter's syndrome, undescended testicle (cryptorchidism), personal or family history of testicular cancer, age, and ethnicity. Non-Hispanic white men are more likely than African-American and Asian-American men to develop testicular cancer. The risk of Hispanic/Latino men developing this type of cancer is between that of Asians and non-Hispanic whites.

Signs and symptoms of testicular cancer include a lump or enlargement in either testicle; a feeling of heaviness in the scrotum; a sudden collection of fluid in the scrotum; pain or discomfort in a testicle, scrotum, abdomen, or lower back; and enlargement or tenderness of the breasts. However, many men do not experience symptoms, even when the cancer has spread to other organs.

Diagnosis and Treatment

Initial diagnosis generally involves an ultrasound or biopsy. To determine whether the cancer has spread outside of the testicle, a computerized tomography (CT) scan to look for signs of cancer in the abdominal lymph nodes or blood tests to look for elevated tumor markers may be used. The staging of the cancer will depend on the results of these tests. There are three stages of testicular cancer: Stage I cancer is limited to the testicle (localized); Stage II cancer has spread to the lymph nodes in the abdomen (regional); and Stage III cancer has spread to other parts of the

body and most commonly includes the lungs, liver, bones, and/or brain (distant).

Cross-References

► [American Cancer Society](#)

References and Readings

- Chung, P., Mayhew, L. A., Warde, P., Winkist, E., & Lukka, H. (2010). Management of stage I seminomatous testicular cancer: A systematic review. *Clinical Oncology*, 22(1), 6–16.
- Feldman, D. R., Bosl, G. J., Sheinfeld, J., & Motzer, R. J. (2008). Medical treatment of advanced testicular cancer. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 299(6), 672–684.
- Glendenning, J. L., Barbachano, Y., Norman, A. R., Dearnaley, D. P., Horwich, A., & Huddart, R. A. (2010). Long-term neurologic and peripheral vascular toxicity after chemotherapy treatment for testicular cancer. *Cancer*, 116(10), 2322–2331.
- Howlader, N., Noone, A. M., Krapcho, M., Neyman, N., Aminou, R., Waldron, W., et al. (Eds.). (2011). *SEER cancer statistics review, 1975–2008*. Bethesda: National Cancer Institute. Retrieved from http://seer.cancer.gov/csr/1975_2008/, based on November 2010 SEER data submission, posted to the SEER web site, 2011.
- Huyghe, E. (2008). Testicular cancer. In: Editor-in-Chief: K. Heggenhougen, Editor(s)-in-Chief, *International encyclopedia of public health* (pp. 309–318). Oxford: Academic.
- van den Belt-Dusebout, A. W., de Wit, R., Gietema, J. A., Horenblas, S., Louwman, M. W., Ribot, J. G., Hoekstra, H. J., Ouwers, G. M., Aleman, B. M., & van Leeuwen, F. E. (2007). Treatment-specific risks of second malignancies and cardiovascular disease in 5-year survivors of testicular cancer. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 25(28), 4370–4378.

Cancer, Types of

Yoshinobu Matsuda
National Hospital Organization, Kinki-Chuo
Chest Medical Center, Sakai shi, Osaka, Japan

Synonyms

[Cancer types](#)

Definition

Cancer is a term used for a disease in which abnormal cells divide uncontrollably and invade other tissues.

Cancer includes many forms of disease, and there are more than 100 different types of cancer. Most cancers are named for the organ or type of cell from which they originate. Cancer types can also be grouped into broader categories.

The main categories of cancer include:

Carcinoma – cancer that begins in the skin or in tissue that lines or covers internal organs

Sarcoma – cancer that arises from bone, cartilage, fat, muscle, blood vessels, or other connective or supportive tissue

Leukemia – cancer that starts in blood-forming tissue such as the bone marrow

Lymphoma and myeloma – cancers that begin in the cells of the immune system

Central nervous system cancers – cancers that begin in the tissue of the brain or spinal cord

The cancers that are diagnosed with the greatest frequency in the United States are bladder cancer, breast cancer, colorectal cancer, endometrial cancer, kidney cancer, leukemia, lung cancer, melanoma, non-Hodgkin lymphoma, pancreatic cancer, prostate cancer, and thyroid cancer.

Some behavioral factors have been reported to have an association with the incidences of cancer, cancer screening, cancer recurrence, and cancer mortality. For example, cigarette smoking contributes significantly to mortality rates for lung cancer, oral cancer, and cancers of the esophagus, larynx, bladder, stomach, pancreas, kidney, and cervix.

Each type of cancer has characteristic-associated behavioral factors (see the section on a particular cancer for more information).

Cross-References

- [Breast Cancer](#)
- [Cancer, Bladder](#)
- [Cancer, Cervical](#)
- [Cancer, Colorectal](#)
- [Cancer, Lymphatic](#)

- [Cancer, Prostate](#)
- [Cancer, Testicular](#)
- [Carcinoma](#)
- [Kaposi's Sarcoma](#)
- [Ovarian Cancer](#)

References and Readings

- Holland, J. C. (2009). *Psycho-oncology* (2nd ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.
National Cancer Institute. www.cancer.gov

Cancer: Psychosocial Treatment

Frank J. Penedo¹, Catherine Benedict² and Bonnie McGregor³

¹Department of Psychology, University of Miami and Cancer Survivorship Program, Sylvester Comprehensive Cancer Center, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

²Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

³Fred Hutchinson Cancer Research Center, Seattle, WA, USA

Synonyms

[Behavioral oncology](#); [Psycho-oncology](#); [Psychosocial intervention](#); [Psychosocial oncology](#)

Definition

Psychosocial treatment in oncology covers a broad range of effective therapies that have yet to become the standard of care for most cancer patients. Psychosocial therapies help cancer patients and their families emotionally adjust to diagnosis and treatment, cope with treatment-related side effects (e.g., fatigue, pain, nausea), improve adherence to chemotherapy regimens, and improve health behaviors. Therapies can include cognitive behavioral therapy, hypnosis and guided imagery, mindfulness-based therapies, cognitive behavioral stress management,

couple- and family-based therapy, play therapy for children, and motivational interviewing for behavior change. Psychosocial therapy is typically administered by clinical psychologists, psychiatrists, social workers, nurses, and more recently, via web-based interventions and telephone counseling. This therapy can be administered in both individual and group settings at multiple points along the cancer continuum, from before diagnosis among people at elevated risk for cancer, to many years after active treatment has completed. Psychosocial therapies have been shown in numerous studies to improve not only psychological (e.g., reduce distress) and quality of life outcomes, but also physical outcomes (e.g., improve immune function and physical functioning) among cancer survivors in need of therapy.

Description

Natural History

A cancer diagnosis can be considered an existential crisis in the lives of many of those affected and can result in increased distress, changes in emotional roles, social roles, physical functioning, and quality of life for most people who are diagnosed. Cancer patients have higher rates of clinically significant psychological disorders than their non-diagnosed age-matched peers. Several factors tend to influence the extent of psychological distress in response to a cancer diagnosis. These include younger age at diagnosis, history of mental illness and premorbid psychological functioning, stage at diagnosis and prognosis, and social support or other resources available (e.g., health insurance). As they do with other major life events, individuals with a cancer diagnosis rely on a variety of strategies to cope with the changes their diagnosis and treatment bring. Notably, most patients do not experience clinically significant symptoms of distress or dysfunction and, over time, typically 1–2 years, most patients will weather the crisis and return to baseline levels of functioning. However, for a significant number of individuals, full emotional and physical recovery can take much longer. Psychosocial intervention can facilitate emotional and physical adjustment to and recovery from cancer diagnosis and treatment.

Indications and Assessment

Psychosocial intervention is indicated not only when the patient is reporting elevated levels of distress, depression, or anxiety (which should be assessed regularly during cancer treatment and posttreatment follow-up visits, see below), but also when a patient reports difficulty with pain management, fatigue, cognitive complaints, or problems with sexual functioning. Assessment and patient education regarding available psychosocial interventions is warranted at routine intervals during cancer treatment and care, as many patients who might benefit from intervention may not be reporting symptoms at the time and early intervention can be effective prophylaxis against later symptom development. Commonly used instruments to assess psychosocial and physical well-being include a distress thermometer or validated measures of mood and affect, such as the Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale (HADS). To address concerns regarding changes in cognitive functioning, neuropsychological testing may be warranted. For those who experience severe levels of distress and/or meet clinical criteria for a mental health disorder, evaluation for pharmacologic treatment may be warranted.

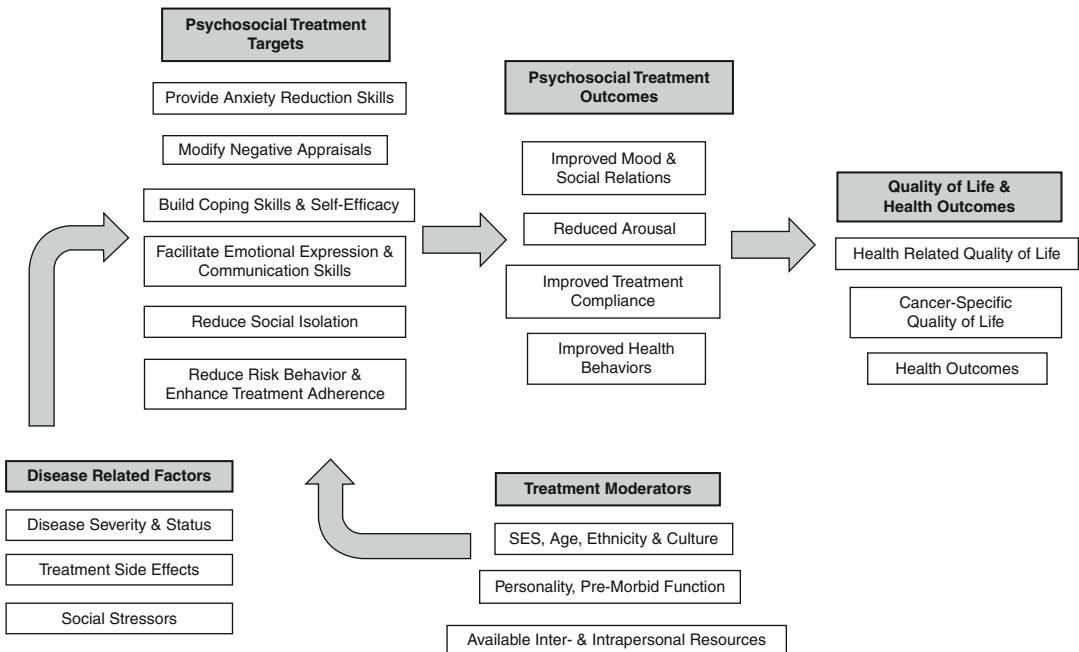
Psychosocial Treatment Modalities

Several psychosocial intervention models in cancer have shown success in reducing distress, improving quality of life, and facilitating the overall posttreatment adjustment period. Psychosocial treatment approaches have ranged from open support groups and psychoeducational programs that are based on information provision, to supportive group therapy approaches and individual treatments that are structured to provide a nurturing environment to express concerns over the multiple challenges associated with cancer survivorship. Both individual and group-based interventions based on cognitive behavioral intervention models that blend a variety of therapeutic techniques (e.g., cognitive restructuring, relaxation training) have shown success in improving health-related quality of life across multiple cancer populations. Other intervention approaches include mindfulness-based stress reduction, emotional expression, symptom management, health behavior change, and motivational interviewing.

A significant amount of research has shown that effective therapy components in multimodal intervention efforts include techniques such as relaxation training (e.g., guided imagery) to lower arousal, disease information and management, an emotionally supportive environment where participants can address fears and anxieties, behavioral and cognitive coping strategies, and social support skills training. Therapeutic processes by which participants benefit from intervention include giving and receiving information, sharing experiences, reducing social isolation, and providing patients with coping skills that facilitate self-efficacy and sense of control over the cancer experience. Some evidence suggests that cancer patients may benefit more from structured interventions than purely supportive ones; this may be due to learning skills with which they can more effectively cope with cancer-related changes after the intervention has ended (e.g., stress management). Interventions may also be couple or family based, depending on the goals of therapy and targeted outcomes, and may be administered at all phases of the cancer continuum, from post-diagnosis and treatment decision

making to end of life or long-term survivorship time periods. Such interventions can be delivered via several modalities including face-to-face and technology-based individual and group-based formats.

The model in Fig. 1 proposes that cancer patients and survivors may benefit from psychosocial interventions that target multiple components. For example, teaching anxiety reduction skills can provide a way to reduce anxiety, tension, and other forms of stress responses and, thus, help the survivor achieve a sense of mastery over disease-related and general stressors. The use of cognitive restructuring techniques can help patients identify links between thoughts, emotions, and bodily changes, and increase their ability to identify commonly used distorted thoughts and understanding of how these thoughts can interfere with emotional well-being, effective management of the disease, and multiple domains of quality of life. Participants in these interventions can also benefit from techniques that challenge cognitive, behavioral, and interpersonal coping strategies by increasing awareness of the use of maladaptive coping strategies to deal with



Cancer: Psychosocial Treatment, Fig. 1 Conceptual model of psychosocial treatment interventions

stress and disease-related challenges. Therefore, attention is given to replacing inefficient and indirect ways of dealing with stressors and promotes both emotion and problem-focused strategies while increasing patients' ability to adaptively express both positive and negative emotions. These intervention models also promote identifying and utilizing beneficial sources of social support, as well as providing self-management skills to engage in positive lifestyle changes and behaviors. Communication skills are also targeted, particularly those specific to interacting with health care professionals and communicating concerns about functional limitations and treatment-related side effects with the spouse/partner, family, and friends.

Within the intervention model, disease-related factors provide several considerations for psychosocial treatment approaches. Disease severity (localized vs. advanced disease) and status (disease free survival vs. recurrent disease) significantly influences the experience of the cancer patient and survivor. For example, advanced and recurrent diseases are characterized by greater psychosocial compromises such as greater levels of anxiety, depression, and interpersonal disruption, as well as existential concerns regarding the end of life. Similarly, treatment type and timing within the cancer survivorship continuum will pose varying psychosocial and physical responses that need to be considered. Some treatments are characterized by immediate functional limitations with a slow recovery that invariably does not reach baseline functioning over 1–2 years posttreatment. In contrast, other treatments have a more insidious side effect trajectory with the greatest consequences surfacing up to 1 year posttreatment. Therefore, an awareness and knowledge of the trajectories of treatment-related side effects must be considered as these symptoms will vary by treatment type. It is also critical to understand ongoing stressors not specifically related to cancer such as financial burdens or other major life events that may be impacting quality of life as these will also influence the efficacy of psychosocial treatments. Furthermore, a series of possible treatment moderators need to be considered.

Older patients will be more likely to have multiple comorbidities and functional limitations that will impact health-related quality of life outcomes. Socioeconomic status can play a significant role in treatment adjustment as it has been consistently associated with health-related quality of life outcomes via its influence on treatment compliance and follow-up. It is also critical to have a good understanding of pretreatment psychological functioning. Cancer patients with prior histories of psychological dysfunction such as depression, anxiety, or interpersonal difficulties seem to have greater difficulties in adjusting to the multiple challenges faced posttreatment. Similarly, low levels of education and a lack of interpersonal resources have also been shown to significantly impact adjustment. Therefore, any intervention approach needs to consider multiple disease-related characteristics and possible treatment moderators as these will likely interact with intervention efficacy and influence psychosocial treatment outcomes.

Psychosocial Effects of Intervention

There is a large literature documenting the effectiveness of psychosocial intervention with cancer patients. Interventions have demonstrated positive effects across a range of psychosocial and physical outcomes, including symptoms of depression and anxiety, and cancer-related fear, social functioning, and disease- and treatment-related symptoms (e.g., fatigue, nausea, pain). Although findings have been mixed with reports of nonsignificant effects as well, several reviews of the literature have concluded that the majority of psychotherapeutic interventions among cancer patients demonstrate some improvement in psychosocial adjustment. Notably, sociodemographic factors (e.g., age, education, and socioeconomic status), premorbid psychological and physical functioning, social support, coping styles, and certain personality traits (e.g., neuroticism, interpersonal sensitivity, and social inhibition) have been associated with increased risk of adjustment difficulties following cancer diagnosis and treatment, suggesting that there may also be considerable variability in baseline functioning and response to intervention efforts.

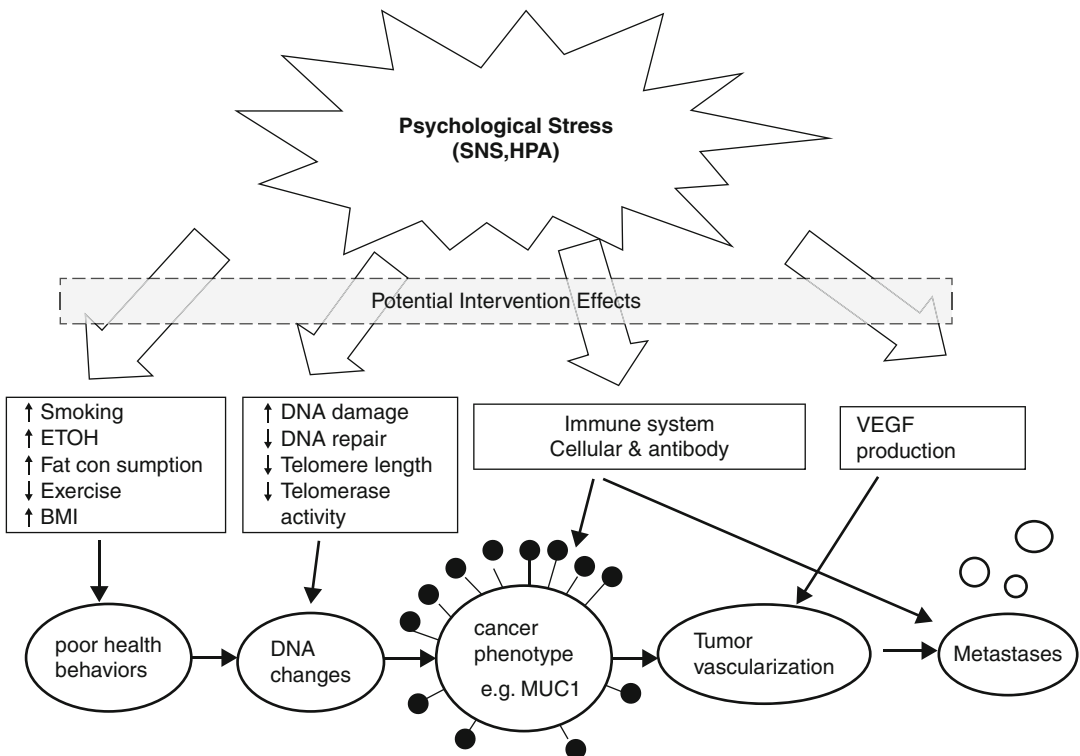
Biological Effects of Intervention

Psychological distress can influence tumor progression via many different pathways (e.g., genetic changes, immune surveillance, pro-angiogenic processes). For example, there are data to suggest that psychological intervention can influence important neuroendocrine (e.g., cortisol) and immune function pathways, especially lymphocyte proliferation and TH1 cytokine production. One landmark study showed that women with metastatic breast cancer who participated in an expressive supportive group therapy intervention lived about twice as long as women in the comparison condition. This effect has been partially replicated in a subset of women with estrogen-receptor-negative tumors. While some groups have attempted to replicate survival findings, and with only limited success, other teams conducted studies focusing on neuroendocrine and immune mechanisms to explain the putative health effects of psychosocial intervention in breast cancer patients.

One recent longitudinal study, which started with the intent of evaluating the intervention effect on not only psychological distress, but also immune function and survival, did show a survival advantage for intervention participants compared to comparison group participants. There is evidence now that psychological stress, via the HPA axis and SNS, can influence the course of tumor progression at almost every phase of the cancer continuum, from health behaviors to metastases. However, more systematic studies with large sample sizes and long-term follow-up effects are needed to provide conclusive evidence of any survival effects of these interventions. Potential psychosocial effects on biological mechanisms are depicted in Fig. 2.

Stepped Care Model of Psychosocial Intervention

Several psychosocial treatments among cancer patients have shown promise in improving emotional well-being, and both general and disease-specific

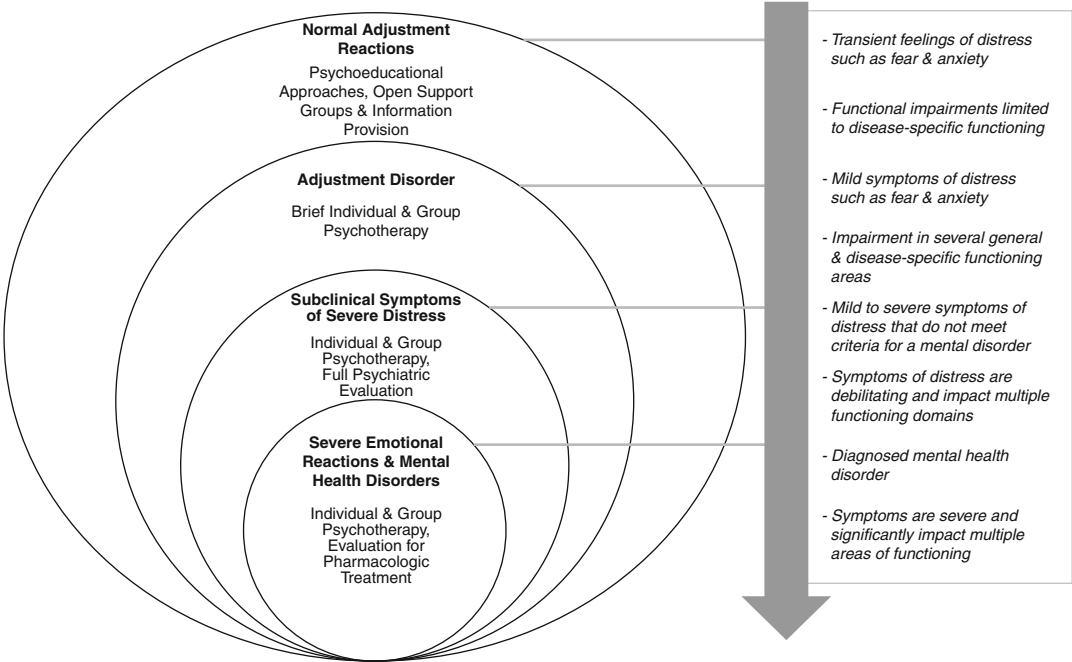


Cancer: Psychosocial Treatment, Fig. 2 Development and progression of cancer and how/where psychological stress and interventions might influence the process

quality of life. Most intervention approaches involved group therapy interventions following cognitive behavioral, stress and coping, stress management, and supportive group environment theories and models. Some work has also provided psychoeducational interventions, engaged spouses/partners, or provided phone-based delivery of the interventions. Regardless of the intervention approach, it is important to consider the distress continuum among cancer patients to determine the most optimal level of care based on their needs (see Fig. 3).

Psychosocial intervention is not necessary for all patients and a stepped care model of intervention delivery is recommended. This involves a collaborative care approach to intervention efforts in which patients are involved in treatment planning and therapeutic resources are utilized based on systematic assessment and monitoring of patients' psychosocial well-being. Stepped care approaches require that treatments of different intensity are provided depending on the need of the individual. Treatments are initially implemented that are of minimal

intensity but still likely to provide benefit and progress to more intensive interventions only if patients do not demonstrate improvement from simpler approaches or for those who can be reliably predicted to not likely benefit. An important feature of the stepped care model is that progress and decisions regarding intervention efforts are systematically monitored and changes in outcomes of interest are carefully assessed. A "step up" to a more comprehensive therapy is made only when there are no significant gains in the targeted outcomes. Stepped care may involve increasing intensity of a single therapeutic approach, transition to a different therapeutic approach, or using several therapeutic approaches additively. Likewise, different interventions may be applied to address different aspects of a patient's problem. Psychosocial needs also change as patients move from through their cancer experience and either transition to survivorship or face advanced disease and end-of-life concerns. Utilizing a stepped care approach to promote adjustment and well-being at all phases of the cancer continuum may enhance intervention efficacy through more



Cancer: Psychosocial Treatment, Fig. 3 Psychological interventions' stepped approaches as a function of emotional reactions across the cancer distress continuum

stringent assessment methods and appropriateness of intervention techniques, while also using the least amount of therapeutic resources.

The model in Fig. 3. proposes that treatment planning and intervention efforts must consider the distress continuum among cancer patients to determine the most optimal level of care based on their needs. Most cancer patients adjust relatively well to the cancer diagnosis and treatment. The majority of individuals experience some transient levels of distress characterized by mild symptoms of anxiety and depression, fear, and interpersonal disruption specific to disease-related functioning (e.g., sexual dysfunction). Because their emotional reactions are transient and significantly below clinical levels, these patients are likely to benefit from information provision or psychoeducational approaches that offer information on what to expect from prostate cancer treatment, the recovery process, available options for coping with treatment-related side effects (e.g., sexual aids), and communication skills to effectively navigate the medical system or voice concerns with the spouse/partner and family and friends.

A minority but yet significant number of cancer patients may experience emotional reactions that warrant a more structured approach at psychological care. Those lacking in social resources, presenting with high levels of perceived stress and enduring longstanding interpersonal dysfunction – likely driven by deficits in interpersonal skills and personality traits – are more likely to benefit from such interventions. Similarly, individuals with pre-morbid psychopathology and physical limitations, greater treatment-related functioning limitations, and recurrent disease are more likely to experience greater levels of distress and benefit the most from psychosocial interventions. Those who meet criteria for a mental health disorder are likely to be experiencing an adjustment disorder which is characterized by clinically significant symptoms of distress. In such cases, brief individual and group psychotherapeutic approaches can be useful in ameliorating persistent symptoms of distress that among prostate cancer survivors are commonly related to treatment-related dysfunction. If

untreated, these symptoms can interfere with multiple domains of health-related quality of life. Cancer patients who experience subclinical manifestations of mental health disorders such as anxiety, depression, and PTSD (i.e., experience severe symptomatology but not meeting diagnostic criteria) may benefit from a full psychiatric evaluation to determine the most appropriate level of care. For these survivors, individual and group psychotherapeutic approaches can positively impact mental health and health-related quality of life outcomes. Among the small number of patients who experience severe emotional reactions and are diagnosed with a mental health disorder, evaluation for pharmacologic treatment, in addition to individual and group psychotherapeutic approaches, is warranted.

Cross-References

- [Intervention Theories](#)
- [Psychosocial Adjustment](#)

References and Readings

- Anderson, B. L., Yang, H. C., Farrar, W. B., Golden-Kreutz, D. M., Emery, C. F., Thornton, L. M., et al. (2008). Psychological intervention improves survival for breast cancer patients: A randomized clinical trial. *Cancer*, 113(12), 3450–3458.
- Andrykowski, M. A., & Manne, S. L. (2006). Are psychological interventions effective and accepted by cancer patients? I. Standards and levels of evidence. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 21(2), 93–97.
- Burish, T. G., & Jenkins, R. A. (1992). Effectiveness of biofeedback and relaxation training in reducing the side effects of cancer chemotherapy. *Health Psychology*, 11, 17–23.
- Dale, H. L., Adair, P. M., & Humphris, G. M. (2010). Systematic review of post-treatment psychosocial and behaviour change interventions for men with cancer. *Psycho-Oncology*, 19(3), 227–237.
- Daniels, J., & Kissane, D. W. (2008). Psychosocial interventions for cancer patients. *Current Opinion in Oncology*, 20(4), 367–371.
- Falagas, M. E., Zarkadoulia, E. A., Ioannidou, E. N., Peppas, G., Christodoulou, C., & Rafailidis, P. I. (2007). The effect of psychosocial factors on breast cancer outcome: A systematic review. *Breast Cancer Research*, 9(4), 1–23.

- Institute of Medicine. (2007). *Cancer care for the whole patient: Meeting psychosocial health needs*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- Jacobsen, P. B. (2010). Improving psychosocial care in outpatient oncology settings. *Journal of the National Comprehensive Cancer Network*, 8, 368–370.
- Jacobsen, P. B., & Jim, H. S. (2008). Psychosocial interventions for anxiety and depression in adult cancer patients: Achievements and challenges. *CA: a Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 58(4), 214–230.
- Jacobsen, P. B., Donovan, K. A., Vadaparampil, S. T., & Small, B. J. (2007). Systematic review and meta-analysis of psychological and activity-based interventions for cancer-related fatigue. *Health Psychology*, 26, 660–667.
- Manne, S. L., & Andrykowski, M. A. (2006). Are psychological interventions effective and accepted by cancer patients? II. Using empirically supported therapy guidelines to decide. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 21(2), 98–103.
- McGregor, B., & Antoni, M. H. (2009). Psychological intervention and health outcomes among women treated for breast cancer: a review of stress pathways and biological mediators. *Brain, Behavior and Immunity*, 23, 159–166.
- Meyer, T. J., & Mark, M. M. (1995). Effects of psychosocial interventions with adult cancer patients: A meta-analysis of randomized experiments. *Health Psychology*, 14(2), 101–108.
- Spiegel, D., Butler, L. D., & Giese-Davis, J. (2007). Effects of supportive-expressive group therapy on survival of patients with metastatic breast cancer. *Cancer*, 110(5), 1130–1138.
- Stanton, A. L. (2006). Psychosocial concerns and interventions for cancer survivors. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 24(32), 5132–5137.
- Zabora, J., Brintzenhofesoc, K., Curbow, B., Hooker, C., & Piantadosi, S. (2001). The prevalence of psychological distress by cancer site. *Psycho-Oncology*, 10, 19–28.

understanding how two multidimensional constructs are related may find this technique useful. For example, someone interested in further understanding the relationships between the multidimensional constructs of personality and a healthy behavioral lifestyle might identify two sets of variables that measure those constructs. In the personality set, one might include factors like conscientiousness, openness to experience, and neuroticism, whereas in the healthy behavior set, one might include physical activity, healthy eating, sleep, or dental hygiene.

To use this technique, the researcher should identify two sets of measured variables. The variables selected for a set should measure different dimensions of the same construct (e.g., conscientiousness, openness to experience, and neuroticism would all be different facets of personality). Similar to exploratory factor analysis, canonical correlation identifies latent variables within each set. The canonical correlation (R^c) is the statistic that identifies the strength and directionality of the relationship between two latent variables (one from each set). Only statistically significant canonical correlations should be interpreted. The R^c is interpreted like the Pearson correlation coefficient, ranging from -1.0 to 1.0 . A positive R^c indicates a positive relationship between the two latent variables and a negative R^c indicates a negative relationship between the two latent variables. R^c values closer to 1.0 (or -1.0) indicate stronger relationships.

Latent variables are interpreted using two statistics: standardized coefficients and canonical variate-variable correlations. Standardized coefficients indicate the extent to which each measured variable contributes to the latent variable. Canonical variate-variable correlations indicate the strength and directionality of the relationship between the measured variable and the latent variable. Stevens (2009) suggests examining both the standardized coefficients and the canonical variate-variable correlations to include the measured variable in the interpretation of the latent variable. Many of the measured variables may correlate highly with the latent variable, but the standardized coefficient identifies which variables

Canonical Correlation

Stephanie Ann Hooker
Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Definition

Canonical correlation is a multivariate statistical technique that specifies relationships between two sets of variables. Researchers interested in

may be redundant in the interpretation. Once the researcher determines which measured variables contribute to each latent variable, he or she names the latent factor and interprets the meaning of the canonical correlation.

Cross-References

► [Latent Variable](#)

References and Readings

Stevens, J. P. (2009). Canonical correlation. In *Applied multivariate statistics for the social sciences* (pp. 395–411). New York: Routledge.

Capsaicin

Barbara Resnick
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Pepper](#)

Definition

Capsaicin is the ingredient found in different types of hot peppers, such as cayenne peppers, that makes the peppers spicy hot. You can eat it raw or as a dried powder placed in food. It is also available as a dietary supplement, topical cream, or via a high dose dermal patch (trade name Qutenza). Capsaicin, in any of these forms, is used to relieve the pain of peripheral neuropathy from postherpetic neuralgia caused by shingles and for temporary musculoskeletal pain and has been used to treat psoriasis (to decrease itching and inflammation). Capsaicin works by first stimulating and then decreasing the intensity of pain signals in the body. Capsaicin stimulates the

release of a compound believed to be involved in communicating pain between the nerves in the spinal cord and other parts of the body. To be effective, the cream needs to be used four to five times a day. At the time of use, the skin may burn or itch, although these sensations decrease over time. It is important to wash your hands thoroughly after each use and to avoid getting the cream in your eyes or places in which there are moist mucous membranes such as the mouth or vaginal or rectal areas. Contact with these areas will cause burning. The cream should also not be used on areas of broken skin.

Capsaicin has also be used as a supplement to improve digestion, eliminate infections, prevent heart disease by lowering blood cholesterol levels and blood pressure, and prevent clotting and atherosclerosis. Theoretically, capsaicin acts as an antioxidant and protects the cells of the body from the damage of free radicals. In so doing, health benefits can be derived. Lastly, capsaicin makes mucus thinner and thus may improve pulmonary function among those with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease or chronic bronchitis.

Capsaicin is generally considered safe when taken orally or used as a cream. As noted, it can cause some unpleasant effects. If this occurs, the best way to alleviate further pain is to remove the exposure via removing clothing if it has been contaminated and washing off the skin with soap, shampoo, or other types of detergents. Water, vinegar, and bleach are all ineffective at removing capsaicin. Applications of cool compresses may help with the burning sensations experienced with capsaicin.

An allergic reaction to capsaicin is possible. If you are just beginning to use capsaicin, either as fresh or prepared food or in powder form, start with small amounts. If you use a topical cream, you should first apply it to a small area of skin to test for an allergic reaction.

References and Readings

Bode, A. M., & Dong, Z. (2011). The two faces of capsaicin. *Cancer Research*, 71(8), 2809–2814.

Fraenkel, L., Bogardus, S. T., Concato, J., & Wittink, D. R. (2004). Treatment options in knee osteoarthritis: The patient's perspective. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 164, 1299–1304.

Johnson, W. (2007). Final report on the safety assessment of capsicum annuum extract, capsicum annuum fruit extract, capsicum annuum resin, capsicum annuum fruit powder, capsicum frutescens fruit, capsicum frutescens fruit extract, capsicum frutescens resin, and capsaicin. *International Journal of Toxicology*, 26 (Suppl. 1), 3–106.

Carbohydrates

James Edward Turner
Department for Health, University of Bath,
Bath, UK

Synonyms

CHO; [Saccharide](#)

Definition (and Description)

A carbohydrate is an organic compound, i.e., a compound containing a carbon atom. In addition to carbon, all carbohydrates also comprise the atoms hydrogen and oxygen and share the common formula $C_nH_{2n}O_n$, where n is any whole number. The name carbohydrate is derived from the bonding of a water molecule to a carbon atom, thus carbohydrates are hydrates of carbon.

Carbohydrates can be classified into several categories. Monosaccharides are the most basic units, and when two monosaccharides are chemically bonded, a disaccharide carbohydrate is formed. Oligosaccharides are generally considered to be carbohydrates with three to ten monosaccharides, and polysaccharides are carbohydrates with more than ten of these basic units. In nutrition, carbohydrates are often categorized into “simple” and “complex” forms. Simple carbohydrates include monosaccharides and disaccharides (sugars), whereas complex carbohydrates are oligosaccharides and polysaccharides (starches). Carbohydrates, despite being nonessential dietary

constituents, function primarily as source of energy and are a particularly important fuel for high-intensity exercise.

Cross-References

- [Glucose](#)
- [Insulin](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bender, D. A. (2002). *Introduction to nutrition and metabolism* (3rd ed.). London: Taylor & Francis.
- McArdle, W. D., Katch, F. I., & Katch, V. L. (2001). *Exercise physiology. Energy, nutrition and human performance* (5th ed.). Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Carcinogens

Elizabeth J. Franzmann
Department of Otolaryngology, Division of Head and Neck Surgery, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Mutagen](#)

Definition

Substances that cause cancer.

Description

It is well established that cancer initiation and progression occur through complex genetic and environmental interactions (Pfeifer and Hainaut 2011). Completely genetically induced tumors are rare (Pfeifer and Hainaut 2011). Most malignancies occur as a result of exposure to internal or environmental agents that cause genetic damage

(Pfeifer and Hainaut 2011). However, susceptibility to these environmentally induced mutations can be inherited (Pfeifer and Hainaut 2011). Environmental factors in a very broad sense can include physical and chemical agents, dietary factors, behavioral exposures such as tobacco and alcohol, and microenvironmental factors such as infection and inflammation. Any such factor that causes cancer is a carcinogen.

Sir Percivall Pott was the first to report that a malignancy could be caused by an environmental carcinogen when he described “the chimney-sweepers” cancer in 1775 (Cogliano 2010; Stone 2003). This work concluded that scrotal cancer was caused by soot that became wedged in the scrotum and also marks the first time that an occupational cancer was linked to a specific cause (Cogliano 2010; Stone 2003). As a result of this type of work, it is now understood that tobacco, including that found in secondhand smoke, causes lung cancer (Stone 2003). It is also known that mesothelioma, frequent in shipyard workers, is due to asbestos exposure (Cogliano 2010; Pfeifer and Hainaut 2011; Siemiatycki et al. 2004; Stone 2003) and leukemia, frequent in the shoe-production industry, is related to benzene (Cogliano 2010; Siemiatycki et al. 2004). Similarly nickel refining, smelting, and welding are associated with cancers of the lung, nasal cavity, and sinuses, and ionizing radiation is associated with bone, leukemia, lung, liver, and many other types of cancer (Siemiatycki et al. 2004). Certain viruses such as human papillomavirus (HPV) and hepatitis C virus are also carcinogenic (Stone 2003).

Following Pott’s example, public health agencies such as the US National Toxicology Program and International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) have worked to identify and educate the public about additional carcinogens (Cogliano 2010; Siemiatycki et al. 2004). In the case of the IARC, agents, mixtures, or exposure circumstances are selected for evaluation if humans are known to be exposed and there is reason to suspect they may cause cancer (Siemiatycki et al. 2004). At regular intervals, the IARC meets as a working group consisting of 15–30 experts from

related fields (Siemiatycki et al. 2004). These experts identify a concerning agent and review the epidemiological, animal, and other laboratory studies to help determine whether a substance of interest is carcinogenic (Siemiatycki et al. 2004). Epidemiologic evidence is generally considered the most important determinant (Siemiatycki et al. 2004). This evidence stems from associations between suspected causal agents and presence or absence of cancer in populations. The second most important determinant is the direct laboratory animal evidence of carcinogenicity (Siemiatycki et al. 2004). Other laboratory evidence such as genotoxicity, mutagenicity, metabolism, cytotoxicology, or mechanisms are also considered important (Siemiatycki et al. 2004). Based on the combination of these different types of data, the IARC develops a consensus and then classifies the substance as carcinogenic, probably carcinogenic, possibly carcinogenic, not classifiable, or probably not carcinogenic (Siemiatycki et al. 2004). Results of the working group meetings are published in the IARC monographs which provide important information for determining research priorities and preventing cancer (Siemiatycki et al. 2004). As a result, recommendations sometimes are met with controversy (Infante et al. 2018). For example, in 2018 the IARC determined consumption of red meat is probably carcinogenic to humans, while consumption of processed meat is carcinogenic to humans.

Despite Pott’s work, incidence of scrotal cancer in England did not decrease until the 1950s when counteractive measures such as improved chimney cleaning, alternative heating methods, and protective clothing were put in place (Cogliano 2010). Even today, exposure to many of the hundreds of common and suspected carcinogens occurs in industry (Cogliano 2010). Further education and preventive measures are needed to fully educate and protect the public.

Cross-References

► [Carcinoma](#)

References

- Cogliano, V. J. (2010). Identifying carcinogenic agents in the workplace and environment. *The Lancet Oncology*, 11, 602.
- Infante, P. F., Melnick, R., Huff, J., & Vainio, H. (2018). Commentary: IARC monographs program and public health under siege by corporate interests. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 61, 277–281.
- International Agency for Research on Cancer. (2018). *IARC monographs on the evaluation of carcinogenic risks to humans. Red meat and processed meat*, Lyon, France, vol. 114.
- Pfeifer, G. P., & Hainaut, P. (2011). Next-generation sequencing: Emerging lessons on the origins of human cancer. *Current Opinion in Oncology*, 23, 62–68.
- Siemiatycki, J., Richardson, L., Straif, K., Latreille, B., Lakhani, R., Campbell, S., et al. (2004). Listing occupational carcinogens. *Environmental Health Perspectives*, 112, 1447–1459.
- Stone, M. J. (2003). History of the Baylor Charles A. Sammons cancer center. *Proceedings (Baylor University Medical Center)*, 16(1), 30–58.

Carcinoma

Elizabeth J. Franzmann
Department of Otolaryngology, Division of Head and Neck Surgery, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

Malignant neoplastic disease

Definition

Carcinoma includes malignancies that begin in the lining or covering of organs.

Description

According to the National Cancer Institute (NCI 2018), carcinoma is the most common category of cancer and includes malignancies that begin in the lining or covering of organs. Other cancer categories include sarcomas that begin in connective or

supportive tissue such as muscle and bone, leukemias which start in blood-forming tissues, lymphoma and myelomas which originate in the immune system, and central nervous system tumors which include malignancies that start in the brain and spinal cord (NCI 2018). Non-melanoma skin cancers, including basal cell and squamous cell, are the most common carcinomas in the United States (NCI 2018). Other carcinomas involving the prostate, breast, and lung are the next most common (American Cancer Society [ACS] 2018). Carcinoma, like any cancer, is characterized by dysregulated growth and uncontrolled dissemination of abnormal cells which, left unchecked, can result in death (American Cancer Society [ACS] 2018). Exposure to environmental factors such as tobacco, viruses, chemicals, and radiation can cause cancer, and such agents are known as carcinogens (ACS 2018; NCI 2011). Internal factors such as inherited genetic mutations, immunodeficiency, and hormones can also give rise to cancer (ACS 2018). Because most malignancies initiate and progress through a combination of environmental and internal factors, only a small proportion of cancers are caused by an inherited genetic alteration associated with very high risk (ACS 2018). Decades can pass between exposure to external factors and detectable cancer (ACS 2011). Some individuals who are exposed to known carcinogens, such as tobacco, for many years, may never develop cancer (ACS 2011). Individual factors such as ability to repair DNA damage, remove carcinogens, and destroy abnormal cells all play a role in determining who will go on to develop cancer (NCI 2018). Depending on site, stage, and specific pathology of the carcinoma, treatment includes combinations of surgery, radiation, and chemotherapy (NCI 2018). Other therapies such as hormone therapy, biological therapy, and targeted therapy may also be used (NCI 2018). Treatment can be very toxic, resulting in long-term morbidity especially for late-stage disease which is primarily determined by its size and whether it has spread to lymph nodes or other areas of the body (NCI 2018). Even with the most aggressive therapy, sometimes cure cannot be attained. For these reasons, programs to prevent and detect cancers early are imperative. The

American Cancer Society (ACS) recommends screening for breast, colorectal, and cervical cancer as screening programs have resulted in decreased mortality for these cancers (Smith et al. 2018). Low-dose helical CT lung cancer screening is also recommended in certain populations with a smoking history. The ACS recommends that men aged 50 or over and with at least a 10-year life expectancy should have an opportunity to make an informed decision with their healthcare provider about prostate cancer screening after receiving counseling as to the risks, benefits, and uncertainties associated with such screening (Smith et al.).

Prevention of carcinoma focuses on decreasing tobacco use, increasing nutritional awareness, and limiting exposure to known carcinogens. Tobacco use is a leading risk factor for carcinoma and the most preventable cause of death worldwide, responsible for the deaths of half of long-term users (ACS 2011). Furthermore, it has also been estimated that one-third of cancer deaths in the United States each year are due to poor nutrition, physical inactivity, and excess weight (ACS). In addition, environmental exposures other than tobacco use can increase risk of carcinoma. These exposures include infectious agents, excessive sun exposure, and exposures to carcinogens that exist in air, food, water, and soil (ACS). The US National Toxicology Program and the International Agency for Research on Cancer work to identify carcinogens and provide information to the public and other regulatory agencies in an effort to decrease the burden of human cancer (see ► [Carcinogens](#)).

Cross-References

► [Carcinogens](#)

References

- American Cancer Society. (2011). Cancer facts & figures 2011. Atlanta: American Cancer Society.
 American Cancer Society. (2018). Cancer facts & figures 2018. Atlanta: American Cancer Society.

Author. National Cancer Institute. (2015). What is cancer? <https://www.cancer.gov/about-cancer/understanding/what-is-cancer>. Accessed 31 Aug 2018.

Author. National Cancer Institute. (2017). Types of cancer treatment. <https://www.cancer.gov/about-cancer/treatment/types>. Accessed 31 Aug 2018.

Smith, R. A., Andrews, K. S., Brooks, D., Fedewa, S. A., Manassaram-Baptiste, D., Saslow, D., Brawley, O. W., & Wender, R. C. (2018). Cancer screening in the United States, 2018: A review of current American Cancer Society guidelines and issues in cancer screening. *CA: A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 68, 297–316.

Carcinoma of the Prostate

► [Cancer, Prostate](#)

Cardiac Cachexia

► [Cachexia \(Wasting Syndrome\)](#)

Cardiac Death

Ana Victoria Soto¹ and William Whang²

¹Medicine – Residency Program, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

²Division of Cardiology, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Sudden cardiac death](#)

Definition

Cardiac death is defined as occurring when the rhythmic contractions of the heart cease and do not return spontaneously. Generally speaking,

cardiac death may occur suddenly or non-suddenly. Sudden cardiac death is defined by death within 1 h of the onset of symptoms, in the absence of preceding evidence of severe heart failure. This definition is usually used to capture death due to cardiac arrhythmia. Non-sudden cardiac death generally encompasses death due to pump failure (Hinkle and Thaler 1982).

References and Further Reading

Hinkle, L. E., Jr., & Thaler, J. T. (1982). Clinical classification of cardiac deaths. *Circulation*, 65, 457–464.

Cardiac Events

Siqin Ye

Division of Cardiology, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

The term cardiac event is used in clinical research to denote the composite of a variety of adverse events related to the cardiovascular system. The exact definition often varies depending on the specific study. At the narrowest, it is synonymous with coronary event, which refers to adverse events caused by disease processes affecting the coronary arteries. These may include what are termed “hard” events such as deaths that are attributed to coronary artery disease and nonfatal myocardial infarctions, but also occasionally “soft” events such as angina or revascularizations for worsening coronary artery stenosis. More broadly, the term cardiac event is often used interchangeably with another loosely defined term, major adverse cardiac event or MACE. Common definitions of MACE include death (either all-cause or cardiac), nonfatal myocardial infarction, and revascularization (with optional additional specification of target vessel or lesion, i.e., if the revascularization occurred at

the site of a previously identified diseased coronary vessel or atherosclerotic lesion, respectively); occasionally, stroke is also incorporated into MACE, and the term is alternatively defined as major adverse cardiovascular event or major adverse cardiac and cerebrovascular event (MAACE). Finally, in some circumstances non-fatal heart failure events are also considered cardiac events, though this is infrequent and occurs mainly in studies that focus on the prognosis and treatment of heart failure.

Since cardiac events and the other related terms described above are composites of clinical events of varying significance, there remains considerable debate on what should constitute the most appropriate component endpoints and how to define them. Furthermore, it has been increasingly recognized that the wide variability in these definitions may significantly influence the results and impact of clinical trials and other studies. For instance, many have noted that less consequential but more frequently occurring endpoints such as revascularization or heart failure exacerbation are often what drive the statistical significance or the lack thereof for the results of many trials. Different component endpoints may also trend in opposing directions, rendering the interpretation and generalization of the primary result problematic. These considerations have induced recent attempts to standardize the definitions of events that have the most clinical relevance, and guidelines such as the 2014 ACC/AHA Key Data Elements and Definitions for Cardiovascular Endpoint Events in Clinical Trials and the 2012 Third Universal Definition of Myocardial Infarction have outlined explicit definitions for terms such as cardiovascular death and myocardial infarction, with emphasis placed on objective findings that include ECG changes and the typical rise-and-fall of biomarkers such as cardiac troponins. In addition, most contemporary studies have begun routinely disclosing the results of individual endpoints as well as those of alternative composite measures. It is hoped that with these and other future efforts the methodological challenges inherent in the use

of composite endpoints such as cardiac events will finally be adequately addressed.

References and Further Reading

- American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Data Standards. (2014). 2014 ACC/AHA key data elements and definitions for cardiovascular endpoint events in clinical trials. *Circulation*, 132(4), 302–361.
- DeMets, D. L., & Califf, R. M. (2002). Lessons learned from recent cardiovascular clinical trials. *Circulation*, 106, 746–751.
- Kip, K. E., Hollabaugh, K., Marroquin, O. C., & Williams, D. O. (2008). The problem with composite end points in cardiovascular studies. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 51(7), 701–707.
- Lim, E., Brown, A., Helmy, A., Mussa, S., & Altman, D. G. (2008). Composite outcomes in cardiovascular research: A survey of randomized trials. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 149, 612–617.
- Skali, H., Pfeffer, M. A., Lubsen, J., & Solomon, S. D. (2006). Variable impact of combining fatal and nonfatal end points in heart failure trials. *Circulation*, 114, 2298–2304.
- The Joint ESC/ACCF/AHA/WHF Task Force for the Universal Definition of Myocardial Infarction. (2012). Third universal definition of myocardial infarction. *Circulation*, 126(16), 2010–2035.
- Wilcox, R., Kupfer, S., Erdmann, E., & On behalf of the PROactive Study investigators. (2008). Effects of pioglitazone on major adverse cardiovascular events in high-risk patients with type 2 diabetes: Results from PROspective pioglitAzone Clinical Trial In macroVascular Events (PROactive 10). *American Heart Journal*, 155(4), 712–717.

Cardiac Output

Simon L. Bacon

Department of Exercise Science, Concordia University and Montreal Behavioural Medicine Centre, CIUSSS-NIM: Hôpital du Sacre-Coeur de Montreal, Montreal, QC, Canada
Department of Health, Kinesiology, and Applied Physiology, Concordia University and Montreal Behavioural Medicine Centre, CIUSSS du Nord-de-l'île-de-Montréal, Montreal, QC, Canada

Definition

Cardiac output (Q) is the volume of blood pumped out of the heart (specifically from the right and

left ventricles) per minute. It is generally calculated as a function of heart rate and stroke volume (cardiac output = heart rate × stroke volume). Average resting cardiac output is about 5 L/min (normal range 4–8 L/min) and tends to be slightly higher in men versus women. During acute exercise and mental stress, cardiac output increases. This increase can be as high as 35 L/min for exercise (in elite athletes) and 15 L/min for mental stress.

There are many methods of measuring cardiac output, which range from intracardiac catheterization (invasive) to arterial pulse tonometry (noninvasive). The Fick principle, which uses the measurement of oxygen consumption and the oxygen content of the arterial and venous blood, is considered the most accurate method of assessing cardiac output, though it is an invasive technique, which limits its utility. Great effort has been placed into finding accurate reliable noninvasive methods of assessing cardiac output, such as dye dilution, ultrasound-based techniques, impedance cardiography, and, more recently, magnetic resonance imaging. Each one of these comes with both positives and negatives and the selection of one method over another needs to be made given the individual requirement for cardiac output measurement.

As cardiac output is driven by heart rate and stroke volume, the factors that control changes in these parameters also influence cardiac output. Specifically, parasympathetic and sympathetic activity and venous return influence cardiac output.

Cross-References

- [Autonomic Nervous System \(ANS\)](#)
- [Blood Pressure](#)
- [Heart Rate](#)

References and Further Reading

- Berne, R. M., & Levy, M. N. (2001). *Cardiovascular physiology* (8th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Hall, J. E. (2015). *Guyton and Hall textbook of medical physiology* (13th ed.). New York: Elsevier.

Cardiac Rehabilitation

Leah Rosenberg¹ and Sarah Piper²

¹Department of Medicine, School of Medicine, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

²Institute of Metabolic Science, Addenbrookes Hospital, Metabolic Research Laboratories, University of Cambridge, Cambridge, UK

Synonyms

Secondary prevention programs

Definition

Cardiac rehabilitation is a multidisciplinary program of secondary prevention measures that assist cardiovascular disease patients in their comprehensive recovery to previous functioning.

Description

Introduction

Cardiac rehabilitation is a comprehensive platform of pharmacologic, psychosocial, and behavioral secondary prevention measures that is typically provided to patients with a history of cardiovascular disease. Cardiac rehabilitation is designed with a multidisciplinary approach to patient care and requires a cohesive plan of various therapies and practitioners. Cardiac rehabilitation has been shown to improve outcomes and initiate a type of “re-conditioning” process for many patients (Clark et al. 2005). Targeted patient populations for cardiac rehabilitation include those individuals who have recently had an acute cardiovascular event (i.e., myocardial infarction or unstable angina), post-cardiac bypass patients, and those who have stable angina, heart failure, or other patients with cardiac disease who have become deconditioned for any reason.

History of Cardiac Rehabilitation Programs

In the 1930s, patients who had suffered a myocardial infarction were instructed to observe strict bed rest, often up to 6 weeks in duration. Gradually, increasing levels of physical activity were added to the post-event regimen. In addition to the salutatory effects of cardiac rehabilitation for recovery of previous functional status, it was eventually recognized that there were significant benefits in avoiding the hazards of bed rest which included deconditioning, deep venous thrombosis, and even limb atrophy and contractures. Today, post-acute coronary syndrome patients are encouraged to return to physical activity soon after the event. Early intervention with physical therapy is now a hallmark of contemporary cardiovascular care.

Typical Components of Cardiac Rehabilitation

The United States Public Health Service (USPHS) defines cardiac rehabilitation programs as comprehensive, multidisciplinary efforts with the following components (Hamm et al. 2011). These are the broad categories that encompass both short- and long-term goals. Newly admitted cardiac rehabilitation patients must undergo risk stratification to identify their needs for supervision and particular exercise plan.

1. Medical evaluation
2. Exercise training
3. Secondary prevention efforts and risk factor reduction
4. Patient education and counseling

Evidence Supporting Cardiac Rehabilitation

There are several trials that have compared the efficacy of cardiac rehabilitation programs that focus primarily on risk factor reduction versus an approach that favors increasing exercise tolerance. An integrated approach is the most favorable for reducing morbidity and mortality after a cardiovascular event. Modification of depressive symptoms is an important target for a cohesive rehabilitation program (Milani and Lavie 2007). Other less-quantifiable benefits include the socialization and support that comes from working with a variety of clinicians and peer groups.

A growing body of evidence in the literature supports exercise-training programs for cardiac rehabilitation (Antman et al. 2008). All enrolled patients should undergo a thorough medical evaluation prior to initiating any program of physical exertion. This is particularly relevant for those who are survivors of an acute coronary syndrome or symptomatic heart failure. While there used to be a prevalent belief in the medical community that prolonged bed rest was the only safe activity level after a cardiac event, numerous studies have demonstrated the safety of medically supervised exercise programs (Franklin et al. 1998). These exercise programs not only improve the quality of life for cardiac patients but have actually been shown to increase life expectancy in some cases. Specifically, most individualized exercise programs should encompass aerobic activities for at least 2 days per week.

Guidelines for Cardiac Rehabilitation

The American Society of Cardiovascular and Pulmonary Rehabilitation have published guidelines outlining ten core competencies that practitioners must have to provide the highest standard of evidence-based care for patients. Briefly, the ten areas are patient assessment, nutritional counseling, weight management, blood pressure management, lipid management, diabetes management, tobacco cessation, psychosocial management, physical activity counseling, and exercise training evaluation. The guidelines encompass an array of skills that transcend the abilities of any single provider. Instead, they assume a collaborative and comprehensive approach to cardiac rehabilitation. The competencies are divided into discrete “knowledge” points and then “skills” without specific reference to the particular type of provider who will provide the services. To coordinate the broad variety of necessary services, they suggest a case management model for individual patients. In the position statement enunciating the ten core competencies, the Society emphasizes the extent to which individual providers need not be proficient in all facets of secondary prevention but

rather be willing and able to identify particular patient needs. The focus on multidisciplinary care involves the participation of physicians, nurses, physical therapists, clinical nutritionists, social workers, and psychologists.

Of particular interest is the core competency of psychosocial management. The knowledge piece requires cardiac rehabilitation providers to become aware with the literature on the impact of psychological factors on the pathophysiology of cardiovascular event onset and the impediments that can prevent recovery. In particular, the competency requires specific attention to developing familiarity with the effect of major depression on adverse cardiovascular outcomes and worse adherence to treatments (Prochanska and DiClemente 1983). This references the current research question of whether poorer outcomes among depressed post-heart attack patients are due to their non-adherence of rehabilitative therapies or rather a distinct pathophysiologic state.

Cross-References

- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- [Physical Therapy](#)
- [Rehabilitation](#)

References and Readings

Antman, E. M., Hand, M., Armstrong, P. W., Bates, E. R., Green, L. A., Halasyamani, L. K., et al. (2008). 2007 focused update of the ACC/AHA 2004 guidelines for the management of patients with ST-elevation myocardial infarction: A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on practice guidelines: Developed in collaboration With the Canadian Cardiovascular Society endorsed by the American Academy of Family Physicians: 2007 Writing Group to review new evidence and update the ACC/AHA 2004 guidelines for the management of patients with ST-elevation myocardial infarction, writing on behalf of the 2004 writing committee. *Circulation*, 117(2), 296–329.

- Clark, A. M., Hartling, L., Vandermeer, B., & McAlister, F. A. (2005). Meta-analysis: Secondary prevention programs for patients with coronary artery disease. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 143(9), 659–672.
- Franklin, B. A., Bonzheim, K., Gordon, S., & Timmis, G. C. (1998). Safety of medically supervised outpatient cardiac rehabilitation exercise therapy: A 16-year follow-up. *Chest*, 114(3), 902–906.
- Hamm, L. F., Sanderson, B. K., Ades, P. A., Berra, K., Kaminsky, L. A., Roitman, J. L., et al. (2011). Core competencies for cardiac rehabilitation/secondary prevention professionals: 2010 Update: Position statement of the American Association of Cardiovascular and Pulmonary Rehabilitation. *Journal of Cardiopulmonary Rehabilitation and Prevention*, 31(1), 2–10.
- Milani, R. V., & Lavie, C. J. (2007). Impact of cardiac rehabilitation on depression and its associated mortality. *The American Journal of Medicine*, 120(9), 799–806.
- Prochanska, J. O., & DiClemente, C. C. (1983). Stages and processes of self-change of smoking: Toward an integrative model of change. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 51, 390–395.

Cardiac Risk Factor

- [Heart Disease and Cardiovascular Reactivity](#)

Cardiac Stress Test

- [Maximal Exercise Stress Test](#)

Cardiac Surgery

Leah Rosenberg
Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Cardiothoracic surgery](#); [Cardiovascular surgery](#)

Definition

Cardiac surgery is the subset of operative procedures focused on the heart and vasculature. Common examples of cardiac surgery include coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG), valvular repair, and the correction of congenital cardiac malformations. Cardiac surgery is a subspecialty of general surgery that requires additional training beyond a traditional 5-year residency. Advancements in anesthesiology have been critical to the development of cardiac surgery. For example, the widespread use of heart-lung bypass machines since the 1990s have extended the possible duration and complexity of these procedures.

Surgeries on the heart and great vessels (e.g., aorta and vena cavae) are generally performed on seriously ill patients who have either tried or been deemed ineligible for less invasive measures such as medication-based or percutaneous interventions (Lie et al. 2012). Increased rates of mood disorder such as depression or cognitive impairment have been noted in post-CABG patients, suggesting a possibly important role for behavioral therapies (Katon et al. 2008). To date, however, it is unknown whether depression treatment in post-CABG patients improves cardiovascular outcomes.

Cross-References

- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- [Coronary Artery Disease](#)
- [Coronary Heart Disease](#)

References and Readings

- Katon, W., Ludman, E., & Simon, G. (2008). *The depression helpbook* (2nd ed.). Chicago: Bull Publishing.
- Lie, I., Bunch, E. H., Smeby, N. A., Arnesen, H., & Hamilton, G. (2012). Patients' experiences with symptoms and needs in the early rehabilitation phase after coronary artery bypass grafting. *European Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 11(1), 14–24.

Cardiologist

Daichi Shimbo
Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health,
Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Cardiology expert](#); [Cardiovascular medicine expert](#); [Heart doctor](#)

Definition

A cardiologist is a physician who has specialty training in the area of cardiology. Cardiologists are often MD trained, and typically had general training in internal medicine (or pediatrics if a pediatric cardiologist) prior to the completion of cardiology fellowship. Cardiologists are often confused with cardiac or cardiothoracic surgeons, who primarily perform operations on the heart. A “board-certified cardiologist” is a physician who trained in cardiology, met minimum training requirements, and also passed the cardiology board exams. After cardiology fellowship, physicians can choose to undergo additional training in a subspecialty of cardiology (e.g., echocardiography, nuclear cardiology, intervention, etc.).

Cross-References

► [Cardiology](#)

References and Further Reading

Baughman, K. L., Duffy, F. D., Eagle, K. A., Faxon, D. P., Hillis, L. D., & Lange, R. A. (2008). Task force 1: Training in clinical cardiology. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 51(3), 339–348.

Cardiology

Daichi Shimbo
Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health,
Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Cardiovascular medicine](#)

Definition

Cardiology is a medical specialty of the structure, function, and disorders of the heart. Traditionally, cardiology has mainly focused on the heart; however, more recently, the field of cardiology has expanded into the study and disorders of the arteries and veins, as well as other organs such as the brain (i.e., stroke or transient ischemia attack) or kidney (i.e., cardiorenal syndrome). This is probably due to a common underlying pathophysiology of disease. As such, cardiology has recently involved areas of medicine typically associated with other specialties (such as neurologists, nephrologists, etc.).

Cross-References

► [Cardiologist](#)

References and Further Reading

Fuster, V., O'Rourke, R., Walsh, R., & Poole-Wilson, P. (2007). *Hurst's the heart* (12th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Professional.

Cardiology Expert

► [Cardiologist](#)

Cardiothoracic Surgery

► Cardiac Surgery

Cardiovascular Disease

► Hypertrophy

Cardiovascular Disease (CVD)

► Heart Disease and Smoking

Cardiovascular Disease Prevention

Stephanie Ann Hooker
Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Synonyms

CVD prevention

Definition

Cardiovascular disease is a group of chronic diseases (e.g., myocardial infarction, chronic heart disease, stroke) of the heart and blood vessels. Cardiovascular disease prevention is composed of the various early actions taken to thwart the onset of cardiovascular disease.

Description

Cardiovascular diseases (CVD) claim the lives of thousands of individuals every year. In 2007, the top cause of death in the United States was heart disease (616,067 deaths), second was cancer

(562,875 deaths), and third was stroke (or cerebrovascular disease, in many cases a form of cardiovascular illness; 135,952 deaths) (U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] 2010). Although there is a general inheritability for CVD, the formation of these diseases is seen as largely preventable. In a unique interpretation of the causes of death in the year 2000, Mokdad and colleagues (Mokdad et al. 2004) found that the top three actual causes of death were due to three modifiable behavioral risk factors: (1) smoking (435,000 deaths; 18.1% of total deaths in the year 2000); (2) poor diet and physical inactivity (400,000 deaths; 16.6%); and (3) alcohol consumption (85,000 deaths; 3.5%). All three of these behaviors are risk factors for CVD and are considered preventable.

Primary prevention of CVD, like other chronic, noncommunicable diseases, is seen as more cost-effective than treatment of the disease, which is usually long term and expensive (Probst-Hensch et al. 2011). Practitioners of behavioral medicine can encourage their patients and the community at large to make lifestyle modifications to prevent the onset of CVD. These can include behavioral changes such as (1) getting regular health screenings; (2) limiting tobacco exposure; (3) engaging in regular physical activity; (4) eating a heart-healthy diet; (5) maintaining a healthy weight; (6) limiting alcohol use; and (7) reducing stress and negative emotionality. These seven behavioral changes are described in detail below.

Get Regular Health Screenings

Beginning at age 20, adults should get screenings for CVD risk factors at least every 2 years. These include blood pressure, body weight, waist circumference, and pulse (as a screen for atrial fibrillation). At least every 5 years (or less if at higher risk), blood lipids (either fasting serum lipoproteins or total and high-density lipoproteins [HDL] if fasting unavailable) and fasting blood glucose should be recorded to monitor risk for hyperlipidemia and diabetes (Pearson et al. 2002).

Blood pressure should be maintained at a level below 140/90 mmHg for the average individual whereas those with diabetes should maintain their

blood pressure below 130/80 mmHg (Pearson et al. 2002). Individuals with hypertension can make behavioral modifications (e.g., limit salt intake, increase physical activity, and reduce alcohol intake). Blood pressure medications are recommended for individuals who have attempted lifestyle modifications but have not succeeded in controlling blood pressure.

Limit Tobacco Exposure

Individuals should avoid exposure to tobacco smoke as much as possible. Thus, they should not smoke cigarettes or other forms of tobacco, and those who do should quit. Exposure to secondhand smoke should be limited as well (Pearson et al. 2002). Tobacco use accounted for 18.1% of all deaths in the United States in the year 2000 and was the top behavioral risk factor for death (Mokdad et al. 2004). Cigarette smoking is one of the main risk factors for coronary heart disease, and women who smoke have a 25% greater risk of coronary heart disease than men after controlling for other risk factors (Huxley and Woodward 2011).

Engage in Regular Physical Activity

The American Heart Association recommends that individuals engage in at least 30 min of moderate-intensity exercise most days of the week (Pearson et al. 2002). Exercise treats many CVD risk factors, including elevated blood pressure, insulin resistance, glucose intolerance, obesity, elevated triglycerides, and low HDL cholesterol (Thompson et al. 2003). Exercise also has short-term effects of reducing serum triglycerides for up to 72 h, introducing a spike in HDL, reducing systolic blood pressure for up to 12 h, and helping stabilize glucose levels (Thompson et al. 2003). Physical activity might also help individuals make other preferable behavior changes, including helping with smoking cessation (Ussher et al. 2008).

Eat a Heart-Healthy Diet

Individuals should eat a “heart-healthy” diet. This is a diet that is low in fat (saturated fat <10% of

calories), cholesterol (<300 mg/day), and trans-fats (limit as much as possible), and salt (<6 g/day) and that is rich in assorted fruits, vegetables, whole grains, and low-fat dairy. Energy intake should match energy expenditure, i.e., intake should not exceed what is needed, and if necessary, intake should be reduced for weight loss (Pearson et al. 2002). Although there has been a major focus on *how much* individuals consume, there is evidence that *what* individuals eat is important to reduce CVD risk. In a meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials of dietary interventions in which patients were advised to either (1) reduce total fat intake, (2) reduce saturated fat intake, (3) reduce dietary cholesterol, or (4) shift from saturated to unsaturated fat, modification in dietary fat intake reduced risk for cardiovascular mortality by 9% and reduced risk for subsequent cardiac events by 16% (Hooper et al. 2001).

Maintain a Healthy Weight

Body mass index (BMI; weight (kg)/height (m)²) should be maintained in the normal range (18.5–24.9 kg/m²) (Pearson et al. 2002). Waist circumference should be maintained at less than 40 in. in diameter for men and less than 35 in. in diameter for women (Pearson et al. 2002). In a meta-analysis of over 80,000 individuals, greater waist-to-hip ratio and waist circumference were associated with greater risk of CVD-related mortality, after controlling for other relevant CVD risk factors, over an average 98.7-month follow-up (Czernichow et al. 2011). However, BMI, the most commonly used measure of obesity, was not related to CVD-related mortality after controlling for other risk factors, suggesting that some (if not all) of the risk that higher BMI contributes to CVD mortality is subsumed by the other related risk factors (e.g., blood pressure, cholesterol).

Limit Alcohol Use

Alcohol use should be limited to ≤2 drinks/day for men (≤14 drinks/week) and ≤1 drink a day for

women (≤ 7 drinks/week) (Pearson et al. 2002). In a meta-analysis of prospective cohort studies linking alcohol use to cardiovascular outcomes, including mortality and cardiovascular event morbidity, moderate consumption of alcohol (about 1 drink/day) was associated with a 14–25% reduced risk of all cardiovascular outcomes when compared to abstainers (Ronksley et al. 2011). Conversely, consuming higher amounts of alcohol (>1 drink/day) was associated with higher probability of CVD-specific mortality and cardiac events.

Reduce Stress and Negative Emotionality

Individuals should limit their exposure to stress and promote positive rather than negative emotions. There is evidence that negative emotions (i.e., depression, anxiety, and anger) are related to the development of CVD. Multiple pathways have been proposed to explain the relation between negative affect and CVD risk, and these include engagement in more adverse health behaviors, greater stress exposure, greater physiological reactivity, lower heart rate variability, and greater inflammation (cf., Suls and Bunde 2005, for a review). In particular, type D personality, a personality type comprised of negative emotionality and social inhibition, is positively related to cardiac events. A recent meta-analysis by O'Dell et al. (2011) revealed that patients with type D personalities were three times more likely to experience myocardial infarction, coronary artery bypass grafting, percutaneous cardiac intervention, or cardiac mortality than non-type D individuals. Conversely, there is preliminary evidence that some psychosocial resources may provide a protective buffer against cardiovascular risk. Roepke and Grant (2011) reviewed 32 studies of personal mastery (i.e., the belief that one has some control over future life circumstances) and cardiometabolic health and revealed that the overwhelming majority of studies found that higher mastery was associated with a reduced risk for cardiovascular outcomes.

Conclusions

Cardiovascular disease is largely preventable when individuals practice a healthy lifestyle. This includes practicing health-promoting behaviors like engaging in regular physical activity, eating a heart-healthy diet, maintaining a healthy weight, and getting regular health screenings and avoiding health-compromising behaviors like risky alcohol use and tobacco use. Additionally, individuals can make attempts to reduce their experiences of stress and negative emotions and promote positive emotional experiences. The combination of these behaviors will help reduce the risk of CVD and promote longer, healthier lives.

Cross-References

► [Cardiovascular Disease](#)

References and Readings

- Czernichow, S., Kengne, A., Stamatakis, E., Hamer, M., & Batty, G. (2011). Body mass index, waist circumference and waist-hip ratio: Which is the better discriminator of cardiovascular disease and mortality risk? Evidence from an individual-participant meta-analysis of 82 864 participants from nine cohort studies. *Obesity Reviews*, 12, 680–687.
- Hooper, L., Summerbell, C. D., Higgins, J. P. T., Thompson, R. L., Capps, N. E., Smith, G. D., et al. (2001). Dietary fat intake and prevention of cardiovascular disease: Systematic review. *BMJ*, 322, 757–763. (Clinical Research Editions).
- Huxley, R., & Woodward, M. (2011). Cigarette smoking as a risk factor for coronary heart disease in women compared with men: A systematic review and meta-analysis of prospective cohort studies. *Lancet*, 6736, 1–9.
- Mokdad, A., Marks, J., Stroup, D., & Gerberding, J. (2004). Actual causes of death in the United States, 2000. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 291, 1238–1245.
- O'Dell, K., Masters, K. S., Spielmanns, G. I., & Maisto, S. A. (2011). Does Type-D personality predict outcomes among patients with cardiovascular disease? A meta-analytic review. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 71, 199–206.

- Pearson, T. A., Blair, S. N., Daniels, S. R., Eckel, R. H., Fair, J. M., Fortmann, S. P., et al. (2002). AHA guidelines for primary prevention of cardiovascular disease and stroke: 2002 update: Consensus panel guide to comprehensive risk reduction for adult patients without coronary or other atherosclerotic vascular diseases. *Circulation*, 106, 388–391.
- Probst-Hensch, N., Tanner, M., Kessler, C., Burri, C., & Künzli, N. (2011). Prevention: A cost-effective way to fight the non-communicable disease epidemic. *Swiss Medical Weekly*, 141, 1–8.
- Roepke, S., & Grant, I. (2011). Toward a more complete understanding of the effects of personal mastery on cardiometabolic health. *Health Psychology*, 30, 615–632.
- Ronsley, P., Brien, S., Turner, B., Mukamal, K., & Ghali, W. (2011). Association of alcohol consumption with selected cardiovascular disease outcomes: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMJ*, 342, 1–13.
- Suls, J., & Bunde, J. (2005). Anger, anxiety, and depression as risk factors for cardiovascular disease: The problems and implications of overlapping affective dispositions. *Psychological Bulletin*, 131, 260–300.
- Thompson, P., Buchner, D., Piña, I., Balady, G. J., Williams, M. A., Marcus, B. H., et al. (2003). Exercise and physical activity in the prevention and treatment of atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease: A statement from the Council on Clinical Cardiology (Subcommittee on Exercise, Rehabilitation, and Prevention) and the Council on Nutrition, Physical Activity, and Metabolism (Subcommittee on Physical Activity). *Arteriosclerosis, Thrombosis, and Vascular Biology*, 8, e42–e49.
- US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2009). *Heart disease prevention*. Retrieved August 28, 2011, from <http://www.cdc.gov/heartdisease/prevention.htm>
- US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010). Deaths: Final data for 2007. *National Vital Statistics Report*, 58. Accessed March 21, 2011, from http://www.cdc.gov/NCHS/data/nvsr/nvsr58/nvsr58_19.pdf
- Ussher, M. H., Taylor, A., & Faulkner, G. (2008). Exercise interventions for smoking cessation (Review). *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 4, 1–37.

Cardiovascular Medicine

► Cardiology

Cardiovascular Medicine Expert

► Cardiologist

Cardiovascular Recovery

William Gerin

The College of Health and Human Development,
University Park, PA, USA

Definition

Cardiovascular recovery refers to the extent to which elevations in blood pressure (BP) or heart rate (HR) due to a stressor persist after the stressor is no longer present.

Description

Recovery of cardiovascular prestress resting levels following a stressor has been of interest to researchers for many years, going back to the original cardiovascular reactivity studies by Hines and Brown (1936), who noted that not only did hypertensive patients show greater responses to the cold pressor than normotensive controls but also recovered more slowly. Since then, evidence from several studies suggests that recovery may provide prognostic information concerning the development of cardiovascular diseases, such as hypertension and coronary heart disease (CHD) (Fredrickson and Matthews 1990).

Cardiovascular reactivity (the magnitude of the acute BP or HR response to a stressor) has been implicated as a risk factor in the development of cardiovascular-related diseases (i.e., the “reactivity hypothesis”). However, this measure does not take into account the duration of the response (i.e., recovery; the time BP or HR takes to return to prestress baseline levels from elevations due to a stressor that is no longer present). There is strong evidence that sustained elevation of BP is a cause of target organ damage, e.g., left ventricular hypertrophy, and, over time, of essential hypertension (HTN) (Fredrickson and Matthews 1990). To the extent that we may regard slow recovery periods, observed in the laboratory, as analogous to sustained elevated BP in the natural

environment, this measure provides information over and above that of the magnitude of the response. However, there is not nearly the body of evidence examining the causes and effects of recovery as there is for reactivity.

Much of the evidence that does exist for recovery comes from cross-sectional comparisons, examining variables that are related to the development of cardiovascular diseases and including comparisons based on normotensive-hypertensive status; family history of hypertension; and ethnicity. For example, children of normotensive parents show more rapid recovery than children of hypertensives (Linden et al. 1997). It is noteworthy that in this review, differences in reactivity were *not* observed among the groups. Hines and Brown (1936) found that hypertensive subjects showed longer recovery times than normotensives. Finally, studies examining race have found that Black women and men had slower recovery rates than White women and men (Linden et al. 1997).

Thus, several important risk factors for hypertension and CHD appear to influence BP and HR return to prestress levels following a stressor. The recovery data are important, especially given findings showing that in a sample of borderline hypertensives, a strong predictor of future stable hypertension was the recovery of diastolic BP following a mental arithmetic task (Borghi et al. 1986). In fact, these researchers found recovery a more useful predictor than reactivity.

There are in theory many reasons why recovery should be poorer in one individual than in another. In general, the mechanisms could be central or peripheral. An example of the former would be a persistence of the autonomic arousal, or an inability to “unwind” following exposure to a stressor. A second mechanism could be an impairment of baroreflex sensitivity. The function of the baroreflex is to buffer acute changes of blood pressure, and an insensitive reflex would result in an enhanced and protracted pressor response to a stimulus. A third, and peripheral, mechanism is changes in the vasculature, such as hypertrophy and remodeling, which could result in delayed relaxation of vascular smooth muscle following exposure to a vasoconstrictor stimulus.

There is evidence that recovery and reactivity represent independent dimensions. For example, in one review paper, reactivity changes were weakly correlated with recovery scores (Linden et al. 1997). In addition, Haynes et al. (1991) reported that, across a total of 65 studies, of the 81 statistical analyses (out of 180) that indicated *nonsignificant stressor effects* (i.e., reactivity) for a variable (e.g., between group, between phases), significant effects were found during the *recovery* phase for 74% of the same variables. Conversely, of the 74 statistical analyses that indicated *significant* stressor effects for a variable, nonsignificant effects were found during the *recovery* phase for 42% of those same variables. This is important because it suggests that the physiological mechanisms underlying the two processes of reactivity and recovery must be considered separately and that the information contained in *both* measures may provide greater insight into the cardiovascular mechanisms underlying the stress response than either measure alone. These considerations have led a number of researchers to suggest that causal explanations of biobehavioral disorders and the design of clinical interventions may be well served by studying psychophysiological recovery.

Early Theories of Stress and Recovery

As early as the 1930s, the seminal theories of stress, and the optimal ways to respond to stress, were proposed. For example, Seyle (1936) proposed that stress has three phases: activation, resistance, and exhaustion. When the body is initially challenged by a stressor, it responds with physiological activation of a defense system to deal with the immediate stressor, what is often referred to as the fight-or-flight response. A resistance (or coping) phase follows during which the body begins to suffer from the effects of heightened activity, but continues to function to ward off the stress-inducing stimuli. If the resolution of stress is unsuccessful the body may experience exhaustion. Activation that endures beyond the resistance stage (i.e., does not lead to swift resolution) is presumed to contribute to disease.

At about the same time, Freeman (1939) posited that psychological recovery from experimental loads may be useful in estimating an individual's ability to withstand conflict in ordinary life situations. Such early suggestions that quick recovery from stress-induced arousal reflects particularly effective coping laid the foundation for later theories of the stress-disease linkage.

Subsequent work has thus refined these theories, and posited biological mechanisms for how stress impacts the body and contributes to disease. Important to refinement was the altering of Seyle's notion from a ubiquitous, "whole-system" response to challenge, to one that distinguished at least two axes of physiological responding. The sympatho-adrenal axis reflects activation due to motor and cognitive effort, including rises in epinephrine, norepinephrine, muscle tension, plasma free fatty acid levels, and blood pressure due to cardiac output. This activation when accompanied by adrenocortical hormone suppression has also been described as a "positive stress reaction" because it is short-lived and permits adaptive responding with maximal strength (De La Torre 1994). In contrast, the hypothalamic-pituitary axis (HPA) is thought to reflect affective distress and be the result of chronic, unresolved strain (De La Torre), and may be the most indicative bodily response during delayed recovery. HPA axis activity is associated with increased release of free fatty acid into circulation, suppression of immune function, increased glucose and urea production, and increased blood pressure due to vasoconstriction (i.e., total peripheral resistance); HPA activation is inferred from the measurement of cortisol and its precursor adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH).

Cognitive-Affective Determinants of Poorer Recovery

A fundamental question that arises concerns how acute stressors can have lasting effects for some but not others, or put another way, why some individuals have poorer recovery than others.

Brosschot et al. (2005) have proposed that the tendency to relive stressors in one's mind (i.e., ruminate and worry) causes repeated HPA activation and results in negative health outcomes, such as sustained hypertension. In other words, people do not need an external stressor to be present to experience stress. Rather, stress can have longer durations and impacts on the body, simply through thinking about and remembering negative emotions and having persistent thoughts about the negative experiences. Furthermore, it is those individuals who continually experience the mental representation of stress that have poor recovery and ultimately poor health. This focus on the cognitive-affective determinants of poorer recovery has begun to be seen as an important area of study, augmenting reactivity models.

Conclusion

In sum, the duration of time it takes for an individual's cardiovascular system to return to resting levels is a key determinant of that person's health. Furthermore, the duration of experienced stress (i.e., recovery) is an independent and often more important predictor of future health than the magnitude of the stress response (i.e., reactivity). Current models of hypertension and cardiovascular disease are beginning to focus on delayed recovery as an essential variable to consider. This work, and future explorations, will need to consider the role that perseverative cognitions, such as rumination, play in delaying cardiovascular recovery. While the effects of the arrangement of stress in one's environment cannot be ignored, how stress is arranged in one's mind appears to be as important a factor to determining one's health.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Blood Pressure Reactivity or Responses](#)
- ▶ [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- ▶ [Hypertension](#)

- [Perseverative Cognition](#)
- [Psychophysiological Recovery](#)
- [Rumination](#)

References and Readings

- Borghi, C., Costa, F. V., Bochi, S., Mussi, A., & Ambrosioni, E. (1986). Predictors of stable hypertension in young borderline subjects: A five year follow-up study. *Journal of Cardiovascular Pharmacology*, 8, S138–S141.
- Brosschot, J. F., Gerin, W., & Thayer, J. F. (2005). The perseverative cognition hypothesis: A review of worry, prolonged stress-related physiological activation, and health. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 60, 113–124.
- De La Torre, B. (1994). Psychoendocrinologic mechanisms of life stress. *Stress Medicine*, 10, 107–114.
- Fredrickson, M., & Matthews, K. A. (1990). Cardiovascular responses to behavioral stress and hypertension: A meta-analytic review. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 12, 30–39.
- Freeman, G. L. (1939). Toward a psychiatric Plimsoll mark: Physiological recovery quotients in experimentally induced frustration. *Journal of Psychology*, 8, 247–252.
- Gerin, W. (2010). Laboratory stress testing methodology. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications*. New York: Springer.
- Haynes, S. N., Gannon, L. R., Orimoto, L., O'Brien, W. H., & Brandt, M. (1991). Psychophysiological assessment of poststress recovery. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 3, 356–365.
- Hines, E. A., & Brown, G. E. (1936). The cold pressor test for measuring the reactivity of the blood pressure: Data concerning 571 normal and hypertensive subjects. *American Heart Journal*, 11, 1–9.
- Linden, W., Earle, T. L., Gerin, W., & Christenfeld, N. (1997). Physiological stress reactivity and recovery: Conceptual siblings separated at birth? *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 42, 117–135.
- Obrist, P. A. (1981). *Cardiovascular psychophysiology: A perspective*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Seyle, H. (1936). A syndrome produced by diverse nocuous agents. *Nature*, 138, 32.
- Turner, J. R. (1994). *Cardiovascular reactivity and stress: Patterns of physiological response*. New York: Plenum Press.

Cardiovascular Response/Reactivity

- [Blood Pressure Reactivity or Responses](#)

Cardiovascular Risk Factors

Caitlin A. Bronson, Rachel S. Rubinstein and Richard J. Contrada

Department of Psychology, Rutgers, The State University of New Jersey, Piscataway, NJ, USA

Synonyms

[Determinants](#); [Protective factors](#); [Psychosocial factors](#); [Vulnerabilities](#)

Definition

A cardiovascular risk factor is a predictor of one or more diseases of the heart or circulation.

Description

A “risk factor” is a variable that bears an empirical association with one or more diseases or medical conditions. “Cardiovascular disease” and “heart disease” refer to a set of specific disorders that affect the heart and circulation. Therefore, a cardiovascular risk factor is a correlate of one or more cardiovascular diseases. A distinction is sometimes made between risk and protective factors as a way to capture the direction of the relationship. For example, elevated cholesterol is a risk factor, whereas greater social integration is a protective factor.

The identification of risk factors for medical conditions is a major goal of epidemiology. The term “risk factor” was introduced in the context of cardiovascular epidemiology, a field that underwent great expansion during the twentieth century. Acute infectious conditions that had been the major sources of death in the early 1900s came under control as a result of advances in the fields of public health and biomedicine. As a consequence, several multiply determined chronic disorders became more prevalent. Chronic illnesses,

and diseases of the heart and blood vessels in particular, became and continue to be the leading sources of death in the United States and globally. Many risk factors for cardiovascular disorders have been identified. They may be categorized in a number of ways, for example, in terms of the particular form(s) of cardiovascular disease (CVD) with which they are related or on the basis of characteristics of the risk factors themselves.

Major Cardiovascular Disorders

Among the various forms of CVD, coronary heart disease (CHD) is a major contributor to cardiovascular morbidity and mortality. Also referred to as ischemic heart disease, CHD occurs when the heart is inadequately supplied with oxygenated blood. It has several clinical manifestations including angina pectoris (a syndrome involving chest pain), myocardial infarction (MI) or “heart attack” (death of a portion of the myocardium), and sudden cardiac death (death within minutes of symptom onset). Coronary heart disease can promote other cardiovascular disorders, such as when damage due to MI leads to congestive heart failure, a condition in which the pumping action of the heart cannot adequately meet the demands of the body for oxygen and nutrition. Atrial fibrillation is one of several forms of CVD that involves a disturbance in heart rhythm and may be a result of MI or heart failure.

Clinical CHD is usually a consequence of coronary atherosclerosis or coronary artery disease (CAD). Coronary atherosclerosis involves the accumulation of plaque, a fatty, waxy substance, which forms on the inner lining of the coronary arteries, the vessels that supply oxygenated blood to heart muscle. The buildup of atherosclerotic plaque, which reflects a number of metabolic, hemodynamic, inflammatory, and hematologic processes, culminates in CHD when blood vessel openings become narrowed enough to obstruct blood flow to the heart muscle and metabolic demands can no longer be met. The triggering

event in CHD is often thrombosis (clot formation) leading to occlusion of an already narrowed coronary artery. The atherosclerotic process also may affect blood vessels of the brain, leading to one type of cerebrovascular incident commonly referred to as a “stroke.”

Still another form of CVD is essential hypertension, a condition defined by sustained high blood pressure levels with no identifiable cause. Hypertension is often associated with vascular inelasticity, referred to as arteriosclerosis. Hypertension increases risk for CHD as well as for stroke, retinopathy, heart failure, and kidney disease.

Risk factors differ somewhat for different forms of CVD. For example, cigarette smoking is a well-established risk factor for MI and other forms of CHD, but while it has been linked to high blood pressure, its precise role in the development of essential hypertension is less clear (e.g., see Gao et al. 2017). On the other hand, dietary intake of salt, a risk factor for essential hypertension in some segments of the population, has a less well-established relationship with other types of heart disease. Similarly, certain kinds of heart valve problems more clearly operate as predisposing factors for heart rhythm disturbances than for other cardiovascular conditions.

Taken together, the multifaceted nature of CVD, complexities in interrelationships among its various forms, and their overlapping but non-identical determinants complicate the description and classification of cardiovascular risk factors. However, many clinical manifestations of CHD and other major forms of CVD reflect a common substrate, atherosclerosis, and, in the aggregate, account for considerable morbidity and mortality. This provides an important focus for much research on cardiovascular risk factors. Moreover, although genetic and other biological risk factors may be in play from the time of birth, much of the burden of CVD reflects the operation of multiple aspects of lifestyle, as will be discussed further below. This raises the possibility that programs of primary prevention may bring about significant reductions in the burden of CVD.

Attributes of Risk Factors

Risk factor status, by itself, does not imply causality. The case for a causal role requires well-designed studies demonstrating an association with disease that is consistent, strong, prospective (rather than merely cross-sectional), and independent of other possible risk factors. The putative risk factor also should plausibly be related to disease etiology and pathophysiology, and its removal should reduce the risk of disease. Although causal analysis often follows after a variable is identified empirically as a risk factor, in other cases a variable is examined as a possible risk factor only after a role in disease causation is first suggested in mechanistic research.

The strength of the relationship between a risk factor and disease is often expressed in terms of relative risk. Relative risk is the ratio of the probability of disease occurrence with and without the risk factor in question. For example, a relative risk of 2.0 would indicate that individuals with the risk factor are twice as likely (or, equivalently, 100% more likely) to develop the condition by comparison with those without the risk factor. Major risk factors for one or more cardiovascular conditions are those for whom a significant relative risk is well-established. Variables for which the evidence is less clear are sometimes referred to as contributing risk factors. The more risk factors that are present, and the higher the level of each one, the greater the risk for CVD. In addition to its relative risk, attributes of a cardiovascular risk factor that determine its overall importance from a public health standpoint include its prevalence, the degree to which it can be readily modified, and the impact of its modification on CVD outcomes. Several risk factors, such as resting blood pressure and cholesterol levels, can be modified, and their modification is associated with reductions in cardiovascular morbidity and mortality. In other cases, including that of many psychosocial variables, there are questions either about the effects of interventions on the risk factor or about the impact of risk factor modification on CVD outcomes. Still other risk factors, such as gender and age, are clearly not

modifiable, though it remains possible that some of the pathways through which they exert their effects are amenable to intervention.

Risk Factor Categories

Cardiovascular disease risk factors may also be distinguished on the basis of their intrinsic characteristics. One rather broad distinction is that between states or conditions of the person and those that describe the environment. Person factors include variables such as resting blood pressure, gender, and personality. Environmental factors may be defined geographically, in terms of regions, such as the Southeastern USA (where CVD is highly prevalent), or with respect to the average socioeconomic status (SES) of individuals residing in a particular community (which is typically inversely associated with CVD risk).

Risk factors also may be categorized in terms of the time point and chronicity of their influence on the natural history of CVD. For example, a hypothesized pathogenic effect may promote the progression of CAD, as in the case of variables related to blood cholesterol or sugar levels. Alternatively, a risk factor may be suspected of playing a role in the manifestation of clinical CHD, as where an acute stressor triggers an ischemic event in the context of previously asymptomatic CAD. Risk factors therefore may exert their influence gradually, over the course of months and years, or more rapidly, within days, hours, or even minutes.

Risk factors also may be described at several levels of analysis. Many are biological, ranging from the molecular, for example, specific genetic polymorphisms and pro-inflammatory factors, to systemic physiological conditions such as high-resting blood pressure. Some risk factors are behavioral, including cigarette smoking, physical inactivity, and various dietary practices. Alternatively, some are psychological, including personality attributes like cynical hostility, optimism, and mood and anxiety disorders like major depression and post-traumatic stress disorder

(PTSD). Still others are described at a social level of analysis, including social network characteristics and SES.

Risk Factor Interactions

Risk factors for CVD do not operate in isolation from one another. Individual variables may share causal antecedents, influence one another directly, and exert additive or synergistic effects in the etiology and pathogenesis of disease. For example, CVD risk factors such as poor diet and exercise habits combine to promote obesity and high cholesterol levels, which are themselves CVD risk factors. Functional relationships among a set of multiple determinants of a single outcome suggest that it may be useful to consider them in combination. A case in point is cardiometabolic syndrome, a biological CVD risk factor defined as a cluster consisting of central obesity, hypertension, and dysregulation in glucose and fat metabolism. The disease-promoting effects of certain risk factors are thought to amplify those of others. In particular, cigarette smoking has been examined for its possible interactive effects with other variables including genes, high blood pressure, and oral contraceptive use.

Traditional and Psychosocial Risk Factors

Historically, risk factors that were identified early on or that fit within the original paradigm for understanding CVD have been referred to as “traditional” or “biomedical.” Variables that fit within this tradition and that are recognized by contemporary epidemiologists include high levels of low-density lipoprotein cholesterol, diabetes mellitus, high-resting blood pressure, and smoking; also implicated are older age, male gender, specific genetic markers, family history, obesity, physical inactivity, a high fat, high carbohydrate diet, and high levels of triglycerides.

Beginning in the middle of the twentieth century and continuing today, a large body of

research has sought to identify additional types of risk factors, including a number of social and psychological variables. These efforts were stimulated by limitations in the predictive power of traditional risk factors, theoretical and empirical work concerning the effects of psychological stress and emotion on cardiovascular physiology, and empirical research findings that were suggestive of psychosocial influences on CVD. Examples of promising nontraditional risk factors include characteristics of the person and social context that are referred to as “psychosocial” (some of which are discussed below). Recognition of the potential importance of psychosocial CVD risk factors contributed significantly to the emergence and growth of the fields of health psychology, behavioral medicine, and behavioral cardiology.

Lifestyle as the Major Determinant of CVD

The designation of many of the traditional CVD risk factors as “biomedical” is something of a misnomer. For example, major cardiovascular risk factors identified in early epidemiological work, and still the target of considerable research, are cigarette smoking, resting blood pressure, cholesterol levels, and blood sugar problems including diabetes. Cigarette smoking is, of course, a behavior pattern, and although it is maintained, in part, by physiological processes of nicotine addiction, its initiation and natural history also reflect social and psychological influences. Similarly, blood pressure, cholesterol, and blood sugar are to some extent regulated by specific behaviors such as diet and exercise and also may reflect psychosocial influences such as stress and emotion.

Given that most forms of CVD take decades to develop, recognition that many of the traditional risk factors reflect aspects of lifestyle has important public health implications. One is that efforts to prevent CVD should begin early in life. Behavior patterns such as cigarette smoking and those involved in weight regulation and nutrition begin during or even before adolescence.

Tobacco use has a devastating effect on health, including cancer and respiratory diseases in addition to CVD, and recent trends toward earlier emergence of obesity and, relatedly, diabetes mellitus are alarming in light of their projected impact on trends in the prevalence of heart disease. When combined with possible psychosocial determinants of CVD, which also may begin to emerge in the earlier years of life, the need for a life span perspective on CVD risk reduction becomes quite clear. The promotion and maintenance of a healthy lifestyle in young people has the greatest potential for reducing the lifetime burden of CVD. Further, an intersectional approach to cardiovascular risk factors highlights the importance of examining the differing prevalence of risk factors based on person characteristics such as gender, race, and ethnicity. For example, rates of physical inactivity are commonly higher among Black, compared to White, men, and women (Sundquist et al. 2001). Interactions among multiple identities (e.g., race/ethnicity, gender, sexual orientation) to influence lifestyle choices associated with cardiovascular risk factors suggest promising areas for targeted intervention.

Stress and Emotional Dispositions

Several promising psychosocial risk factors for CVD involve the concept of psychological stress. Psychological stress entails (a) stressors or environmental events and conditions that place demands and constraints on a person's adaptive resources; (b) psychological responses to stressors, including perceptual-evaluative (appraisal) processes that initiate stress and emotion and cognitive and behavioral responses (coping) that may counteract or exacerbate stressors and their impact; and (c) biological responses, including neuroendocrine, autonomic, cardiovascular, and immunological/inflammatory perturbations that are potentially damaging to cardiovascular health. Prevalent stressors with suggestive effects on CVD outcomes are major life events, occupational stress, marital conflict, social isolation, and discrimination.

Psychosocial factors that interact with psychological stress also have received attention as possible CVD risk factors. One such construct, the Type A behavior pattern (TABP), formed the foundation for contemporary work on psychosocial factors in CVD especially where the suspected mediating mechanism involves stress-related physiological activity. Type A refers to a set of behaviors that include competitiveness and achievement striving, impatience and time urgency, hostility and anger, and vigorous speech and motor characteristics (Friedman and Rosenman 1974). Type B refers to a more relaxed, less impatient, and less irritable pattern of behavior. Type A was conceptualized as the outcome of a person-situation interaction in which its defining features are displayed in response to stressful events and conditions in susceptible individuals. The TABP construct initially attracted considerable attention for a prospective association with CHD that was independent of traditional risk factors such as cholesterol levels and cigarette smoking (Rosenman et al. 1975). Subsequent research findings did not fully confirm these findings, resulting in diminished interest in the TABP (Matthews 1988).

About this time, evidence began to emerge to suggest that hostility and anger form the risk-enhancing components of the TABP. Prospective studies of hostility and anger constructs and different forms of anger expression have yielded promising findings (Kent and Shapiro 2009). Much of this research has relied on the Ho scale first described by Cook and Medley (1954). Hostility, characterized by cynicism and interpersonal mistrust, may be related to CAD-related outcomes, although negative findings have been reported as well (Kent and Shapiro 2009). Its effects appear mediated by enhanced physiological reactivity to stressors but also may reflect increased exposure to stressors, low social support, and health-damaging behaviors.

More recently, depression has been identified as a potentially potent independent predictor of CHD in healthy populations and as a factor that may contribute to both the manifestation and worsening of CHD. In addition, depression is associated with several major cardiac risk factors

(e.g., hypertension, physical inactivity). Various forms, severity levels, and symptoms of depression have been examined in this regard. Findings indicate that depressive symptoms and major depression are associated with increased cardiovascular morbidity and mortality, even after controlling for other risk factors (Kent and Shapiro 2009). However, major depression is associated more strongly with adverse cardiac events than is the presence of subclinical depressive symptoms (Rozanski et al. 2005). Further, depression may be more prevalent and confer a higher risk among women than men (Guimarães et al. 2017).

In addition, depressed individuals are more likely than nondepressed individuals to have more than one risk factor for CVD, which may indicate that the association between depression and CVD is due, in part, to the combination of risk factors rather than to each risk factor considered independently (Joynt et al. 2003). For example, elevations in C-reactive protein, a risk factor for CVD, occur more among depressed compared to nondepressed individuals in response to acute stress (Weinstein et al. 2010). As with hostility, there are some inconsistencies in this research. Nonetheless, the sheer volume of findings that support depression as a CHD risk factor builds a strong case in its favor (Kent and Shapiro 2009).

Distinct from depression, but overlapping in symptomology, vital exhaustion first became implicated as a risk factor for CVD during the height of TABP research. Vital exhaustion entails depression-like features such as fatigue, hopelessness, listlessness, loss of libido, irritability, and sleep problems but lacks depressed mood (Kopp 1999; Frestad and Prescott 2017). Sleep disturbance, or insufficient sleep, also independently functions as a risk factor for not only CVD but obesity, inflammation, and diabetes.

Another emotional disposition that has been implicated as a possible CVD risk factor is anxiety. Research has revealed a link between anxiety and the development of CVD in physically healthy populations, but evidence for this association has been mixed (Suls and Bunde 2005). Studies of populations with known CHD have also yielded inconsistent findings, with some reporting null effects and others finding an inverse

relationship (Suls & Bunde). To assess anxiety, some researchers use diagnostic interviews and clinical criteria, whereas others use self-report measures. Generally, results supporting anxiety as a CVD risk factor are more consistent in samples of initially healthy individuals than in CVD patients. This may signify that negative emotions constitute greater risk for development of CVD than for its progression. Inconsistencies in the findings also may reflect difficulty in assessing anxiety in the context of a medical condition and hospitalization and in differentiating a temporary state of anxiety from chronic anxiety (Suls & Bunde). As with depression, anxiety has been examined both as a subclinical dimension of individual differences and in terms of clinical conditions such as PTSD.

Still another emotional disposition that may operate as a CVD risk factor, neuroticism, refers to individual differences in irritability, anger, sadness, anxiety, worry, hostility, self-consciousness, and vulnerability in response to threat, frustration, or loss. Initially, neuroticism was not thought to play a causal role in CVD. Instead, the association with CAD was thought to reflect effects on somatic complaints and healthcare-seeking behaviors (Costa and McCrae 1987). However, an expanding body of evidence implicates neuroticism as a possible causal agent in multiple mental and physical disorders, including CVD (Lahey 2009). Neuroticism, like hostility, is thought to contribute to health risk through the experience of more stressors, less social support, and greater likelihood to engage in risky behaviors. Given that neuroticism incorporates anger, sadness, and anxiety, and in light of positive associations among these emotional dispositions when measured separately, questions have been raised about the independence of these variables and their possible interactions, especially since few studies have examined two or more of them simultaneously (Suls and Bunde 2005).

More recently, dispositional optimism, or a generalized expectation for positive outcomes, has been implicated as a cardioprotective factor. Higher levels of optimism relate to lower incidents of heart failure even after controlling for more traditional risk factors like smoking,

physical activity, and obesity (Kim et al. 2014). Further, optimism, like hostility and neuroticism, may moderate the experience of stressors and access to social support.

Social Factors

In addition to these dispositional constructs, some CVD risk factors are situated in the social environment. One example is low social support (Krantz and McCeney 2002). Social support refers to the availability of a variety of social contacts from whom to derive benefits. Such benefits include emotional support, tangible aid, feelings of belonging, and informational support. Social support is associated with other factors that are related to health, such as SES and medication compliance. Prospective studies have found an association between low social support and risk of CVD.

Particular emphasis has been placed on stress as a mechanism underlying the association between low social support and CVD, although relevant investigations have yielded divergent findings (Uchino et al. 1996). It appears social networks may be cardioprotective as a result of their stress-buffering effects, but they also may operate independently of stress, for example, by promoting healthy behaviors and discouraging unhealthy ones. However, social support may function differently based on age and gender.

Another social contextual factor that has been identified as a CVD risk factor is low SES defined as a person's occupation, economic resources, social standing, and education. There is considerable support for the existence of an SES health gradient that affects many diseases, including CVD. Higher SES is associated with better general health, less chronic illness, and decreased mortality. However, some research suggests that high SES may be less protective among men whose relative income contribution to the household is low (Springer 2010). Overall, though, the positive association between SES and CVD is evident throughout the SES spectrum, which suggests that its effects cannot be completely explained by the impact of poverty on access to

affordable healthcare. Relevant mechanisms may include cognitive and emotional processes, as well as psychosocial factors including social support (Marmot et al. 1991).

Identification of possible psychosocial risk factors for CVD gave rise to research on explanatory mechanisms. These may be described in terms of three major categories, namely, stress-related physiological activity; behaviors that may promote CVD in initially health individuals, including other CVD risk factors such as cigarette smoking, sedentary lifestyle, and poor diet; and cognitive and affective responses to illness and its treatment once CVD has developed, including processes culminating in delaying healthcare seeking and treatment noncompliance.

Of the many theoretical and empirical contributions to emerge from mechanism-focused work on psychosocial CVD risk factors, perhaps the most significant development was formulation of the reactivity hypothesis. Reactivity refers to changes in physiologic activity associated with psychological stress, including alterations in neuroendocrine, autonomic, hemodynamic, hematologic, and immunological/inflammatory processes. Beginning with research on TABP, findings began to emerge in which emotional attributes and social-contextual factors moderated the effects of psychological stress on one or more physiological response measures. In addition, accumulating evidence suggests that physiologic reactivity represents a dimension of individual difference that is consistent across different psychological stressors and stable over time. It appears related to or may even constitute a form of emotional volatility that runs through emotion constructs discussed above including anger/hostility, anxiety, and neuroticism. These findings, in turn, have led to the hypothesis that physiological reactivity might operate as an independent CVD risk factor and to empirical observations linking reactivity to CVD outcomes including the development of CHD and essential hypertension and the precipitation of acute episodes of MI and other cardiac events. While reactivity to acute stressors may present an increased risk of CVD through atherosclerotic plaque activation, chronic or long-term exposure to stress has also been linked

to CVD in part through potentially increasing pro-inflammatory cytokines.

Conclusion

Although the risk and protective factors described above have received considerable attention, they are not exhaustive of the constructs that have been examined as potential causes of CVD. Many other variables have been investigated including macro-social factors such as culture, political systems, and migration; additional forms of stress such as institutional racism and caregiving burden; emotional dispositions such as Type D behavior (negative emotions accompanied by social inhibition); social and personal forms of religion and spirituality; specific behaviors such as alcohol consumption; and various infectious conditions and biomarkers. These efforts are fueled by the need to identify additional risk factors to account more completely for new cases of CVD, to explain the disparities in its prevalence and progression among different segments of the population, and to improve the public health benefits of risk factor modification for this multiply determined set of chronic lifestyle disorders.

Cross-References

- [Anxiety and Heart Disease](#)
- [Cardiovascular Disease Prevention](#)
- [Depression: Symptoms](#)
- [Epidemiology](#)
- [Fibrinogen](#)
- [Psychological Stress](#)
- [Social Inhibition](#)
- [Social Relationships](#)
- [Social Support](#)
- [Stress Vulnerability Models](#)

References and Further Readings

Contrada, R. J., & Baum, A. (2011). *Handbook of stress science: Biology, psychology, and health*. New York: Springer.

- Cook, W. W., & Medley, D. M. (1954). Proposed hostility and pharisaic-virtue scales for the MMPI. *Journal of Applied Psychology*, 38, 414–417.
- Costa, P. T., & McCrae, R. R. (1987). Neuroticism, somatic complaints, and disease: Is the bark worse than the bite? *Journal of Personality*, 55, 299–316.
- Frestad, D., & Prescott, E. (2017). Vital exhaustion and coronary heart disease risk: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 79(3), 260–272.
- Friedman, M., & Rosenman, R. H. (1974). *Type A behavior and your heart*. New York: Knopf.
- Gao, K., Shi, X., & Wang, W. (2017). The life-course impact of smoking on hypertension, myocardial infarction and respiratory diseases. *Scientific Reports*, 7, 4330.
- Guimarães, P. O., et al. (2017). Sex differences in clinical characteristics, psychosocial factors, and outcomes among patients with stable coronary heart disease: insights from the STABILITY (Stabilization of Atherosclerotic Plaque by Initiation of Darapladib Therapy) trial. *Journal of the American Heart Association*, 6(9), e006695.
- Joynt, K. E., Whellan, D. J., & O'Connor, C. M. (2003). Depression and cardiovascular disease: Mechanisms of interaction. *Biological Psychiatry*, 54, 248–261.
- Kent, L. M., & Shapiro, P. A. (2009). Depression and related psychological factors in heart disease. *Harvard Review of Psychiatry*, 17, 377–388.
- Kim, E. S., Smith, J., & Kubzansky, L. D. (2014). Prospective study of the association between dispositional optimism and incident heart failure. *Circulation: Heart Failure*, 7(3), 394–400.
- Kopp, W. J. (1999). Chronic and acute psychological risk factors from clinical manifestations of coronary artery disease. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 61, 476–487.
- Krantz, D. S., & McCeney, M. K. (2002). Effects of psychological and social factors on organic disease: A critical assessment of research on coronary heart disease. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 53, 341–369.
- Lahey, B. B. (2009). Public health significance of neuroticism. *American Psychologist*, 64, 241–256.
- Marmot, M. G., Stansfeld, S., Patel, C., North, F., Head, J., White, I., et al. (1991). Health Inequalities among British civil servants: The Whitehall II study. *Lancet*, 337, 1387–1393.
- Matthews, K. A. (1988). Coronary heart disease and Type A behaviors: Update on and alternative to the Booth-Kewley and Friedman (1987) quantitative review. *Psychological Bulletin*, 104, 373–381.
- Rosenman, R. H., Brand, R. J., Jenkins, C. D., Friedman, M., Straus, R., & Wurm, M. (1975). Coronary heart disease in the Western Collaborative Group Study. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 233, 872–877.
- Rozanski, A., Blumenthal, J. A., Davidson, K. W., Saab, P. G., & Kubzansky, L. (2005). The epidemiology, pathophysiology, and management of psychosocial risk factors in cardiac practice: The emerging field of

behavioral cardiology. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 45, 637–651.

- Springer, K. W. (2010). Economic dependence in marriage and husbands' midlife health: Testing three possible mechanisms. *Gender & Society*, 24(3), 378–401.
- Suls, J., & Bunde, J. (2005). Anger, anxiety, and depression as risk factors for cardiovascular disease: The problems and implications of overlapping affective dispositions. *Psychological Bulletin*, 131, 260–300.
- Sundquist, J., Winkleby, M. A., & Pudarc, S. (2001). Cardiovascular disease risk factors among older black, Mexican-American, and white women and men: An analysis of NHANES III, 1988–1994. Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 49, 109–116.
- Uchino, B. N., Cacioppo, J. T., & Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K. (1996). The relationship between social support and physiological processes: A review with emphasis on underlying mechanisms and implications for health. *Psychological Bulletin*, 119, 486–531.
- Weinstein, A. A., Deuster, P. A., Francis, J. L., Bonsall, R. W., Tracy, R. P., & Kop, W. J. (2010). Neurohormonal and inflammatory hyper-responsiveness to acute mental stress in depression. *Biological Psychology*, 84(2), 228–234.

Cardiovascular Stress Responses

- [Blood Pressure Reactivity or Responses](#)

Cardiovascular Surgery

- [Cardiac Surgery](#)

Care Continuity

- [Continuity of Care](#)

Care of Older Adults

- [Geriatric Medicine](#)

Care Recipients

Maija Reblin

College of Nursing, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Synonyms

[Patients](#)

Definition

One who receives care; an individual with a medical condition or who requires support with activities of daily living and is in a relationship with a caregiver, such as a doctor, nurse, friend, or family member, who provides treatment, assistance, or comfort (National Alliance for Caregiving & AARP. Caregiving in the U.S 2009). Care recipients are not necessarily passive; action often must be taken to access, secure, and personalize care. This may involve navigation of the health-care and insurance system; decision making based on personal, family, or cultural values and beliefs; selecting, managing, and adhering to the treatment regime; emotional responses to and coping with the potential stress of receiving care; and managing communication with care providers (Holman and Lorig 2000).

References and Readings

- Holman, H., & Lorig, K. (2000). Patients as partners in managing chronic disease. Partnership is a prerequisite for effective and efficient health care. *BMJ*, 320(7234), 526–527.
- National Alliance for Caregiving and AARP. Caregiving in the U.S. (2009). Available at: http://www.caregiving.org/data/Caregiving_in_the_US_2009_full_report.pdf

Career Assessment

- [Vocational Assessment](#)

Career Evaluation

- Vocational Assessment

Caregiver Acts of Omission

- Child Neglect

Caregiver Burden

- Caregiver/Caregiving and Stress
- Stress, Caregiver

Caregiver Hassle

- Stress, Caregiver

Caregiver Strain

- Stress, Caregiver

Caregiver/Caregiving and Stress

Alyssa Parker
UTSW Health Systems, South Western Medical
Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

Caregiver burden

Definition

Caregiving affects the quality of life of millions of individuals and is frequently associated with

physical and psychological distress. Caregiving burden has been linked to decreased preventative health behaviors and perception of quality of life, which ultimately negatively impacts the care recipient. Additionally, the chronic stress of caregiving has been found to decrease immune functioning of the caregiver in general, including decrements in cellular immunity, higher risk for infectious disease, and slower wound healing. Multicomponent interventions have been helpful in coping both cognitively and behaviorally.

Description

Caregiving has become an issue of national public health. Due to advances in medicine and technology, a shortage of nurses and other health-care workers, and a movement since the 1960s away from institutionalization, caregiving, especially family caregiving, has become a necessity that affects the quality of life of millions of individuals (Family Caregiver Alliance 2011). Caregiving is a diverse endeavor because the demands of caregiving differ with regard to age, developmental level, mental health needs, and physical health needs of both the caregiver and the care recipient. Those in the caregiving role become a critical agent between the recipient and a multitude of environments, including biological, psychological, social, cultural, physical, and political (Perkins and Haley 2010). Although the core of successful caregiving revolves around the caregiver's own physical and mental health, it is a situation that has been described as one filled with heartache, pain, and loss (George and Gwyther 1986; Poulshock and Diemling 1984).

Thrust into a role devoid of formal training, choice, or compensation, many family caregivers suffer physical and psychological distress related to their experiences. In an effort to provide care for their ill relatives, caregivers often neglect their own health. Some caregivers believe they are not entitled to time to themselves or time away from the recipient, which ultimately leaves them feeling fearful and guilty (Bedini and Guinan 1996). Those who do participate in noncaring activities, such as socializing or discovering hobbies, may

derive less positive experiences due to the spillover effect of distress resulting from care. As a result, subjective well-being, including positive affect, life satisfaction, and perceived quality of life, may be affected (Gilleard et al. 1984; Kosberg and Cairl 1986). Compared to matched controls, caregivers, especially spousal caregivers, have demonstrated uniformly negative changes in immune function due to chronic stress, including decrements in cellular immunity, higher vulnerability to infectious disease, and slower wound healing. These immunological consequences often persist at measurable levels even after cessation of caregiving tasks and may be the cause of morbidity and mortality in the elderly (Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 1991; Kiecolt-Glaser 1999). Additionally, individuals who report strain are less likely to engage in preventative health behaviors such as getting enough sleep, taking time to recuperate, exercising, eating regular meals, and keeping medical appointments (Burton et al. 1997; Talley and Crews 2007). Consequently, caregivers are at significant risk for experiencing health problems, depression, anxiety, and social isolation.

Risk for physical and mental health difficulties can be predicted to some extent by qualities present in both the caregiver and the care recipient. The dependency needs of the recipient, such as the number of hours of care needed or the degree to which activities of daily living can be completed independently, play an important role in caregiver burden. Those in the care position with the heaviest burden are more likely to report their health as fair or poor and are more likely to report physical strain as well as significant emotional strain (Caregiving in the US 2004). Burden has also been linked to caregiver mood, caregiver's perceptions of the degree of recipient disability, and negative affectivity. Negative affectivity is the extent to which a person experiences negative mood states, including upset, anger, worry, guilt, fear, and disgust. Caregivers who rate high in negative affectivity often report distress, discomfort, and dissatisfaction over time, regardless of the situation (Blake et al. 2003). Higher negative affectivity has also been linked to less adaptive coping strategies and is a vulnerability factor in

the development of anxiety and depression (Gunthert et al. 1999). Relationship with the recipient prior to illness or disability and availability of social support also play important roles in the extent to which the caregiver experiences strain.

Research on the differences between male and female caregivers has been mixed. Although men and women do not differ greatly in aspects of providing care, male caregivers report experiencing less burden and demonstrate more problem-focused coping strategies than female caregivers (Tiegs et al. 2006). One explanation is that women's involvement in the caregiving role tends to be more intensive and affective in nature than their male counterparts. Additionally, it has been suggested that women are more likely to carry out household tasks while caring for a family member (Miller and Cafasso 1992; Parks and Pilisuk 1991). Other research has shown no gender differences when controlling for protective factors, such as personality and social support.

Due to the associated risks, individuals caring for loved ones benefit from the development of a repertoire of both cognitive and behavioral strategies that enable them to defend against distress while continuing to provide effective care. Research to date on caregiver interventions has focused primarily on reducing depression and strain via an emphasis on the following six intervention approaches: psychoeducational, supportive, respite/adult care, psychotherapy, improvements in care receiver competence, and multicomponent interventions (Sorenson et al. 2002). Intervention outcomes include the family caregiver's well-being, psychologic morbidity (stress, depression, perceived burden), beliefs (self-efficacy, control), cognitive behaviors and positive psychological outcomes (rewards, gains), and care recipient's function, behavior, and ability to avoid institutionalization (Gitlin et al. 2003). The most effective caregiver interventions to date have been multicomponent interventions that utilize a combination of cognitive behavioral approaches to reducing caregiver stress. Behaviorally, exercise and the utilization of social support have been the most valuable techniques in relieving stress associated with

caregiving. Available social support and perceived social support can buffer caregiver vulnerability to stress and provide physical assistance when needed (Dean and Lin 1977; O'Brien 1993). Cognitively, the utilization of logical analysis and problem solving has been associated with higher levels of life satisfaction, better health, and lower depression in caregivers. A realistic appraisal and acceptance of the difficult situation is healthy and allows the caregiver to live his or her own life while accommodating the needs of the recipient. Less effective cognitive coping styles include avoidant-evasive, regressive, and an increased use of wishfulness and fantasizing by the caregiver, all of which have been related to higher levels of care burden (Hayley et al. 1987; Quayhagen and Quayhagen 1988).

Despite the reality of care strain and its resulting physical and mental health risks, many caregivers persist for years in their roles and are able to report positive and reciprocal caregiving experiences (Pinquart and Sorenson 2004). Long-term caregiving may result in the acquisition of skills and a sense of self-efficacy within the care role. Some individuals found that caregiving provided a sense of usefulness during a time in which they felt a loss of control. This sense of usefulness and improved self-esteem based on perceived abilities to handle difficult situation may provide some symptom relief from depression and anxiety (Konstam et al. 2003). Finding meaning through caregiving allows the caregiver to hold positive beliefs about one's self and one's caregiving experience.

Cross-References

- Care Recipients
- Chronic Disease or Illness
- Daily Stress
- Dementia
- Disability
- Disease Burden
- Elderly
- End-of-Life Care
- Family Assistance
- Family, Caregiver

- Home Health Care
- Lifestyle Changes
- Medical Decision-Making
- Stress, Caregiver
- Stress, Emotional

References and Readings

- Bedini, L. A., & Guinan, D. M. (1996). If I could just be selfish. Caregivers' perceptions of their entitlements to leisure. *Leisure Sciences*, 18, 227–239.
- Blake, H., Lincoln, N. B., & Clarke, D. (2003). Caregiver strain in spouses of stroke patients. *Clinical Rehabilitation*, 17(3), 312–317.
- Burton, L. C., Newsom, J. T., Schulz, R., Hirsch, C. H., & German, P. S. (1997). Preventative health behaviors among spousal caregivers. *Preventative Medicine*, 26(2), 162–169.
- Connell, C. (1994). Impact of spouse caregiving on health behavior and physical and mental health status. *American Journal of Alzheimer's Care Related Disorders Research*, 9, 26–37.
- Dean, A., & Lin, N. (1977). The stress-buffering role of social support. *The Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease*, 6, 403–417.
- Family Caregiving Alliance. (n.d.). *National Center on Caregiving: Family caregiving and public policy, principles for change*. Retrieved January 2011, from http://www.caregiver.org/caregiver/jsp/content_node.jsp?nodeid=788
- George, K. L., & Gwyther, L. (1986). Families caring for elders in residence: Issues in measurement of burden. *Journal of Gerontology*.
- Gilleard, C. J., Gilleard, K., Gledhill, K., & Whittick, J. (1984). Caring for the mentally infirm at home: A survey of the supporters. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 38, 319–325.
- Gitlin, L. N., Belle, S. H., Burgio, L. D., et al. (2003). Effect of multicomponent intervention on caregiver burden and depression: The REACH multisite initiative at 6-month follow-up. *Psychology and Aging*, 18(3), 371–374.
- Gunthert, K., Cohen, L., & Armeli, S. (1999). The role of neuroticism in daily stress and coping. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 77, 1087–1100.
- Hayley, W. E., Levine, E. G., Brown, S. L., Berry, J. W., & Hughes, G. H. (1987). Psychological, social, and health consequences of caring for a relative with senile dementia. *Journal of American Geriatrics Society*, 35, 405–411.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K. (1999). Stress, personal relationships, and immune function: Health implications. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 13, 61–72.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Dura, J. R., Speicher, C. E., Trask, O. J., & Glaser, R. (1991). Spousal caregivers of dementia victims: Longitudinal changes in immunity and health. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 53, 345–362.
- Konstam, V., Holmes, W., Wilczenski, F., Baliga, S., Lester, J., & Priest, R. (2003). Meaning in the lives of

- caregivers of individuals with Parkinson's disease. *Journal of Clinical Psychology in Medical Settings*, 10(1), 17–26.
- Kosberg, J. I., & Cairl, R. E. (1986). The cost of care index: A case management tool for screening informal care providers. *Gerontologist*, 26, 273–285.
- Miller, B., & Cafasso, L. (1992). Gender differences in caregiving: Fact or artifact? *Gerontologist*, 32, 498–507.
- Monahan, D. J., & Hooker, K. (1995). Health of spouse caregivers of dementia patients: The role of personality and social support. *Social Network*, 40(3), 305–314.
- National Alliance for Caregiving/AARP. (2004). *Caregiving in the U.S.* Washington, DC: Author.
- O'Brien, M. T. (1993). Multiple sclerosis: Health-promoting behaviors of spousal caregivers. *Journal of Neuroscience Nursing*, 25(2), 105–112.
- Parks, S. H., & Pilisuk, M. (1991). Caregiver burden: Gender and the psychological costs of caregiving. *The American Journal of Orthopsychiatry*, 61, 501–509.
- Perkins, E. A., & Haley, W. E. (2010). Compound caregiving: When lifelong caregivers undertake additional roles. *Rehabilitation Psychology*, 55, 409–417.
- Pinquart, M., & Sorenson, S. (2004). Associations of caregiver stressors and uplifts with subjective well-being and depressed mood: A meta-analytic comparison. *Aging & Mental Health*, 8(5), 438–449.
- Poulshock, S. W., & Diemling, G. (1984). Families caring for elders in residence: Issues in measurement of burden. *Journal of Gerontology*, 39, 230–239.
- Quayhagen, M. P., & Quayhagen, M. (1988). Alzheimer's stress: Coping with the caregiving role. *Gerontologist*, 28, 391–396.
- Sorenson, S., Pinquart, M., & Duberstein, P. (2002). How effective are interventions with caregivers? An updated meta-analysis. *Gerontologist*, 42(3), 356–372.
- Talley, R. C., & Crews, J. E. (2007). Framing the public health of caregiving. *American Journal of Public Health*, 97(2), 224–228.
- Tiegs, T. J., Heesacker, M., Ketterson, T. U., et al. (2006). Coping by stroke caregivers: Sex similarities and differences. *Topics in Stroke Rehabilitation*, 13(1), 52–62.

Carpal Tunnel Syndrome

Daniel Gorrin

Department of Physical Therapy, University of Delaware, Newark, DE, USA

Definition

The carpal tunnel refers to the area of the wrist between the carpal bones and the overlying

fibrous band of connective tissue called the transverse carpal ligament or the flexor retinaculum. The median nerve passes through the carpal tunnel along with nine tendons of muscles providing finger and wrist flexion (flexor digitorum profundus, flexor digitorum superficialis, and flexor pollicis longus).

Carpal tunnel syndrome refers to an entrapment or compression of the median nerve at the wrist. The median nerve can become compressed under the flexor retinaculum. The etiology is unknown in most cases; however, carpal tunnel syndrome can result from a trauma such as a fracture or dislocation of the carpal bones at the wrist. Such trauma can lead to direct injury of the nerve and increased pressure within the carpal tunnel. Other potential causes of the condition include rheumatoid arthritis, renal disease, hypothyroidism, lupus, obesity, pregnancy, alcoholism, diabetes, and certain collagen diseases. If the underlying cause of the condition can be determined and treated, the median nerve dysfunction could be resolved.

Symptoms of carpal tunnel syndrome include burning, numbness, and tingling in the region of the hand supplied by the median nerve (thumb, index finger, middle finger, and medial side of the ring finger) which can be exacerbated at night. Increased symptoms at night can likely be attributed to the patient favoring wrist flexion during sleep. This position narrows the space within the carpal tunnel causing increased pressure on the nerve. In more severe cases, the patient may experience weakness and atrophy of the musculature controlling the thumb.

Electrodiagnostic tests and electromyographic studies can be used in conjunction with patient history and physical examination in order to diagnose carpal tunnel syndrome. Initially, treatment is intended to control inflammation and decrease stress on the nerve. Conservative treatment includes activity modification, splinting to decrease wrist flexion and pressure on the median nerve, and steroid injections to decrease inflammation within the tunnel. If the patient does not respond to conservative management, a surgical decompression of the median nerve may be indicated.

References and Readings

- Drake, R. L., Wayne Vogl, A., & Mitchell, A. W. M. (2010). *Gray's anatomy for students* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier.
- Magee, D. J. (2008). *Orthopedic physical assessment* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Saunders Elsevier.
- Magee, D. J., Zachazewski, J. E., & Quillen, W. S. (2009). *Pathology and intervention in musculoskeletal rehabilitation* (1st ed.). St. Louis: Saunders Elsevier.
- Standring, S. (2008). *Gray's anatomy* (40th ed.). Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier.

Case Reports

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Case studies](#)

Definition

A case report is a descriptive study that provides a detailed description of a case of a disease that is unusual, and therefore noteworthy, for some particular reason. It is usually written by a doctor, or perhaps by a group of doctors who have all become familiar with the case with each having something unique to contribute to the report. An extension of the case report is a case series, where the first report sparks interest and leads to reports on similar cases.

In the discipline of epidemiology, a more substantive investigative process often begins with a case report or case series (Webb et al. 2005). These reports provide detailed descriptions of an individual, or a small group of individuals, who share salient characteristics. The disease might not have been seen before, been noted in the literature before, or rarely been seen in that

form before. Also, it may be noteworthy that a known disease occurred in a patient who would not normally be expected to have the disease, or in a geographic location where the disease is particularly rare.

Such reports are by nature selective: Doctors may or may not write a case report which may or may not be published and reach a large readership of other doctors. Additionally, they are not able to provide evidence of causality, and they cannot provide much evidence on the patterns of disease occurrence. For these reasons, they tend to appear toward the bottom of the “Hierarchy of Evidence,” a tabular representation of the relative strengths of various investigational methodologies. Nonetheless, they can be very informative as the starting point for more extensive investigation.

Provocative case reports can certainly lead to important findings. A report of a series of five cases of *Pneumocystis carinii* pneumonia that occurred in young, previously healthy, homosexual men in three Los Angeles hospitals in a 6-month period during 1980–1981 is noteworthy (Webb et al. 2005). In this case, the disease had been seen before, but virtually always in patient populations with different characteristics: the elderly, patients who were severely malnourished (and hence compromised when combating infection), and patients receiving chemotherapy for cancer who had developed compromised immune systems. The clustering of cases in the population of young homosexual men suggested a different disease. While the case reports, as noted previously, were not able to address causality or causal biological pathways, they did suggest the possibility of a relationship with the patients’ sexual behavior. You may recognize that this disease is now known as HIV/AIDS (which is certainly not limited to young homosexual men).

Cross-References

- [Clusters](#)
- [Hierarchy of Evidence](#)

References and Further Reading

Webb, P., Bain, C., & Pirozzo, S. (2005). *Essential epidemiology: An introduction for students and health professionals*. New York: Cambridge University Press.

Case Studies

► Case Reports

Case-Control Studies

Jane Monaco

Department of Biostatistics, The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Observational designs](#); [Observational studies](#); [Observational study](#)

Definition

A case-control study is a study in which subjects are selected based on their outcome status, such as with disease or disease-free. Investigators select cases (subjects with the outcome of interest) and controls (subjects without the outcome of interest) and then compare the exposure (or risk factor) status in the two groups.

Description

Case-control studies are a very common observational study design within behavioral medicine research. Because the participants are selected based on their outcome status (commonly disease status), this study design is well suited for an outcome that is rare. For diseases with long latency periods (for example, melanoma or

coronary heart disease), case-control studies can also be time efficient because the outcome has already occurred at the initiation of the study. When the exposure (or risk factor) is rare, a case-control study is often not practical.

Case-control studies determine the subjects' exposure retrospectively, commonly through historical records or self-report conducted after the exposure has occurred. Limitations of using retrospective data contribute to results from case-control studies being considered weaker than results from experimental designs that examine similar associations. Recall bias can occur when case subjects remember exposure differentially compared to controls. For example, a mother whose infant was born with a birth defect may differentially recall her use of medication during pregnancy compared to a mother of an infant without a birth defect (Rockenbauer et al. 2001). The use of retrospective data, however, may facilitate study approval by ethical review boards, particularly, when the risk factor is illegal or known to be harmful, such as illicit drug use or tobacco use.

The selection of control subjects is critical in the design of a case-control study. Subjects chosen as controls should be as similar as possible to the case subjects except, potentially, with respect to the exposure. Specifically, cases and controls should have had equal chance to be exposed to the risk factor. For this reason, cases and controls are often matched with respect to age, gender, ethnicity, and other factors.

In many case-control studies, the groups are compared by evaluating the odds ratio which is defined as the odds of exposure among the cases divided by the odds of exposure among the controls. In general, investigators cannot determine incidence rates of the disease since the subjects are selected based on disease (outcome) status. Thus, computing a relative risk directly is not possible. However, the relative risk can be approximated by the odds ratio when the outcome of interest is relatively rare.

In a typical behavioral medicine case-control example, Brent et al. (1993) investigated the association between adolescent suicide and multiple

psychiatric risk factors. Sixty-seven adolescent suicide victims (cases) were matched to 67 controls with respect to age, gender, socioeconomic status, and county of residence. Investigators obtained information about the suicide victims through a “psychological autopsy protocol” in which parents, siblings, and friends were interviewed concerning the victim’s risk factors. The controls’ risk factor information was obtained from the participant and at least one parent. The study found that the suicide victims had significantly higher odds of major depression and substance abuse compared to the controls.

Some characteristics of case-control studies:

- Usually less expensive and less time-consuming than cohort designs or experimental designs.
- Often used when the outcome of interest is rare or has a long latency period.
- Not practical when exposure is rare.
- Sample size requirement is usually smaller than cohort or experimental designs.
- Often used in initial investigations of an association due to logistical ease and relative lower cost.
- May be used when exposure of participants to risk factor would be considered unethical in an experimental design.
- Appropriate when studying multiple risk factors.
- Usually can only address a single outcome (disease).
- Susceptible to recall bias (since exposure and outcome are determined retrospectively) and selection bias (which can occur when the controls are selected in such a way that they did not have same risk of exposure as the cases).
- Often considered weaker study design compared to cohort studies or randomized trials that study analogous associations.

Cross-References

- [Cohort Study](#)
- [Odds Ratio](#)
- [Retrospective Study](#)

References and Further Reading

- Brent, D. A., Perper, J. A., Moritz, G., Allman, C., Friend, A., Roth, C., et al. (1993). Psychiatric risk factors for adolescent suicide: A case-control study. *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*, 32(3), 521–529.
- Hennekens, C. H., Buring, J. E., & Mayrent, S. L. (1987). *Epidemiology in medicine*. Boston: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Kleinbaum, D. G., Sullivan, K. M., & Barker, N. D. (2007). *A pocket guide to epidemiology*. New York: Springer.
- Rockenbauer, M., Olsen, J., Czeizel, A. E., Pedersen, L., & Sørensen, H. T. (2001). Recall bias in a case-control surveillance system on the use of medicine during pregnancy. *Epidemiology*, 12(4), 461–466.

Case-Crossover Studies

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

The innovative case-crossover study design is a hybrid design. Hybrid designs are those that combine the elements of two or more basic designs, or extend the strategy of one basic design through repetition (Kleinbaum et al. 2007).

The case-crossover design represents an attempt to achieve the ideal, but unattainable, design of studying a group of subjects exposed to a particular event, activity, or influence, and also studying exactly the same subjects during the same period when not exposed to it. The design utilizes each subject as his or her own control. Exposure to the event in a defined (and likely fairly short) time period before the onset of disease is compared with typical exposure to it in a much longer period before disease onset, defined as the normal exposure.

Only a limited set of research topics are amenable to the employment of the case-crossover

design (Rothman et al. 2008). The exposure must vary over time within individuals, rather than stay constant, and the exposure must have a short induction time and a transient effect. A classic example is the study reported by Maclure (1991), which used this design to study the effect of sexual activity on incident myocardial infarction. Several aspects make this design appropriate and informative in this case. First, the exposure to the factor of interest, sexual activity, is intermittent and presumed to have a short induction period for the hypothesized effect. Second, any increase in risk for myocardial infarction caused by sexual activity is presumed to be confined to a short time interval following the activity. Third, since myocardial infarctions are thought to be triggered by events close in time, this outcome is well suited to this type of study (Rothman et al. 2008).

Cross-References

► [Case-Control Studies](#)

References and Further Reading

- Kleinbaum, D. G., Sullivan, K. M., & Barker, N. D. (2007). *A pocket guide to epidemiology*. New York: Springer.
- Maclure, M. (1991). The case-crossover design: A method for studying transient effects on the risk of acute events. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 133, 144–153.
- Maclure, M., & Mittleman, M. A. (2000). Should we use a case-crossover design? *Annual Review of Public Health*, 21, 193–221.
- Rothman, K. J., Greenland, S., & Lash, T. L. (2008). Case-control studies. In K. J. Rothman, S. Greenland, & T. L. Lash (Eds.), *Modern epidemiology* (3rd ed., pp. 111–127). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Webb, P., Bain, C., & Pirozzo, S. (2005). *Essential epidemiology: An introduction for students and health professionals*. New York: Cambridge University Press.

Casual Sex

► [Sexual Hookup](#)

CAT Scan

Mary Spiers

Department of Psychology, Drexel University, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Computed transaxial tomography](#); [Computerized axial tomography](#); [CT scan](#); [X-ray computed tomography](#)

Definition

A CAT scan is a structural imaging method based on the x-ray principle but is more sensitive to bone, tissue, and fluid density differences and employs a narrower beam, allowing for the segmentation of the imaged area into multiple transaxial images from many different angles. These images can be combined via computer technology to provide either 2D or 3D images. Enhanced CAT scans can reveal even greater contrast through injection of an intravenous dye. CAT scans are useful for imaging bones, soft tissue, blood vessels, and internal organs and particularly useful in imaging size and location of tumors and their relationship to normal tissue. CAT scans are also useful in imaging injuries to skeletal structures in relation to the surrounding tissue and the detection of vascular disorders in the body and brain. CAT scans are particularly useful in the identification of emboli (blood clots) and aneurysms. Scans of the brain cannot reveal microscopic brain changes (e.g., axonal injury) but are useful in identifying lesions, tumors, and stroke (infarct) and particularly for differentiating hemorrhagic from nonhemorrhagic stroke. CAT scans are generally cheaper than magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) but provide poorer resolution. In relation to the brain, CAT scans also do not show the functioning of the brain as would be revealed with functional imaging methods such as (functional MRI (fMRI) or positron emission tomography (PET)).

Cross-References

- [Cancer Screening/Detection/Surveillance](#)
- [Computerized Axial Tomography \(CAT\) Scan](#)
- [Functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging \(fMRI\)](#)
- [Magnetic Resonance Imaging \(MRI\)](#)
- [Neuroimaging](#)

References and Readings

- Weissleder, R., Wittenberg, J., & Harisinghani, M. G. (2007). *Primer of diagnostic imaging* (4th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Zillmer, E. A., Spiers, M. V., & Culbertson, W. C. (2008). *Principles of neuropsychology* (2nd ed.). Belmont: Wadsworth/Thompson Learning.

and lead to adverse or unhelpful behaviors such as poor medical adherence.

Cross-References

- [Negative Thoughts](#)

References and Readings

- Beck, A. T., Rush, A. J., Shaw, B. F., & Emery, G. (1979). *Cognitive therapy of depression*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Clark, D. A., Beck, A. T., & Alford, B. A. (1999). *Scientific foundations of cognitive theory and therapy of depression*. New York: Wiley.

Catastrophizing/Catastrophic Thinking

Lara Traeger
Behavioral Medicine Service, Massachusetts
General Hospital/Harvard Medical School,
Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Arbitrary inference](#)

Definition

Catastrophizing refers to the anticipation without evidence of extreme and terrible consequences or outcomes of an event. Catastrophizing is a characteristic type of cognitive distortion or error that may underlie a negative and inaccurate thought (Beck et al. 1979; Clark et al. 1999). It can have negative health consequences for individuals who are managing a chronic illness. For example, a recent cancer survivor may interpret his fatigue as meaning that he will never recover his usual energy level and that he will have to give up all of his meaningful activities. This type of thinking can maintain negative emotions such as depression

Catecholamines

George J. Trachte
Academic Health Center, School of Medicine-
Duluth Campus, University of Minnesota,
Duluth, MN, USA

General Background

Catecholamines are derivatives of the chemical dihydroxyphenyl (catechol) ethylamine. The prominent naturally occurring catecholamines are dopamine, norepinephrine, and epinephrine. These agents are intrinsic neurotransmitters of the sympathetic nervous system and mediate the “fight or flight” reactions to stressful situations. Examples of sympathetic responses include: tachycardia, hypertension, bronchodilation, pupillary dilation, sweating, tremor, and liberation of fuel sources. Catecholamines also are prominent neurotransmitters in specific regions of the brain, typically being associated with pleasure, excitement, and movement.

Catecholamine synthesis involves conversion of the amino acid, Tyrosine, to dihydroxyphenylalanine (DOPA). DOPA is converted to dopamine by removal of a carboxyl group by Aromatic amino acid decarboxylase. Dopamine is both an important neurotransmitter in the brain

and a precursor to norepinephrine. The latter is produced by an enzyme, dopamine hydroxylase. Norepinephrine is the major neurotransmitter of the sympathetic nervous system and also is a major neurotransmitter in the central nervous system. Norepinephrine can be converted to epinephrine by phenylethanolamine-*N*-methyl transferase, primarily in the adrenal medulla but also in the brain.

Physiological Relevance

The physiological relevance of norepinephrine and epinephrine in the periphery is quite obvious because these agents mediate most of the responses to stressful stimuli. Central actions of dopamine and norepinephrine are equally obvious as behavioral effects. Conditions related to dopamine deficiencies include Parkinson's disease. Norepinephrine also is a critical central neurotransmitter. Augmentation of norepinephrine and dopamine concentrations in nerve synapses is the mechanism of action of antidepressants, such as monoamine oxidase inhibitors or reuptake inhibitors.

Control of Release/Synthesis

The synthesis of catecholamines is regulated primarily at the Tyrosine hydroxylase step (Tyrosine to DOPA). The release of catecholamines is regulated by activity of the nerves synthesizing and storing the catecholamines. Released catecholamines either are inactivated by accumulation back into the nerves by specific membrane transporters or are degraded by two enzymes, monoamine oxidase and catechole-*O*-methyl transferase.

Localization/Molecular Biology

Catecholamines are found in the sympathetic nervous system, adrenal medulla, and selected brain regions.

Behavioral Effects

Dopamine is known to impact cognition, emotion, movement, memory, and reward. Dopamine also

is involved in a variety of abnormalities such as addiction, schizophrenia, psychoses, and learning deficits. It also inhibits prolactin release, potentially indirectly elevating mood.

Norepinephrine has mood elevating effects, and a variety of antidepressants increase the concentrations of norepinephrine in neuronal synapses of the brain.

Polymorphisms of catecholamine regulating enzymes provide additional insight into behavioral roles of the catecholamines. Monoamine oxidase polymorphisms are associated with the following behavioral abnormalities: alcohol dependence, smoking, and suicide. Polymorphisms in the other major catecholamine degrading enzyme, catechole-*O*-methyl transferase, have been associated with: alcohol dependence, disordered cognition, smoking, and violence in schizophrenics. Polymorphisms in the catecholamine synthetic enzyme, dopamine hydroxylase, are associated with: age-related cognitive decline, alcohol dependence, hyperactivity, novelty seeking, and smoking. Tyrosine hydroxylase polymorphisms also are associated with: novelty seeking, smoking, and suicide in schizophrenics. Thus, both classical and genetic data support a role for catecholamines in cognition, addiction, and emotion.

Causal Diagrams

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Causal pathway diagram](#); [Causal pathway model](#)

Definition

A causal diagram is a more modern form of causal pathway models that have been used to

summarize visually hypothetical relationships between variables of interest to the researcher. They represent a merger of graphical probability theory with path diagrams. This theory confers a powerful means of deducing the statistical associations implied by causal relations.

Once the rules for reading statistical associations from causal diagrams are mastered, they facilitate many tasks. These include understanding confounding and selection bias, choosing covariates for adjustment and for regression analyses, and understanding analyses of direct effects and instrumental-variable analyses (Glymour and Greenland 2008).

Cross-References

- [Bias](#)
- [Regression Analysis](#)

References and Further Reading

Glymour, M. M., & Greenland, S. (2008). Causal diagrams. In K. J. Rothman, S. Greenland, & T. L. Lash (Eds.), *Modern epidemiology* (3rd ed., pp. 183–209). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Causal Pathway Diagram

- [Causal Diagrams](#)

Causal Pathway Model

- [Causal Diagrams](#)

Cause Marketing

- [Social Marketing](#)

Causes

- [Attribution Theory](#)

Celexa[®]

- [Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors \(SSRIs\)](#)

Cell Adhesion Molecule

- [Adhesion Molecules](#)

Cellular Theory of Aging

Emil C. Toescu

Division of Medical Sciences, The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Definition

Cellular theories explain the aging process as originating in individual cells, either at the level of the genetic information or through changes in metabolism.

Description

The quest for understanding the process of aging is probably as long as human history, and its resolution is still far from clear or even assured. A major factor for this state of affairs is that aging is a complex, multifactorial process that develops during ontogeny gradually, at multiple levels, involving a certain degree of stochastic randomness. At a certain time (early 1990s), more than 300 various hypotheses were circulating for

explaining aging, and, responding to a need for organizing such a vast catalogue, these hypotheses were classified as *cellular theories* that explain the aging process as originating in individual cells, either at the level of the genetic information or through changes in metabolism; *system theories*, that propose that aging, while expressed at the level of individual cells, results from dysfunction in one or another of the general system that maintain overall body homeostasis (e.g., *the neuroendocrine theory of aging*); and *evolutionary theories*, that address the fundamental biological puzzle that aging, as a fundamentally deleterious process, should have been gradually eliminated during evolution since evolution aims to improve the adaptation of individuals and species to their environment.

Within the group of cellular theories, the various hypotheses can be further separated into those that invoke (a) changes in the genetic makeup (genome) of cells or (b) alterations and dysfunction in various metabolic pathways (overall, the “wear and tear” theories).

The *genome-related theories of aging* start from the fundamental fact that the whole of the genetic information that controls the identity, development, and status of a cell is contained within the DNA. Like anything else in nature, this molecule can be damaged either by random, stochastic agents or by specific factors or processes. Amongst other features, one of the unique properties of the DNA is that it is the only biological molecule that relies for maintenance on the repair of the same existing molecule, without the possibility of remanufacture. Apart from the implications for the importance and reliability of the DNA repair mechanisms, this fact also leads to the conclusion that DNA molecules accumulate damage over a lifetime since an error in DNA sequence information, once made during replication or recombination, becomes irreversible, due to the loss of the reference template. DNA integrity can be affected by several mechanisms. One is endogenous, represented by the cellular metabolism; activity in all cells will generate continuously reactive oxygen and nitrogen species (free

radicals) that either directly, or secondarily, through generation of lipid peroxidation products, alkylating agents or protein carbonyl species, will damage DNA by inducing single-strand breaks and oxidation of various bases. The other category of damaging agents is exogenous, represented by chemical or physical (e.g., UV and other types of ionizing radiations) factors. It has been shown that DNA mutations/alterations and chromosomal abnormalities increase with age both in animals (e.g., rodents) and humans. In addition, the role of genetic mutation in inducing the aging phenotype is demonstrated by a number of syndromes of accelerated aging (progeria). Amongst them, the best known is the Werner’s syndrome which is determined by an autosomal recessive mutation in a gene, WRN, that encodes for a protein with structural similarities with a DNA helicase (enzyme catalyzing DNA unwinding). Loss of WRN function results in a syndrome displaying the typical features of aging, but starting as early as the second decade of life: bilateral cataracts, graying of hair and alopecia, type 2 diabetes, atherosclerosis and hyperlipidemia, osteoporosis, etc. Another progeric manifestation is the Hutchinson-Gilford’s syndrome, with a rather similar clinical manifestation but resulting from a point mutation in the gene encoding for a nuclear protein: lamin A/C (LMNA). Although the exact function of either protein is not fully established, recent experimental evidence point to the fact that they are involved in the process of DNA repair. The importance of maintaining a robust genomic stability led to the evolutionary development of powerful and flexible DNA repair systems that include mechanisms for dealing with both single-strand breaks (e.g., base excision repair and nucleotide excision repair) and double-strand breaks (e.g., homologous recombination or non-homologous end joining). Although there are many reports of correlations between stability of DNA repair mechanisms and rate of aging in various animals (mammals) and, also, of an age-dependent functional decline in one or another DNA repair mechanism, other studies found no clear evidence for a drastic decline in DNA repair

during aging, an observation taken simply to reflect the central role of genome stability for cell viability. In addition, accumulation of damage with age does not necessarily imply a decline in DNA repair – as any biological process, genome maintenance systems are imperfect, and alterations can accumulate over time, particularly in animals with longer life spans.

A more recent line of investigation of the relationships between DNA damage and aging stems from the fact that genome maintenance involves not only the DNA repair systems but also the cellular responses triggered directly by the DNA damage. These responses include apoptosis, cellular senescence, and cell cycle arrest, known to cause age-related impairments in various tissues. Thus, one of the most ubiquitous response to unrepaired or improper repair double-strand breaks involves the ataxia-telangiectasia-mutated (ATM) kinase. Activated ATM, in addition to modulation of several cell cycle proteins DNA repair factors, targets p53, a central protein at the crossroad of several cell viability pathways. While p53 suppresses the onset of malignancy, having an indirect positive on lifespan, it also triggers cellular senescence and apoptosis. A strong theoretical argument for the involvement of such a universal and general cellular response in mediating the pro-aging effects of DNA damage is that the phenotype of aging is relatively constant from species to species and also, in general lines, from individual to individual whereas, with few exceptions, the exo- or endogenous induction of DNA damage is stochastic and should result in highly variable functional outcomes.

An important cellular theory of aging is the *cell senescence/telomere theory*. The idea of cell senescence was formulated in 1965, describing the fact that normal cells can undergo only a limited number of cell divisions (Hayflick's limit), after which the cells enter replicative senescence, remain quiescent, and then, after a period of time, die. Since the number of cell divisions varies from species to species (e.g., mouse cells divide roughly 15 times, while the cells for Galapagos tortoise divide 110 times), it has been proposed that this process of replicative senescence is an important regulator of life span and thus a contributor to aging (NB this senescence

process, dependent on the cell replication, is different from the metabolic cellular senescence, that results from the accumulation with time of metabolic dysfunction, that result in functional impairment of various cellular activities, see below). It has been proposed that replicative senescence ultimately results from the loss of telomeres, which are specific chains of a repeating DNA sequences located at the ends of each linear chromosome. With each cell division, a small amount of DNA is necessarily lost on each chromosome end, resulting in ever-shorter telomeres, altered telomere structure, and, when the telomere is under a critical length, a stop of replication and eventual replicative senescence. Activation of the telomerase enzyme will regenerate telomeres, prevent replicative senescence, and immortalize human primary cell cultures. Importantly, in all cancer cells, there is an activation of telomerase or of an alternate pathway of telomere extension that avoids replicative senescence.

Although there is a wealth of correlative data (e.g., shorter telomeres in aged people or, more specifically, in individuals with neurodegenerative diseases, including Alzheimer's; induction of telomere shortening in condition of increased metabolic stress), a causal involvement of telomere reduction in aging is doubtful as telomerase-deficient mice do not age more rapidly. Instead, as with the other genetic theories of aging discussed above, it is more likely that replicative senescence influences aging through the various cellular responses it triggers. It has been described that senescent cells produce and secrete various degradative enzymes and inflammatory factors that alter the microenvironment and lead to disturbed tissue structure and function. Also, replicative senescence degrades and ultimately limits the regenerative potential of stem cell. The intracellular mechanism triggered by telomere shortening is the activation of the same tumor suppressor p53 protein. The type of p53-dependent cellular response (cell arrest, apoptosis, or senescence) is often cell type dependent and varies with the type of stimulus that triggers it and severity of stress that the cells are exposed to. Being a tumor suppressor protein, it is not surprising that mice mutated for p53 with loss of function have a

dramatically increased incidence of cancer, while p53 signaling is altered in the majority of human cancers. However, if cellular senescence, linked with p53 activation, acts to suppress tumor formation, how can it be explained that cancer is more prevalent with age when senescence is also increased? There is currently no generally accepted explanation, and it is likely that it results from subtle changes in the balance between several processes and factors, such that, due to its ample homeostatic and functional reserve, in the adult organisms, the functional and structural deleterious effects that senescent cells might cause to the tissues can be efficiently repaired by the normal tissue renewal processes. Thus, in the main, in the mature organisms, the main role of the p53-dependent senescence is to provide cancer protection. In contrast, in the aged organisms, the time-dependent accumulation of mutations (i.e., DNA damage), together with the unfavorable metabolic environment, and the decrease in the renewing capacity generate conditions suitable for cancer growth.

One of the most widely acknowledged theories of aging is the *Mitochondrial Free Radical Theory of Aging (MFRTA)*, which has been presented in various guises, either as metabolic or as “wear and tear” theories, and linked to other hypotheses, such as the “rate of living” theory. The latter probably has the longest history, originating at the beginning of last century with the empirical observation of a relationship between metabolic rate, body size, and longevity, such that long-lived animals are, on average, larger. Further metabolic studies led to the proposal that the faster the metabolic rate of an animal, a standby for biochemical activity and for the effect of temperature, the faster the organism will age. In the mid-1950s, the mechanisms causing cell damage and death in response to ionizing radiation were becoming clearer: the production of free radicals, a highly reactive species of molecules characterized by the existence of a single unpaired electron in the outer layers of the atom. Due to their chemical properties, oxygen and nitrogen are the molecules most prone to become free radicals, and the instability of such a molecule renders them very reactive, generating chain redox reactions of sequential

oxidation (loss of electrons) and reduction (gain of electrons) of a variety of cellular substrates. In many instances, such redox changes result in a modification of function of the target proteins, leading to loss of metabolic homeostasis and ensuing damage. If the free radicals attack is of limited intensity or duration, the cellular damage can be contained and either accumulate slowly over time or be repaired; more intense level of injury would result in cell death. The original form of the Free Radical Theory of Aging (FRTA) envisaged aging as resulting from the long-term accumulation of free radical-induced damage, affecting mainly nuclear DNA, which is very sensitive to the action of free radicals. An important development of this hypothesis came with the discovery that the free radicals can result not only from the effects of exogenous factors, such as irradiation, but are also a natural output of normal physiology. One of the reasons why this hypothesis of aging became so paradigmatic is that it linked with several previous views, such that a higher rate of metabolism would generate higher free radical loads and consequent damage, and lead to a higher rate of aging. In the mid-1980s, the FRTA was complemented with the mitochondrial perspective, with several observations contributing to this development. (1) The mitochondria are the major source of free radicals since two of the protein complexes that form the mitochondrial respiratory chain (aka, electron transport chain) generate stochastically, in an unregulated fashion, reactive oxygen species (i.e., oxygen free radicals). (2) Mitochondria possess specific mitochondrial DNA, that is, spatially located very near to the source of free radicals, in the mitochondrial matrix. (3) Mitochondrial DNA has limited repair capacity. (4) Mitochondrial DNA codes for some of the proteins in the respiratory complex, and DNA mutation could generate dysfunctional proteins, initiating a time (age)-dependent vicious circle of increased free radical producing. Thus, the strong formulation of the complete MFRTA flows along the following functional axis: (a) oxygen free radicals generated (mainly from mitochondria) as a function of metabolic rate cause cumulative oxidative damage, resulting in structural degeneration, functional

decline, and age-related diseases, leading to (b) oxidative stress that is the predominant cause of age-associated degenerative change, and thus (c) the mitochondrial free radicals are the cause of aging.

In the last few decades, a huge amount of experimental evidence accumulated to show that with age there is indeed an accumulation of mitochondrial oxidative damage and a progressive decline in mitochondrial function and performance. In many tissues, including the brain (which has a special position since the neurons are the only cell types in the body that are maintained in a postmitotic state, i.e., they do not divide), there is an age-dependent accumulation of global oxidative damage to proteins, DNA, and lipids. However, in the last few years, the availability of very powerful experimental models that allow genetic manipulations (full or conditional knock-in of proteins or knockdown of proteins, use of interference RNA as silencers of specific protein synthesis, etc.) led to the expression of serious reservations about the full validity of MFRTA. Thus, decreasing free radical levels with dietary antioxidants or by genetically induced overexpression of protein antioxidants, such as superoxide dismutase (SOD), that metabolizes the oxygen superoxide (a free radical) to hydrogen peroxide, or catalase, that metabolizes hydrogen peroxide to water and regenerates the gaseous oxygen, did not induce the expected significant increase in lifespan of the test animals. In contrast, inactivation of antioxidant activity while increasing the free radical levels did not determine a significant reduction of lifespan and even increased, in some instances, the lifespan.

It is worth assessing for a moment the reasons of the discrepancy between the two sets of data. The important point about most of earlier studies mentioned is that they were correlative, reporting that with age there is an increase in oxidative damage. However, correlation is not necessarily causation and implies the possibility that both aging and increased oxidation can be caused, at the same time, by another process(es), and, indeed, aging is viewed now as a multifactorial process. It also can be that oxidative stress might

be the consequence of aging, with aging having some discrete cause, or causes, distinct from oxidative stress. Alternatively, oxidative stress might result from the failure of one particular maintenance system of the organism and thus participate in causing aging, but only as a factor amongst others. This perspective on the role of oxidative stress in actually causing aging has also practical implications, as it is still possible to advocate antioxidant therapies as being beneficial to health in counteracting the effects of free radicals, but not as a magic, blanket coverage anti-aging cure. In addition, each intervention should be critically evaluated, both because some antioxidant supplementation trials provided surprising results and because of an increasing number of studies showing the crucial roles of ROS in cellular signaling, and thus advocating against a too strong suppression of free radicals production.

Cross-References

► [Neuroendocrine Theory of Aging](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bratic, I., & Trifunovic, A. (2010). Mitochondrial energy metabolism and ageing. *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, 1797(6–7), 961–967.
- Chen, J. H., Hales, C. N., & Ozanne, S. E. (2007). DNA damage, cellular senescence and organismal ageing: Causal or correlative? *Nucleic Acids Research*, 35(22), 7417–7428.
- Collado, M., Blasco, M. A., & Serrano, M. (2007). Cellular senescence in cancer and aging. *Cell*, 130(2), 223–233.
- Garinis, G. A., van der Horst, G. T., Vijg, J., & Hoeijmakers, J. H. (2008). DNA damage and ageing: New-age ideas for an age-old problem. *Nature Cell Biology*, 10(11), 1241–1247.
- Lapointe, J., & Hekimi, S. (2010). When a theory of aging ages badly. *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences*, 67(1), 1–8.
- Lombard, D. B., Chua, K. F., Mostoslavsky, R., Franco, S., Gostissa, M., & Alt, F. W. (2005). DNA repair, genome stability, and aging. *Cell*, 120(4), 497–512.
- Mattson, M. P., Gleichmann, M., & Cheng, A. (2008). Mitochondria in neuroplasticity and neurological disorders. *Neuron*, 60(5), 748–766.
- Shawi, M., & Autexier, C. (2008). Telomerase, senescence and ageing. *Mechanisms of Ageing and Development*, 129(1–2), 3–10.

- Toescu, E. C. (2005). Normal brain ageing: Models and mechanisms. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London. Series B, Biological Sciences*, 360(1464), 2347–2354.
- Viña, J., Borrás, C., & Miquel, J. (2007). Theories of ageing. *IUBMB Life*, 59(4–5), 249–254.

Center for Epidemiologic Studies Depression Scale (CES-D Scale)

Whitney M. Herge¹, Ryan R. Landoll² and Annette M. La Greca³

¹Department of Psychology, Texas Scottish Rite Hospital for Children, Dallas, TX, USA

²Uniformed Services University of the Health Sciences, F. Edward Hebert School of Medicine, Bethesda, MD, USA

³Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Definition and Description

The Center for Epidemiologic Studies Depression Scale (CES-D Scale) is a 20-item self-report measure designed to assess depressive symptoms over the previous week (Radloff 1977). The CES-D is primarily used to screen for high levels of depressive symptoms in community populations (Radloff 1977). The CES-D assesses multiple symptom clusters, including: depressed affect, lack of hope, feelings of guilt and shame, and somatic symptoms (e.g., disrupted sleep or appetite) with an emphasis on negative affect (Radloff 1977). Sample items include: “During the past week, ...I felt that I could not shake off the blues even with help from my family or friends,” and “... I felt that everything I did was an effort” (Radloff 1977). Four items are worded positively and reverse coded to (a) ensure the respondent is attending to

each question and not answering carelessly and (b) measure the respondent’s positive affect (Radloff 1977). Each item is rated on a frequency scale (0 = Rarely or None of the Time, 1 = Some or a Little of the Time, 2 = Occasionally or a Moderate Amount of Time, 3 = Most or All of the Time; Radloff 1977). Total scores can range from 0 to 60; higher scores represent more depressive symptoms (Radloff 1977). Scores above 16 denote a level of depressive symptoms which may require follow-up investigation (Zich et al. 1990).

The CES-D is one of the most commonly used measures for assessing the presence of depressive symptoms in adults, as it has good psychometric properties (Sharp and Lipsky 2002; Vahle et al. 2000). The internal consistency of this measure is strong in both the general adult population ($\alpha = 0.85$) and among clinically depressed adults ($\alpha = 0.90$; Radloff 1977). Further, reliability of the CES-D, as measured by test-retest correlations over periods ranging from 2 weeks to 12 months, has generally been in the moderate range (0.45 to 0.67), indicating adequate stability (Radloff 1977). With regards to validity, the CES-D is capable of discriminating between the general adult population and psychiatric inpatients, as well as between severity levels of clinical populations (Radloff 1977). Among clinical populations, it has also been shown to correlate positively with other measures of depression, including nurse-clinician ratings (0.56; Craig and Van Natta 1976), and self-rating scales (0.44–0.75; Radloff 1977). Research regarding age, gender, and ethnic differences in the underlying factor structure of the CES-D is limited, although recent studies have found support for factor invariance across genders (e.g., O’Rourke 2005) and across ethnic groups (e.g., Roth et al. 2008).

Recently, the CES-D has been used as a depression screening tool for adolescents as young as 14 years of age (e.g., Chabrol et al. 2002; Cuijpers et al. 2008; Sharp and Lipsky 2002). The CES-D appears to be reliable for use with adolescents of high school age (M age = 17, $SD = 1.4$; Chabrol et al. 2002). With a community sample of adolescents the reliability of the CES-D has been satisfactory ($\alpha = 0.85$; Chabrol et al. 2002). Further, the factor structure of the CES-D appears to function

This entry includes authors who are employees of the United States government. Any views expressed herein are those of the authors and do not necessarily represent the views of the United States government or the Department of Defense.

similarly in adults and adolescents (four factors: depressed affect, positive affect, somatic and retarded activity, interpersonal; Chabrol et al. 2002; Radloff 1977). Using a clinical cut-off score of 22, the CES-D has been shown to have a specificity indicator of 74.31 and a sensitivity indicator of 90.48 in adolescent community samples (Cuijpers et al. 2008), although there is debate regarding the most appropriate cut-off score for use with adolescents (e.g., Roberts et al. 1990).

Cross-References

► Depression

References and Further Reading

- Chabrol, H., Montovany, A., Chouicha, K., & Duconge, E. (2002). Study of the CES-D on a sample of 1,953 adolescent students. *Encephale*, 28, 429–432.
- Craig, T. J., & Van Natta, P. (1976). Recognition of depressed affect in hospitalized psychiatric patients: Staff and patient perceptions. *Diseases of the Nervous System*, 37(10), 561–566.
- Cuijpers, P., Boluijt, P., & van Straten, A. (2008). Screening of depression in adolescents through the internet: Sensitivity and specificity of two screening questionnaires. *European Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*, 17(1), 32–38.
- O'Rourke, N. (2005). Factor structure of the Center for Epidemiological Studies – Depression scale (CES-D) among older men and women who provide care to persons with dementia. *International Journal of Testing*, 5(3), 265–277.
- Radloff, L. S. (1977). The CES-D scale: A self-report depression scale for research in the general population. *Applied Psychological Measurement*, 1(3), 385–401.
- Roberts, R. E. (1980). Reliability of the CES-D scale in different ethnic contexts. *Psychiatry Research*, 2, 125–134.
- Roberts, R. E., Andrews, J. A., Lewinsohn, P. M., & Hops, H. (1990). Assessment of depression in adolescents using the Center for Epidemiologic Studies Depression Scale. *Psychological Assessment: A Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 2(2), 122–128.
- Roth, D. L., Ackerman, M. L., Okonkwo, O. C., & Burgio, L. D. (2008). The four-factor model of depressive symptoms in dementia caregivers: A structural equation model of ethnic differences. *Psychological Aging*, 23(3), 567–576.
- Sharp, L. K., & Lipsky, M. S. (2002). Screening for depression across the lifespan: A review of measures for use in primary care settings. *American Family Physician*, 66(6), 1001–1009.
- Vahle, V. J., Andresen, E. M., & Hagglund, K. J. (2000). Depression measures in outcomes research. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, 81(12–2), S53–S62.
- Wiegman Dick, R., Beals, J., Keane, E. M., & Manson, S. M. (1994). Factorial structure of the CES-D among American Indian adolescents. *Journal of Adolescence*, 17, 73–79.
- Zich, J. M., Attkisson, C. C., & Greenfield, T. K. (1990). Screening for depression in primary care clinics: The CES-D and the BDI. *International Journal of Psychiatry in Medicine*, 20(3), 259–277.

Center for Scientific Review

Lee Ellington

Department of Nursing, College of Nursing,
University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Basic Information

The Center for Scientific Review (CSR) resides within the National Institutes of Health (NIH) and is charged with the review of the scientific merit of NIH grant applications. The mission of CSR is to ensure that investigators' applications receive fair, constructive, and timely feedback, resulting in the goal of NIH to fund sound yet innovative research. A primary responsibility of CSR is to convene experts in the field to conduct peer review of grant applications. The CSR receives all grant applications for NIH and some applications from the US Department of Health and Human Services, resulting in well over 110,000 applications per year. In 2009, CSR worked with 25,000 peer reviewers. The CSR consists of the director, referral officers, integrated review group chiefs, scientific review officers, and related administrative personnel.

When an application arrives at NIH, a CSR referral officer examines the application and routes it to the integrated review group that best fits the scope of the application. Within the integrated review group there are study sections, which are essentially peer review groups. Each study section is managed by a scientific review officer (SRO) and typically includes 20 or more scientists. The SRO assigns two to four peer

reviewers for each application. Reviewers provide written critiques and provisional impact scores for each application and then attend an in-person review meeting. Approximately half of the applications are discussed by the reviewers and other members of the study section as a function of the provisional scoring process. The assigned reviewers present their critiques and then the discussion is open to the entire review group. After the general discussion, the assigned reviewers revisit initial overall impact scores and state their final score. The remainder of the study section members records their scores privately. A few days after the review meeting, priority scores and percentile rankings are posted on NIH Commons and can be accessed by the principal investigator for each application. Whether the application was discussed by the full group or not, there will be written critiques and scores.

The CSR is independent from the NIH institutes or centers (IC) that make funding decisions. That is, CSR is concerned with scientific merit outside the context of funding priorities at the various institutes. After written critiques and scores are available, a second level of peer review is performed by the IC advisory councils. These councils consider the scientific merit of the application from CSR in conjunction with their institute's funding priorities to determine which grant applications will be funded. Applications that are not funded may be resubmitted a second time to CSR for peer review.

Major Impact on the Field

Behavioral medicine research is often funded by the NIH, and a number of study sections review behavioral science research applications. These study sections include scientists from the multiple disciplines represented within the Society of Behavioral Medicine and ensure that applications examining behavioral influences on health are fairly evaluated. The CSR website provides review group descriptions. Some examples of study sections which are well suited for reviewing specific behavioral science applications include behavioral and social consequences of HIV/AIDS, psychosocial risk and disease prevention, and social sciences and population studies.

The SCR referral officer evaluates applications to find the most appropriate study section. The assignment is posted on ERA Commons for the principal investigator to assess prior to review.

Cross-References

► [National Institutes of Health](#)

References and Further Reading

<http://cms.csr.nih.gov/>

<http://nih.gov/icd/>

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention

► [Behavioral Sciences at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention](#)

Central Adiposity

Simon L. Bacon

Department of Exercise Science, Concordia University and Montreal Behavioural Medicine Centre, CIUSSS-NIM: Hopital du Sacre-Coeur de Montreal, Montreal, QC, Canada
Department of Health, Kinesiology, and Applied Physiology, Concordia University and Montreal Behavioural Medicine Centre, CIUSSS du Nord-de-l'île-de-Montréal, Montreal, QC, Canada

Synonyms

[Abdominal obesity](#); [Apple shaped](#); [Visceral adiposity](#)

Definition

Central adiposity is the accumulation of fat in the lower torso around the abdominal area. Central

adiposity is a function of both subcutaneous fat, which sits under the skin, and visceral fat, which surrounds the internal organs in the peritoneal cavity. Currently, it would seem that the toxic component of central adiposity is the visceral fat.

High levels of central adiposity have been associated with an increased risk of a number of diseases, including type 2 diabetes, hypertension, heart disease, and dementia. Of note, it would seem that central adiposity is independent of body mass index (a proxy of total adiposity) as a predictor of disease (even though the two are highly correlated). This increased risk is thought to be due to the hormonal action of visceral fat, which actively secretes adipokines, most of which impair glucose tolerance. Central adiposity is generally a function of visceral (or intra-abdominal) and subcutaneous adipose tissue, with the visceral adipose tissue being considered the more detrimental to human health.

Central adiposity is most often measured as waist circumference (though the point of measurement varies across studies). However, there are others, such as waist-to-hip ratio, waist-to-height ratio, and CT- and MRI-based techniques, which provide measures of central adiposity, as well as, visceral and subcutaneous fat.

While the causes of obesity and increased body weight are complex but well studied, the exact causes of individual increases in central adiposity are not known, i.e., why some people can have high total adiposity but not central adiposity and vice versa.

Cross-References

► [Obesity](#)

References and Further Reading

- Lee, C., Huxley, R., Wildman, R., & Woodward, M. (2008). Indices of abdominal obesity are better discriminators of cardiovascular risk factors than BMI: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 61(7), 646–653.
- Misra, A., & Vikram, N. K. (2003). Clinical and pathophysiological consequences of abdominal adiposity

and abdominal adipose tissue depots. *Nutrition*, 19(5), 457–466.

- Murphy, J., Bacon, S. L., Morais, J. A., Tsoukas, M. A., & Santosa, S. (2019). Intra-abdominal adipose tissue quantification by alternative versus reference methods: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Obesity*, 27, 1115–1122.
- Rexrode, K. M., Carey, V. J., Hennekens, C. H., Walters, E. E., Colditz, G. A., Stampfer, M. J., Willett, W. C., & Manson, J. E. (1998). Abdominal adiposity and coronary heart disease in women. *JAMA*, 280(21), 1843–1848.

Central Nervous System

Moritz Thede Eckart

General and Biological Psychology, Department of Psychology, University of Marburg, Marburg, Germany

Synonyms

[Brain and spinal cord](#)

Definition

The vertebrate nervous system is divided into the central nervous system (CNS) and the peripheral nervous system (PNS). The CNS consists of two parts: the brain (located in the skull) and the spinal cord (located in the spine). The PNS is the division of the nervous system that is located outside the skull and spine consisting of two types of neurons: afferent (sensory) neurons which relay impulses toward the CNS and efferent (motor) neurons which relay nerve impulses away from the CNS (Breedlove et al. 2010; Pinel 2006).

The CNS integrates the sensory information that it receives from the PNS (via the afferent nerves) and coordinates the behavior of the organism and the activity of all parts of the body (via the efferent nerves) (Pinel 2006). Furthermore, the brain is processing not only simple motor behaviors or physical actions like walking or digestion but also all the complex cognitive,

motivational, and emotional processes like affect, learning and memory, and especially those actions that are believed to be quintessential to humans like thinking, speaking, or creativity (Kandel et al. 2000).

Research on CNS functioning – neuroscience – is a multidisciplinary field that analyzes the biological basis of behavior and psychological processes. The term “neuroscience” was introduced in the mid-1960s, signaling the beginning of an era in which multiple disciplines – neuroanatomy, psychology, biology, medicine, pharmacology, and others – would work together cooperatively, sharing a common language, concepts, and goal, to understand the structure and function of the normal and abnormal brain. Currently, neuroscience is still one of the most rapidly growing areas of science (Squire et al. 2003).

Description

Anatomy

The CNS is the most protected organ of the body: It is encased by bone and covered by three protective membranes ((1) dura mater, (2) arachnoid membrane/subarachnoid space, (3) pia mater). Also the cerebrospinal fluid has a protecting function: it supports and cushions the CNS. Additionally, the blood–brain barrier protects the brain from toxins that could enter the brain via the bloodstream. For instance, the degree to which psychoactive drugs influence psychological processes depends on their ease of penetrating the blood–brain barrier (Pinel 2006).

The CNS is a bilateral and essentially symmetrical structure with seven main parts (see Fig. 1): (1) spinal cord, (2) medulla oblongata, (3) pons, (4) midbrain, (5) cerebellum, (6) diencephalon, and (7) cerebral hemispheres (consisting of cerebral cortex, basal ganglia, hippocampus, and amygdaloid nuclei) (Kandel et al. 2000). Other common nomenclatures for the parts of the CNS are as follows: spinal cord, myelencephalon (medulla), metencephalon (pons and cerebellum), mesencephalon (midbrain), and diencephalon and telencephalon (cerebral hemispheres) (Pinel 2006, an integrated overview over both nomenclatures

can be found in Breedlove et al. (2010)). An integration of both nomenclatures is summarized in Table 1.

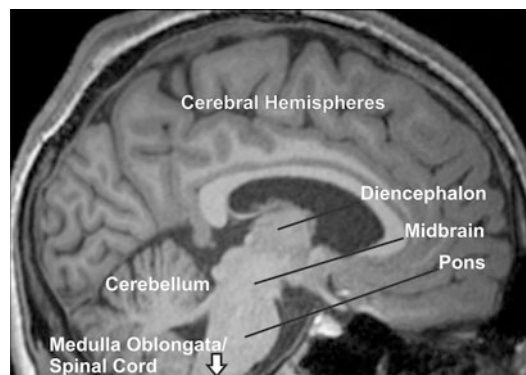
The *spinal cord* is the most caudal part of the CNS. It receives and processes sensory information from the PNS: the skin, joints, and muscles of the limbs and trunk and controls movements of the limbs and the trunk. The spinal cord continues rostrally as the brain stem, which consists of the medulla oblongata, pons, and midbrain. The 12 cranial nerves are the only nerves of the PNS projecting directly into the brain rather than via the spinal cord.

The *medulla oblongata*, which lies directly above the spinal cord, includes several centers responsible for vital autonomic functions (digestion, breathing, control of heart rate).

The *pons*, which lies above the medulla oblongata, conveys information about movement from the cerebral hemispheres to the cerebellum.

The *midbrain*, which lies rostral to the pons, controls many sensory and motor functions like eye movement and coordination of visual and auditory reflexes.

Medulla oblongata, pons, and midbrain are often summarized as the *brain stem*. The brain stem receives sensory information from the skin and muscles of the head and provides motor control of the head via the cranial nerves. It also



Central Nervous System, Fig. 1 Sagittal MRI scan of a human brain with main structures: Cerebral hemispheres, diencephalon, midbrain, pons, and cerebellum. Medulla oblongata and spinal cord would continue ventrally from the Pons. (Courtesy of the working group “Brainimaging,” medicine department, Philipps-University of Marburg)

Central Nervous System, Table 1 A schematic view of the common nomenclatures of the brain, divided by main structures and substructures

Peripheral Nervous System (PNS)	Central Nervous System (CNS)										
	Spinal Cord	Brain									
		Myel- encephalon (medulla oblongata)	Met- encephalon		Mes- encephalon (midbrain)	Di- encephalon		Tel- encephalon (cerebral hemispheres)			
			Cerebellum	Pons		Thalamus	Hypothalamus	Cerebral cortex	Basal ganglia	Hippocampus	Amygdaloid nuclei

conveys information from the brain to the spinal cord and vice versa. Furthermore, the brain stem plays an important role in the regulation of arousal and awareness.

The *cerebellum* lies behind the pons and is crucially involved in the modulation of the force and range of movement, learning of motor skills and movement patterns, coordination, and tuning.

The *diencephalon* lies rostral to the midbrain and contains two structures: the thalamus, which processes most of the information reaching the cerebral cortex from the rest of the nervous system (and is thus often seen as the “gateway” to the cortex), and the hypothalamus, which is involved in the regulation of autonomic, endocrine, and visceral functions.

The *cerebral hemispheres* consist of a heavily wrinkled outer layer – the cerebral cortex (synonym in mammals: neocortex or isocortex) – and three deep-lying structures: the basal ganglia, the hippocampus, and the amygdaloid nuclei. The basal ganglia participate in regulating motor performance, the hippocampus plays a major role in the consolidation of the declarative memory, and the amygdaloid nuclei coordinate the autonomic and endocrine response of emotional states.

The *cerebral cortex* is divided into four anatomical distinct lobes: frontal, parietal, temporal,

and occipital. The frontal lobe is involved in planning and executive functions, the parietal lobe in somatic sensation, the occipital lobe in vision, and the temporal lobe in hearing (and speech in humans).

Cell Types

There are two main classes of cells in the nervous system: nerve cells (neurons) and glial cells (from Greek *glia*, meaning glue). Glial cells far outnumber neurons – there are between 10 and 50 times more glia than neurons in the vertebrate CNS (Breedlove et al. 2010; Kandel et al. 2000).

Glial cells are support cells that provide the brain with structure and sometimes insulate neural groups and synaptic connections from each other. Also, they can communicate with each other and with neurons, and they directly affect neuronal functioning by providing neurons with raw materials and chemical signals that alter neuronal structure and excitability. Further important functions (like the myelination of neurons) are summarized in Kandel et al. (2000), Chap. 2 or Breedlove et al. (2010), Chap. 2.

Nerve cells are the main signaling units of the nervous system. A typical neuron has four morphologically defined regions: the cell body (soma), dendrites, the axon, and presynaptic

terminals. The cell body is the metabolic center of the brain. Dendrites branch out in treelike fashion and are the main apparatus for receiving signals from other neurons. The axon extends away from the cell body and is the main conducting unit for carrying signals (action potentials: all or none impulses) to other neurons. Action potentials constitute the signals by which the brain receives, analyzes, and conveys information.

Near its end, the axon divides into fine branches that form communication sites with other neurons – the synapses. The nerve cell transmitting a signal is called the presynaptic cell, the signal receiving cell the postsynaptic cell. Between both cells lies the synaptic cleft. When an action potential reaches a synaptic terminal, neurotransmitters are released into the postsynaptic cleft as the neurons output signal. The number of released neurotransmitters is determined by the number and frequency of the action potentials in the presynaptic terminals. The released neurotransmitters act on the receptors of the postsynaptic neuron either in an excitatory (increasing the likelihood of an action potential of the postsynaptic neuron) or in an inhibitory (reducing the likelihood of an action potential of the postsynaptic cell) manner. Whether the effect is excitatory or inhibitory does not depend on the type of released neurotransmitter but on the type of receptor in the postsynaptic neuron. One estimate puts the human brain at about 100 billion (10^{11}) neurons and 100 trillion (10^{14}) synapses. For details on nerve cell functioning see Kandel et al. (2000), Chap. 2; Squire et al. (2003), Chap. 3; Pinel (2006), Chap. 4; or Breedlove et al. (2010), Chap. 2.

Neurotransmitter Systems

This section will focus on the main neurotransmitter systems: ► “[dopamine](#)” (DA), norepinephrine (NE), ► “[serotonin](#)” (5-HT), glutamate, and gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA), their organization, function, and dysfunction (Meyer and Quenzer 2005).

Dopamine

DA is metabolized from the precursor DOPA. There are five main subtypes of DA receptors organized into D₁-like (D₁ and D₅) and D₂-like

(D₂, D₃, and D₄) families. The dopaminergic system can be divided into three major pathways:

1. The nigrostriatal pathway, which originates in the substantia nigra (located in the midbrain) and innervates the striatum (part of the basal ganglia)
2. The mesolimbic pathway, which originates in the ventral tegmental area (located in the midbrain) and innervates various limbic structures, such as amygdala, nucleus accumbens, or hippocampus (all located in the deep lying structures of the cerebral hemispheres)
3. The mesocortical pathway, which also originates in the ventral tegmental area and innervates the cerebral cortex, particularly the prefrontal area

DA is also found in the hypothalamus, where it is involved in hormone secretion and in sensory structures.

Function and Dysfunction of the Dopaminergic System

The nigrostriatal pathway plays a crucial role in voluntary control of movement. ► “[Parkinson’s disease](#)”, first described by the physician James Parkinson in 1817 as the “shaking palsy” causes a degeneration of dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra. The major symptoms of Parkinson’s disease involve movement – tremor, rigidity, bradykinesia (poverty or slowing of movement) – and postural disturbances, but also cognitive dysfunctions.

The mesolimbic and mesocortical pathways are involved in motivated behavior, reinforcement of learning and emotional appetitive states (Alcaro et al. 2007). That is why the dopaminergic system also plays a crucial role in drug abuse addiction. Most dopaminergic agonists, like amphetamine or cocaine, are addictive drugs because of their rewarding properties and the induced positive affective states. Furthermore these pathways are closely related to the GABA and opioid system, which is important for understanding the highly addictive potential of GABA agonists (like benzodiazepines and most probably alcohol) and opioid agonists (like morphine or heroin).

Also, a dysfunction of the dopaminergic system is observed in schizophrenia. The dopamine imbalance hypothesis suggests that schizophrenic symptoms are due to reduced dopaminergic function in the mesocortical neurons, along with excess dopaminergic function in mesolimbic dopaminergic neurons, resulting in impaired prefrontal cortex function. Also, the reduction of schizophrenic symptoms by DA antagonists (like Haloperidol, a typical antipsychotic, or Risperidone, an atypical antipsychotic, see below) supports the hypothesis that dopamine is crucially involved in schizophrenic symptoms. But it has to be pointed out that not all symptoms occurring in schizophrenia can be explained by dysfunctions of the DAergic system. For example, also dysfunctions and volume reductions of the hippocampus seem to play a crucial role. Also 5-HT seems to be involved in the development of schizophrenia (see below).

Norepinephrine

The central nervous noradrenergic system originates in the locus coeruleus, a small area of the pons, which projects to almost all areas of the cerebral hemispheres, thalamus, hypothalamus, cerebellum, and spinal cord. Noradrenergic neurons play an important role in vigilance, arousal, and behavioral functions like hunger/eating, sexual behavior, fear and anxiety, and pain and sleep.

Serotonin

5-HT is synthesized from tryptophan, which comes from proteins in our diet. Pharmacologists have identified at least 14 5-HT receptor subtypes (Saulin, et al. 2011). The 5-HT system originates from a cell cluster called raphe nuclei (located in medulla, pons, and midbrain) which projects to virtually all structures of the cerebral hemispheres, thalamus, and hypothalamus.

Function and Dysfunction of the 5-HT System

The 5-HT system is involved in food intake, reproductive behavior, pain sensitivity, anxiety, learning and memory, and facilitation of motor output. In psychology, psychiatry, and pharmacology, serotonergic drugs are commonly used in

treating depression. There are three major classes of antidepressants, which enhance the amount of 5-HT in the postsynaptic cleft in different ways: monoamine oxidase inhibitors, tricyclic antidepressants, and selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs). Although the pharmacological mechanisms of these drugs are well known, it is still not clear which of their neurochemical actions are responsible for their effectiveness in treating depression – especially regarding the fact that the pharmacological effects of the drugs occur within hours whereas antidepressant effects require weeks of chronic treatment.

Also, in pharmacological treatment of schizophrenia, blockade of 5-HT receptors has become a major topic of research in the past years, since the very effective atypical antipsychotics like Risperidone act not exclusively on DA but also on 5-HT receptors.

Another class of drugs that act on the 5-HT system are hallucinogens like LSD (the abbreviation LSD comes from the German chemical name for the substance: *lysergsäurediethylamid*; English: lysergic acid diethylamide) or psilocybin (found in “magic mushrooms”), which became temporarily popular in “psychological experiments” in Harvard in the working group of Timothy Leary in the 1960s and 1970s (Leary et al. 1977).

Glutamate

Glutamate neurotransmitters have potent excitatory effects on neurons throughout the CNS. *N*-Methyl-d-aspartic acid or *N*-methyl-d-aspartate (NMDA) receptors are the main target site of glutamate.

Glutamate and, especially, NMDA receptors are thought to play a crucial role in learning and memory, particularly long-term potentiation. Especially the hippocampus has a very high density of NMDA receptors. NMDA receptor agonists impair the acquisition of various learning tasks.

Gamma-aminobutyric Acid

GABA is synthesized from glutamate. Many main areas of the brain are rich in GABA, including the cerebral cortex, hippocampus, basal ganglia, and cerebellum.

Function and Dysfunction of the GABAergic System

GABA is the main inhibitory neurotransmitter of the brain. Because of GABA's widespread inhibitory effect on neural excitability, treatment with GABA antagonists leads to seizures.

The effect of GABA on the GABA receptor is enhanced by CNS-depressant drugs such as benzodiazepines, barbiturates, and ethanol (alcohol). Due to their anxiolytic effects, benzodiazepines and barbiturates are often prescribed to treat anxiety disorders, although these substances have severe side effects. Among others, the sleep architecture is altered (reduced REM sleep), they are highly addictive, and can cause coma and death by respiratory depression (especially at high doses or with combined alcohol consumption). Another medicinal use of benzodiazepines is as anticonvulsants in the treatment of epilepsy.

Brain Circuits

Often, functionally related structures of the brain are integrated into one circuit such as the limbic system which is mainly associated with emotional processes (Kandel et al. 2000, Chap. 50) or the basal ganglia. In the following, the basal ganglia will be described exemplarily

The *basal ganglia* comprise of striatum (putamen and caudate nucleus), pallidum, substantia nigra, and the subthalamic nucleus.

The basal ganglia are – beside the cerebellum – one of the largest subcortical motor systems. Cerebellum and basal ganglia appear to influence (via thalamus) the same cortical motor systems. While the basal ganglia output is inhibitory, the cerebellar output is excitatory. Discharge of many basal ganglia neurons correlates with movement and lesions or degenerations (like in Parkinson's disease, chorea Huntington, obsessive-compulsive disorder, or Tourette syndrome) cause severe movement abnormalities: slow voluntary movements or involuntary postures and movements. In order to distinguish the basal ganglia from the “pyramidal” corticospinal motor system, the basal ganglia are often termed “extrapyramidal” motor system.

However, beside motor control, the basal ganglia are also involved in nonmotor function

and cognitive aspects of movement (Squire et al. 2003, Chap. 31).

Chances and Limitations of Neuroscience

The new research methods of neuroscience enhanced the knowledge of how mental phenomena are linked to processes in the brain, which allows, for instance, the mapping of mental processes to specific regions of the brain.

Nowadays it is possible to investigate by functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) which brain regions are activated during the presentation of emotionally salient stimuli or cognitive tasks. However it has to be pointed out that research on the biological bases of mental phenomena does not per se enhance the understanding of psychological processes: it is a misunderstanding that biological processes can explain psychological phenomena.

On the contrary, mainly neuroreductionist conceptions of psychological processes (often favoring investigations of input–output relations) may abridge the development of complex theories on mental phenomena. No matter how precisely the brain is investigated – by microscope, imaging techniques, or in the future by even more exact methods – always the same physical objects will be found: neurons, synapses, neurotransmitters, ions, electrons, and protons, but not mental processes. “Granted that a definite thought, and a definite molecular action in the brain occur simultaneously, we do not possess the intellectual organ, nor apparently any rudiment of the organ, which would enable us to pass by a process of reasoning from the one phenomenon to the other. They appear together but we do not know why” (Mausfeld 2010).

Cross-References

- [Brain, Cortex](#)
- [Dopamine](#)
- [Neurotransmitter](#)
- [Norepinephrine/Noradrenaline](#)
- [Parkinson's Disease](#)
- [Serotonin](#)

References and Readings

- Alcaro, A., Huber, R., & Panksepp, J. (2007). Behavioral functions of the mesolimbic dopaminergic system: An affective neuroethological perspective. *Brain Res Rev*, 56(2), 283–321. & Source.
- Breedlove, S. M., Watson, N. V., & Rosenzweig, M. R. (2010). *Biological psychology* (Vol. 6). Sunderland: Sinauer.
- Kandel, E. R., Schwartz, J. H., & Jessell, T. M. (2000). *Principles of neural science* (Vol. 4). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Leary, T., Wilson, R. A., & Koopman, G. A. (1977). *Neuropolitics: The sociobiology of human metamorphosis*. Los Angeles: Starseed/Peace Press.
- Mausfeld, R. (2010). Psychologie, Biologie, kognitive Neurowissenschaften: Zur gegenwärtigen Dominanz neuroreduktionistischer Positionen und zu ihren stillschweigenden Grundannahmen [Psychology, biology, cognitive neurosciences. On the current predominance of neuroreductionist approaches and their tacit assumptions]. *Psychologische Rundschau*, 61(4), 180–190.
- Meyer, J. S., & Quenzer, L. F. (2005). *Psychopharmacology: Drugs, the brain and behavior*. Sunderland: Sinauer.
- Pinel, P. J. (2006). *Biopsychology* (6th ed.). Boston: Pearson Education.
- Saulin, A., Savli, M., & Lanzenberger, R. (2011). Serotonin and molecular neuroimaging in humans using PET. *Amino Acids*.
- Squire, L. R., Bloom, F. E., McConnell, S. K., Roberts, J. L., Spitzer, N. C., & Zigmond, M. J. (2003). *Fundamental neuroscience* (2nd ed.). San Diego: Elsevier Science.

mode, each of which has an entry in the encyclopedia.

Another way to conceptualize central tendency is to say that these measures provide an indication of the location of the data points. Imagine a set of data points ranging from 1 to 100. If the mean is 89, for example, this provides an indication that, overall, the data points are located toward the top of the range rather than toward the bottom. Conversely, if the mean is 27, this indicates that, overall, the data points are located toward the bottom of the range.

Measures of central tendency (consider here the arithmetic mean) are often presented along with measures of spread, or dispersion, of the individual values around the mean. It is possible to have a group of 100 numbers that range from 10 to 90, for example, and have a mean of 50. It is equally possible to have a group of 100 numbers that range from 45 to 55 and that also have a mean of 50. While the measure of central tendency, the mean, is the same in both cases, the dispersion is clearly greater in the former group of hypothetical numbers than in the latter group. Thus, the overall nature of the groups of numbers will differ despite their means being identical.

Central Tendency

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Certain descriptive statistics provide concise yet meaningful summaries of large amounts of data. One category of such statistics is measures of central tendency. They provide a measure of a group's central value. Three measures of central tendency are the arithmetic mean, median, and

Cross-References

- [Dispersion](#)
- [Median](#)
- [Mode](#)

CER

- [Comparative Effectiveness Research](#)

Cerebrum

- [Brain, Cortex](#)

Cervical Adenocarcinoma

► [Cancer, Cervical](#)

Cessation Intervention (Smoking or Tobacco)

Mark Vander Weg

Department of Internal Medicine, The University of Iowa and Iowa City VA Health Care System, Iowa City, IA, USA

Synonyms

[Nicotine dependence and nicotine addiction](#)

Definition

Cessation interventions refer to treatments designed to assist individuals with stopping the use of a particular substance, in this case tobacco. Cessation interventions may involve either behavioral or pharmacological treatment approaches or some combination of the two.

Description

Background

Tobacco use remains the single greatest preventable cause of morbidity and premature mortality in the United States (USA). Each year, cigarette smoking is responsible for more than 440,000 deaths, five million years of potential life lost, and \$190 million in excess health-care expenditures and productivity losses in the USA alone. Worldwide, tobacco use accounts for more than five million deaths annually, with the total expected to increase to eight million by the year 2030 (World Health Organization 2008).

In the USA, rates of cigarette smoking steadily declined in the years following the publication of the first Surgeon General's Report on Smoking and Health in 1964. In fact, since the mid-1960s, the prevalence of cigarette smoking has dropped

by more than 50%. Rates of tobacco use have stabilized in recent years, however, with levels remaining essentially unchanged since 2005. Currently, 20.6% of the adult population smokes cigarettes (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] 2010b). Among high school students, the prevalence of current (past 30-day) cigarette smoking is 17.2% (CDC 2010a). As with adults, the rate of smoking has been relatively stable in recent years following a period of significant decline during the 1990s.

A variety of sociodemographic factors are associated with cigarette use (CDC 2010b). Overall, men (23.5%) are more likely to smoke cigarettes than women (17.9%). Adults aged 25–44 years of age are most likely be cigarette smokers (24.0%), while those aged 65 and older are the least likely to smoke (9.5%). The prevalence of cigarette smoking is also inversely associated with both educational attainment and income. Smoking rates among those with less than a high school education are 28.5% compared with 11.1% for those with an undergraduate college degree and 5.6% for those with a graduate degree. The prevalence of smoking is also elevated among those who live below the poverty line (31.1%) relative to those at or above the poverty level (19.4%). With regard to geographic variations in cigarette use, rates are lowest for those living in the West (18.8%) and highest for those residing in the Midwest (23.1%). Rates of cigarette smoking are elevated among other subgroups as well. In particular, individuals with a history of psychiatric disorders and nonnicotine substance abuse tend to smoke at very high rates relative to the general population.

Although the onset of cigarette smoking continues through young adulthood, the vast majority of regular tobacco users initiate smoking prior to the age of 18. In the early stages of smoking, use tends to be episodic and is often isolated to specific social or environmental contexts (e.g., with friends, at a party). As tolerance to nicotine develops, however, the frequency and intensity of use increase. Following a period of regular use, many smokers become nicotine dependent, which is characterized by *tolerance* (the need for greater amounts of tobacco to achieve the same

effect), *compulsive use* (difficulty controlling cigarette use), and nicotine *withdrawal* (a reversible and substance-specific syndrome of behavioral, cognitive, and physiological changes brought on by the cessation or reduction of tobacco use that causes distress or impairment in functioning) (American Psychiatric Association [APA] 2000). Signs of nicotine withdrawal include dysphoria or depressed mood, insomnia, irritability, frustration, or anger, anxiety, difficulty concentrating, restlessness, decreased heart rate, and increased appetite or weight gain (APA 2000). Although it was once assumed that nearly all regular smokers were nicotine dependent, it is now recognized that a sizeable proportion of cigarette smokers do not meet formal criteria for nicotine dependence (Hughes et al. 2006). Unfortunately, for those who do become nicotine dependent, cigarette use tends to follow a chronic course lasting years or decades, often characterized by multiple relapse episodes.

Treatment

A variety of effective behavioral and psychopharmacological approaches are available for the treatment of tobacco use and dependence. The range of efficacious interventions for tobacco use includes public health-based approaches such as screening and brief advice and health policy initiatives. The present review, however, will emphasize clinical approaches involving behavioral and pharmacologic treatment strategies.

Behavioral treatments have long played an important role in the treatment of tobacco use and dependence. Behavioral approaches range from brief advice lasting just a few minutes to intensive group or behavioral counseling conducted over a period of weeks. A variety of different behavioral treatments have been applied to smoking cessation including aversive therapies such as rapid smoking and smoke holding, nicotine fading, problem solving and skills training, contingency management, relaxation training, and strategies emphasizing enhanced social support. Surprisingly, little is known, however, about the relative efficacy of the individual strategies or components. This is due, in part, to the fact that most treatment programs combine a variety of

different behavioral strategies and tend to be evaluated as a whole rather than according to individual components. Nevertheless, sufficient evidence is available to support the efficacy of certain behavioral strategies. In the 2008 Update to the Clinical Practice Guideline for Treating Tobacco Use and Dependence, Fiore et al. identified two specific types of behavioral interventions and counseling that have proven effective for promoting smoking cessation. These included practical counseling and the provision of intratreatment social support. Practical counseling refers to general problem solving and behavioral skills training (e.g., setting a quit date, identifying high-risk situations, developing coping skills, and providing basic information about smoking and successful quitting). Intratreatment social support simply involves providing encouragement to smokers during their quit attempt, communicating caring and concern about the smoker, and encouraging them to talk about issues related to the quitting process, such as concerns they might have about quitting and experiences they encountered during prior quit attempts.

In addition to variability in content, behavioral interventions also differ with regard to ways of administering treatment. Evidence supports the use of several different formats for the delivery of behavioral treatment for tobacco use. Both individual and group counseling have been shown to be effective strategies for treating nicotine dependence. Proactive telephone counseling, in which an initial assessment is followed by a series of scheduled sessions initiated by the clinician, is another empirically supported mode of delivery. Self-help materials, while advantageous from cost and wide-scale dissemination perspectives, have demonstrated relatively modest success as a treatment strategy. Emerging data also suggest that of computer- and Internet-based cessation programs hold promise, although clear evidence regarding the characteristics and content of programs that are most effective is currently lacking.

Recent trends in the delivery of behavioral treatment for smoking cessation have emphasized the delivery of brief behavioral counseling for purposes of widespread dissemination. Such an

approach is sound from a public health perspective in that it facilitates implementation and increases potential reach. Nevertheless, evidence strongly supports a dose–response association between treatment intensity and cessation outcomes. The number of treatment sessions and total amount of contact time are both positively associated with cessation outcomes such that more intensive interventions tend to be associated with a greater likelihood of cessation.

The most effective tobacco cessation interventions are those that combine behavioral and pharmacological treatment strategies. Indeed, treatments involving medication and behavioral counseling are significantly more effective than those using only one strategy or the other. There are currently seven medications considered to be first-line pharmacotherapies for smoking cessation based on their demonstrated safety and effectiveness in the general population. Five of these agents are forms of nicotine replacement therapy (NRT): transdermal nicotine patch, nicotine gum, nicotine lozenge, nicotine nasal spray, and nicotine inhaler. The patch, gum, and lozenge are all available over the counter in the USA, while the spray and inhaler require a prescription. The two other first-line medications are bupropion hydrochloride (trade name Zyban[®]), an atypical antidepressant, and varenicline (trade name Chantix[®]), an $\alpha_4\beta_2$ nicotinic acetylcholine (ACh) receptor partial agonist. Each of these seven agents has strong empirical evidence to support their efficacy, with no single medication demonstrating clear superiority over the others. All are associated with an approximate doubling of the odds of successful quitting relative to placebo. Medication strategies combining bupropion with the nicotine patch as well as the nicotine patch with short-acting NRT (gum or nasal spray) have also been found to improve cessation rates relative to monotherapy comprised of either agent alone. Two other medications (the antihypertensive clonidine and the antidepressant nortriptyline) are considered to be second-line pharmacotherapies for smoking cessation. Although there is considerable evidence to support their efficacy for aiding smoking cessation, neither has yet been approved by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA)

for treating tobacco use and dependence. In addition, these agents tend to have a less favorable side effect profile than most of the first-line agents. For that reason, it is recommended that they be considered primarily among those for whom the first-line agents are contraindicated or who have not been successful at quitting using those medications. To date, there is insufficient evidence to support the efficacy of pharmacotherapy for use with pregnant women, light smokers, and adolescents. For that reason, guidelines recommend that treatment focus on behavioral strategies and counseling.

Despite the range of effective behavioral and pharmacological options for assisting with tobacco cessation, the vast majority of smokers do not use an empirically supported treatment during a given quit attempt. An estimated 65–80% of smokers who attempt to quit smoking do so without the aid of behavioral or pharmacological therapies (Shiffman et al. 2008; Zhu et al. 2000). Behavioral interventions are especially underutilized, with less than 10% of smokers using this form of treatment during any single quit attempt (Shiffman et al. 2008; Zhu et al. 2000). Furthermore, when smokers do make use of nonpharmacological treatment approaches, they tend to use self-help materials rather than strategies with greater empirical support such as individual, group, or telephone counseling (Shiffman et al. 2008). A variety of factors appear to contribute to the underutilization of effective smoking cessation treatments including a lack of awareness of available treatment options, a preference to quit smoking on one's own, perceived inconvenience, cost, and, in the case of pharmacotherapy, concerns about side effects.

Relapse Prevention

Nicotine dependence is becoming increasingly conceptualized as a chronic and refractory condition. Even among those who do receive evidence-based treatment for smoking cessation, most who attempt cessation eventually resume smoking following a given quit attempt. Although relapse can occur months or even years after an individual quits smoking, the vast majority occurs within the first 2 weeks. The long-term cessation rates

for even the most successful interventions rarely exceed 30–35% (By comparison, for those who attempt to quit on their own without assistance, 1-year abstinence rates tend to be less than 5%). Perhaps surprisingly in light of the variety of new (primarily pharmacological) treatments that have become available over the past two decades, abstinence rates among participants in clinical trials have actually decreased over time (Inrvin and Brandon 2000; Inrvin et al. 2003), leading to the speculation that those who continue to smoke, though fewer in number, are more likely to be nicotine dependent and to have comorbid psychiatric and substance use disorders that make it more difficult for them to successfully quit (Inrvin and Brandon 2000).

Given the high rates of relapse among once abstinent smokers, much attention has been given to trying to prevent tobacco users from resuming tobacco use following a successful quit attempt. Most of this work is based on the model originally developed by Marlatt for the treatment of alcohol use disorders (Marlatt and Donovan 2005). The approach focuses on helping individuals to identify situations in which they may be especially tempted to smoke cigarettes (e.g., when consuming alcohol, during situations of elevated stress or dysphoria, when exposed to other smokers). Once these high-risk situations are identified, smokers can be taught to avoid them (at least in the short term) or to develop alternative coping strategies to help them manage the situation without smoking. Although conceptually appealing, relapse prevention interventions based on enhancing coping skills have generally not been shown to be effective for cigarette smoking. Other psychosocial and pharmacological approaches have similarly failed to reduce relapse rates in most cases. Methodological limitations associated with this literature, however, limit the conclusions that can be drawn regarding the relative effectiveness (or ineffectiveness) of different intervention strategies. Given the high rates of relapse, new strategies for helping to maintain abstinence over the long term are clearly needed.

Addressing Smokers Who Are Not Interested in Quitting

The treatment approaches described above apply primarily to those who express interest in quitting smoking. However, despite the fact that the vast majority of smokers indicate that they would like to quit, the proportion of tobacco users who express readiness to quit smoking at any given point in time is relatively small. Therefore, it is important to identify strategies for approaching the large number of smokers who indicate that they do not presently wish to make a quit attempt.

Historically, approaches to address tobacco use among cigarette smokers who express reluctance to quit focused on providing education about the harms of smoking and attempting to persuade them to quit. Such strategies tended to be paternalistic and proscriptive in style and based on the assumption that those who continued smoking did so primarily due to a lack of knowledge about the significant health risks. However, while health education does play an important role in smoking cessation and advice to quit from one's health or mental health-care provider is frequently cited as an important factor in motivating a quit attempt, treatment strategies that rely on confrontation and which solely emphasize the clinician's role as the health expert who knows what is best for the client typically meet with little success.

One approach that has been particularly influential in the field of health behavior change, and in the treatment of addictions in particular, is motivational interviewing (MI) (Miller and Rollnick 2002). Motivational interviewing is a directive, client-centered approach to counseling that seeks to promote behavior change by helping people to explore and resolve ambivalence. The MI approach recognizes that the majority of smokers have mixed feelings about their tobacco use. While nearly all tobacco users acknowledge the health risks and can identify other negative consequences of smoking, most also perceive it as positively reinforcing and as playing an important functional role in their lives (e.g., negative affect

reduction, stress management). Helping clients to recognize and resolve their ambivalence about quitting smoking is central to the MI approach. Rather than using direct persuasion in an attempt to enforce change externally, MI takes the perspective that the individual already possesses the motivation and skills necessary to make a change. Instead of viewing motivation as something an individual does or does not have, it is seen as fluid and susceptible to movement in either direction. The goal is to elicit and strengthen the motivation and commitment through the use of “change talk,” in which the individual (rather than the clinician) makes his or her own argument for quitting smoking.

Four general principles help to guide the MI approach. The first involves *expressing empathy*, which entails making an attempt to view things from the perspective of the client. The second principle is to help the client to *develop discrepancy* between his or her values/goals and their current behavior. For example, individuals who place being a good role model for their children and being available to support their family and friends in high regard can be helped to see how smoking is incongruent with these values. The third principle involves *rolling with resistance*. It is very common for individuals faced with decisions about modifying a health behavior such as tobacco use to demonstrate resistance to change, particularly if they feel their autonomy is being threatened. Rather than try to confront or fight the client’s resistance, the MI approach contends that it can be much more productive to shift strategies and use this as an opportunity to further explore their views about the behavior. The final principle focuses on helping to *support self-efficacy*. An individual’s belief that they are able to successfully make a change in their behavior is strongly associated with their likelihood of doing so. Therefore, fostering one’s sense of their own self-efficacy by eliciting examples of past successes or providing illustrative cases of others who have made similar behavior changes can be very beneficial. In order to help facilitate these

principles and resolve their ambivalence, MI utilizes interaction techniques such as open-ended questions, reflective listening, and providing positive affirmations.

Considerable evidence now supports the use of MI for helping individuals to change their smoking behavior. Although treatment effects tend to be modest, MI has been shown to successfully increase the likelihood of smoking cessation. The approach appears to be particularly effective for those expressing low motivation to quit. Due in large part to its collaborative and non-confrontational style which respects an individual’s ability to make their own decisions about when, how, and whether to change their behavior, MI also tends to be popular among both clinicians and clients.

Summary and Conclusions

Although public health policy initiatives and treatment advances have helped to reduce the proportion of the population that smokes cigarettes, tobacco use remains the leading cause of morbidity and premature mortality in our society. Several evidence-based behavioral and pharmacologic treatments have been found to significantly improve a smoker’s chances of quitting successfully. However, most smokers fail to utilize effective interventions during any given quit attempt. Even among those who do receive empirically supported treatment, relapse rates remain very high. In order to continue progress in reducing rates of cigarette smoking, it is important to identify and implement strategies for increasing the use of evidence-based treatment for tobacco use and dependence, as well as for helping to reduce high rates of relapse among those who do attempt to quit.

Cross-References

- [Motivational Interviewing](#)
- [Substance Use Disorders](#)

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed., text revision). Arlington: American Psychiatric Association.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010a). Tobacco use among middle and high school students – United States, 2000–2009. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 59, 1063–1068.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010b). Vital signs: Current cigarette smoking among adults aged ≥18 years – United States, 2009. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 59, 1135–1140.
- Fiore, M. C., Jaén, C. R., Baker, T. B., Bailey, W. C., Benowitz, N., Curry, S. J., et al. (2008). *Treating tobacco use and dependence: 2008 update*. Rockville: US DHHS, Public Health Service.
- Hughes, J. R., Helzer, J. E., & Lindberg, S. A. (2006). Prevalence of DSM/ICD-defined nicotine dependence. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, 85, 91–102.
- Inrvin, J. E., & Brandon, T. H. (2000). The increasing recalcitrance of smokers in clinical trials. *Nicotine & Tobacco Research*, 2, 79–84.
- Inrvin, J. E., Hendricks, P. S., & Brandon, T. H. (2003). The increasing recalcitrance of smokers in clinical trials II: Pharmacotherapy trials. *Nicotine & Tobacco Research*, 5, 27–35.
- Marlatt, G. A., & Donovan, D. M. (2005). *Relapse prevention: Maintenance strategies in the treatment of addictive behaviors* (2nd ed.). New York: Guilford Press.
- Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (2002). *Motivational interviewing: Preparing people for change* (2nd ed.). New York: Guilford Press.
- Shiffman, S., Brockwell, S. E., Pillitteri, J. L., & Gitchell, J. G. (2008). Use of smoking-cessation treatments in the United States. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 34, 102–111.
- World Health Organization. (2008). *WHO report on the global tobacco epidemic, 2008: The MPOWER package*. Geneva: World Health Organization.
- Zhu, S., Melcer, T., Sun, J., Rosbrook, B., & Pierce, J. P. (2000). Smoking cessation with and without assistance: A population-based analysis. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 18, 305–311.

CF

► Cystic Fibrosis

Changing

► Aging

Character Traits

Jonathan A. Shaffer

Department of Medicine/Division of General Medicine, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Personality](#); [Psychosocial traits](#)

Definition

Character traits generally refer to the temporally stable and cross-situationally consistent individual patterns in how people think, act, and feel.

Description

Associations between character traits, health behaviors, and health outcomes have been well documented (Booth-Kewley and Vickers Jr. 1994; Ozer and Benet-Martinez 2006). Hostility and dominance, two components of the Type A behavior pattern, have been related to asymptomatic atherosclerosis, incident coronary heart disease, and cardiac-specific and all-cause mortality (Smith 2006). Each of the five character traits that comprises the Five Factor Model, which has been recommended as a culturally robust framework by which to guide investigations of the association between personality and health outcomes (Taylor et al. 2009), has been linked to health behaviors, including wellness behaviors, accident control, traffic risk taking, and substance risk taking (Booth-Kewley and Vickers Jr. 1994). These broad traits of the Five Factor Model include neuroticism (e.g., anxiety, hostility, and depression), extraversion (e.g., warmth, assertiveness, and positive emotions), conscientiousness (e.g., self-discipline, order, and achievement striving), agreeableness (e.g., altruism, trust, and compliance), and openness to experience (e.g., fantasy, esthetics, and feelings). Neuroticism has

additionally been linked to both distress-relevant aspects of health (DeNeve and Cooper 1998) and disease incidence (Friedman et al. 2010). It has likewise been shown to predict, over more than four decades, subjective well-being, physical health, and longevity (Friedman et al. 2010). Other research has shown that extraversion and conscientiousness predict longevity, low agreeableness (trait hostility) and negative affectivity predict poorer physical health and earlier mortality, and creativity predicts health and is associated with resiliency (Ozer and Benet-Martinez 2006). Moreover, a meta-analytic review has identified optimism as a significant predictor of positive physical health outcomes with regard to all-cause mortality, survival, cardiovascular outcomes, cancer outcomes, outcomes related to pregnancy, physical symptoms, immune functioning, and pain (Rasmussen et al. 2009).

Although researchers initially considered whether single diseases (such as coronary heart disease) were associated with single character traits or personality types (such as hostility and Type A personality), Friedman and Booth-Kewley (1987) offered evidence in contradiction to this paradigm. In their meta-analysis of five emotional facets of personality (including depression and anxiety) and five chronic diseases (including coronary heart disease) thought to be affected by psychosomatic factors, they identified a pattern of associations between multiple predictors and multiple disease outcomes. Friedman and Booth-Kewley's research pointed to a broader "disease-prone personality," and suggested the importance of assessing multiple character traits and multiple health outcomes in the same study (Friedman et al. 2010). Recent studies of the associations of the five traits of the Five Factor Model with health outcomes reflect this paradigm shift. For instance, Taylor and colleagues studied whether character traits from the Five Factor Model were associated with all-cause mortality in a general adult population in Scotland and found that high conscientiousness and openness were protective against all-cause mortality in men (Taylor et al. 2009).

Current research on character traits and physical health attempts to identify mechanisms by

which personality gives rise to subsequent health outcomes, and a variety of mechanistic models have been proposed (Smith 2006). Health behavior models suggest that character traits are associated with health behaviors, which in turn elicit health outcomes. An interactional stress moderation model posits that character traits contribute to appraisal and coping, which in turn lead to physiological responses and health outcomes. A transactional stress moderation model expands the interactional model by including the bidirectional effect of personality on exposure to stressful life circumstances and availability of stress-reducing resources. Finally, the constitutional predisposition model proposes that genetic or other psychobiologic factors underlie both character traits and the development of health outcomes.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Dispositional Optimism](#)
- ▶ [Heart Disease and Type A Behavior](#)
- ▶ [Neuroticism](#)
- ▶ [Personality](#)
- ▶ [Trait Anger](#)
- ▶ [Trait Anxiety](#)
- ▶ [Type A Behavior](#)
- ▶ [Type D Personality](#)

References and Readings

- Booth-Kewley, S., & Vickers, R., Jr. (1994). Associations between major domains of personality and health behavior. *Journal of Personality*, 62(3), 281–298.
- DeNeve, K. M., & Cooper, H. (1998). The happy personality: A meta-analysis of 137 personality traits and subjective well-being. *Psychological Bulletin*, 124, 197–229.
- Friedman, H. S., & Booth-Kewley, S. (1987). The "disease-prone personality:" A meta-analytic view of the construct. *The American Psychologist*, 42, 539–555.
- Friedman, H. S., Kern, M. L., & Reynolds, C. A. (2010). Personality and health, subjective well-being, and longevity. *Journal of Personality*, 78, 179–215.
- Ozer, D., & Benet-Martinez, V. (2006). Personality and the prediction of consequential outcomes. *Psychology*, 57(1), 401–421.

- Rasmussen, H. N., Scheier, M. F., & Greenhouse, J. B. (2009). Optimism and physical health: A meta-analytic review. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 37, 239–256.
- Smith, T. (2006). Personality as risk and resilience in physical health. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 15(5), 227–231.
- Taylor, M. D., Whiteman, M. C., Fowkes, G. R., Lee, A. J., Allerhand, M., & Deary, I. J. (2009). Five factor model personality traits and all-cause mortality in the Edinburgh artery study cohort. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 71, 631–641.

Characteristics Study

- [Job Diagnostic Survey](#)

Chatbots

- [Digital Relational Agents](#)

Chemical Dependency Treatment

- [Substance Abuse: Treatment](#)

Chemo, Cancer Chemotherapy

- [Chemotherapy](#)

Chemokines

- [Cytokines](#)

Chemotherapy

Yu Yamada

Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, Kyushu University, Fukuoka, Japan

Synonyms

[Chemo](#), [Cancer chemotherapy](#)

Definition

Chemotherapy is a treatment of diseases using chemical agents or drugs, particularly the treatment of cancer by cytotoxic and other drugs. In a non-oncological setting, the term may also refer to the administration of antibiotics against microorganisms. Here, only cancer chemotherapy is discussed.

The main purpose of chemotherapy is to systematically kill cancer cells in the body. Most traditional drugs that are used in chemotherapy interfere with the ability of cells to grow and multiply. The variety of chemotherapy drugs are classified based on how they work. For example, alkylating agents, like cyclophosphamide, kill cells by directly attacking DNA. Antimetabolites, like methotrexate, interfere with the production of DNA and the growth and multiplication of cells. Topoisomerase-interacting agents, anti-microtubule agents, and miscellaneous chemotherapeutic agents are traditional chemotherapy drugs. These drugs target not only cancer cells but also normal cells in the body. In contrast, there has been a recent emergence of targeted therapy, which involves drugs that block the growth of only cancer cells by interfering with specific targeted molecules needed for carcinogenesis and tumor growth. Small-molecule tyrosine kinase inhibitors, like imatinib mesylate, and monoclonal antibodies, like trastuzumab, are used in targeted therapy.

Chemotherapy drugs can be administered orally, by injection, through a catheter or port, or

topically. Chemotherapy drugs are most often administered in combination, based on the known biochemical actions of available anticancer drugs. To achieve superior outcome with combined cancer chemotherapy, drugs which function through separate cytotoxic mechanisms and have different dose-limiting adverse effects are administered together at full dosages. Patients may undergo chemotherapy at regular intervals, i.e., once a week and once a month, depending on the type of cancer and drug therapy.

As most chemotherapy drugs are toxic to cancer cells as well as normal healthy cells, they can cause a variety of side effects, including hair loss, anemia, loss of appetite, nausea, and vomiting.

Several behavioral medicine studies have also suggested impairment of cognitive functions, such as memory and attention, in some patients who receive chemotherapy, mostly as adjuvant treatment for breast cancer. This impairment is referred to as “chemo-brain” or “chemo-fog.” Despite increasing research in this area, the mechanisms behind chemotherapy-induced cognitive impairment remain largely unknown. Future studies are expected to shed light on both the prevention and treatment of “chemo-brain.”

Cross-References

- [Cancer Treatment and Management](#)
- [Cancer, Types of](#)

References and Readings

- Ahles, T. A., & Saykin, A. J. (2007). Candidate mechanisms for chemotherapy-induced cognitive changes. *Nature Reviews Cancer*, 7(3), 192–201.
- DeVita, V. T., & Lawrence, T. S. (2008). *DeVita, Hellman, and Rosenberg's Cancer (Cancer: Principles and Practice)*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins.
- Kennedy, B. J. (1999). Medical oncology: Its origin, evolution, current status, and future. *Cancer*, 85(1), 1–8.
- Tannock, I. F., Ahles, T. A., Ganz, P. A., et al. (2004). Cognitive impairment associated with chemotherapy for cancer: Report of a workshop. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 22(11), 2233–2239.

Chesney, Margaret

Margaret A. Chesney

Department of Medicine and Osher Center for Integrative Medicine, University of California, San Francisco, CA, USA

Biographical Information



Margaret Chesney was born in Baltimore, Maryland. She graduated from Whitman College in 1971 and received her PhD in Clinical and Counseling Psychology from Colorado State University in 1975. She received postdoctoral training in psychiatry from the Western Pennsylvania Psychiatric Institute where she studied behavioral approaches to improving psychological and physical health. In 1976, she joined Stanford Research Institute (SRI) to carry out research on stress and health. In 1978, she became Director of the new Department of Behavioral Medicine at SRI. In 1987, she moved her research to the Department of Medicine, University of California San Francisco (UCSF), to contribute behavioral medicine perspectives to the prevention and treatment of HIV/AIDS.

From 2000 to 2003, while at UCSF, Chesney pursued policy studies as a Senior Fellow at the Center for the Advancement of Health in Washington, DC, and served as a Scientific Advisor to the Office for Research on Women's Health at the National Institutes of Health (NIH). In 2003, she became the first Deputy Director of the new National Center for Complementary and Integrative Health (NCCIH) and a Senior Advisor to the Director of the Office of Behavioral and Social Sciences Research at NIH. In 2010, Margaret returned to UCSF as Professor in Residence in the Department of Medicine, the Osher Foundation Distinguished Professor in Integrative Medicine, and Director of the Osher Center for Integrative Medicine at UCSF.

In 2014, Margaret was elected Chair of the Academic Consortium of Integrative Medicine and Health. While Chair, she oversaw a period of significant growth of the Consortium and the development of effective partnerships with other leading organizations in the field. As an Active Emeritus Professor of Medicine, she is continuing to carry out research at UCSF, the San Francisco VA, and Stanford University.

Throughout her career, Chesney has chaired and served on numerous advisory groups for the NIH and the State of California, covering topics including health promotion and disease prevention, living with and beyond chronic illness, women's health, and health-care policy. She is currently the Associate Editor of *Psychology, Health and Medicine*. Chesney has been President of the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research, as well as President of the American Psychosomatic Society and President of the Division of Health Psychology of the American Psychological Association. She received the Distinguished Scientist Award from the Society of Behavioral Medicine in 2011, the Director's Award for work in Mind-Body Medicine from the NIH in 2005, the Charles C. Shepard Science Award from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention in 1999, and the President's Award from the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research in 1987. In 2001, she was elected to the National Academy Medicine. She received an honorary doctorate from her alma mater, Whitman College, in 2008.

Major Accomplishments

Chesney has been engaged in clinical practice and research in the areas of stress, mind-body interactions, and health. Her earliest studies involved the use of relaxation-based exercises as an alternative to medication for managing pain. Extending this approach to coronary heart disease, Chesney carried out a number of studies to identify the coronary-prone features of the Type A behavior pattern. With colleagues at SRI, she reported that hostility, competitiveness, and depressed mood are characteristics associated with increased risk of coronary events. She followed this work with trials investigating lifestyle interventions designed to promote health, prevent disease, and enhance well-being in both women and men.

In the late 1980s, Chesney was invited to join the Center for AIDS Prevention Studies at UCSF to develop behavioral interventions for persons living with HIV/AIDS. With Susan Folkman, Chesney carried out research on stress and coping among caregivers of persons with HIV/AIDS and developed a cognitive behavioral intervention, Coping Effectiveness Training (CET), for persons with HIV/AIDS, based on stress and coping theory. Shown to be effective with HIV, CET has been successfully applied to enhance coping with other chronic conditions including spinal cord injury and cancer. In addition, Chesney developed measures of adherence and led randomized trials of behavioral strategies to increase adherence to the complex treatment regimens for HIV/AIDS. She was also one of the two leaders of a San Francisco community-based study that encouraged persons infected with HIV to seek immediate treatment within the first days of infection, a study that led NIH to create a network investigating treatment of "primary HIV infection."

Her interest in policy-level interventions for health promotion brought Chesney to Washington, DC, and NIH where she became familiar with the emerging field of integrative medicine. Returning to UCSF, her current research is investigating breathing, a core feature of many behavioral or integrative medicine interventions. With her husband, David Anderson, she

has demonstrated that breathing interventions can be used to lower blood pressure in hypertensive women, but rather than breathing rate, the evidence from their research focuses on the importance of deep breathing that lowers expired CO₂. In addition, she is a co-investigator on clinical trials of yoga and other exercise-based interventions for a number of conditions including post-traumatic stress disorder, urinary incontinence in women, and cognitive decline associated with aging.

Cross-References

- Coping
- Integrative Medicine
- Stress Management

References and Further Reading

- Anderson, D. E., & Chesney, M. A. (2002). Gender-specific association of perceived stress with inhibited breathing pattern. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 9, 216–277.
- Anderson, D. E., & Chesney, M. A. (2015). Inhibited breathing and salt-sensitivity in women. In K. Orth-Gomer, N. Schneiderman, V. Vaccarino, & H. C. Detre (Eds.), *Psychosocial stress and cardiovascular disease in women* (pp. 181–196). New York: Springer.
- Chesney, M. A. (2006). The elusive gold standard: Future perspectives for HIV adherence assessment and intervention. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*, 43(Suppl. 1), S149–S155.
- Chesney, M. A., Chambers, D. B., Taylor, J. M., Johnson, L. M., & Folkman, S. (2003a). Coping effectiveness training for men living with HIV: Results from a randomized clinical trial testing a group-based intervention. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65, 1038–1046.
- Chesney, M. A., Koblin, B. A., Barresi, P. J., Husnik, M. H., Celum, D. L., Colfax, G., et al. (2003b). An individually-tailored intervention for HIV prevention: Baseline data from the EXPLORE Study. *American Journal of Public Health*, 93, 933–938.
- Chesney, M. A., Darbes, L., Hoerster, K., Taylor, J., Chambers, D. C., & Anderson, D. E. (2005). Positive emotions: The other hemisphere of behavioral medicine. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 12, 50–58.
- Chesney, M. A., Neilands, T. B., Chambers, D. B., Taylor, J. M., & Folkman, S. (2006). A validity and reliability study of the coping self-efficacy scale. *British Journal of Health Psychology*, 11, 421–437.
- Huang, A. J., Chesney, M. A., Lisha, N., Schembri, M., Vittinghoff, E., Pawlowsky, S., Hsu, A., & Subak, L. (2019). A group-based yoga program for urinary incontinence in ambulatory older women: Feasibility, tolerability, and preliminary efficacy in a single-center randomized trial. *American Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 220(1), 87.e1–87.e13. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajog.2018.10.031>.
- Mazor, M., Paul, S. M., Chesney, M. A., Chen, L. M., Smoot, B., Topp, K., Conley, Y. P., Levine, J. D., & Miaskowski, C. (2019). Perceived stress is associated with a higher symptom burden in cancer survivors. *Cancer*, 2019, 1–7. <https://doi.org/10.1002/cncr.32477>.
- Mehling, W. E., Chesney, M. A., Metzler, T. J., Goldstein, L. A., & Maguen, S. (2018). A 12-week integrative exercise program improves self-reported mindfulness and interoceptive awareness in war veterans with post-traumatic stress symptoms. *Journal of Clinical Psychology*, 74(4), 544–565.

Chest Pain

Siqin Ye

Division of Cardiology, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

Angina pectoris

Definition

Acute chest pain is the common symptom of a multitude of medical conditions, ranging from the life threatening, such as myocardial infarction, pulmonary embolism, pneumothorax, and aortic dissection; to the less serious, such as esophageal reflux, peptic ulcer disease, and gallbladder disease; to benign entities, such as pericarditis, costochondritis, and panic attacks. As such, it is also one of the most frequent causes for ER presentation in the United States, accounting for as many as seven million visits annually. Rapid triage and accurate diagnostic workup are thus cornerstones of care for these patients (Cannon and Lee 2008; Lee and Goldman 2000).

The evaluation of acute chest pain begins with a thorough history and physical that helps to distinguish the underlying etiology and guide testing. For instance, clinical features that are suggestive of myocardial infarction include prior history of coronary artery disease, pain or pressure radiating to the arm or jaw, and association with nausea, vomiting, or diaphoresis (Panju et al. 1998). Pain that is pleuritic (i.e., worse with deep inspiration) can be caused by pulmonary embolism, while chest pain caused by aortic dissection is typically described as excruciating and tearing or ripping in quality, often radiating to the back. Pain that is worse with manual palpation, on the other hand, suggests a chest wall process such as costochondritis and is often reassuring. Rapid ECG at time of presentation is recommended to rule out ST-elevation myocardial infarction, and other testing such as serial biomarkers (e.g., cardiac troponins or creatine kinase MB isoenzyme), chest X-ray, and CT angiography of chest and thorax can be obtained based on the clinical suspicion (Cannon and Lee 2008; Lee and Goldman 2000). Despite the availability of these tests, however, the challenge remains to balance the need to correctly diagnose patients with life-threatening conditions with avoidance of the harm that can occur from unnecessary testing of those who are truly at low risk.

Cross-References

► [Angina Pectoris](#)

References and Readings

- Cannon, C. P., & Lee, T. H. (2008). Approach to the patient with chest pain. In P. Libby, R. O. Bonow, D. L. Mann, D. P. Zipes, & E. Braunwald (Eds.), *Braunwald's heart disease: A textbook of cardiovascular medicine* (pp. 1195–1205). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Lee, T. H., & Goldman, L. (2000). Evaluation of the patient with acute chest pain. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 342(16), 1187–1195.
- Panju, A. A., Hemmelgarn, B. R., Guyatt, G. H., & Simel, D. L. (1998). Is this patient having a myocardial infarction? *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 280(14), 1250–1263.

Child Abuse

Melissa Merrick¹ and Jason Jent²

¹Division of Violence Prevention, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, USA

²Department of Pediatrics, Mailman Center for Child Development, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Acts of commission](#)

Definition

Child abuse is defined as acts of commission that include the use of words or overt actions that cause harm, potential harm, or threat of harm to a child (Leeb et al. 2008). These are deliberate and intentional acts of commission by a caregiver, whether or not harm to a child was the intended consequence.

A caregiver is defined as a person who at the time of the maltreatment is in a permanent (primary caregiver) or temporary (substitute caregiver) role. In a custodial role, the person is responsible for care and control of the child and for the child's overall health and welfare. A primary caregiver lives with the child at least part of the time and can include, but is not limited to, a relative or biological, adoptive, step-, or foster parent(s); a legal guardian(s); or their intimate partner. A substitute caregiver may or may not live with the child and can include coaches, clergy, teachers, relatives, babysitters, residential facility staff, or others who are not the child's primary caregiver(s).

Acts of omission, child neglect, are discussed in a separate entry.

Types

There are three different forms of child abuse that involve acts of commission: physical abuse, sexual abuse, and psychological/emotional abuse.

Physical abuse is defined as the intentional use of physical force against a child that results in, or has the potential to result in, physical injury (Leeb et al. 2008). Physical abuse includes physical acts that range from those which do not leave a physical mark on the child to those which cause permanent disability, disfigurement, or even death. Examples of physical abuse can include hitting, kicking, punching, beating, stabbing, biting, pushing, throwing, pulling, dragging, dropping, shaking, choking, smothering, burning, scalding, and poisoning.

Sexual abuse is defined as any completed or attempted sexual act, sexual contact with, or exploitation (i.e., noncontact sexual interaction) of a child by a caregiver (Leeb et al. 2008). Sexual acts include contact involving penetration, however slight, between the mouth, penis, vulva, or anus of the child and another individual. Sexual acts also include penetration, however slight, of the anal or genital opening by a hand, finger, or other object. Sexual acts can be performed by the caregiver on the child or by the child on the caregiver. A caregiver might also force or coerce a child to commit a sexual act on another individual (child or adult). Abusive sexual contact involves intentional touching, either directly or through the clothing, of the following: genitalia (penis or vulva), anus, groin, breast, inner thigh, and/or buttocks. Abusive sexual contact can be performed by the caregiver on the child or by the child on the caregiver. Abusive sexual contact can also occur between the child and another individual (adult or child) through force or coercion by a caregiver. Touching that is required for the normal care or attention to the child's daily needs does not constitute abusive sexual contact.

Noncontact sexual abuse can include any of the following: (a) exposing a child to sexual activity (e.g., pornography, voyeurism of the child by an adult, intentional exposure of a child to exhibitionism); (b) filming a child in a sexual manner (e.g., depiction, either photographic or cinematic, of a child in a sexual act); (c) sexually harassing a child (e.g., quid pro quo, creating a hostile environment because of comments or attention of a sexual nature by a caregiver to a child); and (d) prostituting a child (e.g., employing, using,

persuading, inducing, enticing, encouraging, allowing, or permitting a child to engage in or assist any other person to engage in prostitution or sexual trafficking).

Psychological/emotional abuse includes intentional caregiver behavior that conveys to a child that he/she is worthless, flawed, unloved, unwanted, endangered, or valued only in meeting another's needs (Leeb et al. 2008). Psychological/emotional abuse can be continual or episodic (e.g., triggered by a specific context or situation). Psychologically/emotionally abusive behaviors often consist of blaming, belittling, degrading, intimidating, terrorizing, isolating, restraining, confining, corrupting, exploiting, or otherwise behaving in a manner that is harmful, potentially harmful, or insensitive to the child's developmental needs or can potentially damage the child psychologically or emotionally.

Description

Prevalence

In 2008, US state and local child protective services (CPS) received 3.3 million reports of children being abused and/or neglected. CPS estimated that 772,000 (10.3 per 1,000) of these children had substantiated cases of child abuse and/or child neglect. Approximately three quarters of them had no history of prior victimization. Sixteen percent of the children were classified as victims of physical abuse, 9% as victims of sexual abuse, and 7% as victims of psychological/emotional abuse (USDHHS 2010). The remaining children were classified as victims of child neglect. A recent national study estimated that 1 in 5 US children has experienced some form of child abuse or neglect in their lifetime, with a rate of 1 in 10 experiencing some form of child abuse or neglect in the past year (Finkelhor et al. 2009). In 2008, a CPS-based study found that African-American (16.6 per 1,000 children), American Indian or Alaska Native (13.9 per 1,000 children), and multiracial (13.8 per 1,000 children) children had higher rates of victimization than other racial groups, with slightly higher rates for girls (10.8 per 1,000 children) than boys (9.7 per 1,000

children) overall (USDHHS 2010). Research has demonstrated similar negative sequelae for children who have substantiated CPS reports of abuse and for children who have alleged or suspected CPS reports of abuse (Hussey et al. 2005).

Etiology and Sequelae

A combination of individual, relational, community, and societal factors contributes to the risk of child abuse. Although children are not responsible for the harm inflicted upon them, certain characteristics have been found to increase their risk of being abused (Berliner 2011; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2009; Runyon and Urquiza 2011). Individual child factors that increase a child's vulnerability include child age younger than 4 years and those children with special needs. Also, parents' lack of understanding of child development and parenting skills; parents' history of child abuse, substance abuse, and/or mental health issues; parental characteristics such as young age, low education, single parenthood, large number of dependent children, and low income; and nonbiological, transient caregivers in the home (e.g., mother's male partner) all seem to increase the risk of perpetration of child abuse in the home. Other risk factors for perpetration include poor social connections and support, family violence (e.g., intimate partner violence), poor parent-child relationships, parenting stress, community violence, and concentrated neighborhood disadvantage (e.g., high poverty and residential instability, high unemployment rates).

Extensive research demonstrates that child abuse can have devastating effects on physical and mental health. Abuse during infancy or early childhood can cause important regions of the brain to form and function improperly with long-term consequences on cognitive, language, and socioemotional development and mental health. Children may experience severe or fatal head trauma as a result of abuse. Nonfatal consequences of abusive head trauma include varying degrees of visual impairment (e.g., blindness), motor impairment (e.g., cerebral palsy), and cognitive impairments (Christian, Block, and The

Committee on Child Abuse, and Neglect 2009). Also, the stress of chronic abuse may result in anxiety and may make children more vulnerable to problems such as posttraumatic stress disorder, conduct disorder, and learning, attention, and memory difficulties (Dallam 2001; Perry 2001). Studies have found abused children are more likely to be arrested or become involved in delinquent and violent behavior in adolescence and experience teen pregnancy, low academic achievement, and decreased high school graduation rates (Langsford et al. 2007). Abused children are also at increased risk for adverse health behaviors, such as smoking, alcoholism, drug abuse, and engaging in high-risk sexual behaviors, which often lead to certain chronic diseases as adults, including heart disease, cancer, chronic lung disease, liver disease, obesity, high blood pressure, and high cholesterol (Runyan et al. 2002). In one long-term study, as many as 80% of young adults who had been abused met the diagnostic criteria for at least one psychiatric disorder at age 21. These young adults exhibited many problems, including depression, anxiety, eating disorders, and suicide attempts (Silverman et al. 1996). Abuse can also increase the likelihood of adult criminal behavior and violent crime (Widom and Maxfield 2001). Finally, early child abuse can have a negative effect on the ability of both men and women to establish and maintain healthy intimate relationships in adulthood (Colman and Widom 2004), which may also perpetuate the cycle of violence from one generation to the next.

Cross-References

► [Family Violence](#)

References and Further Reading

- Berliner, L. (2011). Child sexual abuse. In E. John & B. Myers (Eds.), *The APSAC handbook on child maltreatment* (3rd ed., pp. 215–232). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2009). *Child maltreatment: Risk and protective factors*. Retrieved 20 July 2011, from <http://www.cdc.gov/ViolencePrevention/childmaltreatment/riskprotectivefactors.html>
- Christian, C. W., Block, R., & The Committee on Child Abuse & Neglect. (2009). American academy of pediatrics policy statement: Abusive head trauma in infants and children. *Pediatrics*, 123, 1409–1411.
- Colman, R., & Widom, C. (2004). Childhood abuse and neglect and adult intimate relationships: A prospective study. *Child Abuse & Neglect*, 28, 1133–1151.
- Dallam, S. J. (2001). The long-term medical consequences of childhood maltreatment. In K. Franey, R. Geffner, & R. Falconer (Eds.), *The cost of child maltreatment: Who pays? We all do*. Family Violence & Sexual Assault Institute: San Diego, CA.
- Finkelhor, D., Turner, H., Ormrod, R., & Hamby, S. (2009). Violence, abuse, and crime exposure in a national sample of children and youth. *Pediatrics*, 124, 1411–1423.
- Hussey, J., Marshall, J., English, D., Knight, E., Lau, A., Dubowitz, H., et al. (2005). Defining maltreatment according to substantiation: Distinction without a difference? *Child Abuse & Neglect*, 29, 479–492.
- Langsford, J. E., Miller-Johnson, S., Berlin, L. J., Dodge, K. A., Bates, J. E., & Pettit, G. S. (2007). Early physical abuse and later violent delinquency: A prospective longitudinal study. *Child Maltreatment*, 12, 233–245.
- Leeb, R. T., Paulozzi, L., Melanson, C., Simon, T., & Arias, I. (2008). *Child maltreatment surveillance: Uniform definitions for public health and recommended data elements, version 1.0*. Atlanta, GA: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Injury Prevention and Control. Retrieved July 20, 2011, from http://www.cdc.gov/violenceprevention/pdf/CM_Surveillance-a.pdf.
- Perry, B. D. (2001). The neurodevelopmental impact of violence in childhood. In D. Schetky & E. Benedek (Eds.), *Textbook of child and adolescent forensic psychiatry* (pp. 221–238). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press.
- Runyan, D., Wattam, C., Ikeda, R., Hassan, F., & Ramiro, L. (2002). Child abuse and neglect by parents and other caregivers. In E. Krug, L. L. Dahlberg, J. A. Mercy, A. B. Zwi, & R. Lozano (Eds.), *World report on violence and health* (pp. 59–86). Geneva, Switzerland: World Health Organization.
- Runyon, M. K., & Urquiza, A. J. (2011). Child physical abuse: Interventions for parents who engage in coercive parenting practices and their children. In E. John & B. Myers (Eds.), *The APSAC handbook on child maltreatment* (3rd ed., pp. 195–214). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.
- Silverman, A. B., Reinherz, H. Z., & Giaconia, R. M. (1996). The long-term sequelae of child and adolescent abuse: A longitudinal community study. *Child Abuse & Neglect*, 20, 709–723.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Administration on Children, Youth and Families. *Child Maltreatment* 2008. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, 2010. Retrieved from <http://www.acf.hhs.gov>
- Widom, C. S., & Maxfield, M. G. (2001). *An update on the "cycle of violence."* Washington, DC: National Institute of Justice; 2001. Retrieved July 20, 2011, from <http://www.ncjrs.gov/pdffiles1/nij/184894.pdf>

Child Development

Debbie Palmer

Department of Psychology, University of Wisconsin-Stevens Point, Stevens Point, WI, USA

Synonyms

Adolescent psychology; Child psychology; Developmental psychology; Pediatric psychology

Definition

The field of child development is concerned with the scientific study of human growth and functioning across the early stages of development (i.e., the prenatal period through adolescence) and within the multitude of contexts of daily life. Areas of interest include – though are not limited to – biological, cognitive, physical, social, and emotional change across the early portions of life. In all cases, an emphasis is placed on understanding how normative functioning changes or remains constant across time as a result of maturation and/or experience (Lerner 2006). Child development is one aspect of the broader field of Developmental Psychology, which examines human growth and functioning across the entire lifespan.

Description

The field of child development is concerned with the scientific study of human growth and

functioning throughout the early portions of life, including the prenatal period through adolescence. The entire human lifespan includes the prenatal period, infancy, childhood (early, middle, and late), adolescence (early, middle, and late), and adulthood (early, middle, and late) (Santrock 2018; Steinberg 2017). In recent years, debate has existed regarding whether a life period termed emerging adulthood exists between adolescence and adulthood (e.g., Arnett 2004; Côté 2014). One way the earliest periods of human life may be contemplated is in terms of chronological age. From this perspective, the prenatal period spans the time of conception through birth and lasts approximately 9 months for a typical pregnancy. Infancy encompasses from birth through 18 or 24 months of age. Early childhood includes from 18 or 24 months through 5 or 6 years of age. Middle and late childhood runs from 5 or 6 years through approximately 11 years of age. Adolescence is from around 11 years of age through approximately 18 years of age.

Child development considers the multitude of contexts of daily life that humans encounter. Areas of interest include – though are not limited to – biological, cognitive, social, and emotional developments, with an emphasis on how normative functioning and processes either change or remain constant across time through maturation and/or experience (Lerner 2006). *Biological processes* in infancy and childhood entail the growth and maturation of the internal organ systems and observable increases in both height and weight, and how these connect to the development and refinement of advancing motor skills. Subsequent biological growth in adolescence is demonstrated by secondary sexual maturation through the process of pubertal development and the attainment of more adult-like stature and weight. *Cognitive growth* in infancy and childhood includes rapid gains in language processing, production, and comprehension. Memory capacity expands and more sophisticated strategies for retention and recall are demonstrated. Also, individuals gain enhanced understanding of logic related to concrete concepts in childhood and to abstract concepts in adolescence. *Social growth* in infancy and childhood involves dependent interactions

and attachments to caregivers and expands to include peer and friendship relationships. Later in adolescence, social networks expand to include cliques and significant others as increasingly intimate relationships develop. Early *emotional growth* in infancy and childhood entails the presence of primary feelings and the development of self-conscious emotions. Subsequent growth in adolescence involves enhanced understanding of societal rules for the display and regulation of emotions and coping with life's challenges.

These different domains of growth and development do not occur independently; rather, these are interrelated. That is, an infant who smiles at the appearance of his or her father requires biological functioning (the sensation of seeing), cognitive and social functioning (recognition of and feeling attached to a familiar caregiver), and emotional functioning (smiling) (Santrock 2018). Child development explores not only how these different domains develop but also how their interrelated processes are manifested in milestones associated with each of the early periods of human life. Prenatal development entails the development from a single fertilized egg to a fetus that is able to function outside the mother's womb. The growth across the approximate 9-month period of time prepares the organism for the life ahead of it. In early childhood, individuals are making rapid strides in autonomy development and gaining self-control, which gets manifested in a variety of milestone achievements, such as potty training and turn-taking (Berk 2003). Children are also being prepared to enter the formal education system at this time. In middle childhood, children typically enter the formal educational system and attend elementary school. Emphasis in milestone achievement is usually placed on academic ability, with fundamentals such as reading, writing, and basic mathematical skills attained and refined during this time. The social world of children also expands to include more peers and adults beyond family members. Extracurricular activities gain increasing importance over time, with participation linking to benefits for many (Denault and Guay 2017). During adolescence, an emphasis is often placed on the future, with preparation for later education,

careers, and relationships being stressed. Increased time is spent with peers away from the family unit in less supervised settings. Increasingly, and across numerous contexts, responsibility is gained, along with enhanced expectations from others for self-reliant behavior and maturity. Rapid biological changes occur as result of pubertal development, which enables the adolescent to become capable of reproduction and leads to changes in social relationships. Self-images become more complex to incorporate sexual and identity development. More influence is sought within family functioning, which necessitates adjustments in how parents and siblings relate to the adolescent (Steinberg 2017).

Theoretical approaches in child development can adhere to continuous or discontinuous conceptualizations. Continuous approaches cast development as gradually changing across time and experience, while discontinuous approaches cast development as being qualitatively distinct across each life stage. A scenario that illustrates the continuous approach is offered by Berk (2003), who suggested that babies and preschoolers may respond to the world in a manner very similar to how adults respond. That is, a child's thinking may be just as logical and well organized as that of an adult. He or she may demonstrate the ability to successfully sort objects into different categories (e.g., clothes are separate from toys), show understanding when there are different quantities or amounts present (e.g., more cookies are in the jar than are on the plate), and retain information for long periods of time (e.g., go straight to where the DVDs are stored at grandma's house after not visiting for weeks). However, a child's thinking may be limited by how little experience he or she has had in interacting with the world. From this perspective, a child possesses the same skills as an adult but has simply not acquired as much information or been able to refine these skills compared to adults. An example of a discontinuous approach to cognitive development includes the theoretical work of Jean Piaget, who emphasized the importance of adaptation to one's environment and increasing organization of knowledge across development (Piaget 1954). He stated that cognition unfolded

in an invariant manner, across four major stages: the sensorimotor period (experiencing the world through senses and actions), the preoperational period (representing things with words and images but lacking logical reasoning), the concrete operational period (thinking logically about concrete events, analogies), and the formal operational period (reasoning abstractly). According to Piaget, cognitive development could be described as occurring consistently across cultures and children were active agents and not merely passive recipients in their own development (Piaget 1954).

Knowledge of child development is important to the field of behavioral medicine in numerous ways. Knowledge of normal child development can be extremely useful for parents, teachers, and health-care providers – as well as many others – who may encounter and interact with those who manifest diseases and/or deviations from normal development. Knowledge of typical development can aid in detecting and treating atypical development, which enables researchers and clinicians to develop the most appropriate care for children with acute and chronic medical conditions, while also meeting children's developmental needs. Programs crafted for adult patients to educate or alter behaviors impacting health may not be appropriate for younger patients. Likewise, the effectiveness of health-care treatment of diseases and disorders in childhood can be directly impacted by biological or other developmental processes. For instance, changes in pubertal hormones among adolescents with type 1 diabetes can dysregulate glucose metabolism. By anticipating these biological changes, clinicians may be able to forewarn adolescent patients with type 1 diabetes and their parents and develop possible strategies to minimize deterioration in illness self-management during adolescence (Halvorson et al. 2005).

Child development research can also reveal periods of risk, when primary or secondary prevention efforts may be most effective. Health and health risk-behaviors that affect morbidity and mortality in later life are established early in life. For instance, food selection choices (e.g., fast food versus more nutritionally balanced items)

and decisions to be physically active may become consistent behaviors during childhood and adolescence. Similarly, high-risk behaviors (e.g., sexual experimentation, tobacco and alcohol use) often become relevant concerns during adolescence (Williams et al. 2002) as reward and sensation seeking are greatest than any other life period (Cauffman et al. 2010). Thus, interventions to promote healthy behaviors and to prevent health-risk behaviors may be most effective during childhood and adolescence. Other known periods of risk occur at important developmental transitions such as when rapid autonomy development among adolescents with pediatric conditions may conflict with the efforts of parental or family caregivers. Researchers in behavioral medicine/pediatric psychology have demonstrated the need to consider autonomy in the management of chronic conditions such as spina bifida and type 1 diabetes (Buchbinder 2009; Friedman et al. 2009). Another period of risk that has gained recent attention for youth with chronic conditions is that of emerging adulthood, the time between late adolescence and the establishment of one's identity as an adult (ages 18–25 years). This transition is risky partially because it involves a transition from a pediatric to an adult health-care system (i.e., pediatrician may treat an individual until he or she is 18; age limits on parents' health insurance policy), which generally needs to be addressed during the earlier adolescent years. Unfortunately, the transition from adolescence to emerging adulthood or young adulthood remains a significant challenge for caregivers and their patients and the health-care system (Huang et al. 2011).

There are numerous professional organizations that support practice and research at the interface of child development and behavioral medicine. The Child and Family Health Special Interest Group of the Society of Behavioral Medicine is an interdisciplinary forum for researchers and clinicians to promote child health and development, prevent childhood illness and injury, and foster family adjustment to chronic illnesses. Other relevant organizations include the Society of Pediatric Psychology (Division 54 of the American Psychological Association), Society for Research on Child Development, Society for Research

on Adolescence, and Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health & Human Development.

Cross-References

- [Diabesity in Children](#)
- [Family, Caregiver](#)
- [Health Behaviors](#)
- [Health Risk \(Behavior\)](#)
- [National Children's Study](#)
- [Prevention: Primary, Secondary, Tertiary](#)
- [Society of Behavioral Medicine](#)

References and Further Reading

- Arnett, J. (2004). *Emerging adulthood: The winding road from the late teens through the twenties*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Berk, L. E. (2003). *Child development* (6th ed.). Boston: Allyn and Bacon.
- Buchbinder, M. (2009). The management of autonomy in type 1 diabetes: A case study of triadic medical interaction. *Health: An Interdisciplinary Journal for the Social Study of Health, Illness and Medicine*, 13(2), 175–196. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1363459308099683>.
- Cauffman, E., Shulman, E., Steinberg, L., Claus, E., Banich, M., Graham, S., & Woolard, J. (2010). Age differences in affective decision-making as indexed by performance on the Iowa Gambling Task. *Developmental Psychology*, 46, 193–207.
- Côté, J. E. (2014). The dangerous myth of emerging adulthood: An evidence-based critique of a flawed developmental theory. *Applied Developmental Science*, 18(4), 177–188.
- Denault, A. S., & Guay, F. (2017). Motivation toward extracurricular activities and motivation at school: A test of the generalization effect hypothesis. *Journal of Adolescence*, 54, 94–103.
- Friedman, D., Holmbeck, G., DeLucia, C., Jandasek, B., & Zebracki, K. (2009). Trajectories of autonomy development across the adolescent transition in children with spina bifida. *Rehabilitation Psychology*, 54(1), 16–27. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0014279>.
- Halvorson, M., Yasuda, P., Carpenter, S., & Kaiserman, K. (2005). Unique challenges for pediatric patients with diabetes. *Diabetes Spectrum*, 18(3), 167–173. <https://doi.org/10.2337/diaspect.18.3.167>.
- <http://ase.tufts.edu/cfw/>
- <http://www.healthychildren.org/>
- <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/teendevlopment.html>
- <http://www.srdd.org/>

<http://www.zerotothree.org/>

- Huang, J. S., Gottschalk, M., Pian, M., Dillon, L., Barajas, D., & Bartholomew, L. K. (2011). Transition to adult care: Systematic assessment of adolescents with chronic illnesses and their medical teams. *Journal of Pediatrics*, 159(6), 994–998. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpeds.2011.05.038>.
- Lerner, R. M. (2006). Developmental science, developmental systems, and contemporary theories of human development. In R. M. Learner & W. Damon (Eds.), *Handbook of child psychology* (Theoretical models of human development 6th ed., Vol. 1, pp. 1–17). Hoboken: Wiley.
- Piaget, J. (1954). *The construction of reality in the child*. New York: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich.
- Santrock, J. W. (2018). *A topical approach to life-span development* (9th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Steinberg, L. (2017). *Adolescence* (11th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Williams, P. G., Holmbeck, G. N., & Greenley, R. N. (2002). Adolescent health psychology. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 70(3), 828–842. <https://doi.org/10.1037//0022-006X.70.3.828>.

However, there are specific singular instances where failure to supervise can result in significant harm to a child (e.g., injury, death).

A caregiver is defined as a person who at the time of the maltreatment is in a permanent (primary caregiver) or temporary (substitute caregiver) role. In a custodial role, the person is responsible for care and control of the child and for the child's overall health and welfare. A primary caregiver lives with the child at least part of the time and can include, but is not limited to, a relative or biological, adoptive, step-, or foster parent(s); a legal guardian(s); or their intimate partner. A substitute caregiver may or may not live with the child and can include coaches, clergy, teachers, relatives, babysitters, residential facility staff, or others who are not the child's primary caregiver(s).

Acts of commission, child abuse, are discussed in a separate entry.

Child Neglect

Jason Jent¹ and Melissa Merrick²

¹Department of Pediatrics, Mailman Center for Child Development, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

²Division of Violence Prevention, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, USA

Synonyms

[Caregiver acts of omission](#)

Definition

Child neglect is defined as acts of omission by a caregiver that include failure to provide for a child's basic physical, emotional, or educational needs and/or failure to protect a child from harm or potential harm (Leeb et al. 2008). The resultant harm to a child may or may not be the intended consequence of the act of omission, but still represents neglect. Neglect typically consists of a chronic pattern of acts of omission by a caregiver that result in actual or potential harm to a child.

Types

A caregiver's failure to provide a child's basic needs may result in specific types of neglect including: physical neglect, emotional neglect, medical neglect, and educational neglect (Barnett et al. 1993).

Physical neglect is defined as a caregiver's failure to provide a child adequate nutrition, hygiene, or shelter; or caregiver fails to provide clothing that is adequately clean, appropriate size, or adequate for the weather (Leeb et al. 2008).

Emotional neglect occurs when a caregiver ignores the child or denies emotional responsiveness or adequate access to mental health care (e.g., pervasive failures by a caregiver to interact with a child that include consistently not responding to infant cries or to an older child's attempts to interact with the caregiver) (Barnett et al. 1993).

Medical neglect includes a failure by a caregiver to provide a child adequate access to medical, vision, and/or dental care, when access to care is available or when a caregiver fails to seek timely medical attention for a child when needed (Leeb et al. 2008). Medical neglect is also indicated when a caregiver fails to follow through

with medical recommendations and/or treatment regimens (e.g., not consistently administering prescribed medications to a child), in which the caregiver's failure to follow through may result in harm to the child.

Educational neglect refers to a caregiver's failure to ensure that a child regularly attends school, which results in excessive absences (e.g., 25 or more days in 1 academic year) with no acceptable excuses (e.g., physician's note; Leeb et al. 2008). Educational neglect is also defined as the failure of a caregiver to enroll and maintain a child in school up until the age of 16.

With respect to a child's emotional and developmental level, failure to supervise a child's safety within and outside of the home is categorized as specific types of neglect including inadequate supervision and exposure to violent environments.

Inadequate supervision refers to the failure of a caregiver to ensure that the child engages in safe activities and uses appropriate safety devices so that the child is not exposed to unnecessary hazards and/or that the child is being supervised by an adequate substitute caregiver when the primary caregiver(s) is not available (Leeb et al. 2008). Inadequate supervision can also include circumstances where a caregiver knowingly fails to protect a child from maltreatment perpetrated by another caregiver. Under such conditions, the primary caregiver's behavior would be considered neglectful only if the maltreatment was recognized and allowed to occur. Regardless of the primary caregiver's knowledge of the maltreatment, the substitute caregiver's behaviors would be considered maltreatment.

Exposure to violent environments includes knowingly failing to take appropriate measures to protect a child from being exposed to pervasive violence (e.g., domestic violence) or dangerous conditions (e.g., selling drugs out of the home) within the home, neighborhood, or community (Leeb et al. 2008). Of course, such situations are an ethical challenge for the child protection field because in many circumstances, if one parent is being battered, he or she may be ill equipped and even unable to prevent his or her children from witnessing violence in the home.

Description

Prevalence

The most recent estimates of the prevalence of child abuse and/or neglect indicate that approximately 772,000 children (10.3 per 1,000 children in the population) are substantiated victims annually (USDHHS 2010). Of the various forms of child abuse and neglect, approximately 552,000 children experience either neglect and/or medical neglect annually. Neglect is the most prevalent form of child maltreatment, with 71% of all substantiated cases of maltreatment being classified as neglect (USDHHS 2010). However, neglect is often the most difficult form of maltreatment to recognize because physical evidence is rare unless a family's home environment is physically inspected or the neglect has resulted in an injury, specific medical problem (e.g., failure to thrive), or an exacerbated chronic medical condition (e.g., sickle cell disease).

Etiology and Sequelae

It is clear that no singular risk factor can adequately explain why children are neglected. Rather, a combination of individual, relational, community, and societal factors contributes to the risk of a child being neglected (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2009; Cicchetti and Lynch 1993; Erickson and Egeland 2011). Although children are not responsible for caregivers' neglectful behaviors, certain characteristics have been found to increase their risk of being neglected (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2009). Child factors that increase vulnerability for neglect include being younger than 4 years old and having special needs (e.g., developmental disabilities, chronic medical conditions). A number of caregiver-specific risk factors contribute to an increased risk for the perpetration of neglect, including caregiver poor prenatal and postnatal medical care, a caregiver's lack of understanding of child development and parenting skills, lack of parental nurturance, substance abuse, caregiver mental health issues, poor parent-child relationships, and parenting stress (Stith et al. 2009). Other caregiver characteristics such as the caregiver's own history of

maltreatment as a child, young age, low education, single caregiver household, and a large number of dependent children all have been linked to increased risk of child neglect. Other risk factors include low family income, poor social connections and support, family conflict and violence (e.g., intimate partner violence), community violence, and concentrated neighborhood disadvantage (e.g., high poverty and residential instability, high unemployment rates).

Child neglect has been found to have serious negative implications on children's cognitive, physical, and socioemotional development. However, the consequences of individual cases of child neglect vary and are impacted by a combination of factors, including the child's age and developmental status when neglected; the types of abuse and/or neglect experienced; the frequency, duration, and severity of the neglect; and the relationship of the perpetrator to the victim child (English et al. 2005; Chalk et al. 2002). If children's needs for physical touch, emotional attachment to a caregiver, and caregiver-child interactions are neglected during infancy or early childhood, long-term consequences have been found in children's cognitive and socioemotional development. Research on neglected infants has demonstrated reduced brain wave activity and enlarged brain ventricles due to decreased brain growth (Perry 1997, 2002). Neglected infants and young children are at increased risk for developmental delays, expressive and receptive language problems, decreased positive affect, emotion regulation difficulties, impulse control problems, physical aggression, noncompliance, anxious attachment to their caregivers, restricted positive views of the self, and social withdrawal (Dubowitz et al. 2002; Hildyard and Wolfe 2002). Many of the problems observed in children who are neglected in early childhood remain in school-aged children including continued cognitive problems (e.g., poor performance on academic achievement tests and increased referrals for special education services), negative mental representations of the self and others, avoidance of peer interactions, limited social skills, and an increased prevalence of internalizing problems (e.g., depression, anxiety, peer rejection).

The effects of child neglect have also been implicated in adult functioning. Adults who have experienced neglect as a child are at increased risk for psychiatric disorders, substance abuse, violent behaviors, and intimate partner violence (Erickson and Egeland 2011; Horwitz et al. 2001; Merksy and Reynolds 2007; White and Widom 2003; Widom et al. 2006).

Cross-References

- Child Abuse
- Family Violence

References and Further Reading

- Barnett, D., Manly, J. T., & Cicchetti, D. (1993). Defining child maltreatment: The interface between policy and research. In D. Cicchetti & S. Toth (Eds.), *Child abuse, child development, and social policy* (pp. 7–73). Norwood, NJ: Ablex.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2009). *Child maltreatment: Risk and protective factors*. Retrieved on 20 July 2011 from <http://www.cdc.gov/ViolencePrevention/childmaltreatment/riskprotectivefactors.html>
- Chalk, R., Gibbons, A., & Scarupa, H. J. (2002). *The multiple dimensions of child abuse and neglect: New insights into an old problem*. Washington, DC: Child Trends. Retrieved on 20 July 2011 from www.childtrends.org/Files/ChildAbuseRB.pdf.
- Cicchetti, D., & Lynch, M. (1993). Toward an ecological/transactional model of community violence and child maltreatment: Consequences for children's development. *Psychiatry*, 56, 96–118.
- Dubowitz, H., Papas, M. A., Black, M. M., & Starr, R. H., Jr. (2002). Child neglect: Outcomes in high-risk urban preschoolers. *Pediatrics*, 109, 1100–1107.
- English, D. J., Upadhyaya, M. P., Litrownik, A. J., Marshall, J. M., Runyan, D. K., Graham, J. C., et al. (2005). Maltreatment's wake: The relationship of maltreatment dimensions to child outcomes. *Child Abuse & Neglect*, 29, 597–619.
- Erickson, M. F., & Egeland, B. (2011). Child neglect. In E. John & B. Myers (Eds.), *The APSAC handbook on child maltreatment* (3rd ed., pp. 103–124). Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.
- Hildyard, K. L., & Wolfe, D. A. (2002). Child neglect: Developmental issues and outcomes. *Child Abuse & Neglect*, 26, 679–695.
- Horwitz, A. V., Widom, C. S., McLaughlin, J., & White, H. R. (2001). The impact of childhood abuse and neglect on adult mental health: A prospective study. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 42, 184–201.

- Leeb, R. T., Paulozzi, L., Melanson, C., Simon, T., & Arias, I. (2008). *Child maltreatment surveillance: Uniform definitions for public health and recommended data elements, Version 1.0*. Atlanta, GA: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Injury Prevention and Control. Retrieved on 20 July 2011 from http://www.cdc.gov/violenceprevention/pdf/CM_Surveillance-a.pdf.
- Merksy, J. P., & Reynolds, A. J. (2007). Child maltreatment and violent delinquency: Disentangling main effects and subgroup effects. *Child Maltreatment*, 12, 246–258.
- Perry, B. (1997). Incubated in terror: Neurodevelopmental factors in the “cycle of violence”. In J. D. Osofsky (Ed.), *Children in a violent society* (pp. 124–149). New York: Guilford Press.
- Perry, B. (2002). Childhood experience and the expression of genetic potential: What childhood neglect tells us about nature and nurture. *Brain and Mind*, 3, 79–100.
- Stith, S. M., Liu, T., Davies, L. C., Boykin, E. L., Alder, M. C., Harris, J. M., et al. (2009). Risk factors in child maltreatment: A meta-analytic review of the literature. *Aggression and Violent Behavior*, 14, 13–29.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Administration for Children and Families, Administration on Children, Youth and Families, Children’s Bureau. (2010). *Child maltreatment 2008*. Retrieved on 20 July 2011 from http://www.acf.hhs.gov/programs/cb/stats_research/index.htm#can
- White, H., & Widom, C. (2003). Intimate partner violence among abused and neglected children in young adulthood: The mediating effects of early aggression, anti-social personality, hostility, and alcohol problems. *Aggressive Behavior*, 29, 332–345.
- Widom, C., Marmorstein, N., & White, H. (2006). Childhood victimization and illicit drug use in middle adulthood. *Psychology of Addictive Behaviors*, 20, 394–403.

Child Psychology

- [Child Development](#)

Childhood Obesity

- [Diabetes in Children](#)

Childhood Origins of Cardiovascular Disease

- [Bogalusa Heart Study](#)

CHO

- [Carbohydrates](#)

Choir

- [Singing and Health](#)

Cholesterol

Barbara Smith
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Sterol](#)

Definition

Cholesterol is a steroid. It is essential to the proper functioning of cell membranes and the synthesis of many hormones critical to normal physiologic processes and health. When cholesterol is manufactured primarily by the liver, and to a lesser degree by the intestines and other cells in the body it is known as *endogenous cholesterol*. On the other hand, cholesterol which one consumes and is absorbed into the blood stream via the gastrointestinal tract is known as *exogenous cholesterol*.

Description

Despite the essential role cholesterol plays in cell wall permeability and the synthesis of steroid hormones excessive amounts of circulating cholesterol and the low-density lipoprotein (LDL) subfraction of total cholesterol have been associated with an increase in cardiovascular morbidity and mortality. This increase in morbidity and

mortality is likely related to the development of atherosclerosis, a disease of the large and intermediate arteries where plaques form on the lining of the artery. At some point the plaques may obstruct or at least impede the flow of blood through the vessel. High-density lipoprotein (HDL) subfraction of total cholesterol protects against the development of atherosclerosis by a less well-understood mechanism.

Clinical trials support the hypothesis that aggressive lowering of the LDL subfraction of cholesterol reduces CHD risk. Lifestyle modifications that include losing weight, reducing saturated fats and the intake of exogenous cholesterol, and increased physical activity can reduce the LDL subfraction in healthy as well as chronically ill populations; however, adherence to long-term dietary changes and increased physical activity can be difficult. If efforts to reduce LDL cholesterol using only lifestyle modification do not reduce LDL sufficiently, drug therapy should be considered. Efforts to reduce CHD risk by raising the HDL subfraction are not as promising.

The *Executive Summary of the Third Report of the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) Expert Panel of Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults (Adult Treatment Panel III or ATP III)* provides an update of the panel's earlier clinical guidelines (ATP I and ATP II) for cholesterol testing and measurement. ATP I presented an approach to primary prevention of coronary heart disease (CHD) in persons with high LDL (≥ 160 mg/dL) or borderline high LDL (130–159 mg/dL) and multiple risk factors. ATP II set a new optimal LDL level of ≤ 100 mg/dL for people with CHD. ATP III focuses on intensive LDL reduction in those with multiple risk factors.

Cross-References

► [Lipoprotein](#)

References and Readings

Expert Panel of Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults. (2001). Executive

summary of the third report of the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) expert panel on detection, evaluation, and treatment of high blood cholesterol in adults (Adult Treatment Panel III). *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 285, 2486–2497.

Hall, J. E. (2011). *Guyton and hall textbook of medical physiology* (12th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders (Elsevier).

Choral Singing

► [Singing and Health](#)

Chromosomes

Rany M. Salem^{1,2} and Laura Rodriguez-Murillo³

¹Broad Institute, Cambridge, MA, USA

²Cambridge Center, Cambridge, MA, USA

³Department of Psychiatry, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Definition

Chromosomes are self-replicating structures found within cells, containing and organizing cellular DNA. The DNA contains the nucleotide base sequence encoding the hereditary genetic information. In most *prokaryotes*, the entire genome is carried on a single circular strand of DNA comprising one chromosome. In *eukaryotic* cells (cells with a nucleus), the genome is organized across multiple chromosomes.

Each eukaryotic organism has its own specific number of chromosomes. Humans are diploid and have 23 pairs of chromosomes: one set of two sex chromosomes and 22 pairs of autosomal chromosomes for a total of 46 chromosomes. Not surprisingly, given their name, sex chromosomes determine sex. Females have two X chromosomes, and males an X and a Y chromosome. Humans are diploid, which means that they have two copies of each chromosome. Other species have different numbers. In humans, autosomal chromosomes are identified by the numbers 1 through 22.

Chromosomes can be seen under a light microscope and individual chromosomes can be differentiated using special stains to band the chromosomes based on A/T vs. G/C content. The staining pattern results in a chromosome-specific karyotype, which was used in early genetic studies to identify major chromosomal abnormalities (loss/extra chromosomes, translocations, deletions, and breaks) associated with disease. For example, Down's syndrome, a genetic condition that causes physical and cognitive impairment, can be diagnosed via karyotyping to identify trisomy 21, the presence of three copies of chromosome 21 (Korenberg et al. 1994). However, most genetic variance occurs at a much smaller scale, at individual nucleotides such as in single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) or groups of nucleotides, in microsatellites, and insertions-deletions.

Cross-References

- [DNA](#)
- [Gene](#)

References and Further Reading

- Korenberg, J. R., Chen, X. N., Schipper, R., Sun, Z., Gonsky, R., Gerwehr, S., et al. (1994). Down syndrome phenotypes: The consequences of chromosomal imbalance. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 91(11), 4997–5001.
- Lewis, R. (2005). *Human genetics. Concepts and applications* (7th ed.). Boston: McGraw-Hill Science/Engineering/Math.
- Strachan, T., & Read, A. P. (2003). *Human molecular genetics* (3rd ed.). London/New York: Garland Science/Taylor & Francis Group.

Chronic Bronchitis

- [Emphysema](#)

Chronic Care

- [Disease Management](#)

Chronic Condition

- [Body Image](#) and [Appearance-Altering Conditions](#)

Chronic Depression

Kim Lavoie
Department of Psychology, Montreal Behavioural Medicine Centre, University of Québec at Montreal (UQAM), Montréal, QC, Canada

Definition

Depression is a negative mood state that is generally characterized by feelings of sadness, discouragement, and hopelessness (American Psychiatric Association 2000). Brief or transient feelings of depression (i.e., feelings lasting several minutes to several hours) are relatively common and are likely to be experienced by just about everyone at some point in their lives. However, more chronic forms of depression are less common and may be associated with significant interpersonal difficulties and functional impairments.

There now exist widely accepted, standardized diagnostic criteria that distinguish “normal” from “abnormal” forms of depression, the latter of which have been classified as “mood disorders” in the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders-4th Edition Revised (DSM-IV-R) (American Psychiatric Association 2000). Although chronic depression has been classified as a “mood disorder,” it is important to recognize

that mood disorders, which include such disorders as major and minor depressive disorder, dysthymia, cyclothymia, and bipolar disorders, actually represent syndromes, which are clusters of symptoms, only one of which is an abnormality of mood. However, chronic forms of depression also feature *vegetative* symptoms, including sleep, appetite, weight, and libido disturbances; *cognitive* symptoms, including decreased ability to concentrate, memory disturbances, decreased frustration tolerance, low self-esteem, and cognitive distortions; *impulse control* symptoms such as suicidal behavior; *behavioral* symptoms, including decreased motivation and interest in engaging in pleasurable activities, decreased ability to feel pleasure, and decreased energy; and *somatic* symptoms, including increased psychomotor agitation, nonspecific aches and pains, and headaches.

Chronic depression is a major cause of morbidity worldwide and represents the 4th most important contributor to the global burden of disease, accounting for 4.4% of all cases of premature mortality (Kastrup and Ramos 2007). Lifetime prevalence rates of chronic depression vary greatly according to geographical location, with the lowest rates found in Japan (3%) and the highest rates found in the United States (17%) (Kessler et al. 2005b, c; WHO 2001; Andrade and Caraveo 2003; Kessler et al. 2003, 2005a; Murphy et al. 2000). On average, most countries report an average lifetime prevalence of about 10% (WHO 2001; Andrade and Caraveo 2003). Population studies have consistently shown major depressive disorder to be about twice as common among women relative to men, though the reasons for this remain unclear. The peak age of onset of major depressive disorder is between 20 and 40 years and is 1.5 to three times more prevalent among individuals with first degree relatives with a history of depression (American Psychiatric Association 2000; Kessler et al. 2005).

The most common, widely accepted, and empirically validated treatments for chronic depression include pharmacotherapy (e.g., antidepressant medications including selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors [SSRIs] or selective serotonin and norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors

[SSNRIs]), psychotherapy (e.g., cognitive-behavioral therapy [CBT] and interpersonal therapy [IPT]), or some combination of the two (American Psychiatric Association 2000; Kessler et al. 2005c). However, most major depressive episodes resolve spontaneously over time, irrespective of whether or not they are treated. The median duration of a major depressive episode has been estimated to be about 23 weeks, with the highest rates of recovery occurring within the first 3 months (Posternak et al. 2006; Fava et al. 2006). Research has shown that 80% of those suffering from their first major depressive episode will suffer from at least one more over the course of their life, averaging four episodes over their lifetime. However, the morbidity associated with *untreated* chronic depression has been compared to that of coronary artery disease, with mortality due to suicide affecting 30,000–35,000 individuals each year (Posternak et al. 2006). There are also enormous personal and societal costs associated with chronic depression, including higher rates of chronic illness (e.g., cardiovascular disease), decreased productivity, absenteeism and job loss, substance abuse, family dysfunction, and reduced overall quality of life (American Psychiatric Association 2000; Posternak et al. 2006).

Cross-References

► Dysthymia

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders: (DSM-IV-R)*, (4th Rev. ed.). Arlington: American Psychiatric Press.
- Andrade, L., & Caraveo, A. (2003). Epidemiology of major depressive episodes: Results from the International Consortium of Psychiatric Epidemiology (ICPE) surveys. *International Journal of Methods in Psychiatric Research*, 12(1), 3–21.
- Fava, G. A., Park, S. K., & Sonino, N. (2006). Treatment of recurrent depression. *Expert Review of Neurotherapeutics*, 6(11), 1735–1740.
- Kastrup, M. C., & Ramos, A. B. (2007). Global mental health. *Danish Medical Bulletin*, 54, 42–43.

- Kessler, R. C., Berglund, P., & Demler, O. (2003). The epidemiology of major depressive disorder: Results from the National Comorbidity Survey Replication (NCS-R). *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 289(203), 3095–3105.
- Kessler, R. C., Berglund, P., Demler, O., Jin, R., Merikangas, K. R., & Walters, E. E. (2005a). Lifetime prevalence and age-of-onset distributions of DSM-IV disorders in the National Comorbidity Survey Replication. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 62(6), 617–627.
- Kessler, R. C., Chiu, W. T., Demler, O., & Walters, E. E. (2005b). Prevalence, severity, and comorbidity of 12-month DSM-IV disorders in the National Comorbidity Survey Replication. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 62(6), 617–627.
- Kessler, R. C., Demler, O., Frank, R. G., et al. (2005c). Prevalence and treatment of mental disorders, 1990 to 2003. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 352(24), 2515–2523.
- Murphy, J. M., Laird, N. M., Monson, R. R., Sobol, A. M., & Leighton, A. H. (2000). A 40-year perspective on the prevalence of depression: The Stirling County Study. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 57(3), 209–215.
- Posternak, M. A., Solomon, D. A., & Leon, A. C. (2006). The naturalistic course of unipolar major depression in the absence of somatic therapy. *The Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease*, 194(5), 324–329.
- World Health Organization. (2001). *The world health report 2001 – Mental health: New understanding, new hope*. Geneva: WHO.

Chronic Depressive Disorder

► Dysthymia

Chronic Disease Management

Lara Traeger¹ and Emily M. Wright²

¹Behavioral Medicine Service, Massachusetts General Hospital/Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA

²Department of Psychiatry, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

Chronic disease prevention and management

Definition

Chronic disease management refers to a variety of models to improve patient care for individuals affected by chronic disease.

Description

Chronic diseases typically require ongoing medical care and may limit activities of daily living. Examples include diabetes, hypertension, heart diseases, mood disorders, and asthma. Chronic diseases impact all countries, with increasing prevalence due to several factors (e.g., increased life expectancy, treatment advances, and changes in lifestyle behaviors; Bauer et al. 2014). In the USA, approximately half of the population is living with at least one chronic disease. More than one in four Americans have multiple concurrent chronic conditions, and various subgroups, including people of racial and/or ethnic minority groups and low socioeconomic status, are often disproportionately affected by these conditions (Ward et al. 2014). Historically, primary care practices were designed for the provision of acute care. In contrast, patients with chronic diseases typically require long-term treatment planning, symptom management, and regular follow-up with providers.

Chronic Disease Management Models

There is no single optimal approach to chronic disease management. Common components of chronic disease management models include care coordination across medical disciplines, regular monitoring and medication management, and tools to increase patients' self-efficacy for managing the daily challenges of their disease(s). Several strategies have been suggested to be both effective and applicable in patient care settings, including those with limited resources. Examples include tools for self-care (e.g., patient education), information collection (e.g., screening tools and disease registries), and service provision in

community settings (Singh 2008). A primary goal of most models is to help individuals become informed and active participants in their disease management and to reduce the duration and/or severity of disease-related disability. Mental healthcare is an important part of this process, as mental health problems such as depression can present significant barriers to patient self-care.

Current Approaches to Chronic Disease Management

Chronic disease management is an increasingly popular term used in healthcare policy and industry communications as a reference point for both cost containment and quality improvement. Current chronic disease management programs focus on providing connected health and integrated care (Chouvarda et al. 2015). Specifically, connected health refers to the utilization of personal and health technologies to optimize access, sharing, and analysis of health information between patients and healthcare professionals. Integrated care refers to the coordination and organization of multiple levels and types of health services on delivering patient-centered care. Others have described these technologically based, patient-centered systems as ubiquitous healthcare interventions (Kim et al. 2015). Examples of such approaches include both targeted efforts to help patient's self-manage specific chronic conditions and broader attempts to improve computational infrastructure for care coordination and healthcare data sharing. Some programs are carved out to commercial vendors whereas others are integrated within managed care institutions. There are wide variations in program quality, content, type of communication with patients, and extent to which physician practices are involved.

Challenges of Patient Care

Meeting the needs of chronically ill patients, especially those with multiple concurrent chronic conditions, is one of the greatest challenges facing current healthcare systems. The 2014 US Department of Health and Human Services report,

“Optimizing Health for Persons with Multiple Chronic Conditions,” emphasized that enduring improvements in disease management require multilevel changes to the environment in which healthcare organizations and providers function (Parekh et al. 2014). To date, healthcare delivery is complex and largely fragmented, with implications for care quality, efficiency, and safety. Several factors have been suggested to facilitate chronic disease management practices within existing primary care systems. These include practice reorganization to support regular follow-up appointments, prioritization of subpopulations at the highest risk for poor outcomes and high cost, incorporation of empirically supported strategies for enhancing patient self-care and community prevention, and provider education, provider incentives, and information technology to support changes.

Cross-References

► [Disease Management](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bauer, U. E., Briss, P. A., Goodman, R. A., & Bowman, B. A. (2014). Prevention of chronic disease in the 21st century: Elimination of the leading preventable causes of premature death and disability in the USA. *The Lancet*, 384, 45–52.
- Chouvarda, I. G., Goulis, D. G., Lambrinoudaki, I., & Maglaveras, N. (2015). Connected health and integrated care: Toward new models for chronic disease management. *Maturitas*, 82, 22–27.
- Kim, H., Cho, J., & Yoon, K. (2015). New directions in chronic disease management. *Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 30, 159–166.
- Parekh, A. K., Kronick, R., & Tavenner, M. (2014). Optimizing health for persons with multiple chronic conditions. *The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 312, 1199–1200.
- Singh, D. (2008). *How can chronic disease management programmes operate across care settings and providers?* Copenhagen: World Health Organization.
- Ward, B. W., Schillar, J. S., & Goodman, R. A. (2014). Multiple chronic conditions among US adults: A 2012 update. *Preventing Chronic Disease*, 11, E62.

Chronic Disease or Illness

Tyler Clark

School of Psychology, The University of Sydney,
Sydney, NSW, Australia

Definition

Chronic disease or illness is any disease or illness which is both long lasting and permanent. Chronic diseases normally cannot be prevented through vaccination nor are they curable through either medicine or time. For a disease to be classified as chronic, it must persist for a minimum of 6 weeks.

Description

Chronic diseases or illnesses are the leading cause of mortality in the world and are estimated by the WHO to represent 60% of all deaths (World Health Organization [WHO] 2010). Chronic diseases are mostly characterized by complex causality, multiple risk factors, long latency periods, a prolonged course of illness, and functional impairment or disability (Pencheon et al. 2006). While the term chronic disease technically incorporates all long-lasting, permanent diseases, classification confusion may arise for diseases such as herpes zoster or seasonal asthma, which occur intermittently throughout the lifespan and fulfill the technical requirements of the definition, but are typically categorized with those diseases which are not permanent, but fail to resolve and respond to treatment, such as chronic bronchitis (Last 2007). Ten major chronic diseases include:

- Coronary heart disease
- Stroke
- Hypertension
- Hypothyroidism
- Diabetes
- Mental health problems
- Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease

- Asthma
- Epilepsy
- Cancer

The prevalence of chronic diseases increases across the lifespan and is often comorbid with other chronic diseases, with the average person aged >65 years having more than one chronic disease. Chronic disease is prevalent in both wealthy and poor countries, but is correlated with low socioeconomic status. The chronically ill constitutes an extremely large percent of home care visits, as much as 90% in the United States, as well as the majority of prescription drug use, days spent in hospital, doctor visits, and hospital emergency room admittance.

As chronic diseases persevere throughout the lifespan, they are accompanied by a high burden of disease: a measure of potential years lost, quality of life lost, and disability attributed to a disease (Broemeling et al. 2005). This burden of disease may include financial costs of chronic disease as well, such as the primary and tertiary health care costs of disease management and loss of work-force participation.

Risk Factors

Risk factors for chronic diseases such as coronary heart disease, stroke, and certain cancers include high cholesterol, high blood pressure, and low fruit and vegetable intake (MedicineNet.com 2004). Chronic disease development is also associated with physical inactivity, obesity, alcohol, and tobacco use. Risk factors often co-occur and can operate synergistically, as well as with some psychosocial factors (e.g., hostility and family history; Gidron et al. 2002).

Chronic Disease Management

Chronic diseases exist across the lifespan and require long-term treatment and support. Treatment therefore focuses on disease management, which serves to decrease the duration or severity of impairment and disability associated with the

disease. This management manifests in a variety of forms including but not limited to occupational or physical therapy and rehabilitation, psychological counseling and stress management, and self-management strategies, depending on the type and severity of the chronic disease. Many governments provide assistance or financial incentive programs to individuals with qualifying disabilities.

Chronic disease may have psychological and emotional ramifications such as denial, anxiety, and depression following diagnosis not only for the affected individual, but for family and friends as well, and these consequences may also affect prognosis. As a result, much effort in behavior medicine has focused on developing adaptive strategies for coping with chronic diseases.

Cross-References

- [Coping](#)
- [Disease Management](#)
- [Lifestyle, Healthy](#)
- [Multiple Risk Factors](#)
- [Quality of Life](#)
- [Self-Management](#)

References and Readings

- Broemeling, A., Watson, D., & Black, C. (2005). *Chronic conditions and co-morbidity among residents of British Columbia*. Vancouver: Centre for Health Services of British Columbia. Available at www.chspr.ubc.ca. Accessed 8 Jan 2011.
- Gidron, Y., Berger, R., Lugasi, B., & Ilia, R. (2002). Interactive effects of family history with psychological factors in relation to CAD. *Coronary Artery Disease*, 13, 205–208.
- Last, J. M. (2007). *A dictionary of public health*. Oxford/New York: Oxford University Press.
- MedicineNet.com. (2004, June). Definition of chronic disease. Available at: <http://www.medterms.com/script/main/art.asp?articlekey=33490>. Accessed 18 Dec 2010.
- Pencheon, D., Guest, C., Melzer, D., & Gray, J. A. M. (2006). *Oxford handbook of public health practice* (2nd ed.). Oxford/New York: Oxford University Press.
- Taylor, S. E. (2009). *Health psychology* (7th ed.). New York: McGraw Hill. International Edition.
- World Health Organization. (2010). Available at <http://www.who.int.com>. Accessed Jan 2011.

Chronic Disease Prevention and Management

- [Chronic Disease Management](#)

Chronic Fatigue

- [Fatigue](#)

Chronic Fatigue Syndrome

Urs M. Nater and Nida Ali

Department of Psychology, University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria

Definition

Chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS) is defined by unexplained disabling fatigue of at least 6 months duration, accompanied by at least four out of eight of the following symptoms: impaired memory or concentration, sore throat, tender glands, aching or stiff muscles, multijoint pain, new headaches, unrefreshing sleep, and post-exertional fatigue.

Description

Chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS) is a complex illness defined by unexplained disabling fatigue as its core feature and a combination of other accompanying symptoms, such as diffuse pain, subjective cognitive impairment, and sleep problems. Among many researchers and patients, the preferred term for chronic fatigue syndrome is myalgic encephalomyelitis (ME). Thus, the condition is frequently referred to as ME/CFS. The first formal case definition of the illness was published in the USA in 1988 (Holmes et al. 1988). In 1994, an international collaborative group published the current CFS research case definition (Fukuda et al. 1994). The 1994 case

definition requires at least 6 months of persistent fatigue; this fatigue cannot be substantially alleviated by rest, is not the result of ongoing exertion, and is associated with substantial reductions in occupational, social, and personal activities. In addition, at least 4 out of 8 of the following symptoms must occur with fatigue, in a 6-month period: impaired memory or concentration, sore throat, tender glands, aching or stiff muscles, multijoint pain, new headaches, unrefreshing sleep, and post-exertional fatigue. In 2015, the Institute of Medicine (now National Academy of Sciences) put forward a new definition for CFS and proposed renaming the condition to “systemic exertion intolerance disease.” According to the new diagnostic criteria, patients must experience 6 months, or more, of profound, unexplained fatigue, and post-exertional malaise, along with a third symptom: unrefreshing sleep. Patients must additionally exhibit either cognitive problems or orthostatic intolerance, which refers to the inability to stand upright for more than a short period of time (IOM 2015). Medical conditions that may explain the prolonged fatigue as well as a number of psychiatric diagnoses exclude a patient from the diagnosis of chronic fatigue syndrome (Reeves et al. 2003). Consequently, a thorough medical history and physical assessment are required before the diagnosis can be formally established.

Comorbidity

There is a considerable overlap between CFS and psychiatric disorders. Data suggest that almost 60% of CFS cases in the population suffer from at least one comorbid psychiatric condition (Bateman et al. 2015; Nater et al. 2009). Consistent with the fact that fatigue is a common symptom in depressive disorders, a substantial overlap in diagnoses of CFS and depression, or dysthymia, has been reported. Anxiety disorders are also quite prevalent, particularly generalized anxiety disorder (White 2019). However, there are also distinct symptoms, such as suicidal ideation, which are not more frequently present in CFS patients than in the general population. In

addition, many patients with CFS do not meet current criteria for any other psychiatric disorder, indicating that CFS is not merely a psychiatric epiphenomenon.

Chronic fatigue syndrome also often co-occurs with other medically unexplained syndromes such as fibromyalgia (with a prevalence of up to 55%) or irritable bowel syndrome (with a median prevalence of up to 51%). These disorders have in common with CFS the fact that they are defined as disorders that, after appropriate medical assessment, cannot be explained in terms of a conventionally defined medical disease (Barsky and Borus 1999). Other related comorbidities include tension headaches, and migraines, which also occur more frequently in patients with CFS than those without (White 2019). Taken together, CFS co-occurs and shares core symptoms with a variety of conditions, suggesting that similar pathways may be involved in the etiology and development of these pathological states.

Prevalence

Chronic fatigue syndrome is relatively common in the community, in primary care, and in hospital settings. The overall prevalence of CFS in the general population is reported to be between 0.7 and 3.3% (Horowitz 2015). Prevalence rates vary significantly across studies, probably as a result of differences in diagnostic criteria and experimental design. According to the Institute of Medicine, between 836,000 and 2.5 million Americans suffer from CFS, and that the disorder is more common in rural than urban populations (Bierl et al. 2004; Clayton 2015). Rates for CFS in primary care are higher than rates seen in the general population. Large community-based epidemiological studies in the USA indicate that CFS is equally or more common in African Americans, Hispanics, and Native Americans and in individuals who make less than \$40,000 per year. However, in all these groups, women are 2–4 times more likely than men to have CFS, and although the average age of onset is 33 years, CFS also affects between 0.2 and 2.3% of children and adolescents (Johnston et al. 2013).

Pathophysiology

The pathophysiology of CFS is complex and far from being fully understood. Despite mixed findings in the vast literature of potential pathophysiological processes in CFS, tentative conclusions can be drawn concerning physiological systems that may be abnormal in at least some patients. It is important to remember, however, that it remains unknown whether any given abnormality represents a cause or a consequence of CFS.

Early etiological theories of the disorder focused on the immune system and infection with Epstein-Barr and other latent viruses. Although cases of CFS may follow such infections, most studies have shown that infections are not a primary cause for the disorder. As an example, in one study (Lombardi et al. 2009), the xenotropic murine leukemia virus-related virus (XMRV retrovirus) was found to be present in a substantial number of CFS patients. However, since the original publication of these findings, many other groups tried to replicate those observations, with mixed success. A multi-site follow-up study conducted with blinded analyses provided further evidence against the XMRV virus and refuted the findings reported in the original study (Alter et al. 2012).

The role of specific immune markers in the etiology of CFS has also been examined. While previous investigations have reported on decreased natural killer cell activities and increased proinflammatory cytokines such as IL-6 and TNF-alpha, newer studies have found little or no evidence indicating higher levels of proinflammatory cytokines in CFS (Blundell et al. 2015). In contrast, evidence suggests that CFS patients have increased levels of circulating TGF-beta compared to controls. TGF-beta promotes both proinflammatory and anti-inflammatory responses and has been shown to be a potential mediator of the immune responses that are observed in CFS (Blundell et al. 2015). In addition, alterations in the gene expression involved in immunity have been detected. Thus, immune factors seem to play an important role in CFS, although the exact mechanisms have not been fully established yet.

Patients with CFS also may have decreased functioning of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis, one of the body's primary stress response systems, which also contributes to the peripheral and central causes of chronic pain and fatigue. Several studies report decreased levels of circulating cortisol and decreased adrenocortical reserve. This alteration may be associated with several symptoms typical for CFS, including fatigue, arthralgia, myalgia, exacerbation of allergic responses, feverishness, changes in mood, cognition, and sleep. Cortisol exerts inhibitory effects on the secretion of cytokines, including IL-6, and helps return these cytokines to baseline levels after stress. Thus, alterations in the immune system have an impact on the endocrine system and vice versa (Nguyen et al. 2017). In addition to decreased functioning, the HPA axis has also been reported to lose its normal circadian rhythm in CFS patients (Nater et al. 2008). Clinical improvement has been associated with normalization of this circadian rhythm. The overall picture may be summarized as a relative hypoactivity of the HPA axis in CFS patients (Morris et al. 2017).

It has been reported that abnormal autonomic nervous system (ANS) functioning may be common in patients with CFS. This is based on the fact that CFS includes typical autonomic symptoms, such as disabling fatigue, dizziness, diminished concentration, tremulousness, nausea, exercise intolerance, and sleeping difficulties, and that at least some CFS patients demonstrate orthostatic intolerance when subjected to tilt table testing (Meeus et al. 2013; Van Cauwenbergh et al. 2014). Conversely, patients with postural orthostatic intolerance syndrome often manifest symptoms similar to those seen in CFS. Whereas there is some evidence for involvement of altered ANS functioning, it needs to be noted that some CFS symptoms, such as sore throat, myalgias, and cognitive alterations, cannot be attributed to dysautonomia.

Studies of the central nervous system (CNS) in CFS have examined both structural and functional alterations. Various studies have pointed to subtle morphological changes in CFS, although these changes might not necessarily be specific for CFS. Functional studies have found potential

explanations for some of the motor and cognitive dysfunctions typically described in CFS.

Finally, psychological and stress-related factors have been associated with CFS. While some researchers argue that psychological abnormalities are indicative of a psychiatric condition, not CFS, others consider CFS to be the consequence of dysfunctional cognitive styles and maladaptive coping strategies. Many patients report an increase in life stress in the year prior to disease development. Findings from one prospective study indicated that stress levels prior to the manifestation of CFS predicted the risk for developing CFS (Kato et al. 2006). In addition, adverse experiences early in life increased the risk of developing CFS in adulthood manifold and resulted in the abovementioned hypoactivity of the endocrine stress system (Heim et al. 2009). Thus, stressful experiences seem to play an important role in triggering CFS symptoms. However, it is likely that stress interacts with other vulnerability factors. Ongoing or acute stressors might elicit physiological changes in the predisposed body, ultimately leading to pathophysiological changes associated with CFS.

Treatment

Numerous treatments have been applied to CFS patients with various results. Cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) for CFS typically involves organizing activity and rest cycles, initiating graded increases in activity, establishing a consistent sleep regimen, and attempting to restructure beliefs around self and illness-related cognitions (Malouff et al. 2008; Wiborg et al. 2012). One large-scale controlled study demonstrated the efficacy of graded exercise training and CBT for CFS patients (White et al. 2011). However, the results from this study have been criticized by some. One of the main criticisms of behavioral interventions includes the notion that these might only be beneficial for some patients. Many patients are also skeptical about the rationale for psychotherapeutic interventions for CFS

and reject the notion that their illness may be of a psychological nature. Moreover, since evidence for the effectiveness of CBT in the treatment of CFS is inconsistent, it has been suggested that CBT-based interventions may only be suitable for a subset of CSF patients (Cella et al. 2011). In line with this, a recent study has shown that factors such as shorter initial symptom duration and higher sense of control over fatigue following CBT interventions are associated with lower fatigue and higher physical functioning at long-term (up to 10 years) follow-up (Janse et al. 2019). Newer therapeutic approaches include Internet-based treatments, for example, web-based CBT (Janse et al. 2018), and cognitive exercise therapy, which includes game-based tasks designed to improve attention, working memory, processing speed, and executive functioning (McBride et al. 2017).

Also, low-dose corticosteroids have been reported to improve symptoms in two studies. However, these positive findings could not be replicated. Trials of antidepressants have yielded an equally confusing mix of positive and negative results, but in general, these agents appear to be significantly less effective for CFS than for depressive or anxiety disorders. Finally, pharmacological interventions that specifically target the immune system are also used. While there is no prescribed pharmacological treatment for CFS, various drugs are used to relieve and manage symptoms and improve ambulatory function in an individualized manner. One potential option is the administration of the double-stranded RNA molecule, rintatolimod, which, given its antiviral and immunomodulatory properties, results in a reduction of inflammatory cytokines and has been shown to reduce functional impairments and fatigue in patients, across a number of studies (Mitchell 2016).

Cross-References

- [Chronic Fatigue](#)
- [Fatigue](#)
- [Functional Somatic Syndromes](#)

- Medically Unexplained Symptoms
- Stress
- Stress Disorder

References and Further Readings

- Alter, H. J., Mikovits, J. A., Switzer, W. M., Ruscetti, F. W., Lo, S.-C., Klimas, N., ... Levine, S. (2012). A multicenter blinded analysis indicates no association between chronic fatigue syndrome/myalgic encephalomyelitis and either xenotropic murine leukemia virus-related virus or polytropic murine leukemia virus. *MBio*, 3(5), e00266–e00212.
- Barsky, A. J., & Borus, J. F. (1999). Functional somatic syndromes. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 130(11), 910–921.
- Bateman, L., Darakjy, S., Klimas, N., Peterson, D., Levine, S. M., Allen, A., ... March, D. (2015). Chronic fatigue syndrome and co-morbid and consequent conditions: Evidence from a multi-site clinical epidemiology study. *Fatigue: Biomedicine, Health & Behavior*, 3(1), 1–15.
- Bierl, C., Nisenbaum, R., Hoaglin, D. C., Randall, B., Jones, A. B., Unger, E. R., & Reeves, W. C. (2004). Regional distribution of fatiguing illnesses in the United States: A pilot study. *Population Health Metrics*, 2(1), 1.
- Blundell, S., Ray, K., Buckland, M., & White, P. (2015). Chronic fatigue syndrome and circulating cytokines: A systematic review. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 50, 186–195.
- Cella, M., Chalder, T., & White, P. D. (2011). Does the heterogeneity of chronic fatigue syndrome moderate the response to cognitive behaviour therapy? An exploratory study. *Psychotherapy and Psychosomatics*, 80(6), 353–358.
- Clayton, E. W. (2015). Beyond myalgic encephalomyelitis/chronic fatigue syndrome: An IOM report on redefining an illness. *JAMA*, 313(11), 1101–1102. <https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2015.1346>.
- Fukuda, K., Straus, S. E., Hickie, I., Sharpe, M. C., Dobbins, J. G., & Komaroff, A. (1994). The chronic fatigue syndrome: A comprehensive approach to its definition and study. International chronic fatigue syndrome study group. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 121(12), 953–959.
- Heim, C., Nater, U. M., Maloney, E., Boneva, R., Jones, J. F., & Reeves, W. C. (2009). Childhood trauma and risk for chronic fatigue syndrome: Association with neuroendocrine dysfunction. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 66(1), 72–80.
- Holmes, G. P., Kaplan, J. E., Gantz, N. M., Komaroff, A. L., Schonberger, L. B., Straus, S. E., ... et al. (1988). Chronic fatigue syndrome: A working case definition. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 108(3), 387–389.
- Horowitz, S. (2015). Chronic fatigue syndrome: Case definitions, possible causes, and therapies. *Alternative and Complementary Therapies*, 21(5), 217–223.
- IOM. (2015). *Beyond myalgic encephalomyelitis/chronic fatigue syndrome: redefining an illness*: National Academies Press.
- Janse, A., Worm-Smeitink, M., Bleijenberg, G., Donders, R., & Knoop, H. (2018). Efficacy of web-based cognitive-behavioural therapy for chronic fatigue syndrome: Randomised controlled trial. *The British Journal of Psychiatry*, 212(2), 112–118.
- Janse, A., Bleijenberg, G., & Knoop, H. (2019). Prediction of long-term outcome after cognitive behavioral therapy for chronic fatigue syndrome. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 121, 93–99.
- Johnston, S., Brenu, E. W., Staines, D., & Marshall-Gradisnik, S. (2013). The prevalence of chronic fatigue syndrome/myalgic encephalomyelitis: A meta-analysis. *Clinical Epidemiology*, 5, 105.
- Kato, K., Sullivan, P. F., Evengard, B., & Pedersen, N. L. (2006). Premorbid predictors of chronic fatigue. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 63(11), 1267–1272.
- Lombardi, V. C., Ruscetti, F. W., Das Gupta, J., Pfost, M. A., Hagen, K. S., Peterson, D. L., ... Mikovits, J. A. (2009). Detection of an infectious retrovirus, XMRV, in blood cells of patients with chronic fatigue syndrome. *Science*, 326(5952), 585–589.
- Malouff, J. M., Thorsteinsson, E. B., Rooke, S. E., Bhullar, N., & Schutte, N. S. (2008). Efficacy of cognitive behavioral therapy for chronic fatigue syndrome: A meta-analysis. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 28, 736–745.
- McBride, R. L., Horsfield, S., Sandler, C. X., Cassar, J., Casson, S., Cvejic, E., ... Lloyd, A. R. (2017). Cognitive remediation training improves performance in patients with chronic fatigue syndrome. *Psychiatry Research*, 257, 400–405.
- Meeus, M., Goubert, D., De Backer, F., Struyf, F., Hermans, L., Coppieters, I., ... Calders, P. (2013). Heart rate variability in patients with fibromyalgia and patients with chronic fatigue syndrome: A systematic review. Paper presented at the Seminars in arthritis and rheumatism.
- Mitchell, W. M. (2016). Efficacy of rintatolimod in the treatment of chronic fatigue syndrome/myalgic encephalomyelitis (CFS/ME). *Expert Review of Clinical Pharmacology*, 9(6), 755–770.
- Morris, G., Anderson, G., & Maes, M. (2017). Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal hypofunction in myalgic encephalomyelitis (ME)/chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS) as a consequence of activated immune-inflammatory and oxidative and nitrosative pathways. *Molecular Neurobiology*, 54(9), 6806–6819.
- Nater, U. M., Youngblood, L. S., Jones, J. F., Unger, E. R., Miller, A. H., Reeves, W. C., & Heim, C. (2008). Alterations in diurnal salivary cortisol rhythm in a population-based sample of cases with chronic fatigue syndrome. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 70, 298–305.
- Nater, U. M., Lin, J. M., Maloney, E. M., Jones, J. F., Tian, H., Boneva, R. S., ... Heim, C. (2009). Psychiatric comorbidity in persons with chronic fatigue syndrome

identified from the Georgia population. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 71(5), 557–565.

- Nguyen, C. B., Alsøe, L., Lindvall, J. M., Sulheim, D., Fagermoen, E., Winger, A., . . . Wyller, V. B. (2017). Whole blood gene expression in adolescent chronic fatigue syndrome: An exploratory cross-sectional study suggesting altered B cell differentiation and survival. *Journal of Translational Medicine*, 15(1), 102.
- Reeves, W. C., Lloyd, A., Vernon, S. D., Klimas, N., Jason, L. A., Bleijenberg, G., . . . Unger, E. R. (2003). Identification of ambiguities in the 1994 chronic fatigue syndrome research case definition and recommendations for resolution. *BMC Health Services Research*, 3(1), 25.
- Van Cauwenbergh, D., Nijs, J., Kos, D., Van Weijnen, L., Struyf, F., & Meeus, M. (2014). Malfunctioning of the autonomic nervous system in patients with chronic fatigue syndrome: A systematic literature review. *European Journal of Clinical Investigation*, 44(5), 516–526.
- White, P. (2019). A perspective on causation of the chronic fatigue syndrome by considering its nosology. *Journal of evaluation in clinical practice*, 25(6), 991–996.
- White, P., Goldsmith, K., Johnson, A., Potts, L., Walwyn, R., Decesare, J., . . . Sharpe, M. (2011). Comparison of adaptive pacing therapy, cognitive behaviour therapy, graded exercise therapy, and specialist medical care for chronic fatigue syndrome (PACE): A randomised trial. *Lancet*, 377, 823–836.
- Wiborg, J. F., Knoop, H., Wensing, M., & Bleijenberg, G. (2012). Therapist effects and the dissemination of cognitive behavior therapy for chronic fatigue syndrome in community-based mental health care. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 50(6), 393–396.

Suggested Readings

- Afari, N., & Buchwald, D. (2003). Chronic fatigue syndrome: A review. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 160(2), 221–236.
- Prins, J. B., van der Meer, J. W., & Bleijenberg, G. (2006). Chronic fatigue syndrome. *Lancet*, 367(9507), 346–355.

Chronic Inflammatory Polyarthriti

► Degenerative Diseases: Joint

Chronic Kidney Disease (CKD)

► End-Stage Renal Disease

Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease

Akihisa Mitani

Department of Respiratory Medicine, The University of Tokyo Hospital, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

[Emphysema](#)

Definition

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), one of the leading causes of morbidity and mortality worldwide, is a chronic disease of the lung that is characterized by irreversible decreased air-flow. The disease is also associated with a chronic inflammatory response to inhaled toxins, mainly cigarette smoke. Therefore, all COPD patients with smoking habit should be encouraged to quit smoking. The mainstay drugs of COPD are bronchodilators, including beta agonists and anticholinergics.

Description

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) is currently the fourth leading cause of death worldwide, and WHO predicts that this will rise to number three by 2030, resulting in the huge burden of the disease on healthcare systems. This chronic disease of the lung is characterized by decreased air flow and associated abnormal inflammation of the lungs. The disease results from interaction between individual risk factors (like alpha1-antitrypsin deficiencies) and environmental exposures to toxic agents (like cigarette smoking). The main mechanisms that may contribute to airflow limitation in COPD are fixed narrowing of small airways, emphysema and luminal obstruction with mucus secretions.

The definition does not use the terms chronic bronchitis and emphysema, although most patients with COPD have them. Chronic bronchitis is diagnosed based on the clinical presentation, such as a chronic cough and sputum production. The diagnosis of emphysema, which is the term used to describe damage to the air sacs in the lung, is made from a pathological and/or morphological standpoint.

The respiratory symptoms of COPD are dyspnea, chronic cough, and sputum production. The dyspnea may initially be noticed only during exertion. Patients with a COPD exacerbation complain of increased cough and sputum, wheezing, and dyspnea, with or without fever.

Most patients with COPD have a history of cigarette smoking or other inhalant exposure. Therefore, when a person with a history of exposure to risk factors, especially smoke, has dyspnea, chronic cough, and sputum production, a diagnosis of COPD should be considered. Measurements of lung function are essential for the diagnosis of COPD. It is also used to determine the severity of the airflow obstruction and follow disease progression. Spirometry measures forced vital capacity (FVC) and forced expiratory volume in 1 s (FEV1.0). An FEV1.0/FVC ratio less than 70% generally indicates airway obstruction.

The overall goals of treatment of COPD are to prevent further deterioration in respiratory function, relieve symptoms, improve quality of life, and reduce mortality.

First of all, reduction of risk factors is needed. All COPD patients with smoking habit should be encouraged to quit smoking. Even a few minutes of counseling could be effective. Pharmacotherapy, such as nicotine replacement and varenicline, is also recommended. Preventive care is also very important, and all patients should be recommended to get an immunizations, including influenza and pneumococcal vaccines.

The mainstay drugs of COPD are bronchodilators, and inhaled therapy is preferred. Beta agonists, anticholinergics, and methylxanthines are given alone or in combination depending upon

the severity of disease and each patient's individual response to therapy. Inhaled glucocorticoids can reduce the frequency of the acute exacerbation, although it cannot improve lung function. Systemic glucocorticoids are not recommended for a long-time treatment. Mucolytic drugs might be beneficial for selected patients.

Non-pharmacological treatment is equally important for managing COPD. It includes pulmonary rehabilitation and oxygen administration. Pulmonary rehabilitation has been shown to improve exercise capacity, decrease dyspnea, and improve quality of life and should be considered as an addition to medication therapy for the patients at all stages of disease. Long-term oxygen therapy improves survival and quality of life in the patients with hypoxemia.

Cross-References

- [Emphysema](#)
- [Lung Function](#)
- [Pulmonary Disorders, COPD: Psychosocial Aspects](#)

References and Further Reading

- GOLD. (2017). Global strategy for the diagnosis, management, and prevention of COPD. Available from <http://www.goldcopd.org>.
- NICE. Guideline – COPD in over 16s: Diagnosis and management. Available from <https://www.brit-thoracic.org.uk/standards-of-care/guidelines/nice-guideline-copd-in-over-16s-diagnosis-and-management/>.
- Petty, R. L., & Nett, L. M. (2001). COPD: Prevention in the primary care setting. The National Lung Health Education Program.
- Standards for the diagnosis and care of patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. American Thoracic Society. (1995). *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*, 152, S77.

Chronic Pain

- [Arthritis: Psychosocial Aspects](#)

Chronic Pain Patients

Stuart Derbyshire
National University of Singapore, Singapore,
Singapore

Synonyms

Persistent pain

Definition

Chronic pain is typically defined as pain that continues in excess of 3–6 months regardless of the cause of the pain. Less commonly, chronic pain is defined as pain that persists beyond the point of any possible healing or any other useful function such as the enforcement of rest.

Description

Major advances in the understanding of pain began with the observations of the physician Henry Beecher during World War 2. Beecher noted that seriously wounded soldiers brought from the front line requested less-pain medicine and reported less pain than he was used to seeing in his civilian patients. Beecher inferred that pain is not simply a response to physical injury or disease but also includes a cognitive and emotional component. Twenty years later, Canadian psychologist Ronald Melzack and British physiologist Patrick Wall published their gate control theory. Gate theory proposed that noxious and non-noxious sensory information interact in the spinal cord with descending influence from the brain. The theory explains pain experience as dependent upon that interaction rather than just the strength of a noxious stimulus. The precise details of the theory are less important than the dramatic impact gate control had on the understanding of pain. Gate control theory ended simplistic ideas of pain based on an isolated dedicated pathway from the periphery to the brain. It

provided the first plausible physiological explanations for the influence of psychological states on pain experience through a brain-spinal cord loop. Most importantly, gate control theory shifted attention away from the stimulus and toward the spinal cord, brain, and the subjective experience of pain. After the gate it became increasingly apparent that pain cannot be reliably judged based upon an objective measure of injury or receptor activation and so assessment of pain requires subjective report – the “what it is like” to be in pain.

The shift in focus away from the noxious stimulus that triggers pain and toward the psychological experience of pain was particularly important for the understanding of chronic pain. Chronic pain conditions are often characterized by the lack of a stimulus that can explain the pain. Patients with phantom limb pain, for example, feel pain in a limb that has been amputated. Patients with causalgia suffer severe burning pain at a site of injury long after the injury has healed. Even in diseases where there is an ongoing trauma, such as patients with cancer or arthritis, the pain is typically difficult to predict based on objective measures of disease activity and continues beyond any period when cessation of activity and rest might facilitate healing. Thus, the understanding of chronic pain is not helped by a focus on injury or disease but by a focus on the experience of pain. Chronic, persistent pain is a distinct medical entity, syndrome, or disease in its own right, but it is not a disease that can be defined by objective markers such as provided by X-rays or histological tests; chronic pain is a disease defined by the subjective experience of pain. In short, chronic pain is a problem because it feels bad.

This understanding of chronic pain is further reflected in the international association for the study of pain (IASP) definition of pain, which states that pain is “an unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with actual or potential tissue damage, or described in terms of such damage. . . pain is always subjective. Each individual learns the application of the word through experiences related to injury in early life.” This definition recognizes a number of important facts about pain: (1) It is a multidimensional experience.

(2) It is subjective. (3) It may or may not be associated with tissue damage.

The somewhat complex understanding of pain provided by the IASP is perhaps not especially important when considering acute pain. If someone hits their hand with a hammer, it is patently obvious that the pain was caused by the hammer and it is reasonable to assume that the pain will subside once the injury heals. Although it may be theoretically correct to point out that the pain is in the patient's mind, not their hand, and that the experience derives from psychology, and not the hammer, such points would be overly pedantic. When faced with an obvious injury it is reasonable to depersonalize the experience as a consequence of external forces, which rapidly lose their influence with healing. For patients with chronic pain, however, there is either no external force to blame or the external force never loses its influence. Either way, the experience is deeply personal and subjective.

The personal and subjective nature of chronic pain makes treatment difficult. Traditional treatment approaches involving periods of rest and analgesic medication use are typically unsuccessful in resolving chronic pain. Physicians and patients can easily become disillusioned when multiple treatments, used sequentially or in combination, fail to provide pain relief. In many cases, physicians are left frustrated and patients dissatisfied with chronic, unremitting symptoms. Treatment approaches that focus on the patient's experience, what they feel and how they manage their feelings, are usually more successful. Cognitive behavioral therapy, for example, aims to modify the reciprocal relationships between sensation, cognition, emotion, and behavior so as to improve mood and decrease the disability associated with the pain. Cognitive behavioral therapy emphasizes the teaching of coping skills and the active role patients have in modifying how they think, feel, and believe. The aim is to reduce the negative impact of their pain even if the pain itself is not directly reduced.

Among adults, the prevalence of chronic pain where an identifying cause is difficult to find ranges between 2% and 40% depending on the study. Unsurprisingly, chronic pain substantially reduces quality of life and also generates considerable costs.

In the Netherlands, for example, the cost of back pain alone equals 1.7% of the gross national product and in the UK, back pain results in the loss of over 150 million workdays annually. There is also evidence that the problem may be increasing. In the USA, the rate of disability claims associated with low back pain has increased over the rate of population growth by 1,400% since the early 1970s. Understanding chronic pain so as to address this increase and provide better treatments remains a considerable challenge.

Cross-References

► [Stress](#)

References and Further Reading

- Loeser, J. D. (2006). Pain as a disease. In F. Cervero & T. J. Jensen (Eds.), *Handbook of clinical neurology* (pp. 11–20). Edinburgh: Elsevier.
- McMahon, S., & Koltzenburg, M. (2005). *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (5th ed.). Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone.
- Melzack, R., & Wall, P. D. (1996). *The challenge of pain*. London: Penguin.

Chronic Pain, Types of (Cancer, Musculoskeletal, Pelvic), Management of

Michael J. L. Sullivan and Tsipora Mankovsky
Department of Psychology, McGill University,
Montreal, QC, Canada

Definition

Intervention approaches to improve function and promote successful adaptation to chronic pain.

Description

This entry briefly reviews non-pharmacological approaches to the management of pain-related health conditions and pain-related disability. The

review is selective as opposed to exhaustive, with emphasis on interventions that have been systematically evaluated. Where possible, references to clinical manuals are provided for readers who are interested in learning more about the specific intervention techniques described.

Psychological Treatment of Pain

By the mid-1960s, mounting clinical and scientific evidence was calling for a model of pain that would consider both the physiological and psychological mechanisms involved in pain perception. The call was most compellingly answered by Melzack and Wall's gate control theory of pain. From an applied perspective, the work of Melzack and Wall evolved into behavioral conceptualizations of pain (Fordyce et al. 1968), contributing ultimately to the development of biopsychosocial models of pain (Gatchel et al. 2007). Biopsychosocial models propose that a complete understanding of pain experience and pain-related outcomes requires consideration of physical, psychological, and social factors (Gatchel et al. 2007).

Behavioral/Operant Programs

The first programs that specifically targeted the psychological aspects of pain-related disability were based on the view that pain-related disability was a form of "behavior" that was maintained by reinforcement contingencies. In the 1960s and 1970s, Wilbert Fordyce and his colleagues applied the concepts of learning theory to the problem of chronic pain (Fordyce et al. 1968; Fordyce 1976). The focus of Fordyce's approach to treatment was not on reducing the experience of pain but on reducing the overt display of pain. The targets selected for treatment were pain behaviors such as distress vocalizations, facial grimacing, limping, guarding, medication intake, activity withdrawal, and activity avoidance.

The first behavioral approaches to the management of pain and disability were conducted within inpatient settings that permitted systematic observation of pain behaviors, as well control over environmental contingencies influencing pain behavior (Fordyce 1976). Staff were trained to monitor pain behavior and to selectively reinforce

"well behaviors" and selectively ignore "pain behaviors." Results of several studies revealed that the manipulation of reinforcement contingencies could exert powerful influence on the frequency of display of pain behaviors (Fordyce et al. 1985). The manipulation of reinforcement contingencies was also applied to other domains of pain-related behavior and shown to be effective in reducing medication intake, reducing downtime and maximizing participation in goal-directed activity.

A number of clinical trials on the efficacy of behavioral treatments for the reduction of pain and disability yielded positive findings (Sanders 1996). However, given the significant resources required to implement contingency management interventions, issues concerning the cost-efficacy of behavioral therapy for pain and disability were raised. Concern was also raised over the maintenance of treatment gains since reinforcement contingencies outside the clinic setting could not be readily controlled. In order to increase access and reduce costs, behavioral treatments were modified to permit their administration on an outpatient basis. This change in delivery format compromised to some degree the control over environmental contingencies and required greater reliance on self-monitoring and self-report measures (Sanders 1996).

Back Schools

Although back schools were first developed in the late 1960s, the first published reports of the benefits of "back schools" only appeared in the literature in the early 1980s (Zachrisson-Forsell 1981). The structure and content of back schools reflected the prevailing view of the time that "information" or "knowledge" could be powerful tools to effect change in behavior (e.g., pain-related disability) (Heymans et al. 2004).

Back schools vary widely in terms of content, duration, and the intervention disciplines used to administer the program. The duration of back school interventions has ranged from a single information session to a 2-month inpatient program. Back school interventions have tended to use group formats with a didactic format where participants might be exposed to information

about biomechanics, posture, ergonomics, exercises, nutrition, weight loss, attitudes, beliefs, and coping. As a function of the type of information being provided, the interventionist might be a physician, physiotherapist, occupational therapist, nurse, or psychologist (Linton and Kamwendo 1987).

A recent review of randomized clinical trials of back school programs concluded that (a) back schools yielded benefit relative to treatment-as-usual interventions, (b) the treatment effect size was small, and (c) that back school programs implemented within occupational settings appeared to yield the most positive outcomes (Heymans et al. 2005).

Cognitive-Behavioral Programs

Cognitive-behavioral programs for the management of pain and pain-related disability began to appear in the 1980s (Turk et al. 1983). CBT programs incorporated concepts drawn from earlier behavioral approaches as well as information-based approaches used in back schools. The objective of many CBT programs is to equip individuals with the psychological “tools” necessary to adequately meet challenges of persistent pain (Turk et al. 1983).

Cognitive-behavioral interventions are currently considered the psychological treatment of choice for individuals coping with chronic pain and disability, (Gatchel et al. 2007). A number of clinical trials have demonstrated that these types of interventions can lead to clinically significant decreases in pain and emotional distress (Williams et al. 1996).

It is important to note that the term cognitive behavioral does not refer to a specific intervention but, rather, to a class of intervention strategies. The strategies included under the heading of cognitive-behavioral interventions vary widely and may include self-instruction (e.g., motivational self-talk), relaxation or biofeedback, developing coping strategies (e.g., distraction, imagery), increasing assertiveness, minimizing negative or self-defeating thoughts, changing maladaptive beliefs about pain, and goal setting (Turk et al. 1983). A client referred for cognitive-behavioral intervention may be exposed to

varying selections of these strategies. The goals of CBT programs might also differ across settings and may include pain reduction, distress reduction, increased activity involvement, or return to work (Gatchel et al. 2007).

Stress Management Programs

Stress management programs represent a special case of cognitive-behavioral intervention. Stress management programs proceed from the view that, unless properly managed, chronic stresses can lead to a depletion of the individual's physical and psychological resources and, in turn, increase the individual's susceptibility to physical or psychological dysfunction (Lazarus and Folkman 1984). Stress management approaches are considered separately from cognitive-behavioral pain management programs since the focus of stress management programs is not necessarily on managing pain symptoms or disability. Furthermore, while CBT programs are typically used for individuals who are work-disabled due to their pain condition, stress management programs have been used as preventive interventions for individuals who are experiencing symptoms of persistent pain but are still working. The primary focus of stress management interventions might be on stresses within the workplace or the individual's personal stresses (Feuerstein et al. 2004).

Problem-solving therapy is a variant of stress management programs that has recently been applied to individuals who are work-disabled due to musculoskeletal pain conditions (D'Zurilla 1990; Smeets et al. 2008). Problem-solving therapy proceeds from the view that life stresses can be minimized if the individual is able to use appropriate problem-solving strategies to deal with difficult situations that might be encountered at the work place or in daily life. Problem-solving intervention programs will typically span several weeks (8–10 weeks) and might involve didactic lectures, group discussion, and homework assignments. The limited research that has addressed the efficacy of this form of intervention indicates that the addition of problem-solving therapy to usual treatment might improve return to work outcomes in individuals with disabling musculoskeletal pain (Smeets et al. 2008).

Acceptance and Commitment Therapy

Acceptance and commitment therapy, also referred to as contextually based cognitive-behavior therapy, is a type of cognitive therapy that has evolved from Stephen Hayes' work on acceptance and adaptation (Hayes et al. 1999; McCracken 2005). Proponents of ACT emphasize that they do use the term acceptance to refer to resignation but rather as a term to refer to the process of ceasing to struggle ineffectively against that which cannot be changed (Hayes et al. 1999). In the case of chronic pain, acceptance is viewed as a first step toward successful adaptation (McCracken 2005). Acceptance is said to occur when the individual with chronic pain is willing to experience his or her pain without attempting to control it. Through treatment, individuals with chronic pain are taught to acknowledge their pain, observe it as a sensation, and then accept it as part of their reality without judgment. Through treatment, individuals are also encouraged to focus on their values and to commit to activities consistent with their values, in spite of ongoing pain.

Several investigations have shown that ACT is effective in reducing pain intensity and self-reported disability (Vowles and McCracken 2008). To date, ACT has only been used with individuals with long-standing chronic pain where the prospect of significant pain alleviation is realistic low. When symptom-focused treatment of the pain condition is unlikely to yield positive outcomes, acceptance-based interventions might represent a useful option for improving the quality of life of individuals with chronic pain. It is not clear whether ACT would be effective or even appropriate for individuals with recent onset pain where a substantive proportion of individuals would be expected to show significant recovery from their pain condition.

Risk-Factor-Targeted Interventions

Recent research on risk factors for prolonged pain and disability has prompted the development of risk-factor-targeted intervention programs (Sullivan et al. 2005; Vlaeyen and Linton 2000). The Progressive Goal Attainment Program (PGAP) was designed as a risk-factor-targeted

intervention for individuals suffering from debilitating pain conditions (Sullivan et al. 2006). The primary goals of the PGAP are to reduce catastrophic thinking and fear of movement in order to promote reintegration into life-role activities, increase quality of life, and facilitate return to work. The intervention is typically delivered by occupational therapists, physiotherapists, or psychologists.

Since the PGAP is a risk-factor-targeted intervention, clients are only considered as potential candidates for the intervention if they obtain scores in the risk range on measures of catastrophic thinking, fear of movement, or disability beliefs. In the initial weeks of the program, the focus is on the establishment of a strong therapeutic relationship and the development of a structured activity schedule. The client is provided with a client workbook that serves as the platform for activity scheduling and contains the forms for various exercises that will be used through the treatment. Activity goals are established in order to promote resumption of family, social, and occupational roles. Intervention techniques are invoked to target specific obstacles to rehabilitation progress (e.g., catastrophic thinking, fear of movement, and disability beliefs). In the final stages of the program, the intervention focuses on activities that will facilitate reintegration into the workplace.

PGAP has been shown to be effective in reducing catastrophic thinking, fear of movement, and disability beliefs in individuals with whiplash injuries and work-related musculoskeletal injuries (Sullivan et al. 2006). Research has supported the view that reductions in catastrophizing are significant determinants of treatment-related improvements in depressive symptoms, physical function, and return to work (Sullivan et al. 2005).

Graded Activity and Exposure

The premise underlying graded activity or exposure interventions is that disability can be construed as a type of phobic orientation toward activity (Vlaeyen and Linton 2000). According to the fear-avoidance model, individuals will differ in the degree to which they interpret their pain symptoms in a "catastrophic" or "alarmist"

manner. The model predicts that catastrophic thinking following the onset of pain will contribute to heightened fears of movement. In turn, fear is expected to lead to avoidance of activity that might be associated with pain (Vlaeyen and Linton 2000). Prolonged inactivity is expected to contribute to depression and disability (Sullivan et al. 2006). According to the fear-avoidance model, reducing fear of movement is a critical component of successful rehabilitation of individuals with debilitating pain conditions (Vlaeyen and Linton 2000). Clients are typically only considered for exposure interventions if they obtain high scores on measures of fear of movement.

Graded activity or exposure to feared activities are treatment approaches that involve systematic exposure or engagement in activities that individuals avoid due to fears that they might experience an exacerbation of their symptoms. Feared activities are initially identified and ranked hierarchically, from least to most feared activities. Beginning with the least feared activities, clients are systematically exposed to movements that comprise the activities that clients are currently avoiding. Clients are repeatedly exposed to specific movements until their fear of activity subsides. As clients overcome their fears associated with the least feared activities in their feared activities hierarchy, the exposure techniques are used on activities associated with higher levels of fear (Leeuw et al. 2007).

While graded exposure has been shown to be an effective intervention for reducing the fear of specific movements, its effects do not seem to generalize to un-targeted activities (Goubert et al. 2002). As such, the clinical significance of the intervention might depend on the degree to which important activities of daily living or occupational activities can be targeted. Graded activity and exposure interventions aimed at reducing fear of movement have been shown to be effective in reducing disability, reducing absenteeism, and facilitating return to work (Bailey et al. 2010).

Choosing Among Different Psychological Interventions

The intervention approaches described in this chapter differ in terms of their focus, structure,

content, and objectives. With the range of potential intervention avenues currently available, the clinician might reflect on the question of which intervention approach might be most suitable for a particular client. Since little research has been conducted on matching client profiles to specific interventions, this question unfortunately cannot be addressed from an empirical standpoint. There are, however, various points of consideration that might assist the clinician in determining the most appropriate intervention for his or her client.

Few would question the importance of information provision in the management of chronic pain and disability. The more that clients understand about the nature of their pain condition, the more they will be able to play an active role in the management of their condition. As such, information-based approaches such as back schools might be an important element in the management of chronic pain. However, for most clients with chronic pain conditions, information alone is unlikely to yield clinically significant improvements in mood, suffering, or disability. Information-based techniques might best be viewed as important elements of a more comprehensive approach to treatment as opposed to stand-alone interventions.

For the greater part of the last two decades, psychosocial interventions were included primarily as part of tertiary care treatment for clients with long-standing chronic pain and disability. With little expectancy of clinical improvement of clients' pain conditions, the focus of many treatment programs was primarily on the alleviation of suffering. Cognitive-behavioral interventions that used distress reduction techniques such as relaxation, reappraisal, and cognitive restructuring were ideally suited to achieve reductions in suffering in clients with long-standing chronic pain (Morley et al. 1999).

As research accumulated showing that psychological interventions yielded significant reductions in pain and emotional distress, there was greater interest in using psychological interventions for clients who were at earlier stages of chronicity (Sullivan 2003). The term secondary prevention is used to describe interventions that are implemented for individuals considered "at

risk” condition or chronic pain and disability but whose condition had not yet become chronic. With a less chronic population, treatment objectives of psychological interventions changed. Since many clients still had an employment-relevant skill set, and some might also have had a job to return to, there was an increased focus on return to function as a central objective of treatment, as opposed to a primary focus on reduction of suffering. Return to function is a central objective of interventions such as PGAP or graded exposure.

When treatment is initiated after a long period of chronicity, intervention strategies are more likely to address the consequences of pain and disability (e.g., affective disorders, drug/alcohol overuse, family dysfunction) as opposed to risk factors for pain and disability. It is important for professionals working with clients with longstanding chronic pain and disability to have a background in mental health in order to be able to intervene on psychological conditions that might be compounding the client’s pain condition. However, risk factors for chronicity are not necessarily psychological disorders nor would they necessarily be considered indices of dysfunction (in the absence of a pain condition). Nevertheless, their presence contributes to a higher probability that a pain condition will persist or worsen over time. The challenge to effective secondary prevention lies not only in the development of risk-factor targeted interventions but in developing mechanisms by which individuals at risk can be identified. Perhaps more so than is the case for psychological disorders, risk factors for chronicity may be particularly likely to go undetected during routine primary care. Treating physicians often become aware of psychological factors in pain and disability only once chronicity has developed and the client has become treatment resistant.

Since psychological risk factors for chronic pain and disability are not mental health conditions, the development of secondary prevention interventions opened the door for using professionals who were not mental health professionals to deliver psychological interventions for pain. Intervention programs like PGAP or graded

exposure are more likely to use occupational therapists, physiotherapists, or kinesiologists as interventionists than psychologists. This should be viewed as a positive change since the shortage of psychologists involved in the treatment of pain severely limits access to psychological services for individuals with debilitating pain conditions.

Thus, chronicity and clinical complexity are two factors that will influence the type of psychological intervention that will be considered, the objectives of the intervention, and the training background of the professional that will be used to deliver the intervention. Undoubtedly, other psychological interventions will be added to the repertoire of psychological services offered to clients with debilitating pain conditions. It is paramount to consider the evidence base for psychological interventions for pain-related difficulties before offering them to clients with debilitating pain conditions. Offering interventions that are not evidence based increases the probability of treatment failure and is likely to contribute to further demoralization of a client already struggling with a heavy burden of distress and disability.

Cross-References

- [Pain Management/Control](#)
- [Pain, Psychosocial Aspects](#)
- [Pain-Related Fear](#)

References and Reading

- Bailey, K., Carleton, N., Vlaeyen, J. W. S., & Asmundson, G. J. (2010). Treatments addressing pain-related fear and anxiety in patients with chronic musculoskeletal pain: A preliminary review. *Cognitive Behavior Therapy*, 39, 46–63.
- D’Zurilla, T. (1990). Problem-solving training for effective stress management and prevention. *Journal of Cognitive Psychotherapy*, 4, 327–355.
- Feuerstein, M., Nicholas, R., Huang, G., Dimberg, L., Ali, D., & Rogers, H. (2004). Job stress management and ergonomic intervention for work-related upper extremity symptoms. *Applied Ergonomics*, 35, 565–574.
- Fordyce, W. (1976). *Behavioral methods in chronic pain and illness*. St. Louis: Mosby.

- Fordyce, W., Fowler, R., Lehmann, J., & De Lateur, B. (1968). Some implications of learning in problems of chronic pain. *Journal of Chronic Diseases*, 21, 179–190.
- Fordyce, W. E., Roberts, A. H., & Sternbach, R. A. (1985). The behavioral management of chronic pain: A response to critics. *Pain*, 22(2), 113–125.
- Gatchel, R., Peng, Y. B., Peters, M. L., Fuchs, P. N., & Turk, D. C. (2007). The biopsychosocial approach to chronic pain: Scientific advances and future directions. *Psychological Bulletin*, 133, 581–624.
- Goubert, L., Francken, G., Crombez, G., Vansteenwegen, D., & Lysens, R. (2002). Exposure to physical movement in chronic back pain patients: No evidence for generalization across different movements. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 40(4), 415–429.
- Hayes, S. C., Strosahl, K. D., & Wilson, K. G. (1999). *Acceptance and commitment therapy: An experiential approach to behavior change*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Heymans, M. W., van Tulder, M. W., Esmail, R., Bombardier, C., & Koes, B. W. (2004). Back schools for non-specific low-back pain. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 4, CD000261.
- Heymans, M. W., van Tulder, M. W., Esmail, R., Bombardier, C., & Koes, B. W. (2005). Back schools for nonspecific low back pain: A systematic review within the framework of the Cochrane Collaboration Back Review Group. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*, 30(19), 2153–2163.
- Lazarus, R., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Leeuw, M., Goossens, M. E., Linton, S. J., Crombez, G., Boersma, K., & Vlaeyen, J. W. (2007). The fear-avoidance model of musculoskeletal pain: Current state of scientific evidence. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 30(1), 77–94.
- Linton, S. J., & Kamwendo, K. (1987). Low back schools. A critical review. *Physical Therapy*, 67(9), 1375–1383.
- McCracken, L. M. (2005). *Contextual cognitive therapy for chronic pain*. Seattle: IASP Press.
- Morley, S., Eccleston, C., & Williams, A. (1999). Systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials of cognitive-behavior therapy and behavior therapy for chronic pain in adults, excluding headache. *Pain*, 80, 1–13.
- Sanders, S. H. (1996). Operant conditioning of chronic pain: Back to basics. In R. Gatchel & D. C. Turk (Eds.), *Psychological approaches to pain management*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Smeets, R. J., Vlaeyen, J. W., Hidding, A., Kester, A. D., van der Heijden, G. J., & Knotterus, J. A. (2008). Chronic low back pain: Physical training, graded activity with problem solving training, or both? The one-year post-treatment results of a randomized controlled trial. *Pain*, 134(3), 263–276.
- Sullivan, M. J. L. (2003). Emerging trends in secondary prevention of pain-related disability. *The Clinical Journal of Pain*, 19, 77–79.
- Sullivan, M., Feuerstein, M., Gatchel, R. J., Linton, S. J., & Pransky, G. (2005a). Integrating psychological and behavioral interventions to achieve optimal rehabilitation outcomes. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 15, 475–489.
- Sullivan, M. J. L., Ward, L. C., Tripp, D., French, D. J., Adams, H., & Stanish, W. D. (2005b). Secondary prevention of work disability: Community-based psychosocial intervention for musculoskeletal disorders. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 15(3), 377–392.
- Sullivan, M. J. L., Adams, H., Rhodenizer, T., & Stanish, W. D. (2006a). A psychosocial risk factor-targeted intervention for the prevention of chronic pain and disability following whiplash injury. *Physical Therapy*, 86(1), 8–18.
- Sullivan, M. J., Adams, H., Thibault, P., Corbiere, M., & Stanish, W. D. (2006b). Initial depression severity and the trajectory of recovery following cognitive-behavioral intervention for work disability. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 16(1), 63–74.
- Turk, D., Meichenbaum, D., & Genest, M. (1983). *Pain and behavioral medicine: A cognitive-behavioral perspective*. New York: Guilford.
- Vlaeyen, J. W., & Linton, S. J. (2000). Fear-avoidance and its consequences in chronic musculoskeletal pain: A state of the art. *Pain*, 85(3), 317–332.
- Vowles, K. E., & McCracken, L. M. (2008). Acceptance and values-based action in chronic pain: A study of treatment effectiveness and process. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 76(3), 397–407.
- Williams, A. C., Pither, C. E., Richardson, P. H., Nicholas, M. K., Justins, D. M., Morley, S., et al. (1996). The effects of cognitive-behavioural therapy in chronic pain. *Pain*, 65(2–3), 282–284.
- Zachrisson-Forsell, M. (1981). The back school. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976)*, 6, 104–106.

Chronobiology

Tanja Lange

Department of Neuroendocrinology, University of Luebeck, Lübeck, Germany

Definition

Chronobiology is the science of periodic changes in physiology and behavior of living organisms (Halberg 1969). It describes these *biological rhythms* with statistical methods (*chronobiometry*) and elucidates the underlying molecular/biochemical mechanisms at a cellular and systemic level, the

entrainment of these internal timing systems by external time cues, the effects of timed light and drug therapy (*chronotherapy*, *chronopharmacology*, *chronotoxicology*), as well as disturbances of biological rhythms that may lead to pathology (Dunlap et al. 2004; Foster and Kreitzman 2004; Koukkari and Sothorn 2006; Redfern and Lemmer 2007). In behavioral medicine, the most relevant biological rhythms show a period of about 24 h (*circadian*), 7 days (*circaseptan*), 30 days (*circatrigintan*), or 1 year (*circannual*).

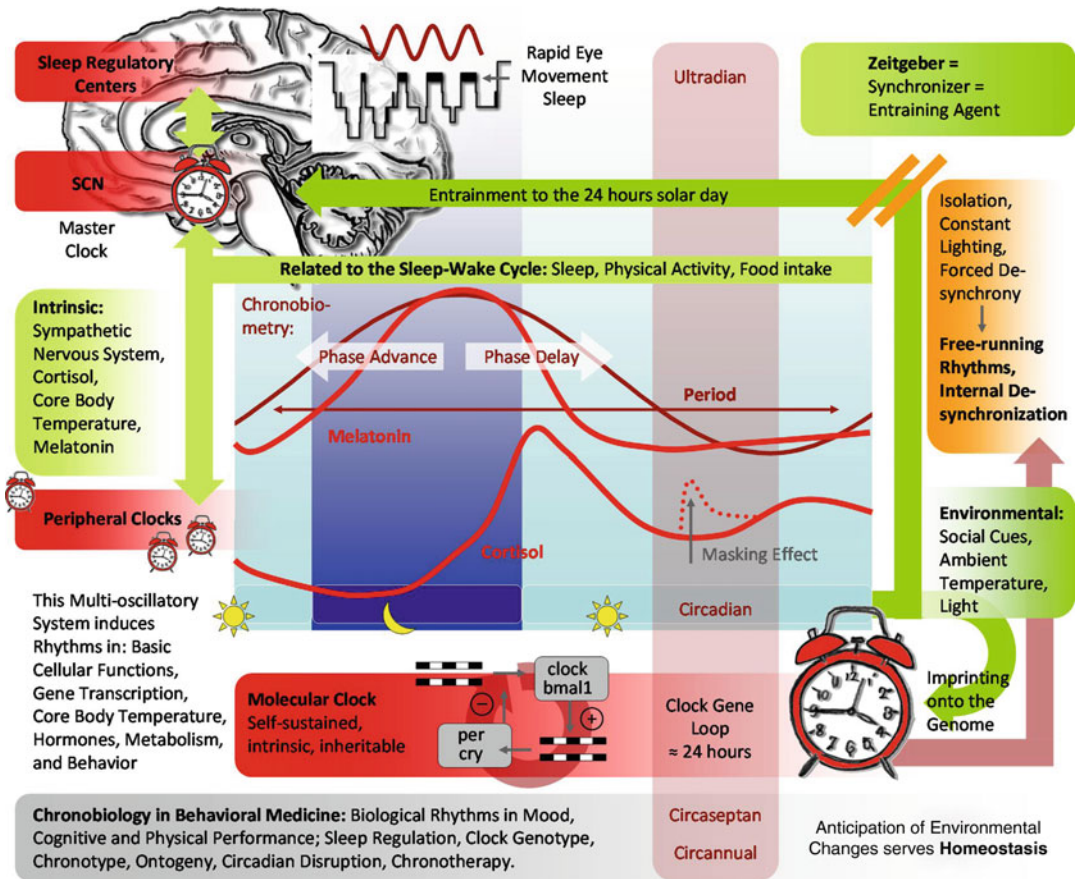
Description

Life is adapted to rhythms that are generated by movements of the Earth, the Moon, and the Sun in relation to each other. Depending on the features of its habitat, every living organism on earth, including bacteria, plants, animals, and humans, shows rhythmic changes in physiology and behavior with different periods like that of tidal rhythms (~12 h, *circahemidian*), the daily light–dark cycle (~24 h, *circadian*), the weekly cycle (presumably stemming from alternations between spring- and neap-tides, ~7 days, *circaseptan*), the lunar cycle (~30 days, *circatrigintan*), and the seasons (~1 year, *circannual*). Periods that are longer than 1 day are called *infradian*, those that are shorter than 1 day are termed *ultradian*. Ultradian oscillations show very different periods and, like the 90 min of the non-REM-REM sleep cycle (REM: rapid eye movement), often lack an environmental counterpart.

Biological rhythms do not simply follow environmental changes but rather appear to anticipate them. They are still evident if an organism is deprived of any external time cue (*zeitgeber*) or in isolated cells in culture (e.g., white blood cells). Under such *free-running* conditions, a given rhythm period typically slightly deviates from the external cycle (e.g., 24.2 h instead of 24 h, hence the term “circa-dian”) and this unmasked endogenous rhythm represents a trait with considerable interindividual differences (Aschoff 1965). This indicates that environmental rhythms are adopted by inheritable internal time-keeping systems. It is assumed that endogenous timing mechanisms developed during evolution, with the goal

of adapting the organism to relevant environmental changes (like the availability of food, exposure to predators, changes in ambient temperature, or periods of efficient reproduction) in an anticipatory manner. This anticipatory cycling is advantageous, e.g., with respect to energetic efficiency, and was therefore preserved by natural selection. The adaptation of living matter to environmental changes reflects a basic concept of physiology, i.e., *homeostasis* – the maintenance of the “internal milieu” of the organisms at a constant level (*setpoint*) despite external challenges. Core body temperature, e.g., is homeostatically regulated. In addition to the advantage of adaptation, more complex organisms might have benefited also from the separation of otherwise incompatible body and brain functions in time (e.g., encoding of new information during the active period and consolidation, i.e., the covert reactivation of “fresh” memory traces that is incompatible with active stimulus processing during the resting period).

To sum up, astronomically generated rhythms were evolutionary imprinted onto the genome of living organisms, creating anticipatory biological clocks and the organization of physiology and behavior in time (see Fig. 1). The underlying molecular machinery has been elucidated mainly for the circadian rhythm in the 1970s when the first *clock gene* was described in the fruit fly. By now many clock genes are discovered that are linked with their respective transcripts in an interlocked feedback loop that takes about 24 h for a full cycle. Activity in this feedback loop represents the molecular pendulum of the clock (Panda et al. 2002). In mammalian brain and peripheral organs, clock genes control basic cellular processes and up to 10% of the transcriptome in a tissue-specific manner. Though sophisticated, these self-sustained clocks are not precise – as it becomes evident under free-running conditions – and therefore have to be reset and synchronized (*entrainment*) by an external *zeitgeber* (*synchronizer*, *entraining agent*). The most important *zeitgeber* is light. Photoc entrainment is provided by nonvisual retinal cells that convey the information about light and darkness to the hypothalamic *suprachiasmatic nuclei* (SCN), called the “master clock.” In a hierarchic structure, the



Chronobiology, Fig. 1 Environmental rhythms like the 24 h light–dark cycle were evolutionary imprinted onto the genome of living matter. Clock genes and their transcripts built up the molecular clock that ticks in the hypothalamic suprachiasmatic nuclei (SCN), but also in many if not all cells of the human body. As these molecular clocks are not precise they are synchronized (entrained) by zeitgeber. Environmental zeitgebers reset the phase of the SCN that itself signals to sleep regulatory centers and synchronizes peripheral clocks by intrinsic and activity-related factors. This multi-oscillatory system induces rhythms in physiology and behavior that are synchronized to environmental

rhythms and therefore serve to anticipate external challenges (homeostasis). Two hormonal rhythms are depicted that can be statistically described (chronobiometry). Experimental procedures in chronobiology aim to dissect the effects of endogenous clocks from entraining and masking influences. Apart from circadian rhythms, chronobiology also describes oscillations with periods that are shorter than 1 day (like the ultradian rhythm of rapid eye movement sleep) and with periods of about 7 days (circaseptan) and about 1 year (circannual). Important aspects of chronobiology in behavioral medicine are summarized in the grey box

SCN signals to other brain centers (like sleep regulatory centers) and synchronizes clocks in peripheral tissues via the sympathetic nervous system and the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis. Apart from light, further external and internal synchronizers are ambient and core body temperature, sleep, physical activity, melatonin, food intake, and social cues. So, workdays and weekends are likely synchronizers for circaseptan rhythms, whereas circannual rhythms are

assumed to be entrained by the length of the daily light span and changes in environmental temperature.

In animals and humans, this complex time-keeping system of clock genes and SCN regulates the sleep-wake cycle and induces rhythmic changes in cognitive and physical performance, core body temperature, hormone levels, and metabolism. Chronobiologists assess such rhythms with inferential statistical tools

(*chronobiometry*) either under “natural,” i.e., entrained, conditions or in experimental settings that allow to dissect the endogenous component of these rhythms from *masking* environmental factors or behaviors. Experimental designs use isolation procedures (cave or bunker experiments) or constant lighting conditions in humans and animals, respectively, to eliminate external time cues. Emerging free-running rhythms may then differ among parameters in terms of their period such that, e.g., the sleep-wake-cycle may desynchronize from the rhythm of core body temperature (*internal desynchronization*) (Aschoff 1965). The *forced desynchrony protocol* intentionally induces such an effect. It exploits the fact that an endogenous rhythm can only be entrained to periods that differ not too much from its own period (*range of entrainment*). If, therefore, the sleep-wake cycle is experimentally scheduled to 28 h, the rhythm of core body temperature runs out of phase with its own free-running period. Another elaborate approach used to dissociate the circadian rhythm from masking influences in humans is the *constant routine protocol*. In this protocol, the participants stay awake for more than 24 h under constant ambient light and temperature, in a supine position in bed with hourly isocaloric snacks and beverages. All these methods aim to scrutinize the contribution of multiple endogenous oscillators as well as entraining environmental, intrinsic, and activity-related factors to biological rhythms. In addition, they address the bidirectional interactions between the circadian system and sleep.

To unravel molecular mechanisms of biological rhythms chronobiologists study genetically manipulated animals (*knockouts* or *mutants* of certain clock genes in the whole genome or in individual organs), silence clock gene activity with *RNA interference* (RNA: ribonucleic acid) or couple clock genes with *luciferase* to allow continuous long-term monitoring of gene activity in cell cultures as well as in vivo (Panda et al. 2002). Human research focuses on twin studies and clock gene *polymorphisms*. *Clock genotypes* can then be set into relation to the circadian preference of individuals (*chronotype*, i.e., whether

one is a “lark” or an “owl”) that is assessed by investigating the phase of rhythms under “natural” entrained conditions by means of questionnaires, diaries, actigraphy, or *dim light melatonin onset* (DLMO). In this context, ontogenetic research elucidates the phase shifts that occur during lifetime, i.e., the phase delay in adolescence and the phase advance in the elderly (Phillips 2009).

Chronobiology is an interdisciplinary science covering all fields of medical practice and research. Circadian, circaseptan, circatrigintan, and circannual rhythms are described in all disciplines of clinical medicine with respect to physiological functions, laboratory findings and the incidence of disease symptoms. In addition, efficacy and potential side effects of medical interventions show time dependency (*chronopharmacology*, *chronotoxicology*). Disruption of biological rhythms, as evident in shift workers, travels across time zones (*jet lag*), but also due to modern lifestyle, compromises mood, sleep, cognitive and physical performance, activates the stress axes, and may eventually lead to pathology and disorders like major depression, metabolic syndrome, obesity, immunosuppression, low grade systemic inflammation, and cardiovascular diseases. Conversely, sleep curtailment, chronic stress, high fat diet, many infections, and autoimmune diseases are associated with *circadian disruption* thus feeding into a vicious circle (Phillips 2009). These relationships, however, also offer therapeutic options of re-entraining biological rhythms by means of *zeitgebers* (*chronotherapy*, *chronobiotics*), as it is done with bright light therapy in mood disorders and the administration of melatonin to prevent jet lag. The optimal timing of such interventions can be assessed by *phase-response curves* representing an important research tool of chronobiology. In addition, cognitive behavioral therapy can alleviate circadian and sleep disruption in psychiatric and neurologic diseases. As epidemiological data indicate that circadian disruption and associated sleep curtailments increase the incidence of metabolic and cardiovascular diseases and the risk of cancer, it is the goal of future research to elucidate if

re-entrainment of biological rhythms can likewise be beneficial to prevent these diseases in shift workers and the elderly.

Cross-References

- Cardiovascular Disease
- Central Nervous System
- Circadian Rhythm
- Cognitive Behavioral Therapy (CBT)
- Cognitive Function
- Corticosteroids
- Cortisol
- Diurnal Mood Variation
- Homeostasis
- Hypothalamus
- Inflammation
- Life Span
- Lifestyle Changes
- Metabolic Syndrome
- Metabolism
- Mood
- Pathophysiology
- Polymorphism
- Sleep
- Stress
- Sympathetic Nervous System (SNS)

References and Readings

- Aschoff, J. (1965). Circadian rhythms in man. *Science*, 148, 1427–1432.
- Dunlap, J. C., Loros, J. J., & DeCoursey, P. J. (2004). *Chronobiology: Biological timekeeping*. Sunderland: Sinauer.
- Foster, R. G., & Kreitzman, L. (2004). *Rhythms of life: The biological clocks that control the daily lives of every living thing*. London: Yale University Press.
- Halberg, F. (1969). Chronobiology. *Annual Review of Physiology*, 31, 675–725.
- Koukkari, W. L., & Sothorn, R. B. (2006). *Introducing biological rhythms: A primer on the temporal organization of life, with implications for health, society, reproduction, and the natural environment*. New York: Springer.
- Panda, S., Hogenesch, J. B., & Kay, S. A. (2002). Circadian rhythms from flies to human. *Nature*, 417, 329–335.
- Phillips, M. L. (2009). Circadian rhythms: Of owls, larks and alarm clocks. *Nature*, 458, 142–144.

Redfern, P. H., & Lemmer, B. (2007). *Physiology and pharmacology of biological rhythms* (Vol. 125). New York: Springer.

Websites

- Center for Chronobiology. University of California, San Diego. <http://ccb.ucsd.edu>
- Howard Hughes Medical Institute. *Biological clocks, lecture series*. <http://www.hhmi.org/biointeractive/clocks/lectures.html>
- Society for Research on Biological Rhythms. <http://www.srbr.org>
- Zivkovic, B.. *Clock tutorials*. <http://borazivkovic.blogspot.com/2005/01/clock-tutorials.html>

Church Attendance

- Religious Ritual

Church-Based Interventions

Marianne Shaughnessy
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

Faith community interventions; Faith-based interventions

Definition

Refers to any research, clinical, public health, or data collection initiative targeted to a faith-based organization or community.

Description

Academicians, clinicians, and researchers have partnered with church-based or faith-based organizations for the purposes of descriptive and interventional research, launching pilot programs and studying public health problems for years. There are multiple advantages to partnering with such

populations for these purposes. These groups tend to be established communities, with an organized, recognized authority structure that provides a support network for all those within the group. This infrastructure is well suited to allow investigation of social and public health issues. Secondly, the groups share a common belief and value system, allowing for an assessment of how those beliefs affect behaviors. To the extent that health-related lifestyle behaviors are dictated by religious beliefs, studies of these populations can address health outcomes, such as those explored in the Nun's study (University of Minnesota), or the influence of genetics on health, as in studies of the Old Order Amish (Hsueh et al. 2000). Finally, depending on the size of the faith community, it is possible to capture a large number of potential study subjects within one faith community or a network of faith communities.

Recognizing that church- and faith-based organizations could be significant partners in addressing social and health-related issues, President George W. Bush established the White House Office of Faith-Based and Community Initiatives in 2001 as a means to allow faith-based organizations to apply for federal funding to implement social service programs. Under criticism from the Americans United for the Separation of Church and State and the American Civil Liberties Union, safeguards were put into place that prevent these groups from advancing their religious agendas while administering programs using federal funds. In 2009, President Barack Obama changed the name of the organization to the White House Office of Faith-based and Neighborhood Partnerships. The Department of Health and Human Services now houses the Center for Faith-based and Neighborhood Partnerships. This center does not administer grants but provides information on building and sustaining partnerships for community-based programs. Several other US government departments currently host initiatives for faith-based and community partnerships, including the Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration and the US Department of Agriculture.

Research interventions conducted within the context of church- or faith-based organizations can be effectively conducted only with careful consideration in advance of the church and community challenges, selection of the right faith community to meet the needs of the project, understanding of how to best implement the project without offense and skillful marketing strategies. Rev. Melvin Tuggle (2000) offers specific guidance on related principles and how to approach and interact with faith communities in inner-cities in "It is Well with My Soul: Churches and Institutions Collaborating for Public Health." In this book, Rev. Tuggle suggests the importance of approaching these collaborations as a true partnership and makes specific recommendations for ensuring a successful collaboration.

Churches and faith communities can also be starting points for interventions designed to be expanded to the community at large. By introducing a program, initiative, or intervention at a church, potential participants may observe the enthusiasm of those already engaged and create support for expansion of the project beyond the church group. With careful planning in advance and a thoughtful, respectful approach, it is possible to create a true partnership for research or clinical care projects to improve public health.

References and Readings

- Hsueh, W. C., Mitchell, B. D., Aburomia, R., Pollin, T., Sakul, H., Gelder Ehm, M., et al. (2000). Diabetes in the old order Amish: Characterization and heritability analysis of the Amish Family Diabetes Study. *Diabetes Care*, 23(5), 595–601.
- Tuggle, M. (2000). *It is well with my soul: Churches and institutions collaborating for public health*. Washington, DC: American Public Health Association.
- University of Minnesota. *The nun study*. Accessed 13 May 2011., from <https://www.healthstudies.umn.edu/nunstudy/>
- US Department of Health and Human Services. *Center for faith-based and neighborhood partnerships*. <http://www.hhs.gov/partnerships/>

Church-Based Support

- [Religious Social Support](#)

Cigarette

- [Nicotine](#)

Cigarette Smoking

- [Smoking Behavior](#)

Cigarette Smoking and Health

- [Smoking and Health](#)

Cigarette Smoking Cessation

- [Smoking Cessation](#)

Circadian Clock

- [Circadian Rhythm](#)

Circadian Rhythm

Fumiharu Togo
Graduate School of Education, The University of
Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

[Circadian clock](#)

Definition

A circadian rhythm is an approximately 24-h cycle of a biochemical, physiological, or behavioral process that is generated by internal biological clocks. In most animals, the intrinsic rhythm of the clock (cycle length) is slightly longer than 24 h, but normally the clock is synchronized to the 24-h day (entrainment) by environmental time signals (zeitgebers), the primary one of which is solar light. In the absence of timing signals (temporal isolation), circadian rhythms free-run on a non-24-h cycle, expressing the intrinsic rhythm of the clock. The process of synchronization involves daily, stimulus-induced adjustment (phase shifts) that compensate for the difference between the intrinsic period of the internal clock and the period of the environmental cycle. Light can induce phase shift that varies in magnitude and direction depending on the circadian phase of exposure. Light exposure in the subjective morning resets the internal clock to an earlier time, while light exposure in the early subjective night resets the clock to a later time. Intensity of the light, duration of the light pulse, and the spectral characteristics of the light determine the magnitude of a phase shift at any specific circadian phase. Blue light is an efficient wavelength to shift the circadian rhythms.

The suprachiasmatic nucleus (SCN), which is situated bilaterally in the hypothalamus, just above the optic chiasm, is of central importance in the generation and entrainment of mammalian circadian rhythms. Destruction of SCN disrupts a wide variety of circadian rhythms. Photic entrainment is thought to be largely mediated by retinal photoreceptors. Approximately one third of SCN cells are photically responsive which is believed to result from glutamatergic stimulation of N-methyl-D-aspartate receptors through the retinohypothalamic tract. Photic and glutamatergic stimulation of SCN cells in the early subjective night causes phase delay, whereas such stimulation late in the subjective night causes phase advance.

Circadian rhythms in some species can also be shifted and entrained by stimuli other than light,

such as exercise, social stimuli, or feeding. These so-called nonphotic zeitgebers may in some cases engage a circadian pacemaker system separate from that affected by light. Nonphotic influences on the clock phase appear to be mediated by the geniculohypothalamic tract, neuropeptide Y, and serotonergic pathways. Although the mechanism that constitutes exercise to promote phase shift in the human circadian clock is unclear, exercise during the late subjective day has been shown to produce a phase advance of the rhythm, whereas exercise during most of the subjective night produces phase delays.

Cross-References

- [Neuropeptide Y \(NPY\)](#)

References and Readings

- Koukkari, W. L., & Sothorn, R. B. (2006). *Introducing biological rhythms*. New York: Springer.
- Refinetti, R. (2006). *Circadian physiology* (2nd ed.). Boca Raton: CRC Press.

Cirrhosis of the Liver

- [Hepatitis C and Cognitive Functioning](#)

Citalopram

- [Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors \(SSRIs\)](#)

Civility

- [Respect](#)

Classic Migraine

- [Migraine Headache](#)

Classical Conditioning

Annie T. Ginty
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

- [Pavlovian conditioning](#)



Classical Conditioning, Fig. 1 Pavlovian conditioning

Definition

Classical conditioning is learning by association and focuses on what happens before an individual responds. It is often used in behavioral training. Perhaps, the most well-known example of classical conditioning is that of Pavlov’s dogs. Pavlov measured salivation responses in dogs. Before conditioning, he rang a bell and noted that there was no increase in saliva from the dogs. Then, during conditioning, he rang a bell (unconditioned stimulus) and immediately put meat powder (conditioned stimulus) on the dogs’ tongues which caused them to salivate (unconditioned response); he continued this several times. Finally, after conditioning, he rang the bell again but without food and the dogs salivated (conditioned response). Pavlov used classical conditioning so the dogs associated an unrelated stimulus (the bell) with food. Thus, they eventually produced the same saliva response they would for food with the bell. For further details, see Coon and Mitterer (2010) (Fig. 1).

Cross-References

► [Operant Conditioning](#)

References and Further Reading

Coon, D., & Mitterer, J. O. (2010). *Introduction to psychology: Gateways to mind and behavior* (12th ed.). Wadsworth: Wadsworth Cengage Learning.

Clinical Agreement

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Medical agreement](#)

Definition

It is important in both clinical medicine and research to assess the extent to which different individuals (e.g., clinicians, observers) observe and report the same phenomenon (Jekel et al. 2007). Ideally, there would be perfect intraobserver agreement (the same person would always observe and report the same phenomenon in an identical manner), and perfect interobserver agreement (different people would observe and report the same phenomenon identically). However, these ideals are precisely that: they describe an ideal scenario, and real-life scenarios are often quite different. Elmore et al. (1994) studied both intraobserver and interobserver agreement among radiologists’ interpretations of a specific mammogram, demonstrating that radiologists can differ, sometimes substantially, in their interpretations of mammograms and in their recommendations for management.

Quantifying the extent to which clinical agreement exists in a given situation is therefore important. Consider the following hypothetical data presented by Jekel et al. (2007) concerning clinical agreement between two clinicians regarding their diagnosis of the presence or absence of a cardiac murmur upon physical examination of 100 patients:

Clinician number 1			
Clinician no. 2	Murmur present	Murmur absent	Total
Murmur present	30	7	37
Murmur absent	3	60	63
Total	33	67	100

These data show the following:

1. For 30 patients, the clinicians both determined the presence of a murmur.
2. For 60 patients, the clinicians both determined the absence of a murmur.
3. For 7 patients, Clinician number 2 determined the presence of a murmur while Clinician number 1 determined the absence of a murmur.
4. For 3 patients, Clinician number 1 determined the presence of a murmur while Clinician number 2 determined the absence of a murmur.

The maximum possible degree of clinical agreement is equal to the total number of patients, i.e., 100. This would occur when the two clinicians made the same determination for every patient. As already noted, this is an ideal but unlikely scenario. (Actually, the operationalization of the term “ideal” in this context has another aspect when making clinical judgments: Ideally, both clinicians make the same and CORRECT determination; it is a theoretical possibility that they could agree 100% of the time and also be wrong 100% of the time.) Various calculations can be conducted to quantify the degree of agreement.

The actual degree of agreement is 90 out of 100 cases. This value is typically presented as a percentage, which is 90% (the numbers here are deliberately chosen to facilitate straightforward calculations). However, purely by random chance, it is possible that the clinicians would agree sometimes. Imagine a scenario in which the two clinicians were asked simply to write a list of 100 terms, each time choosing between “murmur present” and “murmur absent.” Probabilistically, there would likely be some agreement. A key question therefore becomes: To what extent does the degree of clinical agreement between the two clinicians improve upon chance agreement alone?

The kappa test ratio provides an answer to this question. In this case, the mathematics (not presented here) lead to a kappa test ratio of 0.78, which is typically expressed in percentage terms, i.e., 78%. To put this in perspective, consider the arbitrary but useful divisions for the interpretation of kappa scores as presented by Sacket et al. (1991):

1. Less than 20% represents negligible improvement in the degree of clinical agreement over chance alone.
2. 20–39% represents minimal improvement.
3. 40–59% represents fair improvement.
4. 60–79% represents good improvement.
5. 80% and above represents excellent improvement.

These hypothetical data yielded a kappa score of 78%, as noted already, meaning that this degree

of improvement would fall in the “good improvement” category. With regard to real data, Jekel et al. (2007) stated that “the reliability of most tests in clinical medicine that require human judgment seems to fall in the fair or good range.”

Cross-References

- [Clinical Decision-Making](#)
- [Probability](#)

References and Further Reading

- Elmore, J. G., Wells, C. K., Lee, C. H., Howard, D. H., & Feinstein, A. R. (1994). Variability in radiologists' interpretation of mamograms. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 331, 1493–1499.
- Jekel, J. F., Katz, D. L., Elmore, J. G., & Wild, D. M. G. (2007). *Epidemiology, biostatistics, and preventive medicine* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders/Elsevier.
- Sacket, D. L., Haynes, R. B., Guyatt, G. H., & Tugwell, P. (1991). *Clinical epidemiology: A basic science for clinical medicine* (2nd ed.). Boca Raton, FL: Little/Brown.

Clinical Decision-Making

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Decision analysis](#); [Medical decision-making](#)

Definition

Clinicians must make treatment decisions on a daily basis, and these decisions, or recommendations (final decisions are best made by the “health

team” of a physician and his or her patient) should be based on the best available evidence. The terms “evidence-based medicine” and “evidence-based practice” have become part of the health lexicon, and “evidence-based behavioral medicine” is also an established term (see the ► [“Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine \(EBBM\)”](#) entry in this encyclopedia for a detailed discussion).

While clinical decision-making relies on evidence, the evidence in the medical literature (with the exception of case reports) typically describes the experience of a population of patients rather than an individual patient. Evidence-based clinical decision-making, therefore, requires “the application of population-based data to the care of an individual patient whose experiences will be different, in ways both discernible and not, from the collective experience reported in the literature” (Katz 2001). He also observed that “All of the art and all of the science of medicine depend on how artfully and scientifically we as practitioners reach our decisions. The art of clinical decision-making is judgment, an even more difficult concept to grapple with than evidence.”

Decision analysis is a formalized approach to making complex clinical decisions that relies on plotting a “decision tree” containing the various options and then rating each in terms of probability and utility. In this way, the clinician attempts to make explicit the quantitative principles upon which a given clinical decision will be based. Once these principles have been identified from the literature, both the clinician and the patient can consider them, challenge them as appropriate, and systematically eliminate treatment (or nontreatment) options until a clear preference emerges (Katz 2001).

Cross-References

- [Clinical Agreement](#)
- [Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine \(EBBM\)](#)
- [Generalizability](#)
- [Human Factors/Ergonomics](#)

References and Further Reading

- Katz, D. L. (2001). *Clinical epidemiology and evidence-based medicine: Fundamental principles of clinical reasoning and research*. Thousand Oaks: Sage.

Clinical Equipoise

- [Principle of Equipoise](#)

Clinical Ethics

- [Ethical Issues](#)

Clinical Guideline

- [Clinical Practice Guidelines](#)

Clinical Health Psychology

- [Medical Psychology](#)

Clinical Practice Guidelines

Karina Davidson¹ and Joan Duer-Hefe²

¹Department of Medicine, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

²Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

Clinical guideline; Consensus guideline; Guideline; Practice guideline

Definition

Clinical practice guidelines “are systematically developed statements to assist practitioner and patient decisions about appropriate health care for specific clinical circumstances” (Field and Lohr 1990). Good practice guidelines should be specific, comprehensive, and yet flexible enough to be useful (Field and Lohr 1992).

Description

Clinical practice guidelines are needed because early reports suggested that less than 5% of medical treatment decisions were based on strong research evidence; about half were based on shared clinician beliefs that had minimal scientific support and half were based on personal opinion (Field and Lohr 1990). Well-constructed clinical practice guidelines hold the promise of providing information to enable clinicians to choose the best treatments, diagnoses, or screening practices available, and regulators to set policy based on the current state of scientific knowledge. Practice guidelines can assist policymakers and public health advocates to be able to better determine which behavioral medicine practices should be reimbursed (Davidson et al. 2004). Risk management – that is, the effort to lower or curb the number of poor outcomes and potential for malpractice litigation – is another possible reason for developing clinical practice guidelines. They can also be used when considering accreditation and certification for education programs and individual clinicians. However, the primary reason for developing and then implementing clinical practice guidelines is the expectation that they will improve the patient, the public, and the community’s health.

Each clinical practice guideline differs with respect to the practice it covers, the way in which the evidence is collected, the rules used to judge a practice as useful, and the way in which these guidelines are communicated to influence patient care. Essentially, some organization, whether a governmental body, a professional society, or an empanelled group of experts, reviews

the evidence to support a specific screening, diagnostic, or treatment practice and then provides a guideline advising on the usefulness of that practice. *Evidence-based* practice guidelines are often distinguished from *consensus* practice guidelines that are informed by relevant research but not necessarily guided by systematic evidence reviews (Davidson et al. 2004).

American Heart Association (AHA), for example, has set out an explicit and formal review system for creating a guideline. The need for the guideline, the composition of the members of the writing group, and the approval process are all prespecified. Second, the criteria for searching for the evidence, the grade that will be given the evidence, and the summary statement similarly must also follow the prespecified system. For example, evidence for benefit of a drug or a preventive action is considered “A” if there are multiple randomized controlled trials or meta-analyses from multiple populations that all show benefit to the patient or the community. The AHA methodology handbook for creating systematic practice guidelines can be found as a pdf at: <http://www.americanheart.org/presenter.jhtml?identifier=3039683>.

Similarly, the United States Preventative Services Task Force has set up a system for objectively obtaining and reviewing all evidence for preventative services and releases guidelines advising practitioners and patients about the level of evidence to support or refute the use of certain interventions <http://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/methods.htm>. There are many other bodies who create clinical practice guidelines, such as the American Psychiatric Association http://www.psych.org/mainmenu/psychiatricpractice/practiceguidelines_1.aspx and the CDC-sponsored Community Guide (Briss et al. 2000) <http://www.thecommunityguide.org/about/index.html>.

A examination of where to find clinical practice guidelines revealed that most first look online and prefer governmental agency guidelines over others (Burgers et al. 2003). There is an excellent resource to look for any relevant clinical practice guidelines that is run by AHRQ – The National Guideline Clearing house – <http://www.guideline.gov/>.

There are some excellent educational references that explain how to locate, evaluate, and then, if relevant, use the information in practice guidelines (Hayward et al. 1995; Wilson et al. 1995). For a systematic approach to assessing guidelines, the AGREE instrument is available. <http://www.agreecollaboration.org/>

There is no formal accrediting body or a professional society in behavioral medicine that regularly produces practice guidelines; locations of guidelines that may be useful for behavioral medicine can be found in this citation (Davidson et al. 2004).

There is an optimistic assumption that the application of clinical practice guidelines results in better patient outcomes (Spring et al. 2005). However, rigorous program evaluation to support this assertion is only in its beginning stages. Grimshaw and others (Grimshaw and Russell 1993) conducted a systematic review to address this question by examining evaluations of clinical guideline implementation for specific clinical conditions and preventative services. Of 59 papers, all but 4 detected significant improvements in the process of care following the introduction of guidelines. They concluded that explicit guidelines do improve clinical practice, but careful evaluation is always required. As few explicit behavioral medicine clinical practice guidelines exist, little is known about the adoption of evidence-based guidelines and their use in other fields, and certainly, this is uncharted within behavioral medicine (Spring et al.).

It is also by no means certain that using practices recommended by practice guidelines will decrease health care costs; in medicine, it has sometimes increased them (Sackett et al. 1996). However, in the absence of evidence-based practice guidelines, managed care organizations and other policymakers may reimburse the most economical treatment (Pincus 1994), a measure that would certainly restrict practice (Spring et al. 2005). The value of clinical practice guidelines for behavioral medicine is that, by making it possible to distinguish between effective and ineffective treatments, it encourages all of us to make

informed decisions about training, about practice, and about reimbursement.

Cross-References

► Human Factors/Ergonomics

References and Readings

- Briss, P. A., Zaza, S., Pappaioanou, M., Fielding, J., Wright-De Agüero, L., Truman, B. I., et al. (2000). Developing an evidence-based Guide to Community Preventive Services – Methods. The Task Force on Community Preventive Services. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 18, 35–43.
- Burgers, J. S., Cluzeau, F. A., Hanna, S. E., Hunt, C., & Grol, R. (2003). Characteristics of high-quality guidelines: Evaluation of 86 clinical guidelines developed in ten European countries and Canada. *International Journal of Technology Assessment in Health Care*, 19, 148–157.
- Davidson, K. W., Trudeau, K. J., Ockene, J. K., Orleans, C. T., & Kaplan, R. M. (2004). A primer on current evidence-based review systems and their implications for behavioral medicine. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 28, 226–238.
- Field, M. J., & Lohr, K. N. (1990). *Clinical practice guidelines: Directions for a new program. Committee to Advise the Public Health Service on clinical practice guidelines*. Washington, DC: Institute of Medicine.
- Field, M. J., & Lohr, K. N. (1992). *Guidelines for clinical practice: From development to use*. Washington, DC: Committee on Clinical Practice Guidelines, Division of Health Care Services, Institute of Medicine.
- Grimshaw, J. M., & Russell, I. T. (1993). Effect of clinical guidelines on medical practice: A systematic review of rigorous evaluations. *Lancet*, 342, 1317–1322.
- Hayward, R. S., Wilson, M. C., Tunis, S. R., Bass, E. B., & Guyatt, G. (1995). Users' guides to the medical literature. VIII. How to use clinical practice guidelines. A. Are the recommendations valid? The Evidence-Based Medicine Working Group. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 274, 570–574.
- Pincus, H. A. (1994). Dialogue: Treatment guidelines: What are the risks? Risks are outweighed by the benefits. *Behavioral Healthcare Tomorrow*, 3(40–41), 44–45.
- Sackett, D. L., Rosenberg, W. M., Gray, J. A., Haynes, R. B., & Richardson, W. S. (1996). Evidence based medicine: What it is and what it isn't. *British Medical Journal*, 312, 71–72.
- Spring, B., Pagoto, S., Kaufmann, P. G., Whitlock, E. P., Glasgow, R. E., Smith, T. W., et al. (2005). Invitation to a dialogue between researchers and clinicians about

evidence-based behavioral medicine. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 30, 125–137.

Wilson, M. C., Hayward, R. S., Tunis, S. R., Bass, E. B., & Guyatt, G. (1995). Users' guides to the medical literature. VIII. How to use clinical practice guidelines. B. what are the recommendations and will they help you in caring for your patients? The Evidence-Based Medicine Working Group. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 274, 1630–1632.

Clinical Predictors

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Synonyms

[Biomedical factors](#)

Definition

This term often refers to biomedical factors known to influence or predict health outcomes. These are taken into account in clinical practice, when estimating a patient's prognosis. Additionally, clinical predictors are considered in clinical research, when trying to test new etiological or prognostic factors, and there is a need to statistically control for known or previously empirically established clinical predictors, which could possibly explain the role of the new tested factor(s). In behavior medicine, this is often the common approach, when testing the effects of a psychosocial factor on health outcomes. Often, it is crucial to statistically control for the effects of known clinical predictors in behavior medicine, as clinical risk factors are either important in predicting prognosis or since they may be associated with and partly explain the prognostic effects of psychosocial factors. For example, in coronary heart disease, clinical risk factors can include left ventricular ejection fraction, extent and number of occluded vessels, troponin levels, and comorbidities. In cancer, clinical risk factors can include performance level, tumor stage, and treatments. In surgery, clinical risk factors can include age, severity of surgery, and comorbidities.

Chida et al. (2008), in their meta-analysis of over 160 studies, tested and found that psychosocial factors significantly predicted prognosis in cancer, and this was maintained also when statistically controlling for confounders, which included clinical predictors such as stage or treatment in some studies. One example in heart disease is the study by Denollet et al. (1996) showing that type D personality (high distress and social inhibition) predicted mortality from coronary heart disease, independent of clinical risk factors. Testing for such factors provides important strength to the claim that psychosocial factors predict health outcomes, independent of biomedical factors. This then justifies the need to consider and intervene in modifying psychosocial factors beyond targeting biomedical clinical predictors alone.

Cross-References

- [Confounding Influence](#)
- [Risk Factors and Their Management](#)

References and Further Readings

- Chida, Y., Hamer, M., Wardle, J., & Steptoe, A. (2008). Do stress-related psychosocial factors contribute to cancer incidence and survival? *Nature Clinical Practice Oncology*, 5, 466–475.
- Denollet, J., Sys, S. U., Stroobant, N., Rombouts, H., Gillebert, T. C., & Brutsaert, D. L. (1996). Personality as independent predictor of long-term mortality in patients with coronary heart disease. *Lancet*, 347(8999), 417–421.

Clinical Settings

Jeffrey L. Goodie

Department of Medical and Clinical Psychology, Uniformed Services University of the Health Sciences, Bethesda, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Collaborative care](#); [Integrated care](#); [Primary care](#); [Secondary care](#); [Tertiary care](#)

Definition

Clinical settings include primary, secondary, tertiary, and quaternary care settings. Primary care clinical settings are typically the first point of contact individuals have with the medical system. The majority of health care, including mental health care, is provided in the primary care setting. Family medicine (family practice), internal medicine, pediatric, and sometimes obstetrics and gynecological clinics are classified as primary care clinical settings. Primary care clinical settings are distinguished from other specialty care settings because no referral is needed for care, and it is the source of care continuity and advocacy for the patient. The full spectrum of health care from health promotion, disease prevention, and assessment and treatment of acute and chronic medical conditions occurs in primary care (American Academy of Family Physicians 2011; Shi and Singh 2010).

The remaining clinical care settings are distinguished by the complexity of specialty care that can be provided (Shi and Singh 2010). Secondary clinical settings include referral treatment facilities and specialists who do not typically have first contact with patients, but are not as specialized as those in tertiary care. Cardiology, dermatology, oncology, pulmonology, and urology clinics are examples of secondary clinical settings. Acute care provided in an emergency room and mental health care provided by specialists (e.g., psychologists, psychiatrists), although they do not require referrals, are commonly classified as secondary care. Tertiary clinical settings use highly specialized facilities and providers to assess and treat referred patients. In tertiary clinical settings, patients may receive complex surgeries (e.g., coronary artery bypass grafts) or intensive care when they are critically ill (e.g., intensive care units). Quaternary clinical settings offer unique, very highly specialized care, typically associated with regional, national, and/or academic health centers. Organ transplantation is one example of the care typically provided in a quaternary clinical setting.

Description

In the United States, the fastest-growing segment of the population is older adults (i.e., 65 years and

older), and the majority of their medical care will be provided in family and internal medicine primary care clinics. Concurrently, the Patient-Centered Medical Home (PCMH) (American Academy of Family Physicians (AAFP), American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP), American College of Physicians (ACP), and American Osteopathic Association (AOA) 2007) concept and the National Center for Quality Assurance's accreditation process of the PCMH reshaped the primary care clinical setting. These efforts facilitate the relationship between patients and their personal physicians. A key principle of the PCMH is the focus on the "whole person" and the biopsychosocial preventive care, acute care, chronic care, and end-of-life care needs of individuals at all stages of their lives.

Behavioral medicine is practiced across all clinical settings. Specialists in behavioral medicine commonly work in secondary (e.g., cardiology, chronic pain, oncology, and sleep) and tertiary clinical settings. In these clinics, the behavioral medicine specialist works as part of a multidisciplinary, interdisciplinary, or transdisciplinary team to research, assess, and/or treat the biopsychosocial needs of patients. For example, behavioral medicine specialists may work with patients recovering from coronary artery bypass surgeries, patients diagnosed with cancer, and those managing diabetes. Behavioral medicine specialists may conduct research, teach classes, or provide individual treatment related to managing the biopsychosocial factors (e.g., improving medication adherence, increasing social support, smoking cessation, stress management, weight management) associated with effective disease management. Sometimes specialized clinics are formed, such as a chronic pain or sleep clinic, where behavioral medicine specialists work with other secondary and tertiary providers to assess and treat the specific physiological, cognitive, and behavioral factors contributing to chronic pain and sleep disruption.

To meet the complex, chronic health-care needs of the aging population, researchers and providers are continuing to focus on behavioral medicine in secondary and tertiary care settings. Increasingly, behavioral medicine specialists are also collaborating with and integrating into the

primary care clinical setting to assist the primary care team in meeting the complex health-care needs of the elderly in a manner that brings evidence-based behavioral medicine assessment intervention to where the bulk of the elderly receive care. There are a variety of ways to describe how behavioral medicine services are integrated into primary care including co-location and embedding (American Academy of Family Physicians (AAFP), American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP), American College of Physicians (ACP), and American Osteopathic Association (AOA) 2007). Co-location may simply mean that the behavioral medicine services are offered in the same physical structure as the primary care clinic, but assessments and care are consistent with the standard of care typically followed by the behavioral medicine specialist (e.g., a psychologist seeing patients for 50-min hours) and maintaining separate records. An embedded behavioral medicine specialist is a primary care team member who follows the standard of care within primary care (e.g., 15–30 min appointments) and documents all care within the primary care medical record. The Primary Care Behavioral Health model (Hunter et al. 2017; Reiter et al. 2018) is one of the most widely used examples of an embedded service. In contrast to the Primary Care Behavioral Health model is the Care Management model, which uses a specialist, often a nurse, to assist with the education and coordination of care of patients. The care manager helps to ensure that patients are getting the services they need from the medical system. Some clinics are blending Primary Care Behavioral Health and Care Management models to optimize the benefits of both care models.

Cross-References

- Primary Care
- Primary Care Providers

References and Further Reading

American Academy of Family Physicians. (2011). Primary care. Retrieved from <http://www.aafp.org/online/en/home/policy/policies/p/primarycare.html#Parsys0002>

American Academy of Family Physicians (AAFP), American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP), American College of Physicians (ACP), American Osteopathic Association (AOA). (2007). Joint principles of the patient centered medical home. Retrieved from <http://www.pcpcc.net/joint-principles>

Hunter, C. L., Goodie, J. L., Oordt, M. S., & Dobmeyer, A. C. (2017). *Integrated behavioral health in primary care: Step-by-step guidance for assessment and intervention* (2nd ed.). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Reiter, J. T., Dobmeyer, A. C., & Hunter, C. L. (2018). The primary care behavioral health (PCBH) model: An overview and operational definition. *Journal of Clinical Psychology in Medical Settings*, 25, 109–126.

Shi, L., & Singh, D. A. (2010). *Essentials of the U.S. health care system*. Sudbury: Jones and Bartlett.

Clinical Study Design

- Clinical Trial

Clinical Trial

Amy Jo Marciano-Reik

Department of Bioethics, Cleveland Clinic,
Cleveland, OH, USA

Center for Genetic Research Ethics and Law, Case
Western Reserve University, Cleveland, OH,
USA

Synonyms

Clinical study design; Evidence-based medicine;
Observational designs; Observational studies;
Observational study; Randomized controlled trial

Definition

A clinical trial is a procedure in behavioral and biomedical research that is conducted to investigate potential treatments and effects of medical interventions. The public and US National Institutes of Health (NIH) service site, www.ClinicalTrials.gov, provides updated information

on clinical trials regarding background and history, availability, results and outcomes, and links to other useful resources. Clinical trials may be designed to examine the effects of certain medications (e.g., different types of drugs or doses of drugs; Kahn et al. 2008, *The Lancet*) or behavioral interventions (e.g., a smoking cessation program; Moller et al. 2002, *The Lancet*). There are many protocols and regulatory measures in place that must be adhered to for a clinical trial to be established. Once the clinical trial has been approved, researchers recruit healthy volunteers and/or patients to participate in the study. Patients may receive some benefit from the trial, such as access to a new medication; however, there are clinical trials where the patient/volunteer does not gain direct benefit from participating, such as serving in the control group (i.e., the placebo) or participating in a trial that includes a long-term design in which the treatments will not be available in the near/foreseeable future. These aspects will be different across clinical trials as the type, size, purpose, length, and location of trials will vary.

Cross-References

- [Clinical Decision-Making](#)
- [Clinical Practice Guidelines](#)
- [Clinical Settings](#)
- [Medical Outcomes Study](#)
- [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)
- [Randomized Controlled Trial](#)

References and Readings

- Appel, L. J., Moore, T. J., Obarzanek, E., Vollmer, W. M., Svetkey, L. P., Sacks, F. M., et al. (1997). A clinical trial of the effects of dietary patterns on blood pressure. DASH Collaborative Research Group. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 336(16), 1117–1124.
- Figueiredo, J. C., Grau, M. V., Haile, R. W., Sandler, R. S., Summers, R. W., Bresalier, R. S., et al. (2009). Folic acid and risk of prostate cancer: Results from a randomized clinical trial. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 101(6), 432–435.
- Kahn, R. S., Fleischhacker, W. W., Boter, H., Davidson, M., Vergouwe, Y., Keet, I. P., et al. (2008).

Effectiveness of antipsychotic drugs in first-episode schizophrenia and schizophreniform disorder: An open randomised clinical trial. *The Lancet*, 371(9618), 1085–1097.

Moller, A. M., Villebro, N., Pedersen, T., & Tønnesen, H. (2002). Effect of preoperative smoking intervention on postoperative complications: A randomised clinical trial. *The Lancet*, 359(9301), 114–117.

Saposnik, G., Saposnik, G., Mamdani, M., Bayley, M., Thorpe, K. E., Hall, J., et al. (2010). Effectiveness of virtual reality exercises in stroke rehabilitation (EVREST): Rationale, design, and protocol of a pilot randomized clinical trial assessing the Wii Gaming System. *International Journal of Stroke*, 5(1), 47–51. www.clinicaltrials.gov.

Clusters

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

A cluster is a term used in environmental epidemiology. A disease cluster can be defined as “an unusual aggregation, in time or space or both, of occurrences of a disease” (Hertz-Picciotto 2008). This means that an assessment of “usual” must occur. Usual rates of the disease can be determined from the distribution of occurrences in the same location in other time periods, in one or more similar locations at the same time period, or in larger areas than the specific locale of interest.

The theory of random sampling means that, at times, “chance clusters” will occur. Therefore, this possibility must be borne in mind when starting to investigate a particular cluster phenomenon. Consider the example of clusters of cancer in neighborhoods or small areas. It is of considerable importance to assess whether there is likely to be a specific environmental influence that is causing the cluster. If it is indeed likely, concerted efforts to identify the influence can be planned. However, if it appears particularly unlikely, such

investigation (and the necessary resources to complete it) may not be advisable immediately.

Jekel et al. (2007) discussed an instructive example concerning cancer. If the types of cancer in an identified cluster vary considerably, and are of the more common types (e.g., lung, breast, colon, prostate), it is probably the case that there is not a specific environmental hazard in the immediate locale. In contrast, if most of the cases in the cluster are of only one or a small number of cancers (especially leukemia, or brain or thyroid cancer), a more intensive investigation may be appropriate.

Reports to local, state, and federal agencies of perceived clusters are made frequently by concerned individuals or groups, physicians, and other health-care professionals. A balanced approach must be taken that balances public well-being with the acknowledgment that the majority of these reports do not lead to the identification of a common causal exposure. It is typically difficult to draw a conclusion from a single cluster, even one in which the aggregation of a disease seems particularly unusual.

Cross-References

- [Cancer, Prostate](#)
- [Cancer, Testicular](#)

References and Further Reading

- Hertz-Picciotto, I. (2008). Environmental epidemiology. In K. J. Rothman, S. Greenland, & T. L. Lash (Eds.), *Modern epidemiology* (3rd ed., pp. 598–619). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Jekel, J. F., Katz, D. L., Elmore, J. G., & Wild, D. M. G. (2007). *Epidemiology, biostatistics, and preventive medicine* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders/Elsevier.

Coagulation of Blood

Koji Miyazaki

Department of Hematology, Kitasato University
School of Medicine, Sagami-hara, Kanagawa,
Japan

Synonyms

[Hemostasis](#); [Thrombosis](#)

Definition

Normal Hemostasis

Hemostasis is a complex and highly regulated physiological process that maintains a balance between the liquid state of blood within the vasculature and the induction of blood clot formation following injury.

As such, it involves multisystem interactions between components of the vessel wall, blood cells (mainly platelets), and plasma proteins (Colman et al. 2005; Kaushansky et al. 2010).

The following events are involved in the hemostatic process:

1. Vasoconstriction: When the blood vessel ruptures, the wall of the vessel immediately contracts to reduce blood flow and thereby prevent blood loss.
2. Platelet activation: Platelets adhere to the vessel injuries via von Willebrand factor and aggregate with fibrinogen to form platelet plugs (primary hemostasis).
3. Blood coagulation: Clot formation occurs as a result of coagulation that is mediated by blood-clotting factors. Blood-clotting factors are inactive forms of proteolytic enzymes. When converted to active forms, they trigger a cascade of reactions that comprise the clotting process. At the initiation of coagulation, small amounts of thrombin are generated via FXa formation by the TF:FVIIa complex (“extrinsic pathway”).

CMV

- [Cytomegalovirus](#)

Large amounts of thrombin generation (“burst”) follow; this process is dependent on FXa formation via FIXa- and FVIIIa-mediated complexes on an activated platelet surface. Generated thrombin converts fibrinogen to insoluble fibrin, which forms a meshwork cross-linked by factor XIIIa. The fibrin fibers subsequently enclose platelets, erythrocytes, leukocytes, and other plasma proteins to form blood clots (secondary hemostasis).

4. Fibrinolysis: The blood clot is dissolved when healing is complete, thereby assuring long-term vascular patency.

Disturbances of Blood Coagulation

The human hemostatic system is dependent on a delicate equilibrium between procoagulant and anticoagulant factors that interact with each other to ensure effective hemostasis at the sites of vascular injury. The procoagulant forces include platelet adhesion, aggregation, and fibrin clot formation, while the anticoagulant forces include the natural inhibitors of coagulation and fibrinolysis.

Any disruption in the balance between clot formation and clot dissolution can result in either thrombosis (due to hypercoagulation) or hemorrhage (due to hypocoagulation) (Colman et al. 2005).

Congenital disorders of coagulation include those conditions in which there are deficiencies or excessive amounts of either procoagulant or anticoagulant factors, manifesting as excessive clotting or bleeding. These disorders can have a profound effect on the overall health, well-being, and quality of life of affected children. Further, thrombotic tendencies can be related to acquired risk factors, including obesity, immobilization, diabetes, and hypertension.

Cross-References

- [Aspirin](#)
- [Fibrinogen](#)
- [Fibrinolysis](#)
- [Obesity: Causes and Consequences](#)

References and Readings

- Colman, R. W., Marder, V. J., Clowes, A. W., George, J. N., Goldhaber, S. Z., et al. (2005). *Hemostasis and thrombosis* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Kaushansky, K., Lichtman, M. A., Beutler, E., Kipps, T. J., Seligsohn, U., Prchal, J. T., et al. (2010). *Williams hematology* (8th ed.). Hightstown: McGraw-Hill Professional.

Coding RNA

- [RNA](#)

Coffee

- [Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine](#)

Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine

Astrid Nehlig
U666, INSERM, Faculty of Medicine, University of Strasbourg, Strasbourg, France

Synonyms

[Age-related cognitive decline](#); [Alertness](#); [Alzheimer’s disease](#); [Anxiety](#); [Attention](#); [Caffeine](#); [Coffee](#); [Cognitive abilities](#); [Concentration](#); [Mood](#); [Pregnancy](#); [Sleep](#); [Vigilance](#)

Definition

Coffee is the drink most consumed by adults after water. Caffeine is the psychoactive substance contained in coffee, tea, soda, cocoa, and chocolate.

Description

In this entry, we will summarize the main effects known about coffee and caffeine consumption on health based on the numerous studies published over the last 10 years. The recent studies have reported the beneficial effects of moderate doses of coffee (3–4 cups per day) on alertness, vigilance, and cognitive abilities. However, coffee/caffeine can disturb sleep and generate anxiety. Its lifelong consumption slows down age-related cognitive decline and decreases the risk for developing Parkinson or Alzheimer’s disease, as well as type 2 diabetes and numerous cancers (cancers of the digestive tract, breast, endometrial, and skin in particular). Coffee has no negative influence on cardiovascular health. However, coffee/caffeine should be consumed in moderation during pregnancy. The data summarized here come from both animal preclinical and human studies and in numerous cases originate in reviews and meta-analyses of the studies published in a given area. This large wealth of data allowed the evolution of the negative vision present in most minds that coffee was not good for health.

Coffee is the drink most consumed by adults. Caffeine is the psychoactive substance contained in coffee, tea, soda, cocoa, and chocolate (Table 1). It is also found in analgesic medications, energetic drinks, and over-the-counter slimming creams. The mean world consumption of caffeine, the major constituent of coffee (Table 2), is 1 mg/kg/day in adults from which

about 80% come from coffee. It reaches 2.4–4.0 mg/kg/day in the USA and Canada, up to 7.0 mg/kg/day in Scandinavia. In 7–10-year-old children, caffeine consumption ranges from 0.5 to 1.8 mg/kg/day in developed countries, mainly from sodas and chocolate.

Low to moderate consumption of caffeine (50–250 mg, equivalent to a small to 2 large cups of coffee in one sitting) generates positive effects: feelings of well-being, relaxation, good mood, energy, increased alertness, and better concentration. The consumption of high to very high doses (400–800 mg, or 5–10 large cups of coffee in one sitting) leads to negative effects: nervousness, anxiety, aggressiveness, insomnia, tachycardia, and trembling. The moderate consumption of coffee and caffeine (3–4 cups/day) has no harmful effects on health (Table 3).

Caffeine absorption by the gastrointestinal tract reaches 99% in 45 min. Caffeine crosses all biological membranes, including the blood–brain barrier and brain concentration is close to plasma concentration. The half-life of caffeine ranges from 0.7 to 1.2 h in the rat and 2.5–4.5 h in humans. It is reduced by 30–50% in smokers, increased twofold by oral contraception, and considerably prolonged during the third trimester of pregnancy, as well as in the newborn and infant less than 6 months old.

Caffeine acts as an antagonist at adenosine receptors. Adenosine is a neuromodulator that regulates the release of neurotransmitters, mainly excitatory. Among the four types of adenosine

Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine, Table 1 Caffeine content of foods and drinks. (Adapted from Debry (1994))

Foods and drinks	Volume or weight	Content of caffeine (mg) mean (extreme values)
Filtered coffee	150 mL	115 (60–180)
Espresso	30 mL	40 (40–60)
Instant soluble coffee	150 mL	65 (40–120)
Decaffeinated coffee	150 mL	3 (2–5)
Tea (leaves or bags)	150 mL	40 (30–45)
Iced tea	330 mL	70 (65–75)
Hot chocolate	150 mL	4 (2–7)
Regular soda	330 mL	30–48
Sugar-free soda	330 mL	26–57
Chocolate bar	30 g	20 (5–36)
Milk chocolate	30 g	6 (1–15)
Dark chocolate	30 g	60 (20–120)

Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine, Table 2 Composition of medium-roasted coffee. (Adapted from Debry (1994))

Constituents	Percentage of dry matter		Percentage of extraction by water at 100 °C
	Arabica	Robusta	
Caffeine	1.3	2.4	75–100
Trigonelline	1.0	0.7	85–100
Minerals	4.5	4.7	90
Acids			
Chlorogenic	2.5	3.8	100
Quinic	0.8	1.0	100
Sugars			
Sucrose	0	0	100
Reducing sugars	0.3	0.3	
Polysaccharides	33	37	10
Lignin	2.0	2.0	–
Pectins	3.0	3.0	–
Proteins	10	10	15–20
Lipids	17	11	1
Caramelized products (e.g., melanoidins)	23	22.5	20–25
Volatile substances	0.1	0.1	40–80

Note that the content of caffeine in Robusta is twice as high as in Arabica

Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine, Table 3 Summary of the effects of coffee/caffeine on the cancer of different organs

Type of cancer	Number of studies	Effects of coffee	Doses
Colorectal	5 cohort; 15 case–control	24–60% risk reduction except in 3 cohorts	>3 cups/day
Liver	20 cohort; 11 case–control	30–55% risk reduction	From 1 to 2 cups/day dose-dependent effect
Stomach	23 studies	No effect	
Pancreas	37 studies	No effect	
Esophagus	17 studies	No effect	Risk increased in some studies because of the temperature of the drink
Upper aerodigestive tract	9 studies	39% risk reduction	4 cups/day
Breast	5 recent studies	No effect after menopause; 40% risk reduction before menopause even with increased genetic risk	4 cups/day
Ovary	11 studies	No effect	
Endometrial	5 studies	60% risk reduction	3 cups/day
Prostate	11 studies	No effect	
Kidney	26 studies	No effect	
Bladder	43 studies	No effect	<5 cups/day
		Increased risk	>5 cups/day
		Link with tap water	No dose-dependent effect
Skin	5 studies	Risk reduction if caffeine is applied topically	

receptors, A1, A2A, A2B, and A3, caffeine displays most of its biological effects by binding to A1 and A2A receptors. The antagonism at these receptors explains the stimulatory effects on caffeine on brain activity (Fredholm et al. 1999).

Coffee/Caffeine and the Central Nervous System

Alertness and Sleep

The consumption of 1–4 cups of coffee (100–400 mg caffeine) daily increases alertness, proportionally to the quantity absorbed. This effect is particularly marked after sleep deprivation and when alertness is decreased as during the post-lunch dip, night and shift work, and regular cold.

A moderate consumption – 1–2 cups of coffee before bedtime – leads to difficulties and delays in going to sleep up to 3 h post intake. It also decreases the temporal organization of slow and REM sleep and the quality of deep sleep. The consequences are night awakenings, nightmares, difficulties to stand up, and sleepiness during the day. The effects vary and are more marked in elderly and occasional consumers. Moreover, the polymorphism of the gene coding for the A2A adenosine receptor determines the interindividual sensitivity to the effects of caffeine on sleep (Rogers et al. 2010).

Sensory and Intellectual Abilities

A moderate consumption of coffee (1–4 cups per day) facilitates cognitive functions, while higher intake has rather negative effects on intellectual function. These effects depend on sex, age, time of the day, and whether consumption is chronic or not. Low caffeine consumption increases sensory and perceptive discrimination abilities. Attention is increased even at low levels of intake, 100 mg caffeine (1 cup of coffee), markedly in sleep-deprived subjects.

Up to 4 cups/day, coffee decreases reaction time. The effects are more prominent in sub-optimal conditions, as at awakening, at night, in fatigued subjects, during long-lasting tasks, and in occasional consumers. The effects depend on dose and consumption habits. Caffeine does not

directly improve learning and memory abilities. These effects seem rather indirect and linked to better concentration and capacity to focus attention (Nehlig 2010).

Anxiety and Pain

Beyond 600 mg in one sitting, caffeine increases anxiety. The response largely differs between individuals and there is a link between the state of anxiety and two polymorphisms of the gene coding for A2A adenosine receptors (Rogers et al. 2010).

Moderate caffeine consumption reduces tension headache, migraine, dental and abdominal pain through its analgesic effects, directly via adenosine receptors and indirectly by the potentiation of the analgesic action of aspirin and ibuprofen (Nehlig 2004).

Caffeine and Dependence

The abrupt cessation of caffeine intake may lead to moderate withdrawal symptoms but only in about 10–20% of the population. These are mainly headaches, fatigue, lack of concentration, anxiety, irritability, and occasionally, nausea. They start usually 12–24 h after abrupt caffeine cessation and last 2–3 days. They do not occur if caffeine consumption is reduced progressively. There is no tolerance to the central effects of caffeine.

Furthermore, caffeine does not activate the cerebral circuits of dependence, neither in humans after the consumption of 200 mg caffeine (2 cups of coffee) nor in rats at doses mimicking human levels of intake, i.e., 0.5–5.0 mg/kg ($\frac{1}{2}$ to 5 cups of coffee). Caffeine has rather reinforcing properties on its consumption. Doses of caffeine from tea or coffee (40–100 mg) appear sufficient to act as reinforcers (Nehlig 2004).

Coffee/Caffeine and Cognition: Normal and Pathological Aging

Cognitive functions (reaction time, rate of perception, and treatment of information) remain stable until 60 and slow down between 60 and 80. Cognitive decline is accelerated by poor lifestyle, vascular diseases, genetic factors, oxidative stress, and inflammation.

Normal Age-Related Cognitive Decline

Lifelong caffeine consumption allows improving cognitive functions (reaction time, verbal and visuospatial memory) in elderly subjects. Some studies reported positive effects in both sexes while others only observed an effect in women. The positive effect of coffee/caffeine is most prominent in the oldest subjects, over 80. This association is not found with decaffeinated coffee, indicating the role of caffeine and is significant for consumptions as low as 2–3 cups of coffee/day. Thus, the usual consumption of coffee/caffeine over lifetime could increase the cognitive reserve of elderly subjects (Ritchie et al. 2007; Santos et al. 2010).

Coffee and Alzheimer's Disease

Alzheimer's disease (AD) is the most frequent cause of dementia, leading to progressive cognitive decline. AD is characterized by elevated brain levels of b-amyloid peptide (Ab). The mean estimated risk between coffee/caffeine consumption and the development of AD is reduced by 23% for consumers compared to nonconsumers. The lowest risk to develop AD is found in consumers of 3–5 cups of coffee daily. The confirmation of the reduction of the risk of AD by coffee/caffeine consumption still needs prospective studies including more cases (Santos et al. 2010).

In transgenic mice developing AD, the chronic addition of caffeine to drinking water at a dose equivalent to 5 cups of coffee daily improves learning and memory, and reduces the concentrations of Ab peptide in hippocampus, the cerebral region that controls memory. Moreover, caffeine drinking in aged mice with AD allows reversing the working memory deficit and reducing cerebral Ab peptide concentration (Arendash and Cao 2010).

Caffeine and Parkinson's Disease

The consumption of coffee and caffeine reduces the relative risk (RR) to develop Parkinson's disease (PD). There is a global 25% decreased risk of developing PD in coffee/caffeine consumers versus nonconsumers with risk reductions up to 80% for the intake of 4 cups of coffee daily. The preventive effect is linked to

caffeine since regular coffee, tea, and caffeine decrease the risk while decaffeinated coffee does not (Costa et al. 2010).

In women, data are less clear. In those not taking hormonal therapy, coffee is as preventive as in men. In women taking hormones, caffeine is preventive in low consumers while the risk is increased fourfold in those drinking 6 cups of coffee or more daily compared to nonconsumers (Ascherio et al. 2003). These differences could be linked to the polymorphism of the gene coding for one enzyme of caffeine metabolism (CYP1A2 rs762551) and to an interaction between caffeine and some forms of estrogen receptors (Palacios et al. 2010).

The mechanism involved in the preventive effect of caffeine in PD is its antagonism at A2A adenosine receptors. Caffeine improves parkinsonian symptoms and potentiates the effects of L-dopa, the classical treatment of PD.

Coffee and the Cardiovascular System

Coffee has negative effects on some biological markers of risk of coronary heart disease (CHD). Paradoxically, a high coffee consumption does not increase the risk of CHD. A recent meta-analysis of 21 prospective cohort studies showed that compared to low consumption (<1 cup/day in the USA and <2 cups/day in Europe), the combined relative risk (RR) of CHD for moderate coffee consumption (3–5 cups daily) is significantly reduced by 18% in women and 13% in men (Wu et al. 2009).

Likewise, in large populations with a long follow-up there is no influence of coffee (less than 5 cups/day) on the risk of heart failure (RR 0.87 for 2 cups/day) and RR 0.89–0.94 for all other levels (at least 3 cups/day) compared to men consuming less than 1 cup/day, confirming the lack of effect of moderate coffee consumption on heart failure (Ahmed et al. 2009).

Furthermore, the consumption of coffee does not increase the risk of atrial fibrillation or flutter whatever be the dose. Even consumers of 1–3 cups or more than 4 cups of coffee daily reduce their risk of arrhythmias by 7 or 18%, respectively, compared to nonconsumers (Klatsky et al. 2010).

Coffee intake increases systolic and diastolic blood pressure by 1.2 and 0.5 mmHg, respectively. At an equivalent dosage, caffeine intake has a more marked hypertensive effect (4.2 and 2.4 mmHg, respectively). However, coffee is not considered a risk factor for arterial hypertension. Boiled coffee has the strongest effect, followed by filtered and instant coffee; decaffeinated coffee increases systolic blood pressure by 0.9 mmHg and decreases diastolic pressure by 0.15 mmHg (Noordzij et al. 2005).

Filtered, instant coffee, and espresso do not significantly modify lipid metabolism while unfiltered boiled coffee increases total cholesterol, mainly the low-density lipoproteins and triglycerides, and should be avoided (Thelle 2005).

In conclusion, there is no apparent cardiovascular risk linked to coffee consumption, except possibly in some patients at risk that should also stop smoking, increase physical exercise, and improve their diet.

Coffee and Cancer

Cancers of the Digestive Tract

Lifelong consumption of coffee reduces the risk of developing liver cancer by 38 to 59% compared to nonconsumers. The underlying mechanisms remain to be clarified (Arab 2010; Cadden et al. 2007; Nkondjock 2009).

The risk of colorectal cancer is reduced by 17% in coffee consumers and up to 30% in highest consumers. This protection linked to coffee seems to involve the anticarcinogenic properties of the diterpenes and antioxidants of coffee, the stimulation of the secretion of biliary acids and neutral sterols in the colon, and the stimulation of colon motility (Galeone et al. 2010).

There is no association between coffee consumption and the risk of developing stomach or pancreas cancer. There is no evidence to support a harmful effect of coffee consumption on prostate cancer risk. Caffeine intake does not change the risk of esophagus or larynx cancer and reduces the risk of oral cavity or pharynx cancer by 39% for the consumption of 4 cups of coffee/day (Turati et al. 2011).

Breast, Ovary, and Endometrial Cancer

In postmenopausal women, there is usually no relation between caffeine/coffee intake and breast cancer. During premenopause, the risk reduction reaches 50% in women consuming at least 4 cups coffee daily compared to low consumers (1–2 cups/day). Also, in premenopausal women that carry the *BRCA1* or *BRCA2* mutation, which increases the risk of breast cancer, the risk is reduced by 25–70% by a consumption of 4–6 cups of coffee daily. This beneficial effect is limited to caffeinated coffee (Arab 2010).

While there is no relation between coffee/caffeine intake and ovary cancer, coffee consumption of at least 3 cups daily reduces the risk of developing endometrial cancer by 60% (Arab 2010).

Prostate, Kidney, Bladder, and Skin Cancer

Prostate cancer and kidney cancer are not influenced by the duration or quantity of coffee consumed (Arab 2010; Park et al. 2010).

The most recent data on bladder cancer report a lack of association in women and 26% increased risk in men consuming coffee. However, a critical risk factor is linked to the type of water used to prepare coffee. Chlorinated tap water increases bladder cancer while mineral water does not. The results of most epidemiological studies allow now excluding a strong relation between coffee and bladder cancer. The major risk factors are smoking and other dietary factors (Arab 2010; Pelluci et al. 2010).

In mice, caffeine added to drinking water or topically destroys skin cells damaged by UVB irradiation. Caffeine also doubles the mortality of human skin cells damaged by UVB, and hence could decrease the risk of skin cancer. The underlying molecular mechanism is similar in both species and leads to the hypothesis that caffeine applied topically could potentially protect human skin against the harmful effect of UVB (Heffernan et al. 2009; Lu et al. 2008).

Coffee and Type 2 diabetes

Since 2002, over 20 studies devoted to the relation between coffee consumption and the risk of developing type 2 diabetes reported a largely reduced

risk linked to frequent coffee intake across diverse populations. It is similar in men and women, obese and nonobese subjects. Most studies suggest a dose–response curve with larger risk reductions for high coffee intake. In general, the consumption of at least 4 cups daily is associated to a 30–40% decreased risk of type 2 diabetes compared to nonconsumers. For lower intakes, the risk decreases by 7% for each additional coffee cup. This inverse association is observed with caffeinated and decaffeinated coffee, with or without sugar but not with caffeine alone.

Antioxidants from coffee, such as chlorogenic and quinic acids, are potential candidates for this preventive effect since they can act as regulators of carbohydrate metabolism (Huxley et al. 2009; Pimentel et al. 2009; van Dam et al. 2008).

Caffeine, Fertility, Pregnancy, Fetal and Neonatal Growth

The effects of coffee ingestion on various parameters of reproduction, pregnancy, and fetal development were reviewed recently (Peck et al. 2010).

Effects on Fertility

In natural pregnancies, there is no link between caffeine consumption and reduction of fertility. Likewise, caffeine does not influence the number of ovocytes collected and fertilized, the number of embryos transferred and successfully reaching term in *in vitro* fecundations. For male fertility, there is no association between caffeine intake and the number, mobility, morphology, DNA status of spermatozooids, and the onset of pregnancy (Peck et al. 2010).

Effects on the Course of Pregnancy

Caffeine ingested by the mother is very rapidly absorbed, crosses the placental barrier, and distributes in all fetal tissues, including the central nervous system. The half-life of caffeine is dramatically increased in the fetus (over 100 h) deprived of the enzymatic equipment necessary for caffeine catabolism.

Most studies did not find any association between a daily caffeine intake lower than 300 mg (3 cups of coffee) and the risk of

miscarriage. Moreover, when accounting for the severity of nausea that often lead to a reduction in coffee/caffeine consumption, the RR for miscarriages drops from 1.5 to 1.7 for a daily caffeine consumption of 300–500 mg to 1.0–1.1. Recently, a RR of 2.2 for miscarriages was found at a caffeine intake higher than 200 mg/day. However, this study did not carefully control for confounding factors such as degree of smoking and duration of the nausea period. By caution, several associations advised women who wish to start a pregnancy to limit their caffeine intake to quantities lower than 200 mg/day, while others maintained the earlier limit of 300 mg/day.

The vast majority of studies did not find any association between caffeine and fetal growth whatever the dose. After adjustment for smoking and alcohol, a few studies observed fetal growth retardation for caffeine intake ranging from 300 to 800 mg/day. Fetal growth is more sensitive to caffeine during the first than during the third trimester of pregnancy and intrauterine growth retardation is only significant over 600 mg/day caffeine. There is no consistent report of an association between total exposure to caffeine and the risk of early (≤ 34 gestational weeks) or late premature delivery (35–37 weeks) (Peck et al. 2010).

Animal data showed dose-dependent teratogenic effect of caffeine, only at very high doses, over 80 mg/kg (60–80 cups of coffee in one sitting). In humans, no study reported any increase in the incidence of congenital malformations in babies born from women consuming large quantities of caffeine (300–1000 mg/day) during their whole pregnancy.

Effects on Postnatal Development

Caffeine enters maternal milk but has no consequence on its composition and stimulates its production. Hence, women are advised to consume their coffee after instead of before lactating.

Studies on psychomotor development are reassuring. The prenatal consumption of caffeine does not influence the Apgar score, suction reflex, weight, height, or psychomotor behavior assessed during the first year. No effect could be shown on

the intellectual quotient, motor skills, or vigilance at 4 and 7 years (Nehlig and Debry 1994).

In conclusion, a moderate caffeine consumption (lower than 200/300 mg/day), in all forms, does not seem to notably influence fertility and fetal growth. There is still some doubt for higher dosages and it is wise to recommend women that wish to start a pregnancy, or are pregnant, not to go over the reasonable limit of 200/300 mg/day caffeine.

Caffeine and Sports Activity

Most studies reported positive effects of caffeine on performance in endurance tests; the distance covered over a given time or speed in running and cycling are increased, the efficacy in final sprinting is improved and the delay before sensing pain or exertion is increased. Likewise, in team sports like rugby, soccer, and field hockey that alternate prolonged activity with bouts of intense activity, caffeine supplementation provides beneficial effects. Caffeine is also beneficial in long-distance swimming, rowing, and middle and distance running races. In brief, physical exercise involving strength and power such as lifts, throws, and sprints the effects of caffeine are less clear and variable. Women also benefit from caffeine in sports activities ranging from recreational activities to rowing competitions, mainly when trained and moderately active (Burke 2008).

The effective dose of caffeine depends on the level of training, habituation to caffeine, and type of exercise. Usually, the efficacy of caffeine is optimal at doses of 1.5–4.5 mg/kg in nonconsumers, 3–6 mg/kg in moderate consumers, and 6.5–9.5 mg/kg in high consumers. The ergogenic effects of caffeine are more variable when caffeine is absorbed in a drink like coffee compared to the anhydrous form (capsules or tablets) (Burke 2008; Astorino and Robertson 2010).

The effects of caffeine on muscle metabolism are still unclear. Caffeine was suggested to mobilize fatty acids from adipose tissue to spare muscle glycogen. In reality, it seems that caffeine has rather a central effect central on fatigue or facilitates muscle function. Caffeine co-ingested with carbohydrates can enhance their absorption and oxidation during exercise. In endurance cycling, golf, and team sports, performance is more largely

improved by caffeine + carbohydrates than by either constituent given alone. Caffeine reduces also pain in caffeine consumers as found in cycling, leg and arm muscle training, and other endurance activities (Goldstein et al. 2010).

Conclusion

The data presented here reflect a large number of studies performed over the last decade on coffee and health. This wealth of data allowed the evolution from the negative idea that coffee/caffeine could not be good for health because the consumer was enjoying these drinks too much. It is now widely accepted that the moderate consumption of caffeine (3–4 cups coffee daily) in the context of a balanced diet has no negative impact on human health. In fact, on the basis of the data on normal cognitive decline, Parkinson's and Alzheimer's disease, type 2 diabetes, and cancer, the consumption of coffee appears even beneficial for human health.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Aging](#)
- ▶ [Alzheimer's Disease](#)
- ▶ [Antioxidant](#)
- ▶ [Anxiety Disorder](#)
- ▶ [Arrhythmia](#)
- ▶ [Aspirin](#)
- ▶ [Atrial Fibrillation](#)
- ▶ [BRCA1 and BRCA2](#)
- ▶ [Breast Cancer](#)
- ▶ [Cancer and Diet](#)
- ▶ [Cancer, Bladder](#)
- ▶ [Cancer, Colorectal](#)
- ▶ [Cancer, Prostate](#)
- ▶ [Cancer, Types of](#)
- ▶ [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- ▶ [Central Nervous System](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Function](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Impairment](#)
- ▶ [Coronary Heart Disease](#)
- ▶ [Dementia](#)
- ▶ [Diabetes](#)

- ▶ Diastolic Blood Pressure (DBP)
- ▶ Elderly
- ▶ Estrogen
- ▶ Gender Differences
- ▶ Heart Failure
- ▶ Hormone Treatment
- ▶ Hypertension
- ▶ Migraine Headache
- ▶ Neurotransmitter
- ▶ Ovarian Cancer
- ▶ Pain Management/Control
- ▶ Parkinson's Disease
- ▶ Physical Activity
- ▶ Relative Risk
- ▶ REM Sleep
- ▶ Reproductive Health
- ▶ Sleep
- ▶ Sleep Quality
- ▶ Slow-Wave Sleep
- ▶ Systolic Blood Pressure (SBP)
- ▶ Tachycardia
- ▶ Type 2 Diabetes mellitus

References and Readings

- Ahmed, H. N., Levitan, E. B., Wolk, A., & Mittleman, M. A. (2009). Coffee consumption and risk of heart failure in men: An analysis from the Cohort of Swedish Men. *American Heart Journal*, 158, 667–672.
- Arab, L. (2010). Epidemiologic evidence on coffee and cancer. *Nutrition and Cancer*, 62, 271–283.
- Cadden, I. S., Partovi, N., & Yoshida, E. M. (2007). Review article: Possible beneficial effects of coffee on liver disease and function. *Alimentary Pharmacology & Therapeutics*, 26, 1–8.
- Costa, J., Lunet, N., Santos, C., Santos, J., & Vaz-Carneiro, A. (2010). Caffeine exposure and the risk of Parkinson's disease: A systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies. *Journal of Alzheimer's Disease*, 20(Suppl 1), S221–S238.
- Fredholm, B. B., Bättig, K., Holmén, J., Nehlig, A., & Zwartau, E. E. (1999). Actions of caffeine in the brain with special reference to factors that contribute to its widespread use. *Pharmacological Reviews*, 51, 83–133.
- Nehlig, A. (2010). Is caffeine a cognitive enhancer? *Journal of Alzheimer's Disease*, 20(Suppl 1), S85–S94.
- Nkondjock, A. (2009). Coffee consumption and the risk of cancer: An overview. *Cancer Letters*, 277, 121–125.
- Noordzij, M., Uiterwaal, C. S., Arends, L. R., Kok, F. J., Grobbee, D. E., & Geleijnse, J. M. (2005). Blood pressure response to chronic intake coffee and caffeine: A meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Journal of Hypertension*, 23, 921–928.

- Palacios, N., Weisskopf, M., Simon, K., Gao, X., Schwarzschild, M., & Ascherio, A. (2010). Polymorphisms of caffeine metabolism and estrogen receptor genes and risk of Parkinson's disease in men and women. *Parkinsonism & Related Disorders*, 16, 370–375.
- Park, C. H., Myung, S. K., Kim, T. Y., Seo, H. G., Jeon, Y. J., Kim, Y., et al. (2010). Coffee consumption and risk of prostate cancer: A meta-analysis of epidemiological studies. *BJU International*, 106, 762–769.
- Peck, J. D., Leviton, A., & Cowan, L. D. (2010). A review of the epidemiologic evidence concerning the reproductive health effects of caffeine consumption: A 2000–2009 update. *Food and Chemical Toxicology*, 48, 2549–2576.
- Pimentel, G. D., Zemdegs, J. C., Theodoro, J. A., & Mota, J. F. (2009). Does long-term coffee intake reduce type 2 diabetes mellitus risk? *Diabetology and Metabolic Syndrome*, 1, 6.
- Santos, C., Costa, J., Santos, J., Vaz-Carneiro, A., & Lunet, N. (2010). Caffeine intake and dementia: Systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Alzheimers Disease*, 20(Suppl 1), S187–S204.
- Wu, J. N., Ho, S. C., Zhou, C., Ling, W. H., Chen, W. Q., Wang, C. L., et al. (2009). Coffee consumption and risk of coronary heart diseases: A meta-analysis of 21 prospective cohort studies. *International Journal of Cardiology*, 137, 216–225.

Cognition

- ▶ Cognitive Factors
- ▶ Cognitive Function

Cognitions

Julia Allan
School of Medicine and Dentistry, University of
Aberdeen, Aberdeen, Scotland, UK

Synonyms

Ideas; Thoughts

Definition

Cognitions are internal mental representations best characterized as thoughts and ideas.

Cognitions result from, and are involved in, multiple mental processes and operations including perception, reasoning, memory, intuition, judgment, and decision making.

As internal mental states, cognitions are not directly observable but are still amenable to study using the scientific method. Cognitions can be subjectively elicited on questioning or experimentally measured using reaction times, psychophysical responses, or real-time neuroimaging techniques to infer internal processing.

As cognitions play a fundamental role in determining behavior, the study of cognitive factors facilitates a better understanding of processes and outcomes in health, health behavior, illness, and disability. Examples of cognitions with particular relevance for behavioral medicine include illness perceptions (Leventhal et al. 1992); biases and distortions in decision making (Kahneman and Tversky 1979); attitudes, beliefs, and perceptions of control (Ajzen 1991); and the executive functions (Williams and Thayer 2009).

Cross-References

- Beliefs
- Cognitive Factors
- Cognitive Function
- Cognitive Impairment
- Cognitive Mediators
- Cognitive Strategies
- Expectations of Recovery Measure

References and Readings

- Ajzen, I. (1991). The theory of planned behaviour. *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes*, 50, 179–211.
- Conner, M., & Norman, P. (2005). *Predicting health behaviour: Research and practice with social cognition models* (2nd ed.). Buckingham: Open University Press.
- Eysenck, M. W., & Keane, M. T. (2010). *Cognitive psychology: A student's handbook* (6th ed.). London: Psychology Press.
- Kahneman, D., & Tversky, A. (1979). Prospect theory: An analysis of decision under risk. *Econometrica*, 47, 263–292.

- Leventhal, H., Diefenbach, M., & Leventhal, E. A. (1992). Illness cognitions: Using common sense to understand treatment adherence and affect cognition interactions. *Cognitive Therapy and Research*, 16, 143–163.
- Williams, P. G., & Thayer, J. F. (2009). Executive functioning and health: An introduction to the special series. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 37, 101–105.

Cognitive Abilities

- [Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine](#)

Cognitive Appraisal

Tavis S. Campbell, Jillian A. Johnson and Kristin A. Zernicke
Department of Psychology, University of Calgary,
Calgary, AB, Canada

Synonyms

[Lazarus theory](#); [Transactional model](#)

Definition

The concept of cognitive appraisal was advanced in 1966 by psychologist Richard Lazarus in the book *Psychological Stress and Coping Process*. According to this theory, stress is perceived as the imbalance between the demands placed on the individual and the individual's resources to cope (Lazarus and Folkman 1984). Lazarus argued that the experience of stress differs significantly between individuals depending on how they interpret an event and the outcome of a specific sequence of thinking patterns, called appraisals (Lazarus 1991).

Cognitive appraisal refers to the personal interpretation of a situation that ultimately influences the extent to which the situation is perceived as stressful. It is the process of assessing (a) whether a situation or event threatens our well-being, (b) whether there are sufficient personal resources

available for coping with the demand of the situation, and (c) whether our strategy for dealing with the situation is effective (Lazarus 1991). This process can then be further subdivided into three categories: primary appraisal, secondary appraisal, and reappraisal:

- *Primary appraisal* refers to the initial evaluation of the situation, deemed as benign positive (positive), threatening (negative), or irrelevant (neutral). If the situation is appraised as being irrelevant or benign positive, no heightened physiological arousal occurs and the situation will not be perceived as stressful. If the situation is appraised as negative, the individual will make a secondary appraisal in regard to harm (harm-loss), threat, or challenge.
- *Secondary appraisal* refers to the evaluation of an individual's ability or resources to cope with a specific situation. Secondary appraisal interacts with primary appraisal to determine emotional reaction to a situation. A harm (harm-loss) appraisal is the assessment that damage has occurred as a result of the situation and the necessary resources to effectively cope with the situation may not be available. Threat appraisals occur when it is anticipated that the situation may result in loss or harm in the future and the resources to effectively cope with the situation may not be available. A challenge is perceived when a situation is demanding but ultimately can be overcome, resulting in the individual benefiting from the situation. Both harm and threat appraisals result in the situation being deemed as stressful, whereas a challenge appraisal does not.
- Reappraisal is the continuous reevaluation of a situation based on the availability of new information. This step of reappraisal takes place throughout the entire process and can change the way an individual perceives a situation.

References and Readings

Folkman, S., Lazarus, R. S., Dunkel-Schetter, C., DeLongis, A., & Gruen, J. (1986a). Dynamics of a

stressful encounter: Cognitive appraisal, coping and encounter outcomes. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 50(5), 992–1003.

Folkman, S., Lazarus, R. S., Gruen, J., & DeLongis, A. (1986b). Appraisal, coping, health status, and psychological symptoms. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 50(3), 571–579.

Lazarus, R. S. (1991). *Emotion and adaptation*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. New York: Springer.

Cognitive Behavior Therapy

► Cognitive Behavioral Therapy (CBT)

Cognitive Behavioral Therapy (CBT)

Lara Traeger¹ and Emily M. Wright²

¹Behavioral Medicine Service, Massachusetts General Hospital/Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA

²Department of Psychiatry, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

Cognitive behavior therapy

Definition

Cognitive behavioral therapy is a classification of psychotherapies which integrate cognitive and behavioral theories and methods. CBT approaches share fundamental assumptions that cognitions mediate situational responses, that changes in cognitive activity can affect therapeutic changes in emotions and behaviors, and that maladaptive behaviors can be extinguished or reshaped, with new skills learned through practice and reinforcement.

Description

Brief History of CBT

CBT interventions represent an integration of behavioral and cognitive theories and methods. Behavior therapy emerged in the 1950s and 1960s through research on clinical applications of classical and operant conditioning theories (e.g., systematic desensitization; Eysenck 1966; Wolpe 1958). Behavior therapy emphasizes the primacy of behaviors, and radical behaviorists view thoughts as a type of internal behavior. The primacy of thoughts in shaping situational responses appears in early philosophical traditions ranging from Stoicism to Buddhism (Wright et al. 2006). Formally, the cognitive underpinnings of CBT emerged in the 1960s and 1970s, largely through developments by Albert Ellis (rational emotive therapy; 1957) and Aaron T. Beck (cognitive therapy; 1963, 1964) and contributions from Alfred Adler, George Kelly, and behaviorists described above. Rational emotive therapy has been considered the first of the cognitive interventions to appear; it introduced a novel, directive approach to challenging patients' irrational beliefs. Beck's cognitive therapy also emphasized a primary role of cognitions in psychiatric problems, and he formally described the maladaptive cognitive biases associated with depression as targets for therapeutic change.

The coalescence of cognitive and behavioral therapies over the past few decades has been due to several factors, including the challenges of applying behavior theory to the complex range of human behaviors (e.g., obsessive thinking), the introduction of a formalized cognitive therapy for depression, and the growing support for CBT interventions in both research and practice. Behaviorists view behavior change as the primary goal of therapy, whereas cognitive theorists view behavior strategies as means for affecting change. Yet both schools share a commitment to applying the scientific method to clinical problems and their treatments. Since the early works which focused primarily on depression and anxiety, CBT models have since been expanded to explain and treat a wide range of psychiatric disorders.

A number of membership organizations support CBT research and practice, and their histories reflect the history of CBT itself. For instance, in 1966, the Association for Advancement of Behavioral Therapies (AABT) was founded by behaviorists due to their dissatisfaction with the psychoanalytic model. The name was formally changed to the Association for Behavioral and Cognitive Therapies (ABCT) in 2005, to reflect the increasing influence of cognitive theory and methods. Similarly, the British Association for Behavioural Psychotherapy (BABP) was founded by behaviorists in 1972; its scope was broadened in 1992 when it became The British Association for Behavioural and Cognitive Psychotherapies (BABCP).

CBT Model of Clinical Symptoms

CBT emphasizes the role of individuals as active information processors. The meaning we apply to a situation shapes our emotional reactions to the situation and what we may do to cope with our emotions. Our behaviors, in turn, affect our thought patterns and emotional responses. In other words, cognitions, emotions, and behaviors are intimately linked. These relationships are illustrated in the following scenario:

A supervisor had begun to criticize two employees, J.F. and A.B., for minor errors at work. J.F. interpreted the situation to mean that he was a poor performer and a liability to his department. This caused J.F. to feel dejected, which led him to increase his efforts to please the supervisor. J.F. began to work late at night; drink more coffee to stay awake; and consequently experience fatigue and anxiety the next day. This led him to make more errors at work, creating a self-fulfilling prophecy which strengthened his anxiety and negative beliefs about himself. Meanwhile, A.B. presumed that the supervisor was simply singling her out for criticism. This caused A.B. to feel irritated, which led her to act indifferently toward the supervisor while maintaining her current level of work performance. Her relationship with the supervisor deteriorated, reinforcing A.B.'s belief that people are generally disrespectful.

This scenario highlights that two different interpretations without clear evidence led to quite different emotional and behavioral consequences. These

interpretations also could reinforce long-standing negative beliefs about the self (in the case of J.F.) or the world (in the case of A.B.). This is a key learning point for individuals during therapy. In the long term, entrenched patterns or styles of thinking and behaving can become associated with clinically significant distress. Indeed, psychiatric disorders are distinguished by distinct profiles of cognitive and behavioral bias. In his original work, Aaron T. Beck described depression as the result of negative thinking about the self, world, and future (1963, 1964). Other examples include phobias as the inaccurate perceptions of danger and suicidality as the perception of hopelessness and deficits in problem-solving skills.

Applications of the CBT Model in Behavioral Medicine

The CBT model can be particularly useful in behavioral medicine, to capture biopsychosocial aspects of health promotion and disease management. Research evidence strongly supports links between cognitions, feelings, and health behaviors. For instance, many chronic medical conditions are associated with elevated risk for depression. Depressed individuals, in turn, have difficulties with motivation, interest, and problem solving and are therefore less likely to practice self-care behaviors such as physical activity, healthy eating, and adherence to medical regimens. The following scenario illustrates these relationships:

S.P. had been prescribed a daily HIV medication for the past year. She did not believe that the medication did much to manage her condition. Every morning, she would dread looking at the medication bottle. It was a reminder that she was ill, and this reminder provoked other familiar thoughts that her life was over and that she would never find a romantic partner due to her HIV status. These thoughts, in turn, reminded her that she was profoundly alone. For S.P., it was easier to ignore the sight of the bottle and skip her medication dose, which she frequently did. However, the thoughts remained and often provoked painful depressed moods which decreased her motivation and energy to answer phone calls from her friends. S.P. spent most of her time at home alone, which reinforced her beliefs about being undesirable to others. Most recently, she missed her regular HIV primary care

visit. It seemed too difficult to secure a ride to the clinic, and she thought, "What's the point anyway, this disease is not going away."

This scenario shows bidirectional relationships between depression and poor HIV self-care. In practice, the CBT case formulation would address how inaccurate cognitions, emotional distress, and coping behaviors are influencing each other in a perpetuating loop, which serves to maintain both depression and poor self-care. The case formulation would also help to highlight key areas for CBT intervention to break this loop. In developing the CBT treatment plan, a therapist may draw systematically from CBT strategies, including (1) providing psychoeducation about depression, HIV, and HIV medications, (2) increasing engagement in activities which promote enjoyment and sense of mastery, (3) challenging severe negative beliefs, and (4) problem-solving medical adherence. This approach highlights that all three domains (cognitions, emotions, and behaviors) are being addressed. Common CBT intervention elements are described further in the next section.

Common Elements of CBT Interventions

In CBT interventions, the therapist actively collaborates with the patient (i.e., "co-therapist"). They work together to identify and alter problematic patterns of thinking and behaving and thereby help the patient manage negative emotions and improve quality of life. The therapist first collects information about the patient's presenting problems and then shares and revises the CBT case formulation with the patient. This formulation directly informs the therapy. The therapist and patient work together to set a treatment plan and articulate goals at the outset of therapy and to set agendas at each therapy session. During the course of CBT, the therapist may use Socratic questioning to guide patients in their own discovery of problematic patterns in their thinking and behaving. Sessions are problem oriented and typically focus on building skills which address these patterns. "Homework" assignments encourage the patient to rehearse and problem-solve the skills in real-life situations. Throughout treatment, progress is monitored using symptom inventories

(e.g., the Beck Depression Inventory [BDI] or the Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale [HADS]) as well as informal feedback. Most CBT interventions are intended to be time limited; the ultimate goal is for patients to become increasingly independent in their use of the skills until the therapist is no longer needed.

The following is a sample of common CBT intervention strategies:

Psychoeducation is used throughout CBT interventions. A critical component of CBT is to engage patients in understanding the CBT model, the rationale for treatment, and the therapeutic methods as applied to their clinical problems. In other examples, CBT for panic disorder includes information on physiologic activation, whereas a patient on long-acting pain medications may benefit from understanding the impact of missed or delayed medication doses.

Behavioral strategies are used to help patients break unhelpful behavior patterns such as fear avoidance or depressive inactivity. For example, exposure methods involve generating a hierarchy of situations that induce fear and avoidance and conducting structured “experiments” which increase real-life or imaginal exposure to these situations. In behavioral activation, the patient is guided to increase activity level by generating a list of activities that promote enjoyment and sense of mastery and then setting and monitoring daily or weekly activity goals.

Cognitive strategies are used to promote optimal thinking about difficult situations. As a primary example, cognitive restructuring is a framework for recognizing negative, inaccurate thoughts and replacing them with alternative ones that are more realistic and helpful. This may involve several steps: write down the situation; list negative thoughts that occurred during the situation; list emotions that arise when having these thoughts; identify cognitive distortions or errors that may underlie each thought; challenge each thought; and generate

rational responses. The rational responses are self-statements that are used to reduce distress and view situations in a more helpful light.

Considerations for CBT in Behavioral Medicine Populations

CBT interventions have been incorporated into the American Psychiatric Association clinical practice guidelines for a wide range of psychiatric disorders. However, chronic medical conditions introduce some unique aspects to consider during CBT evaluation and delivery. Psychiatric symptoms can overlap with or mask disease symptoms and treatment side effects (e.g., cancer-related fatigue, dyspnea, or uncontrolled pain), underscoring the importance of assessment and differential diagnosis for behavioral medicine patients. Also, health cognitions and emotional distress levels can be dynamic, changing over time in response to disease-related events (e.g., receiving medical test results), uncertain disease courses, or certain disease progression. For many medical conditions, disease symptoms fluctuate, influencing mobility, fatigue, and cognitive functioning. Adaptations to CBT protocols have been recommended to incorporate these factors. For instance, behavioral activation and homework assignments can be adapted so that patients modulate daily activities according to current level of energy (activity pacing). Cognitive restructuring can be supplemented with acceptance-based or problem-solving strategies when negative health cognitions reflect both realistic and unrealistic elements and both controllable and uncontrollable stressors.

For the sample scenario of S.P., described above, a CBT intervention might proceed as follows:

The therapist worked with S.P. to generate a CBT model of her depression and problems with HIV self-care. Socratic questioning was used to help S.P. discover links between her thoughts (perceived impact of HIV on her value as a person); feelings (sadness and loneliness); and behaviors (medical non-adherence and self-isolation). The therapist and S.P. used this model to develop a treatment plan and set goals. S.P.'s main goal was to repair some of the meaningful relationships in

her life. The therapist provided psycho-education about depression and HIV. S.P. began to internalize that self-care was a step toward improving relationships with others. Behavioral activation was introduced to help S.P. increase engagement in activities that she used to enjoy and that could give her opportunities to challenge her belief that others would reject her. Activities were modified on days when S.P. experienced fatigue or medication side effects. Cognitive restructuring helped S.P. develop healthier cognitions such as more neutral perceptions of HIV medications. Finally, problem solving was introduced to help S.P. organize her efforts toward increasing her adherence and enhancing her social support. While S.P. experienced setbacks, she increasingly began to recognize her tendency to make devaluing statements about herself during stressful situations, and she continued to work toward changing this pattern.

CBT Applications in Behavioral Medicine

There is substantial evidence to support that CBT interventions improve health behaviors, enhance quality of life, and reduce psychological symptoms among individuals with medical comorbidities. For instance, Safren et al. (2008) developed a CBT intervention for depression and medical adherence (CBT-AD) in patients with chronic illness such as diabetes or HIV. Cognitive behavioral stress management (CBSM) is a group intervention developed by Antoni et al. (2007) to improve quality of life in HIV-infected adults, which was subsequently adapted for cancer survivors (Penedo et al. 2008) and has been shown in long-term follow-up to reduce depressive symptoms and improve quality of life in breast cancer survivors (Stagl et al. 2015). CBT strategies have also been adapted to treat or reduce disability associated with a range of specific medical concerns including nicotine dependence, obesity, insomnia, and various functional pain and fatigue conditions. For instance, CBT for insomnia (CBTI) protocols often focus on sleep education, self-monitoring (recording sleep habits in a sleep diary), stimulus control (associating the bed exclusively with sleeping), and coping skills for relapse prevention (Seyffert et al. 2016). For conditions like nicotine dependence in which individuals are often more ambivalent about addressing

their thoughts and behaviors, motivational interviewing and goal setting may be particularly helpful (Lindson-Hawley et al. 2015). To increase the accessibility of CBT to populations with chronic medical conditions, a number of researchers have developed electronic adaptations of face-to-face CBT practices. In this modality, patients complete online sessions and homework assignments over the course of several weeks without direct contact with a therapist. A systematic review and meta-analysis of 15 randomized controlled trials identified that internet-delivered CBTi improved sleep efficiency and reduced insomnia severity, with similar efficacy to in-person therapy (Seyffert et al. 2016).

Cross-References

- Behavior Change
- Behavioral Therapy
- Cognitions
- Cognitive Restructuring
- Cognitive Strategies
- Problem Solving
- Systematic Desensitization

References and Further Reading

- Antoni, M. H., Schneiderman, N., & Ironson, G. (2007). *Stress management for HIV: Clinical validation and intervention manual*. Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Beck, A. T. (1963). Thinking and depression. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 9, 324–333.
- Beck, A. T. (1964). Thinking and depression, II: Theory and therapy. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 10, 561–571.
- Ellis, A. (1957). Rational psychotherapy and individual psychology. *Journal of Individual Psychology*, 13, 38–44.
- Eysenck, H. J. (1966). *The effects of psychotherapy*. New York: International Science Press.
- Kelly, G. (1955). *The psychology of personal constructs*. New York: WW Norton.
- Lindson-Hawley, N., Thompson, T. P., & Begh, R. (2015). Motivational interviewing for smoking cessation. *Cochrane Database Systematic Review*, 2. CD006936

- Penedo, F. J., Antoni, M. H., & Schneiderman, N. (2008). *Cognitive-behavioral stress management for prostate cancer recovery: Facilitator guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Safren, S. A., Gonzalez, J. S., & Soroudi, N. (2008). *Coping with chronic illness: A cognitive-behavioral therapy approach for adherence and depression: Therapist guide*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Seyffert, M., Lagisetty, P., Landgraf, J., Chopra, V., Pfeiffer, P. N., Conte, M. L., & Rogers, M. A. (2016). Internet-delivered cognitive behavioral therapy to treat insomnia: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One*, 11. e0149139
- Stagl, J. M., Bouchard, L. C., Lechner, S. C., Blomber, B. B., Gudenkauf, L. M., Jutagir, D. R., Gluck, S., Derhagopian, R. P., Carver, C. S., & Antoni, M. H. (2015). Long-term psychological benefits of cognitive-behavioral stress management for women with breast cancer: 11-year follow-up of a randomized controlled trial. *Cancer*, 121, 1873–1881.
- Wolpe, J. (1958). *Psychotherapy by reciprocal inhibition*. Stanford: Stanford University Press.
- Wright, J. H., Basco, M. R., & Thase, M. E. (2006). *Learning cognitive-behavioral therapy: An illustrated guide*. London/Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Publishing Inc.

Cognitive Control

- [Behavioral Inhibition](#)

Cognitive Deficit

- [Cognitive Impairment](#)

Cognitive Disorder

- [Cognitive Impairment](#)

Cognitive Evaluation Theory

- [Self-Determination Theory](#)

Cognitive Factors

Eric Roy

Department of Kinesiology, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Synonyms

[Cognition](#); [Cognitive strategy](#); [Cognitive style](#); [Mental ability](#); [Mental function](#)

Definition

Cognitive factors refer to characteristics of the person that affect performance and learning. These factors serve to modulate performance such that it may improve or decline. These factors involve cognitive functions like attention, memory, and reasoning (Danili and Reid 2006).

Cognitive factors are internal to each person and serve to modulate behavior and behavioral responses to external stimuli like stress. Performance on various activities of daily living has been found to be affected by these factors. Executive functions, for example, have been shown to predict ability to live independently in older adults such that those with poorer executive functioning are less able to live independently (Vaughn and Giovanello 2010). Turning to behavioral responses to stress cognitive factors is known to play a role in posttraumatic stress disorder. The nature of the memory of the trauma may play a role in PTSD, that is, persistent PTSD is often associated with memories of the trauma that are poorly elaborated and not well integrated into the person's autobiographical memory (Dumore et al. 2001). More generally cognitive style may serve as an important cognitive factor. Messick (1994) refers to cognitive style as characteristic modes of thinking, perceiving, problem solving, and remembering that may influence how a person approaches a problem or task.

Cross-References

- [Cognitions](#)
- [Cognitive Function](#)
- [Cognitive Impairment](#)
- [Cognitive Strategy](#)

References and Readings

- Danili, E., & Reid, N. (2006). Cognitive factors can potentially affect pupils' test performance. *Chemistry Education Research and Practice*, 7, 64–83.
- Dumore, E., Clark, D. M., & Ehlers, A. (2001). A prospective investigation of the role of cognitive factors in persistent posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) after physical or sexual assault. *Behavior Research and Therapy*, 39, 1063–1084.
- Messick, S. (1994). The matter of style: Manifestations of personality in cognition, learning, and teaching. *Educational Psychologist*, 29, 121–136.
- Vaughn, L., & Giovanello, K. (2010). Executive function in daily living: Age related influences of executive processes on instrumental activities of daily living. *Psychology and Aging*, 25, 343–355.

Cognitive Function

Eric Roy
Department of Kinesiology, University of
Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Synonyms

[Cognition](#); [Mental ability](#); [Mental function](#)

Definition

Cognitive function derives from the term cognition which refers to the internal mental processes studied in a subdiscipline of psychology termed cognitive psychology. These internal mental processes underlie how people perceive, remember, speak, think, make decisions, and solve problems.

Cognitive function is a general term used to describe many different functions such as memory and attention thought to be components of the mind (Benjafield et al. 2010).

Description

Cognitive functions are internal and are inferred from behavior using measures such as accuracy in performing a task like recalling a list of words or the time taken to find some word on a page of text. The study of cognitive functions derives from the information processing approach which argues that these functions involve operations occurring at various processing stages. The identification of these processing stages is typically based on a model of the cognitive function of interest. Using this model, a task thought to reflect the cognitive function of interest is manipulated in such a way as to place demands on the processing stages identified. If we use memory as an example, the task of recalling a list of words can be manipulated to place demands on two processing stages: encoding or putting words into memory or retrieval involving retrieving words from memory. The encoding stage is emphasized when demands are placed on just recognizing whether words presented were in the list, while the retrieval stage is emphasized when demands are placed on recalling the words from the list. The study of cognitive functions then involves the use of experimentation through manipulation of task demands. This use of the scientific method spawned the development of another subdiscipline of psychology termed cognitive science.

The study of cognitive functions involves not only identifying the processing stages but also the strategies used and the errors made. Turning again to memory function and word list recall as an example, one strategy used involves semantic clustering where the person creates groupings of words from the list based on the meaning category such as clothes or fruit. This clustering serves to

improve recall of the words. With regard to errors, intrusions and false positive errors in recalling words from the list provide insight into the integrity of memory. Intrusions are errors where the person recalls a word not on the list, while false positive errors occur when the person is read a list of words some of which were not on the recall list. A false positive error is one where the person endorses a word that was not on the list. Both of these errors indicate that the ability to discriminate in memory between words on the recall list from those not on the list is impaired.

This information on cognitive functions has been used in the development of psychological tests designed to examine cognitive functions (Hodges 2007). These tests are administered to groups of people categorized based on factors such as age, sex, and years of education. Performance of these people is then used as normative data against which to compare performance of people who take the tests in the future. These comparisons involve determining the average and the standard deviation for each group in the normative sample. The mean and standard deviation are reference points to determine where relative to the mean a person taking the test falls. The distance the person's score falls relative to the mean is measured in standard deviation units. The number of units above or below the mean reflects the percentage of people in the normative sample who are above or below the mean. Thus, if we use the memory test as an example, a person with a score at one standard deviation unit above the mean would be at a point where 84% of people fall at or below this score. This approach to measurement termed psychometrics reveals the relative strengths of a person on various cognitive functions. This pattern of strengths is used in the subdisciplines of psychology called clinical psychology and educational psychology to direct people into education programs and work placements. The alternative to patterns of strengths is patterns of weakness in cognitive functions. Such patterns are used in a subdiscipline of psychology called clinical neuropsychology to identify cognitive impairments.

Another focus of study with regard to cognitive functions is the brain correlates of these functions. One approach called cognitive neuroscience uses functional neuroimaging and correlates patterns

of brain activity to the processing stages in various cognitive functions. The other approach called clinical neuropsychology uses psychometrics alluded to above to identify patterns of impairment in cognitive functions arising from some type of brain damage and correlates these impairments with measures of brain damage using structural (e.g., MRI) and functional (e.g., fMRI) brain imaging.

Cross-References

► [Assessment](#)

References and Readings

- Benjafield, J. G., Smilek, D., & Kingstone, A. (2010). *Cognition* (4th ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Hodges, J. (2007). *Cognitive assessment for clinicians*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Cognitive Impairment

Eric Roy
Department of Kinesiology, University of
Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Synonyms

[Cognitive deficit](#); [Cognitive disorder](#)

Definition

Cognitive impairment refers to problems people have with cognitive functions such as thinking, reasoning, memory, or attention.

Description

Cognitive impairment can be present at any point in a person's lifespan (Kolb and Whishaw 2009).

Early in life, cognitive impairment may arise from, for example, genetic syndromes, prenatal drug and alcohol exposure, trauma, or oxygen deprivation during or after birth.

Cognitive impairment in childhood and adolescence may result from a number of conditions. Examples include malnutrition, heavy metal exposure, metabolic disorders, trauma to the brain, and side effects of drug treatments for cancer or Parkinson's disease (Ogden 2005).

With age conditions such as traumatic brain injury, neurodegenerative disorders such as Alzheimer disease, stroke, brain tumors, and brain infections can cause cognitive impairment.

In some cases, cognitive impairment is reversible if the cause is identified and treated. For example, cognitive impairment arising from stroke due to a blockage of a blood vessel can be prevented if drugs designed to break up the blood clots are administered within hours of the formation of the clot. Similarly, cognitive impairments associated with metabolic disorders can be reversed with treatment of the disorder.

Cognitive impairment is defined as a disruption to some cognitive function such as memory (Lezak et al. 2004). Identifying a cognitive impairment requires a comparison of performance to some expected level of performance. In some cases, this expected performance is defined informally, for example, a person who is unable to remember the name of a life-long friend is thought to exhibit a cognitive impairment. In most cases, it is these cognitive impairments defined on the basis of informal expected level of performance which results in the person visiting a health-care practitioner for a more thorough investigation.

Such more thorough investigations identify cognitive impairments using more formal standards called norms which reflect expected performance on standardized tests of cognitive functions such as memory (Hebben and Milberg 2009). These tests are administered to groups of people categorized on factors such as gender, age, and years of education. Performance of these people forms normative data against which is compared performance of people who take the tests in the future (Strauss 2006). These comparisons require determining the average and the standard

deviation for each group in the normative sample. The mean and standard deviation are points of reference to determine where relative to the mean a person taking the test falls. The distance the person's score falls relative to the mean is measured in standard deviation units. The number of units above or below the mean reflects the percentage of people in the normative sample who are above or below the mean. Thus, if we use the memory test as an example, a person with a score at one standard deviation unit above the mean would be at a point where 84% of people in the normative sample fall at or below this score. This point is termed the 84th percentile. This approach to measurement reveals the relative strengths or weaknesses of a person on a cognitive function. A weakness is termed an impairment or deficit and reflects performance at one standard deviation unit below the mean at the 16th percentile. At this point, 84% of the people in the normative sample lie above this score.

This psychometric approach to identifying a cognitive impairment is often accompanied by a more qualitative approach where particular errors or strategies in test performance are of interest. For example, in the context of a memory impairment involving learning a list of words, the person may recall or recognize a word that was not on the list. This error reflects an impairment in discrimination in memory which provides some insight into the nature of the memory impairment.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Assessment](#)
- ▶ [Brain, Imaging](#)
- ▶ [Brain Injury](#)
- ▶ [CAT Scan](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Function](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Strategies](#)
- ▶ [Dementia](#)
- ▶ [Depression: Symptoms](#)
- ▶ [Disability](#)
- ▶ [False-Negative Error](#)
- ▶ [Neuroimaging](#)
- ▶ [Neuropsychology](#)
- ▶ [Psychometrics](#)
- ▶ [Traumatic Brain Injury](#)

References and Readings

- Hebben, N., & Milberg, W. (2009). *Essentials of neuropsychological assessment* (2nd ed.). New York: Wiley.
- Kolb, B., & Whishaw, I. (2009). *Fundamentals of human neuropsychology* (6th ed.). New York: Worth Publishers.
- Lezak, M., Howieson, D., & Loring, D. (2004). *Neuropsychological assessment* (4th ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Ogden, J. A. (2005). *Fractured minds: A case-study approach to clinical neuropsychology* (2nd ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Strauss, E. (2006). *A compendium of neuropsychological tests: Administration, norms and commentary* (3rd ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.

Cognitive Impairment Tests

► Screening, Cognitive

Cognitive Mediators

Katie E. Alegria and Linda D. Cameron
Psychological Sciences, University of California,
Merced, Merced, CA, USA

Synonyms

Mediating cognitions

Definition

Cognitive mediators are mental processes or activities that take place between the initial occurrence of a stimulus and the subsequent related response.

Description

Cognitive mediation processes can occur immediately following the stimulus, such as within microseconds, or they can be delayed responses

taking days, weeks, or longer. These cognitive processes may be conscious or nonconscious (i.e., automatically elicited outside of one's awareness), and they can be distinguished from emotional processes, such as those that are associated with affective mediators. Cognitive mediators include interpretations of information; judgments and evaluations; reasoning; mental representations; information retrieval; self-appraisals such as self-efficacy and self-esteem; and other mental processes. Theoretical models of health behavior that incorporate cognitive mediators propose that the health-related response to a stimulus happens indirectly through the cognitive mechanism or mechanisms, rather than solely through a direct stimulus-response relationship.

In general, mediational models explain the mechanisms through which an independent variable relates to a dependent variable. Additionally, mediators are often specified and regarded as providing the "how" of causal relationships (e.g., the act of breaking large goals down into smaller tasks can lead to greater task completion due to the mediational effects of increased self-efficacy and perceived control over the smaller tasks). Health-related mediational models that contain cognitive mediators have been applied to better understand the cognitive mechanisms through which social, psychological, and environmental factors influence a variety of health experiences, behaviors, and outcomes. For example, research applying the theory of planned behavior to understand and predict physical activity has elucidated that perceived behavioral control and intentions are cognitive mediators through which social support can influence adherence to exercise regimens. Research guided by the social cognition model that tested the relationships between environmental, social, and individual factors as predictors of health-related behaviors has demonstrated that self-efficacy is a cognitive mediator between these factors (e.g., equipment accessibility) and physical activity. Research guided by the common-sense model of self-regulation has shown that self-stigma mediates the relationship between mental illness representations and mental illness recovery. These lines of research exemplify

how cognitive mechanisms can mediate the relationships between multifaceted health-related stimuli and responses that can be mental, physical, or social and that can be relevant to a variety of treatments, risk factors, and other health-related outcomes.

Cognitive mediators have been examined in behavioral medicine research utilizing cross-sectional designs as well as more rigorous experimental and longitudinal designs. Early behavioral medicine research on cognitive mediators examined their influence on pain perception and management, stress, and the health status of individuals with medical conditions. Later research has also examined cognitive mediators in a wider variety of health-related contexts (e.g., clinical settings, workplace, and daily life, and with diverse populations) and alongside affective mediators (e.g., mood, happiness, anxiety), social mediators (e.g., social support, socioeconomic status, cultural factors), and environmental mediators (e.g., accessibility to resources, perceived safety of neighborhoods). The delineation of cognitive mediating mechanisms to help treat and manage chronic illness continues to lead to precision behavioral interventions, as well as methodological advances in the behavioral medicine field. For example, incorporating cognitive mediators alongside other predictors of health-related behavior has allowed for more specific intervention development and greater understanding for treatment adherence and reducing substance abuse or misuse. More recently, cognitive mediators have been examined as vital targets of health-promoting interventions such as programs for smoking cessation, reduction of alcohol use, increase in physical activity, regulated dietary intake, and diabetes management.

Cross-References

- [Attitudes](#)
- [Beliefs](#)
- [Cognitions](#)
- [Cognitive Factors](#)
- [Cognitive Strategies](#)

- [Common-Sense Model of Self-Regulation](#)
- [Health Behaviors](#)
- [Health Outcomes Research](#)
- [Mediators](#)
- [Social Ecological Model](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bullock, J. G., Green, D. P., & Ha, S. E. (2010). Yes, but what's the mechanism? (don't expect an easy answer). *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 98, 550.
- Chan, K. (2018). Social cognitive mediators of the relationship between impulsivity traits and adolescent alcohol use: Identifying unique targets for prevention. *Prevention*, 84, 79–85.
- Chan, R. C., & Mak, W. W. (2016). Common sense model of mental illness: Understanding the impact of cognitive and emotional representations of mental illness on recovery through the mediation of self-stigma. *Psychiatry Research*, 246, 16–24.
- Courneya, K. S., & McAuley, E. (1995). Cognitive mediators of the social influence-exercise adherence relationship: A test of the theory of planned behavior. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 18, 499–515.
- González, M. T., Morales, A., Orgiles, M., Sussman, S., & Espada, J. P. (2018). Role of smoking intention in tobacco use reduction: A mediation analysis of an effective classroom-based prevention/cessation intervention for adolescents. *Addictive Behaviors*, 84, 186–192.
- Motl, R. W., Dishman, R. K., Ward, D. S., Saunders, R. P., Dowda, M., Felton, G., & Pate, R. R. (2005). Perceived physical environment and physical activity across one year among adolescent girls: Self-efficacy as a possible mediator? *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 37(5), 403–408.
- Rucker, D. D., Preacher, K. J., Tormala, Z. L., & Petty, R. E. (2011). Mediation analysis in social psychology: Current practices and new recommendations. *Social and Personality Psychology Compass*, 5, 359–371.

Cognitive Psychology

- [Human Factors/Ergonomics](#)

Cognitive Reappraisal

- [Cognitive Restructuring](#)

Cognitive Restructuring

Lara Traeger
Behavioral Medicine Service, Massachusetts
General Hospital/Harvard Medical School,
Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Cognitive reappraisal](#)

Definition

Cognitive restructuring is a strategy to recognize negative, inaccurate thoughts and replace them with alternative ones that are more realistic and helpful. This cognitive strategy, a key part of cognitive behavioral therapy, promotes optimal thinking about a stressful or overwhelming situation to reduce emotional distress. Cognitive restructuring may involve several steps: write down the situation; list negative thoughts that occurred during the situation; list emotions that arise when having these thoughts; identify cognitive distortions or errors that may underlie each thought; challenge each thought; and generate rational responses. The rational responses are self-statements that are used to feel better about the situation.

Cognitive restructuring may help individuals with a chronic illness to manage how the illness affects their perceptions of themselves, their relationships, and their future. For example, an individual may be experiencing persistent anxiety since his return to work following a myocardial infarction. The individual may be encouraged to identify a specific situation that is making him anxious (“My supervisor pointed out some errors in my work”); his negative thoughts (“I can’t do anything right since I had my heart attack,” and “I’ll probably get fired”); and his resulting emotions (fear, despair). Through cognitive restructuring, the individual may work on challenging his thoughts and generating alternative responses: “I don’t have any evidence that my

supervisor is dissatisfied with my work in general. I have been taking care of myself since my heart attack. No one is perfect, and in the future, I can leave more time to check my work.” The individual may then assess whether the rational responses help him to reduce his distress and view his situation in a more helpful light.

Cross-References

- [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- [Cognitive Strategies](#)

References and Readings

- Beck, A. T., Rush, A. J., Shaw, B. F., & Emery, G. (1979). *Cognitive therapy of depression*. New York: Guilford.
- Clark, D. A., Beck, A. T., & Alford, B. A. (1999). *Scientific foundations of cognitive theory and therapy of depression*. New York: Wiley.

Cognitive Status Tests

- [Screening, Cognitive](#)

Cognitive Strategies

Sara Fleszar¹ and Linda D. Cameron²
¹University of California, Merced, Merced, CA, USA
²Psychological Sciences, University of California, Merced, Merced, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Cognitive techniques](#); [Mental strategies](#)

Definition

Cognitive strategies are mental techniques that are implemented to regulate thought processes in order to achieve goals or solve problems.

Description

Cognitive strategies include those directing attentional focus (e.g., attentional engagement or distraction), cognitive reframing or reinterpretation of distressing experiences, mental imagery techniques, framing an issue with a helpful metaphor (e.g., smoking cessation as a “journey”), mental rehearsal of positive statements, mental simulations (i.e., imagining real or hypothetical events), and counterfactual thinking (i.e., mental representations of alternatives to past or anticipated events). Cognitive strategies can be useful in situations in which specific interpretations of a situation (e.g., a problem or choice) promote goal-directed behaviors. Implementing cognitive strategies can transform the interpretation of situations, leading to varying responses to an event. Individuals may have contrasting responses to the same event. For example, one individual might interpret high blood pressure as a manageable situation, controlled through healthy dietary intake and physical activity, whereas another individual might interpret high blood pressure as an uncontrollable threat that will lead to a heart attack.

Self-regulation theories of behavior, such as Leventhal’s common sense model and Scheier and Carver’s self-regulation model, focus on cognitive strategies as playing a critical role in coping with stressful and threatening health experiences and guiding goal-directed behavior. Cognitive strategies are primary targets for numerous intervention approaches. One such strategy, cognitive distortions, is a primary target for cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT). Cognitive distortions (e.g., maladaptive thoughts) are resolved through cognitive restructuring or identifying and challenging irrational assumptions. Engaging individuals in cognitive defusion, the act of reducing the perceived power of compulsive thoughts, is one of the core psychological skills utilized in acceptance and commitment therapy (ACT) interventions. Mindfulness-based techniques, often used in collaboration with CBT and among the primary processes utilized in ACT, involve developing the skill of bringing attention to cognitions and perceptions occurring in the present moment in a non-judging, accepting, and open manner.

Aiming to transform internal mental processes rather than adjusting external events, cognitive strategies are advantageous for use in the dynamic healthcare setting. Within this setting, pain management is one area in which cognitive strategies may be useful. Examples include distraction, where one diverts attention away from the painful stimulus and toward a non-painful alternative; imagery, such as imagining a favorite scene or other non-painful image; and redefinition, where pain cognitions related to threat or fear are replaced with constructive or non-threatening thoughts. In the context of health promotion, mental imagery techniques have been demonstrated to increase physical activity in sedentary adults, and cognitive reframing has been shown to modify food cravings, improve food choices, and reduce unhealthy eating in individuals with obesity. In the context of disease screening and detection, metaphoric framing of health messages to describe the body as a “family of organs” has proven effective in increasing cervical cancer-screening intentions in Latina women who strongly endorse “familismo” or family values and identification. Cognitive strategies can also be of benefit to individuals with chronic illnesses who are experiencing psychological distress or difficulty managing their conditions. For instance, interventions utilizing mindfulness-based cognitive therapy have resulted in decreases in stress, anxiety, and depression in women with breast cancer and individuals with type II diabetes.

Cross-References

- ▶ [ACT](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Behavior Therapy](#)
- ▶ [Common-Sense Model of Self-Regulation](#)
- ▶ [Mental Imagery](#)
- ▶ [Mindfulness](#)
- ▶ [Temporal Self-Regulation Theory](#)

References and Further Reading

- Boswell, R. G., Sun, W., Suzuki, S., & Kober, H. (2018). Training in cognitive strategies reduces eating and improves food choice. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 115, E11238–E11247.

- Chan, C. K. Y., & Cameron, L. D. (2011). Promoting physical activity with goal-oriented mental imagery: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 35, 347–363.
- Haller, H., Winkler, M. M., Klose, P., Dobos, G., Kümmel, S., & Cramer, H. (2017). Mindfulness-based interventions for women with breast cancer: An updated systematic review and meta-analysis. *Acta Oncologica*, 56, 1665–1676.
- Hart, S. I., & Hart, T. A. (2010). The future of cognitive behavioral interventions within behavioral medicine. *Journal of Cognitive Psychotherapy*, 24, 344–353.
- Markman, K. D., Klein, W. M., & Suhr, J. A. (Eds.). (2012). *Handbook of imagination and mental simulation*. New York: Psychology Press.
- McCracken, L. M. (Ed.). (2011). *Mindfulness and acceptance in behavioral medicine: Current theory and practice*. Oakland: Context Press/New Harbinger Publications.
- Noordali, F., Cumming, J., & Thompson, J. L. (2017). Effectiveness of mindfulness-based interventions on physiological and psychological complications in adults with diabetes: A systematic review. *Journal of Health Psychology*, 22, 965–983.
- Spina, M., Arndt, J., Landau, M. J., & Cameron, L. D. (2018). Enhancing health message framing with metaphor and cultural values: Impact on Latinas' cervical cancer screening. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 52, 106–115.

Cognitive Strategy

- [Cognitive Factors](#)

Cognitive Style

- [Cognitive Factors](#)

Cognitive Techniques

- [Cognitive Strategies](#)

Cognitive-Behavioral Stress Management Training

- [Williams LifeSkills Program](#)

Cohort Study

Jane Monaco

Department of Biostatistics, The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Follow-up study](#); [Observational designs](#); [Observational studies](#); [Observational study](#)

Definition

A cohort study is an observational study design in which subjects are usually selected based on their risk factor exposure and followed over time to evaluate whether they develop the outcome of interest (usually disease).

Description

Cohort studies are commonly used in behavioral medicine research to investigate associations in which experimental designs are unethical or too costly. In a cohort design, participants who have not experienced the outcome of interest are selected, usually based on whether or not they have been exposed to the risk factor of interest. Therefore, a cohort study design is efficient when the exposure is relatively rare but the outcome of interest is common. For example, a cohort design was used in a study of the association of prenatal polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB) exposure with behavior issues and cognitive disability (Lai et al. 2002). A cohort design is also appropriate when the exposure is common.

The most common type of cohort study, a prospective cohort study, identifies subjects without the outcome of interest (such as disease-free participants) at the outset of the study and then follows them forward through time to assess their outcome (or disease) status. Because the subjects

have not experienced the outcome at the outset of the study, this prospective design is less susceptible to many types of bias compared to other observational study designs, such as case-control studies. Included in the prospective cohort study design are large studies such as the Framingham Study in which participants were selected for logistical reasons. By recruiting a large number of residents from the single community of Framingham, Massachusetts, follow-up was simplified, and investigators were able to study prospectively the associations between multiple risk factors and outcomes among the participants (Dawber et al. 1963).

Not all cohort studies are conducted prospectively. In a retrospective cohort study, both the exposure and outcome may have occurred at the time of the initiation of the study. These retrospective, sometimes called historical, cohort studies are often conducted using data previously collected for other purposes. For example, pregnant women drivers involved in motor vehicle crashes were identified by linking Washington State Patrol records to birth and death certificates (Wolf et al. 1993). The exposure of interest, seat belt use at the time of the crash, was determined using the police reports. Investigators determined pregnancy outcomes (including low birth weight and fetal death) based on the birth and fetal death certificate data. This retrospective cohort study found the risk of a low-birth-weight infant was higher among unrestrained female drivers compared to those wearing a seat belt at the time of the crash.

In a cohort study, investigators must follow both the exposed and unexposed subjects equally carefully to avoid detection bias. If the exposed subjects are followed more closely, then an excess number of outcomes may be detected within the exposed group resulting in an overestimate of the exposure effect. Also, loss to follow-up may result in biased results when that loss is associated with the exposure and outcome.

Some characteristics of cohort studies:

- Usually more expensive and time-consuming than case-control designs; less expensive than an experimental design

- Often used when the exposure is rare
- Not practical when outcome of interest (disease) is rare or has a long-latency period
- Appropriate when studying multiple outcomes
- Usually can only address a single risk factor
- When information collected prospectively, reduces potential for bias
- Can be impacted by loss to follow-up
- Can compute incidence and relative risk of outcome directly
- Often considered stronger study design compared with case-control studies, but weaker study design compared to randomized trials that investigate analogous associations

Cross-References

- [Bogalusa Heart Study](#)
- [Case-Control Studies](#)
- [Follow-Up Study](#)
- [Retrospective Study](#)

References and Further Reading

- Dawber, T. R., Kannel, W. B., & Lyell, L. P. (1963). An approach to longitudinal studies in a community: The Framingham study. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 107(2), 539–556.
- Hennekens, C. H., Buring, J. E., & Mayrent, S. L. (1987). *Epidemiology in medicine*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Kleinbaum, D. G., Sullivan, K. M., & Barker, N. D. (2007). *A pocket guide to epidemiology*. New York: Springer.
- Lai, T. J., Liu, X., Guo, Y. L., Guo, N., Yu, M., Hsu, C., et al. (2002). A cohort study of behavioral problems and intelligence in children with high prenatal polychlorinated biphenyl exposure. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 59(11), 1061–1066.
- Wolf, M. E., Alexander, B. H., Rivara, F. P., Hickok, D. E., Maier, R. V., & Starzyk, P. M. (1993). A retrospective cohort study of seatbelt use and pregnancy outcome after a motor vehicle crash. *The Journal of Trauma*, 34(1), 116.

Cold Pressor Task

- [Cold Pressor Test](#)

Cold Pressor Test

Laura A. Mitchell

Department of Psychology, School of Life Sciences, Glasgow Caledonian University, Glasgow, Scotland, UK

Synonyms

[Cold pressor task](#)

Definition

The cold pressor test is a widely used experimental technique for human pain or stress induction, involving immersion of the hand or forearm in cold water. First documented as a test of cardiovascular stress reactivity (Hines and Brown 1936), its application in investigation of pain perception, mechanisms, and treatment is due to a gradually mounting painful sensation of mild to moderate intensity. As water temperatures used are within the range considered noxious (below 15 °C), nociceptors (pain receptors) are activated and transmit an aversive signal to the CNS. While nociception-transduction ion channels involved have been identified, the exact mechanisms of cold pain are not fully elucidated (Basbaum et al. 2009).

Like other pain inductions, the cold pressor allows fast and precisely controlled evaluations not possible in a clinical context. Apparatus for the task is a tank of circulating water of temperature most often between 0 °C and 5 °C, with instruction to immerse the hand until too uncomfortable to continue. A maximum time limit per immersion of 3–5 min is normally applied. Quantitative measurement can then be made of pain threshold (point first perceived as painful), tolerance time, and perceived intensity and unpleasantness. The technique is regarded as safe for pain evaluations in children, usually at a slightly higher water temperature (von Baeyer et al. 2005).

Cross-References

► [Pain Threshold](#)

References and Readings

- Basbaum, A. I., Bautista, D. M., Scherrer, G., & Julius, D. (2009). Cellular and molecular mechanisms of pain. *Cell*, 139, 267–284.
- Hines, E. A., & Brown, G. E. (1936). The cold pressor test for measuring the reactivity of the blood pressure: Data concerning 571 normal and hypertensive subjects. *American Heart Journal*, 11, 1–9.
- von Baeyer, C. L., Piira, T., Chambers, C. T., Trapanotto, M., & Zeltzer, L. K. (2005). Guidelines for the cold pressor task as an experimental pain stimulus for use with children. *The Journal of Pain*, 6(4), 218–227.

Colitis

► [Inflammatory Bowel Disease](#)

Collaborative Care

► [Clinical Settings](#)

Collaborator

► [Co-workers](#)

Colleague

► [Co-workers](#)

College Students

► [Binge Drinking](#)

Colorectal Cancer

► [Cancer, Colorectal](#)

Commissioning Parent

► [Surrogacy](#)

Common Cold

Denise Janicki-Deverts and Crista N. Crittenden
Department of Psychology, Carnegie Mellon
University, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Upper respiratory infection \(mild\)](#)

Definition

The common cold is the familiar name for a mild upper respiratory infection (URI). Symptoms of the common cold include nasal congestion, mucus production, sneezing, cough, and sore throat (Eccles 2005). The common cold is caused by any of a number of viruses, most often one of the rhinoviruses (see ► [“Common Cold: Cause”](#)).

URIs are responsible for 50% of all acute illnesses, with common colds accounting for most of that proportion. While symptoms are often mild, the common cold often confers a heavy burden on patients, healthcare providers, schools, and workplaces. Approximately 62 million cases of the common cold occur each year in the United States. In addition, 20 million school days are lost annually as well as 22 million work days due to the common cold (Adams et al. 1999).

The incubation period for the common cold largely depends on the virus that causes it. On

average, symptoms begin 2–3 days after virus exposure and infection. From the onset of the first symptoms, severity usually peaks within 2 days. Overall, the duration of the common cold is usually 7–10 days (Eccles 2005).

Because only a proportion of people who are exposed to cold viruses actually develop symptoms, the common cold has become a fertile ground for studying psychosocial and behavioral factors that influence vulnerability to infection. Viral challenge studies expose healthy individuals to common cold viruses and then keep them in quarantine over several days to assess who develops infection and symptoms and who does not. Prior to virus exposure, a plethora of behavioral and psychological measures are performed in order to assess the roles these factors may play in illness susceptibility.

Within these experimental studies, individuals are determined to have a cold if they (1) are infected with the challenge virus and (2) meet a set of predetermined criteria based on subjective symptom reports and objective physiological measurements. Infection is determined by the presence of viral shedding (i.e., replication of the virus in the host environment). Viral shedding is assessed by administering a nasal wash, which flushes the nasal cavity and sinuses, and then culturing a sample of the exposed wash solution for the presence of replicating virus. Presence and severity of cold symptoms, i.e., runny nose, sore throat, nasal congestion, etc., are assessed via observation and participant report. Objective measures of cold severity include mucus production and mucociliary clearance function. Mucus production is assessed by collecting used tissues from participants and measuring their weight; nasal mucociliary clearance, or how effective the body is in clearing mucus from the nasal passage, is assessed as the time it takes for a dye administered in the nostrils to reach the nasopharynx (Doyle et al. 1988). Additional measures, such as lung function, may also be taken.

Through these common cold studies, several behavioral and psychosocial factors have been found to greatly increase susceptibility to

infection, including sleep patterns, social integration and stress. These topics are discussed further in ► [“Common Cold: Cause”](#) and ► [“Common Cold: The Stress Factor”](#).

Cross-References

- [Bronchitis](#)
- [Common Cold: Cause](#)
- [Common Cold: The Stress Factor](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Readings

- Adams, P. F., Hendershot, G. E., & Marano, M. A. (1999). Current estimates from the national health interview survey 1996, National Center for Health Statistics. *Vital and Health Statistics*, 10(200).
- Doyle, W. J., McBride, T. P., Swarts, J. D., Hayden, F. G., & Gwaltney, J. M. (1988). The response of the nasal airway, middle ear and Eustachian tube to provocative rhinovirus challenge. *American Journal of Rhinology*, 2, 149–154.
- Eccles, R. (2005). Understanding the symptoms of the common cold and influenza. *The Lancet Infectious Diseases*, 5, 718–725.

Common Cold: Cause

Denise Janicki-Deverts and Crista N. Crittenden
Department of Psychology, Carnegie Mellon
University, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Upper respiratory infection \(mild\): cause](#)

Definition

The common cold is a mild upper respiratory illness that results from infection with any of

more than 200 viruses, most notably the rhinoviruses. The rhinovirus family is comprised of over 100 different viruses, with the relative prevalence of each being dependent on a number of factors, from geographical area to time of year. Overall, rhinoviruses make up approximately 30–50% of all acute respiratory illnesses, but in the fall season this proportion jumps to about 80%. Coronaviruses comprise another family of viruses that cause the common cold. Infections with coronaviruses are estimated to account for 7–18% of adult colds, and in contrast to rhinovirus infections, tend to be most prevalent during the winter and spring months. Additional cold viruses include parainfluenza, respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), the adenoviruses, and the enteroviruses which collectively account for a comparatively small percentage of infections. In addition, 20–30% of common cold cases are of unknown origin (Heikkinen and Jarvinen 2003).

Cold viruses are highly contagious, and interpersonal transmission of colds typically occurs in one of two ways: (1) inhaling viral particles that are released into the air in tiny droplets when infected persons cough, sneeze, or blow their nose; or (2) coming into contact with surfaces that have been contaminated by infected secretions (e.g., a doorknob that was touched by an infected person immediately after coughing into his or her hand) and then touching one’s own eyes, nose, or mouth.

Several factors have been found to influence whether individuals become infected following exposure to a cold virus and/or the severity of their symptoms once infected. Most of these findings have derived from viral challenge studies wherein healthy individuals are exposed to cold viruses (most often rhinoviruses), placed under quarantine, and monitored by trained medical staff for objective signs and subjective symptoms of a cold (see ► [“Common Cold”](#)). Of all potential susceptibility factors, stress has been the most explored. Accordingly, the role of stress in cold susceptibility is discussed in a separate entry (see ► [“Common Cold: The Stress](#)

Factor”). Stress, however, is far from being the only factor that has been found to influence who develops colds. For example, smokers are more likely than nonsmokers to become infected with the cold virus and, consequently, to develop illness symptoms (Cohen et al. 1993). Social relationship factors have been found to influence cold susceptibility as well. People who are high in trait sociability (which is thought to be an important determinant of quantity and quality of social interaction) and those with more diverse social networks are less susceptible to colds than their less sociable and less socially integrated counterparts (Cohen et al. 1997; Cohen et al. 2003a). A third identified susceptibility factor is affect. Specifically, greater positive affect is associated in a dose-response manner with reduced likelihood of developing a cold (Cohen et al. 2003b). Importantly, all of these factors remained associated with cold susceptibility even when controlling for age, sex, body weight, and season of exposure.

Cross-References

- [Common Cold](#)
- [Common Cold: The Stress Factor](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Readings

- Cohen, S., Tyrrell, D. A. J., Russell, M. A., Jarvis, M. J., & Smith, A. P. (1993). Smoking, alcohol consumption, and susceptibility to the common cold. *American Journal of Public Health*, 83, 1277–1283.
- Cohen, S., Doyle, W. J., Skoner, D. P., et al. (1997). Social ties and susceptibility to the common cold. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 277, 1940–1944.
- Cohen, S., Doyle, W. J., Turner, R. B., Alper, C. M., & Skoner, D. P. (2003a). Sociability and susceptibility to the common cold. *Psychological Science*, 14, 389–395.
- Cohen, S., Doyle, W. J., Turner, R. B., Alper, C. M., & Skoner, D. P. (2003b). Emotional style and susceptibility to the common cold. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65, 652–657.
- Eccles, R. (2005). Understanding the symptoms of the common cold and influenza. *The Lancet Infectious Diseases*, 5, 718–725.
- Heikkinen, T., & Jarvinen, A. (2003). The common cold. *Lancet*, 361, 51–59.

Common Cold: The Stress Factor

Denise Janicki-Deverts and Crista N. Crittenden
Department of Psychology, Carnegie Mellon
University, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Upper respiratory infection \(mild\): the stress factor](#)

Definition

One of the most consistent findings from viral challenge studies (see ► [“Common Cold”](#)) is that the experience of stress is positively associated with susceptibility to the common cold. Here stress is defined as a psychological state resulting from outside factors or events placing demands on an individual that exceed his or her resources or ability to cope (Cohen et al. 1995). Although stressful experiences such as bereavement and care giving have long been believed to suppress host resistance, the common cold studies were the first to demonstrate the role of the stress factor under prospective, controlled conditions.

Cohen, Tyrrell, and Smith (1991) conducted one of the first studies to explore the role of stress in susceptibility to the common cold. The authors assessed several stress factors, including life events and perceived stress in a sample of healthy adults, and then experimentally exposed these individuals to a cold virus or to a saline control.

Despite controlling for several person and environmental factors, the researchers observed a dose-response association between stress and clinical colds: more stress was associated with an increased likelihood both of becoming infected and displaying clinical symptoms. Furthermore, they also found that long-lasting social stressors accounted for the greatest infection risk. These stress factor effects were all independent of potential mediators such as smoking, diet, alcohol use, and sleep quality. Cohen et al. (1998) further explored several types of stressors linked to the common cold and found that severe, chronic stressors – especially work and interpersonal stressors, lasting 1 month or longer – conferred a substantial risk of developing a clinical cold after virus exposure. Moreover, the longer the stress duration, the greater the relative risk of a cold. Again, these differences could not be completely explained by environmental, person-related, or behavioral factors.

An important feature of the common cold is that associated symptoms (sneezing, congestion, etc.) are caused by the body's immune response to the virus, not the virus per se. Most symptoms result from the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines that recruit other immune cells to fight the infection. Several "host" factors influence the immune system's response to infection and how severe resulting symptoms will be. These include age, general health, and past infection experience. However, the repeated finding of greater stress being associated with increased risk for colds independent of behavioral factors or health practices suggests that stress may be influencing the immune system, as well, by suppressing some resistance processes. For example, in influenza challenge studies, increased psychological stress was associated with higher pro-inflammatory cytokine concentrations, particularly interleukin (IL)-6 (Cohen et al. 1999). In an experimental study in which stress was induced in a laboratory setting, Marsland, Bachen, Cohen, Rabin, and Manuck (2002) found that being exposed to a stressor was associated with increases in immune markers, such as circulating natural killer cells and cytotoxic T cells. These studies suggest that stress may be acting through major

immunological pathways to increase symptoms of infectious illnesses.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Common Cold](#)
- ▶ [Stress](#)

References and Reading

- Cohen, S., Tyrrell, D. A. J., & Smith, A. P. (1991). Psychological stress and susceptibility to the common cold. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 325, 606–612.
- Cohen, S., Tyrrell, D. A. J., & Smith, A. P. (1993). Life events, perceived stress, negative affect and susceptibility to the common cold. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 64, 131–140.
- Cohen, S., Kessler, R. C., & Underwood Gordon, L. (Eds.). (1995). *Measuring stress: A guide for health and social scientists*. New York: Oxford University Press. Strategies for measuring stress in studies of psychiatric and physical disorders.
- Cohen, S., Frank, E., Doyle, W. J., Skoner, D. P., Rabin, B. S., & Gwaltney, J. M. (1998). Types of stressors that increase susceptibility to the common cold in healthy adults. *Health Psychology*, 17(3), 214–223.
- Cohen, S., Doyle, W. J., & Skoner, D. P. (1999). Psychological stress, cytokine production, and severity of upper respiratory illness. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 61, 175–180.
- Marsland, A. L., Bachen, E. A., Cohen, S., Rabin, B., & Manuck, S. B. (2002). Stress, immune reactivity and susceptibility to infectious disease. *Physiology and Behavior*, 77, 711–716.

Common Disease-Common Variant

Jennifer Wessel
Public Health, School of Medicine, Indiana
University, Indianapolis, IN, USA

Definition

The common disease-common variant (CDCV) hypothesis predicts that for any given common

disease, the genetic risk will be due to common variants with high frequency in the population (Pritchard and Cox 2002; Reich and Lander 2001).

The allelic spectrum, i.e., the frequency of the allele in the population and the number of disease-predisposing alleles, of common diseases is still not well understood. The number of common variants contributing to any given common disease will most likely vary from less than 100 to several thousands, with many of these variants having a low effect on the disease (Padhukasahasram et al. 2010).

Genome-wide association studies (GWAS) have succeeded at identifying common variations, many with low effect sizes (odds ratio ~ 1.2 – 1.5). However, there are many more left to be identified. A number of reasons have been suggested as to why GWAS have not identified more variations. These include rare variations contributing to common diseases, phenotypic heterogeneity, sample size, or regions missed by single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) microarrays.

Cross-References

- [Allele](#)
- [Genome-Wide Association Study \(GWAS\)](#)
- [Single Nucleotide Polymorphism \(SNP\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Padhukasahasram, B., Halperin, E., Wessel, J., Thomas, D. J., Silver, E., Trumbower, H., et al. (2010). Pre-symptomatic risk assessment for chronic non-communicable diseases. *PLoS One*, 5, e14338.
- Pritchard, J. K., & Cox, N. (2002). The allelic architecture of human disease genes: Common disease-common variant...or not? *Human Molecular Genetics*, 11, 2417–2423.
- Reich, D. E., & Lander, E. S. (2001). On the allelic spectrum of disease. *Trends in Genetics*, 17, 502–510.

Common Migraine

- [Migraine Headache](#)

Common-Sense Model of Self-Regulation

Pablo A. Mora¹, Lisa M. McAndrew² and Alison Phillips³

¹Department of Psychology, The University of Texas at Arlington, Arlington, TX, USA

²War Related Illness and Injury Study Center, Veterans Affairs NJ Healthcare System, East Orange, NJ, USA

³Department of Psychology, Iowa State University, Ames, IA, USA

Synonyms

[Illness representation model](#); [Mental models of illness](#); [Mental representations of illness](#)

Definition

The common-sense model of self-regulation (CSM) explains how individuals respond to and manage health threats. It proposes that people actively engage in problem-solving by developing mental models of health threats, subjective and objective treatment goals, and practices and procedures most likely to achieve those goals.

Description

Background

The origins of the common-sense model of self-regulation (CSM) can be traced to the parallel model proposed by Leventhal in the early 1970s to understand how individuals respond to fear-arousing communications (Leventhal 1970). Similar to the parallel model, the CSM posits that when a threat is perceived (e.g., physical

P. A. Mora: deceased.

The views are that of the author and do not necessarily represent the policy or position of the United States Government.

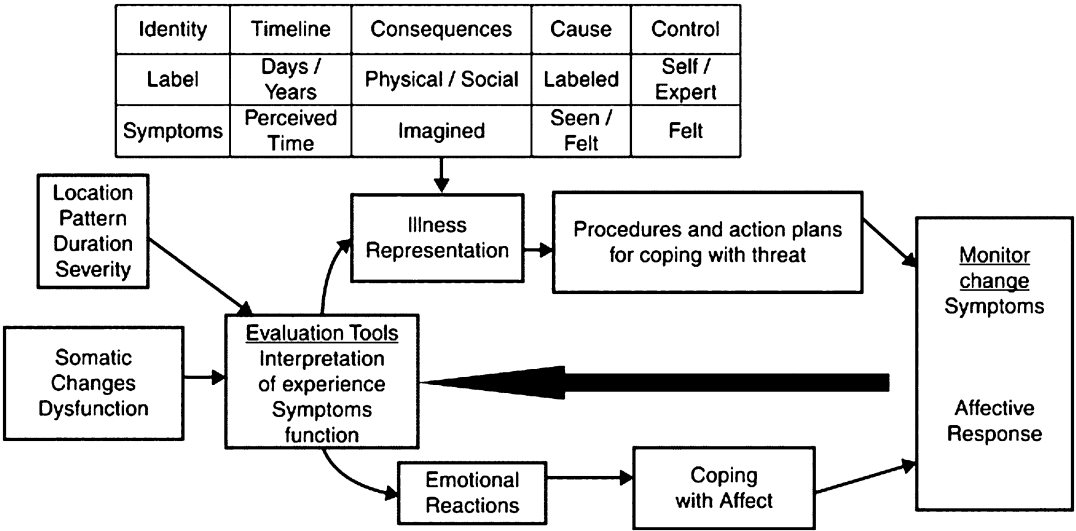
symptoms or changes in function), individuals develop two parallel, yet interrelated, representations of the stimulus: cognitive and emotional (Leventhal et al. 1997). These representations and their content specify the actions (i.e., behaviors) in which individuals engage to remove the health threat.

CSM is divided into three phases (Leventhal and Cameron 1987). In the first stage, the perceptual stage, a discrepancy between a perceived input and a reference value, is detected (i.e., health threat). At this stage, the individual develops a common-sense illness representation of the potential health threat. In the second stage (i.e., the response stage), the individual selects and performs actions (i.e., coping procedures) to reduce the discrepancy. The illness representation developed during the perceptual stage will help select the types of actions used by the individual during the response stage. It should be noted that these first two phases may occur automatically – i.e., outside of the individual's conscious awareness (Orbell and Phillips 2019). For example, cues in the environment may trigger a person's awareness of a symptom, such as a sore throat or congestion, and may trigger a mental representation of a cold or the flu. If the mental model has become implicit, due to past experiences, then even the coping response may be chosen automatically, with little or no deliberation (e.g., taking a cold remedy; making a doctor's appointment). In the last evaluative stage, the appraisal stage, the results of the action(s) aimed at reducing or eliminating the discrepancy are evaluated. If the actions are successful in dealing with the threat, the loop stops. If unsuccessful, the individual may reassess the representation and form a new illness representation and/or select and perform new corrective actions. This loop will continue until the threat has been successfully removed or controlled. A final stage may exist in which the individual maintains a successful coping response in the long term. Phillips and colleagues (2013, 2016) extended the CSM to include habitual action, to account for individuals who engage in treatment behaviors automatically and for whom specific beliefs about the treatments no longer predict adherence.

Illness Representations

The CSM assumes that people are active problem-solvers who continuously assess the meaning of somatic sensations and/or changes in function by forming cognitive and emotional illness representations (see Fig. 1). Illness representations have a bi-level structure that includes an abstract level (i.e., disease labels and chronological time) and a concrete level (i.e., symptoms and experienced time). Initially, it was thought there were five defining aspects of illness representation: identity, timeline, causes, consequences, and controllability. Abstract features of *identity* include the label applied to the health threat (e.g., diagnosis or name of the condition). Concrete features of *identity* refer to how the threat is experienced (e.g., symptoms and/or changes in function). *Timeline* refers to the objective (i.e., abstract: duration in minutes or hours) and perceived (i.e., concrete: perceived duration) temporal features of the health threat. *Causes* refer to the diagnosed (i.e., information conveyed by the doctor) and perceived (i.e., leaving home with wet hair) factors that caused the health threat. The causes of a threat can be grouped into external agents (e.g., virus, bacteria, or stress), internal susceptibilities (e.g., age, genetics), and behaviors (e.g., smoking). *Consequences* include both anticipated (i.e., abstract) and perceived and experienced (i.e., concrete) physical, psychological, social, and economic effects that the health threat will produce. *Controllability* refers to whether the person expects and perceives the health threat to be susceptible to control by experts (e.g., physician) and/or the self.

A sixth domain, *illness coherence*, has been proposed (Moss-Morris et al. 2002). Illness coherence is a metacognition that refers to the extent to which an individual believes that the various features of an illness hang together. For example, someone who suffers from a cold would expect that symptoms such as a runny nose and a sore throat would last for a couple of weeks. However, if unusual symptoms are experienced or if the timeline of the symptoms is longer than expected, the individual will have trouble making sense of the health threat.



Common-Sense Model of Self-Regulation, Fig. 1 Individuals assess somatic changes based on the features of the changes by using evaluation tools (e.g., location, pattern, duration, or function) and comparing these features against illness prototypes. If deemed to be a health threat, the individuals develops cognitive and emotional representations of the threat. The cognitive

representation consists of five bi-level domains. Cognitive and emotional representations guide the selection of coping procedures and the criteria for assessing effectiveness of these procedures (e.g., changes in symptom and/or affectivity). Evidence of success or failure to achieve desired changes will be used by the individual to reassess the illness representation

Meta-analyses find illness representations are related to health outcomes and that these relationships are mediated through changes to coping and management behaviors. The strongest evidence is threat-related illness representations (greater timeline, stronger identify, greater consequences) have a moderate relationship with poorer health outcomes and worse self-management. Positive illness representations (greater perceived control, greater coherence) have a small relationship with better health outcomes and better self-management (Hagger et al. 2017; McAndrew et al. 2019; Brandes and Mullan 2014). These meta-analyses also find the relationships between illness representations and health outcomes are mediated through changes to action (i.e., coping, self-management, behavior), consistent with the CSM.

The CSM proposes that illness representations and their content serve as guides for the selection, performance, and evaluation of actions used to manage illness episodes. Feedback from these actions can reshape the representations and alter

subsequent coping actions. For instance, actions taken to ameliorate a stomachache could involve drinking herbal tea or having a bland diet, whereas a headache might lead the person to take an over-the-counter pain reliever. The appraisal of the effectiveness of these actions will also vary depending on the specific content of the representations. For example, the expected timeline for ridding oneself of a stomachache is likely several hours to a day, while the expected timeline for determining that a pain reliever is effective in dealing with a headache could be to 1–2 h at most.

Appraisal of Health Threats and Effects of Action

When a deviation from “normal function” is detected (e.g., a health threat such as somatic symptoms or declines in physical function), the individual will promptly engage in an automatic scanning process in which the properties of the health threat are assessed (Leventhal et al. 2010). These properties are compared against illness

prototypes developed through prior personal experience, observation of others, and media exposure (cf. Figure 1). Prototype checks are used to evaluate somatic and/or functional changes with respect to features such as their location (e.g., head, stomach, chest), duration (e.g., perceived and clock time), rates of change (e.g., sudden onset or insidious), consequences (e.g., disrupts breathing or impairs walking), causes (e.g., exposure to sick people or perceived stress), and sensory properties (e.g., sharp or dull). If the features of the somatic or functional changes match an illness prototype, then a preliminary illness representation will be formed and lead the individual to engage in actions to remove or control the threat (i.e., coping procedures). A further appraisal of the threat will be conducted based on the perceived effects of these coping procedures. Feedback from coping procedures will provide critical information to either confirm or disconfirm the preliminary illness representation. For instance, a headache and a runny nose may be the result of a cold or of seasonal allergies. If the symptoms occur around spring, then the person may decide to take an antihistamine pill to help clear the symptoms. If after a few hours the symptoms are not relieved, then the tentative “allergies” representation may be discarded, and a new health threat appraisal process will begin.

Lack of experience with a specific condition or unusual presentation of symptoms can create confusion during the matching and appraisal process and result in negative consequences such as delayed care seeking or poor illness management. For example, gastric pain caused by gallstones could be attributed to indigestion or stomach flu if a person has never been exposed to gallstones and the symptomatology associated with gallstones previously because the location is similar (i.e., abdominal area). This could lead individuals to engage in watchful waiting which, in turn, could increase the risk of serious consequences such as emergency hospitalization due to blockage of the pancreatic duct. Conditions that do not manifest according to the prototypes people have can result in inadequate management or control of the threat. For instance, the symptoms that people with congestive heart failure usually experience (e.g.,

swollen legs, breathing and sleeping problems) are not the symptoms that a person with a “heart” condition is supposed to experience (e.g., palpitations). This mismatch can result in poor adherence to medical treatment because the heart condition does not represent an immediate threat. Similarly, depressive symptomatology may not be properly identified and treated among older adults, because they are less likely to experience symptoms of dysphoria (i.e., depression without sadness, Gallo and Rabins 1999). Low negative affect will make the matching processes difficult for both the individuals who experience depressive symptoms and mental health professionals because the symptoms do not fit with a “depression prototype.”

Treatment Representations

From the CSM perspective, treatment representations are conceptualized using the same framework as illness representations (Leventhal et al. 2010). That is, treatment beliefs are assumed to have an identity (e.g., “diuretic”), timeline (e.g., for how long one should take the medications or time for treatment to effect changes), causal factors (e.g., works by killing bacteria), control (e.g., cure and control of disease symptoms), and consequences (e.g., addiction or improved quality of life). Research directly examining these dimensions of treatment representations is limited. Several studies conducted by Leventhal and collaborators, however, have assessed some of these facets (e.g., Halm et al. 2006). These assessments have focused on aspects such as triggers that initiate the use of medication (e.g., “I use medications when I have symptoms”), control (e.g., “My medicines protect me from becoming worse”), consequences (“My health in the future depends on my medications”), and emotional reactions (“How worried are you about the side effects of your medication?”). Evidence from these studies has shown that these aspects of treatment representations are strong predictors of illness self-management.

A different view of treatment representations has been put forth by Horne et al. (1999). Based on common-sense regulation principles, Horne

and collaborators identified commonly held beliefs about medications and medical treatments and grouped them into “general” and “specific” concerns about medications. “General concerns” encompass beliefs that medications, in general, are overprescribed by practitioners (i.e., overuse) and beliefs that medicines can be harmful and addictive (i.e., harm). “Specific concerns” address the beliefs that a prescribed medication is necessary for and efficacious in controlling a particular condition and concerns about the harmful effects of a medication prescribed for a specific illness. Recent evidence suggests that these positive and negative beliefs about a medication independently predict medication adherence, with patients falling into distinct profiles (Dillon et al. 2018; Phillips et al. 2014) – indifferent (low necessity beliefs, low concerns), ambivalent (high necessity beliefs and high concerns), skeptical (low necessity beliefs, high concerns), and accepting (high necessity beliefs, low concerns).

Measurement

Because of their central role in the CSM, most measurement efforts have focused on developing instruments to assess the content of illness and treatment representations. These efforts have been guided by two different approaches. In the first approach (i.e., domain-based approach), investigators develop measures to assess content relevant to the specific illness condition under investigation. Researchers who use the second approach (i.e., instrument-based approach) prefer the use of basically the same instrument and items across illnesses.

The domain-based approach requires close familiarity with the health threat (i.e., illness condition) to be studied. Although illness representations of various conditions may share some features, they can be highly divergent in terms of how they are experienced by individuals, their consequences, and their management. Thus, to develop valid and relevant items, one needs to rely on the use of theory, pilot interviews with patients who suffer a given condition, and input from practitioners (Leventhal and Nerenz 1985).

Items developed by using this approach usually focus on very specific aspects of illness and treatment representations in order to gain a more detailed understanding of underlying psychological processes and mechanisms. The resulting instrument may consist of single-item subscales that may be unique for the illness condition being studied (e.g., Halm et al. 2006). The development of items to assess treatment representations is conducted in a similar fashion. When developing items to assess treatment representations, one must pay special attention to issues such as the cues used by individuals for initiating and evaluating action (e.g., Do symptoms or objective information such as blood glucose monitoring initiate self-management?), the expected time for observing effects, and the specific behaviors used to control or eliminate the health threat (e.g., complementary medicine, rest, and distraction).

The instrument-based approach is best represented by multi-item questionnaires developed to assess both illness and treatment representations. The Illness Perception Questionnaire (IPQ) assesses the five original domains of illness representations (i.e., identity, timeline, consequences, causes, and controllability) and emotional representations. The Illness Perception Questionnaire-Revised (IPQ-R) adds a measure of illness coherence (Moss-Morris et al. 2002). The items do a good job of providing a snapshot of people’s illness representations. A Brief IPQ was also developed, which includes 11 questions (Broadbent et al. 2006). The IPQ questions are standard, though it is possible to make modifications to the items’ wording and/or include a condition-specific symptom list, to reflect the illness condition being investigated. The IPQ has been successfully used in a wide range of studies examining various chronic conditions such as asthma, diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and rheumatic conditions. Some evaluations of the IPQ and IPQ-R have shown that relationships between illness perceptions and coping behaviors and health outcomes are weak (e.g., Brandes and Mullan 2014); however, researchers have cautioned the broad use of the IPQ when a domain-based or other approach may be more appropriate (Phillips et al. 2017b).

The best-known instrument to assess treatment representations is the Beliefs about Medications Questionnaire (BMQ) developed by Horne et al. (1999). The BMQ is a multi-item instrument that comprises two scales that assess general and specific concerns about medicines. Similar to the IPQ, the wording of the items is standard but can be modified to reflect the different types of treatments. For example, pill can be substituted for inhaler. Research has shown that the aspects of treatment representations assessed by the BMQ predict self-management and medication adherence across various chronic conditions (e.g., Horne and Weinman 1999), although less strongly for longer-term adherence (Phillips et al. 2016).

Both approaches present different limitations and offer unique advantages. The domain-based approach has most often been criticized for relying on single-item measures to assess the various aspects of illness representations. The assumption underlying this criticism is that single items have low reliability. However, there is no evidence to suggest that single items do not make reliable assessments (Wanous et al. 1997). The main advantage of this approach is that the development of domain-specific items can facilitate the theoretical understanding about the precise pathways linking illness and treatment representations, behaviors, and health outcomes within each illness conditions. The downside of domain-based measures is that the uniqueness of items makes it difficult to compare findings across illness conditions.

Because the IPQ-R and the BMQ include multiple items to assess each construct, the estimation of reliability is less of an issue. However, because there are several instances in each subscale where items are similarly worded, the multi-item nature of the scales does not result necessarily in a more precise instrument. In addition, as indicated by Broadbent et al. (2006), the large number of items makes it difficult to use when resources are limited. Length of the instrument has been addressed by the development and validation of the brief IPQ, which has single items to assess each illness perception domain. The main advantage of these instruments is that the wording of items is consistent across studies and illness

conditions, which facilitates comparisons. It is important to note, however, that psychometric research is needed to determine whether these instruments are invariant across people with different illness conditions and from different cultures.

Combining both approaches will most likely have the greatest impact from both a research and an applied perspective. A set of items such as those from the brief IPQ would provide investigators with a core set of items that could be employed in all studies, thus enabling future comparisons. The addition of domain-specific items to the brief IPQ would allow investigators to delve into specific issues unique to the health threat under investigation.

Interventions and the CSM

A basic corollary of the CSM is that successful interventions require an adequate understanding of patient's model of the health threat. This implies that interventions will vary depending on the health status and beliefs of the target population (e.g., well vs. not well) and on the type of illness conditions individuals have. For instance, primary prevention interventions (e.g., screening or lifestyle changes) that target individuals who feel healthy require that investigators understand the factors that make them feel vulnerable to health threats (e.g., perceived risk based on age or family history). Interventions with persons suffering from chronic conditions require investigators to have a detailed understanding of the disease and its context. If the interventions are aimed at improving self-management, for instance, investigators need to know the cues that impede or facilitate behaviors (e.g., symptoms), beliefs about treatments (e.g., risk of addiction), and the complexity of the treatment. The CSM's focus on individualized intervention is consistent with healthcare's focus on patient-centeredness and may explain the increasing interest in the CSM over the past two decades.

Interventions can target illness representations (top down) and actions (bottom up; McAndrew et al. 2008). For example, for a condition such as asthma, if patients hold an acute view of the

condition and, therefore, use inhaled corticosteroids only when having symptoms, then the primary care physician may elicit the patient's illness representations about their asthma and provide them with information to disconfirm this inaccurate belief (top down). Providers may also use a bottom-up approach and instruct patients to climb up one flight of stairs for a few days and take notice of their breathing, before beginning their daily regime of medications. This simple instruction should help patients realize that without their medication, their breathing becomes more difficult with minimal exercise, despite the absence of noticeable symptoms prior to the exercise. This could provide experiential evidence for the patient that asthma is present even when asymptomatic.

The CSM proposes that interventions are even more powerful if the provider helps to connect the feedback from the action to the patient's modified illness representation. That is, to solidify this more accurate illness representation, these patients may be instructed to again walk up a flight of stairs after following the inhaled corticosteroid regime as prescribed to notice improvements in their breathing.

Theorists have recently proposed that interventions based on the CSM interventions will be stronger when integrated with behavioral change theories (Lau-Walker 2006; Phillips et al. 2013). This is because the CSM helps explain why patients choose a self-management approach and behavior change theories can explain how to ensure the behavior becomes a habit (Phillips et al. 2012). Integrating concepts such as self-efficacy and habit formation with the CSM may improve self-management. In the above asthma example, the provider may add to the intervention, information on how to incorporate the use of inhaled corticosteroids into one's daily routine, by, for example, leaving the inhaler on the kitchen or dining room table.

There is initial evidence that communicating about common-sense illness representations improves adherence and patient outcomes. Phillips et al. (Phillips et al. 2012, 2017b) have shown a relationship between patient provider discussion of illness representations and better outcomes in primary care settings and for patients with

medically unexplained symptoms. One reason such discussions may be powerful is that it allows the patient and providers to develop concordant illness representations – improving adherence. It is not yet known if the development of concordant illness representations is a necessary component of effective intervention, or the discussion of illness representations improves outcomes, even when it does not lead to agreement between patients and provider.

There is also evidence that interventions based on the CSM are efficacious. A recent systematic review of clinical trials found that interventions based on the CSM improve adherence and outcomes (Jones et al. 2016). The effect sizes for these interventions ranged from small to large with most being in the moderate range. In a particularly innovative trial for hypertension, providers were taught to communicate about patient's illness representations or patient's action plans (Theunissen et al. 2003). Patients who received communication about illness representations reported more positive illness representations but did not feel more confident about changing their behaviors. Patients who received communication about action plans reported improvement in their management of their blood pressure but also more negative illness representations. The authors suggest that targeting both illness representations and action plans may be necessary.

Concluding Remarks

In 2019, *Health Psychology Review* published a special issue reviewing the significant empirical and theoretical progress made in understanding the CSM. The growing interest in the CSM corresponds with healthcare's increasing focus on patient-centered healthcare and recognition that interventions are often more effective when individualized to the patient's unique context. Future research on the CSM should examine how aspects other than illness representations, such as appraisal tools, action plans, emotional representations, and criteria to appraise action plans, interact to influence self-regulation. Progress in these areas will greatly benefit from basic behavioral

medicine research conducted in conjunction with intervention research. A comprehensive mapping of mechanisms may also require the use of non-traditional designs that focus on changing well-delimited processes in a sequential manner (i.e., tailored, stepwise interventions). Not only is such knowledge necessary for better understanding of psychological phenomena but also for the design of more efficacious interventions that patients want to receive.

The views are that of the author and do not necessarily represent the policy or position of the United States Government.

Cross-References

- [Coping](#)
- [Health Beliefs](#)
- [Illness Perceptions Questionnaire \(IPQ-R\)](#)
- [Self-regulation](#)

References and Readings

- Brandes, K., & Mullan, B. (2014). Can the common-sense model predict adherence in chronically ill patients? A meta-analysis. *Health Psychology Review*, 8(2), 129–153.
- Broadbent, E., Petrie, K. J., Main, J., & Weinman, J. (2006). The brief illness perception questionnaire (bipq). *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 60(6), 631–637.
- Cameron, L. D., & Leventhal, H. (2003). *The self-regulation of health and illness behaviour*. New York: Routledge.
- de Ridder, D. T., Theunissen, N. C., & van Dulmen, S. M. (2007). Does training general practitioners to elicit patients' illness representations and action plans influence their communication as a whole? *Patient Education and Counseling*, 66(3), 327–336. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pec.2007.01.006>.
- Dillon, P., Phillips, L. A., Gallagher, P., Smith, S. M., Stewart, D., & Cousins, G. (2018). Assessing the multi-dimensional relationship between medication beliefs and adherence using polynomial regression in older adults with hypertension. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 52(2), 146–156. <https://doi.org/10.1093/abm/kax016>.
- Gallo, J. J., & Rabins, P. V. (1999). Depression without sadness: Alternative presentations of depression in late life. *American Family Physician*, 60(3), 820–826.
- Hagger, M. S., Koch, S., Chatzisarantis, N. L., & Orbell, S. (2017). The common sense model of self-regulation: Meta-analysis and test of a process model. *Psychological Bulletin*, 143(11), 1117.
- Halm, E. A., Mora, P., & Leventhal, H. (2006). No symptoms, no asthma: The acute episodic disease belief is associated with poor self-management among inner city adults with persistent asthma. *Chest*, 129(3), 573–580.
- Horne, R., & Weinman, J. (1999). Patients' beliefs about prescribed medicines and their role in adherence to treatment in chronic physical illness. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 47(6), 555–567.
- Horne, R., Weinman, J., & Hankins, M. (1999). The beliefs about medicines questionnaire: The development and evaluation of a new method for assessing the cognitive representation of medication. *Psychology & Health*, 14(1), 1–24.
- Jones, C. J., Smith, H. E., & Llewellyn, C. D. (2016). A systematic review of the effectiveness of interventions using the common sense self-regulatory model to improve adherence behaviours. *Journal of Health Psychology*, 21(11), 2709–2724. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1359105315583372>.
- Lau-Walker, M. (2006). A conceptual care model for individualized care approach in cardiac rehabilitation—combining both illness representation and self-efficacy. *British Journal of Health Psychology*, 11(1), 103–117.
- Leventhal, H. (1970). Findings and theory in the study of fear communications. In L. Berkowitz (Ed.), *Advances in experimental social psychology* (Vol. 5, pp. 120–186). New York: Academic.
- Leventhal, H., & Cameron, L. (1987). Behavioral theories and the problem of compliance. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 10(2), 117–138.
- Leventhal, H., & Nerenz, D. (1985). The assessment of illness cognition. In P. Karoly (Ed.), *Measurement strategies in health* (pp. 517–554). New York: Wiley.
- Leventhal, H., Benyamini, Y., Brownlee, S., Diefenbach, M., Leventhal, E. A., Patrick-Miller, L., et al. (1997). Illness representations: Theoretical foundations. In K. J. Petrie & J. A. Weinman (Eds.), *Perceptions of health and illness: Current research and applications* (pp. 19–45). Singapore: Source Harwood Academic Publishers.
- Leventhal, H., Leventhal, E. A., & Cameron, L. (2001). Representations, procedures, and affect in illness self-regulation: A perceptual-cognitive model. In A. Baum, T. Revenson, & J. Singer (Eds.), *Handbook of Health Psychology*. New York: Erlbaum.
- Leventhal, H., Breland, J. Y., Mora, P. A., & Leventhal, E. A. (2010). Lay representations of illness and treatment: A framework for action. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 137–154). New York: Springer.
- McAndrew, L. M., Musumeci-Szabó, T. J., Mora, P. A., Vileikyte, L., Burns, E., Halm, E. A., . . . , Leventhal, H. (2008). Using the common sense model to design interventions for the prevention and management of

- chronic illness threats: From description to process. *British Journal of Health Psychology*, 13(2), 195–204.
- McAndrew, L. M., Crede, M., Maestros, K., Slotkin, S., Kimber, J., & Phillips, L. A. (2019). Using the common-sense model to understand health outcomes for medically unexplained symptoms: A meta-analysis. *Health Psychology Review*, 13(4), 427–446. <https://doi.org/10.1080/17437199.2018.1521730>.
- Miller, G. A., Galanter, E., & Pribram, K. H. (1960). *Plans and the structure of behavior*. New York: Holt.
- Moss-Morris, R., Weinman, J., Petrie, K. J., Horne, R., Cameron, L. D., & Buick, D. (2002). The revised illness perception questionnaire (ipq-r). *Psychology & Health*, 17(1), 1–16.
- Orbell, S., & Phillips, L. A. (2019). Automatic processes and self-regulation of illness. *Health Psychology Review*. <https://doi.org/10.1080/17437199.2018.1503559>.
- Petrie, K. J., & John, W. (1997). *Perceptions of health and illness: Current research and applications*. Amsterdam: Harwood Academic Publishers.
- Petrie, K. J., Cameron, L., Ellis, C. J., Buick, D., & Weinman, J. (2002). Changing illness perceptions after myocardial infarction: An early intervention randomized controlled trial. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 64(4), 580–586.
- Phillips, L. A., Leventhal, H., & Leventhal, E. A. (2012). Physicians' communication of the common-sense self-regulation model results in greater reported adherence than physicians' use of interpersonal skills. *British Journal of Health Psychology*, 17(2), 244–257.
- Phillips, L. A., Leventhal, H., & Leventhal, E. A. (2013). Assessing theoretical predictors of long-term medication adherence: Patients' treatment-related beliefs, experiential feedback and habit development. *Psychology & Health*, 28(10), 1135–1151. <https://doi.org/10.1080/08870446.2013.793798>.
- Phillips, L. A., Diefenbach, M., Kronish, I. M., Negron, R. M., & Horowitz, C. R. (2014). The necessity-concerns-framework: A multi-dimensional theory benefits from multi-dimensional analysis. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 48(1), 7–16. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12160-013-9579-2>.
- Phillips, L. A., Cohen, J., Burns, E. A., Abrams, J., & Renninger, S. (2016). Self-management of chronic illness: The role of 'habit' vs reflective factors in exercise and medication adherence. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 39(6), 1076–1091. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10865-016-9732-z>.
- Phillips, L. A., McAndrew, L., Laman-Maharg, B., & Bloeser, K. (2017a). Evaluating challenges for improving medically unexplained symptoms in US military veterans via provider communication. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 100(8), 1580–1587.
- Phillips, L. A., Leventhal, H., & Burns, E. A. (2017b). Choose (and use) your tools wisely: "Validated" measures and advanced analyses can provide invalid evidence for/against a theory. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 40(2), 373–376. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10865-016-9807-x>.

- Skelton, J. A., & Croyle, R. T. (1991). *Mental representation in health and illness*. New York: Springer.
- Theunissen, N. C., de Ridder, D. T., Bensing, J. M., & Rutten, G. E. (2003). Manipulation of patient-provider interaction: Discussing illness representations or action plans concerning adherence. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 51(3), 247–258.
- Wanous, J. P., Reichers, A. E., & Hudy, M. J. (1997). Overall job satisfaction: How good are single-item measures? *Journal of Applied Psychology*, 82(2), 247–252.

Communication Skills

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Synonyms

Doctor-Patient Interactions

Definition

Communication skills are an essential medium through which physicians interact with patients, in order to diagnose and treat patients. According to Ong et al. (1995), doctor-patient communication has three main roles: (1) to create a positive interpersonal relationship, (2) exchange information, and (3) make treatment-related decisions. A positive interpersonal relationship includes facilitation of trust between the patient and a health professional that enables honest bidirectional expression of concerns and report of behaviors (e.g., risky behaviors, nonadherence). Exchange of information is the basis of the doctor-patient interaction, where information from patient to doctor enables the latter to arrive at more accurate diagnoses and to decide about more suitable and effective treatments. Similarly, adequate exchange of information from physician to patient enables the doctor to inform the patient about risks of unhealthy behaviors (e.g., smoking) and benefit of others (e.g., self-monitoring of

glucose levels or of physical activity). Finally, adequate communication helps physicians decide about patient-tailored treatments, suitable to their age, culture, levels of information seeking, family history of an illness, comorbidities, etc.

According to research (e.g., Di Blasi et al. 2001; Ong et al. 1995), doctor-patient communication skills (e.g., information giving, listening, reassuring) affect patients' satisfaction from treatment, understanding and recall of the interaction with doctors, adherence to medical regimes, and most importantly, actual health outcomes. The influence of communication skills on patient recall is important given that patients can at times recall very little of the information provided to them during consultations. A review on this topic found 14 studies on verbal variables and patient outcomes and showed that factors such as empathy, reassurance, "psychosocial talk," humor, and patient-centered talk correlated with positive health outcomes. The same review identified eight studies on nonverbal communication and patient outcomes and showed that factors such as head nodding, forward leaning, and less mutual gaze correlated with positive health outcomes (Beck et al. 2002). Communications skills can be, and are taught, as part of medical education in many medical schools worldwide. Studies show that such training positively influences patients' health outcomes including blood pressure and glucose stability (Inui et al. 1976). Finally, the doctors' communication skills also influence patients' decision-making (van den Brink-Muinen et al. 2006), an important finding in an era where patients take a more active role in their health care.

Cross-References

- [Communication, Nonverbal](#)
- [Education, Patient](#)
- [Empathy](#)
- [Empowerment](#)

References and Further Readings

- Beck, R. S., Daughtridge, R., & Sloane, P. D. (2002). Physician-patient communication in the primary care

office: A systematic review. *Journal of the American Board of Family Practice*, 15, 25–38.

- Di Blasi, Z., Harkness, E., Ernst, E., Georgiou, A., & Kleijnen, J. (2001). Influence of context effects on health outcomes: A systematic review. *Lancet*, 357, 757–762.
- Inui, T. S., Yourtee, E. L., & Williamson, J. W. (1976). Improved outcomes in hypertension after physician tutorials. A controlled trial. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 84, 646–651.
- Ong, L. M., de Haes, J. C., Hoos, A. M., & Lammes, F. B. (1995). Doctor-patient communication: A review of the literature. *Social Science & Medicine*, 40, 903–918.
- van den Brink-Muinen, A., van Dulmen, S. M., de Haes, H. C., Visser, A. P., Schellevis, F. G., & Bensing, J. M. (2006). Has patients' involvement in the decision-making process changed over time? *Health Expectations*, 9, 333–342.

Communication, Nonverbal

Ross Buck

Communication Sciences and Psychology,
University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Synonyms

[Body language](#)

Definition

Communication involves three elements: sender, receiver, and message. In nonverbal communication, the message does not involve words, but rather employs *body language*. There are three major sorts of nonverbal communication. *Symbolic nonverbal communication* is the intentional encoding of a message that is decoded by the receiver, the grammar and vocabulary of which must be learned by both sender and receiver. It is propositional in that it is capable of logical analysis (e.g., it can be false). Symbolic nonverbal communication includes sign language, finger spelling, and pantomime, as well as facial expressions and gestures associated with language. In Ekman and Friesen's (1969) analysis, the latter include *emblems* with specific "dictionary" definitions, *illustrators* of what is said, and

regulators of interaction flow. Left hemisphere damage produces deficits in both linguistic and symbolic-nonverbal communication.

Spontaneous communication involves the display of a motivational-emotional state by the sender and a pickup of that display by the receiver. It is non-intentional, based upon innate displays and preattunements that coevolved, that is, that evolved simultaneously with the function of communication. Preattunements may be associated with mirror neuron systems that respond immediately and automatically to displays. The elements of spontaneous communication are *signs*, being inherent aspects of the referent (as smoke is a sign of fire). If the sign is present, the referent must be present by definition so that spontaneous communication is nonpropositional. Spontaneous displays include facial expressions, affective vocal prosody or paralanguage, postures and gestures, eye behaviors, touch (haptics), spatial behaviors (proxemics), and olfactory cues (e.g., pheromones). Right hemisphere damage produces deficits in communication via facial expression and affective prosody.

The third sort of nonverbal communication involves the intentional management of the display by the sender to manipulate the receiver (*deception*) or to follow *display rules*: learned rules about what displays are appropriate under what circumstances. Buck and van Lear (2002) termed this *pseudospontaneous communication*: it is symbolic on the part of the sender but spontaneous on the part of the receiver. The ability to influence others' emotions successfully is an important aspect of *charisma*. Ekman and Friesen (1975) identified expression management techniques: a person might *modulate* the intensity of the display, *qualify* a felt display by adding an additional display, and *falsify* the display in several ways: *neutralizing* and showing no display, *simulating* an unfelt display, or *masking* what one actually feels by showing a different, unfelt display.

Cross-References

► [Emotional Expression](#)

References and Further Reading

- Buck, R. (1984). *The communication of emotion*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Buck, R., & Duffy, R. (1980). Nonverbal communication of affect in brain damaged patients. *Cortex*, 16, 351–362.
- Buck, R., & van Lear, C. A. (2002). Verbal and nonverbal communication: Distinguishing symbolic, spontaneous, and pseudo-spontaneous nonverbal behavior. *Journal of Communication*, 52, 522–541.
- Ekman, P., & Friesen, W. V. (1969). Nonverbal leakage and cues to deception. *Psychiatry*, 32, 88–105.
- Ekman, P., & Friesen, W. V. (1975). *Unmasking the face*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.
- Ross, E. (1981). The aprosodias: Functional-anatomic organization of the affective components of language in the right hemisphere. *Archives of Neurology*, 38, 561–569.

Community Coalitions

Benjamin Hidalgo

Department of Psychiatry, Medical College of Wisconsin, Milwaukee, WI, USA

Synonyms

[Community collaboration](#); [Community partnership](#)

Definition

The definition of community coalition can vary depending on the discipline of origin and different variables of interest (Gentry 1987). However, a common definition used in community health is “a group of individuals representing diverse organizations, factions, or constituencies within the community who agree to work together to achieve a common goal” (Feighery and Rogers 1990).

Description

Types of Coalitions

Historically, a diverse number of models have been conceptualized through which to understand

the ways in which coalitions function in their communities. These include collaboration approaches, empowerment, asset-based approaches, constructions of risk and protective factors for intervention development, citizenship models promoting citizen participation, and promotion of community development (Francisco et al. 1996). Other approaches to understanding coalitions focus, more specifically, on optimal internal functioning of these organizations (e.g., Allen 2005 and Foster-Fishman et al. 2001).

Community Coalition Action Theory

While each of these emphasis and proposed mechanisms of action includes their own framework for understanding the successful development of a coalition, the single most comprehensive framework is the Community Coalition Action Theory as proposed by Frances Butterfoss and Michelle Kegler (2009). This examination of the structure and development of coalitions specifically in community change contexts was formulated through extensive research, practice, and review of the field. It is comprised of 14 major constructs each with its own set of theory propositions.

Construct 1: Stages of Development

In this construct, it is proposed that coalition building is cyclical. Coalitions develop in three general stages (formation, maintenance, and institutionalization), but these stages recycle as new members are recruited, plans change, or new issues are added. At each stage, specific factors unique to that stage and to that coalition enhance coalition function and progression to the next stage.

Construct 2: Community Context

Here it is proposed that contextual factors have a significant impact on the function and effectiveness of the coalition. These factors include but are not limited to geography, sociopolitical environment, social norms surrounding collaborative efforts, and timing.

Construct 3: Lead Agency/Convener Group

Coalitions form when a lead agency or convening organization responds to an opportunity, threat, or

mandate. Through their review of the state of the field, the authors propose here that the formation of the coalition is more likely when the convener group provides support and resources during the formation stage (e.g., technical assistance, financial and material support, credibility, and networks and contacts). They also argue that enlisting community gatekeepers to develop credibility and trust with others in the community is a way to increase the success of coalition formation.

Construct 4: Coalition Membership

The authors propose, around membership, that coalitions begin by recruiting an initial core group of highly committed members. They also propose that effective coalitions eventually expand this established core group to include a broader constituency of partners that represent the more diverse needs, interests, and groups in the community.

Construct 5: Operations and Process

In order to ensure an effective internal process, five necessary components are proposed: open and frequent communication among staff members, shared and formalized decision making, effective conflict management, positive relationships among members, and the perception by members that the benefits of participation outweigh the costs of participation.

Construct 6: Leadership and Staffing

Here it is proposed that effective coalition functioning, collaboration, and planning are improved by strong leadership and skilled, paid, staff.

Construct 7: Structure

The proposition in this construct is that having formalized rules, roles, structures, and procedures leads to routinized operations being better sustained and to overall coalition effectiveness.

Construct 8: Pooled Member and External Resources

Here it is proposed that synergistic pooling of resources from members and from the community leads to effective assessment, planning, and implementation strategies.

Construct 9: Member Engagement

The authors propose that satisfied and committed members will participate more fully in the work of the organization.

Construct 10: Assessment and Planning

The proposition here points to evidence that shows that successful implementation of coalition efforts is more likely when comprehensive assessment and planning occur.

Construct 11: Implementation of Strategies

The proposition here is that community change is more likely to occur if coalitions direct their efforts at multiple levels.

Construct 12: Community Change Outcomes

This proposition highlights the fact that coalitions that can change community policies, practices, and environments are more likely to achieve long-term success and increases in community capacity to address future issues.

Construct 13: Health and Social Outcomes

Here the authors propose that the ultimate indicator of coalition effectiveness is improvement in health and social outcomes.

Construct 14: Community Capacity

The final construct in this model proposes that, as a result of participating in a successful coalition, organizations, and community members, achieve increases in capacity and social capital that allow them to address health and social issues in the future.

Coalition Evaluation

Historically, there have been a wide variety of approaches to evaluating the effectiveness of coalitions. These evaluations have employed qualitative, quantitative, and mixed methodologies and typically have examined coalitions at one or more of the following levels: process and infrastructure, specific programs and interventions, health status or community change outcome, and extent of community capacity building (Butterfoss 2007; Granner and Sharpe 2004). Given the wide variety

of coalitions, their reasons for existing, and the mechanism by which they propose to act on their communities, Berkowitz (2001) argues that this diverse set of evaluation strategies is necessary if evaluators are to effectively understand the degree to which coalitions are successful.

While acknowledging the necessary diversity of coalition evaluation strategies, Butterfoss (2007) proposes ten overall principles to guide coalition evaluation:

1. The evaluation should involve a process of partnership between coalition and evaluator.
2. The evaluation design should be informed by research, previous evaluations, and community wisdom.
3. The evaluation should actively include the participation of all stakeholders.
4. The evaluation process should be used to assess, reflect, improve, and inform.
5. Expectations for the evaluation should be made clear for all stakeholders.
6. Issues of power and privilege should be explicitly identified and addressed at the start.
7. The evaluation should constantly seek to foster positive relationships and trust among evaluators, community participants, practitioners, and funders.
8. The process of evaluation should be closely integrated into ongoing functions and activities.
9. The evaluation process, itself, should be periodically reevaluated to ensure that it continues to meet the coalition's needs and in order to apply findings to ongoing decision making and learning.
10. Findings should be shared frequently with all stakeholders in a format that is accessible to them.

Evaluations that follow these principles can help coalitions in a number of ways (Butterfoss 2007; Butterfoss and Francisco 2004): providing accountability to the community and funders for the actions of the coalition, determining whether coalition objectives are met, improving program implementation, increasing awareness and support of the coalition in the community, informing

policy decisions, and contributing the empirical literature on best practices.

Cross-References

- [Community-Based Participatory Research](#)
- [Health Promotion and Disease Prevention](#)

References and Readings

- Allen, N. E. (2005). A multi-level analysis of community coordinating councils. *American Journal of Community Psychology*, 35(1–2), 49–63.
- Berkowitz, B. (2001). Studying the outcomes of community-based coalitions. *American Journal of Community Psychology*, 29(2), 213–227.
- Berkowitz, B., & Wolff, T. (1999). *The spirit of the coalition*. Washington, DC: American Public Health Association.
- Butterfoss, F. D. (2007). *Coalitions and partnerships in community health*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Butterfoss, F., & Francisco, V. T. (2004). Evaluating community partnerships and coalitions with practitioners in mind. *Health Promotion Practice*, 5, 108–114.
- Butterfoss, F. D., & Kegler, M. C. (2009). The community coalition action theory. In R. J. DiClemente, R. A. Crosby, M. C. Kegler, R. J. DiClemente, R. A. Crosby, & M. C. Kegler (Eds.), *Emerging theories in health promotion practice and research* (2nd ed., pp. 237–276). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Butterfoss, F. D., Goodman, R. M., & Wandersman, A. (1996). Community coalitions for prevention and health promotion: Factors predicting satisfaction, participation, and planning. *Health Education Quarterly*, 23(1), 65–79.
- Butterfoss, F. D., Kegler, M. C., & Francisco, V. T. (2008). Mobilizing organizations for health promotion: Theories of organizational change. In K. Glanz, B. K. Rimer, & K. Viswanath (Eds.), *Health behavior and health education: Theory, research, and practice* (4th ed., pp. 335–361). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Cramer, M. E., Atwood, J. R., & Stoner, J. A. (2006). Measuring community coalition effectiveness using the ICE© instrument. *Public Health Nursing*, 23(1), 74–87.
- Downey, L. M., Ireson, C. L., Slavova, S., & McKee, G. (2008). Defining elements of success: A critical pathway of coalition development. *Health Promotion Practice*, 9(2), 130–139.
- Feighery, E., & Rogers, T. (1990). *Building and maintaining effective coalitions*. Palo Alto: Health Promotion Resource Center, Stanford Center for Research in Disease Prevention.
- Foster-Fishman, P. G., Berkowitz, S. L., Lounsbury, D. W., Jacobson, S., & Allen, N. A. (2001). Building collaborative capacity in community coalitions: A review and integrative framework. *American Journal of Community Psychology*, 29(2), 241–261.
- Francisco, V. T., Fawcett, S. B., Wolff, T. J., & Foster, D. L. (1996). *Coalition typology: Toward a research-based typology of health and human service coalitions*. AHEC/Community Partners. Retrieved August 17, 2011, from Community Partners website: http://www.compartners.org/stacks/archive/hcm/coalition_typology.pdf
- Gentry, M. E. (1987). Coalition formation and processes. *Social Work with Groups: A Journal of Community and Clinical Practice*, 10, 39–54.
- Granner, M. L., & Sharpe, P. A. (2004). Evaluating community coalition characteristics and functioning: A summary of measurement tools. *Health Education Research*, 19(5), 514–532.
- Kramer, J. S., Philliber, S., Brindis, C. D., Kamin, S. L., Chadwick, A. E., & Revels, M. L. (2005). Coalition models: Lessons learned from the CDC's community coalition partnership programs for the prevention of teen pregnancy. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 37(S3), S20–S30.
- Lentz, B. E., Imm, P. S., Yost, J. B., Johnson, N. P., Barron, C., Lindberg, M. S., et al. (2005). Empowerment evaluation and organizational learning: A case study of a community coalition designed to prevent child abuse and neglect. In D. M. Fetterman & A. Wandersman (Eds.), *Empowerment evaluation principles in practice* (pp. 155–182). New York: Guilford Press.
- Wolff, T. (2001). The future of community coalition building. *American Journal of Community Psychology*, 29, 263–268.

Community Collaboration

- [Community Coalitions](#)

Community Health Advisors

- [Promotoras](#)

Community Health Representatives

- [Promotoras](#)

Community Health Workers (CHW)

- [Promotoras](#)

Community Partnership

- [Community Coalitions](#)

Community Sample

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Community samples are used in community trials, or community intervention trials, i.e., trials in which the intervention is implemented at the community level. This contrasts with clinical trials, where intervention is implemented at the level of the individual subject.

Consider the example of testing the dental health advantages of adding fluoride (fluoridation) to drinking water. Realistically, a study investigating the influence of fluoridation would need large community samples. A classic study was reported by Ast and Schlesinger (1956) in which the drinking water for one town in New York State was fluorinated and the water for a second town in the state was not. The towns were chosen to be as similar as possible so that any difference in dental health could reasonably be attributed to the influence of interest, i.e., presence or absence of fluoride in the water. The study provided compelling evidence that fluoridation is both effective in reducing dental caries and a safe public health practice.

Exposure status in community trials, therefore, is assigned to an entire community rather than to individuals. Typical outcomes of interest include

the risk of disease or the frequency of a health behavior (Hartge and Cahill 2008). Since the unit of observation is the community, the assessment of potential confounders can also occur at the community level, and thus appropriate care in that regard is needed.

Cross-References

- [Bias](#)
- [Clinical Trial](#)
- [Randomization](#)

References and Further Reading

- Ast, D. B., & Schlesinger, E. R. (1956). The conclusion of a ten-year study of water fluoridation. *American Journal of Public Health*, 46, 265–271.
- Hartge, P., & Cahill, J. (2008). Field methods in epidemiology. In K. J. Rothman, S. Greenland, & T. L. Lash (Eds.), *Modern epidemiology* (3rd ed., pp. 492–510). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Community-Based Participatory Research

Lee Sanders
Center for Health Policy and Primary Care
Outcomes Research, Stanford University,
Stanford, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Community-based research](#)

Definition

Community-based participatory research (CBPR) is a set of principles and techniques designed to involve community members as collaborators in every aspect of the research process, including design, funding, implementation, and dissemination (Higgins et al. 2001; Israel et al. 1998). Fully realized, CBPR includes shared expertise between

researcher and community, shared decision making, and mutual ownership of the research enterprise and its results. Effective CBPR normally results from a long-standing, trusting relationship between an academic research team and a community-based organization (CBO) (Israel et al. 1998; Viswanathan et al. 2004). CBPR is of particular value to health researchers, public health professionals, and community leaders attempting to address health disparities influenced by social determinants (e.g., socioeconomic status, race, ethnicity, literacy, nutrition, environmental health). CBPR also holds relevance for policymakers attempting to turn community-needs assessments into evidence-based action or to translate basic and clinical research findings into population-wide practice.

Research Process

CBPR adheres to the same high-quality research standards that apply to health and behavioral research designs, including observational studies, cohort studies, and randomized controlled trials. CBPR distinguishes itself, however, by involving community members (through needs assessments, iterative community-based meetings, and other opportunities for comment) in every stage of the research process. Beginning with the research question, community members help define the health outcomes, behaviors, and environmental factors to be addressed by the research proposal. A community advisory committee, normally chaired by a community-based stakeholder, is often an integral part of the research process. In the spirit of mutual expertise and collaboration, CBPR research protocols often employ community residents as members of the research team, and they may include support for research facilities and research materials housed inside a community-based facility (Stratford et al. 2003; Vander Stoep et al. 1999). All study interventions, research trainings, survey materials, informed-consent documents, and other materials include input and guidance from community members. Measures employed in CBPR usually include social determinants of health and cost-

effectiveness variables from the community perspective. Study results are normally shared with the community advisory committee or other community members for feedback and interpretation before they are shared with outside audiences. With attention to community standards and research ethics, results are also disseminated across the community. In the case of interventions determined to be effective, sustainability planning that includes community leaders is a critical element of the CBPR process.

Health Behavior Change

CBPR enables researchers to be sensitive and responsive to the cultural, political, and social context of health behaviors. This includes challenges and opportunities for influencing sensitive health behaviors (e.g., smoking, drug use, sexual practices, domestic violence, obtaining screening tests that involve pelvic or rectal exams) and other health behaviors that can only effectively be addressed at the community level (e.g., nutrition, physical activity).

Ethical Considerations

CBPR may also present constraints for the conduct of ethical research. In choosing the primary research topic or question, a community-driven process may not yield a result that meets the academic considerations of relevance, novelty, and generalizability. Similarly, community members may object to the publication of study findings or interpretations, even if “objective” research methods were applied. Funding and other rewards for CBPR also may introduce ethical dilemmas. In optimal circumstances, community representatives and organizations should be reimbursed fairly for their participation. If addressed early and forthrightly, many of these ethical concerns may be mitigated. Effective should include gaining insight and assent from all available community leaders, providing appropriate training if appropriate to participants,

ensuring financial and nonfinancial recognition for participants, and clarifying rules for ownership and use of study data, analyses, and publications.

Cross-References

- [Cost-Effectiveness Analysis \(CEA\)](#)
- [Health Behaviors](#)
- [Participatory Research](#)

References and Further Reading

- Higgins, D. L., Maciak, B., & Metzler, M. (2001). CDC Urban Research C. CDC Urban Research Centers: Community-based participatory research to improve the health of urban communities. *Journal of Women's Health & Gender-Based Medicine*, 10(1), 9–15.
- Israel, B. A., Schulz, A. J., Parker, E. A., et al. (1998). Review of community-based research: Assessing partnership approaches to improve public health. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 19, 173–202.
- Minkler, M., & Wallerstein, N. (2003). *Community based participatory research for health*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Stratford, D., Chamblee, S., Ellerbrock, T. V., et al. (2003). Integration of a participatory research strategy into a rural health survey. *Journal of General Internal Medicine*, 18(7), 586–588.
- Vander Stoep, A., Williams, M., Jones, R., Green, L., & Trupin, E. (1999). Families as full research partners: What's in it for us? *Journal of Behavioral Health Services and Research*, 26(3), 329–344.
- Viswanathan, M., Ammerman, A., Eng, E., Gartlehner, G., Lohr, K. N., Griffith, D., Rhodes, S., Samuel-Hodge, C., Maty, S., Lux, L., Webb, L., Sutton, S. F., Swinson, T., Jackman, A., Whitener, L. (2004). *Community-based participatory research: Assessing the evidence*. Evidence Report/Technology Assessment No. 99 (Prepared by RTI-University of North Carolina Evidence-based Practice Center under Contract No. 290-02-0016). AHRQ Publication 04-E022-2. Rockville, MD: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality.

Community-Based Research

- [Community-Based Participatory Research](#)

Comorbidity

Amy Wachholtz¹ and Elizabeth Gleyzer²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

²Department of Psychology, William James College, Newton, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Dual diagnosis](#); [Morbidity burden](#); [Multifactorial disease](#); [Multimorbidity](#); [Patient complexity](#); [Polymorbidity](#)

Definition

Comorbidity is the presence of more than one distinct condition in an individual (Valderas et al. 2009).

Description

Often, the term comorbidity refers to the presence of an index condition and other unrelated conditions (Starfield 2006). An index condition or disease describes the main condition under study (Ording and Sørensen 2013). Related terms, such as dual diagnosis and multimorbidity, are used in various clinical and research settings. Dual diagnosis is usually defined specifically as coexisting mental illness and substance or alcohol use disorders. Multimorbidity refers to the co-occurrence of multiple chronic or acute conditions in one person without identifying an index condition (Valderas et al. 2009). Depending on the setting and application of the concept, such as in clinical care, epidemiology, or health services planning and finances, clinicians may choose different definitions or constructs to express comorbidity. These terms can refer either to the number of morbidities, number and severity of morbidities, or number and severity together with

co-occurring functional limitations. With regard to severity, comorbidity can also describe the burden or impact of the diseases on the individual (Valderas et al. 2009). Various formal scales and assessment measures exist to evaluate the diagnoses' severity and impact on consumption of health-care resources, such as the Charlson Comorbidity Index, the Comorbidity-Polypharmacy Score, or the Cumulative Illness Rating Scale, among others (de Groot et al. 2003). The term, patient complexity, refers to the overall impact and burden of the multiple diseases on an individual (Valderas et al. 2009). The patient's complexity is influenced by individual biological characteristics, economic factors, age, sex, culture, and behaviors. The interaction between the disorders and psychosocial and environmental factors will influence clinical management of the disorders in terms of difficulty, time consumption, and resources (Valderas et al. 2009).

Comorbidities can occur sequentially, or they can become symptomatic simultaneously. Depending on the time span being assessed, comorbid disorders may overlap and be present at the same point in time, or they both occur within a certain time period but never are simultaneously present (Valderas et al. 2009). The sequence in which comorbidities appear may have implications on the individual's prognosis and treatment (Valderas et al. 2009). For example, cancer patients who receive a new diagnosis of major depression may be very different from patients with major depression who later have cancer diagnosed, although both are considered patients with cancer and depression.

Disorders that are considered comorbidities can be either physical or psychological in nature. It is a common occurrence that a disorder in one domain (e.g., a physical disorder of spinal cord injury) will trigger or exacerbate a disorder in another domain (e.g., a psychological disorder of depression). Of note, many medical and psychiatric disorders have overlapping symptoms and whose boundaries may be difficult to distinguish. Two disorders within the same domain are also considered comorbidities (e.g., depression and

anxiety or chronic obstructive pulmonary disorder and ischemic heart disease).

There are some disorders that are such frequent comorbidities that they are combined under a single label and treated as a single syndrome. One example is metabolic syndrome (formerly known as syndrome X) which includes high blood pressure, type 2 diabetes, obesity, hypercholesterolemia, and dyslipidemia. When these co-occur with obstructive sleep apnea, it is often known as syndrome Z. Chronic medical and psychiatric disorders typically have complex combinations of risk factors and numerous etiological patterns.

Etiological models of comorbidity can be described in five categories, though additional category descriptions exist in the literature (Rhee et al. 2004; Valderas et al. 2009):

1. No etiological association between diseases: they occur together only by chance.
2. Direct causation: one of the diseases, or treatment for one disease, is directly responsible for the other (e.g., diabetes and cataracts).
3. Associated risk factors: the risk factors for each disease are correlated making co-occurrence more likely (e.g., smoking and alcohol use are often correlated and therefore COPD and liver disease are more likely to occur together).
4. Heterogeneity: risk factors for each disease are not correlated, but each is capable of causing diseases associated with the other risk factor (e.g., tobacco use and age are not correlated, but each can lead to either heart disease or cancer).
5. Independence: the simultaneous features of co-occurring diseases correspond to a distinct third disease (e.g. Raynaud's syndrome and kidney disease might both be due to lupus).

Implications for Treatment and Clinical Care

Treatment providers will often assess for comorbidities in order to tailor the best treatment approach to that individual. Being aware of a patient's comorbidities allows a treatment

provider to educate the patient, consider additional treatment options, and potentially begin treatment for the comorbidity. Comorbidities can make diagnosis of additional disease easier or more difficult (e.g., diabetic patients with altered pain sensation making diagnosis of coronary heart disease more difficult). Comorbidities also impact treatment recommendations as some treatments may be beneficial for one disease but contraindicated for another (e.g., corticosteroids for COPD may exacerbate an anxiety disorder or diabetes). Patient prognosis can also be negatively affected by comorbidities.

Individuals with comorbid disorders may need to seek care from one or more specialists in addition to their primary provider, which poses additional financial, time, and energy burden on the patient. Patients with medical conditions will often have comorbid psychological conditions and comorbidity may increase the severity of each disease (Kessler et al. 2005). Some primary care settings may not be able to adequately address a patient's psychiatric and substance use comorbidities due to lack of time, resources, or coordination and communication with behavioral health providers. When primary care is minimally collaborative with behavioral health, medical and mental health providers work independently, communicate infrequently, and are in separate facilities and systems. Integrated and collaborative care is a way for primary care and behavioral health care to jointly reach individuals with medical and psychological comorbidities. In *collaborative care*, behavioral health is provided as a separate specialty but one that works closely and collaborates with the primary care provider. Categories of collaborative care include *coordinated care* in which primary care provides routine mental health screenings and referrals to behavioral health and both exchange information with each other. *Colocated* mental health and medical services are located within the same facility but may have an informal communication with each other. Whereas in *integrated care*, behavioral health care is provided within the primary care

setting and uses one treatment plan. Typically, a team consisting of a physician, a mental health professional, and other medical staff works together to deliver services. In other words, the primary care provider integrates behavioral health care into routine primary care. Benefits of integrated care include ability for more patients with mental health issues to access psychological care, fewer burdens on patients to seek out additional providers and appointments, decreased stigma around mental health in the community, and a more holistic patient conceptualization and treatment plan which may lead to better outcomes (Collins et al. 2013).

Conclusion

Comorbidity refers to more than one distinct condition in an individual (Valderas et al. 2009). Depending on the context in which it is used, the term may refer to an index condition along with other unrelated diseases (Ording and Sørensen 2013), or it may describe the number of conditions, their severity, and/or the morbidity burden on the patient. Comorbid diseases may occur sequentially or be present simultaneously. They may be physiological or psychological in nature. Comorbidities may occur within one domain (two psychological disorders) or in multiple domains (psychological and physiological disorders). There are various etiological models that describe associations between comorbidities (Rhee et al. 2004). If comorbidities occur together with sufficient frequency, they may be combined into a single, new diagnosis. Comorbidity is often associated with increased health-care costs, more complex clinical management, worse health outcomes, and reduced health-related quality of life (Valderas et al. 2009; Michelson et al. 2000). Integrated primary and behavioral health care is one way to address the needs of patients with comorbidities in which psychiatric care is a routine part of the primary care visit, and providers across domains work as a team. Interactions between comorbidities can have effects on the

patient's diagnosis, treatment and clinical management, prognosis, and use of health-care resources.

Cross-References

- [Anxiety](#)
- [Anxiety and Heart Disease](#)
- [Cancer and Smoking](#)
- [Heart Disease and Cardiovascular Reactivity](#)
- [Heart Disease and Smoking](#)
- [Heart Disease and Stress](#)
- [Insulin Resistance \(IR\) Syndrome](#)
- [Metabolic Syndrome](#)
- [Obesity: Causes and Consequences](#)
- [Primary Care](#)
- [Raynaud's Disease and Stress](#)
- [Sleep and Health](#)
- [Unipolar Depression](#)

References and Further Readings

- Collins, C., Hewson, D. L., Munger, R., Wade, T. (2013). *Evolving models of behavioral health integration in primary care*. Milbank Memorial Fund. Retrieved from <http://www.milbank.org/uploads/documents/10430EvolvingCare/10430EvolvingCare.html>
- de Groot, V., Beckerman, H., Lankhorst, G. J., & Bouter, L. M. (2003). How to measure comorbidity: A critical review of available methods. *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 56(3), 221–229.
- Eaton, W. W. (2006). *Medical and psychiatric comorbidity over the course of life*. Arlington: American Psychiatric Publishing.
- Kessler, R., Chiu, W., Demler, O., & Walters, E. (2005). Prevalence, severity, and comorbidity of twelve-month DSM-IV disorders in the National Comorbidity Survey Replication. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 62(6), 617–627.
- Michelson, H., Bolund, C., & Brandberg, Y. (2000). Multiple chronic health problems are negatively associated with health related quality of life (HRQoL) irrespective of age. *Quality of Life Research*, 9(10), 1093–1104.
- Ording, A. G., & Sørensen, H. T. (2013). Concepts of comorbidities, multiple morbidities, complications, and their clinical epidemiologic analogs. *Clinical Epidemiology*, 5, 199–203.
- Rhee, S. H., Hewitt, J. K., Lessem, J. M., Stallings, M. C., Corley, R. P., & Neale, M. C. (2004). The validity of the Neale and Kendler model-fitting approach in examining the etiology of comorbidity. *Behavior Genetics*, 34(3), 251–265.
- Starfield, B. (2006). Threads and yarns: Weaving the tapestry of comorbidity. *The Annals of Family Medicine*, 4(2), 101–103.
- Valderas, J. M., Starfield, B., Sibbald, B., Salisbury, C., & Roland, M. (2009). Defining comorbidity: Implications for understanding health and health services. *The Annals of Family Medicine*, 7(4), 357–363.
- Wright, N., Smeeth, L., & Heath, I. (2003). Moving beyond single and dual diagnosis in general practice: Many patients have multiple morbidities, and their needs have to be addressed. *BMJ [British Medical Journal]*, 326, 512–514.

Comparative Effectiveness Methodology

- [Comparative Effectiveness Research](#)

Comparative Effectiveness Research

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[CER; Comparative effectiveness methodology](#)

Definition

The definition of Comparative Effectiveness Research (CER) for the Federal Coordinating Council reads as follows ([HHS.gov](https://www.hhs.gov)):

Comparative effectiveness research is the conduct and synthesis of systematic research comparing different interventions and strategies to prevent, diagnose, treat, and monitor health conditions. The purpose of this research is to inform patients, providers, and decision-makers, responding to their expressed needs, about which interventions are most effective for which

patients under specific circumstances. To provide this information, comparative effectiveness research must assess a comprehensive array of health-related outcomes for diverse patient populations. Defined interventions compared may include medications, procedures, medical and assistive devices and technologies, behavioral change strategies, and delivery system interventions. This research necessitates the development, expansion, and use of a variety of data sources and methods to assess comparative effectiveness.

The inclusion of “behavioral change strategies” makes CER of immediate interest in the field of behavioral medicine.

Description

Sox and Greenfield (2009) discussed various important steps in the development and formalization of CER. A seminal article was published by Wilensky (2006), and an Institute of Medicine (IOM) report called for a national initiative of research that would support better decision making about interventions in health care (IOM 2008). A major step occurred when President Obama signed into law the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009 (ARRA), which allotted US\$1.1 billion to CER. The legislation created a Federal Council on CER, and asked the IOM to elicit input from a broad array of stakeholders on which research topics should have the highest priority for funding through the ARRA and to then develop a list of the highest-priority topics for the Secretary of Health and Human Services to consider. The IOM committee formulated a more succinct definition of CER: “CER is the generation and synthesis of evidence that compares the benefits and harms of alternative methods to prevent, diagnose, treat and monitor a clinical condition, or to improve the delivery of care. The purpose of CER is to assist consumers, clinicians, purchasers, and policy makers to make informed decisions that will improve health care at both the individual and population levels.”

As Kupersmith and Ommaya (2010) noted, The US Department of Veterans Affairs (VA) has a long history of conducting CER. Along with

pharmaceutical interventions, they have had a large focus on behavioral interventions. The success of their CER program has been facilitated by several important aspects of scientific infrastructure related to (1) research question refinement, (2) study design, planning, and coordination, (3) evidence synthesis, and (4) implementation research. In publications that had VA coauthors in two major medical journals, 25% of the published studies were classified as CER. In the future, the CER enterprise will move toward increased input from clinicians in the choice of research topics and enhanced consideration of other methodologies besides the randomized controlled trial. Concato et al. (2010) reviewed and discussed the use of observational studies in CER, focusing on the following: (1) understanding how observational studies can provide accurate results, comparable to those from randomized clinical trials; (2) recognizing strategies used in selected newer methods for conducting observational studies; (3) reviewing selected observational studies from the Veterans Health Administration; and (4) appreciating the importance of fundamental methodological principles when conducting or evaluating individual studies.

Bonham and Solomon (2010) observed that the success of the federal investment in CER will hinge on using the power of science to guide reforms in health-care delivery and improve patient-centered outcomes (as will be true for other sources of investment in this area). They noted that “Translating the results of comparative effectiveness research into practice calls for the rigors of implementation science to ensure the efficient and systematic uptake, dissemination, and endurance of these innovations.” Academic medicine is in a strong position to help in various ways: thoroughly integrating its research and training missions with clinical care that is focused on patient-centered outcomes; building multidisciplinary teams that include a wide range of experts such as clinicians, clinical and implementation scientists, systems engineers, behavioral economists, and social scientists; and training future care providers, scientists, and educators to carry innovations forward (Bonham and Solomon 2010).

An informative discussion was recently provided by Blumenthal (2011) in a paper entitled “New frontiers in cardiovascular behavioral medicine: Comparative effectiveness of exercise and medication in treating depression.” As noted, Blumenthal and his colleagues began investigations into cardiac rehabilitation, which they considered to be a “new frontier for behavioral medicine.” That field of investigation laid groundwork that has now provided the opportunity to compare exercise therapy, an established component of cardiac rehabilitation, with antidepressant pharmacotherapy as a treatment for depression in cardiac disease patients. Two randomized clinical trials have now been conducted, and, following a detailed discussion of their findings, the author commented as follows: “While these results are preliminary and should be interpreted with caution, it appears that exercise may be comparable with conventional antidepressant medication in reducing depressive symptoms, at least for patients who are willing to try it, and maintenance of exercise reduces the risk of relapse” (Blumenthal 2011).

Cross-References

- Behavioral Medicine
- Cardiac Rehabilitation
- Depression: Treatment
- Institute of Medicine
- Randomized Clinical Trial

References and Further Reading

- Blumenthal, J. A. (2011). New frontiers in cardiovascular behavioral medicine: comparative effectiveness of exercise and medication in treating depression. *Cleveland Clinical Journal of Medicine*, 78(Suppl. 1), S35–S43.
- Blumenthal, J. A., Califf, R., Williams, R. S., & Hindman, M. (1983). Cardiac rehabilitation: A new frontier for behavioral medicine. *Journal of Cardiac Rehabilitation*, 3, 637–656.
- Bonham, A. C., & Solomon, M. Z. (2010). Moving comparative effectiveness research into practice: Implementation science and the role of academic medicine. *Health Affairs (Millwood)*, 29, 1901–1905.
- Concato, J., Lawler, E. V., Lew, R. A., Gaziano, J. M., Aslan, M., & Huang, G. D. (2010). Observational methods in comparative effectiveness research. *American Journal of Medicine*, 123(12 Suppl. 1), e16–e23.
- Hoffman, B., Babyak, M., Craighead, W. E., Sherwood, A., Doraiswamy, P. M., Coons, M. J., et al. (2010). Exercise and pharmacotherapy in patients with major depression: One-year follow-up of the SMILE study. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 73, 127–133.
- Huang, G. D., Ferguson, R. E., Peduzzi, P. N., & O’Leary, T. J. (2010). Scientific and organizational collaboration in comparative effectiveness research: The VA cooperative studies program model. *American Journal of Medicine*, 123(12 Suppl. 1), e24–e31.
- Institute of Medicine. (2008). In J. Eden, B. Wheatley, B. McNeil, & H. Sox (Eds.), *Knowing what works in health care: A roadmap for the nation*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- Kupersmith, J., & Ommaya, A. K. (2010). The past, present, and future of comparative effectiveness research in the US Department of Veterans Affairs. *American Journal of Medicine*, 123(12. Suppl 1), e3–e7.
- O’Connell, J. M., & Griffin, S. (2011). Overview of methods in economic analyses of behavioral interventions to promote oral health. *Journal of Public Health Dentistry*, 71(Suppl. 1), S101–S118.
- Rich, E. C., Bonham, A. C., & Kirch, D. G. (2011). The implications of comparative effectiveness research for academic medicine. *Academic Medicine*, 86, 684–688.
- Sox, H. C., & Greenfield, S. (2009). Comparative effectiveness research: A report from the institute of medicine. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 151, 203–205.
- United States Health and Human Services. HHS.gov.. Accessed December 14th, 2011, from <http://www.hhs.gov/recovery/programs/ceer/draftdefinition.html>.
- Wilensky, G. R. (2006). Developing a center for comparative effectiveness information. *Health Affairs (Millwood)*, 25, w572–w585.

Comparator Group

- Control Group

Compassion

- Empathy

Complex Intervention

- [Multilevel Intervention](#)

Complex Traits

Abanish Singh
Duke University Medical Center, Durham,
NC, USA

Definition

Mendelian genetics put forward the concept of dominant and recessive traits, where the phenotypes are controlled by single genes. These traits are known as monogenic or Mendelian traits. Though there are many genes that control Mendelian traits, in contrast, there are features or traits in human genetics which are controlled by multiple genes and whose inheritance does not follow the rules of Mendelian genetics. Such traits are known as complex traits.

Examples of complex traits include disorders such as autism, cardiac disease, cancer, diabetes, Alzheimer's disease, and asthma. Complex traits are believed to result from gene-gene and gene-environment interactions, genetic heterogeneity, and potentially other yet unknown reasons.

Cross-References

- [Gene-Environment Interaction](#)
- [Gene-Gene Interaction](#)

References and Further Reading

Frazer, K. A., Murray, S. S., Schork, N. J., & Topol, E. J. (2009). Human genetic variation and its contribution to complex traits. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 10, 241–251.
Glazier, A. M., Nadeau, J. H., & Aitman, T. J. (2002). Finding genes that underlie complex traits. *Science*, 298, 2345–2350.

Compliance

- [Human Factors/Ergonomics](#)
- [Medical Utilization](#)

Complications of Atherosclerosis

- [Peripheral Arterial Disease \(PAD\)/Vascular Disease](#)

Complimentary and Alternative Medicine

- [Alternative Medicine](#)

Composition

- [Family, Structure](#)

Computed Axial Tomography

- [Computerized Axial Tomography \(CAT\) Scan](#)

Computed Tomography

- [Computerized Axial Tomography \(CAT\) Scan](#)

Computed Transaxial Tomography

- [CAT Scan](#)

Computer Cartography

- [Geographic Information System \(GIS\) Technology](#)

Computer Use

- [Screen Time](#)

Computer-Based Patient Record

- [Electronic Health Record](#)

Computerized Axial Tomography

- [CAT Scan](#)
- [Computerized Axial Tomography \(CAT\) Scan](#)

Computerized Axial Tomography (CAT) Scan

Siqin Ye
Division of Cardiology, Columbia University
Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[CAT scan](#); [Computed axial tomography](#); [Computed tomography](#); [Computerized axial tomography](#); [CT scan](#); [X-ray computed tomography](#)

Definition

Computed axial tomography, or CAT scan, utilizes computer algorithms to combine series of

two-dimensional X-ray images (tomographs) to produce three-dimensional representations of the insides of objects. It is used in clinical medicine to noninvasively visualize potential pathologies inside the human body. By eliminating the superimposition of adjacent structures and distinguishing different tissue types based on their densities, CAT scans are able to generate high-resolution images of particular anatomic regions. Intravenous and oral contrast agents can also be used to further enhance image quality, helping to distinguish vasculature and bowel lumen from the surrounding tissue, respectively. Common uses of CAT scan include scanning of the head/brain, to assess strokes, intracranial bleeding, or tumors; of the chest, to assess lung parenchyma, pulmonary embolism, or diseases of the great vessels such as thoracic aortic aneurysm or dissection; of the abdomen and pelvis, to assess pathologies such as kidney stones, appendicitis, pancreatitis, diverticulitis, intra-abdominal abscesses, and various visceral malignancies; and of the bones, to identify osteoporosis and delineate complex fractures (Buzug 2008). In recent years, there has also been ongoing development of multidetector computed tomography (MDCT) scanners, allowing for further enhanced spatial and temporal resolution. These technological advances have made possible new modalities of CT imaging, such as virtual colonoscopy for colon cancer screening or cardiac CT to visualize coronary arteries as well as other structures of the beating heart (Achenbach and Daniel 2008).

The popularity of CAT scans has also led to concerns with regard to their potential adverse effects. In addition to the risk of renal injury associated with the use of iodinated intravenous contrast, there has been recognition that the widespread use of CAT scans has led to increased radiation exposure for the general population, with recent estimates showing they may contribute to 1.5–2.0% of all cancers in the United States (Brenner and Hall 2007). Due to these considerations, it has been recommended that in addition to developing better protocols with lower radiation doses, the decision to obtain a CAT scan for an individual patient should be

made judiciously, taking into careful consideration the trade-off between clinical benefit and potential harm, so as to avoid excess testing and radiation exposure.

Cross-References

- [CAT Scan](#)

References and Readings

- Achenbach, S., & Daniel, W. G. (2008). Computed tomography of the heart. In P. Libby, R. O. Bonow, D. L. Mann, D. P. Zipes, & E. Braunwald (Eds.), *Braunwald's heart disease: A textbook of cardiovascular medicine* (pp. 415–438). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Brenner, D. J., & Hall, E. J. (2007). Computed tomography—an increasing source of radiation exposure. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 357, 2277–2284.
- Buzug, T. (2008). *Computed tomography: From photon-statistics to modern cone-beam CT*. Berlin: Springer.

Computerized Simulation

- [Virtual Reality](#)

Computerized Tomography (CT)

- [Brain, Imaging](#)
- [Neuroimaging](#)

Concentration

- [Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine](#)
- [Meditation](#)
- [Transcendental Meditation](#)

Concordance

Jennifer Wessel
Public Health, School of Medicine, Indiana University, Indianapolis, IN, USA

Definition

Among a pair of twins, the twin pair exhibits an identical phenotype. Within the twin pair, both individuals share or lack the trait or disease under investigation. Measuring concordance can also be done among siblings or other family members. Greater concordance in MZs versus DZs is suggestive evidence for a genetic contribution to a disease. Concordance is measured as the number of pairs that both exhibit (or not) the trait divided by the total and presented as a percentage.

References and Further Reading

- Nussbaum, R. L., Mc Innes, R. R., & Willard, H. F. (2001). *Genetics in medicine* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders.
- Spector, T. D., Snieder, H., & MacGregor, A. J. (2000). *Advances in twin and sib-pair analysis* (1st ed.). London: Greenwich Medical Media.

Concurrent Control

- [Control Group](#)

Concussion

- [Traumatic Brain Injury](#)

Conditioned Response

- [Placebo and Placebo Effect](#)

Condom Protected Sex

► Condom Use

Condom Use

Rick Crosby
University of Kentucky, Lexington, KY, USA

Synonyms

Barrier method of protection; Condom protected sex; Prophylactic use; Protected sex

Definition

Condom use implies that an FDA-approved latex condom covered the entire head and shaft of the penis from the start of sex (initial penetration) until sex ended (no more penetration). The term also implies that the condom was used properly, thereby avoiding breakage, spillage, leaking, and slipping off the penis. The term applies to penile-vaginal penetration, penile-oral penetration, and penile-anal penetration. In research studies, when a person uses condoms consistently and correctly, he is classified as “having no risk exposure,” meaning that he has not engaged in unprotected vaginal sex (UVS), unprotected oral sex (UOS), or unprotected anal sex (UAS). The same classification applies to females who are the recipients of penetrative sex that is 100% condom protected. In addition, condom use can also imply the consistent and correct use of a polyurethane sheath that is closed at one end (intended to cover the cervix) and open at the other end (for penile penetration). Known as the “female condom,” this device is also worn by males who will be receptive partners in the act of penile-anal sex.

Description

Condom use is currently the single best method of reducing the global AIDS pandemic and the

ever-expanding pandemic of sexually transmitted infections such as Chlamydia, gonorrhea, syphilis, trichomoniasis, genital herpes, and chancroid. The degree of protection conferred by condom use varies as a function of the infection. Evidence is strongest relative to protection against the transmission and the acquisition of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Emerging evidence suggests that condoms can be highly protective against the male insertive partner’s acquisition of gonorrhea, Chlamydia, and syphilis. Evidence also supports the protective value of condoms against these same infections for the receptive partner. However, for infections such as human papillomavirus (HPV) and genital herpes (HSV), the protective value of condoms is not nearly as good simply because these infections spread by skin-to-skin contact of genital areas that condoms do not cover. Nonetheless, it is indeed correct to say that condom use does offer partial protection against HPV and HSV.

Despite the tremendous public health value of condom use, prevailing sociopolitical climates have frequently precluded efforts to educate men and women about condoms and their correct use. This lack of education has proven to be problematic in that a large number of studies show that men and women experience multiple errors and problems when using condoms. The most common error, reported by both men and women, is known as incomplete use. This means that the condom was put on after penetrative sex had begun and/or it was taken off before penetrative sex had ended. Both behaviors have been linked to arousal and erection issues as well as ill-fitting condoms. In addition, condoms that lose their lubrication during sex may be removed prematurely (rather than simply adding lubricant). Breakage is the next most common problem with condom use. Rather than being a problem inherent in the production of condoms, breakage occurs as a consequence of user errors such as applying oil-based lubrication, not leaving an air space in the reservoir tip upon application, using condoms that are too small for the penis, letting condoms contact sharp objects (including teeth and jewelry) and failure to add adequate amounts of water-based lubricants during prolonged sex. The next most common problem is having

condoms slip off the penis, either during penetrative sex or during the act of withdrawing the condomized penis after male ejaculation occurs. Loose-fitting condoms, not unrolling condoms all the way to the base of the penis, erection issues, use of erection enhancing drugs, and poorly lubricated condoms have all been associated with slippage during sex. Mistakes that people make when using condoms include putting the unrolled condom on the penis upside down and then “flipping” it over so it will unroll (thereby introducing per-cum [semen] into the outside tip of the condom thus compromising protection). Studies have shown that people will “switch” from one sexual act to another without changing condoms in between acts, thereby creating issues with disease transfer. The sheer volume of condom use errors and problems reported by men and women strongly suggests that all too often condoms fail because the users lacked proper education. These forms of condom failure are also an unfortunate omission in studies of condom effectiveness, thereby creating a bias toward the null hypothesis (i.e., that condoms do not work).

A broad range of behavioral and social issues inextricably surround condom use. For example, a robust finding has been that people are more likely to use condoms with new or “casual” sex partners and far less likely to do so with established partners. Thus, a challenge in behavioral medicine is promoting condom use among at-risk, established, couples. Also, condom use and the use of hormonal contraceptives tend to be inversely correlated, meaning that condom use is reduced or abandoned when a couple begins using highly reliable contraception methods. Here, the challenge in behavioral medicine is to promote the dual use of condoms and contraception. A similar dynamic may exist in relation to vaccines for HPV and microbicide agents designed to prevent HIV infection – as people perceive less risk as a consequence of the vaccine or microbicide they may reduce or abandon condom use. Condom use will also be problematic in cultures (or among couples) that value reproduction – an inherent downside of condom use for disease prevention is that the behavior precludes desired conception. Low arousability and erection loss are also issues that greatly affect condom use, with several studies

indicating incomplete use or lack of use to increase arousability and help maintain erection. The challenge here to behavioral medicine is integrating sex therapy with STI prevention.

References and Readings

- Crosby, R. A., Sanders, S. A., Yarber, W. L., & Graham, C. A. (2003). Condom use errors and problems: A neglected aspect of studies assessing condom effectiveness. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 24, 367–370.
- Crosby, R. A., Yarber, W. L., Sanders, S. A., et al. (2007). Men with broken condoms: Who and why? *Sexually Transmitted Infections*, 83, 71–75.
- Crosby, R. A., Milhausen, R., Yarber, W. L., Sanders, S. A., & Graham, C. A. (2008). Condom “Turn Offs” among adults: An exploratory study. *International Journal of STD and AIDS*, 19, 590–594.
- Holmes, K. K., Levine, R., & Weaver, M. (2004). Effectiveness of condoms in preventing sexually transmitted infections. *Bulletin of the World Health Organization*, 82, 454–461.
- Misovich, S. J., Fisher, J. D., & Fisher, W. A. (1997). Close relationships and elevated HIV risk behavior: Evidence and possible underlying psychological processes. *Review of General Psychology*, 1(1), 72–107.
- Sheeran, P., Abraham, C., & Orbell, S. (1999). Psychosocial correlates of heterosexual condom use: a meta-analysis. *Psychological Bulletin*, 125(1), 90–132.

Confidentiality

Marianne Shaughnessy
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[HIPAA](#); [Patient privacy](#); [Privacy](#)

Definition

Ethical principle that dictates communications are “privileged” and may not be discussed or divulged to third parties.

Description

Confidentiality is a term that commonly applies to conversations between health care providers and patients. Legal protections are available to prevent physicians from revealing certain discussions with patients, even under oath in court. However, the rule only applies to information shared between physician and patient during the course of providing medical care. Traditionally, medical ethics has viewed the duty of confidentiality as a relatively nonnegotiable tenet of medical practice. Issues regarding the confidentiality of health information passed between patients, providers, and insurers led to the evolution of regulatory language to protect patient privacy.

The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA) includes in its language specific direction for the management of protected health information (PHI) in both clinical and research arenas. The Privacy Rule protects all “individually identifiable health information” held or transmitted by a covered entity or its business associate, in any form or media, whether electronic, paper, or oral. The Privacy Rule calls this information “protected health information (PHI).”

“Individually identifiable health information” is information, including demographic data, that relates to the individual’s past, present, or future physical or mental health or condition; the provision of health care to the individual; or the past, present, or future payment for the provision of health care to the individual, and that identifies the individual or for which there is a reasonable basis to believe it can be used to identify the individual. Individually identifiable health information includes many common identifiers (e.g., name, address, birth date, social security number). There are no restrictions on the use or disclosure of de-identified health information. De-identified health information neither identifies nor provides a reasonable basis to identify an individual.

Privacy rules apply only to covered entities. Covered entities are defined as a healthcare provider (physicians, nurse practitioners,

psychologists, dentists, clinics, nursing homes, pharmacies, etc.), health plans (insurance companies, Health Maintenance Organization (HMOs), etc.), or a healthcare clearinghouse (entities that process nonstandard health information they receive from another entity into a standard format). Individuals, organizations, and agencies that meet the definition of a covered entity under HIPAA must comply with the rules’ requirements to protect the privacy and security of health information and must provide individuals with information regarding their rights with respect to their health information. If an entity is not a covered entity, it does not have to comply with the Privacy Rule.

Researchers are also bound by the rules regarding confidentiality of protected health information. Generally speaking, researchers are required to safeguard the privacy of all health information obtained in the course of screening or enrollment in a study to the extent permitted by law. In certain types of research, there may be a high risk of identifying information that if disclosed, could have adverse consequences for subjects or damage their financial standing, employability, insurability, or reputation. Certificates of confidentiality are issued by the National Institutes of Health (NIH) to protect identifiable research information from forced disclosure. They allow the investigator and others who have access to research records to refuse to disclose identifying information on research participants in any civil, criminal, administrative, legislative, or other proceeding, whether at the federal, state, or local level. By protecting researchers and institutions from being compelled to disclose information that would identify research subjects, certificates of confidentiality help achieve the research objectives and promote participation in studies by assuring confidentiality and privacy to participants.

Cross-References

- [Protection of Human Subjects](#)
- [Research Participation, Risks and Benefits Of](#)

References and Readings

U.S. Department of Health & Human Services Health Information Privacy. Accessed 9 May 2011 from <http://www.hhs.gov/ocr/privacy/>

U.S. Department of Health & Human Services National Institutes of Health Office of Extramural Research Certificates of Confidentiality Kiosk. Accessed 12 May 2011 from <http://grants.nih.gov/grants/policy/coc/>

Confounding Influence

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

When investigating the influence of a factor of interest, it is critically important to keep all other potentially relevant influences as constant as possible. That is, the only reasons for differences in how subjects respond to the treatments in a research study should be the nature of the treatments (interventions) themselves. Extraneous influences are called confounding influences: They make it harder to isolate and hence evaluate the degree of influence of the factor of interest.

The list of potential confounding influences for a given study can be extensive and vary from study to study. It is therefore the responsibility of the researcher to design the study and structure the study's research methodology such that confounding influences are controlled to the greatest degree possible.

One example from other entries can be found in the entry titled "► [Crossover Design](#)." In these study designs, each subject receives all of the interventions in the study. Because of the potential confounding influence of the order in which the interventions are completed (e.g., subjects may tend to respond better to the first intervention rather than the last, regardless of the nature of the intervention), this factor needs to be controlled for. This potential issue is elegantly solved by counterbalancing the order in which the subjects receive the treatments. In a two-treatment

study, for example, half of the subjects would receive Treatment A first and Treatment B second, and the other half would receive the treatments in the reverse order.

Using different but comparable nomenclature, the goal of a research study is to identify one source of systematic influence, the influence that is systematically provided by the factor of interest in the study. It is essential to remove all other identifiable sources of systematic influence, such as the order in which treatments are administered. Other simple examples include not administering Treatment A only to males and Treatment B only to females, and not administering Treatment A only to relatively young subjects and Treatment B to relatively old subjects.

The process of randomization is a powerful tool used to disperse influences that cannot readily be controlled equally (randomly) across the subjects in a study, thereby removing unwanted systematic influences.

Cross-References

- [Crossover Design](#)
- [Randomization](#)
- [Research Methodology](#)

Congestive Heart Failure

William Whang

Division of Cardiology, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Heart failure](#)

Description

Congestive heart failure is a condition in which the heart cannot provide enough cardiac output for

the metabolic demands of the body. The prevalence of heart failure has been estimated at 2% and is expected to grow due to improved survival of people with cardiac conditions (Mann 2008). The lifetime risk of developing heart failure has been estimated at 20%. Coronary artery disease is the most frequent cause of heart failure (60–75%) (Lloyd-Jones et al. 2002). Etiologies for heart failure aside from coronary artery disease include viral inflammation of the heart, also known as myocarditis; alcohol toxicity; or genetic mutations.

One way to classify heart failure is according to left ventricular ejection fraction, a measure of contractile function. “Systolic heart failure” is defined by the presence of reduced left ventricular ejection fraction, usually <40%. About half of patients with heart failure may still have preserved left ventricular ejection fraction, so-called heart failure with normal ejection fraction (HFNEF) (Maeder and Kaye 2009). This is often thought to be due to impaired left ventricular relaxation, or “diastolic dysfunction,” but can also occur in the setting of other conditions such as anemia or renal dysfunction.

Symptoms of this condition can include shortness of breath, peripheral edema, and fatigue. Worse symptomatology has been associated with greater mortality risk. New York Heart Association class is one way to indicate the symptom severity of someone with heart failure (Mann 2008):

- Class I – no symptoms and no limitation in ordinary physical activity
- Class II – slight limitation during ordinary activity
- Class III – marked limitation in activity due to symptoms, even during less-than-ordinary activity
- Class IV – symptoms even while at rest, mostly bedbound patients

The prevailing view of pathogenesis of systolic heart failure involves a neurohormonal hypothesis. After an initial insult that results in damage to heart muscle, a number of compensatory systems are activated, mainly involving overactivity of the sympathetic nervous system. Activation of the

renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system results in salt and water retention, as well as constriction of peripheral blood vessels. This short-term adaptation leads to detrimental increases in left ventricular size and wall thinning, also referred to as remodeling.

The overall prognosis in patients with heart failure is poor, with 1-year mortality as high as 30–40% without treatment (Mann 2008). Depression has been estimated by a meta-analysis to occur in about 21% of heart failure patients, and its presence is associated with worse cardiovascular outcomes and higher overall mortality (Rutledge et al. 2006).

The hallmark of pharmacologic therapy for heart failure involves treatment with angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors and beta blockers, which are known to improve long-term mortality. Of note, there is a relative lack of evidence for therapies for treatment of heart failure with normal ejection fraction, although blood pressure control is thought to play an important role in treatment.

Behavioral interventions for heart failure may include cessation of tobacco/alcohol use, reduction in salt intake, and exercise in selected patients. The *Heart Failure: A Controlled Trial Investigating Outcomes of Exercise Training* (HF-ACTION) trial was performed in 2331 ambulatory patients with heart failure and reduced left ventricular ejection fraction (average 0.25) (O'Connor et al. 2009). The intervention consisted of a group-based, supervised exercise program for 3 months with transition to home exercise. During a median follow-up duration of 30 months, a nonsignificant reduction in the primary endpoint of all-cause mortality or hospitalization was achieved (HR 0.93, 95% CI 0.84–1.02, $p = 0.13$). Exercise training was also found to be relatively safe in the intervention group.

References and Further Reading

- Lloyd-Jones, D. M., Larson, M. G., Leip, E. P., Beiser, A., D'Agostino, R. B., Kannel, W. B., et al. (2002). Lifetime risk for developing congestive heart failure: The Framingham heart study. *Circulation*, 106(24), 3068–3072.

- Maeder, M. T., & Kaye, D. M. (2009). Heart failure with normal left ventricular ejection fraction. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 53(11), 905–918.
- Mann, D. L. (2008). Chapter 227: Heart failure and cor pulmonale. In A. S. Fauci, E. Braunwald, D. L. Kasper, S. L. Hauser, D. L. Longo, J. L. Jameson, & J. Loscalzo (Eds.), *Harrison's principles of internal medicine* (Vol. 17e). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- O'Connor, C. M., Whellan, D. J., Lee, K. L., Keteyian, S. J., Cooper, L. S., Ellis, S. J., et al. (2009). Efficacy and safety of exercise training in patients with chronic heart failure: HF-ACTION randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 301(14), 1439–1450.
- Rutledge, T., Reis, V. A., Linke, S. E., Greenberg, B. H., & Mills, P. J. (2006). Depression in heart failure a meta-analytic review of prevalence, intervention effects, and associations with clinical outcomes. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 48(8), 1527–1537.

Conjecture

► Theory

Consensus Guideline

► Clinical Practice Guidelines

CONSORT Guidelines

Lisa A. Eaton
Center for Health, Intervention, and Prevention,
University of Connecticut, New Haven, CT, USA

Synonyms

[Guidelines for reporting randomized controlled trials](#)

Definition

Many studies employ a randomized controlled trial (RCT) design to test the efficacy of products or services. However, inconsistencies in reporting

trial information and outcomes of RCTs have stymied the usefulness of these trials in regards to providing readily available data from trial findings. These shortcomings led to the development of Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials (CONSORT). CONSORT dictates that trial authors answer a series of checklist questions and provide a flowchart representing the trial when reporting outcomes.

The CONSORT Statement seeks to improve reporting information from RCTs, including increasing transparency of trial procedures and outcomes. As of 2010, there are 25 checklist items that cover what information should be included in the title/abstract, introduction, methods, results, discussion, and other (registration, protocol, and funding). In addition, authors adhering to CONSORT Statement guidelines should include a flow chart that depicts, in part, number of participants screened, excluded and why, randomized, received product or service, lost to follow-up and why, assessed, and included in data analysis.

CONSORT was originally developed in the 1990s and has since been amended multiple times. Individuals from varied backgrounds have taken part in forming the specifics of the guidelines. A committee representing the purpose of the CONSORT Statement meets regularly to review, assess, and change as needed statement guidelines. Thus, making this document one that is continually evolving to best represent the reporting of the scientific methods of an RCT. Multiple peer-reviewed, scholarly journals follow the reporting guidelines set forth by the CONSORT Statement which has led to consistency across journals in terms of reporting style. Evaluations have been completed to assess the impact of implementing the CONSORT Statement. Analyses of trial reporting before and after the time period of guideline availability have demonstrated a substantial improvement in transparency of procedures and outcomes as a result of the CONSORT Statement.

Cross-References

► [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)

References and Readings

- Begg, C., Cho, M., Eastwood, S., Horton, R., Moher, D., et al. (1996). Improving the quality of reporting of randomized controlled trials. The CONSORT statement. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 276, 637–639. <http://www.consort-statement.org/>.
- Moher, D., Schulz, K. F., Altman, D. G., & Lepage, L. (2001). The CONSORT statement: Revised recommendations for improving the quality of reports of parallel-group randomised trials. *The Lancet*, 357, 1191–1194.
- Moher, D., Hopewell, S., Schulz, K. F., Montori, V., Gøtzsche, P. C., Devereaux, P. J., et al. (2010). CONSORT 2010 explanation and elaboration: Updated guidelines for reporting parallel group randomised trial. *BMJ*, 340, c869. for the CONSORT Group.

Construct Validity

Annie T. Ginty
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Definition

Construct validity is the extent to which the measurements used, often questionnaires, actually test the hypothesis or theory they are measuring. Construct validity should demonstrate that scores on a particular test do predict the theoretical trait it says it does.

There are two subsets of construct validity: convergent construct validity and discriminant construct validity. Convergent construct validity tests the relationship between the construct and a similar measure; this shows that constructs which are meant to be related are related. Discriminant construct validity tests the relationships between the construct and an unrelated measure; this shows that the constructs are not related to something unexpected. In order to have good construct validity one must have a strong relationship with convergent construct validity and no relationship for discriminant construct validity.

Cross-References

- [Psychometric Properties](#)
- [Reliability and Validity](#)
- [Validity](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bruce, N., Pope, D., & Stanistreet, D. (2008). *Quantitative methods for health research: A practical interactive guide to epidemiology and statistics*. West Sussex: Wiley.

Constructive Coping

- [Active Coping](#)

Consumer Health

- [Consumer Health Informatics](#)

Consumer Health Informatics

Robin Austin
School of Nursing, University of Minnesota,
Minneapolis, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Consumer health](#); [Patient health/engagement](#); [Personal health informatics](#)

Definition

Consumer health informatics (CHI), a specialty field of health informatics, focuses on education, practice, research, and policy specifically for the health consumer.

Description

Introduction

In the last decade, there has been an increased focus on consumer or patient engagement and empowerment in healthcare. As consumers are taking a more active role in their care, health information technology (HIT), specifically consumer-directed technologies, is being used to enable ability to communicate, share information, and collaborate across health settings (Lai et al. 2017). Patients with access to consumer-focused technologies can also increase access to care, allow more control of over their health information, possibly reduce barriers to care, and assist in self-management behaviors (Knight and Shea 2014). Consumer health informatics (CHI), a specialty field of health informatics, focuses on education, practice, research, and policy specifically for the health consumer. CHI plays a major role in providing information to patients and the public, which facilitates the promotion of self-care, enabling informed decision-making, promoting healthy behaviors and peer information exchange (Abaidoo and Larweh 2014). A major driver of this informatics specialty

is the increasing use of consumer-directed health technologies that include mobile health application (mHealth apps), wearable sensor technology and devices, and personal health records (PHR) to name a few. In addition, specific attention is being focused on consumer-facing tools for behavior modification to improve a wide ranging of health outcomes. This paper addresses current definitions of CHI, current state of the science of CHI, and future implications to the field of CHI.

Background and Definitions

In the field of CHI, there is a strong interest in how to use technology to engage and empower consumers. In addition, advances in technology and availability of consumer-facing technologies allow unprecedented access and insight into consumer health behavior. CHI has been stated to be one of the most dynamic specialties of health informatics due to the pace of continuous developments, increase use of new technologies, and growth of data generated by consumers (Eysenbach 2000). A list of frequently used CHI definitions serves as a guide to provide context to the evolving field of CHI (Table 1).

Consumer Health Informatics, Table 1 Definitions of consumer health informatics

Reference	Definition
Eysenbach (2000)	CHI is the branch of medical (biomedical) informatics that analyzes consumers' needs for information, studies and implements methods of making information accessible to consumers, and models and integrates consumers' preferences into medical information systems
Gibbons et al. (2009)	CHI as an electronic tool, technology, or system (a) primarily designed to interact with health information consumers (anyone who seeks or uses healthcare information for nonprofessional work) (b) that interacts directly with the consumer who provides personalized health information to the to the CHI system and receives personalizes health information from the tool or system and (c) in which the data, information, recommendations, or other benefits provided to the consumer may be used with a healthcare professional, but is not dependent on a healthcare professional
American Medical Informatics Association (AMIA) (2018)	CHI is the field devoted to informatics from multiple consumer or patient views. These include patient-focused informatics, health literacy, and consumer education. The focus is on information structures and processes that empower consumers to manage their own health – for example, health information literacy, consumer-friendly language, personal health records, and Internet-based strategies and resources. The shift in this view of informatics analyzes consumers' needs for information, studies and implements methods for making information accessible to consumers, and models and integrates consumers' preferences into health information systems

A recent review of CHI definitions recommended that future CHI definitions should be understandable and inclusive for a broad range of diverse users from experts in the field to interested consumers (Flaherty et al. 2015). The choice to use the term “consumer” rather than “patient” aligns with the expanding concept of health data to include information about people across the spectrum of sickness and in health (Evans 2016). A recent suggestion has been to replace “consumer” with “person” or “personal” as individuals may not consider themselves a “consumer” of health but as a person or individual.

State of the Science

The current state of CHI science includes a wide range of research conducted across age groups, populations, and settings with the use of various technologies, devices, and platforms. Most notably mobile health applications (mHealth apps) have increased in popularity, and as a result this technology has created a plethora of consumer or person-generated health data (PGHD). This type of data has provided insight into consumer behavior such as searching for health information and tracking of personal health data and social media activities.

Over the last decade, the increase in mobile applications and self-tracking devices has changed how consumers search and receive health information. Recent reports suggest 59% of US adults have searched health information online within the year, and one in three cell phone users have used their phones to find health information (Fox and Duggan 2012). It is important to note that this figure may even be higher now given the ubiquitous nature of Internet and mobile phone use. mHealth apps allow for the ability of continuous data monitoring and to connect with consumers anywhere and anytime (Steinhubl et al. 2016). From the perspective of health professionals, this type of technology can be used to connect, communicate, and collaborate with patients, families, and populations like never before. However, true effectiveness studies need to be conducted to understand how this technology can best change health behavior (Steinhubl et al. 2016).

The use of mHealth apps and smart technology, such as sensors, has increased the production and availability of PGHD. Studies in CHI and the use of PGHD have begun to show positive results that impact care delivery, improve patient-provider communication, and enhance health outcomes (Lai et al. 2017). In addition, there has been an overall acceptance of consumer technology and person-generated data by consumers, providers, and researchers (Lai et al. 2017). Despite acceptance and positive results, significant challenges exist, specifically the use of PGHD in the clinical setting and the ability to have this type of data accessible and usable in real time (Hsueh et al. 2017; Lai et al. 2017; Woods et al. 2016).

Consumer-facing technologies have provided knowledge of consumer interactions with the health system, and over time this may have clinical practice and policy implications. A recent review found that consumers seek information at various stages across their health journey, through differing platforms and delivery mediums, and the previous one-dimensional chronological health information methods are no longer suitable (Ramsey et al. 2017). This insight can inform health systems how and when consumers seek information and provide the ability to intervene earlier and across platforms.

Future Implications

With increasing consumer expectations and technological advances, the field of CHI will continue to expand across the health domain. One emerging trend is the quantified self-movement and health of the Internet of things (IoT). Today, 49% of the world's population is connected online, and an estimated 8.4 billion connected things are in use worldwide (Rainie and Anderson 2017). With the proliferation and expanding science of CHI, future research should be direct toward effectiveness of CHI methods and tools for positive health outcomes.

Future CHI research should be directed toward enabling a more nimble HIT infrastructure and the ability to optimize EHRs. Currently, most person-generated data is an unstructured form making it challenging to integrate into current electronic health systems, and using data standards and standardized

health terminology can greatly improve the usability of consumer-generated data (Raghupathi and Raghupathi 2014; Woods et al. 2016). In addition, time constraints and a fast-pace clinic environment to increase the need for person-generated data however it needs to be usable and interpretable in real-time. There is tremendous opportunity for CHI however, there are also ethical, legal, social, and privacy considerations. These technologies may influence behavior change for individuals, families, and populations toward optimal health, it will also be important to understand how the health system interacts with these technologies and use them in collaboration with the individual or family.

Conclusion

Emerging trends in consumer health informatics have the potential to shift healthcare delivery. Consumer-facing tools can provide necessary information to empower patients to be more active in their care and facilitate informed decision-making. There is tremendous opportunity to engage consumers and increase the ability to interact and collaborate as a health team that includes the voice of the consumer. Moving forward it will take an interdisciplinary approach to overcome challenges and barriers and generate research and create responsible policies that will benefit individuals, families, and communities.

Cross-References

- [Electronic Health Record](#)
- [Health Policy/Health-Care Policy](#)
- [Health Promotion and Disease Prevention](#)

References and Further Readings

- Abaidoo, B., & Larweh, B. T. (2014). Consumer health informatics: The application of ICT in improving patient-provider partnership for a better health care. *Online Journal of Public Health Informatics*, 6(2), e188. <https://doi.org/10.5210/ojphi.v6i2.4903>.
- AMIA. (2018). *Consumer health informatics*. Retrieved from <https://www.amia.org/applications-informatics/consumer-health-informatics>
- Evans, B. (2016). Barbarians at the Gate: Consumer-driven health data commons and the Transformation of Citizen Science. *American Journal of Law & Medicine*, 70(12), 773–779. <https://doi.org/10.1097/OGX.0000000000000256>.Prenatal.
- Eysenbach, G. (2000). Consumer health informatics. *British Medical Journal*, 320(7251), 1713–1716. <https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.320.7251.1713>.
- Flaherty, D., Hoffman-Goetz, L., & Arocha, J. F. (2015). What is consumer health informatics? A systematic review of published definitions. *Informatics for Health & Social Care*, 40(2), 91–112. <https://doi.org/10.3109/17538157.2014.907804>.
- Fox, S., & Duggan, M. (2012). *Mobile health 2012* (p. 29). Washington, DC: Pew Internet. Retrieved from <http://www.pewinternet.org/2012/11/08/mobile-health-2012/>
- Gibbons, M. C., Wilson, R. F., Samal, L., Lehman, C. U., Dickersin, K. (2009). *Impact of consumer health informatics applications* (Vol. 09). Retrieved from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK32638/>.
- Hsueh, P.-Y., Cheung, Y.-K., Dey, S., Kim, K. K., Martin-Sanchez, F. J., Petersen, S. K., & Wetter, T. (2017). Added value from secondary use of person generated health data in consumer health informatics. *IMIA Yearbook*, 26(1), 1–12. <https://doi.org/10.15265/IY-2017-009>.
- Knight, E. P., & Shea, K. (2014). A patient-focused framework integrating self-management and informatics. *Journal of Nursing Scholarship*, 46(2), 91–97. <https://doi.org/10.1111/jnu.12059>.
- Lai, A. M., Hsueh, P.-Y. S., Choi, Y. K., & Austin, R. R. (2017). Present and future trends in consumer health informatics and patient-generated health data. *Yearbook of Medical Informatics*, 26(1), 152–159. <https://doi.org/10.15265/IY-2017-016>.
- Raghupathi, W., & Raghupathi, V. (2014). Big data analytics in healthcare: Promise and potential. *Health Information Science and Systems*, 2(1), 3. <https://doi.org/10.1186/2047-2501-2-3>.
- Rainie, L., & Anderson, J. (2017). The internet of things connectivity binge: What are the implications? *Pew Internet*, (June). Retrieved from <http://www.pewinternet.org/2017/06/06/the-internet-of-things-connectivity-binge-what-are-the-implications/>
- Ramsey, I., Corsini, N., Peters, M. D. J., & Eckert, M. (2017). A rapid review of consumer health information needs and preferences. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 100(9), 1634–1642. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pec.2017.04.005>.
- Steinhubl, S. R., Muse, E. D., Topol, E. J., & Jolla, L. (2016). The emerging field of mobile health. *Science Translation Medicine*, 7(283), 1–12. <https://doi.org/10.1126/scitranslmed.aaa3487>.The.
- Woods, S. S., Evans, N. C., & Frisbee, K. L. (2016). Integrating patient voices into health information for self-care and patient-clinician partnerships: Veterans Affairs design recommendations for patient-generated data applications. *Journal of the American Medical Informatics Association*, 23(3), 491–495. <https://doi.org/10.1093/jamia/ocv199>.

Contemplation

- ▶ [Meditation](#)
 - ▶ [Transcendental Meditation](#)
-

Context Effect

- ▶ [Nocebo and Nocebo Effect](#)
 - ▶ [Placebo and Placebo Effect](#)
-

Continuity of Care

Marie Boltz

The Pennsylvania State University College of Nursing, State College, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Care Continuity](#)

Definition

Continuity of care refers to the seamless provision of health care between settings and over time (Gulliford et al. 2006).

Traditionally, patients have viewed care continuity as a permanent relationship with a dependable, caring health-care professional (Gulliford et al. 2011). This view, defined as *interpersonal continuity* of care, implies that the identified professional is the sole source of care and information for the patient. To health-care providers, continuity of care has historically implied the *exchange of information*, e.g., between shifts of nurses, between units of a health-care facility, and between providers such as acute care and a nursing home. Coleman et al. (2006) define the flow of information between different locations or

different levels of care within the same location as “transitional care” necessary to ensure the coordination and continuity of health care as patients move through different settings. Organizational approaches found to be effective in facilitating transitions between settings are the use of transition coach to educate the patient and family and coordinate among the health professionals involved in the transition (Voss et al. 2011) and the transitional care nurse (Hirschman et al. 2015) who coordinates the discharge plan and coordinates the plan in the home.

Chronological or longitudinal continuity of care describes health-care interactions that occur in the same place, with the same medical record and with the same professionals, so that there is consistent knowledge of the patient by those providing the care (Hill et al. 2014). Interdisciplinary or team-based continuity implied allows previous knowledge of the patient to be present even when the patient requires a wide range of services.

Given that health-care needs can rarely be met by a single professional or a single provider setting, a multidimensional model of continuity of care is a logical choice (Gulliford et al. 2006), one that provides a longitudinal and interdisciplinary approach, while providing the dependability and relational aspects of interpersonal continuity. This model relies on integration, coordination, and the sharing of information between different and stable providers. Evaluation of continuity of care can be conducted from the patient perspective, i.e., the experience of care, or satisfaction with the coordination of care and its interpersonal aspects. It also includes the provider’s evaluation of outcomes and care processes (team functioning and case management effectiveness).

References and Further Reading

- Coleman, E. A., Parry, C., Chalmers, S., & Min, S. J. (2006). The care transitions intervention: Results of a randomized controlled trial. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 166, 1822–1828.

- Gulliford, M., Naithani, S., & Morgan, M. (2006). What is “continuity of care?”. *Journal of Health Services Research and Policy*, 11(4), 248–250.
- Gulliford, M., Cowie, L., & Morgan, M. (2011). Relational and management continuity survey in patients with multiple long-term conditions. *Journal of Health Services Research & Policy*, 16(2), 67–74.
- Hill, K. M., Twiddy, M., Hewison, J., & House, A. O. (2014). Measuring patient-perceived continuity of care for patients with long-term conditions in primary care. *BMC Family Practice*, 15, 191.
- Hirschman, K. B., Shaid, E., McCauley, K., Pauly, M. V., & Naylor, M. D. (2015). Continuity of care: The Transitional Care Model. *The Online Journal of Issues in Nursing*, 20(2), 1.
- Voss, R., Gardner, R., Baier, R., Butterfield, K., Lehrman, S., & Gravenstein, S. (2011). The care transitions intervention: Translating from efficacy to effectiveness. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 171(14), 1232–1237.

Continuous Glucose Monitor Systems

Janine Sanchez

Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami
Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

A Continuous Glucose Monitor System (CGMS) measures glucose readings in interstitial fluid at regular intervals (usually every 5 min), 24 h a day. This was designed as a tool for patients with diabetes to more effectively manage their glucose levels with real-time information, as opposed to the momentary blood glucose sampling done with blood glucose meters multiple times per day. CGMS users insert a tiny sensor wire under their skin using an automatic applicator. A small, reusable transmitter sitting on the skin connects to the sensor wire. Some CGMS send the real-time readings wirelessly to a receiver or smart device where the user can view the information. One CGMS requires a scanner to see the current glucose level. In addition to showing real-time glucose information, CGMS show glucose direction and rate of change. Some CGMS have alarms which alert the user if the glucose level is too low or too high.

Some CGMS allows the information to be transmitted to other people to help monitor glucose levels. Some CGMS require users to calibrate the sensor by inputting glucose levels obtained by a glucose meter 2–4 times a day. Other CGMS do not require calibration and may be used in place of a meter. Some of the recent CGMS versions are considered valid for glucose measurement and do not require glucose meter checks. CGMS can be used alone or may be linked to insulin pumps as part of a hybrid closed loop. CGMS are approved for use by adults and children. In the US market, there are currently three brands of CGMS.

CGMS can contribute to better diabetes management by allowing the user to see the immediate glucose response to insulin, carbohydrate intake, physical activity, and other events. All CGMS data can be downloaded and then accessed online by both the user and the diabetes care team. Reports can be generated which show daily continuous glucose levels. The information can assist the diabetes care team in diabetes management by seeing patterns and trends in glucose levels.

References and Further Reading

- Cemeroglu, A. P., Stone, R., Kleis, L., Racine, M. S., Postellon, D. C., & Wood, M. A. (2010). Use of a real-time continuous glucose monitoring system in children and young adults on insulin pump therapy: Patients' and caregivers' perception of benefit. *Pediatric Diabetes*, 11(3), 182–187.
- Tamborlane, W. V., Beck, R. W., Bode, B. W., Juvenile Diabetes Research Foundation Continuous Glucose Monitoring Study Group, et al. (2008). Continuous glucose monitoring and intensive treatment of type 1 diabetes. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 359, 1464–1476.

Continuous Subcutaneous Insulin Infusion

► [Insulin Pumps](#)

Contraception

Linda C. Baumann¹ and Alyssa Ylinen²

¹School of Nursing, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

²Allina Health System, St. Paul, MN, USA

Abbreviations

STI Sexually transmitted infections

Synonyms

Birth control; Family planning

Contraception is any method or action used to prevent pregnancy.

Definition

Contraception, or birth control, is any method, action, device, or medication used to prevent pregnancy. Various methods of contraception include blockage of the sperm from reaching the egg, killing or damaging sperm, preventing the release of an egg from the ovaries, or changing the uterine lining so a fertilized egg will not attach. Many factors can help couples choose the most appropriate contraception based on frequency of sex, plans for pregnancy, age and overall health, side effects, number of sexual partners, protection against sexually transmitted infections (STIs), and contraceptive failure rates. Contraceptive failure rates are most often reported as two numbers, the theoretical failure rate or the rate of contraceptive failure when the method is used correctly during every act of intercourse. The actual failure rate takes into account the actual variation in consistency of contraceptive usage (see Table 1).

Description

The various methods of contraception include barrier methods, natural methods, hormonal

methods, intrauterine devices (IUDs), emergency contraception, and surgical sterilization.

The barrier method provides a mechanical or chemical barrier to the sperm from reaching the egg. The most common form of the barrier method is the male condom, which is usually made of thin latex. New materials have been developed and include polyurethane and styrene and styrene ethylene butylenes styrene. These materials have a longer shelf life and can be used with oil-based lubricants without increasing the risk of condom breakage. Male condoms are relatively inexpensive, easily accessible, and carry few health risks. Health risks include hypersensitivity to the latex or lubricant inside the condom. If used correctly every time, male condoms are very effective and carry only a 2% theoretical failure rate; actual failure rates are around 15%.

Female condoms are soft plastic film linings with flexible rings at both ends (see Fig. 1). When used correctly and consistently, this type of contraception carries a slightly higher theoretical and actual failure rate than male condoms at 5% and 21%, respectively. Female condoms are more expensive than male condoms due to the polyurethane material they are made from. Both male and female condoms are a beneficial form of contraception because they not only protect against pregnancy but also provide protection against sexually transmitted infections (STI).

Spermicides are another barrier method and come in the form of foams, jells, suppositories, creams, films, and tablets. The most widely used types contain nonoxynol-9 and octoxynol-9. Spermicides are inserted deep in the vagina at least 30 min prior to sexual intercourse and create a chemical barrier by killing or inactivating sperm by causing the membrane of the sperm cell to break. Research has shown that frequent use of nonoxynol-9 can damage lower genital tract epithelial surfaces and may increase the risk of HIV infection. New spermicides are being developed to replace nonoxynol-9. When used alone, spermicides are one of the least effective forms of contraception, and it is recommended that they be used in conjunction with other forms of contraception. Spermicides do not protect against STIs and carry risks of local tissue irritation.

Contraception, Table 1 Overview of contraceptive methods

Method	Failure rate (%)		Benefits	Health risks/side effects and disadvantages
	Theoretical/	actual		
Barrier Condom Male condom Female condom	2.0 5.0	15.0 21.0	Provides STI protection Male condoms are relatively cheap and widely available May provide protection against conditions caused by STIs	Occasional hypersensitivity to latex or lubricant inside condom May lead to decreased sensitivity Female condoms are costly and bulky
Spermicide	18.0	29.0	Widely available in many forms and relatively inexpensive	Can cause vaginal or penile irritation Risk of urinary tract infection Frequent use of nonoxynol-9 may increase risk of HIV One of the least effective methods when used alone
Diaphragm Cervical cap Parous women Nulliparous women	6.0 20.0 9.0	16.0 32.0 16.0	May help protect against certain STIs May help protect against cervical cancer	Can cause vaginal or penile irritation May lead to the development of Toxic Shock Syndrome if left in place for too long Risk of bladder irritations that can lead to urinary tract infections
Natural fertility awareness Coitus interruptus Lactational amenorrhea (LAM)	— 4.0 1.0	25.0 27.0 2.0	Completely natural LAM helps encourage healthy breast-feeding patterns, which benefits both mother and child	Requires motivation and a commitment to learning High failure rates LAM can only be used a maximum of 6 months after delivery
Hormonal methods Combination estrogen and progesterone Pill Injection Patch Vaginal ring	0.3 0.5 0.3 0.3	8.0 3.0 0.8 0.8	Available in many forms Provides many non-contraceptive health benefits including reduced risk of: ovarian and endometrial cancer, pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), ovarian cysts, osteoporosis, iron-deficiency anemia, and dysmenorrhea	Can cause dizziness, headache, nausea, weight changes, mood changes, and breast pain Carry risk of cardiovascular complications such as deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism Risk of heart attack and stroke is present but rare
Progesterone only Pill Injections	0.5 0.3	8.0 3.0	Can be used by women who are nursing and for whom estrogen is contraindicated	May cause irregular bleeding, mood changes, weight gain, dizziness, headaches, and nausea
Intrauterine devices Copper T IUD Levonorgestrel IUD	0.6 0.2	0.8 0.2	May help protect against endometrial cancer After initial insertion requires little maintenance Copper IUDs can remain in uterine and work effectively for up to 10 years Levonorgestrel can be effective for up to 5 years Levonorgestrel IUD has been used to help treat menorrhagia and dysmenorrhea Copper IUD can be used as emergency contraception if placed within 5–8 days	Side effects such as bleeding, pain, perforation, and infection are rare but can be serious May increase the risk of pelvic inflammatory disease if gonorrhea or Chlamydia is present before the insertion If pregnancy does occur, the risk of spontaneous abortion is increased by up to 50% May change bleeding patterns causing increased bleeding and menstrual pain in first few months

(continued)

Contraception, Table 1 (continued)

Method	Failure rate (%)		Benefits	Health risks/side effects and disadvantages
	Theoretical/	actual		
			of unprotected sex and is the most effective form of emergency contraception	Levonorgestrel IUD can cause headaches, nausea, dizziness, and weight gain
Surgical sterilization	0.5	0.5	Very few side effects	Complications of surgery and anesthesia are possible
Female sterilization	0.2	0.2	Permanent form of contraception and therefore requires no other contraceptive efforts 3 months post operation	Requires a back-up method of contraception for first 3 months post operation
Male sterilization			Helps protect against pelvic inflammatory disease	



Contraception, Fig. 1 Female condom

A diaphragm is a latex rubber cup with a flexible rim that covers the cervix. It is placed in the vagina before intercourse and remains there for 6–8 h after intercourse. It is most often used in conjunction with a spermicide. Diaphragms are relatively effective with a 6% theoretical failure rate and actual failure rate of 16%. However, diaphragms must be prescribed and fitted by a healthcare provider and carry risk of vaginal or penile irritation, urinary tract infection, and in rare cases toxic shock syndrome.

A cervical cap is a small, soft cup that fits snugly over the cervix and is used in conjunction with a spermicide. It is a more effective form of contraception in nulliparous women. Like diaphragms, cervical caps must be fitted by a healthcare provider and carry many of the same health risks.

Natural methods of contraception used to control pregnancy include fertility awareness, coitus

interruptus, and lactational amenorrhea (LAM). Women using fertility awareness identify ovulation based on body symptoms or the calendar. Symptom-based methods include monitoring cervical mucus changes around the time of ovulation. These changes include the mucus becoming thin and watery. The symptothermal method includes taking regular basal body temperatures to recognize a decrease, which occurs prior to ovulation, and monitoring other cues such as abdominal cramps, breast tenderness, and changes in cervical position to predict ovulation. Calendar methods of fertility awareness include the standard day method and the calendar rhythm method. The standard day method tracks the menstrual cycle counting from the first day of bleeding as day 1; days 9 through 18 are considered fertile days. The calendar rhythm method requires a record of the number of days in a menstrual cycle for 6 months, with estimates of the fertile period calculated by subtracting 18 from the length of the shortest cycle – this day is the estimated first day of the fertile period. To estimate the end of the fertile period, subtract 11 from the length of the longest cycle – this is the estimated last day of the fertile period. These calculations should be updated monthly using the most recent cycles. Fertility awareness is considered one of the least effective forms of contraception, especially in women with irregular menstrual cycles. The theoretical failure rate

for fertility awareness is 10%, while the actual failure rate is about 25%.

A second natural method of contraception is coitus interruptus, or withdrawal of the penis from the vagina before ejaculation. The theoretical failure rate is quite low at about 4%, but the actual failure rate is around 27%, which makes this form one of the least effective methods. Pre-ejaculate can be deposited into the vaginal canal prior to ejaculation and contributes to the high failure rate. A male who has recently ejaculated prior to sex should first urinate and clean the tip of the penis to remove any sperm from the previous ejaculation.

The last natural method of contraception is lactational amenorrhea. This method can be used by nursing mothers after delivery because frequent breast-feeding suppresses hormones that cause ovulation. Because the suppression of ovulation is variable, this type of contraception should not be used longer than 6 months after delivery.

Hormonal methods of birth control suppress ovulation to prevent pregnancy and are the most widely used form of reversible contraception in the United States. Combined estrogen and progesterone and progesterone-only methods are the two available forms of hormonal birth control. Combined birth control methods come in many forms including oral pills, transdermal patches, monthly injections, and vaginal rings. Depending on the form being used, failure rates for combined hormonal contraception vary. Theoretical failure rates for all forms are below 1%; however, some actual rates can be as high as 8%.

The second form of hormonal contraception is progesterone-only contraception. Because this contraception does not contain estrogen, it is advantageous for women who are breast-feeding and for women in whom estrogen is contraindicated. Progesterone-only contraception comes in the form of oral pills and injections that work by thickening the cervical mucus, inhibiting sperm movement, and disrupting the menstrual cycle to prevent ovulation. Generally progesterone-only contraception is not as effective as combination contraception and carries actual failure rates of 8–10%.

Intrauterine devices (IUDs) are the most widely used form of reversible contraception globally. An IUD is a small plastic or metal device that is inserted by a healthcare provider into the uterus. The two most common forms are the copper-bearing IUD and the levonorgestrel IUD. The copper IUD is a plastic frame (or “7”) with copper sleeves around it. The levonorgestrel IUD is a plastic T-shaped device that releases small amounts of levonorgestrel, a form of progesterone. The IUD causes a sterile inflammatory response in which sperms are destroyed or immobilized by inflammatory cells. In addition to this inflammatory response, the levonorgestrel further provides contraceptive effect by thickening cervical mucus and causing atrophy of the endometrium. The copper in copper IUDs adds to the contraceptive effect by hampering sperm motility, making it difficult to reach the fallopian tubes. Most IUDs can be left in place for 5–10 years and are therefore a long-term contraceptive plan with little maintenance required after the initial insertion. They are highly effective with theoretical and actual failure rates below 1%.

Emergency contraception is a form of contraception that can be utilized after unprotected sex or after a contraceptive failure. Emergency contraception comes in two forms, pills and an emergency copper IUD insertion, and prevents pregnancy by inhibiting ovulation, fertilization, or implantation based on the form used. Emergency contraceptive pills are high doses of either a combined estrogen and progesterone pill or a progesterone-only pill. To be most effective, emergency contraception should be taken as soon as possible after unprotected sex but can also be effective if taken within 5 days of unprotected intercourse. Emergency insertion of a copper IUD within 5–8 days of unprotected sex is a very effective form of emergency contraception.

Sterilization is a form of permanent contraception and can be done in both men and women. In females, tubal ligation involves a surgical occlusion of both fallopian tubes preventing an egg from entering the uterus. Vasectomy is a male sterilization procedure that involves ligation of the vas

deferens. Because these procedures are meant to be permanent, reversal surgery is rare, and when done, rarely successful. Unlike tubal ligation, a vasectomy is not immediately effective and another contraceptive method should be used for the first 3 months post operation. In the past 30 years, the rate of sterilization as a form of contraception has increased dramatically and is currently one of the most widely used forms of contraception. Failure rates are extremely low with both the theoretical and actual rates below 1%.

Globally, many social determinants influence the choice of contraceptive and include gender and the role of women in a culture, age, socioeconomic status, marital status, education level, and religion. For example, in the United States, women aged 22–44 who are less educated are more likely to use sterilization as a contraceptive method while college-educated women of the same age range more often use pills as the preferred method of contraception. Some religious beliefs sanction natural methods of contraception to space pregnancies as opposed to using hormonal or barrier methods that prevent pregnancy from occurring. Surgical sterilization is most often used by an older population while the pill is the preferred form in women below the age of 30. The percentages of contraceptive users and the most widely used forms vary by country.

Cross-References

- [Abstinence](#)
- [Family Planning](#)

References and Further Readings

- Callahan, T. L., & Caughey, A. B. (2007). Contraception and sterilization. In N. A. Duffy & K. Horvath (Eds.), *Obstetrics & gynecology* (pp. 248–266). Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Jones, J., Mosher, W. D., & Daniels, K. (2012). *Current contraceptive use in the United States, 2006–2010, and change in patterns of use since 1995. National Center for Health Statistics* (pp. 2012–1250).

Hyattsville: US Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. DHHS publication.

Medline Plus. (2010). *Birth control*. Retrieved 31 Oct 2016, from <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/birthcontrol.html>

Rowlands, S. (2009). New technologies in contraception. *BJOG: An International Journal of Obstetrics & Gynaecology*, 116(2), 230–239.

Wong, D., Hockenberry, M., Wilson, D., Perry, S., & Lowdermilk, D. (2006). *Maternal child nursing care* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby Elsevier.

World Health Organization, Department of Reproductive Health and Research (WHO/RHR), & John Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health/Center for Communication Programs (CCP). (2008). *Family planning: A global handbook for providers*. Baltimore/Geneva: CCP and WHO.

Control

- [Hyperglycemia](#)
- [Interpersonal Circumplex](#)

Control Group

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Comparator group](#); [Concurrent control](#) (which applies only in some settings)

Definition

A control group is a group of subjects against whose information the information gathered from an investigational group is compared.

To judge the effectiveness of a therapeutic behavioral intervention, or the harm done by

engaging in behavioral activities such as smoking, it is necessary to have a reference point. This is provided by data collected from individuals who are deliberately similar to those in the investigational group in as many ways as possible with the single exception of receiving the therapeutic intervention or having engaged in the behavior of concern.

Control groups can be used in experimental studies and nonexperimental (often called observational) studies. Testing the effectiveness of a therapeutic behavioral intervention in a group of individuals who have not previously received it would fall into the category of an experimental study: The researchers administer an experimental treatment. To control for the fact that simply participating in the study may have a sizeable therapeutic benefit (caused by a variety of potential factors, including the extra medical attention given to these subjects), it is necessary to have a control group that experiences all of the circumstances experienced by those in the investigational group with the exception of the intervention of interest. This can be a difficult challenge for those developing the experimental methodology to be used in the study.

Cross-References

- [Case-Control Studies](#)
- [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)

References and Further Reading

- Rothman, K. J., Greenland, S., & Lash, T. L. (Eds.). (2008). *Modern epidemiology* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Turner, J. R. (2012). *Key statistical concepts in clinical trials for pharma*. New York: Springer.

Control Group of a Randomized Trial

- [Usual Care](#)

Conversational Agents

- [Digital Relational Agents](#)

Cook-Medley Hostility Scale

Matthew Calamia

Department of Psychology, University of Iowa,
Iowa City, IA, USA

Definition

The Cook-Medley Hostility Scale (Ho Scale) (Cook and Medley 1954) is a 50-item scale derived from the Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory. The creators viewed it as a measure of “chronic hate and anger.” Scores on the Ho Scale are related to a variety of health-relevant variables, including alcohol consumption, insulin resistance, and waist-to-hip ratio (Bunde and Suls 2006). Scores on the Ho are predictive of coronary artery disease and all-cause mortality even after controlling for other health risk factors (Miller et al. 1996). In contrast to the extensive evidence for its predictive validity, the exact construct(s) measured by the scale have been the subject of some debate. A variety of competing measurement models have been proposed, with no clear favorite based on psychometric criteria (Contrada and Jussim 1992). Although groups of items relating to constructs ranging from hypersensitivity to aggressive responding have been identified, the core factor of the Ho Scale may be best described as reflecting cynicism. A unidimensional index of that primary factor can be derived from the overall scale and was found in at least one study to maintain the predictive ability of the entire scale (Strong et al. 2005).

Cross-References

- [Cynical Hostility](#)

References and Readings

- Bunde, J., & Suls, J. (2006). A quantitative analysis of the relationship between the cook-medley hostility scale and traditional coronary artery disease risk factors. *Health Psychology, 25*, 493–500.
- Contrada, R. J., & Jussim, L. (1992). What does the Cook-Medley hostility scale measure? In search of an adequate measurement Model1. *Journal of Applied Social Psychology, 22*, 615–627.
- Cook, W. W., & Medley, D. M. (1954). Proposed hostility and pharisaic-virtue scales for the MMPI. *Journal of Applied Psychology, 38*(6), 414–418.
- Han, K., Weed, N. C., Calhoun, R. F., & Butcher, J. N. (1995). Psychometric characteristics of the MMPI-2 cook-medley hostility scale. *Journal of Personality Assessment, 65*, 567–585.
- Miller, T. Q., Smith, T. W., Turner, C. W., Guijarro, M. L., & Hallet, A. J. (1996). A meta-analytic review of research on hostility and physical health. *Psychological Bulletin, 119*, 322–348.
- Strong, D. R., Kahler, C. W., Greene, R. L., & Schinka, J. (2005). Isolating a primary dimension within the cook-medley hostility scale: A rasch analysis. *Personality and Individual Differences, 39*, 21–33.

Coping

Charles Carver

Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Coral Gables, FL, USA

Definition

Coping is efforts to prevent or diminish threat, harm, and loss or to reduce the distress that is often associated with those experiences.

Description

The concept of coping presumes the existence of a condition of adversity or stress. A person who must deal with adversity is engaged in coping. Thus, coping is inextricably linked to stress. It is often said that stress exists whenever people confront situations that tax or exceed their ability to manage them (Lazarus 1966; Lazarus and

Folkman 1984). Whenever a person is hard-pressed to deal with an obstacle or impediment or looming threat, the experience is stressful. Adversity takes several forms. *Threat* refers to the impending occurrence of an event that is feared will have bad consequences. *Harm* refers to the perception that bad consequences have already come to pass. *Loss* refers to the perception that something of value has been taken away.

People respond to perceptions of threat, harm, and loss in a wide variety of ways, many of which are labeled coping. Coping is generally defined as efforts to prevent or diminish threat, harm, and loss or to reduce the distress that is often associated with those experiences. Some theorists prefer to limit the concept of coping to voluntary responses (Compas et al. 2001). Others include automatic and involuntary responses as well (Eisenberg et al. 1997; Skinner and Zimmer-Gembeck 2007). It should be noted that it is not easy to distinguish between voluntary and involuntary responses to stress. Furthermore, responses that are intentional and effortful when first used may become automatic with repetition. Some discussions of coping also include unconscious defensive reactions as aspects of coping. This entry is limited, however, to responses that are recognized by the person who is engaging in them.

Distinctions and Groupings Among Coping Responses

Coping is a very broad concept with a long and complex history (Compas et al. 2001; Folkman and Moskowitz 2004). A great many distinctions have been made within the broad domain (Skinner et al. 2003). Some of the more important distinctions are described in the sections that follow.

Problem-Focused Versus Emotion-Focused Coping

The first distinction made in modern examination of coping was that made between problem-focused and emotion-focused coping (Lazarus and Folkman 1984). Problem-focused coping is

directed at the stressor itself: taking steps to remove or to evade it or to somehow diminish its impact if it cannot be evaded. For example, if the arrival of a hurricane is forecast, a homeowner's problem-focused coping might include bringing all potted plants indoors, putting up storm shutters, and buying batteries for use in flashlights. As another example, if layoffs are expected at one's place of employment, problem-focused coping might include saving money, applying for other jobs, obtaining training to enhance hiring prospects, or working harder at the current job to reduce the likelihood of being let go.

Emotion-focused coping, in contrast, is aimed at minimizing the emotional distress that is triggered by stressful events. Because there are many ways to reduce distress, emotion-focused coping includes a very wide range of responses, ranging from self-soothing (e.g., relaxation, seeking emotional support), to expression of negative emotion (e.g., yelling, crying), to a focus on negative thoughts (e.g., rumination), to attempts to escape cognitively from the stressful situation (e.g., avoidance, denial, wishful thinking).

Problem-focused and emotion-focused coping have different initial or focal goals. The focal goal determines which category a particular response is assigned to. Some behaviors can serve either a problem-focused or an emotion-focused function, depending on the goal behind their use. For example, seeking support is emotion focused if the goal is to obtain emotional support and reassurance; on the other hand, seeking support is problem focused if the goal is to obtain advice or instrumental help.

Although it is easy to distinguish between them in principle, problem-focused coping and emotion-focused coping also tend to facilitate one another. Effective problem-focused coping diminishes the threat or harm, but by doing so, it also diminishes the distress generated by that threat. Effective emotion-focused coping diminishes negative emotions, making it possible to consider the problem more calmly. This often leads to better problem-focused coping. This interwoven relationship between problem- and emotion-focused coping makes it more useful to

think of the two as complementary coping functions, rather than as two fully distinct and independent coping categories.

Engagement Versus Disengagement

What turns out to be a particularly important distinction is the distinction between engagement or approach coping and disengagement or avoidance coping (e.g., Skinner et al. 2003). Engagement coping is aimed at actively dealing with the stressor or stress-related emotions. Disengagement coping is aimed at avoiding confrontation with the threat or avoiding the stress-related emotions. Engagement coping includes problem-focused coping and forms of emotion-focused coping such as support seeking, emotion regulation, acceptance, and cognitive restructuring. Disengagement coping includes responses such as avoidance, denial, and wishful thinking. Disengagement coping is often emotion focused, because it typically involves an attempt to escape feelings of distress. Some disengagement coping is almost literally an effort to act as though the threat does not exist, so that no reaction is needed, behaviorally or emotionally. Wishful thinking and fantasy can distance the person from the stressor, at least temporarily, and denial creates a boundary between reality and the person's experience.

Although disengagement coping has the aim of escaping distress, it is generally ineffective in reducing distress over the long term, because it does nothing about the threat's existence and its eventual impact. If you are experiencing a real threat in your life and you respond to it by going to the movies, the threat will generally remain when the movie is over. Eventually, it must be dealt with. Indeed, for many types of stress, the longer a person avoids dealing with the problem, the more difficult or complex it becomes, and the less time is available to deal with it when one does finally turn to it. Finally, some kinds of disengagement coping can create problems of their own. Excessive use of alcohol or drugs can create social and health problems, and shopping or gambling as an escape can create financial problems.

Some have extended the concept of disengagement coping to include giving up on goals that are

threatened by the stressor (Carver and Connor-Smith 2010). This differs from other disengagement responses, in that it addresses both the stressor's existence and its emotional impact by abandoning an investment in something else. Disengaging from the threatened goal may allow the person to avoid negative feelings associated with the threat. Depending on the nature of the goal being abandoned, however, this sort of disengagement can also have adverse secondary consequences.

Accommodative Coping and Meaning-Focused Coping

Most adaptive coping is one or another form of engagement coping. Within engagement coping, distinctions also have been made between attempts to control the stressor itself, called primary control coping, and attempts to adapt or adjust to the stressor, termed accommodative or sometimes secondary control coping (Morling and Evered 2006; Skinner et al. 2003). The term accommodative is perhaps to be preferred because it does not carry connotations of exerting control or of being secondary to other coping efforts.

The concept of accommodative coping is rooted in analyses of the process of successful aging (Brandtstädter and Renner 1990). It refers to adjustments within the self, which are made in response to constraints inherent in one's life situation. In the realm of coping, accommodation applies to responses such as acceptance, cognitive restructuring, and scaling back of one's goals in the face of insurmountable interference. Another kind of accommodation is self-distraction. Self-distraction is somewhat controversial. Self-distraction is often thought of as disengagement coping. However, there is also evidence suggesting that intentionally engaging in positive activities is a useful means of adapting to uncontrollable events (Skinner et al. 2003).

A concept that is related to accommodation is what has been called meaning-focused coping. In meaning-focused coping, people draw on their beliefs and values to find benefits in stressful experiences or remind themselves of positive aspects of their lives (Tennen and Affleck 2002).

Meaning-focused coping may include reordering one's life priorities and focusing on the positive meaning of ordinary events. The concept of meaning-focused coping has roots in evidence that positive and negative emotions are common during stressful experiences, that those positive feelings influence people's outcomes, and particularly the fact that people try to find benefit and meaning in adversity (Helgeson et al. 2006; Park et al. 2009). Although this concept emphasizes the positive changes a stressor brings to a person's life, it is worth pointing out that meaning-focused coping also represents an accommodation to the constraints of one's life situation. Meaning-focused coping involves reappraisal of the situation. It appears to be most likely when stressful experiences are uncontrollable or are going badly.

Stepping Back

This brief review is far from exhaustive. Nonetheless, it should make clear that there are many ways to group and organize coping responses. Further, it should be clear that these distinctions do not form a neat matrix into which all coping reactions can be sorted. A given response typically fits several places. For example, seeking emotional support is engagement, emotion-focused, and accommodative coping. Each distinction that has been introduced can be useful for answering certain questions about responses to stress. No one distinction fully conveys the structure of coping. The distinction that appears to be the most important is that made between engagement and disengagement. Interestingly enough, this is a distinction which also maps well onto goal-based models of personality functioning and social behavior (e.g., Carver and Scheier 1998).

Relations Between Coping and Well-Being

In some respects, the question that everyone wants answered is not "what are the ways in which people cope?" but "how do coping responses affect well-being?" Behind this

question lie a number of thorny methodological issues (Carver 2007). Among them are issues of how often coping should be measured, what time lag should be assumed and thus investigated between coping efforts and eventual outcomes, and whether coping should be viewed as a cluster of responses or a sequence of responses.

In meta-analyses of relations between coping and well-being, effect sizes are typically small to moderate. Coping generally has been linked more strongly to psychological outcomes than to physical health (Clarke 2006; Penley et al. 2002). Nonetheless, most kinds of engagement coping relate to better physical and mental health in samples coping with stressors as diverse as traumatic events, social stress, HIV, and prostate cancer (Clarke 2006; Littleton et al. 2007; Moskowitz et al. 2009; Penley et al. 2002; Roesch et al. 2005). However, some other less volitional responses that might be seen as reflecting engagement, including rumination, self-blame, and venting, predict poorer emotional and physical outcomes (Austenfeld and Stanton 2004; Moskowitz et al. 2009). Higher levels of disengagement coping typically predict poorer outcomes, such as more anxiety, depression, and disruptive behavior, less positive affect, and poorer physical health, across an array of stressors (Littleton et al. 2007; Moskowitz et al. 2009; Roesch et al. 2005). Acceptance coping seems to be a double-edged sword. Acceptance that occurs in the context of other accommodative strategies is helpful, but acceptance that reflects resignation and abandonment predicts distress (Morling and Evered 2006).

Relations between coping and adjustment also vary with the nature, duration, context, and controllability of the stressor. In meta-analyses of both children and adults, it appears to be important to match one's coping to the stressor's controllability and to the resources that are available. Active attempts to solve problems help when dealing with controllable stressors, but the same responses are potentially harmful when dealing with uncontrollable stressors (Aldridge and Roesch 2007; Clarke 2006). Similarly, taking responsibility for uncontrollable stressors predicts

distress, but taking responsibility is unrelated to adjustment in the context of controllable stressors (Penley et al. 2002). In contrast, emotional approach coping (e.g., self-regulation and controlled expression of emotion) appears to be most useful in the context of uncontrollable stressors (Austenfeld and Stanton 2004).

One caveat must be applied to all of these conclusions about the effects of coping. Although coping is almost universally viewed as an ever-changing response to evolving situational demands, most coping research fails to reflect this view. Many studies assess only dispositional coping (overall coping styles) or onetime retrospective reports of overall coping with some stressor. Those studies tell virtually nothing about how timing, order, combination, or duration of coping affect outcomes. In contrast, Tennen et al. (2000) proposed that people typically use emotion-focused coping largely after they have tried problem-focused coping and found it ineffective. This suggests an approach to studying coping in which the question is whether the person changes from one sort of coping to another across successive assessments as a function of lack of effectiveness of the first response used.

The impact of a given coping strategy may be quite brief. For this reason, laboratory and daily report studies are essential to understanding the effects of situational coping strategies (Bolger et al. 2003). The small number of daily report studies of coping makes it clear that the impact of coping changes over time, with responses that are useful one day sometimes having a negative impact on next-day mood or long-term adjustment (DeLongis and Holtzman 2005). Laboratory research also is useful in disentangling stressor severity from individual differences in stress appraisals by using standardized stressors. Lab studies also make it easier to supplement self-reports with observations of coping and assessment of physiological responses.

Cross-References

► Stress

References and Further Reading

- Aldridge, A. A., & Roesch, S. C. (2007). Coping and adjustment in children with cancer: A meta-analytic study. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 30, 115–129.
- Austenfeld, J. L., & Stanton, A. L. (2004). Coping through emotional approach: A new look at emotion, coping, and health-related outcomes. *Journal of Personality*, 72, 1335–1363.
- Bolger, N., Davis, A., & Rafaeli, E. (2003). Diary methods: Capturing life as it is lived. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 54, 579–616.
- Brandstädter, J., & Renner, G. (1990). Tenacious goal pursuit and flexible goal adjustment: Explication and age-related analysis of assimilative and accommodative strategies of coping. *Psychology and Aging*, 5, 58–67.
- Carver, C. S. (2007). Stress, coping, and health. In H. S. Friedman & R. C. Silver (Eds.), *Foundations of health psychology* (pp. 117–144). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Carver, C. S., & Connor-Smith, J. (2010). Personality and coping. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 61, 679–704.
- Carver, C. S., & Scheier, M. F. (1998). *On the self-regulation of behavior*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Clarke, A. T. (2006). Coping with interpersonal stress and psychosocial health among children and adolescents: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Youth and Adolescence*, 35, 11–24.
- Compas, B. E., Connor-Smith, J. K., Saltzman, H., Thomsen, A. H., & Wadsworth, M. E. (2001). Coping with stress during childhood and adolescence: Problems, progress, and potential in theory and research. *Psychological Bulletin*, 127, 87–127.
- DeLongis, A., & Holtzman, S. (2005). Coping in context: The role of stress, social support, and personality in coping. *Journal of Personality*, 73, 1–24.
- Duangdao, K. M., & Roesch, S. C. (2008). Coping with diabetes in adulthood: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 31, 291–300.
- Eisenberg, N., Fabes, R. A., & Guthrie, I. (1997). Coping with stress: The roles of regulation and development. In J. N. Sandler & S. A. Wolchik (Eds.), *Handbook of children's coping with common stressors: Linking theory, research, and intervention* (pp. 41–70). New York: Plenum.
- Folkman, S., & Moskowitz, J. T. (2004). Coping: Pitfalls and promise. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 55, 745–774.
- Helgeson, V. S., Reynolds, K. A., & Tomich, P. L. (2006). A meta-analytic approach to benefit finding and health. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 74, 797–816.
- Lazarus, R. S. (1966). *Psychological stress and the coping process*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Littleton, H., Horsley, S., John, S., & Nelson, D. V. (2007). Trauma coping strategies and psychological distress: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Traumatic Stress*, 20, 977–988.
- Morling, B., & Evered, S. (2006). Secondary control reviewed and defined. *Psychological Bulletin*, 132, 269–296.
- Moskowitz, J. T., Hult, J. R., Bussolari, C., & Acree, M. (2009). What works in coping with HIV? A meta-analysis with implications for coping with serious illness. *Psychological Bulletin*, 135, 121–141.
- Park, C. L., Lechner, S. C., Antoni, M. H., & Stanton, A. L. (Eds.). (2009). *Medical illness and positive life change: Can crisis lead to personal transformation?* Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Penley, J. A., Tomaka, J., & Wiebe, J. S. (2002). The association of coping to physical and psychological health outcomes: A meta-analytic review. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 25, 551–603.
- Roesch, S. C., Adams, L., Hines, A., Palmores, A., Vyas, P., Tran, C., et al. (2005). Coping with prostate cancer: A meta-analytic review. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 28, 281–293.
- Skinner, E. A., & Zimmer-Gembeck, M. J. (2007). The development of coping. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 58, 119–144.
- Skinner, E. A., Edge, K., Altman, J., & Sherwood, H. (2003). Searching for the structure of coping: A review and critique of category systems for classifying ways of coping. *Psychological Bulletin*, 129, 216–269.
- Tennen, H., & Affleck, G. (2002). Benefit-finding and benefit-reminding. In C. R. Snyder & S. J. Lopez (Eds.), *Handbook of positive psychology* (pp. 584–597). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Tennen, H., Affleck, G., Armeli, S., & Carney, M. A. (2000). A daily process approach to coping: Linking theory, research, and practice. *American Psychologist*, 55, 626–636.

Coping Skills Training

- [Williams LifeSkills Program](#)

Coping Strategies

- [Denial](#)

Coping with Stress

- [Stress Management](#)

Copy Number Variant (CNV)

Rany M. Salem^{1,2} and Laura Rodriguez-Murillo³

¹Broad Institute, Cambridge, MA, USA

²Cambridge Center, Cambridge, MA, USA

³Department of Psychiatry, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

Structural variant

Definition

A copy number variant (CNV) is a type of genetic variation in which a sequence of nucleotides is repeated in tandem multiple times in an individual's genome. The variability arises from the gain and/or loss of genetic material, causing the number of repeat copies to vary in a population. In contrast to single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), which affect only one nucleotide, CNVs are much larger, ranging from one kilobase to several megabases in size (Conrad et al. 2010). Large CNVs may contain genes, resulting in gene duplication or deletion.

CNVs are inherited, but can also arise de novo (although a rare event) via genomic rearrangements such as deletions, duplications, inversions, translocations, and transposons activity. It is estimated that the human genome contains ~20,000 CNVs (Mills et al. 2011) and covers up 12% of the human genome (Redon et al. 2006). CNVs have been associated with several diseases, including schizophrenia (Xu et al. 2008), autism (Sebat et al. 2007), and others (The Wellcome Trust Case Control Consortium 2010). The full extent to which they contribute to human disease is not known (Conrad et al. 2010).

Cross-References

- DNA
- Human Genome Project
- Polymorphism
- Single Nucleotide Polymorphism (SNP)

References and Further Reading

- Conrad, D. F., Pinto, D., Redon, R., Feuk, L., Gokcumen, O., Zhang, Y., et al. (2010). Origins and functional impact of copy number variation in the human genome. *Nature*, 464(7289), 704–712. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nature08516>.
- Mills, R. E., Walter, K., Stewart, C., Handsaker, R. E., Chen, K., Alkan, C., et al. (2011). Mapping copy number variation by population-scale genome sequencing. *Nature*, 470(7332), 59–65. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nature09708>.
- Redon, R., Ishikawa, S., Fitch, K. R., Feuk, L., Perry, G. H., Andrews, T. D., et al. (2006). Global variation in copy number in the human genome. *Nature*, 444(7118), 444–454. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nature05329>.
- Sebat, J., Lakshmi, B., Malhotra, D., Troge, J., Lese-Martin, C., Walsh, T., et al. (2007). Strong Association of De Novo copy number mutations with autism. *Science*, 316(5823), 445–449.
- The Wellcome Trust Case Control Consortium. (2010). Genome-wide association study of CNVs in 16,000 cases of eight common diseases and 3,000 shared controls. *Nature*, 464(7289), 713–720. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nature08979>.
- Xu, B., Roos, J. L., Levy, S., van Rensburg, E. J., Gogos, J. A., & Karayiorgou, M. (2008). Strong association of de novo copy number mutations with sporadic schizophrenia. *Nature Genetics*, 40(7), 880–885. <https://doi.org/10.1038/ng.162>.

Coronary Artery Bypass Graft (CABG)

Siqin Ye

Division of Cardiology, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

CABG

Definition

Coronary artery bypass graft, or CABG, is a surgical procedure performed to treat advanced coronary atherosclerotic disease.

Description

By using segments of other arteries and veins as conduits to bypass diseased portions of the coronary arteries, CABG can improve cardiac function by restoring blood flow to areas of the heart that were inadequately perfused. The most commonly used grafts include saphenous vein grafts, harvested either openly or endoscopically from the lower extremities; free radial grafts, which are segments of the radial arteries from either wrists; and left or right internal mammary arteries (LIMA or RIMA), which arise from the subclavian arteries and are anastomosed distally to the target coronary vessels. Currently, the LIMA is most frequently used to bypass the left anterior descending artery (LAD) due its excellent long-term results, while vein grafts, which have much higher rates of graft failure, are used to bypass the other coronary vessels (Morrow and Gersh 2008).

Despite the advent of percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI), CABG remains one of the most commonly performed surgical procedures in the United States. The main indications for CABG are based on high-risk anatomical features and include significant left main disease or its equivalent (i.e., concomitant proximal LAD and proximal left circumflex artery stenosis), multi-vessel coronary artery disease that involve the proximal LAD, and triple vessel disease (Eagle et al. 2004). Studies have also demonstrated that patients with left ventricular dysfunction, and especially those with significant amount of viable myocardium on noninvasive imaging, may derive greater benefit from surgical revascularization. In these selected patient populations, CABG has been shown to markedly improve survival compared with medical therapy (Yusuf et al. 1994). However, there are also significant risks associated with CABG. Registries maintained by the Society of Thoracic Surgeons have consistently shown operative mortality of 2–3%. In addition, there are other known perioperative complications, including myocardial infarction, stroke, renal failure, bleeding, and wound infections. Various scoring systems have been derived to predict the risk of these perioperative events and to aid in

informed decision making for individual patients. The careful consideration of the benefits and risks of surgery is especially important for those patients with a high-risk profile, such as the frail elderly or those with many comorbidities (Eagle et al. 2004).

There has also been ongoing debate on whether a subset of patients with surgical disease may be treated with PCI rather than CABG. For instance, recent registries have suggested that in patients with uncomplicated left main disease, PCI may yield comparable rates of major adverse cardiovascular events as CABG (Seung et al. 2008). The landmark Synergy between PCI with Taxus and Cardiac Surgery (SYNTAX) trial published in 2009 randomized patients with three-vessel or left main coronary artery disease to PCI or CABG and showed that while patients who underwent PCI had higher rate of repeat revascularization, the rates of death and myocardial infarction were similar between the two arms. In particular, for patients with less complicated lesions, the choice of revascularization strategy did not lead to a significant difference in outcomes (Serruys et al. 2009). On the other hand, new surgical techniques such as off-pump CABG or minimally invasive CABG with hybrid PCI may also significantly alter the risk-benefit balance. With these advances, it is likely that the optimal strategy for revascularization will continue to evolve in the coming years and become increasingly individualized.

Cross-References

- [Bypass Surgery](#)
- [Coronary Artery Disease](#)

References and Readings

- Eagle, K. A., Guyton, R. A., Davidoff, R., Edwards, F. H., Ewy, G. A., Gardner, T. J., et al. (2004). ACC/AHA 2004 guideline update for coronary artery bypass graft surgery: Summary article: A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on practice guidelines (committee to update

- the 1999 guidelines on coronary artery bypass graft surgery). *Circulation*, 110, 1168–1176.
- Morrow, D. A., & Gersh, B. J. (2008). Chronic coronary artery disease. In P. Libby, R. O. Bonow, D. L. Mann, D. P. Zipes, & E. Braunwald (Eds.), *Braunwald's heart disease: A textbook of cardiovascular medicine* (pp. 1353–1417). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Serruys, P. W., Morice, M., Kappetein, A. P., Colombo, A., Holmes, D. R., Mack, M. J., et al. (2009). Percutaneous coronary intervention versus coronary-artery bypass grafting for severe coronary artery disease. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 360, 961–972.
- Seung, K. B., Park, D., Kim, Y., Lee, S., Lee, C. W., Hong, M., et al. (2008). Stent versus coronary-artery bypass grafting for left main coronary artery disease. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 358, 1781–1792.
- Yusuf, S., Zucker, D., Passamani, E., Peduzzi, P., Takaro, T., Fisher, L. D., et al. (1994). Effect of coronary artery bypass graft surgery on survival: Overview of 10-year results from randomised trials by the coronary artery bypass graft surgery trialists collaboration. *Lancet*, 344(8922), 563–570.

Coronary Artery Disease

► Coronary Heart Disease

Coronary Event

Siqin Ye
Division of Cardiology, Columbia University
Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Although no standard definition exists, the term coronary event is used in clinical research to refer to adverse events caused by disease processes affecting the coronary arteries. These may include what are termed “hard” events such as deaths that are attributed to coronary artery disease and non-fatal myocardial infarctions, but also occasionally “soft” events such as angina or revascularizations for worsening coronary artery stenosis. Because coronary event is often such a composite of clinical events of varying significance, there remains considerable debate on what should constitute the most appropriate component endpoints and how

to define them, with the recognition that these choices may significantly influence the results and impact of clinical trials and other studies. To address this, guidelines such as the 2014 ACC/AHA Key Data Elements and Definitions for Cardiovascular Endpoint Events in Clinical Trials and the 2012 Third Universal Definition of Myocardial Infarction have been released to standardize the definitions of the most important clinical events such as cardiovascular death and myocardial infarction.

References and Further Reading

- American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Data Standards. (2014). 2014 ACC/AHA key data elements and definitions for cardiovascular endpoint events in clinical trials. *Circulation*, 132(4), 302–361.
- Kip, K. E., Hollabaugh, K., Marroquin, O. C., & Williams, D. O. (2008). The problem with composite end points in cardiovascular studies. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 51(7), 701–707.
- The Joint ESC/ACCF/AHA/WHF Task Force for the Universal Definition of Myocardial Infarction. (2012). Third universal definition of myocardial infarction. *Circulation*, 126(16), 2010–2035.

Coronary Heart Disease

William Whang
Division of Cardiology, Columbia University
Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Coronary artery disease](#)

Definition

Coronary heart disease (CHD) is a condition in which the arteries that supply the cardiac muscle, the coronary arteries, develop reduced luminal size due to the presence of atherosclerosis.

Description

Coronary heart disease (CHD) is a condition in which the arteries that supply the cardiac muscle, the coronary arteries, develop reduced luminal size due to the presence of atherosclerosis (Antman et al. 2008). Atherosclerosis is a progressive condition that starts as fatty streaks and may result in plaque development and ultimately in flow-limiting narrowing or occlusion of coronary arteries. The clinical manifestations of CHD include conditions such as angina, myocardial infarction, and heart failure. Angina, or chest discomfort, develops due to an imbalance between myocardial oxygen demand and the available blood supply. In myocardial infarction, plaque rupture and clot formation at the site of rupture result in occlusion of the artery and loss of blood flow to the heart muscle.

CHD is the major cause of one-third of all deaths in individuals older than 35, and one-half of all middle-aged men and one-third of middle-aged women in the United States will develop CHD (Lloyd-Jones et al. 1999). The Framingham Heart Study, a prospective cohort study of 5209 individuals that began in 1948 and has continued to collect information and add participants, has defined many of the risk factors for atherosclerotic disease through epidemiologic techniques. Risk factors for coronary heart disease include other medical conditions such as hypertension, diabetes mellitus, and dyslipidemia, as well as behavioral factors such as cigarette smoking (Lloyd-Jones et al. 2010).

Atherosclerotic plaques associated with myocardial infarction are known to have certain features that increase the propensity to develop rupture and clot (Antman et al. 2008). Postmortem studies from cases of sudden death associated with CHD have revealed plaques with thin fibrous caps, relatively large lipid cores, and a high content of a particular type of inflammatory cell, macrophages. It is thought that rupture or erosion of the thin fibrous cap results in activation of the clotting cascade and development of occlusive clot.

Treatment of individuals with coronary heart disease involves primary or secondary prevention of myocardial infarction and heart failure

(Antman et al. 2008). Medications such as aspirin and clopidogrel prevent clot formation, beta blockers reduce myocardial workload, and statin medications reduce cholesterol and stabilize coronary plaques. Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors reduce blood pressure and resistance in the small arteries and have been shown to prevent cardiac events particularly in patients who have developed left ventricular dysfunction.

Nonpharmacologic treatment of CHD includes percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI), a procedure that involves dilatation of the coronary artery lumen with a balloon and usually followed by implant of a coronary stent (Antman et al. 2008). PCI has been shown to reduce cardiac events in patients who present with myocardial infarction or angina at rest. In some patients with severe CHD involving all three main coronary vessels, particularly in the setting of diabetes or reduced ventricular function, coronary artery bypass graft surgery is a better treatment option.

In terms of behavioral interventions for prevention of CHD, regular aerobic exercise has been associated with improvement in multiple coronary artery disease risk factors, including blood pressure, serum cholesterol, glucose intolerance, and body mass index (Thompson et al. 2007). In addition, healthy dietary patterns have been associated with improved cardiac mortality, as well as lower blood pressure and serum cholesterol (Appel et al. 1997, 2005; Knuops et al. 2004). The 2006 dietary guidelines of the American Heart Association have emphasized maintaining a healthy dietary pattern over a focus on specific nutrients (Lichtenstein et al. 2006). Generally, the recommendations encourage consumption of a variety of fruits, vegetables, and grain products; fat-free dairy products; legumes; poultry; lean meats; and fish, preferably oily fish, at least twice a week. A meta-analysis of 38 randomized controlled trials conducted by the Cochrane Collaboration found that dietary advice reduced low-density lipoprotein cholesterol and blood pressure (Brunner et al. 2007). However, the largest randomized trial to date of a dietary intervention to reduce cardiovascular risk, the Women's Health Initiative Dietary Modification Trial, found no effect on cardiovascular events of group and individual sessions to reduce total fat

intake and increase intake of vegetables, fruits, and grains, among 48,835 postmenopausal women (Howard et al. 2006).

A substantial literature has developed documenting the link between psychosocial factors and coronary heart disease, including depression, anger, and anxiety (Albus 2010). A meta-analysis of 11 prospective cohort studies of healthy individuals estimated a relative risk of 1.64 for adverse cardiac events, including myocardial infarction (MI) and cardiac death, associated with depression (Rugulies 2002).

Cross-References

► Ischemic Heart Disease

References and Further Reading

- Albus, C. (2010). Psychological and social factors in coronary heart disease. *Annals of Medicine*, 42(7), 487–494.
- Antman, E. M., Selwyn, A. P., Braunwald, E., & Loscalzo, J. (2008). Chapter 237. Ischemic heart disease. In A. S. Fauci, E. Braunwald, D. L. Kasper, S. L. Hauser, D. L. Longo, J. L. Jameson, & J. Loscalzo (Eds.), *Harrison's principles of internal medicine* (17th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Appel, L. J., Moore, T. J., Obarzanek, E., Vollmer, W. M., Svetkey, L. P., Sacks, F. M., et al. (1997). A clinical trial of the effects of dietary patterns on blood pressure. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 336(16), 1117–1124.
- Appel, L. J., Sacks, F. M., Carey, V. J., Obarzanek, E., Swain, J. F., Miller, E. R., 3rd, et al. (2005). Effects of protein, monounsaturated fat, and carbohydrate intake on blood pressure and serum lipids: Results of the OmniHeart randomized trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 294(19), 2455–2464.
- Brunner, E. J., Rees, K., Ward, K., Burke, M., & Thorogood, M. (2007). Dietary advice for reducing cardiovascular risk. *Cochrane Database System Reviews*, 4, CD002128.
- Howard, B. V., Van Horn, L., Hsia, J., Manson, J. E., Stefanick, M. L., Wassertheil-Smoller, S., et al. (2006). Low-fat dietary pattern and risk of cardiovascular disease: The women's health initiative randomized controlled dietary modification trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 295(6), 655–666.
- Knoops, K. T., de Groot, L. C., Kromhout, D., Perrin, A. E., Moreiras-Varela, O., Menotti, A., et al. (2004). Mediterranean diet, lifestyle factors, and 10-year mortality in elderly European men and women: The HALE project. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 292(12), 1433–1439.
- Lichtenstein, A. H., Appel, L. J., Brands, M., Carnethon, M., Daniels, S., Franch, H. A., et al. (2006). Diet and lifestyle recommendations revision 2006: A scientific statement from the American Heart Association Nutrition Committee. *Circulation*, 114(1), 82–96.
- Lloyd-Jones, D., Adams, R. J., Brown, T. M., Carnethon, M., Dai, S., De Simone, G., et al. (2010). Executive summary: Heart disease and stroke statistics-2010 update: A report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*, 121(7), 948–954.
- Lloyd-Jones, D. M., Larson, M. G., Beiser, A., & Levy, D. (1999). Lifetime risk of developing coronary heart disease. *The Lancet*, 353(9147), 89–92.
- Rugulies, R. (2002). Depression as a predictor for coronary heart disease. A review and meta-analysis. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 23(1), 51–61.
- Thompson, P. D., Franklin, B. A., Balady, G. J., Blair, S. N., Corrado, D., Estes, N. A., 3rd, et al. (2007). Exercise and acute cardiovascular events placing the risks into perspective: A scientific statement from the American Heart Association Council on Nutrition, Physical Activity, and Metabolism and the Council on Clinical Cardiology. *Circulation*, 115(17), 2358–2368.

Coronary Heart Disease (CHD)

► Heart Disease and Smoking

Coronary Vasoconstriction

Leah Rosenberg

Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Definition

Coronary vasoconstriction is the process by which vessels of the heart reduce their overall diameter. This functional capacity is mediated by a variety of intrinsic and extrinsic stimuli, and may be pathologic and life-threatening.

Description

There are a variety of means by which the arterial and venous flow of the heart are affected by the

overall circulating volume in the body. One crucial effector is the sympathetic nervous system, upregulated or suppressed in different situations. The sympathetic nervous system involves the secretion of the hormones epinephrine and norepinephrine from the adrenal medulla. Other important endogenous mediators include endothelin-1, serotonin, thromboxane, and prostaglandins (Rose and Post 2010).

Coronary Vasoconstriction in Acute Coronary Syndromes and Variant (Prinzmetal's) Angina

Acute coronary syndromes, a term encompassing unstable angina and myocardial infarction, are brought about by a variety of pathophysiological changes that include coronary vasoconstriction. Myocardial infarctions are clinical sequelae of plaque disruption and clot formation over the plaque. Other elements involve platelet activation, dysregulation of the coagulation system, imbalance of myocardial oxygen demand, and finally plaque rupture resulting in vessel occlusion and cell death (Gelfand et al. 2009). Coronary vasoconstriction, induced by local and circulating levels of vasoconstrictors, also contributes to ischemia or infarction.

Prinzmetal's angina is another clinical syndrome that involves coronary vasoconstriction without plaque disruption. Also referred to as variant angina, Prinzmetal's angina is primarily caused by vasospasm without plaque disruption and thrombus formation. While many Prinzmetal's patients also have atherosclerotic lesions, the clinical presentation and electrocardiogram changes are caused by functional narrowing from coronary vasoconstriction.

Coronary vasoconstriction is the central mechanism of myocardial infarction caused by cocaine. As an analogue of sympathetic outflow, cocaine that is smoked, injected, or inhaled may cause of type of transient vascular obstruction that can lead to myocardial infarction and result in death of the myocardium.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Arteries](#)
- ▶ [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- ▶ [Vasoconstriction](#)

References and Readings

- Gelfand, E. V., Gelfand, E., & Cannon, C. (2009). *Management of acute coronary syndromes*. London: Wiley.
- Rose, B., & Post, T. (2010). *Regulation of the effective circulating volume*. UpToDate Online 18.3.

Cortical Activity

- ▶ [Brain Wave](#)

Cortical Dementia

- ▶ [Alzheimer's Disease](#)
- ▶ [Dementia](#)

Corticosteroids

- ▶ [Glucocorticoids](#)

Corticotropin-Releasing Hormone (CRH)

Jennifer Heaney
Clinical Immunology Service, The University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

Definition

Corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) or corticotropin-releasing factor is a hormone that is

secreted by the hypothalamus. It is one of the hypothysiotropic hormones, a group of hormones produced by the hypothalamus that affect the anterior pituitary gland; CRH stimulates the secretion of adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) from the anterior pituitary. CRH plays a key role in the endocrine response to stress as it is involved in one of the initial stages of activation of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis (Martin et al. 1997).

CRH is not only produced in response to stress but exhibits a circadian rhythm of secretion across a 24-h period as a result of input from the central nervous system (Martin et al. 1977). Consequently, hormones that are produced in response to CRH (ACTH and cortisol) also demonstrate a circadian pattern of secretion (Greenspan and Forsham 1983).

Cross-References

► ACTH

References and Further Reading

- Greenspan, F. S., & Forsham, P. H. (1983). *Basic and clinical endocrinology*. Los Altos: Lange Medical Publications.
- Martin, J. B., Reichlin, S., & Brown, G. M. (1997). *Clinical neuroendocrinology*. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis.

Cortisol

Tobias Stalder¹ and Clemens Kirschbaum²

¹University Siegen, Siegen, Germany

²Department of Psychology, Faculty of Psychology, Technische Universität Dresden, Dresden, Germany

Definition

Cortisol (or “hydrocortisone”) is a steroid hormone and the major glucocorticoid in humans. It

is produced in the adrenal cortex and is predominantly regulated by the neuroendocrine hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis. Cortisol fulfills vital functions in the regulation of various homeostatic processes and is particularly well-known for its role in the body’s response to physical and psychological stress. This together with its high potency and ubiquitous effects make cortisol a hormone of prime interest for research in the area of behavioral medicine.

Description

Biosynthesis and Basic Characteristics

Cortisol is mainly synthesized and secreted from the *zona fasciculata* of the adrenal cortex. In addition, several extra-adrenal organs also produce smaller amounts of cortisol (e.g., thymus, intestine, brain, and skin) which are assumed to mainly act in a paracrine and autocrine mode (Talabér et al. 2013). The main precursor for the production of cortisol is cholesterol from which it is derived via two alternative paths involving several intermediate metabolic steps. As most other hormones, cortisol is secreted in a pulsatile fashion with marked circadian rhythmicity and a mean production rate ranging from 8 to 25 mg/day (mean: ~13 mg/day). Due to its relatively small size (molecular weight: 362.5 Da) and its lipophilic nature, cortisol is able to freely diffuse in and out of cells.

Cortisol in Blood and Tissue

Following its synthesis in the adrenal cortex, cortisol is secreted into the bloodstream where most of it binds to transport proteins. Approximately 70% of cortisol is bound to cortisol-binding globulin (CBG or transcortin) via high-affinity receptors. A further 15–20% of cortisol is bound to lower-affinity receptors of albumin, while an additional 5% is also bound to erythrocytes. Hence, only about 5–10% of cortisol circulates as an unbound or “free” hormone in the blood. Following the free hormone hypothesis (Mendel 1989), only this unbound cortisol fraction enters

target cells and is thus biologically active, while the larger part of bound cortisol serves as an inactive reservoir. It is assumed that mechanisms regulating circulating transport protein levels play an important role for the functional potency of the cortisol signal. Estimates of the biological half-life ($T_{1/2}$) of unbound cortisol in blood range from 60 to 115 min. The bioavailability of cortisol is thus relatively long compared to other stress-related hormones, such as the catecholamines, which have a $T_{1/2}$ of only a few minutes in blood.

The concentration of cortisol in blood does not necessarily correspond to its level in specific target tissues, which are markedly influenced by enzymatic conversion within cells. Here, two variants of the enzyme 11β -hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase (11β -HSD) are of particular importance. 11β -HSD type 1 predominates in adipose and hepatic tissue but is also found in the lungs, colon, testicles, ovaries, pituitary gland, and cerebellum. It converts inactive cortisone to active cortisol and thus has an amplifying effect on local cortisol action. This is assumed to play an important pathogenic role, e.g., in the development of obesity and the metabolic syndrome (Pereira et al. 2012). 11β -HSD type 2 is found in the kidneys, placenta, colon, pancreas, and salivary glands where it catalyzes the reverse reaction, i.e., converting cortisol to its inactive metabolite cortisone. Besides other roles, deficient cortisol inactivation by 11β -HSD type 2 in the placental barrier is assumed to be one potential mechanism by which adverse effects of maternal prenatal stress may be conveyed to the fetus (O'Donnell et al. 2009).

Physiological Actions

Mechanisms of Signal Transduction

Cortisol binds to two main types of receptors, the mineralocorticoid (MR) and glucocorticoid receptors (GR). These two receptors differ with regard to their affinity for cortisol with MRs showing a six to ten times higher affinity than GRs. As a result, about 90% of MRs are occupied

throughout the day, while higher GR occupancy is only reached at times of peak circadian cortisol secretion or during stress responses. Besides their affinity for cortisol, MRs and GRs also differ in their distribution pattern with cortisol-responsive MRs being predominantly located in the kidneys and limbic structures of the brain, while GRs are expressed widely throughout the brain as well as in peripheral tissues (de Kloet et al. 2005).

The “classical” mechanism of cortisol action comprises the genomic effects. Unbound cortisol is able to freely diffuse into cells where it binds to high-affinity receptors in the cytoplasm. While unoccupied receptors are guarded by heat-shock proteins, cortisol binding releases these proteins, which enables the cortisol-receptor complex to enter the cell nucleus. Here the complex binds to specific sites of the deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), referred to as glucocorticoid response elements, where it acts as a transcription factor to alter gene expression and eventually the cell's protein biosynthesis. Subsequently, the cortisol-receptor complex is transported back into the cytoplasm where it disintegrates. The cortisol molecule, which may have been structurally altered, then exits the cell into the extracellular space.

While the time course of genomic effects of cortisol is relatively slow, ranging from several minutes to hours, cortisol also affects cell function via faster non-genomic mechanisms. These mechanisms influence a wide range of intracellular processes and are important for many peripheral as well as central functions. Non-genomic cortisol action may be exerted by effects on lipids and proteins in the cell membrane and cytoplasm as well as membrane MR and GR, with the latter being assumed to play a particularly important role in coordinating the rapid adaptive response to stress (Groenenweg et al. 2012).

Effects of Cortisol

Cortisol has a wide range of effects on target tissues throughout the body. Within the human stress response, cortisol induces a complex array of adaptive changes (permissive, suppressive, stimulatory, and preparative) which are essential

for adjusting to challenges of homeostasis (Sapolsky et al. 2000). Importantly, while being adaptive at normal concentrations, many of the actions of cortisol can have deleterious effects at aberrant concentrations. Both over- and underproduction of cortisol have been implicated in the etiology of various diseases (Chrousos 2009).

Prenatal Effects: Fetal Organ Maturation

Fetal cortisol levels increase markedly toward term. It is assumed that this cortisol surge pre-delivery induces structural and functional maturation effects in fetal organs and is thus critical for a successful transition from intra- to extrauterine life (Fowden et al. 1998). Availability of sufficient cortisol is particularly vital for fetal lung development and induction of the pulmonary surfactant system (Garbrecht et al. 2006) but is also considered to affect maturation of the liver, kidney, gut, heart, adrenal, skin, and central nervous system. Based on these effects, antenatal glucocorticoid administration is widely used in women threatening preterm delivery, particularly to accelerate fetal lung maturation. However, besides such life-saving effects, there is also some indication that antenatal glucocorticoid administration may have adverse effects on aspects of fetal brain maturation.

Effects on Carbohydrate, Protein, and Lipid Metabolism

Cortisol is the primary glucocorticoid in humans, which hints to the fact that one of its pivotal functions lies in facilitating the mobilization of energy resources. It enhances gluconeogenesis in the liver and reduces glucose uptake into muscle and adipose tissue (by affecting the insulin-responsive glucose transport system), thus increasing the amount of circulating glucose. Through increasing glycogen synthase, cortisol also helps to maintain hepatic glycogen stores on which other hormones, like glucagon, can subsequently act to increase glucose levels. Cortisol also increases the breakdown of proteins stored in the muscle, bone, and connective tissue and inhibits protein synthesis in non-hepatic tissues

which increases the amount of amino acids available for gluconeogenesis. Importantly, while this catabolic action is physiologically beneficial at adequate cortisol concentrations, at excessive levels, it results in the depletion of protein stores which can manifest in symptoms such as thinning of the skin, reduced muscle mass, or osteoporosis. Cortisol also facilitates the mobilization of free fatty acids from fat depots which are released into the circulation and further support gluconeogenesis. Cortisol may also have stimulatory effects on appetite and calorie intake and leads to enhanced fat deposition in abdominal and facial areas. Under conditions of chronically elevated cortisol secretion, e.g., in Cushing's syndrome, this leads to a characteristic pattern of central adiposity, as well as fat depositions in the face ("moon face") and at the neck ("buffalo hump").

Effects on Electrolyte Metabolism

The effects of cortisol on sodium and water retention are considerably weaker than those of aldosterone, the primary mineralocorticoid hormone in humans. However, this lack in potency is outweighed by the approximately 200-fold higher concentrations of cortisol compared to aldosterone which indicates that cortisol also plays an important role in electrolyte metabolism.

Immunological Effects

Cortisol is the most potent endogenous immunosuppressive substance with strong anti-inflammatory effects. Virtually all steps involved in the local inflammatory response to injury, e.g., dilation of capillaries or tissue swelling, are inhibited by cortisol. It also decreases leukocyte recruitment and effectiveness at the site of inflammation. These effects of cortisol have long been recognized and used in anti-inflammatory drug treatments. Cortisol also profoundly suppresses the immune response to antigens, e.g., by reducing the number and activity of thymus-derived lymphocytes (T-cells). Cortisol also inhibits other components of the immune response such as cytokine synthesis, proliferation, and differentiation of monocytes as well as activity of

macrophages and natural killer cell. Besides systemic cortisol, locally produced cortisol may also play an important role in tissue-specific anti-inflammatory and immunosuppressive effects (Talabér et al. 2013).

Effects on Brain and Cognition

Cortisol is able to enter the brain where it affects a wide range of neuronal processes and cognitive functions. These actions are exerted both through the slower genomic pathway and through fast non-genomic effects which directly affect the responsiveness of neuronal networks. Cortisol interacts with the major neurotransmitter systems (including noradrenergic, serotonergic, dopaminergic and cholinergic, and GABAergic neurotransmission) as well as with neuropeptidergic systems, e.g., oxytocin and arginine vasopressin.

One of the best described effects of cortisol on cognitive functions is an enhancing influence on the encoding and consolidation of emotionally relevant information under arousing conditions (de Quervain et al. 2009). However, besides memory enhancement, acutely elevated cortisol levels are also associated with impaired memory retrieval, particularly of declarative memory, as well as with compromised working memory function. Despite the involvement of other brain regions (e.g., hippocampus and medial prefrontal cortex), close reciprocal interactions between cortisol and noradrenergic neurotransmission in the basolateral nucleus of the amygdala are assumed to be of particular importance for the modulation of these memory-related effects. Furthermore, a stimulatory influence of cortisol on psychological arousal has also been reported. Cortisol can also lead to increased amplitude and decreased latency of EEG event-related potentials and heightened EEG frequency.

In addition to such actions under normal cortisol concentrations, pharmacological administration of high doses of glucocorticoids has been associated with profound psychoactive effects (Lupien et al. 2007). These include the experience of psychiatric symptoms, such as depression, mania, and psychotic episodes, often collectively referred to as “steroid psychosis.” Interestingly,

during the initial phase of treatment, elevations of mood and euphoria are often seen, while dysphoric mood states and depression predominate with prolonged treatment. This is in line with the fact that Cushing’s syndrome, i.e., chronic endogenous or iatrogenic hypercortisolemia, is frequently associated with depression and/or other psychiatric symptoms, which usually subside with successful treatment. Importantly, chronic exposure to excessive amounts of cortisol has also been associated with hippocampal atrophy and cell death as well as with deficits in hippocampus-dependent cognitive functioning. This effect might play a particular role with regard to the cognitive decline often seen with older age.

Regulation

Overview

The synthesis and secretion of cortisol from the adrenal cortex is predominantly controlled by the neuroendocrine HPA axis, a signaling cascade involving the release of corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) and adrenocorticotropin hormone (ACTH) as well as numerous other substances, specifically neuropeptides. HPA axis activity and cortisol secretion occur in a pulsatile fashion with approximately 12–18 ultradian pulses per 24 h span. The concentration of circulating cortisol is determined by the frequency and amplitude of individual pulses. The release of cortisol via the HPA axis is under tight negative feedback control, with cortisol inhibiting its own secretion by downregulating CRH and ACTH levels.

Besides regulation via the HPA axis, there is also considerable evidence that ACTH and cortisol levels can dissociate under various conditions, suggesting additional extra-pituitary regulatory mechanisms. Here, sympathetic innervation of the adrenal gland via the splanchnic nerve is likely important. This pathway is assumed to modulate cortisol secretion by altering adrenal sensitivity to ACTH, both by intra-adrenal paracrine interactions and direct splanchnic innervation of the adrenal cortex (Bornstein et al. 2008).

Basal Secretion

The pulsatile secretion of cortisol is subject to considerable circadian variation: following a circadian nadir during the early night, mean cortisol levels show a strong increase during the second half of sleep. Upon morning awakening, an additional rise in cortisol levels for approximately 30–40 min post-awakening is seen (the “cortisol awakening response,” CAR; Stalder et al. 2016) which results in circadian peak levels being reached. Subsequently, cortisol levels show a gradual decline over the remainder of the day until they again reach nadir levels during the first half of sleep.

Response to Physiological and Psychological Stress

A prominent feature of cortisol secretion is its marked increase in response to both physiological as well as psychological stress. Regarding the former, cortisol responses have been found after intense exercise or hard physical work. For a significant cortisol response to occur under these conditions, exercise has to be highly intense or sustained with a maximum oxygen uptake ($\text{VO}_{2\text{max}}$) over 70%. The cortisol response to exercise shows no habituation after repeated exposure. In addition to exercise and intense physical work, a range of other physical conditions have been shown to result in cortisol responses, e.g., pain and physical trauma, hypoglycemia, hypoxemia, increased insulin levels, or consumption of a protein-rich meal.

It is now well established that cortisol secretion responds strongly to psychologically challenging conditions. The magnitude of this response is dependent on both characteristics of the stress-inducing situation and of the exposed individual. Situations containing both uncontrollable and social-evaluative elements tend to result in the strongest cortisol responses (Dickerson and Kemeny 2004). A wide range of psychological variables (e.g., appraisal of the situation, personality traits, coping and attributional style, perceived social support or adverse early life experiences), physiological factors (sex, age, or genetic predisposition), as well as previous stress

exposure (e.g., prenatal or early life stress) have been shown to influence the magnitude of the cortisol stress response (Foley and Kirschbaum 2010). Unlike the cortisol response to physiological challenge, the response to psychological stress shows considerable habituation following repeated exposure to the same stress-eliciting situation.

Measurement

Modern laboratory methods allow for rapid and economic cortisol determination in different matrices. Most frequently, cortisol levels are measured in blood, saliva, or urine which provides information on cortisol production over relatively short time intervals, in the range of minutes (blood, saliva) to hours (urine). A recent addition is the measurement of cortisol concentrations in hair which is assumed to reflect integrated cortisol secretion over periods of several months. In addition, quantifiable cortisol concentrations can also be found in other matrices (e.g., nails, sweat, extracellular fluid) which will not be covered further here.

Blood Plasma or Serum

The assessment of cortisol in blood (both plasma and serum) reflects acutely circulating concentrations and thus provides an approach for assessing momentary cortisol levels or dynamic changes in cortisol secretion (with repeated assessments). Importantly, blood contains both bound and unbound cortisol fractions (i.e., total cortisol) and their separation can be time-consuming and thus expensive. Consequently, blood cortisol assessments are not best suited for assessing the bioavailable hormone fraction. In addition, blood sampling bears a minor risk of infection and through its invasive nature may itself trigger cortisol reactions (Weckesser et al. 2014).

Saliva

Salivary cortisol also reflects acutely circulating hormone levels. However, as only unbound cortisol can passively diffuse into saliva, salivary

cortisol levels naturally reflect the free, biologically active hormone fraction. Importantly, the level of salivary cortisol is unrelated to salivary flow rate and shows only a minimal time lag of 1–2 min to plasma cortisol levels. In addition, saliva sampling is a noninvasive and generally well-accepted method which may easily be carried out under ambulatory conditions, thus conferring high ecological validity in behavioral research. Salivary cortisol assessments are thus increasingly used as the method of choice to determine acute levels of biologically active cortisol in human research (Kirschbaum and Hellhammer 1994).

A limitation relating to both blood and salivary assessments of cortisol is that single “spot samples” only reflect cortisol secretion during the acute sampling situation. Since many situational variables are known to influence cortisol secretion (see above), drawing conclusions regarding long-term cortisol secretion based on single cortisol assessments can be misleading.

Urine

A considerable amount of the secreted cortisol is excreted into urine, mostly in the form of urinary cortisol metabolites with a much smaller proportion being excreted as urinary free cortisol (UFF). Urinary glucocorticoid analyses are assumed to reflect integrated endocrine activity during the respective period of urine collection. Given this integrative nature, results obtained over an extended collection period (e.g., 12 or 24 h) are less influenced by momentary fluctuations in cortisol levels. Depending on the specific analyte(s), information on glucocorticoid secretion/adrenocortical activity (i.e., analysis of total urinary cortisol metabolites), bioactive cortisol levels (i.e., UFF analysis) or overall steroid hormone enzyme activity (i.e., analysis of specific metabolite relationships) may be derived (Remer et al. 2008).

Hair

The examination of endogenous cortisol concentrations in human hair has recently been introduced as a measure of long-term cortisol assessment. It is assumed that cortisol is incorporated into the hair shaft during hair growth. Hence,

the examination of cortisol levels in a specific hair segment is assumed to provide a retrospective index of integrated cortisol secretion over the respective period of hair growth. As hair grows approximately 1 cm/month, the examination of a 3 cm hair segment should reflect cumulative cortisol levels over a 3 month period. This largely extended window of time combined with the possibility to obtain *retrospective* information on cortisol secretion highlights hair cortisol analysis as a potentially important future tool in behavioral medicine research (Stalder and Kirschbaum 2012).

Cross-References

► Glucocorticoids

References and Further Reading

- Bornstein, S. R., Engeland, W. C., Ehrhart-Bornstein, M., & Herman, J. P. (2008). Dissociation of ACTH and glucocorticoids. *Trends in Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 19, 175–180.
- Chrousos, G.P. (2009). Stress and disorders of the stress system. *Nature Reviews Endocrinology*, 5, 374–381.
- De Kloet, E. R., Joëls, M., & Holsboer, F. (2005). Stress and the brain: From adaptation to disease. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 6, 463–475.
- De Quervain, D. J., Aerni, A., Schelling, G., & Roozendaal, B. (2009). Glucocorticoids and the regulation of memory in health and disease. *Frontiers in Neuroendocrinology*, 30, 358–370.
- Dickerson, S. S., & Kemeny, M. E. (2004). Acute stressors and cortisol responses: A theoretical integration and synthesis of laboratory research. *Psychological Bulletin*, 130, 355–391.
- Foley, P., & Kirschbaum, C. (2010). Human hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal axis responses to acute psychosocial stress in laboratory settings. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 35, 91–96.
- Fowden, A. L., Li, J., & Forhead, A. J. (1998). Glucocorticoids and the preparation for life after birth: Are there long-term consequences of the life insurance? *Proceedings of the Nutrition Society*, 57, 113–122.
- Garbrecht, M. R., Klein, J. M., Schmidt, T. J., & Snyder, J. M. (2006). Glucocorticoid metabolism in the human fetal lung: Implications for lung development and the pulmonary surfactant system. *Biology of the Neonate*, 89, 109–119.
- Groenenweg, F. L., Karst, H., de Kloet, E. R., & Joëls, M. (2012). Mineralocorticoid and glucocorticoid

receptors at the neuronal membrane, regulators of non-genomic corticosteroid signaling. *Molecular and Cellular Endocrinology*, 350, 299–309.

- Kirschbaum, C., & Hellhammer, D. H. (1994). Salivary cortisol in psychoneuroendocrine research – Recent developments and applications. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 19, 313–333.
- Lupien, S. J., Maheu, F., Tu, M., Fiocco, A., & Schramek, T. E. (2007). The effects of stress and stress hormones on human cognition: Implications for the field of brain and cognition. *Brain and Cognition*, 65, 209–237.
- Mendel, C. M. (1989). The free hormone hypothesis: A physiologically based mathematical model. *Endocrine Reviews*, 10, 232–274.
- O'Donnell, K., O'Connor, T. G., & Glover, V. (2009). Prenatal stress and neurodevelopment of the child: Focus on the HPA Axis and role of the placenta. *Developmental Neuroscience*, 31, 285–292.
- Pereira, C. D., Azevedo, I., Monteiro, R., & Martins, M. J. (2012). 11 beta-Hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 1: Relevance of its modulation in the pathophysiology of obesity, the metabolic syndrome and type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Diabetes, Obesity & Metabolism*, 14, 869–881.
- Remer, T., Maser-Gluth, C., & Wudy, S. A. (2008). Glucocorticoid measurements in health and disease – Metabolic implications and the potential of 24-h urine analyses. *Mini Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry*, 8, 153–170.
- Sapolsky, R. M., Romero, L. M., & Munck, A. U. (2000). How do glucocorticoids influence stress responses? Integrating permissive, suppressive, stimulatory, and preparative actions. *Endocrine Reviews*, 21, 55–89.
- Stalder, T., & Kirschbaum, C. (2012). Analysis of cortisol in hair – state of the art and future directions. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 26, 1019–1029.
- Stalder, T., Kirschbaum, C., Kudielka, B. M., Adam, E. K., Pruessner, J., Wüst, S., Dockray, S., Smyth, N., Evans, P., Hellhammer, D. H., Miller, R., Wetherell, M., Lupien, S., & Clow, A. (2016). Assessment of the cortisol awakening response: Expert consensus guidelines. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 63, 414–432.
- Talabér, G., Jondal, M., & Okret, S. (2013). Extra-adrenal glucocorticoid synthesis: Immune regulation and aspects on local organ homeostasis. *Molecular and Cellular Endocrinology*, 380, 89–98.
- Weckesser, L. J., Plessow, F., Pilhatsch, M., Muehlhan, M., & Miller, R. (2014). Do venepuncture procedures induce cortisol responses? A review, study, and synthesis for stress research. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 46, 88–99.

Cortisone

► Glucocorticoids

Cost Analysis

► Cost-Minimization Analysis

Cost Identification

► Cost-Minimization Analysis

Cost-Benefit Analysis (CBA)

► Benefit Evaluation in Health Economic Studies

Cost-Comparison Analysis

► Cost-Minimization Analysis

Cost-Effectiveness

Stephen Birch¹ and Amiram Gafni²

¹Clinical Epidemiology and Biostatistics (CHEPA), McMaster University, Hamilton, ON, Canada

²Department of Clinical Epidemiology and Biostatistics, Centre for Health Economics and Policy Analysis, McMaster University, Hamilton, ON, Canada

Definition

Cost-effectiveness is concerned with improving the performance of a health care system by ensuring the resources available to a health care system are used in their most productive way. This can only be achieved through careful consideration of the full consequences and opportunity costs of introducing a new health care program in the context or setting in which it is to be introduced. Appropriate evaluation methods must be

employed to accommodate this information and avoid simplifying assumptions that threaten the evaluation's validity.

Description

Economic evaluation has been defined as “ensuring that the value of what is gained from an activity outweighs the value of what has to be sacrificed” (Wiliams 1983). Hence, economic evaluation reflects the fundamental principles of economics that (1) resources are scarce, (2) choices are made between alternative uses of resources, and (3) a particular deployment of resources involves forgoing the benefits generated from alternative deployments of the same resources. Hence, it requires consideration of both outcome measurement and opportunity cost. Cost-Effectiveness Analysis (CEA) is the most common methodology of economic evaluation in health care, aimed at informing decision-makers faced with constrained resources. For a particular level of health care resources, which need not be the current level, the challenge is to choose from among all possible health care programs the combination of programs that maximizes total health benefits produce.

The theoretical basis for CEA derives from a decision-maker with a fixed budget choosing between many possible programs based on a comparison of the difference in effects between a program under consideration and the current way of serving the same patient population (incremental effects), and the difference in costs between the two programs (incremental costs). Where incremental costs and incremental effects have different signs, the solution is trivial, for example, the new program costs more (i.e., reduces resources available for other unrelated programs) and produces less effects than the current program. Similarly with negative incremental costs and positive incremental effects, a “win-win,” no substantial reflection is required. In most cases, however, a new intervention involves incremental effects and incremental costs with the same sign, for example, the intervention is more effective but costs more than the existing intervention. To provide the greater effects of the new treatment, the number of other unrelated

treatments must be reduced to release resources to support the additional costs of the new treatment. Here the decision-maker looks to the economist for “inputs” to the decision-making process – in particular decision rules for CEA.

The Decision Rules of CEA

The traditional analytical tool of CEA is the incremental cost-effectiveness ratio (ICER), the incremental cost of the new program divided by the incremental effects of the new program. Maximum health gain from available resources is produced under the following decision rules:

The league table rule: Select programs in ascending order of ICER (i.e., project with lowest ICER first) until available resources are exhausted.

The threshold ICER rule: Select programs with ICER less than or equal to λ , the shadow price of the budget.

Because ICERs have not been estimated for all programs currently delivered in health care systems, comprehensive league tables are not available and the league table rule cannot be followed. The threshold rule has provided the basis for economic evaluation guidelines in many jurisdictions. In each case the use of CEA is linked to addressing the problem of maximizing health improvements from available resources.

This solution is based on assumptions of perfect divisibility and constant returns to scale in all programs. Yet, such conditions do not hold generally in health care decision-making. One cannot divide up an investment to fit whatever budgetary amount is available. A manager must purchase an entire Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) machine, it is not divisible, it is all or nothing. Apart from such physical constraints on divisibility, some programs may not be divisible because of political or ethical constraints. It is ethically problematic to offer vaccination to only 50% of children. Increasing investment in a particular program may not produce proportionally equal increases in outcomes as program coverage expands from highest need/most severe patients to lesser need/severity groups. So the additional outcomes produced from investing resources in a

program may diminish with the scale of the program. Even if the program under evaluation does exhibit constant returns to scale the opportunity, cost of the program is likely to have non-constant returns in the sense that increased resource requirements for the new program mean the decision-maker has to “dig deeper” into his existing budget to fund it. After resources from the least productive current program have been exhausted he must look to other more productive programs meaning that the marginal opportunity cost of the program increases with size.

Because decision-makers are faced with choices between programs of different sizes, and the opportunity costs of programs depend crucially on program size, the different programs are not directly comparable. The ICER is the *average cost per Quality Adjusted Life Year (QALY)* or the inverse of the average rate of return on additional investments required by a program. Comparisons of ICERs across programs ignore problems introduced by the different sizes of programs. They do not compare like with like. Moreover, decision-makers cannot purchase individual units of QALYs. Each program produces a “package” of QALYs, and the average price per QALY may differ by program size. Consequently the ICER threshold decision-rule is not sufficient to maximize health effects from available resources. There is no theoretical justification for asserting that the strategy with the lowest cost-effectiveness ratio is the most desirable one.

To adopt the threshold ICER approach in the absence of the theoretical assumptions requires an unspecified supply of resources with constant marginal opportunity cost. Anything further from the reality of decision-making is hard to imagine.

Even if the assumptions are accepted for the purposes of the theoretical model, the problem of determining a threshold remains. Under the model, the threshold is given by the opportunity cost of the marginal program funded from available resources. This is determined by constructing the ICER league table, but requires information on the incremental costs and effects of *all* possible programs. Hence, the threshold value required to make decisions that produce the maximization of health gains from available resources cannot be determined even if the theoretical assumptions hold.

Extending Economic Evaluation to Identify Efficiency Improvements

For an intervention to represent an efficient use of resources the additional effects it generates must exceed the effects forgone from the most productive alternative use of the same resources. Hence, efficiency cannot be established only by reference to the resources required and outcomes produced by a particular intervention. Information on alternative uses of those resources is also needed and so efficiency is context-specific. Even where incremental costs and effects of an intervention are identical in different settings, it does not mean the efficiency of that intervention is the same in all settings.

If economics is to inform decision-makers about the efficiency of investments, traditional approaches to CEA and the use of ICERs are insufficient. Mathematical approaches to constrained maximization, such as integer programming (IP), solve the decision-maker's problem and are the only universal approach to ranking programs according to efficiency under a resource constraint. The key requirement of the IP approach is that the specification of the problem (i.e., objective function and constraints) must accurately reflect the decision-maker's problem setting.

The substantial data requirements of the IP approach, specifically the incremental costs and effects of all programs together with the resources available for investment, may be difficult to satisfy. However, these requirements reflect the complex nature of the decision-maker's problem.

An alternative practical approach is available (Birch and Gafni 1992; Gafni and Birch 1993) which satisfies a modified objective of an unambiguous increase in health improvements from available resources (i.e., an objective of improving, as opposed to maximizing, efficiency). This requires that the health improvements of the proposed program be compared with the health improvements produced by that combination of programs that have to be given up to generate sufficient funds for the proposed program. Only where the health improvements of the proposed program exceed the health improvements of the combination of programs to be given up does the new technology represent an improvement in

the efficiency of resource utilization. The approach does not rely on an arbitrarily determined threshold value to ascertain the efficiency of the program, nor is it dependent on unrealistic assumptions about perfect divisibility and constant returns to scale. Instead, the source of additional resource requirements is identified and the implications of canceling programs to generate these resources form part of the analysis. Iterative application of this efficiency-improving approach would eventually lead to efficiency maximization as opportunities to further improve efficiency are exhausted.

Concern with maximizing health improvements from available resources may be just one of several objectives that decision-makers face. For example, political considerations associated with providing equal access to services and providing greater priority to health improvements of specific population groups may be important goals. However, the presence of multiple objectives and constraints does not reduce the importance of adopting a constrained maximization model as the basis for analysis. It remains important that whatever goals are identified, these must be pursued efficiently in order to avoid wasting resources. The explicit identification of each objective and constraint enables the full range of policy concerns to be incorporated systematically into the analysis. Hence, the complex objectives faced by decision-makers, far from limiting the role of economic analysis, represent precisely the challenges that the economic model of constrained maximization is intended to accommodate.

Cross-References

► [Benefit Evaluation in Health Economic Studies](#)

References and Further Readings

- Birch, S., & Gafni, A. (1992). Cost-effectiveness/utility analyses: Do current decision rules lead us to where we want to be? *Journal of Health Economics*, 11, 279–296.
- Birch, S., & Gafni, A. (2003). Economics and the evaluation of health care programmes: Generalisability of methods and implications for generalisability of results. *Health Policy*, 64, 207–219.

- Birch, S., & Gafni, A. (2006a). Decision rules in economic evaluation. In A. Jones (Ed.), *The Elgar companion to health economics* (pp. 492–502). Cheltenham: Edward Elgar.
- Birch, S., & Gafni, A. (2006b). The biggest bang for the buck or bigger bucks for the bang: The fallacy of the cost-effectiveness threshold. *Journal of Health Services Research and Policy*, 11, 46–51.
- Drummond, M. (1980). *Principles of economic appraisal in health care*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Drummond, M., Sculpher, M., Torrance, G., O'Brien, B., & Stoddart, G. (2005). *Methods for the economic evaluation of health care programmes*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Gafni, A., & Birch, S. (1993). Guidelines for the adoption of new technology: A potential prescription for uncontrolled growth in expenditures and how to avoid it. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 148, 913–917.
- Gafni, A., & Birch, S. (2006). Incremental cost-effectiveness ratios (ICERs): The silence of the lambda. *Social Science and Medicine*, 62, 2091–2100.
- Weinstein, M., & Zeckhauser, R. (1973). Foundations of cost effectiveness analysis for health and medical practices. *Journal of Public Economics*, 2, 147–157.
- Williams, A. (1983). The economic role of health indicators. In G. Teeling-Smith (Ed.), *Measuring the social benefits of medicine* (pp. 63–67). London: Office of Health Economics.

Cost-Effectiveness Analysis

► [eHealth Cost-Effectiveness](#)

Cost-Effectiveness Analysis (CEA)

► [Benefit Evaluation in Health Economic Studies](#)

Cost-Minimization Analysis

Alejandra Duenas
School of Management, IESEG, Paris, France

Synonyms

Cost analysis; Cost identification; Cost-comparison analysis

Definition

This term refers to an economic evaluation tool. Cost-minimization analysis is mostly applied in the health sector and is a method used to measure and compare the costs of different medical interventions. The principal limitations of this cost evaluation method are that it can only be used to compare treatments that provide the same benefits or effectiveness (identical outcomes, e.g., therapeutic effects); moreover, costs need to be determined accurately. In this way, a decision maker can choose the treatment with the lowest total cost. The assessment of costs is performed by identifying the study's perspective, all the resources used, and quantifying them into physical units. The most common perspectives are societal perspective (includes all costs incurred by health care services, social services, patients, and society in general) and third-party payer perspective (includes the costs incurred by an insurance company, a government, etc.). In order to quantify the resources used, a physical unit is defined, such as the number of hospital days, the time that a nurse spends with a patient, number of doctors' visits, etc. Once the units are defined and quantified, they are translated to costs by multiplying the unit costs by the number of units used.

The use of this tool is rather limited as it is difficult to demonstrate that the efficacy of two or more interventions is equivalent. A common application of cost-minimization analysis is the comparison of generic drugs in order to achieve market approval. Some experts consider that cost-minimization analysis is no longer useful (Briggs and O'Brien 2001) and, furthermore, that other economic evaluation methods such as cost-utility, cost-benefit, and cost-effectiveness analyses are more comprehensive, given that they allow for the comparison of interventions with different effectiveness outcomes and the incorporation of uncertainty.

Cross-References

- [Cost-Effectiveness Analysis \(CEA\)](#)

References and Readings

- Briggs, A. H., & O'Brien, B. J. (2001). The death of cost-minimization analysis? *Health Economics*, 10(2), 179–184.
- Kobelt, G. (2002). *Health economics: An introduction to economic evaluation* (2nd ed.). London: Office of Health Economics.

Cost-Utility Analysis (CUA)

- [Benefit Evaluation in Health Economic Studies](#)

Couple Therapy

- [Couple-Focused Therapy](#)
- [Therapy, Family and Marital](#)

Couple-Focused Therapy

Beate Ditzen¹ and Tanja Zimmermann²

¹Department of Psychosocial Medicine, Heidelberg University, Heidelberg, Germany

²Department of Clinical Psychology, Psychotherapy and Diagnostics, University of Braunschweig, Braunschweig, Germany

Synonyms

[Couple therapy](#); [Marital therapy](#); [Marriage counseling](#)

Definition

Couple-focused therapy (CFT) is a psychological therapy with the focus of attention on the relationship between two individuals rather than on one individual. The aim of CFT is to enable a better level of functioning in couples – married or unmarried – who are experiencing distress in their relationship. Couples may seek CFT for a

variety of reasons, such as distress in terms of finances, sexuality, communication, infidelity, or individual psychopathology as well as physical health problems with an impact for the couple. Consequently, CFT will differ according to the respective relationship problems. Moreover, couple interventions may also vary based on the phase of the relationship during which they occur: Whereas primary prevention programs or couple education (e.g., the Prevention and Relationship Enhancement Program, PREP, from Howard Markman) might be offered for prevention of future distress relatively early in the relationship, CFT is usually called for when severe problems are present.

In general, the first step of CFT is to identify the areas of dissatisfaction in the relationship, and to implement a treatment plan to which both partners are willing to agree. Based on this treatment plan, therapy sessions will differ according to the chosen model or the philosophy behind the therapy. In the following, some of the best-known approaches will be briefly characterized.

Behavior-Focused Therapy

Traditionally, behavior-focused therapy is based on the idea that both partners (possibly involuntarily) tend to reward and punish specific behaviors during the development of their relationship. Consequently, this behavior exchange is an important treatment focus (e.g., by providing encouragement of positive behavior) in behavioral couple therapy.

Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy

With its roots in behavioral therapy, cognitive-behavioral CFT has enriched the focus on behavior with the perspective on couples' beliefs regarding the relationship. Therapists aim at questioning and modulating presumptions about the positive (or more often negative) motives of each partner and thereby try to prevent negative behavior.

Psychoanalytical Therapy

Psychoanalytical CFT attempts to discover early developmental conflicts in relation to the present interpersonal interactions within the couple. In

this approach, couples are thought to be able to improve their relationship through a better understanding of how early parent-child interactions might influence later behavior in adulthood.

Emotion-Focused Therapy

As indicated by the name, the main emphasis in emotion-focused CFT is on the identification and expression of emotional needs in the couple relationship. In particular, the expressions of underlying feelings are supposed to change the perception of the partner and motivate behavior change.

Integrative Therapy

In a number of more recent approaches, researchers have combined a variety of treatment strategies within a consistent theoretical framework, resulting in integrated treatment models (among others the Enhanced Cognitive-Behavioral Couple Therapy by Epstein and Baucom (2003), or the Integrative Behavioral Couple Therapy by Jacobson and Christensen (1998); also see Snyder (1999), Snyder, Castellani, and Whisman (2006)).

CFT programs are broadly evaluated treatment options with effect sizes in the range of $d = 0.72$ for communication and relationship satisfaction, whereas in comparison typically no changes in marital quality in untreated couples are observed (Baucom et al. 2003). However, it should be noted that CFT is no guarantee that the relationship will improve, and there are couples who might benefit more from ending their relationship than from continuing it. This makes the overall evaluation of CFT a challenging topic in behavioral medicine (cf., Christensen et al. 2005).

Cross-References

- [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- [Marital Therapy](#)

References and Readings

- Baucom, D. H., Hahlweg, K., & Kuschel, A. (2003). Are waiting-list control groups needed in future marital

- therapy outcome research? *Behavior Therapy*, 34, 179–188.
- Christensen, A., Baucom, D. H., Vu, C. T., & Stanton, S. (2005). Methodologically sound, cost-effective research on the outcome of couple therapy. *Journal of Family Psychology*, 19(1), 6–17.
- Epstein, N. B., & Baucom, D. H. (2003). *Enhanced cognitive-behavioral therapy for couples*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Jacobson, N. S., & Christensen, A. (1998). *Acceptance and change in couple therapy: A therapist's guide to transforming relationships*. New York: Norton.
- Snyder, D. K. (1999). Affective reconstruction in the context of a pluralistic approach to couples therapy. *Clinical Psychology: Science and Practice*, 6(4), 348–365.
- Snyder, D. K., Castellani, A. M., & Whisman, M. A. (2006). Current status and future directions in couple therapy. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 57, 317–344.

Covariance Components Model

► Hierarchical Linear Modeling (HLM)

Co-workers

Karen Jacobs¹, Miranda Hellman², Jacqueline Markowitz¹ and Ellen Wuest²

¹Occupational Therapy, College of Health and Rehabilitation Science, Sargent College, Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

²Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

Associate; Collaborator; Colleague

Definition

A co-worker is a person who a worker works with, in their role as worker. Co-workers can share their knowledge and expertise when others are faced with problems or novel situations; this can be

especially useful when alternative solutions are not readily accessible. The co-worker relationship can also have effects on workplace dynamics, individual stress level, and relationships. Positive relationships between co-workers can be seen as supportive and beneficial in dealing with day-to-day problems and strains arising from employment (Deery et al. 2010), and positive relationships can increase job satisfaction, job involvement, and organizational commitment (Dur and Sol 2008). This supportive relationship may be more likely to occur in interactionally intense and high stress settings and can help one cope with high job demands. The pace and intensity for the work can be regulated through collaboration between co-workers, and workplace norms are often established through co-worker interaction and collaboration (Deery et al. 2010).

Co-worker relationships can be influenced by a variety of personality traits. Matching co-workers into groups based on these personality traits can lead to strong group cohesion and can create an effective team (Tett and Murphy 2002). Additionally, supportive and positive co-workers can promote an environment where new ideas are easily and comfortably discussed, which also has positive impacts on the group (Joiner 2007). Conversely, a mismatch of personality traits can have negative impacts on group dynamics (Tett and Murphy 2002).

Cross-References

► Communication, Nonverbal

References and Further Readings

- Deery, S. J., Iverson, R. D., & Walsh, J. T. (2010). Coping strategies in call centres: Work intensity and the role of co-workers and supervisors. *British Journal of Industrial Relations*, 48, 181–200. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-8543.2009.00755.x>.
- Dur, R., & Sol, J. (2008). *Social interaction, co-worker altruism, and incentives*. Amsterdam: Tinbergen Institute.
- Joiner, T. (2007). Total quality management and performance: The role of organization support and co-worker support. *International Journal of Quality and*

Reliability Management, 24, 617–627. <https://doi.org/10.1108/02656710710757808>.

Tett, R. P., & Murphy, P. J. (2002). Personality and situations in co-worker preference: Similarity and complementarity in worker compatibility. *Journal of Business Psychology*, 17, 223–243.

C-Reactive Protein (CRP)

Jet J. C. S. Veldhuijzen van Zanten
School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation
Sciences, University of Birmingham,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

Acute phase proteins; Inflammatory markers

Definition

C-reactive protein (CRP) is an important protein of the acute-phase response, which is a non-specific physiological and biochemical response to infection, inflammation, and tissue damage. Increases in CRP are found during infection, chronic inflammatory diseases, and following a myocardial infarction. Strenuous exercise and psychological stress can also induce increases in CRP, albeit to a lesser extent compared to the physiologically more traumatic events described above. Therefore, levels of CRP can be reflective of both acute and chronic inflammation (Gabay and Kushner 1999).

The CRP molecule consists of five calcium-binding nonglycosylated protomers in a pentameric symmetry. CRP is mainly produced by hepatocytes, even though other sources have also been reported. The production is stimulated by cytokines, which are released under the influence of the macrophages and monocytes at the site of the inflammation. Interleukin (IL)-6 has been shown to be most important for CRP production, but other cytokines, such as IL-1, tumor necrosis factor-alpha, interferon gamma, as well as

glucocorticoids, can also play a role. Interestingly, specific combinations of these factors can both enhance as well as inhibit CRP production (Gabay and Kushner 1999; Pepys and Hirschfield 2003).

The function of CRP is to restore normal structure and function of the tissue that has been affected. CRP recognizes and mediates the elimination of pathogens through activation of the complement system (Gabay and Kushner 1999; Pepys and Hirschfield 2003). Even though the aim of the initial increase in CRP is to combat infection and acute inflammation, chronically raised levels have been associated with negative effects for health. Particular attention has been paid to the association between high levels of CRP and increased risk for atherosclerosis and cardiac events; high levels of CRP have been implicated in the pathogenesis, progression, and complications of atherosclerotic plaques (Ridker 2004).

CRP can be readily assessed in serum using commercially available (high-sensitivity) assays. As the clearance rate of CRP remains stable, the increases in serologically determined CRP are indicative of CRP production. Following the stimulus, it takes on approximately 6 h until an increase is detectable in the serum. The half-life of CRP is less than 24 h.

Cross-References

- Biomarkers
- Cardiovascular Risk Factors
- Inflammation

References and Further Reading

- Gabay, C., & Kushner, I. (1999). Acute-phase proteins and other systemic responses to inflammation. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 340, 448–454.
- Pepys, M. B., & Hirschfield, G. M. (2003). C-reactive protein: A critical update. *Journal of Clinical Investigation*, 111, 1805–1812.
- Ridker, P. M. (2004). High-sensitivity C-reactive protein, inflammation, and cardiovascular risk: From concept to clinical practice to clinical benefit. *American Heart Journal*, 148, S19–S26.

Crohn's Disease (CD)

Jost Langhorst¹ and Anna K. Koch²

¹Department for Internal and Integrative Medicine, Klinikum Bamberg, Bamberg, Germany

²University of Duisburg-Essen, Essen, Germany

Crohn's disease is a chronic inflammatory disorder which can affect the entire gastrointestinal (GI) tract. It is a global disease with the highest prevalence in Europe and North America (>0.3%). The incidence is stable or decreasing in western countries and increasing in newly industrialized countries (Ng et al. 2017). Crohn's disease is most commonly located in the terminal ileum and the proximal colon but may involve any part of the GI tract. The inflammations generally appear in outlined sections, affect all laminae of the intestinal wall, and cause abscesses and fistulae. Many patients also experience extraintestinal manifestations (Levine and Burakoff 2011). Key symptoms of Crohn's disease are persistent diarrhea, abdominal pain, fever, weight loss, and rectal bleeding (Gomollon et al. 2017). The course of the disease can be described with recurrent relapses and symptom-free intervals, both of which varying in length and strength. A barrier defect, impaired and inappropriate immune responses in genetically susceptible individuals to microbial antigens of commensal microorganisms are discussed for pathogenesis. Data on expression suggest that macrophages and epithelial cells could be the locus of the primary pathophysiological defect and that T-cell activation might be a secondary effect inducing chronification of the inflammation, presumably as backup mechanism to insufficient innate immunity. Genetic predisposition, ethnicity, recent infectious gastroenteritis, smoking behavior, nutrition habits, and enhanced drug intake are discussed as further risk or modulating factors (Gomollon et al. 2017). The precise etiology is unknown, and therefore no causal therapy is currently available for Crohn's disease (Gomollon et al. 2017).

Though not curable, glucocorticoids, aminosalicylates, antibiotics, immunomodulatory substances, enteral (specific diets) or parenteral feeding (under avoidance of the digestive tract), and surgical procedures can alleviate symptoms' severity. Ninety percent of the patients concerned have to undergo surgery at least once in their lifetime, and every second patient will require repeated surgery (Gomollon et al. 2017).

Due to a lack of well-designed randomized controlled trials in the field of behavioral medicine, only insufficient evidence is available so far to make firm conclusions about the efficacy of different psychotherapeutic treatment options for induction of remission in Crohn's disease.

Neither any specific personality traits nor any family structures in correlation with the occurrence of Crohn's disease have hitherto been clearly identified. Although a causal relationship with critical life events and/or stress has not been established so far, it can impact the course of disease. Crohn's disease can create an immense burden on patients and is a critical strain on patients and relatives. Reactive psychological changes in active disease including higher values of depression, anxiety, and/or emotional instability are consequently strongly represented. From the point of view of behavioral medicine, a behavioral therapy is thus as reasonable as for any other severe chronic disease without cure. Besides psychotherapy (behavioral, conflict-oriented, psychodynamic, or supportive), relaxation techniques as well as stress management training are useful in conjunction with the mere medicinal interventions. Such interventions do often not directly affect the course of the disease, but patients' mental condition and illness-related quality of life might be improved (Gracie et al. 2017; Boye et al. 2011).

References and Further Reading

- Boye, B., Lundin, K. E., Jantschek, G., et al. (2011). INSPIRE study: Does stress management improve the course of inflammatory bowel disease and disease-specific quality of life in distressed patients with ulcerative colitis or Crohn's disease? A randomized

- controlled trial. *Inflammatory Bowel Diseases*, 17, 1863–1873.
- Gomollon, F., Dignass, A., Annesse, V., et al. (2017). 3rd European evidence-based consensus on the diagnosis and Management of Crohn's disease 2016: Part 1: Diagnosis and medical management. *Journal of Crohn's & Colitis*, 11, 3–25.
- Gracie, D. J., Irvine, A. J., Sood, R., et al. (2017). Effect of psychological therapy on disease activity, psychological comorbidity, and quality of life in inflammatory bowel disease: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *The Lancet Gastroenterology & Hepatology*, 2, 189–199.
- Levine, J. S., & Burakoff, R. (2011). Extraintestinal manifestations of inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology & Hepatology*, 7, 235–241.
- Ng, S. C., Shi, H. Y., Hamidi, N., et al. (2017). Worldwide incidence and prevalence of inflammatory bowel disease in the 21st century: A systematic review of population-based studies. *The Lancet*, 390, 2769–2778.

Cross-Border Reproductive Care

► Surrogacy

Cross-Cultural Cohort Study

► Multiethnic Cohort Study

Crossover Design

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Repeated measures design](#)

Definition

Subjects in a crossover design study are assigned to receive two or more treatments in a particular

sequence. Imagine a study in which some subjects receive Treatment A on a given day (the first period) and a week later receive Treatment B (the second period). Others subjects (usually close to an equal number) would receive Treatment B first and then, 1 week later, receive Treatment A. Such a study would be described as having a two-period, two-treatment, two-sequence crossover design. Crossover designs can involve various numbers of treatments, sequences, and periods. In these designs, individual subjects are randomized to treatment sequences (as opposed to treatment groups as occurs in parallel groups study designs).

The primary advantage of the crossover design is that each subject serves as his or her own control, providing data in each treatment arm of the study. The design also has some disadvantages, one of which can be difficulty in interpreting the results. Since all subjects receive more than one treatment there can be a carryover effect from one or more early periods to subsequent periods, leading to a biased estimate of the treatment effect(s) of interest.

Cross-References

- [Bias](#)
- [Parallel Group Design](#)
- [Randomization](#)

Cross-Sectional Study

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

A cross-sectional study describes a group of subjects at one particular point in time (Campbell et al. 2007).

All study designs and methodologies have advantages and disadvantages. The randomized controlled trial, which is placed at the top of the Hierarchy of Evidence by some researchers and therefore is considered a very strong source of evidence, has some disadvantages: They are lengthy, expensive, and may be limited in how well results from them can be generalized to the treatment's effect in the general population in real-world clinical circumstances.

The cross-sectional study is usually comparatively quick and easy to conduct. Examples of its implementation include the use of an interview survey and conducting a mass screening program. Additional advantages are that many risk factors can be studied at the same time, and that they are suitable for studying rare diseases. Disadvantages include the following:

- Only one disease outcome can be studied at once.
- Temporal relationships can be difficult to identify. Since the survey provides a snapshot of information at one time, it is not possible to address the issue of which item of interest that is currently present may have caused (influenced) another item that is also currently present.
- The selection of control subjects can be problematic.
- From a statistical perspective, only relative risk can be obtained.
- Focusing on the subjects, lack of recall and recall bias can be of concern.
- Data derived from these studies cannot meaningfully be used to test the effectiveness of an intervention, i.e., they are not good for answering research questions. Nonetheless, they may be useful for generating hypotheses (asking questions) that can subsequently be further investigated in randomized controlled trials.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Absolute Risk](#)
- ▶ [Hierarchy of Evidence](#)
- ▶ [Randomized Controlled Trial](#)
- ▶ [Relative Risk](#)

References and Further Reading

- Campbell, M. J., Machin, D., & Walters, S. J. (2007). *Medical statistics: A textbook for the health sciences* (4th ed.). Chichester: Wiley.

CT Scan

- ▶ [CAT Scan](#)
- ▶ [Computerized Axial Tomography \(CAT\) Scan](#)

Cultural and Ethnic Differences

Sana Loue
Department of Epidemiology and Biostatistics,
Case Western Reserve University, School of
Medicine, Cleveland, OH, USA

Definition

The recognition of culture and its components as a complex and fluid process, rather than a static construct, is critical to attempts to understand the cultural influences on health and health behavior; culture cannot be reduced to a single variable or construct.

Twelve features are essential to an understanding of a culture: history, social status, points of interaction within and between social groups, value orientations, verbal and nonverbal language and communication processes, family life processes, healing beliefs and practices, religion and religious practices, art and other forms of expression, dietary preferences and practices, recreational forms, and manner and style of dress (Hogan-Garcia 2003). The subjective components of culture, such as beliefs, values, and explanatory cognitive frameworks, are communicated both verbally and nonverbally; the objective component of culture consists of rules relating to individual and group behavior (Hogan-Garcia 2003).

Culture is constructed by and exists and operates at the levels of the individual and the group and changes over time (Nagel 1994). Individuals who ascribe to a particular culture share an identity and a framework for understanding the world.

Too often, culture is erroneously assumed to be synonymous with ethnicity. However, ethnicity and culture represent quite different concepts. Ethnicity is a function of both one's self-identification and the identification by others of membership in a specific group based on specific characteristics, such as biological characteristics, nationality, language, and/or religion (Yinger 1994); it is a function of both cultural history and psychological identity (Melville 1988). Like culture, one's ethnic identity may change due to changes in one's self-perception and the social context in which one lives. Additionally, individuals may claim membership in various cultures and/or ethnicities simultaneously, and may prioritize these memberships differently depending on any variety of circumstances. As an example, an individual may simultaneously consider herself Polish, Russian, Christian, nondenominational, female, and American.

The concept of ethnicity has also been used confused in the literature with the concept of race. Like ethnicity, the concept of race has been used to explain perceived differences in appearance and behavior across individuals and groups, based on the erroneous assumption that each race is associated with distinct, fixed physical and behavioral characteristics. However, the definition of race, the classification of individuals by race, and the meaning or significance associated with a particular designation have varied over time, place, and purpose of designation, both in the United States and elsewhere (Loue 2006). Additionally, shifting perceptions of self-identity and self-worth may also influence how an individual self-designates at any particular time and place. Unfortunately, epidemiological literature has frequently confused ethnicity and culture and race by equating ethnicity with country of origin and/or skin color and culture with ethnicity or race, based upon the assumption that any

observed differences seen between groups are the result of true and fixed genetic or cultural differences between the groups (Karlsen 2004).

Additionally, reference to a particular culture, ethnicity, or race assumes and implies homogeneity within the classification being used. However, within every group, differences exist with respect to socioeconomic status, religion, age, understandings of health and illness, educational and employment opportunities, social status and power, and access to services. It is important to recognize that although classifications based on culture and ethnicity may be useful as a shorthand, they are not unitary constructs. A full understanding of the mechanisms that may underlie health disparities requires a more in-depth understanding that is possible only through the examination of the relevant constitutive elements.

The politics of HIV/AIDS illustrates the confusion that often surrounds culture, ethnicity, and race. The human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), the causative agent of AIDS, is transmitted through the exchange of various bodily fluids, such as semen, vaginal fluid, breast milk, and blood. Approximately 1 year after the identification of the first observed cases of the disease, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) labeled Haitians a "risk group," meaning that anyone who was Haitian was believed to be at increased risk of contracting and transmitting the virus by virtue of their group membership, rather than as a function of their individual behaviors (Schiller et al. 1994). Here, individuals' ethnicity and race were presumed to be congruent with culture and "culture" was presumed to be a factor in disease transmission. Ironically, this categorization of all Haitians as a risk group reflects US biomedical culture with respect to its understanding at the time of disease process and the meanings of culture, ethnicity, and race.

Description

Culture influences almost every aspect of illness, including how an illness is identified, defined, and

made meaningful; the timing and onset of the illness; the symptomatology; the course and outcome of the illness; how individuals, families, providers, and others respond to an experience of the illness; and how individuals seek, utilize, and respond to treatment (Kleinman 1988). It is beyond the scope of this entry to review the role of culture in each of these aspects across all diseases. Instead, the role of culture as it relates to disease diagnosis, symptomatology, and treatment is examined in the context of several chronic diseases.

As an example, the prevalence of bipolar disorder appears to vary across cultures. Bipolar disorder is a serious, chronic mental illness characterized by manic and depressive episodes (Type I) or hypomanic episodes and major depressive recurrences (Type II). The disorder is associated with impairments in the quality of life, increased rates of suicide, and high financial costs. However, the prevalence of bipolar disorder varies across countries. The consumption of omega-3 fatty acids found in seafood appears to serve a protective effect for individuals who consume large quantities of seafood over their lives, suggesting that nutritional habits play a role in the development of the disease (Noaghiul and Hibbeln 2003).

Cultural aspects are also implicated in the symptomatology and management of bipolar disorder. The manic phase of bipolar disorder is characterized by an “excessive involvement in activities,” that often assumes the form of sexual indiscretions and buying sprees. However, how this excessive involvement manifests may have to be reformulated so as to be consistent with the cultural context in which the individual lives. Clinicians who are unfamiliar with the client’s culture may erroneously interpret the client’s behavior as symptomatic of bipolar disorder when it is not, or may erroneously ascribe behavior to cultural influences when the behavior actually indicates the presence of bipolar disorder. Similar diagnostic errors have been noted in the context of schizophrenia. The overdiagnosis of schizophrenia among African Americans has

been attributed in part to providers’ lack of cultural understanding and their consequent misinterpretation of cultural mistrust as paranoia and miscommunications between the provider and the patient. Too, clinicians unfamiliar with the client’s culture may be more likely to prescribe or to refrain from prescribing particular pharmacologic treatments based on misunderstandings of the client’s behavior.

Culture also plays a role in the prevalence, experience, and course of epilepsy. Epilepsy is a brain disorder that is characterized by a predisposition to generate seizures, with neurobiological, cognitive, psychological, and social consequences. Research findings indicate that the prevalence of the disorder is higher in developing countries compared to more developed countries (Mac et al. 2007). In some cultures and religious groups, such as some Asian Indian and Muslim communities, consanguineous marriages, that is, between blood relatives such as first cousins, is customary. Parental consanguinity had been found to be associated with an increased risk of certain forms of epilepsy. It is important to recognize, however, that not all Asian Indian and Muslims enter into consanguineous marriages and some individuals who are neither Asian Indian nor Muslim may do so.

Individuals may search for an explanation for their seizures, which are often unpredictable and may be uncontrollable. Explanatory models of epilepsy differ across cultures. Individuals from Western developed nations are more likely to ascribe to a biomedical model of the disease, whereas individuals of other cultural backgrounds may attribute the cause of epilepsy to witchcraft, divine punishment, bad luck, or supernatural forces (Allotey and Reidpath 2007; Mac et al. 2007). The existence of such vast differences in beliefs regarding the causation of the illness between a patient and a provider may seriously impede communication and adversely affect their ability to work together to control the seizures (Reynolds 2000). The beliefs that individuals hold regarding their illness also have implications for their willingness to adhere to prescribed

treatment, the extent to which they utilize alternative treatments, and their daily functioning. Individuals who believe that their illness lasts only as long as their seizure lasts may refuse to take medication on an ongoing basis, resulting in an inability to control the seizures. Alternative treatments, such as smoke inhalation, herbal preparations, and dietary treatments, may be sought; some of these may be toxic, leading to additional illness. Daily functioning may be limited, not because of the effects of the epilepsy itself, but because individuals and even their health care providers may believe that individuals with epilepsy must restrict their activities, including the avoidance of sun exposure, strenuous exercise, and the obligations demanded by regular employment (Allotey and Reidpath, 2007; Mac et al. 2007). The belief that epilepsy is a contagious disease, common in many countries, may cause people to avoid touching an individual who is experiencing a seizure, even though some forms of help might reduce the likelihood of injury to the individual experiencing the seizure (Mac et al. 2007).

Type 2 diabetes mellitus, which is increasing in prevalence worldwide, results from an interaction between genetic, environmental, and behavioral factors. Numerous studies have reported differences in the prevalence of type 2 diabetes across various ethnic groups. For example, South Asian migrants have been found to have a higher prevalence of type 2 diabetes compared to Westerners; African Americans have been reported to have a higher prevalence compared to Whites (Hussain et al. 2007). These distinctions, which presume a nonexistent homogeneity within the named groups and heterogeneity across groups, can only serve as a foundation for additional study. One must search further for the underlying explanations for these observed differences.

Obesity and physical inactivity have been implicated as factors in the development of type 2 diabetes (Hussain et al. 2007). Accordingly, cultural factors that encourage or promote overeating and a sedentary lifestyle and/or constrain efforts to eat healthily and exercise more may play a role in the development of the disease and its

progression. Diet and exercise must both be managed by individuals within the context of their everyday lives and their interactions with others. Standards of modesty in dress may diminish individuals' opportunities to engage in vigorous exercise, attempts to participate in religious fasting rituals may predispose individuals to hypoglycemia, and the consumption of traditional foods, such as those prepared with butter or that are fried, may thwart attempts at weight reduction. Additionally, the standard for what constitutes an ideal body or weight varies across cultures. In some contexts, obesity may signify privilege and affluence, an announcement to the larger world that the individual is able to afford the more costly "status" foods such as meat, butter, and sweets. The ability to refrain from physical exertion, such as that associated with exercise, may also signal higher social and financial status. Individuals' self-identities may be intimately linked to their adherence to specified behavioral norms; their participation in social, religious, and/or other activities; and their relationships with others. Consequently, clinicians' efforts to persuade their patients to modify behaviors may be perceived by the patient not as a necessary change in lifestyle to prevent disease and improve health, but rather as a potential loss of one's identity, status, and membership in a particular group.

In some instances, individuals' interpretations of their symptoms may impede their receipt of potentially helpful treatments. As an example, the term "ataque de nervios," literally an attack of nerves, is utilized by many Puerto Ricans to refer to their response to a specific traumatic event, such as a death in the family or betrayal by one's spouse. (Ataque de nervios is often referred to in the psychiatric literature as a culture-bound syndrome.) That response may include fainting, dizziness, shortness of breath, weakness, and/or chest pain. The individual may experience feelings of sadness and depression, nervousness and insecurity, or irritability and anger. The experience of an ataque communicates to others in a culturally and socially acceptable manner one's feeling that the world has gone out of control.

An *ataque* may occur in the absence of any pathology, but in some circumstances may be indicative of an underlying anxiety, affective, or panic disorder. Individuals suffering from *ataques* may dismiss out of hand the possibility that such experiences suggest an underlying disorder for which they might seek treatment. However, the converse is also true: Clinicians who are unfamiliar with the cultural meaning of *ataques* may misinterpret the patient's experiences as indicative of pathology when they represent instead a time-limited, culturally sanctioned response to trauma.

As an example of how cultural *change* can impact the diagnosis, prevalence, and treatment of a disease or disorder, consider how understandings of homosexuality have varied over the last 40 years. Once considered a mental illness, individuals who were diagnosed as homosexual were subjected to therapeutic interventions to transform their sexual orientations. Cultural change both within the medical profession and within the larger society in the United States provided the impetus to declassify homosexuality *per se* as a mental illness requiring treatment. The prevalence of the "illness," the "course of illness," and the "prognosis" were thus dependent on whether the underlying orientation was to be considered an illness at all. Similarly, cultural *change* at a societal level has transformed our understanding of alcohol abuse from that of a moral defect, to an individual medical problem, to a public health issue; our perception of partner violence as a legitimate response to a partner's failure to fulfill role obligations, to a medical diagnosis of the battered partner as a masochist, to a public health and criminal justice issue. Once treated through prayer, alcohol abuse is now seen as amenable to counseling, pharmacologic treatments, and, under some circumstances, legal intervention. Similarly, remedies for partner violence have broadened to include counseling for both the batterer and the battered. Our perception of disease necessarily impacts our prevalence estimates, how the affected individual interprets his or her experience, the course of the individual's illness, and how we as individuals, clinicians, and a society respond to the individual in the context of that experience.

Implications

Much emphasis has been placed on clinicians' need to develop cultural competence in order to better communicate with and counsel their patients. However, all too often, efforts to inculcate cultural competence reduce culture to a laundry list of characteristics attributed to a particular group, characteristics that are presumed to be true of all members of that named group and to exist across time and place. Such efforts fail to recognize the fluid nature of culture at the individual and group levels, the complexity of culture, the heterogeneity that exists within larger groups, and the similarities that exist across groups.

A focus on the development of cultural humility, rather than cultural competence, is more likely to lead to improved communication between providers and their patients, between researchers and their research participants, and across diverse communities. In contrast to cultural competence, which focuses on substantive issues and may lead to both stereotyping and a false sense of security derived from "knowing," cultural humility focuses on process as a key element, requiring that the individual remain open to continual learning, engage in continual self-reflection and self-critique, and attempt to equalize the power imbalances that are inherent in the provider-patient or researcher-participant relationship (Tervalon and Murray-Garcia 1998). Improved communication and understanding across cultural differences may ultimately lead to improved health for individuals and communities and a reduction in health disparities.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Acculturation](#)
- ▶ [Chronic Disease Management](#)
- ▶ [Chronic Disease or Illness](#)
- ▶ [Cultural Competence](#)
- ▶ [Cultural Factors](#)
- ▶ [Health Behavior Change](#)
- ▶ [Health Behaviors](#)
- ▶ [Health Beliefs](#)
- ▶ [Health Communication](#)

- [Health Policy/Health-Care Policy](#)
- [Illness Behavior](#)
- [Norms](#)
- [Self-identity](#)
- [Sociocultural Differences](#)

References and Readings

- Allotey, P., & Reidpath, D. (2007). Epilepsy, culture, identity, and well-being: A study of the social, cultural, and environmental context of epilepsy in Cameroon. *Journal of Health Psychology*, 12(3), 431–443.
- Fadiman, A. (1997). *The spirit catches you and you fall down*. New York: Farrar, Strauss Giroux.
- Hogan-Garcia, M. (2003). *The four skills of cultural diversity competence: A process for understanding and practice*. Pacific Grove: Brooks/Cole.
- Hussain, A., Claussen, B., Ramachandran, A., & Williams, R. (2007). Prevention of type 2 diabetes: A review. *Diabetes Research and Clinical Practice*, 76, 317–326.
- Karlsen, S. (2004). ‘Black like Beckham’? Moving beyond definitions of ethnicity based on skin colour and ancestry. *Ethnicity & Health*, 9(2), 107–137.
- Kleinman, A. (1988). *Rethinking psychiatry*. New York: The Free Press.
- Loue, S. (2006). *Assessing race, ethnicity, and gender in health*. New York: Springer.
- Mac, T. L., Tran, D.-S., Quet, F., Odermatt, P., Preux, P.-M., & Tan, C. T. (2007). Epidemiology, aetiology, and clinical management of epilepsy in Asia: A systematic review. *Lancet Neurology*, 6, 533–543.
- Melville, M. B. (1988). Hispanics: Race, class, or ethnicity? *Journal of Ethnic Studies*, 16(1), 67–83.
- Nagel, J. (1994). Constructing ethnicity: Creating and recreating ethnic identity and culture. *Social Problems*, 41, 152–176.
- Noaghiul, S., & Hibbeln, J. R. (2003). Cross-national comparisons of seafood consumption and rates of bipolar disorder. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 160, 2222–2227.
- Reynolds, E. H. (2000). The ILAE/IBE/WHO global campaign against epilepsy: Bringing epilepsy “out of the shadows”. *Epilepsy & Behavior*, 1, S3–S8.
- Schiller, N. G., Crystal, S., & Lewellen, D. (1994). Risky business: The cultural construction of AIDS risk groups. *Social Science & Medicine*, 38, 1337–1346.
- Tervalon, M., & Murray-Garcia, J. (1998). Cultural humility vs. cultural competence: A critical distinction in defining physician training outcomes in multicultural education. *Journal of Health Care for the Poor and Underserved*, 9(2), 117–125.
- Yinger, J. M. (1994). *Ethnicity: Source of strength? Source of conflict?* Albany, NY: State University of New York Press.

Cultural Awareness

- [Cultural Competence](#)

Cultural Competence

Elva Arredondo

Division of Health Promotion and Behavioral Sciences, San Diego State University, San Diego, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Cultural awareness](#); [Cultural sensitivity](#)

Definition

Cultural competence is defined as a set of congruent behaviors, attitudes, and policies that come together in a system, agency, or among professionals to facilitate effective work in cross-cultural situations (Cross et al. 1989). Linguistic competence is an important component of cultural competency because language is a key aspect of culture.

“Culture” is defined as an integrated pattern of learned human behaviors (e.g., styles of communication, customs) and beliefs (e.g., views on roles and relationships) shared among groups (Robins et al. 1998; Donini-Lenhoff and Hendrick 2000). The word “competence” implies having the capacity to function effectively with a cultural group (Cross et al. 1989).

Description

A key reason for cultural competence in health services administration and public health is to deliver the highest quality of care to all patients, regardless of race or ethnicity, cultural or religious

background, or English proficiency (Betancourt et al. 2002). Another important reason for delivering culturally competent care is to reduce and eliminate health disparities in health status of diverse people and to enhance the quality of services and health outcomes. Racial and ethnic minorities are more likely to die from many life-threatening diseases compared to members of the majority group. One likely contributor to the disparities in health outcomes and mortality is biased care stemming from conscious or unconscious racial stereotypes (LaVeist 2002).

Cross et al. (1989) proposed a Cultural Competence Continuum Framework that ranges from “cultural destructiveness” where health services can create harm to “cultural proficiency” where health care services are responsive to the health beliefs, practices, and cultural and linguistic needs of diverse cultural groups. Descriptions of each of the levels in the continuum follow:

- Cultural destructiveness refers to attitudes, practices, and policies within an organization or system that are harmful to a cultural group. This level represents a lack of understanding and unwillingness to learn about other cultures.
- Cultural incapacity involves the lack of capacity to respond to the needs of a cultural group. These practices may consist of disproportionately allocating resources that may ultimately benefit one group at the expense of another.
- Cultural blindness consists of considering all people or groups the same, without acknowledging cultural nuances. This can lead to forced assimilation to institutional attitudes that may blame members of cultural groups for their circumstances.
- Cultural pre-competence involves a commitment to social and civil justice. In this level, it is recognized that continuous expansion of cultural knowledge and resources to address the needs of cultural groups are needed.
- Cultural competence consists of ensuring that the needs of the cultural group are met by the practitioners and health service organizations. It involves being aware of and recognizing

group differences and having insight into one’s cultural values. In this level, organizations and public health practitioners are able to operate effectively in different cultural contexts.

- Cultural proficiency is a more advanced standard than cultural competence and incorporates all of the concepts of cultural competence, but a higher level of awareness, knowledge, and skills. Culturally proficient practitioners and organizations strive to be innovative and creative in developing and implementing interventions and evaluation tools.

The Cultural Competence Framework involves five essential elements that help health care organizations and public health practitioners change from not understanding the importance of cultural competence to practicing it. These components include: (1) developing a regard for diversity or demonstrating an awareness and commitment to learning about cultural differences; (2) conducting cultural self-assessment or encouraging organizations to take this process into account; (3) understanding the dynamics inherent when cultures interact; (4) accessing cultural knowledge or demonstrating a commitment to integrating lessons learned into the health care delivery skills; and (5) adapting to diversity or developing strategies that translate cultural competency into system change and clinical practice.

Culturally competent care would involve changing from a “one size fits all” model of care to a model in which care is responsive to different cultural communities. Organizations can aim to achieve cultural competence by assuring diversity among board members, staff, and providers, enhancing data collection, providing effective and translation services, and incorporating cultural competence skill development and education. An organization can identify their level of cultural competence through the use of measures that assess cultural attitudes, practices, structures, and policies of programs. Acquiring these data can help determine areas of weakness to inform

the training needed to strengthen cultural and linguistic competency.

Cross-References

- [Cultural and Ethnic Differences](#)
- [Cultural Factors](#)
- [Diversity](#)

References and Reading

- Betancourt, J. R., Green, A. R., & Carrillo, E. J. (2002). *Cultural competence in health care: Emerging frameworks and practical approaches*. New York: The Commonwealth Fund.
- Cross, T., Bazron, B., Dennis, K., & Isaacs, M. (1989). *Towards a culturally competent system of care* (Vol. 1). Washington, DC: Georgetown University Child Development Center, CASSP Technical Assistance Center.
- Donini-Lenhoff, F. G., & Hendrick, H. L. (2000). Increasing awareness and implementation of cultural competence principles in health professions education. *Journal of Allied Health*, 29(4), 241–245.
- LaVeist, T. (2002). *Race, ethnicity and health: A public health reader*. San Francisco: Wiley.
- Robins, L. S., Fantone, J., Hermann, J., Alexander, G., & Zweifler, A. (1998). Improving cultural awareness and sensitivity training in medical school. *Academic Medicine*, 73(Suppl. 10), S31–S34.

and experiences. Culture is often used to refer to individuals from the same racial and ethnic group, but culture is distinct from one's race or ethnicity. Cultural beliefs and values create motivational force, or provide the underlying rationale or impetus to behave, think, and feel in a certain way. Most empirical research has focused on understanding the association between health behaviors and cultural beliefs and values related to religion and spirituality, temporal orientation, and collectivism and individualism (Kagawa-Singer et al. 2010).

Religion and spirituality: Spirituality and religion are related but distinct factors that have been shown to influence conceptualizations about diseases. Spirituality is defined as having a personal relationship with a higher power and faith, and may be a process used to find meaning in one's life, while religion is defined as a set of practices and beliefs (e.g., dogma, doctrines) that are shared by a community or group. Religion can be thought of as behavioral manifestations of one's spirituality (Taylor 2001).

Temporal orientation: Temporal orientation is defined as one's cognitive focus of their behaviors, thoughts, and affect in terms of past, present, or future domains. Individuals may think, feel, or act based on perceived consequences that are immediate (present orientation), will happen in the future (future orientation), or has happened in the past (past orientation) (Nuttin 1985).

Individualism and collectivism: Individualism and collectivism are beliefs and values related to social processes and interactions. Individualism is characterized by placing greater value on personal autonomy, responsibility, and freedom of choice whereas collectivism is characterized by values that include group responsibility and decision making and maintaining harmonious relationships with others (Triandis et al. 1990).

Cultural Factors

Chanita H. Halbert
School of Medicine, University of Pennsylvania,
Philadelphia, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Folk health beliefs](#); [Myths](#)

Definition

Culture: Culture is a complex system that includes beliefs and values that are socially transmitted within groups who have similar backgrounds

Description

Association Between Cultural Factors, Health Behaviors, and Racial and Ethnic Background

By the year 2050, it is estimated that the racial and ethnic composition of the USA will change

dramatically and groups that are currently minorities will make up the majority of the US population. In anticipation of this, and the poorer health outcomes that these groups continue to experience, efforts are focusing on developing more effective strategies for health promotion and disease prevention by addressing cultural beliefs and values related to health behaviors. Cultural factors are now being addressed as part of health behavior interventions based on studies which have shown that these factors are associated with health behaviors. Racial and ethnic group differences in cultural beliefs and values also provide support for addressing these factors as part of health promotion and disease prevention efforts. These findings are summarized in the sections below (Smedley et al. 2003).

Temporal Orientation. As described above, temporal orientation is defined as one's cognitive focus of their behaviors, thoughts, and affect in terms of past, present, or future domains. Studies have shown that future temporal orientation promotes greater psychological well-being, avoidance of risky health behaviors, and adherence to preventive health behaviors and beliefs, whereas present temporal orientation is associated with reduced adherence. There are also racial differences in temporal orientation. For example, Brown and Segal found that African Americans reported greater levels of present temporal orientation related to hypertension management compared to whites. Individuals with higher levels of present temporal orientation reported lower perceptions of susceptibility to adverse effects of uncontrolled disease, perceived fewer benefits of hypertension medication, and reported greater perceptions of burden from the negative aspects of medication. Similar results were reported in a qualitative study of perceptions of cervical cancer screening in Hispanic women. Women in this study reported that reasons for not obtaining screening as recommended included beliefs that less emphasis is placed on screening to prevent future health outcomes because the future cannot be changed or guaranteed. In a community-based sample of African American women, present time orientation was associated with never having a mammogram, but women who had greater levels

of future temporal orientation were most likely to participate in genetic counseling for BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutations and receive test results. Greater levels of future temporal orientation were also associated with uptake of genetic counseling for BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutations in samples that consisted mostly of white women (Brown and Segal 1996; Boyer et al. 2000).

Religion and Spirituality. Religion and spirituality have been examined extensively as predictors of health behaviors and beliefs. For instance, explanatory models for cancer among African American and Hispanic women include the belief that cancer is due to God's will. Other work has shown that religious and spiritual beliefs influence decisions about seeking treatment for breast cancer symptoms and other health behaviors. Lannin and colleagues found that religious and spiritual beliefs, such as prayer about cancer can lead to healing, were associated with a greater delay in seeking treatment for breast cancer symptoms. African American women were significantly more likely than white women to endorse these beliefs. Similar findings have been reported for Hispanics; faith in God was influential in determining the length of time between symptom recognition and seeking care in Hispanic men and women. Studies have also shown that religion and spirituality are important coping resources following breast cancer diagnosis in African American, Hispanic, and white women; however, the importance of these needs may differ depending on one's racial or ethnic background. For example, while 25% of white cancer patients reported five or more spiritual needs following their cancer diagnosis, significantly more African American (41%) and Hispanic (61%) women reported five or more spiritual needs. African American women were significantly more likely than white women to use God as a source of support following diagnosis. African American prostate cancer survivors also reported significantly greater levels of religiosity compared to white prostate cancer survivors. African American men have also been shown to be significantly more likely than white men to report that faith contributes to good health and faith in God played a role in health-seeking behaviors among Hispanic men. Other work has shown

that while religion is very important to the majority of adults diagnosed with disease and one third of healthy adults pray for health conditions, African American men and women were significantly more likely than white men and women to be willing to allocate time with health care providers to discuss spiritual issues rather than health care concerns (Lannin et al. 1998; Moadel et al. 1999; Kub et al. 2003).

Collectivism and Individualism. Individualism and collectivism may also contribute to health behaviors and beliefs, but less empirical data are available on these associations. But studies have examined the relationship between constructs that are similar to individualism and collectivism. Communalism, for example, is defined as having greater recognition of the interdependence of people, particularly family members and familism is defined as having a stronger identification with and attachment to family members. Prior studies have shown that communalism is associated with collectivism and African Americans and Hispanics have been shown to have greater endorsement of collectivism (e.g., interdependence, group responsibility) and familism compared to whites. Other work has shown that greater levels of social integration and the size of one's social network were associated with adherence to breast and cervical cancer screening among Mexican, Cuban, and Central American women. Thompson and colleagues found that African American women who declined to participate in genetic counseling and testing for inherited breast cancer risk reported significantly greater concerns about the impact of testing on family members compared to women who participated in counseling and testing. Further, in a national sample of African American, white, and Hispanic adults, greater levels of individualism were associated with an increased likelihood of eating the recommended number of servings of fruits (Boykin et al. 1997; Sabogal et al. 1987).

Measurement of Cultural Factors

Although cultural beliefs and values are socially transmitted and shared among individuals with similar racial backgrounds and experiences, these factors are most often measured as an

individual difference characteristic using self-report measures. Research is now being conducted to develop instruments that measure cultural beliefs and values within specific situational contexts.

Integration of Cultural Factors into Health Promotion and Disease Prevention

Cultural tailoring is an approach that has been used to promote adherence to a wide range of health behaviors that include cancer screening, HIV risk reduction, and informed decision making about genetic testing for inherited disease risk. The premise of cultural tailoring is that information and messages that are customized to one's culturally based beliefs and values will be more effective than generic approaches because they address issues and ways of thinking and coping that are most salient to an individual. Culturally tailored interventions have had mixed results. For instance, Halbert and colleagues developed and evaluated a culturally tailored genetic counseling (CTGC) protocol for African American women as part of a randomized trial. The CTGC protocol included standardized probes to elicit discussion about cultural factors that have been shown to influence decisions about genetic counseling among African American women (e.g., spiritual and religious beliefs, communalism). For example, women were asked what aspects of their spiritual and religious beliefs influence their decision to have genetic testing to facilitate discussion about the role of these factors in decision making about genetic testing for BRCA1/2 mutations. Women who received CTGC reported greater levels of satisfaction compared to those who received standard genetic counseling (SGC), but there were no differences in uptake of BRCA1/2 test results between women who were randomized to CTGC and SGC. Further, women randomized to CTGC and SGC did not differ in terms of psychological outcomes such as changes in risk perception and cancer worry compared to decliners. In other research, Kreuter and colleagues found that African American women liked culturally relevant health education materials that addressed fruit and vegetable intake and

mammography using four cultural constructs (religiosity, racial pride, collectivism, and time orientation) better than materials that were tailored to behavioral constructs. However, women who received both types of education materials (behavioral and culturally relevant materials) were most likely to obtain a mammogram and had greater increases in fruit and vegetable consumption compared to women who received culturally relevant materials, those tailored to behavioral constructs only, and women in the control condition (Kreuter et al. 2005; Kalichman et al. 1993; Halbert et al. 2010).

These findings raise questions about how to develop interventions that are effective in terms of addressing cultural beliefs and values and promoting health behavior change. One issue may be that previous culturally tailored interventions have been based on conceptualizations of cultural factors that are not specific to different health promotion and prevention behaviors. Studies have shown that different cultural values are elicited depending on situational characteristics and context; but existing instruments that measure cultural factors do not relate specifically to different health behaviors (e.g., medication adherence, avoidance of risk factors, early detection) that define the spectrum of health promotion and disease prevention and, therefore, may be less sensitive for interventions studies that aim to address these factors.

Conclusions

Cultural beliefs and values are important to a wide range of health promotion and disease prevention efforts. Empirical evidence is emerging on how to address these factors as part of health behavior interventions.

Cross-References

- [Cultural and Ethnic Differences](#)
- [Ethnicity](#)
- [Religion/Spirituality](#)

References and Readings

- Boyer, L. E., Williams, M., Callister, L. C., & Marshall, E. S. (2000). Hispanic women's perceptions regarding cervical cancer screening. *Journal of Obstetric, Gynecologic, and Neonatal Nursing*, 30, 240–245.
- Boykin, A. W., Jagers, R. J., Ellison, C. M., & Albury, A. (1997). Communalism: Conceptualization and measurement of an Afro-cultural social orientation. *Journal of Black Studies*, 27, 409–418.
- Brown, C. M., & Segal, R. (1996). Ethnic differences in temporal orientation and its implications for hypertension management. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 37, 350–361.
- Halbert, C. H., Kessler, L., Troxel, A. B., Stopfer, J. E., & Domchek, S. (2010). Effect of genetic counseling and testing for BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutations in African American women: A randomized trial. *Public Health Genomics*, 13(7–8), 440–448.
- Kagawa-Singer, M., Dadia, A. V., Yu, M. C., & Surbone, A. (2010). Cancer, culture, and health disparities: Time to chart a new course? *CA: A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 60, 12–39.
- Kalichman, S. C., Kelly, J. A., Hunter, T. L., Murphy, D. A., & Tyler, R. (1993). Culturally tailored HIV-AIDS risk-reduction messages targeted to African-American urban women: Impact on risk sensitization and risk reduction. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 61, 291–295.
- Kreuter, M. W., Sugg-Skinner, C., Holt, C. L., Clark, E. M., Haire-Joshu, D., Fu, Q., et al. (2005). Cultural tailoring for mammography and fruit and vegetable intake among low-income African-American women in urban public health centers. *Preventive Medicine*, 41, 53–62.
- Kub, J. E., Nolan, M. T., Hughes, M. T., Terry, P. B., Sulmasy, D. P., Astrow, A., et al. (2003). Religious importance and practices of patients with a life threatening illness: Implications for screening protocols. *Applied Nursing Research*, 16, 196–200.
- Lannin, D. R., Mathews, H. F., Mitchell, J., Swanson, M. S., Swanson, F. H., & Edwards, M. S. (1998). Influence of socioeconomic and cultural factors on racial differences in late-stage presentation of breast cancer. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 279, 1801–1807.
- Moadel, A., Morgan, C., Fatone, A., Grennan, J., Carter, J., Laruffa, G., et al. (1999). Seeking meaning and hope: Self-reported spiritual and existential needs among an ethnically-diverse cancer patient population. *Psycho-Oncology*, 8, 378–385.
- Nuttin, J. (1985). *Future time perspective and motivation: Theory and research method*. Hillsdale: Erlbaum.
- Sabogal, F., Marin, B. V., & Perez-Stable, J. (1987). Hispanic familism and acculturation: What changes and what doesn't? *Hispanic Journal of Behavioral Sciences*, 9, 397–412.
- Smedley, B. D., Stith, A. Y., Nelson, A. R., & Institute of Medicine (U.S.). (2003). Committee on understanding

and eliminating racial and ethnic disparities in health care. In *In Unequal treatment: Confronting racial and ethnic disparities in health care*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

Taylor, E. J. (2001). Spirituality, culture, and cancer care. *Seminars in Oncology Nursing*, 17, 197–205.

Triandis, H. C., McCusker, C., & Hui, C. H. (1990). Multi-method probes of individualism and collectivism. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 59, 1006–1020.

Cultural Sensitivity

- ▶ [Cultural Competence](#)

Custodian

- ▶ [Family, Caregiver](#)

CVD Prevention

- ▶ [Cardiovascular Disease Prevention](#)

Cynical Distrust

- ▶ [Hostility](#)
- ▶ [Hostility, Cynical](#)
- ▶ [Hostility, Measurement of](#)
- ▶ [Hostility, Psychophysiological Responses](#)

Cynical Hostility

- ▶ [Hostility](#)
- ▶ [Hostility, Cynical](#)
- ▶ [Hostility, Measurement of](#)
- ▶ [Hostility, Psychophysiological Responses](#)

Cynicism

- ▶ [Hostility, Cynical](#)
- ▶ [Hostility, Measurement of](#)
- ▶ [Hostility, Psychophysiological Responses](#)

Cystic Fibrosis

Kristen K. Marciel¹ and Judy A. Marciel²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, USA

²Perioperative Services, East Tennessee Children's Hospital, Knoxville, USA

Synonyms

CF

Definition

Cystic fibrosis (CF), a genetic recessive illness, occurs in 1 of 3500 live births each year in the United States and currently affects approximately 30,000 people, predominantly Caucasians (Cystic Fibrosis Foundation [CFF] 2008). In 1962, average life expectancy was 10 years of age; however, the current life expectancy of a person with CF is approximately 37 (CFF 2009). More than 46% of people registered with the CF Foundation are adults. Adults with CF now participate in many developmentally-appropriate aspects of life which were previously rare for this population, including completing high school (92%), working part- or full-time (48%), and marrying or living with a partner (38%; CFF 2008). As people with CF are living longer, there is a need for effective transition from pediatric to adult health care.

CF is caused by a single genetic defect. There are over 1500 known mutation variations with the most common defect being the Delta F508 mutation (Farrell et al. 2008). In 1989, this defect was identified on chromosome 7 (Riordan et al. 1989). When working properly, the cystic fibrosis

transmembrane conductance regulator gene produces a protein which transports chloride and sodium across cells, particularly in submucosal glands. In CF, this abnormal electrolyte transport results in the production of thick, sticky mucus, affecting the pulmonary, gastrointestinal, pancreatic, and reproductive systems (Welsh and Smith 1995). Cycles of infection and inflammation result in significant lung damage. Approximately 90% of patients with CF experience pancreatic insufficiency, resulting in difficulty absorbing fats and proteins which leads to undernutrition. Some patients develop CF-related diabetes, liver damage, and bone disease. About 98% of men are infertile due to the absence, malformation, or blockage of the vas deferens. Women have better reproductive capabilities, though conception is often difficult due to excessive cervical mucus.

Diagnostic criteria for CF include both clinical features and laboratory results (Farrell et al. 2008). Laboratory tests include newborn screening (occurring in all 50 states since 2010), quantification of sweat chloride, and genetic testing. Median age of diagnosis is 6 months of age (CFF 2008), with approximately 70% of children diagnosed before 1 year of age (Walters and Mehta 2007). A very vigorous treatment regimen is instituted at the time of diagnosis. Some 90% of morbidity and mortality is due to progressive lung disease. Lung function, as measured by percent predicted of forced expiratory volume in one second, slowly declines over time, at a rate of approximately 1–2% each year (Rosenthal 2007). Given the multiple systems affected by CF, treatments typically include antibiotics (oral, nebulized, and intravenous), enzyme replacement therapy, airway clearance, nebulized bronchodilators, nebulized mucolytic agents, and aggressive nutritional therapies, ranging from increasing caloric intake to enteral nutritional feedings (Eiser et al. 1995; Orenstein 1997). The medical regimen is extremely complex and time consuming, which results in significant challenges for adherence.

The Cystic Fibrosis Foundation (CFF) was established in 1955 (CFF 2008); this organization accredits the more than 115 care centers, manages a patient registry, develops evidence-based practice guidelines, and provides funding for research.

The CFF Therapeutics Pipeline includes 33 interventions at various stages of development, including medications to treat symptoms, potentiators and correctors to address the basic defect, and gene therapy to prevent disease.

Cross-References

► Pulmonary Function

References and Readings

- Cystic Fibrosis Foundation. (2008). *Patient registry 2006 annual report*. Bethesda: Author.
- Cystic Fibrosis Foundation. (2009). *2009 annual report*. Bethesda: Author.
- Eiser, C., Zoritch, B., Hiller, J., Havermans, T., & Billig, S. (1995). Routine stresses in caring for a child with cystic fibrosis. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 39(5), 641–646.
- Farrell, P. M., Rosenstein, B. J., White, T. B., Accurso, F. J., Castellani, C., Cutting, G. R., Durie, P. R., Legrys, V. A., Massie, J., Parad, R. B., Rock, M. J., & Campbell, P. W. (2008). Guidelines for diagnosis of cystic fibrosis in newborns through older adults: Cystic Fibrosis Foundation consensus report. *Journal of Pediatrics*, 153(2), S4–S14.
- Orenstein, D. M. (1997). *Cystic fibrosis: A guide for patient and family* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven.
- Riordan, J. R., Rommens, J. M., Kerem, B., Alon, N., Rozmahel, R., Grzelczak, Z., Zielenski, J., Lok, S., Plavsic, N., Chou, J. L., Drumm, M. L., Iannuzzi, M. C., Collins, F. S., & Tsui, L. C. (1989). Identification of the cystic fibrosis gene: Cloning and characterization of complementary DNA. *Science*, 245(4922), 1066–1073.
- Rosenthal, M. (2007). Physiological monitoring of older children and adults. In M. Hodson, D. Geddes, & A. Bush (Eds.), *Cystic fibrosis* (3rd ed., pp. 345–352). London: Hodder Arnold.
- Walters, S., & Mehta, A. (2007). Epidemiology of cystic fibrosis. In M. Hodson, D. Geddes, & A. Bush (Eds.), *Cystic fibrosis* (3rd ed., pp. 345–352). London: Hodder Arnold.
- Welsh, M. J., & Smith, A. E. (1995). Cystic fibrosis. *Scientific American*, 273, 52–59.

Cytokine-Induced Depression

► Sickness Behavior

Cytokines

Brian O. Hartaigh
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The
University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

Chemokines; Interleukins; Lymphokines;
Monokines

Definition

1. Low molecular weight proteins that stimulate or inhibit the differentiation, proliferation, or function of immune cells.
2. Small cell-signaling protein molecules that are secreted by numerous cells of the body in order to affect the behavior of other cells that bear receptors for them.
3. Extensively involved in intercellular communication.

Description

Cytokines are small cell-signaling protein molecules weighing approximately 25 kDa. Based on their presumed function, cell of secretion, and target of action, cytokines were previously referred to as lymphokines, interleukins (IL), and chemokines. These terms were generally used in an attempt to develop a standardized nomenclature for molecules that were secreted by and which acted on cells of the body. However, due to an ever-increasing number of cytokines with diverse origins, structures, and effects being discovered, these terms are now considered to be obsolete. Although the IL designation is still used, it is anticipated that a nomenclature based on cytokine structures will eventually become established.

Cytokines and their receptors are categorized according to two major structural families:

- *The hematopoietin family:*
 - Includes growth hormones
 - Includes many IL implicated in both innate and adaptive immunity
- *The TNF family:*
 - Also functional in both innate and adaptive immunity
 - Includes many members that are membrane bound

Both major structural families of cytokines are thought to play an active role in local and systemic effects that contribute toward innate and adaptive immunity.

The effect of a particular cytokine on a given cell depends on the cytokine, its extracellular abundance, the presence and quantity of the complementary receptor on the cell surface, and downstream signals activated by receptor binding (the last two factors may vary by cell type). When a cytokine binds to a receptor, a signal is transmitted into the cell which activates particular genes and, in turn, alters the activity of the cell. Once activated, these cells are capable of producing other cytokines. Each individual cytokine can have several different functions depending on which cell(s) it binds to.

Cytokines are strongly involved in regulating immune function. For example, in lymphocyte activation, both T and B cells critically depend on receiving signals delivered by specific cytokines that bind to receptors on their cell membranes. Likewise, cytokines are influential in promoting or inhibiting local and systemic inflammation.

Considering cytokines are multifunctional, it remains complex to simplify these molecules in order to give a precise account. This is due to:

1. The redundant (sharing the same properties) effect of cytokines
2. Multifunctional properties of cytokines (pleiotropy)
3. Several cells may be capable of producing the same cytokine
4. The ability of cytokines to act synergistically or antagonistically with each other

Therefore, it is easier to imagine that these important protein molecules work in a network to promote or inhibit the interaction of the immune system with other physiological systems, by which they remain mutually dependent on each other.

Cross-References

► [Interleukins](#)

References and Further Reading

- Janeway, C. A., Travers, P., Walport, M., & Shlomchik, M. J. (2005). *Immunobiology: The immune system in health and disease* (6th ed.). London: Garland Science.
- Roitt, I. M., & Delves, P. J. (2001). *Essential immunology* (10th ed.). Oxford: Blackwell Science.
- Staines, N., Brostoff, J., & James, K. (1993). *Introducing immunology* (2nd ed.). London: Mosby.

Cytomegalovirus

James Edward Turner
Department for Health, University of Bath,
Bath, UK

Synonyms

CMV; HHV5; Human herpesvirus 5

Definition

Cytomegalovirus is a herpesvirus that infects most of the global population. The virus persists for the lifetime of the host – mostly in a dormant state, but reactivating occasionally – and the infection is generally asymptomatic in immunocompetent people. *Cytomegalovirus* has profound effects on the characteristics and function of the immune system, is thought to accelerate aging, and has been implicated in some disease processes.

There are also interactions between *Cytomegalovirus* and psychosocial health, life experiences, and some forms of stress. Infection with this virus influences the way people respond to some stressors, and in turn, stressors can influence *Cytomegalovirus* directly and indirectly. For these reasons, *Cytomegalovirus* may need to be considered when designing studies and interpreting results in behavioral medicine, psycho-neuro-immunology, and exercise immunology.

Description

Background

Herpesvirales, an order of the taxonomic hierarchy, are double-stranded DNA viruses, consisting of 3 families (*Alloherpesviridae*, *Herpesviridae*, *Malacoherpesviridae*), 3 subfamilies (*Alphaherpesvirinae*, *Betaherpesvirinae*, *Gammaherpesvirinae*; each within *Herpesviridae*), 19 genera, and 122 species. *Cytomegalovirus* is part of the *Betaherpesvirinae* subfamily (ICTV 2019). Eight members of *Herpesviridae* commonly infect humans (human herpes viruses; HHV): HHV-1, *Herpes simplex virus-1*; HHV-2, *Herpes simplex virus-2*; HHV-3, *Varicella zoster virus*; HHV-4, Epstein-Barr virus; HHV-5, cytomegalovirus; HHV-6 and HHV-7, roseola virus; and HHV-8, *Kaposi's sarcoma-associated virus* (Grinde 2013). All *Herpesvirales* have a common morphology. The genetic material is contained within an icosahedral-shaped protein shell (the capsid) surrounded by a cluster of proteins (the tegument) enclosed within an outer lipid bilayer membrane (the envelope) which has glycoproteins projecting from the surface. The whole structure or particle is called a virion.

The origin of the term herpes is the Greek verb *herpein* (to creep) which was used to describe spreading lesions that are characteristic of some *Herpesvirales* infections (Beswick 1962). A common feature of all *Herpesvirales* is that they form lifelong persistent infections, characterized by quiescent periods with little or no virus gene expression and replication (the latent phase) and periods of reactivation, with virus gene

expression and production of infectious virions (the lytic phase) (Dupont and Reeves 2016; Goodrum 2016). The mechanisms underpinning lytic replication and latent dormancy are not fully understood. The lytic cycle (including the initial infectious episode) begins with the activation of so-called immediate early (IE) genes by cellular factors and viral tegument proteins, followed by activation of early (E) and late (L) genes. The transition into latency is likely due to a combination of virus-produced replication-suppressive factors and/or infection of a permissive cell type (Dupont and Reeves 2016; Goodrum 2016). *Cytomegalovirus* can infect many different cell types, and hematopoietic stem cells or myeloid cells harbor a latent infection but also enable reactivation. Other cell types such as epithelial cells and endothelial cells enable a chronic low-grade infection characterized by low-level viral replication (Dupont and Reeves 2016; Goodrum 2016).

Cytomegalovirus Infection

A large proportion of the global population is infected with *Cytomegalovirus*. The prevalence ranges between 30 and 90% depending on age, ethnicity, socioeconomic status, and geographical location (Staras et al. 2006). *Cytomegalovirus* is normally transmitted through close personal contact where bodily fluids are exchanged. Viral DNA can be found in urine, semen, cervical secretions, breast milk, blood, and saliva (Torpy et al. 2010). *Cytomegalovirus* can be transmitted from saliva that has been in contact with common environmental surfaces for several hours, including glass, metal, plastic, rubber, cloth, wood, or even food (Stowell et al. 2012). Infection as a child or adult is usually asymptomatic but can sometimes cause flu-like symptoms, including fever, fatigue, or a rash (Torpy et al. 2010). *Cytomegalovirus* can be transmitted to the developing fetus at any stage of pregnancy, but this is most common in the first 4–5 months and is most likely with primary maternal infection (Sung and Schleiss 2010). Congenital infection occurs in around one third of women who develop a primary infection during pregnancy. Less commonly, congenital infection occurs due to reactivation of a latent infection or

by the mother encountering a new strain of the virus. Perinatal infection can also occur, especially via breast milk. A small proportion of pregnancies (less than 2%) are affected by *Cytomegalovirus*, and 90% of these babies will not show signs of infection or have complications. However, in some cases, the consequences can be severe, including auditory and visual complications, mental disability, and impaired growth (Torpy et al. 2010). For these reasons, preventative vaccines are being developed (Sung and Schleiss 2010). *Cytomegalovirus* can be life-threatening for people who are immunocompromised, such as patients with HIV, transplant recipients, and some patients with cancer undergoing treatment (Torpy et al. 2010; van der Meer et al. 1996). Loss of viral control can result in *Cytomegalovirus* disease that can lead to blindness and can affect various organs causing morbidity and mortality (Torpy et al. 2010; van der Meer et al. 1996). Given the frequency of these complications due to the high prevalence of *Cytomegalovirus* infection, clinical protocols have been established for limiting viral reactivation or at least managing the consequences (van der Meer et al. 1996).

Cytomegalovirus has profound effects on the characteristics and function of the immune system, and this infection is considered to accelerate immunological aging (see the definition; *Immunosenescence*). Aging per se is associated with many changes to the immune system, but longitudinal studies have shown that only a selection of hallmarks, including *Cytomegalovirus* infection, are predictive of survival in some populations (Olsson et al. 2000). Among these hallmarks are high numbers and proportions of late-stage differentiated T cells, and it is common for 10% of these cells to be specific for *Cytomegalovirus* (Sylwester et al. 2005). A contentious issue is whether changes at the cellular level linked to *Cytomegalovirus* infection translate to broader immunological processes. For example, some studies have shown poor vaccine responses in both young and elderly individuals infected with *Cytomegalovirus* (Frasca et al. 2015; Morogarcia et al. 2012; Turner et al. 2014; Wald et al. 2013). However, other studies have shown no effect of the infection on vaccine responses in

older adults (den Elzen et al. 2011; O'Connor et al. 2014; Wald et al. 2013). Some studies have even shown better effects of vaccination among young adults who harbor the virus (Furman et al. 2015). Despite this controversy, many hallmarks of immunosenescence, including infection with *Cytomegalovirus* alone, have been associated with important outcomes for research in behavioral medicine, such as frailty, cognitive decline, chronic disease, and mortality (Gow et al. 2013; Haeseker et al. 2013).

Cytomegalovirus Infection, Chronic Disease, and Mortality

Some studies have reported that people infected with *Cytomegalovirus* exhibit greater all-cause mortality than those who are not infected (Feinstein et al. 2016; Simanek et al. 2011), but other studies show no effect (Mathei et al. 2014). Most research implicating *Cytomegalovirus* in mortality reports cardiovascular disease as the cause (Savva et al. 2013), but cancer also contributes (Gkrania-Klotsas et al. 2013). *Cytomegalovirus* has also been implicated in the pathophysiology of obesity and metabolic syndrome (Fleck-Derderian et al. 2017), type II diabetes (Rector et al. 2015), and inflammatory conditions such as rheumatoid arthritis (Broadley et al. 2017).

There is a large body of research examining relationships between *Cytomegalovirus* and the properties of cancer cells or the prognosis of patients. Many studies have shown that *Cytomegalovirus* can be found in tumors and infection influences the malignant properties of the cells (Soderberg-Naucler 2006). *Cytomegalovirus*-infected tumor cells exhibit greater chromosome instability, proliferation, and resistance to apoptosis, an improved capacity to invade tissue, migrate, and promote angiogenesis, along with evading immune-surveillance more effectively (Soderberg-Naucler 2006). Malignant gliomas – common adult brain tumors including astrocytoma and glioblastoma multiform – have received the most attention in the context of *Cytomegalovirus* (Dey et al. 2015). In 2002, it was first shown that a high percentage of malignant glioma tumors are infected with *Cytomegalovirus* (Cobbs et al. 2002) which has been confirmed by multiple studies

(Dey et al. 2015). There is a negative association between the number of tumor cells infected with *Cytomegalovirus* and length of survival (Rahbar et al. 2012), and treating glioma patients with valganciclovir – which limits viral reactivation – improves survival (Soderberg-Naucler et al. 2013). Subsequently, *Cytomegalovirus*-infected tumor cells have been found in cervical cancer (Marinho-Dias and Sousa 2013), breast cancer (Richardson et al. 2015), colorectal cancer (Taher et al. 2014), prostate cancer (Samanta et al. 2003), and gastric cancer (Jin et al. 2014). The influence of *Cytomegalovirus* is mostly unknown for these cancers, but might not be negative in all cases. For example, in acute myeloid leukemia, *Cytomegalovirus* reactivation is associated with a decreased chance of relapse (Elmaagacli et al. 2011).

A smaller body of research has examined whether *Cytomegalovirus* infection increases the risk of developing cancer, and it has been hypothesized that exposure to this virus later in life, rather than in childhood, might cause breast cancer (Richardson 1997). This hypothesis has not been supported by studies measuring *Cytomegalovirus*-specific IgG in serum (Richardson et al. 2004). Although high or rising *Cytomegalovirus*-specific IgG has been interpreted as preceding breast cancer development (Cox et al. 2010; Richardson et al. 2004), associations shown with serum compared to tumor measurements are not consistent (Richardson et al. 2015). Most literature examining *Cytomegalovirus* and cancer risk has focused on mortality after organ transplantation. For example, it has been shown that among recipients of kidney, heart, liver or lung transplants, mortality over 10 years was greater when organs from a *Cytomegalovirus*-seropositive donor were transplanted into a *Cytomegalovirus*-seronegative recipient, and posttransplant cancer was most common among seropositive recipients compared to seronegative recipients (irrespective of donor serostatus) (Desai et al. 2015). However, these associations were lost when controlling statistically for age and sex. Other studies have reported conflicting results, with some showing a harmful effect of *Cytomegalovirus* (Courivaud et al. 2012) and others showing a protective effect (Couzi

et al. 2010). It is likely that both the protective and harmful effects of *Cytomegalovirus* reported are due to indirect effects of infection, such as changes to the phenotype and function of T cells (Couzi et al. 2010).

Cytomegalovirus Infection and Its Relevance to Behavioral Medicine

The relevance of *Cytomegalovirus* to behavioral medicine – other than associations with aging, immune function, chronic disease, and mortality – is further emphasized by interaction with life experiences, psychosocial health, and some forms of stress. For example, *Cytomegalovirus* is partly responsible for premature mortality exhibited by people with a low socioeconomic status (Feinstein et al. 2016) and is associated with frailty and cognitive decline (Gow et al. 2013; Haeseker et al. 2013), demonstrating that infection with this virus could be an important confounder in some studies. However, it is the evidence that *Cytomegalovirus* influences the way people respond to stressors, and the effects that stressors have on this virus, that is less well-known.

It has been shown that the concentration of *Cytomegalovirus*-specific IgG in seropositive individuals is associated with multiple indicators of psychological distress – including depression and anxiety – along with overall psychological morbidity (Phillips et al. 2008; Rector et al. 2014). Studies examining chronic stress have shown that *Cytomegalovirus*-specific IgG is higher in seropositive, typically older, caregivers of family members with neurodegenerative conditions compared to controls (Pariante et al. 1997). Other studies have shown that these relationships are not present among typically younger caregivers – parents of children with developmental disabilities (Vitlic et al. 2014) – suggesting interaction between age and severity of disability or magnitude of stress (Pariante et al. 1997; Vitlic et al. 2014). However, these relationships are complex and likely to be influenced by multiple factors. For example, in healthy seropositive adults, early life childhood adversity is associated with higher *Cytomegalovirus*-specific IgG, which is not attributable to adult perceptions of psychological distress (Janicki-Deverts et al. 2014).

It is important to emphasize that most relationships between *Cytomegalovirus* and psychosocial factors are shown by measuring the concentration of virus-specific IgG in serum or saliva among people who are infected: associations with serostatus are less commonly reported. In other words, comparing people who are infected with *Cytomegalovirus* to those who are not typically reveals no differences in psychosocial health (although low socioeconomic status increases the chance of *Cytomegalovirus* infection) (Feinstein et al. 2016; Janicki-Deverts et al. 2014; Rector et al. 2014). Thus, it has been interpreted that high levels of virus-specific IgG measured in bodily fluids represents viral reactivation and/or loss of antiviral immune control, perhaps driven by stress-induced neuroendocrine disturbances and inflammation. For example, studies collecting blood and saliva samples before, during, and after academic examinations have shown that the concentration of *Cytomegalovirus*-specific IgG increases with stress (Glaser et al. 1985; Sarid et al. 2003). Indeed, the idea that high or rising *Cytomegalovirus*-specific IgG represents viral reactivation is supported by reports of a high humoral response to this virus in older people, who exhibit other signs of an aging immune system and probably have less robust antiviral control than younger people (Alonso Arias et al. 2013). Some studies that quantify *Cytomegalovirus* DNA in combination with measurements of cellular and humoral immunity report that *Cytomegalovirus*-specific IgG does not correlate with reactivation (Li et al. 2014), whereas other studies report the opposite (Iglesias-Escudero et al. 2018). One explanation for the discordant findings might be that the humoral response to *Cytomegalovirus* increases with aging – either due to duration of infection, viral reactivation, or superinfection with multiple virus strains (Hansen et al. 2010) – but this response does not strongly influence viral control, and antiviral T cells are more important (Parry et al. 2016). Thus, *Cytomegalovirus*-specific IgG continues to be considered an indirect marker, or proxy, of viral reactivation. In support, research in behavioral medicine examining stress caused by spaceflight has shown that *Cytomegalovirus* reactivation,

measured by shedding of virus DNA into bodily fluids, occurs in parallel with an increase in virus-specific IgG (Mehta et al. 2000).

Research examining the effects of *Cytomegalovirus* serostatus – rather than measuring the concentration of virus-specific IgG – has shown that infection strongly influences the response of circulating immune cells to bouts of exercise (Simpson et al. 2016) (see the definitions; *lymphocytosis* and *lymphocytopenia*). Compared to people who have not encountered the virus, some immune cells from *Cytomegalovirus*-positive individuals (e.g., T cells) exhibit substantially larger responses than those from *Cytomegalovirus*-seronegative individuals, whereas other immune cells exhibit substantially smaller responses (e.g., natural killer cells) (Simpson et al. 2016). These effects of *Cytomegalovirus* infection most likely explain differences in the immune response to exercise and psychological stress that have been reported between individuals previously and may have relevance for immune-surveillance and immunosenescence (see the definitions; *lymphocytosis*, *lymphocytopenia*, *immunosenescence*). Finally, it has been shown that the age-associated decrease in the proportion of T cells that are naïve and increase in the proportion of T cells that have encountered antigen (i.e., memory cells) is smaller in people with high cardiorespiratory fitness, suggesting that lifestyle might have a greater influence on the immune system than aging or infection history (Spielmann et al. 2011).

Summary

Cytomegalovirus infects most of the global population. In immunocompetent people, infection with this virus does not have particularly severe effects, other than potentially altering the characteristics and function of the immune system, which is often interpreted as accelerating immunosenescence. However, healthy older individuals infected with *Cytomegalovirus* usually have a fully functioning immune system, and some studies have even shown that immunological changes caused by *Cytomegalovirus* infection, which are usually interpreted as being deleterious, are associated with longer survival (Derhovanessian et al. 2013). *Cytomegalovirus* is relevant to behavioral medicine given the relationships and interaction with aging, immune function, chronic disease, mortality, life

experiences, psychosocial health, and stressors. Thus, *Cytomegalovirus* may need to be considered when designing studies and interpreting results in behavioral medicine, psycho-neuroimmunology, and exercise immunology.

Cross-References

- ▶ Acute Disease
- ▶ Adjuvant Chemotherapy
- ▶ Aging
- ▶ AIDS: Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome
- ▶ Behavioral Immunology
- ▶ Behavioral Medicine
- ▶ Cancer Treatment and Management
- ▶ Cancer, Types of
- ▶ Cellular Theory of Aging
- ▶ Chemotherapy
- ▶ Chronic Depression
- ▶ Chronic Disease or Illness
- ▶ C-Reactive Protein (CRP)
- ▶ Cytokines
- ▶ Disease Burden
- ▶ Disease Management
- ▶ Disease Severity
- ▶ Elderly
- ▶ Epidemiology
- ▶ Epstein-Barr Virus
- ▶ Gene
- ▶ Gene Expression
- ▶ Genital Herpes
- ▶ Gerontology
- ▶ Hearing Loss
- ▶ HIV Infection
- ▶ Immune Function
- ▶ Immunity
- ▶ Immunoglobulins
- ▶ Immunosenescence
- ▶ Inflammation
- ▶ Interleukins, -1 (IL-1), -6 (IL-6), -18 (IL-18)
- ▶ Life Span
- ▶ Longevity
- ▶ Lymphocytopenia
- ▶ Lymphocytosis
- ▶ Macrophages
- ▶ Metabolic Syndrome
- ▶ Natural Killer Cell Activity

- [Neuroimmunology](#)
- [Obesity](#)
- [Organ Transplantation: Psychological and Behavioral Aspects](#)
- [Oxidative Stress](#)
- [Population Health](#)
- [Prevalence](#)
- [Psychological Stress](#)
- [Psychoneuroendocrinology](#)
- [Psychoneuroimmunology](#)
- [Salivary Biomarkers](#)
- [Serum](#)
- [Stress Reactivity](#)
- [Stress, Early Life](#)
- [Successful Aging](#)
- [Sympatho-adrenergic Stimulation](#)
- [Tumor Necrosis Factor-Alpha \(TNF-Alpha\)](#)

References and Further Readings

- Alonso Arias, R., Moro-Garcia, M. A., Echeverria, A., Solano-Jaurrieta, J. J., Suarez-Garcia, F. M., & Lopez-Larrea, C. (2013). Intensity of the humoral response to cytomegalovirus is associated with the phenotypic and functional status of the immune system. *Journal of Virology*, 87, 4486–4495.
- Beswick, T. S. (1962). The origin and the use of the word herpes. *Medical History*, 6, 214–232.
- Broadley, I., Pera, A., Morrow, G., Davies, K. A., & Kern, F. (2017). Expansions of cytotoxic CD4(+)CD28(–) T cells drive excess cardiovascular mortality in rheumatoid arthritis and other chronic inflammatory conditions and are triggered by CMV infection. *Frontiers in Immunology*, 8, 195.
- Cobbs, C. S., et al. (2002). Human cytomegalovirus infection and expression in human malignant glioma. *Cancer Research*, 62, 3347–3350.
- Courivaud, C., et al. (2012). Cytomegalovirus exposure, immune exhaustion and cancer occurrence in renal transplant recipients. *Transplant International*, 25, 948–955.
- Couzi, L., et al. (2010). Cytomegalovirus-induced gammadelta T cells associate with reduced cancer risk after kidney transplantation. *Journal of the American Society of Nephrology: JASN*, 21, 181–188.
- Cox, B., Richardson, A., Graham, P., Gislefoss, R. E., Jellum, E., & Rollag, H. (2010). Breast cancer, cytomegalovirus and Epstein-Barr virus: A nested case-control study. *British Journal of Cancer*, 102, 1665–1669.
- den Elzen, W. P., Vossen, A. C., Cools, H. J., Westendorp, R. G., Kroes, A. C., & Gussekloo, J. (2011). Cytomegalovirus infection and responsiveness to influenza vaccination in elderly residents of long-term care facilities. *Vaccine*, 29, 4869–4874.
- Derhovanessian, E., et al. (2013). Lower proportion of naive peripheral CD8+ T cells and an unopposed pro-inflammatory response to human Cytomegalovirus proteins in vitro are associated with longer survival in very elderly people. *Age (Dordr)*, 35, 1387–1399.
- Desai, R., Collett, D., Watson, C. J., Johnson, P. J., Moss, P., & Neuberger, J. (2015). Impact of cytomegalovirus on long-term mortality and cancer risk after organ transplantation. *Transplantation*, 99, 1989–1994.
- Dey, M., Ahmed, A. U., & Lesniak, M. S. (2015). Cytomegalovirus and glioma: Putting the cart before the horse. *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery, and Psychiatry*, 86, 191–199.
- Dupont, L., & Reeves, M. B. (2016). Cytomegalovirus latency and reactivation: Recent insights into an age old problem. *Reviews in Medical Virology*, 26, 75–89.
- Elmaagacli, A. H., et al. (2011). Early human cytomegalovirus replication after transplantation is associated with a decreased relapse risk: Evidence for a putative virus-versus-leukemia effect in acute myeloid leukemia patients. *Blood*, 118, 1402–1412.
- Feinstein, L., Douglas, C. E., Stebbins, R. C., Pawelec, G., Simanek, A. M., & Aiello, A. E. (2016). Does cytomegalovirus infection contribute to socioeconomic disparities in all-cause mortality? *Mechanisms of Ageing and Development*, 158, 53–61.
- Fleck-Derderian, S., McClellan, W., & Wojcicki, J. M. (2017). The association between cytomegalovirus infection, obesity, and metabolic syndrome in U.S. adult females. *Obesity (Silver Spring)*, 25, 626–633.
- Frasca, D., Diaz, A., Romero, M., Landin, A. M., & Blomberg, B. B. (2015). Cytomegalovirus (CMV) seropositivity decreases B cell responses to the influenza vaccine. *Vaccine*, 33, 1433–1439.
- Furman, D., et al. (2015). Cytomegalovirus infection enhances the immune response to influenza. *Science Translational Medicine*, 7, 281ra243.
- Gkrania-Klotsas, E., Langenberg, C., Sharp, S. J., Luben, R., Khaw, K. T., & Wareham, N. J. (2013). Seropositivity and higher immunoglobulin G antibody levels against cytomegalovirus are associated with mortality in the population-based European prospective investigation of Cancer-Norfolk cohort. *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, 56, 1421–1427.
- Glaser, R., Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Speicher, C. E., & Holliday, J. E. (1985). Stress, loneliness, and changes in herpesvirus latency. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 8, 249–260.
- Goodrum, F. (2016). Human cytomegalovirus latency: Approaching the Gordian Knot. *Annual Review of Virology*, 3, 333–357.
- Gow, A. J., Firth, C. M., Harrison, R., Starr, J. M., Moss, P., & Deary, I. J. (2013). Cytomegalovirus infection and cognitive abilities in old age. *Neurobiology of Aging*, 34, 1846–1852.

- Grinde, B. (2013). Herpesviruses: Latency and reactivation – viral strategies and host response. *Journal of Oral Microbiology*, 5, 22766.
- Haeseker, M. B., et al. (2013). Association of cytomegalovirus and other pathogens with frailty and diabetes mellitus, but not with cardiovascular disease and mortality in psycho-geriatric patients; a prospective cohort study. *Immunity & Ageing*, 10, 30.
- Hansen, S. G., et al. (2010). Evasion of CD8+ T cells is critical for superinfection by cytomegalovirus. *Science*, 328, 102–106.
- ICTV (2019) International committee on taxonomy of viruses. <https://talk.ictvonline.org/>. Accessed 14 August 19.
- Iglesias-Escudero, M., et al. (2018). Levels of anti-CMV antibodies are modulated by the frequency and intensity of virus reactivations in kidney transplant patients. *PLoS One*, 13, e0194789.
- Janicki-Deverts, D., Cohen, S., Doyle, W. J., Marsland, A. L., & Bosch, J. (2014). Childhood environments and cytomegalovirus serostatus and reactivation in adults. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 40, 174–181.
- Jin, J., et al. (2014). Latent infection of human cytomegalovirus is associated with the development of gastric cancer. *Oncology Letters*, 8, 898–904.
- Li, H., Weng, P., Najarro, K., Xue, Q. L., Semba, R. D., Margolick, J. B., & Leng, S. X. (2014). Chronic CMV infection in older women: Longitudinal comparisons of CMV DNA in peripheral monocytes, anti-CMV IgG titers, serum IL-6 levels, and CMV pp65 (NLV)-specific CD8(+) T-cell frequencies with twelve year follow-up. *Experimental Gerontology*, 54, 84–89.
- Marinho-Dias, J., & Sousa, H. (2013). Cytomegalovirus infection and cervical cancer: From past doubts to present questions. *Acta Medica Portuguesa*, 26, 154–160.
- Mathei, C., Adriaensen, W., Vaes, B., Van Pottelbergh, G., Wallemacq, P., & Degryse, J. (2014). No relation between CMV infection and mortality in the oldest old: Results from the Belfrail study. *Age and Ageing*, 44, 130–135.
- Mehta, S. K., Stowe, R. P., Feiveson, A. H., Tying, S. K., & Pierson, D. L. (2000). Reactivation and shedding of cytomegalovirus in astronauts during spaceflight. *The Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 182, 1761–1764.
- Moro-Garcia, M. A., Alonso-Arias, R., Lopez-Vazquez, A., Suarez-Garcia, F. M., Solano-Jaurrieta, J. J., Baltar, J., & Lopez-Larrea, C. (2012). Relationship between functional ability in older people, immune system status, and intensity of response to CMV. *Age (Dordr)*, 34, 479–495.
- O'Connor, D., Truck, J., Lazarus, R., Clutterbuck, E. A., Voysey, M., Jeffery, K., & Pollard, A. J. (2014). The effect of chronic cytomegalovirus infection on pneumococcal vaccine responses. *The Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 209, 1635–1641.
- Olsson, J., Wikby, A., Johansson, B., Lofgren, S., Nilsson, B. O., & Ferguson, F. G. (2000). Age-related change in peripheral blood T-lymphocyte subpopulations and cytomegalovirus infection in the very old: The Swedish longitudinal OCTO immune study. *Mechanisms of Ageing and Development*, 121, 187–201.
- Pariante, C. M., et al. (1997). Chronic caregiving stress alters peripheral blood immune parameters: The role of age and severity of stress. *Psychotherapy and Psychosomatics*, 66, 199–207.
- Parry, H. M., et al. (2016). Cytomegalovirus viral load within blood increases markedly in healthy people over the age of 70 years. *Immunity & Ageing*, 13, 1.
- Phillips, A. C., Carroll, D., Khan, N., & Moss, P. (2008). Cytomegalovirus is associated with depression and anxiety in older adults. *Brain Behavior and Immunity*, 22, 52–55.
- Rahbar, A., Stragliotto, G., Orrego, A., Peredo, I., Taher, C., Willems, J., & Soderberg-Naucler, C. (2012). Low levels of Human Cytomegalovirus Infection in Glioblastoma multiforme associates with patient survival; –a case-control study. *Herpesviridae*, 3, 3.
- Rector, J. L., et al. (2014). Consistent associations between measures of psychological stress and CMV antibody levels in a large occupational sample. *Brain Behavior and Immunity*, 38, 133–141.
- Rector, J. L., et al. (2015). Elevated HbA(1c) levels and the accumulation of differentiated T cells in CMV(+) individuals. *Diabetologia*, 58, 2596–2605.
- Richardson, A. (1997). Is breast cancer caused by late exposure to a common virus? *Medical Hypotheses*, 48, 491–497.
- Richardson, A. K., et al. (2004). Cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr virus and risk of breast cancer before age 40 years: A case-control study. *British Journal of Cancer*, 90, 2149–2152.
- Richardson, A. K., et al. (2015). Cytomegalovirus and Epstein-Barr virus in breast cancer. *PLoS One*, 10, e0118989.
- Samanta, M., Harkins, L., Klemm, K., Britt, W. J., & Cobbs, C. S. (2003). High prevalence of human cytomegalovirus in prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia and prostatic carcinoma. *The Journal of Urology*, 170, 998–1002.
- Sarid, O., Anson, O., Yaari, A., & Margalith, M. (2003). Are coping resources related to humoral reaction induced by academic stress? An analysis of specific salivary antibodies to Epstein-Barr virus and cytomegalovirus. *Psychology, Health & Medicine*, 8, 106–117.
- Savva, G. M., Pachnio, A., Kaul, B., Morgan, K., Huppert, F. A., Brayne, C., & Moss, P. A. (2013). Cytomegalovirus infection is associated with increased mortality in the older population. *Aging Cell*, 12, 381–387.
- Simanek, A. M., Dowd, J. B., Pawelec, G., Melzer, D., Dutta, A., & Aiello, A. E. (2011). Seropositivity to cytomegalovirus, inflammation, all-cause and cardiovascular disease-related mortality in the United States. *PLoS One*, 6, e16103.
- Simpson, R. J., Bigley, A. B., Spielmann, G., LaVoy, E. C., Kunz, H., & Bollard, C. M. (2016). Human

- cytomegalovirus infection and the immune response to exercise. *Exercise Immunology Review*, 22, 8–27.
- Soderberg-Naucler, C. (2006). Does cytomegalovirus play a causative role in the development of various inflammatory diseases and cancer? *Journal of Internal Medicine*, 259, 219–246.
- Soderberg-Naucler, C., Rahbar, A., & Stragliotto, G. (2013). Survival in patients with glioblastoma receiving valganciclovir. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 369, 985–986.
- Spielmann, G., McFarlin, B. K., O'Connor, D. P., Smith, P. J., Pircher, H., & Simpson, R. J. (2011). Aerobic fitness is associated with lower proportions of senescent blood T-cells in man. *Brain Behavior and Immunity*, 25, 1521–1529.
- Staras, S. A., Dollard, S. C., Radford, K. W., Flanders, W. D., Pass, R. F., & Cannon, M. J. (2006). Seroprevalence of cytomegalovirus infection in the United States, 1988–1994. *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, 43, 1143–1151.
- Stowell, J. D., et al. (2012). Cytomegalovirus survival on common environmental surfaces: Opportunities for viral transmission. *Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 205, 211–214.
- Sung, H., & Schleiss, M. R. (2010). Update on the current status of cytomegalovirus vaccines. *Expert Review of Vaccines*, 9, 1303–1314.
- Sylwester, A. W., et al. (2005). Broadly targeted human cytomegalovirus-specific CD4⁺ and CD8⁺ T cells dominate the memory compartments of exposed subjects. *The Journal of Experimental Medicine*, 202, 673–685.
- Taher, C., et al. (2014). High prevalence of human cytomegalovirus in brain metastases of patients with primary breast and colorectal cancers. *Translational Oncology*, 7, 732–740.
- Torpy, J. M., Burke, A. E., & Glass, R. M. (2010). JAMA patient page cytomegalovirus. *JAMA*, 303, 1440.
- Turner, J. E., et al. (2014). Rudimentary signs of immunosenescence in Cytomegalovirus-seropositive healthy young adults. *Age (Dordr)*, 36, 287–297.
- van der Meer, J. T., et al. (1996). Summary of the international consensus symposium on advances in the diagnosis, treatment and prophylaxis and cytomegalovirus infection. *Antiviral Research*, 32, 119–140.
- Vitlic, A., Phillips, A. C., Gallagher, S., Oliver, C., Lord, J. M., & Moss, P. (2014). Anticytomegalovirus antibody titres are not associated with caregiving burden in younger caregivers. *British Journal of Health Psychology*, 20, 68–84.
- Wald, A., Selke, S., Magaret, A., & Boeckh, M. (2013). Impact of human cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection on immune response to pandemic 2009 H1N1 influenza vaccine in healthy adults. *Journal of Medical Virology*, 85, 1557–1560.

Cytotoxic T Cell Differentiation Factor

- [Interleukins, -1 \(IL-1\), -6 \(IL-6\), -18 \(IL-18\)](#)

D

Daily Diary

► [Diaries](#)

Daily Hassles

► [Daily Stress](#)

Daily Life Skills

► [Occupational Therapy](#)

Daily Mood Variation

► [Diurnal Mood Variation](#)

Daily Stress

C. Renn Upchurch Sweeney
Salt Lake City Healthcare System, Salt Lake City,
UT, USA

Synonyms

[Daily hassles](#); [Everyday problems](#)

Definition

Daily stress is defined as mundane hassles, strains, or annoyances associated with routine daily activities and transactions of everyday life. Daily stress is relatively minor, but has the potential to disrupt the flow of everyday life and add to overall levels of stress.

Daily stress can be both anticipated and unanticipated. Anticipated daily stressors include, for example, driving in rush hour traffic on the way home from work, paying bills, working long hours, job performance evaluations, or taking children to after-school activities. Unanticipated stressors may include arguments with spouse, car trouble, getting stuck in long lines at the grocery store, getting sick, losing one's keys, or inconveniences due to weather.

Description

Daily stressors are not inherently stressful events, but they are events that people might appraise as stressful. The experience of feeling stressed depends on what events one notices and how one appraises or interprets these events, which is referred to as the "primary appraisal." Events that are stressful for one person may be routine for another. For example, one may see an upcoming job interview as an exciting opportunity. Others may view it as terrifying. Theoretically, the person then engages in a "secondary appraisal" to

determine the adequacy of personal and social resources for dealing with the stressor.

Daily stress is different from major life stressors such as getting married, death of a loved one, or divorce. Unlike life events that call for people to make adjustments to their lives, daily hassles are part of everyday life. Daily stress is more frequent and continuous form of stress than less frequent events that constitute major life stressors. Because of its frequency it may be a more important determinant of stress than major life stressors.

Daily stress and minor hassles have been found to be important forms of stress. Research indicates that routine hassles may have significant harmful effects on mental and physical health (i.e., declines in physical health such as headaches or backaches or worsening of symptoms in those already suffering from illness). Minor hassles can produce stress and aggravate physical and psychological health in several ways. First, the effect of minor stressors can be cumulative. Each hassle may be relatively unimportant in itself, but after a day filled with minor hassles, the effects add up. The cumulative impact of small stressors may wear down an individual until the person eventually feels overwhelmed, drained, grumpy, or stressed out. The aggregate effects of everyday hassles have the potential to compromise well-being or predispose an individual to become ill. Second, daily stress can contribute to the stress produced by major life stressors and influence the relationship between major life events and illness. That is, daily stress can contribute to the stress produced by major life events. If a major life event is experienced at a time when minor life events are also high in number, the stress may be greater than it would otherwise be. Alternatively, major life events, either positive or negative, can also affect distress by increasing the number of daily hassles they create.

References and Readings

Cooper, C. L., & Derre, P. (2007). Stress: A brief history from the 1950s to Richard Lazarus. In A. Monat, R. S. Lazarus, & G. Reevy (Eds.), *The Praeger handbook on stress and coping* (2007th ed., Vol. 1, pp. 7–31). Westport: Greenwood Publishing.

Kohn, P. M. (1996). On coping adaptively with daily hassles. In M. Zeidner & N. S. Endler (Eds.), *Handbook of coping: Theory research, & applications* (pp. 181–201). Oxford: Wiley.

Taylor, S. (2006). *Health psychology* (6th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Weiten, W. (1995). *Themes and variations* (3rd ed.). Pacific Groove: Brooks/Cole.

Dangerous Drinking

► Binge Drinking

Data

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Numerical information](#); [Numerical representation of \(biological, psychological, behavioral\) information](#)

Definition

Data is a plural construct indicating more than one piece of numerical information. The singular form of the term is datum. Statistical analysis (certainly of the type useful in the discipline of behavioral medicine) almost always uses more than one piece of numerical information, and the term datum does not occur again in any other methodology entry in this encyclopedia.

Description

Accordingly, plural words are used in conjunction with the word data: “the data are, the data were, these data, the data show, etc.” If you are uncertain as to how to construct a phrase

including the word data, replace the word data in your mind with the word results. While the terms data and results are not truly synonymous, the word results is also a plural construct. This strategy will therefore likely help you express a phrase including the word data correctly.

Data can generally be classified into one of the following scales of measurement: nominal, ordinal, and ratio. Nominal scales involve names of characteristics. Common examples from behavioral medicine include sex (male and female subjects in a research study) and race or ethnicity. An ordinal scale is defined as one in which an ordering of values can be assigned. Age of study subjects categorized as less than 25 years of age, 25–30 years of age, and 31 years of age and older is one example. Data measured on a ratio scale can be manipulated in certain ways not possible with the previous scales. For example, someone weighing 220 pounds (lbs) can be said to weigh twice as much as another subject weighing 110 lbs. The same applies for height and age. The feature of the ratio scale that makes such comparisons possible is that the value of zero on the scale represents a true zero – a weight of zero and a height of zero (no matter what the unit of measurement) means that there is no weight or height, respectively.

You may have noticed what appears to be an initial contradiction in the previous paragraph: Age is discussed in both the ordinal scale and the ratio scale discussions. The reason for this apparent paradox is that data can be measured (recorded) on one scale but reported on another. Imagine that 100 subjects participate in a research study, and each of their ages is recorded in years and months. Then, for various reasons, the subjects are each placed into one of three ordinal categories: those aged less than 25 years of age, 25–30 years of age, and 31 years of age and older. This is perfectly acceptable, but any statistical analysis performed would have to take into account the scale on which the data are reported: Different analyses are appropriate for different kinds of data.

It is also of interest to note that, while it may be convenient to report the subjects' ages in this

ordinal fashion, a certain degree of precision in the information is lost. For example, two subjects aged 26 and 29 years, respectively, would both be placed in the middle category. Therefore, although they provide different raw data (their age in years and months) they contribute equally to the total number of subjects in that category.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Efficacy](#)
- ▶ [Sample Size Estimation](#)

Database Development and Management

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

The goal of experimental methodology and operational execution in behavioral medicine research, like all research, is to provide optimum quality data for subsequent statistical analysis and interpretation. These data need to be stored and managed. Databases facilitate such storage and management. Data management is therefore an important intermediary between data acquisition and data analysis.

Description

Analysis of data collected in behavioral medicine clinical trials is typically conducted using files of data contained in a database. It is of critical importance that the data collected from all sources are accurately captured in the database. A brief list of such data includes: subject identifiers (rather than their names); age, sex, height, and weight; questionnaire data concerning a multitude of topics;

and physiological measurements made before, during, and possibly after the treatment period(s).

A data management plan for a clinical trial is written along with the study protocol and possibly a statistical analysis plan before the study commences (statistical details can also be included in the study protocol). The data management plan identifies the documentation that will be produced as a result of all of the data collected during the conduct of the trial. This plan covers items such as:

- The form(s) on which raw (source) data will be recorded.
- Entering data.
- Cleaning the data.
- Creating data reports.
- Transferring data.
- Quality assurance processes.

The quality assurance (QA) component is vital. While differing definitions of quality activities can be found, Prokscha (2007) defined quality assurance (QA) as a process involving the prevention, detection, and correction of errors or problems, and quality control (QC) as a check of the process. The data stored in the database need to be complete and accurate. Processes that check data and correct them where necessary (i.e., make a change to the database) need to be formalized, and all corrections documented in an audit trail such that a later audit can reveal exactly how the final database was created. That is, following initial data entry, the audit trail will record “who, what, when, why” information for all changes subsequently made.

Having collected optimal quality data, first-rate data management is also critical. Many data that are collected can now be fed directly from the measuring instrument to computer databases, thereby avoiding the potential of human data entry error. However, this is not universally true. Therefore, careful strategies have been developed to scrutinize data as they are entered. The double-entry method requires that each data set is entered twice (usually by different operators) and that these entries are compared by a computer for any discrepancies. This method operates on the

premise that two identical errors are probabilistically very unlikely, and that every time the two entries match the data are correct. In contrast, dissimilar entries are identified, the source data located, and the correct data point entry confirmed.

To facilitate the eventual statistical analysis of the enormous amount of data acquired during a clinical trial, recording and maintaining them is extremely important. Database development, implementation, and maintenance therefore require attention. The goals of a database are to store data in a manner that facilitates prompt retrieval while not diminishing their security or integrity.

There are several types of database models. Clinical research typically utilizes one of two types, the flat file database or the relational database. Each has its advantages and disadvantages, and these will be considered by data managers before they decide which type to employ. The flat file database model is simple but restrictive, and it becomes less easy to use as the amount of data stored increases. This model can also lead to data redundancy (the same information, e.g., a subject’s birth date, being entered multiple times) and consequently to potential errors. This model works well for relatively small databases.

Relational databases are more flexible, but they can be complex, and careful initial work is needed. This work involves initial logical modeling of the database. The defining feature of a relational database is that data are stored in tables, and these tables can be related to each other. This reduces data redundancy. Subject identifiers in one table, for example, can be related to their heights in another table, their baseline blood pressure in another table, and so on, thereby eliminating the need to store identifiers with each individual set of measurements. Since these databases can contain huge amounts of tables, use of one of several commercially available relational database management systems is typical.

Cross-References

► [Study Protocol](#)

References and Further Reading

Prokscha, S. (2007). *Practical guide to clinical data management* (2nd ed.). Boca Raton: Taylor & Francis.

Dean Ornish

► [Ornish Program and Dean Ornish](#)
 ► [Preventive Medicine Research Institute \(Ornish\)](#)

Death

► [Mortality](#)

Death Anxiety

Chad Barrett
 Department of Psychology, University of
 Colorado Denver, CO, USA

Synonyms

[Fear of Death; Thanatophobia](#)

Definition

Death anxiety refers the fear of and anxiety related to the anticipation, and awareness, of dying, death, and nonexistence. It typically includes emotional, cognitive, and motivational components that vary according to a person's stage of development and sociocultural life experiences (Lehto and Stein 2009). Death anxiety is associated with fundamental brain structures that regulate fight-or-flight responses and record emotionally charged explicit and implicit memories (Panksepp 2004). Cognitive dimensions of death anxiety can include an awareness of the salience of death and a variety of beliefs, attitudes, images,

and thoughts concerning death, dying, and what happens after death (Lehto and Stein 2009). Death anxiety can be experienced consciously or unconsciously; it can motivate individuals to ameliorate their death anxiety through distraction (Greenberg et al. 1994), attempts to enhance self-esteem (Bassett 2007), or by pursuing positive life changes (Tedeschi and Calhoun 2004). Individuals experiences of death anxiety can be influenced by their developmental stage. Young adults are mostly concerned about dying too soon, and adult parents are mostly concerned about the effect of their possible death on other family members. Elderly adults are often more concerned with becoming a burden on others, dying alone, or dying among strangers (Kastenbaum 2000). Sociocultural influences can also shape the cognitive, experiential, and emotional components of death anxiety (Kübler-Ross 2002; Lehto and Stein 2009).

Description

Most people report some fear of death, but only a few people report high levels of death anxiety (Kastenbaum 2000). According to Noyes et al. (2000), only 3.8% of respondents indicated that they were much more nervous than most people about death or dying, and 9.8% indicated they were somewhat more nervous than most people. Stressful experiences can often increase a person's level of death anxiety, (e.g., life-threatening encounters, tragedies, disasters, health problems, illness, or death of a friend or family member, etc.) (Kastenbaum). A meta-analysis of research on death attitudes among older adults indicated that health problems were associated with elevated levels of death anxiety (Fortner and Neimeyer 1999). In a later review of the literature on death attitudes, Neimeyer et al. (2004) noted that the relationship between death anxiety and health problems is sometimes equivocal. While many studies found positive associations between health problems and death anxiety, others found no significant relationship. Neimeyer et al. discussed more sophisticated studies and that such conflicting findings may be the result of

moderator variables such as social support, coping styles, and religious beliefs. Increased social support, approach- and acceptance-based coping strategies, intrinsic religiosity, and beliefs in a positive afterlife are typically associated with less death anxiety.

Cross-References

- [End-of-Life Care](#)
- [Palliative Care](#)

References and Readings

- Bassett, J. A. (2007). Psychological defenses against death anxiety: Integrating terror management theory and Firestone's separation theory. *Death Studies*, 31, 727–750.
- Fortner, B. V., & Neimeyer, R. A. (1999). Death anxiety in older adults: A quantitative review. *Death Studies*, 23, 387–411.
- Greenberg, J., Pyszczynski, T., Solomon, S., Simon, L., & Breus, M. (1994). Role of consciousness and accessibility of death-related thoughts in mortality salience effects. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 67, 627–637.
- Kastenbaum, R. (2000). *The psychology of death* (3rd ed.). New York: Springer.
- Kübler-Ross, E. (2002). *On death and dying: Questions and answers on death and dying; On life after death*. New York: Quality Paper Book Club.
- Lehto, R. H., & Stein, K. F. (2009). Death anxiety: An analysis of evolving concept. *Research and Theory for Nursing Practice: An International Journal*, 23, 23–41.
- Neimeyer, R. A., Wittkowski, J., & Moser, R. P. (2004). Psychological research on death attitudes: An overview and evaluation. *Death Studies*, 28, 309–340.
- Noyes, R., Jr., Hartz, A. J., Doebbeling, C. C., Malis, R. W., Happel, R. L., Werner, L. A., et al. (2000). Illness fears in the general population. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 62, 318–325.
- Panksepp, J. (2004). *The foundations of human and animal emotions*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Tedeschi, R. G., & Calhoun, L. G. (2004). Posttraumatic growth: Conceptual foundations and empirical evidence. *Psychological Inquiry*, 15, 1–18.

Death, Sudden

Ana Victoria Soto¹ and William Whang²

¹Medicine – Residency Program, Columbia

University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

²Division of Cardiology, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Sudden cardiac death](#)

Definition

Death within 1 h of the onset of acute symptoms.

Description

Sudden cardiac death (SCD) is an important public health problem, with an annual incidence estimated between 180,000 and 250,000 cases in the United States. The working definition of SCD is death within 1 h of the onset of symptoms, in the absence of preceding evidence of severe pump failure. In prior decades, the majority of SCD cases have been estimated to occur due to rapid cardiac arrhythmia, specifically ventricular tachycardia (VT) and ventricular fibrillation (VF). More recent data indicate that VT/VF is the presenting rhythm in SCD about 30–40% of the time. SCD may also occur due to life-threatening slow heart rhythms (bradycardia) or due to other causes such as massive pulmonary embolism or intracranial hemorrhage (Hinkle and Thaler 1982; Lloyd-Jones et al. 2010).

In prospective cohort studies, women have a lower incidence of sudden death than men. Coronary artery disease (CAD) is the most common finding in SCD and is discovered in as many as 80% of SCD cases. However, among the large population of patients with coronary artery disease, the absolute risk of SCD is still low. In addition, a substantial proportion of SCDs occur in the absence of known prior heart disease. Clinical risk factors for SCD have been developed, and

Death Rate

- [Mortality Rates](#)

the most reliable of which is reduced left ventricular ejection fraction by cardiac imaging such as echocardiogram. However, the prevailing clinical indicators of risk are still limited in their specificity, and identification of individuals at high risk remains a major challenge (Chugh et al. 2008).

Two major mechanisms have been implicated in SCD in the setting of CAD. First, acute plaque rupture may lead to coronary artery occlusion, inadequate blood flow to cardiac muscle (ischemia), and subsequent VT and VF. Another potential mechanism related to CAD results from the presence of myocardial scar from a prior myocardial infarction. With this myocardial substrate, heterogeneity in depolarization and conduction can allow for the development of reentry, in which a tachycardia circuit develops and which manifests as VT that can eventually degenerate to VF. Other underlying cardiac abnormalities can also predispose to SCD. For instance, cardiomyopathies due to causes other than CAD (e.g., alcohol, long-standing hypertension, sarcoidosis) are also associated with SCD. In addition, primary electrical abnormalities, such as inherited ion channel disorders, are relatively rare but potent causes of sustained ventricular arrhythmia in the absence of structural heart disease (Virmani et al. 2001).

The major treatment against SCD is a preventive therapy, the implantable cardioverter-defibrillator. Randomized controlled trials of primary prevention ICD therapy have demonstrated survival benefit in patients with left ventricular ejection fraction <0.36 and with symptoms of congestive heart failure (Bardy et al. 2005; Moss et al. 2002).

A number of studies have noted an association between psychosocial factors, in particular depression, and SCD. For instance, Empana et al. examined data from enrollees of a health maintenance organization in Washington state, in a case control study involving 2228 out-of-hospital cardiac arrests. Cases of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest ($n = 2228$) among patients aged 40–79 years were identified from emergency medical service incident reports, and their ambulatory medical records were examined for the existence of depression. Compared with non-depressed subjects, the adjusted odds ratio of cardiac arrest was increased in less severely depressed subjects (OR 1.30, 95% CI 1.04–1.63)

and further increased in severely depressed (OR 1.77, 95% CI 1.28–2.45) (Empana et al. 2006). In a cohort analysis involving 915 individuals aged 70 years or older in northern Finland, Luukinen et al. found that depression was associated with increased risk of sudden death (HR 2.74, 95% CI 1.37–5.50), whereas the risk of non-sudden death was not significantly increased (Luukinen et al. 2003). In the Nurses' Health Study of 63,000 female nurses without known cardiovascular disease at study outset, cohort analyses indicated a significant association between depression and SCD in multivariable models that included hypertension, diabetes, and hypercholesterolemia (HR 2.33, 95% CI 1.47–3.70). The relationship of depression at study outset to subsequent SCD appeared to be related to a specific association with antidepressant use (Whang et al. 2009). A separate cohort analysis of the Nurses' Health Study included 72,359 women with no history of cardiovascular disease or cancer in 1988 and used the Crown-Crisp Index to assess phobic anxiety. During 12 years of follow-up, women who scored 4 or greater on the CCI were at higher risk of SCD (HR 1.59, 95% CI 0.97–2.60). After adjustment for possible intermediaries (hypertension, diabetes, and elevated cholesterol), a trend toward increased risk persisted for SCD ($P = 0.06$) (Albert et al. 2005).

Cross-References

► Sudden Cardiac Death

References and Further Reading

- Albert, C. M., Chae, C. U., Rexrode, K. M., Manson, J. E., & Kawachi, I. (2005). Phobic anxiety and risk of coronary heart disease and sudden cardiac death among women. *Circulation*, 111(4), 480–487.
- Bardy, G. H., Lee, K. L., Mark, D. B., Poole, J. E., Packer, D. L., Boineau, R., et al. (2005). Amiodarone or an implantable cardioverter-defibrillator for congestive heart failure. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 352(3), 225–237.
- Chugh, S. S., Reinier, K., Teodorescu, C., Evanado, A., Kehr, E., Al Samara, M., et al. (2008). Epidemiology of sudden cardiac death: Clinical and research implications. *Progress in Cardiovascular Diseases*, 51(3), 213–228.

- Empana, J. P., Jouven, X., Lemaitre, R. N., Sotoodehnia, N., Rea, T., Raghunathan, T. E., et al. (2006). Clinical depression and risk of out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 166(2), 195–200.
- Hinkle, L. E., Jr., & Thaler, J. T. (1982). Clinical classification of cardiac deaths. *Circulation*, 65, 457–464.
- Lloyd-Jones, D., Adams, R. J., Brown, T. M., Carnethon, M., Dai, S., De Simone, G., et al. (2010). Executive summary: Heart disease and stroke statistics-2010 update: A report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*, 121(7), 948–954.
- Luukinen, H., Laippala, P., & Huikuri, H. V. (2003). Depressive symptoms and the risk of sudden cardiac death among the elderly. *European Heart Journal*, 24(22), 2021–2026.
- Moss, A. J., Zareba, W., Hall, W. J., Klein, H., Wilber, D. J., Cannom, D. S., et al. (2002). Prophylactic implantation of a defibrillator in patients with myocardial infarction and reduced ejection fraction. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 346(12), 877–883.
- Virmani, R., Burke, A. P., & Farb, A. (2001). Sudden cardiac death. *Cardiovascular Pathology*, 10, 211–218.
- Whang, W., Kubzansky, L. D., Kawachi, I., Rexrode, K. M., Kroenke, C. H., Glynn, R. J., et al. (2009). Depression and risk of sudden cardiac death and coronary heart disease in women: Results from the Nurses' Health Study. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 53(11), 950–958.

Decision Aid

Jacqueline A. ter Stege¹ and Kerry Sherman²

¹Psychosocial Research and Epidemiology, Netherlands Cancer Institute, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

²Department of Psychology, Centre for Emotional Health, Macquarie University, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Synonyms

Decision support tool; Patient decision aid; Patient decision support technology

Definition

A decision aid is a tool designed to facilitate the process of shared decision-making between patients and physicians. Decision aids have

typically been developed for preference sensitive health decisions where the patient's preferences and values are critical for identifying how best to proceed. A decision aid aims to clarify the choice that has to be made and provide understandable information about treatment options, including the likely benefits and harms of each option. Also, it helps to clarify personal values of the patient, often through the use of value clarification exercises, and supports patients to make well-informed decisions that align with their personal preferences and values. As an adjunct to clinical consultation, decision aids can be used prior to, during ("encounter tools"), and/or after the physician consultation. The format of decision aids ranges from paper-based booklets, videos or DVDs, and web-based applications, to face-to-face/live interventions, such as an extra consultation with a social worker. The International Patient Decision Aids Standards (IPDAS) outlines a set of criteria that guide the development of decision aids, including their developmental process, content, and function, and that provide a framework by which decision aids can be judged for quality (Elwyn et al. 2006; Joseph-Williams et al. 2014). IPDAS quality criteria include among others whether the decision aid provides realistic and accurate expectations of risk and whether there is evidence that the decision aid improves patients' knowledge and leads to decisions that reflect the values held by the decision aid user (Joseph-Williams et al. 2014; Elwyn et al. 2006).

Description

Over the last two decades, there has been an increase in the development and evaluation of decision aids across a range of medical and health contexts (Stacey et al. 2017). Decision aids have been developed to assist patients with medical decisions about prevention (e.g., hepatitis B vaccination), screening and diagnosis (e.g., prostate cancer screening), and treatment (e.g., medication for diabetes, cancer surgery). An overview of some publicly available decision aids can be found at <https://decisionaid.ohri.nl>.

In general, compared with standard counseling, decision aids have been found to be effective in reducing patient decisional conflict, improving patient knowledge about the treatment options, helping patients feel clearer about personal values, and improving risk perceptions of patients without increasing anxiety (Stacey et al. 2017). Patients that have used a decision aid report feeling more involved in the medical decision-making process and more able to participate in effective communications with clinicians (Stacey et al. 2017).

Although studies on the effects of decision aids on the decision-making process from the clinicians' perspective are scarce, their results suggest that using decision aids can be mutually beneficial for patients as well as clinicians. Decision aids are likely to improve clinicians' satisfaction with the medical decision-making process, and clinicians who used a decision aid considered the tool to provide patients with more helpful information than usual care (Dobler et al. 2019; Sherman et al. 2017). Clinicians report added value from the use of a decision aid, for example, by positively challenging patients' preconceived ideas and by facilitating more structured and coherent consultations (Dobler et al. 2019).

The impact of the use of a decision aid on the actual chosen option differs among contexts (Stacey et al. 2017). It has been suggested that the use of a decision aid might decrease the uptake of an option if there is overuse of that option and might increase the uptake of an option if there is under-use of that option (Stacey et al. 2016). Other studies found no impact of the use of a decision aid on the actual choice made (Stacey et al. 2017).

Moreover, the impact of decision aids on consultation time is yet unknown. A Cochrane review identified ten studies investigating this topic and concluded that the median effect of decision aids on consultation length was 2.6 min longer (Stacey et al. 2017). However, only two studies found a significant increase in consultation length in the decision aid group, while eight studies found no difference between the decision aid group and usual care (Stacey et al. 2017).

As an intervention designed for public use in medical contexts, it is surprising how little is

known about the cost-effectiveness of decision aids (Trenaman et al. 2014), although evidence is emerging that decision aids can be beneficial and cost-effective (Parkinson et al. 2018; Cantor et al. 2015).

More research is required about what elements of a decision aid are particularly effective, in what format a decision aid is most effective, and on the optimal timing of provision of a decision aid (Stacey et al. 2017). This could provide insight into unanswered questions like whether or not adding explicit value clarification exercises or patient narratives illustrating other people's experiences with their decision-making process increases a decision aid's effectiveness in improving informed decision-making (Bekker et al. 2013; Fagerlin et al. 2013; Syrowatka et al. 2016).

Albeit the evidence on their efficacy is growing, the implementation of decision aids in clinical practice is only progressing slowly (Elwyn et al. 2013). Multiple barriers and facilitators for their implementation have been identified, consisting of factors related to clinicians, patients, organizations, and the healthcare system (Légaré et al. 2008; Elwyn et al. 2013). Lack of time is often considered as a barrier for using decision aids by clinicians, as is the concern about disruption to established workflows and a lack of training in using the decision aid (Légaré et al. 2008; Scalia et al. 2019; Elwyn et al. 2013). Furthermore, a lack of ownership of the decision aids and a lack of (financial) incentives have also been repeatedly stated as barriers for implementation (Elwyn et al. 2013). Strategies suggested to support the implementation include automating decision aid distribution, making decision aids easily available electronically and having them available on hospitals' electronic medical records, reimbursing their use, and making the use of decision aids a quality of care indicator (Scholl et al. 2018).

Cross-References

- [Clinical Decision-Making](#)
- [Health Education](#)
- [Medical Decision-Making](#)
- [Patient-Centered Care](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bekker, H. L., Winterbottom, A. E., Butow, P., Dillard, A. J., Feldman-Stewart, D., Fowler, F. J., et al. (2013). Do personal stories make patient decision aids more effective? A critical review of theory and evidence. *BMC Medical Informatics and Decision Making*, 13 (Suppl 2), S9. <https://doi.org/10.1186/1472-6947-13-s2-s9>.
- Cantor, S. B., Rajan, T., Linder, S. K., & Volk, R. J. (2015). A framework for evaluating the cost-effectiveness of patient decision aids: A case study using colorectal cancer screening. *Preventive Medicine*, 77, 168–173. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ypmed.2015.05.003>.
- Dobler, C. C., Sanchez, M., Gionfriddo, M. R., Alvarez-Villalobos, N. A., Singh Ospina, N., Spencer-Bonilla, G., et al. (2019). Impact of decision aids used during clinical encounters on clinician outcomes and consultation length: A systematic review. *BMJ Quality and Safety*, 28(6), 499–510. <https://doi.org/10.1136/bmjqs-2018-008022>.
- Elwyn, G., O'Connor, A., Stacey, D., Volk, R., Edwards, A., Coulter, A., et al. (2006). Developing a quality criteria framework for patient decision aids: Online international Delphi consensus process. *BMJ*, 333(7565), 417. <https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.38926.629329.AE>.
- Elwyn, G., Scholl, I., Tietbohl, C., Mann, M., Edwards, A. G., Clay, C., et al. (2013). “Many miles to go . . .”: a systematic review of the implementation of patient decision support interventions into routine clinical practice. *BMC Medical Informatics and Decision Making*, 13(Suppl 2), S14. <https://doi.org/10.1186/1472-6947-13-s2-s14>.
- Fagerlin, A., Pignone, M., Abhyankar, P., Col, N., Feldman-Stewart, D., Gavaruzzi, T., et al. (2013). Clarifying values: An updated review. *BMC Medical Informatics and Decision Making*, 13(Suppl 2), S8. <https://doi.org/10.1186/1472-6947-13-s2-s8>.
- Joseph-Williams, N., Newcombe, R., Politi, M., Durand, M. A., Sivell, S., Stacey, D., et al. (2014). Toward minimum standards for certifying patient decision aids: A modified delphi consensus process. *Medical Decision Making*, 34(6), 699–710. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0272989x13501721>.
- Légaré, F., Ratte, S., Gravel, K., & Graham, I. D. (2008). Barriers and facilitators to implementing shared decision-making in clinical practice: Update of a systematic review of health professionals' perceptions. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 73(3), 526–535. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pec.2008.07.018>.
- Parkinson, B., Sherman, K. A., Brown, P., Shaw, L. E., Boyages, J., Cameron, L. D., et al. (2018). Cost-effectiveness of the BRECONDA decision aid for women with breast cancer: Results from a randomized controlled trial. *Psychooncology*, 27(6), 1589–1596. <https://doi.org/10.1002/pon.4698>.
- Scalia, P., Durand, M. A., Berkowitz, J. L., Ramesh, N. P., Faber, M. J., Kremer, J. A. M., et al. (2019). The impact and utility of encounter patient decision aids: Systematic review, meta-analysis and narrative synthesis. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 102(5), 817–841. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pec.2018.12.020>.
- Scholl, I., LaRussa, A., Hahlweg, P., Kobrin, S., & Elwyn, G. (2018). Organizational- and system-level characteristics that influence implementation of shared decision-making and strategies to address them – a scoping review. *Implementation Science*, 13(1), 40. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s13012-018-0731-z>.
- Sherman, K. A., Shaw, L. K., Jørgensen, L., Harcourt, D., Cameron, L., Boyages, J., et al. (2017). Qualitatively understanding patients' and health professionals' experiences of the BRECONDA breast reconstruction decision aid. *Psychooncology*, 26(10), 1618–1624. <https://doi.org/10.1002/pon.4346>.
- Stacey, D., Légaré, F., Eden, K., Col, N., & LeBlanc, A. (2016). The effects of patients decision aids: A systematic review. In G. Elwyn, A. Edwards, & R. Thomson (Eds.), *Shared decision making in health care. Achieving evidence-based patient choice* (pp. 144–149). Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Stacey, D., Légaré, F., Lewis, K., Barry, M. J., Bennett, C. L., Eden, K. B., et al. (2017). Decision aids for people facing health treatment or screening decisions. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 4, Cd001431. <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD001431.pub5>.
- Syrowatka, A., Kromker, D., Meguerditchian, A. N., & Tamblyn, R. (2016). Features of computer-based decision aids: Systematic review, thematic synthesis, and meta-analyses. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 18(1), e20. <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.4982>.
- Trenaman, L., Bryan, S., & Bansback, N. (2014). The cost-effectiveness of patient decision aids: A systematic review. *Healthcare*, 2(4), 251–257. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.hjdsi.2014.09.002>.

Decision Analysis

► Clinical Decision-Making

Decision Authority

► Job Demand/Control/Strain

Decision Latitude

► Job Demand/Control/Strain

Decision Support Tool

► [Decision Aid](#)

Deep Sleep

► [Slow-Wave Sleep](#)

Defense Mechanism

► [Denial](#)

Defensive Coping

► [Defensiveness](#)

Defensive Denial

► [Defensiveness](#)

Defensiveness

Carolyn Korb¹ and Sonia Matwin²

¹The Neurobehavioral Clinic and Counseling Center, Lake Forest, CA, USA

²Department of Psychiatry, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Avoidant coping](#); [Defensive coping](#); [Defensive denial](#); [Repression](#); [Repressive coping](#)

Definition

Defensiveness is defined as a coping strategy that is characterized by a general orientation away

from threatening self-relevant information and a denial or minimization of negative affects such as distress, anxiety, or anger.

Description

Defensiveness is characterized by a general orientation away from threatening self-relevant information and a denial or minimization of negative affects such as distress, anxiety, or anger (Weinberger et al. 1979). Self-relevant information that is perceived as being inconsistent with personal goals and beliefs is likely to trigger defensive coping reactions (Croyle et al. 1997). Defensiveness appears to occur normatively in response to self-relevant health risk information, but also to vary across individuals as a more enduring orientation to coping with distress. There is much conceptual overlap between defensiveness, repressive coping, avoidant coping, and denial in the literature, in that each share a core coping process of minimizing, denying, or repressing distress, negative affect, or distressing information to serve emotion regulation goals (Myers 2010).

Defensiveness has been most frequently assessed through the use of measures of self-reported defensiveness (Weinberger et al. 1979), such as the Marlowe-Crowne Social Desirability Scale (MCSD; Crowne and Marlowe 1960). Those who score high on social desirability are thought to minimize, deny, or repress negative emotions such as anxiety and anger, reflecting a defensive or self-deceptive orientation to the self that involves avoidance of distress-arousing thoughts. Measures of self-reported trait anxiety are also frequently used in conjunction with the MCSD to identify those who minimize or deny negative affects and who score high on defensiveness to capture a true defensive or, interchangeably, repressive coping group (Myers 2010; Weinberger et al. 1979). Those who have a defensive or repressive coping style are less likely to report negative affect, distress, somatic symptoms, and chronic stress across a variety of tasks, experimental conditions, and self-report measures. Although defensive/repressive copers

deny distress in response to stressful experimental conditions, physiological indicators of distress are often observed.

Defensiveness occurs rather frequently in the population. It has been estimated that 10–20% of the general population, 30–50% of those with particular chronic illnesses, and up to 50% of the elderly use defensive or repressive coping strategies (see Myers 2010 for a review). In the context of behavioral medicine, defensiveness appears to prompt cognitive, behavioral, and physiological variations, which may have important implications for health. Specifically, the current literature suggests that:

1. Defensiveness is associated with information processing variations that occur normatively in response to self-relevant health threat information.
2. Defensiveness may have direct effects on physiological functioning.
3. Defensiveness is associated with greater morbidity and mortality in a number of chronic illnesses and disease states.

Defensive Cognitive Processing

Defensiveness influences the way that information is processed when threatening self-relevant information is perceived. Defensive cognitive processing variations appear to occur normatively in response to perceiving personally threatening health risk information. Defensive denial processes tend to appear early in the health-threat appraisal process and tend to diminish over time. They are less extreme when individuals are aware of direct actions to eliminate the threat, and are less common when positive states and experiences (e.g., positive mood, optimism, self-affirmation) are bolstered prior to threat perception, or when active coping alternatives are available and reasonable to execute. Defensive cognitive processing variations such as (a) minimization of the seriousness of health threats, (b) self-serving prevalence estimates, (c) tendencies to denigrate the accuracy or validity of an undesirable test result, and (d) biased

processing of health risk information occur frequently in response to perceived health-threat information. These normative defensive processes may play an important role in regulating emotional distress in the short term so that rational health-protective actions can be identified, enacted, and maintained (Croyle et al. 1997; Wiebe and Korbel 2003).

Physiological Effects of Defensiveness

An emerging literature has identified links between a generalized defensive or repressive coping style and physiological variations in responding which may have direct impacts on health (see Myers 2010 for a review). It has been hypothesized that the effort required to repress, minimize, or deny negative thoughts and emotions characteristic of defensive coping may result in heightened autonomic reactivity and may impact cardiovascular arousal. Defensiveness has been associated with increased cardiovascular reactivity to stress via increased sympathetic demand when defensive processes are initiated and maintained. Homeostatic changes in baseline cardiovascular functioning are thought to occur over time in response to increased sympathetic reactivity. Cardiovascular disease risk may be increased in defensives through a physiological mechanism of increased stress reactivity, possibly triggering changes in vascular functions or structure that may alter resting blood pressure levels.

Increased Prevalence of Morbidity and Mortality Among Defensive Copers

There is an extensive body of literature that links trait-like defensive and repressive coping with poor physical health (see Myers et al. 2007 for a comprehensive review). Repressive/defensive coping appears to both contribute to poor health and disease progression, and to also be used more frequently among those with chronic illnesses. There is a fairly extensive literature linking repressive coping with increased risk for mortality in coronary heart disease (CHD) and myocardial

infarction (MI). Repressive coping is associated with a twofold increased risk of death, MI, and other cardiac events. In addition, heightened levels of defensiveness are associated with hypertension, high blood pressure, as well as high lipid and glucose levels. For example, high scores on the MCSD have been associated with elevated blood pressure and heart rate reactivity. Additional support for the association between defensiveness and elevated blood pressure in the general population was found in Jorgensen et al. (1996) meta-analysis. Further, a meta-analysis by Mund and Mitte (2011) suggested that repressive copers are at greater risk of developing cancer and coronary heart disease.

Cross-References

- [Cancer Risk Perceptions](#)
- [Coping](#)
- [Defensive Coping](#)
- [Denial](#)
- [Health Behaviors](#)
- [Repressive Coping](#)

References and Readings

- Crowne, D. P., & Marlowe, D. (1960). A new scale of social desirability independent of psychopathology. *Journal of Consulting Psychology*, 24(4), 349–354.
- Croyle, R. T., Sun, Y., & Hart, M. (1997). Processing risk factor information: Defensive biases in health-related judgments and memory. In K. Petrie & J. Weinman (Eds.), *Perceptions of health and illness: Current research and applications* (pp. 267–290). London: Harwood Academic.
- Jorgensen, R. S., Johnson, B. T., Kolodziej, M. E., & Schreer, G. E. (1996). Elevated blood pressure and personality: A meta-analytic review. *Psychological Bulletin*, 120(2), 293–320.
- Mund, M., & Mitte, K. (2011). The costs of repression: A meta-analysis on the relation between repressive coping and somatic diseases. *Health Psychology*. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0026257>. Nov 14, 2011 (No pagination specified).
- Myers, L. (2010). The importance of the repressive coping style: Findings from 30 years of research. *Anxiety, Stress, and Coping*, 23(1), 3–17.
- Myers, L., Burns, J. W., Derakshan, N., Elfant, E., Eysenck, M. W., & Phipps, S. (2007). Current issues

in repressive coping and health. In J. Denollet, I. Nyklicek, & A. Vingerhoets (Eds.), *Emotion regulation: Conceptual and clinical issues* (pp. 69–86). New York: Springer.

- Weinberger, D. A., Schwartz, G. E., & Davidson, R. J. (1979). Low-anxious, high-anxious and repressive coping styles: Psychometric patterns and behavioral responses to stress. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, 88, 369–380.
- Wiebe, D. J., & Korbel, C. (2003). Defensive denial, affect, and the self-regulation of health threats. In L. Cameron & H. Leventhal (Eds.), *The self-regulation of health and illness behavior* (pp. 184–203). New York: Harwood Academic.

Degenerative Diseases: Disc or Spine

Daniel Gorrin

Department of Physical Therapy, University of Delaware, Newark, DE, USA

Definition

The intervertebral disc is a structure located between adjacent vertebral bodies that functions primarily as a shock absorber. The disc is comprised of a fibrocartilaginous outer layer called the annulus fibrosus and a gelatinous inner layer called the nucleus pulposus (made up of collagen fibrils embedded within a water/mucopolysaccharide mix). The disc is connected to the cartilaginous end plates located on the cranial and caudal aspects of the vertebral bodies. The end plates assist in providing the disc with nutrients.

Degenerative disc disease is a potential cause of back pain marked by an atraumatic, gradual onset of symptoms. Due to its primary function as a shock absorber, the disc is subject to significant “wear and tear” during the course of a lifetime. As the patient increases in age, the disc may undergo a degenerative process in which water is lost from the nucleus pulposus and replaced with fibrocartilage. Systemic, cellular, and biochemical changes related to aging may also contribute to degeneration of the disc. Pain resulting from

degenerative disc disease is thought to be caused by a combination of irritation of the disc's nociceptive fibers and inflammatory products found within the damaged disc.

The degenerative process can also affect the outer layer of the disc, the annulus fibrosis, which could increase the risk of a herniation of the nucleus pulposus. Tears in the annulus or degeneration of the annulus can limit the structure's ability to contain the gel-like nucleus. Release of the nucleus can cause impingement and irritation of the surrounding spinal nerve roots or even the spinal cord itself. This condition (commonly referred to as a "bulging" or "herniated" disc) can result in localized pain at the site of the herniation or pain in the areas supplied by the nerve (radiculopathy).

Patients who experience degenerative disc disease or a disc herniation are likely to regain full function with non-operative treatment. Physical therapy interventions including mobilization, manipulation, traction, core stabilization exercises, electrical stimulation, and biofeedback are used in treatment of these conditions. Appropriate pharmacological intervention, nerve root injections, and epidural injections can also help provide pain relief. Operative treatment may be indicated if the patient presents with severe neurological deficits or receives no benefit from conservative treatment.

References and Readings

- Boyling, J. D., & Palastanga, N. (1994). *Grieve's modern manual therapy* (2nd ed.). New York: Churchill Livingstone.
- Drake, R. L., Wayne Vogl, A., & Mitchell, A. W. M. (2010). *Gray's anatomy for students* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone Elsevier.
- Magee, D. J., Zachazewski, J. E., & Quillen, W. S. (2009). *Pathology and intervention in musculoskeletal rehabilitation* (1st ed.). St. Louis: Saunders Elsevier.
- McGill, S. (2002). *Low back disorders: Evidence based prevention and rehabilitation* (1st ed.). Champaign: Human Kinetics.
- Yue, J. J., Guyer, R. D., Johnson, J. P., Khoo, L. T., & Hochschuler, S. H. (2011). *The comprehensive treatment of the aging spine: Minimally invasive and advanced techniques* (1st ed.). Philadelphia: Elsevier Saunders.

Degenerative Diseases: Joint

Beth Schroeder

University of Delaware, Newark, DE, USA

Synonyms

[Chronic inflammatory polyarthritis; RA](#)

Definition

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) is a chronic inflammatory condition that affects the synovium of joints in the body. While the exact cause of RA is unknown, it is considered to be an autoimmune condition, in which the body attacks its own healthy cells. In a normal, healthy joint, the synovial membrane provides synovial fluid that functions to reduce friction and lubricate the joint surfaces and to provide nutrients to the cartilage. With RA, the synovial membrane becomes inflamed and thickens, forming a pannus. A pannus is an accumulation of tissue that ultimately causes damage to structures in the joint capsule, such as the cartilage, subchondral bone, and even ligaments.

RA presents with periods of both exacerbation and remission. The typical signs and symptoms of RA include pain, morning stiffness, swelling, and decreased mobility of the affected joints. Normally, multiple joints are affected in a symmetric pattern, with both sides of the body being affected. The small joints of the hands and feet are the most common joints to be affected, as well as the cervical spine. As the condition progresses, laxity in the ligaments supporting the joint may develop, causing joint deformities or dislocations.

RA's symptoms are not only musculoskeletal, but the condition can also affect the cardiovascular, renal, and pulmonary systems that may also present in this condition, including fatigue, loss of appetite, and decreased endurance. In some patients, firm skin nodules may form in areas such as the elbows or fingers. It

usually presents between the ages of 20–50 years old, and females are more affected.

Although there is no cure for RA, there are pharmacotherapy treatment options that target the pain and inflammation with hopes of slowing the progressive of the disease. The use of medications includes analgesics, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), corticosteroids, disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs), and biologic response modifiers (BMRs). Physical therapy is also a critical component in the management of RA. During periods of an active flare, joint protection and rest are the most important. Exercise, though, should still be a component of treatment, organized into short bouts with frequent rest periods to limit fatigue. In order to prevent deformations and maintain adequate range of motion, it is very important that patients consistently change positions of the affected joints. If swelling is not present, it is also recommended that light stretching be done.

Because the manifestations of RA are irreversible, management and treatment of RA is a lifelong process. It is essential for patients to work closely with their health care providers in order to establish an individualized treatment plan in order to maintain as much functional independence as possible.

References and Readings

- A.D.A.M. Medical Encyclopedia [Internet]. (2010). *Rheumatoid arthritis* (p. 6). Atlanta: A.D.A.M. [Last reviewed February 07, 2010; cited April 18, 2011]. Retrieved from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmedhealth/PMH0001467/>
- Goodman, C. C., & Fuller, K. S. (2009). *Pathology: Implications for the physical therapist* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: Saunders Elsevier.
- Kisner, C., & Colby, L. A. (2002). *Therapeutic exercise*. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis Company.

Degenerative Parkinsonism

► Parkinson's Disease: Psychosocial Aspects

Degrees of Freedom

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Degrees of freedom may be defined as the number of squares of deviations from the mean minus the number of independent linear restrictions placed upon the quantities involves. For n numbers there are n squares of deviations from the mean, of which only $(n - 1)$ are independent. That is, when $(n - 1)$ are specified, the n th is also specified.

Description

This is the most esoteric definition in the Methodology category of entries, and please do not be concerned if it sounds a little hard to digest. The following scenario will make it much clearer.

Suppose you are asked a question: "Choose any five numbers that add up to 100." How much choice do you actually have? A few moments' thought will reveal that you only have four choices. You can choose any four numbers you wish, but having done so, you have no choice about the fifth. Whatever the sum of the four numbers you have chosen, only one number will take you from there to 100, and hence you have no choice.

Now consider this issue in a slightly different way, but one that is precisely equivalent: "Choose any five numbers that have a mean of 20." This is an equivalent task since any five numbers that have a mean of 20 will add up to 100. Therefore, once again, there are only four choices: These four choices precisely determine the value that must be chosen as the fifth. Hence, in a group of scores with a fixed mean, there is one less degree of freedom than the total number of scores. This explanation ties in to the information provided in

the entry titled ► [“Variance,”](#) in which the calculation of variance from a term called “the sum of squares” is described: Variance is obtained by dividing the sum of squares by the degrees of freedom.

A word of further explanation is in order here. While the term $(n - 1)$ is used by the majority of statisticians, it is possible that you might on occasion see the term n used as the denominator instead of $(n - 1)$ when calculating variance. The mathematical reasoning behind the statement that $(n - 1)$ is the better choice is beyond the scope of this encyclopedia’s discussions. Nonetheless, a simple explanation makes the point.

Whenever a single research study is conducted, a sample of study participants is chosen from the population of all individuals who could theoretically have participated as subjects. The data collected from the subjects who did participate facilitate the precise calculation of the variance in the characteristic of interest to the researchers (reduction in blood pressure, reduction in an assessment of depression, etc.). However, this precisely calculated value is not of primary interest. What is of most interest is an estimate of the variance that would be seen in the general population of individuals who may be exposed to the intervention of interest if the study reveals that the intervention is both safe and also of therapeutic benefit. That is, the goal is to use statistical methodology to estimate in an optimum manner how well the results of a single experimental study will generalize to the general population of patients should the intervention become widely used. The best estimate of the population variance is generated by the use of $(n - 1)$ as the degrees of freedom, that is, as the denominator when the sum of squares is divided by the degrees of freedom.

Cross-References

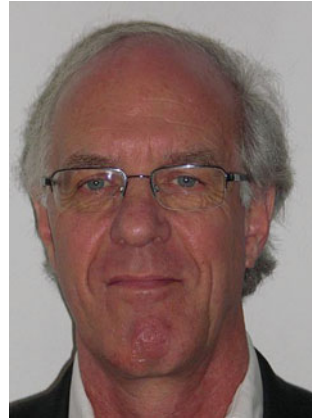
- [Standard deviation](#)
- [Variance](#)

Dekker, Joost

Joost Dekker

Department of Psychiatry and Department of Rehabilitation Medicine, VU University Medical Centre, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Biographical Information



Joost Dekker was born in Doetinchem, the Netherlands, on June 23, 1951. He received a BSc in chemistry (Utrecht, 1973, cum laude) and MSc in psychology (Utrecht, 1980). He obtained his PhD in 1988 (Utrecht, cum laude). He is a licensed health psychologist. He was senior researcher at the WHO Collaborating Center on Quality of Life in Relation to Health Care, Amsterdam (1987–1988), and senior researcher and subsequently head of the research department at the Netherlands Institute of Primary Health Care, Utrecht (1988–2001). He was also director of the Institute of Health and Welfare Studies, Amsterdam (2001–2007).

Dekker is currently Professor of Allied Health Care at the Department of Psychiatry and the Department of Rehabilitation Medicine, VU University Medical Center, Amsterdam, the Netherlands (1997–present). He is chair of the research track Soma & Psyche in the Mental Health research program, EMGO Institute for Health and Care Research, and leader of the Quality of Life research program, Cancer Center Amsterdam. He is “dosent” of Psychological Aspects of

Rehabilitation at the Faculty of Sports and Health Sciences, University of Jyväskylä, Finland.

Dekker's research concerns behavioral factors in somatic disease, in the clinical epidemiological tradition. He focuses on musculoskeletal disorders, neurological disorders, and – recently – cancer. He has obtained grants from numerous agencies, including the Ministry of Health, Netherlands Organization for Health Research and Development, and NGOs. He is (co)author of more than 225 international peer-reviewed scientific publications, more than 80 national peer-reviewed scientific publications, and more than 90 scientific publications in books, reports, and other journals. He served as editor in chief (2007–2011) and associate editor (1993–2006) of the *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*. He performs editorial services for a wide range of scientific journals and has supervised 21 successfully defended PhD theses.

Dekker is president elect of the International Society of Behavioral Medicine (2010–2012) and will serve as president from 2012 to 2014. Other positions in ISBM include member of the Board (2007–present), member of the Governing Council (1994–2006), chair of the Strategic Planning Committee (2004–2006), chair of the Nominations Committee (2006), and co-chair (1996–1998) and chair (1998–2002) of the Education and Training Committee. He is involved in other international and national boards and committees. Examples include the Society of Behavioral Medicine, the Cochrane Collaboration, Netherlands Health Council, Netherlands Health Research Council, Netherlands Behavioral Medicine Federation, and Royal Netherlands Society of Physiotherapy. He has contributed to the organization of numerous international and national conferences.

Major Accomplishments

Dekker developed the theory on behavioral and neuromuscular factors in activity limitations in osteoarthritis. The theory provides an integrated model of how behavioral factors (negative affect and avoidance of activities) and neuromuscular

factors (muscle weakness, poor proprioception, and laxity of joints) interact, resulting in activity limitations in this clinical condition. Empirical support for the theory has been obtained in cross-sectional and longitudinal research (Dekker et al. 1993; van der Esch et al. 2006, 2007; Steultjens et al. 2002). This theory was used to develop therapeutic approaches aimed at improved performance of activities in osteoarthritis. Examples include “behavioral graded activity” and “stability training.” These therapeutic approaches have been and are being evaluated in randomized clinical trials, which are providing evidence in support of these approaches (Pisters et al. 2010; Veenhof et al. 2006).

He contributes to the integration of psychology and rehabilitation (including rehabilitation medicine, physiotherapy, and occupational therapy). This integrated approach results in novel theories and innovative treatments. The previously mentioned research on activity limitations in osteoarthritis illustrates the integration of psychology and rehabilitation. Other examples include the development of therapeutic approaches for neurological patients, specifically stroke patients with apraxia (Donkervoort et al. 2001, 2006; van Heugten et al. 1998) and patients with dementia (Graff et al. 2006).

Dekker also contributes to the scientific foundation of rehabilitation medicine, physiotherapy, and occupational therapy. This work concerns the application of the International Classification of Functioning in these disciplines (Dekker 1995), summarizing the evidence in support of exercise therapy in a wide range of disorders (Baar et al. 1999; Smidt et al. 2005), assessing prognostic factors for quality of life (Braamse et al. 2011; van der Waal et al. 2005), summarizing the evidence in support of occupational therapy in numerous disorders (Steultjens et al. 2005), assessing the impact of comorbidity on pain and activity limitations (van Dijk et al. 2010), and contributing to the development of measurement instruments and clinimetrics (Dekker et al. 2005).

He strongly supports the implementation of his research into clinical practice. This has resulted in the foundation of an outpatient clinic for advanced rehabilitation in osteoarthritis, the development

and implementation of a national consensus on the treatment of osteoarthritis (van den Ende et al. 2010), and the implementation of screening and treatment for psychological distress in patients with multiple sclerosis and cancer.

In the role of editor in chief, Dekker contributed to the definition of the profile of the *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine* (Dekker 2007). *IJBM* has been defined as an interdisciplinary journal, publishing research on factors relevant to health and illness. The scope of *IJBM* extends from biobehavioral mechanisms, clinical studies on diagnosis, treatment, and rehabilitation to research on public health, including health promotion and prevention. *IJBM* is an international journal: manuscripts originate from all over the world, addressing issues related to both local and global health.

Cross-References

- Arthritis
- Cancer Survivorship
- Chronic Pain
- Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine (EBBM)
- Exercise
- International Society of Behavioral Medicine
- Neurological
- Occupational Therapy
- Physical Therapy
- Psychometrics
- Quality of Life: Measurement
- Rehabilitation

References and Reading

- Baar, M. E. V., Assendelft, W. J. J., Dekker, J., Oostendorp, R. A. B., & Bijlsma, J. W. J. (1999). Effectiveness of exercise therapy in patients with osteoarthritis of the hip or knee: A systematic review of randomized clinical trials. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 42, 1361–1369.
- Braamse, A. M., Gerrits, M. M., van Meijel, B., Visser, O., van Oppen, P., Boenink, A. D., et al. (2011). Predictors of health-related quality of life in patients treated with auto- and allo-SCT for hematological malignancies. *Bone Marrow Transplantation*. <https://doi.org/10.1038/bmt.2011.130>.
- Dekker, J. (1995). Application of the ICIDH in survey research on rehabilitation: The emergence of the functional diagnosis. *Disability and Rehabilitation*, 17 (3–4), 195–201.
- Dekker, J. (2007). Defining the profile. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 14, 1–2.
- Dekker, J., Tola, P., Aufdemkampe, G., & Winckers, M. (1993). Negative affect, pain and disability in osteoarthritis patients: The mediating role of muscle weakness. *Behavior Research and Therapy*, 31, 203–206.
- Dekker, J., Dallmeijer, A. J., & Lankhorst, G. J. (2005). Clinimetrics in rehabilitation medicine: Current issues in developing and applying measurement instruments 1. *Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*, 37(4), 193–201.
- Donkervoort, M., Dekker, J., Stehman-Saris, F. C., & Deelman, B. G. (2001). Efficacy of strategy training in left hemisphere stroke patients with apraxia: A randomised clinical trial. *Neuropsychological Rehabilitation*, 11, 549–566.
- Donkervoort, M., Dekker, J., & Deelman, B. (2006). The course of apraxia and ADL functioning in left hemisphere stroke patients treated in rehabilitation centres and nursing homes. *Clinical Rehabilitation*, 20(12), 1085–1093.
- Graff, M. J., Vernooij-Dassen, M. J., Thijssen, M., Dekker, J., Hoefnagels, W. H., & Rikkert, M. G. (2006). Community based occupational therapy for patients with dementia and their care givers: Randomised controlled trial. *British Medical Journal*, 333(7580), 1196.
- Pisters, M. F., Veenhof, C., Schellevis, F. G., de Bakker, D. H., & Dekker, J. (2010). Long-term effectiveness of exercise therapy in patients with osteoarthritis of the hip or knee: A randomized controlled trial comparing two different physical therapy interventions. *Osteoarthritis and Cartilage*, 18(8), 1019–1026.
- Smidt, N., de Vet, H. C., Bouter, L. M., Dekker, J., Arendzen, J. H., de Bie, R. A., et al. (2005). Effectiveness of exercise therapy: A best-evidence summary of systematic reviews. *The Australian Journal of Physiotherapy*, 51(2), 71–85.
- Stultjens, M. P., Dekker, J., & Bijlsma, J. W. (2002). Avoidance of activity and disability in patients with osteoarthritis of the knee: The mediating role of muscle strength. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 46(7), 1784–1788.
- Stultjens, E. M., Dekker, J., Bouter, L. M., Leemrijse, C. J., & van den Ende, C. H. (2005). Evidence of the efficacy of occupational therapy in different conditions: An overview of systematic reviews. *Clinical Rehabilitation*, 19(3), 247–254.
- van den Ende, C. M., Bierma-Zeinstra, S. M., Vlieland, T. P., Swierstra, B. A., Voorn, T. B., & Dekker, J. (2010). Conservative treatment of hip and knee osteoarthritis: A systematic, step-by-step treatment strategy. *Nederlands Tijdschrift voor Geneeskunde*, 154, A1574.

- van der Esch, M., Steultjens, M., Knol, D. L., Dinant, H., & Dekker, J. (2006). Joint laxity and the relationship between muscle strength and functional ability in patients with osteoarthritis of the knee. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 55(6), 953–959.
- Van der Esch, M., Steultjens, M., Harlaar, J., Knol, D., Lems, W., & Dekker, J. (2007). Joint proprioception, muscle strength, and functional ability in patients with osteoarthritis of the knee. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 57(5), 787–793.
- van der Waal, J. M., Terwee, C. B., van der Windt, D. A., Bouter, L. M., & Dekker, J. (2005). The impact of non-traumatic hip and knee disorders on health-related quality of life as measured with the SF-36 or SF-12. A systematic review. *Quality of Life Research*, 14(4), 1141–1155.
- van Dijk, G. M., Veenhof, C., Spreeuwenberg, P., Coene, N., Burger, B. J., van Schaardenburg, D., van den Ende, C. H., Lankhorst, G. J., & Dekker, J. (2010). CARPA study group. Prognosis of limitations in activities in osteoarthritis of the hip or knee: A 3-year cohort study. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, 91, 58–66.
- van Heugten, C. M., Dekker, J., Deelman, B. G., van Dijk, A. J., Stehmann-Saris, J. C., & Kinebanian, A. (1998). Outcome of strategy training in stroke patients with apraxia: A phase II study. *Clinical Rehabilitation*, 12(4), 294–303.
- Veenhof, C., Koke, A. J., Dekker, J., Oostendorp, R. A., Bijlsma, J. W., van Tulder, M. W., et al. (2006). Effectiveness of behavioral graded activity in patients with osteoarthritis of the hip and/or knee: A randomized clinical trial. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 55(6), 925–934.

Delay Discounting

- [Impulsivity](#)

Deliberate Self-Harm

- [Suicide](#)

Delta Sleep

- [Slow-Wave Sleep](#)

Dementia

Bonnie Levin

Department of Neurology, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Cognitive impairment](#); [Cortical dementia](#); [Dementing illness](#)

Definition

Dementia is a disorder characterized by a progressive decline in intellectual function or behavior severe enough to cause impairment in social and occupational functioning.

Description

The term dementia is derived from the Latin words *de* (“without”) and *mens* (“the mind”). The most widely used criterion for diagnosing dementia is the DSM-IV, which defines dementia as a disorder characterized by progressive decline in intellectual function or behavior severe enough to cause impairment in social and occupational functioning. Memory loss is the hallmark feature as well as impairment in one or more cognitive abilities, including language, reasoning, executive function, praxis, and visuospatial skills.

The DSM-V, which is expected to be published in 2012, has adopted the term “Neurocognitive Disorders” and further subdivided it into “Major” and “Minor” to replace the DSM-IV classification of “Delirium, Dementia, and Amnesic and Other Cognitive Disorders.”

There are four dementia syndromes that account for approximately 90% of cases. They are Alzheimer’s disease, vascular dementia, dementia with Lewy bodies, and frontotemporal dementia.

Alzheimer's disease: Alzheimer's disease (AD) is the most common dementia accounting for 50% of all cases. The major pathology is an abnormal extracellular accumulation of beta-amyloid peptide and intracellular accumulation of tau protein. Beta-amyloid is believed to be the main component of senile plaques (SPs) and tau is involved in the development of neurofibrillary tangles (NFT). Neuropathological examination of AD brains reveals that most cases of AD have a combination of NFT and SP. The NFTs initially appear in the hippocampus and entorhinal cortex and then extend to the neocortex. SPs tend to be seen more in the association cortex. Memory changes have been correlated with hippocampal and entorhinal pathology whereas more global cognitive decline is seen with neocortical involvement. AD onset is typically insidious, often taking years before the correct diagnosis is made. The first clinical criteria based on consensus were published in 1983, referred to as the NINCDS-ADRDA. The advancement in MR imaging, PET imaging, CSF assays, and other biomarkers have shown that the older criteria are no longer well suited to diagnose AD and newer guidelines for all-cause dementia and AD dementia, which is further subdivided into amnesic and non-amnesic presentations, have recently been published (Dubois et al. 2007).

Cardinal features of the disease are progressive decline in mental status functions, including memory loss, and one or more cognitive impairments involving language, executive, visuospatial/perceptual dysfunction, apraxia, and agnosia. The cognitive deficits seen in AD are progressive and interfere with activities of daily living (ADL). The average time course for AD is between 8 and 12 years after diagnosis, but it can last as long as 20. It is now accepted that there is a prodromal phase in which individuals exhibit mild cognitive impairment, also referred to as MCI, before reaching the threshold for early dementia (Peterson 2000).

There are three stages of AD. In mild AD, individuals typically present with problems recalling recent events with relative sparing of older memories. Other frequent cognitive problems include difficulty in solving problems and carrying out complex multi-step tasks, making

sound decisions, planning difficulties, and problems in holding information in mind. Changes in personality are also common, with irritability and apathy among the most frequent complaints voiced by caregivers. Individuals in the early stages of AD may also exhibit empty speech, problems finding words, and have difficulty expressing their ideas. In the midstage or moderate AD, individuals become more confused and their memory loss is more pervasive. They may have difficulty retrieving older memories such as their address, school they attended, or names of relatives. Assistance with basic ADLs such as grooming, toileting, and other self-care activities may be necessary. Personality changes are more pervasive and it is not unusual for caregivers to report aggression and paranoia. In the late or severe stage of AD, afflicted individuals have lost the ability to communicate beyond occasional words or phrases and require full time assistance for all self-care activities. At this stage, motor symptoms are common as well as loss of bowel, bladder, and swallowing abilities. Most AD patients die of complications of chronic illness (pneumonia).

Vascular dementia: It is estimated that nearly two thirds of individuals who experience a stroke will have some degree of cognitive impairment, with roughly a third exhibiting frank dementia (Selnes and Vinters 2006). Cognitive impairment resulting from vascular factors has been termed, "vascular cognitive impairment" or VCI. Various components of the "metabolic syndrome," a term that refers to a cluster of cardiovascular risk factors, including diabetes, hypertension, hyperlipidemia, hypertriglyceremia, and impaired glucose tolerance, have been linked to age-related cognitive decline. Postmortem studies have revealed that VCI can also coexist with AD pathology, and those with both pathologies show a greater degree of cognitive impairment (REF). Since many of the vascular risk factors can be modified following changes in one's lifestyle (diet, exercise, not smoking, etc.) and medication, it may be possible to improve or even decrease the incidence of VCI with the appropriate intervention (Gorelick et al. 2011).

Dementia with Lewy bodies: Dementia with Lewy bodies (DLB), also known as Lewy body

dementia, Lewy body disease, and cortical Lewy body disease, is the second most common dementia after Alzheimer's disease. DLB can present as a movement disorder resembling Parkinson's disease with cognitive changes or with memory and dysexecutive changes suggestive of Alzheimer's disease with visual hallucinations and/or delusions. Other presenting features of DLB include fluctuating levels of attention, characterized by drowsiness, staring off, lethargy, a history of falling, sleep-related disturbances, and autonomic dysregulation involving body temperature, blood pressure, urinary difficulties, constipation, and swallowing difficulties. Risk factors are age (>60 years), gender (male), and family history.

Frontal temporal dementia: Frontal temporal dementia (FTD) is a category of conditions involving atrophy and neuronal loss of the frontal and temporal lobes, resulting in prominent language impairment and behavioral decline. It is the most prevalent dementia among younger individuals. It is estimated that between 20% and 50% of individuals with dementia under 65 years of age have FTD (REF). Three FTD syndromes have been proposed: behavioral variant, semantic dementia, and progressive nonfluent aphasia. In the behavioral variant, neuropsychiatric features, characterized by emotional dysregulation, are prominent early in the disease. Social inappropriateness, lack of insight, apathy, disinhibition, and diminished activity are frequent as well as more extreme behaviors including poor hygiene, hyperorality, shoplifting, and other impulse control problems. This variant is often misdiagnosed as depression due to the apathetic behavioral style. Frank psychosis is unusual but seen most often among individuals with Alzheimer's disease (Cardarelli et al. 2010; Neary et al. 1998). In semantic dementia, patients present with fluent speech that is devoid of meaning and may contain semantic paraphasias. The central feature is language output characterized by the use of words that approximate the intended word, such as "thing to eat with" for knife or "clothes" for skirt. In addition, this variant is also associated with associative agnosia, or the inability to recognize and assign meaning to objects and facial recognition deficits, including well-known figures such as celebrities (Cardarelli et al. 2010; Neary

et al. 1998). The third variant, progressive nonfluent aphasia, is characterized by speech that is agrammatical, nonfluent, stuttering or halting, and effortful. Word retrieval difficulties or frank anomia are common with phonemic paraphasias such as saying "dat" for cat or "drother" for mother. Other impairments include difficulties with comprehension, reading, and repetition. Median survival for FTD is comparable to AD, approximately 9 years. Since there is no treatment for FTD, intervention is at the level of establishing behavioral management strategies for issues related to behavioral conduct and psychological counseling for caregivers and family members (Cardarelli et al. 2010; Neary et al. 1998).

Other Dementias

Treatable Dementia

There are a number of treatable dementias. The most common are those resulting from metabolic disorders such as a vitamin B-12 deficiency, normal pressure hydrocephalus, chronic substance abuse, subdural hematoma following trauma and hypothyroidism. For this reason, it is important to first rule out the treatable dementias with the help of a careful medical work-up, blood tests, and neuroimaging.

Rapidly Progressive Dementia (RPD)

There is a group of dementing conditions that develop subacutely and involve rapid decline of cognitive, behavioral, and motor function. A variety of etiologies can lead to RPD including neurodegenerative, toxic-metabolic, neoplastic, infectious, and inflammatory conditions (Geschwind et al. 2008; Rosenbloom and Alireza 2011).

The most widely studied RPD subgroup is the prion disease Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease or CJD. The sporadic form of CJD (sCJD) typically presents with mental status alterations characterized by dementia and/or psychiatric changes accompanied by cerebellar and extrapyramidal symptoms. sCJD onset is usually between 50 and 70 years and is equally prevalent in males and females, with a short median survival of 5 months. Of note, psychiatric complaints and behavioral symptoms such as depression, malaise and marked anxiety can precede the dementia and

movement disorder. The EEG in the later stages of the disease has a distinctive diagnostic pattern of periodic sharp waves. The other form, referred to as variant CJD (vCJD), is rarer and can affect either young or older adults. Mean age of onset is 29 years and typically presents as a psychiatric disturbance lasting 6 or more months before other symptoms begin. Although the classic EEG pattern described above for sCJD is not typically present, the diagnostic feature of vCJD is the pulvinar sign on MRI (Geschwind et al. 2008).

Assessment of Dementia

The diagnosis of dementia should be ascertained through a combination of careful history taking, an interview with the patient and an informant, and neuropsychological testing performed by a qualified professional. The type of cognitive battery used to assess dementia will depend on several factors, including the time allotted for assessment, the willingness of the patient to participate in the testing process, and clinician availability.

Assessment of dementia requires an understanding of the normative aging process, brain anatomy and neural circuitry, and neuropathology. The mental status evaluation should focus on three components: cognition, personality/mood, and behavioral function. The type of examination can vary from bedside screening to a comprehensive evaluation.

The most widely known measure is the Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE), a short screening instrument developed in the 1970s to assess cognition in the elderly. It is untimed, consists of 11 questions and a total possible score of 30 points. Originally designed for psychogeriatric patients (Rosenbloom and Alireza 2011), this measure has been used to assess mental status in a wide variety of neurologic and general medical disorders as a dementia screen, not as a diagnostic tool. Its purpose is threefold: to screen for cognitive impairment, to assess severity of impairment, and to monitor change over time with repeated assessments.

There are many advantages of the MMSE, some of which include the ease of administration, the availability of international translations, the use of cutoff scores that make inter-study

comparisons easier, and the availability of norms for age and education. However, there are several drawbacks to the MMSE (Nieuwenhuis-Mark 2010). One criticism of this screening instrument is that it relies heavily on intact verbal skills, a problem for those with limited language ability or with a low educational level. Also there is a lack of consensus as to which cutoff score is best to use and whether the norms have been collected on representative samples. Although the MMSE has wide international use and has been translated into many different languages, there are questions as to whether the translations are really comparable to the original test due to the fact some of the items may not be relevant in other cultures (e.g., reciting “no, ifs, ands, and buts”). The most serious criticism is that the MMSE was developed as a cognitive screen, but it is widely used as a diagnostic tool and has been shown to be insensitive in discriminating between age-related cognitive change, mild cognitive impairment, and early dementia (Mitchell 2009).

Ideally, bedside examinations and screening measures should be supplemented with more comprehensive testing using standardized neuropsychological measures with known reliability and sensitivity for detecting cognitive impairment. A qualified neuropsychologist will select measures designed to assess specific cognitive abilities including general intelligence, language abilities (e.g., verbal fluency, word retrieval, comprehension), conceptual reasoning and abstraction, perception, spatial cognition (visuoconstructive graphomotor and assembling abilities), attention and memory (working memory, verbal and nonverbal immediate and delayed recall), motor speed and the executive functions (e.g., skills involved in planning, organization, set shifting, goal setting, and problem solving). Additional questionnaires are frequently included to assess a patient's emotional status, in particular symptoms of anxiety and depression. A major goal of the neuropsychological evaluation is to identify a specific pattern of cognitive change associated with a particular dementia. Another goal is to provide a baseline from which to compare future evaluations. A third goal is to identify cognitive strengths and weaknesses that can be used to address treatment and management issues.

Prevention of Dementia

There is compelling evidence from basic and clinical research that aerobic exercise may be neuroprotective. Transgenic mouse models, epidemiologic, biomarker, and prospective clinical studies have linked exercise with improved cognition and provided evidence that physical activity directly modulates known risk factors associated with dementia, including obesity, vascular disease, hypertension, diabetes, inflammation, and cardiovascular disease. The mechanism by which increased physical activity improves cognition is not known. It has been proposed that physical exercise may reduce beta-amyloid deposits in the brain, increase synaptogenesis and plasticity, boost endorphins and growth factors, or increase brain perfusion (Savica and Peterson 2011).

Education and intellectual stimulation have also been credited with having a neuroprotective role against dementia and cognitive decline (Stern 2002). Numerous observational studies have shown a strong and positive association between higher intellectual activities and reduced cognitive decline. A lower educational level is associated with a 30% increased risk of having AD. It is possible that higher education is a proxy for higher SES which confers an advantage in terms of overall health, lifestyle, and reduced stress.

More recent studies have provided preliminary evidence showing that cognitive training, i.e., mental exercises to improve memory, reasoning, and processing, may improve cognition and instrumental activities of daily living. Preliminary evidence has shown in animals that increased mental activity is linked to increased brain volume (Willis et al. 2006).

Diet: Although it has long been held that diet is linked to cognition, the evidence remains controversial. Most attention has centered on the Mediterranean diet, one which is high in vegetables and non-saturated fat, and linked to a lower risk of cognitive decline. It is argued the diet is high in antioxidants and its relationship to reducing oxidative stress is the key factor responsible for improved cognition (Savica and Peterson 2011).

Social Networks: There are several studies suggesting that social connectivity, as defined by participation in social activities and maintaining interpersonal relationships, may be protective

against cognitive decline. Conversely, social disengagement, loneliness, and not living with a partner have been found to be linked to AD, although this association did not apply to those who were divorced or widowed (Seeman et al. 2001). A valid criticism of these studies is that it is difficult to know whether reduced social connectivity is a risk factor or an actual symptom of AD, given that social withdrawal is a feature of early dementia.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Aging](#)
- ▶ [Alzheimer's Disease](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Function](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Impairment](#)
- ▶ [Geriatrics](#)

References and Readings

- Cardarelli, R., Kertesz, A., & Knebl, J. A. (2010). Frontotemporal dementia: A review for primary care physicians. *American Family Physician*, 82, 1372–1377.
- Dubois, B., Feldman, H. H., Jacova, C., Dekosky, S. T., Barberger-Gateau, P., Cummings, J., et al. (2007). Research criteria for the diagnosis of Alzheimer's disease: Revising the NINDS-ADRDA criteria. *Lancet Neurology*, 8, 734–746.
- Geschwind, M. D., Shu, H., Harman, A., Sejvar, J. J., & Miller, B. (2008). Rapidly progressive dementia. *Annals of Neurology*, 64(1), 97–108.
- Gorelick, P. B., et al. (2011). Inclusion of stroke in cardiovascular risk prediction instruments: A statement for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. *Stroke*, 42, 2672–2713.
- Mitchell, A. J. (2009). A meta-analysis of the accuracy of the mini-mental state examination in the detection of dementia and mild cognitive impairment. *Journal of Psychiatry Research*, 43(4), 411–431.
- Neary, D., Snowden, J. S., Gustafson, L., Passant, U., Stuss, D., Black, S., et al. (1998). Frontotemporal lobar degeneration: A consensus on clinical diagnostic criteria. *Neurology*, 51(6), 1546–1554.
- Nieuwenhuis-Mark, R. E. (2010). The death knoll for the MMSE: Has it outlived its purpose? *Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry and Neurology*, 23(3), 151–157.
- Peterson, R. C. (2000). Mild cognitive impairment: Transition between aging and Alzheimer's disease. *Neurologia*, 15, 93–101.
- Rosenbloom, M. H., & Alireza, A. (2011). The evaluation of rapidly progressive dementia. *The Neurologist*, 7(2), 67–74.

- Savica, R., & Peterson, R. C. (2011). Prevention of dementia. *Psychiatric Clinics of North America*, 34(1), 127–145.
- Seeman, T. E., Lusignolo, T. M., Albert, M., & Berkman, L. (2001). Social relationships, social support, and patterns of cognitive aging in healthy, high-functioning older adults: MacArthur studies of successful aging. *Health Psychology*, 20(4), 243–255.
- Selnes, O. A., & Vinters, H. V. (2006). Vascular cognitive impairment. *Nature Clinical Practice Neurology*, 2, 538–547.
- Stern, Y. (2002). What is cognitive reserve? Theory and research application of the reserve concept. *Journal of the International Neuropsychological Society*, 8, 448–460.
- Willis, S. L., Tennstedt, S. L., Marsiske, M., Ball, K., Elias, J., Koepke, K. M., et al. (2006). Long-term effects of cognitive training on everyday functional outcomes in older adults. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 296(23), 2805–2814.

Dementia Screening Tests

- [Screening, Cognitive](#)

Dementing Illness

- [Dementia](#)

Demographics

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Subject characteristics](#)

Definition

Demography can be defined as the statistical science focusing upon the distribution, density, vital statistics, and various other defining characteristics of human populations. Demographics therefore include characteristics such as sex, age, race/ethnicity, height, weight, and socioeconomic class.

When reporting a research study, it is necessary to provide a summary of the relevant demographic characteristics of the subjects who participated in the study. Ultimately, the goal of a clinical study is not to provide precise information for that particular subject sample but to collect information that generalizes to the population from whom that particular sample was chosen. Therefore, a given subject sample needs to reflect that population adequately for such generalization to be meaningful.

Not all demographic information is always of relevance. In some studies, perhaps a clinical trial of a new drug, it may not be necessary to report the socioeconomic status of the study participating in the study. If there is no biologically plausible reason to think that individuals from different socioeconomic strata would respond differently to the drug, it is not necessary to report this information. In contrast, sex and age may be considered to be of considerable relevance if there are biologically plausible reasons to think that these factors may influence drug responses.

Cross-References

- [Generalizability](#)

Demyelinating Disease

- [Multiple Sclerosis: Psychosocial Factors](#)

Denial

Alefiyah Z. Pishori
Department of Psychology, University of
Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Synonyms

[Coping strategies](#); [Defense mechanism](#)

Definition

The psychological concept of denial refers to a cognitive and emotional coping strategy involving the negation of a fact or reality. In the context of health psychology, denial refers to the negation of a health problem, effecting either oneself or someone else. Individuals experiencing denial refuse to believe facts that are difficult to face, such as being diagnosed with a terminal or chronic illness. Denial is a common and normal process; it can be either protective or harmful in managing a health problem, depending on the extent of the denial and how it impacts individuals' decision making. For instance, denial has been identified as a useful and necessary first step in the process of coping with a terminal or life-threatening illness to allow individuals to adjust to the situation. However, denial can become a problem when it persists and prevents individuals from actively coping with the truth and/or receiving necessary care and treatment for their illnesses. Family members or friends of an individual diagnosed with an illness may also engage in denial; they may cope with the experience of learning their loved one is ill by rejecting the idea. If their denial persists as well, they may advise their loved one to not seek treatment or reject the truth regarding what is happening to their loved one.

Description

Denial as a psychological process has a long history, originating with Sigmund Freud's theory of defense mechanisms. Freud conceptualized defense mechanisms as strategies utilized by individuals to protect themselves from difficult memories by distorting them or making them inaccessible to consciousness; denial was one such strategy. Over time, theorists have identified different types of denial that an individual may experience or engage.

Defensive Denial

Defensive (or pathogenic) denial is a specific form of denial in which individuals use defensive processes to manage their emotional responses and allow for appropriate decisions regarding health

threats. This is a dynamic process that accommodates new information and can be distinguished from other forms of denial that ignore reality. Defensive denial minimizes threats but is responsive to reality and information regarding the situation. It may lead to the minimization of health threats, protective social comparisons that minimize the individuals' risks, or questioning the validity of health threat information. It is unclear how defensive denial impacts behavior, although it has been suggested that it may decrease negative affect and thus allow individuals to engage in protective health behaviors (Wiebe and Korbel 2003). However, if a person experiencing pathogenic denial is not exposed to information regarding the seriousness of the situation, he/she may not recognize the truth of his/her situation (Janis 1983).

Malignant Denial

Malignant (or pathological) denial is a maladaptive form of denial that prevents individuals from receiving necessary treatment for their conditions. What makes this form of denial malignant is the impact it has on health-care decisions: individuals will ignore doctors and refuse treatment. For instance, individuals suffering from psychological conditions, such as substance abuse and eating disorders, often deny they have a problem and refuse help or treatment. Individuals with infectious diseases who are experiencing malignant denial may engage in behaviors that put others at risk of becoming infected as well (Kalichman 2009). Thus, this form of denial is a serious concern as it can negatively impact both an individual's own and others' health.

Denial versus Avoidance

Denial must be distinguished from avoidance. Avoidance refers to individuals' refraining from reminders of the truth, although they are cognitively aware of the facts, whereas denial suggests that individuals have refused to accept the facts. Thus, an avoidant individual may recognize he/she is ill but refrain from going to the doctor for treatment, while an individual in denial would refuse to see the doctor because he/she would not acknowledge he/she had an illness. Although these concepts are often confused and

the terms used interchangeably, they are conceptually distinct.

Cross-References

- [Avoidance](#)
- [Defensiveness](#)

References and Readings

- Breznitz, S. (1983). *The denial of stress*. New York: International Universities.
- Cohen, S. (2001). *States of denial: Knowing about atrocities and suffering*. Malden: Blackwell.
- Janis, I. L. (1983). Preventing pathogenic denial by means of stress inoculation. In S. Breznitz (Ed.), *The denial of stress* (pp. 35–76). New York: International Universities Press.
- Kalichman, S. (2009). *Denying AIDS: Conspiracy theories, pseudoscience, and human tragedy*. New York: Copernicus Books.
- Wiebe, D., & Korb, C. (2003). Defensive denial, affect, and the self-regulation of health threats. In L. D. Cameron & H. Leventhal (Eds.), *The self-regulation of health and illness behavior* (pp. 184–203). New York: Routledge.

Dependence, Drug

John Grabowski
Department of Psychiatry, Medical School,
University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Drug abuse](#); [Substance abuse](#); [Substance use disorders](#)

Definition

Problematic use of drugs altering behavior and psychological function is categorized in terms of patterns and consequences of use. The common worldwide codification of these disorders is found in International Statistical Classification of Diseases

and Related Health Problems 10 (ICD-10), which refers to these disorders as *Mental and behavioral disorders due to psychoactive substance use*. The generic ICD-10 definition is: “a wide variety of disorders that differ in severity and clinical form but that are all attributable to the use of one or more psychoactive substances, which may or may not have been medically prescribed.” The American Psychiatric Association codification of these disorders is found in the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual – Fourth Edition (DSM-IV), which uses the diagnostic label of *Substance-Related Disorders*. The generic DSM-IV definition is: “The Substance-Related Disorders include disorders related to the taking of a drug of abuse (including alcohol), to the side effects of a medication, and to toxin exposure.” While “dependence” historically has had a precise scientific definition, common use is often confused with “abuse,” “addiction,” and other terms.

Description

Determinants of Dependence

Problematic use of drugs altering behavior and psychological function (“psychoactive drugs”) is determined by circumstances of use, route of administration, dose, and drug or medication. Direct biological and behavioral effects of a chemical or drug determine the likelihood of drug taking. The “abuse liability” or “abuse potential” is determined with standardized pre-clinical/animal laboratory procedures. In these experiments, the test drug is made available through an intravenous line, as a liquid for oral consumption, or on occasion as vapor or smoke. The animal has the opportunity to press a lever or engage in some other response producing drug delivery. The rate of responding and frequency of drug delivery are compared to the vehicle, or solution without drug (placebo). If the drug is “self-administered” at higher rates than vehicle, it is deemed to have “rewarding” or reinforcing effects that will sustain drug seeking and drug taking.

Within a series of similar drugs (e.g., stimulants, anxiolytics) the relative reinforcing effect

can be established as a hierarchy from least to most reinforcing. In turn, this is characterized as relative abuse liability. Generally, though not always, the animal self-administration patterns predict the likelihood of human self-administration. In these experiments, food and water may be concurrently or sequentially available for comparison to drug intake or to determine the effect of drug on other behaviors. Numerous comparisons can be made, and other paradigms implemented, to further characterize the properties and behavioral consequences of drug self-administration. In animals, the core biological effects of the agents are examined and in humans a variety of self-report descriptive measures, such as “liking,” “willingness to take again,” and “unpleasant effects” are also determined. Arguably, it is the balance of *immediate* pleasurable to unpleasant effects that determine possible persistent use. Untoward effects that follow excessive use, for example, “hangovers” are not necessarily deterrents to resumption of drinking alcohol. Ultimately, when use persists and dependence emerges, a variety of untoward outcomes occur. Continued use in patterns that produce hazardous and debilitating outcomes (biological, behavioral, social) are key features in determination of dependence.

Within drug self-administration studies, whether with nonhuman animals or humans, dose-ranging studies are conducted with, for example, “low,” “medium,” and “high” doses, again with comparison to placebo. The result is often, though not always an inverted U-shaped curve with lower doses consumed less than intermediate doses, while very high unit doses may generate less drug taking (due to increasing adverse effects or satiating doses achieved with less output). In some instances, for example, sedatives, the medication itself may impair ability to continue self-administration. Other experimental strategies determine whether changes in intake are due to incapacitating effects of the drug, titration to seek optimal effect, adverse effects at a particular dose, or other factors. While the interactions may be complex, dose is an important factor in self-administration and establishing drug dependence.

The route of administration (intravenous, inhalation, insufflation, oral) may alter the likelihood of drug dependence. More rapid onset is typically observed with intravenous and inhalation routes and it is generally thought that this may increase the probability of persistent use. However, individual preferences or dislikes may intervene; for example, many people are unwilling to use injection paraphernalia. Still, while IV heroin use produces a singular and pronounced effect, orally ingested opioids for nontherapeutic purposes can also produce profound dependence. Most agents with moderate to high abuse potential can be expected to be associated with dependence in some people, regardless of route, when used outside of therapeutic regimens.

Other factors important to use and ultimately dependence may include drug availability and social circumstances. Social factors are commonly important in initial use even though later use may be solitary. The relative ease of obtaining a drug makes initial exposure and frequent use more likely for those individuals who are responsive to the effects. Still, most individuals exposed to drugs do not proceed to a level of use that can be categorized as dependence. Knowing who will, or will not proceed to dependence, that is, who is vulnerable to effects of a particular drug and likely to engage in persistent use is a matter of considerable interest.

Behavioral/Psychological and Physical Dependence

The various diagnostic and scientific schemata may differentiate or emphasize two aspects of dependence that are commonly inseparable: behavioral or psychological dependence and physical dependence. As drug action and determinants of persistent use have been more effectively delineated, these distinctions may be less useful but are separable in some circumstances.

Drug dependence typically refers to persistent use despite problems across the spectrum of personal and social activities as well as biological/medical and psychological harm. In current terminology, dependence refers to patterns of behavior that precede, are concurrent with, and follow use. Drug seeking (soliciting/purchasing drugs from

others) can be elaborate and time consuming. The behavior of drug taking, legal or illegal, is typically characterized by ritualized events.

These behaviors may be socially accepted as well as being behaviorally and psychologically relatively benign, for example, persistent coffee/caffeinated beverage consumption at moderate doses. Caffeine, most commonly through coffee or carbonated beverage consumption, is thought to be the most widely used drug in the world. In this example, two prominent ritualized patterns exist. One entails the legal purchase of beans or ground coffee, special home apparatus for grinding and preparing coffee along with the spectrum of containers from which it is consumed. A second pattern that has evolved in recent decades stems from the long-standing practice of coffee with meals or in coffee shops. Now, the elaborate rituals are well represented by Starbucks, Caribou, and other chains as well as myriad local purveyors. The user determines size (volume), dose (singles, doubles, triples), dairy product additions ranging from skimmed milk to heavy cream, additional additives be they spices or liqueur flavorings. The use, dose, drug-taking style, may differ from person to person and time to time for the particular person. Persistent caffeine use has clear biological and psychological effects and cessation of use leads to an array of symptoms.

Heroin use likewise entails procedures and rituals: mixing, drawing drug into a syringe, tying off an extremity to gain access to a vein and injection. Use by smoking or insufflation is also accompanied by a systematized approach to self-administration. These events may be solitary or in groups. The consequences of drug administration are then experienced. Heroin or other persistent opioid use for nontherapeutic purposes often follows a course of increasing dosing as tolerance emerges to the euphoriant effects, increase in associated illegal contacts during drug seeking, increasing cost, and deterioration of social circumstances. Tolerance is not consistent across all effects. Thus, diminished euphoriant effect leading to higher dosing with opioids is not matched by tolerance to respiratory depressant effects and death may ensue. In the case of potent

stimulants, cardiovascular excitation/dysfunction or seizures occur as doses increase despite reduction in perceived euphoriant effects. These patterns of use in the face of untoward consequences are emblematic of dependence.

The behaviors immediately following drug use are dependent on the characteristics of the agent. Sedating drugs produce feelings of euphoria or pleasure, varying levels of lethargy and somnolence to virtual unconsciousness, and at the extreme, death, usually from respiratory depression. Stimulant-type drugs generate patterns of energized behavior ranging from active euphoria and self-confidence to highly stereotypic behaviors, hallucinations, and psychosis, and at the extreme, death due to cardiovascular accident or collapse.

Dependence may also refer to a biological state, historically referred to in pharmacology as “addiction” or more recently as “physical dependence,” in which a distinctive profile and sequence of symptoms emerges when use is discontinued. The constellation of symptoms observed on abrupt discontinuation in the presence of physical dependence is referred to as a “withdrawal syndrome” (composed of withdrawal signs and symptoms). The consistency of such patterns is most evident for drugs with sedative-like properties such as opiates (e.g., heroin), benzodiazepines (e.g., diazepam), barbiturates (e.g., pentobarbital), and alcohol. These symptoms are typically the reverse of those associated with high-dose drug use; for example, with opioids, behavioral activation, increases in respiration, and increased gastrointestinal activity over baseline emerge. Direct physical symptoms dissipate over days but behavioral and biological symptoms that have been conditioned by repeated pairings of drug self-administration and previously neutral environmental stimuli may persist for months. They may be elicited by environmental circumstances in which drug use or withdrawal symptoms previously occurred. In the case of stimulants, behavioral malaise, impairment in performance, diminution of blood pressure, and other symptoms are common. For the licit drug caffeine, the most pronounced withdrawal symptoms are

headache, inattention and associated performance deficits, and fatigue. The constellation of symptoms is often a determinant of reemergent drug seeking and drug taking, or in treatment jargon, “relapse.”

As noted, in special circumstances, the components of dependence may be separable. This is informative with respect to the contribution of environmental circumstances, behavioral consequences, and biological underpinnings. These separable determinants can be examined in the laboratory, for example, by comparing the behavior of animals that have learned to self-administer drugs to those that have passively received the drugs. Comparable instances exist in humans. Remarkable resilience and persistence of behavior emerges for individuals using psychoactive drugs to excess, be the drug stimulant or sedative like. However, patients receiving high doses of intravenous opioids in hospital settings for pain, invariably have a pattern of biological adaptations characteristic of dependence that dictate physiological sequelae to abrupt cessation of dosing will occur. Thus, for example, the constipation associated with high-dose opioid use is followed by increased gastrointestinal motility. Still, it is extraordinarily uncommon on recovery and discharge from the hospital for these patients to engage in the patterns of drug seeking and drug taking that are evident in individuals whose use was established through illicit acquisition and seeking euphoriant effects. Similarly, patients treated with methadone or buprenorphine for previous heroin dependence, are, on one hand physically dependent and tolerant to many opioid effects at a stable dose, but unlikely to seek and use illicit opioids. In other circumstances, for example, treatment of attention deficit-hyperactivity disorder, drugs with some dependence liability are used effectively for treatment and diminish the likelihood of illicit drug use and abuse; thus treating one disorder diminishes a range of problems, including propensity to illicit drug use. These examples point to the importance of a range of environmental and behavioral factors contributing to substance use disorders.

Acquisition, Maintenance, and Elimination of Drug Dependence

In the laboratory, nonhuman subjects (e.g., rodents, primates) generally self-administer, or will work to obtain, the same agents that are taken by humans in both laboratory and natural settings. Conversely, discovery of a drug used for euphoriant purposes in human populations, can generally be translated into animal paradigms with evidence of self-administration. There are some exceptions and special cases; for example, nonhuman organisms rarely self-administer hallucinogens, but for a variety of pharmacological and social reasons, these are not self-administered by humans in the same way as, for example, heroin. Persistent harmful heroin, cocaine, alcohol, or other drug use is clearly distinctively different from either therapeutic drug use or even “controlled” licit or illicit drug use.

Acquisition of drug taking is essentially a social and cultural phenomenon. For legal psychoactive drugs (e.g., alcohol), society sets relatively clear rules and norms generally with a view to harm reduction and control. Most people conform to the accepted social and legal constraints while some go on to dependence. For illegal drug use, the social group sets the norms. Both entail socially driven exposure.

Stable use of legal drugs may differ considerably within and across drugs. Caffeinated beverages may be consumed consistently throughout the day with late day cessation to permit undisturbed sleep. Historically, nicotine/cigarettes were consumed in virtually all social and nonsocial environments during the “maintenance phase.” Here the change in social norms over many decades has resulted in limited venues for use, dramatic increases in prices, and remarkable reductions in use across the population in some countries, while unfettered use is permitted and maintained in other countries, thus pointing to the importance of social determinants in use and maintenance. Illegality of a drug sets maximum constraints on some aspects of use that must be circumvented but also establishes a separate market beyond regulatory control. Even with the alternative social constraints, not all individuals who use, be it stimulants (e.g., cocaine), opioids (e.g., heroin), or marijuana, go on to dependence.

Some of the factors that contribute to increased reinforcing effectiveness when a drug is self-administered (immediacy of effect, genetic makeup) have been considered. Yet the factors leading to transition from casual, stable, or infrequent use of a drug, legal or illegal, to persistent, compulsive-like use by any given individual is not well understood.

Elimination of drug use and termination of self-administration and dependence can be studied in the animal laboratory and some findings are translatable to the human case. In the human natural environment, elimination or cessation may result from a variety of self-imposed regimens or externally applied circumstances. Severe dependence typically requires a course of specific treatment for the substance use disorder(s). For drugs that produce profound withdrawal syndromes, for example, alcohol, the first phase may require intensive medical management. However, this is distinct from the typically required course of treatment involving cognitive behavior therapy, substantial social and behavioral adjustments, and possibly maintenance medications.

Cross-References

- [Addictive Behaviors](#)
- [Cognitive Behavior Therapy](#)
- [Substance Abuse: Treatment](#)

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed., text rev.). Washington, DC: Author.
- Carroll, M. E., & Overmier, J. B. (Eds.). (2001). *Animal research and human health: Advancing human welfare through behavioral science [electronic resource]*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Fischman, M. W., & Mello, N. K. (Eds.). (1989). *Testing for abuse liability of drugs in humans*. National Institute on Drug Abuse. Rockville: U.S. Dept. of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Alcohol, Drug Abuse, and Mental Health Administration, National Institute on Drug Abuse; [Washington, DC: Supt. of Docs., U.S. G.P.O., distributor].
- Higgins, S. T. (1997). Applying learning and conditioning theory to the treatment of alcohol and cocaine abuse. In B. Johnson & J. Roache (Eds.), *Drug addiction and its treatment* (pp. 367–386). Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven.
- Johanson, C. E., Schuster, C. R., Hatsukami, D., & Vocci, F. (2003). Abuse liability assessment of CNS drugs. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, 70(3), S1–S114.
- McKim, W. A. (2007). *Drugs and behavior: An introduction to behavioral pharmacology* (6th ed.). Upper Saddle River: Pearson Prentice Hall.
- Thompson, T., & Unna, K. R. (Eds.). (1977). *Predicting dependence liability of stimulant and depressant drugs*. Baltimore: University Park Press.
- World Health Organization. (1992). *ICD-10 classifications of mental and behavioural disorder: Clinical descriptions and diagnostic guidelines*. Geneva: Author.

Depression

- [Beck Depression Inventory \(BDI\)](#)
- [Negative Thoughts](#)
- [Pregnancy Outcomes: Psychosocial Aspect](#)

Depression Assessment

- [Depression: Measurement](#)

Depression Diagnosis

- [Depression: Measurement](#)

Depression: Measurement

Samantha Yard and Kimberly Nelson
Department of Psychology, University of
Washington, Seattle, WA, USA

Synonyms

[Depression assessment](#); [Depression diagnosis](#)

Definition

The measurement of depression is a process conducted by clinicians and researchers for the

purpose of (1) identifying people who may require treatment for depression, (2) identifying people who meet specific diagnostic criteria for depression, and (3) quantifying the severity of depressive symptomatology.

Description

Depression is defined by a cluster of behaviors and symptoms that have both mental and physical manifestations and affect a wide range of functionality. Specific criteria for depression include experiencing persistent depressed mood or loss of interest or pleasure in most things along with at least four out of the following additional markers: sleep disturbance, feelings of worthlessness or guilt, appetite or weight changes, concentration problems, decreased energy, psychomotor retardation or agitation, and suicidality. Depression is ideally diagnosed through a face-to-face interview with a trained mental health professional based on the current versions of the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM) or the International Classification of Disease (ICD) criteria. It is also important to note that symptoms that do not meet criteria can be impairing and thus may be important to measure as well. As such, depression can be measured both categorically (i.e., meeting diagnostic criteria or not) and continuously (i.e., symptom severity). Depression measurement can be broken down into three distinct functions: screening, diagnosis, and quantification of symptoms. Instrument choice should be made according to these functions, in addition to what population is being assessed, what specific hypotheses are being tested, and if there is a desire to compare the results to other research findings.

Screening instruments are designed to capture anyone who could potentially meet diagnostic criteria for depression and should be referred for further evaluation. They can additionally be used to estimate the prevalence of possible depression in a given setting. They typically do not require a lot of time, have empirically supported cutoff criteria, and can be self-administered or administered by a nonclinician. As screening instruments

are unable to diagnosis depression on their own, further assessment by a clinician is needed to establish a diagnosis.

Diagnosis of depression is typically done through a face-to-face interview with a trained clinician. Sometimes, as is typical in medical settings, this occurs only with those patients who have been screened as possibly depressed with the final diagnosis confirmed by a clinician. In research settings, the gold standard for depression diagnosis is a standardized diagnostic interview, such as the Structured Clinical Interview (SCID) or the Composite International Diagnostic Interview (CIDI). Structured diagnostic interviews can take over an hour depending on the patient and are typically administered by a clinician who has also been shown to reliably distinguish cases from among multiple participants. It is important to note that diagnostic interviews are meant to categorize individuals as diagnosed or not but will not capture people who fall just below the criteria, yet are still impaired.

Symptom rating scales offer a continuous assessment of depression severity. They are typically brief, can be self-administered or administered by a non-clinician, and may include a cutoff for screening purposes. They are particularly useful in monitoring changes in depression symptoms over time, and thus can be used in both clinical and research settings to evaluate treatment effects. Although many symptom rating scales have established clinical significance or severity cutoff values, they are unable to diagnose depression on their own; thus, assessment by a clinician or a structured diagnostic interview is needed for diagnosis.

There are multiple things to consider when making a depression measurement choice. First, depression and depressive symptoms can co-occur with or result from a variety of physical conditions such as hypothyroidism, cancer, diabetes, HIV/AIDS, heart disease, medication side effects, substance withdrawal, and other illnesses. Therefore, evaluating for additional medical issues can be important in the assessment of depression. Second, practical considerations should be taken into account, including the length, whether it assesses specific aspects of depression (i.e., measurement of suicidality and somatic

symptoms separately), reading level, response formats, need for training to administer, and whether it can be used to assess treatment response and severity of depression along with being able to diagnose. Finally, the Depression Task Force for the DSM-V is considering changing the criteria for depression to include a specification of the severity of depression, using the Patient Health Questionnaire (PHQ-9) or the Clinical Global Impressions (CGI) scale. This forthcoming change in criteria may influence the choice to include the PHQ-9 or CGI in the

measurement of depression before measures are adapted to the new criteria.

Below we have provided Table 1 with the twenty-two most commonly used and validated measures of depression. For each measure, we indicate the number of items, type of measure (i.e., screening, diagnostic, and/or symptom rating scale), who can administer the measure (i.e., clinician, interviewer, self), whether it has any established cutoffs for severity or clinical significance, whether the scale or one of the subscales assesses depression specifically – as opposed to

Depression: Measurement, Table 1 Twenty-two most commonly used and validated measures of depression

Measure	No. of items	Assessment type	Administration	Clinical cutoff?	Depression specific?	Time frame assessed
BDI; BDI-PC	7, 13, 21	Screening; symptom rating	Self	Yes	Yes	Today
CES-D	10, 20	Screening; symptom rating	Self	Yes	Yes	Past week
CGI	3	Symptom rating	Clinician	No	No	Varies
CIDI	Variable	Diagnostic	Interviewer	No	Yes	Past year
CIS-R	Variable	Diagnostic	Interviewer	No	No	Varies
DADS/ DUKE-AD	7	Screening	Self	Yes	No	Past week
DEPS	10	Symptom rating	Self	Yes	Yes	Past month
GHQ-12	12	Symptom rating	Self	No	No	Past few weeks
HADS	14	Diagnostic	Self	Yes	No	Currently
HAM-D/ HDRS	17–29	Symptom rating	Clinician	No	Yes	Varies
HSCL	13, 25	Screening; symptom rating	Self	Yes	No	Past week
QIDS/IDS	16, 30	Diagnostic; symptom rating	Clinician; self	No	Yes	Past week
K6/K10	6, 10	Symptom rating	Self; interviewer	Yes	No	Past month
MADRS	10	Symptom rating	Clinician	No	Yes	Varies
MDI	10	Diagnostic; symptom rating	Self	Yes	Yes	Past 2 weeks
MINI	Variable	Diagnostic	Clinician	No	No	Lifetime
PHQ/ PRIME-MD	2, 9	Screening; diagnostic	Self; clinician	Yes	Yes	Past month/2 weeks
SCID	Variable	Diagnostic	Clinician	No	No	Lifetime
SCL-90-R; BSI	53, 90	Symptom rating	Self	Yes	No	Past week
SDDS-PC	5	Screening; diagnostic	Self; clinician		No	Past month
SQ	1	Screening	Self	No	Yes	Past year
ZSDS	20	Screening; symptom rating	Self	Yes	Yes	Recently

general psychological distress or mental illness, and the timeframe the assessment covers.

CES-D Center for Epidemiologic Studies Depression Scale, CGI Clinical Global Impression, CIDI Composite International Diagnostic Interview, CIS-R Revised Clinical Interview Schedule, DADS/DUKE-AD Duke Anxiety Depression Scale, DEPS The Depression Scale, GHQ-12 General Health Questionnaire, HADS Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale, HAM-D/HDRS Hamilton Depression Rating Scale, HSCL Hopkins Symptom Checklist, QIDS (IDS) [Quick] Inventory of Depressive Symptoms, K6/K10 Kessler Psychological Distress Scale, MADRS Montgomery-Asberg Depression Rating Scale, MDI Major Depression Inventory, MINI Mini-International Neuropsychiatric Interview, PHQ Patient Health Questionnaire, PRIME-MD Primary Care Evaluation of Mental Disorders, SCID Structured Clinical Interview for DSM Disorders, research version, SCL-90-R Symptom Check List Revised, BSI Brief Symptom Inventory, SDDS-PC Symptom Driven Diagnostic System-Primary Care, SQ Single Question, ZSDS Zung Self-Rating Depression Scale

Note: Some measures come in more than one version with varying lengths and differences in administration

Cross-References

► [Depression: Symptoms](#)

References and Readings

- Sharp, L., & Lipsky, M. (2002). Screening for depression across the lifespan: a review of measures for use in primary care settings. *American Family Physician*, 66(6), 1001–1008.
- Simoni, J. M., Safren, S. A., Manhart, L. E., Lyda, K., Grossman, C. I., Rao, D., et al. (2010). Challenges in addressing depression in HIV research: Assessment, cultural context, and methods. *AIDS and Behavior*. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10461-010-9836-3>. Advanced online publication.
- Williams, J., Noël, P., Cordes, J., Ramirez, G., & Pignone, M. (2002). Is this patient clinically depressed? *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 287(9), 1160–1170.

Depression: Symptoms

Ellen-ge Denton

Department of Medicine Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Diagnostic features of depression](#)

Definition

Major depressive disorder (MDD) criteria requires five or more diagnostic features, with either (1) depressed mood or (2) anhedonia being present during the same 2 week period and a change in previous daily functioning.

Diagnostic features include (1) depressed mood (feeling sad or empty); (2) markedly diminished interest or pleasure in almost all activities (anhedonia); (3) weight loss or weight gain (at least 5% body weight change in a month), increased or decreased appetite; (4) insomnia or hypersomnia; (5) feelings of restlessness or feeling slowed down (psychomotor agitation or retardation); (6) fatigue, loss of energy; (7) feelings of worthlessness, excessive or inappropriate guilt; (8) diminished ability to think or concentrate, indecisiveness; and (9) recurring thoughts of death and/or suicide.

Dysthymic disorder or a chronic depressive disorder requires depressed mood, for more days than not, over a period of 2 years, and two or more of the diagnostic features previously mentioned. During the 2-year period, symptoms of depressed mood and the minimum of two diagnostic features are to have never remitted for more than 2 months at a time.

Diagnostic features include (1) poor appetite or overeating, (2) insomnia or hypersomnia, (3) low energy or fatigue, (4) low self-esteem, (5) poor concentration or difficulty making decisions, and (6) feelings of hopelessness.

- Depression symptoms must cause clinically significant distress or interfere with daily functioning (i.e., social, occupational) or daily tasks.
- Depression symptoms are not due to a general medical condition or due to the direct physiological effects of a substance.
- Depression symptoms are not better accounted for by bereavement.

Description

Symptoms of depression can be categorized by a marked change in a person's (1) physical well-being, evidenced by changes in sleep and eating behaviors; (2) emotional well-being, such as feelings of sadness and/or hopelessness; and (3) thoughts. For example, negative thought patterns. Hallmark symptoms of depression are loss of interest in activities (anhedonia) and a depressed mood (melancholia), as at least one of these symptoms are necessary for MDD diagnostic criteria. Depression symptoms can have catatonic features, melancholic features, atypical features, and postpartum onset.

Depression symptoms may present differently among children and adolescents. Some children may present with mood irritability or a failure to make expected weight gains. Diagnostic duration of symptoms for children and adolescents is typically at least 1 year.

Depression diagnosis is two times more likely among women than men. Women's increased likelihood for depression is found in the general population, across cultural groups and across demographic groups (Bromet et al. 2011). Although studies have not concluded that depression symptoms differ by gender (Kessler et al. 1993), some studies suggest men exhibit more externalizing symptoms of depression (angry outbursts, irritability, withdrawal, blunted affect, etc.) while comparatively, women have more melancholic symptoms of depression (sadness, guilt, etc.) (Hatzenbuehler et al. 2010).

Depressive symptoms are quite common in several biomedical health conditions and have been shown to predict worse prognosis in heart

disease (Bush 2002; Frasure-Smith and Lesperance 2006), even if at low levels. Because depression is a heterogeneous construct with multidimensional characteristics, the cardiovascular literature has begun to identify depression symptom clusters that are associated with worse coronary heart disease outcome. For example, some authors have found somatic depressive symptoms to be associated with cardiac disease severity (de Jonge et al. 2006; Watkins et al. 2003). A recent study comparing cognitive affective symptoms to somatic affective depressive symptoms found that somatic affective symptoms predicted worse cardiovascular outcome while cognitive affective symptoms did not (Martens et al. 2009). Somatic affective symptoms include sadness, dissatisfaction, pessimism, suicidal ideas, crying, work difficulty, insomnia, fatigability, loss of appetite, somatic preoccupation, and loss of libido.

References and Reading

- American Psychiatric Association. (1994). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: Author.
- Bromet, E., Andrade, L., Hwang, I., Sampson, N., Alonso, J., de Girolamo, G., et al. (2011). Cross-national epidemiology of DSM-IV major depressive episode. *BMC Medicine*, 9(1), 90.
- Bush, D. E. (2002). Cardiac disease and depression in the elderly. *Cardiology in Review*, 19(11), 10–15.
- de Jonge, P., Ormel, J., van den Brink, R. H. S., van Melle, J. P., Spijkerman, T. A., Kuijper, A., et al. (2006). Symptom dimensions of depression following myocardial infarction and their relationship with somatic health status and cardiovascular prognosis. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 163(1), 138–144.
- Frasure-Smith, N., & Lesperance, F. (2006). Depression and coronary artery disease. *Herz*, 31(Suppl. 3), 64–68.
- Goldberg, D., Kendler, K. S., Sirovatka, P. J., & Regier, D. A. (2010). *Diagnostic issues in depression and generalized anxiety disorder: Refining the research agenda for DSM-5*. Arlington: American Psychiatric Association.
- Hales, R. E., Yudofsky, S. C., & Gabbard, G. O. (2008). *The American psychiatric publishing textbook of psychiatry* (5th ed.). Arlington: American Psychiatric.
- Hatzenbuehler, M. L., Hilt, L. M., & Nolen-Hoeksema, S. (2010). Gender, sexual orientation, and vulnerability to depression. In J. C. Chrisler & D. R. McCreary (Eds.), *Handbook of gender research in psychology* (pp. 133–151). New York: Springer.

- Kessler, R. C., McGonagle, K. A., Swartz, M., Blazer, D. G., & Nelson, C. B. (1993). Sex and depression in the National Comorbidity Survey I: Lifetime prevalence, chronicity and recurrence. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 29(2–3), 85–96.
- Martens, E. J., Hoen, P. W., Mittelhaeuser, M., de Jonge, P., & Denollet, J. (2009). Symptom dimensions of post-myocardial infarction depression, disease severity and cardiac prognosis. *Psychological Medicine*, 40(05), 807.
- Watkins, L. L., Schneiderman, N., Blumenthal, J. A., Sheps, D. S., Catellier, D., Taylor, C. B., et al. (2003). Cognitive and somatic symptoms of depression are associated with medical comorbidity in patients after acute myocardial infarction. *American Heart Journal*, 146(1), 48–54.

Depression: Treatment

Tatsuo Akechi

Department of Psychiatry and Cognitive-Behavioral Medicine, Graduate School of Medical Sciences, Nagoya City University, Mizuho-cho, Mizuho-ku, Nagoya, Japan

Synonyms

[Management of depression](#); [Pharmacotherapy for depression](#); [Psychotherapy for depression](#)

Definition

Effective treatment methods of patients with depressive disorders.

Description

There are several types of treatment for depression, and these are mainly somatotherapy and psychotherapy. Somatotherapy for depression usually includes pharmacotherapy and electroconvulsive therapy (ECT). In addition, other types of somatotherapy including transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS) can be available now in several countries such as USA (Gelenberg 2010).

With regard to pharmacotherapy, there are several different types of drugs, so-called antidepressants. Antidepressants include selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRI), serotonin noradrenaline reuptake inhibitors (SNRI), tricyclic antidepressants (TCA), tetracyclic antidepressants, monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), and other types of antidepressant drugs (Gelenberg 2010; Hales and Yudofsky 2003; Sadock and Sadock 2003). The effectiveness of these antidepressants is generally comparable between classes and within classes of medications. On the other hand, side effect profiles clearly differ among the different classes of antidepressants. Pharmacotherapy is most widely used for treatment of depression. Especially pharmacotherapy is recommended as an initial treatment choice for patients with mild to moderate major depressive disorder as defined by DSM-IV-TR. The choice of each antidepressant is usually determined by anticipated side effects and safety for the individual patient. In general, the SSRIs and other newer antidepressants are better tolerated and safer than either TCAs or the MAOIs, although many patients still benefit from older drugs including TCAs. During pharmacotherapy, patients should be carefully and regularly monitored to evaluate side effects. Overall, approximately two-thirds of the patients with major depression respond to an adequate trial of antidepressant medication. However, far few achieve full remission of symptoms.

ECT is recommended as a treatment of choice for patients with severe major depressive disorder and those with psychotic features. Other cases such as a suicidal patient with an urgent need for response can also be appropriate for ECT treatment. ECT has the highest response and remission rates among any antidepressant treatment. ECT is generally provided 2–3 times per week and total of 6–12 treatments. ECT is a safe treatment, and it is suggested that risks of morbidity and mortality do not exceed those associated with anesthesia alone. Side effects of ECT include short-time confusion, memory impairment, headache, muscle aches, and so on. ECT is the use of electrically induced repetitive firings of the neurons in the CNS. The mechanisms of action of ECT are complex and not completely understood.

TMS was approved for use in patients with major depressive disorder in USA. TMS uses a magnetic field to stimulate or inhibit cortical neurons. Because the area of cortex stimulated is related to placement of the coil on the skull, the coil is most often placed over the left dorsolateral prefrontal cortex for treatment of depression. There are few findings regarding long-term follow-up data of TMS treatment effect. So more longer-term data and further refinement of TMS are needed.

Regarding psychotherapy, cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT) and interpersonal psychotherapy (IPT) are most well-known and proven psychotherapeutic approaches for patients with depressive disorders (Gelenberg 2010). CBT combines cognitive psychotherapy with behavioral therapy, including behavioral activation, and its goal is to reduce depressive symptoms by challenging and reversing irrational beliefs and distorted attitudes and encouraging patients to change their maladaptive preconceptions and behaviors in real life. On the other hand, IPT focus on interpersonal factors that may interact with the development of depressive disorders. The goal of IPT is to intervene by identifying the trigger of depression, facilitating mourning in the case of bereavement, promoting recognition of related affects, resolving role disputes and role transitions, and building social skills to improve relationships and to acquire needed social supports. Although these psychotherapies are recommended as an initial treatment choice for patients with mild to moderate major depressive disorder, these should be used in combination with pharmacotherapy for severe major depressive disorder.

Treatments of depression generally include several different steps, and these are acute phase treatment, continuous phase treatment, and maintenance phase treatment. Primary aims of the acute phase treatment are to improve symptoms of depression and achieve a full return to the patient's functioning. Continuous phase treatments are mainly provided to reduce the risk of relapse for a patient who has been successfully treated. Regarding patients who have had multiple major depressive episodes or who have chronic

features, maintenance phase treatment should be considered in order to reduce the risk of a recurrent depressive episode.

Cross-References

- [Antidepressant Medications](#)
- [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- [Psychoeducation](#)
- [Social Support](#)

References and Reading

- Gelenberg, A. J. (2010). *Practice guideline for the treatment of patients with major depressive disorder* (American Journal of Psychiatry, 3rd ed., Suppl. 167, pp. 1–118). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association.
- Hales, R. E., & Yudofsky, S. C. (2003). *Textbook of clinical psychiatry* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: The American Psychiatric Publishing.
- Sadock, B. J., & Sadock, V. A. (2003). *Kaplan & Sadock's synopsis of psychiatry* (9th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Depressive Episode

- [Unipolar Depression](#)

Descriptive Data

- [Aggregate Data](#)

Design Thinking

- [Agile Science](#)

Determinants

- [Cardiovascular Risk Factors](#)

Developmental Disabilities

Monica Dowling

Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

Autism spectrum disorders; Intellectual disability

Definition

Developmental disabilities (DD) is an umbrella term for a group of interrelated, chronic, neurological, or brain-based disorders which are defined as severe, chronic disabilities “attributable to mental and/or physical impairments, manifested before age 22, that result in substantial limitations in three or more areas of major life activities: capacity for independent living, economic self-sufficiency, learning, mobility, receptive and expressive language, self-care, self-direction” (Developmental Disabilities Assistance & Bill of Rights Act of 2000). Low IQ scores are typically associated with DD, but other conditions may impose functional limitations on individuals whose intelligence is at or above average. Sensory impairments are included only as occurring in combination with impairment in intellectual and adaptive functioning. The current conceptualization includes diagnostic classifications of intellectual disability (ID), autism spectrum disorders (ASD), cerebral palsy (CP), and specific syndromes whose behavioral phenotype includes limitations in intellectual and adaptive functioning (e.g., fragile X, trisomies, Prader-Willi, Smith-Magenis, Rett, Angelman, Fetal Alcohol).

Description

Epidemiology

Researchers from the CDC estimate the prevalence of DD by tracking five conditions: ID,

ASD, CP, hearing loss, and vision impairment. The essential features of ASD are impaired reciprocal social interactions, delayed or unusual communication styles, and restricted or repetitive behavior patterns. ID is defined as a condition marked by an IQ < 70 with concurrent limitations in adaptive functioning, previously referred to as mental retardation. CP is defined as a group of nonprogressive, but often changing, motor impairment syndromes secondary to brain lesions/anomalies arising at any time during brain development or as a result of neonatal insult.

Between 2001–2002 and 2010–2011, parent-reported childhood disability steadily increased with the largest increase due to neurodevelopmental problems (Houtrow et al. 2014). Approximately, 1 in 6 children in the USA have one or more developmental disabilities or other developmental delay (Boyle et al. 2011). An analysis of National Health Interview Survey data (Zablotsky et al. 2017) found that during 2014–2016, the prevalence of children aged 3–17 ever diagnosed with any developmental disability increased from 5.76 percent in 2014 to 6.99 percent in 2016. Results from the Metropolitan Atlanta Developmental Disabilities Surveillance Program and from other US sites in the Autism and Developmental Disabilities Monitoring Network indicate significant increases in ASD prevalence over the past two decades. In metropolitan Atlanta from 2000 to 2010, the prevalence of ID without ASD was stable (13.0 per 1000) while the prevalence of ASD with and without co-occurring ID increased by an average of 6.6% and 9.6% per year, respectively, to 15.5 per 1000 in 2010 (Van Naarden Braun et al. 2015). For 2014, the overall prevalence of ASD among the eleven sites increased to 16.8 per 1000 children (1:59) for 8 yr olds (Baio et al. 2018).

Developmental disabilities have substantial direct and indirect economic effects. The cost of supporting an individual with an ASD and ID during his or her lifespan is estimated at \$2.4 million while the cost of ASD without ID is \$1.4 million in both the USA and UK (Buescher et al. 2014). For children, the largest cost components were special education services and parental productivity loss. During adulthood, residential care

or supportive living accommodation and individual productivity loss contributed the highest costs.

Etiology

The likelihood of identifying an underlying etiology increases with the degree of disability. Prenatal causes include *genetic abnormalities* including chromosomal abnormalities (e.g., trisomies, X-linked, microdeletions, and subtelomeric rearrangements), single gene disorders (e.g., X-linked recessive conditions), and multifactorial/polygenic conditions (e.g., spina bifida); *congenital infections* (e.g., rubella, syphilis); alcohol and other drug or teratogen exposure; and maternal disorders. Perinatal factors include *placental complications*, *preeclampsia/eclampsia*, *birth trauma/anoxia*, and *complications of prematurity* (e.g., *periventricular/intraventricular hemorrhage*, *infections*, and *metabolic abnormalities*). Postnatal causes include *infections*, *trauma*, *environmental pollutants/neurotoxins*, *malnutrition*, and *inborn errors of metabolism* (e.g., PKU).

Genetic disorders now account for approximately 55% of moderate to severe ID (IQ < 50) and 10–15% of mild ID (IQ 50–70), and these percentages continue to increase with the use of new molecular techniques. More than 1,000 genetic disorders leading to developmental disabilities have been identified, many with active research programs (Tartaglia et al. 2007). Fragile X syndrome (FXS), the most common form of inherited ID, is caused by a mutation in a single gene (FMRP1) on the X chromosome, resulting from expansions of cytosine-guanine-guanine (CGG) repeats, which interferes with the normal transcription of a single protein (FMRP). Other disorders, such as Smith-Magenis or velocardiofacial syndrome (also known as 22q11.2 deletion syndrome), are microdeletion syndromes. Prader-Willi and Angelman syndromes are both the result of deletions on the same chromosome (15), but the expression is related to inheritance from either the father (Prader-Willi) or mother (Angelman). Still other disorders are characterized by the addition or absence of an entire chromosome (e.g., Down syndrome or trisomy 21; Klinefelter or 47, XXY; Turner or 45, X), leading to overexpression

or imbalance of many genes and subsequent abnormalities. Animal models (knockout mice) have been generated to mimic many genetic disorders and are used to study neurobiological and molecular mechanisms responsible for the cognitive disabilities and to develop promising molecular treatment strategies (e.g., beta 2 adrenergic receptor agonist for Down syndrome, regulating Glutamate and GABA systems in fragile X, reducing IEAK1 protein in Rett, dysregulation of histone methylation in ASD).

Diagnosis

The American Academy of Pediatrics has recommended that developmental surveillance be incorporated into every well-child visit and that any concerns should be promptly addressed with standardized developmental screening tests (AAP 2006). In addition, screening tests should be administered regularly at the 9-, 18-, and 24-month visits, including ASD specific measures. There is no universally accepted screening tool appropriate for all populations and all ages. However, accurate, cost-effective, and parent-friendly questionnaires are available for ages 1 month to 5 1/2 years in multiple languages (e.g., *Ages and Stages Questionnaires*, third Ed., Brookes Publishing), as well as web-based measures such as the Parents' Evaluation of Developmental Status (www.pedstest.com). In addition, tools such as the M-CHAT and a follow-up interview used to screen for ASD are available, at no cost (www.firstsigns.com), covering a range of ages (e.g., 16–48 months) and in many languages. Once identified as being at risk, diagnostic developmental and medical evaluations should be pursued, typically involving pediatric subspecialists and using valid and reliable measures of cognition, adaptive behavior, communication, social, and neuropsychological functioning.

Intervention/Current Best Practices

Prevention has focused on *educational initiatives* to eliminate or minimize risk factors such as smoking and alcohol use during pregnancy or lead and mercury exposure as well as *medical initiatives* such as prenatal screening and

treatment for infectious disease (e.g., syphilis, CMV), genetic screening and counseling for carriers of genetic disorders, and the use of vaccines to prevent maternal or child infections (e.g., rubella, meningitis) (Brosco et al. 2006). In addition, early identification and treatment (e.g., newborn screening for genetic and metabolic disorders and fetal alcohol syndrome) have been successful in limiting the impact of severe developmental disabilities (Powell 2019; Bertrand 2009) and pilot programs using a variety of assays using urine or blood are under way (e.g., cytomegalovirus). Even late treatment has been successful in partially reversing the severe cognitive impact associated with metabolic disorders such as untreated PKU (Gross 2010).

Early intervention services improve skills and outcomes, increase school readiness, and enable families to develop strategies and obtain resources needed for successful family functioning (Landa and Kalb 2012; Rogers et al. 2012). Educational initiatives stress inclusion as benefitting students with developmental disabilities and their typical peers (US Department of Health and Human Services 2013) as well as the appropriate use of digital technology such as augmentative and assistive communication. Evidence-based comprehensive treatment programs for young children with ASD emphasize behavioral and/or development-based models. For example, the UCLA Young Autism Project, the Princeton Child Development Institute, and the Douglass Developmental Disabilities Center utilize traditional behavioral interventions (e.g., discrete trial training). The Learning Experiences and Alternative Program for Preschoolers and their Parents (LEAP) and the Walden Early Childhood Program utilize behavioral interventions in naturalistic settings and incidental teaching. Division TEACCH incorporates both behavioral and developmental approaches, while the Denver Early Start Model has a developmental orientation.

Emerging areas of knowledge that influence practice include targeted pharmacological and evidence-based treatments for specific disorders such as fragile X and ASD, as well as a growing body of clinical guidelines specific to conditions in the pediatric age range. In addition, care

consideration guidelines are being developed for fragile X and other disorders having unique behavioral phenotypes (e.g., velocardiofacial, Smith-Magenis, Angelman, Rett), and as understanding of the underlying mechanisms advances, targeted treatment studies are under way that may eventually reverse the neurodevelopmental abnormalities (e.g., medications that regulate the activity of the mGluR5 pathway in fragile X syndrome, myelin regeneration in Down syndrome, or GABA_A receptors in fragile X and Rett syndromes). At this time, best practice includes the need for intensive, multidisciplinary treatment programs for individuals with developmental disabilities and their families that focus on strengths and include medical, behavioral, educational, and therapeutic interventions.

References and Further Reading

- American Academy of Pediatrics, Council on Children with Disabilities. (2006). Identifying infants and young children with developmental disorders in the medical home: An algorithm for developmental surveillance and screening. *Pediatrics*, 118(1), 405–420. PMID:16818591.
- Baio, J., Wiggins, L., & Christensen, D. L., et al. (2018). Prevalence of autism spectrum disorder among children aged 8 years – Autism and Developmental Disabilities Monitoring Network, 11 sites, United States, 2014. *MMWR Surveill Summ*, 67(No. SS–6), 1–23. <https://doi.org/10.15585/mmwr.ss6706a1>
- Bertrand, J. (2009). Interventions for children with fetal alcohol spectrum disorders (FASDs): Overview of findings for five innovative research projects. *Research in Developmental Disabilities*, 30(5), 986–1006.
- Boyle, C. A., Boulet, S., Schieve, L. A., Cohen, R. H., Blumberg, S. J., Yeargin-Allsopp, M., Visser, S., & Kogan, M. D. (2011). Trends in the prevalence of developmental disabilities in US children, 1997–2008. *Pediatrics*, 127(6), 1034–1042. <https://doi.org/10.1542/peds.2010-2989>. PMID:21606152.
- Brat, S., & Kooy, R. F. (2015). The GABA_A receptor as therapeutic target for neurodevelopmental disorders. *Neuron*, 86, 1119–1130. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuron.2015.03.042>.
- Brosco, J. P., Mattingly, M., & Sanders, L. M. (2006). Impact of specific medical interventions on reducing the prevalence of mental retardation. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med*, 160(3), 302–309. <https://doi.org/10.1001/archpedi.160.3.302>
- Buescher, A., Cidav, Z., Knapp, M., & Mandell, D. (2014). Costs of autism spectrum disorders in the United

- Kingdom and the United States. *JAMA Pediatrics*, 168, 721–728. <https://doi.org/10.1001/jamapediatrics.2014.210>.
- Gross, S. D. (2010). Late-treated phenylketonuria and partial reversibility of intellectual impairment. *Child Development*, 81(1), 200–211.
- Houtrow, A. J., Lason, K., Olson, L. M., Newacheck, P. W., & Halfon, N. (2014). Changing trends in childhood disability, 2001–2011. *Pediatrics*, 134, 530–538. <https://doi.org/10.1542/peds.2014-0594>.
- Landa, R. J., & Kalb, L. G. (2012). Long-term outcomes of toddlers with Autism Spectrum Disorders exposed to short-term intervention. *Pediatrics*, 130, supplement 2S186–supplement 2S190. <https://doi.org/10.1542/peds.2012-0900Q>.
- Powell, C. M. (2019). What is newborn screening? *North Carolina Medical Journal*, 80, 32–36. <https://doi.org/10.18043/ncm.80.1.32>
- Rogers, S. J., Estes, A., Lord, C., Vismara, L., Winter, J., Fitzpatrick, A., Guo, M., & Dawson, G. (2012). Effects of a brief Early Start Denver Model (ESDM) – Parent-based intervention on toddlers at risk for autism spectrum disorders: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*, 51, 1052–1065. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jaac.2012.08.003>.
- Tartaglia, N. R., Hansen, R. L., & Hagerman, R. J. (2007). Advances in genetics. In S. L. Odom, R. H. Horner, M. E. Snell, & J. Blacher (Eds.), *Handbook of developmental disabilities* (pp. 98–128). New York: Guilford Press.
- US Department of Health and Human Services, Administration for Children and Families, National Institute of Child Health & Human Development. (2013). Tips for early care and education providers. Simple concepts to embed in everyday routines. www.acf.hhs.gov/sits/default/files/ecd/508_tips_for_early_care_and_education_providers_april_2013.pdf
- United States 106th Congress. Developmental Disabilities Assistance and Bill of Rights Act of 2000. Public Law 1-6-402. Downloaded from www.aucd.org/docs/urc/dd_act_011907.pdf
- Vallianatos, C. N., & Iwase, S. (2015). Disrupted intricacy of histone H3K4 methylation in neurodevelopmental disorders. *Epigenomics*, 7, 501–517. <https://doi.org/10.2217/epi.15.1>.
- Van Naarden Braun, K., Christensen, D., Doernberg, N., Schieve, L., Roce, C., Wiggins, S., et al. (2015). Trends in the prevalence of autism spectrum disorder, cerebral palsy, hearing loss, intellectual disability and vision impairment, Metropolitan Atlanta, 1991–2010. *PLoS ONE*, 10, e0124120. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0124120>.
- Zablotsky, B., Black, L. I., & Blumberg, S. J. (2017). Estimated prevalence of children with diagnosed developmental disabilities following questionnaire changes in the United States, 2014–2016. NCHS Data brief, no 291. Hyattsville, MD: National Center for Health Statistics. Downloaded from www.cdc.gov/nchs/producdats/databriefs.htm

Developmental Psychology

► Child Development

Deviance

► Stigma

Dex Suppression Test

► Dexamethasone Suppression Test

Dex Test

► Dexamethasone Suppression Test

Dexamethasone Suppression Test

Brigitte M. Kudielka
Department of Medical Psychology,
Psychological Diagnostics and Research
Methodology, University of Regensburg,
Regensburg, Germany

Synonyms

Dex suppression test; Dex test; DST; HPA axis negative feedback testing

Definition

Dexamethasone is a synthetic glucocorticoid and acts as a ligand of glucocorticoid receptors. The principle of the dexamethasone suppression test (DST) is based on this binding capability. Via receptor binding, dexamethasone exerts a negative feedback function on the hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis (de Kloet et al.

1998). The HPA axis is a hierarchical hormonal system encompassing the hypothalamus, the pituitary gland, and the adrenal cortex with their respective hormones CRH, ACTH, and cortisol. Beside its role in stress regulation, the HPA axis is vital for supporting normal physiological functioning. Its functioning is controlled by several negative feedback loops. Generally, the DST is applied as a standard diagnostic tool to assess feedback sensitivity of the HPA axis in clinical settings (e.g., in major depression, posttraumatic stress disorder, etc.) as well as in psychoneuroendocrinological research (e.g., in stress research) (Bellingrath et al. 2008; Yehuda et al. 1993).

The dexamethasone suppression test normally consists of the oral intake of a single dose of dexamethasone (see below) which then leads to the suppression of ACTH at the level of the pituitary and subsequently to a reduced cortisol secretion from the adrenal cortex. Of course, dexamethasone can also be applied intravenously. In contrast to endogenous glucocorticoids like cortisol, dexamethasone primarily acts at the level of the pituitary (due to the blood brain barrier). Selected doses of dexamethasone vary depending on the aim of the diagnostic test, the tested population, or the given research question. A typical dose to identify individuals with increased cortisol suppression after dexamethasone intake (indicating increased negative feedback sensitivity) is the application of 0.5 mg of dexamethasone. Oral intake takes normally place at 11pm, and cortisol measurements are repeatedly performed during the following morning or day to account for the normal circadian rhythm of cortisol (and ACTH) with highest levels in the morning and decreasing levels over the remainder of the day (except for stress-related superimposed hormone surges). After ingestion of a standard dose of 1 mg of dexamethasone, an almost complete suppression of the cortisol secretion in healthy individuals can be expected. That means, cortisol levels are typically suppressed to concentrations less than 5 µg/dl until the following afternoon after the intake of 1 mg dexamethasone the night before. However, in the normal population up to 10%, non-suppressors can be identified. Fortunately, there are virtually no side effects

reported for a single dexamethasone intake of 1–2 mg of dexamethasone. In different patient groups, either no cortisol suppression (e.g., in Cushing's disease) or cortisol super-suppression (e.g., in some patients suffering from post-traumatic stress disorder) can be observed. For the diagnosis of Cushing's disease, dexamethasone doses of up to 8 mg are applied. However, it is of note here that other tests need to complement a definite diagnosis of Cushing's disease.

In recent years, a much lower dexamethasone dosage of 0.25 mg was suggested (mainly for research purposes) to increase the sensitivity the DST, called low-dose DST (Cole et al. 2000; Yehuda et al. 1993). This version of the test is advantageous if subtle differences are to be detected in HPA-negative feedback sensitivity in apparently healthy individuals (Bellingrath et al. 2008). After intake of 0.25 mg of dexamethasone, endogenous cortisol concentrations of about 5 µg/dl can normally be expected.

One should be aware of the fact that an unequivocal interpretation of DST results should additionally account for the following two issues: Since the exact amount of circulating dexamethasone is dependent on metabolic functioning, bioavailability of dexamethasone should be controlled for, especially in certain patient groups with known metabolic dysfunctions. Furthermore, in order to rule out altered reactivity of the adrenal cortex to ACTH signals, one should want to additionally check the extent of ACTH suppression.

Finally, the DST can also be combined with other pharmacological provocation tests like the CRH stimulation tests (Heuser et al. 1994). Over the last decades, the combined Dex-CRH test applying a premedication of 1.5 mg dexamethasone the night before followed by a CRH application (e.g., 100 µg or 1 µg/kg body weight) at the following afternoon proved its usefulness especially for the assessment of HPA axis feedback regulation in psychiatric disorders.

Cross-References

- [ACTH](#)
- [Adrenal Glands](#)

- [Adrenocorticotropin](#)
- [Corticotropin-Releasing Hormone \(CRH\)](#)
- [Cortisol](#)
- [Depression](#)
- [Endocrinology](#)
- [Glucocorticoids](#)
- [Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Axis](#)
- [Pituitary-Adrenal Axis](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bellingrath, S., Weigl, T., & Kudielka, B. M. (2008). Cortisol dysregulation in school teachers in relation to burnout, vital exhaustion, and effort-reward-imbalance. *Biological Psychology*, 78(1), 104–113.
- Cole, M. A., Kim, P. J., Kalman, B. A., & Spencer, R. L. (2000). Dexamethasone suppression of corticosteroid secretion: Evaluation of the site of action by receptor measures and functional studies. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 25(2), 151–167.
- de Kloet, E. R., Vreugdenhil, E., Oitzl, M. S., & Joels, M. (1998). Brain corticosteroid receptor balance in health and disease. *Endocrine Reviews*, 19(3), 269–301.
- Heuser, I., Yassouridis, A., & Holsboer, F. (1994). The combined dexamethasone/CRH test: A refined laboratory test for psychiatric disorders. *Journal of Psychiatric Research*, 28(4), 341–356.
- Yehuda, R., Southwick, S. M., Krystal, J. H., Bremner, D., Charney, D. S., & Mason, J. W. (1993). Enhanced suppression of cortisol following dexamethasone administration in posttraumatic stress disorder. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 150(1), 83–86.

DHA

- [Omega-3 Fatty Acids](#)

Diabetesity in Children

Francine Kaufman
Medtronic, Northridge, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Childhood obesity](#); [Obesity](#)

Definition

The association of obesity and diabetes has been recently referred to as diabetesity.

Description

In 2000, then Surgeon General David Satcher announced that the epidemic of obesity in the United States was increasingly affecting children and adolescents (Satcher 2001). At the time of the surgeon general's announcement, approximately 16% of youth were categorized as being obese, defined as a body mass index (BMI) greater than the 95th percentile for age and gender. Overall, that same childhood obesity rate persists in the USA today; however, minority children have significantly higher rates. Data from the HEALTHY study in middle school-aged children showed that approximately 50% of sixth grade students in middle schools with a predominate minority population were overweight or obese (BMI $\geq$ 85th percentile for age and gender) (HEALTHY, HEALTHY Study Group 2010).

Concomitant with the rise in childhood obesity is a corresponding increase in the incidence of the metabolic syndrome and type 2 diabetes in pediatric subjects. Before the 1990s, it was rare for most pediatric centers to have patients with type 2 diabetes. By 1994, type 2 diabetes patients represented up to 16% of new cases of diabetes in children in urban areas, and by 1999, depending on geographic location, the range of percentage of new cases of type 2 was between 8% and 45% (HEALTHY, HEALTHY Study Group 2010). The SEARCH study showed that after age 10 years, of all American Indian children who have diabetes, two thirds have type 2; of all Hispanic and African American children with diabetes, approximately a third have type 2; and only 8% of non-Hispanic White children affected with the disease have type 2 (SEARCH 2006). Therefore, type 2 diabetes occurs mainly in ethnic minorities in the United States, as has been described in children in a number of countries throughout the world.

A period of prediabetes, defined as either elevated fasting glucose levels, impaired glucose

tolerance, and/or elevated A1C (5.7– <6.4%), occurs before the development of frank type 2 diabetes. Type 2 diabetes in children and youth, as in adults, is caused by the combination of insulin resistance and relative B cell secretory failure. Plasma insulin concentrations appear normal or elevated, but there is a loss of first-phase insulin secretion that cannot compensate for underlying insulin resistance. There are a number of genetic and environmental risk factors for insulin resistance and limited B cell reserve, including ethnicity, obesity, sedentary behavior, family history of type 2 diabetes, puberty, high and low birth weight, and female gender. Family education level, SES, maternal diabetes or excessive weight gain, failure to breast feed, and exposure to an obesogenic environment are additional risk factors.

Type 2 diabetes in pediatric subjects has a variable presentation, although many children present with symptoms caused by elevated glucose. There is an associated increase in A1C $\geq 6.4\%$ which can be used to make the diagnosis. Few pediatric subjects with type 2 diabetes can be treated with diet and exercise alone; therefore, pharmacologic therapy is most often required. Depending on initial glucose levels and the degree of symptoms caused by hyperglycemia, practitioners usually prescribe metformin for those subjects who are mildly affected, or subjects begin insulin therapy if they have more significant hyperglycemia. Relatively few pediatric subjects use other or combination therapy. Unfortunately, while they are undergoing the present pharmacologic regimens, many patients appear unable to achieve glycemic targets over the long term. Specific treatment algorithms for pediatric patients with type 2 diabetes that are aimed at achieving glycemic targets have not been investigated in youth. The ongoing Treatment Options for type 2 Diabetes in Adolescents and Youth (TODAY) trial, sponsored by the National Institutes of Health, has investigated best treatments for type 2 diabetes in pediatric subjects and will provide evidence for improving the outcome of pediatric type 2 diabetes.

The term diabetes was coined to raise awareness about the adverse health effects of obesity. Today, obesity and diabetes has become a health-

care crisis of epidemic proportions. It is a given that individuals and families must change their behavior if we are to reverse the present trends. But they cannot do it on their own. Reversing the trends will require the coordinated efforts from local, state, and national governments; public and private industries; community and religious organizations; schools; and the health-care system. Information must be provided, social norms must change, and, most importantly, an environment that supports healthy lifestyles must be created. Only then will the childhood diabetes epidemic be reversed.

Cross-References

- [Obesity in Children](#)
- [Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus](#)

References and Readings

- HEALTHY, HEALTHY Study Group. (2010). A school-based intervention for diabetes risk reduction. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 363, 443–453.
- Kaufman, F. R. (2005). Type 2 diabetes in children and youth. *Endocrinology and Metabolism Clinics of North America*, 34, 659–676.
- Satcher, D. (2001). *The Surgeon General's call to action to prevent and decrease overweight and obesity*. Rockville: Public Health Service, Office of the Surgeon General, United States Department of Health and Human Services. Available at <http://www.surgeongeneral.gov/topics/obesity/calltoaction/CalltoAction.pdf>.
- SEARCH Study Group: The Burden of Diabetes Mellitus Among U.S. Youth. (2006). Prevalence estimates from the SEARCH for diabetes in youth study. *Pediatrics*, 118, 1510–1518.

Diabetes

Luigi Meneghini
Diabetes Research Institute, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Hyperglycemia](#)

Definition

Diabetes (mellitus) is defined as elevated blood glucose levels (hyperglycemia), which over time can lead to chronic microvascular complications such as diabetic retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy. Diabetes is caused by deficiency in insulin production (type 1 diabetes), which in many cases can be accompanied by increased insulin demand, also known as insulin resistance (type 2 diabetes). Type 2 is the most common form of diabetes accounting for 85–90% of all cases. Diabetes can be diagnosed by way of a fasting plasma glucose (≥ 126 mg/dl), an elevated HbA1c ($\geq 6.5\%$) or an oral glucose tolerance test (2-h postchallenge plasma glucose ≥ 200 mg/dl). Alternatively, someone presenting with symptoms of hyperglycemia, such as excessive thirst or urination, blurring of vision, or weight loss, combined with a random plasma glucose of ≥ 200 mg/dl, can also be diagnosed with diabetes.

Control of hyperglycemia is essential to reduce the risk of chronic microvascular complications associated with diabetes. This can be done through adopting healthy lifestyle and dietary habits, the use of oral medications to lower blood glucose, and/or the use of insulin replacement therapy. Diabetes is often a familial disease with genetic and environmental predisposing factors. First-degree relatives of individuals with diabetes have an approximate fivefold to tenfold increase in the risk of developing diabetes compared to the general population.

While diabetes mellitus (“sweet siphon”) refers to the more common form of diabetes, characterized by hyperglycemia, diabetes insipidus (“bland or tasteless siphon”) refers to an inability to retain free water due to deficiencies in the production or action of antidiuretic hormone (vasopressin).

References and Readings

Joslin, E. P., & Kahn, C. R. (2005). *Joslin's diabetes mellitus* (14th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Diabetes Education

Luigi Meneghini

Diabetes Research Institute, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Patient education](#); [Self-management education](#)

Definition

Diabetes education is the process of enabling patients with diabetes to gain knowledge, problem-solving skills, empowerment, and ability to manage their condition through the application of appropriate treatments and lifestyle intervention.

Description

Diabetes is a chronic condition whose management and control is highly dependent on both appropriate treatment prescriptions and patient implementation of those recommendations. Proper diabetes management requires a high degree of involvement on the part of the patient if it is to be successful. Education for patients with diabetes requires transfer of knowledge, as well as problem-solving skills, that incorporates the needs, goals, and experiences of patients with diabetes, with the ultimate objective of supporting “informed decision making, self-care behaviors, problem solving, and active collaboration with the health-care team.” The implementation of appropriate treatment prescriptions and self-management behaviors needs to ultimately lead to improved clinical outcomes, health, and quality of life.

Diabetes self-management standards have been modified over the years to incorporate evidence-based recommendations. Guiding principles for these standards, which need to be adhered to by any entity seeking accreditation

for their educational activities, dictate that diabetes education should improve clinical outcomes and quality of life, incorporate empowerment models, and individualize the educational approach to include behavioral and psychological strategies that are culturally and age appropriate. Group education, ongoing reassessment and education, and behavioral goal setting are critical elements to successful patient education programs. The American Diabetes Association has published specific standards for diabetes self-management education (DSME) that address several areas. DSME programs need a clear organizational structure, mission statement, and goals that are overseen by an advisory group, which include representatives from health professionals, patients, community, and other stakeholders. The DSME programs need to determine the specific educational needs of their target populations and identify appropriate resources to meet those needs; they must designate a professional coordinator to manage the program. Professional and experienced educators (nurse, dietitian, pharmacist, etc.) develop and implement educational interventions based on a curriculum that relies on current evidence and practice guidelines. Patients need to receive a documented individual assessment and education plan, with a personalized follow-up plan for ongoing education and support. Measurement of patient-defined goals forms the basis for patient reassessment and ongoing support and education. The DSME also needs to measure and document the effectiveness of the education process and use this opportunity for continuous quality improvement.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Patient Education](#)
- ▶ [Self-management Education](#)

References and Readings

Funnell, M. M., Brown, T. L., Childs, B. P., Haas, L. B., Hosey, G. M., Jensen, B., et al. (2011). National standards for diabetes self-management education. *Diabetes Care*, 34(Suppl 1), S89–S96.

Diabetes Foot Care

Kathleen Michael
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Diabetic foot care](#)

Definition

Routine care of the feet for individuals who have diabetes, including inspection, skin and nail care, and prevention of injury.

Description

Diabetes may cause nerve damage that affects feeling in the feet. Diabetes may also reduce blood flow to the feet, making it harder to heal injuries or to resist infection.

Most people with diabetes can prevent serious foot problems by taking some simple actions. Routine foot care should include an annual foot exam by a healthcare provider, or more often if foot problems are present. The exam includes evaluation for injuries or breaks in the skin, nail problems, pain, sensitivity, or changes in foot shape or skin color. In some cases, healthcare providers may recommend specially fitted shoes.

Individuals with diabetes should inspect their feet every day, looking for red spots, cuts, swelling, or blisters. They should wash feet daily and apply moisturizing lotion to tops and bottoms of feet, but not between toes. Toenails should be trimmed straight across and filed if they can be easily seen and reached, otherwise a foot care specialist should trim nails. Shoes and socks should be worn at all times to prevent injury to the feet. Other self-care measures to prevent foot problems include keeping blood glucose levels controlled, not smoking, and avoiding sitting and crossing legs for prolonged periods. Increased

activity may promote foot health along with other overall benefits to the cardiovascular system.

reported an identical 3-year reduction in diabetes incidence (Knowler et al. 2002). This entry focuses on the DPP.

Cross-References

► [Preventive Care](#)

Diabetes Prevention Program

David G. Marrero

Diabetes Translational Research Center, Indiana University School of Medicine, Indianapolis, IN, USA

Synonyms

[Type 2 diabetes prevention](#)

Definition

There are several factors that increase a person's risk for developing type 2 diabetes mellitus. These include increased age, a family history of diabetes, race (persons of color having greater risk), obesity, body fat distribution, physical inactivity, and evidence of a metabolic defect as measured by either elevated fasting glucose, impaired glucose tolerance, or elevated glycosylated hemoglobin A1c. Because many of these risk factors are modifiable, notably obesity and activity patterns, it should be possible to reduce risk by interventions designed to help high risk persons reduce weight and increase their levels of physical activity. There is increasing evidence that this is indeed the case. In 1997, the Chinese first reported that lifestyle intervention in persons with impaired glucose tolerance (IGT) resulted in a significant reduction in the incidence of diabetes, with a 40% reduction occurring over a 6-year period (Pan et al. 1997). In 2001, the Finns reported that lifestyle intervention in persons with IGT resulted in a 58% reduction in 3-year diabetes incidence (Tuomilehto et al. 2001), and in 2002, the American Diabetes Prevention Program (DPP) study

Description

The DPP was a three-group randomized clinical trial that was conducted in 27 centers across the United States. The 3234 subjects were all 25 years of age or older, had IGT, and a body mass index (BMI) of at least 24 kg/m². All ethnic groups were represented with 45% of the cohort being African American, Hispanic American, American Indian, or Asian/Pacific Islander. In addition, 68% of the cohort was women, 31% between the ages of 25–44, 49% between 45 and 59, and 20% 60 and above. Subjects were randomly assigned to a medication condition (using metformin), a medication placebo control condition, or a lifestyle intervention. The lifestyle intervention was an intensive program with very specific goals: a minimum of 7% loss of body weight and maintenance of this weight loss through the course of the trial and a minimum of 150 min per week of physical activity with brisk walking being the standard.

The lifestyle intervention was a 16-session core curriculum implemented over 24 weeks to account for holidays and regionally defined special events. Each session was taught by a lifestyle coach who worked with the subject one on one. In addition, subjects had access to a dietitian, a behaviorist, and exercise physiologist if they so elected. Frequent contact with the lifestyle coach and support staff was the norm with most subjects following a weekly meeting schedule (The Diabetes Prevention Program (DPP) Research Group 2002).

The intervention provided education and training in diet and exercise methods and behavior modification skills. Emphasis was placed on the use of self-monitoring techniques to assess dietary intake and diet composition, active problem solving to reduce the impact of personal and social cues to eat in ways counterproductive to achieving weight goals, and building self esteem, empowerment, and social support to reinforce lifestyle modifications. The intervention was individualized to address social and cultural factors that

impact eating behavior, and a long-term maintenance program was introduced following the core curriculum.

The intervention was successful in reducing the risk for developing type 2 diabetes by 58%. Subjects in the lifestyle condition lost an average of 7 kg following the core curriculum and maintained a negative weight loss with an average loss of approximately 4 kg and 36 months post-core. In addition, 74% of the subjects in the lifestyle condition achieved the minimum study goal of 150 min of physical activity per week with the mean activity level at the end of the core curriculum being 224 min per week. Importantly, the intervention was effective for all participants, regardless of race, age, or gender.

As noted above, this is the same percentage of risk reduction obtained by the Finns. It is exceedingly rare in the annals of human clinical trials that two independent studies conducted on separate continents would report identical findings. A reasonable assumption is that the Finnish and American trials used identical lifestyle interventions (both were delivered to individual participants rather than in group sessions). However, they were quite different with the American trial being substantially more intensive. In the Finnish trial, each participant in the lifestyle intervention group had seven sessions with a nutritionist during the first year of the study and one session every 3 months thereafter (Tuomilehto et al. 2001).

It is tempting to conclude that the American approach to lifestyle intervention was less efficient than that used by the Finns, but there are differences between the Finnish and American participants worth noting. The mean body mass index (BMI; kg/m^2) in the Finnish sample was about 31, and in the American sample it was about 34, suggesting that the Americans were 9–10 kg heavier, on average, than the Finns. The DPP cohort was heterogeneous in terms of age and race/ethnicity whereas the Finns studied a fairly homogenous population. In addition, because of local environmental and cultural differences between Finland and the USA, it is likely there were fewer opportunities for physical activity for American participants than for Finns.

The prevention of type 2 diabetes is clearly a behavioral issue that involves implementing

interventions designed to modify eating and physical activity behaviors. Future efforts need to consider how to translate efficacy studies such as those reviewed here into the broader public health. Such efforts need to involve behavioral scientists in the design of these interventions.

Cross-References

- [Diabetes Education](#)
- [Type 2 Diabetes](#)

References and Readings

- Knowler, W. C., Barrett-Connor, E., Fowler, S. E., Hamman, R. F., Lachin, J. M., Walker, E. A., et al. (2002). Reduction in the incidence of type 2 diabetes with lifestyle intervention or metformin. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 346, 393–403.
- Pan, X. R., Li, G. W., Hu, Y. H., Wang, J. X., Yang, W. Y., An, Z. X., et al. (1997). Effects of diet and exercise in preventing NIDDM in people with impaired glucose tolerance. The Da Qing IGT and Diabetes Study. *Diabetes Care*, 20, 537–544.
- The Diabetes Prevention Program (DPP) Research Group. (2002). The Diabetes Prevention Program (DPP): Description of lifestyle intervention. *Diabetes Care*, 25, 2165–2171.
- Tuomilehto, J., Lindström, J., Eriksson, J. G., Valle, T. T., Ämalainen, H., Lanne-Parikka, P., et al. (2001). Prevention of type 2 diabetes mellitus by changes in lifestyle among subjects with impaired glucose tolerance. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 344, 1343–1350.

Diabetes: Psychosocial Factors

Maartje de Wit
Medical Psychology, VU University Medical Center, Amsterdam, North Holland,
The Netherlands

Definition

Diabetes psychosocial factors are those factors associated with the psychological and social well-being of people with diabetes, as well as

how those factors are related to diabetes-related self-management behaviors and glycemic control.

Description

The daily self-care of patients with diabetes mellitus type 1 or 2 is crucial for achieving blood glucose targets. Self-management is the foundation of diabetes treatment. A good understanding of the changes and challenges faced by people with diabetes is therefore essential in guiding these patients. We should remember that despite medication and improvements in administration systems, over one third of patients have long-term poorly controlled diabetes and thus a greatly increased risk of micro- and macrovascular complications (Harris 2000; Writing Team for the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial/Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications Research Group 2002). Psychological and social factors play an important role in the self-management of diabetes. This involves more than just knowledge of the patient. Research on self-care of diabetes patients shows that especially perceptions, attitudes, emotions, and social support are important in the process of behavior change.

Adaptation and Self-management

Diabetes is a chronic disease that puts specific demands on the daily life of patients. The most important task is keeping blood glucose values within normal limits in different situations. This requires the patient to be always aware of the effects of diet, physical activity, and glucose-lowering medication. Patients using insulin are advised to monitor their blood glucose levels frequently, to anticipate changing circumstances, and if necessary, to correct the glucose concentration in a timely manner. Fluctuations in blood glucose levels are often unavoidable. Low blood glucose (hypoglycemia) may seriously disrupt daily functioning and thus lead to frustration and anxiety in patients as well as in their family members.

Many patients with type 2 diabetes have, in addition to impaired glucose regulation, metabolic problems requiring a change of lifestyle

and drug treatment. An increasing number of patients with type 2 diabetes need to take several oral medications each day, and many of them also need daily insulin injections. For many, this treatment appears a difficult task, which translates into poor treatment adherence. Diabetes is truly regarded as one of the most psychologically damaging chronic diseases with a high risk of “burnout.”

After Diagnosis

The adjustment process starts with the diagnosis. In type 1 diabetes, the majority of cases are diagnosed early in childhood and impact the entire family. Understandably, the diagnosis causes strong feelings of fear and uncertainty. Most children and their parents appear to adjust quite well to the new situation after some time (Anderson 2003). Successful adaptation depends on the family situation and the quality of care provided. Generally, during adolescence, a worsening of diabetes is seen. Increasing insulin resistance plays a role, but also the tendency of adolescents to diminish their attention to their diabetes and to take more risks. Conflicts may arise in the family, which in turn contribute to poorer adjustment of blood glucose of youths. However, young people with diabetes tend to rate their psychosocial well-being equal to that of their healthy peers (de Wit et al. 2007).

Diabetes mellitus type 2 is, in most cases, diagnosed in adulthood although in recent years the mean age at diagnosis has decreased. Research shows that when type 2 diabetes is diagnosed at an early stage, this causes little or no emotional reaction (Adriaanse and Snoek 2006). This is presumably because a medical treatment is usually not an issue and initially “only” lifestyle changes of patients are requested. Longitudinal research has shown that the significance of diabetes and the psychological impact of this disease changes over time (Thooolen et al. 2006). It is therefore important not only to pay attention to adaptation problems soon after diagnosis, but also in the subsequent treatment process. In patients with type 1 or type 2 diabetes, possible health complications may occur that seriously complicate daily functioning and adversely affect quality of life.

Social Support

Social support is a complex construct, but generally is found to have positive effects on diabetes management. Research has demonstrated positive effects on adherence and control for both structural support (e.g., family, friends, co-workers, density of support networks) and functional support (e.g., diabetes-specific help, communication style, cohesiveness). Especially in adolescents, the importance of a supportive family has been shown. Open, empathic communication within families and continued parental involvement in diabetes care is important for achieving good adherence and glycemic outcomes (Anderson 2003). Evaluation of interventions designed to enhance support, such as social skills training, and improved understanding about diabetes for families, has revealed positive effects on adherence and control. Several trials have demonstrated that group instruction to impart diabetes knowledge and coping skills produces better results than individualized instruction. Support provided through self-help groups or through a mentor (a well-adjusted patient) has been promoted but not researched in the context of diabetes.

Quality of Life

Diabetes, with daily requirements for self-monitoring and management in order to avoid the short-term consequences of hypoglycemia and the long-term complications associated with hyperglycemia, has a substantial impact on daily life. The demands of daily self-care can easily interfere with normal routines and friendships, thereby compromising emotional and social well-being. Attaining strict glycemic control as well as good quality of life (QoL) is a challenge for people with diabetes, their families, and health-care providers. This has led to considerable interest in diabetes-specific quality of life, assessed through a wide range of concerns including morale, well-being, depression, and role functioning. Studies looking into the relationship between diabetes control and QoL find low correlations, if any, although there is evidence to suggest that patients suffering from diabetes-related complications (neuropathy, retinopathy, nephropathy) on average report lower levels of QoL

compared to patients without secondary complications (Snoek 2000). In children, the relationship between glycemic control and QoL is complex and inconsistent across studies as well (Bryden et al. 2001; Hoey et al. 2001; de Wit et al. 2007).

Psychiatric Comorbidity

Diabetes has long been associated with the psychological constitution of patients. Their mental state was considered to be the cause of the disease or as a factor in diabetes regulation. Indeed, a meta-analysis does show that depression increases the risk of developing type 2 diabetes by 30%, taking known risk factors into account (Knol et al. 2006). There is evidence that patients with poorly controlled type 1 diabetes, as measured by levels of glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA1c), can be distinguished psychologically as a group from patients with well-controlled diabetes on measures of depression and eating disorders. In patients with type 2 diabetes, there is also evidence of a relationship between depression and poorer glycemic control. There is increasing evidence that psychiatric comorbidity is more frequent in adults as well as adolescents with diabetes than in the general population (Anderson et al. 2001; Bryden et al. 2001), with adverse consequences for diabetes control. Below three major mental disorders that can complicate the treatment of diabetes are discussed.

Eating Disorders

Food and postponement of food are inextricably linked to a disturbance of blood glucose control in people with diabetes. Time to think about what you eat and when, can result in feelings of frustration and “binge eating,” especially if the diet is restrictive. This may explain the increased prevalence of “binge eating disorder” in female patients with type 2 diabetes (Kenardy et al. 2001). In girls with type 1 diabetes, the prevalence of bulimia nervosa is elevated (Colton et al. 2004). Eating disorders almost always go along with an elevated HbA1c, frequent fluctuations in blood glucoses, and a greatly increased risk of early development of microvascular complications. Underdosing of insulin as a way to lose weight is not uncommon, particularly among adolescent girls. Among girls

with type 1 diabetes, 10% admit to skipping some insulin injections, and 7.5% report injecting less insulin than is required in order to lose weight (Neumark-Sztainer et al. 2002). The treatment of severe eating disorders in diabetes is complex and requires a close collaboration between diabetes clinicians and professionals of clinics specialized in eating disorders.

Anxiety

Extreme anxiety may affect diabetes control, primarily by the disturbing effect of stress hormones, but also by avoidance behavior. One must be careful in giving alarming information like risk of diabetes-related health complications (“fear appeals”) if one wants to encourage patients to improve self-management. Most diabetes patients are already concerned about the potential complications of their illness, and further increasing this fear probably does more harm than good. Two fears specific to patients with diabetes require special attention, namely, fear of injections and self-monitoring of blood glucose and fear of hypoglycemia. Although the prevalence of extreme anxiety for the injection of insulin and for self-monitoring of blood glucose is low among diabetic patients using insulin (0.3–1.0%), this fear may be accompanied by great distress and poor diabetes regulation. Moreover, 40% of patients with a phobic fear of injections also have a phobia of pricking the finger to obtain a blood sample. Data on the effects of psychological treatment for self-testing or injection fear are scarce. Both phobias are often associated with other psychiatric disorders, which makes these patients particularly vulnerable (Mollema et al. 2001).

Hypoglycemia remains the major side effect of intensive insulin therapy. Exact data are lacking, but a large proportion of patients using insulin have frequent worries about hypoglycemia. More uncommon is a phobic fear of hypoglycemia which can arise once a patient experienced a severe hypoglycemia with loss of consciousness. Patients with a compulsive or panic disorder can be extremely afraid of hypoglycemia without ever having had a real risk. A complicating factor is that anxious patients often do not know whether

the symptoms of sweating, dizziness, and heart palpitations they are experiencing are due to dropping blood glucose levels or a panic attack. It is understandable that phobic patients may pursue “safe” blood glucose levels, which translates into a higher HbA1c. Patients with milder forms of fear benefit from hypoglycemia prevention training, which aims to improve their symptom perception and better recognition of risk factors for hypoglycemia (Cox et al. 2001). Phobic patients and partners can benefit from cognitive behavioral therapy where they can learn to examine how realistic their views on hypoglycemia are and replace irrational thoughts with more adaptive cognitions.

Depression

Mood disorders are twice as common in patients with diabetes compared to the general population. The prevalence of moderate to severe depression among both type 1 and type 2 diabetes patients is estimated at 10–20% (Anderson et al. 2001). For adolescents with type 1 diabetes, the risk of depression is 2–3 times higher compared to their healthy peers (Hood et al. 2006). The relationship between diabetes and depression is not entirely clear. Probably biochemical and psychosocial factors play a role. Patients with depressive symptoms have poorer glycemic control and more complications and are more often hospitalized. Early recognition and treatment of depression in people with diabetes will probably result in major health benefits. Both psychological and pharmacological treatments of depression in diabetes patients are proven to be effective (Katon et al. 2004).

Sexual Problems

It is estimated that approximately 50% of men with a diabetes duration greater than 5 years have some degree of erectile dysfunction, with adverse effects on their perceived quality of life. It seems that these sexual problems are not often discussed with health-care professionals (De Berardis et al. 2002). Neuropathy and metabolic disorders are considered as the main causes of erectile dysfunction, but acute fluctuations in blood glucose and psychological factors may play

a role as well. Drug treatment of erectile dysfunction, sometimes in combination with psychotherapy or marriage counseling, may be effective.

Less is known about sexual dysfunction in women with diabetes, but recent research among women with type 1 diabetes showed that they have more problems with sexual arousal and lubrication compared to healthy women. Sexual problems in female patients are often associated with depressive symptoms, making it difficult to determine cause and effect.

Conclusion

Successful management of diabetes requires considerable motivation and adaptability of the patient. Because people with diabetes are at increased risk for psychological problems that may complicate self-management behaviors, attention to the psychosocial functioning of patients is important in all phases of treatment. The fact that depression and other psychosocial problems are often not recognized and discussed calls for systematic monitoring of psychological well-being of diabetic patients as part of the regular appointments. Research into the effects in youth and adults with diabetes has shown that such an approach is feasible and that the well-being of patients and their satisfaction with care increase (Pouwer et al. 2001; de Wit et al. 2008). Nurses can play an important role in such approach. Additional psychological assessment and intervention can be provided as needed. Diabetes is a largely self-managed disease. Consequently, if the patient is unwilling or unable to self-manage his or her diabetes on a day-to-day basis, outcomes will be poor, regardless of how advanced the treatment technology is. Cognitive, emotional, behavioral, and social factors have a vital role in diabetes management, particularly because research has shown depression and other psychological problems are prevalent and negatively impact on well-being and metabolic outcomes. There is more to diabetes than glucose control; a biopsychosocial approach is required for optimal results. Motivational counseling and

behavior change programs in type 2 diabetes have been shown to be effective in improving adherence and warrant further dissemination in primary and secondary care. In type 1 diabetes, adolescents are at increased risk of coping difficulties and poor diabetes outcomes, and warrant special attention. For all age groups, monitoring of patients' emotional well-being as an integral part of routine diabetes care is recommended. Discussion of quality-of-life issues in the context of clinical diabetes care in itself promotes increased adherence and patient satisfaction, and has proven to increase recognition of signs of emotional problems and "diabetes burnout." Integrating psychology in diabetes management can help to effectively tailor care to the patient's individual needs and improve outcomes.

Cross-References

- [Quality of Life](#)
- [Self-management](#)
- [Self-monitoring](#)
- [Self-regulation Model](#)

References and Reading

- Adriaanse, M. C., & Snoek, F. J. (2006). The psychological impact of screening for type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes/Metabolism Research and Reviews*, 22(1), 20–25.
- Anderson, B. J. (2003). Diabetes self-care: Lessons from research on the family and broader contexts. *Current Diabetes Reports*, 3(2), 134–140.
- Anderson, R. J., Freedland, K. E., Clouse, R. E., & Lustman, P. J. (2001). The prevalence of comorbid depression in adults with diabetes: A meta-analysis. *Diabetes Care*, 24(6), 1069–1078.
- Bryden, K. S., Peveler, R. C., Stein, A., Neil, A., Mayou, R. A., & Dunger, D. B. (2001). Clinical and psychological course of diabetes from adolescence to young adulthood: A longitudinal cohort study. *Diabetes Care*, 24(9), 1536–1540.
- Colton, P., Olmsted, M., Daneman, D., Rydall, A., & Rodin, G. (2004). Disturbed eating behavior and eating disorders in preteen and early teenage girls with type 1 diabetes: A case-controlled study. *Diabetes Care*, 27(7), 1654–1659.
- Cox, D. J., Gonder-Frederick, L., Polonsky, W., Schlundt, D., Kovatchev, B., & Clarke, W. (2001). Blood glucose

- awareness training (BGAT-2): Long-term benefits. *Diabetes Care*, 24(4), 637–642.
- De Berardis, G., Franciosi, M., Belfiglio, M., Di Nardo, B., Greenfield, S., Kaplan, S. H., et al. (2002). Erectile dysfunction and quality of life in type 2 diabetic patients: A serious problem too often overlooked. *Diabetes Care*, 25(2), 284–291.
- de Wit, M., Delemarre-van de Waal, H. A., Bokma, J. A., Haasnoot, K., Houdijk, M. C., Gemke, R. J., et al. (2007). Self-report and parent-report of physical and psychosocial well-being in Dutch adolescents with type 1 diabetes in relation to glycemic control. *Health and Quality of Life Outcomes*, 5, 10.
- de Wit, M., Delemarre-van de Waal, H. A., Bokma, J. A., Haasnoot, K., Houdijk, M. C., Gemke, R. J., et al. (2008). Monitoring and discussing health-related quality of life in adolescents with type 1 diabetes improve psychosocial well-being: A randomized controlled trial. *Diabetes Care*, 31(8), 1521–1526.
- Harris, M. I. (2000). Health care and health status and outcomes for patients with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care*, 23(6), 754–758.
- Hoey, H., Aanstoot, H. J., Chiarelli, F., Daneman, D., Danne, T., Dorchy, H., et al. (2001). Good metabolic control is associated with better quality of life in 2,101 adolescents with type 1 diabetes. *Diabetes Care*, 24(11), 1923–1928.
- Hood, K. K., Huestis, S., Maher, A., Butler, D., Volkeneing, L., & Laffel, L. M. B. (2006). Depressive symptoms in children and adolescents with Type 1 diabetes: Association with diabetes-specific characteristics. *Diabetes Care*, 29(6), 1389.
- Katon, W. J., Von Korff, M., Lin, E. H., Simon, G., Ludman, E., Russo, J., et al. (2004). The pathways study: A randomized trial of collaborative care in patients with diabetes and depression. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 61(10), 1042–1049.
- Kenardy, J., Mensch, M., Bowen, K., Green, B., Walton, J., & Dalton, M. (2001). Disordered eating behaviours in women with Type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Eating Behaviors*, 2(2), 183–192.
- Knol, M. J., Twisk, J. W., Beekman, A. T., Heine, R. J., Snoek, F. J., & Pouwer, F. (2006). Depression as a risk factor for the onset of type 2 diabetes mellitus. A meta-analysis. *Diabetologia*, 49(5), 837–845.
- Mollema, E. D., Snoek, F. J., Ader, H. J., Heine, R. J., & van der Ploeg, H. M. (2001). Insulin-treated diabetes patients with fear of self-injecting or fear of self-testing: Psychological comorbidity and general well-being. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 51(5), 665–672.
- Neumark-Sztainer, D., Patterson, J., Mellin, A., Ackard, D. M., Utter, J., Story, M., et al. (2002). Weight control practices and disordered eating behaviors among adolescent females and males with type 1 diabetes: Associations with sociodemographics, weight concerns, familial factors, and metabolic outcomes. *Diabetes Care*, 25(8), 1289–1296.
- Pouwer, F., Snoek, F. J., van der Ploeg, H. M., Ader, H. J., & Heine, R. J. (2001). Monitoring of psychological well-being in outpatients with diabetes: Effects on mood, HbA(1c), and the patient's evaluation of the quality of diabetes care: A randomized controlled trial. *Diabetes Care*, 24(11), 1929–1935.
- Snoek, F. J. (2000). Quality of life: A closer look at measuring patients' well-being. *Diabetes Spectrum*, 13, 24.
- Thoolen, B. J., de Ridder, D. T., Bensing, J. M., Gorter, K. J., & Rutten, G. E. (2006). Psychological outcomes of patients with screen-detected type 2 diabetes: The influence of time since diagnosis and treatment intensity. *Diabetes Care*, 29(10), 2257–2262.
- Writing Team for the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial/Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications Research Group. (2002). Effect of intensive therapy on the microvascular complications of type 1 diabetes mellitus. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 287(19), 2563–2569.

Diabetic Foot Care

► Diabetes Foot Care

Diabetic Neuropathy

Jenny T. Wang¹ and Jason S. Yeh²

¹Department of Medical Psychology, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

²Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Reproductive Endocrinology and Fertility, Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

Nerve damage

Definition

Diabetic neuropathy is nerve damage resulting from high blood sugar levels (hyperglycemia) and poor metabolic health in individuals with diabetes mellitus. Diabetic neuropathy can affect any number of organs or organ systems. Although it can develop after the initial diagnosis is made, it

is commonly used as a symptom to diagnose diabetes in a patient. A significant percentage of patients have clinical evidence of nerve damage at the time of diagnosis, which suggests that even prediabetes can cause early diabetic neuropathy. In general, the more poorly controlled the diabetes, the more severe the diabetic neuropathy. Studies have shown that nerve conduction through the body slows significantly with each percent rise in glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA1c) values. The most commonly encountered forms of diabetic neuropathy include distal symmetric polyneuropathy, autonomic neuropathy, polyradiculopathy, and mononeuropathy.

Distal symmetric polyneuropathy is the most common type and is often synonymous with diabetic neuropathy. It is characterized by the symmetrical damage of sensory nerves that initially affects the lower extremities. The natural history of symmetric polyneuropathy illustrates the principle that the longest axons are affected first. Consequently, patients initially report symptoms in their toes and feet, which eventually progress to the classic bilateral “stocking and glove” numbness. Individuals with peripheral neuropathy can experience debilitating pain, tingling, and numbness in their hands and feet. Because many patients ultimately lose all sensation in their feet, they must be fitted with nonabrasive shoes and are taught to check their hands and feet daily for abrasions and injuries that can progress into limb and life-threatening ulcers.

Autonomic neuropathy includes a wide spectrum of symptoms that can affect multiple organ systems such as the cardiovascular, gastrointestinal, genitourinary, and even the neuroendocrine system. Its diagnosis can be difficult because of multiple organ involvement and insidious onset. Symptoms of cardiac neuropathy include exercise intolerance, resting tachycardia, and silent myocardial infarction. Neuropathic disease of the upper gastrointestinal tract can cause dysphagia, retrosternal pain, and “heartburn.” More concerning is delayed stomach emptying which can cause nausea, vomiting, early satiety, prolonged fullness after eating and anorexia. When autonomic disease affects the lower

gastrointestinal tract, patients present with severe constipation, diarrhea, and even bowel incontinence. Neuropathy affecting the genitourinary system can cause bladder dysfunction, erectile dysfunction, and painful intercourse due to decreased vaginal lubrication. Less commonly, neuropathy can even cause hypoglycemia unawareness where patients become unable to perceive dangerously low blood sugar levels.

Diabetic polyradiculopathies refer to several types of asymmetric proximal nerve disease in the diabetic patient, the most common being diabetic amyotrophy and diabetic thoracic polyradiculopathy. Diabetic amyotrophy is the more common of the two and involves an acute onset of pain followed by weakness involving one proximal leg, with concurrent autonomic failure and weight loss. If the disease affects the contralateral leg, symptoms can occur immediately or much later after the initial episode. No treatments have been shown to be effective for diabetic amyotrophy. Thoracic polyradiculopathy, another type of diabetic polyradiculopathy, describes an injury of the high lumbar or thoracic-level nerve roots. These patients present with severe abdominal pain and have frequently undergone multiple studies to identify the cause of their symptoms.

Lastly, there are two types of diabetic mononeuropathy: cranial and peripheral. Cranial lesions commonly affect nerves surrounding the eye and typically result in unilateral eye symptoms including pain, drooping eyelid, and double vision. The most common peripheral lesions in diabetic patients are median nerve mononeuropathy at the wrist and common peroneal mononeuropathy near the ankle, both of which can result in pain, drooping, weakness, and decreased range of motion.

Improving the symptoms of diabetic neuropathy can be difficult; most efforts are made to prevent the onset and worsening of existing diabetic neuropathy. Treatment of diabetic neuropathy emphasizes tight blood sugar control, managing pain symptoms through pharmacotherapy (i.e., analgesics, certain antidepressants, steroids) and/or psychosocial interventions (e.g., meditation, relaxation training), and practicing

diligent foot care (i.e., washing feet, inspecting for cuts, bruises, or blisters).

Successful diabetes management is associated with several behavioral and lifestyle factors, which have been shown to improve with psychosocial interventions such as motivational interviewing, health coaching, and cognitive behavioral therapy. Well-controlled diabetes is often the result of adherence to a healthy diet and exercise regimen, keeping track of carbohydrate intake, frequent and routine checks of blood sugar levels, taking required amounts of insulin, and discontinuing negative behaviors such as smoking or excessive drinking. Modification of these behaviors in children and adults has resulted in improvements in diabetes management, which can prevent or slow the development of diabetic neuropathy.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Blood Glucose](#)
- ▶ [Chronic Disease Management](#)
- ▶ [Diabetes](#)
- ▶ [Diabetes Education](#)
- ▶ [Diabetes Foot Care](#)
- ▶ [Hyperglycemia](#)

References and Readings

Kronenberg, H., & Williams, R. H. (2008). *Williams textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.

Diabetologist (Diabetes Specialist)

Janine Sanchez
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami
Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Endocrinologist](#)

Definition

A diabetologist is a physician with expertise in diabetes care. The physician is often board certified in pediatric or adult endocrinology with special interest or extra training in diabetes care or research. However, diabetology is not a recognized medical specialty and has no formal training programs. Thus, any physician whose practice and/or research efforts are concentrated mainly in diabetes care may be considered a diabetologist/diabetes specialist.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Diabetes](#)
- ▶ [Endocrinology](#)

References and Further Reading

Menon, R. (2003). *Pediatric diabetes* (1st ed.). Norwell: Springer.
Sperling, M. A. (2009). *Pediatric endocrinology* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders.

Diagnostic Criteria

- ▶ [Psychiatric Diagnosis](#)

Diagnostic Features of Depression

- ▶ [Depression: Symptoms](#)

Diagnostic Interview

- ▶ [Interview](#)

Diagnostic Interview Schedule

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy
and Health Sciences, Buies Creek,
NC, USA

Synonyms

DIS

Definition

The National Institute of Mental Health Diagnostic Interview Schedule was discussed in the Archives of General Psychiatry by Robbins et al. (1981). The interview schedule allowed lay interviewers or clinicians to make psychiatric diagnoses according to *DSM-III* criteria, Feighner criteria, and Research Diagnostic Criteria. It was being used in a set of epidemiological studies sponsored by the National Institute of Mental Health Center for Epidemiological Studies. Its accuracy has been evaluated in a test-retest design comparing independent administrations by psychiatrists and lay interviewers to 216 subjects (inpatients, outpatients, ex-patients, and nonpatients).

The National Institute of Mental Health Diagnostic Interview Schedule for Children, Version 4 (NIMH DISC IV or “DISC”) is a highly structured diagnostic interview used to assess psychiatric diagnoses of children and adolescents. The DISC was designed to be administered by interviewers with no formal clinical training following the rules and conventions outlined in the DISC training manual. The DISC questions elicit the diagnostic criteria specified in the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders – Fourth Edition (DSM-IV)* and the WHO International Classification of Diseases, Version 10 (ICD-10).

The Generic or “12 month” DISC was used in NHANES. Seven of the 34 diagnostic assessments were included in NHANES over the 6-year period that the DISC was administered: generalized anxiety disorder, panic disorder, eating disorder, elimination disorders, major depression/dysthymic disorder, attention deficit disorder/hyperactivity (ADD/ADHD), and conduct disorder. In each module, questions are asked about specific symptoms during the past year, and then follow-up questions in cases of positive endorsement. Two of the DISC modules in NHANES, eating disorder and major depression/dysthymic disorder, were comprised of two parallel interviews. A youth-informant interview (DISC-Y) administered in-person to children asked questions about themselves, and a parent-informant interview (DISC-P) administered by telephone to a parent or caretaker asked questions about their child. Only the DISC-Y was administered for generalized anxiety disorder and panic disorder, and only the DISC-P was administered for elimination disorder, ADD/ADHD, and conduct disorder. Depending on the module, responses and diagnostic scores derived from the interviews can be combined or examined separately.

Cross-References

- [Anxiety Disorder](#)
- [Depression: Measurement](#)
- [National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey \(NHANES\)](#)
- [Panic Disorder](#)

References and Further Reading

- Everson-Rose, S. A., & Clark, C. J. (2010). Assessment of psychosocial factors in population studies. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 291–306). New York: Springer.
- Robbins, L. N., Helzer, J. E., Croughan, J., & Ratcliff, K. S. (1981). National Institute of Mental Health diagnostic

interview schedule: Its history, characteristics, and validity. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 38, 381–389. Snowling, M. J., & Hulme, C. (2011). Annual research review: The nature and classification of reading disorders: a commentary on proposals for DSM-5. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*. Dec, 5th [Epub ahead of print].

Dialogue Systems

► Digital Relational Agents

Diaries

C. Renn Upchurch Sweeney
Salt Lake City Healthcare System, Salt Lake City,
UT, USA

Synonyms

Daily diary; Event sampling

Definition

Diaries are self-report instruments often used in behavioral medicine research to examine psychological processes (i.e., affect, social interaction, marital and family interactions, stress, physical symptoms, mental health, well being) within the natural context of everyday life. Diaries require study participants to keep track of cognitions, emotions, or behaviors in a log for a particular period of time and are designed to “capture life as it is lived” (Bolger et al. 2003).

Examples of diaries include paper and pencil diaries, augmented paper diaries (ancillary devices are programmed to prompt participants to respond at a particular time), and electronic diaries (i.e., palm pilots, PDAs). Diaries can be collected repeatedly over a number of days, once daily (daily diary), or even sampled several times during the day.

Advantages

One advantage of diary methods is that information is gathered in the context of the participant’s everyday life, which may illicit behavior that is more representative than that observed in the laboratory setting. Secondly, diary methods reduce the likelihood of retrospection. That is, the time between an experience and the recounting of the experience by the participant is minimized. By asking the participants to record information when an event occurs or shortly thereafter, diaries also reduce biases related to recall (the greater the time between events and its recollection, the greater the potential for distortion), recency effects (more recent events are more likely to influence judgments) and salience (moments of peak intensity or personal relevance influence judgments more than less salient experiences). Finally, diary studies eliminate the difficulty of summarizing multiple events.

Disadvantages

Despite the many advantages of diary methods, several disadvantages also exist. For example, diaries require experimenters to conduct training sessions to ensure that participants understand the diary protocol, which can be time consuming for the experimenter. Secondly, diaries can be onerous for participants. The burden of repeated queries and responses places substantial demands on the participant and requires a greater level of participant commitment compared to other types of research studies. Thirdly, the act of completing the diary may affect participants’ responses or alter participants’ understanding of a particular construct. For example, a more complex understanding of the surveyed topic may develop or the experience of the diary study may change participants’ conceptualization of the topic to fit with those measured in the diary. Finally, participants may develop a habitual response style when making repeated diary entries, which may have negative consequences. For example, participants may skim over sections of a diary questionnaire that rarely apply to them, but inadvertently omit responses to these questions at relevant times.

Cross-References

► [Ecological Momentary Assessment](#)

► [Blood Pressure, Elevated](#)
 ► [Blood Pressure, Measurement of](#)
 ► [Systolic Blood Pressure \(SBP\)](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bolger, N., Davis, A., & Rafaeli, E. (2003). Diary methods: Capturing life as it is lived. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 54, 579–616.
- Fiske, S. T., Gilbert, D. T., & Lindzey, G. (Eds.). (2009). *Handbook of social psychology* (Vol. 1). Hoboken: Wiley.
- Green, A. S., Rafaeli, E., Bolger, N., Shrout, P. E., & Reis, H. T. (2006). Paper or plastic? Data equivalence in paper and electronic diaries. *Psychological Methods*, 11, 87–105.
- Laurenceau, J., & Bolger, N. (2005). Using diary methods to study marital and family process. *Journal of Family Psychology*, 19, 86–97.
- Tennen, H., Affleck, G., & Armeli, S. (2003). Daily processes in health and illness. In J. Suls & K. Wallston (Eds.), *The social psychological foundations of health and illness* (pp. 495–529). Oxford: Blackwell.

References and Further Reading

- Tortora, G. J., & Grabowski, S. R. (1996). *Principles of anatomy and physiology* (8th ed.). New York: Harper Collins College.

D

Diathesis-Stress Model

Kristen Salomon and Alvin Jin
 Department of Psychology, University of South
 Florida College of Arts and Sciences,
 Tampa, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Risk factors](#)

Diastolic Blood Pressure (DBP)

Annie T. Ginty
 School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The
 University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
 Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Blood pressure](#)

Definition

Diastolic blood pressure is the force exerted by the artery walls during ventricular relaxation. It is the lowest pressure measured and normal range is considered to be <80 mmHg (Tortora and Grabowski 1996).

Cross-References

► [Blood Pressure](#)
 ► [Blood Pressure Classification](#)

Definition

Diathesis refers to a predisposition or vulnerability for the development of a pathological state. Diathesis-stress models argue that certain pathological states or diseases emerge from the combination of a predisposition with stressful events (Zuckerman 1999). Most models specify that neither the diathesis nor stress alone is sufficient to produce the disorder. Instead, stress activates the diathesis, which then leads to the disorder. More broadly, diathesis-stress models are similar to the idea of risk-factors for stress-related diseases.

Description

History

Early diathesis-stress models primarily focused on psychiatric disorders such as schizophrenia, depression, and anxiety disorders, born out of the observation that these disorders tend to be inherited and yet also show a significant

relationship to life stress (Zuckerman 1999). These early diathesis-stress models identified fixed biological and/or hereditary factors as predispositions, and often argued for singular directionality, i.e., that the stress acted upon the diathesis. Later, the idea of diathesis was expanded to include physiological, behavioural and psychological diatheses, some of which may be acquired (Zuckerman). Broadening the scope of diatheses to include “non-biological” factors also resulted in a change in the presumed directionality, such that diatheses may influence the experience of stress.

Diatheses

Zuckerman (1999) has argued that diatheses are traits, and as such they not only should be present before the onset of the disorder but also should not change as the result of the disorder. Diatheses may be conceptualized as dichotomous, i.e., present or not. However, many diathesis-stress models suggest that the degree of diathesis present sets a threshold of vulnerability to stress. The greater the level of diathesis present, the less stress required to activate it and create the pathological state (Zuckerman). Some diathesis-stress theories, such as Fowles (1992) theory of schizophrenia, argue that stress may not be necessary for the disorder to develop. If the level of diathesis is high enough, the threshold is met and, even in the absence of stress, the disorder will develop (Zuckerman 1999).

The Role of Stress

One important issue for diathesis-stress models is the potential confounding of stress with the diathesis. For example, if a personality trait, such as neuroticism, is identified as a diathesis for a disorder, such as anxiety, then the issue becomes whether the diathesis is reacting to stress or is the cause of stress. Therefore, many diathesis-stress models define stress in terms of external events rather than defining stress as subjectively reported reactions to events (Monroe and Simons 1991). Further, identifying genetic, biological, and/or physiological diatheses, rather than psychological ones, also serves to avoid the problem of confounding (Zuckerman 1999). Also,

diathesis-stress models often assume that the stress must occur in close temporal proximity to the onset of the disorder (Zuckerman 1999). Some stress-diathesis models suggest that not only do diatheses differ by disorder but also by the type of stress necessary to activate a specific diathesis. For example, for major depressive disorder, stressors that involve loss of one’s social structure (e.g., job loss, divorce, death of a loved one) have been identified as those that combine with diatheses to produce the disorder (Monroe and Simons 1991).

Specifying Diathesis-Stress Models

Conceptualizations of diatheses and stressors that are binary (present or not) lead to relatively simple models. If both the diathesis and stress are present, the disorder will occur, but if one or both are absent, the disorder should not occur. However, most research on diathesis-stress models suggests that neither diatheses nor stress are dichotomous. Some models have suggested that diatheses are categorical, such as evidence suggesting that allelic variation in the 5-HTT-linked polymorphic region (5-HTTLPR) of the serotonin-transporter gene serves as a diathesis for anxiety-related disorders (Lesch et al. 1996). However, these models do not consider the polygenic nature of most disorders and they are likely artificially categorizing dimensional variability in gene expression (Zuckerman 1999). Further, stress is often scaled in terms of the severity of individual stressors (i.e., traumatic stress producing posttraumatic stress disorder; PTSD) or in the total number of stressors (i.e., more instances of loss associated with higher rates of depression). Continuous diatheses and stressors lead to more complex models. Models may specify additive effects, such that more stress is required to bring about the disorder in someone with less of the diathesis than in someone with a greater degree of the diathesis. Interactive models may suggest that if the diathesis is absent, no amount of stress may bring about the disorder, but once present, the diathesis can vary in its loading, thus requiring different amounts of stress to bring about the disorder. Thus, important questions to consider when developing diathesis stress models involve the nature of the diathesis

(categorical, continuous, continuous only if present), the diathesis threshold necessary for the disorder to emerge, the type (e.g., loss, fear) and nature (categorical or continuous) of the stress necessary to activate the diathesis, the nature of the effects of each (additive, interactive), and whether the diathesis and stress are independent of one another or correlated.

Current State of Stress-Diathesis Models

Recently, the basic diathesis-stress model has been expanded to include predispositions that protect individuals from developing stress-related disorders, or resilience (Belsky and Pluess 2009). Instead of focusing on why some people fall victim to disorders in the face of stress, resilience research focuses on why some people seem resistant to a disorder, even in the face of extreme stress. However, resilience is not the opposite of diathesis, but instead, individuals may differ in their overall plasticity to both negative (i.e., stress) and positive (i.e., supportive) environmental influences (Belsky and Pluess 2009).

Cross-References

- [Resilience](#)
- [Risk Factors](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Readings

- Belsky, J., & Pluess, M. (2009). Beyond diathesis stress: Differential susceptibility to environmental influences. *Psychological Bulletin*, 135(6), 885–908.
- Fowles, D. C. (1992). Schizophrenia – diathesis stress revisited. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 43, 303–336.
- Lesch, K. P., Bengel, D., Heils, A., Sabol, S. Z., Greenberg, B. D., Petri, S., et al. (1996). Association of anxiety-related traits with a polymorphism in the serotonin transporter gene regulatory region. *Science*, 274, 1527–1531.
- Monroe, S. M., & Simons, A. D. (1991). Diathesis-stress theories in the context of life stress research: Implications for the depressive disorders. *Psychological Bulletin*, 110, 406–425.
- Zuckerman, M. (1999). *Vulnerability to psychopathology: A biosocial model*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Diet and Cancer

- [Cancer and Diet](#)

Dietary Fatty Acids

- [Essential Fatty Acids](#)

Dietary Lipids Absorption

- [Fat Absorption](#)

Dietary Requirements

- [Nutrition](#)

Dietary Supplement

- [Nutritional Supplements](#)

Differential Psychology

- [Individual Differences](#)

Diffuse Optical Imaging (DOI)

- [Brain, Imaging](#)
- [Neuroimaging](#)

Diffusion

- [Dissemination](#)

Digital Health Coaching

Elizabeth Sargent and Kathryn N. Tomasino
Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

Digital health technologies; eHealth; Guided Internet intervention; Health behavior intervention; Health coaching; mHealth; Online health coaching; Wellness coaching

Definition

Digital health coaching is an interventional process that uses digital technologies, typically in conjunction with human coaching, to help patients identify and work toward behavior change goals that promote health and help manage and prevent disease.

Description

Digital health coaching grew out of the tradition of health and wellness coaching. Like traditional, face-to-face health coaching, digital health coaching is an interventional process that assists patients in changing health behaviors to achieve better health outcomes. This patient-centered interventional process that uses guided self-discovery to help patients draw from their values to identify health behavior change goals and then drives the change process by assisting patients with learning (e.g., content education; behavior change strategies), self-monitoring (e.g., self-reflection; feedback; accountability), and problem-solving (i.e., identify and overcome barriers), and offering ongoing positive reinforcement for progress (Bucher and O'Day 2014; Hill et al. 2015; Wolever et al. 2013). Multiple

behavior change approaches and theoretical perspectives are used in digital health coaching interventions, including motivational interviewing, supportive accountability (Mohr et al. 2011), the transtheoretical model, self-determination theory, the health beliefs model, social cognitive theory, social learning theory, and the theory of planned behavior (Hill et al. 2015; Wolever et al. 2013).

What distinguishes digital health coaching from more traditional, face-to-face interventions is the integration of and reliance on technology, including telephone and videoconferencing, mobile phone applications, online programs, text messaging, and sensors and wearables, for intervention delivery. The contribution of the technology and of the human coach varies considerably from intervention to intervention, and the relative contribution of the technology and coach can be considered along a continuum. On one end is digitally enabled health coaching; that is, interventions where human coaches provide the entire intervention but use technology to communicate with the patient and deliver the intervention, e.g., through email, text messaging, or telephone or videoconferencing.

On the other end of the spectrum are standalone digital health interventions that have been designed to provide a coaching experience without an actual human provider. In these programs, including mobile applications, online programs, and automated text messages, the technology drives the behavior change process through dynamic interactions between the user and the technology. While digital health coaching interventions can vary in complexity, most include elements of goal setting, education, self-monitoring, and feedback. More sophisticated programs adapt to user behaviors and encourage those who relapse to get back on track (Aagaard and Lindgren 2015). One example of a free-standing digital health coaching intervention can be seen in Johnson and Johnson's Digital Health Coaching programs. These online programs were developed using motivational design and the interventional process includes: (1) patient identification of health behavior change targets, with emphasis on personal goals and values when choosing targets for change; (2) "timely and

specific” feedback drawn from data collected by the tool that highlights even small indicators of progress; and (3) personalized feedback, with both content and timing tailored to the specific patient, condition, and change target (Bucher and O’Day 2014). Other digital health coaching interventions may provide periodic prompts, such as automated motivational messages, in conjunction with online programs or mobile applications, to increase engagement with the tools or to prompt specific health behaviors (Fry and Neff 2009).

The majority of digital health coaching interventions fall somewhere along the middle of this continuum. In these interventions, both the technology and the human coach are responsible for components of the intervention process. Technology can support individuals in the process of behavior change, and take on some of the coaching components traditionally delivered by human coaches. Many digital health coaching interventions use technology to facilitate self-monitoring (wearables, mobile applications) (Wolever et al. 2013). Technology can also be used to generate feedback, prompt behavior (text messages, mobile applications), and provide a platform for content education (e.g., mobile applications, online programs). Additionally, the coaches can interact with and draw from the technology to enhance the coaching process. For example, human coaches can access the data collected by digital health coaching tools and draw from these data to strengthen a sense of accountability, to offer personalized and timely feedback and reinforcement, to improve recommendations, and to provide consistent and convenient access to content education.

It is important to distinguish digital health coaching from other digital health interventions that result in behavior change. Numerous behavioral intervention technologies have been developed that apply evidenced-based intervention strategies to technology to address a wide range of behavioral targets and physical and mental health conditions (Mohr et al. 2013a). To be considered a digital health coaching intervention, the behavioral intervention technology must employ specific behavior change strategies and processes, such as those outlined previously (e.g., drawing from values to set personalized goals, self-

monitoring, providing information about the target behavior and behavior change strategies, and positive feedback) (Klasnja et al. 2011).

Benefits

Implementation of digital health coaching interventions as part of a team-based approach is consistent with worldwide efforts targeting chronic disease prevention. Digital health coaching interventions offer several benefits to patients, providers, and population health. Digital health coaching can foster patient engagement in managing their own health and changing health behaviors, and can be used to increase engagement with eHealth and mHealth interventions (Mohr et al. 2013b). They may also provide a convenient way for people to connect with the health care system, which is a critical component of efforts to curb the incidence of preventable chronic disease (Smith et al. 2013). Digital health coaching appears to be particularly beneficial when integrated as part of a team-approach to health promotion and disease management (Olsen and Nesbitt 2010). Providers can obtain information about patients’ progress in changing health behaviors and managing disease through consultation with the health coach by connecting the digital health tools to patients’ electronic medical records (Mate and Salinas 2014). Access to this data can benefit patients in multiple ways. It can improve provider recommendations and can increase opportunities for patients to receive personalized feedback regarding their progress and the impact of behavior change on health. In the future, the implementation of digital health coaching interventions into systems of care can increase opportunities for “flipped” health care, a model that can decrease the number of face-to-face clinic visits needed, thus reducing costs (Mate and Salinas 2014).

Challenges and Future Directions

Additional research is needed to assess the effectiveness and cost of digital health coaching

interventions. A number of open questions remain to be answered regarding the role of the relationship in coaching, the impact of coach training and qualifications, and how differences in the quality and usability of the technology can impact outcomes. Furthermore, while coaches' use of the technology can impact their feedback, responsiveness, and amount of time spent per patient, thus impacting both the effectiveness and scalability of the overall intervention, few studies discuss or describe the data and features available to the coach. Moving forward, it will be important for researchers and industry to provide clear operationalization of intervention approach, the role and design of the technology, the tasks of the human provider, and the specific practices involved in the coaching process (Wolever et al. 2013, 2016). In particular, there is a need for systematic evaluations of the role of the technology and human coach and how these factors may impact outcomes and cost-effectiveness across conditions, settings, and populations.

Conclusion

In conclusion, digital health coaching is an interventional process that utilizes digital technologies, often with the support of a human coach, to help patients make lifestyle changes that promote health and wellness. It holds much promise as a scalable and cost-effective approach to population health through increasing patient engagement in their health and improving chronic disease prevention and management, yet variation across interventions makes it difficult to evaluate the cost-effectiveness and the impact of intervention components on outcomes. Additional research is needed to evaluate the effectiveness of various digital health coaching approaches.

Cross-References

- Behavior Change
- Behavior Modification
- eHealth and Behavioral Intervention Technologies

- Health Promotion
- Lifestyle, Healthy

References and Further Reading

- Aagaard, A., & Lindgren, P. (2015). The opportunities and challenges of persuasive technology in creating sustainable innovation and business model innovation. *Wireless Personal Communications*, 81(4), 1511–1529. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11277-015-2484-1>.
- Bucher, A., & O'Day, R. (2014). The triple aim's missing link: Meaningful engagement for patients with chronic conditions. *Managed Care Outlook*, 27(15).
- Fry, J. P., & Neff, R. A. (2009). Periodic prompts and reminders in health promotion and health behavior interventions: Systematic review. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 11(2), e16. <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.1138>.
- Hill, B., Richardson, B., & Skouteris, H. (2015). Do we know how to design effective health coaching interventions: A systematic review of the state of the literature. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 29(5), e158–e168. <https://doi.org/10.4278/ajhp.130510-LIT-238>.
- Klasnja, P., Consolvo, S., & Pratt, W. (2011). How to evaluate technologies for health behavior change in HCI research. *Proceedings of the SIGCHI Conference on Human Factors in Computing Systems*. Association for Computing Machinery: Vancouver, BC, Canada. p. 3063–3072.
- Mate, K. S., & Salinas, G. (2014). Flipping primary health care: A personal story. *Healthc (Amst)*, 2(4), 280–283. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.hjdsi.2014.10.003>.
- Mohr, D. C., Cuijpers, P., & Lehman, K. (2011). Supportive accountability: A model for providing human support to enhance adherence to eHealth interventions. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 13(1), e30. <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.1602>.
- Mohr, D. C., Burns, M. N., Schueller, S. M., Clarke, G., & Klinkman, M. (2013a). Behavioral intervention technologies: Evidence review and recommendations for future research in mental health. *General Hospital Psychiatry*, 35(4), 332–338. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.genhosppsych.2013.03.008>.
- Mohr, D. C., Duffecy, J., Ho, J., Kwasny, M., Cai, X., Burns, M. N., & Begale, M. (2013b). A randomized controlled trial evaluating a manualized TeleCoaching protocol for improving adherence to a web-based intervention for the treatment of depression. *PloS One*, 8(8), e70086. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0070086>.
- Olsen, J. M., & Nesbitt, B. J. (2010). Health coaching to improve healthy lifestyle behaviors: An integrative review. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 25(1), e1–e12. <https://doi.org/10.4278/ajhp.090313-LIT-101>.
- Smith, L. L., Lake, N. H., Simmons, L. A., Perlman, A., Wroth, S., & Wolever, R. Q. (2013). Integrative health coach training: A model for shifting the paradigm toward patient-centricity and meeting new national

- prevention goals. *Global Advances in Health and Medicine*, 2(3), 66–74. <https://doi.org/10.7453/gahmj.2013.034>.
- Wolever, R. Q., Simmons, L. A., Sforzo, G. A., Dill, D., Kaye, M., Bechard, E. M., et al. (2013). A systematic review of the literature on health and wellness coaching: Defining a key behavioral intervention in healthcare. *Global Advances in Health and Medicine*, 2(4), 38–57. <https://doi.org/10.7453/gahmj.2013.042>.
- Wolever, R. Q., Jordan, M., Lawson, K., & Moore, M. (2016). Advancing a new evidence-based professional in health care: Job task analysis for health and wellness coaches. *BMC Health Services Research*, 16(1), 205. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12913-016-1465-8>.

Digital Health Technologies

► Digital Health Coaching

Digital Health Trial Methodology

► eHealth/mHealth Trial Methodology

Digital Media

► Social Networking Sites

Digital Native

Karlie M. Mirabelli and Brandon K. Schultz
East Carolina University, Greenville, NC, USA

Synonyms

Net Generation

Definition

The term “digital native” refers to the generations of individuals born after the widespread use of

digital technologies, with access to and experience with digital technologies from a young age, theoretically resulting in a unique set of skills, interests, and cognitions.

Description

Digital native, a term popularized by Prensky in 2001, refers to a subset of the population born after 1984 (or 1980) who had access to digital technologies from a young age. Growing up surrounded by computers, televisions, and video games, these individuals learned to become what Prensky called “native speakers” in a digital language. In contrast, the term *digital immigrant* refers to individuals who were born before the 1980s and introduced to digital technology later in their lives. Unlike digital natives, digital immigrants were required to adapt to digital technologies in a manner analogous to learning a second language (Prensky 2001a, b).

Some theorists have argued that digital natives differ culturally from those born before the boom in digital technologies. According to this hypothesis, the digital age set the stage for differences in cognitions, learning, and skillsets between the generations coming before and after. Anecdotally, digital natives appear to think and behave in a more interactive, reward-seeking, multitasking, and fast-paced manner than their digital immigrant counterparts (Akçayır et al. 2016; Bennett et al. 2008; Prensky 2001a, b). Prensky (2001b) suggested that these differences have emerged, in part, due to the mutable nature of the human brain (i.e., neuroplasticity). Neuroplasticity is the cellular restructuring, reorganizing, strengthening, and/or weakening of synaptic connections in a response to environmental experiences (e.g., learning, injury). Structural differences were theorized to occur in the brains of digital natives in response to lifelong immersion in a digital environment. At the same time, interactive digital technologies led to a cultural shift toward video entertainment and immediate gratification that, according to this theory, further explains why digital natives think differently than digital immigrants

(Kirschner and De Bruyckere 2017; Prensky 2001b).

Based on this argument, communication barriers could conceivably arise whenever digital immigrants teach or train digital natives. For example, some educators have questioned whether traditional ways of teaching, reliant on lectures and minimal personalization, remain effective for digital natives. It has been suggested that digital natives learn best when technology, game-like interactions, and personalized approaches are incorporated into their education. If true, this would require digital immigrants to meaningfully adapt their teaching styles to meet the needs of digital native students (Bennett et al. 2008; Kirschner and De Bruyckere 2017; Prensky 2001a).

Despite the interesting implications of these ideas, few high-quality empirical studies support Prensky's assertions. As a result, the term digital native has become somewhat controversial, and efforts to prove or disprove a digitally driven generational shift persist. Research seems to confirm that younger generations use technology at a near-universal rate, suggesting that they are immersed in a digital environment, as posited. Research also shows that contemporary students favor game-based activities in the classroom and experience frustration when restrictions are placed on their use of technology in schools (i.e., limited Internet access) (Bennett et al. 2008).

But the preponderance of evidence suggests that digital natives and digital immigrants do not differ in the ways (or to the degree) hypothesized. Obviously not all individuals born after 1980 are competent with technology, and not all individuals born before 1980 are technologically inept (Akçayır et al. 2016; Bennett et al. 2008; Kirschner and De Bruyckere 2017). Rather, technology mastery is domain-specific, and aside from email, word processing, and Internet usage, only a minority of digital natives regularly engage with other digital technologies (e.g., blogs, content creation). Moreover, regardless of age, proficiency in digital technologies varies

substantially according to socioeconomic status, gender, and cultural background, which confounds the native/immigrant distinction (Bennett et al. 2008).

In terms of learning and behavior, few if any differences emerge between digital natives and digital immigrants. Despite the claim that digital natives successfully multitask, for example, research in cognitive psychology shows that multitasking is universally unproductive. When any individual quickly alternates between various tasks, learning and performance are degraded (Kirschner and De Bruyckere 2017). Research also refutes the assertion that digital natives require a new curriculum to cater to a unique, digitally shaped learning style. Learning is dynamic, so attributing one style to a whole population ignores individual differences and situational demands (Bennett et al. 2008). Further, research shows that contemporary students use technology more often (and more actively) for personal and entertainment purposes than for educational purposes. Thus, attempts to revamp teaching methods to be increasingly interactive, reward-driven, and fast-paced might be inconsistent with digital native preferences (Kirschner and De Bruyckere 2017).

References and Further Reading

- Akçayır, G., Akçayır, M., & Dündar, H. (2016). What makes you a digital native? Is it enough to be born after 1980? *Computers in Human Behavior*, 60, 435–440. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.chb.2016.02.089>.
- Bennett, S., Maton, K., & Kervin, L. (2008). The digital natives debate: A critical review of the evidence. *British Journal of Educational Technology*, 39, 775–786. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-8535.2007.00793.x>.
- Kirschner, P. A., & De Bruyckere, P. (2017). The myths of the digital native and the multitasker. *Teaching and Teacher Education*, 67, 135–142. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tate.2017.06.001>.
- Prensky, M. (2001a). Digital natives, digital immigrants part 1. *On the Horizon*, 9, 1–6. <https://doi.org/10.1108/10748120110424816>.
- Prensky, M. (2001b). Digital natives, digital immigrants part 2: Do they really think differently? *On the Horizon*, 9, 1–6. <https://doi.org/10.1108/10748120110424843>.

Digital Relational Agents

Rachel Kornfield
Department of Communication Studies,
Northwestern University, Evanston, IL, USA

Synonyms

Chatbots; Conversational agents; Dialogue systems; Virtual humans

Definition

Digital relational agents are computer programs designed to build relationships with users through long-term interaction.

Description

Unlike task-oriented digital agents, digital relational agents engage the user socially to build trust and affinity. Over repeated interactions, digital relational agents may adapt to a user's needs and preferences and may also reference a shared interaction history with a user. The capacities of digital relational agents have greatly increased through technical and computational developments that support gathering and processing input data from the user and his or her context (e.g., language, vocal cues, facial expressions) and generating appropriate computerized responses. Also applied in various commercial contexts, digital relational agents have been applied in health interventions to convey social support, reinforce behavior change processes, or assist with health management tasks.

Digital relational agents can engage users through a number of interfaces, often through a personal device (e.g., computer, tablet, or smartphone). Many take the form of “chatbots,” engaging the user through text-based dialogue,

with the user entering free text or selecting from multiple choice input options. Digital relational agents may also generate dialogue as speech, often alongside capabilities to process audio input from the user (e.g., as with commercial agents like Siri or Alexa). They may also operate through a visual representation, typically “embodied” as digital animated characters. Visual representations allow for delivering additional cues such as facial expression, gesture, posture, and gaze. Many digital relational agents present themselves as individuals with names and biographies, whether human or non-human. Appearance, voice, and communication style can also convey characteristics like gender and nationality, personality traits like friendliness, or social roles, as when agents are portrayed as clinicians. Agents can be targeted or tailored to particular groups of users (e.g., based on age, ethnicity, or health condition), often by adjusting appearance or communication style. Some relational agents can be actively customized by the user, as when the user selects the gender or accent of a voice-based relational agent or chooses between multiple animated characters.

In the domain of behavioral health, digital relational agents may engage, support, and inform users in order to improve one or more health-related outcomes. Given their ongoing interaction with the user, digital relational agents are often applied to helping individuals manage chronic conditions, change their behavior over time, or navigate the health-care system. Digital relational agents have been deployed in relation to a variety of health contexts, such as mental health, cancer, sedentary lifestyle, and aging in place. In these contexts, agents' functions can include reminding users to complete health-related tasks (e.g., taking medications, exercising, or scheduling appointments), recording personal health data, offering companionship, or supporting informed decision-making. Agents also may present themselves as virtual “coaches” or “counselors,” eliciting and empathically responding to users' disclosures about their

health concerns, or bolstering behavior change processes by helping individuals resolve ambivalence, make commitments to change, and carry out these commitments.

Beyond directly interacting with individuals who are managing health concerns, agents also have potential to apply captured data toward improving other aspects of health care, as when data about a patients' concerns and behaviors become integrated into health records and are used to inform treatment delivered by providers. Some digital relational agents have also been developed to interact directly with care providers and caregivers, such as by offering training on effective patient interaction, providing information about treatment options, or facilitating clinical note-taking and record-keeping.

Cross-References

- [Consumer Health Informatics](#)
- [Digital Health Coaching](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bibault, J.-E., Chaix, B., Nectoux, P., Pienkowski, A., Guillemasé, A., & Brouard, B. (2019). Healthcare ex Machina: Are conversational agents ready for prime time in oncology? *Clinical and Translational Radiation Oncology*, 16, 55–59.
- Bickmore, T. W., & Picard, R. W. (2005). Establishing and maintaining long-term human-computer relationships. *ACM Transactions on Computer-Human Interaction (TOCHI)*, 12(2), 293–327.
- Cassell, J., Sullivan, J., Churchill, E., & Prevost, S. (Eds.). (2000). *Embodied conversational agents*. Cambridge: MIT Press.
- Dehn, D. M., & Van Mulken, S. (2000). The impact of animated interface agents: A review of empirical research. *International Journal of Human-Computer Studies*, 52(1), 1–22.

Dimsdale, Joel E.

Joel E. Dimsdale

Department of Psychiatry, University of California San Diego, La Jolla, CA, USA

Joel Dimsdale was born in Sioux City, Iowa, in 1947, and obtained his BA degree in biology from Carleton College. He then attended Stanford University, where he obtained a MA degree in Sociology and an MD degree. He obtained his psychiatric training at Massachusetts General Hospital and then completed a fellowship in psychobiology at the New England Regional Primate Center. He was on the faculty of Harvard Medical School from 1976 until 1985, when he moved to University of California, San Diego (UCSD) (Fig. 1).

Dimsdale is distinguished professor emeritus and research professor in the department of psychiatry at UCSD. His clinical subspecialty is consultation psychiatry. He is an active investigator, is a former career awardee of the American Heart Association, and is past president of the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research, the American Psychosomatic Society, and the Society of Behavioral Medicine. He is on numerous editorial



Dimsdale, Joel E., Fig. 1

Dimeric Glycoprotein

- [Fibrinogen](#)

boards, is editor-in-chief emeritus of *Psychosomatic Medicine*, and is a previous guest editor of *Circulation*. He has been a consultant to the President's Commission on Mental Health and the Institute of Medicine and is a longtime reviewer for NIH. He consults to the NASA regarding behavioral issues in space. He was a member of the DSM5 taskforce and chaired the workgroup studying somatic symptom disorders. Dimsdale is the former chair of the UCSD Academic Senate.

Dimsdale is an active teacher who supervises CL psychiatry. He mentors trainees and junior faculty members from psychiatry, psychology, pulmonary medicine, nephrology, anesthesiology, and surgery. Dimsdale directs UCSD's KL2 training grant for fostering the careers of outstanding young clinical faculty.

Dimsdale's major research interests include sympathetic nervous system physiology as it relates to stress, blood pressure, and sleep; cultural factors in illness; and quality of life. He is the author of more than 500 publications as well as numerous books.

Major Accomplishments

Dimsdale has been an active investigator who has mentored generations of medical students, residents, psychology students, and post docs. He has been repeatedly tapped for leadership positions in national organizations, on medical journals, and in university governance.

References and Further Readings

- Bardwell, W., Moore, P., Ancoli-Israel, S., & Dimsdale, J. (2003). Fatigue in obstructive sleep apnea is driven by depressive symptoms and not apnea severity. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 160, 350–355.
- Bardwell, W., Natarajan, L., Dimsdale, J., Rock, C., Mortimer, J., Hollenbach, K., & Pierce, J. (2006). Objective cancer-related variables are not associated with depressive symptoms in women treated for early-stage breast cancer. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 24, 2420–2427.
- Dimsdale, J. E. (1974). Coping behavior of Nazi concentration camp survivors. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 131, 792–797.
- Dimsdale, J. (1988). A perspective on type A behavior and coronary disease. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 318, 110–112.
- Dimsdale, J. (2000). Stalked by the past: The impact of ethnicity on health. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 62, 161–170.
- Dimsdale, J. (2008). Psychological stress and cardiovascular disease. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 51, 1237–1246.
- Dimsdale, J. (2016). *Anatomy of malice: The enigma of the Nazi war criminals*. New Haven: Yale University Press.
- Dimsdale, J., & Creed, F. (2009). The proposed diagnosis of somatic symptom disorders in DSM-V to replace somatoform disorders in DSM-IV – a preliminary report. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 66(6), 473–476.
- Dimsdale, J. E., & Moss, J. (1980). Plasma catecholamines in stress and exercise. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 243, 340–342.
- Dimsdale, J. E., Hartley, L. H., Guiney, T., Ruskin, J., & Greenblatt, D. (1984). Post-exercise peril: Plasma catecholamines and exercise. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 251, 630–632.
- Dimsdale, J., Newton, R., & Joist, T. (1989). Neuropsychological side effects of beta blockers. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 149, 514–525.
- Golomb, B. A., Criqui, M. H., White, H. L., & Dimsdale, J. E. (2004). Conceptual foundations of the UCSD statin study: A randomized controlled trial assessing the impact of statins on cognition, behavior, and biochemistry. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 164, 153–162.
- Mills, P., Dimsdale, J., Coy, T., Ancoli-Israel, S., Clausen, J., & Nelesen, R. (1995). Beta-two adrenergic receptor characteristics in sleep apnea patients. *Sleep*, 18, 39–42.
- Ng, B., Dimsdale, J., Rollnik, J., & Shapiro, H. (1996). The effect of ethnicity on prescriptions for patient controlled analgesia for post-operative pain. *Pain*, 66, 9–12.
- Profant, J., & Dimsdale, J. (1999). Race and diurnal blood pressure patterns: A review and meta-analysis. *Hypertension*, 33, 1099–1104.
- Thomas, K., Bardwell, W., Ancoli-Israel, S., & Dimsdale, J. (2006). The toll of ethnic discrimination on sleep architecture and fatigue. *Health Psychology*, 25(5), 635–642.
- von Kanel, R., Lored, J., Ancoli-Israel, S., Mills, P., Natarajan, L., & Dimsdale, J. (2007). Association between polysomnographic measures of disrupted sleep and prothrombotic factors. *Chest*, 131, 733–739.

DIS

► Diagnostic Interview Schedule

Disability

Diane Dixon
Department of Psychology, University of
Strathclyde, Scotland, UK

Synonyms

Activity limitations; Impairment; Participation restrictions

Definition

The World Health Organization views disability not as a property of an individual person but as an interaction between features of a person's body and their social and physical environment. Disability can exist at the level of impairments (to body structures and functions), activity limitations, and/or participation restrictions. Impairments are defined as a significant deviation or loss in body functions or structures. Activity limitations are difficulties a person has in performing activities; an activity is the execution of a task or action. Participation restrictions are problems a person experiences in involvement in life situations; participation is involvement in life situations.

Governments also define disability within anti-discrimination legislation and to provide access to government support and services. For example, in the United Kingdom, the Equality Act (2010) considers a person to have a disability if they have a physical or mental impairment that has a substantial and long-term adverse effect on their ability to perform normal day-to-day activities.

Description

The World Health Organization estimates that, worldwide, 650 million people live with disabilities of various types. It is expected that this figure will continue to rise as the world's population ages and the prevalence of chronic illness increases.

The management of disability is complex and typically involves multidisciplinary teams and input from multiple services. As a consequence, the management of disability will benefit from the use of theoretical frameworks that are able to accommodate such multidisciplinary ways of working.

Conceptualizing Disability

The World Health Organization's International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health (ICF) provides such an integrative framework (WHO 2001). A summary schematic of the ICF is shown in Fig. 1.

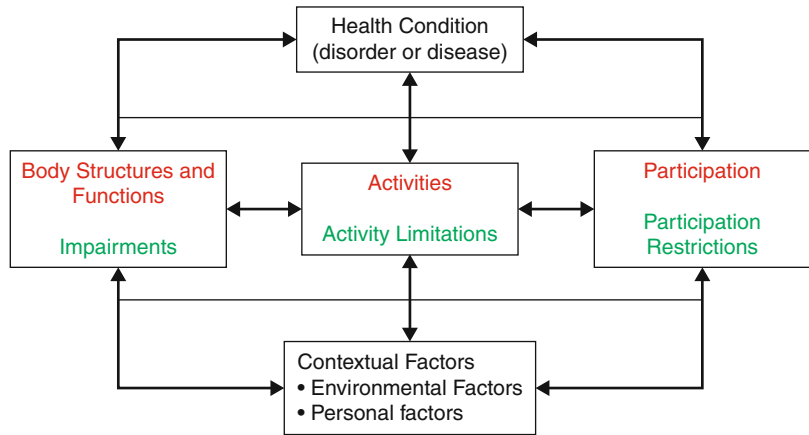
The WHO designed the ICF as a classification system for health and health-related states. However, the ICF can also operate as a complex model of health and disability. The ICF identifies three health components, namely, body structures and functions, activities and participation, and their corollaries of impairment, activity limitations, and participation restrictions (see the section "[Definition](#)" tab for a description of each component).

The ICF has several features of particular relevance to behavioral medicine (Dixon and Johnston 2010).

First, the relationships between the components are reciprocal. This means that impairments can cause activity limitations but also that activity limitations can cause impairments. For example, osteoarthritis is a health condition in which the structure of the hip joint is impaired; this impairment is experienced as joint stiffness and pain (impairments). A person with osteoarthritis of the hip might, as a result of such impairments, experience difficulties getting up and down stairs and walking (activity limitations), and these activity limitations might restrict their ability to use buses or trains, which might reduce their ability to visit the cinema in town (participation restrictions). However, reduced walking might also cause further impairments in the structure and function of the hip joint, as muscle strength weakens with reduced use. Thus, within the ICF, reductions in impairment can be achieved through

Disability, Fig. 1

Summary schematic of the ICF



D

interventions that target activity limitations and vice versa. This makes the ICF suitable for use by multidisciplinary teams typically required for the effective management of the consequences of chronic illness. For example, medical doctors can intervene surgically or pharmacologically; allied health professionals can intervene with a range of therapies, for example, physiotherapy and speech and language therapy; social services can intervene with adjustments to the home environment, for example, provision of ramp access to the home, an electric wheelchair, and other assistive devices.

Second, the role of the environment and personal factors in disability is recognized by the contextual factors component of the ICF. These contextual factors enable other disciplines to contribute to our understanding of disability. The ICF provides a detailed description of the environmental factors, which include assistive products and technologies, the natural and man-made environment, social services, systems, and policies. These environmental factors enable diverse disciplines, such as architecture and town planning, to contribute to achieving reductions in disability. The personal factors component is less well described by the ICF; however, personal factors have been operationalized in the form of individual cognitions and emotions. Inclusion of the personal factors component and the observation that activity limitations and participation restrictions are behavior(s) enables psychology to inform our understanding of disability. Psychology can be

defined as the scientific study of behavior, and as such, models of behavior and behavior change can be used to understand the factors that influence disability. Further, the inclusion of behavioral models of disability delivers the evidence base on how to intervene to change behavior (Bandura 1969; Michie et al. 2009), which enables reductions in disability to be achieved, again without the need to reduce chronic impairments.

A behavioral approach to disability conceptualizes disability as behavior, which is influenced by the same psychological processes that affect any other type of behavior. As a consequence, an individual with a health condition will be motivated to engage in an activity or participate in a social situation because it achieves the things they like, because they believe other people would like them to do so, and because they believe they are able to do so. The behavioral approach can be used to explain, in part, the so-called disability paradox. The disability paradox is the observation that two people, living in identical social and environmental situations, experience different levels of disability, i.e., people with severe impairments might report lower than expected levels of disability, whereas an individual with mild impairment might experience higher than expected levels of disability. This observed discordance between impairments and activity limitations and participation restrictions may, in part, be explained by differences in cognitions, emotions, or coping strategies. The behavioral

approach, in particular, should not be used to “blame” people with disabilities for those disabilities. The behavioral approach does not support the idea that disability arises because an individual lacks the motivation to overcome their impairments and limitations. Rather, the behavioral model emphasizes that every person is influenced by biological, personal, social, and environmental factors, and those influences are unique to each individual. Indeed, using behavioral models to conceptualize the personal factors component of the ICF supports the aim of the WHO to account for activity and activity limitations in the same terms for all individuals. Within this integrative framework, it is only the relative importance of each factor that differs between people, not the nature of the factors *per se*. For example, compared to the significant role of impairment, the role of motivational factors is likely to be a much weaker determinant of whether or not a person who has just had a stroke leaves their home to walk into town to visit the cinema. However, over the course of their recovery, the role of impairment factors might reduce and the role of motivational factors might increase, so that 6 months after their stroke, the individual might not walk into town to visit the cinema simply because there are no movies they want (are motivated) to see.

Measuring Disability

Clinical practice and research requires methods of measurement of disability so that the severity of a health condition can be assessed and the effectiveness of interventions evaluated. The ICF provides detailed descriptions of the body structures and functions and activities that should be assessed for any given health condition. However, the ICF does not indicate how those structures, functions, or activities should be assessed. In general, disability is measured by assessing the ability of an individual to perform particular activities relevant to their health conditions. For example, a person who has experienced a stroke might be assessed for their ability to perform activities of daily living, such as the ability to dress, to use the stairs, and to transfer from bed to chair, whereas a person

with a diagnosis of dementia might be asked to complete measures of cognitive function.

In general, two methods of measurement are available: self-report and observation. Self-report requires the individual to describe the limitations and difficulties they experience. Self-report measures typically use standard questionnaires, for example, activities of daily living can be measured by a wide variety of instruments, including the Barthel Index, the Sickness Impact Profile (and its UK equivalent the Functional Limitations Profile), and the Katz ADL scale. Self-report measures have the advantage of being suitable for use in a variety of settings, including the person’s own home, they are inexpensive, and can assess a wide range of activities over a long time course. In addition, proxy reports are sometimes used; proxy reporters are usually the primary caregiver. However, both self- and proxy reports have the disadvantage of being open to reporting errors.

Observational measures require a trained observer to record whether an individual is able (or not) to successfully perform relevant and defined activities. Observational measures are regarded as being more accurate than self-report measures but have several disadvantages. They are restrictive, in that they typically assess only those activities performed in the limited setting of the hospital or in the limited period available for a home visit, and as such, they too might under or over estimate disability.

Self-report and observational measures can be supplemented by objective electronic measures, for example, pedometers provide step counts, and accelerometers measure activity in general. However, such devices might have restrictive utility for particular groups, for example, elderly people might walk with a gait that fails to register accurately on pedometers. In addition, with the exception of a step count, these devices do not discriminate between particular behaviors, for example, they are not able to distinguish between the wide variety of activities of daily living measured by self-report instruments, and at best they can discriminate between walking, standing, sitting, and lying.

Information about the WHO-ICF can be found at: <http://www.who.int/classifications/icf/en/> this

site provides a detailed description of the ICF and contains a great beginner's guide to the ICF <http://www.who.int/classifications/icf/training/icfbeginnersguide.pdf>

The importance of regarding behavior as a primary health outcome is made very effectively by Professor Robert Kaplan (1990).

Cross-References

- [Activities of Daily Living \(ADL\)](#)
- [Aging](#)
- [Chronic Disease Management](#)
- [Chronic Disease or Illness](#)
- [Efficacy Cognitions](#)
- [Functional Capacity, Disability, and Status](#)
- [Geriatric Medicine](#)
- [Gerontology](#)
- [Health Psychology](#)
- [Illness Cognitions and Perceptions](#)
- [Measures of Quality of Life](#)
- [National Institute on Aging](#)
- [Quality of Life](#)
- [Self-care](#)
- [Self-management](#)

References and Readings

- Bandura, A. (1969). *Principles of behavior modification*. New York: Holt, Reinhart and Winston.
- Dixon, D., & Johnston, M. (2010). Disability. In D. French, K. Vedhara, A. A. Kaptein, & J. Weinman (Eds.), *Health psychology* (pp. 317–328). Chichester: Blackwell.
- Kaplan, R. M. (1990). Behavior as the central outcome in health-care. *American Psychologist*, 45, 1211–1220.
- Michie, S., Abraham, C., et al. (2009). Effective techniques in healthy eating and physical activity interventions: A meta-regression. *Health Psychology*, 28(6), 690–701.
- WHO. (2001). *International classification of functioning, disability and health: ICF*. Geneva: Author.

Disability-Adjusted Life Years (DALYs)

Marijke De Couck

Free University of Brussels (VUB), Jette, Belgium

Definition

The disability-adjusted life year (DALY) has emerged in the international health policy lexicon as a measure of overall “disease burden.” It is an expansion on a previous measure, namely, years of life lost (YLL), which did not take into account the impact of disability. DALYs for a disease or health condition are calculated as the sum of the years of life lost (YLL) due to premature mortality in the population and the years lost due to disability (YLD) for incident cases of the health condition: $DALY = YLL + YLD$ (World Health Organization [WHO] 2010). The YLL correspond to the number of deaths multiplied by the standard life expectancy at the age at which death occurs. The basic formula for YLL is the following for a given cause, age, and sex:

$$YLL = N \times L$$

where:

- N = number of deaths
- L = standard life expectancy at age of death in years

L reflects the difference between the standard life expectancy at that age and age of death. Because YLL measure the incident stream of “lost years of life” due to deaths, an incidence perspective is also taken for the calculation of YLD. To estimate YLD for a particular cause in a particular time period, the number of incident cases in that period is multiplied by the average duration of the disease and a weight factor that reflects the severity of the disease on a scale from 0 (perfect health) to 1 (dead). The basic formula for YLD is the following:

Disability Assessment

- [Health Assessment Questionnaire](#)

$$YLD = I \times DW \times L$$

where:

- I = number of incident cases
- DW = disability weight
- L = average duration of the disease until remission or death (years)

One DALY can be thought of as one lost year of “healthy” life. The sum of these DALYs across the population, or the burden of disease, can be thought of as a measurement of the gap between current health status and an ideal health situation where the entire population lives to an advanced age, free of disease and disability (WHO 2010).

Several countries and organizations are using DALYs to identify health priorities and cost-effective interventions and to allocate resources for health (The World Bank 1993). Several treatments or medications can be compared by this measure, which has been done in a few studies (Renaud et al. 2009). DALY also measures psychological factors (e.g., emotional, behavioral, cognitive, and social functions), which are considered in the weighted disability. DALY can be used to compare several kinds of interventions, like psychological versus pharmacological, as has been done by several studies (Heuzenroeder et al. 2004).

However, there are a few disadvantages of the DALY. It is a metric which is used to provide a single number to capture all of the health costs caused by a disease. One DALY could represent 1 year of life lost (due to early death), 1.67 years spent with blindness, 5.24 years with significant malaria episodes, 41.67 years spent with intestinal obstruction due to ascariasis (a parasite), or many possible combinations of these and other symptoms (Lopez et al. 2006). Thus, the same amount of DALYs, though numerically identical, could represent very different disabilities over time, which may not be comparable.

Cross-References

- [Disability](#)
- [Longevity](#)

- [Quality of Life](#)
- [Quality of Life: Measurement](#)

References and Readings

- Heuzenroeder, L., Donnelly, M., Haby, M. M., Mihalopoulos, M., Rossell, R., Carter, R., et al. (2004). Cost-effectiveness of psychological and pharmacological interventions for generalized anxiety disorder and panic disorder. *The Australian and New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry*, 38, 602–612.
- Lopez, A. D., Mathers, C. D., Ezzati, M., Jamison, D. T., & Murray, C. J. L. (2006). *Global burden of disease and risk factors*. Washington, DC: World Bank. Chapter 1.
- Renaud, A., Basenya, O., de Borman, N., Greindl, I., & Meyer-Rath, G. (2009). The cost effectiveness of integrated care for people living with HIV including antiretroviral treatment in a primary health care centre in Bujumbura, Burundi. *AIDS Care*, 21, 1388–1394.
- The World Bank. (1993). *The World development report 1993. Investing in health*. Washington, DC: Author.
- World Health Organization. (2010). *Global burden of disease (GBD)*. Accessed 15 Apr 2010 from http://www.who.int/healthinfo/global_burden_disease/en/index.html

Disclosure

Pamela S. King
 Pediatric Prevention Research Center,
 Department of Pediatrics, Wayne State University
 School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Synonyms

[Emotional disclosure](#)

Definition

Disclosure has been defined as sharing of personal information with others through verbal communication or written expression of what individuals verbally reveal about themselves to others (including thoughts, feelings, and experiences).

Description

Disclosure can be a complex process. It is often difficult to know what, how much, when, and to

whom to disclose. Many factors influence the decision to disclose information, including personality traits such as anxiety, impulsivity, and extraversion (see Costa and McCrae 1992), as well as social norms, one's affect, goals, and previous experiences with disclosure, the behavior of the confidant, and one's relationship with the confidant. People often choose not to disclose for fear of negative consequences (e.g., embarrassing or hurting one's confidant, punishment, reduction in autonomy, rejection, harassment, discrimination). Although disclosure can result in negative outcomes, research suggests that disclosure can be beneficial in a variety of ways. Disclosure provides people with an opportunity to express their thoughts and feelings, to elicit social support, gain new coping strategies, and build intimacy in their personal relationships. Disclosure may also allow people to find meaning in traumatic experiences, and may promote personal growth and self-acceptance.

Disclosure has been investigated in a variety of contexts. Researchers have investigated disclosure of a "concealable stigmatized identity," such as mental illness, experiences of abuse or assault, epilepsy, or an HIV-positive diagnosis. In each of these cases, people have personal information that is socially devalued but is not apparent to others. Disclosure has been examined among people who have a chronic illness that is not readily apparent, such as cancer or diabetes. Researchers have also studied disclosure of health information to family, friends, and health care providers (e.g., parents disclosing HIV status to children, adolescents sharing diabetes management information with parents). Research within each of these domains has examined how people make decisions to disclose, how confidants react to disclosure, and how people are affected by their disclosure decisions.

Much of the disclosure literature has focused on the effects of written disclosure on health outcomes. These studies use a laboratory writing technique which typically involves random assignment to one of two (or more) groups: an experimental group that discloses emotional material, and a control group that does not. Both groups are asked to write about assignments for 3–5 days, for 15–30 min each day. Those assigned

to the control conditions are asked to write about superficial topics. Those in the experimental group are asked to write about their thoughts and feelings about an important emotional issue that has affected them and their life. Writing for both groups is usually done in the laboratory, with no feedback given. This body of research suggests that disclosure of emotional events can have immediate effects on skin conductance, heart rate, and blood pressure. In addition, written disclosure about emotional issues can have long-term effects on both immune functioning and health outcomes. Disclosure may influence health in several ways. First, research suggests that non-disclosure is a form of inhibition that requires physiological work, reflected in autonomic and central nervous system arousal. Disclosing may reduce inhibition, thus reducing autonomic and central nervous system arousal and facilitating better health outcomes. Disclosure may also lead to changes in cognitive processes, such as decreases in rumination or increases in mastery, self-acceptance, and self-concept, which in turn have benefits for health. Finally, disclosure may lead to better health by increasing social support. When individuals disclose, they may gain information from others about effective coping strategies or they may obtain emotional support, both of which could contribute to better health outcomes.

Recent research has examined a different form of disclosure – the link between adolescent disclosure to parents and adolescent health outcomes. Prior research identified parental monitoring as an important predictor of a variety of adolescent behaviors including risky sexual behavior, substance abuse, and poor adherence. Additional investigation, however, revealed that measures of parental monitoring were assessing how much knowledge parents had, rather than the way in which they obtained that knowledge. Adolescent disclosure may be the primary source of parents' knowledge about adolescents' activities. Research indicates that among adolescent disclosure, parent solicitation, and parent behavioral control, disclosure is the best predictor of delinquent behavior. Research is now exploring the role that adolescent disclosure to parents plays in explaining adolescent health outcomes, such as adherence to the type 1 diabetes regimen.

Cross-References

- [Emotional Expression](#)
- [Expressive Writing and Health](#)

References and Further Readings

- Chaudoir, S. R., & Fisher, J. D. (2010). The disclosure process model: Understanding disclosure decision making and postdisclosure outcomes among people living with a concealable stigmatized identity. *Psychological Bulletin*, 136(2), 236–256.
- Frattaroli, J. (2006). Experimental disclosure and its moderators: A meta-analysis. *Psychological Bulletin*, 132(6), 823–865.
- Graybeal, A., Sexton, J. D., & Penneaker, J. W. (2002). The role of story-making in disclosure writing: The psychometrics of narrative. *Psychology and Health*, 17(5), 571–581.
- Pachankis, J. E. (2007). The psychological implications of concealing a stigma: A cognitive-affective-behavioral model. *Psychological Bulletin*, 133(2), 328–345.
- Pennebaker, J. W. (1995). *Emotion, disclosure, & health*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Smetana, J. G., Metzger, A., Gettman, D. C., & Campione-Barr, N. (2006). Disclosure and secrecy in adolescent-parent relationships. *Child Development*, 77(1), 201–217.
- Stattin, H., & Kerr, M. (2000). Parental monitoring: A reinterpretation. *Child Development*, 71, 1072–1085.

Discrimination

- [Stigma](#)

Discrimination and Health

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Synonyms

[Racism and health](#)

Definition

This term refers to deliberate inequalities in access to and in care for health conditions or to the unequal exposure to health risks as a function of people's ethnic or demographic background (age, gender, beliefs, skin color, etc.). This problem exists in both developed and developing countries and has social, psychological, economic, political, and health elements. Furthermore, discrimination and health can even be seen on a more global level – the inequality in health care between rich and poor countries and the consequent disease burden carried by poor countries, where global economic and political forces sustain this. Numerous studies show differences between low and high socioeconomic status (SES) groups in health conditions, and there is accumulating evidence linking actual and perceived discrimination with poor health conditions (Ahmed et al. 2007; Williams and Mohammed 2009). Importantly, physicians may even provide less medical advice to people who are less similar to them, i.e., of lower SES (Tschann et al. 1988). This is doubly harmful since low SES people already have higher health risks, and receiving less medical advice may add to their health risks. Both biological and psychosocial pathways may link discrimination to poor health (Ahmed et al. 2007). Biologically, low SES people may be exposed to poorer environments (poor sanitation, pollution), whose adverse health effects are clear – infectious diseases, pulmonary problems, and possibly cancers. Psychologically, such challenging and poor environments may result in depression or hopelessness, which are also known predictors of coronary heart disease onset and of poor cancer prognosis (e.g., Argaman et al. 2005).

The biological and psychological pathways resulting from low SES may synergistically interact. The mere exposure to environmental stressors (e.g., crowding, social violence), often experienced in low SES contexts, may interact with or add to the effects of biological factors in contributing to either unhealthy behaviors (e.g., heavy alcohol consumption) or to psychophysiological processes such as stress-induced inflammation (Maes et al. 1998) or stress-induced DNA damage

(Gidron et al. 2006), eventually resulting in poorer health. Clear discrimination leading to health problems could be seen when urban or even country institutions marginalize certain parts of society (based on ethnicity or SES) by pressing them to reside in poorer and more health-risky areas of cities (Ahmed et al. 2007). One major challenge to research and of course to curb this severe problem is the assessment of discrimination. Its assessment can be done by analysis of legislative records (institutional discrimination), employment uptake as a function of ethnicity (controlling for education), and at an individual level. The latter includes various scales such as the perceived discrimination scale (Williams et al. 1997), which assesses ten daily aspects of discrimination (e.g., being treated as less intelligent or in a less courteous manner than others). This domain is a very important example where behavioral and social sciences interact with biomedical sciences for understanding and beginning to ameliorate such severe health problems at a macro-level.

and patient demographic characteristics. *Journal of Community Health*, 13, 19–32.

Williams, D. R., & Mohammed, S. A. (2009). Discrimination and racial disparities in health: Evidence and needed research. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 32, 20–47.

Williams, D., Yu, Y., Jackson, J. S., & Anderson, N. B. (1997). Racial differences in physical and mental health: Socioeconomic status, stress and discrimination. *Journal of Health Psychology*, 2, 335–351.

D

Disease Acuity

► Disease Severity

Disease Burden

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Cross-References

- [Health Disparities](#)
- [Socioeconomic Status \(SES\)](#)

References and Further Readings

- Ahmed, A. T., Mohammed, S. A., & Williams, D. R. (2007). Racial discrimination & health: Pathways & evidence. *Indian Journal of Medical Research*, 126, 318–327.
- Argaman, M., Gidron, Y., & Ariad, S. (2005). Interleukin-1 may link helplessness-hopelessness with cancer progression: A proposed model. *International Journal of Behavior Medicine*, 12, 161–170.
- Gidron, Y., Russ, K., Tissarchondou, H., & Warner, J. (2006). The relation between psychological factors and DNA-damage: A critical review. *Biological Psychology*, 72, 291–304.
- Maes, M., Song, C., Lin, A., De Jongh, R., Van Gastel, A., Kenis, G., et al. (1998). The effects of psychological stress on humans: Increased production of pro-inflammatory cytokines and a Th1-like response in stress-induced anxiety. *Cytokine*, 10, 313–318.
- Tschann, J. M., Adamson, T. E., Coates, T. J., & Gullion, D. S. (1988). Behaviors of treated hypertensive patients

Definition

“Disease burden” is a term of major importance in medicine, public health, and behavioral medicine. It refers to the prevalence in a population or to the intensity or severity of a disease and to its possible impact on daily life. Thus, it could be at times referring to both illness severity and impact, resulting in confusion between concepts. Concerning disease severity, this reflects the amount of pathology in a given illness. For example, disease burden in cancer may be indexed by the level of a tumor marker – e.g., CA125 in ovarian cancer or CEA in colon cancer. Additionally, tumor stage could reflect disease burden as well. In coronary artery disease (CAD), this can be indexed by the number of arteries occluded over 50% or the percentage of occlusion in a given artery (e.g., 40%, 99%). In infectious diseases, disease burden could reflect the amount of viral load in HIV patients. Concerning a disease’s impact, disease burden can be measured by its effects on longevity or on quality of life (QOL).

An illness with a high disease burden would thus impair one's psychological, physical, or social functional aspects of QOL. For example, a patient with severe CAD could have debilitating chest pain which reduces his or her mobility, thus impairs work, elicits anxiety and depressive reactions, and reduces his or her social contacts with friends, family, and work colleagues. At the level of public health, disease burden refers to the prevalence of a disease in the population or the world and to its impact on longevity, disability, and its economic costs.

In behavior medicine, researchers often take into account disease burden (reflecting disease severity) as a covariate, when testing the relationship between a psychological factor and recovery or prognosis of a disease, independent of disease burden. For example, Denollet et al. (1996) showed that the type-D personality (high distress and social inhibition) predicted mortality in coronary heart disease, independent of disease burden indexed by number of diseased vessels and left ventricular functioning. In a study on patients' recovery from coronary bypass surgery, Scheier et al. (1989) found that patients' trait optimism predicted recovery, independent of disease burden indexed by extent of surgery and number of occluded vessels.

Hundreds of studies examine disease burden by assessing its accumulated severity or impact on QOL and general well-being. A few standardized disease burden indices exist including the Charlson index and the index of coexistent disease (Greenfield et al. 1988). The former only considers the number and severity of comorbid diseases, while the latter additionally considers patients' functional status in 12 categories (e.g., feeding, mental status, vision, respiration). Another unique disease burden index is the Smith index, which considers in a formula with weights a patient's emergency room visits during 6 months, blood urea nitrogen value, arterial pO₂ levels, total white blood cell count, and presence of anemia. These indices can enable researchers in behavior medicine to assess disease burden in a standardized manner across patient conditions and then examine the role of psychosocial factors in prognosis,

independent of disease burden estimates. Finally, one may also estimate the impact of such disease burden indices on psychological functioning and on QOL.

References and Further Readings

- Denollet, J., Sys, S. U., Stroobant, N., Rombouts, H., Gillebert, T. C., & Brutsaert, D. L. (1996). Personality as independent predictor of long-term mortality in patients with coronary heart disease. *Lancet*, 347, 417–421.
- Greenfield, S., Aronow, H., Elashoff, R., & Watanabe, D. (1988). Flaws in mortality data: The hazards of ignoring comorbid disease. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 260, 2253–2255.
- Scheier, M. F., Matthews, K. A., Owens, J. F., Magovern, G. J., Sr., Lefebvre, R. C., Abbott, R. A., et al. (1989). Dispositional optimism and recovery from coronary artery bypass surgery: The beneficial effects on physical and psychological well-being. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 57, 1024–1040.

Disease Management

Harry Prapavessis

Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Western Ontario, London, ON, Canada

Synonyms

[Chronic care](#); [Integrated health care](#); [Managed care](#)

Definition

Disease management is a patient centered, integrative health care intervention approach for managing the signs and symptoms of chronic diseases in defined populations of individuals. The main aims of disease management interventions are to optimize care, improve quality of life, and reduce costs associated with treating chronic conditions by coordinating patient care using a multidisciplinary approach.

Description

Disease management came about as a response to a changing health landscape wherein the prevalence and complexity of chronic conditions is on the rise requiring treatment regimens to adjust. With traditional approaches, patient information is spread across practitioners and specialists who are responsible for disparate aspects of patient care and respond in reactive ways to acute conditions. In contrast, disease management approaches plan for the long-term management of chronic conditions by reducing fragmentation and improving the continuity and coordination of the patient care process. This strategy is predicated on the understanding that improvements in medical therapy and self management can reduce the signs and symptoms of disease and improve treatment outcomes.

Disease management interventions are based in both primary care and private sector operations. While each of these shares the common goal of improving the health of the patient (e.g., increase functional ability, improve health status, reduce hospitalization time, and increase care compliance with treatment plans) and decreasing associated costs, different approaches are taken. Primary care interventions are integrated into the health care delivery system and focus mainly on communication with patients and between professionals (e.g., physicians, pharmacists, nurses, nurse practitioners, physical therapists). Private sector interventions are adjunct to the health care system (e.g., employers and insurers) and mainly focus on cost containment.

Three common key agents of change emerge in disease management literature: the patient, the health care team, and the environment. The patient is viewed as an active agent in his or her own care. It is up to the individual to seek information and be motivated to carry out the treatment plan. As such, self-management (see chapter ► [“Self-management”](#)) interventions are hypothesized to affect outcomes (e.g., health status and health care use) by producing behavior change. There are many modifiable lifestyle factors that can be adopted by the patient to prevent or minimize the effects of

disease (e.g., adherence to treatment regimens, physical activity, proper nutrition, medical screening, limited sun exposure, and substance avoidance). For example, epidemiological studies reveal that people who are more physically active have a lower risk of certain cancers than those who are sedentary. Evidence of self management interventions consistently demonstrates self-efficacy, and knowledge and skills are important mediators to target behavior change interventions.

The role of the health care team in disease management is to monitor conditions and to create a treatment plan, either alone or with the patient and health care team. A key challenge for the health care professional is to keep abreast of advancing knowledge and expertise necessary to care for patients. Education, decision-making support, time, and resources are targets for disease management intervention that should result in changed attitudes or behavioral intention, which is hypothesized to lead to professional behavior change. Ultimately, professionals who have increased expertise, knowledge, and support should provide higher quality treatment thus improving health outcomes.

Interventions that target the health care environment often focus on organizational design and relational coordination. Effective relational coordination interventions often involve the assembly of a coordinated (coordination within, across, and between care teams and community resources) multidisciplinary patient care team. Effective organizational design interventions often address task allocation, information transfer, appointment scheduling, and case management. These strategies are based on the belief that seamless care delivery (e.g., structural, financial, and functional) and collaboration among diverse care providers (e.g., nurses, nurse practitioners, dietitians, social workers, physicians, physician assistants, and public health workers) will improve health and fiscal outcomes.

Although there is some evidence to support various disease management strategies, definitive conclusions about the overall effectiveness on patient outcomes and cost reduction cannot yet be made and will require further exploration.

Cross-References

- [Adherence](#)
- [Aerobic Exercise](#)
- [Behavior Change](#)
- [Behavior Modification](#)
- [Self-management](#)

References and Readings

<http://www.carecontinuum.org/>

Singer, S., Burgers, J., Friedberg, M., Rosenthal, M., Leape, L., & Schneider, E. (2010). Defining and measuring integrated patient care: Promoting the next frontier in health care delivery. *Medical Care Research and Review*, 68(1), 112–127.

Wagner, E. H. (2000). The role of patient care teams in chronic disease management. *British Medical Journal*, 320(7234), 569–572.

Disease Manifestation

- [Disease Onset](#)

Disease Onset

Steven Gambert
Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Disease manifestation](#)

Definition

A disease is a medical condition that is considered to be abnormal, impairs bodily functions, and is associated with specific signs and symptoms. The disease onset is the first time that there has been noted to be a “change” in one’s usual health status with the identified signs and/or symptoms being able to be directly attributable to a specific disease process.

Description

Diseases may be identified as having an acute, subacute, or chronic onset with symptoms developing over a wide variety of time from minutes to months. Certain diseases will be easier to identify as to their exact time of origin, or disease onset. An example would be the onset of nausea and vomiting from a food-borne toxin that has been ingested. Other diseases are much harder to characterize as to their onset. Alzheimer’s disease, for example, is rarely identified until it has reached clinical significance at which time most individuals and their close contacts on more careful analysis can identify early warning signs that appeared years earlier and likely marked the onset of the disease. While symptoms may present in a classic manner, such as chest pain accompanying the onset of a myocardial infarction, at times, the presentation is atypical/nonspecific, making the diagnosis as to disease onset challenging. In the elderly, for example, it is not uncommon for a myocardial infarction to present with no chest pain but rather shortness of breath being the initial symptom at disease onset.

There are many examples of diseases that have variable disease onset. One such example is coronary artery disease. Individuals who present with coronary artery disease prior to age 50 are more likely to have a genetic predisposition; individuals affected later in life may have additional risk factors including dietary influences and coexisting diseases such as hypertension. Another example of a disease with a variable disease onset is Alzheimer’s disease. Individuals affected prior to age 65 are said to have a presenile dementia of the Alzheimer’s type and are more likely to have a genetic predisposition for this earlier onset. Individuals affected after age 65 are said to have senile dementia of the Alzheimer’s type (SDAT) (Bertram and Tanzi 2008).

Cross-References

- [Acute Disease](#)
- [Alzheimer’s Disease](#)

References and Readings

Bertram, L., & Tanzi, R. E. (2008). Thirty years of Alzheimer's disease genetics: The implications of systematic meta-analyses. *Nature reviews. Neuroscience*, 9(10), 768–778.

Disease Severity

Steven Gambert
Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Disease acuity](#); [Disease severity index](#)

Definition

Disease severity is a term used to characterize the impact that a disease process has on the utilization of resources, comorbidities, and mortality. It is often used by funding agencies to determine what is an appropriate payment for hospitalization or nursing home payments based on Diagnosis-Related Groups or RUGS (Resource Utilization Groups). There are several “severity indexes” that may be used to quantify the severity of illness such as the Glasgow Coma Scale for assessing the severity of cognitive dysfunction or the Mini-Mental Examination that quantifies the degree of dementia.

Disease Severity Index

► [Disease Severity](#)

Disinhibition

► [Impulsivity](#)

Dispersion

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Scatter](#); [Variability](#)

Definition

The spread, or dispersion, of a group of numbers around a central value is an important characteristic of a data set. It can be calculated in various ways. The range, the simplest measure of dispersion, is the arithmetic difference between the largest (maximum) value and the smallest (minimum) value. However, while it can be useful in initial “visual inspections” of a data set, this measure of dispersion is only a rough guide to the amount of variation present. Because it only takes into account two values from a data set, it utilizes a (potentially very) small part of the information available.

Imagine a data set containing 100 numbers. When calculating the range, only two of these numbers would be used. In other words, 98% of the available information would not be used in deriving this measure of dispersion. Consider a hypothetical data set of 100 numbers where the minimum value is 20, the maximum value is 80, and all of the 98 other numbers lie between 55 and 75. Now consider a second hypothetical data set of 100 numbers where the minimum value is again 20, the maximum value is again 80, but the other 98 numbers are spread out between 25 and 55. While the range would be identical in both cases (i.e., 60), it is intuitive that the overall natures of the two sets of numbers are quite different.

Two more sophisticated measures of dispersion for a data set are its variance and its standard deviation. These measures are intimately related to each other and take account of all values in the data set.

Cross-References

- [Standard Deviation](#)
- [Variance](#)

Disposition

- [Personality](#)

Dispositional Optimism

Lauren Zagorski
Department of Psychology, The University of
Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Synonyms

[Optimism](#)

Definition

Dispositional optimism is a stable personality trait characterized by general positive expectations that influence motivated action. When confronted with obstacles in achieving a desired future state, those who are optimistic anticipate positive outcomes from their actions. According to this self-regulatory model, optimism plays a role in negative feedback loops that guide goal-directed behavior. Consequently, optimistic individuals display a cross-situational tendency to enhance efforts toward their goals instead of disengaging and withdrawing efforts. It is also theorized that optimism is implicated in the propensity to attribute the cause of negative events as external and unstable. This explanatory style then influences future expectancies and behavior.

Various investigations of dispositional optimism have revealed a positive relationship with problem-focused and engagement coping strategies. This is the proposed pathway for optimism's potential benefits for well-being and adjustment to

stressors. Dispositional optimism has been linked to positive psychological and physical outcomes among patients with chronic illnesses including cardiovascular disease, AIDS, and cancer.

Cross-References

- [Life Orientation Test \(LOT\)](#)
- [Optimism and Pessimism: Measurement](#)
- [Self-regulation Model](#)
- [Optimism, Pessimism, and Health](#)
- [Pessimism](#)

References and Readings

- Carver, C. S., & Scheier, M. F. (2002). Optimism. In C. R. Snyder & S. J. Lopez (Eds.), *Handbook of positive psychology* (pp. 231–243). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Carver, C. S., Scheier, M. F., & Segerstrom, S. C. (2010). Optimism. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 30(7), 879–889. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cpr.2010.01.006>.
- Scheier, M. F., & Carver, C. S. (1992). Effects of optimism on psychological and physical well-being: Theoretical overview and empirical update. *Cognitive Therapy and Research*, 16(2), 201–228. <https://doi.org/10.1007/BF01173489>.

Dispositional Pessimism

- [Optimism, Pessimism, and Health](#)
- [Pessimism](#)

Dissemination

Wynne E. Norton
Department of Health Behavior, School of Public
Health, University of Alabama at Birmingham,
Birmingham, AL, USA

Synonyms

[Diffusion](#); [Implementation](#)

Definition

Dissemination refers to “the targeted distribution of information and intervention materials to a specific public health or clinical practice audience,” whereas *implementation* refers to “the use of strategies to adopt and integrate evidence-based health interventions and change practice patterns within specific settings” (National Institutes of Health [NIH] 2010).

Broadly speaking, dissemination and implementation science (D&I) is focused on bridging the research-to-practice gap in health care and public health. The overall objectives of D&I research are to understand barriers toward the effective use of evidence-based health interventions, programs, practices, and treatments in health care and public health and, importantly, to create and test strategies to move such health innovations into everyday settings more quickly, effectively, and broadly.

D&I science is highly interdisciplinary, drawing on expertise from systems science, psychology, sociology, health services research, organizational behavior, and clinical research, among other fields. The field has witnessed considerable growth, expansion, and interest among researchers, policymakers, and practitioners in the United States and international settings in the past decade. This has included the emergence of speciality journals (e.g., *Implementation Science*), conferences (e.g., National Institutes of Health Conference on the Science of Dissemination and Implementation), review panels, funding announcements, and training programs (e.g., Implementation Research Institute).

References and Readings

- Dearing, J. W. (2008). Evolution of diffusion and dissemination theory. *Journal of Public Health Management and Practice*, 14(2), 99–108.
- Green, L. W., Ottoson, J. M., Garcia, C., & Hiatt, R. A. (2009). Diffusion theory and knowledge dissemination, utilization, and integration in public health. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 30, 151–174.

Greenhalgh, T., Robert, G., Macfarlane, F., Bate, P., & Kyriakidou, O. (2004). Diffusion of innovations in service organizations: Systematic review and recommendations. *The Milbank Quarterly*, 82(4), 581–629.

Implementation Research Institute. (2011). <http://cmhsr.wustl.edu/Training/IRI/Pages/ImplementationResearchTraining.aspx>

Implementation Science. (2011). www.implementation-science.com

National Institutes of Health. (2010). *Program announcement: Dissemination and implementation research in health (R01)*. Retrieved from <http://grants.nih.gov/grants/guide/pa-files/PA-10-038.html>

NIH Conference on the Science of Dissemination and Implementation. (2011). <http://conferences.thehillgroup.com/obssr/DI2011/about.html>

Proctor, E. K., Landsverk, J., Aarons, G., Chambers, D., Glisson, C., & Mittman, B. (2009). Implementation research in mental health services: An emerging science with conceptual, methodological, and training challenges. *Administration and Policy in Mental Health*, 36(1), 24–34.

Rabin, B. A., Brownson, R. C., Haire-Joshu, D., Kreuter, M. W., & Weaver, N. L. (2008). A glossary for dissemination and implementation research in health. *Journal of Public Health Management and Practice*, 14(2), 117–123.

Dissemination and Implementation

► Research to Practice Translation

Distant Intercessory Prayer

Kevin S. Masters

Department of Psychology, University of Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Definition

Distant intercessory prayer is simply defined as prayer said on behalf of someone else when that person is not present. This is different from intercessory prayer in which prayer is also said on behalf of someone else but the person being prayed for is present during the prayer.

Description

Intercessory prayer is the age-old practice of praying for someone else. The first empirical study on this topic was conducted by Sir Francis Galton and published in 1872. Galton demonstrated that individuals who were often prayed for, in this case, members of the royal family, did not live longer than others. In the context of modern behavioral medicine, intercessory prayer still usually consists of prayer for improvement in health status or healing. One could serve as one's own intercessor (as when praying for oneself) or could be the recipient of prayers from others, i.e., intercessors. Prayers said by oneself or by others in the presence of the recipient of the prayer could theoretically be effective in improving health through a number of mechanisms including not only the actual prayer itself (i.e., divine intervention or some type of beneficial energy) but also via social support or other naturalistic psychological mechanisms. Distant intercessory prayer, however, occurs when the intercessor is not physically present with the recipient of the prayer. In this way, a more stringent test of the effects of prayer *per se* can be tested. Further, some studies in this area used blinding strategies wherein patients did not know whether they were in the prayer or no-prayer group, and other studies went even further and included patients who did not even know they were included in a prayer research project.

Empirical research on the effects of distant intercessory prayer has been carried out with patients experiencing many different disorders including various forms of cardiac disease, leukemia, mental health problems, renal failure, rheumatoid arthritis, infertility, sepsis, and alcohol abuse. Reviews and meta-analyses were conducted by Masters and colleagues (Masters and Spielmanns 2007; Masters et al. 2006) and the more recently published Cochrane Collaboration Review (Roberts et al. 2011). Each of these analyses found no credible evidence that distant intercessory prayer was associated with a beneficial overall effect. The authors of the Cochrane report carefully pointed out that their review of the empirical data in no way addresses metaphysical

questions regarding the existence of God or any deity. Similarly, Masters (2005) argued that distant intercessory prayer studies lack a strong theological basis and also produce noninterpretable findings because, critically, they are not able to control the amount of prayer delivered to or for the no-prayer control group. That is, when a group of researchers assigns individuals to a no-prayer control group, it only means that the researchers or their chosen intercessors will not pray for those individuals. This, however, does nothing to stop family, close friends, health-care professionals, or others from praying for them. There has never been a reason postulated that suggests the prayers of intercessors in a prayer study would be more effective than those of others in the patients' experiential world. Many other questions remain unaddressed in these studies including qualifications of intercessors, theoretical understanding of both significant and nonsignificant findings, within group variations in outcomes, and any firm theory or even coherent hypothesis to offer an explanation for the expected effects. One study (Benson et al. 2006) even suggested that individuals undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting who knew they were receiving intercessory prayer had a higher incidence of complications. Finally, in some studies, when significant findings were found, they (a) were not on the variables that were the object of prayer and (b) occurred in the absence of controls for multiple comparisons.

It bears repeating, however, that the argument here is not against the conduct of intercessory prayer, distant or present, by those who believe in such practices. Rather, it is an argument that empirical studies have not demonstrated an overall superiority for groups in prayed for versus not prayed for groups and that, because of the inherent methodological limitations of such research, these studies are actually unable to test their central idea/hypothesis and thus will never render a definitive database upon which to ascertain the health effects of intercessory prayer.

Cross-References

► [Prayer](#)

References and Readings

- Benson, H., Dusek, J. A., Sherwood, J. B., Lam, P., Bethea, C. F., Carpenter, W., et al. (2006). Study of the therapeutic effects of intercessory prayer (STEP) in cardiac bypass patients: A multicenter randomized trial of uncertainty and certainty of receiving intercessory prayer. *American Heart Journal*, 151, 934–942.
- Galton, F. (1872). Statistical inquiries into the efficacy of prayer. *Fortnightly Review*, 12, 125–135.
- Masters, K. S. (2005). Research on the healing power of distant intercessory prayer: Disconnect between science and faith. *Journal of Psychology and Theology*, 33, 268–277.
- Masters, K. S., & Spielmans, G. I. (2007). Prayer and health: Review, meta-analysis, and research agenda. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 30, 329–338.
- Masters, K. S., Spielmans, G. I., & Goodson, J. T. (2006). Are there demonstrable effects of distant intercessory prayer? A meta-analytic review. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 32, 337–342.
- Roberts, L., Ahmed, I., Hall, S., & Davison, A. (2011). *Intercessory prayer for the alleviation of ill health (Review)*. *The Cochrane Collaboration*. New York: Wiley.

Distraction (Coping Strategy)

Lara Traeger
Behavioral Medicine Service, Massachusetts
General Hospital/Harvard Medical School,
Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

Behavioral disengagement; Diversion; Mental disengagement

Definition

Distraction refers to a classification of coping strategies that are employed to divert attention away from a stressor and toward other thoughts or behaviors that are unrelated to the stressor. In both adult and pediatric populations, distraction (for example, focusing on an external object or imagining a peaceful place) may be used to deal with pain and discomfort during medical procedures. Other examples of distraction include

daydreaming or engaging in substitute activities to keep one's mind from ongoing stressors related to a chronic illness. There are many ways to group coping strategies together. For instance, distraction has been considered a type of emotion-focused coping (Lazarus and Folkman 1984), which involves minimizing the emotional distress related to a stressor. Distraction has also been categorized as passive coping, a type of coping that has been associated with helplessness, avoidance, and poorer psychological outcomes in the long term. Examples of distraction that reflect a sense of helplessness or avoidance are statements such as “I try to think about anything else but my illness because I’ve quit trying to deal with it” and “I can’t think about my illness so I’ve been watching television or movies to escape.”

Cross-References

- Coping
- Passive Coping Strategies

References and Readings

- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. New York: Springer.

Distress

- Mental Stress
- Psychological Stress
- Stress

Distressed Personality Type

- Type D Personality

Disuse Atrophy

- Sarcopenia

Diuretic

Nicole Brandt¹ and Rachel Flurie²

¹School of Pharmacy, University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

²University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

Fluid pill; Water pill

Definition

A diuretic is a drug that increases the rate of urine flow. As a drug class, the major aim of diuretics is to decrease extracellular fluid volume, and their major site of action is the kidneys. Secondly, diuretics increase extracellular sodium excretion. Different classes of diuretics work by different mechanisms in the kidneys, and they alter cation and anion levels in the body as well as renal hemodynamics.

The main classes of diuretics include carbonic anhydrase inhibitors, loop diuretics, thiazide diuretics, potassium-sparing diuretics, and osmotic diuretics. Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors (e.g., acetazolamide, dichlorphenamide, and methazolamide) work at the proximal convoluted tubule of the nephron, where carbonic anhydrase plays a role in sodium bicarbonate reabsorption. By inhibiting sodium bicarbonate reabsorption, these drugs cause sodium bicarbonate and water excretion. Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors are used clinically to treat severe acute glaucoma because their effect of decreasing bicarbonate reabsorption leads to decreased bicarbonate secretion in the eye and lowers intraocular pressure.

Loop diuretics (e.g., furosemide, bumetanide, ethacrynic acid, and torsemide) work at the thick ascending loop of henle and inhibit the sodium-potassium-chloride symport, thereby increasing

excretion of ions and water. Clinically they are used to quickly get rid of edema in heart failure, ascites, and pulmonary edema.

Thiazides (e.g., hydrochlorothiazide, thiazide, chlorthalidone, indapamide, and metolazone) work at the distal convoluted tubule and inhibit the sodium-chloride symport. They are used mainly in hypertension because they lower blood pressure and to a lesser extent to reduce edema.

Potassium-sparing diuretics act by two different mechanisms. Spironolactone and eplerenone antagonize aldosterone in the collecting tubules while amiloride and triamterene block the epithelial sodium channels in the collecting tubules. They all increase sodium excretion and decrease potassium and hydrogen excretion. These drugs may be used in combination with loop or thiazide diuretics to counterbalance the potassium wasting of those drug classes. The ones that affect aldosterone are also used in heart failure.

Osmotic diuretics (glycerine, isosorbide, mannitol, and urea) cause excess water excretion from intracellular compartments thereby increasing urine volume and renal blood flow. They are used to maintain high urine flow in certain clinical situations (e.g., severe hemolysis or rhabdomyolysis) and can be used to reduce intraocular or intracranial pressure.

There are multiple types of diuretics whose clinical indications can vary depending on the patient's comorbidities. It is imperative with this class of medications to weigh the impact not just on efficacy but also how these medications can impact their quality of life due to issues with urinary frequency and possibly incontinence.

References and Readings

- Brunton, L. L., Chabner, B. A., & Knollmann, B. C. (2010). *Goodman & Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (12th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Professional.
- Trevor, A. J., Katzung, B. G., & Susan, B. (2010). *Masters: Pharmacology: Examination & board review* (9th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

Diurnal Mood Variation

Brant P. Hasler
Western Psychiatric Institute and Clinic
University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine,
Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

Daily mood variation; Diurnal rhythms in mood;
Mood variability

Definition

The term *diurnal mood variation* is most commonly used in the context of the symptomatology of mood disorders, referring to noticeable diurnal (daily) changes in overall mood state experienced by some individuals suffering from depression. Historically, the specific patterns of these diurnal mood changes were thought to characterize various subtypes of depression, although empirical evidence for this has been mixed. Diurnal mood variation has been most closely linked to melancholic depression (also known as endogenous or somatic depression), which was thought to be characterized by a pattern of feeling worst (most depressed) upon awakening in the morning, than feeling progressively better as the day continues into the afternoon and evening. The opposite (atypical) pattern – feeling best in the morning, then worsening over the course of the day – was considered to be less common, and thought to characterize atypical (or non-endogenous) depression. Diurnal patterns in mood have also been noted in healthy individuals, and a circadian rhythm component to mood is now well established, although the specific term “diurnal mood variation” is less commonly used in this context.

Description

In the context of depression, diurnal mood variation is typically assessed by asking the patient to retrospectively describe the pattern, either during the course of a clinical interview or as an item on a questionnaire (e.g., Hamilton Rating Scale for Depression). Efforts to assess diurnal mood variation prospectively, both within and across days, suggest that the presence and direction (morning worse vs. evening worse) of diurnal mood variation are highly unstable over time, and vary independently of overall depressive symptoms (Gordijn et al. 1994). The instability of diurnal mood variation, as well as poor agreement between assessment approaches, suggests that caution is warranted when interpreting diurnal mood variation as an indicator of depression subtype (e.g., melancholic vs. atypical). This caution was underscored by a study of 37 patients with major depression that found no relationship between pattern of diurnal mood variation and either typical (i.e., weight loss and insomnia) or atypical (i.e., weight gain and hypersomnia) depressive symptoms (Leibenluft et al. 1992). Likewise, a much larger dataset of 3744 outpatients with major depression from the STAR*D study also suggested a need to revise the conventional wisdom regarding links between specific patterns of diurnal mood variation and depression subtypes (Morris et al. 2007). Specifically, nearly a quarter of patients reported diurnal mood variation, but the majority of these patients (48.6%) reported evening worsening in mood, with only 31.9% or 19.5% reporting morning or afternoon worsening in mood, respectively. Morris and colleagues also reported that any diurnal mood variation, rather than morning worsening, per se, increased the likelihood of having melancholic symptoms of depression.

Diurnal mood variation is thought to have clinical relevance as a predictor of treatment response, although the empirical evidence for this is mixed. Early studies have suggested that morning worse morning mood predicted favorable treatment responses to total sleep deprivation and tricyclic

antidepressants. In contrast, more recent studies indicated that greater mood variability, rather than any specific pattern of diurnal mood variation, is associated with improved response to total sleep deprivation treatment (Gordijn et al. 1994), and that diurnal mood variation does not predict treatment response to selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) (Morris et al. 2007).

Although the classic conception of diurnal mood variation has thus far proven to have arguable utility, more sophisticated investigations of diurnal patterns in mood may still provide important insights into the pathophysiology of depression. These studies are distinguished from past research by using prospective designs along with more frequent within-day assessments to provide greater temporal resolution of mood variability. A number of studies have been influenced by advances in affective science, and thus used separate scales to assess positive and negative affect rather than using a unidimensional mood measure (Watson 2000). These studies have generally reported that positive affect shows a 24-h rhythmic pattern, while negative affect lacks systematic daily variation. Positive affect is lowest in the early morning hours, rises throughout the day, to peak in the late afternoon and early evening, and declines during the night. Accumulating evidence indicates that the 24-h patterns in positive affect are due in part to endogenous circadian rhythms and not simply a reflection of affective responses to sociocultural rhythms in the environment (Boivin et al. 1997; Murray et al. 2002).

Diurnal rhythms in mood may be altered in depression, most commonly manifesting as a blunted peak in positive affect. In a study by Peeters et al. (2006) depressed individuals reported lower peaks of positive affect, and these peaks occurred later in the day, compared to healthy non-depressed individuals. The depressed group also reported decreased negative affect throughout the day, with greater moment-to-moment variability. (Negative affect in the healthy group did not follow a systematic pattern, consistent with previous reports.) In interpreting these results, the authors hearkened back to the classic definition of diurnal mood variation, noting that retrospective mood evaluation, via a

unidimensional mood construct, likely hinged on an internal calculus of the varying combinations of positive and negative affect occurring throughout the day. A more recent study by Murray and colleagues (Murray 2007) suggested that changes in the diurnal rhythms of positive affect are not only apparent in categorical comparisons of depressed and healthy individuals, but can also serve to characterize the severity of depression. Compared to a group with mild depression, the group with more severe depression had a less discernable rhythm in positive affect with a notably blunted peak, along greater overall negative affect throughout the day. Cumulative evidence indicates that altered circadian function may be present in depression.

Cross-References

- [Circadian Rhythm](#)
- [Depression: Measurement](#)
- [Depression: Symptoms](#)
- [Depression: Treatment](#)
- [Hamilton Rating Scale for Depression \(HAM-D\)](#)
- [Mood](#)

References and Readings

- Boivin, D. B., Czeisler, C. A., Dijk, D. J., Duffy, J. F., Folkard, S., Minors, D. S., et al. (1997). Complex interaction of the sleep-wake cycle and circadian phase modulates mood in healthy subjects. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 54(2), 145–152.
- Gordijn, M. C., Beersma, D. G., Bouhus, A. L., Reinink, E., & Van den Hoofdakker, R. H. (1994). A longitudinal study of diurnal mood variation in depression; characteristics and significance. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 31(4), 261–273.
- Leibenluft, E., Noonan, B. M., & Wehr, T. A. (1992). Diurnal variation: Reliability of measurement and relationship to typical and atypical symptoms of depression. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 26(3), 199–204.
- Morris, D. W., Rush, A. J., Jain, S., Fava, M., Wisniewski, S. R., Balasubramani, G. K., et al. (2007). Diurnal mood variation in outpatients with major depressive disorder: Implications for DSM-V from an analysis of the sequenced treatment alternatives to relieve depression study data. *The Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, 68(9), 1339–1347.

- Murray, G. (2007). Diurnal mood variation in depression: A signal of disturbed circadian function? *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 102, 47–53.
- Murray, G., Allen, N. B., & Trinder, J. (2002). Mood and the circadian system: Investigation of a circadian component in positive affect. *Chronobiology International*, 19(6), 1151–1169.
- Peeters, F., Berkhof, J., Delespaul, P., Routtenberg, J., & Nicolson, N. A. (2006). Diurnal mood variation in major depressive disorder. *Emotion*, 6(3), 383–391.
- Watson, D. (2000). *Mood and temperament*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Wirz-Justice, A. (2008). Diurnal variation of depressive symptoms. *Dialogues in Clinical Neuroscience*, 10(3), 337–343.

Diurnal Rhythms in Mood

► Diurnal Mood Variation

Diversion

► Distraction (Coping Strategy)

Diversity

C. Andres Bedoya
Behavioral Medicine Service Department of
Psychiatry, Massachusetts General Hospital,
Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

Cultural competence; Heterogeneity; Multiculturalism

Definition

Diversity involves a difference between an individual or group in comparison to an established “norm” (Kato and Mann 1996). This may be influenced by context and based on a number of factors including, but not limited to, ethnicity,

race, culture, gender, age, sexual orientation, religion/spirituality, health status, disability, veteran status, or socioeconomic status (Jackson 2006). Such factors are not mutually exclusive and may occur in any myriad of combinations.

Description

The field of behavioral medicine has made significant advances over the past three decades, providing a strong body of interdisciplinary evidence and theory to support the efficacy of applying research and practice for the promotion of health and prevention of illness (Belar and Deardorff 2009; Smith and Shuls 2004). Similar to the medical field as a whole, however, these advances have historically focused on the experience of middle-class Euro-American white males and been based on a traditional Western view of health (Kazarian and Evans 2001; Smith et al. 2002).

Yet demographic diversity within the United States continues to increase in a number of areas (Jackson 2006). For example, the Census Bureau noted that in 2008, ethnic and racial minorities consisted of approximately one-third of the population. Census projections indicate that by mid-century, these minority groups will continue to increase in number and represent slightly more than a majority of the population as a whole. Latinos, in particular, are projected to account for one in three of all Americans. Over this period, the average age is also expected to increase, resulting in a greater proportion of Americans who are older. Similarly, other diverse groups are projected to continue to grow, including the number of people who identify as members of sexual minority groups.

Diversity is a salient issue as it has a number of implications regarding the prevalence of illness and health-related disparities (Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality 2009; Smith and Shuls 2004). For example, compared to whites, African Americans experience significant health disparities in areas such as number of new cases of AIDS, diabetes-related lower extremity amputations, and lack of prenatal care within the first trimester of pregnancy. African Americans,

Asian Americans, and Hispanics over the age 50 are significantly less likely to receive preventative screenings such as a colonoscopy or proctoscopy. Similarly, Hispanic and African Americans with depression are less likely than whites to receive mental health care.

An increasingly diverse demographic landscape will require that behavioral medicine adapt in order to appropriately address the needs of diverse groups (Belar and Deardorff 2009). Through development of cultural competence skills, the field can better understand patients' sociocultural contexts, as well as recognize and appropriately respond to key cultural features. To this end, cultural competence involves development within three domains: self-awareness of one's own attitudes and beliefs; knowledge of the population of interest; and tools that can be applied with diverse groups (Jackson 2006).

Similarly, cultural competence can be extended to involve a context competence (Smith and Shuls 2004). From this point of view, diversity must be addressed within all aspects of behavioral medicine – clinical practice, research, education, and policy.

This provides the opportunity to explore the ways that sociodemographic characteristics are linked to health, illness, and related behaviors (Smith et al. 2002). The call to address diversity within behavioral medicine provides the opportunity to establish generalization of prior findings, as well as explore within-group differences that are related to health-related behavior and health outcomes. Such competence will require added interdisciplinary collaboration, for example, with multicultural psychology, and involve other levels of systems such as members of a community or organization.

Cross-References

- Cultural and Ethnic Differences
- Cultural Competence
- Disability
- Discrimination and Health
- Gender Differences
- Health Disparities

- Income Inequality and Health
- Minority Health
- Religion/Spirituality
- Sexual Orientation
- Sociocultural Differences
- Socioeconomic Status (SES)

References and Readings

- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. (2009, March). *National healthcare disparities report, 2008*. Retrieved March 1, 2011, from <http://www.ahrq.gov/qual/qrd08.htm>
- Belar, C. D., & Deardorff, W. W. (2009). *Clinical health psychology in medical settings: A practitioner's guidebook* (2nd ed.). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Jackson, Y. (2006). *Encyclopedia of multicultural psychology*. Thousand Oaks: Sage.
- Kato, P. M., & Mann, T. (1996). *Handbook of diversity issues in health psychology*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Kazarian, S. S., & Evans, D. R. (2001). *Handbook of cultural health psychology*. New York: Academic Press.
- Office of Behavioral and Social Sciences Research, National Institutes of Health. http://obssr.od.nih.gov/scientific_areas/social_culture_factors_in_health/index.aspx.
- Office of Minority Health, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. <http://minorityhealth.hhs.gov/>.
- Smith, T. W., Kendall, P. C., & Keefe, F. J. (2002). Behavioral medicine and clinical health psychology: Introduction to the special issue, a view from the decade of behavior [Special issue]. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 70(3), 459–462.
- Smith, T. W., & Shuls, J. (2004). Introduction to the special section on the future of health psychology [Special issue]. *Health Psychology*, 23(2), 115–118.

Divorce and Health

Tamara Goldman Sher¹ and Kathryn Noth²

¹The Family Institute at Northwestern University, Evanston, IL, USA

²Illinois Institute of Technology, College of Psychology, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

Marital dissolution; Separation

Definition

Divorce is the legal dissolution of a marriage. It is simultaneously a legal and psychological process (Margulies and Luchow 1992). Not all people are equally distressed by divorce, and a variety of factors contribute to level of distress endured. The degree of distress that stems from the divorce process and from divorced marital status predicts mental and physical health in both the short and long term. Remarriage can reduce the health risks of divorce. Possible mechanisms underlying the relationship between divorce and health (e.g., psychophysiological mechanisms, immune functioning) have been explored.

Description

It has long been understood that marriage, or a stable, long-term intimate relationship, increases life expectancy, decreases morbidity, and enhances quality of life (Burman and Margolin 1992). In fact, it has been noted that the evidence linking social relationships to health and mortality is as strong as that linking cigarette smoking, blood pressure, and obesity to health (Umberson et al. 2006). However, it is also understood that not all marriages protect equally, and a poor relationship may be more health damaging than no relationship at all.

A number of studies have also found that being divorced is more health-damaging than being married (e.g. Hughes and Waite 2009; Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 1988). In an early study on the effects of marriage versus divorce on immunity status among a sample of 32 married versus 32 divorced men, it was found that separated/divorced men were more distressed and lonelier and reported significantly more recent illness than did married men; the former also had significantly poorer values on two functional indices of immunity (antibody titers to two herpes viruses) while not differing significantly on quantitative indices (percentages of helper and suppressor cells and their ratio).

In understanding the complexity of the marital status/marital quality and health relationship, it is

important to understand the differences between those who are divorced, those who remain married and those who remarry in terms of morbidity and mortality. In the same study of immunological functioning, it was found that among married men, poorer marital quality was associated with greater distress and poorer immunological functioning. Among separated/divorced subjects, those who had separated within the past year and who had initiated the separation were less distressed, reported better health, and had better immunological functioning than did noninitiators (Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 1988). Taken together, the results suggest that while being married can be advantageous in staying healthy (having increased immunity against disease), the effects of marriage on health depend on the quality of that marriage. And, given a poor marriage, it is better to be the one initiating divorce than the one who is not the initiator when it comes to immune functioning. Other researchers have attempted to clarify the psychophysiological mechanisms underlying the relationship between divorce and health. One study looked at divorce-related psychological adjustment and blood pressure in a sample of recently separated or divorced adults ($n = 70$). Individuals who reported higher degrees of divorce-related emotional distress demonstrated elevated resting blood pressure at study entry. The same study found that men who reported greater emotional difficulty associated with the divorce experience showed greater cardiovascular reactivity when thinking about the divorce (Sbarra et al. 2009).

A lot of the early research on health and marriage compared those who were married with those who were unmarried on health outcomes. Fewer studies have examined the effect of *changes* in marital status on either emotional or physical well-being. Two large sample studies, one of 8809 people in the United States (Hughes and Waite 2009) and one of over 5000 people in Great Britain (Bennett 2006), looked at transitions into and out of marriage. Results from both studies found a clear positive effect of marriage. It was also found that a change in marital status predicted health worsening (Bennett 2006; Hughes and Waite 2009) with a difference between those

who were divorced and those who were widowed. Interestingly, for the newly divorced, health problems increased at the point of the divorce, while for the newly widowed, problems increased later in time, perhaps because of a cumulative stress effect (Bennett 2006). Finally, results revealed strong and consistent effects of marriage on later health in that among those who have ever been divorced or widowed, the remarried generally show better health than those who have not remarried (Hughes and Waite 2009).

Others have assessed whether findings that divorce is deleterious to health would hold-up to longer-term analyses. In a study focused on the immediate and the more long-term (10 years later) effects of divorce on women's health ($n = 244$), it was found that in the years immediately following their divorce, women reported significantly higher levels of psychological distress than married women; no differences in physical illness were found between groups (Lorenz et al. 2006). A decade later, the divorced women reported significantly higher levels of illness, even after controlling for age, remarriage, education, income, and prior health. The authors concluded that as a stressor, divorce has a more acute effect on psychological health, while physical illness risk accumulates incrementally in response to the relatively stable dimensions of chronic stress over time. That is, the divorce *process* has more of an acute effect on the psychological health of women while *being divorced* is a chronic stressor, and illness can be understood as a cumulative response to the concomitant chronically stressful conditions (e.g., financial hardship, lack of social support).

In looking at the effects of marriage, marriage transition, and divorce, there are a number of confounding issues including gender effects, age effects, and time married effects that are beyond the scope of this entry. It is clear that divorce affects men and women differently and the young versus the old differently. However, the issue of the relative impact of marriage, divorce, and marriage transitions on the health of men versus women is not a clear one. While some studies have found differences between men and women (e.g., Dupre and Meadows 2007), others have found no such differences (e.g., Williams

2003) in health impact. In trying to reconcile these discrepant findings, some have looked at the possibility of different mechanisms underlying the effects for men versus women. A number of studies have associated the mortality disadvantage of divorce on women to the financial losses resulting from divorce, as opposed to the divorce itself (Lillard and Waite 1995; Prigerson et al. 1999; Wickrama et al. 1995). In contrast, men seem to benefit from the sense of a "settled life" that marriage provides; they are less likely to engage in risky health behaviors and experience gain from the household tasks taken over by women in marriage (Lillard and Waite 1995).

In further trying to elucidate the underlying mechanisms in the relationship between divorce and health, some researchers have looked at divorce and illness prevention behaviors. However, rather than finding that it is a lack of illness prevention among the unmarried that leads to worse health outcomes, the opposite appears to be the case. A number of studies have in fact found that marriage *decreases* healthy behaviors such as weight control (Lee et al. 2005) and fitness levels (Ortega et al. 2011). These findings are consistent among the married versus the non-married and across the divorced versus remarried, with remarriage showing the same negative health trends as the continuously married men and women.

Thus, it remains to be determined why marriage is protective and divorce is harmful in terms of health outcomes overall. Other than general health effects, a number of studies have investigated more discrete health outcomes that result from marriage, divorce, and transitions. For example, there have been consistent findings that distressed marriages lead to more specific poor health outcomes such as coronary disease (Eaker et al. 2007; Zhang and Hayward 2006), slow wound healing (Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 2005), and cardiac events (Orth-Gomer et al. 2000) compared to happier marriages. It has also been found that marital status determines specific health outcomes. For example, remarriage after divorce significantly reduces risk of COPD incidence, even after adjusting for smoking habit (Noda et al. 2009), and coronary heart disease mortality

among divorced, widowed, and never married men and women is greater than among the married (Lindgarde et al. 1987; Weiss 1973; Zhang and Hayward 2006).

It remains a truism that being married or in another long-term intimate relationship is better for one's health than being single, widowed, or divorced for both general health and a number of specific health conditions. However, the reasons for these findings are not well understood. It is clearly not that married people take better care of themselves physically; in fact, the opposite seems to be the case. It is possible that the stress of divorce accounts for these differences but then again so does the stress of remaining in an unhappy relationship. For women, this stress seems to be primarily financial, while for men, this stress appears more task-oriented. It is also better to be remarried than to remain divorced or widowed, although the transitions into and out of marriage themselves seem to be harmful. Clearly, more information is needed to understand the complicated relationships between marital status and health, marital history and health, and marital quality and health.

Cross-References

- ▶ Immune Responses to Stress
- ▶ Marital Therapy
- ▶ Marriage and Health
- ▶ Psychophysiological

References and Readings

- Bennett, K. M. (2006). Does marital status and marital status change predict physical health in older adults? *Psychological Medicine: A Journal of Research in Psychiatry and the Allied Sciences*, 36(9), 1313–1320.
- Burman, B., & Margolin, G. (1992). Analysis of the association between marital relationships and health problems: An interactional perspective. *Psychological Bulletin*, 112(1), 39–63.
- Dupre, M. E., & Meadows, S. O. (2007). Disaggregating the effects of marital trajectories on health. *Journal of Family Issues*, 28(5), 623–652.
- Eaker, E. D., Sullivan, L. M., Kelly-Hayes, M., D'Agostino, R. B., & Benjamin, E. J. (2007). Marital status, marital strain, and risk of coronary heart disease or total mortality: The Framingham offspring study. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 69(6), 509–513.
- Hughes, M. E., & Waite, L. J. (2009). Marital biography and health at mid-life. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 50(3), 344–358.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Kennedy, S., Malkoff, S., & Fisher, L. (1988). Marital discord and immunity in males. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 50(3), 213–229.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Loving, T. J., Stowell, J. R., Malarkey, W. B., Lemeshow, S., Dickinson, S. L., et al. (2005). Hostile marital interactions, proinflammatory cytokine production, and wound healing. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 62(12), 1377–1384.
- Lee, S., Cho, E., Grodstein, F., Kawachi, I., Hu, F. B., & Colditz, G. A. (2005). Effects of marital transitions on change in dietary and other health behaviors in US women. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 34(1), 69–78.
- Lillard, L. A., & Waite, L. J. (1995). Til death do us part: Marital disruption and mortality. *American Journal of Sociology*, 100(5), 1131–1156.
- Lindgarde, F., Furu, M., & Ljung, B.-O. (1987). A longitudinal study on the significance of environmental and individual factors associated with the development of essential hypertension. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 41(3), 220–226.
- Lorenz, F. O., Wickrama, K. A. S., Conger, R. D., & Elder, G. H., Jr. (2006). The short-term and decade-long effects of divorce on women's midlife health. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 47(2), 111–125.
- Margulies, S., & Luchow, A. (1992). Litigation, mediation, and the psychology of divorce. *Psychiatry & Law*, 20(4), 483–504.
- Noda, T., Ojima, T., Hayasaka, S., Hagihara, A., Takayanagi, R., & Nobutomo, K. (2009). The health impact of remarriage behavior on chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: Findings from the US longitudinal survey. *BMC Public Health*, 9, 412.
- Ortega, F. B., Brown, W. J., Lee, D. C., Baruth, M., Sui, X., & Blair, S. N. (2011). In fitness and in health? A prospective study of changes in marital status and fitness in men and women. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 73(3), 337–344.
- Orth-Gomer, K., Wamala, S. P., Horsten, M., Schenck-Gustafsson, K., Schneiderman, N., & Mittleman, M. A. (2000). Marital stress worsens prognosis in women with coronary heart disease: The Stockholm Female Coronary Risk Study. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 284(23), 3008–3014.
- Prigerson, H. G., Maciejewski, P. K., & Rosenheck, R. A. (1999). The effects of marital dissolution and marital quality on health and health service use among women. *Medical Care*, 37(9), 858–873.
- Sbarra, D. A., Law, R. W., et al. (2009). Marital dissolution and blood pressure reactivity: Evidence for the specificity of emotional intrusion-hyperarousal and task-related emotional difficulty. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 71(5), 532–540.

- Umberson, D., Williams, K., Powers, D. A., Liu, H., & Needham, B. (2006). You make me sick: Marital quality and health over the life course. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 47(1), 1–16.
- Weiss, N. S. (1973). Marital status and risk factors for coronary heart disease: The United States health examination survey of adults. *British Journal of Preventive & Social Medicine*, 27, 41–43.
- Wickrama, K., Conger, R. D., & Lorenz, F. O. (1995). Work, marriage, lifestyle, and changes in men's physical health. *J Behavioral Medicine*, 18(2), 97–111.
- Williams, K. (2003). Has the future of marriage arrived? A contemporary examination of gender, marriage, and psychological well-being. *Journal of Health & Social Behavior*, 44(4), 470–487.
- Zhang, Z. M., & Hayward, M. D. (2006). Gender, the marital life course, and cardiovascular disease in late midlife. *Journal of Marriage and the Family*, 68(3), 639–657.

Cross-References

- [Monozygotic Twins](#)
- [Twin Studies](#)

References and Further Reading

- Elston, R. C., Olson, J. M., & Palmer, L. (2002). *Biostatistical genetics and genetic epidemiology* (1st ed.). Chichester: Wiley.
- Nussbaum, R. L., Mc Innes, R. R., & Willard, H. F. (2001). *Genetics in medicine* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders.
- Spector, T. D., Snieder, H., & MacGregor, A. J. (2000). *Advances in Twin and Sib-pair analysis* (1st ed.). London: Greenwich Medical Media.

Dizygotic Twins

Jennifer Wessel
Public Health, School of Medicine, Indiana
University, Indianapolis, IN, USA

Synonyms

[Fraternal twins](#); [Nonidentical twins](#)

Definition

Dizygotic (DZ) twins are pairs of siblings resulting from the same pregnancy. They develop from two separate eggs that have each been fertilized by a different sperm. These siblings share, on average, 50% of their genes, as do ordinary full siblings. In contrast to monozygotic (MZ) twins, who are always same-sex pairs, DZ twins can be same-sex pairs or opposite-sex pairs.

The employment of opposite-sex pairs in twin studies allows assessments of whether genetic and shared environmental familial influences on behavior are different for males and females. If there are sex differences, the correlation for opposite-sex pairs will typically be lower than that for same-sex pairs.

DNA

Edward L. Perkins
Biomedical Sciences, Mercer University School
of Medicine, Savannah, GA, USA

Synonyms

[Genetic material](#)

Definition

The acronym DNA is now so well known in popular as well as scientific literature that it often appears with no accompanying definition: The words deoxyribonucleic acid are rarely heard, but they are what the acronym represents. DNA is a very large molecule or macromolecule, with each word of its full name being descriptive of its nature. Ribose is one form of sugar (along with glucose, fructose, sucrose, and others). The prefix “deoxy-” specifies a ribose that has lost one of its oxygen atoms at a specific site in the molecule. Nucleic acids are a group of complex compounds derived from carbohydrates, purines and pyrimidines, and phosphoric acid.

Nucleic acids are found in all living cells, and also in viruses, which themselves are not actually

“alive” until they hijack another cell’s genetic material and make it work to their advantage. Nobel Laureate Sir Peter Medawar has captured this occurrence very well by calling a virus “a piece of nucleic acid surrounded by bad news” (cited by Bryson 2004).

DNA molecules contain many copies of four bases: adenine (A), guanine (G), thymine (T), and cytosine (C). Each of these bases can be regarded as a molecule in its own right, being comprised of carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and nitrogen atoms. Adenine and guanine are purines, chemical structures composed of two carbon rings, and thymine and cytosine are pyrimidines, which are composed of one ring of carbon atoms.

Purines and pyrimidines join together (or bond) with a deoxyribose molecule that also contains a phosphate group. The combination of A, G, T, and C with a deoxyribose molecule leads to the formation of four different nucleotides, two purine nucleotides (A and G) and two pyrimidine nucleotides (T and C). Hundreds of thousands of individual nucleotides can link together to form a polynucleotide strand. Each DNA molecule is comprised of two strands of nucleotides that are attached together. This molecular structure and the ensuing three-dimensional molecular geometry of DNA lead to its characteristic double helix nature. Once formed, single strands of DNA are matched with and then attached to another strand in a nonrandom manner governed by these rules: An adenine base can only be matched with and attached to a thymine base, and a guanine base can only be matched with and attached to a cytosine base, leading to A-T and G-C pairings. The term “complementary bases” reflects that each of the four nucleotide bases has a complementary base to which it becomes attached. A critical consequence of this arrangement is that once the sequence of nucleotides in one strand is known, the sequence of nucleotides in the other strand is known.

Replication, the process by which DNA produces an exact copy of itself, is facilitated by this phenomenon. The two polynucleotide chains that comprise a DNA molecule split apart from each other, and each then becomes attached to a newly formed chain, that is, an exact replicate of its

original partner. This creates two identical DNA molecules, which can then continue to create replicates in an exponential manner.

The Relevance of Genetics for Behavioral Medicine

While this encyclopedia is not focused on molecular genetics, genetic inheritance is of considerable importance in behavioral medicine, and therefore the information conveyed by this entry and other related genetic entries is deserving of inclusion. In some cases, inheriting certain alleles can be the sole and readily identifiable cause of a disease. A case in point is phenylketonuria (PKU), which is inherited in an autosomal recessive manner. Those who inherit the disease do not have the ability to create an enzyme called phenylalanine hydroxylase, which metabolizes the amino acid phenylalanine, a component of many foods. Accumulating levels of phenylalanine are harmful to the central nervous system. Fortunately, a very strict diet low in phenylalanine provides successful treatment.

In contrast, for complex diseases of interest in behavioral medicine, a multi-gene etiology is typical, and it has proved very difficult to isolate and identify individual genes/alleles that are responsible for sizeable amounts of variation in the dispersion of a disease. What has become apparent, however, is that environmental (behavioral) influences are of great importance in many such complex disorders. Consider the case of alcoholism, since it well exemplifies the interesting phenomenon of disposition rather than predetermination. Clinical data suggest that, when inherited, the genes that underlie alcoholism liability confer a vulnerability to alcoholism expression rather than the certainty of it. Genetic inheritance of alcoholism liability can thus be highly sensitive to environmental modulation (McGue 2005).

The role of behavioral influences is important both in disease etiology and disease treatment. Given a certain genetic inheritance, some environments can tend to increase the likelihood of a disease’s expression, while others tend to decrease it. This also means that behavioral interventions can be very successful at preventing or ameliorating behaviorally influenced conditions of clinical concern. Thus, behavioral medicine is concerned

with both genetic predisposition to complex disease states and environmental influences that interact with them.

Cross-References

- [Genetics](#)
- [Genomics](#)
- [Proteomics](#)

References and Readings

- Bryson, B. (2004). *A short history of nearly everything*. New York: Black Swan.
- McGue, M. (2005). Mediators and moderators of alcoholism inheritance. In J. R. Turner, L. R. Cardon, & J. K. Hewitt (Eds.), *Behaviour genetic approaches in behavioural medicine*. New York: Plenum.
- Watson, J. D. (2006). *DNA: The secret of life*. New York: Alfred A Knopf.

DNA-Methylation

- [Methylation](#)

DNR Order

Howard Sollins
Attorneys at Law, Shareholder at Baker Donelson
in the BakerOber Health Law Group, Baltimore,
MD, USA

Synonyms

[End-of-life care preferences](#)

Definition

Do Not Resuscitate Order: DNR

Description

Do Not Resuscitate Order: DNR

A do not resuscitate (DNR) order is a directive that cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) should not be initiated if an individual's heart stops or if the individual stops breathing. State law determines who may issue a DNR order such as whether a health-care practitioner other than a physician is authorized to do so. Health-care facilities will have established protocols for resuscitating patients when there is no DNR order, in accordance with state law. Competent patients or their authorized decision maker or proxy should be consulted about any proposed DNR order. The authority of a decision maker or proxy to consent to a DNR order can be affected depending on (a) whether that person is an agent under an advance directive, representative under a durable health care power of attorney, surrogate under state law, or guardian appointed by a court and (b) the scope of any such authorizing document. State law also determines if or how a physician may or may not have the authority to enter a DNR order without a direction by a competent patient or authorized decision maker or proxy, based on a determination that CPR would be medically futile in a particular case. Hospitals may have special procedures, consistent with established policy and state law, on the circumstances under which a DNR order may be suspended during surgery.

Cross-References

- [End-of-life Care Preferences](#)

References and Readings

- Kawana-Singer, M. (2011). Overcoming cultural differences between patients, caregivers, and providers in providing quality palliative and end-of-life care: A multicultural experience. Educational Book.

Doctor-Patient Communication: Why and How Communication Contributes to the Quality of Medical Care

Debra Roter¹ and Judith A. Hall²

¹Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health, Baltimore, MD, USA

²Department of Psychology, Northeastern University, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

Medical dialogue; Medical interaction

Description

The patient–physician relationship and its expression through the medical dialogue have been described or alluded to in the history of medicine since the time of the Greeks. Nevertheless, historians of modern medicine have tracked an undeniable decline in the centrality of communication to the care process. In his study of the history of doctors and patients, Shorter (1985) attributes the denigration of communication through the twentieth century to the ascendancy of the molecular and chemistry-oriented sciences as the predominant medical paradigm. This change was fundamental in directing medical inquiry away from the person of the patient to the biochemical makeup and pathophysiology of the patient. It was not coincidental that it was during this period of scientific advance that the practice of interviewing patients from a written outline designed around a series of yes–no hypothesis-testing questions largely replaced unstructured medical histories. Conversation was largely curtailed by these changes; patients were restricted to answering the questions asked and the medical dialogue was recast as a medical interview with the exchange directed by the scientist-physician.

Professional dominance of physicians over patients, and scientific objectivity over the patient perspective, was noted (and lamented) by influential authors in the medical and social sciences (Freidson 1970; Szasz and Hollender 1956), but the issue did not attract the attention of medical educators and policymakers until communication was convincingly linked to patient outcomes. It is in this light that the critical role of technical advances in the 1960s that made audio recording of the medical visit logistically possible may be seen and that the methods that allowed investigation of the relationships between the medical dialogue and outcomes may be appreciated.

The objectives of this essay are threefold: (1) to present evidence establishing the importance of medical visit communication to a variety of valued outcomes, (2) to provide insight into how medical communication is assessed by using a popular coding method, and (3) to briefly consider future directions for improving medical communication in light of current national initiatives in health-care policy and reform.

Why Medical Communication Is Important

Within 20 years of the groundbreaking study by Barbara Korsch et al. (1968) documenting pediatric visit communication was described and related to patient satisfaction and adherence with medical recommendations, a convincing body of literature had emerged linking medical communication to patient outcomes. As reflected in a meta-analysis of medical communication and its correlates, covering the period from 1964 to 1988, relationships between specific elements of medical visit communication and patient outcomes were apparent in regard to patient recall of medical information, patient satisfaction, adherence, and patient assessment of technical care quality (Hall et al. 1988). These relationships, however, varied depending on which aspect of communication was measured. For instance, when the doctor offered more information, asked fewer questions overall, but more questions about compliance in particular, and was more positive and less negative (both verbally and nonverbally), the patient was significantly more

adherent. Satisfaction was also found to be higher when the doctor offered more information, actively enlisted patient involvement in care, was more positive (verbally and nonverbally), engaged in more social conversation, and when there was more visit talk overall. Communication predictors of patient recall of information included more information, positive talk and partnership building, but less question asking. Thus, some elements of physician communication like information giving and positive talk were significantly correlated with all outcomes, while elements such as question asking, partnership building, and overall talk were only related to particular outcomes.

Although not as commonly studied as satisfaction and adherence, there is a small but extremely important body of work that has linked doctor-patient communication to other measures of outcome, including indicators of patient health status. Included among these measures are physiologic indicators such as levels of glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA1c) in the blood of diabetic patients and blood pressure in hypertensive patients. In addition, such measures as functional status (the patient's sense of his or her ability to perform usual daily routines) and a patient's overall sense of well-being and emotional coping have been linked to elements of the medical dialogue (Griffin et al. 2004).

Finally, there are a few studies that have explored how physicians are affected by factors associated with the way in which they relate to patients and perform their work. Among these outcomes are physician satisfaction and the likelihood of becoming involved in medical malpractice litigation. An appreciation for these outcomes is underscored by the relatively high levels of physician stress and burnout, particularly in specialties associated with rising malpractice rates, and the medical workforce shortages made worse by increasing numbers of physicians taking early retirement. It should not come as a surprise that many of the predictors of patient satisfaction also affect physician satisfaction as the communication of emotion is highly reciprocal. The positive regard associated with patient satisfaction with care and judgments of good performance,

interpersonal rapport, and personal warmth and affection are all likely to inspire physician satisfaction and similar feelings of liking. The opposite is true as well; critical judgments and perceptions of rejection or disregard also inspire similarly negative emotions. Not only are patient and physician satisfaction and liking related to one another, but when these measures of a positive interpersonal and professional relationship are absent, patient compliance is lowered, therapeutic effect is diminished, and physician risk for malpractice litigation is heightened (see Roter and Hall 2006 for a review of this literature).

How Communication Is Assessed

A review of the methods used to analyze the medical communication in the 61 studies included in the meta-analysis described earlier found that 28 different coding systems were used (Roter et al. 1988). Only three systems, Bales' Interaction Process Analysis, the Verbal Response Mode (VRM), and the Roter Interaction Analysis System (RIAS), were used in multiple studies, and these were applied in only a handful of studies (ranging from five to seven studies each). The Bales' system and the VRM taxonomy were originally devised as a general-purpose system for coding speech acts but applied within the medical context, while the RIAS was developed specifically to reflect communication dynamics of the medical dialogue. Many of the systems coded information exchange in some form, while others focused on particular kinds of expression like empathy or concern. A subsequent review of communication assessment instruments, covering the period 1986–1996, identified 44 unique instruments, but only four of these were used in multiple studies (Boon and Stewart 1998).

While investigators continue to develop and apply new coding approaches, the RIAS has clearly gained prominence in the research literature with more than 250 published studies using the system as of 2011. Studies have been conducted in 23 countries in a variety of medical care contexts and provider types and specialties with translations to Spanish, French, German, Italian, Swedish, Norwegian, Danish, Dutch, Swiss-German, Portuguese, Japanese, Korean,

Chinese, Arabic, Hebrew, and Swahili. (See <https://riasworks.com> for a bibliography of RIAS studies.) Because of its widespread use, a brief description of the RIAS and examples of coding categories will be presented.

Derived loosely from social exchange theories related to interpersonal influence and problem solving, the system takes a perspective of the medical encounter as a “meeting between experts,” grounded in an egalitarian model of patient-provider partnership that accounts for the contributions of each speaker (Roter and Hall 2006). The basic system is comprised of 40 mutually exclusive and exhaustive codes applied to all dialogue statements expressed by each speaker in the encounter. This is usually the patient and physician, but may also include one or more family members or friends accompanying the patient to the visit or multiple providers including consultant or attending physicians, nurses, or technicians. The codes are applied to the smallest unit of expression to which a meaningful code can be assigned, generally a complete thought, simple sentence, phrase, or clause in a compound statement but sometimes a single word. In addition to verbal exchange, RIAS coders globally assess the emotional tone of the visit at the close of a session for each speaker in terms of overall levels of irritation, anxiety, dominance, interest, and friendliness. The global ratings have been found to capture vocal qualities independent of literal verbal content and can thereby be considered as an indicator of nonverbal communication (Hall et al. 1981).

A useful framework for organizing and grounding RIAS-coded communication in the clinical encounter is the four-function model of medical interviewing that includes data gathering, patient education and counseling, responding to emotions, and partnership and activation. Specific codes and dialogue examples in each of these areas are presented in Table 1.

Future Directions for Improving Medical Communication

The appearance of patient-centered medical care on the national health-care agenda reflects a sea change in the value attributed to communication

by policymakers, medical educators, and the public. The influential Institute of Medicine report on Health Care Quality identified patient-centered care as key to any significant future improvements in health-care quality, alongside core medical care quality requisites of safety, timeliness, effectiveness, efficiency, and equity (Institute of Medicine [IOM] 2001). In a similar vein, patient-centered communication was recognized as a significant vehicle for the prevention of medical errors and malpractice litigation (Kohn et al. 1999). The scientific evidence reflected in these important reports not only has implication for the routine practice of medicine, but it has also influenced national health policy. The Surgeon General has targeted an increase in the proportion of persons who report that their health-care providers have satisfactory communication skills among the key objectives for the nation (Surgeon General Report, Healthy People 2010, Health Objective 11.6). This goal is integrated into objectives in screening, diagnosis, treatment, prevention, and hospice care applicable to chronic diseases and cancer. Most recently, patient-centered care has been included among the quality benchmarks for Accountable Care Organizations as part of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, Public Law 111–148 (Levinson et al. 2010).

Responding to these same pressures, the American Association of Medical Colleges (AAMC) and the Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (ACGME) have required documentation of communication skills training as part of the accreditation criteria for undergraduate and graduate level medical training programs. Consequently, virtually all US medical schools now require that some portion of their curriculum be dedicated to this area. Despite this progress, medical education challenges remain as the intensity and format vary widely and training is often concentrated in the first 2 years of training before medical students begin to see patients (Levinson et al. 2010). Requirements for medical certification have also been expanded to include demonstration of proficiency in communication skills as part of the United States Medical Licensing Exam (USMLE). The clinical skills portion of the exam assesses candidates’ performance using

Doctor-Patient Communication: Why and How Communication Contributes to the Quality of Medical Care,
Table 1 Communication functions of the medical visit as reflected in RIAS codes and dialogue examples

Functional grouping	Communication behavior	Example of provider dialogue	Example of patient dialogue
Data gathering skills	Open-ended question (categories: medical condition, therapeutic regimen, lifestyle and self-care, psychosocial topics, other)	What can you tell me about the pain? How are the meds working for you? What are you doing to keep yourself healthy? What's happening with your son?	How dangerous is my blood pressure? How do the meds work? What can I do to keep myself healthy? Do you have any suggestions for getting my son to go along with the family program?
	Closed-ended question (categories: medical condition, therapeutic regimen, lifestyle and self-care, psychosocial topics)	Does it hurt now? Do you take your meds every day? Are you still smoking? Is your wife back?	Is my blood pressure too high now? Is that white pill the diuretic? Do you think the patch that can help me stop smoking?
Patient education and counseling skills	Information about medical condition and symptoms	A normal blood pressure for someone with diabetes would be less than 130/80	Last time I took it my blood pressure was 130/80
	Information about therapeutic regimen, procedures and tests	The medication may make you drowsy. You need to take it for 10 days	The medication made me drowsy I took the test and am waiting for the result
	Lifestyle/self-care information	Getting plenty of exercise is always a good idea. I can give you some tips on quitting	I get plenty of exercise. I have been trying to quit
	Psychosocial exchange about problems of daily living, issues about social relations, feelings, emotions	It's important to get out and do something daily. The community center is good for company	It's tough to quit when your wife smokes
	Counseling statements regarding medical condition/therapeutic regimen	The medication will not be effective if you don't take it as prescribed; I want you to set up a routine to take your pills the same time every day	Not applicable
	Counseling statements regarding psychosocial and lifestyle issues	It is very important for you to get out of the house everyday! Being social is good medicine	Not applicable
Relationship skills	Positive talk (categories: agreements, jokes/laughter, approvals)	You look fantastic, you are doing great	The new medicine works great More blood! You're a vampire!
	Negative talk (categories: disagreements, criticisms)	No, it doesn't look to me like you were careful about your salt. The local stores are just not very good about making fresh vegetables available	That new drug you gave me was useless How can you eat healthy when even the hospital cafeteria serves junk food?
	Social talk (nonmedical chit-chat)	How about them O's last night?	I follow the Ravens – I've given up on the Orioles.
	Emotional talk (categories: concern, reassurance/optimism, empathy, legitimation, partnership)	I'm worried about that. I'm sure it will get better. We'll get through this	I am really worried. I'm going to make it work! I can see how upset you get when you see me in this state I want to work with you until we get it right

(continued)

Doctor-Patient Communication: Why and How Communication Contributes to the Quality of Medical Care, Table 1 (continued)

Functional grouping	Communication behavior	Example of provider dialogue	Example of patient dialogue
Partnering skills	Facilitation (categories: asking for patient opinion, asking for understanding, paraphrase and interpretation, back-channel)	What do you think it is? What would help? Do you follow me? Let me make sure I've got it right. I heard you say you the meds didn't work for you	Do you follow what I'm saying? Let me make sure I've got it right. I heard you say you that the meds take time to work and I have to just keep taking it and be patient
		Uh-huh, right, go on, hmm	Uh-huh, right, go on, hmm
	Orientation (categories: transitions, directions)	Ok, well, let's see	Alright, now
		I'd like to do a physical now. Get up on the table. Now we'll check your back	I'll get started on filling this form out while you're gone

standardized patients (actors trained to portray patients) presenting cases that a physician is likely to encounter in clinics, doctors' offices, emergency departments, and hospital settings (<http://www.usmle.org/index.html>). Furthermore, recent changes by the American Board of Medical Specialties (ABMS) now require communication skills for recertification every 5 years (Levinson et al.).

This essay began by suggesting that medicine had lost its focus on the person of the patient in embracing the scientific advances of the twentieth century, but there is reason for optimism in anticipating that the scientific, educational, and policy advances of the twenty-first century will return the patient to the center of care. Recognition of communication's centrality to the heart and art of medicine as well as its science is well reflected in the words of an early advocate of biopsychosocial medicine, George Engel, "It is not just that science is a human activity, it is also that the interpersonal engagement required in the clinical realm rests on complementary and basic human needs, especially the need to know and understand and the need to feel known and understood" (Engel 1988, p. 136).

Cross-References

- [Health Care](#)
- [Health Communication](#)
- [Patient-Centered Care](#)

References and Readings

- Boon, H., & Stewart, M. (1998). Patient-physician communication assessment instruments: 1986 to 1996 in review. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 35, 161–176.
- Engel, G. L. (1988). How much longer must medicine's science be bound by a seventeenth century world view? In K. White (Ed.), *The task of medicine: Dialogue at Wickenburg* (pp. 113–136). Menlo Park: Henry J. Kaiser Family Foundation.
- Freidson, E. (1970). *Professional dominance*. Chicago: Aldine.
- Griffin, S. J., Kinmonth, A. L., Veltman, M. W. M., Gillard, S., Grant, J., & Stewart, M. (2004). Effect on health related outcomes of interventions to alter the interaction between patients and practitioners. A systematic review of 35 trials. *Annals of Family Medicine*, 2, 595–608.
- Hall, J. A., Roter, D. L., & Rand, C. S. (1981). Communication of affect between patient and physician. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 11, 18–30.
- Hall, J., Roter, D., & Katz, N. (1988). Meta-analysis of correlates of provider behavior in medical encounters. *Medical Care*, 26, 657–675.
- Institute of Medicine. (2001). *Crossing the quality chasm: A new health system*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Kohn, L. T., Corrigan, J. M., & Donaldson, M. S. (1999). *To err is human: Building a safer health care system*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.
- Korsch, B. M., Gozzi, E. K., & Francis, V. (1968). Gaps in doctor-patient communication: I. Doctor-patient interaction and patient satisfaction. *Pediatrics*, 42, 855–871.
- Levinson, W., Lesser, C. S., & Epstein, R. M. (2010). Developing physician communication skills for patient-centered care. *Health Affairs*, 29, 1310–1318.
- Roter, D. L. (2000). The enduring and evolving nature of the patient-physician relationship. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 39, 5–15.
- Roter, D. L., & Hall, J. A. (2006). *Doctors talking with patients/patients talking with doctors: Improving*

communication in medical visits (2nd ed.). Westport: Praeger Publishers.

Roter, D., & Larson, S. (2002). The Roter Interaction Analysis System (RIAS): Utility and flexibility for analysis of medical interactions. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 46, 243–251.

Roter, D. L., Hall, J. A., & Katz, N. R. (1988). Patient-physician communication: A descriptive summary of the literature. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 12, 99–119.

Shorter, E. (1985). *Bedside manners*. New York: Simon and Schuster.

Szasz, P. S., & Hollender, M. H. (1956). A contribution to the philosophy of medicine: The basic model of the doctor? Patient relationship. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 97, 585–592.

Doctor-Patient Interactions

► Communication Skills

Domestic Violence

► Family Violence

Dominance

► Interpersonal Circumplex

Dominant Inheritance

Laura Rodriguez-Murillo¹ and Rany M. Salem^{2,3}

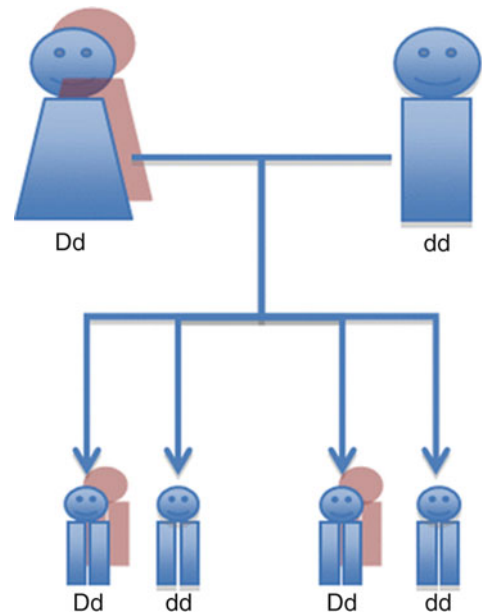
¹Department of Psychiatry, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

²Broad Institute, Cambridge, MA, USA

³Cambridge Center, Cambridge, MA, USA

Definition

A trait with dominant inheritance is expressed in the presence of the dominant allele, both in individuals who are homozygous for the locus of



Dominant Inheritance, Fig. 1 Dominant inheritance diagram. Highlighted individuals are affected by the disease given by the dominant D allele

interest (DD, the same alleles) and in those who are heterozygous (Dd, differing alleles).

Humans have two versions of all autosomal genes, called alleles, one from each parent. Dominant inheritance refers to the situation when an allele of a gene is expressed (dominant allele) over the alternate gene allele, which is masked (recessive allele). An example of a disease with dominant inheritance is Huntington's disease, where affected individuals carry at least one defective allele, leading to production of the defective protein and resulting in disease (Walker 2007). To illustrate, the children of an affected heterozygous parent have a 50% chance of inheriting the disease allele and of being affected (see pedigree, Fig. 1). Children of a homozygous affected parent have a 100% chance of inheriting the allele and developing disease.

Cross-References

- Allele
- Gene
- Genotype

- [Heterozygous](#)
- [Homozygous](#)
- [Recessive Inheritance](#)

References and Further Reading

- Lewis, R. (2005). *Human genetics. Concepts and applications* (7th ed.). Boston: McGraw-Hill Science/Engineering/Math.
- Strachan, T., & Read, A. P. (2003). *Human molecular genetics* (3rd ed.). London/New York: Garland Science/Taylor & Francis Group.
- Walker, F. O. (2007). Huntington's disease. *Seminars in Neurology*, 27(2), 143–150.

Dopamine

Michela (Micky) Marinelli
Department of Cellular and Molecular
Pharmacology, Rosalind Franklin University of
Medicine and Science, North Chicago, IL, USA

Definition

Dopamine is a catecholamine neurotransmitter produced in dopamine neurons of the brain.

Description

Dopamine is a catecholamine produced in dopamine neurons of the brain.

Anatomy

Approximately, 75% of all of the dopamine cells of the brain originate in the midbrain. From the midbrain, three main pathways project to mesocorticolimbic structures, where dopamine acts as a neurotransmitter (for review, see Zahm 2006).

The mesocorticolimbic or A10 pathway: Dopamine neurons originate from the *ventral tegmental area* and project primarily to the ventral striatum, amygdala, hippocampus, and frontal cortex.

The nigrostriatal, mesostriatal, or A9 pathway: Dopamine neurons originate from the

substantia nigra pars compacta and project primarily to the dorsal striatum.

The retrorubral or A8 pathway: Dopamine neurons originate from the *retrorubral field* project primarily to the dorsal and ventral striatum, hippocampus, and parts of the extended amygdala.

Another dopaminergic pathway originates from the *hypothalamus* and projects to the anterior lobe of the pituitary (*tuberoinfundibular pathway or A12 and A14 pathways*), where dopamine acts as a neurohormone.

Transmission

Dopamine is stored in synaptic vesicles and is released upon neuronal depolarization. Once released, it acts on dopamine receptors. Dopamine receptors are metabotropic (G-protein-coupled) receptors. They are divided in two classes: D1-like (D1, D5 receptors) and D2-like (D2, D3, and D4), which respectively stimulate or inhibit adenylyl cyclase and consequent formation of cAMP. Most released dopamine is cleared from the synapse by reuptake into the dopamine neurons, via dopamine transporters.

Function

While dopamine released from the tuberoinfundibular pathway inhibits prolactin release, dopamine released in mesocorticolimbic and motor structures serves to modulate movement, emotions, and reward.

In particular, the mesostriatal pathway is mostly involved in movement control: This is most notable in the neurodegeneration of dopamine neurons of this pathway, which is associated with Parkinson's disease.

Dopamine from the mesocorticolimbic and mesostriatal pathways plays an important role in reward. In particular, the activity of dopamine cells increases in response to unexpected rewarding events, or the cues that predict them (Schultz 2002).

Dopamine is also one of the major players mediating the rewarding effects in drug abuse and drug dependence (Marinelli et al. 2006; Volkow et al. 2002). Addictive drugs have the common action of increasing dopamine levels in the striatal complex (Di Chiara and Imperato 1988; Imperato et al. 1992). This effect is

mediated by different mechanisms, such as blocking the reuptake of dopamine at the level of the dopamine transporter, reversing the transporter from reuptake to release, or increasing the activity of dopamine neurons. In addition, animal studies show that subjects with heightened dopaminergic transmission are more prone to self-administer drugs of abuse compared with subjects expressing reduced dopaminergic transmission. Furthermore, treatments that decrease dopaminergic transmission generally produce a decrease in drug responding and relapse, whereas treatments that increase it have opposite effects (Marinelli et al. 2006). Similarly, human studies show a positive correlation between dopamine levels and behavioral responses to psychostimulant drugs (Leyton et al. 2002; Oswald et al. 2005). While this suggests that *increased* dopaminergic tone is a facilitator of drug abuse, there is also evidence for *decreased* dopaminergic tone to play a role (Melis et al. 2005). Thus, withdrawal from long-term use of addictive drugs can lead to a hypo-dopaminergic state that could promote the search for drug, to counteract the decrease in dopaminergic tone. These views are not incompatible; thus, it has been proposed that drug craving and relapse in the could result from two separate phenomena: “chronic craving,” which is an attempt to alleviate a state of hypo-dopaminergia and “instant craving,” which is instead caused by a temporary increase in dopaminergic tone that triggers relapse (Childress and O’Brien 2000; Franken et al. 2005; Pilla et al. 1999).

Antipsychotic drugs that block dopaminergic transmission are effective in treating some aspects of schizophrenia (mostly delusions and hallucinations), suggesting that hyperdopaminergia may underlie these conditions; however, the matter is controversial because it is still unclear if patients with schizophrenia have impaired dopaminergic transmission (Howes and Kapur 2009; Moncrieff 2009; van Os and Kapur 2009).

Cross-References

- Drug Abuse
- Neurotransmitter
- Parkinson’s Disease

References and Readings

- Childress, A. R., & O’Brien, C. P. (2000). Dopamine receptor partial agonists could address the duality of cocaine craving. *Trends in Pharmacological Sciences*, 21, 6–9.
- Di Chiara, G., & Imperato, A. (1988). Drugs abused by humans preferentially increase synaptic dopamine concentrations in the mesolimbic system of freely moving rats. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 85, 5274–5278.
- Franken, I. H., Booij, J., & van Den, B. W. (2005). The role of dopamine in human addiction: From reward to motivated attention. *European Journal of Pharmacology*, 526, 199–206.
- Howes, O. D., & Kapur, S. (2009). The dopamine hypothesis of schizophrenia: Version III—the final common pathway. *Schizophrenia Bulletin*, 35, 549–562.
- Imperato, A., Mele, A., Scrocco, M. G., & Puglisi-Allegra, S. (1992). Chronic cocaine alters limbic extracellular dopamine. Neurochemical basis for addiction. *European Journal of Pharmacology*, 212, 299–300.
- Leyton, M., Boileau, I., Benkelfat, C., Diksic, M., Baker, G., & Dagher, A. (2002). Amphetamine-induced increases in extracellular dopamine, drug wanting, and novelty seeking: A PET/[11C]raclopride study in healthy men. *Neuropsychopharmacology*, 27, 1027–1035.
- Marinelli, M., Rudick, C. N., Hu, X. T., & White, F. J. (2006). Excitability of dopamine neurons: Modulation and physiological consequences. *CNS & Neurological Disorders Drug Targets*, 5, 79–97.
- Melis, M., Spiga, S., & Diana, M. (2005). The dopamine hypothesis of drug addiction: Hypodopaminergic state. *International Review of Neurobiology*, 63, 101–154.
- Moncrieff, J. (2009). A critique of the dopamine hypothesis of schizophrenia and psychosis. *Harvard Review of Psychiatry*, 17, 214–225.
- Oswald, L. M., Wong, D. F., McCaul, M., Zhou, Y., Kuwabara, H., Choi, L., et al. (2005). Relationships among ventral striatal dopamine release, cortisol secretion, and subjective responses to amphetamine. *Neuropsychopharmacology*, 30, 821–832.
- Pilla, M., Perachon, S., Sautel, F., Garrido, F., Mann, A., Wermuth, C. G., et al. (1999). Selective inhibition of cocaine-seeking behaviour by a partial dopamine D3 receptor agonist. *Nature*, 400, 371–375.
- Schultz, W. (2002). Getting formal with dopamine and reward. *Neuron*, 36, 241–263.
- van Os, J., & Kapur, S. (2009). Schizophrenia. *Lancet*, 374, 635–645.
- Volkow, N. D., Fowler, J. S., Wang, G. J., & Goldstein, R. Z. (2002). Role of dopamine, the frontal cortex and memory circuits in drug addiction: Insight from imaging studies. *Neurobiology of Learning and Memory*, 78, 610–624.
- Zahm, D. S. (2006). The evolving theory of basal forebrain functional-anatomical ‘macro-systems’. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 30, 148–172.

Dorsal Hypothalamic Area

- [Hypothalamus](#)

Dorsalgia

- [Back Pain](#)

Dorsomedial Nucleus

- [Hypothalamus](#)

Dose: Intensity, Response

Nicole Brandt

School of Pharmacy, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Definition

The underlying mechanism of dose intensity and response deals with drug-receptor interactions. Drugs can bind to a receptor and enhance the effect of that receptor (agonist), inhibit the effect of that receptor (antagonist), or enhance the effect of that receptor at less than the maximum response (partial agonist). Clinically, the goal of a drug dose, or dose regimen, is to provide a patient with maximal benefit and minimal toxicity. To accomplish this, one must know about a drug dose's pharmacological potency and maximal efficacy. Potency is defined as the dose of drug required to produce 50% of the drug's maximal effect. The more potent a drug is, the lower the dose needed to produce a desired clinical response. Drug potency depends on the affinity of receptors to bind the drug and how effectively the drug-receptor interaction leads to a clinical response. Drug potency is the main factor considered when deciding a dose to administer.

A dose's response relates to how effective a drug is at a particular dose in relation to clinical response. How effective a dose is and what type of response it can have in a patient varies based on the route of administration, the absorption, the distribution in the body, and the clearance from the blood or site of action. When deciding on a drug and dose, not only does the dose's efficacy response have to be taken into account, but the dose's toxic response also has to be considered. Each drug has a therapeutic window and the goal is to give a dose of drug that is above the bottom line of that window (clinical efficacy) but not over the top line of that window (clinical toxicity). In short, the overall aim is to give the smallest dose possible that has the greatest efficacy and least toxicity.

In addition to the characteristics of the drug (pharmacokinetics), the intensity and response are also based on the characteristics of the patient. The intensity of effect of a drug dose can be increased or decreased if the patient is hyper-reactive or hyporeactive (compared to the majority of patients) to the drug. How reactive a patient is to a drug depends on multiple factors such as genetics, age, gender, body size, comorbidities, and concomitant medications (i.e., drug-drug interactions). There is also the issue of tolerance that may develop with some medication classes (e.g., narcotics). Basically, continued administration leads to decreased dose intensity, and when this happens, the patient is said to have built up a tolerance to the drug at that specific dose. All of these variables need to be taken into consideration when deciding on a drug dosing regimen.

Cross-References

- [Agonist](#)

References and Readings

- Katzung, B. G., Masters, S. B., & Trevor, A. J. (2009). *Basic & clinical pharmacology* (11th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Shargel, L., Wu-Pong, S., & Yu, A. B. (2005). *Applied biopharmaceutics and pharmacokinetics* (5th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Double-Blind Study

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

A double-blind research study is one in which neither the subject nor the researcher knows which treatment a subject is receiving.

Employing the double-blind methodology is a hallmark of pharmaceutical clinical trials. In some trials, an investigational drug is compared with a placebo. Both drug products must therefore look, smell, and taste the same so that subjects cannot deduce from one of these characteristics which treatment they are receiving. These drug products must also be manufactured, and similarly shipped to the sites running the trials, in a manner that does not allow the physician investigators to know which treatment subjects are being administered. The same applies for a trial in which two active drugs are being compared. While the double-blind process takes considerable work, it is certainly possible to implement it successfully.

This methodology can be much more difficult to implement in studies of behavioral medicine interventions.

Cross-References

► [Randomization](#)

Drinking

► [Alcohol Consumption](#)

Drug Abuse

► [Dependence, Drug](#)

Drug Abuse: Treatment

► [Substance Abuse: Treatment](#)

Drug and Alcohol Treatment

► [Substance Abuse: Treatment](#)

Drug Dependence Treatment

► [Substance Abuse: Treatment](#)

Drug Development

► [Pharmaceutical Industry: Research and Development](#)

Drug Rehabilitation

► [Substance Abuse: Treatment](#)

Drug, Adverse Effects/ Complications

Nicole Brandt
School of Pharmacy, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Adverse drug events](#); [Adverse drug reactions](#)

Definition

Adverse drug events (ADE) are noxious events that occur during the use of a medication, but there is not always a causal link (ICH 1994). An ADE can be a direct injury from the medication, like an adverse drug effect such as a fall. It can also be some form of harm due to the way in which the

medication is used, such as discontinuing the medication abruptly, causing an adverse drug withdrawal event such as confusion or increased blood pressure (VA 2006).

Adverse drug reactions (ADR) are “unintended, harmful responses to a usual dose of a medication during normal administration, with a direct causal relationship” (Nebeker et al. 2004). Adverse effects or reactions differ from side effects in that medication side effects can be beneficial or harmful, while adverse drug effects are always adverse or negative. Allergic reactions are a type of adverse effect that is elicited by the immune system, for example, hives or shortness of breath. It is important to monitor for and document drug adverse effects in order to provide the best possible care and to prevent subsequent harm (VA 2006).

References and Readings

- International Conference on Harmonization (ICH). (1994). Clinical safety data management: Definitions and standards for expedited reporting. The International Conference on Harmonization Report No. E2A. Accessed at http://www.ich.org/fileadmin/Public_Web_Site/ICH_Products/Guidelines/Efficacy/E2A/Step4/E2A_Guideline.pdf
- Nebeker, J. R., Barach, P., & Samore, M. H. (2004). Clarifying adverse drug events: A clinician’s guide to terminology, documentation, and reporting. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 140, 795–801.
- VA Center for Medication Safety, VHA Pharmacy Benefits Management Strategic Healthcare Group and the Medical Advisory Panel. (2006). Adverse drug events, adverse drug reactions and medication errors, frequently asked questions. The Department of Veterans Affairs. Accessed at <http://www.pbm.va.gov/vamedsafe/Adverse%20Drug%20Reaction.pdf>

DST

- [Dexamethasone Suppression Test](#)

Dual Diagnosis

- [Comorbidity](#)

Dual Process Models of Health Behavior

- [Temporal Self-Regulation Theory](#)

Dual Systems Models

- [Temporal Self-Regulation Theory](#)

Dunbar-Jacob, Jacqueline

Faith S. Luyster
School of Nursing, University of Pittsburgh,
Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Biographical Information



Jacqueline Dunbar-Jacob was born in Detroit, Michigan. She received her BSN degree from Florida State University, earned her MS degree in Psychiatric Nursing from University of California, San Francisco, and earned her Ph.D. degree in Counseling Psychology from Stanford University. In 1984, Dunbar-Jacob joined the faculty at the University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, as assistant professor and director of Nursing at Western Psychiatric Institute and Clinic and later rose through the ranks in the School of Nursing to become professor in 1993. She subsequently

received secondary appointments as professor of Psychology, Epidemiology, and Occupational Therapy. Since 2001, she has served as the dean at the University of Pittsburgh School of Nursing. She has been internationally recognized for her study of patient adherence to treatments across a variety of patient populations including rheumatologic conditions, cardiovascular disease, and diabetes.

Major Accomplishments

Dunbar-Jacob's research has been supported by the National Science Foundation and several institutes within the National Institutes of Health (NIH) including the National Institute of Nursing Research; National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute; and National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases.

Dunbar-Jacob is director of a P01 program project grant from the NIH on translating interventions related to patient adherence and quality of life. She has served as the director of the NIH-funded Center for Research in Chronic Disorders at the University of Pittsburgh. She has served on three NIH safety and data monitoring boards, as a behavioral scientist for three NIH-funded multicenter clinical trials, and on 20 NIH working groups addressing research agendas. She served on the NIH Prevention of Alzheimer's Disease Consensus Panel and is currently a member of the technical expert panel for the AHRQ comparative effectiveness project on adherence interventions. Her work has been recognized with the PA Nightingale Award for research, the Pathfinders Award for research by the Friends of the NINR, and her induction into the Sigma Theta Tau International Inaugural Nurse Researcher Hall of Fame.

Her current leadership roles include president of Friends of the National Institute of Nursing Research, chair of the Advisory Board for the Institute for Health Care Communication, and cochair of the Pennsylvania Center for Health Careers Supply-Demand Committee. Dunbar-Jacob has also served as the chair of the AACN Task Force on the Future of the Research

Focused Doctorate and chair of the Scientific Advisory Board for NIH Roadmap Initiatives for the Patient Reported Outcomes Measurement Information System (PROMIS). Recently, she was a fellow in the Robert Wood Johnson Executive Nurse Fellows Program and a member of the National Institute of Nursing Research Advisory Council. She is also past president of the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research and past president of the Society for Behavioral Medicine.

Cross-References

- [Adherence](#)
- [Compliance](#)
- [Unintentional Nonadherence](#)

References and Reading

- Chia, L., Schlenk, E., & Dunbar-Jacob, J. (2006). Effect of personal and cultural beliefs on medication adherence in the elderly. *Drugs & Aging*, 23(3), 191–202.
- Dunbar-Jacob, J. (2007). Models for changing patient behavior. *The American Journal of Nursing*, 107 (6 Suppl), 20–25.
- Dunbar-Jacob, J., & Mortimer-Stephens, M. (2001). Treatment adherence in chronic disease. *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 54(1), S57–S60.
- Dunbar-Jacob, J., & Schlenk, E. A. (1996). Treatment adherence and clinical outcome. Can we make a difference? In R. J. Resnick & R. H. Rozensky (Eds.), *Health psychology through the lifespan: Practice and research opportunities* (pp. 323–343). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Dunbar-Jacob, J., & Schlenk, E. A. (2000). Patient adherence to treatment regimen. In A. Baum, T. A. Revenson, & J. E. Singer (Eds.), *Handbook of health psychology* (pp. 571–580). Hillsdale: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Dunbar-Jacob, J., Burke, L. E., Rohay, J. M., Sereika, S., Schlenk, E. A., Lippello, A., et al. (1996). Comparability of self-report, pill count, and electronically monitored adherence data. *Controlled Clinical Trials*, 17 (2S), 80S.
- Dunbar-Jacob, J., Schlenk, E. A., Burke, L. E., & Matthews, J. T. (1998a). Predictors of patient adherence: Patient characteristics. In S. A. Shumaker, E. Schron, J. Ockene, & W. L. McBee (Eds.), *Handbook of health behavior change* (2nd ed., pp. 491–511). New York: Springer.

- Dunbar-Jacob, J., Sereika, S., Rohay, J., & Burke, L. (1998b). Electronic methods in assessing adherence to medical regimens. In D. Krantz & A. Baum (Eds.), *Technology and methods in behavioral medicine* (pp. 95–113). Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Dunbar-Jacob, J., Erlen, J. A., Schlenk, E., Ryan, C., Sereika, S., & Doswell, W. (2000). Adherence in chronic disease. In J. Fitzpatrick & J. Goepfing (Eds.), *Annual review of nursing research* (Vol. 18, pp. 48–90). New York: Springer.
- Dunbar-Jacob, J., Bohachick, P., Mortimer-Stephens, M. K., Sereika, S., & Foley, S. (2003). Medication adherence in patients with cardiovascular disease. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 18(3), 209–218.
- Dunbar-Jacob, J., Gemmel, L. A., & Schlenk, E. A. (2008). Predictors of patient adherence: Patient characteristics. In S. A. Shumaker, E. Schron, J. Ockene, & W. L. McBee (Eds.), *Handbook of health behavior change* (3rd ed., pp. 397–410). New York: Springer.
- Dunbar-Jacob, J., Houze, M., Kramer, C., Luyster, F., & McCall, M. (2010). Adherence to medical advice: Processes and measurement. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 83–95). New York: Springer.
- Martin, K. A., Bowen, D. J., Dunbar-Jacob, J., & Perri, M. G. (2000). Who will adhere? Key issues in the study and prediction of adherence in randomized controlled trials. *Controlled Clinical Trials*, 21(5), 195S–199S.
- McCall, M. K., Dunbar-Jacob, J., & Puskar, K. (2009). Promoting medication adherence. *Nursing Made Incredibly Easy*, 7(5), 20–25.
- Stille, C., Bender, C., Dunbar-Jacob, J., & Ryan, C. (2010). The impact of cognitive function on medication management: Three studies. *Health Psychology*, 1, 50–55.

Dyadic Stress

► Family Stress

Dynorphins

► Endogenous Opioids/Endorphins/Enkephalin

Dysfunctional/Dysfunction

► Maladaptive/Maladjustment

Dyslipidemia

Ronald Goldberg

Diabetes Research Institute, University of Miami
Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

High cholesterol; Hypercholesterolemia; Hypertriglyceridemia

Definition

The term dyslipidemia refers to an abnormality of circulating lipoproteins, which are the protein-lipid complexes that transport the major blood lipids, cholesterol, and triglyceride through the circulation. The standard test for circulating lipids and lipoproteins consists of the measurement of the total serum cholesterol, its low-density (LDL-C) and high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C) subfractions, and the fasting triglyceride level. Dyslipidemia is then defined as a higher than acceptable total cholesterol, LDL-C or triglyceride level, or a low HDL-C value, or various combinations of these. The clinical importance of these abnormalities relates to the association of elevated cholesterol, LDL-C, and in many instances of hypertriglyceridemia with an increased risk of cardiovascular disease (CVD). Conversely, HDL-C is inversely associated with the risk of CVD. Although not readily measured with standard testing, there are other circulating atherogenic lipoproteins, such as intermediate density lipoprotein and lipoprotein (a), that are believed to increase risk for CVD. Very high triglyceride values (>1000 mg/dl) are also associated with an increased risk of pancreatitis.

Etiology

The etiology of dyslipidemia is complex. Primary forms of dyslipidemia may be due to monogenic or as yet mostly poorly defined polygenic

abnormalities of lipoprotein metabolism. Clinically, these manifest as predominant (and sometimes severe) hypertriglyceridemia, moderate to severe elevations in LDL-C, or combinations of these two abnormalities. Hypertriglyceridemia is commonly associated with low HDL-C levels as well as smaller than normal LDL particles which may have increased atherogenicity. In addition, isolated HDL deficiencies may primarily be due to genetic disturbances of HDL metabolism. More commonly, dyslipidemia is due to effects of secondary factors acting on the particular genetic substrate of the individual to produce a range of lipid abnormalities. Common secondary causes of hypertriglyceridemia, small LDL particles, and low HDL-C include abdominal obesity, insulin resistance, and type 2 diabetes, while the most common reason for an elevated LDL-C is the high fat diet that is typical of Western societies.

Clinical Evaluation and Intervention

The clinical evaluation of dyslipidemia has been guided by the recommendations of the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) which published its initial Adult Treatment Panel (ATP I) recommendations in 1987 for diagnosis and treatment of lipid disorders, and these were revised in 1994 (ATP II) and 2001 (ATP III) with an update in 2004. ATP IV will be published in due course. The current guidelines recommend that attention to LDL-C should be the first priority because of its close association with CVD event rates, except in patients with severe hypertriglyceridemia (>500 mg/dl), where urgent triglyceride lowering to prevent pancreatitis should be the initial treatment.

The question of what constitutes an LDL-C level requiring treatment has undergone considerable evolution as clinical trial data showing benefit from statin drugs in different population subgroups have been reported. In essence, the population is divided into low-risk, moderate-risk, and high-risk subgroups. Cut points for

dietary intervention or pharmacologic intervention have been defined for each group according to severity of CVD risk and in 30 mg/dl increments of LDL-C; however, because these cut points and the targets of treatment are somewhat arbitrarily defined and are also a subject of debate, these values are given as a range. Thus, for low-risk subjects (with no more than one major CVD risk factor), the cut point for therapeutic lifestyle changes, focusing largely on lowering cholesterol, and saturated fat intake is recommended at 130–160 mg/dl, while drug therapy is recommended at 160–190 mg/dl, aiming for an LDL-C of 130–160 mg/dl – the average for the general population.

For those with at least two major risk factors, but without diabetes or evident CVD, the cut points for pharmacologic and lifestyle change are 130–160 and 100–130 mg/dl respectively, and the goal is <100 –130 mg/dl (an LDL-C of ≤ 100 mg/dl is considered optimal for the general population). For highest-risk subjects, a single cut point for combined lifestyle and drug therapy is set at 70–100 mg/dl, with a target of ≤ 70 mg/dl. Statin drugs are the first choice, with add-on agents such as ezetimibe and bile sequestrants available in the event that statin therapy is inadequate or not tolerable. Because LDL-C reflects only the cholesterol content of LDL and may not adequately reflect the full range and impact of atherogenic lipoproteins before and on treatment, the use of alternative or secondary measures such as non-HDL-C (calculated by total cholesterol minus HDL-C) or apolipoprotein B (the protein component of all atherogenic lipoproteins) has been proposed.

Elevation in triglyceride levels is less directly related to CVD risk, and it is likely that there is considerable heterogeneity in this relationship across the population. Subjects with triglyceride values >150 mg/dl are said to have borderline hypertriglyceridemia, and those with values >200 mg/dl have hypertriglyceridemia which should be considered for treatment. In this population, non-HDL-C or apolipoprotein B measurements may have special advantages because hypertriglyceridemia alters the LDL-C value. The initial approach is therapeutic

lifestyle change in which overweight is an important target. Medications such as fibrate drugs, high doses of omega 3 fatty acids, or niacin may be added if lifestyle therapy is considered inadequate, although evidence for CVD benefit with these medications is weaker than that for statin drugs.

Lastly, low HDL-C, defined as <40 mg/dl in men and <50 mg/dl in women, is considered to be an independent CVD risk factor. Weight reduction and increased physical activity may modestly raise HDL-C and are prudent approaches to management of low HDL-C. However, drug therapy with HDL-raising drugs such as fibrates or niacin remains a challenge because of the lack of a full understanding of the relationship between HDL and CVD, side effects of medications, and the paucity of data that this approach clearly adds to the benefit of statin therapy. Considerable efforts are being made to improve our understanding and the management of dyslipidemia.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- ▶ [Cholesterol](#)
- ▶ [Diabetes](#)
- ▶ [Insulin Resistance \(IR\) Syndrome](#)
- ▶ [Lipid Abnormalities](#)

References and Readings

- Lorenzo, C., Williams, K., Hunt, K., & Haffner, S. M. (2007). The national cholesterol education program-adult treatment panel III, international diabetes federation, and world health organization definitions of the metabolic syndrome as predictors of incident cardiovascular disease and diabetes. *Diabetes Care*, 30, 8–13.
- Scott, M., Grundy, S., Cleeman, J., Bairey Merz, C. N., Brewer, H. B., Clark, L. T., Hunninghake, D., Pasternak, R., Smith, S., Stone, N., & Coordinating Committee of the National Cholesterol Education Program. (2004). Implications of recent clinical trials for the national cholesterol education program adult treatment panel III guidelines. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 44, 720–732.

Dyspnea

Valerie Sabol
School of Nursing, Duke University,
Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Anxiety](#); [Heart failure](#); [Shortness of breath](#)

Definition

Dyspnea, or breathing discomfort, is a frequently reported symptom, often the manifestation of cardiopulmonary and neuromuscular diseases, myocardial ischemia, anemia, obesity, or deconditioning. According to the American Thoracic Society, dyspnea is a term used to “characterize a subjective experience of breathing discomfort that comprises qualitatively distinct sensations that vary in intensity. The experience derives from interactions among multiple physiological, psychological, social, and environmental factors, and may induce secondary physiological and behavioral responses.” There are variations in the clinical reporting of dyspnea; words used by individuals to describe their breathing discomfort may provide insight into the underlying pathophysiology of their disease. For example, words used to describe difficulty inspiring is associated with upper airway obstruction (e.g., aspiration), and words used to describe difficulty with expiratory flow is associated with obstruction of the smaller bronchioles (e.g., asthma). The inability to breathe while in a recumbent position is known as orthopnea, and complaints of sudden onset of coughing or difficult breathing after sleeping in a recumbent position (typically after 1–2 h) is known as paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea (PND) and is typically associated with heart failure. Dyspnea on exertion (DOE) is common in obstructive and restrictive

pulmonary diseases. Dyspnea that is described as painful may have an underlying inflammatory or trauma-related etiology. Signs of air hunger include mouth breathing, use of accessory muscles, and/or inability to finish a sentence without pausing to breathe. Some individuals, however, are able to adjust their physical activities to limit or prevent dyspnea and more objective testing may be warranted.

Importantly, the presence of more than one type of breathing discomfort can lead to recognition that more than one disease process is contributing to dyspnea. Important components of the history include the characteristics of dyspnea (i.e., timing, severity, and triggers), exposures that may contribute to the lung disease (e.g., allergens, cold air, occupational agents, cigarette smoke), and interventions or medications that reduce dyspnea. Dyspnea is considered acute when it develops over minutes to hours and chronic when it has been present for more than 4–8 weeks. For individuals with chronic dyspnea, a formal assessment of symptoms can create a baseline for future comparisons (i.e., Baseline Dyspnea Index; Borg Scale).

Depending on the most likely underlying etiology, there are several diagnostic studies that could be used to evaluate dyspnea. For example, exercise testing (e.g., 6-min walk test), spirometry, other pulmonary function tests (PFTs), pulse oximetry, arterial blood gas sampling, blood chemistries (e.g., b-type natriuretic peptide, anemia, renal function), and chest radiography may provide information to aid in a differential diagnosis and help target treatment strategies. When asthma or COPD is suspected, the initial testing might be limited to spirometry pre and post bronchodilator, while an older patient with coronary artery disease and peripheral edema should be evaluated for heart failure before considering spirometry.

General treatment strategies include self-help strategies (e.g., accurate self-assessment and regulation of breathing), smoking cessation, avoidance of infection, and environmental stressors (e.g., weather extremes, poor air quality, pollutants), pulmonary rehabilitation, and chronic disease management.

Cross-References

► [Anxiety and Heart Disease](#)

References and Further Reading

- Parshall, M. B., Schwartzstein, R. M., Adams, L., Banzett, R. B., Manning, H. L., Bourbeau, J., Calverley, P. M., Gift, A. G., Harver, A., Lareau, S. C., Mahler, D. A., Meek, P. M., & O'Donnell, D. E. (2012). American Thoracic Society Committee on Dyspnea. *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*, 185(4), 435.
- Walls, R., Hockberger, R., & Gausche-Hill, M. (2017). *Rosen's emergency medicine: Concepts and clinical practice* (9th ed.). Philadelphia: Elsevier.

Dysrhythmia

► [Arrhythmia](#)

Dysthymia

Nina Rieckmann
Berlin School of Public Health, Charité
Universitätsmedizin, Berlin, Germany

Synonyms

[Chronic depression](#); [Chronic depressive disorder](#); [Dysthymic disorder](#)

Definition

Dysthymia is a form of chronic depression, characterized by persistent (“most of the days, for more days than not”) depressed mood lasting for at least 2 years. It is a diagnostic category within the mood disorders in the current versions of the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV) and the International Classification of Diseases (ICD-10). In addition to a depressed mood,

two or more of the following symptoms must have been present most of the time (i.e., the person must not have been symptom-free for more than 2 months at a time):

1. Poor appetite or overeating
2. Insomnia or hypersomnia
3. Low energy or fatigue
4. Low self-esteem
5. Poor concentration or difficulty making decisions
6. Feelings of hopelessness

In children and adolescents, a dysthymia diagnosis requires at least 1 year of depressed or irritable mood, and two of the above symptoms. Exclusion criteria are manic, hypomanic or mixed episodes, presence of a major depressive episode during the first 2 years, and psychosis.

Description

Dysthymia is a mood disorder of low symptom intensity. Nevertheless, it is associated with markedly decreased quality of life, and functional impairments are significant. While generally able to cope with everyday life, affected persons struggle with workplace or school demands, social and intimate relationships. Lack of energy, feelings of worthlessness, general negativity and pessimism are common and foster the stigma of “character weakness” and interfere with help-seeking.

The comorbidity with other mental as well as physical disorders is high. Because of under-recognition and under-treatment, persons with dysthymia are high-users of the health-care system, which results in substantial direct (health-care consumption) and indirect (absenteeism, loss of productivity) costs.

Persons with dysthymia have an increased lifetime risk of developing a major depressive episode. When dysthymia worsens into a major depressive episode, this is termed “double depression.” Clinically, this form of depression is distinct from others as it is marked by extreme hopelessness and a poor prognosis.

Epidemiology and Risk Factors

Reports of the lifetime prevalence of dysthymia range from 0.1% to 6%, with higher rates in higher income countries and among females.

Persons with comorbid chronic medical disorders, anxiety disorders, a history of substance abuse, and personality disorders are at increased risk for dysthymia and other forms of chronic depression. A special risk group comprises persons who experience depressive symptoms early in life (before the age of 21).

Treatment

The most effective treatment for dysthymia consists of a combination of antidepressant medication and psychotherapy. Randomized controlled trials have shown that both the treatment duration and the intensity need to be higher for dysthymia than for major depressive episodes in order to achieve similar response rates. This is possibly due to the high rates of comorbidities as well as the chronic nature of dysthymia, which often results in yearlong struggles with everyday social and occupational life, which are not easily overturned (Dunner 2001). Many factors influence the choice of treatment: comorbid illnesses, previous experience with similar medication or psychotherapies, interactions with other medications, side-effect profile, short- and long-term effects, and, most importantly, patient tolerability and individual preferences for type of treatment. Several guidelines and treatment algorithms are available to guide the initial treatment choices as well as the dosage augmentation or switches in therapy when symptom improvement is insufficient.

Since residual or subthreshold depressive symptoms carry a strong risk of depressive symptom relapse, the treatment goal is complete remission from all symptoms.

Importantly, any treatment should be followed by a maintenance phase, which can last as long as a patient’s lifetime, in order to prevent the recurrence of depressive symptoms. Maintenance therapy can involve the long-term treatment with efficacious antidepressant medication, regular

professional depression symptom monitoring, and patient education about medication side effects, the importance of medication adherence, and the connection between psychosocial stressors and symptom recurrence.

Cross-References

- [Depression: Measurement](#)
- [Depression: Symptoms](#)
- [Depression: Treatment](#)
- [Mood](#)
- [Unipolar Depression](#)

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (1994). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: Author.
- Dunner, D. L. (2001). Acute and maintenance treatment of chronic depression. *The Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, 62(Suppl. 6), 10–16.
- Gureje, O. (2011). Dysthymia in a cross-cultural perspective. *Current Opinion in Psychiatry*, 24(1), 67–71.
- Pettit, J. W., & Joiner, T. E. (2005). *Chronic depression: Interpersonal sources, therapeutic solutions*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Trivedi, M. H., & Kleiber, B. A. (2001). Algorithm for the treatment of chronic depression. *The Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, 62(Suppl. 6), 22–29.

Dysthymic Disorder

- [Dysthymia](#)

E

Early Detection

► Screening

disorders, as well as the promotion of healthy eating patterns that help manage and prevent medical conditions such as diabetes, hypertension, and certain cancers.

Eating Behavior

Lara LaCaille
Department of Psychology, University of
Minnesota Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Eating habits](#); [Eating practices](#)

Definition

Eating behavior is a broad term that encompasses food choice and motives, feeding practices, dieting, and eating-related problems such as obesity, eating disorders, and feeding disorders. Within the context of behavioral medicine, eating behavior research focuses on the etiology, prevention, and treatment of obesity and eating

Description

Eating behavior is complex; humans make hundreds of food decisions each day that are influenced by a variety of personal, social, cultural, environmental, and economic factors. What people eat and how much they eat has a considerable influence on their health. An ecological model that considers the impact of individual factors, social environments, physical environments, and macro-level environments on food choices is useful in understanding the multitude of determinants of eating behavior. Intraindividual factors influencing eating behavior and food choice include physiological processes (e.g., hunger, satiety, innate preference for sweet foods, brain mechanisms) and psychological processes (e.g., learned food preferences, knowledge, motivations, attitudes, values, personality traits, cognitive processes, self-regulation). The social environment has also been shown to have a substantial effect on eating behavior. Eating behavior is shaped indirectly through observing others and internalization of food rules, as well as directly (i.e., one eats more in the presence of others than when alone). The physical environment, including availability of

Note: Some of the data reported here have been supplied by the United States Renal Data System (USRDS). The interpretation and reporting of these data are the responsibility of the author(s) and in no way should be seen as an official policy or interpretation of the U.S. government.

foods, the context in which foods are provided, and the external cues, such as proximity to food, salience of food, packaging, plate/serving size, and variety of food assortments, have all been shown to affect the type and amount of food eaten. Finally, macro-level environments, including economic systems, food and agricultural policies, food production and distribution, food marketing, and cultural norms and values, may have a more indirect yet powerful impact on food choices and eating behavior. The research on determinants of eating behavior has largely emphasized intraindividual variables, whereas there is considerably less known about the environmental influences and the interaction between these. In particular, there is a need to conduct multilevel research, among diverse subgroups, using better measures, in order to better understand the mechanisms involved in eating behavior (Larson and Story 2009).

Cross-References

► Obesity

References and Readings

- Baranowski, T., Cullen, K., & Baranowski, J. (1999). Psychosocial correlates of dietary intake: Advancing dietary intervention. *Annual Review of Nutrition*, 19, 17–40.
- Just, D. R., & Payne, C. R. (2009). Obesity: Can behavioral economics help? *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 38 (Suppl. 1), S47–S55.
- Larson, N., & Story, M. (2009). A review of environmental influences on food choices. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 38(Suppl. 1), S56–S73.
- Rothman, A. J., Sheeran, P., & Wood, W. (2009). Reflective and automatic processes in the initiation and maintenance of dietary change. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 38(Suppl. 1), S4–S17.
- Savage, J., Orlet, F. J., & Birch, L. (2007). Parental influence on eating behavior: Conception to adolescence. *The Journal of Law, Medicine & Ethics*, 35, 22–34.
- Story, M., Kaphingst, K. M., Robinson-O'Brien, R., & Glanz, K. (2008). Creating healthy food and eating environments: Policy and environmental approaches. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 29, 253–272.
- Wansink, B. (2010). From mindless eating to mindlessly eating better. *Physiology and Behavior*, 100, 454–463.

Eating Disorders: Anorexia and Bulimia Nervosa

Anna Maria Patino-Fernandez

Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Definition

Prevalence

Anorexia nervosa afflicts an estimated 0.9% of females, with 0.5% of men reporting having anorexia at some time in their lives (Hudson et al. 2007). Bulimia nervosa is estimated to occur in 1.5% of females and in 0.5% of men (Hudson et al. 2007). Approximately 3.5% of women and 2% of men reported having binge-eating disorder (BED) at some point in their lives (Hudson et al. 2007). BED affects about 8% of people who are obese. Eating disorders typically (86%) are reported by the age of 20, with the majority of those affected (43%) with anorexia reporting onset between the ages of 16 and 20. Thirty percent of those afflicted report duration from 1 to 5 years, and 31% report duration from 6 to 10 years. The full recovery rate of women with bulimia has been reported to be significantly higher than that of women with anorexia, with 74% of those with bulimia achieving full recovery, whereas only 33% of those with anorexia achieved full recovery (Herzog et al. 2009). Approximately one third of both women with anorexia and with bulimia relapse after full recovery (Herzog et al. 2009).

Adolescent and young women account for 90% of cases (women between the ages of 12 and 25) of eating disorders (American Psychiatric Association [APA] 2000). In anorexia, there is a female to male ratio of about 11 to 1. Bulimia has a female to male ratio of about 30 to 1. Anorexia nervosa may arise in children as young as 8 years of age, whereas bulimia rarely appears before the age of 12. Increasing numbers of older women and men have these disorders with up to 5–10% of all cases of eating disorders occurring in males (Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Adolescence [AAP] 2003). Teen boys have

shown an increasing trend in dieting, use of diet products, and their use of exercise for weight control, with Hispanic boys being the most likely to practice weight control, followed by black and then white boys. Binge-eating disorder is more prevalent than both anorexia nervosa and bulimia nervosa, but the treatment outcome for individuals with BED is also more favorable (Fairburn et al. 2000).

There is relatively little data on the role of ethnicity or racial background in eating disorders. Some data show that ethnic minority women who seek treatment for anorexia have lower admission weights than white women, suggesting that anorexia may go undetected or untreated longer in minority women. Typically a disorder of white affluent women, disordered eating appears to be increasing among nonwhite groups, including Hispanics and American Indians (Croll et al. 2002).

Etiology

There is no one single cause but rather a complex interaction between biological issues, such as genetics and metabolism; psychological issues, such as control; coping skills; personality factors; family issues; and social issues, such as a culture that promotes thinness and media that transmits this message.

Comorbidities

People with eating disorders suffer higher rates of other mental disorders including depression, anxiety, obsessive-compulsive disorder, and substance abuse (Hudson et al. 2007). There is an increased frequency of mood disorders in individuals with anorexia and bulimia nervosa, which may develop at the same time, or the mood disorder may precede the eating disorder (APA 2000). Obsessive-compulsive features are prominent in individuals with anorexia nervosa, whereas increased frequency of more general anxiety symptoms is more common in those with bulimia (APA 2000).

Cross-References

- Anorexia Nervosa
- Bulimia

References and Readings

- Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Adolescence. (2003). Identifying and treating eating disorders. *Pediatrics*, 111, 204–211.
- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: APA.
- Croll, J., Neumark-Sztainer, D., Story, M., & Ireland, M. (2002). Prevalence and risk and protective factors related to disordered eating behaviors among adolescents: Relationship to gender and ethnicity. *Journal of Adolescent Health*, 31, 166–175.
- Fairburn, C. G., Cooper, Z., Doll, H. A., Norman, P., & O'Connor, M. (2000). The natural course of bulimia nervosa and binge eating disorder in young women. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 57, 659–665.
- Herzog, D. B., Dorer, D. J., Keel, P. K., Selwyn, S. E., Ekeblad, E. R., Flores, A. T., et al. (2009). Recovery and relapse in bulimia and anorexia nervosa: A 7.5-year follow-up study. *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*, 38, 829–837.
- <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/eating-disorders/DS00294>
- <http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/publications/eating-disorders/nimheatingdisorders.pdf>
- Hudson, J. I., Hiripi, E., Pope, H. G., & Kessler, R. C. (2007). The prevalence and correlates of eating disorders in the national comorbidity survey replication. *Biological Psychiatry*, 61, 348–358.
- Rosen, D. S., & The Committee on Adolescence. (2010). Identification and management of eating disorders in children and adolescents. *Pediatrics*, 126, 1240–1253.

Eating Habits

- Eating Behavior

Eating Practices

- Eating Behavior

EBV

- Epstein-Barr Virus

ECG

- Electrocardiogram (EKG)

Ecologic Bias

► Ecological Fallacy

Ecological Fallacy

Jane Monaco

Department of Biostatistics, The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Ecologic bias](#)

Definition

Ecological fallacy is improperly inferring an association (or lack of association) at an individual-level based on a group-level relationship.

Ecologic studies use measures taken at the level of a group (such as a country, school, or hospital) rather than at the individual (such as patient) level. Ecologic studies are widespread in behavioral medicine literature due their low cost and convenience since ecologic data can often be obtained through census records or existing surveys and records. Two typical behavioral medicine ecologic examples are a study investigating the association between alcohol availability and violence (Gorman et al. 2005) in which data were collected at the census tract level and a study investigating the association between needle exchange programs and HIV seroprevalence among injecting drug users (Hurley et al. 1997) in which data were collected at the city level.

When risk factors and outcomes are measured at an aggregate level, the relationship between the group-level variables may be different than the relationship between variables measured at the individual level. An often-cited example used to illustrate the issue involved a nineteenth-century study which found higher suicide rates within

Prussian provinces that had higher proportions of Protestant residents (Durkheim 1951). The conclusion that Protestant individuals (rather than Catholic individuals) were more likely to commit suicide cannot be inferred based on the observed association among the provinces (Morgenstern 1982; Robinson 2009). One possible scenario is that Catholic residents within the largely Protestant provinces had the high suicide rates, resulting in a positive association between percent Protestant and suicide rate. Extrapolation of aggregate results to individuals is a mistake in logic which can lead to a potentially misleading conclusion.

Because of the many limitations of ecologic studies, including ecological fallacy, they are often used as exploratory or hypothesis-generating studies rather than as confirmatory.

Cross-References

- [Aggregate Data](#)
- [Hypothesis Testing](#)

References and Further Reading

- Durkheim, E. (1951). *Suicide: A study in sociology* (trans: Spaulding, S.). Glencoe: Free Press. (Original Work Published 1897).
- Gorman, D., Zhu, L., & Horel, S. (2005). Drug “hot-spots”, alcohol availability and violence. *Drug and Alcohol Review*, 24(6), 507–513.
- Hurley, S. F., Jolley, D. J., & Kaldor, J. M. (1997). Effectiveness of needle-exchange programmes for prevention of HIV infection. *The Lancet*, 349(9068), 1797–1800.
- Morgenstern, H. (1982). Uses of ecologic analysis in epidemiologic research. *American Journal of Public Health*, 72(12), 1336.
- Robinson, W. S. (2009). Ecological correlations and the behavior of individuals. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 38(2), 337.

Ecological Framework

- [Ecological Models: Application to Physical Activity](#)

Ecological Models: Application to Physical Activity

Ding Ding

Graduate School of Public Health/Department of Family Preventive Medicine, San Diego State University/University of California San Diego, San Diego, CA, USA

Synonyms

Behavioral ecological model; Ecological framework; Social ecological framework; Social ecological model

Definition

Ecological models are a series of models/frameworks that emphasize multiple levels of influences on behaviors. These influences usually include intrapersonal, interpersonal, organizational, community, physical environment, and policy (Sallis et al. 2008). Numerous ecological models have been created to explain specific behavior or to guide behavioral interventions. Although different ecological models may involve different terminology, they share two basic principles: (1) multiple levels of influence on behaviors and (2) interactions across levels of influence. In the context of behavioral change interventions, two additional principles apply as follows: (1) effectiveness of multilevel interventions and (2) emphasis on behavior-specific ecological model (Sallis et al. 2008).

Description

History of Ecological Models

The evolution of ecological models highlights a process of proliferation, diversification, and specification. At the early stage, the conceptual basis of ecological models was the general idea that the environment influenced behaviors. Skinner

conceptualized most behaviors as a product of interactions between individuals and the environment (i.e., “operant behaviors”) (Skinner 1953). Barker was a founder of environmental psychology (a.k.a. “ecological psychology”) and emphasized “behavior settings,” where behaviors take place (Barker 1968). Later on, Bronfenbrenner developed Ecological Systems Theory and defined the “microsystem,” “mesosystem,” and “macrosystem” as different levels of environmental influences (Bronfenbrenner 1979). The more recent models were created specifically for health behaviors. McLeroy et al.’s Ecological Model of Health Behavior emphasized five sources of influences on health behaviors, including intrapersonal, interpersonal, institutional, community, and policy factors (McLeroy et al. 1988). Stokols’ Social Ecological Model for Health Promotion offered theoretical guidance for behavioral interventions (Stokols et al. 1996, 2003). Hovell et al.’s Behavioral Ecological Model (Hovell et al. 2009; Hovell et al. 2002) incorporated Skinner’s Operant Learning Theory (Skinner 1969) and emphasized multiple contingencies of reinforcement for behavior. Some models were created for a specific health behavior, such as Glanz and colleagues’ Model of Community Food Environments (Glanz et al. 2005), Sallis and colleagues’ Ecological Model of Four Domains of Active Living (Sallis et al. 2006), and Fisher and colleagues’ Resources and Skills for Self-Management Model (Fisher et al. 2005).

Ecological Models and Physical Activity

The development of ecological models parallels the conceptual evolution of the field of physical activity. Decades ago, “exercise” (i.e., planned physical activity for fitness purpose) was the main focus of physical activity research and most behavioral interventions applied cognition-based theories and targeted individual-level correlates (Sallis et al. 2006). The limitations of these interventions included small number of target individuals who benefited from interventions, small-to-moderate effect sizes (Dishman and Buckworth 1996; Dishman et al. 1998), and lack of maintenance of behavioral change (Marcus et al. 2000).

More recently, the concept of “active living” emerged to expand previous understanding of physical activity by emphasizing different domains of physical activity, including occupational, leisure-time, household activities, and active transportation (Pratt et al. 2004). Disciplines outside public health, such as urban planning, transportation, and leisure science, became involved in physical activity research because the multiple levels of influence and domains of activity highlighted needs for expanded expertise. As a result of multidisciplinary collaboration, ecological models have been widely accepted and applied in the field of physical activity.

Sallis et al. (2006) summarized empirical findings and conceptual associations from multidisciplinary research and developed Ecological Model of Four Domains of Active Living (Sallis et al.). In this model, factors influencing physical activity are multilevel and domain specific (Sallis et al. 2011). Based on the model, physical activity is influenced by intrapersonal factors (e.g., demographic and psychosocial variables), interpersonal factors (e.g., social support and social modeling), perceived environment (e.g., safety, convenience, aesthetics), behavioral settings (e.g., home equipment, walking and biking facilities, parks), and policy environment that directly influences the built environment (e.g., zoning codes, park policies, transportation policies) (Sallis et al. 2006). Most environmental influence is domain specific, for example, bike lanes provide settings for bicycling (especially for transportation purpose), while parks provide settings for leisure-time physical activity. Similarly, transportation policies and parking regulations are more likely to influence transportation physical activity, while policies regarding parks and recreation facilities are more likely to influence leisure-time physical activity (Sallis and Glanz 2009; Sallis et al. 2011).

Strengths and Limitations of Ecological Models in Physical Activity Research

A major strength of ecological models is the comprehensiveness. Unlike most cognition-based models that include mostly psychosocial variables, ecological models place an individual's behavior in a larger context and take into account

multiple levels of influence external and internal to the individual. This approach offers a wide range of opportunities for interventions. Furthermore, ecological models emphasize the effects of the built environment and policies on physical activity and prioritize environment and policy changes to promote active life-styles. Once these changes have been implemented, they are likely to affect a large population and promote sustainable behavioral change.

Current ecological models have weaknesses. First, most models lack specificity and do not include behavior-specific or setting-specific factors; therefore, they cannot provide clear research hypotheses or intervention strategies (Sallis et al. 2008). Second, ecological models do not provide information about mechanisms of how specific factors affect behaviors and how different influences interact across levels. Third, although multi-level interventions have been recommended as an effective approach for producing behavioral change, such interventions are extremely difficult to implement and evaluate. Because it is not feasible to randomly assign individuals to neighborhoods, randomized controlled trials cannot normally be conducted to determine the effectiveness of a specific environment or policy intervention (Sallis and Glanz 2009).

Cross-References

- [Built Environment](#)
- [Physical Activity and Health](#)

References and Readings

- Barker, R. G. (1968). *Ecological psychology*. Stanford: Stanford University Press.
- Bronfenbrenner, U. (1979). *The ecology of human development*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.
- Dishman, R. K., & Buckworth, J. (1996). Increasing physical activity: A quantitative synthesis. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, 28(6), 706–719.
- Dishman, R. K., Oldenburg, B., O'Neal, H., & Shephard, R. J. (1998). Worksite physical activity interventions. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 15(4), 344–361.
- Fisher, E. B., Brownson, C. A., O'Toole, M. L., Shetty, G., Anwuri, V. V., & Glasgow, R. E. (2005).

- Ecological approaches to self-management: The case of diabetes. *American Journal of Public Health*, 95(9), 1523–1535.
- Glanz, K., Sallis, J. F., Saelens, B. E., & Frank, L. D. (2005). Healthy nutrition environments: Concepts and measures. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 19(5), 330–333.
- Hovell, M. F., Wahlgren, D. R., & Gehrman, C. (2002). The behavioral ecological model: Integrating public health and behavioral science. In R. J. DiClemente, R. Crosby, & M. Kegler (Eds.), *New and emerging theories in health promotion practice & research*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Hovell, M. F., Wahlgren, D. R., & Adams, M. (2009). The logical and empirical basis for the behavioral ecological model. In R. J. DiClemente, R. Crosby, & M. Kegler (Eds.), *Emerging theories and models in health promotion research and practice: Strategies for enhancing public health* (2nd ed.). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Marcus, B. H., Dubbert, P. M., Forsyth, L. H., et al. (2000). Physical activity behavior change: Issues in adoption and maintenance. *Health Psychology*, 19(Suppl. 1), 32–41.
- McLeroy, K. R., Bibeau, D., Steckler, A., & Glanz, K. (1988). An ecological perspective on health promotion programs. *Health Education Quarterly*, 15(4), 351–377.
- Pratt, M., Macera, C. A., Sallis, J. F., O'Donnell, M., & Frank, L. D. (2004). Economic interventions to promote physical activity: Application of the SLOTH model. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 27 (Suppl. 3), 136–145.
- Sallis, J. F., & Glanz, K. (2009). Physical activity and food environments: Solutions to the obesity epidemic. *The Milbank Quarterly*, 87(1), 123–154.
- Sallis, J. F., Cervero, R. B., Ascher, W., Henderson, K. A., Kraft, M. K., & Kerr, J. (2006). An ecological approach to creating active living communities. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 27, 297–322.
- Sallis, J. F., Owen, N., & Fisher, E. B. (2008). Ecological models of health behavior. In K. Glanz, B. K. Rimer, & K. Viswanath (Eds.), *Health behavior and health education: Theory, research, and practice* (4th ed.). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Sallis, J. F., Adams, M. A., & Ding, D. (2011). Physical activity and the built environment. In J. Cawley (Ed.), *The Oxford handbook of the social science of obesity*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Skinner, B. F. (1953). *Science and human behavior*. New York: Macmillan.
- Skinner, B. F. (1969). *Contingencies of reinforcement: A theoretical analysis*. New York: Appleton-Century-Croft.
- Stokols, D., Allen, J., & Bellingham, R. L. (1996). The social ecology of health promotion: Implications for research and practice. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 10(4), 247–251.
- Stokols, D., Grzywacz, J. G., McMahan, S., & Phillips, K. (2003). Increasing the health promotive capacity of human environments. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 18(1), 4–13.

Ecological Momentary Assessment

C. Renn Upchurch Sweeney

Salt Lake City Healthcare System, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Definition

Ecological momentary assessment (EMA) refers to a collection of methods often used in behavioral medicine research by which a research participant repeatedly reports on symptoms, affect, behavior, and cognitions close in time to experience and in the participants' natural environment (Stone and Shiffman 1994). Technologies such as written diaries, electronic diaries, telephones, and physiological sensors are often utilized in EMA studies. EMA studies can be utilized to study a variety of topics such as depression, social support, relationships, diet, work activity and satisfaction, psychotherapy, drug use, allergies, psychological stress, medications, self-esteem, and asthma.

Description

EMA is not a single research method. Instead it encompasses a range of methods that differ in their particular design, assessment schedule, content, and technology. However, all EMA studies have four aspects in common. They all assess research subjects in their natural environments, in their current or recent states, at selected times, and repeatedly over time (Shiffman et al. 2008). First, in all EMA approaches, data are collected in real-world environments as subjects go about their normal lives. EMA recognizes that many behaviors and experiences are affected by the context in which they are studied. For an assessed experience or behavior to be representative, it has to be sampled in the context in which it naturally occurs. Therefore, with EMA, psychological processes are not studied in a laboratory environment, but in the natural setting of the subject. EMA allows

for improved ecological validity (generalization to the subjects' real lives and real-world experience) because data are collected in the subject's natural setting.

Second, all EMA assessments focus on a subject's current state. For example, EMA self-report items ask about current feelings (or very recent ones), rather than asking for recall or summary over long periods. This aims to reduce biases associated with retrospection. That is, errors or inaccuracies in recalling information are not just random, but are often systematically biased and can change the data in systematic ways. For example, people are more likely to retrieve positively charged information when they are in a good mood, thus introducing biased reporting. Because EMA assesses behaviors, attitudes, emotions, and other characteristics at the moment they occur, it reduces cognitive biases that are often a part of retrospective recall reports.

Third, the moments that are assessed with EMA are strategically selected for assessment. This avoids pitfalls associated with allowing participants to choose when they will provide data. Strategic selection of assessment points can be based on particular features of interest (i.e., occasions when subjects smoked), by random sampling, or by other sampling schemes.

Finally, subjects complete multiple assessments over time. These multiple assessments provide the researcher with a rich picture of how subjects' experiences and behaviors vary over time and across various situational contexts in the participants' normal environment. EMA studies range in the frequency of assessments. Some studies may implement a very frequent schedule of assessment (i.e., assessing subjects every 30 min over a period of days). In other studies, subjects are assessed less frequently (e.g., daily) over periods as long as a year.

Although there are many advantages of EMA such as increasing ecological validity, avoiding retrospective recall, avoiding global summarizations, and being able to study dynamic processes that unfold over time, there are also drawbacks

to EMA studies. For example, EMA methods are onerous for participants and require a tremendous level of compliance (Shiffman and Stone 1998). Depending on the design of the study, subjects can be required to stop what they are doing and complete an assessment multiple times a day. EMA studies also place demands on the investigator (Shiffman and Stone 1998). For example, automated methods for prompting or data capture can be expensive. Additionally, the volume of data collected can make data management challenging.

References and Further Readings

- Engle, S. G., Wonderlich, S. A., & Crosby, R. D. (2005). Ecological momentary assessment. In J. Mitchell & C. B. Peterson (Eds.), *Assessment of eating disorders* (pp. 203–220). New York: Guilford.
- Hufford, M. R., Shiffman, S., Paty, J., & Stone, A. (2001). Ecological momentary assessment: Real-world, real-time measurement of patient experience. In J. Fahrenberg & M. Myrteck (Eds.), *Progress in ambulatory assessment: Computer-assisted psychological and psychophysiological methods in monitoring field studies* (pp. 69–92). Ashland: Hogrefe Huber.
- Shiffman, S., & Stone, A. A. (1998). Ecological momentary assessment: A new tool for behavioral medicine research. In D. Krantz & A. Baum (Eds.), *Technology and methods in behavioral medicine* (pp. 117–131). Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Shiffman, S., Stone, A. A., & Hufford, M. R. (2008). Ecological momentary assessment. *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology*, 4, 1–32.
- Stone, A. A., & Shiffman, S. (1994). Ecological momentary assessment in behavioral medicine. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 16, 199–202.
- Stone, A. A., Shiffman, S. S., & DeVries, M. W. (1999). Ecological momentary assessment. In D. Kahneman, E. Diener, & N. Schwarz (Eds.), *Wellbeing: The foundations of hedonistic psychology* (pp. 6–39). New York: Russell Sage.

Ecology

- [Ecosystems, Stable and Sustainable](#)

Ecosystems, Stable and Sustainable

Colin D. Butler^{1,2} and Colin L. Soskolne³

¹National Centre for Epidemiology and Population Health, Australian National University, Canberra, ACT, Australia

²College of Arts, Humanities and Social Sciences, Flinders University, Adelaide, Australia

³School of Public Health, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Synonyms

Ecology; Sustainability; Units of nature

Definition

- Ecosystems: Basic units of nature within which living organisms continuously interact with nonlife forms, whose boundaries are arbitrary, and which exist in “dynamic equilibrium.”
- Ecosystem services: A way of thinking about the benefits provided to humans and other species by ecosystems; examples range from obvious (oxygen, food, water) to subtle (regulation of the carbon cycle) and psychological (aesthetic beauty). Sometimes called “nature’s services”; however, strictly such services would include those from extra-terrestrial sources (e.g., the sun) and planetary processes such as the Van Allen belt.
- Biodiversity: Abundance of biological variety.
- EcoHealth: A term that indicates linkages between human and ecological well-being.
- Ecology: Study of the ecosystems and their relationships, including with non-living forms. The word literally means the study of “oikos,” the Greek word for “house.”
- Microbiome: The microorganisms that live inside and on animal species.
- Sustainability: A debate exists concerning the definition of “sustainability” (or its earlier

formulation “permanence”). One pole is anthropocentric (humans first); the other is biocentric (life in its basic form first). A formulation that many would consider anthropocentric is “capacity to meet long-term human needs enduring over many generations.” In this definition, human coexistence with a sufficient quantity and quality of nature is only implicit. The definition risks interpretation as meaning that nature can be replaced with human-made substitutes. A biocentric definition is “a process of living within the limits of available physical, natural, and social resources in ways that allow the living systems in which humans are embedded to thrive, in perpetuity.” This is explicit about the need for ecosystems to thrive but is vulnerable to the criticism that human well-being may be sacrificed/reduced/cut in order to preserve nature, whether for itself or for the benefit of future generations.

Description

The original definition of an “ecosystem” dates only to 1935 (Tansley 1935). It linked nature with physics, describing “basic units of nature” within which living organisms continually interact with nonlife (the abiotic), including the climate system. The “system” part of the term is linked with ideas of holism, synthesis, emergence, self-organization, cybernetics (from the Greek for steersman, or governor), and, more recently, complexity theory (Fauth 1997). More recently, Lovelock has extended the ideas of Tansley and Vernadsky by conceptualizing the Earth system as a self-regulating organism floating in space (Lenton and Latour 2018). This insight recognizes that a continual interaction between life and nonlife maintains planetary balance (homeostasis).

Tansley coined the term “ecosystem” to contrast alternatives such as “complex organism” and “biotic community.” He suggested that ecosystems belong to a category of physical systems in a catalogue from “the universe to an atom.” He

Ecosystems, Stable and Sustainable, Table 1 The Millennium Ecosystem Assessment classified ecosystem “services” into four kinds. The selected examples represent only a tiny fragment of a very rich and complex set. Many ecosystems provide multiple ecosystem services; for

example, a forest may provide food, fiber, water regulation, water purification, carbon sequestration, and cultural services. Most employment is provided by provisioning services, including through the transformation of wilderness to farms and plantations

Ecosystem service	Examples of benefit	Ecosystem examples
Provisioning	Food (calories, nutrients), fresh water, fiber, medicinals	Rice fields, aquaculture ponds, bamboo groves, cattle feedlots, wild plants, and wild animals
Regulating	Soil erosion reduction, coastal storm protection, atmospheric carbon stabilization, some cases of infectious disease limitation (e.g., malaria, Lyme disease)	Forests (including on slopes), coastal wetlands, mangroves, extinction of the passenger pigeon contributed to a cascade of ecological changes that enhanced habitat for ticks that transmit Lyme disease
Culturally enriching	Inspiration, aesthetic beauty, spiritual refreshment, religious observation, ancestral links, ceremonial materials, tourism income	Sacred groves, charismatic landscapes, and species, e.g., coral reefs, tiger reserves, old-growth forests, bird of paradise feathers
Supporting	Soil fertility, nutrient cycling, pollination, insect control; many indirect benefits for other services	Many species enhance soil fertility, pollinate, and disperse seeds; bats and birds help control insects; bacteria and fungi recycle nutrients

recognized that the boundaries between these components, including differently configured ecosystems, are arbitrary but argued that such reductionism (i.e., thinking non-systemically) was essential for their analysis. Tansley also recognized that ecosystems are in “dynamic equilibrium,” an idea he traced to the Scottish philosopher Hume and the Roman philosopher Lucretius. Implicitly, this recognizes that ecosystems are never stable, but are constantly evolving and changing, including sometimes between alternative new states. A related concept is biodiversity, a contraction of “biological diversity,” a term at least 50 years old.

Ecosystem Services and Human Well-Being

Ecosystems are of more than philosophical and scientific interest. Ecosystems and their services have probably been recognized as essential (though not necessarily conceptualized in these terms) by indigenous populations since the time that concepts of any kind evolved (Berkes et al. 1998). However, as humans became more urbanized and reliant on technology, the complete dependence of humans on nature’s services has become more disguised and less direct. Indeed, since the industrial revolution about 200 years ago, civilization’s selected path has led to whole cultures becoming disconnected from the ecosystems that fundamentally sustain them, leaning

increasingly on technology as a mediator for the services formerly derived from nature. For example, while some clothes are still entirely made from cotton, an ecosystem product, their place of manufacture distances and, in some cases, obscures their natural origin. Even the natural origin of food is not always recognized by people.

Vital ecosystem services are also provided by the microbiome. This is a rapidly but as yet poorly understood field (Turnbaugh et al. 2007). We do not further discuss this topic here, other than noting that the human microbiome has been linked to the propensity to and evolution of many non-communicable diseases (including most cancers), the immune system, and obesity. The microbiome ecosystem is influenced not only by diet but also by contact with external ecosystems.

A widely used classification of ecosystem services was developed in the 2001–2005 Millennium Ecosystem Assessment, which conceptualized four forms of ecosystem goods and services: provisioning, regulating, culturally enriching, and supporting (see Table 1) (Millennium Ecosystem Assessment 2003). Some ecologists have criticized the idea of “services” as excessively anthropocentric. From an extreme biocentric (deep ecological) position, the intrinsic value of an algal bloom, jellyfish swarm, or school of cod may be considered proportional to its biomass; however, such arguments seem like

Ecosystems, Stable and Sustainable, Table 2 Ecosystems can be grouped between two extremes, minimally and extensively transformed; no ecosystem is entirely “natural.” Both kinds perform valuable ecosystem services. In

Ecosystem service	Extensively transformed ecosystem	Wild or minimally transformed ecosystem
Provisioning	Farms, plantations, greenhouse vegetables, farmed fish	Game, bushmeat, ocean fish, timber, a reservoir of species with potential human benefit
Regulating	Trees planted to reduce soil erosion, carbon sink from a long-lived tree plantation, artificial wetlands	As opposite but benefits vastly larger in scale, e.g., carbon sink of Amazon forest, scavenging services by wild birds and mammals
Culturally enriching	Bonsai tree, flower garden, zoological garden, artificial wetland; some people find cultivated areas very attractive	Knowledge of the existence of wild areas and species, wilderness hiking, contact with wild birds and mammals adapted to urban ecosystems
Supporting	Earthworms in a garden, planted legumes that fix nitrogen, complementary plantings that reduce pesticide use	Species that pollinate and disseminate seeds, animals that improve soil water absorption, algal varieties that enhance water purification, soil microbes

sophistry to those concerned with sustainable human well-being. The framers of the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment classification argued that an anthropocentric perspective was a necessary strategy with which to better engage policy makers, most of whom were thought to prioritize monetary over other kinds of value.

Ecosystems influence the entire human enterprise and incorporate, for example, wilderness, cornfields, oceans, and palm oil plantations. The vast human population (now approaching eight billion) could not be fed solely by hunting and gathering of wild species. For at least ten millennia, it has been increasingly dependent on domesticated plants and animals, grown ever more intensively through agriculture. Even ecosystems that appear wild, with no apparent significant human modification, such as remote mountains, deserts, rain forests, and tundra, have been altered through invasive species and the environmental atmospheric transportation of pollutants (e.g., organochlorines, plastics) and via anthropogenic climate change. Indeed, humans have been called the single greatest patch disturbers of all species on the planet (Soskolne et al. 2008).

Extensively transformed ecosystems, such as farms, are today essential for human well-being in order to provide goods in huge quantities, including food, fiber, biofuel, timber, and medicinal agents. But wild and minimally transformed

general, wild ecosystems are shrinking, with their cultural and regulating services being exchanged for greater provisioning services. To flourish, humanity requires all four kinds of service in abundance

ecosystems are also vital. While both categories of ecosystems provide all four categories of ecosystem service (see Table 2), it would be hubristic if humanity were to imagine that it could successfully transform the whole planet into a farm or garden. Wild places have intrinsic (“existence”) value, but perhaps of even more importance, they provide enormous ecosystem regulating services which benefit humanity on a scale that modified ecosystems cannot approach. They also hold a vast reservoir of poorly catalogued species, some of which will be discovered to hold important pharmaceutical and other uses (Chivian and Bernstein 2008). In general, wild ecosystems are shrinking, with their cultural and regulating services being exchanged for greater provisioning services.

Currently dominant economic models ignore (externalize) the costs of harming or maintaining ecosystem services. This practice intensifies several forms of inequity, including polarization between rich and poor and between current and future generations. Those who purchase goods and services tend to underpay, while others, especially the poor, bear the burden of risk and remediation, such as hazardous exposures and waste disposal costs. Indeed, accumulating impacts increasingly approach thresholds which threaten the collapse of crucial ecosystems, harming both present and future generations. Internalization of such costs would motivate consumer behavior

more conducive to sustainability (Daly 1996). A powerful reason for the transformation of wild ecosystems to ones which provides intense provisioning services is that greater monetary profits can be made. In some cases this leads to greater employment, but automation and artificial intelligence are replacing many human workers. Such transformation is always at a cost: not only to the species which are altered or lost but also, in many cases, to indigenous populations who lack sufficient political and economic power to resist the appropriation of their resources and which often results in benefits to industrialized economies with ever-widening disparities between rich and poor within and across nations.

Human Health

All ecosystem services are essential, directly or indirectly, for health, a concept captured by the term “EcoHealth” (Wilcox et al. 2011). Some ecosystem properties, including biodiversity, influence the distribution of important human infectious diseases, including malaria, onchocerciasis, Lyme disease, Chagas disease, and sleeping sickness (Keesing et al. 2010).

Although there are claims that ecosystems that are less transformed by human action provide an infectious disease-regulating “service,” such that intact ecosystems lower infectious diseases, the picture is more complex (Butler 2008). For example, there are many cases in which ecosystem transformation has improved health, such as the clearing of swamps, which reduces mosquito habitat and may thus lower malaria transmission. Somewhat relatedly, “paddies paradox” describes how health can improve even where increased irrigation leads to more potential mosquito habitat in malarial areas. Increased malaria is not inevitable; for example, some of the increased wealth generated by irrigated agriculture can be used to promote technologies and behaviors which are health protective, such as treated bed nets, insecticides, and health services. Areas of high biodiversity may also harbor infectious agents, such as Ebola and HIV, in reservoir species including bats and some nonhuman primates.

Disease introduction can have profound effects on ecosystems and indirect human health effects.

In the late nineteenth century, the epizoonosis (a disease that infects only nonhuman animals) rinderpest entered eastern Africa via imported cattle, causing catastrophic harm to the ecology and human well-being. Immunologically naive oxen (domesticated and wild) died in huge numbers. The loss of oxen reduced plowing and thus agricultural productivity. Infection in wild animal species also reduced meat available for hunting. Exacerbated by periodic droughts, as many as one third of the Ethiopian population and two thirds of the Maasai people of East Africa died in this period, a time known to the Maasai as the *Emutai* (“to wipe out”) (Gillson 2006).

Psychological Health and Ecosystem Cultural Services

Ecosystems are also an important source of “cultural services,” essential for good psychological health and thus for individual and community well-being. Ecosystems that help provide this vary from sacred groves (Ramakrishnan et al. 1998) that maintain species with spiritual or symbolic value to viable populations of charismatic species within national parks and tracts of roadless wilderness. Many cultural symbols, decorations, and ceremonies rely on materials from nature, including sacred plants, fungi, and animals, or seasonal displays, such as animal migration.

There is increasing evidence that exposure to gardens and wild areas is beneficial for behavior and good mental health (Louv 2008). This effect may be particularly strong among those with high biophilia (sensitivity to nature) (Wilson 1984).

Supporting Ecosystem Services

The fourth category of ecosystem service described by the Millennium Ecosystem Assessment is called “supporting.” This category may be the least obvious, but brief reflection shows that they are fundamental because they underpin all the other forms of ecosystem services. Examples include pollination, seed dispersal, and the recycling of nutrients and the formation and aeration of soil by earthworms, ants, termites, and countless species of microbes. In Western

Australia, the brush-tailed bettong *Bettongia penicillata* (an endangered species) has been shown to improve the absorptive capacity of moisture in soil through its habit of digging for fungi. Many birds, bats, and other mammals assist in seed dispersal, forest maintenance, and insect control. White nose syndrome, a devastating fungal disease affecting several bat species in the USA, will lead to increased insect populations, forcing increased reliance on pesticides and fossil fuels to maintain agricultural productivity. This illustrates the interdependency of life, including that of our own species.

Prospects

Globally, the progression toward an increase in ecosystems which provide provisioning ecosystem services, such as the exchange of biodiverse forest ecosystems for monocultural plantations that provide food or biofuels, seems unstoppable (Ceballos et al. 2015). Fundamentally, this transformation has been driven by the enormous expansion of human populations since the industrial revolution supported by fossil fuels, agriculture, and increasing human wants, expectations, and capacity. But, there are now numerous warnings that these processes are unsustainable and that this path places not only health and well-being but civilization itself at increasing risk of grave harm (Soskolne et al. 2008). This risk occurs through multiple pathways, particularly the accumulation of greenhouse gases which worsen climate impacts and which threaten diverse and adverse feedbacks that could lead to the crossing of system thresholds, both ecological and social, with extreme danger (Lovelock 2009; Butler 2016).

Solutions

There is widespread denial about the extent, trend, and consequences of the relentless transformation of ecosystems. Many highly transformed ecosystems also risk degradation due to overuse, overgrazing, and contamination by chemicals, invasive species, and even landmines. Human well-being will inexorably decline if these trends are permitted to continue. Indeed, in some countries, constitutional law is changing in ways that

will provide better ecosystem protection (Soskolne et al. 2008).

The tragedy of the commons can be overcome (Buck 1985). But, this will not happen without a vast amount of effort, exceeding that of the Space Race or even World War II. As Aldo Leopold wrote (using land as a synonym for ecosystems):

We abuse land because we regard it as a commodity belonging to us. When we see land as a community to which we belong, we may begin to use it with love and respect. There is no other way for land to survive the impact of mechanized man, nor for us to reap from it the aesthetic harvest it is capable, under science, of contributing to culture (Leopold 1949).

The question of why, collectively, humanity seems incapable of changing its economic and consumer models to ones that are more sustainable is beyond the scope of this entry. Suffice it to say that denial is made possible because humans are remarkably adaptive; many seem to live hoping for a technological solution to the crises that await under current trends. Ultimately, consciousness of humanity's inseparable dependence on nature's services is required if a functioning civilization is to be maintained.

Cross-References

- General Population
- Health Economics
- Infectious Diseases
- Mental Illness
- Mental Stress

References and Further Reading

- Berkes, F., Kislalioglu, M., Folke, C., & Gadgil, M. (1998). Exploring the basic ecological unit: Ecosystem-like concepts in traditional societies. *Ecosystems*, 1, 409–415.
- Buck, S. J. (1985). No tragedy on the commons. *Environmental Ethics*, 7, 49–61.
- Butler, C. D. (2008). Human health and forests: An overview. In C. J. P. Colfer (Ed.), *Human health and forests: A global overview of issues, practice and policy* (pp. 13–33). London, UK: Earthscan.

- Butler, C. D. (2016). Sounding the alarm: Health in the Anthropocene. *International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health*, 13, 665.
- Ceballos, G., Ehrlich, P., Barnosky, A., García, A., Pringle, R., & Palmer, T. (2015). Accelerated modern human-induced species losses: Entering the sixth mass extinction. *Science Advances*, 1(5), e1400253.
- Chivian, E., & Bernstein, A. (Eds.). (2008). *Sustaining life. How human health depends on biodiversity*. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.
- Daly, H. (1996). *Beyond growth*. Boston, USA: Beacon.
- Danielsen, F., Beukema, H., Burgess, N. D., Parish, F., Brühl, C. A., Donald, P. F., et al. (2008). Biofuel plantations on forested lands: Double jeopardy for biodiversity and climate. *Conservation Biology*, 23(2), 348–358.
- Fauth, J. E. (1997). Working toward operational definitions in ecology: Putting the system back into ecosystem. *Bulletin of the Ecological Society of America*, 78(4), 295–297.
- Gillson, L. (2006). A “large infrequent disturbance” in an East African savanna. *African Journal of Ecology*, 44, 458–467.
- Keesing, F., Belden, L. K., Daszak, P., Dobson, A., Harvell, C. D., Holt, R. D., et al. (2010). Impacts of biodiversity on the emergence and transmission of infectious diseases. *Nature*, 468, 647–652.
- Lenton, T. M., & Latour, B. (2018). Gaia 2.0. *Science*, 361, 1066–1068.
- Leopold, A. (1949). *A sand country almanac. With essays on conservation from Round River*. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.
- Louv, R. (2008). *Last child in the woods*. New York, USA: Algonquin Books of Chapel Hill.
- Lovelock, J. (2009). *The vanishing face of Gaia: A final warning*. London, UK: Allen Lane.
- Millennium Ecosystem Assessment. (2003). *Ecosystems and human well-being. A framework for assessment*. Washington, DC, USA: Island Press.
- Ramakrishnan, P., Saxena, K., & Chandrashekara, U. (1998). *Conserving the sacred: For biodiversity management*. New Delhi, India/Oxford, UK: IBH/UNESCO.
- Soskolne, C. L., Westra, L., Kotzé, L., Mackey, B., Rees, W., & Westra, R. R. (Eds.). (2008). *Sustaining life on Earth. Environmental and human health through global governance*. Lanham, USA: Lexington Books, a Division of Rowman & Littlefield Publishers.
- Tansley, A. (1935). The use and abuse of vegetational concepts and terms. *Ecology*, 16, 284–307.
- Turnbaugh, P. J., Ley, R. E., Hamady, M., Fraser-Liggett, C. M., Knight, R., & Gordon, J. I. (2007). The human microbiome project. *Nature*, 449, 804–810.
- Wilcox, B. A., Aguirre, A. A., & Horwitz, P. (2011). EcoHealth: Connecting ecology, health and sustainability. In A. A. Aguirre, R. Ostfeld, et al. (Eds.), *Conservation medicine* (2nd ed.). Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.
- Wilson, E. O. (1984). *Biophilia*. Cambridge, USA: Harvard University Press.

E-Counselling

► Online Therapy and E-Counselling

Edema

► Lymphedema

Education, Lack of: As a Risk Factor

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Synonyms

[Socioeconomic status \(SES\)](#)

Definition

Lack of education as a risk factor of health conditions is part of the category of factors termed socioeconomic status (SES). The level of education can be measured in several manners including years of education (e.g., 5, 10, 18 years), stage of achieved education (e.g., primary school, secondary school, professional vocation, academic degree, graduate studies), as well as types of education (e.g., vocational, humanities, engineering, biomedical, social sciences). Low education has been shown to be a risk factor of multiple disease outcomes and can be construed as a source of health inequalities. For example, Clegg et al. (2009) found that the level of education below high school was a risk factor of cancer in men and women. In a Scottish study, lower education was associated with shorter height, high blood pressure, smoking, poorer lung functioning, and higher risk of death (Davey Smith et al. 1998). In the same study, occupational

status however emerged as a more important risk factor than education. Nevertheless, these studies show that lack of education can be a risk factor of known disease risk factors (e.g., smoking, high blood pressure) and of actual illnesses (e.g., cancer).

Among the mechanisms suggested to link low education with poor health outcomes are poor health behaviors (e.g., smoking, poor diet), stress, and physiological factors (e.g., inflammation, cardiovascular reactivity, oxidative stress). For example, Finkelstein et al. (2007) found an inverse correlation between levels of education (below 12 years, 12–15 years, college, professional) and stress levels. Janicki-Deverts et al. (2009) found that initially high education levels predicted lower levels of oxidative stress and higher levels of antioxidants. Oxidative stress is a major etiological factor in multiple chronic diseases including cancer, heart disease, and dementia (Wu et al. 2004). Taken together, low education level is a risk factor of poor health, possibly via various psychophysiological pathways, access to material and health resources, and inadequate health behaviors.

Cross-References

► [Health Economics](#)

References and Further Readings

- Clegg, L. X., Reichman, M. E., Miller, B. A., Hankey, B. F., Singh, G. K., Lin, Y. D., Goodman, M. T., Lynch, C. F., Schwartz, S. M., Chen, V. W., Bernstein, L., Gomez, S. L., Graff, J. J., Lin, C. C., Johnson, N. J., & Edwards, B. K. (2009). Impact of socioeconomic status on cancer incidence and stage at diagnosis: Selected findings from the surveillance, epidemiology, and end results: National Longitudinal Mortality Study. *Cancer Causes & Control*, 20, 417–435.
- Davey Smith, G., Hart, C., Hole, D., MacKinnon, P., Gillis, C., Watt, G., Blane, D., & Hawthorne, V. (1998). Education and occupational social class: Which is the more important indicator of mortality risk? *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 52, 153–160.
- Finkelstein, D. M., Kubzansky, L. D., Capitman, J., & Goodman, E. (2007). Socioeconomic differences in adolescent stress: The role of psychological resources. *The Journal of Adolescent Health*, 40, 127–134.
- Janicki-Deverts, D., Cohen, S., Matthews, K. A., Gross, M. D., & Jacobs, D. R., Jr. (2009). Socioeconomic status, antioxidant micronutrients, and correlates of oxidative damage: The Coronary Artery Risk Development in Young Adults (CARDIA) study. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 71, 541–548.
- Wu, L. L., Chiou, C. C., Chang, P. Y., & Wu, J. T. (2004). Urinary 8-OHdG: A marker of oxidative stress to DNA and a risk factor for cancer, atherosclerosis and diabetes. *Clinical Chimistry Acta*, 339, 1–9.

Education, Patient

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Synonyms

[Health education](#)

Definition

Patient education is a basic step in medical care, reflecting empowering patients with knowledge on the risk of or nature of an illness, how to prevent it, how to perform self-care, and when to seek help. Patient education can be provided by physicians, nurses, physiotherapists, health psychologists, etc. and is a basic part of adequate clinician-patient communication. This can be seen as part of health education, where people learn to prevent, identify the signs, seek treatment for an illness, and perform self-care behaviors when ill. This reflects the move in medicine from a hierarchical doctor-patient style toward a more self-managed and active patient role. Patient education can include information on the consequences of smoking and excessive alcohol consumption, use of condoms and the consequences of not using condoms, how to perform self-monitoring and management of insulin levels in diabetic patients, and adherence to medical treatment in cardiac patients after surgery. Lagerger

et al. (2010) reviewed 35 meta-analyses of 598 studies on therapeutic patient education in asthma, cancer, and diabetes, among various chronic diseases. They found that in 64% of studies, improvements were found. However, unlike “therapeutic education,” patient education alone relies mainly on increasing knowledge but rarely addresses patients’ psychological factors such as cognitive barriers and social pressures against adopting healthy behaviors, which can strongly impede healthy behaviors. Studies have found multiple barriers in relation to healthy eating, physical activity, and cardiac patients’ medical adherence (e.g., Zunft et al. 1999). Furthermore, in the context of condom use, for example, studies have shown that education led to little or no increases in condom use (Gallant and Maticka-Tyndale 2004). In contrast, use of the “psychological inoculation” method, which precisely trains people to break their own barriers and resist social pressures, may have better effects than health education alone (Duryea et al. 1990). Gidron et al. (2015) recently showed that psychological inoculation reduced indirect road hostility and simulated traffic accidents, while various education controls did not. Thus, while patient education is an essential element of prevention and treatment, its effectiveness can be increased when accompanied by cognitive-behavior skills for reducing patient barriers and increasing self-efficacy or by including simple behavioral tips for moving patients along different stages of behavior change.

Cross-References

► [Self-care](#)

References and Further Readings

- Duryea, E. J., Ransom, M. V., & English, G. (1990). Psychological immunization: Theory, research, and current health behavior applications. *Health Education Quarterly*, 17, 169–178.
- Gallant, M., & Maticka-Tyndale, E. (2004). School-based HIV prevention programmes for African youth. *Social Science & Medicine*, 58, 1337–1351.
- Gidron, Y., Slor, Z., Toderas, S., Herz, G., & Friedman, S. (2015). Effects of psychological inoculation on

indirect road hostility and simulated driving. *Transportation Research*, 30, Part F, 153–162.

- Lagger, G., Pataky, Z., & Golay, A. (2010). Efficacy of therapeutic patient education in chronic diseases and obesity. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 79, 283–286.
- Zunft, H. J., Friebe, D., Seppelt, B., Widhalm, K., Remaut de Winter, A. M., Vaz de Almeida, M. D., et al. (1999). Perceived benefits and barriers to physical activity in a nationally representative sample in the European Union. *Public Health Nutrition*, 2, 153–160.

EEG

► [Brain Wave](#)

Effect Modification

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Effect modification occurs when an effect modifier is associated with both an apparent case and an apparent effect and modifies the association of interest (Katz 2001).

Consider the example of the association between vigorous exercise and risk for heart disease. This association is real, but its direction varies with level of fitness. An individual who is essentially fit will in all likelihood reduce his or her risk of heart disease by exercising vigorously. However, an individual who is unfit may acutely increase his or her risk by participating in such exercise, or by engaging in other vigorous physical activity. An unfortunately too frequent example of this occurs when unfit individuals attempt to shovel heavy snow, a very physically demanding task, and suffer a myocardial infarction. The association between vigorous exercise and heart disease, therefore, while real, is not unidirectional, but is modified by an individual’s level of physical fitness.

Cross-References

► [Cardiovascular Disease](#)

References and Further Reading

Katz, D. L. (2001). *Clinical epidemiology and evidence-based medicine: Fundamental principles of clinical reasoning and research*. Thousand Oaks: Sage.

Efficacy

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

The efficacy of a treatment is a measure of its influence on a clinical characteristic or outcome of interest when administered in tightly controlled, near-ideal circumstances. It is a measure of benefit.

The term “efficacy” can be meaningfully differentiated from the related term, “effectiveness.” Effectiveness, which is of greater clinical interest, is a measure of the treatment’s influence under real-world conditions (Katz 2001).

Efficacy is typically assessed wherever possible in a randomized controlled clinical trial, since this provides the best approximation to “near-ideal circumstances.” A paradox of such assessment, however, is that the deliberate (and, at this point in time, desirable) nature of the tightly controlled environment in which the treatment is assessed limits the generalizability of the therapeutic results obtained to interventional therapy administered outside that setting. There are many reasons for this, including the relatively homogenous nature of the subjects participating in the trial: Strict inclusion and exclusion criteria are typically employed. From a statistical perspective, this tightly controlled

subject population is beneficial in that it reduces extraneous variation that may lead to a genuine treatment effect being difficult to detect. However, a clinically important effect seen in a well-controlled trial may not be reflected when the treatment is applied to a heterogeneous population in circumstances of real-world clinical practice.

This is why effectiveness assessments are so important. Various approaches can be employed. One is to conduct large-scale trials (sometimes called mega-trials or large simple trials) which employ much more simple measurement schedules that focus on the one aspect of interest and that are conducted in conditions much more akin to clinical practice.

Cross-References

► [Baseline](#)
► [Comparative Effectiveness Research](#)

References and Further Reading

Katz, D. L. (2001). *Clinical epidemiology and evidence-based medicine: Fundamental principles of clinical reasoning and research*. Thousand Oaks: Sage.

Efficacy Cognitions

Jorie Butler
Department of Psychology, University of Utah,
Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Definition

Efficacy cognitions: Efficacy cognitions are thoughts that develop from self-efficacy. Self-efficacy is the belief in personal ability to successfully perform challenging life tasks (Bandura 1977a). Self-efficacy develops from mastery experiences, modeling, social persuasion, and physiology (Bandura 1977b).

Description

Efficacy cognitions include thoughts about performance that are optimistic, pessimistic, productive, or self-debilitating. Efficacy cognitions are influenced by mastery experiences which promote cognitive expectations. Efficacy cognitions can be modeled similar to self-efficacy. Social persuasion, in the form of encouragement from others to achieve, or stated positive expectations, promotes positive efficacy cognitions. Negative persuasion in the form of discouragement or deflating comments promotes negative efficacy cognitions. Negative interpretations of physiological responses such as strong emotions (e.g., anxiety) and the physiological accompaniments (fast heart rate) influence efficacy cognitions as negative, “I’ll never be able to do this, I’m terrified” or positive, “I’ve got this in the bag, I’ll just enjoy it!” Efficacy cognitions spring from interpretations and can contribute to habitual interpretations.

Efficacy cognitions are not perfectly aligned with reality – hence the concert pianist overcome with doubts about their potential to produce beautiful music and the exuberant child overestimating the pleasantness in tone of their singing voice. Efficacy cognitions contribute to motivation to perform an activity, personal well-being, positive health behavior, and future achievement. Negative efficacy cognitions result in avoidance of the activity, whereas confident efficacy cognitions promote engagement in the task. Emotions related to activity performance will ally with the tone of the efficacy cognitions – stress and anxiety for tasks about which efficacy cognitions are negative, joyful immersion for activities about which efficacy cognitions are positive.

Productive efficacy cognitions contribute to a view that difficult tasks are challenges to be mastered. Armed with such thoughts, people are more likely to approach the difficult task at hand with zestful effort. Self-debilitating efficacy cognitions are centered on tasks as insurmountable or fear-some result in activities that are dropped after minimal obstacles intervene. Optimistic efficacy cognitions promote task enjoyment whereas pessimistic thoughts promote task-associated distress and early failure. Efficacy cognitions influence action planning for future goals. Individuals

planning to implement a health behavior change – such as smoking cessation, eating a healthier diet, exercising, or adhering to recommendations for managing a chronic illness – are more likely to be successful at implementation when efficacy cognitions are positive. In the health behavior change model, individuals progress through stages of change that culminate in maintaining lasting change (Prochaska and Velicer 1997). Early in the process, during the contemplation stage, efficacy cognitions are particularly important. Individuals who doubt they can make a successful health change during the contemplation may not reach the preparation stage – in which planning for change will occur – or the action stage when substantive changes are made.

The expectancies in efficacy cognitions may influence future performance more than objective measures such as past performance (Schunk and Pajares 2005). Efficacy cognitions have wide-ranging implications as the perception that one can accomplish something can be as motivating as having accomplished the task in the past. Thus, positive efficacy cognitions can have a tremendous effect on personal motivation and willingness to experience activities. Conversely, negative efficacy cognitions – even in the face of contradictory objective evidence – can stymie efforts to engage in challenging tasks. Individuals expecting poor outcomes, “I’ll never be able to quit smoking, I’ve tried and failed a dozen times” may indeed be more likely to experience poorer outcomes. In contrast, individuals facing health behavior change with positive expectations may be able to incorporate adaptive strategies for success into their planning more effectively (Gollwitzer 1999; Schwarzer 1992).

Efficacy cognitions do not develop in complete independence from objective evidence of past performance and therefore often are realistically correlated with outcomes. Multiple factors influence the development of efficacy cognitions in addition to experiences – such as environmental factors or propensity for anxiety. Individuals who might be expected to feel competent based on other predictors may not if efficacy cognitions have developed in the face of physiological state challenges (anxiety, stress, fear), negative expectations from the social environment (such as

stated gendered expectations for performance in athletics or mathematics), or faulty interpretations of past experience (not recognizing a strong or poor performance) (Schunk and Pajares 2005). Positive efficacy cognitions are strongly associated with performance because such cognitions promote action and use of skills. Negative efficacy cognitions hold individuals back from achieving all they might in their lives and for their health.

Cross-References

- [Affect](#)
- [Cognitive Appraisal](#)
- [Cognitive Restructuring](#)
- [Cognitive Strategies](#)
- [Efficacy](#)
- [Implementation Intentions](#)
- [Locus of Control](#)
- [Self-Efficacy](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bandura, A. (1977a). Self-efficacy: Toward a unifying theory of behavioral change. *Psychological Review*, 84, 191–215.
- Bandura, A. (1977b). *Social learning theory*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.
- Bandura, A. (1986). *Social foundations of thought and actions: A social cognitive theory*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.
- Gollwitzer, P. M. (1999). Implementation intentions. Strong effects of simple plans. *American Psychologist*, 54, 493–503.
- Pajares, F. (2002). Overview of social cognitive theory and of self-efficacy. Retrieved 12 July 2011, from <http://www.emory.edu/EDUCATION/mfp/eff.html>.
- Prochaska, J. O., & Velicer, W. F. (1997). The trans-theoretical model of health behavior change. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 12, 38–48.
- Schunk, D. H., & Pajares, F. (2005). Competence perceptions and academic functioning. In A. J. Elliot & C. S. Dweck (Eds.), *Handbook of competence and motivation* (pp. 84–104). New York: Guilford Press.
- Schwarzer, R. (1992). Self-efficacy in the adoption and maintenance of health behaviors: Theoretical approaches and a new model. In R. Schwarzer (Ed.), *Self-efficacy: Thought control of action* (pp. 217–243). Washington, DC: Hemisphere.
- Schwarzer, R., & Renner, B. (2000). Social-cognitive predictors of health behaviour: Action self-efficacy and coping self-efficacy. *Health Psychology*, 19, 487–495.

Egg Donation

- [In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology](#)
- [Surrogacy](#)

Egg Donor

- [In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology](#)
- [Surrogacy](#)

Ego-Depletion

- [Self-Regulatory Fatigue](#)

eHealth

- [Digital Health Coaching](#)

eHealth and Behavioral Intervention Technologies

Michelle Nicole Burns and David C. Mohr
Feinberg School of Medicine, Department of Preventive Medicine, Center for Behavioral Intervention Technologies, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Behavioral intervention technologies](#); [Internet-based interventions](#)

Definition

eHealth is a broad term that refers to the use of information and communications media to

facilitate access to health-related information and to support or deliver healthcare. eHealth can include health informatics, health knowledge management, and health data management. Telemedicine and telehealth are subsets of eHealth. Telemedicine refers to the provision of clinical services via telecommunications technologies (e.g., phone, instant messaging), while telehealth is a more general term (Jordan-Marsh 2011) that refers to the broader use of telecommunications in healthcare and health promotion (e.g., electronic access to personal health records, websites allowing patients to schedule appointments).

Although healthcare providers and administrators are also targets of eHealth, we will restrict this review to the use of communication technologies aimed at changing patients' behaviors, cognitions, and emotions in the service of better health outcomes. We refer to these interventions as Behavioral Intervention Technologies (BITs). BITs promote behavior change through electronic provision of didactic material, skill-building tasks, feedback, decision-making aids, risk self-assessments, or patient self-management tools.

Description

Remote Provision of Clinical Services. The use of videoconferencing, telephone, and instant messaging harnesses communications technologies to extend care geographically while preserving the traditional structure of behavioral treatments. Videoconferencing has been shown to be an effective treatment delivery medium for a variety of mental health problems, as well as teaching self-management strategies for chronic conditions and providing support to caregivers of older adults. Older studies used videoconferencing to extend care to remote clinics where there was an absence of specialized care, but newer studies are harnessing the capacity to videoconference directly into patients' homes.

Many trials have examined the telephone-based delivery of behavioral interventions to address a wide range of targets including preventive health behaviors such as weight loss and smoking cessation, self-management

interventions for chronic illnesses, and mental health. Telephone treatments have generally been shown to be effective, and there is evidence that the use of the telephone may improve access and reduce attrition. A few studies have also indicated that the use of instant messaging to deliver standard psychological interventions can be effective.

While extending care, each of these delivery modalities progressively decreases the "bandwidth" for social cues (e.g., nonverbal behavior; Mohr et al. 2011), which has raised concerns that the reduction in cue bandwidth may reduce efficacy. There is no evidence to date that videoconferencing or telephone delivery reduces efficacy, although this has not been rigorously tested. The evidence for instant messaging is too preliminary to begin to speculate on its comparative efficacy.

Web-Based BITs. Web-based BITs have been evaluated for a growing number of health behavior and mental health problems, including weight loss, physical activity, insomnia, adjustment to illness, depression, and anxiety. While most, but not all, trials find evidence supporting the efficacy of web-based BITs, the effect sizes vary considerably and range from negligible to effects on par with traditional face-to-face care. This variability is likely due to a variety of factors, including website design, implementation, and support features.

The structure of web-based BITs can vary on a wide variety of dimensions, including the degree to which they present static information versus interactive features, the degree of personalization, the use of multimedia, the manner in which patients progress through the intervention (e.g., all material being completely available from the beginning, versus some or all material being presented according to criteria such as time or task completion), the expected length of engagement with the intervention, whether the website is freely available to the general public versus contingent on patient characteristics or healthcare system, and the degree of human support. Improvement in health behaviors is maximized by the incorporation of features such as automated text messages and email, personalized feedback, human support via email or telephone, use of

multiple behavior change strategies, and a theoretically informed choice of participants and intervention content (Webb et al. 2010).

Lower efficacy is often associated with poor patient adherence (e.g., few logins to the site) or treatment dropout (ranging from extremely high, >95% for free-standing depression websites with no human support, to minimal). Website usage may be increased by ensuring that the site is easily usable and navigable, provides tools and information that help the user to achieve his/her goals, is attractive, and conveys credibility (Fogg 2003). Periodic updates to the website content are likely to draw users back to the site (Brouwer et al. 2011). In addition to website design, a fairly consistent body of literature has shown that the adherence and efficacy of web-based BITs are enhanced when the website is supported by human interaction (Andersson and Cuijpers 2009; Brouwer et al. 2011). One theoretical model to explain the benefits of human support, called supportive accountability, posits that adherence is enhanced by accountability to a supportive coach or provider. Mutually-agreed-upon process goals (e.g., logging into the website or using website tools) are monitored by a supportive coach, and the user is expected to account for use or nonuse at pre-specified times through personal contact via brief telephone calls, email, or messaging (Mohr et al. 2011).

Variability in adherence may also be associated with the selection of research participants. Trials that have extensive screening processes likely select for patients who are more motivated and more likely to adhere. When screening involves contact with an evaluator, adherence may be even higher. Websites that are accessible to the general population with little or no entry processes can produce high rates of initial access, with few participants returning to the website after one or two visits. It is not yet clear the degree to which these low return rates are due to large numbers of potential users, for whom the website is not appropriate, being able to easily find and investigate the site, versus design and implementation flaws, or users finding the information or help they desired more quickly than expected.

Internet Support Groups. Internet support groups have proliferated, often with the aim of fostering empowerment and sense of community, decreasing illness-related stigma, promoting the sharing of information, and increasing social support. There is some evidence that therapist-moderated internet support groups can reduce distress. However, findings regarding the efficacy of un-moderated internet support groups are mixed. Some trials demonstrate modest improvement, but many trials find no significant effect or even increased distress for some users. This suggests that assumptions as to why and how these groups might be helpful may be erroneous. Thus, while the appeal of social media is considerable, little is currently known about how to effectively harness online social networks to improve health outcomes.

Emerging BITs. Web-deployed virtual worlds offer a diverse range of health intervention and educational experiences. For example, Second Life is being used to provide health-related information, meetings, support groups, simulations of medical procedures or symptoms, discussion groups, appointments with human healthcare providers, movies, and opportunities to practice new skills (e.g., role plays; Beard et al. 2009). Serious gaming is a field in which the entertainment value of games is harnessed for a purpose, such as improving health (Zyda 2005). Serious health-related games have been developed, in particular to increase physical activity and improve diet in children. Although outcomes have been promising, more research is needed to demonstrate clinical efficacy.

Mobile BITs. Mobile electronic devices (e.g., handheld computers, mobile phones) and wireless technology can be used to establish a continuous connection with patients as they conduct their daily lives. This subset of eHealth is often referred to as mHealth. Real-time delivery of intervention (e.g., encouragement, information, therapeutic tools) can be provided to the patient in their own environment. mHealth BITs can also collect information about the patient's current state and provide tailored intervention based on that state. Finally, as Smartphones can access the web, web-based and mobile components can be integrated into the same intervention.

A growing number of studies have examined mobile phone BITs that target preventive health behaviors (smoking cessation, weight loss, and physical activity), self-management of chronic illnesses (e.g., diabetes, asthma), mood and anxiety disorders, schizophrenia, and medication adherence. Trials have found positive short-term benefits. However, literature on the effects of mHealth is still limited in many clinical areas, and not enough high-quality studies have been conducted to enable a reliable quantitative meta-analysis (Heron and Smyth 2010).

Most mHealth BITs include SMS messages, which vary on a number of dimensions. Some studies send informational messages or reminders, while other interventions employ SMS dialogues which are commonly automated and lead to the provision of tailored information. SMS dialogues are often initiated by the intervention, but some focus on or allow patient-initiated SMS dialogues. For example, many of the disease self-management interventions require the patient to provide information (e.g., blood pressure for hypertension interventions), which then results in tailored SMS feedback. The frequency of the SMS messages can vary from 5+ per day to a little as once weekly, and is usually tied to the expected frequency of the targeted behavior. Degree of tailoring and personalization also varies, with some mHealth BITs providing highly tailored messages, while others provide more generic messages or tips. Finally, mHealth BITs vary to the degree to which they rely solely on the mobile intervention or are supplemented by other intervention strategies such as interactive websites or consultations with healthcare providers.

An emerging area in mHealth is the development of passive data collection methods that avoid problems related to patient's reluctance to log information. In this way, mHealth BITs can detect when intervention is needed, without requiring the patient to self-report their current state. Passive data collection uses sensors to automatically collect data that can help to infer patient states. Such sensors can be located within the mobile device itself (e.g., GPS, accelerometer), or through wirelessly connected external devices (e.g., heart rate or glucose monitors). There are

two ways in which intervention delivery can be informed by sensor data. First, algorithms can be developed based on existing scientific knowledge (i.e., expert systems). The algorithms are then applied to make inferences regarding the patient's state, and consequently their need for intervention, from the sensor data. As mobile devices can also allow patients to self-report their current states, the second approach is to use machine learning techniques (Witten and Eibe 2005) to model the relationship between sensor data and patient states. These models are then used to predict patient's states solely from new sensor data, with the advantage being that the models were automatically generated and personalized. Use of machine learning in this way is a new and complex approach that has been applied to detect physical activities, mood, and social context with varying levels of accuracy (e.g., Burns et al. 2011).

Potential Benefits of BITs. The primary anticipated benefit of BITs is increased access to behavioral healthcare services. Telehealth can be used to assess and provide services to patients living in rural areas, those with medical conditions that affect mobility, or patients for whom travel to service providers is too time consuming given their employment, caregiving, or other responsibilities. Web-based and mHealth BITs are expected to deliver care at substantially reduced costs, and there are some preliminary studies suggesting that web-based BITs can be very cost effective. For example, BITs are usually designed to require less time burden on clinicians, and since BITs can be delivered remotely, they might also reduce the patient's transportation costs and lost work productivity due to time spent in transit. However, there is still a paucity of cost-effectiveness studies examining eHealth compared to usual care, and results may vary based on whether costs and benefits are calculated in terms of the individual patient, the healthcare system, or society as a whole.

Given the prevalence of obesity, smoking, chronic illness, and mental illness, there will never be enough behavioral health specialists to meet population needs for behavioral care. BITs offer the possibility of bridging the gap between

behavioral health interventions, which have traditionally been delivered on an individual or small group basis, and population-level public health intervention. Access to the web is growing rapidly. Mobile phones have reduced the Digital Divide between racial/ethnic minority and majority groups in the United States, with African American and English-speaking Hispanic adults using mobile devices to access the web at greater rates than White, non-Hispanic adults (Smith 2011). Thus, mobile BITs might be used to more equitably distribute healthcare services. Should BITs fulfill expectations to increase access to care in underserved populations, this may also facilitate a transition away from acute, crisis-based care toward preventive care.

eHealth interventions, particularly those involving remote patient monitoring or real-time outreach, may increase detection of emergency situations. Often, web-based and mobile BITs also allow patients a 24-h capability to send messages to providers. This convenience may encourage patients to report their difficulties in real time rather than at their next scheduled appointment, by which time the problem may have worsened or the patient may have forgotten important information. Many studies have demonstrated safe implementation of BITs in specific clinical areas.

Potential Risks of BITs. The Digital Divide refers to continuing disparities in internet access and familiarity based on age, race/ethnicity, and socioeconomic status. These disparities may be reduced by sensitivity to differences in the way technology is used between different populations. For example, only 2% of mobile phone owners 65+ years of age access social networking sites using their mobile phone, while 24% use text messaging (Smith 2011). Trends suggest that text messaging will be used by increasing numbers of the elderly; thus, if peer support is involved in a BIT for older adults, the forum for peer communication at this time should likely be text messaging rather than a website. Community-based participatory research and careful usability testing of BITs should also be conducted with underserved populations to address issues of access, level of familiarity with the technology,

and concordance with the ways in which the population already uses and perceives the technology.

Privacy and security are hotly debated issues in BITs research. Privacy refers to the prevention of improper disclosure of personal information, while security refers to the technical and procedural mechanisms used to protect privacy. Security protocols are a necessary part of any BIT, and they require ongoing consultations with an IT expert who will remain current on security vulnerabilities in supporting components (e.g., the operating system and servers; Bennett et al. 2010). Encrypted data transmission and restricted access to research data should be standard protocols. Increasingly, however, the efficiency of BITs is being maximized by conducting much of the computing on the user's device. This introduces privacy risks when the patient uses devices that are shared or monitored by others, such as public or work computers. Protocols for wiping data on these remote devices should thus be in place.

Assuming adequate technical security measures, privacy is more likely to be compromised by procedures associated with the interventions, and by the users themselves not taking advantage of security measures such as passcodes. Research staff require ongoing training to avoid procedural errors (Bennett et al. 2010) and effectively teach patients to do the same. Another challenge is conveying to patients how their health information will be handled in terms that are clearly understood. This is an ethical responsibility, and may also help to gain the trust of individuals whose privacy concerns or unanswered questions may prevent them from accessing or fully utilizing potentially beneficial BITs.

Future Directions. BITs research integrates and absorbs methodology from many disciplines, including behavioral science, medicine, computer science, engineering, human computer interaction, computer-mediated communication, visual design, education, and public health. There is a need for individual researchers with expertise across a number of these areas, as well as multidisciplinary team science. New, integrated theoretical frameworks are also needed to describe interactions between use of technology and

behavioral change processes. For example, given the virtually ubiquitous presence of information and communication technologies and their resulting ability to engage with individuals as they interact with multiple spheres of their daily lives (e.g., intrapersonal, interpersonal, institutional, the natural environment, and macro-social factors such as public policy and economic realities), an ecological intervention model has been created that would encompass expertise in each of these domains (Patrick et al. 2005).

Due to the rapid development of new technological capabilities, new methods are evolving to evaluate the efficacy of BITs. The randomized controlled trials traditionally used to demonstrate efficacy are time intensive, and by the time such trials are concluded, the technology being evaluated is likely to be outdated. Disciplines outside of clinical science, in which the rapidity of technological advances has long been a common concern, may be well suited to help behavioral researchers address this challenge. Methodologies that borrow from engineering, such as Multiphase Optimization Strategies (Collins et al. 2007), may be more appropriate in optimizing and evaluating new BITs.

Dissemination. Strategies to disseminate and integrate BITs into healthcare are largely unexplored. BITs can be deployed independent of healthcare delivery systems; this is evidenced by the growing number and use of websites aimed at supporting diet, weight loss, and health lifestyle, as well as the proliferation of mHealth Smartphone applications. There is little efficacy data for many of these BITs, or information on how their use impacts health, healthcare utilization, or healthcare cost. There is also considerable interest in integrating BITs into existing healthcare delivery systems. This integration will require research on at least four levels: (1) Research should determine how BITs will fit in with existing treatment options. For example, stepped care models may first provide the patient with a BIT, and reserve more clinician-intensive treatments for patients who fail to respond. (2) BITs can be integrated into electronic medical records and patient management systems to facilitate referrals, treatment monitoring, follow-up

care, and integration of the BIT into the patient's overall treatment plan. (3) Demonstrated cost-effectiveness of BITs relative to existing treatments will be required for adoption by healthcare systems. (4) Implementation research will be required to identify implementation barriers and opportunities, as well as develop implementation models that can optimize the uptake and use of efficacious BITs by both patients and healthcare providers.

Cross-References

- [Behavior Change](#)
- [Electronic Health Record](#)
- [Health Care Access](#)
- [Medication Event Monitoring Systems](#)
- [Research to Practice Translation](#)
- [Translational Behavioral Medicine](#)

References and Readings

- Andersson, G., & Cuijpers, P. (2009). Internet-based and other computerized psychological treatments for adult depression: A meta-analysis. *Cognitive Behaviour Therapy*, 38(4), 196–205.
- Beard, L., Wilson, K., Morra, D., & Keelan, J. (2009). A survey of health-related activities on second life. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 11(2), e17.
- Bennett, K., Bennett, A. J., & Griffiths, K. M. (2010). Security considerations for e-mental health interventions. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 12(5), e61.
- Brouwer, W., Kroeze, W., Crutzen, R., de Nooijer, J., de Vries, N. K., Brug, J., & Oenema, A. (2011). Which intervention characteristics are related to more exposure to Internet-delivered healthy lifestyle promotion interventions? A systematic review. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 13(1), e2.
- Burns, M. N., Begale, M., Duffecy, J., Gergle, D., Karr, C. J., Giangrande, E., & Mohr, D. C. (2011). Harnessing context sensing to develop a mobile intervention for depression. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 13(3), e55.
- Collins, L. M., Murphy, S. A., & Strecher, V. (2007). The multiphase optimization strategy (MOST) and the sequential multiple assignment randomized trial (SMART) – New methods for more potent eHealth interventions. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 32(5), S112–S118.
- Fogg, B. J. (2003). *Persuasive technology: Using computers to change what we think and do*. San Francisco: Morgan Kaufmann.

- Heron, K. E., & Smyth, J. M. (2010). Ecological momentary interventions: Incorporating mobile technology into psychosocial and health behaviour treatments. *British Journal of Health Psychology*, 15(Pt 1), 1–39.
- Jordan-Marsh, M. (2011). *Health technology literacy: A transdisciplinary framework for consumer-oriented practice*. Sudbury, MA: Jones & Bartlett Learning.
- Mohr, D. C., Cuijpers, P., & Lehman, K. (2011). Supportive accountability: A model for providing human support to enhance adherence to eHealth interventions. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 13(1), e30.
- Patrick, K., Intille, S. S., & Zabinski, M. F. (2005). An ecological framework for cancer communication: Implications for research. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 7(3).
- Smith, A. (2011). Americans and their cell phones. Pew Internet and American Life Project, Report Released August 15, 2011. Retrieved December 9, 2011, from <http://www.pewinternet.org/~media/Files/Reports/2011/Cell%20Phones%202011.pdf>
- Webb, T. L., Joseph, J., Yardley, L., & Michie, S. (2010). Using the Internet to promote health behavior change: A systematic review and meta-analysis of the impact of theoretical basis, use of behavior change techniques, and mode of delivery on efficacy. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 12(1), e4.
- Witten, I. H., & Eibe, F. (2005). *Data mining: Practical machine learning tools and techniques* (2nd ed.). San Francisco: Morgan Kaufman.
- Zyda, M. (2005). From visual simulation to virtual reality to games. *Computer*, 38(9), 25–32.

eHealth Cost-Benefit Analysis

► eHealth Cost-Effectiveness

eHealth Cost-Effectiveness

Emily Lattie and Lauren Brenner
Center for Behavioral Intervention Technologies,
Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

Cost-effectiveness analysis; eHealth cost-benefit analysis; eHealth economic evaluation; Internet based intervention cost analysis; Online intervention cost-effectiveness; Telehealth cost-effectiveness

Definition

eHealth cost-effectiveness deals with evaluating and improving healthcare system spending through the use of information and communication technologies that support or deliver healthcare. This can be achieved by utilizing eHealth programs that are economical in regards to the tangible benefits produced by the amount of money spent.

Description

Since the rapid growth of the Internet throughout the 1990s, researchers and clinicians have praised the potential of eHealth tools and programs to not only increase access to care, but also to improve and increase the cost-effectiveness of healthcare. As eHealth tools and programs continue to grow in number and reach, there is a need to evaluate their cost-effectiveness to determine if they are in fact economically useful. While many methods of evaluating cost-effectiveness in standard care are transferable (see: ► [Cost-Effectiveness](#)), there remain unique considerations and opportunities within the field of eHealth including the relative weights of direct healthcare costs (the resources required to product the service) and nonhealthcare costs (such as time costs and travel costs). Time costs and travel costs are particularly relevant to eHealth interventions, but there is no consensus on how, or if, these factors should be used in cost-effectiveness analyses.

When evaluating the cost-effectiveness of eHealth interventions, additional attention must be paid to development or “sunk” costs. Development costs associated with eHealth interventions are the initial expenses necessary to establish the programming for an intervention and can be sizeable. These “sunk costs” are considered prior expenditures that generally do not get included in cost-effectiveness analyses, because they are not expected to recur after the dissemination of an intervention. Some examples of sunk costs in an eHealth intervention would be purchasing the

licenses to specific databases and purchasing the necessary programming software, because these costs of an intervention would not need to be repeated (Tate et al. 2009).

After an eHealth intervention has been implemented, the costs that should be included in cost-effectiveness analyses are the costs of updating, redesigning, and maintaining the intervention's programming. These "running costs" are recurrent development costs that should be evaluated to help determine how cost-effective an eHealth intervention is compared to alternative methods of intervention. Incremental cost-effectiveness analyses can be used to compare eHealth interventions to alternative methods of treatment by evaluating the ratio of costs and benefits. They can also be used to help determine the cost-effectiveness of specific features and updates in an eHealth intervention, which is why it is important to include the running development costs when analyzing the cost to benefit ratio of an Internet-based intervention.

To date, several types of eHealth programs have demonstrated cost-effectiveness. Internet-based cognitive behavioral therapy (iCBT) programs are one example. iCBT programs for conditions such as depression, social phobia, and irritable bowel syndrome have been researched extensively in recent years. These Internet-based cognitive behavioral therapy programs have been deemed cost-effective, relative to no treatment and compared to live cognitive behavioral therapy, and offer the possibility to broadly expand the availability of care within a population. Research on the use of remote consultations and at-home monitoring by members of the patient's healthcare team has also demonstrated efficacy in helping patients avoid expensive hospitalizations and can reduce the number of outside referrals made. Because large-scale implementation of eHealth programs generally brings a significant upfront cost, research should continue to evaluate the associated and comparative costs of these programs to ensure that such programs are economical in regards to the tangible benefits produced by the amount of money spent.

Cross-References

- [Benefit Evaluation in Health Economic Studies](#)
- [Cost-Effectiveness](#)
- [Cost-Minimization Analysis](#)
- [eHealth and Behavioral Intervention Technologies](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bergmo, T. S. (2015). How to measure costs and benefits of eHealth interventions: An overview of methods and frameworks. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 17(11), e254.
- Elbert, N. J., van Os-Medendorp, H., van Renselaar, W., Ekland, A. G., Hakkaart-van Roijen, L., Raat, H., . . . , & Pasmans, S. G. (2014). Effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of ehealth interventions in somatic diseases: A systematic review of systematic reviews and meta-analyses. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 16(4), e110.
- Hedman, E., Ljótsson, B., & Lindefors, N. (2012). Cognitive behavior therapy via the internet: A systematic review of applications, clinical efficacy and cost-effectiveness. *Expert Review of Pharmacoeconomics & Outcomes Research*, 12(6), 745–764.
- Tate, D. F., Finkelstein, E. A., Khavjou, O., & Gustafson, A. (2009). Cost effectiveness of internet interventions: Review and recommendations. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 38(1), 40–45.

eHealth Economic Evaluation

- [eHealth Cost-Effectiveness](#)

eHealth/mHealth Trial Methodology

Fiona Louise Hamilton and Elizabeth Murray
University College London, London, UK

Synonyms

[Digital health trial methodology](#)

Definition

Trials and other methodologies used to evaluate the acceptability, effectiveness, and/or safety of eHealth/mHealth interventions.

Description

eHealth/mHealth, also known as digital health interventions (DHI), are interventions that deliver healthcare via digital technologies such as smartphones, websites, text messaging, or mobile applications (apps). They are complex interventions, typically incorporating a number of active components, and are used across a wide range of conditions, including health promotion, physiotherapy, and self-management of long-term conditions including mental health. They have the potential to increase access to effective, safe, highly cost-effective, convenient, and confidential care with less resource. Although not everyone will be able to use them, DHI may help reduce health inequalities for underserved populations if they increase virtual access to support and treatment and/or by using videos and graphics so that people with low literacy skills can understand complex information. They may also reduce inequalities by freeing up services for these people to access in person if more affluent, educated, or health-literate groups preferentially use eHealth resources rather than services.

As the number and range of DHI continue to grow, there is a need to evaluate them robustly so that individuals and commissioners of health services can be confident that they are effective and evidence-based. As DHI are complex interventions, developed through a combination of clinical (biomedical, behavioral), computing, human-computer interaction (HCI), and engineering research, evaluative methods utilized by all these disciplines are necessary.

It is important to emphasize the need to consider all the following questions carefully in the lead up to a trial, to avoid problems arising during the trial and also for ongoing evaluation Post-trial

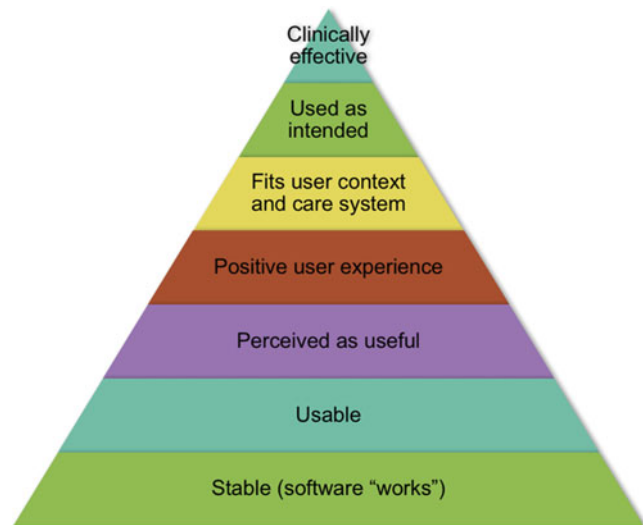
as DHI co-evolve. These questions can be mapped to the levels of the DHI appraisal pyramid described by Blandford et al. (2018) and shown in Fig. 1, in which HCI focuses primarily on the lower levels and clinical evaluation focuses on the higher levels:

- What is the problem the DHI aims to address?
- How and by what mechanism(s) of action is the DHI likely to address the problem (the causal model)?
- Is the DHI stable? Has it been user-tested and piloted and any changes finalized? This is particularly relevant if trialing commercial apps, often designed using principles of the minimally viable product (MVP), and reliant on continuous adaption through user feedback (Lenarduzzi and Taibi 2016).
- Is it usable and is it considered to be useful? Has it been tested by the end users?
- Does it provide a positive user experience? Otherwise it will not be used in practice.
- Does it fit the user context and care system, i.e., is it acceptable; do users, or healthcare practitioners, consider the DHI to be an appropriate intervention? (Sekhon et al. 2017). What is its impact on health inequalities?
- Is it used as intended? Can the intervention and its delivery package be delivered with high fidelity (i.e., the content can be delivered consistently and as intended (see Wickersham et al. 2011))? What is its potential reach and uptake?
- Finally, is it effective, safe, and cost-effective? Any trial or evaluation method needs to ensure that:
 - Outcome measures are relevant and validated.
 - The overall benefits are likely to be clinically meaningful (improved outcomes or equivalent outcomes at less cost).

If a RCT is being considered for evaluating a DHI, the following challenges and potential solutions should also be thought about before going ahead:

eHealth/mHealth Trial Methodology,

Fig. 1 Dependencies between key classes of evaluation criteria for DHI (from Blandford et al. 2018)



- What is an appropriate control intervention? Is a passive option (e.g., an information -only website) a fair comparator, or would a more meaningful comparator be “treatment as usual” provided in the health service or another active control?
 - Attrition (Eysenbach 2005; Murray 2013), both “usage attrition,” in which participants do not engage with the intervention, or engage suboptimally, with the intervention, and “drop-out attrition” (or loss to follow-up), whereby participants drop out from the trial before follow-up data are collected. Strategies to address the problem of attrition include design considerations, including interactivity, tailoring the intervention, sending prompts by email or SMS message or via app (Alkhalidi et al. 2016), and incentives (Brouwer et al. 2011), for which financial incentives have the strongest evidence. These strategies can be tested using a factorial design nested within the RCT.
 - Context and generalizability to the target population (external validity), especially if self-selected participants are recruited online. This can be addressed by tightening up the inclusion and exclusion criteria to match the target population more closely.
 - Contamination of either intervention arm may occur due to the availability of alternative websites and apps that can be accessed by trial participants during the trial, but pragmatically trialists can request participants not to do this for the duration of the trial.
 - Lack of equipoise by recruiters or potential participants can affect recruitment, if they do not consider that each arm of the trial is likely to be equally effective and do not want to risk being randomized to their less-preferred option. This could be overcome by giving clear information to the participants about the importance of equipoise in answering the research question, by offering the other intervention after the trial is finished, or by using a preference design.
 - Sustainability and revenue models need to be considered early in the development process as funding usually ends with the completion of the trial, so additional funding by funders or government bodies needs to be secured to maintain the app or website.
- RCTs may be conducted entirely online, for example, when evaluating a self-help website, or may use a blend of techniques, for example, face-to-face recruitment, consent, and baseline data collection with follow-up data collection online or via SMS or app. Either method can be supplemented by process evaluation using qualitative methods (this combination of methods is

also known as mixed methods research). For example, interview studies with study participants, patients, or healthcare practitioners can provide insight into the acceptability of the intervention, barriers and facilitators to its successful delivery, and the methodologies used to evaluate it.

However, researchers are challenging the dominance of RCTs, which many would argue are more appropriate for arguably less complex interventions such as drug trials, due to the unique challenges presented by eHealth and mHealth interventions. In particular the rapid pace of eHealth/mHealth innovation does not easily fit with existing research designs, and evidence may be out of date before it is reported. Alternatives to RCTs, which can be used in preparation for definitive phase 3 trials, include N-of-1 trial designs and factorial trial designs to test multiple app features and engagement strategies, to determine optimal combinations, e.g., the multiphase optimization strategy (MOST) (see Pham et al. 2016).

Once shown to be effective, DHI may be evaluated further through implementation studies, which examine methods to promote the systematic uptake of research findings into routine practice, to improve the quality and effectiveness of health and care services (Eccles and Mittman 2006).

Cross-References

- [Behavior Change Techniques](#)
- [eHealth and Behavioral Intervention Technologies](#)
- [eHealth Cost-Effectiveness](#)

References and Further Reading

- Alkhaldi, G., et al. (2016). The effectiveness of prompts to promote engagement with digital interventions: A systematic review. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 18(1), e6.
- Blandford, A., et al. (2018). Seven lessons for interdisciplinary research on interactive digital health interventions. *Digital Health*, 4, 205520761877032.

- Brouwer, W., et al. (2011). Which intervention characteristics are related to more exposure to internet-delivered healthy lifestyle promotion interventions? A systematic review. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 13(1), e2.
- Eccles, M. P., & Mittman, B. S. (2006). Welcome to implementation science. *Implementation Science*, 1, 1.
- Eysenbach, G. (2005). The law of attrition. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 7(1), e11.
- Lenarduzzi, V., & Taibi, D. (2016). MVP explained: A systematic mapping study on the definitions of minimal viable product. In *2016 42th Euromicro conference on software engineering and advanced applications (SEAA)*.
- Murray, E. (2013). Attrition revisited: Adherence and retention in a web-based alcohol trial. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 15, e162.
- Murray, E., et al. (2016). Evaluating digital health interventions: Key questions and approaches. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 51(5), 843–851.
- Pham, Q., Wiljer, D., & Cafazzo, J. A. (2016). Beyond the randomized controlled trial: A review of alternatives in mHealth clinical trial methods. *JMIR mHealth and uHealth*, 4(3), e107.
- Sekhon, M., Cartwright, M., & Francis, J. J. (2017). Acceptability of healthcare interventions: An overview of reviews and development of a theoretical framework. *BMC Health Services Research*, 17(1), 88.
- Wickersham, K., et al. (2011). Assessing fidelity to an intervention in a randomized controlled trial to improve medication adherence. *Nursing Research*, 60(4), 264–269.

Elderly

Ivan Molton

Department of Rehabilitation Medicine,
University of Washington, Seattle, WA, USA

Synonyms

[Aged](#); [Older adult](#); [Senior](#)

Definition

The term “elderly” is derived from the Middle English word *eald* (meaning old) and generally refers to an individual who is near or surpassing the average life expectancy for his or her community, culture, and historical period. The term

differs from clinical or medical language used to describe older adults (e.g., senescent or geriatric) in that it does not describe biological aspects of aging. Rather, “elderly” is used more broadly in the context of social gerontology, and carries the connotation of having achieved a certain degree of respect, status, expertise, or wisdom with advanced age (i.e., as an *elder*). For the purposes of research and policy efforts, the age cut off for “elderly” is often set in western countries at 65 or 70, based on the age at which individuals have historically been able to receive government retirement benefits. However, the term is descriptive rather than scientific, and does not typically denote a particular age band within older adulthood.

Cross-References

- [Aging](#)
- [Gerontology](#)

Electrocardiogram (EKG)

Douglas Carroll
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The
University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

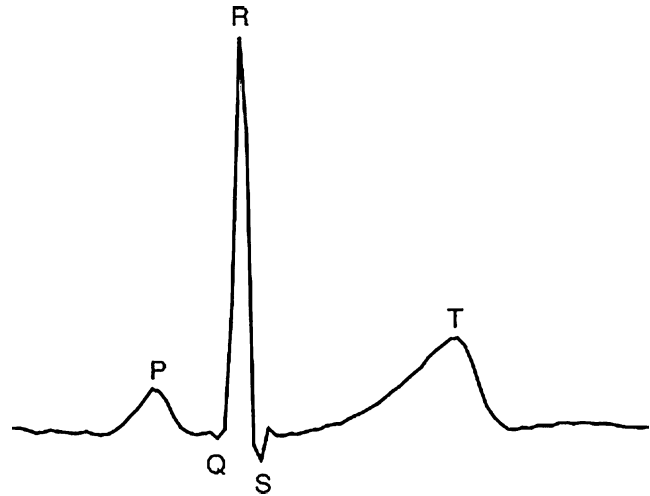
[ECG](#)

Definition

The electrocardiogram (EKG) is the noninvasive record of the electrical activity of the heart muscle, as reflected in tiny electrical changes on the skin, during the heart’s active (systole) and passive (diastole) phases (Hampton 2008). The EKG can be recorded easily from two electrodes

placed on either side of the heart, for example, on the chest or on the left and right arms. For clinical and diagnostic purposes, however, it is usual to attach an array of 12 electrodes at various bodily sites so that the EKG can be recorded from different orientations. The characteristic wave form (see Fig. 1) that identifies the heart’s active phase, i.e., when it beats and pumps blood into the systemic circulation, was first described in 1903 by Willem Einthoven, in Leiden in the Netherlands, although electrical records of heart beats had been made as early as 1872. In 1924, Einthoven was awarded the Nobel Prize for Medicine for his research in EKG. The first wave in the three-wave systolic portion of the EKG record is the P-wave, and it represents the depolarization, i.e., the contraction, of the atrial chamber of the heart. Next, the R-wave, usually considered at the whole QRS complex, reflects the depolarization of the ventricles. Finally, the T-wave represents the repolarization, i.e., recovery, of the ventricles. In behavioral medicine, interest in the EKG is usually confined to the derivation of heart rate, the number of systoles in a given minute, or to its reciprocal, heart period, the time between successive R-waves. The former indicates the speed at which the heart is beating under specified circumstances, such as during relaxed rest or psychological stress exposure. Unfortunately, this tells us nothing about volume of blood being pumped by the heart into the circulation: for that, we need other techniques, such as impedance cardiography and, more recently, Doppler echocardiography. The latter, heart period and its variability, can, particularly when subject to spectral analysis of frequency, tell us about the extent of activation of the heart by the main parasympathetic nerve, the vagus, and about the balance between parasympathetic and sympathetic neural activation of the heart. Finally, the precise configuration of the EKG can tell us other useful things, particularly in clinical settings. For example, a blunted or inverted T-wave is a reasonable indicator of cardiac ischemia, where the heart muscle is suffering from impaired blood flow and hence a restricted oxygen supply.

**Electrocardiogram
(EKG), Fig. 1** EKG
waveform



E

Cross-References

► [Heart Rate](#)

Below is an overview of EDA with examples of its application to behavioral medicine.

References and Further Reading

Hampton, J. R. (2008). *The ECG made easy* (7th ed.). London: Churchill Livingstone.

Description

What Is Electrodermal Activity?

Electrodermal activity (EDA) is a measure of neurally mediated effects on sweat gland permeability, observed as changes in the resistance of the skin to a small electrical current, or as differences in the electrical potential between different parts of the skin. The EDA signal reflects the action of sympathetic nerve traffic on eccrine sweat glands. There are two salient features of this sympathetic innervation that enhance the usefulness of EDA in psychophysiology and behavioral medicine. First, there is no antagonistic parasympathetic innervation of sweat glands (i.e., EDA reflects only sympathetic activity not sympathovagal balance), and second neurotransmission at the effector synapse is (almost completely in adults) cholinergic, i.e., mediated by acetylcholine release. This differs from the noradrenergic neurotransmission typical of other sympathetic effector synapses and further makes the EDA signal independent of circulating adrenaline and noradrenaline levels.

Sympathetic neural activity in skin is closely coupled to changes in mental state: In the

Electrodermal Activity (EDA)

Hugo Critchley and Yoko Nagai
Brighton and Sussex Medical School, University
of Sussex, Brighton, East Sussex, UK

Definition

Electrodermal activity (EDA) reflects the output of integrated attentional and affective and motivational processes within the central nervous system acting on the body. EDA is a valuable tool in behavioral medicine as a biomarker of individual (state and trait) characteristics of emotional responsiveness, as an index for direct examination of axis of stress-related effects on bodily function, and as a potential avenue of treatment of psychosomatic conditions through biofeedback training.

laboratory setting, at rest and constant temperature, EDA indexes change in attention and cognitive and emotional states of arousal, expressed both as sustained shifts in tonic level (skin resistance level, SRL, or skin conductance level, SCL; see below) and transient responses evolving over the course of a few seconds (galvanic skin response, GSR, sympathetic skin response, SSR, skin resistance response, SRR, or skin conductance response, SCR) (Venables and Christie 1973). Tonic and phasic aspects of EDA interrelate, yet are dissociable.

Within the brain, psychological influences on EDA are thought to emerge from activity within reticular formation centers within the brainstem and thalamus, in turn influenced by cortical mechanisms controlling orientation to salient information (Luria and Homskaya 1970). Frontal lobe regions strongly influence the orienting electrodermal reflex (Venables and Christie 1973). Correspondingly, the magnitude of EDA responses in humans is reduced following discrete lesions to the prefrontal cortex and also related “attentional centers” within the anterior cingulate and right parietal lobe (Zahn et al. 1999). Moreover, individual differences in the frequency of discrete EDA responses correlate with the size of prefrontal lobe regions (Raine et al. 2000). Functional imaging studies implicate ventromedial prefrontal cortex (Critchley et al. 2000) and anterior cingulate and amygdala (Williams et al. 2000) in phasic EDA responses to motivationally important stimuli. Nagai, Critchley, Featherstone, Trimble, and Dolan (2004a), using EDA biofeedback during functional neuroimaging, showed differential coupling of brain regions to phasic EDA responses (widespread enhancement within the anterior cingulate/dorsolateral prefrontal cortices and subcortical thalamic and brainstem centers) when compared to the tonic EDA level (which was inversely correlated with activity in ventromedial prefrontal cortex and subgenual cingulate). This latter observation links the EDA level to processes ascribed to the “default mode network” of brain function (Raichle et al. 2001).

Applications of Electrodermal Activity

Among the autonomic nervous system responses, EDA is a particularly useful parameter because EDA responses are easy to measure and to elicit reliably (much more difficult to suppress). However, EDA is sensitive to a wide variety of stimuli, hence careful interpretation is required. Changes in EDA also typically occur as part of a complex, patterned autonomic reaction wherein EDA may serve as a circumstantial marker of an accompanying physiological response. As noted, a number of functional variables can be derived from recorded EDA. The basal (tonic) level of electrodermal arousal reflected in SRL/SCL can be used to track individual differences in the general level of arousal and the integrity of diurnal rhythms: The skin resistance level rises during sleep and drops sharply in the morning on awakening, returning to approximately the same level of pre-sleep resistance by the evening. Phasic electrodermal responses such as SRR and SCR are easily elicited by emotional stimulation or a change in attention and interact with the tonic basal level of electrodermal arousal. Thus EDA in a combined form has been widely applied as an index of physiological and emotional arousal in studies of stress responsivity, including challenges with pain shock, emotional films, and mental and physical effort (e.g., Folkins 1970).

Psychological and Psychosomatic Illness

This relevance of such studies to understanding the psychological and physical manifestations of chronic stress is based on the notion that individuals with increased physiological (EDA) reactivity to stressors are most at risk of long-term detrimental health consequences. In clinical populations, higher skin conductance level and increased phasic responsivity are reported in anxiety patients (Raskin 1975). In this context, EDA may be a more specific biomarker; patients with panic disorder and agoraphobia showed delayed habituation and greater nonspecific phasic fluctuation compared with other anxiety patients (Birket-Smith et al. 1993); patients with post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) also show slower habituation even in response to neutral

stimulation (this has been suggested as a trait marker for PTSD susceptibility; Rothbaum et al. 2001).

In contrast, EDA hypo-responsivity and hypo-reactivity are reported with patients with depression (Williams et al. 1985) and related to higher occurrence of suicidal attempts (Thorell 1987). Faster EDA habituation is reported in patients with a history of suicidal attempt compared to those with non-suicidal attempts (Jandl et al. 2010). Hyporesponsivity and risk is also a feature of psychopathy (Hare 1978). While in some countries EDA is incorporated in polygraphy used in criminal justice proceedings and forensic evaluations, it is worth noting that hyporesponsivity may be present across constitutional, or developmentally acquired, disorders of empathy.

Personality factors are commonly linked to differences in vulnerability to stress-related disease, the concept of Type A personality being particularly studied. Type A behavior is characterized by excessive competitiveness, aggressiveness, impatience, chronic haste, and striving for achievement. People with characteristics of Type A behavior are reportedly more prone to coronary heart disease (CHD) related to psychological (emotional) stress and its impact is mediated by brain-triggered autonomic nervous reactions as well as neuroendocrine responses. It is hypothesized that Type A individuals are physiologically hyperresponsive to stress stimuli, evoking greater sympathetic activity (accompanied by shifts in sympathovagal cardiac responses and enhancement within both adrenomedullary and hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenocortical systems). Type A behaviors such as impatience and hostility have been proposed to reflect underlying sympathetic reactivity. However, while EDA shows some promise as a functional biomarker for cardiac vulnerability and Type A personality, findings are inconclusive (Stephoe and Ross 1981). Thus in psychosomatic medicine, EDA can be used to quantify individual differences in autonomic reactivity to salient challenges, where enhanced reactivity in one sympathetic axis (EDA) may signal risks (e.g., of hypertension or arrhythmia) mediated through related autonomic pathways.

Therapeutic Applications of Electrodermal Activity

EDA biofeedback has been studied as a treatment tool for anxiety states and stress-sensitive physical disorders. Biofeedback is a biobehavioral treatment approach where an individual/patient learns to gain volitional control over an involuntary bodily process, e.g., the “emotional arousal” associated with sympathetic innervation of the skin. In contrast to other biofeedback approaches including neurofeedback with electroencephalography, EDA biofeedback is easy to implement. Typically EDA biofeedback has been used to train people to reduce their sympathetic arousal with the aim to induce psychological as well as physiological relaxation states that alleviate stress-related tension. One of the earliest applications was for the treatment of tension headaches, where a significant reduction in frequency and intensity of patients’ headaches was attained. EDA biofeedback relaxation therapy has been shown to be successful in treating the irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) (Leahy et al. 1998), where 4 weeks of biofeedback relaxation training improved scores across a range of IBS symptoms (Leahy et al. 1998). EDA biofeedback relaxation training has been tried for other specific psychological (anxiety disorders, hyperkinesia) and physical (hyperhidrosis, bruxism, weight control, migraine, tics, tremor) conditions. However, the research evidence base is limited and inferences regarding the effectiveness of these approaches are constrained by variation in treatment delivery. In recent years, it has become clear that EDA biofeedback arousal, i.e., training to increase sympathetic arousal in the skin, has therapeutic value. In neurological patients with drug-resistant epilepsy, electrodermal biofeedback was applied to reduce seizure frequency (Nagai et al. 2004b). Electrodermal biofeedback to increase the sympathetic arousal level was neuroscientifically motivated from the observation of an inverse relationship between the EDA level and the central cortical arousability quantified using electroencephalography. In a small randomized controlled trial, 1 month of electrodermal biofeedback training was associated with a significant

decrease in seizure frequency, with 6 of 10 actively treated patients exhibiting more than a 50% seizure reduction at 3 months (and a subset reporting sustained effects at follow up over 3 years).

Conclusion

Electrodermal activity provides an accessible index of the brain's neural influence on the bodily organs, and hence a measure of the emotional capacities and psychophysiological vulnerabilities of individuals. As a route for biobehavioral intervention EDA shows promise, with potential advantages of low cost and implementability.

References and Readings

- Birket-Smith, M., Hasle, N., & Jensen, H. H. (1993). Electrodermal activity in anxiety disorders. *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica*, 88(5), 350–355.
- Critchley, H. D., Elliot, R., Mathias, C. J., & Dolan, R. J. (2000). Neural activity relating to the generation and representation of galvanic skin conductance response: A functional magnetic imaging study. *The Journal of Neuroscience*, 20, 3033–3040.
- Folkens, C. H. (1970). Temporal factors and the cognitive mediators of stress reaction. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 14, 173–184.
- Hare, R. D. (1978). Psychopathy and electrodermal responses to nonsignal stimulation. *Biological Psychology*, 6(4), 237–246.
- Jandl, M., Steyer, J., & Kaschka, W. P. (2010). Suicide risk markers in major depressive disorder: A study of electrodermal activity and event-related potentials. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 123(1–3), 138–149.
- Leahy, A., Clayman, C., Mason, I., Lloyd, G., & Epstein, O. (1998). Computerised biofeedback games: A new method for teaching stress management and its use in irritable bowel syndrome. *Journal of the Royal College of Physicians of London*, 32, 552–556.
- Luria, A. R., & Homskaya, E. D. (1970). Frontal lobes and the regulation of arousal processes. In D. I. Mostofsky (Ed.), *Attention: Contemporary theory and analysis*. New York: Appleton.
- Nagai, Y., Critchley, H. D., Featherstone, E., Trimble, M. R., & Dolan, R. J. (2004a). Activity in ventromedial prefrontal cortex covaries with sympathetic skin conductance level (SCL): A physiological account of a “default mode” of brain function. *NeuroImage*, 22, 243–251.
- Nagai, Y., Goldstein, L. H., Fenwick, P. B. C., & Trimble, M. R. (2004b). Clinical efficacy of biofeedback treatment on reducing seizures in adult epilepsy: A preliminary randomized controlled study. *Epilepsy & Behaviour*, 5, 216–223.
- Raichle, M. E., MacLeod, A. M., Snyder, A. X., Powers, W. J., Gusnard, D. A., & Shulman, G. L. (2001). A default mode of brain function. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 16, 676–682.
- Raine, A., Lencz, T., Bihle, S., LaCasse, L., & Colletti, P. (2000). Reduced prefrontal gray matter volume and reduced autonomic activity in antisocial personality disorder. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 57(2), 119–127.
- Raskin, M. (1975). Decreased skin conductance response habituation in chronically anxious patients. *Biological Psychology*, 2, 309–319.
- Rothbaum, B. O., Kozak, M. J., Foa, E. B., & Whitaker, D. J. (2001). Posttraumatic stress disorder in rape victims: autonomic habituation to auditory stimuli. *Journal of Traumatic Stress*, 14, 283–293.
- Stephens, A. L., & Ross, A. (1981). Psychophysiological reactivity and the prediction of cardiovascular disorder. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 25, 23–31.
- Thorell, L. H. (1987). Electrodermal activity in suicidal and nonsuicidal depressive patients and in matched healthy subjects. *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica*, 76(4), 420–430.
- Venables, P. H., & Christie, M. J. (1973). Mechanisms, instrumentation, recording techniques and quantification of responses. In W. F. Prokasy & D. C. Raskin (Eds.), *Electrodermal activity in psychological research* (pp. 1–124). New York: Academic.
- Williams, L. M., Brammer, M. J., Skerrett, D., Lagopoulos, J., Rennie, C., Kozek, K., et al. (2000). The neural correlates of orienting: an integration of fMRI and skin conductance orienting. *Neuroreport*, 11, 3011–3015.
- Williams, K. M., Iacono, W. G., & Remick, R. A. (1985). Electrodermal activity among subtypes of depression. *Biological Psychiatry*, 20(2), 158–162.
- Zahn, T. P., Grafman, J., & Tranel, D. (1999). Frontal lobe lesions and electrodermal activity: Effects of significance. *Neuropsychologia*, 37, 1227–1241.

Electronic Health Record

Linda C. Baumann¹ and Alyssa Ylinen²

¹School of Nursing, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

²Allina Health System, St. Paul, MN, USA

Synonyms

Computer-based patient record; Electronic medical record; Electronic patient record; Health information record; Personal health record

Definition

The electronic health record (EHR) is a computer-based record of patient health information. It is generated by one or more encounters in any healthcare delivery setting. The EHR includes information on patient demographics, progress notes, medications, vital signs, clinical history, immunizations, laboratory results, and reports of diagnostic procedures. The EHR documents evidenced-based decision-making, quality management, and patient outcomes. The term EHR is generally preferred over the term electronic medical record (EMR). The EMR most often refers to a single healthcare event, whereas the EHR includes the entire patient record of healthcare encounters. The EHR also emphasizes the role of the patient in viewing and even contributing to the record and may chronicle and even influence health status, not just a patient's medications, procedures, and diagnoses.

Description

Computer-based health records have been shown to be far superior to paper records not only because they decrease error due to handwriting and documentation issues but also allow for the portability of and timely access to data. Other benefits include the aggregation and privatization of health data to facilitate research and promote the further education and knowledge base of clinicians.

In addition to safe, efficient, and high quality care, patients expect privacy, rights to access, and the opportunity to give consent for research uses of their health information. An EHR system must satisfy its users regarding privacy, confidentiality, and security. In the United States, the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) ensures that these goals are met (<http://www.hhs.gov/ocr/hipaa/>).

There are other practical, economic, political, and professional concerns that arise regarding the implementation of computerized documentation. Individual physicians and practice groups have

concerns related to cost, time to implementation, and learning curves associated with the EHR. There are also questions about whether to convert current records retrospectively or prospectively.

Research has shown that the healthcare industry will save approximately 80\$ billion dollars annually by adopting electronic documentation. National mandates dictate that by 2014 all health documentation be in a computerized form. The EHR has the potential to improve patient outcomes, improve coordinated care (optimally worldwide), automate adverse event and medical error disclosure, as well as to allow for more efficient diagnosis and treatment.

References and Further Readings

- Gunter, T., & Terry, N. (2005). The emergence of national electronic health record architectures in the United States and Australia: Models, costs, and questions. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 7(1), 1–15.
- Lamberg, L. (2001). Confidentiality and privacy of electronic medical records. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 285(4), 3075–3076.
- Murphy, E., Ferris, F., & O'Donnell, W. (2007). An electronic medical records system for clinical research and the EMR-EDC interface. *Investigative Ophthalmology and Visual Science*, 48(10), 4383–4389.
- Skolnik, N. (2011). *Electronic medical records: A practical guide for primary care*. New York: Springer.
- Wachter, R. M. (2012). Information technology, chapter 13. In R. M. Wachter (Ed.), *Understanding patient safety* (2nd ed.). McGraw Hill Medical: New York, New York.

Electronic Medical Record

- [Electronic Health Record](#)
-

Electronic Patient Record

- [Electronic Health Record](#)

Elevated Blood Pressure

- [Blood Pressure, Measurement of](#)
-

Embryo Donation

- [In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology](#)
 - [Surrogacy](#)
-

Emotion

- [Affect](#)
 - [Anger Management](#)
-

Emotion Modulation

- [Emotion Regulation](#)
 - [Emotional Control](#)
-

Emotion Regulation

Dorothea König
Faculty of Psychology, University of Vienna,
Vienna, Austria

Synonyms

[Emotion modulation](#); [Emotional control](#)

Definition

Emotion regulation (ER) refers to processes by which individuals influence occurrence, kind, and spontaneous course of emotions, as well as experiential, behavioral, and/or physiological responses in an automatic or controlled, conscious

or unconscious, and effortful or effortless manner (Gross 1998, 1999, 2014; Gross and Thompson 2007; Koole 2009). Extrinsic and intrinsic regulatory processes (ER in others versus in the self) can be distinguished (Gross and Thompson 2007). For the latter, the process model of ER was proposed by Gross (1998).

The process model of ER is based on a conception of the emotion-generative process, in which perceived emotional cues are evaluated in a certain way and trigger experiential, behavioral, and physiological response tendencies. Along the timeline of emotional responses, five families of ER strategies can be distinguished: *situation selection* (deciding whether or not to enter a potentially emotion-eliciting situation), *situation modification* (modifying something about the entered situation to change its emotional impact), *attentional deployment* (directing one's attention to or away from a specific feature of the environment to modify the situation's emotional impact), *cognitive change* (altering how the situation is evaluated to change its emotional relevance), and *response modulation* (directly influencing experiential, behavioral, and/or physiological emotional responses). The first four strategy families are considered to be antecedent-focused and refer to ER before the emotional response tendencies have become fully activated. The fifth family is representing response-focused strategies that are aiming at the modification of already generated emotional response tendencies (Gross 1998, 2014; Gross and Thompson 2007).

To downregulate or upregulate both negative and positive emotions, various strategies can be used that have different associations to and effects on immediate emotional responses, psychological (dys)functioning, well-being, or health (Gross 2015; Gross and Jazaieri 2014; Gross and John 2003; Webb et al. 2012). For healthy adaptation in everyday life, it is crucial to flexibly use different ER strategies depending on personal goals and contextual requirements (Aldao et al. 2015; Bonanno and Burton 2014). Two ER strategies that have been extensively investigated are *cognitive reappraisal* and *expressive suppression*. Applying the antecedent-focused strategy of reappraisal changes the way an individual thinks

about a situation to alter its emotional significance. The response-focused strategy of suppression reduces emotion-expressive behavior while being in an already activated emotional state (Gross 1998, 2001; Gross and John 2003). Experimental and correlational studies indicate that reappraisal has healthier, more adaptive consequences and associations in terms of physiology (e.g., favorable cardiovascular responses), subjective experience (e.g., reduced negative feelings), cognitive functioning (e.g., better memory), and social functioning (e.g., favorable social interactions) compared to suppression (Gross and John 2003; Hofmann et al. 2009; John and Gross 2004; Richards and Gross 2000; Szasz et al. 2011).

The extended process model of ER (Gross 2015) distinguishes three steps of ER: *identification* (whether to regulate an emotion or not), *selection* (which strategy to use), and *implementation* (applying the chosen strategy). Challenges can be encountered at any step; related difficulties can be associated with psychological impairment (Campbell-Sills et al. 2014; Gross and Jazaieri 2014).

Cross-References

- Anger Management
- Cognitive Appraisal
- Emotional Control
- Emotional Expression
- Problem-Focused Coping
- Stress Management

References and Further Reading

- Aldao, A., Sheppes, G., & Gross, J. J. (2015). Emotion regulation flexibility. *Cognitive Therapy and Research*, 38, 263–278. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10608-014-9662-4>.
- Bonanno, G. A., & Burton, C. L. (2014). Regulatory flexibility: An individual differences perspective on coping and emotion regulation. *Perspectives on Psychological Science*, 8, 591–612. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1745691613504116>.
- Campbell-Sills, L., Ellard, K. K., & Barlow, D. H. (2014). Emotion regulation in anxiety disorders. In J. J. Gross (Ed.), *Handbook of emotion regulation* (2nd ed., pp. 393–412). New York: Guilford.
- Gross, J. J. (1998). The emerging field of emotion regulation: An integrative review. *Review of General Psychology*, 2, 271–299. <https://doi.org/10.1037/1089-2680.2.3.271>.
- Gross, J. J. (1999). Emotion regulation: Past, present, future. *Cognition and Emotion*, 13, 551–573. <https://doi.org/10.1080/026999399379186>.
- Gross, J. J. (2001). Emotion regulation in adulthood: Timing is everything. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 10, 214–219. <https://doi.org/10.1111/1467-8721.00152>.
- Gross, J. J. (2014). Emotion regulation: Conceptual and empirical foundations. In J. J. Gross (Ed.), *Handbook of emotion regulation* (2nd ed., pp. 3–20). New York: Guilford.
- Gross, J. J. (2015). Emotion regulation: Current status and future prospects. *Psychological Inquiry*, 26, 1–26. <https://doi.org/10.1080/1047840X.2014.940781>.
- Gross, J. J., & Jazaieri, H. (2014). Emotion, emotion regulation, and psychopathology: An affective science perspective. *Clinical Psychological Science*, 2, 387–401. <https://doi.org/10.1177/2167702614536164>.
- Gross, J. J., & John, O. P. (2003). Individual differences in two emotion regulation processes: Implications for affect, relationships, and well-being. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 85, 348–362. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0022-3514.85.2.348>.
- Gross, J. J., & Thompson, R. A. (2007). Emotion regulation: Conceptual foundations. In J. J. Gross (Ed.), *Handbook of emotion regulation* (pp. 3–24). New York: Guilford.
- Hofmann, S. G., Heering, S., Sawyer, A. T., & Asnaani, A. (2009). How to handle anxiety: The effects of reappraisal, acceptance, and suppression strategies on anxious arousal. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 47, 389–394. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.brat.2009.02.010>.
- John, O. P., & Gross, J. J. (2004). Healthy and unhealthy emotion regulation: Personality processes, individual differences, and life span development. *Journal of Personality*, 72, 1301–1333. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-6494.2004.00298.x>.
- Koole, S. L. (2009). The psychology of emotion regulation: An integrative review. *Cognition and Emotion*, 23, 4–41. <https://doi.org/10.1080/02699930802619031>.
- Richards, J. M., & Gross, J. J. (2000). Emotion regulation and memory: The cognitive costs of keeping one's cool. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 79, 410–424. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0022-3514.79.3.410>.
- Szasz, P. L., Szentagotai, A., & Hofmann, S. G. (2011). The effect of emotion regulation strategies on anger. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 49, 114–119. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.brat.2010.11.011>.
- Webb, T. L., Miles, E., & Sheeran, P. (2012). Dealing with feeling: A meta-analysis of the effectiveness of strategies derived from the process model of emotion regulation. *Psychological Bulletin*, 138, 775–808. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0027600>.

Emotional Control

Michelle Skinner

Department of Psychology, University of Utah,
Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Synonyms

Emotion modulation; Emotion regulation

Definition

Emotional control can be thought of as a facet of emotion regulation, but refers primarily to attempts by an individual to manage the generation, experience, or expression of emotion and/or one's emotional responses (Gross 1999). Emotional control, like emotional expression, is tied to the broader context of emotion regulation. Emotional control can occur as part of antecedent-focused regulation prior to generation of emotion or through response-focused regulation after an emotion has been generated (Gross 1998a). Emotional control can refer to the ability to exercise influence over emotion and modulate emotion through the use of cognitive or behavioral strategies (Gross 1998b; Lazarus and Folkman 1984). The ways in which individuals are able to achieve emotional control have implications for health and well-being (Beck 1995; Berg et al. 2009).

Description

Emotional control has varied definitions in literature on stress and coping and emotion regulation. Emotional control includes efforts by the individual to alter the generation of emotion, emotional experience, and emotional expression. Strategies aimed at emotional control can impact health in both positive and negative ways and are contextually dependent on situation, individual differences in personality and social context, and demographic factors such as ethnicity, culture, gender, and age (Berg et al. 2009).

Emotional control is an important facet of emotion regulation and can be facilitated by types of emotion regulation. Antecedent-focused regulation can have an influence on emotional control (Gross 1999). Antecedent-focused regulation refers to altering and regulating aspects of a situation and emotional experience prior to generation of emotion (Gross 1998a). There are several ways that an individual may use antecedent-focused regulation for emotional control. Essential parts of antecedent-focused regulation are situation selection, selective attention, and cognitive appraisal. Situation selection is defined as deciding where to go, what to be exposed to, or who to be exposed to as a means of controlling emotion (Gross 1998a). Selective attention is defined as choosing aspects of a situation to minimize emotional impact such as distraction or attending to less emotionally salient features of the situation (Gross 1998a; Strecher and Rosenstock 1997). Cognitive appraisal is defined as changing the meaning of situations so as to mitigate emotional impact such as looking at positive aspects or minimizing importance (Gross 1999, 2007; Strecher and Rosenstock 1997).

Use of antecedent-focused regulation strategies as a means of emotional control can lead to health outcomes, both positive and negative. For example, situation selection can reduce the likelihood that someone might encounter negative emotional experiences. However, selecting to avoid activities can potentially lead to decline in physical, emotional, and social functioning that may be associated with morbidity and mortality (Gross 2007). Shifting attention, such as use of distraction, may be adaptive in the short-term (e.g., pain management) (Berg et al. 2009; Gross 1998a). Prolonged use of distraction may not allow individuals to address aspects of problems that they can control or may prevent accurate detection of symptoms (Gross 1998a, 2007). Cognitive appraisal can prevent misinterpretations of situations known to impact emotional and physical health such as catastrophizing, emotional reasoning, or black and white thinking (Beck 1995). However, if one appraises problems as nonthreatening, then appraisals may not translate to appropriate emotional reaction or “over control” when it

may be appropriate to react leading to worse outcomes (Lazarus and Folkman 1984; Strecher and Rosenstock 1997).

In contrast to antecedent-focused regulation, response-focused regulation occurs after emotion has been generated and includes direct attempts to alter experiential, physiological, and behavioral responses to the experience of emotion after the emotion has occurred (Gross 1998a, 1999, 2002). Response-focused regulation is also a means of emotional control. Emotion can be controlled by situation modification. Situation modification is defined as changing aspects of a situation to reduce emotional impact. Situation modification relies on coping strategies such as generation of multiple solutions and problem-solving (Gross 1998a). Once an emotion has been generated, individuals may choose to actively solve the problem which can allow for emotional arousal to subside. Use of problem-solving skills may provide health benefit when problems are well-defined and controllable (Berg et al. 2009). However, when problems are ill-defined, ambiguous, and perceived as uncontrollable, use of problem-solving may prolong stress, reactivity, and negative emotion. Thus, the way an individual chooses to control emotions can depend on the context of the problem.

Emotional control is an important facet of emotion regulation and can occur through efforts to minimize negative emotional experience prior to emotion generation (e.g., antecedent-focused regulation) or following an event through the use of coping strategies (e.g., response-focused regulation). Such skills are taught to individuals engaging in cognitive behavioral therapy for management of illness, psychopathology, and everyday problems (Beck 1995). Cognitive and behavioral strategies can help individuals have greater control over emotional arousal that produces ill health effects (Gross 1999). Emotional control can be achieved through provision of skills related to problem-solving (Gross 1998a, 1999). These include behavioral skills to facilitate emotional control such as stress management skills (e.g., deep breathing, progressive muscle relaxation), exercise, and/or engaging in regular healthy behaviors such as sleep hygiene and diet. Similarly, using cognitive appraisal skills

to alter ongoing emotional experience may be helpful. Use of antecedent- and response-focused regulation for emotional control can help down-regulate negative emotion and reduce physiological reactivity which may confer health benefits (Gross 1999, 2002). Inability to effectively control emotion can have detrimental effects on health and well-being. Difficulty in controlling emotional reactions has been linked to psychopathology such as personality disorders, anxiety disorders, as well as risky behavior all of which have adverse association with health (e.g., poor social support, prolonged interpersonal stress, substance abuse, risk-taking behaviors) and may have a neural basis (Gross 2007; Strecher and Rosenstock 1997).

Cross-References

- ▶ Cognitive Appraisal
- ▶ Cognitive Behavioral Therapy (CBT)
- ▶ Emotional Expression
- ▶ Emotion Regulation
- ▶ Physiological Reactivity
- ▶ Problem-Focused Coping
- ▶ Stress
- ▶ Stress Management

References and Further Reading

- Beck, J. S. (1995). *Cognitive therapy: Basics and beyond*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Berg, C. A., Skinner, M. A., & Ko, K. K. (2009). An integrative model of everyday problem solving across the adult life span. In M. C. Smith (Ed.), *Handbook of research on adult learning and development* (pp. 524–552). Mahwah: Erlbaum.
- Gross, J. J. (1998a). Antecedent- and response-focused emotion regulation: Divergent consequences for experience, expression, and physiology. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 74, 224–237.
- Gross, J. J. (1998b). The emerging field of emotion regulation: An integrative review. *Review of General Psychology, Special Issue: New Directions in Research on Emotion*, 2(3), 271–299.
- Gross, J. J. (1999). Emotion regulation: Past, present, and future. *Cognition & Emotion*, 13(5), 551–573.
- Gross, J. J. (2002). Emotion regulation: Affective, cognitive, and social consequences. *Psychophysiology*, 39, 281–291.

- Gross, J. J. (Ed.). (2007). *Handbook of emotion regulation*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Oshner, K. N., & Gross, J. J. (2005). The cognitive control of emotion. *Trends in Cognitive Sciences*, 9(5), 242–249.
- Strecher, V. J., & Rosenstock, I. M. (1997). The health belief model. In K. Glanz, F. M. Lewis, & B. K. Rimer (Eds.), *Health behavior and health education: Theory, research, and practice*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.

Emotional Disclosure

- [Disclosure](#)

Emotional Disorder

- [Psychological Disorder](#)

Emotional Distress

- [Negative Affect](#)
- [Stress, Emotional](#)

Emotional Expression

Michelle Skinner
Department of Psychology, University of Utah,
Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Definition

Emotional expression refers to how one conveys emotional experience through both verbal and nonverbal behavior (Gross 1998b, 1999). Emotional expression should be distinguished from emotional experience in that it is possible to experience emotions without expressing them. Emotional expression is an important part of emotion regulation and can affect health outcomes.

Emotional expression is embedded in the broader domain of emotion regulation, which is defined as how individuals, either consciously or unconsciously, influence, experience, and express emotions (Gross 1999). Emotion regulation unfolds over time in a given situation either before emotional experience, during emotional experience, or in response to emotional experience (Gross 1998a). Emotion regulation involves coordination of several systems including how one thinks about emotion, physiological reactivity elicited by emotion, and behavioral responses such as emotional expression and utilizing coping strategies that either promote health or contribute to poorer health. Emotional expression can be adaptive or maladaptive and may be dependent on context (Gross 1998a, 2002).

Description

Emotional expression is part of the emotion regulation process and functions as a way to communicate internal states to others. Emotional expression can include behavioral, nonverbal, and/or verbal expressions (Gross 1998a). Emotional expression can be beneficial when adaptive and fit to a given situation. For example, suppression of emotion may be inappropriate in some instances such as displays of anger or sadness while at work. However, prolonged suppression of emotion can result in poorer health. Links between maladaptive emotional expression and prolonged suppression have been made to cardiovascular disease. Similarly, “venting” negative emotion may perpetuate negative emotion via physiological and social responses to venting. Thus, the popular idea that “letting it out” may be beneficial for well-being or health may be inaccurate (Gottman 2000; Gross 2002; Hatfield et al. 1994). Expression of positive emotions may also help to in buffering negative emotional experience and has been shown to impact the affiliative quality of marital relationships (Gottman 2000). It is important to acknowledge that emotional expression involves many components of the emotion regulation process and that health effects can be dependent on contextual factors of the

situation and individual difference characteristics such as age, ethnicity, and gender (Gross 1999).

Emotional expression as a means of emotion regulation has its roots in the stress and coping paradigm originally put forth by Lazarus and Folkman (Gross 1999; Lazarus 1991). The stress and coping paradigm asserts that emotional expression can act as a coping strategy and thus may impact health and well-being. Lazarus and Folkman made a distinction between emotion-focused coping, defined as changing the internal state to meet the demands of the stressor (e.g., altering emotions associated with stressor, reappraisals of stressor) and problem-focused coping, defined as changing the environment to meet the demands of the stressor such as finding a problem solution (Lazarus). Emotion-focused strategies (e.g., controlling emotional expression, changing the way one thinks about a stressor, acceptance) were thought to be associated with poorer health outcomes (Lazarus). However, recent models of emotion regulation have recognized nuances of regulatory process as emotion regulation unfolds at points over time in a given situation.

Points of regulation specifically linked to emotional expression are defined as antecedent-focused regulation or as response-focused regulation (Gross 1998a). Antecedent-focused regulation refers to altering and regulating aspects of a situation and emotional experience prior to generation of emotion (Gross 1998a). In contrast, response-focused regulation occurs after emotion has been generated and includes direct attempts to alter experiential, physiological, and behavioral responses to the experience of emotion after the emotion has occurred (Gross 1998a, 1999, 2002). Emotional expression can be altered through both antecedent-focused coping and response-focused coping.

The clearest link between emotional expression and health outcomes occur as a function of response-focused coping and how one chooses to express emotion after an emotion has been generated. Individuals may choose to express emotions in a productive way (conveying how they feel or felt through communication with others, journaling), in an aggressive manner (punching, kicking, self-mutilation), or suppress emotions all together (Gross 2002; Kennedy-Moore and

Watson 1999). Emotional expression can include behavioral expressions of emotion such as engaging in risky health behaviors (e.g., substance use, overeating). Risky health behaviors may be useful for altering emotion and physiological reactivity in the short term but can damage health over time. The ability to use adaptive coping strategies can attenuate physiological reactivity (Gross 1998b, 1999, 2007) and can confer health benefits. For example, adaptive coping mechanisms might reduce cardiovascular risk, promote feelings of control, and self-efficacy which are important in choosing positive health behaviors. Adaptive coping responses can protect against prolonged negative mood states associated with metabolic dysregulation, poor immune response, inflammatory processes, and insomnia (Gross 2007). Conversely, maladaptive coping strategies such as substance abuse and risky behaviors can be associated with physical injury, poorer health status, morbidity, and mortality (Gross 2007; Kennedy-Moore and Watson 1999).

The effect of emotional expression on health may be contextually bound. Emotional suppression can decrease emotionally expressive behavior but simultaneously may not impact physiological responding. In certain instances, suppression of emotion may be effective as a coping mechanism but long-term suppression can negatively impact life satisfaction and depression. Emotional suppression can dampen emotional expression in the context of social interactions resulting in less positive social support which may lead to poorer health. Expression of emotion may also convey health benefits. For example, expression of emotion through writing has been associated with better adjustment in cancer patients, especially in patients that may prefer to avoid or deny managing cancer-related problems. Emotional expression in the context of support groups for health problems may help patients to tolerate and find benefit through others' emotional expression as they react to an illness (Kennedy-Moore and Watson 1999). In close relationships, being able to express emotions in a less negative way may reduce the negative emotional arousal that can affect members of a couple (Gottman 2000; Hatfield et al. 1994). It should also be noted that the expression of positive

emotion can also contribute greater satisfaction in relationships and can be associated with more affiliation and less hostility as couples interact (Gottman 2000).

Cross-References

- [Comorbidity](#)
- [Coping](#)
- [Emotional Responses](#)
- [Emotions: Positive and Negative](#)
- [Expressive Writing and Health](#)
- [Mortality](#)
- [Physiological Reactivity](#)
- [Problem-Focused Coping](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Further Reading

- Baumeister, R. F., & Vohs, K. D. (Eds.). (2004). *Handbook of self-regulation: Research, theory, and applications*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Gottman, J. M. (2000). *The seven principles of making marriage work*. New York: Three Rivers Press.
- Gross, J. J. (1998a). Antecedent- and response-focused emotion regulation: Divergent consequences for experience, expression, and physiology. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 74, 224–237.
- Gross, J. J. (1998b). The emerging field of emotion regulation: An integrative review. *Review of General Psychology*, Special Issue: New directions in research on emotion, 2(3), 271–299.
- Gross, J. J. (1999). Emotion regulation: Past, present, and future. *Cognition & Emotion*, 13(5), 551–573.
- Gross, J. J. (2002). Emotion regulation: Affective, cognitive, and social consequences. *Psychophysiology*, 39, 281–291.
- Gross, J. J. (Ed.). (2007). *Handbook of emotion regulation*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Hatfield, E., Cacioppo, J. T., & Rapson, R. L. (1994). *Emotional contagion*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Kennedy-Moore, E., & Watson, J. C. (1999). *Expressing emotion: Myths, realities, and therapeutic strategies*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Lazarus, R. S. (1991). *Emotion and adaptation*. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.

Emotional Responses

Pamela S. King

Pediatric Prevention Research Center,
Department of Pediatrics, Wayne State University
School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Synonyms

[Affective responses](#); [Emotional reactions](#)

Definition

Emotions are defined as multicomponent response tendencies that unfold over a relatively short span of time. Emotions occur in response to a stimulus or event. The emotional response consists of an appraisal process, during which individuals determine the personal significance of the stimulus or event (e.g., is it harmful or beneficial, does it affect personal goals). The emotional response also includes the subjective experience of emotion, cognitive processing, and physiological changes (e.g., activation of the amygdala and hypothalamus, and subsequent release of epinephrine, norepinephrine, dopamine, and cortisol). Emotions are believed to have evolved to promote behaviors necessary to survive and thrive. Researchers often conceptualize emotions as varying along two dimensions: (1) valence (i.e., negative to positive); and (2) activation (aroused to unaroused). Discrete emotion theorists, in contrast, consider each emotion as a distinct entity. Researchers who examine emotional responses to a stimulus or event (e.g., emotional responses to stress) commonly measure multiple aspects of the multicomponent response. For example, when examining emotional responses to a laboratory stressor, researchers may measure cognitive appraisal components (appraisals of threat or harm), affective components (e.g., reports of anxiety and fear), and physiological components (e.g., rising cortisol levels).

Sometimes, the terms emotion, affect, and mood are used interchangeably. Many

Emotional Reactions

- [Emotional Responses](#)

researchers, however, make distinctions among these terms. Whereas emotions are short-lived responses to stimuli, moods are relatively long-lasting emotional states, and are not always linked to a stimulus or event. Affect is a term used to describe the conscious, subjective aspect of an emotion, separable from any physiological response.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Affect](#)
- ▶ [Affect Arousal](#)
- ▶ [Anger](#)
- ▶ [Emotional Expression](#)
- ▶ [Emotions: Positive and Negative](#)
- ▶ [Mood](#)
- ▶ [Negative Affect](#)

References and Further Readings

- Diener, E., & Emmons, R. A. (1984). The independence of positive and negative affect. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 47, 1105–1117.
- James, G. J. (1998). The emerging field of emotion regulation: An integrative review. *Review of General Psychology*, 2(3), 271–299.
- Lewis, M., Haviland-Jones, J. M., & Barrett, L. F. (2008). *Handbook of emotions* (3rd ed.). New York: The Guilford Press.
- Russell, J. A., & Carroll, J. M. (1999). On the bipolarity of positive and negative affect. *Psychological Bulletin*, 125(1), 3–30.

Emotions: Positive and Negative

Pamela S. King
 Pediatric Prevention Research Center,
 Department of Pediatrics, Wayne State University
 School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Synonyms

[Affect](#); [Mood](#); [Positive and negative affect](#)

Definition

Emotions are defined as multicomponent response tendencies that unfold over a short span of time, and include cognitive processing, physiological responses, and the subjective experience of emotion (i.e., affect). Emotions are often conceptualized as varying in valence, from positive (e.g., happiness, excitement, contentment, curiosity) to negative (e.g., sadness, anger, anxiety, disgust). Subjectively, people experience positive emotions as feelings that reflect a level of pleasurable engagement with the environment. Negative emotions, in contrast, reflect a general feeling of distress. Emotions are thought to have evolved to promote the behaviors necessary to survive and thrive. Positive emotions facilitate approach behavior or continued action; experiences of positive affect prompt people to engage with their environments and partake in activities which are adaptive. Negative emotions, on the other hand, prompt withdrawal behavior and signal when a particular behavior or course of action may not be adaptive.

Description

There is some debate in the emotion literature about whether positive emotions and negative emotions are bipolar extremes of the same factor, or whether they are orthogonal or independent factors. Evidence suggests that positive and negative emotions may be managed by different structures in the nervous system (i.e., positive emotion activation in left frontal cortex; negative emotion activation in right frontal cortex), and that neurotransmitters may respond differently to negative versus positive emotions, which supports the notion that negative and positive emotions are orthogonal factors. In addition, in many studies, researchers have noted the unique contribution of negative and positive emotions (i.e., each contributed to outcomes after controlling for the other), and the low correlation between negative and positive emotion. Some studies, however, have observed moderate to strong (negative) correlations between positive and negative emotion (particularly when “state” vs. “trait”

emotions are measured), and many studies do not find unique effects of negative and positive emotion. Research on the distinction between negative and positive emotions is ongoing; thus, while most consider positive and negative emotions to be orthogonal factors, some researchers consider positive and negative emotions to be opposite ends of the same scale.

There are several measures currently used to assess positive and negative emotions. Among them are two commonly used self-report measures that ask people to rate their experience of positive and negative emotions. Because these measures are assessing the subjective experience of emotion, they are more appropriately labeled measures of affect. The PANAS (Positive and Negative Affect Schedule) includes a 10-item Positive Affect (PA) scale and a 10-item Negative Affect (NA) scale. High scores on the PA scale reflect high energy and concentration (e.g., attentive, interested, alert), whereas high NA reflects a state of general distress (e.g., guilty, hostile, irritable). The POMS (Profile of Mood States) is another measure commonly used to assess positive and negative affect. The POMS has one PA scale reflecting “vigor” (e.g., alert, energetic, cheerful, active, lively), and four NA subscales measuring depression, anger, fatigue, and tension-confusion. For both the PANAS and the POMS, instructions can be modified to ask for current state (which is most likely to reflect “emotion”), as well as mood in the last day, general mood, or mood over the last few weeks or longer (note that mood is longer lasting compared to emotions, which are short-lived). Researchers often distinguish “state” PA and NA (current emotion, or mood in the last day) from “trait” PA (general mood or mood over the last few weeks or months). In addition to measuring the subjective experience of emotion, researchers have also used mood induction procedures to generate positive and negative emotions in the laboratory and observe their effects on outcomes. In general, research (largely correlational) suggests that positive emotions are beneficial for health, and that negative emotions are detrimental for health. Researchers urge caution in interpreting these findings, however, as most studies linking

negative emotion and health do not control for the effect of positive emotions, and most studies linking positive emotion and health do not control for the effect of negative emotion.

There is some debate in the literature about the value of distinguishing individual positive and negative emotions (e.g., happiness, excitement, sadness, anger) versus aggregating positive emotions and aggregating negative emotions. Some research suggests that people are not sensitive to individual emotions and experience similar responses across emotions within a valence (i.e., positive or negative). However, there is also research to suggest that different emotions within a valence have different associations with outcomes (e.g., distinct positive and negative emotions are associated with distinct immune responses). Most researchers currently examine aggregated emotions, distinguishing only positive from negative, but increasingly research suggests that there may be value in distinguishing among emotions within a valence.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Affect](#)
- ▶ [Anger](#)
- ▶ [Emotional Expression](#)
- ▶ [Happiness and Health](#)
- ▶ [Mood](#)
- ▶ [Negative Affect](#)
- ▶ [Negative Affectivity](#)
- ▶ [Positive Affect Negative Affect Scale \(PANAS\)](#)
- ▶ [Positive Affectivity](#)

References and Reading

- Diener, E., & Emmons, R. A. (1984). The independence of positive and negative affect. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 47, 1105–1117.
- Fredrickson, B. L. (2001). The role of positive emotions in positive psychology: The broaden-and-build theory of positive emotions. *American Psychologist*, 56(3), 218–226.
- Krantz, D. S., & McCeney, M. K. (2002). Effects of psychological and social factors on organic disease: A critical assessment of research on coronary heart disease. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 53, 341–369.

- Lewis, M., Haviland-Jones, J. M., & Barrett, L. F. (2008). *Handbook of emotions* (3rd ed.). New York: The Guilford Press.
- Pressman, S. D., & Cohen, S. (2005). Does positive affect influence health? *Psychological Bulletin*, 131(6), 925–971.
- Russell, J. A., & Carroll, J. M. (1999). On the bipolarity of positive and negative affect. *Psychological Bulletin*, 125(1), 3–30.
- Watson, D., Clark, L. A., & Tellegen, A. (1988). Development and validation of brief measures of positive and negative affect: The PANAS scales. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 54, 1063–1070.

Empathy

Linda C. Baumann¹ and Alyssa Ylinen²

¹School of Nursing, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

²Allina Health System, St. Paul, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Compassion](#); [Understanding](#)

Definition

Empathy is the ability of a person to perceive, understand, and accept the experiences of another. It is having the capacity to identify with another's feelings without actually experiencing the situation. In a healthcare setting, it is often therapeutic for clients going through difficult situations to have healthcare professionals that can be empathetic to their situations.

Empathy is different than sympathy, which is concern or pity for another person generated by a subjective perspective. Oftentimes this subjective perspective is a barrier to problem solving. The most therapeutic approach to clinical situations is often an objective empathetic approach.

Description

Empathy is the ability to understand and share the feelings of another.

References and Further Readings

- Lamm, C., Batson, C. D., & Decety, J. (2007). The neural basis of human empathy: Effects of perspective-taking and cognitive appraisal. *Journal of Cognitive Neuroscience*, 19, 42–58.
- Lewis, S. L., Heitkemper, M. M., Dirksen, S. R., O'Brien, P. G., & Bucher, L. (2007). *Medical surgical nursing: Assessment and management of clinical problems* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby Elsevier.
- Potter, P. A., & Perry, A. G. (2009). *Fundamentals of nursing* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby Elsevier.

Emphysema

Siqin Ye

Division of Cardiology, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Chronic bronchitis](#); [Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease](#)

Definition

Emphysema is defined as the pathological enlargement and destruction of lung alveoli. Along with chronic bronchitis, which describes the clinical manifestation of chronic cough with sputum production, these two terms have traditionally been used to refer to the two phenotypes of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). Recently, however, the Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD) has advocated defining COPD based on airflow limitation that is not fully reversible, is progressive, and is associated with an abnormal inflammatory response of the lung to noxious particles or gases. As patients with COPD usually have overlapping features of both emphysema and chronic bronchitis, the distinction is rarely of clinical significance.

Description

COPD remains one of the most common causes of morbidity and mortality globally. In the United

States in 2000, it accounted for eight million outpatient visits, 1.5 million emergency room visit, and 673,000 hospitalizations. COPD is currently the fourth leading cause of death in the USA and is projected to become the third most common cause of death worldwide in 2020 (Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease 2008). One reason for this rise is the strong, dose-dependent relationship between cigarette smoking/exposure and the prevalence of COPD, although other genetic and environmental factors also play important roles, since many smokers never develop clinically significant disease. It has been known, for instance, that genetic defects causing severe deficiency of the protease inhibitor α_1 -antitrypsin lead to a form of early-onset COPD, especially in those who are also smokers. Other known risk factors include exposure to occupational dust and chemicals, indoor and outdoor air particle pollutants, as well as low birth weight. On a cellular level, it has been demonstrated that inhaled cigarette smoke and other noxious particles promote inflammation through the recruitment of neutrophils, macrophages, lymphocytes, and eosinophils. This in turn activates proteinases that degrade lung parenchyma and cause mucus hypersecretion, leading to impaired gas exchange, fibrosis of small airways, expiratory flow obstruction, and hyperinflation (Barnes et al. 2003; Eisner et al. 2010).

Patients with COPD typically present with cough, sputum production, and exertional dyspnea. The hallmark of the disease, expiratory airflow obstruction, may be present for years before medical attention is sought (Hogg 2004). While early on the physical examination may be normal, most patients will demonstrate diminished air movement with a prolonged expiratory phase and wheeze on exam. Pulmonary function testing with spirometry is used to characterize the degree of airflow obstruction and provide prognostic information. When airflow obstruction becomes severe, cyanosis may develop as a manifestation of hypoxemia, and the patient may adopt pursed-lip breathing and the classic “tripod” position to recruit accessory muscles and improve expiratory flow. Another marker of poor prognosis is the development of pulmonary hypertension from chronic hypoxemia, which can

result in right heart failure or cor pulmonale. Death from respiratory failure is unfortunately a common outcome for patients with end-stage COPD (Reilly et al. 2006).

Many patients with COPD will also experience episodic exacerbations, characterized by increased shortness of breath and changes in pattern and quantity of sputum. These are often triggered by viral or bacterial infections and, depending on severity, may require hospitalization for treatment. For exacerbations, inhaled β -agonists and anticholinergic agents, antibiotics, glucocorticoids, and supplement oxygen for hypoxemia are the mainstay of pharmacological therapy. Noninvasive positive pressure ventilation and conventional mechanical ventilation can be used to stabilize patients in severe respiratory distress. For treatment of stable COPD, only smoking cessation and oxygen therapy in those with chronic hypoxemia have been shown to improve survival. Inhaled β -agonists and anticholinergic agents can provide symptomatic benefit, while inhaled glucocorticoids can be used to reduce exacerbations. Pulmonary rehabilitation has also been shown to improve quality of life and exercise capacity as well as reduce hospitalizations. Finally, in select patients with severe COPD but limited comorbidities, lung transplantation can be pursued and provides significant symptomatic and survival benefit (American Thoracic Society 2004).

Cross-References

► Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease

References and Readings

- American Thoracic Society/European Respiratory Society Task Force. (2004). *Standards for the diagnosis and management of patients with COPD* (Internet). Version 1.2. New York: American Thoracic Society, (Updated September 8, 2005). Available from <http://www.thoracic.org/go/copd>
- Barnes, P. J., Shapiro, S. D., & Pauwels, R. A. (2003). Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: Molecular and cellular mechanisms. *European Respiratory Journal*, 22(4), 672–688.

- Eisner, M. D., Anthonisen, N., Coultas, D., Kuenzli, N., Perez-Padilla, R., Postma, D., Romieu, I., Silverman, E. K., Balmes, J. R., & On behalf of the Environmental and Occupational Health Assembly Committee on Nonsmoking COPD. (2010). An official American thoracic society public policy statement: Novel risk factors and the global burden of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*, 182, 693–718.
- Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD). (2008). *Global strategy for the diagnosis, management and prevention of COPD*. Available from <http://www.goldcopd.org>
- Hogg, J. C. (2004). Pathophysiology of airflow limitation on chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *The Lancet*, 364(9435), 709–721.
- Reilly, J. L., Silverman, E. K., & Shapiro, S. D. (2006). Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. In D. L. Kasper, E. Braunwald, A. S. Fauci, S. L. Hauser, D. L. Longo, & J. L. Jameson (Eds.), *Harrison's principles of internal medicine* (16th ed., pp. 1547–1554). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Employee Appraisal

► Job Performance

Employee Assistance Programs (EAP)

Karen Jacobs¹, Miranda Hellman², Jacqueline Markowitz¹ and Ellen Wuest²

¹Occupational Therapy, College of Health and Rehabilitation Science, Sargent College, Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

²Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

Employer-sponsored assistance programs

Definition

Employee Assistance Programs (EAPs) are programs offered to employees; they include policies and procedures for identifying or responding to

employee difficulties that may or may not interfere with job performance (Walsh 1982). These programs often provide counseling or treatment to those who require these services, and can also be provided to the employee's family members. EAPs are aimed to be preventative services, and these services can address psychological issues, alcohol, and drug abuse (Muto et al. 2004). Other areas include, but are not limited to, health, marital, family, financial, legal, or stress issues that may influence job performance (EAPA 2010). EAPs are beneficial in helping employees balance demands while meeting employer's goals of workplace productivity (Jacobson 2010).

Description

Employee benefit assistance programs typically include programs that address a variety of personal and workplace issues that impact job performance such as stress management, weight reduction, workplace violence, and financial management.

EAPs were modeled after Alcoholics Anonymous (AA) programs, and both AA and EAPs understand the importance of acknowledging the problem as the initial step of treatment (Walsh 1982). Since alcoholism has negative impacts on job performance, alcoholism was the first problem addressed by EAPs, followed by substance abuse. It was later recognized that many substance abuse problems have roots in psychosocial problems, which further expanded the outreach of EAPs. EAPs use the importance of retaining the job as a motivating factor to have employees seek help. That is, the services can help fix a problem or difficulty that could threaten employment.

The services offered by EAPs have many positive impacts on the employees receiving them, as well as the organization providing them. Reported benefits include a reduction in expenses associated with medical claims, accident benefits, mental health care costs, absenteeism, lost wages, medical costs, and employee turnover (Hargrave et al. 2008).

EAPs have a variety of components, including written policies and procedures, labor and

management cooperation in program development, referral systems, program information conveyed to the work force, health insurance covering the treatment, and total confidentiality (Walsh 1982). These factors are integral in the success of the EAP (Richard et al. 2009). The policy statement, a statement in which the institution states what the philosophy and the intent of the program is, keeps the EAP on target of the goals. This statement should make it clear that human problems can interfere with work performance, but are inevitable; assistance is available to aid these problems, and the employee will not be terminated on the basis of that problem. The services should be administered through the EAP confidentially and professionally, which helps the employees feel secure in their recovery. The EAPs should be accessible, and employees should be able to receive the services in a timely and efficient manner (Richard et al. 2009).

There are various methods of delivery of services depending on the corporation and EAP model. In “internal” EAPs, the professionals delivering the services are employed with the company offering the EAP, whereas “external” EAPs hire service professionals who are outside contractors from the company. “External” methods are most commonly found. However, a third method, “combination” or “hybrid” EAP, is a delivery system in which the professionals began as internal employees, and then expand services to other workplaces. The “hybrid” EAP is a way in which smaller companies can share the cost of an EAP. Additionally, services can be accessed in a variety of ways, including in-person, via phone, or via the Internet (Jacobson 2010).

EAPs have become popular within businesses. Within USA state and local government in 2008, more than 75% of employees have access to EAPs. About 39% of employees working within the public sector, part-time, had access to EAPs, and 54% of full-time workers in the public sector had access. Of those working in the private sector, 15% of part-time workers and 28% of full-time workers had access to EAPs (U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Labor Statistics 2008).

Cross-References

- Diabetes Education
- Education, Patient
- Exercise-General Category
- Exercise Testing
- Exercise, Benefits of
- Health Promotion and Disease Prevention
- Lifestyle, Healthy
- Lifestyle, Modification
- Smoking Cessation
- Substance Abuse: Treatment

References and Further Readings

- Employee Assistance Professionals Association (EAPA). (2010). *What is an employee assistance program (EAP)?* Arlington, VA: Employee Assistance Professionals Association (EAPA). Retrieved 1 May 2010, from <http://www.eapassn.org/i4a/pages/index.cfm?pageid=869>.
- Hargrave, G. E., Hiatt, D., Alexander, R., & Shaffer, I. A. (2008). EAP treatment impact on presenteeism and absenteeism: Implications for return on investment. *Journal of Workplace Behavioral Health*, 23, 283–295. <https://doi.org/10.1080/15555240802242999>.
- Jacobson, J. (2010). Employee assistance programs (EAPs): An allied profession for work/life. Retrieved 22 Feb 2011, from http://wfnetwork.bc.edu/encyclopedia_entry.php?id=17296&area=All.
- Muto, T., Fujimori, Y., & Suzuki, K. (2004). Characteristics of an external employee assistance program in Japan. *Occupational Medicine*, 54, 570–575. <https://doi.org/10.1093/occmed/kqh124>.
- Richard, M. A., Emener, W. G., & Hutchison, W. S. (Eds.). (2009). *Employee assistance programs* (4th ed.). Springfield: Charles C Thomas.
- U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Labor Statistics. (2008). National compensation survey: Employee benefits in the United States. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office. Retrieved 22 Feb 2011, from <http://www.bls.gov/opub/cwc/cm20090416ar01p1.htm>.
- Walsh, D. C. (1982). Employee assistance programs. *The Milbank Memorial Fund Quarterly. Health and Society*, 60, 492–517.

Employer-Sponsored Assistance Programs

- Employee Assistance Programs (EAP)

Employment

► Job Classification

Employment Status

► Occupational Status

Empowerment

Mann Hyung Hur
Public Administration, Chung-Ang University,
Seoul, Korea

Definition

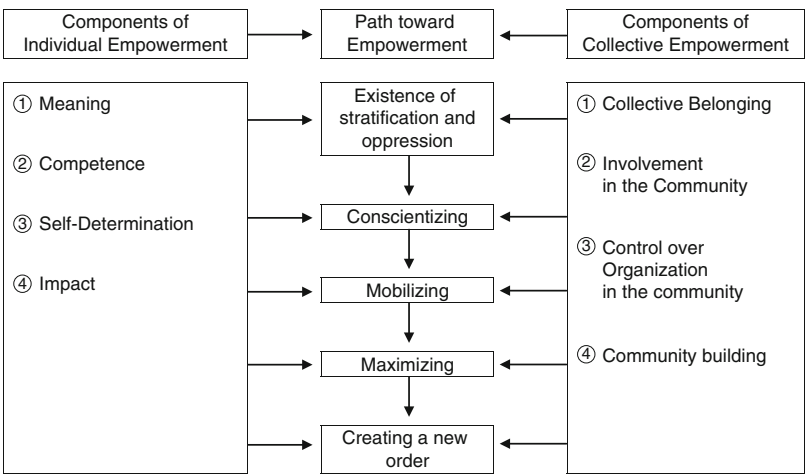
The origin of empowerment as a form of theory is traced back to the Brazilian educator Freire (1971), when he suggested a plan for liberating the oppressed people through education. Empowerment is a form of power that helps people gain control over their own lives. It is described as a social process that fosters power in people, their communities, and in their society (Page and Czuba 1999).

The process of empowerment can be synthesized into five progressive stages: an existing social disturbance, conscientizing, mobilizing, maximizing, and creating a new order, as seen in Fig. 1. Empowerment has two interrelated forms such as individual empowerment and collective empowerment. Each form has its own components. A set of four components, including meaning, competence, self-determination, and impact, are found in individual empowerment. A set of four components, including collective belonging, involvement in the community, control over organization in the community, and community building, are explored in collective empowerment. The goal of individual empowerment is to achieve a state of liberation strong enough to impact one’s power in life, community, and society. The goal of collective empowerment is to establish community building so that members of a given community can feel a sense of freedom, belonging, and power that can lead to constructive social change (Hur 2006).

The term, empowerment, has become a widely used word in the social sciences in the last decade across a broad variety of disciplines, such as community psychology, political theory, social work, education, women studies, and sociology. Community psychology is one of the disciplines in which the word *empowerment* is most frequently used. The typological approach to the study of empowerment is useful for field workers, social

Empowerment,

Fig. 1 Paths toward and components of empowerment



workers, community psychologists, and educators who help the disadvantaged (Hur 2006). These people, including the disadvantaged, the aged, and the young, can actualize the latent powers that an individual or group possesses, or enable them and use their capacities and power more effectively (Weil and Kruzich 1990). The process and components can be guidelines for practitioners who hope to develop the latent power of the “have-nots,” actualize their upward mobility, and finally establish a value of justice in a given society.

Cross-References

- [Behavior Change](#)
- [Behavioral Intervention](#)
- [Health Behavior Change](#)
- [Health Education](#)
- [Health Promotion and Disease Prevention](#)
- [Intervention Theories](#)
- [Lifestyle Changes](#)
- [Protective Factors](#)
- [Social Capital and Health](#)

References and Readings

- Freire, P. (1971). *Pedagogy of the oppressed*. New York: Seabury Press.
- Hur, M. H. (2006). Empowerment in terms of theoretical perspectives: Exploring a typology of the process and components across disciplines. *Journal of Community Psychology*, 34(5), 523–540.
- Page, N., & Czuba, C. E. (1999). Empowerment: What is it? *Journal of Extension*, 37(5), 24–32.
- Weil, M., & Kruzich, J. (1990). Introduction to the special issue. *Administration in Social Work*, 14(2), 1–12.

Endocrine Gland

- [Adrenal Glands](#)

Endocrinologist

- [Diabetologist \(Diabetes Specialist\)](#)

Endocrinology

Janine Sanchez
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami
Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Hormone system](#)

Definition

Endocrinology is the study of the endocrine system and its diseases. The endocrine system includes hormones (chemical mediators) and the organs/cells which secrete them. Endocrinology includes the study of the biosynthesis, storage, chemistry, and physiological function of hormones and the tissues that secrete them. The endocrine system consists of different parts of the body that secrete hormones directly into the blood rather than into a duct system. Hormones have many different functions and modes of action. They may act locally or away from their site of origin. They often interact with other biological systems.

Cross-References

- [Diabetes](#)

References and Further Reading

- Sperling, M. A. (2009). *Pediatric endocrinology* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: WB Saunders.
- Wilson, J. D. (2008). *Williams textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed.). Philadelphia: WB Saunders.

End-of-Life

Kerry Sherman¹ and Christopher J. Kilby²

¹Department of Psychology, Centre for Emotional Health, Macquarie University, Sydney, NSW, Australia

²Centre for Emotional Health, Department of Psychology, Macquarie University, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Synonyms

Advance care planning; Death anxiety; Palliative care; Wish for a hastened death

Definition

End-of-life is a life stage characterized by deteriorating bodily and/or cognitive functioning associated with an approaching death of an individual of any age. End-of-life can last weeks to years and is associated with unique needs of the individual often requiring specialized or palliative care and advanced care planning to attempt to minimize physical suffering via medication and maximize well-being, autonomy, and meaning in life (Carr and Luth 2019).

Description

The transition into end-of-life and palliative care can be equally as distressing as when receiving the initial diagnosis for the condition that has led to this life stage. It can be difficult for an individual to understand or accept the transition into this life stage if there is not a high level of effective communication between the individual, their family, and the team providing the palliative care (Costantini et al. 2018). One approach to maximizing the effectiveness of this communication in a culturally sensitive way is to utilize advance care

planning which aims to work with individuals and their family to develop an end-of-life care plan that considers their values at an individual, cultural, and spiritual level (Carr and Luth 2019). However, recent research has suggested that the healthcare professionals involved in this transition do not always feel prepared or adequately trained to properly facilitate this transition (Van der Haeghen et al. 2018). Although palliative care, generally, is associated with decreased physical suffering (Carr and Luth 2019), if the transition into palliative care is not facilitated appropriately, the individual may experience suffering in relation to their unmet psychosocial needs (Cagle et al. 2017b). These psychosocial needs include existential threat and autonomy, psychological well-being (depression, anxiety, adjustment disorder, and hopelessness), and a desire for a hastened death.

With the aim of end-of-life care being to minimize suffering, it is not designed to prevent deteriorations in body functionality. Hence, one major psychosocial concern in end-of-life revolves around the loss of physical autonomy of the individual. This, coupled with an impending death, can result in a loss of personal identity and cause a sense of existential threat. More than 80% of patients in palliative care experience existential threat (Grossman et al. 2018). If left untreated, this can lead to depression and anxiety and a desire for a quickened death. Research has found that social-based interventions, repurposing time to give meaning to the remaining life of the individual, and creating daily routines can help to promote sensations of autonomy and minimize existential threat (Wang et al. 2017).

Approximately one-third of those receiving palliative care will experience depression, 10% will experience anxiety, and 1 in 7 will experience adjustment disorder (short-term depression and/or anxiety accompanied by functional and behavioral issues associated with poor coping in the transition into end-of-life) during this life stage (Mitchell et al. 2011). Depression and adjustment disorder present differently at end-of-life, with

depression being characterized by lowered mood, anhedonia, pessimism, and self-pity. Adjustment disorder, in addition to the symptoms of depression, is further characterized by decreases in social functioning. The loss of body functionality and autonomy in end-of-life also can promote feelings of hopelessness and powerlessness due to the individual believing that nothing can be done to improve the situation. However, cognitive behavioral-based therapies appear to be an appropriate and effective intervention strategy to improve these issues in individuals at end-of-life (Monforte-Royo et al. 2012).

In some cases, the loss of control and autonomy can result in a desire for a hastened death. Existential threat can also promote the desire for a hastened death with the individual wanting their personal suffering to end, the suffering of the family to end, or to exert or express some level of control over their life by taking control over when they will die (Monforte-Royo et al. 2012). Therapies aimed at instilling meaning into life, such as Meaning of Life Therapy, Dignity Therapy, Life Review Therapy, and Memory Specificity Training, have all been demonstrated to minimize the desire for a hastened death by providing the individual with a sense of meaning and purpose in the remaining time of their life (Wang et al. 2017).

There is a growing desire of those at end-of-life to spend their final days at home, rather than in a palliative care facility. Although there is evidence that quality of life in the individual can be increased through in-home palliative care, this seems to only be true if the in-home care is facilitated through an effective program managed by a palliative care facility. Without this effective support, in-home care is actually associated with increased psychological distress with one study reporting up to 80% of in-home palliative care recipients reporting some aspect of psychological distress (Küttner et al. 2017). Moreover, this approach to care places greater pressure on the individual's family to provide the necessary care for the individual.

Family carers of end-of-life individuals often mirror the emotional distress experienced by the individual at end-of-life. Moreover, caring for the

individual at end-of-life can promote feelings of isolation or being unable to escape caring duties, and this can increase the burden experienced by the carer (Cagle et al. 2017a). To this extent, a high level of support and communication between the palliative care facilities and the family carer's is needed to minimize the sensation of this burden. Moreover, it is important that the carer's psychological well-being be addressed just as adequately as the individual at end-of-life, particularly once the individual passes away and the carer moves into bereavement (Cagle et al. 2017a).

Cross-References

- [Chronic Disease Management](#)
- [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- [Communication Skills](#)

References and Further Reading

- Cagle, J. G., Bunting, M., Kelemen, A., Lee, J., Terry, D., & Harris, R. (2017a). Psychosocial needs and interventions for heart failure patients and families receiving palliative care support: A systematic review. *Heart Failure Reviews*, 22(5), 565–580. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10741-017-9596-5>.
- Cagle, J. G., Unroe, K. T., Bunting, M., Bernard, B. L., & Miller, S. C. (2017b). Caring for dying patients in the nursing home: Voices from frontline nursing home staff. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, 53(2), 198–207. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpainsymman.2016.08.022>.
- Carr, D., & Luth, E. A. (2019). Well-being at the end of life. *Annual Review of Sociology*, 45(1), 515–534. <https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev-soc-073018-022524>.
- Costantini, M., Apolone, G., Tanzi, S., Falco, F., Rondini, E., Guberti, M., . . . Di Leo, S. (2018). Is early integration of palliative care feasible and acceptable for advanced respiratory and gastrointestinal cancer patients? A phase 2 mixed-methods study. *Palliative Medicine*, 32(1), 46–58. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0269216317731571>.
- Grossman, C. H., Brooker, J., Michael, N., & Kissane, D. (2018). Death anxiety interventions in patients with advanced cancer: A systematic review. *Palliative Medicine*, 32(1), 172–184. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0269216317722123>.
- Küttner, S., Wüller, J., & Pastrana, T. (2017). How much psychological distress is experienced at home by patients with palliative care needs in Germany? A cross-sectional study using the distress thermometer.

- Palliative and Supportive Care*, 15(02), 205–213. <https://doi.org/10.1017/S1478951516000560>.
- Mitchell, A. J., Chan, M., Bhatti, H., Halton, M., Grassi, L., Johansen, C., & Meader, N. (2011). Prevalence of depression, anxiety, and adjustment disorder in oncological, haematological, and palliative-care settings: A meta-analysis of 94 interview-based studies. *The Lancet Oncology*, 12(2), 160–174. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045\(11\)70002-X](https://doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045(11)70002-X).
- Monforte-Royo, C., Villavicencio-Chávez, C., Tomás-Sábado, J., Mahtani-Chugani, V., & Balaguer, A. (2012). What lies behind the wish to hasten death? A systematic review and meta-ethnography from the perspective of patients. *PLoS ONE*, 7(5), e37117. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0037117>.
- Van der Haeghen, B., Bossuyt, I., Menten, J., & Rober, P. (2018). Helping hospital professionals to implement advance care planning in daily practice: A European Delphi study from field experts. *Journal of Research in Nursing*. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1744987118772604>.
- Wang, C. W., Chow, A. Y., & Chan, C. L. (2017). The effects of life review interventions on spiritual Well-being, psychological distress, and quality of life in patients with terminal or advanced cancer: A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Palliative Medicine*, 31(10), 883–894. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0269216317705101>.

End-of-Life Care

Andrea Croom

Department of Psychology, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

End-of-life issues; Terminal care

Definition

End-of-life care is a general term used to describe all aspects of care received by patients with a terminal illness or terminal condition that has become advanced, progressive, and/or incurable. End-of-life care has become increasingly important in the past century as life expectancies have increased and causes of death have predominantly moved from acute illnesses (e.g., infections) to chronic and terminal illnesses (e.g., cancer and

heart disease). The general goal of end-of-life care is to help patients achieve a “good death” as they define it. End-of-life care is provided through palliative care and hospice services and frequently incorporates complementary and alternative medicines (e.g., massage therapy, pet therapy, music therapy, aromatherapy, acupuncture, etc.). These services aim to improve patient *quality of life* through reducing pain and managing symptoms, addressing spiritual and emotional needs, and providing family/caregiver support.

Description

Issues for Patients (Advance Care Planning)

End-of-life care emphasizes the importance of patient autonomy through advance care planning, which is the process of patients, healthcare professionals, and caregivers discussing and formally documenting the patients’ preferences for healthcare treatment as death approaches. The Patient Self Determination Act (PSDA) passed by the United States Congress in 1990 requires healthcare facilities that receive federal funding to educate patients and the community about advance directives. Advance directives are oral and written instructions about the patients’ goals and wishes concerning future medical care that becomes effective only when a person cannot speak for him or herself. Decisions are commonly made about desires for mechanical ventilation (e.g., respirator), nutrition, and hydration (e.g., feeding tubes), kidney dialysis, and antibiotic treatments. Advance care planning also involves making decisions about receiving cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) when vital functions cease. Patients who do not wish to receive CPR can complete a Do Not Resuscitate (DNR) order, which is kept as part of their medical file. Finally, patients are able to appoint a durable medical power of attorney (sometimes referred to as a healthcare proxy). This is the person who will be responsible for making decisions for the patient about healthcare treatment after the patient lacks the capacity to do so for him or herself. Advance care planning should be formally documented as well as verbally communicated between patients,

caregivers, and healthcare professionals to ensure that the patients' wishes are known and understood. All states legally recognize some form of advance directives.

Issues for Healthcare Professionals

Healthcare professionals are responsible for many important aspects of end-of-life care. Healthcare professionals must formulate and communicate information to patients about their prognosis (i.e., how long the patient is expected to live). Developing an accurate prognosis is difficult to do considering the unpredictability of disease, the large number of life-extending technologies available, and the great number of unknown and unmeasurable variables that influence how and when a person will die. Communicating this information to patients is equally difficult due to concerns about over- or under-estimating life expectancy, instilling or destroying hope, and cultural differences about discussing death. Healthcare professionals are also responsible for helping patients to engage in advance care planning and determining when specific treatments are not likely to benefit the patient (i.e., medically futile treatments). Healthcare professionals' major responsibility is to identify and manage symptoms, which typically become more severe as the illness or condition progresses. These symptoms commonly include: (1) pain, (2) increased sleep, drowsiness, or unresponsiveness, (3) decreased needs for food and fluids, loss of appetite, nausea or vomiting, (4) decreased socialization and increased withdrawal, (5) depression, (6) confusion about time, place, or identity (i.e., delirium), (7) changes in bladder or bowel control, (8) changes in temperature regulation (e.g., skin feels cool), and (9) respiratory changes (e.g., irregular and shallow breaths). Finally, healthcare professionals aid in assessing the patients' capacity to make healthcare decisions (i.e., capacity assessment).

Issues for Caregivers

Caregivers play an important role in end-of-life care as family members and friends are often responsible for most of the day-to-day care of patients during the end of life. The risk for

caregiver stress is high as caregivers have to balance their normal daily activities, additional care giving responsibilities, efforts to help the patient adjust to the illness, and their personal emotional reactions to and fears about the illness. Even though family members report high levels of satisfaction with the care-giving experience, they also report more depressive symptoms and psychosocial stress than the general public. As the illness progresses, there are additional care-giving needs and the psychosocial distress of caregivers becomes more prevalent. Untreated psychosocial distress in caregivers is associated with poorer patient care, increased health problems for caregivers, and more severe grief reactions after patient death. Caregivers must learn how to care for the patient while continuing to practice good self-care. Caregivers also have the additional stress of surrogate decision making when the patients lacks the capacity to make their own healthcare decisions.

Ethical Issues

End-of-life care is an area of medicine that frequently involves ethical dilemmas. The majority of laws related to end-of-life care are governed by individual states and there is wide variation in how the states approach these issues.

Early debates focused on determining when a patient is legally dead. Death was traditionally considered the point at which a patient's vital physical functions cease; however, advances in life support technology have made it more difficult to determine when someone's body is no longer functioning. The Uniform Determination of Death Act (UDDA), written by the President's Commission on Bioethics in 1981, confronts the complexities concerning the declaration of death. The UDDA states that a person can be declared dead when *either* the heart and lungs *or* the brain and brain stem stop functioning permanently, but specific guidelines are determined by individual states. Declaring the point at which a patient has died can be an important issue in organ donation.

One of the most prominent debates related to end-of-life care has been the issue of euthanasia (also referred to as "hastened death"). Euthanasia is an act where a third party, usually implied to be

a physician, terminates the life of a person either passively or actively. Physician-assisted suicide is a specific form of euthanasia where a doctor provides a patient with a prescription for drugs that the patient can choose to voluntarily use to end his or her life. The main distinction between physician-assisted suicide and active euthanasia is that the physician is not the person physically administering the drugs. The Oregon Death with Dignity Act (1997) and the Washington Death with Dignity Act (2008) made it legal in these two states for patients to hasten their own death with a prescribed lethal dose of medication from a physician.

There are several unique patient populations which carry their own ethical concerns. First, until recently children with terminal conditions have been granted limited autonomy in making decisions about their end-of-life care. As recently as the 1960s, the consensus was that children should not be informed of a terminal diagnosis because they would not be able to understand and would find the news too upsetting. Parents have legal rights to make decisions for their children, but many healthcare professionals now feel that it is beneficial for children to be included in healthcare discussions and to be permitted to make their wishes known. Ethical dilemmas arise when parents and children disagree about healthcare decisions, when two parents with equal custodial rights disagree about healthcare decisions, or when parents refuse physician treatment or do not appear to be acting in the “best interest” of their child. Second, culturally diverse populations have been found to favor different treatment preferences (e.g., African Americans and Hispanics are more likely than European Americans to express a preference for life-sustaining treatment), to engage less frequently in advance care planning, to use services such as hospice less frequently, and to report higher levels of insufficient pain management. Many cultures do not prioritize patient autonomy and prefer to pass decision-making responsibilities to others in the family. Healthcare professionals must balance respecting cultural differences while still sufficiently providing end-of-life care and informing patients of their options.

Cross-References

- [Euthanasia](#)
- [Hospice](#)
- [Palliative Care](#)
- [Physician-Assisted Suicide](#)
- [Self-Care](#)
- [Surrogate Decision Making](#)
- [Symptoms](#)

References and Further Readings

- American Psychological Association. (1998). *Report of the APA working group on assisted suicide and end-of-life decisions*. Retrieved 15 Jan 2011 from <http://www.apa.org/pubs/info/reports/aseol.aspx>.
- American Psychological Association. (2002). *End-of-life issues and care brochure*. Retrieved 15 Jan 2011 from <http://www.apa.org/topics/death/end-of-life.aspx>.
- Association of Death Education and Counseling (ADEC). Published in 2012 in Deerfield, IL. Retrieved 15 Jan 2011 from www.adec.org.
- Callanan, M., & Kelley, P. (1992). *Final gifts: Understanding the special awareness, needs, and communications of the dying*. New York: Bantam Books.
- Feldman, D. B., & Lasher, S. A. (2007). *The end-of-life handbook: A compassionate guide to connecting with and caring for a dying loved one*. Oakland: New Harbinger.
- Ingram, D. J. (2003). *A good death: A guide to life's last voyage*. Bloomington: AuthorHouse.
- Kessler, D. (1997). *The needs of the dying: A guide for bringing hope, comfort, and love to life's final chapter*. New York: HarperCollins.
- Kinzbrunner, B., & Policzer, J. (2010). *End of life care: A practical guide* (2nd ed.). New York: McGraw Hill.
- Kubler-Ross, E. (1969). *On death and dying*. New York: Scribner.
- University of Minnesota Center for Bioethics. (2005). *End-of-life care: An ethical overview*. Retrieved 16 Dec 2010 from www.ahc.umn.edu/img/assets/26104/End_of_Life.pdf.
- Werth, J., & Blevins, D. (2009). *Decision-making near the end of life: Issues, developments, and future directions*. New York: Taylor & Francis Group LLC.

End-of-Life Care Preferences

- [DNR Order](#)

End-of-Life Issues

► End-of-Life Care

Endogenous Morphine

► Endogenous Opioids/Endorphins/Enkephalin

Endogenous Opioids/ Endorphins/Enkephalin

James A. McCubbin

Department of Psychology, Clemson University,
Clemson, SC, USA

Synonyms

Dynorphins; Endogenous morphine; Endomorphins; Opiate neuropeptides; Opiate peptides; Opiate receptors

Definition

Endogenous opioids are neuropeptides with morphine-like activity that are naturally synthesized within the body. These neuropeptides have widespread distribution throughout the central and peripheral nervous systems, and various endocrine and other tissues. Opioids function as neurotransmitters and hormones, with a wide variety of biobehavioral effects in health and disease. Their effects on physiological and psychological responses to intense aversive and appetitive stimuli suggest potentially important roles in the etiology and treatment of self-regulatory disorders of appetite, affect, and adaptation to stress.

Description

Classification of Opioid Peptides and Receptors

Endogenous opioids systems include several different neuroactive peptides that are linked, in turn, to a matrix of distinctive receptor systems. The opioid peptides are divided into basic subgroups, e.g., endorphins, enkephalins, and dynorphins, based on their biosynthetic parent molecules. A separate group of endomorphins has been identified, but these peptides are not yet well characterized. Opioid receptors are part of the family of G-protein-coupled receptors and are classified into multiple receptor types and subtypes based on relative affinity for selective agonists and antagonists. For example, μ (mu) receptors demonstrate high affinity for morphine and endomorphins, while δ (delta) receptors are highly selective for enkephalins, and κ (kappa) receptors show high affinity and activity for dynorphins. Another putative receptor type, the ϵ (epsilon) receptor, has been postulated to explain beta-endorphin activity not mediated via the other receptor types.

Distribution of Opioid Peptides and Receptors

Endogenous opioids and receptors are localized in the central and peripheral nervous systems, including neuroendocrine stress pathways, and in brain areas mediating reward and reinforcement. For example, opioid peptides and/or receptors are found in afferent and integrative pain nuclei, as well as in the two major stress effector pathways, the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenocortical (HPA) axis and the hypothalamic-sympathoadrenomedullary (SAM) axis. Enkephalins have an abundant distribution throughout the limbic and sympathetic systems, while endorphin-containing cells are prominent in the hypothalamus and in the anterior pituitary. Dynorphins are widely distributed throughout both central and peripheral nervous systems. Opioid systems are intimately incorporated into peripheral organs including the heart and the gastrointestinal system.

The diversity of opioidergic molecular representation yields, in turn, a diversity of functions, with important behavioral and physiological effects.

Role of Opioids in Stress, Neuroendocrine Reactivity, and Homeostasis

Endogenous opioids are important regulators of both the anterior and the posterior pituitary. Endogenous opioid mechanisms inhibit both the SAM and the HPA axes, suggesting opioidergic input to corticotropin-releasing factor neurons in the paraventricular hypothalamus. Opioids influence stress-induced pituitary release of adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) and prolactin, as well as release of growth hormone and luteinizing hormone. In the posterior pituitary, endogenous opioids inhibit release of both vasopressin and oxytocin. Therefore, regulation of the HPA axis and other important neuroendocrine pathways is mediated, in part, via endogenous opioids.

Peripheral opioid peptides and receptors are especially prominent in pituitary systems intimately involved in maintenance of homeostasis during stress. For example, beta-endorphin is localized in anterior and intermediate pituitary and is co-stored and co-released with ACTH. Therefore, activation of the HPA cascade is associated with pituitary release of beta-endorphin into the systemic circulation, where it has critical roles in the integrated response to psychological stressors.

The SAM axis, including the peripheral sympathetic nervous system and the adrenal medullae, is subject to central opioidergic control in the hypothalamus and elsewhere (McCubbin 1993). CNS opioids are capable of both excitatory and inhibitory functions, and these effects are especially pertinent to biobehavioral function and dysfunction. Opioids have been shown to inhibit sympathetic and adrenomedullary responses at multiple levels of the SAM axis. For example, peripheral enkephalins are found in autonomic ganglia and in the spinal sympathetic cell columns. Enkephalins have been shown to inhibit release of catecholamines from peripheral

sympathetic nerve endings as well as from the adrenal medullae.

Opioids in Health and Disease

Endogenous opioids play important roles in motivational integration of appetitive and aversive behavior and are critical in the maintenance of visceral homeostasis. The importance of these basic mechanisms of adaptation suggests that opioid dysfunction could underlie a variety of disorders involving dysregulation of appetite, affect, and neuroendocrine reactivity.

Appetitive Mechanisms Maintaining Chemical and Behavioral Dependencies

Opioid input to mesolimbic dopaminergic and other CNS systems suggests a potentially important role in appetitive reward and reinforcement mechanisms that maintain behavioral and chemical dependencies (Koob and Le Moal 1997). Moreover, the important role of endogenous opioids in mediation of CNS reward systems may point to better treatment strategies in substance abuse and other disorders of appetite regulation (Reece 2011). One overarching theory is that if opioids mediate the CNS reward mechanisms in dependency, then pharmacological opioid blockade may disengage brain mechanisms that reinforce and maintain a variety of different chemical and behavioral dependencies. For example, clinical trials are currently underway to examine the potential therapeutic effects of opioid antagonists, either alone or in combination with other drugs, in several appetitive disorders, including nicotine and alcohol dependence, and obesity. (Note: The efficacy of opioid antagonists in treatment of heroin/morphine dependencies operates via multiple complex mechanisms.) Therefore, opioid brain mechanisms may point to novel strategies for development of new behavioral and pharmacological treatments for dependencies and other diseases of appetite regulation.

Acute and Chronic Pain

Opioid systems contribute to important endogenous analgesic mechanisms, such as stress-induced

analgesia and the hypoalgesia accompanying elevated blood pressure. These effects on pain sensitivity may be intimately associated with higher CNS integration of pain perception. For example, endogenous opioids do much more than simply inhibit pain perception; they may also have significant effects on regulation of affective responses to both painful and non-painful aversive stressors. This observation reinforces the notion that endogenous opioid systems play an important role in the higher-level integration of affect in the appraisal of emotionally meaningful stimuli.

Endogenous opioidergic analgesia appears to be important for coping with both acute and chronic pain. Evidence suggests that chronic pain patients have reduced opioid levels in plasma and cerebrospinal fluid. This is consistent with the opioid depletion hypothesis, which proposes that chronic pain is associated with progressive depletion of endogenous opioid analgesic neurochemicals and/or downregulation of opioid receptors (Bruehl et al. 1999). This depletion of analgesic opioids results in dysfunction of an important endogenous mechanism for coping with chronic pain. Opioids may also have a role in the expression or maintenance of self-injurious behavior.

Depression and Posttraumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD)

Endogenous opioids play an important role as physiological mechanisms for coping with psychological stress, and these systems have been implicated in stress-related disorders, including depression and PTSD (Merenlender-Wagner et al. 2009). Opioid blockers can reverse stress analgesia and performance deficits in learned helplessness, and can worsen symptoms of PTSD. Persons exposed to traumatic stress may utilize their endogenous opioid analgesic and/or affect regulatory mechanisms to cope. Thus, the role of opioids in HPA axis regulation, endogenous analgesia, and multiple CNS pathways provide a neurobiological rationale for role of opioids in regulation of affect and coping with traumatic stress.

Cardiovascular Disease

A biobehavioral link between opioids and risk for cardiovascular disease is found in work with the opioid antagonists, naloxone and naltrexone. These studies suggest that opioids can inhibit sympatho-adrenomedullary and blood pressure responses to psychological stress in young persons with normal circulatory risk profiles. However, young persons at increased risk for hypertension show reduced opioid inhibition of sympathetic, HPA, and circulatory responses to stress (McCubbin 1993). This apparent dysfunction of inhibitory opioids may underlie exaggerated blood pressure reactivity to stress and its attendant cardiovascular health consequences. Moreover, there is some evidence to suggest that opioid hypoalgesia is associated, at least in part, with blood pressure elevations and increased risk for hypertension development. Recent evidence points to gender differences in opioid effects on blood pressure control that are dependent, in part, on estrogen. The relationship between reduced opioid inhibition of the HPA and SAM axes, blood pressure dysregulation, and hypoalgesia requires additional work to better characterize these complex interactions.

Opioids and Behavioral Therapies

Behavioral control of endogenous opioid tone may become an important strategy in prevention and treatment of self-regulatory disorders of appetite and adaptation to stress. Interestingly, studies of aerobic fitness, relaxation, and systematic desensitization suggest that these forms of stress management operate, at least in part, via activation of endogenous opioid mechanisms (McCubbin et al. 1996). For example, opioid blockade with naltrexone can reverse the reductions in cardiovascular stress reactivity associated with aerobic fitness and progressive relaxation training. Thus, in persons at risk for hypertension who lack robust opioidergic inhibition of the SAM axis, some behavioral stress-management interventions can restore normal opioid inhibitory function. Behavioral prevention and treatment strategies that target normalization of endogenous opioid tone may become more common as sophistication of these peptide systems grows.

Summary

The endogenous opioid neuropeptides and receptors form a diverse set of basic neuroendocrine systems that modulate behavioral and physiological reactions to aversive and appetitive stimuli. These systems have become critical for understanding integrated responses to psychological stress in health and disease. Better understanding of these neuropeptide systems will provide insight into the developmental etiology and new treatment strategies for self-regulatory disorders of appetite, affect, and adaptation to stress.

Cross-References

- [Addiction](#)
- [Affect](#)
- [Analgesia](#)
- [Appetite and Appetite Regulation](#)
- [Autonomic Nervous System \(ANS\)](#)
- [Behavioral Therapy](#)
- [Blood Pressure](#)
- [Depression](#)
- [Exercise](#)
- [Homeostasis](#)
- [Hypertension](#)
- [Hypothalamus](#)
- [Obesity](#)
- [Pain](#)
- [Post Traumatic Stress Disorder](#)
- [Relaxation](#)
- [Smoking](#)
- [Stress](#)
- [Substance Abuse](#)
- [Sympathetic Nervous System \(SNS\)](#)
- [Systematic Desensitization](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bruehl, S., McCubbin, J. A., & Harden, R. N. (1999). Theoretical review: Altered pain regulatory systems in chronic pain. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 23, 877–890.
- Koob, G. F., & Le Moal, M. (1997). Drug abuse: Hedonic homeostatic dysregulation. *Science*, 278, 52–57.

- McCubbin, J. A. (1993). Stress and endogenous opioids: Behavioral and circulatory interactions. *Biological Psychology*, 35(2), 91–122.
- McCubbin, J. A., Wilson, J. F., Bruehl, S., Ibarra, P., Carlson, C. R., Norton, J. A., et al. (1996). Relaxation training and opioid inhibition of blood pressure response to stress. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 64(3), 593–601.
- Merenlender-Wagner, A., Dikshtein, Y., & Yadid, G. (2009). The beta-endorphin role in stress-related psychiatric disorders. *Current Drug Targets*, 10(11), 1096–1108.
- Reece, A. S. (2011). Hypothalamic opioid-melanocortin appetitive balance and addictive craving. *Medical Hypotheses*, 76(1), 132–137. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mehy.2010.09.002>.

Endometriosis

Emily E. Lenk¹, Beate Ditzen², Friedrich Wieser³ and Robert N. Taylor⁴

¹Wake Forest School of Medicine, Winston-Salem, NC, USA

²Department of Psychosocial Medicine, Heidelberg University, Heidelberg, Germany

³Department of Gynecology and Obstetrics, Emory University School of Medicine, Atlanta, GA, USA

⁴Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Wake Forest School of Medicine, Winston-Salem, NC, USA

Definition

Endometriosis (EM) is a common, gynecological, inflammatory disorder defined by the presence of benign but metastatic endometrial tissue implants outside of the uterus (Giudice 2010). Histologically, the lesions consist of endometrial glands and stroma and often are infiltrated by hemosiderin-laden macrophages, nerves, and capillaries.

Description

EM can be asymptomatic, but it often is associated with severe dysmenorrhea (painful

menstruation or “cramps”), pelvic pain (intermittent non-menstrual or continuous pain in the lower abdomen), dyspareunia (pain during sexual intercourse), and infertility (Guo and Wang 2006). The prevalence of pelvic EM is about 10% in the general population, whereas it approaches 35–50% in symptomatic premenopausal women (Rogers et al. 2017), with annual costs of work productivity loss per employed woman varying from US\$208 in Nigeria to US\$23,712 in Italy (Nnoaham et al. 2011). The etiology of this disease involves a complex interplay of genetic, environmental, immunologic, and psychological factors (Ahn et al. 2015); however, the ultimate pathogenesis of EM remains incompletely understood. Although increasingly clinical signs and risk factors are used to direct therapy, surgical assessment, by laparoscopy or laparotomy, remains the diagnostic gold standard. Reluctance to subject young women to operative procedures causes a delay of approximately 10 years from symptom onset to diagnosis (Giudice 2010). Of the three common phenotypes of EM, only surgical assessment can identify superficial peritoneal lesions. But ovarian endometriomas and deeply infiltrating EM in the rectovaginal septum can be detected by transvaginal sonogram and MRI, with promising specificity and sensitivity, providing less-invasive diagnostic approaches for the future (Kavoussi et al. 2016). The extent of disease is classified according to the revised American Society for Reproductive Medicine guidelines (ASRM 1997), which is comprised of stages I–IV. Unfortunately, the categories correlate poorly with pain and infertility, suggesting that mechanisms beyond lesion volume, such as neuro-angiogenesis, mediate symptoms in women with EM (Asante and Taylor 2011).

There is currently no cure for EM, and successful treatment of EM-associated symptoms typically requires medical as well as surgical interventions. Medical therapies include agents that suppress ovarian function and limit the growth of EM lesions, such as androgens, progestins (both oral and intrauterine), GnRH analogues, aromatase inhibitors, and contraceptive steroids. The treatment of EM-associated pain

has been well studied, and most major medical therapies are superior to placebo. New medical therapies and those under current investigation include dienogest (synthetic oral progestin), elagolix (orally bioavailable GnRH antagonist), and several selective progesterone receptor modulators as well as nonhormonal products such as quinagolide (dopamine agonist) (Brown and Farquhar 2015; Kavoussi et al. 2016). EM-associated infertility, however, does not respond to medical therapies alone. Surgical treatments involving lesion excision and/or ablation, as well as assisted reproduction techniques, are beneficial in restoring fertility in EM, with IVF being the most effective option (Opie et al. 2011). Surgery commonly provides temporary pain relief, but symptoms recur in 50% of the women within 2 years, unless post-operative medical treatment is prescribed. Advances in operative visualization techniques with indocyanine green fluorescence are promising for improved lesion detection, allowing more complete surgical eradication (Guan et al. 2016).

EM-affected women will often report high levels of psychological distress (Siedentopf et al. 2008; Kaatz et al. 2010) with quality-of-life parameters approaching those of women with cancer (Nnoaham et al. 2011), although these outcomes can be challenging to quantify accurately (De Graaff et al. 2015). In line with this, increased rates of anxiety and major depression were found in women with EM (Rowlands et al. 2016; Friedl et al. 2015; Chen et al. 2016). Women suffering from EM have an increased risk of other medical conditions, including hypothyroidism, fibromyalgia and chronic fatigue syndrome, autoimmune diseases, allergies, and asthma (Sinaii et al. 2002). Current evidence implicates inflammatory, endocrinological, neurological, and psychological features of EM, which can further increase disease burden. As a consequence, a multilevel approach to EM management should include an evaluation of psychological distress and appropriate psychosocial interventions (e.g., cognitive behavioral therapy for pain) to improve coping with this chronic disease.

Cross-References

- [Chronic Pain](#)
- [Chronic Pain, Types of \(Cancer, Musculoskeletal, Pelvic\), Management of](#)
- [Fibromyalgia](#)
- [Management of Depression](#)

References and Further Reading

- Ahn, S., Monsanto, S., Miller, C., Singh, S., Thomas, R., & Tayade, C. (2015). Pathophysiology and immune dysfunction in endometriosis. *BioMed Research International*, 2015, 795976.
- American Society for Reproductive Medicine. (1997). Revised American Society for Reproductive Medicine classification of endometriosis: 1996. *Fertility and Sterility*, 67(5), 817–821.
- Asante, A., & Taylor, R. N. (2011). Endometriosis: The role of neuroangiogenesis. *Annual Review of Physiology*, 73, 163–182.
- Brown, J., & Farquhar, F. (2015). An overview of treatments for endometriosis: JAMA clinical evidence synopsis. *JAMA*, 313(3), 296–297.
- Chen, L., Hsu, J., Huang, K., Bai, Y., Su, T., Li, C., et al. (2016). Risk of developing major depression and anxiety disorders among women with endometriosis: A longitudinal follow-up study. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 190, 282–285.
- De Graaff, A. A., Dirksen, C. D., Simoons, S., De Bie, B., Hummelshoj, L., D’Hooghe, T. M., & Dunselman, G. A. (2015). Quality of life outcomes in women with endometriosis are highly influenced by recruitment strategies. *Human Reproduction*, 30(6), 1331–1341.
- Friedl, F., Riedl, D., Fessler, S., Wildt, L., Walter, M., Richter, R., et al. (2015). Impact of endometriosis on quality of life, anxiety, and depression: An Austrian perspective. *Archives of Gynecology and Obstetrics*, 292(6), 1393–1399.
- Giudice, L. C. (2010). Clinical practice: Endometriosis. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 362(25), 2389–2398.
- Guan, X., Nguyen, M. T., Walsh, T. M., & Kelly, B. (2016). Robotic single-site endometriosis resection using firefly technology. *Journal of Minimally Invasive Gynecology*, 23(1), 10–11.
- Guo, S. W., & Wang, Y. (2006). The prevalence of endometriosis in women with chronic pelvic pain. *Gynecologic and Obstetric Investigation*, 62(3), 121–130.
- Kaatz, J., Solari-Twadell, P. A., Cameron, J., & Schultz, R. (2010). Coping with endometriosis. *Journal of Obstetric, Gynecologic, and Neonatal Nursing*, 39(2), 220–225.
- Kavoussi, S. K., Lim, C. S., Skinner, B. D., Lebovic, D. I., & As-Sanie, S. (2016). New paradigms in the diagnosis and management of endometriosis. *Current Opinion in Obstetrics & Gynecology*, 28(4), 267–276.

- Nnoaham, K. E., Hummelshoj, L., Webster, P., d’Hooghe, T., de Cicco, N. F., et al. (2011). Impact of endometriosis on quality of life and work productivity: A multicenter study across ten countries. *Fertility and Sterility*, 96, 366–373.
- Opien, H. K., Fedorcsak, P., Byholm, T., & Tanbo, T. (2011). Complete surgical removal of minimal and mild endometriosis improves outcome of subsequent IVF/ICSI treatment. *Reproductive Biomedicine Online*, 23, 389–395.
- Rogers, P., Adamson, G. D., Al-Jefout, M., Becker, C. M., D’Hooghe, T. M., Dunselman, G. A. et al. (2017). Research priorities for endometriosis: Recommendations from a global consortium of investigators in endometriosis. *Reproductive Sciences*, 24(2), 202–226.
- Rowlands, I. J., Teede, H., Lucke, J., Dobson, A. J., Mishra, G. D. (2016). Young women’s psychological distress after a diagnosis of polycystic ovary syndrome or endometriosis. *Human Reproduction*, 31(9), 2072–2081.
- Siedentopf, F., Tariverdian, N., Rucke, M., Kentenich, H., & Arck, P. C. (2008). Immune status, psychosocial distress and reduced quality of life in infertile patients with endometriosis. *American Journal of Reproductive Immunology*, 60(5), 449–461.
- Sinaii, N., Cleary, S. D., Ballweg, M. L., Nieman, L. K., & Stratton, P. (2002). High rates of autoimmune and endocrine disorders, fibromyalgia, chronic fatigue syndrome and atopic diseases among women with endometriosis: A survey analysis. *Human Reproduction*, 17(10), 2715–2724.

Endomorphins

- [Endogenous Opioids/Endorphins/Enkephalin](#)

Endothelial Function

Jet J. C. S. Veldhuijzen van Zanten
School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation
Sciences, University of Birmingham,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Blood vessel wall](#)

Definition

Blood vessels consist of three layers. The inner layer is the intima, which is made up from endothelial cells. The middle layer, the tunica media, consists of mainly smooth muscle cells, which are important for the maintenance of the vessel diameter. Finally, the outer layer, the tunica externa, consists of connective tissue. The endothelium is a dynamic organ with several functions such as regulation of the vascular tone, platelet aggregation, thrombosis, and adhesion of leucocytes, which are vasoprotective.

Description

The peripheral vascular system consists of arteries, capillaries, and the veins. The arteries supply the organs with blood, the capillaries allow for the exchange of metabolites between the blood and the organs, and the veins facilitate the return of the blood to the heart. Blood vessels consist of three layers. The inner layer is the intima, which is made up from endothelial cells. The middle layer, the tunica media, consists of mainly smooth muscle cells, which are important for the maintenance of the vessel diameter. Finally, the outer layer, the tunica externa, consists of connective tissue. The relative thickness of these individual layers is dependent on the position of the vascular tree of the vessel wall. For example, in capillaries, the vessel wall mainly consists of endothelial cells to optimize metabolite exchange (Vander et al. 2006).

The endothelium is a dynamic organ with several functions, such as regulation of the vascular tone, platelet aggregation, thrombosis, and adhesion of leucocytes, which are vasoprotective. However, when damage to the endothelial cells occurs, this can result in endothelial dysfunction, which is a precursor of atherosclerosis (Lerman and Zeiher 2005). The activity of the endothelial cells can be influenced by sympathetic nerve activity, hormones, and inflammatory molecules, among other factors (Levick 2003). From a behavioral medicine perspective, endothelial

function has been associated with health behaviors such as physical activity (Green et al. 2003) and smoking (Toda and Toda 2010). In addition, sympathetic activation through acute exercise or mental stress can influence vascular function (Joyner and Halliwill 2000).

Assessing Endothelial Function

An important function of endothelial cells is the maintenance of vascular tone, which is emphasized by the release of several vasoactive substances by the endothelial cells. Therefore, it is not surprising that most in vivo endothelial function assessments are concerned with the capacity of the endothelium to vasodilate. A principal vasodilator released by the endothelial cells is nitric oxide (NO). Following the conversion from L-arginine under the influence of nitric oxide synthase, NO starts a cascade of conversions which leads to smooth muscle cell relaxation, i.e., vasodilation (Sandoo et al. 2010). It is outside the scope of this section to describe the mechanisms of NO and other vasoactive substances in detail.

Various methods are available for the assessment of endothelial function in the peripheral circulation. Most functional assessments examine vasodilation in response to a standardized stimulus, with an attenuated vasodilatory response indicative of endothelial dysfunction. As described above, a major contributor to vasodilation bioavailability of NO starts a cascade of events, which results in the relaxation of the vascular smooth muscle cells. Therefore, impaired vasodilation can be due to both reduced NO bioavailability in the endothelium or impaired capacity of the vascular smooth muscle to dilate. Consequently, most endothelial function assessments involve both measures of endothelial-dependent vasodilation (related to NO bioavailability) and endothelial-independent vasodilation (related to vascular smooth muscle function) (Sandoo et al. 2010). Given the difference in anatomy and function of arteries, the functional assessments vary depending on their position in

the arterial tree. The microvasculature involves conduit arteries, such as the brachial and femoral artery, whereas microvasculature entails arterioles or resistance vessels. In addition to the functional assessment described below, the structure of the vessel walls can be examined with intima medial thickness (for conducting artery, such as carotid) and nailfold capillaroscopy (for capillaries) (Sandoo et al. 2010).

Microvascular function can be assessed using iontophoresis or forearm blood flow. Iontophoresis assessment involves the administration of vasoactive substances through the skin by applying a small electrical current. The most commonly used substances are acetylcholine (ACh) for the assessment of endothelium-dependent vasodilation and sodium nitroprusside (SNP) for endothelium-independent vasodilation. Perfusion of the vessels in the skin is assessed using either laser Doppler flowmetry, when examining a single point, or laser Doppler imaging, when the area of interest is a larger area of skin (Turner et al. 2008).

Forearm blood flow is most commonly used together with venous occlusion strain gauge plethysmography. For this assessment, venous outflow of the vessels is occluded, while allowing arterial inflow (Joyner et al. 2001). Changes in arm circumference are assessed using strain gauge plethysmography, with the slope of the increase in arm circumference reflecting of blood flow. The advantage of this assessment is that it can be carried out at several time points throughout a testing session, so immediate changes of blood flow in response to mental stress or exercise can be investigated using this method. Strain gauge forearm blood flow assessments are also carried out in response to intravenous infusion of vasoactive substances, such as ACh and bradykinin.

Macrovascular function can be assessed using flow-mediated dilation. Blood flow to the arm will be occluded for a period of 5 min by inflating a brachial cuff placed around the arm to at least 50 mmHg above systolic blood pressure. Release of the cuff will result in a sudden inflow of blood into the arm. The increase in shear stress as a result of the surge of blood (reactive hyperemia) will induce vasodilation in healthy arteries, which is

dependent on NO production of the endothelium. Endothelial-independent vasodilation is assessed by investigating the vasodilation in response to the administration of glyceryl trinitrate (GTN). Macrovascular dilation is most commonly quantified by recording the vessel diameter using high-resolution ultrasound (Corretti et al. 2002).

Finally, arterial stiffness is related to the compliance of the vessel wall and can be classified as both a structural as well as a functional measure of endothelial function. This assessment explores the capacity of the vasculature to accommodate pressure pulsations. Reduced elasticity will increase the afterload on the heart, which means that the strain on the heart is increased. Applanation tonometry is used to record the arterial pressure waveforms. For pulse-wave analyses, the waveforms of one artery are explored and this results into the calculation of the augmentation index, which is derived from the first and second systolic peak in pressure. For pulse-wave velocity, waveforms are recorded on two sites on the arterial tree, and the combination of the transit time between the waveforms and the distance between assessment points will be used to calculate pulse-wave velocity. An increase in augmentation index and an increase in pulse-wave velocity are indicative of arterial stiffness (Sandoo et al. 2010).

It is worth noting that substantial training is necessary in order to carry out these vascular assessments to a sufficient standard. In addition, all these assessments are influenced by several factors such as timing of assessment, fasting, caffeine consumption, and smoking. Therefore, it is important that all assessments are carried out following published guidelines (Corretti et al. 2002; Turner et al. 2008).

Cross-References

- Arteries
- Atherosclerosis
- Intima-Media Thickness (IMT)
- Nitric Oxide Synthase (NOS)
- Vasoconstriction
- Vasodilation, Vasodilatory Functions

References and Further Reading

- Corretti, M. C., Anderson, T. J., Benjamin, E. J., Celermajer, D., Charbonneau, F., Creager, M. A., et al. (2002). Guidelines for the ultrasound assessment of endothelial-dependent flow-mediated vasodilation of the brachial artery: A report of the International Brachial Artery Reactivity Task Force. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 39, 257–265.
- Green, D. J., Walsh, J. H., Maiorana, A., Best, M. J., Taylor, R. R., & O'Driscoll, J. G. (2003). Exercise-induced improvement in endothelial dysfunction is not mediated by changes in CV risk factors: Pooled analysis of diverse patient populations. *Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol*, 285, H2679–H2687.
- Joyner, M. J., & Halliwill, J. R. (2000). Sympathetic vasodilatation in human limbs. *The Journal of Physiology*, 526(Pt 3), 471–480.
- Joyner, M. J., Dietz, N. M., & Shepherd, J. T. (2001). From belfast to Mayo and beyond: The use and future of plethysmography to study blood flow in human limbs. *Journal of Applied Physiology*, 91, 2431–2441.
- Lerman, A., & Zeiher, A. M. (2005). Endothelial function: Cardiac events. *Circulation*, 111, 363–368.
- Levick, J. R. (2003). *An introduction to cardiovascular physiology* (4th ed.). Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Sandoo, A., Veldhuijzen van Zanten, J. J. C. S., Metsios, G. S., Carroll, D., & Kitas, G. D. (2010). The endothelium and its role in regulating vascular tone. *Open Cardiovascular Medicine Journal*, 4, 302–312.
- Toda, N., & Toda, H. (2010). Nitric oxide-mediated blood flow regulation as affected by smoking and nicotine. *European Journal of Pharmacology*, 649, 1–13.
- Turner, J., Belch, J. J. F., & Khan, F. (2008). Current concepts in assessment of microvascular endothelial function using laser Doppler imaging and iontophoresis. *Trends in Cardiovascular Medicine*, 18, 109–116.
- Vander, A., Sherman, J., & Luciano, D. (2006). *Human physiology* (10th ed.). New York: McGraw Hill.

Endothelial Nitric Oxide Synthase (eNOS)

► Nitric Oxide Synthase (NOS)

End-Stage Renal Disease

Quinn D. Kellerman
Department of Psychology, University of Iowa,
Iowa City, IA, USA

Synonyms

Chronic kidney disease (CKD)

Definition

The kidneys serve four primary functions: (1) to clean the blood of toxins, (2) to remove excess fluid and waste, (3) to balance chemicals (i.e., sodium, potassium, phosphorus), (4) and to release hormones that control blood pressure, the production of red blood cells, and contribute to bone strength. End-stage renal disease (ESRD) is reached when the capacity of the kidneys declines such that they are no longer able to adequately perform these functions, ultimately requiring the affected individual to initiate treatment in the form of renal replacement therapy to sustain life.

Description

Cause, Symptoms, and Diagnosis of ESRD

ESRD most commonly manifests as a secondary condition resulting from poorly managed diabetes or hypertension. Chronic elevations in blood glucose and blood pressure cause damage to the small blood vessels in the kidneys, which over time can progress to ESRD. Other causes of ESRD include autoimmune diseases such as lupus, complications of infection such as glomerulonephritis, and genetic abnormalities such as polycystic kidney disease.

Many symptoms are associated with the progression of kidney disease to ESRD, including weakness, fatigue, lack of energy, appetite and weight loss, nausea and vomiting, metallic taste in the mouth, breath smelling like ammonia, changes in skin color, rash or itching, cognitive impairment, changes in urination, swelling, shortness of breath, feeling cold, and leg or flank pain.

According to the National Kidney Foundation's Kidney Disease Outcomes Quality Initiative (KDOQI), chronic kidney disease (CKD) can progress through stages of severity, with stage 5 typically denoting a diagnosis of ESRD and a need for treatment initiation. The stages of disease are determined by the level of kidney damage (i.e., pathologic abnormalities) and/or the degree of deficiency in the individual's estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR), a commonly used biomarker to diagnose ESRD. The eGFR is calculated based on serum creatinine, age, race,

and gender; values less than 15 mL/min/1.73 m² are suggestive of stage 5 kidney disease, or ESRD. These values indicate that the kidneys are performing at less than 15% of normal functioning. In addition, increases in blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and protein in the urine (proteinuria) are markers of ESRD.

Prevalence of ESRD in the US Population

The Annual Data Report from the United States Renal Data System suggests that the number of individuals affected by ESRD increases annually, with a record high of 571,414 patients receiving treatment in 2009. There exist significant racial and ethnic disparities in ESRD, with African Americans nearly four times more likely to develop ESRD than Whites. Native Americans and Asians are at least twice as likely to be diagnosed with ESRD compared to Whites, and the rate of ESRD in the Hispanic population is 1.5 greater than that of non-Hispanics. With regard to age and gender, the ESRD rates are higher among older adults and males. Recent reports suggest that the growing number of new ESRD patients has been driven by a linear increase in diagnoses among individuals aged 45–64; in contrast, there has been minimal change in the incidence rates of patients age 65 and older over the last several years.

Treatments for ESRD

Hemodialysis is the most common type of treatment for ESRD, with 65% of the affected population (approximately 372,000 patients) utilizing this treatment modality. Individuals who participate in hemodialysis typically come to a hospital or clinic 3 days per week for 3–5 h treatments. During this time, they are connected to a machine via an insertion site such as arteriovenous fistula or graft surgically configured in the forearm or a port catheter in the chest. The hemodialysis machine removes blood from the body, filtering accumulated toxins and removing excess fluids, and then returns the cleaned blood. This process is primarily directed by a nurse or dialysis technician, leaving the patient a relatively passive recipient of treatment. Hemodialysis can also be conducted in the home environment, though this is less commonly implemented due to expense and caregiver burden.

Peritoneal dialysis is an intervention for ESRD that requires the patient to be a more active participant in the treatment process. There are two forms of this treatment: continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis (CAPD) and continuous cyclical-assisted peritoneal dialysis (CCPD). In CAPD, a permanent catheter is inserted into the patient's abdomen, which allows for a bag of sterile dialysis solution called dialysate to be connected to the body. The patient is responsible for performing "exchanges" which involve draining the dialysate into the peritoneal cavity via a sterile tube, allowing for the blood to filter through the peritoneal membrane leaving the excess fluid and toxins behind in the dialysate, and then discarding the used solution before reinitiating the procedure. Patients usually perform 3–4 exchanges throughout the course of the day while ambulatory and one longer overnight exchange while they are sleeping. In contrast, CCPD utilizes an automated cyclical to perform the exchanges, with 3–5 cycles overnight while the patient sleeps and one long exchange during the day being the typical prescription. Recent reports indicate that approximately 6–7% of the ESRD population utilizes peritoneal dialysis as their treatment, which is a notable decrease from the 12–18% prevalence in the 1980s and 1990s. However, there is some evidence to suggest that the number of peritoneal dialysis users will increase in upcoming years.

Transplantation is often considered the preferred option for treatment of ESRD as it offers advantages including increased survival time and improvements in quality of life. Due to the continued shortage of donor organs, contraindications to surgery in some patients, and concerns about rejection, however, this treatment is less commonly prescribed for ESRD compared to dialysis. Approximately 30% of the ESRD population undergoes renal transplantation with organs from either a deceased or living donor. According to the Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network (OPTN), an average of 17,000 renal transplants have been performed annually over the last 5 years, with approximately 65% from deceased donors and 35% from living donors. Survival of the renal graft across donor type is relatively high for renal transplant recipients (i.e., 1-year = 92%,

3-year = 82%, and 5-year = 71%), and living donor grafts tend to fare better than deceased donor grafts.

Adherence to ESRD Treatments

All patients undergoing treatment for ESRD are required to follow a lifelong regimen that necessitates ongoing behavioral involvement to ensure that the medical intervention remains safe and effective. For patients whose ESRD is treated with renal transplantation, adherence to an immunosuppressant medication regimen for the remainder of life is required to prevent the body from rejecting the transplanted organ. Individuals receiving hemodialysis as their method of ESRD treatment have an arguably more complex behavioral regimen to follow. Although patients undergo lengthy treatments several days per week, this does not fully compensate for normative kidney function; specifically, excess fluid and toxins build up and remain in the body between hemodialysis sessions. Fluid overload can lead to deleterious consequences, including congestive heart failure, pulmonary edema, cramping on dialysis, hypertension, fatigue, and decreased life expectancy. Similarly, buildup of chemicals that are dysregulated in ESRD can lead to complications such as myocardial infarction, stroke, heart arrhythmias, increased mortality, and bone demineralization. Thus, it is necessary for patients to restrict the amount of fluid ingested, and also their sodium, phosphorus, and potassium intake while their ESRD is being treated with hemodialysis.

Given the multifaceted and complex nature of the ESRD treatment regimen, the majority of patients have difficulty adhering to these recommendations. Research indicates that approximately 40–60% of ESRD patients do not adhere to one or more central aspects of the medical regimen. Adherence to fluid intake restrictions is most commonly measured by documented interdialytic weight gains (IWG). Individuals with ESRD are weighed before and after their hemodialysis treatments. The amount of weight gained *between* treatment sessions, calculated, for example, by subtracting the post-dialysis weight on a Monday from the pre-dialysis weight on a

Wednesday, is considered a proxy for the amount of fluid the individual ingested during that time. One kilogram (kg) of weight is equivalent to 1 L of fluid; the recommended limitation is 1 L of fluid per day (including fluid in solid foods), which would equate to 2–3 kg of weight gained between sessions. Though patients tend to have the most difficulty with fluid restrictions, dietary adherence is also problematic. Sodium, potassium, and phosphorus intake is typically measured by serum levels drawn each month. There is modest evidence to suggest that in nearly half of cardiac-related ESRD patient deaths, non-adherence to dietary restrictions is the most significant contributor to mortality.

Researchers have also documented that patients experience the extreme restrictions on fluid intake as the most stressful and behaviorally challenging aspect of the ESRD hemodialysis regimen. There are a number of factors that likely contribute to this experience. First, individuals with ESRD tend to have increased thirst at baseline, often related to high blood glucose levels in those with diabetes and/or medication side effects. Second, the hemodialysis process itself, which rapidly removes excess fluid and toxins, leads to an electrolyte imbalance, increasing sodium appetite and thirst. Finally, contextual and behavioral factors impact patients' ability to follow fluid recommendations. For example, restricting fluid intake contradicts social norms about the health benefits of consuming large amounts of water, drinking has become habitual for many individuals and habits are difficult to break, and there exist substantial environmental cues and social pressures to consume fluid in many different contexts. The fluid intake adherence problem often becomes cyclical in nature: increased thirst leads to greater fluid consumption, which leads to larger interdialytic weight gains and longer dialysis sessions, which further increases electrolyte imbalance and thirst, maintaining and increasing the severity of nonadherence.

Determinants and Interventions Related to ESRD Adherence

As might be expected based on reviews of the general adherence literature, a comprehensive

understanding of the factors that contribute to nonadherence among ESRD patients has proven difficult to attain. Researchers have studied several factors thought to influence adherence in this population, and the results have been mixed. For example, some findings indicated that family support and marital adjustment were predictors of improved fluid intake adherence, while other studies found no evidence of an association between social support and fluid or dietary adherence among dialysis patients. The impact of cognitive and personality factors on adherence in ESRD has also been examined, including self-efficacy, health locus of control, perceived barriers, conscientiousness, and hostility. Higher self-efficacy expectations have been associated with improved fluid adherence in dialysis and better medication adherence in both dialysis and transplantation, whereas greater perceived barriers were related to poorer medication adherence. The findings relating health locus of control and adherence have been inconsistent. Personality characteristics such as conscientiousness and hostility have been significantly associated with adherence in ESRD patients in some work.

Some researchers have posited that the examining the interaction between patient characteristics or preferred style of coping with stress and the contextual features of the treatment regimen might help us to better understand adherence in this population. For example, individuals who endorse avoidant coping styles or prefer to have less control/involvement in their treatment have been found to display better adherence to hemodialysis performed in a center or hospital where the contextual demands (i.e., staff-directed, passive patient role) match the individual's preferences.

Some researchers have theorized that difficulties with adherence are related to deficits in self-regulation skills, suggesting that building these skills through interventions focused on self-monitoring, goal-setting, self-reinforcement, and increasing individuals' ability to delay gratification may be an effective strategy. Educational, cognitive, and cognitive behavioral interventions have been cited most frequently in the literature, though the results have been mixed. A recent

review of randomized controlled trials designed to improve adherence in hemodialysis patients found that interventions utilizing cognitive or cognitive behavioral techniques showed the largest effects and warrant future research.

Depression and ESRD

Mood disorders have been documented as one of the most common psychiatric diagnoses in patients with ESRD. The prevalence of depression varies based on the type of assessment used; approximately 20–45% of patients endorse symptoms of depression on self-report instruments, and 15–20% may be diagnosed with a depressive disorder following a clinical interview. While depression is recognized in a large number of individuals with ESRD, underdiagnosis and lack of adequate psychological treatment remain significant problems in this population. One of the difficulties in diagnosing depression in ESRD relates to the overlap in somatic depression symptoms with the uremic symptoms of kidney disease. Fatigue, loss of interest in sex, difficulty sleeping, loss of appetite, and problems with concentration and attention could be attributed to both depression and ESRD; thus, the etiology of these symptoms is often unclear. As a result, it has been suggested that assessing the cognitive or nonsomatic symptoms may enable researchers and clinicians to more accurately identify depression in patients with ESRD.

Several factors have been studied in order to better understand contributors to depression in individuals with kidney disease. The research suggests that perceptions of control and of how intrusive the illness is in disrupting important life domains are related to depression in this population. More specifically, incongruence between beliefs about control or illness intrusiveness and the relevant contextual or situational factors are predictors of depression in ESRD. The effects of social support on moderating depression symptoms have also been examined, and the results have been inconsistent.

Depression has been found to have deleterious consequences for patients with ESRD and earlier stages of CKD, including increased nonadherence to treatment recommendations, morbidity, and

mortality. Some research has also suggested that depression is associated with decisions to prematurely terminate dialysis treatment. Thus, adequate treatment of depression in ESRD is essential. A review of the literature suggests that pharmacologic treatment with certain serotonin-selective reuptake inhibitors may be safe and effective for patients with later stage CKD and ESRD. Cognitive behavioral therapy was also found to be one of the most promising interventions for depression in this population. Future behavioral medicine research is necessary to expand our understanding of ESRD, particularly as the prevalence of this chronic illness is projected to increase over time.

Cross-References

- [Adherence](#)
- [Depression](#)
- [Health Behaviors](#)
- [Locus of Control](#)

References and Readings

- Christensen, A. J., & Ehlers, S. L. (2002). Psychological factors in end-stage renal disease: An emerging context for behavioral medicine research. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 70, 712–724. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0022-006X.70.3.712>.
- Cvengros, J. A., & Christensen, A. J. (2006). Adherence to dialysis treatment in end-stage renal disease. In W. T. O'Donohue & E. R. Levensky (Eds.), *Promoting treatment adherence: A practical handbook for health care providers* (pp. 331, 458 pp–340). Thousand Oaks: Sage Publications, Inc. ix.
- Hedayati, S. S., Yalamanchili, V., & Finkelstein, F. O. (2011). A practical approach to the treatment of depression in patients with chronic kidney disease and end-stage renal disease. *Kidney International* advanced online publication 19 October 2011. <https://doi.org/10.1038/ki.2011.358>.
- Khalil, A. A., & Frazier, S. K. (2010). Depressive symptoms and dietary nonadherence in patients with end-stage renal disease receiving hemodialysis: A review of quantitative evidence. *Issues in Mental Health Nursing*, 324–330. <https://doi.org/10.3109/01612840903384008>.
- Mattheson, M. L., & Russell, C. (2010). Interventions to improve hemodialysis adherence: A systematic review

of randomized-controlled trials. *Hemodialysis International*, 14, 370–382. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1542-4758.2010.00462.x>.

- National Kidney Foundation. (2009). *Kidney disease facts*. Retrieved March 7, 2009 from <http://www.kidney.org>
- U.S. Renal Data System, (USRDS). (2009). *Annual data report: Atlas of end-stage renal disease in the United States, National Institutes of Health*. Bethesda: National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases.

Energy

- [Affect Arousal](#)
- [Fatigue](#)

Energy In

- [Caloric Intake](#)

Energy Intake

- [Caloric Intake](#)

Energy: Expenditure, Intake, Lack of

Jennifer Heaney

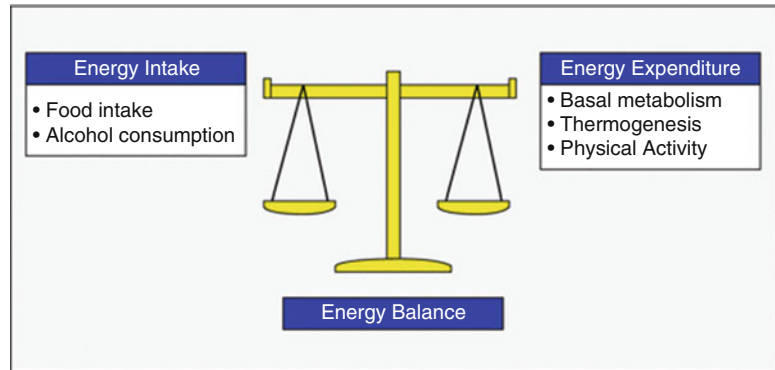
Clinical Immunology Service, The University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

Definition

Energy expenditure refers to the amount of energy an individual uses to maintain essential body functions (respiration, circulation, digestion) and as a result of physical activity. Total daily energy expenditure is determined by resting or basal metabolic rate (BMR), food-induced thermogenesis,

Energy: Expenditure, Intake, Lack of,

Fig. 1 Energy balance: energy intake should be equal to energy expenditure in order to achieve energy balance



E

and energy expended as a result of physical activity.

BMR is the minimum amount of energy that the body requires for essential organ and cellular function when lying in a state of physiological and mental rest. BMR accounts for typically 65–75% of total energy expenditure. Differences in BMR exist between genders and across ages. Females tend to have a lower BMR than males, and BMR decreases with age. These differences can largely be accounted for by differences in fat-free mass, which is proportional to BMR.

Food-induced thermogenesis refers to the increase in energy expenditure following the ingestion of food. This increase in energy expenditure is a result of digestion, absorption, and transportation of nutrients and accounts for approximately 10% of total energy expenditure.

Physical activity refers to energy expended when carrying out everyday tasks and exercise. It typically accounts for 15–30% of energy expenditure but can vary greatly between individuals. For example, energy expenditure expended through physical activity would be greater in an individual who exercises regularly or is an athlete, compared to someone who is sedentary.

Energy intake is the amount of energy taken in by an individual in the form of food and beverage consumption; this is typically measured in calories (kcal). The actual amount of energy intake required varies between individuals and depends on their BMR and physical activity levels – energy intake must be matched with energy expenditure to ensure *energy*

balance. If food intake exceeds energy expenditure, through overeating or sedentary behavior, then energy storage occurs resulting in weight gain. This potentially can lead to an individual becoming overweight and at risk of obesity. Alternatively, a negative imbalance can occur where energy expenditure exceeds energy intake. This can occur as a result of undereating, possibly as a result of an eating disorder, or when an individual is involved in a high level of physical activity but failing to match this expenditure with food intake. A negative energy balance subsequently results in weight loss. Although a state of negative energy balance is desirable for overweight individuals in order to lose weight, in the long term if energy intake does not match energy expenditure, this may cause an individual to become underweight. The above information has been compiled from the following sources, where more detail of energy expenditure can be found (McArdle et al. 2001; Widmaier et al. 2004) (Fig. 1).

References and Further Reading

- McArdle, W. D., Katch, F. I., & Katch, V. L. (2001). *Exercise physiology: Energy, nutrition and human performance* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Widmaier, E. P., Raff, H., & Strang, K. T. (2004). *Vander, Sherman, & Luciano's human physiology: The mechanism of body function*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

Engel, George

Marc D. Gellman
Behavioral Medicine Research Center,
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Biographical Information



George Libman Engel was born in New York City in 1913. He completed his undergraduate studies in chemistry at Dartmouth College, graduating in 1934. He then studied medicine at the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, graduating in 1938. He was an intern at Mount Sinai Hospital (New York City), a research fellow at Harvard Medical School, and a graduate assistant in medicine at the Peter Bent Brigham Hospital (now Brigham and Women's Hospital).

In 1942, Engel moved to Cincinnati at the invitation of John Romano, who left Harvard to become the chair of the department of psychiatry at the University of Cincinnati. Both Engel and Romano then moved to the University of Rochester Medical School in 1946.

When commencing his medical career, Engel believed strongly in physical explanations of disease processes, even though some colleagues

were incorporating psychosomatics into clinical practice. However, during his time at the University of Cincinnati, he slowly but surely became "converted" to the psychosomatic school. During his career, he became a prominent member of the American Psychosomatic Society, being elected as president and also serving as the editor of its journal, *Psychosomatic Medicine*.

Major Accomplishments

Engel published numerous books and articles on the relation of emotion and disease and on the incorporation of these ideas into medical training and clinical practice. Under his direction, the program at the University of Rochester became a leading center in the development of psychosomatic theory and training. Over time, he developed the "biopsychosocial model," which posits that health and illness are consequences of the interaction of biological, psychological, and social factors. This model was described in his 1977 paper entitled "The need for a new medical model: a challenge for biomedicine," published in the journal *Science*. The abstract of this paper reads as follows:

The dominant model of disease today is biomedical, and it leaves little room within its framework for the social, psychological, and behavioral dimensions of illness. A biopsychosocial model provides a blueprint for research, a framework for teaching, and a design for action in the real world of health care.

The literature is now replete with work addressing the biopsychosocial model, both as a theoretical framework and an approach to clinical practice. As Borrell-Carrio et al. (2004) observed, "The biopsychosocial model is both a philosophy of clinical care and a practical clinical guide. Philosophically, it is a way of understanding how suffering, disease, and illness are affected by multiple levels of organization, from the societal to the molecular. At the practical level, it is a way of understanding the patient's subjective experience as an essential contributor to accurate diagnosis, health outcomes, and humane care."

During the 1980s and 1990s, the biopsychosocial model and biopsychosocial medicine “became the watchword of progressive unification of the medical and behavioral sciences, including psychiatry, in a search for etiological and preventive factors in human health and disease” (Dowling 2005). Perhaps not surprisingly, given its eminence, various authors since then have suggested modifications and emphasized the importance, too, of other approaches. For example, Kontos (2011) commented that recognizing that medicine is made up of heterogeneous tasks, “no one model, including the biopsychosocial model, tends to all of them.” Nonetheless, a quote from Dowling (2005) reviewing Engel’s life is an appropriate way to conclude this entry: “He would appreciate the fact that some of us have taken on a bit of his flintiness, attempt his wry humor, and retain his determination to see our patients as ‘united, biopsychosocial persons’ rather than as ‘biomedical persons’ divorced from their psychological and social dimensions.”

Editors’ Note: Dr. Engel passed away in 1999.

Cross-References

► [Biopsychosocial Model](#)

References and Further Readings

- Adler, R. H. (2009). Engel’s biopsychosocial model is still relevant today. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 67, 607–611.
- Borrell-Carrio, F., Suchman, A. L., & Epstein, R. M. (2004). The biopsychosocial model 25 years later: Principles, practice, and scientific inquiry. *Annals of Family Medicine*, 2, 576–582.
- Brown, T. M., (2000). The growth of George Engel’s biopsychosocial model. Retrieved 24 December 2011 from <http://human-nature.com/free-associations/engel1.html>
- Dowling, A. S. (2005). George Engel, M.D. (1913–1999). *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 162(11), 2039.
- Engel, G. L. (1968). A life setting conducive to illness. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 69, 293–300.

- Engel, G. L. (1977). The need for a new medical model: A challenge for biomedicine. *Science*, 196, 129–136.
- Engel, G. L. (1980). The clinical application of the biopsychosocial model. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 137, 535–544.
- Engel, G. L. (1997). From biomedical to biopsychosocial: Being scientific in the human domain. *Psychosomatics*, 38, 521–528.
- Engel, P. A. (2001). George L Engel, MD, 1913–1999: Remembering his life work; Rediscovering his soul. *Psychosomatics*, 42, 94–99.
- Frankel, R. M., Quill, T. E., & McDaniel, S. H. (Eds.). (2003). *The biopsychosocial approach: Past, present, future*. Rochester: University of Rochester Press.
- Kontos, N. (2011). Perspective: Biomedicine-menace or straw man? Reexamining the biopsychosocial argument. *Academic Medicine*, 86, 509–515.

Engineering Psychology

► [Human Factors/Ergonomics](#)

Environmental Tobacco Smoke

► [Secondhand Smoke](#)

EPA

► [Omega-3 Fatty Acids](#)

Epidemiological Studies

► [Hispanic Community Health Study/Study of Latinos](#)

Epidemiological Study

► [Observational Study](#)

Epidemiology

G. David Batty

Department of Epidemiology and Public Health,
University College London, London, UK

Definition

Derived from the term epidemic, epidemiology is the study of the distribution and determinants of health-related states or events, particularly disease (communicable or noncommunicable). The discipline of epidemiology is eclectic, comprising facets of sociology, statistics, medicine, and demography. Although its development may be traced back to the scientific revolution of the 1600s, it was not until the nineteenth century that it was recognized as a subject area in its own right.

The goal of the discipline of epidemiology is disease control and prevention. As such, various methods can be used to carry out epidemiological investigations: descriptive studies (usually based on a cross-sectional design) can be used to investigate distribution of disease; analytical studies (e.g., case control, cohort, randomized controlled trial) can be used to examine determinants of disease.

Knowledge of the occurrence, etiology, and subsequent control of communicable diseases such as typhoid fever, smallpox, and cholera stemmed from early epidemiological studies, such as John Snow's investigation of the infamous 1854 cholera epidemic in London. The emergence of noncommunicable diseases such as coronary heart disease earlier last century led to epidemiology occupying a wider remit. Modifiable determinants of the growing epidemic of coronary heart disease were identified from large-scale epidemiological investigations beginning with the Framingham, the Seven Countries, and Whitehall cohort studies.

Today, a growing body of professionals from health education, environmental and occupational health, and health service administration, in addition to medical science students, are required to

have some knowledge of the foundations of epidemiology. Further details can be found in Hennekens and Buring (1987) and Rothman (2002).

Cross-References

- [Medical Sociology](#)
- [Mortality](#)
- [Mortality Rates](#)
- [Occupational Health](#)
- [Social Epidemiology](#)

References and Further Reading

- Hennekens, C. H., & Buring, J. E. (1987). *Epidemiology in medicine*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Rothman, K. J. (2002). *Epidemiology: An introduction*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Epigenetics

Alicia K. Smith¹ and James W. Schroeder²

¹Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Emory University SOM, Atlanta, GA, USA

²Genetics and Molecular Biology Program, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, USA

Definition

Epigenetics is the study of changes in gene expression that cannot be attributed to variation in DNA sequence. The etymology of this term comes from the Greek “epi-,” meaning “above” genetics and refers to covalent modifications of the DNA, its associated proteins, or mRNA transcripts.

Description

All somatic cells within an organism contain the same DNA sequence, but epigenetic patterns

regulate the timing and magnitude of gene expression by restricting the areas of the genome available for transcription and translation. This allows cells with the same genome to differentiate into specialized cells that perform a variety of functions (Jaenisch and Bird 2003).

Epigenetic regulation participates in vital developmental processes. For example, one of the two X chromosomes in each cell of a female is permanently silenced through a series of epigenetic changes in a process called X-chromosome inactivation (Jaenisch and Bird 2003). Epigenetic mechanisms also regulate genomic imprinting, a process in which an organism's parents contribute distinct epigenetic patterns that result in expression of only the maternally or paternally derived alleles in their offspring. Failure of these regulatory mechanisms can lead to developmental disorders such as Prader-Willi Syndrome or Angelman Syndrome (Feinberg 2007).

Previously established epigenetic patterns responsible for cellular differentiation, X-chromosome inactivation, and imprinting are generally maintained through mitosis. However, some aspects of the epigenome are labile such that they may respond to environmental conditions and change over the course of an organism's lifespan (Feinberg 2007).

DNA interacts with packaging proteins known as histones, which can be posttranslationally modified and facilitate dynamic gene regulation. Both the core (H2A, H2B, H3, and H4) and linker (H1 and H5) histones can be modified through methylation, acetylation, phosphorylation, ubiquitination, sumoylation, or citrullination. Each element of this histone code has a specific function. For example, histone acetylation typically promotes gene transcription while histone methylation can promote or repress transcription based on the where it occurs (Bannister and Kouzarides 2011).

Histone modifications often correspond to changes in methylation of DNA at the 5' position of the pyrimidine ring of cytosines within CpG dinucleotides (also called CpG sites). DNA methylation is the most widely studied epigenetic modification. It is concentrated in

repetitive elements of the genome such as Alu sequences to repress transcription of latent retroviral elements. CpG sites are overrepresented in the promoter region of many genes, and when they cluster in sufficient density, the region is called a CpG island. Methylation of cytosines regulates gene expression by influencing the recruitment and binding of regulatory proteins to DNA. Specifically, gene expression typically increases when CpG methylation of that gene decreases and vice versa (Jaenisch and Bird 2003).

Epigenetic regulation of gene expression can also be accomplished by a variety of non-protein coding RNA molecules (ncRNAs), which are continuously being discovered and characterized. RNA interference (RNAi) is a process by which ncRNA molecules bind to messenger RNA (mRNA) to regulate its translation into protein. As part of this process, small microRNA (miRNA) can bind a complementary strand of mRNA and repress its expression by targeting it for degradation or by directly preventing its translation. Similarly, small interfering RNA (siRNA) promotes mRNA cleavage and posttranscriptional silencing of a gene through induction of the RNA-induced silencing complex known as RISC (Taft et al. 2010).

Many epigenetic changes can occur over the course of an organism's lifetime as part of normal development, randomly as the organism ages or in response to environmental insults. However, if epigenetic changes occur in germ cells that participate in fertilization, epigenetic changes can be inherited from one generation to the next and may persist through multiple generations. With these and other recent discoveries, the role of epigenetic mechanisms in health and disease is being illustrated (Richards 2006).

Cross-References

- [DNA](#)
- [Gene Expression](#)
- [Methylation](#)
- [RNA](#)

References and Readings

- Bannister, A. J., & Kouzarides, T. (2011). Regulation of chromatin by histone modifications. *Cell Research*, 21(3), 381–395.
- Feinberg, A. P. (2007). Phenotypic plasticity and the epigenetics of human disease. *Nature*, 447(7143), 433–440.
- Jaenisch, R., & Bird, A. (2003). Epigenetic regulation of gene expression: How the genome integrates intrinsic and environmental signals. *Nature Genetics*, 33 (Suppl), 245–254.
- Richards, E. J. (2006). Inherited epigenetic variation—revisiting soft inheritance. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 7(5), 395–401.
- Taft, R. J., Pang, K. C., Mercer, T. R., Dinger, M., & Mattick, J. S. (2010). Non-coding RNAs: Regulators of disease. *The Journal of Pathology*, 220(2), 126–139. www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/epigenomics/

Epinephrine

George J. Trachte
Academic Health Center, School of Medicine-
Duluth Campus, University of Minnesota,
Duluth, MN, USA

Background

Epinephrine (adrenaline) is a major neurotransmitter of the sympathetic nervous system. Epinephrine partially mediates the body's reaction to stress by elevating heart rate, blood vessel tone, sweating, tremor, and blood pressure. Epinephrine is released primarily from the central region (medulla) of the adrenal gland in response to stressful situations.

Epinephrine interacts with at least five major protein receptors to produce a plethora of biological responses, typically characterized by an elevation of blood pressure and mobilization of energy stores. The major receptor interactions are with the following: α_1 to both constrict blood vessels, resulting in increased vascular resistance, and an elevation of blood pressure and activate sweat glands to promote nervous sweating; α_2 receptors to reduce the release of other catecholamines, such as norepinephrine, but also to

constrict blood vessels; β_1 receptors to elevate heart rate and renin secretion, both resulting in elevated blood pressure; β_2 receptors on smooth muscle, particularly in bronchioles to ease breathing, and on skeletal muscle to sensitize the muscle to other stimuli resulting in tremor; and β_3 receptors on adipose tissue to stimulate the breakdown of fat stores. The stimulation of both α_1 and β_2 receptors also mobilizes energy stores by activating glycogenolysis.

Physiological Relevance

The physiological actions of epinephrine primarily involve augmentation of the sympathetic nervous system to promote rapid heart rate, arterial constriction, higher blood pressure, mobilization of fuel stores, sweating, and dilation of bronchioles and pupils of the lung and eye, respectively.

Control of Release/Synthesis

Epinephrine is a catecholamine synthesized from norepinephrine primarily in the central portion (medulla) of the adrenal gland. The entire synthetic pathway involves conversion of an amino acid, tyrosine, to dihydroxyphenylalanine (DOPA), followed by conversion of DOPA to dopamine, and dopamine to norepinephrine and the final step is the conversion of norepinephrine to epinephrine. The enzymes involved in the pathway are the following, respectively: tyrosine hydroxylase, DOPA decarboxylase, dopamine hydroxylase, and phenylethanolamine-*N*-methyl transferase (PNMT). The latter strictly controls the synthesis of epinephrine and is most abundant in the adrenal medulla.

Localization and Molecular Biology

In addition to the adrenal medulla, other tissues capable of synthesizing epinephrine are the following: brain stem, retina, and left atrium of the heart. The distinguishing feature of the tissues synthesizing epinephrine is the presence of

PNMT. The gene controlling synthesis of this enzyme is located on chromosome 17 in humans. The enzyme consists of 282 amino acids and has a molecular mass of 30,835 g.

Behavioral Actions

The primary behavioral role for epinephrine involves mediation of stress responses. Epinephrine has been shown to increase memory in humans, particularly memory associated with fearful stimuli. Mice with a PNMT knock out demonstrate reduced conditioned fear and startle responses. These results are consistent with a role for epinephrine in conditions such as post-traumatic stress disorder. PNMT polymorphisms also are associated with attention deficit hyperactivity disorder in humans. Epinephrine also might be involved in mood because epinephrine infusions in animals can produce excitation or depression.

Epistasis

► Gene-Gene Interaction

Epstein-Barr Virus

Deidre Pereira¹ and Seema M. Patidar²

¹Department of Clinical Health and Psychology, University of Florida, College of Public Health and Health Professions, Gainesville, FL, USA

²Department of Clinical and Health Psychology, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL, USA

Synonyms

EBV; Human herpesvirus-4 (HHV-4); Kissing disease; “Mono” or mononucleosis

Definition

EBV was formally identified by M.A. Epstein and Y.M. Barr in 1964 while examining tissue

from a Burkitt’s lymphoma patient. EBV is a very common type of herpesvirus found in humans. About 95% of Americans will have contracted the virus by the age of 40. The virus is highly contagious and is difficult, if not impossible, to prevent. It is often called the “kissing disease” due to its ease of transmission between individuals through saliva. Children often acquire EBV through close contact with family members and the people around them who are likely to have the virus. In adolescents and young adults, EBV leads to infectious mononucleosis 30–50% of the time. Symptoms of active EBV, or infectious mononucleosis, commonly include swollen lymph nodes, swollen throat, and fever. Treatment is limited and focuses on minimizing symptoms of the infection. The incubation period from contraction to presentation of symptoms can range from 4 to 6 weeks. Symptoms of infectious mononucleosis can last up to 1–2 months, but EBV remains dormant in the body for the rest of a person’s life. EBV is present in the saliva and blood of infected persons and remains in some bodily cells after contraction. Since it functions as a virus, the body will develop antibodies to help fight off the virus. A “mono spot” test, which looks for these antibodies, is often administered for a formal diagnosis. Additionally, an elevated white blood cell count is indicative of active infection in the body. At times of immunosuppression, such as during cancer treatment, patients may experience reactivation of the virus, with or without associated symptoms. In some people, EBV may play a role in the development of Burkitt’s lymphoma and nasopharyngeal carcinoma. Other people may live with the latent form of EBV for a number of years without reactivation.

References and Readings

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and National Center for Infectious Diseases (2006, May 16). *Epstein-Barr virus and infectious mononucleosis*. Retrieved February 28, 2011, from <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/diseases/ebv.htm>
- Epstein, M. A., & Achong, B. G. (1979). *The Epstein-Barr virus*. Berlin: Springer.

The Patient Education Institute, Inc. (1995–2008). *X-Plain: Epstein–Barr virus/mono* [Last reviewed on November 9, 2007]. Retrieved February 28, 2011, from <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/tutorials/epsteinbarrvirusmono/id299103.pdf>

Equilibrium

► Homeostasis

Equipoise

► Principle of Equipoise

Erectile Dysfunction

Catherine Benedict
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Coral Gables, FL, USA

Synonyms

Impotence

Definition

Erectile dysfunction is a sexual dysfunction characterized by the consistent inability to develop or maintain an erection of the penis firm enough for satisfactory sexual performance. Symptoms of erectile dysfunction include trouble getting an erection, trouble keeping an erection, and/or reduced sexual desire.

Description

In the United States, it is estimated that erectile dysfunction affects 20–30 million men. The prevalence of erectile dysfunction of any degree is estimated to be approximately 39% in men

40 years old and up to 78% in men 75 years and older. Comorbid medical conditions such as obesity, diabetes, heart disease, or hypertension may increase the risk of developing erectile dysfunction. In men older than 50 years, approximately 40% of erectile dysfunction is due to atherosclerotic complications. The most common conditions associated with the development of erectile dysfunction include cigarette smoking, high blood pressure, lipid problems (cholesterol, triglycerides), and diabetes. Among diabetes patients, the prevalence of erectile dysfunction is approximately 50%, depending on age, duration, and severity of the diabetes. A high prevalence of erectile dysfunction is also observed with chronic renal failure, hepatic failure, sleep apnea, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, multiple sclerosis, Alzheimer's disease, and endocrine disorders such as low testosterone and thyroid problems. Pelvic or perineal trauma such as pelvic surgery (major prostate, bladder, and bowel operations) and pelvic radiation therapy are associated with erectile dysfunction, as is direct trauma to the perineum, which can lead to vascular problems.

Pathophysiology

Erectile dysfunction can be classified as psychogenic, organic, or mixed psychogenic and organic. That is, psychologic, neurologic, hormonal, arterial, or cavernosal impairment factors alone or in combination may cause erectile dysfunction. The mixed psychogenic and organic form of erectile dysfunction is the most common. Common psychological factors include performance anxiety and personal and/or relationship distress, which often result in lack of sexual arousal, overinhibition, and decreased libido. Erectile dysfunction may occur despite experiencing sexual desire and maintaining the ability to have an orgasm and ejaculate. Psychiatric disorders such as depression and schizophrenia have been related to increased risk of erectile dysfunction. Neurogenic causes of erectile dysfunction include the presence of disorders such as Parkinson's disease, Alzheimer's disease, stroke, and cerebral trauma, which often lead to decreased libido or failure to initiate nerve impulses or interrupted neural transmission that

lead to an inability to develop an erection. Hormonal factors associated with erectile dysfunction include hypogonadism and hyperprolactinemia. Androgen deficiency may also result in loss of libido and decreased nocturnal erections. Vasculogenic factors include generalized penile arterial insufficiency and veno-occlusive dysfunction. Inadequate arterial flow may be the result of hypertension, hyperlipidemia, cigarette smoking, diabetes, and pelvic or perineal trauma. Impaired veno-occlusion is associated with old age, Peyronie's disease, structural damage to the cavernous muscle and endothelium, and poor relaxation of the trabecular muscle, as well as diabetes and pelvic or perineal trauma. Drug-induced erectile dysfunction may result from a number of antipsychotic, antidepressant, and antihypertensive drugs that affect central neurotransmitter pathways involving serotonin, androgen, and dopamine. Additionally, cigarette smoking is associated with vasoconstriction and penile venous leakage and chronic alcohol abuse is associated with hypogonadism and polyneuropathy. Finally, old age is associated with a progressive decline in overall sexual function such that older men report decreased penile sensitivity, decreased testosterone levels, less turgid erections, less forceful erections, decreased ejaculation volume, and lengthened refractory period between erections. Age-related declines may be exacerbated with comorbid medical conditions such as diabetes, coronary heart disease, and chronic renal failure that lead to neural and/or vascular dysfunction.

Diagnosis

Initial evaluation of a man presenting with erectile difficulties includes a thorough examination of medical, sexual, and psychosocial histories, physical examination, and appropriate laboratory tests. Psychosexual factors to consider include alterations of sexual desire, ejaculation, and orgasm, presence of genital pain, and lifestyle factors, such as sexual orientation, presence of spouse or partner, and quality of the relationship with the partner. Risk factors including smoking, trauma, or surgery to the pelvic, perineal, or penile areas, and prescription or recreational drug use should be

considered. A detailed medical history should be taken and evaluation may also include laboratory tests to detect and rule out medical conditions that may be the cause of or comorbid with erectile difficulties and that may contraindicate certain therapies. Testing of testosterone levels, vascular and/or neurologic functioning, and monitoring of nocturnal erections may also be indicated in some patients. A physical examination should be conducted of the abdomen, penis, testicles, secondary sexual characteristics, and lower extremity pulses. The purpose of the initial evaluation is to identify psychosocial dysfunctions and organic comorbidities that contribute to erectile dysfunction. Assessment of patient's (and partner's) goals of treatment and preferences should also be conducted.

Treatment

Treatment of erectile dysfunction should address all the contributing factors associated with erectile difficulties. Appropriate treatment options should be utilized in a stepwise fashion according to medical expertise and patient preference. Healthcare professionals should carefully assess patients' (and their partners') goals for treatment; patients should be made aware of the risk involved with increasingly invasive treatments so that well-informed decisions are made with regard to the likelihood of treatment efficacy.

Cross-References

► [Aging](#)

References and Readings

- American Urological Association. (2006). *Management of erectile dysfunction*. Retrieved from <http://www.auanet.org/guidelines>
- Bacon, C. G., Mittleman, M. A., Kawachi, I., Giovannucci, E., Glasser, D. B., & Rimm, E. B. (2003). Sexual function in men older than 50 years of age: Results from the health professionals' follow-up study. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 139(3), 161–168.
- Benet, A. E., & Melman, A. (1995). The epidemiology of erectile dysfunction. *Urology Clinic of North America*, 22, 699–709.

- Eid, J. F., Nehra, A., Andersson, K. E., Heaton, J., Lewis, R. W., Morales, A., et al. (2000). First international conference on the management of erectile dysfunction overview consensus statement. *International Journal of Impotence Research*, 12(Suppl. 4), S2–S5.
- Feldman, H. A., Goldstein, I., Hatzichristou, D. G., Krane, R. J., & McKinlay, J. B. (1994). Impotence and its medical and psychosocial correlates: Results of the Massachusetts male aging study. *Journal of Urology*, 151, 54–61.
- Johannes, C. B., Araujo, A. B., Feldman, H. A., Derby, C. A., Kleinman, K. P., & McKinlay, J. B. (2000). Incidence of erectile dysfunction in men 40 to 69 years old: Longitudinal results from the Massachusetts male aging study. *Journal of Urology*, 163(2), 460–463.
- Kloner, R. A., Mullin, S. H., Shook, T., Matthews, R., Mayeda, G., Burstein, S., et al. (2003). Erectile dysfunction in the cardiac patient: How common and should we treat? *Journal of Urology*, 170, S46–S50.
- Lizza, E. F., & Rosen, R. C. (1999). Definition and classification of erectile dysfunction: Report of the nomenclature committee of the International Society of Impotence Research. *International Journal of Impotence Research*, 11, 141–143.
- Saigal, C. S., Wessells, H., Pace, J., Schonlau, M., Wilt, T. J., Urologic Diseases in America Project, et al. (2006). Predictors and prevalence of erectile dysfunction in a racially diverse population. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 166(2), 207–212.

Ergonomics

► Human Factors/Ergonomics

Ergotherapy

► Therapy, Occupational

Escape-Avoidance Coping

Urs M. Nater

Department of Psychology, University of Vienna,
Vienna, Austria

Definition

Escape-avoidance coping is a coping style that involves disengaging or staying away from a

stressful situation and its behavioral and cognitive/emotional consequences.

Description

Coping is a cognitive-behavioral process that takes place in the context of a situation or condition perceived as personally relevant, challenging, or that exceeds an individual's resources to adequately deal with a problem. Coping styles may be dysfunctional or maladaptive in various contexts. It has been shown that some psychiatric and somatic patients tend to use significantly more maladaptive strategies than healthy controls. Maladaptive coping styles have been shown to be associated with clinical features (e.g., fatigue, impairment, illness burden, psychosocial problems, or psychiatric comorbidity).

One of the best examined maladaptive coping styles is escape-avoidance coping. Escape-avoidance coping involves disengaging or staying away from a stressful situation and its behavioral and cognitive/emotional consequences. Typical strategies in response to a stressful situation might encompass cognitive avoidance ("Refused to believe that it had happened"), avoidant actions ("Slept more than usual"), denial ("Refused to believe that it had happened"), or wishful thinking ("Wished that the situation would go away or somehow be over with") (examples are items of the Ways of Coping Checklist which is one of the most widely used instrument for assessment of coping styles).

It should be noted that, according to Lazarus, coping strategies are not inherently adaptive or maladaptive, but their effectiveness depends on an individual's personal circumstances, goals, and expectations. Coping styles should be considered in the context of stress-related cognitions and their consequences in everyday life. In a stress context, escape-avoidant coping may result in an inadequate regulatory adaptation to stress as well as in exaggerated or prolonged stress responses that may in turn be associated with increased neuroendocrine, autonomic and immune activation. Escape-avoidant coping (and other coping styles) must be considered in studies of risk factors,

clinical course, pathophysiology, and therapy of illnesses relevant in behavioral medicine.

References and Further Reading

- Folkman, S., & Lazarus, R. (1988). *Manual for the ways of coping questionnaire*. Palo Alto: Consulting Psychologists Press.
- Folkman, S., & Moskowitz, J. T. (2004). Coping: Pitfalls and promise. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 55, 745–774.
- Lazarus, R. S. (1993). Coping theory and research: Past, present, and future. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 55(3), 234–247.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. New York: Springer.

Escitalopram

- [Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors \(SSRIs\)](#)

ESM

- [Experience Sampling](#)

Essential Fatty Acids

Sheah Rarback
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Dietary fatty acids](#)

Definition

Essential fatty acids (EFA) are fats that cannot be synthesized by the body and must be obtained through diet. The two types are omega-3 fatty acids from alpha linolenic acid and omega-6 fatty

acid from linoleic acid. Omega-9 fatty acid is necessary yet “nonessential” because the body can manufacture a small amount on its own, provided essential EFAs are present. EFAs are used to support the cardiovascular, reproductive, immune, and nervous systems.

The body has a very limited capacity for making the omega-3 fatty acids eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) from linolenic acid, so these are often classified with essential fatty acids. EPA is believed to play a role in the prevention of cardiovascular disease, while DHA is necessary for proper brain and nerve development.

The richest sources of omega-6 fatty acids are safflower, sunflower, corn, and sesame oil. The richest sources of omega-3 fatty acids are flaxseed, sardines, salmon, cooked soybeans, and halibut.

The current ratio of omega-6 to omega-3 fatty acids in the typical American diet is approximately 11:1. However, the recommended ratio is 4:1. High doses of supplemental EPA/DHA have been shown to lower triglycerides in patients with elevated triglycerides. The American Heart Association recommends two servings of fatty fish a week to increase intake of EPA and DHA.

Cross-References

- [Fat, Dietary Intake](#)
- [Fat: Saturated, Unsaturated](#)

References and Readings

- Aterburn, A., Hall, E., & Oken, H. (2006). Distribution, interconversion, and dose response of omega-3 fatty acids in human. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 83, S1467–S1476.
- Kris-Etherton, P. M., Innis, S., & American Dietetic Association, & Dietitians of Canada. (2007). Position of the American Dietetic Association and Dietitians of Canada: Dietary fatty acids. *Journal of the American Dietetic Association*, 107, 1599.e1–1599.e15.
- Tribble, E. (2007). *The ultimate omega-3 diet: Maximize the power of omega-3s to supercharge your health, battle inflammation, and keep your mind sharp*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- www.heart.org

Estrogen

Maurizio Cutolo

Department of Internal Medicine, Research Laboratories and Academic Unit of Clinical Rheumatology, University of Genova, Genoa, Italy

Synonyms

Gonadal female hormones; Sex hormones; Steroid hormones

Definition

Estrogens represent a group of steroid hormones that primarily influence the female reproductive tract in its development, maturation, and function. There are three major hormones – estradiol, estrone, and estriol – and estradiol is the predominant one (Blair 2010).

The major sources of estrogens are the ovaries and the placenta (the temporary organ that serves to nourish the fetus and remove its wastes); additional small amounts are secreted by the adrenal glands, by the male testes, and by intracrine synthesis in several peripheral cells/tissues (i.e., adipose tissue, which is also an important source of estrogen in postmenopausal women; macrophages in inflamed tissues) (Cutolo et al. 2004; Simpson 2003).

Cholesterol is the parent molecule from which all ovarian steroid hormones are formed. Cholesterol is converted to pregnenolone, and pregnenolone is converted to progesterone. The steps in the conversion of progesterone to the main estrogens – estradiol and estrone – include the intermediate formation of several androgens (male sex hormones): dehydroepiandrosterone, androstenedione, and testosterone (Blair 2010).

Practically, androgens are precursors of estrogens: they are converted to estrogens through the action of an enzyme known as aromatase (Chumsri et al. 2011). The ovaries are the richest source of aromatase. Estradiol, the most potent

estrogen, is synthesized from testosterone. Estrone can be formed from estradiol, but its major precursor is androstenedione. Estriol, the weakest of the estrogens, is formed from both estrone and estradiol.

At its target tissues, the free hormone penetrates the cell surface and then binds to a protein known as an estrogen receptor in the cytoplasm of the cells (Gibson and Saunders 2012). The estrogen-receptor complexes enter the cell nucleus, where they influence the rate at which particular genes are transcribed.

Recently, chemicals like xenoestrogens, which can mimic endogenous hormones or interfere with endocrine processes, may affect normal estrogen signaling (Singleton and Khan 2003).

Bone metabolic actions of estrogens are related to bone development and bone maintenance including the stimulation of bone formation and the closure of bone epiphyses, which causes linear growth to cease at the end of puberty, and the maintenance of bone throughout the reproductive years, which limits bone resorption and preserves bone strength (Callewaert et al. 2010).

However, estrogen replacement therapy to treat menopause is not recommended, since The National Cancer Institute found in 2003 a very significant drop in the rate of hormone-dependent breast cancers among women, related to the fact that millions of women stopped taking hormone therapy in 2002 after the results of a major government study found the treatment slightly increased a woman's risk for breast cancer, heart disease, and stroke (Rossouw et al. 2002).

Estrogens exert enhancing activities on the immune humoral response (B-cell activities) and are considered among risk factors involved in the higher frequency of autoimmune diseases in females (Schmidt et al. 2009). Estrogen administration is contraindicated in patients with active autoimmune diseases (i.e., systemic lupus erythematosus); therefore, progestogen-only pills offer a convenient and readily reversible method of contraception that is suitable for women with contraindications for estrogens (Ahrendt et al. 2010).

Increased intracrine synthesis (action of local aromatases) and levels of peripheral estrogen

metabolites (i.e., alpha-hydroxylated) are observed in fluids of patients affected by autoimmune diseases (i.e., synovial fluid of rheumatoid arthritis patients of both sexes) and in tissues affected by cancer (i.e., both breast and prostate cancer) (Cutolo et al. 2007, 2011; Nelles et al. 2011).

Cross-References

► Immune Function

References and Readings

- Ahrendt, H. J., Adolf, D., & Buhling, K. J. (2010). Advantages and challenges of oestrogen-free hormonal contraception. *Current Medical Research and Opinion*, 26, 1947–1955.
- Blair, I. A. (2010). Analysis of estrogens in serum and plasma from postmenopausal women: Past present, and future. *Steroids*, 75, 297–306.
- Callewaert, F., Sinnesael, M., Gielen, E., Boonen, S., & Vanderschueren, D. (2010). Skeletal sexual dimorphism: Relative contribution of sex steroids, GH – IGF1, and mechanical loading. *Journal of Endocrinology*, 207, 127–134.
- Chumsri, S., Howes, T., Bao, T., Sabnis, G., & Brodie, A. (2011). Aromatase, aromatase inhibitors, and breast cancer. *The Journal of Steroid Biochemistry and Molecular Biology*, 125, 13–22.
- Cutolo, M., Villaggio, B., Serio, B., Montagna, P., Capellino, S., Straub, R. H., et al. (2004). Synovial fluid estrogens in rheumatoid arthritis. *Autoimmunity Reviews*, 3, 193–198.
- Cutolo, M., Straub, R. H., & Bijlsma, J. W. (2007). Neuroendocrine-immune interactions in synovitis. *Nature Clinical Practice Rheumatology*, 3, 627–634.
- Cutolo, M., Sulli, A., & Straub, R. H. (2011). Estrogen metabolism and autoimmunity. *Autoimmunity Reviews*, 11, A460–A464. Epub ahead of print.
- Gibson, D., & Saunders, P. T. (2012). Estrogen dependent signaling in reproductive tissues – A role for estrogen receptors and estrogen related receptors. *Molecular and Cellular Endocrinology*, 348(2), 361–372.
- Key, T. J., Appleby, P. N., Reeves, G. K., Roddam, A. W., Helzlsouer, K. J., Alberg, A. J., et al. (2011). Circulating sex hormones and breast cancer risk factors in postmenopausal women: Reanalysis of 13 studies. *British Journal of Cancer*, 105(5), 709–722. Endogenous Hormones and Breast Cancer Collaborative Group.
- Nelles, J. L., Hu, W. Y., & Prins, G. S. (2011). Estrogen action and prostate cancer. *Expert Review of Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 6, 437–451.
- Ostensen, M., Brucato, A., Carp, H., Chambers, C., Dolhain, R. J., Doria, A., et al. (2011). Pregnancy and reproduction in autoimmune rheumatic diseases. *Rheumatology (Oxford, England)*, 50, 657–664.
- Rossouw, J. E., Anderson, G. L., Prentice, R. L., Writing Group for the Women's Health Initiative Investigators, et al. (2002). Risks and benefits of estrogen plus progestin in healthy postmenopausal women: Principal results from the Women's Health Initiative randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288(3), 321–333.
- Schmidt, M., Hartung, R., Capellino, S., Cutolo, M., Pfeifer-Leeg, A., & Straub, R. H. (2009). Estrone/17beta-estradiol conversion to, and tumor necrosis factor inhibition by, estrogen metabolites in synovial cells of patients with rheumatoid arthritis and patients with osteoarthritis. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 60, 2913–2922.
- Simpson, E. R. (2003). Sources of estrogen and their importance. *The Journal of Steroid Biochemistry and Molecular Biology*, 86, 225–230.
- Singleton, D. W., & Khan, S. A. (2003). Xenoestrogen exposure and mechanisms of endocrine disruption. *Frontiers in Bioscience*, 8, s110–s118.
- Straub, R. H. (2007). The complex role of estrogens in inflammation. *Endocrine Reviews*, 28, 521–574.

E-Therapy

► Online Therapy and E-Counselling

Ethical Issues

Yoshiyuki Takimoto

Department of Stress Science and Psychosomatic Medicine, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

Clinical ethics

Definition

Ethical issues arise in the situation where values conflict. There are several ethical issues in the area of behavioral medicine. One of typical ethical issues is the problem of informed consent in the clinical settings and the research involving human subjects.

Ethics of behavioral therapy is a topic of ethical issues in behavioral medicine to be proposed. Ethics has been a priority among behavior therapists. If the application of a technique can inflict pain or clients are relatively powerless or are involuntarily the subjects of treatment, ethical concerns arise. The aversion technique is one of major techniques causing behavioral modification. However, using an aversion procedure becomes one focus of ethical criticism in behavioral therapy. In the case that clients cannot offer informed consent due to lack their competency, desirability of treatment outcome goals has to be weighed against the rights of the client, because using an aversion technique opposes non-maleficence which is major principle of biomedical ethics. Behavior therapists ethically ought to give positive consideration to reduce the target behavior through nonaversive means before applying an aversion procedure. Only when the target behavior has been conclusively shown to be impervious to other means, aversion therapy should be used.

Cross-References

► [Informed Consent](#)

Ethics

Yoshiyuki Takimoto
Department of Stress Science and Psychosomatic
Medicine, Graduate School of Medicine, The
University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Definition

Ethics is the study or examination of morality and moral life. The concepts of ethics fall into two main categories. The first category comprises notions having to do with morality, virtue, rationality, and other ideals or standards of conduct and motivation; second, notions pertaining to human good or well-being and the “good life” generally. Several major

approaches to the study of morality are encompassed under the broad term “ethics.” Perhaps, the best-known approach is normative ethics, which attempts to identify those moral norms, values, or traits that should be accepted as standards or guides for moral behavior and moral judgment. Famous ethical theories of normative ethics are deontology, consequentialism, or virtue ethics. Deontology treats moral obligations as requirements that bind us to act, in large measure, independent of the effects our actions may have on our own good or well-being and, to a substantial extent, even independent of the effects of our actions on the well-being of others. Consequentialism contrasts with deontology. In consequentialism, all moral obligation and virtue are to be understood in terms of good or desirable consequences. Virtue ethics is conceiving what is admirable about individuals in terms of traits of character, rather than in terms of individual obedience to set of moral or ethical rules or requirement.

Cross-References

► [Ethical Issues](#)
► [Informed Consent](#)

References and Readings

- Mithcam, C. (2005). Ethics. In *Encyclopaedia of science, technology, and ethics* (pp. 700–704). Detroit: Macmillan Reference.
- Slote, M. A. (2003). Ethics. In S. G. Post (Ed.), *Encyclopedia of bioethics* (3rd ed., pp. 795–802). New York: Macmillan Reference.

Ethics Committee

Jane Upton
Department of Psychology, William James
College, Newton, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Research ethics committee](#)

Definition

An ethics committee is a committee dedicated to the rights and well-being of research subjects and makes decisions regarding whether or not proposed research studies are ethical to permit to go ahead.

The emphasis on ethical research arose out of concern regarding unethical experiments on humans that occurred during the Second World War. This led to the “Nuremberg Code,” which continues to inform current day ethics statements. This includes the ten basic principles that must be observed when performing medical experiments in order to satisfy moral, ethical, and legal concepts (BMJa 1996). The Nuremberg Code was informed the Declaration of Helsinki, which was devised in 1964 in order to meet the needs of the biomedical community (BMJb 1996). This has been revised six times; the most recent version was written in 2008. The Declaration of Helsinki stipulates that research protocols should be reviewed by specially appointed committee independent of the investigator and the sponsor. It also stipulates that research that does not directly benefit the patient is restricted to healthy volunteers or for individuals where the experimental design is not related to their illness. Importantly, it also states that any research that does not have ethical approval should not be accepted for publication. Researchers are now increasingly assessed for Good Clinical Practice as developed by the International Conference on Harmonization (<http://www.ich.org/home.html>), which was developed from the Declaration of Helsinki.

In the UK, most research concerning human subjects is required to be approved by ethics committees prior to being conducted. This is overseen by the National Research Ethics Service (<http://www.nres.npsa.nhs.uk/>), which has the following dual mission:

- To protect the rights, safety, dignity, and well-being of research participants
- To facilitate and promote ethical research that is of potential benefit to participants, science, and society

A list of national ethics committees specializing in the ethical aspects of the life sciences,

biotechnology, agriculture, food safety, and health can be found at: http://ec.europa.eu/research/biosociety/bioethics/bioethics_ethics_en.htm.

Links for key documents relating to ethics committees can be found at the following site: <http://www.privereal.org/content/rec/documents.php>.

References and Further Reading

- BMJa. (1996). Nuremberg. *BMJ*, 313, 1448. Retrieved from <http://www.bmj.com/content/313/7070/1448.1.full>
- BMJb. (1996). Nuremberg: Declaration of Helsinki (1964). *BMJ*, 313, 1448. Retrieved from <http://www.bmj.com/content/313/7070/1448.2.extract>.

Ethnic Identity

► Ethnicity

Ethnicity

Kristine M. Molina¹ and
Orit Birnbaum-Weitzman²

¹Department of Psychological Sciences,
University of California, Irvine, Irvine, CA, USA

²Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Ethnic identity](#); [Subethnic groups](#)

Definition

Although there is no standardized definition for ethnicity, it has generally been agreed upon that ethnicity encompasses, but is not limited to, elements such as shared cultural background, customs and practices, values and norms, and common language or religious traditions that are usually maintained across generations and tied to a collective sense of identity (Dein 2006; Lee 2009). Moreover, ethnicity is a complex and

dynamic concept that is dependent on both context and time (Boykin and Williams 2010; Dein 2006; Lee 2009).

Description

The concept of ethnicity is commonly used interchangeably with the term “race” within the health literature, although both concepts are different from one another. A clear distinction between the two terms is that race is a scientifically unfounded taxonomy that categorizes individuals based on phenotypical characteristics (e.g., skin color, facial features) and geographic origin; it is a socially and ideologically constructed category (Sheldon and Parker 1992; Williams et al. 1994). Moreover, race has poor predictive validity for biological differences, and the amount of genetic variation that exists for any one particular ethnic group is larger than that found between “racial” groups (Sheldon and Parker 1992), providing evidence for the lack of biologic or genetic basis for racial categorizations (Lin and Kelsey 2000). On the other hand, despite that ethnicity is sometimes used in research as a fixed term, a distinguishable feature of it from that of race is that ethnicity is a much broader concept that also captures notions of self- and group identity (Sheldon and Parker 1992). Although the fluidity of boundary demarcations as it relates to ethnicity (as can be noted, for example, throughout the different U.S. Decennial Census forms) is a limitation of the concept, many social scientists advocate for the use of “ethnicity” over “race” in order to avoid biological reductionism. Indeed, many researchers argue that ethnicity as a concept can better capture the environmental, cultural, behavioral, and sociopolitical experiences that affect health and illness (Dein 2006). The term “ethnicity” is more commonly used in other countries (e.g., the UK and Canada) compared to the United States (Boykin and Williams 2010). Significantly, despite that both majority and minority social groups have an ethnicity, the term “ethnicity” has mostly been used (erroneously) to refer to ethnic minorities (Sheldon and Parker 1992).

Ethnic and racial health disparities have been widely documented. However, the focus on ethnicity (and race) as fixed demographic categories and etiological factors has limited researchers’ ability to adequately identify and delineate underlying mechanisms of these disparities (Sheldon and Parker 1992). For example, despite that scientists are increasingly using ethnicity (and race) in biomedical and genetics research, when ethnic (or racial) differences are found, researchers typically fail to define the mechanisms through which these social categories operate in their statistical models or in actual life (Dein 2006; Williams et al. 1994). Such a practice runs the risk of erroneously attributing noted differences in health status to ethnic minorities themselves, which may further contribute to pathologizing already socially marginalized groups (Sheldon and Parker 1992; Williams et al. 1994). Similarly, ethnic differences in disease processes and/or health outcomes are usually attributed to culture, particularly to aspects of diet, lifestyle, and behavioral practices (Sheldon and Parker 1992). However, researchers have noted that ethnic differences in health are not only due to behavioral and cultural factors but also due to larger social processes and structures, including historical, political, socioeconomic, environmental, and contextual factors, as well as discrimination and racism (Boykin and Williams 2010; Pierce et al. 2004; Sheldon and Parker 1992).

Methodological assessments of ethnicity in health research have some limitations. For example, a common methodological approach is that ethnic groups are usually grouped together to represent an ethnicity based on their national origin. However, ethnic differences may exist within national origin groups based on a number of factors, including cultural and linguistic ones. For example, whereas Mexican persons might be grouped together, differences exist in ethnic groups in Mexico (e.g., indigenous persons who might also speak a different language). This may apply to many other national origin groups that are typically collapsed into one ethnic category. Likewise, although there are certainly some advantages to grouping all Latino or Asian subgroups into one ethnic category, for example, this practice can simultaneously obscure the heterogeneity that

exists among subgroups across social, contextual, political, and historical contexts, which in turn may come to differentially affect the health of such groups.

Given the diverging definitions, classifications, and use of ethnicity across geographic contexts and time, understanding disease processes and outcomes as well as health/health service disparities will require further and more explicit clarification and assessment of ethnicity (and race), as well as of mechanisms through which both ethnicity and race may come to affect health (e.g., discrimination, social class, access to care) (Boykin and Williams 2010; Lin and Kelsey 2000).

Cross-References

- [Ethnic Identity](#)
- [Health Disparities](#)
- [Hispanic Community Health Study/Study of Latinos](#)
- [Minority Subgroups](#)

References and Readings

- Boykin, S. D., & Williams, D. R. (2010). Race, ethnicity, and health in global context. In A. Steptoe, K. E. Freedland, J. Richard Jennings, M. M. Labre, & S. B. Manuck (Eds.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 321–339). New York: Springer.
- Dein, S. (2006). Race, culture and ethnicity in minority research: A critical discussion. *Journal of Cultural Diversity*, 13(2), 68–75.
- Lee, C. (2009). “Race” and “ethnicity” in biomedical research: How do scientists construct and explain differences in health? *Social Science and Medicine*, 68, 1183–1190.
- Lin, S. S., & Kelsey, J. L. (2000). Use of race and ethnicity in epidemiologic research: Concepts, methodological issues, and suggestions for research. *Epidemiologic Reviews*, 22(2), 187–202.
- Pierce, N., Foliaki, S., Sporle, A., & Cunningham, C. (2004). Genetics, race, ethnicity, and health. *British Medical Journal*, 328, 1070–1072.
- Sheldon, T. A., & Parker, H. (1992). Race and ethnicity in health research. *Journal of Public Health Medicine*, 14(2), 104–110.
- Williams, D. R., Lavizzo-Mourey, R., & Warren, R. C. (1994). The concept of race and health status in America. *Public Health Reports*, 109(1), 26–41.

Ethnicity Subgroups

- [Minority Subgroups](#)

Etiology/Pathogenesis

Michael Witthöft

Psychologisches Institut Abteilung Klinische Psychologie und Psychotherapie, Johannes Gutenberg Universität Mainz, Mainz, Germany

Definition

The terms “etiology” and “pathogenesis” are closely related to the questions of *why* and *how* a certain disease or disorder develops. Models of *etiology* and pathogenesis therefore try to account for the processes that initiate (*etiology*) and maintain (*pathogenesis*) a certain disorder or disease.

Etiology

Etiology (consisting of two Greek terms for “origin” and “study of”) refers to the study of the causes of a mental or physical disease. As parts of the *etiology* of a respective disease, only causes that directly initiate the disease process (and therefore necessarily temporarily have to precede the onset of the disease) are considered as *etiological* factors. *Etiological* factors can thus be considered as *necessary conditions* for the development of a disease. The *etiology* of a certain condition is mostly defined not only by one but rather by the interplay of many different conditions (biological, environmental, etc.). As an example, the *etiology* of the common cold is based on an infection by Rhinoviruses causing a viral upper respiratory infection (e.g., Eccles und Weber 2009). Additionally, multiple environmental and immunological factors modulate the infectious *etiology* of the common cold (Eccles und Weber 2009). In the realm of mental disorders, dysregulations of the endocrinological stress system, especially the

hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis (e.g., caused by early traumatic experiences and early life stress), are considered as *etiological* factors relevant for the development of certain disorders (e.g., depression, posttraumatic stress disorder, somatoform disorders) (Ehlert et al. 2001). However, in many complex mental and physical disorders, the exact *etiology* is still either entirely or partly unknown (e.g., depression, obesity). Especially regarding mental disorders, the causes of certain symptoms and syndromes remain vague and speculative. An exception is the diagnosis of a posttraumatic stress disorder, in which case the *etiology* is unambiguously defined by the occurrence of a traumatic event.

Pathogenesis

Pathogenesis, in turn, refers to the process and factors associated with the perpetuation and maintenance of a respective mental or physical disorder. Factors associated with the *pathogenesis* also comprise behavioral changes (e.g., avoidance of normal physical activities in chronic pain conditions) that may maintain and even worsen a specific condition (e.g., physical inactivity often aggravates chronic pain conditions). Accordingly, *pathogenetic* factors, as opposed to *etiological* factors, do not necessarily have to precede the onset of a certain mental or physical disorder. As an example, a depressive disorder might initially develop as the result of early dysregulation in the stress system paired with acute adverse or stressful life events, but might be maintained and even exacerbated due to cognitive and behavioral *pathogenetic* factors (e.g., social isolation, lack of physical activity, and ongoing self-blame).

Cross-References

- [Pathophysiology](#)
- [Somatoform Disorders](#)

References and Readings

- Eccles, R., & Weber, O. (2009). *Common cold*. Basel: Birkhäuser Verlag.
- Ehlert, U., Gaab, J., & Heinrichs, M. (2001). Psychoneuroendocrinological contributions to the etiology of depression, post-traumatic stress disorder, and stress related bodily disorders: The role of the hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal axis. *Biological Psychology*, 57, 141–152.

Euthanasia

Kristin Kilbourn and Shannon Madore
Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Synonyms

[Assisted suicide](#); [Physician-assisted suicide](#)

Definition

Euthanasia is broadly defined as the practice of ending a life as a means of relieving pain and suffering. Assisted suicide refers to actions by which an individual helps another person voluntarily bring about his or her own death. Despite the fact that physician assisted suicide (PAS) is illegal in most of the states in the USA, medical practitioners often receive requests from patients and their families to perform euthanasia, and many clinicians honor these requests. The reasons for these requests have not been well studied, but it appears that it involves a complex combination of physical and psychosocial symptoms and concerns. Euthanasia is currently legal in a small number of US states (Montana, Oregon, and Washington) and a limited number of European countries. The American College of Medical Quality (2001) has published guidelines for physicians confronted with a patient's request for physician-assisted suicide.

Euthanasia and PAS remain extremely controversial due to the moral, ethical, and religious

issues that surround them. There are strong arguments for and against the legalization of PAS and euthanasia in the USA. One concern regarding the practice of euthanasia and PAS is the established association between depression and requests for euthanasia. Research suggests that euthanasia requests from depressed patients are often transitory, while in nondepressed, severely ill patients, the desire to hasten death tends to be enduring.

References and Readings

- Asch, D. A. (1996). The role of critical care nurses in euthanasia and assisted suicide. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 334(21), 1374–1379.
- Emanuel, E. J., Fairclough, D. L., & Emanuel, L. L. (2000). Attitudes and desires related to euthanasia and physician-assisted suicide among terminally ill patients and their caregivers. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 284(19), 2460–2468.
- Hudson, P. L., Kristjanson, L. J., Ashby, M., Kelly, B., Schofield, P., Hudson, R., Aranda, S., O'Connor, M., & Street, A. (2006). Desire for hastened death in patients with advanced disease and the evidence base of clinical guidelines: A systematic review. *Palliative Medicine*, 20(7), 693–701.
- Levene, I., & Parker, M. (2011). Prevalence of depression in granted and refused requests for euthanasia and assisted suicide: A systematic review. *Journal of Medical Ethics*, 37(4), 205–211.
- Meier, D., Emmons, C., Wallstein, S., Quill, T., Morrison, S., & Cassel, C. (1998). A national survey of physician-assisted suicide and euthanasia. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 338(17), 1193–1201.
- Rosenfeld, B. (2000). Assisted suicide, depression, and the right to die. *Psychol Public Policy Law*, 6(2), 467–488.
- The American College of Medical Quality (ACMQ). (2001). *Policy 34: Physician-assisted suicide and end of life care*. Retrieved May 4, 2012, <http://www.acmq.org/policies/policy34.pdf>
- Wilson, K. G., Scott, J. F., Graham, I. D., Kozak, J. F., Chater, S., Viola, R. A., de Faye, B. J., Weaver, L. A., & Curran, D. (2000). Attitudes of terminally ill patients toward euthanasia and physician-assisted suicide. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 160(16), 2454–2460.
- Wilson, K. G., Chochinov, H. M., McPherson, C. J., Skirko, M. G., Allard, P., Chary, S., Gagnon, P. R., Macmillan, K., De Luca, M., O'Shea, F., Kuhl, D., Fainsinger, R. L., Karam, A. M., & Clinch, J. J. (2007). Desire for euthanasia or physician-assisted suicide in palliative cancer care. *Health Psychology*, 26(3), 314–323.

Evaluation

- Agile Science

Evaluation of Potential Public Health Impact

- RE-AIM Guidelines

E

Evaluations

- Attitudes

Event Sampling

- Diaries

Event-Related Optical Imaging (EROI)

- Brain, Imaging
- Neuroimaging

Everyday Problems

- Daily Stress

Evidence Hierarchy

- Hierarchy of Evidence

Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine (EBBM)

Bonnie Spring¹, Angela Fidler Pfammatter², Sara A. Hoffman³ and Jennifer L. Warnick⁴

¹Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

²Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

³Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Evanston, IL, USA

⁴University of Florida, Gainesville, FL, USA

Synonyms

Evidence-based behavioral practice; Evidence-based medicine; Evidence-based practice; Evidence-based psychological practice

Definition

Evidence-based behavioral medicine (EBBM) is the branch of the evidence-based practice (EBP) movement that addresses behavioral interventions to promote health and mitigate the impact of illness. *Evidence* can be defined as research findings resulting from systematic inquiry, collection of observational data, and experimentation. *Evidence-based practice* is an approach to improve the translation of scientific evidence into best clinical decisions that support health. The evidence-based practice movement establishes consensus on standards used to conduct, report, evaluate, and disseminate research results to increase uptake and impact on health practice and policy. *Best available research* is defined as of highest quality, in keeping with consensually accepted scientific standards regarding the types of data best suited to answer various types of questions, and most contextually relevant. *Evidence-based practice* means using conscientious, explicit decision-making that balances best available research evidence, patient characteristics, and resources when making practical decisions about the provision of health care.

Decisions relevant to evidence-based practice often concern selecting an appropriate assessment or intervention. Whereas the treatments evaluated in evidence-based medicine usually involve drugs or devices, those appraised in evidence-based behavioral medicine more often comprise nondrug, non-device, behavioral, or psychosocial interventions.

Description

History of Evidence-Based Practice

The evidence-based practice movement began as an effort to distinguish valid health practices from illegitimate ones. By now, all major health professions endorse evidence-based practice, and the Institute of Medicine identifies EBP as a core competence for all twenty-first-century health professionals (Greiner and Knebel 2003). The EBP movement emerged from evidence-based medicine (EBM) and can be traced to three influences on the history of medicine in the twentieth century: the Flexner Report, the Cochrane Collaboration, and the clinical epidemiology group at McMaster University.

First, the Flexner Report, commissioned by the American Medical Association and the Carnegie Foundation and published in 1910, was a major reform effort that sought to place medical education on a scientific foundation. To prepare the report, Abraham Flexner, a research scholar at the Carnegie Foundation for the Advancement of Teaching, evaluated 155 medical schools in the United States and Canada. Based on his findings, Flexner severely criticized the standard of training offered by many medical schools. He described inconsistent clinical training, an academic curriculum without scientific basis, and an institutional orientation toward profit rather than public service (Flexner 1910). The resulting Flexner Report established an educational quality standard that could not be met by many existing medical schools. In consequence, by 1935, more than half of the 155 medical schools had closed (Beck 2004).

An additional EBM catalyst arose from British epidemiologist Archibald Cochrane's efforts to establish a systematic basis for provision of

health-care coverage (Cochrane 1972). Cochrane advocated that the limited extent of resources for health care necessitates those scarce dollars only be spent on procedures of demonstrable worth. His conclusion that randomized controlled trials (RCTs) offer the most reliable, unbiased method to evaluate treatment effectiveness led others to formulate an evidence hierarchy. The hierarchy places findings from high-quality RCTs above those from observational studies, case studies, and expert opinion when evaluating treatment efficacy. To aggregate and disseminate findings from RCTs, Cochrane's followers established the worldwide network known as the Cochrane Collaboration (www.cochrane.org), whose contributors track, critically appraise, synthesize, and disseminate RCT findings via the Internet.

A third engine that drove EBM forward was the group of clinical epidemiologists who worked at Canada's McMaster University in the 1990s under the leadership of David Sackett and Gordon Guyatt. The team was motivated to action by evidence that clinicians primarily implement practices learned during training but neglect often more efficacious treatments identified by newer research (Isaacs and Fitzgerald 1999). This group pushed to close the research-to-practice gap by socializing physicians to continue to become educated about new research evidence (Sackett and Rosenberg 1995a, b). In order to encourage physicians routinely to ask questions and consult research, the group developed methods that allowed practitioners to find, appraise, and apply research evidence in real time, i.e., during the actual clinical encounter. There was push back, however, from some clinicians who felt that an exclusive emphasis on research devalued the importance of clinical expertise (Haynes et al. 1996). To acknowledge the clinician's insights and diffuse objections, Gordon Guyatt renamed the approach "evidence-based medicine," rather than "scientific medicine" in order to encourage implementation (Guyatt et al. 1992). Instead of a single circle (research), subsequent models of evidence-based medicine have used a "three circles" or "three-legged stool" model of EBM. That is to say, they depict evidence-based practice as tying together

(1) research, (2) patient characteristics, and (3) clinical expertise (Haynes et al. 1996; Sackett et al. 1996).

From EBM to EBBM

A necessary precondition for EBBM was to consider carefully how well the core principles of evidence-based medicine apply to research on behavioral (nondrug, non-device) interventions. That evaluation was undertaken initially by the Society of Behavioral Medicine's EBBM Committee, established in 2000 with support from the National Institutes of Health (NIH) Office of Behavioral and Social Science Research (OBSSR) under Acting Director, Peter Kaufmann. The scope of the EBBM Committee included behavioral interventions that prevent disease, promote health and adherence to treatment, or change biological determinants of behavioral conditions (Davidson et al. 2003). The committee sought to familiarize behavioral medicine researchers with the Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials (CONSORT) guidelines that encouraged transparent and standardized reporting of RCTs in scientific journals (Schulz et al. 2010a). Partly as a result of the committee's efforts, the CONSORT guidelines were adopted by journals that publish behavioral medicine RCTs, including the *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, *Health Psychology*, *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, and *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*. Additional efforts to improve the quality of behavioral medicine clinical trials addressed a frequent weakness in their analytic approach – a failure to use the intent to treat principle, whereby all randomized participants are included in study analyses according to the condition to which they were assigned (Pagoto et al. 2009; Spring et al. 2007).

Still other efforts made by the EBBM Committee addressed common fears and misperceptions about what evidence-based practice entails (Spring et al. 2005). One frequent misunderstanding was that the approach neglects all but RCT evidence. Rather, the principle states that the optimal research design depends upon the question being asked. For example, a prognostic question

about the likely course of a patient's condition can be answered more effectively by an observational cohort study than by an RCT. Also addressed was the misperception that EBP equates to robotic adherence to treatment manuals without respecting the patient's individuality. It was this concern that eventually led the committee to emphasize, rather than a single best evidence-based treatment, an evidence-based practice *process* that trials each treatment for the particular individual, analyzes the outcome, and adjusts treatment accordingly (cf., Fig. 3 below).

From EBBM to EBBP to, Simply, EBP: The Conceptual Model

The US health-care crisis that emerged in 2006 made apparent the need for interprofessional teams to direct integrated care systems addressing both mental and physical health. A horizon scan pointed to the need to harmonize the approach to EBBM across the various health professions that offer behavioral interventions. Accordingly, OBSSR sponsored the Council on Evidence-Based Behavioral Practice (EBBP), chaired by Bonnie Spring, and its scientific and practitioner advisory boards. Determinedly interprofessional, these groups included representatives from medicine (Evelyn Whitlock, MD., Stephen Persell, MD), nursing (Robin Newhouse, PhD), psychology (Jason Satterfield, PhD), social work (Edward Mullen, DSW), public health (Ross Brownson, PhD), and information sciences (Ann McKibbin, PhD) (www.ebbp.org). The Council's first task was to construct a conceptual model to accommodate the diverse historic traditions and the individual- and population-level behavioral interventions implemented by health-care providers from different professional backgrounds.

Medicine's initial conceptual model of EBP had solely emphasized research. EBM was defined simply as "the conscientious and judicious use of current best evidence in making decisions about the care of individual patients" (Sackett et al. 1996). Subsequent EBM definitions emphasized the need to balance considerations in addition to research, for example, "evidence-based medicine requires the integration of the best research evidence with

clinical expertise and the patient's unique values and circumstances" (Strauss et al. 2005). The EBBP Council worked to integrate these historic conceptualizations of evidence-based practice developed in medicine, nursing, psychology, public health, and social work (Satterfield et al. 2009). The aim was to construct a new, harmonized conceptual model to be shared by the more diverse health-care teams of the future, whereby all would require core competency in EBP (Greiner and Knebel 2003). Because the shared conceptual model supports jointly held vocabulary, foundational assumptions, and practice principles, a unified model of evidence-based practice supplants the need for separate models for each discipline or for behavioral versus medical interventions (Satterfield et al. 2009; Spring and Hitchcock 2009).

The interprofessional model of evidence-based practice appears in Fig. 1.

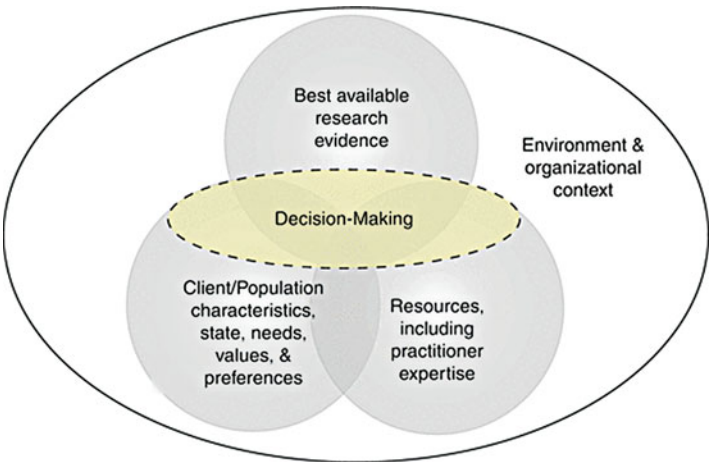
Note that the model depicts three circles (data strands) that are integrated in EBP. Evidence-based decision-making is shown as the skill that knits these strands together. As in all prior EBP models, best available research evidence remains a circle, occupying the top position because it reflects the cumulative, unbiased body of knowledge about what is effective for the health concern. The client's characteristics, including current state, prior history, values, and preferences, are a second key data strand that is integrated by engaging the client in shared decision-making. The third data strand involves resources, because these can constrain the available treatment options. Resources include influences such as insurance coverage, accessible trained providers, community facilities, transportation, and time and capability to access treatment. The surrounding, outer circle acknowledges that, inevitably, EBP occurs in a particular organizational and environmental context that will influence what interventions are endorsed and how readily they can be implemented.

Health Professionals' Roles in EBP

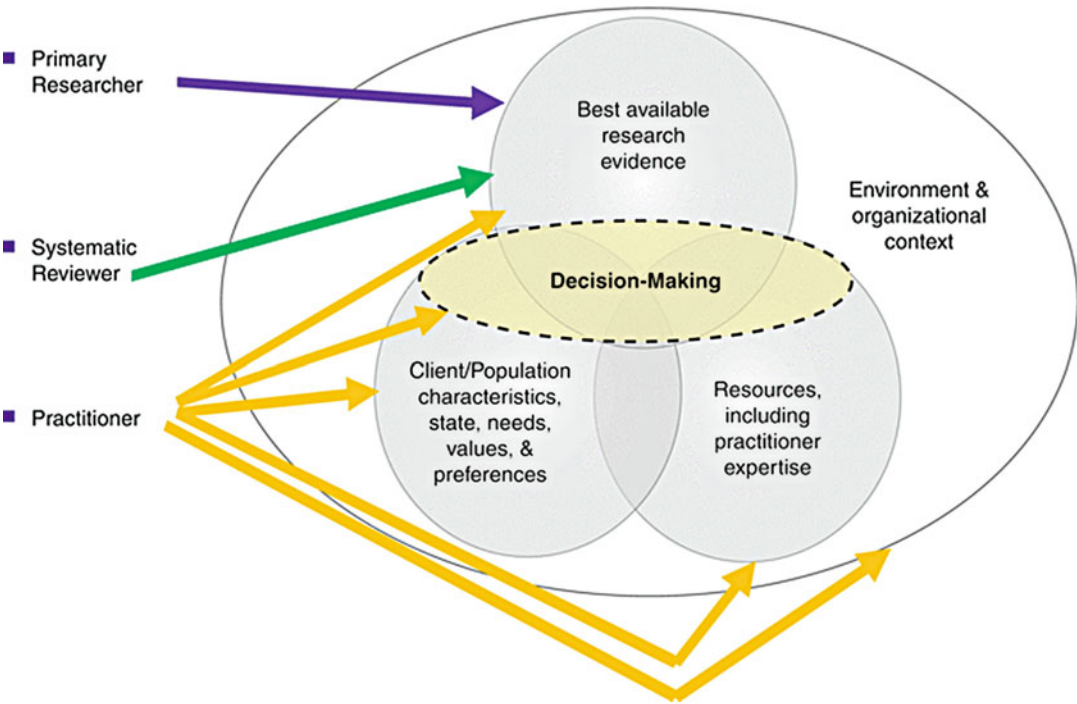
It is no understatement to say that "it takes a village" to sustain the infrastructure of evidence-based practice. As shown in Fig. 2, health

Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine (EBBM), Fig. 1

The three circles of interprofessional evidence-based practice (Source: Spring and Hitchcock 2009)



E



Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine (EBBM), Fig. 2 Health professionals' roles in EBP

professionals could have three different and essential roles in relation to EBP. First, as primary researchers, they contribute directly to creating the evidence base. They develop and optimize new interventions, and they contribute to research that evaluates the efficacy and effectiveness of treatments. They also evaluate the implementation of EBP in the health-care system (Van Dijk et al. 2010; Kaper and Sweenen 2015).

In their second role, as systematic reviewers, health professionals are evidence synthesizers. Systematic reviewers aggregate primary research that was conducted by others to create and disseminate research syntheses that can be efficiently accessed and used by practitioners. The research synthesizer role is a vital component of the infrastructure of EBP. Because of the rapid pace at which scientific literature proliferates, few full-

time practitioners can stay comprehensively abreast of new research while also managing their patient care responsibilities. Systematic reviewers play a critically important role in EBP. By culling and analyzing the full body of research to address important clinical questions and disseminating their findings to clinicians in pithy summaries, they make the EBP enterprise feasible for practitioners. To accomplish this, systematic reviewers first develop a comprehensive and unbiased protocol to locate the primary research that examines a practical question. Having acquired the relevant studies, they critically appraise, extract, and synthesize the data to provide an answer. Depending upon the heterogeneity of the interventions and study designs included in the review, they may synthesize and report the findings solely qualitatively or also quantitatively, using meta-analysis. Systematic reviewing is itself a sophisticated and evolving form of research methodology that is increasingly used as the basis for health policies, including practice guidelines. Dissemination strategies have received more attention recently due to the gap between the knowledge base and its implementation in practice. One such strategy has involved the creation of resources that are seemingly more accessible to practicing clinicians (Campbell et al. 2015).

Finally, perhaps the most complex and challenging professional role in EBP is that of the practitioner. The clinician extracts and uses data from all three EBP circles. Clinicians are research consumers; they review scientific evidence, appraise its quality, and determine the relevance for their context. For efficiency in a busy practice context, clinicians are advised to turn first to the secondary, synthesized, critically pre-appraised sources of evidence, such as systematic reviews or the evidence-based practice guidelines found on www.guidelines.gov. In some instances, however, there may be no applicable treatment guidelines or systematic reviews, requiring a search of the primary literature to locate relevant studies.

The health professional adopting the practitioner role interacts more directly than either primary researchers or evidence synthesizers with



Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine (EBBM), Fig. 3 Five steps of evidence-based practice (Source: www.ebbp.org)

the remaining two circles of the EBP model: client characteristics and resources. To simplify the practitioner's complex job, the five-step evidence-based practice process, shown in Fig. 3, maps out a series of steps that practitioners can follow for each of the three circles.

The Five Steps of Evidence-Based Practice

Evidence-based practice entails both a conceptual model (shown in Fig. 1) and the five-step process shown in Fig. 3. Each step represents an integral part of the EBP process and a competency to be mastered by the clinician. Note that assessment is assumed to precede the onset of the EBP process and to recur throughout it, rather than being considered a formal step. Step 1 is to *Ask* questions that are formulated and structured in a manner that facilitates finding the relevant research. Step 2 is to *Acquire* the best available evidence regarding the question(s). Step 3 is to critically *Appraise* the evidence on two parameters: its validity and its applicability to the identified problem. Step 4, *Apply*, is the most complex phase in the EBP process and the step that links most directly to the conceptual model depicted in Fig. 1. *Apply* is the step during which the practitioner engages in evidence-based decision-making that determines an intervention approach by balancing best available research evidence, client characteristics, and

resources. To increase participant engagement and enhance the likelihood of treatment uptake and adherence, shared decision-making with the affected individual(s) and/or group(s) is important.

Choosing and collaboratively applying the best research-supported intervention represent a beginning rather than an end to the EBP process (Hoffmann et al. 2014). The treatment supported by best available evidence will be the one that has emerged as demonstrably most effective for the average patient in an average environment. However, what matters most in the evidence-based practice process is always the well-being of the single ($N = 1$) individual or group that the practitioner aims to affect. Therefore, Step 5, the final step in the EBP process, is to *Assess* the targeted client's response to the intervention, *Analyze* progress, and, if warranted, *Adjust* the treatment.

Educational Resources

The www.ebbp.org website created by the NIH-sponsored EBBP project offers information, tools, and training modules that facilitate research-to-practice translation for behavioral medicine. Nine online modules are available free of charge, covering a mixture of content relevant to learning objectives in research or practice. Free registration in the online portal conveys access to pre- and posttests for each module and enables learners to stop and save their progress on a partially completed module. Of particular relevance to primary researchers are the learning modules about randomized controlled trials, as well as the module on Critical Appraisal. The Critical Appraisal module offers an overview of the strengths and weaknesses of alternative research designs that can be used to evaluate whether a treatment works. A module on Systematic Evidence Reviews provides an introduction to research synthesis for learners interested in exploring that activity. The module on Searching for Evidence offers useful tips about search strategies for practitioners as well as primary researchers. Its overview of the many available

online research databases is particularly relevant for systematic reviewers.

The remaining five modules are geared particularly toward those performing research-to-practice translation in behavioral medicine. Coverage in these practice-oriented modules is balanced between clinicians who work with individuals and practitioners who work with communities or populations. The EBBP Process module provides an overview of how to perform the five-step evidence-based practice process with either an individual or a community. Two separate modules on Shared and Collaborative Decision-Making, respectively, illustrate how to engage either an individual or a community in the apply step of the evidence-based practice process. The EBBP Process, Shared Decision-Making, and Collaborative Decision-Making modules are highly interactive and experiential, giving learners an opportunity to experiment, make mistakes, and ask experts while practicing new learning in a safe environment. Finally, the Stakeholder and Implementation modules are intended to be used by both researchers and practitioners who wish to engage in collaborative translational research involving evidence-based practice. Featuring a series of interview clips with academic researchers, clinicians, and community advocates, the Stakeholder module presents a glimpse of widely varying worldviews about research. The final Implementation module presents a conceptual model of implementation science and offers two different case studies of successful implementation of evidence-based behavioral programs: one involving in-person training and the other involving internet-delivered training.

The resources at www.ebbp.org are meant to be used either by individual learners or by instructors as part of a course on research methods, interventions, or evidence-based practice. In addition to tools provided by the EBBP project, other online tutorials about evidence-based practice are made available by both Duke University (<http://guides.mcclibrary.duke.edu/ebmtutorial>) and The Iris Center Peabody College Vanderbilt University (http://iris.peabody.vanderbilt.edu/module/ebp_01/).

Cross-References

- [Research to Practice Translation](#)
- [Translational Behavioral Medicine](#)

References and Further Readings

- Beck, A. H. (2004). The Flexner report and the standardization of American medical education. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 291(17), 2139–2140.
- Campbell, J. M., Umaphathysivam, K., Xue, Y., & Lockwood, C. (2015). Evidence-based practice point-of-care resources: A quantitative evaluation of quality, rigor, and content. *Worldviews on Evidence-Based Nursing*, 12, 313. <https://doi.org/10.1111/wvn.12114>.
- Cochrane, A. (1972). *Effectiveness and efficiency: Random reflections on health services*. London: Royal Society of Medicine Press.
- Davidson, K. W., Goldstein, M., Kaplan, R. M., Kaufmann, P. G., Knatterud, G. L., Orleans, C. T., et al. (2003). Evidence-based behavioral medicine: What is it and how do we achieve it? *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 26(3), 161–171.
- Flexner, A. (1910). *Medical education in the United States and Canada: A report to the Carnegie foundation for the advancement of teaching* (Bulletin No. 4) (p. 346). New York City: The Carnegie Foundation for the Advancement of Teaching, OCLC 9795002.
- Greiner, A. C., & Knebel, E. (Eds.). (2003). *Health professions education: A bridge to quality*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Guyatt, G., Cairns, J., Churchill, D., Cook, D., Haynes, B., Hirsch, J., et al. (1992). Evidence-based medicine. A new approach to teaching the practice of medicine [‘Evidence-Based Medicine Working Group’]. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 268, 2420–2425.
- Haynes, R. B., Sackett, D. L., Gray, J. M., Cook, D. J., & Guyatt, G. H. (1996). Transferring evidence from research into practice: 1. The role of clinical care research evidence in clinical decisions. *ACP Journal Club*, 125(3), A14–A16.
- Haynes, R. B., Devereaux, P. J., & Guyatt, G. H. (2002). Clinical expertise in the era of evidence-based medicine and patient choice. *Evidence-Based Medicine*, 7, 36–38.
- Hoffmann, T. C., Montori, V. M., & Del Mar, C. (2014). The connection between evidence-based medicine and shared decision making. *JAMA*, 312(13), 1295–1296.
- Institute of Medicine. (2001). *Crossing the quality chasm: A new health system for the 21st century*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Isaacs, D., & Fitzgerald, D. (1999). Seven alternatives to evidence based medicine. *British Medical Journal*, 319(7225), 1618.
- Kaper, N. M., & Sweenen, M. H. (2015). The “evidence-based practice inventory”: Reliability and validity was demonstrated for a novel instrument to identify barriers and facilitators for evidence based practice in health care. *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 68(11), 1261–1269. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclinepi.2015.06.002>.
- Pagoto, S., Kozak, A. T., John, P., Bodenlos, J., Hedeker, D., & Spring, B. (2009). Intention-to-treat analyses in behavioral medicine randomized clinical trials: The impact of CONSORT. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 16(4), 316–322.
- Sackett, D. L., & Rosenberg, W. M. (1995a). On the need for evidence-based medicine. *Health Economics*, 4, 249–254.
- Sackett, D. L., & Rosenberg, W. M. (1995b). The need for evidence-based medicine. *Journal of the Royal Society of Medicine*, 88, 620–624.
- Sackett, D. L., Rosenberg, W. M., Gray, J. A., Haynes, R. B., & Richardson, W. (1996). Evidence-based medicine: What it is and what it isn’t. *BMJ*, 312, 71–72.
- Satterfield, J. M., Spring, B., Brownson, R. C., Mullen, E. J., Newhouse, R. P., & Walker, B. B. (2009). Toward a transdisciplinary model of evidence-based practice. *The Milbank Quarterly*, 87(2), 368–390.
- Schulz, K. F., Altman, D. G., & Moher, D. (2010a). CONSORT 2010 statement: Updated guidelines for reporting parallel group randomized trials. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 154(11), 1–11.
- Schulz, K. F., Altman, D. G., Moher, D., & CONSORT Group. (2010b). CONSORT 2010 statement: Updated guidelines for reporting parallel group randomized trials. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 152(11), 726–732.
- Spring, B. (2007). Evidence-based practice in clinical psychology: What it is; why it matters; what you need to know. *Journal of Clinical Psychology*, 63(7), 611–631.
- Spring, B. (2008). Health decision-making: Lynchpin of evidence-based practice. *Medical Decision Making*, 28, 866–874.
- Spring, B., & Hitchcock, K. (2009). Evidence-based practice in psychology. In I. B. Weiner & W. E. Craighead (Eds.), *Corsini’s encyclopedia of psychology* (4th ed., pp. 603–607). New York: Wiley.
- Spring, B., & Neville, K. (2010). Evidence-based practice in clinical psychology. In D. Barlow (Ed.), *Oxford handbook of clinical psychology* (pp. 128–149). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Spring, B., Pagoto, S., Whitlock, E., Kaufmann, P., Glasgow, R., Smith, K., Trudeau, K., & Davidson, K. (2005). Invitation to a dialogue between researchers and clinicians about evidence-based behavioral medicine. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 30(2), 125–137.
- Spring, B., Pagoto, S., Knatterud, G., Kozak, A., & Hedeker, D. (2007). Examination of the analytic quality of behavioral health randomized clinical trials. *Journal of Clinical Psychology*, 63, 53–71.

Strauss, S. E., Richardson, W. S., Glasziou, P., & Haynes, R. B. (2005). *Evidence-based medicine: How to practice and teach EBM* (3rd ed.). New York: Elsevier.

Van Dijk, N., Hooften, L., & Wieringa-de Waard, M. (2010). What are the barriers to residents' practicing evidence-based medicine? A systematic review. *Academic Medicine*, 85(7), 1163–1170. <https://doi.org/10.1097/ACM.0b013e3181d4152f>.

Evidence-Based Behavioral Practice

- [Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine \(EBBM\)](#)

Evidence-Based Medicine

- [Clinical Trial](#)
- [Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine \(EBBM\)](#)

Evidence-Based Practice

- [Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine \(EBBM\)](#)

Evidence-Based Psychological Practice

- [Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine \(EBBM\)](#)

Excess Weight

- [Overweight](#)

Excessive Drinking

- [Binge Drinking](#)

Executive Control Resources

- [Executive Function](#)

Executive Function

Peter A. Hall
Faculty of Applied Health Sciences, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Synonyms

[Executive control resources](#); [Supervisory attentional system](#)

Definition

Executive functions (EFs) are a set of interrelated neurocognitive abilities/processes that arise from a distributed network within the cortex, with important nodes in the prefrontal and parietal regions. These cognitive operations are minimally reducible to the ability to inhibit prepotent responses, manipulate information in working memory, and maintain mental flexibility. These core abilities in turn potentiate a variety of behavioral tendencies that include the capacity to avoid impulsive responding, the ability to remain mindful of and effectively pursue goals, the ability to resist distraction, and the capacity to delay gratification.

Description

Interest in EFs emerged predominantly from the study of “frontal lobe” patients or individuals who have sustained damage to the frontal lobes of the brain. Such individuals were initially observed to demonstrate intact general cognitive abilities (i.e., IQ), but evidenced specific impairments in several

areas of function that were thought to be central to personality structure and everyday social functioning. Early clinical descriptions of these patients in the neurological literature led to more elaborated formulations of the operations of the frontal lobes (see Stuss and Knight 2002) and the prefrontal cortex (PFC) in particular (Miller and Cohen 2001).

EFs are thought to be a set of interrelated cognitive processes that are the product of a distributed neural network that includes important nodes in the PFC, as well as projections from the PFC to other brain regions responsible for visceral, automatic, and reactive emotional responses. Contemporary theoretical formulations hold that EFs exhibit both unitary and diversity of function and so can be understood in relation to both their general level of operation and the operation of the specific sub-facets (Miyake et al. 2000). Some of the sub-facets of general EF include behavioral inhibition, working memory, and task switching/mental flexibility. However, there are several conceptualizations of EFs in addition to Miyake's framework, some of which give prominence to one or more of these components (see Shallice 1988).

Executive functions are commonly measured using a variety of neuropsychological tests. These include, but are not limited to, the following: the Stroop test, Go-No Go test, Trails B test, Digit Symbol Substitution test (a subtest of the Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scales), Tower of London/Hanoi, Iowa gambling task, stop signal task, and flanker task.

Many of these have been used for decades and represent a class of tasks with similar characteristics, rather than single tasks with exactly specified parameters. For example, the Stroop task involves viewing a series of color names (i.e., the word "red") displayed one at a time. The respondent is required to name the color of font – ignoring the word itself – as quickly and accurately as possible. On some trials, the font color matches the word (i.e., the word "red" is presented in red font; "concordant trials"), and on other trials, the font color is inconsistent with the word itself (i.e., the word "red" is presented in blue font; "discordant trials"). The dependent measure may be any number of

parameters including the reaction time on correct trials, error rate, or interference score. The actual modality of presentation of the stimuli and responses varies depending on the specific requirements of the researcher, as do the number of trials. The Stroop test is thought to measure predominantly the inhibition facet of EF, though strong performance would naturally also correlate with working memory and attention as well.

In addition to such "behavioral" measures of EF, there is considerable interest in the measurement of the activation of the underlying brain structures that give rise to EFs. Such approaches to imaging EF engagement include functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI), electroencephalogram (EEG), positron emission tomography (PET), and functional near-infrared spectroscopy (fNIRS).

Individual differences in EF are subject to both strong dispositional influences and potential for state-like fluctuation. For instance, EFs are among the most sensitive cognitive functions to the adverse effects of chronic health conditions, as well as the effect of both natural and pathological aging processes (e.g., Alzheimer's disease and other dementias). Nonetheless, in the absence of disease-related cognitive decline, individual differences in EF among cognitively intact individuals are subject to substantial genetic loading (the latter including both genetic and gene x environment interactions).

Interest in EFs in the field of behavioral medicine has increased partly as a function of the significance of EFs for self-regulatory processes in health behavior performance, emotional regulation, and mortality (Hall and Marteau 2014; Hofmann et al. 2012; Marteau and Hall 2013).

Cross-References

- [Behavioral Inhibition](#)
- [Cognition](#)
- [Cognitive Factors](#)
- [Cognitive Function](#)
- [Disinhibition](#)
- [Neuron](#)
- [Working Memory](#)

References and Further Readings

- Hall, P. A., & Marteau, T. M. (2014). Executive function in the context of chronic disease prevention: Theory, research and practice. *Preventive Medicine*, 68, 44–50.
- Hofmann, W., Schmeichel, B. J., & Baddeley, A. D. (2012). Executive functions and self-regulation. *Trends in Cognitive Sciences*, 16, 174–180. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tics.2012.01.006>.
- Marteau, T. M., & Hall, P. A. (2013). Breadlines, brains, and behaviour. *British Medical Journal*, 347, f6750. <https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.f6750>.
- Miller, E. K., & Cohen, J. D. (2001). An integrative theory of prefrontal cortex function. *Annual Reviews of Neuroscience*, 24, 167–202.
- Miyake, A., Friedman, N. P., Emerson, M. J., Witzki, A. H., Howerter, A., & Wager, T. D. (2000). The unity and diversity of executive functions and their contributions to complex “frontal lobe” tasks: A latent variable analysis. *Cognitive Psychology*, 41, 49–100.
- Shallice, T. (1988). *From neuropsychology to mental structure*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Stuss, D. T., & Knight, R. T. (2002). *The principles of frontal lobe function*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Exercise

Jordan Carlson
Public Health, San Diego State University,
University of California San Diego, San Diego,
CA, USA

Synonyms

Leisure physical activity; Physical activity

Definition

Any bodily movement produced by skeletal muscles that results in an expenditure of energy (Caspersen et al. 1985).

Description

The term exercise is often used interchangeably with the term physical activity but is more

appropriately used to refer to leisure physical activity performed for fitness or pleasure.

Domains of Physical Activity

The way people spend their time can be categorized into five domains: sleep, leisure, occupational, transportation, and household (SLOTH; Pratt et al. 2004). Physical activity can occur in each domain but is not likely to occur during sleep. Most efforts to promote physical activity have focused on leisure physical activity, which is activity engaged in during free time, often for fitness or pleasure. This includes working out, playing sports, and recreational walking. Occupational physical activity is any movement resulting in energy expenditure that occurs while working. A person working in manual labor likely engages in more occupational physical activity than someone working a desk job. Transportation physical activity is activity engaged in for the purpose of getting from one place to another, such as walking or bicycling to a destination (e.g., grocery store). Transportation walking declined drastically during the twentieth century and is viewed as a promising domain for physical activity promotion (Handy et al. 2002). Household physical activity includes household chores, such as washing dishes, and is not typically a focus of physical activity promotion.

Types of Physical Activity

There are four primary types of physical activity (Sallis and Owen 1998). Aerobic activity (also called cardiovascular exercise) involves large muscle movement for a sustained period of time. Examples include walking, running, bicycling, and swimming. Aerobic activity is often the focus of physical activity promotion efforts. Anaerobic activity involves muscles working against an applied force, such as resistance training and weightlifting. Bone-strengthening activity involves weight-bearing exercises that strengthen the body's bones, such as squats and body extensions. Flexibility exercises, such as stretching, are

those that increase the range of movements of joints and muscles.

Physical Activity Intensity Levels

Movement is commonly classified into four intensity levels based on the amount of energy used by the body per minute of activity. Sedentary activity refers to no or little body movement and often involves sitting (for more information, see chapter “► [Sedentary Behaviors](#)”). Light-intensity physical activity refers to slight body movements that lead to energy expenditure but are not strong enough to be considered moderate or vigorous. Moderate-intensity physical activity is the primary intensity level promoted in behavioral medicine. Moderate-intensity physical activity is often defined as activity during which a person’s heart rate is 50–70% of his or her maximum heart rate (obtained by subtracting the person’s age from 220). This generally includes brisk walking, dancing, gardening, and bicycling. Vigorous-intensity physical activity occurs when a person’s heart rate is 70–85% of his or her maximum heart rate. Examples of vigorous-intensity activities include race walking, jogging, running, and hiking (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) 2010).

Benefits of Physical Activity

Considerable evidence suggests that regular physical activity reduces the risk of many adverse health outcomes, such as cardiovascular disease, type 2 diabetes, some cancers, and mortality (Blair et al. 1996; Haskell et al. 2009). Physical activity is also beneficial for mental health and quality of life and has been successfully used as a treatment for mental health disorders such as depression (Dunn et al. 2001). Most health benefits occur with at least 150 min a week of moderate-intensity physical activity; additional benefits occur with more physical activity, and some physical activity is better than none

(U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2008). For more information on health-related benefits of physical activity, see chapters “► [Physical Activity and Health](#), ► [Physical Activity](#).”

Physical Activity Recommendations

The US Department of Health and Human Services produced physical activity guidelines for children/adolescents, adults, and older adults (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2008). The recommendations are as follows:

- Children and adolescents should engage in at least 60 min of physical activity daily, including vigorous-intensity physical activity at least three days a week. As part of their 60 min or more of daily physical activity, children and adolescents should include muscle-strengthening physical activity on at least three days of the week and bone-strengthening physical activity on at least three days of the week.
- Adults should engage in at least 150 min of moderate intensity, or at least 75 min of vigorous-intensity physical activity per week. Aerobic activity should be performed in episodes of at least 10 min. Adults should also do muscle-strengthening activities that are moderate or high intensity and involve all major muscle groups on two or more days a week.
- Older adults ($\geq$ age 65) have the same guidelines as other adults, except when older adults cannot do 150 min of moderate-intensity aerobic activity a week because of chronic conditions, they should be as physically active as their abilities and conditions allow.

Prevalence of Physical Activity in the United States

Nationally representative data showed that in 2007, 64.5% of US adults met the US

Department of Health and Human Services physical activity guidelines. Women, older adults, people of racial/ethnic minority, less educated people, and those who were obese reported lower amounts of physical activity (Carlson et al. 2008). This data is based on how much physical activity people report they are doing. Objective physical activity rates were measured in 2004 using physical activity monitoring devices. Results were that fewer than 42% of children, 8% of adolescents, and 4% of adults met physical activity guidelines (Troiano et al. 2008). Although physical activity prevalence rates vary drastically when measured with self-report versus physical activity monitors, prevalence rates found using each method point to a need for increasing physical activity.

Cross-References

- [Aerobic Exercise](#)
- [Benefits of Exercise](#)
- [Exercise Testing](#)
- [Interventions and Strategies to Promote Physical Activity](#)
- [Physical Activity and Health](#)
- [Physical Inactivity](#)

References and Readings

- Blair, S. N., Kampert, J. B., Kohl, H. W., 3rd, Barlow, C. E., Macera, C. A., Paffenbarger, R. S., Jr., & Gibbons, L. W. (1996). Influences of cardiorespiratory fitness and other precursors on cardiovascular disease and all-cause mortality in men and women. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 276(3), 205.
- Carlson, S. A., Fulton, J. E., Galuska, D. A., Kruger, J., Lobelo, F., & Loustalot, F. V. (2008). Prevalence of self-reported physically active adults-United states, 2007. *MMWR. Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 57, 1297–1300.
- Caspersen, C. J., Powell, K. E., & Christenson, G. M. (1985). Physical activity, exercise, and physical fitness: Definitions and distinctions for health-related research. *Public Health Reports*, 100(2), 126.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2010). *Physical activity for everyone*. Retrieved December 1, 2010, from <http://www.cdc.gov/physicalactivity/everyone/measuring/index.html>
- Dunn, A. L., Trivedi, M. H., & O'Neal, H. A. (2001). Physical activity dose-response effects on outcomes of depression and anxiety. *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise*, 33(6), S587.
- Handy, S. L., Boarnet, M. G., Ewing, R., & Killingsworth, R. E. (2002). How the built environment affects physical activity. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 23(2S), 64–73.
- Haskell, W. L., Blair, S. N., & Hill, J. O. (2009). Physical activity: Health outcomes and importance for public health policy. *Preventive Medicine*, 49(4), 280–282.
- Pratt, M., Macera, C. A., Sallis, J. F., O'Donnell, M., & Frank, L. D. (2004). Economic interventions to promote physical activity: Application of the SLOTH model. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 27(3), 136–145.
- Sallis, J., & Owen, N. (1998). *Physical activity and behavioral medicine*. Thousand Oaks: Sage.
- Troiano, R. P., Berrigan, D., Dodd, K. W., Masse, L. C., Tilert, T., & McDowell, M. (2008). Physical activity in the united states measured by accelerometer. *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise*, 40(1), 181–188.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2008). *2008 physical activity guidelines for Americans*. Retrieved April 14, 2012 from <http://www.health.gov/paguidelines/guidelines/default.aspx>

Exercise and Cancer

- [Cancer and Physical Activity](#)

Exercise Is Medicine

- [Physical Activity Change in Healthcare Settings](#)

Exercise Prescription

- [Physical Activity Change in Healthcare Settings](#)

Exercise Testing

Simon L. Bacon^{1,2} and Alexandre Elhalwi³

¹Department of Health, Kinesiology, and Applied Physiology, Concordia University and Montreal Behavioural Medicine Centre, CIUSSS du Nord-de-l'île-de-Montréal, Montreal, QC, Canada

²Department of Exercise Science, Concordia University and Montreal Behavioural Medicine Centre, CIUSSS-NIM: Hopital du Sacre-Coeur de Montreal, Montreal, QC, Canada

³McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Synonyms

Physical fitness testing; Stress testing

Definition

Exercise testing is a method used to evaluate a number of physiological parameters and conditions, such as heart and lung capacities and pathologies, as well as physical ability. Clinical exercise tests, which evaluate vital organ functioning, are typically designed to incorporate large muscle groups, and these tests use modalities such as treadmills or cycle ergometers (i.e., aerobic exercise-based tests). In addition, exercise tests can consist of assessing strength (e.g., maximal resistance repetition tests) or coordination (e.g., timed-up-and-go). Maximal exercise testing protocols are structured to be progressive to the point of exhaustion, whereas submaximal exercise tests are conducted at a lower exercise intensity in a single-stage or multistage protocol and are terminated at a predetermined point.

An individual performs an exercise test, and data is collected by the test administrator. The collected data/information can then be analyzed to assess the nature of the physiological measure or disease/condition that the test was specifically designed to evaluate. Exercise tests can not only be used as diagnostic tests, such as in the case of evaluating heart conditions, but are also an important part of designing safe exercise programs for patients with a chronic disorder. In addition, exercise tests can also

be used to monitor the improvements or detriments resulting from the individual's treatments or physical training: an exercise test is conducted before the treatment to establish a baseline and then conducted again after the treatment; the effects of the treatment can then be evaluated.

It is also important to note that, in the case of exercise testing batteries, where more than one exercise test will be administered at a given time, the order of the tests may alter the results. For example, nonfatiguing exercise tests and exercise tests requiring muscular coordination should be conducted before fatiguing tests so as to not tire out the individual prematurely. By carefully selecting the order of the tests in the exercise testing battery, one can ensure more accurate results.

Cross-References

- [Exercise](#)
- [Graded Exercise](#)
- [Isometric/Isotonic Exercise](#)

References and Further Reading

- American College of Sports Medicine. (2018). In D. Riebe (Ed.), *ACSM's guidelines for exercise testing and prescription* (10th ed.). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health.
- Baechle, T. R., Earle, R. W., & National Strength & Conditioning Association. (2008). *Essentials of strength training and conditioning* (3rd ed.). Champaign: Human Kinetics.
- Froelicher, V. F., & Myers, J. (2007). *Manual of exercise testing* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Mosby.
- Wasserman, K., Hansen, J. E., Sue, D. Y., Stringer, W. W., Sietsema, K. E., Sun, W.-G., & Whipp, B. J. (2011). *Principles of exercise testing and interpretation*. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health.

Exercise Tolerance Test

- [Maximal Exercise Stress Test](#)

Exercise, Benefits of

- [Isometric/Isotonic Exercise](#)

Exercise-General Category

- [Isometric/Isotonic Exercise](#)

Exergames

- [Health Gaming](#)

Exhaustion

- [Fatigue](#)

Expanded Attributional Style Questionnaire (EASQ)

- [Optimism and Pessimism: Measurement](#)

Expectancy

- [Nocebo and Nocebo Effect](#)

Expectancy Effect

- [Placebo and Placebo Effect](#)

Expectations of Recovery Measure

Douglas P. Gross and Michele Crites Battié
Department of Physical Therapy, University of
Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Synonyms

[Cognitions](#); [Health Beliefs/Health Belief Model](#)

Definition

The Work-Related Recovery Expectation questionnaire was developed to measure a patient's beliefs about his or her likelihood of future recovery or ongoing difficulty due to a health condition. A health expectation has been defined as a prediction about the consequences of a specific health-related condition or behavior (Janzen et al. 2006). Patient recovery expectations predict future outcomes in a variety of health conditions including cardiovascular, musculoskeletal, and mental health disorders (Iles et al. 2009; Lovvik et al. 2014; Mondloch et al. 2001). Specific to musculoskeletal conditions, recovery expectations have been reported as associated with future recovery in patients with low back pain (Iles et al. 2009), whiplash-associated disorders (Carroll et al. 2009; Ozegovic et al. 2009), and soft-tissue injuries of the back, upper, and lower extremities (Cole et al. 2002). Findings of a recent systematic review indicate that recovery expectations measured within the first three weeks of a low back pain episode can help identify people at risk of poor outcome (Iles et al. 2009). Such predictions appear strongly associated with both symptomatic recovery and behavioral outcomes including return to work.

Description

The Work-Related Recovery Expectations questionnaire have demonstrated adequate internal consistency and correlate moderately with measures of pain intensity and reported disability in patients with low back pain (Gross and Battie 2005a). It has also demonstrated predictive validity in patients with chronic low back pain for predicting future recovery as measured through reception of workers' compensation time-loss benefits (Gross and Battie 2005b). However, predictive ability varies across musculoskeletal conditions, with highest predictive value seen in workers' compensation claimants with low back pain (Gross and Battie 2010).

When completing the measure, respondents are asked to rate their level of agreement on three recovery expectations statements using a five-point Likert scale (1, strongly disagree; 5, strongly

agree). A summative average of the three ratings is calculated after reversing the first item, such that a lower score represents more positive expectations. The first item's response direction is reversed as compared to the other two to allow evaluation of whether respondents actually read and comprehended each item. The three specific statements within the questionnaire are:

I believe I am physically capable of returning to my usual work activities.

I believe my symptoms would become worse if I were to return to my usual work activities now.

I believe that my injury will interfere with my ability to do my usual work activities in the future.

The Work-Related Recovery Expectation questionnaire has potential for helping clinicians identify workers with disabling health disorders at risk of delayed recovery and return to work. Identifying at-risk workers would allow targeted interventions to overcome recovery barriers. The questionnaire could also be used as a screen to guide assessments, for goal-setting purposes, and to assist with RTW decision making. Although the development and validation of the work-related recovery expectations have shown promise in work rehabilitation, further validation is required to examine predictive value in other health conditions and clinical settings.

Cross-References

- [Back Pain](#)
- [Chronic Pain, Types of \(Cancer, Musculoskeletal, Pelvic\), Management of](#)
- [Health Assessment Questionnaire](#)
- [Pain, Psychosocial Aspects](#)
- [Pain Recovery Inventory of Concerns and Expectations \(PRICE\) Questionnaire](#)
- [Psychosocial Factors](#)
- [Psychosocial Predictors](#)
- [Psychosocial Variables](#)

References and Further Reading

Carroll, L. J., Holm, L. W., Ferrari, R., Ozegovic, D., & Cassidy, J. D. (2009). Recovery in whiplash-associated disorders: Do you get what you expect? *The Journal of Rheumatology*, 36, 1063–1070.

- Cole, D. C., Mondloch, M. V., & Hogg-Johnson, S. (2002). Listening to injured workers: How recovery expectations predict outcomes – A prospective study. *CMAJ*, 166, 749–754.
- Gross, D. P., & Battie, M. C. (2005a). Factors influencing results of functional capacity evaluations in workers' compensation claimants with low back pain. *Physical Therapy*, 85, 315–322.
- Gross, D. P., & Battie, M. C. (2005b). Work-related recovery expectations and the prognosis of chronic low back pain within a workers' compensation setting. *Journal of Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 47, 428–433.
- Gross, D. P., & Battie, M. C. (2010). Recovery expectations predict recovery in workers with back pain but not other musculoskeletal conditions. *Journal of Spinal Disorders & Techniques*, 23, 451–456.
- Iles, R. A., Davidson, M., Taylor, N. F., & O'Halloran, P. (2009). Systematic review of the ability of recovery expectations to predict outcomes in non-chronic non-specific low back pain. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 19, 25–40.
- Janzen, J. A., Silvius, J., Jacobs, S., Slaughter, S., Dalziel, W., & Drummond, N. (2006). What is a health expectation? Developing a pragmatic conceptual model from psychological theory. *Health Expectations*, 9, 37–48.
- Lovvik, C., Shaw, W., Overland, S., & Reme, S. E. (2014). Expectations and illness perceptions as predictors of benefit reciprocity among workers with common mental disorders: secondary analysis from a randomised controlled trial. *BMJ Open*, 4, e004321.
- Mondloch, M. V., Cole, D. C., & Frank, J. W. (2001). Does how you do depend on how you think you'll do? A systematic review of the evidence for a relation between patients' recovery expectations and health outcomes. *CMAJ*, 165, 174–179.
- Ozegovic, D., Carroll, L. J., & David, C. J. (2009). Does expecting mean achieving? The association between expecting to return to work and recovery in whiplash associated disorders: A population-based prospective cohort study. *European Spine Journal*, 18, 893–9.

Experience Sampling

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[ESM](#); [Experience sampling method](#)

Definition

The experience sampling method (ESM) is an attempt to provide a valid instrument to describe

variations in self-reports of mental processes. It can be used to obtain empirical data on the following types of variables: (a) frequency and patterning of daily activity, social interaction, and changes in location; (b) frequency, intensity, and patterning of psychological states, i.e., emotional, cognitive, and conative dimensions of experience; (c) frequency and patterning of thoughts, including quality and intensity of thought disturbance (Csikszentmihalyi and Larson 1987).

ESM represents a valuable way of assessing clinical phenomena in real-world settings and across time. It can be used in various settings. In ESM studies, participants are required to fill in questions about their current thoughts, feelings, and experiences when prompted by an electronic device (e.g., a wristwatch, PDA). Entries are typically made at fixed or random intervals over a period of days (a week is a typical period). Briefing, debriefing, which sampling procedure to use, adherence, data management, and analytical issues must be considered carefully in the study design phase to ensure optimum data collection and hence optimum results from the study.

A growing body of research suggests that momentary assessment technologies that sample experiences in the context of daily life represent a useful and productive approach in the study of behavioral phenotypes, and a powerful addition to mainstream cross-sectional research paradigms (Myin-Germeys et al. 2009). These authors described momentary assessment strategies for psychopathology and presented a comprehensive review of research findings illustrating the added value of daily life research for the study of (1) phenomenology, (2) etiology, (3) psychological models, (4) biological mechanisms, (5) treatment, and (6) gene-environment interactions in psychopathology. They concluded that variability over time and dynamic patterns of reactivity to the environment are essential features of psychopathological experiences that need to be captured for a better understanding of their phenomenology and underlying mechanisms (Myin-Germeys et al. 2009).

The last decade has seen an increase in the number of studies employing the ESM in clinical research (see Trull and Ebner-Priemer 2009). Further research is needed to examine the optimal

equipment and procedure for different clinical groups. Consider for example psychiatric studies. Despite its theoretical advantages, using this methodology in psychiatric populations is challenging (Palmier-Claus et al. 2011).

Cross-References

- [Adherence](#)
- [Gene-Environment Interaction](#)
- [Phenotype](#)

References and Further Reading

- Csikszentmihalyi, M., & Larson, R. (1987). Validity and reliability of the experience-sampling method. *Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease*, 175, 526–536.
- Myin-Germeys, I., Oorschot, M., Collip, D., Lataster, J., Delespaul, P., & van Os, J. (2009). Experience sampling research in psychopathology: Opening the black box of daily life. *Psychological Medicine*, 39, 1533–1547.
- Palmier-Claus, J. E., Myin-Germeys, I., Barkus, E., Bentley, L., Udachina, A., Delespaul, P. A., et al. (2011). Experience sampling research in individuals with mental illness: Reflections and guidance. *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica*, 123, 12–20.
- Sullivan, T. P., Khondkaryan, E., Dos Santos, N. P., & Peters, E. N. (2011). Applying experience sampling methods to partner violence research: Safety and feasibility in a 90-day study of community women. *Violence Against Women*, 17, 251–266.
- Trull, T. J., & Ebner-Priemer, U. W. (2009). Using experience sampling methods/ecological momentary assessment (ESM/EMA) in clinical assessment and clinical research: Introduction to the special section. *Psychological Assessment*, 21, 457–462.

Experience Sampling Method

- [Experience Sampling](#)

Experimental Design

- [Agile Science](#)

Experimental Designs

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

There are two fundamental types of study design: experimental and nonexperimental (Piantadosi 2005). Piantadosi defined an experiment (an experimental design) as a series of observations made under conditions in which the influences of interest are controlled by the research scientist. In contrast, in nonexperimental studies, the research scientist collects observations but does not exert control over the influences of interest.

The classic example of an experimental design is the randomized clinical trial, in which the subjects (participants) are randomized to one of two or more experimental groups, thus receiving the intervention given to all members of each group. The simplest form of this design contains an experimental group receiving the intervention of interest (e.g., a behavioral intervention to lower blood pressure) while a second group receives a control intervention. The results obtained for each group are then compared to examine any statistically significant and clinically significant differences between the groups.

Two commonly used designs are the crossover design and the parallel groups design. In the first, each subject will receive each intervention, while in the second different groups of subjects receive just one of the interventions. When possible, the crossover design is preferable since each subject acts as his or her control subject.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Crossover Design](#)
- ▶ [Nonexperimental Designs](#)
- ▶ [Parallel Group Design](#)
- ▶ [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)

References and Further Reading

Piantadosi, S. (2005). *Clinical trials: A methodologic perspective* (2nd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley.

Experimental Group

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

As noted in the “▶ [Experimental Designs](#)” entry, experimental designs are those in which the influence(s) of interest are controlled by the research scientist. An experimental group is a group of subjects who receive a particular treatment or intervention. Experimental subjects are randomly assigned to one of the treatment groups so that many potential influences that cannot be controlled for (e.g., sex, height, and weight) are likely to be as frequent in one experimental group as they are in the other.

It should be noted that the term “treatment group” is related to the term “experimental group,” but they are not synonymous. Experimental groups can be thought of as a subset of treatment groups, i.e., groups formed by research scientists before administering the treatment or intervention of interest. Treatment groups can be formed retrospectively. For example, a research scientist may wish to collect follow-up data for patients who received two kinds of intervention for the same illness or condition. A simple example might be to determine the percentages of patients still alive 10 years following the cessation of Treatment A and Treatment B, two treatments given for the same serious condition. Such individuals could be classified as Treatment Group A and Treatment Group B. A meaningful comparison in this case would require the identification of groups of patients who were as similar as possible in every other regard except which treatment they received, a challenge common to many retrospective research strategies.

Cross-References

► Experimental Designs

References and Further Reading

Piantadosi, S. (2005). *Clinical trials: A methodologic perspective* (2nd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley.

Explanations

► Attribution Theory

Explanatory Models of Illness

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

This term refers to the manner in which patients explain their health conditions and their consequences. Much theoretical work has been done in health psychology/behavior medicine on this topic, and it has been applied to prediction of patient coping and adherence to treatments and to prediction of disease outcomes. An important part of appraising an illness is making sense of it, and patients often search for causes to which they attribute the onset of an illness. As such, these “explanations” reflect patients’ explanatory models of an illness and its treatment, in contrast with scientifically based models of illness. One may contrast explanatory models that attribute diseases to physical causes with those that attribute disease to psychosocial causes. The first may include one’s genetic profile, an underlying pathophysiological process (e.g., inflammation), injury, or infectious agents, to mention but a few examples. The second include “stress,” often a generic term referring to a life event or events,

one’s mental state (e.g., depression, anxiety, anger), or psychosocial context such as exposure to violence, poverty, or solitude, to mention but a few examples. Murdock (1980) found that among 139 societies worldwide, the prevailing causal attribution of illnesses was psychosocial.

One of the most scientifically tested explanatory models of illness is the common sense model of Leventhal et al. (1992). This model is a self-regulation model – people react to and regulate their behavior in light of an illness. The model’s core is a patient’s illness representation – a set of cognitions which guide patients in coping with, making sense of, and in adapting to an illness. These cognitions include illness identity (label of a condition and its symptoms), cause (perceived or attributed cause, not necessarily biomedically based), timeline (expected duration of an illness), consequences (physical and social consequences), and curability/controllability (extent of doctor and patient control over the illness). Illness representations, the core of patients’ explanatory model, are dynamic and change over the course of one’s experience with an illness. This model has been tested in relation to coping and outcomes of arthritic patients, psoriasis, multiple sclerosis, and cardiac surgery, to name but a few examples (e.g., Hale et al. 2007). For example, a recent study found that heart-failure patients’ beliefs about their treatment’s effectiveness in controlling their illness predicted readmission to hospital over 30 days (Turrise 2016). Another important example comes from a study in melanoma cancer showing that patients who perceived their treatment to be curative rather than palliative survived longer (Butow et al. 1999). Other investigators have proposed that explanatory models of illness are part of a cultural context of making sense of illness, deriving from one’s personal and social experiences. Yet, these models can often exacerbate rather than ameliorate, especially medically unexplained somatic symptoms (Kirmayer and Sartorius 2007). Thus, while explanatory models of illness are pivotal to understanding how people understand and cope with their illnesses, these can have important implications for their well-being. Hence, explanatory models of illness can also be targets of therapeutic interventions.

Cross-References

- [Common-Sense Model of Self-Regulation](#)
- [Illness Perceptions Questionnaire \(IPQ-R\)](#)

References and Further Readings

- Butow, P. N., Coates, A. S., & Dunn, S. M. (1999). Psychosocial predictors of survival in metastatic melanoma. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 17, 2256–2263.
- Hale, E. D., Trehan, G. J., & Kitas, G. D. (2007). The common-sense model of self-regulation of health and illness: How can we use it to understand and respond to our patients' needs? *Rheumatology*, 46, 904–906.
- Kirmayer, L. J., & Sartorius, N. (2007). Cultural models and somatic syndromes. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 69, 832–840.
- Leventhal, H., Diefenbach, M., & Leventhal, E. A. (1992). Illness cognition: Using common sense to understand treatment adherence and affect cognition treatment. *Cognitive Therapy and Research*, 16(2), 143–163.
- Murdock, G. P. (1980). *Theories of illness: A world survey*. Pittsburgh: University of Pittsburgh Press.
- Turrisi, S. (2016). Illness representations, treatment beliefs, medication adherence, and 30-day hospital readmission in adults with chronic heart failure: A prospective correlational study. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 31, 245–254.

Explanatory Style

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Definition

This term refers to the manner in which people explain events in their lives and is considered a trait characteristic. Stemming from the pioneering work on learned helplessness by Overmier and Seligman (1967), this phenomenon became important for its relevance to learning and to the understanding of the etiology of depression. Animals initially exposed to uncontrollable stress generalized their lack of control to a subsequent controllable stressful situation, manifesting what was termed “learned helplessness.” Such animals

even continued to receive adversities (e.g., small shocks) with little attempt to control them, though they were in a novel but controllable situation. However, when extrapolating similar studies to humans (mostly using uncontrollable noise stress), it was found that not all people developed learned helplessness. In an attempt to explain this outcome, Abramson et al. (1978) found that people exposed to uncontrollable stressful situations, and who attributed this stress to internal and stable causes which have global effects on their lives, developed learned helplessness and depression later. This pattern of cognitions including internal, stable, and global attributions for negative events was termed “explanatory style.” This theoretical change reflected the consideration of a situation × personality interaction in relation to outcomes.

In 1986, Sweeney et al. (1986) reviewed over 100 studies with various methodologies on explanatory style and depression. They found that following a negative uncontrollable stressor, people attributing its cause to an internal (rather than external cause), a stable (rather than unstable) cause, of global implications (rather than specific implications), had greater risk of depression. Conversely, people attributing a positive event to external and unstable causes of specific implications are also at risk for depression. The construct can be assessed in several manners, namely, by the Attribution Style Questionnaire (Peterson et al. 1982) or by using the Content Analysis for Verbatim Explanations (CAVE, Schulman et al. 1989) to analyze written texts.

The concept of explanatory style has received important predictive validity, some of crucial relevance to behavior medicine. For example, a study by Peterson et al. (1988) found that a negative explanatory style predicted risk of physical illnesses, over a 35-year follow-up period. In that study, explanatory style was based on open-ended questions, completed by Harvard University students when they were at age 25. Pessimistic explanatory style predicted more risk of poor physical health at the ages of 45–60, after controlling statistically for baseline physical and mental health. Another study found that a negative explanatory style predicted higher risk of nonfatal and fatal myocardial infarction (MI) in the

Normative Aging Study (Kubzansky et al. 2001). In contrast, Tomakowsky et al. (2001) found that a negative explanatory style predicted a smaller decline in CD4 counts but more subjective symptoms in HIV patients. Thus, more evidence supports the notion that a negative explanatory style predicts poor health; though in some contexts, this is not the case. A negative explanatory style can also serve as a framework for cognitive interventions in treating depressive people, given the relative consistent role of explanatory style in depression, given its clear structure and functions, and given its unrealistic or distorted nature.

Cross-References

► [Depression: Symptoms](#)

References and Further Readings

- Abramson, L. Y., Seligman, M. E. P., & Teasdale, J. D. (1978). Learned helplessness in humans: Critique and reformulation. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology, 87*, 49–74.
- Kubzansky, L. D., Sparrow, D., Vokonas, P., & Kawachi, I. (2001). Is the glass half empty or half full? A prospective study of optimism and coronary heart disease in the normative aging study. *Psychosomatic Medicine, 63*, 910–916.
- Overmier, J. B., & Seligman, M. E. P. (1967). Effects of inescapable shock upon subsequent escape and avoidance responding. *Journal of Comparative and Physiological Psychology, 63*, 28–33.
- Peterson, C., Semmel, A., von Baeyer, C., Abramson, L. T., Metalsky, G. I., & Seligman, M. E. P. (1982). The attributional style questionnaire. *Cognitive Therapy and Research, 6*, 287–300.
- Peterson, C., Seligman, M. E. P., & Vaillant, G. (1988). Pessimistic explanatory style as a risk factor for physical illness: A thirty-five year longitudinal study. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 55*, 23–27.
- Schulman, P., Casetellon, C., & Seligman, M. E. P. (1989). Assessing explanatory style: The content analysis of verbatim explanations and the attributional style questionnaire. *Behaviour Research and Therapy, 27*, 505–512.
- Sweeney, P. D., Anderson, K., & Bailey, S. (1986). Attributional style in depression: A meta-analytic review. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 50*, 974–991.
- Tomakowsky, J., Lumley, M. A., Markowitz, N., & Frank, C. (2001). Optimistic explanatory style and dispositional optimism in HIV-infected men. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research, 51*, 577–587.

Exploratory Study

► [Pilot Study](#)

Expression Pattern

► [Gene Expression](#)

Expressive Art Therapy

► [Art Therapy](#)

Expressive Writing and Health

Stephen J. Lepore¹ and Wendy Kliever²

¹Department of Public Health, Temple University, Philadelphia, PA, USA

²Department of Psychology, Virginia Commonwealth University, Richmond, VA, USA

Synonyms

[Written disclosure](#)

Definition

Expressive writing is a form of therapy in which individuals write about their thoughts and feelings related to a personally stressful or traumatic life experience. Expressive writing is sometimes referred to as written disclosure, because writers are instructed to disclose personal information, thoughts, and feelings. Unlike communicative forms of writing, expressive writing is personal, free flowing, and informal, often without concern for style, spelling, punctuation, or grammar.

Description

Origins

Expressive writing resembles journaling, which had its heyday the 1970s following the publication

of Ira Progoff's book, *At a Journal Workshop*. In the late 1980s, researchers James Pennebaker and Sandra Klihr Beall conducted one of the earliest controlled scientific investigations into the therapeutic effects of expressive writing. In that study, college students in an expressive writing intervention condition wrote for 15 min on 4 consecutive days about the "most traumatic or upsetting experiences" of their lives, while their counterparts in a control group wrote about superficial topics. Students who wrote about the facts and their associated feelings surrounding a life trauma evidenced short-term increases in arousal and negative mood, but also evidenced fewer health center visits months after the writing intervention relative to controls. Subsequently, dozens of studies have investigated the potential power of writing to bring about benefits in behavioral, psychological, and physical health outcomes. In the 1990s and early 2000s, investigators began to focus more on understanding how expressive writing influenced such a broad array of outcomes ranging from preventing depressive symptoms and health center visits for illness to altering immune functioning and working memory. Work on identifying theoretical mechanisms continues to this day, but mostly current research focuses on testing the efficacy of expressive writing for mitigating problems in an ever widening range of populations, including children and various high-risk or clinical populations (Lepore and Smyth 2002).

Expressive Writing Interventions and Variations

Expressive writing interventions are usually quite brief, consisting of several 15- to 20-min writing sessions spread over multiple days. Benefits have been observed in interventions using just a single writing session or as many as 8 weekly sessions, but there is some evidence that effects are most powerful when the writing sessions last at least 15 min and are repeated at least three times. Typically, investigators instruct participants to write about nonspecific traumas of their choosing, but a growing number of studies have focused on evaluating the potential benefits of writing about specific traumas and stressful life events (see Box 1 for sample instructions). Whereas writing about major upheavals can be broadly beneficial,

focused writing about a specific topic also appears to confer benefits. For example, writing about an upcoming graduate school examination has been shown to reduce depressive symptoms, and writing about breast cancer resulted in greater declines in physical symptoms when compared with control writing.

Whereas the core instructions of writing about one's deepest thoughts and feelings surrounding a traumatic or stressful life event are apparent in most expressive writing studies, investigators have experimented with the procedure in an effort to isolate mechanisms of action or to improve upon the intervention. For example, the writing might be private or shared with an investigator, conducted in a single writing session or multiple sessions, possibly include booster sessions, focus on past or ongoing events, consider either positive or negative aspects of life stressors. In addition, there have been variations in location of writing (e.g., home versus laboratory), as well as mode of writing (e.g., longhand versus typing). It appears that the beneficial effects of expressive writing are robust, resulting in benefits despite variations in instructions, settings, and procedures. The effects of expressive writing are somewhat stronger when people write at home or in a private setting, the outcomes are measured within a month after writing rather than later in time, the writing focuses on recent or previously undisclosed stressors, and the instructions provide directed questions, information on switching topics, and specific examples of what to disclose in writing. Some variations in the writing instructions have little or no effect on the benefits of writing, including the spacing between the writing, the positive or negative valence of the writing, whether the writer or the experimenter selects the topic of writing, or the mode of writing.

Box 1. Sample Expressive Writing Instructions

(a) Writing About Self-Identified Stressors

For this writing exercise, please write for 15 min about your very deepest thoughts

(continued)

Box 1. Sample Expressive Writing**Instructions** (continued)

and feelings about the most traumatic experience of your life or an extremely important emotional issue that has affected you and your life. In your writing, really let go and explore your deepest thoughts and feelings. You might tie your topic to your relationships with others, including parents, lovers, friends or relatives; to your past, your present or your future; or to who you have been, who you would like to be, or who you are now. You may write about the same or different issues, experiences and topics each day. All of your writings will be confidential. Don't worry about spelling, grammar or sentence structure. The only rule is that once you begin writing, you continue until the time is up.

(b) Writing About Specific Stressors

For this writing exercise, please write for 15 min about your deepest thoughts and feelings concerning your cancer. For example, you might write about the various ways the cancer has changed your life, what your life was like before the diagnosis, after diagnosis, during treatment and now. For some people, dealing with a cancer diagnosis is just one of many stressors in their life. You do not have to limit your writing to how cancer has affected your life. You may focus on other highly upsetting experiences in your life. The most important thing is that you should explore your very deepest emotions and thoughts. All of your writings will be confidential. Don't worry about spelling, grammar or sentence structure. The only rule is that once you begin writing, you continue until the time is up.

have examined the impact of expressive writing on physiological functioning, self-reported health and health behaviors, psychological well-being, attitudes, and general life functioning. Meta-analytic reviews have revealed modest but significant effects of expressive writing across diverse outcomes and populations (Frattaroli 2006; Frisina et al. 2004). Recent work has extended earlier investigations by studying the effects of expressive writing on outcomes as varied as emotional intelligence, workplace incivility, homesickness, caregiving stress, and gay-related stress.

Both objective and subjective indicators of physical health have been examined in response to expressive writing. Some of the most striking effects of expressive writing interventions are on physiological outcomes, including immune parameters (e.g., IL-8, CD8, T-helper lymphocytes, T-cytotoxic lymphocytes, Epstein-Barr antibodies), HIV viral load, and liver functioning. What is not yet clear is whether the changes in the immune parameters and other biomarkers are clinically meaningful. The evidence linking expressive writing to other theoretically plausible and objective biological outcomes has not always been positive, with some studies failing to find significant effects on outcomes such as blood lipids, blood pressure, lung capacity, heart rate, strength, joint condition, and body composition. Effects on self-reported physical health are fairly robust. Expressive writing reduces health-care utilization, pain, somatic illness symptoms (e.g., upper respiratory illness symptoms), disease severity ratings, and illness behaviors. However, with the exception of some studies that have found effects of writing on a healthy diet, most analyses have failed to show effects on health behaviors, including physical activity, substance use, sleep, and adherence to medical treatment. Thus, health behaviors are not likely mediators of the health benefits of expressive writing interventions.

In general, the effects of expressive writing on psychological health and well-being are weaker than for physical health. Studies of psychological well-being have included assessments of depression, positive and negative mood, anger, aggression, grief, distress, anxiety, post-traumatic stress and growth, dissociation, adjustment to school,

Effects of Expressive Writing

As shown in Box 2, the effects of expressive writing interventions are quite broad. Scholars

coping, cognitive schemas, and emotion regulation. Consistently strong effects have been observed for depression and positive attitudes and mood; effects are equivocal for post-traumatic growth and for anxiety, with some studies showing heightened anxiety in response to writing and others showing reductions in anxiety. There is no evidence that expressive writing has reliable effects on coping, cognitive schemas, or self-regulation.

As research on expressive writing has blossomed, scholars have extended outcomes beyond physical and psychological well-being to include broader indicators of functioning. There is strong evidence that expressive writing interventions affect work-related behaviors such as reemployment, absenteeism, and incivility in the workplace; the quality of social relationships, including forgiveness; cognitive functioning such as working memory and reaction time; and school outcomes, such as grade point averages and adjustment to college life.

Box 2. Observed Benefits of Expressive Writing

1. Physical health and physiological functioning.
 1. Objective measures
 - Immune parameters
 - HIV viral load
 - Liver functioning
 2. Subjective measures
 - Health care utilization
 - Pain
 - Disease severity ratings
 - Illness behaviors
2. Psychological well-being.
 - Depression
 - Positive attitudes
 - Positive mood
3. Role functioning and related outcomes.
 1. Work-related behaviors
 - Re-employment
 - Absenteeism
 - Incivility in the workplace

2. Social relationships
3. Cognitive functioning
 - Working memory
 - Reaction time
4. School outcomes
 - Grade point average
 - Adjustment to college life
 - Adjustment to high school

Who Benefits from Expressive Writing?

One way to understand who benefits from expressive writing is to examine the kinds of populations that respond favorably to the intervention. Many of the early studies on expressive writing focused on nonclinical populations. Indeed, healthy college students have been the subjects in numerous expressive writing studies. In the past 15 years, though, an impressive number of clinical trials have been conducted involving high-risk and clinical populations, and even youth. Another way to understand who benefits from expressive writing is to look for subgroups of writers in intervention studies who benefit relatively more or less than other writers in the intervention.

Expressive writing interventions have been applied to populations confronting a wide range of clinical health problems, including cancer, arthritis, asthma, post-traumatic stress disorder, HIV infection, cystic fibrosis, chronic pain, and sleep disorders. There is evidence of benefits of writing in clinical populations, but it is mixed. For example, one expressive writing intervention study showed improvements in lung function and physician-rated disease severity, respectively, in participant with asthma or rheumatoid arthritis. However, these findings have not been replicated in follow-up studies. Perhaps the most frequent clinical population targeted for expressive writing interventions has been cancer survivors. The results have been mixed. Some studies have reported select benefits in cancer populations, such as reduced postoperative medical illness visits in good prognosis breast cancer survivors, better sleep quality among renal cancer patients, and

reduced pain perception among prostate cancer survivors; yet just as many studies have reported absolutely no significant benefits of expressive writing. In only a few trials with clinical populations, specifically participants with post-traumatic stress disorder, have possibly serious adverse effects been identified. It is possible that for psychiatric populations writing should be guided by a therapist and used only as an adjuvant to more traditional therapies. The vast majority of studies with clinical populations suggest that it is a safe intervention, if not particularly powerful and reliable. The quality of the interventions, writing instructions, measured outcomes, settings, and time to follow-up vary tremendously from one clinical trial to the next, so the evidence of the efficacy of this intervention with clinical populations is still inconclusive.

Although most expressive writing interventions are conducted with adults, there are a growing number of randomized clinical trials that have been conducted with children and adolescents. Approximately half of these trials have been conducted with clinical populations outside of the school context; the remaining trials have been conducted in a school context with general populations of youth. The findings with youth have not been as promising as findings with adults. Across studies, effects of writing on internalizing symptoms have been equivocal, with fewer than half of the trials reporting improvements on measures of psychological well-being. With respect to indicators of physical health, no study has reported improvements in somatic complaints due to writing, but several studies with small samples have reported improvements in functional ability and declines in medical and emergency room visits. Some of the equivocal findings with youth may be due to use of writing with youth who do not have the cognitive capacity to process their stressful experiences. Additionally, youth who are not dealing with significant stressors may see their anxiety increase in response to writing interventions. Because writing uses few resources and fits into normal school activities, there is a potential for writing interventions to have a large impact on school populations provided that it is used with youth who have

experienced significant stress and have the cognitive capacity to process their stressful experiences.

Individual studies and meta-analytic reviews have investigated whether specific subgroups of writers benefit more or less from the intervention, or whether identifiable factors alter or moderate the effects of expressive writing on outcomes. One problem with such analyses is that they cannot establish cause-effect relationships because other unmeasured variables might explain any observed differences between subgroups. Nonetheless, as evidence on subgroup differences and moderators accumulates, it might suggest feasible targets for intervention and methods for improving upon the intervention. Analyses in this vein have shown that a number of factors do not appear to alter the effects of expressive writing, including participant age, ethnicity, education level, severity of stressor or trauma, baseline psychological health levels, negative affectivity, and level of inhibition or prior disclosure status. One caveat, however, is that not all studies that have examined individual moderators have had adequate representation within all the levels of the subgroups, so it is possible that future research will derive different conclusions. Other factors do appear to make a difference, but the evidence is mixed, since effects fail to replicate or have not yet been investigated in multiple studies. There is some evidence that the individuals who benefit the most are male, have higher stress or physical health problems prior to writing, have lower optimism, perceive that they are socially constrained in talking about their stress, have no difficulty in identifying and labeling emotions, and do not habitually repress negative emotions.

How Does Expressive Writing Work?

There are two dominant theoretical models to explain the array of beneficial effects of expressive writing, the disinhibition model and the self-regulation model. Relatively few studies have directly tested the theoretical mechanisms explaining the benefits of expressive writing, and evidence on the validity of all of the mechanisms is mixed (Lepore and Smyth 2002; Sloan and Marx 2004).

The disinhibition model is based on the notion that individuals inhibit or avoid thoughts, reminders, and feelings of traumatic life events because they are distressing and can evoke negative social responses. Inhibition potentially influences health via the chronic physiological strain and arousal caused by the work of inhibition. Expressive writing theoretically counteracts the adverse effects of inhibition by encouraging individuals to disinhibit themselves by disclosing their deepest trauma-related experiences and associated thoughts and feelings. Numerous writing studies have challenged this model. For example, individuals writing about non-inhibited future events, such as an upcoming graduate school entrance examination, reported significantly lower depressive symptoms than controls. In addition, the benefits of expressive writing appear to be equivalent whether individuals write about previously disclosed or non-disclosed traumas, or write about positive or negative aspects of past traumas.

The self-regulation model is based on the notion that individuals who have excessively high or low levels of control over their emotions have an elevated risk for health problems due to the pathophysiological effects of emotion dysregulation. Research supports the notion that emotion regulation relates to health outcomes. For example, there is evidence that the inhibition, or non-expression, of anger is associated with heightened physiological arousal, which appears relevant to cardiovascular health. However, there is also evidence that individuals with little control over their expression of anger have heightened levels of physiological arousal and risk for cardiovascular disease. Individuals who are optimally regulated in their expression of anger may be at the lowest risk for health problems. According to the self-regulation model, individuals experiencing stressful life events need to strike a balance between emotionally overreacting and underreacting. Expressive writing is thought to facilitate emotion regulation processes by directing attention, facilitating habituation, and aiding in cognitive restructuring. Briefly, by directing attention to different aspects of a stressful experience and

one's emotional response and thoughts, expressive writing increases habituation (desensitization) to the negative thoughts and feelings associated with the stressor and potentially allows for the creation of new and less-threatening appraisals and feelings to be attached to the memories of the stressor. Consistent with this theory, there is evidence that expressive writing desensitizes individuals to stress-related thoughts. In addition, there is evidence that expressive writing can reduce stress-related intrusive thoughts, which may be symptomatic of incomplete cognitive processing of stressors. This evidence, however, is not consistent across studies.

Additional research is needed to better understand how expressive writing results in positive social, behavioral, and health outcomes. Although scholars have posited a variety of plausible social, psychological, and biological mechanisms, empirical evidence does not strongly support or rule out any particular explanation. All of the identified mechanisms may be sufficient to influence the outcomes linked to expressive writing, either directly or indirectly. It is likely that there is no single mechanism of action given the diversity of outcomes studied and the mixed evidence on each mechanism.

Cross-References

► Stress

References and Further Reading

- Frattaroli, J. (2006). Experimental disclosure and its moderators: A meta-analysis. *Psychological Bulletin*, 132, 823–865.
- Frisina, P. G., Borod, J., & Lepore, S. J. (2004). A meta-analysis of the effects of written emotional disclosure on health outcomes of clinical populations. *Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease*, 192, 629–634.
- Lepore, S. J., & Smyth, J. (Eds.). (2002). *The writing cure: How expressive writing influences health and well-being*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Nyklíček, I., Temoshok, L., & Vingerhoets, A. (Eds.). (2004). *Emotional expression and health: Advances in*

- theory, assessment and clinical applications*. New York: Taylor & Francis.
- Pennebaker, J. W. (Ed.). (2002). *Emotion, disclosure, & health*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Sloan, D. M., & Marx, B. P. (2004). Taking pen to hand: Evaluating theories underlying the written disclosure paradigm. *Clinical Psychology: Science and Practice*, 11, 121–137.

Ex-Smokers

Marcia D. McNutt and Monica Webb Hooper
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Coral Gables, FL, USA

Synonyms

Former smokers; Past smokers; Previous smokers

Definition

The term ex-smoker refers to an individual who has given up (i.e., quit) cigarette and/or tobacco smoking. Ex-smokers were previous current smokers, but are no longer smoking.

Tobacco smoking is defined as the practice of burning and inhaling tobacco, and cigarette smoking is the most common form of tobacco smoking. National surveys define a current smoker as an individual who has smoked at least 100 cigarettes in their lifetime and currently smokes on at least some days.

Description

Cigarette smoking is the most important modifiable risk factor for chronic disease; yet, there is not a consensus in the way smoking status is classified. The harmful effects of cigarette smoking on various health outcomes have been determined by comparing individuals who are (1) current smokers, (2) ex-smokers, and/or (3) never smokers. Therefore, the definition of

an ex-smoker is important for making cross-study comparisons regarding the health consequences of smoking and cessation. Most national surveys ask whether a person has a history of smoking 100 lifetime cigarettes *and* whether they currently smoke on some days. Respondents who indicate “yes” to the first question and “no” to the second are categorized as ex-smokers. Other research specifies a time period of smoking cessation needed for ex-smoker classification; however, that time (e.g., 1 day, 1 week, 3 months, 5 years, etc.) varies across studies. Nonetheless, results of studies comparing current smokers with ex-smokers have shown unequivocally that quitting smoking, for even a relatively short time period, decreases the risk of chronic disease.

Because there is unquestionable evidence that cigarette smoking is the leading preventable cause of multiple cancers (e.g., lung and esophageal), heart disease, and stroke, attention has focused on the specific effect quitting smoking has on health. The evidence shows that quitting, even after an extended period of smoking, decreases the risk of associated illnesses. Moreover, the disease risk decreases as the number of years since quitting increases. The 1989 US Surgeon General’s report indicated that after 10 years of smoking cessation, the risk of lung cancer is decreased by almost 50% (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 1989). Still, ex-smokers continue to have an increased risk of developing a chronic disease compared to never smokers. In comparing the three groups on chronic disease risk (i.e., current smokers, ex-smokers, and never smokers), ex-smokers have a reduced risk compared to current smokers, but they have approximately twice the risk compared to never smokers (Ebbert et al. 2003). The absolute risk of lung cancer remains higher among ex-smokers than never smokers even after smoking cessation (Halpern et al. 1993). However, the excess chronic disease risk for an ex-smoker is reduced to that of a never smoker after 15 years of abstinence. Additionally, Thornton et al. (1994) found that recent ex-smokers were similar to current smokers in the prevalence of chronic disease risk factors (e.g., low vegetable consumption); and ex-smokers who were smoke-free for 20+ years

(i.e., long-term ex-smokers) were similar to never smokers. Compared to current smokers, ex-smokers are more likely to engage in healthy lifestyle behaviors (e.g., attempting to lose weight, cutting down on fatty foods, and increasing vegetable consumption; Thornton et al. 1994), which may further reduce chronic disease risk.

Relapse prevention is important for ex-smokers, considering that approximately 90% of people who quit return to smoking within one year (Brandon et al. 1990; Garvey et al. 1992). Although the risk of relapse after a long period of time (i.e., 6–12 months) is relatively low, smoking even one cigarette after quitting is likely to lead to a full relapse. Even with the vacillating status of many ex-smokers, approximately 10% of those who relapse are able to quit again permanently in the future (Wetter et al. 2004). Therefore, interventions for relapse prevention among ex-smokers have been designed and evaluated. A systematic review by Agboola et al. (2010) found that bupropion and nicotine replacement therapy (e.g., the nicotine patch, nicotine gum, and nicotine lozenge) are efficacious in preventing relapse among ex-smokers who quit smoking using such aids. Self-help materials may also be useful in preventing relapse among ex-smokers who quit smoking on their own (Brandon et al. 2004).

In summary, ex-smokers reduce their risk of chronic disease the longer they abstain from smoking. Because exposure to smoke causes significant harm to the body, ex-smokers still have an increased risk of several diseases compared to those who have never smoked. Over time, however, successful ex-smokers are comparable to never smokers on several risk factors for chronic disease.

References and Readings

- Agboola, S., McNeill, A., Coleman, T., & Bee, J. L. (2010). A systematic review of the effectiveness of smoking relapse prevention interventions for abstinent smokers. *Addiction*, 105, 1362–1380.
- Brandon, T. H., Meade, C. D., Herzog, T. A., Chirikos, T. N., Webb, M. S., & Cantor, A. B. (2004). Efficacy and cost-effectiveness of a minimal intervention to prevent smoking relapse: Dismantling the effects of amount of content versus contact. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 72(5), 797–808. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0022-006X.72.5.797>.
- Brandon, T. H., Tiffany, S. T., Obremski, K. M., & Baker, T. B. (1990). Postcessation cigarette use: The process of relapse. *Addictive Behaviors*, 15(2), 105–114. [https://doi.org/10.1016/0306-4603\(90\)90013-N](https://doi.org/10.1016/0306-4603(90)90013-N).
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (1989). Reducing the health consequences of smoking: 25 years of progress—a report of the Surgeon General. Washington, DC: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control. DHHS Publication No. (CDC) 89–8411.
- Ebbert, J. O., Yang, P., Vachon, C. M., Vierkant, R. A., Cerhan, J. R., Folsom, A. R., et al. (2003). Lung cancer risk reduction after smoking cessation: Observations from a prospective cohort of women. *Journal of Clinical Oncology: Official Journal of the American Society of Clinical Oncology*, 21(5), 921–926.
- Garvey, A. J., Bliss, R. E., Hitchcock, J. L., Heinold, J. W., & Rosner, B. (1992). Predictors of smoking relapse among self-quitters: A report from the normative aging study. *Addictive Behaviors*, 17(4), 367–377. [https://doi.org/10.1016/0306-4603\(92\)90042-T](https://doi.org/10.1016/0306-4603(92)90042-T).
- Halpern, M. T., Gillespie, B. W., & Warner, K. E. (1993). Patterns of absolute risk of lung cancer mortality in former smokers. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 85(6), 457–464.
- Thornton, A., Lee, P., & Fry, J. (1994). Differences between smokers, ex-smokers, passive smokers and non-smokers. *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 47(10), 1143–1162.
- Wetter, D. W., Cofta-Gunn, L., Fouladi, R. T., Cinciripini, P. M., Sui, D., & Gritz, E. R. (2004). Late relapse/sustained abstinence among former smokers: A longitudinal study. *Preventive Medicine*, 39(6), 1156–1163. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ypmed.2004.04.02>.

Cross-References

- Smoking and Health
- Smoking Cessation

Extended Life Orientation Test (E-LOT)

- Optimism and Pessimism: Measurement

External Locus of Control

Gary Davis

Medical School Duluth, University of Minnesota,
Duluth, MN, USA

Synonyms

Helplessness; Low self-efficacy

Definition

External locus of control is the belief that one's behavior will not lead to valued reinforcement that is available in the environment and therefore not under one's control. The occurrence of reinforcement is believed to be a function of factors out of one's control such as luck, chance, or randomness.

Description

External Locus of Control

External locus of control anchors one end of a continuum of the locus of control construct with the other end anchored by internal locus of control. The construct developed out of work by E. Jerry Phares and Julian Rotter in the 1950s at Ohio State University and was influenced strongly by Alfred Adler's earlier work on striving for superiority. Feelings of inferiority were thought to be associated with externality. Rotter published his initial paper containing the external locus of control construct in 1966 that included the now famous Internal-External Locus of Control Scale (I-E) to measure the locus of control construct. It has subsequently become one of the most frequently cited papers ever published in psychology. The construct was embedded in Rotter's social learning theory and reflects his strong belief in the importance of theoretical frameworks.

Some research over the years has been criticized because of the tendency to use the scale and the construct in a manner disconnected from their theoretical home.

External locus of control is defined as the belief or expectation that one's behavior will not lead to valued reinforcement that is available in one's environment; rather, the occurrence of reinforcement is a function of factors out of one's control such as luck, chance, or randomness. In Rotter's terms, external locus of control is a generalized expectancy, meaning that across a range of situations, people who are externally oriented, would have the expectation that control over reinforcements lies outside of their control. In its simplest form, the potential for any behavior to occur is a function of the expectation for reinforcement and the value of that reinforcement. Early in his work, Rotter represented that by the equation $BP \text{ (behavior potential)} = f(E \text{ (expectation)} \times RV \text{ (reinforcement value)})$.

External locus of control is commonly measured or assessed by the Internal-External Locus of Control Scale. The original scale has 29 items, including 6 filler items, in a forced choice format that requires subjects to agree or disagree with statements. High scores are in the direction of externality. Two examples of "external items" are: *I have often found that what is going to happen will happen* and *Getting a good job depends mainly on being in the right place at the right time*.

Not surprisingly, since creating new tests seems to be one of the things that psychologists do best, many scales have been spawned to measure the construct of locus of control since Rotter's original scale was published. Some of these have been developed as a result of dissatisfaction with the forced choice format and other methodological issues. Others have been developed for use with specific populations or environments such as with children, medical patients, and organizational settings.

Many dissertations and published research papers have included the external locus of control

construct. This widespread interest probably reflects our almost natural inclination to be interested in our fate and factors that influence it. Examples of some of the research results on externality are that external locus of control has been related to low self-efficacy, low self-esteem, helplessness, depression, low achievement motivation, low risk-taking, less independent thinking and greater conformity, and less creativity.

Of particular interest to researchers has been the question of the role that external locus of control plays in the maintenance of health and the adjustment to illness. For the past 30 years, numerous patient populations, both acutely and chronically ill, have been studied to learn about the impact of externality on their illness experiences. The findings generally lend support to the notion that externality influences illness experiences, but the results have not been consistent across patient groups. For example, externals have been found to ask fewer questions of health-care staff and have less information about their illnesses. But other research has found that at least with certain chronic illnesses, such as, diabetes, externals are about as informed as internals. An interesting line of research pursued the idea of matching treatment approaches in a congruent manner with locus of control orientation. For example, it has been found that there is little difference in cardiac rehabilitation outcomes when externals who are in a highly structured and regimented program are compared to internals who are involved in a more self-directed program. However, the inconsistency in research outcomes and very modest association of locus of control to health and illness behaviors clearly suggests that many factors, including the nature of the illness itself, interact with locus of control and influence health behaviors. This conclusion, that many variables interact with locus of control, also holds for health maintenance behaviors for which it may be intuitive to think that externals would be less likely to engage in preventive measures.

A notable contribution to this literature, and the subject itself of considerable investigation, is the Multidimensional Health Locus of Control Scales by Wallston. The MHLC is a group of three scales intended to assess beliefs about health status

control and beliefs about control over illness and disease. Numerous other disease-specific scales (e.g., cancer, diabetes, pain) to measure external locus of control have been developed in recent years.

Cross-References

► [Locus of Control](#)

References and Readings

- Hand, M. P. (2008). *Psychological resilience: The impact of positive and negative life events upon optimism, hope, and perceived locus of control*. Germany: VDM Verlag.
- Lefcourt, H. M. (1983). *Research with the locus of control construct* (Developments and social problems) (Vol. 2). New York: Academic Press.
- Rotter, J. B. (1966). Generalized expectancies for internal versus external control of reinforcement. *Psychological Monographs*, 80(1), 1–28. Whole No. 609.
- Wallston, K. A. (2005). The validity of the multi-dimensional health locus of control scales. *Journal of Health Psychology*, 10, 623–631.

Extrinsic Religiousness (Religiosity)

Kevin S. Masters

Department of Psychology, University of Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Definition

Extrinsic religiousness (initially and still sometimes referred to as extrinsic religiosity) is characterized as religion that primarily serves other more ultimate ends rather than central religious beliefs per se. Thus, individuals described by extrinsic religiousness use their religion to fulfill more basic needs such as social relations or personal comfort, but “the embraced creed is lightly held or else selectively shaped to fit more primary needs” (Allport and Ross 1967, p. 434).

Description

Extrinsic religiousness was first described by Gordon Allport and colleagues in the 1960s (see Allport and Ross 1967) when investigating the possible reasons for discrepant findings in the area of religiousness and prejudice. At that time, some studies demonstrated that religiousness was positively associated with prejudice, whereas other studies found the opposite. Allport hypothesized that one's religious orientation, or sentiment, may provide guidance in sorting out these findings. The construct of religious orientation was later clarified by Gorsuch (1994) to be a motivational variable.

Extrinsic religiousness has often been measured by the Religious Orientation Scale (Allport and Ross 1967). More recently, Gorchush and McPherson (1989) developed the I/E-Revised scale as a more psychometrically sound instrument. Based on previous work (Kirkpatrick 1989), Gorsuch and McPherson anticipated, and subsequently verified, two subscales on the extrinsic scale, extrinsic-personal (Ep) and extrinsic-social (Es). A prototypic Ep item is "What religion offers me most is comfort in times of trouble and sorrow" and for Es "I go to church mainly because I enjoy seeing people I know there." Scholars in the psychology of religion have debated the relative strengths and weaknesses of the religious orientation construct (e.g., Kirkpatrick and Hood Jr. 1990; Masters 1991), but it remains the most empirically investigated and heuristic construct in this area of work. Investigators attempting to determine the relations between religion and health have also turned to religious orientation. Smith et al. (2003) in a meta-analytic study found that extrinsic religiousness was associated with higher levels of depressive symptoms. Similarly, Masters and Bergin (1992) provided a narrative review of the literature and found extrinsic religiousness to be related positively with depression, anxiety, and obsessive-compulsive symptoms, whereas McCullough and Willoughby (2009) reported that extrinsic religiousness may be negatively related to self-control. Recent investigations found extrinsic religiousness related to greater laboratory-induced

cardiovascular reactivity in older adults (Masters et al. 2004), and Masters and Knestel (2011) found that among a random sample of community dwelling adults, those characterized by extrinsic religiousness were more likely to be divorced, reported overall worse health, higher body mass index, greater cigarette use, and a higher number of daily drinks of alcohol than did those characterized as intrinsically religious. There were no differences in the percentages of individuals who were classified as extrinsically religious based on religious denomination. Nevertheless, it is not entirely clear how extrinsic religiousness may interact with religious denomination, and some have suggested that the construct, as currently conceptualized and measured, is more congruent with Protestant notions of religiosity and perhaps most appropriately applied to this religious group (Cohen et al. 2005).

Cross-References

► [Intrinsic Religiousness \(Religiosity\)](#)

References and Readings

- Allport, G. W., & Ross, J. M. (1967). Personal religious orientation and prejudice. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 5, 432–443.
- Cohen, A. B., Pierce, J. D., Jr., Chambers, J., Meade, R., Gorchush, B. J., & Koenig, H. G. (2005). Intrinsic and extrinsic religiosity, belief in the afterlife, death anxiety, and life satisfaction in young Catholics and Protestants. *Journal of Research in Personality*, 39, 307–324.
- Gorchush, R. L., & McPherson, S. E. (1989). Intrinsic/extrinsic measurement: I/E-revised and single-item scales. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 28, 348–354.
- Gorsuch, R. L. (1994). Toward motivational theories of intrinsic religious commitment. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 33, 315–325.
- Kirkpatrick, L. A. (1989). A psychometric analysis of the Allport-Ross and Feagin measures of intrinsic-extrinsic religious orientation. In D. O. Moberg & M. L. Lynn (Eds.), *Research in the social scientific study of religion*, 1 (pp. 1–31). Greenwich: JAI Press.
- Kirkpatrick, L. A., & Hood, R. W., Jr. (1990). Intrinsic-extrinsic religious orientation: The boon or bane of contemporary psychology of religion? *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 29, 442–462.

- Masters, K. S. (1991). Of boons, banes, babies, and bath water: A reply to the Kirkpatrick and Hood discussion of intrinsic-extrinsic religious orientation. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 30, 312–317.
- Masters, K. S., & Bergin, A. E. (1992). Religious orientation and mental health. In J. F. Schumaker (Ed.), *Religion and mental health* (pp. 221–232). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Masters, K. S., Hill, R. D., Kircher, J. C., Lensegrav-Benson, T. L., & Fallon, J. A. (2004). Religious orientation, aging, and blood pressure reactivity to interpersonal and cognitive stressors. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 28, 171–178.
- Masters, K. S., & Knestel, A. (2011). Religious orientation among a random sample of community dwelling adults: Relations with health status and health relevant behaviors. *The International Journal for the Psychology of Religion*, 21, 63–76.
- McCullough, M. E., & Willoughby, B. L. B. (2009). Religion, self-regulation, and self-control: Associations, explanations, and implications. *Psychological Bulletin*, 135, 69–93.
- Smith, T. B., McCullough, M. E., & Poll, J. (2003). Religiousness and depression: Evidence for a main effect and the moderating influence of stressful life events. *Psychological Bulletin*, 129, 614–636.

Eye Tracker

► Eye Tracking

Eye Tracking

Naum Purits
Stockholm, Sweden

Synonyms

Eye tracker; Gaze tracking

Definition

An eye tracker is a computerized system used to record the activity of eye movements and visual overt attention, hence making it possible to study human behavior. Data obtained from an eye tracker session is useful for testing everything that could be visually observed.

Description

Eye tracking as a means of measuring and monitoring eye movements is widely used in different fields of human behavior research, for example, cognitive psychology, psycholinguistics and reading research, neurophysiology, ophthalmology, usability and human-computer interaction studies, and market research.

Eye Movement Measurement Methodologies

There are four eye movement measurement techniques (Duchowski 2003) as follows:

- Electrooculography (EOG) – eye movement recording method commonly used in the 1970s. It is based on measuring potential differences of electrodes placed on the skin close to the eye.
- Sclera Contact Lens/Search Coil Lens – an old and very precise eye movement-measuring method based on a contact lens placed on the eye with a reference object, for example, wire coil, attached to the lens.
- Photo-oculography (POG) or Video-oculography (VOG) – a number of eye movement-recording methods based on measurement of different features of the eyes such as shape of the pupil, position of the limbus, etc. The above mentioned methods mainly measure the position of the eye relative to the head.
- Video-Based Combined Pupil-Corneal Reflection (Remote Eye Tracking) – noninvasive eye tracking methods providing measurement of position of the eye in space (not relative to the head). This technique is widely available and most suitable for eye tracking in real time.

Basic Operating Principles of Remote Eye Trackers

Remote eye trackers, that is, Pupil-Corneal reflection eye trackers, use infrared diodes to generate reflection patterns on the corneas of the studied person's eyes. The system uses image sensors to collect images of the eyes and the reflection

patterns. Sophisticated image processing algorithms identify relevant features, including the eyes and the corneal reflection patterns. Complex mathematics is used to calculate the position of each eyeball and finally the gaze point, in other words, where and on what the person is looking. The development of eye trackers is based on present neuroscience knowledge. Here the brain's physiological and functional processes represented of the Mango- and Parvo-cellular pathways are of great importance (Duchowski 2003).

The performance of an eye tracker can be described in terms of gaze accuracy and precision, and track robustness. Accuracy describes the angular average distance from the actual gaze point to the one measured by the eye tracker. Gaze precision describes the spatial variation between successive samples collected when the person fixates at a specific point on a stimulus, for example, an image on the screen (Duchowski 2003). Sampling rate and Latency are also important characteristics: the first one determines how fast the movement of the eye is measured; the second determines how fast the gaze point information from the eye tracker is obtained (important for gaze contingency and interaction).

The most commonly used systems for investigation of eye movements are categorized into eye tracking systems for human-computer interaction

and diagnostic use of eye movement analysis. The interactive systems include selective and gaze-contingent systems and the latter are either screen-based or model-based. Examples of eye tracking systems usage are shown in Figs. 1, 2, and 3.

Applications

Eye tracker systems are used to study human visual behavior by measuring gaze parameters like (a) fixation duration in milliseconds (gaze time and/or gaze fixation time), (b) average number of fixation points lasting between 200 and 300 ms, (c) saccade duration in milliseconds, that is, quick, simultaneous movements of both eyes, (d) proportion of left-to-right saccades, (e) proportion of saccade regressions and proportion of vertical saccades, (f) pupil dilation, (g) number of blinks, (h) smooth pursuit, (i) occurrence of nystagmus, (j) attention, and (k) inattention priority. The recorded data is statistically analyzed and graphically rendered and applied to measure visual search efficiency, priority, navigation usability, and real observing time of signs, letters, pictures, and figures in various communication systems or revealing inattention during work or driving.

Eye Tracking,

Fig. 1 Remote eye tracker
Tobii T60XL



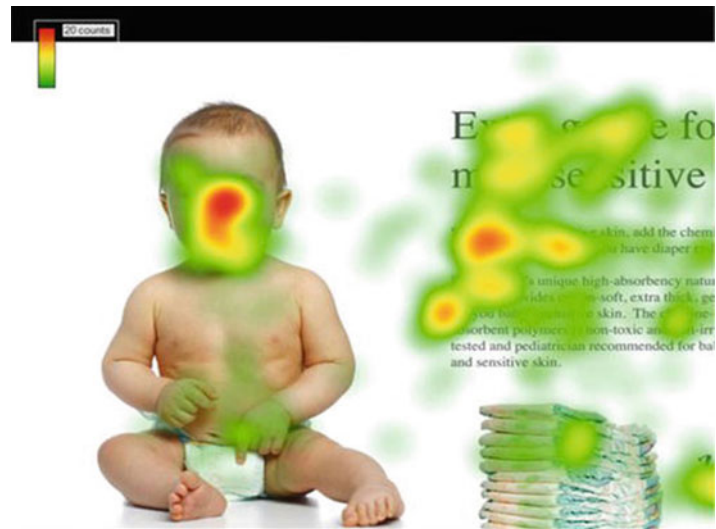
Eye Tracking,

Fig. 2 Head-mounted eye tracker Tobii glasses



Eye Tracking,

Fig. 3 Example of a result of a marketing study: heat map



Eye tracking is used to answer an endless array of *scientific research* questions regarding animal habits, for example, for studying chimpanzees' face scanning patterns (Kano and Tomonaga 2010) and human visual habits. The human research is performed in the fields of behavioral medicine; linguistics; ophthalmology; cognitive, developmental, and behavioral psychology; and neurophysiology sometimes integrated with electroencephalography (EEG) in real time. For example, eye tracking technology is applied in developmental research, used as a diagnostic tool, for example, to children suffering from dyslexia, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), and autism, for oculomotor differential diagnosis in neurological disorders,

discriminating between Parkinson's and Alzheimer's disease, diagnosis and treatment of neurological disorders, for example, mild traumatic brain injury, schizophrenia, and occurrence of macular degeneration, and in linguistics studies. Studies of fatigue and gaze attention are helpful to understand the effectiveness of work performed by truck chauffeurs, captains, police officers, and air traffic controllers. Moreover, eye tracking provides unique methods to perform *marketing and media research*, for example, evaluate how users and consumers experience and perceive different media like websites and communication messages or make decisions about attractive products in shops and restaurants. The eye tracking technology is extensively used for

Eye Tracking, Table 1 Examples of the use of eye tracking systems for scientific investigation of human eye behavior, media and marketing research, usability studies, and as an assistive device

	Subject	Human eye behavior studied	Study summary	References
Human scientific research	Neuroscience developmental research	Search efficiency	The <i>speed of gaze fixations</i> was investigated during manual feeding and self-propelled feeding demonstrated on video films among 6-month- and 10-month-old babies and adults. The gaze had faster goal fixations when manual feeding was performed. The gaze direction among 10-month babies demonstrated that they were able to understand when the spoon was directed to their mouth and not to an adult feeding herself. Tobii X120 eye tracker, Tobii technology. Retrieved 2011-05-25 http://www.tobii.com ¹	Kochukkova and Gredebäck (2010)
	Neuroscience developmental research	Visual real time: gaze time/gaze fixation time	A comparative study revealed that children with developmental dyslexia when reading sentences in a Cyrillic alphabet language had more than five times longer <i>gaze fixations</i> to the target words, affecting the reading frequencies and length compared to matched children without reading problems. Tobii X120 eye tracker, Tobii technology. Retrieved 2011-05-25 http://www.tobii.com ¹	Hristova et al. (2010)
	Linguistic research Brain physiology	Eye behavior investigation of attention	Seven eye movement variables were investigated: (a) fixation duration in milliseconds, (b) average number of fixations lasting between 200 and 300 ms, (c) saccade duration in milliseconds, i.e., 7–9 letter spaces, (d) proportion of left-to-right saccades, (e) proportion of saccade regressions, i.e., occurrences of re-reading, and proportion of vertical saccades, and (f) total time for reading three sets of words and three sentences. The aim was to understand which variable (a–f) would best discriminate between 6 years and 12 years old children with the diagnoses reading disability and attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) compared to a control group of “normal” developed children. There were significant differences between the control group and the disability groups, who showed <i>atypical eye movements</i> for all variables apart from <i>saccade duration</i> . However, the results do not yet support the use of these eye movement variables to distinguish between the groups of participants with reading disorders and ADHD. The View Point Eye Tracker apparatus from Arrington Research ^a	Deans et al. (2010)

(continued)

Eye Tracking, Table 1 (continued)

	Subject	Human eye behavior studied	Study summary	References
	Linguistic research Brain physiology	Visual real gaze time, gaze fixation time. Search efficiency	An experimental study among people with and without dyslexics showed that both phonological and visual brain processes influence the eye movements, i.e., the <i>visual gaze and fixation time</i> when producing automatic naming. However, linear mixed effects analyses demonstrated that dyslexia readers need longer latencies, i.e., time used from observing words to response when performing the tasks	Jones et al. (2008)
	Linguistic research Brain physiology	Attention Glance behavior Eye behavior investigation	The direction of visual <i>attention</i> was investigated among people learning a foreign language. Less inaccurate initial word-referent mapping supports the learning	Fitneva and Christiansen (2011)
	Cognitive and behavioral psychology Oculomotor diagnosis in brain damage	Saccadic duration and direction	Ten people with developmental surface dyslexia, who read a short passage, showed an <i>altered pattern of eye movements with more frequent and smaller rightward saccades as well as longer fixation times</i> . The authors concluded that the cause is connected to the brain process and not to a deficit of the function of the oculomotor system	DeLuca et al. (1999)
	Cognitive and behavioral psychology	Saccade performance	Saccadic eye tracking is an effective differential tool among people suffering from Parkinson's dementia disease and dementia with Lewy bodies. The sensitivity was 60% and specificity was 77–88% when reflexive saccade execution and complex saccade performance are used. Tobii X120 eye tracker, Tobii technology http://www.tobii.com and electrooculography	Mosimann et al. (2005)
	Cognitive and behavioral psychology Oculomotor rehabilitation	Search efficiency	The aim was to improve the reading profile among people with acquired brain damage suffering from error scanning or hemianoptic dyslexia. The training program during 8 weeks included single- and multiple-line-simulated reading and visual tracking, i.e., <i>eye movement fixation, saccade performance, and gaze pursuit</i> . Infrared eye movement technology ¹	Ciuffreda et al. (2006)

(continued)

Eye Tracking, Table 1 (continued)

	Subject	Human eye behavior studied	Study summary	References
	Behavior medicine	Eye behavior investigation of attention. Saccadic behavior	Smoking cues in movie clip affect smokers' attention behavior compared to nonsmokers. The smokers gaze more quickly, more often, and for longer time to the smoking-related cues	Lochbuehler et al. (2011)
	Ophthalmology and vision science	Attention in saccadic search	<i>Attention</i> measured as <i>saccadic search</i> to attributes may be rendered in size, color, or orientation. The study result revealed that size, color, and orientation are not alike in dynamic attribute processing over time which has been the common conclusion drawn from earlier studies. Tobii 1750 eye tracker at 50 Hz sampling rate ¹	Yu (2010)
	Assistive devices	Gaze eye pointing	Eye tracking systems are used to <i>control computers</i> by eye pointing and hence used as assistive devices among people with complex motor and language disabilities. MyTobii (P10) ¹	AbiltyNetGate (2011)
	Market investigations	Search efficiency	The efficiency design of websites was compared using a three-layer hierarchical model for analyzing <i>eye movement</i> data. Consumers switch frequently between attribute-based and product-based acquisition during moment-to-moment decision-making of buying a product (e.g., a computer)	Shi (2010)
	Marketing/Advertising investigations	Search priority	Using eye tracking technology consumers buying behaviors in pub environments were measured in terms of <i>eye movement and gaze preferences</i> . The buying decision process among the consumers was revealed. The results showed that factors in the pub environment, like where the beer taps were placed, the impression of bartenders and various point-of-sale-advertising influenced the consumers' choice of beer	Press release from Carlsberg Sweden (a producer of beer) (2011)
	Usability investigations Human factors ergonomic	Navigation usability	The usability, i.e., <i>eye movement navigation and orientation</i> of five e-reading book devices was tested using an eye tracker. Among the results it was obvious that the mean duration of visual fixations differed significantly between the reading devices	Siegenthaler et al. (2010)

^aInformation used in the references

usability studies, on websites, computer applications, games, and other human-made objects. Individually adapted eye tracker systems are used as assistive devices for people with complex motor and language disabilities, making them able to communicate, receive information, and play games by using eye pointing as demonstrated in

video filmed cases (AbiltyNetGate 2011). The recent technological development in the eye tracking field promises that eye movement will be the future way of controlling computers (Norrby 2008; Wolverson 2011) and other apparatus in home and work. Among these endless numbers of possible eye tracking applications some

publications, emphasizing the various gaze parameters, are shown in Table 1.

Cross-References

- [Cognition](#)
- [Social Marketing](#)

References and Further Reading

- AbilityNetGate. (2011). *Global. assistive. technology. encyclopedia. eye pointing*. Retrieved May 26, 2011, from <http://abilitynet.wetpaint.com/page/Eye+Pointing>
- Ciuffreda, K. J., Han, Y., Kapoor, N., & Ficarra, A. P. (2006). Oculomotor rehabilitation for reading in acquired brain injury. *NeuroRehabilitation*, 21(1), 9–21.
- Deans, P., O’Laughlin, L., Brubaker, B., Gay, N., & Krug, D. (2010). Use of eye movement tracking in the differential diagnosis of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) and reading disability. *Psychology*, 1, 238–246.
- DeLuca, M., DiPace, E., Judica, A., Spinell, D., & Xocolotti, P. (1999). Eye movement patterns in linguistic and non-linguistic tasks in developmental surface dyslexia. *Neuropsychologia*, 37(12), 1407–1420.
- Duchowski, A. T. (2003). *Eye tracking methodology theory and practice* (pp. 1–251). London: Springer.
- Fitneva, S. A., & Christiansen, M. H. (2011). Looking in the wrong direction correlates with more accurate word learning. *Cognitive Science*, 25(2), 367–380. Retrieved May 23, 2011, <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed?term=dyslexia%20eye%20tracking>
- Hristova, E., Gerganov, A., Georgieva, S., & Todorova, E. (2010, August 11–14). *Eye-movements of 7-years dyslexic children reading in regular orthography: Exploring word frequency and length effects*. In Proceedings of the 32nd annual conference of Cognitive Science Society, Portland.
- Jones, M. W., Obergón, M., Kelly, L. M., & Branigan, H. P. (2008). Elucidating the component processes involved in dyslexic and non-dyslexic reading fluency: An eye tracking study. *Cognition*, 109(3), 389–407.
- Kano, F., & Tomonaga, M. (2010). Face scanning in chimpanzees and humans: Continuity and discontinuity. *Animal Behavior*, 79(1), 227–235.
- Kochukkova, O., & Gredebäck, G. (2010). Preverbal infants anticipate that food will be brought to the mouth: An eye tracking study of manual feeding and flying spoons. *Child Development*, 81(6), 1729–1738. Retrieved May 27, 2011.
- Komogortsev, O. V., Gobert, D. V., Jayarathna, S., Do, H. K., & Gowda, S. (2010, July 26). Automated analyses of oculomotor fixation and saccadic behaviors. *IEEE Transactions on Biomedical Engineering*. (Epub ahead of print).
- Lochbuehler, K., Voogd, H., Scholte, R. H. J., & Engels, R. (2011). Attentional bias in smokers: Exposure to dynamic smoking cues in contemporary movies. *Journal of Psychopharmacology*, 25(4), 514–519.
- Mosimann, U., Müri, R. M., Burn, D. J., Relblinger, J., O’Brien, J. T., & McKeith, I. G. (2005). Saccadic eye movement changes in Parkinson’s disease dementia and dementia with Lewy bodies. *Brain a Journal of Neurology*, 128(6), 1267–1276.
- Nielsen, J., & Pernice, K. (2009). *Eye tracking web usability*. Safari books on line. Retrieved May 26, 2011, from <http://my.safaribooksonline.com/9780321549730>
- Norrby, A. (2008). *Toobii fick stora designpriset* (Tobii received the great design award). NyTeknik May Retrieved May 26, 2011, from http://www.nyteknik.se/nyheter/it_telekom/datorer/article241202.ece. (In Swedish).
- Press release from Carlsberg Sweden (a producer of beer). (2011). *Sweden has investigated eye movements in people visiting bars*. Published 2011-04-26 12:26 Contact Jonas Ydén. Retrieved May 26, 2011, from <http://www.carlsberg Sverige.se/Media/Nyheter/Sidor/CarlsbergSverigehartestat%C3%B6gon%C3%B6relservidbardisken.aspx>
- Research Papers. (n.d.). *Tobii eye tracking research*. Copyright © 2011 Tobii Technology, Sweden. Retrieved May 24, 2011 from <http://www.tobii.com/en/analysis-and-research/global/library/research-papers/>
- Shi, S. W., Wedel, M., & Pieters, F. G. M. (2010). *Information acquisition: An eye-tracking study of comparison websites*. Retrieved May 15, 2011, from <http://gsgl.shufe.edu.cn/Article/UploadFiles/201011/20101130094412881.pdf>
- Siegenthaler, E., Wurtz, P., & Groner, R. (2010). Improving the usability of E-book readers. *International Journal of Usability Studies*, 6(1), 25–38.
- SunshineCoast Daily. (2011). *Jeepers creepers, it’s an eyeful*. Retrieved May 25, 2011, from <http://www.sunshinecoastdaily.com.au/story/2011/05/09/jeepers-creepers-its-an-eyeful/>
- Tobii Eye Tracking Research, Diigo online library. (2011). *Research papers*. Retrieved May 26, 2011, from <http://www.tobii.com/en/analysis-and-research/global/library/research-papers/>
- Tobii eye tracking’s list: *Tobii White papers*. (2011). Retrieved May 26, 2011, from <http://www.diigo.com/list/tobiieyetracking/tobii-white-papers>
- Tobii eye-tracker integrated with ASA-Lab. (n.d.). *The real-time integration of eye-tracking and EEG*. Retrieved October 18, 2011, from <http://www.tobii.com/ant-neuro.com/showcase/tobii-eyetracker>
- Wolverton, T. (2011). *San Jose Mercury News* (San Jose, CA). Retrieved March 26, 2011, from <http://smart-grid.tmcnet.com/news/2011/03/23/5397145.htm>
- Yu, S. X. (2010, December 6–9). Feature transitions with saccadic search: Size, color, and orientation are not alike. *Neural information processing systems*, Vancouver. Retrieved May 17, 2011, from <http://www.cs.bc.edu/~syu/publication/ftmc10.html>

F

Factorial Experimental Designs

- [Multiphase Optimization Strategy \(MOST\)](#)

Failure

- [Attribution Theory](#)

Faith and Health

- [Spirituality and Health](#)

Faith Community Interventions

- [Church-Based Interventions](#)

Faith-Based Interventions

- [Church-Based Interventions](#)

Fall Risk Behavior

Lindy Clemson

Ageing, Work and Health Research Unit, Faculty of Health Sciences, University of Sydney, Lidcombe, NSW, Australia

Definition

Older people tend to define a fall as loss of balance and attribute it to external factors such as an obstacle or the weather, whereas health professionals relate it to intrinsic causes such as medications, medical reasons, or muscle strength. Although older people recognize inattention as important, neither group easily includes behavioral risks in their attribution.

The WHO definition of behavioral fall-risk factors includes those concerning human actions, emotions, beliefs, and daily choices. These are potentially modifiable and include, for example, sedentary behaviors, management of medications, inclusion of appropriate exercise in weekly routines, and better choices in safe shoe selection. Behaviors can be examined from their contribution to causing falls to the crucial part they play in reducing fall risk. For example, an individual's risk of falls is inexplicably related to the interaction between their mobility and balance capacity, their environmental demands and stressors, and their fall-risky lifestyle and behaviors.

Description

Fall-risk behaviors can be conceptualized as sequential events with a number of contributing factors which may be antecedents, present or consequential to the fall event. There has been some limited work in exploring risk behaviors surrounding the fall event, predictors of falls over time, personal characteristics, and socioeconomic and cultural influences. The consequences of falls can relate to the sequelae of injury, fear of falling, or reduced activity. Even for those who experience slight injuries such as contusions there are frequently reported short-term physical function decreases and a loss of confidence. The earlier cohort studies on risk factors focused predominantly on intrinsic factors though several did identify reduced activity, leaving home less often, and in one cohort study, more than ten activities per week significantly increased fall risk. Older people who have fallen often attribute actions such as “hurrying,” “carelessness,” or “inattention” as causal fall behaviors.

A longitudinal study following fallers over an 8-year period has shown that depression and lower levels of morale are associated with increasing fall rates (Anstey et al. 2008). It may be that depression can contribute to motor or cognitive disturbances that can predispose people to falls. One intervention study (Salminen et al. 2009) provided psychosocial group support for persons assessed with depression which lessened depression, enhanced involvement in the exercise components of the program, and resulted in a reduction of fall risk.

There are different cognitive profiles for those who have occasional falls, associated with subtle aging changes such as accuracy, planning, or inhibition of a response, compared to those who are having recurrent falls, which may be associated with broader deficits in processing speed, task-switching, and visual attention (Anstey et al. 2009). Few demographic characteristics are linked to falls though living alone is associated with a greater risk of multiple falls. Other profiling that highlights differences in risk behaviours has been identified in certain groups: those that are frailer compared to those who are very active;

those in rural compared to city, particularly in terms of the type and extent of indoor/outdoor activities; and, differences in extreme weather conditions. Gendered responses to risk have been shown to vary, with women tending to blame themselves or others and men quicker to accept responsibility, and how family members respond which can vary from overprotective sons for women and younger female relatives who engage in negotiating actions for the men (Horton 2007).

English-speaking people in Australia and Caucasians in the USA have higher falls injury admission rates than other groups. However, it is less clear whether this is a function of increased falls or is due to better access to health services. In countries where there are numerous immigrant groups with changing aging demographics, there is an increasing need to tailor falls prevention programs to meet particular linguistic and cultural requirements and differences in health-seeking behaviors and attitudes (Bradley and Harrison 2007).

Fear of falling can be associated with falls but it has become evident that it is an independent phenomenon that can result in activity avoidance leading to social isolation, physical de-conditioning, and reduced quality of life whether or not falls occur. Delbaere et al. (2010a, b) have led important research defining how perceived risk of falling and “real” risk measured by validated physiological measures interact with psychological states. Four groups were identified: vigorous, anxious, stoic, and aware. The anxious group had a high-perceived fall risk compared to real risk and was related to depressive symptoms, neuroticism, and decreased executive functioning. The stoic group had attributes that protected them from falling, being positive, physically active, and participated in community life. This work suggests that measures of efficacy beliefs (e.g., *Assessment of Fear of Falling in Older Adults: The Falls Efficacy Scale-International (FES-I)*, by S.A. Greenberg, http://consultgerim.org/uploads/File/trythis/try_this_29.pdf) or fear of falling need to be considered in terms of other fall-risk factors and that better defining rational or irrational fears would be useful in falls prevention.

Michie et al. (2005) assert that in developing prevention guidelines, there needs to be better specificity in describing and defining the kinds of causal behaviors and to identify construct domains to help explain the underlying behavioral processes and therefore, the kinds of opportunities for change.

Two studies used recall and reenactment to explore themes and patterns associated with falls that occur at home (Connell and Wolf 1997) and those that occur in public places (Clemson, Manor, and Fitzgerald 2003). Themes such as: or beliefs that a change in eyeglass prescription can cause deterioration of eyesight resulting in a reluctance to change; and low mobility self-efficacy affecting how the person safely negotiates the environment. Drawing on this work and conducting a review of studies that reported causes of falls, the *Falls Behavioural (FaB) Scale for older people* (Clemson, Cumming, and Heard 2003) was developed to assess the kinds of subtle, day-to-day behaviors, both habitual and intentional, that offer an older person protection from falling during daily activity. Using factor analysis, dimensions within the scale were detected, which provided a profile of the kinds of adaptations people make or, alternatively, do not make, for example, *cognitive adaptations* (behaviors associated with reflection, intention, and planning, e.g., paying enhanced attention to changes in balance, level of alertness, etc., when trying a new medication) and *protective mobility* (protective mobility – negotiating the environment in a supportive or protective way, e.g., using defensive walking strategies such as heel toe walking and scanning ahead while walking). Clemson's and co-workers research has contributed to developing programs that incorporate evaluation of daily routines, the situational factors that shape these routines, and the kinds of adaptations the participants make. Programs need to incorporate techniques that support changing habits and maintaining them.

Habitual behaviors can be either risk taking or protective and are described as situational-guided goal-directed behaviors, and hence, behavioral responses are automatically elicited when a particular situation arises. Situational cues can be a specific place and a specific time, or other specific

feature of the environment or pattern of interaction with the environment. There is evidence that habitual behaviors can be broken and new habits instituted in the same context by using planned *implementation intentions* (Holland et al. 2006; Trope and Fishbach 2004). These refer to a planned commitment to a behavioral response followed up with practiced and repeated actions in the same context. Thus, with conscious planning and repetition the new action is brought into active memory until it replaces the older action and becomes stable and enduring. The LiFE program, embedding balance and strength training in daily life activity, is an example of a program developed using these principles.

Knowing about their perception of falls risk and their fall experiences will assist in facilitating follow through of fall prevention strategies (Clemson et al. 1999). Older people tend to describe the fall in terms of its consequences and they do not easily make the link to “falls prevention” reporting this notion to be unfamiliar and puzzling. Recommendations center around ensuring that interventions are compatible with a positive identity, that they are tailored to the circumstances and values of the individual, and that validated methods are used to maintain longer-term adherence. If these are not addressed then older people are reluctant to participate (Yardley et al. 2007). There is also evidence on the importance of prevention strategies to include individual plans, to be contextually relevant and valued by the older person, and to recognize, in working with older people, the importance of self-identity and sense of control. The importance of reflecting on their falls and why they happened are directly related to engagement in adaptive strategies and hence are more likely to experience positive outcomes (Roe et al. 2008).

Two evidence-based programs tested in randomized trials that have been developed based on specific cognitive behavioral models are *Matter of Balance* (MoB) (Tennstedt et al. 1998), which reduced fear of falling and increased activity engagement, and the *Stepping On program* (Clemson et al. 2004), which reduced the rate of falls. The conceptual model of MoB recognizes self-efficacy, outcome expectations, and

attributions as important influences on an older adults' sense of control over the course and consequences of aging. The program using cognitive restructuring exercises to address volitional attitudes and beliefs about falls before focusing on behaviors associated with the reduction of modifiable fear of falling risk factors such as activity avoidance. The conceptual model of *Stepping On* draws on the process of decision-making operationalized into a framework to facilitate the adoption of behaviors to reduce fall risk and uses principles of enhancing self-efficacy, adult education, and story-telling as a technique to encourage reflective thinking, reframing, and problem-solving.

The outcome of a fall experience is complex and intricately related to personal, biological, and environmental factors. There needs to be a greater focus on understanding the behavioral and psychosocial effects of a fall. The aim for the older person is to understand and engage in protective behaviors and lifestyle choices that reduce risk thereby avoiding falls and remaining active and connected with community.

References and Further Readings

- Anstey, K. J., Burns, R., von Sanden, C., Luszcz, M. A., Anstey, K. J., Burns, R., et al. (2008). Psychological well-being is an independent predictor of falling in an 8-year follow-up of older adults. *Journals of Gerontology Series B-Psychological Sciences and Social Sciences*, 63(4), P249–P257.
- Anstey, K. J., Wood, J., Kerr, G., Caldwell, H., & Lord, S. R. (2009). Different cognitive profiles for single compared with recurrent fallers without dementia. *Neuropsychology*, 23(4), 500–508.
- Bradley, C., & Harrison, J. E. (2007). *Fall-related hospitalisations among older people: Sociocultural and regional aspects*. Canberra: Australian Institute of Health and Welfare.
- Clemson, L., Cusick, A., & Fozzard, C. (1999). Managing risk and exerting control: Determining follow through with falls prevention. *Disability and Rehabilitation*, 13(12), 531–541.
- Clemson, L., Cumming, R. G., & Heard, R. (2003a). The development of an assessment to evaluate behavioral factors associated with falling. *American Journal of Occupational Therapy*, 57(4), 380–388.
- Clemson, L., Manor, D., & Fitzgerald, M. H. (2003b). Behavioral factors contributing to older adults falling in public places. *Occupational Therapy Journal of Research: Occupational Participation Health*, 23(3), 107–117.
- Clemson, L., Cumming, R. G., Kendig, H., Swann, M., Heard, R., & Taylor, K. (2004). The effectiveness of a community-based program for reducing the incidence of falls among the elderly: A randomized trial. *Journal of American Geriatrics Society*, 52(9), 1487–1494.
- Connell, B., & Wolf, S. (1997). Environmental and behavioural circumstances associated with falls at home among healthy elderly individuals. *Archives of Physical and Medical Rehabilitation*, 78(2), 179–186.
- Delbaere, K., Close, J. C. T., Brodaty, H., Sachdev, P., & Lord, S. R. (2010a). Determinants of disparities between perceived and physiological risk of falling among elderly people: Cohort study. *BMJ*, 341, c4165.
- Delbaere, K., Close, J. C. T., Heim, J., Sachdev, P. S., Brodaty, H., Slavin, M. J., et al. (2010b). A multifactorial approach to understanding fall risk in older people. *Journal of American Geriatrics Society*, 58(9), 1679–1685.
- Holland, R. W., Aarts, B., & Langendam, D. (2006). Breaking and creating habits on the working floor: A field-experiment on the power of implementation intentions. *Journal of Experimental Social Psychology*, 42, 776–783.
- Horton, K. (2007). Gender and the risk of falling: A sociological approach (Research Support) *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, 57(1), 69–76; 58(9):1679–1685.
- Michie, S., Johnston, M., Abraham, C., Lawton, R., Parker, D., Walker, A., et al. (2005). Making psychological theory useful for implementing evidence based practice: A consensus approach. *Quality & Safety in Health Care*, 14(1), 26–33.
- Roe, B., Howell, F., Riniotis, K., Beech, R., Crome, P., & Ong, B. N. (2008). Older people's experience of falls: Understanding, interpretation and autonomy. (Multicenter Study). *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, 63(6), 586–596.
- Salminen, M. J., Vahlberg, T. J., Salonoja, M. T., Aarnio, P. T. T., & Kivela, S.-L. (2009). Effect of a risk-based multifactorial fall prevention program on the incidence of falls. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 57(4), 612–619.
- Tennstedt, S., Howland, J., Lachman, M., Peterson, E., Kasten, L., & Jette, A. (1998). A randomized, controlled trial of a group intervention to reduce fear of falling and associated activity restriction in older adults. *Journal of Gerontology: Psychological Sciences*, 53B(6), P384–P392.
- Trope, Y., & Fishbach, A. (2004). Going beyond the motivation given: Self-control and situational control over behavior. In R. Hassin, J. S. Uleman, & J. W. Bargh (Eds.), *The new unconscious* (pp. 537–565). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Yardley, L., Beyer, N., Hauer, K., McKee, K., Ballinger, C., & Todd, C. (2007). Recommendations for promoting the engagement of older people in activities to prevent falls. *Quality & Safety in Health Care*, 16(3), 230–234.

False Negative

► False-Negative Error

False Positive

► False-Positive Error

False-Negative Error

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[False negative](#)

Definition

In the context of medical diagnosis, a false-negative error occurs when an individual with a disease is “identified” by a diagnostic test as not having the disease.

In general science, if something is said to be true when in actuality it is false, the terms “type I error,” “alpha error,” or “false-positive error” are used. If something is said to be false when in actuality it is true, the terms “type II error,” “beta error,” or “false-negative error” are used (Jekel et al. 2007).

False-negative errors are meaningfully discussed along with false-positive errors.

Cross-References

► False-Positive Error

References and Further Reading

- Jekel, J. F., Katz, D. L., Elmore, J. G., & Wild, D. M. G. (2007). *Epidemiology, biostatistics, and preventive medicine*. Philadelphia: Saunders/Elsevier.
- Katz, D. L. (2001). *Clinical epidemiology and evidence-based medicine: Fundamental principles of clinical reasoning and research*. Thousand Oaks: Sage.

False-Positive Error

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[False positive](#)

Definition

In the context of medical diagnosis, a false-positive error occurs when an individual without a disease is “identified” by a diagnostic test as having the disease.

In general science, if something is said to be true when in actuality it is false, the terms type I error, alpha error, or false-positive error are used. If something is said to be false when in actuality it is true, the terms type II error, beta error, or false-negative error are used (Jekel et al. 2007).

When a diagnostic test is administered to a large group of individuals, it is very likely that, in truth, some will have the disease of interest and some will not. In the ideal scenario, all of those who have the disease will be correctly identified as having it, and all of those who do have the disease will be correctly identified as not having it. Unfortunately, such perfection is rare. As just noted, a false-positive error occurs when an individual without a disease is “identified” by a diagnostic test as having the disease. Another error that requires consideration is the false-negative error. In this case, an individual who does have the disease is incorrectly “identified” as not having the disease.

Associated terms are sensitivity and specificity (Katz 2001). Sensitivity is the proportion of those with the disease for whom the test result is positive. Specificity is the proportion of those without the disease for whom the test result is negative. Sensitivity and specificity are performance characteristics of every diagnostic test. To interpret the result of a test, and remain vigilant for false-positive and false-negative errors, these characteristics must be known along with the context in which the test is operating.

Cross-References

► [False-Negative Error](#)

References and Further Reading

- Jekel, J. F., Katz, D. L., Elmore, J. G., & Wild, D. M. G. (2007). *Epidemiology, biostatistics, and preventive medicine*. Philadelphia: Saunders/Elsevier.
- Katz, D. L. (2001). *Clinical epidemiology and evidence-based medicine: Fundamental principles of clinical reasoning and research*. Thousand Oaks: Sage.

Family

► [Family, Structure](#)

Family Aggregation

Farrah Jacquez and Whitney Raglin
Department of Psychology, University of Cincinnati, Cincinnati, OH, USA

Synonyms

[Family concordance](#); [Parent-child concordance](#)

Definition

Family aggregation of health behavior refers to the extent to which family members behave in the same or similar ways in areas that have consequences for health. In the literature, family aggregation often refers to the degree to which children exhibit the same behaviors as their parents. In review studies, significant evidence exists for the family aggregation of many health behaviors, including diet, physical activity, smoking, and alcohol and drug use (see Rossow and Rise 1994). Despite the evidence of family aggregation, the findings within each health behavior are often inconsistent. Common methodological issues in the family aggregation literature are the inclusion of only one parent in studies and reliance on only one reporter to measure health behavior of both parents and children. Because family aggregation is heavily influenced by parental modeling, including only one parent in the research design does not provide the information necessary to detect the presence of aggregation or the mechanisms by which health behavior is transmitted from parent to child. Studies that rely on children to report on both their own and parent behaviors (and vice versa) tend to have inflated estimates of family aggregation due to mono-method bias. As a result of these methodological issues, family aggregation research has been somewhat inconsistent for certain health behaviors.

The childhood obesity problem in the United States has motivated intense scrutiny into the familial aggregation of obesity-related health behaviors. Research shows that parent/child concordance tends to be high for many diet- and eating-related constructs, including attitudes and perceptions about food, food preference, feeding styles, and eating behaviors (see Patrick and Nicklas 2005). Parents influence their child's obesity-related health behavior not only through modeling but also through parental manipulation of the social and physical environment. Because parents purchase and provide food for the home, they largely dictate what and how much children are eating. Unlike tobacco, alcohol, or drugs, it is

a parents' job to provide food for their children, and parents and children often eat together. As such, it is not surprising that the most consistent findings for parent/child concordance of health behaviors are in the areas of diet and eating. The research findings for exercise and physical activity have been somewhat less consistent. Although many studies have not found parent/child concordance of physical activity, most of the work in this area has lumped the physical activity of mothers and fathers together (see Ferreira et al. 2006). When studies separate out father's and mother's physical activity, father's levels are highly positively correlated with those of their children while mother's levels are mostly unrelated.

There has been a large body of work devoted to examining the familial aggregation of tobacco use. Typically, familial aggregation of smoking is studied through genetic epidemiological studies (such as adult twin studies which have found genetic factors account for 50% of the variance attributed to regular tobacco use) and social risk factors (e.g., socioeconomic status, age, and gender). Despite the vast quantity of work in this area, there is little evidence that has been gained in support of the familial aggregation of smoking. Limitations in methodologies result in difficulties parceling out social and genetic influences in familial risk of smoking. For example, to date, there are no known family studies that examine the systematic development and maintenance of smoking within families. Nevertheless, in a recent review, Avenevoli and Merikangas (2003) found that in the 87 articles they reviewed, having a sibling who smoked was consistently found to be a predictor of current and lifetime smoking, while the evidence for parents was inconsistent.

Familial aggregation of alcohol use has been well established (McGue and McGue 1994). Research shows that if child has a parent who drinks, he is three times more likely to drink and two times more likely to do drugs than a child with nondrinking parents. Results from twin and adoption studies suggest a significant genetic component to alcohol dependence. Although more of the research has focused on alcohol, family

aggregation of drug use is also well established. Researchers estimate that relatives of individuals with drug disorders are 8 times more likely to use drugs than relatives of controls (Merikangas 1998). Classic adoption studies also suggest a strong genetic component to substance abuse disorders (e.g., Cadoret et al. 1986), and twin studies have found the heritability of drug abuse to be even greater than that of alcoholism.

Cross-References

► Health Behaviors

References and Readings

- Avenevoli, S., & Merikangas, K. R. (2003). Familial influences on adolescent smoking. *Addiction*, 98S, 1–20.
- Cadoret, R. J., Troughton, E., O'Gorman, T. W., & Heywood, E. (1986). An adoption study of genetic and environmental factors in drug abuse. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 43, 1131–1136.
- Ferreira, I., van der Horst, L., Wendel-Vos, W., Kremers, S., van Lenthe, F. J., & Brug, J. (2006). Environmental correlates of physical activity in youth- review and update. *Obesity Reviews*, 8, 129–154.
- McGue, M., & McGue, M. (1994). Genes, the environment, and the etiology of alcoholism. In R. A. Zucker, G. M. Boyd, & J. Howard (Eds.), *The development of alcohol problems: Exploring the biopsychosocial matrix* (NIAA research monograph No. 26). Rockville: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism.
- Merikangas, K. R. (1998). Familial transmission of substance use disorders. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 55, 973–979.
- Patrick, H., & Nicklas, T. A. (2005). A review of family and social determinants of children's eating patterns and diet quality. *Journal of the American College of Nutrition*, 24, 83–92.
- Rossow, I., & Rise, J. (1994). Concordance of parental and adolescent health behaviors. *Social Science & Medicine*, 38, 1299–1305.

Family Aid

► Family Assistance

Family and Medical Leave Act

Gabriela Reed

Psychiatry, Children's Medical Center, UT
Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

[FMLA; Family and medical leave act of 1993, The](#)

Definition

The Family and Medical Leave Act (FMLA) entitles eligible employees of covered employers to take unpaid leave for family and medical reasons with continuation of health insurance coverage under the same terms and conditions as if the employee had not taken leave.

A covered employer must grant an eligible employee up to a total of 12 workweeks of unpaid leave during any 12-month period for one or more of the following reasons:

- The birth of a child and to care for a newborn child within 1 year of birth
- The placement and care of an adopted or foster care child within 1 year of placement with the employee
- To care for the employee's spouse, child, or parent who has a serious illness
- A serious health condition that renders the employee unable to perform the essential functions of his or her job

A covered employer must also grant an eligible employee who is a spouse, child, parent, or next of kin of a current member of the Armed Forces with a serious injury or illness up to 26 workweeks of unpaid leave during a "single 12-month period" to care for the service member.

Eligibility

To be eligible for FMLA benefits, an employee must:

- Work for a covered employer
- Have worked for the employer for a total of 12 months
- Have worked at least 1,250 hours over the previous 12 months
- Work at a location in the United States or in any territory or possession of the United States where at least 50 employees are employed by the employer within 75 miles

Job Restoration

An employee's use of FMLA leave cannot result in the loss of any employment benefit that the employee earned or was entitled to before using FMLA leave, nor be counted against the employee under a "no fault" attendance policy. An employee must be restored to the employee's original job or to an equivalent job with equivalent pay, benefits, and other terms and conditions of employment upon return from FMLA leave.

References and Readings

U.S. Department of Labor Wage and Hour Division. (2010). *Fact sheet #28: The family and medical leave act of 1993*. Retrieved from <http://www.dol.gov/whd/regs/compliance/whdfs28.pdf>.

Family and Medical Leave Act of 1993, The

► [Family and Medical Leave Act](#)

Family Assistance

Gabriela Reed

Psychiatry, Children's Medical Center, UT
Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Family aid; Office of family assistance](#)

Definition

Family assistance refers to the provision of aid to families in need, usually with a focus on economic welfare and self-sufficiency.

The Office of Family Assistance

The Office of Family Assistance under the Administration for Children and Families is part of the United States Department of Health and Human Services. The Office of Family Assistance administers the Temporary Assistance for Needy Families (TANF) and Child Care and Development Fund (CCDF) programs.

Temporary Assistance for Needy Families (TANF) TANF is designed to help needy families achieve self-sufficiency by providing assistance and work opportunities to needy families through grants of federal funds to states, territories, and tribes to allow for wide flexibility to develop and implement their own welfare programs.

The four major purposes of TANF are:

1. Aiding needy families so that children can be cared for in their own homes
2. Promoting job preparation, work, and marriage by reducing the dependency of needy parents
3. Preventing out-of-wedlock pregnancies
4. Encouraging the formation and maintenance of two-parent families

In February 2006, former President George W. Bush signed the Deficit Reduction Act of 2005 (DRA), which reauthorized the TANF program. The DRA reauthorization also included \$150 million for discretionary grants to support programs designed to help couples form and sustain healthy marriages. Up to \$50 million of this amount may be used for programs designed to encourage responsible fatherhood.

The Child Care and Development Fund (CCDF) Programs

The CCDF program enables low-income families to access child care, which in turn makes it possible for more parents to achieve economic self-sufficiency. The program also helps children

succeed in school and life through affordable, quality early care and afterschool programs.

The Healthy Marriage Initiative is designed to strengthen families, foster safe and healthy relationships between married men and women, and promote the well-being of children.

The Responsible Fatherhood Program is designed to enable fathers to improve their relationships and reconnect with their children.

Other Forms of Economic Family Assistance

Other forms of economic family assistance are provided through Women, Infants, and Children (WIC), Low Income Home Energy Assistance Program (LIHEAP), and other emergency assistance programs available through government and nonprofit agencies.

Women, Infants, and Children (WIC)

WIC is administered by the Food and Nutrition Service as part of the USDA. WIC provides federal grants to States for supplemental foods, health-care referrals, and nutrition education for low-income pregnant, breastfeeding, and non-breastfeeding postpartum women, and to infants and children up to age 5 who are found to be at nutritional risk.

Low Income Home Energy Assistance Program (LIHEAP)

The mission of the Low Income Home Energy Assistance Program (LIHEAP) is to assist low-income households, particularly those with the lowest incomes that pay a high proportion of household income for home energy, primarily in meeting their immediate home energy needs.

Emergency financial assistance is usually temporary in nature.

Noneconomic Forms of Family Assistance

Noneconomic forms of family assistance include family counseling and intervention. Through family therapy, families or individuals within a family learn better ways to interact with each other and resolve conflicts. Family therapy is usually provided by clinical social workers or licensed therapists known as marriage and family therapists.

Cross-References

- [Family Therapy](#)

References and Readings

- American Association for Marriage and Family Therapy. (n.d.). American Association for marriage and family therapy. Retrieved from <http://www.aamft.org>
- Food and Nutrition Service. (2005, November 2). Women, infants, and children. Retrieved from <http://www.fns.usda.gov/wic>
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2012a, January 6). TANF home. Retrieved from <http://www.acf.hhs.gov/programs/ofa/tanf/index.html>
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2012b, March 27). Office of family assistance. Retrieved from <http://www.acf.hhs.gov/programs/ofa/index.html>
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2012c, March 29). Low income home energy assistance program (LIHEAP). Retrieved from <http://www.acf.hhs.gov/programs/ocs/liheap/#index.html>

Family Caretaker

- [Family, Caregiver](#)

Family Concordance

- [Family Aggregation](#)

Family Medicine

- [Family Practice/Medicine](#)

Family Nurse Practitioner

- [Primary Care Providers](#)

Family Physician

- [Primary Care Physicians](#)
- [Primary Care Providers](#)

Family Planning

Jane Limmer¹ and Serina Floyd²

¹Obstetrics and Gynecology, Duke Hospital, Durham, NC, USA

²Obstetrics and Gynecology, Duke Hospital, Raleigh, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Birth control](#); [Birth planning](#); [Birth prevention](#); [Contraception](#); [Pregnancy spacing](#)

Definition

Family planning is the practice of regulating the number and spacing of human births through the use of contraception and abortion. It allows couples and individuals to control the timing of their childbearing, and thereby to pursue educational and career goals, as well as to care for existing children and/or other family members, while limiting the possibility of pregnancy.

Description

Introduction

Family planning can be a controversial topic among different religious and cultural groups, and even at times within the medical community. Nonetheless, the World Health Organization, the American Medical Association, the American Congress of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, the American Medical Women's Association, the American Society for Reproductive Medicine, and the Society for Adolescent Medicine promote unbiased access to a wide range of family

planning options as a fundamental component of comprehensive health care (Association of Reproductive Health Professionals 2011).

Such an emphasis is placed on family planning for a variety of reasons. First, adequate contraception decreases maternal mortality, both from high-risk pregnancies and unsafe abortions (World Health Organization, Department of Reproductive Health and Research, [WHO] 1995). Pregnancy prevention can be especially important in groups at high risk for complications, including very young women, older women, and women with certain coexisting medical conditions such as heart disease, kidney disease, certain cancers, and autoimmune diseases. Moreover, certain forms of contraception decrease the incidence of many sexually transmitted infections (STIs), the development of cancers of the female genital tract, and the prevalence of some common medical conditions. For example, hormonal contraceptives can protect against iron-deficiency anemia from menorrhagia, can prevent the growth and complications of ovarian cysts and uterine fibroids, and can decrease the risk of ovarian and endometrial cancer. In addition, barrier contraceptives decrease the transmission of STIs, including human immunodeficiency virus and human papillomavirus, which, in high-risk strains, can lead to cervical cancer (WHO 1995). In addition, proper spacing of pregnancies improves infant and child health. An inter-pregnancy interval of less than 18 months has been associated with preterm labor and preterm delivery, as well as small-for-gestational-age infants, all of which increase neonatal morbidity and mortality (WHO). Limiting the overall number of children in a household also enables families to dedicate more resources to each individual child.

Contraception

Options and Use

In the United States, approximately 62% of all women of childbearing age are currently using a form of birth control (Guttmacher 2010a). There are multiple forms of birth control available in the USA, which vary by presence or absence of

hormones, required frequency of administration, permanence, route of administration, as well as several other factors. One set of nonhormonal options that rely purely on planned human behavior includes abstinence, menstrual calendar-based method (avoiding intercourse on days 8–19 of the cycle, which are the woman's most fertile days), natural family planning (avoiding intercourse on days when a woman is most likely to have ovulated based on measurements of basal body temperature and cervical mucus), and withdrawal. Other nonhormonal options are barrier contraceptives, which must be used with each sexual encounter, including male and female condoms, diaphragms, sponges, and spermicides. Self-administered hormonal contraceptives include pills, which are taken daily, a transdermal patch, which is changed weekly, and a vaginal ring, which is changed monthly. Depo-Provera is an injectable progesterone which is dosed every 3 months. In addition, long-acting reversible contraceptives include intrauterine devices (or IUDs) and Implanon, a subcutaneous implant. Finally, permanent options for contraception include male and female sterilization (Trussell 2007).

Among women in the USA, different age, racial, and socioeconomic groups tend to choose different birth control methods. In addition, the choice of a method often changes over the course of a woman's reproductive lifespan. For example, the birth control pill is the predominant method used by women younger than 30 years of age, whereas female sterilization is the predominant method used by women older than 30. Moreover, while white women most often select the pill, black and Hispanic women most often select female sterilization (Guttmacher 2010a).

Women choose a birth control method based on several factors, both medical and personal. These frequently include risks and side effects of the method, cost, coexisting medical conditions, number of sexual partners, frequency of intercourse, number of desired children, and access to health care. Currently, apart from abstinence, the most efficacious contraceptive method is the Implanon device, with 0.05% of women experiencing an unintended pregnancy within the first year of use. In comparison, with typical use of condoms, 15%

of women per year will experience an unintended pregnancy (Trussell 2007).

Methods of Birth Control Among US Women, 2006–2008

Method	% of users	% of women with unintended pregnancy in first year of use – typical use –	% of women with unintended pregnancy in first year of use – perfect use –
Pill	28	8	0.3
Tubal sterilization	27.1	0.5	0.5
Male condom	16.1	15	2
Vasectomy	9.9	0.15	0.10
IUD	5.5	0.2–0.8	0.2–0.6
Withdrawal	5.2	27	4
Three-month injectable (Depo-Provera)	3.2	3	0.3
Vaginal ring (NuvaRing)	2.4	8	0.3
Periodic abstinence (calendar)	0.9	25	5
Other ^a	0.4	b	b
Periodic abstinence (natural family planning)	0.2	25	4
Diaphragm	c	16	6

Data in table taken from (1) Guttmacher 2010a. http://www.guttmacher.org/pubs/fb_contr_use.pdf, accessed February 7, 2011 and (2) Trussell 2007

^aIncludes emergency contraception, female condom or vaginal pouch, foam, cervical cap, sponge, jelly or cream (without diaphragm), and other methods

^bEfficacy figures vary widely depending on which of the aforementioned methods is used

^cFigure does not meet standards of reliability or precision

Access to Contraception

According to data from the 2002 National Survey of Family Growth, 49% of all pregnancies in 2001 were unintended. Of these unintended pregnancies, 44% ended in births, 42% ended in abortions, and 14% ended in fetal losses. Unintended pregnancy rates are highest among women aged 20–24, women with low incomes, and women who are unmarried, of a minority (especially black) race and who have not completed high school (Finer and Henshaw 2006).

In response to the high rate of unintended pregnancy, especially among low-income women, public funding has been made available for contraceptive services and supplies. Medicare, state appropriations, and Title X of the Public Health Service Act provide such funding, with Medicare being the largest contributor (approximately 71%). In 2008, 17.4 million women were in need of these services, and 54% of these women received contraceptive care from a publicly funded family planning center. For many women, these centers are also the only source of primary medical care (Guttmacher 2010c).

Abortion

Definition

Abortion is the termination of a pregnancy and can be spontaneous or induced. A “spontaneous abortion,” or what is more commonly known as a “miscarriage,” is the natural loss of a pregnancy prior to 20 weeks’ gestation. An “induced” abortion refers to a medical or surgical intervention performed with the intention to terminate a pregnancy (Kottke and Ziemann 2008).

There are several possible methods available for the termination of a pregnancy. The choice of method is largely based on the gestational age of the pregnancy, patient preference, and provider experience. Suction curettage, or the emptying of uterine contents by suction aspiration, is the most common method used up to 12 weeks’ gestation. Medication abortion can also be performed up to 9 weeks’ gestation, depending on the medication regimen used. These regimens consist of a combination of antiprogestins and prostaglandin analogues, and/or the use of methotrexate. In

comparison, termination of pregnancy in the second trimester can be performed using dilation and evacuation (D&E) – dilation of the cervix with evacuation of uterine contents by suction, with or without extraction, at greater than 13 weeks' gestation – or induction of labor. D&E is performed more frequently than induction as it is a less expensive and shorter procedure that does not require hospitalization (Kottke and Zieman 2008; Paul and Stewart 2007).

Epidemiology

An estimated four out of every ten unplanned pregnancies in the United States end in induced abortion. In 2000, a total of 1.31 million abortions were performed, but in 2005, this number decreased to 1.21 million. Approximately one-third of all American women will have had an abortion by the age of 45 years (Guttmacher 2010b). When asked to describe why they seek pregnancy terminations, women cite a variety of reasons: inability to afford a child (or another child); need to delay childbearing in order to devote time to work, school, or other family members; concerns about their own health or the health of the fetus; lack of access to contraception; relationship problems with the father of the pregnancy; and desire to end a pregnancy that resulted from rape or incest (Guttmacher Institute; Paul and Stewart 2007).

The demographics of women who have abortions are broad and include women of all ages, races, socioeconomic groups, and religions. Roughly half of all abortions are obtained by women aged 20–30, by women who have never been married, and by women who already have at least one child. Thirty-six percent of women seeking pregnancy termination are non-Hispanic white, 30% are non-Hispanic black, 25% are Hispanic, and 9% are of other races (Guttmacher Institute, May 2010). The rate of induced abortion is higher among low-income and black women, which many researchers attribute to lack of access to adequate contraception (Kottke and Zieman 2008).

Health Impact

As stated by Speroff et al., “the legalization of abortion reduced maternal morbidity and

mortality more than any single development since the advent of antibiotics to treat puerperal infections and blood banking to treat hemorrhage” (Speroff et al. 1999). After abortion was legalized in 1973 through the *Roe v. Wade* Supreme Court case, the abortion-related mortality rate declined by 90%. Currently, the abortion-related mortality rate ranges from 1 in 1,000,000 for procedures performed prior to 8 weeks' gestation, to 8.9 per 100,000 for procedures performed after 21 weeks (Kottke and Zieman 2008). In comparison, the maternal mortality rate for women who go on to deliver live infants in the United States was 13.3 per 100,000 live births in 2006 (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, Maternal and Child Health Bureau 2009). An overwhelming majority (greater than 85%) of all abortions occur within the first trimester of pregnancy (i.e., prior to 14 weeks' gestation). These early terminations pose the lowest health risks, both immediate and long-term, to women (Paul and Stewart 2007).

The long-term physical and mental sequelae of abortion have been studied extensively. These studies indicate that there is no increased risk of miscarriage, ectopic pregnancy, or infertility associated with first-trimester abortions. The outcomes of second-trimester procedures are not as well studied or understood. In addition, though the psychological impact of abortion on women has been widely debated, the vast majority of high-quality scientific evidence indicates that pregnancy termination does not pose mental health risks for most women. Two groups performed broad reviews of available scientific literature in 2008 – the American Psychological Association Task Force on Mental Health and Abortion and Johns Hopkins University – and both groups concluded that elective pregnancy termination is not associated with an increased risk of psychiatric sequelae (Charles et al. 2008; Major et al. 2008). In fact, the best predictor of a woman's mental health after an abortion appears to be her mental health prior to the procedure.

Cross-References

- Contraception
- Condom Use
- Gender Role
- Health Care Access
- HIV Prevention
- Pregnancy
- Reproductive Health
- Sexual Risk Behavior
- Women's Health

References and Readings

- Association of Reproductive Health Professionals. Position statement: Contraception. <http://www.arhp.org/about-us/position-statements#11>. February 06, 2011.
- Charles, V. E., Polis, C. B., Srihara, S. K., & Blum, R. W. (2008). Abortion and long-term mental health outcomes: A systematic review of the evidence. *Contraception*, 78(6), 436–450.
- Finer, L. B., & Henshaw, S. K. (2006). Disparities in rates of unintended pregnancy in the United States, 1994 and 2001. *Perspectives on Sexual and Reproductive Health*, 38(2), 90–96.
- Guttmacher Institute. (2010a). *Facts on contraceptive use in the United States, in brief*. New York: Guttmacher Institute. http://www.guttmacher.org/pubs/fb_contr_use.pdf. Accessed 7 Feb 2011.
- Guttmacher Institute. (2010b). *Facts on induced abortion in the United States, in brief*. New York: Guttmacher Institute. http://www.guttmacher.org/pubs/fb_induced_abortion.html. Accessed 30 Dec 2010.
- Guttmacher Institute. (2010c). *Facts on publicly funded contraceptive services in the United States, in brief*. New York: Guttmacher Institute. http://www.guttmacher.org/pubs/fb_contraceptive_serv.html. Accessed 30 Dec 2010.
- Kottke, M. J., & Zieman, M. (2008). Management of abortion. In J. A. Rock & H. W. Jones III (Eds.), *TeLinde's operative gynecology* (10th ed., pp. 776–797). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Major, B., Appelbaum, M., Beckman, L., Dutton, M. A., Russo, N. F., & West, C. (2008). *Report of the task force on mental health and abortion*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association. <http://www.apa.org/pi/wpo/mental-health-abortion-report.pdf>. Accessed 6 Feb 2011.
- Paul, M., & Stewart, F. (2007). Abortion. In R. A. Hatcher (Ed.), *Contraceptive technology* (19th ed., pp. 637–672). New York: Ardent Media.
- Speroff, L., Glass, R. H., & Kase, N. G. (1999). Family planning, sterilization, and abortion. In C. Gynecologic (Ed.), *Endocrinology and infertility* (6th ed., pp. 831–865). Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Trussell, J. (2007). Choosing a contraceptive: Efficacy, safety, and personal considerations. In R. A. Hatcher, J. Trussell, A. L. Nelson, W. Cates, F. Stewart, & D. Kowal (Eds.), *Contraceptive technology*. New York: Ardent Media.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, Maternal and Child Health Bureau. (2009). Maternal mortality. *Women's health USA 2009*. Rockville: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2009. <http://mchb.hrsa.gov/whusa09/hstat/mh/pages/237mm.html>. Accessed 06 Feb 2011.
- World Health Organization, Department of Reproductive Health and Research. (1995). *Health benefits of family planning*. December 31, 1995. WHO reference number: WHO/FHE/FPP/95.11. http://www.who.int/reproductivehealth/publications/family_planning/HRP_FHE_FPP_95_15/en/index.html. Accessed 6 Feb 2011.

Family Practice

- Family Practice/Medicine

Family Practice/Medicine

Gabriela Reed

Psychiatry, Children's Medical Center, UT Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

Family medicine; Family practice; General practice; Primary care

Definition

Family practice/medicine or primary care is the medical specialty that provides continuing and comprehensive health care for the individual and the family. It is the medical specialty that integrates the physical, clinical, and behavioral sciences. The scope of family medicine encompasses

all organ systems, every disease entity and covers the life span.

Primary care is health care that is accessible, coordinated, comprehensive, and continuing. It is provided by physicians specifically trained for and skilled in comprehensive first-contact and continuing care for persons with a diagnosed illness or those with an undiagnosed symptom, or health concern. In addition to diagnosis and treatment of acute and chronic illnesses, primary care includes health promotion and maintenance, disease prevention, and patient counseling/education in a variety of health-care settings, including private practice offices, the inpatient setting, critical care, and long-term care facilities, as well as in-home care. Primary care is performed by a personal physician, with consultation or referral to other health professionals as necessary.

Family practice/medicine encompasses the following functions:

1. It is first-contact care, serving as a point of entry for the patient into the health-care system.
2. It is highly personalized and assumes responsibility for individual follow-up.
3. It is comprehensive and includes continuity by virtue of caring for patients in sickness and in health.
4. It serves a coordinative function for the various health-care needs of the patient.
5. It assumes continuing responsibility for community health problems and concerns.

The term general practice is synonymous with the term family medicine in many countries. The Royal New Zealand College of General Practitioners emphasizes that a general practitioner provides care that is “anticipatory as well as responsive and is not limited by the age, sex, race, religion, or social circumstances of patients, nor by their physical or mental states.” They argue that the family practice physician must be the patient’s advocate; be caring, competent, and compassionate; and be willing to recognize limitations and refer when necessary (Richards 1997).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Chronic Disease Management](#)
- ▶ [Primary Care](#)
- ▶ [Primary Care Physicians](#)
- ▶ [Primary Care Providers](#)

References and Reading

- Rakel, R. (2007). The family physician. In R. Rakel (Ed.), *Textbook of family medicine* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Richards, J. G. (1997). *The nature of general practice: General practice in New Zealand*. Wellington: The Royal New Zealand College of General Practitioners.

F

Family Social Support

Lisa M. Jaremka and Ryan M. Beveridge
Department of Psychological and Brain Sciences,
University of Delaware, Newark, DE, USA

Synonyms

[Social network](#); [Social resources](#)

Definition

Broadly defined, social support is information, clarification, aid, and emotional reassurance that an individual receives from others. Family social support occurs when the information, clarification, aid, and emotional resources are from a spouse, child, parent, or other family member. Social support scholars have differentiated between perceived support (i.e., the perception that close others are available for support if needed) and received support (i.e., actual support a person receives, often in response to a specific event). Perceived support, particularly in the early family environment, is associated with beneficial health outcomes, positive health behaviors, better (i.e., proactive) coping skills, and less psychological distress. Perceived support is typically stable

over time and is thought to develop from a person's early family structure, attachment style, and ability to develop and sustain close relationships with supportive others. As will be discussed further below, the benefits of received support are mixed; some studies suggest that receiving social support is beneficial to health, whereas others suggest it is detrimental.

Both perceived and received social support can be further divided into practical and emotional support. Practical support is about receiving advice, information, or tangible assistance from another person (e.g., washing the dishes for a sick spouse or financial assistance from a family member). Emotional support arises when a person feels that a close other conveyed warmth and nurturance, indicating that the individual is valued and cared for during times of distress. The degree to which practical and emotional support are helpful often depends on the particular context in which they are occurring, including the timing of support and the way that support is conveyed. Both emotional and practical support can be helpful when someone is experiencing a medical illness. For instance, practical support is often needed to help a person accomplish day-to-day tasks while adjusting to living with a chronic illness. Emotional support can help a person mentally cope with a medical diagnosis or treatment difficulties. Based on the matching hypothesis, social support is most effective when the received support complements the needs of the individual undergoing the stressor. In addition, recent theoretical perspectives and empirical evidence suggest that responsive support (i.e., support that conveys validation, understanding, and caring) is particularly beneficial to the recipient of that support. Theoretically, receiving responsive social support is beneficial regardless of whether it occurs in a family context or in other contexts. However, the bulk of research examining social support and health focuses on support provided in a family context, often between parent-child pairs or between spouses. Thus, more research is needed to examine potential differences and similarities between social support received from a family member versus other people (e.g., coworkers).

Description

As social beings, humans benefit from their connection to others through the social support that they receive and provide, and this process is particularly evident within the family system. Perceived social support in a family context has been consistently linked to a decreased risk for a variety of diseases and with how people cope and recover from both acute and chronic illness. The family context is one of the most common places individuals both seek and receive social support, and early life experiences within the family system shape peoples' abilities to seek and benefit from social support later in life. Children who develop secure attachments to their caretakers and perceive caretakers as available and attentive to their needs are better able to reap the benefits of supportive acts from others.

Associations with Health Outcomes

Perceived social support is reliably linked to better health outcomes, including lower rates of mortality from cardiovascular disease and cancer, and the development and progression of diabetes. In addition, perceived support can accelerate recovery from disease and improve mortality rates even after controlling for physical health status and health-relevant demographic factors. Two competing theories offer different perspectives about how social support may improve health outcomes. The stress-buffering hypothesis posits that social support is particularly important when individuals are undergoing large stressors, such as acute or chronic illness, but is relatively ineffective during periods of low stress. According to this theoretical perspective, the availability of social support attenuates the negative effects of stress and allows people to cope more effectively. In contrast, the direct effects hypothesis suggests that social support is beneficial during both periods of high and low stress. From this viewpoint, the family system and the availability of support are important at all times. Whether social support is received during times

of low or high stress, the matching hypothesis suggests that support is most beneficial when the type of support provided matches the needs of the patient. For instance, a patient who desires emotional reassurance from their family but receives practical help is less likely to benefit from the support and may even generate negative feelings of incompetence or dependency.

The effects of actually receiving social support during times of stress are less clear than the consequences of perceived support. For example, received tangible support is associated with higher mortality rates, while perceived support availability is associated with lower mortality rates. There are a number of potential explanations for this lack of clarity. For instance, providing effective social support requires a motivation to provide care and the ability to do so; a lack of either could result in less than optimal support being received and thus less than optimal outcomes. Methodological problems and difficulties in assessing received support may also contribute to the ambiguous received support findings. As a whole, the social support literature strongly supports the importance of believing that other people are available in times of need. Simultaneously, the benefits or drawbacks of having someone actually provide social support during times of stress is unclear.

Researchers have started to investigate the mechanisms that may explain how social support ultimately results in positive health outcomes. A number of possible explanations have been investigated, including the positive effects of social support on coping strategies and health behaviors (e.g., diet and medical adherence). The effects of social support on physiological indices, particularly immune function, have also been widely studied. Supportive relationships confer immunological benefits, potentially because they buffer against stress and depression. For example, people reporting more supportive relationships had lower systemic inflammation, as indexed by IL-6 and IL-8, than those with less supportive relationships. Systemic inflammation is a risk factor for a host of age-related diseases. People with more social support had larger antibody responses to pneumococcal pneumonia, hepatitis B, and

influenza virus vaccines than those with less social support, reflecting an adaptive vaccine-related immune response. Similar to the literature examining concrete health outcomes, the link between perceived social support and immune function is fairly consistent. However, the effects of receiving social support during times of stress are less clear, likely for the reasons discussed previously.

Cross-References

- [Family, Relationships](#)
- [Social Support](#)

References and Further Reading

- Berkman, L. F., Glass, T., Brissette, I., & Seeman, T. E. (2000). From social integration to health: Durkheim in the new millennium. *Social Science and Medicine*, 51, 843–857.
- House, J. S., Landis, K. R., & Umberson, D. (1988). Social relationships and health. *Science*, 241, 540–545.
- Uchino, B. N. (2009). Understanding the links between social support and physical health: A life-span perspective with emphasis on the separability of perceived and received support. *Perspective on Psychological Science*, 4, 236–255.

Family Stress

Shelby Messerschmitt-Coen¹, Ashley K. Randall² and Guy Bodenmann³

¹Counselor Education and Supervision,

The Ohio State University, Columbus, OH, USA

²College of Integrative Sciences and Arts,

Arizona State University, Tempe, AZ, USA

³Department of Psychology, University of Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland

Synonyms

[Dyadic stress](#); [Relationship stress](#); [Stress](#)

Definition

Family stress is defined as the experience of stress from one or multiple members of a self-defined family, which impacts the maintenance of the relationship between its members.

Description

Families operate as a system, such that each members' experiences are interconnected. As such, individuals' experiences cannot be understood without taking into account the family as a whole (Segrin and Flora 2005). Based on these systemic principles, each member's stress can impact other members of the family, and the family functioning as a whole. Therefore, one family member's stress can have detrimental effects on members' closeness, communication, and well-being.

Conceptualizing stress from an interpersonal perspective first emerged in the 1930s and 1940s (Angell 1936; Koos 1946). For example, the ABC-X theory, which was first proposed by Hill (1958) and further developed by Burr (1973), takes into consideration how stress can affect members in a family. The ABC-X theory includes three interacting variables: the event (A) that interacts with the family's resources (B), allowing the family to create their meaning and definition of the event (C). A crisis (X) is consequentially produced by these three variables.

Despite its utility in understanding crisis management in the family system, the ABC-X model is limited in different ways. First, the model explicitly deals with major stressors (i.e., critical life events) and crises (see Randall and Bodenmann (2009) for a review of the conceptualization of stress). Theoretical additions have been made to the ABC-X model (McCubbin and Patterson 1983), although still focusing primarily on resources within the family and use of coping dependent on a post-crisis situation. Second, the model is limited in its explanation of how families experience minor (i.e., everyday) stressors, such

as having a demanding day at work, which leaves a gap in the literature in understanding how families manage everyday stress as a unit.

Since the 1990s, relational scholars have expanded understanding stress as an interpersonal construct. This expansion has led to the development of theoretical models and empirical research on dyadic stress (Bodenmann 1995, 2005; Story and Bradbury 2004; Randall and Bodenmann 2009, 2017) that can be extrapolated to the family as well. According to Bodenmann (1997, 2005), dyadic stress is defined as a stressful event or encounter that always concerns both partners or all family members. Dyadic or interpersonal stress can be experienced directly or indirectly. The stress is considered *direct* when both partners or all family members are confronted by the same stressful event within the relationship (e.g., disagreement with one's partner or noisy neighbors). Alternatively, the stress is considered *indirect* when the stress of one partner or one family member crosses over or spills over to the relationship, affecting both partners or other family members (Neff and Karney 2009).

The conceptualization of family stress can be considered based on the following typology (see Randall and Bodenmann 2009, 2017):

1. *Locus* of the stress

- (a) *External*: Stress that originates outside the family. This may include (1) financial stress or (2) minority stress (e.g., discrimination). For example, sexual minorities may experience minority stress (e.g., discrimination) due to their marginalized sexual orientation, which can spill over into the family's experience as well (Randall et al. 2017).
- (b) *Internal*: Stress that originates within the family. This may include conflicts and tensions among family members. For example, a family that has a child diagnosed with an autism spectrum disorder may experience multiple stressors associated with the child's transition to adulthood and adulthood itself (Pozo and Sarriá 2015).

2. Intensity of the stress

- (a) *Macro*: Stressors that can be common (e.g., critical life events), such as (1) severe illness, (2) disabilities, and (3) unemployment. For instance, unemployment and economic distress are more common experiences for Black and African American families in the United States. For these families, the association between family economic hardship on adolescent delinquency may be mediated by parental stressors (e.g., depression, conflict; Simons et al. 2016).
- (b) *Minor*: Stressors that are considered “everyday stressors,” such as (1) being stuck in traffic or (2) stress associated with managing multiple meetings. Everyday stressors can have a significant impact on individual and family stress (Crnic and Low 2002), which, if children are involved, can be detrimental to positive parent and child outcomes (e.g., poor parenting, poor child adjustment; Deater-Deckard 1998).

3. Duration of the stress

- (a) *Acute*: Stressors that are temporary or occur only once within a 7-day period. Acute stressors (e.g., kids’ schedules interfere with parent/household needs; sibling arguments requiring parental mediation) have shown to be a significant source of stress for parents (Crnic and Greenberg 1990).
- (b) *Chronic*: Stressors that are stable and can last over a long period of time (e.g., up to 12 months). For example, families with a member struggling with serious mental illness (e.g., schizophrenia; bipolar disorders) have shown to experience increased emotional distress (Zauszniewski and Bekhet 2014).

Family theorists posit that the members of the family are interdependent (e.g., Bowen 1966). As such, the conceptualization of stress as a dyadic construct (i.e., between partners) can also be expanded to other members within a family

system. Dyadic stress *elicits* joint appraisals (in addition to individual appraisals) of the stressful situation that extends the primary and secondary appraisals in Lazarus’s (1966) approach. These joint coping efforts, or cooperative use of common resources within the relationship, are referred to as dyadic coping (Bodenmann 2005). The perception of and engagement in dyadic coping has been found to have beneficial effects on individual and well-being for couples around the world (Falconier et al. 2016).

Cross-References

- [Daily Stress](#)
- [Family Social Support](#)
- [Family Systems Theory](#)
- [Family, Relationships](#)
- [Family, Structure](#)
- [Stress](#)
- [Stress Management](#)
- [Stress Responses](#)
- [Stress: Appraisal and Coping](#)

References and Further Reading

- Angell, R. C. (1936). *The family encounters the depression*. New York: Charles Scribner’s Sons.
- Bodenmann, G. (1995). A systemic-transactional conceptualization of stress and coping in couples. *Swiss Journal of Psychology*, 54, 34–49.
- Bodenmann, G. (1997). Dyadic coping – A systemic-transactional view of stress and coping among couples: Theory and empirical findings. *European Review of Applied Psychology*, 47, 137–140.
- Bodenmann, G. (2005). Dyadic coping and its significant for marital functioning. In T. Revenson, K. Kayser, & G. Bodenmann (Eds.), *Couples coping with stress: Emerging perspectives on dyadic coping* (pp. 33–50). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Bowen, M. (1966). The use of family theory in clinical practice. *Comprehensive Psychiatry*, 7(5), 345–374.
- Burr, W. R. (1973). *Theory construction and the sociology of the family*. New York, NY: John Wiley.
- Crnic, K. A., & Greenberg, M. T. (1990). Minor parenting stresses with young children. *Child Development*, 61(5), 1628–1637.
- Crnic, K., & Low, C. (2002). Everyday stresses and parenting. In M. H. Bornstein (Ed.), *Handbook of parenting. volume 5: Practical issues in parenting*

- (2nd ed., pp. 243–267). Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Deater-Deckard, K. (1998). Parenting stress and child adjustment: Some old hypotheses and new questions. *Clinical Psychology: Science and Practice*, 5(3), 314–332.
- Falconier, M. K., Randall, A. K., & Bodenmann, G. (Eds.). (2016). *Couples coping with stress: A cross-cultural perspective*. New York, NY: Routledge.
- Hill, R. (1958). Generic features of families under stress. *Social Casework*, 39, 139–150.
- Koos, E. L. (1946). *Families in trouble*. New York: Kings Crown Press.
- Lazarus, R. S. (1966). *Psychological stress and the coping process*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- McCubbin, H. I., & Patterson, J. M. (1983). The family stress process: The double ABCX model of adjustment and adaptation. *Marriage & Family Review*, 6(1–2), 7–37. https://doi.org/10.1300/J002v06n01_02.
- Neff, L. A., & Karney, B. R. (2009). Stress and reactivity to daily relationship experiences: How stress hinders adaptive processes in marriage. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 97, 435–450. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0015663>.
- Pozo, P., & Sarriá, E. (2015). Still stressed but feeling better: Well-being in autism spectrum disorder families as children become adults. *Autism*, 19(7), 805–813. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1362361315583191>.
- Randall, A. K., & Bodenmann, G. (2009). The role of stress on close relationships and marital satisfaction. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 29, 105–115.
- Randall, A. K., & Bodenmann, G. (2017). Stress and its associations with relationship satisfaction. *Current Opinion in Psychology*, 13, 96–106. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.copsyc.2016.05.010>.
- Randall, A. K., Totenhagen, C. J., Walsh, K. J., Adams, C., & Tao, C. (2017). Coping with workplace minority stress: Associations between dyadic coping and anxiety among women in same-sex relationships. *Journal of Lesbian Studies*, 21(1), 70–87. <https://doi.org/10.1080/10894160.2016.1142353>.
- Segrin, C., & Flora, J. (2005). Theoretical perspectives on family communication: Family systems theory. In *Family communication* (pp. 28–33). Mahwah: Erlbaum.
- Simons, L. G., Wickrama, K. S., Lee, T. K., Landers-Potts, M., Cutrona, C., & Conger, R. D. (2016). Testing family stress and family investment explanations for conduct problems among African American Adolescents. *Journal of Marriage & Family*, 78(2), 498–515. <https://doi.org/10.1111/jomf.12278>.
- Story, L. B., & Bradbury, T. N. (2004). Understanding marriage and stress: Essential questions and challenges. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 23, 1139–1162.
- Zauszniewski, J. A., & Bekhet, A. K. (2014). Factors associated with the emotional distress of women family members of adults with serious mental illness. *Archives of Psychiatric Nursing*, 28(2), 102–107. <https://doi.org/10.1016/J.APNU.2013.11.003>.

Family Studies (Genetics)

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Family studies are fundamental tools in the discipline of behavioral genetics (Turner et al. 1995) and can provide information of great interest in Behavioral Medicine. They permit assessments of degrees of familial resemblance, or aggregation, of physical, psychological, and behavioral characteristics.

Description

Pairs of siblings resemble each other more than do randomly chosen pairs of individuals, and children resemble their parents, on average, to a greater degree than they resemble randomly chosen adults. Such degrees of resemblance can be assessed in terms of correlation coefficients for continuous quantitative measurements, such as blood pressure and weight, and in terms of concordance rates for discretely defined characteristics, such as having or not having a specific disease state or psychiatric diagnosis.

In clinical studies, the proband is defined as the individual affected by a disease or condition of clinical concern that causes a family to be included in a study. The probandwise concordance rate is then defined as the probability that a relative of a given type will also be affected. An important point to note is that in the absence of family resemblance, the concordance rate should be equal to the prevalence of the disease or condition. Therefore, for commonly occurring conditions (such as ever having smoked a cigarette), the baseline concordance rate might be as high as 80% in some populations. Family resemblance would then be indicated by concordance rates that were higher than this. In contrast, for conditions that are relatively infrequent, such as a

psychiatric condition like schizophrenia with a 1% prevalence, a concordance rate as low as 10% might indicate substantial family resemblance (Hewitt and Turner 1995).

It is typically found that there is a positive family resemblance for many characteristics, and the resemblance becomes more strongly positive as the degree of family relationship becomes closer. An important confounding factor, however (at least for the conventional nuclear family), is that the degree of genetic relationship is confounded with the degree of environmental or social relationship. Such families tend to eat the same food, for example, a factor that can influence blood pressure and weight. (Individuals who become married, and who perhaps ate relatively different diets, may in time come to eat a more similar diet, which can lead to various other characteristics becoming more similar.) Therefore, the mere observation of familial aggregation of a characteristic or condition of clinical concern is not sufficient to allow the inference of a genetic or environmental etiology. Instead, we need to study pairs of relatives in whom the degree of genetic relationship differs when the environmental resemblance is kept the same or, alternatively, pairs for whom the degree of environmental resemblance differs when the degree of genetic relationship is held constant.

The “natural experiment” of the birth of twins affords a good approximation to the first type of situation, and the adoption of children to be reared apart from their biological parents provides the second type. There are certainly other types of family relationships and study designs of relevance, for example, those involving half siblings and stepfamilies, but it is typically the case that both the statistical power and the conceptual clarity are greatest for research studies that start with a nucleus of either twins or families involved in adoption.

References and Further Reading

Hewitt, J. K., & Turner, J. R. (1995). Introduction. In J. R. Turner, L. R. Cardon, & J. K. Hewitt (Eds.), *Behavior genetic approaches in behavioral medicine*. New York: Plenum Press.

Turner, J. R., Cardon, L. R., & Hewitt, J. K. (Eds.). (1995). *Behavior genetic approaches in behavioral medicine*. New York: Plenum Press.

van Riper, M. V. (2010). Genomics and the family: Integrative frameworks. In K. P. Tercyak (Ed.), *Handbook of genomics and the family: Psychosocial context for children and adolescents* (pp. 109–139). New York: Springer.

Family Systems Theory

Neena Malik

Department of Pediatrics, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Family therapy](#)

Definition

Family systems theory is one of the major theories in behavioral and social sciences. The foundation of this theory is that all systems, human and mechanical alike, strive toward growth, development, and stability and that individual behavior cannot fully be understood without taking into account the context of the family system (Nichols 2010a).

There are numerous models within family systems theory, and numerous associated therapeutic techniques designed to help families and individuals with relationship and mental health issues. In brief, Bowenian theory, named for Murray Bowen, focuses on intergenerational issues and family triangles. Strategic family therapy, pioneered by Jay Haley and others, focuses on understanding the function of symptoms and family communication patterns that relate to an individual patient's difficulties and creating strategies to change communication patterns.

Structural family systems theory and therapy, developed by Salvador Minuchin, is concerned with the hierarchical structures within families, positing mental health issues in individual family members when relationship structures are

dysfunctional. Additional models include experiential, psychoanalytic, cognitive behavioral, solution-focused, narrative, and integrative approaches to both family systems theory and therapies (Doherty and McDaniel 2010).

Cross-References

- [Cognitive Behavior Therapy](#)
- [Mental Illness](#)
- [Therapy, Family and Marital](#)

References and Readings

- Doherty, W. J., & McDaniel, S. (2010). *Family therapy*. Washington, DC: APA.
- Nichols, M. P. (2010a). *Family therapy: Concepts and methods*. Boston: Allyn & Bacon.
- Nichols, M. P. (2010b). *Essentials of family therapy*. Boston: Allyn & Bacon.

Family Therapy

- [Family Systems Theory](#)
- [Therapy, Family and Marital](#)

Family Violence

Jason Jent
Department of Pediatrics, Mailman Center for
Child Development, University of Miami, Miami,
FL, USA

Synonyms

[Domestic violence](#); [Intimate partner violence](#)

Definition

Family violence refers to any acts of violence that occur between family members, including but not limited to child maltreatment, intimate partner

violence, and elder maltreatment (American Medical Association 2011).

Description

Types of Family Violence

Child Maltreatment includes any act(s) of commission or omission by a caregiver that results in harm, potential harm, or threat of harm to a child (Leeb et al. 2008). Child maltreatment is most broadly categorized as child abuse and child neglect. Child abuse consists of three different forms of acts of commission including physical abuse, sexual abuse, and psychological/emotional abuse. Acts of omission or neglect can also be characterized as family violence in specific instances where a caregiver knowingly fails to protect a child from maltreatment perpetrated by another caregiver or knowingly does not take appropriate measures to protect a child from being exposed to pervasive violence (e.g., intimate partner violence) or dangerous conditions (e.g., selling drugs out of the home). Both “► [Child Abuse](#)” and “► [Child Neglect](#)” are discussed in more detail in separate entries.

Intimate Partner Violence, a term that is often used interchangeably with domestic violence, includes acts of commission by a current or former partner or spouse that results in physical, sexual, or psychological harm (Saltzman et al. 2002). Intimate partner violence occurs among heterosexual and same-sex couples and exists on a severity continuum. Intimate partner violence includes four types of behavior: physical violence, sexual violence, threats of physical or sexual violence, and psychological/emotional violence. In addition, stalking is often considered a type of intimate partner violence (Tjaden and Thoennes 1998).

Elder Maltreatment includes any abuse and neglect of a person age 60 and older by a caregiver or another person in a relationship involving an expectation of trust (Center for Disease Control and Prevention 2010). Forms of elder maltreatment include physical abuse, sexual abuse or abusive sexual contact, psychological or emotional abuse, neglect, abandonment, and financial abuse or exploitation.

Cross-References

- Abuse, Elder
- Child Abuse
- Child Neglect

References and Readings

- American Medical Association. (2011). *Violence prevention. In promoting healthy lifestyles*. Retrieved on July 20, 2011 from <http://www.ama-assn.org/ama/pub/physician-resources/public-health/promoting-healthy-lifestyles/violence-prevention.shtml>.
- Center for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010). *Elder maltreatment: Definition*. Retrieved on July 20, 2011 from <http://www.cdc.gov/ViolencePrevention/eldermaltreatment/definitions.html>.
- Leeb, R. T., Paulozzi, L., Melanson, C., Simon, T., & Arias, I. (2008). *Child maltreatment surveillance: Uniform definitions for public health and recommended data elements, version 1.0*. Atlanta: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Injury Prevention and Control. Retrieved on July 20, 2011 from http://www.cdc.gov/violenceprevention/pdf/CM_Surveillance-a.pdf.
- Saltzman, L. E., Fanslow, J. L., McMahon, P. M., & Shelley, G. A. (2002). *Intimate partner violence surveillance: Uniform definitions and recommended data elements, version 1.0*. Atlanta: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Injury Prevention and Control. Retrieved on July 20, 2011 from http://www.cdc.gov/ncipc/pub-res/ipv_surveillance/intimate.htm.
- Tjaden, P., & Thoennes, N. (1998). *Stalking in America: Findings from the national violence against women survey*. Washington, DC: Department of Justice (US). Publication No. NCJ 169592. Retrieved on July 20, 2011 from <http://www.ncjrs.gov/pdffiles/169592.pdf>.

Family, Caregiver

Alyssa Parker
UTSW Health Systems, South Western Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

Custodian; Family caretaker; Home health care

Definition

Family caregiving is not a new phenomenon and is considered a norm of the family based on family and societal obligations. According to a survey conducted in 2009 by the National Alliance for Caregiving, 65.7 million caregivers make up 29% of the United States adult population and 31% of all United States households. Of these 65.7 caregivers, 48.9 million care for adult recipients only, 3.9 million care for child recipients only, and 12.9 million care for both child and adult recipients. Family caregivers provide an estimated \$375 billion worth of uncompensated care to loved ones annually, making them the backbone of long-term care. Caregivers are predominantly female (66%), are an average of 48 years old, and frequently take care of two or more people. The top two care recipient conditions are old age and Alzheimer's disease or dementia. Other conditions frequently mentioned include mental/emotional illness, cancer, heart disease, and stroke (National Alliance for Caregiving 2011).

On average, family caregivers spend 20.4 h per week providing care, though this number increases dramatically when the care recipient is living with the caregiver or when the recipient is under the age of 18. Caregiver time is predominantly spent helping loved ones complete activities of daily living. This may include helping the care recipient get in and out of beds or chairs, personal care tasks (getting dressed, assisting with bathing or showering, helping the recipient to and from the toilet, and helping deal with incontinence), and feeding. Additionally, caregivers are involved with instrumental activities of daily living, such as transportation, housework, grocery shopping, meal preparation, managing finances, and arranging or supervising outside services. Many caregivers also spend a significant amount of time advocating for the care recipient with care providers, government agencies, and performing medical therapies or treatments. Caregiving for a child with special needs requires a number of additional time-consuming support activities (NAC with AARP 2009).

Prior to making the decision to become a family caregiver, it is imperative to make a realistic

appraisal of the situation. Over half of all caregivers are married and more than 1/3 of caregiving families have children or grandchildren under the age of 18 living in the home (NAC with AARP 2009). The entire family system is disrupted with the advent of caregiving, and many family members, including the care recipient, frequently experience significant adjustment and coping difficulties (Agosta and Melda 1995). While many support services focus on the individual caregiver, the total family context is often overlooked. Caregivers who are employed must work to balance the competing demands of employment commitments and family responsibilities. The majority of caregivers who work outside of the home report having gone in late to work, having left early, or having taken time off during the day to deal with caregiving issues. One in five caregivers ultimately takes a leave of absence from work at some point. The Family Medical Leave Act (FMLA) was created in 1993 in order to help caregivers balance work and family responsibilities. This act provides certain employees with up to 12 weeks of unpaid, job-protected leave per year (United States Department of Labor 2011). Despite changes in employment ability, it is important to note that caregiving can be an expensive endeavor. Not only do many caregivers decrease their work hours, there are a number of potential out-of-pocket expenses that must be addressed (NAC with AARP 2009). Finally, studies of family caregiving have consistently demonstrated that a host of negative emotional and physical effects develop as a function of assuming responsibility for the care of a dependent family member. Vulnerability factors that may increase caregiver distress include the degree of care burden (both mental and physical), restricted activities, fear (not knowing what will come next), insecurity (feelings of loss of control over life or concerns regarding one's competency), loneliness (decreased partnership and less time to spend outside the home with others), facing death, and lack of support (from the patient, other family members, and health care providers) (Proot et al. 2003).

Despite the risks for distress, there are actions the caregiver can take to boost coping and

decrease caregiver strain. It is beneficial for the family caregiver to receive caregiver training. By seeking out educational resources, the caregiver can help avoid serious injury to him/herself and the care recipient, as well as reduce the risk of recipient hospitalization for chronic sores or infections. Learning all one can about the care recipient's condition, its treatments, and the prognosis will help the caregiver and the caregiver's family have a better idea of what to expect in the future and how best one can help. Maintaining precise, up-to-date medical records and learning how to communicate with health care professionals allows caregivers to better advocate for their loved ones (NAC with AARP 2009). Knowing how to ask for help, delegating duties, and getting friends and family involved in caregiving can also alleviate caregiver strain. Most importantly, however, the caregiver must learn how to manage his/her time and take care of him/herself. Though time away from caregiving is often associated with fear or guilt, it is imperative that caregivers schedule time away from caregiving obligations. Recharging oneself ultimately makes for a better caregiver. Caregivers can regain control by setting limits about what they will and will not do, then voicing these boundaries to health care professionals. Finding satisfaction in the care one is providing may also decrease vulnerability to strain. Seeking good support, professional, instrumental, and emotional, is also a necessity for all caregivers. Professional support is associated with caregiver inclusion in education and decision-making by the care recipient's health care team. This decreases caregiver burden, fear, insecurity, and may provide realistic hope and facilitation of control. Instrumental support includes practical assistance in the daily care of the patient, which relieves care burden and facilitates the continuing of the caregiver's own activities. Finally, emotional support involves respect for the choices the caregiver must make, acknowledgment of the care they give, and provides someone to listen to the caregiver's concern. Emotional support generates satisfaction and may decrease fear, insecurity, and loneliness (Proot et al. 2003).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Assisted Living](#)
- ▶ [Bereavement](#)
- ▶ [Care Recipients](#)
- ▶ [Caregiver/Caregiving and Stress](#)
- ▶ [Chronic Disease or Illness](#)
- ▶ [Daily Stress](#)
- ▶ [Dementia](#)
- ▶ [Disability](#)
- ▶ [Disease Burden](#)
- ▶ [Elderly](#)
- ▶ [End-of-Life Care](#)
- ▶ [Family Assistance](#)
- ▶ [Family Stress](#)
- ▶ [Grieving](#)
- ▶ [Home Health Care](#)
- ▶ [Medical Decision-Making](#)
- ▶ [Quality of Life](#)
- ▶ [Self-Care](#)
- ▶ [Stress, Caregiver](#)

References and Reading

- Agosta, J., & Melda, K. (1995). Supporting families who provide care at home for children with disabilities. *Exceptional Children*, 62(3), 271–282.
- Caregiving. General. Retrieved from <http://www.caregiving.org>
- Family and Medical Leave Act. Retrieved from <http://www.dol.gov/dol/topicbenefits-leave/fmla.htm>
- Family caregiving. Retrieved from <http://aarp.org/relationships/caregiving/>
- Family caregiving tips. Retrieved from <http://www.familycaregiving101.org/>
- NAC in Collaboration with AARP. (2009). *Caregiving in the US: Executive summary*. Retrieved from <http://www.caregiving.org/pdf/research/CaregivingUSAllAgasExecSum.pdf>
- National Alliance for Caregiving. (2011). *Research*. Retrieved from <http://www.caregiving.org/>
- Proot, I. M., Abu-Saad, H. H., Crebolder, H. F., Golsteen, M., Luker, K. A., & Widdershoven, G. A. (2003). Vulnerability of family caregivers in terminal palliative care at home; balancing between burden and capacity. *Scandinavian Journal of Caring Sciences*, 17(2), 113–121.
- United States Department of Labor. (2011). *Leave benefits: Family & medical leave*. Retrieved from <http://www.dol.gov/dol/topic/benefits-leave/fmla.htm>

Family, Income

Jenny T. Wang¹ and Sarah J. Newman²

¹Department of Medical Psychology, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

²Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Household income](#)

Definition

Family income is a measurement of economic position of individuals who are considered to be part of one familial unit. Income is broadly inclusive of wages, pensions, investments, governmental assistance or benefits, rent earnings, and any other source of finances. In sociodemographic and epidemiological research, family income is often used interchangeably with household income. However, household income denotes all individuals who are living in the same home, regardless of whether they are blood relatives, legally-bound, or neither. On the contrary, family income typically refers to individuals who are related by blood or by law, especially in societies in which there is a large emphasis on nuclear family compositions (e.g., father, mother, and minor children) (see ▶ [“Family, Structure”](#)). Consequently, household income and family income are not always equivalent.

Description

There is significant evidence to suggest that income is associated with health outcomes. The income and health gradient demonstrates that, in general, higher income is associated with greater health (see ▶ [“Health Disparities”](#)). Some plausible mechanisms for this relationship may include the influences of income on access to health care services or education, and health promoting assets and environments, such as grocery stores to obtain

fresh food or having places to exercise. Income distribution of neighborhoods or environments can vary greatly, which can result in differential consequences on health.

There is little consensus as to what constitutes family income and how best to measure it, but most researchers agree that a combination of household and neighborhood levels of income should be taken into consideration. At the most basic level, family income can be measured directly by surveying or interviewing members of a family unit to learn how much income they each generate. It is important to consider that family income is determined in part by the number of employed individuals in a household as well as by the number of family members dependent on that income. As such, income should be measured to include all sources (e.g., wages, investments, and benefits), denoting disposable income, and be weighted to different family compositions such that larger families are considered to have lower disposable income given the greater number of people dependent on that income (Galobardes et al. 2007). Measurement of family income is becoming more complex as family structures have changed dramatically in recent years and the definition of a “family unit” continues to evolve.

Family income can vary considerably across one’s lifespan as individuals may change jobs or lose employment several times during their working life. Education and occupations of family members can provide a more stable estimate of family socioeconomic status, and can be used as proxies for estimating income level. Education and occupations should be obtained for all household members to estimate family income thoroughly, especially in the context of immigration and intergenerational differences in educational opportunities. A higher educational level can reflect knowledge-related assets as well as lifestyle choices, and can be predictive of better jobs, higher income, and safer housing. Occupation is another proxy for income as it links educational experiences with actual income earned (Shavers 2007). When using educational level or occupation as proxies for income, it is important to consider that occupational status may change

during one’s lifetime with new jobs or careers and may more readily capture income variability. However, educational level, once attained, tends to remain the same throughout a lifetime and is a more static proxy for income. Of note, the income associated with an educational level or occupation is not always equivalent across race and gender (Shavers 2007). For example, women and minorities tend to earn less than white male counterparts; therefore, utilizing educational level or occupation as proxies for income may actually overestimate income levels for women and minorities compared to white males of similar educational background or occupational standing (Krieger et al. 1997).

There may be situations in which individuals or families cannot be asked directly about their economic status, such as when conducting retrospective reviews of health data or when looking at regional differences in health outcomes. In these circumstances, neighborhood levels of income can be examined as proxies for family-level income. For instance, census tract variables help to estimate median family income and household income levels based on large geographical units such as zip code areas. A combination of variables can be used to estimate neighborhood socioeconomic status, such as percentage of homeownership, percentage of a population with health insurance, or percentage of single-parent households. Neighborhood income is suspected to be closely related to health outcomes because it may reflect environmental factors that impact health, such as neighborhood safety, parks and places to exercise, social services, and access to healthy foods, as well as social capital – the social resources available to families and individuals. One should be cautious when interpreting results from neighborhood-level income estimates; while the estimates can serve as proxies for family-level income, they may not reflect the economic realities of each family.

The significant impact of income on health outcomes points to the importance of accounting for economic factors in behavioral medicine research. While there is no current consensus on how best to measure family income, researchers agree that multiple measurements of individual, family, and neighborhood levels can provide a

more comprehensive understanding of family income factors for health research.

Cross-References

- [Racial Inequality in Economic and Social Well-Being](#)

References and Readings

- Auerbach, J. A., & Krimgold, B. K. (Eds.). (2001). *Income, socioeconomic status, and health: Exploring the relationships*. Washington, DC: National Policy Association.
- Galobardes, B., Lynch, J., & Davey Smith, G. (2007). Measuring socioeconomic position in health research. *British Medical Bulletin*, 81, 21–37.
- Krieger, N., Williams, D. R., & Moss, N. E. (1997). Measuring social class in US public health research: Concepts, methodologies, and guidelines (Review). *Annual Review of Public Health*, 18, 341–378.
- Shavers, V. (2007). Measurement of socioeconomic status in health disparities research. *Journal of the National Medical Association*, 99(9), 1013–1023.

to ongoing health problems. Several explanations for the family's impact on health and disease have been proposed, including (a) the family's role in buffering or exacerbating the physiological stress responses of individuals, (b) the modeling of appropriate health behaviors, and (c) the social control that family members may have on one another's health behaviors. Because of the central role most families play in the development and maintenance of stress responses, as well as health behaviors and beliefs, psychosocial interventions are often implemented at the family level.

Description

Research has consistently indicated that the nature of parent-child and spousal relationships is critical for understanding the etiology of health, illness, and disease. For example, stable and supportive family relationships are related to a variety of long-term health benefits. Individuals who perceive their parents as warm and supportive during their childhood are less likely to develop coronary artery disease, hypertension, and alcoholism, than individuals who report less support from their families. Furthermore, being married and having children in the home is related to positive health outcomes such as lower mortality rates, especially for men. While the presence of a spouse and children generally benefit health, relationships ridden with conflict and discontent can take a toll. For instance, parent-child relationships characterized as interpersonally hostile, critical, overly controlling, and highly conflictual predict risk for developing several health problems in adulthood including lung disease, cardiovascular disease, some types of cancer, diabetes, and drug and alcohol abuse.

The quality of the marital bond is also a key predictor of long-term health. For instance, people in distressed marriages are at a higher risk for premature mortality than their less distressed counterparts. One of the most robust health consequences of distressed marriages is the link between marital difficulties and cardiovascular problems, including cardiovascular disease, the leading cause of death in the United States. For

Family, Relationships

Ryan M. Beveridge and Lisa M. Jaremka
Department of Psychological and Brain Sciences,
University of Delaware, Newark, DE, USA

Synonyms

[Interpersonal relationships](#); [Social network](#)

Definition

Family relationships have long been a focus of researchers interested in exploring how people's social context relates to health. A wealth of empirical work has demonstrated that differences in the quality of family relationships are associated with the development of acute and chronic illnesses, as well as how individuals and their families adjust

example, marital distress is linked to accelerated progression of atherosclerosis (thickening of the artery walls) and higher intima media thickness (an indicator of atherosclerosis). In addition, people in more distressed marriages are at increased risk for cardiovascular disease incidence and progression relative to those who were less distressed. Conversely, couples who are in more satisfying marriages have decreased risk of cardiovascular events. Marital conflict can also confer negative outcomes on children, including decrements in mental health, social proficiency, and physiological functioning.

A substantial body of empirical work has demonstrated that familial relationships play a role in how well individuals and families adjust to living with an illness. Specifically, different types of family involvement while coping with chronic illnesses can predict a person's physical and psychosocial adjustment to their illness. In fact, chronic illnesses are experienced within a social context, and the family environment is significantly impacted by living with a family member's illness. Oftentimes, individuals and families must learn to adjust their diet, exercise practices, daily routines, and other health behaviors in order to successfully manage the illness. Therefore, understanding how family members relate to one another to manage chronic illness has been a prominent focus for researchers and clinicians. For example, individuals with type 1 diabetes and cardiovascular disease who appraise their families as being involved in their illness by brainstorming, negotiating, engaging in problem solving, working as a team, and providing helpful suggestions or advice have better psychosocial and physical outcomes than those who perceive their family members as uninvolved or overly controlling. In addition, treatment adherence is generally greater when family members are collaboratively involved in the everyday stressors associated with chronic disease management. Furthermore, when family members provide contextually appropriate emotional support, informational support, or tangible support (e.g., money, food, and supplies), individuals and family members experience reduced psychological distress in the form of depression and anxiety,

and subdued sympathetic and HPA axis responses to stressful events.

Unfortunately, family involvement is not always associated with positive outcomes for individuals coping with chronic illness, or their families. Specifically, perceiving family members as intrusive or causing feelings of dependency is associated with poorer treatment adherence, high levels of personal guilt, and higher levels of family conflict. Furthermore, family members may underestimate the physical and psychological resources that an individual with an illness may have, leading to overcompensation and a lack of self-efficacy for the person coping with the illness. Family members providing support may become distressed over providing chronic care, potentially leading to depression among caregivers. Therefore, understanding the family context in which coping with a chronic illness occurs can provide insight into how well individuals and family members adjust to living with a disease.

Researchers have started to investigate the physiological pathways that may explain how a distressed marital or parent-child relationship ultimately results in cardiovascular problems, premature mortality, or other health problems. First, researchers have posited that parent-child relationships provide a context in which an individual's stress system may be affected for better or worse across the lifespan. Specifically, children who are chronically faced with family difficulties may develop increased sympathetic reactivity to stress and exaggerated cortisol and catecholamine responses. Indeed, research suggests that the neuroendocrine stress response system may become dysregulated under chronically stressful conditions, increasing risk for cardiovascular disease, among other health problems.

Growing evidence also suggests that immune function may be one potential pathway linking family relationships and health. For instance, wound healing is directly affected by marital conflict; experiencing marital conflict leads to slower wound health and less inflammation at the wound site. Local inflammation at the wound site is adaptive and critical to effective wound healing. Accordingly, marital disagreements produce maladaptive immunological responses. Hostile and

other negative behaviors during a conflict discussion, such as blaming or interrupting the partner, may be particularly detrimental. A conflict discussion led to slower wound healing among couples displaying more hostile behaviors compared to those with fewer hostile behaviors (Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 2005). Furthermore, whereas low hostile couples had similar levels of inflammation across both discussions, hostile couples had higher systemic inflammation following a conflict discussion compared to a social support discussion. In contrast to local inflammation, which is beneficial for wound repair, systemic inflammation is linked to a variety of age-related diseases. Marital distress is also implicated in cellular immune system dysregulation, as evidenced by greater latent viral reactivation. Spouses in more distressed marriages also have larger declines in cellular immune function over time than spouses in less distressed marriages. Thus, distressed marriages may have longer-term implications for immune function.

Family relationships also provide a key context in which health behaviors, beliefs, and habits form, all of which can have a profound impact on health. For instance, both nonobese men and women in more distressed marriages had higher postmeal ghrelin (an appetite stimulating hormone) and a poorer quality diet than those in less distressed marriages. Researchers have also shown that family social norms are an important predictor of health behaviors such as proper diet, treatment adherence, smoking, drug and alcohol abuse, and breastfeeding. Family members may provide a model that individuals within the family utilize to form health habits that influence their overall well-being. Some health behaviors, such as healthy diets, are highly related to family norms and are quite stable by early adolescence, indicating the need to intervene early within the family context. Social control, wherein family members' health beliefs influence individuals' health behaviors (e.g., following treatment regimens, going to the doctor, or exercising more regularly), also has health benefits. Furthermore, in some cultures (e.g., Asian, Latino, or Black), individuals may engage in healthy behaviors for the good of the family. Therefore, family relationships can have

an important impact on health through both direct and indirect processes.

As a result of the research described above, researchers have focused on developing interventions to attenuate the negative effects of family distress. A number of clinical interventions that focus on the family have been successfully developed. Typically, family interventions within health settings include an emphasis on the modeling and education of healthy behaviors. Furthermore, families are given strategies to integrate healthy behaviors into the structure of their daily routines. Additionally, family members are taught effective problem-solving skills to help solve daily hassles, as well as major difficulties that may arise when coping with an illness. Families also learn effective communication skills, such as listening to one another, reflecting what others have said, praising appropriate health behaviors, and negotiating when there are different opinions about how to manage health-related decisions. These and other family-based interventions have a variety of health benefits, including improvement in treatment adherence, psychological adjustment to an illness, illness recovery, and increased longevity. In summary, family functioning and relationships have become an important focus of intervention in health settings.

Cross-References

- [Family Social Support](#)
- [Family Systems Theory](#)

References and Further Readings

- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Loving, T. J., Stowell, J. R., et al. (2005). Hostile marital interactions, proinflammatory cytokine production, and wound healing. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 62(12), 1377–1384.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Gouin, J.-P., & Hantsoo, L. (2010). Close relationships, inflammation, and health. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 35(1), 33–38. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neubiorev.2009.09.003>.
- Robles, T. F., Slatcher, R. B., Trombello, J. M., & McGinn, M. M. (2014). Marital quality and health: A meta-analytic review. *Psychological Bulletin*, 140, 140–187. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0031859>.

Uchino, B. N. (2009). Understanding the links between social support and physical health: A life-span perspective with emphasis on the separability of perceived and received support. *Perspectives on Psychological Science*, 4, 236–255.

Family, Structure

Jenny T. Wang

Department of Medical Psychology, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Composition](#); [Family](#)

Definition

Family structure reflects the organization of individuals who may be related by blood or legally bound (i.e., marriage, adoption) that are considered of the same relational unit.

Description

The most basic family structure within Western culture comprises of the “nuclear” family, which includes father, mother, and any children under the age of 18. Information about family structure is often asked of parents or children involved in biopsychosocial research and often documented retrospectively or at the time the information is assessed. However, it can be argued that family stability and family structure are fluid and evolving influences on health, socioeconomic resources, and family dynamics and is more accurately assessed longitudinally.

In health research, family structure is often dichotomized into “single-parent households” and “two-parent households.” Data regarding parental structure is of importance as single-

parent households have been associated with lower income (see ► [Family, Income](#)) and poorer health outcomes. However, the definition of family structure is becoming increasingly complex and extends beyond the traditional dichotomy of single versus two-parent households.

For example, single parenthood can include numerous possibilities such as a single biological, adoptive, foster, or stepparent parent due to life transitions including death of a parent, remarriage, divorce, adoption, and advances in assisted reproductive technology (ART, see ► [Infertility and Assisted Reproduction: Psychosocial Aspects](#)) allowing single adults to conceive without an identified partner. In the most simplistic form, two-parent households may comprise of intact biological parents or stepparents who are legally defined as being married and of the same family unit. However, children are increasingly born to unmarried partners or those who are cohabiting. These families do not conform to legal definitions of marriage in the traditional sense. Furthermore, some unmarried partners may share the same residence while others do not, maintaining residences with children and previous partners. Consequently, the measurement of family structure can be ambiguous and influenced by the context in which the family relationships are defined.

Furthermore, sibling relationships can be highly variable in current-day family structures as stepfamilies and blended families often result from the dissolution of marriages or changes in cohabitation. Biological, half, and stepsiblings can influence family cohesiveness and stability, which can either ameliorate or exacerbate the difficulties of family structure changes. The ages of children in families as well as their developmental and social needs (e.g., children with disabilities) can increase the financial and emotional strain in recently combined families.

In some non-Western cultures, extended family members such as grandparents, aunts, uncles, and cousins are considered part of the core family unit given emphasis on interdependency and collectivism. Collecting information about family

members beyond the “nuclear” family may be particularly important in some cultures given the additional social resources that extended family members can provide. For example, assistance from grandparents, in particular grandmothers in certain cultures may be critical to understanding how families and youth cope with chronic illness or other health demands. Extended family members can provide practical support (e.g., providing transportation to doctor appointments, reminding one to take medications, etc.) as well as emotional support to deal with health-related stressors.

Cross-References

- [Social Capital and Health](#)
- [Social Factors](#)

References and Reading

- Barrett, A. E., & Turner, R. J. (2005). Family structure and mental health: The mediating effects of socioeconomic status, family process, and social stress. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 46(2), 156–169.
- Bramlett, M. D., & Blumberg, S. J. (2007). Family structure and children’s physical and mental health. *Health Affairs (Millwood)*, 26(2), 549–558.
- Brown, S. L., & Manning, W. L. (2009). Family boundary ambiguity and the measurement of family structure: The significance of cohabitation. *Demography*, 46(1), 85–101. Project MUSE. Web. January 21, 2011. <http://muse.jhu.edu/>
- Carlson, M. J. (2006). Family structure, father involvement, and adolescent behavioral outcomes. *Journal of Marriage and Family*, 68(1), 137–154.
- Dawson, D. A. (1991). Family structure and children’s health: United States. *Vital and Health Statistics*, 10(178), 1–47.0020.
- Lee, G. R. (1982). *Family structure and interaction: A comparative analysis* (2nd ed. rev.). Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.
- Montgomery, L. E., Kiely, J. L., & Pappas, G. (1996). The effects of poverty, race, and family structure on US children’s health: Data from the NHIS, 1978 through 1980 and 1989 through 1991. *American Journal of Public Health*, 86(10), 1401–1405.
- Thompson, S. J., Auslander, W. F., & White, N. H. (2001). Comparison of single-mother and two-parent families on metabolic control of children with diabetes. *Diabetes Care*, 24(2), 234–238.

Fasting Glucose

Adriana Carrillo and Carley Gomez-Meade
Department of Pediatrics, Miller School of
Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Fasting sugar](#)

Definition

Fasting blood glucose refers to blood glucose concentrations after an overnight fast. Normal fasting blood glucose is ≤ 100 mg/dL. Impaired fasting glucose is an intermediate stage between normal glucose homeostasis and overt diabetes. Impaired fasting glucose is between 100 and 125 mg/dL. Fasting blood glucose greater than 125 mg/dL indicates diabetes. Diabetes signifies a failure of glucose regulation. Normal fasting blood glucose is maintained by multiple mechanisms, as described below (Gardner and Shoback 2007; Kronenber et al. 2008).

Mechanisms that prevent hypoglycemia by raising blood glucose during fasting begin when glucose falls below 85 mg/dL. Initially, pancreatic beta cells sense glucose levels and suppress insulin secretion. Decreasing insulin levels decreased glucose utilization by insulin-sensitive tissue such as skeletal muscle. Lower insulin levels also increase hepatic glucose production. Endogenous glucose production mainly via glycogenolysis is also stimulated by increased glucagon levels. Glucagon is secreted from the pancreatic alpha cells in response to decreasing blood glucose. Glucagon levels begin to rise when blood glucose is less than 70 mg/dL. Glucagon increases hepatic glucose production within minutes via gluconeogenesis and to a lesser extent glycogenolysis. Epinephrine can also acutely increase blood glucose when blood glucose decrease below

70 mg/dL. Adrenal chromaffin cells in the adrenal medulla secrete epinephrine in response to declining blood glucose. Epinephrine increases blood glucose by stimulating hepatic glucose production and decreasing glucose utilization. Epinephrine acts directly to increase hepatic glycogenolysis and enhance glucagon secretion by activating β_2 -adrenergic stimulation. Gluconeogenesis is increased by epinephrine through mobilization of precursors and fatty acids. Insulin secretion is limited by α_2 -adrenergic stimulation of epinephrine. Epinephrine decreases glucose utilization in insulin-sensitive tissue through β -adrenergic stimulation. Glucose utilization and endogenous glucose production can also be augmented by long-term elevation in growth hormone and cortisol. Acute increases in growth hormone have insulin-like effects, but after several hours increase hepatic gluconeogenesis and decrease glucose uptake. Increased cortisol levels for 2–3 h increase hepatic gluconeogenesis and decrease peripheral glucose utilization. After 24–48 h, gluconeogenesis becomes the only source of glucose production. Lipolysis and ketogenesis provide alternative substrate for brain metabolism. Suppression of insulin secretion and secretion of counterregulatory hormones increase endogenous glucose production and decrease glucose utilization during fasting (Sperling 2008).

Cross-References

► [Blood Glucose](#)

References and Readings

- Gardner, D. G., & Shoback, D. (2007). *Greenspan's basic and clinical endocrinology* (8th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Kronenberg, H., Melmed, S., Polonsky, K., & Larsen, P. R. (2008). *Williams textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Sperling, M. (2008). *Pediatric endocrinology* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.

Fasting Insulin

Adriana Carrillo and Carley Gomez-Meade
Department of Pediatrics, Miller School of
Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Insulin sensitivity](#)

Definition

Fasting insulin levels are primarily used to assess insulin sensitivity. Impaired insulin sensitivity precedes glucose intolerance in the development of type 2 diabetes. Elevated fasting insulin is a compensatory mechanism to prevent glucose intolerance and diabetes. Insulin resistance is defined as the impaired ability to promote peripheral glucose disposal and suppress hepatic glucose production.

The primary site of glucose disposal is skeletal muscle. The gold standard for measuring skeletal muscle insulin sensitivity is the hyperinsulinemic-euglycemic insulin clamp. This is an invasive and time-consuming test that involves infusion of a fixed rate of insulin and a variable rate of glucose to maintain normoglycemia; therefore, alternatives have been proposed. Calculations of fasting insulin and glucose can be used to measure insulin resistance. The most common are fasting glucose to insulin ratio, homeostasis model assessment of insulin resistance (HOMA), and quantitative insulin sensitivity check index (QUICKI). The HOMA and QUICKI models are mathematical estimates of beta cell function and insulin resistance (Gardner and Shoback 2007; Lifshitz 2007; Wallace et al. 2004).

Fasting insulin levels can also be evaluated during hypoglycemia. An insulin level greater than 2 μ U/mL when serum blood glucose is less than 50 mg/dL suggests hyperinsulinism (Gardner and Shoback 2007).

Cross-References

- [Hyperinsulinemia](#)
- [Insulin](#)
- [Insulin Resistance](#)

References and Readings

- Gardner, D. G., & Shoback, D. (2007). *Greenspan's basic and clinical endocrinology* (8th ed.). New York: The McGraw-Hill.
- Lifshitz, F. (2007). *Pediatric endocrinology* (5th ed.). New York: Informa Healthcare.
- Wallace, T. M., Levy, J. C., & Matthews, D. R. (2004). Use and abuse of HOMA modeling. *Diabetes Care*, 27(6), 1487–1495.

Fasting Sugar

- [Fasting Glucose](#)

Fat Absorption

Manjunath Harlapur¹ and Daichi Shimbo²

¹Center of Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Division of General Medicine, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

²Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Dietary lipids absorption](#)

Definition

The absorption of the fat begins in the intestine with the help of several enzymes which is closely regulated by local hormones.

Description

More than 90% of dietary fat is in the form of triacylglycerol (TAG). The remainder of the fat is in the form of cholesterol, cholesteryl esters, phospholipids, and free fatty acids, which are unesterified. The mechanism of fat absorption includes degradation by the local enzymes, mediated by the hormones in the gastrointestinal system.

The digestion of the lipids begins in the stomach, when the food content is mixed with salivary lipase produced in the mouth. The gastric lipase is produced by the stomach and salivary lipase, which are resistant to gastric acidity, helps the breakdown of short- and medium-chain TAG molecules. Once the lipid-rich food reaches the duodenum, which is the first part of small intestine, the process of emulsification begins with the addition of bile salts and mechanical peristalsis. With the emulsification, the surface area of the lipid molecules is increased and also prevents their coalescing with other lipid molecules. Eventually, pancreatic enzymes play a major role in the absorption of dietary lipids. TAG is initially a larger molecule when it enters the intestine, and the pancreatic lipase removes the fatty acids from TAG to make it a smaller molecule, which is then taken up by intestinal villi.

Dietary cholesteryl esters in the form of cholesterol are in the nonesterified (free) form. Cholesterol esterase, a pancreatic enzyme, degrades cholesteryl esters into free fatty acids and cholesterol. Phospholipids in the food are degraded by the phospholipase, another pancreatic enzyme.

The lipid digestion is controlled by two important hormones in the intestine. Cholecystokinin (CCK) is a local hormone produced by jejunum and duodenum after the partially digested fat-rich food. CCK contracts the gall bladder to release bile and also act on the cells of pancreas to produce the pancreatic digestive enzymes. Bile fluid is produced from the liver and stored in the gall bladder, and it is rich in bile salts, phospholipids, and free cholesterol. Bile salts help in the emulsification process as mentioned before. Secretin,

another small peptide hormone produced by the intestinal cells, act on the liver and pancreas to produce the watery solution rich in bicarbonates and this helps to alkalize the gastric acidity when the food enters the duodenum. This helps to maintain the optimum pH for the action of all the above-described enzymes.

Free fatty acids, free cholesterol, and 2-monoacylglycerol are the final products of lipid digestion in the intestine. These end products along with bile salts and fat-soluble vitamins form mixed micelles. The micelles are disk-shaped clusters with water-soluble components located outside and water insoluble components located inside their surface. These mixed micelles are absorbed from the brush border of intestinal mucosal cells. Short- and medium-chain length fatty acids are directly absorbed without the assistance of micelles.

After the absorption of these lipids in the intestinal cells, the longer-chain fatty acids are further taken up by the endoplasmic reticulum of intestinal cells where the synthesis of complex lipids takes place. The longer fatty acids are activated by the enzyme, fatty acyl Co A synthetase, and are transformed into TAG with the help of TAG synthase. The small and medium-chain fatty acids are directly released into the portal circulation to the liver after binding to albumin.

Absorbed lipid components either go to liver through the portal vein or directly into systemic circulation to the rest of the body through the lymphatic system.

Cross-References

- [Lipid Metabolism](#)
- [Plasma Lipid](#)

References and Further Reading

Harvey, R. A., & Ferrier, D. R. (2008). Cholesterol and steroid metabolism. In R. A. Harvey (Ed.), *Lippincott's illustrated reviews biochemistry* (pp. 173–180). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams and Wilkins.

Fat Mass

- [Body Composition](#)

Fat Metabolism

- [Lipid Metabolism](#)

Fat, Dietary Intake

Tavis S. Campbell, Jillian A. Johnson and Kristin A. Zernicke

Department of Psychology, University of Calgary, Calgary, AB, Canada

Synonyms

[Monounsaturated fats](#); [Polyunsaturated fats](#); [Saturated fats](#); [Trans fats](#)

Definition

Dietary fat is broken down into glycerol and fatty acids in the stomach and intestine when ingested. The glycerol and fatty acids are then altered in a process called emulsification in order for fats to be held in the digestive fluids long enough to be digested. Once digested, the fat is transported by the body's cells via the bloodstream and lymphatic system. If the fat is not required immediately, glycerol can be converted into glucose and either used for energy, stored as glycogen (short term) or stored as *body fat* (long term).

Given that fats are higher in calories than carbohydrates or protein, all dietary fats should be ingested with moderation. The American Heart Association recommends that approximately 20–35% of daily *caloric intake* should come from fats. Depending on height, weight, and activity level, recommended intake ranges from 45 to

75 g of fat a day for women and 60 to 105 g of fat a day for men. The amount of fat recommended for children and adolescents depends on height, weight, gender, and activity level.

Unlike carbohydrates and proteins that have one major function, dietary fat has a number of important roles in the body. These include forming the structure of cell membranes, helping absorb vitamins, lubricating joints, providing insulation for nerves (myelin sheath), supporting strong bones, and supporting a strong immune system.

Description

Fats are constructed from a combination of carbon and hydrogen atoms that are chemically bonded together. The structure of this chemical bond determines the type of dietary fat. There are four main types of dietary fat: saturated, monounsaturated, polyunsaturated, and *trans* fats.

Saturated fats(saturated fatty acids) (SAFAs): All carbon atoms are bonded to hydrogen atoms in the chemical structure of a saturated fat. These fats have the highest melting point of all the natural fats and therefore remain solid at room temperature. Saturated fats increase levels of both HDL and LDL *cholesterol*; therefore, moderate consumption is recommended for healthy individuals. These fats are found primarily in animal products such as fatty meats, full-fat dairy products, butter, lard, coconut oil, and palm oil.

Monounsaturated fats(monounsaturated fatty acids) (MUFAs): In the chemical structure, monounsaturated fats contain one double bond between carbon atoms. Thus, the carbon atoms are bonded to hydrogen atoms everywhere but at the double carbon bond and are therefore only saturated with hydrogen atoms at this single point. Monounsaturated fats have a lower melting point than saturated fats and a higher melting point than polyunsaturated fats. Unsaturated fats increase HDL *cholesterol* levels while reducing LDL *cholesterol* levels and are therefore highly recommended for consumption. Ingesting foods high in MUFAs may also benefit *insulin* levels

and blood sugar control. Foods rich in MUFAs include avocados, nuts, and olive oil.

Polyunsaturated fats(polyunsaturated fatty acids) (PUFAs): In the chemical structure of polyunsaturated fats, there are two or more double bonds between carbon atoms. Thus, they are not fully saturated with hydrogen atoms at two or more points in the structure. Polyunsaturated fats have the lowest melting point of all dietary fats and remain liquid at low temperatures. The two main types of polyunsaturated fats are *omega-3 fatty acids* and *omega-6 fatty acids*. Omega-3s are found in coldwater oily fish, such as salmon, whereas omega-6s are found in vegetable oils. Both are *essential fatty acids*, meaning they cannot be produced by the body and must be acquired from PUFA-rich foods or *dietary supplement*. Unsaturated fats increase HDL *cholesterol* levels while reducing LDL *cholesterol* levels and are therefore highly recommended for consumption. Omega-3 s appear to decrease the risk of *coronary artery disease* and may also protect against blood clotting, reducing the risk of stroke, and lowering triglycerides.

Trans fats(trans-isomer fatty acids) (TFAs): Trans fats involve adding hydrogen atoms to a fat that was originally unsaturated. These fats are created naturally when a hydrogen bond on an unsaturated fat gets twisted. However, the vast majority of trans fats are man-made in a process called hydrogenation. Man-made trans fats, called industrial or synthetic trans fats, are found in processed foods such as partially hydrogenated margarine, many commercially baked products, and deep-fried foods. TFAs have a high melting point and remain solid at room temperature, making them easier to cook with and less likely to spoil compared to naturally occurring oils. Synthetic trans fats increase unhealthy LDL *cholesterol* and lower healthy HDL *cholesterol*, increasing risk for *cardiovascular disease* and therefore should be avoided. Synthetic trans fats are believed to have no health benefits.

Research indicates long-term consumption of a high-fat diet contributes to increased mortality and morbidity. Consumption of a high-fat diet is a contributing factor to the development of obesity. *Obesity* and excessive body weight are

associated with various diseases, such as *cardiovascular disease*, diabetes mellitus type 2, certain types of cancers, *obstructive sleep apnea*, osteoarthritis, and *metabolic syndrome* (a combination of disorders including diabetes mellitus type 2, high blood pressure, high blood cholesterol, and high triglyceride levels). As a specific example, a diet high in fat may contribute to the development of *atherosclerosis* by activating elevations in blood pressure, which can lead to further risk of other cardiovascular events. While a high-fat diet contributes to negative health outcomes, a change in diet including an increase in the consumption of certain fats, like *omega-3 fatty acids*, in combination with a reduction in the consumption of saturated fats can have protective and therapeutic health benefits. These benefits may include a reduction in overall *cholesterol* levels and blood pressure, reduced risk for chronic illness, as well as improvements in mood. It is generally recommended daily intake of dietary fat should be limited to 30% of daily *caloric intake*, with the majority of these calories coming from monounsaturated fats or polyunsaturated fatty acids.

Cross-References

- [Caloric Intake](#)
- [Cholesterol](#)
- [Fat: Saturated, Unsaturated](#)
- [Omega-3 Fatty Acids](#)
- [Trans Fatty Acids](#)

References and Readings

- DeMeester, F., Zibadi, S., & Watson, R. R. (Eds.). (2010). *Modern dietary fat intakes in disease promotion*. New York: Humana Press.
- Heart and Stroke Foundation (2010, January). *Dietary fats, oils and cholesterol*. Retrieved April 8, 2011 from http://www.heartandstroke.com/site/c.ikIQLcMWJtE/b.3484237/k.D734/Healthy_living_Dietary_fats_oils_and_cholesterol.htm
- Panel on Dietary Reference Intakes for Macronutrients, Subcommittees on Upper Reference Levels of Nutrients and Interpretation and Uses of Dietary Reference Intakes, & Standing Committee on the Scientific

Evaluation of Dietary Reference Intakes (Ed.). (2005). *Dietary reference intakes for energy, carbohydrate, fiber, fat, fatty acids, cholesterol, protein, and amino acids (macronutrients)*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press.

Taubes, G. (2001). Nutrition: The soft science of dietary fat. *Science*, 291, 2536–2545.

U.S. Department of Agriculture & U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2010). *Dietary guidelines for Americans 2010* (7th ed.). Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.

Fat: Saturated, Unsaturated

Kelly Doran

University of Maryland, Baltimore School of Nursing, Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Monounsaturated fatty acids](#); [Oils](#); [Polyunsaturated fatty acids](#); [Saturated fatty acids](#); [Solid fats](#); [Trans-fatty acids](#)

Definition

Fat is an energy source derived from food. There are four types of dietary fat: saturated, trans, monounsaturated, and polyunsaturated fat (U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2010).

Description

Fat is an essential dietary element because it supplies calories, helps insulate the body, aids in the absorption of fat-soluble vitamins (i.e., A, D, E, K), and keeps hair and skin healthy. Dietary fat also provides the body with essential fatty acids that aid in controlling inflammation, blood clotting, and developing the brain (U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2011a).

Types of Fats

Based on their composition, the four fats are grouped into two subgroups: saturated fatty acids (saturated fat) and unsaturated fatty acids (which include trans, monounsaturated, and polyunsaturated fat). However, trans fat is structurally different and not healthy like the other unsaturated fats, so for clarity it will be helpful to use the groups unhealthy (i.e., saturated and trans fat) and healthy fats (monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fat) (Mayo Clinic 2011; U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2010; U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2011b). Sometimes, unhealthy fats are called solid fats and healthy fats are called oils (U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2010).

Unhealthy Fats

Saturated Fats

Saturated fats are grouped under the unhealthy fat category because they can raise total cholesterol and LDLs (low-density lipoproteins – which are also called “bad” cholesterol). Diets high in saturated fat can result in occluded or narrowed arteries and increased risk for cardiovascular disease (Mayo Clinic 2011; U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2010; U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2011a). Some examples of saturated fat include ice cream, butter, cheese, whole milk, coconut oil, palm oil, and most animal fats (U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2010; U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2011a). The body makes enough saturated fat; therefore, it is not a dietary requirement (U.S. Department of Agriculture, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2010).

Trans Fats

Trans fats are unhealthy because they can raise LDL (bad) cholesterol and lower HDLs (high-

density lipoproteins – which are also called “good” cholesterol). Excessive trans fat consumption can lead to increased risk for cardiovascular disease (Mayo Clinic 2011; U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2011a). Some examples of trans fat include processed foods, fried foods, and commercially baked foods (U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2011a). Trans fats are also not essential dietary fats (U.S. Department of Agriculture, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2010). Sometimes trans fats are also called partially hydrogenated oils (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] 2010).

Healthy Fats

Monounsaturated Fats

Monounsaturated fats are grouped under healthy fats because replacing unhealthy fats (i.e., saturated and trans fats) with monounsaturated fats can lower LDL (bad) cholesterol (U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2011a). Monounsaturated fats also provide essential fatty acids that are not produced by the body; these essential fatty acids are needed for physiological and structural functions (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] 2011; U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2010). Some examples of monounsaturated fat include canola oil, olive oil, and avocados (CDC 2011).

Polyunsaturated Fats

Polyunsaturated fats are grouped under healthy fats because replacing unhealthy fats (i.e., saturated and trans fats) with polyunsaturated fats can lower LDL (bad) cholesterol (U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2011a). Polyunsaturated fats also provide essential fatty acids that are not produced by the body; these essential fatty acids are needed for physiological and structural functions (CDC 2011; U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2010). Additionally, there are two subgroups of

polyunsaturated fats, omega 6 polyunsaturated fats and omega 3 polyunsaturated fats. Some examples of omega 6 polyunsaturated fats include safflower oil and corn oil, whereas some examples of omega 3 polyunsaturated fats include flaxseed, canola oil, walnuts, trout, and salmon (CDC 2011).

Recommendations

Generally, it is advised that most fat intake should come from healthy sources of fat (i.e., monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fat) and unhealthy sources of fat (i.e., saturated and trans fat) should be limited. Total fat intake should range from 3% to 40% of calories for children 1–3 years of age, 25–35% of calories for those 4–18 years of age, and 20–35% of calories for adults over the age of 19. The recommendations also suggest healthy Americans over the age of 1 consume less than 7–10% of daily calories from saturated fat and less than 1% of daily calories from trans fats and replace remaining fat calories with healthy fats (American Heart Association 2012; U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2015). However, regardless of the type of fat (i.e., healthy or unhealthy), fat intake should be monitored because dietary fat provides 9 cal per gram which is more than double the amount of calories other nutrients provide (e.g., carbohydrates provide 4 cal per gram). Therefore, eating a diet of more fat than recommended (healthy or unhealthy) can lead to overweight or obesity and its associated risk factors (U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2011b). Most Americans consume more total fat and more unhealthy fat than recommended and less healthy fat than recommended (U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2010).

Cross-References

- [Essential Fatty Acids](#)
- [Fat Absorption](#)

- [Fat, Dietary Intake](#)
- [Hyperlipidemia](#)
- [Omega-3 Fatty Acids](#)

References and Further Readings

- American Heart Association. (2012). *Know your fats*. Retrieved 22 Mar 2012, from http://www.heart.org/HEARTORG/Conditions/Cholesterol/PreventionTreatmentofHighCholesterol/Know-Your-Fats_UCM_305628_Article.jsp#.T2oNgvWLGeJ
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010). *Nutrition for everyone: Trans fat*. Retrieved 15 Apr 2011, from <http://www.cdc.gov/nutrition/everyone/basics/fat/transfat.html>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2011). *Nutrition for everyone: Polyunsaturated fats and monounsaturated fats*. Retrieved 15 Apr 2011, from <http://www.cdc.gov/nutrition/everyone/basics/fat/unsaturatedfat.html>
- Mayo Clinic. (2011). *Dietary fats: Know which types to choose*. Retrieved 16 Apr 2011, from <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/fat/NU00262>
- U.S. Department of Agriculture, & U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2010). *Dietary guidelines for Americans 2010* (7th ed.). Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, & U.S. Department of Agriculture. 2015–2020. *Dietary guidelines for Americans* (8th ed.). Dec 2015. Available at <http://health.gov/dietaryguidelines/2015/guidelines/>
- U.S. National Library of Medicine, & National Institutes of Health. (2011a). *Dietary fats explained*. Retrieved 15 Apr 2011, from <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/patientinstructions/000104.htm>
- U.S. National Library of Medicine, & National Institutes of Health. (2011b). *Fat*. Retrieved 15 Apr 2011, from <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/002468.htm>

Fatalism

Karla Espinosa de los Monteros
Clinical Psychology, SDSU/UCSD Joint Doctoral Program in Clinical Psychology, San Diego, CA, USA

Definition

Fatalism refers to the general belief that events, such as the actions and occurrences that form an

individual life, are determined by fate, and, thus, beyond the capacity of human beings to control. When applied to health, fatalism can be conceptualized as the belief that the development and course of health problems is beyond an individual's personal control (Straughan and Seow 1998). Research on the relationship between fatalism and health has generally focused on fatalistic beliefs about specific diseases, the most commonly studied being cancer. Powe and Johnson (1995) defined cancer fatalism as a situational manifestation of fatalism where an individual feels powerless in the face of cancer and views its diagnosis as a struggle against insurmountable odds.

Description

The shift from acute disease to chronic disease as the major cause of morbidity and mortality in developed countries has highlighted the importance of lifestyle factors in the prevention of disease. This paradigm shift has fostered efforts to understand how cognitive factors, such as fatalism, influence an individual's decision to adopt health-promoting behaviors. Fatalism's influence on behavior may stem from its impact on an individual's perceived self-efficacy to control life events, the outcomes attributed to a behavior, and overall motivation to change, maintain, or adopt behaviors (Freeman 1989; Powe and Johnson 1995; Straughan and Seow 1998). For example, an asymptomatic individual who believes that cancer is unavoidable regardless of personal action is likely to perceive few benefits to cancer screening, particularly in light of the material losses (e.g., time, money) and aversive experiences (e.g., discomfort, anxiety) associated with the behavior. Indeed, cancer fatalism has been associated with the underutilization of cancer screening services, delay of care, smoking, physical inactivity, and poor dietary practices (Espinosa de los Monteros and Gallo 2010; Niederdeppe and Levy 2007; Powe and Finnie 2003). Research focusing on fatalistic beliefs about diseases other than cancer is more limited, but preliminary evidence suggests that the

construct may also be associated with high-risk sexual behavior and diabetes management.

Cultural differences in the endorsement of fatalistic beliefs about health and illness have been reported. For example, in the United States, cancer fatalism is more common in African American and Hispanic American populations than in non-Hispanic Whites (Abraido-Lanza et al. 2007; Powe and Finnie 2003). While this pattern may in part be attributed to variation in the dominant worldviews of different cultural groups, generally, fatalistic beliefs about health and illness are most prominent in older adults and less educated populations, as well as in groups that have historically experienced significant social disadvantages (Abraido-Lanza et al. 2007; Davison et al. 1992; Powe and Johnson 1995). Given these differences, fatalism has at times been studied as a means to understand the factors contributing to socioeconomic, racial, and ethnic disparities in health behavior, and many studies have called for the development of culturally sensitive interventions to address fatalistic perceptions about health within high-risk groups.

However, theories on the development and maintenance of fatalistic beliefs in regards to health and illness stress the importance of considering certain points. First, care should be taken in interpreting fatalistic beliefs as irrational before considering the social and physical barriers to health that are faced by certain populations. For example, poverty, discrimination, and limited access to health-promoting resources such as health education and medical care represent tangible barriers to disease prevention and treatment (Freeman 1989). Therefore, for certain individuals, fatalistic beliefs about health and illness may be grounded on realistic appraisals of individual control and may more accurately represent a balance between the almost universally valued goal of good health, and the recognition that some barriers to health may not be overcome through personal effort (Davison et al. 1992).

Second, while all or none categories are often used to describe the nature of fatalistic beliefs – i.e., individuals are either fatalistic or they are not – empirical evidence shows that people rarely embrace either extreme (Davison et al. 1992).

Thus, a more accurate conceptualization of fatalistic beliefs about health and illness is that they fall within a spectrum ranging from high to low, and where an individual falls within that spectrum will likely depend on the disease or behavior in question, as well as the context in which fatalism is assessed.

Finally, while fatalistic beliefs about health and illness may be more prominent in certain populations, they are not exclusive to any one group. As Davison et al. (1992) pointed out, as long as people continue to witness health outcomes that are inconsistent with their current biomedical understanding of disease, there will always be a place for the notion of fate to help people make sense of what cannot be easily explained.

Cross-References

- [Acute Disease](#)
- [Discrimination](#)
- [Health Disparities](#)
- [Self-efficacy](#)

References and Readings

- Abraido-Lanza, A. F., Viladrich, A., Florez, K. R., Cespedes, A., Aguirre, A. N., & De La Cruz, A. A. (2007). Fatalismo reconsidered: A cautionary note for health-related research and practice with Latino populations. *Ethnicity & Disease*, 17, 153–158.
- Davison, C., Frankel, S., & Smith, G. D. (1992). The limits of lifestyle: Re-assessing ‘fatalism’ in the popular culture of illness prevention. *Social Science & Medicine*, 34(6), 675–685.
- Espinosa de los Monteros, K., & Gallo, L. C. (2010). Fatalism, Latinas, and cancer screening: A systematic review of the literature. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12529-010-9119-4>.
- Freeman, H. (1989). Cancer and the socioeconomically disadvantaged. *CA A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 39, 266–288.
- Niederdeppe, J., & Levy, A. G. (2007). Fatalistic beliefs about cancer prevention and three prevention behaviors. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers, & Prevention*, 16, 998–1003.
- Powe, P. D., & Finnie, R. (2003). Cancer fatalism: The state of the science. *Cancer Nursing*, 26(6), 454–465.
- Powe, B. D., & Johnson, A. (1995). Fatalism as a barrier to cancer screening among African-Americans: Philosophical perspectives. *Journal of Religion & Health*, 34, 119–125.
- Straughan, P. T., & Seow, A. (1998). Fatalism reconceptualized: A concept to predict health screening behavior. *Journal of Gender, Culture, & Health*, 3(2), 85–100.

Fatality

- [Mortality](#)

Fat-Free Mass

- [Body Composition](#)

Fatigue

Fred Friedberg
Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Stony Brook
University Medical Center, Stony Brook, NY,
USA

Synonyms

[Chronic fatigue](#); [Chronic fatigue syndrome](#); [Energy](#); [Exhaustion](#); [Illness fatigue](#); [Self-management](#); [Tiredness](#); [Treatment of fatigue](#)

Definition

Fatigue is a subjective sense of tiredness or exhaustion. Although “fatigue” is a general term intended to encompass both tiredness and exhaustion, it can also refer to the midrange intensities between (milder) tiredness and (more severe) exhaustion. Tiredness is a normal time-limited response to sustained physical, mental, or emotional effort. More persistent states of fatigue and exhaustion may arise from behavioral and

environmental stressors, or be a symptom of physical or psychological disorders. A number of physiologic mechanisms for fatigue have been proposed, and some correlations have been identified, but clear biologic markers have yet to be established.

Description

The nearly ubiquitous experience of tiredness in daily life may devalue the symptom of fatigue as a potential concern to health professionals. As such, the complaint of fatigue is often regarded as non-serious by physicians, but is considered one of the most important symptoms by patients.

Self-report fatigue severity in the population is normally distributed with pathological fatigue represented at higher levels on this quantitative continuum. However, fatigue may also be qualitatively and biologically different depending on its origins (e.g., disease, occupational). For instance, mental and physical fatigue are empirically distinguishable constructs. Persistent fatigue may impact physical and cognitive functioning as well as emotional well-being and quality of life.

Useful distinctions can be made on a severity dimension of tiredness, fatigue, and exhaustion. Similar to Selye's general adaptation syndrome (alarm, resistance, exhaustion), individuals with normal tiredness experience loss of energy in proportion to the amount of energy expended, whereas individuals with (persistent) fatigue experience loss of energy sooner than expected and out of proportion to the amount of energy expended. Finally, individuals with ongoing exhaustion experience sudden and unpredictable losses of energy, often without any identifiable energy expenditure.

These three states of fatigue are also linked to increasing cognitive difficulties, reduced sleep quality, and lessened ability to engage in social interaction. The relative places of tiredness, fatigue, and exhaustion in the adaptation process have implications for the types of interventions that are most appropriate. For example, mild exercise, which might be appropriate for someone

experiencing fatigue, might be an additional stressor (and therefore harmful) for a person experiencing exhaustion. This piece will focus on persistent fatigue with respect to diagnosis, lifestyle factors, illness conditions, medication side effects, and treatment.

Diagnosis

Persistent fatigue is a common symptom in health care and is usually not due to an identifiable disease. Definitive physical conditions are found in less than 1/10. In those people who have a clear diagnosis, musculoskeletal and psychological problems are the most common. If a person with fatigue decides to seek medical advice, the overall goal is to identify and/or rule out any treatable conditions. This is done by considering the person's medical and psychosocial history and other symptoms that may be present, conducting standard laboratory tests, and evaluating the qualities of the fatigue itself.

Lifestyle Factors

Behavioral and psychosocial factors linked to persistent fatigue include physical inactivity, overwork, poor sleep, affective distress, and poor diet/overweight.

Physical inactivity. In modern sedentary societies, occupational, social, and leisure activities typically involve little physical effort. This often indicates a lack of exercise or physically active hobbies. Persistent fatigue may be generated by such physical inactivity. In addition, general inactivity, both physical and mental, may trigger boredom and apathy which can further increase fatigue.

Overwork. In work-focused cultures, near-continuous engagement in goal-directed mental and intellectual activities (often in combination with mild to moderate sleep deprivation) may result in persistent fatigue.

Sleep difficulties. Disrupted sleep, a significant contributor to fatigue, is related to sleep quality,

amount of sleep, the hours set aside for sleep, and the number of times that a person awakens during the night.

Affective distress. Emotions including anxiety, discouragement, and depressed mood may be accompanied by the symptom of fatigue.

Poor diet/overweight. Western diets – typically high calorie, high sugar, and high fat – are linked to overweight and obesity. Self-reported fatigue is associated with higher body mass index and a higher waist circumference.

Illness-Related Fatigue

Chronic illnesses both psychiatric and medical often feature the symptom of persistent fatigue. Psychiatric conditions that commonly exhibit fatigue are clinical depression and generalized anxiety disorder. Medical conditions linked to significant fatigue include anemia, low thyroid, diabetes, cardiovascular disease, arthritis, HIV/AIDS, autoimmune diseases, cancer, fibromyalgia, and traumatic brain injury. Sleep disorders such as ongoing insomnia, obstructive sleep apnea, and narcolepsy exhibit fatigue as well.

In cancer patients, fatigue has emerged as one of the most prevalent, troubling, and undertreated of all symptoms. In addition, subjective reports of fatigue after activities in the elderly have been found to be a strong independent predictor of functional decline, disability, and death.

Finally, chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS) is an illness defined by medically unexplained fatigue of 6 months or more plus 4/8 secondary symptoms (e.g., post-exertional fatigue, muscle and joint pain symptoms, flu-like symptoms) and significant impairments in physical and role functioning. The fatigue in CFS is only partially alleviated by rest and is qualitatively different from ordinary tiredness. In addition, exercise that was easily tolerated before illness onset may worsen fatigue-related symptoms. Biomedical and behavioral factors have been found in CFS, but no definitive etiology or pathophysiology has been identified.

Drugs and Medication Side Effects

The use of alcohol, caffeine, or illegal drugs, such as cocaine or narcotics, especially with regular use or abuse may result in persistent fatigue. Fatigue may also be a side effect of certain medications, e.g., antihistamines, sleeping pills, and lithium salts; blood pressure medicines such as beta-blockers, which can induce exercise intolerance; and many cancer treatments, particularly chemotherapy and radiotherapy.

Treatment of Fatigue

Given the current limitations of medicine in treating fatigue, self-management is an essential clinical issue because sufferers have options ranging from doing nothing to actively seeking help. Early intervention (e.g., individuals with persistent fatigue of less than 12 months) is most likely to be beneficial. However, if the patient has already reached a stabilized level of persistent fatigue, more powerful interventions may be necessary to restart the self-management process.

Non-pharmacological treatment options include patient education about fatigue and its relation to stress and lifestyle. Diary-keeping to track activities, stressors, and sleep patterns and their relation to fatigue and energy are important first steps in designing a self-management program.

Self-management. Self-management techniques for unexplained persistent fatigue, CFS, and illness fatigue in general have shown efficacy in various combinations that include pacing of activities, low-level exercise, low-effort pleasant experiences, sleep improvement techniques, and cognitive coping skills to reduce both illness catastrophizing and over-focusing on symptoms. It should be noted that low-level exercise, typically walking or stretching, is initially prescribed as a stress reduction activity rather than a physical fitness program. Relaxation techniques are particularly helpful for affective distress linked to fatigue. In general, the goal of an effective self-management program is to learn to balance activity and rest in order to avoid the extremes of too little or too much activity. This approach to

self-management will lessen fatigue, but probably not eliminate it.

Medications. Medical practice includes corticosteroids as a short-term therapeutic option for relief of fatigue in palliative care. Given limited evidence, no specific drug can be recommended for the treatment of persistent fatigue, although amantadine in multiple sclerosis and methylphenidate in cancer patients have shown promise. Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, such as fluoxetine, paroxetine, or sertraline, may improve energy in some patients with comorbid depression. Modafinil, a wakefulness-promoting agent that is pharmacologically different from other stimulants, has not been adequately tested as a treatment for fatigue.

Alternative treatments. Regarding alternative treatments, acupuncture and several types of meditative practice show the most promise for future scientific investigation. Likewise, magnesium, l-carnitine, and S-adenosylmethionine are non-pharmacological supplements with potential in further research. Chinese medicinal herbs for persistent fatigue and CFS lack evidence from controlled studies.

Summary

Fatigue is a commonly experienced symptom that is associated with inactivity, overwork, affective distress, physical and psychiatric illnesses, and drug side effects. In contrast to normal tiredness, the persistent state of fatigue can impact physical and role functioning and quality of life. Medical treatment of fatigue is not well-established. By comparison, self-management of debilitating fatigue through behavioral interventions such as pacing, low-level exercise, and exposure to low-effort pleasant activities can lead to reduced fatigue, increased functioning, and improved quality of life.

Cross-References

- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- [Diabetes](#)
- [HIV Infection](#)
- [Sleep](#)

References and Readings

- DeLuca, J. (Ed.). (2005). *Fatigue as a window to the brain*. Cambridge, MA: Massachusetts Institute of Technology.
- Friedberg, F. (2010). Chronic fatigue syndrome, fibromyalgia, and related illnesses: A clinical model of assessment and intervention. *Journal of Clinical Psychology*, 66, 641–665.
- Olsen, K. (2007). A new way of thinking about fatigue: A reconceptualization. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 34(1), 93–99.
- Porter, N. S., Jason, L. A., Boulton, A., Bothne, N., & Coleman, B. (2010). Alternative medical interventions used in the treatment and management of myalgic encephalomyelitis/chronic fatigue syndrome and fibromyalgia. *Journal of Alternative & Complementary Medicine*, 16(3), 235–249.
- Schor, J. (1992). *The overworked American: The unexpected decline in leisure*. New York: Basic Books.
- Taylor, R., Fennell, P., & Jason, L. A. (Eds.). (2003). *Handbook of chronic fatigue syndrome*. New York: Wiley.

Fatty Acids, Free

Manjunath Harlapur¹ and Daichi Shimbo²

¹Center of Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Division of General Medicine, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

²Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Fatty acids-unesterified](#)

Definition

Free fatty acids are unesterified, long-chain carboxylic acids. After esterification, fatty acids are found in the complex molecules like triacylglycerols. Usually, low levels of free fatty acids are seen in all tissues, but the substantial increase in the plasma is seen during fasting state. Free fatty acids are transported by albumin. Free fatty acids are oxidized mainly in the liver and muscle cells to provide energy. Fatty acids are also

structural components of membrane lipids such as glycolipids and phospholipids. Fatty acids are also the precursor of prostaglandins. After esterification, fatty acids are stored as triacylglycerol in the adipose tissue, and this serves as a major reservoir of energy during fasting.

Fatty acids are called as “unsaturated” if they have at least one double bond in their chemical structure and “saturated” if they have none. Humans can only produce few unsaturated fatty acids in the body, and remaining fatty acids are obtained from the dietary intake, and these are called essential fatty acids. Two important essential fatty acids are linolenic and linoleic acids.

Omega numbering system is used for unsaturated fatty acids, and it depicts the position of double bond relative to the end of chain. Dietary intake of omega-3 fatty acids (e.g., linolenic acid) in the diet is associated with a reduced risk of cardiovascular disease events.

Cross-References

- [Coronary Artery Disease](#)
- [Lipid Metabolism](#)
- [Plasma Lipid](#)

References and Further Reading

Harvey, R. A., & Ferrier, D. R. (2008). *Chapter 16: Lippincott's illustrated reviews: Biochemistry* (Lippincott's illustrated reviews series) (4th ed., pp. 181–200). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Fatty Acids-Unesterified

- [Fatty Acids, Free](#)

Fear

- [Anxiety](#)

Fear and Fear Avoidance

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Definition

Fear is an unpleasant negative emotion usually rising due to or in association with a specific source or stimulus. Fear avoidance would take place by a behavior which reduces the probability of exposure to the fear-eliciting stimulus or situation. A negative reinforcement process takes place where the lack of elicited fear reinforces the behavior which reduced its probability – normally the avoidance. This is often seen, for example, in the context of chronic pain, where patients fear a situation that in the past increased their pain (e.g., going for a walk). Remaining at home and avoiding activity (disability) is negatively reinforced by the lack of further increases in pain from walking outside. This process could then increase the patient's disability levels. This process is at the core of the fear-avoidance model of pain (Leeuw et al. 2007; Vlaeyen and Linton 2000). Additional variables that are thought to play roles in this model include cognitive variables such as catastrophizing (severely negative appraisals about anticipated pain), psychophysiological (e.g., elevated muscle reactivity, high sympathetic arousal), and emotional (subsequent fear and anxiety). Numerous elements of the model have been validated. Indeed, one study found in a large sample of back pain patients that baseline fear avoidance predicted high rates of long-term sick leave (Boersma and Linton 2006). However, one review of nine prospective studies in low back pain patients found that fear and fear avoidance were not consistently predictive of pain. There was some evidence that such fears do play a role in predicting future pains when pain has become consistent (Pincus et al. 2006). It is possible that disability may be more influenced by fear avoidance than pain. Importantly, the clinical application of the fear-avoidance model was tested in a

small-scale study with chronic back pain patients. All patients received first in vivo exposure either to individualized fear-eliciting movements (to reduce fear avoidance) or to general graded physical activity or the reversed order. Only during in vivo exposure to fear-eliciting movements were there reductions in pain-related fears and in catastrophizing (Vlaeyen et al. 2002). This model could be applicable to other health contexts – patients may avoid attending oncology clinics where they receive chemotherapy which elicits nausea and vomiting, at the possibly grave price of not treating adequately their cancer. Fear and fear avoidance are also of much relevance to anxiety disorders. Thus, fear avoidance is a prevalent problem in medical settings, and its treatment could possibly result in improved health outcomes. Treating fear avoidance could be done by behavioral or cognitive-behavioral methods.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Anxiety Disorder](#)
- ▶ [Pain Management/Control](#)
- ▶ [Pain-Related Fear](#)

References and Further Readings

- Boersma, K., & Linton, S. J. (2006). Expectancy, fear and pain in the prediction of chronic pain and disability: A prospective analysis. *European Journal of Pain*, 10, 551–557.
- Leeuw, M., Goossens, M. E., Linton, S. J., Crombez, G., Boersma, K., & Vlaeyen, J. W. (2007). The fear-avoidance model of musculoskeletal pain: Current state of scientific evidence. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 30, 77–94.
- Pincus, T., Vogel, S., Burton, A. K., Santos, R., & Field, A. P. (2006). Fear avoidance and prognosis in back pain: A systematic review and synthesis of current evidence. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 54, 3999–4010.
- Vlaeyen, J. W. S., & Linton, S. J. (2000). Fear-avoidance and its consequences in chronic musculoskeletal pain: A state of the art. *Pain*, 85, 317–332.
- Vlaeyen, J. W., de Jong, J., Geilen, M., Heuts, P. H., & van Breukelen, G. (2002). The treatment of fear of movement/(re)injury in chronic low back pain: Further evidence on the effectiveness of exposure in vivo. *Clinical Journal of Pain*, 18, 251–261.

Fear of Death

- ▶ [Death Anxiety](#)

Fear of Hospitals

- ▶ [Hospital Anxiety](#)

Feasibility Study

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

A feasibility study is undertaken to determine whether there is a sufficiently high (acceptable) likelihood that a research study being considered can be successfully executed.

Description

When planning a large and complex research study (particularly an experimental study such as a randomized clinical trial of a behavioral intervention), it is wise to conduct a feasibility study once the study protocol has reached a relatively final stage of development. At that point, the researchers have a good idea of the number of subjects they will need to participate in the trial (the sample size) and many other methodological requirements. The question then becomes: Is there an acceptably high likelihood that it is actually feasible to conduct the trial? Phrased in another manner, the question is: Can the trial be executed as currently laid out in the protocol? A feasibility study is undertaken to answer this question. If the answer is “no,” the researchers can consider making changes to the protocol before its finalization

to improve the likelihood that the trial is capable of providing a meaningful answer to the research question being asked.

If the research team has done a previous (smaller) trial, they will have information on investigational sites used, principal investigators, and subject recruitment rates. This will help to answer the following questions:

- Where were the investigational sites used in the previous trial(s) located?
- How easy was it to recruit and retain the required number of subjects for the previous trial, and did ease of recruitment vary across geographic locations within the country? (For some large trials, where investigational sites were located in more than one country, and potentially more than one continent, the answer to this question becomes more complex.)
- How similar is the study design on this occasion? We know that the study size (size of the subject sample) is going to be larger, but are there any other factors that might impact subject recruitment and retention? Such possibilities include more extensive measurement schedules. In cases where more blood samples are to be taken, or more invasive assessment procedures are to be used (all of which information will be in the study's informed consent form), it is possible that the subject recruitment and retention rates could be impacted.

An additional way of collecting relevant feasibility information is to create a survey that is sent with the draft study protocol to behavioral medicine specialists at various clinical and medical centers, i.e., potential investigational sites, at which the trial may be conducted. Such a survey asks a series of questions targeted at understanding if the specialists would be able to recruit certain subjects into the trial, and the timeline by which enrollment will be completed.

When the research team receives back the completed surveys, they need to consider the feedback carefully. It is widely acknowledged

that physicians and clinicians interested in participating in clinical trials often inflate (unconsciously or consciously) the number of subjects they say they can recruit. They may also make overly ambitious statements about the suitability of their facilities and their abilities to operationally execute any particularly complicated aspects of the protocol. While such rose-tinted self-appraisals may initially make the physician's site look attractive for inclusion in the trial, subsequent site underperformance has a cascade of unfortunate consequences. Overall subject recruitment is negatively impacted, impacting completion of the trial. From the patients' perspective, this could mean that it takes a (much) longer period of time before a new intervention is available to them.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Informed Consent](#)
- ▶ [Recruitment of Research Participants](#)
- ▶ [Pilot Study](#)

Feeling

- ▶ [Affect](#)
- ▶ [Mood](#)

Feeling State

- ▶ [Affect](#)
- ▶ [Mood](#)

Feminine Role

- ▶ [Gender Role](#)

FHS

► [Framingham Heart Study](#)

Fibrinogen

Leah Rosenberg
Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Cardiovascular risk factors](#); [Dimeric glycoprotein](#); [Platelet plug](#)

Definition

Fibrinogen is a glycoprotein that plays a critical role in blood clotting and has been also identified as a novel risk factor for acute coronary syndromes and strokes. Fibrinogen is produced by the liver and upregulated in the setting of physiologic stress. It is used clinically in the identification of disseminated intravascular coagulopathy, a serious dysregulation of blood clotting as well as diagnosis of rare bleeding disorders such as congenital hypofibrinogenemia.

A key component in the clotting cascade, fibrinogen functions in creating the platelet plug that creates hemostasis in an injured vessel. Fibrinogen is converted to fibrin via thrombin, a serine protease. Fibrin then undergoes further protein-based cross-linkages to create the plug for the vessel wall. Glycoprotein IIb/IIIa is a receptor for fibrinogen found on platelets that functions in platelet aggregation. Glycoprotein IIb/IIIa is a target for several drugs used to avoid thrombosis in cardiovascular disorders (Maron et al. 2010).

Fibrinogen's relevance in behavioral medicine centers on its potential importance as a marker of the stress reaction. The relationship of fibrinogen

to other known inflammatory mediators such as IL-6 suggests a cascade of endogenous pro-coagulant proteins that may be associated with situations of psychosocial stress.

Cross-References

► [Coagulation of Blood](#)
► [Fibrinolysis](#)

References and Readings

- Gomella, L. G., & Haist, S. A. (2007). *Clinician's pocket reference. Fibrinogen* (11th ed.). London: McGraw Hill.
- Maron, D. J., Ridker, P. M., Grundy, S. M., & Pearson, T. A. (2010). Chapter 51. Preventive strategies for coronary heart disease (Chapter). In V. Fuster, R. A. O'Rourke, R. A. Walsh, P. Poole-Wilson, S. B. King, R. Roberts, I. S. Nash, E. N. Prystowsky, & Assoc (Eds.), *Hurst's the heart* (12th ed.).

Fibrinolysis

Leah Rosenberg
Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Definition

Fibrinolysis is the process of dissolving the protein known as fibrin, after an injured vessel has healed and no longer requires a plug to achieve hemostasis. It is a complex cascade of enzymatic processes tightly orchestrated by a shifting balance of bloodstream procoagulant and anticoagulant factors (Boyle and Jaffe 2010). Intravenous fibrinolytic agents have been utilized in the treatment of myocardial infarction. As an alternative to invasive procedures such as primary coronary interventions (PCI), medical approaches such as fibrinolysis are appropriate for certain patients who may not access to primary PCI.

Cross-References

► Coagulation of Blood

References and Readings

Boyle, A. J., & Jaffe, A. S. (2010). Acute myocardial infarction (chap. 5). In M. H. Crawford (Ed.), *Current diagnosis & treatment: Cardiology* (3rd ed.). New York: McGraw Hill Medical.

Fibromyalgia

Alexandre Morizio¹ and Simon L. Bacon^{2,3}

¹Department of Exercise Science, Concordia University, Montreal Behavioral Medicine Centre, Montreal, QC, Canada

²Department of Exercise Science, Concordia University and Montreal Behavioural Medicine Centre, CIUSSS-NIM: Hopital du Sacre-Coeur de Montreal, Montreal, QC, Canada

³Department of Health, Kinesiology, and Applied Physiology, Concordia University and Montreal Behavioural Medicine Centre, CIUSSS du Nord-de-l'île-de-Montréal, Montreal, QC, Canada

Synonyms

Fibromyalgia syndrome; Fibrositis

Definition

Fibromyalgia is a chronic rheumatoid disorder/syndrome characterized by widespread pain in the body. It affects 2–4% of the American population and is disproportionately higher in women compared to men (ratio 9:1). While it was once thought to be a psychosomatic problem (this belief was only recently dispelled), fibromyalgia is presently thought to be a condition associated with the body's central neuromodulators. The American College of Rheumatology classification

criteria for fibromyalgia (released in 1990) include a history of widespread pain in the body for at least three months and pain from digital palpation in 11 of 18 tender points.

Description

According to the 1990 American College of Rheumatology (ACR) classification criteria for fibromyalgia, a patient can be diagnosed with fibromyalgia if the patient has a history of widespread pain in the body as well as in the axial skeleton (neck or back) for at least three months and must have pain from digital palpation in 11 of 18 tender points, these points being located bilaterally at the suboccipital muscle attachments on the occiput, at the anterior aspects of intertransverse spaces between the C5 to C7 vertebrae, at the midpoint of the upper border of the trapezius muscle, at the supraspinatus muscle near the medial border of the spine of the scapula, at the level of the second rib at the costochondral junctions, slightly distal to the lateral epicondyles, in the upper outer quadrants of the buttocks, at the greater trochanters, and at the medial aspect of the knee at a level slightly proximal to the joint line. More recently (2010), the ACR proposed a new set of diagnostic criteria which require patients to fulfill the following three criteria: widespread pain index (WPI) ≥ 7 and symptom severity (SS) scale score ≥ 5 or WPI 3–6 and SS scale score ≥ 9 . Symptoms have been present at a similar level for at least 3 months, and the patient does not have a disorder that would otherwise explain the pain. However, it should be noted that these criteria have not yet been validated with independent samples.

One of the major problems in recognizing and categorizing fibromyalgia is that it presents in a similar fashion to other muscle pain disorders, fails to present specific features, and presently has no clinical diagnostic test. Pain in fibromyalgia is described as throbbing, stabbing, or burning and as such may be confused with arthritis; however, unlike arthritis, fibromyalgia does not have associated joint or inflammation damage. Fibromyalgia pain may also cause paresthesia and

mimic nerve root compression, despite no evident change in the peripheral nervous system. Further complicating the issue, patients with fibromyalgia also have normal results in blood tests and diagnostic imaging exams such as computed tomography (CT) scans, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and electromyography (EMG). Due to these difficulties, fibromyalgia has earned the nickname of the “invisible disability” of chronic pain syndromes.

The causes of fibromyalgia remain unknown, but it has been reported that the onset of fibromyalgia has a tendency to follow a physical or psychological traumatic event. Presently, central sensitization is considered one of the more likely causes for fibromyalgia and is supported by the demonstration of altered pain processing pathways via functional MRI (fMRI) and by the presence of allodynia (pain from usually nonpainful stimuli) in patients with fibromyalgia. Other models for the pathogenesis of fibromyalgia have also been developed; one such model suggests that fibromyalgia results from stress and abnormalities in the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis. Though the underlying pathophysiology remains to be outlined in great detail, research has generated some consistent findings. One such finding is the elevated level of the substance P neuromodulator in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) of patients with fibromyalgia. Substance P is known to participate in nociception and is thought to augment an individual's sensitivity to pain. In addition, research has shown that serotonin inhibits the release of substance P by afferent spinal cord neurons and that in patients with fibromyalgia, levels of serum serotonin and CSF serotonin metabolites were reduced.

In addition to widespread pain and allodynia, fibromyalgia often presents with a variety of other symptoms, the most common of these being chronic fatigue, nonrestorative sleep, or sleep disturbances, the latter of which is thought to be problematic and contributing to pain perception by preventing the secretion of growth hormone (which helps to fix muscular microtears) in the third and fourth stages of sleep. Fibromyalgia also frequently presents with irritable bowel syndrome, migraines, and decreased cognitive

functioning. For example, one study found that cognitive function in individuals with fibromyalgia was comparable to control participants who were 20 years older (Glass 2008). In addition, a large portion of patients with fibromyalgia have been found to have associated psychological conditions, such as anxiety or depression. It would seem that the combination of comorbid psychological issues and fibromyalgia worsen the pain perception in fibromyalgia.

While there is presently no cure for fibromyalgia, many treatments have been shown to be effective in the management of fibromyalgia-related pain, sleep disturbances, and psychological conditions. The US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved two drugs to date for the treatment of fibromyalgia, these being pregabalin and duloxetine (a serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor). In addition, many studies have shown that tricyclic antidepressants such as amitriptyline have been associated with improvements in a number of fibromyalgia-related outcome measures. In general, a multidisciplinary approach, which may include interventions such as patient education, cognitive-behavioral therapy, and exercise, is also indicated for the management of fibromyalgia.

Cross-References

► Pain

References and Readings

- Burkhardt, C., Goldenberg, D. L., Crofford, L. J., et al. (2005). *Guideline for the management of fibromyalgia syndrome pain in adults and children*. APS clinical practice guidelines series, No. 4, 2005.
- Dell, D. D. (2007). Getting the point about fibromyalgia. *Nursing*, 37(2), 61–64.
- Glass, J. M. (2008). Fibromyalgia and cognition. *The Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, 69(Suppl 2), 20–24.
- Goldenberg, D. L., Burkhardt, C., & Crofford, L. (2004). Management of fibromyalgia syndrome. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 292(19), 2388–2395.
- Häuser, W., Bernardy, K., Üçeyler, N., & Sommer, C. (2009). Treatment of fibromyalgia syndrome with antidepressants: A meta-analysis. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 301(2), 198–209.

- Lucas, H. J., Brauch, C. M., Settas, L., & Theoharides, T. C. (2006). Fibromyalgia—new concepts of pathogenesis and treatment. *International Journal of Immunopathology and Pharmacology*, 19(1), 5–10.
- Millea, P. J., & Holloway, R. L. (2000). Treating fibromyalgia. *American Family Physician*, 62(7), 1575–1582, 1587.
- Staud, R. (2007). Treatment of fibromyalgia and its symptoms. *Expert Opinion on Pharmacotherapy*, 8(11), 1629–1642.
- U.S. Food and Drug Administration. (2008). *Living with fibromyalgia, drugs approved to manage pain* (PDF Document). Retrieved from the FDA's Consumer Health Information Web site: <http://www.fda.gov/downloads/ForConsumers/ConsumerUpdates/ucm107805.pdf>. Accessed 16 Apr 2012.
- Wolfe, F., Clauw, D. J., Fitzcharles, M.-A., Goldenberg, D. L., Katz, R. S., Mease, P., & Yunus, M. B. (2010). The American college of rheumatology preliminary diagnostic criteria for fibromyalgia and measurement of symptom severity. *Arthritis Care and Research*, 62(5), 600–610.

Fibromyalgia Syndrome

- [Fibromyalgia](#)

Fibrositis

- [Fibromyalgia](#)

Fish Oil

- [Omega-3 Fatty Acids](#)

Fissure

- [Brain, Cortex](#)

Fitness Test

- [Maximal Exercise Stress Test](#)

Five-Factor Model of Personality

Michael S. Chmielewski¹ and Theresa A. Morgan²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Toronto, Toronto, ON, Canada

²Alpert Medical School of Brown University, Department of Psychiatry, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA

Synonyms

[Big five](#), [The](#)

Definition

The five-factor model (also referred to as “The Big Five”) is the most widely used and empirically supported model of normal personality traits. It consists of five main traits: Neuroticism, Extraversion, Openness (to experience), Agreeableness, and Conscientiousness.

Description

The five-factor model (FFM; Digman 1990), or the “Big Five” (Goldberg 1993), consists of five broad trait dimensions of personality. These traits represent stable individual differences (an individual may be high or low on a trait as compared to others) in the thoughts people have, the feelings they experience, and their behaviors. The FFM includes Neuroticism, Extraversion, Openness, Agreeableness, and Conscientiousness. Neuroticism is the tendency to experience negative emotions (e.g., sadness, anxiety, and anger) and to have negative thoughts (e.g., worry, self-doubt). In general, Neuroticism represents the predisposition to experience psychological distress. It has been linked to the negative affectivity/negative emotionality dimension from other trait models (Digman 1990; Goldberg 1993;

John et al. 2008; McCrae and Costa 2008). In contrast, Extraversion is the tendency to be sociable, energetic, assertive, lively, and to experience positive emotions (e.g., happiness), and have positive thoughts (e.g., optimism) (Digman 1990; Goldberg 1993; John et al. 2008; McCrae and Costa 2008). It has been linked to the positive affectivity component of other trait models. Although it was originally thought that Neuroticism and Extraversion were strongly related, they are actually quite independent from one another.

Openness consists of intellectual curiosity, creativity, aesthetic sensitivity, and having non-dogmatic attitudes (Digman 1990; Goldberg 1993; John et al. 2008; McCrae and Costa 2008). Agreeableness can be defined as how well one gets along with others. It includes being prosocial, altruistic, trusting, warm, and sympathetic (Digman 1990; Goldberg 1993; John et al.; McCrae and Costa 2008). Finally, conscientiousness encompasses being responsible, dependable, disciplined, and organized. In addition, Conscientiousness represents a disciplined striving after goals and a strict adherence to principles (John et al.).

The five factors of the FFM were independently discovered by several different researchers; all utilizing slightly different methods (see Digman 1990). The FFM was initially identified in structural investigations of the human language in the mid-1900s. In the mid-1980s, McCrae and Costa (2008) documented that the FFM could be found in psychologically developed self-report questionnaires as well. Moreover, they documented that the FFM subsumed the vast majority of competing personality trait models (McCrae and Costa 2008). Since that time, the FFM has become most widely utilized and empirically supported model of personality (John et al. 2008; McCrae and Costa 2008). The FFM is often referred to as “universal” model of personality as it replicates across gender, language, and culture (McCrae and Costa 2008; John et al.). In addition, there is substantial self-other agreement on all five of the FFM traits (John et al.; McCrae and Costa 2008). Furthermore, FFM traits are moderately heritable, with heritability estimates of approximately 50% for each of the five traits (McCrae and

Costa 2008). Moreover, the traits of the FFM have been linked to childhood temperament.

The FFM demonstrates impressive stability over time even across intervals of several years and that stability increases as individuals grow older (McCrae and Costa 2008; Roberts and DelVecchio 2000). However, the FFM is less stable over longer periods of time (e.g., 20 years vs. 3 years), indicating that people can and do change on their trait levels, given sufficient time and motivation (Roberts and DelVecchio 2000). This suggests that environmental factors, life experiences, and gene by environment interactions can and do play a role in the development of FFM traits, although there remains disagreement on this point (McCrae and Costa 2008; Roberts and DelVecchio 2000). Women consistently report higher Neuroticism and Agreeableness, and men often report higher Extraversion and Conscientiousness (McCrae and Costa 2008). There is also evidence of a maturation effect: on average, levels of Agreeableness and Conscientiousness typically increase with age, whereas Neuroticism and Openness tend to decrease.

Taken together, research consistently underscores the import of the FFM for such life outcomes as (but not limited to) relationship quality, adaptation to life, psychopathology, functional impairment, occupational success, happiness, health, and even mortality (McCrae and Costa 2008). At high levels, Neuroticism has been linked to negative life outcomes including most psychological disorders, medical illness, and negative social experiences (e.g., interpersonal conflict and other life stressors). In general, high Extraversion is a protective factor against many negative life outcomes (e.g., psychological disorders). High Openness has been linked to political liberalism and intelligence. Finally, high Agreeableness is linked with having more positive social experiences with friends, family, and colleagues.

Cross-References

► [Personality](#)

References and Readings

- Digman, J. M. (1990). Personality structure: Emergence of the five-factor model. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 41, 417–440.
- Goldberg, L. R. (1993). The structure of phenotypic personality traits. *American Psychologist*, 48, 26–34.
- John, O. P., Naumann, L. P., & Soto, C. J. (2008). Paradigm shift to the integrative big-five trait taxonomy: History, measurement, and conceptual issues. In O. P. John, R. W. Robins, & L. A. Pervin (Eds.), *Handbook of personality: Theory and research* (pp. 114–158). New York: Guilford Press.
- McCrae, R. R., & Costa, P. T., Jr. (2008). Empirical and theoretical status of the five-factor model of personality traits. In G. J. Boyle, G. Matthews, & D. H. Saklofske (Eds.), *The SAGE handbook of personality theory and assessment* (Personality theories and models) (Vol. 1, pp. 273–294). Thousand Oaks: Sage.
- Roberts, B. W., & DelVecchio, W. F. (2000). The rank-order consistency of personality traits from childhood to old age: A quantitative review of longitudinal studies. *Psychological Bulletin*, 126, 2–25.

Flight-or-Fight Response

- [Neuroendocrine Activation](#)

Flourishing

- [Perceived Benefits](#)

Fluid Pill

- [Diuretic](#)

Fluoxetine

- [Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors \(SSRIs\)](#)

Fluvoxamine

- [Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors \(SSRIs\)](#)

FMLA

- [Family and Medical Leave Act](#)

Focus Groups

Amber Daigre
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami
Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Group interview](#)

Definition

Focus groups are group interviews that facilitate focused communication among research participants and generate qualitative data about specific populations. Focus groups range in size from very small (e.g., four people) to as many as 12 participants in a larger group (Krueger 1988). Whatever the size, groups should be small enough so that all members can share insight, while still remaining large enough to facilitate diverse ideas. Groups should also be composed of people who are not familiar with each other.

Focus groups have several uses, which include gathering information for questionnaire development, assessing community needs, testing new programs, and discovering customer preferences. These types of groups are also widely used to examine people's experiences and concerns with health services. Focus groups may be exploratory to generate ideas, or they can be used to pilot test new materials and interventions.

Focus groups are helpful to researchers wishing to understand the population with whom

research will be conducted. For example, the group format allows researchers to observe different forms of communication (e.g., anecdotes, jokes) that are used in the population of interest. Other forms of data collection (e.g., questionnaire self-report) are not well suited to measure these subtleties of communication.

Within behavioral medicine research, focus groups have been used extensively. Data have been gathered regarding quality of life, psychosocial issues, health beliefs, and preferences for various types of interventions among diverse patient populations. Focus groups have been especially useful in gaining understanding of these issues within minority populations. By looking within minority groups, researchers can gather information about shared experiences as well as important within-group differences (Kitzinger 1995). A number of focus groups are generally conducted until the point of saturation is reached, i.e., the point when there are no longer new ideas being generated. Data generated from focus groups is analyzed qualitatively to identify themes, and this is typically done with the use of qualitative data analysis programs.

In addition to the benefits of focus group research, there are several limitations that researchers should be aware of. At times, the group setting may inhibit some members from participating and sharing their opinions. Additionally, participant confidentiality is compromised by the presence of other research subjects (Kitzinger 1995). However, these concerns may be mitigated by the skill of the focus group facilitator.

References and Readings

- Kitzinger, J. (1995). Introducing focus groups. *British Medical Journal*, 311, 299–302.
- Krueger, R. A. (1988). *Focus groups: A practical guide for applied research*. Newbury Park: Sage.

Folk Health Beliefs

► Cultural Factors

Folk Theories

► Lay Beliefs

Follow-Up Study

Lynda H. Powell, Brittney Lange-Maia and Imke Janssen

Department of Preventive Medicine, Rush University Medical Center, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Cohort study](#); [Incidence study](#); [Longitudinal study](#); [Prospective study](#)

Definition

A follow-up study, more commonly called a cohort study, has three basic components: exposure, time, and outcome. A group of individuals (the cohort) is assembled and then assessed at baseline on the *exposure* of interest (a risk or protective factor), other risk factors known to influence the outcome of interest (i.e., potential confounders), and the prevalence of the outcome of interest. Subjects who have the outcome (a disease) are excluded, and those remaining are followed over *time* to determine the development of the *outcome*. Incidence of the outcome is then compared in those with and without the exposure, controlling for extraneous confounders.

Description

Follow-up studies have various names derived from either study group (cohort studies), the timing of observation (follow-up, prospective or longitudinal studies), or the disease outcome (incidence studies). They begin with the assembly of a cohort which is any group of individuals ranging from the very diverse (e.g., a general

population) to a defined geographical area (e.g., Framingham), a defined occupation (e.g., nurses), a defined high-risk subgroup (e.g., homosexual men), or a group defined by logistical ease of follow-up (e.g., health insurance beneficiaries).

Exposure. In contrast to RCTs, exposure to the putative causal agent is not under the researcher's control but simply based upon history. Therefore, the exposure (i.e., risk/protective factor) could simply be correlated with a true risk factor and result in the problem of confounding. A confounder is a third variable that is correlated with both the exposure and outcome and is not part of the causal path. For example, education could confound the relationship between depression and heart disease because it is correlated both with depression and with heart disease and is not part of the causal path by which depression links to heart disease. Thus, an observed relationship between depression and heart disease could actually be a true relationship between education and heart disease. To guard against confounding, baseline assessment should not only include the exposure of interest but also potential demographic, medical, occupational, psychosocial, and lifestyle confounding factors. Since exposure status can change over time, many follow-up studies feature repeated assessment of exposure status and confounders beyond baseline. These updated changes are handled in various ways in statistical analyses.

Time. One criterion for making causal claims is temporality; that is, the risk/protective factor precedes the disease. The strength of these studies is that they permit an inference about this temporal relationship. Any prevalent cases are excluded from the cohort, and subjects without disease are assessed for exposure and then followed over time until disease occurs, they are lost or withdraw, or the study ends. Since exposure assessment predated occurrence of disease, it is possible to argue that the exposure predated the outcome. For example, to make the inference that depression predicts heart disease, depression is assessed in people without heart disease, and then new heart disease events are related to the disease-free depression assessment. It is crucial to maximize complete follow-up of the original cohort. Losses

and withdrawals should not exceed 10%, or the true incidence of the outcome in the cohort will be underrepresented. Comparisons of baseline characteristics between those who were lost/withdrew and those who completed determine whether missingness was random or nonrandom. If missingness was nonrandom, comparisons of risk in exposed vs. unexposed may be biased (over- or underestimated) (Little and Rubin 2019). For example, if more depressed than non-depressed subjects withdraw, any increase in events in the depressed will be weakened, and the study could underestimate the importance of depression as a risk factor for the outcome.

Outcome. Outcomes can include diseases, pre-clinical diseases, risk factors, or other health-related events. Periodic follow-ups of the cohort permit a rigorous assessment of the incidence of the outcome. This assessment must be conducted by individuals who are blinded to the exposure assessment to prevent bias. Incidence of the outcome is then calculated separately for those who do and do not have the exposure of interest. Some studies assess continuous outcomes such as biomarkers. The outcome of interest plays a major factor in determining the time needed in a follow-up study. The time period should be long enough for a sufficient number of events to occur. For example, if a study is examining cancer incidence after exposure to a toxic chemical, following participants for only 6 months would likely be inadequate for assessing incidence.

Statistical Analyses. The (average) incidence rate of a disease equals the number of new cases during the interval divided by the total amount of time at risk for the disease accumulated by the entire population over the same interval. To compare the incidence of disease between two groups (exposed and not exposed), data are usually summarized in a 2×2 table and compared with a χ^2 -test. The *relative risk* is the ratio of the proportion of exposed who develop the disease and the proportion among the unexposed developing it. The *odds ratio* (OR) is similarly defined as the ratio of the odds of developing the disease. If either the disease is rare or the time interval is short, the relative risk is approximately equal to the odds ratio. This odds ratio, transformed by natural

logarithm, is the outcome in *logistic regression* models. *Confidence intervals* for these log-odds can be derived and then transformed back to the original scale to yield confidence intervals for the odds. Potential covariates, such as demographic, medical, occupational, and psychosocial confounding factors, are added as a linear function in *multivariable analysis*.

With long time intervals, there may be substantial variation in risk over time (i.e., the risk increases with time, or the risk may be greatest early in follow-up). In addition to the incidence at the end of the study, in *time-to-event analysis*, the hazard function (or its integral, the survival function) is reported. Under the assumption of *proportional hazards*, i.e., that the hazard rates in the exposed and the unexposed groups are the same over time, the hazard can be modeled as a function of covariates (*Cox regression model*). Extensions have been introduced to allow for *time-varying covariates*.

Continuous outcomes use growth curve models. Inclusion of covariates is possible in all generalized linear models (Hedeker and Gibbons 2006). Missing data in follow-up studies can cause serious problems. The usual assumption for statistical models is that data are missing at random, though this is often not the case. If that is not true, i.e., if sicker patients are more likely to drop out of the study than not so sick people, the missing process can be modeled separately and incorporated into the analysis. In some cases multiple imputation, or assigning potential values in place of missing data, can be used to estimate potential effects (Little and Rubin 2019).

In summary, the key strength of follow-up studies is their ability to establish the timing and directionality of exposure and outcome events. Bias in ascertainment of exposure is impossible because neither subject nor observer is aware of future outcome status. Bias in ascertainment of outcome is minimized if outcomes assessors are kept blinded. These studies are more difficult and costly than a cross-sectional study, but the gain in inferential strength and minimization of bias is worth the effort.

The key weakness of these studies is the difficulty in making causal claims since temporality

does not imply causality. The problem of confounding can never be solved completely for there will always be unknown, and thus unmeasured, confounders that could be the true causal agent. The art of these studies is in a careful review of the literature to determine predictors of the outcome, with a particular eye to those predictors that are also related to the exposure, and in insuring that this full array of predictors is included in baseline assessment. A common problem in the use of convenience follow-up studies (e.g., the Framingham Study, the Nurse's Health Study) is that they often do not have all potential covariates of interest in their assessment batteries.

Although these studies cannot make conclusive claims for a causal relationship between and exposure and outcome, their ability to disentangle temporality can strengthen the chain of evidence by which causal claims can be made. They provide valuable support, or nonsupport, for justifying a rigorous RCT which is the strongest basis for claiming that an exposure causes a disease.

To increase the quality of the reporting of observational studies, several prominent medical researchers issued the Strengthening the Reporting of Observational Studies in Epidemiology (STROBE) statement (von Elm et al. 2008).

Cross-References

- Cohort Study
- Health Promotion and Disease Prevention
- Kuopio Ischemic Heart Disease Risk Factor Study
- Mini-Finland Health Survey
- Secondary Prevention Programs

References and Further Reading

- Gordis, L. (2009). *Epidemiology* (4th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Hedeker, D. R., & Gibbons, R. D. (2006). *Longitudinal data analysis*. Hoboken: Wiley.
- Little, R. J., & Rubin, D. B. (2019). *Statistical analysis with missing data* (3rd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley.
- Szklo, M., & Nieto, F. J. (2014). *Epidemiology: Beyond the basics*. Sudbury: Jones & Bartlett Publishers.

von Elm, E., Altman, D. G., Egger, M., Pocock, S. J., Gøtzsche, P. C., Vandenbroucke, J. P., & STROBE Initiative. (2008). The strengthening the reporting of observational studies in epidemiology (STROBE) statement: Guidelines for reporting observational studies. *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 61(4), 344–349. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jclinepi.2007.11.008>.

Food Control

► Food Safety

Food Pyramid

► Healthy Eating

Food Safety

Tereza Killianova
Free University of Brussels (VUB), Jette,
Belgium

Synonyms

Food control

Definition

Food safety refers to all efforts done to monitor and overcome temporary or long-lasting hazards that may make food have adverse effect to the health of the consumer. Food hazards include microbiological hazards, pesticide residues, misuse of food additives, chemical contaminants, including biological toxins, adulteration, as well as genetically modified organisms, allergens, veterinary drug residues, and growth-promoting hormones used in the production of animals. The food hazards can be present along the entire food chain; therefore, it is important that all sectors in the chain operate in an integrated way, and food

control systems address all stages of this chain to guarantee food safety. This monitoring from primary producer through consumer is often described as the farm-to-table continuum. However, it is difficult and expensive to test for food hazards and quality loss at each point in the food chain. Especially in many developing countries, the resources are limited, food control laboratories are frequently poorly equipped, there is no suitably trained analytical staff, and the management is poor. This leads to an inadequate food control infrastructure. Therefore a well-structured, preventive approach which controls processes is the preferred method for improving food safety and quality. Factors, such as improper agricultural practices, poor hygiene at all stages of the food chain, lack of preventive controls in food processing and preparation operations, misuse of chemicals, contaminated raw materials, ingredients and water, inadequate or improper storage, which contribute to potential hazards in foods, should be taken into account (Food and Agriculture Organization/World Health Organization [FAO/WHO] 2003).

Food safety is an increasingly important public health issue, both in developing and industrialized countries. The emergence of food-borne illnesses is influenced by factors such as large genetic variability of microorganisms, environmental factors, human actions, and behavior (e.g., traveling), urbanization, raw food production, new technologies, human risk factors such as age, illness, and others (Hall 1997).

The food-borne illnesses, when focusing on the microbiological hazards, are caused by bacterial agents (e.g., *Salmonella* or *E. coli*), viral agents, or parasites. The microbiological safety of food is a dynamic situation influenced to a great extent by multiple factors contributing to changing trends in food-borne illnesses. Examples of these factors are rapid population growth, an increasingly global market in vegetables, fruit, meat, and ethnic foods, and changing eating habits, such as the consumption of raw or lightly cooked food, climate change, and others. However, the list of factors influencing the prevalence of food-borne diseases is long and their relative importance is largely unknown (Newell et al.

2010). From a behavior medicine perspective, one may examine, for example, how certain psychological traits such as risk-taking or low conscientiousness affect the prevalence of food hazards in a food-producing company, of importance for prevention.

Cross-References

- Health Behaviors
- Preventive Care

References and Readings

- Food and Agriculture Organization/World Health Organization. (2003). *Assuring food safety and quality: Guidelines for strengthening national food control systems* (FAO Food and Nutrition Paper 76). Rome: Author. Retrieved 12 July 2011 from <http://www.fao.org/docrep/006/Y8705E/Y8705E00.HTM>.
- Hall, L. (1997). Foodborne illness: Implications for the future. *Emerging Infectious Diseases*, 3(4), 555–559.
- Newell, D. G., et al. (2010). Food-borne diseases: The challenges of 20 years ago still persist while new ones continue to emerge. *International Journal of Food Microbiology*, 139, S3–S15.

Food Supplement

- Nutritional Supplements

Forgiveness

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

Forgiveness refers to the purposeful decision by a victim of wrongdoing to relinquish anger and the desire to punish an offender responsible for inflicting harm (e.g., Enright and The Human

Development Study Group 1991). Forgiveness may go beyond mere indifference, to express goodwill toward the offender. This concept is commonly pertinent to daily social interactions, and it constitutes a basic social process which maintains interactions and relationships despite conflict. Various scales exist for assessing forgiveness. For example, the Heartland Forgiveness Scale (Thompson et al. 2005) is an 18-item scale assessing forgiveness of oneself, others, and situations. These three subscales demonstrate the importance of this concept to one's personal and interpersonal lives. Investigators have examined the psychosocial correlates or determinants of forgiveness. For example, perceptions of severity of the offense, the intentions of the offender, sincerity of apology, and empathy have been investigated as factors possibly affecting forgiveness (Kearns and Fincham 2004). In the context of traumatic events, difficulty forgiving others is significantly correlated with depression and post-traumatic stress symptoms (Witvliet et al. 2004), implicating a possible relationship and resemblance with the term "rumination." Interventions aimed at inducing forgiveness have resulted in reduced anxiety, depression, and anger in various populations (reviewed by Kearns and Fincham 2004). In a groundbreaking experimental study, van Oyen et al. (2001) asked people to either imagine a real person who they held grudges toward or they had an empathic perspective and imagined themselves forgiving. Compared to baseline levels, the forgiving group evidenced significantly lower psychological (aversive emotions) and physiological (heart rate, skin conductance, etc.) changes, while the first group evidenced worsening of those psychophysiological responses. Finally, a recent prospective study on 1024 elderly Americans found that unforgiveness as a trait predicted declines in self-reported physical health, which was mediated by positive psychological variables including life satisfaction and self-esteem (Seawell et al. 2014). These studies together point at forgiveness as an important variable in social interactions, which has short- and possibly long-term health implications, since forgiveness can be in question for very long periods of time in people's lives.

Cross-References

- [Anger Management](#)
- [Interpersonal Relationships](#)

References and Further Readings

- Enright, R., & The Human Development Study Group. (1991). The moral development of forgiveness. In W. Kurtines & J. Gewirtz (Eds.), *Handbook of moral behavior and development* (pp. 123–152). Hillsdale: Erlbaum.
- Kearns, J. N., & Fincham, F. D. (2004). A prototype analysis of forgiveness. *Personality and Social Psychology Bulletin*, 30, 838–855.
- Seawell, A. H., Toussaint, L. L., & Cheadle, A. C. (2014). Prospective associations between unforgiveness and physical health and positive mediating mechanisms in a nationally representative sample of older adults. *Psychology and Health*, 29, 375–389.
- Thompson, L. Y., Snyder, C. R., Hoffman, L., Michael, S. T., Rasmussen, H. N., Billings, L. S., Heinze, L., Neufeld, J. E., Shorey, H. S., Roberts, J. C., & Roberts, D. E. (2005). Dispositional forgiveness of self, others, and situations. *Journal of Personality*, 73, 313–359.
- vanOyen, W. C., Ludwig, T. E., & Vander Laan, K. L. (2001). Granting forgiveness or harboring grudges: Implications for emotion, physiology, and health. *Psychological Science*, 12, 117–123.
- Witvliet, C. V., Phipps, K. A., Feldman, M. E., & Beckham, J. C. (2004). Posttraumatic mental and physical health correlates of forgiveness and religious coping in military veterans. *Journal of Traumatic Stress*, 17, 269–273.

Former Smokers

- [Ex-Smokers](#)

FOS

- [Framingham Offspring Study](#)

Frailty Assessment

- [Activities of Daily Living \(ADL\)](#)

Framingham Heart Study

Andrew J. Wawrzyniak
Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral
Sciences, University of Miami Miller School of
Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[FHS](#)

Definition

The Framingham Heart Study is a longitudinal cohort study that began in 1948 with 5209 participants to examine how lifestyle choices and psychosocial elements impact cardiovascular health. It helped coin the term “risk factors” in identifying clusters of variables, such as poor diet, lack of physical activity, and negative psychological factors that contribute to cardiovascular disease.

Description

In 1948, the Framingham Heart Study ventured to better understand cardiovascular disease (CVD) in that little was known about the etiology of heart disease and stroke despite their epidemic prevalence resulting from steadily increasing rates since the 1900s. A joint project of the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI) and Boston University, the Framingham Heart Study sought to longitudinally track a large cohort of participants who initially had not experienced a heart attack or stroke nor had any outward CVD symptoms. Initially, 5209 participants aged 30–62 were recruited from Framingham, Massachusetts; this was one of the first studies to administer extensive physical exams accompanied by lifestyle interviews over multiple assessments. Participants have returned for assessments every 2 years since the study’s inception.

The Framingham Heart Study helped mainstream the concept of preventive medicine in the

context of stopping CVD before it starts by promoting health behaviors beneficial to future cardiovascular health. Framingham helped dispel past theories of CVD progression that were heavily reliant on diastolic blood pressure (Kannel 1995a, b). Importantly, the Framingham Heart Study established the concept of clusters of risk factors rather than one single factor detrimental to CVD (Kannel 2000); hence, the study is the origin of the term “risk factor.”

The Framingham Heart Study has been instrumental in identifying now commonly known primary risk factors of CVD such as increased blood pressure, cholesterol, smoking, obesity, diabetes, and lack of physical activity over long-term follow-up observations (Kannel et al. 1996). Additionally, the study also acknowledged secondary risk factors of CVD such as blood triglycerides and HDL cholesterol along with demographic factors such as age and gender (Kannel and Eaker 1986); more recently, increased plasma homocysteine has been identified as a risk factor for CVD (Sundström and Vasan 2005). Additional findings from the Framingham cohort continue to emerge such as arterial stiffness and brachial flow-mediated dilation as risk factors for new-onset atrial fibrillation (Shaikh et al. 2016).

Importantly, the Framingham Heart Study's work has published research that specifically gives weights to individual risk factors as predictors of CVD progression through regression models. Risk of CVD can be calculated based on variables such as age, gender, blood pressure, smoking status, parental CVD history, blood markers such as cholesterol and triglycerides, and BMI. Collectively, this equation has been termed the Framingham Risk Score that estimates the 10-year risk of CVD. In addition to calculating the risk of general CVD, additional Framingham Risk Scores have been generated to predict the risk of specific cardiovascular diseases including atrial fibrillation, congestive heart failure, coronary heart disease, diabetes, hypertension, intermittent claudication, and stroke; calculators and outcome-specific algorithms can be accessed at <http://www.framinghamheartstudy.org/risk-functions/index.php>. Data from the Framingham Heart Study has been pooled with data from other cohort studies to generate algorithms to

calculate the risk of other CVD outcomes such as the 10-year and lifetime risks of atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (Goff et al. 2014); calculators have been made publicly available through smartphone apps.

The Framingham Heart Study helped establish diabetes mellitus type 2 as a risk factor for CVD (Fox 2010; Kengne et al. 2010). In that type 2 diabetes is primarily due to lifestyle choices, this finding helped shape health psychology in addressing prevention of diabetes through weight control and diet.

Specific to behavioral medicine, the Framingham Heart Study has reported increased incidence of CVD in those with greater negative psychosocial factors, such as greater depression, anxiety, perceived stress, anger, hostility, and social isolation. Importantly, the Framingham Heart Study's psychosocial findings adjusted for covariates; in other words, links between psychosocial factors and CVD outcomes were independent of the common risk factors of CVD worsening attributable to demographics and lifestyle. Notably, the Framingham Heart Study was one of the first studies to help define type A personality. Type A behavior is generally defined by high levels of daily stress, emotional lability, tension, anger, and ambitiousness (Haynes et al. 1978b). Framingham established one of the early links between type A personality and CHD prevalence in women and higher incidence of myocardial infarction (MI) in men (Haynes et al. 1978a) after controlling for age, blood pressure, smoking status, and cholesterol. Examining longitudinal outcomes with respect to psychosocial factors, 20-year incidence of MI or coronary death in 749 females free of initial coronary disease was predicted by greater tension, anxiety, and loneliness after controlling for age, systolic blood pressure, total/HDL cholesterol ratio, diabetic status, smoking status, and BMI (Eaker et al. 1992). While these psychosocial factors alone did not necessarily account for a majority of the variance in the CVD health outcomes in deference to lifestyle factors such as health behaviors, psychosocial factors have been shown to be an effective complementary treatment target for supplementing lifestyle changes and medication regimens.

Among the other studies that have stemmed from the original study, the Framingham Heart Study has expanded to examine the children and grandchildren of the initial cohort using the same techniques of longitudinally assessing health and lifestyle; this study is aptly named the Framingham Offspring Study. Recent work on the Framingham Heart Study include examination of genetic factors in CVD outcomes using participants' cell lines (Govindaraju et al. 2008), finding genetic links to heart rate variability (Nolte et al. 2017), increased blood pressure (Wain et al. 2017), and atrial fibrillation (Consortium et al. 2017); mitochondrial variants have been associated with differences in vascular functioning (Fetterman et al. 2017). Data from the Framingham Heart Study can be accessed by researchers through the study's website (<http://www.framinghamheartstudy.org>); the study also accepts research proposals from investigators interested in these rich epidemiologic data.

Cross-References

- Acute Myocardial Infarction
- Aging
- Alcohol Consumption
- Anxiety and Heart Disease
- Atherosclerosis
- Atrial Fibrillation
- Biomarkers
- Body Fat
- Body Mass Index
- Carbohydrates
- Cardiac Events
- Cardiovascular Disease
- Cardiovascular Risk Factors
- Cholesterol
- Community Sample
- Congestive Heart Failure
- Coronary Heart Disease
- Demographics
- Diabetes
- Diastolic Blood Pressure (DBP)
- Eating Behavior
- Endothelial Function
- Epidemiology
- Fasting Glucose
- Fasting Insulin
- Fat, Dietary Intake
- Fibrinogen
- Framingham Offspring Study
- Gender Differences
- Gene Expression
- Genetics
- Ghrelin
- Glucose: Levels, Control, Intolerance, and Metabolism
- Health Behaviors
- Health Psychology
- Healthy Eating
- Heart Disease and Emotions: Anger, Anxiety, Depression
- Heart Disease and Stress
- Heart Disease and Type A Behavior
- Homocysteine
- Hostility
- Hostility, Cynical
- Hyperlipidemia
- Hypertension
- Inflammation
- Inheritance, Genetic
- Insulin Resistance (IR) Syndrome
- Intima-Media Thickness (IMT)
- Leptin
- Lifestyle
- Lipoprotein
- Low Glycemic Index
- Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)
- Marriage and Health
- Metabolic Syndrome
- Multiethnic Cohort Study
- Multiple Risk Factors
- National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute
- Nutrition
- Obesity
- Overweight
- Perceived Stress
- Peripheral Arterial Disease (PAD)/Vascular Disease
- Personality

- ▶ Psychosocial Factors
- ▶ Psychosocial Predictors
- ▶ Psychosocial Variables
- ▶ Risk Factors and Their Management
- ▶ Smoking Behavior
- ▶ Social Support
- ▶ Socioeconomic Status (SES)
- ▶ Stress
- ▶ Stressor
- ▶ Stroke Burden
- ▶ Systolic Blood Pressure (SBP)
- ▶ Trait Anger
- ▶ Trait Anxiety
- ▶ Triglyceride
- ▶ Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus
- ▶ Type A Behavior
- ▶ Vasoconstriction
- ▶ Vasodilation, Vasodilatory Functions
- ▶ Work-Related Stress

References and Further Reading

- Christophersen, I. E., Rienstra, M., Roselli, C., Yin, X., Geelhoed, B., Barnard, J., et al. (2017). Large-scale analyses of common and rare variants identify 12 new loci associated with atrial fibrillation. *Nature Genetics*, 49(6), 946–952. <https://doi.org/10.1038/ng.3843>.
- Eaker, E. D., Pinsky, J., & Castelli, W. P. (1992). Myocardial infarction and coronary death among women: Psychosocial predictors from a 20-year follow-up of women in the Framingham Study. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 135(8), 854–864.
- Fetterman, J. L., Liu, C., Mitchell, G. F., Ramachandran, V. S., Benjamin, E. J., Vita, J. A., et al. (2017). Relations of mitochondrial genetic variants to measures of vascular function. *Mitochondrion*, 40, 51–57. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mito.2017.10.001>.
- Fox, C. S. (2010). Cardiovascular disease risk factors, type 2 diabetes mellitus, and the Framingham Heart Study. *Trends in Cardiovascular Medicine*, 20(3), 90–95.
- Framingham Risk Functions. (2016). Framingham: Framingham Heart Study. Retrieved August 2, 2016, from <http://www.framinghamheartstudy.org/risk-functions/index.php>
- Goff, D. C., Jr., Lloyd-Jones, D. M., Bennett, G., Coady, S., D'Agostino, R. B., Gibbons, R., et al. (2014). ACC/AHA guideline on the assessment of cardiovascular risk: A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation*, 129(25 Suppl 2), S49–S73.
- Govindaraju, D. R., Cupples, L. A., Kannel, W. B., O'Donnell, C. J., Atwood, L. D., D'Agostino, R. B., Sr., et al. (2008). Genetics of the Framingham Heart Study population. *Advances in Genetics*, 62, 33–65.
- Haynes, S. G., Feinleib, M., Levine, S., Scotch, N., & Kannel, W. B. (1978a). The relationship of psychosocial factors to coronary heart disease in the Framingham Study II. Prevalence of coronary heart disease. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 107(5), 384–402.
- Haynes, S. G., Levine, S., Scotch, N., Feinleib, M., & Kannel, W. B. (1978b). The relationship of psychosocial factors to coronary heart disease in the Framingham Study I. Methods and risk factors. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 107(5), 362–383.
- Kannel, W. B. (1995a). Framingham Study insights into hypertensive risk of cardiovascular disease. *Hypertension Research*, 18(3), 181–196.
- Kannel, W. B. (1995b). Clinical misconceptions dispelled by epidemiological research. *Circulation*, 92(11), 3350–3360.
- Kannel, W. B. (2000). Fifty years of Framingham Study contributions to understanding hypertension. *Journal of Human Hypertension*, 14(2), 83–90.
- Kannel, W. B., & Eaker, E. D. (1986). Psychosocial and other features of coronary heart disease: Insights from the Framingham Study. *American Heart Journal*, 112(5), 1066–1073.
- Kannel, W. B., D'Agostino, R. B., & Cobb, J. L. (1996). Effect of weight on cardiovascular disease. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 63(3 Suppl), 419S–422S.
- Kengne, A. P., Turnbull, F., & MacMahon, S. (2010). The Framingham Study, diabetes mellitus and cardiovascular disease: Turning back the clock. *Progress in Cardiovascular Diseases*, 53(1), 45–51.
- Nolte, I. M., Munoz, M. L., Tragante, V., Amare, A. T., Jansen, R., Vaez, A., et al. (2017). Genetic loci associated with heart rate variability and their effects on cardiac disease risk. *Nature Communications*, 8, 15808. <https://doi.org/10.1038/ncomms15805>.
- Shaikh, A. Y., Wang, N., Yin, X., Larson, M. G., Vasan, R. S., Hamburg, N. M., et al. (2016). Relations of arterial stiffness and brachial flow-mediated dilation with new-onset atrial fibrillation: The Framingham Heart Study. *Hypertension*, 68(3), 590–596.
- Sundström, J., & Vasan, R. S. (2005). Homocysteine and heart failure: A review of investigations from the Framingham Heart Study. *Clinical Chemistry and Laboratory Medicine*, 43(10), 987–992.
- Wain, L. V., Vaez, A., Jansen, R., Joehanes, R., van der Most, P. J., Erzurumluoglu, A. M., et al. (2017). Novel blood pressure locus and gene discovery using genome-wide association study and expression data sets from blood and the kidney. *Hypertension*. <https://doi.org/10.1161/HYPERTENSIONAHA.117.09438>.

Framingham Offspring Study

Andrew J. Wawrzyniak

Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral
Sciences, University of Miami Miller School of
Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

FOS

Definition

In 1971, the Framingham Offspring Study recruited 5124 of the original Framingham Heart Study's participants' children and their spouses; this new generation were similarly assessed biennially on physiological and psychological measure. The Framingham Offspring Study sought to epidemiologically study CVD in younger adults (Feinleib et al. 1975).

The Framingham Offspring Study included more physiological variables than its parent study, such as dietary measures, physical activity, neuropsychological measures to assess cognition and reading performance, and brain volume via MRI. The introduction of cognitive function measures lead to the finding that cardiovascular risk factors and the presence of CVD mediated the association between left ventricular mass and cognition (Elias et al. 2007). More recently, later-life memory impairments were found to be associated with cardiovascular risk factors in healthy middle-aged adults (Gupta et al. 2015), lower physical activity has been associated with a higher risk for dementia (Tan et al. 2016), and descending thoracic aortic plaque has been found to be related to brain atrophy and white matter hyperintensities as indicators of accelerated brain aging and cognitive decline (Aparicio et al. 2017).

Additional blood marker risk factors of CVD were identified; one of the first reports on high-density lipoprotein (HDL) and low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol levels in relation to CVD was from the Framingham Offspring Study

(Wilson et al. 1980). Other risk factors identified as increasing CVD risk included increased adiponectin (Ai et al. 2011), lipoproteins, and serum albumin and bilirubin. Greater levels of extracellular matrix turnover, specifically matrix metalloproteinase (MMP)-9 and tissue inhibitors of MMPs (TIMPs), were associated with greater internal carotid artery stenosis (Romero et al. 2008). Higher von Willebrand factor (vWF) was found to be a risk factor for CVD in participants with type 2 diabetes (Frankel et al. 2008). The American Heart Association's Cardiovascular Health Score created from this study still has predictive validity over 20 years of tracking these patients' data (Enserro et al. 2018); trajectories of blood lipid concentrations over 35 years are still predictive of atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease and mortality risk (Duncan et al. 2019).

Socioeconomic factors were also recorded. Researchers found that education impacted cardiovascular health over time: mean systolic blood pressure over 30 years was higher in participants with less than 12 years of education compared to those with more than 17 years of education (Loucks et al. 2011). Additionally, life course socioeconomic status influenced type 2 diabetic status in women and was primarily associated with participants' education levels and occupations (Smith et al. 2011). Recently, ambient air pollution has been linked to circulating biomarkers of endothelial cell activation markers in this cohort (Li et al. 2019).

Heritability analyses have produced numerous findings on genetic links to CVD. Notably, parental hypertension has been found to be related to arterial stiffness in nonhypertensive offspring (Andersson et al. 2016). Heritability of cardiometabolic risk factors, including BMI, plasma lipid levels, fasting glucose levels, and blood pressure, has been linked to circulating mRNA and miRNA expression levels (McManus et al. 2017); numerous genes related to severe familial hypercholesterolemia have been identified (Khera et al. 2016).

From a health psychology perspective, the Framingham Offspring Study helped establish guidelines for healthy eating behavior by suggesting an increase in whole grain food consumption and a

decrease in dietary glycemic index to reduce the risk of metabolic syndrome and insulin resistance (McKeown et al. 2002, 2004).

Psychosocially, anger and hostility were predictive of atrial fibrillation development over a 10-year follow-up in males (Eaker et al. 2004); trait anger related to total mortality in men. More recently, type 2 diabetes risk has been found to be associated with obesity and diabetes in social contacts (Raghavan et al. 2016). The Framingham Offspring Study has expanded the knowledge of the mechanisms of CVD progression through repeated assessments of extensive physiological, behavioral, and psychological factors. Research in progress employs mHealth and physiological monitoring via smartwatches to record data (McManus et al. 2019).

Cross-References

- ▶ Acute Myocardial Infarction
- ▶ Aging
- ▶ Alcohol Consumption
- ▶ Anxiety and Heart Disease
- ▶ Atherosclerosis
- ▶ Atrial Fibrillation
- ▶ Biomarkers
- ▶ Body Fat
- ▶ Body Mass Index
- ▶ Brain, Imaging
- ▶ Carbohydrates
- ▶ Cardiac Events
- ▶ Cardiovascular Disease
- ▶ Cardiovascular Risk Factors
- ▶ Cholesterol
- ▶ Cognitive Function
- ▶ Community Sample
- ▶ Congestive Heart Failure
- ▶ Coronary Heart Disease
- ▶ Demographics
- ▶ Diabetes
- ▶ Diastolic Blood Pressure (DBP)
- ▶ Eating Behavior
- ▶ Endothelial Function
- ▶ Epidemiology
- ▶ Fasting Glucose
- ▶ Fasting Insulin
- ▶ Fat, Dietary Intake
- ▶ Fibrinogen
- ▶ Framingham Heart Study
- ▶ Gender Differences
- ▶ Gene Expression
- ▶ Genetics
- ▶ Ghrelin
- ▶ Glucose: Levels, Control, Intolerance, and Metabolism
- ▶ Health Behaviors
- ▶ Health Psychology
- ▶ Healthy Eating
- ▶ Heart Disease and Stress
- ▶ Heart Disease and Type A Behavior
- ▶ Homocysteine
- ▶ Hostility
- ▶ Hostility, Cynical
- ▶ Hyperlipidemia
- ▶ Hypertension
- ▶ Inflammation
- ▶ Inheritance, Genetic
- ▶ Insulin Resistance (IR) Syndrome
- ▶ Intima-Media Thickness (IMT)
- ▶ Leptin
- ▶ Lifestyle
- ▶ Lipoprotein
- ▶ Low Glycemic Index
- ▶ Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)
- ▶ Marriage and Health
- ▶ Metabolic Syndrome
- ▶ Multiethnic Cohort Study
- ▶ Multiple Risk Factors
- ▶ National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute
- ▶ Nutrition
- ▶ Obesity
- ▶ Overweight
- ▶ Perceived Stress
- ▶ Peripheral Arterial Disease (PAD)/Vascular Disease
- ▶ Personality
- ▶ Psychosocial Factors
- ▶ Psychosocial Predictors
- ▶ Psychosocial Variables
- ▶ Risk Factors and Their Management
- ▶ Smoking Behavior
- ▶ Social Support
- ▶ Socioeconomic Status (SES)
- ▶ Stress

- ▶ Stressor
- ▶ Stroke Burden
- ▶ Systolic Blood Pressure (SBP)
- ▶ Trait Anger
- ▶ Trait Anxiety
- ▶ Triglyceride
- ▶ Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus
- ▶ Type A Behavior
- ▶ Vasoconstriction
- ▶ Vasodilation, Vasodilatory Functions
- ▶ Work-Related Stress

References and Further Reading

- Ai, M., Otokozawa, S., Asztalos, B. F., White, C. C., Cupples, L. A., Nakajima, K., et al. (2011). Adiponectin: An independent risk factor for coronary heart disease in men in the Framingham Offspring Study. *Atherosclerosis*, 217(2), 543–548.
- Andersson, C., Quiroz, R., Enserro, D., Larson, M. G., Hamburg, N. M., Vita, J. A., et al. (2016). Association of parental hypertension with arterial stiffness in non-hypertensive offspring: The Framingham Heart Study. *Hypertension*, 68(3), 584–589.
- Aparicio, H. J., Petrea, R. E., Massaro, J. M., Manning, W. J., Oyama-Manabe, N., Beiser, A. S., et al. (2017). Association of descending thoracic aortic plaque with brain atrophy and white matter hyperintensities: The Framingham Heart Study. *Atherosclerosis*, 265, 305–311. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.atherosclerosis.2017.06.919>.
- Duncan, M. S., Vasan, R. S., & Xanthakis, V. (2019). Trajectories of blood lipid concentrations over the adult life course and risk of cardiovascular disease and all-cause mortality: Observations from the Framingham Study over 35 years. *Journal of the American Heart Association*, 8(11), e011433. <https://doi.org/10.1161/jaha.118.011433>.
- Eaker, E. D., Sullivan, L. M., Kelly-Hayes, M., D'Agostino, R. B., Sr., & Benjamin, E. J. (2004). Anger and hostility predict the development of atrial fibrillation in men in the Framingham Offspring Study. *Circulation*, 109(10), 1267–1271.
- Elias, M. F., Sullivan, L. M., Elias, P. K., D'Agostino, R. B., Sr., Wolf, P. A., Seshadri, S., et al. (2007). Left ventricular mass, blood pressure, and lowered cognitive performance in the Framingham Offspring. *Hypertension*, 49(3), 439–445.
- Enserro, D. M., Vasan, R. S., & Xanthakis, V. (2018). Twenty-year trends in the American Heart Association Cardiovascular Health Score and impact on subclinical and clinical cardiovascular disease: The Framingham Offspring Study. *Journal of the American Heart Association*, 7(11), e008741. <https://doi.org/10.1161/JAHA.118.008741>.
- Feinleib, M., Kannel, W. B., Garrison, R. J., McNamara, P. M., & Castelli, W. P. (1975). The Framingham Offspring Study. Design and preliminary data. *Preventive Medicine*, 4(4), 518–525.
- Frankel, D. S., Meigs, J. B., Massaro, J. M., Wilson, P. W., O'Donnell, C. J., D'Agostino, R. B., et al. (2008). Von Willebrand factor, type 2 diabetes mellitus, and risk of cardiovascular disease: The Framingham Offspring Study. *Circulation*, 118(24), 2533–2539.
- Gupta, A., Preis, S. R., Beiser, A., Devine, S., Hanke, L., Seshadri, S., et al. (2015). Mid-life cardiovascular risk impacts memory function: The Framingham Offspring Study. *Alzheimer Disease and Associated Disorders*, 29(2), 117–123.
- Khera, A. V., Won, H. H., Peloso, G. M., Lawson, K. S., Bartz, T. M., Deng, X., et al. (2016). Diagnostic yield and clinical utility of sequencing familial hypercholesterolemia genes in patients with severe hypercholesterolemia. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 67(22), 2578–2589. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2016.03.520>.
- Li, W., Dorans, K. S., Wilker, E. H., Rice, M. B., Ljungman, P. L., Schwartz, J. D., et al. (2019). Short-term exposure to ambient air pollution and circulating biomarkers of endothelial cell activation: The Framingham Heart Study. *Environmental Research*, 171, 36–43. <https://doi.org/10.1161/ATVBAHA.117.309799>.
- Loucks, E. B., Abrahamowicz, M., Xiao, Y., & Lynch, J. W. (2011). Associations of education with 30 year life course blood pressure trajectories: Framingham Offspring Study. *BMC Public Health*, 11, 139.
- McKeown, N. M., Meigs, J. B., Liu, S., Wilson, P. W., & Jacques, P. F. (2002). Whole-grain intake is favorably associated with metabolic risk factors for type 2 diabetes and cardiovascular disease in the Framingham Offspring Study. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 76(2), 390–398.
- McKeown, N. M., Meigs, J. B., Liu, S., Saltzman, E., Wilson, P. W., & Jacques, P. F. (2004). Carbohydrate nutrition, insulin resistance, and the prevalence of the metabolic syndrome in the Framingham Offspring Cohort. *Diabetes Care*, 27(2), 538–546.
- McManus, D. D., Rong, J., Huan, T., Lacey, S., Tanriverdi, K., Munson, P. J., et al. (2017). Messenger RNA and microRNA transcriptomic signatures of cardiometabolic risk factors. *BMC Genomics*, 18(1), 139. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12864-017-3533-9>.
- McManus, D. D., Trinquart, L., Benjamin, E. J., Manders, E. S., Fusco, K., Jung, L. S., et al. (2019). Design and preliminary findings from a new electronic cohort embedded in the Framingham Heart Study. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 21(3), e12143. <https://doi.org/10.2196/12143>.
- Raghavan, S., Pachucki, M. C., Chang, Y., Porneala, B., Fox, C. S., Dupuis, J., et al. (2016). Incident type 2 diabetes risk is influenced by obesity and diabetes in social contacts: A social network analysis. *Journal of General Internal Medicine*, 31(10), 1127–1133. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11606-016-3723-1>.

- Romero, J. R., Vasan, R. S., Beiser, A. S., Polak, J. F., Benjamin, E. J., Wolf, P. A., et al. (2008). Association of carotid artery atherosclerosis with circulating biomarkers of extracellular matrix remodeling: The Framingham Offspring Study. *Journal of Stroke and Cerebrovascular Diseases*, 17(6), 412–417.
- Smith, B. T., Lynch, J. W., Fox, C. S., Harper, S., Abrahamowicz, M., Almeida, N. D., et al. (2011). Life-course socioeconomic position and type 2 diabetes mellitus: The Framingham Offspring Study. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 173(4), 438–447.
- Tan, Z. S., Spartano, N. L., Beiser, A. S., DeCarli, C., Auerbach, S. H., Vasan, R. S., et al. (2016). Physical activity, brain volume, and dementia risk: The Framingham Study. *The Journals of Gerontology: Series A, Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*, 72(6), 789–795. <https://doi.org/10.1093/gerona/glw130>.
- Wilson, P. W., Garrison, R. J., Castelli, W. P., Feinleib, M., McNamara, P. M., & Kannel, W. B. (1980). Prevalence of coronary heart disease in the Framingham Offspring Study: Role of lipoprotein cholesterol. *The American Journal of Cardiology*, 46(4), 649–654.

Fraternal Twins

► Dizygotic Twins

Free-Radical Theory of Aging

Carrie Brintz

Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Coral Gables, FL, USA

Definition

The free-radical theory of aging was formally proposed by Denham Harman in 1956 and postulates that the inborn process of aging is caused by cumulative oxidative damage to cells by free radicals produced during aerobic respiration. Free radicals are atoms or molecules with single unpaired electrons. They are unstable and highly reactive, as they attack nearby molecules in order to steal their electrons and gain stability, causing radical chain reactions to occur. Free radicals are

generated in vivo primarily within mitochondria during mitochondrial electron transport as well as by other physiological processes. Harman later extended the free-radical theory of aging to incorporate the role of mitochondria in the generation of free radicals and other reactive oxygen species. The theory proposes that the rate of oxidative damage to mitochondrial DNA primarily determines life span.

While free-radical reactions are implicated in the normal aging process, free-radical damage may occur in varying patterns across individuals, modulated by genetic and environmental factors, and in some individuals may be implicated in a number of disorders. These so-called free-radical diseases include cancer, atherosclerosis, Alzheimer's disease, essential hypertension, the immune deficiency of age, and a number of other disorders. The process of aging by free-radical damage may be slowed by a calorie-restricted diet that includes essential nutrients and antioxidants derived from dietary fruits and vegetables. It is theorized that the prevention or slowing of certain “free-radical” diseases such as cancer may be achieved through dietary intervention with antioxidant supplementation, although evidence supporting this hypothesis in humans is mixed.

Cross-References

► Aging

References and Readings

- Beckman, K. B., & Ames, B. N. (1998). The free radical theory of aging matures. *Physiological Reviews*, 78, 547–581.
- Harman, D. (1956). Aging: A theory based on free radical and radiation chemistry. *Journal of Gerontology*, 2, 298–300.
- Harman, D. (1984). Free radical theory of aging: the “free radical” diseases. *Age*, 7, 111–131.
- Shringarpure, R., & Davies, K. J. A. (2009). Free radicals and oxidative stress in aging. In V. L. Bengtson, D. Gans, N. M. Putney, & M. Silverstein (Eds.), *Handbook of theories of aging* (pp. 229–243). New York: Springer Publishing Company.

Frequency Analysis

- [Quantitative EEG Including the Five Common Bandwidths \(Delta, Theta, Alpha, Sigma, and Beta\)](#)

Frontal

- [Brain, Cortex](#)

Full Term Newborn

- [Birth Weight](#)

Functional Capacity Evaluation

Douglas P. Gross¹ and Michiel F. Reneman²

¹Department of Physical Therapy, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

²Department of Rehabilitation Medicine, University of Groningen, University Medical Center Groningen, Groningen, The Netherlands

Definition

Functional capacity evaluations (FCEs) are performance-based assessments designed to determine current capacity to perform activities while considering the individual's body structures and functions, environmental and personal factors, and health status (Soer et al. 2008a). FCEs are used in occupational, insurance, and rehabilitation medicine to inform determinations of work readiness. Various FCE protocols are used and may differ in purpose, but typically the evaluations play a role in facilitating work reintegration. FCEs involve medical and work history, questionnaires, physical examination, and a series of

assessment items including manual handling (lifting and carrying), position tolerance testing, and mobility and coordination tests. To make return-to-work decisions, clinicians compare demonstrated capacity to required job demands. A patient whose capacity meets or exceeds job demands is deemed suitable for sustainable performance of those tasks at the workplace. If job demands exceed capacity, clinicians identify the reason for this and, if modifiable, suggest interventions to overcome deficits.

Description

Context and Uses of Functional Capacity Evaluation

FCEs are frequently relied on for assessing readiness for “safe” return to work, particularly for workers’ compensation and other insurance systems. Rehabilitation professionals developed the initial FCEs in an attempt to optimize work ability and assess such capacities in individuals with chronic health conditions. Controversy exists over just what items and activities should be measured, resulting in numerous testing methods and procedures. A variety of proprietary FCE protocols are available from various providers and have been reviewed in detail elsewhere (Genovese and Galper 2009). The goal of FCE testing is to directly measure capacity for specific activities, often in relation to the required physical demands of a particular activity. FCEs are also used to establish baseline performance levels to assist in planning work rehabilitation programs, to measure program outcomes, and to guide retraining programs or vocational planning following a disabling health condition or given a chronic health condition. Another suggested application is in assisting in permanent impairment judgments and determination of wage-earning potential in medicolegal cases.

Scientific Basis of Functional Capacity Evaluation

Due to the decisions made based on FCE results and the implications arising from such decisions,

important FCE measurement properties for appropriate, ethical use include adequate reliability, test consistency, validity, and responsiveness to change in status over time (Edelaar et al. 2017). The reliability and validity of FCE has been examined in individuals with a variety of health conditions and in healthy workers (Gouttebarger et al. 2004). Reliability of therapists' judgments of safe, maximum work levels has been found to be good and some research indicates that FCE does in fact measure work-related functional capacity (Gross and Battie 2003; Lakke et al. 2013; Reneman et al. 2004). However, performance on FCE does not appear to be entirely "physical" as previously supposed. Participant performance on FCEs is not only determined by physiological capacity but also appears to be influenced by pain intensity, beliefs about disability, self-efficacy or confidence in abilities, and testing context, among other factors (Gross and Battie 2005; Asante et al. 2007; Reneman et al. 2006; Gross 2006; van Abbema et al. 2011; Lakke et al. 2015). More importantly, assessment results are modestly predictive of future return to work (Gross et al. 2004; Streibelt et al. 2009; Gouttebarger et al. 2009; Kuijer et al. 2012) and do not accurately predict whether patients will sustain a recurrent episode after returning to work (Mahmud et al. 2010). Responsiveness of FCE for detecting change over time also appears inadequate (Durand et al. 2008; Kuijer et al. 2006).

Performance-based FCEs have typically been considered more "objective" than other forms of assessment such as questionnaires. However, FCE testing can be time-consuming, require specialized equipment, and be as expensive as advanced diagnostic imaging. Testing is often strenuous; it is frequently associated with increased pain reports (Soer et al. 2008b). Because of this, some research has compared FCE to work assessments that don't require strenuous physical activity such as interviews or questionnaires. It appears that caution should be used when conducting FCE as a baseline assessment prior to rehabilitation as on average FCE does not lead to superior return to work outcomes and may delay clinical recovery from pain (Gross et al. 2014a,b). However, FCE

remains an integral component of occupational rehabilitation, and there are circumstances where performance-based testing is the optimal clinical option (Wind et al. 2006).

Based on findings of modest FCE predictive ability, body region-specific short-form FCE protocols have been developed and tested to reduce test burden and the likelihood of pain exacerbation (Gross et al. 2006). In a randomized controlled trial, return-to-work outcomes were similar regardless of whether patients underwent testing with the short-form or full-length protocol (Gross et al. 2007). Patient satisfaction with the assessment process was similar between groups. The short-form FCE was also found to modestly enhance prediction of future return to work (Branton et al. 2010). Other methods of abbreviated FCE have been recommended and hold promise for cost-effective assessment (Gouttebarger et al. 2010; Soer et al. 2014; van Ittersum et al. 2009).

FCE Performance as an Indicator of Effort

FCE has been used to judge effort or whether performance is being self-limited by the worker, sometimes referred to as "sincerity of effort" (Lechner et al. 1998). However, the validity of the various tests of sincerity of effort has either not been thoroughly evaluated or found deficient (Genovese and Galper 2009; Jay et al. 2000; Shechtman 2001). More importantly, the reason why individual patients do not perform to maximum physical levels is typically unknown and should, therefore, not a priori be considered insincere. Submaximal physical FCE performance appears to be related more to factors such as pain intensity, depression, or self-rated disability, than to physical limitations (Gibson and Strong 1998; Schapmire et al. 2010). In fact, given the important influence of psychological and environmental factors on performance during such testing, some authors have recommended that FCEs be viewed not merely as maximum physical ability tests but as behavioral assessments that must be interpreted within each patients' unique personal and environmental context (Rudy et al. 1996; Gross 2004).

Summary

FCEs are commonly used to identify work capacity of individuals with health disorders and to inform decisions about safety for return to work. Research has supported FCEs as reliable measures of work-related functional ability, providing modest information for predicting return to work. However, on average they may not provide superior outcomes to nonperformance-based assessments. At present, in individual cases, the choice of optimal means of assessment, given personal and environmental characteristics, is unknown. Additionally, short-form FCE protocols appear as effective as longer protocols, with reduced test burden and enhanced predictive ability. Given the important influence of psychological and other contextual factors on performance during FCE, these tests may be more accurately viewed as behavioral assessments rather than evaluations of maximum physical ability. Accordingly, FCE results must be interpreted within each patient's unique personal and environmental context when return to work or related decisions are being made.

References and Further Readings

- Asante, A. K., Brintnell, E. S., & Gross, D. P. (2007). Functional self-efficacy beliefs influence functional capacity evaluation. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation, 17*, 73–82.
- Branton, E. N., Arnold, K. M., Appelt, S. R., Hodges, M. M., Battie, M. C., & Gross, D. P. (2010). A short-form functional capacity evaluation predicts time to recovery but not sustained return-to-work. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation, 20*, 387–93.
- Durand, M. J., Brassard, B., Hong, Q. N., Lemaire, J., & Loisel, P. (2008). Responsiveness of the physical work performance evaluation, a functional capacity evaluation, in patients with low back pain. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation, 18*, 58–67.
- Edelaar, M. J., Gross, D. P., James, C. L., & Reneman, M. F. (2017). Functional Capacity Evaluation Research: Report from the third international functional capacity evaluation research meeting. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*.
- Genovese, E., & Galper, J. S. (2009). *American Medical Association. Guide to the evaluation of functional ability : How to request, interpret, and apply functional capacity evaluations*. Chicago: American Medical Association.
- Gibson, L., & Strong, J. (1998). Assessment of psychosocial factors in functional capacity evaluation of clients with chronic back pain. *British Journal of Occupational Therapy, 61*, 399–404.
- Gouttebauge, V., Wind, H., Kuijjer, P. P., & Frings-Dresen, M. H. (2004). Reliability and validity of functional capacity evaluation methods: A systematic review with reference to Blankenship system, Ergos work simulator, Ergo-Kit and Isernhagen work system. *International Archives of Occupational and Environmental Health, 77*, 527–537.
- Gouttebauge, V., Kuijjer, P. P., Wind, H., van Duivenbooden, C., Sluiter, J. K., & Frings-Dresen, M. H. (2009). Criterion-related validity of functional capacity evaluation lifting tests on future work disability risk and return to work in the construction industry. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine, 66*, 657–663.
- Gouttebauge, V., Wind, H., Kuijjer, P. P., Sluiter, J. K., & Frings-Dresen, M. H. (2010). How to assess physical work-ability with Functional Capacity Evaluation methods in a more specific and efficient way? *Work, 37*, 111–115.
- Gross, D. P. (2004). Measurement properties of performance-based assessment of functional capacity. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation, 14*, 165–174.
- Gross, D. P. (2006). Are functional capacity evaluations affected by the patient's pain? *Current Pain and Headache Reports, 10*, 107–113.
- Gross, D. P., & Battie, M. C. (2003). Construct validity of a kinesio-physical functional capacity evaluation administered within a worker's compensation environment. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation, 13*, 287–295.
- Gross, D. P., & Battie, M. C. (2005). Factors influencing results of functional capacity evaluations in workers' compensation claimants with low back pain. *Physical Therapy, 85*, 315–322.
- Gross, D. P., Battie, M. C., & Cassidy, J. D. (2004). The prognostic value of functional capacity evaluation in patients with chronic low back pain: part 1: timely return to work. *Spine (Phila Pa 1976), 29*, 914–919.
- Gross, D. P., Battie, M. C., & Asante, A. (2006). Development and validation of a short-form functional capacity evaluation for use in claimants with low back disorders. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation, 16*, 53–62.
- Gross, D. P., Battie, M. C., & Asante, A. K. (2007). Evaluation of a short-form functional capacity evaluation: less may be best. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation, 17*, 422–435.
- Gross, D. P., Asante, A. K., Miciak, M., et al. (2014a). Are performance-based functional assessments superior to semistructured interviews for enhancing return-to-work outcomes? *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation, 95*, 807–815. e1.
- Gross, D. P., Asante, A. K., Miciak, M., et al. (2014b). A cluster randomized clinical trial comparing functional capacity evaluation and functional interviewing as components of occupational rehabilitation programs. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation, 24*, 617–630.

- Jay, M. A., Lamb, J. M., Watson, R. L., et al. (2000). Sensitivity and specificity of the indicators of sincere effort of the EPIC lift capacity test on a previously injured population. *Spine*, 25, 1405–1412.
- Kuijer, W., Brouwer, S., & Reneman, M. F. (2006). Determining responsiveness of FCEs, mission impossible? *The Clinical Journal of Pain*, 22, 664–665.
- Kuijer, P. P., Gouttebarger, V., Brouwer, S., Reneman, M. F., & Frings-Dresen, M. H. (2012). Are performance-based measures predictive of work participation in patients with musculoskeletal disorders? A systematic review. *International Archives of Occupational and Environmental Health*, 85, 109–123.
- Lakke, S. E., Soer, R., Geertzen, J. H., et al. (2013). Construct validity of functional capacity tests in healthy workers. *BMC Musculoskeletal Disorders*, 14, 180.
- Lakke, S. E., Soer, R., Krijnen, W. P., van der Schans, C. P., Reneman, M. F., & Geertzen, J. H. (2015). Influence of physical therapists' kinesiophobic beliefs on lifting capacity in healthy adults. *Physical Therapy*, 95, 1224–1233.
- Lechner, D. E., Bradbury, S. F., & Bradley, L. A. (1998). Detecting sincerity of effort: a summary of methods and approaches. *Physical Therapy*, 78, 867–888.
- Mahmud, N., Schonstein, E., Schaafsma, F., et al. (2010). Functional capacity evaluations for the prevention of occupational re-injuries in injured workers. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 7, CD007290.
- Reneman, M. F., Brouwer, S., Meinema, A., Dijkstra, P. U., Geertzen, J. H., & Groothoff, J. W. (2004). Test-retest reliability of the Isernhagen work systems functional capacity evaluation in healthy adults. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 14, 295–305.
- Reneman, M. F., Kool, J., Oesch, P., Geertzen, J. H., Battie, M. C., & Gross, D. P. (2006). Material handling performance of patients with chronic low back pain during functional capacity evaluation: A comparison between three countries. *Disability and Rehabilitation*, 28, 1143–1149.
- Rudy, T. E., Dieber, S. J., & Boston, J. R. (1996). Functional capacity assessment: Influence of behavioural and environmental factors. *Journal of Back and Musculoskeletal Rehabilitation*, 6, 277–288.
- Schapmire, D. W., St James, J. D., Feeler, L., & Kleinkort, J. (2010). Simultaneous bilateral hand strength testing in a client population, part I: diagnostic, observational and subjective complaint correlates to consistency of effort. *Work*, 37, 309–320.
- Shechtman, O. (2001). The coefficient of variation as a measure of sincerity of effort of grip strength, Part II: sensitivity and specificity. *Journal of Hand Therapy*, 14, 188–194.
- Soer, R., van der Schans, C. P., Groothoff, J. W., Geertzen, J. H., & Reneman, M. F. (2008a). Towards consensus in operational definitions in functional capacity evaluation: a Delphi Survey. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 18, 389–400.
- Soer, R., Groothoff, J. W., Geertzen, J. H., van der Schans, C. P., Reesink, D. D., & Reneman, M. F. (2008b). Pain response of healthy workers following a functional capacity evaluation and implications for clinical interpretation. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 18, 290–298.
- Soer, R., Hollak, N., Deijs, M., van der Woude, L. H., & Reneman, M. F. (2014). Matching physical work demands with functional capacity in healthy workers: can it be more efficient? *Applied Ergonomics*, 45, 1116–1122.
- Streibelt, M., Blume, C., Thren, K., Reneman, M. F., & Mueller-Fahnow, W. (2009). Value of functional capacity evaluation information in a clinical setting for predicting return to work. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, 90, 429–434.
- van Abbema, R., Lakke, S. E., Reneman, M. F., et al. (2011). Factors associated with functional capacity test results in patients with non-specific chronic low back pain: A systematic review. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 21, 455–73.
- van Ittersum, M. W., Bieleman, H. J., Reneman, M. F., Oosterveld, F. G., Groothoff, J. W., & van der Schans, C. P. (2009). Functional capacity evaluation in subjects with early osteoarthritis of hip and/or knee; is two-day testing needed? *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 19, 238–244.
- Wind, H., Gouttebarger, V., Kuijer, P. P., Sluiter, J. K., & Frings-Dresen, M. H. (2006). The utility of functional capacity evaluation: the opinion of physicians and other experts in the field of return to work and disability claims. *International Archives of Occupational and Environmental Health*, 79, 528–534.

Functional Capacity, Disability, and Status

M. Di Katie Sebastiano

Kinesiology, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Synonyms

Functional testing

Definition

Functional capacity refers to one's ability to perform the activities and tasks necessary to live independently. These tasks change throughout

the life span; children, adults, and the elderly each have their own unique set of activities necessary to maintain their independence. Age, however, is not the only factor that can determine functional capacity or status: specific disease or injury states each bring their own physical limitations. The interactions among age and injury or disease state determine one's functional capacity.

Description

There are two types of tasks that are usually evaluated to determine functional capacity: activities of daily living (ADL) and instrumental activities of daily living (IADL). ADL refer to activities that are involved in basic human survival such as mobility, eating, using the washroom, dressing, and grooming (Besdine 1988). The inability to perform these tasks severely inhibits one's ability to live independently and maintain health. IADL tend to refer to activities that are necessary to live independently, but disabilities in these areas do not result in serious health implications. IADL can include housekeeping, cooking, shopping, banking, driving, or using public transportation (Besdine 1988). A functional disability or impairment is defined as the decreased ability to meet one's own needs in either or both of these areas.

Through the life span, the tasks that determine one's functional capacity change to fit the requirements of daily life. As children, activities such as participation in family life and chores, learning at school, and the ability to participate in extracurricular activities can be considered an assessment of functional capacity along with the basic ADL and IADL. In adulthood, functional capacity often describes the ability to perform work-related tasks. Following injury, assessment of functional capacity commonly determines a person's ability to return to the work force or the injured person's ability to participate in modified duties. In elderly populations, functional capacity generally refers to an individual's ability to meet their own survival needs, which can be determined using ADL and IADL assessments.

Since functional capacity is specific to an individual's ability to perform a given task, there is a

broad spectrum of tools that are available for functional assessment. The original assessments of functional capacity examined hip fracture patients during their rehabilitation. Patients were classified as either independent or dependent based on six daily activities of daily living including bathing, dressing, using the washroom, transferring in and out of beds or chairs, continence, and eating (Katz et al. 1963). The current assessment of functional capacity or functional disability in the elderly often occurs through large-scale interdisciplinary assessment of ADL and IADL such as the Geriatric Functional Assessment (GFA) (Besdine 1988). Functional capacity can also be assessed through cardiovascular fitness tests, frequently used in populations with compromised aerobic function, such as cardiac patients (Clini and Crisafulli 2009). These tests may use maximal oxygen consumption measurements or $\text{VO}_{2\text{max}}$ assessments, commonly performed on the bike or treadmill. Indirect measures of exercise capacity can also be used to predict $\text{VO}_{2\text{max}}$ such as the 6-min walk test, which estimates maximal oxygen consumption without the use of expensive equipment (Rostangno and Gensini 2008). In the workplace, job-specific functional assessments can also be used to determine if an individual is capable of performing work-related tasks.

The ability to improve functional disability is dependent on the cause of the functional impairment. Following functional disability resulting from injury or a specific disease, rehabilitation may aid an individual to return to his/her functional capacity from prediagnosis. If functional disability results from disabling chronic illness or simply through aging, it may not be possible for the individual to regain his/her ability to live independently. However, for aged individuals or those with disabling chronic disease, rehabilitation may allow individuals to maintain certain aspects of independence. Functional capacity is specific to each individual and the daily tasks that a person performs. The determinants of functional capacity change over the life span and vary depending on disease and injury status. The appropriate measures of functional capacity must address an individual's unique needs and daily tasks.

References and Readings

- Applegate, W. B., Blass, J. P., & Williams, T. E. (1990). Instruments for the functional assessment of older patients. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 322(17), 1132–1148.
- Bergner, M., & Rothman, M. L. (1987). Health status measures: An overview and guide for selection. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 8, 191–210.
- Besdine, R. E. (1988). Functional assessment as a model for clinical evaluation of geriatric patients. *Public Health Reports*, 103(5), 530–536.
- Clini, E. M., & Crisafulli, E. (2009). Exercise capacity as a pulmonary rehabilitation outcome. *Respiration*, 77(2), 121–128.
- Katz, S. (1983). Assessing self-maintenance; activities of daily living, mobility, and instrumental activities of daily living. *Journal of American Geriatrics Society*, 31(12), 721–727.
- Katz, S., & Stroud, M. W. (1989). Functional assessment in geriatrics: A review of progress and directions. *Journal of American Geriatrics Society*, 37(3), 267–271.
- Katz, S., Ford, A. B., Moskowitz, R. W., & Jaffee, M. W. (1963). Studies of illness in the aged. The index of ADL: A standardized measure of biological and psychosocial function. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 185, 94.
- Rostangno, C., & Gensini, G. F. (2008). Six minute walk test: A simple and useful tool to evaluate functional capacity in patients with heart failure. *Internal and Emergency Medicine*, 3(3), 205–212.

Functional Health

► Physical Fitness

Functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging (fMRI)

Yoshiya Moriguchi

Department of Psychophysiology, National Institute of Mental Health, National Center of Neurology and Psychiatry, Kodaira, Tokyo, Japan

Definition

Functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) is a technique for measuring neural activity, by detecting the hemodynamic changes in blood

oxygenation and blood flow in response to neural activity, based on blood-oxygenation-level-dependent (BOLD) effect.

Description

Blood-oxygen-level dependent (BOLD) effect is the MRI contrast originated from blood deoxyhemoglobin in the tissue, first discovered by Ogawa, Lee, Kay, and Tank (1990a) (Ogawa et al. 1990b, 1992). This method depends on the differential susceptibility between deoxyhemoglobin and oxyhemoglobin. Hemoglobin is diamagnetic when oxygenated but paramagnetic when deoxygenated (=deoxyhemoglobin). Therefore, magnetic resonance (MR) signal of blood is slightly different depending on the level of oxygenation. Higher BOLD signal intensities arise from increases in the concentration of oxygenated hemoglobin since the blood magnetic susceptibility more closely matches the tissue magnetic susceptibility. Since deoxyhemoglobin is paramagnetic, it alters the T2*-weighted magnetic resonance image signal to decrease. This deoxyhemoglobin is referred to as an endogenous contrast-enhancing agent and serves as the source of the signal for fMRI. With MRI sequence parameters sensitive to the changes in this differential magnetic susceptibility, changes in BOLD contrast can be assessed. Here, when a brain region is more active, more oxygen is consumed and blood flow increases to the activated region to meet the increased oxygen demand. Actually, increases in cerebral blood flow to the local vasculature that accompanies neural activity in the brain far overtake changes in oxygen consumption, which will lead to relative decrease of deoxyhemoglobin and increased BOLD signal.

The relationship between oxygenation change with increased activity and change of the BOLD signal is in fact a little more complex. There is a momentary decrease in blood oxygenation immediately after neural activity increases, known as the “initial dip” in the hemodynamic response. This is followed by the blood flow increases, not just to a level where oxygen demand is met, but overcompensating for the increased demand. This means that blood oxygenation actually increases

following neural activation. The blood flow peaks after around 5–6 s and then falls back to baseline, often accompanied by a poststimulus undershoot.

The fMRI technique has been increasingly used to produce activation maps showing which parts of the brain are involved in a particular mental process or state. While lying in the MRI scanner, a subject experiences some mental states or does some task (e.g., visual stimuli on a screen, response to some cue in a certain manner). Meanwhile, the MRI scanner tracks the signal throughout the brain or some specific part of interest. In brain areas, the BOLD signal is changing as the stimulus or task condition is varying. The hemodynamic change is measured by BOLD contrast in a “voxel” (a volume pixel; a small unit consisting of three-dimensional part of the brain image). The activity in a voxel is defined as how closely the time course of BOLD signal from that voxel matches the hypothesized time course. If the signals from a certain voxel match and correlate the hypothesized time course, this voxel is given a high statistical value, that is, a high activation score. These statistics in voxels can then be translated into a statistical brain map that shows the extent of “activation.”

Compared with earlier neuroimaging techniques like positron emission tomography (PET), the advantages to fMRI as a technique to image brain activity related to a specific task or sensory process are the following: (1) fMRI does not require injections of radioactive isotopes, (2) the total scan time required is shorter, (3) the spatial resolution of the obtained functional image is higher (typically several mm, although high resolutions less than 1 mm are now possible technically), and (4) the temporal resolution of time course data is much higher than PET (highest resolution is ~ 0.5 s; typically ~ 1 –4 s is used) so that it enables to analyze finer hemodynamic changes accompanied with short event-related neural events (called event-related design).

On the other hand, fMRI has disadvantages versus PET: (1) fMRI is loud, and its noise is over ~ 90 dB, (2) quite sensitive to movement artifact because fMRI uses sequential excitation method by radio-frequent pulses across multislices of the brain, (3) fMRI causes signal distortion and loss because of susceptibility artifact in

orbitofrontal and inferior/medial temporal areas which are important for emotional processing or social cognition, and (4) behavioral and physiological measurement inside the scanner is hard without specially designed MRI-compatible hardware because of a very strong static magnetic field or rapidly changing gradient magnetic field.

Nowadays, researchers started to combine the imaging techniques to determine brain activity and concurrent measurement of various physiological indexes. For example, measurements of the autonomic nervous system, such as pulse/skin conductance/electromyogram, are used in the scanner to detect dynamic associations of the bodily states with neural states. EEG has been also used simultaneously with fMRI, to utilize the advantages of the high spatial resolution of MRI and high temporal resolution of EEG. The transcranial magnetic stimulation method (TMS) is also used with fMRI as a noninvasive method to temporarily suppress the neuronal activity in a local region by electric stimulation by a coil outside the head.

Recently, a movement has arisen that attempts to understand the function of the brain both comprehensively and integratively as a network: This evolved from the point of view that the various sites of the brain and the wide variety of information from the body dynamically form a complicated web of consciousness, recognition, and feelings in a mutually influenced manner. For this purpose, connectivity between different brain regions has been assessed using correlation or multivariate analyses. Furthermore, there is a new direction of neuroimaging studies that includes a wider context than that of specific studies focusing only on a certain disease or nervous system. For example, a new field called “social neuroscience” is spreading rapidly in which neuroscience has begun to be applied to probing highly advanced cognitive functions, such as what kind of role a neuronal system plays in human social interactions.

A unique technique called “real-time fMRI” (rtfMRI) has been recently used in some neuroimaging studies (deCharms 2007). This method resembles the “biofeedback” therapy that has conventionally been used in clinical settings to therapeutically give patients feedback on their distal physiological signs. The rtfMRI can be called

“neurofeedback” in which fMRI simultaneously feeds back to the subjects the regional neural activity of the brain so that they can learn to directly control activation of localized regions by themselves – self-control. The rtfMRI has possibilities for use in rehabilitation through training by noninvasive and non-pharmacological means. A trial has just started into the clinical applications for chronic pain/drug dependency/depression and the ability to support psychotherapy.

Despite the great advantages of fMRI, there are some “pitfalls” to use this kind of neuroimaging technique like fMRI (Bennett and Miller 2011; Logothetis 2002). The BOLD response can be affected by a variety of factors, including drugs/substances, age, brain pathology, local differences in neurovascular coupling, attention, amount of carbon dioxide in the blood, etc. The images produced must be interpreted carefully, since correlation does not imply causality, and brain processes are complex and often nonlocalized. Statistical methods must be used carefully because they can produce false positives (Vul et al. 2009). One team of researchers studying reactions to pictures of human emotional expressions reported a few activated voxels in the brain of a dead salmon when no correction for multiple comparisons was applied, illustrating the need for rigorous statistical analyses. The BOLD signal is only an indirect measure of neural activity and is, therefore, susceptible to influence by non-neural changes in the body. This also means that it is difficult to interpret positive and negative BOLD responses. BOLD signals are most strongly associated with the input to a given area rather than with the output (Lauritzen 2005). It is therefore possible (although unlikely) that a BOLD signal could be present in a given area even if there is no single unit activity. fMRI has poor temporal resolution. The BOLD response peaks approximately 5–6 s after neuronal firing begins in an area. This means that it is hard to distinguish BOLD responses to different events which occur within a shorter time window. fMRI has often been used to show activation localized to specific regions, thus minimizing the distributed nature of processing in neural networks. Several recent multivariate statistical techniques work around this issue by characterizing interactions between “active” regions found via traditional univariate techniques.

The attractions of fMRI have made it a popular tool for imaging normal brain function – especially for psychologists. fMRI is also being applied in clinical and commercial settings. At the moment, there are no clinical applications immediately available, but in the near future, the progress of neuroscience shows promise for its clinical utility.

Cross-References

- [Brain, Imaging](#)
- [Magnetic Resonance Imaging \(MRI\)](#)
- [Neuroimaging](#)

References and Readings

- Bennett, C. M., & Miller, M. B. (2011). How reliable are the results from functional magnetic resonance imaging? *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 1191, 133–155.
- deCharms, R. C. (2007). Reading and controlling human brain activation using real-time functional magnetic resonance imaging. *Trends in Cognitive Sciences*, 11(11), 473–481.
- Friston, K. J., Frith, C. D., Dolan, R. J., Price, C. J., Zeki, S., Ashburner, J. T., et al. (Eds.). (2004). *Human brain function* (2nd ed.). San Diego: Academic Press.
- Lauritzen, M. (2005). Reading vascular changes in brain imaging: Is dendritic calcium the key? *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 6(1), 77–85.
- Logothetis, N. K. (2002). The neural basis of the blood-oxygen-level-dependent functional magnetic resonance imaging signal. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, 357(1424), 1003–1037.
- Ogawa, S., Lee, T. M., Kay, A. R., & Tank, D. W. (1990a). Brain magnetic resonance imaging with contrast dependent on blood oxygenation. *The Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 87(24), 9868–9872.
- Ogawa, S., Lee, T. M., Nayak, A. S., & Glynn, P. (1990b). Oxygenation-sensitive contrast in magnetic resonance image of rodent brain at high magnetic fields. *Magnetic Resonance in Medicine*, 14(1), 68–78.
- Ogawa, S., Tank, D. W., Menon, R., Ellermann, J. M., Kim, S. G., Merkle, H., et al. (1992). Intrinsic signal changes accompanying sensory stimulation: Functional brain mapping with magnetic resonance imaging. *The Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 89(13), 5951–5955.
- Vul, E., Harris, C., Winkielman, P., & Pashler, H. (2009). Puzzlingly high correlations in fMRI studies of emotion, personality, and social cognition. *Perspectives on Psychological Science*, 4(3), 274–290.

Functional Somatic Symptoms

- [Functional Somatic Syndromes](#)
 - [Somatoform Disorders](#)
-

Functional Somatic Syndromes

Tetusya Ando

Department of Psychosomatic Research, National Institute of Mental Health, National Center of Neurology and Psychiatry, Kodaira-shi, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

[Functional somatic symptoms](#); [Medically unexplained symptoms](#); [Somatoform disorders](#)

Definition

Several related syndromes that are characterized more by symptoms, suffering, and disability than by disease-specific, demonstrable abnormalities of structure or function (Barsky and Borus 1999).

Symptoms that cannot be explained in terms of a conventionally defined medical disease (Wessely et al. 1999).

Description

Concern about symptoms is a major reason for patients to seek medical help. Many of the somatic symptoms, such as pain of different location (back, head, muscles or joints, abdomen, chest), fatigue, dizziness, edema, dyspnea, insomnia, and numbness, often remain unexplained by identifiable disease even after extensive medical assessment. Terms such as somatization, somatoform disorders, abnormal illness behavior, functional symptom, and medically unexplained symptom (MUS) have been used to describe these

symptoms. The term functional symptom assumes only a disturbance in body function but no psychogenesis of the symptom.

Concept of functional somatic syndromes (FSS) was first proposed by Barsky A.J. and others in 1999. They defined FSS as several related syndromes that are characterized more by symptoms, suffering, and disability than by structural or functional abnormality which include specific somatic syndromes such as multiple chemical sensitivity, the sick building syndrome, repetition stress injury, the side effects of silicone breast implants, the Gulf War syndrome, chronic whiplash, the chronic fatigue syndrome, the irritable bowel syndrome, and fibromyalgia. Patients with FSS have self-diagnosis, and their symptoms are often refractory to reassurance, explanation, and palliative treatments of symptoms. Although individual functional FSS may present with some organ-specific symptoms (e.g., gastrointestinal symptoms in irritable bowel syndrome) and may differ in its lead symptoms, the various FSS have similar symptoms that are diffuse, nonspecific and ambiguous, and very prevalent in healthy, non-patient populations. Symptoms common to the FSS include fatigue, weakness, sleep difficulties, headache, muscle aches and joint pain, problems with memory, attention, and concentration, nausea and other gastrointestinal symptoms, anxiety, depression, irritability, palpitations, shortness of breath, dizziness, sore throat, and dry mouth.

The concept was soon followed by Wessely S and others who postulated that the existence of specific somatic syndromes is largely an artifact of medical specialization on the basis of literature review because they found considerable overlap and similarities in definition, diagnostic criteria, symptoms and non-symptom characteristics, and response to treatment between individual syndromes as described later. This evoked debates regarding commonality and individuality of the specific syndromes and advantages and disadvantages of the concept in understanding and treatment of these illnesses.

Though an objective criterion of general FSS does not exist, epidemiological studies of individual specific syndromes have indicated that FSS are very common in all countries and cultures. For

example, the prevalence of irritable bowel syndrome, chronic fatigue syndrome, and fibromyalgia are 10–20%, 0.01–0.3%, and 1–6%, respectively.

The syndromes are strongly associated with emotional distress and disorders such as anxiety and depression, and sufferers are often severely disabled. Costs to patients and to medical resources are substantial with repeated investigation and treatment.

Each single or specific functional syndrome is signified by current lead symptoms or implied cause. But overlap in case definitions of specific syndromes has been suggested. Patients with one functional syndrome often meet diagnostic criteria for other syndromes, for example, temporomandibular joint disorders and nonspecific facial pain, fibromyalgia and tension headache, and non-cardiac chest pain and hyperventilation syndrome are reported to be frequent combinations. Functional somatic symptoms are generally more common in women than in men.

Although, the causes of functional symptoms and syndromes are not fully understood, biological, psychological, interpersonal, and health-care factors are considered to be all important. Dualistic, single factor view such as whether symptoms are psychological or physical will be unhelpful.

The symptoms of FSS are exacerbated by psychosocial stress and strongly associated with psychological distress, anxiety, and depression. History of childhood maltreatment and abuse has been reported to be frequent in FSS as they have been in psychiatric diseases.

Difficulties in doctor-patient relationship are quite usual. Because symptoms are not explained even after extensive medical assessment and conventional medical therapies are fairly ineffective, physicians are frustrated and patients are dissatisfied. Raising fear of disease, performing unnecessary investigations and treatments, and encouraging disability are adverse effects of medical consultation. Denying the reality of patients' symptoms may damage the doctor-patient relationship. Those iatrogenic components are important in the maintenance of FSS.

As biological mechanisms, altered functioning or abnormality of central nervous system, especially serotonergic system and neuroendocrine system, and immunological disturbances have been implicated, in addition to peripheral functional abnormalities in specific organ systems.

Barsky A.J. recommended medical management of FSS in six steps: (1) ruling out the presence of diagnosable medical disease, (2) searching for psychiatric disorders, (3) building a collaborative alliance with the patient, (4) making restoration of function the goal of treatment, (5) providing limited reassurance, and (6) prescribing cognitive behavioral therapy for patients who have not responded to the aforementioned five steps.

Peripheral or organ-oriented pharmacotherapy primarily aimed at peripheral physiological processes (e.g., bowel function, muscle tension, inflammation, pain, etc.) is also applied. Antidepressants (tricyclic antidepressants and SSRI) are often effective whether or not patient is depressed.

Cross-References

- [Antidepressant Medications](#)
- [Fatigue](#)
- [Psychosomatic Disorder](#)
- [Somatoform Disorders](#)

References and Readings

- Barsky, A. J., & Borus, J. F. (1999). Functional somatic syndromes. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 130, 910–921.
- Henningsen, P., Zipfel, S., & Herzog, W. (2007). Management of functional somatic syndromes. *The Lancet*, 369, 946–955.
- Wessely, S., Nimnuan, C., & Sharpe, M. (1999). Functional somatic syndromes: One or many? *The Lancet*, 354, 936–939.

Functional Testing

- [Functional Capacity, Disability, and Status](#)

G

Gamification

► [Health Gaming](#)

Gaming

► [Health Gaming](#)

Gamma-Aminobutyric Acid (GABA)

Elizabeth Galik
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Definition

Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) is the primary inhibitory neurotransmitter in the central nervous system of humans and other mammals. GABA is a highly polar and flexible molecule that is formed from glutamate in enzymatic reaction that causes its release into the synapse where it is inactivated by reuptake into glia cells (Chebib and Johnston 1999). GABA transmission within the central nervous system modulates noradrenergic,

dopaminergic, and serotonergic neurons which ultimately influences behavior and mood (Brambilla et al. 2003; Emrich et al. 1980). A deficiency of GABA has been associated with a variety of neuropsychiatric disorders, including mood disorders, anxiety, panic, addiction, and schizophrenia, and neurological disorders such as Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, and Huntington's chorea. More recently, GABA has been studied as a mediating factor in the transmission and perception of pain (Enna and McCarson 2006). GABA is also directly associated with the regulation of muscle tone. Pharmacologic agents that act as agonists of GABA receptors result in relaxation and sedation and have anticonvulsant properties.

References and Readings

- Brambilla, P., Perez, J., Barale, F., Schettini, G., & Soares, J. C. (2003). GABAergic dysfunction in mood disorders. *Molecular Psychiatry*, 8, 721–737.
- Chebib, M., & Johnston, G. A. (1999). The “ABC” of GABA receptors: A brief review. *Clinical and Experimental Pharmacology and Physiology*, 26(11), 937–940.
- Emrich, H. M., von Zerssen, D., Kissling, W., Moller, H. J., & Windorfer, A. (1980). The GABA-hypothesis of affective disorders. *Archiv für Psychiatrie und Nervenkrankheiten*, 229, 1–16.
- Enna, S. J., & McCarson, K. E. (2006). The role of GABA in the mediation and perception of pain. *Advanced Pharmacology*, 54, 1–27.

Gastric Ulcers and Stress

Shin Fukudo and Yukari Tanaka
Department of Behavioral Medicine, School
of Medicine, Tohoku University Graduate,
Seiryō-machi, Aoba-ku, Sendai, Japan

Synonyms

Peptic ulcer

Definition

A gastric ulcer is a disease of gastric mucosal damage, caused by impaired mucosal defense and/or increasing gastric acid. Gastric acid consisting of hydrochloric acid and pepsin helps to digest intragastric contents, but they may also damage the gastric wall.

Description

Signs and Symptoms

The symptoms of gastric ulcer are the following: piercing or burning pain in the upper abdomen, poor appetite, nausea, vomiting, loss of weight, and feeling tired and weak. Tarry stool is the alarm sign of a bleeding, which suggests damage of the blood vessels in the submucosal or muscular layers of the gastroduodenal wall.

Causes

A type of bacteria called *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) is responsible for most peptic ulcers. *H. pylori* is a common gastric pathogen and often begins to infect in childhood. Most people do not show any symptoms by *H. pylori* infection, but it sometimes causes chronic gastritis, peptic ulcer, dyspepsia, gastric adenocarcinoma, and B-cell mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) lymphoma. *H. pylori* is motile and attaches to gastric mucosa through specific adhesion mechanisms. *H. pylori* urease, which produces ammonia on

the gastric mucosa, increases the local pH and protects itself from acid. It may produce damage to the mucous coating and local inflammation. Another cause is the long-term use of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). NSAIDs can cause damage to the gastric and duodenal mucosa via some mechanisms, including block cyclooxygenase (COX)-1 and COX-2 inhibition. These two enzymes produce prostaglandins, substances that help to maintain blood flow and facilitate the repair of injury in the stomach. Cigarette smoking does not cause ulcers by itself but can make them worsen and delayed the healing.

Stress

Stress may not cause ulcers but can make them worsen. Patients with posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) showed higher prevalence of gastric ulcer than those without trauma. After the Hanshin-Awaji earthquake in Japan, the number of patients with gastric ulcer increased more than the previous year. This study also reported that *H. pylori* infection was a strong predisposing factor of the development of peptic ulcer. Stress sometimes induces psychological and physiological disorder and also closely relates to the central sympathetic activity. Spinal cord transection rat showed hypovolemia and higher prevalence of gastric ulcer. Brain angiotensin II AT1 receptors, which response the stress-induced hormone, relate to the stress-induced ischemia and inflammation in the gastric mucosa.

Diagnosis

First, taking a detailed history of symptoms and risk factors including medications, smoking, and drinking habits and if anyone in the patient's family has had ulcers. Physician will check of the patient's abdomen and chest as well as a rectal exam to look for any sign of bleeding. An abdominal X-ray is to rule out perforation (check free air under the diaphragm), and a blood test is to assess anemia. If a patient complains of sudden upper abdominal pain, it is important to rule out acute coronary syndrome by electrocardiogram. The diagnosis is confirmed by upper gastrointestinal (GI) endoscopy or upper GI series. If peptic ulcer

is detected, biopsy of ulcer edge is recommended to rule out malignancy and check *H. pylori*. Non-invasive tests to detect *H. pylori* in a patient's blood, breath, or stool are also available.

Treatment

If acute bleeding is suspected, emergent gastrointestinal endoscopy or, in some cases, surgery is needed. Medication that reduces gastric acid secretion includes proton-pump inhibitors (PPIs) and histamine H₂ receptor blockers (H₂ blockers). PPIs cannot kill *H. pylori* but some study reported that it helps to eradicate *H. pylori* infection. *H. pylori* testing, therefore, should be done before PPIs medication, or after stopping PPIs for a month at least. Patients with confirmed *H. pylori* infection should receive 1-week triple therapy consisting of PPIs and the antibiotics clarithromycin and amoxicillin, which can cure 80–90% of patients with peptic ulcer. After *H. pylori* eradication is completed, patients still have a higher incidence of gastric carcinoma than uninfected people. Patients with peptic ulcer therefore should be followed for a long time.

Cross-References

- [Smoking Behavior](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Readings

- Davidson, J. R., Hughes, D., Blazer, D. G., & George, L. K. (1991). Post-traumatic stress disorder in the community: An epidemiological study. *Psychological Medicine*, 21, 713–721.
- Kusters, J. G., van Vliet, A. H., & Kuipers, E. J. (2006). Pathogenesis of *Helicobacter pylori* infection. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews*, 19, 449–490.
- Matsushima, Y., Aoyama, N., Fukuda, H., Kinoshita, Y., Todo, A., Himeno, S., et al. (1999). Gastric ulcer formation after the Hanshin-Awaji earthquake: A case study of *Helicobacter pylori* infection and stress-induced gastric ulcers. *Helicobacter*, 4, 94–99.
- Mayer, E. A. (2000). The neurobiology of stress and gastrointestinal disease. *Gut*, 47, 861–869.
- Saavedra, J. M., Ando, H., Armando, I., Baiardi, G., Bregonzio, C., Juorio, A., et al. (2005). Anti-stress and anti-anxiety effects of centrally acting angiotensin II AT₁ receptor antagonists. *Regulatory Peptides*, 128, 227–238.
- Strain, G. M., & Waldrop, R. D. (2005). Temperature and vascular volume effects on gastric ulcerogenesis after cord transection. *Digestive Diseases and Sciences*, 50, 2037–2042.

Gastrin-Releasing Peptide (GRP)

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Definition

Gastrin-releasing peptide (GRP) is a peptide with multiple roles which primarily regulates and stimulates secretion of gastric acid (Schubert 2008). GRP also has other biological roles. For example, in the respiratory system, it causes bronchoconstriction on one hand and vasodilatation on the other hand. Indeed, GRP plays a role in pulmonary diseases leading to asthma, and its blockade serves as a therapeutic target in such conditions (Zhou et al. 2011). GRP also has a role in several cancers. In neuroblastomas, for example, it acts as a tumor growth factor. The blockade of GRP augments the effects of chemotherapy (Paul et al. 2011). Furthermore, GRP also plays a role in the circadian rhythm and in stress. GRP appears to mediate in part the stress response. In rats given corticosterone, higher GRP levels were seen in the amygdala and the medial prefrontal cortex during stress compared to control animals exposed to stress alone (Merali et al. 2008). Thus, it is possible that GRP alters brain activity upon exposure to chronic stress and to its neuroendocrine concomitants. Finally, GRP and its receptor are distributed in several brain regions and play a role in psychiatric and neurodegenerative disorders (Roesler et al. 2006). For these reasons, it has been suggested that GRP may serve as a therapeutic target in several health conditions (Roesler

et al. 2006). One experimental genetic modification study in rats found that a genetic knockout form of the GRP receptor had longer conditioned fear extinction, coupled by stronger amygdala activity and reduced prefrontal cortical activity (Martel et al. 2012). These results suggest that GRP-receptor agonists may inhibit effects of GRP and could be a therapeutic target also in post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), where such behaviors and neural imbalance occur.

Due to the complex and vast roles of GRP in psychological and biological processes and in health outcomes, it appears that this peptide deserves much attention in the field of behavior medicine as it may partly mediate effects of stress on somatic systems and on health conditions. Future studies could also examine whether effects of stress management may be mediated by reductions in GRP or increases in the GRP-receptor activity.

Cross-References

- [Asthma and Stress](#)
- [Cortisol](#)
- [Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Axis](#)

References and Further Readings

- Martel, G., Hevi, C., Wong, A., Zushida, K., Uchida, S., & Shumyatsky, G. P. (2012). Murine GRPR and stathmin control in opposite directions both cued fear extinction and neural activities of the amygdala and prefrontal cortex. *PloS One*, 7, e30942.
- Merali, Z., Anisman, H., James, J. S., Kent, P., & Schulkin, J. (2008). Effects of corticosterone on corticotrophin-releasing hormone and gastrin-releasing peptide release in response to an aversive stimulus in two regions of the forebrain (central nucleus of the amygdala and prefrontal cortex). *European Journal of Neuroscience*, 28, 165–172.
- Paul, P., Gillory, L. A., Kang, J., Qiao, J., & Chung, D. H. (2011). Targeting gastrin-releasing peptide as a new approach to treat aggressive refractory neuroblastomas. *Surgery*, 149, 425–432.
- Roesler, R., Henriques, J. A., & Schwartzmann, G. (2006). Gastrin-releasing peptide receptor as a molecular target for psychiatric and neurological disorders. *CNS & Neurological Disorders Drug Targets*, 5, 197–204.
- Schubert, M. L. (2008). Gastric secretion. *Current Opinion in Gastroenterology*, 24, 659–664.
- Zhou, S., Potts, E. N., Cuttitta, F., Foster, W. M., & Sunday, M. E. (2011). Gastrin-releasing peptide blockade as a broad-spectrum anti-inflammatory therapy for asthma. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 108, 2100–2105.

Gate Control Theory of Pain

Tavis S. Campbell, Jillian A. Johnson and Kristin A. Zernicke
Department of Psychology, University of Calgary,
Calgary, AB, Canada

Synonyms

[Pain](#); [Pain perception](#); [Pain sensitivity](#)

Definition

The gate control theory (GCT) of pain was introduced in 1965 by Ronald Melzack and Patrick Wall. It was the first theory to introduce the concept that pain experience is not simply the result of a linear process that begins with the stimulation of pain pathways in the peripheral nervous system and ends with the experience of pain in the central nervous system. Rather, neural impulses that potentially signal pain from the peripheral nervous system are subject to a number of modulations in the spinal cord by a “gatelike” mechanism in the dorsal horn before the experience of pain is transmitted to the central nervous system (Melzack and Wall 1965). It also proposes that the gate mechanism is modulated by emotions, cognitive state, and past experiences. While this theory is based on physiology, it explains both sensory and psychological aspects of pain perception.

Description

The gate control theory of pain was first introduced by Canadian psychologist Ronald Melzack

and British physician Patrick Wall in the 1965 *Science* article titled “Pain Mechanisms: A New Theory.” The theory proposed that physical pain is not a direct result of activation of pain receptor neurons, but rather its perception is impacted by the interaction between different neurons. It proposes the existence of neural structures in the spinal cord and brainstem that modulate the experience of pain. These structures function like a gate, swinging open to increase the flow of transmission from nerve fibers or swinging shut to decrease the flow. With the gate open, signals arriving in the spinal cord stimulate sensory neurons which relay the signals upward to reach the brain and trigger pain. With the gate closed, signals are blocked from reaching the brain, and no pain is felt.

Gate Mechanism

According to the gate control theory of pain, three main types of nerve fibers are involved in the process of pain perception: A fibers, C fibers, and the “gate” interneurons. The diameters of these fibers vary in size. A-beta fibers have a large diameter and are myelinated, resulting in quick transmission of impulses. C fibers are smaller in diameter and are not myelinated, resulting in the slower transmission of impulses. A-delta fibers, another form of A fiber, are also small in diameter and have a function similar to that of C fibers.

The gate through which the pain pathways send signals to the nervous system is located in the dorsal horns of the spinal cord. The dorsal horns are composed of several layers, called laminae. Two of these layers make up the substantia gelatinosa, the hypothesized location of the gate mechanism. Both the small-diameter A-delta and C fibers and the large-diameter A-beta fibers travel through the substantia gelatinosa. The interneurons, located in the substantia gelatinosa, are the hypothetical gating mechanisms.

Activity of the large-diameter A-beta fibers produces an initial burst of activity in the spinal cord, followed by an inhibitory response. If the interneurons of the substantia gelatinosa are

stimulated by activity in the large A-beta fibers, the interneurons produce an inhibitory response and do not allow pain sensations to be relayed up to the brain. Therefore, when the interneurons are stimulated by large fiber activity, the gate closes and no pain is experienced. Activity of the small-diameter A-delta and C fibers produces prolonged activity in the spinal cord. This type of activity promotes sensitivity and subsequently increases sensitivity to pain. If the interneurons are inhibited by the action of the small-diameter C fibers or A-delta fibers, or if they are not stimulated at all, the interneurons allow pain sensations to be sent up the brain. Thus, if the interneurons receive activity from small-diameter fibers, the gate remains open and results in the experience of pain.

In short, when the gate is open, impulses flow through the spinal cord toward the brain, neural messages reach the brain, and pain is experienced. When the gate is closed, impulses are inhibited from ascending through the spinal cord, messages do not reach the brain, and pain is not experienced. Therefore, the status of the gate depends on the balance of activity between the larger A-beta fibers and the smaller A-delta fibers and C fibers. This arrangement of neurons provides a physiological basis for the modulation of incoming sensory impulses.

Influence of the Brain on Pain

Although the gate may be closed by neural activity in the spinal cord, it may also be controlled by messages that descend from the brain. Melzack and Wall proposed the concept of a central control trigger consisting of nerve impulses that descend from the brain and influence the gating mechanism. They hypothesized that this system consists of large neurons that conduct impulses rapidly. These impulses from the brain affect the opening and closing of the gate in the spinal cord and are affected by cognitive processes. That is, the experience of pain is influenced by beliefs and prior experience. According to the gate control theory then, pain has not only sensory components but also motivational and emotional components. The theory explains the influence of cognitive aspects

of pain and allows for learning and experience to affect how pain is experienced. Anxiety, worry, and depression, can increase pain by affecting the central control trigger, thus opening the gate. Distraction, relaxation, and positive emotions can cause the gate to close, thereby decreasing pain. The gate control theory is not specific about how these experiences affect pain but helps in the understanding that the sensation of pain can be dampened or aggravated by cognitions. For example, the theory helps explain how some people are able to withstand a large amount of pain through sheer willpower.

This theory provided a new way of thinking about pain and pain management and paved the way for current definitions of pain (e.g., International Association for the Study of Pain (IASP) pain terminology).

Impact and Critique

Prior to the gate control theory, pain was thought to be a direct response to a stimulus. Pain theories could not explain how two different people exposed to the same painful stimulus may have different reactions, nor did it explain phenomena such as phantom limb pain, defined as the sensation of pain in a limb that was previously amputated or removed. Melzack and Wall's theory was the first to suggest that psychological factors such as past experiences, attention, and emotion may have an impact on pain responses and perception. In addition, by highlighting the role of spinal and brain mechanisms on pain perception, the gate control theory triggered an explosive advance in pain research and therapy. Today, it is considered the most influential theory of pain. It forced the medical and biological sciences to accept the brain as an active system that can modulate, filter, and select inputs. It has inspired several clinical techniques for controlling pain, including transcutaneous nerve stimulation (TENS), that involves the artificial stimulation of the large pain fiber system.

The gate control theory represents an important advance on previous simple response theories of pain. It introduced a role for psychology and

described a multidimensional process rather than a simple linear one. However, the theory has received several criticisms. Although there is evidence illustrating the mechanisms to increase and decrease pain perception, the location of the gate itself is unknown. Another critique of the theory is that although the input from the site of physical injury may be moderated and mediated by experience and psychological factors, the model still assumes an organic basis for pain. This integration of physiological and psychological factors can explain individual variability and phantom limb pain to an extent, but because the model still assumes some organic basis for all pain, it is still foundationally based upon the flawed stimulus response process. Finally, the gate control theory attempts to depart from traditional dualist models of health by integrating the mind and body. Today, however, the mind and body are still seen as separate processes, although there is an attempt at some integration. The model suggests that physical processes are influenced by psychological processes, yet the two processes remain distinct.

Despite these criticisms, the gate control theory of pain is still the inspiration for the dominant theory of pain today, the biopsychosocial model of pain, and has stood the test of time remarkably well for a theory that triggered much research on relatively previously understudied health issue.

Cross-References

► [Pain](#)

References and Readings

- Melzack, R. (1973). *The puzzle of pain*. Harmondsworth: Penguin Education.
- Melzack, R. (1993). Pain: Past, present and future. *Canadian Journal of Experimental Psychology*, 47(4), 615–629.
- Melzack, R., & Wall, P. D. (1962). On the nature of cutaneous sensory mechanisms. *Brain*, 85, 331–356.
- Melzack, R., & Wall, P. D. (1965). Pain mechanisms: A new theory. *Science*, 150, 971–979.
- Melzack, R., & Wall, P. D. (1988). *The challenge of pain*. New York: Basic Books.

Gay Men's Health Crisis

Jennifer Pellowski

Department of Behavioral and Social Sciences,
Brown University School of Public Health,
Providence, RI, USA

Definition

The Gay Men's Health Crisis (GMHC) is a volunteer-based, nonprofit organization that provides health, employment, and legal services to people living with HIV/AIDS in New York City. GMHC is an advocate for both public and private research concentrating on HIV/AIDS care and prevention and provides information about such issues as safer sex, testing, and substance use through their community awareness campaigns (Gay Men's Health Crisis [GMHC] n.d.).

Description

GMHC was founded in 1981 by six men, including playwright and activist Larry Kramer, who were all concerned about the lack of information and services available to people living with a mysterious disease which is now known as HIV/AIDS. These men aimed to spread the word about "gay cancer" as well as raise money to fund research (Kayal 1993). Among the first volunteers was Roger McFarlane who played an integral part in the establishment of the organization, particularly with the creation of the first AIDS information hotline from his own home phone, which evolved into the GMHC helpline. McFarlane became the first executive director of GMHC in 1982 (Hevesi 2009).

One of the first major goals of the Gay Men's Health Crisis was to raise money to support research concerning HIV/AIDS. Within the first year, it raised \$50,000 (Kayal 1993). Currently, GMHC is an advocate for both public and private research, working with a yearly budget of nearly

\$20 million. In addition to conducting its own research, GMHC publishes several quarterly magazines/journals free of charge focused on health research and policy issues written in a widely accessible manner.

Since its conception, GMHC has been a major force in the dissemination of information regarding HIV and sexual health to the lesbian, gay, bisexual, and transexual (LGBT) community in New York City. It also works to educate people in the larger community, and despite its name, this organization serves people of all sexual orientations and genders (Reinfeld 1993). In addition to sexual health information, it also provides a wide range of services to people living with HIV/AIDS (PLWH) and those at risk of contracting the virus (GMHC n.d.).

One of their most extensive services is their multidisciplinary mental health clinic. It provides both short- and long-term counseling for individuals, families, and couples. Additionally, it conducts topic-based support groups focused on issues ranging from depression and anxiety to newly diagnosed individuals to living well with HIV (GMHC n.d.).

GMHC also provides its clients with various services aimed at helping people living with HIV/AIDS live a healthy, normal life as well as reaching out to those who may be a risk for contracting the disease. These services include a hot meal program, nutritional information, an HIV and sexually transmitted infection (STI) testing clinic, legal support, and many different types of career services (GMHC n.d.).

In addition to support for community members, GMHC is also an advocate for city, state, and federal policies concerning LGBT health care, youth services, and testing. The Gay Men's Health Crisis is integral to not only the LGBT community but to the New York City community at large. This organization works to bridge the gap between public health, government, health-care services, and the community. This, coupled with its support of HIV research, makes GMHC a key organization for the acquisition and dissemination of sexual health knowledge, which is a key goal of the field of behavioral medicine.

Cross-References

- [HIV Infection](#)
- [HIV Prevention](#)
- [Sexual Orientation](#)
- [Sexual Risk Behavior](#)

References and Further Readings

- Gay Men's Health Crisis. (n.d.). About us. Retrieved February 8, 2011, from www.gmhc.org
- Hevesi, D. (2009, May 18). Rodger McFarlane, who led AIDS-related groups, dies at 54. *The New York Times*, p. A23.
- Kayal, P. M. (1993). *Bearing witness: Gay men's health crisis and the politics of AIDS*. Boulder: Westview Press.
- Reinfeld, R. M. (1993). The gay men's health crisis: A model for community based intervention. In J. P. Van Vugt (Ed.), *AIDS prevention and services: Community based research* (pp. 179–198). Westport: Bergin & Garvey.

Gaze Tracking

- [Eye Tracking](#)

GDS

- [Geriatric Depression Scale](#)

GDS-15

- [Geriatric Depression Scale](#)

GDS-4

- [Geriatric Depression Scale](#)

Gender

- [Gender Role](#)

Gender Differences

Luis I. García and Jason W. Mitchell
Center for AIDS Intervention Research, Medical
College of Wisconsin, Milwaukee, WI, USA

Definition

Gender refers to the identity humans tend to develop around their biological sex. While gender may be related to biology, gender identity is significantly influenced by culture and social learning. Gender differences refer to the observed differences in behavior displayed by females and males (or another gender). Specifically, differences in behavior can be observed between genders because society imposes a different set of appropriate activities and behaviors for females and males.

It is important to make a distinction between the biological differences between sexes (sexual dimorphism) and the way in which their behavior differs (gender differences). This difference is exemplified by the relationship between testosterone and aggression. For example, the serum level of testosterone in humans is sexually dimorphic; males tend to have higher blood levels of testosterone than females (Torjesen and Sandnes 2004). It has also been found that higher levels of testosterone are associated with more aggression (Mehta and Beer 2009). However, we refer to higher rates of aggression in males than in females as a gender difference because testosterone (biology) is not the only factor influencing aggression (behavior).

It is important to note that because gender is a social construct, the roles of each gender vary across culture as each society has a particular prescription of appropriate behavior for females

and males. Although not without some controversy, Margaret Mead in the book *Temperament in Three Primitive Societies* (1963) discussed the influence of culture over aggression in three societies, one in which both females and males were gentle, one in which both females and males were aggressive, and one in which females were dominant and males were more emotionally dependent. The author's findings highlight the influence of socialization on the expression of aggression. Similarly, Bandura (1977) found that both girls and boys were able to learn and subsequently express aggressive behavior by observing others (a model) behaving aggressively, supporting the idea that individuals can be socialized to express more or less aggressiveness.

Many gender differences between males and females have been found. However, very frequently these differences are very small and the variation within genders tends to be much larger than the variation between genders. For example, it has been found that girls tend to do better in verbal tasks and boys in abstract problem solving skills such as those required in math (Hyde and Linn 1988; Linn and Hyde 1989). However, while the difference between boys and girls on either task is very small, big differences in verbal skills can be found among girls and in abstract problem solving among boys.

The literature offers many examples of the ways in which females and males are socialized differently and the influence of socialization is so profound that it seems to start even before birth. For example, Smith (2005) observed a series of changes in the way she related to her fetus during pregnancy once she learned it was a boy. For example, she observed that her voice became lower and firm and she stopped “nibbling clockwise” her belly when talking to the fetus and started patting it. She also noticed her language use accommodated the “prescribed stereotypes” for males (e.g., referring to the fetus as “strong”). After birth, socialization seems to continue throughout the person's life in the form of rewards when gender-appropriate behavior is exhibited and punishment when gender-inappropriate behavior is chosen.

References and Readings

- Bandura, A. (1977). *Social learning theory*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.
- Hyde, J. S., & Linn, M. C. (1988). Gender differences in verbal ability: A meta-analysis. *Psychological Bulletin*, 104, 53–69.
- Linn, M. C., & Hyde, J. S. (1989). Gender, mathematics, and science. *Educational Researcher*, 18, 17–27.
- Mead, M. (1963). *Sex and temperament: In three primitive societies*. New York: Harper Collins.
- Mehta, P. H., & Beer, J. (2009). Neural mechanisms of the testosterone-aggression relation: The role of orbitofrontal cortex. *Journal of Cognitive Neuroscience*, 22(10), 2357–2368.
- Smith, K. (2005). Pre-birth gender talk: A case study in prenatal socialization. *Women and Language*, 28(1), 49–54.
- Torjesen, P. A., & Sandnes, L. (2004). Serum testosterone in women as measured by an automated immunoassay and a RIA. *Clinical Chemistry*, 50(3), 678–679.

Gender Expression

- [Gender Role](#)

Gender Norms

- [Gender Role](#)

Gender Role

Jennifer Toller Erausquin and Rachel Faller
Department of Public Health Education,
University of North Carolina at Greensboro,
Greensboro, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Feminine role](#); [Gender](#); [Gender expression](#); [Gender norms](#); [Masculine role](#)

Definition

Gender roles are the socially constructed patterns of behavior ascribed to individuals based on their perceived gender identity. Gender roles encompass concepts about masculinity and femininity and determine what behavior is typically expected or deemed appropriate in a given situation and society or culture. Whereas one's *sex* is assigned at birth (i.e., depending on whether a baby at birth appears to have a penis or vulva or the presence or absence of a Y chromosome), *gender roles* may differ by society, culture, socioeconomic class, age, and period in history.

Description

Gender roles are created and reinforced through social institutions such as family and intimate relationships, communities, schools, religious institutions, industry and private enterprise, legal and medical systems, and the media. These aspects of culture and context are constantly changing. Because gender roles are inextricably tied to these changing elements, gender as a cultural concept is therefore fluid (Courtenay 2000; Diamond 2002). The perspective of gender as a mutable phenomenon is important for understanding gender roles and the implications of conformity or nonconformity to gender roles. An individual who does not identify with the gender they were assigned at birth may identify as non-binary, non-conforming, genderqueer – terms used to describe gender identities between or outside of masculine and feminine – or transgender. For instance, a transgender man may have been assigned female at birth, i.e., born with a vulva, and identify as masculine. People whose gender identities match their biological sex or gender assigned at birth are considered *cisgender*.

In the USA and other Western cultures, traditional gender roles are not fluid, but rather binary and discrete. This perspective is linked to an emphasis on two distinct biological sexes: male and female. Masculine roles delineate normative behavior for men and feminine roles delineate normative behavior for women. Gender

nonconformity, or lack of adherence to traditional gender roles, may be interpreted as a serious transgression. However, both within and outside the USA, many cultures understand there to be more than two gender identities and/or have gender roles that are less discretely defined (Matsuno and Budge 2017). The Navajo, Ojibwe, and Apsáalooke peoples indigenous to North America as well as members of the Chuckchi [Siberia], Bakla [Philippines], Hijra [India], and Quariwarmi [Peru] groups are examples of these cultures.

Gender roles are of importance to behavioral medicine because they can affect an individual's health-related decisions and behaviors. *Masculine gender roles* typically define maleness through independence, exploration, aggressiveness, physical strength, and limited expressions of fear, pain, or sadness. Taking care of one's health may require a man to reject certain aspects of masculinity (Courtenay 2000). For example, since hegemonic masculine roles require men to be strong, a man experiencing chest pain may avoid going to the emergency room when having a heart attack, resulting in severe damage to his heart or even death. Some masculine gender roles may result in more positive health behaviors. For instance, the role of family provider and protector, traditionally ascribed to men, may encourage healthy stress relief and coping behavior (Daniel-Ulloa et al. 2017).

Gender roles are considered particularly important in sexual health, as they can affect sexual practices, selection of partners, experience of pleasure, as well as contraceptive use and reproduction. Men may be expected to initiate sex early in life, have multiple sexual partners, and maintain control over their sexual partners. In many societies, men are expected to be knowledgeable and experienced in sexual matters. Traditional masculine gender roles may support or encourage behaviors associated with increased risk of sexually transmitted infections (STIs), including sex without a condom and concurrent sexual partnerships; they also may be perceived as condoning aggressive and violent behaviors.

Feminine gender roles, on the other hand, typically emphasize (inter)dependence, selflessness/

sacrifice, need for protection, and serving as caretaker and comforter. The caretaking role and focus on family needs ascribed to hegemonic femininity can interfere with healthcare seeking among women, as taking care of oneself is considered a lesser priority. In sexual health, feminine gender roles often dictate that “good” women lack sexual knowledge or experience, particularly prior to marriage. Traditional feminine gender roles also frequently assume that women have more control over their sexual desires than men. They may include the expectation that women act as “gatekeepers,” limiting sexual access. In contrast to the masculine role of initiator of sexual activity, traditional feminine gender roles confine women to a reactive or passive role, and sexual promiscuity among women – but not men – is traditionally stigmatized. Taken together, these gender roles may encourage behaviors that place both men and women at risk for unplanned pregnancy, sexually transmitted infections, and HIV.

People who do not identify as cisgender male or female may also experience health outcomes related to their gender identity. They may face stigma or discrimination from healthcare providers, preventing them from seeking medical care. Additionally, providers may not understand their unique health needs. For instance, a young transgender man seeking reassignment surgery may be met with resistance from medical providers who perceive that he may regret his decision in the future. These perceptions are often based on the idea that a person’s sex is unequivocally linked to their gender, e.g., a person assigned female at birth should not only exhibit feminine gender roles but will also *want* to exhibit them. This type of discrimination may also be experienced by cisgender individuals who express desires or behaviors outside of those proscribed by traditional gender norms. For example, a woman of childbearing age who has decided not to have children may be discouraged by her provider from undergoing a sterilization procedure. Since feminine gender roles dictate women should want to have children, a woman who does not fit this ideal and wants to permanently avoid the possibility of pregnancy may be discouraged by medical providers who either do not

believe her or think that she will later change her mind.

Not only do traditional gender roles result in differential expectations of behavior; they also assign differential prestige to masculine and feminine behavior. When masculinity is defined as the rejection of anything feminine, it reinforces “strongly held cultural beliefs that men are more powerful and less vulnerable than women” (Courtenay 2000, p. 1389). Further, hegemonic or ideal feminine roles are largely complementary to those of hegemonic masculinity and, in this way, “guarantee the dominant position of men and the subordination of women” (Schippers 2007, p. 94). To the extent that they reflect inequalities between men and women in access to resources or control, gender roles may contribute to unequal power relations between men and women (Connell 1987; Sen et al. 2002). To keep patriarchal social structures, if a masculine trait is exhibited by a woman, it cannot be masculine. It must be stigmatized into what is known as *pariah femininities* (Schippers 2007). Gender roles and their related gender-based power differentials are also affected by a person’s other identities and social locations (e.g., race/ethnicity, socioeconomic status, sexual orientation), a perspective known as intersectionality. The interaction of these identities “reflect interlocking systems of privilege and oppression,” such as racism and sexism (Bowleg 2012, p. 1267). Since gender is a social construction, it cannot be separated from these other social constructions (Christensen and Jensen 2014). For instance, hegemonic masculinity in the USA is centered on not only exhibiting masculine traits but also being White, heterosexual, cisgender, well-educated, Christian, and upper-class (Courtenay 2000; Schippers 2007).

Intersectionality provides a framework for explaining how people express normative or idealized gender roles in different ways based on their other identities (Courtenay 2000). In this perspective, an individual’s expression of gender roles cannot be separated from their unique combination of social identities and locations and the privilege or marginalization they experience as a result. For instance, while one man may express strength and leadership by becoming captain of a

football team, another may express these traits by becoming CEO at a large company. Multiple social identities can be enacted through health behaviors that may contribute to or reproduce social and health inequalities (Bowleg 2012; Courtenay 2000). For example, Black women have much higher maternal mortality rates than White women in the USA. This inequality persists even among Black and White women in the same socioeconomic class, indicating this outcome is a result of the intersection of sex and racism rather than income inequality (Bowleg 2012). Intersectionality also provides a framework for explaining how people seek alternatives within gender roles if they do not exhibit idealized masculinity or femininity (Christensen and Jensen 2014; Courtenay 2000). For example, a homosexual man may engage in more sexual risk behaviors to emphasize the masculine trait of sexual promiscuity, as he does not fit the hegemonic trait of heterosexuality. In other words, a man may use other resources to validate his masculinity when hegemonic masculinity is not available to him (Courtenay 2000).

The gender role perspective, while a useful framework for understanding social influences on behavior for men and women, is not without criticism. First, there is some debate regarding how deterministic or fluid gender roles are. Although awareness of and conformity to gender roles is influenced by an individual's childhood upbringing and ongoing experiences, several authors argue that individuals can be active agents in creating or challenging masculine or feminine gender roles. Second, public health scholars have questioned the utility of examining gender roles, as opposed to the more pervasive ways gender is interwoven into the structure of social institutions. As Sen et al. note, "...[E]xclusive or excessive emphasis on roles leads to a focus on behavior change at the individual level, rather than on policy change at the societal level" (2002, p. 6). The hegemonic masculinity component of gender role theory is also criticized for "being too structural, too abstract, for reifying normative masculinity positions, for a lack of conceptual cogency," and for its disconnect from men's everyday lives (Christensen and Jensen 2014, p. 61).

Cross-References

- Gender Differences
- Norms

References and Further Reading

- Bowleg, L. (2012). The problem with the phrase women and minorities: Intersectionality – An important theoretical framework for public health. *American Journal of Public Health*, 102(7), 1267–1273. <https://doi.org/10.2105/AJPH.2012.300750>.
- Christensen, A. D., & Jensen, S. Q. (2014). Combining hegemonic masculinity and intersectionality. *NORMA: International Journal for Masculinity Studies*, 9(1), 60–75.
- Connell, R. W. (1987). *Gender and power: Society, the person and sexual politics*. Stanford: Stanford University Press.
- Courtenay, W. H. (2000). Constructions of masculinity and their influence on men's well-being: A theory of gender and health. *Social Science & Medicine*, 50(10), 1385–1401.
- Daniel-Ulloa, J., Sun, C., & Rhodes, S. D. (2017). The intersection between masculinity and health among rural immigrant Latino men. *International Journal of Men's Health*, 16(1), 84.
- Diamond, M. (2002). Sex and gender are different: Sexual identity and gender identity are different. *Clinical Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, 7(3), 320–334.
- Matsuno, E., & Budge, S. L. (2017). Non-binary/genderqueer identities: A critical review of the literature. *Current Sexual Health Reports*, 9(3), 116–120.
- Schippers, M. (2007). Recovering the feminine other: Masculinity, femininity, and gender hegemony. *Theory and Society*, 36(1), 85–102.
- Sen, G., George, A., & Ostlin, P. (2002). *Engendering international health: The challenge of equity*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

Gene

Rany M. Salem^{1,2} and Laura Rodriguez-Murillo³

¹Broad Institute, Cambridge, MA, USA

²Cambridge Center, Cambridge, MA, USA

³Department of Psychiatry, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

Locus

Definition

The gene is the fundamental unit of heredity, passing genetic information from parents to offspring. It is an ordered DNA sequence, which encode (a locus on a chromosome) that is involved in producing a protein. It is therefore an ordered sequence of nucleotide bases, which encode the necessary information to produce a specific functional product.

A gene includes regions that precede and follow the coding regions (the nucleotide bases that create a protein). In the mid-1970s, it was generally accepted that genes existed as continuous segments within a DNA molecule. This view changed radically with the discovery in 1977 that in higher organisms (eukaryotic cells), an individual gene can comprise several DNA (exons) segments separated by chunks of noncoding DNA (introns) (see Roberts 1993). After the DNA sequence within a gene gets transcribed into messenger ribonucleic acid (mRNA), an elegant process called splicing removes the introns and connects the exons to form the mRNA sequence that will get ultimately translated into a sequence of amino acids. These amino acid sequences make proteins, which are therefore made from the genetic instructions encoded in the DNA molecule.

The human genome contains approximately 20,000–25,000 genes (Human Genome Sequencing Consortium 2004), a remarkably lower estimate than the figure of 100,000 genes that was commonly used before the Human Genome Project was finished. Human DNA contains approximately three billion base pairs, but the 20,000–25,000 genes comprise only a small percentage (on the order of 2–5%) of these base pairs. Taylor and Bristow (2006) commented as follows: “The “genes” themselves are only a modest part of the whole genome. It is clear that some of the “non-translated” DNA is required for genes to function normally, but the function of large portions of our DNA remains enigmatic. Equally remarkable, perhaps, is that humans do not use all of their genes at any one time, so far less than 25,000 genes are utilized on a day-to-day basis.” As noted earlier, necessary genes are transcribed

by being translated in to mRNA intermediates, which are subsequently translated into functional proteins.

Finding genes is not an easy task. Watson (2006) commented that “protein-coding regions are but strings of As, Ts, Gs, and Cs embedded among all the other As, Ts, Gs, and Cs of the genome – they do not stand out in any obvious way.” Additionally, as noted already, the base pairs that comprise a gene are not arranged in an uninterrupted linear sequence. A typical human gene has eight introns that lie between the exon coding sections. For example, the gene dystrophin is spread across approximately 2.4 million base pairs, but only less than 1% of the total base pairs encode the actual protein. The other 99% are 79 introns located throughout the coding region. Given these difficulties in identifying human genes, knowledge of other genomes has proved remarkably helpful. Comparison between genomes leverages the fact that functional regions are preferentially conserved between species and can be used to identify novel genes. Thus, “looking for similarity in sequence between the human and mouse data is therefore an effective way of identifying functional areas, like genes” (Watson 2006) (See also Table 1).

Gene, Table 1 Approximate genomic data for humans and several other species of interest. (Adapted from Palladino 2006)

Organism and date genomic data obtained	Size of genome (base pairs)	Number of genes	Percentage of genes shared with humans
Human (2004)	3 billion	20,000–25,000	(100%)
Dog (2003)	6 billion	18,000	75%
Fruit fly (2000)	165 million	14,000	50%
Mouse (2002)	2.5 billion	30,000	80%
Rat (2004)	2.75 billion	22,000	80%



Cross-References

- [Chromosomes](#)
- [DNA](#)
- [Genetics](#)
- [Genomics](#)
- [Human Genome Project](#)
- [Locus](#)
- [Locus \(Genetics\)](#)
- [Proteomics](#)

References and Further Readings

- Human Genome Sequencing Consortium. (2004). Finishing the euchromatic sequence of the human genome. *Nature*, 431(7011), 931–945. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nature03001>.
- Palladino, M. A. (2006). *Understanding the human genome project* (2nd ed.). San Francisco: Pearson/Benjamin Cummings.
- Richards, R. J. (1993). An amazing distortion in DNA induced by a methyltransferase. Lecture given upon receipt of the 1997 Nobel Prize for Medicine.
- Watson, J. D. (2006). *DNA: The secret of life*. New York: Knopf.

eukaryotes, prokaryotes, and viruses – to generate the macromolecular machinery for life. Gene expression process may include several steps of regulation – transcription, RNA splicing, RNA stability, translation, and posttranslational modification of a protein – that determine the expressed product/s from each gene and control the timing, location (cell type), and amount of gene expression. Gene expression is tightly modulated and therefore serves the basis for cellular differentiation and morphogenesis, the versatility and adaptability of any organism, and evolutionary change.

In genetics, gene expression is the most fundamental level at which genotype gives rise to the phenotype. The genetic code is “interpreted” by gene expression, and the properties of the expression products give rise to the organism’s phenotypes, such as appearance, behavior traits, and diseases.

A number of human diseases are known to result from the disruption of gene expression, including cancer, neurological diseases, etc. Thus, research of gene regulation is of high relevance to human health.

Gene Expression

Ornit Chiba-Falek
Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC,
USA

Synonyms

[Expression pattern](#); [Gene regulation](#); [Regulation of expression](#)

Definition

The process by which information from a gene is used to synthesize a functional gene product. These products are often proteins, but some gene code to functional (noncoding) RNAs, such as rRNA, tRNA, and miRNA. The process of gene expression is used by all known organisms –

Cross-References

- [Gene](#)
- [Genetics](#)
- [Genotype](#)
- [RNA](#)

References and Further Readings

- Barash, Y., Calarco, J. A., Gao, W., Pan, Q., Wang, X., Shai, O., et al. (2010). Deciphering the splicing code. *Nature*, 456, 53–59.
- Barrett, T., et al. (2010). NCBI GEO: Archive for functional genomics data sets—10 years on. *Nucleic Acids Research*, 39(Database), D1005–D1010.
- Birney, E., et al. (2007). Identification and analysis of functional elements in 1% of the human genome by the ENCODE pilot project. *Nature*, 447(7146), 799–816.
- Emilsson, V., Thorleifsson, G., Zhang, B., Leonardson, A. S., Zink, F., et al. (2008). Genetics of gene expression and its effect on disease. *Nature*, 452, 423–428.

Gene Methylation

► [Methylation](#)

Gene Regulation

► [Gene Expression](#)

Gene-Environment Interaction

Rong Jiang
Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral
Sciences, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

[GxE](#)

Definition

Gene-environment interaction refers to the fact that the effects of genes on a disease often depend on the environment or that the effect of environment depends on the genotype (Dick 2011).

In genetic studies of interest in Behavioral Medicine, gene-environment interaction is often used to describe the effect of genes modified by environmental exposure, including behavioral, nutritional, infectious, chemical, and physical factors, or any other nongenetic factors. It has been increasingly accepted that most common diseases involves not only genetic and environmental causes but also interactions between the two, which may account for a significant proportion of the heritabilities of a complex disease (Ober and Vercelli 2011). The study of gene-environment interaction has faced some

challenges, such as the environmental measurement errors or lack of true full range of environments (Dick 2011), the need for large sample size (Hunter 2005), the study methodologies, and the underlying biological mechanisms of gene-environment interaction.

Cross-References

- [Complex Traits](#)
- [Gene](#)
- [Genotype](#)
- [Heritability](#)
- [Phenotype](#)

References and Further Readings

- Dick, D. M. (2011). Gene-environment interaction in psychological traits and disorders. *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology*, 7, 383–409.
- Hunter, D. J. (2005). Gene-environment interactions in human diseases. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 6(4), 287–298.
- Ober, C., & Vercelli, D. (2011). Gene-environment interactions in human disease: Nuisance or opportunity? *Trends in Genetics*, 27(3), 107–115.

Gene-Gene Interaction

Rong Jiang
Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral
Sciences, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Epistasis](#); [GxG](#)

Definition

In genetics, gene-gene interaction (epistasis) is the effect of one gene on a disease modified by another gene or several other genes. Biological epistasis, i.e., the gene-gene interaction has

biological basis, is in contrast to statistical epistasis that describes deviation from additivity in a linear statistical model (Gilbert-Diamond and Moore 2011). Epistasis can be contrasted with dominance, which is an interaction between alleles at the same gene locus. Gene-gene interaction is a common component of genetic architecture of human complex diseases; however, it is difficult to detect. The multilocus genotype combinations for gene-gene interaction increase exponentially and require larger sample size as well as more computation burden. The commonly used linear models have limited ability to detect non-linear patterns of gene-gene interaction. Multifactor dimensionality reduction (MDR) has been developed to detect gene-gene interaction as a nonparametric method by pooling genotypes from multiple SNPs without assuming genetic model (Moore and Williams 2009). Another alternative to linear models is combinatorial partitioning method (CPM) (Nelson et al. 2001). The biological interpretation of gene-gene interaction identified from a statistical model may be the most important and most difficult to understand the disease etiology.

Cross-References

- [Complex Traits](#)
- [Gene](#)
- [Genotype](#)
- [Locus](#)
- [Single Nucleotide Polymorphism \(SNP\)](#)

References and Further Readings

- Gilbert-Diamond, D., & Moore, J. H. (2011). Analysis of gene-gene interactions. *Current protocols in human genetics*, 70:1.14.1–1.14.12 © 2011 by Wiley. <https://doi.org/10.1002/0471142905.hg0114s70>.
- Moore, J. H., & Williams, S. M. (2009). Epistasis and its implications for personal genetics. *The American Journal of Human Genetics*, 85(3), 309–320.
- Nelson, M. R., Kardia, S. L., Ferrell, R. E., & Sing, C. F. (2001). A combinatorial partitioning method to identify multilocus genotypic partitions that predict quantitative trait variation. *Genome Research*, 11(3), 458–470.

General Adaptation Syndrome

Tavis S. Campbell, Jillian A. Johnson and
Kristin A. Zernicke
Department of Psychology, University of Calgary,
Calgary, AB, Canada

Synonyms

[Responses to stress](#); [Stress reactivity](#)

Definition

The general adaptation syndrome (GAS) is a theory of stress responding proposed by Hans Selye. It refers to the nonspecific, generalized responses of the body in response to stress and provides a framework for the link between stress and chronic illness (Selye 1956). This syndrome is divided into three stages: alarm reaction, resistance, and exhaustion.

Description

Hans Selye (1907–1982), known as “the father” of the stress field, was a Hungarian endocrinologist who emigrated to Montreal, Canada, in 1932. He pioneered research on the biological effects of exposure to “noxious agents,” or stress, subsequently developing the concept of the general adaptation syndrome.

Development

Selye first wrote about the general adaptation syndrome in the British journal *Nature* in 1936 when he was an assistant at McGill University’s Biochemistry Department in Montreal. In an experiment designed to discover a new hormone, he injected laboratory rats with ovarian extracts in hopes of uncovering changes in the organism that could not be caused by any previously known sex

hormones. He found that following injection of the extract, the adrenal cortex of the rats became enlarged; the thymus, spleen, and lymph nodes all showed signs of deterioration; and deep bleeding ulcers were formed in the stomach and duodenum which eventually lead to death. Interestingly, Selye discovered that each of these symptoms could be increased or decreased in severity by adjusting the amount of extract injected into the animals. To Selye, these symptoms appeared to be the workings of a previously unknown hormone. However, later experiments with placental, pituitary, kidney, spleen, and numerous other organ extracts, all resulted in the expression of the same symptoms, causing Selye to reject the idea that these symptoms were being produced by a specific substance.

Further animal experiments conducted by Selye with rats demonstrated that if the animals were damaged by acute nonspecific noxious agents (e.g., cold exposure, surgical injury, excessive exercise, and injection of toxic drugs), a typical syndrome appeared, with symptoms that were independent of the type of noxious agent, representing instead a general response to the stimulus. Selye noted that this syndrome developed in three stages. The first stage began 6–48 h after the noxious agent was administered and involved several key changes in physiological functioning, including a rapid decrease in the size of the thymus, spleen, lymph glands, and liver, disappearance of fat tissue, and a drop in body temperature. The second stage began 48 h after the initial administration of the noxious agent and was characterized by an overall decrease in general parasympathetic activity, including a cease in general body growth, a deterioration of the gonads, discontinued milk production in lactating animals, and an increase in general sympathetic activity, including enlarged adrenal glands and hyperplasia of the thyroid. Upon continued treatment with the noxious agent, the animals would build up resistance such that by the end of the second stage, the appearance and function of the organs returned to normal. However, with further administration, after a period of approximately 1–3 months and depending on the severity and dose of the noxious agent, the animals

eventually lost their ability to resist, and physical symptoms, similar to those seen in the first stage, began to reappear. This apparent exhaustion of the ability to resist was labeled as the third stage.

Selye compared his findings in the laboratory to clinical experiences with humans. Similar to animals, Selye noticed that physical and emotional stress in humans induced a specific, predictable pattern of health outcomes that, if left untreated, would lead to infection, illness, disease, and eventually death. He noted that the recommended treatments for almost all of these complaints were those that were useful to patients suffering from almost any illness, including rest, changes in diet, and temperature regulation. Given that there was only one recommended treatment for such a wide range of generalized complaints, Selye thought that there may be a mechanism in the body whose response to external noxious agents was general. He proposed that certain changes take place within the nervous and endocrine systems within the body during stress that can disrupt normal physiological mechanisms, triggering disease or illness. This specific pattern of changes is now known as the general adaptation syndrome, which occurs in three generalized stages (Selye 1956).

General Adaptation Syndrome Stages

Stage 1, the *alarm reaction*, occurs when the body's defenses against a stressor are mobilized through activation of the sympathetic nervous system. This reaction is known to activate body systems involved in the fight-or-flight response. Epinephrine (adrenaline) is released, heart rate and blood pressure increase, respiration becomes faster, blood is diverted away from the internal organs toward the skeletal muscles, sweat glands increase production, and gastrointestinal system activity is suppressed. These physiological reactions were believed by Selye to be adaptive for acute emergency situations. However, many modern stress situations involve prolonged exposure to stress and typically do not require an alarm response. The magnitude of the alarm reaction

may also depend on the degree to which the event is perceived as a threat.

If a stressful situation persists, the body's reaction will progress to stage 2, which Selye called the *resistance* stage. In this phase, physiological arousal remains high, although not as high as in the alarm reaction stage. The body attempts to adapt to the emergency by replenishing adrenal hormones. The duration of this stage depends on the severity of the stressor and the adaptive capacity of the organism. If the organism successfully adapts, the resistance stage will continue for a longer period of time. During this stage, an organism may appear unaffected, but physiologically, the body's internal functioning is active. Continued stress will lead to a stress-induced neurological changes and a breakdown of the hormonal system, leading to conditions known as the "diseases of adaptation," which Selye defined to include peptic ulcer, hypertension, hyperthyroidism, and immune deficiencies. At this point, there is a decrease in the organism's ability to cope with everyday events and hassles, possibly leading to behavior change (e.g., irritability, impatience, and increasing vulnerability to health problems).

If the stressful event persists to the point where resistance is no longer possible, the body enters the final stage of the general adaptation syndrome which Selye called *exhaustion*. At this point, the body's energy reserves are depleted. This stage is characterized by activation of the parasympathetic division of the autonomic nervous system (ANS). Under normal circumstances, activation of this division helps keep the body functioning in a balanced state. However, in the exhaustion stage, parasympathetic functioning is at an abnormally low level, causing an organism to become exhausted. If stress persists, the "diseases of adaptation" are present and physical deterioration or even death may occur.

Impact and Critique

Selye's breakthrough ideas about stress helped build an entirely new medical field based on the study of biological stress and its effects on the body. His research has inspired numerous

researchers and continues to make contributions to this day by providing a theoretical framework for connecting stress to illness and leading to the study of methods to help the body effectively deal with life's chronic demands.

The concept of the general adaptation syndrome aids in the understanding of how stress may be linked with an abundant source of health problems. Of specific interest is the role of the Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis activity in response to stress. Early life stress has been linked with malfunctions in the normal cycle and functioning of the HPA axis. Instead of reducing the production of hormones once the stress is removed or ended, the cycle may be ongoing, with the hypothalamus continuing to signal the adrenals to produce cortisol. Eventually, high cortisol levels may lead to a suppression of the immune system through increased production of interleukin-6. This increased production may lead to the exhaustion of the stress mechanism, resulting in fatigue and depression, apparent in research findings that suggest that stress and depression have a negative effect on the immune system. As a result of the prolonged attempts to resist the stressor, the body may eventually lose its ability to resist all together. This person may then be at a higher risk to contract a disease related to immune deficiency, such as an infection.

Prolonged stress may also lead to blockages in the arteries by fat and cholesterol released by the body as part of the stress response, possibly contributing to a heart attack or stroke. The body's reactions to stress may also manifest itself into a number of other illnesses such as depression, sleep disorders, hypertension, ulcers, and asthma.

The general adaptation syndrome theory has not gone unchallenged, however, by evidence that different stressors or emotional states may elicit autonomic specificity or unique patterning during experimental manipulation. Nevertheless, the theory of general adaptation syndrome is a cornerstone of behavioral medicine because it led to the study of the effects of stress and hormones on brain function, including research investigating the biological functioning of glucocorticoids.

References and Readings

- Selye, H. (1936). A syndrome produced by noxious agents. *Nature*, 138, 32.
- Selye, H. (1956). *The stress of life*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Selye, H. (1974). *Stress without distress*. Philadelphia: J.B. Lippincott.
- Selye, H. (1976). *Stress in health and disease*. Reading: Butterworths.
- Selye, H. (1982). History and present status of the stress concept. In L. Goldberger & S. Breznitz (Eds.), *Handbook of stress: Theoretical and clinical aspects* (pp. 7–17). New York: Free Press.
- Szabo, S. (1985). The creative and productive life of Hans Selye: A review of his major scientific discoveries. *Experientia*, 41, 564–567.

General Internist

- [Primary Care Physicians](#)
- [Primary Care Providers](#)

General Population

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

The general population is the entire population of individuals with a characteristic of interest, such as a particular disease or condition of clinical concern. It is differentiated from the subject sample chosen from that population for a particular study.

Description

The general population of interest in a particular case will differ from other general populations defined in other ways. For example, if a researcher is interested in testing a new behavioral intervention to lower blood pressure, the general population

would be all individuals with high blood pressure (hypertension). In other cases, it may be all individuals with type 2 diabetes mellitus. It can also be defined by previous experiences, that is, individuals who have ever smoked, regardless of whether they currently smoke.

The reason for differentiating the term “general population” from the subject sample is that a subject sample chosen for a study is (virtually) always smaller than the general population. Since there are tens of millions of individuals in the United States with hypertension, for example, an intervention cannot be tested on all individuals in the general population of individuals with hypertension. A subject sample must be chosen. The key challenge here is one of generalizability. Interest does not actually lie with the treatment’s therapeutic benefit for the particular individuals taking part in the study, but rather with how the treatment is likely to work for many more individuals comprising the general population. Therefore, great methodological care is required to ensure (to the greatest degree possible) that the subject sample is representative of the general population.

There are also statistical techniques that allow extrapolation of results from the subject sample to the general population. A useful parameter here is the confidence interval associated with a treatment effect, that is, the degree of therapeutic benefit offered by a treatment. Imagine that a behavioral intervention intended to lower blood pressure (let us just use systolic blood pressure in this example) is tested on 100 subjects, and that the average decrease in SBP is 8 millimeters of mercury (mmHg). The research question becomes: To what extent can this result be generalized to the general population on the basis of this one clinical study? Statistical methodology allows us to place a confidence interval around the treatment effect obtained, which is referred to as a point estimate, since it is an estimate of the “truth” in the general population based on the data collected here. Confidence intervals can be created for any percentage greater than zero and less than 100%, but a common and useful one is the 95% confidence interval. Imagine that this was done for the data from our hypothetical example, and the 95% confidence interval placed around the point estimate

of 8 mmHg had a lower limit of 4 mmHg and an upper limit of 12 mmHg (in such cases, the limits will always lie symmetrically around the point estimate). These confidence intervals allow us to make the following statement with regard to the general population:

The data obtained from this single trial are compatible with a treatment effect in the general population as small as 4 mmHg and as large as 12 mmHg, and our best estimate is 8.00 mmHg.

In more formal statistical language, the 95% confidence interval (the interval from the lower limit to the upper limit) is a range of values that is likely to cover, with 95% confidence, the true but unknown general population treatment effect.

Cross-References

► [Generalizability](#)

General Practice

► [Family Practice/Medicine](#)

General Practitioner (GP)

► [Primary Care Providers](#)

Generalizability

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

It is noted in the entry entitled “► [Demographics](#)” that when reporting a research study it is necessary to provide a summary of the relevant demographic characteristics of the subjects who participated in the study. The fundamental goal

of an individual research study is to provide information that allows a well-reasoned indication of how the general population would respond to the intervention of interest. If all subjects are younger than 30 years of age, it would be unreasonable to claim that the results of a study provided useful information regarding how individuals older than 60 years of age might respond.

Clinicians constantly face the challenge of assessing, on the basis of research evidence collected on subject samples participating in clinical research studies, how best to treat their individual patients. As a research scientist and a physician, Katz (2001) captured the issues here succinctly and eloquently:

The inapplicability of some evidence to some patients is self-evident. Studies of prostate cancer are irrelevant to our female patients; studies of cervical cancer are irrelevant to our male patients. Yet beyond the obvious exclusions is a vast sea of gray. If our patient is older than, younger than, sicker than, healthier than, ethnically different from, taller, shorter, simply different from the subjects of a study, do the results pertain?

It is reasonable to acknowledge that the more closely the nature of a study's subject sample reflects the general population to whom one wishes to generalize the information gained from the study, the more likely it is that the evidence can indeed be generalized in a clinically informative manner. However, it must always be realized that the practice of medicine, including behavioral medicine, also requires the clinician to include knowledge of and reasoning about each individual patient. This is discussed further in the entry titled “► [Clinical Decision-Making](#).”

Cross-References

► [Clinical Decision-Making](#)

References and Further Readings

Katz, D. L. (2001). *Clinical epidemiology and evidence-based medicine: Fundamental principles of clinical reasoning and research*. Thousand Oaks: Sage.

Genetic Consultation

► Genetic Counseling

Genetic Counseling

Bonnie S. LeRoy
Department of Genetics Cell Biology and
Development, University of Minnesota,
Minneapolis, MN, USA

Synonyms

Genetic consultation

Definition

“Genetic counseling is the process of helping people understand and adapt to the medical, psychological and familial implications of genetic contributions to disease. This process integrates the following:

- Interpretation of family and medical histories to assess the chance of disease occurrence or recurrence.
- Education about inheritance, testing, management, prevention, resources and research.
- Counseling to promote informed choices and adaptation to the risk or condition” (Resta et al. 2006, p. 77).

This definition of genetic counseling was adopted by the National Society of Genetic Counselors in 2006, and it remains the standing definition of the service. The definition expresses the basic nature of the service which is grounded in the science of genetics as well as related sciences and the importance of competence in psychosocial counseling skills on the part of the practitioner. Genetic counseling as a formal, free-standing health-care profession in the United States began in 1969 with the development of

the first graduate program at Sarah Lawrence College (Stern 2009). The service, as an integral part of the health-care field, is in various stages of formal development in many countries around the world (Transnational Alliance for Genetic Counseling 2011).

Currently, genetic counseling services are provided to patients and families with genetic concerns that cover a broad range of medical conditions (Hampel et al. 2009). Genetic counseling has become an integral clinical service in the perinatal medicine, oncology, neurology, cardiology, pediatrics, public health, and many more health-care arenas (National Society of Genetic Counselors 2011).

Assessing and addressing the psychosocial needs of patients and families are essential components of genetic counseling (Fine et al. 1996). The relationship between the counselor and the patient is critical to effective genetic counseling where the major goals of a better informed and empowered patient who is able to use genetic information to make important life and health-care decisions are met (McCarthy Veach et al. 2007).

Cross-References

- Cardiology
- Public Health

References and Further Readings

- Fine, B. A., Baker, D. L., Fiddler, M. B., & ABGC Consensus Development Consortium. (1996). Practice-based competencies for accreditation of and training in graduate programs in genetic counseling. *Journal of Genetic Counseling*, 5, 113–121.
- Hampel, H., Grubs, R. E., Walton, C. S., Nguyen, E., Breidenback, D. H., Nettles, S., The American Board of Genetic Counseling 2008 Practice Analysis Advisory Committee including, Callanan, N., Corliss, M., Fox, S., Hiraki, S., Ku, L., Neufeld-Kaiser, W., Riley, B., Taylor, J., & Weik, L. (2009). Genetic counseling practice analysis. *Journal of Genetic Counseling*, 18, 205–216.
- McCarthy Veach, P., Bartels, D. M., & LeRoy, B. S. (2007). Coming full circle: A reciprocal-engagement model of genetic counseling practice. *Journal of Genetic Counseling*, 16, 713–728.

- National Society of Genetic Counselors. (www.nsgc.org). Accessed 2011.
- Resta, R., Bowles Biesecker, B., Bennett, R. L., Blum, S., Estabrooks Hahn, S., Strecker, M. N., et al. (2006). A new definition of genetic counseling: national society of genetic counselors' task force report. *Journal of Genetic Counseling*, 15, 77–83.
- Stern, A. M. (2009). A quiet revolution: The birth of the genetic counselor at Sarah Lawrence College, 1969. *Journal of Genetic Counseling*, 18, 1–11.
- Transnational Alliance for Genetic Counseling. <http://tagc.med.sc.edu/index.asp>. Accessed 2011.

Genetic Material

► DNA

Genetic Testing, Psychological Implications

Julianne O'Daniel
Illumina Inc, San Diego, CA, USA

Synonyms

Psychosocial implications

Definition

Genetic testing, psychological implications refers to the potential cognitive and emotional consequences of undergoing genetic testing and learning the test result.

Description

Psychological Impact of Genetic Testing

The potential psychological impact of genetic testing can be affected by numerous factors including the purpose of testing and the test result as well as the individual's expectations, perception of the disease in question, and coping style. In general, however, studies appear to indicate that although

genetic testing may have an immediate negative effect for individuals receiving “bad news,” the long-term psychological impact is often negligible or even slightly positive (Broadstock et al. 2000; Cameron and Muller 2009).

Pretest counseling is an important step to minimize the potential for negative effects. This discussion should include a review of the purpose of testing, potential results, and medical consequences of results as well as patient expectations and plans for dealing with the results. Some genetic tests require an informed consent from the individual. This document may also help guide the pretest counseling discussion.

Purpose of Testing

The purpose of testing can have a significant impact on how the individual responds to the genetic result. Currently, genetic tests can be used for numerous scenarios such as:

- Identifying an underlying diagnosis
- Determining carrier status
- Predicting future disease (e.g., Huntington disease, BRCA 1/2)
- Guiding therapeutic management (e.g., pharmacogenetic testing)
- Estimating risk for common disease

Diagnostic testing in a symptomatic individual may bring a sense of relief or closure to know the genetic cause. In pediatric cases, determining the genetic cause may ease parent guilt about whether they did anything to cause the condition or raise parent guilt if the condition was inherited.

Predictive genetic testing is one of the most well-studied scenarios as the tested individual may live healthy and asymptomatic for many years with the knowledge of their molecular diagnosis and impending condition. Although the potential for negative psychological reactions and reduced quality of life is significant, research has generally demonstrated tested individuals cope well regardless of the test result (Fanos et al. 2011; Lammens et al. 2010; Mariotti et al. 2010). These studies may be positively biased,

however, as those who choose not to be tested have been under studied.

Genetic testing to learn one's estimated lifetime risk for common disease utilizes knowledge gleaned from genetic association studies and should be considered within the context of other biometric and family history indicators of risk. Studies have not demonstrated a significant psychological impact from this type of testing (O'Daniel et al. 2010).

Individual Perceptions, Expectations and Coping

An individual's prior perceptions of a disease or condition can significantly affect not only the information they expect to learn from a test but also what they believe the result means and how they respond to it. Preexisting perceptions may be informed by lived experiences especially in the case of a positive family history, by societal views and/or perceived stigma, and by a personal assessment of resources to deal with the condition. The relationship between these dynamic factors in regards to genetic testing has been described by several models including the Health Belief Model, Model of Stress and Coping, the Common Sense Model of self-regulation, and the Theory of Planned Behavior (Gooding et al. 2006; Marteau and Weinman 2006).

Cross-References

- Family Studies (Genetics)
- Gene
- Genetics
- Genome-Wide Association Study (GWAS)

References and Further Readings

- Broadstock, M., Michie, S., & Marteau, T. (2000). Psychological consequences of predictive genetic testing: A systematic review. *European Journal of Human Genetics*, 8(10), 731–738.
- Cameron, L. D., & Muller, C. (2009). Psychosocial aspects of genetic testing. *Current Opinion in Psychiatry*, 22(2), 218–223.

- Elger, B. S. (2010). Ethical, legal, and social issues in the genetic testing of minors. In K. P. Tercyak (Ed.), *Handbook of genomics and the family: Psychosocial context for children and adolescents* (pp. 485–521). New York: Springer.
- Fanos, J. H., Gronka, S., Wu, J., Stanislaw, C., Andersen, P. M., & Benatar, M. (2011). Impact of presymptomatic genetic testing for familial amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. *Genetics in Medicine*, 13(4), 342–348.
- Gooding, H. C., Organista, K., Burack, J., & Biesecker, B. B. (2006). Genetic susceptibility testing from a stress and coping perspective. *Social Science & Medicine*, 62(8), 1880–1890.
- Hadley, D. W., Letocha Ersig, A. D., & Holohan Quattrocchi, M. K. (2010). Guidelines and policies on genetic testing in children and families. In K. P. Tercyak (Ed.), *Handbook of genomics and the family: Psychosocial context for children and adolescents* (pp. 523–557). New York: Springer.
- Lammens, C. R., Aaronson, N. K., Wagner, A., Sijmons, R. H., Ausems, M. G., Vriends, A. H., et al. (2010). Genetic testing in Li-Fraumeni syndrome: Uptake and psychosocial consequences. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 28(18), 3008–3014.
- Mariotti, C., Ferruta, A., Gellera, C., Nespole, C., Fancellu, R., Genitrini, S., et al. (2010). Predictive genetic tests in neurodegenerative disorders: A methodological approach integrating psychological counseling for at-risk individuals and referring clinicians. *European Neurology*, 64(1), 33–41.
- Marteau, T. M., & Weinman, J. (2006). Self-regulation and the behavioural response to DNA risk information: A theoretical analysis and framework for future research. *Social Science & Medicine*, 62(6), 1360–1368.
- O'Daniel, J. M., Haga, S. B., & Willard, H. F. (2010). Considerations for the impact of personal genome information: A study of genomic profiling among genetics and genomics professionals. *Journal of Genetic Counseling*, 19(4), 387–401.

Genetics

Jeanette McCarthy¹ and J. Rick Turner²

¹Community and Family Medicine, Duke

University Medical Center, Durham, NC, USA

²Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Genetics focuses on heredity and its biological basis (genes). It is the science that examines how traits are passed from one generation to the next.

Various subfields can be identified. Robinson (2010) provided a simple but useful classification system, including the following:

1. Classical, or Mendelian, genetics, which describes how traits, physical or psychological characteristics, are passed from one generation to the next. The name Mendelian refers to Gregor Mendel, who had conducted scientific studies of the inheritance of traits in plants as far back as the 1860s, even though the significance of his work was not appreciated and acknowledged until the early twentieth century (see Edelson 1999). The name transmission genetics also conveys a similar meaning, focusing on how traits are transmitted from one generation to another.
2. Molecular genetics, which focuses on the physiochemical structure of DNA, ribonucleic acid (RNA), and proteins. Classical genetic studies, e.g., twin studies, can be conducted without any knowledge of molecular genetics: It is not necessary to know the biological basis of inheritance of traits to determine that there is a genetic influence in the inheritance of the trait. DNA is discussed in more detail shortly.
3. Population genetics, which looks at the genetic composition of large groups of individuals. It can be defined as the field studying the genetic diversity of a subset of a particular species. It searches for patterns that help identify and discuss the genetic signature of a particular group. This includes behavioral components of the genetic signature. Population genetics also provides insights into how the collective genetic diversity of a population influences the health of the individuals within the population, providing a direct link to its importance in Health Psychology and Behavioral Medicine.
4. Quantitative genetics, which employs sophisticated mathematical and statistical models to examine the statistical relationships between genes and the traits they code for, or encode. Quantitative genetics is interested in

estimating how much variation in a given trait is due to genetic inheritance and how much is due to the environment (and interactions between genes and environmental influences). Heritability is an assessment of how much influence is due to genetic makeup.

The general familiarity with the acronym DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) is such that the definition is almost never provided when using the acronym. Every time we watch a contemporary detective show on television we are almost waiting to hear about the DNA evidence that will indicate or refute a suspect's guilt. Nonetheless, the field of genetics existed well before the structure of DNA was proposed and published in 1953 by Francis Crick and Jim Watson (1953) and supportive evidence published in separate papers in the same issue of *Nature* by Rosalind Franklin and Maurice Wilkins (1953) and Wilkins et al. (1953). The word "proposed" is deliberately used since Watson and Crick used the following words at the start of their paper: "We wish to suggest a structure for the salt of deoxyribose nucleic acid (D.N.A.)." They concluded their paper with one of the most beautifully understated sentences in scientific literature: "It has not escaped our notice that the specific pairing we have postulated [specific base pairs bonding to each other – see the "► DNA" entry] immediately suggests a possible copying mechanism for the genetic material."

It was several years before definitive evidence was collected and published. In more recent years, molecular genetic knowledge has proved extremely helpful in many fields within Medicine, Behavioral Medicine, and Pharmaceutical Medicine.

Cross-References

- [DNA](#)
- [Gene](#)
- [Human Genome Project](#)

References and Further Readings

- Britannica. (2009). *The Britannica guide to genetics (Introduction by Steve Jones)*. Philadelphia: Running Press Book.
- de Geus, E. (2010). Quantitative genetics in behavioral medicine. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 399–422). New York: Springer.
- Edelson, E. (1999). *Gregor Mendel and the roots of genetics*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Emde, R. N., & Hewitt, J. K. (Eds.). (2001). *Infancy to early childhood: Genetic and environmental influences on developmental change*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Franklin, R., & Gosling, R. G. (1953). Molecular configuration in sodium thymonucleate. *Nature*, 171, 740–741.
- Manuck, S. B., & McCaffery, J. M. (2010). Genetics of stress: Gene-stress correlation and interaction. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 455–478). New York: Springer.
- Markon, K. E. (2010). Psychological genetics: Understanding the nature of psychological differences through etiology. In K. P. Tercyak (Ed.), *Handbook of genomics and the family: Psychosocial context for children and adolescents* (pp. 33–55). New York: Springer.
- Petrill, S. A., Plomin, R., DeFries, J. C., & Hewitt, J. K. (Eds.). (2003). *Nature, nurture, and the transition to early adolescence*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Plomin, R., DeFries, J. C., McClearn, G. E., & Rutter, M. (Eds.). (1997). *Behavioral Genetics* (3rd ed.). New York: W.H. Freeman and Company.
- Robinson, T. R. (2010). *Genetics for dummies* (2nd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley.
- Vimalaswaran, K. S., & Loos, R. J. F. (2010). Genetics of obesity and diabetes. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 499–521). New York: Springer.
- Watson, J. D. (2006). *DNA: The secret of life*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf.
- Watson, J. D., & Crick, F. H. C. (1953). A structure for deoxyribose nucleic acid. *Nature*, 171, 737–738.
- Wilkins, M. H. F., Stokes, A. R., & Wilson, H. R. (1953). Molecular structure of deoxypentose nucleic acids. *Nature*, 171, 738–740.

Genital Blisters, Sores, or Lesions

► Genital Herpes

Genital Herpes

Deidre Pereira¹ and Timothy S. Sannes²

¹Department of Clinical Health and Psychology, University of Florida, College of Public Health and Health Professions, Gainesville, FL, USA

²Department of Clinical and Health Psychology, College of Clinical Health and Health Professions, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL, USA

Synonyms

Genital blisters, sores, or lesions; Genital herpes infection; Herpes simplex virus (HSV) infection; HSV-1; HSV-2

Definition

Genital herpes is one of the most common sexually transmitted infections (STIs) in the United States. Genital herpes is caused by infection with herpes simplex virus 1 (HSV-1) and herpes simplex virus 2 (HSV-2), with the latter classification being the most common cause. About 1 out of every 6 individuals between the ages of 14 and 49 years old have genital herpes, many of whom are unaware that they are carrying the virus because they have not experienced any physical manifestations (Centers for Disease Control 2011).

Transmission of genital herpes from one person to another occurs through direct contact with an infected cutaneous or mucosal area, which may include areas with active herpes lesions as well as areas in which herpes lesions are not visible. Once a first or “primary” exposure to HSV occurs, physical manifestations are typically evident within a week and may include painful and pruritic (itchy) lesions on or around the genital area, swollen inguinal lymph nodes, flu-like symptoms, and fever. These lesions typically heal within 2–4 weeks (National Institute of Allergy and

Infectious Disease 2011). Following this acute phase of infection, the virus becomes latent within the dorsal root ganglia of the spinal cord. An infected individual carries the virus for life; however, recurrent or “secondary” outbreaks are typically less severe and less frequent and primarily involve localized lesions.

An infected individual may reduce the risk of transmitting genital herpes to a sexual partner through proper condom use. However, it is important to note that infected individuals may “shed” virus before herpes lesions become visible or in between herpes outbreaks, meaning that sexual contact with proper condom use may still result in the transmission of genital herpes. As a result, individuals infected with HSV are recommended to abstain from sexual activity when symptoms of herpes are present (Centers for Disease Control).

Health care providers typically diagnose genital herpes by inspecting the infected area and taking a swab of the lesion to look for the presence of HSV. Additionally, blood samples may be collected to assess for the presence of HSV-1 or HSV-2 antibodies in the blood in between herpes outbreaks (U.S. Preventive Services Task Force 2011).

Currently, there is no cure for genital herpes. However, outbreaks can be managed with antiviral medications. These antiviral medications are often effective for controlling the duration of an outbreak and the pain associated with herpes lesions. There is also some evidence that antiviral therapy may reduce the risk for genital herpes recurrence (National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease).

People with genital herpes may be at increased risk for contracting human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), the virus that causes AIDS, from an HIV-infected sexual partner. Furthermore, individuals who are immunosuppressed, including individuals living with HIV and those undergoing chemotherapy for cancer, may experience serious physical illness if infected with HSV, because their immune systems are less able to mount a proper immune response to an acute infection (National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease). Finally, pregnant women with genital herpes may be at risk for transmitting HSV to a newborn during a vaginal delivery. Newborns

may experience serious or fatal illness following exposure to HSV. As such, mothers with active genital herpes will usually deliver their babies via Cesarean section (U.S. Preventive Services Task Force).

References and Readings

- Center for Disease Control and Prevention. (2011). *Genital herpes – CDC fact sheet*. Retrieved March 25, 2011, from <http://www.cdc.gov/std/herpes/stdfact-herpes.htm>
- National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease, Department of Health and Human Services, National Institutes of Health. (2011). *Genital herpes*. Retrieved February 26, 2011, from <http://www.niaid.nih.gov/topics/genitalHerpes/Pages/default.aspx>
- U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. (2011, March). *Screening for genital herpes: Recommendation statement* (AHRQ Publication No. 05-0573-A). Retrieved May 26, 2011, from <http://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/uspstf05/herpes/herpesrs.htm>

Genital Herpes Infection

► Genital Herpes

Genome-Wide Association Study (GWAS)

Matthew A. Simonson
Institute for Behavioural Genetics, Boulder,
CO, USA

Synonyms

GWA study; Whole-genome association study (WGAS)

Definition

Genome-wide association studies are designed to identify points of common variation in DNA that are associated with particular traits, including

diseases and responses to medication (Wang et al. 2005). By examining the genetic variants associated with traits related to health and disease, it is hoped that a better understanding of the etiology of physical and mental disorders, as well as responses to treatment, will be gained (Carlson et al. 2004).

Individual differences between people in traits, such as personality, eye color, and height, are all highly influenced by genetic variation (Yang et al. 2010). The development of rare medical conditions, such as hemophilia and muscular dystrophy, is also influenced by genetic variation, while the same is true for more common forms of illness, such as heart disease, cancer, and obesity (Iles 2008). Understanding how our genetic architecture influences the development of disease is a very high priority for current medical science. One major ambition of the GWAS approach is leading to the development of better treatments that target illness with increased precision and reduced risks (Carlson et al. 2004).

DNA is a molecule that contains the genetic instructions that regulate cellular activity and ultimately plays a large part in the development of traits in living organisms (Watson and Crick 1953). The order of nucleotide bases in an organism's DNA determines how genetic instructions are executed, through the direct coding of proteins or through regulatory functions. Genetic variation is caused by differences in DNA sequence between individuals; these variants are referred to as *alleles* (Keller et al. 2011). When a difference in DNA sequence occurs at a single base position, it is called a single-nucleotide polymorphism, or a SNP (den Dunnen and Antonarakis 2000). Most of the time, SNPs have no biological effect; however, sometimes a single-nucleotide alteration can change the function of a gene, or the regulation of genes, and have an effect on cellular functioning (Wang and Moulton 2001).

Approximately 10 million common SNPs exist in the human genome (Gabriel et al. 2002). Recent research has demonstrated that the 10 million variants cluster into groups where the states of SNPs are correlated with each other (haplotypes) (International HapMap C 2003). By carefully

sampling the most informative SNPs from these haplotypes, much of the information on common genetic variants can be ascertained. Using DNA microarrays, the allelic state of hundreds of thousands of highly informative SNPs can be determined rapidly and at a low cost (Oliphant et al. 2002).

In a genome-wide association study, the association between alleles (states of SNPs on a microarray) and a phenotype of interest is assessed. When a trait is dichotomous (affected or not), the genomes of two groups of people are compared. Subjects with some trait of interest (cases) are compared to people without this trait (controls). When a trait is continuous, such as height, associations between the state of SNPs and the degree of a continuous trait are examined. By examining which alleles are associated with the phenotype (or degree of phenotype), genetic differences between individuals can be identified (Hirschhorn and Daly 2005). GWAS is a hypothesis-free method of analysis, in the sense that no prior candidate allele is investigated for association with a phenotype; instead, the entire genome is scanned for significant associations (Kitsios and Zintzaras 2009).

Several factors can influence the validity of GWAS results and must be controlled for through methods of data cleaning. Some of these include:

Admixture/Ancestry. Spurious associations can arise when performing a GWAS on a sample composed of subjects from different ancestral populations. Part of the sample that shares common ancestry could have higher rates of the phenotype being investigated for nongenetic (e.g., cultural) reasons, resulting in alleles indicative of ancestry being associated with the trait in question rather than true risk alleles. By controlling for genetic ancestry, false associations can be avoided (Hirschhorn and Daly 2005).

Data Artifacts. Due to the large number of SNPs examined on a microarray, technical artifacts are likely to occur at some SNPs and can result in false associations. Several methods of data cleaning and study design exist for detecting and controlling for the effects of technical artifacts that exist in SNP data (Williams and Haines 2011).

Multiple Testing. The aim of multiple testing correction procedures used in a standard GWAS is to simultaneously maximize the likelihood of detecting a true association, if one exists, while at the same time minimizing false associations that are due to capitalizing on chance (Moskvina and Schmidt 2008).

Given the standard alpha level of 0.05, one expects to get an average of 5 false associations for every 100 independent tests performed on data where no true association exists. For genome-wide association studies, this fact presents a major problem for two reasons. The first is due to the excess of Type I errors (false positives) that will occur due to the very large number of tests for association between SNPs and disease that are being performed. The second problem is that the simple correction method commonly used to remove multiple testing bias from repeated independent tests, the Bonferroni correction, leads to an excess of Type II errors (failed detection of true associations) when applied to GWAS data, because regions of the genome are not entirely independent. Accepted correction values based on replication of results and permutation procedures have been developed to overcome these problems (Johnson et al. 2010).

Overall, GWAS has been very successful at identifying regions associated with disorders and phenotypes. However, the majority of these associated variants have only small effect sizes individually in terms of risk contribution (Clarke and Cooper 2010). With increased sample size, GWAS will likely provide further insight into the human genome. As sample sizes increase, the power to detect small effects increases. For example, a recent GWAS involving approximately 180,000 subjects was able to explain approximately 10% of the genetic variance in height while simultaneously identifying each significant locus that contributes to this estimate (Lango Allen et al. 2010).

Cross-References

- [Admixture](#)
- [Allele](#)

- [DNA](#)
- [Phenotype](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bouchard, J. (2004). Genetic Influence on Human Psychological Traits A Survey. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 13(4), 148–151.
- Carlson, C. S., Eberle, M. A., Kruglyak, L., & Nickerson, D. A. (2004). Mapping complex disease loci in whole-genome association studies. *Nature*, 429(6990), 446–452.
- Clarke, A. J., & Cooper, D. N. (2010). GWAS: Heritability missing in action? *European Journal of Human Genetics*, 18(8), 859–861.
- den Dunnen, J. T., & Antonarakis, S. E. (2000). Mutation nomenclature extensions and suggestions to describe complex mutations: a discussion. *Human Mutation*, 15(1), 7–12.
- Gabriel, S. B., Schaffner, S. F., Nguyen, H., Moore, J. M., Roy, J., Blumenstiel, B., et al. (2002). The structure of haplotype blocks in the human genome. *Science*, 296(5576), 2225–2229.
- Hirschhorn, J. N., & Daly, M. J. (2005). Genome-wide association studies for common diseases and complex traits. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 6(2), 95–108.
- Iles, M. M. (2008). What can genome-wide association studies tell us about the genetics of common disease? *PLoS Genetics*, 4(2), e33.
- International HapMap C. (2003). The international hapmap project. *Nature*, 426(6968), 789–796.
- Johnson, R. C., Nelson, G. W., Troyer, J. L., Lautenberger, J. A., Kessing, B. D., Winkler, C. A., et al. (2010). Accounting for multiple comparisons in a genome-wide association study (GWAS). *BMC Genomics*, 11, 724.
- Keller, M. C., Howrigan, D. P., & Simonson, M. A. (2011). Theory and methods in evolutionary behavioral genetics. In D. M. Buss & P. H. Hawley (Eds.), *The evolution of personality and individual differences*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Kitsios, G. D., & Zintzaras, E. (2009). Genome-wide association studies: Hypothesis-“free” or “engaged”? *Translational Research*, 154(4), 161–164.
- Lango Allen, H., Estrada, K., Lettre, G., Berndt, S. I., Weedon, M. N., Rivadeneira, F., et al. (2010). Hundreds of variants clustered in genomic loci and biological pathways affect human height. *Nature*, 467(7317), 832–838.
- Moskvina, V., & Schmidt, K. M. (2008). On multiple-testing correction in genome-wide association studies. *Genetic Epidemiology*, 32(6), 567–573.
- Oliphant, A., Barker, D. L., Stuelpnagel, J. R., & Chee, M. S. (2002). BeadArray technology: Enabling an accurate, cost-effective approach to high-throughput genotyping. *BioTechniques*, 32(Suppl. 56–58), 60–61.
- Wang, Z., & Moul, J. (2001). SNPs, protein structure, and disease. *Human Mutation*, 17(4), 263–270.

- Wang, W. Y., Barratt, B. J., Clayton, D. G., & Todd, J. A. (2005). Genome-wide association studies: Theoretical and practical concerns. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 6(2), 109–118.
- Watson, J. D., & Crick, F. H. (1953). Molecular structure of nucleic acids; a structure for deoxyribose nucleic acid. *Nature*, 171(4356), 737–738.
- Williams, S. M., & Haines, J. L. (2011). Correcting away the hidden heritability. *Annals of Human Genetics*, 75(3), 348–350.
- Yang, J., Benyamin, B., McEvoy, B. P., Gordon, S., Henders, A. K., Nyholt, D. R., et al. (2010). Common SNPs explain a large proportion of the heritability for human height. *Nature Genetics*, 42(7), 565–569.

Genomics

Jeanette McCarthy¹ and J. Rick Turner²

¹Community and Family Medicine, Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC, USA
²Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

The discipline of genomics is described slightly differently by different authorities. Brown (2009) defines it as the use of high-throughput molecular biology technologies to study large numbers of genes and gene products all at once in whole cells, whole tissues, or whole organisms. The Britannica Guide to Genetics (2009) describes it as the study of the structure, function, and evolutionary comparison of whole genomes, where the genome refers to the complete genetic complement of an organism.

The discipline of genetics is itself a relatively young science and is concerned with how traits are passed from one generation to the next. Since the advent of genomics more recently, the term transmission genetics is commonly used to represent what had previously been simply called genetics. The mathematics of transmission genetics were first described by Mendel in 1866 (see Edelson 1999), approximately 150 years ago. In contrast, while the word genome appeared relatively early in the twentieth century, genomics as a new form of experimental biology is a recent

phenomenon. Raw biological information, such as the sequence of nucleotide base pairs in a DNA molecule, is itself complex, and the discipline of bioinformatics is useful. The next step is to integrate all of this information and to address questions about what is happening in very complex systems when tens of thousands of different genes are interacting simultaneously (Brown 2009). An understanding of genomes and genomic technologies builds upon the knowledge of transmission genetics (how hereditary information is transmitted from one generation to the next) and molecular biology (how genes function to control biochemical processes within the cell).

Cross-References

- [Genetics](#)
- [Human Genome Project](#)

References and Further Readings

- Brown, S. M. (2009). *Essentials of medical genomics* (2nd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley-Blackwell.
- Dale, J. W., von Schantz, M., & Plant, N. (2012). *From genes to genomes: Concepts and applications of DNA technology* (3rd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley-Blackwell.
- Edelson, E. (1999). *Gregor Mendel and the roots of genetics*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Koehly, L. M., & McBride, C. M. (2010). Genomic risk information for common health conditions: Maximizing kinship-based health; promotion. In K. P. Tercyak (Ed.), *Handbook of genomics and the family: Psychosocial context for children and adolescents* (pp. 407–433). New York: Springer.
- Miller, G. E., & Cole, S. W. (2010). Functional genomic approaches in behavioral medicine. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 443–453). New York: Springer.
- Nolte, I. M., McCaffery, J. M., & Sneider, H. (2010). Candidate gene and genome-wide association studies in behavioral medicine. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 423–441). New York: Springer.
- O'Neill, S. C. (2010). Public health genomics. In K. P. Tercyak (Ed.), *Handbook of genomics and the family: Psychosocial context for children and adolescents* (pp. 577–593). New York: Springer.
- Primrose, S. B., & Twyman, R. M. (2004). *Genomics: Applications in human biology*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.
- Venter, J. C. (2007). *A life decoded: My genome, my life*. New York: Penguin.

Genotype

Laura Rodriguez-Murillo¹ and Rany M. Salem^{2,3}

¹Department of Psychiatry, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

²Broad Institute, Cambridge, MA, USA

³Cambridge Center, Cambridge, MA, USA

Definition

The genotype of an individual refers to their specific genetic constitution. It can apply to the entire genetic constitution of an individual or to the combination of alleles at a specific locus.

All individuals carry two homologous copies of their genome, one copy inherited from their father and one copy from their mother. If the gene or position contains variation, the variants are called alleles. Alleles for each gene contain differences in their nucleotide sequence and may codify proteins with different properties. If the allele inherited from the mother is different from the allele inherited from the father, then the individual is termed heterozygous for that trait or gene. If these two alleles are identical, then that person is termed homozygous for that trait or gene. The genotype for one gene describes its allelic composition.

In diploid organisms, a maximum of two alleles are present for each gene or trait. For instance, in Huntington's disease, an affected individual's genotype consists of at least one allele of the gene that carries a mutation, i.e., a change in the DNA sequence, that leads to a defective protein, called Huntingtin (Walker 2007). However, in general, more than two alleles can exist depending on the type of variation of interest.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Allele](#)
- ▶ [DNA](#)
- ▶ [Gene](#)
- ▶ [Heterozygous](#)
- ▶ [Homozygous](#)
- ▶ [Locus](#)

References and Further Readings

- Lewis, R. (2005). *Human genetics. Concepts and applications* (7th ed.). Boston: McGraw-Hill Science/Engineering/Math.
- Strachan, T., & Read, A. P. (2003). *Human molecular genetics* (3rd ed.). London/New York: Garland Science/Taylor & Francis Group.
- Walker, F. O. (2007). Huntington's disease. *Seminars in Neurology*, 27(02), 143–150.

Geographic Information System (GIS) Technology

Phil Jones

School of Geography, Earth and Environmental Sciences, University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Computer cartography](#); [Spatial analysis](#)

Definition

Geographic information systems (GIS) are a means of visualizing and analyzing spatial data, usually in the form of maps (Longley et al. 2005).

Description

An early example of a GIS was John Snow's work mapping cases of cholera in nineteenth-century London, revealing outbreaks clustered around a contaminated water pump. Modern GIS can be used to analyze a range of material from scanned maps and aerial photographs to topographic models and boundary data. Different forms of quantitative and qualitative data can thus be connected to points and regions within geographic space. In the past, proprietary desktop systems such as ArcGIS and MapInfo dominated the GIS field, although open source alternatives such as QGIS and R are becoming increasingly popular.

Professionals in a wide variety of fields, including urban planning, resource management, epidemiology, surveying, and the military, rely on GIS to undertake spatial analysis. Even at a quite simple level, the outputs of GIS analysis can be striking. An example might be a choropleth map, where different regions are shaded according to characteristics – such as the level of social deprivation – to reveal areas where these characteristics are concentrated. GIS treats datasets as *layers*, allowing them to be compared by placing one on top of another. Thus, clusters of patients suffering from heart disease in areas with high levels of social deprivation can be examined against public transport corridors to determine the accessibility of specialist treatment centers. In a more advanced vein, it is possible to test whether there is a statistically significant relationship between incidents of respiratory problems and people living downwind of an incinerator or to model different flooding scenarios and weigh the costs of improving flood defenses against likely property damage.

GIS increasingly underpins a variety of web and mobile services, meaning that many people use GIS daily without even realizing it. These kinds of mobile and web services rarely provide users with the analytical capacity of desktop systems, focusing more on simple data visualization. Smartphone technology has, however, made it much easier for individuals to collect their own geo-tagged data, for example, tracks of jogging routes or photos linked to the location where they were taken and uploaded to social media sites.

As many more people have started to use GIS on a daily basis, researchers have become increasingly interested in *crowdsourced* data (Crampton 2009). Here, nonspecialists gather spatial data of different kinds and post them to a central database. One example of this is in disaster management, where it can be difficult for survey teams to cover a sufficiently wide area to accurately determine where best to intervene and thus can benefit from local eyes on the ground. Another example is the way in which many researchers have applied data mining techniques to geo-located material from Twitter and other sources of “big data” to investigate a range of issues from weather forecasting to modeling traffic flows. This, of course, raises

questions about the accuracy and reliability of the data gathered – as well as the ethics of using data that users have surrendered control over – but it offers tremendously interesting possibilities for research and other applications.

Cross-References

- [Built Environment](#)
- [Epidemiology](#)

References and Further Readings

- Crampton, J. W. (2009). Cartography: Maps 2.0. *Progress in Human Geography*, 33(1), 91–100.
- Longley, P., Goodchild, M., Maguire, D., & Rhind, D. (2005). *Geographic information systems and science*. Chichester: Wiley.
- Wood, D., & Fels, J. (1993). *The power of maps*. London: Routledge.

Geriatric Depression Scale

Ivan Molton
Department of Rehabilitation Medicine,
University of Washington, Seattle, WA, USA

Synonyms

[GDS](#); [GDS-15](#); [GDS-4](#)

Definition

The Geriatric Depression Scale (GDS) is a self-report instrument designed to assess depressive symptoms in older adults. The GDS was first developed as a 30-item measure by Jerome Yesavage and colleagues at Stanford University (Yesavage et al. 1983), in response to concerns that available depression inventories contained many items that overlapped with common aging processes (including dementia, sleep disturbance, and gastrointestinal symptoms). The scale was

therefore designed to avoid somatic symptoms (such as psychomotor retardation or pain) as well as questions that the authors believed would create defensiveness in older persons (such as those assessing sexual interest or suicidality). To simplify responding, the authors chose a yes/no scale for each item. In contrast to measures based around criteria for major depression taken from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, the GDS was not originally intended to be a diagnostic or screening measure, although it is frequently used as such in clinical settings. A 15-item short form of this measure and a 4/5 item ultra-short form have also been developed (the GDS-15 and GDS-4, respectively) (Mitchell et al. 2010; Sheikh and Yesavage 1986). Although subscales are sometimes used in research efforts, the scale is generally treated as unidimensional, with the total number of “yes” responses used as the outcome.

The GDS has generally performed well in psychometric and clinical testing. In a recent meta-analysis of 25 studies conducted in medical settings and nursing homes, Mitchell et al. (2010) reported overall sensitivity of the GDS-30 as 81.9% when compared to a structured clinical interview for major depression, with a specificity of 77.7%. Similar results were demonstrated in tests of the GDS-15 (sensitivity = 84.3%; specificity = 73.8%). Although only a handful of studies have examined the psychometric properties of the GDS-4/5, early results are promising, with reported sensitivity of 92.5% and specificity of 77.2% (Mitchell et al. 2010).

Despite the fact that the GDS is one of the only scales to be developed specifically to assess depression in older persons, most studies comparing its performance to “gold standard” measures (such as the Patient Health Questionnaire, the Center for Epidemiologic Studies Depression Scale, or the Beck Depression Inventory II) show it to be equally effective in terms of diagnosing major depression (Laprise and Vezina 1998; Watson et al. 2009). However, there is some evidence that the GDS may outperform other standardized measures of depression in older adults for whom there is a significant overlap of medical symptoms (Low and Hubley 2007;

Thompson et al. 2011). It has also been suggested in the literature that some clinicians prefer the GDS over other measures because they find specific questions to be more clinically relevant to their older patients.

The usefulness of the GDS in cognitive impaired older adults is equivocal. Several prospective studies comparing GDS scores to clinician ratings in older adults with cognitive impairment have demonstrated no (Laprise and Vezina 1998) or very small differences (Burke et al. 1988) in sensitivity, reliability, and validity. Other studies have demonstrated that although the GDS is unaffected in those with mild cognitive impairment, it performs poorly in severely affected Alzheimer’s patients (Debruyne et al. 2009).

The GDS has now been translated from English into a number of other languages, including Spanish, Korean, Japanese, Cantonese, Portuguese, and Arabic.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Beck Depression Inventory \(BDI\)](#)
- ▶ [Depression: Measurement](#)

References and Readings

- Burke, W. J., Miller, J. P., Rubin, E., Morris, J. C., & Berg, L. (1988). Reliability of the Washington University clinical dementia rating (CDR). *Archives of Neurology*, 45, 31–32.
- Debruyne, H., Van Buggenout, M., Le Bastard, N., Aries, M., Audenaert, K., De Deyn, P. P., et al. (2009). Is the geriatric depression scale a reliable screening tool for depressive symptoms in elderly patients with cognitive impairment? *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry*, 24, 556–562.
- Laprise, R., & Vezina, J. (1998). Diagnostic performance of the geriatric depression scale and the beck depression inventory with nursing home residents. *Canadian Journal on Aging*, 17, 401–413.
- Low, G. D., & Hubley, A. M. (2007). Screening for depression after cardiac events using the beck depression inventory-II and the geriatric depression scale. *Social Indicators Research*, 82, 527–548.
- Mitchell, A. J., Bird, V., Rizzo, M., & Meader, N. (2010). Which version of the geriatric depression scale is most useful in medical settings and nursing homes?

- Diagnostic validity meta-analysis. *The American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry*, 18, 1066–1077.
- Sheikh, J. I., & Yesavage, J. A. (1986). Geriatric depression scale (GDS) recent evidence and development of a shorter version. In T. L. Brink (Ed.), *Clinical gerontology: A guide to assessment and intervention* (pp. 165–173). New York: Haworth Press.
- Thompson, A., Liu, H., Hays, R. D., Katon, W. J., Rausch, R., Diaz, N., et al. (2011). Diagnostic accuracy and agreement across three depression assessment measures for Parkinson's disease. *Parkinsonism & Related Disorders*, 17, 40–45.
- Watson, L. C., Zimmerman, S., Cohen, L. W., & Dominik, R. (2009). Practical depression screening in residential care/assisted living: Five methods compared with gold standard diagnoses. *The American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry*, 17, 556–564.
- Yesavage, J. A., Brink, T. L., Rose, T. L., & Lum, O. (1983). Development and validation of a geriatric depression screening scale: A preliminary report. *Journal of Psychiatric Research*, 17, 37–49.

Geriatric Medicine

Barbara Resnick
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

Care of older adults

Definition

By definition, geriatrics is a subspecialty of medicine that focuses on providing health care to older adults, generally considered to be those 55 years of age and older. The goal of geriatric care is to focus on health promotion and disease prevention and optimize quality of life versus length of life. Moreover, much of the focus is on use of behavioral interventions to accomplish these outcomes whenever possible.

Geriatric medicine is interdisciplinary, and to be provided at the highest level, it requires input from nursing, social work, physical therapy, occupation therapy, speech therapy, psychology,

nutrition, and pharmacy, among others. The focus of care tends to be more syndrome than disease driven and addresses such things as functional performance, falls, urinary incontinence, frailty, congestive heart failure, and dementia, among others.

Description

Given the central importance of prevention and disease/syndrome management in care of older adults, knowledge of behavioral medicine is critical to the training and practice of those in geriatric medicine. At the same time, the behavioral interventions and approaches used for those who provide care to older adults are different than those used with younger individuals. For example, Stage of Change focused interventions may not be as effective for smoking cessation among older adults compared to those who are younger and motivational interviewing may not be useful for those who are older with cognitive impairment.

The special knowledge and skill set of those who practice geriatric medicine is reflected by the ability to identify disease and the atypical presentation of disease among these individuals. For example, symptoms of an infection in older adults often are vague and nonspecific, and the only indication of a problem may be acute delirium or a fall. Pneumonia, for example, may or may not present with fever, but will often present as dehydration, confusion, or a fall.

The management of disease among older adults is also different and central to geriatric medicine. For example, older adults require specific attention to medications and are at particularly risk to complications from polypharmacy. Those with expertise in geriatric medicine need to decipher the need for and appropriate use of medications for multiple medical disorders and counsel older adults about the safety and efficacy of using over-the-counter medications and herbals. The challenges of frailty, complex comorbidity, different patterns of disease presentation, slower response to treatment, and requirements for social support call for special medical skills.

Those with a knowledge of geriatric medicine understand that the presentations of illness among older adults is often nonspecific and thus any presenting problem may be indicative of an acute medical problem. Geriatricians also address and in fact focus on clinical problems such as falls, immobility, incontinence, and confusion as well as adverse drug reactions. Geriatrics tend to manage a broad range of illnesses, acute and chronic, such as stroke, heart disease, infections, diabetes, delirium, and the dementias.

At its core, geriatric medicine requires comprehensive assessment of older adults. This involves working closely with other members of the interdisciplinary team such as nurses, therapists, pharmacists, dietitians, social workers, and many other health professionals. There is an increased focus and need for interdisciplinary teamwork as the number of older adults increases and those with expertise in geriatric medicine decrease.

Those that practice geriatric medicine do so out of a true dedication to care of older adults and consider it an honor to interact with these individuals. The American Geriatrics Society provides some insight about the wonderful benefit of this type of work on their webpage. Examples of comments made by those include the following: “Often, when you work with older people you stumble into a moment of drama when you’re listening to them tell a story. It’s fine to read history in books, but to talk with someone who’s lived it is precious. That’s one of the joys of geriatric practice;” and “Perhaps the most satisfying aspect of geriatrics for me is the opportunity to meet the people who are the history of our nation.”

United States medical school graduates (USMDs) are choosing specialties other than geriatrics due in part to compensation given for the years of additional training. This will have a major impact on the availability of physicians with expertise in care of older adults. It is anticipated that by 2050 there will be 1.6 geriatricians/10,000 people. To address the increased need for more individuals with knowledge of geriatric medicine, educational programs across all disciplines are

attempting to integrate geriatric coursework into programs and there is a trend toward interdisciplinary educational endeavors to further facilitate training in geriatric medicine.

Cross-References

► [Gerontology](#)

References and Readings

American Geriatrics Society. Accessed October, 2011, from <http://www.americangeriatrics.org/>
Geriatrics for Specialists. Accessed September, 2011, from <http://specialists.americangeriatrics.org/>
Institute of Medicine Report. *Retooling for an Aging America*. Accessed September, 2011, from <http://www.iom.edu/Reports/2008/Retooling-for-an-Aging-America-Building-the-Health-Care-Workforce.aspx>

Geriatrics

► [Gerontology](#)

Gerontology

Barbara Resnick
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Geriatrics](#); [Medical specialty](#)

Definition

Gerontology stems from the Greek words “geron” which means “old man” and “logy” which means “study of.” Gerontology is the study of the social, psychological, and biological aspects of aging.

Gerontology is often confused with the term geriatrics, which addresses the medical aspects of aging with a focus on disease and disease management.

Gerontology is the study or management of aging-related issues and may include healthy aspects of aging as well as age-related disease. It also includes the study of aging within society and the impact that this has on society. Information learned through the work of gerontologists can be applied to policies and programs and to the development of systems and models of care within communities.

A critically important aspect of gerontology is the interdisciplinary aspect of this work. Gerontology includes and requires input from medicine, psychological, sociology, physiology, etc. The complexity of aging-related issues requires this interdisciplinary approach.

The field of gerontology has grown since the first early gerontologists back in the 1940s. Interdisciplinary gerontology organizations were developed such as the Gerontological Society of America in 1945 and the first academic research center devoted exclusively to the study of aging, the Ethel Percy Andrus Gerontology Center at the University of Southern California likewise was established around this time. Approximately 20 years later in 1967, the nation's first master's degree programs in gerontology were initiated with grants provided by the U.S. Administration on Aging. In 1975 the University of Southern California's Leonard Davis School of Gerontology became the country's first school of gerontology within a university and, shortly thereafter, offered the first Ph.D. degree in gerontology. Since that time, a number of other universities have formed departments or schools of gerontology or aging studies and established interdisciplinary gerontology PhD programs.

The increased interest in gerontology is in response to the rapidly growing number of older adults in the United States. Moreover, it is anticipated that the number of individuals over the age of 85 will increase from 5.3 million to 21 million by 2050 (<http://www.answers.com/topic/gerontology#ixzz1bTu2NTaA>, Aging Stats: <http://www.agingsta>

[ts.gov/agingstatsdotnet/Main_Site/Data/2008_Documents/Population.aspx](http://www.agingstatsdotnet/Main_Site/Data/2008_Documents/Population.aspx)). To best respond and manage the physical and psychosocial health needs of this rapidly growing group of individuals, there is a critical need for more individuals to consider gerontology as a profession whether this be from a clinical perspective or research. The opportunities within gerontology are prevalent within academic settings, in service areas such as retirement housing, assisted living, exercise programs, health care, adult education, travel, and entertainment. Gerontology has helped expand our scientific knowledge base related to aging issues for the older adults and the aging community and the need for knowledge explosion in this area is great.

Cross-References

► [Geriatric Medicine](#)

References and Readings

- Bengtson, V. L., & Schair, K. W. (1999). *Handbook of theories of aging*. New York: Springer Publishing.
- Binstock, R. H., & George, L. K. (2001). *Handbook of aging and the social sciences*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.
- Birren, J. E. (1964). *The psychology of aging*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice Hall.

Gestation

Pearl La Marca-Ghaemmhami¹ and
Ulrike Ehlert²

¹Department of Psychology, Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy, University of Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland

²Department of Psychology, University of Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland

Synonyms

[Gravidity](#); [Pregnancy](#)

Definition

Gestation is the period of time during which the fetus develops in the uterus of a woman. It begins with conception and ends with birth.

The word originates from the Latin verb *gestare*, meaning to bear. When a woman is carrying more than one fetus, as is the case with twins or triplets, the term “multiple gestation” or “multi-fetal gestation” is used.

The term “gravida”, which originates from the Latin adjective *gravidus*, meaning pregnant or laden, refers to a woman who is currently pregnant. The term “primigravida” describes a woman who has become pregnant for the first time. A “nulligravida” is a woman who has never been pregnant before. The description “gravida 0”, “gravida 1”, gravida 2”, etc. refers to the number of pregnancies a woman has had including a current one.

The term “primipara”, which originates from the Latin verb *parere*, meaning to give birth or to produce, describes a woman who for the first time has given birth to one or more fetuses with a gestational age of 20 or more weeks. “Nullipara” refers to a woman who has never given birth before and never carried a pregnancy to 20 weeks of gestation or beyond. The description “para 0”, “para 1”, “para 2”, etc. refers to the number of times a woman has been delivered.

Description

Determining the stage of gestation accurately is essential in monitoring the growth and development of the unborn child and identifying the best possible treatment in case of complications. In the past, different methods of measuring the beginning of gestation led to confusion and inconsistent usage of terminology. For instance, *ovulation age* is the term used by embryologists who measure the beginning of gestation from ovulation. Ovulation describes the release of a mature egg (ovum) into the fallopian tube, which can occur up to 24 h prior to fertilization. *Postconceptional age* calculates the duration of gestation from the time of conception. However, women often do not know the exact time of ovulation or conception.

Therefore, it has become practice to calculate the beginning of gestation from the first day of the last menstrual cycle which normally takes place approximately 2 weeks prior to ovulation. In order to establish clarity, the Committee on Fetus and Newborn (COFN) of the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) recommends the usage of the term *gestational age* as the time elapsed from the first day of the last menstrual cycle until the day of delivery (Engle & The American Academy of Pediatrics 2004). This method has proven reliable in estimating a normal duration of gestation and adds up to approximately 40 weeks or 280 days. In cases of pregnancy achieved by assisted reproductive techniques (where the precise date of conception can be determined), the length of gestation adds up to 38 weeks or 266 days. In such cases, 2 weeks are added to the conceptional age in order to monitor fetal development and growth outcome in a standardized fashion and to be able to compare results across studies.

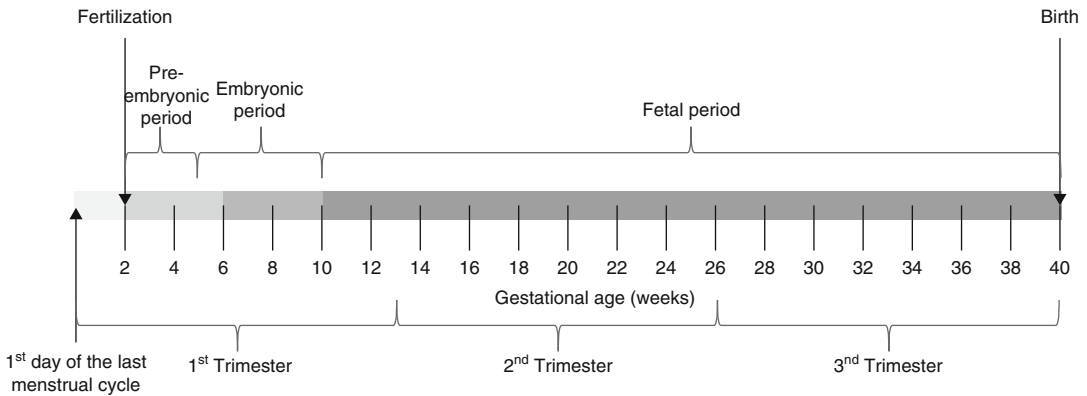
The gestational period can be clustered into three phases that are approximately of 3 calendar months duration or 13–14 weeks long (Cunningham et al. 2010) (Fig. 1). These three trimesters can be regarded as reference intervals in the progression of gestation and fetal development. When dealing with eventual obstetric problems, the more precise method of calculating gestational age uses completed weeks and days, for example, 28 + 2 weeks of gestation, for 28 completed weeks and 2 days.

The first two weeks after fertilization is referred to as the pre-embryonic period. The embryonic period is defined as beginning 3 weeks after fertilization and extends to week 8 after fertilization or to week 10 after the last menstrual cycle. It is followed by the fetal period which ends at birth (Fig. 1).

A Biopsychosocial Approach to Pregnancy

Pregnancy-Induced Alterations of the Endocrine and the Autonomic Nervous System (ANS)

All female organ systems go through remarkable anatomical and functional adaptation during



Gestation, Fig. 1 Timeline of gestation and terminology

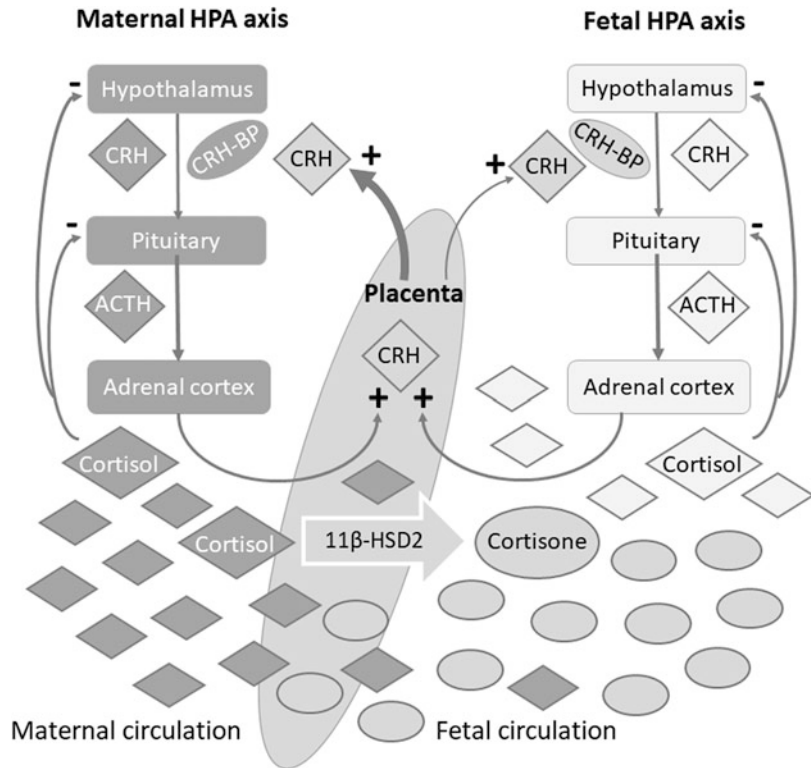
gestation. The fact that these drastic alterations return to the pre-pregnant state after delivery and lactation is equally fascinating.

The Maternal Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal (HPA) Axis

The maternal neuroendocrine system undergoes significant changes as well. The placenta, a transient endocrine organ that develops inside the maternal uterus during gestation and supplies the fetus with oxygen and nutrients, becomes an additional source of hormone production. From approximately week 7 to week 9 of gestation onward, the placenta begins secreting corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) into the maternal bloodstream (Frim et al. 1988; Riley and Challis 1991) (Fig. 2) causing maternal plasma levels to rise steadily from week 16 of gestation onwards with an additional exponential increase during the third trimester (McLean and Smith 1999). Ultimately, CRH concentrations in the maternal blood reach levels that are 1000-fold higher than in the nonpregnant state (Mastorakos and Ilias 2003). Placental CRH stimulates the maternal HPA axis by increasing the secretion of adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) from the maternal pituitary and consequently, cortisol from the maternal adrenal cortex. Eventually, plasma cortisol levels during the second and third trimester increase two- to three-fold the non-pregnant values (Mastorakos and Ilias 2003). Therefore, pregnancy has also been described as a state of hypercortisolism.

In the nonpregnant state, cortisol regulates the HPA axis activity through a negative feedback mechanism. By contrast, during gestation cortisol has a stimulating effect on the CRH production in the placenta (La Marca-Ghaemmaghami and Ehlert 2015). However, the exponential rise of CRH does not lead to an overstimulation of the maternal HPA axis, because most CRH is bound to the CRH-binding protein (CRH-BP) thereby reducing its bioactivity (Mastorakos and Ilias 2003). While maternal plasma CRH concentrations continue to rise with progressing gestation, approximately 30 days before birth CRH-BP levels suddenly drop by about 50% (McLean and Smith 1999). The result is an abundance of free bioactive CRH and a cascade of reactions is triggered leading to the onset of labor and delivery. Findings have linked higher CRH levels during the early second trimester to a higher risk for preterm delivery (McLean and Smith 1999). When a certain level of CRH is reached during pregnancy, the onset of parturition (i.e., the process of giving birth) is activated. It has therefore been suggested that CRH functions as a “placental clock” that determines the duration of gestation (McLean and Smith 1999). However, not all pregnant women with elevated CRH levels during the second trimester go on to give birth prematurely. This and other open questions have led researchers to rethink the “placental clock hypothesis” and search for an alternative explanation regarding the function of placental CRH in the timing of delivery (Gangestad et al. 2012). For

Gestation, Fig. 2 The maternal and fetal hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axes and the activity of the placental enzyme 11 β -hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 2 (11 β -HSD2)



placental CRH also plays an important role in the regulation of glucose availability to the fetus via maternal cortisol (amongst other mechanisms). Glucose is the main energy source for the fetus. Higher placental CRH concentrations might, therefore, reflect an increased need of the fetus for nutrients in order to secure growth and survival in face of adverse developmental conditions in utero (Gangestad et al. 2012). If the metabolic demands of the fetus begin exceeding the availability of glucose, then it is better for the fetus to be born. Birth onset is triggered. After birth, the infant's nutritional needs are met through lactation. Taken together, the association between CRH and the timing of birth seems to be more complex than originally assumed, and further research is needed.

Although gestation induces profound changes of the maternal HPA axis, the circadian rhythm of ACTH and cortisol are nevertheless maintained during pregnancy (De Weerth and Buitelaar 2005; La Marca-Ghaemmaghami and Ehlert 2015). However, according to current knowledge, the

secretion of CRH does not exhibit an apparent diurnal pattern (Mastorakos and Ilias 2003).

After delivery, the placenta is expelled from the body and maternal cortisol levels return to normal. The state of hypercortisolism is followed by a temporary suppression of CRH secretion from the hypothalamus (Mastorakos and Ilias 2003).

The Fetal HPA Axis and its Interaction with the Placenta and the Maternal HPA Axis

The fetal adrenal cortex becomes detectable between week 6 and 7 of gestation (i.e. 4–5 weeks post conception) (Ishimoto and Jaffe 2011). From as early as week 10 of gestation, it is capable of synthesizing cortisol in response to ACTH secretion (Goto et al. 2006). During this early period of gestation, a negative feedback mechanism regulates the HPA axis of the fetus. Later, however, small amounts of placental CRH enter into the fetal circulation through the umbilical vein and begin stimulating the fetal HPA axis (Riley and Challis 1991). In addition, maternal cortisol is to a certain degree able to cross the placenta and

stimulate the fetal HPA axis (Fig. 2). Approximately on third of fetal cortisol levels or less are ascribed to maternal levels (Beitins et al. 1973; Mastorakos and Ilias 2003). Fetal cortisol finds its way through the umbilical arteries back into the placenta and stimulates the production of placental CRH (Ishimoto and Jaffe 2011). Thus, by the end of gestation a positive feedback loop is established. The resulting substantial increase of cortisol in the fetal circulation is necessary for the development and maturation of the fetal organs, such as the brain and the lungs. An overexposure to glucocorticoids can, however, have detrimental effects on the fetus. The placental enzyme 11 β -hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 2 (11 β -HSD2) protects the fetus from excessive exposure to maternal cortisol by converting it into its inactive metabolite, cortisone (Harris and Seckl 2011). Studies with pregnant rats show that an acute maternal stress experience causes the activity of 11 β -HSD2 to be upregulated by 160%, whereas prior chronic stress exposure inhibits its enzymatic functioning (Welberg et al. 2005). Similar findings with pregnant women are beginning to emerge (Ghaemmamghami et al. 2014; La Marca-Ghaemmamghami et al. 2016; O'Donnell et al. 2012).

The Maternal ANS During Gestation

Maternal blood volume begins to increase during the first trimester. At 32–34 weeks of gestation, it can reach levels of up to 45% above the pre-pregnant values (De Weerth and Buitelaar 2005). This expansion in blood volume, also called hypervolemia, results from an increase in plasma and red blood cell volume. It serves the functions of meeting the metabolic requirements of the enlarged uterus, providing enough nutrients to the placenta and fetus, enabling blood flow back to the heart when the mother is in a supine or erect position, and protecting her from excessive blood loss at delivery.

During gestation, the maternal resting heart rate (HR) is elevated by approximately 10 beats per minute and from week 5 of gestation there is an increase in cardiac output. This increase is caused by the heart rate acceleration and by a decrease in systemic vascular resistance. The

latter originates from a vasodilatory effect of progesterone and prostaglandins. Correspondingly, arterial blood pressure gradually falls. After reaching a nadir at 24–26 weeks of gestation, these levels begin to rise again until delivery (Cunningham et al. 2010).

In late gestation, the uterus pushes against the pelvic veins and the inferior vena cava aggravating venous return from the lower body. As a result, maternal HR, cardiac output, and blood pressure are influenced by the body position.

Conflicting findings have been reported concerning epinephrine and norepinephrine that range from no changes to decreased or even increased levels during gestation (De Weerth and Buitelaar 2005). The diurnal rhythm of epinephrine and norepinephrine, however, seems to be preserved.

With regard to heart rate variability (HRV), the high frequency (HF) component reflecting the parasympathetic branch of the ANS seems to be decreased in comparison to nonpregnant women, while the low frequency (LF) component representing the sympathetic branch seems to show no differences (Klinkenberg et al. 2009). Findings indicate no alterations in the balance between the sympathetic and parasympathetic branches during gestation. But conflicting results exist as well (Ekholm et al. 1997).

Little is known about the activity of the salivary enzyme alpha-amylase (sAA) during gestation. Its secretion is mainly under the control of the sympathetic branch of the ANS. Similar to epinephrine and norepinephrine, it is unclear whether basal sAA levels change with advancing gestation (Giesbrecht et al. 2013; Nierop et al. 2006a; Salvolini et al. 1998). Some researchers have found no significant differences in late gestation compared the nonpregnant state. Others have reported lower levels in pregnant women during the third compared to the second trimester and compared to nonpregnant women.

The Fetal ANS and its Interaction with the Placenta and the Maternal ANS

A early form of the fetal heart is apparent at approximately week 5 of gestation (i.e., 3 weeks post conception). During this time, the fetal

cardiovascular system is established and the fetal heart starts beating rhythmically. Fetal HR is used as an easily measurable and reliable indicator of fetal wellbeing. Measuring fetal HR and HRV over a longer period of time, particularly in early gestation, has been technically challenging, and the majority of findings to date are based on the second half of pregnancy. Our understanding will increase with technological advancements. What is known is that, between 7–8 weeks of gestation, the fetal heart beats at an average rate of 110 beats per minute (bpm). With progressing development of the heart, fetal HR initially increases to 170 bpm at 11–12 weeks of gestation and then slowly declines to 140–150 bpm by mid-pregnancy and ultimately, to 130–140 bpm by term (DiPietro et al. 2015; Hornberger and Sahn 2007). In contrast, fetal HRV increases across the second half of gestation (DiPietro et al., 2015). Stability in individual HR and HRV patterns appear at approximately week 31 of gestation. The development of fetal HR and HRV is closely tied to the development of the fetal sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems, the medulla oblongata, and the development of higher cortical regions. There is emerging evidence indicating that HR and HRV during the fetal period is predictive of HR and HRV in early infancy (DiPietro et al. 2007).

The interaction between the maternal and fetal ANS is complex and bidirectional (DiPietro et al. 2015; Marzbanrad et al. 2015; Monk et al. 2003; Van Leeuwen et al. 2014). Maternal and fetal HR exhibit short periods of synchronization with an average duration of approximately 15 seconds (Van Leeuwen et al. 2014). The fetus is able to couple his or her HR signal to that of the mother for a very short period. This ability seems to increase with advancing gestation while concomitantly the time lag of the fetal response decreases. Interestingly, the fetus provides feedback to the maternal ANS, as demonstrated by short periods where fetal HR signals proceed maternal HR responses (Marzbanrad et al. 2015). The transfer of information from fetus to mother seems to decrease towards the end of gestation. It is assumed that the short-term coupling between

maternal and fetal HR is mediated via auditory (e.g., fetal auditory perception of the maternal heart beat), mechanic, and endocrine stimuli.

Maternal epinephrine and norepinephrine are capable of traversing the placental barrier. However, similar to maternal cortisol, placental enzymes (i.e., monoamine oxidase and catechol-O-methyltransferase) regulate the transplacental passage of maternal catecholamines by inactivating them (Saarikoski 1983).

Stress Reactivity

Pronounced maternal stress and anxiety during gestation is related to dysregulated physiological stress systems, as manifested for instance by altered baseline values of biomarkers of the maternal HPA and ANS. Moreover, maternal stress and anxiety is also linked to pregnancy complications (Mulder et al. 2002). In order to better understand these associations, it is essential to examine the acute maternal stress response of the HPA axis and the ANS under controllable circumstances. In studies using standardized laboratory stressors (the cold pressor test, the mental arithmetic test, or the Stroop color-word test) comparing pregnant women of different trimesters with nonpregnant women, the physiological stress response appears to be increasingly attenuated with progressing gestation (De Weerth and Buitelaar 2005). It has therefore been assumed that pregnant women become less sensitive to the impact of stress with advancing gestation. Similar results have been found in studies using the Trier Social Stress Test and the cortisol awakening response (CAR), the latter of which measures the stress response in a more natural but nevertheless standardized setting (Entringer et al. 2010). However, conflicting findings exist as well and thus, more systematic research using multiple repeated assessments of the maternal stress response from early to late gestation is needed in order to conclude whether, and if so, under what circumstances, the stress response truly becomes more attenuated with advancing gestation (La Marca-Ghaemmaghami and Ehlert, 2015).

While a number of studies have reported maternal psychological factors (e.g., anxiety, stress, and depression) during pregnancy to be associated with altered responses of the maternal HPA axis and ANS, others have not been able to confirm such a link. However, increased maternal cortisol responses to standardized psychosocial stressors have been associated with a less favorable neonatal birth outcome, including a shorter length of gestation, decreased neonatal size and lower weight at birth.

Medical Complications During Gestation

Women suffering from obstetric complications often experience anxiety about their own well-being and the health of their unborn child. They additionally may need to be admitted to a hospital for treatment and observation. These women can benefit greatly from psychological support interventions (Weidner et al. 2010).

Following are a few common medical complications of gestation:

- **Fetal growth restriction** is defined as fetal weight that is at or below the tenth percentile for gestational age. Intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR) is an often-used synonym.
- **Gestational diabetes** describes a form of maternal diabetes (high blood sugar) that begins (or is diagnosed for the first time) during gestation. The high blood sugar usually returns to normal levels after delivery.
- **Gestational hypertension** occurs when the maternal blood pressure rises rather than falls during the second (or third) trimester of gestation. In some cases, it may be a sign of beginning preeclampsia.
- **Preeclampsia**, formerly known as “toxemia of pregnancy”, is characterized by (a) high blood pressure, (b) edema, and (c) an excess of proteins in the urine. It can develop after the 20th week of gestation. In more severe cases, preeclampsia can affect the woman’s brain and lead to convulsions. This rare condition is diagnosed as **eclampsia**. Preeclampsia and eclampsia require very close monitoring of the pregnant woman’s medical condition. While delivery (either through labor induction and vaginal delivery or through elective cesarean delivery) is the only cure, obstetricians may consider delaying birth depending on the gestational age of the fetus in order to diminish the risk of mortality or morbidity due to prematurity. If left untreated, preeclampsia and **eclampsia** can result in fatal complications for mother and child.
- The **HELLP syndrome** is thought to be a severe manifestation of preeclampsia. The acronym stands for hemolysis (H; breakdown of red blood cells), elevated liver enzymes (EL), and low platelet count (LP). It is a syndrome with a series of symptoms such as headaches, nausea and vomiting, abdominal pain, high blood pressure, and visual problems. Like preeclampsia, the HELLP syndrome can lead to serious life-threatening complications for mother and child if not treated quickly. Again, delivery is the only cure.
- **Hyperemesis gravidarum** is severe, persistent, and uncontrollable nausea and vomiting during gestation that may lead to weight loss, electrolyte disturbance, and dehydration. This condition is not to be confused with morning sickness which occurs in many pregnant women.
- **Spontaneous abortion** (miscarriage) is defined as the involuntary loss of the fetus before 20 weeks of gestation. Over 80% of spontaneous abortions occur during the first 13 weeks of gestation. Many women do not realize that they are pregnant when this occurs. But, if the pregnancy is realized and abortion occurs, mother and father often experience feelings of bereavement and grief. Psychological interventions can help here as well (Diamond and Diamond 2016).
- **Preterm birth** defines a birth before 37 weeks of gestation. It can result from (a) preterm delivery by cesarean section or induction of labor due to severe maternal or fetal complications (e.g., preeclampsia), (b) spontaneous unexplained preterm labor, or (c) preterm

premature rupture of membrane (PPROM). Studies have associated pregnancy anxiety, prenatal depression, and chronic stress with preterm birth and **low birth weight** (which is defined as birth weight of 2500 g or less).

Psychosocial and Behavioral Factors Influencing Gestation

Psychosocial and behavioral factors can have a strong influence on the course of gestation and have been associated with pregnancy complications and adverse birth outcome. While the detrimental influence of poor health behavior such as smoking, alcohol, drug abuse, malnutrition, inadequate weight gain, and physical strain are well established, the negative impact of psychosocial stress is receiving growing attention (Dunkel Schetter 2011; van den Akker 2012).

Psychological Maladaptation During Gestation

Although pregnancy is ideally expected to be a happy experience in life, adapting to the physical, hormonal, psychological, social, and socioeconomic changes can be challenging. Quantitative and qualitative studies show that pregnant women commonly worry about the development and well-being of their unborn child, about the possibility of losing their pregnancy, about their own health, financial problems, and managing the responsibility of childcare after birth (Miller 2016). Considerable fear of childbirth is often expressed in research studies as well. Gestation is, therefore, also a vulnerable phase that can be sufficiently stressful to cause psychological maladaptation. While subclinical symptoms of anxiety, stress, and depression seem to be increased during pregnancy, it is unclear whether the prevalence rates of psychiatric disorders differ from the rates in nonpregnant women. Some studies suggest an increased risk of mental health problems in pregnant compared to nonpregnant women whereas

others have reported no heightened or even a decreased risk (Anderson et al. 2003; Matthey 2016; Misri et al. 2016; Vesga-López et al. 2008; van den Akker 2012). All in all, the prevalence rates show inconsistent results depending on factors such as the country or region in which the study was conducted, the measuring instruments used, whether psychiatric disorders or psychological symptoms were examined, or on how the investigated time period was defined (during pregnancy only, postpartum only, or both combined). For example, a report of the World Health Organization (WHO) and the United Nations Population Fund (UNFPA) in 2008 states that the prevalence rates of mental disorders during gestation tend to be twice as high in low- and middle-income countries compared to high-income countries. But, several studies in high-income countries (e.g., the UK, North America, Australia) have called the attention to maternal suicide as an important cause of death during gestation and the postpartum period (Khalifeh et al. 2016; World Health Organization and the United Nations Population Fund 2008).

Despite the unresolved question whether prevalence rates of psychiatric disorders are higher during gestation or not, there is general consensus that the rates worldwide are high and that mental health problems during gestation are greatly under-identified and untreated (Andersson et al. 2003; Vesga-López et al. 2008).

Examples of possible risk factors discussed in the literature for psychological maladaptation and psychiatric disorders during gestation are adolescent or unplanned pregnancy, an unsupportive marital or partner relationship, previous stillbirth, or repeated miscarriages. Also, women belonging to an ethnic minority seem to be at an increased risk of experiencing a depressive disorder during the prenatal or postpartum period. Further risk factors for psychological maladaptation include trauma, domestic violence, severe or multiple stressful life events, chronic stress, poverty, and lack of financial resources.

It is also important to note that fathers can suffer from perinatal mental health problems too and profit from professional psychological support as well.

Potential Consequences of Maternal Stress Overexposure and Mental Health Problems During Gestation

Being exposed to extreme or chronic stress and mental health problems during gestation can adversely affect the health and well-being of the pregnant woman and the development of her child in utero (Glover 2016; La Marca-Ghaemmaghami and Ehler 2015; Mulder et al. 2002; Nierop et al. 2006b; Reynolds et al. 2013; Schoch et al. 2018), particularly if the problems remain unidentified and untreated. Studies have reported a higher incidence of lower genital tract infections, spontaneous abortion, and postpartum depression in women who experienced substantial stress during pregnancy. Findings also point towards an increased risk for the children to be born preterm or with a reduced birth weight, to suffer from emotional, behavioral, and sleep problems in infancy, attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), dysregulated HPA axis functioning, and decreased brain gray matter in childhood, altered glucose-insulin metabolism, an increased likelihood of schizophrenia, and shortened telomere length in young adulthood. The association between maternal prenatal stress and long-lasting adverse health outcomes for the child seems to be independent of potential confounding genetic factors, adverse health behavior, or maternal postnatal mood (Reynolds et al. 2013). This fact has led researcher to investigate the hypothesis that disease in later life may at least in part have its origin in the prenatal period. A growing body of literature supports this hypothesis and the phenomenon has been termed “the developmental origins theory” or “fetal programming” (Barker 2007; Gluckman et al. 2008). It assumes that severe maternal stress can affect the environment of the developing fetus, for instance via increased maternal cortisol concentrations entering the fetal system (Harris and Seckl 2011). The fetus attempts to adapt by changing the function, metabolism, structure, and physiology of its organs. During critical developmental periods this adaptation process may result in permanent structural and functional changes (i.e., programming) and thus, have lifelong consequences for health and disease.

While research in this field is rapidly advancing, many questions with regard to the underlying mechanism of fetal programming by maternal stress still need to be clarified. Stress is a common life phenomenon and at times difficult to avoid. Pregnant women are highly sensitive to the potential negative consequences of prenatal stress. They tend to worry even more and feel guilty when experiencing stress. This can lead to a psychological vicious cycle. Therefore, it is crucial to, on the one hand, inform pregnant women that under normal conditions protective physiological mechanisms are present to safeguard the fetus from stress hormone overexposure (e.g., through the activity of the placental enzymes 11 β -HSD2, monoamine oxidase, and catechol-O-methyltransferase) and on the other hand, to educate pregnant women that much can be done psychologically to successfully manage stress.

Prevention and Treatment of Stress and Mental Health Problems During Gestation

A number of studies have found that social support, including partner support, has a buffering effect on maternal anxiety and depressive symptoms during gestation (e.g., Dunkel Schetter 2011; Misri et al. 2016). Social support has also been associated with better maternal health behavior, decreased maternal stress hormone levels, longer pregnancy duration, and higher neonatal birth weight. Further psychosocial resources, such as self-efficacy and the experience of daily uplifts, seem to attenuate the psychological as well as physiological response to acute stress in pregnant women (Nierop et al. 2008). Intervention studies focusing on relaxation techniques, like guided imagery, progressive muscle relaxation, passive relaxation, and listening to music, have found significant decreases in maternal stress hormone levels from before to after the relaxation intervention (e.g. Richter et al. 2012; Urizar et al. 2004). Psychotherapeutic interventions for pregnant women often incorporate relaxation techniques while additionally including mindfulness-based approaches, providing emotional support, working

on reframing maladaptive thoughts and stressful emotions, activating psychosocial resources (e.g., by including the partner), and enhancing problem solving strategies as well as the experience of self-efficacy. Several meta-analyses and literature reviews conclude that psychotherapeutic interventions are effective in treating mental health problems during pregnancy and in preventing postpartum depression (Dennis and Dowswell 2013; Metzler-Brody 2011; Richter et al. 2012; van Ravesteijn et al. 2017; Wenzel et al. 2016). Little is known whether prenatal maternal psychotherapy may affect child development positively. Preliminary results are promising, as they indicate higher developed orientation, engagement and emotion regulation skills in infants of mothers who received prenatal treatment compared to infants of mothers in the control group (Hayden et al. 2012).

The fact that severe psychological distress and mental health problems often remain unidentified and untreated indicates that much needs to be done in the field of prevention. A vital measure would be the correct and early identification of pregnant woman at risk and improving access to psychological health treatment. Barriers for pregnant women to disclose their stress burden and mental health problems include shame, lack of social support, fear of stigma, of being perceived as unfit for motherhood, and of losing parental rights. Barriers also exist on the side of the medical health care providers to identify women at risk. These include a lack of knowledge about mental health problems during gestation, their potential consequences, the treatment possibilities and referral options (Byatt et al. 2013). A closer collaboration between obstetricians and mental health providers is essential to assist pregnant women at risk to receive professional psychological support with as little delay as possible. The WHO and the UNFPA suggest including prenatal mental health care in general antenatal care.

Cross-References

- ▶ ACTH
- ▶ Alpha-Amylase
- ▶ Autonomic Nervous System (ANS)

- ▶ Birth Weight
- ▶ Cardiac Output
- ▶ Circadian Rhythm
- ▶ Corticotropin-Releasing Hormone (CRH)
- ▶ Cortisol
- ▶ Epinephrine
- ▶ Heart Rate
- ▶ Heart Rate Variability
- ▶ Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Axis
- ▶ In Vitro Fertilization
- ▶ Norepinephrine/Noradrenaline
- ▶ Postpartum Depression
- ▶ Pregnancy Outcomes: Psychosocial Aspect
- ▶ Stroop Color-Word Test
- ▶ Telomere and Telomerase
- ▶ Trier Social Stress Test

References and Readings

- Andersson, L., Sundström-Poromaa, I., Bixo, M., Wulff, M., Bondestam, K., & Åström, M. (2003). Point prevalence of psychiatric disorders during the second trimester of pregnancy: A population-based study. *American Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 189, 148–154.
- Barker, D. J. P. (2007). The origins of the developmental origins theory. *Journal of Internal Medicine*, 261, 412–417.
- Beitins, I. Z., Bayard, F., Ances, I. G., Kowarski, A., & Migeon, C. J. (1973). The metabolic clearance rate, blood production, interconversion and transplacental passage of cortisol and cortisone in pregnancy near term. *Pediatric Research*, 7, 509–519.
- Byatt, N., Biebel, K., Friedman, L., Debordes-Jackson, G., Ziedonis, D., & Pbert, L. (2013). Patient's views on depression care in obstetric settings: How do they compare to the views of perinatal health care professionals? *General Hospital Psychiatry*, 35, 598–604.
- Cunningham, F. G., Leveno, K. J. L., Bloom, S. L., Hauth, J. C., Rouse, D. J., & Spong, C. Y. (2010). *Williams obstetrics* (23rd ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- De Weerth, C., & Buitelaar, J. K. (2005). Physiological stress reactivity in human pregnancy: A review. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 29, 295–312.
- Dennis, C. L., & Dowswell, T. (2013). Psychosocial and psychological interventions for preventing postpartum depression. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 2, CD001134.
- Diamond, D. J., & Diamond, M. O. (2016). Understanding and treating the psychosocial consequences of pregnancy loss. In A. Wenzel (Ed.), *The Oxford handbook of perinatal psychology* (pp. 487–523). New York: Oxford University Press.

- DiPietro, J. A., Bornstein, M. H., Hahn, C. S., Costigan, K., & Achy-Brou, A. (2007). Fetal heart rate and variability: stability and prediction to developmental outcomes in early childhood. *Child Development*, 78(6), 1788–1798.
- DiPietro, J. A., Costigan, K. A., & Voegtline, K. M. (2015). Studies in fetal behavior: revisited, renewed, and reimagined. *Monographs of the Society for Research in Child Development*, 80, 1–94.
- Dunkel Schetter, C. (2011). Psychological science on pregnancy: Stress processes, biopsychosocial models, and emerging research issues. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 62, 531–558.
- Ekholm, E. M., Hartiala, J., & Huikuri, H. V. (1997). Circadian rhythm of frequency-domain measures of heart rate variability in pregnancy. *British Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology*, 104(7), 825–828.
- Engle, W. A., & American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Fetus and Newborn. (2004). Age terminology during the perinatal period. *Pediatrics*, 114, 1362–1364.
- Entringer, S., Buss, C., Shirtcliff, E. A., Cammack, A. L., Yim, I. S., Chicz-DeMet, A., et al. (2010). Attenuation of maternal psychophysiological stress responses and the maternal cortisol awakening response over the course of human pregnancy. *Stress*, 13(3), 258–268.
- Frim, D. M., Emanuel, R. L., Robinson, B. G., Smas, C. M., Adler, G. K., & Majzoub, J. A. (1988). Characterization and gestational regulation of corticotropin-releasing hormone messenger RNA in human placenta. *Journal of Clinical Investigation*, 82(1), 287–292.
- Gangestad, S. W., Caldwell Hooper, A. E., & Eaton, M. A. (2012). On the function of placental corticotropin-releasing hormone: A role in maternal-fetal conflicts over blood glucose concentrations. *Biological Review of the Cambridge Philosophical Society*, 87, 856–873.
- Ghaemmamghami, P., Dainese, S. M., La Marca, R., Zimmermann, R., & Ehlert, U. (2014). The association between the acute psychobiological stress response in second trimester pregnant women, amniotic fluid glucocorticoids, and neonatal birth outcome. *Developmental Psychobiology*, 56, 734–747.
- Giesbrecht, G. F., Granger, D. A., Campbell, T., Kaplan, B., & APron Study Team. (2013). Salivary alpha-amylase during pregnancy: Diurnal course and associations with obstetric history, maternal demographics, and mood. *Developmental Psychobiology*, 55, 156–167.
- Glover, V. (2016). Maternal stress during pregnancy and infant and child outcome. In A. Wenzel (Ed.), *The Oxford handbook of perinatal psychology* (pp. 268–283). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Gluckman, P., Hanson, M., Cooper, C., & Thornburg, K. (2008). Effect of in utero and early-life conditions on adult health and disease. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 359, 61–73.
- Goto, M., Piper Hanley, K., Marcos, J., Wood, P. J., Wright, S., Postle, A. D., Cameron, I. T., Mason, J. I., Wilson, D. I., & Hanley, N. A. (2006). In humans, early cortisol biosynthesis provides a mechanism to safeguard female sexual development. *The Journal of Clinical Investigation*, 116, 953–960.
- Harris, A., & Seckl, J. (2011). Glucocorticoids, prenatal stress and the programming of disease. *Hormones and Behavior*, 59, 279–289.
- Hayden, T., Perantie, D. C., Nix, B. D., Barnes, L. D., Mostello, D. J., Holcomb, W. L., Svrakic, D. M., Scherrer, J. F., Lustman, P. J., & Hershey, T. (2012). Treating prepartum depression to improve infant developmental outcomes: a study of diabetes in pregnancy. *Journal of Clinical Psychology in Medical Settings*, 19(3), 285–292.
- Hornberger, L. K., & Sahn, D. J. (2007). Rhythm abnormalities of the fetus. *Heart*, 93, 1294–1300.
- Ishimoto, H., & Jaffe, R. B. (2011). Development and function of the human fetal adrenal cortex: A key component in the feto-placental unit. *Endocrine Reviews*, 32, 317–355.
- Khalifeh, H., Hunt, I. M., Appleby, L., & Howard, L. M. (2016). Suicide in perinatal and non-perinatal women in contact with psychiatric services: 15 year findings from a UK national inquiry. *Lancet Psychiatry*, 3, 233–242.
- Klinkenberg, A. V., Nater, U. M., Nierop, A., Bratsikas, A., Zimmermann, R., & Ehlert, U. (2009). Heart rate variability changes in pregnant and non-pregnant women during standardized psychosocial stress. *Acta Obstetrica et Gynecologica Scandinavica*, 88, 77–82.
- La Marca-Ghaemmamghami, P., & Ehlert, U. (2015). Stress during pregnancy: Experienced stress, stress hormones, and protective factors. *European Psychologist*, 20, 102–119.
- La Marca-Ghaemmamghami, P., Dainese, S. M., La Marca, R., Zimmermann, R., & Ehlert, U. (2016). The acute autonomic stress response and amniotic fluid glucocorticoids in second-trimester pregnant women. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 77, 41–49.
- Marzbanrad, F., Kimura, Y., Palaniswami, M., & Khandoker, A. H. (2015). Quantifying the interactions between maternal and fetal heart rates by transfer entropy. *PLoS One*, 10, e0145672.
- Mastorakos, G., & Ilias, I. (2003). Maternal and fetal hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axes during pregnancy and postpartum. *Annals of the New York Academy of Science*, 997, 136–149.
- Matthey, S. (2016). Anxiety and stress during pregnancy and the postpartum period. In A. Wenzel (Ed.), *The Oxford handbook of perinatal psychology* (pp. 132–1149). New York: Oxford University Press.
- McLean, M., & Smith, R. (1999). Corticotropin-releasing hormone in human pregnancy and parturition. *Trends in Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 10, 174–178.
- Metzler-Brody, S. (2011). New insights into perinatal depression: Pathogenesis and treatment during pregnancy and postpartum. *Dialogues in Clinical Neuroscience*, 13, 89–100.
- Miller, L. J. (2016). Psychological, behavioral, and cognitive changes during pregnancy and the postpartum

- period. In A. Wenzel (Ed.), *The Oxford handbook of perinatal psychology* (pp. 7–25). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Misri, S., Abizadeh, J., & Nirwan, S. (2016). Depression during pregnancy and the postpartum period. In A. Wenzel (Ed.), *The Oxford handbook of perinatal psychology* (pp. 111–131). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Monk, C., Myers, M. M., Sloan, R. P., Ellman, L. M., & Fifer, W. P. (2003). Effects of women's stress-elicited physiological activity and chronic anxiety on fetal heart rate. *Journal of Developmental and Behavioral Pediatrics*, 24(1), 32–38.
- Mulder, E. J. H., Robles de Medina, P. G., Huizink, A. C., Van den Bergh, B. R. H., Buitelaar, J. K., & Visser, G. H. A. (2002). Prenatal maternal stress: Effects on pregnancy and the (unborn) child. *Early Human Development*, 70, 3–14.
- Nierop, A., Bratsikas, A., Klinkenberg, A., Nater, U. M., Zimmermann, R., & Ehlert, U. (2006a). Prolonged salivary cortisol recovery in second-trimester pregnant women and attenuated salivary alpha-amylase responses to psychosocial stress in human pregnancy. *The Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 91, 1329–1335.
- Nierop, A., Bratsikas, A., Zimmermann, R., & Ehlert, U. (2006b). Are stress-induced cortisol changes during pregnancy associated with postpartum depressive symptoms? *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 68, 931–937.
- Nierop, A., Wirtz, P. H., Bratsikas, A., Zimmermann, R., & Ehlert, U. (2008). Stress-buffering effects of psychosocial resources on physiological and psychological stress response in pregnant women. *Biological Psychology*, 78, 261–268.
- O'Donnell, K. J., Bugge Jensen, A., Freeman, L., Khalife, N., O'Connor, T. G., & Glover, V. (2012). Maternal prenatal anxiety and downregulation of placental 11 β -HSD2. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 37, 818–826.
- Reynolds, R. M., Labad, J., Buss, C., Ghaemmaghami, P., & Räikkönen, K. (2013). Transmitting biological effects of stress in utero: Implications for mother and offspring. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 38, 1843–1849.
- Richter, J., Bittner, A., Petrowski, K., Junge-Hoffmeister, J., Bergmann, S., Joraschky, P., & Weidner, K. (2012). Effects of an early intervention on perceived stress and diurnal cortisol in pregnant women with elevated stress, anxiety, and depressive symptomatology. *Journal of Psychosomatic Obstetrics and Gynaecology*, 33, 162–170.
- Riley, S. C., & Challis, J. R. (1991). Corticotrophin-releasing hormone production by the placenta and fetal membranes. *Placenta*, 12(2), 105–119.
- Saarikoski, S. (1983). Metabolic inactivation of noradrenaline in human placenta, umbilical cord and fetal membranes. *British Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology*, 90, 525–527.
- Salvolini, E., Di Giorgio, R., Curatola, A., Mazzanti, L., & Fratto, G. (1998). Biochemical modifications of human whole saliva induced by pregnancy. *British Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology*, 105, 656–660.
- Schoch-Ruppen, J., Ehlert, U., Uggowitzer, F., Weyerskirch, N., & La Marca-Ghaemmaghami, P. (2018). Women's word use in pregnancy: Associations with maternal characteristics, prenatal stress, and neonatal birth outcome. *Frontiers in Psychology*, 9, 1234.
- Urizar, G. G., Jr., Milazzo, M., Le, H. N., Delucchi, K., Sotelo, R., & Munoz, R. F. (2004). Impact of stress reduction instructions on stress and cortisol levels during pregnancy. *Biological Psychology*, 67, 275–282.
- Van den Akker, O. B. A. (2012). *Reproductive Health Psychology*. Wiley-Blackwell: Chichester.
- Van Leeuwen, P., Gustafson, K. M., Cysarz, D., Geue, D., May, L. E., & Grönemeyer, D. (2014). Aerobic exercise during pregnancy and presence of fetal-maternal heart rate synchronization. *PLoS One*, 9(8), e106036.
- Van Ravesteyn, L. M., Lambregtse-van den Berg, M. P., Hoogendijk, W. J., & Kamperman, A. M. (2017). Interventions to treat mental disorders during pregnancy: A systematic review and multiple treatment meta-analysis. *PLoS One*, 12, e0173397.
- Vesga-López, O., Blanco, C., Keyes, K., Olfson, M., Grant, B. F., & Hasin, D. S. (2008). Psychiatric disorders in pregnant and postpartum women in the United States. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 65, 805–815.
- Weidner, K., Bittner, A., Junge-Hoffmeister, J., Zimmermann, K., Siedentopf, F., Richter, J., Joraschky, P., Gatzweiler, A., & Stöbel-Richter, Y. (2010). A psychosomatic intervention in pregnant in-patient women with prenatal somatic risks. *Journal of Psychosomatic Obstetrics and Gynaecology*, 31, 188–198.
- Welberg, L. A., Thiruvikraman, K. V., & Plotsky, P. M. (2005). Chronic maternal stress inhibits the capacity to up-regulate placental 11 β -hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 2 activity. *Journal of Endocrinology*, 186, R7–R12.
- Wenzel, A., Stuart, S., & Koleva, H. (2016). Psychotherapy for psychopathology during pregnancy and the postpartum period. In A. Wenzel (Ed.), *The Oxford handbook of perinatal psychology* (pp. 341–365). New York: Oxford University Press.
- World Health Organization and the United Nations Population Fund. (2008). *Maternal mental health and child health and development in low and middle income countries*. Geneva: Switzerland.

Gestational Carrier

- [In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology](#)
- [Surrogacy](#)

Ghrelin

Yoshiyuki Takimoto

Department of Stress Science and Psychosomatic Medicine, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Definition

Ghrelin is a 28-amino acid peptide that has the particularity to be octanoylated in the serine in position 3. Ghrelin is a hormone produced mainly by the endocrine X/A-like cells of the stomach submucosa that stimulates hunger. Ghrelin is an endogenous orexigenic peptide and considered the counterpart of the satiety hormone, for example, leptin. Plasma ghrelin is regulated by several factors. A key regulator of plasma ghrelin level is food intake. Plasma ghrelin levels increase under starvation and decrease after meals in response to an increase of glycemia. Ghrelin stimulates appetite by acting on the hypothalamic arcuate nucleus. Ghrelin activates the nucleus of tractus solitaries communicating with ARC through afferent vagal stimulus in the stomach. Moreover, ghrelin modulates gastric acid secretion and motility. Ghrelin is also secreted in the hypothalamic arcuate nucleus, where it dose-dependently stimulates growth hormone secretion.

Cross-References

► [Leptin](#)

References and Readings

- De Vriese, C., & Delporte, C. (2008). Ghrelin: A new peptide regulating growth hormone release and food intake. *The International Journal of Biochemistry & Cell Biology*, 40(8), 1420–1424.
- Inui, A., Asakawa, A., Bowers, C. Y., Mantovani, G., Laviano, A., Meguid, M. M., et al. (2004). Ghrelin, appetite, and gastric motility: The emerging role of the stomach as an endocrine organ. *The FASEB Journal*, 18(3), 439–456.

- Kojima, M., & Kangawa, K. (2010). Ghrelin: More than endogenous growth hormone secretagogue. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 1200, 140–148.

Girth

► [Waist Circumference \(WC\)](#)

Glucocorticoids

Mustafa al'Absi

University of Minnesota Medical School, School of Medicine, University of Minnesota, Duluth, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Corticosteroids](#); [Cortisol](#); [Cortisone](#)

Definition

Glucocorticoids are a group of hormones that share steroidal structure and affect every tissue in the body due to the wide presence of their receptors. As indicated by their name, glucocorticoids have a significant role in regulating the metabolism of glucose.

Description

Glucocorticoids are released from the adrenal cortex in response to a cascade of hormonal events initiated by the release of corticotrophin-releasing factor (CRF) from the paraventricular nucleus (PVN). CRF reaches the median eminence of the hypothalamus through the portal circulation where it then activates the release of adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) into the systemic circulation from the corticotrope cells of the anterior pituitary. Upon reaching the cortical part of the adrenal gland, ACTH stimulates the synthesis and

release of glucocorticoids – most notably cortisol – in humans.

Glucocorticoids are derived from a common precursor, cholesterol, formed from circulating lipoprotein. The formation of cortisol takes place in the intermediate zone of the adrenal cortex, an area called Zona fasciculata. About 95% of cortisol is usually bound to corticosteroid-binding globulin (CBG), and the remaining free cortisol enters cells to affect their metabolic activity. The liver is the main site for cortisol metabolism, and free cortisol is excreted in urine. The daily secretory rate of cortisol is 20–30 mg/24 h, and its highest level is obtained in the morning (10–20 µg/dl) and lowest level (2–5 µg/dl) is reached in the early evening hours.

Glucocorticoid Receptors. There are two types of receptors, mineralocorticoid receptor (MR) and glucocorticoid receptor (GR). MR has a high affinity for cortisol and is found primarily in the limbic system. When occupied, MR serves as the major receptor regulator of normal activity of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenocortical (HPA) axis. GR is more widespread and has a lower affinity for cortisol. GR becomes occupied when there are higher levels of circulating cortisol. When cortisol concentrations are high, such as during diurnal peaks or under conditions of stress, this receptor may be up to 60% occupied. Because of the wide distribution and different levels of sensitivity of both types of receptors, a wide range of peripheral and central nervous system functions are mediated by their actions.

Effects of Glucocorticoids

Metabolic Effects. Glucocorticoids exert numerous peripheral effects that lead to changes in metabolic activities. For example, one of cortisol's main functions in the periphery is to make energy stores available for use throughout the body. This happens through multiple processes. Cortisol increases the expression of the enzymes that are responsible for a process known as gluconeogenesis, and this occurs primarily in the liver leading to the increased synthesis of glucose. Cortisol also decreases glucose uptake by cells in muscles and

adipose tissues while also stimulating the release of fatty acids from adipose tissue leading to further increase in gluconeogenesis. The results are a net increase in plasma concentrations of glucose as well as amino acids.

Immune Effects. As a group of hormones, glucocorticoids are known to suppress the immune response and are used to suppress inflammation. These effects take place because glucocorticoids increase the expression of anti-inflammatory proteins, while they also suppress the expression of pro-inflammatory proteins. The increased levels of cortisol in response to stress have been seen as a mechanism to regulate changes in immune activity caused by stress. This is consistent with the hypothesis that stress-related glucocorticoids activity helps curtail the activity of endogenous cytokines and other stress-reactive immune functions. This action helps prevent the occurrence of harmful effects that may be produced by an unchecked immune response. Because of the immune suppression effects of glucocorticoids, they have been used in the treatment of various conditions that involve increased immune activity.

Central Effects. Glucocorticoids have a wide range of effects on central nervous system functions. These central effects are also implicated in the development of affective disorders. One of the primary functions of glucocorticoids is regulating their own release. For example, cortisol regulates its own secretion through its feedback effects on the pituitary, hippocampus, medial region of the frontal cortex, and central amygdala. Cortisol action includes modifying CRF expression leading to reduced release. Cortisol also decreases secretion of ACTH and pro-opiomelanocortin (POMC) from the pituitary. Because it influences gene expression of adrenergic receptors, it regulates effects of catecholamines.

There has been also evidence that cortisol affects cognitive functions, and studies that involved blocking glucocorticoids activity lead to impairment in the recall of emotionally relevant information. It has also been shown that fear learning associated with high cortisol levels leads to stronger consolidation of this memory and that memory performance materials not related to stress are reduced by glucocorticoids. Studies have also

shown that formation of long-term memories occurs efficiently when glucocorticoid levels are mildly elevated. Higher levels or absence of glucocorticoids using adrenalectomy was associated with poor formation of long-term memories. Stress hormones have also been associated with reduced retrieval of stored information.

Research has demonstrated dysregulation in cortisol release usually characterized by high basal levels and low sensitivity to cortisol feedback in patients with depression. There is also evidence that antidepressants help restore the normal pattern of cortisol release. Patients with depression have greater ACTH and cortisol secretion, greater free cortisol in urine, and increased cortisol and CRF levels in cerebrospinal fluid compared with nondepressed controls. This dysregulation is also evidenced by greater incidence of escape from a test called dexamethasone suppression test, which test the feedback effects of cortisol on the brain.

Cardiovascular Effects. Glucocorticoids have various cardiovascular effects. For example, cortisol may increase cardiac output by its effects in enhancing beta adrenergic sensitivity and increasing the synthesis of epinephrine. The latter effect is caused by cortisol's effect in stimulating phenylethanolamine-*N*-methyltransferase (PNMT), resulting in increased epinephrine synthesis, and by inhibiting the catabolic actions of catechol-*o*-methyltransferase (COMT) on catecholamines. Cortisol may act in the kidneys to increase the plasma volume by causing a fluid shift from intracellular to extracellular compartments increasing volume retention, and contributing to increased stroke volume and cardiac output. In addition, cortisol increases alpha adrenergic sensitivity contributing to increased vascular resistance and leading to increased blood pressure.

Cross-References

- ▶ [ACTH](#)
- ▶ [Cortisol](#)
- ▶ [Hormones](#)
- ▶ [Metabolism](#)
- ▶ [Stress](#)

References and Readings

- Al'Absi, M., & Arnett, D. K. (2000). Adrenocortical responses to psychological stress and risk for hypertension. *Biomedicine & Pharmacotherapy*, 54, 234–244.
- Cahill, L., & McGaugh, J. L. (1998). Mechanisms of emotional arousal and lasting declarative memory. *Trends in Neurosciences*, 21, 294–299.
- de Quervain, D., et al. (1998). Stress and glucocorticoids impair retrieval of long-term spatial memory. *Nature*, 394, 787–790.
- Lupien, J. S., et al. (2009). Effects of stress throughout the lifespan on the brain, behaviour and cognition. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 10, 434–445.

Glucometer

- ▶ [Glucose Meters and Strips](#)

Glucose

Michael James Coons
Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg
School of Medicine, Northwestern University,
Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Glycemia](#); [Hyperglycemia](#); [Hypoglycemia](#)

Definition

Glucose is a monosaccharide (i.e., simple sugar), which is an essential form of energy for cells and organs in the human body. Glucose is an important carbohydrate that is imperative for the survival of organisms.

Description

Glucose is the usable form of energy in humans. Following ingestion, carbohydrates in the stomach are broken and converted to glucose. Glucose then passes through the stomach and enters the bloodstream. Glucose metabolism triggers insulin

secretion from the β -cells in the pancreas, which are responsible for endogenous insulin production. Insulin circulating in the bloodstream binds to receptors facilitating the uptake of glucose into the red blood cells. Glucose can then be used for energy, or converted to glycogen for storage in the liver, muscles, and fat. Glucose metabolism is a homeostatic mechanism that is essential for human survival.

Blood glucose is measured on a continuum. The normal range of blood glucose is between 4.0 and 7.0 mmol/L, or 82–110 mg/dL. When concentrations fall below the lower bound, it is considered to be a state of hypoglycemia (i.e., low blood glucose). When concentrations surpass the upper bound of this range, it is considered to be a state of hyperglycemia (i.e., high blood glucose). Among healthy individuals, actions of the pancreas maintain blood glucose homeostasis. When the availability of metabolized carbohydrates is low, resulting in a decline in plasma glucose concentration, the α -cells of the pancreas secrete glucagon. Glucagon is a hormone that facilitates the conversion of glycogen in the liver, muscles, and fat to glucose that is released into the bloodstream to restore euglycemia (i.e., normal blood glucose concentration). In the presence of excess circulating blood glucose, resulting in a state of hyperglycemia, insulin is secreted from the β -cells of the pancreas to facilitate glucose uptake and conversion to glycogen for storage. Disruption of this metabolic process is a hallmark feature of diabetes (i.e., type 1 diabetes mellitus, type 2 diabetes mellitus, gestational diabetes mellitus).

Cross-References

- [Glycemia: Control, Load-High](#)
- [Hyperglycemia](#)

References and Readings

Fisher, S. J., & Kahn, C. R. (2002). Physiologic mechanisms in homeostatic control of glucose. In G. M. Besser & M. O. Thorner (Eds.), *Comprehensive clinical endocrinology* (pp. 239–254). London: Elsevier Science.

Reaven, G. M. (2002). Insulin resistance. In G. M. Besser & M. O. Thorner (Eds.), *Comprehensive clinical endocrinology* (pp. 291–302). London: Elsevier Science.

Glucose Meters and Strips

Janine Sanchez

Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami
Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Glucometer](#); [Self-monitoring of blood glucose](#)

Definition

Glucose meter (glucometer) is a medical device used to determine the approximate level of glucose in the blood. It is used for monitoring glucose at home and in the hospital. Patients obtain a small drop of blood using a fingertip lancing device. Blood is placed on a disposable test strip, and in less than 10 sec on average, a reading is given. Most meters are approximately the size of the palm of the hand. Some meters require the user to manually enter in a code specific to the test strip. If the code does not match the strip, then the glucose reading is inaccurate. The glucose value is displayed in mg/dl (USA) or mmol/l. Some meters can also check ketone levels in blood.

Meters have different features such as memory, calculation of average sugar, volume of blood sample required, back light, color, and size. Some meters allow manual entry of additional data, such as insulin dose, amounts of carbohydrates eaten, or exercise. Some link with insulin pumps and send the sugar reading directly to the pump. Some meters also connect to smart phones and can transmit the data to multiple phones. Information such as all readings for 3 months, average sugar at different times of the day, and percentage of high or low readings may be displayed. The software is available for doctors' office and patients' home uses.

This information is used to adjust the medical regimen (primarily insulin) as well as to monitor adherence. The goal is to obtain tight glucose control and prevent complications of abnormal glucose levels. Patients with diabetes are educated on how to maintain glucose levels within target limits using information from blood glucose measurement.

Cross-References

- [Education, Patient](#)
- [Patient-Centered Care](#)
- [Patient-Reported Outcome](#)

References and Further Reading

- Garg, S., & Hirsch, I. B. (2010). Self-monitoring of blood glucose. *International Journal of Clinical Practice. Supplement*, 2010(166), 1–10.
- Giampietro, M. E. (2011). Point-of-care testing in diabetes care. *Mini Reviews in Medicinal Chemistry*, 11(2), 178–184. (Epub ahead of print).
- Mehta, S. N., & Wolfsdorf, J. I. (2010). Contemporary management of patients with Type 1 diabetes. *Endocrinology and Metabolism Clinics of North America*, 39(3), 573–593.

Glucose Test

- [Oral Glucose Tolerance Test \(OGTT\)](#)

Glucose: Levels, Control, Intolerance, and Metabolism

Michael James Coons
Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg
School of Medicine, Northwestern University,
Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Glycemia](#); [Hyperglycemia](#)

Definition

Glucose is a monosaccharide (i.e., simple sugar), which is an essential form of energy for cells and organs in the human body. Glucose is an important carbohydrate that is imperative for the survival of organisms. A homeostatic process regulates the glucose available in the bloodstream that is used by the cells and organs of the body.

Description

Glucose is the usable form of energy for the central nervous system in humans. Following ingestion (within 3–4 h), carbohydrates in the stomach are broken and converted to glucose. Glucose then passes through the stomach and gastrointestinal tract into the bloodstream. Glucose metabolism triggers insulin secretion from the beta cells of the pancreas, which are responsible for endogenous insulin production. Insulin circulating in the bloodstream binds to receptors facilitating the uptake of glucose into the red blood cells. Glucose can then be used for energy or converted to glycogen for storage in the liver, muscles, and fat. Glucose metabolism is a homeostatic mechanism that is essential for human survival and is influenced by the actions of a variety of hormones, enzymes, and substrates.

Blood Glucose Homeostasis

Blood glucose is measured on a continuum. The normal range of blood glucose is between 4.0 and 7.0 mmol/L, or 70 and 120 mg/dL. When concentrations fall below the lower bound, it is considered to be a state of hypoglycemia (i.e., low blood glucose). Clinically, mild symptoms include trembling, heart palpitations, sweating, anxiety, hunger, nausea, and tingling, whereas severe symptoms include impaired concentration, fatigue, confusion, weakness, vision changes, difficulty speaking, dizziness, or loss of consciousness. When concentrations surpass the upper bound of this range, it is considered to be a state of hyperglycemia (i.e., high blood glucose). Clinically, mild symptoms include excessive thirst, excessive urination, fatigue, itchy skin, and, over

time, weight loss. However, extreme states of hyperglycemia can trigger a state of ketoacidosis, during which individuals lose excessive amounts of electrolytes through urine and sweat that can trigger a myocardial infarction if untreated.

Among healthy individuals, actions of the pancreas maintain blood glucose homeostasis. When the availability of metabolized carbohydrates is low, resulting in a decline in plasma glucose concentration, the alpha cells of the pancreas secrete glucagon. Glucagon is a hormone that facilitates the conversion of glycogen that is stored in the liver, muscles, and fat, to glucose, which is then released into the bloodstream to restore euglycemia (i.e., normal blood glucose concentration). In the presence of excess circulating blood glucose, resulting in a state of hyperglycemia, insulin is secreted from the beta cells of the pancreas to facilitate glucose uptake and conversion to glycogen for storage. Disruption of this metabolic homeostatic process is a hallmark feature of diabetes (i.e., type 1 diabetes mellitus, type 2 diabetes mellitus, gestational diabetes mellitus).

Glucose Intolerance and Diabetes Mellitus

In the majority of cases of type 1 diabetes mellitus (T1DM), an autoimmune process destroys the pancreatic beta cells resulting in insufficient insulin production. With both type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) and gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM), the cellular receptors become resistant to the endogenous insulin produced by the pancreas. Prior to the onset of T2DM or GDM, individuals enter a prediabetic state that is characterized by impaired glucose tolerance (IGT), which is an intermediate step in disordered blood glucose metabolism. In such cases, the cellular receptors become resistant to the insulin produced by the pancreas, resulting in excess glucose circulating in the bloodstream. IGT is assessed using the 2-h oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT). During this procedure, individuals are orally administered 75 g of a glucose solution. Over the subsequent 2 hours, their plasma blood glucose is assessed. IGT is characterized by a 2-h OGTT between 7.8 and 11.1 mmol/L or 140 and 199 mg/dL. If untreated by adaptive health behavior change (e.g., nutritional therapy, increased

physical activity) or pharmacotherapy, individuals with IGT will typically progress to a diabetic state. Although the pathophysiology and underlying mechanisms are different for the various diabetes subtypes, all forms of the disease result in chronic hyperglycemia if untreated.

Blood Glucose Management

Among individuals with diabetes, blood glucose control is influenced by four health behaviors including dietary intake, physical activity, medication adherence, and self-monitoring of blood glucose. Specifically, individuals must reduce their carbohydrate intake, frequently participate in moderate physical activity (i.e., 150 min per week, with no more than two consecutive days of inactivity), adhere to their medication regimen (of oral medications that aid in blood glucose metabolism or of exogenous insulin to overcome their beta cell deficiency), and regularly self-monitor their blood glucose before and after meals (particularly in the context of insulin therapy) to inform their future decisions to maintain normal blood glucose levels. Failure to maintain blood glucose in the normal range increases the risk for developing serious short-term and long-term complications associated with this disease process.

A1C is considered to be the “gold standard” measure of blood glucose control. It provides an index of the mean blood glucose levels over the previous 90–120 days. A1C is assessed through a blood sample that is analyzed in the laboratory. Over the 120-day life span of red blood cells, glucose molecules bind to hemoglobin in the red blood cells to form glycated hemoglobin. A concentration of glycated hemoglobin in the red blood cells reflects the average level of glucose that the red blood cells have been exposed to during its life span. This glycated hemoglobin is then expressed as a percentage. Optimal A1C is considered to be $\leq 6\%$. Higher A1C is indicative of worse glycemic control. Failure to maintain A1C $\leq 6\%$ has been shown to increase the risk of developing serious vascular pathology and premature mortality. Specifically, poor blood glucose control (A1C $\geq 6\%$) can lead to blindness, renal failure, pain and loss of sensation in the extremities, myocardial infarctions, cerebrovascular

accidents, and amputations. Following the assessment of individuals' A1C, these data are then used to inform clinical decision-making regarding pharmacotherapy and self-management practices.

Blood glucose metabolism is a complex homeostatic process. Various states of metabolic dysregulation can occur that require intensive pharmacological and behavioral intervention. Failure to achieve and maintain normal blood glucose levels can result in short-term and long-term complications and potentiate serious morbidity and premature mortality.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Diabetes](#)
- ▶ [Glycemia](#)
- ▶ [Hyperglycemia](#)
- ▶ [Hypoglycemia](#)

References and Readings

- Barrett, E. J., & Nadler, J. L. (2002). Non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus. In G. M. Besser & M. O. Thorner (Eds.), *Comprehensive clinical endocrinology* (pp. 303–318). London: Elsevier Science.
- Booth, G. L. (2001). Short-term clinical consequences of diabetes in adults. In H. L. Gerstein & R. B. Haynes (Eds.), *Evidence-based diabetes care* (pp. 68–106). Hamilton: BC Decker.
- Capes, S., & Anand, S. (2001). What is type 2 diabetes? In H. L. Gerstein & R. B. Haynes (Eds.), *Evidence-based diabetes care* (pp. 151–163). Hamilton: BC Decker.
- Fisher, S. J., & Kahn, C. R. (2002). Physiologic mechanisms in homeostatic control of glucose. In G. M. Besser & M. O. Thorner (Eds.), *Comprehensive clinical endocrinology* (pp. 239–254). London, UK: Elsevier Science.
- Gagel, R. F. (2002). Hypoglycemia and insulinomas. In G. M. Besser & M. O. Thorner (Eds.), *Comprehensive clinical endocrinology* (pp. 255–266). London, UK: Elsevier Science.
- Lawson, M. L., & Muirhead, S. E. (2001). What is type 1 diabetes? In H. L. Gerstein & R. B. Haynes (Eds.), *Evidence-based diabetes care* (pp. 124–150). Hamilton: BC Decker.
- Mahon, J., & Dupre, J. (2001). Early detection and prevention of diabetes mellitus. In H. L. Gerstein & R. B. Haynes (Eds.), *Evidence-based diabetes care* (pp. 184–206). Hamilton: BC Decker.
- Nadler, J. L., McDuffie, M., & Kirk, S. E. (2002). Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. In G. M. Besser & M. O.

Thorner (Eds.), *Comprehensive clinical endocrinology* (pp. 267–290). London, UK: Elsevier Science.

Reaven, G. M. (2002). Insulin resistance. In G. M. Besser & M. O. Thorner (Eds.), *Comprehensive clinical endocrinology* (pp. 291–302). London, UK: Elsevier Science.

Ryan, E. A. (2001). What is gestational diabetes? In H. L. Gerstein & R. B. Haynes (Eds.), *Evidence-based diabetes care* (pp. 164–183). Hamilton: BC Decker.

Yale, J. F. (2001). Hypoglycemia. In H. L. Gerstein & R. B. Haynes (Eds.), *Evidence-based diabetes care* (pp. 380–395). Hamilton: BC Decker.

Glycated Hemoglobin

- ▶ [Glycosylated Hemoglobin](#)
- ▶ [HbA1c](#)

Glycemia

- ▶ [Glucose](#)
- ▶ [Glucose: Levels, Control, Intolerance, and Metabolism](#)
- ▶ [Hyperglycemia](#)

Glycemia: Control, Load-High

Michael James Coons

Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Glucose](#); [Hyperglycemia](#)

Definition

Glycemia refers to the concentration of glucose circulating in the blood plasma. Glycemia is influenced by a metabolic homeostatic process. As carbohydrates are ingested, they are broken down and converted to glucose, which then enter

the bloodstream. Glycemia is measured on a continuum. The normal range of blood glucose is between 4.0 and 7.0 mmol/L, or 82 and 110 mg/dL. Glycemia can be assessed in the laboratory using antecubital venipuncture, either in a fasting or nonfasting state. Among patients with diabetes, glycemia may also be assessed by using portable glucometer. With such devices, individuals lance their fingertip to acquire a droplet of blood from the capillaries in the fingers. The blood droplet is placed on a test strip that is inserted into the device for analysis. These meters provide cross-sectional data on the state of glycemia at a single point in time. However, these devices do not provide data on glycemic variability. For individuals with diabetes receiving insulin therapy, recent technological advances have resulted in the development of continuous glucose monitoring systems (CGMS) that provide a virtually continuous assessment of glycemia. These devices are worn on the abdomen and wirelessly transmit to the receiver (a pager-like device worn on the belt). The abdominal sensors sample the interstitial fluid at a rate of once every 5 s and provide an average blood glucose concentration over a period of several minutes. Although data from CGMS are less accurate than plasma blood glucose, these devices provide information on blood glucose variability that would otherwise be unavailable outside of the laboratory setting. For the surveillance of diabetes self-management outcomes, individuals can provide a blood sample for A1C analysis. A1C is collected by a venipuncture in the medical clinic. It provides an index of the mean level of glycemia over the previous 90–120 days. Optimal A1C is considered to be $\leq 7\%$. Higher A1C is indicative of worse glycemic control and places individuals at risk of serious long-term vascular complications. A1C is considered to be the “gold standard” measure of achieved blood glucose control among patients with diabetes.

Cross-References

- [Diabetes](#)
- [Glucose](#)
- [Hyperglycemia](#)

References and Reading

- American Diabetes Association. (2011). Standards of medical care in diabetes: 2011. *Diabetes Care*, 34(Suppl 1), S11–S51.
- Piette, J. D., & Glasgow, R. E. (2001). Education and home glucose monitoring. In H. C. Gerstein & R. B. Haynes (Eds.), *Evidence-based diabetes care* (pp. 207–251). Hamilton: B.C. Decker.
- Saudek, C. D., Derr, R. L., & Kalyani, L. L. (2006). Assessing glycemia in diabetes using self-monitoring blood glucose and hemoglobin A1C. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 295, 1688–1697.

Glycemic Index

- [Low Glycemic Index](#)

Glycosylated Hemoglobin

Luigi Meneghini

Diabetes Research Institute, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[A1C](#); [Glycated hemoglobin](#); [Glycosylated hemoglobin](#); [Hemoglobin A1c](#)

Definition

HbA1c, or glycosylated hemoglobin, is a measure of how much glucose is irreversibly bound (glycated) to hemoglobin, and can be used to assess the degree of exposure to glycemia in the preceding 2–3 months (corresponding to the life span of the red blood cell where hemoglobin is contained). In a person with normal blood glucose levels, the amount of glycated hemoglobin is around 4–6%, representing an average blood glucose level between 70 and 120 mg/dL. In individuals with diabetes, HbA1c can be measured every 3 months with a goal of keeping the value as close to normal as possible, or at least under 7% in most

patients. The higher the HbA1c, the greater the risk over time (usually measured in years) of developing microvascular complications, such as diabetic retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy. HbA1c remains the best predictor for future diabetes-related chronic complications that is available in the clinical setting.

Cross-References

- [Diabetes](#)
- [HbA1c](#)
- [Hyperglycemia](#)

References and Readings

Joslin, E. P., & Kahn, C. R. (2005). *Joslin's diabetes mellitus* (14th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Goals

- [Meaning \(Purpose\)](#)

Gonadal Female Hormones

- [Estrogen](#)

Goodness of Fit Hypothesis

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

This term refers to the effectiveness of matching (fitting) a coping strategy to a situation's level of controllability, in relation to adaptation to stress.

This matching was proposed by Lazarus and Folkman (1984) and Forsythe and Compass (1987) and is termed the goodness of fit hypothesis (GOFH). It remains a central issue in stress and coping, the pillar of behavior medicine. According to the GOFH, emotion-focused coping (EFC) is more adaptive for uncontrollable and unsolvable situations, while problem-focused coping (PFC) is more adaptive in controllable and solvable situations. EFC includes denial, distraction, relaxation, or, in negative forms, catastrophizing. In contrast, PFC includes defining the problem, suggesting solutions, and implementing one. The GOFH is a major issue in the field of stress and coping and reveals the complexity of the person-situation fit, in relation to adequate responses to stress.

The GOFH has important implications for behavior medicine as well. For example, Levine et al. (1987) assessed levels of denial (an EFC) in cardiac patients and examined its relationship with recovery indices during hospitalization (acute phase) and over 12 months after discharge (long term). Levine et al. found that while greater denial predicted better short-term prognosis in the hospital, denial predicted poorer prognosis in the long term. These results can be seen as supporting the GOFH since during the acute phase of hospitalization, cardiac patients have less control over their situation, and hence, the ability to deny may have reduced stress-related excessive sympathetic responses, which may have reduced the risk of further cardiac events. In contrast, during recovery at home, when modifying one's lifestyle is under a patient's control, denial would impede such efforts and, thus, probably contribute to adverse health outcomes. Another more recent example is the study by Rapoport-Hubschman et al. (2009) that tested the relationship between coping and outcomes in in vitro fertilization (IVF). This form of medical treatment "bypasses" women's hormonal system and, thus, constitutes a strong example of reduced personal control by the patient over the procedure and outcome. In their study, women with higher baseline levels of "letting go" (i.e., high EFC) had a significantly higher chance of being pregnant than those with lower levels of "letting go" coping, independent of

confounders (age, number of IVF cycles, and cause of infertility). Another example, sadly relevant to the global context at the present time, is a study which examined bus passengers' coping strategies during a wave of terrorism in Israel. In that study, people were assessed about their EFC (e.g., look at the view) and PFC (e.g., inspect the bus and check under the seat for unclaimed objects) and for their levels of anxiety. The ratio of PFC/EFC, in this relatively uncontrollable context, was positively correlated with anxiety (Gidron et al. 1999). During such periods of unpredictable and uncontrollable terror from an individual citizen's perspective, people can focus on the minimal PFC that they can perform and then mainly benefit from EFC, to modulate their stress responses.

While not all studies have supported the GOFH, it has received quite a bit support, and it has important implications for teaching stress management. Specifically, people can learn to first appraise whether a situation is controllable or solvable or not and then choose to use EFC or PFC. Importantly, Forsythe and Compass (1987) also found that people with both types of coping adapt the best, suggesting that people need to learn both EFC and PFC, and know when to use or perhaps even combine both forms of coping strategies. The GOFH is an important concept and framework in stress, health, and illness.

Cross-References

- [Coping Strategies](#)
- [Perceived Control](#)

References and Further Readings

- Forsythe, C. J., & Compass, B. E. (1987). Interaction of cognitive appraisals of stressful events and coping: Testing the goodness of fit hypothesis. *Cognitive Therapy and Research*, 11, 473–485.
- Gidron, Y., Gal, R., & Zahavi, S. (1999). Bus commuters' coping strategies and anxiety from terrorism: An example of the Israeli experience. *Journal of Traumatic Stress*, 12, 185–192.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. New York: Springer.

- Levine, J., Warrenburg, S., Kerns, R., Schwartz, G., Delaney, R., Fontana, A., et al. (1987). The role of denial in recovery from coronary heart disease. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 49, 109–117.
- Rapoport-Hubschman, N., Gidron, Y., Reicher-Atir, R., Sapir, O., & Fisch, B. (2009). “Letting go” coping is associated with successful IVF treatment outcome. *Fertility and Sterility*, 92, 1384–1388.

Grade of Activity

- [Activity Level](#)

Graded Exercise

Simon L. Bacon^{1,2} and Alexandre Elhalwi³

¹Department of Exercise Science, Concordia University and Montreal Behavioural Medicine Centre, CIUSSS-NIM: Hopital du Sacre-Coeur de Montreal, Montreal, QC, Canada

²Department of Health, Kinesiology, and Applied Physiology, Concordia University and Montreal Behavioural Medicine Centre, CIUSSS du Nord-de-l'île-de-Montréal, Montreal, QC, Canada

³McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Synonyms

[Maximal exercise test](#); [Multistage submaximal exercise test](#)

Definition

Graded exercise testing is a variety of exercise testing where tests are designed to be increasingly more difficult as they progress. A graded maximal exercise test would ideally progress until the participant reaches a level of maximal exertion, while a graded (multistage) submaximal exercise test would progress to a predetermined point.

While graded exercise tests are typically administered to determine a participant's functional aerobic capacity ($\text{VO}_{2\text{max}}$), they can also

be used to diagnose certain diseases (primarily cardiovascular) when used in conjunction with other diagnostic tools, e.g., electrocardiograms (ECG), echocardiography, or nuclear medicine scanners. Graded exercise tests ideally involve large muscle groups, e.g., the hip and leg musculature, so as to more accurately determine from the results the need, delivery, and consumption of oxygenated blood. As such, the modalities most commonly used in graded exercise tests are treadmills and cycle ergometers. While cycle ergometers generally provide more advantages than treadmills, such as being less expensive, taking up less space, and providing more precise ECG readings due to reduced trunk movement, participants tend to attain higher $VO_{2\max}$ values when using treadmills (this is primarily due to the larger number of muscles which are engaged). Though less common, it is also possible to conduct graded exercise testing on equipment designed to assess specific muscle groups (e.g., arm ergometry) or activities (e.g., rowing ergometry).

Maximal and submaximal graded exercise tests have different advantages, and choosing which type of test to administer will depend on the parameter to be determined, the equipment available, and the level of expertise of the test administrators. For example, maximal graded exercise tests are more sensitive in the diagnosis of a number of cardiac problems, though the participant will need to exercise to the point of exhaustion. In contrast, a submaximal graded exercise test will provide a standardized and consistent level of exertion across all participants, which can be very useful in a research setting. In addition, for all exercise testing, it is usually recommended that a physician be in attendance or available if a participant is at high risk of cardiovascular or other health problems which might be exacerbated by exercise.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Exercise](#)
- ▶ [Exercise Testing](#)
- ▶ [Isometric/Isotonic Exercise](#)

References and Further Reading

- American College of Sports Medicine. (2018). In D. Riebe (Ed.), *ACSM's guidelines for exercise testing and prescription* (10th ed.). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health.
- Brawner, C. A. (2007). Graded exercise testing. In W. E. Kraus & S. J. Keteyian (Eds.), *Cardiac rehabilitation* (pp. 111–119). Totowa: Humana Press.
- Nieman, D. C. (2007). *Exercise testing and prescription: A health-related approach* (6th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Wasserman, K., Hansen, J. E., Sue, D. Y., Stringer, W. W., Sietsema, K. E., Sun, W.-G., & Whipp, B. J. (2011). *Principles of exercise testing and interpretation*. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health.

Graded Exercise Test

- ▶ [Maximal Exercise Stress Test](#)

Graded Exposure Counterconditioning

- ▶ [Systematic Desensitization](#)

Grave Yard Shift

- ▶ [Night-Shift Workers and Health](#)

Gravidity

- ▶ [Gestation](#)

Grief

- ▶ [Bereavement](#)
- ▶ [Grieving](#)

Grief Counseling

Jan R. Oyeboode

Dementia Care, University of Bradford, Bradford, UK

Synonyms

Bereavement counseling; Bereavement therapy; Grief therapy

Definition

Grief counseling (also referred to as grief therapy or bereavement counseling) is the term used for the counseling or therapy support that is provided for those who are suffering as a consequence of a loss through the death of someone close to them. Grief counseling may also be used to assist with adjustment to other losses that involve a strong element of grief, such as amputation, loss of role, or divorce. Bereavement therapy may be distinguished from bereavement counseling as being provided for those who are having trouble adjusting, rather than being provided preventively.

Grief counseling developed largely from the 1970s to provide support to people following bereavement in the increasingly fragmented societies of the technologically developed world, in which the religious rites, rituals, and support of more traditional communities had been eroded. Services have traditionally been provided through professionals, volunteers, and self-help groups. The process of counseling, with someone trained and willing to listen, who has an understanding of the impact of grief, offers an opportunity for the bereaved person to express thoughts and feelings, make new meanings, and find ways of coping.

Raphael et al. (2001) distinguish four levels of intervention:

1. Universal primary preventative intervention, that is, grief counseling offered to all who

have experienced bereavement with the aim of facilitating an adaptive response

2. Selective preventive intervention, that is, grief counseling offered to those who may be vulnerable to difficulty in adapting due to the presence of risk factors related to their prior life, the nature of the death, or their circumstances following the death
3. Indicated preventive intervention, that is, grief counseling offered to those who have unusually high levels of distress or a disturbing or unusual response, soon after bereavement
4. Treatment, that is, bereavement therapy offered to those with a complicated grief reaction who present to health services some time after the index event

Research evidence suggests that targeting provision of grief counseling at levels 3–4 is most effective. A number of scales have been developed which can be used to help in the assessment of whether someone might benefit (see Neimeyer and Hogan 2001, for a useful review).

Where counseling is indicated, it may be provided at one of a number of levels (group, family, or individual) and using one of a number of approaches (e.g., nondirective, based on enhancing coping, or focused on meaning-making). Several approaches to level 4 treatment have been evaluated including cognitive behavior therapy, brief psychodynamic psychotherapy, hypnotherapy, and self-help. All appear to be helpful to a modest degree. This may indicate that nonspecific therapeutic factors are the key helpful ingredients, or it may reflect individual differences in response to different approaches. Evidence-based factors to take into account include consideration of personal preferences; family, cultural, and religious contexts; enabling the person to reflect on both the past and the future; facilitating the person's search for meaning; and encouraging the person to consider both loss-oriented (e.g., feelings of grief) and restoration-oriented (e.g., dealing with the practicalities of day-to-day life without the deceased) stressors.

Cross-References

- [Death Anxiety](#)
- [Grieving](#)

References and Further Readings

- Currier, J. M., Neimeyer, R. A., & Berman, J. S. (2008). The effectiveness of psychotherapeutic interventions for bereaved persons: A comprehensive quantitative review. *Psychological Bulletin*, 134(5), 648.
- Lendrum, S., & Syme, G. (2004). *Gift of tears: A practical approach to loss and bereavement counselling* (2nd ed.). Hove: Routledge.
- Neimeyer, R. A., & Hogan, N. S. (2001). Quantitative or qualitative? Measurement issues in the study of grief. In M. S. Stroebe, R. O. Hansson, W. Stroebe, & H. Schut (Eds.), *Handbook of bereavement research: Causes, consequences and care* (pp. 89–118). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Raphael, B., Minkov, C., & Dobson, M. (2001). Psychotherapeutic and pharmacological intervention for bereaved persons. In M. S. Stroebe, R. O. Hansson, W. Stroebe, & H. Schut (Eds.), *Handbook of bereavement research: Causes, consequences and care* (pp. 587–612). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Worden, J. W. (2009). *Grief counselling and grief therapy* (4th ed.). London: Tavistock.

Grief Therapy

- [Grief Counseling](#)

Grieving

Jan R. Oyebode
Dementia Care, University of Bradford, Bradford,
UK

Synonyms

[Bereavement](#); [Grief](#); [Loss](#)

Definition

In a narrow sense, grieving is the term used to describe the experience and expression of the emotional state, of sadness, anguish, and pining, that commonly follows the death of a person who was significant in the life of the bereaved, along with the somatic, cognitive, and behavioral facets of this response.

In a broader sense, grieving may be understood as referring to the whole period of time from first news of a death through to a point when reasonable adjustment has been made, a period which may encompass a wide range of emotions (including numbness, disbelief, fear, anger, guilt, anguish, and sorrow) and a lengthy process of adaptation.

The process of grieving is also sometimes used to describe similar experiences and processes that follow a range of other losses, such as of health, role, or relationships.

Description

Bereavement, by definition, is the loss of a person through death. However, grieving, the emotional response to bereavement and loss, may start prior to bereavement (anticipatory grief). Thus, facing death and issues of bereavement are often closely intertwined especially in the context of terminal illness.

Grief is often viewed as an individual emotional reaction, and its nature can be understood using ideas from the psychology of attachment and bonding, as the individual experiences irrevocable detachment and separation. However, bereavement affects all who knew a person, and therefore, families and social networks set the wider context for grieving and for support. Furthermore, religious and cultural factors also influence the ways that grief is expressed and the way the dead are mourned and remembered. In some societies or circumstances, and in relation to some relationships, grief of a particular individual may not be sanctioned, this position being named “disenfranchised grief.” A spouse’s grief, for example, may overshadow that of a sibling; a

gay partner might not be recognized as having legitimate grief; or a person with learning disabilities may not be thought to experience grief.

The end point of grieving is hard to define since adaptation to life without the person who has died has a range of markers. The majority of bereaved spouses have been found to be resilient with about 66% experiencing no prolonged grief or depression. However, where a death occurs in traumatic circumstances or where the finality of the loss remains in doubt (“ambiguous loss”), for example, a family member disappears or a body is not found, adjustment may be much more difficult. For many people, life is never the same again, but people report elements of growth and development through grief as well as distress and pain. About 15% of people experience prolonged distressing grief, with an emphasis on the pain of separation, and this is often referred to as “traumatic,” “pathological,” or “complicated.”

A number of descriptive and theoretical frameworks have been used to try and capture the essence of grief. Parkes, in his seminal work, described common phases of response during the period of time following bereavement, usually described as (1) numbness, (2) searching and yearning, (3) disorganization and despair, and (4) reorganization. It should be noted that this framework is not intended to be applied rigidly to each individual case, and there is very little evidence for delineated stages. A related view that places premium upon the active nature of grief is that of “grief work” (Worden). This conceptualizes the bereaved as needing to address four particular tasks: to accept the reality of the loss, to work through the pain of the loss, to adjust to the environment in which the deceased is no longer present, and to develop an enduring connection with the deceased while moving forward with life. Not all do “work through” pain though and research has not found this necessary for adjustment. Over the past two decades, further concepts and models have been proposed. The most predominant at the present time is the dual process model (Stroebe and Schut 1999) which lays emphasis on the concurrent existence of both loss-oriented stressors (related to the pain of separation) and restoration-oriented stressors (related

to living life without the deceased) and considers the necessary oscillation in coping as the bereaved person responds to both of these sources of grief, addressing the emotional *and* the practical consequences. In addition, there is a recognition that rather than needing to let go, “continuing bonds” with the deceased can be helpful, as long as these are symbolic rather than very literal. It is also recognized that each person has their own grief narrative and that the process of meaning-making is central to “coming to terms” (Neimeyer 2016) with grief.

All the frameworks referred to in this entry can be found in the handbooks of bereavement research named below.

Cross-References

- [Attachment Theory](#)
- [Grief Counseling](#)
- [Psychosocial Factors and Traumatic Events](#)

References and Further Readings

- Klass, D., Silverman, P. R., & Nickman, S. L. (Eds.). (1996). *Continuing bonds: New understandings of grief*. Washington, DC: Taylor & Francis.
- Neimeyer, R. A. (2016). Helping clients find meaning in grief and loss. In M. Cooper & W. Dryden (Eds.), *The handbook of pluralistic counseling and psychotherapy* (pp. 211–222). Thousand Oaks: Sage.
- Parkes, C. M. (2006). *Love and loss: The roots of grief and its complications*. London/New York: Routledge.
- Stroebe, M. S., & Schut, H. (1999). The dual process model of coping with bereavement: Rationale and description. *Death Studies*, 23, 197–224.
- Stroebe, M. S., Hansson, R. O., Stroebe, W., & Schut, H. (Eds.). (2001). *Handbook of bereavement research: Causes, consequences and care*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Stroebe, M., Stroebe, W., Hansson, R., & Schut, H. (Eds.). (2008). *Handbook of bereavement research: Advances in theory and intervention*. Washington, DC: APA.

Group Interview

- [Focus Groups](#)

Group Singing

► Singing and Health

Group Therapy/Intervention

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Synonyms

Group Treatment

Definition

Group therapy interventions refer to a format of several individuals taking part in a psychological intervention aimed at helping them change or deal with a long-lasting problem they are encountering, guided by a therapist or counselor. Group therapies have important advantages and are thus suitable for several types of problems, mainly those involving interpersonal issues. These include, for example, stress management, a common medical problem (cancer, heart disease), or addictions. The advantages of group over individual interventions include vicarious learning from others, knowing and being comforted by the fact that others share one's difficulties, and practicing in a safe environment constructive solutions for interpersonal problems and social skills. In behavior medicine, studies have used such a format to treat cancer patients (e.g., Andersen et al. 2008), cardiac patients (e.g., Gidron et al. 1999), and many other patient samples. In cardiac patients, one review found psychosocial interventions to reduce mortality and cardiac risk factors (Dusseldorp et al. 1999). Such group interventions can also take place at a workplace setting, enabling to solve work-related problems, for the benefit of individual workers, the team, and the

workplace as a whole. Adler (2002) used the term "sociophysiology" and proposed that when feeling being cared for by others in an interpersonal interaction, secretion of stress hormones may decrease toward homeostasis, possibly another mechanism by which group interventions work.

Some studies have also begun to identify patient, therapist, and process variables predictive of positive outcomes following group interventions. In a unique and large-scale study on 40 groups of 266 Israeli children undergoing group therapy for emotional and behavioral problems, child bonding affected group functioning, which, in turn, affected behavioral outcomes. Similarly, therapist variables including encouragement and self-disclosure positively affected outcomes while challenging negatively affected outcomes (Shechtman and Leichtentritt 2010). Thus, group interventions are an important medium for behavior modification and have been used in medical and health settings as well.

Cross-References

- Stress Management
- Therapy, Occupational

References and Further Readings

- Adler, H. M. (2002). The sociophysiology of caring in the doctor-patient relationship. *Journal of General Internal Medicine*, 17, 874–881.
- Andersen, B. L., Yang, H. C., Farrar, W. B., Golden-Kreutz, D. M., Emery, C. F., Thornton, L. M., Young, D. C., & Carson, W. E., 3rd. (2008). Psychologic intervention improves survival for breast cancer patients: A randomized clinical trial. *Cancer*, 113, 3450–3458.
- Dusseldorp, E., van Elderen, T., Maes, S., Meulman, J., & Kraaij, V. (1999). A meta-analysis of psychoeducational programs for coronary heart disease patients. *Health Psychology*, 18, 506–519.
- Gidron, Y., Davidson, K., & Bata, I. (1999). The short-term effects of a hostility-reduction intervention on male coronary heart disease patients. *Health Psychology*, 18, 416–420.
- Shechtman, Z., & Leichtentritt, J. (2010). The association of process with outcomes in child group therapy. *Psychotherapy Research*, 20, 8–21.

Group Treatment

► Group Therapy/Intervention

Grown

► Aging

Guided Imagery

Jennifer Cumming¹ and Giles M. Anderson²

¹School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

²Oxford Brookes University, Oxford, UK

Synonyms

Mental imagery; Visualization

Definition

Guided imagery involves a practitioner verbally leading an individual through the processes of mentally representing situations in their mind. The representation can occur in one or more senses so that the person (or imaginer) experiences the sights, tastes, sounds, smells, and feelings associated with the situation. Details about people, places, and events can also be included to make the experience as realistic and vivid as possible.

To aid the process of generating the mental “images,” guided imagery is usually performed with closed eyes, in a quiet environment, while the imaginer reclines in a comfortable position. Instructions on how and what to image can be delivered individually or in groups and are imparted either live or as an audio recording. Similar to hypnosis or meditation, guided imagery is often combined with music and relaxation

techniques, such as deep breathing or progressive muscle relaxation, to help clear and focus the mind in preparation for the imagery.

What is imaged depends on personal preference or the technique used, such as Bonny’s (1980) Method of Guided Imagery and Music (GIM). The content, however, is predominantly determined by the imager’s desired outcomes or reasons for using the guided imagery. For example, to feel more positive and reduce anxiety, instructions may direct the person to image a sense of calmness and therefore feel their mood improve. For pain sufferers, the imagery might lead them to focus on numbing and relief from pain or noxious symptoms. Alternatively, they might be guided to escape from the pain by imagining themselves in a pleasant location, such as a beach or the countryside.

Classed as a complementary alternative medicine (CAM), guided imagery is frequently recommended to cancer patients to help maximize pain relief in conjunction with pharmacological regimens; reduce aversion to certain treatments, such as chemotherapy; manage stress; aid in relaxation; and empower patients to manage issues arising from their treatment. It has also been suggested that using the power of your mind to influence psychological and physiological states can help improve the quality of life and psychological well-being of individuals suffering from respiratory disease (e.g., asthma, chronic bronchitis, and emphysema), chronic pain (e.g., fibromyalgia, chronic headaches, and osteoarthritis), and hypertension. Guided imagery is also recommended as a coping strategy for perioperative patients and end-of-life palliative care to reduce anxiety. It has been used to help increase physical strength and aid in the recovery of motor function following musculoskeletal injuries and for individuals with stroke and Parkinson’s disease. Further, guided imagery has been recommended for changing health behaviors, including physical activity, smoking cessation, and weight management.

To evaluate its effectiveness, guided imagery has been compared to standard care practice in patient populations. For example, an intervention combining relaxation and guided imagery was used to improve immune function by asking

patients undergoing surgery for breast cancer to mentally experience immune cells destroying cancer cells (Lengacher et al. 2008). The effects on the immune system were explained by relaxation and imagery reducing stress and leading to the release of neuropeptides and cytokines to improve the immune response. Despite these promising results, much of the available research evaluating the effectiveness of guided imagery for use with patients suffers from poor, inconsistent methodologies combined with small samples that make the efficacy of guided imagery difficult to compare across studies. However, a review of six randomized clinical trials by Roffe et al. (2005) indicates that guided imagery can be psychology supportive and increase comfort of cancer sufferers but not improve their physical symptoms, such as nausea and vomiting. A more recent five-study review by King (2010) found some support for the use of guided imagery as an aid in alleviating the pain associated with cancer. When guided imagery is effective in controlling pain, it seems to provide patients with a source of distraction from the discomfort or serve to stimulate their relaxation. However, the pain characteristics of certain patients (i.e., the intensity of the pain) may make it difficult for them to image, which could explain why the technique is not always effective in managing pain (see Kwekkeboom et al. 2008).

Another barrier is individual differences in the ability to create and control vivid images. Although everyone has the ability to image, there is considerable variability from person to person. Those who are more proficient in generating, transforming, and maintaining images will more likely benefit from imagery interventions. To identify who would be most helped, the Imaging Ability Questionnaire (IAQ) was developed by Kwekkeboom (2000) as a valid and reliable screening tool for cancer patients. The IAQ measures the ability to generate vivid images using various senses and to be involved or engaged in the imagery experience. Similar questionnaires have been developed for specific use with other clinical populations, such as the Kinesthetic and Visual Imagery Questionnaire (KVIQ; Malouin et al. 2007), to measure motor imagery ability in individuals with physical impairments. Although

termed “ability,” it is also important to note that individuals become more proficient at imaging following instruction and practice. Those who score low on imagery ability questionnaires therefore might first need training exercises to improve their skills of imaging before receiving a guided imagery program.

Cross-References

► [Meditation](#)

References and Further Reading

- Ackerman, C. J., & Turkoski, B. (2000). Using guided imagery to reduce pain and anxiety. *Home Health Care Nurse*, 18, 524–530.
- Bardia, A., Barton, D., Prokop, L., Bauer, B., & Moynihan, T. (2006). Efficacy of complementary and alternative medicine therapies in relieving cancer pain: A systematic review. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 24, 5457–5463.
- Bonny, H. L. (1980). *GIM therapy: Past, present, and future implications* (GIM Monograph No. 3). Salina: The Bonny Foundation.
- Burns, D. S. (2001). The effect of the Bonny Method of guided imagery and music on the mood and life quality of cancer patients. *Journal of Music Therapy*, 38, 51–65.
- Johnson, E. L., & Lutgendorf, S. K. (2001). Contributions of imagery ability to stress and relaxation. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 23, 273–281.
- Kelly, K. (2010). A review of the effects of guided imagery on cancer patients with pain. *Complementary Health Practice Review*, 15, 98–107.
- King, K. (2010). A review of the effects of guided imagery on cancer patients with pain. *Complementary Health Practice Review*, 15, 98–107.
- Kwekkeboom, K. L. (2000). Measuring imagery ability: Psychometric testing of the imaging ability questionnaire. *Research in Nursing & Health*, 23, 301–309.
- Kwekkeboom, K., Huseby-Moore, K., & Ward, S. (1998). Imaging ability and effective use of guided imagery. *Research in Nursing & Health*, 21, 189–198.
- Kwekkeboom, K., Hau, H., Wanta, B., & Bumpus, M. (2008). Patients perceptions of the effectiveness of guided imagery and progressive muscle relaxation interventions used for cancer pain. *Complementary Therapeutics in Clinic Practice*, 14, 185–194.
- Lengacher, C. A., Bennet, M. P., Gonzalez, L., Gilvary, D., Cox, C. E., Cantor, A., Jacobsen, P. B., Yang, C., & Djeu, J. (2008). Immune responses to guided imagery during breast cancer treatment. *Biological Research Nursing*, 9, 205–214.

- Malouin, F., Richards, C. L., Jackson, P. L., Lafleur, M. F., Durand, A., & Doyen, J. (2007). The kinesthetic and visual imagery questionnaire (KVIQ) for assessing motor imagery in persons with physical disabilities: A reliability and construct validity study. *Journal of Neurologic Physical Therapy*, 31, 20–29.
- Roffe, L., Schmidt, K., & Ernst, E. (2005). A systematic review of guided imagery as an adjuvant cancer therapy. *Psycho-Oncology*, 14, 607–617.
- Schmidt, K., & Ernst, E. (2004). Assessing websites on complementary and alternative medicine for cancer. *Annals of Oncology*, 15, 733–742.
- Trakhtenberg, E. C. (2008). The effects of guided imagery on the immune system: A critical review. *International Journal of Neuroscience*, 118, 839–855.
- Watanabe, E., Fukuda, S., Hara, H., Maeda, Y., Ohira, H., & Shirakawa, T. (2006). Differences in relaxation by means of guided imagery in a healthy community sample. *Alternative Therapies in Health and Medicine*, 12, 60–66.

Guided Internet Intervention

► [Digital Health Coaching](#)

Guideline

► [Clinical Practice Guidelines](#)

Guidelines for Reporting Randomized Controlled Trials

► [CONSORT Guidelines](#)

Gut Microbiome

Marc D. Gellman
Behavioral Medicine Research Center,
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Gut microbiota](#)

Definition

The gut microbiome consists of all genes that are present in the gut microbiota. It refers to all microorganisms of the gut microbial community including archaea, bacteria, protozoa, eukaryotes, fungi, and viruses.

Description

The gut microbiome constitutes all microorganisms living in the large intestine (colon). The large intestine contains the highest concentration and greatest diversity of microbes in the entire body. The different types of microbes in a person are a result of one's genes, age, gender, diet, hygiene, and even the climate and one's occupation. There are approximately ten times as many microorganisms in the gut microbiome as in the rest of the entire body. The large intestine is lined with a layer of mucus. The microbes that live there form a gut biofilm. The biofilm contains an array of different microbes that carry out different tasks in the body and also work together to keep individuals healthy.

The trillions of microbes in the intestinal tract (the gut microbiome) influence health in numerous ways and are now being considered for their potential therapeutic uses. Different people conceal totally different collections of microbes. Little is understood about what directs these variations and how the variation within a person over time or between different people influences wellness, the preservation of health, or the onset and progression of disease. We do know that changes in the microbiome and the interaction with the immune, endocrine, and nervous systems are correlated with a variety of illnesses.

The gut microbiome plays a crucial role in the development of nonspecific defense mechanisms including physical barriers such as the skin, chemicals in the blood, and immune system cells that attack foreign cells in the body and antigen-specific immune responses. Early life events are important in programming the interaction of the brain, the gut, and the microbiome.

Gut microbes can communicate with the brain through a variety of routes, including the vagus

nerve, short-chain fatty acids, and cytokines. Evidence has been amassed to show a potentially bidirectional communication between these systems. It is highly likely that the gut microbiome influences mental health and cognitive functioning. This system is being referred to as the microbiome-gut-brain axis. This system is thought to be bidirectional and influenced by psychosocial and environmental factors and diet (discussed in more detail shortly).

Food as a Major Influence

There is strong evidence suggesting that environmental factors such as exercise and antibiotic use can alter the intestinal microbiome. In turn, the gut microbiome, which is significantly influenced by the genetic makeup of the host, affects everything from pain, mood, sleep, and stress and how we fight off infection. An important additional consideration is diet. Changes in the intestinal microbiome can lead to alterations in the metabolism of food and how our bodies use food. Indeed, the gut microbiome has metabolic activity and can be thought of as a “major organ” with a reciprocal physiological relationship with the host that can have a profound influence on disease through interaction with the immune system, metabolic functions, and other activities.

The microbes in our gut produce small molecules that travel throughout the blood stream. These molecules affect how our bodies store nutrients, use sugar, regulate our appetites, and control our weight. Foods also play a significant role in gut health. Diets that are high in fat and refined carbohydrates (sugars) can cause the good and bad bacteria in the gut to become unstable. Consuming foods high in fats and carbohydrates eats away at the mucus layer (biofilm) that protect the intestinal cells from coming in direct contact with the gut microbes and can contribute to inflammation. In contrast, foods rich in fiber (fruits, vegetables, and whole grains) and those that have prebiotics or probiotics (yogurt) are good for gut health.

The gut microbiota works to keep our bodies healthy because the microbes act to keep out detrimental bacteria such as those that cause infections. The gut also contains bacteria that release compounds that can lower inflammation

throughout the body and prevent an attack on the immune system.

Examination of the Role of Prebiotics, Probiotics, and Fecal Microbial Transplantation as Therapeutic Devices

Probiotics are living microorganisms that, when administered in adequate amounts, deliver a health benefit on the host. They can exert beneficial changes in the intestinal microbiome and are presumed to work by competing with pathogens, exerting antibacterial effects, enhancing the intestinal barrier, and enhancing host immunity, performing metabolic functions, and modulating the microbiota-gut-brain axis.

Probiotics have been referred to as psychobiotics. Psychobiotics are bacteria that when ingested in adequate amounts may produce a positive mental health benefit. In animal models they have been shown to reduce anxiety- and depressive-like behaviors. Similar studies in human are lacking from the literature. These findings from animal studies emphasize the important role of bacteria in the bidirectional communication of the gut-brain axis and suggest that probiotics may prove to be useful therapeutically in treating stress-related disorders such as anxiety and depression. More well-conducted studies will be required before any definitive conclusions can be reached about the effectiveness and benefits of probiotics and psychobiotics on mental health.

FMT (fecal microbiota transplantation), the infusion of fecal material and its microbial community from a healthy individual into a patient with a specific disease to improve symptoms or treat a disease, might be considered the definitive probiotic. FMT exerts its therapeutic effect by inducing a beneficial change in the microbial community. Microbiota transplant experiments conducted in mice have demonstrated strong evidence for a role of the gut microbiome in obesity and metabolic diseases, in particular Type 2 diabetes and metabolic syndrome. There is experimental animal evidence to show that the gut microbial metabolites such as short-chain fatty acids can stimulate the release of satiety (state of being fed or full beyond capacity). While these studies do

not prove an interconnection between gut microbes and eating and drinking behaviors, they demonstrate the involvement of certain gut microbes in obesity and metabolic diseases. Animal research has also shown the existence of bidirectional interactions between the brain and the gut microbiome.

In general, there has been limited evidence emerging from human studies. However, one study performed in healthy children examined the possible associations between emotional measures, perceived stress, biological markers of stress and gut inflammation, and fecal microbial metabolites. The study found significant associations between self-reported emotional problems and several short-chain fatty acids. The study demonstrates that chronic stress can affect gut microbial metabolite levels, an effect perhaps mediated by sympathetic nervous system effects on the gut.

Concluding Comments

The study of the human microbiome provides a new approach to understanding the associations of environment, lifestyle factors including diet and physical activity, and health. Healthy aging has been associated with maintenance of intestinal microbial homeostasis.

Cross-References

- [Gene](#)
- [Immune Function](#)
- [Inflammation](#)
- [Metabolic Processes](#)
- [Sympathetic Nervous System \(SNS\)](#)
- [Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus](#)

References and Further Reading

Foster, J. A., Rinman, L., & Cryan, J. F. (2017). Stress & the gut-brain axis: Regulation by the microbiome. *Neurobiology of Stress*, 7, 124–136.

- Gilbert, J. A., Martin, J., Blaser, M. J., Caporaso, J. G., Jansson, J. K., Lynch, S. V., & Knight, R. (2018). Current understanding of the human microbiome. *Nature Medicine*, 24(4), 392–400. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.4517>.
- Mayer, E. (2016). *The mind-gut connection: How the hidden conversation within our bodies impacts our mood, our choices, and our overall health*. New York: HarperCollins Publishers.
- Psychosomatic Medicine. (2017). Special issue on “Brain-Gut Interactions and the Intestinal Microenvironment”. 79(8), 843–957. <https://doi.org/10.1097/PSY.0000000000000525>.
- Rea, K., Dinan, T. G., & Cryan, J. F. (2016). The microbiome: A key regulator of stress and neuroinflammation. *Neurobiology of Stress*, 4, 23–33.

Gut Microbiota

- [Gut Microbiome](#)

GWA Study

- [Genome-Wide Association Study \(GWAS\)](#)

GxE

- [Gene-Environment Interaction](#)

GxG

- [Gene-Gene Interaction](#)

Gyrus/Gyri (pl)

- [Brain, Cortex](#)

H

Habilitation

► [Rehabilitation](#)

Habit Strength

Sheina Orbell
Department of Psychology, University of Essex,
Essex, UK

Synonyms

[Habitual automaticity](#)

Definition

A habit can be defined as a learned behavioral response to a situational cue. The repeated performance of a behavior in a specific context leads to the development of a behavioral habit that is triggered by features of the environment that have covaried frequently with past performance of the behavior. Such features of the environment might include performance locations, preceding actions

in a sequence, the presence of particular people, or an internal thought or feeling. As a consequence of repetition in the same cue-contexts, a habit becomes capable of being triggered directly by perception of the cue. This is referred to as cue contingent automaticity. A person might experience his or her habit as something “I cannot help doing.”

Habit strength is a function of the frequency with which an action has been repeated in a stable context and has acquired a high degree of habitual automaticity. Verplanken and Orbell (2003) developed and validated a metacognitive 12-item instrument to measure habit strength, the Self-Report Habit Index (SRHI). This is a generic instrument that asks respondents whether their performance of a target behavior occurs frequently; requires conscious awareness, thought, and effort; and is difficult to control.

From an empirical perspective, stronger habits are associated with heightened attention to cues associated with the performance of a habit and an increased likelihood of making an action slip when the cue is detected (Orbell and Verplanken 2010). Removal of the cue (e.g., by changing one’s environment) disrupts the performance of a previous habit (Wood et al. 2005). Strong habits also disrupt the ability to enact a counterhabitual intention. Strong habits may be useful in health contexts where, for example, good adherence is

required and may be promoted by interventions that promote repetition in stable contexts (Orbell and Verplanken 2010).

Cross-References

► [Intention](#)

References and Readings

- Chatzisarantis, N. L., & Hagger, M. S. (2007). Mindfulness and the intention-behavior relationship within the theory of planned behavior. *Personality and Social Psychology Bulletin*, 33, 663–676.
- Orbell, S., & Verplanken, B. (2010). The automatic component of habit in health behavior: Habit as cue-contingent automaticity. *Health Psychology*, 29, 374–383.
- Verplanken, B., & Orbell, S. (2003). Reflections on past behavior: A self-report index of habit strength. *Journal of Applied Social Psychology*, 33, 1313–1330.
- Wood, W., & Neal, D. T. (2007). A new look at habits and the habit-goal interface. *Psychological Review*, 114, 843–863.
- Wood, W., Tam, L., & Guerrero Witt, M. (2005). Changing circumstances, disrupting habits. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 88, 918–933.

Habitual Automaticity

► [Habit Strength](#)

Habitual Performance

► [Physical Fitness](#)

HADS

► [Hospital Anxiety Depression Scale](#)

Hamilton Anxiety Rating Scale

Havah Schneider¹, Sabrina Esbitt² and Jeffrey S. Gonzalez³

¹Ferkauf Graduate School of Psychology, Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

²Clinical Psychology, Health Emphasis, Ferkauf Graduate School of Psychology, Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

³Departments of Medicine and Epidemiology & Public Health, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Bronx, NY, USA

Definition

The Hamilton Anxiety Rating Scale (HAM-A) is a widely used 14-item clinician-administered rating tool in the public domain used to measure the severity of anxiety symptoms among individuals previously diagnosed with anxiety disorders (McDowell 2006). The HAM-A was originally developed by Max Hamilton in 1959 as an assessment tool to evaluate anxiety symptoms among people diagnosed with “anxiety neurosis.” Since that time, anxiety neurosis has been reconceptualized and the HAM-A is used among individuals with a variety of anxiety disorders (panic, phobia, and generalized) (McDowell 2006). The 14 items reflect 13 categories of anxiety-related symptoms including anxious mood, tension, fear, insomnia, intellectual/cognitive symptoms, depressed mood, general somatic (muscular and memory symptoms), cardiovascular, respiratory, genitourinary, and gastrointestinal symptoms, with one item capturing the rater’s assessment of behavioral symptoms. The HAM-A takes approximately 15–30 min to administer and score and contains two subscales – psychiatric anxiety (psychological distress) and somatic anxiety (physical symptoms of distress) (Hamilton 1959).

The HAM-A is not designed to be used as a diagnostic tool and has poor discriminant validity between anxiety disorders and depression. Instead, it is a standard primary outcome measure used to assess the efficacy of clinical

interventions for DSM-IV anxiety disorders – most commonly generalized anxiety disorder – within psychopharmacologic randomized controlled trials and psychotherapeutic clinical trials (Roemer 2001). It also used for monitoring anxiety symptoms during treatment. The severity of the item is determined on a five point scale (0 = not present, 4 = severe). A computerized version as well as a pen-and-paper format is available (Kobak et al. 1993), and a structured interview guide has also been developed to standardize its administration (SIGH-A), as its administration is not predefined in the initial instrument (Williams 1988). A six-item abbreviated scale capturing psychic anxiety, tension, restlessness, inability to relax, startle response, worry, and apprehension called the Clinical Anxiety Scale was also proposed by Snaith, Baugh, Clayden, Husain and Sipple (1982). The HAM-A has also been translated into several languages, including Spanish, German, and Polish (Roemer 2001).

Cross-References

- Anxiety
- Anxiety and its Measurement
- Anxiety Disorder
- Stress

References and Readings

- Hamilton, M. (1959). The assessment of anxiety states by rating. *British Journal of Medical Psychology*, 32, 50–55.
- Kobak, K. A., Reynolds, W. M., & Greist, J. H. (1993). Development and validation of a computer-administered version of the Hamilton Rating Scale. *Psychological Assessment*, 5(4), 487–492.
- Maier, W., Buller, R., Philipp, M., & Heuser, I. (1988). The Hamilton anxiety scale: Reliability, validity and sensitivity to change in anxiety and depressive disorders. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 14(1), 61–68.
- Marques, L., Chosak, A., Simon, N. M., Phan, D., Wilhelm, S., & Pollack, M. (2010). Rating scales for anxiety disorders. In P. Baer, P. A. Blais, P. Baer, & P. A. Blais (Eds.), *Handbook of clinical rating scales and assessment in psychiatry and mental health* (pp. 37–72). Totowa, NJ: Humana Press.
- McDowell, I. (2006). *Measuring health: A guide to rating scales and questionnaires* (3rd ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Roemer, L. (2001). Measures for anxiety and related constructs. In M. M. Antony, S. M. Orsillo, & L. Roemer (Eds.), *Practitioner's guide to empirically based measures of anxiety* (pp. 49–83). New York: Springer.
- Snaith, R. P., Baugh, S. J., Clayden, A. D., Husain, A., & Sipple, M. A. (1982). The clinical anxiety scale: An instrument derived from the Hamilton anxiety scale. *British Journal of Psychiatry*, 141, 518–523.
- Williams, J. W. (1988). A structured guide for the Hamilton depression rating scale. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 45, 742–767.

Hamilton Rating Scale for Depression (HAM-D)

Jeffrey S. Gonzalez¹, Erica Shreck² and Abigail Batchelder³

¹Departments of Medicine and Epidemiology & Public Health, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Bronx, NY, USA

²Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

³Diabetes Research Center, Albert Einstein College of Medicine, Yeshiva University, Bronx, NY, USA

Definition

The Hamilton Rating Scale for Depression or Hamilton Depression Rating scale (HAM-D, HRSD, or HDRS) is a 21-item clinician-administered multiple-choice measure of depression symptom severity. The first 17 of the 21 items contribute to the total score (Hamilton 1960) and items 18–21 give additional information not part of the scale, such as paranoia and diurnal variation (Hedlund and Vieweg 1979). Other versions have been developed, ranging from 7 to 29 items (e.g., Hamilton 1964; Williams 1988). In all versions, symptoms are defined by anchor point descriptions (ranging from 3 to 5 possible responses), which increase in severity. Clinicians consider intensity and frequency of symptoms based on patient response and observations. A score of ≤ 7 is widely thought to indicate remission on the HAM-D₁₇ (Frank et al. 1991).

The HAM-D was first published in 1960 and reviewed subsequently (Hamilton 1964, 1980). Due to its comprehensive coverage of depressive symptoms, strong psychometric properties (Hedlund and Vieweg 1979), and the total score demonstrating high concurrent and differential validity as well as strong reliability (Carroll et al. 1973), the HAM-D is considered by many to be the “gold standard” of assessing depressive symptomatology. However, most individual items demonstrate fair to poor agreement (Cicchetti and Prusoff 1983). Use of the Structured Interview Guide, published in 1988, increased the reliability of the items (Williams 1988). Self-report and computerized versions have been developed to improve the psychometric properties of individual items (Williams 2001).

The HAM-D is primarily applied for research purposes to determine severity of depressive symptoms throughout treatment and in response to psychotherapy or antidepressants (O’Sullivan et al. 1997; Williams 2001). More specifically, in the area of behavioral medicine, the HAM-D is used to measure the severity of depression in people with comorbid chronic illness. As assessment of depression can be particularly complicated in this population due to the co-occurrence of somatic features of depression and physical illness, the HAM-D has been criticized for its sensitivity to somatic symptoms (Maier and Philipp 1985; Sutton et al. 2004). Consequently, researchers have evaluated the utility of the HAM-D for assessing depression in chronic illness. An early study assessing somatic comorbidity in a sample of elderly patients found that eight of the HAM-D scale items rated as positive scores for depression by psychiatrists were rated by internists as being related to somatic conditions (Linden et al. 1995). Additionally, researchers compared depression rating scales in chronic fatigue syndrome and found that the HAM-D overestimated the number of depressed patients (Henderson and Tannock, 2005). Nevertheless, a more recent study evaluated the scale in depressed participants with multiple sclerosis and found that the majority of items (12 out of

17) captured depressive symptoms and adequately differentiated from somatic symptoms (Moran and Mohr, 2005). Results suggest that this co-occurrence must be considered when using the HAM-D in behavioral medicine settings.

References and Readings

- Carroll, B. J., Fielding, J. M., & Blashki, T. G. (1973). Depression rating scales: A critical review. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 28, 361–366.
- Cicchetti, D. V., & Prusoff, B. A. (1983). Reliability of depression and associated clinical symptoms. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 40, 987–990.
- Frank, E., Prien, R., Jarrett, R., Keller, M., Kupfer, D., Lavori, P., et al. (1991). Conceptualization and rationale for consensus definitions of terms in major depressive disorder. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 48, 851–855.
- Hamilton, M. (1960). A rating scale for depression. *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery and Psychiatry*, 23, 56–62.
- Hamilton, M. (1964). A rating scale for depressive disorders. *Psychological Reports*, 14, 914.
- Hamilton, M. (1980). Rating depressive patients. *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, 41, 21–24.
- Hedlund, J. L., & Vieweg, B. W. (1979). The Hamilton rating scale for depression: A comprehensive review. *Journal of Operational Psychiatry*, 10, 149–165.
- Henderson, M., & Tannock, C. (2005). Use of depression rating scales in chronic fatigue syndrome. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 59, 181–184.
- Linden, M., Borchelt, M., Barnow, S., & Geiselmann, B. (1995). The impact of somatic morbidity on the Hamilton depression rating scale in the very old. *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica*, 92(2), 150–154.
- Maier, W., & Philipp, M. (1985). Improving the assessment of severity of depressive states: A reduction of the Hamilton depression scale. *Pharmacopsychiatry*, 18, 114–115.
- Moran, P. J., & Mohr, D. C. (2005). The validity of beck depression inventory and Hamilton rating scale for depression items in the assessment of depression among patients with multiple sclerosis. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 28(1), 35–41.
- O’Sullivan, R. L., Fava, M., Agustin, C., Baer, L., & Rosenbaum, J. F. (1997). Sensitivity of the six-item Hamilton depression rating scale. *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica*, 95, 379–384.
- Sutton, S., Baum, A., & Johnston, M. (2004). *The SAGE handbook of health psychology*. London: Sage.

- Williams, J. B. (1988). A structured interview guide for the Hamilton depression rating scale. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 45, 742–747.
- Williams, J. B. (2001). Standardizing the Hamilton depression rating scale: Past, present, and future. *European Archives of Psychiatry and Clinical Neuroscience*, 25, 6–12.

Handgrip Strength

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

This term refers to a common measure used often in rehabilitation medicine to determine the maximum forearm muscular isometric strength. Given that muscle strength has general characteristics, the handgrip strength test may often indicate general muscular strength. The test includes a dynamometer, with a scale in kilogram, where people are asked to perform their maximal press with their hand. Different protocols exist concerning the angle of the arm and hand in relation to the body, the number of pressing trials, and the duration of pressing, normally lasting 3–5 s. This test can be used to indicate various health factors in different populations.

A review of the value of the handgrip strength test in dialysis patients found this test to correlate with general muscle mass, nutritional status (of importance in dialysis), and future complications (Leal et al. 2011). A review of 114 studies in the general population and 71 studies with arthritic patients found a strong age-related decline in handgrip strength and much lower scores among arthritic patients, suggesting a relationship between inflammation and performance on this test (Beenakker et al. 2010). In some pain patients, this test is also helpful in the assessment of their condition. For example, handgrip strength is lower in patients with fibromyalgia and is inversely related to their levels of pain, fatigue,

and stiffness (Aparicio et al. 2010). This test was used in several cohort studies to predict risk of death. For example, in elderly French women, a low handgrip test score significantly predicted risk of mortality, independent of confounders (Rolland et al. 2006). In patients with congestive heart failure, low handgrip strength also predicted risk of death, independent of confounders (Izawa et al. 2009). Furthermore, handgrip scores also prospectively predict decline in activity of daily living and in cognitive performance in the elderly (Taekema et al. 2010). Finally, a recent study found that handgrip strength was inversely correlated with two inflammatory markers in depressed elderly people (Arts et al. 2015). Thus, the handgrip test is a simple, rapid, and objective test which provides information on important physical factors and has predictive validity in relation to functional, cognitive, and vital status measures.

Cross-References

- [Functional Capacity, Disability, and Status](#)
- [Functional Capacity Evaluation](#)

References and Further Readings

- Aparicio, V. A., Carbonell-Baeza, A., Ortega, F. B., Ruiz, J. R., Heredia, J. M., & Delgado-Fernández, M. (2010). Handgrip strength in men with fibromyalgia. *Clinical and Experimental Rheumatology*, 28, S78–S81.
- Arts, M. H., Collard, R. M3,4., Comijs, H. C5., Naudé, P. J6., Risselada, R1., Naarding, P3,7., & Oude Voshaar, R2. (2015). Relationship between physical frailty and low-grade inflammation in late-life depression. *Journal of the American Geriatric Society*, 63, 1652–1657.
- Beenakker, K. G., Ling, C. H., Meskers, C. G., de Craen, A. J., Stijnen, T., Westendorp, R. G., et al. (2010). Patterns of muscle strength loss with age in the general population and patients with a chronic inflammatory state. *Ageing Research Reviews*, 9, 431–436.
- Izawa, K. P., Watanabe, S., Osada, N., Kasahara, Y., Yokoyama, H., Hiraki, K., et al. (2009). Handgrip strength as a predictor of prognosis in Japanese patients with congestive heart failure. *European Journal of Cardiovascular Prevention and Rehabilitation*, 16, 21–27.
- Leal, V. O., Mafra, D., Fouque, D., & Anjos, L. A. (2011). Use of handgrip strength in the assessment of the muscle function of chronic kidney disease patients on dialysis:

- A systematic review. *Nephrology, Dialysis, Transplantation*, 26(4), 1354–1360. Epub 2010 Aug 13.
- Rolland, Y., Lauwers-Cances, V., Cesari, M., Vellas, B., Pahor, M., & Grandjean, H. (2006). Physical performance measures as predictors of mortality in a cohort of community-dwelling older French women. *European Journal of Epidemiology*, 21, 113–122.
- Taekema, D. G., Gussekloo, J., Maier, A. B., Westendorp, R. G., & de Craen, A. J. (2010). Handgrip strength as a predictor of functional, psychological and social health: A prospective population-based study among the oldest old. *Age and Ageing*, 39, 331–337.

public, the research in this area remains in its infancy. Due to the surge of interest in positive psychology over the last decade, researchers are beginning to unveil the predictive and protective effects of positive emotions on health. There are however many remaining critical research questions. This section will focus on the most robust and striking findings in the literature on positive emotions and physical health, in addition to a brief discussion on some of the important methodological concerns for the field.

Happiness

► **Well-Being:** Physical, Psychological, and Social

Happiness and Health

Sarah D. Pressman and Emily D. Hooker
Psychology and Social Behaviour, University of California, Irvine, CA, USA

Synonyms

Physical well-being; Positive affect; Positive emotion; Subjective well-being

Definition

Positive emotions (including happiness) arise as the result of pleasurable engagement with the environment and may present themselves in a variety of forms (e.g., enthusiasm, calm, contentment). Traditionally, physical health is defined as the objective absence of disease or illness but can also include perceptions of wellness.

Description

While the concept that happiness is tied to better health is not novel and is widely accepted by the

What Is Positive Affect?

While there is some debate in the literature as to what adjectives and precise feelings make up positive affect (PA), it is typically considered to be the general positive emotions or feelings (e.g., happiness, enthusiasm, calm, or contentment) resulting from pleasurable interactions with the environment. These feelings may persist for long periods of time and define an individual's general disposition (often called trait PA), or they may be transient moments of emotion that last for minutes or days, typically referred to as state PA or positive mood or emotion (emotion being the shorter lasting of the two). Research on PA and health primarily focuses on trait PA given its more likely *long-lasting* effects on physical well-being; however, on occasion studies will assess the effects of state PA (commonly assessed via a one-time mood assessment asking questions like “how happy are you this week?”). While shorter time assessments of positive feelings are less likely to influence long-term health outcomes, they are known to have transient effects on physiology and are highly correlated with dispositional measures of PA.

Measuring Positive Affect

PA is most frequently assessed via self-report scales asking about the frequency, duration, or intensity of positive feelings. There are a host of different scales to do this with wide

discrepancies between them. In the health field, the most frequently used multi-item tool is the 20-item Positive and Negative Affect Schedule (PANAS), which assesses affect by having individuals rate the degree to which each emotion word (e.g., enthusiastic or irritable) describes their typical mood with flexibility in the assessed time period covered. This scale focuses on aroused emotions and is therefore not useful for individuals interested in assessing the health impact of low energy states (e.g., calm). There are however many other mood adjective checklists that include low arousal emotions such as those using circumplex models of emotion (Russell 1980), which includes measures of both arousal and valence or the extended 60-item version of the PANAS (the PANAS-X) (Watson and Clark 1999). Studies have also utilized single-item questionnaires (e.g., “Are you happy”), confederate report, positive items drawn from other scales (e.g., depression measures), or even autobiographical writing samples. Given the known high levels of social desirability and response bias to emotion scales, future research would benefit from greater use of unobtrusive and non-self-report methodologies to determine an individual’s level of PA. One other critical measurement concern relates to the role of negative affect (NA) in the PA-health association. At the trait level, PA and NA are often weakly correlated; however, they are sometimes considered to be opposite ends of the same spectrum by many researchers. It may be the case that benefits of PA on health are simply attributable to the absence of NA. The majority of studies do not test for the independence of these affect variables in relation to their health impact; however, those that do frequently report that PA is beneficial to health irrespective of NA. Also critical is to better understand what types of PA are beneficial to health. Given the divergent physiological impacts of high versus low arousal emotions (e.g., ecstasy versus relaxation), it is not unrealistic to anticipate differential health results. Nevertheless, this is rarely considered and frequently unmeasured due to the choice of affect items within scales.

Associations Between Positive Affect and Health

In their major review, Pressman and Cohen (2005) evaluated the results of over 150 studies on PA and health and physiological outcomes. They consistently found that greater PA was associated with increased longevity in individuals older than 55, in studies with years to decades of longitudinal follow-up. For example, in one creative study by Danner et al. (2001), autobiographical writing samples from 180 young nuns entering the convent were coded for positive and negative emotion word usage. At a 50-year follow-up time point, researchers found that nuns who used higher levels of positive words lived almost 11 years longer than their counterparts who used the fewest positive emotion words. This finding was not attributable to negative word usage. Similar results have been demonstrated in multiple studies of healthy, community-dwelling older individuals revealing that those individuals who report greater amounts of PA at baseline live *years* longer than their less positive counterparts.

There is also consistent evidence that positive emotions are protective against a multitude of morbidity outcomes including decreased falls and injuries, reduced heart attack and stroke incidences, fewer hospitalizations for coronary complications, and improved pregnancy outcomes. An exemplary example of this is the viral challenge work of Cohen and colleagues (2003). In this study, PA (determined via interviews averaged over several weeks) was found to prospectively predict the decreased likelihood of developing an objective cold (and cold symptoms) after being experimentally exposed to a novel virus. These results were independent of the influence of trait NA, which was only tied to the *perception* of having a cold as opposed to actual incidence. This finding was replicated, in that positive emotion styles predicted fewer objective flu cases and fewer flu symptoms reported when the flu virus was experimentally administered.

Additional findings from the literature generally show that cross-sectionally, individuals with higher PA report fewer symptoms and generally

feel better. What remains unknown is whether this is a true physiological process (e.g., altered opioid levels) or whether PA simply leads to altered attention to or perception of symptoms. Similarly, it may also be true that feelings of health lead to greater positive emotion. Most studies to date do not address these mechanistic and directional questions.

Finally, survival studies of diseased patients have provided *some* indication that PA may lead to improved health outcomes, but not in every circumstance. Research on those with early-stage life-threatening diseases (e.g., HIV, stage I–II breast cancer) indicates that PA may lengthen life. This may be due to physiological changes (outlined below) or due to greater adherence to treatments and/or positive behavioral changes, but these mediators have not been thoroughly evaluated. To date there is little and mixed evidence regarding the effects of PA in late-stage disease (e.g., stage IV breast cancer, end-stage renal disease). There are several possible reasons for this: high PA during the end stages of life may indicate unusual or inappropriate coping and possible underreporting of important symptoms. It is also likely that the small physiological changes tied to PA may be too weak to alter the course of disease in its late stages.

How Could Positive Affect Improve Health?

Pressman and Cohen (2005) proposed two pathways by which PA might benefit health and prevent disease. The first is the main effect hypothesis, which contends that PA influences health via its positive influences on health practices, physiological functioning (e.g., immune, cardiovascular, endocrine), and social relationships (also known to have health benefits). The second theory indicates that PA may be tied to better health via its beneficial impact on the stress response. Specifically, it may ameliorate the negative impact of stress by altering perceptions of severity, reducing detrimental physiological responses, and by helping individuals build resources (e.g., physical health, social support)

to aid in coping and stress recovery. It is likely that both pathways play some role, although to date no one has directly contrasted the pathways in a single study. There is, however, growing evidence for both types of connections.

Critiques and Future Directions

Future research needs to distinguish what *types* of positive factors are most important to health outcomes and when. To date, most studies focus on “happiness”; however, there is equally good evidence for multi-adjective scales in addition to related positive constructs (e.g., optimism, life satisfaction). It is also important for researchers to better understand at what intensity and frequency positive emotions must be felt to show real physiological benefits and to what extent changes are independent from negative feelings. There is also a need to better understand the mediators of the PA-health association and to have studies that prospectively test both health and physiological pathways together. Finally, it is an exciting notion to consider the possibility that PA-inducing interventions might improve health in a meaningful fashion, but it is too soon to determine whether or not these types of studies have robust effects.

General Conclusions

Happiness and other positive emotions have been linked to a greater lifespan, reduced disease susceptibility, improved health perceptions, and better outcomes for those with early-stage diseases. Meanwhile, researchers continue to explore the extent to which positive emotion can be beneficial, when it is most important in disease prevention and treatment, and finally the mechanisms by which it is most helpful.

Cross-References

- [Affect](#)
- [Affect Arousal](#)

- Emotions: Positive and Negative
- Health Psychology
- Mood
- Optimism, Pessimism, and Health
- Positive Affect Negative Affect Scale (PANAS)
- Positive Affectivity
- Positive Psychology
- Well-Being: Physical, Psychological, and Social

References and Further Readings

- Cohen, S., Doyle, W. J., Turner, R. B., Alper, C. M., & Skoner, D. P. (2003). Emotional style and susceptibility to the common cold. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65, 652–657.
- Danner, D. D., Snowdon, D. A., & Friesen, W. V. (2001). Positive emotions in early life and longevity: Findings from the nun study. *Personality Processes and Individual Differences*, 80(5), 804–813.
- Diener, E., & Emmons, R. A. (1985). The independence of positive and negative affect. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 47(5), 1105–1117.
- Diener, E., & Lucas, R. E. (2000). Subjective emotional well-being. In M. Lewis & J. M. Haviland-Jones (Eds.), *Handbook of emotions* (pp. 325–334). New York: Guilford Press.
- Diener, E., Larsen, R. J., Levine, S., & Emmons, R. A. (1985). Intensity and frequency: Dimensions underlying positive and negative affect. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 48(5), 1253–1265.
- Pressman, S. D., & Cohen, S. (2005). Does positive affect influence health? *Psychological Bulletin*, 131(6), 925–971.
- Russell, J. A. (1980). A circumplex model of affect. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 39, 1161–1178.
- Watson, D., & Clark, L. A. (1999). *The PANAS-X: Manual for the positive and negative affect schedule-expanded form*. Iowa City: University of Iowa, Department of Psychology. Retrieved from <http://www.psychology.uiowa.edu/Faculty/Watson/Watson.html>

Hardiness

- Locus of Control
- Resilience: Measurement
- Salutogenesis
- Williams LifeSkills Program

Hardiness and Health

Deborah J. Wiebe

Psychological Sciences, University of California, Merced, Merced, CA, USA

Synonyms

Personality hardiness

Definition

Hardiness is a personality construct composed of three traits – control, commitment, and challenge – that are theorized to make one resilient in the face of stress. Individuals high in hardiness tend to believe and act as if life experiences are controllable (control), to engage meaningfully in life activities and to appraise these activities as purposeful and worthy of investment even in the face of adversity (commitment), and to view change in life as a challenge toward growth and development rather than as a threat to security (challenge). Based on existential personality theory, the combination of these characteristics is believed to provide individuals with the courage and motivation to cope adaptively with life stress, thereby buffering its adverse effects on health.

Description

Hardiness has historical significance because it played a significant role in the reemergence of research examining the relationship between personality and health, and it foreshadowed the current positive psychology movement that focuses on transformation, growth, and resilience in the face of adversity (e.g., optimism, benefit finding, posttraumatic growth, grit). Hardiness was developed by Maddi and Kobasa (Kobasa 1979; Kobasa et al. 1982) out of a longitudinal study of executives at Illinois Bell Telephone who were facing work upheaval due to deregulation. Executives were studied before, during, and after

deregulation to identify characteristics of those who remained healthy and thrived in this time of heightened life stress versus those who showed signs of strain. Individuals who displayed little strain differed from their high strain counterparts on the characteristics of control, commitment, and challenge.

Associations Between Hardiness and Health

Evidence has accumulated across the decades to suggest that hardiness is associated with lower levels of physical and psychological strain following exposure to stress. Higher hardiness has been associated with lower reports of physical symptoms and psychological distress in both cross-sectional and longitudinal analyses. Such associations have been found across samples experiencing diverse stressors including: school-related stress in undergraduates; work-related stress among business executives, bus drivers, lawyers, and nurses; sport-related injuries among athletes; and military personnel undergoing stressful military procedures. The characteristics of hardiness have also been consistently associated with better performance under stress as revealed in higher GPAs, athletic performance, and leadership skills.

Research has also examined the biobehavioral mechanisms by which hardiness may attenuate adverse responses to stress. There is compelling evidence that characteristics of hardiness facilitate adaptive cognitive appraisals in the face of stress. For example, high hardy individuals make more positive appraisals when experiencing laboratory-induced threat and appraise the same life stressors as less threatening and more controllable than do low hardy individuals. Hardiness is also associated with more adaptive coping characterized by higher problem-focused and support-seeking coping, better health behaviors, and lower avoidance coping. Consistent with hardiness theory, these more positive perceptions of stress and active versus passive coping strategies have been found to mediate associations between hardiness and health.

Although the hardiness construct developed out of existential personality theory and has been primarily studied as an individual difference variable contributing to resilience, some researchers have examined hardiness characteristics at a

broader systems level. For example, research and assessment on family hardiness and occupational hardiness have been published in recent years.

Controversies Regarding Hardiness and Health Associations

Despite such encouraging findings, numerous criticisms of this literature have led some researchers to question the evidence supporting an association between hardiness and health. Concerns have centered on: (a) problems with the measurement of hardiness, (b) problems with the measurement of health outcomes in hardiness-related research, and (c) inconsistent evidence that hardiness “buffers” the adverse effects of stress.

Measurement of hardiness. Progress in the field has been hampered by a number of problems with the measurement of hardiness. First, the measure of hardiness has gone through multiple iterations and no standard measure of hardiness exists. The use of multiple measures makes it difficult to evaluate findings across studies. Second, the existing measures have not consistently supported the three-factor structure theorized to underlie the hardiness construct, raising questions about whether hardiness should be examined as a single composite variable. Research that has examined the three constructs individually suggests that control and commitment are more consistently associated with lower strain than is challenge. No study has provided compelling evidence that all three components are necessary to promote adaptive responses to stress. Third, the items on the initial hardiness scales were negatively keyed, raising questions about whether the scale was measuring the absence of maladaptive traits (e.g., neuroticism) rather than the presence of adaptive traits. Construct validity studies have demonstrated that hardiness scores are strongly correlated with neuroticism, and that some associations between hardiness and lower strain are reduced or eliminated when shared variance with neuroticism is statistically controlled. The most recent version of the hardiness scale – Personal Views Survey III-Revised (PVS III-R) – appears to have partially addressed these issues. However, the psychometric properties of this scale have not been published in a peer-reviewed journal, and

access to and scoring of the PVS III-R are conducted only by The Hardiness Institute, Inc., a for-profit agency (http://hardisurvey.com/Research_FAQs.htm). Measurement concerns continue to hamper research in this area.

Measurement of physical health outcomes. Another concern with the hardiness and health literature is that health outcomes are commonly measured with self-reported somatic complaints or other subjective signs of strain, rather than with objective signs of illness. Such outcomes are imperfect measures of health; they are heavily influenced by illness cognition and illness behavior processes that occur with heightened distress. The use of such health measures combined with the overlap between measures of hardiness and neuroticism have raised concerns that hardiness-health associations reflect shared variance with neuroticism. Few published studies have examined associations between hardiness and more objective signs of physical health (e.g., psychophysiological reactivity to stress; blood pressure; immune function; mortality), and those that exist have yielded inconsistent findings.

Evidence of stress buffering. Although developed in the context of work-related stress, the question of whether hardiness “buffers” the adverse health effects of stress is not fully answered. If hardiness exerts its effects by buffering stress, its associations with health outcomes should be stronger under high versus low stress conditions (i.e., there should be a statistical interaction between hardiness and stress). Many studies have not been designed to test this stress-buffering hypothesis (e.g., hardiness is often tested among samples exposed only to high levels of stress), and those that have provide inconsistent support for stress buffering. Nevertheless, the consistent finding of adaptive perceptions of stress noted above suggests that hardiness may reduce one’s level of psychological stress even in the face of objectively similar stressful life events.

Conclusion

The construct of hardiness continues to be studied in a variety of settings around the world, and

interventions to increase levels of hardiness have been developed. This recent wave of hardiness research has focused on psychological strain and performance-based outcomes more than on physical health outcomes, but may provide answers to some of these ongoing controversies.

Cross-References

- ▶ Benefit Finding
- ▶ Biobehavioral Mechanisms
- ▶ Construct Validity
- ▶ Coping
- ▶ Health Behaviors
- ▶ Individual Differences
- ▶ Life Events
- ▶ Mediators
- ▶ Neuroticism
- ▶ Optimism, Pessimism, and Health
- ▶ Passive Coping Strategies
- ▶ Perceived Control
- ▶ Perceptions of Stress
- ▶ Personality
- ▶ Positive Psychology
- ▶ Posttraumatic Growth
- ▶ Problem-Focused Coping
- ▶ Psychological Stress
- ▶ Psychometric Properties
- ▶ Resilience
- ▶ Self-Report
- ▶ Social Support
- ▶ Somatic Symptoms
- ▶ Stress
- ▶ Stress: Appraisal and Coping
- ▶ Stressor
- ▶ Symptoms
- ▶ Work-Related Stress

References and Further Reading

- Funk, S. C. (1992). Hardiness: A review of theory and research. *Health Psychology, 11*, 335–345.
- Kobasa, S. C. (1979). Stressful life events, personality and health: An inquiry into hardiness. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 37*, 1–11.

- Kobasa, S. C., Maddi, S. R., & Kahn, S. (1982). Hardiness and health: A prospective study. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 42, 168–177.
- Maddi, S. R. (2013). *Hardiness: Turning stressful circumstances into resilient growth*. Dordrecht: Springer Netherlands. <https://doi.org/10.1007/978-94-007-5222-1>.
- Maddi, S. R., & Khoshaba, D. M. (2001). *HardiSurvey III-R: Test development and internet instruction manual*. Irvine: Hardiness Institute.
- Wiebe, D. J., & Williams, P. G. (1992). Hardiness and health: A social psychophysiological perspective on stress and adaptation. *Journal of Social and Clinical Psychology*, 11, 238–262.

Harm Minimization

► Harm Reduction

Harm Reduction

Deborah Rinehart
Denver Health and Hospital Authority, Denver,
CO, USA

Synonyms

[Harm minimization](#); [Risk reduction](#)

Definition

Harm reduction is a public health framework that refers to policies, programs, and practices that focus on reducing potentially adverse health, social, and economic consequences related to engagement in high-risk behaviors. Harm reduction has been controversial as it focuses on preventing or reducing harm and not necessarily on preventing or eliminating risky behavior. Although it has been used in many different settings, harm reduction is most often associated with issues related to substance use and became a more prominent framework in the mid-1980s as a public health response to the HIV epidemic among injection drug users.

In the field of substance abuse, harm reduction provides an alternative to abstinence. The harm reduction framework recognizes that there are many people who are unable or unwilling to stop using illicit drugs. Subsequently, it focuses on reducing the societal and individual harms that may occur as a result of drug use. Needle exchange programs are an example of a harm reduction approach to HIV among injection drug users. These programs focus on providing clean syringes so that individuals who continue to inject drugs do not get infected with HIV. Through a nonjudgmental approach, education, and offering clean equipment, the programs strive to prevent adverse health outcomes (e.g., HIV infection) among injection drug users. These programs do not encourage or promote drug use but instead offer realistic options to individuals who are unable to quit their drug use. This framework has been proven to be effective in reversing and preventing the HIV epidemic among injection drug users (Des Jarlais 2010).

The harm reduction framework encompasses multiple levels as policy, environments, and individual behaviors can all be targeted and modified to reduce harm. The framework acknowledges that risky behaviors occur along a continuum ranging from minimal risk to excessive risk. The goal is to identify feasible and realistic options along this continuum that can be adopted to reduce risk. Instead of seeking to criminalize or moralize behavior, harm reduction seeks to meet individuals in their current situation and identify ways to reduce the harmful outcomes to society and the individual that may be a result of engaging in risky behavior. According to a recent editorial in the *International Journal of Drug Policy*, harm reduction started as a public health strategy informed by social justice and over time has increasingly drawn attention to structural issues and the need to reform policy so that disenfranchised populations can avoid harm (Stimson and O'Hare 2010).

Cross-References

► [HIV Infection](#)

References and Readings

- (2010). Special issue: Commentaries on harm reduction: Looking back, look forward. *International Journal of Drug Policy* 21(2).
- Des Jarlais, D. C. (2010). Learning from HIV epidemics among injection drug users. Harm reduction: moving through the third decade. *International Journal of Drug Policy*, 21, 97–99.
- Harm Reduction Journal
- Inciardi, J. A., & Harrison, L. D. (Eds.). (2000). *Harm reduction: National and international perspectives*. Thousand Oaks: Sage.
- Marlatt, A. (Ed.). (1998). *Harm reduction: Pragmatic strategies for managing high-risk behaviors*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Stimson, G., & O'Hare, P. (2010). Harm reduction: Moving through the third decade. *International Journal of Drug Policy*, 21, 91–93.

Harmful Drinking

► Binge Drinking

Hayman, Laura L.

Laura L. Hayman
College of Nursing and Health Sciences,
University of Massachusetts Boston, Boston,
MA, USA

Biographical Information



Laura L. Hayman earned her BS in Nursing, MSN in Child Health Nursing, and PhD in Interdisciplinary Studies in Human Development at the

University of Pennsylvania. She has served on faculty at Penn, New York University, and UMass Boston where she is Professor of Nursing. Dr. Hayman is also an adjunct Professor of Medicine in the Division of Preventive and Behavioral Medicine, Department of Population and Quantitative Health Sciences, at UMass Medical School and serves in leadership roles in the Center for Clinical and Translational Research. Her clinical, community-based, and translational research and scholarship has focused on prevention and management of obesity and cardiometabolic conditions in children and families from diverse populations. Recently completed and ongoing research with colleagues from several disciplines includes multicomponent behavioral interventions focused on increasing physical activity and promoting healthy lifestyle behaviors in vulnerable children, a dietary intervention designed to improve glucose metabolism and lipid profiles in pregnant women at risk for gestational diabetes (GDM), and translational research of social media approaches for weight management and cardiometabolic risk reduction in college students.

Hayman is a past president of the Society of Behavioral Medicine (SBM) and continues to serve in leadership roles in SBM, the American Heart Association, the Preventive Cardiovascular Nurses Association, and the Global Cardiovascular Nursing Leadership Forum. She holds fellowships in the American Heart Association, the American Academy of Nursing, the Society of Behavioral Medicine, the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research, and the Preventive Cardiovascular Nurses Association.

Major Accomplishments

Christian R. and Mary F. Lindback Award for Distinguished Teaching, University of Pennsylvania, 1983

Fellow, American Heart Association, Council on Cardiovascular and Stroke Nursing, 1995

Katharine A. Lembright Award for Achievement in Cardiovascular Nursing Research, American Heart Association, 1997

Fellow, American Heart Association, Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, and

Council on Nutrition, Physical Activity and Metabolism (now the Lifestyle Council), 2003

Member, Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research, 2006

C. Tracy Orleans Distinguished Service Award, Society of Behavioral Medicine, 2007

Distinguished Achievement Award, Council on Cardiovascular Nursing, American Heart Association, 2009

Spirit of Nursing Award, College of Nursing and Health Sciences, University of Massachusetts, Boston, 2010

National Meritorious Achievement Award, American Heart Association, 2010

Excellence in Pediatric Graduate Education Award, University of Pennsylvania, 2011

C. Tracy Orleans Distinguished Service Award, Society of Behavioral Medicine, 2013

SIGMA International Nurse Researchers Hall of Fame, 2018

References and Further Reading

- Borawski, E. A., Tufts, K. A., Trapl, E. S., Hayman, L. L., Yoder, L. D., & Lovegreen, L. D. (2015). Effectiveness of health education teachers and school nurses teaching sexually transmitted infections/human immunodeficiency virus prevention knowledge and skills in high school. *Journal of School Health*, 85(3), 189–196.
- Camhi, S. M., Crouter, S. E., Hayman, L. L., Must, A., & Lichtenstein, A. H. (2015a). Lifestyle behaviors in metabolically healthy and unhealthy overweight and obese women: A preliminary study. *PLoS One*, 10(9), e0138548.
- Camhi, S. M., Whitney-Evans, E., Hayman, L. L., Lichtenstein, A. H., & Must, A. (2015b). Healthy eating index and metabolically healthy obesity in U.S. adolescents and adults. *Preventive Medicine*, 77, 23–27.
- Crouter, S. E., de Ferranti, S. D., Whiteley, J., Steltz, S. K., Osganian, S. K., et al. (2015). Effect on physical activity of a randomized afterschool intervention for inner city children in 3rd to 5th grade. *PLoS One*, 10(10), e0141584.
- Daniels, S. R., Pratt, C. A., & Hayman, L. L. (2011). Reduction of risk for cardiovascular disease in children and adolescents. *Circulation*, 124(5), 1673–1687.
- Flynn, J. Y., Daniels, S. R., Hayman, L. L., Maahs, D. M., McCrindle, B. W., Mitsnesfæs, M., et al. (2014). Update: Ambulatory blood pressure monitoring in children and adolescents: A scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Hypertension*, 63(5), 1116–1135.
- Hayman, L. L. (2016). Reducing racial and ethnic disparities in childhood and adolescent obesity: Behavior matters. *Journal of Pediatrics*, 175, 9–10.
- Hayman, L. L. (2017). Preventive cardiovascular health in schools: Current status. *Current Cardiovascular Risk Reports*, 11(24). <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12170-017-0549-2>.
- Hayman, L. L., & Worel, J. N. (2016). Reducing disparities in cardiovascular health: Social determinants matter. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 31(4), 288–290.
- Hayman, L. L., Meininger, J. C., Coates, P. M., & Gallagher, P. R. (1995). Nongenetic influences of obesity on risk factors for cardiovascular disease during two phases of development. *Nursing Research*, 44(5), 277–283.
- Hayman, L. L., Mahon, M., & Turner, R. J. (Eds.). (2002a). *Health and behavior in childhood and adolescence*. New York: Springer.
- Hayman, L. L., Mahon, M. M., & Turner, R. J. (Eds.). (2002b). *Chronic illness in children: An evidence-based approach*. New York: Springer.
- Hayman, L. L., Helden, L., Chyun, D. A., & Braun, L. T. (2011). A life course approach to cardiovascular disease prevention. *Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 26(4), S22–S34.
- Hayman, L. L., Berra, K., Fletcher, B. J., & Houston Miller, N. (2015). The role of nurses in promoting cardiovascular health worldwide: The global cardiovascular nursing leadership forum. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 66(7), 864–866.
- Kariuki, J. K., Stuart-Shor, E. M., Leveille, S. G., & Hayman, L. L. (2015). Methodological challenges in estimating trends and burden of cardiovascular disease in sub-Saharan Africa. *Cardiology Research and Practice*, 2015, 921021. <https://doi.org/10.1155/2015/2015/921021>.
- Napolitano, M. A., Whiteley, J. A., Mavredes, M. N., Faro, J., DiPietro, L., Hayman, L. L., et al. (2017). Using social media to deliver weight loss programming to young adults: Design and rationale for the healthy body healthy U trial. *Contemporary Clinical Trials*, 60, 1–13.
- Raghuvver, G., White, D. A., Hayman, L. L., Woo, J. G., Villafane, J., Celermajer, D., et al. (2016). Cardiovascular consequences of childhood secondhand tobacco smoke exposure: Prevailing evidence, burden and racial and socioeconomic disparities: A scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*, 134(16), e336–e359.
- Shi, L., Morrison, J. A., Wiecha, J., Horton, M., & Hayman, L. L. (2011). Healthy lifestyle factors associated with reduced cardiometabolic risk. *British Journal of Nutrition*, 105, 747–754.
- Shi, L., Ryan, H. H., Jones, E., Simas, T. A., Lichtenstein, A. H., et al. (2014). Urinary isoflavone concentrations are inversely associated with cardiometabolic risk markers in pregnant U.S. women. *Journal of Nutrition*, 144(3), 344–351.

HbA1c

Luigi Meneghini
Diabetes Research Institute, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

A1C; Glycated hemoglobin; Glycosylated hemoglobin; Hemoglobin A1c

Definition

HbA1c, or glycosylated hemoglobin, is a measure of how much glucose is irreversibly bound (glycated) to hemoglobin, and can be used to assess the degree of exposure to glycemia in the preceding 2–3 months (corresponding to the life span of the red blood cell where hemoglobin is contained). In a person with normal blood glucose levels, the amount of glycated hemoglobin is around 4–6%, representing an average blood glucose level between 70 and 120 mg/dl. In individuals with diabetes, HbA1c can be measured every 3 months with a goal of keeping the value as close to normal as possible, or at least under 7% in most patients. The higher the HbA1c, the greater the risk over time (usually measured in years) of developing microvascular complications, such as diabetic retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy. HbA1c remains the best predictor for future diabetes-related chronic complications that is available in the clinical setting.

Cross-References

- [Diabetes](#)
- [Hyperglycemia](#)

References and Readings

Joslin, E. P., & Kahn, C. R. (2005). *Joslin's diabetes mellitus* (14th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Head Injury

- [Traumatic Brain Injury](#)

Headache with Aura

- [Migraine Headache](#)

Headaches, Types of: Cluster, Migraine, and Tension

Hiroe Kikuchi
Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, Center Hospital, National Center for Global Health and Medicine, Tokyo, Japan

Definition

Cluster headache, migraine, and tension-type headache are three major types of primary headaches. Primary headaches are headaches with no apparent underlying organic disease process.

Description

The International Classification of Headache Disorders, third edition (ICHD-3, Headache Classification Committee of the International Headache Society 2018), is a widely used classification of headaches, and it contains diagnostic criteria for headaches. Cluster headache, migraine, and tension-type headache are classified as primary headaches, and their diagnosis is based on the pain characteristics and associated symptoms. Generally, neuroimaging is not necessary for the diagnosis; however, it is considered to exclude underlying abnormalities of the brain in some cases. Assessment of psychosocial aspects is also important especially in migraine and tension-type headache because psychosocial factors can be precipitating and aggravating factors

of headache and headache may affect psychosocial condition.

In these headaches, treatment consists of acute therapy and prophylactic therapy. Prophylactic therapy is important because frequent use of analgesics places patients at risk for medication overuse headache.

Cluster Headache

Cluster headache is a headache which is severe, strictly unilateral, and orbital, supraorbital, or temporal in location. Attacks usually occur in series for a period of weeks or months which is called a cluster period. Cluster periods are separated by remission periods which are usually months to years. The attack lasts 15–180 min, and its frequency ranges from once per 2 days to eight times a day. The attack accompanies ipsilateral autonomic symptoms such as ptosis, miosis, lacrimation, conjunctival injection, rhinorrhea, nasal congestion, and forehead and facial sweating. Pain is severe enough to disturb daily activities, and most patients are restless or agitated during attack. In ICHD-3, cluster headache is categorized into trigeminal autonomic cephalalgias with other primary headaches accompanying with autonomic symptoms.

The prevalence of cluster headache is less than 1%, and prevalence is three to four times higher in men than in women (May 2005).

Pathophysiological involvement of the hypothalamus is suggested by time pattern of attacks. Neurovascular factors are also important.

Acute therapy for cluster headache includes inhalation of pure oxygen and triptan. Subcutaneous injection and nasal spray are preferable to oral administration. As preventive therapy for cluster headache, Verapamil is established. Lithium, methysergide, and corticosteroids are also used. Non-pharmacological treatment is generally ineffective.

Migraine

Migraine is further classified into two major subtypes: migraine without aura and migraine with aura.

Migraine without aura is recurrent headache disorder whose pain is generally unilateral,

pulsating (throbbing), moderate to severe in intensity, aggravated by daily physical activities, and accompanied by nausea and/or photophobia and phonophobia. The attack lasts 4–72 h, and its median frequency is 1.5 per month. Migraine with aura is characterized by a complex of reversible focal neurological signs (visual, sensory, motor, or speech signs) which gradually progress in 5–20 min and last for less than 60 min generally before headache. Typically, headache of the same quality as migraine without aura follows aura, but sometimes, the quality of headache is different, and even headache can be absent. Symptoms such as fatigue, difficulty in concentrating, neck stiffness, sensitivity to light or sound, nausea, blurred vision, yawning, pallor, or emotional lability sometimes occur several hours to 2 days prior to migraine (either with or without aura), and they are called premonitory symptoms. Migraine may be aggravated (i.e., increased in the severity or frequency in a relatively long term) by psychosocial stress, frequent intake of alcohol, and other environmental factors. An attack may be triggered by menstruation, chocolate, etc.

Prevalence has been reported to be between 5% and 25% in women and 2% and 10% in men.

Trigeminovascular theory is now a broadly accepted pathophysiological mechanism of migraine (Silberstein 2004). Perivascular trigeminal terminals are stimulated by certain causes, and vasoactive substances such as calcitonin gene-related peptide (CGRP) are released. Vessels dilate and neurogenic inflammation occurs, which leads to pain and accompanying symptom such as nausea. Central pain modulation is also thought to be involved. Cortical spreading depression is associated with aura.

Acute therapy for migraine consists of specific (triptans and ergots) and nonspecific (analgesics) (Silberstein 2004). Triptans are 5HT_{1B/1D} receptor agonists and have effects of vasoconstriction and inhibition of vasoactive substance release and of neurogenic inflammation. Prophylactic therapy includes calcium channel blocker, beta-blocker, ergots, antidepressants, and anticonvulsants (Silberstein 2004). Refraining from drinking alcohol and eating certain foods (chocolate, cheese, etc.) may also be effective for prevention of

migraine attacks. Relaxation therapy, thermal and electromyography biofeedback, and cognitive behavior therapy are also used as prophylactic therapy.

Tension-Type Headache

Tension-type headache typically causes pain which is bilateral, pressing or tightening, and mild to moderate in intensity and is not aggravated by daily physical activities. Although anorexia may accompany, neither nausea nor vomiting does. Photophobia and phonophobia can coexist.

Tension-type headache is the most common type of primary headache, and its life prevalence estimates range from 30% to 78%, and tension-type headache is slightly more in women than in men. Its prevalence is most at 40s (Loder and Rizzoli 2008).

Increased muscle tension was formerly thought to be a major cause of tension-type headache; however, now it is thought that peripheral factor (hypersensitivity to pain in the head and neck tissue) plays a major role in less frequent headache (i.e., infrequent and frequent episodic tension-type headache), while central factor (alteration of pain sensitivity in the central nervous system) plays a major role in more frequent headache (chronic tension-type headache).

Acute therapy for tension-type headache is analgesics (nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) and acetaminophen). Over-the-counter analgesics are commonly used. As pharmacological prophylactic therapy, amitriptyline is the most widely researched (Millea and Brodie 2002). With less evidence, other antidepressants such as selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) and tizanidine are considered as prophylactic therapy. Relaxation therapy, electromyography biofeedback, and cognitive behavior therapy are also used for prophylaxis.

Cross-References

► [Headaches: Psychological Management](#)

References and Further Reading

- Headache Classification Committee of the International Headache Society. (2018). The international classification of headache disorders, 3rd edition. *Cephalalgia*, 38(1), 1–211.
- Loder, E., & Rizzoli, P. (2008). Tension-type headache. *British Medical Journal*, 336, 88–92.
- May, A. (2005). Cluster headache: Pathogenesis, diagnosis, and management. *The Lancet*, 366, 843–855.
- Millea, P. J., & Brodie, J. J. (2002). Tension-type headache. *American Family Physician*, 66, 797–804.
- Silberstein, S. D. (2004). Migraine. *The Lancet*, 363, 381–391.

Headaches: Psychological Management

Hiroe Kikuchi

Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, Center Hospital, National Center for Global Health and Medicine, Tokyo, Japan

Definition

Psychological management of headache includes assessment of psychosocial aspects of headache, screening and treating psychiatric comorbidity, and application of psychological treatments to manage pain.

Description

Psychological management of headache has been researched mostly in tension-type headache and migraine.

When diagnosing headache, assessment of psychosocial aspects is also important because psychosocial factors can be precipitating and aggravating factors of headache, and headache may affect psychosocial condition. In both migraine and tension-type headache, 50–80% of patients report that psychological stress is a precipitating or aggravating factor of headache according to some reports. Identifying individual

precipitating or aggravating factors is fundamental for the prophylaxis of headache. In both migraine and tension-type headache, anxiety and depressive mood are reported to be higher than healthy controls, and social activities are also affected. Overall assessments of those psychosocial conditions are necessary to understand the burden of headaches.

Comorbidity with mood disorder and anxiety disorder is also reported to be high in both migraine and tension-type headache (Holroyd 2002). In addition, psychiatric comorbidity is reported to be a possible risk factor for chronification of headache. Therefore, screening and treating psychiatric comorbidity is also necessary for headache management.

Representative psychological treatments of headache are relaxation therapy, biofeedback therapy, and cognitive behavioral therapy (Holroyd 2002).

In tension-type headache, relaxation therapy in the form of progressive muscle relaxation and autogenic training, electromyographic biofeedback therapy (reducing muscle activity in the forehead or neck and shoulder muscles), and cognitive behavioral therapy are used. Although relaxation therapy alone is suggested to be effective, it is reported that the percentage of patients whose headache was improved was increased when biofeedback therapy was added. Cognitive behavioral therapy is also conducted in combination with other therapies as well as alone. Cognitive behavior therapy increases the effectiveness of relaxation therapy when it is added to relaxation therapy.

In migraine, relaxation therapy in the form of progressive muscle relaxation and autogenic training, thermal biofeedback therapy (warming hand), and cognitive behavioral therapy is generally thought to be treatment options for prevention of migraine as psychological treatment. However, it is reported that cognitive behavioral therapy did not appear to enhance the effectiveness of relaxation therapy or thermal biofeedback.

In cognitive behavioral therapy, it is assumed that irrational cognition and maladaptive behavior underlie pain, psychological stress, and mood

disturbances, and those cognition and behavior are the targets of intervention. Usually, treatment program comprising several components is conducted, and relaxation therapy is often included. Treatment aims at achieving adoptive coping behavior to pain as well as approaching psychosocial factors. Psychological treatments have a feature that they all aim at self-control in common. There is not any recommendation about which of these psychological treatment to choose for specific patients.

Psychological treatment is usually used either with or without medication. In chronic tension-type headache, the combination of cognitive behavioral therapy and tricyclic antidepressants is reported to possibly improve outcome relative to monotherapy.

The mechanism of how these psychological treatments improve headache is still unclear. Previous studies that showed the effect of psychological treatment on headache were not limited to patients with psychiatric comorbidity, and it is not likely that the improvement of comorbid psychiatric disorders fully mediates the improvement of headache.

Cross-References

- [Headaches, Types of: Cluster, Migraine, and Tension](#)

References and Further Reading

- Holroyd, K. A. (2002). Assessment and psychological management of recurrent headache disorders. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 70, 656–677.

Health

- [Well-Being: Physical, Psychological, and Social](#)

Health Anxiety

Tamer F. Desouky¹, Lisa M. McAndrew² and Pablo A. Mora¹

¹Department of Psychology, The University of Texas at Arlington, Arlington, TX, USA

²War Related Illness and Injury Study Center, Veterans Affairs NJ Healthcare System, East Orange, NJ, USA

Synonyms

Health phobia; Hypochondriasis

Definition

Health anxiety refers to an excessive concern or preoccupation about being ill based on the misinterpretation of somatic symptoms despite medical reassurance indicating otherwise.

Description

Health anxiety refers to an excessive concern or preoccupation about the meaning and potential consequences of somatic symptoms. Individuals high in health anxiety are more likely to believe that their physical symptoms are signs of a serious disease than their low anxious counterparts despite medical reassurance indicating otherwise.

Several environmental, biological, and psychological (e.g., behavioral and cognitive) factors have been implicated as causes of health anxiety (Abramowitz and Braddock 2008; Kirmayer and Looper 2006). Evidence from research examining the environmental antecedents of health anxiety indicate that individuals, especially females, who have experienced serious illness as children, suffered the death of a loved one from a devastating medical condition, or were victims of physical,

sexual, and/or emotional abuse in childhood are at higher risk of developing health anxiety when compared to individuals without a history of traumatic experiences (Stein et al. 2004). Another environmental risk factor is parental modeling of illness behaviors via observational learning (Mineka and Ben Hamida 1998). For instance, children can learn from overprotective parents that any somatic symptom is a sign of a serious disease which can result in the regular use of emergency care for nonthreatening symptoms. Finally, informational transmission (e.g., media and Internet) can serve as a trigger for health anxiety and health anxious-related behaviors (Abramowitz and Braddock 2008). Examples of this include mass psychogenic illness, mass anxiety hysteria, “Koro” in Southeast Asia, and medical student’s syndrome.

The identification and understanding of psychological antecedents of health anxiety have received wide attention from researchers (Marcus et al. 2007). Individuals high in health anxiety have been found to (1) have catastrophic beliefs about their somatic symptoms, (2) be more sensitive to and aware of their somatic symptoms (i.e., somatosensory amplification), and (3) be more likely to interpret their somatic symptoms as signs of a serious disease. Health anxiety beliefs can be elicited by various triggers such as benign physical symptoms, nonthreatening disease, and hearing or reading about illnesses from different sources (e.g., friends, media). Once triggered, these beliefs are responsible for maintaining a feedback loop that results in automatic hypochondriacal thoughts which, in turn, increase attention to somatic sensations that may confirm illness (i.e., confirmatory bias). Increased somatic vigilance compounded with a confirmatory bias helps perpetuate health anxiety.

Cognitive behavioral therapy targets these psychological antecedents and has the largest evidence base. Meta-analyses find large effects of cognitive behavioral therapy as compared to control immediately posttreatment and moderate effects at follow-up (Olatunji et al. 2014). There is preliminary data that mindfulness-based therapies (McManus et al. 2012), acceptance and commitment therapy (Eilenberg et al. 2013), and

exposure therapies (Visser and Bouman 2001) may also be efficacious for health anxiety.

Health anxiety is best understood as a continuum ranging from mild to severe. Although many people have benign health anxiety, it can become extreme (Faravelli et al. 1997; Looper and Kirmayer 2001). The prevalence of clinically significant health anxiety in the general population is 0.2–3.6% (Looper and Kirmayer 2001; Sunderland et al. 2013), while lifetime prevalence is approximately 6% (Sunderland et al. 2013). Clinical levels of health anxiety in medical settings are even more common (3–20%; Tyrer et al. 2011; Weck et al. 2014). Health anxiety is persistent, and patients with health anxiety continue to have worse disability, greater health-care utilization, and more anxiety 2 years later (Fink et al. 2010).

In the DSM-5, excessive and persistent health anxiety is captured with somatic symptom disorder (SSD) and illness anxiety disorder (IAD; American Psychiatric Association 2013). SSD is defined as one or more chronic physical symptom that is distressing or causes functional impairment and excessive thoughts, feelings, or behaviors related to the symptoms, including health anxiety. IAD is defined by preoccupation with having or acquiring a serious disease with health anxiety and excessive health-related behaviors but without physical symptoms (Newby et al. 2017).

Health anxiety can be assessed with different tools including self-reports and structured clinical interviews. The most widely used self-reports include the Short Health Anxiety Inventory (Salkovskis et al. 2002), the Illness Behavior Questionnaire (Pilowsky and Spence 1994), and the Health Anxiety Questionnaire (Lucock and Morley 1996). Structured clinical interviews including the Structured Clinical Interview for DSM disorders (First et al. 2016). Clinical interviews should be used when the goal of assessment is the diagnosis of clinical levels of health anxiety.

Cross-References

- [Anxiety](#)
- [Anxiety and Heart Disease](#)

- [Hypochondriasis](#)
- [Neuroticism](#)
- [Pain Anxiety](#)

References and Further Reading

- Abramowitz, J. S., & Braddock, A. E. (2008). *Psychological treatment of health anxiety & hypochondriasis: A biopsychosocial approach*. Cambridge, MA: Hogrefe & Huber.
- American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders (DSM-5®)*. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press.
- Asmundson, G. J. G., Taylor, S., & Cox, B. J. (2001). *Health anxiety: Clinical perspectives on hypochondriasis and related conditions*. West Sussex: Wiley.
- Barsky, A. J., & Klerman, G. L. (1983). Overview: Hypochondriasis, bodily complaints, and somatic styles. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 140, 273–281.
- Eilenberg, T., Kronstrand, L., Fink, P., & Frostholm, L. (2013). Acceptance and commitment group therapy for health anxiety—Results from a pilot study. *Journal of Anxiety Disorders*, 27(5), 461–468.
- Faravelli, C., Salvatori, S., Galassi, F., Aiazzi, L., Drei, C., & Cabras, O. (1997). Epidemiology of somatoform disorders: A community survey in Florence. *Social Psychiatry and Psychiatric Epidemiology*, 32, 24–29.
- Fink, P., Ørnbøl, E., & Christensen, K. S. (2010). The outcome of health anxiety in primary care. A two-year follow-up study on health care costs and self-rated health. *PLoS One*, 5(3), e9873. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0009873>.
- First, M. B., Williams, J. B. W., Karg, R. S., & Spitzer, R. L. (2016). *Structured clinical interview for DSM-5 disorders, clinician version (SCID-5-CV)*. Arlington: American Psychiatric Association.
- Forsyth, J. P., Barrios, V., & Acheson, D. T. (2007). Exposure therapy and cognitive interventions for the anxiety disorders: Overview and newer third-generation perspectives. In D. C. S. Richard & D. L. Lauterbach (Eds.), *Handbook of exposure therapies*. San Diego: Academic.
- Kellner, R. (1986). *Somatization and hypochondriasis*. New York: Praeger-Greenwood.
- Kellner, R. (1987). *Abridged manual of the illness attitude scales*. Unpublished manual, Albuquerque: Department of Psychiatry, School of Medicine, University of New Mexico.
- Kirmayer, L. J., & Looper, K. J. (2006). Abnormal illness behaviour: Physiological, psychological and social dimensions of coping with distress. *Current Opinion in Psychiatry*, 19(1), 54–60.
- Kirmayer, L. J., & Sartorius, N. (2007). Cultural models and somatic syndromes. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 69(9), 832–840.6.

- Kirmayer, L. J., Groleau, D., Looper, K. J., & Dao, M. D. (2004). Explaining medically unexplained symptoms. *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry*, 49(10), 663–672.
- Looper, K. J., & Kirmayer, L. J. (2001). Hypochondriacal concerns in a community population. *Psychological Medicine*, 31(4), 577–584.
- Lucock, M. P., & Morley, S. (1996). The health anxiety questionnaire. *British Journal of Health Psychology*, 1, 137–150.
- Marcus, D. K., Gurley, J. R., Marchi, M. M., & Bauer, C. (2007). Cognitive and perceptual variables in hypochondriasis and health anxiety: A systematic review. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 27(2), 127–139.
- McManus, F., Surawy, C., Muse, K., Vazquez-Montes, M., & Williams, J. M. G. (2012). A randomized clinical trial of mindfulness-based cognitive therapy versus unrestricted services for health anxiety (hypochondriasis). *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 80(5), 817.
- Mineka, S., & Ben Hamida, S. (1998). Observational and nonconscious learning. In W. T. O'Donohue (Ed.), *Learning and behavior therapy*. Needham Heights: Allyn & Bacon.
- Olatunji, B. O., Kauffman, B. Y., Meltzer, S., Davis, M. L., Smits, J. A., & Powers, M. B. (2014). Cognitive-behavioral therapy for hypochondriasis/health anxiety: A meta-analysis of treatment outcome and moderators. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 58, 65–74.
- Pilowsky, I. (1967). Dimensions of hypochondriasis. *The British Journal of Psychiatry*, 113, 89–93.
- Pilowsky, I., & Spence, N. D. (1994). *Manual for the illness behavior questionnaire* (3rd ed.). Unpublished manual, Adelaide: Department of Psychiatry, University of Adelaide.
- Salkovskis, P. M., Rimes, K. A., Warwick, H. M., & Clark, D. M. (2002). The health anxiety inventory: Development and validation of scales for the measurement of health anxiety and hypochondriasis. *Psychological Medicine*, 32, 843–853.
- Stein, M. B., Lang, A. J., Laffaye, C., Satz, L. E., Lenox, R. J., & Dresselhaus, T. R. (2004). Relationship of sexual assault history to somatic symptoms and health anxiety in women. *General Hospital Psychiatry*, 26(3), 178–183. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.genhosppsy.2003.11.003>.
- Sunderland, M., Newby, J. M., & Andrews, G. (2013). Health anxiety in Australia: Prevalence, comorbidity, disability and service use. *The British Journal of Psychiatry*, 202(1), 56–61.
- Visser, S., & Bouman, T. K. (2001). The treatment of hypochondriasis: Exposure plus response prevention versus cognitive therapy. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 39, 423–442.
- Warwick, H. M., & Salkovskis, P. M. (1990). Hypochondriasis. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 28, 105–117.
- Weck, F., Richtberg, S., & MB Neng, J. (2014). Epidemiology of hypochondriasis and health anxiety: Comparison of different diagnostic criteria. *Current Psychiatry Reviews*, 10(1), 14–23.

Health Assessment

► Physical Examination

Health Assessment Questionnaire

Bonnie Bruce

Division of Immunology and Rheumatology,
Stanford University Department of Medicine,
Palo Alto, CA, USA

Synonyms

Activities of daily life assessment; Disability assessment; Self-reported patient outcome measure

Definition

The Health Assessment Questionnaire (HAQ) was developed three decades ago by James F. Fries, MD, and colleagues at Stanford University (Fries et al. 1980) as a model of patient-reported outcome (PRO) assessment for assessing physical function. Three reviews examined the HAQ's history, its reliability, validity, and applicability (Bruce and Fries 2003; Ramey et al. 1992, 1995).

The HAQ has been administered globally and validated in patients with a wide variety of rheumatic diseases, HIV/AIDS, and in studies of normal aging, in diverse disciplines and different cultures, and in dozens of languages without impacting reliability or validity with properly designed adaptations. The HAQ is usually self-administered. However, it can be administered face-to-face or over telephone by a trained interviewer. Further, the HAQ has been validated for Internet administration (Bruce et al. 2011). The HAQ is available online (The Arthritis, Rheumatism, and Aging Medical Information System 2011).

The original HAQ was developed using classical test theory methodology, is sensitive to change, and a good predictor of future disability and costs. However, it did not benefit from use of modern psychometric approaches. Modern methods, such as Item Response Theory (IRT) (Embretson and Reise 2000), which quantitatively assess item properties, enable development of more precise instruments (Rose et al. 2008).

Recently, items in the HAQ, along with the SF-36's PF-10, have undergone extensive revamping using both classical and IRT methods as part of the Patient-Reported Outcomes Measurement Information System (PROMIS) (Reeve et al. 2007). PROMIS is part of the National Institutes of Health (NIH) Roadmap Initiative aimed at re-engineering the clinical research enterprise. Work in PROMIS resulted in a 20-item revised HAQ and the IRT-derived PROMIS PF-20, both of which more precisely measure physical function and are available for use on the PROMIS website (<http://www.nihroadmap.nih.gov>) (US Department of Health and Human Services 2011). Investigation of the psychometric functions showed that instruments utilizing these items are more patient-centered, more validly translatable, and have better clarity in diversely educated groups. In addition, they also show responsiveness and precision that is better than the parent instruments, the original HAQ and PF-10 (Fries et al. 2011).

Cross-References

- [Health Economics](#)
- [SF-36](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bruce, B., & Fries, J. (2003). The Stanford Health Assessment Questionnaire (HAQ) a review of its history, issues, progress, and documentation. *Journal of Rheumatology*, 30(1), 167–178.
- Bruce, B., Fries, J.F., & Lingala, B. (2011) Internet versus Mailed Administration of the Health Assessment

- Questionnaire Disability Index (HAQ). *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, (Abstract, in Press).
- Embretson, S. E., & Reise, S. P. (2000). *Item response theory for psychologists*. London: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Fries, J. F., Krishnan, E., Rose, M., Lingala, B., & Bruce, B. (2011). Improved responsiveness and reduced sample size requirements of PROMIS physical function scales with item response theory. *Arthritis Research & Therapy*, 13(5), R147.
- Fries, J. F., Spitz, P., Kraines, R. G., & Holman, H. R. (1980). Measurement of patient outcome in arthritis. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 23(2), 137–145.
- Ramey, D., Fries, J., & Singh, G. (1995). The Health Assessment Questionnaire 1995 – Status and review. In B. Spilker (Ed.), *Quality of life and pharmacoeconomics in clinical trials* (2nd ed., pp. 227–237). Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven.
- Ramey, D. R., Raynauld, J. P., & Fries, J. F. (1992). The Health Assessment Questionnaire 1992: Status and review. *Arthritis Care and Research*, 5(3), 119–129.
- Reeve, B. B., Hays, R. D., Bjorner, J. B., Cook, K. F., Crane, P. K., Teresi, J. A., Thissen, D., et al. (2007). Psychometric evaluation and calibration of health-related quality of life item banks: Plans for the patient-reported outcomes measurement information system (PROMIS). *Medical Care*, 45(5 Suppl 1), S22–S31.
- Rose, M., Bjorner, J. B., Becker, J., & Fries, J. F. (2008). Preliminary evaluations of a physical function item bank support the methods and advantages of the patient reported outcomes measurement information system (PROMIS). *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 61, 17–33.
- The Arthritis, Rheumatism, and Aging Medical Information System (2011) ARAMIS: HAQ. Retrieved 17 Nov 2011, from <http://aramis.stanford.edu/HAQ.html>.
- US Department of Health and Human Services. National Institute of Health. Division of Program Coordination. *Patient-Reported Outcome Measurement Information System (PROMIS)®*. Retrieved 17 Nov 2011 From <https://commonfund.nih.gov/promis/>.

Health Behavior Change

- [Behavior Change](#)

Health Behavior Intervention

- [Digital Health Coaching](#)

Health Behavior Predictors

- Psychosocial Predictors

Health Behavior Variables

- Psychosocial Variables

Health Behaviors

- Illness Behavior
- Lifestyle

Health Beliefs

- Beliefs
- Illness Cognitions and Perceptions

Health Beliefs/Health Belief Model

Tana M. Luger
Department of Psychology, University of Iowa,
Iowa City, IA, USA

Definition

Rosenstock's Health Belief Model (HBM) is a theoretical model concerned with health decision-making. The model attempts to explain the conditions under which a person will engage in individual health behaviors such as preventative screenings or seeking treatment for a health condition (Rosenstock 1966).

Description

Under the HBM, a person's likelihood for health behavior is assumed to be related to four main variables. First, action is more likely if the person perceives himself to be *susceptible* to or at risk for the condition. For example, if Lucy has a history of breast cancer in her family, she may see herself as more susceptible to developing breast cancer, and thus, be more likely to get a mammogram each year. Second, the likelihood for action depends on the *perceived seriousness* of the condition. Seriousness may be judged based on the amount of emotional arousal produced by thinking about the condition as well as the anticipated physical, social, and psychological consequences of developing the condition. For example, Lucy's mother passed away from breast cancer so she deems it to be a serious condition requiring preventative action. Third, the *perceived benefits* of performing the action are considered. Lucy considers the effectiveness of a mammogram in detecting breast cancer when determining whether to get the screening. Finally, the *perceived barriers* of performing the action are weighed. Lucy knows that a mammogram can be uncomfortable and scheduling an appointment is inconvenient. However, for Lucy, the benefits outweigh the barriers. Additional modifying variables like age and sex have been introduced with the assumption that they influence the above beliefs.

The variables of HBM are intended to measure a person's psychological readiness or intentions to act (Kirscht 1988), and on the whole, research has found the HBM to be predictive of people's individual health behaviors (Janz and Becker 1984). Self-reported susceptibility, benefits, barriers, and severity were shown to be correlated with health behavior outcomes such as attending preventative screening, seeking medical care, and utilizing health clinics. However, the HBM has been unable to consistently predict adherence to a medical treatment regimen or terminating an unhealthy behavior such as smoking (Kirscht 1988). Additionally, while the variables of HBM may measure a person's individual level of readiness, the optimal level of readiness for health behavior change is still unknown.

Further critiques state that HBM ignores self-efficacy (a person's belief that he has control over a particular behavior) which has been shown to play a large role in behavior change (Kirscht 1988). Thus, while the predictive validity of HBM with regard to health behaviors seems firm, the usefulness of focusing only on HBM factors in interventions has been contested (Davidhizar 1983; Kirscht 1988).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Adherence](#)
- ▶ [Health Behaviors](#)
- ▶ [Expectations of Recovery Measure](#)
- ▶ [Self-efficacy](#)

References and Readings

- Davidhizar, R. (1983). Critique of the health-belief model. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, 8, 467–472.
- Janz, N. K., & Becker, M. H. (1984). The health belief model: A decade later. *Health Education Quarterly*, 11, 1–47.
- Kirscht, J. P. (1988). The health belief model and predictions of health actions. In D. S. Gochman (Ed.), *Health behavior: Emerging research perspectives* (pp. 27–41). New York: Springer.
- Rosenstock, I. M. (1966). Why people use health services. *Milbank Memorial Fund Quarterly*, 44, 94–127.
- Rosenstock, I. M. (1974). Historical origins of the health belief model. *Health Education Monographs*, 2, 328–335.

Health Care

Peter Allebeck
Department of Public Health Sciences,
Karolinska Institute, Stockholm, Sweden

Definition

Health care is a general term comprising services provided to improve health in the general population as well as to cure diseases and relieve symptoms in diseased patients. Health care may denote the organization of services (e.g., private vs public

health care), a facility (e.g., hospital or health care center), as well as the actual delivery of care (e.g., to provide health care or to obtain health care). The term may comprise preventive services, such as vaccination, and mother and child care as well as curative services.

Health Care Access

Peter Allebeck
Department of Public Health Sciences,
Karolinska Institute, Stockholm, Sweden

Definition

Health care access is the extent to which patients and groups have access to health care. It depends on factors related to general living conditions in society, and to organization of health services as well as factors in individuals. General conditions comprise availability overall of economic resources and how they are distributed, manpower for health care, and availability of health care facilities and transport systems to reach them. Organization of health services comprises how they are organized in primary and secondary care, adequate staff at various levels, geographical distribution, and insurance system to cover costs. Factors in individuals and groups are related to their knowledge about health care services, capacity to pay for fees and transport, and knowledge of the language and other cultural codes needed to access health care.

Health Care System

Peter Allebeck
Department of Public Health Sciences,
Karolinska Institute, Stockholm, Sweden

Definition

The concept “health system” has been developed and defined by the World Health Organization

(WHO), and is now widely used internationally by scientists and policy makers. The WHO defines health system as “all organizations, people, and actions whose primary intent is to promote, restore, or maintain health.” The concept thus includes not only public and private health care facilities and staff, but also health insurance organization, water control, occupational health, and safety legislation. The WHO has described a health system framework consisting of six building blocks: Service delivery; Health workforce; Information; Medical workforce, vaccines, and technologies, Financing, and Leadership/Governance.

Cross-References

► [Health Insurance: Comparisons](#)

References and Readings

WHO. (2007). *Everybody's business: Strengthening health systems to improve health outcomes*. Geneva: Author.
World Health Report. (2000). *Health systems: Improving performance*. Geneva: WHO.

Health Care Utilization

Olveen Carrasquillo Chief
Division of General Internal Medicine, Miller
School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami,
FL, USA

Definition

Health Care Utilization is the quantification or description of the use of services by persons for the purpose of preventing and curing health problems, promoting maintenance of health and well-being, or obtaining information about one's health status and prognosis.

Description

Health Care Utilization refers to the use of health care services. People use health care for many reasons including preventing and curing health problems, promoting maintenance of health and well-being, or obtaining information about their health status and prognosis.

Utilization is often reported in a variety of different methods:

1. The number of services used over a period of time divided by a population denominator (e.g., in 2008, there were 320.1 ambulatory Care Visits to Physicians' Offices per 100 persons living in the USA).
2. The percentage of persons who use a certain service over individuals eligible for that service in a period of time (in the USA in 2008, 75% of all women aged 18 years and over reported having a Pap smear in the last 3 years).
3. An aggregate number without a denominator (in 2008, there were 39.9 million discharges from US hospitals).

Health care utilization can vary by many factors. Sociodemographically persons at extremes of age (very old or very young) have higher health care utilization. Women also have higher utilization than men, partially explained by need for obstetric and gynecologic care. By race and ethnicity, members of minority groups have lower utilization of certain health care services. For example, despite a higher burden of cardiovascular disease, after adjusting for factors that predict utilization, African-Americans are less likely to receive invasive cardiac procedures. Latinos are less likely to have colorectal cancer screening tests. By health status, persons with poorer health have higher utilization.

However, of all the factors that drive utilization, perceived need for health care by the patient is probably the single most important independent factor. In addition, since many people may not fully know how medical conditions are prevented, diagnosed, or treated, perceived need also includes the perceptions on what health care is

needed for a particular person by their providers and others who make health care recommendations to patients. In addition to need, there are many other factors that also impact utilization. Often these are conceptualized as predisposing, enabling, and need related factors. Examples of predisposing factors include a person's propensity to seek care as well as cultural norms on health care seeking behaviors. Ability to pay or health care coverage is the most important enabling factor. However, other important enablers include accessibility and location of services, language and cultural barriers, and availability of resources to appropriately provide such services.

Data on utilization can be gathered and compiled from various sources. One is administrative or claims data collected from those delivering health care services or serving as payers of those health care services (such as insurers). An example is data on the number of cardiac catheterizations performed among Medicare beneficiaries which can be examined from the Medicare Provider Analysis and Review (MEDPAR) files. Data can also be collected from providers using surveys. An example of this type of utilization data is the CDC's National Ambulatory Medical Care Survey in which a representative sample of office-based providers are queried to provide data on health care services delivered over a 1-week period. Another example is the Nationwide Inpatient Sample containing discharge abstracts from a 20% stratified sample of US community hospitals (part of AHRQ's Healthcare Cost and Utilization Project). A limitation of these methods is that collecting and compiling accurate such data through these approaches can be resource intensive, particularly in countries with multi-payer and delivery systems. Also, it will not capture services delivered outside the health care sector being sampled. An example is data on alternative medicine.

Another approach used in many countries to collect information on healthcare utilization is through population-level surveys using self-reported data from patients themselves. In the USA, examples are the CDC's National Health Interview Survey and AHRQ's Medical Expenditure Panel Survey. Since these are based on patient self-reports, accuracy is always a concern. Thus, careful attention needs to be paid in design,

collection, and analysis of data from such surveys so that the data presented is valid and accurate.

Utilization data is used for a variety of purposes. Cross-sectional data can be used to compare services received across different settings, to relate provider characteristics to patient utilization, to compare utilization rates among subpopulations, and to assess how the health care delivery system is being used and by whom. It can provide interested parties with information to help determine if utilization is appropriate or inappropriate, high or low quality, and expensive or inexpensive, and highlight areas that may warrant in-depth examination. For example, data on a higher than expected rate on cesarean sections or less use of cancer screening tests by certain population subgroups may highlight areas in need of attention. Longitudinally, health care utilization data is also used to monitor changes in the use of health care resources and to forecast future health care expenditures, or as the basis for projecting future healthcare needs such as facilities, personnel, or supplies.

Cross-References

- [Health Policy/Health-Care Policy](#)
- [Health Care System](#)
- [Health Economics](#)
- [Medical Utilization](#)

References and Readings

- A comprehensive listing of sources of health utilization data for the United States can be found at the Partners in Information Access for the Public Health Workforce at http://phpartners.org/health_stats.html.
- Aday, A. L., & Awe, W. C. (1997). Health services utilization models. In D. S. Gochman (Ed.), *Handbook of health behavior research* (Vol. 1, pp. 153–177). New York: Plenum Press.
- Andersen, R. (2008). National health surveys and the behavioral model of health services use. *Medical Care*, 46(7), 647–653.
- Andersen, R., & Newman, J. F. (2005). Societal and individual determinants of medical care utilization in the United States. *The Milbank Quarterly*, 83(4), 1–28.
- One comprehensive source of comparable statistics on health care utilization among industrialized countries is found in the OECD interactive database at www.oecd.org/health/healthdata.

Health Coaching

► Digital Health Coaching

Health Communication

Alfred L. McAlister

Behavioral Sciences, University of Texas School of Public Health, Austin, TX, USA

Synonyms

Health education; Health promotion; Social marketing

Definition

In the context of behavioral medicine, health communication is best defined as transmission or exchange of information designed to modify behaviors related to health. This can be envisioned broadly to encompass communication in medical settings (e.g., patient counseling to increase adherence to regimens), in communities and populations (e.g., media and community outreach campaigns to increase condom use), and in the political sphere (e.g., internet messaging platforms designed to spur advocacy to influence policies that affect health).

Description

Modalities include (1) face to face, telephone, and telecommunicated interpersonal communication between individuals and groups; (2) text and graphic messaging in print and electronic form, e.g., newspaper stories, posters, leaflets, websites; (3) audiovisual messaging in mass communication, e.g., television and documentary film; and (4) new media integrating multiple modalities through interactive web-based and mobile applications.

Skills training and guidelines for health communication are widely available online (e.g., U.S. Centers for Disease Control 2011). Key tasks for effective health communication include assessment of audiences' health literacy, composition of appropriate messages through cultural competency, selection of channels of communication to effectively reach defined audience segments, and creation of message content to influence specified intermediate cognitive or emotional factors to achieve measurable changes in behavior. Audience research is central to effective health communication, as observations, interviews, focus groups, and surveys can be used to prioritize the segmentation of audiences within populations and identify most suitable channels and forms of communication for those audiences, and the knowledge, attitudes, perceptions, feelings, competencies and other factors that will provide the most effective message content for achieving behavior change.

Health communication is an important part of health education and promotion (Glanz et al. 2008), which also is concerned with changing behavior through both communication and the modification of environmental circumstances to facilitate or incentivize healthy behaviors. However, changing environmental circumstances requires effective media advocacy and related political communication skills. Social marketing (Andreason 2006), in which techniques and strategies from advertising and sale of consumer products are adopted for noncommercial purposes, has become the dominant professional model for much health communication and been associated with numerous successful behavior change campaigns in both the developed and developing world (Wakefield et al. 2010). Alternatives and complements to the marketing model include behavioral journalism (McAlister 2000) and the use of narrative storytelling (Kreuter et al. 2007), illustrated by reality-based television programs that follow individuals through the process of smoking cessation or weight loss, and edutainment in the form of radio dramas to promote family planning.

The basic theoretical foundation for health communication was articulated by William

McGuire (2001) in his classic communication matrix model which considers how channels, sources, and message content influence exposure, attention, comprehension, yielding to persuasion, skill acquisition, trial of new behaviors, and long-term behavior change. This kind of sequential analysis of communication effects on individual behavior change has been elaborated in the trans-theoretical model (Prochaska and DiClemente 2005), which highlights specific processes in particular steps such as emotional arousal in the initial contemplation of change and feelings of self-efficacy and competence in the acquisition and maintenance stages of behavior change. Health communication effects on sequential processes in behavior change on the societal level are described in Rogers' (2003) diffusion of innovation model, which distinguishes between early adopters (who acquire innovations after being exposed to them via media communication) and later adopters (who are more influenced by peer modeling, interpersonal communication, and conformity pressures).

The integrative model of behavioral prediction (Fishbein and Cappella 2006) classifies mediating psychological factors that are influenced when communication yields behavior change: (1) modification of belief and expectations regarding behavior outcomes and values, (2) increases in perceived "normative" social pressure and anticipations of social sanctions, and (3) rise in "self-efficacy" expectations regarding personal or collective ability and competence. The latter factor is central to Bandura's (2001) social cognitive theory, which emphasizes a dual link comprised of peer modeling via mass media and social reinforcement in learning to perform healthy behaviors. Social cognitive theory also provides a formulation for self-management training methods widely used in patient education and behavioral counseling. Motivational interviewing (Rollnick et al. 2007) is another notable theory-based technique for interpersonal communication to change behavior.

Innovation in health communication, while largely based on theoretical foundations noted above, has followed emerging technologies. Computer and web-based interactivity has opened

new capacities for communicators to precisely segment differentiated audiences and tailor messages to their observed preferences. Internet and mobile applications for gaming have become notable modalities for health communication (Read and Shortell 2011). New platforms for interactive social media and mobile messaging are providing opportunities for more compelling communication with patients in behavioral medicine, communities in health promotion, and advocates for policies to strengthen public health (Korda and Itani 2011).

Cross-References

- Cultural Competence
- Health Literacy
- Motivational Interviewing
- Social Marketing

References and Readings

- Andreason, A. R. (2006). *Social marketing in the 21st century*. Thousand Oaks: Sage.
- Bandura, A. (2001). Social cognitive theory of mass communication. *Media Psychology*, 3(3), 265–299.
- Fishbein, M., & Cappella, J. N. (2006). The role of theory in developing effective health communications. *Journal of Communication*, 56, S1–S17.
- Glanz, K., Rimer, B. K., & Viswanath, K. (2008). *Health behavior and health education* (4th ed.). San Francisco: Wiley.
- Korda, H., & Itani, Z. (2011). Harnessing social media for health promotion and behavior change. *Health Promotion Practice*. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1524839911405850>, online.
- Kreuter, M. W., Green, M. C., Cappella, J. N., Slater, M. D., Wise, M. E., Storey, D., et al. (2007). Narrative communication in cancer prevention and control. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 33(3), 221–235.
- McAlister, A. (2000). Action-oriented mass communication. In J. Rappaport & E. Seidman (Eds.), *Handbook of community psychology* (pp. 379–396). New York: Plenum.
- McGuire, W. J. (2001). Input and output variables currently promising for constructing persuasive communications. In R. Rice & C. Atkin (Eds.), *Public communication campaigns* (3rd ed., pp. 22–48). Thousand Oaks: Sage.
- Prochaska, J. O., & DiClemente, C. C. (2005). The trans-theoretical approach. In J. C. Norcross & M. R. Goldfried (Eds.), *Handbook of psychotherapy*

- integration* (2nd ed., pp. 147–171). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Read, J. L., & Shortell, S. M. (2011). Interactive games to promote behavior change in prevention and treatment. *Journal of the American Medical Association*. <https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.2011.408>, online.
- Rogers, E. M. (2003). *Diffusion of innovations* (5th ed.). New York: Free Press.
- Rollnick, S., Miller, W. R., & Butler, C. C. (2007). *Motivational interviewing in health care: Helping patients change behavior*. New York: Guilford Press.
- U.S. Centers for Disease Control. (2011). Gateway to health communication and social marketing practice. www.cdc.gov/healthcommunication/
- Wakefield, M. A., Loken, B., & Hornik, R. C. (2010). Use of mass media campaigns to change health behavior. *Lancet*, 376(9748), 1261–1271.
- Wallack, L., Dorfman, L., Jernigan, D., & Thembu, M. (1993). *Media advocacy and public health: Power for prevention*. Thousand Oaks: Sage.

Health Consequences of Smoking

► Smoking and Health

Health Disparities

Kristine M. Molina
Department of Psychological Sciences,
University of California, Irvine, Irvine, CA, USA

Synonyms

Health inequalities; Health inequities

Definition

A health disparity is defined as an observed difference in health outcomes (e.g., diabetes) or health status between the most advantaged group in a given category (e.g., the wealthiest) and all other groups in that category. Observed differences in the health outcomes are not only limited to differences between better- and-worse-off

groups, given they reflect varying levels of social advantage and disadvantage (Braveman 2006).

Description

The term “health disparity” is often times used interchangeably with the terms “health inequality” or “health inequity.” The use of “health disparity” is most common in the United States, whereas the other terms are most often used outside of the United States (Carter-Pokras and Baquet 2002). The underlying distinction between these terms is that the latter ones distinguish between health differences that are unfair, unjust, and unavoidable. To illustrate, differences in health among men and women that are due to sex-specific problems (e.g., ovarian cancer) would be attributed to biological variation and therefore unavoidable, whereas health differences due to social or environmental factors (e.g., socioeconomic status, unequal access to resources), for example, would be considered unjust and avoidable (Whitehead 1992). However, the term “health inequality” requires both an ethical and moral consideration regarding what constitutes a difference as “unavoidable” and “unjust/unfair,” and therefore leaves its definition open to interpretation (Braveman 2006; Carter-Pokras and Baquet 2002).

Health disparities are typically thought of as referring to racial/ethnic disparities in health status. This is partly due to the long legacy of racism and racial inequality in the United States, for example. In fact, it has been consistently argued that health disparities must not be stripped from the social, cultural, political, and historical contexts in which they occur. However, differences in health can be present along other social dimensions, other than those based on race and ethnicity. These may include differences in health indicators with respect to gender, socioeconomic status (e.g., education, occupation, income), disability, age, and sexual orientation, among other characteristics. Several social determinants of health disparities have been identified, including but not limited to socioeconomic status (e.g., education, income, poverty), residential segregation,

differential access to resources, lack of health insurance, and differential exposure to different types of stressors. These factors can both initiate as well as sustain health disparities. Further, systematic differences in health outcomes, such as those noted for African Americans across a number of health indicators (e.g., heart disease, certain types of cancer, diabetes, HIV, infant mortality), can further compromise the health status of already disadvantaged social groups (Myers 2009).

There is no clear consensus on how to best measure health disparities, given the differences that exist in the use of the terms “health disparities,” health inequalities,” and “health inequities.” Likewise, different approaches to measuring health disparities exist given the research question one is trying to answer. Nonetheless, a direct way of measuring a health difference is by comparing the health of one group (the reference group) with the health of another group (s). In general, one could compare the non-minority to the majority population (e.g., non-Hispanic whites compared to Asian Americans); compare a group against the general population; or compare differences among segments of the population. Other considerations include subgroup comparisons; for example, comparing differences within the Latino category (e.g., Mexican Americans against Cuban Americans). However, for any of these approaches, lack of clarity exists in who the reference group should be, although the most widely used approach has been to identify specific social groups a priori and examine differences in health status between them (Carter-Pokras and Baquet 2002). Additionally, the U.S. National Center for Health Statistics has advocated for using the group with the most favorable rate in a given health indicator as the reference category, since it can potentially avoid dealing with concerns regarding who is considered to be the “most” socially advantaged group (Braveman 2006; Keppel et al. 2004). Other approaches to measuring health disparities have included obtaining relative indicators of health (e.g., black–white ratios), as well as measuring the distribution across individuals in a population on health status (similar to the measurement of

income distribution in a population) (Asada 2005). Depending on the field and question of interest, any of these approaches may be used, though they all have advantages and disadvantages to them.

Importantly, health disparities do not equate to *health care disparities*. In contrast to a health disparity, the Institute of Medicine, in its report “Unequal treatment: Confronting Racial and Ethnic Disparities in Health Care,” defines a health care disparity as a difference in access to and quality of health care treatment between population groups that are not justified by access-related factors, treatment preferences, or the underlying health condition(s) of the population groups. Important to note is that limited access to treatment and good quality health care services play a significant role in observed differences in health status, particularly in producing racial/ethnic health disparities (Institute of Medicine 2002).

Significantly, although specifying that both a difference in health exists and that they are socially patterned are important first steps to addressing the problem, they alone are not enough to reduce or eradicate health disparities. Indeed, addressing health disparities will require multi- and interdisciplinary research approaches to better understand the causes of specific types of health disparities, as well as multilevel interventions that target social disparities known to contribute to differences in health status (Braveman 2006; Myers 2009).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Cultural and Ethnic Differences](#)
- ▶ [Gender Differences](#)
- ▶ [Minority Health](#)
- ▶ [Racial Inequality in Economic and Social Well-Being](#)
- ▶ [Social Epidemiology](#)

References

- Asada, Y. (2005). A framework for measuring health inequity. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 59, 700–705.

- Braveman, P. (2006). Health disparities and health equity: Concepts and measurement. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 27, 167–194.
- Carter-Pokras, O., & Baquet, C. (2002). What is a “health disparity”? *Public Health Reports*, 117, 426–434.
- Institute of Medicine. (2002). *Unequal treatment: Confronting racial and ethnic disparities in health care*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Keppel, K. G., Percy, J. N., & Klein, R. J. (2004). *Measuring progress in Healthy People 2010* (Healthy People 2010 statistical notes, Vol. 25). Hyattsville: National Center for Health Statistics.
- Myers, H. F. (2009). Ethnicity-and socio-economic status-related stresses in context: An integrative review and conceptual model. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 32, 9–19.
- Whitehead, M. (1992). The concepts and principles of equity in health. *International Journal of Health Services*, 22, 429–445.

Health Economics

Stephen Birch¹ and Amiram Gafni²

¹Clinical Epidemiology and Biostatistics (CHEPA), McMaster University, Hamilton, ON, Canada

²Department of Clinical Epidemiology and Biostatistics, Centre for Health Economics and Policy Analysis, McMaster University, Hamilton, ON, Canada

Definition

Health economics applies the principles of economics to address problems of health and health care. It identifies the factors that contribute to the health of individuals and populations and identifies the most productive ways of using whatever resources are available for improving health.

Description

Health economics is an area of economics that applies the principles of the discipline of economics to address problems of health and health care. Both health and health care are commodities with characteristics that make them different from

standard goods and services that are bought and sold in private markets. This means they require particular attention from economists in order to consider the use of resources devoted to producing health care and changing health.

Health as a Commodity

Health cannot be purchased directly. Instead it is “produced” by the levels and combinations of health “determinants,” that is, factors that influence health and illness. Some of these factors can be purchased directly (e.g., exercise equipment, healthy foods, health care), while others may be in the form of public goods (or bads) such as air pollution. The individual may have little control over exposure to some of these determinants.

Although *health care* is an important determinant of health, other factors might also influence an individual’s health, for example, an individual’s genes, his lifestyle (Does he smoke?), his places of home and work, his diet and activity levels as well as limitations placed on choices about many of these factors by income and wealth. The relationship between health determinants and health outcomes is often complex and conditional on other health determinants. For example, the improvement in health produced from a heart bypass procedure may depend on the environment in which an individual lives and works (Are there factories close by that pollute the air that he breathes? Is he exposed to unhealthy work conditions?), the lifestyle he follows (Does he smoke?), the skill levels of the doctors treating him, etc. Economics provides a means of analyzing the production of health both at the level of an individual but also in terms of the production of health in populations.

The estimation of health production functions (the relationship between health determinants and health outcomes) enables us to consider the following:

1. The returns to investment in health determinants across a range of *different levels* of investment. For example, is the relationship between the quantity of health care and the

health outcome produced constant for all levels of health care or does the change in health produced from health care change with the level of investment in health care? This is similar to the dose–response relationship in clinical research.

2. Whether the returns to investment differ among a range of *different health determinants*. For example, does investing resources in public health programs to reduce smoking produce more health outcomes than investing the same amount of resources in additional cardiac care services?
3. Whether the return to investment in a particular health determinant is conditional on the levels of other health determinants. For example, is the health outcome associated with a public health program to reduce smoking conditional on the socioeconomic circumstances of the population targeted by the program.

Health Care as a Commodity

Health care represents a range of services aimed at improving health or reducing the risks of health loss. It is often labor intensive requiring the inputs of a mix of skilled professionals (physicians, nurses, dentists, etc.) together with non-labor inputs such as capital equipment (hospitals, beds, diagnostic and surgical equipment) into a health care production function. The production function represents the particular technology (or production process) used to combine inputs to produce health outcomes. For example, primary care physicians may work independently, or in groups or as part of multidisciplinary health care teams.

Often opportunities arise for substitution between inputs. For example, nurse practitioners are trained to be able to perform services provided by family physicians. The production of primary care services could be changed by deploying more nurse practitioners and fewer family physicians. Decisions about the choice of production function need to be informed by evidence of the difference in outcomes and costs of the different ways of

producing primary care services. Substitution can also occur between human and physical capital often as a result of new technologies. Cataract replacement surgery used to involve an inpatient stay requiring considerable inputs of physician time. The introduction of new laser technology has reduced the amount of physician time required, with the procedure now taking only a few minutes delivered in an outpatient clinic.

In addition, health care often involves episodes of care that are made up of a complex series of complementary services (e.g., prevention, treatment, and rehabilitation). The health outcomes of each item of care within an episode may not be simply additive. Failure to provide one element of the package of services may undermine the outcomes of the other elements.

Both the demand and supply of health care are complex issues that cannot be analyzed in the same way as many other commodities. Because of the complex nature of the association between health care use and health outcomes, individuals are unable to determine what services they need to address their health problems. Instead they rely on the advice of their health care provider. In an unregulated market, any individual could set themselves up as an “expert” in diagnosing the cause of an individual’s health problem, recommending a treatment and delivering that care. However, changing provider as a result of poor advice would not avoid the potentially profound consequences of poor health care decisions (serious injury, illness, disability, or death). Supply is, therefore, organized through a system of strict licensure that involves restrictions on entry to the market to individuals with defined qualifications as well as professional codes of practice in order to protect the public interest.

Health care is not demanded for its own intrinsic value. On the contrary, individuals would generally prefer to not consume health care since it is often unpleasant, uncomfortable, or painful. Instead, the demand for health care is derived from the demand for the health outcomes it is expected to produce. Providers, in addition to being a major input in the supply of health care,

also influence (or induce) the demand for health care through their role as advisor, or agent, of the patient. Supplier-induced demand is not a problem per se because the whole purpose of a licensure system is to have “experts” advising individuals what services they need to improve their health. However, it can become a problem where the earnings of providers respond to the level and type of health care delivered. As a result changes in levels of services used over time need not reflect (only) changes in need for those services among patients but also responses of providers to income opportunities. This means that the traditional market of supply and demand does not exist for health care and hence market mechanisms fail to achieve the socially optimum allocation of health care resources.

Health care economics is that part of health economics concerned with the supply of health care and the evaluation of health care services and patient uptake of and compliance with treatment. In the context of scarce health care resources, it considers the impact on the health and well-being of individuals and populations of using the available resources in alternative ways by comparing both the effects (outcomes) and costs of different health care interventions (Economic evaluation). Such evaluations are, in isolation, simply descriptive information on the expected rate of return on additional investment (what extra outcome can be produced by investing more resources in this particular treatment?). In addition, consideration needs to be given to the opportunity cost of the additional investment (what has to be forgone in order to provide the additional investment required) and how to ensure the services supported by the additional investment will be produced by providers and consumed by patients in the way intended. Hence, health care economics extends beyond the area of economic evaluation of health care interventions to also incorporate the study of the behavior of providers and consumers. So, for example, there may be interest in introducing a new screening service. Health care economics would involve inter alia the following:

1. Estimating the additional costs and effects of the new service compared to existing practice
2. Calculating the expected rate of return of the additional costs
3. Considering the alternative ways of supporting the additional investment within the existing resource constraint and the forgone effects associated with taking the resources required from these other uses
4. Analyzing the behavior of providers and patients when presented with the opportunity to deliver/use the new service

This final set of challenges involves studying the funding, planning, management, and delivery of health care. Health problems can be caused by problems associated with low income and wealth, and health problems can lead to reductions in income and wealth as they can restrict normal activities. As a result an individual's need for health care is greatest when his ability to pay for health care is lowest. Health economics is, therefore, concerned with addressing this “conundrum” by analyzing alternative approaches for funding provision, allocating resources, and managing performance.

References and Readings

- Birch, S., Jerrett, M., & Eyles, J. (2000). Heterogeneity in the determinants of health and illness: The example of socioeconomic status and smoking. *Social Science and Medicine*, 51, 307–317.
- Drummond, M., Sculpher, M., Torrance, G., O'Brien, B., & Stoddart, G. (2005). *Methods for the economic evaluation of health care programmes*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Evans, R. (2005). *Strained mercy. The economics of Canadian Health Care*. Toronto: Butterworths.
- Evans, R., & Stoddart, G. (1990). Producing health, consuming health care. *Social Science and Medicine*, 31, 1347–1363.
- Gafni, A., & Birch, S. (2006). Incremental cost-effectiveness ratios (ICERs): The silence of the lambda. *Social Science and Medicine*, 62, 2091–2100.
- Morris, S., Devlin, N., & Parkin, D. (2007). *Economic analysis in health care*. Chichester: Wiley.

Health Education

Linda C. Baumann¹ and Alyssa Ylinen²

¹School of Nursing, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

²Allina Health System, St. Paul, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Health education](#); [Patient education](#)

Definition

The World Health Organization defines health education as “any combination of learning experiences designed to help individuals and communities improve their health, by increasing their knowledge or influencing their attitudes.”

Description

Because knowledge alone may not be powerful enough to motivate change, health education works to enhance knowledge, attitudes, and skills to positively influence health behaviors of individuals and communities.

Adult learning theory is an important construct to consider for effective health education. Malcolm Knowles has identified five crucial assumptions about the characteristics of adult learners. These characteristics are (1) self-concept, as a person matures, they move from a dependent personality to a self-directed one; (2) experience, an accumulation of experiences are a resource for learning; (3) readiness to learn, an adult's readiness to learn is oriented to the tasks of their social roles; (4) orientation to learning, adult learning shifts from subject-centered to problem-centered; and (5) motivation, an adult learner's motivation to learn is internal.

Health education is provided in a variety of settings and can be targeted at individuals, groups, or larger populations. Although health education is generally considered primary prevention as a

health promotion strategy, it can also occur at the secondary and tertiary levels. Health education at the primary prevention level is aimed at educating to promote healthy behaviors and to prevent the occurrence of illness or injury; at the secondary and tertiary levels, health education focuses on teaching strategies to detect problems early by identifying risk factors, and rehabilitation to optimize function and prevent complications of disease.

Health education is a dynamic process that requires planning and evaluation of interventions. Important steps include assessing the need for education of a target population, setting learner-centered goals and objectives, implementing the educational intervention, and evaluating and revising education to meet the targeted goals. Other considerations needed for education to be effective include one's readiness to learn, and personal, cultural, political, and environmental factors that may impact learning.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Behavior Change](#)
- ▶ [Behavioral Intervention](#)
- ▶ [Education, Patient](#)
- ▶ [Empowerment](#)
- ▶ [Health Behavior Change](#)
- ▶ [Health Communication](#)
- ▶ [Health Promotion and Disease Prevention](#)
- ▶ [Intervention Theories](#)
- ▶ [Lifestyle Changes](#)
- ▶ [Psychoeducation](#)
- ▶ [Risk Factors and Their Management](#)

References and Further Reading

- Allender, J. A., Rector, C., & Warner, K. D. (2010). *Community health nursing: Promoting and protecting the public's health*. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Knowles, M. (1973). *The adult learner: Neglected species*. Houston: Gulf Publishing Company.
- Knowles, M., & Associates. (1984). *Andragogy in action: Applying modern principles of adult Learning*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.

- Smith, M. K. (2009). *Andragogy*. The encyclopedia of informal education. Retrieved July 7, 2017, from <http://www.infed.org/lifelonglearning/b-andra.htm>
- Taylor, C., Lillis, C., LeMine, P., & Lynn, P. (2008). *Fundamentals of nursing: The art and science of nursing care* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- The Coalition of National Health Education Organizations. (2017). *What is health education?* Retrieved July 7, 2017, from http://www.cnheo.org/PDF_files/health_ed.pdf
- Wallace, R. B., Kohatsu, N., & Last, J. M. (2007). *Public health & preventive medicine* (15th ed.). New York: McGraw Hill Medical.
- World Health Organization. (2017). *Health education*. Retrieved July 7, 2017, from http://www.who.int/topics/health_education/en/

Health Gaming

Madison E. Stout and Misty A. W. Hawkins
Department of Psychology, Oklahoma State
University, Stillwater, OK, USA

Synonyms

Exergames; Gamification; Gaming; Massively multiplayer online game (MMOG); Massively multiplayer online role-playing games (MMORPGS); Multiuser dungeon/dimension/domain (MUD); Serious games; Simulation games; Videogames

Definition

The broadest definition of a game is an activity that is undertaken for play, amusement, or diversion (Merriam-Webster 2019). The term “serious games” has been used to imply that games may be used for other purposes or goals rather than just for entertainment or pleasure, including knowledge acquisition, skills development, or, critically for behavioral medicine contexts, health promotion and behavior change (Boyle et al. 2016). Digital serious health games can be played on various platforms, including video consoles (e.g., Wii, Xbox, Playstation), desktop computers

or laptops, and/or mobile devices (e.g., smartphones or watches). Some systems use virtual reality (VR) (see “► [Virtual Reality](#)” entry for more information on this modality). Games can be single player, multiplayer, massively multiplayer online games (MMOG), multiuser dungeon/dimension/domain (MUD), or massively multiplayer online role-playing games (MMORPGS).

Description

Advances in technology have increased the number of digital games that are being used to promote health-related outcomes. Health games can be extremely diverse, depending on the platform and delivery modality and the targeted outcome. However, as summarized by Baranowski et al. (2016) in their white paper on health games for children, serious health games typically have four types or goals: (1) increase knowledge, (2) change behavior, (3) change behavior in game play, and (4) influence health precursors. Of note, while the referenced white paper focuses on health gaming for children, the principles and game types are readily applicable to adult health populations. In the following sections, we will define the game types and discuss health-related research evidence regarding these types.

Games to increase knowledge can use simulations, decision-making, and quizzes to increase knowledge of important health-related subjects. A first step in many clinical interventions is to educate clients or patients on their condition, as well as to define important aspects of treatment. A review of 11 video games for diabetes care concluded that the games showed effectiveness at increasing diabetes education/knowledge (DeShazo et al. 2010). Another example of a knowledge acquisition game is the RightWay Café tested by Peng (2009), which demonstrated increases in knowledge of nutrition. Knowledge acquisition is important not only for patient populations but also providers. Thus, some games have been developed for medical training. For instance, Creutzfeldt et al. (2012) used multiplayer virtual technology with avatars to train cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) skills to

medical students and found greater CPR-related knowledge and skills in the training group compared to controls.

Games to change behavior can target a particular behavioral determinant to change behavior. For instance, a game aimed at increasing a particular health behavior might increase concepts illustrated by the theory of planned behavior (TPB), like attitudes, subjective norms, and perceived control over the health behavior (Ajzen 1985). One game in particular used a narrative structure and customizable avatar to increase personalization of risk perception and intentions to obtain human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccine (Darville et al. 2018). Games to increase healthy eating, like RightWay Café, aim to increase perceived benefits and self-efficacy and decrease perceived barriers of eating healthy foods (Peng 2009).

Games to change behavior in game play are those that directly target the actual behavior, such as those aiming to increase physical activity or to rehabilitate motor skills (i.e., exergames). Some examples of exergames include Wii Fit and Apple watch Activity Rings. Recent systematic reviews of exergames suggest they may have the potential to be helpful in motor skill improvement in Parkinson's disease (Garcia-Agundez et al. 2019), enhancing physical activity in children (Lwin and Malik 2012) and the elderly (Larsen et al. 2013). Importantly, although exergames are serious games with direct intent to promote a health outcome, it is also possible for a digital game to impact health behavior even when it is not an explicit purpose of the game. For example, participation in the game Pokémon Go has been associated with higher step counts for users even though it is ostensibly not a physical activity game (Althoff et al. 2016). In fact, making physical activity a natural by-product of the game rather than its focus could be an essential game feature that helps promote lasting behavior change (Althoff et al. 2016). Such a feature may also promote increased activity among individuals with lower baseline physical activity.

Games to influence health risk factors or consequence are games that focused more on the emotional response related to health behaviors or outcomes. For example, games have been

designed to help children, teens, and adults understand and cope with chronic illnesses like cancer, chronic pain, and fatigue (Gerling et al. 2011; Vugts et al. 2017). Other games simulate real-world conversations to increase effective communication between patients and physicians. For instance, Brown-Johnson et al. developed a game in which lung cancer patients practiced having more assertive conversations with their oncologists (Brown-Johnson et al. 2015).

Points of Consideration

Although we have deliberately described games in each of the above categories, there is clear overlap among games (e.g., games to increase knowledge can impact motivational processes or games that impact behavior directly can also impact behavioral determinants like self-efficacy), so the categorization is somewhat artificial but can provide helpful frameworks for discussion of serious games and their intent.

In addition, although this entry has focused primarily on the potential benefits of gaming for health, acknowledgment of potential adverse outcomes is needed. For example, Internet gaming disorder (IGD) has been included in the American Psychiatric Association (APA) Diagnostic and Statistical Manual, Fifth Edition (DSM-5) as a potential diagnosis in need of further study (APA 2013). IGD, defined as the “persistent and recurrent use of the Internet to engage in games...leading to clinically significant impairment or distress,” reflects the possibility that gaming may be addictive and harmful (APA 2013). IGD is of particular interest in child and adolescent samples given the increase in recreational use of electronic media in these age groups (i.e., 8- to 10-year-olds estimated to spend up to 8–11 h/day on electronic media) (Paulus et al. 2018).

Future Directions

Baranowski and colleagues (2016) include a prioritized list of needed research in the field. Given that the majority of interventions are

underpowered or not controlled, definitive evidence of effectiveness of gaming for health is difficult to ascertain. Future studies should take advantage of new and developing technologies; however, one important limitation in health gaming research is the time lag between the academic enterprise and technological and business models. With technology advancing at an increasingly rapid rate, it is possible that by the time grant funding is dispersed, a new technology might be available that was not previously approved in the grant. Thus, health gaming represents an area of research with great potential, but innovative funding mechanisms and models may be necessary for promoting evidence-based science of gaming in a timely but methodologically rigorous way.

Cross-References

► Virtual Reality

References and Further Reading

- Ajzen, I. (1985). From intentions to actions: A theory of planned behavior. In *Action control* (pp. 11–39). Berlin/Heidelberg/New York: Springer.
- Althoff, T., White, R. W., & Horvitz, E. (2016). Influence of Pokémon Go on physical activity: Study and implications. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 18(12), e315. <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.6759>.
- American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders (DSM-5®)*. Arlington: American Psychiatric Publishing, Inc.
- Boyle, E. A., Hailey, T., Connolly, T. M., Gray, G., Earp, J., Ott, M., ... Pereira, J. (2016). An update to the systematic literature review of empirical evidence of the impacts and outcomes of computer games and serious games. *Computers & Education*, 94, 178–192.
- Brown-Johnson, C. G., Berrean, B., & Cataldo, J. K. (2015). Development and usability evaluation of the mHealth Tool for Lung Cancer (mHealth TLC): A virtual world health game for lung cancer patients. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 98(4), 506–511.
- Creutzfeldt, J., Hedman, L., & Felländer-Tsai, L. (2012). Effects of pre-training using serious game technology on CPR performance – An exploratory quasi-experimental transfer study. *Scandinavian Journal of Trauma, Resuscitation and Emergency Medicine*, 20(1), 79. <https://doi.org/10.1186/1757-7241-20-79>.
- Darville, G., Anderson-Lewis, C., Stelfox, M., Lee, Y.-H., MacInnes, J., Pigg, Jr, R. M., ... Thomas, S. (2018). Customization of avatars in a HPV digital gaming intervention for college-age males: An experimental study. *Simulation & Gaming*, 49(5), 515–537.
- DeShazo, J., Harris, L., & Pratt, W. (2010). Effective intervention or child's play? A review of video games for diabetes education. *Diabetes Technology & Therapeutics*, 12(10), 815–822. <https://doi.org/10.1089/dia.2010.0030>.
- Garcia-Agundez, A., Folkerts, A.-K., Konrad, R., Caserman, P., Tregel, T., Goosses, M., ... Kalbe, E. (2019). Recent advances in rehabilitation for Parkinson's disease with exergames: A systematic review. *Journal of Neuroengineering and Rehabilitation*, 16(1), 17.
- Gerling, K., Fuchslocher, A., Schmidt, R., Krämer, N., & Masuch, M. (2011). *Designing and evaluating casual health games for children and teenagers with cancer*. Paper presented at the International Conference on Entertainment Computing, Vancouver.
- Institute of Digital Media Child Development Working Group on Games for Health, Baranowski, T., Blumberg, F., Buday, R., DeSmet, A., Fiellin, L. E., ... Maloney, A. E. (2016). Games for health for children – Current status and needed research. *Games for Health Journal*, 5(1), 1–12.
- Larsen, L. H., Schou, L., Lund, H. H., & Langberg, H. (2013). The physical effect of exergames in healthy elderly – A systematic review. *Games for Health: Research, Development, and Clinical Applications*, 2(4), 205–212.
- Lwin, M. O., & Malik, S. (2012). The efficacy of exergames-incorporated physical education lessons in influencing drivers of physical activity: A comparison of children and pre-adolescents. *Psychology of Sport and Exercise*, 13(6), 756–760.
- Merriam-Webster. (2019). Game. Retrieved from <https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/game>
- Paulus, F. W., Ohmann, S., von Gontard, A., & Popow, C. (2018). Internet gaming disorder in children and adolescents: A systematic review. *Developmental Medicine and Child Neurology*, 60(7), 645–659. <https://doi.org/10.1111/dmcn.13754>.
- Peng, W. (2009). Design and evaluation of a computer game to promote a healthy diet for young adults. *Health Communication*, 24(2), 115–127. <https://doi.org/10.1080/10410230802676490>.
- Vugt, M. A., Joosen, M. C., Mert, A., Zedlitz, A., & Vrijhoef, H. J. (2017). Serious gaming during multidisciplinary rehabilitation for patients with complex chronic pain or fatigue complaints: Study protocol for a controlled trial and process evaluation. *BMJ Open*, 7(6), e016394.

Health Inequalities

► Health Disparities

Health Inequities

- ▶ [Health Disparities](#)

Health Informatics

- ▶ [Behavioral Informatics](#)
- ▶ [Quality of Life Technologies](#)

Health Information Avoidance

- ▶ [Avoidance](#)

Health Information Record

- ▶ [Electronic Health Record](#)

Health Information Systems

- ▶ [Quality of Life Technologies](#)

Health Insurance

- ▶ [Health Insurance: Comparisons](#)

Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA)

Howard Sollins

Attorneys at Law, Shareholder at Baker Donelson
in the BakerOber Health Law Group, Baltimore,
MD, USA

Synonyms

[Patient protection](#)

Definition

Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA)

HIPAA is a federal law that addresses a variety of health care subjects in various titles. These address health insurance coverage, enrollment and preexisting conditions, fraud and abuse, administrative simplification, electronic billing and coding for health care services, and the protection of certain individually identifiable health information that is obtained by “covered entities.” These titles affect how health care claims are documented and billed and amended laws governing health insurers. Tax laws were amended to establish medical savings accounts and address the deductibility of health insurance premiums by self-employed individual, long-term care insurance, and provide other benefits. With respect to fraud and abuse, HIPAA also, for example, provide for advisory opinions, increased and expanded fraud and abuse investigation and enforcement penalties and tools for regulatory agencies and outline when inducements by health care providers to Medicare and certain other health care beneficiaries are prohibited. The use, disclosure, and retention of protected health information is addressed under both a privacy rule and a security rule. Covered without limitation entities include health care providers such as physicians, nurse practitioners, physician assistants, psychologists, health care facilities such as hospitals, nursing homes and pharmacies, health insurance companies and health plans, and entities that process nonstandard health information they receive from another entity into a standard format (a health information clearing house). There are also regulations governing the sharing and use and accounting of information by business associates of covered entities. Any discussion of HIPAA should also include reference to the statutes and regulations enacted under the Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health (HITECH) Act, enacted as part of the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act of 2009. Subtitle D of the HITECH Act addresses the privacy and security concerns associated with the electronic transmission of health information,

in part, through several provisions that strengthen the civil and criminal enforcement of the HIPAA rules.

Cross-References

► [Patient protection](#)

References and Readings

Access to health information of individuals. Retrieved from <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/hmd/manuscripts/phi.pdf>

Health Insurance: Comparisons

Catharina Hjortsberg
The Swedish Institute for Health Economics,
Lund, Sweden

Synonyms

[Health care system](#); [Health insurance](#); [Risk pooling](#)

Definition

The term *health insurance* is generally used to describe a form of insurance that pays for medical expenses of the insured. The main aim of a health insurance is to spread the financial risk arising from ill-health. Health insurance may apply to a limited or comprehensive range of medical services and may provide for full or partial payment of the costs of specific services. Moreover, the insurance could be provided either through a governmental national insurance program, or from private for-profit or non-for-profit insurance companies. Some health care systems rely more on private health insurance than others, for example, the health care system in the United States.

Description

A *health care system* includes all activities and structures whose primary purpose is to influence health in its broadest sense. The goals for health systems are good health, responsiveness to the expectations of the population, and fair financial contribution (World Health Organization (WHO) 2000). *Health care systems* are organized differently, that is, the way health care is provided and how it is financed differs between countries. Most health care systems are characterized by both providers (primary care centers, hospitals), who supply health care services, and purchasers (insurers, health authorities) who buy health care for a certain population. Health care systems can be funded via social health insurance, general taxation to the state, county or municipality, direct or out-of-pocket payments, voluntary or private health insurance, and donations or community health insurance. Most countries' systems constitute a combination of these. One common feature is that all health care systems implicitly *pool* the risks associated with individual health care needs (WHO 2000). A risk pool allows a large group of people to share the risk that they may become ill and need expensive care. Funds dedicated for health care are collected through pre-payment (e.g., via insurance) and are managed in such a way as to ensure that the risk of having to pay for health care is borne by all the members of a pool and not by each contributor individually.

Since improving access to health care services has been a fundamental objective of health systems in the past 30 years, most countries today have a *national health insurance*, which means that it insures a national population. By having a national health insurance governments ensure that people have access to affordable health services without risking, ending up in financial difficulties. Very often national health insurance systems are established by national legislation. The clear benefit of national insurance is that the pool of pools is very large representing the national population. The contribution from the individual is regulated by the government and paid into the pool over a lifetime. This is different from *private health insurance*, where the price is set in a competitive

insurance market and health risks are matched with the price of the insurance.

National health insurance can be administered by the public sector, the private sector, or a combination of both. These insurance programs differ both in terms of how the money is collected, and how the services are provided. Even if several countries raise part of the revenue for health in the same way, they may operate differently in how they pool funds and how they purchase and provide services. This is why the traditional way of categorizing health financing systems into tax-based or social health insurance is not longer useful (WHO 2010). In some countries, payment is made by the government (or local governments) directly from tax revenue, for example, Canada and Sweden. In other countries, for example, the UK, an additional contribution is collected for all workers, paid by employees and employers based on their earnings. In both of these cases the collection is administered by the government. The collection of compulsory contributions can also be administered by non-profit organizations like in the case of France. This is sometimes related to as a single-payer health care system. The health care providers may be either publicly or privately owned. The Netherlands, on the other hand, has adopted a completely different funding approach, where competing health insurance funds receive the compulsory contributions. These insurance funds can be either public bodies, private for-profit companies or non-profit companies. They are all obliged to provide a minimum standard of coverage and are not allowed to discriminate between patients by charging different rates according to age, occupation, or previous health status. Other countries' national health insurance plans, for example, Germany and Belgium, are largely funded by contributions by employers and employees to sickness funds. With these programs, funds usually come from three sources (private, employer-employee contributions, and national/subnational taxes). These funds are usually not for profit; institutions run entirely for the benefit of their members.

Some national insurance plans also provide compensation for loss of work due to ill-health,

or covering things such as pensions, unemployment, and occupational retraining.

Countries' national health insurance systems also differ in terms of the amount of out of pocket payments that are required. Out-of-pocket expenses are direct outlays of cash made by the patient when seeking care, which may or may not be later reimbursed. Many countries still rely greatly on out-of-pocket payments from individuals to health service providers to fund their health systems. Some countries have abolished out-of-pocket payments completely, for example, the United Kingdom, and the patient is not paying anything when seeking health care, while in other countries patients are expected to pay part of their medical expenses and to pay more for higher level of services, for example, as provided in Singapore. In other countries like France, patients pay medical bills and are later reimbursed by sickness insurance funds. These outlays made by patients, usually just represent a symbolic part of the real cost of services in developed countries, as in the majority of these the government subsidizes basic healthcare. However, in many developing countries these financial outlays made by patients lead to severe financial difficulties as a consequence. A high proportion of the world's poor have no access to health services merely because they cannot afford to pay at the time they need them (Preker et al. 2004).

Separate to national health insurance there is in many countries also the possibility to have private health insurance. Private health insurance schemes are financed through private health premiums, that is, payments that a policyholder agrees to make for coverage under a given insurance policy. A contract is issued by an insurer to the covered person. Commonly private health insurance is voluntary; however, it can be compulsory for employees as part of their working conditions. Premiums paid by the covered person are non-income-related, although the actual purchase of private health insurance can in some cases be subsidized by the government. An important distinction between private and national health insurance is that the pool of financing is not channeled nor administered through the government. Private health insurance can be a

controversial form of insurance because of the conflict between the need for the insurance company to make profit versus the need of its customers to remain healthy, which many view as a basic human right.

Some countries' health systems depend greatly on private health insurance, for example, the United States (US) which has a complex health care system. In the USA, public programs (e.g., Medicare, Medicaid, and Veterans Health Administration) provide coverage for health care of those citizens that meet their eligibility requirements. The US insurance system has made discussions, and in 2010, a new law came into force making it mandatory to have health insurance.

The health sector is extremely complex, and health care expenditure represents a major use of a nation's resources and has been growing during the last three decades. Factors such as an aging population, the increased personal use of health care, and medical advances that have opened the way for more treatment options and diagnostics have contributed to a rise in the demand for health care and increased the costs for health care. At the same time enormous pressure is being put on the health system in terms of their capacity to improve outcomes and ensure consumer satisfaction, in an equitable, efficient, and financially sustainable manner. Health financing is, therefore, an issue of growing importance.

Cross-References

► [Health Care System](#)

References and Reading

- Preker, A., Carrin, G., Dror, D., Jakab, M., Hsiao, W., & Arhin-Tenkorang, D. (2004). Rich–poor differences in health care financing. In A. Preker & G. Carrin (Eds.), *Health financing for poor people: Resource mobilization and risk-sharing*. Washington, DC: World Bank.
- World Health Organization. (2000). *The World Health Report 2000. Health systems: Improving performance*. Geneva: World Health Organization.
- World Health Organization. (2010). *The World Health Report – Health systems financing: The path to universal coverage*. Geneva: World Health Organization.

Health Literacy

Lee Sanders

Center for Health Policy and Primary Care
Outcomes Research, Stanford University,
Stanford, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Literacy](#)

Definition

Health literacy refers to an individual's ability to understand and use written and spoken health information. An applied version of the broader construct of "literacy" (i.e., the ability to read and understand all written information), health literacy encompasses the tasks necessary for a patient to navigate the modern medical system. This includes tasks such as dosing medication according to written instructions, interpreting a food label, following an immunization schedule, completing personal health information at the doctor's office, understanding a patient-centered brochure, completing health-insurance forms, or finding health information on the Internet. At least one in three US adults has limited health literacy (Kutner et al. 2006; Nielsen-Bohlman et al. 2004; Yin et al. 2009). According to the 2003 National Assessment of Adult Literacy (NAAL), 78 million US adults (36% of the population) are unable to perform "basic" health literacy tasks, such as using an immunization schedule, following recommendations from a preventive-health brochure, and interpreting a growth chart (Doak et al. 1996; Rich 2004). Unfortunately, most health information in the USA is written with a complexity of form and language too difficult for most US adults to understand (Davis et al. 1994; Kutner et al. 2006; Rothman et al. 2006; Sanders et al. 2009; Yin et al. 2009).

Health literacy is a critical and potentially modifiable factor that influences health behaviors and may help reduce health disparities. Health literacy may contribute to the health-behavior

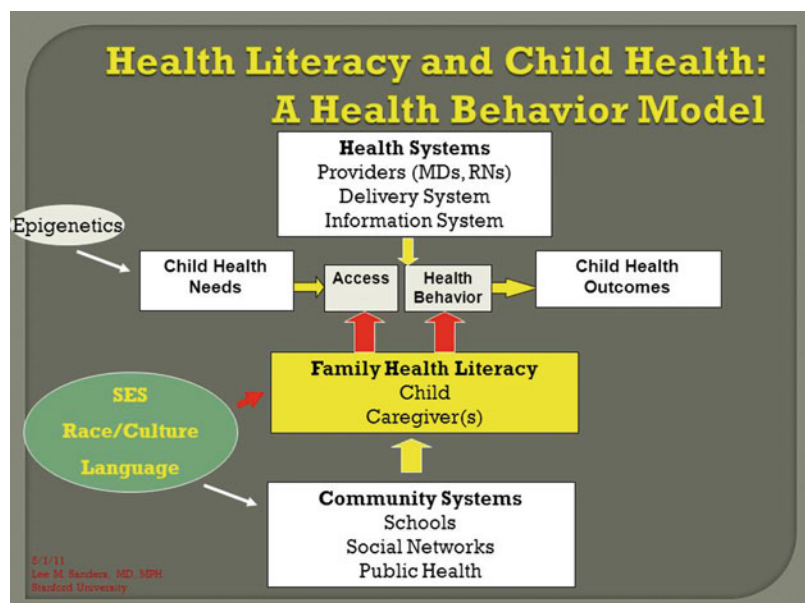
model of health outcomes by attenuating the relationship between social factors and health behaviors. Many of the leading sources of morbidity and health disparities (e.g., preterm birth, obesity, chronic lung disease, cardiovascular disease, type 2 diabetes, mental health disorders, and cancer) are the result of literacy-sensitive health behaviors acquired across the life course (e.g., physical activity, nutrition, smoking, risky sexual behaviors). Recent studies among adults have established an independent association between lower health literacy and decreased access to preventive-care services, increased use of urgent care services, increased risk for depression, and worse chronic-illness outcomes. Controlling for income, gender, and age, several studies have demonstrated that adults with limited literacy skills are significantly less likely than those with stronger skills to receive basic preventive care, including vaccines, weight management, and screening for breast, cervical, and prostate cancer (Bennett et al. 1998; Scott et al. 2002; Schillinger et al. 2002). In similarly adjusted analyses, children living with low-literacy caregivers have decreased access to primary preventive care, are more likely to be uninsured, less likely to access needed social services, less likely to be breastfed, and more likely to be exposed to second-hand

tobacco smoke (Sanders et al. 2009). Adolescents who read below grade level are at an increased risk for violent and aggressive behavior, substance use, and sexually transmissible illnesses (Abrams and Dreyer 2009).

As a result of these research findings, leading government agencies and national medical organizations – including the National Institutes of Health, the Institute of Medicine, and the Agency for Research in Healthcare Quality – have developed guidelines that call for more strategic attention to individuals' health literacy as a way of addressing major health disparities and public health challenges in the USA (Kutner et al. 2006; Nielsen-Bohlman et al. 2004; Yin et al. 2009). Experimental, clinical, community-based, and policy approaches to attenuating literacy-related health disparities have been proposed and tested. Evidence suggests that the most effective solutions apply to simplifying systems of care, particularly in the domains of medication delivery, chronic-illness management, and informed consent (Doak et al. 1996; Edwards et al. 2002; Rich 2004; Sanders et al. 2007; Weiss et al. 2006). The most innovative and effective strategies apply interdisciplinary solutions that integrate cognitive behavioral theory, visual images, cultural sensitivity, and new interactive technologies (Fig. 1).

Health Literacy,

Fig. 1 This conceptual model proposes collective health literacy ("Family Health Literacy") and institutional health literacy (the "Health Systems") as modifiable determinants of child health outcomes. Note the contribution of other social determinants (e.g., SES, culture, language) as moderating factors and of health behaviors as mediators



Cross-References

- [Community-Based Participatory Research](#)
- [Informed Consent](#)

References and Readings

- Abrams, M. A., & Dreyer, B. P. (2009). *Plain language pediatrics: Health Literacy strategies and communication resources for common pediatric topics*. Elk Grove Village: American Academy of Pediatrics.
- Bennett, C. L., Ferreira, M. R., Davis, T. C., Kaplan, J., Weinberger, M., Kuzel, T., et al. (1998). Relation between literacy, race, and stage of presentation among low-income patients with prostate cancer. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 16, 3101–3104.
- Davis, T. C., Mayeaux, E. J., Fredrickson, D., Bocchini, J. A., Jacson, R. H., & Murphy, P. W. (1994). Reading ability of parents compared with reading level of pediatric patient education materials. *Pediatrics*, 93, 460–468.
- Doak, C. C., Doak, L. G., & Root, J. H. (1996). *Teaching patients with low literacy skills* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott.
- Edwards, A., Elwyn, G., & Mulley, A. (2002). Explaining risks: Turning numerical data into meaningful pictures. *BMJ*, 324(7341), 827–830.
- Kutner, M., Greenberg, E., Jin, Y., Paulsen, C. (2006). *The health literacy of America's adults: Results from the 2003 National Assessment of Adult Literacy (NCES 2006–483)*. U.S. Department of Education. Washington, DC: National Center for Education Statistics.
- Nielsen-Bohlman, L., Panzer, A., & Kindig, D. A. (2004). *Health literacy: A prescription to end confusion*. Washington, DC: National Academies.
- Rich, M. (2004). Health literacy via media literacy: Video intervention/prevention assessment. *American Behavioral Scientist*, 48(2), 165–188.
- Rothman, R. L., Housam, R., Weiss, H., Davis, D., Gregory, R., Gebretsadik, T., et al. (2006). Patient understanding of food labels: The role of literacy and numeracy. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 31(5), 391–398.
- Sanders, L. M., Thompson, V. T., & Wilkinson, J. D. (2007). Caregiver health literacy and the use of child health services. *Pediatrics*, 119(1), 86–92.
- Sanders, L. M., Federico, S., Klass, P., Dreyer, B., & Abrams, M. A. (2009). Health literacy in pediatrics: A systematic review. *Archives of Pediatrics & Adolescent Medicine*, 163(2), 131–140.
- Schillinger, D., Grumach, K., Piette, J., Wang, F., Osmond, D., Daher, C., Palacios, J., Sullivan, G. D., & Bindman, A. B. (2002). Association of health literacy with diabetes outcomes. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288, 475–482.
- Scott, T. L., Gazmararian, J. A., Williams, M. V., & Baker, D. W. (2002). Health literacy and preventive health care use among medicare enrollees in a managed care organization. *Medical Care*, 40, 395–404.
- Weiss, B. D., Francis, L., Senf, J. H., Heist, K., & Hargraves, R. (2006). Literacy education as treatment for depression in patients with limited literacy and depression: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of General Internal Medicine*, 21(8), 823–828.
- Yin, H. S., Johnson, M., Mendelsohn, A. L., Abrams, M. A., Sanders, L. M., & Dreyer, B. P. (2009). The health literacy of parents in the US: A nationally representative study. *Pediatrics*, 124(3), S289–S298.

Health Navigators

- [Promotoras](#)

Health Outcomes Research

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

Health outcomes research refers to the entire evaluation of all health professionals' and health researchers' efforts in ameliorating patients' health conditions, in relation to various dimensions of health. Furthermore, it refers to the work not only of health professionals but of health-related organizations and their policies as a whole as well. Thus, in contrast to research on the effectiveness of specific medical or health interventions on specific health indices (e.g., blood pressure, survival), health outcomes research is a broader concept, both on the side of the intervention agents and on the side of the outcomes. Health outcomes research thus can guide health policy makers, health economists, as well as specific types of health professionals and clinicians.

The setting or context of health outcomes research includes clinics, hospitals, patients' homes, or even entire regions. The typical measures used in health outcomes research are also broader than those commonly used in medical intervention trials. While, in the latter, outcomes mainly include physiological parameters (e.g., HbA1C, tumor markers, pulmonary functioning), health outcomes research additionally focuses on patients' satisfaction with health care, daily functioning, and, more broadly speaking, on their well-being. In addition, health outcomes research uses the method of meta-analysis to summarize and infer from multiple, yet comparable, clinical studies of a given treatment. Measures of functional status include physical (e.g., carrying), role (e.g., being a parent or worker), and social functioning (e.g., taking part in social events) in general or as influenced by a specific disease. The Brief Pain Inventory assesses the level of interference of pain in these factors. Measures of well-being include dimensions such as mental health, social relations, health perceptions, pain, and general life satisfaction. A common measure assessing most of these dimensions is the SF-36 (Aaronson et al. 1992). Such measures are also used in health economics studies to assess quality-adjusted life years (QALY), a major outcome in health outcomes research, as it encompasses survival time with its quality. Research in behavior medicine needs to begin focusing more on QALY as an outcome, especially because of improvements in medical care (e.g., after myocardial infarction, breast cancer), which leads to people living longer with chronic diseases.

Cross-References

► [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)

References and Further Readings

Aaronson, N. K., Acquadro, C., Alonso, J., Apolone, G., Bucquet, D., Bullinger, M., et al. (1992). International quality of life assessment (IQOLA) project. *Quality of Life Research*, 1, 349–351.

Health Phobia

► [Health Anxiety](#)

Health Plan

► [Health Policy/Health-Care Policy](#)

Health Planning

► [Health Policy/Health-Care Policy](#)

Health Policy/Health-Care Policy

Erin N. Marcus and Olveen Carrasquillo Chief
Division of General Internal Medicine, Miller
School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami,
FL, USA

Synonyms

[Health plan](#); [Health planning](#); [Health program](#);
[Health strategy](#)

Definition

A nation's, state's, city's, or other community's decisions regarding matters affecting health.

Description

Health policy refers to the systematic and/or organized approach to decision making regarding matters affecting health by a national or regional governmental entity (such as state or city) or other organized group (company, agency, etc.) (Patrick and Erickson 1993). Most often, the term is used

synonymously with health-care policy. However, the latter more narrowly applies to decisions affecting the formal medical system. Ideally the goal of such decision making would be toward improving the well-being of members of the community (Bodenheimer and Grumbach 2009; Weiner et al. 2008). Further, such a decision-making process should be largely informed and driven by factual knowledge and evidence from the natural and social sciences. However, in reality, health policy is heavily influenced by many factors outside the scientific realm such as economic and political forces. In addition, such policies also heavily reflect a region's and society's ethics and values (Bodenheimer and Grumbach 2009; Weiner et al. 2008). Thus, health policies vary widely around the world.

An example is the ways countries choose to finance their formal health-care sector, for which there are five major approaches: direct taxation; social health insurance, with mandatory premiums; voluntary or private health insurance; out-of-pocket payments; and charitable care (World Health Organization 2005). In some countries such as Norway, the vast majority of health care is financed through direct government taxation. In Taiwan, social health insurance, financed by a payroll tax, covers nearly all health care. In the USA, a mixed market exists, with the government paying for slightly under half of all costs, and most of the rest covered by private insurance and/or out-of-pocket payments. In extremely poor countries, such as Mali, much of the care is provided by charitable organizations (World Health Organization 2005).

Health-care policy also includes decisions around how health care is organized and delivered and the amount of money that should be devoted to health care. While it is generally agreed that countries spending less than \$60 per person annually on health care have difficulty providing minimal essential services (World Health Organization 2005), absolute funding levels do not necessarily correlate with health or health-care outcomes. For example, the USA spends nearly twice as much as most other developed countries on health care, yet is often ranked lower than many other countries with respect to measures of health outcomes and access to care. How health-care funding is allocated is also a major focus of health policy deliberations. In many

countries, more population-based medical interventions, such as immunization programs, are prioritized as it is felt that these may result in a more efficient allocation of limited health-care resources. In poorer countries, such population level interventions may also be administered by transnational organizations such as the World Health Organization or nongovernmental organizations operating at the national, state, or local levels (World Health Organization 2005).

Another example of differences in health-care policies across countries is evident with respect to counseling and therapies meant to promote behavior change, such as dietary counseling or counseling to promote tobacco cessation. Given extensive evidence that such programs can reduce complications related to obesity and long-term tobacco use, many countries provide coverage for such services. In contrast, until recently many insurance plans in the USA provided limited or no coverage for counseling directed at shaping health behaviors.

Health policy also includes programs and legislation which may influence health-related behaviors but are not typically considered part of the formal health-care sector. An example is outdoor smoking bans, which not only protect nonsmokers from secondhand smoke but are also associated with decreases in tobacco use among smokers. Laws allowing police to issue tickets to drivers of cars with unbelted passengers are associated with increased seat belt usage and a corresponding decrease in motor vehicle accident-related deaths. Another example is land-use policies that create pedestrian-friendly built environments that promote healthy behaviors, such as walking, and result in lower obesity rates (U.S. Centers for Disease Control). Often times, the health effects of such policies may not even be apparent at the time they are implemented. For example, the intention of a federally mandated decrease in highway speed limits in the 1970s was to improve conservation of fuel, but resulted in fewer automobile accident-related deaths. Thus, while health-care policy often dominates health policy deliberations, interventions outside of the formal health-care delivery system may also have a major influence on health (Connolly 2008).

Cross-References

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
- Institute of Medicine
- National Cancer Institute
- National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute
- National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases
- National Institute of Mental Health
- National Institute of Nursing Research
- National Institute on Aging
- National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism
- National Institutes of Health
- Robert Wood Johnson Foundation
- Smoking Prevention Policies and Programs
- Tobacco Control
- World Health Organization (WHO)

References and Readings

- Bodenheimer, T. S., & Grumbach, K. (2009). *Understanding health policy: A clinical approach*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Centers for Disease Control. About healthy places. Available at: <http://www.cdc.gov/healthyplaces/about.htm>. Accessed 17 Oct 2011.
- Connolly, C. (2008). Overcoming obstacles to health: A report from the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation. Retrieved October 13, 2011, from <http://www.rwjf.org/files/research/obstaclestohealth.pdf>
- Patrick, D., & Erickson, P. (1993). *Health status and health policy: Quality of life in health care evaluation and resource allocation*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Weiner, J. P., Famadas, J. C., Waters, H. R., & Gikic, D. (2008). Managed care and private health insurance in a global context. *Journal of Health Politics, Policy and Law*, 33(6), 1107–1131.
- World Health Organization. (2005). *Strategy for health care financing for countries of the Western Pacific and Southeast Asian regions 2006–2010*. Geneva: World Health Organization. Available at: http://203.90.70.117/PDS_DOCS/B0131.pdf. Accessed 16 Oct 2011.

Health Program

- Health Policy/Health-Care Policy

Health Promotion

- Health Communication

Health Promotion and Disease Prevention

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
 Health Communication
 Health Education
 Health Literacy
 Health Policy/Health-Care Policy
 Healthy Cities
 Healthy Eating
 HIV Prevention
 Prevention: Primary, Secondary, Tertiary
 Preventive Care
 Preventive Medicine
 Research Institute (Ornish)
 Worksite Health Promotion

Health Psychology

Vincent Tran
 Southwestern Medical Center, University of Texas, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

Behavioral medicine; Medical psychology; Psychosomatic medicine

Definition

Health psychology is a relatively new subfield of psychology that studies psychological factors related to how people stay healthy, why they become ill, and how they respond when they do become ill. The American Psychological Association's official definition of health psychology comes from Matarazzo (1982): "Health Psychology is the aggregate of the specific educational, scientific, and professional contributions of the discipline of psychology to the promotion and maintenance of health, the prevention and treatment of illness, the identification of etiologic and diagnostic correlates of health, illness, and related

dysfunction and to the analysis and improvement of the health care system and health policy formation.”

Health psychology emphasizes the biopsychosocial model where physical well-being and disease reflect a complex set of interrelated processes including biological factors (e.g., genetics, hormonal fluctuations), psychological factors (e.g., mood, personality, health behaviors), and social factors (e.g., cultural norms, health policy, social support). Health psychologists may focus their professional activities on consultation, intervention, public health policy and administration, and/or research. They commonly collaborate with other health care professionals in multidisciplinary settings in order to provide optimal care for patients and to improve health care systems, policy, and public health. From its inception, health psychology has had a dual focus on research and practice, reflecting the philosophy of the broader discipline of psychology.

The field of health psychology was formally recognized in the USA in 1978 with the establishment of the Division of Health Psychology (Division 38) within the American Psychological Association. A confluence of factors contributed to the development of the field of health psychology at this time including (a) research demonstrating compelling mind-body associations (e.g., Neal Miller’s work on the conditioning of physiological processes), (b) recognition that the leading causes of mortality (e.g., coronary heart disease) could be prevented, delayed, or treated through health behavior change, and (c) the possibility to curb health care costs through prevention and low-cost behavioral initiatives. The mission of Division 38 was – and still is – to advance the contributions of psychology as a discipline to understanding health and illness through basic and clinical research, to promote education and services in the psychology of health and illness, and to inform the psychological and biomedical community of these research and service activities. Parallel movements and related fields have developed over the years but remain distinct from that of health psychology. Behavioral medicine is an

interdisciplinary organization devoted to integrating biomedical and psychosocial factors in health and illness, in contrast to the intradisciplinary focus of health psychology; health psychologists engage in behavioral medicine when they collaborate with colleagues outside of psychology (e.g., medicine, nursing, public health, etc.). Medical psychology, or clinical health psychology, is a term most commonly used to describe the work conducted by clinical psychologists who practice in medical settings. Another interdisciplinary field, psychosomatic medicine, which developed somewhat earlier than health psychology and behavioral medicine, focuses similarly on understanding biobehavioral links between psychology, psychiatry, internal medicine, physiology, and other disciplines.

Division 38 (Health Psychology) of the American Psychological Association, the Society of Behavioral Medicine, and the American Psychosomatic Society are organizations that promote research and practice of health psychology and related fields. Many scholarly journals are dedicated to disseminating research generated by health psychologists. The official journal of Division 38 is *Health Psychology*, but there are also international journals that publish peer-reviewed research in health psychology (e.g., *Journal of Health Psychology*; *Psychology and Health*; *Health Psychology Review*). Health psychology research is also routinely published in journals linked to the interdisciplinary organizations of behavioral medicine (*Annals of Behavioral Medicine*) and psychosomatic medicine (*Psychosomatic Medicine*). Finally, consistent with the goal of informing the biomedical community about the research and service activities of health psychologists, health psychologists increasingly publish their research in relevant medical journals.

Cross-References

- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Medical Psychology](#)
- [Psychosomatic](#)

References and Further Readings

- Belar, C. D., McIntyre, T. M., & Materazzo, J. D. (2003). Health Psychology. In D. B. Freedheim & I. B. Weiner (Eds.), *Handbook of psychology: History of psychology* (pp. 451–464). Hoboken: Wiley.
- Brannon, L., & Feist, J. (2000). *Health psychology: An introduction to behavior and health* (4th ed.). Belmont: Wadsworth/Thomson Learning.
- Health Psychology. (2012a). About Division 38. *Health Psychology (APA, Division 38)*. Retrieved from <http://www.health-psych.org/LandingDivision.cfm>.
- Health Psychology. (2012b). Education & Training. *Health Psychology (APA, Division 38)*. Retrieved from <http://www.health-psych.org/LandingEducation.cfm>.
- Marks, D. F., Murray, M., Evans, B., Willig, C., Woodall, C., & Sykes, C. M. (2005). *Health psychology: Theory, research and practice* (2nd ed.). Thousand Oaks: Sage.
- Matarazzo, J. D. (1982). Behavioral health's challenge to academic, scientific, and professional psychology. *American Psychologist*, 37, 1–14.
- Nezu, A. M., Nezu, C. M., & Geller, P. A. (Eds.). (2003). *Handbook of psychology: Health psychology* (Vol. 9). Hoboken: Wiley.

alcohol consumption, or lack of physical activity, these are often related to social and environmental conditions under which people live. Behavioral health risks, such as those related to eating habits, physical activity, stress, etc., have often been referred to lifestyle risk factors, although more specific terms are usually preferred.

Health Science

- [Occupational Therapy](#)

Health Self-Management

- [Quantified Self](#)

Health Strategy

- [Health Policy/Health-Care Policy](#)

Health Risk

- [Cancer Risk Perceptions](#)

Health Risk (Behavior)

Peter Allebeck
Department of Public Health Sciences,
Karolinska Institute, Stockholm, Sweden

Health-Related Quality of Life

Maartje de Wit and Tibor Hajos
Medical Psychology, VU University Medical
Center, Amsterdam, North Holland, The
Netherlands

Definition

Health risk is a comprehensive term covering all phenomena that carry a hazard to health of individuals or communities. Health risks can be divided into social, environmental, and behavioral risks. Another, partly overlapping, division is into health risks at population level, community level, or individual level. However, it is important to understand that health risks operate on various levels, so even if one talks about health risks on individual level, such as an individual's smoking,

Synonyms

[Quality of life](#)

Definition

In 1948, the World Health Organization defined health as “the state of complete physical, mental and social well-being and not merely the absence of disease or infirmity” (World Health Organization [WHO] 1948). Since then, QoL has become

increasingly important in health-care practice and research. The term “health-related quality of life” (HRQoL) narrows QoL to aspects relevant to health. However, HRQoL is a comprehensive and complex concept for which no universally accepted definition is available (Fayers and Machin 2000). Two aspects of HRQoL are central in most definitions. First, it is a multidimensional concept that can be viewed as a latent construct which describes the physical, role functioning, social, and psychological aspects of well-being and functioning (Bullinger 1991; Calman 1987; Spilker 1990). Second, in contrast to QoL, HRQoL can include both objective and subjective perspectives in each domain (Testa and Simonson 1996). The objective assessment focuses on what the individual can do, and it is important in defining the degree of health. The subjective assessment of QoL includes the meaning to the individual; essentially it involves the translation or appraisal of the more objective measurement of health status into the experience of QoL. Differences in appraisal account for the fact that individuals with the same objective health status can report very different subjective QoL.

HRQoL as an Outcome

It has become clear in the last decade that HRQoL is an important outcome variable on its own independent of medical outcomes. HRQoL outcomes can guide decisions on alternative treatments or effectiveness of interventions at a *patient group level* (Koot 2001). In clinical research trials in children, HRQoL has long been neglected as an outcome, but this changed rapidly over the last 10 years (Clarke and Eiser 2004). An important step towards a more structured and frequent use of patient-reported outcomes (PROs) in drug development is represented by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) guidance, issued in 2006. This describes how the FDA evaluates PROs, including HRQoL, to be used as effectiveness end points in clinical trials (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2006). This guidance emphasizes the importance of considering HRQoL separate from medical effectiveness.

From the *individual patient perspective*, HRQoL can guide the choice of best treatment, made by the patient himself/herself and the health-care professionals (Koot 2001). Evaluating the impact of diabetes on the adolescents’ HRQoL and vice versa can help both the patient and physician decide on the optimal individual treatment (de Wit et al. 2008).

HRQoL in Children

Attention to the QoL of children has evolved rapidly from the 1980s. Advances in medical care have changed the emphasis in pediatric medicine from the diagnosis and management of infectious disease to prevention and control of chronic conditions. This means that health-care professionals should have insight into the child’s views and experiences. Early attempts to rate children’s QoL were based on data provided by mothers as children are often regarded as unreliable respondents. However, children and parents do not necessarily share similar views about the impact of illness. As children grow older and develop their own life, the HRQoL reports of parents become of less relevance. It has been shown that parents and children agree more on objective domains of HRQoL (i.e., physical functioning) than on subjective domains, like emotional and social functioning (Eiser and Morse 2001; Janse et al. 2008). Therefore, the child’s HRQoL is included more and more in decisions about their care and treatment.

Cross-References

- [Quality of Life](#)
- [Quality of Life: Measurement](#)

References and Readings

- Bullinger, M. (1991). Quality of life – definition, conceptualization and implications – a methodologists view. *Theoretic Surgery*, 6, 143–149.
- Calman, K. (1987). Definitions and dimensions of quality of life. In N. Aaronson, J. Beckman, J. Bernheim, &

- R. Zittoun (Eds.), *The quality of life of cancer patients* (pp. 81–97). New York: Raven.
- Clarke, S.-A., & Eiser, C. (2004). The measurement of health-related quality of life (QOL) in paediatric clinical trials: A systematic review. *Health and Quality of Life Outcomes*, 2(1), 66.
- de Wit, M., Delemarre-van de Waal, H. A., Bokma, J. A., Haasnoot, K., Houdijk, M. C., Gemke, R. J., et al. (2008). Monitoring and discussing health-related quality of life in adolescents with type 1 diabetes improve psychosocial well-being: A randomized controlled trial. *Diabetes Care*, 31(8), 1521–1526.
- Eiser, C., & Morse, R. (2001). Can parents rate their child's health-related quality of life? Results of a systematic review. *Quality of Life Research*, 10(4), 347–357.
- Fayers, P., & Machin, D. (2000). *Quality of life. Assessment, analysis and interpretation*. Chichester: Wiley.
- Janse, A. J., Sinnema, G., Uiterwaal, C. S., Kimpen, J. L., & Gemke, R. J. (2008). Quality of life in chronic illness: Children, parents and paediatricians have different, but stable perceptions. *Acta Paediatrica*, 97(8), 1118–1124.
- Koot, H. M. (2001). The study of quality of life: Concepts and methods. In J. L. Wallander & H. M. Koot (Eds.), *Quality of life in child and adolescent illness. Concepts, methods and findings* (pp. 3–17). Brunner-Routledge: East Sussex.
- Spilker, B. (1990). *Quality of life assessment in clinical trials*. New York: Raven.
- Testa, M. A., & Simonson, D. C. (1996). Assessment of quality-of-life outcomes. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 334(13), 835–840.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2006). Patient-reported outcome measures: Use in medical product development to support labeling claims. *Guidance for Industry*. Retrieved July, 2008, from <http://www.fda.gov/cder/guidance/5460dft.pdf>.
- World Health Organisation. (1948). *The constitution of the World Health Organisation*. Washington, DC: WHO.

Healthy Cities

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

The term healthy cities (HC) refers to a policy and activity at the village, town, or city levels to promote health. This follows the World Health Organization's (WHO) conceptualization of health as

one's physical, psychological, and social well-being and current health professionals' growing emphasis on people's self-care. Furthermore, HC reflect the emerging need to allocate resources to disease prevention and to the maintenance of health and well-being, beyond treatment of existing illnesses alone. When this is done at the level of a town or city, "peer pressure" becomes positive and can influence people toward more healthy lifestyles including balanced diets, physical activity, smoking cessation, moderate alcohol consumption, and provision of communal social support. Furthermore, recognizing that environmental factors influence health (e.g., crowding, pollution), HC also provide an excellent opportunity to change one's environment in order to foster health and well-being, an issue of growing concern globally. Such initiatives are supported by the WHO via fostering programs and networks, inside and between countries (Goldstein 2000). Additional core values in the HC project are equity, community participation, and community empowerment (Tsouros 2009), particularly fostered by the European Healthy Cities Network (Heritage and Dooris 2009).

An example of a HC project, which was tested, includes the Minnesota Heart Health Program (MHHP), where three intervention towns/cities were compared to three control towns/cities. The MHHP focused on health education with the aim to reduce cardiovascular morbidity and mortality. It succeeded to mobilize many community leaders, large segments of the adult population, and it repeatedly exposed health-education information to residents via multiple channels of communication (Mittelmark et al. 1986). van Oers and Reelick (1992) developed quantitative indicators for evaluating HCs and also showed that such evaluation can feedback into local policy making, thus influencing health-related decisions at the city levels. According to initial findings from the European Healthy Cities Network, 80% of such cities used various forms of community participation, and more than two thirds of cities tried to empower their citizens (Heritage and Dooris 2009). Empowerment is of course central to health since it fosters self-efficacy, a major predictor of health outcomes (e.g., Ironson et al. 2005). HC reflects an important area of intervention for

behavior medicine, where its theoretical models, methodological rigor, and clinical practice could contribute to societies' health at the "macro" level. Given the often limited effects of health education, future HC interventions may wish to add also "psychological inoculation" programs, a method in which people break their own cognitive barriers and learn to systematically resist social pressure. This method was found to change multiple health and other adverse outcomes far better than health education alone (e.g., Duryea et al. 1990; Gidron et al. 2015).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Health Behavior Change](#)
- ▶ [Prevention: Primary, Secondary, Tertiary](#)
- ▶ [Self-Care](#)

References and Further Readings

- Duryea, E., Ransom, M., & English, G. (1990). Psychological immunization: Theory, research, and current health behaviour applications. *Health Education Behaviour, 17*, 169–178.
- Gidron, Y., Slor, Z., Toderas, S., Herz, G., & Friedman, S. (2015). Effects of psychological inoculation on indirect road hostility and simulated driving. *Transportation Research Part F, 30*, 153–162.
- Goldstein, G. (2000). Healthy cities: Overview of a WHO international program. *Reviews on Environmental Health, 15*, 207–214.
- Heritage, Z., & Dooris, M. (2009). Community participation and empowerment in healthy cities. *Health Promotion International, 31*, i45–i55.
- Ironson, G., Weiss, S., Lydston, D., Ishii, M., Jones, D., Asthana, D., et al. (2005). The impact of improved self-efficacy on HIV viral load and distress in culturally diverse women living with AIDS: The SMART/EST women's project. *AIDS Care, 17*, 222–236.
- Mittelmark, M. B., Luepker, R. V., Jacobs, D. R., Bracht, N. F., Carlaw, R. W., Crow, R. S., et al. (1986). Community-wide prevention of cardiovascular disease: Education strategies of the Minnesota Heart Health Program. *Preventive Medicine, 15*, 1–17.
- Tsouros, A. (2009). City leadership for health and sustainable development: The World Health Organization European Healthy Cities Network. *Health Promotion International, 31*, i4–i10.
- van Oers, J. A., & Reelick, N. F. (1992). Quantitative indicators for a healthy city – The Rotterdam local health information system. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health, 46*, 293–296.

Healthy Eating

Sheah Rarback

Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Food pyramid](#)

Definition

A healthy diet is one that maintains a state of well-being and reduces the risk of chronic diseases such as obesity, cancer, heart disease, and diabetes. A healthy food intake will have an adequate amount and balance of macronutrients (protein, carbohydrates, and fats), micronutrients (vitamins and minerals), and fluids. This goal can be accomplished with different dietary patterns.

Description

A healthy diet produces an appropriate body weight. Maintaining a healthy weight, with a body mass index between 18.5 and 24.9, is achieved by balancing total calorie intake with calorie requirements. The 2010 report of the Dietary Guidelines for Americans states that too many calories from foods high in solid fats and added sugars are contributing to obesity. These same foods offer few nutrients other than calories. Eating with mindfulness and an awareness of what, when, and how much is eaten is a useful technique for weight loss and maintenance. Limiting solid fats such as butter and lard and using limited amounts of mono- and polyunsaturated fats from plants and seeds support healthy weight and normal blood lipids.

The base of a heart-healthy intake is nutrient-rich plant foods. In addition to essential vitamins and minerals, plant foods provide phytonutrients. Phytonutrients are chemical compounds that occur naturally in plants. Phytonutrients have a

beneficial effect on health but are not yet established as essential nutrients. Examples of phytonutrients are lutein and zeaxanthin in dark greens that reduce the risk of cataracts and sulforaphane in broccoli that reduces the risk of cancer. It is recommended that half of the food consumed at a meal be plant based.

The recommendation for dietary fiber is between 25 and 35 g a day. Dietary fiber assists with weight management, control of blood glucose levels, and healthy blood cholesterol levels. Dry beans, whole grains, fruits, and vegetables with skin are sources of fiber. Many different foods, including breakfast cereals and yogurts, are fortified with extra fiber. The Nutrient Facts Label on all packaged foods lists fiber content.

Dietary protein provides essential amino acids to build body proteins and is also a calorie source. Most Americans are eating the required 0.8 g protein/kg body weight/day. Major sources of protein are lean meats, chicken, fish, dry beans, and soy products. Proteins from dry beans and soy products have the added benefit of fiber.

For a healthy diet, sodium intake should be less than 2300 mg for healthy adults and less than 1500 mg for individuals with hypertension, African Americans, and middle-aged and older adults. Seventy-five percent of sodium intake comes from processed and fast food. Increasing plant-based foods, cooking and eating at home, and using low-sodium canned products assist in reducing sodium intake.

Potassium helps to reduce the impact of sodium on blood pressure and is deficient in the average American diet. Most fruits and vegetables are good sources of potassium. Excellent sources are bananas, melon, oranges, spinach, fat-free milk, tomatoes, and vegetable juice.

Most fluid requirements are met through water and beverages, and a lesser amount through food. Adequate fluid is necessary for maintaining body temperature, lubricating joints, protecting spinal cord and other sensitive tissues, and ridding the body of waste. Greater fluid intake is necessary in hot climates, among physically active people, during illness such as a fever, diarrhea, or vomiting. Primary source of fluid should be water and calorie-free drinks.

A healthy meal is one half vegetables and fruits, ¼ whole grains, and ¼ lean meats or high-protein plant foods. The Food Guide Pyramid is a resource for further information about portion sizes, meal plans, and food tracking.

Cross-References

- [Cholesterol](#)
- [Eating Behavior](#)
- [Fat, Dietary Intake](#)
- [Nutrition](#)
- [Nutrition Data System for Research \(NDSR\)](#)

References and Readings

- Anderson, A., Harris, T., Tylavsky, F., Perry, S., Houston, D., Hue, T., et al. (2011). Dietary patterns and survival of older adults. *Journal of the American Dietetic Association*, 111, 84–91.
- Drewnowski, A., Darmon, N., & Briend, A. (2004). Replacing fats and sweets with vegetables and fruits—a question of cost. *American Journal of Public Health*, 94, 1555–1559.
- Gao, S., Beresford, S., Frank, L., Schreiner, P., Burke, G., & Fitzpatrick, A. (2008). Modification to the healthy eating index and its ability to predict obesity: The multi-ethnic study of atherosclerosis. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 88, 64–69.
- Rowe, S., Alexander, N., Almeida, N., Black, R., Burns, R., & Bush, R. (2011). Translating the dietary guidelines for Americans 2010 to bring about real behavior change. *Journal of the American Dietetic Association*, 111, 28–39.
- USDA. (2011) Dietary guidelines. www.dietaryguidelines.gov.

Healthy Eating Guide

- [MyPlate](#)

Healthy Lifestyle

- [Lifestyle, Active](#)

Healthy-Years Equivalents (HYEs)

- [Benefit Evaluation in Health Economic Studies](#)

Hearing Disturbances

- [Tinnitus and Cognitive Behavior Therapy](#)

Hearing Impairment

- [Hearing Loss](#)

Hearing Impairment (Noise Pollution Related)

Margaret Wallhagen

Department of Physiological Nursing, University of California San Francisco School of Nursing, San Francisco, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Noise-related hearing loss](#)

Definition

Hearing impairment is the alteration in the perception and interpretation of sound secondary to changes in the auditory system as a result of exposure to noise.

Description

Hearing is a complex phenomenon that depends on the capture, transmission, and interpretation of sound waves from the environment.

Ultimately, hearing occurs in the brain where incoming information is synthesized and interpreted. However, appropriate and accurate transmission of sound has to occur for correct interpretation to be possible. Exposure to a single loud noise or chronic exposure to noise above a sound pressure level of 85 dB (decibels) can damage the inner elements of the ear responsible for the translation of sound into signals that can be transmitted by the auditory nerve to the central nervous system. Although other components may be affected, of special concern is the impact that loud noise can have on the hair cells within the cochlea that transform sound into electrical signals that can be transmitted via the auditory nerve to the auditory cortex and related structures. The level of noise exposure needed to cause permanent hearing loss may vary with the individual because of genetic or other environmental conditions. The hair cells that are responsive to high-frequency sounds, located near the base of the cochlea, are especially vulnerable. Thus, hearing loss as a result of noise exposure tends to present with a distinct audiogram pattern which usually includes a “notch” at about 4,000 Hz (Hertz; 4 kHz). A “notch” is a drop in hearing acuity at a given frequency, indicating that the sensory receptors responsive to that frequency have been damaged. Current data suggest that the damage from noise may be caused by oxidative stress. Individuals vary in their susceptibility to noise exposure, and other concurrent exposures, such as to certain medications or environmental toxins, may act synergistically with noise to further damage the hair cells. Strategies are being tested to try and protect the sensitive inner ear components before noise exposure and/or to minimize the traumatic response to the noise exposure. However, most current efforts are aimed at preventing exposure to excessive noise or minimizing the level of exposure. For example, the Occupational Safety and Health Administration has established specific requirements for hearing protection in settings where noise exceeds a given level as well as a permissible noise exposure.

Cross-References

► Hearing Impairment

References and Readings

- Henderson, D., Bielfeld, E. C., Harris, K. C., & Hu, B. H. (2006). The role of oxidative stress in noise-induced hearing loss. *Ear & Hearing*, 27, 1–19.
- Konings, A., Van Laer, V., & Van Camp, G. (2009). Genetic studies on noise-induced hearing loss: A review. *Ear & Hearing*, 30, 151–159.
- National Institute on Deafness and Other Communication Disorders. (2008). *Noise-induced hearing loss* (NIDCD Fact Sheet. Publication No. 08-4233, Updated December 2008). Bethesda: Author.
- Occupational Safety & Health Administration, Regulations (Standards 29 CFR), Part Number 1910, Standard Number 1910.95, Occupational noise exposure. Retrieved May 1, 2012, from http://www.osha.gov/pls/osha.gov/pls/oshaweb/owadisp.show_document?p_table=STANDARD&p_id=9735

Hearing Loss

Margaret Wallhagen

Department of Physiological Nursing, University of California San Francisco School of Nursing, San Francisco, CA, USA

Synonyms

Hearing impairment

Definition

A decrease, alteration, or distortion in the perception of sound.

Description

Hearing involves the perception and interpretation of sounds transmitted from the environment and occurs within the central nervous system. Sound waves enter the ear canal and stimulate the ear

drum or tympanic membrane. The movement of the tympanic membrane changes the acoustic energy into mechanical energy that can then be transmitted by the three tiny inner ear bones or ossicles to the oval window of the inner ear or cochlea. The mechanical energy transmitted to the oval window initiates movement of the fluid within the inner ear. The sound energy now carried by the inner ear fluid stimulates sensitive hair cells and is transformed into electrochemical energy that can be transmitted by the auditory nerve to the auditory centers of the central nervous system. It is at the central level that sound is perceived and interpreted. Disturbances anywhere in the transmission process can lead to hearing loss. Thus, hearing loss can be conductive (disturbance in transmission from the external environment to the inner ear), sensorineural (involving alterations in the inner ear and/or auditory nerve), mixed conductive/sensorineural, or central. The cause of hearing loss can be multifactorial. Conductive loss can be caused by cerumen or wax in the ear canal which blocks sound transmission. The accumulation of wax is more common in older adults because of changes in its consistency with age. Conductive loss can also occur as a result of changes in the middle ear related to the ossicles or other diseases. Sensorineural losses can be caused by noise, ototoxic agents (e.g., environmental toxins or ototoxic medications), chronic conditions, or age. Chronic conditions such as diabetes mellitus are increasingly recognized as associated with increased incidence of hearing loss, possibly through their impact on the cardiovascular system. Age-related hearing loss is usually called “presbycusis” and is characterized initially by loss in the perception of high-frequency tones. Because consonants (such as s, p, t) are high frequency while vowels (a, e, i, o, u) are low frequency, individuals often feel they can “hear but not understand” or that individuals mumble because they are only hearing the vowels in any given word. This leads to distortion and misinterpretations. For example, “time” and “dime” may be confused. Hearing loss can occur at any time in the life cycle but becomes increasingly common with age. While hearing loss is usually not considered a life-threatening

condition, it is associated with multiple negative outcomes including isolation, depression, and altered interpersonal relationships. There is also increasing interest in the relationship between hearing loss and cognition. Approaches to the treatment of hearing loss usually focus on enhancing amplification in the frequencies that are most affected. Newer hearing aids have a greater capacity to be individualized but remain aids. Individuals need to understand that they will need to relearn how to hear and to get use to hearing sounds that they may not have heard in some time. The underlying damage to the ear is not repaired. In addition to hearing aids, other assistive listening devices are available to facilitate communication or participation in activities or events (510).

References and Readings

- Chisolm, T. H., Johnson, C. E., Danhauer, J. L., Portz, L. J. P., Abrams, H. B., Lesner, S., et al. (2007). A systematic review of health-related quality of life and hearing aids: Final report of the American Academy of Audiology Task Force on the health-related quality of life benefits of amplification in adults. *Journal of the American Academy of Audiology*, 18, 151–183.
- Donaldson, N., Worrall, L., & Hickson, L. (2006). Older people with hearing impairment: A literature review of spouse's perspective. *Australian and New Zealand Journal of Audiology*, 26(1), 30–39.
- Issacson, B. (2010). Hearing loss. *Medical Clinics of North America*, 94, 973–988.
- Martin, F. N., & Clark, J. G. (2000). *Introduction to audiology*. Needham Heights: Allyn & Bacon.
- Wallhagen, M. I. (2008). The relationship between hearing impairment and cognitive function: A 5 year longitudinal study. *Research in Gerontological Nursing*, 1(2), 80–86.
- Wallhagen, M. I. (2010). The stigma of hearing loss. *The Gerontologist*, 50(1), 66–75.
- Wallhagen, M. I., Strawbridge, W. J., Shema, S. J., & Kaplan, G. A. (2004). Impact of self-assessed hearing loss on a spouse: A longitudinal analysis of couples. *Journals of Gerontology Series B Psychological Sciences and Social Sciences*, 59B(3), S190–S196.
- Wallhagen, M. I., Pettengill, E., & Whiteside, M. (2006). Sensory impairment in older adults: Part 1: Hearing loss. *The American Journal of Nursing*, 106(10), 40–48.

Heart

Siqin Ye

Division of Cardiology, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Definition

The heart is the principle organ of the circulatory system and is responsible for pumping blood through the pulmonary and systemic circulations.

Description

In humans, the heart has four structural chambers: two upper ones, the left and right atria, serving as reservoirs for blood return from the pulmonary and systemic venous vasculature, respectively; and two lower chambers, the left and right ventricles, that eject blood forward into the aorta and the pulmonary arteries. In a typical cycle, peripheral venous blood returns to the right atrium via the superior and inferior venae cavae, and then empties into the right ventricle through the tricuspid valve, both passively and with contribution from right atrial contraction. Contraction of the right ventricle then opens the pulmonic valve and propels the deoxygenated blood through the main pulmonary artery on the way to the lungs. After passing through lung alveoli where gas exchange takes place, oxygenated blood from the pulmonary circulation eventually drains into the left atrium through the four pulmonary veins, and from there fills the left ventricle via passage across the mitral valve. Contraction of the left ventricle then opens the aortic valve, and oxygenated blood is pumped into the aorta to perfuse the other organs of the body. The blood supply to the heart itself is provided by the coronary arteries: the left main artery, arising from the left coronary cusp at the root of the aorta, and giving rise to the left anterior descending and the left circumflex arteries; and the right coronary artery, arising from the right coronary cusp. Venous return

from the heart drains into the right atrium via the coronary sinus (Kusumoto 2005).

Anatomically, the heart lies within the mediastinum and is encapsulated by the pericardial sac, which normally contains small amounts of serous fluid to minimize friction as the heart moves during each contraction. At the cellular level, the heart is composed of myocytes, which contain sarcomere units that form the basic contractile elements. The myocytes also possess gap junctions that allow propagation of electrical impulses from cell to cell. In addition, there are specialized myocytes with unique electrical properties that form the conduction system of the heart. Electrical impulses are typically initiated in the sinoatrial node (SA node), located within the right atrium, then travel to the atrioventricular node (AV node), which lies along the inferior-posterior aspect of the interatrial septum near the opening of the coronary sinus. The AV node allows conduction from the atria to the ventricles, and its refractory properties help to prevent rapid ventricular response in case of atrial arrhythmias. From the AV node, the electrical impulses travel rapidly down the bundle of His and then the right, left anterior and left posterior bundle branches, eventually arriving at the Purkinje fibers that reach the rest of the heart. It is this carefully timed activation sequence that makes possible the ordered and efficient contraction that occur with each heartbeat (Kusumoto 2005).

Numerous disease processes are known to affect the heart. Early in life, abnormalities of cardiac development can lead to various forms of congenital heart disease. Disorders of the conduction system can manifest as tachyarrhythmias and bradyarrhythmias, and can present at any age, either in isolation or in conjunction with other cardiac diseases. Valvular heart disease may involve stenotic or regurgitant lesions of any of the four cardiac valves or combinations thereof. The clinical syndrome of heart failure, defined as the inability of the heart to generate enough forward flow except at elevated filling pressures, can occur through diverse mechanisms including ischemia due to coronary artery disease to genetic disorders such as hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Ischemic heart disease caused by coronary

atherosclerosis is currently the most frequently diagnosed cardiac disorder, in part due to the increased life expectancy and changes in lifestyle and diet that occurred in the past century. Taken as a whole, cardiovascular diseases represent one of the most significant global public health burdens of the modern age, accounting for 30% of all deaths worldwide and up to 40% of all deaths in the industrialized world (American Heart Association Statistics Committee and Stroke Statistics Subcommittee 2010; Gaziano 2008).

Cross-References

► Heart Disease

References and Readings

- American Heart Association Statistics Committee and Stroke Statistics Subcommittee. (2010). Heart disease and stroke statistics 2010 update: A report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*, 121, e46–e215.
- Gaziano, J. M. (2008). Global burden of cardiovascular disease. In P. Libby, R. O. Bonow, D. L. Mann, D. P. Zipes, & E. Braunwald (Eds.), *Braunwald's heart disease: A textbook of cardiovascular medicine* (pp. 1–22). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Kusumoto, F. M. (2005). Cardiovascular disorders: Heart disease. In S. J. McPhee, V. R. Lingappa, & W. F. Ganong (Eds.), *Pathophysiology of disease: An introduction to clinical medicine* (5th ed., pp. 259–299). New York: McGraw-Hill Professional.

Heart and Estrogen/Progestin Replacement Study (HERS)

Jonathan Newman
Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Definition

The heart and estrogen/progestin replacement study (HERS) was a randomized, double-blinded placebo-controlled trial of the effect of 0.625 mg of conjugated estrogens plus 2.5 mg of

medroxyprogesterone acetate daily on coronary heart disease (CHD) event risk among more than 2,700 postmenopausal women with known CHD.

Description

The primary outcome of this trial was CHD events (nonfatal myocardial infarction (MI) plus CHD-related death). Secondary cardiovascular outcomes included coronary revascularization, unstable angina, congestive heart failure, resuscitated cardiac arrest, stroke or transient ischemic attack, and peripheral arterial disease.

Overall, during more than 4 years of follow-up, there were no significant differences between the hormone and placebo groups in the primary outcome of CHD events (nonfatal MI plus CHD-related death) or in any secondary outcomes.

However, post-hoc analyses showed a statistically significant time effect, wherein participants taking hormone therapy experienced more CHD events in the first year of treatment, and fewer in years 3–5. This led the investigators to speculate that the early risk due to estrogen/progestin treatment may be due to a prothrombotic, proischemic, or proarrhythmic effect which was gradually outweighed by the beneficial effects of hormone therapy, potentially mediated by observed changes in low- and high-density lipoprotein cholesterol.

This apparent pattern of an early increase in CHD events followed by a later decrease led to the recommendation that women with CHD should not start hormonal therapy for the purposes of preventing CHD events, but that those who were taking hormones could continue to do so. As reported in HERS II, women in HERS tended to follow this advice and many of those randomized to hormones during the trial continued with open-label treatment. This provided an opportunity to continue outcome surveillance for several years (HERS II).

The HERS II study contained both cardiovascular and non-cardiovascular components. Participants from the initial HERS study were followed for an additional 4 years. The HERS cardiovascular study demonstrated the absence of late benefit

of hormone therapy, effectively answering the important question raised by the original HERS study of whether the lower CHD event rate observed during the final years of the trial suggested the presence of a long-term benefit of hormone replacement therapy. The non-cardiovascular component of the HERS study demonstrated an increase in venous thromboembolism and biliary tract surgery over the near 7 years of follow-up and demonstrated unfavorable trends in the incidence of some cancers and incidence of fractures.

The follow-up study (HERS II) has been critiqued because randomized assignment was no longer blinded in HERS II, and event ascertainment may have been influenced by the knowledge of randomization assignment. Regardless, the HERS I/II provided useful information regarding the short- and long-term use of hormone replacement therapy, and supported the larger, more definitive trials on hormone replacement and cardiovascular and non-cardiovascular events, such as the Women's Health Initiative.

References and Reading

- Grady, D., Applegate, W., Bush, T. L., et al. (1998). Heart and estrogen/progestin replacement study (HERS): Design, methods and baseline characteristics. *Controlled Clinical Trials*, 19, 314–335.
- Grady, D., Herrington, D., Bittner, V., et al. (2002). Cardiovascular disease outcomes during 6.8 years of hormone therapy heart and estrogen/progestin replacement study follow-up (HERS II). *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288, 49–57.
- Hulley, S., Grady, D., Bush, T., et al. (1998). Randomized trial of estrogen plus progestin for secondary prevention of coronary heart disease in postmenopausal women. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 280, 605–613.
- Hulley, S., Furberg, C., Barrent-Connor, E., et al. (2002). Noncardiovascular disease outcomes during 6.8 years of hormone therapy heart and estrogen/progestin replacement study follow-up (HERS II). *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288, 58–66.

Heart Bypass Surgery

► Bypass Surgery

Heart Disease

William Whang

Division of Cardiology, Columbia University
Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Definition

Heart disease encompasses a range of conditions, including coronary artery disease, heart failure or inadequate cardiac output, and cardiac arrhythmia. See “► [Coronary Heart Disease \(CHD\)](#)” and “► [Congestive Heart Failure](#)” for further explanations.

Cross-References

- [Atrial Fibrillation](#)
- [Congestive Heart Failure](#)
- [Coronary Heart Disease](#)

Heart Disease and Cardiovascular Reactivity

Mark Hamer

Epidemiology and Public Health, Division of
Population Health, University College London,
London, UK

Synonyms

[Cardiac risk factor](#)

Definition

There has been a long-standing notion that exaggerated responses to mental stress are linked to the development of future heart disease (Hamer and Malan 2010). Although not clinically meaningful in themselves, if heightened responses to stress

are elicited on a regular basis, they might become clinically relevant over time. Existing work has largely focused on cardiovascular reactivity to stress as a tool to predict future risk. Blood pressure and heart rate responses to mental stress are largely augmented by the sympathetic nervous system and release of catecholamines. The issue of whether stress reactivity contributes to the progression of underlying disease or only to the incidence of clinical cardiac events has led to research involving indicators of subclinical disease. Several studies have indicated that heightened blood pressure and heart rate responses to laboratory-induced stressors predict future progression of subclinical atherosclerosis and hypertension in initially healthy participants, independently from conventional risk factors such as blood cholesterol, resting blood pressure, and smoking (Chida and Steptoe 2010). Few studies have examined the association between cardiovascular reactivity and the incidence of clinical cardiac events, and the available evidence is equivocal. Since individuals cannot be randomized to being high or low cardiovascular reactors to stress, it is impossible to prove or disprove beyond doubt that exaggerated reactivity is a causal risk factor in cardiovascular disease. On balance, there is substantive evidence to support the reactivity hypothesis although effect sizes are small and the clinical utility is questionable. Reasons for inconsistencies in the data include variability in the type of mental stressors employed and individual differences in responses that might be influenced by factors such as personality, race and ethnicity, genetics, chronic background stress, and lifestyle habits.

From a mechanistic standpoint, stress-induced blood pressure surges that contribute to increased shear stress in the arteries could promote endothelial damage and inflammatory responses that are thought to play a role in atherogenesis. Endothelial dysfunction plays a key role in the initiation of atherosclerosis because nitric oxide production from healthy endothelial cells has an anti-atherogenic effect by inhibiting cellular adhesion, migration, and proliferation responses. Individual differences in blood pressure reactivity have also been linked with activation patterns in

corticolimbic brain areas (e.g., divisions of the cingulate cortex, insula, and amygdale) that are jointly involved in processing stressors and regulating the cardiovascular system (Gianaros and Sheu 2009). Thus, this data might provide the vital piece in the missing jigsaw puzzle explaining the interaction between brain and body.

Cross-References

- [Blood Pressure Reactivity or Responses](#)
- [Cold Pressor Test](#)
- [Physiological Reactivity](#)
- [Stroop Color-Word Test](#)

References and Readings

- Chida, Y., & Steptoe, A. (2010). Greater cardiovascular responses to laboratory mental stress are associated with poor subsequent cardiovascular risk status: A meta-analysis of prospective evidence. *Hypertension*, 55(4), 1026–1032.
- Gianaros, P. J., & Sheu, L. K. (2009). A review of neuroimaging studies of stressor-evoked blood pressure reactivity: Emerging evidence for a brain-body pathway to coronary heart disease risk. *NeuroImage*, 47(3), 922–936.
- Hamer, M., & Malan, L. (2010). Psychophysiological risk markers of cardiovascular disease. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 35(1), 76–83.

Heart Disease and Emotions: Anger, Anxiety, Depression

Timothy W. Smith

Department of Psychology, University of Utah,
Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Definition

The negative emotions of anger, anxiety, and depression exist in several different forms – stable individual differences in negative emotionality (i.e., personality traits), brief emotional episodes, symptoms of emotional distress, and emotional

disorders. Each of these emotion constructs has been examined as an influence on the development and course of coronary heart disease, a common cause of death resulting from the progression of atherosclerosis in the arteries that otherwise supply blood to the myocardium.

Description

Negative emotions have been suggested as an influence on the development and course of coronary heart disease (CHD) for centuries since the earliest descriptions of this common and costly medical condition. CHD begins as early as childhood or adolescence, with the development of fatty streaks within the walls of the coronary arteries. Over decades, these progress to more substantial coronary artery lesions, with the buildup of lipids and inflammatory processes at these sites. After decades of asymptomatic or silent progression of coronary artery disease (CAD), the symptoms of CHD appear in mid to later adulthood in the form of angina pectoris (chest pain due to myocardial ischemia), myocardial infarction, or sudden coronary death. Recent research indicates that negative emotion may play a role in CHD at each stage of this decades-long process. However, the various specific negative emotions and forms of these emotion characteristics are closely related, and it is not clear if they have independent or overlapping effects on the development and course of CHD (for reviews, see Smith 2010; Suls and Bunde 2005).

Virtually all major conceptual descriptions of basic emotions distinguish among anxiety and related emotions (e.g., fear), depression and related emotions (e.g., sadness), and anger. In contrast to a state of calm, anxiety is characterized by nervousness, tension, and apprehension. In the extreme, it is characterized by dread. Depression is characterized by sadness, sorrow, and unhappiness, and in the extreme by despair. Anger varies in intensity from irritation or annoyance to the extreme of rage. In terms of accompanying cognitive content, anxiety is associated with perceptions of threat and vulnerability to potential harm. In contrast, depression is associated with a sense

of loss, separation from important others, failure, and hopelessness. Anger is associated with thoughts of interpersonal transgression, frustrated goals, and unfair victimization or mistreatment.

These affective phenomena take several forms, ranging from brief episodes well within the range of normal experience to much more enduring and maladaptive conditions. Episodes of negative emotion (e.g., anger during a pointed disagreement) have been examined as precipitants or “triggers” of acute coronary events (e.g., myocardial infarction, sudden coronary death), and the related findings suggest that these episodes can indeed evoke such life-threatening events, although this is most likely limited to individuals who have advanced CAD (Bhattacharyya and Steptoe 2007). Episodes of negative emotion can be distinguished from related moods, in that emotions are more intense, briefer, and much more strongly related to physiological changes and the activation of associated behavioral response tendencies.

There are stable individual differences in the tendency to experience negative emotions and moods, such as the Five-Factor Model trait of neuroticism versus emotional stability. This trait contrasts individuals who are prone to anxiety, depression, anger, and related characteristics (e.g., self-consciousness, feelings of vulnerability or inferiority) with individuals who are generally calm. A closely related construct – negative affectivity – differs from neuroticism by including only the affective elements of this broad trait. In these trait models, individual differences in the tendency to experience anxiety, depression, and anger are seen as lower level, more specific aspects or “facets” of the broader trait.

These emotions are also seen in various forms of psychopathology. Anxiety disorders (e.g., generalized anxiety disorder, social phobia) and mood disorders (e.g., major depressive disorder) are common, and intense and destructive anger is the major feature of intermittent explosive disorder. Individuals can report elevated symptoms of anxiety, depression, or anger without reaching the severity, duration, or level of related impairment necessary to qualify for a diagnosed emotional disorder. Such elevations in symptoms are presumed to be less enduring than the negative

emotionality seen in related personality characteristics, and diagnosable emotional disorders are seen as qualitatively distinct from personality traits in their severity, related features, and levels of general impairment or dysfunction. Hence, anxiety, depression, and anger are typically conceptualized and studied as distinct emotions, as are their various forms in emotional episodes, symptoms, disorders, and personality traits.

If these distinctions were in fact firm, the common approach of studying one emotional risk factor for CHD at a time would not pose a problem. Unfortunately, these distinctions are quite difficult to support empirically (Smith 2010; Suls and Bunde 2005). There is a high degree of correlation among anxiety, depression, and anger, and this is true in each of the various forms. Further, the distinctions between the various forms of negative emotions are problematic. Symptoms of emotional distress are closely correlated with related personality traits, and scores on such symptom inventories are more stable than should be the case if they were unrelated to personality (Suls and Bunde 2005; Watson 2009). Neuroticism and negative affectivity are closely associated with anxiety and mood disorders (Weinstock and Whisman 2006), and symptoms of emotional disorders often appear to take the form of continuous severity distributions rather than the discrete structure implied by categorical models of emotional disorder (Haslam 2007). Emotional disorders co-occur so frequently that alternative diagnostic frameworks involving “distress disorders” have been proposed (Watson 2009). Hence, when one specific negative affect risk factor is related to the development or course of CHD, this association could easily involve another negative affect and/or another form of negative affect. This lack of specificity complicates the design and implementation of risk-reducing interventions, in that it is not clear which specific negative affect or which form of negative affect should be targeted.

Reviews of the many studies of negative emotional factors and the development and course of CHD suggest reliable associations for depression, anxiety, and anger when these characteristics are considered separately (Chida and Steptoe 2009; Nicholson et al. 2006; Suls and Bunde 2005).

However, the far fewer studies attempting to parse the potentially overlapping effects of these negative emotional phenomena have produced mixed results. Studies of preclinical, asymptomatic atherosclerosis that have measured multiple negative affective characteristics have sometimes found that depression but not anxiety or anger predicts disease severity (Stewart et al. 2007), whereas others have found that anxiety and anger but not depression are related to CAD (Smith et al. 2008). Studies of multiple indicators of negative affect as predictors of the initial occurrence of CHD have produced evidence of the unique or independent effects of anxiety (Phillips et al. 2009; Kubzansky et al. 2006; Shen et al. 2008), depression (Grossardt et al. 2009; Phillips et al. 2009), and general emotional distress (Boyle et al. 2006; Kubzansky et al. 2006). In studies of patients with CHD, the evidence is again mixed. Some studies suggest that anxiety and depression are independent predictors of recurrent cardiac events (Frasure-Smith and Lespérance 2008), whereas others suggest that anxiety but not depression has an independent effect (Tully et al. 2008).

Additional research is clearly needed to sort out the independent versus overlapping effects of the various negative emotions and their various forms, across the multiple phases of the development and course of CHD. The design of future studies must attend to the fact that anxiety, depression, and anger are correlated, and the overlap across various forms of these emotions is considerable. Figure 1 presents two conceptual models that can guide these efforts. In the first (panel A),

anxiety, depression, and anger are each considered and assessed separately, as are the various forms of these emotional constructs. In the second, the general factor (i.e., general emotional distress) is considered and assessed directly, as are the unique aspects of anxiety, depression, and anger. For example, depression differs from anxiety and anger in its associated low levels of positive affect and physiological activation (Watson 2009), and anger involves approach motivation (e.g., overcoming obstacles in frustrated goals, redress social transgressions or mistreatment), whereas anxiety is mostly associated with avoidance motives (i.e., minimize harm). Additional studies that measure these multiple aspects and forms of negative emotion could help define targets for risk-reducing interventions more precisely.

Interventions for CHD patients focused on a specific negative affect (e.g., depression) generally have not been found to be effective in reducing recurrent coronary events (ENRICH Investigators 2003). In contrast, more general interventions focusing on stress and negative emotion broadly considered have been found to be effective in improving the prognosis of CHD patients (Linden et al. 2007). If supported in future research, it is possible that this pattern of intervention results indicates that it is the general or overlapping aspects of negative emotion – rather than the specific aspects – that are important risk factors and important intervention opportunities. However, much additional research is needed.

a

	Anxiety	Depression	Anger
Personality Traits			
Emotional Symptoms			
Emotional Disorders			

Heart Disease and Emotions: Anger, Anxiety, Depression, Fig. 1 (a) Conceptual framework for overlapping negative affective risk factors (b) Alternative

b

	Specific Symptoms			
	General Factor	Anxiety	Depression	Anger
Personality Traits				
Emotional Symptoms				
Emotional Disorders				

framework including general and specific aspects of negative affect. (Reprinted with permission from Smith (2010) (Fig. 12.1, p. 161))

Cross-References

- Anger Management
- Anger, Measurement
- Anxiety and Heart Disease
- Anxiety Disorder
- Depression: Measurement
- Depression: Symptoms
- Depression: Treatment
- Type A Behavior
- Type D Personality

References and Readings

- Bhattacharyya, M. R., & Steptoe, A. (2007). Emotional triggers of acute coronary syndromes: Strength of evidence, biological processes, and clinical implications. *Progress in Cardiovascular Diseases*, 49, 353–365.
- Boyle, S. H., Michalek, J. E., & Suarez, E. C. (2006). Covariation of psychological attributes and incident coronary heart disease in U.S. Air Force veterans of the Vietnam War. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 68, 844–850.
- Carver, C. S., & Harmon-Jones, E. (2009). Anger is an approach-related affect: Evidence and implications. *Psychological Bulletin*, 135, 183–204.
- Chida, Y., & Steptoe, A. (2009). The association of anger and hostility with future coronary heart disease: A meta-analytic review of prospective evidence. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 53, 774–778.
- ENRICH Investigators. (2003). Effects of treating depression and low perceived social support on clinical events after myocardial infarction. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 289, 3106–3116.
- Frasure-Smith, N., & Lespérance, F. (2008). Depression and anxiety as predictors of 2-year cardiac events in patients with stable coronary artery disease. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 65, 62–71.
- Grossardt, B. R., Bower, J. H., Geda, Y. E., Colligan, R. C., & Rocca, W. A. (2009). Pessimistic, anxious, and depressive personality traits predict all-cause mortality: The Mayo Clinic Cohort Study of personality and aging. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 71, 491–500.
- Haslam, N. (2007). The latent structure of mental disorders: A taxometric update on the categorical vs. dimensional debate. *Current Psychiatry Reviews*, 3, 172–177.
- Kubzansky, L. D., Cole, S. R., Kawachi, I., Volonas, P., & Sparrow, D. (2006). Shared and unique contributions of anger, anxiety, and depression to coronary heart disease: A prospective study in the normative aging study. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 31, 21–29.
- Linden, W., Phillips, M. J., & Leclerc, J. (2007). Psychological treatment of cardiac patients: A meta-analysis. *European Heart Journal*, 28(24), 2964–2966.
- Nicholson, A., Kuper, H., & Hemingway, H. (2006). Depression as an aetiological and prognostic factor in coronary heart disease: A meta-analysis of 6362 events among 146,538 participants in 54 observational studies. *European Heart Journal*, 27, 2763–2774.
- Phillips, A. C., Batty, G. D., Gale, C. R., Deary, I. J., Osborn, D., Macintyre, K., et al. (2009). Generalized anxiety disorder, major depressive disorder and their comorbidity as predictors of all-cause and cardiovascular mortality: The Vietnam Experience Study. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 71, 395–403.
- Shen, B.-J., Avivi, Y. E., Todaro, J. F., Spiro, A., Laurenceau, J., Ward, K. D., & Niaura, R. (2008). Anxiety characteristics independently and prospectively predict myocardial infarction in men. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 51, 113–119.
- Smith, T. W. (2010). Conceptualization, measurement, and analysis of negative affective risk factors. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 155–168). New York: Springer.
- Smith, T. W., Uchino, B. N., Berg, C. A., Florsheim, P., Pearce, G., Hawkins, M., Henry, N., Beveridge, R., Skinner, M., Hopkins, P. N., & Yoon, H. C. (2008). Self-reports and spouse ratings of negative affectivity, dominance and affiliation in coronary artery disease: Where should we look and who should we ask when studying personality and health? *Health Psychology*, 27, 676–684.
- Stewart, J. C., Janicki, D. L., Muldoon, M. F., Sutton-Tyrell, K., & Kamarch, T. W. (2007). Negative emotions and 3-year progression of subclinical atherosclerosis. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 64, 225–233.
- Suls, J., & Bunde, J. (2005). Anger, anxiety, and depression as risk factors for cardiovascular disease: The problems and implications of overlapping affective dispositions. *Psychological Bulletin*, 131, 260–300.
- Tully, P. J., Baker, R. A., & Knight, J. L. (2008). Anxiety and depression as risk factors for mortality after coronary artery bypass surgery. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 64, 285–290.
- Watson, D. (2009). Differentiating the mood and anxiety disorders: A quadripartite model. *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology*, 5, 221–247.
- Weinstock, L. M., & Whisman, M. A. (2006). Neuroticism as a common feature of the depressive and anxiety disorders: A test of the revised integrative hierarchical model in a national sample. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, 115, 68–74.
- Widiger, T. A., & Smith, G. T. (2008). Personality and psychopathology. In O. P. John, R. W. Robbins, & L. A. Pervin (Eds.), *Handbook of personality: Theory and research* (3rd ed., pp. 743–769). New York: Guilford Press.

Heart Disease and Smoking

Scott DeBerard¹ and Julie Murray²

¹Department of Psychology, Utah State University, Logan, UT, USA

²Utah State University, Logan, UT, USA

Synonyms

Cardiovascular disease (CVD); Coronary heart disease (CHD); Nicotine

Definition

Heart disease is a relatively broad term which refers to many diseases associated with the heart. Coronary heart disease (CHD) refers to a narrowing or even complete occlusion of the blood vessels which supply the heart with blood and oxygen. Cardiovascular disease (CVD) is often used as a synonym for CHD. Smoking is defined as inhalation of smoke from burning tobacco via a cigarette, cigar, pipe, or other smoke delivery device (e.g., hookah).

Description

Approximately 14% of adults smoke in the United States, which represents a decrease in smoking over the last 10 years (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2017). It is currently estimated that over 140,000 individuals in the United States will die annually due to smoking-attributable CHD (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2008). There is currently compelling evidence that smoking is causally related to cardiovascular diseases. The most extensive current compilation of evidence supporting a causal link between smoking and CHD is found in the 2010 Surgeon General's Report: *How Tobacco Smoke Causes Disease: The Biology and Behavioral Basis for Smoking-Attributable Disease* (US Department of Health and Human Services 1994). What follows is a brief overview of the evidence for a causal link

between smoking and CHD including a discussion of the biological processes impacted by smoking that are implicated in CHD.

There are numerous studies which demonstrate a clear dose-response relationship between number of cigarettes smoked per day and risk for developing CHD. The recent Surgeon General's Report on Smoking (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010) indicated that risk for CHD is increased across all levels of smoking and that smoking even a few cigarettes per day (less than five) resulted in increased risk of developing CHD. This report also indicated that duration of smoking is associated with increased risk of CHD-related mortality.

Exposure to secondhand smoke also increases the risk of CHD. One study determined that the relative risk of CHD for smokers is 1.78 as compared with 1.31 in nonsmokers exposed to secondhand smoke. This study also revealed that exposure to secondhand smoking resulted in similar negative circulatory changes to those which occur in smokers. There is also evidence of decreased hospital admissions due to myocardial infarction rates in locations which have banned public smoking (Barnoya and Glantz 2005).

There are multiple physiological changes which occur in response to smoking which are thought to be associated with CHD. Cigarette smoking results in decreased blood flow to the heart and increased blood pressure and heart rate (US Department of Health and Human Services 1994). Smoking damages and impairs regeneration of the inner lining of blood vessels (endothelium). Damaged blood vessels increase the risk of developing arterial plaques (atherosclerosis) which consequentially increases the risk of developing blood clots which can lead to myocardial infarct (US Department of Health and Human Services). Cigarette smoking causes inflammation in the circulatory system and also impairs vasodilation of blood vessels, both of which increase the risk for negative cardiac events (US Department of Health and Human Services). Smoking can also cause platelets in the blood to become sticky, and this is thought to increase the likelihood of clot formation (US Department of Health and Human Services). Importantly, similar physiological changes have been demonstrated in persons exposed to secondhand smoke (Barnoya and Glantz 2005).

Quitting smoking will reduce the risks of developing CHD (US Department of Health and Human Services). The risk for CHD and CHD-related mortality drops in half after approximately 1 year of smoking cessation. After 10 years of smoking cessation, the risk for developing CHD-related issues is essentially equivalent to that of a nonsmoker (US Department of Health and Human Services). Smoking cessation at any age is also clearly associated with increased longevity (Taylor et al. 2002).

heart disease. *Regulatory Toxicology and Pharmacology*, 101, 172–186.

Taylor, D. H., Hasselblad, V., Henley, J., Thun, M. J., & Sloan, F. A. (2002). Benefits of smoking cessation for longevity. *American Journal of Public Health*, 92(6), 990–996.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (1994). *How tobacco smoke causes disease: The biology and behavioral basis for smoking-attributable disease: A report of the surgeon general*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Office on Smoking and Health.

Cross-References

- ▶ American Heart Association
- ▶ Atherosclerosis
- ▶ Cardiac Rehabilitation
- ▶ Coronary Heart Disease
- ▶ Ex-Smokers
- ▶ Heart Disease
- ▶ Heart Failure
- ▶ Inflammation
- ▶ Secondhand Smoke
- ▶ Smoking and Health
- ▶ Smoking Behavior
- ▶ Smoking Cessation
- ▶ Tobacco Cessation
- ▶ Tobacco Use

References and Further Readings

- Barnoya, J., & Glantz, S. A. (2005). Cardiovascular effects of secondhand smoke: Nearly as large as smoking. *Circulation*, 111, 2684–2698.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2008). Annual smoking-attributable mortality, years of potential life lost, and productivity losses—United States, 2000–2004. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 57(45), 1226–1228. Accessed 7 September 2011.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010). Vital signs: Current cigarette smoking among adults aged ≥18 years—United States, 2009. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 59(35), 1135–1140. Accessed 10 November 2019.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2017). Smoking and tobacco use: Data and statistics. https://www.cdc.gov/tobacco/data_statistics/fact_sheets/index.htm. Accessed 29 August 2019.
- Lee, P. N., Fry, J. S., & Thornton, A. J. (2018). Updating the evidence relating smoking bans to incidence of

Heart Disease and Stress

Peter A. Shapiro

Department of Psychiatry, Columbia University Medical Center, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Definition

Stress is a hard concept to define precisely, but like obscenity (to paraphrase Supreme Court Justice Potter Stewart (*Jacobellis vs. Ohio*. 378 U.S. 184, 197, 1964)), you (sometimes, but perhaps not always) know it when you feel it. For any given system, stress implies a load that challenges the homeostasis and integrity of the system. Stress may be intrinsic to the system, for example, the weight of a suspension bridge's roadway platform, or extrinsic to the system, such as the effect of hurricanes, earthquakes, or traffic jams loading the bridge. Both intrinsic and extrinsic stressors pose the risk of bridge collapse. Whether a stressor is intrinsic or extrinsic, the system must have a capacity to withstand it in order to maintain structural and/or functional integrity. Thus for a suspension bridge, to continue the example, this capacity is built into the tensile strength of its suspension cables and the mass and strength under compression of the towers and buttresses supporting the cables and transmitting force to the surrounding ground. In behavioral cardiology, concern about stress and

heart disease has focused on external psychological stressors, and related behaviors and affective and psychophysiological states, associated with the onset and progression of heart disease, especially coronary artery disease and sudden cardiac death.

Description

For lack of a precise, gold-standard, quantifiable measure of stress as it relates to heart disease, stress is usually defined by subjective measures of perceived stress, by characterization and counts of common life experiences generally regarded as stressful, unwanted, or at least as disturbing homeostasis (e.g., daily hassles, hostile interactions, job strain, job loss, loss of a loved one, divorce, interpersonal conflict, moving to a new city, marriage, promotion to new work responsibilities), by experimental manipulations or ecological measurement of short-term challenges, and by exposures to epidemiologically significant events such as natural disasters, missile attacks during wartime, and terrorism. It is evident that stress is often associated with negatively valenced affective states such as anxiety, depression, and anger, but can also be associated with more positively experienced acute excitement and life experiences.

Evidence for the association of stress with heart disease is overwhelming. Numerous studies demonstrate that earthquakes are associated with a subsequent increase over background rates in myocardial infarction and sudden death. Iraqi missile attacks on Israel during the Gulf War in the 1990s, the destruction of the World Trade Center in New York in 2001, and sports events such as World Cup Soccer matches have been consistently observed to be associated with increased rates of acute coronary syndromes and lethal ventricular arrhythmias, even in individuals not physically endangered by proximity to the events. Acute episodes of anger appear to be an especially potent trigger of acute coronary events in vulnerable patients. In INTERHEART, a very large case-control study of first myocardial infarction involving over 24,000 subjects in

52 countries, chronic exposure to stress, measured by self-reports of problems with family relationships, work, or financial strain over a 1-year period, was associated with increased rate of MI, with population-attributable risk estimated at 12–33%. A dose-response relationship was observed between the number of stressful life events reported and risk of myocardial infarction, with an odds ratio for MI risk of 1.5 for individuals reporting two or more stressful life events compared to those reporting no stressful life events. Thus, epidemiological evidence supports the role of emotional stress both over the long term, in processes contributing to the development of coronary atherosclerosis, and in the short term, as a trigger of acute coronary events in vulnerable patients. Perceived stress is heightened in people with low socioeconomic status, which may also be associated with numerous other behavioral and physiological cardiac risk factors. Conversely, stress effects on cardiovascular risk are moderated by the presence of good social support. Studies comparing heart disease risk in men and women have found that for women, the relationship of stress at work to coronary heart disease risk is less clear-cut than in men, but stress at home and in interpersonal relationships is associated with increased risk of coronary disease-related events.

Stressful experiences result in derangements of autonomic nervous system regulation of the cardiovascular system, with reduced vagal tone and relatively increased sympathetic tone. Heart rate and blood pressure increase in response to acute mental stress; the extent of this increase depends in part on the nature of the stressor and also in part on individual characteristics such as trait anxiety and hostility. Interruption of sympathetic inflow to the left side of the heart by left stellate ganglionectomy reduces stress-induced ischemia and ventricular arrhythmias. Stressful experience is associated with hemoconcentration and increased blood viscosity, which may increase the risk of thrombosis, especially as clotting factors and platelet activation also increase during acute stress. Stressful experiences alter hypothalamic-pituitary axis function, with lasting consequences, such that childhood trauma is

associated with elevated circulating levels of corticotrophin-releasing factor in adulthood, and stress in adulthood leads to hypercortisolemia. Endothelial dysfunction and paradoxical vasoconstriction during acute mental stress are observed in atherosclerotic coronary artery segments. During mental stress, increased heart rate and blood pressure along with coronary vasoconstriction may result in myocardial ischemia, which may be manifest as ST segment changes in the electrocardiogram, reduced left ventricular ejection fraction and regional wall motion abnormalities; stress-induced impairment of left ventricular function is associated with an increase in the risk of recurrent coronary events and survival. Yet, although mental stress-induced ischemia occurs primarily in individuals with exercise-induced ischemia, it is notable that mental stress-induced myocardial ischemia is frequently asymptomatic, and occurs at a level of increased heart rate and blood pressure less than that required to achieve ischemia during exercise. Acute mental stress also induces an inflammatory response, with elevated levels of inflammatory cytokines IL-6 and TNF-alpha, which can destabilize atherosclerotic plaque and promote plaque rupture or superimposed thrombosis. The extent to which each of these mechanisms mediates the effect of stress on heart disease risk is unknown.

Sudden emotional stress can also lead to acute cardiac events in patients who do not have coronary artery disease. Takotsubo cardiomyopathy is a rare syndrome characterized by transient left ventricular dysfunction with apical ballooning and acute heart failure in response to emotional shocks, such as surprise parties or receiving unexpected bad news. The syndrome has been attributed to rapidly increasing sympathetic tone and catecholamine levels in response to the psychological stressor.

Studies of the effects of interventions to reduce stressful experience or improve resilience in managing stress on heart disease outcomes have had decidedly mixed results. Behavioral or cognitive behavioral stress management treatment groups to reduce angry responding and time urgency reduce the incidence of recurrent MI. Inclusion of "stress management" in cardiac rehabilitation programs

for post-MI patients is associated with reduced recurrent cardiac events and reduced mortality, but individualized life stress monitoring and problem-solving interventions for post-MI patients resulted in no benefit in men and increased recurrent cardiac events in women in the Montreal Heart Attack Readjustment Trial (M-HART). Cognitive behavior therapy aimed at bolstering social support also had a negative effect on recurrent cardiac events in women in the ENRICH trial. Overall, however, exercise and stress management programs appear to reduce recurrent cardiac events, improve subjective well-being, and may reduce hemodynamic and other physiological responses to stress.

Cross-References

- [Coronary Artery Disease](#)
- [Social Support](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Further Reading

- Albus, C. (2010). Psychological and social factors in coronary heart disease. *Annals of Medicine*, 42, 487–494.
- Dimsdale, J. E. (2008). Psychological stress and cardiovascular disease. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 51, 1237–1246.
- Kent, L. K., & Shapiro, P. A. (2009). Depression and related psychological factors in heart disease. *Harvard Review of Psychiatry*, 17, 377–388.
- Leeka, J., Schwartz, B. G., & Kloner, R. A. (2010). Sporting events affect spectators' cardiovascular mortality: It is not just a game. *American Journal of Medicine*, 123, 972–977.
- Low, C. A., Thurston, R. C., & Matthews, K. A. (2010). Psychosocial factors in the development of heart disease in women: Current research and future directions. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 72, 842–854.
- Rozanski, A., Blumenthal, J. A., Davidson, K. W., Saab, P. G., & Kubzansky, L. (2005). The epidemiology, pathophysiology, and management of psychosocial risk factors in cardiac practice. The emerging field of behavioral cardiology. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 45, 637–651.
- Shapiro, P. A. (2011). Heart disease. In J. L. Levenson (Ed.), *Textbook of psychosomatic medicine* (2nd ed., pp. 407–440). Washington, DC: APPI.
- Steptoe, A., & Brydon, L. (2009). Emotional triggering of cardiac events. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 33, 63–70.

Heart Disease and Type A Behavior

Yoichi Chida

Faculty of Human Happiness Office 4, Happy Science University 4F, Chosei-mura, Chosei-gun, Japan

Department of Medical Science, Happy Science Clinic, Kawasaki City, Japan

Definition

A comprehensive meta-analysis of prospective studies failed to show an association between Type A behavior pattern (TABP) and coronary heart disease (CHD) (Myrtek 2001), while another meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials has recently suggested that TABP has strong effects on deteriorating depression in CHD patients (Whalley et al. 2011). However, the previous meta-analytic investigation on prospective studies showed that anger and hostility, one of the key dimensions of TABP, are significantly associated with not only increased CHD events in initially healthy populations but also poor prognosis in the patients with existing CHD (Chida and Steptoe 2009), suggesting that clinical trials focusing on anger and hostility in CHD interventions are necessary for the more effective prevention and treatment of CHD.

Description

Type A behavior pattern (TABP) was first noted by two American cardiologist, Meyer Friedman and Ray Rosenman in 1959 (Friedman and Rosenman 1959). They demonstrated that a group of 83 men, mainly executive, had seven times the risk of coronary heart disease (CHD) when compared with that in the other two groups of 83 men from unions and accounting firms and 46 unemployed, blind men. The TABP has been defined in various ways by its leading commentators, not always totally overlapping in nature or theme, but maintaining a consistent conceptual

thread across definitions. Rosenman's (1990) definition, clearly the most comprehensive in the recent literature, sets the current standard as follows: an action-emotion complex involving behavioral predispositions such as ambitiousness, aggressiveness, competitiveness and impatience; specific behaviors such as muscle tenseness, alertness, rapid and emphatic vocal stylistics, and accelerated pace of activities; and emotional responses such as irritation, hostility, and increased potential for anger. Over time, together with input from psychologists, they refined the notion of TABP with an increasing focus on the elements of aggressiveness and easily aroused annoyance or hostility (Rosenman 1978). Persons not showing these characteristics are labeled Type B behavior pattern. Data published in 1974 and 1976 from the Western Collaborative Group Study containing approximately 3,000 middle-aged men, exhibited a relative risk of 1.8 for nonfatal myocardial infarction (MI) or angina over 4 years in those were TABP, and a relative risk of 1.9 for fatal CHD, nonfatal MI, or angina over 8.5 years in those who were TABP (Jenkins et al. 1974; Rosenman et al. 1976). Nevertheless, as time passed, these original findings were not supported by an increasing number of subsequent studies (Brotman et al. 2007; Everson-Rose and Lewis 2005). More comprehensively, a meta-analysis of prospective studies between 1966 and 1998 failed to show an association between TABP and CHD (Myrtek 2001), and since then there has been no evidence showing such an association. Furthermore, another meta-analysis on randomized controlled trials in CHD patients has recently reported that there was no significant evidence that TABP-treating intervention reduced total deaths, risk of revascularization, or nonfatal infarction (Whalley et al. 2011). Its meta-regression analyses, however, revealed that TABP-treating intervention had stronger effects on depression than other interventions reducing stress, anxiety, depression, and improved disease adjustment.

Some researchers, therefore, changed their focus to investigate whether anger, hostility and related constructs, one of the key dimensions of TABP, would be more closely linked to the

development of CHD. Hostility is typically described as a negative attitude or cognitive trait directed toward others, anger as an emotional state that consists of feelings that vary in intensity from mild irritation or annoyance to intense fury or rage, and aggressiveness as a verbal or physical behavioral pattern manifest in yelling, intimidation, or physical assaults. These constructs, these terms often are used interchangeably and their interrelationship remains poorly delineated (Martin et al. 2000; Schulman and Stromberg 2007). Over the past 25 years, the body of research investigating associations between anger and hostility and CHD development and progression has grown. The previous meta-analytic investigation on prospective studies showed that anger and hostility are significantly associated not only with increased CHD events in initially healthy populations but also poor prognosis in the patients with existing CHD (Chida and Steptoe 2009). The harmful effects of anger and hostility were slightly greater in the CHD patients than the healthy population studies, making it possible that frequent anger episodes related to trait anger and hostility trait might accelerate recurrence of CHD. It is also interesting that the harmful effects of anger and hostility on CHD events in the healthy populations was greater in men than women, suggesting that men are more responsive to anger and hostility factors in relation to CHD. In line with this sex difference, another meta-analysis (Chida and Hamer 2008) showed that anger and hostility and related constructs were more strongly associated with cardiovascular responses to psychological stressors in men than women, suggesting that the accumulation of greater stress responses in daily life might have pathophysiological significance for CHD in men.

If anger and hostility do influence CHD risk, effects might be primarily mediated via behavioral pathways, with anger and hostility promoting high-risk behaviors such as poor diet, less physical activity, smoking, poor sleep, or lower treatment adherence (Scherwitz et al. 1992; Shin et al. 2005; Siegler et al. 1992). Indeed, the apparently harmful effects of anger and hostility on

CHD were no longer significant in either the healthy or disease populations after fully controlling for behavioral covariates such as smoking, physical activity or body mass index, and socioeconomic status (Chida and Steptoe 2009). However, other unmeasured factors cannot rule out that could potentially have confounded the associations, and direct physiological pathways might also contribute. Anger and hostility may alter susceptibility to CHD via autonomic nervous dysregulation (Chida and Hamer 2008; Thomas et al. 2004; Vella and Friedman 2007), increases in inflammatory and coagulation factors such as interleukin-6, C-reactive protein, and fibrinogen (Markovitz 1998; Stewart et al. 2008), and higher cortisol levels (Steptoe et al. 2000). Furthermore, a number of studies have demonstrated that anger and cynical hostility predict the progression of subclinical atherosclerosis (Matthews et al. 1998; Raikonen et al. 2004), suggesting that the associations between anger/hostility and CHD may be due to the impact of anger and hostility on the development of coronary atherosclerosis, although acute trigger effects may also contribute (Dimsdale 2008; Mittleman et al. 1995; Möller et al. 1999).

Taken together, clinical trials focusing on anger and hostility in CHD interventions are necessary for the more effective prevention and treatment of CHD.

Cross-References

- [Aerobic Exercise](#)
- [Anger, Measurement](#)
- [Coronary Event](#)
- [Coronary Heart Disease](#)
- [Hostility, Measurement of](#)

References and Further Reading

- Brotman, D. J., Golden, S. H., & Wittstein, I. S. (2007). The cardiovascular toll of stress. *Lancet*, 370, 1089–1100.
- Chida, Y., & Hamer, M. (2008). Chronic psychosocial factors and acute physiological responses to

- laboratory-induced stress in healthy populations: A quantitative review of 30 years of investigations. *Psychological Bulletin*, 134, 829–885.
- Chida, Y., & Steptoe, A. (2009). The association of anger and hostility with future coronary heart disease: A meta-analytic review of prospective evidence. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 53, 936–946.
- Dimsdale, J. E. (2008). Psychological stress and cardiovascular disease. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 51, 1237–1246.
- Everson-Rose, S. A., & Lewis, T. T. (2005). Psychosocial factors and cardiovascular disease. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 26, 469–500.
- Friedman, M., & Rosenman, R. H. (1959). Association of specific overt behavior pattern with blood and cardiovascular findings: Blood cholesterol level, blood clotting time, incidence of arcus senilis, and clinical coronary artery disease. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 169, 1286–1296.
- Jenkins, C. D., Rosenman, R. H., & Zyanski, S. J. (1974). Prediction of clinical coronary heart disease by a test of the coronary-prone behaviour pattern. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 290, 1271–1275.
- Markovitz, J. H. (1998). Hostility is associated with increased platelet activation in coronary heart disease. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 60, 586–591.
- Martin, R., Watson, D., & Wan, C. K. (2000). A three-factor model of trait anger: Dimensions of affect, behavior, and cognition. *Journal of Personality*, 68, 869–897.
- Matthews, K. A., Owens, J. F., Kuller, L. H., Sutton-Tyrrell, K., & Jansen-McWilliams, L. (1998). Are hostility and anxiety associated with carotid atherosclerosis in healthy postmenopausal women? *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 60, 633–638.
- Mittleman, M. A., Maclure, M., Sherwood, J. B., Mulry, R. P., Tofiger, G. H., Jacobs, S. C., Friedman, R., Benson, H., & Muller, J. E. (1995). Triggering of acute myocardial-infarction onset by episodes of anger. *Circulation*, 282, 1720–1725.
- Möller, J., Hallqvist, J., Diderichsen, F., Theorell, T., Reuterwall, C., & Ahlbom, A. (1999). Do episodes of anger trigger myocardial infarction? A case-crossover analysis in the Stockholm Heart Epidemiology Program (SHEEP). *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 61, 842–849.
- Myrtek, M. (2001). Meta-analyses of prospective studies on coronary heart disease, type A personality, and hostility. *International Journal of Cardiology*, 79, 245–251.
- Raikkonen, K., Matthews, K. A., Sutton-Tyrrell, K., & Kuller, L. H. (2004). Trait anger and the metabolic syndrome predict progression of carotid atherosclerosis in healthy middle-aged women. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 66, 903–908.
- Rosenman, R. H. (1978). The interview method of assessment of the coronary-prone behaviors in the Western Collaborative Group Study. In T. M. Dembroski, S. M. Weiss, J. L. Shields, et al. (Eds.), *Coronary prone behavior* (pp. 55–69). New York: Springer-Verlag.
- Rosenman, R. H. (1990). Type A behavior pattern: A personal overview. *Journal of Social Behavior and Personality*, 5, 1–24.
- Rosenman, R. H., Brand, R. J., Sholtz, R. I., & Friedman, M. (1976). Multivariate prediction of coronary heart disease during 8.5 year follow-up in the Western Collaborative Group Study. *American Journal of Cardiology*, 37, 903–909.
- Scherwitz, L. W., Perkins, L. L., Chesney, M. A., Hughes, G. H., Sidney, S., & Manolio, T. A. (1992). Hostility and health behaviors in young adults – The CARDIA study. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 136, 136–145.
- Schulman, J. K., & Stromberg, S. (2007). On the value of doing nothing. *Cardiology in Review*, 15, 123–132.
- Shin, C., Kim, J. Y., Yi, H., Lee, H. J., Lee, J. B., & Shin, K. (2005). Relationship between trait anger and sleep disturbances in middle-aged men and women. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 58, 183–189.
- Siegler, I. C., Peterson, B. L., Barefoot, J. C., & Williams, R. B. (1992). Hostility during late adolescence predicts coronary risk factors at mid-life. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 136, 146–154.
- Steptoe, A., Cropley, M., Griffith, J., & Kirschbaum, C. (2000). Job strain and anger expression predict early morning elevation in salivary cortisol. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 62, 286–292.
- Stewart, J. C., Janicki-Deverts, D., Muldoon, M. F., & Kamarch, T. W. (2008). Depressive symptoms moderate the influence of hostility on serum interleukin-6 and C-reactive protein. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 70, 197–204.
- Thomas, K. S., Nelesen, R. A., & Dimsdale, J. E. (2004). Relationships between hostility, anger expression, and blood pressure dipping in an ethnically diverse sample. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 66, 298–304.
- Vella, E. J., & Friedman, B. H. (2007). Autonomic characteristics of defensive hostility: Reactivity and recovery to active and passive stressors. *International Journal of Psychophysiology*, 66, 95–101.
- Whalley, B., Rees, K., Davies, P., Bennett, P., Ebrahim, S., Liu, Z., West, R., Moxham, T., Thompson, D. R., & Taylor, R. S. (2011). Psychological interventions for coronary heart disease. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 8, CD002902.

Heart Failure

Valerie Sabol

School of Nursing, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

Heart failure with preserved ejection fraction (HFpEF); Heart failure with reduced ejection fraction (HFrEF)

Definition

Heart failure (HF) is a clinical syndrome caused by a progressive deterioration of heart structure or function that may impair the ability of the ventricle(s) to fill with or eject blood. It is characterized by dyspnea on exertion, which may progress to dyspnea at rest; orthopnea; peripheral and/or pulmonary edema; worsening fatigue; tachycardia; presence of third or fourth heart sound; loss of appetite, and in some patients with advanced disease, hepatomegaly.

While dyspnea can be a manifestation of other diagnoses, it is a very sensitive clinical feature of HF. Since individual experiences of these clinical indicators may vary, it is important to characterize the degree of impairment using the standardized New York Heart Association (NYHA) Functional Classification system, which places patients in one of four categories (i.e., how much an individual is limited during physical activity from the spectrum of normal breathing to varying degrees of shortness of breath and/or angina). In addition, the American College of Cardiology (ACC) and the American Heart Association Guidelines (AHA) outline four stages of heart failure that are useful for organizing the prevention, diagnosis, management, and prognosis for patients with heart failure; only stages C and D are applicable to the NYHA functional classification system.

Diagnosis and management of heart failure begins with a clinical history and physical

examination, and confirmatory evidence of cardiac dysfunction on an echocardiogram. Heart failure may be due to either systolic or diastolic dysfunction of the left ventricle. When the left ventricle fails to fill or empty properly, pressure inside the ventricle increases and leads to congestion in the pulmonary vascular system, where many of the aforementioned clinical symptoms manifest. Failure of the right ventricle to pump adequately is most commonly caused by progressive left-ventricular failure, although it can also be caused by pulmonary disease and primary pulmonary hypertension.

Deterioration of left ventricular cardiac contractility results in a reduced ejection fraction (HFrEF) and is also referred to as systolic dysfunction/failure. The degree of dysfunction/failure is estimated by measuring ejection fraction (EF) or the percentage of the left ventricular end-diastolic volume (LVEDV) that is ejected from the ventricle in one cycle. For example, if the LVEDV is 100 mL and the stroke volume is 30 mL, the EF is 30%. Normal EF is 50–70%; failure is an EF of <40%. HF management includes lifestyle modification, pharmacologic therapy, device therapy (if indicated), cardiac rehabilitation, and preventive care.

Heart failure with preserved ejection fraction (HFpEF) is also known as diastolic dysfunction/failure and is more common among older adults. Notably in HFpEF, there is also evidence of diastolic dysfunction involving one or both ventricles. Although heart contractility is normal or even increased (e.g., normal or even high ejection fractions), diastolic dysfunction is caused by impaired relaxation and/or filling (e.g., fast heart rate, stiff or poorly compliant ventricle). Management of HFpEF are generally directed toward associated conditions (e.g., hypertension) and symptoms (e.g., edema).

Acute decompensated heart failure (ADHF) is a clinical syndrome of new or worsening symptoms of HF (e.g., usually over hours or days), which have progressed to a point at which immediate or emergency medical intervention and/or hospitalization is necessary. Major causes of ADHF include coronary artery disease, myocardial ischemia/infarction,

myocarditis, acute valve syndromes, progressive valve disease, cardiomyopathic states, and poorly controlled hypertension.

While initial treatment may be similar for HFrEF and HFpEF, it is important to determine the underlying type of HF as subsequent approaches to treatment and maintenance therapy varies. Aggressive management of known risk factors such as hypertension, diabetes, obesity, alcohol abuse, and tobacco use are the best strategies to prevent functional decline. Additionally, patients with a family history of coronary disease, idiopathic cardiomyopathies, and those with history of rheumatic fever should be more closely monitored as they age. Ultimate goals of therapy include reducing symptoms, improving quality-of-life and functional status, and reducing hospitalization and mortality.

Cross-References

- [Congestive Heart Failure](#)
- [Dyspnea](#)
- [Heart](#)
- [Systolic Blood Pressure \(SBP\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Heart Failure Society of America, Lindenfeld, J., Albert, N. M., et al. (2010). HFSA 2010 Comprehensive heart failure practice guideline. *Journal of Cardiac Failure*, 16(6), e1.
- Nieminen, M. S., Böhm, M., Cowie, M. R., et al. (2005). Executive summary of the guidelines on the diagnosis and treatment of acute heart failure: The task force on acute heart failure of the European Society of Cardiology. *European Heart Journal*, 26(4), 384.
- Yancy, C. W., Jessup, M., Bozkurt, B., et al. (2013). ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of heart failure (2013): Executive summary: A report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association task force on practice guidelines. *Circulation*, 128(16), 1810.
- Yancy, C. W., Jessup, M., et al. (2016). Focused update on new pharmacological therapy for heart failure: An update of the 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of heart failure: A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association task force on clinical practice guidelines and the Heart Failure Society of America. *Circulation*, 134(13), e282.

Heart Failure with Preserved Ejection Fraction (HFpEF)

- [Heart Failure](#)

Heart Failure with Reduced Ejection Fraction (HFrEF)

- [Heart Failure](#)

Heart Patients

- [Williams LifeSkills Program](#)

Heart Rate

Annie T. Ginty
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The
University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Pulse rate](#)

Definition

Heart rate is the number of beats of the heart per unit of time. Typically, it is measured in beats per minute (bpm). Heart rate is based on the time interval between one R wave and the next. The R wave is the onset of ventricular depolarization. For further details, see Andreassi (2006).

Cross-References

- [Psychophysiology: Theory and Methods](#)

References and Further Reading

Andreassi, J. L. (2006). *Psychophysiology: Human behavior and physiological response*. Hillsdale: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Heart Rate Variability

Julian F. Thayer

Department of Psychology, The Ohio State University, Columbus, OH, USA

Synonyms

[Autonomic](#); [Parasympathetic](#); [Sympathetic](#)

Definition

Like many organs in the body, the heart is dually innervated. Although a wide range of physiologic factors determine cardiac functions such as heart rate (HR), the autonomic nervous system (ANS) is the most prominent. Resting cardiac autonomic balance favors energy conservation by way of parasympathetic dominance over sympathetic influences. In addition, the HR time series is characterized by beat-to-beat variability over a wide range, which also implicates vagal dominance as the sympathetic influence on the heart is too slow to produce beat-to-beat changes. There is an increasing interest in the study of this heart rate variability (HRV) among researchers from diverse fields. Low HRV is associated with increased risk of all-cause mortality and has been proposed as a marker for disease. In the following, I will briefly describe the nature and assessment of HRV.

Heart Rate Variability

The basic data for the calculation of all the measures of HRV is the sequence of time intervals between heart beats. This interbeat interval time series is used to calculate the variability in the timing of the heart beat. Relative sympathetic increases cause the time between heart beats (the interbeat interval) to become shorter and relative parasympathetic

increases cause the interbeat interval to become longer. The parasympathetic influences are pervasive over the frequency range of the heart rate power spectrum whereas the sympathetic influences “roll-off” at about 0.15 Hz. Therefore high-frequency HRV represents primarily parasympathetic influences with lower frequencies (below about 0.15 Hz) having a mixture of sympathetic and parasympathetic autonomic influences. The differential effects of the ANS on the sinoatrial node, and thus the timing of the heart beats, are due to the differential effects of the neurotransmitters for the sympathetic (noradrenaline) and parasympathetic (acetylcholine) nervous systems. The sympathetic effects are slow, on the timescale of seconds, whereas the parasympathetic effects are fast, on the timescale of milliseconds. Therefore the parasympathetic influences are the only ones capable of producing rapid changes in the beat-to-beat timing of the heart.

Measures of HRV

A variety of measures have been used to operationalize HRV. Long-term measures like the standard deviation of all interbeat intervals in 24 h, short-term measures like the standard deviation of 5 min intervals and beat-to-beat measures like the root mean square of successive RR differences (RMSSD) have all been used. Power spectral analysis of interbeat interval time series is frequently used to quantify HRV. The power spectrum of short-term time series contains two major components, a high-frequency (0.15–0.40 Hz) and low-frequency (0.01–0.15 Hz) component reflecting cardiac vagal influences and a mixture of vagal and sympathetic influences, respectively. RMSSD and the high-frequency component of the power spectrum are closely related and reflect vagal cardiac influence. More recently, measures derived from nonlinear dynamics have been used to describe aspects of HRV. One such measure is approximate entropy (ApEn). It quantifies the complexity or irregularity of time series data.

Cross-References

► [Autonomic Balance](#)

References and Readings

- Ahern, G. L., Sollers, J. J., Lane, R. D., Labiner, D. M., Herring, A. M., Weinand, M. E., et al. (2001). Heart rate and heart rate variability changes in the intracarotid sodium amobarbital (ISA) test. *Epilepsia*, 42, 912–921.
- Benarroch, E. E. (1997). The central autonomic network. In P. A. Low (Ed.), *Clinical autonomic disorders* (2nd ed., pp. 17–23). Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven.
- Jose, A. D., & Collison, D. (1970). The normal range and determinants of the intrinsic heart rate in man. *Cardio-vascular Research*, 4, 160–167.
- Lane, R. D., McRae, K., Reiman, E. M., Chen, K., Ahern, G. L., & Thayer, J. F. (2009). Neural correlates of heart rate variability during emotion. *NeuroImage*, 44, 213–222.
- Levy, M. N. (1997). Neural control of cardiac function. *Baillière's Clinical Neurology*, 6, 227–244.
- Pagani, M., Lombardi, F., Guzzetti, S., Rimoldi, O., Furlan, R., Pizzinelli, P., et al. (1986). Power spectral analysis of heart rate and arterial pressure variabilities as a marker of sympathovagal interaction in man and conscious dog. *Circulation Research*, 59, 178–193.
- Pincus, S. M. (2001). Assessing serial irregularity and its implications for health. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 954, 245–267.
- Roach, D., Wilson, W., Ritchie, D., & Sheldon, R. (2004). Dissection of long-range heart rate variability. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 43, 2271–2277.
- Saul, J. P. (1990). Beat-to-beat variations of heart rate reflect modulation of cardiac autonomic outflow. *News in Physiological Sciences*, 5, 32–37.
- Stein, P. K., & Kleiger, R. E. (1999). Insights from the study of heart rate variability. *Annual Review of Medicine*, 50, 249–261.
- Task Force of the European Society of Cardiology and the North American Society of Pacing and Electrophysiology. (1996). Heart rate variability: Standards of measurement, physiological interpretation, and clinical use. *Circulation*, 93, 1043–1065.
- Thayer, J. F., & Brosschot, J. F. (2005). Psychosomatics and psychopathology: Looking up and down from the brain. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 30, 1050–1058.
- Thayer, J. F., & Lane, R. D. (2000). A model of neurovisceral integration in emotion regulation and dysregulation. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 61, 201–216.
- Thayer, J. F., & Lane, R. D. (2007). The role of vagal function in the risk for cardiovascular disease and mortality. *Biological Psychology*, 74, 224–242.
- Thayer, J. F., Hansen, A. L., & Johnsen, B. H. (2010). The non-invasive assessment of autonomic influences on the heart using impedance cardiography and heart rate variability. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications*. New York: Springer.

Heart Rate Variability (HRV)

- [Respiratory Sinus Arrhythmia](#)

Heavy Episodic Drinking

- [Binge Drinking](#)

Height

- [Body Mass Index](#)

Helplessness

- [External Locus of Control](#)
- [Hopelessness](#)
- [Passive Coping Strategies](#)

Hematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation

Yoshinobu Kanda

Division of Hematology, Jichi Medical University
Saitama Medical Center, Omiya-ku, Saitama,
Japan

Description

In general, hematological malignancies show good response to antineoplastic agents. However, less than half of patients with hematological malignancies can be cured with chemotherapy alone. Since some antineoplastic agents show linear dose-response relationship, increasing the dose of chemotherapy may increase the antineoplastic effects, but it is precluded by the adverse effects of antineoplastic agents, so-called dose-limiting toxicities. The dose-limiting toxicity of

many antineoplastic agents is myelosuppression. Therefore, hematopoietic stem cell transplantation has been investigated to allow high-dose chemotherapy over the maximum tolerated dose by supporting the hematopoietic system with the infusion of hematopoietic stem cells from a donor (allogeneic transplantation) or the patients themselves (autologous transplantation). In addition to the effect of the high-dose chemotherapy, an immunological antineoplastic effect of donor cells, so-called graft-versus-leukemia/lymphoma effect, can be harnessed after allogeneic transplantation. Currently, the application of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation is extended to solid tumors and nonmalignant hematological disorders such as aplastic anemia.

Previously, bone marrow was the sole source of hematopoietic stem cells. However, in the 1990s, the peripheral blood stem cells, which were mobilized by the use of granulocyte-colony stimulating factor alone or in combination with chemotherapy in autologous transplantation, became widely used as a source of hematopoietic stem cells, since the hematopoietic recovery is faster after peripheral blood stem cell transplantation than that after bone marrow transplantation. In addition, cord blood cells are currently the third source of hematopoietic stem cells. A major drawback of cord blood stem cell transplantation is the longer duration between transplantation and hematopoietic recovery. However, cord blood units are readily accessible, since they are already frozen in cord blood banks and there is no need for time-consuming donor coordination.

The procedure of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation starts with a conditioning regimen using high-dose chemotherapy with or without total body irradiation. The major object of the conditioning regimen is to eradicate malignant cells from the recipient. However, in allogeneic transplantation, conditioning regimens are also required to suppress host immune system to prevent rejection of donor hematopoietic cells. The latter is the sole object of the conditioning regimen in allogeneic transplantation for aplastic anemia. After the conditioning regimen, hematopoietic stem cells are infused to the recipients intravenously. In general, hematopoietic recovery

is observed within 2–4 weeks. However, supportive managements to prevent or treat transplant-related complications are required at least several months (or much longer in allogeneic transplantation) after transplantation.

The major complications after allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation include toxicities directly due to the conditioning regimen, infection, and graft-versus-host disease (GVHD). Increasing the dose of chemotherapy or total body irradiation over the maximum tolerated dose may induce toxicities that are not observed after standard-dose chemotherapy. For example, a fatal cardiac toxicity may develop after high-dose cyclophosphamide as a conditioning regimen. To extend the application of allogeneic transplantation to the elderly or clinically infirm patients who cannot tolerate these conditioning regimens, reduced-intensity or non-myeloablative stem cell transplantation has been investigated. Clinical studies of reduced-intensity or non-myeloablative transplantation have shown that the incidence of transplant-related mortality was decreased, but the increase in relapse rate was the problem.

Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation recipients experience various infections. In the early phase after transplantation (day 0 to day 30), neutropenia is the primary immunologic defect. In addition, mucosal damage caused by the conditioning regimen adds the risk of infection. Floras of the skin, gastrointestinal tract, and mouth are the primary causes of infection during this phase. The second phase (day 30 to day 100), infectious complications due to *Cytomegalovirus*, *Aspergillus*, and *Pneumocystis jirovecii* are common due to the impaired cellular immunity. The development of acute or chronic GVHD is associated with severely impaired cellular immunity. In the later phase (after day 100), impaired cellular and humoral immunity is the major risk factor for infectious complications, especially in allogeneic transplant recipients with chronic GVHD. The causative organisms of infectious complications in this phase include *Cytomegalovirus*, Varicella-zoster virus, Epstein-Barr virus, *Aspergillus*, and *Pneumocystis jirovecii*.

GVHD is an immunological reaction of the donor immunological cells targeting host

antigens. Clinical manifestations of acute GVHD include erythroderma, diarrhea, and jaundice. On the other hand, chronic GVHD resembles autoimmune disorders such as scleroderma, Sjögren's syndrome, primary biliary cirrhosis, bronchiolitis obliterans, and immune cytopenias. GVHD can be observed even after human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-matched transplantation, but both its incidence and severity are increased by the presence of HLA mismatch between the donor and the recipient. A combination of calcineurin inhibitors (cyclosporine or tacrolimus) and methotrexate is the mainstay of the pharmacological prevention of GVHD, whereas steroid is the first choice of the treatment of acute GVHD. The use of these immunosuppressive agents increases the risk of infectious complications.

In general, the incidence of transplant-related mortality is less than 5% after autologous transplantation, but it exceeds 10–20% after allogeneic transplantation, even from an HLA-matched donor. In addition, transplant-related complications, especially the development of chronic GVHD, affect the quality of life of survivors after allogeneic transplantation. Therefore, the indication of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation should be considered by balancing the risk and benefit obtained after transplantation. Many clinical trials have been performed to evaluate the indication of hematopoietic stem cell transplantation in a variety of hematological disorders. However, information is not yet sufficient to identify patients who will clearly benefit from undergoing hematopoietic stem cell transplantation.

Cross-References

► [Stem Cells](#)

References and Further Readings

Forman SJ, Negrin RS, Antin JH, Appelbaum FR (2016) Thomas' hematopoietic cell transplantation. 5th ed, Wiley-Blackwell. ISBN: 1118416007.

Hemodynamic

Jonathan Newman

Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Definition

Hemodynamics is a general term referring to the movement or flow of blood. More specifically, this term refers to the measurement of and general principles governing the flow of blood in the human body. Movement or flow of blood throughout the body is dependent upon many factors. Two of the most important of these factors are the pressure differences and resistances between different elements of the circulatory system, such as the cardiac chambers, large arteries, arterioles, veins, and venules. Along with the heart rate (HR), pressure and resistance are major determinants of the amount of circulatory blood flow. Measurement of certain hemodynamic parameters, such blood pressure (BP) and heart rate (HR), can be determined noninvasively. Resistance is a calculated parameter determined by flow and pressure. For example, systemic vascular resistance is equal to the cardiac output divided by mean arterial pressure. As will be described, cardiac output is determined by heart rate and stroke volume. These measures are important in understanding the pathophysiology of cardiovascular disease diagnosis and treatment. However, more detailed measures of cardiac structure, function, and intracardiac pressures are frequently necessary, and advanced measurement modalities are required.

Description

In the field of cardiology and cardiovascular medicine, hemodynamics are most commonly measured by two different modalities in the clinical setting: two-dimensional/Doppler echocardiography and cardiac catheterization. Each modality has limitations, and these two techniques are frequently used in concert. Importantly, absolute pressures can only be directly measured by

cardiac catheterization. In contrast, absolute pressure cannot be measured by echocardiography; only pressure differences can be measured.

Echocardiography measures: Cardiac ultrasound, or echocardiography, uses ultrasonic beams through tissue. M-mode and two-dimensional (2D) echocardiography are used for structural imaging, while Doppler echocardiography uses ultrasound to record the movement of blood, enabling the assessment of hemodynamics and cardiac physiology. Each tissue has different properties that influence the amount of ultrasound beam that is reflected back to the ultrasound machine, generating a very small electrical current that can then be integrated into a composite image of the structure. Doppler ultrasound measures the difference between the scatter of ultrasound by different tissues and the frequency of the transmitted ultrasound beam. Doppler echocardiography is especially useful for the hemodynamic measurement of blood flow across stenotic valves of the heart and for measuring the pressure differences between different chambers. Assessment of blood flow is approximated by measurement of cardiac stroke volume. Stroke volume, in turn, is measured by taking the product of the velocity-time-integral (VTI, measured by Doppler echocardiography) and the cross-sectional area (CSA, measured with 2D echocardiography) between certain chambers. Cardiac output is then determined by the product of stroke volume and heart rate. The change in pressure between two cardiac chambers, a useful principle in cardiac hemodynamics, is frequently assessed using a modified form of the Bernoulli equation, which is itself a derivation of basic principles of conservation of energy in closed systems.

Catheterization measures: During catheterization, a special type of catheter is introduced into either the internal jugular vein in the neck or a femoral vein in the leg. The catheter is advanced into different chambers of the right (venous) side of the heart, the side responsible for collecting and pumping deoxygenated blood from the systemic circulation into the lungs. Typically, these catheters have an inflatable balloon built into the catheter. Inflation of the balloon in a pulmonary artery allows for the measurement of the pulmonary capillary “wedge” pressure (PCWP), which is, in

most circumstances, a clinically useful approximation of intravascular fluid balance. To measure pressures in the left (arterial) side of the heart, a similar type of catheter and wire system is introduced into the right femoral artery and advanced retrograde up to and across the aortic valve into the left ventricle. Routine hemodynamic pressure measurements obtained from the right side include right atrial pressure, right ventricular pressure, pulmonary artery pressure, and PCWP. Left-sided pressure measurements include measurement of aortic pressure and left ventricular pressure. Cardiac output can be measured directly with cardiac catheterization using the thermodilution or Fick method. In the thermodilution method, cold saline is injected into the proximal port of the pulmonary artery catheter and mixes with body temperature blood in the right ventricle. As blood flows past the distal port, a small sensor records the change in temperature over time. The area under this curve is proportional to the flow in the pulmonary artery which, assuming there is no intracardiac shunt, is proportional to cardiac output. Stroke volume is determined by dividing this measured cardiac output by the heart rate. The Fick method of cardiac output uses measures of oxygen consumption measured by either exhaled breath analysis or determined by an age, sex, height, and weight specific nomogram and is dependent on hemoglobin and levels of arterial oxygen saturation.

References and Readings

- Kern, M. J., Feldman, T., & Bitar, S. (2003). Hemodynamic data. In M. J. Kern (Ed.), *The cardiac catheterization handbook* (4th ed., pp. 126–216). St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book.
- Otto, C. M., & Pearlman, A. S. (Eds.). (1995). *Textbook of clinical echocardiography*. Philadelphia: WB Saunders.

Hemodynamic Response/Reactivity

► Blood Pressure Reactivity or Responses

Hemodynamic Stress Responses

- [Blood Pressure Reactivity or Responses](#)

Hemoglobin A1c

- [Glycosylated Hemoglobin](#)
- [HbA1c](#)

Hemostasis

- [Coagulation of Blood](#)

Hepatitis C and Cognitive Functioning

Supria K. Gill^{1,3}, Michael I. Demidenko^{1,4} and Travis I. Lovejoy^{1,2}

¹VA Portland Health Care System, Portland, OR, USA

²Department of Psychiatry and School of Public Health, Oregon Health and Science University, Portland, OR, USA

³Palo Alto University, Palo Alto, CA, USA

⁴Oregon Health and Science University, Portland, OR, USA

Synonyms

[Cirrhosis of the liver](#); [Liver disease](#); [Viral hepatitis](#)

Definition

Hepatitis is the inflammation of the liver. The hepatitis C virus (HCV) infects and damages the liver, affecting the organ's ability to metabolize, detoxify, and help with digestion functions. The infection can lead to acute and chronic hepatitis, cirrhosis,

hepatocellular carcinoma, neurocognitive impairment, and potential decline in daily functioning. An estimated 3.2 million people are infected with HCV in the United States, with approximately 30,000 new infections reported each year.

Description

Etiology

HCV is spread when the blood of an infected host enters the body of a non-infected person. Most commonly this occurs through sharing contaminated intravenous drug paraphernalia and blood transfusions or organ transplants that took place before 1992. HCV replicates in the peripheral blood mononuclear cells and bone marrow. The immune system is composed of white bloods cells that help fight infection. Macrophages are *mobile* white blood cells that can penetrate the central nervous system (CNS). Although the links of the infectious mechanisms and cognitive dysfunction in HCV remain unclear, a theory explaining the etiology of cognitive disorders in the context of HCV is known as the “Trojan Horse” theory. This theory posits that HCV attaches to macrophage cells to gain entry into the CNS. As a result, the virus may replicate within the cerebral white matter leading to inflammation and neuronal loss. HCV-infected individuals are at high risk for end-stage liver disease progression to cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). Furthermore, 10–40% of people living with HCV will eventually suffer from liver cirrhosis, which can lead to hepatic encephalopathy, resulting from liver failure and reduced ability of the body to filter toxins. Finally, individuals with HCV commonly report clinically significant fatigue, *brain fog*, depression, and other executive functioning deficits, all of which can manifest as neurocognitive impairment.

Epidemiology

Early reports of HCV were found in patients undergoing blood transfusions in the 1970s. The virus' genetic materials were not isolated and identified until the 1990s. Prior to this, HCV was referred to as non-A, non-B hepatitis. Early stages

of HCV infection are not characterized by identifiable symptoms of infection. HCV progression is often slow and insidious, yet eventually HCV results in physiologic and cognitive deficits. Neurologic and psychiatric disorders are found in up to 50% of those with HCV.

Diagnosis

It is estimated that 30% of HCV-infected individuals are diagnosed with neurocognitive impairment. An HCV diagnosis may be a direct pathway to neurocognitive impairment, independent of liver disease characteristics or common comorbid disorders such as substance use. Clinical risk factors include substance use and depression, which can impact cognition. Thus, it is important to assess for comorbid disorders as they may contribute to cognitive presentation. Neuropsychological assessments should be used to assess and diagnose neurocognitive impairment in individuals with HCV, and test selection should be completed with consideration of the pattern of impairment typically observed in this population. Neurocognitive impairments typically observed include motor skills, attention/working memory, learning, speed of information processing, executive functioning, and episodic memory. Neurocognitive impairments are associated with decline in everyday functioning including basic and instrumental activities of daily living.

Treatment

Direct-acting antiviral (DAA) therapy is recommended for treatment of HCV. Specific antiviral therapies are indicated secondary to the genotype of one's HCV infection and in consideration of the potential presence of liver cirrhosis. Newer combination DAA treatments are effective in treating most major genotypes of HCV, require only short-term treatment (typically 12 weeks), and are associated with cure rates from 94% to 99% for those infected with HCV genotype 1. There are also much fewer side effects reported with DAA treatment, with headaches and nausea cited only in a limited number of cases. Older HCV antiviral treatments including interferon and ribavirin may be more affordable and thus more widely available but are associated with

emergent and persistent neurocognitive decline in HCV. HCV-infected individuals would benefit from being closely monitored for neurocognitive symptoms and changes in daily functioning if taking these combination therapies. Higher cognitive reserve in HCV-infected individuals is shown to serve as a protective factor for neurocognitive impairments typically observed in HCV. With regard to treatment for neurocognitive functioning, cognitive rehabilitation approaches focused on restorative strategies may be useful approaches to mitigate the impact of HCV-associated neurocognitive disorders on daily functioning and quality of life.

Implications for Practice

Antiviral treatments for HCV are increasingly efficacious, and HCV-associated neurocognitive impairment can often be avoided when pharmacotherapies lead to sustained viral suppression. However, not all persons living with HCV will respond to antiretroviral treatments. Neurocognitive impairment associated with HCV can impair overall daily functioning. Thus, it is imperative to thoroughly assess HCV-infected individuals, particularly those in advanced stages of liver disease, for neurocognitive impairments. Cognitive rehabilitation with embedded compensatory strategies addressing the importance of structure and self-management may be beneficial when working with HCV-infected individuals and can facilitate improved functioning and quality of life.

Cross-References

- [Carcinoma](#)
- [Cirrhosis of the Liver](#)
- [Neurocognitive Assessment](#)
- [Neuropsychological Assessment](#)

References and Further Readings

- Catie, J. E., Letendra, S. L., Woods, S. P., Barakat, F., Perry, W., Cherner, M., Umlauf, A., Franklin, D., Heaton, R. K., Hassanein, T., & Grant, I. (2014).

- Persistent neurocognitive decline in a clinical sample of hepatitis C virus-infected persons receive interferon and ribavirin treatment. *Journal of Neurovirology*, 20, 561–570.
- Kohli, A., Shaffer, A., Sherman, A., & Kottlil, S. (2014). Treatment of hepatitis C: A systematic review. *JAMA*, 312(6), 631–640.
- McAndrews, M. P., Farcnik, K., Carlen, P., Damyanovich, A., Mrkonjic, M., Jones, S., & Heathcote, E. J. (2005). Prevalence and significance of neurocognitive dysfunction in hepatitis C in the absence of correlated risk factors. *Hepatology*, 41(4), 801–808. <https://doi.org/10.1002/hep.20635>.
- Sakamoto, M., Woods, S. P., Kolessar, M., Kriz, D., Anderson, J. R., Olaverria, H., Sasaki, A., Chang, M., Flora, K. D., Loftis, J. M., & Huckans, M. (2013). Protective effects of higher cognitive reserve for neuropsychological and daily functioning among individuals infected with hepatitis C. *Journal of Neurovirology*, 19, 442–451.

Hepatitis Types A, B, C

Carrie Brintz

Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Coral Gables, FL, USA

Definition

Hepatitis involves inflammation of the liver and is most commonly caused by a number of viruses. Hepatitis can be an acute or a chronic condition. Hepatitis A is an acute viral infection of the liver due to the hepatitis A virus (HAV), and is the least serious of the hepatitis viruses. Hepatitis B and C are viral infections of the liver due to the hepatitis B virus (HBV) and the hepatitis C virus (HCV). Both hepatitis B and hepatitis C can become chronic infections and result in chronic liver disease.

Description

HAV is the main cause of acute viral hepatitis and is endemic worldwide. The virus is spread by the fecal-oral route, and very rarely by blood transfusion, and is often contracted from a contaminated

water or food source. Major epidemics of hepatitis A are uncommon in the United States of America (USA), and most common in regions of the world with poor sanitary hygiene and overcrowding. The severity of the illness tends to increase with age. More than 80% of childhood cases of hepatitis A are asymptomatic, which encourages the spread of the virus. Adults with hepatitis A are more likely to have clinical symptoms such as jaundice (a yellowing of the skin and whites of the eyes). Symptoms tend to appear 2–6 weeks after exposure to HAV, and mild symptoms may last several months, particularly in adults. The virus does not remain in the body when the infection is gone. Vaccination for HAV is available, but there are no specific treatments for unvaccinated individuals who are exposed to the virus or develop the infection.

HBV is also found worldwide. It is spread parenterally and by sexual contact. Hepatitis B infection is most prevalent in sub-Saharan Africa, China, and Southeast Asia. Less than 1% of people in modern Europe, the USA, and Canada carry the virus, and in these areas, horizontal transmission occurs predominantly in younger individuals (ages 15–39) by sexual contact or intravenous drug use. Vertical transmission of the virus from mother to child and horizontal transmission from household members to unimmunized children occurs more frequently in high prevalence countries and helps maintain the virus in these areas. Most cases of hepatitis B are acute, but a small percentage of individuals will not clear the virus from their bodies and develop chronic infection. Hepatitis B infections are typically asymptomatic, especially in infancy through young adulthood, but early symptoms of acute hepatitis may occur such as jaundice, appetite loss, low-grade fever, and nausea and vomiting. Symptoms may not appear for up to 6 months after infection with HBV. Chronic infection with HBV can result in cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), also known as primary liver cancer. Up to 40% of individuals with chronic infection die from liver-related causes. A vaccination for HBV is available, and unvaccinated individuals exposed to the virus may be treated with Hepatitis B Immune

Globulin. Those who develop chronic liver disease may need liver transplantation.

Like HAV and HBV, HCV is a worldwide endemic. It is primarily spread parenterally, while vertical and sexual transmissions of HCV are much less common than in HBV. Intravenous drug use is the most common cause of the virus. More than 80% of acute HCV cases lead to chronic infection, with long-term infection often leading to cirrhosis and HCC. As with hepatitis A and B, hepatitis C infection is usually asymptomatic, with the possible appearance of symptoms such as jaundice, dark urine, abdominal pain, and others. There is currently no vaccination for HCV. However, there are treatments such as antiviral medications that have a high likelihood of removing the virus from the blood or preventing the development of cirrhosis or liver cancer. Chronic hepatitis C with comorbid alcohol liver disease is the most common reason for liver transplantation in the USA.

Relevant to the field of Behavioral Medicine, the behavioral nature of numerous risk factors for exposure to viral hepatitis has led to research examining relevant psychosocial and behavioral predictors of viral hepatitis and its symptoms, as well as behavioral interventions for the prevention of viral hepatitis. Behavioral interventions researched include those targeting risk factors for viral hepatitis such as intravenous drug use and unsafe sex practices that could result in exposure to viral hepatitis.

Cross-References

- [Infectious Diseases](#)
- [Inflammation](#)
- [Needle Exchange Programs](#)
- [Sexual Risk Behavior](#)

References and Readings

A.D.A.M. Medical Encyclopedia [Internet]. Hepatitis A. Atlanta, GA: A.D.A.M., Inc.; c1997–2011; [last reviewed 2010 Nov 23; cited 2011 Dec 6]. Retrieved from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmedhealth/PMH0001323/>

A.D.A.M. Medical Encyclopedia [Internet]. Hepatitis B. Atlanta, GA: A.D.A.M., Inc.; c1997–2011; [last reviewed 2010 Nov 23; cited 2011 Dec 6]. Retrieved from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmedhealth/PMH0001324/>

A.D.A.M. Medical Encyclopedia [Internet]. Hepatitis C. Atlanta, GA: A.D.A.M., Inc.; c1997–2011; [last reviewed 2010 Nov 23; cited 2011 Dec 6]. Retrieved from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmedhealth/PMH0001329/>

Fagan, E. A., & Harrison, T. J. (2000). *Viral hepatitis: A handbook for clinicians and scientists*. New York: Springer.

Ryder, S., & Beckingham, I. (2001). Acute hepatitis. *British Medical Journal*, 322(7279), 151–153.

Hepatocyte Stimulating Factor

- [Interleukins, -1 \(IL-1\), -6 \(IL-6\), -18 \(IL-18\)](#)

Herbal Medicines

Timothy Whittaker

The International Register of Herbalists and Homeopaths, Cinderford, Glos, UK

Synonyms

[Alternative medicine](#)

Definition

Herbal medicine is the use of plants to treat human illnesses and debility. Parts used can be roots, bark, flowers, seed, leaves, or sometimes total aerial parts.

Description

Until the early twentieth century, materials required for herbal medicine were collected in

the countryside, dried by hanging in a warm room, and cut into small pieces to facilitate infusion in hot water, the resulting liquor being consumed as a dose. The mid-twentieth century saw the introduction of fluid extracts where 1 ml of finished liquid preparation represented 1 g of the starting material (dried herb). The industrial process to make these incurred considerable use of heat, very deleterious to fragile plant chemistry via hydrolysis, and/or oxidation. The last quarter of the century saw a substantial swing to the use of tinctures, aqueous-alcoholic preparations, made by steeping the dried herb in the liquor for a few weeks, cold, and pressing the residue to separate the liquid. Tinctures are typically 1:5, i.e., 1 g herb represented by 5 ml tincture. These products are very versatile for practitioner use, as the dose can be varied precisely from one prescription to the next, as the patient requires.

The herbal practitioner diagnoses and then writes his/her prescription. This will comprise a mixture of tinctures (and sometimes water) to make a 5-ml or 10-ml spoonful dose, using from 3 to about 25 per prescription. Experience teaches that there is a high degree of synergy accompanying the use of many together, with the advantage of an absolute minimum of adverse reactions as far less is used of each.

Some modern teachers have promoted the use of single plant extracts, standardized by assay of a single chemical constituent, dried to a powder, and formulated into tablets. This approach fails to appreciate the wide diversity of constituents in a plant (often several hundreds), *all* of which work together therapeutically.

Significant behavior modifiers include hops (*Humulus lupulus*), skullcap (*Scutellaria lateriflora*), valerian (*Valeriana officinalis*), kava (*Piper methysticum*), and vervain (*Verbena officinalis*), as sedatives and hypnotics; St. John's wort (*Hypericum perforatum*) and *Rhodiola rosea* as antidepressants; and the ginsengs, Chinese or Korean (*Panax ginseng*) and Siberian (*Eleutherococcus senticosus*). The latter group acts as stamina providers, called adaptogens, because of their ability to improve the body's response to stress. Most of the named

plants have added support from orthodox clinical trials. There are other less-studied herbs also in this area of therapeutics.

References and Further Readings

Mills, S. Y. (1993). *The essential book of herbal medicine*. London: Penguin Arkana.

Heritability

Jennifer Wessel
Public Health, School of Medicine, Indiana
University, Indianapolis, IN, USA

Definition

Heritability, or h^2 , is the fraction of the total variation in a phenotype that can be explained by genetic factors. Heritability is not about cause.

Description

Interpretation

Heritability has values between 0 and 1. A heritability of 0 would be a trait where none of the phenotypic variance is due to genetic factors, whereas a heritability of 1 would be a trait where all of the variance can be explained by genetic factors.

Heritability is based on measuring the correlations of phenotypes within families. Families share more than their genes; they also share environments. Therefore, the correlations may not simply reflect their shared genetic profiles but also environmental (behavioral) exposures. Heritability can also be affected by other factors such as the population (ethnicity, age, gender, location, etc.) from which it was measured (measurement error) and their environmental exposures.

Calculations

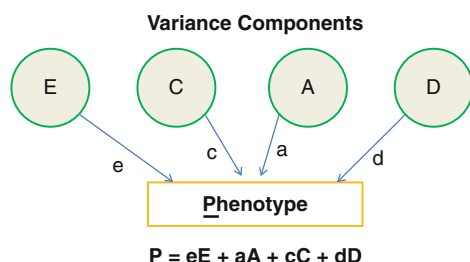
Twin studies are commonly used to measure heritability, as well as family studies. In the classic twin model, heritability is calculated by:

$$h^2 = 2(r_{mz} - rdz),$$

which is the difference between intraclass correlations of a quantitative trait between monozygotic twins and dizygotic twins.

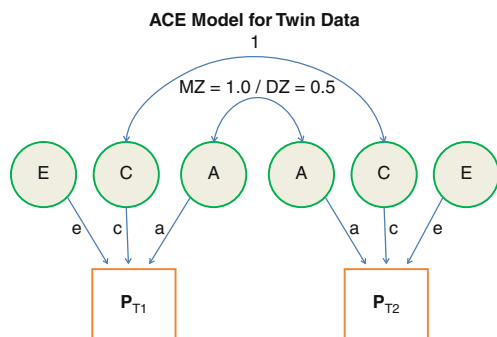
Intraclass correlations are subject to low power and large standard errors, necessitating the development of newer methods which take advantage of variances and covariances.

Path analysis or structural equation modeling estimates the genetic and environmental parameters that give the best fit of the variances and covariances observed in twins or families.



where E is the unique environment of each twin, C is the shared environment within the twin pairs, A is the additive genetic effects, and D is the dominant genetic effects.

Path analysis, or the ACE model, allows a diagrammatic representation between the linear models of the relationships between variables.



where MZ is monozygotic twins that share 100% of their genomes, and DZ is dizygotic

twins that share 50% of their genomes, on average. It is assumed that both of the twins in a pair share 100% of their shared environment.

The ACE model can parse the variance of a trait into additive genetic, shared environmental, and non-shared environmental influences on the basis of the trait covariance observed among both monozygotic and dizygotic twin pairs. This model can accommodate hypothesis testing, both continuous and categorical variables, multiple variables, and more complex pedigrees or questions.

Cross-References

- [Dizygotic Twins](#)
- [Monozygotic Twins](#)

References and Further Readings

- Elston, R. C., Olson, J. M., & Palmer, L. (2002). *Biostatistical genetics and genetic epidemiology* (1st ed.). Chichester: Wiley.
- Neale, M. C., & Cardon, L. R. (1992). *Methodology for genetic studies of twins and families*. Dordrecht: Kluwer.
- Nussbaum, R. L., McInnes, R. R., & Willard, H. F. (2001). *Genetics in medicine* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders.
- Spector, T. D., Snieder, H., & MacGregor, A. J. (2000). *Advances in twin and sib-pair analysis* (1st ed.). London: Greenwich Medical Media.

Herpes Simplex Virus (HSV) Infection

- [Genital Herpes](#)

Heterogeneity

- [Diversity](#)

Heterozygous

Laura Rodriguez-Murillo¹ and Rany M. Salem^{2,3}

¹Department of Psychiatry, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

²Broad Institute, Cambridge, MA, USA

³Cambridge Center, Cambridge, MA, USA

Definition

Humans have two alleles on homologous chromosomes for each gene or trait, one from their mother and one from their father. If the allele inherited from the mother is different from the allele inherited from the father, then the individual is heterozygous for that trait or gene. Alleles are variants of a gene and can also lead to a differential manifestation of the trait or disease they codify. Recessive alleles are not observed in the phenotype of heterozygous individuals.

The degree of heterozygosity (proportion of genes that are heterozygous by individual and by population) is used as a measure of genetic diversity in populations. The higher the mean heterozygosity is across the genome and across individuals in one population, the higher the genetic diversity.

Cross-References

- [Allele](#)
- [Dominant Inheritance](#)
- [Gene](#)
- [Genotype](#)
- [Homozygous](#)
- [Recessive Inheritance](#)

References and Further Readings

- Lewis, R. (2005). *Human genetics. Concepts and applications* (7th ed.). Boston: McGraw-Hill Science/Engineering/Math.
- Strachan, T., & Read, A. P. (2003). *Human molecular genetics* (3rd ed.). London/New York: Garland Science/Taylor & Francis Group.

HHV5

- [Cytomegalovirus](#)

Hidden Variable

- [Latent Variable](#)

Hierarchical Linear Modeling (HLM)

Yutaka Matsuyama

Department of Biostatistics, School of Public Health, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

[Covariance components model](#); [Linear mixed-effects model](#); [Multilevel analysis](#); [Random-coefficient model](#)

Definition

Hierarchical linear modeling (HLM) is a particular regression model that is designed to take into account the hierarchical or nested structure of the data. HLM is also known as multilevel modeling, linear mixed-effects model, or covariance components model (Leyland and Goldstein 2001).

Description

HLM has historically been used in educational research where hierarchies occur naturally: students nested within classrooms, classrooms nested within schools, and schools nested within districts (Sullivan et al. 1999). Recent advances in statistical computing capabilities have made this model more available to researchers across a

variety of disciplines. For example, in organizational psychology research, data from individuals must often be nested within teams or other functional units. For repeated measures or longitudinal data, time can be considered as another level which occurs within subjects (Fitzmaurice et al. 2004). For assessing differences in mortality rates across hospitals relative to a specific condition or procedure, data are collected on random samples of patients nested within each hospital. In this application, it might be appropriate to adjust for covariates at both the patient level (such as patient age, patient gender, and the severity of the disease) and the hospital level (such as hospital size and hospital teaching status) (Austin et al. 2003). These hierarchical data structures are often seen in many medical research applications.

HLM is a more advanced form of traditional linear regression models which were developed making certain assumptions about the nature of the dependency structure among the observed responses. For example, in a simple linear regression model, $y_i = b_0 + b_1 x_i + e_i$, where y_i is the response for individual i ; the standard assumption is that the y_i given the covariate x_i is independently identically distributed, that is, the error term e_i is independent among individuals. In many real-life situations, however, one has data structures, whether observed or by design, for which this assumption does not hold.

Suppose, for example, that the response variable is the birth weight of a baby and the predictor is maternal age and data are collected from a large number of maternity units located in different physical and social environments. One would expect that the maternity units would have different mean birth weights so that knowledge of the maternity unit already conveys some information about the baby. A more suitable model for these data is

$$y_{ij} = b_0 + b_1 x_{ij} + u_j + e_{ij},$$

where another subscript j was added to identify the maternity unit and a unit-specific effect u_j was included to account for mean differences among units. If one assumes that the maternity units are randomly sampled from a population of units,

then the unit-specific effect is a random variable and the above model becomes a simple example of a two-level model. Its complete specification, assuming normality for random variables, can be written as follows:

$$y_{ij} = b_0 + b_1 x_{ij} + u_j + e_{ij},$$

$$u_j \sim N(0, s_u^2), \quad e_{ij} \sim N(0, s_e^2),$$

$$\text{cov}(u_j, e_{ij}) = 0,$$

where s_u^2 represents the degree of heterogeneity among maternity units (between-unit variance) and s_e^2 is the pure random error variance (within-unit variance). In this model, the correlation among birth weights in the same unit can be written as $s_u^2 / (s_u^2 + s_e^2)$, which is known as an intraclass correlation. This lack of independence, arising from two sources of variation at different levels of the data hierarchy (births and maternity units), contradicts the traditional linear model assumption, and an HLM is a suitable regression model for this situation.

The above most simple HLM can be elaborated in a number of directions, including the addition of further covariates (both births and units levels) or levels of nesting. An important direction is where the coefficient of covariates is also allowed to have a random distribution, for example, the age relationship can vary across units. This is particularly important for assessing the covariate-by-unit interaction. The regression coefficients b are usually referred to as fixed effects parameter, and the unit-specific effects u_j are referred to as random effects parameter, and the above model is often referred to as a mixed-effects model or random coefficient model.

The parameters of fixed effects and variance components (s_u^2 and s_e^2) in HLM are obtained via a restricted maximum likelihood (REML) estimation method (Cnaan et al. 1997; Leyland and Goldstein 2001). The random effects are estimated using shrinkage estimators, which is referred to as an empirical Bayes estimator or a best linear unbiased predictor (Fitzmaurice et al. 2004). This estimator is essentially an optimally weighted linear combination of the estimated

overall mean and unit-level mean. The degree of shrinkage toward the overall means depends on the magnitude of the relative magnitude of s_u^2 and s_e^2 . When s_e^2 is relatively large and the within-unit variability is greater than the between-unit variability, more weight is assigned to overall mean. On the other hand, when the between-unit variability is large relative to the within-unit variability, more weight is given to the unit-specific observed response.

There are two major specialized software packages for conducting HLM analysis: one is MLwiN and the other is HLM. MLwiN (version 2.33) can be found via the links provided on the Centre for Multilevel Modelling (CMM), which is a research center based at the University of Bristol, with Internet address <http://www.cmm.bristol.ac.uk/>. HLM (version 7) is available from Scientific Software International, Inc., where HLM has its homepage with Internet address <http://www.ssicentral.com/hlm/index.html>. HLM analysis can also be conducted using general purpose packages such as SAS or SPSS. SAS (version 9.4) has full-fledged possibilities for HLM analysis, using PROC MIXED or PROC GLIMMIX.

Cross-References

► Multilevel Modeling

References and Further Reading

- Austin, P. C., Yu, J. V., & Alter, D. A. (2003). Comparing hierarchical modeling with traditional logistic regression analysis among patients hospitalized with acute myocardial infarction: Should we be analyzing cardiovascular outcomes data differently? *American Heart Journal*, 145, 27–35. <https://doi.org/10.1067/mhj.2003.23>.
- Cnaan, A., Laird, N. M., & Slasor, P. (1997). Tutorial in biostatistics: Using the general linear mixed model to analyse unbalanced repeated measures and longitudinal data. *Statistics in Medicine*, 16, 2349–2380. [https://doi.org/10.1002/\(SICI\)1097-0258\(19971030\)16:20<2349::AID-SIM667<3.0.CO;2-E](https://doi.org/10.1002/(SICI)1097-0258(19971030)16:20<2349::AID-SIM667<3.0.CO;2-E).
- Fitzmaurice, G. M., Laird, N. M., & Ware, J. H. (2004). *Applied longitudinal analysis*. Hoboken: Wiley.
- Leyland, A. H., & Goldstein, H. (Eds.). (2001). *Multilevel modelling of health statistics*. Chichester: Wiley.
- Sullivan, L. M., Dukes, K. A., & Losina, E. (1999). Tutorial in biostatistics: An introduction to hierarchical linear modeling. *Statistics in Medicine*, 18, 855–888. [https://doi.org/10.1002/\(SICI\)1097-0258\(19990415\)18:7<855::AID-SIM117<3.0.CO;2-7](https://doi.org/10.1002/(SICI)1097-0258(19990415)18:7<855::AID-SIM117<3.0.CO;2-7).

Hierarchy of Evidence

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

Evidence hierarchy

Definition

The concept of the “hierarchy of evidence” refers to a tabular representation (sometimes presented as a pyramid) of the relative strengths of various investigational methodologies in providing the evidence that is used in evidence-based medicine and evidence-based behavioral medicine.

Byar (cited by Piantadosi 2005) listed different types of medical studies in terms of the (increasing) strength of the evidence provided by them: case report, case series, database analysis, observational study, controlled clinical trial, and replicated clinical trials (independent verification of treatment efficacy estimates), referring to this progression as a “hierarchy of strength of evidence.”

While the concept is simple, there can be disagreement on the order of some methodologies, particularly toward the top of the pyramid. Randomized controlled clinical trials have typically been placed at the top, and many researchers still agree with this positioning. Others regard systematic reviews and meta-analyses as providing stronger evidence since they combine information garnered from more than one study (although many authors note the considerable care that is necessary when publishing a

systematic review or meta-analysis). One such order, therefore, might be:

- Systematic reviews and meta-analyses
- Randomized controlled trials
- Cohort studies
- Case-control studies
- Cross-sectional surveys
- Case reports
- Expert opinions

More detailed accounts of several of these methodologies (listed in the “[Cross-References](#)” section) can be found in the encyclopedia.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Case-Control Studies](#)
- ▶ [Meta-analysis](#)
- ▶ [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)

References and Further Readings

- Piantadosi, S. (2005). *Clinical trials: A methodologic perspective* (2nd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley.
- Webb, P., Bain, C., & Pirozzo, S. (2005). *Essential epidemiology: An introduction for students and health professionals*. New York: Cambridge University Press.

High Blood Pressure

- ▶ [Blood Pressure, Elevated](#)
- ▶ [Hypertension](#)

High Blood Pressure Medications

- ▶ [Antihypertensive Medications](#)

High Cholesterol

- ▶ [Dyslipidemia](#)

High-Risk Drinking

- ▶ [Binge Drinking](#)

HIPAA

- ▶ [Confidentiality](#)

Hispanic Community Health Study/Study of Latinos

Neil Schneiderman
Department of Psychology, Behavioral Medicine
Research Center, University of Miami, Coral
Gables, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Epidemiological studies](#); [Ethnicity](#)

Description

Behavioral, psychosocial, and sociocultural factors pose adverse cardiovascular disease (CVD) risks similar in magnitude to those caused by traditional risk factors such as smoking, high cholesterol, or hypertension. With this in mind, the Hispanic Community Health Study/Study of Latinos (SOL), sponsored by the National Institutes of Health (NIH), was initiated to provide the largest, comprehensive, multicenter, community-based, and longitudinal cohort study of Hispanic/Latino health ever conducted in the continental United States. Between 2008 and 2011, 16,415 women and men, 18–74 years of age, who self-identified as being Hispanic or Latino completed a 6.5 h baseline clinical exam. The participants were recruited from a stratified random sample of households in defined communities in the Bronx, Chicago, Miami, and San Diego. These communities were chosen so that the overall sample

would include adequate representation from Central and South American, Cuban, Mexican, Puerto Rican, and Dominican ancestral backgrounds.

The study assessed risk factors for and prevalence of heart, lung, blood, and sleep disorders, kidney and liver dysfunction cognitive impairment, diabetes, dental problems, and hearing disorders. Among the physical exam procedures employed were electrocardiogram, blood pressure, ankle and arm blood pressure comparisons to detect evidence of peripheral artery disease evaluation of pulmonary function, physical activity assessed by monitors worn for a week by participants, and sleep apnea. Questionnaires assessed health histories of participants and their families, information about acculturation, social variables, education, occupation, smoking, nutrition, alcohol consumption, sleep, physical activity, and prescription and non-prescription drug use. Among the major finding from the SOL baseline visit were that the Hispanics/Latinos in the SOL cohort carried a higher burden of CVD risk compared to non-Hispanic whites living in the continental United States and that there were considerable differences among Hispanic/Latino background groups in terms of risk factors profile.

A second clinic exam was conducted on 80% of the original SOL cohort between 2014 and 2017. This exam featured most of the same procedures and many of the same questionnaires used during the initial baseline exam, but now also including echocardiography and assessment of women's health. Whereas the first clinic visit emphasized analyses of disease prevalence, clinic visits 2 and 3 (2019–2023) are more concerned with longitudinal and incidence data. In addition to the clinic visit, SOL collects annual follow-up data on all study participants based upon phone calls, hospital records, and death certificates.

In addition to the SOL parent study, the NIH has also sponsored ancillary studies that allow expansion of the major objectives of SOL. These include studies relating physical and sedentary activities to cardiometabolic outcomes, gut microbiome to health disparities, and neurocognitive aging and cognitive decline to brain MRI measures. In summary, SOL is providing the most comprehensive study of Hispanic/Latino health

that has ever been conducted in the continental United States.

Cross-References

- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- [Cardiovascular Disease Prevention](#)
- [Cultural Factors](#)
- [Epidemiology](#)
- [Ethnicity](#)
- [Health Disparities](#)
- [Hispanic/Latino Health](#)

References and Readings

- LaVange, L. M., Kalsbeek, W., Sorlie, P. D., Avilés-Santa, L. M., Kaplan, R. C., Barnhart, J., et al. (2010). Sample design and cohort selection in the Hispanic community health study/study of Latinos. *Annals of Epidemiology*, 20, 642–649.
- Sorlie, P. D., Avilés-Santa, L., Wassertheil-Smoller, S., Kaplan, R. C., Daviglus, M. L., Giachello, A. L., et al. (2010). Design and implementation of the Hispanic community health study/study of Latinos. *Annals of Epidemiology*, 20, 629–641.

Hispanic Health

- [Hispanic/Latino Health](#)

Hispanic/Latino Health

John Ruiz¹, Mariana Garza² and Lauren Smith²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Arizona, Tucson, AZ, USA

²Department of Psychology, University of North Texas, Denton, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Hispanic health](#)

Definition

The terms *Hispanic* and *Latino/a* are used to collectively refer to people from Mexico, Central and South America, Spain, and Spanish-speaking or influenced countries. According to the 2010 Census, Latinos comprised 16.3% of the total US population, making them the largest racial/ethnic minority group in the USA (Pew Hispanic Center 2011). Like other minorities, Latinos have a significant health risk factor profile marked by educational, economic, and disease challenges. Despite these disparities, Latinos appear to live longer than non-Hispanic Whites, an epidemiological phenomenon commonly referred to as the *Hispanic or Latino Mortality Paradox*.

Description

Background

Defining Latinos in the USA

Latinos in the USA are a heterogeneous group representing more than 23 nationalities and speaking at least 12 languages and dialects (Pew Hispanic Center 2010). Approximately two-thirds (66%) of US Latinos are of Mexican descent followed by Puerto Ricans (8.9%), Cubans (3.5%), Salvadorans (3.3%), and Dominicans (2.8%). Latinos are largely defined and differentiated from other groups by cultural factors. In particular, Latino culture is *collectivistic*, meaning they place an emphasis on the needs of the group over those of the individual. Several specific values including the valuing family (*familismo*) valuing and warm interpersonal relationships (*personalismo*) and valuing interpersonal harmony (*simpatico*) facilitate strong social cohesion (Zea et al. 1994).

Demographics

Latinos account for approximately 16.3% of the total US population, accounting for 56% of the nation's population growth over the last decade (Pew Hispanic Center 2011). By the year 2050, the Latino population is projected to triple in size to approximately 29% of the US population. Of

the 50.5 million Latinos currently residing in the USA, an estimated 38% are foreign-born (Pew Hispanic Center 2010). Importantly, foreign-born should not be equated with illegal immigration as unauthorized immigrants account for only 4% of the US population and, thus, a small percentage of the Latino community. Rather, native births are by far the largest source of growth in the US Latino population. Nearly one in five children in the United States is of Latino descent with approximately 89% of those children born in the USA, making them citizens by birth (Fry and Passel 2009). It is estimated that by the year 2025, 30% of all children born in the USA will be of Latino descent.

The demographic profile of US Latinos differs significantly from other racial/ethnic groups. For example, Latinos are by far the youngest group with a median age of 27 years compared to 41 years for non-Hispanic Whites, 32 years for non-Hispanic Blacks, 36 years for non-Hispanic Asians, and a median age of 36 years for the total US population (Pew Hispanic Center 2010). Latinos are less likely to have ever been married compared to non-Hispanic Whites (66.3% vs. 76.7%) but more likely to live in a "household" or family unit (81% vs. 69%). Latino households tend to be larger than non-Hispanic White households, and US-born Latinos are more likely to live with family members than non-Hispanics of any race (Pew Hispanic Center 2010).

Socioeconomic Profile

Socioeconomic status (SES) is among the most robust psychosocial modifiers of physical health and mortality. Similar to other racial/ethnic minorities, Latinos experience significant SES disparities relative to non-Hispanic Whites and the US population in general. For example, nearly one in five (19.5%) Latinos is classified as living in poverty, a rate comparable to the percentage of non-Hispanic Blacks (21.9%) and significantly higher than non-Hispanic Whites (8.2%; Pew Hispanic Center 2010). Latinos have the lowest median income for full-time, year-round work relative to other racial/ethnic groups, which may be due in part to their overrepresentation in manual labor jobs and underrepresentation in management and

technology (U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics 2009).

Education is an important determinant of future earning potential and is an integral part of the conceptualization of SES. Latinos are at a significant educational disadvantage relative to other racial/ethnic groups including other minorities. For example, nearly 40% of Latinos have less than a high school diploma, a rate that is twice that of any other racial/ethnic group and markedly higher than the national average of 15.1%. In addition, the college graduation rate for Latinos is just 12.9% compared to 17.7% of non-Hispanic Blacks, 30.7% of non-Hispanic Whites, and the national average of 27.7%. Together with the economic disparities, Latinos are at or near the bottom of most of the major SES indicators – a profile associated with significant health risk.

Latino Health Status

Perceived Health

Latinos' self-reported health ratings are typically lower than those from non-Hispanic Whites (Perez-Stable et al. 1997). For example, in a large survey of California residents, Latinos were less likely than non-Hispanic Whites to rate their health as "excellent" or "very good" (50.2% vs. 30.2%) and more likely to rate their health as "fair" (9.9% vs. 27.5%). This finding is consistent with the challenges of lower SES, although some data suggests that SES does not explain the entire effect.

Diabetes

Diabetes is amongst the most common chronic diseases in the USA with an incidence rate of approximately 8.3% and rising (Center for Disease Control [CDC] 2011). Racial and ethnic minorities suffer a disproportionate burden of the diabetes epidemic (CDC 2011). In general, Latinos are nearly 1.7 times as likely to have diabetes as compared to non-Hispanic Whites (11.8% vs. 7.1%) and are at 50% greater risk of dying from diabetes-related complications. There is considerable heterogeneity in diabetes risk among Latino subgroups with persons of Puerto Rican

and Mexican descent twice as likely to have diabetes compared to non-Hispanic Whites (13.8% and 13.3%, respectively) whereas individuals of Cuban descent experience prevalence rates more similar to non-Hispanic Whites (7.6%). End-stage renal disease (ESRD) is a major complication arising from diabetes. Latinos are nearly 1.7 times more likely to initiate ESRD treatment compared to non-Hispanic Whites.

Cardiovascular Disease

Cardiovascular disease (CVD) is the leading cause of death in the United States, accounting for approximately 34.3% of all deaths annually (American Heart Association 2010). Race-related disparities in CVD incidence and mortality are well documented. The CDC and the Office of Minority Health report that African Americans are 1.5 times more likely to have hypertension (high blood pressure) and 1.3 times more likely to die from heart disease compared to Whites. Although far less Latino comparative health data is available, there are important differences to consider. Latinos are more likely to be overweight and have uncontrolled diabetes, two robust risk factors for heart disease. However, the age-adjusted mortality rate from heart disease is significantly lower for Latinos compared to non-Hispanic Whites (165.0 vs. 239.8 per 100,000). Emerging data suggests that although the incidence rate of heart disease is similar between Latinos and non-Hispanic Whites, the rate at which the disease progresses to critical endpoints, such as heart attacks, is significantly slower for less acculturated Latinos.

Cancer

Overall cancer incidence is approximately 30% lower for Latinos relative to non-Hispanic Whites (U.S. Cancer Statistics Working Group 2011). This advantage is evident among both men and women although there is heterogeneity by cancer type. For example, Latina women are at 33% lower risk for breast cancer and Latino men are 23% less likely to have prostate cancer relative to their non-Hispanic White counterparts. However, Latinos are twice as likely to develop stomach and liver cancer relative to non-Hispanic Whites. In

addition, Latina women have an 80% greater risk of being diagnosed with cervical cancer than non-Hispanic women. Unfortunately, the relative survival rate of Latinos following diagnosis is unclear due to a lack of available data. What is known is that relative mortality rates mirror incidence rates with Latinos more likely to die from stomach and liver cancers compared to non-Hispanic Whites.

Infectious Conditions

Latinos suffer disproportionate rates of a range of infectious conditions. For example, Latinos account for approximately 75% of newly diagnosed tuberculosis cases and are at twice the risk of hepatitis A, twice the risk for gonorrhea and syphilis, and three times the risk for chlamydia compared to non-Hispanic Whites (CDC 2009a). With respect to HIV/AIDS, Latinos accounted for approximately 17% of all HIV/AIDS cases despite accounting for less than 15% of the US population in 2008 (CDC 2009b). Comparatively, Latinos are 3 times as likely to be diagnosed with HIV/AIDS relative to non-Hispanic Whites. Although disparities exist for both sexes, Latina women are 5 times more likely to be diagnosed with HIV compared to non-Hispanic White women. The AIDS-related mortality rate for Latino men is approximately 2.5 times, and for Latina women, 3.6 times the rate of non-Hispanic White men and women, respectively.

Despite their lower SES profile, infant/childhood immunization rates are comparable between Latinos and non-Hispanic Whites (CDC 2009c). However, there are critical differences in the vulnerable 65 and older age category. At a time when risk increases, Latinos are 20% less likely to get the annual influenza (flu) vaccination and 40% less likely to be immunized for pneumonia (CDC 2010). Such differences may increase vulnerability disparities in later life.

The Hispanic Mortality Paradox

Substantial evidence suggests Latinos live longer than non-Hispanic Whites, an epidemiological paradox given the relative differences in SES and mortality risk factors. This phenomenon was first identified by Markides (1983) who noticed

that among community samples in the Southwestern United States, Latino mortality rates were more similar to non-Hispanic Whites than to non-Hispanic Blacks despite substantial SES differences. Subsequent national cohort data consistently demonstrates a Latino mortality advantage relative to other racial/ethnic groups, including non-Hispanic Whites. For example, the 2006 CDC report on mortality by race/ethnicity indicates that the age-adjusted death rate for Latinos is approximately 27.4% lower than for non-Hispanic Whites and 43.7% lower than for non-Hispanic Blacks (Heron et al. 2009). Hence, the Hispanic mortality paradox refers to the epidemiological finding that Latinos appear to live longer than non-Hispanic Whites despite the lower SES of the former relative to the latter.

Multiple explanations have been postulated to explain these paradoxical findings. The most common criticism concerns data reliability. Critics argue that the national cohort data is highly suspect as it is based on representative statistics. For example, the Latino mortality rate is estimated by entering the annualized Latino mortality (determined by number of death certificates indicating Hispanic ethnicity in a given year) in the numerator and the corresponding Latino population size (determined via census estimates) into the denominator. The major concern is that the numerator relies on accurate recording of Hispanic ethnicity on death certificates and that underreporting biases a more favorable ratio. However, recent data suggests that ethnic misclassification is rare and comparable for Latinos and non-Hispanics (Arias et al. 2010). In addition, two general explanatory hypotheses, the *salmon bias hypothesis* (i.e., Latinos possibly returning to their ancestral country of origin prior to death) and the *healthy immigrant hypothesis* (i.e., biased Latino health in the USA due to better health among those who successfully migrate) have been largely debunked by available data.

An alternative to representative estimates is to examine longitudinal studies where individuals are tracked over time. A recent systematic review and meta-analysis of the longitudinal literature further supports the validity of the paradox (Ruiz et al. 2011). Across 58 identified studies involving

over 4.6 million participants, Latinos were found to have a 17.5% lower risk of mortality compared to other racial groups. The advantage was most evident in initially healthy samples and in the context of cardiovascular disease. In conjunction with the consistent national cohort data, it may be time to turn the corner on questioning the validity of the paradox and direct efforts to identifying the mechanisms leading to these surprising outcomes.

It is important to note that a mortality advantage is not synonymous with better health. As the risk factor data illustrates, Latinos experience high rates of diabetes, infectious diseases, and several types of cancer. They are less likely to have access to regular medical care, and when they do seek care, it is often in more emergent conditions. Hence, Latinos may live longer but suffer a lower health-related quality of life.

Future Directions

The Hispanic mortality paradox illustrates the heterogeneity in minority health. Despite a risk profile similar to African American/Blacks, Hispanics have significantly different disease incidence, burden, and mortality outcomes. Such differences necessitate research specifically on the health and disease course of Latinos. It is possible that traditional risk factors simply are not the best predictors for disease and mortality among Latinos. It is also possible that Latinos may have resilience advantages at important time points in the disease course such as resistance to initial incidence, slower disease progression, or the ability or resources to more effectively recover from acute incidences. Additional research is also needed to understand the moderating and mediating factors specific to Latinos. Such studies may encompass the role of individual level factors (e.g., personality, experiences of stress), social (e.g., social network size and function) and cultural factors (e.g., cultural values, collectivism), as well as genetic/biological differences that may influence health outcomes. Finally, models are needed to understand the interplay between diverse factors and their impact on Latino health.

Cross-References

► Health Disparities

References and Reading

- American Heart Association. (2010). Heart disease and stroke statistics 2010 update: A report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*, 121, e46–e215.
- Arias, E., Eschbach, K., Schauman, W., Backlund, E., & Sorlie, P. (2010). The Hispanic mortality advantage and ethnic misclassification on US death certificates. *American Journal of Public Health*, 100, S171–S177.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2009a). *Sexually transmitted diseases in the United States, 2008: National surveillance data for Chlamydia, gonorrhea, and syphilis*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2009b). *HIV/AIDS surveillance Report, 2007*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2009c). *National Immunization Survey (NIS) – Children 19–35 months old*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010). *Healthy People 2010 Database. Table 14-29d*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. <http://wonder.cdc.gov/data2010/>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2011). *National diabetes fact sheet: National estimates and general information on diabetes and prediabetes in the United States, 2011*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.
- Fry, R., & Passel, J. S. (2009). *Latino children: A majority are U.S.-born offspring of immigrants*. Washington, DC: Pew Hispanic Center.
- Heron, M., Hoyert, D. L., Murphy, S. L., Xu, J., Kochanek, K. D., & Tejada-Vera, B. (2009). Deaths: Final data for 2006. *National Vital Statistics Reports*, 57. Hyattsville: National Center for Health Statistics.
- Markides, K. S. (1983). Mortality among minority populations: A review of recent patterns and trends. *Public Health Reports*, 98, 252–260.
- Perez-Stable, E. J., Napoles-Springer, A., & Miramontes, J. M. (1997). The effects of ethnicity and language on medical outcomes of patients with hypertension. *Medical Care*, 35, 1212–1219.
- Pew Hispanic Center. (2010). *Statistical Portrait of Hispanics in the United States, 2008*. <http://pewhispanic.org/factsheets/factsheet.php?FactsheetID=58>

- Pew Hispanic Center. (2011). *Census 2010: 50 Million Latinos: Hispanic Account for more than half of nations' growth in past decade*. Washington, DC: Pew Hispanic Center. March 24, 2011. <http://www.pewhispanic.org/files/reports/140.pdf>
- Ruiz, J. M., Steffen, P., & Smith, T. B. (2011). The Hispanic mortality paradox: Resolving discrepancies through a quantitative analysis of the prospective literature. In *Paper presented to the American Psychosomatic Society Meeting*, Spring 2011, San Antonio.
- Smith, D. P., & Bradshaw, B. S. (2006). Rethinking the Hispanic paradox: Death rates and life expectancy for U.S. non-Hispanic white and Hispanic populations. *American Journal of Public Health*, 96, 1686–1692.
- U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics. (2009). *Labor force characteristics by race and ethnicity, 2008*. U.S. Department of Labor, Report 1020. <http://www.bls.gov/cps/cpsrace2008.pdf>
- U.S. Cancer Statistics Working Group. (2011). *United States Cancer Statistics: 1999–2007 Incidence and Mortality Web-based Report*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and National Cancer Institute. Available at: www.cdc.gov/uscs
- Zea, M. C., Quezada, T., & Belgrave, F. Z. (1994). Cultural values and adjustment to disability among Latinos. *Journal of Social Behavior and Personality*, 9, 195–200.

Histamine

Scott DeBerard

Department of Psychology, Utah State University,
Logan, UT, USA

Synonyms

[Substance H](#)

Definition

Histamine is a biogenic amine which is involved in a number of biological processes including immune system, gastrointestinal system, and nervous system functioning. Histamine is typically released in response to a pathogen or allergen and serves to increase capillary permeability allowing fluid and other immune system cells to leave the capillaries and enter tissues. The fluid will contain white blood cells which can attack and minimize the effect of the pathogen. In response to an allergen, histamine results in typical allergy symptoms of runny nose,

congestion, sneezing, and watery eyes. Antihistamines are medications which block receptor sites for histamine and can reduce such allergy symptoms. Histamines are also thought to be implicated in memory, learning, and sleep regulation.

Cross-References

- [Immune Function](#)
- [Immunity](#)

References and Further Reading

- Jones, B. L., & Kearns, G. L. (2011). Histamine: New thoughts about a familiar mediator. *Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, 89(2), 189–197.
- Mohammed, S., Khardori, N., Khan, R. A., & Tripathi, T. (Eds.). (2010). *Biomedical aspects of histamine: Current perspectives*. New York: Springer.
- Nuutinen, S., & Panula, P. (2011). Histamine in neurotransmission and brain diseases. *Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology*, 709, 95–107.
- Smuda, C., & Bryce, P. J. (2011). New developments in the use of histamine and histamine receptors. *Current Allergy and Asthma Reports*, 11(2), 94–100.

HIV and Cognitive Functioning

Supria K. Gill^{1,3}, Michael I. Demidenko^{1,2} and Travis I. Lovejoy⁴

¹VA Portland Health Care System, Portland, OR, USA

²Oregon Health and Science University, Portland, OR, USA

³Palo Alto University, Palo Alto, CA, USA

⁴Department of Psychiatry and School of Public Health, Oregon Health and Science University, Portland, OR, USA

Synonyms

[HIV-Associated Neurocognitive Disorder \(HAND\)](#)

Associate editor responsible for this entry: Steven Safren

Definition

Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) has allowed an increasing number of individuals to manage HIV as a chronic disease. An estimated 70% of the United States HIV population will be over 50 years of age by 2020. Despite the success of HAART in prolonging life expectancy of persons living with HIV, neurocognitive disturbances resulting from HIV remain complex and clinically significant. HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders (HAND) are a spectrum of neurodegenerative diseases associated with HIV infection. HAND is subdivided into three categories based on neurocognitive disease severity and impact on everyday functioning: asymptomatic neurocognitive impairment (ANI), mild neurocognitive disorder (MND), and HIV-associated dementia (HAD), with HAD being the most severe of the three.

Description

Etiology

The exact etiology of the neuropathogenesis of HAND is unclear. Within days of exposure, HIV invades the brain, hijacking and reproducing in microglia, the brain's immune system. Although not completely understood, the widely accepted theory explaining how the virus crosses the blood-brain barrier (BBB) is the *Trojan horse* theory. The virus enters through the BBB via trafficking of activated monocytes and lymphocytes. Once in the central nervous system (CNS), activated macrophages and microglia release neurotoxic products that activate astrocytes, increasing BBB permeability and leading to an increase of monocyte and lymphocyte migration into the CNS. This progression of the virus leads to inflammation in the CNS and eventual cognitive and behavioral changes in the host.

Prior to the HAART era, inflammation in persons living with HIV was mainly seen in the basal ganglia, primarily affecting motor systems. Since the initiation of HAART, links have been made to memory, due to inflammation within the temporal cortex and hippocampus. The post-HAART era has witnessed significant reductions in the

proportion of HIV-positive persons diagnosed with HAD, but the prevalence of less severe forms of cognitive impairment – ANI and MND – has increased and ANI and MND are now the most prevalent forms of HAND.

Diagnosis

Tools for assessing neurocognitive disorders include a variety of established technologies that include neurocognitive testing batteries, neuroimaging, and biomarkers. HAND is characterized by a triad of cognitive, motor, and behavioral symptoms. The initial symptoms may be subtle and easily missed with a normal neurologic examination. Functional decline may occur abruptly over a few weeks, or may occur more insidiously over several months. Patients may report mild difficulties in concentration, mental slowing, short-term memory, and changes in motor functioning. It is important to assess areas of neurocognitive functioning affected by HIV infection, including executive functioning, episodic memory, speed of information processing, motor skills, attention/working memory, language, and visuoperception through the use of neuropsychological assessments. The presence of decline in daily functioning is central to a diagnosis of HAND. Assessments of everyday functioning typically rely on self-report questionnaires; thus, it is important to consider any confounding factors that may impact validity of these self-reports. The three categories of HAND and their diagnostic criteria are:

ANI: Abnormality in two or more cognitive abilities with no functional impairment

MND: Cognitive impairment with mild functional impairment

HAD: Marked cognitive impairment with marked functional impairment

HAND cannot be diagnosed if the observed neurocognitive impairment is solely attributed to delirium or a comorbid condition such as a substance use disorder. To avoid misdiagnosis and recognize the progression of the disease appropriately, it is important to eliminate suspected organic causes and other diseases through neuroimaging and biomarkers. MRI exams can be used

to identify pathology typically observed in HAND, such as white matter lesions and cortical and subcortical atrophies. Neurological exams and lumbar punctures to evaluate cerebrospinal fluid are also used in diagnosing HAND, which can provide data on early cognitive impairment, peripheral neuropathy, or myelopathy. This information can help inform differential diagnosis and development of an appropriate plan to address neurocognitive deficits and any comorbidities.

Treatment

HAART is associated with improvements in neuropsychological functioning. However, there is poor central nervous system penetration for many HIV antiretroviral pharmacotherapies. This suggests that while HAART initiation in early stages of HIV infection may slow the rate of CNS infiltration by HIV and associated cognitive decline, it may be less effective when initiated in later stages of HIV disease progression, when the virus has already had opportunity to cross the BBB. Further, medication nonadherence is commonly observed in individuals living with HIV, particularly those with HAND, which directly impacts the potential effects of the treatment. Cognitive rehabilitation approaches are effective interventions in addressing HAND, such as restorative cognitive rehabilitation in the form of computerized training. These trainings target various functional domains over a specified period of time and provide positive feedback for on-task behaviors (e.g., increased reaction time or accurate responses) and negative feedback for off-task behaviors (e.g., random responding).

Implications for Practice

The past two decades have witnessed HIV transform from a certain death sentence to a manageable chronic condition. Yet within the aging HIV population, HAND remains an underappreciated challenge in the overall treatment of patients. HAND is critical to monitor because even mild forms are associated with lower medication adherence, a decreased ability to perform the most complex daily tasks, and poorer quality of life. Restorative cognitive rehabilitation training may be beneficial in helping individuals diagnosed

with HAND improve neurocognitive functioning, which can serve to improve medication adherence rates and overall functioning.

Cross-References

- [AIDs Dementia Complex](#)
- [HIV and Cognitive Functioning](#)

References and Further Readings

- Robertson, K. R., Robertson, W. T., Ford, S., Watson, D., Fiscus, S., Harp, G., & Hall, C. (2004). Highly active antiretroviral therapy improves neurocognitive functioning. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*, 36(1), 562.
- Weber, E., Blackstone, K., & Woods, S. P. (2013). Cognitive neurorehabilitation of HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders: A qualitative review and call to action. *Neuropsychology Review*, 23, 81–98.
- Woods, S. P., Moore, D. J., Weber, E., & Grant, I. (2009). Cognitive neuropsychology of HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders. *Neuropsychology Review*, 19(2), 152–168.

HIV Infection

Nicole Overstreet
Social Psychology, University of Connecticut,
Storrs, CT, USA

Synonyms

[AIDS: Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome;](#)
[Sexually transmitted disease/infection \(STD/STI\)](#)

Definition

HIV infection can be characterized as a condition caused by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) (National Center for Biotechnical Information [NCBI] 2010a). HIV is a retrovirus that weakens the body's immune system by infecting and replicating in CD4 + T-cells (Morris and

Cilliers 2008). CD4 + T-cells stimulate lymphocytes that assist the body in attacking antigens and fighting off disease. When HIV infection occurs, the virus gains entry to host T-cells by attaching to CD4 receptors via glycoprotein (gp120). gp120 allows HIV to bind to CD4 receptors and kill off helper T-cells. During this process, HIV's genetic material integrates its viral DNA into the cell's host DNA and allows the virus to replicate in the immune system (Morris and Cilliers 2008).

Description

HIV Infection: Prevalence

Since its co-discovery by Drs. Luc Montagnier and Robert Gallo in 1983, millions of people have been infected with HIV. Current prevalence estimates reveal that there are approximately 33.3 million people living with HIV worldwide (UNAIDS 2010). HIV prevalence varies greatly by region: HIV disproportionately affects sub-Saharan Africa, a region that accounts for 68% of the global total of persons living with HIV (22.5 million); HIV prevalence has nearly tripled in Eastern Europe and Central Asia (1.4 million) and has risen in North America (1.5 million), Western and Central Europe (820,000), Oceania (57,000), and in the Middle East and North Africa (460,000); HIV prevalence remains relatively stable in South and Central America (1.4 million), the Caribbean (240,000), and Asia (4.9 million); however, there is considerable variation in HIV prevalence within these regions (UNAIDS 2010).

HIV Infection: Incidence

Advances in HIV prevention have markedly reduced the number of new HIV infections. However, there are noticeable differences in HIV incidence trends worldwide, and incidence patterns vary within countries. Many new cases of HIV infection are concentrated among people who inject drugs, commercial sex workers, and men who have sex with men (UNAIDS 2010). HIV incidence is particularly high in developing countries (Merson 2006). However, countries with higher incomes are not immune from the HIV epidemic. In the United States, the epidemic

disproportionately affects racial and ethnic minorities and men who have sex with men (MSM), especially in urban areas of the Northeast, West Coast cities, and small towns in the South (El-Sadr et al. 2010). Higher HIV incidence in Western Europe can also be attributed to increases in risky sexual behavior among MSM. Concentrated epidemics, particularly among people using injection drugs and sex workers, contribute to the growing epidemic in Eastern Europe and Central Asia (UNAIDS 2010). HIV incidence by region is as follows (UNAIDS 2010):

- Sub-Saharan Africa: 1.8 million
- South and Southeast Asia: 270,000
- Eastern Europe and Central Asia: 130,000
- Central and South America: 92,000
- East Asia: 82,000
- Middle East and North Africa: 75,000
- North America: 70,000
- Western and Central Europe: 31,000
- Caribbean: 17,000
- Oceania: 4,500

Stages of HIV Infection

Within 2–4 weeks after HIV infection, individuals may experience acute retroviral syndrome (ARS) or acute HIV infection. Acute HIV infection can appear flu-like and may be accompanied by a number of symptoms such as sore throat, headache, fever, and swollen lymph glands (National Center for Biotechnical Information [NCBI] 2010b). It may take several months for individuals to exhibit ARS symptoms; however, many people never develop ARS or exhibit symptoms associated with the syndrome. During this phase, the virus is actively replicating and is highly transmissible (NCBI 2010b). After primary HIV infection, the illness may be asymptomatic in which there are no major symptoms of HIV. Individuals vary in their detectable HIV viral load but can still transmit the virus to others. The asymptomatic stage can last up to 10 years. Over time, the body's immune system weakens from fighting the virus and transitions into symptomatic HIV infection. In this period, individuals exhibit symptoms typical of chronic HIV infection (e.g., diarrhea, fatigue, fever, weight loss). Acquired

immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) is the final stage of HIV and is defined by <200 CD4 + T-lymphocyte cell counts per microliter of blood (CDC 1993). The body's immune system is severely damaged and is susceptible to opportunistic infections (e.g., Kaposi's sarcoma). Individuals vary in their progression through these phases. Adherence to antiretroviral medications plays a vital role in suppressing HIV viral replication and the progression of AIDS. There are two types of HIV infection – HIV-1 and HIV-2: both types of HIV weaken the body's immune system; however, HIV-2 has a longer asymptomatic phase with slower and milder immunodeficiency and is predominately found in West Africa (CDC 2010).

Two classification systems are currently used to assess the progression of HIV infection: the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) classification system and the World Health Organization (WHO) Clinical Staging and Disease Classification System.

The CDC classification system (CDC 1993) categorizes the progression of HIV infection into three CD4 + T-lymphocyte categories and three clinical categories. These categories are accompanied by particular illnesses or conditions. The corresponding CD4 + T-lymphocyte categories are as follows:

1. Category 1: ≥ 500 cells/mL
2. Category 2: 200–499 cells/mL
3. Category 3: <200 cells/mL

These categories correspond to CD4 + T-lymphocyte counts per microliter of blood in which an acute HIV infection (≥ 500 cells/mL) progresses to acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) (<200 cells/mL). The clinical categories of HIV infection and corresponding illnesses are as follows:

1. Category A (asymptomatic/acute HIV): Asymptomatic or acute retroviral syndrome/acute HIV infection (acute HIV infection occurs 2–4 weeks after HIV infection, and its symptoms include fatigue, fever, headache, sore throat, and decreased appetite).

2. Category B (symptomatic conditions): Conditions include, but are not limited to, cervical dysplasia, shingles, and pelvic inflammatory disease.
3. Category C (AIDS-indicator conditions): Presence of opportunistic infections such as Kaposi's sarcoma and *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*.

In settings with limited capability to test for CD4 viral loads, the WHO Clinical Staging and Disease Classification System (WHO 2007) may be used to determine the progression of HIV infection and the appropriate antiretroviral therapy. This classification system is categorized into four stages ranging from primary HIV infection to AIDS-indicator illnesses. The stages of HIV infection and some accompanying illnesses are as follows:

1. Clinical stage 1 (asymptomatic): Asymptomatic, persistent generalized lymphadenopathy
2. Clinical stage 2 (mild symptoms): Unexplained weight loss, fungal nail infections
3. Clinical stage 3 (advanced symptoms): Unexplained severe weight loss, oral hairy leukoplakia
4. Clinical stage 4 (severe symptoms): HIV wasting syndrome, Kaposi's sarcoma

HIV Transmission

HIV is primarily spread through the following modes of transmission (CDC 2010): unprotected sexual contact with a person who has HIV infection (unprotected oral sex is lower risk for transmitting HIV than vaginal or anal sex; unprotected anal sex is riskier than vaginal sex; unprotected receptive anal sex is riskier than unprotected insertive anal sex; having multiple sex partners also increases risk of HIV infection, especially in the presence of other sexually transmitted diseases during sex), sharing needles or syringes used to prepare illicit drugs for infection, and being born to an infected mother (HIV can be passed from mother to child through pregnancy, birth, or breast-feeding). Less common modes of HIV infection are through blood transfusions. These modes of HIV transmission occur by the

transfer of semen, blood, vaginal fluid, or breast milk.

HIV Diagnosis

HIV is typically diagnosed by a set of blood tests (HIV ELISA) that detect the presence of HIV antibodies but can also be diagnosed by tests that identify HIV's genetic material (CDC 2010). The presence of HIV antibodies marks the body's response to HIV infection. A "window period" between HIV infection and seroconversion (presence of detectable HIV antibodies) can range from 2 weeks to 3 months, in which an individual's immune system may not produce enough antibodies for the antibody test to detect. HIV is highly transmissible during this period even if the virus is not yet detectable. Most people will develop detectable antibodies within 2–8 weeks of HIV infection, and HIV test should be considered positive after a second confirmatory HIV test (CDC 2010; Puren 2008).

HIV Treatment

There is no cure for HIV infection. However, antiretroviral therapy can suppress HIV viral replication and the progression of AIDS. These medications help people living with HIV to lead longer and healthier lives. Inconsistent adherence allows HIV to acquire resistance to antiretroviral therapy. There are considerable barriers in HIV prevention and treatment, but global efforts continue to address these challenges.

Cross-References

- [HIV Prevention](#)
- [Sexual Risk Behavior](#)

References and Readings

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (1993). 1993 Revised classification system for HIV infection and expanded surveillance case definition for AIDS among adolescents and adults. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 269, 729–730. Available online at www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/00018871.htm.

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010). *Basic information about HIV and AIDS*. Retrieved from <http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/topics/basic/index.htm>
- El-Sadr, W. M., Mayer, K. H., & Hodder, S. L. (2010). AIDS in America-Forgotten but not gone. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 362, 967–969.
- Merson, M. H. (2006). The HIV-AIDS pandemic at 25-The global response. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 354, 2414–2417.
- Morris, L., & Cilliers, T. (2008). Viral structure, replication, tropism, pathogenesis and natural history. In S. S. Abdool Karim & Q. Abdool Karim (Eds.), *HIV/AIDS in South Africa* (pp. 79–88). New York: Cambridge University Press.
- National Center for Biotechnical Information. (2010a). *HIV infection*. Retrieved from http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmedhealth/PMH0001627#adam_000602.disease.signs-and-tests
- National Center for Biotechnical Information. (2010b). *Acute HIV infection*. Retrieved from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmedhealth/PMH0001629/>
- Puren, A. J. (2008). HIV diagnostics. In S. S. Abdool Karim & Q. Abdool Karim (Eds.), *HIV/AIDS in South Africa* (pp. 89–108). New York: Cambridge University Press.
- UNAIDS. (2010). *Global report: UNAIDS report on the global AIDS epidemic 2010*. Retrieved from http://www.unaids.org/globalreport/Global_report.htm
- World Health Organization. (2007). *WHO Case definitions of HIV for surveillance and revised clinical staging and immunological classification of HIV-related disease in adults and children*. Retrieved from <http://www.who.int/hiv/pub/guidelines/HIVstaging150307.pdf>

HIV Prevention

Jason W. Mitchell

Center for AIDS Intervention Research, Medical College of Wisconsin, Milwaukee, WI, USA

Synonyms

[AIDS prevention](#)

Definition

HIV prevention is the science of designing, implementing, and evaluating the effectiveness of interventions, programs, and services that aim to prevent an individual from acquiring HIV.

Description

The acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) was first recognized in 1981 and is caused by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) (CDC 2010). Since the 1980s, science has significantly increased our knowledge about HIV and AIDS. We now know how HIV is transmitted from one person to another, the physiological processes of how the virus replicates once acquired, which medications help stop the virus from replicating, why individuals are more susceptible to opportunistic infections, and how best to prevent HIV transmission between two individuals. As a result, the field of HIV prevention science has emerged to better understand how individuals can help protect themselves from acquiring HIV, and among those who are living with HIV, how best to improve their adherence to treatment and reduce the transmission of HIV to others.

Efforts to reduce new HIV cases are based on how the virus is transmitted. There are three primary modes of transmission, including sexual transmission, transmission through blood, and mother-to-child transmission (Avert 2011). In detail, an individual may acquire HIV from infected donated blood and organ products, vertically from mother-to-child during labor and/or from feeding the infant breast milk, sexually from having unprotected anal or vaginal intercourse, and from sharing contaminated works when injecting drugs or being stuck with a contaminated needle. Accordingly, HIV prevention interventions, programs, and services are designed to target specific populations based on their primary risk factor (s) for acquiring HIV. For example, self-identified heterosexual individuals who may be more likely to have unprotected intercourse, otherwise known as “high-risk heterosexuals,” would be targeted for a particular HIV prevention program that was specifically designed for them. Another HIV prevention program may target HIV-negative men who have sex with men (MSM) to help them sustain from having unprotected anal intercourse (UAI) with multiple sex partners of HIV-positive and/or unknown serostatus. As such, HIV prevention interventions, programs, and services are typically

designed and implemented to reach certain populations that engage in behaviors that put them at risk for acquiring HIV.

HIV prevention also has evolved to include individuals living with HIV. For instance, people living with HIV may want help with adherence to their medications, finding appropriate doctors for their treatments, access to care, assistance with disclosing their HIV serostatus, or learning how to help protect others from acquiring HIV from them. In sum, HIV prevention interventions, programs, and services include two broad types: (1) primary prevention which aims to prevent individuals from acquiring HIV and (2) secondary prevention which helps individuals living with HIV to maintain their health and to reduce the possibility of transmitting HIV onto others (Avert 2011).

Moreover, the implementation of these interventions, programs, and services is further divided based on the context of the implementation and how many individuals will be targeted. Specifically, interventions are classified as individual-level, group-level, or community-level interventions. Each of these levels describes the population context of the intervention for the primary or secondary HIV prevention services that would be provided to the participants. For example, an individual-level, primary HIV prevention intervention would focus on reducing HIV risk for each individual who participates in that particular intervention.

Many interventions, programs, and services of HIV prevention include an aspect of psycho-behavioral modification and/or a biomedical approach. Several theories of behavior change and models have been developed or modified for the prevention of HIV. For example, many studies and interventions aimed at preventing HIV have used constructs from the health belief model (Rosenstock et al. 1994), social cognitive theory (Bandura 1997), theory of reasoned action (Fishbein and Ajzen 1975), theory of planned behavior (Ajzen 1991), transtheoretical model (Prochaska et al. 1992), AIDS risk reduction model (Catania et al. 1990), and the information-motivation-behavioral skills model (Fisher and Fisher 1992). Constructs from these theories and models are used to help participants and their

networks change their beliefs, attitudes, perceived ability, and norms to lower their risk for acquiring HIV. Scientists and other researchers also use these constructs to better understand individuals' thoughts, actions, and feelings about HIV and/or risk behaviors.

In contrast, the biomedical approach uses a "test and treat" approach that may or may not include a psycho-behavioral component to it. The biomedical approach emphasizes the importance of being tested for HIV. The frequency of being tested for HIV will depend on the individual needs, her or his risk, and access to receiving the HIV test. Because an individual's viral load is highest after initially being infected, the premise of the approach is to link HIV-positive individuals with care as soon as possible and, preferably, before the possibility of transmitting the virus to others. Regardless of which HIV prevention approach is used, only correct and consistent condom use for anal and vaginal intercourse, being in a long-term mutually monogamous relationship with an uninfected partner, or abstaining from anal and vaginal intercourse will significantly prevent an individual from contracting HIV (CDC 2010).

In addition to testing, consistent condom use, and modifying behaviors to reduce HIV risk, new advances with treatments have led to the development of other promising HIV prevention methods. Current studies are assessing the efficacy and cost-effectiveness of administering a pill or inserting a microbicide (i.e., gel or foam) inside an anus or vagina as additional modes of preventing HIV transmission (AVAC 2011). These new biomedical advances are still being studied in a variety of populations around the world.

The success of the psycho-behavioral and biomedical approaches to preventing primary and secondary HIV infections is not without debate. Evaluation of HIV prevention interventions is crucial for determining what works best in HIV prevention. For example, the US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2007) provides a list of interventions that have been shown to prevent HIV among a variety of at-risk populations. These interventions are called evidence-based interventions (EBIs). Further, new studies that examine

the different contexts of HIV are constantly needed in order to address how the epidemic changes with time across the world. The Further Readings section provides additional information about HIV prevention.

References and Readings

- Ajzen, I. (1991). The theory of planned behavior. *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes*, 50, 179–211.
- AVAC. (2011). *Global advocacy for HIV prevention*. Retrieved 8 February 2011 from <http://www.avac.org/>
- Avert. (2011). *Introduction to HIV prevention*. Retrieved 8 February 2011 from <http://www.avert.org/prevent-hiv.htm>
- Bandura, A. (1997). *Self-efficacy: The exercise of control*. New York: Freeman.
- Catania, J. A., Kegeles, S. M., & Coates, T. J. (1990). Towards an understanding of risk behavior: A AIDS risk reduction model (ARRM). *Health Education Quarterly*, 17, 53–72.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2007). *Prevention research synthesis*. Retrieved 8 February 2011 from http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/topics/research/prs/prs_rep_debi.htm
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010). Retrieved 8 February 2011 from <http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/topics/basic/index.htm>
- Fishbein, M., & Ajzen, I. (1975). *Belief, attitude, intention, and behavior: An introduction to theory and research*. Reading: Addison-Wesley.
- Fisher, W. A., & Fisher, J. D. (1992). Changing AIDS-risk behavior. *Psychological Bulletin*, 111, 455–474.
- Prochaska, J., DiClemente, R. J., & Norcross, J. (1992). In search of how people change. *American Psychologist*, 47, 1102–1114.
- Rosenstock, I. M., Strecher, V. J., & Becker, M. H. (1994). The health belief model and HIV risk behavior change. In R. J. DiClemente & J. L. Peterson (Eds.), *Preventing AIDS: Theories and methods of behavioral interventions*. New York: Plenum Press.

HIV Status

- [Serostatus: Seronegative and Seropositive](#)

HIV Wasting

- [Cachexia \(Wasting Syndrome\)](#)

HIV-Associated Dementia (HAD)

► [HIV-Associated Neurocognitive Disorder](#)

HIV-Associated Neurocognitive Decline

► [HIV-Associated Neurocognitive Disorder](#)

HIV-Associated Neurocognitive Disorder

Judy D. Lobo
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[AIDS dementia complex](#); [HIV-associated dementia \(HAD\)](#); [HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder \(HAND\)](#); [HIV-associated neurocognitive decline](#); [NeuroAIDS](#)

Definition

Central nervous system complications due to HIV infection have been called AIDS dementia complex, HIV encephalopathy, HIV-associated dementia (HAD), neuroAIDS, and, more recently, HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders (HAND) (Antinori et al. 2007). HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder (HAND) is an umbrella term for the cognitive deficits that are common in HIV-positive individuals. Diagnosis for HAND requires multiple neuropsychological measures across several cognitive domains (Power et al. 1995; Morgan et al. 2008). Prior to HIV treatment, common deficits were found in motor speed, information processing speed, and verbal fluency, whereas impaired learning and executive function

are more frequently observed among the individuals treated with cART (Heaton et al. 2010). HAND can occur despite adherence to antiretroviral therapy, which maintains HIV viral load below symptomatic quantities and has been helpful for reducing the amount of severe forms of HAND. Indeed, the rates of HAND among individuals with mild HIV symptomology are higher in the cART era in comparison with those in the pre-cART era (Heaton et al. 2011).

Description

In order to meet the current *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (fifth ed.; DSM-5; American Psychiatric Association 2013) criteria for HAND, an individual must display impairment in at least two cognitive domains. Impairment is defined as neuropsychological functioning that is at least one standard deviation lower than what is expected for a typical individual of the same age. The International HIV Dementia Scale and portions of the Hopkins Verbal Learning Test and the HIV Medical Outcomes Survey (MOS-HIV) are recommended screening materials for HAND (Group et al. 2012). Depending on the degree of impairment that is found through neuropsychological evaluation and the level of impairment that the individual reports in daily function, they are classified into three subtypes of HAND: asymptomatic neuropsychological impairment (ANI), mild cognitive disorder (MND), and HIV-associated dementia (HAD). The DSM-V points out typical cognitive domains that can be impaired which include impaired executive function, slowing of processing speed, and problems with more demanding attentional tasks, but they advise that “HIV pathogenic processes can affect any part of the brain; therefore, other patterns are possible” (American Psychological Association 2013).

Following infection, HIV enters the central nervous system at a rapid pace. HIV can be detected in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) as early as 8 days after estimated HIV exposure (Valcour et al. 2012). Once in the CSF, HIV infiltrates the brain by crossing the blood-brain barrier (BBB). HIV is thought to cross the BBB via more than

one mechanism: HIV can be transported via infected monocytes and lymphocytes; it can be transported via damaged sections of the vascular endothelium, or it can infiltrate the BBB via cell-free particles (Resnick et al. 1988). HIV-infected monocytes and macrophages have a similar structure to activated microglia; therefore the HIV-infected monocyte or macrophage can remain in the brain without being detected (Nasi et al. 2014). The virus remains in the CSF but does not directly enter the neurons due to the absence of receptors on the neuronal membranes that the virus can use to adhere to the cell surface. Therefore, damage to CNS could be due to indirect mechanisms, such as inflammatory activation of microglia, via neurotoxins that are produced and released by chronic immune response to HIV and through progressive damage of the conductive layer of myelin sheath that coats the neurons (Broder and Dimitrov 1996). There is a consistent lack of correlation between cognitive impairment and HIV viral load, indicating that the pathophysiology of HAND involves more than just the immediate neurotoxicity of the virus (Khoury et al. 2013). There is a lack of consensus around traditional clinical biomarkers for HAND, but some are exploring neuroinflammatory processes (Nasi et al. 2014). Once in the CNS, virus promotes an inflammatory response, which is needed to engage the immune system and initiate tissue repair (Ransohoff and Brown 2012).

Finally, HAND is not invariably progressive toward greater decline and therefore not an immutable diagnosis, and individuals may display considerable recovery of cognitive functions following diagnosis (Cole et al. 2007). Therefore there is a need to monitor the progress of HAND, and there is also a possibility that cognitive impairment can be rehabilitated. Early results demonstrate that HIV-positive individuals who were diagnosed with HAND who participate in physical activity report a subjective increase in cognitive function and quality of life (Henry and Moore 2016). Longitudinal cognitive screening is of particular concern to older adults, since inflammation in HIV infection and in aging shares a common pathway to immunosenescence, the progressive decline of immune system function that

occurs in older age (Desai and Landay 2010). Aging and HIV are thought to possibly interact with HIV exposure exacerbating and accelerating cognitive impairment which is common with aging in seronegative older adults.

Cross-References

- [AIDS: Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome](#)
- [Clinical Health Psychology](#)
- [HIV Infection](#)
- [HIV Prevention](#)
- [Medical Psychology](#)
- [Neuroimmunology](#)
- [Neuropsychology](#)

References and Further Reading

- American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders (DSM-5®)*. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Publishing.
- Antinori, A., Arendt, G., Becker, J. T., Brew, B. J., Byrd, D. A., Cherner, M., et al. (2007). Updated research nosology for HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders. *Neurology*, 69(18), 1789–1799. [PubMed:17914061].
- Broder, C. C., & Dimitrov, D. S. (1996). HIV and the 7-transmembrane domain receptors. *Pathobiology*, 64(4), 171–179.
- Cole, M. A., Margolick, J. B., Cox, C., Li, X., Selnes, O. A., Martin, E. M., . . . Miller, E. N. (2007). Longitudinally preserved psychomotor performance in long-term asymptomatic HIV-infected individuals. *Neurology*, 69(24), 2213–2220. <https://doi.org/10.1212/01.wnl.0000277520.94788.82>.
- Desai, S., & Landay, A. (2010). Early immune senescence in HIV disease. *Current HIV/AIDS Reports*, 7(1), 4–10.
- Group, M. E. W., Antinori, A., Arendt, G., Grant, I., Letendre, S., Muñoz-Moreno, J. A., . . . Bernal-Cano, F. (2012). Assessment, diagnosis, and treatment of HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder: A consensus report of the mind exchange program. *Clinical Infectious Diseases*, 56(7), 1004–1017.
- Heaton, R. K., Clifford, D. B., Franklin, D. R., Woods, S. P., Ake, C., Vaida, F., . . . For the, C. G. (2010). HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders persist in the era of potent antiretroviral therapy: CHARTER study. *Neurology*, 75(23), 2087–2096. <https://doi.org/10.1212/WNL.0b013e318200d727>.
- Heaton, R. K., Franklin, D. R., Ellis, R. J., McCutchan, J. A., Letendre, S. L., LeBlanc, S., Corkran, S. H., Duarte, N. A., Clifford, D. B., & Woods, S. P. (2011). HIV-associated neurocognitive disorders before and during the era of combination antiretroviral therapy:

Differences in rates, nature, and predictors. *Journal of Neurovirology*, 17(1), 3–16.

- Henry, B. L., & Moore, D. J. (2016). Preliminary findings describing participant experience with iSTEP, an mHealth intervention to increase physical activity and improve neurocognitive function in people living with HIV. *Journal of the Association of Nurses in AIDS Care*, 27(4), 495–511.
- Khoury, M. N., Tan, C. S., Peaslee, M., & Koralnik, I. J. (2013). CSF viral escape in a patient with HIV-associated neurocognitive disorder. *Journal of Neurovirology*, 19(4), 402–405. [PubMed: 23737348].
- Morgan, E. E., Woods, S. P., Scott, J. C., Childers, M., Beck, J. M., Ellis, R. J., Grant, I., & Heaton, R. K. (2008). Predictive validity of demographically adjusted normative standards for the HIV dementia scale. *Journal of Clinical and Experimental Neuropsychology*, 30(1), 83–90.
- Nasi, M., Pinti, M., De Biasi, S., Gibellini, L., Ferraro, D., Mussini, C., & Cossarizza, A. (2014). Aging with HIV infection: A journey to the center of inflammAIDS, immunosenescence and neuroHIV. *Immunology Letters*, 162(1, Part B), 329–333. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.imlet.2014.06.012>.
- Power, C., Selnes, O. A., Grim, J. A., & McArthur, J. C. (1995). HIV dementia scale: A rapid screening test. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes and Human Retrovirology*, 8(3), 273–278.
- Ransohoff, R. M., & Brown, M. A. (2012). Innate immunity in the central nervous system. *The Journal of Clinical Investigation*, 122(4), 1164.
- Resnick, L., Berger, J. R., Shapshak, P., & Tourtellotte, W. W. (1988). Early penetration of the blood-brain-barrier by HIV. *Neurology*, 38(1), 9–9.
- Valcour, V., Chalermchai, T., Sailasuta, N., Marovich, M., Lerdum, S., Suttichom, D., ... Ananworanich, J. (2012). Central nervous system viral invasion and inflammation during acute HIV infection. *The Journal of Infectious Diseases*, 206(2), 275–282. <https://doi.org/10.1093/infdis/jis326>.

HIV-Associated Neurocognitive Disorder (HAND)

- [HIV and Cognitive Functioning](#)
- [HIV-Associated Neurocognitive Disorder](#)

HMG-CoA Reductase Inhibitors

- [Statins](#)

Holistic Medicine

- [Integrative Medicine](#)

Home Health Care

Olveen Carrasquillo Chief¹ and
Osvaldo Rodriguez²

¹Division of General Internal Medicine, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

²Miami VA Healthcare System, Miami, FL, USA

Definition

Home health care is the rendering of predominantly medically related services to patients in a home setting rather than in a medical facility. The goals of home health care include helping patients recover from an injury or illness and restoring, maintaining, or increasing their ability to tend to their everyday needs at home.

Description

There are a wide range of services that fall under the definition of home health care. These include more skilled care often focused on a particular condition such as wound care for pressure ulcers or surgical wounds, physical and occupational therapy, speech-language therapy, patient and caregiver education such as for daily insulin injections, other intravenous injections, and monitoring serious or difficult to control chronic illness such as diabetes and congestive heart failure. However, it may also include a broader range of services such as social services or assistance from a home health aide. Examples of home health aide services include help with basic daily activities like getting in and out of bed, dressing, bathing, eating, and using the bathroom, as well as help with light housekeeping, laundry, shopping, and cooking for the patient.

In addition to such formalized services, the term can also include informal health-care services provided by spouses, family, friends, and neighbors often similar in scope to those done by paid home health aides. In some European countries, such informal care is partially funded, while in most other countries, it is typically unreimbursed. One estimate from the USA is that one of every five adults in the United States provides some sort of such informal home care to someone else.

Historically, most health care was traditionally provided in a patient's home. For centuries, midwives, medicine men, and traveling doctors all performed their services in a patient's home. Sometimes, sick people went to a doctor's office, which was usually an extension of the provider's home or a small clinic, but more often than not, the health-care specialists visited the sick in their home. It was only at the start of the twentieth century with the advancement in medical knowledge, treatments, and technology, not feasible to be provided in the home setting, that led to movement of health service delivery for very sick patients to a hospital setting. Of note, in many countries, particularly those with fewer resources where hospital growth and development has been more limited, many very sick patients are still not able to receive hospital-based care and remain in their home, often cared, to the extent possible, by family and friends.

In the latter half the twentieth century, patient preferences and rising hospital care costs have led to initiatives in many advanced countries to shift some care back away from hospitals to a patients home. Thus, governments and other payers began reimbursing for services aimed at fostering home health-care practices. At present, in the USA, where nearly 12 million persons receive home health care at an estimated cost of over \$70 billion, the Center for Medicare and Medicaid services is the largest payer for home health care. CMS is also responsible for regulating most home health companies and ensuring compliance. Many states also have additional regulations, licensing and certification requirements, and compliance measures. However, determination of eligibility for coverage and length of services is often a

challenge. For example, under CMS, to qualify for reimbursement for home health services, an individual has to be "confined to his home." Operationalizing this definition is often difficult as policy makers need to balance ensuring patients needing services are not denied home care while at the same time limiting potential fraud and abuse. Which services are covered (e.g., skilled or unskilled), for how many hours per day, and for how long are decisions that have tremendous implications and need to be balanced between need and available resources.

Given the extensive evidence that such care is often less costly and sometimes of higher quality than that delivered in an inpatient facility, there will continue to be large growth in the home health-care sector. Particularly given the aging of the population in many countries, governments and policy makers will need to continue to foster, develop, and strengthen innovative programs aimed at facilitating home-based care.

H

Cross-References

- ▶ [Aging](#)
- ▶ [Disability](#)
- ▶ [Family, Caregiver](#)
- ▶ [Health Care](#)
- ▶ [Patient-Centered Care](#)

References and Readings

- Bercovitz, A., Moss, A., Sengupta, M., Park-Lee, E. Y., Jones, A., Harris-Kojetin, L. D., et al. (2011). *An overview of home health aides: United States, 2007* (National Health Statistics Reports No. 34). Hyattsville: National Center for Health Statistics.
- Ellenbecker, C. H., Samia, L., Cushman, M. J., & Alster, K. (2008). Patient safety and quality in home health care. In R. G. Hughes (Ed.), *Patient safety and quality: An evidence-based handbook for nurses*. Rockville: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (US).
- Medicare and Home Health Care, Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services. CMS Product No. 10969 Revised May 2010.
- Tarricone, R., & Tsouros, A. D. (2008). *Home care in Europe*. Copenhagen: World Health Organization. ISBN 978 92 890 4281 9.

The National Association for Home Care & Hospice. (2010). Basic statistics about home care: Updated 2010. Retrieved from <http://www.nahc.org>

Homeostasis

Jens Gaab
Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy,
Department of Psychology, University of Basel,
Basel, Switzerland

Synonyms

[Equilibrium](#); [Milieu interieur](#)

Definition

Tendency and/or ability of a system to strive for and maintain stability of vital internal functions/parameters under unstable, external, or internal circumstances by means of negative or positive feedback.

Description

The necessity of a constant internal stability in face of external instability as a requirement of a free and independent life has first been stated by Claude Bernard, a French physiologist (1813–1878). Walter Bradford Cannon (1871–1945), physiologist at Harvard, then first coined the term “homeostasis,” which he based on four propositions: (1) Constancy needs mechanisms to maintain constancy, (2) any change will be automatically resisted, (3) controlling mechanisms are interacting and cooperative, and (4) homeostasis is organized. Thus, homeostasis is the result of a complex interaction of multiple physiological – as well as psychological and behavioral – processes in order to secure and maintain set levels. Formally, the components of a homeostatic system encompass receptors that assess and relay information afferent to a central control which then send efferent signals to

subordinated effectors, such as muscles, glands, organs, or systems. The responses are then monitored and controlled by positive and/or negative feedback. Examples for homeostasis can be seen in the regulation of body temperature by redistribution of blood flow (cold feet and hands), activation of muscular (shivers) and behavioral responses (put on a sweater), or in the regulation of blood glucose concentration (release of insulin and glucagon) as well as in more complex interactions between perceived challenges in social situations and emotional, behavioral, as well as neuroendocrine responses and their impact on the situational circumstances. The consequences of the regulatory responses are manifold and encompass permissive, stimulatory, suppressive, as well as preparative actions.

The concept of homeostasis have been extended by the concept of allostasis (McEwen 1998), which states that stability is not only achievable through regulation, but also through change. Thus, external or internal circumstances are not only met by counterregulatory activation of the respective response but also lead to adaptive changes in the activity and reactivity of the respective system. For example, enduring stress not only leads to enhanced output of adrenocortical steroids, but also to changes in the negative feedback regulation of the affected neuroendocrine system, depending on the duration and the extent of the stressor (for review: Sapolsky et al. 2000).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Allostasis, Allostatic Load](#)
- ▶ [Neuroendocrine Activation](#)
- ▶ [Stress](#)

References and Readings

- McEwen, B. S. (1998). Protective and damaging effects of stress mediators. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 338(3), 171–179.
- Sapolsky, R. M., Romero, L. M., & Munck, A. U. (2000). How do glucocorticoids influence stress responses? Integrating permissive, suppressive, stimulatory, and preparative actions. *Endocrine Reviews*, 21(1), 55–89.

Homocysteine

Siqin Ye

Division of Cardiology, Columbia University
Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

$\text{HSCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}(\text{NH}_2)\text{CO}_2\text{H}$

Definition

Homocysteine is an amino acid that acts as the intermediary during the synthesis of cysteine from dietary methionine in the human body.

Description

Homocysteine is an amino acid that acts as the intermediary during the synthesis of cysteine from dietary methionine in the human body. Homocysteine is not obtained from the diet but rather formed from the demethylation of methionine. It can then condense with the amino acid serine to form cystathionine, in a step catalyzed by the enzyme cystathionine β -synthase that requires vitamin B₆ as a cofactor. Cystathionine is then cleaved by cystathionine γ -lyase to produce cysteine and α -ketobutyrate. Alternatively, homocysteine can be converted back into methionine by donation of a methyl group from methyltetrahydrofolate, which is derived from folic acid. This reaction is catalyzed by the enzyme methionine synthase and requires vitamin B₁₂ as an essential cofactor (Konkle et al. 2008).

In patients with the medical condition homocystinuria, deficiencies in key enzymes of homocysteine metabolism such as those described above lead to dramatically elevated levels of plasma homocysteine, which then spill over and are detected in urine. In addition to abnormalities of neurological and skeletal development, these patients also suffer from premature atherosclerosis and thrombophilia and have high incidences of

venous thromboembolism, cerebrovascular disease, and peripheral vascular disease, beginning as early as the second and third decade of life. Because of this, it has been suggested that elevated homocysteine may play a causative role in promotion of atherosclerotic disease. Both in vitro and in vivo studies have tended to support this hypothesis, demonstrating that homocysteine can increase oxidative stress, cause endothelial dysfunction, promote inflammation, and induce smooth muscle proliferation (Ridker and Libby 2008; Undas et al. 2005). Furthermore, multiple large, prospective epidemiological studies have also concluded that even mildly elevated levels of homocysteine may carry increased risks for both initial and recurrent cardiovascular events (Homocysteine Studies Collaboration 2002; Wald et al. 2002).

These observations have led to interest in homocysteine reduction as a strategy for cardiovascular disease prevention. Since B-complex vitamins (folic acid, vitamin B₆, and vitamin B₁₂) play a vital role in homocysteine metabolism and are often insufficiently obtained from dietary sources, several large, randomized clinical trials have been carried out to test the efficacy of B-complex vitamin supplementation in patients with cardiovascular disease. Despite uniform reduction of homocysteine levels in the intervention groups, however, none of the trials were able to demonstrate any decrease in incidence of cardiovascular events. Most recently, a meta-analysis was performed by the Cochrane Collaboration in 2009 that included eight randomized clinical trials with a total of 24,210 participants, confirming that homocysteine lowering with B-complex vitamin supplementation does not significantly reduce the risk of fatal or nonfatal myocardial infarction, stroke, or death from any cause (Martí-Carvajal et al. 2009). Given the inconsistency between these results and previous experimental and epidemiological data, there remains considerable debate on whether the homocysteine hypothesis is itself incorrect or whether there are other negative effects of B-complex vitamin supplementation that may have countered the potential benefit of homocysteine reduction (Loscalzo 2006).

References and Readings

- Homocysteine Studies Collaboration. (2002). Homocysteine and risk of ischemia heart disease and stroke: A meta-analysis. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288, 2015–2022.
- Konkle, B. A., Simon, D., & Schafer, A. I. (2008). Hemostasis, thrombosis, fibrinolysis, and cardiovascular disease. In P. Libby, R. O. Bonow, D. L. Mann, D. P. Zipes, & E. Braunwald (Eds.), *Braunwald's heart disease: A textbook of cardiovascular medicine* (pp. 2049–2078). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Loscalzo, J. (2006). Homocysteine trials-clear outcomes for complex reasons. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 354, 1629–1632.
- Marti-Carvajal, A. J., Solà, I., Lathyris, D., & Salanti, G. (2009). Homocysteine lowering interventions for preventing cardiovascular events. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 4, CD006612. <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD006612.pub2>.
- Ridker, P. M., & Libby, P. (2008). Risk factors for atherothrombotic disease. In P. Libby, R. O. Bonow, D. L. Mann, D. P. Zipes, & E. Braunwald (Eds.), *Braunwald's heart disease: A textbook of cardiovascular medicine* (pp. 1003–10026). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Undas, A., Brozek, J., & Szczeklik, A. (2005). Homocysteine and thrombosis: From basic science to clinical evidence. *Thrombosis and Haemostasis*, 94(5), 907–915.
- Wald, D. S., Law, M., & Morris, J. K. (2002). Homocysteine and cardiovascular disease: Evidence on causality from a meta-analysis. *British Medical Journal*, 325, 1202–1202.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Allele](#)
- ▶ [Dominant Inheritance](#)
- ▶ [Gene](#)
- ▶ [Heterozygous](#)
- ▶ [Recessive Inheritance](#)

References and Further Readings

- Lewis, R. (2005). *Human genetics. Concepts and applications* (7th ed.). Boston: McGraw-Hill Science/Engineering/Math.
- Strachan, T., & Read, A. P. (2003). *Human molecular genetics* (3rd ed.). London/New York: Garland Science/Taylor & Francis Group.

Hooking Up

- ▶ [Sexual Hookup](#)

Hope

Susan J. (Sue) Ferguson
Department of Psychology, Macquarie
University, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Homozygous

Laura Rodriguez-Murillo¹ and Rany M. Salem^{2,3}

¹Department of Psychiatry, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

²Broad Institute, Cambridge, MA, USA

³Cambridge Center, Cambridge, MA, USA

Definition

An allele is one of the possible variants of a gene or position in the DNA sequence. All humans have two alleles on homologous chromosomes for each gene or trait. If these two alleles are identical, the person is considered to be homozygous for that trait or gene.

Definition

Hope involves both anticipating a desirable future and the belief that you will be able to find ways to make this happen. Snyder (2002) defines *trait hope* as an aspect of personality that involves thinking about the future, with two components: agency and pathways. The ability to devise multiple ways of reaching a desired goal is known as *pathways thinking*, whereas the motivation to implement these pathways and the individual's belief that they can successfully achieve their desired goals are described as *agency*. For example, hoping you can increase your level of exercise could involve the belief that you can think of multiple ways to

incorporate 30 min of exercise into each day (pathways), that this is important for you personally, and that you believe you can achieve it most days even in the face of obstacles (agency). Contrasting with Snyder's definition, others (e.g., Scioli et al. 2012) have argued hope is *broad*er and includes emotional, interpersonal, and spiritual aspects (e.g., anticipated pleasure when health improves, having a supportive network of friends, and the belief in a benevolent higher power and/or a sense of purpose in life, respectively). In this definition, hope is possible without an individual necessarily holding the belief that they personally can bring about the desired future (e.g., hoping that others or God may help them overcome or cope with an illness).

The most commonly used measure of hope is the *Dispositional Hope Scale* (Snyder et al. 1991); it reliably measures the generalized tendency to be hopeful (including agency and pathways constructs) and is also known as the Trait Hope Scale or Adult Hope Scale. This and further measures of hope, including Snyder's *Children's Hope Scale* (a modified version of the Dispositional Hope Scale for children aged 8 to 16) and *State Hope Scale* (capturing aspects of hopeful thinking that are more changeable and dependent on circumstances) and the broader *Integrative Hope Scale*, all have good reliability and validity and are described and reviewed by Bryant and Harrison (2015). Both the *Integrative Hope Scale* and the *Comprehensive Hope Scale* (Scioli et al. 2012), however, require further tests of discriminant validity, to see the extent to which they overlap with measures of related constructs such as attachment, social support, and spirituality.

Both optimism and hope involve expecting a positive future, but hope (particularly as conceptualized by Snyder) involves both more specific expectations about attaining future goals and pathways and agency. According to *Hope Theory* (Snyder 2002), individuals low on trait hope process information in a biased, negative way (e.g., a bias toward seeing health problems as distressing) and tend to go over and over health problems in their head (e.g., ruminate about their

poor health and about barriers to changing health behaviors) and have self-critical thoughts (e.g., thinking they are not skilled enough or strong enough to deal with a diagnosis of cancer and its consequences). This then makes it harder for individuals low in hope to come up with potential pathways to better health and to believe they will be successful and thus harder for them to reach their desired health goals. This, in turn, contributes to a reduction in positive emotions, and an increase in negative emotions as valued goals (such as increasing health-enhancing behaviors) are blocked. High hope can therefore be seen as a resource and motivator for increasing health-enhancing behaviors, either directly or through its influence on emotional well-being, whereas low hope may reduce motivation for health-enhancing behavior and reduce well-being and quality of life.

Description

Hope is linked prospectively with self-reported health and with fewer reported illnesses (Scioli et al. 1997). In addition, hope is associated with higher well-being (e.g., Ferguson et al. 2017). In those with existing health problems, hope is associated with reduced stress, better quality of life, reduced symptoms, and better functional outcomes. For example, hope is associated cross-sectionally (in lung cancer patients) with reduced depression, as well as lower pain and fatigue, and reductions in coughing (Berendes et al. 2010), and prospectively over 2 years (in HIV sufferers) with better self-reported health and higher medication adherence and improved immunity (Scioli et al. 2012). Thus, higher hope may be indirectly linked to better health through increasing well-being, and decreasing stress and depression, though further research is needed to confirm these proposed paths.

An additional way in which hope influences health is through its impact on adherence to a range of treatments in those with chronic health conditions, such as asthma and diabetes. For example, qualitative studies suggest that in chronically ill adults, low hope is associated with high-

risk health behaviors (such as heavy drinking, IV drug use, and unprotected sex), whereas those higher in hope are motivated to follow doctor's orders and to engage in other healthy behaviors (e.g., see Makarem 2016).

Hope is also associated with preventive health behaviors, including lower binge drinking, smoking, and fat consumption, and higher levels of exercise. Much of this evidence is correlational; however, an experimental study manipulating hope confirmed that higher hope may be causal in certain health behaviors, such as consuming less unhealthy food (Winterich and Haws 2011).

Interventions to Increase Hope

A meta-analysis of 27 studies has demonstrated modest evidence that hope enhancement strategies can increase hope and improve psychological outcomes, such as life satisfaction (Weis and Speridakos 2011). Subsequent hope interventions in chronically ill populations (such as chronic pain sufferers or cancer groups) have shown promise in reducing distress and increasing well-being (e.g., Howell et al. 2015; Thornton et al. 2014). There are a wide range of interventions designed to increase hope; some are specifically focused on developing appropriate health-related goals, ways of meeting these goals, and motivation to achieve the goals (such as imagining your best possible future self and how you would go about achieving this), consistent with Snyder's hope theory. However, other hope interventions are very broad and cover other content such as mindfulness, relationships, or emotion management, making it hard to determine if hope was the effective component. It is possible that some hope interventions work better than others with certain patient groups, and this needs to be explored in more detail. Importantly, it is possible that a doctor's own level of hope may potentially influence their patient's hope (Makarem 2016), so new interventions could also be designed to target both doctor's hope and how they convey hope to patients.

Critique

Snyder's definition of hope can be criticized for being too narrow and for not sufficiently addressing the differences between hoping for a

better future, expecting a better future, and planning for a better future. However, broader definitions of hope include too many additional elements which are better investigated separately, such as spirituality and attachment. It could also be argued that many of the findings linking hope to health and well-being outcomes could be attributed to optimism or perceived control/self-efficacy or to an overlap with other psychosocial resources (such as resilience or faith) or coping variables (such as positive reappraisal or planning). However, research is beginning to rule out some of these alternative explanations. Future research should also distinguish what different people *hope for*, as the extent to which hopes are realistic given specific circumstances may be particularly important to the health and well-being outcomes attained. It is also possible that individuals who are better adjusted to their chronic health problems may find it easier to be hopeful. However, recent longitudinal research (Scioli et al. 2012) seems to largely support the path from hope to positive adjustment and better health outcomes rather than the reverse, and intervention studies (Howell et al. 2015; Thornton et al. 2014) suggest increased hope is a potential causal factor in well-being but have yet to demonstrate effects on physical health itself. Thus, whereas being hopeful has been associated with a range of positive health and well-being outcomes, more research is needed to establish the direction of these effects and the effectiveness of interventions.

Cross-References

- [Emotions: Positive and Negative](#)
- [Optimism](#)
- [Positive Aging](#)
- [Positive Psychology](#)
- [Well-being](#)

References and Further Reading

- Berendes, D., Keefe, F. J., Somers, T. J., Kothadia, S. M., Porter, L. S., & Cheavens, J. S. (2010). Hope in the context of lung cancer: Relationships of hope to

symptoms and psychological distress. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, 40(2), 174–182. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpainsymman.2010.01.014>

- Bryant, F. B., & Harrison, P. R. (2015). Measures of hope and optimism: Assessing positive expectations of the future. In G. J. Boyle, D. H. Saklofske, & G. Matthews (Eds.), *Measures of personality and social psychological constructs* (pp. 47–73). San Diego: Academic. <https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-386915-9.00003-6>
- Ferguson, S. J., Taylor, A. J., & McMahon, C. (2017). Hope for the future and avoidance of the present: Associations with well-being in older adults. *Journal of Happiness Studies*, 18(5), 1485–1506. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10902-016-9787-0>
- Howell, A. J., Jacobson, R. M., & Larsen, D. J. (2015). Enhanced psychological health among chronic pain clients engaged in hope-focused group counseling. *The Counseling Psychologist*, 43(4), 586–613. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0011000014551421>
- Makarem, S. C. (2016). Emotions and cognitions in consumer health behaviors: Insights from chronically ill patients into the effects of hope and control perceptions. *Journal of Consumer Behaviour*, 15(3), 208–215. <https://doi.org/10.1002/cb.1532>
- Scioli, A., Chamberlin, C. M., Samor, C. M., Lapointe, A. B., Campbell, T. L., Macleod, A. R., & McLenon, J. (1997). A prospective study of hope, optimism, and health. *Psychological Reports*, 81(3, Pt 1), 723–733. <https://doi.org/10.2466/pr0.1997.81.3.723>
- Scioli, A., MacNeil, S., Partridge, V., Tinker, E., & Hawkins, E. (2012). Hope, HIV and health: A prospective study. *AIDS Care*, 24(2), 149–156. <https://doi.org/10.1080/09540121.2011.597943>
- Snyder, C. R. (2002). Hope theory: Rainbows in the mind. *Psychological Inquiry*, 13(4), 249–275. https://doi.org/10.1207/s15327965pli1304_01
- Snyder, C. R., Harris, C., Anderson, J. R., Holleran, S. A., Irving, L. M., Sigmon, S. T., ... Harney, P. (1991). The will and the ways: Development and validation of an individual-differences measure of hope. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 60(4), 570–585. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0022-3514.60.4.570>
- Thornton, L. M., Cheavens, J. S., Heitzmann, C. A., Dorfman, C. S., Wu, S. M., & Andersen, B. L. (2014). Test of mindfulness and hope components in a psychological intervention for women with cancer recurrence. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 82(6), 1087–1100. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0036959>
- Weis, R., & Speridakos, E. C. (2011). A meta-analysis of hope enhancement strategies in clinical and community settings. *Psychology of Well-Being*, 1(1), 1–16. <https://doi.org/10.1186/2211-1522-1-5>
- Winterich, K. P., & Haws, K. L. (2011). Helpful hopefulness: The effect of future positive emotions on consumption. *Journal of Consumer Research*, 38(3), 505–524. <https://doi.org/10.1086/659873>

Hopelessness

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Synonyms

Helplessness

Definition

This is an important reaction to situations involving lack of, or reduced, control. The literature at times confuses helplessness with hopelessness, with the former included in the latter. Hopelessness refers to the belief that one lacks control over outcomes (response-outcome noncontingency or helplessness) and to the expectation of a negative future (negative outcome expectancies or pessimism), as conceptualized by Everson et al. (1996). Hopelessness includes thus two cognitions, rather than feelings. In the general population, hopelessness is quite a stable phenomenon and is predicted by economic difficulties and unemployment. However, positive changes in one's living condition may protect people from becoming hopeless (Haatainen et al. 2003).

Multiple ways exist to assess hopelessness including a two-item scale by Everson et al. (1996), the Beck Hopelessness Scale, and other measures.

Hopelessness is a major precursor of depression, particularly in people with a negative attribution style (attributing a negative event to an internal, stable, and global cause; Sweeney et al. 1986). Hopelessness has also been found to be a significant predictor of suicide. Given the difficulty to prevent suicidal behavior, conducting preventative interventions among high-hopeless people may have important preventative value for public health.

Hopelessness is a risk factor of death from coronary heart disease and cancer and significantly predicts progression of carotid atherosclerosis. In Everson et al.'s (1996, 1997) studies,

controlling for known cardiac risk factors had little effect on the prognostic role of hopelessness, leading them to conclude that other not tested factors could explain these relationships. One model proposes that hopelessness predicts poor prognosis in cancer by its link to brain and systemic interleukin-1 (IL-1) since blocking brain IL-1 prevents helplessness, since brain IL-1 promotes peripheral metastases, and since peripheral IL-1 at tumor sites promotes tumor cell proliferation, angiogenesis, and metastasis (Argaman et al. 2005). Thus, hopelessness could serve as an important predictor and therapeutic target in behavior medicine intervention trials since it is a risk factor of both mental and physical illnesses and their prognosis. Cognitive behavior interventions aimed at altering unrealistic perceptions of lack of control and of a negative attributional style in hopeless and physically ill patients may be an important direction for future studies.

Cross-References

- [Depression: Symptoms](#)
- [Perceived Control](#)

References and Further Readings

- Argaman, M., Gidron, Y., & Ariad, S. (2005). Interleukin-1 may link helplessness hopelessness with cancer progression: A proposed model. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 12, 161–170.
- Everson, S. A., Goldberg, D. E., Kaplan, G. A., Cohen, R. D., Pukkala, E., Tuomilehto, J., et al. (1996). Hopelessness and risk of mortality and incidence of myocardial infarction and cancer. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 58, 113–121.
- Everson, S. A., Kaplan, G. A., Goldberg, D. E., Salonen, R., & Salonen, J. T. (1997). Hopelessness and 4-year progression of carotid atherosclerosis. The Kuopio ischemic heart disease risk factor study. *Arteriosclerosis, Thrombosis, and Vascular Biology*, 17, 1490–1495.
- Haatainen, K. M., Tanskanen, A., Kylmä, J., Honkalampi, K., Koivumaa-Honkanen, H., Hintikka, J., et al. (2003). Stable hopelessness and its predictors in a general population: A 2-year follow-up study. *Suicide & Life-Threatening Behavior*, 33, 373–380.
- Sweeney, P. D., Anderson, K., & Bailey, S. (1986). Attributional style in depression: A meta-analytic review. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 50, 974–991.

Hormone System

- [Endocrinology](#)

Hormone Theory of Aging

- [Neuroendocrine Theory of Aging](#)

Hormone Therapy

- [Hormone Treatment](#)

Hormone Treatment

Oliver T. Wolf

Department of Cognitive Psychology, Ruhr-Universität Bochum, Bochum, Germany

Synonyms

[Hormone therapy](#); [Menopausal hormone therapy](#)

Definition

Serum concentrations of the female gonadal sex steroid hormones estradiol and progesterone decrease sharply after menopause due to the stop of ovarian hormone production. In order to counteract this decline, several forms of hormone (replacement) treatment (or therapy; HT or HRT) have been developed. It has been suggested that this hormone regime can treat menopausal symptoms and could potentially prevent several age-associated disorders. Women with an intact uterus can be treated with a combined regimen of estrogens and progestins. The progestin is added in order to prevent endometrial hyperplasia. Women with a hysterectomy can be treated with estrogen only preparations. Oral route of

administration is still the most commonly used route as of today, but other approaches (e.g., transdermal applications) are available.

Sex steroid treatment after menopause has beneficial effects on hot flushes and urogenital atrophy. Moreover it has been shown to prevent osteoporosis, fractures, and diabetes. Adverse effects include venothrombotic episodes, stroke, and breast cancer. Negative effects are more pronounced when the combined treatment is administered, when patients are older, and when treatment is continued for longer periods of time (more than 5 years). For reviews see Maki et al. (2010) and Santen et al. (2010).

Due to the widespread action of sex steroids in the brain, beneficial effects of hormone therapy on mood and cognition have been postulated. These could be of relevance for the prevention and/or treatment of menopausal depression and dementia. Beneficial effects on cognition or mood might occur if treatment is started during or directly after menopause (“window of opportunity hypothesis”). However large randomized controlled clinical trials in this age group are still lacking. In contrast to the postulated beneficial effects, adverse effects were observed in the women’s health initiative (WHI) study. In older women, the combined treatment with estrogens and progestins increased the risk for stroke and dementia. More clinical trials with cognitive and affective measures are needed before recommendations can be provided based on solid empirical evidence. For reviews see Maki et al. (2010) and Santen et al. (2010).

As of today, hormone therapy is recommended by the food and drug administration (FDA) for the treatment of menopausal symptoms only. The FDA recommends that hormone therapy be used at the lowest doses for the shortest duration needed to achieve treatment goals.

Cross-References

- [Breast Cancer](#)
- [Depression](#)
- [Diabetes](#)
- [Menopause](#)

References and Readings

- Maki, P. M., Freeman, E. W., Greendale, G. A., Henderson, V. W., Newhouse, P. A., Schmidt, P. J., et al. (2010). Summary of the National Institute on Aging-sponsored conference on depressive symptoms and cognitive complaints in the menopausal transition. *Menopause*, 17, 815–822.
- Santen, R. J., Allred, D. C., Ardoin, S. P., Archer, D. F., Boyd, N., Braunstein, G. D., et al. (2010). Postmenopausal hormone therapy: An Endocrine Society scientific statement. *The Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 95, s1–s66.

Hormones

- [Neuropeptide Y \(NPY\)](#)

Hospice

Andrea Croom

Department of Psychology, University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Hospice care](#); [Hospice programs](#); [Hospice services](#)

Definition

Hospice is a specialized form of palliative care; however, whereas palliative care can be provided at multiple stages of illness, hospice care is reserved for patients who are estimated to have less than 6 months to live. The philosophy of hospice care is to provide comfort and control pain symptoms for patients in the last phases of incurable disease while holistically providing for the psychological, social, and spiritual needs of the patient and their loved ones. Hospice care also involves some components of home health care, which focuses on patient rehabilitation and medical management. Home health care focuses on

the patient and their physical needs while hospice includes a focus on the family and also addresses emotional and spiritual needs.

Description

History

The word “hospice” stems from the Latin word “hospitium” meaning hospitality, lodging, or guesthouse. The concept of a hospice can be traced back to medieval times when it referred to a place of shelter and rest for weary or ill travelers on a long journey. There is evidence of facilities like modern hospices dating back to the 1800s. For example, Jeanne Garnier founded several hospices in France as early as 1842 and the Irish Sisters of Charity opened hospices in Ireland and England in the 1800s to provide care for dying or incurable patients. The modern hospice movement began in the 1960s when Dr. Cicely Saunders established St. Christopher’s Hospice near London to provide pain management and compassionate care for the dying. The hospice movement was propelled by Dr. Elisabeth Kubler-Ross’ book, *On Death and Dying*, which was published in 1969 and provided a personal glimpse into the lives of terminally ill patients. During the 1970s the Hospice movement gained attention in the United States when Kubler-Ross testified at the first national hearings on the subject of death with dignity (1972); the first hospice organization was established in the United States in New Haven, Connecticut (1974); and the first hospice legislation was introduced by Senators Frank Church and Frank E. Moss (1974). It was not until 1983 that the Medicare hospice benefit was officially introduced and in 1986 was made permanent by Congress. In the past two decades, hospice organizations have continued to evolve from volunteer-based, grass-roots organizations into health care companies with paid staff and quality practices. Today there are more than 4000 hospice programs in the United States and over one million people in the United States receive hospice services each year. Hospice organizations are also widespread internationally.

Goals and Services

People choose hospice when the disease is not responding to treatment (incurable) or when the treatment has detrimental effects on quality of life. While many hospice patients are diagnosed with cancer (approximately 40%), hospice services are also available to patients with pulmonary disease, heart disease, neurological disorders, Alzheimer’s disease, AIDS, and other life-limiting illnesses. The majority of patients who receive hospice services are over the age of 65 (approximately 80%). In the United States, hospice services have historically been more widely utilized by Caucasian patients (greater than 80% of hospice patients in 2005); however, hospice utilization among ethnic and racial minorities has been increasing in recent years. On average, patients spend 69 days on the hospice service before dying (median length = 21 days). In the United States, the majority of hospice services are funded through the Medicare hospice benefit (84% of hospice stays), although private insurers and other medical programs (e.g., Veteran’s Administration) offer hospice benefits.

To qualify for the Medicare hospice benefit, a physician and the hospice medical director must certify that the patient has less than 6 months to live if the disease were to run its normal course. Then the patient or a durable medical power of attorney signs a statement declaring that they would like to be admitted to hospice. By signing the statement, the patient agrees to no longer receive curative treatment related to their terminal illness. Medicare will still pay for covered benefits for any health needs that are not related to the patient’s terminal illness. A terminally ill patient may receive hospice care for as long as necessary when a physician certifies that he or she has a life expectancy of 6 months or less; however, recertification of life expectancy is required at regular intervals (approximately 60 days). At any time, patients or their family members have the right to revoke the hospice benefit and resume Medicare coverage of the benefits that were waived when hospice care was elected. The patient can reelect to return to receiving hospice coverage at a later date. The hospice agency can

discharge a patient if their health improves and they no longer have a 6-month prognosis.

Hospice services can be provided in multiple settings. More than 90% of the hospice services provided in the United States are based in patients' homes. Home hospice typically requires that a family member or loved one be established as the primary caregiver and be home with the patient at all times. Members of the hospice service will have regularly scheduled visits with the patient and caregiver as well as being available 24 h a day, 7 days a week by phone to handle emergencies or questions. Hospice services can also be provided in hospitals and nursing homes or other long-term care facilities. These services can be provided on specialized hospice units, by trained nursing staff that can care for hospice patients, or through arrangements made with independent community-based hospice services that provide care inside of the hospital or nursing home facilities. These services can be a good option for patients who want hospice care but do not have primary caregivers to take care of them at home. Finally, many communities have free-standing, independently owned hospices that feature inpatient care facilities as well as home care hospice services.

Hospice affirms the concept of palliative care as an intensive program that enhances comfort and promotes the quality of life for individuals and their families. When cure is no longer possible, hospice recognizes that a peaceful and comfortable death is an essential goal of health care. Hospice philosophy recognizes that death is a natural part of the life cycle and that people have a human right to die in comfort and with dignity. The goal of hospice is not to prolong life or hasten death, but to allow people to achieve high levels of quality of life at the end of their life. Hospice care is also holistic and aims to treat the whole person rather than just focusing on the disease. The expected outcome is relief from distressing symptoms, lower levels of pain, and/or enhanced quality of life. Hospice philosophy is a family-centered approach and aims to assist the family and loved ones with the dying process as much as the patient. Patients and family members are encouraged to be in control of decision making

and treatment planning. Finally, hospice philosophy promotes the idea that palliative care should be available to all individuals and their families without regard to age, gender, nationality, race, creed, sexual orientation, disability, diagnosis, availability of a primary caregiver, or ability to pay.

To provide holistic care, hospice services are provided by an interdisciplinary team of doctors, nurses, social workers, counselors, home health aides, clergy, physical and occupational therapists, and trained volunteers among others. Hospice organizations typically become the primary care coordinators during end-of-life care. Services are provided during the last stages of illness, throughout the dying process, and to family members during the first year after the patient's death. Hospice services provide medical treatment to relieve pain and to control other physical symptoms. Patients on hospice can continue to receive palliative radiation and chemotherapy that are designed to reduce pain. Hospice services provide needed medications, medical supplies, and equipment, as well as special services such as speech therapy, physical therapy, or nutritional consultation when indicated. Hospice services also provide assistance with basic needs of daily living by providing limited home health aide and supervision/training for family members. Family coaching and family conferences are common to help patients and their family members understand the illness, how to care for the patient, and improve communication about end-of-life issues. Hospice staff may assist the patient with unfinished legal or financial business and in making funeral arrangements. Patients who need additional care are able to receive inpatient care as well as brief periods of respite care (up to 5 days), so that caregivers can attend special events or get rest from caregiving responsibilities. Counselors and clergy provide emotional support and address the spiritual needs of patients and their family members. Family members are able to receive bereavement care up to 13 months after the patient's death, which might include counseling, supportive phone calls, referrals to community resources, support groups, and/or memorial services.

Cross-References

- [End-of-Life Care](#)
- [Home Health Care](#)
- [Palliative Care](#)

References and Further Readings

- American Academy of Hospice and Palliative Medicine (AAHPM). Published in 2012 in Glenview. Retrieved from www.aahpm.org.
- Connor, S. R. (2009). *Hospice and palliative care: The essential guide* (2nd ed.). New York: Routledge.
- Fine, P. G. (2008). *The hospice companion*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Forman, W. B., Kitzes, J. A., Anderson, R. P., & Sheehan, D. K. (2003). *Hospice and palliative care: Concepts and practice* (2nd ed.). Sudbury: Jones and Bartlett.
- International Association for Hospice and Palliative Care (IAHPC). Published in 2012 in Houston, TX. Retrieved from www.hospicecare.com.
- Kubler-Ross, E. (1969). *On death and dying*. New York: Scribner.
- National Hospice and Palliative Care Organization (NHPCO). Published in 2012 in Alexandria. Retrieved from www.nhpco.org.
- Saunders, D. C., & Kastenbaum, R. (Eds.). (1997). *Hospice care on the international scene*. New York: Springer.

Hospice Care

- [Hospice](#)

Hospice Programs

- [Hospice](#)

Hospice Services

- [Hospice](#)

Hospices

- [Palliative Care](#)

Hospital Anxiety

Hollie Pellosmaa

Tusculum University, Greeneville, TN, USA

Synonyms

[Fear of hospitals](#); [Hospital stress](#); [Nosocomophobia](#); [Operative anxiety](#)

Definition

Hospital anxiety refers to the anxious response and unusual preoccupation about noxious consequences (real or not) that can result from visiting hospitals or from undergoing medical procedures in a hospital.

Description

Hospital anxiety and related concepts (e.g., “fear of hospitals” and “hospital stress”) have been widely examined in studies investigating barriers to both seeking medical care (Tod et al. 2001) and blood and organ donation (Boulware et al. 2002) and preparation for medical procedures (Johnston 1980). These fears, if irrational, can lead individuals to avoid appropriate medical care when needed or to disregard medical instructions. Individuals with excessive fear of hospitals (i.e., nosocomophobia) often avoid hospitals which results in skipping or missing appointments and avoid visiting friends/relatives who are hospitalized. These fears are often founded on the belief that visiting a hospital may result in serious illness or death. Original work focused on nonspecific anxious responses, but recent work has expanded the study of “hospital anxiety” by focusing on

specific triggers (e.g., blood, needles, and injuries).

Early studies examined the affective responses that both adult and pediatric patients experienced in hospital settings (e.g., hospital stress). The aim of this work was to understand the effects of anxiety and stress experienced before and/or after undergoing a medical procedure on medical outcomes (e.g., slow recovery post-surgery, increased pain, and physical symptoms). Pre- and postoperative anxiety was found to disturb sleep patterns (Kain and Caldwell-Andrews 2003), reduce adherence to medical recommendations (Mathews and Ridgeway 1981), and increase pain sensitivity (Chapman and Cox 1977). Among children, self-report data also showed an association between preoperative anxiety and postoperative negative behaviors (e.g., eating/sleeping problems; Melamed et al. 1983).

Although it is well established that anxiety levels are indirectly and directly associated with physiological and psychological factors that influence health outcomes, the mechanisms are poorly understood (Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 1998). For example, psychoneuroimmunological data suggest that anxiety may delay wound healing by indirectly influencing immune function. Specifically, it has been proposed that individuals who report high levels of anxiety when undergoing medical procedures tend to experience increased pain and may require more anesthesia during surgery and more analgesics during recovery than low-anxiety individuals (Maranets and Kain 1999). This increased use of anesthesia and analgesics, in turn, can result in endocrinological and immunological changes that delay wound healing. Similarly, postoperative anxiety can delay recovery from surgical procedures by influencing adherence to medical recommendations. Existing data suggest that specific anxiety and fear (e.g., fear of pain, cardiophobia, fear of injury) and not general anxiety are the key determinants of maladaptive behaviors (Berlin et al. 1997).

Individual and situational factors have been implicated as antecedents of hospital anxiety. Although the specific genetic contribution to hospital anxiety is currently unknown, twin studies

suggest that genetic predisposition accounts for an important proportion of the variance in anxiety disorders (Hettema et al. 2001). Personal experience and learning may lead to specific anxiety/fear. For instance, needle phobia is often the result of an aversive experience with needles involving doctors and/or dentists. These fears can also be the result of watching another individual experience a negative reaction to the medical procedures (Willemsen et al. 2002). Other individual factors associated with increases in hospital anxiety include sex (being female), moderate to intense levels of depressive symptoms, and a history of chronic medical conditions (Caumo et al. 2001). Adults undergoing surgical procedures also indicated that they experienced anxiety surrounding uncertainty of the outcomes of the procedure (Caumo et al. 2001). Among situational factors, poor or lack of communication with hospital personnel and health-care providers, along with loss of autonomy and control, are considered some of the most stressful aspects of hospitalization that could lead individuals to experience anxiety (Volcier 1974).

Assessments of hospital anxiety and related concepts can be conducted in multiple ways. Researchers examine three main aspects of anxiety, patients' cognitions, emotional state, and situation-specific anxieties. The most commonly used self-report measures of anxiety for adults include Spielberger's State-Trait Anxiety Inventory and the Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale (HADS). Spielberger's State-Trait Anxiety Inventory for Children and the Children's Manifest Anxiety Scale have been widely used to assess anxiety among children. Observational tools often include the Clinical Anxiety Scale, Yale Preoperative Anxiety Scale, and the Palmar Sweat Index. Other instruments that assess specific aspects of hospital anxiety (e.g., the Injection Phobia Scale Anxiety, Blood-Injection Symptom Scale, Medical Fear Survey, and the Disgust Scale) can provide important information about the specific triggers that lead to patients' anxious responses.

Interventions to reduce hospital anxiety have a long history. Studies with children suggest that preoperational therapeutic play reduces anxiety

levels surrounding procedures (Hosseinpour and Memarzadeh 2010) and behavioral modeling reduces pre- and postoperative anxiety and negative behaviors (Melamed and Siegel 1975). Initial work with adults focused on the reduction of pain and anxiety caused by stressful and painful medical procedures (e.g., endoscopy). Work with adults demonstrated that accurate sensory and procedural information successfully reduced anxiety and pain caused by medical procedures (Johnson and Leventhal 1974; Suls and Wan 1989). Principles from these earlier works are at the core of more recent and innovative psychological interventions to reduce pre and postoperative anxiety, such as using an empathetic patient-centered approach (Pereira et al. 2016). Additionally, exposure techniques have been associated with reduction in fear of blood-injection illness in adults (Olatunji et al. 2007), whereas behavioral therapies (e.g., modeling) can reduce anxiety levels in children with needle phobias (Willemssen et al. 2002).

Cross-References

- [Anxiety](#)
- [Fear and Fear Avoidance](#)
- [HADS](#)
- [Health Anxiety](#)
- [Trait Anxiety](#)

References and Further Reading

- Ali, A., Lindstrand, A., Sundberg, M., & Flivik, G. (2017). Preoperative anxiety and depression correlate with dissatisfaction after total knee arthroplasty: A prospective longitudinal cohort study of 186 patients, with 4-year follow-up. *The Journal of Arthroplasty*, 32(3), 767–770.
- Berlin, I., Bisslerbe, J. C., Eiber, R., Balssa, N., Sachon, C., Bosquet, F., et al. (1997). Phobic symptoms, particularly the fear of blood and injury, are associated with poor glycemic control in type I diabetic adults. *Diabetes Care*, 20(2), 176–178.
- Boulware, L. E., Ratner, L. E., Ness, P. M., Cooper, L. A., Campbell-Lee, S., LaVeist, T. A., et al. (2002). The contribution of sociodemographic, medical, and attitudinal factors to blood donation among the general public. *Transfusion*, 42(6), 669–678.
- Caumo, W., Schmidt, A. P., Schneider, C. N., Bergmann, J., Iwamoto, C. W., Bandeira, D., et al. (2001). Risk factors for preoperative anxiety in adults. *Acta Anaesthesiologica Scandinavica*, 45(3), 298–307.
- Chapman, C. R., & Cox, G. B. (1977). Anxiety, pain, and depression surrounding elective surgery: A multivariate comparison of abdominal surgery patients with kidney donors and recipients. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 21(1), 7–15.
- Hettema, J. M., Neale, M. C., & Kendler, K. S. (2001). A review and meta-analysis of the genetic epidemiology of anxiety disorders. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 158(10), 1568–1578.
- Hosseinpour, M., & Memarzadeh, M. (2010). Use of a preoperative playroom to prepare children for surgery. *European Journal of Pediatric Surgery*, 20(6), 408–411.
- Johnson, J. E., & Leventhal, H. (1974). Effects of accurate expectations and behavioral instructions on reactions during a noxious medical examination. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 29(5), 710–718.
- Johnston, M. (1980). Anxiety in surgical patients. *Psychological Medicine: A Journal of Research in Psychiatry and the Allied Sciences*, 10(1), 145–152.
- Kain, Z. N., & Caldwell-Andrews, A. A. (2003). Sleeping characteristics of adults undergoing outpatient elective surgery: A cohort study. *Journal of Clinical Anesthesia*, 15(7), 505–509.
- Kendall, P. C. (2012). *Child and adolescent therapy: Cognitive-behavioral procedures* (4th ed.). New York: Guilford Press.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J., Page, G., Marucha, P., MacCallum, R., & Glaser, R. (1998). Psychological influences on surgical recovery: Perspectives from psychoneuroimmunology. *American Psychologist*, 53(11), 1209–1218.
- Kulik, J. A., Mahler, H. I. M., & Moore, P. J. (1996). Social comparison and affiliation under threat: Effects on recovery from major surgery. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 71(5), 967–979.
- Lehrer, P. M., Woolfolk, R. L., & Sime, W. E. (Eds). (2007). *Principles and practice of stress management* (3rd ed.). New York: Guilford Press.
- Mahler, H. I. M., & Kulik, J. A. (2002). Effects of a videotape information intervention for spouses on spouse distress and patient recovery from surgery. *Health Psychology*, 21(5), 427–437.
- Maranets, I., & Kain, Z. N. (1999). Preoperative anxiety and intraoperative anesthetic requirements. *Anesthesia and Analgesia*, 89(6), 1346.
- Mathews, A., & Ridgeway, V. (1981). Personality and surgical recovery: A review. *British Journal of Clinical Psychology*, 20(4), 243–260.
- Melamed, B. G., & Siegel, L. J. (1975). Reduction of anxiety in children facing hospitalization and surgery by use of filmed modeling. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 43(4), 511–521.
- Melamed, B. G., Dearborn, M., & Hermecz, D. A. (1983). Necessary considerations for surgery preparation: Age and previous experience. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 45(6), 517–525.

- Mineka, S., & Zinbarg, R. (2006). A contemporary learning theory perspective on the etiology of anxiety disorders: It's not what you thought it was. *American Psychologist*, 61(1), 10–26.
- Olatunji, B., Smits, J., Connolly, K., Willems, J., & Lohr, J. (2007). Examination of the decline in fear and disgust during exposure to threat-relevant stimuli in blood-injection-injury phobia. *Journal of Anxiety Disorders*, 21(3), 445–455.
- Öst, L., Hellström, K., & Kåver, A. (1992). One versus five sessions of exposure in the treatment of injection phobia. *Behavior Therapy*, 23(2), 263–281.
- Pereira, L., Figueiredo-Braga, M., & Carvalho, I. (2016). Preoperative anxiety in ambulatory surgery: The impact of an empathic patient-centered approach on psychological and clinical outcomes. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 99(5), 733–738.
- Rasouli, M., Menendez, M., Sayadipour, A., Purtill, J., & Parvizi, J. (2016). Direct cost and complications associated with total joint arthroplasty in patients with preoperative anxiety and depression. *The Journal of Arthroplasty*, 31(2), 533–536.
- Suls, J., & Wan, C. (1989). Effects of sensory and procedural information on coping with stressful medical procedures and pain: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 57(3), 372–379.
- Tod, A. M., Read, C., Lacey, A., & Abbott, J. (2001). Barriers to uptake of services for coronary heart disease: Qualitative study. *British Medical Journal*, 323(7306), 214.
- Volcier, B. (1974). Patients' perceptions of stressful events associated with hospitalization. *Nursing Research*, 23(3), 235–238.
- Willemsen, H., Chowdhury, U., & Briscall, L. (2002). Needle phobia in children: A discussion of aetiology and treatment options. *Clinical Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, 7(4), 609–619.
- Wolitzky-Taylor, K. B., Horowitz, J. D., Powers, M. B., & Telch, M. J. (2008). Psychological approaches in the treatment of specific phobias: A meta-analysis. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 28(6), 1021–1037.

Hospital Anxiety Depression Scale

Steven C. Palmer
Abramson Cancer Center, University of
Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Synonyms

HADS

Definition

The Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale (HADS; Zigmond and Snaith 1983) is a 14-item measure designed to be used as a brief screen for depression (seven items) and anxiety (seven items) disorders among nonpsychiatric, medically ill, outpatient populations. As a screening instrument, the HADS does not provide definitive diagnosis, but is the first step in a multistage process of selecting individuals at elevated risk for disorder to be evaluated through clinical interview. For example, the HADS does not assess specific symptoms of major depressive disorder (e.g., suicidality, guilt) thought by its authors to be less prevalent in nonpsychiatric populations, functional impairment, or frequency of symptoms, and the time frame assesses the previous 7 days, rather than 2 weeks of mood disturbance. Moreover, five of the seven items in the Depression subscale assess anhedonia-related experiences, and there is no question specifically addressing low mood. The HADS attempts to improve specificity of measurement by reducing physical symptoms that confound physical and psychological disorder (e.g., fatigue, insomnia) and focusing more on behavioral and affective symptoms. Anxiety and Depression subscales can range in score from 0 to 21, with scores of 11 or higher indicating probable caseness for clinical disorders and scores of 8–10 being suggestive of caseness. However, numerous cut-points have been suggested in the literature, as have total rather than subscale scores, though this has not been recommended by the scale authors. The HADS has been used as a measure of symptom severity among individuals with an anxiety or depressive disorder to allow tracking of therapeutic response over time. Both Anxiety and Depression subscales have demonstrated adequate internal consistency (Cronbach's $\alpha \geq 0.67$ and ≤ 0.93) across numerous translated versions, and adequate sensitivity and specificity for disorder using a score of ≤ 8 (both approximately 0.80; Bjelland et al. 2002), though positive predictive values have been shown to be substantially lower (e.g., 0.17 for depressive disorder) in medical patients (Silverstone, 1994, cited in Parker and Hyett 2010).

Cross-References

- [Anxiety and Its Measurement](#)
- [Depression: Measurement](#)
- [Screening](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bjelland, I., Dahl, A. A., Haug, T. T., & Neckelmann, D. (2002). The validity of the hospital anxiety and depression scale. An updated literature review. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 62(2), 69–77.
- Parker, G., & Hyett, M. (2010). Screening for depression in medical settings: Are specific scales useful? In A. J. Mitchell & J. C. Coyne (Eds.), *Screening for depression in clinical practice: An evidence-based guide* (pp. 191–202). Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Zigmond, A. S., & Snaith, R. P. (1983). The hospital anxiety and depression scale. *Acta Psychiatrica Scandinavica*, 67(6), 361–370.

Definition

Hostility is a multidimensional personality trait with distinct cognitive, affective, and behavioral features. The cognitive component of hostility is evident in the habitual patterns of cynical mistrust and negative, suspicious attitudes and beliefs that hostile individuals have toward their interpersonal network and the community at large. The affective (emotional) component reflects the internal and external expression of anger and contempt, which may vary in degrees from moderate to high. The behavioral component may manifest through mannerisms and actions that perpetuate interpersonal conflicts, such as aggression and irritability. Although distinctions can be made among the cognitive, affective, and behavioral components of hostility, they often are interrelated and co-occur.

Description

The role of hostility and anger in cardiovascular disease (CVD) and more general health and well-being has a long history. For centuries, anecdotal reports and historical observations suggested that strong negative emotions, and particularly feelings of anger, aggressive tendencies, and hostile attitudes, were related to poor health (Everson-Rose and Lewis 2005; Gallo and Matthews 2003). These beliefs were supported in early psychoanalytic and psychodynamic reports that identified such personality characteristics in patients with hypertension and heart disease (Everson-Rose and Lewis 2005). In the mid-1900s, this literature and related observations prompted work on identifying and assessing “coronary-prone behavior”; indeed, hostility, anger, and aggression were identified as critical tenets of coronary-prone behavior, which later came to be redefined as Type A behavior pattern (Friedman and Rosenman 1971). Type A individuals are described as highly ambitious, competitive, time-urgent, impatient, quick-tempered, and tightly wound. The seminal work by Drs. Rosenman and Friedman in the Western Collaborate Group Study provided clear evidence

Hospital Stress

- [Hospital Anxiety](#)

Hostile Affect

- [Trait Anger](#)

Hostility

Susan A. Everson-Rose, Priya Balaji and Xiaohui Yu
Department of Medicine and Program in Health Disparities Research, University of Minnesota Medical School, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Affective hostility](#); [Aggression](#); [Anger](#); [Cynical distrust](#); [Cynical hostility](#); [Mistrust](#)

identifying Type A behavior as a risk factor for coronary heart disease (CHD) (Rosenman et al. 1975). Indeed, this study and initial empirical confirmation of the study findings prompted the medical community to accept Type A as the first psychosocial factor clearly identified as a risk factor for CHD (Cooper et al. 1981). However, the reproducibility of these findings was limited, and negative findings on Type A and CHD risk began to appear in the literature. Consequently, researchers began to consider whether one of the components of Type A was driving the adverse effects previously identified for the broader Type A construct. Strong empirical evidence suggests that hostility is the “toxic” component of Type A behavior pattern (Williams et al. 1980) and an independent predictor of CVD (Miller et al. 1996).

Measurement

The development of valid and robust tools for measuring hostile characteristics and traits enabled systematic investigations of the impact of hostility on health. The Cook and Medley Hostility Scale (CMHS) (Cook and Medley 1954) was derived from the MMPI over 60 years ago and remains one of the most commonly used measures of hostility. It originally was devised to identify teachers who had poor rapport with their students but subsequently was adopted as a more general indicator of hostility following its reported association with angiographic evidence of CHD (Williams et al. 1980) and CVD events and mortality (for reviews, see Everson-Rose and Lewis 2005; Hemingway and Marmot 1999). The CMHS consists of 50 true-false items, where 1 point is assigned for each “hostile” response and higher scores indicate greater hostility. Several subsets of items on the CMHS have been used to measure specific components of hostility, the most common among them being cynicism. Other commonly used measures include the Buss-Durkee Hostility Inventory, the Multidimensional Anger Inventory, and the Potential for Hostility measure derived from the Type A behavior pattern structured interview. Each measure is designed to

broadly assess hostility and expressions of anger; however, these scales are not completely overlapping in terms of the dimensions of hostility that they capture (e.g., cynicism, hostile affect, anger expression, anger suppression). The potential for these measures to tap into different components of hostility should be taken into consideration when relating them to health outcomes. The Children’s Scale of Hostility and Aggression: Reactive/Proactive (C-SHARP) was developed to assess hostility specifically in children and young adults with intellectual and developmental disabilities (Farmer and Aman 2009, 2010). Given observed gender differences in the expression of hostility, structured interview methods of hostility assessment in particular may not be measuring the same hostility construct in females as in males. In future research, the gender of the interviewer should also be taken into consideration, because the type and amount of hostility expressed may vary with whether the subject is facing a male or female interviewer (Davidson and Hall 1995).

Hostility and Health

The literature on the relationship between hostility and physical health is expansive and spans across several disciplines. Most of these observations focus on the relationship between hostility (and its components) and the risk for poor cardiovascular outcomes. The literature relating hostility to non-cardiovascular diseases remains scarce. Additionally, mental health issues, such as suicidal ideation, depression, and anxiety, are also found to be associated with hostility.

Hostility and Pathways to CVD

Numerous epidemiological studies have investigated hostility in relation to various indicators of CVD. Literature reviews summarizing this work (Everson-Rose and Lewis 2005; Gallo and Matthews 2003; Miller et al. 1996) highlight numerous inconsistencies between study findings. Some of the studies reviewed found that higher levels of hostility are associated with CHD incidence, presence and progression of

atherosclerosis, hypertension, peripheral arterial disease, and all-cause and CVD mortality. However, the literature is not unequivocal – other studies have reported marginal and/or null findings between hostility and risk for CHD or CVD (Hemingway and Marmot 1999). Miller et al. (1996) conducted a meta-analysis of 45 studies relating hostility to CHD and suggested that variations in the methodology used by these studies may account for the mixed findings in the literature, such as the type of hostility measure, the study design, and the sociodemographics of the study population. Nevertheless, Miller et al. concluded that hostility is indeed an independent predictor of CHD and all-cause mortality. More recent studies, particularly population-based studies, provide further support for hostility as a significant risk factor for CVD (Everson-Rose and Lewis 2005); however, among patients with documented CHD, there is limited evidence that hostility or anger predicts recurrent coronary events or mortality (Hemingway and Marmot 1999).

Hostility adversely affects cardiovascular disease (CVD) morbidity and mortality, including stroke and transient ischemic attack (Everson-Rose et al. 2014). Hostility may confer independent risk for CVD but also may operate through indirect pathways via its relationship with a number of other psychosocial and biobehavioral risk factors. Hostility is positively correlated with negative emotional states, including depression, anger, and anxiety, and inversely associated with positive psychosocial factors and personality traits, including social support and optimism (Gallo and Matthews 2003; Tindle et al. 2009). Additionally, a number of studies have identified behavioral risk factors related to hostility. For example, a meta-analysis of 27 studies found that the CMHS was significantly associated with several traditional CVD-related risk factors (Bunde and Suls 2006), including obesity (i.e., body mass index, waist-hip ratio) and alcohol consumption. A recent study indicates that aspects of hostility, particularly aggressive responding, may also be a risk factor for early-onset smoking (Bernstein et al. 2014). Other studies link hostility to physical inactivity and dietary/caloric intake

(Scherwitz et al. 1992). Moreover, several studies have identified biological and physiological pathways that may link hostility to disease. For instance, hostility is related to metabolic dysregulation, including impaired glucose metabolism, insulin resistance, and metabolic syndrome (Bunde and Suls 2006; Goldbacher and Matthews 2007). Hostile attitudes, emotions, and behaviors are associated with physiological response patterns that reflect activation of several biological systems in the body. Indeed, the physiological responses induced by hostility are characteristic of the “fight or flight” response, including prolonged activation of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis and autonomic nervous system (ANS). For example, research shows that hostile individuals tend to have higher systolic and diastolic blood pressure, higher heart rates, as well as increased levels of stress hormones (i.e., cortisol), catecholamines (i.e., epinephrine, norepinephrine), and pro-inflammatory cytokines (i.e., IL-6 and IL-1) (Everson-Rose and Lewis 2005). In a multivariable analysis, low-density lipoprotein cholesterol was associated with hostility but only among white subjects currently taking lipid-lowering medications (Sahebzamani et al. 2013). Furthermore, hostility is related to increased platelet activation and aggregation, which together with the other physiological risk factors contributes to increased atherosclerosis and thrombus and plaque formation (Markovitz et al. 1996). In addition, significant univariate associations have been shown between the CMHS and IL-6, TNF- α , and MCP-1. Interestingly, hostility was positively related to TNF- α in women, but not men. Greater hostility is also related to greater IL-6 levels among younger women (Demarble et al. 2014). On the whole, these observations support the fact that hostility clusters with other psychosocial and biobehavioral factors may increase risk for CVD and other poor health outcomes through both direct and indirect pathways.

Hostility and Non-CVD

Compared with the literature relating hostility to cardiovascular diseases, studies relating hostility to non-cardiovascular diseases remain scarce.

Limited evidence has tied hostile traits to cancer (Tindle et al. 2009), cognitive function (Barnes et al. 2009), and general health (Adams 1994). Additionally, accruing evidence shows that hostility levels are associated with worse metabolic function and glucose regulation (Niaura et al. 2002; Shen et al. 2008), higher levels of inflammation (Graham et al. 2006; Demarble et al. 2014), an increased risk of peptic ulcer (Lemogne et al. 2015), poorer lung function (Kubzansky et al. 2006), perceived pain intensity (Burns et al. 2013), and lower levels of cognitive function (Barnes et al. 2009). Reduced hostility was being related to poorer subjective physical health (Lutjen et al. 2012). One study showed that a higher level of hostility was significantly associated with the global score of the Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index, a subjective measure of sleep quality, but unrelated to objective sleep measures (Tsuchiyama et al. 2013). Additionally, independent of health behaviors, cognitive hostility was related to all-cause mortality (Klabbers et al. 2012). Another study reported that high-hostile men have significantly shorter leukocyte telomere length and elevated leukocyte telomerase activity than their low-hostile counterparts, which suggests that hostility might impact health by promoting cellular aging (Brydon et al. 2012).

Hostility and Mental Health

Several studies examining the relationship between hostility and mental health have been focused on adolescent populations. Among these studies, many were conducted outside the United States. One study examined a nationwide sample of adolescents residing in urban areas of China and found that hostility and trait anger had a significant positive association with suicidal ideation. Hostility and physical aggression also were positively related to suicide plans (Zhang et al. 2012). A study conducted in Portugal found that depression but not anxiety was higher in adolescents who demonstrate hostile behaviors (Cruz et al. 2014). A study conducted in Spain evaluated the relationship between impulsivity-related personality traits and suicidal behaviors in a sample of 76 adults diagnosed with borderline personality disorder (BPD) and showed that hostility traits

had a significant impact on suicide attempts in individuals with BPD (Ferraz et al. 2013).

Sociodemographic Characteristics

Hostility relates to a number of sociodemographic characteristics, with some support for differences between groups. Consistent evidence has shown an inverse relationship between socioeconomic status (SES) and hostility. This relation is linear and suggests that those with the lowest education, income, and occupational status are more likely to express hostile characteristics. Furthermore, there is evidence that hostility may mediate the relationship between SES and CVD (Gallo and Matthews 2003). In addition to social and economic differences in the expression of hostility, some studies show that hostile traits may vary by race and sex. One study suggests that African Americans have a unique pattern of hostility, and two latent sub-factors, described as hostile affect and predatory self-interest, are associated with a marker of CVD (Mwendwa et al. 2013). Also, growing evidence suggests that blacks and men report higher levels of hostility than their white and female counterparts (Gallo and Matthews 2003); other studies indicate that hostility is higher in younger adults and the elderly and lower in middle-aged adults (Barefoot et al. 1993). The same study also found that education may moderate the relationship between race and hostility, with more educated blacks reporting lower levels of hostility compared to less educated blacks and more educated whites reporting higher levels of hostility than less educated whites. Nevertheless, the current literature lacks clear evidence that differences in the expression of hostility by race or sex translate into disparities in the risk for CVD. Several studies have tested this hypothesis and found no association (Everson-Rose et al. 2006) and/or lacked the sampling power necessary to test for these interactions (Iribarren et al. 2000). Future research should include large, balanced, and diverse samples in order to further investigate potential sociodemographic differences in the risk of CVD related to hostility.

Hostility in Children and Adolescents

The role of hostility during childhood and adolescence may explain the expression of aggressive behavior, both in childhood and in adulthood. Measurement of hostility in children and adolescents differs from measurement of adult hostility. Furthermore, as discussed above, hostility may be a predictor of suicidal behaviors or tendencies in adolescents. Another study explored hostility as a potential predictor of cigarette use among adolescents. The study was conducted in a sample of adolescents 14–19 years old and concluded that aspects of hostility – particularly, aggressive responding – may be a risk factor for early-onset smoking (Bernstein et al. 2014).

Summary

This entry provides a general insight into the history and research relating hostility to CVD and other health outcomes. Hostility is defined by cynical and suspicious attitudes, anger, bitterness, and varying levels of aggression and opposition. The role of hostility in health emerged from the shadow of the classic Type A behavior pattern and has gained momentum as one of the most pathogenic components of Type A. Instruments created to assess hostility have been vital to measuring the impact of hostility on health, and the CMHS stands out as a valid and reliable assessment tool. The literature on the role of hostility in cardiovascular health is somewhat mixed: evidence is more limited for a role of hostility in recurrent events or mortality among persons with existing heart disease, whereas evidence from methodologically sound, population-based studies generally provides support for the hypothesis that increased hostility is associated with excess risk of CVD. Research targeted at addressing these inconsistencies has investigated a number of potential pathways and mechanisms underlying the relationship between hostility and CVD. As a result, it is becoming more apparent that the impact of hostility on health may vary based on an individual's sociodemographic profile and that hostility may operate through other psychosocial,

behavioral, and physiological factors to influence CVD outcomes.

Cross-References

- Anger, Measurement
- Hostility, Cynical
- Hostility, Measurement of
- Interpersonal Circumplex
- Negative Thoughts
- Trait Anger

References and Further Reading

- Adams, S. H. (1994). Role of hostility in women's health during midlife: A longitudinal study. *Health Psychology, 13*, 488–495.
- Barefoot, J. C., Beckham, J. C., Haney, T. L., Siegler, I. C., & Lipkus, I. M. (1993). Age difference in hostility among middle-aged and older adults. *Psychology and Aging, 8*, 3–9.
- Barnes, L. L., Mendes de Leon, C. F., Bienas, J. L., Wilsons, R. S., Everson-Rose, S. A., & Evans, D. A. (2009). Hostility and change in cognitive function over time in older blacks and whites. *Psychosomatic Medicine, 17*, 652–658.
- Bernstein, M. H. B., Colby, S. M., Bidwell, L. C., Kahler, C. W., & Leventhal, A. M. (2014). Hostility and Cigarette Use: A comparison between smokers and non-smokers in a matched sample of adolescents. *Nicotine & Tobacco Research, 16*, 1085–1093.
- Brydon, L., Lin, J., Butcher, L., Hamer, M., Erusalimsky, J. D., Blackburn, E. H., & Steptoe, A. (2012). Hostility and cellular aging in men from the Whitehall II cohort. *Biological Psychiatry, 71*(9), 767–773. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopsych.2011.08.020>. Epub 2011 Oct 5.
- Brydon, L., Lin, J., Butcher, L., Hamer, M., Erusalimsky, J. D., & Blackburn, E. H. (2016). Hostility and cellular aging in men from the Whitehall II cohort. *BPS, 71*, 767–773.
- Bunde, J., & Suls, J. (2006). A qualitative analysis of the relationship between the Cook-Medley Hostility scale and traditional coronary artery disease risk factors. *Health Psychology, 25*, 493–500.
- Burns, J. W., Peterson, K. M., Smith, D. A., Keefe, F. J., Porter, L. S., Schuster, E., & Kinner, E. (2013). Temporal associations between spouse criticism/hostility and pain among patients with chronic pain: A within-couple daily diary study. *Pain, 154*(12), 2715–2721. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pain.2013.07.053>. Epub 2013 Aug 6.
- Cook, W. W., & Medley, D. M. (1954). Proposed hostility and pharisaic-virtue scales for the MMPI. *Journal of Applied Psychology, 38*, 414–418.

- Cooper, T., Detre, T., & Weiss, S. M. (1981). Coronary-prone behavior and coronary heart disease: A critical review. The review panel on coronary-prone behavior and coronary heart disease. *Circulation*, 63, 1199–1215.
- Cruz, C., Duarte, J., Nelas, P., Antunes, A., & Almeida, M. (2014). Anxiety and depression in adolescents with hostile behaviour. *Atención Primaria*, 46, 107–111.
- Davidson, K., & Hall, P. (1995). What does potential for hostility measure? Gender differences in the expression of hostility. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 18, 233–247.
- Demarble, J. B., Moskowitz, D. S., Tardif, J., & Antono, B. D. (2014). The relation between hostility and concurrent levels of inflammation is sex, age, and measure dependent. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 76, 384–393.
- Everson-Rose, S. A., & Lewis, T. T. (2005). Psychosocial factors and cardiovascular diseases. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 26, 469–500.
- Everson-Rose, S. A., Lewis, T. T., Karavolos, K., Matthews, K. A., Sutton-Tyrrell, K., & Powell, L. H. (2006). Cynical hostility and carotid atherosclerosis in African American and white women: The Study of Women's Health Across the Nation (SWAN) heart study. *American Heart Journal*, 152, 982.e7–982.e13.
- Everson-Rose, S. A., Roetker, N. S., Lutsey, P. L., Kershaw, K., Longsteth, W. T., Sacco, R. L., Diez Roux, A. V., & Alonso, A. (2014). Chronic stress, depressive symptoms, anger, hostility, and risk of stroke and transient ischemic attack in the MESA Study. *Stroke*, 45, 2318–2323.
- Farmer, C., & Aman, M. (2009). Development of the children's scale of hostility and aggression: Reactive/proactive (C-SHARP). *Research in Developmental Disabilities*, 30, 1155–1167.
- Farmer, C., & Aman, M. (2010). Psychometric properties of the Children's Scale of Hostility and Aggression (C-SHARP). *Research in Developmental Disabilities*, 31, 270–280.
- Ferraz, L., Portella, M. J., Vázquez, M., Gutiérrez, F., Martín-Blanco, A., Martín-Santos, R., & Subirà, S. (2013). Hostility and childhood sexual abuse as predictors of suicidal behaviour in Borderline Personality Disorder. *Psychiatry Research*, 210(3), 980–985. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.psychres.2013.07.004>. Epub 2013 Aug 29.
- Ferraz, L., Portella, M. J., Vázquez, M., Gutiérrez, F., Martín-Blanco, A., Martín-Santos, R., & Subirà, S. (2016). Hostility and childhood sexual abuse as predictors of suicidal behaviour in borderline personality disorder. *Psychiatry Research*, 210, 980–985.
- Friedman, M., & Rosenman, R. H. (1971). Type A behavior pattern: Its association with coronary heart disease. *Annals of Clinical Research*, 3, 300–312.
- Gallo, L. C., & Matthews, K. A. (2003). Understanding the association between socioeconomic status and physical health: Do negative emotions play a role? *Psychological Bulletin*, 129, 10–51.
- Goldbacher, E. M., & Matthews, K. A. (2007). Are psychosocial characteristics related to risk of the metabolic syndrome? A review of the literature. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 34, 240–252.
- Graham, J. E., Robles, T. F., Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Malarkey, W. B., Bissell, M. G., & Glaser, R. (2006). Hostility and pain are related to inflammation in older adults. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 20(4), 389–400. Epub 2006 Jan 11.
- Hemingway, H., & Marmot, M. (1999). Psychosocial factors in the aetiology and prognosis of coronary heart disease: Systematic review of prospective cohort studies. *British Medical Journal*, 318, 1460–1467.
- Iribarren, C., Sidney, S., Bild, D. E., Lui, K., Markovitz, J. H., Roseman, J. M., & Matthews, K. (2000). Association of hostility with coronary artery calcification in young adults: The CARDIA Study. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 283, 2546–2551.
- Klabbers, G., Bosma, H., van den Akker, M., Kempen, G. I. J. M., & van Eijk, J. T. M. (2012). Cognitive hostility predicts all-cause mortality irrespective of behavioural risk at late middle and older age. *European Journal of Public Health*, 23(4), 701–705.
- Kubzansky, L. D., Sparrow, D., Jackson, B., Cohen, S., Weiss, S. T., & Wright, R. J. (2006). Angry breathing: A prospective study of hostility and lung function in the Normative Aging Study. *Thorax*, 61(10), 863–868. Epub 2006 Sep 1.
- Lemogne, C., Levenstein, S., Nabi, H., Ducimetière, P., Goldberg, M., & Zins, M. (2015). Hostility and the risk of peptic ulcer in the GAZEL cohort. *Health Psychology*, 34(2), 181–185.
- Lutjen, L. J., Siltan, N. R., & Flannelly, K. J. (2012). Religion, forgiveness, hostility and health: A structural equation analysis. *Journal of Religion and Health*, 51, 468–478.
- Markovitz, J. H., Matthews, K. A., Kiss, J., & Smitherman, T. C. (1996). Effects of hostility on platelet reactivity to psychological stress in coronary heart disease patients and in healthy controls. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 60, 633–638.
- Miller, T. Q., Smith, T. W., Turner, C. W., Guijarro, M. L., & Hallet, A. J. (1996). A meta-analytic review of research on hostility and physical health. *Psychology Bulletin*, 119, 322–348.
- Mwendwa, D. T., Ali, M. K., Sims, R. C., & Madhere, S. (2013). Psychometric properties of the Cook Medley Hostility Scale and its association with inflammatory markers in African Americans. *Psychology, Health & Medicine*, 18(4), 431–444.
- Niaura, R., Todaro, J. F., Stroud, L., Spiro, A., 3rd, Ward, K. D., & Weiss, S. (2002). Hostility, the metabolic syndrome, and incident coronary heart disease. *Health Psychology*, 21(6), 588–593.
- Rosenman, R. H., Brand, R. J., Jenkins, D., Friedman, M., Straus, R., & Wurm, M. (1975). Coronary heart disease in the Western Collaborative Group Study: Final follow-up experience of 8 1/2 years. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 233, 872–877.
- Sahebzamani, F. M., Aoust, R. F. D., Friedrich, D., Aiyer, A. N., Reis, S. E., & Kip, K. E. (2013). Relationship

- among low cholesterol levels, depressive symptoms, aggression, hostility, and cynicism. *Journal of Clinical Lipidology*, 7(3), 208–216.
- Scherwitz, L. L., Perkins, L. L., Chesney, M. A., Hughes, G. H., Sidney, S., & Manolio, T. A. (1992). Hostility and health behaviors in young adults: The CARDIA Study. Coronary artery risk development in young adults study. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 136, 136–145.
- Shen, B. J., Countryman, A. J., Spiro, A., 3rd, & Niaura, R. (2008). The prospective contribution of hostility characteristics to high fasting glucose levels: The moderating role of marital status. *Diabetes Care*, 31(7), 1293–1298. <https://doi.org/10.2337/dc07-1945>. Epub 2008 May 6.
- Tindle, H. A., Chang, Y., Kuller, L. H., Manson, J. E., Robinson, J. G., & Rosal, M. C. (2009). Optimism, cynical hostility, and incident coronary heart disease and mortality in the women's health initiative. *Circulation*, 120, 656–662.
- Tsuchiyama, K., Terao, T., Wang, Y., Hoaki, N., & Goto, S. (2013). Relationship between hostility and subjective sleep quality. *Psychiatry Research*, 209, 545–548.
- Williams, R. B., Jr., Haney, T. L., Lee, K. L., Kong, Y. H., Blumenthal, J. A., & Whalen, R. E. (1980). Type A behavior, hostility, and coronary atherosclerosis. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 42, 539–549.
- Zhang, P., Roberts, R. E., Liu, Z., Meng, X., Tang, J., Sun, L., & Yu, Y. (2012). Hostility, physical aggression and trait anger as predictors for suicidal behavior in Chinese adolescents: A school-based study. *PLoS Med*, 7(2), e31044.

Hostility, Cynical

Susan A. Everson-Rose, Priya Balaji and Xiaohui Yu

Department of Medicine and Program in Health Disparities Research, University of Minnesota Medical School, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Synonyms

Cynical distrust; Cynical hostility; Cynicism

Definition

Hostility is a relatively stable personality trait typically characterized as a multidimensional construct with significant affective (e.g., anger),

cognitive (e.g., attitudes), and behavioral (e.g., aggression) components. Hostile individuals have a suspicious, mistrustful attitude and often disparaging view of others and generally have a cynical worldview of their environment and social interactions. Thus, this type of personality disposition is often referred to “cynical hostility.”

Description

An expansive literature on personality and disease processes and health risks has developed over the past 50–60 years. Hostility has featured prominently in this literature, particularly with regard to cardiovascular disease (CVD) risk (Miller et al. 1996; Everson-Rose and Lewis 2005). Though some negative studies have been reported, on balance, the available evidence from methodologically strong, population-based studies suggests that hostility is a significant risk factor for myocardial infarction and cardiovascular mortality in healthy populations (Barefoot et al. 1989, 1991; Everson et al. 1997). Less support has been shown for the role of hostility in recurrent CVD or mortality in patients with diagnosed heart disease (Hemingway and Marmot 1999). Studies in older adult populations have looked at hostility in relation to other health outcomes. Accruing evidence shows that hostility levels are associated with worse metabolic function and glucose regulation (Niaura et al. 2002; Shen et al. 2008), higher levels of inflammation (Graham et al. 2006; Demarble et al. 2014), an increased risk of peptic ulcer (Lemogne et al. 2015), poorer lung function (Kubzansky et al. 2006), and lower levels of cognitive function (Barnes et al. 2009). A recent study showed a strong association between cynical hostility and systolic blood pressure. In the same study, waist-to-hip ratio (WHR), instead of BMI, was identified as a moderator of the association, where cynically hostile individuals with a high WHR were found to be particularly at risk for developing hypertension (Versey and Kaplan 2012). In addition, significant univariate associations have been shown between the Cook-Medley hostility scale and inflammatory markers, including IL-6, TNF- α , and MCP-1. Interestingly,

hostility was positively related to TNF- α in women, but not men. Greater hostility also was related to greater IL-6 levels among younger women. Thus, the TNF- α , IL-6, CRP triad appears vulnerable to psychological and behavioral factors and may be one mechanism by which cynical hostility contributes to increased cardiovascular risk in women (Demarble et al. 2014).

Cross-References

- [Anger, Measurement](#)
- [Hostility, Measurement of](#)

References and Further Reading

- Barefoot, J. C., Dodge, K. A., Peterson, B. L., Dahlstrom, W. G., & Williams, R. B., Jr. (1989). The Cook-Medley hostility scale: Item content and ability to predict survival. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 51, 46–57.
- Barefoot, J. C., Dodge, K. A., Dahlstrom, W. G., Siegler, I. C., Anderson, N. B., & Williams, R. B., Jr. (1991). Hostility patterns and health implications: Correlates of Cook-Medley Hostility Scale scores in a national survey contact and ability to predict survival. *Health Psychology*, 10, 18–24.
- Barnes, L. L., Mendes de Leon, C. F., Bienias, J. L., Wilson, R. S., Everson-Rose, S. A., & Evans, D. A. (2009). Hostility and change in cognitive functions over time in older blacks and whites. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 71, 652–658.
- Demarble, J. B., Moskowitz, D. S., Tardif, J., & Antono, B. D. (2014). The relation between hostility and concurrent levels of inflammation is sex, age, and measure dependent. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 76, 384–393.
- Everson, S. A., Kauhanen, J., Kaplan, G. A., Goldberg, D. E., Julkunen, J., Tuomilehto, J., et al. (1997). Hostility and increased risk of mortality and acute myocardial infarction: The mediating role of behavioral risk factors. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 146, 142–152.
- Everson-Rose, S. A., & Lewis, T. T. (2005). Psychosocial factors and cardiovascular diseases. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 26, 469–500.
- Graham, J. E., Robles, T. F., Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Malarkey, W. B., Bissell, M. G., & Glaser, R. (2006). Hostility and pain are related to inflammation in older adults. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 20, 389–400.
- Hemingway, H., & Marmot, M. (1999). Evidence based cardiology: Psychosocial factors in the aetiology and prognosis of coronary heart disease. Systematic review of prospective cohort studies. *British Medical Journal*, 318, 1460–1467.
- Kubzansky, L. D., Sparrow, D., Jackson, B., Cohen, S., Weiss, S. T., & Wright, R. J. (2006). Angry breathing: A prospective study of hostility and lung function in the Normative Aging Study. *Thorax*, 61, 863–868.
- Lemogne, C., Levenstein, S., Nabi, H., Ducimetière, P., Goldberg, M., & Zins, M. (2015). Hostility and the risk of peptic ulcer in the GAZEL cohort. *Health Psychology*, 34, 181–185.
- Miller, T. Q., Smith, T. W., Turner, C. W., Guijarro, M. L., & Hallet, A. J. (1996). A metaanalytic review of research on hostility and physical health. *Psychological Bulletin*, 119, 322–348.
- Niaura, R., Todaro, J. F., Stroud, L., Spiro, A., 3rd, Ward, K. D., & Weiss, S. (2002). Hostility, the metabolic syndrome, and incident coronary heart disease. *Health Psychology*, 21, 588–593.
- Shen, B. J., Countryman, A. J., Spiro, A., 3rd, & Niaura, R. (2008). The prospective contribution of hostility characteristics to high fasting glucose levels: The moderating role of marital status. *Diabetes Care*, 31, 1293–1298.
- Versey, H. S., & Kaplan, G. A. (2012). Mediation and moderation of the association between cynical hostility and systolic blood pressure in low-income women. *Health Education & Behavior*, 39, 219–228.

Hostility, Measurement of

Susan A. Everson-Rose, Priya Balaji and Xiaohui Yu

Department of Medicine and Program in Health Disparities Research, University of Minnesota Medical School, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Synonyms

Cynical distrust; Cynical hostility; Cynicism

Definition

Hostility is defined by a suspicious, mistrustful attitude and cynical disposition toward others. Considered an enduring personality characteristic, hostility is characterized by cognitive, behavioral, and affective or emotional dimensions.

Description

Measurement of hostility can be based on structured interviews, with interviewer ratings of behavioral dimensions and verbal expressions of hostility based on participants' actions and responses within the interview setting. The classic example of this method of assessing hostility is the structured interview for Type A behavior, which was developed by Drs. Meyer Friedman and Ray Rosenman, the two cardiologists who first coined the term "Type A" to describe what they perceived to be coronary-prone behavior (e.g., hostility, aggressiveness, time urgency, and a need to be hard-driving) among their heart patients (Friedman and Rosenman 1971). The Type A interview is administered by carefully trained interviewers using a structured format in which scenarios are presented that attempt to elicit behavioral responses consistent with Type A. For example, at varying points during the interview, the interviewer will interrupt the respondent, challenge his or her responses, abruptly change topics, and also appear to be distracted. Interviews are audiotaped for later scoring. A scoring system is used that characterizes respondents on "potential for hostility" (PH), among other Type A characteristics, and codes on three dimensions of hostility, including intensity of response, hostile content, and style of interaction (Dembroski and Costa 1987). As empirical support for the Type A construct in relation to risk for coronary heart disease faltered, investigators shifted focus to what were considered the most toxic components of Type A, and in particular, emphasis was placed on hostility, anger, and aggressiveness. Despite the seeming advantages of having objective ratings of hostile behaviors made by trained observers, such as PH ratings obtained within the context of the Type A interview, such ratings are uncommon in the current literature on personality and health. Indeed, structured or semi-structured interview formats are rarely used anymore, especially in large community- or population-based studies of health because of the considerable time and expense involved in conducting such interviews. In contrast, a vast majority of such studies typically rely on self-administered or

interviewer-administered questionnaires or surveys (i.e., "self-report") to assess hostility and other personality characteristics. Among the most commonly used measures of hostility is the 50-item Cook-Medley hostility scale (CMHS; Cook and Medley 1954), which was derived from the original Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (Hathaway and McKinley 1940). Items include such statements as "It is safer to trust nobody," "Most people make friends because friends are likely to be useful to them," "I think most people lie to get ahead," and "Most people are honest chiefly through fear of being caught." Several shortened versions of the CMHS are commonly used as well; most of these versions focus on a subset of 8–13 items that specifically assess interpersonal attitudes characterized by cynicism, mistrust of others' intentions, and anger responses (Barefoot et al. 1989; Greenglass and Julkunen 1989; Everson et al. 1997). The original CMHS employed a "true/false" response format with 1 point assigned for each "true" response, and a hostility score was then calculated by summing across items. Alternate response formats have been used with some of the shortened versions of the CMHS, including a 4-point Likert scale in which respondents are asked to indicate the extent to which they agree or disagree with each statement from completely agree (0) to completely disagree (3). With this format, item responses are reverse-coded and summed to create a hostility score.

Other validated self-report instruments used to assess hostility include the Buss-Durkee Hostility Inventory (BDHI; Buss and Durkee 1957) and the Multidimensional Anger Inventory (Siegel 1986). The BDHI includes 75 true/false items; though the items were written to assess seven aspects of hostility, as defined by the creators of the scale, studies show that responses generally reflect two broad categories related to overt verbal and physical expressions of anger and hostility and to angry or hostile thoughts and emotions. The BDHI commonly has been used by psychologists but has rarely been used in epidemiological studies assessing personality or psychosocial factors and health outcomes, largely due to its length and the availability of several shortened versions of

the CMHS. Similarly, the Multidimensional Anger Inventory consists of 25 self-report items that tap into four dimensions, only one of which that is specific to hostility and the remainder, which are more specific to anger. The dimensions assessed include hostile outlook, mode of anger expression (anger-in and anger-out), anger arousal, and range of anger-eliciting situations. This scale was developed in a convenience sample of college students and though also validated in a community sample of male factory workers, it has not been used widely in population- or community-based studies.

Additionally, the current literature suggests that assessing hostility in children and adolescents may differ from assessing hostility in adults. The Children's Scale of Hostility and Aggression: Reactive/Proactive (C-SHARP) is a 51-item scale that was developed to measure aggressive behavior in children with intellectual or developmental disabilities (Farmer and Aman 2009, 2010). In this measure, each item is given two separate ratings: one rating from a 4-point problem scale and one rating from a 5-point provocation scale. The ratings are then compiled into five subscales: verbal aggression, bullying, covert aggression, hostility, and physical aggression. There also is evidence of gender differences in the expression of hostility, which suggests that interpersonal assessments of hostility, such as the structured interview method of hostility assessment, may not measure the same hostility construct in females as in males. In future research, the gender of the interviewer should also be taken into consideration, because the type and amount of hostility expressed may vary with whether the subject is facing male or female interviewer (Davidson and Hall 1995).

Assessment tools of hostility used in epidemiological studies vary widely. Among nine variations of the CMHS evaluated, a seven-item version of the Williams subscale was the most strongly associated with mortality. The authors suggest standardizing the assessment of hostility in future epidemiological studies in order to better understand the association between hostility and mortality in CHD patients (Wong et al. 2014).

Cross-References

- Anger, Measurement
- Hostility, Cynical

References and Further Reading

- Barefoot, J. C., Dodge, K. A., Peterson, B. L., Dahlstrom, W. G., & Williams, R. B., Jr. (1989). The Cook-Medley hostility scale: Item content and ability to predict survival. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 51, 46–57.
- Buss, A. H., & Durkee, A. (1957). An inventory for assessing different kinds of hostility. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 21, 343–349.
- Cook, W. W., & Medley, D. M. (1954). Proposed hostility and pharisaic virtue scales for the MMPI. *Journal of Applied Psychology*, 38, 414–418.
- Davidson, K., & Hall, P. (1995). What does potential for hostility measure? Gender differences in the expression of hostility. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 18, 233–247.
- Dembroski, T. M., & Costa, P. T., Jr. (1987). Coronary prone behavior: Components of the type A pattern and hostility. *Journal of Personality*, 55, 211–235.
- Everson, S. A., Kauhanen, J., Kaplan, G. A., Goldberg, D. E., Julkunen, J., Tuomilehto, J., & Salonen, J. T. (1997). Hostility and increased risk of mortality and acute myocardial infarction: The mediating role of behavioral risk factors. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 146, 142–152.
- Farmer, C. A., & Aman, M. G. (2009). Confirmation of the factor structure and measurement invariance of the Children's scale of hostility and aggression. *Journal of Child and Adolescent Psychopharmacology*, 26, 10–18.
- Farmer, C. A., & Aman, M. G. (2010). Psychometric properties of the Children's Scale of Hostility and Aggression: Reactive/Proactive (C-SHARP). *Research in Developmental Disabilities*, 31, 270–280.
- Friedman, M., & Rosenman, R. H. (1971). Type A behaviour pattern: Its association with coronary heart disease. *Annals of Clinical Research*, 3, 300–312.
- Greenglass, E. R., & Julkunen, J. (1989). Construct validity and sex differences in Cook-Medley hostility. *Personality and Individual Differences*, 10, 209–218.
- Hathaway, S. R., & McKinley, J. C. (1940). A multiphasic personality schedule (Minnesota): I. Construction of the schedule. *Journal of Psychology*, 10, 249–254.
- Siegel, J. M. (1986). The multidimensional anger inventory. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 51, 191–200.
- Wong, J. M., Sin, N. L., & Whooley, M. A. (2014). A comparison of Cook-Medley hostility subscales and mortality in patients with coronary heart disease: Data from the Heart and Soul Study. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 76, 311–317.

Hostility, Psychophysiological Responses

Susan A. Everson-Rose, Priya Balaji and Xiaohui Yu

Department of Medicine and Program in Health Disparities Research, University of Minnesota Medical School, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Synonyms

Aggression; Anger; Antagonism; Cynical distrust; Cynical hostility; Cynicism

Definition

Hostility has distinct cognitive components, affective or emotional components, and behavioral features. This multidimensional construct most commonly is defined by a mistrustful and suspicious attitude, cynical perceptions of others and their motives, and a negative interactional style characterized by anger, resentment, contempt, antagonism, and suspiciousness. Behavioral expressions of hostility typically include verbally and/or physically aggressive actions. The physiological consequences of hostility and its components contribute to over-activation of neurochemical and biological pathways, consistent with the stress response system, which may contribute to atherogenesis and alterations in glucose metabolism and other bodily systems and which are harmful to cardiovascular health.

Description

A wealth of research has investigated physiologic responses related to hostility (Everson-Rose and Lewis 2005). The emotional, behavioral, and cognitive manifestations of hostility are interrelated, although they may operate via different biologic pathways to influence health. This may well be why the literature on hostility's impact on physiological functioning reveals effects on multiple

biologic systems, including documented effects on heart rate (HR), heart rate variability (HRV), and systolic and diastolic blood pressure (SBP; DBP). One of the well-tested hypotheses that was formulated nearly 30 years ago to understand the linkages of psychosocial risk factors, such as Type A behavior, with coronary heart disease, focused on individual differences in physiologic responding. What came to commonly be called the cardiovascular reactivity hypothesis (Treiber et al. 2003; Smith and Ruiz 2002) postulated that exaggerated autonomic nervous system and/or neuroendocrine activation occurred under conditions of interpersonal stress in persons with particular psychological traits or under certain emotional states. Hostility is one such psychological trait that has been a focus of the cardiovascular reactivity literature. Although not unequivocal (Suls and Wan 1993), the vast majority of studies testing this hypothesis with regard to hostility show that, indeed, hostile persons tend to have higher HR (Jamner et al. 1991), reduced HRV (Sloan et al. 1994), higher SBP and DBP (Smith and Allred 1989; Suarez and Blumenthal 1991), increased levels of epinephrine and norepinephrine (Zhang et al. 2006), and alterations in cortisol secretion or patterning (Pope and Smith 1991) particularly under conditions of challenge and/or in ambiguous conditions, which are thought to be interpreted as adversarial by hostile persons (Everson et al. 1995). Furthermore, prolonged and frequent physiological arousal experienced by hostile individuals increases the risk for endothelial injury and damage, a precursor of inflammation, platelet formation, thrombogenesis, and atherogenesis. Nonetheless, the literature on hostility and risk for cardiovascular disease morbidity and mortality has not clearly shown that this exaggerated cardiovascular reactivity evident among hostile individuals is in fact the primary pathway by which hostility increases cardiovascular risk.

Other biologic pathways are important and also have been associated with hostility. For example, several studies have linked hostility with altered glucose metabolism, central adiposity, and metabolic dysregulation, which additionally may serve as mediators between hostility and CVD and related risk factors. One study

examining CNS serotonin levels in a sample of African-American women concluded that serotonin-related compounds had moderating effects on the association between hostility and glucose metabolism (Boyle et al. 2015). One literature review concluded that negative psychosocial factors, including depression, hostility, and anger, were important contributors to the risk of metabolic syndrome (Goldbacher and Matthews 2007). In regard to studies investigating the role of hostility on metabolic syndrome, Goldbacher and Matthews found that hostility and its components (i.e., cynicism, aggression) are related to increased risk of metabolic syndrome over time and found cross-sectional and longitudinal evidence supporting the positive association between hostility and visceral adipose tissue, waist-hip ratio, and insulin. For example, one of the studies reported from Niaura et al. (2000) found that men high in hostility, as assessed by the Cook-Medley Hostility Scale, have increased insulin resistance and higher fasting insulin levels in the presence of high stress levels and impaired glucose metabolism than men who are low in hostility. Moreover, there is evidence that ties the combined effects of high hostility and metabolic syndrome to increased risk of myocardial infarction (Todaro et al. 2005). Even so, the review of the literature revealed studies that find no relationship between hostility and metabolic syndrome (Goldbacher and Matthews 2007), and although steps have been taken to address and conceptualize some of these inconsistencies (Zhang et al. 2006), this work is limited.

Several studies have explored the biological mechanisms explaining the correlation between hostility and mortality. One study examined the relationship between hostility and cellular aging, measured by leukocyte telomere length (TL) and leukocyte telomerase activity (TA). Persons scoring higher on hostility had shorter leukocyte TL and higher leukocyte TA, suggesting a physiological mechanism underlying the detrimental effects hostility on health (Brydon et al. 2012).

Studies also have examined neuroendocrine and genetic biomarkers related to hostility, especially those involved in serotonergic function. Williams (1994) proposed that reduced serotonin

levels in the central nervous system may constitute an important brain mechanism by which hostility and related biobehavioral risk characteristics influence risk for cardiovascular diseases. In his hypothesis, he suggested that serotonin dysfunction was the underlying cause of harmful traits (e.g., hostility, anger), behaviors (e.g., excessive alcohol use, smoking), and physiological responses (e.g., heightened sympathetic arousal) which seem to cluster in certain individuals. Justification for his theory is supported by a growing number of studies that identify genetic markers and environmental stimuli that regulate serotonin levels and shape the expression of hostile traits and behaviors. Indeed, more recent studies have provided scientific evidence that individuals with alleles that code for lower CNS serotonin function are more likely to express hostile-like traits (Manuck et al. 2000; Lesch et al. 1996), including aggression and neuroticism, and other negative psychosocial characteristics like depression (Cervilla et al. 2007). In addition, there is some evidence that these genes may vary by race and/or sex; however, this work is limited and requires further investigation. More work is needed to understand the development of hostility and potential biomarkers that may predispose individuals to hostile traits and characteristics.

Summary

Hostility is a multidimensional personality trait that functions through several biological pathways to influence health and well-being. The expression of hostile attitudes, emotions, and behaviors are stress inducing, and particularly cardio-reactive. Indeed, the body uses autonomic and neuroendocrine pathways to interpret hostile experiences, which may manifest as heightened cardiovascular stimulation or metabolic dysregulation. In addition, the tendency for hostility to cluster with other negative psychosocial factors and harmful behaviors led to the growing theory that low CNS serotonin function may predispose individuals to these disease-inducing traits and behaviors. In order to fully conceptualize the mechanisms that shape the relationship

between hostility and disease, further research will be required that supports physiological mediators.

Cross-References

- [Anger, Measurement](#)
- [Hostility, Cynical](#)
- [Hostility, Measurement of](#)

References and Further Reading

- Boyle, S. H., Georgiades, A., Brummett, B. H., Barefoot, J. C., Siegler, I. C., Matson, W. R., et al. (2015). Associations between central nervous system serotonin, fasting glucose, and hostility in African American females. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 49, 49–57.
- Brydon, L., Lin, J., Butcher, L., Hamer, M., Erusalimsky, J. D., & Blackburn, E. H. (2012). Hostility and cellular aging in men from the Whitehall II cohort. *Biological Psychiatry*, 71, 767–773.
- Cervilla, J. A., Molina, E., Rivera, M., Torres-González, F., Bellón, J. A., Moreno, B., et al. (2007). The risk for depression conferred by stressful life events is modified by variation at the serotonin transporter 5HTTLPR genotype: Evidence from the Spanish PREDICT-Gene cohort. *Molecular Psychiatry*, 12, 748–755.
- Everson, S. A., McKey, B. S., & Lovallo, W. R. (1995). Effects of trait hostility on cardiovascular response to harassment in young men. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 2, 172–191.
- Everson-Rose, S. A., & Lewis, T. T. (2005). Psychosocial factors and cardiovascular diseases. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 26, 469–500.
- Goldbacher, E. M., & Matthews, K. A. (2007). Are psychosocial characteristics related to risk of the metabolic syndrome? A review of the literature. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 34, 240–252.
- Jamner, L. D., Shapiro, D., Goldstein, I. B., & Hug, R. (1991). Ambulatory blood pressure and heart rate in paramedics: Effects of cynical hostility and defensiveness. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 53, 393–406.
- Lesch, K. P., Bengel, D., Heils, A., Söbel, S. Z., Greenberg, B. P., Petri, S., et al. (1996). Association of anxiety-related traits with polymorphism in the serotonin transporter gene regulatory region. *Science*, 274, 1527–1531.
- Manuck, S. B., Flory, J. D., Ferrel, R. E., Mann, J., & Muldoon, M. F. (2000). A regulatory polymorphism of the monoamine oxidase-A gene may be associated with variability in aggression, impulsivity, and central nervous system serotonergic responsivity. *Journal of Psychiatric Research*, 95, 9–23.
- Niaura, R., Banks, S. M., Ward, K. D., Stoney, C. M., Spiro, A., Aldwin, C. M., et al. (2000). Hostility and the metabolic syndrome in older males: The Normative Aging Study. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 62, 7–16.
- Pope, M. L., & Smith, T. W. (1991). Cortisol excretion in high and low cynically hostile men. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 53, 386–392.
- Sloan, R. P., Shapiro, P. A., Bigger, J. T., Bagiella, E., Steinman, R. C., & Gorman, J. M. (1994). Cardiac autonomic control and hostility in healthy subjects. *American Journal of Cardiology*, 74, 298–300.
- Smith, T. W., & Allred, K. D. (1989). Blood-pressure responses during social interaction in high- and low-cynically hostile males. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 12, 135–143.
- Smith, T. W., & Ruiz, J. M. (2002). Psychosocial influences on the development and course of coronary heart disease: Current status and implications for research and practice. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 70, 548–568.
- Suarez, E. C., & Blumenthal, J. A. (1991). Ambulatory blood pressure responses during life in high and low hostile patients with a recent myocardial infarction. *Journal of Cardiopulmonary Rehabilitation*, 11, 169–175.
- Suarez, E. C., Kuhn, C. M., Schanberg, S. M., Williams, R. B., & Zimmermann, E. A. (1998). Neuroendocrine, cardiovascular, and emotional responses of hostile men: The role of interpersonal challenge. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 60, 78–88.
- Suls, J., & Wan, C. K. (1993). The relationship between trait hostility and cardiovascular reactivity: A quantitative review and analysis. *Psychophysiology*, 30, 615–626.
- Todaro, J. F., Con, A., Niaura, R., Spiro, A., 3rd, Ward, K. D., & Roytberg, A. (2005). Combined effect of the metabolic syndrome and hostility on the incidence of myocardial infarction (The Normative Aging Study). *American Journal of Cardiology*, 15, 221–226.
- Treiber, F. A., Kamarck, T., Schneiderman, N., Sheffield, D., Kapuku, G., & Taylor, T. (2003). Cardiovascular reactivity and development of preclinical and clinical disease states. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65, 46–62.
- Williams, R. B. (1994). Neurobiology, cellular and molecular biology, and psychosomatic medicine. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 56, 308–315.
- Zhang, J., Niaura, R., Dyer, J. R., Shen, B., Todaro, J. F., McCaffery, J. M., et al. (2006). Hostility and urine norepinephrine interact to predict insulin resistance: The VA Normative Aging Study. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 68, 718–726.

Household Income

- [Family, Income](#)

HPA Axis Negative Feedback Testing

- ▶ [Dexamethasone Suppression Test](#)

HPA Axis Stimulation Tests

- ▶ [Pharmacological Stress Tests](#)

HPV

- ▶ [Human Papillomavirus \(HPV\)](#)

HR_{max}

- ▶ [Maximal Exercise Heart Rate](#)

HSCH₂CH₂CH(NH₂)CO₂H

- ▶ [Homocysteine](#)

HSV-1

- ▶ [Genital Herpes](#)

HSV-2

- ▶ [Genital Herpes](#)

Human Factors/Ergonomics

Jonathan Z. Bakdash¹ and Frank A. Drews^{2,3}

¹Department of Psychology and Special Education, Texas A&M–Commerce, Commerce, TX, USA

²Department of Psychology, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

³Center for Human Factors in Patient Safety, VA Salt Lake City Health Care System, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Synonyms

[Adherence](#); [Clinical decision-making](#); [Clinical practice guidelines](#); [Cognitive psychology](#); [Compliance](#); [Engineering psychology](#); [Ergonomics](#); [Iatrogenic conditions](#); [Infection](#); [Nosocomial medical errors](#); [Patient safety](#)

Definition

Human factors, also called ergonomics, is defined as:

... the scientific discipline concerned with the understanding of interactions among humans and other elements of a system, and the profession that applies theory, principles, data, and other methods to design in order to optimize human well-being and overall system performance.

....
Ergonomics helps harmonize things that inter with people in terms of people’s need, abilities and limitations. (International Ergonomics Association 2019)

Human factors in health care focuses on improving health-care quality, including patient safety and patient outcomes (Carayon et al. 2014). For behavioral medicine, the goals of human factors are facilitating effective knowledge, techniques, and changes for disease prevention, diagnosis, and treatment. This includes clinicians, patients, and lay caregivers.

Description

In the USA, an estimated 160,000 patient deaths in hospitals were *preventable* in 2017 (Austin and Derk 2019). Health care has generally lagged behind other industries such as aviation in safety (Leape 1994). Globally, one in a million passengers was harmed during air travel, whereas an estimated one in ten hospital patients was harmed (World Health Organization 2018). Consequently, the risk of patient harm during hospitalization is a staggering 100,000 times greater than passenger air travel.

However, some specialties in medicine, notably anesthesiology, have made tremendous progress in patient safety. For example, in the 1980s the risk of patient death with anesthesia in the USA was 1 in 5000 patients, but by the late 1990s the risk was reduced to 1 in 200,000+ patients (Institute of Medicine 2000). This phenomenal accomplishment in anesthesiology patient safety resulted from a combination of changes, most based on the application of human factors principles (Institute of Medicine 2000; Gaba 2000). Among the changes that increased anesthesia safety were steps toward optimization and standardization of system components (equipment and training); establishment and implementation of practice guidelines which were widely accepted by providers, hospitals, and professional organizations; and significant advances in technology (Gaba 2000).

In contrast to anesthesiology, other areas in health care have made less progress in patient safety. For example, over half of avoidable hospital patient deaths in the USA were still attributable to preventable infections (Austin and Derk 2019).

Comprehensively addressing patient safety requires considering human performance in a range of different systems while acknowledging the differences between such systems (Durso and Drews 2010). Clearly, all of the multiple system components (patients, providers, physical environment, organizational environment, tasks, and equipment/tools; adapted from Carayon et al. 2014) that are involved in health care need to be included in a comprehensive systemic intervention. In addition, to maximize improvements in

performance and safety, it is important to acknowledge the differences and similarities between different systems: for example, technical systems in aviation vs. socio-natural systems in health care.

For example, health care can be conceptualized using a socio-natural systems perspective: patients are, at the core, biological or natural systems, interacting with providers in an organizational environment that constitutes a social system, where the equipment/tools used for patient care constitute the technical aspects of the system (Durso and Drews 2010). Interventions to improve safety in aviation and health care are frequently compared, and there are important similarities between the two systems. However, there are key distinctions between the relevant system components in each domain at the microlevel: in health care, tasks are performed on a patient, a natural system. Consequently, feedback on task performance, such as treating a patient or maintaining sterility during a procedure, is often over a long period of time, and/or causality is not directly observable. Delayed feedback and challenges with causality hold for both treatment by health-care providers and patient behaviors, such as the long-term potential consequences of medication nonadherence. At the microlevel, tasks in aviation are performed on an aircraft, an engineered system that is designed to provide continuous feedback, making it largely transparent and highly predictable (Durso and Drews 2010). The challenges in standardizing health-care practices and increasing feedback provide numerous opportunities for human factors.

Due to the lack of standardization in health care, providers are unlikely to receive detailed training and practice with particular equipment and frequently need to perform the same procedure using different brands of equipment with distinct designs, whereas in aviation, pilots train and become certified on a specific aircraft, thus they do not encounter differences between aircraft. Furthermore, tasks in aviation are highly structured and therefore generally predictable, with checklists (protocols) for routine activities and emergency situations. In health care, protocols for every possible situation for every possible

patient simply do not exist, and generalized protocols applied to all patients can require many exceptions.

To illustrate the potential applications for human factors in health care, we provide several detailed examples. These examples include improving medication adherence, an improved display for delivering medication during anesthesia, using a kit to increase adherence to best practices and reduce adverse events, and simulation-based training for lay caregivers.

Medication Adherence

Medication adherence is highly relevant for behavioral medicine because it is important to both disease prevention and treatment. Lack of medication compliance has negative effects on patient health and produces significant economic costs (Osterberg and Blaschke 2005). A number of factors can lead to nonadherence. For example, a patient may not understand how to weigh medication benefits compared to the side effects or face other cognitive barriers such as challenges in the complexity of coordinating the timing and dosing of a number of medications (Osterberg and Blaschke 2005).

Mohr et al. (2015) developed a mobile app called MedLink to improve adherence and optimize the dosage of antidepressant medications; a critical component is providing feedback to both patients and clinicians. MedLink reminds patients when to take the medication, monitors medication use from the pill bottle, records patient symptoms and side effects for possible medication adjustments, and uses all of this data to facilitate communication between patients and clinicians. This approach provides feedback to both patients and clinicians over time, informing clinicians when dosages may need to be adjusted due to side effects. In a 4-week pilot study, no patients using MedLink stopped taking antidepressants, and the majority of doses were taken at the prescribed frequency. Typically, around 60% of patients stop taking antidepressants after several weeks or a few months. Research on self-management for other conditions shows similarly promising results for leveraging mobile technology (Whitehead and Seaton 2016).

Drug Display for Anesthesia Delivery

Delivering correct drug concentrations and doses for administering anesthesia is critical to patient safety. This task has significant cognitive demands because the anesthesiologist must remember the times and amounts of past drug administrations, then use this recalled information to calculate changes in concentration over time, and, finally, determine the difference between the calculated current concentrations and the appropriate levels to determine present dosages. The consequences of high cognitive demands are ample opportunities for errors.

Consequently, patient safety for anesthesia medication delivery can be improved with a drug display that is consistent with human factors principles, visually showing changes over time rather than only presenting numbers. Drews et al. (2006) demonstrated the positive impact of such technology optimized by application of human factors by comparing the new display to the standard approach of delivering anesthesia without such information available to the anesthesiologist. The success of this approach can be attributed to the fact that the drug display creates defenses against error by providing “knowledge in the world” which reduces demands on cognition (Norman 2002). More specifically, the human factors principles that were implemented in the drug display are as follows:

1. Affordances (perceived functions of objects: intuitive representations of medication doses over time)
2. Chunking (meaningful grouping of related items: different drugs separated, current dose levels for all drugs together)
3. Reduced effort (mental/physical task demands to perform actions: information is provided on the monitor rather than requiring cognition)
4. Structure/guidance (design, layout, and sequence, e.g., time in Western cultures goes from left to right; chunking: information in meaningful units that can be maintained in memory)
5. Visual feedback (visibility: graphical representation depicting patterns of change over time)

for past, current, and predicted future drug concentration levels)

Adherence Engineering: Equipment Kit to Reduce Infections

Clinician adherence to best practices (e.g., hand hygiene, personal protective equipment use) can reduce the risk of adverse events for patients and clinicians, but clinician nonadherence is a common problem in health care that recently gained attention in human factors (Drews et al. 2019). While checklists and protocols can help improve adherence to best practices, they are not a comprehensive solution. Drews (2013) developed a comprehensive conceptual framework for improving patient safety called adherence engineering (AE). The human factors principles in AE consist of intuitive action cues, guidance (task structure and sequences), nudges, smart defaults, feedback, and reducing cognitive and physical effort.

To increase adherence to best practices, AE was used to design a new central-line dressing maintenance (CLDM) (Drews 2013; Drews et al. 2017). Central lines are a type of catheter typically used for long-term therapy (infusion of medications and fluids) as well as frequent blood draws. However, this device has the risk of causing a bloodstream infection. To reduce infection risk, maintenance for central lines includes several best practices: antiseptic cleaning, replacing the antimicrobial bandage, hand sanitization, and replacing and flushing the injection sites.

Previously, CLDM required as much as 27 individual items, which clinicians had to remember to get, or a bundle or jumble kit with no internal structure (see Fig. 1). Performing CLDM involves about 15 major steps, some with multiple sub-steps.

Whereas the new CLDM kit had a sequential layout with separate, labelled pockets containing the appropriate items for each step (see Fig. 2; note 9 out of 15 steps are illustrated).

In a longitudinal pre-intervention (jumble kit) and post-intervention (new kit) study, there were clear benefits to patient safety (Drews et al. 2017). With the new kit, adherence to best practices



Human Factors/Ergonomics, Fig. 1 Typical jumble pack from Drews (2013), p. 22

increased, and there were no bloodstream infections compared to the multiple infections with the jumble kit.

Simulation-Based Training

Simulation-based training helps clinicians acquire and maintain the skills and knowledge for safe and effective patient care (Drews and Bakdash 2013). There are many types of simulations with varying fidelity depending on the task: ranging from standardized patients played by actors for communication and diagnostic tasks (e.g., history and physical exam) to part-task simulation such as suturing using a pig's foot. In contrast to simulation, traditional training in health care often follows the approach of "see one, do one, teach one" (procedure).

In addition to training clinicians, an emerging area for simulation-based training is educating lay caregivers. For example, simulation-based training provides a potential method to help lay individuals to recognize urgent and emergency situations and provide basic, urgent, and emergency care to high-risk infants at home (Arnold and Diaz 2016). Simulation training can be tailored to the particular conditions of the infant for repetitive practice of cognitive (e.g., signs of trouble breathing, severity of the problem, and next steps) and technical skills (e.g., replacing a tracheotomy tube [for breathing], technique for suctioning) using a mannequin. In addition, the



Human Factors/Ergonomics, Fig. 2 Layout of the newly developed, sequential central-line dressing maintenance kit illustrating label use from Drews (2013), p. 22

H

training also covers practice and feedback with communication skills with another caregiver and/or calling for help. Also, practice in simulation demonstrates the importance of the location and organization of medical equipment and supplies in the home.

Conclusion

Given the large number of preventable patient deaths in health care as well as the high risk of preventable patient harm, there is a clear need to increase patient safety and improve patient outcomes. Human factors provides multiple methods and principles for effective disease prevention, diagnosis, and treatment. The examples illustrate applications of human factors for increasing patient medication adherence, improved control of the administration of drug delivery during anesthesia over time, adherence engineering for improving best practices by redesigning equipment which reduces infection risk, and the potential use of simulation training to prepare lay caregivers for taking high-risk infants home.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Adherence](#)
- ▶ [Clinical Decision-Making](#)

- ▶ [Clinical Practice Guidelines](#)
- ▶ [Cognition](#)
- ▶ [Compliance](#)
- ▶ [Cost-Effectiveness](#)
- ▶ [Iatrogenic Conditions](#)
- ▶ [Infection](#)
- ▶ [Nosocomial Medical Errors](#)
- ▶ [Risk Perception](#)

References and Further Reading

- Arnold, J., & Diaz, M. C. G. (2016). Simulation training for primary caregivers in the neonatal intensive care unit. *Seminars in Perinatology*, 40(7), 466–472. <https://doi.org/10.1053/j.semperi.2016.08.007>.
- Austin, M., & Derk, J. (2019). Lives lost, lives saved: An updated comparative analysis of avoidable deaths at hospitals graded by The Leapfrog Group. Retrieved August 8, 2019 from <https://www.hospital.safetygrade.org/media/file/Lives-Saved-White-Paper-FINAL.pdf>.
- Carayon, P., Wetterneck, T. B., Rivera-Rodriguez, A. J., Hundt, A. S., Hoonakker, P., Holden, R., & Gurses, A. P. (2014). Human factors systems approach to healthcare quality and patient safety. *Applied Ergonomics*, 45(1), 14–25. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.apergo.2013.04.023>.
- Drews, F. A. (2013). Adherence engineering: A new approach to increasing adherence to protocols. *Ergonomics in Design*, 21(4), 19–25. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1064804613497957>.
- Drews, F. A., & Bakdash, J. Z. (2013). Simulation training in health care. *Reviews of Human Factors and*

- Ergonomics*, 8(1), 191–234. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1557234X13492977>.
- Drews, F. A., Syroid, N., Agutter, J., Strayer, D. L., & Westenskow, D. R. (2006). Drug delivery as control task: Improving performance in a common anesthetic task. *Human Factors*, 48(1), 85–94. <https://doi.org/10.1518/001872006776412216>.
- Drews, F. A., Bakdash, J. Z., & Glead, J. R. (2017). Improving central line maintenance to reduce central line-associated bloodstream infections. *American Journal of Infection Control*, 45(11), 1224–1230. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajic.2017.05.017>.
- Drews, F. A., Visnovsky, L. C., & Mayer, J. (2019). Human factors engineering contributions to infection prevention and control. *Human Factors*. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0018720819833214>.
- Durso, F. T., & Drews, F. A. (2010). Health care, aviation, and ecosystems: A socio-natural systems perspective. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 19(2), 71–75. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0963721410364728>.
- Gaba, D. M. (2000). Anesthesiology as a model for patient safety in health care. *British Medical Journal*, 320(7237), 785–788. <https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.320.7237.785>.
- Institute of Medicine. (2000). *To err is human: Building a safer health system*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press. <https://doi.org/10.17226/9728>.
- International Ergonomics Association (2019). *What is ergonomics? Definitions and domains of ergonomics*. Retrieved July 31, 2019 from <https://www.iea.cc/whats/index.html>.
- Leape, L. L. (1994). Error in medicine. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 272(23), 1851–1857. <https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.1994.03520230061039>.
- Mohr, D. C., Montague, E., Stiles-Shields, C., Kaiser, S. M., Brenner, C., Carty-Fickes, E., et al. (2015). MedLink: A mobile intervention to address failure points in the treatment of depression in general medicine. In *Proceedings of the 9th international conference on pervasive computing technologies for healthcare* (pp. 100–107). <https://doi.org/10.4108/icst.pervasivehealth.2015.259042>.
- Nolan, T. W. (2000). System changes to improve patient safety. *British Medical Journal*, 320(7237), 771–773. <https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.320.7237.771>.
- Norman, D. A. (2002). *The design of everyday things*. New York: Basic Books.
- Osterberg, L., & Blaschke, T. (2005). Adherence to medication. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 353(5), 487–497. <https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMra050100>.
- Whitehead, L., & Seaton, P. (2016). The effectiveness of self-management mobile phone and tablet apps in long-term condition management: A systematic review. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 18(5), e97. <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.4883>.
- World Health Organization. (2018, March). *10 facts on patient safety*. Retrieved August 8, 2019 from https://www.who.int/features/factfiles/patient_safety/en/.

Human Genome Project

Rany M. Salem^{1,2} and Laura Rodriguez-Murillo³

¹Broad Institute, Cambridge, MA, USA

²Cambridge Center, Cambridge, MA, USA

³Department of Psychiatry, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Definition

The Human Genome Project (HGP) was an international scientific research project to map and sequence the entire human genome. The project goals were to identify all 20,000–25,000 genes and determine the sequences of the three billion base pairs that make up the haploid human genome. The project was started in 1990 and coordinated by the US Department of Energy and National Institutes of Health, and in partnership with the Wellcome Trust (UK). In 1998, Celera Corporation launched a parallel private effort to sequence the human genome. Most of the government-sponsored sequencing was performed in universities and research centers from the USA, the UK, Japan, France, Germany, and China. The public and private efforts succeeded, with a draft sequence published in 2001 (International Human Genome Sequencing Consortium 2001; Venter et al. 2001), and completion of the HGP in April 2003 (Collins et al. 2003a; Collins et al. 2003b; Frazier et al. 2003). The HGP also included parallel efforts to sequence select model organisms, such as the bacterium *Escherichia coli*, the fruit fly *Drosophila melanogaster*, and the mouse (*Mus musculus*). Sequencing model organisms served to both help to develop the technology and interpret human gene function. Data from the project are freely available to researchers.

Cross-References

- [DNA](#)
- [Gene](#)

References and Further Readings

- Collins, F. S., Green, E. D., Guttmacher, A. E., & Guyer, M. S. (2003a). A vision for the future of genomics research. *Nature*, 422(6934), 835–847.
- Collins, F. S., Morgan, M., & Patrinos, A. (2003b). The human genome project: Lessons from large-scale biology. *Science*, 300(5617), 286–290.
- Frazier, M. E., Johnson, G. M., Thomassen, D. G., Oliver, C. E., & Patrinos, A. (2003). Realizing the potential of the genome revolution: The genomes to life program. *Science*, 300(5617), 290–293.
- International Human Genome Sequencing Consortium. (2001). Initial sequencing and analysis of the human genome. *Nature*, 409(6822), 860–921. <https://doi.org/10.1038/35057062>.
- Lewis, R. (2005). *Human genetics. Concepts and applications* (7th ed.). Boston: McGraw-Hill Science/Engineering/Math.
- Strachan, T., & Read, A. P. (2003). *Human molecular genetics* (3rd ed.). London/New York: Garland Science/Taylor & Francis Group.
- Venter, J. C., Adams, M. D., Myers, E. W., Li, P. W., Mural, R. J., Sutton, G. G., et al. (2001). The sequence of the human genome. *Science*, 291(5507), 1304–1351.

Human Herpesvirus 5

- [Cytomegalovirus](#)

Human Herpesvirus-4 (HHV-4)

- [Epstein-Barr Virus](#)

Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV)

- [AIDS: Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome](#)

Human Papillomavirus (HPV)

Luis I. García

Center for AIDS Intervention Research, Medical College of Wisconsin, Milwaukee, WI, USA

Synonyms

[HPV](#)

Definition

The human papillomaviruses (HPVs) are members of the Papillomaviridae. These viruses (Papillomaviridae) are specie specific, so they can only infect humans. They are non-enveloped viruses that carry their genetic information on circular, double-stranded DNA. The virus measures approximately 55 nm in diameter. Nearly 200 types of HPV have been identified. While many of them do not produce any symptoms in humans, some strains of the virus can cause warts and in a minority of cases can lead to cancer (Bonnez and Reichman 2009; Giuliano et al. 2011).

Description

HPV tends to infect skin or mucosal tissue, and while many HPV subtypes do not cause any symptoms, the subtypes that are known to produce symptoms can cause a multitude of skin diseases (e.g., plantar warts, common warts, epidermodysplasia verruciformis, genital warts, cervical and anal carcinoma). Each virus subtype tends to be associated with a specific pathology, for example, plantar warts tend to be caused by HPV-1 or HPV-2, while cervical carcinoma is frequently caused by HPV-16 and HPV-18. However, other HPV subtypes may cause the same diseases, although less commonly (Bonnez and Reichman 2009).

HPV is easily recognized when it causes symptoms (i.e., clinically apparent infections); however, subclinical and asymptomatic infections are more common. In addition, individuals with past HPV infections represent an even larger group of affected persons. These three types of infections (i.e., clinical, asymptomatic, and past infections) and their relationship to each other make difficult their epidemiological study (Bonnez and Reichman 2009). HPV is also classified by the location of the infection. For example, a significant distinction is made between infections in genitals and mucosal tissue, and non-genital infections (cutaneous infections).

In the United States, 20 million people are currently estimated to be infected and contagious (Bonnez and Reichman 2009), while an additional 6.2 million people between the ages of 15 and 44 become infected with genital HPV annually (Richman et al. 2009). HPV transmission requires skin to skin contact; therefore, most genital infections are transmitted through sexual activity (Giuliano et al. 2011; Richman et al. 2009). Anal HPV infections happen most frequently through anal intercourse, although it is possible to spread the infection from one area to another by contact with hands or objects that have been exposed to infected areas (Giuliano et al. 2011). Nonsexual infections are rare. Most HPV infections (70%) resolve within a year, up to 90% within 2 years. However, individuals who do not clear their HPV infection are at risk for cervical or anal cancer, though the progression to cancer can take 10–20 years (Giuliano et al. 2011).

The three most observed cutaneous manifestations of HPV are *common warts* (71% of all cutaneous infections), *plantar warts* (34%), and *juvenile or flat warts* (4%). Common warts and flat warts are more common in children, while plantar warts are more common in adolescents. The prevalence of common warts in school-age children is estimated to be 4–20% (Bonnez and Reichman 2009). Since contact with infected skin cells is necessary for transmission, two other vehicles of transmission besides sexual contact are possible, though rare: mother-to-child

transmission and exposure to contaminated objects (Giuliano et al. 2011). Infection during birth is rare, but may lead to juvenile-onset recurrent respiratory papillomatosis (JORRP) – an infection that results in warty growths in the upper respiratory tract and can lead to obstruction of the airway in severe cases. JORRP has an incidence of 2 per 100,000 children in the United States (Giuliano et al. 2011). The other uncommon route of transmission is through contact with an object that has residual infected skin cells or with infected hands with a common wart or carrying infected cells (e.g., after scratching) (Giuliano et al. 2011). This means of transmission is more likely if there is trauma to the receiving skin, which may explain the higher frequency of cutaneous warts seen among meat handlers (Bonnez and Reichman 2009).

Currently, there is no treatment to specifically eradicate an HPV infection; infections have to be cleared by the immune system of the infected person. Treatment of HPV focuses on removing the lesions by chemical or physical means, or by local stimulation of cytokines, to reduce or eliminate the symptoms of the infection (Bonnez and Reichman 2009). There are two potential methods of preventing HPV transmission. Avoiding skin exposure to infected areas can reduce the likelihood of transmission. However, since HPV can be asymptomatic or subclinical (i.e., an infected individual may not have any visible skin lesions), avoiding contact with infected skin can be difficult or impossible. Condoms provide only limited protection from HPV since they protect only skin that is covered by the condom (Giuliano et al. 2011). A second method of prevention is vaccination against HPV infection, which has been proven to be quite effective (Bonnez and Reichman 2009; The FUTURE II Study Group 2007; Trottier and Franco 2006). The available HPV vaccinations target only up to four HPV subtypes. However, since these HPV subtypes cause the majority of cervical cancers and genital warts, the vaccines can prevent the vast majority of clinically important and cosmetically unpleasant HPV infections (Bonnez and Reichman 2009).

Cross-References

- [Infectious Diseases](#)
- [Immune Function](#)

References and Readings

- Bonnez, W., & Reichman, R. C. (2009). Papillomaviruses. In G. L. Mandell, J. E. Bennett, & R. Dolin (Eds.), *Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's principles & practice of infectious diseases*. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone.
- Giuliano, A. R., et al. (2011). Efficacy of quadrivalent HPV vaccine against HPV infection and disease in males. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 364, 401–411.
- Richman, D. D., Whitley, R. J., & Hayden, F. G. (2009). *Clinical virology* (3rd ed.). Washington, DC: ASM Press.
- The FUTURE II Study Group. (2007). Quadrivalent vaccine against human papillomavirus to prevent high-grade cervical lesions. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 256, 1915–1927.
- Trotter, H., & Franco, E. L. (2006). The epidemiology of genital human papillomavirus infection. *Vaccine*, 24 (Suppl. 1), S4–S15.

Human Subjects Committee

Lynnee Roane
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Institutional review board \(IRB\)](#); [Research ethics committee](#)

Definition

Ethical conduct of research requires an objective and prospective review and approval by a committee established for the purpose of protecting human subjects involved in research. In the United States, these human subjects committees are usually called Institutional Review Boards

(IRBs). They may also be known as Ethics Review Committees.

The main responsibility of the IRB is to conduct a comprehensive scientific and ethical review of the planned research activities. The purpose of this review is to ensure the proposed research meets the federal requirements for ethical research. It determines study feasibility, scientific merit, ethical soundness, strength of study design, balance of risk and benefits, and adequacy of informed consent. The review ensures that the design is scientifically sound and does not expose subjects to unnecessary risk. A sound scientific design is essential, as it is not ethically justifiable to expose subjects to any risk, discomfort, or inconvenience if the research is poorly designed and not likely to obtain meaningful information (Council for International Organizations of Medical Sciences 1993). The IRB is also responsible for identifying, minimizing, and eliminating conflicts of interests.

Key components of the system include the federal government's regulations, IRBs, the sponsor, and the principal investigators (PIs) conducting the research. Additionally, all investigators and members of the research team and community are charged with protecting human subjects. The federal regulations, issued by the Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) and the Food and Drug Administration (FDA), are the cornerstone in this system of protection. The DHHS regulates all research it funds and conducts, and the FDA regulates research involving drugs, biologics, and clinical devices.

The criteria for IRB approval are that risks to research participants are minimized; risks are reasonable in relation to anticipated benefits and the knowledge that may result; selection of participants is equitable; informed consent will be sought from each participant or their legally authorized representative and appropriately documented, as required; adequate plans for monitoring data to ensure participant safety are in place; adequate provisions are made to protect the privacy of the participant and the confidentiality of the data; and additional safeguards are provided to protect the welfare and safety of

vulnerable participants such as children, prisoners, pregnant women, mentally disabled persons, or economically or educationally disadvantaged individuals (U. S. Department of Health and Human Services 2009a).

IRBs are responsible for conducting comprehensive prospective and ongoing review of all research activities at least annually. The level of scrutiny and frequency of continuing review depends upon the level of risk posed by the research activities. To best protect human subjects, an objective review is required by a diverse group of individuals with no direct involvement in the planned research. The Federal Regulations stipulate that the IRB is composed of at least five members. The members must include a scientist, nonscientist, and at least one person who is not affiliated, and is not a family member of an affiliated person, with the institution conducting the research (U. S. Department of Health and Human Services 2009b). These are the minimal requirements established by the federal guidelines; however, the size and composition may vary depending on the institutional requirements and resources. On occasion, it may be necessary for the IRB to invite an individual to provide expertise in a specific area of research.

The responsible and ethical conduct of research requires that the PI and all team members are appropriately trained and well qualified to conduct research with humans. Responsible for the conduct of the study, PIs must consider the participants' safety and welfare at every phase of the study including initiation, implementation, closeout, and dissemination. Fundamental in providing these protections is ensuring subject privacy and confidentiality (Steneck 2007). Conducting research in a manner consistent with the established ethical principles is of paramount importance to protect human participants in research. Providing adequate protections requires a broad range of knowledge and a systems approach. Such a system is essential to accomplish comprehensive reviews of planned research activities and to ensure sound ethical interactions between the investigator and participant, especially in the informed consent process. Also important in the system of protection is oversight,

including safety monitoring and a robust quality improvement and compliance program (Federman et al. 2002).

The Belmont Report and the Protection of Human Subjects

Human subjects who participate in research benefit society by contributing to the development of new drugs, medical procedures, and a greater understanding of how we think and act (Steneck 2007). Individuals who assume the inherent risks of participating in research deserve to be treated with dignity and respect and to have their rights as humans protected. The federal regulations just discussed are founded upon ethical principles written in the Belmont report. The ethical principles of respect for persons, beneficence, and justice are tightly integrated in the regulations. The principle of respect for persons states that the protection of autonomy and personal dignity requires informed consent of each person before they are involved in research. Special protections, to prevent coercion and undue influence, are required for individuals who are unable to make autonomous decisions, such as children, prisoners, and those with compromised decision-making capacity. Securing the well-being of research participants by minimizing risk and maximizing benefits is essential to ensuring beneficence and protecting subjects from harm. Justice requires equitable subject selection to reduce or prevent overburdening certain populations and providing access to research opportunities for others (The Belmont Report 1979). While the federal government provides the overarching governance for research in humans, oversight and implementation of the regulations are conducted by the IRB.

Cross-References

- [Ethics Committee](#)
- [Human Subjects Committee](#)
- [Informed Consent](#)
- [Institutional Review Board \(IRB\)](#)

References and Readings

- Council for International Organizations of Medical Sciences. (1993). *International ethical guidelines for biomedical research involving human subjects*. Geneva: CIOMS.
- Department of Health Education and Welfare, The National Commission for the Protection of Human Subjects of Biomedical and Behavioral Research. (1979). The Belmont report ethical principles and guidelines for the protection of human subjects of research. Retrieved 30 June 2011, from <http://ohsr.od.nih.gov.proxy-hs.researchport.umd.edu/guidelines/belmont.html>.
- Federman, D., Hanna, K., & Rodriguez, L. (2002). A systematic approach to human research participant protection programs. In Federman, D., Hanna, K., Rodriguez, L. (Eds.), *Responsible research: A systems approach to protecting research participants* (pp. 45–69). The National Academies Press. Retrieved 28 June 2011, from http://www.nap.edu.proxy-hs.researchport.umd.edu/openbook.php?record_id=10508page=45.
- Steneck, N. H. (2007). The protection of human subjects. In ORI introduction to the responsible conduct of research (pp. 37–49). Department of Health and Human Services.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Code of Federal Regulations 45 CFR 46. 111. Protection of Human Subjects. (2009a). *Criteria for IRB approval of research*. Retrieved from <http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/humansubjects/guidance/45cfr46.html#46.111>
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Code of Federal Regulations 45 CFR 46.107. Protection of Human Subjects. (2009b). *IRB membership*. Retrieved from <http://www.hhs.gov/ohrp/humansubjects/guidance/45cfr46.html#46.107>

Human Subjects Protections

- [Protection of Human Subjects](#)

Human-Centered Data Science

- [Behavioral Informatics](#)

Hybridoma Growth Factor

- [Interleukins, -1 \(IL-1\), -6 \(IL-6\), -18 \(IL-18\)](#)

Hybridoma Plasmacytoma Growth Factor

- [Interleukins, -1 \(IL-1\), -6 \(IL-6\), -18 \(IL-18\)](#)

Hypercholesterolemia

- [Dyslipidemia](#)

Hyperglycemia

Michael James Coons

Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Control](#); [Glycemia](#); [Load-high](#)

Definition

Hyperglycemia is defined as a state of elevated blood plasma glucose (≥ 7.0 mmol/L, or 120 mg/dL, before meals) and is a hallmark feature of all diabetes subtypes. Hyperglycemia results from disruptions in blood glucose metabolism, insufficient insulin production (in the case of type 1 diabetes), or the cellular resistance to the endogenous insulin produced by the pancreas (in the cases of type 2 diabetes and gestational diabetes). Hyperglycemia can be assessed at home using a portable glucometer, or in the laboratory setting by drawing a blood sample for analysis. Symptoms include excessive thirst, excessive urination, fatigue, itchy skin, and, over time, weight loss. In mild forms, individuals are often unaware of blood glucose elevations. However, in more flagrant episodes, individuals may self-detect these aforementioned symptoms. Hyperglycemia may be managed by a number of self-management

behaviors including changes in dietary intake and physical activity. Among individuals with diabetes who are receiving insulin therapy, they may also administer an injection of short-acting insulin. These behaviors, in isolation or combination, will help to restore normal blood glucose levels. However, if unmanaged, extreme hyperglycemia can precipitate a state of diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA), which results in both the production of ketones and metabolic acidosis. DKA leads to excessive urination and loss of both fluid and electrolytes that can result in myocardial infarction and death. Repeated episodes of DKA may be evidence of poor metabolic control, which potentiates morbidity and premature mortality. Precipitants for DKA include infection, abdominal crises (e.g., gastrointestinal bleeding, pancreatitis), physical trauma, and insulin omission. If unmanaged, repeated episodes of hyperglycemia lead to the development of serious vascular pathology resulting in blindness, renal failure, pain and loss of sensation in the extremities, myocardial infarctions, cerebrovascular accidents, and amputations.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Diabetes](#)
- ▶ [Glucose](#)
- ▶ [Glucose: Levels, Control, Intolerance, and Metabolism](#)
- ▶ [Glycemia](#)
- ▶ [Glycemia: Control, Load-High](#)

References and Readings

- Barrett, E. J., & Nadler, J. L. (2002). Non-insulin dependent diabetes mellitus. In G. M. Besser & M. O. Thorne (Eds.), *Comprehensive clinical endocrinology* (pp. 303–318). London: Elsevier Science.
- Booth, G. L. (2001). Short-term clinical consequences of diabetes in adults. In H. G. Gerstein & R. B. Haynes (Eds.), *Evidence-based diabetes care* (pp. 68–106). Hamilton: BC Decker.
- Nadler, J. L., McDuffie, M., & Kirk, S. E. (2002). Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. In G. M. Besser & M. O. Thorne (Eds.), *Comprehensive clinical endocrinology* (pp. 267–290). London: Elsevier Science.

Hyperinsulinemia

Alyssa Parker

UTSW Health Systems, South Western Medical Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Insulin Resistance](#); [Metabolic syndrome X](#); [Prediabetes](#)

Definition

Hyperinsulinemia is an indication of an underlying problem controlling blood glucose levels and is characterized by an excess of insulin circulating in the blood (Shanik et al. 2008). Insulin is produced by the pancreas and helps regulate blood glucose. Hyperinsulinemia may be caused by insulin resistance, a condition in which an individual's body becomes resistant to the effects of insulin and the pancreas compensates by producing additional insulin. Increases in insulin result in a decrease in circulating blood glucose (Buse et al. 2008). Symptoms of hyperinsulinemia are often absent unless hypoglycemia (abnormally low glucose levels) occurs. When present, symptoms may include temporary muscle weakness, brain fog, fatigue, visual problems, headaches, shaking, and/or thirst. Treatment of hyperinsulinemia is directed at the underlying problem and typically focuses on diet and exercise (Diabetes.co.uk Team 2011). Dieticians recommend a nutritional regimen that is low in sugar and carbohydrates, while high in protein. Additionally, regular monitoring of weight, blood glucose, and insulin is advised. In some cases, typically where obesity is present, treatment with metformin (i.e., an oral anti-diabetic drug) may be used to reduce insulin levels (Glueck 2007). Though it is often mistaken for diabetes or hypoglycemia, hyperinsulinemia is a separate condition. Left unmonitored and untreated, however, it can develop into type 2 diabetes mellitus.

A significant risk factor of hyperinsulinemia is the increased likelihood of developing a cluster of closely related abnormalities known as the metabolic syndrome (Reaven 2005). Within this syndrome, it is believed that the more insulin resistant a person, the more likely he or she will develop some degree of glucose intolerance, high triacylglycerol and low HDL concentrations, essential hypertension, and procoagulant and proinflammatory states (Reaven 2006), all of which are known to increase the chance of cardiovascular disease.

Cross-References

- ▶ Blood Glucose
- ▶ Diabetes
- ▶ Glucose: Levels, Control, Intolerance, and Metabolism
- ▶ Hypoglycemia
- ▶ Insulin
- ▶ Insulin Resistance (IR) Syndrome
- ▶ Metabolic Syndrome
- ▶ Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus

References and Further Readings

- Buse, J. B., Polonsky, K. S., & Burant, C. F. (2008). Type 2 diabetes mellitus. In H. M. Kronenberg, S. Melmed, K. S. Polonsky, & P. R. Larsen (Eds.), *Williams text-book of endocrinology* (11th ed., pp. 1329–1389). Philadelphia: Elsevier Science.
- Diabetes.co.uk Team. (2011). *Hyperinsulinemia*. Retrieved from <http://www.diabetes.co.uk/hyperinsulinemia.html>.
- Glueck, C. H. (2007). *Insulin resistance and hyperinsulinemia*. Retrieved from http://www.jewishhospitalcincinnati.com/cholesterol/Research/insulin_resistance.html.
- Reaven, G. M. (2005). The insulin resistance syndrome: Definition and dietary approaches to treatment. *Annual Review of Nutrition*, 25, 391–406.
- Reaven, G. M. (2006). The metabolic syndrome: Is this diagnosis necessary? *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 83(6), 1237–1247.
- Shanik, M. H., Xu, Y., Skrha, J., Dankner, R., Zick, Y., & Roth, J. (2008). Insulin resistance and hyperinsulinemia: Is hyperinsulinemia the cart or the horse? *Diabetes Care*, 31(2), S262–S268.

Hyperlipidemia

Kelly Flannery

School of Nursing, University of Maryland
Baltimore, Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

Lipid disorder

Definition

Hyperlipidemia simply means high blood lipid levels. Lipids refer to cholesterol, cholesterol compounds, triglycerides, and phospholipids. Lipids are carried in the blood by lipoproteins (e.g., low-density lipoproteins (LDL) and high-density lipoproteins (HDL)) (American Heart Association, n.d.).

Description

Hyperlipidemia increases the risk for atherosclerosis (i.e., hardening of the arteries, which is a buildup of plaque in the arteries). Atherosclerosis leads to narrow and stiff arteries that provide a reduced blood flow (Society for Vascular Surgery, 2010) and ultimately an increased risk for high blood pressure, heart disease, stroke, and poor lower leg circulation (Society for Vascular Surgery; U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health, 2011a, 2011b).

Risk Factors

Hyperlipidemia has several risk factors and many are modifiable. Some risk factors include (Mayo Clinic, 2010b; Society for Vascular Surgery,

2010; U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health, 2011b):

- Having certain genetic disorders; for example, familial hypercholesterolemia or familial dysbetalipoproteinemia
- Having a (nuclear) family history of early heart disease (before age 55)
- Age (men >45, women >55)
- Having certain diseases such as diabetes, high blood pressure, kidney disease, hypothyroidism, Cushing syndrome, polycystic ovary syndrome
- Having a body mass index over 25 (also defined as being overweight or obese)
- Drinking alcohol excessively
- Eating diets high in unhealthy fats (i.e., saturated and trans fat)
- Eating diets high in dietary cholesterol
- Lack of exercise
- Using certain medications such as estrogen, birth control pills, corticosteroids, beta blockers, some types of diuretics, and some types of antidepressants
- Smoking cigarettes

Screening

Hyperlipidemia causes no symptoms; therefore, screening is important (Mayo Clinic, 2010c). To screen for hyperlipidemia a blood sample is obtained and a lipid panel (e.g., total cholesterol, LDL, HDL, triglycerides) is done (Mayo Clinic, 2011). Table 1 summarizes why the test is done, the desired or optimal value, and some possible modifiable reasons why the test is not at the desired or optimal value (American Heart Association 2010, 2011; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2010; Mayo Clinic, 2011; National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute, n.d.; U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Cancer Institute, 2011).

Screening Recommendations

Recommendations for when hyperlipidemia screening should begin differ across organizations but generally testing is recommended to begin for men between ages 20–35 and 20–45 for women

Hyperlipidemia, Table 1 Cholesterol screening summary

	Why the test is important	Desired or optimal value ^a	Some possible modifiable reasons why value is not at desired or optimal value
Total cholesterol	Tells the total amount of cholesterol in blood	<200 mg/dL	Being overweight Eating a diet high in saturated and/or trans fats
LDL (bad) cholesterol	When LDL cholesterol is too high, plaque can form in the arteries, which can increase risk for cardiovascular disease	<100 mg/dL	Being overweight Eating a diet high in saturated and/or trans fats
HDL (good) cholesterol	High levels can be protective whereas low levels (<40 mg/dL for men and <50 mg/dL for women) are a significant risk factor for heart disease. HDLs also help remove LDL cholesterol	≥60 mg/dL	Smoking cigarettes Being inactive Being overweight Eating a diet high in trans fats
Triglycerides	Unused calories are converted to triglycerides (fat that is circulating in the blood before it is stored)	<150 mg/dL	Eating more calories than working off Eating too many sweets Drinking alcohol excessively Being overweight Having diabetes with elevated blood sugar

^aThese are general guidelines and results should be discussed with primary care provider; the table was compiled with information from American Heart Association 2010, 2011; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2010; Mayo Clinic, 2011; National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute, n.d.; U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Cancer Institute, 2011

and then checked every 5 years. Additionally, screening is recommended when someone develops certain diseases (e.g., diabetes). Guidelines for cholesterol screening for children and/or adolescents vary due to limited evidence. However, some experts say those under age 18 should be screened if risk factors are present (e.g., family history of high cholesterol) while some recommend screening all children (U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health, 2011a).

Treatment

There are two common treatment methods for addressing an abnormal lipid panel. Sometimes only a lifestyle change is needed. A lifestyle change is often the first step in treating hyperlipidemia. However, if a lifestyle change is not effective (especially if LDLs are still elevated), a combination of lifestyle modification and cholesterol medication may be recommended (Society for Vascular Surgery, 2010).

Possible lifestyle recommendations (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2011; Mayo Clinic, 2010a; Society for Vascular Surgery, 2010; U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Cancer Institute, 2011):

- Eating the recommended amount of fruits and vegetables
- Limiting saturated (e.g., butter, cheese, whole milk) and trans (e.g., processed foods, fried foods, commercially baked foods) fats and replacing them with monounsaturated (e.g., canola oil, olive oil, avocados) and polyunsaturated (e.g., canola oil, walnuts, salmon) fats
- Limiting dietary cholesterol intake
- Eating whole grains
- Engaging in regular exercise
- Losing weight (if overweight)
- Quit smoking cigarettes
- Limiting alcohol consumption

There are five major classes of cholesterol lowering medication, which include: (Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, 2009)

- Vitamins and supplements
- Statins
- Bile acid binders
- Cholesterol absorption inhibitor
- Fibrates

Cross-References

- Cholesterol
- Dyslipidemia
- Lipid Abnormalities
- Lipid Metabolism
- Plasma Lipid

References and Readings

- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. (2009). *Treating high cholesterol: A guide for adults*. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from <http://www.effectivehealthcare.ahrq.gov/index.cfm/search-for-guides-reviews-and-reports/?pageaction=displayproduct&productID=351>
- American Heart Association. (2010). *Levels of cholesterol*. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from http://www.heart.org/HEARTORG/GettingHealthy/FatsAndOils/Fats101/Levels-of-Cholesterol_UCM_305051_Article.jsp
- American Heart Association. (2011). *What your cholesterol levels mean*. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from http://www.heart.org/HEARTORG/Conditions/Cholesterol/AboutCholesterol/What-Your-Cholesterol-Levels-Mean_UCM_305562_Article.jsp
- American Heart Association. (n.d.). *Hyperlipidemia*. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from <http://www.americanheart.org/presenter.jhtml?identifier=4600>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010). *Nutrition for everyone: Trans fat*. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from <http://www.cdc.gov/nutrition/everyone/basics/fat/transfat.html>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2011). *Nutrition for everyone: Polyunsaturated fats and monounsaturated fats*. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from <http://www.cdc.gov/nutrition/everyone/basics/fat/unsaturatedfat.html>
- Mayo Clinic. (2010a). *High cholesterol: Lifestyle and home remedies*. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/high-blood-cholesterol/DS00178/DSECTION=lifestyle-and-home-remedies>
- Mayo Clinic. (2010b). *High cholesterol: Risk factors*. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/high-blood-cholesterol/DS00178/DSECTION=risk-factors>
- Mayo Clinic. (2010c). *High cholesterol: Symptoms*. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/high-blood-cholesterol/DS00178/DSECTION=symptoms>

mayoclinic.com/health/high-blood-cholesterol/DS00178/DSECTION=symptoms

Mayo Clinic. (2011). *Cholesterol test: Why it's done*. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/cholesterol-test/MY00500/DSECTION=why-its-done>

National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute. (n.d.). *What causes high blood cholesterol?* Retrieved April 15, 2011, from http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/dci/Diseases/Hbc/HBC_Causes.html

Society for Vascular Surgery. (2010). *Hyperlipidemia*. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from <https://www.vascularweb.org/vascularhealth/Pages/Hyperlipidemia.aspx>

U.S. National Library of Medicine, & National Cancer Institute. (2011). *Dietary fats explained*. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/patientinstructions/000104.htm>

U.S. National Library of Medicine, & National Institutes of Health. (2011a). *Coronary risk profile*. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/003491.htm>

U.S. National Library of Medicine, & National Institutes of Health. (2011b). *High blood cholesterol and triglycerides*. Retrieved April 15, 2011, from <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000403.htm>

Hypertension

Douglas Carroll
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The
University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

High blood pressure

Definition

Hypertension has been variously defined over the years. However, systolic (i.e., peak) blood

pressure ≥ 140 mmHg and diastolic blood pressure ≥ 90 mmHg are now considered indicative of hypertension and of meriting treatment. Blood pressure ca 120/80 mmHg is deemed to be normal (normotensive). Although hypertension may be a secondary consequence of problems elsewhere, e.g., renal failure, the vast majority of cases of hypertension have no proximal and discrete cause. This is called essential hypertension and is a major focus of research in behavioral medicine. This is easy to understand given the prevalence and health consequences of hypertension. It is estimated to affect 15% and 20% of the adult population in Western countries, with worldwide prevalence being around 10%. Concern with hypertension also reflects its association with coronary heart disease and stroke; the results of many studies testify that as blood pressure rises, life expectancy decreases. For example, at the outset of the famous Framingham study, some 5000 of the citizens of that small community in the USA had their blood pressures recorded; around 20% of them were hypertensive. Those with hypertension were three times more likely to go on to have a heart attack and eight times more likely to have a stroke. Given the clinical importance of hypertension, it is perhaps hardly surprising that there are several dedicated scientific journals and many texts devoted to hypertension. My favorite, however, remains Beevers and MacGregor (1995).

Cross-References

- Blood Pressure
- Blood Pressure, Measurement of
- Hypertrophy

References and Further Reading

Beevers, D. G., & MacGregor, G. A. (1995). *Hypertension in practice* (2nd ed.). London: Martin Dunitz.

Hypertriglyceridemia

► Dyslipidemia

Hypertrophy

Leah Rosenberg
Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

Cardiovascular disease; Hypertension

Definition

Hypertrophy is a structural response of an anatomic chamber, particularly the right and left cardiac ventricles, to chronically increased volumes or pressures. Left ventricular hypertrophy has been shown to be independently predictive of coronary heart disease onset and is associated with common conditions such as hypertension (high blood pressure) and cardiac valvular dysfunction (Maron et al. 2010). While hypertrophy is initially an adaptive mechanism for the heart, the chronic enlargement leads to unsustainable pressures and deformation that impedes contraction and relaxation. Serial measurements of hypertrophy can be helpful in primary and secondary prevention for cardiovascular events.

References and Readings

Maron, D. J., Ridker, P. M., Grundy, S. M., & Pearson, T. A. (2010). Chapter 51. Preventive strategies for coronary heart disease (Chapter). In V. Fuster, R. A. O'Rourke, R. A. Walsh, P. Poole-Wilson, S. B. King, R. Roberts, I. S. Nash, E. N. Prystowsky, & Assoc (Eds.), *Hurst's the heart* (12th ed.).

Hypochondriasis

Molly S. Clark¹, Katherine T. Fortenberry² and Kate L. Jansen³

¹Midwestern University College of Health Sciences, Clinical Psychology, Glendale, AZ, USA

²Department of Family and Preventative Medicine, The University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

³Behavioral Health, Midwestern University, Glendale, AZ, USA

Synonyms

Health anxiety; Illness Anxiety Disorder; Somatic Symptom Disorder

Definition

Hypochondriasis was defined by the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fourth Edition, Text Revision (DSM-IV-TR) (American Psychiatric 2000), as preoccupation with fear of having or the belief that one has a serious health condition. However, with the release of the DSM, Fifth Edition (DSM 5) (American Psychiatric 2013), the term hypochondriasis is now referred as the two separate disorders of somatic symptom disorder and illness anxiety disorder. Previous criteria for a diagnosis of hypochondriasis included that the belief: is often based on the misreading of physical symptoms, is not of intensity better described as delusional, leads to clinically significant impairment in functioning, is of 6 months duration or longer and is not better accounted for by a medical or psychiatric disorder. A specifier of "with poor insight" may be added to the diagnosis if the individual does not have recognition that the fears of illness are unwarranted and unfounded.

According to the DSM 5, approximately 75% of those previously diagnosed with hypochondriasis

would now meet the criteria for somatic symptom disorder. The criteria for this disorder must include at a minimum one somatic symptom that causes distress in everyday life. The critical diagnostic feature is that the cognitions, emotions, and behaviors related to the somatic symptom(s) are excessive and include overwhelming thoughts about the seriousness of the symptom(s), increased levels of anxiety about the symptom(s) or health, and/or that the individual exerts an excessive amount of time and energy surrounding the symptom(s). While the symptom(s) may change, this disorder is characterized by being “symptomatic” for at least 6 months or longer. There are also specifiers that differentiate between a more chronic course and whether pain is a predominant factor. Finally, the criteria include severity ratings of mild, moderate, or severe based upon how many of the markers from the above criteria are met.

The other 25% of persons that would have been diagnosed as having hypochondriasis by DSM-IV-TR criteria would now meet criteria for illness anxiety disorder in the DSM 5. This disorder is characterized by the preoccupation with developing or being inflicted with a disease or condition. The major difference between illness anxiety disorder and somatic symptom disorder is that, with Illness Anxiety Disorder, the somatic symptom(s) may not be present and if they are they are only to a slight degree. If an individual has a familial history of a disease or if a condition is present, the degree of concern related to developing the condition or the focus on the disease is considered to be disproportionate. Furthermore, there is either an avoidance of seeking medical care to the extent that it is seen as an unhealthy avoidance of healthcare or there are extreme behaviors focusing on the illness/symptoms. While these symptoms must be present for at least 6 months, the illness or symptoms may change from one condition or symptom to another and continue to meet diagnostic criteria.

As a result of the DSM 5 criteria and terminology changing, there are few resources available recommending changes in evaluation and management of hypochondriasis, known now as somatic symptom disorder or illness anxiety disorder. Therefore, the information presented below

remains relevant until more information is provided about how evaluation and treatment may vary with the new classification.

Description

Epidemiology

The prevalence of hypochondriasis is estimated to be between 1% and 5% in the general population. However, the prevalence rates increase to 2–7% within primary care outpatient populations, which is not unexpected given that this population is likely to seek treatment (American Psychiatric 2000). Hypochondriasis may manifest at any age, but occurrences are commonly noted in early adulthood, with no gender differences noted. The course of hypochondriasis is typically described as chronic in greater than 50% of cases, and likelihood of chronicity is increased when the individual experiences a number of bodily sensations, believes that one has a serious illness, or has other comorbid psychiatric diagnoses (Taylor and Asmundson 2006). Cross-cultural differences have been noted among patients diagnosed with hypochondriasis (Taylor and Asmundson 2006; Asmundson et al. 2001); for example, gastrointestinal sensations are predominant in the United Kingdom, pulmonary complaints are common in Germany, and concerns surrounding immunology and chemical sensitivities frequently occur in the USA and Canada (Taylor and Asmundson 2006).

Evaluation

Essential features of an evaluation of hypochondriasis include a thorough medical examination to rule out any potential physiological explanation for the reported symptoms (Taylor and Asmundson 2006). Following this evaluation, a detailed psychiatric interview should be conducted and include any recent psychosocial stressors and previous history of health-related difficulties of the patient, family member, or significant others. Interviewers should consider in the evaluation that hypochondriasis typically manifests in the forms of disease phobia, bodily preoccupation, and disease conviction. For example, a patient may present with the belief that they

have cancer (disease conviction) or may have a preoccupation with gastrointestinal complaints (bodily preoccupation) and insist on laboratory tests and radiological imaging. Although a person with hypochondriasis may exhibit symptoms in all three of these categories, symptoms that fall within a predominant category can impact patient presentation and treatment (Stewart and Watt 2001). Adjunctive standardized assessments may be utilized but with cautious interpretation. For example, the Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory-2 (MMPI-2), which has a hypochondriasis scale, does not necessarily measure the fear associated with health complaints but rather measures the degree to which one experiences physical symptoms (Taylor and Asmundson 2006). Other measures, such as the Structured Clinical Interview for the DSM-IV (SCID), the Structured Diagnostic Interview for Hypochondriasis (SDIH), and other self-report hypochondriasis measures (e.g., Whiteley Index, Health Anxiety Questionnaire, Illness Attitudes Scale, Somatosensory Amplification Scale and Illness Behavior Scale), may be more appropriate tools in gathering diagnostic information within this patient population (Speckens 2001; Stewart and Watt 2001).

Treatment/Best Practices

Although there is no evidence to date on combined treatments, there is consistent evidence suggesting that cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) and medication-based treatments independently for hypochondriasis are effective (Taylor and Asmundson 2006). Specifically, CBT interventions that focused on exposure and response prevention, psychoeducation, and cognitive therapy were found to improve symptoms in patients with hypochondriasis, and treatment gains continued to be present in a 12-month follow-up (Asmundson et al. 2001; Fallon and Feinstein 2001; Taylor and Asmundson 2006). As an example of CBT with exposure and response prevention for hypochondriasis, a patient with a bodily preoccupation of skin rashes may be exposed to anxiety associated with thoughts of having a skin rash and resist the typical subsequent responses to that anxiety that would usually follow (e.g., calling a doctor, asking numerous questions about the

rash, researching information on the internet/medical books, etc.) until the anxiety is relieved. Finally, while there are self-help and internet resources available, there is a paucity of evidence on the effectiveness of these resources utilized independently and/or as an adjunct to other therapies described (Taylor and Asmundson 2006).

With regard to pharmacotherapy, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) and imipramine, a tricyclic antidepressant, have been shown in both head-to-head trials and randomized control trials to be useful in patients with hypochondriasis. Of the SSRIs studied (paroxetine, fluoxetine, fluvoxamine, and nefazadone), fluoxetine appears to have greater potential for desired treatment effects. However, there are no recent studies on long-term use of these medications with persons diagnosed with hypochondriasis (Asmundson et al. 2001; Enns et al. 2001; Taylor and Asmundson 2006).

In addition to these treatment choices, environmental factors may impact treatment effectiveness. For example, the relationship between the patient and treating provider may impact treatment and exacerbation of symptoms (Lipsitt 2001). If the provider is perceived by the patient as dismissing of symptoms or as not addressing the patient's concerns, the patient may choose to move from provider to provider until such symptoms are addressed. It is also suggested that overreassurance can exacerbate symptoms because the patient may perceive that their symptoms are being dismissed, leading to patient dropout (Starcevic 2001). Optimally, providers who communicate clearly about guidelines on when to seek treatment and who have regularly scheduled follow-ups may reduce unnecessary treatment visits. Furthermore, patient preference should be weighted heavily into the decision to utilize pharmacotherapy, psychotherapy, or combined treatments (Taylor and Asmundson 2006).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Health Anxiety](#)
- ▶ [Illness Anxiety Disorder](#)
- ▶ [Somatic Symptom Disorder](#)
- ▶ [Somatoform Disorders](#)

References and Further Reading

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders, DSM-IV-TR* (4th ed. text Rev, pp. 504–507). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association.
- American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders, DSM 5* (5th ed. pp. 309–318). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association.
- Asmundson, G. J. G., Taylor, S., & Sevgur, S. (2001). In B. J. Cox, G. J. G. Asmundson, S. Taylor, & B. J. Cox (Eds.), *Health anxiety: Clinical and research perspectives on hypochondriasis and related conditions* (pp. 3–21). Chichester: Wiley.
- Enns, M. W., Kjernisted, K., & Lander, M. (2001). In G. J. G. Asmundson, S. Taylor, & B. J. Cox (Eds.), *Health anxiety: Clinical and research perspectives on hypochondriasis and related conditions* (pp. 193–219). Chichester: Wiley.
- Fallon, B. A., & Feinstein, S. (2001). *Somatoform and factitious disorders* (pp. 27–60). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric.
- Lipsitt, D. R. (2001). *Hypochondriasis* (pp. 265–290). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Speckens, A. E. M. (2001). *Hypochondriasis* (pp. 61–88). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Starcevic, V. (2001). *Hypochondriasis* (pp. 291–313). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Stewart, S. H., & Watt, M. C. (2001). In G. J. G. Asmundson, S. Taylor, & B. J. Cox (Eds.), *Health anxiety: Clinical and research perspectives on hypochondriasis and related conditions* (pp. 95–131). Chichester: Wiley.
- Taylor, S., & Asmundson, G. J. G. (2006). Hypochondriasis. In J. E. Fisher & W. T. O'Donohue (Eds.), *Practitioner's guide to evidenced-based psychotherapy* (pp. 313–323). New York: Springer.

Hypoglycemia

Alyssa Parker
UTSW Health Systems, South Western Medical
Center, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

Insulin shock; Low blood glucose

Definition

Hypoglycemia is characterized by an abnormally low level of blood glucose concentration, designated as less than or equal to 70 mg/dL. Blood glucose serves as the body's main energy source (Pub Med Health 2011). With hypoglycemia, there is an inadequate supply of glucose to the brain, resulting in impairment of function that requires immediate attention to prevent organ or brain damage, especially when blood glucose is extremely low (Cryer 1997). Hypoglycemia occurs when an individual's glucose is metabolized too quickly, when glucose is released into the bloodstream too slowly, and when too much insulin is released into the bloodstream (Cryer et al. 2003). Hypoglycemia is relatively common among people with type 1 diabetes, and may occur when too much insulin or diabetes medication is taken, when insufficient amounts of food are ingested, or with sudden increases in exercise. Hypoglycemia is characterized as mild (below 70 mg/dL), moderate (below 55 mg/dL), or severe (below 35–40 mg/dL); and common symptoms include: trembling, nausea, sweating, dizziness, irritability, confusion, seizures, fainting, and coma. Immediate treatment involves quick steps to return blood glucose levels to a normal range. Mild-to-moderate hypoglycemia is treated by ingesting carbohydrates, while glucagon injections, a hormone that blocks insulin and raises blood glucose, are used to treat severe cases (Wysocki et al. 2003). People with type 1 diabetes suffer an average of two episodes of symptomatic hypoglycemia per week, and approximately one episode of severe, at least temporarily disabling, hypoglycemia per year (Cryer 2010). Careful monitoring of blood glucose levels can help predict or prevent moderate to severe hypoglycemia in at-risk individuals.

Cross-References

- Blood Glucose
- Diabetes
- Glucose

- ▶ [Glucose: Levels, Control, Intolerance, and Metabolism](#)
- ▶ [Glycemia: Control, Load-High](#)
- ▶ [Insulin](#)
- ▶ [Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus](#)

References and Further Readings

- Cryer, P. E. (1997). *Hypoglycemia: Pathophysiology, diagnosis, and treatment*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Cryer, P. E. (2010). Hypoglycemia in type 1 diabetes mellitus. *Endocrinology and Metabolism Clinics of North America*, 39, 641–654.
- Cryer, P. E., Davis, S. N., & Shamon, H. (2003). Hypoglycemia in diabetes. *Diabetes Care*, 26(6), 1902–1912.
- Hypoglycemia (General)*. Retrieved from <http://diabetes.niddk.nih.gov/dm/pubs/hypoglycemia/>.
- Pub Med Health (2011). A.D.A.M. Medical Encyclopedia: *Hypoglycemia*. Retrieved from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmedhealth/PMH0001423/>.
- Wysocki, T., Greco, P., & Buckloh, L. M. (2003). Childhood diabetes in psychological context. In M. C. Roberts (Ed.), *Handbook of pediatric psychology* (pp. 304–320). New York: Guilford Press.

Hypothalamic Nuclei

- ▶ [Hypothalamus](#)

Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Axis

Jennifer Heaney
Clinical Immunology Service, The University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

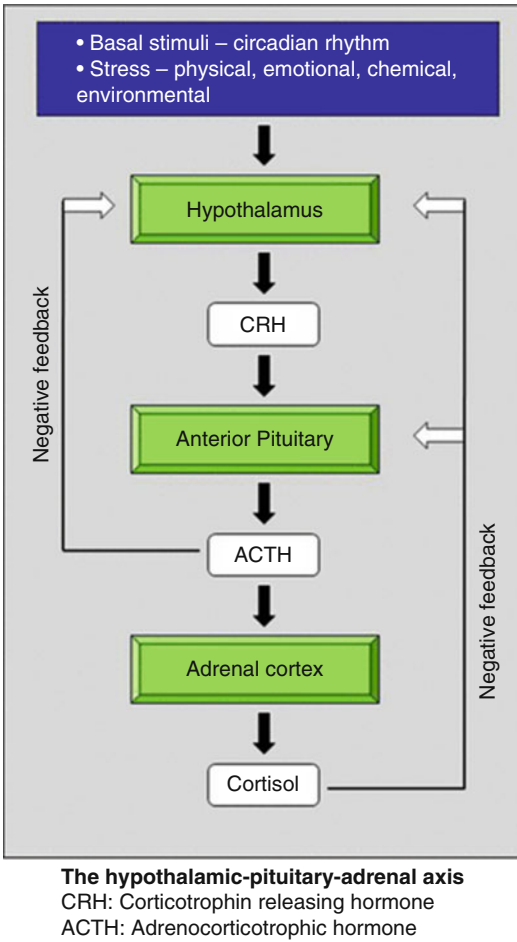
Definition

The hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis is an interactive neuroendocrine unit comprising of the hypothalamus, the pituitary gland, and the adrenal glands. The hypothalamus is located in the brain, with the pituitary below the

hypothalamus at the base of the brain, whereas the adrenals are on top of the kidneys.

The HPA axis plays key roles in basal homeostasis and in the body's response to stress. The major pathway of the axis results in the production and secretion of cortisol. The hypothalamus responds to basal neural input which follows a circadian rhythm and input as a result of stress by increasing the secretion of corticotrophin-releasing hormone (CRH) from the hypothalamus. This increase in CRH acts upon the anterior pituitary gland to secrete adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), which in turn circulates to the adrenal cortex to stimulate the release of cortisol into the bloodstream. The HPA axis is an example of a negative feedback loop; cortisol can reduce its own secretion via feedback to the anterior pituitary to reduce ACTH and the hypothalamus to limit the secretion of CRH. ACTH also provides negative feedback limiting its secretion via CRH.

The importance of the HPA axis to homeostasis is illustrated through the wide range of functions that cortisol is involved in, including metabolism, vascular activity, and immune and inflammatory responses. Therefore, even in the absence of stress, the production of cortisol via the HPA axis performs vital roles within the human body. In the presence of stress, be it physical, emotional, chemical, or environmental, the HPA axis governs the body's response. An increase in the production of cortisol enhances vascular activity, reduces immune responses, limits inflammation, stimulates gluconeogenesis, and inhibits nonessential functions. These effects serve to protect the body from potential damaging effects of stress, e.g., excessive immune and inflammatory response, but also act to increase resources to cope during the period of stress through changes in metabolism. While the role of cortisol in the stress response is initially protective, long-term stimulation of the HPA axis and overexposure to cortisol can be damaging, leading to immunosuppression and excessive catabolism of body tissue. Dysregulation of the HPA axis has been associated with various illnesses and disorders, both physiological and psychological. More detail on the HPA axis can be found from the following



Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Axis, Fig. 1 The hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis. *CRH* corticotrophin-releasing hormone, *ACTH* adrenocorticotrophic hormone

sources: Widmaier et al. (2004) and Greenspan and Forsham (1983) (Fig. 1).

Cross-References

- [ACTH](#)
- [Cortisol](#)
- [Pituitary-Adrenal Axis](#)

References and Further Reading

Greenspan, F. S., & Forsham, P. H. (1983). *Basic and clinical endocrinology*. Los Altos: Lange Medical.

O'Riordan, F. L. H., Malan, P. G., & Gould, R. P. (1988). *Essentials of endocrinology* (2nd ed.). Oxford: Blackwell.

Widmaier, E. P., Raff, H., & Strang, K. T. (2004). *Vander, Sherman, & Luciano's human physiology: The mechanism of body function*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

Hypothalamus

Elliott A. Beaton

Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences and the M.I.N.D. Institute, University of California-Davis, Sacramento, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Anterior hypothalamic area](#); [Arcuate nucleus](#); [Dorsal hypothalamic area](#); [Dorsomedial nucleus](#); [Hypothalamic nuclei](#); [Lateral mammillary nucleus](#); [Lateral nucleus](#); [Lateral preoptic area](#); [Medial mammillary nucleus](#); [Medial preoptic area](#); [Paraventricular nucleus](#); [Posterior hypothalamic area](#); [Suprachiasmatic nucleus](#); [Supraoptic nucleus](#); [Ventromedial nucleus](#)

Definition

The hypothalamus is a subcortical collection of nuclei that monitor, modulate, and regulate physiology and behavior including feeding, thirst, reproduction, temperature regulation, sleep, and emotional behavior such as fear and aggression.

Description

This entry describes the hypothalamus in humans. All vertebrates have a hypothalamus, and while there is a high degree of conservation across species and especially in mammals, readers should refer elsewhere for phenotypic and functional details regarding other animals.

The hypothalamus (Latin: hypo: "below" the thalamus) is located below the thalamus on the base of the brain on both sides of the ventral

portion of the third ventricle. Three main divisions of the hypothalamus are the anterior, medial (or tuberal), and posterior regions, each made up of several nuclei. These clusters of neurons coordinate autonomic, endocrine, somatic, and behavioral information to maintain homeostasis and motivate behavior in both the short and long term. Via bidirectional connections throughout many areas of the brain, the hypothalamus regulates a host of physiological processes and related reflexes including feeding, drinking, reproduction, temperature regulation, sleep, and emotional behavior such as fear and aggression.

The hypothalamus receives sensory information from the entire body about conditions in the external world including smells and light cycles and internal information from the visceral somatosensory system. Other sensory cells within hypothalamic nuclei monitor and respond to changes in internal states and biological set points such as temperature, salinity, and glucose, in addition to other factors outside the blood-brain barrier via connections with circumventricular organs such as the area postrema. A change in homeostasis (e.g., increased body temperature) triggers a variety of responses aimed at body temperature reduction, all of which are regulated by the hypothalamus. These include moving blood to the surface of the skin, increased sweating, and increased water conservation at the kidneys.

The hypothalamus controls the endocrine system via the anterior and posterior pituitary gland. The hypothalamus is neural tissue, but it also has specialized neural cells that secrete neurohormones from nerve cell terminals into blood vessels in the pituitary gland. Although the output of these neurosecretory cells is endocrinological, they are morphologically similar to typical neurons and serve to bridge the neural and endocrine systems. Oxytocin and vasopressin are peptides produced in neuroendocrine cells in the paraventricular and supraoptic nuclei of the hypothalamus and released into general circulation directly via projections into the arterial blood within the posterior pituitary gland (also called the neurohypophysis). Other hypothalamic

nuclei indirectly control the endocrine system through the production of neuroendocrine factors that inhibit or increase release of various hormones from the anterior pituitary gland (also called the adenohypophysis). For example, corticotropin-releasing factor and growth hormone-releasing factor regulate the release of adrenocorticotropin and growth hormone from the anterior pituitary respectively.

Finally, bidirectional communication between higher cortical regions and the hypothalamus occurs via the limbic system. In the temperature regulation example above, information from the hypothalamus to other limbic areas and the cortex can regulate complex behavior and motivation such as acting on the environment to generate cooling or mobility to a cooler environment. Cognition and emotion related to the situational context can also modulate hypothalamic responses.

References and Readings

- Greenstein, B., & Wood, D. (2006). *The endocrine system at a glance* (2nd ed.). Malden: Blackwell.
- Joseph, J. T., & Cardozo, D. L. (2004). *Functional neuroanatomy: An interactive text and manual*. Hoboken: Wiley.
- Kandel, E. R., Schwartz, J. H., & Jessell, T. M. (Eds.). (2000). *Principles of neuroscience* (4th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Panksepp, J. (1998). *Affective neuroscience: The foundations of human and animal emotions*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Hypothesis Testing

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Inferential statistical testing](#)

Definition

Hypothesis testing is the core component of inferential statistics, a branch of statistics that is employed to provide compelling evidence that two or more groups of numbers (data) differ from each other in a meaningful manner. It is therefore a strategy that facilitates provision of compelling evidence of the efficacy of a new behavioral medicine intervention or treatment.

Description

One of the most efficient ways to acquire new knowledge about any topic (including new behavioral medicine interventions) is to devise questions that guide our investigations. While relatively loosely formed questions can be helpful in early stages of the knowledge acquisition process, refining our knowledge is facilitated by asking more specific questions, and, in turn, acquiring more specific information and knowledge.

The scientific method is one particular method of acquiring new knowledge. In scientific research, our questions need to be asked in a particular manner. These questions are called research questions, and they lead to the development of two research hypotheses in each case. Turner (2007) provided an operational definition of a useful research question:

- It needs to be specific (precise).
- It needs to be testable.

Consider a new behavioral medicine intervention for pain management. To test its efficacy against a standard (existing) treatment, it is planned to conduct a randomized, controlled clinical trial. The research question of interest is:

- Is the new treatment statistically significantly more effective than the standard treatment?

Actually, the “pure” statistical version of this question asks whether there is a statistically significant difference in the efficacy demonstrated by

the two treatments. This question allows for the fact that the new treatment could theoretically be statistically significantly *less* effective than the standard treatment as well as being significantly more effective. That is, use of a two-sided approach (hypothesis) is, in reality, appropriate here. However, we will proceed here with interest focused on just one of the two directions of differential performance of the new treatment.

The research hypotheses are commonly called the null hypothesis and the alternative hypothesis. In this author’s opinion, the term “research hypothesis” is more informative than the term “alternative hypothesis,” and so it is used here. The null hypothesis is the crux of hypothesis testing. For our research question, the null hypothesis would be:

- The new treatment is not statistically significantly more effective than the standard treatment.

The accompanying research hypothesis is:

- The new treatment is statistically significantly more effective than the standard treatment.

It is important to note that, whatever the outcome of the trial, the following statements are true:

- It is never the case that neither hypothesis is correct.
- It is never the case that both hypotheses are correct.
- It is always the case that one of them is correct, and that the other is not correct.

A helpful way of remembering which hypothesis is which, i.e., which form the null hypothesis takes and which form the research hypothesis takes, is to conceptualize that the research hypothesis states what you are “hoping” to find, and the null hypothesis states what you are not hoping to find (researchers who have developed a new treatment have an understandable tendency to want it to be better than other treatments). It must be emphasized here, however, that, while helpful,

this conceptualization skates on very thin scientific ice. In strict scientific terms, hope has no place in experimental research. The goal is to discover the truth, whatever it may be, and one should not start out hoping to find one particular outcome. In the real world, this ideologically pure stance is not common for many reasons (financial and personal recognition reasons being not the least of them).

Statistical analysis of the data acquired in the trial conducted to compare the two treatments will enable us to decide between the two mutually exclusive hypotheses, i.e., the null hypothesis and the research hypothesis. A measure of pain reduction will be obtained for each person receiving the new treatment (the test treatment group), and will also be obtained for each person receiving the standard treatment (the control treatment group). The mean (average) pain reduction will be calculated for each treatment group. The focus of attention can be captured by a treatment effect associated with the new treatment, which is calculated as follows: Treatment effect = Mean pain reduction in the test treatment group minus mean pain reduction in the control treatment group.

The concept of statistical significance becomes important here because it is possible for the mean pain reduction in the test treatment group to be numerically greater than mean pain reduction in the control treatment group, but for the difference not to attain statistical significance. To provide compelling evidence that the new treatment is “better” than the standard one, there must be a statistically significant treatment effect. The statistical methodology involved in determining the presence or absence of a statistically significant treatment effect is formulaic: The treatment effect is either of statistically significant magnitude or it is not. If it is, the appropriate test will ultimately produce a result in the form “ $p < 0.05$ ” (see the “► [Probability](#)” entry). If so, given that a randomized study design has been used, this evidence would allow the statement that the difference in magnitude between the mean response in the test treatment group and that in the control group (the treatment effect) is unlikely to have been due to chance, i.e., it is sufficiently great to be declared

statistically significant. In this case, the null hypothesis is rejected in favor of the research hypothesis. If the result is “ $p \geq 0.05$ ” statistical significance is not achieved. This result allows the statement to be made that the degree of difference in pain reduction between the two treatment groups could well have arisen by chance alone. In this case, we fail to reject the null hypothesis.

Statistical methodology necessitates a choice being made here: It is a forced choice paradigm. It is always the case that the process of hypothesis testing will result in one, and only one, of these two mutually exclusive actions.

The connection between the terms “hypothesis testing” and “inferential statistics” is a result of the following statement. The ultimate purpose of the results from a single clinical trial (or a group of related trials) is not to tell us precisely what happened in that trial, but to allow us to gain insight into, i.e., to infer in an educated manner, what is likely to happen in a much larger group of patients should the treatment make it into widespread clinical practice.

Cross-References

► [Probability](#)

References and Further Readings

Turner, J. R. (2007). *New drug development: design, methodology, and analysis*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.

Hypothetical Construct

► [Latent Variable](#)

Hypothetical Variable

► [Latent Variable](#)

Iatrogenic Conditions

Marie Boltz

The Pennsylvania State University College of Nursing, State College, PA, USA

Synonyms

Nosocomial medical errors

Definition

Iatrogenesis refers to any unintended adverse patient outcome due to a health-care intervention not related to the natural course of an illness or injury (Furrow 2012).

Description

Iatrogenic conditions may be both preventable (e.g., medical error, negligence, consumer decisions) and unpreventable (e.g., the side effects of chemotherapy). The study of iatrogenic conditions has largely been in the acute care hospital. Two Institute of Medicine reports describe the staggering prevalence and ramification of medical errors and elevated patient safety as a major concern in health care and among policymakers. The first report, *To Err is Human: Building a Safer Health System*, estimated that preventable

medical errors resulted in 44,000 and 98,000 deaths per year at a cost of up to \$29 billion in unnecessary health-care expenses, disability, and lost income (Kohn et al. 1999). The second report, *Crossing the Quality Chasm*, emphasized the need to reengineer health-care delivery and defined six aims of health care. The report called for care to be safe, effective, patient centered, timely, efficient, and equitable (Institute of Medicine 2001).

The rate of preventable adverse events continues to increase. In a study published in 2011, the National Center for Policy Analysis estimates that there are as many as 187,000 preventable iatrogenic deaths in hospitals and as many as 6.1 million injuries, both in and out of hospitals (Goodman et al. 2011). Iatrogenic complications, in general, are related to medications (adverse drug events (ADEs)), therapeutic or diagnostic interventions, nosocomial infections, and environmental factors.

Adverse Drug Events

Inappropriate drug prescribing, polypharmacy, administration errors, and suboptimal adherence by the patient are common preventable causes of adverse drug events (ADEs). Medication reconciliation upon admission, transfer, and discharge is a key strategy to maintain medication safety. Electronic medical records that provide information (e.g., past diagnoses and lab studies), educational prompts, and warnings (e.g., allergy alerts and contraindications) are used to reduce errors in

prescribing. The Institute for Safe Medication Practices provides guidelines for the use of well-designed standard order sets, safe automated dispensing, and medication labeling both in acute and community settings (Institute for Safe Medication Practices Guidelines).

Guidelines for rational drug prescribing, particularly critical in the older adult, are another strategy to prevent ADEs. The Beers Criteria address two key areas: (1) medications or medication classes that should generally be avoided in persons 65 and older and (2) medications that should be avoided in older persons with specific medical conditions. The Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) has incorporated the Beers Criteria into regulatory guidelines in long-term care. The Joint Commission (TJC) describes prescribing that is incompatible with the criteria as a potential sentinel event in hospitals. While the Beers Criteria for inappropriate medications are an accepted guideline for assessing *potential* inappropriate medications, they need to be used in conjunction with clinical assessment of the individual patient's clinical presentation and needs (American Geriatrics Society 2015 Beers Criteria Update Expert Panel 2015).

Patient understanding of medications needs to be addressed as a potential barrier to medication adherence. The National Quality Forum (NQF) identified the “teach-back” method as an essential safe practice to improve health care (National Quality Forum 2009). Asking the patient to recount what he or she has been told can help gauge the level of understanding and facilitate individualized educational approaches. This method is recommended for all types of provider settings.

Therapeutic or Diagnostic Interventions

Excessive venipuncture increases the risk of anemia, infection, phlebitis, and venous thrombotic embolism (VTE). Another common complication, especially in persons with diabetes mellitus and preexisting renal insufficiency, is nephropathy induced by the use of contrast dye. When a radiocontrast dye is deemed necessary, a low-osmolar agent should be used at the lowest dose possible, with careful hydration before and after the

procedure. Medical procedures, such as thoracentesis and cardiac catheterization, have also been linked to preventable adverse effects, such as cardiac arrhythmias, bleeding, infection, and pneumothorax. Aspiration deaths due to barium, emollient laxatives, and contrast medium; colonic perforations due to endoscopy or enema; and complications associated with percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy tubes are not uncommon.

Older adults in any setting, but particularly the acute care hospital, are at risk for “geriatric syndromes” which can be caused by inadequate care processes and environmental factors. Functional decline, delirium, falls with injury, and pressure ulcers are associated with the use of restrictive devices and immobility, prolonged use of invasive lines, lack of attention to nutrition, sensory deprivation, inappropriate medication use, inadequate pain control, and environments that do not accommodate age-related changes. Bedrest, in and of itself, can have serious negative effects on older patients and is associated with greater risk for venous thrombotic embolism (VTE), orthostatic hypotension, pneumonia, anorexia, constipation, and fecal impaction (Creditor 1993).

Iatrogenesis can also occur due to misdiagnosis. For example, the older woman who presents to the emergency department with shortness of breath and abdominal discomfort may not receive appropriate evaluation for a myocardial infarction because of her “atypical presentation.” She suffers from underdiagnosis due to the provider's lack of knowledge of aging pathophysiology. Similarly, psychological conditions may be underdiagnosed as well as overdiagnosed. For example, a normal bereavement reaction can be pathologized and described as major depression, leading to inappropriate pharmacologic therapy rather than grief counseling.

Nosocomial Infections

Common nosocomial or facility-acquired infections include those of the urinary tract and those related to intravascular devices and pneumonia. Potentially preventable and antibiotic-resistant infections include those of the skin (e.g., methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*), urinary tract (e.g., vancomycin-resistant

Enterococci), oropharyngeal (e.g., *Candida* species), and gastrointestinal (e.g., *Clostridium difficile*). Antibiotic resistance is associated with overprescribing of antibiotics, cross-colonization due to poor hand-washing techniques of health-care workers, and the transfer of colonized patients between institutions.

The use of indwelling urinary catheters is associated with urinary tract infections. In addition to aseptic technique during insertion and careful catheter hygiene, providers are advised to avoid their use whenever possible. Also, implementing systems that prompt providers to review the need for the catheter and encourage early removal are warranted (Lo et al. 2014).

Intravascular infections are related to central intravenous or intra-arterial lines. Organizational practices to limit their occurrence include the use of antimicrobial catheters, proper disinfection of the skin, and prompt removal of the catheter as soon as possible and whenever there is clinical evidence of infection. Factors associated with nosocomial pneumonia include gastric aspiration, fecal-oral spread of pathogens, spread from the hands of health-care personnel, and cross-contamination from other patients. Nosocomial pneumonia is most common in critically ill, ventilated patients. Preventive measures include proper hand-washing and cleaning of respiratory and medical (including stethoscopes) equipment and maintaining the patient in an upright position to prevent aspiration of gastric contents (Yokes et al. 2014).

Environmental Factors

The physical environment of health-care facilities, especially hospitals, may pose fall hazards and limit patient mobility and physical activity. Thus, they may actually contribute to iatrogenic outcomes such as fall-related injuries, skin breakdown, and functional decline, especially in older patients or those who are physically or cognitively challenged. Cluttered walkways, hallway glare, beds and toilets not at the proper height to promote safe transfers, noise levels that interfere with sleep, and lack of access to assistive equipment are frequent culprits. Thus, comfort, enablement of physical activity, and safety

are important attributes of a health-care environment.

The social environment, particularly the dynamic between the patient and the health-care worker, can also contribute to functional and other outcomes. Communication that is encouraging and insightful can motivate patients and facilitate involvement in function-focused care, thus mitigating risk for falls, pressure ulcers, and functional decline. Additionally, collaboration among the interdisciplinary team and inclusion of patients in decision-making are critical. A collaborative relationship between clinicians, health-care workers, and the patient to attain mutually agreed upon goals can foster more patient control, self-care, and autonomy and prevent iatrogenesis (Berntsen 2006).

Cross-References

- [Adverse Drug Reaction](#)
- [Human Factors/Ergonomics](#)

References and Further Readings

- American Geriatrics Society 2015 Beers Criteria Update Expert Panel. (2015). American Geriatrics Society 2015 updated beers criteria for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 63(11), 2227–2246.
- Berntsen, K. J. (2006). Implementation of patient centeredness to enhance patient safety. *Journal of Nursing Care Quality*, 21(1), 15–19.
- Creditor, M. C. (1993). Hazards of hospitalization of the elderly. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 118(3), 219–223.
- Furrow, B. R. (2012). Adverse events and patient injury: Coupling detection, disclosure, and compensation. *New England Law Review*, 46, 437–473.
- Goodman, J. C., Villarreal, P., & Jones, B. (2011). The social cost of adverse medical events, and what we can do about it. *Health Affairs*, 30(4), 590–595.
- Institute of Medicine. (2001). *Crossing the quality chasm: A new health system for the 21st century*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Kohn, L., Corrigan, J., & Donaldson, M. (1999). *To err is human: Building a safer health system*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Lo, E., Nicolle, L. E., Coffin, S. E., Gould, C., Maragakis, L. L., Meddings, J., Pegues, D. A., Pettis, A. M., Saint, S., & Yokoe, D. S. (2014). Strategies to prevent catheter-associated urinary tract infections in acute

care hospitals: 2014 update. *Infection Control & Hospital Epidemiology*, 35(05), 464–479.

National Quality Forum. (2009). *Improving patient safety through informed consent for patients with limited health literacy*. Washington, DC: National Quality Forum.

The Institute for Safe Medication Practices Guidelines. <http://www.ismp.org/Tools/guidelines/default.asp>
Accessed 1 May 2015.

Yokes, D. S., Anderson, D. J., Berenholtz, S. M., Calfee, D. P., Dubberke, E. R., Ellingson, K., Gerding, D. N., Haas, J., Kaye, K. S., Klompas, M., Lo, E., Marschall, J., Mermel, L. A., Nicolle, L., Salgado, C., Bryant, K., Classen, D., Crist, K., Foster, N., Humphreys, E., Padberg, J., Podgorny, K., Vanamringe, M., Weaver, T., Wise, R., & Maragakis, L. L. (2014). A compendium of strategies to prevent healthcare-associated infections in acute care hospitals: 2014 updates. *Infection Control and Hospital Epidemiology*, 42(8), 820–828.

ICSI

- [In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology](#)
- [Surrogacy](#)

Ideas

- [Cognitions](#)

Identical Twins

- [Monozygotic Twins](#)

Idiopathic Raynaud's Phenomenon

- [Raynaud's Disease and Stress](#)
- [Raynaud's Disease: Behavioral Treatment](#)

Illness Anxiety Disorder

- [Hypochondriasis](#)

Illness Behavior

Holly Rau and Paula Williams
Department of Psychology, University of Utah,
Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Synonyms

[Health behaviors](#); [Sickness behavior](#)

Definition

Illness behavior refers to any actions or reactions of an individual who feels unwell for the purpose of defining their state of health and obtaining physical or emotional relief from perceived or actual illness. These behaviors include how individuals monitor and interpret bodily sensations, utilize healthcare resources, discuss illness or symptoms with providers, and adhere to prescribed medical regimens.

Illness behaviors can be organized into two broad categories:

- *Self-care behavior* – Any action taken to manage or improve a health condition in the absence of direct medical attention, which includes managing symptoms and caring for minor injuries. Research indicates that a majority of health problems are managed via self-care behaviors and that most individuals will attempt self-treatment prior to seeking medical attention.
- *Healthcare utilization behavior* – Any action that involves direct use of healthcare services (e.g., medical appointments, medical procedures).

Variation in illness behavior is often attributed to psychological and sociocultural factors and can be characterized as a continuum with both ends constituting abnormal illness behavior. On one end of the continuum, illness perceptions and behaviors are disproportionate to objective pathology (e.g., hypochondriasis) and often involve debilitating psychological distress and overuse of health services. Less debilitating presentations have been termed *hypochondriacal tendencies* or *health anxiety* and can also include overuse of healthcare services, unnecessary medical tests, missed work, and subjective distress. Overuse of healthcare resources has often been attributed to secondary gains (i.e., external rewards associated with illness, such as missed work). On the other end of the continuum, *delay* in seeking medical care or underuse of health services can have life-threatening consequences, particularly when medical conditions require early detection and treatment (e.g., stroke).

Context is important in determining if an illness behavior is functional or potentially harmful. That is, illness behaviors that might be considered maladaptive in one illness context may serve an adaptive function in another context. For example, denial regarding injury severity may be adaptive during early stages of spinal cord injury (SCI) recovery because it may serve to lower anxiety and allow for active participation in therapies necessary to achieve functional gains. In later stages of SCI recovery, however, denial may interfere with long-term adjustment to disability. Therefore, providers are encouraged to consider the context of behaviors with respect to disease characteristics when maladaptive illness behaviors are suspected.

Illness behavior also includes behavioral presentation and communication with healthcare providers. The nature of patient-provider interactions is determined, in part, by the patient's cultural background and psychological characteristics (e.g., personality, anxiety) and can influence subsequent delivery of services, as well as patient satisfaction with medical care. For example, research suggests that ethnic minorities may be less verbally expressive and assertive compared to

Caucasians, and physicians may provide more biomedical information to low-anxious patients. Treatment adherence, which includes taking medication as prescribed as well as making recommended lifestyle behavior changes (e.g., weight loss), is another form of illness behavior with obvious consequences for health outcomes. Beliefs in the *cause* of illness and the *effectiveness* of the prescribed treatment are both associated with adherence.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Common-Sense Model of Self-Regulation](#)
- ▶ [Health Anxiety](#)
- ▶ [Health Assessment Questionnaire](#)
- ▶ [Health Beliefs/Health Belief Model](#)
- ▶ [Health Risk \(Behavior\)](#)
- ▶ [Hypochondriasis](#)
- ▶ [Illness Cognitions and Perceptions](#)
- ▶ [Self-care](#)
- ▶ [Sickness Behavior](#)
- ▶ [Somatic Symptoms](#)
- ▶ [Somatization](#)
- ▶ [Somatoform Disorders](#)

References and Further Readings

- Christensen, A. J. (2004). *Patient adherence with treatment regimens: Bridging the gap between behavioral science and biomedicine*. New Haven: Yale University Press.
- Mechanic, D. (1982). *Symptoms, illness behavior, and help-seeking*. New Brunswick: Rutgers University Press.
- Pilowsky, I. (1997). *Abnormal illness behaviour*. Chichester: Wiley.
- Schouten, B. C., & Meeuwesen, L. (2006). Cultural differences in medical communication: A review of the literature. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 64, 21–34.
- Williams, P. G., Smith, T. W., & Jordan, K. D. (2010). Health anxiety and hypochondriasis: Interpersonal extensions of the cognitive-behavioral perspective. In G. Beck (Ed.), *Interpersonal processes in the anxiety disorders: Implications for understanding psychopathology and treatment* (pp. 261–284). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Illness Cognitions and Perceptions

Holly Rau and Paula Williams

Department of Psychology, University of Utah,
Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Synonyms

Health beliefs; Illness representations

Definition

The terms *illness perceptions* and *illness cognitions* are used to describe a range of cognitive processes underlying attention, interpretation, and behavior in response to illness-related information. Although often studied in the context of various disease populations (e.g., diabetes, cancer), illness cognitions and perceptions are also relevant in the absence of a diagnosed health condition and have important implications for subsequent illness behavior (e.g., self-care, healthcare utilization, treatment adherence).

Description

Self-assessment of health, which includes symptom perception, interpretation, and reporting, is central to illness-related self-regulatory behavior (i.e., self-care decision making, communication with healthcare providers, commitment to treatment regimens, etc.). Underestimation or overestimation of illness status can lead to inappropriate illness behavior, such as overuse or avoidance of healthcare services. Health self-assessment may have better predictive utility than some objective indicators of health with respect to health outcomes. For example, global health ratings have been found to predict mortality above and beyond objective indicators of health (e.g., documented medical conditions, such as hypertension).

Treatment adherence and health outcomes research often focuses on cognitive and perceptual factors contributing to illness behaviors, examining how individuals define illness and monitor illness status. Various cognitive models have attempted to account for variations in symptom perception and interpretation, though most emphasize information processing.

Information-Processing Models

From a cognitive-perceptual standpoint, input received about physical health status, whether from internal (e.g., body sensations) or external (e.g., healthcare professionals) sources, must be processed and cognitively organized. This organization will then affect how illness is managed. Therefore, information-processing models attempt to understand how subjective interpretations of illness exert influence on illness behavior relative to the objective disease characteristics.

- *Bottom-up Information Processing:* Somatic sensations serve as indicators of potential disease or health risks; thus, interpretations of illness are determined, in part, from somatosensory experiences. In support of this supposition, research suggests that functional difficulties (e.g., shortness of breath) are likely to figure more prominently than medical indicators (e.g., prescribed medication) in subjective estimates of illness severity. Although bottom-up models emphasize somatic experience early in the temporal sequence of unfolding illness perceptions, the importance of previous illness exposure and/or illness beliefs is not entirely discounted.
- *Top-down Information Processing:* Schema-driven, or top-down, information-processing models propose that previously formed expectations influence the perception and interpretation of illness-related information. From this perspective, illness status is evaluated by integrating somatosensory experiences into an underlying cognitive framework. This model presumes that stable mental representations of health-relevant information influence the processing and reporting of physical symptoms. Experimental cognitive research supports this

notion, although very little is known about the accuracy of illness-related information processing.

The Common-Sense Model of Self-regulation (CSM)

This prominent model of lay representations of health and illness hypothesizes that illness cognitions function as a filter and interpretive schema for illness information, which subsequently guides illness-related actions and behaviors. *Illness information* is posited to come from three main sources: (1) socio-cultural knowledge and communication related to the illness, (2) esteemed members of the person's social environment (e.g., doctor, spouse, parent), and (3) direct personal experience. Qualitative, anthropological, and psychological research utilizing patients' accounts of illness has identified five logical themes or dimensions that characterize illness representations:

- *Cause* – beliefs regarding factors responsible for causing and perpetuating the illness or disease, including biological, emotional, environmental, psychological causes
- *Consequences* – beliefs regarding the impact of the illness on functional capacity and overall quality of life
- *Identity* – beliefs about the illness label (e.g., diabetes) and attribution of symptoms to the illness (e.g., extreme fatigue)
- *Timeline* – beliefs about the course of the illness (i.e., chronicity) and timescale of illness symptoms (e.g., acute, chronic, episodic)
- *Cure/controllability* – beliefs about the effectiveness of coping behaviors or treatment on the course of illness

These dimensions are thought to interact to affect illness behavior. For example, research indicates that individuals for whom the illness identity involves high threat and attribution of many symptoms to the identity label are more likely to view their illness as uncontrollable, chronic, and as having serious consequences for their lifestyle. Conversely, patients who view themselves as having greater control over their illness appear to be more likely to view their

illness as less chronic and with fewer consequences. In addition, research suggests that the cure/control-consequence relationship appears to be dependent on the timeline dimension, and the identity-timeline relationship appears dependent on the consequence dimension.

Illness Cognitions and Illness Management

The Common-Sense Model explicitly links illness cognitions to coping behaviors, which in turn affect outcomes. Research supports the notion that active self-care behaviors are more likely to occur if they are perceived to be efficacious, and a disease seen as controllable is likely to result in cognitive reappraisal of the illness. Conversely, perceiving the illness as uncontrollable, chronic, and highly symptomatic appears to be associated with coping strategies characterized by denial and avoidance. Cognitive constructs from the *Health Belief Model* have also been examined in the context of illness management behavior. In particular, the perceived threat of a health problem, along with cost-benefit appraisal of available strategies, influences the likelihood that any given illness management strategy will be adopted. Research has also demonstrated in a variety of patient populations that non-adherence is related to doubts about the necessity of prescribed treatment, as well as to concerns about the potential adverse effects of the treatment. For example, an individual who views his or her illness as acute with limited long-term consequences is less likely to adhere to prescribed medical treatment, even if the treatment is viewed as effective and with limited adverse effects.

Abnormal Illness Cognitions and Perceptions

For some individuals, self-assessments of health become a source of preoccupation, emotional distress, and chronic disability. In clinical populations, this is referred to as *hypochondriasis*, which is defined as a preoccupation with the belief that one has a serious disease, based on misinterpretation of bodily symptoms. This belief occurs in the absence of known organic pathology and persists despite appropriate medical evaluation and reassurance. Less debilitating presentations of these characteristics have been termed

hypochondriacal tendencies or *health anxiety*, which suggests that hypochondriasis may be best conceptualized along the spectrum of anxiety disorders.

Similar to the development of other anxiety-related conditions, health anxiety and hypochondriasis are thought to result from an underlying sensitivity to threatening stimuli (e.g., bodily sensations, illness status). Individuals with health anxiety are more likely to interpret physical sensations as signs of physical illness, as well as over-attend to health-relevant information (with a bias toward illness-confirming information). Frequent medical consultations or seeking out medical information often follow, which can potentially perpetuate illness concerns.

Individuals with hypochondriacal tendencies have also been found to have catastrophic *interpretations* of somatic information. Consistent with these findings, individuals high in health anxiety have been found to rate themselves at greater risk of medical complications than those lower in health anxiety. Patients high in health anxiety are also more likely to recall medical reassurance as less certain in ruling out serious health problems.

Survey of the extant literature suggests that a combination of risk factors, including temperament, personality, prior experience with illness during childhood, and social development, contributes to likelihood of health anxiety, hypochondriacal tendencies, or hypochondriasis. For example, those most at risk may be high in the personality factor neuroticism and have a history involving significant illness-related events and with parent modeling of overconcern or over-attention to bodily symptoms.

Treatment Implications

Understanding illness beliefs from the perspective of the individual is essential for changing maladaptive illness behaviors. For this reason, application of the Common-Sense Model has important implications for healthcare providers. Appreciating an individual's illness representations can introduce outlets for patient education and physician intervention, and these types of discussions may be important for preventing

functional disability. Tailoring interventions to specific illness cognitions or perceptions is likely to increase the effectiveness. For example, interventions targeting unrealistic perceived consequences are likely to differ from those targeting unrealistic perception of illness timeline. Effective psychological interventions, such as Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy (CBT), focus on changing illness perceptions, reducing unhelpful perceptions, and improving coping skills, and may lead to enhanced functional ability (e.g., improved health or work outcomes).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Cognitions](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Appraisal](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- ▶ [Common-Sense Model of Self-Regulation](#)
- ▶ [Efficacy Cognitions](#)
- ▶ [Health Anxiety](#)
- ▶ [Health Assessment Questionnaire](#)
- ▶ [Health Behaviors](#)
- ▶ [Health Beliefs/Health Belief Model](#)
- ▶ [Health Outcomes Research](#)
- ▶ [Hypochondriasis](#)
- ▶ [Illness Perceptions Questionnaire \(IPQ-R\)](#)
- ▶ [Self-care](#)
- ▶ [Sickness behavior](#)
- ▶ [Somatic Symptoms](#)
- ▶ [Somatization](#)
- ▶ [Somatoform Disorders](#)

References and Further Readings

- Cameron, L. D., & Leventhal, H. (Eds.). (2003). *The self-regulation of health and illness behaviour*. New York: Routledge.
- Leventhal, H., Breland, J. Y., Mora, P. A., & Leventhal, E. A. (2010). Lay representations of illness and treatment: A framework for action. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: methods and applications* (pp. 137–154). New York: Springer.
- Petersen, S., van den Berg, R. A., Janssens, T., & Van den Bergh, O. (2011). Illness and symptom perception: A theoretical approach towards an integrative measurement model. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 31(3), 428–439.

Williams, P. G. (2004). The psychopathology of self-assessed health: A cognitive approach to health anxiety and hypochondriasis. *Cognitive Therapy and Research*, 28(5), 629–644.

Illness Fatigue

► Fatigue

Illness Perceptions Questionnaire (IPQ-R)

Jane Upton
Department of Psychology, William James
College, Newton, MA, USA

Definition

The illness perceptions questionnaire measures an individual's beliefs and feelings about their illness.

The Revised Illness Perception Questionnaire (IPQ-R) is a widely used quantitative measure of the five components of illness representations in Leventhal's self-regulatory model (Moss-Morris et al. 2002). It has been validated for a range of chronic conditions in a wide variety of languages. The five components include:

- Identity in which patients rate the number of symptoms they perceive to be part of the illness
- The cause of the illness
- The timeline of the illness, how long they think it will last
- The consequences of the illness, including whether they perceive it to be a serious condition
- Whether they think the illness can be cured or controlled

These components showed good test-retest reliability, with correlations ranging from .46 to .88 (Moss-Morris et al. 2002).

References and Further Reading

Moss-Morris, R., Weinman, J., Petrie, K., Horne, R., Cameron, L., Buick, D., et al. (2002). The revised Illness Perception Questionnaire (IPQ-R). *Psychology and Health*, 17, 1–16.

Illness Representation Model

► Common-Sense Model of Self-Regulation

Illness Representations

► Illness Cognitions and Perceptions

Imaging

- Brain, Imaging
- Neuroimaging

Immune Function

Jos A. Bosch
Department of Clinical Psychology, Faculty of
Social and Behavioral Sciences, University of
Amsterdam, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Synonyms

Immunity

Definition

Immune function describes the body's response to infection (i.e., the invasion by microorganisms), neoplasms (cancers), and tissue damage.

Description

Successful immune function establishes a state of immunity (Latin: *immunitas*, “freedom from”) against infection and disease. Immunity relies on a multifaceted and flexible defense system, the immune system that protects against microorganisms, like bacteria and viruses, and other foreign invaders, like toxins. The immune system also regulates repair processes in response to tissue damage, and it protects against neoplasms (cancers). The immune system does not operate autonomously. It is, among others, influenced by central nervous system processes and their neurohormonal outflows, which, in turn, are shaped by social and psychological factors. Likewise, activities of the immune system have profound effects on those in the central nervous system, influencing mood, behavior, and cognition.

Immune protection may come at price; the immune system responds in a vigorous manner to perceived threats, which sometimes causes substantial collateral damage to healthy cells and tissues. We experience this as disease symptoms. Damage inflicted by the immune system is also the problem in autoimmune diseases, whereby, for reasons not completely understood, the immune system selects and destroys healthy bodily cells. Hence, the paradoxical observation is that medical treatment often aims to suppress immune system responses, instead of enhancing.

This section provides a brief description of the immune system and its main components in non-jargon terms. The end of this section lists a number of references that provide a more technical and detailed exposition.

and destroy bodily threats. The leukocytes are generated in the bone marrow by so-called hematopoietic progenitor cells and come in three main subtypes: the neutrophils, which make up 70% of leukocytes in the blood; the monocytes (10%); and the lymphocytes (20%). These numbers are somewhat misleading in that the majority of leukocytes (98%) are not in the blood but dispersed in the various tissues, where numbers and proportions of various leukocytes greatly vary from one anatomical location to another and from those in the blood.

The lymphocytes comprise B lymphocytes, T helper lymphocytes, cytotoxic T lymphocytes, and natural killer (NK) cells. The B lymphocytes produce soluble receptors, called antibodies or immunoglobulins, which bind to targets of the immune system, flagging them for destruction. Targets of immune cells and molecules are subsumed under the generic term “antigens,” which is an abbreviation of *antibody generator*. The main function of T helper cells is to orchestrate immune responses via the release cytokines. Finally, the main function of cytotoxic T lymphocytes and NK cells is to destroy infected cells, in particular, cells infected by viruses. They also play an important role in destroying cancerous cells. They do so via the release of toxic substances which induce programmed cell death, or apoptosis. Apoptosis is a process of controlled cellular self-destruction whereby the cell’s DNA disintegrates. One of the benefits of this type of cell killing is that the cell dies from the inside, i.e., without rupture (lysis) of its cell membrane, so that infectious viral particles will not leak out and infect other cells.

The White Blood Cells

Immune function is mediated by an enormous variety of cells and molecules that act together in a dynamic network, whose complexity rivals that of the nervous system. The white blood cells, or leukocytes, are the main effectors of immune responses and are as a collective also described as “immune cells.” These cells detect, intercept,

Innate and Adaptive Immunity

Whereas the immune system consists of many different cell types, each with unique functions in maintaining immunity, these cells are essentially grouped into two classes based on the mechanisms used to detect antigens, i.e., (1) innate immune cells (also denoted as nonspecific or non-adaptive immunity) and (2) adaptive immune

cells. The former group of cells utilizes antigen receptors that detect general molecular structures that are common to many microorganisms, the so-called pattern recognition receptors. Examples are receptors that detect double-stranded RNA (ribonucleic acid, which is not produced by human cells and must therefore come from foreign organisms) or receptors that detect lipopolysaccharide (molecules which are only produced by certain bacteria).

By far, most immune cells utilize the above innate immune detection mechanisms, and only the T and B lymphocytes are classed under the adaptive immune system. In contrast to cells of the innate immune system, adaptive immune cells use highly specialized antigen receptors that are capable of recognizing only a single molecular structure. This high specificity, and thus diversity, implies that the number of immune cells expressing a particular antigen receptor must be low. To generate sufficient numbers of antigen-specific cells needed to eliminate an infection, these adaptive cells divide (“proliferate”) upon encountering their cognate antigen, a process that can take up several days. As a result, adaptive immune responses are initially slow, but this disadvantage is compensated by their unique capacity to learn from previous encounters. This immunological memory is established by retaining a reserve of so-called memory cells which perform immune surveillance after the antigen is eliminated. These memory cells respond more swiftly and in greater numbers upon a subsequent reencounter with the antigen, resulting in rapid and effective antigen elimination which prevents the development of disease. This ability to develop immunological memory is exploited by vaccines, whereby small amounts of antigen are injected to produce memory cells against that antigen.

Cytokines: The Messenger Molecules of the Immune System

Cytokines can be regarded as the neurotransmitter and hormones of the immune system and regulate

virtually all cellular activities in the immune system and communication among immune cells. Like neurotransmitters, these protein molecules can act in an autocrine or paracrine fashion, or, like hormones, act on longer distances (endocrine) via release in to blood stream. Significantly, these molecules also have important regulatory roles outside the immune system. Indeed, many non-immune cells and tissues have receptors for cytokines which can substantially affect their activities. For example, the effects of cytokines, especially the so-called inflammatory cytokines (see section on “[The Immune Response and Inflammation](#)” below) on the central nervous system is responsible for so-called sickness behavior: a depression-like syndrome characterized by reduced physical and social activity, altered sleep, and negative affect. Likewise, the effect of cytokines on liver, fat, and muscle cells has pronounced metabolic implications, which, depending on the type of cytokine, involves altered glycolysis, fat storage, and insulin resistance. Moreover, many cells and tissues that do not belong to the immune system are themselves capable of producing cytokines. This fact has significant implications for the interpretation of immunological data in behavioral medicine research. For example, a short bout of intense physical exercise can elevate the levels of the cytokine IL-6 (interleukin 6) up to 1000%, which is produced by muscle cells and not by immune cells. Likewise, the oft-reported association between depression and elevated cytokine levels in the blood is at least in part accounted for by cytokines released by fat tissue.

The Blood, the Lymphatic System, and the Lymphoid Organs

Most leukocytes continuously traffic into and out of the various tissues in search of antigen and in order to present their finds to other immune cells. The lymphatic vessels and the blood are the transport routes for this trafficking. These routes are also employed to distribute soluble molecules, such as antibodies and cytokines, throughout the

body. The lymphatic vessels primarily act as a drainage system, which collects tissue fluid and transfers it into the blood circulation. The lymphatic system does not have a pump, and the drained tissue fluid (lymph) is circulated mainly as a result of muscle activity. Lymphatic vessels pass through lymphoid organs, which are small nodular organs where leukocytes congregate. These local leukocytes interact to exchange antigen that was captured in the upstream tissues and to sample the passing lymph for the presence of antigens. Leukocytes evade the lymph nodes via downstream lymphatic vessels that terminate into the blood circulation; from there, they migrate into the tissues to eliminate infections, cancerous or damaged cells, or they migrate to other lymphoid tissues in further search of antigen. The spleen is a large lymphoid organ that specifically filters the blood, in a manner similar as described above.

The Immune Response and Inflammation

To attract immune cells to sites of infection or tissue damage, the immune system initiates an inflammatory response. This essential part of most immune responses starts with the local release of cytokines (categorized as inflammatory cytokines, such as TNF- α (tumor necrosis factor-alpha), IL-1 β , IL-8) and other chemicals. These messengers are released by tissue cells and local immune cells that have detected molecular signals of infection and tissue damage. The release of these messenger substances has several effects as follows: (1) they attract circulating immune cells into the tissue (a process known as chemotaxis); (2) they affect the local blood vessels by making the vessels leaky, so protective substances from the blood can leak in the tissue, and by making the surrounding blood vessels sticky, via the expression of adhesion molecules that facilitate immune cells to migrate out the blood; (3) they cause local warming of the tissues (pyrogenic effects). These immunological mechanisms underlie the defining symptoms of

inflammation: swelling, redness, pain, heat, and diminished tissue function.

Further consequences of the inflammatory response is an enhanced migration of resident immune cells to the draining lymphoid organs (see section above), where they alert other immune cells and thereby initiate larger involvement of the immune system, and the release of inflammatory cytokines into the blood stream. The latter provides a signal for systemic adaptation to inflammation, which involves the release of anti-inflammatory substances that help to keep the inflammation localized (e.g., cortisol from the adrenal cortex and C-reactive protein (CRP) from the liver), metabolic adaptations (e.g., via effects on fat and glycogen stores), and sensory and behavioral adaption (via effects on the nervous system).

Cross-References

- [Behavioral Immunology](#)
- [HIV Infection](#)
- [Immunity](#)
- [Immune Responses to Stress](#)
- [Immunoglobulins](#)
- [Infectious Diseases](#)
- [Inflammation](#)
- [Psychoneuroimmunology](#)

References and Further Reading

- Abbas, K. A., Lichtman, A. L., & Pillai, S. (2012). *Cellular and molecular immunology* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Elsevier, Saunders.
- Bosch, J. A., Engeland, C., & Burns, V. E. (2011). *Psychoneuroimmunology in vivo: Methods and principles*. In J. Decety & J. T. Cacioppo (Eds.), *The Oxford handbook of social neuroscience*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Dantzer, R., O'Connor, J. C., Freund, G. G., Johnson, R. W., & Kelley, K. W. (2008). From inflammation to sickness and depression: When the immune system subjugates the brain. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 9(1), 46–56.
- Murphy, K. (2011). *Janeway's immunobiology* (8th ed.). London: Taylor & Francis.
- Tracey, K. J. (2002). The inflammatory reflex. *Nature*, 420(6917), 853–859.

Immune Responses to Stress

Jerrald Rector¹, Victoria E. Burns², Jos A. Bosch³ and Leila Anane²

¹Purdue University, West Lafayette, IN, USA

²School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

³Department of Clinical Psychology, Faculty of Social and Behavioral Sciences, University of Amsterdam, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Synonyms

Stress response

Definition

Stress can be thought of as a constellation of events comprised of a stimulus, “stressor,” that precipitates a reaction in the brain, “stress perception,” that activates fight-or-flight mechanisms, “stress response” (Dhabhar and McEwen 1997). This entry will concentrate on what happens in the immune system in response to stress.

Description

Introduction

In 1884, the editor of the *British Medical Journal* noted that at funerals, “the depression of spirits under which the chief mourners labour at these melancholy occasions peculiarly predisposes them to some of the worst effects of the chill.” Despite many such anecdotes suggesting a link between psychological factors and immune function, it is only relatively recently that these associations have received widespread acceptance in the scientific and medical communities. In fact, as recently as 1984, an editorial piece in *Nature* proclaimed the persistence of a “stout band of near skeptics” who, while acknowledging that “there is probably a link between the central nervous system and the immune system,” still

questioned whether “enough is yet known to sustain people’s hopes of explanation” (Maddox 1984). The prodigious development of the field of psychoneuroimmunology (PNI) over recent decades is more thoroughly reviewed elsewhere (Ader 2000; Fleshner and Laudenslager 2004); these articles clearly illustrate that, although many mechanisms still require further delineation, the progress of PNI, in terms of quality, quantity, and impact of the research, has exceeded the expectations of all but its most optimistic forefathers. These endeavors have revealed the complex intertwining of the nervous, endocrine, and immune systems that underpin the effects of stress on immunological health.

What Is Stress?

Walter Cannon first coined the term “stress” in this context in 1929, describing it as an emergency mechanism that mobilizes energy for fight-or-flight responses. Richard Lazarus proposed that the initiation of this stress response, be it an emotional (i.e., anger, anxiety), behavioral (i.e., running from threat), or biological response (i.e., cardiovascular changes, immune alterations), is governed by a person’s perception of their ability to cope with a particular stimulus. Psychological stress occurs, therefore, when a person’s perceived ability to cope with a situation is exceeded by the demands of the perceived stressor (Lazarus and Folkman 1984). One way of broadly categorizing psychological stress is into chronic and acute forms of stress. Chronic stressors are typically major life experiences, such as bereavement or caregiving for an ill family member, that have a negative impact lasting months or even years. In contrast, acute stressors, such as public speaking or examinations, are short lived, lasting minutes to hours, and typically elicit fight-or-flight responses. In PNI research, chronic stressors can be investigated by comparing the health and/or immune function of a group of participants who have been exposed to a particular stressful life event to a nonstressed matched control group. Alternatively, questionnaires can be used to assess the extent of the chronic stress experienced by an individual, either by indicating how many of a checklist of life events they have experienced in

a set period of time or through more subjective measures such as perceived stress. Acute stress exposure can be manipulated experimentally; for example, psychological and immunological measures can be timed to coincide with naturalistic and predictable acute stressors, such as examination periods. In addition, there are a variety of validated laboratory procedures, such as the Trier Social Stress Task and the Paced Auditory Serial Addition Task, which can be used to induce acute stress in order to examine its immunological consequences.

Physiological Effects of Stress

Although a multitude of factors are likely to underpin the effects of stress on health, stress-induced alterations in immune function are clearly an important mechanism. Stress triggers a cascade of physiological responses, which provide a plausible pathway linking psychological factors with immune function and subsequent health. The two neuroendocrine pathways that have received most attention in the PNI literature are the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis (HPA) and the sympathetic-adrenal-medullary (SAM) axis. HPA axis activation is initiated during stress at the paraventricular nucleus of the hypothalamus which secretes corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH). This causes the pituitary gland to release adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), which in turn elicits the production of immunomodulatory glucocorticoids, such as cortisol, from the adrenal glands.

In the SAM axis, activation involves preganglionic sympathetic nervous system (SNS) neurons that descend along the spinal cord from nuclei in the brain stem. The release of the neurotransmitter acetylcholine from these neurons in the adrenal medulla stimulates chromaffin cells to secrete the catecholamine epinephrine. In contrast, postganglionic SNS fibers predominantly secrete the catecholamine norepinephrine upon activation. Therefore, activation of the SAM leads to the release of both epinephrine and norepinephrine. These catecholamines can influence immune cells as all leukocytes express adrenergic surface receptors. In addition, postganglionic nerve fibers directly innervate lymphoid organs

including the thymus, spleen, lymph nodes, and bone marrow and therefore come into close proximity with immune cells (Glaser and Kiecolt-Glaser 2005).

It should also be noted that immune cells can also influence the SAM and HPA axis and subsequently impact brain function and psychological responses. Inflammatory cytokines, released during infection, can access the central nervous system through leaky regions in the blood-brain barrier, via specific transport molecules on the brain epithelium, and through the activation of vagal afferent fibers. These cytokines influence neurotransmitter and CRH function and can induce symptoms of “sickness behavior,” including anorexia, anhedonia, and reduced locomotor activity. It has been proposed that these changes in behavior reflect a reallocation of available resources, away from metabolically expensive activities such as foraging, toward behaviors likely to promote recovery from infection (Kelley et al. 2003).

Stress, Immune Function, and Disease

Psychological stress is implicated in the pathogenesis and exacerbation of many diseases and pathologies. For example, there is now evidence that stress can promote tumor growth and progression in a variety of cancers. These effects are likely to be mediated at a number of levels, including changes to local inflammatory signaling supporting initial tumor cell growth and proliferation and stress hormone-induced changes to cancer cell-matrix attachments, cell movement and invasion, angiogenesis, and sensitivity to apoptosis (Armaiz-Pena et al. 2009).

There is also a substantial body of evidence linking psychological factors such as chronic stress, depression, and coping strategies with various markers of HIV progression. Further, behavioral interventions designed to improve psychological functioning have had some success in modifying disease-relevant markers of immune function (Antoni 2003). It has been proposed that these associations between stress and HIV progression are likely mediated predominantly by changes in sympathetic nervous system activity, leading to alterations in cellular vulnerability to

infection and innate antiviral responses (Cole 2008).

The PNI models of cancer and HIV are both consistent with the model in which stress is associated with decrements in immune function which leave the host vulnerable to tumor growth or infection. However, there is also evidence that stress exacerbates diseases in which the overactivity, rather than underactivity, of the immune system is implicated. For example, stress has been proposed to be an “aggravating factor” in asthma, where those people with asthma exhibit worsened symptoms during periods of psychological stress (Chen and Miller 2007). These observations are contrary to the intuitive perspective that a stress-induced reduction in immune activity would be beneficial for patients with conditions characterized by excessive inflammation. Instead, research has shown that in asthma, stress accentuates the inflammatory response in the airway induced by allergens and irritants, leading to more severe symptoms (Chen and Miller 2007). Taken together, there is clear evidence that psychological stress impacts the prognosis in a variety of different diseases via neuroendocrine-immune mechanisms.

Stress and Immune Function in Healthy Populations

Psychological stress can also affect the immune function of otherwise healthy individuals. One of the most dramatic demonstrations of this phenomenon was a series of studies conducted by Sheldon Cohen in which he gave 394 healthy participants nasal drops containing live respiratory viruses. Psychological stress, measured by questionnaire, was associated in a dose-response manner with an increased risk of acute infectious respiratory illness. As the extent and timing of the exposure to the pathogen was controlled, these studies provide compelling evidence that stress impacts the individual’s ability to protect themselves against infection. Later studies suggest that this effect is mediated by stress-induced disruption of the regulation of proinflammatory cytokines (Cohen 2005).

However, a key challenge for scientists investigating stress and immune function in healthy

people is choosing an appropriate outcome measure in the absence of the disease-specific indicators. The immune system comprises a complex array of different cell types that are required to orchestrate precise and appropriate responses to a wide range of pathogens, all within the context of a variable neuroendocrine milieu. Not only are these cells required to work together in order to produce an effective immune response, what constitutes “effective” may change depending on the nature of the pathogen. For example, different immunological responses are required for intracellular viruses, compared to bacteria or parasites. As such, it is difficult to establish meaningful measures of “effective immune function” in healthy participants. The wide range of psychological and immunological measures employed by researchers to date is demonstrated in an excellent meta-analysis by Segerstrom and Miller, which examines the results of over 300 PNI studies (Segerstrom and Miller 2004).

This entry will focus on two *in vivo* measures of immune function, wound healing and antibody response to vaccination, in which an immunological “challenge” is administered and the subsequent immune response is assessed. These approaches assess the functionality of an orchestrated immune response, generated within the neuroendocrine milieu, and yield clinically relevant outcome measures. For example, the wound-healing process involves a complex series of processes, including inflammation, cellular migration and replication, and connective tissue deposition and remodeling; each stage is regulated by the cellular immune system. Wound healing can be assessed using naturalistic wounds, such as those experienced by patients with venous disease or by examining incisions administered during surgery. A more controlled method that also allows greater investigation of the mechanisms underpinning any stress effects involves administering an experimental wound and assessing the rate of healing over time. A recent systematic review and meta-analysis found that higher levels of psychological stress were consistently associated with impaired wound healing across a variety of different wound types (Walburn et al. 2009).

Antibody response to vaccination is another *in vivo* measure of immune function that has clear clinical implications. The controlled dose of an inactivated antigen induces a complex immune cascade that culminates in the production of specific antibodies; the extent of this response can be used as a measure of the functional status of the humoral immune system (Burns and Gallagher 2010). There is now considerable evidence that chronic psychological stress is associated with a poorer antibody response to many different vaccinations (Cohen et al. 2001). However, more recent research has demonstrated that acute stress can, in contrast, augment the immune response to vaccination (Edwards et al. 2007), potentially due to the rapid mobilization of immune cells during acute stress (Segerstrom and Miller 2004).

Models of PNI

Although early PNI research focused on the immunosuppressive effects of stress, more recently, it has become apparent that the precise implications for the immune system are dependent on the nature of the stressor. For example, the recent meta-analysis revealed that although chronic stressors were consistently associated with suppression of immune function, acute stressors often upregulated some parameters of immunity. Further, as chronic stress has been shown to affect diseases characterized by both reduced and excessive immune function, it is apparent that it may be the balance of immunological parameters that is critical (Segerstrom and Miller 2004). As an added layer of complexity, there is also evidence that the effects of stress on immunity are not consistent across individuals, even when the stressor is identical; differences in personality traits and cognitive and affective responses may also account for some variation in stress-induced immune changes (Kemeny 2009).

In terms of the implications of such changes, it is likely that stress-induced immune alterations are part of an adaptive response to threat that serves to enhance immunoprotection. This model postulates that situations of acute stress

are likely, from an evolutionary perspective, to be associated with an increased risk of wounding or infection and, therefore, upregulation of immune function in such circumstances would be beneficial. If, however, this upregulation is directed against harmless allergens or self-antigens, or indeed it is dysregulated through chronic activation, it is likely to contribute to immunopathology (Dhabhar 2002). An alternative, ecological model of human PNI has recently been proposed, which instead suggests that even chronic stress-induced immunosuppression is part of a coordinated effort to efficiently conserve resources, rather than a sign of dysregulation (Segerstrom 2010). This ecological perspective emphasizes “phenotypic plasticity,” in which the value of a trait, such as robust immune activity, varies according to the environmental circumstances. Thus, immunosuppression during times of chronic stress may simply reflect a change in organism priorities toward the pursuit or protection of resources; the cost of reduced immunoprotection may, in these circumstances, be offset by the longer term health benefits of having these resources.

Conclusion

An array of compelling evidence now indicates that stress is associated with changes in immune function in both healthy and patient populations. Plausible physiological pathways through which psychological factors can influence cells of the immune system have been identified and explored, although there is much still to determine. It is now important to more fully elucidate the clinical implications of these changes and to translate these findings into effective biopsychosocial interventions.

Cross-References

► [Psychoneuroimmunology](#)

References and Further Reading

- Ader, R. (2000). On the development of psychoneuroimmunology. *European Journal of Pharmacology*, 405, 167–176.
- Antoni, M. H. (2003). Stress management and psychoneuroimmunology in HIV infection. *CNS Spectrums*, 8, 40–51.
- Armaiz-Pena, G. N., Lutgendorf, S. K., Cole, S. W., & Sood, A. K. (2009). Neuroendocrine modulation of cancer progression. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 23, 10–15.
- Burns, V. E., & Gallagher, S. (2010). Antibody response to vaccination as a marker of in vivo immune function in psychophysiological research. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 35, 122–126.
- Chen, E., & Miller, G. E. (2007). Stress and inflammation in exacerbations of asthma. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 21, 993–999.
- Cohen, S. (2005). Keynote presentation at the eight international congress of behavioral medicine: The Pittsburgh common cold studies: Psychosocial predictors of susceptibility to respiratory infectious illness. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 12, 123–131.
- Cohen, S., Miller, G. E., & Rabin, B. S. (2001). Psychological stress and antibody response to immunization: A critical review of the human literature. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 63, 7–18.
- Cole, S. W. (2008). Psychosocial influences on HIV-1 disease progression: Neural, endocrine, and virologic mechanisms. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 70, 562–568.
- Dhabhar, F. S. (2002). Stress-induced augmentation of immune function – The role of stress hormones, leukocyte trafficking, and cytokines. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 16, 785–798.
- Dhabhar, F. S., & McEwen, B. S. (1997). Acute stress enhances while chronic stress suppresses cell-mediated immunity in vivo: A potential role for leukocyte trafficking. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 11, 286–306.
- Edwards, K. M., Burns, V. E., Carroll, D., Drayson, M., & Ring, C. (2007). The acute stress-induced immuno-enhancement hypothesis. *Exercise and Sport Sciences Reviews*, 35, 150–155.
- Fleshner, M., & Laudenslager, M. L. (2004). Psychoneuroimmunology: Then and now. *Behavioral and Cognitive Neuroscience Reviews*, 3, 114–130.
- Glaser, R., & Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K. (2005). Stress-induced immune dysfunction: Implications for health. *Nature Reviews Immunology*, 5, 243–251.
- Kelley, K. W., Bluthé, R. M., Dantzer, R., Zhou, J. H., Shen, W. H., Johnson, R. W., et al. (2003). Cytokine-induced sickness behavior. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 17(Suppl 1), S112–S118.
- Kemeny, M. E. (2009). Psychobiological responses to social threat: Evolution of a psychological model in psychoneuroimmunology. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 23, 1–9.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Maddox, J. (1984). Psychoimmunology before its time. *Nature*, 309, 400.
- Segerstrom, S. C. (2010). Resources, stress, and immunity: An ecological perspective on human psychoneuroimmunology. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 40, 114–125.
- Segerstrom, S. C., & Miller, G. E. (2004). Psychological stress and the human immune system: A meta-analytic study of 30 years of inquiry. *Psychological Bulletin*, 130, 601–630.
- Walburn, J., Vedhara, K., Hankins, M., Rixon, L., & Weinman, J. (2009). Psychological stress and wound healing in humans: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 67, 253–271.

Immune-Senescence

► Immunosenescence

Immunity

Jos A. Bosch

Department of Clinical Psychology, Faculty of Social and Behavioral Sciences, University of Amsterdam, Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Synonyms

[Immune function](#)

Definition

Immunity (Latin: *immunitas*, “freedom from”) describes a state of adequate defense against infection, i.e., bodily invasion by microorganisms. Immunity is established by the activities of the immune system (see entry on “[► Immune Function](#)”). Immunity is also used to describe a state of adequate defense against neoplasms (cancers) insofar the immune system is involved. The entry on “[► Immune Function](#)” provides further details on the main types of immunity (innate and adaptive) and mechanisms by which the immune system

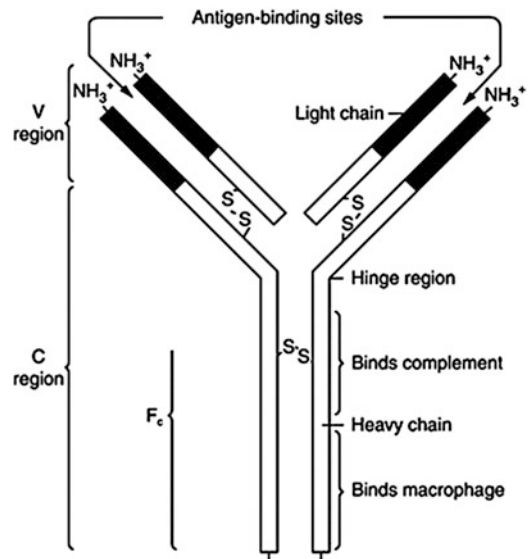
establishes a state of immunity. Further information can be found in Abbas et al. (2012) and Murphy (2011).

Cross-References

- [Immune Function](#)
- [Immune Responses to Stress](#)
- [Immunoglobulins](#)

References and Further Reading

- Abbas, K. A., Lichtman, A. L., & Pillai, S. (2012). *Cellular and molecular immunology* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Elsevier, Saunders.
- Murphy, K. (2011). *Janeway's immunobiology* (8th ed.). London: Taylor & Francis.



Immunoglobulins, Fig. 1 Immunoglobulin structure (Newsholme and Leech 2010) (Reprinted with permission)

Immunogerontology

- [Immunosenescence](#)

Immunoglobulins

Joanna Long
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Antibodies](#)

Definition

Immunoglobulins (Igs) are a subclass of antibodies which are produced in the early stages of B cell development (Abbas and Lichtman 2006). The structure of Igs can differ between class types;

however, they are built from a number of the same basic units known as immunoglobulin domains (Fig. 1). These are formed from 110 similar, but not identical, amino acid sequences which fold to form a globular structure. Each Ig is composed of two identical myosin heavy chain and two identical myosin light chain units, connected by a number of disulfide bonds. The Fab region is where different antigens bind to depending on the Ig subtype and is known as the antigen binding site. The first immunoglobulin domain possesses a large variability of amino acid sequences which determine the antigen-binding specificity of the antibody molecule, thus allowing great diversity of antigen recognition. The hinge region allows some flexibility of the molecule when binding with other cells. The Fc region is known as the constant region which aids modulation of immune cell activity.

Igs are a part of the immune system known as humoral immunity, which involves immunity conveyed by extracellular fluid such as plasma, lymph, and saliva. Basic functions of antibodies include neutralization, opsonization, and complement activation. The myosin heavy chain formation results in the subclass of antibody produced,

of which there are five major classes: IgA, IgG, IgM, IgE, and IgD. Each isotype is selectively distributed throughout the body and differs in its effector functions. For example, IgG and IgM dominate in the circulation, IgA dominates within epithelial secretions (e.g., mucosa), and IgE is mostly found near the epithelial surfaces (e.g., skin).

Production of Igs within the immune system begins with the naïve B cell. As these B cells mature, they begin to express both IgM and IgD, and after antigenic activation, these Igs often switch to express a different heavy chain constant region. This is known as class switching and results in a change in effector function of the antibody produced. For example, a mature B cell may alter expression from IgM and IgD to IgG or IgE after antigen activation. IgE is formed by attachment to mast cells which are involved during allergic reactions.

During a primary response to infection, the major Ig subtype used is IgM, as the B cells are immature and not yet specific to a particular antigen. However, during this initial response, memory cells specific to that antigen are created. During the secondary antibody response, these memory cells are activated and secrete primarily IgG, IgE, or IgA. IgG is also secreted earlier during the secondary response, therefore creating a shorter lag period. This occurs for all T-dependent antigens due to B cells requiring costimulation with an activated antigen-presenting cell in order to produce Igs. T-independent antigens do not require the presence of T cells in order to produce an antibody response. However, due to the lack of cell signaling from the T cell, no isotype switching or generation of B cell memory can occur. Thus, antibody response to T-independent antigens is almost exclusively IgM, and no secondary response occurs (Abbas and Lichtman 2006).

Cross-References

- [Antibodies](#)
- [Antigens](#)

References and Further Reading

- Abbas, A. K., & Lichtman, A. H. (2006). *Basic immunology: Functions and disorders of the immune system* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Newsholme, E., & Leech, T. (2010). *Functional biochemistry in health and disease* (2nd ed.). Chichester: Wiley.

Immunosenescence

James Edward Turner
Department for Health, University of Bath,
Bath, UK

Synonyms

[Aging](#); [Aging of the immune system](#); [Immunesenescence](#); [Immunogerontology](#); [Senescence](#)

Definition

The age-associated decline and functional deterioration of immune function

Description

Introduction

The term immunosenescence was first coined by Roy Walford in 1969 who hypothesized that normal aging in humans and animals was related to faulty immune processes (Walford 1969). It has now become clear that alterations to almost all aspects of immune function, in both the innate and adaptive immune compartments, occur with aging. Some of these changes have been directly linked to the process of aging itself, sometimes manifesting in dysregulated immunity and morbidity and mortality from noncommunicable and age-related diseases.

Senescence of the Innate Immune System

Immunosenescence has been much better defined in the adaptive immune system, but some immunogerontologists have focussed on innate

inflammatory processes, which in the context of aging, are referred to as “inflammaging” (Franceschi et al. 2000a). For example, higher inflammatory activity, measured by plasma interleukin (IL)-6, tumor necrosis factor- α (TNF- α), and C-reactive protein (CRP), has been linked to shorter survival in the elderly (Giovannini et al. 2011). Age-associated alterations to the number, phenotype, and function of innate immune cells have also been described. It is beyond the scope of this entry to provide a detailed review of innate immunosenescence, but a summary of the major age-associated changes to the cellular composition of the innate immune system is provided below. For more details, readers are referred to comprehensive reviews available elsewhere (e.g., Panda et al. 2009; Hazeldine and Lord 2015).

A well-defined age-associated change to innate immunity is apparent with neutrophils – cells that are essential for targeting bacterial infections. With aging, neutrophils exhibit impaired phagocytosis (i.e., ingestion of pathogens and cell debris) and chemotaxis (i.e., direction of movement), whereas chemokinesis (i.e., speed of movement) appears to be maintained. The effects of aging on the other granulocytes is less well studied, in part because these cells, which are implicated in allergy and targeting extracellular parasites, are difficult to sample, as they reside in vascularized connective tissue underlying the epithelial surface of the skin and mucosal membranes. The limited evidence suggests that with aging, mast cells decline in number but not function, whereas eosinophil and basophil numbers are maintained, and most of their functions remain largely unchanged (Panda et al. 2009; Hazeldine and Lord 2015).

A greater focus of research into innate immunosenescence has been on monocytes and macrophages – phagocytic cytokine-producing cells that are capable of antigen processing and subsequent presentation to cells of the adaptive immune system. The absolute number of these cells appears not to be changed with aging, but there is a shift in the proportions of monocyte/macrophage subtypes, from a dominance of the classical inflammatory phenotype (i.e., CD14++

CD16– M1-like cells) in the young, to the more immunomodulatory nonclassical phenotype (i.e., CD14+ CD16++ M2-like cells) in the elderly. This change coincides with altered signaling via some cell surface toll-like receptors resulting in impaired cytokine production. However, such “age-associated” changes are strongly influenced by obesity and are complicated by comparing measurements made in peripheral blood (i.e., assessing monocytes) to measurements made in the tissues (presumably assessing macrophages, but it is difficult to differentiate between recent infiltrating monocytes and tissue-resident cells). A similar complication presents when assessing the effects of aging on dendritic cells – tissue sentinels that ingest pathogens or cell debris for presentation to cells of the adaptive immune system. It is unclear if aging affects the number of peripheral blood dendritic cells, but it is not known whether the number of these circulating cells influences dendritic cell tissue distribution and if aging affects their function, which is arguably more important. For example, some work points toward a decline in skin and mucosal dendritic cells, and in vitro evidence has shown that aging results in impaired antigen processing and presentation, reduced cytokine production, along with decreased co-stimulatory capacity and migratory function (Panda et al. 2009; Hazeldine and Lord 2015).

Natural killer (NK) cell cytokine production and cytotoxicity – essential for rapid responses to viral infection and malignant transformation without prior sensitization – decreases on a per cell basis with aging. To compensate, there is an overall increase in NK cell number, brought about by a shift in NK cell subtypes, whereby cytotoxic NK cells (i.e., CD56 dim CD16+) increase and regulatory NK cells (i.e., CD56 bright CD16–) decrease. Despite these age-associated impairments, NK cell-mediated antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity appears not to be affected (Panda et al. 2009; Hazeldine and Lord 2015). Aging is also associated with a decline in the numbers of invariant NKT cells (iNKT). These cells should not to be confused with T cells that express NK-associated receptors, referred to as NKT-like cells (see next section). iNKT cells are

innate lymphocytes that respond rapidly to bacterial infections, tumors, and perhaps viruses, via recognition of glycolipids presented by CD1d molecules (Peralbo et al. 2007). A final cell population to have received attention in an aging context is myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) (Bueno et al. 2014). This recently described heterogenous population of granulocytes, macrophages, and dendritic cells, suppresses aspects of immune function by producing reactive oxygen species and inhibitory cytokines. These cells increase at the time of viral and bacterial infection, and also with cancer and autoimmunity. Initial evidence suggests there is also an increase in the number of these cells with aging, but the consequences of this change are unknown (Bueno et al. 2014).

Senescence of the Adaptive Immune System

The focus of most immunogerontologists has been on the adaptive immune system. Some of the earliest work searching for biomarkers of immunosenescence indicated, for example, that the magnitude of T cell proliferative responses to mitogens was positively correlated with survival in the elderly (Roberts-Thomson et al. 1974). Indeed, as with the innate immune system, age-associated alterations to the number, phenotype, and function of cells within the adaptive immune system have been described. These changes are thought to be driven, in part, by an aging hematopoietic stem cell niche in the bone marrow, fewer circulating stem cells that exhibit intrinsic damage, and a phenotype skewed toward the myeloid lineage (Geiger et al. 2013). In combination with this diminished supply of precursor cells, the thymus – an organ under the breastbone that is responsible for the development of T cells – exhibits a decline in function. Although traditionally it has been assumed that the output of naïve T cells, which are capable of responding to novel pathogens and malignant transformation, is almost negligible by adolescence, recent evidence points toward a more gradual decline, whereby thymic output persists, albeit reduced, up until around 70 years of age (Ferrando-Martinez et al. 2010). Irrespective of the mechanism, a fundamental characteristic of an aging adaptive

immune system is a decline in the numbers and proportions of naïve T cells, both in the CD4+ helper and CD8+ cytotoxic T cell pools (Appay and Sauce 2014). In addition, naïve CD8+ cytotoxic T cells exhibit an impaired capacity to be primed by dendritic cells (Briceno et al. 2016). In parallel with a decline in the numbers and proportions (and in some cases, function) of naïve T cells, there is a concomitant age-associated accumulation of memory T cells, most of which are specific for latent viruses (van Lier et al. 2003). This so-called memory inflation is most apparent and best characterized among CD8+ cytotoxic T cells, whereby virus-specific cells exhibit a loss of co-stimulatory molecules (e.g., CD27 and CD28) and down-regulate cell surface proteins associated with homing to lymphoid tissue (e.g., CCR7 and CD62L). These cells can also be defined by re-expression of CD45RA, an isoform of the pan lymphocyte marker CD45 that has traditionally been associated with naïve cells (van Lier et al. 2003), along with the expression of other molecules that have been linked with “senescence” (e.g., CD57 and KLRG1).

Studies examining CD4+ helper T (Th) cells in the context of aging have traditionally shown, based on their signature cytokine profiles, that cells exhibiting a Th2 profile (e.g., IL-4 producers) dominate over cells with a Th1 profile (e.g., IFN- γ producers) in the elderly (Shearer 1997). A more recent focus within the CD4+ helper T cell pool has been on a possible accumulation of Th17 cells with aging (i.e., IL-17 producing cells that are associated with autoimmunity and inflammatory disease) (Schmitt et al. 2013). In addition, other work has identified an increase in the number of natural regulatory T cells (nTREGs) and an associated decline in the number of inducible regulatory T cells (iTREGs) (Jagger et al. 2014). The implications of a change in the numbers or proportions of these cells will only become clear when it has been determined whether their suppressive capacity changes with aging (e.g., increased suppressive activity could confer a greater risk of cancer, whereas impaired activity could confer a greater risk of autoimmune disease).

Although the focus of most immunogerontology studies has been on the broader and

most abundant T cell subtypes, some studies have examined minor populations, such as NKT-like cells and gamma-delta ($\gamma\delta$) T cells, which together account for <10–20% of the T cell pool. NKT-like cells (not to be confused with iNKT cells; see previous section) express NK-receptors, but as with conventional T cells, and different to iNKT cells, NKT-like cells recognize peptides presented by major histocompatibility molecules (MHC). NKT-like cells increase substantially with aging and exhibit similar functional properties and specificities to memory CD4+ and CD8+ late-differentiated T cells (Peralbo et al. 2007). $\gamma\delta$ T cells are unique in their ability to respond to multiple stimuli via their T cell receptor, NK-receptors, or toll-like receptors, in a manner similar to innate immune cells, providing protection against viral or bacterial infection and malignant transformation. The number of $\gamma\delta$ T cells declines with aging, but there is a differential response among the $\gamma\delta$ T cell subpopulations (Roux et al. 2013). As with the broader populations of T cells, aging is also associated with a decline in naïve B cells, an accumulation of memory B cells with limited specificities, and impaired plasma cell responses to antigen, with the antibodies produced being less effective (Siegrist and Aspinall 2009).

Immunosenescence and the “Immune Risk Profile”

Although many immunological alterations take place with aging, very few of these changes have been accepted as reliable biomarkers of immunosenescence. A panel of accepted hallmarks do exist however, but these measurements have only been confirmed as being predictive of mortality in a small group of individuals examined in studies undertaken at the Institute of Gerontology in Jönköping, Sweden (Pawelec 2014). These longitudinal studies of octogenarians in exceptional health and nonagenarians, with health profiles more representative of the elderly, revealed a cluster of parameters that were referred to as the “immune risk profile.” Measurements included low numbers and proportions of B cells, high numbers and proportions of late-

differentiated memory CD8+ T cells, poor T cell proliferative responses to mitogens, and a CD4:CD8 ratio of <1.0 (Wikby et al. 1998). In addition, infection with the latent herpes virus *Cytomegalovirus* (CMV) was clustered into the immune risk profile (Olsson et al. 2000) and together, these characteristics predicted greater all-cause mortality at 2-, 4-, and 6-year follow-up. Later work showed that IL-6 was also associated with frailty, cognitive decline, and mortality (Wikby et al. 2005). Further studies are needed to establish whether this profile can be applied to other populations.

Infection History, “Immunological Space,” and Immunosenescence

Many features of an aging immune system are driven by infection with CMV (Pawelec 2014). This virus is encountered by the majority of the population, infects a number of cell types, and is never eradicated from the body, due to a range of immune evasion strategies and periods of viral reactivation that likely bring about infection of other cells. Thus, CMV requires constant immune surveillance, and this process drives the accumulation of memory CD8+ (and to a lesser extent CD4+) T cells that exhibit a late-differentiated phenotype (i.e., CD27–CD28–CD45RA+CD57+KLRG1+). These cells are commonly (and often erroneously) referred to as being “senescent.” This is perhaps because one of the first studies to describe the functional characteristics of CMV-specific cells in an aging context showed that the proportion of antigen-stimulated interferon-gamma (IFN- γ) producing cells from elderly people was lower than in young people (Ouyang et al. 2003). However, the cumulative IFN- γ production was higher in the elderly due to the large expansion of CMV-specific cells – findings that have been interpreted as being a mechanism for limiting excessive inflammatory activity when controlling CMV. Indeed, most studies indicate that few CMV-specific T cells are truly “senescent,” as shown by low proportions of these cells expressing inhibitory molecules (e.g., programmed death-1; PD1) and evidence that many of these cells are multifunctional (e.g., producing IFN- γ , IL-2 and

TNF- α and being efficient killers) despite having shorter telomeres than naïve cells. Thus, the expansion of late-differentiated memory T cells is a hallmark of immunosenescence that occurs in parallel with chronological aging but is driven by viral infection, as most of these cells are specific for CMV. Most viruses, including other herpes viruses such as Epstein-Barr virus, do not have such profound effects on the cellular composition of the immune system as CMV, and there is a minimal expansion of late-differentiated memory T cells in CMV-seronegative individuals, even in the elderly (Wertheimer et al. 2014). Currently, it remains unclear whether this process of “memory inflation” should be interpreted as being beneficial, detrimental, or even a direct driver of aging and inflammatory processes.

While it is likely that an expansion of CMV-specific T cells is important for viral control, this process coincides with the substantial age- or infection-associated decline in the numbers and proportions of naïve T cells. This decline has been hypothesized to increase the risk of new infections, as there are fewer naïve cells capable of responding to unencountered pathogens (Franceschi et al. 2000b). In addition, due to the reduced output of naïve T cells from the thymus with aging, it has been hypothesized that there is an upper limit to the number of T cells in the immune system (Franceschi et al. 2000b). Thus, it has been proposed that naïve T cells might eventually be “used up” by becoming specific for viruses such as CMV, filling up “immunological space” with memory cells. Indeed, it has been suggested that viruses such as CMV might cause a “squeezing out” (i.e., selective deletion) of T cells targeting less dominant infections. In the case of Varicella zoster virus (VZV), for example, this might result in the loss of viral control and subsequent viral reactivation that manifests in shingles later in life. The idea that a lower number of naïve T cells increases the risk of infection has not been tested experimentally, and it remains to be determined whether the size of “immunological space” is fixed. Although many studies have confirmed a decline in the numbers and proportions of antigen-naïve cells with aging, some evidence has shown that *lower* numbers of

naïve T cells (in combination with a robust memory response to CMV) is associated with *better* survival in the elderly (Derhovanessian et al. 2013).

An aim of recent research has been to examine the influence of CMV on less abundant cell populations, or those that have so far received less attention in the context of latent viral infections. For example, although CMV has been implicated in impaired B cell function, as shown by studies reporting lower antibody responses to vaccination in CMV-seropositive individuals (e.g., Frasca et al. 2015), the effects of CMV on the numbers and proportions of B cell subtypes in peripheral blood appear to be modest (Goldeck et al. 2016). Other research has attempted to disentangle the effects of chronological aging and infection with CMV, as with the broader T cell populations (Wertheimer et al. 2014). For example, $\gamma\delta$ T cells are most simplistically divided into V δ 1 and V δ 2 subpopulations that represent approximately 15–20% and 60–80% of the total $\gamma\delta$ T cell pool, respectively. Aging per se is associated with a decline in V δ 2 cells, whereas V δ 1 cells remain stable. However, CMV infection results in a preferential increase in V δ 1 cells (and other minor subpopulations, such as V δ 3 and V δ 5, which together with V δ 1 cells, are collectively referred to as V δ 2– cells) (Roux et al. 2013). Similarly with NK cells, it seems that aging is independently associated with the decline in regulatory cells (i.e., CD56 bright CD16–), whereas the “age-associated” increase in cytotoxic cells (i.e., CD56 dim CD16+) is driven by CMV due to an expanded population of long-lived cells that express CD57 (Solana et al. 2014).

Aside from the effects of CMV on the cellular composition of the immune system, many studies have shown that infection with this virus alone is directly linked with poor responses to vaccination (e.g., Frasca et al. 2015), frailty (e.g., Haesecker et al. 2013), cognitive impairment (e.g., Gow et al. 2013), and earlier mortality (e.g., Savva et al. 2013). However, establishing a direct and causal role for CMV in aging, disease, and immunosenescence remains a contentious issue. For example, some studies have shown no effect

of CMV on antibody responses to vaccination in the elderly (e.g., den Elzen et al. 2011). Despite inconsistent results over the effects of CMV on vaccine responses, studies consistently show that elderly individuals, exhibiting other established hallmarks of an aging immune system, respond poorly to vaccines (Haq and McElhaney 2014). Thus, an impaired response to vaccination alone is a true characteristic of immunosenescence that encompasses both the innate and the adaptive immune system. Thus, testing the response to vaccines should perhaps be regarded as a gold standard in vivo measure of immune competence for examining immunosenescence (in the absence of administering and assessing the effects of infectious agents experimentally).

Conclusion

As with most physiological systems and processes, aspects of both innate and adaptive immunity change with aging, and many of these alterations have been interpreted to be deleterious. While the search for robust biomarkers of immunosenescence continues, a number of parameters have been established that have been used to estimate the degree, rate, or effects of immunological aging, including measurements of “inflammaging” and hallmarks similar to those in the “immune risk profile.” Future research will continue to dissect and disentangle the relationships between immunosenescence, chronological aging, and infection history and may establish whether this process of immunological aging is a causal factor in other aspects of physiological decline.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Aging](#)
- ▶ [Cellular Theory of Aging](#)
- ▶ [Gerontology](#)
- ▶ [Immune Function](#)
- ▶ [Immunity](#)
- ▶ [Inflammation](#)

References and Further Readings

- Appay, V., & Sauce, D. (2014). Naive T cells: The crux of cellular immune aging? *Experimental Gerontology*, 54, 90–93.
- Briceno, O., Lissina, A., Wanke, K., Afonso, G., von Braun, A., Ragon, K., et al. (2016). Reduced naive CD8(+) T-cell priming efficacy in elderly adults. *Aging Cell*, 15(1), 14–21.
- Bueno, V., Sant’Anna, O. A., & Lord, J. M. (2014). Ageing and myeloid-derived suppressor cells: Possible involvement in immunosenescence and age-related disease. *Age (Dordrecht, Netherlands)*, 36(6), 9729.
- den Elzen, W. P., Vossen, A. C., Cools, H. J., Westendorp, R. G., Kroes, A. C., & Gussekloo, J. (2011). Cytomegalovirus infection and responsiveness to influenza vaccination in elderly residents of long-term care facilities. *Vaccine*, 29, 4869–4874.
- Derhovanessian, E., Maier, A. B., Hahnel, K., Zelba, H., de Craen, A. J., Roelofs, H., et al. (2013). Lower proportion of naive peripheral CD8+ T cells and an unopposed pro-inflammatory response to human *Cytomegalovirus* proteins in vitro are associated with longer survival in very elderly people. *Age (Dordrecht, Netherlands)*, 35(4), 1387–1399.
- Ferrando-Martinez, S., Franco, J. M., Ruiz-Mateos, E., Hernandez, A., Ordonez, A., Gutierrez, E., & Leal, M. (2010). A reliable and simplified sj/beta-TREC ratio quantification method for human thymic output measurement. *Journal of Immunological Methods*, 352, 111–117.
- Franceschi, C., Bonafe, M., Valensin, S., Olivieri, F., De Luca, M., Ottaviani, E., & De Benedictis, G. (2000a). Inflamm-aging. An evolutionary perspective on immunosenescence. *Annals of the New York Academy of Science*, 908, 244–254.
- Franceschi, C., Bonafe, M., & Valensin, S. (2000b). Human immunosenescence: The prevailing of innate immunity, the failing of clonotypic immunity, and the filling of immunological space. *Vaccine*, 18, 1717–1720.
- Frasca, D., Diaz, A., Romero, M., Landin, A. M., & Blomberg, B. B. (2015). Cytomegalovirus (CMV) seropositivity decreases B cell responses to the influenza vaccine. *Vaccine*, 33, 1433–1439.
- Geiger, H., de Haan, G., & Florian, M. C. (2013). The ageing haematopoietic stem cell compartment. *Nature Reviews. Immunology*, 13, 376–389.
- Giovannini, S., Onder, G., Liperoti, R., Russo, A., Carter, C., Capoluongo, E., et al. (2011). Interleukin-6, C-reactive protein, and tumor necrosis factor-alpha as predictors of mortality in frail, community-living elderly individuals. *Journal of American Geriatric Society*, 59(9), 1679–1685.
- Goldeck, D., Oettinger, L., Janssen, N., Demuth, I., Steinhagen-Thiessen, E., & Pawelec, G. (2016). Cytomegalovirus infection minimally affects the frequencies of B-cell phenotypes in peripheral blood of

- younger and older adults. *Gerontology*, 62(3), 323–329.
- Gow, A. J., Firth, C. M., Harrison, R., Starr, J. M., Moss, P., & Deary, I. J. (2013). Cytomegalovirus infection and cognitive abilities in old age. *Neurobiology of Aging*, 34(7), 1846–1852.
- Haeseker, M. B., Pijpers, E., Dukers-Muijers, N. H., Nelemans, P., Hoebe, C. J., Bruggeman, C. A., et al. (2013). Association of cytomegalovirus and other pathogens with frailty and diabetes mellitus, but not with cardiovascular disease and mortality in psycho-geriatric patients; a prospective cohort study. *Immunity & Ageing*, 10(1), 30.
- Haq, K., & McElhaney, J. E. (2014). Immunosenescence: Influenza vaccination and the elderly. *Current Opinion in Immunology*, 29, 38–42.
- Hazeldine, J., & Lord, J. M. (2015). Innate immunosenescence: Underlying mechanisms and clinical relevance. *Biogerontology*, 16(2), 187–201.
- Jagger, A., Shimojima, Y., Goronzy, J. J., & Weyand, C. M. (2014). Regulatory T cells and the immune aging process: A mini-review. *Gerontology*, 60, 130–137.
- Olsson, J., Wikby, A., Johansson, B., Lofgren, S., Nilsson, B. O., & Ferguson, F. G. (2000). Age-related change in peripheral blood T-lymphocyte subpopulations and cytomegalovirus infection in the very old: The Swedish longitudinal OCTO immune study. *Mechanisms of Ageing & Development*, 121, 187–201.
- Ouyang, Q., Wagner, W. M., Voehringer, D., Wikby, A., Klatt, T., Walter, S., et al. (2003). Age-associated accumulation of CMV-specific CD8⁺ T cells expressing the inhibitory killer cell lectin-like receptor G1 (KLRG1). *Experimental Gerontology*, 38(8), 911–920.
- Panda, A., Arjona, A., Sapey, E., Bai, F., Fikrig, E., Montgomery, R. R., et al. (2009). Human innate immunosenescence: Causes and consequences for immunity in old age. *Trends in Immunology*, 30(7), 325–333.
- Pawelec, G. (2014). Immunosenescence: Role of cytomegalovirus. *Experimental Gerontology*, 54, 1–5.
- Peralbo, E., Alonso, C., & Solana, R. (2007). Invariant NKT and NKT-like lymphocytes: Two different T cell subsets that are differentially affected by ageing. *Experimental Gerontology*, 42(8), 703–708.
- Roberts-Thomson, I. C., Whittingham, S., Youngchaiyud, U., & Mackay, I. R. (1974). Ageing, immune response, and mortality. *Lancet*, 2, 368–370.
- Roux, A., Mourin, G., Larsen, M., Fastenackels, S., Urrutia, A., Gorochoy, G., et al. (2013). Differential impact of age and cytomegalovirus infection on the gammadelta T cell compartment. *Journal of Immunology*, 191(3), 1300–1306.
- Savva, G. M., Pachnio, A., Kaul, B., Morgan, K., Huppert, F. A., Brayne, C., & Moss, P. A. (2013). Cytomegalovirus infection is associated with increased mortality in the older population. *Aging Cell*, 12(3), 381–387.
- Schmitt, V., Rink, L., & Uciechowski, P. (2013). The Th17/Treg balance is disturbed during aging. *Experimental Gerontology*, 48, 1379–1386.
- Shearer, G. M. (1997). Th1/Th2 changes in aging. *Mechanisms of Ageing and Development*, 94, 1–5.
- Siegrist, C. A., & Aspinall, R. (2009). B-cell responses to vaccination at the extremes of age. *Nature Reviews. Immunology*, 9, 185–194.
- Solana, R., Campos, C., Pera, A., & Tarazona, R. (2014). Shaping of NK cell subsets by aging. *Current Opinion in Immunology*, 29, 56–61.
- van Lier, R. A., ten Berge, I. J., & Gamadia, L. E. (2003). Human CD8⁺ T-cell differentiation in response to viruses. *Nature Reviews. Immunology*, 3, 931–939.
- Walford, R. L. (1969). *The immunologic theory of aging*. Copenhagen: Munksgaard.
- Wertheimer, A. M., Bennett, M. S., Park, B., Uhrlaub, J. L., Martinez, C., Pulko, V., et al. (2014). Aging and cytomegalovirus infection differentially and jointly affect distinct circulating T cell subsets in humans. *Journal of Immunology*, 192(5), 2143–2155.
- Wikby, A., Maxson, P., Olsson, J., Johansson, B., & Ferguson, F. G. (1998). Changes in CD8 and CD4 lymphocyte subsets, T cell proliferation responses and non-survival in the very old: The Swedish longitudinal OCTO-immune study. *Mechanisms of Ageing & Development*, 102, 187–198.
- Wikby, A., Ferguson, F., Forsey, R., Thompson, J., Strindhall, J., Lofgren, S., et al. (2005). An immune risk phenotype, cognitive impairment, and survival in very late life: Impact of allostatic load in Swedish octogenarian and nonagenarian humans. *The Journals of Gerontology. Series A, Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*, 60(5), 556–565.

Impaired Glucose Tolerance

Barbara Mullan

Centre for Medical Psychology and Evidence-based Decision-making, University of Sydney, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Synonyms

Prediabetes

Definition

The US National Diabetes Data group (1979) first introduced the term impaired glucose tolerance (IGT) to indicate a state of increased risk of progressing to diabetes. It was defined to reduce the stigma of being labeled with diabetes and was also

noted that many individuals with IGT could revert back to normal.

According to the World Health Organization and the International Diabetes Foundation (World Health Organization 2006), IGT is diagnosed if 2-h plasma glucose levels are between 7.8 and 11.1 mmol/l or 140 mg/dl and 200 mg/dl as measured by the oral glucose tolerance test, or if fasting glucose levels are less than 7.0 mmol/l. Two-hour plasma glucose is the level of glucose or the venous plasma glucose 2 h after ingestion of 75 g of oral glucose load. Blood glucose levels normally rise after eating a meal and then gradually fall as the meal is digested. However, in people with impaired glucose tolerance, these levels remain elevated.

In comparison, the definition of type II diabetes mellitus is 2-h plasma glucose levels more than 11.1 mmol/l (200 mg/dl). Therefore, IGT is not a clinical entity but is a risk factor for future diabetes and/or adverse outcomes and denotes individuals in the range between “normal” and diabetes.

Description

Characteristics

IGT is associated with muscle insulin resistance and defective insulin secretion, resulting in less efficient disposal of the glucose load (World Health Organization 2006). It has been shown that carrying extra body fat inhibits the effectiveness of insulin therefore any glucose that does reach the muscle will have its journey delayed. If this continues untreated, then blood glucose levels will eventually increase into the diabetes range.

It has also been recognized that IGT is associated with increased risk for cardiovascular disease (Fuller et al. 1980). The Whitehall study found that coronary heart disease mortality was approximately double for individuals with IGT in a population of 18,403 London civil servants aged 40–64 (Fuller et al.).

Prevalence of IGT

The prevalence of IGT varies between populations and across different age groups. For example, in the United States, 15.2% of men and

16.4% of women have impaired glucose tolerance (Harris et al. 1998), and in Australia, the rates were found to be 12% in men and 14% in women (Dunstan et al. 2002). A WHO study found that rates were lowest among some Chinese, traditional American Indian, and Pacific island populations (<3%) and the highest among female Muslim Asian Indians in Tanzania (32%) and male Micronesians in Kiribati (28%) (King and Rewers 1993).

Prevalence rates of approximately 10% or more are common, and it is typically more common in women than in men. The increasing prevalence with age was illustrated in the DECODE study which showed the prevalence of isolated IGT increasing from 2.9% in 30–39-year-old men to 15.1% in 70–79-year-old men and from 4.5% in 30–39-year-old women to 16.9% in 70–79-year-old women.

Risk Factors

The prevalence of IGT and diabetes appears to have increased in the last 20 years, and this has been linked to the rise of obesity in many countries. Further, health-risk behaviors such as physical inactivity, smoking, and alcohol ingestion are likely to be important and closely interrelated with IGT. As aforementioned, the risk of IGT is also age related.

Women with polycystic ovary syndrome are also more at risk of IGT as they have profound insulin resistance independent of obesity. Insulin resistance is a major risk factor in developing diabetes mellitus type II.

The American Diabetes Association also listed other risk factors for IGT and diabetes which include having a parent or sibling with diabetes; having a family background that is African American, Alaska Native, American Indian, Asian American, Hispanic/Latino, or Pacific Islander; giving birth to a baby weighing more than 9 lb. or being diagnosed with gestational diabetes (diabetes first found during pregnancy); having high blood pressure (140/90 or above or being treated for high blood pressure); having a high density lipo-protein (HDL), or “good,” cholesterol level below 35 mg/dL or a triglyceride level above 250 mg/dL; having other conditions

associated with insulin resistance, such as severe obesity or Acanthosis nigricans; and having a history of cardiovascular disease.

Prevention and Treatment

People with IGT have a one in three chance of developing type II diabetes within 10 years, but this can be minimized through healthy eating and physical activity as this helps cells respond better to insulin. The Diabetes Prevention Program (Orchard et al. 2005) carried out a randomized control trial to compare an intensive lifestyle modification intervention and the drug metformin. The study found that losing just 5–7% of body weight through a healthy low-calorie, low-fat diet and to engage in physical activity of moderate intensity reduced the incidence of metabolic syndrome (three or more of the following characteristics: waist circumference, blood pressure, levels of high-density lipoprotein cholesterol, triglycerides, and fasting plasma glucose) by 41%. Many participants in the lifestyle intervention group returned to normal blood glucose levels and lowered their risk for developing heart disease and other problems associated with diabetes. In comparison, the diabetes drug metformin reduced the risk of developing diabetes by 17%.

References and Readings

- Dunstan, D., Zimmet, P., Welborn, T., de Courten, M., Cameron, A., Colagiuri, S., et al. (2002). The rising prevalence of diabetes and impaired glucose tolerance: The Australian diabetes, obesity and lifestyle study. *American Diabetes Association*, 25(5), 829–834.
- Fuller, J. H., Shipley, M. J., Rose, G., Jarrett, R. J., & Keen, H. (1980). Coronary-heart-disease risk and impaired glucose tolerance The Whitehall Study. *The Lancet*, 315(8183), 1373–1376.
- Harris, M. I., Flegal, K. M., Cowie, C. C., Eberhardt, M. S., Goldstein, D. E., Little, R. R., et al. (1998). Prevalence of diabetes, impaired fasting glucose, and impaired glucose tolerance in US adults. The third national health and nutrition examination survey, 1988–1994. *Diabetes Care*, 21(4), 518.
- King, H., & Rewers, M. (1993). Global estimates for prevalence of diabetes mellitus and impaired glucose tolerance in adults. WHO Ad Hoc Diabetes Reporting Group. *Diabetes Care*, 16(1), 157.
- National Diabetes Data Group. (1979). Classification and diagnosis of diabetes mellitus and other categories of glucose intolerance. *Diabetes*, 28, 1039–1057.
- Orchard, T. J., Tempresa, M., Goldberg, R., Haffner, S., Ratner, R., Marcovina, S., et al. (2005). The effect of metformin and intensive lifestyle intervention on the metabolic syndrome: The diabetes prevention program randomized trial. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 142(8), 611.
- World Health Organization. (2006). *Definition and diagnosis of diabetes mellitus and intermediate hyperglycemia*. Report of a WHO/IDF consultation. Retrieved 1 Nov 2010, from <http://www.who.int/diabetes/publications/en/>

Impairment

► Disability

Implementation

► Dissemination

► Translational Behavioral Medicine

Implementation Intentions

Peter M. Gollwitzer and Gabriele Oettingen
Department of Psychology, New York University,
New York, NY, USA

Definition

Implementation intentions are if-then plans that spell out in advance how one wants to strive for a set goal. For the if-component, a critical cue is selected (e.g., a good opportunity, an anticipated obstacle) that is linked to a goal-directed response in the then-component. Implementation intentions are known to enhance the rate of goal attainment. They do so by delegating action control to situational cues thus endowing action control with features of automaticity.

Description

Successful goal pursuit requires solving both of two subsequent tasks: first strongly committing to goals and then effectively implementing them. Accordingly, strongly committing to a goal is a necessary but not sufficient step toward goal attainment. Indeed, effective goal pursuit may be hampered by various problems such as failing to get started and to stay on track as well as over-extending oneself. Finally, people may fail to disengage from futile means and unattainable goals. Meta-analytic findings suggest that goals (also referred to as goal intentions) account for no more than 28% of variance in goal-directed behavior (Sheeran 2002). One remedy to impaired goal pursuit is – after one has strongly committed to a goal – to plan out in advance how one wants to deal with potential critical situations (i.e., by adding implementation intentions to one's goal intentions).

Gollwitzer (1999) highlighted the importance of furnishing goal intentions with implementation intentions. While goal intentions (goals) have the structure “I intend to reach Z!” with Z relating to a desired future behavior or outcome, implementation intentions have the structure “If situation X is encountered, then I will perform the goal-directed response Y!”; thus, implementation intentions define when, where, and how one wants to act on one's goal intentions. In order to form an implementation intention, individuals need to identify a goal-relevant situational cue (such as a good opportunity to act or an obstacle to goal striving) and link it to an instrumental goal-directed response. Goal intentions merely specify a desired future behavior or outcome. On the contrary, the if-component of an implementation intention specifies when and where one wants to act on this goal, and the then-component of the implementation intention specifies how this will be done. For instance, a person with the goal to reduce alcohol consumption might form the following implementation intention: “And whenever a waiter suggests ordering a second drink, then I'll ask for mineral water!” Empirical data supports the assumption that implementation intentions help close the gap between holding goals and

attaining them. A meta-analysis based on close to a hundred studies shows a medium to large effect on increased rate of goal attainment ($d = 0.61$; Gollwitzer and Sheeran 2006).

Implementation intentions facilitate goal attainment on the basis of *psychological mechanisms* that pertain to the specified situation in the if-part and to the mental link forged between the if-part and the specified goal-directed response in the then-part of the plan (Gollwitzer and Oettingen 2016). Because forming an implementation intention implies the selection of a critical future situation, the mental representation of this situation becomes highly activated and hence more accessible. This heightened accessibility of the if-part of the plan has been observed in several studies using different experimental tasks (e.g., cue detection, dichotic listening, cued recall, lexical decision, flanker). However, forming implementation intentions not only heightens the activation (and thus the accessibility) of the mental presentation of the situational cue specified in the if-component, but it also forges a strong associative link between the mental representation of this cue and the mental representation of the specified response. These associative links seem to be quite stable over time, and they allow for activation of the mental representation of the specified response (the then-component) by subliminal presentation of the specified critical situational cue (if-component). Moreover, mediation analyses suggest that both cue accessibility and the strength of the cue-response link together mediate the impact of implementation intentions on goal attainment.

Gollwitzer (1999) suggested that the upshot of the strong associative links between the if-part (situational cue) and the then-part (goal-directed response) created by forming implementation intentions is that – once the critical cue is encountered – the initiation of the goal-directed response exhibits features of automaticity. These features include immediacy, efficiency, and redundancy of conscious intent. As a consequence, having formed an implementation intention allows individuals to act in situ without having to deliberate on whether to act or not. Indeed, there is vast empirical evidence that if-then planners act more

quickly, deal more effectively with cognitive demands (i.e., speedup effects still evidence under high cognitive load), and do not need to consciously intend to act in the critical moment. Consistent with this last assumption, implementation intention effects are observed even when the critical cue is presented subliminally or when the respective goal is activated outside of awareness.

The processes underlying implementation intention effects (enhanced cue accessibility, strong cue-response links, automation of responding) help if-then planners to readily see and to seize good opportunities to move toward their goals. Forming an if-then plan thus strategically automates goal striving. People can intentionally make if-then plans thus delegating control of goal-directed responses to preselected situational cues. This strategic automation hypothesis has recently been supported by studies that collected brain data using either electroencephalography (EEG) or functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI), suggesting that by forming implementation intentions people can switch from top-down control of their actions via goals to bottom-up control via specified situational stimuli. Research on mediating processes has also supported the strategic automation hypothesis, albeit in an indirect way. Numerous studies indicated that neither an increase in goal commitment nor an increase in self-efficacy qualified as potential alternative mediators of implementation intention effects.

But what about *potential moderators* of implementation intention effects on goal striving and goal attainment? Implementation intentions only benefit goal attainment when goal commitment is high; the same is true with respect to people's commitment to executing the formed implementation intention. Moreover, implementation intention effects are commonly observed to be stronger when the goal at hand is difficult rather than easy. Finally, self-efficacy was found to moderate implementation intention effects. Prompting participants to form an implementation intention as to when, where, and how to pursue their most important New Year's resolution (e.g., to engage in regular physical exercise) and in addition reflect on past mastery experiences (i.e., situations in which they

achieved a similar goal) led to significantly higher levels of self-reported goal progress compared to a mere implementation-intention condition. In a recent study where high versus low self-efficacy was manipulated (by asking participants to solve low- or high-difficulty goal-relevant tasks), it was observed that high-self-efficacy participants showed stronger implementation intention effects than low-self-efficacy participants, especially when the tasks to be solved were difficult rather than easy.

Which aspects of goal striving have been found to benefit from forming implementation intentions? The effects of implementation intentions have been demonstrated with respect to getting started, staying on track, disengaging from faulty goals and means, as well as avoiding resource depletion. Implementation intentions were found to help individuals to get started with goal striving in terms of remembering to act (e.g., regarding taking vitamin pills, contraceptive pills, influenza vaccination), not missing opportunities to act (e.g., regarding obtaining a mammography), and overcoming an initial reluctance to act (e.g., regarding undertaking a testicular self-examination). Moreover, goals to perform regular breast examinations or cervical cancer screening and to resume activity after joint replacement surgery were all found to be more readily acted upon by individuals who previously had formed implementation intentions.

However, many health goals (e.g., eating a healthy diet, regular physical exercise, reducing alcohol consumption or smoking, downregulating anxiety) cannot be accomplished by a simple, discrete, one-shot action because they require that people keep striving over an extended period of time. Staying on track may then become very difficult when certain internal stimuli (e.g., being tired, stressed out) or external stimuli (e.g., temptations, distractions) interfere with the desired goal pursuit. Implementation intentions can be used to protect started goal strivings from interferences stemming from both inside and outside the person. Such implementation intentions may use very different formats. For instance, if a person with the goal to eat healthy foods wants to stay firm with respect to seductive offers of unhealthy

snacks, she can form suppression-oriented implementation intentions, such as “And if my colleague approaches me offering a snack, then I will not take the snack!” The then-component of such suppression-oriented implementation intentions does not have to be worded, however, as not showing the critical behavior (in the present example “not taking the snack”); it may alternatively specify a replacement behavior (“... , then I will ask for an apple!”) or focus on ignoring the critical cue (“... , then I’ll ignore her offer!”). Recent research suggests that mere negation implementation intentions are less effective than the latter two types of implementation intentions (i.e., replacement and ignore implementation intentions).

Two further types of implementation intentions have been proven effective to master temptations and disruptions. The first one specifies the temptation as a situational cue and links it to thinking of the goal as the response in the then-component. The second one specifies an ongoing activity – that is independent of the temptation – as a situational cue and links it to continuing this activity as the response in the then-component. Using, again, the example of a person who has to cope with a seductive offer from a colleague, let us assume that the person already anticipated receiving the tempting offer during an upcoming encounter with a colleague; she therefore formed an implementation intention stipulating in advance what she will converse about when she runs into her. The interaction with the colleague can then come off as planned as the seductive offer won’t have a chance to disrupt the course of action (i.e., the conversation).

Goal striving that is no longer promising may require individuals to disengage from a chosen means or the goal altogether. Such disengagement can free up resources and minimize negative affect. However, individuals often stick to a chosen goal or means too long thus hurting themselves (e.g., setting a too demanding exercise goal, choosing improper means to reach the goal). Implementation intentions can be used to promote adaptive disengagement by (1) specifying negative feedback as a critical cue and (2) linking this cue to switching to a more promising

alternative goal or means. Indeed, when research participants were asked to form implementation intentions that linked negative feedback on the ongoing goal striving to immediately switching to a different goal or means or to reflecting on the quality of the received failure feedback on the ongoing goal striving, adaptive disengagement from goals and means was found to occur more frequently than for participants who had only formed respective goal intentions or had formed no intentions at all.

Finally, forming implementation intentions can help prevent resource depletion as it enables individuals to engage in automated goal striving and behavior control that does not require effortful deliberation (e.g., forming implementation intentions to ask for available vegetarian dishes when a waiter takes one’s order). As a consequence, the self should not become depleted when goal striving is regulated by implementation intentions. Indeed, in studies using different ego-depletion paradigms, research participants who used implementation intentions to self-regulate performance on a difficult first task did not show reduced self-regulatory capacity in a subsequent task.

But how much willpower is actually afforded by forming implementation intentions? Any self-regulation strategy that claims to facilitate goal striving has to prove itself under conditions in which people commonly fail to demonstrate willpower (Gollwitzer 2014). Such conditions are manifold (e.g., when one’s competencies are challenged, opponents interfere with one’s goal striving), but self-regulation of goal striving becomes particularly difficult when habitual responses are in conflict with initiating and executing the needed goal-directed responses that are instrumental to goal attainment. Can the self-regulation strategy of forming if-then plans help people to let their goals win out over their habitual responses? By assuming that action control by implementation intentions is immediate and efficient and adopting a simple horserace model of action control, people might be able to break habitual responses by forming implementation intentions (e.g., if-then plans that spell out a response contrary to the habitual response to the critical situation). Still, if the habitual response is based on strong habits

(e.g., smoking), and the if-then guided response is based on weak implementation intentions, the habitual response should win over the if-then planned response. However, when weak habits are in conflict with strong implementation intentions, the reverse should be true. This implies that controlling behavior based on strong habits by forming implementation intentions requires that these if-then plans are very strong as well.

The strengthening of if-then plans can be achieved in various ways: one pertains to creating particularly strong links between situational cues (if-component) and goal-directed responses (then-component), for instance, by asking participants to use mental imagery. Alternatively, one may tailor the critical cue specified in the if-part of an implementation intention to personally relevant reasons for the habitual behavior one wants to overcome and then link this cue to an antagonistic response (e.g., if I feel lonely, then I will put on the music in the living room rather than snack in the kitchen). Also, certain formats of implementation intentions (i.e., replacement and ignore implementation intentions) seem to be more effective in fighting strong habits than other if-then plans (e.g., negation implementation intentions). And finally, stronger implementation intention effects are observed when the respective goals are framed as approach rather than avoidance goals and when goals and plans match in their self-regulatory orientation (i.e., either promotion or prevention). Pertaining to the discussion of whether strong habits can be broken by implementation intentions, one should keep in mind that behavior change is possible without changing bad habits; one may also focus on building new habits in new situational contexts. With respect to this latter approach, implementation intentions can guide goal striving without having to outrun habitual responses. The delegation of control to situational cues principle, on which implementation intention effects are based, can then unfold its facilitative effects on goal striving in an undisturbed manner.

Trying to achieve behavior change by solely forming implementation intentions however forgets that effective behavior change demands a change in terms of both setting new goals and preparing the respective goal striving by forming

implementation intentions. But how can people best select and commit to new goals? Oettingen (2012) has developed a self-regulation strategy of goal setting, called mental contrasting of future and reality that allows people to strongly commit to achieving desired and feasible future outcomes. Specifically, in mental contrasting, people imagine the attainment of a desired future (e.g., regular exercise) and then reflect on obstacles of present reality that stand in the way of attaining the desired future (e.g., not setting aside enough time). Given that the perceived chances of success (expectations of success) are high, people will actively commit to and strive toward reaching the desired future.

The behavior change intervention called MCII (Oettingen and Gollwitzer 2010) combines mental contrasting (MC) with forming implementation intentions (II). To unfold their beneficial effects, implementation intentions require that strong goal commitments are in place, and mental contrasting creates such strong commitments. Implementation intentions are also found to show enhanced benefits when the specification of the if-component is personalized, and mental contrasting guarantees the identification of personally relevant obstacles that can then be specified as the critical cue in the if-component of an implementation intention. Finally, mental contrasting has been found to create a readiness for making plans that link obstacles of present reality to instrumental goal-directed behaviors.

In recent intervention studies with middle-aged women, participants were taught the cognitive principles and individual steps of the MCII self-regulation strategy. Specifically, in one study, participants were asked to apply MCII by themselves to the wish of exercising more. Participants were free to choose whatever form of exercising they wished to engage in, and they were encouraged to anticipate exactly those obstacles that were personally most relevant. Finally, they had to link these obstacles to exactly those goal-directed responses that personally appeared to be most instrumental. Teaching the MCII technique enhanced exercise more than only providing relevant health-related information (i.e., information-only control intervention). Participants in the

MCII group exercised nearly twice as much: an average of 1 h more per week than participants in the information-only control group. This effect showed up immediately after the intervention, and it stayed stable throughout the entire period of the study (16 weeks after the intervention). Conducting the same MCII intervention was also effective for promoting healthy eating in middle-aged women (i.e., eating more fruits and vegetables). The achieved behavior change persisted even over a period of 2 years. Follow-up research targeting the eating habit of unhealthy snacking was conducted with college students. It was observed that MCII worked for both students with weak and strong such habits, and it was more effective than either mental contrasting or forming implementation intentions alone.

Importantly, MCII geared toward engaging in physical exercise, and eating healthy turned out to be effective with clinical groups as well. For instance, a study with inpatients diagnosed with schizophrenia observed that MCII helped the patients translate their exercising intentions into action, and this was found to be especially the case when MCII was applied in an autonomy-focused hospital setting as compared to a highly structured setting. Moreover, a MCII intervention improved stroke patients' physical activity and weight loss over 1 year compared to control groups that were informed on how to eat better and engage in more physical exercise. Finally, MCII was observed to benefit chronic back pain patients in increasing their mobility over a period of 3 months, whereby physical mobility was assessed by objective measures (e.g., bicycle ergometer test) as well as self-reported physical functioning, and MCII helped hazardous drinkers who wanted to drink less alcohol to attain their goal.

In sum, MCII qualifies as a cost- and time-effective self-regulation intervention to enhance healthy and to prevent unhealthy behaviors. It helps to solve the two central tasks of goal pursuit: forming strong goal commitments on the one hand and following up on these commitments by effective goal implementation, on the other. Not surprisingly, then, combining mental contrasting with implementation intentions offers additional advantages compared to each strategy alone.

Research on MCII has stimulated the development of an MCII app (see woopmylife.org) that is described in Oettingen (2014).

Cross-References

- [Behavior Change](#)
- [Habit Strength](#)
- [Intention](#)

References and Further Reading

- Gollwitzer, P. M. (1999). Implementation intentions: Strong effects of simple plans. *American Psychologist*, 54, 493–503.
- Gollwitzer, P. M. (2014). Weakness of the will: Is a quick fix possible? *Motivation and Emotion*, 38, 305–322.
- Gollwitzer, P. M., & Oettingen, G. (2016). Planning promotes goal striving. In K. D. Vohs & R. F. Baumeister (Eds.), *Self-regulation: Research, theory, and applications* (3rd ed., pp. 223–246). New York: Guilford Press.
- Gollwitzer, P. M., & Sheeran, P. (2006). Implementation intentions and goal achievement: A meta-analysis of effects and processes. *Advances in Experimental Social Psychology*, 38, 69–119.
- Oettingen, G. (2012). Future thought and behavior change. *European Review of Social Psychology*, 23, 1–63.
- Oettingen, G. (2014). *Rethinking positive thinking*. New York: Penguin/Random House.
- Oettingen, G., & Gollwitzer, P. M. (2010). Strategies of setting and implementing goals: Mental contrasting and implementation intentions. In J. E. Maddux & J. P. Tangney (Eds.), *Social psychological foundations of clinical psychology* (pp. 114–135). New York: Guilford Press.
- Sheeran, P. (2002). Intention-behavior relations: A conceptual and empirical review. *European Review of Social Psychology*, 12, 1–30.

Implementation Science

- [Agile Science](#)
- [RE-AIM Guidelines](#)

Implicit Beliefs

- [Lay Beliefs](#)

Implicit Theories

- Lay Beliefs
- Stress Mindset

Impotence

- Erectile Dysfunction

Impulsive Behavior

- Impulsivity

Impulsivity

Kelly Winter
Epidemiology, Florida International University,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

Delay discounting; Disinhibition; Impulsive behavior

Definition

The meaning of this complex construct is widely debated, including whether it is a stable aspect of personality (trait) or a behavior (state). Most descriptions center on negative aspects and include a reference to behavior executed rapidly without forethought and/or self-control, failure of attention, delay discounting, or probability discounting. There are four main types of impulsivity measures: observer-rated scales (e.g., diagnostic interviews), self-report questionnaires (e.g., Barratt Impulsiveness Scale), behavioral laboratory measures (e.g., reward-choice paradigms), and biological measures (e.g., event-related potentials).

Description

Reacting quickly without forethought can be prudent. For instance, a race-car driver whose split-second decision results in victory is exhibiting functional impulsivity, characterized by rapid response time. However, particularly in psychology, emphasis is placed on the causes and negative outcomes of impulsive behavior. For example, if the same driver skips a race to visit friends, he or she is engaging in dysfunctional impulsivity, characterized by an inability to sustain attention.

The Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV TR) defines clinically significant impulsivity in terms of interference in daily functioning. In the description of attention deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), impulsivity is referred to as “impatience, difficulty delaying responses, . . . and frequently interrupting. . . to the point of causing difficulties in social, academic, or occupational settings” (American Psychiatric Association 2000, p. 86). Great overlap and confusion exists between the concepts of impulsive behavior (motivated by a desire to release tension and/or feel pleasure) and compulsive behavior (motivated by a desire to alleviate anxiety).

Delay and Probability Discounting

Devaluing an outcome (positive or negative) in relation to the length of time that will elapse before it occurs is known as delay discounting. Research has found that children prone to delay discounting – e.g., preschoolers who opt to have one marshmallow now instead of two after a short delay – are more likely to struggle socially and academically in later years (Madden and Bickel 2009). Devaluing an outcome (reward or punishment) according to the likelihood of its occurrence is known as probability discounting. Both constructs are hypothesized to play key roles in impulsive behavior.

Evolutionary psychologists point out that these tendencies, which favor present rewards, likely benefited early humans, whose lives were often short and unpredictable. Missing out on a meal or a mate in the short term in hopes of finding a better option later could result in ruin under such

circumstances. Research suggests that modern humans in economically disadvantaged or dangerous environments are more likely to engage in impulsive behavior, including delay and probability discounting (Grant and Potenza 2011; Madden and Bickel 2009).

Related Health Outcomes

Impulsivity is a key feature in many mental disorders (e.g., ADHD, addictions, mood disorders) and unhealthy behaviors (e.g., drunken driving, overeating). Along with sensation seeking, impulsivity plays a role in risky sexual behavior (e.g., unprotected sex, many partners) and alcohol and drug use, all of which increase HIV risk. It is also theorized that impulsivity may partially account for increased HIV prevalence among those with personality disorders, particularly of the antisocial and borderline varieties (Millon et al. 2004).

Cross-References

- Addictive Behaviors
- Alcohol Abuse and Dependence
- Alcohol Consumption
- HIV Prevention
- Personality
- Risky Behavior
- Substance Abuse

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders (Revised)* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: Author.
- Dickman, S. J. (1996). Adverse (and beneficial) consequences of impulsive behavior. In R. S. Feldman (Ed.), *Psychology of adversity* (pp. 197–214). Amherst: The University of Massachusetts Press.
- First, M. B., Frances, A., & Pincus, H. A. (2000). Chapter 2: Differential diagnosis by the trees. In *DSM-IV-TR handbook of differential diagnosis*. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press. Retrieved from <http://www.psychiatryonline.com/content.aspx?aID=119073>.
- Grant, G. E., & Potenza, M. N. (Eds.). (2011). *The Oxford handbook of impulse control disorders*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- <http://www.impulsivity.org>. Accessed 11 Feb 2011.

- Madden, G. J., & Bickel, W. K. (Eds.). (2009). *Impulsivity: The behavioral and neurological science of discounting*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Millon, T., Grossman, S., Millon, C., Meagher, S., & Ramnath, R. (2004). *Personality disorders in modern life* (2nd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley.
- Moeller, F. G., Barratt, E. S., Dougherty, D. M., Schmitz, J. M., & Swann, A. C. (2001). Psychiatric aspects of impulsivity. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 158, 1783–1793.
- Stanford, M. S., Mathias, C. W., Dougherty, D. M., Lake, S. L., Anderson, N. E., & Patton, J. H. (2009). Fifty years of the Barratt impulsiveness scale: An update and review. *Personality and Individual Differences*, 47, 385–395.
- Webster, C. D., & Jackson, M. A. (Eds.). (1997). *Impulsivity: Theory, assessment, and treatment*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Zuckerman, M. (1994). *Behavioral expressions and biosocial bases of sensation seeking*. New York: Cambridge University Press.

In Vitro Fertilization

- In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology
- Infertility and Assisted Reproduction: Psychosocial Aspects

In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology

Jason S. Yeh¹ and Susannah D. Copland²

¹Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Reproductive Endocrinology and Fertility, Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC, USA

²Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Reproductive Endocrinology and Fertility, Duke Fertility Center, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

ART; Assisted reproductive technology; Egg donation; Egg donor; Embryo donation; Gestational carrier; ICSI; In vitro fertilization; Intracytoplasmic sperm injection; IVF; PGD;

Preimplantation genetic diagnosis; Sperm donation; Sperm donor; Surrogacy; Surrogate

Definition

In vitro fertilization (IVF) is a method of assisted reproductive technology (ART) in which eggs are exposed to sperm in a laboratory, and the resulting embryos are placed into the uterus to achieve a pregnancy.

Description

In vitro fertilization (IVF) is a method of assisted reproductive technology (ART) in which eggs are exposed to sperm in a laboratory, and the resulting embryos are placed into the uterus to achieve a pregnancy. In order to obtain eggs, female patients take medications to stimulate available eggs to move forward toward ovulation. Ultrasound and blood testing monitor the ovarian response. Ultrasound-guided egg retrieval is performed when the eggs are thought to be mature. Once removed, the eggs are exposed to sperm in the laboratory, or in vitro (from the Latin root 'within glass'). Eggs can either be placed with sperm and incubated overnight (conventional in vitro fertilization) or a single sperm can be injected into each egg (in vitro fertilization with intracytoplasmic sperm injection or ICSI). ICSI is usually used to compensate for low levels or poorly functioning sperm. After incubating overnight, embryos are examined to see if fertilization occurred. The fertilized embryos are returned to the incubator for an additional 1–5 days, until they are either transferred into the uterine cavity or frozen for future use. The number of embryos transferred depends largely on the age of the recipient woman and the family planning goals of the intended parents. The American Society of Reproductive Medicine has published guidelines to limit the number of transferred embryos to reduce the likelihood of multifetal gestations. Some countries legislate the maximum numbers of embryos to transfer to reduce the risk of multiple births, instead favoring additional cycles using previously frozen eggs or

embryos. Beginning with ovarian stimulation and ending with embryo transfer, one IVF cycle can be accomplished in an approximately 2-week time period; a pregnancy test occurs 2 weeks after the embryo transfer.

Pregnancy rates per IVF cycle vary widely, and clinics have published success rates that range from 10% to 70%. These rates depend, among other factors, on the woman's age, ovarian reserve, medical comorbidities, capabilities of the laboratory facility, and the technical expertise of the laboratory staff. Pregnancy rates can be reported in many ways: pregnancy or live birth per IVF cycle, per egg retrieval or per embryo transfer. The percentage of IVF cycles that result in the delivery of a viable fetus is called the live birth rate.

Frozen embryos can be thawed for future pregnancies. Women take medications to prepare their uterus for embryo transfer, but do not need to repeat ovarian stimulation. Once a patient or couple completes their family, unused frozen embryos can be donated (to other people or to research) or discarded.

Third Party Reproduction

In vitro fertilization has created opportunities for third party reproduction where another party provides sperm, eggs, embryos, or the use of their uterus so a person or couple can become parents. There are four distinct entities of third party reproduction; some patients require the combination of multiple entities.

Gestational Carrier: A gestational carrier is a woman who agrees to carry, labor, and deliver a child for another person or couple. Gestational carriers assist intended parents who do not have a uterus or in whom pregnancy is medically unsafe. Carriers are usually financially compensated for their services.

Egg Donation: Egg donors undergo ovarian stimulation and egg retrieval to provide an egg for fertilization in the IVF process. The egg can be fertilized with either donated or the intended father's sperm. The resulting embryo is then transferred into the intended mother or gestational carrier. Egg donors can be known or anonymous. Anonymous donors and some known

donors are usually financially compensated for services.

Sperm Donation: Sperm donors provide sperm that can be placed inside a uterus to inseminate a woman (intrauterine insemination or IUI) or used to create an embryo by in vitro fertilization that can then be transferred into the uterus of an intended mother or gestational carrier. Generally, sperm donors are financially compensated for their services.

Embryo Donation: Unused embryos from previous IVF cycles can be donated to another patient or couple hoping to become parents. These embryos can be donated in fresh or frozen form and can be transferred into the intended mother or gestational carrier.

The American Society of Reproductive Medicine recommends the routine use of legal and psychological counseling when planning third party reproduction.

Expansions, Controversies, and Disadvantages of In Vitro Fertilization

As cancer treatments have become more successful, IVF has found a role in trying to preserve a woman or man's fertility prior to undergoing cancer treatment. Since radiation and chemotherapy are toxic to egg and sperm, men and women with cancer are often unable to reproduce after undergoing cancer treatments. Eggs, sperm, or embryos can be frozen prior to chemotherapy to facilitate pregnancy after they complete their cancer treatments. This emerging field of science within infertility is called oncofertility.

Another adjunct to the IVF process is preimplantation genetic diagnosis (PGD) where genetic testing is used to screen embryos for a genetic disease carried by one or both of the parents. Embryos that are continuing to grow in the laboratory are biopsied on the third or the fifth day after egg retrieval. The embryo biopsy is then tested for the genetic difference the couple carries (e.g., mutations that would cause cystic fibrosis or sickle cell disease). Selection of embryos after PGD can prevent delivery of a child affected with a genetic disease. Use of PGD for gender selection or family balancing is highly controversial.

The combination of assisted reproductive technology and third party reproduction has allowed postmenopausal women to become pregnant at any age. The main concerns with pregnancy at greater age are the increased health risks to the mother during pregnancy and shorter time to parent because of her advanced age. Proponents contend that more important than a parent's age is the commitment to a child's well-being. Some countries do not legally allow postmenopausal women to become pregnant which has resulted in some patients traveling abroad to pursue IVF.

Frequently reported disadvantages of IVF and ART include high cost, increased rate of multiple gestations (twins, triplets, etc.), inability to guarantee success, and medications and procedures that impart medical risk for the female patient. A single IVF cycle can cost upward of US \$8,000–\$15,000. In the United States, insurance coverage varies between states. A few states have mandated coverage in which insurers providing pregnancy-related benefits must also provide for the diagnosis and treatment of infertility including IVF. This discrepancy between states within one country exemplifies the ongoing debate as to whether or not parenthood is a right and fertility treatments should therefore be paid for with government funding, or a privilege that only the medically insured and/or affluent can afford.

Cross-References

- [Infertility and Assisted Reproduction: Psychosocial Aspects](#)

References and Readings

- National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health. (2004). *Fertility: Assessment and treatment for people with fertility problems* (pp. 1–216). London: RCOG Press.
- Speroff, L., & Fritz, M. A. (2010). Chapter 32: Assisted reproductive technologies. In L. Speroff & M. A. Fritz (Eds.), *Clinical gynecologic endocrinology and infertility* (8th ed., pp. 1331–1382). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins.
- Steptoe, P. C., & Edwards, R. G. (1978). Birth after the reimplantation of a human embryo. *Lancet*, 2, 366.

Inactivity

- [Lifestyle, Sedentary](#)

Incarcerated Youths

- [Williams LifeSkills Program](#)

Incidence Study

- [Follow-Up Study](#)

Income Distribution

- [Income Inequality and Health](#)

Income Inequality and Health

Douglas Carroll
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Income distribution](#)

Definition

Income inequality is usually defined as the proportion of national income and benefit enjoyed by a specified proportion, say 50%, of the least well-off in society. Occasionally, it has been measured using something called the Gini coefficient, which is a statistical measure of dispersal. Applied to national or state income distribution, a Gini coefficient of 0 would reflect total equality, whereas 1 reflects

complete inequality. Egalitarian countries such as Japan and Sweden have Gini coefficients ca. 0.25, whereas more unequal countries like the UK and USA have coefficients ca. 0.36 and 0.41, respectively.

Description

That health varies with socioeconomic position in Western societies is now commonplace. Irrespective of how socioeconomic position is measured, by occupational status, income, level of education, or neighborhood deprivation, it shows a consistent negative association with most measures of ill health, all-cause mortality, cardiovascular and cancer (with the exception of breast cancer in women) mortality, various major morbidities, and subjective ill-being. The association, however, is not a matter of the very poorest in society suffering from very poor health while the rest enjoy uniformly good health. Rather, there is a continuous gradient linking health outcomes to fine gradations in socioeconomic position. The intimate relationship between socio-demographics and health is nowhere better illustrated than by studies showing that as societies become less egalitarian, i.e., the socioeconomic ladder gets steeper, so the contingent health inequalities increase.

Recently, this link between the socioeconomic inequalities and health has taken a step further, as a result of studies examining overall health indices in societies and how egalitarian or unequal those societies are. Studies have used two sorts of comparisons: income inequalities and health outcomes in Western countries (including Japan), such as life expectancy and mortality rate, and income inequalities and health outcomes in the USA. The leading academic players in these two enterprises are Richard Wilkinson in the UK and George Kaplan in the USA. Income inequality is variously measured in these studies, but the outcome is the same regardless.

Whatever the measure used, income distribution has been shown to be strongly associated with differences in population life expectancy and mortality rates among Western countries and states in the USA. Put simply, the populations of more

egalitarian countries and states live longer. Egalitarian countries, such as Japan and the Scandinavian countries, also enjoy a host of other benefits such as less obesity, lower teenage pregnancy rates, less violent crime, and higher childhood literacy rates; more equal countries even recycle more. Egalitarian states in the USA, such as New Hampshire, Vermont, and Utah, experience less violent crime and have lower rates of smoking and sedentary behavior than more unequal states, such as Alabama, Louisiana, and Mississippi.

Why might more equal countries and states apparently do so much better than unequal ones on a range of health and behavioral outcomes? Two notions have attracted consideration. The first is the idea of social capital, i.e., that more equal countries and states invest more and/or invest more inclusively and effectively in those aspects of the social infrastructure that are health promoting, such as education, health care, safe roads and transport, and so on. The other idea is that of social cohesion. It would appear that less egalitarian societies are less cohesive, engendering among their populations poorer social support and greater psychological distress, factors that have been linked to poorer physical health outcomes. Whatever the case, it is clear that not only does income inequality have a powerful effect on population health, but as income equality changes over time, so too does population health, i.e., there are relative health benefits in a society becoming more egalitarian. Undoubtedly, the best summary of the recent research on income inequality and its consequences is by Wilkinson and Pickett (2009).

References and Further Reading

Wilkinson, R. G., & Pickett, K. (2009). *The spirit level: Why more equal societies almost always do better*. London: Allen Lane.

Independent Treatments Group Design

► [Parallel Group Design](#)

Indicators

► [Symptoms](#)

Individual Difference Factors

► [Personality](#)

Individual Differences

Austin S. Baldwin and Valerie G. Loehr
Department of Psychology, Southern Methodist University, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Differential psychology](#)

Definition

Individual differences in behavioral medicine include demographic, psychological, and/or behavioral dimensions that are shared by all people, but upon which individuals differ in ways that influence their health. For example, evidence suggests that five personality traits (openness to experience, conscientiousness, extraversion, agreeableness, and neuroticism) are shared among all people, but differences people exhibit on some of these traits (e.g., conscientiousness) account for differences in healthy behavioral practices, and even mortality rates.

Description

Overview

Individual differences that are known to influence health include demographic factors (e.g., race, gender, SES), psychological traits (e.g., conscientiousness, neuroticism), and behavioral

dispositions (e.g., anger/hostility, coping styles). These types of individual differences influence health outcomes in a variety of ways. For example, individual differences are known to moderate how people respond to stress, account for differences in the prevalence rates of chronic illness (e.g., coronary heart disease), account for differences in healthy behavioral practices (e.g., dietary habits, regular medical screenings), and even for differences in mortality rates.

The value of considering the role of individual differences in behavioral medicine is twofold. First, because individual differences are often associated with different patterns of behavioral and physiological responses (e.g., how people respond to stress), individual differences provide a useful framework through which researchers and practitioners can understand how different behavioral and physiological responses influence health. Second, individual differences allow researchers and practitioners to identify dimensions on which different people might benefit from different interventions and treatments.

Associations Between Individual Differences and Health

The sections below include descriptions of how selected individual differences are associated with health. Descriptions of differences in demographic factors, psychological traits, and behavioral dispositions are used as examples.

Demographic Factors

Race/Ethnicity. A variety of health differences exist among different minority race/ethnic groups in the United States, including African Americans, Asian Americans and Pacific Islanders, Latinos, and Native Americans (Whitfield et al. 2002). Brief descriptions of the differences that exist among each of these groups are provided.

African Americans have higher mortality rates compared to Caucasians, and this difference may be due primarily to higher rates of heart disease and stroke (Potts and Thomas 1999). Related to these observations, African Americans also show greater cardiovascular reactivity to stress (Clark et al. 1998). Moreover, there is evidence that African Americans also manifest higher rates of

smoking, obesity (at least among women), risky sexual behavior, and lower rates of physical activity, all of which contribute to the mortality rate.

Compared to non-Latinos, Latinos have higher rates of obesity, diabetes, and hypertension, all of which are risk factors for cardiovascular disease. These higher rates are likely due to diets low in fruits and vegetables and high smoking rates. Latinos also have higher rates of alcohol use compared to non-Latinos, but report less risky sexual behavior. In addition, acculturation among Latino populations in the United States plays an important role in health outcomes. For example, Latinos who are acculturated in the United States (e.g., English is the primary language in the household) are more likely to smoke and to do so at greater rates (Navarro 1996). More acculturated Latinos are also at greater risk of having stroke (Ontiveros et al. 1999).

Asian Americans and Pacific Islanders have the best health profile among ethnic groups in the United States, and the limited evidence suggests that this is due, in part, to lower rates of tobacco and alcohol use. Acculturation among this population is also important to health. For example, new immigrants to the United States often experience stress due to language and employment difficulties (Nwadiora and McAddo 1996).

Native Americans have higher mortality rates relative to other groups, due to higher smoking rates, poorer diets that lack sufficient fruits and vegetables, higher alcohol use, and lower rates of physical activity. Stress due to acculturation may also contribute to higher suicide rates (Lester 1999).

Gender. Mortality rates are higher for men than women, and men are more prone than women to nearly all of the leading causes of death (e.g., cardiovascular disease, accidents). There is not strong evidence for biological differences, but there is evidence that men have higher rates of smoking, alcohol use, and accidents. Men also have a higher prevalence of hostility, making them more prone to cardiovascular disease (Weidner and Mueller 2000), and men cope less effectively with stress than women. Moreover, compared to women, men tend to receive less

social support that can act as a buffer against psychosocial stressors.

Socioeconomic status (SES). Across racial and ethnic groups, gender, and age, there is an inverse relationship between SES and disease morbidity and mortality. Although it has previously been speculated that SES-related differences in health may be due to the overlap between SES groups and racial and ethnic groups (e.g., African Americans, Latinos), SES has an independent effect on health. This effect is due, in part, to higher rates of smoking, obesity, poorer dietary habits, and lower usage rates of preventive health services.

Psychological Traits

Conscientiousness is one of the five factors in the “Big Five model” of personality and is characterized by the tendency to be dutiful, organized, and industrious. Evidence suggests that conscientiousness is associated with differences in mortality rates. In one study, children who were high in conscientiousness were shown to be more likely to live to old age than those low in conscientiousness (Friedman et al. 1995). There are a number of explanations for this association with mortality rates. Conscientious people are more successful in avoiding situations that could potentially harm them, tend to have high fitness levels and healthy dietary habits (Bogg and Roberts 2004), and are more likely to follow medical recommendations and guidelines. In contrast, individuals low in conscientiousness are more likely to use alcohol, tobacco, and drugs, and engage in risky driving and sex (Hampson et al. 2006).

Neuroticism is another of the five factors in the “Big Five model” of personality. It is characterized by the tendency to experience negative emotions, and is associated with fearfulness, irritability, low self-esteem, social anxiety, poor inhibition of impulses, and helplessness. Elevated levels of neuroticism are associated with an increased risk for illness, psychological distress, and an increased mortality risk in patients with chronic medical conditions (Christensen et al. 2002). Neuroticism also affects the perception of physical symptoms. Individuals high in neuroticism tend to recognize and report their symptoms more quickly, and often present an exaggerated

picture of their symptoms (Ellington and Wiebe 1999) that can comprise a physician’s ability to effectively gauge a patient’s condition. They are also more likely to erroneously believe they have a serious disease. For example, up to 30% of those who did not have detectable heart disease after being referred for coronary angiography were high on neuroticism (Pryor et al. 1983).

Hardiness is a collection of personality traits that moderate the negative effects of stress. Hardiness includes the tendency (1) for involvement in, as opposed to alienation from, whatever one encounters (commitment), (2) to not feel or act helpless in the face of adversity (control), and (3) to accept change as normal in life and an opportunity for growth rather than a threat to security (challenge). There is evidence that under stressful conditions, hardy individuals are less likely to get sick than non-hardy individuals, more likely to perceive negative situations positively, and show less physiological strain than non-hardy individuals (Contrada 1989; Maddi 1998). However, evidence for the associations between hardiness and objective markers of physical health has been inconsistent.

Dispositional optimism is the tendency to believe that good things are likely to happen in one’s life. People who are high in optimism have lower blood pressure, less risk of coronary heart disease, higher levels of pulmonary function in older men, less cancer mortality among the elderly, and less illness-related disruption of social and recreational activities among breast cancer patients compared to their pessimistic counterparts. Evidence suggests that optimism leads people to cope more effectively with stress, that in turn reduces their risk for illness and benefits their recovery from serious medical procedures. This may happen in different ways. First, the positive mood associated with optimism may lead to a state of physiological resilience. For example, the tendency to experience positive emotional states has been tied to greater resistance to the common cold (Cohen et al. 2003). Second, an optimistic disposition may improve long-term prospects for psychological adjustment and health by promoting more active and persistent coping efforts (Segerstrom et al. 2003).

Behavioral Dispositions

Hostility is defined as a set of negative attitudes, beliefs, and appraisals of others that emerged from studies of Type A behavior patterns. Individual differences in hostility also include aggressive tendencies and anger. Evidence has found that individuals high in hostility are at a higher risk for coronary heart disease (CHD) and higher mortality rates than people lower in the disposition. Hostility is associated with heightened inflammatory reactions to stress and to metabolic syndrome, likely explaining its link to CHD (Niaura et al. 2002). Differences in hostility are also associated with increased rates of hypertension, stroke, and diabetes. Finally, evidence suggests that individuals high on hostility may take longer to physiologically recover from stress (Suarez et al. 1997).

Coping Styles. Individuals tend to cope with stress differently, through either avoidant or vigilant coping styles. Avoidant strategies tend to minimize the impact of the stressor by denying that a threat exists, suppressing unpleasant thoughts, or refusing to seek or attend to threatening information. In contrast, vigilant strategies involve actively seeking information about the stressor and how to deal with it. Each style has advantages and disadvantages in managing stress and its effects. Avoiding threatening events works effectively with short-term threats; for example, it may be beneficial in some medical procedures, such as blood donation or dental surgery. However, avoidance may not be useful for managing long-term or persisting threats. Evidence shows that a vigilant style allows individuals to engage in cognitive and emotional efforts needed to deal with long-term problems, but they may experience anxiety and heightened physiological reactivity as a result (Smith et al. 2000). In contrast, the chronic use of avoidance may heighten the risk of the adverse effects of stressful life circumstances.

Pathways Through Which Individual Differences Influence Health

Various theoretical models suggest that individual differences, such as personality traits, influence

health indirectly through their effect on people's appraisal of and coping with stressful circumstances. The differences in stress appraisal and coping then influence people's physiological and/or behavioral responses. It is the physiological and behavioral responses that then have a direct effect on illness and mortality. In other words, personality traits and behavioral dispositions are thought to indirectly effect health through their influence on stress appraisal, coping, and subsequent responses. Although there is some evidence for the individual behavioral and physiological mechanisms through which individual differences affect health outcomes, evidence for the entirety of these causal pathways is incomplete (Smith 2006).

Evidence for Individual Difference–Based Interventions

One of the benefits of considering the role of individual differences in behavioral medicine is the ability to tailor interventions and treatments to different types of people. In the sections below, evidence in support of this approach is briefly described.

Matching Interventions to Coping Styles. Evidence suggests that patients indicate less distress during and after stress-inducing surgical procedures when they are given information and use coping strategies that match their preferred styles. For people who prefer a vigilant coping style, this includes detailed information about the procedure and directions to engage in direct forms of coping. For patients with a preference for avoidant coping, this includes providing minimal information about the procedure and directions to engage in avoidant forms of coping (Martelli et al. 1987; Miller and Mangan 1983). Evidence from an intervention targeting mammograms suggests that women were more likely to obtain a mammogram when the message advocating mammography matched their preferred coping style – vigilant messages contained detailed information about the benefits of mammography, whereas avoidant messages contained just main points – than when the messages were not matched to coping style (Williams-Piehota et al. 2005).

Hostility-Reduction Interventions. There is evidence that patients with CHD who are also high on hostility benefit from a hostility-reduction intervention such that they reported less hostility and had lower resting blood pressure as a result (Gidron et al. 1999). There is also evidence that interventions aimed at reducing hostility and other CHD risk factors can have beneficial effects on heart rate reactivity to anger-inducing situations (Bishop et al. 2005).

A few important conclusions can be drawn from this intervention evidence. First, behavioral and physiological responses that stem from individual differences (e.g., anger/hostility) are mutable and can be changed via intervention. This highlights the importance of understanding the processes through which individual differences influence health, in order to screen for risk factors and target those that may be amenable to change. Second, behavioral interventions can be matched to individual differences in ways that facilitate optimal adjustment (e.g., matching to coping styles). It is not clear, however, whether all types of individual differences (e.g., neuroticism) would be amenable to targeted interventions.

Cross-References

- [Coping](#)
- [Cultural and Ethnic Differences](#)
- [Gender Differences](#)
- [Hardiness and Health](#)
- [Hostility, Cynical](#)
- [Neuroticism](#)
- [Personality](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bishop, G. D., Kaur, D., Tan, V. L. M., Chua, Y., Liew, S., & Mak, K. (2005). Effects of a psychosocial skills training workshop on psychophysiological and psychosocial risk in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting. *American Heart Journal*, 150, 602–609.
- Bogg, T., & Roberts, B. W. (2004). Conscientiousness and health-related behaviors: A meta-analysis of the leading contributors to mortality. *Psychological Bulletin*, 130, 887–919.
- Christensen, A. J., Moran, P. J., Wiebe, J. S., Ehlers, S. L., & Lawton, W. J. (2002). Effect of a behavioral self-regulation intervention on patient adherence in hemodialysis. *Health Psychology*, 18, 169–176.
- Clark, V. R., Moore, C. L., & Adams, J. H. (1998). Cholesterol concentrations and cardiovascular reactivity to stress in African American college volunteers. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 21, 505–515.
- Cohen, S., Doyle, W. J., Turner, R. B., Alper, C. M., & Skoner, D. P. (2003). Emotional style and susceptibility to the common cold. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65, 652–657.
- Contrada, R. J. (1989). Type A behavior, personality hardiness, and cardiovascular responses to stress. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 57, 895–903.
- Ellington, L., & Wiebe, D. (1999). Neuroticism, symptom presentation, and medical decision making. *Health Psychology*, 18, 634–643.
- Friedman, H. S., Tucker, J. S., Schwartz, J. E., Tomlison-Keasey, C., Wingard, D. L., & Criqui, M. H. (1995). Psychosocial and behavioral predictors of longevity. The aging and death of the “Termites.” *American Psychologist*, 50, 69–78.
- Gidron, Y., Davidson, K., & Bata, I. (1999). Short-term effects of a hostility-reduction intervention on male coronary heart disease patients. *Health Psychology*, 18, 416–420.
- Hampson, S. E., Goldberg, L. R., Vogt, T. M., & Dubanoski, J. P. (2006). Forty years on: Teachers’ assessments of children’s personality traits predict self-reported behaviors and outcomes at midlife. *Health Psychology*, 25, 57–64.
- Lester, D. (1999). Native American suicide rates, acculturation stress and traditional integration. *Psychological Reports*, 84, 398.
- Maddi, S. R. (1998). Hardiness. In E. A. Blechman & K. D. Brownell (Eds.), *Behavioral medicine and women: A comprehensive handbook* (pp. 152–155). New York: Guilford.
- Martelli, M. F., Auerbach, S. M., Alexander, J., & Mercuri, L. G. (1987). Stress management in the health care setting: Matching interventions with patient coping styles. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 55, 201–207.
- Miller, S. M., & Mangan, C. E. (1983). Interacting effects of information and coping styles in adapting to gynecological stress: Should the doctor tell all? *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 45, 223–236.
- Navarro, A. M. (1996). Cigarette smoking among adult Latinos: The California Tobacco Baseline Survey. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 18, 238–245.
- Niaura, R., Todaro, J. F., Stroud, L., Spiro, A., III, Ward, K. D., & Weiss, S. (2002). Hostility, the metabolic syndrome and incident coronary heart disease. *Health Psychology*, 21, 588–593.

- Nwadiora, E., & McAddo, H. (1996). Acculturative stress among Amerasian refugees: Gender and racial differences. *Adolescence*, 31, 477–487.
- Ontiveros, J., Miller, T. Q., Markides, K. S., & Espino, D. V. (1999). Physical and psychosocial consequences of stroke in elderly Mexican Americans. *Ethnicity & Disease*, 9, 212–217.
- Potts, J. L., & Thomas, J. (1999). Traditional coronary risk factors in African Americans. *The American Journal of the Medical Sciences*, 317, 189–192.
- Pryor, D. B., Harrell, F. E., Lee, K. L., Califf, R. M., & Rosati, R. A. (1983). Estimating the likelihood of significant coronary artery disease. *American Journal of Medicine*, 75, 771–780.
- Segerstrom, S. C., Castañeda, J. O., & Spencer, T. E. (2003). Optimism effects on cellular immunity: Testing the affective and persistence models. *Personality and Individual Differences*, 35, 1615–1624.
- Smith, T. W. (2006). Personality as risk and resilience in physical health. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 15, 227–231.
- Smith, T. W., Ruiz, J. M., & Uchino, B. N. (2000). Vigilance, active coping, and cardiovascular reactivity during social interaction in young men. *Health Psychology*, 19, 382–392.
- Suarez, E. C., Shiller, A. D., Kuhn, C. M., Schanberg, S., Williams, R. B., Jr., & Zimmermann, E. A. (1997). The relationship between hostility and B-adrenergic receptor physiology in health young males. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 59, 481–487.
- Weidner, G., & Mueller, H. (2000). Emotions and heart disease. In M. B. Goldman & M. C. Hatch (Eds.), *Women and health* (pp. 789–796). San Diego: Academic.
- Whitfield, K. E., Weidner, G., Clark, R., & Anderson, N. B. (2002). Sociodemographic diversity and behavioral medicine. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 70, 463–481.
- Williams-Piehota, P., Pizarro, J., Schneider, T. R., Mowad, L., & Salovey, P. (2005). Matching health messages to monitor-blunting coping styles to motivate screening mammography. *Health Psychology*, 24, 58–67.

Inducible Nitric Oxide Synthase (iNOS)

- [Nitric Oxide Synthase \(NOS\)](#)

Industrial Rehabilitation

- [Occupational Rehabilitation](#)

Infant Mortality

Linda C. Baumann¹ and Alyssa Ylinen²

¹School of Nursing, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

²Allina Health System, St. Paul, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Neonatal mortality](#)

Definition

Infant mortality rate is the number of infant deaths, defined as children under the age of 1 year old, per 1000 live births in a given year. Infant mortality is used as a major health indicator globally because it is associated with numerous factors that determine a country's overall level of health that include maternal health, prenatal care access, healthcare system quality and access, public health practices, and socioeconomic conditions.

The under-five mortality rate is the probability of a child born in a specific year or period dying before the age of five, expressed as a number per 1000 live births. It is another indicator used to measure the health status of a country. The World Health Organization (WHO) uses 17 sustainable development goals (SDG) and 169 targets to set forth an agenda to address broad socioeconomic and environmental issues including to ensure healthy lives and promote well-being for all at all ages. By 2030, the SDGs aim to end preventable deaths of newborns and children under 5 years of age, with all countries aiming to reduce neonatal mortality to at least 12 per 1000 live births and under-five mortality to at least 25 per 1000 live births.

Description

Variations in infant mortality rates and under-five mortality rates are monitored by global regions.

Child mortality rates have fallen since 1990 in all country-income groups – with the rate of decline generally faster in high-income and middle-income countries than in low-income countries. Median child mortality fell by almost 50% between 1990 and 2013 in lower middle-income countries, but by only 31% in low-income countries. In 2010, all regions of the world reported infant mortality rates below 200 per 1000 live births. Under-five mortality rates worldwide were 42.5 in 2015.

Globally, infant mortality and under-five mortality rates are estimated from death registration data that is reported annually to the World Health Organization. Other sources of data come from household surveys and census, especially in countries for which death registration data is not readily available. World regions with the highest infant mortality and under-five mortality rates are sub-Saharan Africa and South Asia. Uganda, an example of a country in the sub-Saharan Africa region, had an under-five mortality rate of 135 and an infant mortality rate of 84 according to 2008 WHO data. Regions of the world with the lowest rates are Western Europe, Australia, high-income areas of Asia-Pacific, and high-income areas of North America. The UK, New Zealand, and South Korea are other high-income countries that lag behind other countries of high-income levels. In 2015, the infant mortality rate in the USA was 5.6 per 1000, and the under-five mortality rate was 8 per 1000. For a list of infant and under five mortality rates by country: [http://data.worldbank.org/indicator/SH.DYN.MORT?](http://data.worldbank.org/indicator/SH.DYN.MORT?locations=SD)

[Reaching](#) the SDG targets will require key interventions, which include access to prenatal and perinatal care, improved child nutrition, vaccines, prevention and management of diarrhea, pneumonia and sepsis, malaria control, and prevention and care of HIV/AIDS. These interventions will lessen the impact of the six conditions for which 90% of worldwide children deaths are attributed to: neonatal causes, pneumonia, diarrhea, malaria, measles, and HIV/AIDS. According to the World Health Statistics 2010, the key to reducing infant mortality rates is the reduction in neonatal mortality, defined as

the number of deaths to infants under 28 days of age in a given year. Globally, 40% of deaths in children are attributed to neonatal mortality.

Variations in mortality rates can be attributed to a country's region, but also it is largely related to the level of income of a country, with poorer countries having higher rates. Least developed countries have infant mortality rates 10 times higher, and under-five mortality is 25 times higher compared to higher-income countries. Not only between but also within a country, infant mortality rates reflect disparities of factors such as race, socioeconomic status, education, and housing. For example in the USA, the gap between infant mortality rates of white and African American babies is of concern since the rate for African Americans is twice that of the rate for whites.

References and Further Readings

- Denburg, A., & Daneman, D. (2010). The link between social inequality and child health outcomes. *Healthcare Quarterly*, 14, 21–31.
- Infant Mortality. *Office of minority health and disparities*. Retrieved 1 Nov 2016., from <http://www.minorityhealth.hhs.gov/omh/find.aspx>
- Rajaratnam, J. K., Marcus, J. R., Flaxman, A. D., Wang, H., Levin-Rector, A., Dwyer, L., et al. (2010). Neonatal, postneonatal, childhood, and under-5 mortality for 187 countries, 1970–2010: A systematic analysis of progress towards Millennium Development Goal 4. *The Lancet*, 375, 1988–2008.
- Wong, D., Hockenberry, M., Wilson, D., Perry, S., & Lowdermilk, D. (2006). *Maternal child nursing care* (3rd ed.). St Louis: Mosby Elsevier.
- World Health Organization. *Sustainable development goals (SDGs)*. Retrieved 1 Nov 2016., from <http://www.un.org/sustainabledevelopment/videos/>
- World Health Organization. (2010). *World health statistics 2010*. Geneva: World Health Organization.

Infection

- [Human Factors/Ergonomics](#)
- [Infectious Diseases](#)

Infectious Diseases

Mark T. Drayson¹ and Anna C. Phillips²
¹College of Medical and Dental Sciences,
University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK
²School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation
Sciences, University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

Infection

Definition

Infectious diseases are illnesses caused by a diverse range of microorganisms. The immune system fights against such infection. Ten percent of all deaths in the UK, approximately 50,000 people a year, are due to infections, overwhelmingly in the elderly, and worldwide the proportion of people dying from infection is 25%. In impoverished tropical environments, many children have a 1:8 chance of dying before their fifth birthday.

Description

Microorganisms which cause infection include DNA viruses, RNA viruses, bacteria, fungi, protozoa, and worms. They can also be classified according to whether they replicate inside or outside of cells. Differences between infectious agents and their sites of replication necessitate different immune mechanisms for their control. Table 1 shows the class of microorganism, where it replicates, examples, and the diseases they cause.

Mechanical Barriers to Infection

The skin provides a barrier against infection; when this is intact, it provides a relatively effective protection – but it is easily breached by cuts, burns, insect bites, and skin diseases. The far

Infectious Diseases, Table 1 Microorganism types and the diseases they cause

Class and site of replication	Examples	Disease
DNA viruses (intracellular)	Varicella zoster	Chicken pox
	Epstein-Barr virus	Glandular fever
RNA viruses (intracellular)	Rhinoviruses	Common cold
	Rotaviruses	Gastroenteritis
Bacteria (extracellular) (intracellular)	Staphylococci	Skin infections
	Streptococci	Tonsillitis, pneumonia, impetigo
	Salmonella	Gastroenteritis, enteric fever
	Mycobacteria	Tuberculosis, leprosy
Fungi (extracellular) (intracellular)	Candida	Thrush
	Pneumocystis	Pneumonia
Protozoa (extracellular) (intracellular)	Entamoeba	Colitis, liver abscess
	Plasmodium	Malaria
Worms (extracellular) (bowel)	Filarioidea	Filariasis
	Cestodes	Tapeworm

larger absorptive surfaces of the intestine and lungs are inevitably more fragile. Moist mucus is effective at trapping small dust particles and droplets containing bacteria or the spores of yeast and fungi. There is a markedly increased susceptibility to infection associated with defects in the mucus, as in cystic fibrosis. Congenital defects in the cilia are also associated with repeated lung infections; cilia waft mucus towards the main bronchi and trachea where it is removed by coughing.

The mouth and pharynx and upper part of the esophagus are protected by stratified squamous epithelium but the epithelium of the rest of the gut is a single layer thick. Mucus again serves to protect the intestinal wall, and injury is rapidly repaired.

Drainage and Irrigation

Irrigation is an important means by which infection is inhibited. For example, the constant flow of urine from the kidneys helps prevent infection of the urinary tract. Blockage to the outflow of urine

impairs renal function and there is a considerable danger that static urine will become infected. Tears, urine, saliva, bile, pancreatic, mucus, and even sebaceous secretions help protect the surfaces they flow over.

It follows that free drainage of secretions is important to avoid infection; blockage of the pharyngo-tympanic tube predisposes to middle ear infection – the clogged opening to a hair follicle may result in a boil.

Chemical Protection

Acid secretions of the stomach help to sterilize the partially digested food that enters the small intestine. Many secretions contain substances that inhibit the growth or survival of microorganisms; lysozyme in tears is bactericidal and bile acids inhibit the growth of some microorganisms.

Normal Bacterial Flora

There are large numbers of bacteria on the skin, in the mouth, and in the large intestine. Normally, these are noninvasive commensal microorganisms that do not cause disease. The presence of this normal bacterial flora helps to inhibit the invasion of pathogenic bacteria. Loss of the normal flora associated with the use of antibiotics or excessive use of antiseptic solutions can provide an opportunity for pathogenic bacteria to colonize the vacated tissues. Staphylococcal enteritis is commonly associated with the use of antibiotics. Ingestion of large amounts of nonpathogenic bacteria, such as the lactobacilli found in yogurt, can help protect against this unwanted overgrowth of pathogens during antibiotic therapy.

Sensory Nervous System

This system is vital in protecting the body, for it warns of potential tissue damage. Impaired sensation, for example, occurring secondary to lepromatous leprosy or diabetes can result in patients unknowingly damaging their skin and other tissues; the damage is compounded by secondary infections.

Good Public Health and Hygiene

Clean water supply, good nutrition, and reasonable standards of hygiene in preparing food have

made an immense contribution to the reduced incidence of infection and increased good health and longevity enjoyed by developed countries compared with parts of the world where these, at best, are available only erratically.

Factors Associated with Increased Susceptibility to Infection

Impairment of any of the protective systems listed above increases susceptibility to infection. Certain other factors should be considered.

The immune system cannot gain access to dead, avascular tissue; foreign bodies in the tissues can have the same effect. Examples of sites where infection can gain hold are: infarcts (tissues that have died because their blood supply has been interrupted, e.g., by a blood clot); accumulations of fluid (e.g., bruises, abscesses, hydronephrosis) – it is important that these are drained; scar tissue such as fibrous adhesions in the peritoneal cavity following abdominal surgery; dead bone caused by lifting of the periosteum or trauma; collapsed lung tissue; other dead tissue produced by burns, trauma, and chemical injury; blocked secretions and drainage, for example, middle ear infections, boils, and pyelonephritis.

Innate Immunity

The surfaces of the body (skin, mucous membranes) provide a barrier against infection. These physical barriers are reinforced by secretions. If these barriers are penetrated, a wide variety of immune mechanisms utilizing proteins and cells act to control and eradicate infection. These immune mechanisms are targeted by molecular recognition of the microorganism. Microorganisms are sufficiently different from mammalian tissues that a small range of molecules is sufficient to recognize almost any microorganism and not interact with normal self. This finite range of molecules that recognize microorganisms is encoded in the mammalian genome and accounts for <100 of the 25,000 or so total genes. The immune mechanisms that are targeted by these molecules are classified as nonadaptive (or innate) immunity.

Adaptive (Specific) Immunity

There is a second category of immune mechanisms that is not effective when a new microorganism is first encountered but which over a period of a week or two adapts to provide specific defense against that particular microorganism. This specific defense system employs a variety of effector mechanisms which alone and more usually by enhancing nonadaptive immune mechanisms, efficiently control almost all infections. This is called adaptive (or specific) immunity and relies on cells called T and B, lymphocytes. These lymphocytes recognize microorganisms by the T cell receptor and the B cell receptor, respectively. The molecular part of the microorganism that these receptors bind to is called antigen and so they are sometimes called antigen specific receptors.

Main Sources of Infectious Disease

Many bacteria have medical importance, and they can cause devastation in countries like Africa, such as *Salmonella*, but have only minor clinical importance in the West. Not all bacteria are bad; in fact, pure pathogens make up only a tiny number of bacterial species, although many bacteria can act as pathogens if the host becomes immunocompromised. Bacteria are essential for life and of all the cells in the body only 10% belong to the body, the overwhelming majority of the rest are bacteria, residing on surfaces such as skin, gut, and mouth. In fact, the mouth can have a greater concentration of bacteria than the gut or in feces. This normal flora helps by, amongst other things, occupying sites pathogens would if they got the chance and there is competition between different bacterial species to reside on you as much as there is competition between bacteria and the host.

What Is a Bacterium?

Bacteria are living organisms that are called prokaryotes because they lack a cell nucleus. They all contain DNA and RNA, but the lack of a distinct nucleus means transcription and translation can occur concomitantly. Medically, it is important to understand the structure of a bacterium, particularly its external structure because this is the part of the organism most in contact with the host so it protects the bacterium (e.g., capsules can prevent

some white blood cells called phagocytes from engulfing the bacterium), but it can also warn the host of an “intruder” (e.g., lipopolysaccharide is extremely proinflammatory at even tiny concentrations). Lastly, bacterial structure, particularly the cell wall, can reveal a mountain of information on what genus and species the bacterium is. Another key feature is that bacteria generally divide very rapidly; in test-tubes, this generation time can be once every 20 min (somewhat slower in vivo), although there are exceptions such as some mycobacterial species such as *M. tuberculosis* divide once a day. This compares with a division rate of about once every 6 h for a B cell and a generation for humans is 25 years. This means bacteria can evolve much more quickly than the host and it can also acquire resistance against drugs very quickly (sometimes through taking up extra bits of DNA called plasmids). This is why effective, controlled use of antibiotics is so important. To put this in context this means, in theory, one bacterium can become 10,000,000,000 after 12 h and every hour of delay means that there could be 10× more bacteria than before. This is why rapid treatment of aggressive infections is essential.

Bacteria come in many shapes and their shape can be used to help identify them. In 1884, a Danish boffin called Hans Christian Gram developed a technique using dyes that could differentiate between certain types of bacteria; this is the Gram’s stain and historically has been very important in medicine. This is because it is speedy and economical. Although not infallible, it is very important medically because it can reveal what the bacterial species is, frequently without culturing the bug, by directly staining the biopsy or smear, etc. and is able to differentiate at least four different types of bacteria: *Gram-positive or Gram-negative rods or cocci (round)*. It works by first adding crystal violet as a dye. This is then fixed by iodine. Addition of 95% ethanol or acetone allows the crystal violet-iodine complexes to wash away from Gram-negative bacteria but they get trapped in the thick, dehydrated peptidoglycan of the Gram-positive bacteria. Lastly, a counterstain is added to visualize the Gram-negative bacteria. The whole process takes less than 5 min.

Some bacteria fail to be detected by Gram staining; this may be because, for instance, they lack *peptidoglycan* (*Mycoplasma*) or have a complex cell wall (*Mycobacteria*). Under these circumstances different staining is required, e.g., Ziehls-Neelsen stain for acid-fast mycobacteria.

What Infections Are Caused by Bacteria?

Many previously destructive diseases such as syphilis, tuberculosis, tetanus, and diphtheria are now well controlled in the West due to improvements in public health, vaccination, and antimicrobial treatment. Elsewhere in the world they are a tragic burden that can stifle economic and social development. Some infections likely to be encountered in the West include those caused by: *Staphylococci*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, β hemolytic group A streptococci (*Streptococcus pyogenes* is the beast) cause many of the most severe infections, group B are usually problematic in new-born babies. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* causes tuberculosis, Clostridia, which include: gram-positive spore-forming anaerobic rods. *C. perfringens* – gas gangrene: *C. difficile* – pseudomembranous colitis. *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* – aerobic Gram-negative opportunist, particularly in infections in burns. The list goes on and on: *E. coli* (urinary tract infection, gut); *Campylobacter jejuni* (gut); *Salmonella*; etc.

What Is a Virus?

Viruses are submicroscopic, obligate intracellular parasites. They have no metabolic activity outside the host cell and thus cannot be considered to be “alive.” At the most basic level, a virus particle (virion) consists of a nucleic acid genome surrounded by a protein shell, which may also be surrounded by a membranous envelope. Virions cannot themselves “grow” or undergo division (as bacteria can) but are produced by assembly of preformed components.

Classification of Viruses

Viruses can be classified according to their genomes. These genomes can be more varied than those seen in the entire bacterial, plant, or animal kingdom. Viral nucleic acid can be RNA or DNA; single stranded (ss) or double stranded

(ds); negative (–), positive (+), or ambisense (+/–); linear circular or segmented. Examples of diseases caused by viruses include: herpes simplex virus, adenovirus, parvovirus, reoviruses, bluetongue, hepatitis C, polio, yellow fever, influenza, ebola, measles, human immunodeficiency virus, human T cell lymphotropic virus type 1, and hepatitis B.

Virus Structure

The viral genome is wrapped up in a coat made up of multiple copies of a small number of species of protein molecules. Virus particles often form regular geometric shapes, such as helices or icosahedra. There are hundreds of virus structures.

Replication of Viruses

Viruses can replicate only when they infect a susceptible host cell. Following attachment and entry into the cell, the components of the capsid are partially disassembled and the virus begins to direct the cell to synthesize viral components. During this “eclipse” phase, where these new components are being synthesized, infectious virus cannot be recovered. Once the viral genome has been replicated and the viral proteins synthesized, new virus can be assembled. These new viruses may be released from the cell by budding or by cell lysis. The time taken for release of new infectious virus can range from minutes in the case of some viruses (foot and mouth) to several days.

For more detailed information, see (Janeway et al. 2005).

Cross-References

► [Immune Function](#)

References and Readings

Janeway, C. A., Travers, P., Walport, M., & Shlomchik, M. J. (2005). *Immunobiology: The immune system in health and disease* (6th ed.). New York: Garland Science.

Inferral Statistical Testing

▶ Hypothesis Testing

Inferral Statistics

▶ Statistical Inference

Infertility

▶ Surrogacy

Infertility and Assisted Reproduction: Psychosocial Aspects

Pamela A. Geller¹, Alexandra Nelson² and Alison Hartman³

¹Department of Psychology, Drexel University; Drexel University College of Medicine, Philadelphia, PA, USA

²Child and Family Psychological Services/Integrated Behavioral Associates, Weymouth, MA, USA

³Department of Psychology, Drexel University, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Synonyms

Assisted reproductive technology (ART); In vitro fertilization; Infertility-related stress; Intrauterine insemination; Involuntary childlessness; IUI; IVF

Definition

Infertility is defined as the inability to become pregnant with regular intercourse without use of contraception within 1 year for women up to age 35 and within 6 months for women over 35.

“Infertility” is not synonymous with “sterility” (i.e., the physically or medically diagnosed inability to become pregnant). Couples with diagnosed infertility may become pregnant spontaneously or with assistance of fertility treatments. Such treatments range from oral or injectable medication to more advanced interventions such as intrauterine insemination (IUI) or assisted reproductive technologies (ART) involving the handling of both sperm and egg, such as in vitro fertilization (IVF). Fertility treatments also may involve third-party reproductive options including the use of donor gametes or embryos as well as surrogates. The term “involuntary childlessness” may be used in reference to individuals or couples with infertility who do not achieve pregnancy or live-birth delivery. Psychosocial aspects refer to the stressors (i.e., psychological, social, and structural) and consequences associated with infertility and assisted reproduction.

The authors wish to acknowledge that the scope of this entry did not include the unique and compounding constellation of psychosocial stressors affecting trans men, trans women, non-binary and gender nonconforming people who experience the challenges of infertility. This limitation is reflective of the current state of the research literature where there is limited exploration of the infertility-related experiences of these populations.

Description

Background and Epidemiology

Infertility is a fairly common condition that affects at least 50 million couples worldwide. In the USA, about 6% of married women of reproductive age experience infertility, and 12% of women experience more broadly defined “impaired fecundity,” which includes difficulties becoming pregnant or carrying a pregnancy to term. In the USA, 10–15% of couples experience infertility, compared with up to 25% in developing countries. Risk for infertility increases with age, particularly among women over 35 years. Rates vary with sociodemographic characteristics, with greater risk among women who have not completed

college and as much as a twofold risk in Black compared to White women, adjusting for socioeconomic status. Couples may experience “primary infertility” during their first attempt to conceive or “secondary infertility” during attempts to conceive subsequent to prior successful conception. Secondary infertility is more common, with 35% of couples unable to have a second child and approximately 70% of women with infertility having been pregnant at least once.

Infertility has numerous causes, including factors attributed to either partner, a combination of factors, or factors that are medically unexplained or idiopathic. Common causes of female factor infertility include polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS), anovulation, tubal damage, endometriosis, uterine fibroids, pelvic adhesions, and history of cancer or sexually transmitted infection (STI). Male factor causes of infertility can include low sperm count or motility, varicocele, and history of STI. A number of lifestyle factors can contribute to infertility, including obesity/elevated BMI, smoking, alcohol use, psychological stress, poor sleep, and generally poor health/wellness. Being underweight can also underlie infertility, as in the case of anovulation secondary to anorexia nervosa in women. A history of psychological distress, such as depressive disorders, has been implicated in infertility as well. Causes of infertility are roughly equally distributed among female factors, male factors, and multifactorial and unknown causes.

Numerous medical interventions have been developed to assist couples with infertility to achieve pregnancy. Worldwide, approximately 40 million individuals receive fertility-related medical care. In the USA, about 12% of women receive at least one type of fertility-related medical service in their lifetimes, and about 8% receive medical help to become pregnant in their lifetimes. Available treatments vary by case and include surgeries to repair tubal damage, hormonal treatments to stimulate ovulation, IUI, and ART procedures such as IVF and intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI). The use of ART has doubled in the past decade; as of 2019, approximately 1.7% of all infants born in the USA were conceived using ART. Third-party

reproductive options, including gamete donation or use of gestational carriers, also are available. Fertility treatments vary considerably in their procedures, costs, time investment, and many other aspects. Many fertility patients trial multiple treatments over time, potentially advancing to more intensive treatments (e.g., IVF) if early attempts (e.g., ovulation stimulation medications) are not successful. Women are typically the identified patients in fertility treatment, regardless of a couple’s cause of infertility. Treatments also may be utilized by women without infertility who require medical assistance to become pregnant in the absence of a male reproductive partner.

Psychosocial Stressors

The experiences of infertility and fertility treatment are fraught with psychosocial stressors that contribute to distress. Because many women with infertility pursue medical intervention, and because research studies utilize varying sampling and assessment methodologies at widely varying time points during the infertility experience, it is challenging to parse out distress caused by infertility from that caused by fertility treatment. Below, the psychosocial stressors and consequences of both infertility and its treatment are discussed.

Infertility is often devastating to individuals and couples. According to a 2013 Gallup poll, over 90% of USA adults report that they intend to become parents at some point in their lifetimes (Newport and Wilke 2013). Receiving a diagnosis of infertility therefore significantly threatens hopes and expectations regarding parenthood and identity. Reactions often include shock, anxiety, helplessness, hopelessness, and shame or self-blame (e.g., over attributions of infertility, such as contraceptive choices, prior elective abortions, or STIs). Further, individuals may confront challenging decisions regarding resolving their infertility, including whether to pursue (or continue) fertility treatments, consider adoption, or remain childless. Decisions may also involve how and when to advance to more costly but potentially more effective interventions, consideration of preimplantation genetic screening or diagnostics to increase likelihood of successful

treatment outcome, and consideration of the possible utility of donor gametes to achieve success. Cultural and religious factors may influence and complicate these decisions.

Medical and procedural aspects of fertility treatments themselves present myriad challenges. Many treatment options are time-intensive and physically invasive. For example, treatments may include painful and inconvenient injectable hormone medications associated with unpleasant side effects such as mood swings. Women receiving ART treatments must visit their physician several times per week and routinely undergo blood work and invasive transvaginal ultrasounds. ART protocols require surgical procedures to retrieve eggs and implant embryos. Even when pursuing less complex fertility treatments, couples may be required to adhere to carefully timed intercourse, which can be difficult and emotionally taxing for both partners. Awaiting results of pregnancy testing following fertility treatments can be extremely stressful and anxiety provoking. The rate of treatment failure is high, with only about 29% of ART treatments resulting in pregnancy. Pregnancies following infertility are then often laden with anxiety and distress related to the threat of or actual miscarriage, which occurs in about 18% of ART pregnancies. For a subset of fertility patients, recurrent miscarriage further compounds grief and distress. Treatment success is impacted by patient factors including patient age, diagnosis, and response to ovarian stimulation. Conception using ART is associated with increased risk for obstetric and perinatal complications related to the higher incidence of multiple gestations.

Fertility treatments, particularly ART, are extremely expensive, and low success rates often necessitate multiple treatment cycles to achieve a pregnancy. In the USA, costs of fertility treatment range from roughly \$1,000 for medication treatments and IUI to thousands of dollars for more advanced treatments such as IVF (~\$12,000 for one cycle) and IVF with donor gametes (~\$28,000 for one cycle); costs per successful outcome are much higher due to adjustments for low success rates. Further, increased out-of-pocket expense has not been associated with higher treatment

success (Wu et al. 2014). Some nations subsidize the cost of fertility treatments, but in the USA, only 15 states currently require at least partial coverage for fertility-related medical appointments or treatments, and Medicaid insurance does not provide any such coverage. The high cost of IVF has been reported as the number one barrier to treatment.

Challenges of infertility are compounded by specific socioeconomic and sociodemographic factors. Although non-Caucasians are most affected by infertility, the majority of individuals receiving fertility treatment in the USA are Caucasian and come from socioeconomically advantaged backgrounds. Factors likely contributing to this disparity include prohibitive treatment costs and access to insurance, as well as complex challenges interacting with the healthcare system and culture-specific concerns about using reproductive technologies.

Infertility is considered stigmatizing in cultures across the world, including in the USA. Parenthood often is viewed as a primary adult role, and many women may internalize negative social appraisals of childlessness as selfish, unnatural, unfeminine, and inadequate, even when childlessness is involuntary. Women with infertility may believe that their bodies have failed them and may feel alienated and isolated from peers who are pregnant or have children. Women may encounter insensitive or unsupportive feedback from their social environment, which can increase experience of stigmatization and distress. Many women choose to keep their infertility private and experience difficulties discussing their infertility experiences with others, including close friends and family; as such, infertility can lead to profound feelings of distress, hopelessness, and loneliness.

Among women seeking fertility treatment for reasons other than infertility, other stressors arise. These individuals may include single women, women in nonheterosexual couples, and women who anticipate future threats to their fertility (e.g., due to cancer treatments or older age), who may choose to freeze eggs or embryos. While medical interventions to facilitate such family building are increasingly common, stigma continues to

surround the choice to raise children in non-traditional family arrangements. Additionally, in the absence of a male reproductive partner, women face decision-making regarding selection of a sperm donor (i.e., known or anonymous donor; medical and psychosocial characteristics of donor) and whether and how to disclose the child's paternity to family, friends, acquaintances, and the child. Less information is available about the psychosocial experiences of these populations, because the vast majority of studies examine heterosexual samples with infertility. As these populations are likely to encounter uniquely stressful experiences, especially with regard to stigma that they might encounter from friends, family, and even medical professionals, careful attention from both the research and clinical communities is warranted.

Psychosocial Consequences of Infertility and Fertility Treatment

Individuals with infertility are at increased risk for emotional distress and psychiatric morbidity. Infertility-related stress is pervasive, relating to many of the stressors discussed above and deriving from intimate relationship strain, impact of infertility on sexual functioning, social relationship strain, and the profound conflicts surrounding potential childlessness and need for parenthood. Though men and women are affected, research has consistently revealed that women typically experience higher infertility-related stress than men. Women consistently place greater emphasis and importance on having children compared to men, are more likely to tie their fertility to personal identity or perceptions of failure, and are less open to the possibility of remaining childless when confronting infertility. Despite the disproportionate impact of infertility-related stress on women, infertility-related stress appears to covary between both members of the same couple, suggesting that its burden is often shared.

Mood and anxiety symptoms and disorders are elevated among individuals with infertility. Research has consistently demonstrated a link between infertility-related stress and psychological adjustment. As many as 40.2% of women

diagnosed with infertility may reach criteria for a psychiatric disorder (Chen et al. 2004). Women with infertility have higher anxiety symptomatology as well as higher rates of generalized anxiety disorder (GAD) (King 2003). Anxiety is thought to stem from uncertainty related to fertility status and treatment outcome, which can persist chronically, as couples may pursue fertility treatment or maintain hope for a spontaneous pregnancy for many years. Depressive symptomatology and disorders, including suicidal ideation and behaviors, are also elevated among individuals with infertility, with higher rates of diagnosable depressive disorders compared to the general population (e.g., Holley et al. 2015). Depression may prevent some women from seeking treatment and may also impact engagement in activities that might combat the stress of infertility. For some, fertility treatment may be implicated in the genesis or exacerbation of depression, with many studies reporting that women were psychologically well adjusted upon entering treatment but became significantly depressed during and after treatment (Eugster and Vingerhoets 1999). Unsuccessful treatment can increase women's distress, and while some adjust over time, some women may experience increasingly severe or persistent negative emotions for decades (Verhaak et al. 2007). Grief and complicated bereavement may also occur following unsuccessful treatment. The occasional incidence of psychiatric events in response to fertility treatment has been reported, which may be partly due to interactions with hormonal treatments; uncommonly, these can include severe reactions such as psychotic experiences, with greater risk among women with past psychiatric histories.

Infertility can have a profound impact on partner relationships. Stressors relevant to intimate relationships, such as blaming oneself or one's partner for causing the fertility problem, discordant stress responses to infertility, sexual dissatisfaction and low sexual self-esteem, and discordant opinions on whether to start or continue treatment can produce significant strain. Both women and men may be deeply affected, and there is evidence that infertility is associated with higher odds of divorce or end of cohabitation (Kjaer et al. 2014).

Infertility can also strain social relationships. Given the private nature of infertility described above, individuals may have difficulty communicating with others about their experiences. Both disclosure and nondisclosure can be distressing; women who have difficulty communicating about their infertility tend to experience greater stress and distress, but communication may also intensify feelings of distress or may be met with stigmatizing or unsupportive responses. Women may feel distanced from those with children, as it may be difficult to spend time with others who are experiencing parenthood. This may result in isolation from friends and family, posing barriers to accessing social support that may otherwise buffer against the deleterious effects of infertility-related stress.

Couples who achieve a successful outcome after fertility treatment generally experience remission of distress experienced during infertility and treatment. However, it is well documented that emotional burden, psychological distress, and difficulty coping are among the most common reasons for couples choosing to drop out of fertility treatment without achieving a successful outcome, even when controlling for the influences of treatment prognosis and financial constraints (i.e., Verberg et al. 2008). For couples making this choice, reported motivation to relieve emotional burdens of fertility treatment implies that discontinuing treatment might relieve some distress, releasing them from a painful emotional cycle of anxiety, hope, disappointment, and grief. However, this decision may also mark the painful loss of hope to become a biological parent and may be accompanied by grief, anger, and a sense of failure.

Psychological Interventions for Infertility-Related Distress

A number of psychological interventions have been developed for women and couples with infertility, with fairly strong empirical support for their efficacy. Goals for these interventions often are to help women manage the emotional challenges of fertility treatment, although some have evaluated their utility in bolstering pregnancy rates. A recent meta-analysis found

substantial evidence that CBT approaches for women and couples experiencing infertility may be efficacious in both reducing psychological distress and improving pregnancy rates (Frederiksen et al. 2015). Efficacious treatments often incorporate psychoeducation, stress management, communication skills training, cognitive approaches to address attributions for infertility, and other coping strategies. Sexual functioning and adherence to timed sexual intercourse also may be addressed. Many interventions are group-based, although individual and couples' counseling are also common. General support groups are commonly utilized, having long been considered a foundational resource for women experiencing the isolating and stigmatizing effects of infertility. Social support and communication with others about infertility-related experiences are associated with reduced stress and emotional distress as well as reduced perceptions of stigma. Group psychotherapy has shown more credible and robust results than individual and single-couple interventions (Frederiksen et al. 2015). Psychological interventions have been most efficacious in treating affective variables like anxiety and depression, and have less support for improving relationship functioning (Boivin 2003).

Recently, third wave approaches, including Acceptance and Commitment Therapy, have been utilized to treat women and couples with infertility with promising results. Mind-body approaches and mindfulness-based cognitive therapy focusing primarily on eliciting the relaxation response and increasing present-focused thought and attention in conjunction with traditional CBT, have shown promising psychological and fertility-related outcomes (Domar et al. 2011). These approaches may also help improve fertility treatment adherence and retention.

Psychosocial Support and Technology

Despite the availability and efficacy of these interventions, they are consistently underutilized. This may be due to the perceptions that these treatments are too time-consuming, expensive, or invasive or that distress does not warrant professional intervention (Boivin 2003). This indicates a need to explore alternative supports that may be

more consistent with the preferences of the population.

A well-documented trend includes women's increasing reliance on the Internet and social media as resources for emotional and informational support related to infertility. Within the infertility population, websites, blogs, and Facebook groups are popular, particularly among women. They provide opportunities to access support at any hour of the day, from the convenience of one's home and in an anonymous manner without the stigma or discomfort of speaking to others directly. These resources are also readily available at no cost, making them an attractive option for women who cannot afford in-person psychosocial care. Reading online content, including interactive discussions on online platforms, shares qualities with bibliotherapy, while written contributions to such discussions may share some characteristics with written emotional expression as well as engagement with face-to-face support.

A growing body of research regarding psychosocial impact of web-based support reflects several unique and generally positive features, including reduced isolation, normalization of emotional experiences, improved fertility-related knowledge and decision-making, and improvements in the partner relationship due to decreased burden on the spouse for support. However, the quality of web-based resources is often questionable, and the vast majority of websites addressing fertility-related information do not adhere to proposed quality standards; furthermore, in websites that enable user contributions, there is a very real possibility for exposure to misinformation and unsupported, anecdotal information. Research has revealed a small potential for negative emotions resulting from use of web-based resources and communication, including painful reactions to hearing others' positive or negative fertility-related news, as well as the potential for disinhibited, harsh communication within the community. While there has been a notable increase in research exploring the effects of Internet-mediated support to inform patients, medical providers, and administrators, meta-analyses and comprehensive reviews

summarizing existing data are needed to guide future development of resources to best meet the needs of the population in managing the psychosocial aspects of infertility.

Cross-References

- [In Vitro Fertilization](#)
- [Internet-Based Interventions](#)

References and Further Reading

- Boivin, J. (2003). A review of psychosocial interventions in infertility. *Social Science & Medicine*, 57(12), 2325–2341.
- Chen, T. H., Chang, S. P., Tsai, C. F., & Juang, K. D. (2004). Prevalence of depressive and anxiety disorders in an assisted reproductive technique clinic. *Human Reproduction*, 19(10), 2313–2318.
- Domar, A. D., Rooney, K. L., Wiegand, B., Orav, E. J., Alper, M. M., Berger, B. M., & Nikolovski, J. (2011). Impact of a group mind/body intervention on pregnancy rates in IVF patients. *Fertility and Sterility*, 95(7), 2269–2273.
- Eugster, A., & Vingerhoets, A. J. (1999). Psychological aspects of in vitro fertilization: A review. *Social Science & Medicine*, 48(5), 575–589.
- Frederiksen, Y., Farver-Vestergaard, L., Skovgård, N. G., Ingerslev, H. J., & Zachariae, R. (2015). Efficacy of psychosocial interventions for psychological and pregnancy outcomes in infertile women and men: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *British Medical Journal Open*, 5, e006592.
- Holley, S. R., Pasch, L. A., Bleil, M. E., Gregorich, S., Katz, P. K., & Adler, N. E. (2015). Prevalence and predictors of major depressive disorder for fertility treatment patients and their partners. *Fertility and Sterility*, 103(5), 1332–1339.
- King, R. B. (2003). Subfertility and anxiety in a nationally representative sample. *Social Science & Medicine*, 56(4), 739–751.
- Kjaer, T., Albieri, V., Jensen, A., Kjaer, S. K., Johansen, C., & Dalton, S. O. (2014). Divorce or end of cohabitation among Danish women evaluated for fertility problems. *Acta Obstetrica et Gynecologica Scandinavica*, 93(3), 269–276.
- Newport, F., & Wilke, J. (2013). Desire for children still norm in US. Gallup News. Retrieved from <http://news.gallup.com/poll/164618/desire-children-norm.aspx>.
- Verberg, M. F. G., Eijkemans, M. J. C., Heijnen, E. M. E. W., Broekmans, F. J., De Klerk, C., Fauser, B. C. J. M., & Macklon, N. S. (2008). Why do couples drop-out from IVF treatment? A prospective cohort study. *Human Reproduction*, 23(9), 2050–2055.

- Verhaak, C. M., Smeenk, J. M., Evers, A. W., Kremer, J. A., Kraaijmaat, F. W., & Braat, D. D. (2007). Women's emotional adjustment to IVF: A systematic review of 25 years of research (review). *Human Reproduction Update*, 13(1), 27–36.
- Wu, A. K., Odisho, A. Y., Washington, S. L., Katz, P. P., & Smith, J. F. (2014). Out-of-pocket fertility patient expense: Data from a multicenter prospective infertility cohort. *The Journal of Urology*, 191(2), 427–432.

Infertility-Related Stress

► Infertility and Assisted Reproduction: Psychosocial Aspects

Inflammation

Nicolas Rohleder and Jutta M. Wolf
Department of Psychology, Brandeis University,
Waltham, MA, USA

Definition

The term “inflammation” is derived from the Latin *inflammare* which translates to “to set on fire.” Inflammation as a process is a component of the overall immune response against invading pathogens and/or tissue damage. A local inflammatory response at a site of a wound and/or infection is characterized by the classical symptoms *calor* (heat), *rubor* (redness), *dolor* (pain), *tumor* (swelling), and *functio laesa* (loss of function). These symptoms are the result of the inflammatory response system being activated in the affected tissue. More specifically, the inflammatory response is started by local resident cells of the innate immune system, which secrete inflammatory mediators and other effector substances. These substances induce vasodilation (dilation of the blood vessels), which allows increased blood flow to the affected area and also causes rubor and calor. Related to this, an increased permeability of the blood vessel walls allows plasma exudation (transfer of blood plasma) into the affected tissue,

which accounts for the swelling. Circulating immune cells are attracted to the affected site through chemotaxis and adhesion molecules (cells are attracted by chemical signals on the surface of cells lining the blood vessels), and leave the blood vessel to enter the affected tissue and help fight infection or contribute to wound healing. Pain is a result of the same inflammatory cells releasing bradykinin (a substance that lowers pain thresholds), while loss of function is a non-specific consequence of local inflammation.

Description

Different Forms of Inflammation

Depending on the efficiency of the inflammatory machinery in relation to the extent and virulence of the invading pathogen, this response might be contained and resolved, and thus remains local, or it might spread to the rest of the body, thereby initiating a systemic inflammatory response. One form of systemic inflammation is sepsis, which is characterized by hyper amplification of inflammatory processes with deleterious effects on the organism, including organ failure and/or death (Cinel and Opal 2009).

Another, more recently described form of systemic inflammation is chronic low-grade inflammation (Danesh 1999). This phenomenon, also described as low-grade systemic inflammation, is characterized by increases in concentrations of the same plasma mediators that signal and contribute to local and other forms of systemic inflammation, that is, mainly interleukin-6 (IL-6) and C-reactive protein (CRP). However, concentrations are markedly lower than those measured, for example, in sepsis, but still increased in comparison to the non-inflamed state of a young and healthy organism.

Age, Lifestyle, and Inflammation

An important characteristic of chronic low-grade inflammation is its association with age. Although it is currently unclear whether increasing concentrations of inflammatory mediators are a consequence of the aging process per se, there is compelling evidence that as organisms age, their

plasma concentrations of IL-6 and CRP increase slowly, but steadily (Ershler 1993). Several lifestyle factors have been found associated with low-grade inflammation, the most important of which appear to be physical inactivity, nutrition, and obesity as a consequence of both. Adipose tissue is an important source of inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-6, and increased presence of adipose tissue is associated with increased plasma concentrations of inflammatory mediators (Yudkin et al. 2000). Furthermore, certain diets, such as typical high fat, high carbohydrate “western” diets, have been associated with low-grade inflammation, while diets with high contents of omega-3 fatty acids, fruits, vegetables, and nuts, as well as typical “Asian” diets seem to be anti-inflammatory (Giugliano et al. 2006). Another behavioral or lifestyle factor is tobacco smoking, which is associated with increased plasma concentrations of inflammatory mediators (Bazzano et al. 2003).

Long-Term Consequences of Inflammation

While sepsis is acutely life-threatening, one of the most important and disadvantageous forms of inflammation in terms of long-term consequences is probably chronic low-grade inflammation. There is now strong evidence pointing to a central role of low-grade inflammation in many age-related diseases such as cardiovascular disease, insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes, osteoporosis, and cancer (see Ershler 1993). Several prospective studies have found that increased concentrations of IL-6 and CRP in older adults are a strong predictor of morbidity and all-cause mortality (Ridker et al. 1997; Ferrucci et al. 1999; Bruunsgaard et al. 2003). Many of the pathways between low-grade inflammation and age-related diseases are becoming better understood now. Atherosclerosis, the pathophysiological process underlying heart disease and strokes, has been shown to be essentially a local inflammatory response in artery walls, and as such can be stimulated more easily and strongly in individuals with higher plasma concentrations of inflammatory mediators. Similarly, the process underlying insulin resistance is becoming more and more understood, and inflammatory mediators seem to

play an important role in the ability of target cells to understand insulin signals.

Inflammation in Behavioral Medicine

In summary, chronic low-grade inflammation can be an important process to consider for researchers and practitioners in behavioral medicine, as inflammation is prospectively related with some of the most important diseases of later life, and because inflammation is under the control of the central nervous system. Several pathways link states of the central nervous system with peripheral inflammation. Most notably, recent research has shown that low-grade inflammation is more pronounced in individuals suffering from chronic stress, depression, and posttraumatic stress disorder (e.g., Ford and Erlinger 2004; Miller and Blackwell 2006). Similarly, acute stress has been shown to induce short-term increases in plasma inflammatory mediators (Steptoe et al. 2007). Recent research indicates that increased inflammatory mediators in depression are in part mediated by negative changes in health behaviors, most notably by reduced physical activity, but the same research also shows that a large proportion of this association must be explained by additional factors (Hamer et al. 2009). Typical candidates are the stress systems hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis and autonomic nervous system (ANS), which show altered basal activity in many stress-related diseases, including depression and PTSD, and which are important regulators of inflammatory activity. Importantly, the ability of the inflammatory system to understand these stress systems’ signaling changes after acute and chronic stress, and alterations in the inflammatory system’s sensitivity to these signals, can help explain long-term health effects (for a summary see Raison and Miller 2003; Rohleder et al. 2010).

In addition to this efferent CNS-to-periphery pathway, inflammatory mediators also send signals to the CNS, leading to a set of symptoms summarized as sickness behavior. These symptoms include affective effects, most notably depressive symptoms and fatigue, but also alterations in sleep and cognition (Dantzer et al. 2008). Sickness behavior is strongest in the context of

acute infection, cytokine therapy, and sepsis, but evidence is accumulating in support of the assumption that low-grade inflammation is sufficient to induce depressive symptoms, cognitive decline, and other components of sickness behavior, albeit less pronounced (see, e.g., Raison et al. 2006; Alley et al. 2008).

Cross-References

- Autonomic Balance
- Depression
- Psychoneuroimmunology
- Stress

References and Readings

- Alley, D. E., Crimmins, E. M., Karlamangla, A., Hu, P., & Seeman, T. E. (2008). Inflammation and rate of cognitive change in high-functioning older adults. *The Journals of Gerontology. Series A, Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*, 63(1), 50–55.
- Bazzano, L. A., He, J., Muntner, P., Vupputuri, S., & Whelton, P. K. (2003). Relationship between cigarette smoking and novel risk factors for cardiovascular disease in the United States. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 138(11), 891–897.
- Brunnsgaard, H., Ladelund, S., Pedersen, A. N., Schroll, M., Jorgensen, T., & Pedersen, B. K. (2003). Predicting death from tumour necrosis factor- α and interleukin-6 in 80-year-old people. *Clinical and Experimental Immunology*, 132(1), 24–31.
- Cinel, I., & Opal, S. M. (2009). Molecular biology of inflammation and sepsis: a primer. *Critical Care Medicine*, 37(1), 291–304.
- Danesh, J. (1999). Smoldering arteries? Low-grade inflammation and coronary heart disease. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 282(22), 2169–2171.
- Dantzer, R., O'Connor, J. C., Freund, G. G., Johnson, R. W., & Kelley, K. W. (2008). From inflammation to sickness and depression: When the immune system subjugates the brain. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 9(1), 46–56.
- Ershler, W. B. (1993). Interleukin-6: A cytokine for gerontologists. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 41(2), 176–181.
- Ferrucci, L., Harris, T. B., Guralnik, J. M., Tracy, R. P., Corti, M. C., Cohen, H. J., et al. (1999). Serum IL-6 level and the development of disability in older persons. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 47(6), 639–646.
- Ford, D. E., & Erlinger, T. P. (2004). Depression and C-reactive protein in US adults: Data from the Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 164(9), 1010–1014.
- Giugliano, D., Ceriello, A., & Esposito, K. (2006). The effects of diet on inflammation: Emphasis on the metabolic syndrome. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 48(4), 677–685.
- Hamer, M., Molloy, G. J., de Oliveira, C., & Demakakos, P. (2009). Persistent depressive symptomatology and inflammation: To what extent do health behaviours and weight control mediate this relationship? *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 23(4), 413–418.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Christian, L., Preston, H., Houts, C. R., Malarkey, W. B., Emery, C. F., et al. (2010). Stress, inflammation, and yoga practice. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 72(2), 113–121.
- Miller, G. E., & Blackwell, E. (2006). Turning up the heat: Inflammation as a mechanism linking chronic stress, depression, and heart disease. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 15(6), 269–272.
- Pace, T. W., Negi, L. T., Adame, D. D., Cole, S. P., Sivilli, T. I., Brown, T. D., et al. (2009). Effect of compassion meditation on neuroendocrine, innate immune and behavioral responses to psychosocial stress. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 34(1), 87–98.
- Raison, C. L., Capuron, L., & Miller, A. H. (2006). Cytokines sing the blues: Inflammation and the pathogenesis of depression. *Trends in Immunology*, 27(1), 24–31.
- Raison, C. L., & Miller, A. H. (2003). When not enough is too much: The role of insufficient glucocorticoid signaling in the pathophysiology of stress-related disorders. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 160(9), 1554–1565.
- Ridker, P. M., Cushman, M., Stampfer, M. J., Tracy, R. P., & Hennekens, C. H. (1997). Inflammation, aspirin, and the risk of cardiovascular disease in apparently healthy men. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 336(14), 973–979.
- Rohleder, N., Wolf, J. M., & Wolf, O. T. (2010). Glucocorticoid sensitivity of cognitive and inflammatory processes in depression and posttraumatic stress disorder. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 35(1), 104–114.
- Steptoe, A., Hamer, M., & Chida, Y. (2007). The effects of acute psychological stress on circulating inflammatory factors in humans: A review and meta-analysis. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 21(7), 901–912.
- Yudkin, J. S., Kumari, M., Humphries, S. E., & Mohamed-Ali, V. (2000). Inflammation, obesity, stress and coronary heart disease: Is interleukin-6 the link? *Atherosclerosis*, 148(2), 209–214.

Inflammation-Associated Depression

- Sickness Behavior

Inflammatory Bowel Disease

Yukari Tanaka and Shin Fukudo
Department of Behavioral Medicine, School
of Medicine, Tohoku University Graduate,
Seiryō-machi, Aoba-ku, Sendai, Japan

Synonyms

Colitis

Definition

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) is a specific group of chronic inflammatory conditions of the intestine. IBD consists of the two major diseases: ulcerative colitis (UC) and Crohn's disease (CD). UC causes inflammation in the rectum, colon, and infrequently the terminal ileum. CD can involve any part of the gastrointestinal tract from the mouth to the anus and particularly affects the ileum and/or the colon. IBD most commonly begins during adolescence and early adulthood.

Description

Causes

The cause of IBD is not clearly known, but these diseases are thought to be due to an autoimmune process that has been triggered by unknown factors or agents, such as genetic predisposition, infection of microorganisms, and/or environmental factors. As a result of the ulcers and inflammatory reaction of the mucosal layer of the small intestine or the colon, the intestinal wall is damaged leading to bloody diarrhea and abdominal pain. In recent studies, psychosocial stress and/or psychiatric comorbidity unlikely cause(s) IBD. However, IBD itself evokes stress, and evoked stress response induces some psychiatric comorbidities including anxiety disorders, depressive disorders, or somatoform disorders.

Signs and Symptoms

Symptoms may range from mild to severe: abdominal pain and tenesmus, bloody diarrhea, abnormal bowel movement, fever, anemia, and appetite and weight loss. IBD is characterized by recurring episodes of inflammation of the bowel; thus, patients will go through periods in which the disease flares up and causes symptoms. These periods should be followed by remission, in which symptoms disappear or decrease. UC often appears as the most severe inflammation in the rectum, which may cause frequent diarrhea and bleeding. Inflammation and ulceration in UC are primarily limited to the mucosa and the submucosa. By contrast, the inflammation of the Crohn's disease is transmural and sometimes results in intestinal obstruction, deep ulcers, microperforations, and fistulas. Long-standing IBD is also a risk factor of developing colorectal cancer.

Diagnosis

Diagnosis can be made endoscopically or radiologically. UC almost always involves the rectum and the lower left colon. Endoscopic findings reveal ulcers, edema, erythema and friability of the mucosa, and loss of the vascular pattern. Crypt abscess is a more typical histologic finding in the colonic mucosa of active UC. Radiological findings are loss of the normal mucosal pattern and, with more extensive colorectal inflammation, absent haustration. Endoscopic findings in Crohn's disease are deeper ulcers involving the entire wall of the colon. The deep liner ulcers result adjacent to normal tissue results in "cobblestoning." These lesions are typically discontinuous, which results in "skip" lesions. Barium enema in Crohn's disease demonstrates aphthous ulcers, cobblestoning pattern, narrowing of the lumen called "string sign," or fistulas and abscess formation. The notable histopathological feature is the presence of epithelioid granulomas.

Treatment

Standard treatment for IBD depends on extent of involvement and disease severity. Medical management attempts to initiate and lead to a long-term remission, which is the period between flare

ups where very little to no symptoms should be experienced. Medications used to treat IBD include: 5-aminosalicylic acid (5-ASA) compounds, steroids, and medications to suppress the immune system. 5-ASA is the main anti-inflammatory drug and the standard first-line treatment for mild-to-moderate IBD. 5-ASA is available in a variety of different formulations and different delivery systems that split the active moiety in various regions of the intestine. Sulfasalazine are poorly absorbed from the intestine and act from inside the intestine. Sulfasalazine can be effective, but sometimes induces some side effects. On the other hand, mesalamine and olsalazine have fewer side effects than sulfasalazine has. Steroids are powerful drugs and commonly used, but they often produce a variety types of side effects, particularly, in long-time uses. Immunosuppressive drugs, the antimetabolite 6-mercaptopurine (6-MP), are also powerful and help patients get off steroids but may prohibit natural immune defenses. Anti-TNF antibody treatment of Crohn's disease is one of the important therapeutic strategies recently developed. It is a monoclonal antibody and blocks TNF-alpha, which is involved in inflammation of the bowel. Surgical treatment is necessary in some severe cases with perforation, toxic megacolon, and severe bleeding.

Cross-References

► Functional Somatic Syndromes

References and Readings

- Bernstein, C. N., Blanchard, J. F., Kliever, E., & Wajda, A. (2001). Cancer risk in patients with inflammatory bowel disease: A population-based study. *Cancer*, 91, 854–862.
- Hanauer, S. B., Feagan, B. G., Lichtenstein, G. R., Mayer, L. F., Schreiber, S., Colombel, J. F., et al. (2002). Maintenance infliximab for Crohn's disease: The ACCENT I randomised trial. *Lancet*, 359, 1541–1549.
- Podolsky, D. K. (2002). Inflammatory bowel disease. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 347, 417–429.
- Winawer, S., Fletcher, R., Rex, D., Bond, J., Burt, R., Ferrucci, J., et al. (2003). Gastrointestinal consortium panel. Colorectal cancer screening and surveillance: Clinical guidelines and rationale – Update based on new evidence. *Gastroenterology*, 124, 544–560.
- Xavier, R. J., & Podolsky, D. K. (2007). Unravelling the pathogenesis of inflammatory bowel disease. *Nature*, 448, 427–434.

Inflammatory Markers

► C-Reactive Protein (CRP)

Informed Consent

Yoshiyuki Takimoto

Department of Stress Science and Psychosomatic Medicine, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Definition

Informed consent is giving consent to receive treatment or to become a subject of research based on adequate disclosure and understanding of relevant facts. The requirement for informed consent is based on the ethical principle *autonomy*. The legal grounding for requirement for informed consent is based on the outcome of litigations of disputes arising in the context of medical practice.

There are at least five necessary elements of informed consent: (1) disclosure of information sufficient to make a reasonably informed decision, (2) understanding by the consenter of information and recommendations disclosed, (3) voluntariness in consenting, (4) competence of the individual to understanding information given and reach a reasoned decision, and (5) assent.

The postulate is that a person gives an informed consent to an intervention if and only if the person receives a thorough disclosure about the procedure, comprehends the disclosed information, acts voluntarily, is competent to act, and consents.

Cross-References

► [Institutional Review Board \(IRB\)](#)

inheritance and recessive inheritance entries in this encyclopedia.

References and Readings

Beauchamp, T. L., & Faden, R. R. (2003). Informed consent. In S. G. Post (Ed.), *Encyclopedia of bioethics* (3rd ed., pp. 1271–1280). New York: Macmillan Reference.

Malek, J. (2005). Informed consent. In C. Mitcham (Ed.), *Encyclopaedia of science, technology, and ethics?* (pp. 1016–1019). Detroit: Macmillan Reference.

Cross-References

► [Dominant Inheritance](#)

► [Recessive Inheritance](#)

References and Further Readings

Britannica. (2009). *The Britannica guide to genetics (Introduction by Steve Jones)*. Philadelphia: Running Press.

Inheritance, Genetic

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Genetic inheritance addresses how traits are transmitted from one generation to another. While the word “inheritance” alone is typically used and taken to mean genetic inheritance, the term cultural inheritance is also a valid concept and deals with how cultural factors are transmitted.

The laws of inheritance (including dominant inheritance and recessive inheritance) were discovered by Mendel without knowledge of the actual molecular biological mechanism, and his research focused on plants and especially the common pea plant, *Pisum sativum*. Instead of trying to address the appearance of whole plants, and hence all of their characteristics, he focused on the inheritance of single, easily visible, and well-distinguished traits. These included round versus wrinkled seed, yellow versus green seed, and purple versus white flowers (Britannica 2009). He also made exact counts of the number of plants bearing each trait. These quantitative data allowed him to formulate the rules governing inheritance, as exemplified by the dominant

Inpatient Treatment

► [Substance Abuse: Treatment](#)

Insertion/Deletion Polymorphism

Laura Rodriguez-Murillo¹ and Rany M. Salem^{2,3}

¹Department of Psychiatry, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

²Broad Institute, Cambridge, MA, USA

³Cambridge Center, Cambridge, MA, USA

Definition

An insertion/deletion polymorphism, commonly abbreviated “indel,” is a type of genetic variation in which a specific nucleotide sequence is present (insertion) or absent (deletion). While not as common as SNPs, indels are widely spread across the genome. Indels comprise a total of 3 million of the 15 million known genetic variants (The 1000 Genomes Project Consortium 2010). An indel in the coding region of a gene that is not a multiple of 3 nucleotides results in a

frameshift mutation. Shifting the reading frame and the DNA transcript sequence may now code for an entirely different set of amino acids or result in a premature stop codon, altering the protein structure and function. Indel variants with multiples of 3 nucleotides result in a protein with extra amino acids (insertion) or loss of amino acids (deletion), but the other amino acids are not affected. The site of the indel in the gene is important since it determines which part of the protein is affected, since not all amino acids are necessary for proper protein function. A 250-base-pair indel in the angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE) gene explains 50% of the variance of serum ACE levels and has been shown to have important clinical consequences (Scharplatz et al. 2004).

Cross-References

- [Polymorphism](#)
- [Single Nucleotide Polymorphism \(SNP\)](#)

References and Further Readings

- Lewis, R. (2005). *Human genetics. Concepts and applications* (7th ed.). Boston: McGraw-Hill Science/Engineering/Math.
- Scharplatz, M., Puhon, M., Steurer, J., & Bachmann, L. (2004). What is the impact of the ACE gene insertion/deletion (I/D) polymorphism on the clinical effectiveness and adverse events of ACE inhibitors? – Protocol of a systematic review. *BMC Medical Genetics*, 5(1), 23.
- Strachan, T., & Read, A. P. (2003). *Human molecular genetics* (3rd ed.). London/New York: Garland Science/Taylor & Francis Group.
- The 1000 Genomes Project Consortium. (2010). A map of human genome variation from population-scale sequencing. *Nature*, 467(7319), 1061–1073. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nature09534>.

Insight Meditation

- [Mindfulness](#)

Insomnia

Wendy Troxel

Psychiatry and Psychology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Definition

The term “insomnia” is commonly used in the vernacular to refer to symptoms of insomnia including complaints of difficulty falling asleep, frequent or prolonged awakenings, inadequate sleep quality, or short overall sleep duration in an individual who has adequate time available for sleep. In contrast, an *insomnia disorder* is a syndrome consisting of the insomnia complaint combined with significant daytime impairment or distress, and the exclusion of other causes. Commonly reported daytime impairments associated with insomnia include complaints of mood disturbances (e.g., irritability, mild dysphoria, or difficulty tolerating stress), impaired cognitive function, and daytime fatigue (Moul et al. 2002). Importantly, insomnia patients commonly report feeling fatigued or exhausted during the day, but rarely report daytime sleepiness, per se (i.e., the propensity to fall asleep). Another important feature that distinguishes the insomnia disorder from sleep deprivation is that symptoms are present despite adequate opportunity for sleep. That is, in insomnia the opportunity for sleep is adequate, but the ability to sleep is compromised. In contrast, sleep deprivation is characterized by a restricted opportunity to sleep (due to lifestyles, shiftwork, etc.) with adequate ability.

Description

Prevalence and Consequences

Insomnia is the most common sleep disorder, with prevalence estimates ranging from 10% to 15% in the general population (Ohayon 1996, 2002; Ohayon and Guilleminault 1999) and up to 20–30% in primary care medical settings (Simon and Von Korff 1997; Shochat et al. 1999).

Substantial evidence demonstrates the significant health and functional consequences of insomnia, including reduced quality of life and increased health-care utilization, health-care costs, disability, and risk for psychiatric disorders and cardiovascular disease (Althuis et al. 1998; Brassington et al. 2000; Brostrom et al. 2004; Caap-Ahlgren and Dehlin 2001; Daley et al. 2009; Foley et al. 2004; Ford and Kamerow 1989).

Assessment

Polysomnography or other laboratory sleep measures are not recommended in the diagnosis of insomnia, except to rule out other occult sleep disorders. Rather, the diagnosis is based on a comprehensive clinical evaluation, including an assessment of sleep disturbances, habits, and clinical course, as well as a complete medical and psychiatric history, including use of prescribed or un-prescribed medications (including timing and dose), as all of these factors may influence insomnia. In addition to the clinical interview, questionnaires and sleep diaries are frequently used to provide a more in-depth analysis of qualitative aspects of sleep as well as the timing and variability of sleep patterns over successive nights.

Risk Factors

According to the “3-P” model of insomnia, risk factors for insomnia can be categorized into predisposing, precipitating, and perpetuating factors (Spielman et al. 1987). Predisposing or vulnerability factors include advancing age, female sex, being divorced or separated, unemployment, and comorbid medical and psychiatric illness (Lichstein et al. 2011; Morgan and Clarke 1997; Ohayon 2002; Su et al. 2004). To date, genetic factors have been inadequately studied, though they may represent another possible risk (Drake et al. 2008; Hamet and Tremblay 2006; Watson et al. 2006). Precipitating events that initiate insomnia may include major life transitions or psychosocial stressors such as moves, relationship difficulties, occupational and financial problems, and caregiving responsibilities (Bastien et al. 2004; Kappler and Hohagen 2003). Finally, perpetuating factors include counterproductive thoughts and behaviors related to sleep that maintain or

exacerbate insomnia. Empirically supported behavioral and cognitive behavioral interventions aim to reduce insomnia by modifying or eliminating these maladaptive sleep-related thoughts and behaviors (Bastien et al. 2004; Morin 2004).

References and Readings

- Althuis, M. D., Fredman, L., Langenberg, P. W., & Magaziner, J. (1998). The relationship between insomnia and mortality among community-dwelling older women. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 46, 1270–1273.
- Bastien, C. H., Vallieres, A., & Morin, C. M. (2004). Precipitating factors of insomnia. *Behavioral Sleep Medicine*, 2, 50–62.
- Brassington, G. S., King, A. C., & Bliwise, D. L. (2000). Sleep problems as a risk factor for falls in a sample of community-dwelling adults aged 64–99 years. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 48, 1234–1240.
- Brostrom, A., Stromberg, A., Dahlstrom, U., & Fridlund, B. (2004). Sleep difficulties, daytime sleepiness, and health-related quality of life in patients with chronic heart failure. *The Journal of Cardiovascular Nursing*, 19, 234–242.
- Caap-Ahlgren, M., & Dehlin, O. (2001). Insomnia and depressive symptoms in patients with Parkinson's disease. Relationship to health-related quality of life. An interview study of patients living at home. *Archives of Gerontology and Geriatrics*, 32, 23–33.
- Daley, M., Morin, C. M., LeBlanc, M., Gregoire, J. P., & Savard, J. (2009). The economic burden of insomnia: Direct and indirect costs for individuals with insomnia syndrome, insomnia symptoms, and good sleepers. *Sleep*, 32, 55–64.
- Drake, C. L., Scofield, H., & Roth, T. (2008). Vulnerability to insomnia: The role of familial aggregation. *Sleep Medicine*, 9, 297–302.
- Foley, D., Ancoli-Israel, S., Britz, P., & Walsh, J. (2004). Sleep disturbances and chronic disease in older adults: Results of the 2003 national sleep foundation sleep in America survey. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 56, 497–502.
- Ford, D. E., & Kamerow, D. B. (1989). Epidemiologic study of sleep disturbances and psychiatric disorders. An opportunity for prevention? *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 262, 1479–1484.
- Hamet, P., & Tremblay, J. (2006). Genetics of the sleep-wake cycle and its disorders. *Metabolism, Clinical and Experimental*, 55, S7–S12.
- Kappler, C., & Hohagen, F. (2003). Psychosocial aspects of insomnia. Results of a study in general practice. *European Archives of Psychiatry and Clinical Neuroscience*, 253, 49–52.
- Lichstein, K. L., Taylor, D. J., McCrae, C. S., & Ruten, M. E. (2011). Insomnia: Epidemiology and risk factors.

- In M. H. Kryger, T. Roth, & W. C. Dement (Eds.), *Principles and practices of sleep medicine* (5th ed., pp. 827–837). St. Louis: Elsevier.
- Morgan, K., & Clarke, D. (1997). Risk factors for late-life insomnia in a representative general practice sample. *British Journal of General Practice*, 47, 166–169.
- Morin, C. M. (2004). Cognitive-behavioral approaches to the treatment of insomnia. *The Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, 65(Suppl 16), 33–40.
- Moul, D. E., Buysse, D. J., Nofzinger, E. A., Pilkonis, P. A., Houck, P. R., & Miewald, J. M. (2002). Symptoms reports in severe chronic insomnia. *Sleep*, 25, 553–563.
- Ohayon, M. M. (1996). Epidemiological study on insomnia in a general population. *Sleep*, 19, S7–S15.
- Ohayon, M. M. (2002). Epidemiology of insomnia: What we know and what we still need to learn. *Sleep Medicine Reviews*, 6, 97–111.
- Ohayon, M. M., & Guilleminault, C. (1999). Epidemiology of sleep disorders. In S. Chokroverty (Ed.), *Sleep disorders medicine: Basic science, technical considerations and clinical aspects* (2nd ed., pp. 301–316). Boston: Butterworth-Heinemann.
- Shochat, T., Umphress, J., Israel, A. G., & Ancoli-Israel, S. (1999). Insomnia in primary care patients. *Sleep*, 22 (Suppl 2), S359–S365.
- Simon, G. E., & Von Korff, M. (1997). Prevalence, burden, and treatment of insomnia in primary care. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 154, 1417–1423.
- Spielman, A. J., Caruso, L. S., & Glovinsky, P. B. (1987). A behavioral perspective on insomnia treatment [Review]. *Psychiatric Clinics of North America*, 10, 541–553. [60 refs].
- Su, T. P., Huang, S. R., & Chou, P. (2004). Prevalence and risk factors of insomnia in community-dwelling Chinese elderly: A Taiwanese urban area survey. *The Australian and New Zealand Journal of Psychiatry*, 38, 706–713.
- Watson, N. F., Goldberg, J., Arguelles, L., & Buchwald, D. (2006). Genetic and environmental influences on insomnia, daytime sleepiness, and obesity in twins. *Sleep*, 29, 645–649.

Institute of Medicine

Martica H. Hall
Department of Psychiatry, University of
Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Basic Information

The Institute of Medicine is a nonprofit organization whose mission is the advancement of medical and biological sciences in the service of health.

Established in 1970 as a branch the National Academies (National Academy of Sciences, National Academy of Engineering, National Research Council, Institute of Medicine), the IOM is a nonprofit organization committed to the advancement of medical and biological sciences in the service of health. The IOM's underlying principle is that authoritative evidence in the medical and biological sciences expands the capabilities of medicine and health care.

Major Impact on the Field

Members are elected to the IOM based upon their record of scientific achievement. The membership and governing Council interact with other scientists and government officials to identify IOM projects. These projects encompass a variety of formats including establishment of expert committees to facilitate cross-disciplinary discussion and discovery, the conduct of workshops and public forums, the generation and publication of authoritative topical reports and books, and the support of high-impact research studies. These activities are conducted with the express function of advancing medical and biological sciences in the service of health and improved health care.

The IOM recognizes the importance of behavioral and social sciences in the service of health-related medical and biological sciences. This commitment is evidenced in high-profile IOM reports regarding interactions among social, psychological, behavioral, and biological factors that underlie health and functioning. Examples include state-of-science reports on health promotion intervention strategies from social and behavioral research (2000); the influence of early environment on neuronal development (2000); gene-environment interactions in relation to health (2006); the consequences of sleep disorders and sleep deprivation (2006); the physiologic, psychological, and psychosocial consequences of deployment stress in military personnel (2007); and environmental risk factors for breast cancer (2011).

Cross-References

- [Gene-Environment Interaction](#)
- [Sleep](#)
- [Sleep Deprivation](#)

Institutional Care

Elizabeth Galik
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Institutionalization](#); [Long-term care](#)

Definition

Institutional care is provided within a congregate living environment designed to meet the functional, medical, personal, social, and housing needs of individuals who have physical, mental, and/or developmental disabilities. Vulnerable children, and older adults, individuals with developmental disabilities, mental retardation, chronic mental illness, and physical disabilities are more likely to receive care in institutional settings, such as orphanages, nursing homes, residential facilities, and rehabilitation centers. Care and services in institutional settings often include, but are not limited to, 24-h supervision/monitoring, assistance with activities of daily living, skilled nursing care, rehabilitation, adaptive aids and equipment, psychological services, therapies, social activities, and room and board. The cost of institutional care varies by the facility and the services that are required. Payment for institutional care includes private financial resources, long-term care insurance, Medicaid, and Medicare. In the United States, federal and state governments oversee institutional care facilities which are inspected annually to ensure that they are in compliance with regulatory requirements that address residents' rights, health, and safety.

Cross-References

- [Assisted Living](#)

References and Readings

- Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services. (2008). *Guide to choosing a nursing home*. Baltimore: Department of Health and Human Services.
- Challis, D., Mozley, C. G., Sutcliffe, C., et al. (2000). Dependency in older people recently admitted to care homes. *Age & Aging*, 29(3), 255–260.
- Jones, A. L., Dwyer, L. L., Bercovitz, A. R., & Strahan, G. W. (2009). The national nursing home survey: 2004 overview. National Center for Health Statistics. *Vital and Health Statistics*, 13(167), 1–155.
- Roy, P., Rutter, M., & Pickles, A. (2004). Institutional care: Associations between overactivity and lack of selectivity in social relationships. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, 45(4), 866–873.

Institutional Review Board (IRB)

Yoshiyuki Takimoto
Department of Stress Science and Psychosomatic Medicine, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

[Research ethics committee](#)

Definition

Institutional Review Board (IRB) is a committee containing members of mixed backgrounds and including both scientist and nonscientist members whose task is to review and monitor biomedical and behavioral research involving human subjects. The World Medical Association's Declaration of Helsinki (2010) and Council for International Organizations of Medical Science's International Ethical Guidelines for Biomedical Research Involving Human Subjects establish

the international standard for biomedical research and require IRB as scientific review and ethical review committee, which is called the research ethics committee (REC) in the most of the world. IRB is assigned to the authority and responsibility for approving or disapproving proposals to conduct research involving human subjects. The chief purpose of IRB reviews is to assess the scientific and ethical merit and usefulness of the research and its methods and to ensure that research conforms to ethical standards and protects the right and welfare of the research subjects.

Cross-References

- [Clinical Trial](#)
- [Human Subjects Committee](#)

References and Readings

- Bridge, A. (2005). Institutional review board. In C. Mitcham (Ed.), *Encyclopaedia of science, technology, and ethics?* (pp. 1024–1026). Detroit: Macmillan Reference.
- Levine, R. J. (2004). Research ethics committees. In S. G. Post (Ed.), *Encyclopedia of bioethics* (3rd ed., pp. 2311–2316). New York: Macmillan Library Reference.
- The World Medical Association. (2010). The world medical association's declaration of Helsinki. Retrieved May 07, 2012, from <http://www.wma.net/en/30publications/10policies/b3/>

Institutionalization

- [Institutional Care](#)

Instrumental Activities of Daily Living: Ergotherapy

- [Occupational Therapy](#)

Instrumental Conditioning

- [Operant Conditioning](#)

Insulin

Adriana Carrillo

Department of Pediatrics, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Fasting insulin](#); [Insulin sensitivity](#).

Definition

Insulin

Insulin is an essential hormone for maintaining normal blood glucose. It is the principal regulator of glucose utilization in liver, skeletal muscle, and adipose tissue. Abnormalities of insulin synthesis, secretion, or action can result in hypoglycemia or hyperglycemia, including diabetes mellitus.

Synthesis: Insulin is synthesized from the pancreatic beta cells from a single-chain precursor, preproinsulin. Preproinsulin is cleaved to proinsulin which is further cleaved by proconvertases into three polypeptide chains: alpha, beta, and C-peptide chains. Insulin is formed by linkage of the alpha and beta chains by disulfide bonds. The remaining C-peptide is secreted from the beta cell with insulin in equal molar portions. Insulin and C-peptide levels can be used to evaluate pancreatic function and glucose tolerance (Gardner und Shoback 2007; Kronenber et al. 2008).

Secretion: Insulin secretion is primarily stimulated by glucose. Glucose enters the beta cell through facilitated diffusion mediated by GLUT2 glucose transporter. Glucose is then phosphorylated to glucose-6-phosphate by glucokinase. Glucokinase is the rate-limiting step of glycolysis and primarily determines the rate of insulin secretion in response to blood glucose

levels. The metabolism of glucose increases intracellular ATP/ADP ratio resulting in insulin release. Insulin is secreted in a biphasic pattern, an initial peak followed by a sustained plateau after carbohydrate ingestion. Insulin concentrations increase 8–10 min after ingestion of food and peak by 30–45 min. Blood glucose concentrations return to baseline by 90–120 min after ingestion of food. Oral glucose administration increases insulin response greater than intravenous glucose. This is due to stimulation of gut hormones that promote insulin release, called incretins. Incretins like glucagon-like peptides (GLP) increase the sensitivity of the beta cell to glucose. GLP-1 also inhibits glucagon and delays gastric emptying. Glucagon is secreted from the pancreatic alpha cells and counters the effects of insulin in the liver by stimulating glycogenolysis.

Insulin secretion is also stimulated by amino acids by increasing the intracellular ATP/ADP ratio. Acutely, free fatty acids and ketones also stimulate insulin secretion. Long-term beta cell exposure to fatty acids inhibits insulin synthesis and secretion. Somatostatin, secreted from pancreatic delta cells, inhibits insulin release (Lifshitz 2007).

Insulin secretion is also under the control of the autonomic nervous system. The vagus nerve of the parasympathetic nervous systems directly stimulates insulin secretion. In the sympathetic nervous system, activation of β_2 receptors increases insulin secretion, while activation of α -adrenergic receptors inhibits insulin secretion. During stress, epinephrine and norepinephrine activate α -adrenergic receptors, blocking insulin release and resulting in hyperglycemia. Other counter regulatory hormones such as cortisol and other glucocorticoids stimulate insulin secretion while inducing peripheral insulin resistance.

Action: Insulin binds to insulin receptors on the cell membrane of target tissues. The insulin receptor is a heterodimeric glycoprotein. Insulin binds to the extracellular α subunits of the insulin receptor which activates intrinsic tyrosine kinase on the transmembrane β subunits leading to phosphorylation of cytoplasmic substrates inducing signal transduction. In the liver, insulin stimulates glucose uptake, storage of glucose as glycogen, and

synthesis of protein, triglycerides, and very-low-density lipoprotein. Also in the liver, insulin inhibits glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis. In skeletal muscle, insulin stimulates glucose uptake, glycogen synthesis, and protein synthesis by increasing amino acid transport. In adipose tissue, insulin stimulates glucose uptake and storage of triglyceride. Insulin induces production of circulating lipoprotein lipase which hydrolyzes triglycerides from circulating lipoprotein for uptake by adipose cells. Insulin inhibits intracellular lipoprotein lipase to promote the storage of triglycerides. Counter regulator hormones impair insulin action. Epinephrine, cortisol, and growth hormone antagonize insulin action by promoting glycogenolysis, gluconeogenesis, lipolysis, and ketogenesis, and decreasing glucose utilization and clearance (Lifshitz 2007).

Pathology: Abnormality of insulin production, secretion, or action results in abnormal blood glucose. Uncontrolled secretion of insulin typically presents with hypoglycemia in the neonatal period. Neonatal hyperinsulinism may be transient due to maternal conditions such as uncontrolled gestational diabetes. Congenital hyperinsulinism due to genetic mutations in the islet cell can cause constitutive secretion of insulin and hypoglycemia. Insulin-secreting tumors of the pancreas, insulinomas, are the most common cause of fasting hypoglycemia in otherwise healthy adults.

Genetic mutations that decrease insulin synthesis or secretion can cause neonatal diabetes. Mild defects in insulin synthesis can present later in childhood or early adulthood; this group of mutations is referred to as maturity onset diabetes of the young (MODY). Mutations associated with MODY are transmitted autosomal dominant.

Abnormality of insulin action may be due to genetic mutations of the insulin receptor or due to type 2 diabetes. In type 2 diabetes, target tissues have decreased sensitivity to insulin. The etiology of type 2 diabetes is unclear. It is clear that obesity and consumption of a high-carbohydrate diet may unmask diabetes in a person who is genetically susceptible. The pancreas compensates for insulin resistance by elevated insulin levels. Beta cells begin to lose insulin response to glucose intake, and glucose intolerance develops.

Type 1 diabetes mellitus results from autoimmune destruction of pancreatic beta cells and consequently insulinopenia. Type 1 diabetes typically presents in childhood. Peak age of presentation is bimodal, at 5–7 years of age and at the time of puberty. Symptoms of diabetes usually do not present until greater than 80% of the islet cells have been destroyed (Lifshitz 2007).

Synthetic Insulin: Recombinant human insulin is necessary for the treatment of type 1 diabetes and neonatal diabetes and may be adjunctive in type 2 diabetes. Insulin analogues are administered subcutaneously several times per day for optimal control. Rapid acting insulin is administered just prior to carbohydrate consumption. Intermediate and long acting insulin can be administered once or twice a day for basal insulin. An insulin pump provides continuous insulin infusion of rapid acting insulin to provide more physiologic insulin therapy. Blood glucose must be monitored closely with any insulin regimen to avoid hypoglycemia (Lifshitz 2007; Sperling 2008).

CNS: Insulin and insulin receptors have been found throughout the central nervous system. In the hypothalamus, insulin is associated with regulation of body energy homeostasis. In the hippocampus and cerebral cortex, insulin has been shown to be involved in cognitive function. For example, in animals, changes in insulin signaling in the hippocampus and temporal cortex are associated with memory and learning. In humans, acute increase in insulin is associated with increased memory capacity. However, chronically elevated insulin levels can cause neural damage through microvascular damage by oxidative stress and endothelial damage. Epidemiologic data suggests an association between insulin resistance syndrome and dementia which is also attributed to microvascular damage.

Cross-References

- [Fasting Insulin](#)
- [Insulin Resistance](#)
- [Insulin Sensitivity](#)

References and Readings

- Gardner, D. G., & Shoback, D. (2007). *Greenspan's basic & clinical endocrinology* (8th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Kronenberg, H., Melmed, S., Polonsky, K., & Larsen, P. R. (2008). *Williams textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.
- Lifshitz, F. (2007). *Pediatric endocrinology* (5th ed.). New York: Informa Healthcare.
- Sperling, M. (2008). *Pediatric endocrinology* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.

Insulin Effectiveness

- [Insulin Sensitivity](#)

Insulin Pumps

Della Matheson
Diabetes Research Institute, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion](#)

Definition

Insulin pump therapy, often referred to as continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (CSII), is an alternate method of insulin administration for persons who require multiple daily injections (MDI) for treatment of diabetes. The concept in insulin pump therapy was first introduced by Arnold Kadish in Beverly Hills, CA, in the 1960s. However, it was not until the early 1980s that the first FDA-approved pump became available for use by people with type 1 diabetes.

The basic design of pumps is that a syringe-driven pump uses a subcutaneously

placed catheter to deliver insulin that is controlled by electronics within the pump (Skyler 2010). The insulin used in pumps is rapid-acting insulin (regular insulin or more recently the insulin analogs: Novolog, Humalog, Apidra). Insulin pumps provide the most physiologic method for delivery of insulin. In nondiabetic people, the pancreas secretes background insulin throughout the day and night that maintains normal blood glucose levels in the non-fed state. The pancreas also secretes insulin in larger quantities in rapid response to blood glucose excursions after food is ingested. Unlike MDI, which employs 1–2 injections of long acting insulin to mimic the background insulin requirement, and 3–4 injections per day of short acting insulin injected before each meal, CSII allows the use of only rapid-acting insulin which is infused continuously throughout the day to provide a background of insulin (basal rate) and allows the wearer to press a button prior to each meal to deliver a larger amount of insulin to accommodate the glucose content of the meal (bolus), thus mimicking the normal insulin secretion patterns. Modern pumps are small, discreet, and fashionable in appearance. They are also often referred to as “smart pumps” because they integrate concepts of intensive insulin therapy and principles of good diabetes self-management into their programs. The features that incorporate these concepts include insulin: carbohydrate ratio calculator for meals, insulin sensitivity factor and target blood glucose to calculate proper correction doses for high blood sugars, insulin-on-board feature which helps to calculate the amount of circulating insulin still active in the blood stream to help prevent over-dosage of insulin, and multiple basal rates to customize background insulin to individual variations in need for background insulin. It should be understood that insulin pumps do not automatically provide insulin in response to glucose; the person wearing the pump must program the pump and make decisions about how much insulin should be taken in collaboration with the health-care team. The future may well usher in more advances in insulin pump therapy that lead us closer to a pump with automatic insulin delivery, aka a “closed loop system.” With the advent

of continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) and sensor-augmented pumps, research is underway to achieve this goal.

It is well established through the Diabetes Control and Complications Trials (DCCT) that good glycemic control (HbA1c <7.4%) prevents long-term microvascular and macrovascular complications (The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial Research Group 1993). It is generally accepted that intensive insulin therapy through MDI or CSII is the best method for achieving the targets set forth by the DCCT. However, there appears to be no firm evidence to suggest that CSII is better than MDI to achieve these targets. The main benefits of CSII appear to be enhanced flexibility of lifestyle and quality of life, both of which may impact patient adherence to the strenuous demands of intensive insulin therapy. The risks of insulin pumps have minimized greatly with improved technology over the past 20 years. The greatest risk with use of CSII is diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA); since only rapid-acting insulin is used in the device, if the flow of insulin is disrupted, deterioration to DKA may occur rapidly as there is no long acting insulin to help sustain the individual. With education and proper training, this has been greatly diminished in pump users. Disruption in the flow of insulin most often occurs due to an occlusion in the catheter or bent catheter, pump running out of insulin and user not refilling on a timely basis, a dislodged catheter, and infrequently a mechanical failure of the pump (Ponder et al. 2008).

Currently available on the market in the USA are the following pumps: Animas (Johnson & Johnson), MiniMed (Medtronic), OmniPod (Insulet Corp.), and Amigo (Nipro).

Cross-References

- [Diabetes](#)
- [Insulin](#)
- [Insulin-Dependent Diabetes Mellitus \(IDDM\)](#)
- [Metabolic Syndrome](#)
- [Type 1 Diabetes](#)

References and Readings

- Ponder, S. W., Skyler, J. S., Kruger, D. F., Matheson, D., & Brown, B. W. (2008). Unexplained hyperglycemia in continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion: Evaluation and treatment. *The Diabetes Educator*, 34, 327–333.
- Skyler, J. S. (2010). Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion – An historical perspective. *Diabetes Technology & Therapeutics*, 12(Suppl. 1), S5–S7.
- Skyler, J. S., Ponder, S. W., Kruger, D. F., Matheson, D., & Parkin, C. G. (2007). Is there a place for insulin pump therapy in your practice? *Clinical Diabetes*, 2, 50–56.
- The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial Research Group. (1993). The effect of intensive treatment of diabetes on the development and progression of long-term complications in insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial Research Group. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 329, 977–986.

Insulin Resistance

► Hyperinsulinemia

Insulin Resistance (IR) Syndrome

Alan M. Delamater
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami
Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

Metabolic syndrome

Definition

The insulin resistance syndrome is a term that refers to the clustering of four health risk factors: obesity, hyperinsulinemia and insulin resistance, high blood pressure, and dyslipidemia (Reaven 1988). This syndrome was previously known as syndrome X and more recently as the metabolic syndrome.

References and Readings

- Reaven, G. M. (1988). Pathophysiology of insulin resistance in human disease. *Physiology Review*, 75, 473–486.

Insulin Sensitivity

Janine Sanchez
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami
Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

Insulin effectiveness

Definition

Insulin sensitivity is the ability of insulin to stimulate glucose uptake, promote peripheral glucose disposal, and suppress hepatic glucose production. The primary site of glucose disposal is skeletal muscle. The gold standard method for the determination of insulin sensitivity is the hyperinsulinemic-euglycemic insulin clamp. However, the clamp technique is expensive and complex. Surrogate methods to determine insulin sensitivity include fasting insulin and glucose, oral glucose tolerance test, and intravenous glucose tolerance test. The most common calculations using fasting insulin and glucose are fasting glucose to insulin ratio, homeostasis model assessment of insulin resistance (HOMA), and quantitative insulin sensitivity check index (QUICKI). The HOMA and QUICKI models are mathematical estimates of beta cell function and insulin resistance.

Impaired insulin sensitivity or insulin resistance precedes glucose intolerance in the development of type 2 diabetes. As insulin sensitivity decreases, insulin levels will become elevated in attempt to maintain effectiveness and euglycemia. If insulin sensitivity continues to decline, patients

may develop glucose intolerance and then type 2 diabetes. Insulin resistance is associated with a metabolic and cardiovascular cluster of disorders including type 2 diabetes, glucose intolerance, dyslipidemia, fatty liver, hypertension, obesity, polycystic ovarian syndrome, and endothelial dysfunction. Insulin resistance can also occur in patients with poorly controlled type 1 diabetes. This leads to increased insulin requirements to maintain euglycemia.

Insulin resistance can also be associated with rare syndromes due to insulin receptor abnormalities or insulin antibodies. In addition, insulin resistance increases during puberty and decreases when puberty is complete. Clinical signs associated with insulin resistance include acanthosis nigricans (darkening of skin around neck and axilla), obesity, and hypertension.

Exercise, healthy diet, and weight loss can improve insulin sensitivity. The metabolic and cardiovascular diseases associated with insulin resistance also improve as insulin sensitivity improves.

Cross-References

- [Fasting Insulin](#)
- [Hyperinsulinemia](#)
- [Insulin](#)
- [Insulin Resistance](#)
- [Insulin Resistance \(IR\) Syndrome](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bloomgarden, Z. T. (2006). Measures of insulin sensitivity. *Clinics in Laboratory Medicine*, 26(3), 611–633.
- Borai, A., Livingstone, C., & Ferns, G. A. (2007). The biochemical assessment of insulin resistance. *Annals of Clinical Biochemistry*, 44, 324–342.
- Levy-Marchal, C., & Arslanian, S. (2010). Insulin resistance in children: Consensus, perspective, and future directions. *The Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 95(12), 5189–5198.
- Sperling, M. A. (2009). *Pediatric endocrinology* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: WB Saunders.
- Wilson, J. D. (2008). *Williams textbook of endocrinology* (11th ed.). Philadelphia: WB Saunders.

Insulin Shock

- [Hypoglycemia](#)

Insulin-Dependent Diabetes Mellitus (IDDM)

Luigi Meneghini

Diabetes Research Institute, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Autoimmune diabetes](#); [Juvenile diabetes](#); [Type 1 diabetes](#)

Definition

Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM) is now referred to as type 1 diabetes (T1DM) and designates an elevation in blood glucose due to insufficient production of insulin thought to result from cell-mediated autoimmune destruction of insulin-producing pancreatic beta cells. Autoimmunity is manifested by mononuclear cell invasion of islets (insulinitis) and the production of islet-specific antibodies, such as GAD (glutamic acid decarboxylase), IA-2 autoantibodies, and ICA (islet cell antibodies), detectable in ~85% of newly diagnosed patients. Genetic, environmental, and possibly other unknown factors contribute to disease susceptibility, which is most commonly manifested in the childhood or teenage years (hence the former designation of juvenile diabetes).

If not replaced, absolute insulin deficiency in T1DM results in severe hyperglycemia and diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA), which if left untreated can prove fatal (hence the designation IDDM). Insulin replacement ideally takes the form of basal/bolus insulin therapy, delivered either via multiple daily insulin injections or an insulin

pump infusion. Poorly controlled type 1 diabetes can lead to, among other complications, nephropathy (kidney damage manifested by excess protein in the urine) and end-stage kidney damage, retinopathy potentially leading to decreased visual acuity, and neuropathy and the risk of diabetic foot infections or ulcerations. Long-standing diabetes is also associated with increased risk for heart disease, stroke, and peripheral vascular disease. Maintaining good glycemic control, as deflected by an HbA1c of 7% or less, will prevent many of the chronic complications of the disease.

Cross-References

- [Insulin](#)
- [Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus](#)

References and Readings

Joslin, E. P., & Kahn, C. R. (2005). *Joslin's diabetes mellitus* (14th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Insulin-Producing Cell

- [Beta Cells](#)

Integrated Behavioral Medicine Research, Practice, Policy

- [Translational Behavioral Medicine](#)

Integrated Care

- [Clinical Settings](#)

Integrated Health Care

- [Disease Management](#)

Integrative Gastroenterology

Jost Langhorst¹ and Anna K. Koch²

¹Department for Internal and Integrative Medicine, Klinikum Bamberg, Bamberg, Germany

²University of Duisburg-Essen, Essen, Germany

Gastroenterology deals with diseases of the digestive tract, the pancreas, and the liver, metabolic disorders, food intolerances, and allergies. The current conventional gastroenterology focuses mainly on diagnostics and pharmacotherapy.

Integrative Gastroenterology combines conventional (school) medicine with scientifically proven naturopathic modalities and mind-body medicine (Korzenik et al. 2017). While conventional gastroenterology largely has a pathogenetic, deficit-oriented view – to cure or treat illnesses – *Integrative Gastroenterology* extends this approach to a salutogenetic, resource-oriented dimension in the form of naturopathy and mind-body medicine (Korzenik et al. 2017). The combination of pathogenetic and salutogenetic therapy approaches as it is done in the context of *Integrative Gastroenterology* thus provides a holistic view of the disease. Herein, curative, secondary, and tertiary preventive strategies are connected.

The concept of integrative gastroenterology is basically useful in all major fields of gastroenterology and is also in high demand from the patient side (Langhorst et al. 2005, 2007). For example, the modification or optimization of lifestyle aspects is of great importance for many chronic diseases in the field of hepatology or pancreatology (Elsenbruch et al. 2005). In the field of integrative oncology of

gastroenterological diseases, integrative therapeutic strategies that acknowledge naturopathic self-help strategies, mind-body therapy, and lifestyle modification are also increasingly gaining influence, mainly to control and treat side effects of conventional therapies and to improve health-related quality (HrQoL) of life. Enterology is predestined for an integrative supply approach, because the enteric nervous system and the central nervous system directly interact with the brain-gut axis, immune system, and microbiota. This is especially true in irritable bowel syndrome. In addition, the basis for the therapy of inflammatory bowel diseases is the conventional guideline-oriented pharmacotherapy (Gomollon et al. 2017). However, an integrative, resource-activating therapy approach is key to optimal care. Adjuvant to guideline-oriented pharmacotherapy, the range of complementary medicine, the procedures of scientifically tested naturopathy, and mind-body medicine can complement the range of therapies to improve both HrQoL and course of disease.

References and Further Reading

- Elsenbruch, S., Langhorst, J., Popkirowa, K., et al. (2005). Effects of mind-body therapy on quality of life and neuroendocrine and cellular immune functions in patients with ulcerative colitis. *Psychotherapy and Psychosomatics*, 74, 277–287.
- Gomollon, F., Dignass, A., Annesse, V., et al. (2017). 3rd European evidence-based consensus on the diagnosis and management of Crohn's disease 2016: Part 1: Diagnosis and medical management. *Journal of Crohn's & Colitis*, 11, 3–25.
- Korzenik, J., Koch, A. K., & Langhorst, J. (2017). Complementary and integrative gastroenterology. *Medical Clinics*, 101, 943–954.
- Langhorst, J., Anthonisen, I. B., Steder-Neukamm, U., et al. (2005). Amount of systemic steroid medication is a strong predictor for the use of complementary and alternative medicine in patients with inflammatory bowel disease: Results from a German national survey. *Inflammatory Bowel Diseases*, 11, 287–295.
- Langhorst, J., Anthonisen, I. B., Steder-Neukamm, U., et al. (2007). Patterns of complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) use in patients with inflammatory bowel disease: Perceived stress is a potential indicator for CAM use. *Complementary Therapies in Medicine*, 15, 30–37.

Integrative Health

► Integrative Medicine

Integrative Medicine

Margaret A. Chesney¹ and David E. Anderson²

¹Department of Medicine and Osher Center for Integrative Medicine, University of California, San Francisco, CA, USA

²Division of Nephrology, Department of Medicine, University of California, San Francisco, CA, USA

Synonyms

Holistic medicine; Integrative health; Whole health

Definition

Integrative medicine and its complement, integrative health are terms for an emerging field of study and clinical practice that combines the best of complementary, conventional, and behavioral or lifestyle medicine. Integrative medicine is defined as an approach to health care that reaffirms the importance of the relationship between practitioners and patients, focuses on the whole person, is informed by evidence, and makes use of all appropriate therapeutic and lifestyle approaches, health care professionals, and disciplines to achieve optimal health and healing (Academic Consortium for Integrative Medicine and Health, <http://www.imconsortium.org>).

Initially driven by consumer demand, integrative medicine and health is a rapidly growing field that offers a pathway toward better health and well-being, health care, and the potential for significant decreases in health care costs. It recognizes that while the clinical setting is important, there are multiple social and environmental determinants of health for individuals, families,

communities, and populations. This holistic orientation contrasts with the stereotypical approach of conventional medicine based on specialization and reliance on biotechnology in diagnosis and treatment. Integrative medicine and health focuses on empowering individuals and families in their communities to engage in effective self-care; providing access to patient-centered, individualized, multidisciplinary care to enhance wellness, as well as treat disease; and paying attention to physical, social, economic, and environmental factors that influence health.

Description

Background

The integrative medicine movement emerged from dissatisfaction with conventional biomedicine. Some 20 years ago, it was observed that public confidence in the medical establishment was eroding and that the fundamental relationship between patient and physician was disintegrating (Snyderman and Weil 2002). This state of affairs was attributed to the fact that the historical role of the physician as a comprehensive caregiver had diminished due to increasing reliance on costly and impersonal technologies rather than careful histories and physical examinations. The biomedical approach conceptualized the body as a machine, the physician's task as that of repairing the machine, and presumed that healing of the whole could be effected via treatment of its component parts. This approach resulted in notable successes in some areas of medicine, but a different perspective was increasingly seen as evidence documented the role of psychosocial factors, such as stress in the incidence and progression of acute illnesses such as the common cold (Cohen et al. 1991) and chronic conditions, including cardiovascular (Steptoe and Kivimäki 2012) and other diseases.

By 1993, more than a third of all adults in the United States (US) reported using some form of "unconventional" medicine, such as various relaxation techniques, chiropractic, and massage for their health (Astin 1998; Eisenberg et al. 1993). In 1995, the National Institutes of Health

(NIH) established an Office of Alternative Medicine, which in 1998 was elevated by the US Congress to become the National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM). The purpose of NCCAM was to be "a Complement to Conventional Medicine." Specifically, NCCAM was to fund research to define, through rigorous scientific investigation, the usefulness, and safety of complementary and alternative medicine interventions and their roles in improving health and health care. Complementary and alternative medicine practices focused upon by NCCAM included natural products (e.g., special diets, probiotics, dietary supplements, and botanical medicine), mind-body practices (e.g., meditation, deep breathing, yoga, tai chi, and qi gong), and manipulative and body-based practices (e.g., manual medicine, chiropractic, massage, special forms of exercise, and movement therapies). NCCAM also supported studies of whole medical systems such as traditional Chinese medicine including acupuncture, and Ayurveda, a traditional Indian medicine. The US Congress also allocated funds to the National Cancer Institute (NCI) to support clinical research on cancer from a complementary and alternative perspective, including research on cancer survivorship. The Office on Cancer Complementary and Alternative Medicine (OCCAM), located in the Office of the NCI Director, was created to coordinate the activities supported by these funds.

An important issue addressed early in the history of NCCAM was to determine the extent to which the US public made use of integrative medicine approaches. In 2002, NCCAM funded the National Health Interview Survey to interview a random sample of 31,002 adults in the USA about their use of integrative medicine in the prior 12 months. This survey found that 37% of US adults had used at least one integrative approach in the last year, a figure that was higher than most expected. This figure increased to 38% in a second survey in 2007 of a random sample of 23,393 adults interviewed. The latter survey also included a random sample 9,417 children under 18 years of age. This survey provided the first data on integrative medicine among US children, indicating

that 12% had used integrative medicine in the prior 12 months (Barnes et al. 2004, 2008).

In 2014, NCCAM officially changed its name to the National Center for Complementary and Integrative Health (NCCIH). The center maintained the same mission as before but replaced the term “alternative” medicine with “integrative health.” The same integrative approaches continued to be the focus of study, but the various therapies were divided into two broad domains: mind and body practices, including manipulative and body-based practices, and natural products. The OCCAM continued to operate with its original name as part of NCI.

As interest in integrative medicine developed among the public, academic health centers in the USA and in Europe began to offer medical students courses in integrative medicine, opened clinics that provided services such as acupuncture, and carried out research on the efficacy and underlying mechanisms of these approaches. The University of Maryland was the first such center in the USA, founded in 1991. Similar programs followed throughout the 1990s at the academic health centers at the University of Arizona, University of California at San Francisco, and Harvard and Duke Universities. The proliferation of these centers led to the formation of umbrella organizations that provided support for this growing field. These included the Academic Consortium for Integrative Medicine and Health, founded in 1989, and the Bravewell Collaborative, founded in 2002. The Bravewell group, comprised of a number of philanthropic foundations, supported the efforts of the Consortium, which by 2020 included more than 75 academic health centers and associated health-care systems.

Philosophy of Integrative Medicine

Integrative medicine reflects a systems approach to understanding health and healing. It recognizes that humans are complex entities, and the most important influences on health, for individuals and society, are not the factors at play within any single domain – environmental, behavioral, or genetic – but the dynamics, synergies, and reciprocal interactions among these domains. In other words, the human body functions like an

orchestrated network of interconnected systems, whose overall condition is sensitive to environmental context, dietary intake, and other lifestyle factors that can increase susceptibility to other pathogenic variables (Institute of Medicine 2009).

The goal of integrative medicine is to provide patient-centered, evidence-based care that honors an integrated systems approach to health across the life span. Patient-centered care means treating the patient as an integral part of the care team and putting responsibility for important aspects of health monitoring and care in the patient’s hands. Evidence-based health care involves increased reliance on a foundational science that takes an empirical approach to treatment efficacy, as well as the investigation of biological mechanisms by which environmental, psychosocial, behavioral, and genetic factors influence health and disease.

Seven of the most common chronic diseases – heart disease, hypertension, stroke, cancer, diabetes, pulmonary conditions, and mental disorders – account for more than half of all health-care costs, and more than 70% of deaths (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, www.cdc.gov). The traditional view was that these disorders are primarily genetic in origin and largely unpreventable. The integrative medicine community recognizes that factors such as where people live, conditions of their environments, income and education levels, and relationships with friends and family all interact with genetic predispositions to influence health and potentiate the development of acute and chronic diseases. Evidence is accumulating that many disorders can be prevented or their onset delayed via healthy lifestyles characterized by attention to dietary intake, increased physical activity, stress management by various mind-body approaches, adequate sleep, and decreased tobacco and alcohol use. Some integrative medicine centers offer “coaching” in nutrition, physical fitness, stress management, and emotional and spiritual health as parts of a broad-spectrum approach. Such comprehensive interventions have been shown, for example, to slow the progress of atherosclerosis and are now covered in the United States by Medicare (Frieden 2005).

This philosophic perspective of integrative medicine is in sharp contrast with currently covered health care, particularly in the USA. The result of the current health care system is escalating costs and life expectancy that is among the lowest in developed countries. In 2009, after reviewing the state of health care, the Institute of Medicine wrote in its report on Integrative Medicine and the Health of the Public, “the disease-driven approach to care has resulted in spiraling costs as well as a fragmented health system that is reactive and episodic as well as inefficient and impersonal” (Schultz et al. 2009). The need for more cost-effective programs that encourage wellness, foster health-promoting behavior, and deliver patient-centered care over the lifespan is now becoming part of public discourse, and integrative medicine and health are increasingly considered to be important in meeting this need.

Evidence Base for Integrative Medicine

The Cochrane Library lists thousands of clinical trials of integrative and complementary medicine approaches, and hundreds of reviews of these studies. Many early reviews noted that this literature was characterized by small sample sizes and research designs with methodological weaknesses. Over the last 20 years, supported by research funded by NCCIH and OCCAM, the evidence base continued has grown. In addition to larger, well-designed clinical trials that demonstrate efficacy of integrative approaches, such as acupuncture and yoga, laboratory-based studies have provided greater understanding of mechanisms by which these interventions exercise their influence. This growing body of research has helped establish the biological plausibility needed to reassure the conventional medicine community about the value of integrative approaches to health. In recent years, as evidence of greater acceptance of integrative medicine, other NIH Institutes and Centers including NHLBI, NIA, NIDA, and NIDDK are funding integrative medicine research and further extending the evidence base.

An important indication of the state of evidence in support of integrative medicine is provided by the establishment in 2011 of the Office of

Patient Centered Care and Cultural Transformation within the Veterans Health Administration (VHA) in the United States. This new office is charged with transforming the care of Veterans to a patient-driven care approach that prioritizes each Veteran and generates a personalized strategy to optimize well-being, health, and healing. Included in this personalized strategy are a wide spectrum of integrative approaches to health including mindfulness, acupuncture, and yoga.

In preparation for including integrative medicine in this new approach to care, the VA funded and published evidence maps for the various integrative therapies, which reviewed the literature regarding efficacy for various health conditions (Krejci et al. 2014). By 2014, the “Cultural Transformation” of the VA moved forward with the creation of the VHA Integrative Health Coordinating Center to remove barriers to providing integrative health, based on the evidence maps, across the VA system, and to serve as a resource to clinicians and Veterans.

Relevance to Pain Management

While the evidence-base for various approaches to integrative medicine has grown, a primary focus of research has been on integrative approaches to pain, particularly back pain, which is the leading reason that adults turn to integrative medicine. In its report, *Relieving Pain in America*, the Institute of Medicine highlighted pain as a national public health problem with profound physical, psychological, and societal costs (Institute of Medicine 2011). While estimates vary depending on the survey methods used to assess pain, it is estimated that 50 million US adults experience chronic pain, and of those, 19.6 million report high-impact pain that interferes with daily activities (Dahlhamer et al. 2018). The annual financial cost of pain to the USA is projected to be between \$560 and \$635 billion (Gaskin and Richard 2012). In its report, *Pain Management and the Opioid Epidemic*, the National Academy of Sciences, captured the current problem with its statement that “the ongoing opioid crisis lies at the intersection of two substantial public health challenges — reducing the burden of suffering from pain and containing the

rising toll of the harms that can result from the use of opioid medications” (National Academy of Sciences 2017).

Given the prevalence and cost of pain to society, there is increased attention to clinical trial evidence supporting integrative approaches for back pain. Among a number of clinical trials, two noninferiority studies that focused on comparing integrative approaches to other effective therapies and to usual care are particularly relevant. In one of these studies, mindfulness meditation showed positive effects on reducing back pain and improving function that were similar to those reported by cognitive behavior therapy (CBT), and both mindfulness and CBT were superior to usual care (Cherkin et al. 2016). In the other study, yoga showed positive effects on reducing back pain and improving function similar to physical therapy, and both yoga and physical therapy were superior to the effects of usual care supplemented by a self-help booklet (Saper et al. 2017).

The best indicator of the strength of the evidence base for integrative medicine approaches in general, and to pain in particular, has been endorsement of these approaches in guidelines and recommendations for care. In 2017, the American College of Physicians (Qaseem et al. 2017) changed the clinical practice guidelines for chronic low back pain, stating that for patients with chronic low back pain, clinicians and patients should initially select nonpharmacologic treatments and listed acupuncture, mindfulness-based stress reduction, tai chi, yoga among the recommended approaches. That same year, the Institute for Clinical and Economic Review, a nonprofit organization that evaluates evidence on the value of medical treatments and moves that evidence into action reviewed nonpharmacologic approaches for low back pain and concluded that acupuncture, mindfulness-based stress reduction, yoga, and CBT had sufficient evidence to recommend their use (ICER 2017).

In 2019, the US Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) convened a Pain Management Best Practices Inter-Agency Task Force which produced a report to address acute and chronic pain in light of the ongoing opioid crisis

(HHS 2019). This report recommends an integrative medicine approach for pain management. Specifically, the report calls for an individualized, patient-centered approach to pain management that includes a therapeutic alliance between each patient and clinicians, emphasizing a multidisciplinary approach for chronic pain using a wide range of treatment modalities including acupuncture, meditation, yoga, tai chi, and other behavioral and integrative practices.

In summary, integrative medicine and health is a rapidly growing field that merges the best of complementary and behavioral or lifestyle medicine with conventional medicine. Initially driven by consumer dissatisfaction with aspects of biomedicine, it reasserts the importance of a patient-centered, individualized approach and the need to consider health and disease within a holistic orientation. It is developing relevant methodology for systematic investigation of the validity and utility of complex interventions and for investigation of the importance of health and wellness within the context of the interactions of the individual with the environment. The ultimate success of integrative medicine will depend upon the extension of evidence of efficacy for pain management to other conditions; increased understanding of the mechanisms underlying the effects of integrative and behavioral approaches; and demonstration that integrative and lifestyle factors build resilience and enhance wellness and quality of life across the lifespan.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Acupuncture](#)
- ▶ [Alternative Medicine](#)
- ▶ [Chronic Disease Management](#)
- ▶ [Chronic Disease or Illness](#)
- ▶ [Comparative Effectiveness Research](#)
- ▶ [Cost-Effectiveness](#)
- ▶ [Exercise, Benefits of](#)
- ▶ [Health Policy/Health-Care Policy](#)
- ▶ [Patient-Centered Care](#)
- ▶ [Physical Activity and Health](#)
- ▶ [Placebo and Placebo Effect](#)
- ▶ [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)

- Self-care
- Self-management
- Sleep
- Stress
- Stress Management
- Yoga

References and Further Readings

- Astin, J. (1998). Why patients use alternative medicine results of a national study. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 279(19), 1548–1553.
- Barnes, P. M., Powell-Griner, E., McFann, K., & Nahin, R. L. (2004). *Complementary and alternative medicine use among adults: United States, 2002* (Advance data from vital and health statistics; no 343). Hyattsville: National Center for Health Statistics.
- Barnes, P. M., Bloom, B., & Nahin, R. L. (2008). *Complementary and alternative medicine use among adults and children: United States, 2007* (Advance data from vital and health statistics; no 12). Hyattsville: National Center for Health Statistics.
- Cherkin, D. C., Sherman, K. J., Balderson, B. H., Cook, A. J., Anderson, M. L., Hawkes, R. J., Hansen, B. S., & Turner, J. A. (2016). Effect of mindfulness-based stress reduction vs. cognitive behavior therapy or usual care on back pain and functional limitations in adults with chronic low back pain: A randomized clinical trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 315(12), 1240–1249.
- Cohen, S., Tyrrell, D. A., & Smith, P. (1991). Psychological stress in humans and susceptibility to the common cold. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 325(9), 606–612.
- Consortium of Academic Health Centers for Integrative Medicine. (2019). *Definition of integrative medicine*. Retrieved August 31, 2019, from <http://www.imconsortium.org/about/home.html>
- Dahlhamer, J., Lucas, J., Zelaya, C., Nahin, R., Mackey, S., DeBar, L., Kerns, R., Von Korff, M., Porter, L., & Helmick, C. (2018). Prevalence of chronic pain and high-impact chronic pain among adults – United States, 2016. *Morbidity Mortality Weekly Report*, 67(36), 1001–1006.
- Eisenberg, D. M., Kessler, R. C., Foster, C., Norlock, F. E., Calkins, D. R., & Delbanco, T. L. (1993). Unconventional medicine in the United States – Prevalence, costs & patterns of use. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 328, 246–252.
- Frieden, J. (2005). CMS panel backs coverage for lifestyle programs. *Clinical Psychiatry News*, 1, 72.
- Gaskin, D. J., & Richard, P. (2012). The economic costs of pain in the United States. *Journal of Pain*, 13(8), 715–724.
- Institute of Medicine. (2009). *Integrative medicine and the health of the public: A summary of the February 2009 summit*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press (US).
- Institute for Clinical and Economic Review. (2017). *Chronic low back and neck pain: Final report*. Retrieved, August 30, 2019 from <https://icer-review.org/material/back-and-neck-pain-final-report/>
- Institute of Medicine. (2011). *Relieving pain in America: A blueprint for transforming prevention, care, education, and research*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press (US). <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK91497/>. Accessed 29 Aug 2019.
- Krejci, L. P., Carter, K., & Gaudet, T. (2014). The vision and implementation of personalized, proactive, patient-driven health care for veterans. *Medical Care*, 52(12, Suppl 5), S5–S8.
- National Academy of Sciences Engineering and Medicine. (2017). *Pain management and the opioid epidemic: Balancing society and individual benefits and risks of prescription opioid use* (p. 1). Washington, DC: The National Academies Press.
- Qaseem, A., Wilt, T. J., McLean, R. M., Forciea, M. A., & Clinical Guidelines Committee of the American College of Physicians. (2017). Noninvasive treatments for acute, subacute, and chronic low back pain: A clinical practice guideline from the American College of Physicians. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 166(7), 514–530.
- Saper, R. B., Lemaster, C., Delitto, A., Sherman, K. J., Herman, P. M., Sadkova, E., Stevans, J., Keosaian, J. E., Cerrada, C. J., Femia, A. L., Roseen, E. J., Gardiner, P., Barnett, K. G., Faulkner, C., & Weinberg, J. (2017). Yoga, physical therapy, or education for chronic low back pain. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 167(2), 85–94.
- Schultz, A. M., Chao, S. M., McGinnis, J. M., & Institute of Medicine. (2009). *Integrative medicine and the health of the public: A summary of the February 2009 summit*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press.
- Snyderman, R., & Weil, A. T. (2002). Integrative medicine. Bringing medicine back to its roots. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 162, 395–397.
- Steptoe, A., & Kivimäki, M. (2012). Stress and cardiovascular disease. *Nature Reviews Cardiology*, 9(6), 360–370.
- United States Department of Health and Human Services. (2019). *Report on pain management best practices: Updates, gaps, inconsistencies, and recommendations*. Retrieved August 30, 2019 from <https://www.hhs.gov/sites/default/files/pmtf-final-report-2019-05-23.pdf>

Intellectual Disability

- Developmental Disabilities

Intellectual Testing

► Assessment

Intended Parent

► Surrogacy

Intention

Peter A. Hall
Faculty of Applied Health Sciences, University of
Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Definition

Intention strength can be defined as the quantity of personal resources that an individual is prepared to invest in executing a behavior. Intention strength is closely akin to the concept of “motivation,” with high levels of intention strength understood to represent strong motivation to perform a behavior. Intentions play a prominent role in several theories of health behavior, including the *theory of reasoned action* (Fishbein and Ajzen 1975), the *theory of planned behavior* (Ajzen and Madden 1986), the *health action process approach* (Schwarzer 2001), and the *temporal self-regulation theory* (Hall and Fong 2007). From an empirical perspective, intentions are among the strongest predictors of health behavior performance. However, a number of factors are known to moderate intention-behavior relations, including perceived/actual controllability of the behavior, as well as habit strength (Webb and Sheeran 2006).

Cross-References

- Cognitive Mediators
- Theory of Reasoned Action

References and Further Readings

- Ajzen, I., & Madden, T. J. (1986). Prediction of goal-directed behavior: Attitudes, intentions, and perceived behavioral control. *Journal of Experimental Social Psychology*, 22, 453–474.
- Fishbein, M., & Ajzen, I. (1975). *Belief, attitude, intention and behavior: An introduction to theory and research*. Reading: Addison-Wesley.
- Hall, P. A., & Fong, G. T. (2007). Temporal self-regulation theory: A model for individual health behavior. *Health Psychology Review*, 1, 6–52.
- Schwarzer, R. (2001). Social-cognitive factors in changing health-related behaviors. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 10, 47–51.
- Webb, T. L., & Sheeran, P. (2006). Does changing behavioral intentions engender behavior change? A meta-analysis of the experimental evidence. *Psychological Bulletin*, 132, 249–268.

Interleukins

► Cytokines

Interleukins, -1 (IL-1), -6 (IL-6), -18 (IL-18)

Nicolas Rohleder
Department of Psychology, Brandeis University,
Waltham, MA, USA

Synonyms

B-cell stimulatory factor 2; Cytotoxic T cell differentiation factor; Hepatocyte stimulating factor; Hybridoma growth factor; Hybridoma plasmacytoma growth factor; Lymphocyte-activating factor (LAF)

Definition

Interleukins (IL) are chemical messenger molecules of the immune system, and therefore fall into the category of cytokines. The term “interleukin” denotes their primarily ascribed function, i.e.,

the communication between (inter) white blood cells (leukocytes). IL-1, IL-6, and IL-18 are pro-inflammatory cytokines due to their predominant function to stimulate inflammatory processes in target cells.

Interleukin-1 is one of the first discovered cytokines, and consists of a family of three different molecules: IL-1alpha and IL-1beta exert their actions through binding to different members of the IL-1 receptor family, while the third molecule IL-1 receptor antagonist (IL-1ra) blocks these effects. The IL-1 family of cytokines was first cloned in 1984 (for a summary, see Dinarello 1994). IL-1 has a wide range of effects, which include activation of interleukin-6 gene expression and other inflammatory mechanisms, thereby making it a central pro-inflammatory cytokine. In addition to inflammatory stimuli, IL-1 can also be activated by psychosocial factors: For example, IL-1beta gene expression has been shown to be upregulated following an acute laboratory stress paradigm (Brydon et al. 2005), and the same was reported for plasma concentrations of IL-1ra (Rohleder et al. 2006).

Interleukin-6 was first described as a T lymphocyte derived factor that was required for antibody production by B lymphocytes, and was consequently called B-cell stimulatory factor-2 (summarized, e.g., in Kishimoto 2010). Additional functions were described in parallel, and led to the existence of different names for the same substance (e.g., hybridoma/plasmacytoma growth factor, or hepatocyte stimulating factor, etc.), and only the cloning of the molecule made clear that it was indeed the same protein, which was then named IL-6 (Poupart et al. 1987). IL-6 effects are not limited to the immune system, but include many tissues throughout the body. IL-6 is therefore frequently referred to as a pleiotropic or endocrine cytokine (Papanicolaou and Vgontzas 2000). While originally thought to be secreted only from immune cells upon inflammatory stimulation, it is now clear that IL-6 is secreted from a variety of cells, e.g., adipocytes and endothelial cells (e.g., Hoch et al. 2008; Kobayashi et al. 2003). IL-6 acts by interaction with a complex of the IL-6 receptor (IL-6R) and an additional protein gp130 (Heinrich et al. 1998) and subsequent

activation of the JAK-Stat pathway, ultimately inducing transcription of inflammatory gene products (Kishimoto 2010).

Interleukin-18 was first cloned in 1995 and referred to as interferon-gamma inducing factor (IGIF) (Okamura et al. 1995). IL-18 shares some similarities in origin, receptors, and signaling pathways with the inflammatory cytokine IL-1, which implies overlaps in function, and underscores the role of IL-18 in inflammatory signaling (Arend et al. 2008). In contrast to IL-6, IL-18 seems to be produced mainly by cells of the immune system, such as monocytes/macrophages and dendritic cells. Similar to IL-6, however, IL-18 has the potential to affect more than immune cells, because the IL-18 receptor complex is present on endothelial cells, smooth muscle cells, as well as cells involved in bone and cartilage formation, in addition to immune cells. IL-18 signals through a receptor complex that bears similarity with the IL-1 receptor system, and as such activates the transcription of inflammatory gene products (Arend et al. 2008).

Inflammatory cytokines are interesting molecules in biobehavioral research, because they serve as a link between central nervous system states with pathophysiological factors that are central in a variety of human diseases. Inflammatory cytokine production is modulated by the sympathetic nervous system and the hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal axis, and pro-inflammatory cytokines in blood are sensitive to acute and chronic stress, and found to be increased in depression and posttraumatic stress disorder (e.g., Steptoe et al. 2007; Rohleder et al. 2009, 2010). Inflammatory cytokines also increase with age, and have been found to predict later life morbidity and mortality (e.g., Bruunsgaard et al. 2003).

Cross-References

- [Depression](#)
- [Inflammation](#)
- [Post Traumatic Stress Disorder](#)
- [Psychoneuroimmunology](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Readings

- Arend, W. P., Palmer, G., & Gabay, C. (2008). IL-1, IL-18, and IL-33 families of cytokines. *Immunological Reviews*, 223, 20–38.
- Bruunsgaard, H., Ladelund, S., Pedersen, A. N., Schroll, M., Jorgensen, T., & Pedersen, B. K. (2003). Predicting death from tumour necrosis factor-alpha and interleukin-6 in 80-year-old people. *Clinical and Experimental Immunology*, 132(1), 24–31.
- Brydon, L., Edwards, S., Jia, H., Mohamed-Ali, V., Zachary, I., Martin, J. F., et al. (2005). Psychological stress activates interleukin-1beta gene expression in human mononuclear cells. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 19(6), 540–546.
- Dinareello, C. A. (1994). The interleukin-1 family: 10 years of discovery. *The FASEB Journal*, 8(15), 1314–1325.
- Heinrich, P. C., Behrmann, I., Muller-Newen, G., Schaper, F., & Graeve, L. (1998). Interleukin-6-type cytokine signalling through the Gp130/Jak/Stat pathway. *Biochemical Journal*, 334(Pt 2), 297–314.
- Hoch, M., Eberle, A. N., Peterli, R., Peters, T., Seboek, D., Keller, U., et al. (2008). LPS induces interleukin-6 and interleukin-8 but not tumor necrosis factor-alpha in human adipocytes. *Cytokine*, 41(1), 29–37.
- Kishimoto, T. (2010). IL-6: From its discovery to clinical applications. *International Immunology*, 22(5), 347–352.
- Kobayashi, S., Nagino, M., Komatsu, S., Naruse, K., Nimura, Y., Nakanishi, M., et al. (2003). Stretch-induced IL-6 secretion from endothelial cells requires NF-kappaB activation. *Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications*, 308(2), 306–312.
- Okamura, H., Tsutsi, H., Komatsu, T., Yutsudo, M., Hakura, A., Tanimoto, T., et al. (1995). Cloning of a new cytokine that induces IFN-gamma production by T cells. *Nature*, 378(6552), 88–91.
- Papanicolaou, D. A., & Vgontzas, A. N. (2000). Interleukin-6: The endocrine cytokine. *The Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 85(3), 1331–1333.
- Poupart, P., Vandenabeele, P., Cayphas, S., Van Snick, J., Haegeman, G., Kruys, V., et al. (1987). B cell growth modulating and differentiating activity of recombinant human 26-kd protein (BSF-2, HuIFN-beta 2, HPGF). *The EMBO Journal*, 6(5), 1219–1224.
- Rohleder, N., Wolf, J. M., Herpfer, I., Fiebich, B. L., Kirschbaum, C., & Lieb, K. (2006). No response of plasma substance P, but delayed increase of interleukin-1 receptor antagonist to acute psychosocial stress. *Life Sciences*, 78(26), 3082–3089.
- Rohleder, N., Marin, T. J., Ma, R., & Miller, G. E. (2009). Biologic cost of caring for a cancer patient: Dysregulation of pro- and anti-inflammatory signaling pathways. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 27(18), 2909–2915.
- Rohleder, N., Wolf, J. M., & Wolf, O. T. (2010). Glucocorticoid sensitivity of cognitive and inflammatory processes in depression and posttraumatic stress disorder. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 35(1), 104–114.
- Steptoe, A., Hamer, M., & Chida, Y. (2007). The effects of acute psychological stress on circulating inflammatory factors in humans: A review and meta-analysis. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 21(7), 901–912.

Intermediate Variable

► Mediators

Intermittent Claudication

► Peripheral Arterial Disease (PAD)/Vascular Disease

Internal and External Validity Issues

► RE-AIM Guidelines

International Society of Behavioral Medicine

Neil Schneiderman

Department of Psychology, Behavioral Medicine Research Center, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

The International Society of Behavioral Medicine (ISBM) is a federation of 26 national, regional, and more specialized scientific societies, whose goal is to serve the needs of all health-related disciplines concerned with issues relevant to behavioral medicine. Behavioral medicine is the interdisciplinary field concerned with the development and integration of sociocultural, psychosocial, behavioral, and biomedical knowledge relevant to health and illness and the application of this knowledge to disease prevention, health

promotion, etiology, diagnosis, treatment, and rehabilitation. Each full member constituent society of the ISBM includes both biomedical and behavioral scientists. Societies with interests relevant to behavioral medicine, but which do not meet all criteria for membership (e.g., having both biomedical and behavioral scientists as individual members), may apply to become affiliate members. The Division of Health Psychology of the American Psychological Association and the Society of Pediatric Psychology are affiliate members.

History of the Organization

The ISBM was founded in conjunction with the First International Congress of Behavioral Medicine, held in Uppsala, Sweden, in 1990. Prior to that with some limited travel support from the Rockefeller Foundation and the Behavioral Medicine Research Center at Duke University (Redford Williams), Kristina Orth-Gomér, President of the Swedish Society of Behavioral Medicine, and Stephen Weiss, Chief of the Behavioral Medicine Branch of the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute of the NIH, led the effort to create the ISBM. There were six founding organizations consisting of Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research, USA; Czechoslovakia Medical Association Section on Neurohumoral Integration and Behavioral Medicine; German Association of Behavioral Medicine and Behavior Modification; Dutch Behavioral Medicine Federation; Society of Behavioral Medicine, USA; and Swedish Society of Behavioral Medicine. The original Governing Council consisted of Ruud Beunderman (Netherlands); Irmela Florin and Gudrun Sartory (Germany); Milan Horvath (Czechoslovakia); Gunilla Burell and Kristina Orth-Gomér (Sweden); and Neil Schneiderman and Stephen Weiss (USA). Andrew Steptoe (UK) was also a member of the Governing Council, this being linked to his membership in the Society of Behavioral Medicine and his involvement in the initial planning of ISBM. The

original planning meetings took place from 1986 to 1989 and were held in San Francisco, London, Leiden, Stockholm, Zurich, and Marburg.

It is important to note that societies rather than individual persons belong to ISBM. An individual, living in a country that does not have a society that belongs to ISBM, can derive ISBM benefits (e.g., reduced registration fees for the International Congress; journal access) by joining an existing society belonging to ISBM. Listing of the constituent societies of the ISBM as well as the bylaws, charter, membership information, activities of the society, newsletter, and members of the Executive Committee, Board, and Governing Council can be found at the ISBM website <http://www.isbm.info>.

The governance of the ISBM occurs through its Governing Council, Executive Committee, and Board. During the first decade of the ISBM, the elected officers, committee chairs, and national representatives (Governing Council) substantially overlapped and usually met jointly. Beginning in 2004, the Board was formally organized and met separately from the Governing Council before reporting to the Council. The Council has final responsibility for executive decisions. Council is comprised of one voting representative from each member society of the ISBM, who is designated by that society. The Board, which conducts the normal deliberative business of the ISBM between Council meetings, reports to the Council. In instances in which the ISBM President finds that there is need for immediate action by a group smaller than the Board, the President will call upon an Executive Committee consisting of the President, Past-President, President-Elect, Secretary, and Treasurer. The Board consists of the members of the Executive Committee; the chairs of the Communications, Education and Training, Finance, International Collaborative Studies, Membership, Nominating, Organizational Liaison, Program, and Strategic Planning Committees; as well as the editors of the IJBM and newsletter and any elected member(s)-at-large. Although the outcome of elections is based upon the votes of the Governing Council, the ISBM has attempted to consider balance in terms of

International Society of Behavioral Medicine, Table 1 A listing of ISBM presidents, congresses, and program chairs is presented

	President	Term	Congress	Date	ISBM program chair(s)
1.			Uppsala	1990	Arne Öhman/Andrew Steptoe
2.	Stephen Weiss	1990–1992	Hamburg	1992	Kristina Orth-Gomér
3.	Kristina Orth-Gomér	1992–1994	Amsterdam	1994	Neil Schneiderman
4.	Andrew Steptoe	1994–1996	Washington	1996	Ad Appels/Craig Ewart (SBM)
5.	Johannes Siegrist	1996–1998	Copenhagen	1998	Jane Wardle
6.	Neil Schneiderman	1998–2000	Brisbane	2000	Margaret Chesney
7.	Brian Oldenberg	2000–2002	Helsinki	2002	Christina Lee
8.	Gunilla Burell	2002–2004	Mainz	2004	Neil Schneiderman
9.	Antti Uutela	2004–2006	Bangkok	2006	Brian Oldenburg
10.	Redford Williams	2006–2008	Tokyo	2008	Theresa Marteau
11.	Hege Eriksen	2008–2010	Washington	2010	Linda Baumann
12.	Norito Kawakami	2010–2012	Budapest	2012	Frank Penedo
13.	Joost Dekker	2012–2014	Groningen	2014	Ronan O'Carroll
14.	Adrienne Stauder	2014–2016	Melbourne	2016	Akizumi Tsutsumi
15.	Frank Penedo	2016–2018	Santiago	2018	Lara Trager
16.	Urs Nater	2018–2020	Glasgow	2020	Judith Prins

discipline, scientific stature, gender, and age. A list of current officers and committee chairs of the ISBM may be found on the ISBM website Table 1.

Elect of the ISBM presents the Irmela Florin Memorial Lecture. This lecture is given in honor of Irmela Florin, one of the founding members of the Governing Council of ISBM, who died prematurely of breast cancer.

International Congress of Behavioral Medicine

In planning the First International Congress, which was held in Uppsala, Sweden, in 1990, an International Program Committee was organized with Arne Öhman and Andrew Steptoe as coordinators and Ruud Beunderman, Irmela Florin, Milan Horvath, Kristina Orth-Gomér, Albert Stunkard, Neil Schneiderman, and Stephen Weiss as committee members.

The International Congresses feature keynote addresses, master lectures, symposia, oral presentations, posters, and preconference workshops. Oral presentations and symposia are organized as approximately 25 separate tracks and are presented in 7 or 8 parallel sessions over the course of 3 days. A unique feature of each symposium is that it usually features representation from more than one country with participation from more than one discipline. In addition to words of welcome at the opening ceremony, the President-

International Journal of Behavioral Medicine

Besides the congresses, a second major vehicle for promoting interdisciplinary, international scientific communication by the ISBM has been through the *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine (IJBM)*. The IJBM, which is the official publication of the ISBM, presents original research and integrative reviews on interactions among behavioral, psychosocial, environmental, genetic, and biomedical factors relevant to health and illness. Scope of the IJBM extends from research on biobehavioral mechanisms and clinical studies on diagnosis, treatment, and rehabilitation to research on public health, including health promotion and prevention. The IJBM was originally published in 1994 with Lawrence Erlbaum Associates as the publisher and Neil Schneiderman (1994–1998) as founding editor. Ulf Lundberg succeeded Schneiderman as editor

from 1999 to 2005 and was himself succeeded by Joost Dekker (2006–2011). Starting with volume 16 in 2009, under the editorship of Dekker, Springer became the publisher of IJBM. Beginning in 2012 the editorship of the IJBM passed to Christina Lee. In 2018 Tracey Revenson and Michael Hoyt were named Editors-in-Chief of the IJBM.

Throughout its existence, the IJBM has had a strong, scholarly group of associate editors, balanced in terms of discipline, scientific expertise, geography, and gender. They, in turn, have been supported by an effective editorial board. Within the ISBM, the reach of the journal is extensive as all members of ISBM member societies receive free access to the online version of the IJBM. The IJBM offers a free table of contents and an alert e-mail service that notifies individuals as soon as a new issue of IJBM has been published online. The relationship with Springer as a publisher has been particularly strong. Beginning in 2014 the journal increased from four to six issues per year, the number of pages has increased, and publication lag time has decreased. More space has been set aside for Special Issues highlighting specific concerns of global interest.

Encyclopedia Behavioral Medicine

Springer has also played an important role in publishing an *Encyclopedia of Behavioral Medicine*, with the first edition published in 2013, edited by Marc Gellman with J. Rick Turner serving as Co-editor. The second edition of *Encyclopedia of Behavioral Medicine*, published in 2020, with Marc Gellman as Editor-in-Chief. Many of the associate editors, members of the advisory board, and contributors are scientists who have been active in the ISBM.

Other Activities of ISBM

Another important outreach activity of the ISBM has been involvement in the **European Guidelines on Cardiovascular Disease Prevention in Clinical Practice**. The first joint

recommendations published in 1994 reflected a consensus statement from the European Society of Cardiology, European Atherosclerosis Society, and European Society of Hypertension. A revision was published in 1998 by the same three societies but expanded to include the European Society of General Practice/Family Medicine, the European Heart Network, and the ISBM. Kristina Orth-Gomér was instrumental in securing the participation of ISBM and provided strong leadership, thus insuring that behavioral medicine expertise was incorporated into the guidelines. These efforts, and continued European Guideline publications involving the ISBM, have been continued through the efforts of Gunilla Burell and Christian Albus.

Another vehicle for promoting interdisciplinary, international scientific communication has been within the ISBM itself through a very informative well-thought out ISBM Newsletter. Published twice per year, the newsletter provides an outlet for communication to and from the membership of the constituent societies of the ISBM including reports from the ISBM president, newsletter editor, IJBM editor, ISBM committee chairs (e.g., program committee), information of interest from member societies, and interviews with various people who have contributed to the development of the ISBM. Editors of the newsletter have included Hege Eriksen (2004–2005), Linda Cameron (2006–2007), Urs Nater (2008–2010), Beate Ditzen (2011–2015), and Luke Wolfenden (2015–2019).

Still another vehicle for promoting interdisciplinary, international scientific communication has been through education and training activities including workshops and teaching seminars that have featured collaborations between prominent members of the ISBM and potential, emerging, or established member societies. These have led to the founding or strengthening of member societies of the ISBM and to published volumes (e.g., Orth-Gomér and Schneiderman 1996). The Education and Training Committee also has interest in monitoring, developing, and publicizing curricula relevant to behavioral medicine. Under the leadership of Anne Berman, the Education and Training Committee has been working on

developing online behavioral medicine courses and curricula.

The ISBM involvement in teaching seminars reaches as far back as Prague in 1990 (hosted by Milan Horvath) and includes many subsequent seminars such as Venezuela in 2003 (hosted by Nuri Bagés), Budapest in 2004 (organized by Maria Kopp and Brian Oldenberg), and Romania in 2005 (hosted by Adriana Baban). In addition, the ISBM has played an important participatory role in such conferences as the Thai Forum on Behavioral Medicine in Bangkok, Thailand in 2001 (hosted by Naiphinich “Nick” Kotchabhakdi), a Latin-American and Caribbean Meeting in Behavioral Medicine in Mexico City in 2005 (hosted by Graciela Rodriguez), and an international conference in Santiago, Chile, in 2013 (hosted by Eleana Guic and Paula Repetto). Some of these seminars and conferences have led to important research collaborations such as that between Redford and Virginia Williams with Maria Kopp, Adrienne Stauder, and colleagues involving the use of Life Skills training in Hungary. Similarly, visits to China by Brian Oldenburg and Joost Dekker have led to the publication of research papers.

Another important development in the ISBM has been its involvement of young scientists in all aspects of the organization. In 2010 the ISBM, under the leadership of Carina Chan, founded an International Network for Supporting Promising Individual Researchers in Early (INSPIRE) careers. INSPIRE has membership on the ISBM Board and is the primary information-sharing and communication medium in the organization. As such INSPIRE has collaborated with the various committee chairs on the ISBM Board to initiate dissemination and mentoring activities through the International Congresses of Behavioral Medicine and the *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*.

References and Further Reading

Orth-Gomér, K., & Schneiderman, N. (1996). *Behavioral medicine approaches to cardiovascular disease prevention*. Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Internet Based Intervention Cost Analysis

► [eHealth Cost-Effectiveness](#)

Internet Science

► [Internet-Based Studies](#)

Internet-Based Interventions

► [eHealth and Behavioral Intervention Technologies](#)

Internet-Based Studies

Ulf-Dietrich Reips

Department of Psychology, Universität Konstanz, Konstanz, Germany

Synonyms

[Internet science](#); [Internet-mediated studies](#); [iScience](#); [Web-based studies](#)

Definition

Internet-based studies are roughly systematized in four categories (Reips 2006): Internet-based experiments, web surveys and questionnaires, Internet-based assessment, and nonreactive data collection on the Internet. In a wider sense, studies about human activities on the Internet can also be defined as Internet-based studies.

Description

Beginning

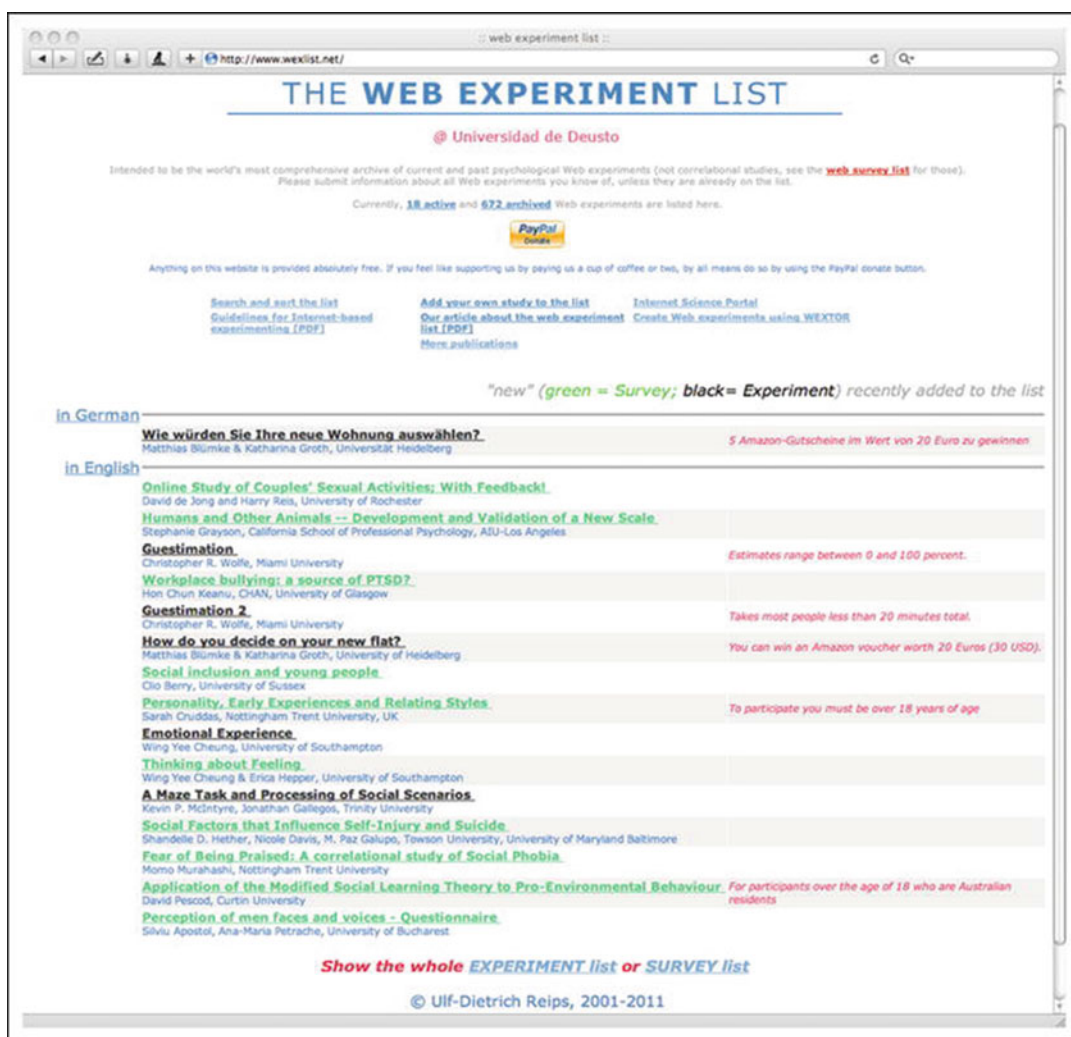
The first Internet-based studies were conducted in the mid-1990s, shortly after the World Wide Web had been invented at CERN in Geneva (Musch and Reips 2000; Reips 2006). Conducting studies via the Internet is considered a second revolution in behavioral research, after the computer revolution in the late 1960s and early 1970s that brought about many advantages over widely used paper-and-pencil procedures (e.g., automated processes, heightened precision). The Internet revolution in behavioral research added the dimension of

interactivity via a worldwide network that resulted in several mostly advantageous characteristics of Internet-based studies (see below).

Examples for studies conducted on the WWW, current and archived, can be viewed at sites like the *Web experiment list* (<http://wexlist.net>, Reips and Lengler 2005) (see Fig. 1) and the *Psychological Research on the Net* list that is maintained by John Krantz (<http://psych.hanover.edu/research/exponnet.html>).

Characteristics

Although Internet-based studies have some inherent limitations due to a lack of control and



Internet-Based Studies, Fig. 1 The web experiment list and web survey list

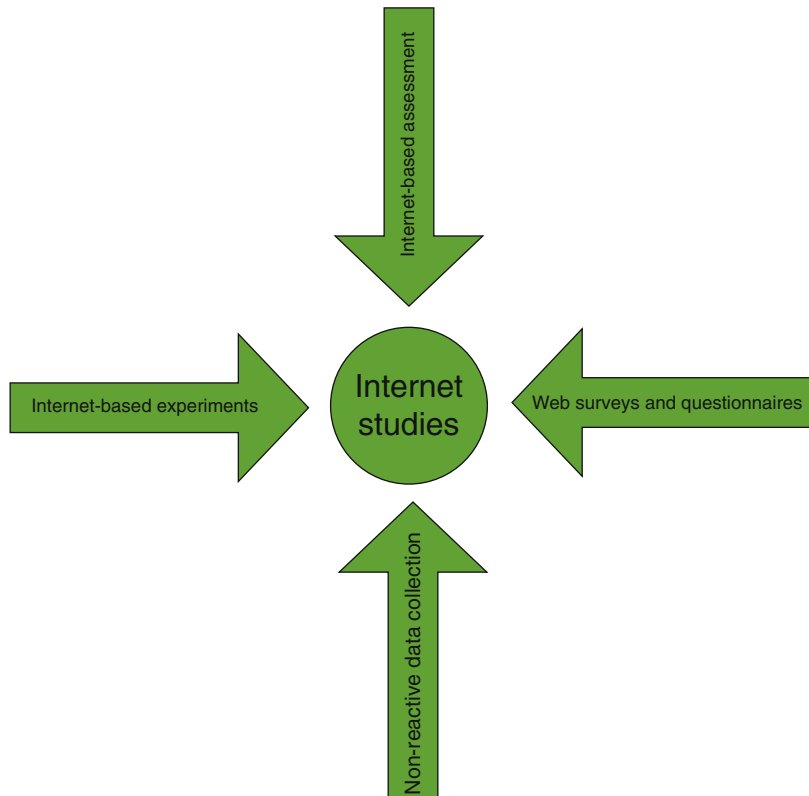
observation of conditions, they also have a number of advantages over lab research (Birnbaum 2004; Kraut et al. 2004; Reips 2002; Schmidt 1997). Some of the chief advantages are that (1) researchers can recruit and study large numbers of participants very quickly; (2) it is possible to collect and access large behavioral data sets (e.g., first experiments with $N > 1000$ on association between numbers and space, Cipora et al. 2019), recruit large heterogeneous samples and people with rare characteristics (e.g., people who have had biofeedback training in more than one country or persons suffering from sexsomnia and their peers, Mangan and Reips 2007) from locations far away; and (3) the method is more cost-effective in time, space, and labor in comparison with lab research. Compared to paper-and-pencil research, most of the advantages of computer-mediated research apply, for example, process variables (“paradata”) that can be recorded (Stieger and Reips 2010).

Types

Internet-based studies are roughly systematized in four categories (Reips 2006, see Fig. 2): Internet-based experiments (Reips 2002), web surveys and questionnaires (Dillman and Bowker 2001; Dillman et al. 2009), Internet-based assessments (Buchanan 2001; Buffardi and Campbell 2008), and nonreactive data collection on the Internet (Reips and Garaizar 2011). Within psychology, most Internet-based research is conducted in the fields of social psychology and cognition (Musch and Reips 2000; Reips and Lengler 2005). Within behavioral medicine, as judged from an analysis of the articles published in the *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, the most frequented fields seem to be e-health and e-mental health, in particular depression, obesity/weight management, and smoking cessation.

In a wider sense, studies about human activities on the Internet (e.g., accessing Internet support groups, online dating) can also be defined as

Internet-Based Studies,
Fig. 2 Types of Internet-based studies



Internet-based studies (e.g., Eysenbach et al. 2004; Whitty and Buchanan 2010).

Recently, the advent of social media, that is, highly interactive Internet-based communication platforms, has spurred the interest of researchers. Social networking services like Facebook, Tuenti, Orkut, LinkedIn, Twitter, and Student VZ are seen as vast resources for detailed descriptions of human behavior (Reips and Garaizar 2011), and thus open source social network systems for use by researchers have been developed (Garaizar and Reips 2019). Providers of large commercial platforms even offer interfaces (so-called APIs or interactive websites) for researchers to study big datasets that come from social media sites or other services like Google search or Google Ngram – a service that provides word frequencies from a massive corpus of 6% of all books that were published since 1800 (Michel et al. 2011) and has recently caught much attention as a tool in research (Younes and Reips 2019).

Methods

For anyone planning to conduct studies via the Internet, it is important to realize that there is a growing body of literature on theoretical insights, empirical results, and practical guidelines that needs to be taken into account when setting up Internet-based data collection. In a recent review, Krantz and Reips (2017) determined that the number of studies conducted online has increased dramatically, accompanied by a certain laxness in methodological rigor, and thus a coherent approach to educating researchers as to the unique features of Internet-based research is needed.

Reips (2002) and Reips and Birnbaum (2011) provide guidelines and overviews of techniques, methods, and tools for Internet-based studies. They summarize challenges and solutions in design, security, recruitment, sampling, self-selection, multiple submissions, reactance-free question design, response time measurement, dropout, error estimation, data handling, and data quality. For example, in creating items for a Web questionnaire, it is often forgotten to add a neutral option (“please choose”) in drop-down menus. Thus, one of the answer options is

automatically selected, even if the respondent skips the item. Another pitfall is the higher likelihood for attrition on the web, compared to lab-based studies. Among other methods that have been developed in web methodology and Internet science, Reips (2010) explains the one-item-one-screen (OIOS) design, the seriousness check, sub-sampling procedures, multiple site entry, and the high hurdle technique and discusses empirical results from investigations into the validity of several of the techniques.

Implications

Most authors agree that the Internet is a viable option for conducting studies in the behavioral and social sciences (Birnbaum 2004; Joinson et al. 2007; Kraut et al. 2004; Musch and Reips 2000; Reips 2002, 2006). Care should be taken to properly implement an adequate methodology suited for Internet-based studies (Krantz and Reips 2017; Reips 2002) and consider potentially biasing effects of technology (Garaizar and Reips 2019; Schmidt 2007).

Two important issues for much of human interaction on and with the Internet are: real and perceived privacy as well as trust, for example, in accessing health-related information via the Internet (Buchanan et al. 2007; Eysenbach et al. 2004). Such information can be accessed more easily via the Internet, in part because it can be found more privately. Threats to privacy on the Internet reduce the willingness to look for information online. Furthermore, people are less likely to search for healthcare information through mechanisms or agencies that they do not trust (Buchanan et al. 2007). For the data quality in Internet-based studies that usually involve self-disclosure, perceived privacy and trust are essential as well (Joinson et al. 2010).

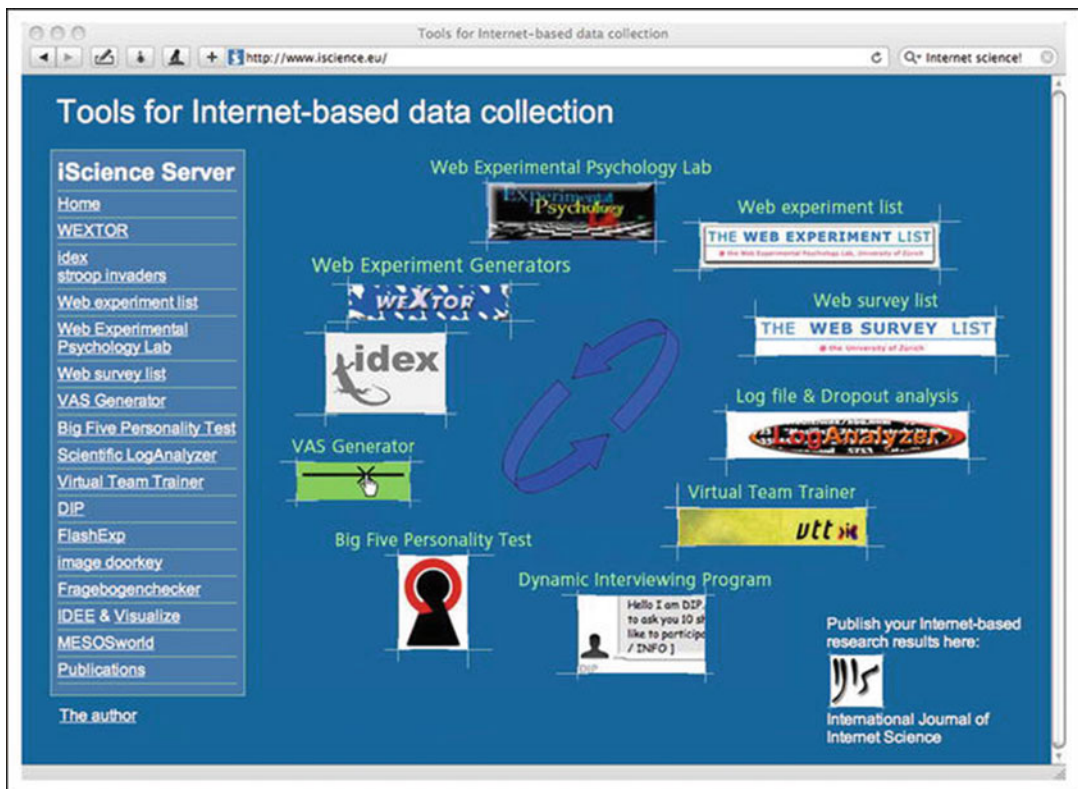
It seems important that authors, reviewers, and editors of articles reporting results from Internet-based studies follow the guidelines that were developed in this new field. Scientists in behavioral medicine considering to conduct research via the Internet will thus need to prepare for challenges like more heterogeneous samples, higher nonresponse, and the effects of mode and

technologies. Benefits like wider reach, better quality of data from truly voluntary respondents, and a reduced tendency for socially desirable responding, reduced costs, and validated tools for Internet-based research will further increase the use of the new methodology.

Resources

The following resources are available for researchers who want to conduct Internet-based studies:

- iScience Server (<https://iscience.eu/>, Fig. 3): A portal for the methodology of Internet-based research
- iScience Maps (<http://tweetminer.eu/>, Reips and Garaizar 2011): A data mining tool for the social media service Twitter
- Questionnaire evaluator (<http://iscience.eu/fbchecker/>): An interactive web tool to examine questions and questionnaires (in German and English)
- Big 5 (<http://webscience.deusto.es/big5/>): A self-scoring Big Five personality test ready for use by simply linking it to another online study (in English, German, and Spanish)
- VAS Generator (<http://www.vasgenerator.net/>, Reips and Funke 2008): A tool to create visual analogue scales (VAS) for online studies
- WEXTOR (<https://wextor.eu>, Reips and Neuhaus 2002, Fig. 4): A system for conducting web-based experiments
- Google Ngram (<https://books.google.com/ngrams>): A search engine that charts word frequencies from a large corpus of books that were printed between 1500 and 2008.



Internet-Based Studies, Fig. 3 A portal for researchers that links to many tools for Internet-based studies: the iScience Server at <https://iscience.eu>



Internet-Based Studies, Fig. 4 WEXTOR, a web service to generate and conduct Internet-based experiments

References and Further Reading

- Birnbaum, M. H. (2004). Human research and data collection via the Internet. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 55, 803–832.
- Buchanan, T. (2001). Online personality assessment. In U.-D. Reips & M. Bosnjak (Eds.), *Dimensions of Internet science* (pp. 57–74). Lengerich: Pabst Science.
- Buchanan, T., Joinson, A. N., Paine, C., & Reips, U.-D. (2007). Looking for medical information on the Internet: Self-disclosure, privacy and trust. *He@lth Information on the Internet*, 58, 83–89. <https://westminsterresearch.westminster.ac.uk/item/91q10/looking-for-medical-information-on-the-internet-self-disclosure-privacy-and-trust>
- Buffardi, L. E., & Campbell, W. K. (2008). Narcissism and social networking web sites. *Personality and Social Psychology Bulletin*, 34, 1303–1314.
- Cipora, K., Soltanlou, M., Reips, U.-D., & Nuerck, H.-C. (2019). The SNARC and MARC effects measured online: Large-scale assessment methods in flexible cognitive effects. *Behavior Research Methods*, 51, 1676–1692. <https://doi.org/10.3758/s13428-019-01213-5>.
- Dillman, D. A., & Bowker, D. (2001). The web questionnaire challenge to survey methodologists. In U.-D. Reips & M. Bosnjak (Eds.), *Dimensions of Internet science* (pp. 159–177). Lengerich: Pabst Science.
- Dillman, D. A., Smyth, J. D., & Christian, L. M. (2009). *Internet, mail and mixed-mode surveys: The tailored design method* (3rd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley.
- Eysenbach, G., Powell, J., Englesakis, M., Rizo, C., & Stern, A. (2004). Health-related virtual communities and electronic support groups: Systematic review of the effects of online peer-to-peer interactions. *British Medical Journal*, 328, 1166–1170.
- Garaizar, P., & Reips, U.-D. (2014). Build your own social network laboratory with Social Lab: A tool for research in social media. *Behavior Research Methods*, 46, 430–438. <https://doi.org/10.3758/s13428-013-0385-3>.
- Garaizar, P., & Reips, U.-D. (2019). Best practices: Two web browser-based methods for stimulus presentation in

- behavioral experiments with high resolution timing requirements. *Behavior Research Methods*, 51, 1441–1453. <https://doi.org/10.3758/s13428-018-1126-4>.
- Joinson, A. N., McKenna, K., Postmes, T., & Reips, U.-D. (Eds.). (2007). *The Oxford handbook of Internet psychology*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Joinson, A. N., Reips, U.-D., Buchanan, T., & Paine Schofield, C. (2010). Privacy, trust, and self-disclosure online. *Human Computer Interaction*, 25, 1–24.
- Krantz, J., & Reips, U.-D. (2017). The state of web-based research: A survey and call for inclusion in curricula. *Behavior Research Methods*, 49, 1621–1629. <https://doi.org/10.3758/s13428-017-0882-x>.
- Kraut, R., Olson, J., Banaji, M., Bruckman, A., Cohen, J., & Couper, M. (2004). Psychological research online: Report of board of scientific affairs' advisory group on the conduct of research on the Internet. *American Psychologist*, 59, 105–117.
- Mangan, M., & Reips, U.-D. (2007). Sleep, sex, and the Web: Surveying the difficult-to-reach clinical population suffering from sexomnia. *Behavior Research Methods*, 39, 233–236.
- Michel, J. B., Shen, Y. K., Aiden, A. P., Veres, A., Gray, M. K., Pickett, J. P., et al. (2011). Quantitative analysis of culture using millions of digitized books (with supporting online material). *Science*, 331(6014), 176–182. <https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1199644>.
- Musch, J., & Reips, U.-D. (2000). A brief history of web experimenting. In M. H. Birnbaum (Ed.), *Psychological experiments on the Internet* (pp. 61–88). San Diego: Academic.
- Reips, U.-D. (2002). Standards for Internet-based experimenting. *Experimental Psychology*, 49, 243–256.
- Reips, U.-D. (2006). Web-based methods. In M. Eid & E. Diener (Eds.), *Handbook of multimethod measurement in psychology* (pp. 73–85). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Reips, U.-D. (2007). The methodology of Internet-based experiments. In A. Joinson, K. McKenna, T. Postmes, & U.-D. Reips (Eds.), *The Oxford handbook of Internet psychology* (pp. 373–390). Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Reips, U.-D. (2010). Design and formatting in Internet-based research. In S. Gosling & J. Johnson (Eds.), *Advanced Internet methods in the behavioral sciences* (pp. 29–43). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Reips, U.-D., & Birnbaum, M. H. (2011). Behavioral research and data collection via the Internet. In R. W. Proctor & K.-P. L. Vu (Eds.), *The handbook of human factors in web design* (2nd ed.). Mahwah: Erlbaum.
- Reips, U.-D., & Bosnjak, M. (Eds.). (2001). *Dimensions of Internet science*. Lengerich: Pabst Science.
- Reips, U.-D., & Funke, F. (2008). Interval level measurement with visual analogue scales in Internet-based research: VAS Generator. *Behavior Research Methods*, 40, 699–704.
- Reips, U.-D., & Garaizar, P. (2011). Mining Twitter: Microblogging as a source for psychological wisdom of the crowds. *Behavior Research Methods*, 43, 635–642.
- Reips, U.-D., & Lengler, R. (2005). The web experiment list: A web service for the recruitment of participants and archiving of Internet-based experiments. *Behavior Research Methods*, 37, 287–292.
- Reips, U.-D., & Neuhaus, C. (2002). WEXTOR: A web-based tool for generating and visualizing experimental designs and procedures. *Behavior Research Methods, Instruments, & Computers*, 34, 234–240.
- Schmidt, W. C. (1997). World-Wide Web survey research: Benefits, potential problems, and solutions. *Behavior Research Methods, Instruments, & Computers*, 29, 274–279.
- Schmidt, W. C. (2007). Technical considerations when implementing online research. In A. Joinson, K. McKenna, T. Postmes, & U.-D. Reips (Eds.), *The Oxford handbook of Internet psychology* (pp. 461–472). Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Stieger, S., & Reips, U.-D. (2010). What are participants doing while filling in an online questionnaire: A paradata collection tool and an empirical study. *Computers in Human Behavior*, 26, 1488–1495.
- Whitty, M. T., & Buchanan, T. (2010). What's in a "screen name?" Attractiveness of different types of screen names used by online daters. *International Journal of Internet Science*, 5, 5–19.
- Younes, N., & Reips, U.-D. (2019). Guidelines for improving the reliability of Google Ngram studies: Evidence from religious terms. *PLoS One*, 14(3), e0213554. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0213554>.

Internet-Based Therapy

► Online Therapy and E-Counselling

Internet-Mediated Studies

► Internet-Based Studies

Internist

► Primary Care Providers

Interpersonal Circumplex

Timothy W. Smith
Department of Psychology, University of Utah,
Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Synonyms

Affiliation; Control; Dominance; Hostility; Social behavior; Submissiveness; Warmth

Definition

The interpersonal circumplex (IPC; see Fig. 1) is a conceptual model of social behavior, comprising two main dimensions: *affiliation* (i.e., warmth, friendliness vs. hostility, quarrelsomeness) and *control* (i.e., dominance, directiveness vs. submissiveness, deference).

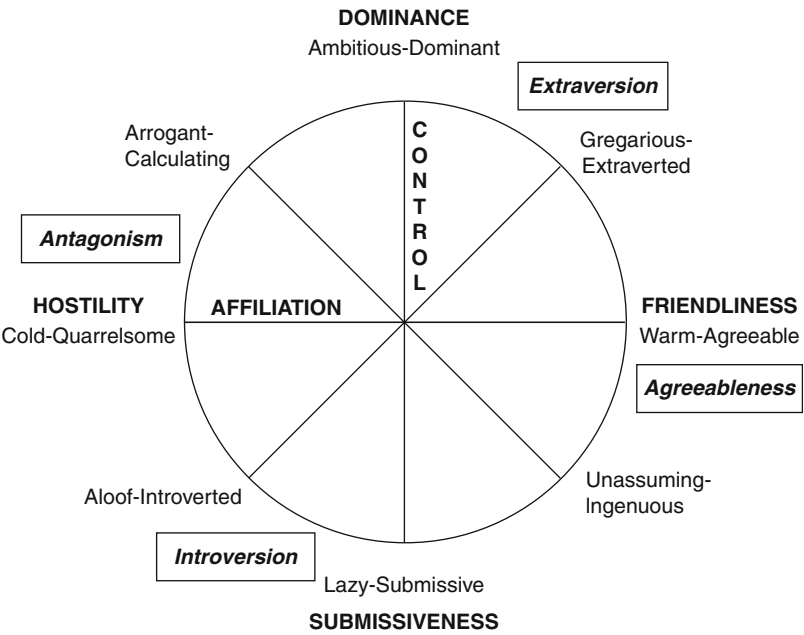
Description

The IPC has a long history, dating to the work of Sullivan, Leary, and other mid-twentieth century

behavioral scientists (for a review, see Fournier et al. 2011). This structural model is a cornerstone of the interpersonal tradition in personality, clinical, and social psychology (Horowitz and Strack 2011) and can be used to describe momentary social behavior, more stable individual differences in social behavior (i.e., personality traits), and characteristics of social relationships and social contexts. The IPC describes specific actions as blends of control and affiliation, and similarly describes personality characteristics and aspects of social relationships as varying in dominance versus submissiveness and warmth versus hostility. In terms of personality traits, as seen in Fig. 1, affiliation and control are rotational equivalents of the Five Factor Model traits of agreeableness versus antagonism and extraversion versus introversion. Agreeableness corresponds to somewhat submissive warmth in the IPC, whereas extraversion corresponds to somewhat warm dominance.

The interpersonal circumplex can also be used to describe social motives. In interpersonal theory, social interactions involve the exchange of two broad and primary social resources: status (i.e., esteem or regard from others) and love (i.e., liking, acceptance, or inclusion by others). These resources are the focus of two similarly broad

Interpersonal Circumplex, Fig. 1 The interpersonal circumplex



social motives; *agency* refers to striving for status, achievement, or power, whereas *communion* refers to striving for connection with others and the maintenance of relationships. Hence, agency and communion are the motivational equivalents of the IPC control and affiliation dimensions, respectively. Dominant behavior reflects an attempt to gain or assert status, whereas deference or submissiveness reflects granting status to an interaction partner. Warm behavior reflects seeking affection, acceptance, or inclusion from interaction partners, or granting such connection to them. Hostile behavior, in contrast, reflects withholding or revoking such connection.

The IPC is the conceptual foundation for another major tenet of the interpersonal tradition – the principle of complementarity (for a review, see Sadler et al. 2011). In this view, social behavior of one individual tends to invite or evoke responses from an interaction partner that are similar in affiliation (i.e., warmth invites warmth; hostility invites hostility) and opposite in control (i.e., dominance invites deference). Empirical evidence regarding complementarity for the affiliation dimension of the IPC is stronger than for the control dimension (Sadler et al. 2011).

In behavioral medicine, psychosomatic medicine, and health psychology, the IPC has been used primarily in the study of psychosocial risk factors for disease and the psychophysiological mechanisms underlying those associations. Specifically, the IPC and the related concept of complementarity are useful in the development of an integrated understanding of psychosocial influences on disease (Smith and Cundiff 2011; Smith et al. 2004). A variety of personality characteristics, symptoms of emotional distress, and emotional disorders have been studied as potential risk factors for serious illnesses (e.g., coronary heart disease), all-cause mortality, and reduced longevity. Similarly, a variety of aspects of social relationships (e.g., social isolation, low social support, conflict or strain in personal relationships) and social contexts (low socioeconomic status of individuals and neighborhoods, job stress) have been examined as risk factors for these same outcomes. However, these risk factors are usually studied individually, with little concern about their potentially overlapping

associations with disease (Smith 2010; Suls and Bunde 2005). Further, risk factors that are conceptualized as aspects of individuals (e.g., personality, emotional distress) are typically seen as a class of influences on disease that is distinct from characteristics of social relationships and contexts also examined as risk factors (e.g., low social support; Lett et al. 2005). This piecemeal approach to risk factors impedes an integrated view of psychosocial risk as it ignores overlapping influences on disease and naturally occurring patterns or aggregations of risk factors (Smith and Cundiff 2011). To address this problem, measures of multiple psychosocial risk factors can be correlated with independent measures of the two IPC dimensions. Such analyses identify the associated interpersonal style or characteristics associated with multiple risk factors and can thereby identify broader or common dimensions of risk.

For example, anger and hostility predict the development and course of coronary heart disease (CHD), as do depression and anxiety (Chida and Steptoe 2009; Nicholson et al. 2006). Each of these individual differences in negative affect is associated with low affiliation in the IPC (Gallo and Smith 1998; Smith et al. 2010). The substantial interrelationship among these negative affective characteristics and the fact that they also share a common interpersonal style characterized by low warmth and high quarrelsomeness suggest that they might have overlapping associations with subsequent disease. The complementarity principle suggests that given this specific interpersonal style, these diverse risk factors should also be associated with low warmth and greater conflict in personal relationships, a prediction supported by a growing body of research (for a review, see Smith and Cundiff 2011). Hence, these diverse risk factors may be linked to adverse health outcomes in part by common interpersonal processes – low levels of social support and high levels of interpersonal conflict.

Risk factors that are conceptualized as aspects of the social environment (e.g., social isolation, low social support, conflict in close relationships) can also be located in the IPC. For example, individuals who report low levels of social support describe their relationships as low in warmth and high in hostility, and reports of conflict and strain in

close relationships are associated with seeing one's partner as expressing little warmth and high levels of both hostility and control (Smith et al. 2010; Trobst 2000). Low socioeconomic status is associated with a variety of negative health outcomes and is also associated with exposure to lower warmth from others and higher levels of both hostility and control (Gallo et al. 2006). That is, low SES individuals often feel both "put off" and "put down" during interactions with others.

The control dimension of the IPC has also been directly related to health outcomes as the personality trait of dominance is associated with greater risk of coronary heart disease (Smith et al. 2008; for a review, see Smith and Cundiff 2011). Further, high levels of control during marital interactions is associated with increased risk of atherosclerosis among men, whereas low levels of warmth are associated with increased risk among women (Smith et al. 2011).

The IPC also provides a framework for examining the psychophysiological mechanisms linking psychosocial risk factors and disease, such as cardiovascular, neuroendocrine, inflammatory, and immunologic responses to stressors. As noted previously, the IPC can be used to describe individual differences in social behavior (i.e., personality traits), stable aspects of social relationships or contexts, momentary social behavior, and social stimuli. With the IPC, these four classes of influences on physiological stress responses can be examined in a single, integrative framework (Smith et al. 2003). In general, the IPC framework and related research calls attention to the importance of recurring patterns of interpersonal behavior as a common process underlying many psychosocial influences on health. The related research suggests that recurring interactions involving low affiliation (i.e., low levels of warmth, high levels of hostility), effortful expression of control toward others (i.e., high dominance), or exposure to unwelcome control by others may be common elements of psychosocial risk (Smith et al. 2010).

Cross-References

- [Interpersonal Relationships](#)
- [Personality](#)

- [Social Relationships](#)
- [Social Stress](#)
- [Social Support](#)

References and Readings

- Chida, Y., & Steptoe, A. (2009). The association of anger and hostility with future coronary heart disease: A meta-analytic review of prospective evidence. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 53, 774–778.
- Fournier, M. A., Moskowitz, D. S., & Zuroff, D. C. (2011). Origins and applications of the interpersonal circumplex. In L. M. Horowitz & S. Strack (Eds.), *Handbook of interpersonal psychology: Theory, research, assessment, and therapeutic interventions* (pp. 57–73). Hoboken: Wiley.
- Gallo, L. C., & Smith, T. W. (1998). Construct validation of health-relevant personality traits: Interpersonal circumplex and five-factor model analyses of the aggression questionnaire. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 5, 129–147.
- Gallo, L. C., Smith, T. W., & Cox, C. (2006). Socioeconomic status, psychosocial processes, and perceived health: An interpersonal perspective. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 31, 109–119.
- Horowitz, L. M., & Strack, S. (2011). *Handbook of interpersonal psychology: Theory, research, assessment, and therapeutic intervention*. Hoboken: Wiley.
- Lett, H. S., Blumenthal, J. A., Babyak, M., Strauman, T., Robbins, C., & Sherwood, A. (2005). Social support and coronary heart disease: Epidemiologic evidence and implications for treatment. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 67, 869–878.
- Nicholson, A., Kuper, H., & Hemingway, H. (2006). Depression as an aetiological and prognostic factor in coronary heart disease: A meta-analysis of 6,362 events among 146,538 participants in 54 observational studies. *European Heart Journal*, 27, 2763–2774.
- Sadler, P., Ethier, N., & Woody, E. (2011). Interpersonal complementarity. In L. M. Horowitz & S. Strack (Eds.), *Handbook of interpersonal psychology: Theory, research, assessment, and therapeutic interventions* (pp. 123–142). Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.
- Smith, T. W. (2010). Conceptualization, measurement, and analysis of negative affective risk factors. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine research: Methods and applications* (pp. 155–168). New York: Springer.
- Smith, T. W., & Cundiff, J. M. (2011). An interpersonal perspective on risk for coronary heart disease. In L. M. Horowitz & S. Strack (Eds.), *Handbook of interpersonal psychology: Theory, research, assessment, and therapeutic interventions* (pp. 471–489). Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.
- Smith, T. W., Gallo, L. C., & Ruiz, J. M. (2003). Toward a social psychophysiology of cardiovascular reactivity: Interpersonal concepts and methods in the study of stress and cardiovascular disease. In J. Suls &

- K. Wallston (Eds.), *Social psychological foundations of health and illness* (pp. 335–366). Oxford, UK: Blackwell.
- Smith, T. W., Glazer, K., Ruiz, J. M., & Gallo, L. C. (2004). Hostility, anger, aggressiveness, and coronary heart disease: An interpersonal perspective on personality, emotion, and health. *Journal of Personality*, 72, 1217–1270.
- Smith, T. W., Traupman, E., Uchino, B. N., & Berg, C. A. (2010). Interpersonal circumplex descriptions of psychosocial risk factors for physical illness: Application to hostility, neuroticism, and marital adjustment. *Journal of Personality*, 78, 1011–1036.
- Smith, T. W., Uchino, B. N., Berg, C. A., Florsheim, P., Pearce, G., Hawkins, M., et al. (2008). Self-reports and spouse ratings of negative affectivity, dominance and affiliation in coronary artery disease: Where should we look and who should we ask when studying personality and health? *Health Psychology*, 27, 676–684.
- Smith, T. W., Uchino, B. N., Florsheim, P., Berg, C. A., Butner, J., Hawkins, M., et al. (2011). Affiliation and control during marital disagreement, history of divorce, and asymptomatic coronary artery calcification in older couples. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 73, 350–357.
- Suls, J., & Bunde, J. (2005). Anger, anxiety, and depression as risk factors for cardiovascular disease: The problems and implications of overlapping affective dispositions. *Psychological Bulletin*, 131, 260–300.
- Trobst, K. K. (2000). An interpersonal conceptualization and quantification of social support transactions. *Personality and Social Psychology Bulletin*, 26, 971–986.

Interpersonal Conflict

► Social Conflict

Interpersonal Processes

Bert N. Uchino, Sierra Cronan and Joshua Landvatter
 Department of Psychology and Health
 Psychology Program, University of Utah, Salt
 Lake City, UT, USA

Synonyms

Relationship processes; Social processes

Definition

Interpersonal processes refer broadly to actual or perceived elements of the social world. These processes differ in their affective qualities in terms of positivity (e.g., support) and negativity (e.g., conflict) and can be further specified in terms of more specific types such as emotional support or insensitivity to others. It is also used to refer to the broader social context (e.g., social networks) in which such processes are embedded.

Description

Introduction

Interpersonal processes such as social support and social negativity have long been suspected as contributors to physical health outcomes. However, most biomedical research aimed at understanding disease has focused on biological processes (e.g., physiology, pathogens). There is now strong evidence linking interpersonal processes to such biological pathways and concrete health outcomes (e.g., hypertension). Linking interpersonal processes to biological pathways provides a bridge that can connect these perspectives leading to an interdisciplinary understanding of the complex, multiply determined nature of health.

Interpersonal perspectives on health have typically been examined at different levels of analysis. At a broad level, sociologists have examined social networks and how they might influence health-relevant processes. For instance, these studies often examine the number of ties or amount of contact with family or friends. More complex analyses have also examined how unhealthy outcomes (e.g., obesity) might “spread” through social networks based on the degree and nature of one’s interconnections. Distinctions are further made in this literature between different relationship types (e.g., strong or weak ties) and the extent to which the social tie is voluntary or obligatory. Voluntary ties, such as a recreational buddy, should be better for health because a person can choose to engage in more rewarding social experiences or

sever such ties if they become nonrewarding. Sociologists have also examined if social identity processes (e.g., time spent and importance of social roles), including the extent to which people think others view them as they view themselves (i.e., verification), affect emotions and mental health. Recent work in this area is starting to focus on how these aspects of social identity are linked to physical health.

Psychological approaches often focus on the more specific interpersonal functions served by social network members, especially social support. Social support can be differentiated in terms of whether it is perceived or received. Perceived support refers to the belief that support would be available if needed, whereas received support refers to support that is obtained. These dimensions of support are often not highly correlated as individuals may perceive support to be available but not actually seek it for various reasons (e.g., concerns about how others might react to such needs). As will be covered below, the distinction between perceived and received support is an important one because they often have different links to health outcomes. Perceived and received social support are further differentiated by more specific components including emotional (i.e., esteem enhancing), instrumental/informational (i.e., direct material or informational aid), and belonging (i.e., availability of others to do things with) support. Work in this area has also drawn the distinction between receiving support and being a support provider as the two are often correlated but may also have different links to health.

More recently, researchers have been focusing attention on the “darker” side of relationships in terms of negative aspects of interpersonal processes and its links to health. Although relationships may be sources of joy and support, they can also be sources of conflict, hindrance, and undermining. Social negativity is not simply the opposite of support, and research suggests that these are separable dimensions and hence are worthy of study in their own right or in combination. More generally, an examination of social negativity is important because there are theoretical reasons to believe that it may have stronger

links to health outcomes compared to positive aspects of relationships via a negativity bias. Similar to the support literature, researchers are also beginning to define more specific components of social negativity. Brooks and Dunkel-Schetter (2011) have argued that the main components of social negativity can be defined at the behavioral level and include conflict, insensitivity, and interference.

What Is the Evidence Linking Interpersonal Processes to Health?

In a meta-analysis of 148 studies, Holt-Lunstad et al. (2010) found strong evidence linking both social networks and perceived social support to lower mortality rates. Overall, there was a 50% reduction in mortality that was attributable to relationships that remained even when considering variables such as age, gender, initial health status, and type of disease. These links were strongest for composite measures of social networks that typically indexed a variety of social ties (e.g., marriage, social activities). However, perceptions of support were also strong predictors of lower mortality rates. The one measure in the Holt-Lunstad et al. review that was not significantly related to mortality was received support. These data parallel studies also indicating that received support has inconsistent links with mental health outcomes as individuals can provide support in a negative manner (e.g., minimizing problem, not listening). In contrast to receiving support, there is an emerging literature indicating that being a support provider may be beneficial to health (Brown et al. 2003). One recent study found that those randomly assigned to spend money on others as opposed to themselves had lower subsequent blood pressure (Whillans et al. 2016).

Finally, epidemiological studies also suggest that social negativity is related to higher rates of morbidity and mortality. For instance, a prospective study by De Vogli et al. (2007) of over 9000 individuals found that social negativity predicted greater incident cardiovascular disease. Consistent with a negativity bias, these researchers found that these effects were stronger than those observed for social support. These data highlight the importance of not just considering positive

interpersonal processes (i.e., support) but also negative aspects that appear to be powerful contributors to health risks.

What Are the Pathways Responsible for Links Between Interpersonal Processes and Health?

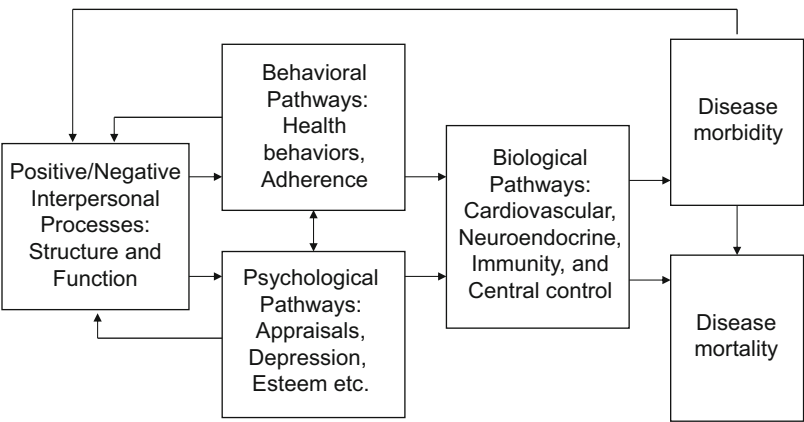
As shown in Fig. 1, several plausible pathways link positive and negative interpersonal processes to health. One possibility is that interpersonal processes influence health behaviors (for better or worse), which in turn influence health. For instance, social control theorists argue that being socially integrated can influence health in direct and indirect ways. Direct social control refers to active attempts by social network members to influence health (e.g., a parent setting a healthy family diet). Indirect social control refers to the increased motivation to engage in self-care because of meaningful relationships (e.g., wanting to be healthy to see a child grow up). Of course, social networks can also negatively influence health behaviors via unhealthy norms and social influence (e.g., substance abuse, obesity). There is consistent evidence that health behaviors can explain part, but not all, of the link between interpersonal processes and health.

Contemporary models of relationships and health have postulated psychological processes such as stress, depression, and positive emotional states as important additional pathways (see Fig. 1). For instance, the stress-buffering hypothesis predicts that support may prevent or reduce

stress appraisals with corresponding influences on emotion-linked physiological responses. Associations between social support and health that do not involve stress processes have been postulated to be mediated by positive emotions, predictability, and a sense of self-worth. Although there is strong evidence linking interpersonal processes to these psychological processes, currently few studies have directly tested these health-relevant pathways using longitudinal designs and/or formal tests of mediation.

Given the lack of evidence on psychological pathways, future research will also need to examine an expanded set of such mechanisms made salient by existing theories. As noted earlier, the meta-analysis by Holt-Lunstad et al. (2010) did not find evidence that received support was related to mortality rates. Recent research is elaborating on the key contextual processes that determine whether receiving support has beneficial or harmful influences. For instance, receiving unsolicited support may increase distress because it conveys the message that the recipient is incapable of managing difficulties, thereby threatening a person’s sense of esteem or independence (Zee et al. 2018). However, receiving support that is viewed as responsive to the recipient is linked to better well-being. Although more work is needed in this area, at least one recent study found that receiving less responsive support was associated with higher mortality rates (Selcuk and Ong 2013).

Interpersonal Processes,
Fig. 1 Broad model



Finally, it is clear that interpersonal processes have effects on health-relevant physiological pathways. The three most studied biological pathways include those related to cardiovascular, neuroendocrine, and immune function. There is relatively strong evidence linking supportive relationships to lower cardiovascular reactivity during stress as well as to lower ambulatory blood pressure (ABP) during daily life. Conversely, negative relationship processes such as interpersonal conflict can exacerbate cardiovascular reactions and heighten ABP. The literature linking social relationships to immune processes is also strong. Social support has been related to lower immune-mediated inflammation in a meta-analytic review (Uchino et al. 2018). Social negativity has also been linked to poorer immune system function in laboratory settings and more recently to greater inflammation.

Neuroendocrine processes are particularly important to model because they may mediate both cardiovascular and immune responses (e.g., receptors on immune cells). There is evidence linking social support to lower cortisol levels, while researchers interested in social negativity have found consistent links between threats to the social self (e.g., evaluation) and increases in cortisol. Research is also starting to link interpersonal processes to brain activity as indexed by imaging techniques (Coan et al. 2017). These studies are important because they are beginning to highlight the brain mechanisms that might coordinate the complex peripheral physiological pathways reviewed above.

As shown in Fig. 1, it is also important to consider reciprocal pathways. For instance, chronic conditions can influence interpersonal processes and highlight the fact that health problems occur within a broader social context (e.g., marital, family). An individual's health conditions can thus influence interpersonal functioning in positive or negative ways (e.g., the stress of a chronic condition can adversely influence family processes). These reciprocal pathways will need increased attention as researchers seek to design optimal interventions that capture the complexity of these interpersonal processes.

Interpersonal Processes and Health in the Age of Technology

Social media platforms (Twitter, Facebook, Instagram, Tumblr, Tinder, etc.) have created new opportunities to provide and receive support from family members, friends, acquaintances, and even strangers. The recent increase in Internet users worldwide and the increase in time individuals are spending online have generated a new field of study aimed at answering questions about the benefits and pitfalls of these newer forms of social communication. For example, Facebook users have higher levels of perceived support, informational support, and instrumental support than do individuals who do not use Facebook (Olson et al. 2012). However, there may be differences in health benefits depending on how one uses social media. For example, lonely adolescents who passively used Facebook have been found to have a reduced perception of social support 6 months later compared to adolescents who actively used Facebook and received positive feedback (Frison and Eggermont 2015). According to the interpersonal-connection-behaviors framework (Clark et al. 2018), the impact of Internet use depends on whether it is used to foster meaningful social connections. This issue awaits further research as there has not yet been a systematic focus on linking positive and negative online interactions to direct health outcomes.

Intervention and Policy Implications

As researchers learn more about the links between interpersonal processes and health, it becomes appealing to use this information to inform relevant interventions in clinical populations. There are different types of interventions being implemented, many of which include elements of education and understanding, such as couple-oriented or larger support groups. A review by Martire and Helgeson (2017) found that family-based interventions (e.g., couples, parents) were associated with beneficial outcomes in chronic disease patients. Support groups also appear to foster psychological adjustment in many cases and can serve unique functions (e.g., personal insight into the disease context). Such support

groups are also particularly useful if there are gaps in the support needs of patients or if family members are overburdened. In addition to support groups, some broad interventions such as cognitive behavioral therapy focus on teaching general psychosocial skills and capitalizing on support within existing networks. These interventions appear to be effective in augmenting coping skills as well as lowering disease-related distress and improving health outcomes. Moreover, preliminary studies have documented some positive influences of technology-based social interventions which may be especially important for individuals with practical (e.g., transportation), physical (e.g., disability), or social (e.g., anxiety) barriers (e.g., Barrera et al. 2002). Future work will be needed to fully evaluate such potential benefits on a wider range of health outcomes.

It is also clear that most interventions focus on individuals who are most at risk or who already have medical problems. An alternative way of thinking about interpersonal interventions is as a form of primary prevention that focuses on healthy individuals. Given that many chronic diseases have a long-term etiology and develop over decades (e.g., coronary artery disease), primary prevention efforts for interpersonal processes may be particularly important to consider. In one recent study, Miller et al. (2014) found that training parents in nurturance, monitoring, and communication skills was associated with lower levels of inflammation in the adolescent 8 years later.

Finally, research on interpersonal processes and health may carry important policy implications (Holt-Lunstad et al. 2017). Many of society's most vexing problems have clear interpersonal components (e.g., aggression, abuse, conflict). Given the research evidence to date, public policies can be aimed at increasing funding for understanding the more specific nature of such links or at fostering better interpersonal functioning (e.g., Deficit Reduction Act of 2005). The importance of the social determinants of health was acknowledged explicitly in Healthy People 2020, a nationwide health promotion plan. Such policy promises to shine a stronger spotlight on health-relevant interpersonal factors that may

elevate funding priorities, public perception, and dialogue on future policy implementation.

Cross-References

- [Family, Relationships](#)
- [Social Conflict](#)
- [Social Relationships](#)
- [Social Stress](#)
- [Social Support](#)

References and Further Reading

- Barrera, M., Glasgow, R. E., McKay, H. G., Boles, S. M., & Feil, E. G. (2002). Do Internet-based support interventions change perceptions of social support? An experimental trial of approaches for supporting diabetes self-management. *American Journal of Community Psychology*, 30, 637–654.
- Berkman, L. F., Glass, T., Brissette, I., & Seeman, T. E. (2000). From social integration to health: Durkheim in the new millennium. *Social Science and Medicine*, 51, 843–857.
- Brooks, K., & Dunkel-Schetter, C. (2011). Social negativity and health: Conceptual and measurement issues. *Social and Personality Psychology Compass*, 5(11), 904–918.
- Brown, S. L., Nesse, R. M., Vinokur, A. D., & Smith, D. M. (2003). Providing social support may be more beneficial than receiving it: Results from a prospective study of mortality. *Psychological Science*, 14, 320–327.
- Clark, J. L., Algoe, S. B., & Green, M. C. (2018). Social network sites and well-being: The role of social connection. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 27, 32–37.
- Coan, J. A., Beckes, L., Gonzalez, M. Z., Maresh, E. L., Brown, C. L., & Hasselmo, K. (2017). Relationship status and perceived support in the social regulation of neural responses to threat. *Social Cognitive and Affective Neuroscience*, 12, 1574–1583. <https://doi.org/10.1093/scan/nsx091>.
- Cohen, S. (2004). Social relationships and health. *American Psychologist*, 59, 676–684.
- De Vogli, R., Chandola, T., & Marmot, M. G. (2007). Negative aspects of close relationships and heart disease. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 167, 1951–1957.
- Dickerson, S. S. (2008). Emotional and physiological responses to social-evaluative threat. *Social and Personality Psychology Compass*, 2, 1362–1368.
- Eisenberger, N. I. (2010). The neural basis of social pain: Findings and implications. In G. MacDonald & L. A. Jensen-Campbell (Eds.), *Social pain: Neuropsychological and health implications of loss and exclusion*

- (pp. 53–78). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Frison, E., & Eggermont, S. (2015). Toward an integrated and differential approach to the relationships between loneliness, different types of Facebook use, and adolescents' depressed mood. *Communication Research*, 34(2), 1–28.
- Holt-Lunstad, J., Smith, T. B., & Layton, B. (2010). Social relationships and mortality: A meta-analysis. *PLoS Medicine*, 7, 1–20.
- Holt-Lunstad, J., Robles, T. F., & Sbarra, D. A. (2017). Advancing social connections as a public health priority in the United States. *American Psychologist*, 72, 517–530.
- Martire, L. M., & Helgeson, V. S. (2017). Close relationships and the management of chronic illness: Associations and interventions. *American Psychologist*, 72, 601–612. PMID: PMC5598776.
- Miller, G. E., Brody, G. H., Yu, T., & Chen, E. (2014). A family-oriented psychosocial intervention reduces inflammation in low-SES African American youth. *PNAS*, 111(31), 11287–11292. <https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1406578111>.
- Olson, D. A., Liu, J., & Shultz, K. (2012). The influence of Facebook usage on perceptions of social support, personal efficacy, and life satisfaction. *Journal of Organizational Psychology*, 12, 133–143.
- Repetti, R. L., Taylor, S. E., & Seeman, T. E. (2002). Risky families: Family social environments and the mental and physical health of offspring. *Psychological Bulletin*, 128, 330–366.
- Selcuk, E., & Ong, A. D. (2013). Perceived partner responsiveness moderates the association between received emotional support and all-cause mortality. *Health Psychology*, 32, 231–235.
- Smith, K. P., & Christakis, N. A. (2008). Social networks and health. *Annual Review of Sociology*, 34, 405–429.
- Thoits, P. (2011). Mechanisms linking social ties and support to physical and mental health. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 52(2), 145–161.
- Uchino, B. N. (2009). Understanding the links between social support and physical health: A lifespan perspective with emphasis on the separability of perceived and received support. *Perspectives in Psychological Science*, 4, 236–255.
- Uchino, B. N., Trettenvik, R., Kent de Grey, R., Cronan, S., Hogan, J., & Baucom, B. (2018). Social support, social integration, and inflammatory cytokines: A meta-analysis. *Health Psychology*, 37, 462–471. PMID: 29565600.
- Whillans, A., Dunn, E., Dickerson, S., Sandstrom, G., & Madden, K. (2016). Is spending money on others good for your heart? *Health Psychology*, 35(6), 1–10.
- Wills, T. A., & Shinar, O. (2000). Measuring perceived and received social support. In S. Cohen, L. Gordon, & B. Gottlieb (Eds.), *Social support measurement and intervention: A guide for health and social scientists* (pp. 86–135). New York: Oxford University Press.

- Zee, K. S., Cavallo, J. V., Flores, A. J., Bolger, N., & Higgins, E. T. (2018). Motivation moderates the effect of social support visibility. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 114, 735–765. PMID: 29376663.

Interpersonal Relationships

- Family, Relationships
- Psychosocial Factors and Traumatic Events
- Social Relationships

Interpersonal Stress or Conflict

- Social Stress

Intervention Theories

Nelli Hankonen
Department of Lifestyle and Participation,
National Institute for Health and Welfare
University of Helsinki, Helsinki, Finland

Synonyms

Theories of behavior change

Definition

Health-promoting interventions aim to reduce health-risk behaviors and/or to promote behaviors and support environments conducive to health. In this pursuit, use of theory will serve several important purposes in various phases of interventions: In the beginning of intervention planning, theories can be used to *describe the target group* as well as *contribute to understanding of the health-promoting behaviors and environmental conditions*. Theories may also inform the design of the intervention by helping to *identify possible*

determinants of both risk and healthful behaviors and environments and to select methods to promote change (intervention techniques/behavior change techniques). Finally, theories are useful in *evaluating the intervention (e.g., choice of measures) and retrieving evidence from interventions for the refinement of existing theories.* (Bartholomew and Mullen 2011; Bartholomew et al. 2011; Michie and Prestwich 2010; Nutbeam and Harris 2004). Theories used to these ends may be called intervention theories. More than one theory may be used in an intervention.

Description

Planning of complex interventions should be based on a sound theoretical understanding of how the change is expected to take place (Campbell et al. 2000; Craig et al. 2008). It has been shown that interventions that have a theoretical basis are more successful than those that have not (Peters et al. 2009; Webb et al. 2010). Theories may focus on determinants that predict or explain outcomes or means of engendering change in the determinants. The first mentioned characterize the problem and are called *conceptual theories*, as they suggest what to change. The latter are *action theories*, as they suggest how the change is achievable.

Given the plethora of theories with potential use in health-promotion interventions, only few can be mentioned below for an overview of theories. A recent systematic review across scientific disciplines (Hobbs et al. 2011) identified several theories – altogether close to 100 – that could be used in interventions to change behavior. Intervention theories can be classified by the ecological level they target.

Frequently used theories are those that focus on the *individual* level, focusing mainly on direct changes in *behaviors* of a person. A well-known example in this category is the theory of planned behavior (Ajzen 1991) that identifies subjective norms, attitudes toward behavior, and perceived behavioral control as predictors of intention. The latter in turn is considered as the main factor influencing behavior. Behavior change is

suggested to occur when salient behavioral, normative, and/or control beliefs are successfully changed. Reflecting growing consensus of central determinants of behavior change, the integrated social cognition model (Fishbein et al. 2001) incorporates eight variables as key determinants of behavior: environment, skills, and intention, and (as predictors of intention), identity, self-efficacy, emotional reaction, perceived advantages and disadvantages of the target behavior, and social influences. Communication-persuasion matrix (McGuire 2001) outlines seven phases (“RASMICE”) of constructing a persuasive health campaign: reviewing the realities, axiological analysis, surveying the sociocultural situation, mapping the mental matrix, teasing out the target themes, constructing the communication, and evaluating the effectiveness. The model includes 12 output persuasion steps that describe the process of being persuaded, e.g., receiver’s attention and comprehension, acquiring skills, changes in attitudes, memory storage, and behavior. The matrix includes five input communication factors: message source, message content and style, communication channel, receiver (audience), and destination. Each step requires certain choices related to the communication variables.

Health behaviors are not affected by individual psychological factors only, but also by social and structural factors of environments people live in. Accordingly, some theories focus on changing *environments* for better health. Theories of social networks and social support use concepts of the *interpersonal* level, while there are others that address the *organizational* level. Schein’s theory of organizational culture (Schein 2004) identifies leaders as key players in changing organizations. According to Schein, organization’s design and structure; stories, legends, and myths, as well as formal statements of the organizational philosophy and values are only secondary sources of bringing about change. Schein proposes that these secondary mechanisms are effective only if they are in concordance with primary mechanisms – leaders’ behaviors. Organizational change is influenced by these primary mechanisms, such as what leaders pay attention to, measure and control; how leaders react to critical

incidents and organizational crises; what criteria they set for allocating scarce resources and recruiting and promoting personnel; and whether they teach, coach, and model the target behavior.

A renowned example of *community* level theories is the diffusion of innovation theory (Rogers 2002). It outlines four elements in the diffusion of new ideas in communities: innovation, communication channels, time, and the social system. Innovations are more likely to be successfully adopted when they are, e.g., compatible with existing socioeconomic and cultural values, perceived easy to understand and use, and have observable results in the community.

Theories on the *societal or policy* level may also be used as intervention theories. Milio (1987) has proposed that the development of healthy public policy is not simply the production of policy statements but, instead, is a dynamic process, continuously passing through stages of initiation, adoption, implementation, evaluation, and reformulation. Four major players (public policy makers, interested parties, the public, and the mass media) are important in the policy development. Longest (2010) suggests that the health policy making process is complex, interactive, and cyclical, and the process entails three intertwined phases: policy formulation (agenda setting and development of legislation), policy implementation (rulemaking and operation), and policy modification. Health policies are made within the contest of the political marketplace where demanders of policies and suppliers of policy interact. Preferences and feedback of various interest groups, political circumstances, and formal legislation processes influence the process. Finally, some theories, such as theories related to systems, power, and empowerment can be conceptualized as *multilevel theories* as they are applicable at more than one environmental level.

Frameworks exist to help in selecting appropriate theories for an intervention for a given behavior in a specific population and translating an abstract theory into a practical intervention program. A popular one is intervention mapping (Bartholomew et al. 2011) that outlines six steps during which a theory- and evidence-based program and its implementation and evaluation are

systematically planned. The intervention mapping steps include (1) needs assessment, (2) preparing matrices of change objectives, (3) selecting theory-based intervention methods and practical applications, (4) producing the intervention program components and materials, (5) planning program adoption and implementation, and (6) planning for evaluation.

Cross-References

- Adherence
- Attitudes
- Attribution Theory
- Behavior Change
- Behavior Change Techniques
- Cancer Prevention
- Cancer Treatment and Management
- Clinical Trial
- Community Coalitions
- Diabetes Education
- Dissemination
- Eating Behavior
- Efficacy
- Empowerment
- Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine (EBBM)
- Group Therapy/Intervention
- Health
- Health Behavior Change
- Health Behaviors
- Health Beliefs/Health Belief Model
- Health Education
- Health Psychology
- Healthy Eating
- Internet-Based Interventions
- Interventions and Strategies to Promote Physical Activity
- Lifestyle Changes
- Multilevel Intervention
- Obesity: Prevention and Treatment
- Population Health
- Preventive Care
- Psychological Factors
- Public Health
- Risky Behavior
- Screening
- Sedentary Behaviors

- ▶ Self-efficacy
- ▶ Self-regulation Model
- ▶ Smoking Behavior
- ▶ Smoking Cessation
- ▶ Smoking Prevention Policies and Programs
- ▶ Social Factors
- ▶ Social Marketing
- ▶ Social Support
- ▶ Sociocultural
- ▶ Tailored Communications
- ▶ Theory
- ▶ Tobacco Cessation
- ▶ Transtheoretical Model of Behavior Change

References and Readings

- Ajzen, I. (1991). The theory of planned behavior. *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes*, 50, 179–211.
- Bartholomew, L. K., & Mullen, P. D. (2011). Five roles for using theory and evidence in the design and testing of behavior change interventions. *Journal of Public Health Dentistry*, 71, S20–S33.
- Bartholomew, L. K., Parcel, G. S., Kok, G., Gottlieb, N. H., & Fernández, M. E. (2011). *Planning health promotion programs. An intervention mapping approach* (3rd ed.). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Campbell, M., Fitzpatrick, R., Haines, A., Kinmonth, A. L., Sandercock, P., Spiegelhalter, D., et al. (2000). Framework for design and evaluation of complex interventions to improve health. *BMJ*, 321(7262), 694–696.
- Craig, P., Dieppe, P., Macintyre, S., Michie, S., Nazareth, I., & Petticrew, M. (2008). Developing and evaluating complex interventions: The new Medical Research Council guidance. *BMJ*, 337, a1655. <https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.a1655>.
- Fishbein, M., Triandis, H. C., Kanfer, F. H., Becker, M. H., Middlestadt, S. E., & Eichler, A. (2001). Factors influencing behavior and behavior change. In A. Baum, T. A. Revenson, & J. E. Singer (Eds.), *Handbook of health psychology*. Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Hobbs, L., Michie, S., Campbell, R., & Hildon, Z. (2011). Behaviour change theories across psychology, sociology, anthropology and economics: A systematic review. *Psychology and Health*, 26(Suppl. 2), 31.
- Longest, B. B. (2010). *Healthy policymaking in the United States* (5th ed.). Chicago: Health Administration Press.
- McGuire, W. J. (2001). Input and output variables currently promising for constructing persuasive communications. In R. E. Rice & C. K. Atkin (Eds.), *Public communication campaigns* (3rd ed., pp. 22–48). Thousand Oaks: Sage.
- Michie, S., & Prestwich, A. (2010). Are interventions theory-based? Development of a theory coding scheme. *Health Psychology*, 29(1), 1–8.
- Milio, N. (1987). Making healthy public policy: developing the science by learning the art: An ecological framework for policy studies. *Health Promotion*, 2(3), 263–274.
- Nutbeam, D., & Harris, E. (2004). *Theory in a nutshell. A practical guide to health promotion theories* (2nd ed.). Australia: McGraw-Hill.
- Peters, L., Kok, G., Ten Dam, G., Buijs, G., & Paulussen, T. (2009). Effective elements of school health promotion across behavioral domains: A systematic review of reviews. *BMC Public Health*, 9(1), 182.
- Rogers, R. W. (2002). Diffusion of preventive interventions. *Addictive Behaviors*, 27, 989–993.
- Schein, E. H. (2004). *Organizational culture and leadership* (3rd ed.). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Webb, L. T., Joseph, J., Yardley, L., & Michie, S. (2010). Using the internet to promote health behavior change: A systematic review and meta-analysis of the impact of theoretical basis, use of behavior change techniques, and mode of delivery on efficacy. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 12(1), e4.

Interventions and Strategies to Promote Physical Activity

Rick LaCaille¹ and Hannah Appleseth²

¹Psychology Department, University of Minnesota Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

²University of Minnesota Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

Definition

Physical activity (PA) interventions primarily aim to encourage sedentary/insufficiently active individuals or those at risk for chronic diseases to initiate and maintain healthy levels of activity. Secondary goals of interventions may include improved weight or disease management, enhanced psychological well-being and stress reduction, and better quality of life. There has been a concerted effort to examine changing multiple health behaviors (e.g., dietary, tobacco cessation) in combination with sedentary behaviors. Interventions are often evaluated in the context of

randomized control trials (efficacy trials) or quasi-experimental designs (effectiveness trials).

Description

Because of the many benefits conferred by consistent engagement in PA and relatively low rates of individuals who routinely participate in leisure-time PA or exercise, public health professionals have, for some time, encouraged increased levels of activity (Heath et al. 2012). The US government released its first formal set of recommendations on PA, the *Physical Activity Guidelines for Americans* in 2008 (USDHHS 2008), thereby establishing increasing PA as a significant health goal for the twenty-first century. Unfortunately, adherence to these guidelines has not improved substantially since the release (Du et al. 2019). Consequently, the guidelines (USDHHS 2018) were updated and released in 2018 and continue to emphasize the goal of consistently achieving at least 150 min of moderate-to-vigorous intensity aerobic activity per week with muscle-strengthening activities on 2 days per week for adults. For youth ages 6–17, the target is 60 min of moderate-to-vigorous PA each day. Of note, the previous guidelines specified that, at a minimum, 10-min bouts of PA were needed to count toward meeting the guidelines. The updated guidelines have eliminated this requirement, as all activity is considered salubrious and reduces frequency of sedentary behaviors (SB; e.g., sitting, computer/television use, passive transportation). An important distinction has been made between insufficient PA and a sedentary lifestyle, as sustained SB yields deleterious health effects even if one meets the recommended minutes per week of moderate-to-vigorous PA (Ekelund et al. 2006; Pate et al. 2008; Tremblay et al. 2017).

Recently, high-intensity interval training (HIIT) has inspired some interest as an alternative to the current PA guidelines. The goal of HIIT is to alternate rest periods and intense anaerobic exercise until exhaustion, typically requiring considerably less allocation of time. A systematic review found that HIIT was nearly twice as effective as moderate-intensity continuous intervals at

improving cardiorespiratory fitness for individuals with lifestyle-induced cardiometabolic diseases (Weston et al. 2014). Regarding sedentary populations, HIIT interventions may offer improved cardiorespiratory fitness, reduction in body mass, and fat loss (Lunt et al. 2014). Notably, the suitability of HIIT for inactive populations has been brought into question. Hardcastle et al. (2014) have argued that such individuals are likely to experience negative affect, low self-efficacy, and motivation in response to HIIT, and, thus, are at risk of discontinuing exercise.

Levels of Intervening: Individual, Group, and Community

Efforts to promote PA involvement have generally fallen into one or a combination of the following levels of intervening: individual, group, and community context. Within these broad levels, interventions have also been developed and adapted to target particular settings (e.g., worksite), types of PA (e.g., walking), means of delivery (e.g., face-to-face), or subpopulations (e.g., elderly). Across these levels, PA interventions have typically targeted a goal of consistently achieving at least 30 min of moderate-intensity activity on 5 or more days per week. Some interventions, however, have focused on increasing low-intensity PA, such as walking or stair usage, which may occur more often and in various settings. Duration of PA interventions has varied greatly from single to multiple contacts extending over 2 years.

Interventions focusing upon the individual have usually promoted the adoption and maintenance of active lifestyles by targeting attitudes, beliefs, and behaviors of individuals not currently meeting PA guidelines. The most common theoretical models guiding or “inspiring” these interventions and strategies include Social Cognitive Theory (SCT), Theory of Planned Behavior (TPB), Health Belief Model (HBM), Trans-theoretical Model (TTM), Health Action Process Approach (HAPA), and Self-Determination Theory (SDT). In some cases the interventions have been based on an aspect of the model versus all of the constructs (e.g., Hsu et al. 2013), whereas in

other interventions, the specific strategies have resulted from a combination of theoretical frameworks (e.g., Pinto et al. 2011). Although dependent upon the particular model for guiding the intervention, common strategies include health education, health-risk appraisal, motivational interviewing, written exercise prescriptions, mastery experience/self-efficacy enhancements, goal setting, incentives, contingency contracts, self-monitoring, self-reinforcement, and stimulus control. A recent meta-analysis (Gourlan et al. 2016) of randomized controlled trials found that theory-based interventions demonstrated a small-to-moderate effect on PA, with effect sizes ranging from $d = 0.26$ for TPB to $d = 0.61$ for SDT for specific models. The number of theories used for the intervention also moderated the intervention effects, with interventions based on a single theory outperforming those using multiple theories. Importantly, the similar effects across the interventions, in part, may be a consequence of some theoretical overlap of constructs (e.g., self-efficacy, need for competence) and the failure of the theories to specify particular techniques or methods of intervening. Of note, based upon the theoretical model, PA interventions will sometimes examine intention for behavioral change as a precursor to the actual change (e.g., PA adoption). While intention is associated with change, data indicate that intervention effects are more substantial for intentions than behavior changes (i.e., $d = 0.64$ vs. 0.41 ; McDermott et al. 2016).

Delivery of individual interventions has often been via face-to-face; however, this approach suffers from nontrivial resource requirements and limited reach and dissemination. Telephone, Internet, and other technology-based interventions have become an increasingly viable mode that may offer some cost-effective advantages and allow for widespread implementation. Evidence suggests that telephone and Internet-based interventions can support PA change and result in moderate-sized effects relative to placebo-, no-, and/or minimal-intervention control groups (Foster et al. 2013). More recently, mobile technologies (mHealth; e.g., phones, tablets), because

of their capacity to provide augmented personalization, accessibility, and more persistent interaction, have been used as a means of increasing PA and reducing SB. Meta-analytic data have revealed that mHealth interventions promote small-to-moderate effects in PA and walking and somewhat smaller decreases in SB (Direito et al. 2017). The most frequently used strategies with mHealth were goal-setting and self-monitoring behavior, which incidentally were also employed by several of the standard care comparison groups – possibly contributing to smaller intervention effects. Electronic self-monitors (e.g. Fitbits, smart watches, pedometers) have also formed the basis of PA interventions (e.g., Cadmus-Bertram et al. 2015; Finkelstein et al. 2016) and have been shown to be helpful for supporting individualized goals and effective in promoting PA.

In contrast to individual-level programs, group-based interventions occur in the context of small group settings (e.g., structured classes) and utilize this social environment to encourage PA (e.g., Blumenthal et al. 1999). Although group interventions often also make use of the theoretical paradigms and strategies discussed within individual approaches, the group structure (e.g., group norms) and processes (e.g., interactions and communications) that facilitate group cohesion and support for changing PA or SB are emphasized. Group-based specific strategies include developing a distinct group identity (along with group name/clothing), establishing shared goals, mentoring by more experienced members, and encouragement of “fitness friends” and additional support. Data have not shown the delivery context of individual versus group format to have a significant impact on determining intervention effectiveness (Michie et al. 2009). Given the equivocal outcomes, utilization of resources would appear to favor group delivery over strictly individual strategies. As with individual-based interventions, technological advances have also created opportunities for remotely accessing social support (i.e., online social networks). The data supporting the effectiveness of online social network interventions appears modest (Davies et al. 2012; Maher

et al. 2015) with future research needing to focus upon increasing engagement/retention and clearer articulation of guiding theoretical frameworks (Arguel et al. 2018).

Although not a standard group intervention, family-based PA interventions have been developed with the primary target of reducing SB and/or increasing PA in children and adolescents as the agents of change. Family-based interventions often combine activities to build family support and health education, and less uniformly may include goal setting, role modeling, and reinforcement of behaviors. Initial evidence for family-based PA intervention was mixed, though a recent review found small but significant effects (Brown et al. 2016). Brown and colleagues recommended increasing motivation and PA with family-based interventions by combining goal setting and reinforcement techniques.

Community-level interventions, in comparison to individual and group-based methods, usually emphasize prevention and risk reduction that affects large segments of a particular population or community. Typically, interventions include a combination of site-based (e.g., schools, health care, work, church), mass media (e.g., print media campaigns), built environments (e.g., constructing multi-use paths and trails), or policy/legislative strategies (e.g., time allotted for PA at worksite, insurance premium reductions for engaging in PA) that target broader institutional or system changes with the intention of removing barriers or implementing incentives that will affect SB or PA behaviors. The *Move Your Way Campaign* (<https://health.gov/moveyourway/>) created by the Office of Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, based upon the updated Physical Activity Guidelines for Americans, provides a prime example of a community-level approach. The main message emphasized is that even small amounts of PA have important health and psychosocial benefits (e.g., better sleep and mood, reduced stress). An additional focus is on the role of PA in managing chronic conditions (e.g., type 2 diabetes, high blood pressure). Notably, the campaign makes freely available in English and Spanish fact sheets, posters,

videos, and interactive tools to educate and promote PA. A toolkit is also available for communities to implement the campaign through social media and other local outreach resources. Community-level interventions involving large-scale multicomponent strategies, as well as promoting a combination of health behaviors (e.g., dietary), have demonstrated some effectiveness for increasing the percentage of active people across a variety of communities and populations, provided materials and messages are culturally adapted to the needs of the particular community and/or populations (Zaza et al. 2005). Additionally, community-level approaches appear to offer potentially greater cost-effectiveness (Muller-Riemenschneider et al. 2009). Thus, the fundamental assumption that large numbers of individuals will be accessed, that may not have been identified otherwise, and that the systemic change will reap effects with many more individuals appears to bear out and merit continued emphasis (Bauman et al. 2016).

Promoting PA Across the Lifespan

There has been an increase in primary prevention interventions that focus upon preschool-aged children (ages 0–5 years), as this period has been identified as an important time for obesity prevention (Wofford 2008). Preschool programs have typically incorporated a multicomponent approach and included parental education, monitoring, healthy eating, and PA promotion and/or reduction of screen time. The existing studies support that parents may promote healthy activity/weight in their young children (Campbell and Hesketh 2007). While school-based physical education programs for older children appear effective for increasing PA levels, generalizability outside of the school setting has been limited (Marcus et al. 2006; Zaza et al. 2005). Consequently, after-school PA interventions have been used as a supplement to school-based strategies with better results conferred by programs within the school (rather than the community setting) as well as offered in higher doses (i.e., 2 or more

days per week; Demetriou et al. 2017). Overall, the evidence suggests modest support for after-school programs on children's PA and body composition, with girls being more receptive (than boys) when intervention components supported weight control. However, at present, the specific mechanisms that promote the efficacy of these programs remain unclear.

Because of the critical timing in development, the transition to adulthood has also received attention in the literature – particularly with individuals enrolling in college, due to the increased risk of weight gain (Goldschmidt et al. 2016). Meta-analytic evidence has found that interventions yield a modest effect, relative to no-intervention controls, for moderate-intensity PA, with no significant effect for total or vigorous PA levels (Plotnikoff et al. 2015). The transitions that occur for adolescents and young adults at this time correspond with increased autonomy and control over their lives, which may also contribute to increases in risk-taking behaviors (Butler et al. 2004). Thus, this period represents an important opportunity for promoting several potentially overlapping health behaviors (e.g., PA, dietary, substance, sleep) and warrants continued attention for intervention development.

Generally, the research reviewed thus far has emphasized promoting PA or reducing SB in adult populations and has suggested small-to-moderate effects across modality and settings. However, it is worth noting that barriers to achieving the recommended levels of PA may be increased for some adult subgroups. For instance, transitioning into parenthood can be challenging as one must delegate time according to the needs of the child, with caring for children occupying leisure time normally spent in health-related activities such as exercising – resulting in significantly less PA after parenthood (Bellows-Riecken and Rhodes 2008). Initial evidence suggests that a brief workshop-based intervention, modeled on SCT, with working mothers of young children, may promote short-term increases in PA, which are partially sustained 6 months later (Mailey and McAuley 2014). Increases in self-regulation and self-efficacy appeared to mediate gains in PA.

For many adults, a significant amount of their daily lives involves sedentary activities at their places of employment. Worksite settings are thought to offer valuable opportunities for PA interventions because of the potential for high exposure and reach, with promising strategies that include an increased emphasis on social networks (e.g., “buddy system”) and built environments (e.g., stairwell enhancements, bike racks) as well as communication change strategies (e.g., persuasive point-of-decision prompts for increased PA or stairwell use). A recent quasi-experimental obesity prevention worksite intervention utilizing several components (i.e., pedometer distribution, labeling of all foods in the worksite cafeteria and vending machines with calories, step equivalent, and a traffic light based on energy-density signaling-recommended portion, persuasive messaging throughout the worksite, and integration of influential employees to reinforce healthy social norms) demonstrated a modest increase in PA, in the form of walking (LaCaille et al. 2016). Although findings have been somewhat inconsistent on the effectiveness of worksite interventions for promoting PA, a review of randomized controlled trials indicated such interventions may achieve modest effects for preventing weight gain among employees (Anderson et al. 2009).

Increasingly, promotion of “active aging” has highlighted the importance of targeting older adults across several intervention levels (Bauman et al. 2016). Prescribed exercise for older adults is a frequently recommended PA intervention, for either disability/chronic disease prevention or management (Chodzko-Zajko et al. 2009). It appears that single health behavior change interventions have historically been more effective among older adults in comparison to multiple health behavior change interventions, with PA behavior having the most positive outcomes (Nigg and Long 2012). Emphasis on lighter intensity PA (e.g., walking) and use of pedometers have been effective at supporting improvements among older adults in multiple trials (Hobbs et al. 2013). It should be noted that there is a need for research examining the

effectiveness of PA interventions for older adults beyond 12 months.

Summary and Conclusions

Numerous meta-analytic and systematic reviews of PA intervention studies have been conducted with some of these focusing upon particular theoretical models (e.g., SDT; Teixeira et al. 2012), settings (e.g., worksite; Chu et al. 2016), modality (e.g., website; Vandelandotte et al. 2007), or subpopulations (e.g., elderly; Zubala et al. 2017). Overall, the data demonstrates small-to-moderate PA intervention effects (compared to no-intervention or minimal-intervention controls). The strategy of self-monitoring appears to account for the most substantial intervention effects, whereas the delivery context (e.g., individual vs. group) and setting appear to produce equivalent intervention effectiveness (Michie et al. 2009). Generally, interventions promoting lower intensity and more active leisure time (e.g., walking) appear more successful in affecting change in PA behavior than those advocating more vigorous intensities and structured activities (Williams et al. 2008).

Importantly, the determinants of PA initiation and maintenance may be different. Fjeldsoe et al. (2011) observed that maintenance was more likely for interventions that occurred for more than 24 weeks and involved more than 6 PA change strategies, as well as follow-up prompts to reinforce intervention content. The assessment of long-term sustainability of PA improvements did not extend beyond 24 months post-intervention for any of the studies examined in this review. Unfortunately, many controlled studies examining PA or SB fail to include long-term follow-up of participants, limiting conclusions about the maintenance of PA change beyond 3 months. Increased assessments of PA maintenance and intervention sustainability continue to be a much-needed emphasis in the research. Lastly, because poor fidelity to guiding theoretical frameworks and adherence to treatment protocols has been a notable limitation among many studies,

intervention developers and investigators have been encouraged to more clearly map intervention components onto a behavior change technique taxonomy (Abraham and Michie 2008).

Cross-References

- [Benefits of Exercise](#)
- [Physical Activity and Health](#)
- [Psychosocial Benefits and Aspects of Physical Activity](#)

References and Further Readings

- Abraham, C., & Michie, S. (2008). A taxonomy of behavior change techniques used in interventions. *Health Psychology, 27*, 379–387.
- Anderson, L. M., Quinn, T. A., Glanz, K., et al. (2009). The effectiveness of worksite nutrition and physical activity interventions for controlling employee overweight and obesity: A systematic review. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 37*, 340–357. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amepre.2009.07.003>.
- Arguel, A., Perez-Concha, O., Li, S. Y., & Lau, A. Y. (2018). Theoretical approaches of online social network interventions and implications for behavioral change: A systematic review. *Journal of Evaluation in Clinical Practice, 24*(1), 212–221. <https://doi.org/10.1111/jep.12655>.
- Bauman, A., Merom, D., Bull, F. C., Buchner, D. M., & Singh, M. A. (2016). Updating the evidence for physical activity: Summative reviews of the epidemiological evidence, prevalence, and interventions to promote “active aging”. *The Gerontologist, 56*(2), S268–S280. <https://doi.org/10.1093/geront/gnw031>.
- Bellows-Riecken, K. H., & Rhodes, R. E. (2008). The birth of inactivity? A review of physical activity and parenthood. *Preventive Medicine, 46*, 99–110.
- Blumenthal, J. A., Babyak, M. A., Moore, K. A., Craighead, W. E., Herman, S., Khatri, P., et al. (1999). Effects of exercise training on older patients with major depression. *Archives of Internal Medicine, 159*(19), 2349–2356.
- Brown, H. E., Atkin, A. J., Panter, J., Wong, G., Chinapaw, M. J. M., & van Sluijs, E. M. F. (2016). Family-based interventions to increase physical activity in children: A systematic review, meta-analysis and realist synthesis. *Obesity Review, 17*(4), 345–360.
- Butler, S. M., Black, D. R., Blue, C. L., & Gretebeck, R. J. (2004). Change in diet, physical activity, and body weight in female college freshman. *American Journal of Health Behavior, 28*, 24–32.

- Cadmus-Bertram, L. A., Marcus, B. H., Patterson, R. E., Parker, B. A., & Morey, B. L. (2015). Randomized trial of a Fitbit-based physical activity intervention for women. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 49(3), 414–418.
- Campbell, K. J., & Hesketh, K. D. (2007). Strategies which aim to positively impact on weight, physical activity, diet and sedentary behaviors in children from zero to five years. A systematic review of the literature. *Obesity Review*, 8, 327–338.
- Chodzko-Zajko, W. J., Proctor, D. N., Singh, M. A. F., Minson, C. T., Nigg, C. R., Salem, G. J., & Skinner, J. S. (2009). Exercise and physical activity for older adults. *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise*, 41(7), 1510–1530.
- Chu, A. H., Ng, S. H., Tan, C. S., Win, A. M., Koh, D., & Müller-Riemenschneider, F. (2016). A systematic review and meta-analysis of workplace intervention strategies to reduce sedentary time in white-collar workers. *Obesity Review*, 17(5), 467–481.
- Davies, C. A., Spence, J. C., Vandelandotte, C., Caperchione, C. M., & Mummery, W. K. (2012). Meta-analysis of internet-delivered interventions to increase physical activity levels. *International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 9(1), 52.
- Demetriou, Y., Gillison, F., & McKenzie, T. (2017). After-school physical activity interventions on child and adolescent physical activity and health: A review of reviews. *Advances in Physical Education*, 7, 191–215. <https://doi.org/10.4236/ape.2017.72017>.
- Direito, A., Carraca, E., Rawstorn, J., Whittaker, R., & Maddison, R. (2017). mHealth technologies to influence physical activity and sedentary behaviors: Behavior change techniques, systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 51, 226–239.
- Du, Y., Liu, B., Sun, Y., Snetselaar, L. G., Wallace, R. B., & Bao, W. (2019). Trends in adherence to the physical activity guidelines for Americans for aerobic activity and time spent on sedentary behavior among US adults, 2007 to 2016. *JAMA Network Open*, 2(7), e197597–e197597. <https://doi.org/10.1001/jamanetworkopen.2019.7597>.
- Ekelund, U., Brage, S., Froberg, K., Harro, M., Anderssen, S. A., Sardinha, L. B., et al. (2006). TV viewing and physical activity are independently associated with metabolic risk in children: The European youth heart study. *PLoS Medicine*, 3(12), e488.
- Finkelstein, E. A., Haaland, B. A., Bilger, M., Sahasranaman, A., Sloan, R. A., Nang, E. E. K., & Evenson, K. R. (2016). Effectiveness of activity trackers with and without incentives to increase physical activity (TRIPPA): A randomized controlled trial. *The Lancet Diabetes & Endocrinology*, 4(12), 983–995.
- Fjeldsoe, B., Neuhaus, M., Winkler, E., & Eakin, E. (2011). Systematic review of maintenance of behavior change following physical activity and dietary interventions. *Health Psychology*, 30, 99–109.
- Foster, C., Richards, J., Thorogood, M., Hillsdon, M., Kaur, A., Wickramasinghe, K. K., & Wedatilake, T. (2013). Remote and web 2.0 interventions for promoting physical activity. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 2, CD010395. <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD010395>.
- Goldschmidt, A. B., Wall, M. M., Zhang, J., Loth, K. A., & Neumark-Sztainer, D. (2016). Overeating and binge eating in emerging adulthood: 10-year stability and risk factors. *Developmental Psychology*, 52(3), 475–483. <https://doi.org/10.1037/dev0000086>.
- Gourlan, M., Bernard, P., Bortolon, C., Romain, A. J., Lareyre, O., Carayol, M., Ninot, G., & Boiche, J. (2016). Efficacy of theory-based interventions to promote physical activity. A meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Health Psychology Review*, 10(1), 50–66. <https://doi.org/10.1080/17437199.2014.981777>.
- Hardcastle, S. J., Ray, H., Beale, L., & Hagger, M. S. (2014). Why sprint interval training is inappropriate for a largely sedentary population. *Frontiers in Psychology*, 5, 1505. <https://doi.org/10.3389/fpsyg.2014.01505>.
- Heath, G. W., Parra, D. C., Sarmiento, O. L., Andersen, L. B., Owen, N., Goenka, S., et al. (2012). Evidence-based intervention in physical activity: Lessons from around the world. *The Lancet*, 380(9838), 272–281.
- Hobbs, N., Godfrey, A., Lara, J., Errington, L., Meyer, T. D., Rochester, L., White, M., Mathers, J., & Sniehotta, F. F. (2013). Are behavioral interventions effective in increasing physical activity at 12 to 36 months in adults aged 55 to 70 years? A systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMC Medicine*, 11(1), 75.
- Hsu, Y. T., Buchworth, J., Focht, B. C., & O'Connell, A. A. (2013). Feasibility of a self-determination theory-based exercise intervention promoting healthy at every size with sedentary overweight women: Project CHANGE. *Psychology of Sport and Exercise*, 14, 283–292. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.psychsport.2012.11.007>.
- LaCaille, L. J., Schultz, J., Goei, R., LaCaille, R. A., Dauner, K., de Souza, R., Versnik Nowak, A., & Regal, R. (2016). Go!: Results from a quasi-experimental obesity prevention trial with hospital employees. *BMC Public Health*, 16(171). <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12889-016-2828-0>.
- Lunt, H., Draper, N., Marshall, H. C., Logan, F. J., Hamlin, M. J., Shearman, J. P., et al. (2014). High intensity interval training in a real world setting: A randomized controlled feasibility study in overweight inactive adults, measuring change in maximal oxygen uptake. *PLoS One*, 9(1), e83256. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0083256>.
- Maher, C., Ferguson, M., Vandelandotte, C., Plotnikoff, R., De Bourdeaudhuij, I., Thomas, S., et al. (2015). A web-based, social networking physical activity intervention for insufficiently active adults delivered via Facebook app: Randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 17(7), e174. <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.4086>.

- Mailey, E. L., & McAuley, E. (2014). Impact of a brief exercise intervention on physical activity and social cognitive determinants among working mothers: A randomized trial. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 37, 343–355. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10865-013-9492-y>.
- Marcus, B. H., Williams, D. M., Dubbert, P. M., et al. (2006). Physical activity intervention studies: What we know and what we need to know. A scientific statement from the American Heart Association Council on nutrition, physical activity, and metabolism (Subcommittee on physical activity); Council on cardiovascular disease in the young; and the Interdisciplinary Working Group on quality of care and outcomes research. *Circulation*, 114, 2739–2752.
- McDermott, M. S., Oliver, M., Iverson, D., & Sharma, R. (2016). Effective techniques for changing physical activity and healthy eating intentions and behavior: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *British Journal of Health Psychology*, 21, 827–841.
- Michie, S., Abraham, C., Whittington, C., McAteer, J., & Gupta, S. (2009). Effective techniques in healthy eating and physical activity interventions: A meta-regression. *Health Psychology*, 28, 690–701.
- Muller-Riemenschneider, F., Reinhold, T., & Willich, S. N. (2009). Cost-effectiveness of interventions promoting physical activity. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*, 43, 70–76.
- Nigg, C. R., & Long, C. R. (2012). A systematic review of single health behavior change interventions vs. multiple health behavior change interventions among older adults. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 2(2), 163–179.
- Pate, R. R., O'Neill, J. R., & Lobelo, F. (2008). The evolving definition of “sedentary”. *Exercise and Sport Sciences Review*, 36(4), 173–178.
- Pinto, B. M., Goldstein, M. G., Papandonatos, G. D., Farrell, N., Tilkemeier, P., Marcus, B. H., & Todaro, J. F. (2011). Maintenance of exercise after phase II cardiac rehabilitation: A randomized controlled trial. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 41, 274–283. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amepre.2011.04.015>.
- Plotnikoff, R. C., Costigan, S. A., Williams, R. L., Hutchesson, M. J., Kennedy, S. G., Robards, S. L., et al. (2015). Effectiveness of interventions targeting physical activity, nutrition and healthy weight for university and college students: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 12, 45. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12966-015-0203-7>.
- Teixeira, P., Carraca, E., Markland, D., Silva, M., & Ryan, R. (2012). Exercise, physical activity, and self-determination theory: A systematic review. *International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 9, 78. <https://doi.org/10.1186/1479-5868-9-78>.
- Tremblay, M. S., Aubert, S., Barnes, J. D., Saunders, T. J., Carson, V., Latimer-Cheung, A. E., et al. (2017). Sedentary behavior research network (SBRN) – Terminology consensus project process and outcome. *International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 14, 75.
- United States Department of Health and Human Services. (2008). *Physical activity guidelines for Americans* (2nd ed.). Washington D.C.: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
- United States Department of Health and Human Services. (2018). *Physical activity guidelines for Americans*. Washington D.C.: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
- Vandelandotte, C., Spathonis, K. M., Eakin, E. G., & Owen, N. (2007). Website-delivered physical activity interventions: A review of the literature. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 33, 54–64.
- Weston, K. S., Wisloff, U., & Coombes, J. S. (2014). High-intensity interval training in patients with lifestyle-induced cardiometabolic disease: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*, 48(16), 1227–1234.
- Williams, D. M., Matthews, C., Rutt, C., Napolitano, M. A., & Marcus, B. (2008). Interventions to increase walking behavior. *Medicine and Science in Sports, and Exercise*, 40, S567–S573.
- Wofford, L. G. (2008). Systematic review of childhood obesity prevention. *Journal of Pediatric Nursing*, 23, 5–19.
- Zaza, S., Briss, P. A., & Harris, K. W. (2005). *The guide to community preventive services: What works to promote health?* New York: Oxford University Press.
- Zubala, A., MacGillivray, S., Frost, H., Kroll, T., Skelton, D. A., Gavine, A., et al. (2017). Promotion of physical activity interventions for community dwelling older adults: A systematic review of reviews. *PLoS One*, 12(7), e0180902. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0180902>.

Interventions Therapy

► Therapy, Family and Marital

Interview

Nikola Stenzel¹ and Stefan Krumm²

¹Department of Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy, Philipps University of Marburg, Marburg, Germany

²University of Muenster, Muenster, Germany

Synonyms

Diagnostic interview

Definition

Interviews are among the most valuable and most frequently used tools in clinical practice. They can be defined as dyadic face-to-face interactions between two people (interviewer and interviewee) that are conducted for specific purposes. Clinical interviews cover a wide range of purposes, for example, rapport building, problem exploration, or establishing a psychiatric diagnosis according to the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-IV).

Typically, the interaction is asymmetric in the sense that the interviewer poses questions and the interviewee provides answers. Interview questions can be categorized according to their function and/or their form. Interview questions may have the following functions: introductory questions, gathering information, rapport building, transition from one topic of the interview to another, and reassuring that information was understood correctly. Depending on the specific purpose within an interview, the questions may have the following forms: open or closed, direct or indirect, suggestive. Closed interview questions can be answered with a single word or short phrase, whereas open interview questions allow unrestricted answers. Direct questions directly address the topic at hand; indirect questions address broader or related topics to gather information about the topic at hand. Suggestive interview questions imply a certain answer and, thus, should be avoided in an unbiased assessment. The appropriateness of different forms of interview questions depends on the interview phase and information to be assessed.

Interviews may be conducted in a more or less structured way. Structured interviews include a predefined interview schedule. Such a schedule specifies crucial elements of the interview, such as the introduction and the subtopics to be addressed. Furthermore, it defines the interview questions, provides details on sequence of questions, etc. The more elements are specified in advance, the more structured the interview is. The degree of structure should be chosen depending on the interview purpose (e.g., exploration, decision making).

Structured interviews show several advantages, in particular for diagnostic decision making according to DSM-IV. Several established interview schedules are available. For example, the Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV (SCID; First et al. 1996) is an established interview system that is frequently used by clinicians. Another frequently used highly structured interview is the Diagnostic Interview Schedule for DSM-IV (DIS-IV; Robins et al. 2000).

Interviews provide multiple advantages in comparison to other assessment tools such as tests and self-reports. First, interviews can be conducted in an interactive way (e.g., the interviewer can rephrase questions if necessary). Second, interviews are often considered the more natural form of an assessment (as compared to test with multiple choice answers). Third, expert judgment can be made throughout the interview (e.g., based on behavior observations), which may provide further information in addition to the answers given by the interviewee. However, interviews also show disadvantages compared to tests and self-reports with regard to psychometric properties and costs of administration time (as interviews are mostly conducted in dyadic face-to-face situations). Hence, the applicability of interviews needs to be considered on a case-by-case basis.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Assessment](#)
- ▶ [Diagnostic Interview Schedule](#)
- ▶ [Psychiatric Diagnosis](#)
- ▶ [Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV \(SCID\)](#)

References and Readings

- Barbour, K. A., & Davison, G. C. (2004). Clinical interviewing. In S. N. Haynes & E. M. Heiby (Eds.), *Comprehensive handbook of psychological assessment* (Behavioral Assessment, Vol. 3, pp. 181–193). Hoboken: Wiley.
- First, M. B., Spitzer, R. L., Gibbon, M., & Williams, J. B. W. (1996). *Structured clinical interview for DSM-IV axis I disorders, clinician version (SCID-CV)*. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press.

Morrison, J. (2008). *The first interview: A guide for clinicians*. New York: Guilford Press.

Robins, L. N., Cottler, L. B., Buchholz, K. K., Compton, W. M., North, C. S., & Rourke, K. M. (2000). *Diagnostic interview schedule for the DSM-IV (DIS-IV)*. St Louis: Washington University School of Medicine.

Intima-Media Thickness (IMT)

Jonathan Newman

Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Definition

Intima-media thickness (IMT) is defined by the measurement of a component of the walls of muscular arteries (intima) by specific modalities of ultrasound, at defined locations in the human body. Intima-media thickness of the carotid artery has been the location most consistently associated with risk of atherosclerotic risk. Because ultrasounds of the carotid artery can be performed safely, at low risk (no ionizing radiation) and with a relatively high degree of reproducibility, IMT has been a common surrogate endpoint in epidemiologic studies and in clinic trials.

Carotid IMT (CIMT) is correlated with other vascular risk factors and is considered an “intermediate phenotype” of early atherosclerosis that independently predicts vascular events. In general, greater CIMT values are associated with greater cardiovascular risk. However, an absolute definition of abnormal CIMT has been problematic due to the effects of age and hypertension on CIMT, independent of their atherosclerotic risk. Despite evidence suggesting intrareader differences in CIMT measurement are quite small (0.04 mm), the clinical utility of serial CIMT measurement (e.g., to assess response to therapy) has not been demonstrated, and the routine use of CIMT has been hindered by the lack of standard assessment techniques in major epidemiologic studies. As a result, there is neither universal consensus on what constitutes an abnormal test result nor guidelines on how CIMT informs risk stratification of individual cardiovascular risk.

References and Readings

- Bots, M. L., Baldassarre, D., Simon, A., de Groot, E., O’Leary, D. H., Riley, W., et al. (2007). Carotid intima-media thickness and coronary atherosclerosis: Weak or strong relations? *European Heart Journal*, 28(4), 398–406.
- Chambless, L. E., Heiss, G., Folsom, A. R., Rosamond, W., Szklo, M., Sharrett, A. R., et al. (1997). Association of coronary heart disease incidence with carotid arterial wall thickness and major risk factors: The Atherosclerosis Risk in Communities (ARIC) study, 1987–1993. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 146, 483–494.
- Mark Helfand, D. I., Buckley, M. F., Rongwei, F., Rogers, K., Fleming, C., & Humphrey, L. L. (2009). Emerging risk factors for coronary heart disease: A summary of systematic reviews conducted for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 151, 496–507.
- Redberg, R. F., Vogel, R. A., Criqui, M. H., Herrington, D. M., Lima, J. A. C., & Roman, M. J. (2003). Task force #3-what is the spectrum of current and emerging techniques for the noninvasive measurement of atherosclerosis? *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 41, 1886–1898.

Intimate Partner Violence

- [Family Violence](#)

Intoxication

- [Binge Drinking](#)

Intracytoplasmic Sperm Injection

- [In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology](#)

Intrauterine Insemination

- [Infertility and Assisted Reproduction: Psychological Aspects](#)

Intrinsic Religiousness (Religiosity)

Kevin S. Masters

Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Definition

Intrinsic religiousness (initially and still sometimes referred to as intrinsic religiosity) is characterized as religion that is an end in itself, a master motive. Thus, individuals described by intrinsic religiousness view their religion as the framework for their lives, and they try to consistently live the religion they believe. A prototypic intrinsic religiousness test item is “My whole approach to life is based upon my religion.”

Description

Intrinsic religiousness was first described by Gordon Allport and colleagues in the 1960s (see Allport and Ross 1967) when investigating the possible reasons for discrepant findings in the area of religiousness and prejudice. At that time, some studies demonstrated that religiousness was positively associated with prejudice whereas other studies found the opposite. Allport hypothesized that one’s religious orientation, or sentiment, may provide guidance in sorting out these findings. The construct of religious orientation was later clarified by Gorsuch (1994) to be a motivational variable.

Intrinsic religiousness has often been measured by the Religious Orientation Scale (Allport and Ross 1967). More recently, Gorchush and McPherson (1989) developed the I/E-Revised scale as a more psychometrically sound instrument. Internal consistency measures for intrinsic religiousness scales are excellent, typically in the mid 1980s (Donahue 1985). Scholars in the psychology of religion have debated the relative strengths and weaknesses of the religious orientation construct (e.g., Kirkpatrick and Hood 1990;

Masters 1991), but it remains the most empirically investigated and heuristic construct in this area of work.

Investigators attempting to determine the relations between religion and health have also turned to religious orientation. Smith et al. (2003), in a meta-analytic study, found that intrinsic religiousness was the only measure of “positive” religiousness to statistically differentiate itself from other measures of religious attitudes and beliefs in that studies with measures of intrinsic religiousness had stronger negative correlations with symptoms of depression than studies with measures of religious attitudes and beliefs. Similarly, Masters and Bergin (1992) provided a narrative review of the literature and found intrinsic religiousness to be related negatively with depression, anxiety, and obsessive-compulsive symptoms and positively with empathic concern, self-consciousness, internal awareness, flexible approach to life, tolerance, self-control, active coping, self-esteem, efficacy, and ego strength. McCullough and Willoughby (2009) suggest that intrinsic religiousness may be part of a personality core that forms the substrates for conscientiousness, agreeableness, and self-control. They also note that intrinsic religiousness may provide a basis for meaning in life. A recent investigation found intrinsic religiousness related to dampened laboratory-induced cardiovascular reactivity in older adults (Masters et al. 2004) wherein the older intrinsically religious adults reacted to stress similarly to individuals 50 years younger and demonstrated significantly less reactivity than their extrinsically religious same-age counterparts. Masters and Knestel (2011) found that among a random sample of community-dwelling adults, those characterized by intrinsic religiousness were less likely to be divorced, reported overall better health status, lower body mass index, less cigarette use, and fewer number of daily drinks of alcohol than did those characterized as extrinsically religious. There were no differences in the percentages of individuals who were classified as intrinsically religious based on religious denomination. Nevertheless, it is not entirely clear how intrinsic religiousness may interact with religious denomination, and some have suggested that the

construct, as currently conceptualized and measured, is more congruent with Protestant notions of religiosity and perhaps most appropriately applied to this religious group (Cohen et al. 2005).

Cross-References

► [Extrinsic Religiousness \(Religiosity\)](#)

References and Readings

- Allport, G. W., & Ross, J. M. (1967). Personal religious orientation and prejudice. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 5, 432–443.
- Cohen, A. B., Pierce, J. D., Jr., Chambers, J., Meade, R., Gorvine, B. J., & Koenig, H. G. (2005). Intrinsic and extrinsic religiosity, belief in the afterlife, death anxiety, and life satisfaction in young Catholics and Protestants. *Journal of Research in Personality*, 39, 307–324.
- Donahue, M. J. (1985). Intrinsic and extrinsic religiousness: Review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 48, 400–419.
- Gorcush, R. L., & McPherson, S. E. (1989). Intrinsic/extrinsic measurement: I/E-revised and single-item scales. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 28, 348–354.
- Gorsuch, R. L. (1994). Toward motivational theories of intrinsic religious commitment. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 33, 315–325.
- Kirkpatrick, L. A., & Hood, J. (1990). Intrinsic-extrinsic religious orientation: The boon or bane of contemporary psychology of religion? *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 29, 442–462.
- Masters, K. S. (1991). Of boons, banes, babies, and bath water: A reply to the Kirkpatrick and Hood discussion of intrinsic-extrinsic religious orientation. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 30, 312–317.
- Masters, K. S., & Bergin, A. E. (1992). Religious orientation and mental health. In J. F. Schumaker (Ed.), *Religion and mental health* (pp. 221–232). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Masters, K. S., Hill, R. D., Kircher, J. C., Lensegrav-Benson, T. L., & Fallon, J. A. (2004). Religious orientation, aging, and blood pressure reactivity to interpersonal and cognitive stressors. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 28, 171–178.
- Masters, K. S., & Knestel, A. (2011). Religious orientation among a random sample of community dwelling adults: Relations with health status and health relevant behaviors. *The International Journal for the Psychology of Religion*, 21, 63–76.
- McCullough, M. E., & Willoughby, B. L. B. (2009). Religion, self-regulation, and self-control: Associations, explanations, and implications. *Psychological Bulletin*, 135, 69–93.
- Smith, T. B., McCullough, M. E., & Poll, J. (2003). Religiousness and depression: Evidence for a main effect and the moderating influence of stressful life events. *Psychological Bulletin*, 129, 614–636.

Intrusive Thoughts

► [Perseverative Cognition](#)
 ► [Worry](#)

Intrusive Thoughts, Intrusiveness

Bart Verkuil and J. F. Brosschot
 Clinical, Health and Neuro Psychology, Leiden University, Leiden, The Netherlands

Definition

An intrusive thought has been defined as “any distinct, identifiable cognitive event that is unwanted, unintended and recurrent. It interrupts the flow of thought, interferes in task performance, is associated with negative affect, and is difficult to control” (Clark 2005, p. 4). Intrusive thoughts are particularly present in psychopathological states such as obsessive compulsive disorders (then often referred to as “obsessions”) and post-traumatic stress disorder (thoughts or images related to the experienced trauma). Yet, they are also frequently observed in the nonclinical population, where 80–99% has reported experiencing unwanted intrusive thoughts once in a while (Clark and Purdon 1995). They appear highly similar to worrisome thoughts, but it has been suggested that intrusive thoughts are shorter in duration and are appraised as more ego-dystonic than worries (Clark 2005).

Intrusive thoughts can be considered a form of so-called perseverative cognition (see “► [Perseverative Cognition](#)”), which is defined as “the repeated or chronic activation of the cognitive representation of one or more psychological stressors (threat)” (Brosschot et al. 2006).

Perseverative cognition is believed to be responsible for a large part of the health impact of psychological stressors, because it later prolongs the physiological responses to these stressors.

Cross-References

- [Perseverative Cognition](#)
- [Rumination](#)
- [Worry](#)

References and Reading

- Brosschot, J. F., Gerin, W., & Thayer, J. F. (2006). The perseverative cognition hypothesis: A review of worry, prolonged stress-related physiological activation, and health. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 60, 113–124.
- Clark, D. A. (2005). *Intrusive thoughts in clinical disorders: Theory, research, and treatment*. New York: The Guilford Press.
- Clark, D. A., & Purdon, C. L. (1995). The assessment of unwanted intrusive thoughts: A review and critique of the literature. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 33, 967–976.

Invasive Cervical Cancer

- [Cancer, Cervical](#)

Inverse Relationship

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Negative relationship](#)

Definition

An inverse relationship is one in which the value of one parameter tends to decrease as the value of

the other parameter in the relationship increases. It is often described as a negative relationship.

Imagine the age of a car and its value. In general terms, as a car increases in age its value will decrease (the amount of miles driven per unit of time also factors in to this, but we will leave that aside here). This relationship is not perfect since, for two identical cars, the degree to and manner in which they are driven and maintained will impact the value, and the cars may differ considerably in value 10 years after their contemporaneous purchase. Nonetheless, the general association can be described as an inverse one.

In many cases, such a relationship can be captured meaningfully by a correlation coefficient. These coefficients range from -1 to $+1$ (typically written as just 1, without the $+$ sign). A value of -1 represents a perfect inverse linear association: As one parameter increases, the other decreases in a perfect linear relationship. Values between -1 and zero represent less perfect associations.

In contrast, a positive relationship is one in which both parameters change in the same direction: as one increases so the other increases. Such a relationship would be described by a correlation coefficient between zero and 1, with 1 representing a perfect linear relationship. (The technique of correlation cannot meaningfully describe non-linear patterns of association between two variables, such as curvilinear and exponential relationships.)

Involuntary Childlessness

- [Infertility and Assisted Reproduction: Psychosocial Aspects](#)

Involuntary Exposure to Tobacco Smoke

- [Secondhand Smoke](#)

Irritable Bowel Syndrome (IBS): Psychological Treatment

Tomohiko Muratsubaki¹ and Shin Fukudo²

¹Department of Behavioral Medicine, School of Medicine, Tohoku University, Sendai, Japan

²Department of Behavioral Medicine, School of Medicine, Tohoku University Graduate, Seiryomachi, Aoba-ku, Sendai, Japan

Synonyms

Psychotherapy for IBS

Definition

Psychological treatments are non-pharmacological therapies that mainly modify higher neural function including emotion, cognition, motivation, learning, and memories for IBS patients.

Description

Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) is a very common gastrointestinal disorder characterized by recurrent abdominal pain and altered bowel habits without major organic diseases as assessed by routine gastroenterological examination (Drossman 2006). The pathogenesis of IBS is affected or exacerbated by combination of factors including psychosocial states, dysmotility of the gut, and visceral hypersensitivity. The concept of biopsychosocial model best fits to pathophysiology and treatment strategy for IBS. Psychosocial stress likely plays major role in the exacerbation of all of these factors. In fact, IBS patients have symptoms which are more exaggerated by psychosocial stress than healthy controls (Whitehead et al. 1992), show more response in colonic motility to psychosocial stress (Fukudo et al. 1993), and have the corticotrophin-releasing hormone as a major mediator of stress response (Fukudo et al. 1998).

Brain-gut interaction plays an important role in the pathogenesis of IBS. Brain-gut interactions mainly consist of reciprocal interactions between the central nervous system (CNS) and the enteric nervous system (ENS) as well as influence of endocrine system, immune system, and gut microbiota. Brain imaging studies have clarified the roles of the anterior cingulate cortex, amygdala, insula, and the brain stem in response to visceral stimulation (Fukudo et al. 2009). These structures produce both visceral pain and negative emotion that are typical symptoms of IBS patients. Psychological stress, anticipatory anxiety, and mental tension in daily life exert a negative influence on CNS, which influences ENS. Gastrointestinal dysmotility and perception lead to symptoms of IBS, i.e., abdominal pain, abdominal discomfort, diarrhea, or constipation. The gut signals which produce these symptoms also influence the CNS. From the psychosocial viewpoint, IBS has a negative impact on subjects' daily activity and quality of life (Drossman et al. 1993). IBS patients frequently show gastrointestinal dysmotility under stress (Fukudo et al. 1993) and have psychiatric comorbidities, especially depressive disorders, anxiety disorders, and somatoform disorders (Drossman 2006). Note that the present stress alone does not exacerbate symptoms of IBS. Past traumatic life event such as sexual/physical abuse in childhood also exacerbate symptoms of IBS by low stress or environmental changes and can be a factor of intractable IBS. In addition, physician needs to understand psychosocial risk factors including abuse, economical loss, and social withdrawal behind symptoms of IBS.

A wide range of psychotherapeutic interventions are used for the treatment of IBS, including cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT), hypnotherapy, and relaxation techniques. There are some critical reviews on the effect of the psychotherapy for IBS (Talley et al. 1996). Therefore, it is still difficult to say that effective psychotherapy for IBS has already been established. However, the evidence level rises in the recent research. Although several pharmacological agents for IBS have been used, some patients do not respond to pharmacotherapy (Levy et al. 2006). Psychotherapy might be useful for these patients. A key

issue in effective management of IBS is establishing a doctor-patient relationship. Good psychological and therapeutic effects for IBS patients are produced by clinical practices such as explanation, instruction, and administration accompanying well doctor-patient relationship. Conversely, poor psychological and therapeutic effects such as distrust and negative emotion are produced by clinical practices accompanying negative doctor-patient relationship. Factors that contribute to an effective doctor-patient relationship include empathy toward the patients, patient education, validation of the illness, reassurance, treatment negotiation, and establishment of reasonable limits in time and effort (Grover and Drossman 2010). A good doctor-patient relationship is associated with a positive prognosis of IBS (Owens et al. 1995).

There is evidence from a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials on IBS that psychological treatment in general is effective for IBS (Zijdenbos et al. 2009). The theoretical background of psychotherapies for IBS is as follows. First, IBS patients have deranged lifestyles characterized by more perceived stress, more irregular sleep, and more irregular meals (Shinozaki et al. 2008). Second, there is the close relationship between daily stress or hassles and IBS symptoms (Whitehead et al. 1992). Third, IBS patients have high levels of anxiety, depression, and somatization (Kanazawa et al. 2004). Fourth, intractable IBS patients have often experienced traumatic life events (Drossman et al. 1990). Fifth, the effects of health beliefs and learned behaviors may adversely affect outcome. Sixth, IBS patients are known to respond highly to placebo. Seventh, as described above, doctor-patient relationship plays a role in IBS treatment.

Psychological treatments including a delicate observation and stress management is needed for IBS patients. Treatments compose direct or indirect coping to stress and stress sensitivity. IBS patients often have symptoms characterized by abdominal pains in stressful situation when they cannot secure personal space or relieve symptoms by defecation. Because of these symptoms, IBS

patients often avoid transportation, feel insecurity in going to the school or the company, and limit going out. For this situation, behavioral intervention is useful. Behavioral intervention is focused on modifying maladaptive behavior which links to exacerbation or maintenance of IBS symptoms and forming a habit of adaptive behavior. It is composed of setting clear goals on treatment, learning nutrition and lifestyle, brief cognitive restructuring, stimulus control, problem-solving method, and prevention of relapse. IBS patients often have illness behavior which has been formed in the early developmental history. Modification of cognitive error which links to this behavior is needed. The main purpose of CBT is to modify negative automatic thoughts and dysfunctional beliefs and to increase or decrease a particular behavior. Even if individual is in the same environment, how to feel the stress and how to interpret it are greatly variable. Actually, CBT was found to be more effective for IBS than an educational intervention (Drossman et al. 2003). Because IBS is exacerbated by stress, therapeutic modification of the stress sensitivity using stress coping or CBT is effective for IBS symptoms (Kennedy et al. 2005; Moss-Morris et al. 2010).

Relaxation is also useful as direct coping to stress. This coping includes deep breathing, distraction, breaking, slow bathing, and taking holiday. Hypnotherapy is a representative strategy for refractory IBS (Whorwell et al. 1984). Autogenic training (AT) is auto-hypnosis with the goal of being able to self-administer suggestions of relaxation. In brief, traditional AT consists of 6 standard exercises after the formula "I am at peace." The first exercise aims at muscular relaxation by repetition of a verbal formula, "my right arm is heavy" emphasizing heaviness. Subsequent passive concentration is focused on feeling warm, initiated by the instruction "my right arm is warm," followed by cardiac activity using the formula "my heartbeat is calm and regular." Then follows passive concentration on the respiratory mechanism with the formula "it breathes me," then on warmth around the abdominal region with "my solar plexus is warm," and finally on

coolness in the cranial region with “my forehead is cool and clear” (Kanji and Ernst 2000). AT is reported to be effective for intractable IBS patients (Shinozaki et al. 2010).

Cross-References

- Behavioral Therapy
- Cognitive Behavioral Therapy (CBT)
- Relaxation Techniques/Therapy
- Stress Management

References and Readings

- Drossman, D. A. (2006). The functional gastrointestinal disorders and the Rome III process. *Gastroenterology*, 130, 1377–1390.
- Drossman, D. A., Leserman, J., Nachman, G., Li, Z., Gluck, H., Toomey, T. C., et al. (1990). Sexual and physical abuse in women with functional or organic gastrointestinal disorders. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 113, 828–833.
- Drossman, D. A., Li, Z., Andruzzi, E., Temple, R. D., Talley, N. J., Thompson, W. G., et al. (1993). U.S. householder survey of functional gastrointestinal disorders: Prevalence, sociodemography and health impact. *Digestive Diseases & Sciences*, 38, 1569–1580.
- Drossman, D. A., Toner, B. B., Whitehead, W. E., Diamant, N. E., Dalton, C. B., Duncan, S., et al. (2003). Cognitive-behavioral therapy vs. education and desipramine vs. placebo for moderate to severe functional bowel disorders. *Gastroenterology*, 125, 19–31.
- Fukudo, S., Nomura, T., Muranaka, M., & Taguchi, F. (1993). Brain-gut response to stress and cholinergic stimulation in irritable bowel syndrome. A preliminary study. *Journal of Clinical Gastroenterology*, 17, 133–141.
- Fukudo, S., Nomura, T., & Hongo, M. (1998). Impact of corticotropin-releasing hormone on gastrointestinal motility and adrenocorticotrophic hormone in normal controls and patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut*, 42, 845–849.
- Fukudo, S., Kanazawa, M., Mizuno, T., Hamaguchi, T., Kano, M., Watanabe, S., et al. (2009). Impact of serotonin transporter gene polymorphism on brain activation by colorectal distention. *NeuroImage*, 47, 946–951.
- Grover, M., & Drossman, D. A. (2010). Functional abdominal pain. *Current Gastroenterology Reports*, 12, 391–398.
- Kanazawa, M., Endo, Y., Whitehead, W. E., Kano, M., Hongo, M., & Fukudo, S. (2004). Patients and non-consulters with irritable bowel syndrome reporting a parental history of bowel problems have more impaired psychological distress. *Digestive Diseases and Sciences*, 49, 1046–1053.
- Kanji, N., & Ernst, E. (2000). Autogenic training for stress and anxiety: A systematic review. *Complementary Therapies in Medicine*, 8, 106–110.
- Kennedy, T., Jones, R., Darnley, S., Seed, P., Wessely, S., & Chalder, T. (2005). Cognitive behaviour therapy in addition to antispasmodic treatment for irritable bowel syndrome in primary care: Randomised controlled trial. *British Medical Journal*, 331, 435.
- Levy, R. L., Olden, K. W., Naliboff, B. D., Bradley, L. A., Francisconi, C., Drossman, D. A., et al. (2006). Psychosocial aspects of the functional gastrointestinal disorders. *Gastroenterology*, 130, 1447–1458.
- Moss-Morris, R., McAlpine, L., Didsbury, L. P., & Spence, M. J. (2010). A randomized controlled trial of a cognitive behavioural therapy-based self-management intervention for irritable bowel syndrome in primary care. *Psychological Medicine*, 40, 85–94.
- Owens, D. M., Nelson, D. K., & Talley, N. J. (1995). The irritable bowel syndrome: Long term prognosis and the physician-patient interaction. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 122, 107–112.
- Shinozaki, M., Fukudo, S., Hongo, M., Shimosegawa, T., Sasaki, D., Matsueda, K., et al. (2008). High prevalence of irritable bowel syndrome in medical outpatients in Japan. *Journal of Clinical Gastroenterology*, 42, 1010–1016.
- Shinozaki, M., Kanazawa, M., Kano, M., Endo, Y., Nakaya, N., Hongo, M., et al. (2010). Effect of autogenic training on general improvement in patients with irritable bowel syndrome: A randomized controlled trial. *Applied Psychophysiology and Biofeedback*, 35, 189–198.
- Talley, N. J., Owen, B. K., Boyce, P., & Paterson, K. (1996). Psychological treatments for irritable bowel syndrome: A critique of controlled treatment trials. *American Journal of Gastroenterology*, 91, 277–283.
- Whitehead, W. E., Crowell, M. D., Robinson, J. C., Heller, B. R., & Schuster, M. M. (1992). Effects of stressful life events on bowel symptoms: Subjects with irritable bowel syndrome compared with subjects without bowel dysfunction. *Gut*, 33, 825–830.
- Whorwell, P. J., Prior, A., & Faragher, E. B. (1984). Controlled trial of hypnotherapy in the treatment of severe refractory irritable bowel syndrome. *Lancet*, 2, 1232–1233.
- Zijdenbos, I. L., de Wit, N. J., van der Heijden, G. J., Rubin, G., & Quatero, A. O. (2009). Psychological treatments for the management of irritable bowel syndrome. *Cochrane Database Systematic Review*, 1, CD006442.

Ischemic Heart Disease

Siqin Ye

Division of Cardiology, Columbia University
Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Coronary heart disease](#)

Definition

Ischemic heart disease refers to various manifestations of heart disease caused by ischemia, i.e., inadequate blood flow to the myocardium (Morrow and Gersh 2008).

Description

Ischemic heart disease is typically due to coronary heart disease caused by atherosclerosis (see entry, ► [Coronary Heart Disease](#)). Patients with ischemic heart disease may have symptoms of angina, or chest pain (see entry, ► [Angina Pectoris](#)). Sudden rupture of coronary atherosclerotic plaques may cause myocardial infarction, or heart attack (see entry, ► [Acute Myocardial Infarction](#)). If there is sufficient damage done to the heart, the patient may also develop heart failure or ischemic cardiomyopathy (see entry, ► [Congestive Heart Failure](#)).

Cross-References

- [Acute Myocardial Infarction](#)
- [Angina Pectoris](#)
- [Congestive Heart Failure](#)
- [Coronary Heart Disease](#)

References and Readings

Morrow, D. A., & Gersh, B. J. (2008). Chronic coronary artery disease. In P. Libby, R. O. Bonow, D. L. Mann, D. P. Zipes, & E. Braunwald (Eds.), *Braunwald's heart disease: A textbook of cardiovascular medicine* (pp. 1353–1417). Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier.

iScience

- [Internet-Based Studies](#)

Isometric/Isotonic Exercise

Anthony Remaud

Elisabeth Bruyere Research Institute, University
of Ottawa, Ottawa, ON, Canada

Synonyms

[Exercise, benefits of](#); [Exercise-general category](#); [Exercise testing](#); [Graded exercise](#); [Resistance training](#); [Static exercise](#)

Definition

An *isometric* exercise refers to any physical activity involving static muscle contractions. The term “isometric” is derived from the Greek roots “isos” (equal) and “metron” (measure), which means that during isometric exercise, muscle length is broadly unchanged and consequently joint angle remains the same. From a biomechanical point of view, this exercise modality means that the net moment generated by the individual at the joint level is equal to the resistant moment applied to the body segment in an opposing direction. Actually, muscles slightly shorten and involve a stretch at the tendon level but the length of the muscle-tendon complex remains constant. Depending on the amount of resistance applied to the body segment, the level of muscle contraction can be maximal or submaximal. Performing the “wall sit/phantom chair” exercise, holding a free weight in a fixed position or pushing against an unmovable object such as a wall can illustrate different types of isometric exercise. Since it does not require any specific equipment, isometric exercise can be performed anywhere, anytime.

An *isotonic* exercise implies dynamic muscle contractions. The term “isotonic” is derived from

the Greek roots “isos” (equal) and “tonos” (tension), which means that during isotonic exercise, muscle tension is supposed to remain constant during the movement. From a biomechanical point of view, this exercise modality means that the net moment generated by the individual at the joint level is unchanged throughout the range of motion whereas movement velocity varies. In the literature, isotonic exercises often designate strength training workouts performed with a constant resistance using bodyweight (e.g., push-up exercise) or free weights (e.g., barbell bench press). These types of exercise can be performed in concentric mode if the net moment generated at the joint level is superior to the resistant moment applied to the body segment (muscle shortening) or in eccentric mode if this net moment is inferior to the resistant moment (muscle lengthening). Actually, the isotonic condition is rarely achieved during strength training workouts notably due to the acceleration and deceleration of the load during the movement which modify the resistant moment. Therefore, the terms “isoinertial” or “isoload” have been proposed to better describe this concept.

Different disciplines relevant to health such as physical medicine and rehabilitation, physiotherapy, or athletic training commonly use isometric and isotonic exercises as a means for functional muscle assessment and/or strength training.

Cross-References

- Aerobic Exercise
- Health

- Interventions and Strategies to Promote Physical Activity
- Physical Activity

References and Reading

- Abernethy, P., Wilson, G., & Logan, P. (1995). Strength and power assessment. Issues, controversies and challenges. *Sports Medicine*, 19(6), 401–417.
- Enoka, R. M. (2002). *Neuromechanics of human movement* (3rd ed.). Champaign: Human Kinetics.
- Watkins, J. (1999). *Structure and function of the musculoskeletal system* (1st ed.). Champaign: Human Kinetics.

Iteration

- Agile Science

IUI

- Infertility and Assisted Reproduction: Psychosocial Aspects

IVF

- In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology
- Infertility and Assisted Reproduction: Psychosocial Aspects
- Surrogacy

Job Analyses

► [Job Related to Health](#)

Job Characteristics

► [Job Demands](#)

Job Classification

Karen Jacobs¹, Miranda Hellman²,
Jacqueline Markowitz¹ and Ellen Wuest²
¹Occupational Therapy, College of Health and
Rehabilitation Science, Sargent College, Boston
University, Boston, MA, USA
²Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Employment](#); [Job evaluation](#); [National occupational classification](#); [National statistics socioeconomic classification](#); [Occupation](#); [Occupational classification](#); [United States Department of Labor](#)

Definition

Job classification is the defining or categorization of types of employment either by function or

activity. Job classification is useful to combine jobs for test validation, wage and salary administration, and for the development of performance appraisal instruments (Sackett et al. 1981). Job classification is also critical for structuring personnel selection, training, and career development (Pearlman 1980). Successful job classification can also be useful for client-oriented applications, allowing people to be matched to job vacancies that fit their skill set (International Labor Organization 2010). The specificity of the classification is important depending on the type of work. A general level of classification is sufficient for distinctly different jobs, but more specific classifications are necessary to distinguish jobs within occupational groups, such as management jobs or clerical jobs (Schippmann et al. 1991). When a job is classified, it should be consistent and should match all other jobs assigned to that class, it should be clear and each job should only fall under one assignment, and the classifications should be interpretable (Hartman et al. 1992).

Description

International Classification of Jobs

Job classification is a process that occurs internationally, with similarities and differences between countries. The United States Department of Labor has classified all workers into one of 840 occupations. These occupations are grouped together

based on similar job duties, skills, education, and training (US Department of Labor 2010). Canada utilizes similar ways to classify jobs, and created the National Occupational Classification (NOC) that gives statisticians, labor market analysts, career counselors, employers, and individual job seekers a way to understand the nature of that job and collect appropriate data (Human Resources and Skills Development Canada 2009). The NOC is organized in such a manner that each occupation is assigned a four digit number that provides information about the job; for example, 3113 is for dentists, and the “31” symbolizes that it is a health field requiring a university-level education (Human Resources and Skills Development Canada 2009). The United Kingdom uses the Standard Occupational Classification (SOC), which has three volumes. The first volume outlines the background, resources, concepts, and processes of how the jobs are classified, the second codes the index for classification, and the third shows the relationship between the SOC and the National Statistics Socio-economic Classification (Office for National Statistics 2010). The International Standard Classification of Occupations is a model to classify jobs globally, allows for international reporting, and can be used in countries that have not yet developed their own means to classify jobs (2010).

Cross-References

- [Prevention: Primary, Secondary, Tertiary](#)
- [Preventive Care](#)

References and Readings

- Hartman, E. A., Mumford, M. D., & Mueller, S. (1992). Validity of job classifications: An examination of alternative indicators. *Human Performance*, 5, 191–211.
- Human Resources and Skills Development Canada. (2009). National occupation classification. Retrieved February 23, 2011, from <http://www.hrsdc.gc.ca/eng/workplaceskills/noc/index.shtml>.
- International Labor Organization. (2010). International standard classification of organizations. Retrieved February 23, 2011, from <http://www.ilo.org/public/english/bureau/stat/isco/index.htm>.

Office for National Statistics. (2010). Standard occupational classification. Retrieved February 23, 2011, from <http://www.ons.gov.uk/about-statostocs/classifications/current/soc2010/index.html>.

Pearlman, K. (1980). Job families: A review and discussion of their implications for personnel selection. *Psychological Bulletin*, 87, 1–28.

Sackett, P. R., Cornelius, E. T., III, & Carron, T. J. (1981). A comparison of global judgment vs. task oriented approaches to job classification. *Personnel Psychology*, 34, 791–806.

Schippmann, J. S., Prien, E. P., & Hughes, G. L. (1991). The content of management work: Formation of task and job skill composite classifications. *Journal of Business and Psychology*, 5, 325–356.

United States Department of Labor. (2010). Standard occupation classification. Retrieved February 22, 2011, from <http://www.bls.gov/soc/>.

Job Components

- [Job Performance](#)

Job Control

- [Job Demands](#)
- [Job Related to Health](#)

Job Demand/Control/Strain

Töres Theorell

Stress Research Institute, Stockholm University,
Stockholm, Sweden

Synonyms

[Decision authority](#); [Decision latitude](#); [Mental workload](#)

Definition

The job demand/control model is used for studying psychosocial stressors in the work environment.

Description

The *demand/control model* was created for the study of psychosocial working conditions. It was published by Robert Karasek in his Ph.D. thesis in 1976 (Massachusetts Institute of Technology) and as a scientific article (Karasek 1979). While Karasek had already mentioned social support as a potentially important additional dimension, this part of the model – adding up to the *demand/control/support model* – was first published in 1986 (Johns Hopkins University) by Jeffrey V. Johnson in his Ph.D. thesis (Johnson 1989). Sociopsychological and biological theory underlying the model was further developed in 1990 by Karasek and Theorell (Karasek and Theorell 1990).

The basic underlying idea behind the creation of the model was that crucial psychosocial stressors (factors inducing adverse long-lasting stress reactions in employees) in the work environment should be assessed. Reduction of such stressors for the improvement of employee health by means of work redesign should then be the ultimate goal. According to the initial demand/control model theory, high psychological demands are endangering employee health particularly when the employees have little control (low decision latitude; the combination labeled “job strain”) over their own conditions. On the other hand, when demands are high and decision latitude is also high (“active work”), psychological growth, improved coping, and biological regeneration take place. Still according to the theory, the combination of low demands and low decision latitude (“passive work”) is of intermediate importance to employee health. However, employees working for a long time in the “passive” work situation may lose competence and “stop growing” psychologically. The low-demand/high-control situation (“relaxed work”) is the ideal situation serving as reference in the model. The “relaxed”/“job strain” diagonal of the model is of more importance to the employee health, whereas the “passive”/“active” diagonal is more important to productivity.

The demand/control/support model has been tested in many epidemiological studies. The assessment of demand, control, and support has mostly been made by means of standardized

questionnaires. The most widely used Job Content Questionnaire (JCQ) has been translated into many languages (Karasek et al. 1998). A shorter version (Demand Control Questionnaire (DCQ)) has been used primarily in the Nordic countries. JCQ contains scales for the assessment of psychological demand, decision latitude, and its two sub-components (skill discretion and decision authority) and also social support from superiors and coworkers. JCQ also includes questions about physical demands and job insecurity.

Measures of psychological job demands, decision latitude, and social support can also be derived from job titles. The basis of such assessments is the creation from representative samples in the working population of a “job exposure matrix” (JEM) indicating the average demand, decision latitude, and support scores for each job title. The means can also be specified with regard to age group, length of employment, and gender since these factors could influence the means. In most studies, the three-digit version of the international classification of jobs has been used for the psychosocial JEM. This provides a more “objective” way of assessing the work characteristics. However, in the recording of the demand/control/support model, it is mainly the decision latitude dimension that provides sufficiently reliable data since both demands and social support assessments vary more between individuals within occupations than they do for decision latitude. Another more objective or “external” way of measuring is to train experts to do collective assessments of job sites with regard to demand, control, and support.

How does the demand/control/support model relate to people’s physiological status? In several epidemiological studies, the model has been examined in relation to biological risk factors for cardiovascular disease. Accordingly, in some studies, high or increasing job strain has been significantly related to elevated levels of sleep disturbance, blood pressure (particularly when blood pressure is monitored automatically for 24 h), morning excretion of cortisol in saliva, and immunological parameters, such as plasma fibrinogen, all of which are regarded as risk factors for cardiovascular disease. High or rising levels of job strain are also related to lowered plasma testosterone concentration, which has

regenerative/restorative functions protecting the body against adverse effects of stress (Theorell 2009). In addition, low levels of decision latitude have been shown in one study to be related to low parasympathetic activity (another protector against adverse stress effects), as it is reflected in heart rate variability measured by means of 24-h electrocardiogram (Collins et al. 2005). All these observations indicate that job strain may affect physiology in adverse ways. Poor social support has been shown to add to the associations. However, there are relatively few studies of physiological correlates of Demand Control Support (DCS), and hence, there is no complete scientific consensus in this area – with the exception of fully automated measures of high blood pressure which are consistently related to high job strain.

Epidemiological studies have also been made of the relationship between job strain and adverse health habits such as smoking, physical activity, and alcohol consumption. The findings in these studies are conflicting. The relationships between health habits and the Demand Control Support (DCS) model depend on contexts, such as social class, age group, country, etc. Social class has been discussed extensively since low socioeconomic status is related to low decision latitude and high socioeconomic status to high psychological demands. Whether or not to adjust for social class remains to be resolved. In many studies, the relationship between the DCS and disease outcome is only marginally affected by adjustment for socioeconomic group, whereas other studies show stronger effects of such adjustments.

Several prospective epidemiological studies have been published regarding the relationship between the DCS model and risk of cardiovascular disease (mainly myocardial infarction). Designs, outcome measures, and DCS exposure measures have varied between studies. Several of the published studies have had too small statistical power or too long follow-up periods (for instance, 20 years). Meta-analytical studies, however, indicate that among working men without initial heart disease, job strain (in most studies defined in such a way that 20–30% of the study population is defined as being exposed – the remaining participants are mostly used as reference population) is associated with a 30% elevation of the risk of

developing a myocardial infarction during a 5-year follow-up (Kivimäki et al. 2012). The corresponding meta-analytical excess risk for the prospective risk of developing symptoms of depression while exposed to job strain is in the order of 80% (Theorell et al. 2015). The combination of job strain and lack of social support (iso-strain) has been less extensively studied but is also related to risk of cardiovascular disease. There is growing consensus regarding the role of smoking, physical activity, and eating/drinking habits in these associations. In participants who have many such adverse habits, concomitantly the addition of job strain seems to make little difference. However, for those with no such adverse behavior or only one of them, the effect of job strain is appreciable (Theorell 2014). In several studies, adjustments for such risk factors have not affected the association markedly. For women the relative increase in risk associated with job strain seems to be comparable to that for men. It has been pointed out that a true multiplicative interaction between high psychological demands and low decision latitude has never been proven. However, the two dimensions add to one another as, for example, in the large IPD study by Kivimäki et al. in 2012.

Early signs of atherosclerosis assessed by means of noninvasive methods (carotid artery intima-media thickness, IMT) have been shown to be correlated with degree of job strain in Finnish men in their younger middle age, even after adjustment for accepted risk factors for cardiovascular disease. This is a developing research field like the study of interaction between genetic stress-related genetic allele combinations and exposure to job strain (Hintsanen et al. 2008). Mental disease has also been examined in several prospective epidemiological studies including demand/control/support which show that the DCS model can predict risk of depression and “burnout.” Depression seems to be particularly strongly related prospectively to high psychological demands and lack of social support at work. Musculoskeletal disorders (in particular neck-shoulder pain) have also been related to the DCS in many studies. There seems to be an interaction between physical demands (such as heavy lifting or awkward working positions with static load) and high psychological demands/low

decision latitude/poor social support in the etiology of neck-shoulder pain. The findings in different studies seem to depend on the type of work (white collar/blue collar), gender, age, and other contextual factors. While there is no full scientific consensus regarding the role of the DCS model in musculoskeletal disorders, researchers agree that psychosocial job factors represented by the DCS are important in rehabilitation after the onset of such disorders.

The theory underlying the demand/control/support model has been used in several other epidemiological contexts, for instance, productivity, international labor markets, pregnancy outcome, and use of protective equipment in the industry. Karasek has recently elaborated the DCS model in his stress disequilibrium theory (Karasek 2008). This postulates that release and storage of energy are crucial features. In the job strain situation, energy is constantly released with insufficient opportunity for energy storage. During periods of energy storage, there is also opportunity for regeneration and anabolism.

Cross-References

► Job Performance

References and Further Reading

- Collins, S., Karasek, R. A., & Costas, K. (2005). Job strain and autonomic indices of cardiovascular disease risk. *American Journal of Industrial Medicine*, 48, 182–193.
- Hintsanen M., Elovainio M., Puttonen S., Kivimäki M., Lehtimäki T., Kähönen M., Juonala M., Rontu R., Viikari J.S., Raitakari O.T., & Keltikangas-Järvinen L. (2008). Val/Met polymorphism of the COMT gene moderates the association between job strain and early atherosclerosis in young men. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 50, 647–57. <https://doi.org/10.1097/JOM.0b013e318165c7ec>.
- Johnson, J. V. (1989). Control, collectivity and the psychosocial work environment. In S. Sauter, J. J. Hurrell, & C. L. Cooper (Eds.), *Job control and worker health*. London: Wiley.
- Karasek, R. A. (1979). Job demands, job decision latitude and mental strain: Implications for job redesign. *Administrative Science Quarterly*, 24, 285–308.
- Karasek, R. A. (2008). Low social control and physiological deregulation – The stress-disequilibrium theory, towards a new demand-control model. *Scandinavian Journal of Work, Environment & Health*, 34(6), 117–135.
- Karasek, R. A., & Theorell, T. (1990). *Healthy work: Stress, productivity and the reconstruction of working life*. New York: Basic Books.
- Karasek, R. A., Brisson, C., Kawakami, N., Houtman, I., Bongers, P. M., & Amick, B. (1998). The job content questionnaire (JCQ): An instrument for internationally comparative assessments of psychosocial job characteristics. *Journal of Occupational Health Psychology*, 3, 322–355.
- Kivimäki, M., Nyberg, S. T., Batty, G. D., Fransson, E. I., Heikkilä, K., Alfredsson, L., et al. (2012). IPD-Work Consortium. Job strain as a risk factor for coronary heart disease: A collaborative meta-analysis of individual participant data. *Lancet*, 380, 1491–1497. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736\(12\)60994-5](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(12)60994-5).
- Theorell, T. (2009). Anabolism and catabolism. In S. Sonnentag, P. L. Perrewé, & D. C. Ganster (Eds.), *Research in occupational stress and well-being* (Current perspectives on job-stress recovery, Vol. 7, pp. 249–276). Bingley: Emerald/JAI Press.
- Theorell, T. (2014). Commentary triggered by the Individual Participant Data Meta Analysis Consortium of job strain and myocardial infarction risk. *Scandinavian Journal of Work, Environment and Health*, 40, 89–95.
- Theorell, T., Hammarström, A., Aronsson, G., Träskman Bendz, L., Grape, T., Hogstedt, C., et al. (2015). A systematic review including meta-analysis of work environment and depressive symptoms. *BMC Public Health*, 15, 738. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12889-015-1954-4>.

Job Demands

Karen Jacobs¹, Miranda Hellman²,
 Jacqueline Markowitz¹ and Ellen Wuest²
¹Occupational Therapy, College of Health and
 Rehabilitation Science, Sargent College, Boston
 University, Boston, MA, USA
²Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

Job characteristics; Job control; Job strain; Work engagement

Definition

Job demands are aspects of any job that include the costs to the person completing the tasks necessary to the job. While physical demands are often the most obvious job demands, psychological, physiological, social, and organizational

costs are also present in the demands of any job (Bakker and Demerouti 2007). Job demands are dependent on the stress sources present in any environment a job is done and can be measured by the amount of stress caused to the worker participating in the job (Karasek 1979). The job demands-resources model is a current popular model for exploring job demands by also incorporating job resources and finding a balance between them to reduce job strain (Bakker et al. 2003).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Job Related to Health](#)
- ▶ [Social Relationships](#)
- ▶ [Social Stress](#)
- ▶ [Social Support](#)

References and Readings

- Bakker, A. B., & Demerouti, E. (2007). The job demands-resources model: State of the art. *Journal of Managerial Psychology*, 22(3), 309–328.
- Bakker, A. B., Demerouti, E., Taris, T., Schaufeli, W. B., & Schreurs, P. (2003). A multi-group analysis of the job demands-resources model in four home care organizations. *International Journal of Stress Management*, 10, 16–38.
- Karasek, R. A. (1979). Job demands, job decision latitude, and mental strain: Implications for job redesign. *Administrative Science Quarterly*, 24(2), 285–308.

Job Diagnostic Survey

Marie-Louise Schult
 Karolinska Institute, Department of Clinical Sciences, Department of Neurobiology, Care Sciences and Society, The Rehabilitation Medicine, University Clinic Danderyd Hospital, Stockholm, Sweden

Synonyms

[Characteristics study](#); [Work](#)

Definition

The Job Diagnostic Survey Questionnaire (JDS) intends to (a) diagnose existing jobs to determine if and how these might be redesigned to improve employee's motivation, satisfaction, and productivity and (b) evaluate the effects.

Description

The Job Diagnostic Survey (JDS) was developed by Hackman and Oldham in 1975. JDS is based on theoretical frameworks by Turner and Lawrence (1965), Hackman and Lawler (1971), and further developed by Hackman and Oldham (1975, 1980). JDS is based on the theoretical model the "Job Characteristics Model" (Hackman and Oldham 1975, 1980) which contains three basic psychological critical states that promote high performance, motivation, and satisfaction at work. The critical states are as follows: (a) a person must experience the work as meaningful, valuable, and worthwhile; (b) a person should assume responsibility for the result of the work; and (c) a person should have knowledge of the results from work.

Experienced meaningfulness of a job is enhanced primarily by three core job dimensions: skill variety (a variety of different activities involving the use of different skills), task identity (doing a job from the beginning to end), and task significance (substantial impact).

Experienced responsibility for work outcomes increases when a job has high autonomy (substantial freedom, independence).

Knowledge of the results is increased when a job gives high feedback (the employee gets direct and clear information about the effectiveness of performance).

Affective responses from the work is investigated using questions regarding (a) general satisfaction (the degree to which the employee is satisfied with the job); (b) internal work motivation (the employee experiences positive internal feelings when performing effectively at work); and (c) specific satisfaction of job security, pay, social, supervisory, and opportunity for personal growth and development.

Job Diagnostic Survey Questionnaire

The original *Job Diagnostic Survey Questionnaire* (JDS) (Hackman and Oldham 1975) is designed to be completed by workers. It contains questions and statements of Likert type, ranging from one to seven with higher scores indicating the greater extent to which the respondent's own work possesses the characteristics being assessed. JDS includes four major parts. The first part "job dimensions" includes skill variety ($n = 3$), task identity ($n = 3$), task significance ($n = 3$), autonomy ($n = 3$), feedback from job itself ($n = 3$), feedback from agents ($n = 3$), and dealing with others ($n = 3$). The second part "psychological states" includes experienced meaningfulness from work ($n = 4$), experienced responsibility for the work ($n = 6$), and knowledge of the results ($n = 4$). Part three "the affective responses to the job" includes general satisfaction ($n = 5$), internal work motivation ($n = 6$), and specific satisfaction with job security ($n = 2$), pay ($n = 2$), social ($n = 3$), supervisory ($n = 3$), and growth ($n = 4$). Part four "growth needs strength" includes questions in "would like" format ($n = 6$) and "job choice" format ($n = 12$).

The Job Characteristics Model suggests that it is possible to generate a summary score reflecting an overall *motivating potential* (MPS) of a job based on the five core job dimensions:

$$\text{MPS} = \frac{(\text{Skill variety} + \text{Task identify} + \text{Task significance})}{3} \times (\text{Autonomy}) \times (\text{Feedback})$$

Reliability

The instrument is not recommended for use at individual level; however, it shows satisfactory reliability when used on groups of five or more, performing the same type of job. The reliability ranges from a high internal consistency of 0.88 to a low of 0.58 (Hackman and Oldham 1975). Results from test-retest are not available. JDS norm-referenced data are based on 6930 persons working in 876 different jobs in 56 organizations (Oldham et al. 1978).

Validity

Early work by Hackman and Oldham (1975) showed good face validity, with items being checked and re-checked during the 2-year development period. Fried and Ferris (1987) describe in their meta-analysis modest support for the model, suggesting that the model does not give a complete picture of the motivational effects of job characteristics. A recent study of the empirical evidence of the Job Characteristic Model was investigated in British establishments (DeVaro et al. 2007). The study result generally supports the model's prediction that task variety and worker autonomy are positively associated with labor productivity and product quality.

Oldham and Hackman (2010) describe how they under-recognized in their early work (1975, 1980) the importance for work redesign of the broader context, for example, the organization's formal properties and the culture within which the organization operates. They further suggest important areas for future research and discuss concepts such as social sources of motivation, job crafting, and work design for teams.

In several studies published during the years 2008–2011 using the JDS, only parts of the original questionnaire have been used, most frequently the subscales for job control (Tucker et al. 2009), job autonomy (Grandey et al. 2005), and job satisfaction (Huffman et al. 2008; Nelson et al. 2009).

The JDS is generally applicable across industrial sectors and occupations. Investigations using the JDS have among others previously been published for customer-contact employees (Grandey et al. 2005), university employees (Liu et al. 2011), army soldiers (Huffman et al. 2008), mental health professionals (Pedrini et al. 2009), psychiatrists (Kumar et al. 2007), and pediatric nursing (Eaton and Thomas 1997).

Cross-References

- [Job Demand/Control/Strain](#)
- [Job Demands](#)
- [Job Satisfaction/Dissatisfaction](#)

References and Readings

- DeVaro, J., Li, R., & Brookshire, D. (2007). Analyzing the job characteristic model: New support from cross-section establishments. *International Journal of Human Resource Management*, 18, 986–2003.
- Eaton, N., & Thomas, P. (1997). Job diagnostic surveys on paedric nursing: An evaluation tool. *Journal of Nursing Management*, 5, 167–173.
- Fried, Y., & Ferris, G. R. (1987). The validity of the job characteristics model: A review and meta-analysis. *Personnel Psychology*, 40, 287–322.
- Grandey, A. A., Fisk, G. M., & Steiner, D. D. (2005). Must “service with a smile” be stressful? The moderating role of personal control for American and French employees. *Journal of Applied Psychology*, 90, 893–904.
- Hackman, J. R., & Lawler, E. (1971). Employee reactions to job characteristics. *Journal of Applied Psychology*, 55, 259–286.
- Hackman, J. R., & Oldham, G. R. (1975). Development of the job diagnostic survey. *Journal of Applied Psychology*, 60, 159–170.
- Hackman, J. R., & Oldham, G. R. (1980). *Work redesign*. Reading: Addison-Wesley.
- Huffman, A. H., Youngcourt, S. S., Payne, S. C., & Castro, C. A. (2008). The importance of construct breadth when examining interrole conflict. *Educational and Psychological Measurement*, 68, 515–530.
- Kumar, S., Fisher, J., Robinson, E., Hatcher, S., & Bhagat, R. N. (2007). Burnout and job satisfaction in New Zealand psychiatrists: A national study. *The International Journal of Social Psychiatry*, 53, 306–316.
- Liu, C., Spector, P. E., Liu, Y., & Shi, L. (2011). The interaction of job autonomy and conflict with supervisor in China and the United States: A qualitative and quantitative comparison. *International Journal of Stress Management*, 18(3), 222–245.
- Nelson, T., Johnson, T., & Bebbington, P. (2009). Satisfaction and burnout among crisis resolution, assertive outreach and community mental health teams. A multicentre cross sectional survey. *Social Psychiatry and Psychiatric Epidemiology*, 44, 541–549.
- Oldham, G. R., & Hackman, J. R. (2010). Not what it was and not what it will be: The future of job design research. *Journal of Organizational Behavior*, 31, 463–479.
- Oldham, G. R., Hackman, J. R., & Stepina, L. (1978). *Norms for the job diagnostic survey* (Technical Report No. 16). New Haven: School of Organisation and Management, Yale University.
- Pedrin, L., Magni, L. R., Giovannini, C., Panetta, V., Zacchi, V., Rossi, G., et al. (2009). Burnout in non-hospital psychiatric residential facilities. *Psychiatric Services*, 60, 1547–1551. Ps.psychiatryonline.org.
- Schult, M. L., & Söderback, I. (2000). A method for “Diagnosing” jobs before redesign in chronic-pain patients: Preliminary findings. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 10, 295–309.
- Tucker, J. S., Sinclair, R. R., Mohr, C. D., Adler, A. B., Thomas, J. L., & Salvi, A. D. (2009). Stress and counterproductive work behaviour: Multiple relationships between demands, control, and soldier indiscipline over time. *Journal of Occupational Health Psychology*, 14, 257–271.
- Turner, N., & Lawrence, R. (1965). *Industrial jobs and the worker*. Boston: Harvard Graduate School of Business Administration.

Job Evaluation

► Job Classification

Job Performance

Karen Jacobs¹, Miranda Hellman², Ellen Wuest² and Jacqueline Markowitz¹

¹Occupational Therapy, College of Health and Rehabilitation Science, Sargent College, Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

²Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

Employee appraisal; Job components; Job performance standards; Knowledge of work; Productivity; Quality of work; Situational responsiveness

Definition

Job performance relates to the act of doing a job. Job performance is a means to reach a goal or set of goals within a job, role, or organization (Campbell 1990), but not the actual consequences of the acts performed within a job. Campbell (1990) affirms that job performance is not a single action but rather a “complex activity” (p. 704). Performance in a job is strictly a behavior and a separate entity from the outcomes of a particular job which relate to success and productivity.

Cross-References

- [Stress](#)
- [Stress Management](#)
- [Workload](#)
- [Work-Related Stress](#)

References and Readings

Campbell, J. (1990). Modeling the performance prediction problem in industrial and organizational psychology. In M. Dunnette & L. Hough (Eds.), *Handbook of industrial and organizational psychology* (pp. 686–707). Palo Alto: Consulting Psychologists Press.

Job Performance Standards

- [Job Performance](#)

Job Prestige

- [Occupational Status](#)

Job Related to Health

Karen Jacobs¹, Miranda Hellman²,
 Jacqueline Markowitz¹ and Ellen Wuest²
¹Occupational Therapy, College of Health and
 Rehabilitation Science, Sargent College, Boston
 University, Boston, MA, USA
²Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Job analyses](#); [Job control](#); [Job demands](#); [Job strain](#); [Work-related stress](#)

Definition

A *job* is “a single position or a group of positions, at one establishment, whose major work activities and objectives are similar in terms of worker actions, methodologies, materials, products, and/or worker characteristics; and whose array of work activities differs significantly from those of other positions” (US Department of Labor 1982). Employees are reimbursed by working a job, which is how a job differs from a volunteer opportunity. Reimbursement does not have to be monetary but should be something of use and value to the employee.

Occupational health promotes the highest degree of physical, mental, and social well-being of workers in all occupations. It is aimed to prevent workers’ ill health caused by working conditions, protect them in their works from risks that include adverse factors to health, and place them in optimum adapted occupational environment.

Related to health, it is therefore important to analyze jobs in order to understand the specific activities and requirements of the people who perform them. According to the US Office of Personnel Management (USOPM), job analysis is a “systematic procedure for gathering, documenting, and analyzing information about the content, context, and requirements of the job. It demonstrates that there is a clear relationship between the tasks performed on the job and the worker’s competencies required to perform the tasks” (US Office of Personnel Management [USOPM] 2011). Job analysis requires that certain categories of information be reported in a systematic way (US Department of Labor 1982). The two major categories of job analysis are Work Performed and Worker Characteristics (US Department of Labor). Together, work performed and worker characteristics define the dimensions of job requirements.

Job related to health thus includes adaption of work to the worker and correspondence between worker’s capability and the job requirements.

Description

Some job demands may have an impact on the worker's health and contribute to health problems such as heart disease, depression, and burnout.

Having a defined system to analyze jobs helps people to determine which jobs they are capable of performing that ill health do not occur. For example, if a person acquires an injury that leaves them unable to lift heavy objects, they will have to consult job analyses to determine jobs that they can perform despite their lifting restriction.

Unfortunately, jobs can be a cause of mental, physical, and emotional harm for employees. Because of the health risks sometimes associated with holding a job, there are organizations designed to protect employees. One such organization is the International Labour Organization (ILO). It "is devoted to promoting social justice and internationally recognized human and labor rights, pursuing its founding mission that labor peace is essential to prosperity. Today, the ILO helps advance the creation of decent work and the economic and working conditions that give working people and business people a stake in lasting peace, prosperity and progress. Its main aims are to promote rights at work, encourage decent employment opportunities, enhance social protection and strengthen dialogue on work-related issues" (ILO 2011).

Cross-References

- [Self-concept](#)
- [Workload](#)
- [Work-Related Stress](#)

References and Readings

- International Labour Organization. (2011). *Mission and objectives*. Retrieved February 28, 2011, from <http://www.ilo.org/global/about-the-ilo/mission-and-objectives/lang%2D%2Den/index.htm>
- US Department of Labor. (1982). *A guide to job analysis: A "how-to" publication for occupational analysts*. Stout: Stout Vocational Rehabilitation Institute.

US Office of Personnel Management. (2011). *Job analysis tools*. Retrieved February 28, 2011, from <http://www.opm.gov/hiringtoolkit/docs/jobanalysis.pdf>

Job Satisfaction/Dissatisfaction

Karen Jacobs¹, Miranda Hellman²,
Jacqueline Markowitz¹ and Ellen Wuest²

¹Occupational Therapy, College of Health and Rehabilitation Science, Sargent College, Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

²Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Social support at work](#); [Work autonomy](#); [Work fulfillment/non-fulfillment](#); [Work performance feedback](#); [Work satisfaction/dissatisfaction](#)

Definition

Job satisfaction, that is, intrinsic and extrinsic job satisfaction, deals with the contentment with a particular job, done by an employee. Contentment with a job can be due to the internal qualities of an employee, including personality and personal lenses, and also the external features of the workplace including the environment. Some form of management controlling the quality of job outcomes often influences job satisfaction as well as the amount of power the employee is given.

Description

There are two major forms of job satisfaction: *intrinsic and extrinsic job satisfaction*. Intrinsic job satisfaction is the contentment with the type of work the employee is doing, while extrinsic job satisfaction encompasses the environment that the job is being completed in. Intrinsic job satisfaction is most variable between people because of individual preferences for different types of work.

Extrinsic job satisfaction includes environmental factors such as salary, coworkers, and management (Jones 1992).

Job satisfaction may be improved with varying the different types of tasks, the ability to get promoted, changing environmental factors, and higher employment salary. Although commonly thought to be an essential indicator of job satisfaction, salary level only has a marginal correlation of 15% with job satisfaction (Judge et al. 2010). Moreover, job satisfaction has no direct relationship with job performance (Iaffaldano and Muchinsky 1984) but is strictly dependent on the context and outlook of the individual completing the job.

Job satisfaction can be measured by the amount of stress, the work group characteristics, the physical environment, and organizational rewards/punishments (Brief and Weiss 2002). The most common way to measure job satisfaction in a traditional work environment is to give employees questionnaires, often constructed using a Likert scale. These assessments allow individuals to rate all aspects of the work satisfaction. Items most commonly given low scores may be improved within a workplace resulting in the job satisfaction of all involved to likely increase.

Job dissatisfaction is the discontentment of the conditions involved in measuring job satisfaction. Although these present as opposing concepts, an employee is able to have fluctuating feelings of both of these concepts as the work environment changes. Although an employee may be dissatisfied with the extrinsic aspects of a job, he or she may conversely be satisfied with the intrinsic features of that same job. Extrinsic factors, in particular, are associated with levels of job dissatisfaction high enough to result in a worker quitting a job (Arnett and Polkinghorne 2010). A lack of achievement, responsibility, and recognition may result in job dissatisfaction (Dunnette et al. 1966). While an employee may enjoy the tasks they are completing, their appreciation at their facility is an important element in maintaining the employee's satisfaction. Working conditions, company policies, and security are most likely to cause job dissatisfaction (Dunnette

et al. 1966) as these are least likely to change if offensive.

Conclusion

Work satisfaction/dissatisfaction can be influenced by job characteristics and have an impact on a worker's well-being. For example, work demands such as a high work pressure, emotional demands, and role ambiguity may lead to sleeping problems, exhaustion, etc. Impaired health work resources such as social support, performance feedback, and autonomy might lead to work-related learning, work engagement, and organizational commitment (www.emeraldinsight.com/0268-3946.htm).

Cross-References

- Depression: Symptoms
- Emotions: Positive and Negative
- Job Demand/Control/Strain
- Social Stress
- Social Support

References and Reading

- Arnett, S. E., & Polkinghorne, F. W. (2010). Job dissatisfaction: A factor in maintaining a highly-qualified family and consumers sciences teacher workforce. *Online Journal of Workforce Education and Development*, IV(4), 1–13.
- Brief, A. P., & Weiss, H. M. (2002). Organizational behavior: Affect in the workplace. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 53, 279–307.
- Dunnette, M. D., Campbell, J. P., & Hakel, M. D. (1966). Factors contributing to job satisfaction and job dissatisfaction in six occupational groups. *Organizational Behavior and Human Performance*, 2(2), 143–174.
- Iaffaldano, M. T., & Muchinsky, P. M. (1984). Job satisfaction and job performance: A meta-analysis. *Psychological Bulletin*, 97(2), 251–273.
- Jones, L. K. (1992). Job satisfaction. In *Encyclopedia of career change and work issues* (pp. 142–143). Phoenix: The Oryx Press.
- Judge, T. A., Piccolo, R. F., Podsakoff, N. P., Shaw, J. C., & Rich, B. L. (2010). The relationship between pay and job satisfaction: A meta-analysis of the literature. *Journal of Vocational Behavior*, 77(2), 157–167.

Job Strain

- ▶ [Job Demands](#)
- ▶ [Job Related to Health](#)

Joint Inflammation

- ▶ [Arthritis](#)

Joint Pain

- ▶ [Arthritis](#)

Juvenile Diabetes

- ▶ [Insulin-Dependent Diabetes Mellitus \(IDDM\)](#)
- ▶ [Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus](#)

K

Kallikrein-3

► [Prostate-Specific Antigen \(PSA\)](#)

Kaposi's Sarcoma

David J. Finitis
Department of Psychology, University of
Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Synonyms

[KS](#)

Definition

Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) is a rare disorder typically affecting the skin, mucous membranes, and blood vessels (Kubota [2000](#)); it was first described by Hungarian physician Moritz Kaposi in 1872 (Safai [1997](#)). Originally described as a cancer, current research suggests that KS is virally mediated (Hayward et al. [2010](#)).

Description

KS presents as pink, purple, and/or brownish red maculae or plaques which may hemorrhage (Knipe and Howley [2007](#); Kubota [2000](#)).

Multiple forms of KS have been identified. The classic form is indolent, progressing slowly with localized expression that remains confined to the skin and subcutaneous tissues. This form was originally reported by Kaposi among a circumscribed population of primarily elderly men from Eastern Europe and the Mediterranean. It is rarely life-threatening and may spontaneously remit. A form was subsequently identified in certain regions of sub-Saharan Africa affecting adults and children and may present as either indolent or aggressive. An aggressive form has since been described in immunosuppressed organ transplant recipients (Knipe and Howley [2007](#)).

The acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS) – related form of KS – is likewise aggressive. Lesions spread rapidly to involve a significant area of the skin and may develop into larger nodules and tumors. Aggressive KS may also extend to the lymphatic and gastrointestinal systems as well as the lungs (Kubota [2000](#)). With their pervasive involvement of the lymph nodes, mucosal tissue, and solid organs, aggressive forms of KS carry a significant risk of fatal complications (Kubota [2000](#); Safai [1997](#)).

Etiology

Moritz Kaposi originally categorized KS as a small cell sarcoma, but KS presents as multiple lesions with a course that may be indolent in the immunologically intact patient. This differs greatly from cancer which typically manifests as a unifocal lesion that spreads by metastasis. The current theory is that an infectious agent causes KS: researchers have identified a unique herpes-like virus from KS lesions, called Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus (KSHV) or human herpesvirus 8 (HHV8). Forms of this virus have since been found present in all cases of Kaposi's sarcoma regardless of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) serostatus (Hayward et al. 2010).

Treatment

Historically, Kaposi's sarcoma has been treated as a cancer with surgery, radiation, and chemotherapy. Since aggressive KS is linked to immune compromise, treatments that restore the immune system can indirectly treat KS. In its AIDS-related form, the use of highly active anti-retroviral therapy (HAART) is associated with the reduction and remission of KS lesions (Hayward et al. 2010).

Cross-References

► [Immune Function](#)

References and Readings

- Hayward, G., Alcendor, D., & Arav-Broger, R. (2010). The role of KSHV in pathogenesis of Kaposi's sarcoma. In K. Khalili (Ed.), *Viral oncology basic science and clinical applications*. Wiley-Blackwell: Hoboken.
- Knipe, D., & Howley, P. (Eds.). (2007). *Field's virology* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams, and Wilkins.
- Kubota, M. K. (2000). Human immunodeficiency virus infection and its complications. In R. Rakel (Ed.), *Conn's current therapy*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders Company.
- Safai, B. (1997). Kaposi's sarcoma and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. In V. DeVita Jr. (Ed.), *AIDS etiology, diagnosis, treatment, and prevention* (pp. 296–317). Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven.

Kaufmann, Peter G.

Peter Kaufmann

Division of Prevention and Population Sciences,
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute Clinical
Applications and Prevention Branch, Bethesda,
MD, USA

Biographical Information



Peter Kaufmann was born in a World War II refugee camp near Lauenburg, Germany, on February 5, 1942. He immigrated to the United States with his parents in 1952, settling in Chicago, Illinois. Kaufmann received his BS and MA degrees in Psychology from Loyola University (Chicago) and his Ph.D. from the University of Chicago. He served briefly as Assistant Professor of Psychology at Emory and Henry College in Virginia, then pursued postdoctoral training in neurosciences in the Department of Physiology and Pharmacology at Duke University, in North Carolina, where he conducted research on the cellular organization of the visual system. He continued research in neuroscience at the Duke Center for Hyperbaric Medicine and Environmental Physiology, where he characterized the nature of central nervous system hyperexcitability arising from extreme barometric pressures such as encountered in deep-sea diving, with support from the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI) and the Office of Naval Research.

In 1983, Kaufmann came to the NHLBI to develop a program of research on the neurophysiologic basis of behavioral risk factors of cardiovascular diseases. He rose to Chief of the Behavioral Medicine Branch in 1991, and Leader of the Behavioral Medicine and Prevention Research Group in 1994. In 1996, he organized the NHLBI Task Force on Behavioral Research in Cardiovascular, Lung, and Blood Health and Disease. Upon reorganization of the NHLBI in 2006, he was appointed Deputy Chief of the Clinical Applications and Prevention Branch. In 2000, he served as Acting Director of the National Institutes of Health (NIH) Office of Behavioral and Social Sciences Research (OBSSR). He served on numerous NIH-wide committees, including the NIH Behavioral and Social Sciences Coordinating Committee, the NIH Prevention Research Coordinating Committee, and as member and chair of the Data and Safety Monitoring Board (DSMB) for trials within the National Institute for Drug Abuse Clinical Trials Network. He testified on matters of behavioral and social sciences research in health before the Senate Committee on Appropriations, Subcommittee on Labor, Health and Human Services, and Education in 2000 and in 2002.

In addition to his work at the NIH, Kaufmann served on the Executive Council of the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research (2003–2009) and the Executive Committee of the Society of Behavioral Medicine (2006–2009), serving as President from 2007 to 2008. He was Secretary of the International Society of Behavioral Medicine in 2009. He has received numerous awards for his work, including the NIH Director's Award (2011), several NIH Merit awards, the Distinguished Service Award of the Society of Behavioral Medicine (2009), Meritorious Research Service Commendation of the American Psychological Association (2003), the National Leadership Award of the Society of Behavioral Medicine (2002), and the Career Service to Health Psychology Award of the American Psychological Association (2002). He was elected Fellow of the Society of Behavioral Medicine in 1991 and Fellow of the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research in 1992.

Major Accomplishments

Kaufmann's early work in hyperbaric medicine was to examine the reported rostro-caudal progression of high pressure hyperexcitability symptoms, demonstrating simultaneous effects at all levels of the central and peripheral nervous system. Along the way, he gained understanding of gas exchange, cardiac function, and the circulatory system. His initial focus at NHLBI was to develop research initiatives on the neurobiology of cardiovascular diseases, including the role of neuroactive peptides in response to mental stress, genetic influences in hypertension, and cardiovascular reactivity. Extending the work by David Krantz, James Muller, James Blumenthal, David Sheps and their collaborators, he launched the multisite Psychophysiological Investigations of Myocardial Ischemia (PIMI) study, which delineated the effects of mental stress on cardiac function in healthy men and women as well as in patients with obstructive coronary heart disease (CHD). This study demonstrated that vulnerability to mental stress increased mortality of CHD patients.

As identified behavioral risk factors grew in number and importance, Kaufmann recognized the importance of moving beyond descriptive studies and the study of mechanisms of action to develop clinical interventions that could be implemented in clinical practice. Spurred by the NHLBI's leadership in randomized clinical trials methodology, he turned his attention to identifying suitable targets for behavioral interventions and organized several randomized clinical trials to evaluate interventions for behavioral risk factors in cardiovascular diseases. He organized the Hypertension Intervention Pooling Project with Stephen Weiss, a rigorous examination of the methods and design of clinical trials in non-pharmacological management of hypertension. He designed the stress management arm of the Trials of Hypertension Prevention with David Batey and collaborators and the Raynaud's Treatment Study (RTS), a multi-site clinical trial comparing behavioral and pharmacological treatments for Raynaud's Phenomenon, with Robin Hill. Inspired by Redford Williams' work on the

influence of social support in reducing mortality and Robert Carney's research on depression in myocardial infarction patients, he was instrumental in launching the landmark Enhancing Recovery in Coronary Heart Disease Patients (ENRICHD) randomized trial with Susan Czajkowski. The trial evaluated whether cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT), supplemented by pharmacotherapy for treating depression and low perceived social support in patients after myocardial infarction would reduce the incidence of major acute cardiac events. The trial demonstrated the efficacy of CBT for depressed cardiac patients and led to insights about the role of depression in cardiovascular risk.

Kaufmann's work emphasized rigorous research designs and monitoring, contributing to setting the standard for clinical investigation in behavioral medicine. Along the way, he served as steward of numerous individual and group-randomized clinical trials involving stress management, meditation, relaxation therapy, and behavioral risk factor interventions for patients with hypertension, coronary heart disease, obesity, and tobacco addiction. He was successful in promoting collaborative research in behavioral medicine through Program Project Grants, Research Centers in Mind-Body Medicine, Translation Research, Research Centers for the study of health disparities and public health.

During his tenure as Acting Director of OBSSR in 2000, Kaufmann launched a committee to establish methods and a process for evaluating the efficacy of behavioral interventions. The Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine project emerged and, under the guidance of Karina Davidson, was eventually adopted as a standing committee of the Society of Behavioral Medicine. At that time he also supported the early planning for the National Children's Study and designed and organized the Summer Institute on Randomized Clinical Trials Involving Behavioral Interventions, whose objective was to build a cadre of well-trained clinical trialists. The Summer Institute has continued as an annual event under Kaufmann's leadership with the collaboration and continued support of the OBSSR, particularly through the efforts and dedicated collaboration of Ronald Abeles. The Summer Institute has

trained hundreds of junior investigators in the science of clinical trials.

Kaufmann has also provided leadership for numerous NHLBI and trans-NIH research initiatives and conferences, spanning a broad array of topics such as behavioral genetics, basic and applied research on the physiology and pharmacology of mental stress, pain and cardiovascular regulation, the role of mood disorders in somatic illness, translational science, health literacy, socioeconomic status and health, health disparities, and early life influences on health. With Redford Williams, he engaged in scientific exchange with Soviet scientists on behavioral factors in hypertension and in collaborative ventures with behavioral scientists in Lithuania. Kaufmann served on the editorial boards of *Psychosomatic Medicine*, *Psichologija* (Lithuania), and as Guest Editor of the *Annals of Behavioral Medicine* and the *Journal of Cardiovascular Electrophysiology*. He has held Adjunct teaching appointments at George Mason University in Virginia and Montgomery College, Maryland.

Cross-References

- [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- [Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine \(EBBM\)](#)
- [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)
- [Society of Behavioral Medicine](#)

References and Reading

- Batey, D. M., Kaufmann, P. G., Raczyński, J. M., Hollis, J. F., Murphy, J. K., Rosner, B., for the Phase I Trials of Hypertension Prevention (TOHP-I) Collaborative Research Group, et al. (2000). Stress management intervention for primary prevention of hypertension: Detailed results from phase I of trials of hypertension prevention (TOHP). *Annals of Epidemiology*, 10, 45–58.
- Berkman, L. F., Blumenthal, J., Burg, M., Carney, R. M., Catellier, D., Cowan, M. J., et al. (2003). The effects of treating depression and low perceived social support on clinical events after myocardial infarction: The enhancing recovery in coronary heart disease patients (ENRICHD) randomized trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 289, 3106–3116.
- Berntson, G. G., Bigger, J. T., Eckberg, D. L., Grossman, G., Kaufmann, P. G., Malik, M., et al. (1997). Heart rate

variability: Origins, methods, and interpretive caveats. *Psychophysiology*, 34, 623–648.2.

- Evans, D. L., Charney, D. S., Lewis, L., Golden, R. N., Gorman, J. M., Krishnan, K. R., et al. (2005). Mood disorders in the medically ill: Scientific review and recommendations. *Biological Psychiatry*, 58, 175–189.
- Sheps, D. S., McMahon, R. P., Becker, L., Carney, R. M., Freedland, K. E., Cohen, J. D., et al. (2002). Mental stress-induced ischemia and all-cause mortality in patients with coronary artery disease: Results from the psychophysiological investigations of myocardial ischemia study. *Circulation*, 105, 1780–1784.

researcher. He returned to Gifu University School of Medicine as an associate professor in the Department of Public Health (1992–2000). He moved to Okayama University Graduate School of Medicine, Dentistry & Pharmaceutical Science as a professor in the Department of Hygiene & Preventive Medicine (2000–2006). He is currently a professor in the Department of Mental Health, Graduate School of Medicine, University of Tokyo (2006).

Kawakami, Norito

Akihito Shimazu

Department of Mental Health, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Biographical Information

Prof. Norito Kawakami



Norito Kawakami was born on March 2, 1957, in Okayama, Japan. He graduated from Gifu University School of Medicine and acquired his M.D. degree in 1981. He was awarded his D.M. Sc. in 1985 from The University of Tokyo. After receiving his doctorate, Kawakami began his career as an assistant professor at The University of Tokyo. Then, he worked at the University of Texas School of Public Health, Houston, TX (1990–1991), and The University of Tokyo Faculty of Medicine (1991–1992) as a visiting

Major Accomplishments

Kawakami has published more than 150 research papers in international journals concerning a broad range of topics in occupational health and behavioral medicine, such as the epidemiology of job stress (Kawakami et al. 1995) and its health effects (Inoue et al. 2010; Kawakami et al. 1997, 2000) and workplace stress management interventions (Kawakami et al. 2005; Tsutsumi et al. 2009).

He has also published papers regarding the epidemiology of mental disorders in the workplace and community (Kawakami et al. 1996, 2004; WHO World Mental Health Survey Consortium 2004), social inequality in health, smoking (Honjo et al. 2006; Kawakami et al. 1998), and diabetes (Kawakami et al. 1999).

Kawakami has served as the chair of the International Collaboration Studies Committee (2004–2008), president of the International Society of Behavioral Medicine (2010–2012), chair of the Scientific Committee of Work Organization and Psychosocial Factors at Work (2006–2011), and as a board member for the International Commission on Occupational Health (2009). He has also served as an associate editor of the International Journal of Behavioral Medicine (2005–2008) and the editor-in-chief of the Journal of Occupational Health (2008–2011).

Cross-References

- [International Society of Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Mental Illness](#)
- [Occupational Health](#)

- [Smoking and Health](#)
- [Social Epidemiology](#)
- [Stress Management](#)

References and Readings

- Honjo, K., Tsutsumi, A., Kawachi, I., & Kawakami, N. (2006). What accounts for the relationship between social class and smoking cessation? Results of a path analysis. *Social Science & Medicine*, 62(2), 317–328.
- Inoue, A., Kawakami, N., Haratani, T., Kobayashi, F., Ishizaki, M., Hayashi, T., et al. (2010). Job stressors and long-term sick leave due to depressive disorders among Japanese male employees: Findings from the Japan Work Stress and Health Cohort study. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 64(3), 229–235.
- Kawakami, N., Kobayashi, F., Araki, S., Haratani, T., & Furui, H. (1995). Assessment of job stress dimensions based on the job demands-control model of employees of telecommunication and electric power companies in Japan: Reliability and validity of the Japanese version of the job content questionnaire. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 2(4), 358–375.
- Kawakami, N., Iwata, N., Tanigawa, T., Oga, H., Araki, S., Fujihara, S., et al. (1996). Prevalence of mood and anxiety disorders in a working population in Japan. *Journal of Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 38(9), 899–905.
- Kawakami, N., Tanigawa, T., Araki, S., Nakata, A., Sakurai, S., Yokoyama, K., et al. (1997). Effects of job strain on helper-inducer (CD4+CD29+) and suppressor-inducer (CD4+CD45RA+) T cells in Japanese blue-collar workers. *Psychotherapy and Psychosomatics*, 66(4), 192–198.
- Kawakami, N., Takatsuka, N., Shimizu, H., & Takai, A. (1998). Life-time prevalence and risk factors of tobacco/nicotine dependence in male ever-smokers in Japan. *Addiction*, 93(7), 1023–1032.
- Kawakami, N., Takatsuka, N., Shimizu, H., & Ishibashi, H. (1999). Depressive symptoms and occurrence of type 2 diabetes among Japanese men. *Diabetes Care*, 22(7), 1071–1076.
- Kawakami, N., Akachi, K., Shimizu, H., Haratani, T., Kobayashi, F., Ishizaki, M., et al. (2000). Job strain, social support in the workplace, and haemoglobin A1c in Japanese men. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 57(12), 805–809.
- Kawakami, N., Shimizu, H., Haratani, T., Iwata, N., & Kitamura, T. (2004). Lifetime and 6-month? Prevalence of DSM-III-R psychiatric disorders in an urban community in Japan? *Psychiatry Research*, 121(3), 293–301.
- Kawakami, N., Kobayashi, Y., Takao, S., & Tsutsumi, A. (2005). Effects of web-based supervisor training on supervisor support and psychological distress among workers: A randomized controlled trial. *Preventive Medicine*, 41(2), 471–478.
- Tsutsumi, A., Nagami, M., Yoshikawa, T., Kogi, K., & Kawakami, N. (2009). Participatory intervention for workplace improvements on mental health and job performance among blue-collar workers: A cluster randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 51(5), 554–563.
- WHO World Mental Health Survey Consortium. (2004). Prevalence, severity, and unmet need for treatment of mental disorders in the World Health Organization. World Mental Health Surveys. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 291(21), 2581–2590.

Kidney

- [Adrenal Glands](#)

Kinesics

- [Nonverbal Communication](#)

Kinesiotherapy

- [Physical Therapy](#)

Kissing disease

- [Epstein-Barr Virus](#)

Knowledge of Work

- [Job Performance](#)

Knowledge Translation

- [Research to Practice Translation](#)

KS

► [Kaposi's Sarcoma](#)

Kuopio Ischemic Heart Disease Risk Factor Study

Kauhanen Jussi
Institute of Public Health and Clinical Nutrition,
University of Eastern Finland, Kuopio, Finland

Synonyms

The KIID study, in Finnish also: SVVT
([Sepelvaltimotaudin vaaratekijätutkimus](#))

Definition

The Kuopio Ischemic Heart Disease Risk Factor Study (KIID) is an extensive epidemiologic research project that was launched in the 1980s. Within 30 years, it has produced over 500 original peer-reviewed research papers in health-related international journals. The KIID is a population-based longitudinal follow-up study, which initially involved nearly 3,000 middle-aged (42–60 years) men from the Kuopio region in Eastern Finland. Ten years later, women of the same age ($N > 1,000$) were recruited to the study. A major part of the original cohorts have been reexamined 4, 11, and 20 years after the baseline. Register linkages have been established with national covering registries, i.e., the National Death Registry of Finland, Hospital Discharge Registry, Cancer Registry, Kela prescription drug registry, and other disease-specific national health registries in Finland, to monitor annual events of early deaths as well as new cases and treatment episodes due to various diseases. Despite its name, the KIID has not been restricted only to cardiovascular outcomes. Some of the major research lines have been within the domains of chronic disease epidemiology, nutritional

epidemiology, alcohol epidemiology, psychosocial epidemiology, as well as molecular and genetic epidemiology. Being a multidisciplinary project with extensive data collection, the health determinants examined within the KIID study have involved a wide range of factors from genes to health behavior, nutrition, and environmental risks and from biochemical markers to psychological, psychosocial, and socioeconomic factors. It has been possible to construct some historical cohort designs, to take a lifecourse look at possible early childhood determinants on later health. Some of the key researchers in the project over the years have included authors such as Salonen JT, Kauhanen J, Tuomainen TP, Kurl S, Laukkanen J, Virtanen J, Mursu J, Voutilainen S, Tolmunen T, Lehto S, (all from Finland), Kaplan GA, Krause N (from the USA), and Lynch JW (Australia). The KIID study is estimated to yield interesting scientific findings well into the 2020s.

Description

An extensive ongoing prospective study of a representative population-based sample from Eastern Finland, with a general focus on the epidemiology and mechanisms of noncommunicable diseases and outcomes.

Cross-References

- [Affect](#)
- [Aging](#)
- [Alcohol Consumption](#)
- [Antioxidant](#)
- [Atherosclerosis](#)
- [Binge Drinking](#)
- [Biomarkers](#)
- [Blood Pressure Reactivity or Responses](#)
- [Cardiac Death](#)
- [Chronic Disease or Illness](#)
- [Cohort Study](#)
- [Elderly](#)
- [Epidemiology](#)
- [Exercise Testing](#)

- General Population
- Genetics
- Health Behaviors
- Health Risk
- Homocysteine
- Hopelessness
- Hypertension
- Ischemic Heart Disease
- Job Demand/Control/Strain
- Lifestyle
- Lipid Abnormalities
- Metabolic Syndrome
- Mortality
- Nutrition
- Physical Activity and Health
- Population-Based Study
- Psychosocial Factors
- Public Health
- Smoking and Health
- Social Epidemiology
- Sociocultural
- Socioeconomic Status (SES)

References and Further Readings

- Emerging Risk Factors Collaboration. (2012). C-reactive protein, fibrinogen, and cardiovascular disease prediction. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 367(14), 1310–1320. <https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1107477>.
- Genetics Consortium Emerging Risk Factors Collaboration. (2012). Interleukin-6 receptor pathways in coronary heart disease: A collaborative meta-analysis of 82 studies. *Lancet*, 379, 1205–1213.
- Kauhanen, J., Kaplan, G. A., Goldberg, D. E., & Salonen, J. T. (1997). Beer bingeing and mortality: Results from the Kuopio Ischaemic Heart Disease Risk Factor Study, a prospective population based study. *BMJ*, 315, 846–851.
- Kauhanen, L., Lynch, J. W., Lakka, H. M., Kauhanen, J., & Smith, G. D. (2010). Association of diarrhoea, poor hygiene and poor social conditions in childhood with blood pressure in adulthood. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 64, 394–399.
- Kurl, S., Laaksonen, D. E., Jae, S. Y., Mäkitallio, T. H., Zaccardi, F., Kauhanen, J., Ronkainen, K., & Laukkanen, J. A. (2016). Metabolic syndrome and the risk of sudden cardiac death in middle-aged men. *International Journal of Cardiology*, 203, 792–797.
- Laukkanen, J. A., Mäkitallio, T. H., Rauramaa, R., Kiviniemi, V., Ronkainen, K., & Kurl, S. (2010). Cardiorespiratory fitness is related to the risk of sudden cardiac death: A population-based follow-up study. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 56, 1476–1483.
- Laukkanen, T., Khan, H., Zaccardi, F., & Laukkanen, J. A. (2015). Association between sauna bathing and fatal cardiovascular and all-cause mortality events. *JAMA Internal Medicine*, 175(4), 542–548.
- Lynch, J. W., Kaplan, G. A., Cohen, R. D., Kauhanen, J., Wilson, T. W., Smith, N. L., & Salonen, J. T. (1994). Childhood and adult socioeconomic status as predictors of mortality in Finland. *Lancet*, 343, 524–527.
- Salonen, J. T., Seppänen, K., Nyyssönen, K., Korpela, H., Kauhanen, J., Kantola, M., Tuomilehto, J., Esterbauer, H., Tatzber, F., & Salonen, R. (1995). Intake of mercury from fish, lipid peroxidation, and the risk of myocardial infarction and coronary, cardiovascular, and any death in eastern Finnish men. *Circulation*, 91(3), 645–655.
- Virtanen, J. K., Mursu, J., Virtanen, H. E., Fogelholm, M., Salonen, J. T., Koskinen, T. T., Voutilainen, S., Tuomainen, T. P. (2016). Associations of egg and cholesterol intakes with carotid intima-media thickness and risk of incident coronary artery disease according to apolipoprotein E phenotype in men: the Kuopio Ischemic Heart Disease Risk Factor Study. *The American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 103(3):895–901. <https://doi.org/10.3945/ajcn.115.122317>. pii: ajcn122317.

Laboratory Stress Protocol

► Trier Social Stress Test

Latent Variable

Jamil A. Malik

National Institute of Psychology, Quaid-i-Azam University/VU University Amsterdam, Islamabad, Pakistan

Synonyms

Hidden variable; Hypothetical construct; Hypothetical variable

Definition

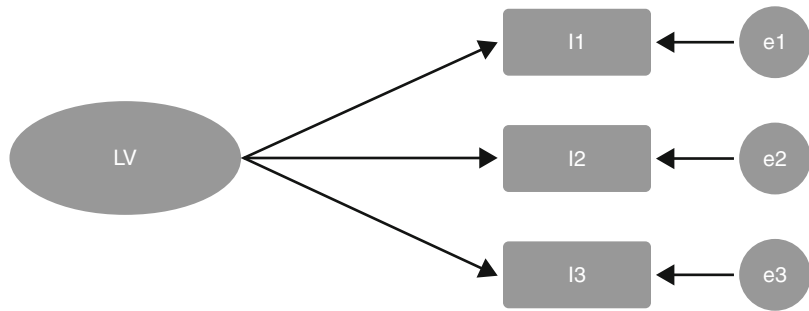
Several of the concepts of social sciences extracted from various theories cannot be observed directly, although these concepts might be of interest to social scientists and researchers. For example:

- In health: treatment adherence/compliance and well-being
- In psychology: stress, self-worth, and personality dimensions

- In education: memory, spatial ability, and problem solving
- In sociology: optimism, hostility, socioeconomic status, and attitudes
- In political science: leadership, conservatism, fundamentalism, political competence, etc.

In such cases where a concept is unobservable directly yet researchers are interested in their empirical testing, researchers have to rely on assumptions. In other words, they implicitly or explicitly operationalize these concepts into formal measurement models (constructs). These constructs can then only be measured indirectly via observable indicators/behaviors. Scaling (i.e., collection of relevant information on a questionnaire) is the most common technique to collect data for an unobservable construct. What is relevant is based on the assumptions of the researcher and derived from operational definition of the construct.

Various types of scaling techniques have been developed for deriving information on unobservable constructs of interest from observable indicators. An important family of scaling methods is formed by latent variables. A latent variable model is a possibly nonlinear, path analysis or graphical model. In addition to the manifest variables, the model includes one or more unobserved or latent variables representing the constructs of interest. Latent variable models are developed on two basic assumptions. The first assumption is that the responses on the indicators

Latent Variable,**Fig. 1** Latent variable

are the result of an individual's position on the latent variable(s). Secondly, it is assumed that the manifest variables have nothing in common after controlling for the latent variable(s), which is often referred to as the axiom of local independence.

Figure 1 shows a latent variable model, i.e., an unobservable variable LV represented by an oval which is assumed to be the result of commonality measured by three manifest indicators I1, I2, and I3. The ovals e1, e2, and e3 are residual also known as error variances. The concept of latent variables is based on the classical test theory, which assumes that any measure is a function of two variables: (1) the true score and (2) the error variation. This assertion can be written as a formula: $(X = T + E)$ where X represents the observed score on the measure, T is the person's true score, and E is the error variation.

Historically, the idea of latent variables arose primarily from psychometrics, beginning with the g factor of Spearman (1904). Spearman developed factor analytic models for continuous variables in the context of intelligence testing. The tradition continued with other psychologists such as Thomson, Thurstone, and Burt, who were investigating the mental ability of children, as suggested by the correlation and covariance matrices from cognitive tests variables. The technique was further developed with the work of Lawley (1943), Thurstone (1947), and Lawley and Maxwell (1963), and finally, it entered into the conceptual framework of confirmatory factor analysis (CFA) with Jöreskog (1971), Wiley et al. (1973), and Sörbom (1974). In subsequent years, CFA became a very popular technique, largely because of the LISREL program by Jöreskog and Sörbom

(1993). At present, there are various developments that emphasize this common framework for latent variables analysis, cases in point being the work of Muthén and Muthén (1998), McDonald (1999), and Moustaki and Knott (2000).

Cross-References

► [Structural Equation Modeling \(SEM\)](#)

References and Readings

- Bartholomew, D. J., & Knott, M. (1999). *Latent variable models and factor analysis*. London: Arnold.
- Borsboom, D., Mellenbergh, G. J., & van Heerden, J. (2003). The theoretical status of latent variables. *Psychological Review*, 110(2), 203–219.
- Jöreskog, K. G. (1971). Statistical analysis of sets of congeneric tests. *Psychometrika*, 36, 109–133.
- Jöreskog, K. G., & Sörbom, D. (1993). *LISREL 8 user's reference guide*. Chicago: Scientific Software International.
- Lawley, D. N., & Maxwell, A. E. (1963). *Factor analysis as a statistical method*. London: Butterworth.
- Marcoulides, G., & Moustaki, I. (2002). *Latent variable and latent structure models*. London: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- McDonald, R. P. (1999). *Test theory: A unified treatment*. Mahwah: Erlbaum.
- Moustaki, I., & Knott, M. (2000). Generalized latent trait models. *Psychometrika*, 65, 391–411.
- Muthén, L. K., & Muthén, B. O. (1998). *Mplus user's guide*. Los Angeles: Muthén & Muthén.
- Sörbom, D. (1974). A general method for studying differences in factor means and factor structures between groups. *Psychometrika*, 55, 229–239.
- Spearman, C. (1904). General intelligence, objectively determined and measured. *American Journal of Psychology*, 15, 201–293.

Thurstone, L. L. (1947). *Multiple factor analysis*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.

Wiley, D. E., Schmidt, W. H., & Bramble, W. J. (1973). Studies of a class of covariance structure models. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 86, 317–321.

with scientific knowledge (Furnham 1988). As lay beliefs are subjective, they will differ from person to person such that one person's understanding of their world will not necessarily be the same as another person.

Lateral Mammillary Nucleus

► [Hypothalamus](#)

Lateral Nucleus

► [Hypothalamus](#)

Lateral Preoptic Area

► [Hypothalamus](#)

Lay Beliefs

Christopher J. Kilby¹ and Kerry Sherman²

¹Centre for Emotional Health, Department of Psychology, Macquarie University, Sydney, NSW, Australia

²Department of Psychology, Centre for Emotional Health, Macquarie University, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Synonyms

[Folk theories](#); [Implicit beliefs](#); [Implicit theories](#); [Lay theories](#); [Naïve theories](#)

Definition

Lay beliefs represent an individual's subjective and informal explanation for the world around them (including explanations relating to health and illness) that do not necessarily have to concur

Description

Lay beliefs develop from our individual experiences, developmental and cultural upbringing, social mores, and education. As such, we continue to develop new beliefs and alter current beliefs throughout the lifespan as we learn, experience new situations, and endure changes in culture (Zlius et al. 2017). It is thought that lay beliefs influence the way information from the environment is encoded, interpreted, and recalled, leading to interindividual differences in interpretations of the same information. These interindividual differences accordingly result in varied behavioral responses to a stimulus (Denscombe 1993). In the domain of health and illness, these beliefs may determine health-related behaviors, such as an individual being able to identify the cause of an illness (Boot et al. 2009), deciding whether to seek medical assistance for an illness (Siegel et al. 1999), deciding which course of treatment is preferred by the individual (Figueiras et al. 2010), or which treatments the individual will perceive as effective solutions to their illness (Frosch et al. 2008). Generally speaking, lay beliefs about health are very stable in the absence of purposeful interventions. For example, one study found smoking-related health beliefs to remain stable for up to 12 months (Kaufman et al. 2016) and another found beliefs about medicine to remain stable over a 4 year period (Porteous et al. 2010).

Lay beliefs form the core of a number of key models of health and illness behavior, such as perceived symptoms of a condition (identity) and perceived efficacy of self- or treatment-based management of the condition (control) from the common-sense model of self-regulation (Leventhal et al. 2016), and condition-specific attitudes from the theory of planned behavior (Ajzen 1991). Notably, each model identifies select lay beliefs considered to be important and which influence certain health behaviors and

decisions. Although the models do not suggest that lay beliefs are the only element to be considered, there is an emphasis placed on knowledge and understanding as influencing health behaviors.

Research has measured lay beliefs qualitatively and quantitatively. Studies employing qualitative methodology utilize in-depth interviews to identify the breadth and complexities of beliefs to better understand the myriad of perspectives held on a particular topic. This approach was utilized in one study that aimed to identify the range of cultural beliefs held by a Hispanic population about HPV (Fernandez et al. 2009). Additionally, in-depth interviews have been used to identify beliefs that are key barriers or facilitators to adopting certain health behaviors, such as one qualitative study reporting that influenza vaccine uptake in the elderly was associated with beliefs about personal risk of contracting influenza, the efficacy of the vaccine, the seriousness of the condition, and beliefs about the vaccine having serious side effects (Evans et al. 2007).

Quantitative measures of lay beliefs, such as the Illness Perception Questionnaire (Weinman et al. 1996), often derive their measurement from prior qualitative studies, resulting in a diversity of approaches. For example, the Illness Perception Questionnaire rates agreement on nine health beliefs including the extent to an individual understands a condition (illness coherence) and the extent to which the condition elicits negative emotions (emotional representations; Weinman et al. 1996).

Although the major identifying characteristic of lay beliefs is that they are informal and non-scientific explanations for the world around us, with increased ease of access to scientific information it has been argued that they are becoming less lay, and more scientific (Shaw 2002). Whereas this may not have any direct implications for the effect of lay beliefs on behavior, it does beg the question if there is a need to distinguish lay beliefs informed by scientific knowledge from lay beliefs informed from experience. Another criticism made of lay beliefs surrounds their stability and consistency. The lay beliefs an individual holds may change from context to context, for

example, the health beliefs an individual holds towards the flu may be very different to the health beliefs held towards cancer. Similarly, an individual's lay beliefs about one particular topic (e.g., sun protection) may shift with changes in cultural norms (e.g., following education campaigns to improve general population knowledge about sun protection). It is therefore essential to be mindful of the context in which lay beliefs are being examined (Furnham 1988).

Cross-References

- ▶ Attitudes
- ▶ Beliefs
- ▶ Cognitions
- ▶ Common-Sense Model of Self-Regulation
- ▶ Efficacy Cognitions
- ▶ External Locus of Control
- ▶ Health Beliefs/Health Belief Model
- ▶ Illness Cognitions and Perceptions
- ▶ Illness Perceptions Questionnaire (IPQ-R)
- ▶ Multidimensional Health Locus of Control Scales
- ▶ Perceived Benefits
- ▶ Perceived Control
- ▶ Perceived Risk
- ▶ Risk Perception
- ▶ Self-Efficacy
- ▶ Self-Regulation Model
- ▶ Stress Mindset
- ▶ Temporal Self-Regulation Theory
- ▶ Theory of Reasoned Action

References and Further Reading

- Ajzen, I. (1991). The theory of planned behavior. *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes*, 50, 179–211. [https://doi.org/10.1016/0749-5978\(91\)90020-T](https://doi.org/10.1016/0749-5978(91)90020-T).
- Boot, C. R. L., Meijman, F. J., & van Dulmen, S. (2009). Beliefs about the causes of health complaints: A study in primary care. *Health Communication*, 24(4), 346–350. <https://doi.org/10.1080/10410230902889373>.
- Denscombe, M. (1993). Personal health and the social psychology of risk taking. *Health Education Research*, 8(4), 505–517. Retrieved from <http://citeseerx.ist.psu>.

[edu/viewdoc/download?doi=10.1.1.1003.9731&rep=rep1&type=pdf](http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15239914)

- Evans, M. R., Prout, H., Prior, L., Tapper-Jones, L. M., & Butler, C. C. (2007). A qualitative study of lay beliefs about influenza immunisation in older people. *British Journal of General Practice*, 57(538), 352–358. Retrieved from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15239914>
- Fernandez, M. E., McCurdy, S. A., Arvey, S. R., Tyson, S. K., Morales-Campos, D., Flores, B., et al. (2009). HPV knowledge, attitudes, and cultural beliefs among Hispanic men and women living on the Texas-Mexico border. *Ethnicity & Health*, 14(6), 607–624. <https://doi.org/10.1080/13557850903248621>.
- Figueiras, M. J., Cortes, M. A., Marcelino, D., & Weinman, J. (2010). Lay views about medicines: The influence of the illness label for the use of generic versus brand. *Psychology and Health*, 25(9), 1121–1128. <https://doi.org/10.1080/08870440903137170>.
- Frosch, D., Kimmel, S., & Volpp, K. (2008). What role do lay beliefs about hypertension etiology play in perceptions of medication effectiveness? *Health Psychology*, 27(3), 320–326. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0278-6133.27.3.320>.
- Furnham, A. (1988). *Lay theories: Everyday understanding of problems in the social sciences*. Oxford, United Kingdom: Pergamon Press.
- Kaufman, A. R., Koblit, A. R., Persoskie, A., Ferrer, R. A., Klein, W. M. P., Dwyer, L. A., & Park, E. R. (2016). Factor structure and stability of smoking-related health beliefs in the National Lung Screening Trial. *Nicotine & Tobacco Research*, 18(3), 321–329. <https://doi.org/10.1093/ntn/ntv091>.
- Leventhal, H., Phillips, L. A., & Burns, E. (2016). The common-sense model of self-regulation (CSM): A dynamic framework for understanding illness self-management. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 39(6), 935–946. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10865-016-9782-2>.
- Porteous, T., Francis, J., Bond, C., & Hannaford, P. (2010). Temporal stability of beliefs about medicines: Implications for optimising adherence. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 79(2), 225–230. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pec.2009.07.037>.
- Shaw, I. (2002). How lay are lay beliefs? *Health*, 6(3), 287–299. <https://doi.org/10.1177/136345930200600302>.
- Siegel, K., Schrimshaw, E. W., & Dean, L. (1999). Symptom interpretation: Implications for delay in HIV testing and care among HIV-infected late middle-aged and older adults. *AIDS Care*, 11(5), 525–535. <https://doi.org/10.1080/09540129947686>.
- Weinman, J., Petrie, K. J., Moss-Morris, R., & Horne, R. (1996). The illness perception questionnaire: A new method for assessing the cognitive representation of illness. *Psychology and Health*, 11, 43–5. Retrieved from <http://www.uib.no/ipq/pdf/Theillnessperceptionquestionnaire.pdf>
- Zilius, C. M., Müller, B. C. N., & Schooler, J. W. (2017). *The Science of lay theories: How beliefs shape our cognition, behavior, and health*. Cham: Springer.

Lay Health Advisors

- Promotoras

Lay Health Advocates

- Promotoras

Lay Theories

- Lay Beliefs

Lazarus Theory

- Cognitive Appraisal

Learned Helplessness

Theresa A. Morgan
Alpert Medical School of Brown University,
Department of Psychiatry, Brown University,
Providence, RI, USA

Synonyms

Locus of control

Definition

Literally, learning to be helpless; a set of motivations, perceptions, and behaviors that conclude that one's behavior does not effect any control over one's surroundings (i.e., that no matter what one does, things will not change). The effect is most notable under aversive conditions where change is easily attained but is not sought due to learned helplessness.

Description

Learned helplessness refers to the condition of an organism (human or animal) wherein behavior is consistent with the perception that actions do not impact outcomes. In humans, this typically manifests as a view of the world as uncontrollable, unpredictable, and insensitive to individual needs or acts. Behaviorally, one might fail to be proactive even when opportunities to effect change exist (Walker 2001).

The term “learned helplessness” originated with a set of animal studies from the 1960s and 1970s (e.g., Seligman und Maier 1967; Overmier und Seligman 1967). In these studies, one group (1) of dogs was given repeated, inescapable shocks while restrained. Later, these same animals appeared to passively accept shocks without seeking escape, even in cases where escape options were readily available (e.g., shock could be escaped by jumping over a small barrier or pushing a button or lever to turn off the shock). The authors hypothesized that the animals were experiencing “learned helplessness” because previous experience taught them that behavior and the shock were independent; that is, they had learned to behave helplessly in the face of aversive stimuli. Later studies compared animals from this first group to (2) animals that experienced no previous shocks, (3) animals that experienced previous shocks as controllable (yoked to the learned helplessness group), and (4) animals that first received training in escaping shocks but later were given inescapable, uncontrollable shocks. All three later groups (2, 3, 4) learned to avoid shocks, where the first group (1) did not. As such, the critical component to developing learned helplessness is whether an organism first experiences the environment as controllable (see Peterson et al. 1995; Walker 2001).

Since these original studies, learned helplessness has been applied to a wide variety of psychological phenomena, including acceptance of victimization (and abuse), pessimism, psychological well-being, low achievement at work or school, sudden death or illness, and health behaviors such as diet, exercise, and treatment adherence. Much research indicates

that learned helplessness becomes a psychological deficit only when it manifests consistently, across multiple situations (Sahoo 2002). As such, learned helplessness may describe behavior in a discrete situation (e.g., as with the shocks previously described), but it is most linked to problematic life outcomes when it becomes a trait-like, generalized set of perceptions and behaviors.

In humans, learned helplessness is most commonly studied in the context of depression. The “learned helplessness theory” specifically posits that depression occurs after experiencing the world as uncontrollable and then behaving consistent with the perception of helplessness. In this case, it is not actual controllability that is important so much as *perceived* controllability. In depression, learned helplessness theory also includes the perception of future uncontrollability: essentially that bad things happen now and in the future and that nothing one does can have any effect on their occurrence (see Peterson und Seligman 1985). This hypothesis explains many of the more difficult to treat features of depression, including failure to approach previously enjoyable activities, failure to regulate eating and sleep, and similar self-defeating behaviors. Although research does link learned helplessness and depression, the direction of causality has yet to be firmly established. An alternative hypothesis suggests that a third variable, such as an external locus of control, causes both learned helplessness and depression to manifest (see Walker 2001).

Cross-References

- [Depression: Measurement](#)
- [Depression: Symptoms](#)
- [Depression: Treatment](#)

References and Readings

- Overmier, J. B., & Seligman, M. E. P. (1967). Effects of inescapable shock upon subsequent escape and avoidance responding. *Journal of Comparative and Physiological Psychology*, 63, 28–33.

- Peterson, C., Meier, S. F., & Seligman, M. E. P. (1995). *Learned helplessness: A theory for the age of personal control*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Peterson, C., & Seligman, M. E. P. (1984). Causal explanations as a risk factor for depression: Theory and evidence. *Psychological Review*, 91, 347–374.
- Peterson, C., & Seligman, M. E. P. (1985). The learned helplessness model of depression: Current status of theory and research. In E. E. Beckman & W. R. Leber (Eds.), *Handbook of depression: Treatment, assessment and research* (pp. 914–939). Homewood: Dorsey.
- Sahoo, F. M. (2002). *Dynamics of human helplessness*. New Delhi: Concept Publishing.
- Seligman, M. E. P., & Maier, S. F. (1967). Failure to escape traumatic shock. *Journal of Experimental Psychology*, 74, 1–9.
- Walker, J. (2001). *Control and the psychology of health: Theory, measurement and applications*. Philadelphia: Open University Press.

Learned Symptom Behavior

► Symptom Magnification Syndrome

Leisure Physical Activity

► Exercise

Leptin

Falk Kiefer¹ and Mustafa Al'Absi²

¹Department of Addictive Behaviour and Addiction Medicine, Central Institute of Mental Health, Mannheim, Germany

²University of Minnesota Medical School, School of Medicine, University of Minnesota, Duluth, MN, USA

Definition

Leptin (Greek leptos: thin) is a protein hormone released mainly by white adipocytes. It binds at leptin receptors in brain neurons involved in regulating energy intake and expenditure, mainly in

the lateral hypothalamus, where the activity of neurons containing neuropeptide Y (NPY) and agouti-related peptide (AgRP) is inhibited, while the activity of neurons expressing α -melanocyte-stimulating hormone (α -MSH) is increased. The effects of leptin were observed by studying mutant obese mice (*ob* mice) that arose at random at the Jackson Laboratory in 1950. The human *ob* gene is located on chromosome 7 encoding a protein of 167 amino acids.

Even though leptin is also synthesized by other tissues including the placenta, ovaries, skeletal muscle, stomach, mammary epithelial cells, bone marrow, pituitary, and liver, circulating leptin concentration is highly associated with the total amount of body fat and positively correlated with BMI. Despite the fact that leptin is reducing appetite in subjects of normal body weight, it was found to occur in obese people with unusually high concentration, thus indicating a possible leptin resistance. The leptin deficiency here may lead to increased food intake and body weight.

Experiments in animals have shown that leptin levels in circulation provide indication of both energy stores and energy balance. Research has also shown that food restriction is associated with suppression of circulating leptin, and that increased food intake increases leptin levels. Administering leptin was also found to reduce food intake resulting in loss of body weight. Leptin crosses the blood brain barrier, and administering it peripherally alters neuronal activity in several hypothalamic and brain stem regions leading to multiple changes that result in reduced appetite.

In addition to its hypothalamic target, recent results suggest that leptin also affects mesolimbic pathways and might provide a link between energy homeostasis and reward-related behavior. Leptin receptors were detected on dopaminergic neurons in the ventral tegmental area (VTA) inhibiting dopamine signaling in the nucleus accumbens (NAc). Based on these findings, there is evidence that elevated leptin is involved in processing of reward-predicting signals such as seeing, smelling, or tasting food. Important insights into the regulatory role of leptin on

central processing of food-related stimuli have been gained by studies in patients with rare genetic defects leading to a leptin deficiency syndrome (LDS). In LDS patients, visual food cues were associated with increased striatal activation; moreover, this effect was neutralized by intravenous application of recombinant leptin. A second study reported marked CNS-activation in LDS patients following visual food stimuli.

In obese subjects, striatal cue-reactivity in response to high-caloric food stimuli was positively related to leptin plasma levels suggesting a leptin-resistance in this group.

Recent studies have demonstrated an important role of leptin in addictive behavior. For example, research has found positive correlations of plasma leptin and alcohol craving in alcohol-dependent subjects, as well as showed a positive correlation of plasma leptin and nicotine craving in nicotine-dependent subjects. It is assumed that leptin mediates a reduction of the basal dopaminergic activity in the mesolimbic system, contributing to a hypodopaminergic functioning associated with reward deficiency. These results suggest that addictive substances as well as food may hold a greater reward value for subjects showing higher leptin plasma levels.

Cross-References

- [Addiction](#)
- [Appetite and Appetite Regulation](#)
- [Hormones](#)

References and Further Reading

- Farooqi, S., & O'Rahilly, S. (2007). Genetics of obesity in humans. *Endocrine Reviews*, 27(7), 710–718.
- Friedman, J. M., & Halaas, J. L. (1998). Leptin and the regulation of body weight in mammals. *Nature*, 395(6704), 763–770.
- Grosshans, M., Vollmert, C., Vollstädt-Klein, S., Tost, H., Leber, S., Bach, P., Bühler, M., von der Goltz, C., Mutschler, J., Loeber, S., Hermann, D., Wiedemann, K., Meyer-Lindenberg, A., & Kiefer, F. (2012). Association of leptin with food cue-induced activation in human reward pathways. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 69(5), 529–537.

- Margetic, S., Gazzola, C., Pegg, G. G., & Hill, R. A. (2002). Leptin: A review of its peripheral actions and interactions. *International Journal of Obesity and Related Metabolic Disorders*, 26, 1407–1433.

Leucocytosis

- [Lymphocytosis](#)

Leucopenia

- [Lymphocytopenia](#)

Leukocytopenia

- [Lymphocytopenia](#)

Leukocytosis

- [Lymphocytosis](#)

Leukopenia

- [Lymphocytopenia](#)

Level of Occupational Performance

- [Activities of Daily Living \(ADL\)](#)

Levels of Prevention

- [Prevention: Primary, Secondary, Tertiary](#)

Lexapro®

► [Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors \(SSRIs\)](#)

Life Course

► [Life Span](#)

Life Cycle

► [Life Span](#)

Life Events

Anna C. Whittaker
School of Sport, Faculty of Health Science and Sport, University of Stirling, Stirling, UK

Synonyms

[Stress](#); [Stressful life events](#)

Definition (and Description)

Life events are specific occurrences experienced by an individual that are perceived as stressful, e.g., bereavement, divorce, and moving house. Life events are not always negative events but can be something positive which is perceived as stressful due to the amount of change it brings into the individual's life, e.g., getting married and changing job.

Life event measures are often used to identify relationships between stress and health within behavioral medicine research. Life events are usually assessed by standardized interview or questionnaire. Such questionnaires ask the individual to indicate which events have happened to them

over a specific time period such as 1 year or 1 month. Life events are usually limited to several key domains such as health, marriage, relationships, bereavement, work, housing, and finance. Some life event measures are specific to certain populations or age groups such as the Life Events Scale for Students (Linden 1984). These measures often ask individuals to rate how stressful each event that occurred was on a rating scale. This method is based on the well-established Life Events and Difficulties Schedule (Brown and Harris 1989). Other questionnaires use pre-identified weightings of the severity of events to determine an overall life event burden score, such as the Undergraduate Stress Questionnaire (Crandall et al. 1992) in which more severe events such as bereavement are given higher weightings.

Cross-References

- [Perceived Stress](#)
- [Perceived Stress Scale \(PSS\)](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Further Readings

- Brown, G. W., & Harris, T. O. (1989). *Social origins of depression: A study of psychiatric disorder in women*. London: Routledge.
- Crandall, C. S., Preisler, J. J., & Aussprung, J. (1992). Measuring life event stress in the lives of college students: The undergraduate stress questionnaire (USQ). *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 15, 627–662.
- Linden, W. (1984). Development and initial validation of a life event scale for students. *Canadian Counsellor*, 18, 106–110.

Life Expectancy

► [Longevity](#)

Life Orientation Test (LOT)

► [Optimism and Pessimism: Measurement](#)

Life Span

Patricia Cristine Heyn¹ and Katherine S. Hall²

¹Department of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation, University of Colorado Denver Anschutz Medical Campus School of Medicine, Aurora, CO, USA

²Durham VA Medical Center Geriatric Research, Education, and Clinical Center, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Life course](#); [Life cycle](#); [Life time](#)

Definition

In its most general sense, life span refers to the length of time between birth and death. Importantly, life span is distinct from life expectancy, which reflects the average number of years that an individual might be expected to live (often reflective of a biological limit on life). Developmental behavioral theories posit that certain factors impact behavior and that these factors, and thus individual behavior, change as the individual ages. Such theories of behavior specify that what happens earlier in life affects what happens later. As such, incorporating a life span approach in behavioral medicine implies the implementation of longitudinal studies that begin early on in the developmental stages (i.e., childhood) and continue into late adulthood. As the cost and feasibility of such life span studies can be prohibitive, many behavioral researchers opt instead to conduct cross-sectional studies of various age cohorts representative of the full age spectrum. Although informative, such study designs do not examine the *process* of aging, and as such, they cannot provide a causal explanation of how the processes of aging impact behavioral outcomes and vice versa. Finally, life span differs from health span (Rowe and Kahn 1987, 1998), which reflects the length of time prior to the onset of disease or disability. Health span has been adopted in the

behavioral medicine literature as an indicator of healthy aging.

References and Readings

- Baltes, P. B., Reese, H. W., & Lipsitt, L. P. (1980). Life-span developmental psychology. *Annual Review Psychology*, 31, 65–110.
- Rowe, J. W., & Kahn, R. L. (1987). Human aging: Usual and successful. *Science*, 237, 143–149.
- Rowe, J. W., & Kahn, R. L. (1998). *Successful aging*. New York: Pantheon/Random House.
- Staudinger, U. M., Marsiske, M., & Baltes, P. B. (1995). Resilience and reserve capacity in later adulthood: Potentials and limits of development across the life span. In *Developmental psychology* (Risk, disorder, and adaptation, Vol. 2, pp. 801–847). New York: Wiley.

Life Time

► [Life Span](#)

Life Years Lost

Anthony J. Wheeler and Scott DeBerard
Department of Psychology, Utah State University,
Logan, UT, USA

Synonyms

[Potential years of life lost \(PYLL\)](#); [Years of potential life lost \(YPLL\)](#)

Definition

Life years lost (LYL) represents the number of years not lived to full potential due to disease or other fatal events. The metric LYL is calculated by subtracting the actual number of years lived from an expected duration, usually drawn from a standard life table. For example, if an individual died from breast cancer at age 49, and was expected to live to age 75, they would have lost 26 life years.

The specific definition and calculation of LYL vary, with some researchers weighting quantities of LYL differently to adjust for social and economic losses.

References and Further Reading

- Fitzmaurice, C., Allen, C., Barber, R. M., Barregard, L., Bhutta, Z. A., Brenner, H., . . . & Fleming, T. (2017). Global, regional, and national cancer incidence, mortality, years of life lost, years lived with disability, and disability-adjusted life-years for 32 cancer groups, 1990 to 2015: A systematic analysis for the global burden of disease study. *JAMA Oncology*, 3(4), 524–548.
- Haomiao, J., & Lubetkin, E. I. (2010). Trends in quality-adjusted life-years lost contributed by smoking and obesity. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 38(2), 138–144.
- Mathers, C., Ma Fat, D., Boerma, J. T., & World Health Organization. (2008). *The global burden of disease: 2004 update*. Geneva: World Health Organization.
- Muennig, P., & Bounthavong, M. (2016). *Cost-effectiveness analysis in health: A practical approach*. Wiley.
- Steenland, K., & Armstrong, B. (2006). An overview of methods for calculating the burden of disease due to specific risk factors. *Epidemiology*, 17(5), 512–519.

Lifelogging

► Quantified Self

Lifestyle

Jordan Carlson
Public Health, San Diego State University,
University of California San Diego, San Diego,
CA, USA

Synonyms

Health behaviors

Definition

The term lifestyle does not have a well-accepted definition but can be understood to be the health behaviors in which a person engages on a daily basis.

Description

Lifestyle Versus Nonlifestyle Health Behaviors

Health behaviors are actions taken by a person to maintain, attain, or regain good health and to prevent illness. Lifestyle health behaviors are different from other health behaviors in that they are engaged on a daily basis. For example, smoking is a lifestyle health behavior because it typically occurs on a daily basis. Medical care, such as medical appointments or cancer screenings, do not occur on a daily basis and thus can be considered nonlifestyle health behaviors.

Commonly Studied Lifestyle Behaviors

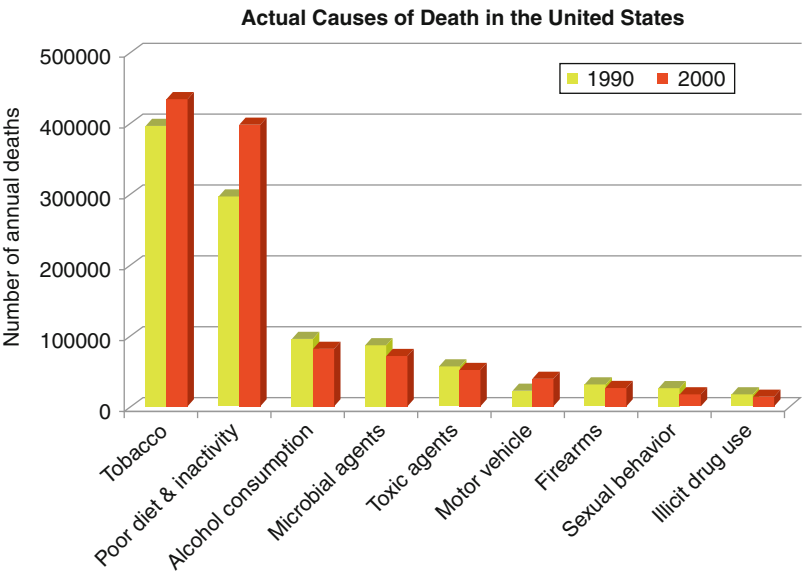
There are many lifestyle behaviors that are related to health outcomes and commonly studied in behavioral medicine (Glanz et al. 2010). Following are some examples:

- Dental hygiene
- Diet/nutrition
- Driving safety/seat belt use
- Drug use
- Medication adherence
- Physical activity
- Safe sex practices
- Sedentary behavior
- Smoking
- Social behaviors
- Stress management/relaxation
- Sun exposure/protection

Lifestyle Behaviors and Chronic Diseases

The leading causes of death in the USA drastically shifted in the twentieth century. At the beginning of the century, the leading causes of death were pneumonia, influenza, and tuberculosis (Armstrong et al. 1999). By 2000, the leading cause of death was heart disease (710, 760

Lifestyle, Fig. 1 Actual causes of death in the United States. (Data from Mokdad et al. 2004)



deaths), followed by cancer (553, 091 deaths) and stroke (167, 661 deaths). The “actual causes of death” were estimated based on the behavioral causes of these diseases (Mokdad et al. 2004). The leading actual causes of death in 2000 were tobacco use (435,000 deaths; 18.1% of all deaths) and poor diet and physical inactivity (400,000 deaths; 16.6% of all deaths) (Fig. 1). These death rates were drastically higher than those from all other actual causes of death and were much higher in 2000 than in 1990. These actual causes of death are considered preventable and are often the focus of lifestyle behavior interventions.

Glanz, K., Rimer, B. K., Viswanath, K., & Orleans, C. T. (2010). *Health behavior and health education: Theory, research, and practice*. San Francisco: Josey-Bass.

Mokdad, A. H., Marks, J. S., Stroup, D. F., & Gerberding, J. L. (2004). Actual causes of death in the United States, 2000. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 291(10), 1238.

Lifestyle Changes

Spencer M. Richard¹, Scott DeBerard¹ and Julie Murray²

¹Department of Psychology, Utah State University, Logan, UT, USA

²Utah State University, Logan, UT, USA

Cross-References

- [Health Behavior Change](#)
- [Lifestyle Changes](#)
- [Lifestyle, Modification](#)

References and Readings

Armstrong, G. L., Conn, L. A., & Pinner, R. W. (1999). Trends in infectious disease mortality in the United States during the 20th century. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 281(1), 61.

Synonyms

[Alcohol abuse](#); [Management](#); [Obesity treatment](#); [Smoking](#); [Smoking cessation](#); [Substance abuse](#); [Weight](#); [Weight loss](#)

Definition

Lifestyle changes are defined as changes that alter various lifestyle-related behaviors such as diet,

physical activity, sexual behavior, smoking, alcohol consumption, substance use, and other behaviors not otherwise defined as psychopathology. Lifestyle changes may often relate to other comorbid mental and/or physical health conditions such as substance abuse disorders, obesity, asthma, sexually transmitted diseases, depression, and anxiety.

Description

Diet/Physical Activity

Obesity and overweight account for a substantial portion of medical care costs in the United States. Current research suggests that approximately two thirds of the population in the United States qualifies as overweight (body mass index between 25.1 and 29.9) or obese (body mass index >30 ; Center for Disease Control and Prevention 2017). These rates are often attributed to lifestyle factors including unbalanced diet and lack of physical exercise/activity. Little research has been done to effectively measure the direct health-care cost benefits of modifying these lifestyle factors. However, one recent projection estimated that by altering diet alone (i.e., decreasing caloric intake by 100 kcal/day, saturated fat by 5 g/day, and sodium by 400 mg/day), national health-care costs could potentially be cut by \$60 billion to \$120 billion per year (Dall et al. 2010).

Interventions on diet and physical activity have traditionally focused on cognitive behavioral approaches intended to produce weight loss and increased physical activity. Overweight and obese individuals experience increased risk of several mental and physical health problems including cardiovascular disease, depression symptoms, sleep problems, diabetes, and others (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010). In general, empirical research has shown a trend for 5–10% weight loss during the course of treatment, followed by subsequent relapse and weight gain by at least half of participants at or beyond pre-intervention weight (Wadden and Butryn 2003). Altering diet and exercise has been shown to significantly reduce weight and lower risk for weight-related illnesses and cardiometabolic

disease (Goodpaster et al. 2010). Research indicates increased efficacy of behaviorally based interventions with values and acceptance components (Forman et al. 2009; Lillis et al. 2009). These approaches have been shown to lead to better maintained weight loss and physical activity measurements as well as increased mental health outcomes. In addition to traditional methods of intervention delivery, recent trials have shown promise for the use of electronic wearable activity monitors and other mHealth behavior change interventions in decreasing sedentary behavior, increasing physical activity, and improving diet (Cadmus-Bertram et al. 2015; Guitar et al. 2018; Vaz et al. 2018).

Smoking

Cigarette smoking has been shown as a significant risk factor for myriad physical health problems including coronary heart disease, stroke, cancers, chronic obstructive lung disease (COPD), and death (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2011). Smoking directly or indirectly causes approximately 440,000 deaths annually in the United States, including 80% of lung cancer deaths in women and 90% of lung cancer deaths in men. In addition, smoking has been implicated in reproductive health problems including infertility, preterm birth, low birth weight, and increased risk of sudden infant death syndrome. Smoking cessation has been linked with a number of positive health outcomes. Individuals that quit smoking before middle age may significantly reduce risk of developing lung cancer (Peto et al. 2000).

In general, smoking cessation at younger ages increases health benefits exponentially. Smoking cessation treatment is often brief (as little as one targeted session) and can be delivered in many environments including primary care, outpatient counseling, and in home by a number of professional and paraprofessional primary care and/or mental health workers including nurses, doctors, counselors, and psychologists. Treatment methods focusing on motivation enhancement, behavioral commitment, acceptance, and mindfulness have been indicated as recommended treatment modalities by the National Registry of

Evidence-based Programs and Practices (NREPP). In addition, smoking cessation may lead to other related lifestyle improvements including decreased long-term substance use and may moderately increase quality of life (Sarna et al. 2008).

Alcohol/Substance Use

Alcohol and other substance use represent a considerable health risk and account for a substantial health-care and legal system resources. The National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA) estimates annual costs of nearly \$600 billion in the United States alone including costs of prevention, treatment, legal costs, and lost worker productivity (National Institute on Drug Abuse 2009). The abuse of alcohol and other drugs is widely varying depending on the nature and frequency of use and type of substance being used. In general, substance use has been linked to several physical and mental health problems including cardiovascular disease, COPD, birth defects, paranoia, psychotic symptoms, depression, and anxiety, among others.

Alcohol and other drug use is treated in both inpatient and outpatient medical and mental health settings. Similar to smoking cessation treatment, significant health benefits are observed by reducing or eliminating alcohol or other substance use. Depending on the extent of use and type of substance being used, treatment may include any combination of the following aspects recommended by NIDA and NREPP: medications (including antagonists or substitutes for the substance of abuse), individual counseling, group counseling, detoxification, supervision, ongoing case management, and treatment of other comorbid medical and mental health conditions. Effective psychological treatments tend to include multidimensional approaches including cognitive-behavioral intervention, family therapy, motivation enhancement, acceptance, mindfulness, behavior commitments, and contingency management.

Summary

Lifestyle changes can have significant and long-lasting physical and mental health effects. Treating problematic lifestyle behaviors can be a

brief, cost-effective, and meaningful strategy by a variety of health-care service providers to improve physical and mental health of their patients and clients.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Activity Level](#)
- ▶ [Addictive Behaviors](#)
- ▶ [Aerobic Exercise](#)
- ▶ [Alcohol Abuse and Dependence](#)
- ▶ [Alcohol Consumption](#)
- ▶ [Behavior Change](#)
- ▶ [Behavior Change Techniques](#)
- ▶ [Behavior Modification](#)
- ▶ [Behavioral Intervention](#)
- ▶ [Behavioral Therapy](#)
- ▶ [Body Mass Index](#)
- ▶ [Caloric Intake](#)
- ▶ [Cancer and Diet](#)
- ▶ [Cancer and Physical Activity](#)
- ▶ [Cancer and Smoking](#)
- ▶ [Cancer: Psychosocial Treatment](#)
- ▶ [Cardiovascular Disease Prevention](#)
- ▶ [Cessation Intervention \(Smoking or Tobacco\)](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- ▶ [Dependence, Drug](#)
- ▶ [Disease Management](#)
- ▶ [Education, Patient](#)
- ▶ [Exercise-General Category](#)
- ▶ [Health Behavior Change](#)
- ▶ [Health Behaviors](#)
- ▶ [Heart Disease and Smoking](#)
- ▶ [Heart Disease and Type A Behavior](#)
- ▶ [HIV Prevention](#)
- ▶ [Interventions and Strategies to Promote Physical Activity](#)
- ▶ [Lifestyle, Active](#)
- ▶ [Lifestyle, Healthy](#)
- ▶ [Lifestyle, Modification](#)
- ▶ [Mindfulness](#)
- ▶ [Motivational Interviewing](#)
- ▶ [Obesity in Children](#)
- ▶ [Obesity: Causes and Consequences](#)
- ▶ [Physical Activity and Health](#)
- ▶ [Psychosocial Benefits and Aspects of Physical Activity](#)

- **Physical Activity and Health**
- **Physical Inactivity**
- **Preventive Care**
- **Relapse, Relapse Prevention**
- **Risky Behavior**
- **Self-Care**
- **Smoking Cessation**
- **Tobacco Cessation**
- **Tobacco Use**
- **Weight: Control, Gain/Loss/Reduction, Maintenance, Monitoring**

References and Further Readings

- Cadmus-Bertram, L. A., Marcus, B. H., Patterson, R. E., Parker, B. A., & Morey, B. L. (2015). Randomized trial of a Fitbit-based physical activity intervention for women. *American journal of preventive medicine*, 49(3), 414–418.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010). *Overweight and obesity*. Retrieved on October 30, 2011, from <http://www.cdc.gov/obesity/>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2011). *Health effects of cigarette smoking*. Retrieved on October 31, 2011, from http://www.cdc.gov/tobacco/data_statistics/fact_sheets/health_effects/effects_cig_smoking/
- Dall, T. M., Zhang, Y., Chen, Y. J., Quick, W. V., Yang, W. G., & Fogli, J. (2010). The economic burden of diabetes. *Health Affairs*, 29(2), 297–303.
- Forman, E. M., Butryn, M. L., Hoffman, K. L., & Herbert, J. D. (2009). An open trial of an acceptance-based behavioral intervention for weight loss. *Cognitive and Behavioral Practice*, 16, 223–235.
- Goodpaster, B. H., DeLany, J. P., Otto, A. D., Kuller, L., Vockley, J., South-Paul, J. E., et al. (2010). Effects of diet and physical activity interventions on weight loss and cardiometabolic risk factors in severely obese individuals: A randomized trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 304(16), 1795–1802.
- Guitar, N. A., MacDougall, A., Connelly, D. M., & Knight, E. (2018). Fitbit activity trackers interrupt workplace sedentary behavior: A new application. *Workplace health & safety*, 66(5), 218–222.
- Lillis, J., Hayes, S., Bunting, K., & Masuda, A. (2009). Teaching acceptance and mindfulness to improve the lives of the obese: A preliminary test of a theoretical model. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 37(1), 58–69.
- National Institute on Drug Abuse (2009). Treatment approaches for drug addiction. *InfoFacts*. Retrieved on October 31, 2011, from http://nida.nih.gov/PDF/InfoFacts/IF_Treatment_Approaches_2009_to_NIDA_92209.pdf
- Peto, R., Darby, S., Deo, H., Silcocks, P., Whitley, E., & Doll, R. (2000). Smoking, smoking cessation, and lung cancer in the UK since 1950: Combination of national statistics with two case-control studies. *British Medical Journal*, 321(7257), 323–329.
- Sarna, L., Bialous, S. A., Cooley, M. E., Jun, H., & Feskanich, D. (2008). Impact of smoking and smoking cessation on health-related quality of life in women in the Nurses' Health Study. *Quality of Life Research: An International Journal of Quality of Life Aspects of Treatment, Care & Rehabilitation*, 17(10), 1217–1227.
- Vaz, C. L., Suthar, A. G., Pousti, B. T., Aye, S. M., Williams, K. J., & Zhao, H. (2018). A smartphone app-based lifestyle intervention promotes weight loss—results of a prospective, randomized, controlled clinical trial (RCT).
- Wadden, T. A., & Butryn, M. L. (2003). Behavioral treatment of obesity. *Endocrinology Metabolism Clinics of North America*, 32(4), 981–1003.
- World Health Organization. (2010). *Factsheet on obesity and overweight*. Retrieved October 30, 2011, from <http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs311/en/index.html>

Lifestyle, Active

Victoria Anne Sublette
School of Public Health, University of Sydney,
Sydney, NSW, Australia

Synonyms

Active way of life; Healthy lifestyle

Definition

An active lifestyle is one in which individuals incorporate regular and substantial physical movement into their daily routines to benefit their cardiovascular, muscular, and psychological health.

Description

Engagement in an active lifestyle includes regular physical activity which protects physical and mental health by reducing individuals' risk of developing diseases and depression and is associated with a significant reduction in premature

mortality rates from all causes for men and women (Keim et al. 2004; Morrison et al. 2008).

Low-impact exercise and weight-bearing exercise such as walking and dancing promotes bone development in the young and preserves bone density during adulthood. Achieving peak bone mass protects individuals against the development of osteoporosis, a disease characterized by a reduction in bone density due to calcium loss, leading to brittle bones and an increased risk of fractures (Department of Health and Ageing 2010).

Physical Benefits of an Active Lifestyle

- Helps build and maintain healthy bones, muscles and joints
- Builds endurance and muscular strength
- Protects against brain damage caused by stroke
- Lowers risk factors for cardiovascular disease, colon cancer, and type 2 diabetes
- Improves balance, strength, suppleness and mobility
- Instrumental in reaching and maintaining a healthy weight
- Helps control blood pressure
- Increases energy
- Reduces muscle tension
- Improves sleep
- Improves body shape

Psychological Benefits of an Active Lifestyle

- Reduces stress
- Improves mood and self-esteem
- Reduces symptoms of depression and anxiety
- Improves cognitive function
- Improves quality of life

(Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010; Keim et al. 2004; Van Praag 2009).

An active lifestyle also has profound benefits for brain function. Physical activity improves learning, memory, and cognitive processes such as planning, scheduling, and coordination. An active lifestyle also stimulates the adult and aging brain to generate new neurons preventing cognitive decline in older age and protects the brain against damage caused by stroke, promotes

recovery after injury, and is an antidepressant (Van Praag 2009).

Moderate and vigorous-intensity aerobic or resistance training exercise can reduce symptoms of depression. Research has found inactive persons are approximately twice as likely to have symptoms of mild to moderate depression than individuals who are more active. The antidepressant effect of physical exercise has been shown to be similar in magnitude to antidepressant medications in some studies (Van Praag 2009).

Guidelines for an Active Lifestyle

For those 5–18 years old, 60 min a day of moderate to vigorous physical activity combined is recommended. Children and adolescents should include muscle-strengthening and bone-strengthening exercises as part of their 60 min a day at least 3 days a week. Examples of moderate activities are a brisk walk, a bike ride, or active play. Examples of vigorous exercise are running, swimming laps, organized sports, and ballet (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010; Department of Health and Ageing 2010; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2008).

Recommendations for adults age 18 years and over are at least 150 min (2 h and 30 min) a week of moderate-intensity, or 75 min (1 h and 15 min) a week of vigorous-intensity aerobic physical activity. Vigorous-intensity aerobic exercise moves large muscles in a rhythmic manner for a sustained period of time and includes brisk walking, jogging, biking, dancing, and swimming. Aerobic exercise should be performed in increments of at least 10 min each. Adults should also perform muscle-strengthening activities that involve all major muscle groups at moderate to high intensity two or more days a week.

For optimum health, an active lifestyle that incorporates greater physical health benefits and weight control can be obtained by engaging in physical activity of more vigorous intensity or of longer duration (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010; Department of Health and Ageing 2010; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2008).

Cross-References

- [Activity Level](#)
- [Health Behaviors](#)
- [Lifestyle, Healthy](#)

References and Reading

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010). Physical activity and health. *Physical activity for everyone*. Retrieved November 25, 2010, from <http://www.cdc.gov/physicalactivity/everyone/health/index.html>

Department of Health and Ageing. (2010). Physical activity guidelines. *Physical activity*. Retrieved November 20, 2010, from http://www.health.gov.au/internet/main/publishing.nsf/Content/health-pubhlth-strateg-phys-act-guidelines#rec_12_18

Keim, N., Blanton, C., & Kretsch, M. J. (2004). America's obesity epidemic: Measuring physical activity to promote an active lifestyle. *Journal of the American Dietetic Association*, 104(9), 1398–1409.

Morrison, V., Bennett, P., Butow, P., Mullan, B., & White, K. (2008). *Introduction to health psychology in Australia* (1st ed.). Frenchs Forest: Pearson Prentice Hall.

U.S. Department of Health & Human Services. (2008). *2008 physical activity guidelines for Americans*. Retrieved from www.health.gov/paguidelines

Van Praag, H. (2009). Exercise and the brain: Something to chew on. *Trends in Neurosciences*, 32(5), 283–290.

Lifestyle, Healthy

Emily Kothe
School of Psychology, University of Sydney,
Sydney, NSW, Australia

Definition

The term healthy lifestyle does not have a single widely accepted definition. According to the World Health Organization, lifestyle is a way of living which is based on identifiable patterns of behavior. These patterns of behavior are determined by the interplay between individual, social, and environmental factors.

In this context, healthy lifestyle can be defined as a pattern of behavior which maximizes health protective behaviors while minimizing health risk behaviors.

Description

Lifestyle health behaviors are typically defined as behaviors which are performed on a daily (or almost daily) basis. This is distinct from other health behaviors such as medical screening which is performed less regularly.

While it is important to recognize that healthy lifestyle is not a unitary concept which can be prescribed to all people, a number of key patterns of behavior are included in most descriptions of healthy lifestyle (see Table 1).

Lifestyle, Healthy, Table 1 Physical activity guidelines by age group

Age range	Physical activity guidelines	
5–18 years	60 min (1 h) a day of moderate to vigorous physical activity	Children and adolescents should include muscle-strengthening and bone-strengthening exercises as part of their 60 min a day at least 3 days a week
18–64 years	150 min (2 h and 30 min) a week of moderate-intensity	Adults should also perform muscle-strengthening activities that involve all major muscle groups at moderate to high intensity two or more days a week
	or 75 min (1 h and 15 min) a week of vigorous-intensity aerobic physical activity	
65+ years	At least 30 min (half an hour) of moderate intensity physical activity on most, preferably all, days	Older people should be active every day in as many ways as possible, doing a range of physical activities that incorporate fitness, strength, balance, and flexibility

Source: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2010), Department of Health and Ageing (2010), U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (2008)

These include:

- Active lifestyle
- Healthy diet

Together, poor diet and physical inactivity are among the leading causes of major non-communicable diseases. These two lifestyle patterns contribute substantially to the global burden of disease. Following a healthy lifestyle pattern, characterized by an active lifestyle and healthy diet, can lead to large reduction in individual risk of disease.

Active Lifestyle

An active lifestyle can be defined as a pattern of behavior which includes regular physical activity and limited sedentary behaviors. Regular engagement in physical activity is known to be health protective and is known to be associated with is associated with improved mental and physical health.

Research shows that regular physical activity is associated with reduction in all-cause mortality and with decreased risk of osteoporosis, cardiovascular disease, diabetes mellitus, and some forms of cancer (Morrison et al. 2008). For more information, see ► [“Lifestyle, Active”](#).

In addition to including physical behavior, an active lifestyle is characterized by limited engagement in sedentary behaviors. Sedentary behaviors are those which involve very limited energy expenditure (e.g., computer use, TV viewing).

As a pattern of behavior, sedentary behavior often co-occurs with limited physical activity since it often displaces more physically active behaviors. This pattern of behavior is particularly unhealthy since the influence of sedentary behavior on health appears to be independent of the influence of physical inactivity. Research suggests that combining sedentary behavior and physical inactivity has approximately twice the negative health impact as either behavior alone (Owen et al. 2010). For more information, see ► [“Lifestyle, Sedentary”](#).

Healthy Diet

An individual’s diet plays an important part in long-term health. Diet is known to directly influence the risk of a number of life-limiting diseases (e.g., some forms of cancer, heart disease). Diet may also influence risk of disease through its influence on weight and obesity.

As a pattern of behavior, healthy diet is a pattern of eating behavior which maintains a state of well-being while reducing risk of chronic disease.

The World Health Organization recommends that dietary guidelines for populations and individuals should include the following recommendations:

- Achieve energy balance and a healthy weight
- Limit energy intake from total fats and shift fat consumption away from saturated fats to unsaturated fats and towards the elimination of trans-fatty acids
- Increase consumption of fruits and vegetables, and legumes, whole grains, and nuts
- Limit the intake of free sugars
- Limit salt (sodium) consumption from all sources and ensure that salt is iodized

Many countries have dietary guidelines that give more specific guidance in relation to these broad concepts. For example, the Dietary Guidelines for Americans recommend that salt intake be limited to a maximum of sodium intake of 2,300 mg for healthy adults and 1,500 mg for individuals with hypertension.

It is important to recognize that a healthy diet can be accomplished with a range of different dietary patterns. The suitability of each dietary pattern for a given individual will depend on that person’s culture, income, family structure, age, health status, and home/work environment.

Cross-References

- [Healthy Eating](#)
- [Lifestyle](#)
- [Lifestyle, Active](#)
- [Lifestyle, Sedentary](#)

References and Readings

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010). Physical activity and health. *Physical activity for everyone*. Retrieved November 25, 2010, from <http://www.cdc.gov/physicalactivity/everyone/health/index.html>
- Department of Health and Ageing. (2010). Physical activity guidelines. *Physical activity*. Retrieved November 20, 2010, from http://www.health.gov.au/internet/main/publishing.nsf/Content/health-pubhlth-strateg-phys-act-guidelines#rec_12_18
- Morrison, V., Bennett, P., Butow, P., Mullan, B., & White, K. (2008). *Introduction to health psychology in Australia* (1st ed.). Frenchs Forest: Pearson Prentice Hall.
- Owen, N., Healy, G. N., Matthews, C. E., & Dunstan, D. W. (2010). Too much sitting: The population health science of sedentary behavior. *Exercise and Sport Sciences Reviews*, 38(3), 105–113.
- U.S. Department of Health & Human Services. (2008). *2008 Physical activity guidelines for Americans*. Retrieved November 12, 2010, from <https://www.health.gov/paguidelines>
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services and U.S. Department of Agriculture. (2005). *Dietary guidelines for Americans, 2005* (6th ed.). Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office. Retrieved November 13, 2010, from <http://www.health.gov/dietaryguidelines/dga2005/document/default.htm>
- World Health Organization. (1998). *Health promotion glossary: WHO/HPR/HEP/98.1*. Retrieved November 17, 2010, from http://www.who.int/hpr/NPH/docs/hp_glossary_en.pdf
- World Health Organization. (2002). *The World Health Report 2002. Reducing risks, promoting healthy life*. Geneva: Author.
- World Health Organization. (2004). *Global strategy on diet, physical activity and health*. Retrieved November 17, 2010, from <http://www.who.int/dietphysicalactivity/strategy/eb11344/en/index.html>

Lifestyle, Modification

Jordan Carlson
Public Health, San Diego State University,
University of California San Diego, San Diego,
CA, USA

Synonyms

Behavior change; Behavior modification; Behavioral intervention; Lifestyle changes

Definition

The term lifestyle modification can be used to refer to behavioral interventions that attempt to create change in multiple lifestyle health behaviors.

Description

Lifestyle Versus Nonlifestyle Health Behaviors

Health behaviors are actions taken by a person to maintain, attain, or regain good health and to prevent illness. Lifestyle health behaviors are different from other health behaviors in that they are engaged in on a daily basis (e.g., smoking, dietary behaviors, physical activity). Medical care behaviors (e.g., attendance of medical visits or cancer screenings) are not engaged in on a daily basis and thus can be considered nonlifestyle health behaviors. For more information and examples of commonly studied lifestyle behaviors, see ► [“Lifestyle”](#).

Although the term lifestyle can be used to refer to single behaviors in which people engage on a daily basis, this entry will focus on lifestyle modification of multiple health behaviors. For information on single behavior modification, see ► [“Behavior Change”](#), ► [“Behavior Modification”](#), and ► [“Behavioral Intervention”](#).

Rationale for Multiple Versus Single Behavior Modification

The leading causes of death in the USA are heart disease, cancer, and stroke. Each of these diseases has the same underlying cause: poor diet, physical inactivity, and smoking (among others). One rationale for multiple vs. single health behavior modification is that changing multiple behaviors will affect health more than single behavior modification. Another rationale is that lifestyle health behaviors tend to cluster or co-occur. For example, a smoker or drug user is also likely to engage in poor dietary habits and be physically inactive. Thus, targeting multiple vs. single lifestyle behaviors should have the greatest potential to improve physical health outcomes of primary interest in behavioral medicine, such as heart disease,

cancer, and stroke (Prochaska et al. 2008; Prochaska 2008).

Individual Versus Population-Based Approach

There are two main approaches to lifestyle modification: individual and population-based (Prochaska et al. 2008). The individual approach is person-centered and often includes tailored modification strategies for each person. For example, a person who consumes no fruits and vegetables but is physically active may be targeted to improve his/her fruit and vegetable consumption, while a person who consumes no fruits and vegetables and is physically inactive may be targeted to make improvements in both areas. In the individual approach, change/success is measured at the person level. An advantage to this approach is that it increases the potential overall impact on a person's health, while a disadvantage is that it likely increases the behavior change demands and program complexity.

The population-based approach to lifestyle modification typically includes a modification program across an entire population. These programs often create change to community policies and/or environments. Advantages of population-based approaches include the ability to reach large numbers of people and create sustainable changes. Disadvantages are that some people may not be reached by the modification program and environmental and policy changes can be costly and time intensive.

Theories of Lifestyle Modification/Behavior Change

Detailed information on behavior change interventions and theories can be found under the terms ► [“Behavioral Intervention”](#) and ► [“Theory”](#). In brief, individual level theories such as the Transtheoretical Model of Behavior Change, Social Cognitive Theory, and Learning Theory have been useful in designing lifestyle modification interventions. More recently, ecological models (Sallis et al. 2010) have been used to inform population-based intervention approaches. Ecological models take into account multiple levels of influence on health behaviors, such as

the individual, interpersonal, environment, and policy levels.

Success of Lifestyle Modification Programs

Success of multiple behavior lifestyle interventions has been documented, although this is a new area of research. A recent review found that multiple health behavior interventions resulted in greater weight loss than single behavior interventions (Sweet and Fortier 2010). However, it is unknown how lifestyle behaviors change together and if intervention efforts should focus on grouping certain behaviors together (e.g., target diet and physical activity together but drug use separately).

Cross-References

- [Behavior Change](#)
- [Behavior Modification](#)
- [Behavioral Inhibition](#)
- [Behavioral Intervention](#)
- [Behavioral Therapy](#)
- [Health Behavior Change](#)
- [Health Promotion](#)
- [Lifestyle Changes](#)

References and Readings

- Bandura, A. (2004). Health promotion by social cognitive means. *Health Education & Behavior*, 31, 143–164.
- Prochaska, J. O. (2008). Multiple health behavior research represents the future of preventive medicine. *Preventive Medicine*, 46(3), 281–285.
- Prochaska, J. J., Spring, B., & Nigg, C. R. (2008). Multiple health behavior change research: An introduction and overview. *Preventive Medicine*, 46(3), 181–188.
- Sallis, J., Owen, N., & Fisher, E. (2010). Ecological models of health behavior. In K. Glanz, B. K. Rimer, K. Viswanath, & C. T. Orleans (Eds.), *Health behavior and health education: Theory, research, and practice*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Sweet, S. N., & Fortier, M. S. (2010). Improving physical activity and dietary behaviours with single or multiple health behaviour interventions? A synthesis of meta-analyses and reviews. *International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health*, 7(4), 1720–1743.

Lifestyle, Sedentary

Jordan Carlson
Public Health, San Diego State University,
University of California San Diego, San Diego,
CA, USA

Synonyms

Inactivity; Sedentary activity; Sedentary behaviors

Definition

A sedentary lifestyle consists of a daily routine of high amounts of sitting and/or very low energy expenditure activities paired with very low levels of physical activity.

Description

Sedentary Behavior

Sedentary behaviors are those that involve very little or no muscle movement and/or energy expenditure and usually involve sitting. Examples of sedentary activities include TV viewing, computer use, sitting in an automobile, or most other activities that involve sitting. For more information, see “► [Sedentary Behaviors](#).”

Physical Inactivity

A person who engages in little to no physical activity (specifically moderate-to-vigorous intensity physical activity) is said to be physically inactive. For more information, see “► [Exercise](#)” and “► [Physical Inactivity](#).”

Sedentary Lifestyle Consists of Sedentary Behavior and Physical Inactivity

High amounts of sedentary activity often co-occur with low amounts of physical activity. Sedentary activity competes with physical activity and displaces physical activity when a person chooses sedentary behaviors over physical activity. This type of person typically avoids most or all types of

physical activity and spends most of the day engaged in sitting behaviors such as TV watching or other screen time behaviors (e.g., computer use). He or she may be inactive in their occupation and leisure time, travel by automobile rather than active forms of transport, and engage in relatively little household work. This type of person is often referred to as a “precontemplator” as termed in the Transtheoretical Model of Behavior Change (see “► [Transtheoretical Model of Behavior Change](#)”), meaning that they have not considered becoming more active and would be difficult to reach with behavioral intervention.

Prevalence of Sedentary Activity and Physical Inactivity

Sedentary prevalence rates were measured objectively in 2004 using electronic activity monitors on a nationally representative sample of US youth and adults (Matthews et al. 2008). Adults were sedentary for an average of 7.5 h per day, with older age being related to more sedentary time. Children spend 6 h per day in sedentary activities, while youth spent 7.5–8 h per day sedentary. Women/girls spent only slightly more time in sedentary activity than men/boys, on average.

According to self-reports, 35.5% of US adults were classified as physically inactive based on the US Department of Health and Human Services physical activity guidelines. Inactivity is more prevalent in women, older adults, people of race/ethnic minority, less educated people, and those who are obese (Carlson et al. 2008). Objective data suggests much higher rates of physical inactivity: 58% of children, 92% of adolescents, and 96% of adults have been classified as inactive (Troiano et al. 2008).

Sedentary Lifestyle and Health

Sedentary behavior has recently been linked with multiple negative health outcomes, independent of the amount of physical activity in which a person engages. Specifically, the amount of time a person spends viewing TV, number of breaks from sitting (i.e., how many times a person stands up), and total time spent sitting were found to be associated with biomarkers (i.e., risk factors and symptoms) of cardiovascular disease, such as

obesity, waist circumference, systolic blood pressure, plasma glucose, triglycerides, HDL cholesterol, and mortality (Owen et al. 2010).

Physical inactivity is also related to a myriad of health problems, such as cardiovascular disease, type 2 diabetes, some cancers, and mortality (Blair et al. 1996; Haskell et al. 2009).

Because the biology underlying the link between sedentary behavior and health is thought to be unique from the biology of inactivity and health, a person who lives a sedentary lifestyle is likely affected negatively by both processes. Thus, a sedentary lifestyle is thought to have around twice the negative health impact as being either sedentary or physically inactive (Owen et al. 2010).

Cross-References

- [Physical Inactivity](#)
- [Sedentary Behaviors](#)

References and Reading

- Blair, S. N., Kampert, J. B., Kohl, H. W., 3rd, Barlow, C. E., Macera, C. A., Paffenbarger, R. S., Jr., & Gibbons, L. W. (1996). Influences of cardiorespiratory fitness and other precursors on cardiovascular disease and all-cause mortality in men and women. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 276(3), 205.
- Carlson, S. A., Fulton, J. E., Galuska, D. A., Kruger, J., Lobelo, F., & Loustalot, F. V. (2008). Prevalence of self-reported physically active adults-United states, 2007. *MMWR Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 57, 1297–1300.
- Haskell, W. L., Blair, S. N., & Hill, J. O. (2009). Physical activity: Health outcomes and importance for public health policy. *Preventive Medicine*, 49(4), 280–282.
- Matthews, C. E., Chen, K. Y., Freedson, P. S., Buchowski, M. S., Beech, B. M., Pate, R. R., & Troiano, R. P. (2008). Amount of time spent in sedentary behaviors in the United States, 2003–2004. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 167(7), 875–881.
- Owen, N., Healy, G. N., Matthews, C. E., & Dunstan, D. W. (2010). Too much sitting: The population health science of sedentary behavior. *Exercise and Sport Sciences Reviews*, 38(3), 105–113.
- Troiano, R. P., Berrigan, D., Dodd, K. W., Masse, L. C., Tilert, T., & McDowell, M. (2008). Physical activity in the United States measured by accelerometer. *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise*, 40(1), 181–188.

Likelihood Judgments

- [Cancer Risk Perceptions](#)

Limited Resource

- [Self-Regulatory Fatigue](#)

Linear Mixed-Effects Model

- [Hierarchical Linear Modeling \(HLM\)](#)

Linear Regression

- [Regression Analysis](#)

Lipid

Jonathan Newman
Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Plasma lipid](#); [Total cholesterol](#)

Definition

Lipid is a general term of broad importance in human health and disease. There are both endogenous (produced by the body for physiologic processes) and exogenous (dietary intake) sources of lipid. Lipids are produced by the human body for many physiologic functions, including the synthesis of cell walls (made from cholesterol, a lipid). Dietary lipid is found most commonly as fatty acids, cholesterol, and cholesterol esters which are absorbed by the body and used to sustain

physiologic processes or stored for future energy use.

In cardiology and cardiovascular disease, lipid is generally considered to be the cholesterol content in the blood. The subcategories of lipid are low-density lipoprotein (LDL), high-density lipoprotein (HDL), very-low-density lipoprotein (VLDL), and triglycerides (TGs). The function of each lipid is outlined in other sections (see ► [Lipid, Plasma](#); ► [Lipoprotein](#)).

Cross-References

- [Lipid Abnormalities](#)
- [Lipid Metabolism](#)
- [Lipid, Plasma](#)
- [Lipoprotein](#)
- [Triglyceride](#)

Lipid Abnormalities

Leah Rosenberg
Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Dyslipidemia](#)

Definition

Lipid abnormalities encompass a variety of pathophysiological states of dysregulated cholesterol metabolism.

Description

Lipid abnormalities are extremely common in industrialized societies and are well known to be linked to adverse cardiovascular events, such as myocardial infarction and stroke. Dyslipidemias

such as increased low-density lipoprotein (LDL), decreased high-density lipoprotein (HDL), and/or increased triglycerides have been identified as strongly associated with the risk of incident cardiovascular events. Lipid abnormalities are an excellent target for both primary and secondary prevention efforts, as there are a variety of lifestyle and pharmacologic approaches to correct these levels.

Cholesterol is a type of lipid that is hydrophobic and thus insoluble in human plasma. Lipids are carried with proteins into tissues for their varied cellular functions. Cholesterol and other lipids have enzymatic roles that are integral to human metabolism. When lipids are connected to a protein, they are referred to as lipoproteins. There are five biologically important lipoproteins, two of which will be discussed here: LDL and HDL. Both LDL and HDL ferry cholesterol esters and have distinct receptor types based on their function. LDL in the liver can be converted in secreted bile acids and excreted into the feces. Alternatively, LDL can be brought into extrahepatic cells, causing excessive cholesterol in the intracellular space. HDL cholesterol differs from LDL as it scavenges excess cholesterol from cells for excretion and thus has protective cardiovascular events. In common clinical parlance, LDL is known as “bad cholesterol,” whereas HDL is called “good cholesterol.”

Triglycerides are another important class of lipids. They are storage molecules that, when hydrolyzed, release free fatty acids into the circulation. They are created from the breakdown of fats and carbohydrates and are stored in adipose tissue. When excess calories are ingested, they are ferried to fat stores by triglycerides in the bloodstream.

When the levels of LDL, HDL, and triglycerides are abnormal, it is referred to as dyslipidemia. One definition of lipid imbalance or dyslipidemia that uses data from a large-scale observational study called NHANES III states that dyslipidemia is defined by being below the 10th percentile for HDL levels or above the 90th percentile for LDL and triglyceride levels nationally. Essentially, dyslipidemia implies high LDL and triglycerides and/or low HDL.

The Adult Treatment Panel (ATP III) guidelines, authored by the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP), are guidelines published in 2001 for the diagnosis and treatment of dyslipidemia in adult patients. These guidelines provide an evidence-based approach for identifying and treating patients with lipid abnormalities, with a particular focus on reducing LDL by lifestyle modification and lipid-lowering therapy (primarily HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors or statins). The major feature of the ATP III guidelines was a focus on multiple risk factors to determine baseline cardiovascular risk in order to identify risk-based LDL goals (see Table 1) for non-pharmacological therapy (i.e., therapeutic lifestyle changes, TLC) or lipid-lowering drug therapy (i.e., statins). Four groups of baseline cardiovascular risk are defined as follows: high risk (coronary heart disease or coronary heart disease risk equivalents including peripheral artery disease, abdominal aortic aneurysm, symptomatic carotid artery disease, diabetes, or the presence of two or more risk factors with a 10-year Framingham risk score >20%), moderately high risk (two or more risk factors with a 10-year Framingham risk score 10–20%), moderate risk (two or more risk factors with a 10-year Framingham risk score less than or equal to 10%), and low risk (0 or 1 risk factor). The ATP III guidelines also discussed optimal goals for triglycerides (less than 150 mg/dL) and LDL (greater than or equal to 40 mg/dL) and also identified metabolic syndrome as an important at-risk phenotype.

In 2004, another NCEP report was published as an update to the ATP III guidelines. This report was endorsed by the National Heart,

Lung, and Blood Institute, American College of Cardiology Foundation, and American Heart Association. Based on several randomized trials that were completed after the ATP III guidelines were published, the LDL cut points for initiating statin therapy (as well as on-treatment goals), especially for patients in the high-risk and moderately high-risk categories, were lowered (Table 2).

In 2008, the JUPITER trial, or Justification for the Use of Statins in Primary Prevention: An Intervention Trial Evaluating Rosuvastatin was published. JUPITER was a landmark randomized double-blinded, controlled trial comparing rosuvastatin (a statin) or placebo in patients, mostly in the low- to moderate-risk category who had an LDL less than 130 mg/dL, who otherwise would not typically be a candidate for initiating statin therapy. An additional and important inclusion criterion was a C-reactive protein (a cardiovascular biomarker) of 2 mg/dL or higher. Compared with placebo, there was a significant reduction in cardiovascular events associated with rosuvastatin treatment. Despite the importance and clinical implications of the study findings, critics of JUPITER have stated concerns that the study was stopped prematurely (thus overestimating the reduction in cardiovascular events), questioned the magnitude of the absolute risk reduction observed in the trial (i.e., the rates of the primary end point were 0.77 and 1.36 per 100 person-years of follow-up in the rosuvastatin and placebo groups, respectively), and/or questioned the utility of C-reactive protein. It is unclear as of this writing whether CRP will be incorporated in the next NCEP report to select patients for statin

Lipid Abnormalities, Table 1 The Adult Treatment Panel (ATP III) Treatment Guidelines

Risk category	LDL target	LDL threshold to start TLC	LDL threshold to start drug therapy
CHD/CHD risk equivalent	<100 mg/dL	≥100 mg/dL	≥130 mg/dL 100–129 mg/dL on TLC (optional)
Moderately high	<130 mg/dL	≥130 mg/dL	≥130 mg/dL
Moderate	<130 mg/dL	≥130 mg/dL	≥160 mg/dL
Low	<160 mg/dL	≥160 mg/dL	≥190 mg/dL 160–189 mg/dL on TLC (optional)

CHD = coronary heart disease, LDL = low-density lipoprotein, TLC = therapeutic lifestyle changes

Lipid Abnormalities, Table 2 2004 Update to The Adult Treatment Panel (ATP III) Treatment Guidelines

Risk category	LDL target	LDL threshold to start TLC	LDL threshold to start drug therapy
CHD/CHD risk equivalent	<100 mg/dL	≥100 mg/dL	≥100 mg/dL
	<70 mg/dL (optional)		<100 mg/dL (optional)
Moderately high	<130 mg/dL or <100 mg/dL (optional)	≥130 mg/dL	≥130 mg/dL
	<100 mg/dL (optional)		100–129 mg/dL (optional)
Moderate	<130 mg/dL	≥130 mg/dL	≥160 mg/dL
Low	<160 mg/dL	≥160 mg/dL	≥190 mg/dL
			160–189 mg/dL on TLC (optional)

CHD = coronary heart disease, LDL = low-density lipoprotein, TLC = therapeutic lifestyle changes

therapy who have an LDL less than 130 mg/dL who are not at high risk.

Lipid Disorder

► Hyperlipidemia

Cross-References

- Lipid
- Lipid Metabolism
- Lipid, Plasma
- Lipoprotein

References and Readings

American Heart Association website, “Triglycerides”. <http://www.americanheart.org/presenter.jhtml?identifier=4778>

Grundy, S. M., et al. (2004). Implications of recent clinical trials for the national cholesterol education program adult treatment panel III guidelines. *Circulation*, 110, 227–239.

Musunuru, K. (2010). Atherogenic dyslipidemia: Cardiovascular risk and dietary intervention. *Lipids*, 45(10), 907–914.

National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults (Adult Treatment Panel III). (2002). Third report of the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) expert panel on detection, evaluation, and treatment of high blood cholesterol in adults (Adult Treatment Panel III) final report. *Circulation*, 106, 3143–3421.

Ridker, P. M., & Glynn, R. J. (2010). JUPITER trial: Responding to the critics. *The American Journal of Cardiology*, 106(9), 1351–1356.

Ridker, P. M., et al. (2008). Rosuvastatin to prevent vascular events in men and women with elevated C-reactive protein. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 359(21), 2195–2207.

Lipid Metabolism

Manjunath Harlapur¹ and Daichi Shimbo²
¹Center of Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Division of General Medicine, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA
²Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

Fat metabolism

Definition

Lipid metabolism is a complex process which involves multiple steps from production within the body or dietary intake to degradation or transformation into several lipid-containing structures in the body.

Description

Lipid metabolism is a complex process that involves multiple steps involving the dietary

intake of lipids (exogenous) or the production of lipids within the body (endogenous) to degradation or transformation (catabolism) into several lipid-containing structures in the body. A brief description of metabolism related to fatty acids and cholesterol is provided below.

The dietary fat in the form of triacylglycerol (TAG), cholesterol, cholesteryl esters, and free fatty acids is absorbed by the intestine after going through various steps during digestion from mouth to intestine.

Fatty acids, once absorbed from intestine, are activated in the intestinal wall and eventually resynthesize the TAG. Some of the shorter-chain fatty acids go to the liver after binding to albumin in the blood. TAG, long-chain fatty acids, and cholesterol, after activation, are packaged in the chylomicron particles and moved to the bloodstream via the lymphatic system to reach the entire body. The TAG is mainly broken down in the capillaries of skeletal muscles and adipose tissues. Other organs like heart, lung, liver, and kidneys are also involved. TAG in the chylomicrons is degraded to free fatty acids and glycerol by lipoprotein lipase. This enzyme is primarily produced in the adipose tissues and muscle cells. Thus formed free fatty acids may be either used for energy or may be stored as TAG after reesterification. However, glycerol that is released from TAG is used almost exclusively by the liver to produce glycerol 3-phosphate and this can be used either in the glycolytic pathway to produce energy or in the production of new molecules of glucose (gluconeogenesis). Fatty acids can also be produced by the body and this process occurs mainly in the liver and adipose tissues.

Fatty acids that are stored in the adipose tissue in the form of TAG serve as a major energy storage. The complete oxidation of fatty acids produces 9 kcal/g of fat as compared to proteins and carbohydrates which produce about 4 kcal.

The major degradation (catabolism) of saturated fatty acids occurs in mitochondria, and this process is called beta oxidation. During beta oxidation, two-carbon fragments are removed successively generating high-energy-rich substances (like NADH and FADH₂ molecules). After the

oxidation of fatty acids, acetyl Co-A is produced and eventually it is used in the formation of ketone bodies. Thus formed ketone bodies can be used as energy source or for production of other important biochemical substrates. However, the oxidation of unsaturated fatty acids results in lesser calories, and this process requires additional enzymes in the metabolic pathway.

Lipid metabolism also includes the formation and degradation of several other important lipid particles like phospholipids which play a very important role in the structure of cellular membranes, prostaglandins, and several hormonal activities in the body.

Cholesterol is not only provided to the body by the dietary intake but also synthesized by virtually all the tissues in the body, although liver, intestine, adrenal cortex, reproductive tissues including ovaries, testes, and placenta produce most of the cholesterol in the body. These sites also utilize cholesterol in the process of production of multiple hormones in the body.

Degradation of the cholesterol happens mainly in the liver, where the sterol nucleus is eliminated from the body after conversion into bile acids and bile salts, which are excreted in the feces, or it may undergo enterohepatic circulation.

The lipoproteins (chylomicrons, high-density lipoproteins, and low-, intermediate-, very-low-density lipoproteins) are involved with transporting these various lipid particles in the body with the apolipoproteins on their surface.

Cross-References

- [Fat Absorption](#)
- [Lipoprotein](#)
- [Plasma Lipid](#)

References and Further Reading

- Harvey, R. A., & Ferrier, D. R. (2008). Cholesterol and steroid metabolism. In R. A. Harvey (Ed.), *Lippincott's illustrated reviews biochemistry* (pp. 181–200). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams and Wilkins.

Lipid, Plasma

Manjunath Harlapur¹ and Daichi Shimbo²

¹Center of Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Division of General Medicine, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

²Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

Total cholesterol in the blood

Definition

Plasma lipid is the cholesterol content in the blood. Plasma lipid profile includes total cholesterol, triglycerides (TG), high-density lipoproteins (HDL), intermediate-density lipoproteins (IDL), low-density lipoproteins (LDL), and very low-density lipoproteins (VLDL). The fasting lipid profile is generally recommended due to significant variations in the TG levels due to food contents.

Elevated LDL cholesterol levels and lower levels of HDL are associated with increased risk for incident cardiovascular disease. Non-HDL cholesterol is calculated as the difference between total cholesterol and HDL levels. Non-HDL cholesterol includes all the cholesterol present in the lipoproteins attributed to atherogenicity. Non-HDL cholesterol is considered as better tool for risk assessment than the assessing LDL cholesterol alone.

Cross-References

- [Dean Ornish](#)
- [Heart Disease](#)
- [Lipid Metabolism](#)

References and Further Reading

- Cui, Y., Blumenthal, R. S., Flaws, J. A., Whiteman, M. K., Langenberg, P., Bachorik, P. S., et al. (2001). Non-high-density lipoprotein cholesterol level as a predictor of cardiovascular disease mortality. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 161(11), 1413–1419.
- Friedewald, W. T., Levy, R. I., & Fredrickson, D. S. (1972). Estimation of the concentration of low-density lipoprotein cholesterol in plasma, without use of the preparative ultracentrifuge. *Clinical Chemistry*, 18(6), 499–502.
- Harvey, R. A., & Ferrier, D. R. (2008). Metabolism of lipids. In R. A. Harvey (Ed.), *Lippincott's illustrated reviews biochemistry* (pp. 173–180). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott.
- Third Report of the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP). (2002). Expert panel on detection, evaluation, and treatment of high blood cholesterol in adults (adult treatment panel III) final report. *Circulation*, 106(25), 3143–3421.

Lipoprotein

Manjunath Harlapur¹ and Daichi Shimbo²

¹Center of Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Division of General Medicine, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

²Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

Cholesterol

Definition

Lipoproteins are complex substances containing lipids and specific proteins called apolipoproteins or apoproteins.

Description

Lipoprotein particles include chylomicrons, high-density lipoproteins (HDL), very low-density lipoproteins (VLDL), intermediate low-density

lipoproteins (IDL), and low-density lipoproteins (LDL).

Each of these particles differs in their lipid and protein composition, density and size, and site of origin. Lipoproteins act as transporter of lipids and render the lipids as water-soluble. Each lipoprotein is described in terms of their origin and metabolism in the following sections.

Chylomicrons are assembled in the intestinal cells, and they carry the dietary triacylglycerol, cholesterol, fat-soluble vitamins, and cholesterol esters to the peripheral tissues of the body. Chylomicrons are highest in their lipid content and lowest in density as compared to other lipoproteins. The characteristic apolipoprotein associated with chylomicron is B-48. The molecule of the chylomicron is modified after the attachment of apolipoprotein E and apolipoprotein C, mainly apolipoprotein C-II. Once the chylomicrons are released into blood circulation, the lipid component of chylomicrons is extracted from the adipose tissue, cardiac and skeletal muscle with the help of enzyme called lipoprotein lipase. This enzyme is activated by apolipoprotein C-II on the surface of chylomicron molecule. Thus, extracted lipid is further used for the energy supply and the storage. After extraction of lipids, chylomicrons are called chylomicron remnants, and these particles are metabolized and degraded in the cells of liver. This process generates amino acids, free cholesterol, and fatty acids.

VLDL are produced by the liver and composed of triacylglycerol. The function of VLDL is to transport the lipid from the liver to peripheral tissue. Apolipoprotein B-100 is located on surface of VLDL. After secreted into blood circulation, VLDL obtains apolipoprotein C-II and apolipoprotein E from HDL. During this exchange, some of the triacylglycerols are transferred from VLDL to HDL and some of the cholesteryl esters from HDL to VLDL. This exchange is mediated by cholesteryl ester transfer protein. With this modification, VLDL is converted in to LDL. During this transition, intermediate dense lipoproteins (IDL) and VLDL remnants are produced. Furthermore, IDL may be further taken up by the cells with the help of apo E. There are three isoforms of apolipoprotein E (E2, E3, and E4). Type III hyperlipoproteinemia

(familial dysbetalipoproteinemia or broad beta disease) is manifested when apolipoprotein E2 is deficient and the patients usually present with premature atherosclerosis.

LDL contains lesser amount of triacylglycerol than VLDL and higher concentration of cholesterol and cholesteryl esters. The role of the LDL is to provide the cholesterol to the peripheral tissues. Apolipoprotein B-100 is located on the surface of LDL and binds to the LDL receptors on the cell surface. If there is deficiency of functional LDL receptor, this condition produces significant elevation in the LDL as seen in type II hyperlipidemia (familial hypercholesterolemia) causing premature atherosclerosis.

HDL are formed in the blood, and they have apolipoprotein A-1 on their surface and serve several important functions. HDL selectively transfer the cholesterol from the peripheral tissue and transport it back into liver for the bile acid synthesis and to steroidogenic cells for hormone synthesis. Thus, HDL help in the homeostasis of cholesterol. HDL also pick up the unesterified cholesterol in the circulation, and they also act as circulating reservoirs of apolipoprotein C-II. With all these functions, HDL are sometimes referred to as good cholesterol.

Cross-References

- [Fat Absorption](#)
- [Lipid Metabolism](#)
- [Plasma Lipid](#)

References and Further Reading

- Harvey, R. A., & Ferrier, D. R. (2008). Cholesterol and steroid metabolism. In R. A. Harvey (Ed.), *Lippincott's illustrated reviews biochemistry* (pp. 219–244). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott.

Literacy

- [Health Literacy](#)

Liver Disease

- ▶ [Hepatitis C and Cognitive Functioning](#)

Load-High

- ▶ [Hyperglycemia](#)

Lobes

- ▶ [Brain, Cortex](#)

Locus

- ▶ [Gene](#)

Locus (Genetics)

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Gene](#)

Definition

A locus is a spot or “address” on a chromosome at which a gene for a particular trait is located in all members of a species. It can also refer to the location of a mutation or other genetic marker. A given locus can be found on any pair of homologous chromosomes (Brown 2009).

In 1909, the botanist Wilhelm Johannsen coined the term “gene” to describe the heritable characters discussed by Mendel. Between 1907

and 1919, the geneticist Thomas Hunt Morgan (a Nobel Laureate in Medicine) and his colleagues conducted an elegant series of experiments using the fruit fly *Drosophila melanogaster*. Fruit flies have marked advantages for use in transmission genetics research: they are abundant in nature, and they are very easily fed and accommodated. In addition, they are prodigious reproducers. They have a generation time of 10 days, and females produce around 300 eggs (of which half are female). This mathematics means that in the space of a single month, i.e., just three generation times, one fruit fly couple can lead to over three million flies (Watson 2006).

In 1907, there was no current knowledge of established genetic differences, making it difficult for Morgan to know precisely where to start his research, as reflected by a comment by Watson (2006): “You cannot do genetics until you have isolated some characteristics to track through the generations.” A search for mutant genes was started since mutant genes (variations from the normally occurring genes, sometimes called abnormal variants) lead to distinct characteristics. This led to the identification of some flies with white eyes (the normal color is red). The trait for white eye color was found to be located on the X chromosome and was inherited with a factor that determines the fly’s sex. Morgan and others subsequently showed that each gene for a particular trait was located at a specific spot, i.e., a locus, on a chromosome in all individuals of a species.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Chromosomes](#)
- ▶ [Gene](#)
- ▶ [Heritability](#)
- ▶ [Marker \(Genetics\)](#)

References and Further Readings

- Brown, S. M. (2009). *Essentials of medical genomics* (2nd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley-Blackwell.
Watson, J. D. (2006). *DNA: The Secret of life*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf.

Locus of Control

Julia R. Van Liew

Department of Psychology, University of Iowa,
Iowa City, IA, USA

Synonyms

[Attributional style](#); [Hardiness](#); [Self-efficacy](#)

Definition

Locus of control refers to one's general predisposition to perceive control, or lack thereof, across various situations. The extent to which one attributes valued outcomes or reinforcement to either internal or external circumstances reflects their dimension of locus of control. Individuals with an internal locus of control believe in the power of their own decisions and behaviors to impact life events and determine their own future. Those with an external locus of control, on the other hand, view life events as dictated by environmental factors outside of one's control, such as luck, fate, or powerful others.

As originally defined by Rotter (1966), locus of control is a broad concept that is present across dimensions of functioning. The field of behavioral medicine has specifically applied it to the control individuals feel in regard to their physical health, termed health locus of control. The Health Locus of Control scale (HLC; Wallston et al. 1976) and Multidimensional Health Locus of Control scale (MHLC; Wallston et al. 1978) assess this specific construct. Researchers are interested in the relationship between health locus of control and a variety of health behaviors and outcomes, such as engagement in health-promoting and preventive behaviors, adherence to medical regimens, health care utilization, and coping with chronic illness.

Cross-References

► [Learned Helplessness](#)

References and Readings

- Rotter, J. B. (1966). Generalized expectancies for internal versus external control of reinforcement. *Psychological Monographs*, 80(1), 1–28.
- Wallston, B. S., Wallston, K. A., Kaplan, G. D., & Maides, S. A. (1976). Development and validation of the health locus of control (HLC) scale. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 44(4), 580–585.
- Wallston, K. A., Wallston, B. S., & DeVellis, R. (1978). Development of the multidimensional health locus of control (MHLC) scales. *Health Education & Behavior*, 6(1), 160–170.

Loneliness

Elizabeth A. Majka and John T. Cacioppo

Department of Psychology, The University of
Chicago, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Social isolation](#); [Social pain](#)

Definition

A subjective sense of social isolation produces feelings of *loneliness* or social pain (Cacioppo and Patrick 2008). This distressing constellation of feelings and emotions results from a discrepancy between one's actual and desired social relationships. Thus, lonely individuals are not satisfied with the quality of their actual social relationships, leaving them lacking a sense of social inclusion and belonging. Not to be confused with objective social isolation or a low quantity of social relationships, individuals can feel lonely when alone just as much as they can feel lonely when surrounded by a sea of people. Identifying individuals who suffer from loneliness is important, since over time loneliness can seriously impair physical, cognitive, and psychological health.

Loneliness is typically assessed using self-report items assessing the degree to which individuals endorse statements describing thoughts

and feelings commonly associated with loneliness such as “I lack companionship” or “I feel alone” (Russell et al. 1980). Scores on these sorts of measures fall on a continuum, ranging from very low in loneliness (i.e., feeling highly socially connected) to very high. Therefore, although labeling individuals as lonely or non-lonely may be convenient shorthand, people may fall anywhere on the loneliness continuum. Feelings of loneliness can be experienced transiently in response to an experience of social rejection or to a shift in circumstances (e.g., beginning college, divorce, widowhood, relocating to a new city), or loneliness can be experienced more chronically, functioning as a trait-like characteristic.

Three theoretical perspectives dominate the loneliness literature (Cacioppo and Patrick 2008). One theory of loneliness posits that dissatisfaction with specific types of relationships (e.g., social network members vs. romantic partner) leads to different types of loneliness (e.g., social vs. emotional). Another perspective suggests that social skill deficits and personality traits (e.g., shyness) can hinder relationship development and maintenance, thereby leading to feelings of loneliness. Finally, a third theory of loneliness takes an evolutionary approach, positing that feelings of loneliness – although aversive – are adaptive in that they motivate humans to pursue and maintain social connections, thereby enhancing survival of oneself and one’s offspring. Adoption and twin studies indicate loneliness has a heritability coefficient of approximately 0.50 (Boomsma et al. 2005).

Loneliness also predicts various cognitive impairments, including poorer executive functioning, depressive symptomatology, and sleep fragmentation (Cacioppo and Hawkley 2009). When people feel lonely, they are more likely to cope with stressors by withdrawal rather than by active coping and seeking emotional and instrumental support from others. Loneliness is also associated with an implicit hypervigilance for social threats, which has a cascading effect on social cognition. Briefly, although people who feel lonely want to connect with others, they tend to anticipate rejection and engage in self-

protective behavior that paradoxically can be self-defeating. Accordingly, a meta-analysis of loneliness interventions indicated that the most effective interventions addressed these maladaptive social cognitions (Masi et al. 2011).

Cross-References

- [Depression: Symptoms](#)
- [Executive Function](#)
- [Loneliness and Health](#)
- [Negative Thoughts](#)

References and Readings

- Aarsen, M., & Jylha, M. (2011). Onset of loneliness in older adults: Results of a 28 year prospective study. *European Journal of Ageing*, 8, 31–38.
- Boomsma, D. I., Willemsen, G., Dolan, C. V., Hawkley, L. C., & Cacioppo, J. T. (2005). Genetic and environmental contributions to loneliness in adults: The Netherlands twin register study. *Behavior Genetics*, 35, 745–752.
- Cacioppo, J. T., & Hawkley, L. C. (2009). Perceived social isolation and cognition. *Trends in Cognitive Science*, 13, 447–454.
- Cacioppo, J. T., & Patrick, B. (2008). *Loneliness: Human nature and the need for social connection*. New York: W. W. Norton.
- Masi, C. M., Chen, H., Hawkley, L. C., & Cacioppo, J. T. (2011). A meta-analysis of interventions to reduce loneliness. *Personality and Social Psychological Review*, 15, 219–266.
- Russell, D., Peplau, L. A., & Cutrona, C. E. (1980). The revised UCLA loneliness scale: Concurrent and discriminant validity evidence. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 39, 472–480.

Loneliness and Health

Louise C. Hawkley
Academic Research Centers, NORC at the
University of Chicago, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Social isolation](#)

Definition

Loneliness is a subjective experience of dissatisfaction with one's social relationships that feels unpleasant or distressing. Loneliness is also termed "perceived social isolation" and, although correlated, is conceptually distinct from objective social isolation. Whereas objective isolation corresponds to being alone, perceived isolation corresponds to feeling alone. In the USA, as many as 80% of those under 18 years of age and 19–43% of adults over 65 years of age report being lonely at least sometimes. For as many as 15–30% of the general population, loneliness is a chronic state. Left untended, loneliness has serious consequences for physical and cognitive health and well-being.

Description

Loneliness and Physical Health and Mortality

Loneliness has been associated with a range of poor physical health outcomes as early as childhood. Lonelier children 6–12 years of age suffer from more somatic symptoms, poorer sleep quality, and poorer general health than their less lonely peers. Negative outcomes in these domains are also evident in adolescence and throughout adulthood, and to them are added poor outcomes in cognitive, immune and neuroendocrine functioning (Hawkey and Capitanio 2015). The large population-based Swiss Health Study found that loneliness in individuals 15 years to 70 and older was consistently associated with health problems such as high cholesterol, diabetes, and depression, and an increased likelihood of having visited a physician in the past year (Richard et al. 2017).

In older age, loneliness has been shown to predict increased morbidity and mortality. The size of the mortality effect of loneliness is comparable to that of obesity (Holt-Lunstad et al. 2015). Loneliness and objective isolation were observed to have independent associations with mortality in one study (Holwerda et al. 2012), whereas other studies have shown that loneliness has no effect on mortality when objective isolation is held constant (Elovainio et al. 2017; Steptoe et al. 2013).

Yet another study found that loneliness and social isolation have a synergistic effect such that higher levels of one amplify the effects of the other on mortality (Beller and Wagner 2018). The sources of inconsistent findings are not yet fully understood, but highlight the importance of taking into account both objective and perceived isolation when estimating the effects of each on health outcomes.

The effects of loneliness on health seem to accrue over time to accelerate physiological aging and mortality. For instance, loneliness exhibited a dose–response relationship with cardiovascular health risk in young adulthood such that the greater the number of measurement occasions at which participants were lonely (i.e., childhood, adolescence, and at 26 years of age), the greater their number of cardiovascular health risks (i.e., BMI, systolic blood pressure (SBP), total and HDL cholesterol levels, glycated hemoglobin concentration, maximum oxygen consumption). Loneliness has been associated with increased systolic blood pressure in middle-aged adults, and a persistent trait-like aspect of loneliness accelerated the rate of systolic blood pressure increase over a 4-year follow-up period. Notably, the loneliness effect was unique and independent of the effects of depressive symptoms, perceived stress, social support, and hostility. In a study of women, chronic high-frequency loneliness was prospectively associated with incident coronary heart disease over a 19-year follow-up in analyses that adjusted for depressive symptoms and a range of demographic and cardiovascular risk factors. Loneliness, but not social isolation, was shown to predict incident cardiovascular disease and stroke over a follow-up period of 5 years in the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing (Valtorta et al. 2018). Loneliness and social isolation each predicted acute myocardial infarction and stroke in 40–69 year-olds in the UK Biobank study (Hakulinen et al. 2018). Finally, a number of large epidemiologic studies have shown that all-cause or cardiovascular mortality risk is greater in chronically than situationally or rarely lonely adults.

Loneliness and health are reciprocally related; not only is loneliness a risk factor for poor health

but it is also a consequence of poor health. Loneliness is more prevalent or intense in people with heart disease, heart failure, stroke, obesity, diabetes, lung disease, and disability (e.g., limitations in the activities of daily living). Chronic illnesses and mobility limitations are likely to disrupt people's social lives and social opportunities, and this may explain why poor health and mobility limitations have been associated with greater loneliness.

Loneliness and Mental Health and Cognitive Functioning

Loneliness has been associated with personality disorders and psychoses, suicide, impaired cognitive performance and cognitive decline over time, increased risk of Alzheimer's disease, diminished executive control, and increases in depressive symptoms (Cacioppo and Hawkley 2009; Giacco et al. 2016). Depressive symptoms were shown to explain a large proportion of the mortality difference between lonely and nonlonely individuals.

Loneliness increases the risk for major depressive disorder across the age range from young adults to middle-aged and older adults (Schaakxs et al. 2017). In addition, loneliness has been associated with subclinical depressive symptoms. Research in children, adolescence, young adulthood, and older age is consistent in showing a prospective relationship between loneliness and subsequent increases in depressive symptoms (Hawkley and Capitanio 2015).

Loneliness has been prospectively associated with cognitive decline and dementia in older adults (Boss et al. 2015; Kuiper and Smidt 2015; Rafnsson et al. 2017). In one study, cognitive functioning in 75–85-year-olds did not differ as a function of loneliness at baseline but diminished to a greater extent among those high than low in loneliness over a 10-year follow-up; an effect that persisted adjusting for objective measures of social activity and social network size. In another prospective study, loneliness was inversely associated with performance on a battery of cognitive measures in initially dementia-free older adults and predicted a faster decline in cognitive performance on most of these measures over a 4-year follow-up. In addition, incidence of Alzheimer's disease was predicted by degree of baseline

loneliness adjusting for relevant covariates, including depressive symptoms. The association between loneliness and cognitive decline may be bidirectional; cognitive decline has been seen to exacerbate loneliness (Zhong et al. 2016).

Mechanisms for Health Effects of Loneliness

Health Behaviors and Sleep

Loneliness is a risk factor for obesity, sedentariness, smoking, and a propensity to abuse alcohol. These lifestyle behaviors, plus limited physical activity, were shown to contribute to but did not completely explain the higher rate of mortality in lonely 40–69 year-old individuals in the UK (Elovainio et al. 2017). Physical activity is a well-known protective factor for physical health, mental health, and cognitive functioning. Loneliness has been associated with a lower likelihood of engaging in physical activity and a greater likelihood of discontinuing physical activity over time in middle-aged adults. This effect is not attributable to frequency of social contact or social network size, ruling out social control as a mechanism for the effects of felt isolation on physical activity. The reverse causal direction also has support; physical activity interventions contribute to a decrease in loneliness (Pels and Kleinert 2016).

Sleep affords physiological restoration, and sleep quality is important in accomplishing sleep's restorative effects. Nonrestorative sleep (i.e., sleep that is nonrefreshing despite normal sleep duration) results in daytime impairments such as physical and intellectual fatigue, role impairments, and cognitive and memory problems. Loneliness heightens feelings of vulnerability and unconscious vigilance for social threat, implicit cognitions that are antithetical to relaxation and sound sleep (Cacioppo and Hawkley 2009). From childhood to old age, cross-sectional and longitudinal studies have shown that loneliness is associated with poor sleep quality, effects that are largely independent of sleep duration. A longitudinal study of older adults followed over a period of 6 years found that social isolation and loneliness were each independently associated with poor sleep quality. The effect of

loneliness was no longer evident after accounting for differences in health, cognitive functioning, and depressive symptoms, suggesting that these factors are at least partially responsible for the effect of loneliness on sleep quality.

Physiological Functioning

Biological factors – blood pressure, body mass index, hand grip strength – were shown to contribute to higher mortality rates in lonely 40–69 year-olds in the UK (Elovainio et al. 2017). Total peripheral resistance (TPR) is the primary determinant of systolic blood pressure (SBP) until at least 50 years of age. In young adults, loneliness has been associated with elevated levels TPR. In older adults, loneliness has been associated with elevated SBP and predicted an accelerated increase in SBP over a 4-year follow-up, an effect that was adjusted for and independent of age, gender, race/ethnicity, cardiovascular risk factors, medications, health conditions, and the effects of depressive symptoms, social support, perceived stress, and hostility.

Changes in TPR levels are themselves influenced by a variety of physiological processes, including activity of the autonomic nervous system and the hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenocortical (HPA) axis. To date, loneliness has not been shown to correlate with sympathetic nervous system activity at the heart, but was associated with a greater concentration of epinephrine in overnight urine samples in a middle-aged and older adult sample. At high concentrations, circulating epinephrine binds α -1 receptors on vascular smooth muscle cells to elicit vasoconstriction and could thereby serve as a mechanism for increased SBP in lonely individuals.

Dysregulation of the hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenocortical (HPA) axis contributes to inflammatory processes that play a role in hypertension, atherosclerosis, and coronary heart disease. Loneliness has been associated with urinary excretion of significantly higher concentrations of cortisol and with higher levels of salivary or plasma cortisol. Studies of adults between 47 and 68 years of age have shown that loneliness is associated with a higher cortisol awakening response the next day.

Among young adult students, loneliness has been associated with a flatter diurnal cortisol profile, but not with the cortisol awakening response. In a sample of 60–93 year-olds, loneliness was associated with a lower cortisol concentrations in the first hour after awakening (Schutter et al. 2017). In combination, these results suggest that the association between loneliness and HPA functioning may differ with age, possibly because of age-related changes in HPA functioning.

Gene Effects

Cortisol exerts broad anti-inflammatory effects, but although loneliness is associated with elevated cortisol levels, loneliness increases risk for inflammatory disease. This apparent contradiction may be explained by glucocorticoid insensitivity. Evidence consistent with glucocorticoid insensitivity has been demonstrated in chronically lonely versus socially connected older adults and has further been shown to vary across the loneliness continuum. Genome-wide microarray analyses showed that markers of immune activation and inflammation (e.g., pro-inflammatory cytokines and inflammatory mediators) were overexpressed and markers of inhibitors of the pro-inflammatory NF- κ B (nuclear factor-kappa B) transcript were under-expressed in genes of the lonely relative to the socially connected group. Analyses also indicated a possible decrease in glucocorticoid receptor-mediated transcription in the lonely group, despite the fact that there were no group differences in circulating glucocorticoid levels. These results are consistent with a functional desensitization of the glucocorticoid receptor, which permits increased NF- κ B activity and thereby induces a pro-inflammatory bias in gene expression. Loneliness differences in NF- κ B/glucocorticoid receptor-mediated transcription activity were not attributable to objective indices of social isolation nor were they explained by demographic, psychosocial (i.e., perceived stress, depression, hostility), or medical risk factors.

In an extension of this work, a recent study showed that feelings of social isolation were associated with a proxy measure of functional glucocorticoid insensitivity, namely, an attenuation in

lonelier individuals of the typically positive correlation between cortisol levels and the ratio of neutrophil percentages relative to lymphocyte or monocyte percentages. This result signifies a diminished sensitivity of leukocytes and leukocyte trafficking to the influence of cortisol in lonelier individuals (Cole 2008).

Other research has begun to examine associations between loneliness and gene expression in specific areas of the brain (Canli et al. 2017, 2018). The nucleus accumbens and the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex are regions of the brain involved in neural networks that have been associated with depression, inflammatory diseases, and cognitive function. Loneliness is associated with differentially expressed genes and gene sets in these regions of the brain, suggesting that a common molecular regulatory mechanism may contribute to associations between loneliness and health outcomes.

Immune Functioning

Loneliness has been associated with impaired cellular immunity as reflected in lower natural killer (NK) cell activity and higher antibody titers to the Epstein–Barr virus and human herpesviruses. In addition, loneliness has been associated with poorer antibody response to a component of the flu vaccine, suggesting that the humoral immune response may also be impaired in lonely individuals.

Summary

Social integration was once thought to have effects on health via health behaviors, but we now know that the effects of perceived social isolation include biological consequences, therefore implicating direct central nervous system control. Loneliness is itself a product of central processes, including implicit hypervigilance for social threat, diminished self-regulatory capacity, and maladaptive social cognitions that bias lonely relative to socially connected individuals to perceive, expect, and remember more negative social information. Interventions that address

maladaptive social cognitions have been shown to be more successful in reducing felt loneliness than interventions that work to increase number of social contacts. A role for central processes in the health effects of loneliness suggests that interventions that address maladaptive social cognitions may also influence biological, behavioral, and health outcomes.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Alzheimer's Disease](#)
- ▶ [Autonomic Nervous System \(ANS\)](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Function](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Impairment](#)
- ▶ [Cortisol](#)
- ▶ [Gene Expression](#)
- ▶ [Health Risk \(Behavior\)](#)
- ▶ [Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Axis](#)
- ▶ [Immune Function](#)
- ▶ [Inflammation](#)
- ▶ [Loneliness](#)
- ▶ [Negative Thoughts](#)
- ▶ [Sleep Quality](#)
- ▶ [Sympathetic Nervous System \(SNS\)](#)
- ▶ [Systolic Blood Pressure \(SBP\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Beller, J., & Wagner, A. (2018). Loneliness, social isolation, their synergistic interaction, and mortality. *Health Psychology, 37*(9), 808–813.
- Boss, L., Kang, D. H., & Branson, S. (2015). Loneliness and cognitive function in the older adult: A systematic review. *International Journal of Psychogeriatrics, 27*, 541–553.
- Cacioppo, J. T., & Cacioppo, S. (2014). Social relationships and health: The toxic effects of perceived social isolation. *Social and Personality Psychology Compass, 8*, 58–72.
- Cacioppo, J. T., & Hawkley, L. C. (2009). Perceived social isolation and cognition. *Trends in Cognitive Science, 13*, 447–454.
- Cacioppo, J. T., Cacioppo, S., Capitanio, J. P., & Cole, S. W. (2015). The neuroendocrinology of social isolation. *Annual Review of Psychology, 66*, 733–767.
- Canli, T., Wen, R., Wang, X., Mikhailik, A., Yu, L., . . . & Bennett, D. A. (2017). Differential transcriptome

- expression in human nucleus accumbens as a function of loneliness. *Molecular Psychiatry*, 22, 1069–1078.
- Canli, T., Yu, L., Yu, X., Zhao, H., Fleischman, D., et al. (2018). Loneliness 5 years ante-mortem is associated with disease-related differential gene expression in postmortem dorsolateral prefrontal cortex. *Translational Psychiatry*, 8. <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41398-017-0086-2>.
- Choi, H., Irwin, M. R., & Cho, H. J. (2015). Impact of social isolation on behavioral health in elderly: Systematic review. *World Journal of Psychiatry*, 5, 432–438.
- Cole, S. W. (2008). Social regulation of leukocyte homeostasis: The role of glucocorticoid sensitivity. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 22, 1049–1055.
- Courtin, E., & Knapp, M. (2017). Social isolation, loneliness and health in old age: A scoping review. *Health and Social Care in the Community*, 25, 799–812.
- Elovainio, M., Hakulinen, C., Pulkki-Råback, L., Virtanen, M., Josefsson, K. I., Jokela, M., Vahtera, J., & Kivimäki, J. (2017). Contribution of risk factors to excess mortality in isolated and lonely individuals: An analysis of data from the UK Biobank cohort study. *The Lancet Public Health*, 2, e260–e266.
- Giacco, D., Palumbo, C., Strappelli, N., Catapano, F., & Priebe, S. (2016). Social contacts and loneliness in people with psychotic and mood disorders. *Comprehensive Psychiatry*, 66, 59–66.
- Hakulinen, C., Pulkki-Råback, L., Virtanen, M., Jokela, M., & Kivimäki, M. (2018). Social isolation and loneliness as risk factors for myocardial infarction, stroke and mortality: UK Biobank cohort study of 479 054 men and women. *Heart*. <https://doi.org/10.1136/heartjnl-2017-312663>. Heart Online First.
- Hawkey, L. C., & Cacioppo, J. T. (2010). Loneliness matters: A theoretical and empirical review of consequences and mechanisms. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 40, 218–227.
- Hawkey, L. C., & Capitanio, J. P. (2015). Perceived social isolation, evolutionary fitness and health outcomes: A lifespan approach. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B*, 370, 20140114.
- Holt-Lunstad, J., Smith, T. B., Baker, M., Harris, T., & Stephenson, D. (2015). Loneliness and social isolation as risk factors for mortality: A meta-analytic review. *Perspectives on Psychological Science*, 10, 227–237.
- Holwerda, T. J., Beekman, A. T. F., Deeg, D. J. H., Stek, M. L., van Tilburg, T. G., Visser, P. J., et al. (2012). Increased risk of mortality associated with social isolation in older men: Only when feeling lonely? Results from the Amsterdam Study of the Elderly (AMSTEL). *Psychological Medicine*, 42(04), 843–853.
- Kuiper, J. S., & Smidt, N. (2015). Social relationships and risk of dementia: A systematic review and meta-analysis of longitudinal cohort studies. *Ageing Research Reviews*, 22, 39–57.
- Masi, C. M., Chen, H.-Y., Hawkey, L. C., & Cacioppo, J. T. (2010). A meta-analysis of interventions to reduce loneliness. *Personality and Social Psychology Review*, 15, 219–266.
- Matthews, T., Danese, A., Gregory, A. M., Caspi, A., Moffitt, T. E., & Arseneault, L. (2017). Sleeping with one eye open: Loneliness and sleep quality in young adults. *Psychological Medicine*, 47, 2177–2186.
- Pels, F., & Kleinert, J. (2016). Loneliness and physical activity: A systematic review. *International Review of Sport and Exercise Psychology*, 9, 231–260.
- Petitte, T., Mallow, J., Barnes, E., Petrone, A., Barr, T., & Theeke, L. (2015). A systematic review of loneliness and common chronic physical conditions in adults. *Open Psychology Journal*, 8, 113–132.
- Rafnsson, S. B., Orrell, M., D'Orsi, E., Hogervorst, E., & Steptoe, A. (2017). Loneliness, social integration, and incident dementia over 6 years: Prospective findings from the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing. *Journals of Gerontology: Social Sciences*. <https://doi.org/10.1093/geronb/gbx087>
- Richard, A., Rohrmann, S., Vandelure, C. L., Schmid, M., Barth, J., & Eichholzer, M. (2017). Loneliness is adversely associated with physical and mental health and lifestyle factors: Results from a Swiss national survey. *PLoS One*, 12, e0181442.
- Rico-Uribe, L., Caballero, F. F., Martín-Maria, N., Cabello, M., Ayuso-Mateos, J. L., & Miret, M. (2018). Association of loneliness with all-cause mortality: A meta-analysis. *PLoS One*, 13(1), e0190033. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0190033>.
- Schaakxs, R., Comijs, H. C., Van der Mast, R. C., Schoevers, R. A., Beekman, A. T. R., & Penninx, B. W. J. H. (2017). Risk factors for depression: Differential across age? *The American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry*, 25, 966–977.
- Schutter, N., Holwerda, T. J., Stek, J. L., Dekker, J. J. M., Rhebergen, D., & Comijs, H. C. (2017). Loneliness in older adults is associated with diminished cortisol output. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 95, 19–25.
- Steptoe, A., Shankar, A., Demakakos, P., & Wardle, J. (2013). Social isolation, loneliness, and all-cause mortality in older men and women. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 110(15), 5797–5801.
- Valtorta, N. K., Kanaan, M., Gilbody, S., & Hanratty, B. (2018). Loneliness, social isolation and risk of cardiovascular disease in the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing. *European Journal of Preventive Cardiology*, 25, 1387. <https://doi.org/10.1177/2047487318792696>. Epub ahead of print.
- Yu, B., Steptoe, A., Niu, K., Ku, P. W., & Chen, L. J. (2018). Prospective associations of social isolation and loneliness with poor sleep quality in older adults. *Quality of Life Research*, 27, 683–691.
- Zhong, B.-L., Chen, S.-L., Tu, X., & Conwell, Y. (2016). Loneliness and cognitive function in older adults: Findings from the Chinese Longitudinal Healthy Longevity Survey. *Journals of Gerontology: Psychological Sciences and Social Sciences*, 72, 120–128. <https://doi.org/10.1093/geronb/gbw037>.

Longevity

Denis Gerstorf¹ and Christiane A. Hoppmann²

¹Institute of Psychology, Humboldt University, Berlin, Germany

²Department of Psychology, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada

Synonyms

Life expectancy

Definition

The population-level concept of life expectancy refers to the average number of years of life remaining at a given age under the assumption that everyone will experience (for the rest of their lives) the same risk of death as evinced by current life tables. At the individual level, there is tremendous heterogeneity in the length of individual life spans within any society.

Description

The last century has witnessed unprecedented increases in longevity. This chapter provides an overview of population-level trends of longevity and describes important individual-level factors that contribute to between-person differences in longevity. In a first step, the terminology is clarified and population trends regarding past, present, and future developments in life expectancy are considered. In a second step, the chapter illustrates the importance of taking into account psychosocial predictors of between-person differences in longevity and discusses how and why sociodemographic characteristics, levels of functioning, as well as trajectories of change in behavioral and experiential characteristics are uniquely associated with mortality risks. The chapter concludes by pointing to key societal challenges for the future.

Population Trends in Longevity

The oldest reliably documented human being was a French woman by the name of Jeanne Calment who died in 1997 at the age of 122 years. This historically unparalleled life span demonstrates that, under optimal circumstances, humans can live up to 125 years. Such an age, however, is only reached by very few exceptional cases. A more realistic estimate of how long people can expect to live is provided by the population concept of life expectancy. Life expectancy at birth, for example, is the average number of years of life remaining for newborns under the assumption that everyone will experience (for the rest of their lives) the same risk of death as evinced by current life tables (Olshansky et al. 2002). Over the past century, the world has witnessed a remarkable rise in life expectancy. For example, the average US American could expect to live for 49 years in 1900. In 2000, this number was 77 years, an increase of 64%. Another impressive illustration is that over the past 170 years, increases in life expectancy, in nations with the highest life expectancies, progressed at a rate of about 2.5 years per decade or 6 h per day (Vaupel 2010). This remarkable increase in life expectancy was primarily due to a reduction in infant mortality (in the US, approximately 10% of infants born alive died before 1 year of age in 1900 vs. less than 1% in 2000). This trend originated in substantial advances in public health, hygiene, and nutrition (e.g., sewage, refuse disposal, safe drinking water) as well as medical care and technology. For example, key medical milestones in the early twentieth century were the discovery of antibiotics in 1928 and penicillin entering mass production in the 1940s, which substantially reduced mortality due to bacterial infections, diarrhea, and pneumonia.

Currently, life expectancy at birth is over 80 years in many industrialized nations such as Japan, Australia, or Canada (Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, OECD Factbook, 2010). Whereas rising life expectancy was historically driven by reductions in infant mortality, the fastest growing segment of the population today are the oldest old. For

example, the number of individuals aged 85+ in the US has increased by 300% between 1960 and 2000, and the number of individuals aged 100+ is expected to grow from 37,000 in 1990 to 850,000 in 2050 (U.S. Bureau of the Census 2004). Notwithstanding such general increases, there are tremendous geographical disparities in life expectancies. For example, the US only ranks 49 worldwide with a current life expectancy of 78 years (Central Intelligence Agency, CIA World Factbook, 2011), probably due to limitations in health-care coverage, unhealthy lifestyles (e.g., obesity), and public health problems (e.g., sanitation, pollution). In addition, some nations are currently experiencing dreadfully low or even declining life expectancies. According to the World Health Organization, for example, life expectancy in several African regions such as Angola is below the age 45 because of the AIDS pandemic. Similarly dramatic, Russia experienced a drop in average life expectancy by 6% in the 1990s that is only slowly coming back up. Alcohol abuse (as proxy for self-destructive behaviors and external causes of death due to homicide, suicide, and accidents) and stress (related to economic uncertainty and a poor outlook for the future) each accounted for about 25% of the documented increase in mortality rates (Brainerd and Cutler 2005).

For the future of life expectancy, some demographers expect that every other girl born today in the developed world can expect to live up to the age 100 years (Vaupel 2010). Such an optimistic prospect, however, rests heavily upon the assumption that progress in reducing mortality rates continues at the same pace as over the past two centuries. This assumption is not shared by other more conservative demographers (Olshansky et al. 2005) who instead predict that increases in life expectancy may slow down (e.g., because of little room for further reducing infant mortality) or even come to an end (e.g., due to unhealthy lifestyles resulting in sharp increases in obesity-related illnesses). The verdict for which of these estimates is going to be correct is out, but the aging population will put considerable strain on the health-care, welfare, and pensions systems.

Individual Differences in Survival

Besides such demographic trends, there is tremendous heterogeneity in the length of individual life spans within any society. Some individuals die relatively young (e.g., in their 40s or 50s), whereas others reach very advanced ages (e.g., age 90). This observation raises the pivotal question of key individual-level factors that are associated with heterogeneity in length of life. One such factor is sociodemographic characteristics. More specifically, individuals with low education and low income who belong to an ethnic minority have a lower life expectancy than highly educated, affluent Caucasians (Kaplan et al. 1996). Another example is gender, with a considerable female survival advantage (e.g., up to six female centenarians per one male centenarian; Vaupel 2010). This pervasive gender differential in life expectancy is thought to reflect a combination of genetic (e.g., with the second X chromosome, women have genetic information stored in duplicate, thereby reducing the risk for genetic defects), physiological (e.g., sturdier body makeup to sustain childbirth), and behavioral factors (e.g., better health behaviors; Owens 2002).

In recent years, behavioral and experiential factors have also been identified as key predictors of heterogeneity in mortality hazards. Among the most obvious candidates are health behaviors and lifestyle factors, including lack of regular physical activity, unhealthy diets, stress, smoking, and heavy drinking. It has further been documented that impaired cognitive functioning (Deary et al. 2011), personality characteristics such as neuroticism (Wilson et al. 2005), lack of social integration (Seeman 2001), diminished well-being (Danner et al. 2001), and perceptions of poor health (Idler and Benyamini 1997) each uniquely predict mortality over and above established mortality correlates. What are the pathways and underlying mechanisms that link psychosocial factors with differences in mortality? It is an open conceptual question if psychosocial factors constitute mortality risks on their own or if they reflect the effects of pathologic processes. For example, poor well-being may have detrimental physiological effects on cardiovascular and immune functioning (Pressman and Cohen

2005), resulting in further loss of functioning and ultimately death. Alternatively, well-being may reflect quite accurate perceptions of levels and particularly changes in functioning across a variety of other domains that are more directly linked to mortality such as physical health (Maier and Smith 1999). Examining such questions will shed light on crucial, potentially modifiable risk factors.

Importantly, evidence is accumulating that the direction and size of changes in psychosocial characteristics evince unique and additional associations to mortality that go beyond those reported for levels of functioning. The probably most prominent example of such processes is the terminal decline concept. The general notion is that at some point shortly before death, individual functioning declines rapidly. Empirical evidence for precipitous mortality-related deteriorations has accumulated in the cognitive (Bäckman and MacDonald 2006), personality (Mroczek and Spiro 2007), and well-being domains (Gerstorf et al. 2010). It is possible that such declines represent a pervasive phenomenon and are indicative of general processes of brain atrophy and system breakdown. As more and more individuals live longer and longer lives, further understanding how terminal decline progresses and what factors may mitigate these processes will become one of the top priorities on the research agenda of the social and behavioral sciences.

Synopsis

The chapter concludes by raising three major questions for scientific inquiry and social policy regarding longevity-related insights at the population and individual level. First, the prospect of living a longer life will profoundly shape the way individuals allocate their time and resources during different life phases. More flexible and individualized ways of living are required to integrate different spheres of life, including education, employment, child rearing, retirement, and leisure (Carstensen 2009). The second question revolves around whether the years gained are also characterized by the quality of life. Here,

issues of vitality and time free of chronic and debilitating diseases in the face of increasing life expectancy come into focus (Hoppmann and Gerstorf, this volume, “► Vitality”). A third issue concerns the modifiability of psychosocial risk factors and proximal steps to translate research findings into prevention and intervention strategies. The overarching aim is to strengthen individual resources, capabilities, and behaviors that are linked to living longer, thereby addressing the needs of a growing population of elderly, worldwide.

Cross-References

► Vitality

References and Readings

- Bäckman, L., & MacDonald, S. W. S. (2006). Death and cognition: Synthesis and outlook. *European Psychologist*, 11, 224–235.
- Brainerd, E., & Cutler, D. M. (2005). Autopsy on an empire: Understanding mortality in Russia and the former Soviet Union. *Journal of Economic Perspectives*, 19, 107–130.
- Carstensen, L. L. (2009). *A long bright future*. New York: Crown.
- CIAworld factbook. <https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/index.html>.
- Danner, D. D., Snowdon, D. A., & Friesen, W. V. (2001). Positive emotions in early life and longevity: Findings from the Nun Study. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 80, 804–813.
- Deary, I. J., Weiss, A., & Batty, G. D. (2011). Intelligence and personality as predictors of illness and death: How researchers in differential psychology and chronic disease epidemiology are collaborating to understand and address health inequalities. *Psychological Science in the Public Interest*, 11, 53–79.
- Gerstorf, D., Ram, N., Mayraz, G., Hidajat, M., Lindenberger, U., Wagner, G. G., et al. (2010). Late-life decline in well-being across adulthood in Germany, the United Kingdom, and the United States: Something is seriously wrong at the end of life. *Psychology and Aging*, 25, 477–485.
- Idler, E. L., & Benyamini, Y. (1997). Self-rated health and mortality: A review of twenty-seven community studies. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 38, 21–37.

- Kaplan, G. A., Pamuk, E. R., Lynch, J. W., Cohen, R. D., & Balfour, J. L. (1996). Inequality in income and mortality in the United States: Analysis of mortality and potential pathways. *British Medical Journal*, 312, 999–1003.
- Maier, H., & Smith, J. (1999). Psychological predictors of mortality in old age. *Journals of Gerontology: Series B Psychological Sciences*, 54B, P44–P54.
- Mroczek, D. K., & Spiro, A. (2007). Personality change influences mortality in older men. *Psychological Science*, 18, 371–376.
- OECD. (2010). *Factbook 2010: Economic, environmental and social statistics*. ISBN 92–64–08356-1 – © OECD 2010.
- Olshansky, J. S., Hayflick, L., & Carnes, B. A. (2002). Position statement on human aging. *Journal of Gerontology: Biological Sciences*, 57A, B292–B297.
- Olshansky, J. S., Passaro, D. J., Hershow, R. C., Layden, J., Carnes, B. A., Brady, J., et al. (2005). A potential decline in life expectancy in the United States in the 21st century. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 352, 1138–1145.
- Owens, I. P. F. (2002). Sex differences in mortality rate. *Science*, 297, 2008–2009.
- Pressman, S. D., & Cohen, S. (2005). Does positive affect influence health? *Psychological Bulletin*, 131, 925–971.
- Seeman, T. (2001). How do others get under our skin? Social relationships and health. In C. D. Ryff & B. H. Singer (Eds.), *Emotion, social relationships, and health* (pp. 189–210). New York: Oxford University Press.
- U.S. Bureau of the Census. (2004). *U.S. interim projections by age, sex, race, and Hispanic origin*. Washington, DC: Author.
- Vaupel, J. W. (2010). Biodemography of human ageing. *Nature*, 464, 536–542.
- Wilson, R. S., Krueger, K. R., Gu, L., Bienias, J. L., Mendes de Leon, C. F., & Evans, D. A. (2005). Neuroticism, extraversion, and mortality in a defined population of older persons. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 67, 841–845.
- World Health Organization. <http://www.who.int/countries/en/>.

Longitudinal Study

- [Bogalusa Heart Study](#)
- [Follow-Up Study](#)

Long-Term Care

- [Institutional Care](#)

Loss

- [Grieving](#)

Low Birth Weight

- [Birth Weight](#)

Low Blood Glucose

- [Hypoglycemia](#)

Low Glycemic Index

Sheah Rarback
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Glycemic index](#)

Definition

The glycemic index (GI) measures how much a 50-g portion of carbohydrate raises a person's blood-sugar level when compared to glucose with a GI of 100. Carbohydrates that are rapidly broken down during digestion and release glucose rapidly into the blood stream have a high GI. Carbohydrates that break down and release glucose more slowly have a low GI. A diet of low GI foods can help control diabetes, improve the body's sensitivity to insulin, assist with weight loss by minimizing hunger, and lower blood lipid levels. Whole fruits, vegetables, beans, and foods without added sugar and refined grains usually have a lower glycemic index.

Dr. David Jenkins and Dr. Thomas Wolever of the University of Toronto developed the GI in 1981. They classified foods according to the following guide:

- Low GI ranging 55 and below
- Medium GI ranging between 56 and 69
- High GI ranging 70 and above

Glycemic index is one aspect of looking at a food. Since foods are usually not eaten in isolation, the other foods eaten at a meal will influence the glycemic load of a meal.

Cross-References

- [Glycemia](#)
- [Hyperglycemia](#)
- [Hypoglycemia](#)
- [Nutrition](#)

References and Readings

<http://www.glycemicindex.com>

- Moore, C. S., Lindroos, A. K., Kreutzer, M., Larsen, T. M., Astrup, A., van Baak, M. A., et al. (2010). Dietary strategy to manipulate ad libitum macronutrient intake, and glycaemic index, across eight European countries in the Diogenes study. *Obesity Reviews*, 11(1), 67–75.
- Solomon, T. P., Haus, J. M., Kelly, K. R., Cook, M. D., Filion, J., Rocco, M., et al. (2010). A low glycemic index diet combined with exercise reduces insulin resistance, postprandial hyperinsulinemia, and glucose dependent insulinotropic responses in obese humans. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 92(6), 1359–1368.

Low Self-Efficacy

- [External Locus of Control](#)

Lumbago

- [Back Pain](#)

Lung Cancer and Smoking

- [Cancer and Smoking](#)

Lung Function

Akihisa Mitani

Department of Respiratory Medicine, The University of Tokyo Hospital, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

[Pulmonary function](#)

Definition

Lung function is measured by various tests such as pulmonary function test (PFT) and arterial blood gases (ABG) analysis. These tests can evaluate symptoms and signs of lung disease and may help confirm lung diseases, including asthma and chronic obstructive lung disease (COPD).

Description

Lung function is measured by various tests, including the pulmonary function test (PFT), arterial blood gases (ABG) analysis, and oxygen desaturation during exercise. These tests can evaluate symptoms and signs of lung disease, reveal the cause of breath shortness, and may help confirm lung diseases, such as asthma and chronic obstructive lung disease (COPD). They are also useful for monitoring the progression of lung disease or evaluating the risk of surgery in the pre-operative patients (ATS Committee on Proficiency Standards for Clinical Pulmonary Function Laboratories 2002; American Thoracic Society 1995; Crapo 1994; Hughes and Pride 1999; Hyatt et al. 1997).

Pulmonary function tests include spirometry and the quantitation of lung volume and diffusing

capacity. Spirometry is in widespread use, because it takes 10–15 min without any risk. It measures mainly forced expiratory volume in 1 s (FEV1.0) and forced vital capacity (FVC), which classify pulmonary disorder into a restrictive disorder and an obstructive one (American Thoracic Society 1995). The patients with a restrictive disorder have reduced FVC, which means that the expansion of the lung is restricted and the effort of breathing is increased. This type of disorder is caused not only by diseases of the lung parenchyma (such as lung fibrosis) but also pleural or extrapulmonary diseases (such as pleural effusion, pneumonectomy, vertebral deformity, and myasthenia gravis). On the other hand, obstructive lung disorder, in which airway obstruction limits airflow, is defined by reduced FEV1.0/FVC. Obstructive disorder is the first attribute of asthma and COPD, and spirometry is essential to diagnose these diseases (especially in the case of COPD). The crucial difference between them is the reversibility of the obstructive disorder. Reduced FEV1.0/FEV of the patient with asthma could recover 10 min after administration of a short-acting bronchodilator, unlike in the case of COPD.

Lung volume measurement is important, when FVC is decreased, and useful for interpreting the result of diffusing capacity test. The diffusing capacity is a capacity of lung to transfer gas across alveoli. Carbon monoxide is widely used, and the amount of carbon monoxide disappeared from the lung is measured. The diffusing capacity for carbon monoxide (DLCO) is useful in both restrictive and obstructive disorders. In the patients with pulmonary fibrosis, DLCO is reduced because of increased alveolar membrane thickness. These two tests are so useful, but tend to be performed in specialized centers.

Arterial blood gas (ABG) analysis is used to measure the partial pressures of oxygen (PaO_2) and carbon dioxide (PaCO_2) and the pH of an arterial sample. The decreased level of PaO_2 (hypoxia) means insufficient oxygen supply to the body, principally indicating the existence of respiratory dysfunction. The high level of PaCO_2 (hypercapnia) may result from conditions that impair pulmonary ventilation, not infrequently occurring in the patients with severe COPD.

Oxygen desaturation during exercise is also indicative especially in patients with chronic lung disease, such as COPD and pulmonary fibrosis. It can assess lung function as part of physical function. The 6-min walk test is in widespread use. A decrease in SpO_2 of more than 4% reflects significant desaturation.

Cross-References

- [Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease](#)
- [Pulmonary Function](#)

References and Further Reading

- American Thoracic Society. (1995). Standardization of spirometry - 1994 update. *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*, 152, 1107.
- ATS Committee on Proficiency Standards for Clinical Pulmonary Function Laboratories. (2002). ATS statement: Guidelines for the six-minute walk test. *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*, 166, 111.
- Crapo, R. O. (1994). Pulmonary-function testing. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 331, 25.
- Hughes, J. M. B., & Pride, N. B. (1999). *Lung function tests: Physiological principles and clinical applications*. London: WB Saunders.
- Hyatt, R. E., Scanlon, P. D., & Nakamura, M. (1997). *Interpretation of pulmonary function tests. A practical guide*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Lupus: Psychosocial Impact

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Definition

Lupus is a brief name of the formal medical term systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE). This is an autoimmune disease, affecting different organs in the body including the heart, lungs, skin, joints, and nervous system. It can be life threatening, though the advancement in medical treatment

has made this outcome rare. Sadly, SLE mimics other illnesses in that its symptoms overlap with many other diseases; hence, patients may be misdiagnosed for long periods of time. It is prevalent mainly in women, between 15 and 35 years old. In SLE, the immune system produces antibodies against proteins in cell nuclei. Furthermore, various immune cells show excessive apoptosis, whose level correlates with disease activity. About 30% have skin symptoms (e.g., red rashes); many patients have joint pain, particularly in the hands and wrist, muscle pain, and anemia. Finally, cardiac inflammation and atherosclerosis are common. Some of the symptoms such as weight gain and retinal damage also result from treatment side effects.

Among the risk factors of SLE are environmental exposure to cigarette smoke, Epstein-Barr virus, and silica, which may interact with genetic predisposition (Simard and Costenbader 2007). Common psychosocial sequels of SLE include worry about one's appearance due to skin problems on the face, uncertainty about the future, anxiety, and depression (Beckerman et al. 2011). Additional psychosocial consequences of SLE also include various phobias including agoraphobia and social phobia, possibly due to facial disfigurement as a result of the disease (Lindal et al. 1995). One unique prospective study found that daily hassles concerning interpersonal issues and mood changes, assessed over a period of time electronically, predicted future flares in SLE patients (Pawlak et al. 2003). One additional factor related to this condition is low vagal nerve activity, indexed by heart rate variability (HRV; Yorgun et al. 2012). Given that patients can increase their vagal activity via HRV biofeedback, this opens new avenues for behavior medicine intervention researching SLE. Thus, SLE is a complex poorly understood disease, which involves multiple systems and is possibly affected by and affects patients' psychosocial well-being. The role of behavior medicine in SLE could be essential since psychosocial factors predict its course possibly via neuroimmune pathways and as they are outcomes of this disease as well.

References and Further Readings

- Beckerman, N. L., Auerbach, C., & Blanco, I. (2011). Psychosocial dimensions of SLE: Implications for the health care team. *Journal of Multidisciplinary Healthcare*, 4, 63–72.
- Lindal, E., Thorlacius, S., Steinsson, K., & Stefánsson, J. G. (1995). Psychiatric disorders among subjects with systemic lupus erythematosus in an unselected population. *Scandinavian Journal of Rheumatology*, 24, 346–351.
- Pawlak, C. R., Witte, T., Heiken, H., Hundt, M., Schubert, J., Wiese, B., et al. (2003). Flares in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus are associated with daily psychological stress. *Psychotherapy and Psychosomatics*, 72, 159–165.
- Simard, J. F., & Costenbader, K. H. (2007). What can epidemiology tell us about systemic lupus erythematosus? *International Journal of Clinical Practice*, 61, 1170–1180.
- Yorgun, H., Canpolat, U., Aytemir, K., Ateş, A. H., Kaya, E. B., Akdoğan, A., Sunman, H., Gökçay Canpolat, A., Çalgüneri, M., Kabakçi, G., Tokgözoğlu, L., & Oto, A. (2012). Evaluation of cardiac autonomic functions in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus. *Lupus*, 21, 373–379.

Luvox®

► [Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors \(SSRIs\)](#)

Lymphedema

Jessica Alcorso

Macquarie University, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Synonyms

[Cancer treatment-swelling](#); [Edema](#)

Definition

Lymphedema is a chronic, progressive condition characterized by swelling that occurs when protein-rich fluid accumulates in the affected

area of the body (Ridner 2013). There are two types of lymphedema: Primary lymphedema is caused by a developmental abnormality of the lymphatic system that affects approximately 1.15 in 100,000 individuals under the age of 20 (Smeltzer et al. 1985), whereas the more frequently occurring secondary lymphedema is caused by external damage to the lymphatic system. Secondary lymphedema is a common consequence of cancer treatment that involves surgical removal of lymph nodes or damage to the lymphatic system resulting from radiation therapy and possibly, chemotherapy (Ridner 2013). The incidence of secondary lymphedema following cancer treatment ranges from 6% to 75% depending on the type of cancer and treatment method (Ridner 2013).

Description

Treatment

Although a cure for lymphedema has not yet been developed, there are treatment options and self-management strategies that can help slow or prevent the progression of the condition. The gold standard treatment consists of complex decongestive therapy (CDT) that entails two phases: (1) treatment (i.e., education, manual lymphatic drainage, compression bandaging, skin care, and therapeutic exercise) and (2) maintenance (i.e., self-management). The self-management of lymphedema includes consistently following a regimen of practices that helps maintain treatment outcomes over the long term, including compression garments, self-lymphatic drainage massage, therapeutic exercises, and skin and nail care (Ridner et al. 2011).

Despite the importance of self-management, previous research suggests that overall levels of adherence are suboptimal in both individuals with primary (non-cancer treatment related) (i.e., 56%; Ridner et al. 2008) and secondary (cancer-treatment related) lymphedema (i.e., 19.5%; Alcorso et al. 2016). Several factors have been identified that may influence adherence to self-management, including cognitive factors (e.g., knowledge, control beliefs, perceived barriers),

affective factors (e.g., psychological distress), and medical factors (e.g., symptoms, medical history).

Cognitive factors, specifically knowledge, beliefs about the controllability of lymphedema, and perceived barriers to self-management, have been associated with adherence to lymphedema self-management practices. Greater knowledge about lymphedema and self-management is associated with greater levels of adherence (Alcorso et al. 2016), and individuals living with lymphedema report a lack of knowledge as negatively impacting their ability to self-manage their condition (Ridner et al. 2011). Therefore, patient education is a critical component of successful self-management. In addition to knowledge, greater beliefs in the personal controllability of lymphedema are associated with higher levels of adherence (Alcorso et al. 2016). Individuals living with lymphedema also report a number of perceived barriers to adherence to self-management, including the financial cost of regular therapy and compression garments (Ridner et al. 2011), and reduced physical functioning, pain, and discomfort that may hamper an individual's ability to carry out strategies such as self-massage (Ridner et al. 2011). For example, in one study (Ridner et al. 2011), symptoms of lymphedema as a whole were positively associated with adherence, but skin problems were associated with lower adherence to compression garment use. It may be important to consider lymphedema symptoms individually in terms of their relationship to adherence. Indeed, symptoms such as pain (Newman et al. 1996) and reduced mobility (James 2011) were reported by individuals living with lymphedema as barriers to adherence. Other symptoms, such as swelling, may instead motivate individuals to adhere to their self-management regimen.

Two studies have identified that psychological distress is related to adherence to self-management. The first, a case study, describes a woman with breast cancer treatment-related lymphedema that experienced pain and psychological distress (Newman et al. 1996). Treating the patient's pain coincided with an improvement in mood as well as improved adherence. In another study, distress was associated with lower levels of

adherence (Alcorso et al. 2016). Given the link between the physical symptoms of lymphedema and psychological distress (Chachaj et al. 2010), there is a very real likelihood of a vicious cycle developing whereby lymphedema symptoms lead to distress, which in turn leads to lower adherence, which then exacerbates symptoms.

Finally, an individual's medical history may also be related to adherence. One study found that women diagnosed with breast cancer treatment-related lymphedema who also underwent hormone replacement therapy for breast cancer were more adherent than women who had not undergone hormone replacement therapy (Alcorso et al. 2016). Time since diagnosis was also associated with adherence, with decreased adherence levels as the length of time since diagnosis increased (Alcorso et al. 2016).

Psychosocial Impact

In addition to the burden of the physiological symptoms of lymphedema and its management, there are several documented negative psychosocial impacts of the condition. From a social perspective, lymphedema can lead to social isolation (e.g., to avoid scrutiny from others) and diminished sexuality and sexual functioning, as well as feelings of marginalization in the health system (Fu et al. 2013). Moreover, lymphedema is associated with difficulty obtaining and retaining employment compounded with a financial burden of ongoing self-management and treatment costs (Fu et al. 2013).

From a psychological perspective, previous research has identified that lymphedema can lead to negative changes in self-identity, including body image disturbance (Fu et al. 2013). Furthermore, individuals living with lymphedema report that the visible signs of lymphedema (e.g., swelling) led employers to perceive them as persons with a disability, and this results in feelings of vulnerability and separation from healthy employees (Fu and Rosedale 2009). The challenges of living with lymphedema can elicit negative affect (i.e., unpleasant emotions such as fear, worry, anger, and sadness) and psychological distress (i.e., depression, anxiety, and stress; Fu et al. 2013). Finally, among breast cancer survivors,

women affected by lymphedema experience greater psychological distress in comparison to unaffected women (Chachaj et al. 2010). Considering these numerous negative psychosocial impacts of lymphedema, it is not surprising that individuals affected by lymphedema report reduced quality of life (Chachaj et al. 2010).

Previous research has identified both medical and psychosocial factors associated with distress in individuals living with lymphedema. The total number of lymphedema symptoms women experience seems to be significantly associated with distress (Alcorso and Sherman 2015), as well as negative perceptions of these symptoms (Tsuchiya 2014). More specifically, pain is most commonly found to be associated with increased psychological distress and poorer quality of life (Chachaj et al. 2010; Newman et al. 1996). Similarly, the physical limitations caused by lymphedema also appear to be directly associated with distress (Chachaj et al. 2010; Ridner et al. 2012). In addition to symptoms, other medical factors found to be associated with distress include having the dominant arm affected (Passik et al. 1995), having undergone chemotherapy (Chachaj et al. 2010), and having experienced dermatolymphangioadenitis (i.e., an acute inflammation of the skin, lymphatic vessels, and nodes in the area of the body affected by lymphedema; Chachaj et al. 2010).

Other factors associated with distress in individuals living with lymphedema include lack of social support, an avoidant coping style (Passik et al. 1995), and illness beliefs (i.e., beliefs about the consequences, perceived effectiveness of treatment, and controllability of lymphedema; Alcorso and Sherman 2015). Difficulties with social relationships in general have been reported as a source of distress (Ridner et al. 2012). The difficulties that arise with intimate and romantic relationships may be in part due to body image disturbance, changes to self-identity, and negative impact on sexuality that have also been reported as sources of distress (Fu et al. 2013).

Both patient and health professional knowledge about lymphedema are associated with patient distress. Indeed, information and knowledge were frequently reported in interviews with

affected individuals who indicated that limited knowledge on behalf of both themselves and health professionals contributed to distress (Fu and Rosedale 2009). Similarly, a lack of support from health professionals is a source of distress for individuals living with lymphedema (Fu et al. 2013). Thus, previous research supports that information provision and increasing patient knowledge are important for lowering distress.

Health professionals treating individuals with lymphedema should be aware of the key factors that may affect adherence to lymphedema self-management recommendations, including cognitive factors, psychological distress, and medical history. Further empirical support is needed before this knowledge can then be used to develop tailored intervention strategies to support individuals at risk of developing lymphedema and improve level of adherence and patient outcomes. In addition, it is important for health professionals to consider the factors associated with psychological distress among individuals living with lymphedema, including body image disturbance, severe symptoms (especially pain), lack of social support, an avoidant coping style, illness beliefs, and a lack of knowledge about lymphedema. These findings have the potential to help health professionals identify which patients may be at risk for experiencing psychological distress to intervene early and provide additional support.

Cross-References

- Adherence
- Body Image
- Breast Cancer
- Cancer Survivorship
- Cancer Treatment and Management
- Cancer: Psychosocial Treatment

References and Further Reading

- Alcorso, J., & Sherman, K. A. (2015). Factors associated with psychological distress in women with breast cancer-related lymphoedema. *Psycho-Oncology*, 25, 865–872. <https://doi.org/10.1002/pon.4021>.
- Alcorso, J., Sherman, K. A., Koelmeyer, L., Mackie, H., & Boyages, J. (2016). Psychosocial factors associated with adherence for self-management behaviors in women with breast cancer-related lymphedema. *Supportive Care in Cancer*, 24(1), 139–146. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00520-015-2766-x>.
- Chachaj, A., Małyszczak, K., Pyszel, K., Lukas, J., Tarkowski, R., Pudełko, M., . . . , & Szuba, A. (2010). Physical and psychological impairments of women with upper limb lymphedema following breast cancer treatment. *Psycho-Oncology*, 19(3), 299–305. <https://doi.org/10.1002/pon.1573>.
- Fu, M. R., & Rosedale, M. (2009). Breast cancer survivors' experiences of lymphedema-related symptoms. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, 38(6), 849–859. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpainsymman.2009.04.030>.
- Fu, M. R., Ridner, S. H., Hu, S. H., Stewart, B. R., Cormier, J. N., & Armer, J. M. (2013). Psychosocial impact of lymphedema: A systematic review of the literature from 2004–2011. *Psycho-Oncology*, 22(7), 1466–1484. <https://doi.org/10.1002/pon.3201>.
- James, S. (2011). What are the perceived barriers that prevent patients with lymphoedema from continuing optimal skin care? Wound Practice & Research. *Journal of the Australian Wound Management Association*, 19(3), 152–154, 156–158.
- Newman, M. L., Brennan, M., & Passik, S. (1996). Lymphedema complicated by pain and psychological distress: A case with complex treatment needs. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, 12(6), 376–379. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0885-3924\(96\)00187-X](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0885-3924(96)00187-X).
- Passik, S. D., Newman, M. L., Brennan, M., & Tunkel, R. (1995). Predictors of psychological distress, sexual dysfunction and physical functioning among women with upper extremity lymphedema related to breast cancer. *Psycho-Oncology*, 4, 255–263.
- Ridner, S. H. (2013). Pathophysiology of lymphedema. *Seminars in Oncology Nursing*, 29(1), 4–11. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.soncn.2012.11.002>.
- Ridner, S. H., McMahon, E., Dietrich, M. S., & Hoy, S. (2008). Home-based lymphedema treatment in patients with cancer-related lymphedema or noncancer-related lymphedema. *Oncology Nursing Forum*, 35(4), 671–680. <https://doi.org/10.1188/08.ONF.671-680>.
- Ridner, S. H., Dietrich, M. S., & Kidd, N. (2011). Breast cancer treatment-related lymphedema self-care: Education, practices, symptoms, and quality of life. *Supportive Care in Cancer*, 19(5), 631–637. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00520-010-0870-5>.
- Ridner, S. H., Bonner, C. M., Deng, J., & Sinclair, V. G. (2012). Voices from the shadows: Living with lymphedema. *Cancer Nursing*, 35(1), E18–E26. <https://doi.org/10.1097/NCC.0b013e31821404c0>.
- Smeltzer, D. M., Stickler, G. B., & Schirger, A. (1985). Primary lymphedema in children and adolescents: A follow-up study and review. *Pediatrics*, 76(2), 206–218.

Tsuchiya, M. (2014). Patient education, upper-limb symptom perception, and quality of life among Japanese breast cancer survivors. *Quality of Life Research*, 23, 2327–2332. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11136-014-0680-1>.

Lymphocyte-Activating Factor (LAF)

► Interleukins, -1 (IL-1), -6 (IL-6), -18 (IL-18)

Lymphocytopenia

Frankie F. Brown and James Edward Turner
Department for Health, University of Bath,
Bath, UK

Synonyms

Leucopenia; Leukocytopenia; Leukopenia

Definition

Lymphocytopenia is a decrease in the number of lymphocytes, usually measured in peripheral blood. In the absence of disease, this decrease in cell number is thought to be caused by a transient migration of cells out of the circulation, or adherence to the vasculature, rather than a destruction or lower production of cells.

Description

Background

Cytopenia – the suffix of the term *lymphocytopenia* – combines *cyto* (meaning cells) and *penia* (meaning lack, deficiency, or uncountable) and is used to describe a decrease in the number of cells in peripheral blood. Leukocytopenia is a decrease of all leukocytes below $4.0 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ of blood. *Lymphocytopenia* is a decrease of lymphocytes below $1.0 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ of

blood. Monocytopenia is a decrease in monocytes below $0.5 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ of blood. Granulocytopenia is primarily driven by a fall in neutrophils – referred to as neutropenia – and is a decrease in neutrophils below $1.5 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ of blood (Ing 1984; Newburger and Dale 2013; Kondo et al. 1999). All leukocytes, including lymphocyte sub-types (e.g., natural killer cells, T cells, and B cells), monocytes, and granulocyte sub-types (neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils), can decrease with some infections, malignancies, and therapies (Dotta and Badolato 2014). For example, *lymphocytopenia* is often caused by HIV infection or sometimes chemotherapy, and monocytopenia can be associated with acute myeloid leukemia. Granulocytopenia in the form of neutropenia is a common side-effect of chemotherapy, which is sometimes preceded by monocytopenia (Kondo et al. 1999). Monocytopenia and granulocytopenia – including neutropenia and a decline in eosinophils and basophils (eosinopenia and basopenia respectively) – are investigated in clinical medicine but have received little attention in behavioral science. Most literature investigates *lymphocytopenia* induced by stressors, partly because the changes in cell counts are more pronounced among lymphocytes compared to other cells.

The Effects of Physical and Psychological Stress on Lymphocytopenia

Short-term physical and psychological stress transiently increases the number of most leukocytes in peripheral blood (see definition; *lymphocytosis*). Lymphocytes and monocytes typically return to normal values within 15–20 min, but the total leukocyte count can remain elevated for several hours, driven by neutrophils. After stressors, lymphocytes can fall below baseline values for several hours, and although *lymphocytopenia* does not usually occur after acute psychological stress in humans, rodent studies show that short-term psychological stressors can elicit a pronounced *lymphocytopenia* (Dhabhar et al. 2012). Research investigating how chronic psychological stress affects *lymphocytopenia* has almost exclusively been undertaken with rodents but shows that lymphocyte trafficking from blood to the tissues, such as with the response to acute stress, is impaired

with long-term stress exposure (Dhabhar 2000). The effects of long-term stress on *lymphocytopenia* in humans are not well established, partly because usually only exercise of sufficient intensity and duration (e.g., at least 45 min and 70% of maximum capacity) stimulates this phenomenon. However, one human study has assessed the magnitude of *lymphocytopenia* induced by acute exercise, undertaken before and after 1 week of daily prolonged and intense cycling that was almost double the normal training load of participants (Witard et al. 2012). Large increases in the duration and intensity of exercise training are sometimes referred to as “over-training” – which could be considered a chronic stressor over a short period – and this manipulation dampened the *lymphocytopenia* following a standardized bout of exercise (Witard et al. 2012).

Exercise-Induced Lymphocytopenia

In the hours after *lymphocytosis* induced by intense and prolonged exercise, the fall in lymphocytes can reach levels of clinical *lymphocytopenia* ($<1.0 \times 10^9/\text{L}$). The nadir is often 1–4 h after exercise but the lymphocyte count usually returns to normal values within 24 h (McCarthy and Dale 1988). Mirroring lymphocytosis, *lymphocytopenia* appears to be driven by effector subsets of natural killer cells and T cells (Gleeson and Bishop 2005). The mechanisms responsible for *lymphocytopenia* include catecholamines, glucocorticoids, and some cytokines, which all increase in plasma during exercise (McEwen et al. 1997; Pedersen et al. 1997). Although catecholamines return to basal values shortly after exercise, cortisol can remain elevated for several hours. Catecholamines in particular modulate the expression of molecules implicated in lymphocyte trafficking such as L-selectin (CD62L) and lymphocyte function-associated antigen-1 (LFA-1; CD11a) (Shephard 2003). Infusion studies in rodents (Dhabhar et al. 1996) and humans (Fauci and Dale 1975) show that the effects of cortisol have a delay of 2–3 h and maintain *lymphocytopenia* post-exercise (Pedersen et al. 1997). Additionally, by infusing epinephrine and cortisol simultaneously, it has been shown that these two hormones exert different effects on T-cell subpopulations (Dimitrov et al. 2010).

Cortisol selectively decreased naïve T cells which highly expressed the chemokine receptor CXCR4. This molecule was also upregulated by cortisol suggesting it is a key regulator of *lymphocytopenia* for some cell sub-types at least. In contrast, cortisol did not influence effector T cells, but epinephrine infusion selectively mobilized these cells stimulating a subsequent *lymphocytopenia* driven by high cell-surface expression of β -adrenergic receptors and the chemokine receptor CX3CR1 (Dimitrov et al. 2009, 2010). Although rodent studies have identified potential sites of exercise-induced T-cell homing (see next section), the destination of mobilized and subsequently extravasating cells is dependent on the combination of cell-surface chemokine receptor expression and the interaction with their respective ligands on the vasculature. For example, naïve T cells enter lymph nodes due to cell-surface expression of CD62L and CCR7. However, during differentiation into effector cells, lymph node homing molecules are downregulated, and molecules associated with homing to peripheral tissues are upregulated (Brinkman et al. 2013). A variety of tissue-specific signals, including cell stress signals and gradients of other molecules such as sphingosine-1-phosphate (S1P), probably influence lymphocyte homing post-exercise. S1P levels are usually higher in blood and lymph nodes compared to peripheral tissues, and in combination with S1P-receptor expression regulation, this gradient influences lymphocyte trafficking. S1P binds to its receptors to prevent the egress of lymphocytes from lymphoid organs therefore influencing the frequency of lymphocytes in the circulation and other tissues (Benechet et al. 2016; Tiper et al. 2016; Baeyens et al. 2015; Drouillard et al. 2018).

Functional Relevance of Lymphocytopenia

It has been proposed that exercise-induced lymphocytosis and *lymphocytopenia* might prevent or delay immunosenescence by limiting the expansion of senescent T cells that accumulate with aging (Simpson 2011). In this hypothesis, it is suggested that senescent T cells are mobilized into blood during exercise, followed by homing to peripheral tissues, where they are exposed to pro-apoptotic stimuli, such as reactive oxygen species, resulting in cell death. In response to the

“immunological space” that has been created by “deleting” senescent T cells, new naïve T cells – which are ready to target novel infections – develop in the thymus or at extra-thymic sites. In support of this hypothesis, studies in rodents show that a small number of lymphocytes undergo apoptosis in tissues post-exercise (Krüger et al. 2009). This process occurs in parallel with an increase of hematopoietic stem cells in blood, stimulated by apoptotic cells (Mooren and Kruger 2015). These hematopoietic stem cells might traffic to the thymus, developing into naïve T cells, facilitated by skeletal muscle-derived IL-7 which increases thymic mass and promotes the emergence of recent thymic emigrants (Fry and Mackall 2005; Haugen et al. 2010).

Lymphocytes circulate between blood, lymphoid, and peripheral tissues as part of immune-surveillance, searching for cells that have become damaged or infected with viruses or bacteria and those showing signs of malignant transformation. Exercise-induced *lymphocytopenia* is thought to facilitate immune-surveillance, especially given that lymphocytes with potent effector functions, such as natural killer cells and T cells, preferentially traffic out of blood. Indeed, acute exercise in humans elicits a preferential extravasation of lymphocytes with a tissue-migrating phenotype (Simpson et al. 2006). Studies in rodents have shown that these effector cells traffic to either sites of potential antigen encounter, such as the lungs and gut, or sites where immunoregulatory processes take place, such as bone marrow (Kruger et al. 2008). The skin has also been proposed as a potential homing site to protect against potential infection following wounding (Dhabhar 2008), but in humans, it has been shown that natural killer cells and T cells mobilized by exercise do not express receptors associated with homing to the skin (Turner et al. 2016). Studies in rodents examining several cancer types have shown that exercise stimulates natural killer cells to leave the blood and home to tumors at different anatomical locations (Pedersen et al. 2016). These effects were shown to be driven by epinephrine and IL-6, promoting natural killer cell infiltration into tumors where they elicit their cytotoxic

action slowing tumor progression and lengthening survival.

Summary

Lymphocytopenia in settings of behavioral medicine is an egress of lymphocytes out of peripheral blood and can occur in humans following prolonged and intense exercise after lymphocytosis. The mechanisms responsible are glucocorticoids and catecholamines, combined with their influence on adhesion molecule regulation and interaction with tissue-specific homing signals, such as cytokines and stress signals. Exercise-induced *lymphocytopenia* is an evolutionary conserved response that might limit immunological aging and facilitate immune-surveillance.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Adrenal Glands](#)
- ▶ [Adrenergic Activation](#)
- ▶ [Aerobic Exercise](#)
- ▶ [Antigens](#)
- ▶ [Blood Pressure Reactivity or Responses](#)
- ▶ [Catecholamines](#)
- ▶ [Cortisol](#)
- ▶ [Cytokines](#)
- ▶ [Dose: Intensity, Response](#)
- ▶ [Epinephrine](#)
- ▶ [Glucocorticoids](#)
- ▶ [Hemodynamic](#)
- ▶ [Immune Function](#)
- ▶ [Immune Responses to Stress](#)
- ▶ [Immunity](#)
- ▶ [Infectious Diseases](#)
- ▶ [inflammation](#)
- ▶ [Interleukins, -1 \(IL-1\), -6 \(IL-6\), -18 \(IL-18\)](#)
- ▶ [Lymphocytosis](#)
- ▶ [Maximal Exercise Stress Test](#)
- ▶ [Mental Stress](#)
- ▶ [Neuroendocrine Activation](#)
- ▶ [Neuroimmunology](#)
- ▶ [Norepinephrine/Noradrenaline](#)
- ▶ [Parasympathetic Nervous System \(PNS\)](#)
- ▶ [Pharmacological Stress Tests](#)
- ▶ [Psychological Stress](#)
- ▶ [Psychoneuroimmunology](#)

- Steroids
- Stress
- Stress Reactivity
- Stress Responses
- Stress Test
- Stress, Emotional
- Stress, Exercise
- Sympathetic Nervous System (SNS)
- Trier Social Stress Test
- Wound Healing

References and Further Readings

- Baeyens, A., Fang, V., Chen, C., & Schwab, S. R. (2015). Exit strategies: S1P signaling and T cell migration. *Trends in Immunology*, 36(12), 778–787.
- Benechet, A. P., Menon, M., Xu, D., Samji, T., Maher, L., Murooka, T. T., et al. (2016). T cell-intrinsic S1PR1 regulates endogenous effector T-cell egress dynamics from lymph nodes during infection. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 113(8), 2182–2187.
- Brinkman, C. C., Peske, J. D., & Engelhard, V. H. (2013). Peripheral tissue homing receptor control of naïve, effector, and memory CD8 T cell localization in lymphoid and non-lymphoid tissues. *Frontiers in Immunology*, 4, 241.
- Dhabhar, F. S. (2000). Acute stress enhances while chronic stress suppresses skin immunity. The role of stress hormones and leukocyte trafficking. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 917, 876–893.
- Dhabhar, F. S. (2008). Enhancing versus suppressive effects of stress on immune function: Implications for immunoprotection versus immunopathology. *Allergy, Asthma & Clinical Immunology*, 4(1), 2–11.
- Dhabhar, F. S., Miller, A. H., McEwen, B. S., & Spencer, R. L. (1996). Stress-induced changes in blood leukocyte distribution. Role of adrenal steroid hormones. *Journal of Immunology*, 157(4), 1638–1644.
- Dhabhar, F. S., Malarkey, W. B., Neri, E., & McEwen, B. S. (2012). Stress-induced redistribution of immune cells—from barracks to boulevards to battlefields: A tale of three hormones—Curt Richter Award winner. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 37(9), 1345–1368.
- Dimitrov, S., Benedict, C., Heutling, D., Westermann, J., Born, J., & Lange, T. (2009). Cortisol and epinephrine control opposing circadian rhythms in T cell subsets. *Blood*, 113(21), 5134–5143.
- Dimitrov, S., Lange, T., & Born, J. (2010). Selective mobilization of cytotoxic leukocytes by epinephrine. *Journal of Immunology*, 184(1), 503–511.
- Dotta, L., & Badolato, R. (2014). Primary immunodeficiencies appearing as combined lymphopenia, neutropenia, and monocytopenia. *Immunology Letters*, 161(2), 222–225.
- Drouillard, A., Neyra, A., Mathieu, A. L., Marçais, A., Wencker, M., Marvel, J., et al. (2018). Human naïve and memory T cells display opposite migratory responses to sphingosine-1 phosphate. *Journal of Immunology*, 200(2), 551–557.
- Fauci, A. S., & Dale, D. C. (1975). The effect of Hydrocortisone on the kinetics of normal human lymphocytes. *Blood*, 46(2), 235–243.
- Fry, T. J., & Mackall, C. L. (2005). The many faces of IL-7: From lymphopoiesis to peripheral T cell maintenance. *The Journal of Immunology*, 174(11), 6571–6576.
- Gleeson, M., & Bishop, N. C. (2005). The T cell and NK cell immune response to exercise. *Annals of Transplantation*, 10(4), 43–48.
- Haugen, F., Norheim, F., Lian, H., Wensaas, A. J., Dueland, S., Berg, O., et al. (2010). IL-7 is expressed and secreted by human skeletal muscle cells. *American Journal of Physiology – Cell Physiology*, 298(4), C807–C816.
- Ing, V. W. (1984). The etiology and management of leukopenia. *Canadian Family Physician*, 30, 1835–1839.
- Kondo, M., Oshita, F., Kato, Y., Yamada, K., Nomura, I., & Noda, K. (1999). Early monocytopenia after chemotherapy as a risk factor for neutropenia. *American Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 22(1), 103–105.
- Kruger, K., Lechtermann, A., Fobker, M., Volker, K., & Mooren, F. C. (2008). Exercise-induced redistribution of T lymphocytes is regulated by adrenergic mechanisms. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 22(3), 324–338.
- Krüger, K., Frost, S., Most, E., Völker, K., Pallauf, J., & Mooren, F. C. (2009). Exercise affects tissue lymphocyte apoptosis via redox-sensitive and Fas-dependent signaling pathways. *American Journal of Physiology-Regulatory, Integrative and Comparative Physiology*, 296(5), R1518–R1527.
- McCarthy, D. A., & Dale, M. M. (1988). The leucocytosis of exercise. A review and model. *Sports Medicine*, 6(6), 333–363.
- McEwen, B. S., Biron, C. A., Brunson, K. W., Bulloch, K., Chambers, W. H., Dhabhar, F. S., et al. (1997). The role of adrenocorticoids as modulators of immune function in health and disease: Neural, endocrine and immune interactions. *Brain Research. Brain Research Reviews*, 23(1–2), 79–133.
- Mooren, F. C., & Kruger, K. (2015). Apoptotic lymphocytes induce progenitor cell mobilization after exercise. *Journal of Applied Physiology* (1985), 119(2), 135–139.
- Newburger, P. E., & Dale, D. C. (2013). Evaluation and management of patients with isolated neutropenia. *Seminars in Hematology*, 50(3), 198–206.
- Pedersen, B. K., Bruunsgaard, H., Klokke, M., Kappel, M., MacLean, D. A., Nielsen, H. B., et al. (1997). Exercise-induced immunomodulation—possible roles of neuroendocrine and metabolic factors. *International Journal of Sports Medicine*, 18(Suppl 1), S2–S7.
- Pedersen, L., Idorn, M., Olofsson, G. H., Lauenborg, B., Nookaew, I., Hansen, R. H., et al. (2016). Voluntary running suppresses tumor growth through epinephrine-

- and IL-6-dependent NK cell mobilization and redistribution. *Cell Metabolism*, 23(3), 554–562.
- Shephard, R. J. (2003). Adhesion molecules, catecholamines and leucocyte redistribution during and following exercise. *Sports Medicine*, 33(4), 261–284.
- Simpson, R. J. (2011). Aging, persistent viral infections, and immunosenescence: Can exercise “make space”? *Exercise and Sport Sciences Reviews*, 39(1), 23–33.
- Simpson, R. J., Florida-James, G. D., Whyte, G. P., & Guy, K. (2006). The effects of intensive, moderate and downhill treadmill running on human blood lymphocytes expressing the adhesion/activation molecules CD54 (ICAM-1), CD18 (beta2 integrin) and CD53. *European Journal of Applied Physiology*, 97(1), 109–121.
- Tiper, I. V., East, J. E., Subrahmanyam, P. B., & Webb, T. J. (2016). Sphingosine 1-phosphate signaling impacts lymphocyte migration, inflammation and infection. *Pathogens and Disease*, 74(6), ftw063.
- Turner, J. E., Wadley, A. J., Aldred, S., Fisher, J. P., Bosch, J. A., & Campbell, J. P. (2016). Intensive exercise does not preferentially mobilize skin-homing T cells and NK cells. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, 48(7), 1285–1293.
- Witard, O. C., Turner, J. E., Jackman, S. R., Tipton, K. D., Jeukendrup, A. E., Kies, A. K., et al. (2012). High-intensity training reduces CD8+ T-cell redistribution in response to exercise. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, 44(9), 1689–1697.

Lymphocytosis

Frankie F. Brown and James Edward Turner
Department for Health, University of Bath, Bath,
UK

Synonyms

[Leucocytosis](#); [Leukocytosis](#)

Definition

Lymphocytosis is an increase in the number of lymphocytes, usually measured in peripheral blood. In the absence of disease, this increase in cell number is normally caused by a transient mobilization or migration of lymphocytes into the circulation, rather than an increase in cell division.

Description

Background

Cytosis – the suffix of the term *lymphocytosis* – combines *cyto* (meaning cells) and *osis* (meaning pathology or process, such as transport) and is used to describe the frequency of most immune cells in peripheral blood. Leukocytosis is an increase of all leukocytes above $11 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ of blood. *Lymphocytosis* is an increase of lymphocytes above $4.5 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ of blood. Monocytosis is an increase of monocytes above $0.88 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ of blood. Granulocytosis is an increase of granulocytes above $7.0 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ of blood (Riley and Rupert 2015). High numbers of lymphocytes, monocytes, or granulocytes, measured under resting conditions (i.e., without experimentally induced stress), is associated with viral and/or bacterial infection, inflammation, trauma, and use of some medications and can sometimes signpost a hematological malignancy (Chabot-Richards and George 2014). In behavioral medicine, a substantial body of literature has investigated a well-established phenomenon: stressor-induced leukocytosis. A primary focus has been on *lymphocytosis*, with monocytosis and granulocytosis receiving much less attention. Sub-types of lymphocytes have also been extensively investigated in the context of stressors, especially natural killer cells, T cells, and B cells. Subsequently, the term *lymphocytosis* is used to describe increases in specific cell sub-types (e.g., T-cell *lymphocytosis*). Granulocytes comprise heterogeneous sub-types (neutrophils, eosinophils, and basophils), but stressor-induced granulocytosis is primarily driven by neutrophils – the most predominant granulocyte – and is referred to as neutrocytosis or neutrophilia. An increase in eosinophils and basophils – eosinophilia and basophilia respectively – has received very little attention in behavioral medicine.

The Effects of Physical and Psychological Stress on Leukocytes

Human and animal studies have shown that short-term physical and psychological stress, over minutes or hours, often referred to as “acute stress,” is associated with a transient increase in

the absolute number of leukocytes in peripheral blood (see next section) (Dhabhar 2014). The effects of long-term psychological stress – often referred to as “chronic stress” over weeks, months, or years – on basal leukocyte counts are not fully established in humans. Animal work shows that chronic psychological stress is associated with an impaired adaptive response to stressors (Dhabhar 2014) (see definition; *lymphocytopenia*). However, in humans, a chronically elevated leukocyte count, which might be associated with long-term psychological stress, is considered a marker of systemic inflammation and is linked with increased mortality (Phillips et al. 2010). Long-term psychological stress is thought to be immunosuppressive, as shown, for example, by parental caregivers of children with developmental disabilities or spousal caregivers of patients with neurodegenerative conditions, exhibiting poor responses to vaccination (Gallagher et al. 2009; Glaser et al. 2000). It is unknown if these effects are directly related to leukocyte counts. Finally, the influence of long-term physical stress, such as exercise, on basal leukocyte numbers and overall immune function is debated. Generally, long-term regular exercise is beneficial for immune competency, but it is currently unknown whether very high exercise training loads, or very extreme forms of exercise (e.g., ultra-endurance running) repeated frequently over months and years, substantially influence leukocyte numbers and immunity (Campbell and Turner 2018, 2019; Turner et al. 2014; Turner 2016). In the remainder of this definition, emphasis is placed on the effects that acute stressors have on lymphocytes in peripheral blood.

The Effects of Acute Physical and Psychological Stress on Lymphocytosis

Short-term responses to acute stressors – which typically induce *lymphocytosis* – have been robustly investigated in behavioral medicine. These stress-induced changes are transient, with cell numbers returning to prestress levels within approximately 15–20 min. Depending on the intensity, duration, and type of stressor, cell numbers can fall below baseline 1–2 h afterwards and

can remain at this level for up to 24 h (see the definition; *lymphocytopenia*). In 1893, Schultz first described exercise-induced *lymphocytosis*, characterized by an increase in lymphocytes within 10 min of exercise, subsequently falling below resting levels after the exercise bout (Schultz 1893). To date, numerous studies have replicated and extended these results, and it is now well-known that an acute bout of exercise elicits a rapid and pronounced *lymphocytosis* driven primarily by natural killer cells (Walsh et al. 2011; Gabriel et al. 1992; Gleeson and Bishop 2005; McCarthy and Dale 1988). The magnitude of *lymphocytosis* is greatest with prolonged, high-intensity endurance activities, and this dose-dependent effect was first described thoroughly in 1935 (Garrey and Bryan 1935). *Lymphocytosis* has also been observed in response to acute psychological stress, and one of the earliest reports was in 1926. Patients with strong emotional feelings before surgery showed a more pronounced anticipatory rise in lymphocyte numbers in resting blood collected a few days prior to surgery compared to patients who reported being less emotionally affected by the forthcoming operation (Mora et al. 1926). These early observations have been confirmed and extended by many investigations that have experimentally induced mental or emotional stress in humans investigating a variety of lymphocyte sub-types (Anane et al. 2009).

Mechanisms

Two primary mechanisms are responsible for stressor-induced *lymphocytosis*: catecholamine release and increased cardiac output. Sympathetic activation, including circulating epinephrine and norepinephrine, and direct innervation of immunological organs, is the predominant mechanism of *lymphocytosis*, as part of the “fight or flight” response (Elenkov et al. 2000). Plasma levels of epinephrine and norepinephrine increase with the duration and intensity of exercise and with acute psychological stress, stimulating changes to the cellular composition of blood (Shephard 2003). For example, administration of epinephrine to achieve plasma levels identical to those measured during cycling exercise (1 h, 75% of maximum

capacity) replicated the exercise-induced mobilization of natural killer cells (Kappel et al. 1991). Further, during exercise (without infusion of epinephrine) a positive correlation was shown between epinephrine concentration and cell numbers in blood (Kappel et al. 1991). Indeed, acute psychological stress, acute exercise, and epinephrine infusion mobilize lymphocytes similarly with dose-dependent effects. Assuming the infusion of epinephrine is at physiological levels, the largest magnitude of *lymphocytosis* is usually elicited by exercise compared to stress or epinephrine infusion, due to the greater change in heart rate, stroke volume, and therefore cardiac output and blood flow (Anane et al. 2009). The shear forces associated with these cardiovascular changes contribute to *lymphocytosis*, resulting in a demargination of lymphocytes adhered to blood vessel walls (Atherton and Born 1972).

The effects of catecholamines are mediated via adrenergic receptors: β_1 -adrenergic receptors are the main targets for norepinephrine, while β_2 -adrenergic receptors are the targets for epinephrine. In particular, β_2 -adrenergic receptors have been identified on natural killer cells, T cells, and B cells providing the molecular basis for the effects of epinephrine on lymphocytes (Maisel et al. 1990). A higher density of β_2 -adrenergic receptors is present on the surface of the effector cell populations, for example, cytotoxic sub-types of natural killer cells and T cells, which exhibit the most pronounced stressor-induced changes (Campbell et al. 2009; Bigley et al. 2014; Anane et al. 2009; Slota et al. 2015). Indeed, blocking β_2 -adrenergic receptors by infusion of propranolol impairs *lymphocytosis* induced by stress, exercise, or epinephrine infusion (Mills et al. 1999; Benschop et al. 1994). Prolonged high-intensity exercise also increases cytokine release into blood, most notably interleukin-6 (IL-6) from exercising skeletal muscle (Pedersen and Toft 2000; Pedersen and Fischer 2007). It has been shown that IL-6 facilitates homing of natural killer cells to tissues following *lymphocytosis* (Pedersen et al. 2016) (see definition; *lymphocytopenia*). Yet, IL-6 infusion alone does not replicate the effects of stress, exercise, or epinephrine on *lymphocytosis* (Pedersen and Fischer 2007).

Summary and Conclusions

When encountering acute physical and psychological stress, leukocytosis is induced. The link between leukocyte numbers in peripheral blood and acute stressors is so well established that before methods were commonly available to assay catecholamines, leukocyte counts were used as a proxy measurement of stress and sympathetic activation (Hoagland et al. 1946). In behavioral medicine, most research has focused on *lymphocytosis* examining different sub-types of cells. The effects of acute stressors on the cellular composition of blood have an evolutionary lineage that has been shown in fish, rodents, horses, nonhuman primates, and humans (Pickford et al. 1971; Viswanathan and Dhabhar 2005; Snow et al. 1983; Morrow-Tesch et al. 1993; Bosch et al. 2003). It is thought that the preferential mobilization of effector-type lymphocytes in response to acute stressors is part of immune-surveillance, protecting the host under stressful scenarios when wounds or antigen encounter is more likely to occur (Bosch et al. 2005; Dhabhar et al. 2012).

Cross-References

- ▶ Adrenal Glands
- ▶ Adrenergic Activation
- ▶ Aerobic Exercise
- ▶ Antigens
- ▶ Blood Pressure Reactivity or Responses
- ▶ Catecholamines
- ▶ Cortisol
- ▶ Cytokines
- ▶ Dose: Intensity, Response
- ▶ Epinephrine
- ▶ Glucocorticoids
- ▶ Hemodynamic
- ▶ Immune Function
- ▶ Immune Responses to Stress
- ▶ Immunity
- ▶ Infectious Diseases
- ▶ inflammation
- ▶ Interleukins, -1 (IL-1), -6 (IL-6), -18 (IL-18)
- ▶ Lymphocytopenia
- ▶ Maximal Exercise Stress Test

- ▶ Mental Stress
- ▶ Neuroendocrine Activation
- ▶ Neuroimmunology
- ▶ Norepinephrine/Noradrenaline
- ▶ Parasympathetic Nervous System (PNS)
- ▶ Pharmacological Stress Tests
- ▶ Psychological Stress
- ▶ Psychoneuroimmunology
- ▶ Steroids
- ▶ Stress
- ▶ Stress Reactivity
- ▶ Stress Responses
- ▶ Stress Test
- ▶ Stress, Emotional
- ▶ Stress, Exercise
- ▶ Sympathetic Nervous System (SNS)
- ▶ Trier Social Stress Test
- ▶ Wound Healing

References and Further Readings

- Anane, L. H., Edwards, K. M., Burns, V. E., Drayson, M. T., Riddell, N. E., van Zanten, J. J., et al. (2009). Mobilization of gammadelta T lymphocytes in response to psychological stress, exercise, and beta-agonist infusion. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 23(6), 823–829.
- Atherton, A., & Born, G. V. (1972). Quantitative investigations of the adhesiveness of circulating polymorphonuclear leucocytes to blood vessel walls. *The Journal of Physiology*, 222(2), 447–474.
- Benschop, R. J., Nieuwenhuis, E. E., Tromp, E. A., Godaert, G. L., Ballieux, R. E., & van Doornen, L. J. (1994). Effects of beta-adrenergic blockade on immunologic and cardiovascular changes induced by mental stress. *Circulation*, 89(2), 762–769.
- Bigley, A. B., Rezvani, K., Chew, C., Sekine, T., Pistillo, M., Crucian, B., et al. (2014). Acute exercise preferentially redeploys NK-cells with a highly-differentiated phenotype and augments cytotoxicity against lymphoma and multiple myeloma target cells. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 39, 160–171.
- Bosch, J. A., Berntson, G. G., Cacioppo, J. T., Dhabhar, F. S., & Marucha, P. T. (2003). Acute stress evokes selective mobilization of T cells that differ in chemokine receptor expression: a potential pathway linking immunologic reactivity to cardiovascular disease. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 17(4), 251–259.
- Bosch, J. A., Berntson, G. G., Cacioppo, J. T., & Marucha, P. T. (2005). Differential mobilization of functionally distinct natural killer subsets during acute psychologic stress. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 67(3), 366–375.
- Campbell, J. P., & Turner, J. E. (2018). Debunking the myth of exercise-induced immune suppression: Redefining the impact of exercise on immunological health across the lifespan. *Frontiers in Immunology*, 9, 648.
- Campbell, J. P., & Turner, J. E. (2019). There is limited existing evidence to support the common assumption that strenuous endurance exercise bouts impair immune competency. *Expert Review of Clinical Immunology*, 15(2), 105–109.
- Campbell, J. P., Riddell, N. E., Burns, V. E., Turner, M., van Zanten, J. J., Drayson, M. T., et al. (2009). Acute exercise mobilises CD8+ T lymphocytes exhibiting an effector-memory phenotype. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 23(6), 767–775.
- Chabot-Richards, D. S., & George, T. I. (2014). Leukocytosis. *International Journal of Laboratory Hematology*, 36(3), 279–288.
- Dhabhar, F. S. (2014). Effects of stress on immune function: the good, the bad, and the beautiful. *Immunologic Research*, 58(2–3), 193–210.
- Dhabhar, F. S., Malarkey, W. B., Neri, E., & McEwen, B. S. (2012). Stress-induced redistribution of immune cells—from barracks to boulevards to battlefields: a tale of three hormones—Curt Richter Award winner. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 37(9), 1345–1368.
- Elenkov, I. J., Wilder, R. L., Chrousos, G. P., & Vizi, E. S. (2000). The sympathetic nerve—an integrative interface between two supersystems: The brain and the immune system. *Pharmacological Reviews*, 52(4), 595–638.
- Gabriel, H., Urhausen, A., & Kindermann, W. (1992). Mobilization of circulating leucocyte and lymphocyte subpopulations during and after short, anaerobic exercise. *European Journal of Applied Physiology and Occupational Physiology*, 65(2), 164–170.
- Gallagher, S., Phillips, A. C., Drayson, M. T., & Carroll, D. (2009). Parental caregivers of children with developmental disabilities mount a poor antibody response to pneumococcal vaccination. *Brain Behavior and Immunity*, 23(3), 338–346.
- Garrey, W. E., & Bryan, W. R. (1935). Variations in white blood cell counts. *Physiological Reviews*, 15, 597. American Physiological Society.
- Glaser, R., Sheridan, J., Malarkey, W. B., MacCallum, R. C., & Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K. (2000). Chronic stress modulates the immune response to a pneumococcal pneumonia vaccine. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 62(6), 804–807.
- Gleeson, M., & Bishop, N. C. (2005). The T cell and NK cell immune response to exercise. *Annals of Transplantation*, 10(4), 43–48.
- Hoagland, H., Elmadjian, F., & Pincus, G. (1946). Stressful psychomotor performance and adrenal cortical function as indicated by the lymphocyte response. *The Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 6, 301–311.
- Kappel, M., Tvede, N., Galbo, H., Haahr, P. M., Kjaer, M., Linstow, M., et al. (1991). Evidence that the effect of physical exercise on NK cell activity is mediated by

- epinephrine. *Journal of Applied Physiology*, 70(6), 2530–2534. (1985).
- Maisel, A. S., Harris, T., Rearden, C. A., & Michel, M. C. (1990). Beta-adrenergic receptors in lymphocyte subsets after exercise. Alterations in normal individuals and patients with congestive heart failure. *Circulation*, 82(6), 2003–2010.
- McCarthy, D. A., & Dale, M. M. (1988). The leucocytosis of exercise. A review and model. *Sports Medicine*, 6(6), 333–363.
- Mills, P. J., Rehman, J., Ziegler, M. G., Carter, S. M., Dimsdale, J. E., & Maisel, A. S. (1999). Nonselective beta blockade attenuates the recruitment of CD62L(-)T lymphocytes following exercise. *European Journal of Applied Physiology and Occupational Physiology*, 79(6), 531–534.
- Mora, J. M., Amtmann, L. E., & Hoffmann, S. J. (1926). Effect of mental and emotional states on the leukocyte count. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 86, 945–946.
- Morrow-Tesch, J. L., McGlone, J. J., & Norman, R. L. (1993). Consequences of restraint stress on natural killer cell activity, behavior, and hormone levels in rhesus macaques (*Macaca mulatta*). *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 18(5–6), 383–395.
- Pedersen, B. K., & Fischer, C. P. (2007). Physiological roles of muscle-derived interleukin-6 in response to exercise. *Current Opinion in Clinical Nutrition and Metabolic Care*, 10(3), 265–271.
- Pedersen, B. K., & Toft, A. D. (2000). Effects of exercise on lymphocytes and cytokines. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*, 34(4), 246–251.
- Pedersen, L., Idorn, M., Olofsson, G. H., Lauenborg, B., Nookaew, I., Hansen, R. H., et al. (2016). Voluntary running suppresses tumor growth through epinephrine- and IL-6-dependent NK cell mobilization and redistribution. *Cell Metabolism*, 23(3), 554–562.
- Phillips, A. C., Carroll, D., Gale, C. R., Drayson, M., Thomas, G. N., & Batty, G. D. (2010). Lymphocyte sub-population cell counts are associated with the metabolic syndrome and its components in the Vietnam experience study. *Atherosclerosis*, 213(1), 294–298.
- Pickford, G. E., Srivastava, A. K., Slicher, A. M., & Pang, P. K. (1971). The stress response in the abundance of circulating leucocytes in the killifish, *Fundulus heteroclitus*. 1. The cold-shock sequence and the effects of hypophysectomy. *The Journal of Experimental Zoology*, 177(1), 89–96.
- Riley, L. K., & Rupert, J. (2015). Evaluation of patients with Leukocytosis. *American Family Physician*, 92(11), 1004–1011.
- Schultz, G. (1893). Experimentelle Untersuchungen über das Vorkommen und die diagnostische Bedeuteune leukocytose. *Deutsches Archiv für Klinische Medizin*, 51, 234–281.
- Shephard, R. J. (2003). Adhesion molecules, catecholamines and leucocyte redistribution during and following exercise. *Sports Medicine*, 33(4), 261–284.
- Slota, C., Shi, A., Chen, G., Bevans, M., & Weng, N. P. (2015). Norepinephrine preferentially modulates memory CD8 T cell function inducing inflammatory cytokine production and reducing proliferation in response to activation. *Brain Behavior and Immunity*, 46, 168–179.
- Snow, D. H., Ricketts, S. W., & Mason, D. K. (1983). Haematological response to racing and training exercise in Thoroughbred horses, with particular reference to the leucocyte response. *Equine Veterinary Journal*, 15(2), 149–154.
- Turner, J. E. (2016). Is immunosenescence influenced by our lifetime “dose” of exercise? *Biogerontology*, 17(3), 581–602.
- Turner, J. E., Bennett, S. J., Bosch, J. A., Griffiths, H. R., & Aldred, S. (2014). Ultra-endurance exercise: Unanswered questions in redox biology and immunology. *Biochemical Society Transactions*, 42(4), 989–995.
- Viswanathan, K., & Dhabhar, F. S. (2005). Stress-induced enhancement of leukocyte trafficking into sites of surgery or immune activation. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 102(16), 5808–5813.
- Walsh, N. P., Gleeson, M., Shephard, R. J., Gleeson, M., Woods, J. A., Bishop, N. C., et al. (2011). Position statement. Part one: Immune function and exercise. *Exercise Immunology Review*, 17, 6–63.

Lymphokines

► Cytokines

Lymphoma

► Cancer, Lymphatic

Macrophages

Riyad Khanfer
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The
University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Definition

Macrophages are white blood cells which form an important part of the innate immunity (nonspecific). They are widely distributed in the body's tissues. Macrophages have irregular shape with granules in their cytoplasm. They are phagocytes and play a crucial role in the initiation of the adaptive (specific) immune response. They engulf, remove, and digest necrotic cell debris, bacteria, and other foreign bodies and also play important roles in the early phases of infection and inflammation (Levinson 2006; Waugh and Grant 2001).

Known as antigen-presenting cells, macrophages migrate between tissues, and when they encounter pathogen/antigen, they engulf it; more importantly, they digest the antigen via specific intracellular processes and transport the most antigenic fragment to their own cell membrane and display it on their surface, where they carry it until they come into contact with the adaptive immune cells (T lymphocytes) in the lymphoid tissues. These lymphocytes become activated and sensitized as a result and eventually proliferate and

differentiate into three main types of memory T cells which generate a specific memory against this particular original antigen (Janeway et al. 2005).

In the inflammatory response, macrophages produce many cytokines (cell messengers); among them are two important proinflammatory cytokines: interferon- γ and tumor necrosis factor (TNF). Macrophages have also been found to play a role in tumor immunology; they can infiltrate tumor mass and destroy tumor cells in tissue culture by producing reactive oxygen intermediates (ROIs) and tumor necrosis factor (TNF) (Janeway et al. 2005; Weinberg 2007).

Cross-References

► [Immune Function](#)

References and Further Reading

- Janeway, C. A., Travers, P., Walport, M., & Shlomchik, M. J. (2005). *Immunobiology* (6th ed.). New York/London: Garland Science.
- Levinson, W. (2006). *Review of medical microbiology and immunology* (9th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.
- Waugh, A., & Grant, A. (2001). *Ross and Wilson anatomy and physiology in health and illness*. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone.
- Weinberg, R. (2007). *The biology of cancer*. New York: Garland Science.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)

John Ryan¹ and Howard Aizenstein²

¹Department of Psychiatry, Western Psychiatric Institute and Clinic, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

²Geriatric Psychiatry Neuroimaging, Western Psychiatric Institute and Clinic, University of Pittsburgh Medical Center, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

MRI

Definition

Magnetic resonance imaging is a noninvasive imaging method used for visualizing structures in the body. The participant is placed in a strong static magnetic field that aligns all atomic nuclei in the body. A radiofrequency pulse is applied at a resonant frequency to selectively energize one type of atom (typically hydrogen). When the pulse is discontinued, the energy is emitted and detected by a detector coil. Due to the differences in concentrations of atoms in different structures, this energy can be used to reconstruct an image of the tissue in the detector coil.

Description

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) uses several separate components to collect an image. First, a superconducting electromagnet (created by passing electrical current through super-cooled wires) provides a static electromagnetic field. The strength of the magnet is denoted by “Tesla” strength. Most research scanners have a strength of 3.0 T – approximately 600 times more powerful than a kitchen magnet. As such, it is extremely important that participants remove any metal prior

to entering the scanner room. Anyone with metal implants cannot have an MRI scan. Second, radio-frequency coils send energy to, and receive energy from, the sample being analyzed. Finally, gradient coils create a small alteration in the static magnetic field to create a spatial distribution in the signal to allow for image reconstruction in 3D space.

MRI data is collected in “slices” which are a certain thickness. Within each slice, space is divided into small squares known as “voxels.” A voxel is the smallest sampling unit and is typically a few millimeters on each side. The size of a voxel determines the spatial resolution of the image. Smaller voxels will result in a clearer image. Most MRI paradigms take at least two separate scans: a high-resolution anatomical image with voxels approximately 1 mm³ and a lower-resolution functional image (see below) with voxels approximately 9 mm³. The lower-resolution functional image is then placed over the higher-resolution image to determine the anatomy that corresponds to the functional activity.

When tissue is placed into a strong magnetic field, the nuclei of atoms align in parallel with the magnetic field. Most nuclei align in a parallel (low energy) state, but some nuclei align with the magnetic field in an antiparallel (high-energy) state. An electromagnetic pulse is then applied to the sample, which flips some of the nuclei from low-energy to high-energy states. When the pulse is discontinued, the nuclei revert to the low-energy state and release the energy as photons, which are then detected with receiver coils. This is the basis of the MR signal. The return to the low-energy state and release of energy at the end of a pulse is termed “relaxation” and produces two parameters. “Transverse relaxation” (or T2 decay) is a measurement of how quickly the spins of the nuclei lose coherence after the pulse is discontinued. “Longitudinal relaxation” is a measurement of how long it takes the spins to return to the low-energy (parallel) state and is quantified using a time constant denoted as T1.

Numerous parameters can be manipulated to record certain properties of the MRI signal that

make MRI a very versatile method for collecting images. First, the time between successive excitation pulses is the “repetition time” (TR). If the TR is too short, full recovery of the T1 parameter will not occur before the subsequent pulse occurs. Second, it is important to consider how long of a delay to include between the discontinuation of the pulse and the recording of the MR signal. This parameter is termed the “echo time” (TE). By selecting optimal TR and TE values, the MR image can be tuned to either T1 or T2 contrast. T1 images are most commonly recorded for anatomical images and include a short TE and a medium TR. A final parameter that can be manipulated is the flip angle, which indicates the degree to which the net magnetization changes following the excitation pulse.

The selection of certain parameters to maximize the image of a particular feature of the image is referred to as a pulse sequence. Common pulse sequences include echo planar imaging (EPI) in BOLD fMRI (discussed below), fluid-attenuated inversion-recovery imaging (FLAIR), diffusion tensor imaging, and magnetization transfer imaging.

Structural MRI

Structural MRI is most commonly utilized to quantify certain types of tissue and identify patterns of change in structure that co-occur with disease or time. It can be used to measure the volume in grey matter, white matter, and cerebrospinal fluid using high-resolution T1 images discussed above. FLAIR images can be used to identify white matter hyperintensities that co-occur with aging, as well as certain psychiatric disorders. Diffusion tensor imaging measures the directions of water diffusion along multiple vector directions to assess the white matter tracts that connect disparate regions of the brain. Finally, magnetization transfer imaging can be used to assess the integrity of myelin in regions of interest.

Functional MRI

The methods described above are primarily used for visualizing structures in the body. In the 1990s, it was discovered that with appropriate tuning of

the pulse sequence, brain activity could be detected. The key to this discovery is the magnetic properties of blood. Red blood cells contain hemoglobin that binds to oxygen to be carried to the tissues. Oxygenated hemoglobin has very little sensitivity to magnetic fields, whereas deoxygenated hemoglobin is paramagnetic and will distort a magnetic field. This distortion will alter the decay of the transverse magnetic component following the termination of the excitation pulse – termed T2* (“T2 star”). When neurons in the brain increase activity, they require more oxygen. The body responds by increasing blood flow to that region of the brain, which flushes out deoxygenated blood. This reduction in deoxygenated blood creates a stronger MR signal intensity. This change in signal is known as the blood-oxygenation-level-dependent (BOLD) contrast. This discovery has led to an explosion of research on human brain function as researchers can now noninvasively monitor brain activity. By comparing BOLD activity while performing a task with activity during a control condition, researchers can identify regions of the brain whose activity increases or decreases in response to performing the task.

One limitation of BOLD contrast is that it is a relative measure – signal is compared to a control condition – and therefore an absolute measure of blood flow to an area is unreliable. An alternative method for quantifying blood flow is arterial spin labeling (ASL). As arterial blood flows through the carotid artery toward the brain, a 180° excitation pulse is applied. This has the effect of magnetizing the water in the blood, which then travels to the brain. When this paramagnetic water arrives in the brain, it alters the magnetization of the area and causes an increase in the MR signal intensity. This signal intensity is compared to a control image to quantify the blood that was flowing to the region during the transit time.

Recent Developments

High-Field MRI

Early MRI scanners had strengths of 1.5 T, and research scanners in hospitals now are commonly

3.0 T. As the strength of the magnet increases, there is a nearly linear increase in signal-to-noise ratio. Some research centers now have 7.0 T magnets, and stronger magnets are currently under development. These stronger magnetic fields may allow better information about tissue composition, including iron deposition in the basal ganglia.

Functional and Effective Connectivity

As computing power and software have increased in the past decade, new methods for measuring networks and interactions of brain regions have been developed. Seed-voxel correlation maps extract the signal from a small group of voxels and then correlate the activity over time with the signal from all other voxels in the brain. The result is a “functional connectivity” map of regions whose activity correlates with the seed region. Such a method cannot infer causal influence between regions, but it has been useful in understanding so-called Resting State Networks – networks of brain activity that are active in the absence of an experimental task. More sophisticated techniques have been developed for inferring causality between regions, including Granger Causality Analysis, Dynamic Causal Modeling, and Structural Equation Modeling.

Cross-References

- [Brain, Imaging](#)
- [Neuroimaging](#)

References and Readings

- Duyn, J. H. (2010). Study of brain anatomy with high-field MRI: Recent progress. *Magnetic Resonance Imaging*, 28, 1210–1215.
- Huettel, S. A., Song, A. W., & McCarthy, G. (2004). *Functional magnetic resonance imaging* (2nd ed.). Sunderland: Sinauer Associates.
- Rogers, B. P., Morgan, V. L., Newton, A. T., & Gore, J. C. (2007). Assessing functional connectivity in the human brain by fMRI. *Magnetic Resonance Imaging*, 25, 1347–1357.

Maintenance Phase of the Transtheoretical Model of Change

Seema Mutti

School of Public Health and Health Systems,
University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Definition

The Transtheoretical Model of Change (TTM) is characterized by six ‘stages of change’ (precontemplation, contemplation, preparation, action, maintenance, and termination) that individuals move through when attempting to change problematic health behavior, such as smoking (Shumaker et al. 2009).

Individuals reach the ‘maintenance’ phase of the TTM when the positive health behavior, for example, complete abstinence from smoking, is sustained for a period of 6 months or longer (Glanz et al. 2008). Self-efficacy (or situation-specific confidence) plays an integral role in this stage. As an individual’s ability to abstain from the risky health behavior increases, so too does their ability to avoid relapse. The risk of relapse is eliminated once an individual reaches the final ‘termination’ stage of the TTM, in which the positive health behavior has become automatic (Shumaker et al. 2009).

Cross-References

- [Behavior Change](#)
- [Self-Efficacy](#)

References and Readings

- Glanz, K., Rimer, B. K., & Viswanath, K. (Eds.). (2008). *Health behavior and health education: Theory, research, and practice* (4th ed.). San Francisco: Jossey Bass.
- Miller, W. R., & Heather, N. (Eds.). (1998). *Treating addictive behaviors* (2nd ed.). New York: Plenum Press.
- Prochaska, J. O., & Norcross, J. C. (2010). *Systems of psychotherapy: A transtheoretical analysis* (7th ed.). Belmont: Brooks/Cole.

Shumaker, S. A., Ockene, J. K., & Riekert, K. A. (Eds.). (2009). *The handbook of health behavior change* (3rd ed.). New York: Springer.

Major Depressive Disorder

- [Postpartum Depression](#)
- [Unipolar Depression](#)

Major Depressive Disorder, with Seasonal Pattern

- [Seasonal Affective Disorder](#)

Maladaptation

- [Maladaptive/Maladjustment](#)

Maladaptation of Symptom Behaviors to Chronic Illness

- [Symptom Magnification Syndrome](#)

Maladaptive/Maladjustment

David Busse and Ilona S. Yim
Department of Psychology and Social Behaviour,
University of California, Irvine, Irvine, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Dysfunctional/dysfunction](#); [Maladaptation](#); [Maladjustive](#)

Definition

Maladjustment is the result of insufficient responses to demands that may occur throughout the life span and result in impaired functioning,

distress, and/or poor health. The term *maladaptive* refers to processes (e.g., specific behaviors, patterns of thought or emotion that yield negative outcomes) whereas maladjustment is the result or outcome of this process.

Description

The terms maladjustment and maladaptive are used in a wide range of contexts, which may broadly be categorized as social, psychological, and biological. Social maladjustment refers to how a person develops and maintains interpersonal relationships, especially with peers. Maladaptive behaviors in this realm often emerge during childhood when individuals learn how to navigate their social world and solve interpersonal problems. During this period, children face changing school settings and social networks. Children who are not able to successfully adjust to these new environments may exhibit a range of maladaptive behaviors, such as aggression or rough play, which may lead to peer rejection (Ladd and Price 1987).

The terms maladjustment and maladaptive, when applied to the psychological domain, may also refer to how well somebody is able to regulate their emotions. Emotions typically serve adaptive purposes in how individuals interact with the environment. Thus, psychological maladjustment may be characterized by high levels of “emotional inertia” (Kuppens et al. 2010) or the inability to respond appropriately to the dynamically changing demands of a given situation.

Finally, maladjustment and maladaptive processes can also pertain to how individuals physiologically respond and adapt to environmental demands. The human body attempts to respond optimally to the continually changing environment, a concept that has been termed *allostasis* (McEwen and Stellar 1993). Key systems involved in this process are the autonomic nervous system, the hypothalamic pituitary-adrenal axis, and the immune and cardiovascular systems. Repeated activation of these systems exerts wear and tear on the body, termed *allostatic load*. High levels of allostatic load, when quantified using

objective health parameters, have been associated with increased risk of cardiovascular disease and lower physical and cognitive functioning (Seeman et al. 1997).

Maladjustment and maladaptive processes have been studied throughout the life span, ranging from the prenatal period to old age. These studies provide important insight into the immediate and long-term health consequences of maladjustment at different times in life. Researchers study maladjustment in the context of how certain prenatal events during critical periods can have lasting implications on development throughout the life span. For example, the Dutch famine studies are a series of studies that examine the mechanisms linking disease outcomes to deprivation in utero. A blockade of food supplies in the Netherlands between November 1944 and April 1945 created a natural experiment from which to study the effects of maternal malnutrition. It was later found that children who were in gestation during the famine had higher rates of adult diseases, including coronary heart disease (Roseboom et al. 2001) and schizophrenia (Hoek et al. 1998). Similarly, a study of 141 Canadian families who endured a severe and prolonged ice storm during the winter of 1998 demonstrates how severe stressors can result in postnatal maladjustment. Children whose mothers were exposed to more severe stress had poorer cognitive and language development at age two than children whose mothers who experienced less stress during the ice storm (King and Laplante 2005).

Typically, the effect of maladaptive behavior is studied during later periods of life. A classic example for how maladaptive behavior can lead to adverse health outcomes is the link between certain components of Type A behavior patterns (i.e., hostility) and coronary heart disease (CHD). Type A behavior is characterized by aggressiveness, impatience, and competitiveness. Although these behaviors often lead to high status in the workplace, they may also be maladaptive in the context of maintaining health. By itself, maladaptive behavior does not have an effect on disease pathogenesis. Rather, this process occurs through the repeated and exaggerated activation of biological regulatory systems (e.g., high blood

pressure), conflictual and unsupportive social relationships, and health-compromising behaviors (e.g., smoking). A link between maladaptive personality traits and development of disease has been demonstrated in past research. A longitudinal study with over 4,700 college students showed that greater hostility at age 19 predicted more risk factors for CHD, including higher caffeine consumption, larger body mass index (BMI), higher cholesterol, and more tobacco use (Siegler et al. 1992).

Cross-References

- [Hostility](#)
- [Stress Reactivity](#)
- [Stress-Related Disorders](#)
- [Stress Vulnerability Models](#)

References and Further Reading

- Hoek, H. W., Brown, A. S., & Susser, E. (1998). The Dutch famine and schizophrenia spectrum disorders. *Social Psychiatry and Psychiatric Epidemiology*, 33, 373–379.
- King, S., & Laplante, D. P. (2005). The effects of prenatal maternal stress on children's cognitive development: Project ice storm. *Stress*, 8, 35–45.
- Kuppens, P., Allen, N. B., & Sheeber, L. B. (2010). Emotional inertia and psychological maladjustment. *Psychological Science*, 21, 984–991. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0956797610372634>.
- Ladd, G. W., & Price, J. M. (1987). Predicting children's social and school adjustment following the transition from preschool to kindergarten. *Child Development*, 58, 1168–1189.
- McEwen, B., & Stellar, E. (1993). Stress and the individual: Mechanisms leading to disease. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 153, 2093–2101.
- Roseboom, T. J., van der Meulen, J. H. P., Ravelli, A. C. J., Osmond, C., Barker, D. J. P., & Bleker, O. P. (2001). Effects of prenatal exposure to the Dutch famine on adult disease in later life: An overview. *Molecular and Cellular Endocrinology*, 185, 93–98.
- Seeman, T. E., Singer, B. H., Rowe, J. W., Horwitz, R. I., & McEwen, B. S. (1997). Price of adaptation-allostatic load and its health consequences: MacArthur studies of successful aging. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 157, 2259–2268.
- Siegler, I. C., Peterson, B. L., Barefoot, J. C., & Williams, R. B. (1992). Hostility during late adolescence predicts coronary risk factors at mid-life. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 136, 145–154.

Maladjustive

- ▶ [Maladaptive/Maladjustment](#)

Malignant Neoplastic Disease

- ▶ [Carcinoma](#)

Malingering

- ▶ [Symptom Magnification Syndrome](#)

Managed Care

- ▶ [Disease Management](#)

Management

- ▶ [Lifestyle Changes](#)

Management of Depression

- ▶ [Depression: Treatment](#)

Marital Dissolution

- ▶ [Divorce and Health](#)

Marital Therapy

- ▶ [Couple-Focused Therapy](#)

Marker (Genetics)

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

A genetic marker is a DNA sequence with a known physical location on a chromosome. Genetic markers can help link an inherited disease with the responsible gene. DNA segments close to each other on a chromosome tend to be inherited together. Genetic markers are used to track the inheritance of a nearby gene that has not yet been identified but whose approximate location is known. The genetic marker itself may be a part of a gene or may have no known function (Genome.gov [2011](#)).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Chromosomes](#)
- ▶ [DNA](#)
- ▶ [Gene](#)

References and Further Readings

Genome.gov (2011). Accessed 15th Nov 2011 <http://www.genome.gov/glossary/?id=86>

Marriage and Health

Wendy Troxel¹ and Julianne Holt-Lunstad Fulton²
¹Psychiatry and Psychology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA
²Department of Psychology, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT, USA

Definition

Socially connected people live longer, healthier, and happier lives than their socially isolated

counterparts (Holt-Lunstad et al. 2010). Given the central role that marriage plays for most adults, a great deal of research has focused on this particular social relationship in association with physical and mental health. For instance, prior research suggests that married adults have lower rates of morbidity and mortality compared to unmarried adults (Jaffe et al. 2007; Johnson et al. 2000). Likewise, married individuals have greater life satisfaction, happiness, and are at lower risk for depression (Gove et al. 1983; Inaba et al. 2005). The conclusion often drawn from this literature is that being married is beneficial for health, but perhaps less so for women than for men. Ironically, several lines of evidence suggest that marriage *should* be associated with better health, perhaps, particularly so in women. Specifically, marriage may protect against social isolation, may promote health-enhancing behaviors and deter health-damaging behaviors, and may affect health indirectly, by increasing socioeconomic resources, particularly for women. In contrast, given the health costs of conflictual social relationships and the fact that marriage is the primary social relationship for most adults, being in an unhappy marriage may serve as a potent psychosocial stressor, thereby elevating disease risk. In aggregate, these divergent perspectives on the advantages of having a spouse on the one hand, and the disadvantages of marital discord, on the other hand, suggest the utility of examining marital status and marital quality simultaneously. However, few studies to date have adopted this approach of simultaneously examining marital status and marital quality (for exceptions see Gallo et al. 2003a; Holt-Lunstad et al. 2008; Troxel et al. 2005). Theoretically, individuals in a high-quality marriage should be at a health advantage relative to unmarried individuals and to individuals in low-quality marriages because they reap the material benefits of marriage *and* the social support benefits of being in a harmonious union.

Description

Marital Quality Matters

Indeed, mounting evidence suggests that various indicators of marital quality, including satisfaction

or strain, are associated with increased risk of the development of CVD risk factors or prognosis in cardiac patients (as reviewed in Kiecolt-Glaser and Newton 2001). For instance, Orth-Gomer et al. (2000) found that marital strain was associated with a 2.9-fold increased risk of recurrent cardiac events in female cardiac patients. Similarly, Coyne et al. (2001) reported that among male and female coronary heart disease (CHD) patients, poor marital quality was a more robust predictor of mortality in women than in men. Our laboratory has shown in an initially healthy sample of women that those who are satisfied in their marriage show less atherogenic risk trajectories over time (Gallo et al. 2003b), have lower levels of subclinical measures of carotid atherosclerosis (Gallo et al. 2003a), and are at lesser risk of developing the metabolic syndrome over an 11-year follow-up, as compared to their dissatisfied or unmarried counterparts (Gallo et al. 2003a; Troxel et al. 2005). In aggregate, findings suggest that the quality of the marital relationship is implicated in the development and progression of CVD; however, the effects may be stronger in women. Moreover, how marriages “get under the skin” to influence cardiovascular risk and outcomes remains a question of critical importance.

Pathways Linking Marriage with Health

Both the presence of a spouse as well as the quality of the marital relationship may influence health directly and indirectly through behavioral, psychological, and physiological mechanisms. For instance, social relationships may influence the extent to which individuals engage in health-relevant behaviors (e.g., smoking, sedentary lifestyle, fatty diet intake, and excessive alcohol consumption). More recent data suggests that being stably married or being in a happy marriage is associated with better sleep (Troxel et al. 2009, 2010), another critical health behavior. Marriage has also been linked to psychological factors such as lowered stress and depression, which have demonstrated influences on cardiovascular health themselves (Rozanski et al. 1999; Smith and Ruiz 2002). Notably, social relationships may also exert direct physiological effects on autonomic, inflammatory, or neuroendocrine pathways (Robles and Kiecolt-Glaser 2003).

Sex Differences in the Effects of Marriage on Health

Based on their review of the marriage and health literature, Kiecolt-Glaser and Newton (2001) concluded that women may be more vulnerable to the health consequences associated with marital distress than men. For example, Coyne et al. (2001) reported that among male and female coronary heart disease (CHD) patients, poor marital quality was a more robust predictor of mortality in women than in men. Research further suggests that this gender disparity may be attributable to gender differences in physiological responding to marital interactions. Indeed, compared with men, women display more pronounced physiological responses (i.e., cardiovascular, endocrine, and immunologic) to marital interactions, particularly when negative interactions are assessed (e.g., Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 1998; Smith et al. 1998). However, more recent data suggests that these sex differences may be less pronounced than formerly demonstrated (Manzoli et al. 2007), perhaps suggestive of a cohort effect.

Summary

Social isolation is a significant risk factor for morbidity and mortality. The marital relationship is arguably the single-most important adult social relationship and can protect against social isolation. Consistent evidence shows that married individuals have greater life satisfaction, happiness, mental health, and lower rates of morbidity and mortality compared to unmarried adults (Johnson et al. 2000; Manzoli et al. 2007). However, not all marriages are created equal. More recent data points to the importance of assessing qualitative aspects of marriage as well marital status. Indeed, evidence suggests that marriage is health-protective, particularly if it is a high-quality marriage. Understanding the mechanisms underlying the health effects of marital status and quality remains a critical next step in order to understand how relationships “get under the skin” to impact health and well-being.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Alcohol Abuse and Dependence](#)
- ▶ [Alcohol Consumption](#)
- ▶ [Smoking Behavior](#)
- ▶ [Social Stress](#)
- ▶ [Social Support](#)

References and Readings

- Coyne, J. C., Rohrbough, M. J., Shoham, V., Sonnega, J. S., Nicklas, J. M., & Cranford, J. A. (2001). Prognostic importance of marital quality for survival of congestive heart failure. *The American Journal of Cardiology*, 88, 526–529.
- Gallo, L. C., Troxel, W. M., Kuller, L. H., Sutton-Tyrrell, K., Edmundowicz, D., & Matthews, K. A. (2003a). Marital status, marital quality, and atherosclerotic burden in postmenopausal women. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65, 952–962.
- Gallo, L. C., Troxel, W. M., Matthews, K. A., & Kuller, L. H. (2003b). Marital status and quality in middle-aged women: Associations with levels and trajectories of cardiovascular risk factors. *Health Psychology*, 22, 453–463.
- Gove, W. R., Hughes, M., & Style, C. B. (1983). Does marriage have positive effects on the psychological well-being of the individual? *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 24, 122–131.
- Holt-Lunstad, J., Birmingham, W., & Jones, B. Q. (2008). Is there something unique about marriage? The relative impact of marital status, relationship quality, and network social support on ambulatory blood pressure and mental health. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 35, 239–244.
- Holt-Lunstad, J., Smith, T. B., & Layton, J. B. (2010). Social relationships and mortality risk: A meta-analytic review. *PLoS Medicine*, 7, e1000316.
- Inaba, A., Thoits, P. A., Ueno, K., Gove, W. R., Evenson, R. J., & Sloan, M. (2005). Depression in the United States and Japan: Gender, marital status, and SES patterns. *Social Science & Medicine*, 61, 2280–2292.
- Jaffe, D. H., Manor, O., Eisenbach, Z., & Neumark, Y. D. (2007). The protective effect of marriage on mortality in a dynamic society. *Annals of Epidemiology*, 17, 540–547.
- Johnson, N. J., Backlund, E., Sorlie, P. D., & Loveless, C. A. (2000). Marital status and mortality: The national longitudinal mortality study. *Annals of Epidemiology*, 10, 224–238.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., & Newton, T. L. (2001). Marriage and health: His and hers. *Psychological Bulletin*, 127, 472–503.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Glaser, R., Cacioppo, J. T., & Malarkey, W. B. (1998). Marital stress: Immunologic,

neuroendocrine, and autonomic correlates. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 840, 656–663.

- Manzoli, L., Villari, P., Pirone, M., & Boccia, A. (2007). Marital status and mortality in the elderly: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Social Science & Medicine*, 64, 77–94.
- Orth-Gomer, K., Wamala, S. P., Horsten, M., Schenck-Gustafsson, K., Schneiderman, N., & Mittleman, M. A. (2000). Marital stress worsens prognosis in women with coronary heart disease: The Stockholm Female Coronary Risk Study. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 284, 3008–3014.
- Robles, T. F., & Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K. (2003). The physiology of marriage: Pathways to health. *Physiology and Behavior*, 79, 409–416.
- Rozanski, A., Blumenthal, J. A., & Kaplan, J. (1999). Impact of psychological factors on the pathogenesis of cardiovascular disease and implications for therapy. *Circulation*, 99, 2192–2217.
- Smith, T. W., & Ruiz, J. M. (2002). Psychosocial influences on the development and course of coronary heart disease: Current status and implications for research and practice. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 70, 548–568.
- Smith, T. W., Gallo, L. C., Goble, L., Ngu, L. Q., & Stark, K. A. (1998). Agency, communion, and cardiovascular reactivity during marital interaction. *Health Psychology*, 17, 537–545.
- Troxel, W. M., Matthews, K. A., Gallo, L. C., & Kuller, L. H. (2005). Marital quality and occurrence of the metabolic syndrome in women. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 165, 1022–1027.
- Troxel, W. M., Buysse, D. J., Hall, M., & Matthews, K. A. (2009). Marital happiness and sleep disturbances in a multi-ethnic sample of middle-aged women. *Behavioral Sleep Medicine*, 7, 2–19.
- Troxel, W. M., Buysse, D. J., Matthews, K. A., Kravitz, H. M., Bromberger, J. T., Sowers, M., et al. (2010). Marital/cohabitation status and history in relation of sleep in midlife women. *Sleep*, 33, 862–863.

Marriage Counseling

- [Couple-Focused Therapy](#)

Martyr Behavior

- [Symptom Magnification Syndrome](#)

Masculine Role

- [Gender Role](#)

Massage

- [Massage Therapy](#)

Massage Therapy

Beate Ditzen¹ and Tiffany Field²

¹Department of Psychosocial Medicine, Heidelberg University, Heidelberg, Germany

²Touch Research Institute, University of Miami, School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Massage](#); [Touch](#)

Definition

Massage therapy (MT) has been defined as the manual manipulation of soft tissue intended to promote health and well-being (Moyer et al. 2004). This definition includes therapeutic treatments of different duration and types of touch administered. Additionally, the sites of the body where the treatment is applied can vary depending on the treatment method and the desired effects.

Types of Massage Therapy

Today, several different massage methods are in use. The most popular forms include the following.

Swedish massage (or “classic massage”), the most common form of massage in Western countries, is based on five techniques termed “effleurage” (sliding or gliding), “petrissage”

(kneading), “tapotement” (rhythmic tapping), friction, and vibration/shaking, which are applied to different parts of the body (e.g., back, shoulders, neck, legs, arms).

Reflexology massage is based on the theory that specific zones in the hands and the feet represent an image of the body. Manipulation techniques, such as pressure, applied to these areas are thought to improve functioning in related parts of the body (stomach, back, head, etc.).

Shiatsu, by origin a Japanese technique, uses pressure of fingers and palms but also rolling, brushing, vibrating, and grasping of the hands centered on the energy meridians of the whole body.

The Trager method, named after its founder, involves a gentle, rhythmic movement and touch of different body parts with the aim to relax the body, reduce pain, and increase mobility.

Effects of Massage Therapy

Efficacy varies considerably between different forms of MT and with regard to specific desired outcomes. Moreover, short-term effects of MT (e.g., immediate reduction in anxiety and stress) may differ from long-term benefits (e.g., reduced trait anxiety or depression). However, overall beneficial effects of MT have been documented for several psychiatric and medical conditions, including depression, posttraumatic stress disorder, eating disorders, attention-deficit disorder, chronic fatigue, fibromyalgia, back pain, migraine headache, postoperative pain, labor, rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis, spinal cord injury, autism, diabetes, asthma, HIV, and breast cancer, as well as in preterm neonates (Field 2002; Field et al. 2007; Moyer et al. 2004).

Underlying Mechanisms

Despite the beneficial overall effects of MT, the underlying mechanisms are only partly understood to date. General and specific effects of MT have been reported, and accordingly, the underlying biological mechanisms might vary. The stimulation of pressure receptors was suggested to

promote vagal activity, and thereby to improve parasympathetic activity (Diego et al. 2004). Beyond this, increases in serotonin, endorphins, and oxytocin might generally link MT to reduced anxiety, arousal, and depressiveness. Specific analgesic effects of MT have been interpreted in line with the gate control theory (Melzack and Wall 1965) and with increased circulation and waste elimination in the affected/treated muscles.

Overall Evaluation

MT has proven effectiveness in a variety of psychiatric and medical conditions. The underlying mechanisms and long-lasting effects of MT remain to be identified.

Cross-References

- [Gate Control Theory of Pain](#)
- [Oxytocin](#)
- [Pain](#)
- [Parasympathetic Nervous System \(PNS\)](#)
- [Serotonin](#)

References and Readings

- Diego, M. A., Field, T., Sanders, C., & Hernandez-Reif, M. (2004). Massage therapy of moderate and light pressure and vibrator effects on EEG and heart rate. *International Journal of Neuroscience*, 114(1), 31–44.
- Field, T. M. (2002). Massage therapy. *Medical Clinics of North America*, 86(1), 163–171.
- Field, T. M., Diego, M., & Hernandez-Reif, M. (2007). Massage therapy research. *Developmental Review*, 27, 75–89.
- Melzack, R., & Wall, P. D. (1965). Pain mechanisms: A new theory. *Science*, 150(699), 971–979.
- Moyer, C. A., Rounds, J., & Hannum, J. W. (2004). A meta-analysis of massage therapy research. *Psychological Bulletin*, 130(1), 3–18.

Massively Multiplayer Online Game (MMOG)

- [Health Gaming](#)

Massively Multiplayer Online Role-Playing Games (MMORPGS)

► [Health Gaming](#)

Masters of Public Health

► [MPH \(Masters of Public Health\)](#)

Maternal Stress

Kristin A. Long¹ and Melissa A. Alderfer²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

²Division of Oncology, The Children's Hospital of Philadelphia, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Definition

For the purpose of this entry, maternal stress is defined as the objective stressors and subjective feelings of distress or strain experienced by mothers related to having a child with a chronic illness.

Description

One out of every ten children in the USA experiences a chronic illness such as asthma, diabetes, or cancer. These illnesses may impair the child's functioning, decrease health-related quality of life, and/or contribute to emotional distress. However, because children are typically embedded within families, the impact of chronic illnesses extends beyond the individual child and includes parents and siblings. Despite changing gender roles over the past 50 years, mothers remain at the forefront of child rearing in many American families. Therefore, the reciprocal relationships

between a child's illness or treatment and mothers' emotional health are particularly important.

Many aspects of childhood chronic illnesses may be stressful for mothers. Initially, the mother may be the first person to notice the child's symptoms and suspect a medical problem. She also may be responsible for seeking medical care for her child. Although a medical problem may have been suspected, the confirmation of a diagnosis may be shocking and devastating. Chronic illnesses may be life threatening or life limiting for the child and are typically unpredictable and incurable, requiring long-term management of symptoms and side effects of treatment. Complex treatment regimens may involve frequent and/or extended hospitalizations, invasive procedures, and daily medication management and adjunct treatments, such as physical therapy. Mothers often assume the burdens of managing the child's medical treatment at the hospital and at home. These responsibilities can alter the typical mother role – nurturing her child(ren)'s development may take a backseat to ensuring adherence to a treatment regimen. Furthermore, daily demands of treatment may constrain mothers' employment and career options, potentially limiting professional goals and altering self-perceptions. These employment restrictions, coupled with medical costs stemming from the child's diagnosis and treatment, may impact the family's financial stability. In sum, mothers of children with chronic illnesses experience a range of emotional, personal, professional, and practical stressors related to their child's illness and well-being.

Evidence of Maternal Stress

Maternal stress in the face of a child's medical illness is ubiquitous and well documented. Feelings of distress and symptoms of depression and anxiety have been reported in mothers of children with cancer (Vrijmoet-Wiersma et al. 2008), cystic fibrosis (Berge and Patterson 2004), irritable bowel disease (Mackner et al. 2004), epilepsy (Rodenberg et al. 2005), congenital heart disease (Lawoko 2007), and spina bifida (Vermaes et al. 2005). Across diagnoses, shock, fear, uncertainty,

and helplessness are common experiences. For example, parents of children with kidney disease report unremitting feelings of uncertainty about prognosis; fatigue and distress arising from vigilant monitoring of symptoms and management of complex medical regimens; and feelings of anger, depression, stress, and frustration (Tong et al. 2008). Parents of children with cancer report higher levels of anxiety, depression, and traumatic stress symptoms and lower quality of life than normative or comparison samples (Alderfer and Kazak 2006). In addition to distress, mothers of children with cerebral palsy, for example, report more stressful life events than mothers of typically developing children (Rentinck et al. 2006), and higher levels of parenting stress have been reported by mothers of children with spina bifida (Vermaes et al. 2007) and cancer (Alderfer and Kazak 2006). The literature suggests that distress is generally greatest at the time of diagnosis, and for most mothers, improves with time.

Risk and Protective Factors

Although stress is common among mothers of children with chronic illnesses, there is considerable variability in the intensity and duration of distress experienced by mothers. Perceived amount of and satisfaction with social support has been found to be a powerful protective factor against distress for mothers of children with chronic illnesses including cerebral palsy (Rentinck et al. 2006), congenital heart disease (Lawoko 2007), cancer (Vrijmoet-Wiersma et al. 2008), and spina bifida (Vermaes et al. 2005). Similarly, a positive family environment buffers against maternal distress in the context childhood chronic illnesses such as spina bifida (Vermaes et al. 2005) and cancer (Vrijmoet-Wiersma et al. 2008). In addition to social and family factors, mothers' positive beliefs about the illness, the medical team, and one's ability to manage the illness seem to be important for adjustment. For example, in the context of childhood cancer, more positive adjustment is reported when parents conceptualize the illness as a manageable, meaningful experience; report higher self-efficacy; and endorse greater trust in the healthcare team.

Personal characteristics, such as trait anxiety and reliance upon disengaged or emotion-focused coping strategies, have been found to be associated with greater levels of distress (Alderfer and Kazak 2006). Across illnesses, sociodemographic factors predicting greater maternal stress include minority status, unemployment, financial strain, lower levels of education, and higher levels of concurrent, non-illness-related stressors. Surprisingly, objective indices of illness severity generally do not influence maternal stress. In general, parents who endorse greater emotional strain at the time of their child's diagnosis continue to experience elevated distress even after the treatment ends.

Effects of Maternal Stress on the Family

Systems theories suggest that both the child's illness and maternal adjustment to illness-related stressors impact the family. For example, the literature shows that children with cancer report more anxiety, hopelessness, depression, internalizing problems, and externalizing problems when their mothers report more depression and anxiety, or poorer global mental health (Alderfer and Kazak 2006). Healthy siblings of children with various medical diagnoses are also at elevated risk for psychological distress (Sharpe and Rossiter 2002), and a small literature suggests that siblings of children with medical illnesses exhibit more behavioral problems and poorer overall adaptation when their mothers report higher levels of distress (Alderfer and Kazak 2006).

The literature remains inconclusive about how maternal and paternal stress are related, with some work suggesting that congruence in coping style may be important for understanding the relationship between levels of parents' distress. Higher levels of anxiety and depression and discrepancies in perceptions of appropriate levels of emotional expression in mothers and fathers have been linked to greater marital distress in the context of childhood cancer (Alderfer and Kazak 2006). At the family level, there are likely to be bidirectional relationships between maternal stress and aspects of family functioning (e.g., cohesion and communication), but more research is needed.

Effects of Maternal Stress on the Medical Condition

Pediatric illnesses are increasingly conceptualized using transactional models considering biological, psychological, and social influences. Accordingly, maternal stress is one psychosocial influence on the child's disease course. For example, the pediatric asthma literature shows that family characteristics, including caregiver mental health and perceived stress, impact outcomes such as asthma symptoms, healthcare utilization, and quality of life (Kaugars et al. 2004). One possible mechanism is that maternal stress interferes with asthma management by reducing adherence to treatment protocols, increasing exposure to allergens or irritants (e.g., tobacco smoke) that exacerbate asthma symptoms, or limiting the degree to which treatment protocols are incorporated into daily routines.

In illnesses known to be exacerbated by stress (e.g., asthma, cardiovascular disease, diabetes), the relationship between maternal stress and child health outcomes may be mediated by stress-induced physiological changes to the child's immune and neuroendocrine systems. In pediatric asthma, the patient's reactivity to maternal stress can lead to alterations in the immune response resulting in increased inflammation or susceptibility to upper respiratory infections, leading to asthma exacerbations (Wright et al. 1998).

Interventions Addressing Maternal Stress

Given increased stress in mothers of children with chronic illnesses, along with the impact of this stress on the family's psychosocial functioning and the child's medical status, interventions have been designed to alleviate mothers' distress and/or improve their adaptive functioning. Also, family interventions have been designed to provide education, promote adherence, improve family functioning, or reduce family members' distress.

A relatively small number of psychosocial interventions have been empirically evaluated. Results consistently show that educational interventions are not effective in reducing maternal distress across illnesses, while social support and cognitive-behavioral therapy interventions show

more promise (Drotar 2006). For example, mothers of children with cystic fibrosis, asthma, and diabetes enrolled in a social support intervention that paired mothers of children with the same diagnosis reported reduced distress. In childhood cancer, a meta-analysis evaluating behavioral, cognitive-behavioral, family systems, or psychoeducational interventions reported small but significant mean effect sizes for decreased parent distress and improved parent adjustment (Pai et al. 2006).

Summary

As primary caretakers, mothers of children with chronic illnesses experience a range of practical and emotional stressors related to their child's medical diagnosis and treatment, on top of normative childrearing, employment, and/or household management tasks. These sustained responsibilities can take an emotional toll. Mothers of children with chronic illnesses endorse strong negative emotions including shock, fear, and helplessness, along with elevated levels of depression, anxiety, and traumatic stress symptoms. Positive family environments and greater perceived social support may buffer against maternal distress, and at the same time, maternal stress may influence the psychosocial functioning of other family members. Maternal stress also can impact the child's illness course via less effective illness management behaviors and/or changes to the immune or endocrine systems. Interventions targeting maternal distress have modest empirical support, but more research is needed.

Cross-References

- [Caregiver/Caregiving and Stress](#)
- [Family Social Support](#)
- [Family Systems Theory](#)
- [Family, Caregiver](#)
- [Stress, Caregiver](#)

References and Further Readings

- Alderfer, M. A., & Kazak, A. E. (2006). Family issues when a child is on treatment for cancer. In R. T. Brown (Ed.), *Comprehensive handbook of childhood cancer and sickle cell disease: A biopsychosocial approach*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Berge, J. M., & Patterson, J. M. (2004). Cystic fibrosis and the family: A review and critique of the literature. *Families, Systems & Health*, 22, 74–100.
- Drotar, D. (2006). *Psychological interventions in childhood chronic illness*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Kaugars, A. S., Klinnert, M. D., & Bender, B. G. (2004). Family influences on pediatric asthma. *Journal of Pediatric Psychology*, 29, 475–491.
- Lawoko, S. (2007). Factors influencing satisfaction and well-being among parents of congenital heart disease children: Development of a conceptual model based on a literature review. *Scandinavian Journal of Caring Sciences*, 21, 106–117.
- Mackner, L. M., Sisson, D. P., & Crandall, W. V. (2004). Review: Psychosocial issues in pediatric inflammatory bowel disease. *Journal of Pediatric Psychology*, 29, 243–257.
- Pai, A. L. H., Drotar, D., Zebracki, K., Moore, M., & Youngstrom, E. (2006). A meta-analysis of the effects of psychological interventions in pediatric oncology on outcomes of psychological distress and adjustment. *Journal of Pediatric Psychology*, 31, 978–988.
- Ratliffe, C. E., Harrigan, R. C., Haley, J., Tse, A., & Olson, T. (2002). Stress in families with medically fragile children. *Issues in Comprehensive Pediatric Nursing*, 25, 167–188.
- Retinck, I. C. M., Ketelaar, M., Jongsmans, M. J., & Gorter, J. W. (2006). Parents of children with cerebral palsy: A review of factors related to the process of adaptation. *Child: Care, Health and Development*, 33, 161–169.
- Rodenberg, R., Meijer, A. M., Dekovic, M., & Aldenkamp, A. P. (2005). Family factors and psychopathology in children with epilepsy: A literature review. *Epilepsy & Behavior*, 6, 488–503.
- Sharpe, D., & Rossiter, L. (2002). Siblings of children with a chronic illness: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Pediatric Psychology*, 27, 699–710.
- Tong, A., Lowe, A., Sainsbury, P., & Craig, J. C. (2008). Experiences of parents who have children with chronic kidney disease: A systematic review of qualitative studies. *Pediatrics*, 121, 349–360.
- Vermaes, I. P. R., Gerris, J. R. M., & Janssens, J. M. A. M. (2007). Parents' social adjustment in families of children with spina bifida: A theory-driven review. *Journal of Pediatric Psychology*, 32, 1214–1226.
- Vermaes, I. P. R., Janssens, J. M. A. M., Bosman, A. M. T., & Gerris, J. R. M. (2005). Parents' psychological adjustment in families of children with Spina Bifida: A meta-analysis. *BMC Pediatrics*, 5, 32.
- Vrijmoet-Wiersma, C. M. J., et al. (2008). Assessment of parental psychological stress in cancer: A review. *Journal of Pediatric Psychology*, 33, 694–706.
- Wright, R. J., Rodriguez, M., & Cohen, S. (1998). Review of psychosocial stress and asthma: An integrated biopsychosocial approach. *Thorax*, 53, 1066–1074.

Matthews, Karen

Rebecca C. Thurston

Department of Psychiatry, School of Medicine,
University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Biographical Information



Karen Matthews was born in Los Angeles, CA. She received her undergraduate degree in psychology from the University of California, Berkeley, and her Ph.D. in psychology from the University of Texas at Austin, where she worked with David C. Glass, studying the Type A behavior pattern. Her first faculty position was at Kansas State University, where she joined in 1976 as an Assistant Professor. She later joined the faculty of the University of Pittsburgh's Psychiatry Department in 1979, jointly appointed to the Departments of Psychology and Epidemiology. She was promoted to Professor in 1989 and named as Distinguished Professor in 2009.

Matthews investigates the psychosocial characteristics of individuals and their early life experiences that ultimately lead to coronary

atherosclerosis and hypertension later in life. Her work has focused on two stages of the life span when change in cardiovascular risk reliably occurs: adolescence and midlife. Change can provide an optimal setting for observing how hormonal and other biologic processes, social roles, and psychological characteristics interact to accelerate an individual's cardiovascular risk. Her approach has integrated knowledge and methods derived from psychology, psychiatry, epidemiology, and cardiology.

Major Accomplishments

Matthews has made influential contributions to several areas of health psychology. Her early work was in the Type A behavior pattern, and her detailed analysis of psychological perspectives of Type A later became a *Citation Classic*. She has since been a major contributor to the understanding of how stress impacts the cardiovascular system. She has made key contributions to understanding how psychological stress serves as a potential link between personality characteristics, such as hostility and Type A; social and environmental factors, such as low socioeconomic status; and the development of cardiovascular disease. In work that has been ongoing for over three decades, she has proven herself to be one of the earliest health psychologists to incorporate a lifespan perspective in health psychology, tracing the early origins of stress reactivity and stressful environments to the development of cardiovascular risk later in life.

Matthews has also conducted seminal work in understanding cardiovascular risk in women. Her work, supported by a MERIT award by the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI), has included elucidating gender differences in cardiovascular and neuroendocrine stress reactivity, including the role of the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis in stress reactivity in women. She has also made major contributions to the understanding of the epidemiology of cardiovascular risk in women. With epidemiologist Lewis Kuller, she has played a central role in elucidating the symptomatic and cardiovascular

changes occurring with the menopausal transition. This work has helped form the basis of one of the largest and currently ongoing multiethnic studies of women transitioning through menopause, for which she is a principal investigator. Reflective of the multidisciplinary nature of this work, Matthews' approach represents a unique blend of concepts and methods from psychophysiology, developmental psychobiology, and epidemiology.

Matthews has had a major role in establishing health psychology as a formal subdiscipline of psychology. With Steve Manuck and Al Shapiro (deceased), she designed one of the first cardiovascular behavioral medicine research training programs, which began in 1983 (HL07560 through 2013). This program was one of the earliest formal high-quality training programs in health psychology. Matthews also served as Editor-in-Chief of *Health Psychology* from 1990 to 1995, with the goal of making the journal the most important health psychology journal in the field and negotiating with the American Psychological Association (APA) to make it the primary APA health psychology journal. Further, she provided the perspectives of a health psychologist on several NIH advisory panels, including the National Heart, Lung, Blood Advisory Council and the Center for Scientific Review Advisory Committee (Chair). She also was President of the American Psychosomatic Society (1990–1991), the second female President of the Society and one of few Presidents with a Ph.D. by that time. As the field matured, she continued to be instrumental in providing an infrastructure for advanced training and resources for health psychology research as Director of the Pittsburgh Mind-Body Center. In this role, she directed scientists at Carnegie Mellon University and the University of Pittsburgh to identify the important common pathways of risk across multiple diseases.

Reflective of her distinguished work, Matthews has received awards from diverse organizations, including American Heart Association Established Investigator; Cardiovascular Research Award from the North American Menopause Society and Pfizer; American Psychosomatic Society President's Award; Award for

Distinguished Contributions to Health Psychology, Division 38 of APA; Award for Significant Research Contribution from the Society of Pediatric Psychology; Distinguished Scientist Award from the Society of Behavioral Medicine; and APA Award for Distinguished Scientific Applications of Psychology. She became a member of the Institute of Medicine in 2002 and was awarded the Philosophiae Doctor Honoris Causa from the University of Helsinki in 2007.

Cross-References

- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- [Hypertension](#)
- [Psychosocial Characteristics](#)
- [World Health Organization \(WHO\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Chen, E., Matthews, K. A., & Boyce, W. T. (2002). Socioeconomic differences in children's health: How and why do these relationships change with age? *Psychological Bulletin*, 128, 295–329.
- Gallo, L. C., & Matthews, K. A. (2003). Understanding the association between socioeconomic status and physical health: Do negative emotions play a role? *Psychological Bulletin*, 129, 10–51.
- Low, C. A., Thurston, R. C., & Matthews, K. A. (2010). Psychosocial factors in the development of heart disease in women: Current research and future directions. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 72, 842–854.
- Matthews, K. A. (1982). Psychological perspectives on the type A behavior pattern. *Psychological Bulletin*, 91, 293–323.
- Matthews, K. A. (1989). Are sociodemographic variables markers for psychological determinants of health? *Health Psychology*, 8, 641–648.
- Matthews, K. A. (2005). Psychological perspectives on the development of coronary heart disease. *The American Psychologist*, 60, 783–796.
- Matthews, K. A., & Gump, B. B. (2002). Chronic work stress and marital dissolution increase risk of posttrial mortality in men from the Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 162, 309–315.
- Matthews, K. A., & Woodall, K. L. (1988). Childhood origins of overt Type A behaviors and cardiovascular reactivity to behavioral stressors. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 10, 47–59.
- Matthews, K. A., Glass, D. C., Rosenman, R. H., & Bortner, R. W. (1977). Competitive drive, pattern A, and coronary heart disease: A further analysis of some data from the Western Collaborative Group Study. *Journal of Chronic Diseases*, 30, 489–498.
- Matthews, K. A., Meilahn, E., Kuller, L. H., Kelsey, S. F., Caggiula, A. W., & Wing, R. R. (1989). Menopause and risk factors for coronary heart disease. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 321, 641–646.
- Matthews, K. A., Wing, R. R., Kuller, L. H., Meilahn, E. N., Kelsey, S. F., Costello, E. J., et al. (1990). Influences of natural menopause on psychological characteristics and symptoms of middle-aged healthy women. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 58, 345–351.
- Matthews, K. A., Kuller, L. H., Wing, R. R., Meilahn, E. N., & Plantinga, P. (1996a). Prior to use of estrogen replacement therapy, are users healthier than nonusers? *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 143, 971–978.
- Matthews, K. A., Woodall, K. L., Kenyon, K., & Jacob, T. (1996b). Negative family environment as a predictor of boys' future status on measures of hostile attitudes, interview behavior, and anger expression. *Health Psychology*, 15, 30–37.
- Matthews, K. A., Kuller, L. H., Sutton-Tyrrell, K., & Chang, Y. F. (2001). Changes in cardiovascular risk factors during the perimenopause and postmenopause and carotid artery atherosclerosis in healthy women. *Stroke*, 32, 1104–1111.
- Matthews, K. A., Gump, B. B., Harris, K. F., Haney, T. L., & Barefoot, J. C. (2004a). Hostile behaviors predict cardiovascular mortality among men enrolled in the Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial. *Circulation*, 109, 66–70.
- Matthews, K. A., Katholi, C. R., McCreath, H., Whooley, M. A., Williams, D. R., Zhu, S., et al. (2004b). Blood pressure reactivity to psychological stress predicts hypertension in the CARDIA study. *Circulation*, 110, 74–78.
- Matthews, K. A., Owens, J. F., Salomon, K., Harris, K. F., & Berga, S. L. (2005). Influence of hormone therapy on the cardiovascular responses to stress of postmenopausal women. *Biological Psychology*, 69, 39–56.
- Matthews, K. A., Kuller, L. H., Chang, Y., & Edmundowicz, D. (2007). Premenopausal risk factors for coronary and aortic calcification: A 20-year follow-up in the healthy women study. *Preventive Medicine*, 45, 302–308.
- Matthews, K. A., Kamarck, T. W., Hall, H., Strollo, P. J., Owens, J. F., Buysse, D. J., et al. (2008). Blood pressure dipping and sleep disturbance in African-American and Caucasian men and women. *American Journal of Hypertension*, 21, 826–831.
- Midei, A. J., & Matthews, K. A. (2011). Interpersonal violence in childhood as a risk factor for obesity: A systematic review of the literature and proposed pathways. *Obesity Reviews*, 12, e159–e172.
- Raikkonen, K., & Matthews, K. A. (2008). Do dispositional pessimism and optimism predict ambulatory blood pressure during school days and nights in adolescents? *Journal of Personality*, 76, 605–630.

- Thurston, R. C., & Matthews, K. A. (2009). Racial and socioeconomic disparities in arterial stiffness and intima media thickness among adolescents. *Social Science & Medicine*, 68, 807–813.
- Thurston, R. C., Kuller, L. H., Edmundowicz, D., & Matthews, K. A. (2010). History of hot flashes and aortic calcification among postmenopausal women. *Meno-pause*, 17, 256–261.

Maximal Aerobic Capacity Test

► [Maximal Exercise Stress Test](#)

Maximal Aerobic Power Test

► [Maximal Exercise Stress Test](#)

Maximal Exercise Heart Rate

James Edward Turner
Department for Health, University of Bath,
Bath, UK

Synonyms

$HR_{\max}$; Tachycardia

Definition (and Description)

Maximum exercise heart rate refers to the highest or fastest rate at which the heart can beat during exercise and is expressed as the number of heartbeats per unit of time, usually beats per minute (bpm).

Heart rate increases linearly with oxygen consumption and, therefore, exercise intensity. Maximum exercise heart rate is most accurately recorded upon volitional exhaustion and termination of a maximal exercise stress test. Maximal

exercise heart rate declines with aging; therefore, several formulas are also available to estimate maximal heart rate on the basis of age. The most widely used formula; $HR_{\max} = 220 - \text{age}$ (in years), provides a rough approximation. However, due to lower maximal heart rates among well-trained individuals, several population-specific formulas also exist. In behavioral research, estimated or measured maximal exercise heart rate can be used to prescribe exercise (e.g., walking speed) based upon the relationship between oxygen consumption, heart rate, and exercise intensity.

Cross-References

► [Maximal Exercise Stress Test](#)

References and Further Readings

- McArdle, W. D., Katch, F. I., & Katch, V. L. (2001). *Exercise physiology. Energy, nutrition and human performance* (5th ed.). Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Whaley, M. H., Brubaker, P. H., & Otto, R. M. (Eds.). (2006). *ACSM's guidelines for exercise testing and prescription* (7th ed.). Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Maximal Exercise Stress Test

James Edward Turner
Department for Health, University of Bath,
Bath, UK

Synonyms

[Cardiac stress test](#); [Exercise tolerance test](#); [Fitness test](#); [Graded exercise test](#); [Maximal aerobic capacity test](#); [Maximal aerobic power test](#); [Maximal oxygen uptake test](#); [Symptom-limited exercise test](#); [VO₂max test](#)

Definition

An exercise stress test is a general term used to describe the assessment of cardiorespiratory functional capacity for either health and fitness reasons or for clinical and diagnostic purposes. Such tests, primarily conducted on a motorized treadmill or stationary cycle ergometer, involve exercising at several workloads or exercise-intensities/difficulties, while cardiovascular and respiratory measurements are recorded. Depending on the rationale for testing, the type of test employed, and the health and fitness status of the individual taking part, exercise stress tests might terminate at volitional exhaustion, upon observation of a particular clinical symptom, or at some predetermined outcome measure.

Description

Maximal oxygen uptake (VO_2max) is the accepted measure of cardiorespiratory fitness and is the product of cardiac output and arterial-venous oxygen difference (i.e., the ability to extract and utilize oxygen from the blood). During exercise, cardiac output is markedly increased above resting levels and shows further elevations when the intensity or difficulty of exercise is increased. Using a treadmill-based exercise test, for example, exercise intensity is increased by adjusting the speed and gradient of the treadmill belt. VO_2max is measured using closed-circuit spirometry: analyzing the fractions of expired oxygen and carbon dioxide. VO_2max is reached, when despite subsequent increases in exercise intensity, oxygen consumption plateaus. VO_2max is expressed as milliliters or liters of oxygen consumed per minute (ml/l min^{-1}) and is often adjusted for body mass or fat free mass (i.e., dividing oxygen consumption by kilograms). This value is dependent on the health and fitness status of individuals, age, gender, body size and composition, as well as genetic factors.

Exercise stress tests can be maximal or submaximal. Maximal tests, in which individuals

exercise with verbal encouragement until they are unable to continue (i.e., perceived volitional exhaustion), offer the most accurate assessments of VO_2max . Submaximal tests are terminated at an end-point, for example, when heart rate reaches a predetermined percentage of an estimated age-predicted maximum (see ► [“Maximal Exercise Heart Rate”](#)). The oxygen consumption upon termination of submaximal tests is extrapolated to predict the value at the predicted maximum heart rate (i.e., VO_2max). The decision to employ submaximal exercise testing is usually based upon the availability of equipment and possibly medical supervision. In clinical and diagnostic exercise testing, maximal or submaximal exercise tests can be used to assess the severity of disease and prognosis of patients with known or suspected coronary artery disease. Tests in this scenario often include more detailed physiological measurements in addition to expired gas fractions and heart rate measurement, such as blood pressure assessments, electrocardiogram recordings, and use of pharmacological agents and radioactive tracers. In the health and fitness industry, or in behavioral research, exercise stress tests can be used to characterize individuals in terms of cardiorespiratory fitness or used to accurately prescribe exercise training interventions.

Cross-References

- [Cardiac Output](#)
- [Pulmonary Function](#)

References and Further Readings

- McArdle, W. D., Katch, F. I., & Katch, V. L. (2001). *Exercise physiology. Energy, nutrition and human performance* (5th ed.). Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Whaley, M. H., Brubaker, P. H., & Otto, R. M. (Eds.). (2006). *ACSM's guidelines for exercise testing and prescription* (7th ed.). Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Maximal Exercise Test

- ▶ [Graded Exercise](#)

Maximal Oxygen Uptake Test

- ▶ [Maximal Exercise Stress Test](#)

MBCR

- ▶ [Mindfulness-Based Interventions](#)

MBCT

- ▶ [Mindfulness-Based Interventions](#)

MB-EAT

- ▶ [Mindfulness-Based Eating](#)

MBIs

- ▶ [Mindfulness-Based Eating](#)

MBMD

- ▶ [Millon Behavioral Medicine Diagnostic \(MBMD\)](#)

MBSR

- ▶ [Mindfulness-Based Interventions](#)

McGill Pain Index

- ▶ [McGill Pain Questionnaire](#)

McGill Pain Questionnaire

Tavis S. Campbell, Jillian A. Johnson and
Kristin A. Zernicke
Department of Psychology, University of Calgary,
Calgary, AB, Canada

Synonyms

[McGill pain index](#)

Definition

The McGill Pain Questionnaire (MPQ) was developed in 1971 by pain researcher Ronald Melzack. It was devised as a system for subjectively assessing pain experiences along three dimensions. Scoring of this inventory provides a quantitative index of pain (Melzack 1975).

- The first dimension, *sensory quality*, focuses on the variations that occur in the sensation of pain, such as temporal, spatial, pressure, and thermal properties.
- The second dimension, *affective quality*, highlights the fear, tension, and autonomic properties that are part of the pain experience.
- The third dimension, *evaluative quality*, refers to the words that describe the subjective overall intensity of the pain experience.

In addition to these three dimensions of pain, the MPQ is subdivided into four parts (Melzack 1975).

- Part 1 consists of front and back drawings of the human body. Individuals indicate the location of pain by marking the drawing with an “I”

or “E” to indicate if the pain experienced is internal or external.

- Part 2 consists of 20 sets of descriptive words to describe the pain experience. The individual circles the word in each set that best describes their experience of pain. The words are ordered from least to most painful.
- Part 3 asks how the patient’s pain changes with time (continuous, intermittent, etc.).
- Part 4 measures the strength or intensity of the pain on a five-point scale from “mild” to “excruciating”. The Present Pain Index (PPI) score is derived from this section of the scale.

The McGill Pain Questionnaire is among the most widely used brief assessment tools for pain.

Cross-References

► [Pain](#)

References and Readings

- Melzack, R. (1975). The McGill pain questionnaire: Major properties and scoring methods. *Pain, 1*, 277–299.
- Melzack, R. (1987). The short-form McGill pain questionnaire. *Pain, 30*, 191–197.
- Melzack, R., & Torgerson, W. S. (1971). On the language of pain. *Anesthesiology, 34*, 50–59.

Mean (Average)

J. Rick Turner
Cardiovascular Safety, Quintiles, Durham, NC, USA
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Arithmetic mean](#); [Average](#)

Definition

The mean of a set of data points is defined as their sum divided by the total number of data points. The actual name for this parameter is the “arithmetic mean,” a term that distinguishes it unambiguously from the geometric mean, which is defined quite differently. Having said this, the geometric mean is seldom used in behavioral medicine, and it is a reasonable assumption that the “default” value of the term “mean” in the literature is the arithmetic mean.

The mean is a measure of central tendency that is most appropriately used for continuous data, i.e., variables that are measured on a continuous, uninterrupted scale and can take any value on that scale. Relevant examples are height, weight, blood pressure, and heart rate. Other common measures of central tendency are the median and the mode. Each of these can provide a more meaningful summary of a data set depending on the characteristics of the data, and care should be taken when deciding which measure to present when reporting the data. If there is any doubt in this choice, a good practice is to present more than one of them.

Cross-References

- [Central Tendency](#)
- [Median](#)
- [Mode](#)

Meaning (Purpose)

Login S. George and Crystal L. Park
Department of Psychology, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Synonyms

[Beliefs](#); [Goals](#); [Purpose](#); [Worldview](#).

Definition

Most definitions of meaning encompass a sense of understanding, significance, and purpose in life. Meaning refers to how an individual perceives and conceptualizes life, one's self, and relationships between the two. Meaning consists of global and situational aspects. Global meaning refers to individuals' general orienting systems and consists of beliefs, goals, and subjective feelings of purpose or meaning in life. Situational meaning refers to the meaning associated with specific events or contexts. Situational meaning is the result of the interaction between specific contexts and individuals' global meaning systems (e.g., the degree to which a specific event violates or fits an individual's general beliefs regarding the world).

Description

Research has established links between each of the components of global meaning (beliefs, goals, and a subjective sense of meaning) with general levels of physical and psychological health (see Park 2011, for a review). Global beliefs regarding the amount of control individuals have over the circumstances in their lives have been shown to be positively related to health and well-being (see Lachman and Firth 2004, for a review). Other global beliefs, such as beliefs in a just world, appear to buffer stressors in both lab-based and workplace settings. The effects of global beliefs on health appear to be the result of both physiological and behavioral pathways. For example, a high sense of control appears to moderate physical and psychological reactivity to daily stressors and has also been found to be inversely related to aortic calcification. Many studies have found that performance of health behaviors mediated the relationship between control beliefs and health benefits, suggesting that behavioral pathways are involved in the relationship between global beliefs and health.

Research on the relationship between global goals and health suggests that various dimensions of goals have different relations with health. Goals have multiple dimensions such as structure,

process, content, pursuit, attainment, maintenance, and disengagement, and relationships with health may vary across them (Maes and Karoly 2005). Preliminary research suggests that being committed to goals that are perceived as attainable, feeling that one is making progress toward his/her goals, and experiencing less goal ambivalence and goal conflict are related to better health.

The subjective experience of meaning in life seems to be related to better physical and psychological health as well. Studies have found an inverse relationship between meaning and mortality rates, and a positive relationship with meaning and self-rated health and psychological well-being. A sense of meaning in life appears to affect well-being in both direct and indirect pathways. A higher level of meaning in life has been related to better autonomous functioning, lower heart rate, and decreased heart rate reactivity. It has also been related to the performance of health-promoting activities in various samples such as Anglo women, Japanese adults, and cardiac outpatients.

The impact of meaning on health seems to be particularly salient during crises or highly stressful experiences perceived to entail a high probability of damage or loss (e.g., receiving a diagnosis of serious illness). Crises may disrupt global meaning, which can diminish one's sense of meaning or purpose in life. Global beliefs affect how individuals deal with and recover from stressful situations. For example, beliefs regarding control have been found to moderate the impact of economic hardship on health and to predict lower levels of pain, stress, fatigue, and blood pressure in individuals suffering from rheumatoid arthritis. A high sense of control may help individuals make more adaptive appraisals of stressful situations (e.g., "this is a situation I can handle") and enable persistence in coping efforts.

Crises may also disrupt individuals' global goals. Studies suggest that the extent to which individuals perceive an event to disrupt or hinder their goals affect physical and psychological well-being. The higher the perceived disruption of goals, the more negative the impact. The subjective sense of meaning in life seems to play a

role in the impact of crises as well. A high sense of meaning can serve as a resource that allows individuals to maintain and achieve higher health-related quality of life amidst stressful situations.

Current literature on meaning and its impact on emotional and physical health are largely correlational, which renders it impossible to draw conclusions about causal links between meaning and health. It is possible that there is a bidirectional relationship between the two or that the direction of causality is the reverse of what has been commonly presumed (i.e., that the better one's physical and psychological health, the more likely one is to perceive meaning in life). It is also possible that unidentified third variables (confounds) are influencing the relationship between the two.

Cross-References

- [Beliefs](#)
- [Coping](#)

References and Readings

- Lachman, M. E., & Firth, K. M. P. (2004). The adaptive value of feeling in control during midlife. In O. G. Brim, C. D. Ryff, & R. C. Kessler (Eds.), *How healthy are we? A national study on well-being at midlife* (pp. 320–349). Chicago: The University of Chicago Press.
- Lachman, M. E. (2006). Control: Perceived control over aging-related declines: Adaptive beliefs and behaviors. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 15, 282–286.
- Maes, S., & Karoly, P. (2005). Self-regulation assessment and intervention in physical health and illness: A review. *Applied Psychology: An International Review*, 54, 267–299.
- Park, C. L. (2010). Making sense of the meaning literature: An integrative review of meaning making and its effects on adjustment to stressful life events. *Psychological Bulletin*, 136, 257–301.
- Park, C. L. (2011). Meaning, spirituality, and growth: Protective and resilience factors in health and illness. In A. Baum, T. Revenson, & J. Singer (Eds.), *Handbook of health psychology* (2nd ed.). London: Psychology Press.
- Wong, P., & Fry, P. (1998). *The human quest for meaning: A handbook of psychological research and clinical applications*. Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

Measures of Quality of Life

Natalie E. Bustillo

Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Coral Gables, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Measures of well-being](#); [Quality of life assessments](#); [Quality of life instruments](#)

Definition

General quality of life (QOL) refers to how individuals function in the various life domains (The WHOQOL Group 1998). General QOL encompasses how well individuals are able to carry their daily responsibilities (e.g., work and family). Factors that contribute to general QOL include physical well-being, emotional well-being, social well-being, and functional well-being. Health-related QOL refers to physical and mental well-being as it relates to specific diseases (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] 2000). Health-related QOL includes how well individuals are able to cope with the physical limitations that result from specific diseases as treatments may be accompanied by decrements in QOL. Health-related QOL is also referred to as disease-specific QOL.

Description

General QOL

The following are examples of commonly used measures that have been developed to assess general QOL.

The Medical Outcomes Study 36-Item Short-Form Health Survey (SF-36; Ware and Sherbourne 1992) consists of eight QOL domains. The eight domains are: (1) limitations in physical activities because of health problems,

(2) limitations in social activities because of physical or emotional problems, (3) limitations in usual role activities because of physical health problems, (4) bodily pain, (5) general mental health (psychological stress and well-being), (6) limitations in usual role activities because of emotional problems, (7) vitality (energy and fatigue), and (8) general health perceptions. The measure is a subjective, self-report measure that is easy to administer. The questions have Likert scale response options.

The Medical Outcomes Study SF-36 was used to develop the Medical Outcomes Study 12-Item Short-Form Health Survey SF-12 (SF-12; Ware et al. 1996). The SF-12 consists of two subscales that each contains 12 items. The first subscale is Physical Component Summary and the second subscale is the Mental Component Summary. The advantage of using the SF-12 instead of the SF-36 is that it takes less time to administer due to having fewer items and may be more beneficial for research studies characterized by long assessment batteries. The reliability of the Physical Component Summary ranged between 0.864 and 0.890, while the reliability of the Mental Component Summary ranged between 0.760 and 0.774 among populations in the United States and United Kingdom.

The World Health Organization Quality of Life (WHOQOL) instrument was designed to assess cross-cultural QOL (World Health Organization [WHO] 1993). The WHOQOL-BREF was later developed as a brief version of the original measure in order to make its use more convenient (The WHOQOL Group 1998). The WHOQOL-BREF consists of 26 items that tap into the domains of physical health (e.g., sleep, pain, and energy), psychological health (e.g., happiness, concentration, and feeling positive about self), social relationships (e.g., social support and sexual life), and environment (e.g., safety, financial resources, and home environment). The measure also contains one overall health question and one overall QOL question. The WHOQOL-BREF has been developed in several countries across the world, including United States, China, Czech Republic, Indonesia, Poland, Russia, and Thailand. The

development of the WHOQOL-BREF allows for the comparability of general QOL across various cultures.

Health-Related QOL

Disease-specific QOL can also be assessed for various illnesses. The following are examples of measures that have been used to evaluate the health-related QOL of cancer, heart disease, and diabetes.

The Memorial Symptom Assessment Scale Short Form (MSAS-SF) is a shortened version of the Memorial Symptom Assessment Scale (Chang et al. 2000). The MSAS-SF consists of 32 items that tap into physiological and psychological symptoms. Each item contains two parts. The first part of the item assesses whether or not the symptom was present in the past 7 days. The second part of the item assesses the distress caused by the symptom (if the symptom was indeed present). The MSAS-SF yields a physical symptom subscale score, psychological symptom subscale score, and global distress index. Although the measure does not assess QOL specific to any one specific illness, psychological and physical symptom severity is an important component of health-related QOL. The MSAS-SF was validated among a sample of cancer survivors and demonstrated adequate reliability. The Cronbach's alpha coefficients for the composite scores were 0.82, 0.76, and 0.80 for the physical symptom subscale score, psychological symptom subscale score, and global distress index, respectively.

The Functional Assessment of Cancer Therapy (FACT) scale was developed to assess general cancer-related QOL for survivors receiving cancer treatment (FACT-G; Cella et al. 1993). The FACT-G was validated using a sample of breast, lung, and colorectal cancer and consisted of 29 items. The FACT-G yields five composite scores: physical well-being, social/family well-being, relationship with doctor, emotional well-being, and functional well-being. A total score may be derived by calculating the sum of the five subscales. Although the FACT-G was originally designed to assess general cancer QOL, new

scales have been developed in order to assess cancer-specific QOL. Specifically, the FACT instrument is available for survivors of breast cancer, bladder cancer, bone marrow transplant, primary brain tumors, colorectal cancer, cervical cancer, head and neck cancer, lung cancer, ovarian cancer, prostate cancer, and HIV infection. The FACT is commonly used to assess cancer-specific QOL and has been translated to seven languages (Cella and Bonomi 1996).

The MacNew Heart Disease Health-related Quality of Life (MacNew) Questionnaire was developed to evaluate health-related QOL in patients with coronary heart disease (Höfer et al. 2004). The MacNew is comprised of 27 items and yields three domains: physical limitations, emotional function, and social function. The internal consistency of the MacNew reflects adequate reliability (Cronbach's alpha ranges from 0.93 to 0.95 for the three domains). The MacNew is available in various languages, including English, Dutch, Farsi, German, and Spanish.

The Diabetes-39 is a measure designed to assess the disease-specific QOL of individuals diagnosed with diabetes (Boyer and Earp 1997). The scale is comprised of 39 items and 5 subscales: (1) energy and mobility, (2) diabetes control, (3) anxiety and worry, (4) social burden, and (5) sexual functioning. The scale has been found to correlate with the well-established Sf-36 instrument, suggesting the measure is a valid tool for assessing diabetes-specific QOL.

Overall, several measures have been developed in order to assess general and health-related QOL. Assessing QOL may aid in further understanding how individuals are impacted by diseases, both physically and psychologically. Advances in the field of QOL measurement may play a role in the development of effective interventions to treat individuals who have experienced decrements in QOL due to illness.

Cross-References

- [Health-Related Quality of Life](#)
- [Physical Well-being](#)
- [Quality of Life: Measurement](#)

References

- Aaronson, N. K., Ahmedzai, S., Bergman, B., Bullinger, M., Cull, A., Duez, N. J., et al. (1993). The European organization for research and treatment of cancer QLQ-C30: A quality-of-life instrument for use in international clinical trials in oncology. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 85, 365–376.
- Boyer, J. G., & Earp, J. A. L. (1997). The development of an instrument for assessing the quality of life of people with diabetes: Diabetes-39. *Medical Care*, 35, 440–453.
- Cella, D. F., & Bonomi, A. E. (1996). The functional assessment of cancer therapy (FACT) and functional assessment of HIV infection (FAHI) quality of life measurement system. In B. Spilker (Ed.), *Quality of life and pharmacoeconomics in clinical trials* (2nd ed., pp. 203–214). New York: Raven Press.
- Cella, D. F., Tulskey, D. S., Gray, G., Sarafian, B., Linn, E., Bonomi, A., et al. (1993). The functional assessment of cancer therapy scale: Development and validation of the general measure. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 11(3), 570–579.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2000). *Measuring healthy days*. Atlanta: CDC.
- Chang, V. T., Hwang, S. S., Feuerman, M., Kasimis, B. S., & Thaler, H. T. (2000). The memorial symptom assessment scale short form (MSAS-SF). *Cancer*, 89(5), 1162–1171.
- El Achhab, Y., Nejari, C., Chikri, M., & Lyoussi, B. (2008). Disease-specific health-related quality of life instruments among adults diabetic: A systematic review. *Diabetes Research and Clinical Practice*, 80(2), 171–184.
- EuroQol GRoup. (1990). EuroQol: A new facility for the emasurement of health-related quality of life. *Health Policy*, 16, 199–208.
- Groenvold, M., Petersen, M. A., Aaronson, N. K., Arraras, J. I., Blazeby, J. M., Bottomley, A., et al. (2006). The development of the EORTC QLQ-C15-PAL: A shortened questionnaire for cancer patients in palliative care. *European Journal of Cancer*, 42(1), 55–64.
- Höfer, S., Lim, L., Guyatt, G., & Oldridge, N. (2004). The MacNew heart disease health-related quality of life instrument: A summary. *Health and Quality of Life Outcomes*, 2, 3.
- Jolly, M., Pickard, A. S., Wilke, C., Mikolaitis, R. A., Teh, L., McElhone, K., et al. (2010). Lupus-specific health outcome measure for US patients: The LupusQoL-US version. *Annals of the Rheumatic Diseases*, 69, 29–33.
- Litwin, M. S., Hays, R. D., Fink, A., Ganz, P. A., Leake, B., & Brook, R. H. (1998). The UCLA prostate cancer index: Development, reliability, and validity of a health-related quality of life measure. *Medical care*, 36(7), 1002–1012.
- The WHOQOL Group. (1998). Development of the world health organization WHOQOL-BREF quality of life assessment. *Psychological Medicine*, 28(3), 551–558.

- Ware, J. E., Kosinski, M., & Keller, S. D. (1996). A 12-item short form health survey: Construction of scales and preliminary tests of reliability and validity. *Medical Care*, 34, 220–233.
- Ware, J. E., & Sherbourne, C. D. (1992). The MOS 36-item short form health survey (SF-36). *Medical Care*, 30, 473–483.
- Wei, J. T., Dunn, R. L., Litwin, M. S., Sandler, H. M., & Sanda, M. G. (2000). Development and validation of the expanded prostate cancer index composite (EPIC) for comprehensive assessment of health-related quality of life in men with prostate cancer. *Urology*, 56(6), 899–905.
- World Health Organization. (1993). *WHOQoL study protocol (MNH7PSF/93.9)*. Geneva: WHO.

straightforward (here, it is the fifth value). For an even number of data points (e.g., 10), it is the mean of the middle two observations (here, the mean of the fifth and sixth).

In comparison to the mean of a data set, the median has the advantage that it is less influenced by outliers. Consider the following data set: 3, 3, 4, 4, 5, 5, 100. The median is 4, a value which provides a good indication of the central tendency of the data set. The mean of the data set is 17.71, a value that is intuitively much less indicative of the data set's central tendency.

Measures of Well-Being

- ▶ [Measures of Quality of Life](#)

Medial Mammillary Nucleus

- ▶ [Hypothalamus](#)

Medial Preoptic Area

- ▶ [Hypothalamus](#)

Median

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

The median is a measure of central tendency. It is a value such that, when the data are arranged in order of magnitude, an equal number of data points lie above and below it. For any odd number of data points (e.g., 9), obtaining the median is

Cross-References

- ▶ [Central Tendency](#)
- ▶ [Mode](#)

Mediating Cognitions

- ▶ [Cognitive Mediators](#)

Mediators

Chris Zehr
Department of Health Studies and Gerontology,
University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Synonyms

[Intermediate variable](#)

Definition

A mediator is a variable that serves to explain the nature of the relationship between an independent variable and a dependent variable or between a predictor and criterion variable (Baron and Kenny 1986; MacKinnon et al. 2000). It provides an indirect means by which the independent variable

may affect the dependent variable. Specifically, a mediator influences the dependent variable while being influenced by the independent variable itself (MacKinnon et al. 2000). In experimental research, researchers manipulate a mediator to more clearly understand the means through which a causal effect is operating.

A simple mediational model is depicted in Fig. 1 as shown in Baron and Kenny (1986). As illustrated, path (C) represents a direct effect of the independent variable on the dependent variable when no mediator is accounted for. In contrast, the causal path linking the independent variable to the mediator (A) and the mediator to the dependent variable (B) represents an indirect effect of the independent variable on the dependent variable via the mediator (Kraemer et al. 2001). In this case, the independent variable influences the dependent variable through the mediator. If controlling for the mediator reduces the direct effect that the independent variable has on the dependent variable to zero, it can be said that complete mediation is present. However, if after controlling for the mediator, the effect of the independent variable on the dependent variable is significantly reduced but remains statistically different from zero, it can be said that partial mediation has occurred (Judd and Kenny 1981). In behavioral medicine, as in any science, researchers use mediation analyses to test causal pathways. For example, one could examine whether levels of various biomarkers such as C-reactive protein mediate the

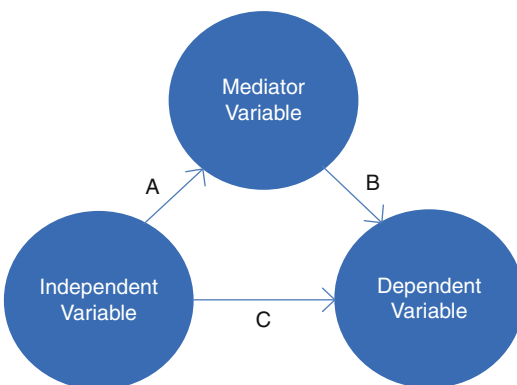
relation between hostility and acute coronary syndrome, by measuring hostility, the biomarkers and the disease end-point, and implementing the Baron and Kenny test.

Cross-References

- Causal Diagrams
- Intermediate Variable

References and Readings

- Baron, R. M., & Kenny, D. A. (1986). The moderator-mediator variable distinction in social psychological research: Conceptual, strategic, and statistical considerations. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 51(6), 1173–1182.
- Judd, C. M., & Kenny, D. A. (1981). Process analysis: Estimating mediation in treatment evaluations. *Evaluation Review*, 5(5), 602–619.
- Kraemer, H. C., Stice, E., Kazdin, A., Offord, D., & Kupfer, D. (2001). How do risk factors work together? Mediators, moderators, and independent, overlapping, and proxy risk factors. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 158(6), 848–856.
- MacKinnon, D. P., Krull, J. L., & Lockwood, C. M. (2000). Equivalence of the mediation, confounding and suppression effect. *Prevention Science*, 1(4), 173–181.



Mediators, Fig. 1 A mediational model as depicted in Baron and Kenny (1986)

Medical Agreement

- Clinical Agreement

Medical Decision-Making

William Whang
Division of Cardiology, Columbia University
Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Definition

Medical decision-making is the process by which a diagnosis or treatment plan is formulated from

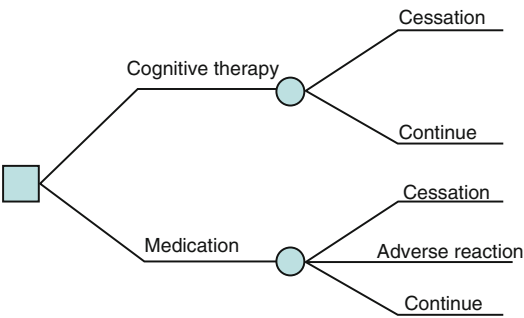
the available test information, often with incorporation of known patient preferences.

Description

Diagnoses and treatment choices by health-care providers and their patients are made under uncertainty. Medical decision-making can describe the process by which a diagnosis is derived from the retrieved facts at hand (Mark 2008). It can also define the choices that are available for treatment or prevention of illness and attempt to maximize the expected health benefits given the probable outcomes of each choice.

Most clinicians use cognitive shortcuts, or heuristics, in order to guide them in their decision-making (Mark 2008). For instance, the representativeness heuristic involves assessing whether a patient’s clinical features match the representative features of different diagnostic hypotheses. Medical decision-making often involves the generation of initial hypotheses and testing of these hypotheses against data obtained through diagnostic tests.

The accuracy of diagnostic tests is defined in relation to a reference standard that is meant to reflect the true condition of a patient (Weinstein and Fineberg 1980). For a test with binary results, it is useful to employ a 2 by 2 table to illustrate the concepts related to test assessment. The *sensitivity* of a test represents the extent to which a test identifies patients with disease and is defined as the proportion of patients with true disease who test positive (in the table, sensitivity equals [true positive]/[true positive + false negative]). *Specificity* represents the extent to which a test identified patients without disease and is defined as the proportion of patients without disease who test negative ([true negative]/[true negative + false positive]). The sensitivity and specificity of a diagnostic test can be incorporated in calculation of the *positive predictive value* of a test or the proportion of patients with a positive test result who actually have disease ([true positive]/[true positive + false positive]).



Medical Decision-Making, Fig. 1 Hypothetical decision tree of treatment for smoking cessation

		Disease	
		Present	Absent
Test result	Positive	True positive	False positive
	Negative	False negative	True negative

Decision analysis is a formal method that illustrates and estimates the likely outcomes associated with different medical choices and has been used frequently in cost-effectiveness research (Weinstein and Fineberg 1980). In Fig. 1, a hypothetical choice between medication and behavior therapy for smoking cessation is outlined in a decision tree. The probability of each outcome, and the health “units” associated with each (e.g., quality-adjusted life years), can be estimated in order to assess the choice that is more likely to result in improved health.

Cross-References

► Clinical Decision-Making

References and Further Reading

Mark, D. B. (2008). Chapter 3: Decision-making in clinical medicine. In A. S. Fauci, E. Braunwald, D. L. Kasper, S. L. Hauser, D. L. Longo, J. L. Jameson, & J. Loscalzo (Eds.), *Harrison’s principles of internal medicine* (17th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Weinstein, M. C., & Fineberg, H. V. (1980). *Clinical decision analysis*. Philadelphia: Saunders.

Medical Dialogue

► [Doctor-Patient Communication: Why and How Communication Contributes to the Quality of Medical Care](#)

Medical Interaction

► [Doctor-Patient Communication: Why and How Communication Contributes to the Quality of Medical Care](#)

Medical Outcomes Study

William Whang
Division of Cardiology, Columbia University
Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Definition

The Medical Outcomes Study (MOS) was a 2-year observational study of patients with chronic conditions, conducted in a cross-sectional phase among 22,462 patients and in a longitudinal phase among 2349 patients (Tarlov et al. 1989). One of its two main purposes was to analyze how outcomes vary depending on factors such as the type of delivery system in which a patient receives care, clinician specialty training, and intensity of resource use. Another main purpose was to develop practical tools for monitoring patient outcomes and their determinants. For instance, the MOS core survey includes 116 items that measure quality of life in terms of physical, mental, and general health. In addition, the MOS Short-Form General Health Survey has been used in 12-item, 20-item, and 36-item versions for quality of life assessment in numerous conditions (Stewart et al. 1989). One of the initial publications from the MOS defined the impact of depression on patient functioning and well-being (Wells et al. 1989).

References and Further Reading

- Stewart, A. L., Greenfield, S., Hays, R. D., et al. (1989). Functional status and well-being of patients with chronic conditions. Results from the Medical Outcomes Study. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 262, 907–913.
- Tarlov, A. R., Ware, J. E., Jr., Greenfield, S., Nelson, E. C., Perrin, E., & Zubkoff, M. (1989). The Medical Outcomes Study. An application of methods for monitoring the results of medical care. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 262, 925–930.
- Wells, K. B., Stewart, A., Hays, R. D., et al. (1989). The functioning and well-being of depressed patients. Results from the Medical Outcomes Study. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 262, 914–919.

Medical Psychology

Pamela S. King
Pediatric Prevention Research Center,
Department of Pediatrics, Wayne State University
School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Synonyms

[Clinical health psychology](#)

Definition

Medical psychology has historically been defined as the branch of psychology concerned with the application of psychological principles to the practice of medicine. Medical psychology shares with the fields of health psychology and behavioral medicine an interest in the ways in which biological, psychological, and social factors interact to influence health. Medical psychologists use psychological theories and principles in order to improve the health and well-being of patients with physical illness. They are clinical psychologists who work in hospitals, medical centers, and health care facilities. Medical psychologists use techniques of psychotherapy, behavior modification, and cognitive, interpersonal, and family therapy to help

patients manage chronic illness, reduce physical symptoms of disease or treatment, and manage emotional aspects of their illness.

Recently, the term “medical psychologist” has also been used to describe psychologists who prescribe medication. In the United States, psychologists in New Mexico, Louisiana, and all branches of the armed forces can prescribe medication after passing an examination and receiving board certification (e.g., American Board of Medical Psychology, Louisiana State Board of Medical Examiners). In order to receive board certification, these professional psychologists must have a doctoral degree in clinical psychology from an accredited institution, and must pursue postdoctoral training in medical psychology (including specialized training in psychopharmacology). The use of the term “medical psychologist” to describe psychologists with prescription privileges has been controversial. Division 38 of the American Psychological Association has stated that “the term ‘medical psychologist’ should not be equated with having prescription authority,” citing the historical usage of the term “medical psychologist” (which had not previously been associated with medication prescription by psychologists) and the potential for confusion among psychologists, healthcare professionals, and the general public.

Cross-References

- [American Psychological Association Division 38 \(Health Psychology\)](#)
- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Health Psychology](#)
- [Psychologist](#)

References and Further Readings

Academy of Medical Psychology. Retrieved from <http://www.amphome.org>.
Statement on the use of the term Medical Psychology from Division 38 of the American Psychological Association (Health Psychology). Retrieved from <http://www.health-psych.org/MedPsych.cfm>.

Medical Sociology

Richard Peter

Institute of Epidemiology and Medical Biometry,
University of Ulm, Ulm, Germany

Definition

Medical sociology is a theory-based discipline which applies theory and methods from social sciences and epidemiology to analyze the impact of micro (individual)- and macro (societal)-social environments on disease onset and on the course of disease. Core aspects of interest concerning the micro-social level are social relationships in different areas of life, i.e., the workplace, the family, and their associations with health. One special aspect of a micro-social environment is the doctor-patient relationship. The focus on the macro level is on social inequalities in health, i.e., the distribution of morbidity and mortality along social classes, and on social inequalities in health care and health-care systems. More recent developments in medical sociology attempt to explain the macro-social associations with the help of micro-social factors, e.g., social inequality in health by higher levels of work-related stress in lower social class subjects.

Cross-References

- [Occupational Health](#)
- [Social Stress](#)
- [Work-Related Stress](#)

References and Readings

Cockerham, W. C. (2011). *Medical sociology* (12th ed.). Boston: Pearson International Edition.
Marmot, M. G., & Wilkinson, R. (Eds.). (2006). *Social determinants of health*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Medical Specialty

► Gerontology

Medical Utilization

Karl-Heinz Ladwig
Institut für Epidemiologie, GmbH, Neuherberg,
Germany

Synonyms

Adherence; Compliance

Definition

Medical utilization describes the degree to which a population or a given group uses medical and dental services, procedures, facilities, and practitioners in a specified time period. The utilization rates of health services are often based on exposure variables like the number of outpatient visits, number of physicians consulted, use of emergency services, hospitalization, and total health care costs that are quantitatively assessed as the number of services used per year or per 1,000 patients eligible for a medical service.

Description

Medical utilization research assesses not only the extent of medical service use, but also analyzes the necessity, appropriateness, and efficiency of medical services. In a hospital setting, this analysis may include the appropriateness or possible delay of decisions regarding admissions, duration of stay, and discharge practices. The concept is tied to the concepts of adherence and compliance which describe the degree to which a patient correctly follows medical advice.

Medical utilization is largely dependent on societal and personal determinants (Andersen and Newman 1973). The societal determinants

(“supply-side”) encompass mainly resources and the particular organization that a national health care system offers to its consumers. In highly developed western countries, the total volume of resources relative to the population may be similar. Nevertheless, there may also be particular substantial differences which may not be addressed sufficiently enough in utilization research so far.

The progress in health research may alter patterns of medical utilization by itself. For example, a progress in diagnostic tools may decrease the number of patients with manifest acute myocardial infarction when referred to a chest pain unit but may increase the admission of sub-acute cases (McManus et al. 2011). Progress in antipsychotic medication may result in a shift from custodial care to treatment on an outpatient basis thus decreasing hospital admission of mental health conditions (Andersen and Newman 1973).

Medical utilization can also be viewed as a type of individual behavior (“demand-side”). Psycho-pathological health conditions strongly impact medical over- and underutilization:

Medical *overutilization* is often seen in patients who suffer from medically unexplained symptoms, and the concept has received attention as part of the diagnosis of somatization disorder. These patients consult multiple physicians for the same problem (“doctor shopping”) but remain dissatisfied and distressed with their medical care. Characteristically, they deny any psychological influence on the symptoms, resist psychiatric referral, and remain unreassured after receiving somatic evaluation results (Barsky et al. 2005).

Medical *underutilization* is highly prevalent in mental health patients. Only 50% of bipolar patients may be adherent to their prescribed medication. Side effects and dissatisfaction with treatment are strong predictors of underutilization in these patients (DiMatteo et al. 2000). Underutilization of basic treatment requirements are also often seen in patients with severe somatic disease conditions (e.g., coronary heart disease) and co-morbid depressed mood. Here, successful anti-depressive treatment may improve adherence to all therapeutic options (e.g., cardiac medications) required for the patient (Rieckmann et al. 2006).

Individual characteristics of patients beyond clinical features of psychopathology may also impact medical utilization patterns. It has been sufficiently demonstrated in population-based studies that females (less-convincing education level and older age) are independent unspecific contributors to medical utilization (Ladwig et al. 2000). Furthermore, inadequate health information, attitudes, health beliefs, and the quality of the physician-patient relationship are strong determinants of medical utilization (O'Donohue and Cucciare 2005).

Cross-References

- [Adherence](#)
- [Compliance](#)

References and Readings

- Andersen, R., & Newman, J. F. (1973). Societal and individual determinants of medical care utilization in the United States. *Milbank Memorial Fund Quarterly Health and Society*, 51(1), 95–124.
- Barsky, A. J., Orav, E. J., & Bates, D. W. (2005). Somatization increases medical utilization and costs independent of psychiatric and medical comorbidity. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 62(8), 903–910.
- DiMatteo, M. R., Lepper, H. S., & Croghan, T. W. (2000). Depression is a risk factor for noncompliance with medical treatment: Meta-analysis of the effects of anxiety and depression on patient adherence. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 160(14), 2101–2107.
- Ladwig, K. H., Marten-Mittag, B., Formanek, B., & Dammann, G. (2000). Gender differences of symptom reporting and medical health care utilization in the German population. *European Journal of Epidemiology*, 16(6), 511–518.
- McManus, D. D., Gore, J., Yarzebski, J., Spencer, F., Lessard, D., & Goldberg, R. J. (2011). Recent trends in the incidence, treatment, and outcomes of patients with STEMI and NSTEMI. *American Journal of Medicine*, 124(1), 40–47.
- O'Donohue, W., & Cucciare, M. (2005). Pathways to medical utilization. *Journal of Clinical Psychology in Medical Settings*, 12(2), 185–197.
- Rieckmann, N., Gerin, W., Kronish, I. M., Burg, M. M., Chaplin, W. F., Kong, G., et al. (2006). Course of depressive symptoms and medication adherence after acute coronary syndromes: An electronic medication monitoring study. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 48(11), 2218–2222.

Medically Unexplained Physical Symptoms

- [Somatoform Disorders](#)

Medically Unexplained Symptoms

Benjamin H. Natelson

Department of Pain Medicine and Palliative Care,
Beth Israel Medical Center and Albert Einstein
College of Medicine, Bronx, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Unexplained patient complaints](#); [Unexplained symptoms](#)

Definition

A set of patient complaints that with careful history, physical examination, and lab testing has no apparent medical cause is thus unexplained. When this happens, some physicians jump to a psychiatric explanation in lieu of no other - often leaving the patient stigmatized. Instead, a group of experts has arrived at operational definitions of symptom-based syndromes to allow for diagnosis and research. When the symptom is predominantly fatigue, severe enough to reduce activity substantially, and lasting at least 6 months, the diagnosis is idiopathic chronic fatigue. When the symptom is predominantly body-wide pain, also lasting many months, and the patient is tender on palpation, the diagnosis is fibromyalgia. When the pain is limited to face and jaw, the diagnosis is temporomandibular joint syndrome, and when the pain is in the abdomen and associated with constipation and/or diarrhea, the diagnosis is irritable bowel syndrome. The fact that patients with one of these syndromes often have at least one other has supported the psychiatric interpretation of these being variants of somatization disorder

(Barsky and Borus 1999). However, data are accumulating that differences do exist among these syndromes (Evengård et al. 1998; Weaver et al. 2010), and focus on pathogenesis has gradually shifted from the focal areas in the body affected to the brain with the notion that nociceptive systems are dysregulated (Schweinhardt et al. 2008). Functional brain imaging studies show patients with widespread pain and chronic fatigue, respectively, to have much larger responses to painful or fatigue-producing stimuli than control subjects (Cook et al. 2004; Lange et al. 2005) - suggesting a sensitized response to these stimuli. Another major factor influencing thinking about these syndromes in the physician community is the emergence of nationally approved drugs that effectively treat the symptoms of some of these disorders. All of this work suggests that, at least for some patients, the pathophysiological process underlying these syndromes is not the same. In addition to these newly available drugs, patients report substantial symptomatic improvement with a program of gentle physical conditioning (Hauser et al. 2010); similarly, providing patients behavioral ways to cope with chronic symptoms via cognitive behavioral therapy (Price et al. 2008) also can help with symptom reduction and improve health-related quality of life.

Cross-References

- [Brain, Imaging](#)
- [Fatigue](#)
- [Fibromyalgia](#)
- [Functional Somatic Syndromes](#)
- [Health-Related Quality of Life](#)
- [Pain](#)

References and Further Reading

- Barsky, A. J., & Borus, J. F. (1999). Functional somatic syndromes. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 130(11), 910–921.
- Cook, D. B., Lange, G., Ciccone, D. S., Liu, W. C., Steffener, J., & Natelson, B. H. (2004). Functional imaging of pain in patients with primary fibromyalgia. *Journal of Rheumatology*, 31(2), 364–378.

- Evengård, B., Nilsson, C. G., Lindh, G., Lindquist, L., Eneroth, P., Fredrikson, S., et al. (1998). Chronic fatigue syndrome differs from fibromyalgia. No evidence for elevated substance P levels in cerebrospinal fluid of patients with chronic fatigue syndrome. *Pain*, 78(2), 153–155.
- Hauser, W., Klose, P., Langhorst, J., Moradi, B., Steinbach, M., Schiltenswolf, M., et al. (2010). Efficacy of different types of aerobic exercise in fibromyalgia syndrome: A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *Arthritis Research & Therapy*, 12(3), R79.
- Lange, G., Steffener, J., Bly, B. M., Cook, D. B., Christodoulou, C., Liu, W. C., et al. (2005). Chronic fatigue syndrome affects verbal working memory: A BOLD fMRI study. *NeuroImage*, 26(2), 513–524.
- Price, J. R., Mitchell, E., Tidy, E., & Hunot, V. (2008). Cognitive behaviour therapy for chronic fatigue syndrome in adults. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, (3), CD001027.
- Schweinhardt, P., Sauro, K. M., & Bushnell, M. C. (2008). Fibromyalgia: A disorder of the brain? *The Neuroscientist*, 14(5), 415–421.
- Weaver, S. A., Janal, M. N., Aktan, N., Ottenweller, J. E., & Natelson, B. H. (2010). Sex differences in plasma prolactin response to tryptophan in chronic fatigue syndrome patients with and without comorbid fibromyalgia. *Journal of Women's Health*, 19(5), 951–958.

Medication Event Monitoring Systems

Jessica Haberer

Medicine and Center for Global Health,
Massachusetts General Hospital, Harvard
University, Boston, MA, USA

Definition

Medication event monitoring systems are devices and reporting mechanisms for keeping track of pill-taking behavior.

Description

Introduction

Estimates from the World Health Organization indicate that patients in developed countries only take about 50% of prescribed medicine for

chronic diseases like hypertension and diabetes. Many factors contribute to incomplete adherence, including side effects, stigma, forgetfulness, depression, and poverty. Behavioral science plays a critical role in understanding and improving adherence.

A variety of approaches to measuring adherence are discussed in the topic Adherence. This topic focuses on medication event monitoring systems, which are devices and reporting mechanisms for keeping track of pill-taking behavior.

The First-Generation Monitor

The first well-known device is the Medication Event Monitoring System (MEMS™), which was introduced in 1986. With MEMS, a specialized bottle cap contains a microelectronic switch, a clock, and a memory chip; the cap fits on multiple standard and large sized medication bottles. Every opening and closing of the MEMS cap records a time and date stamp that is stored and later downloaded to a computer via a USB cable. The data can be displayed graphically or in spreadsheet format for analysis. MEMS data has been used primarily in research projects, as well as some clinical scenarios.

There are several advantages to this type of electronic medication adherence monitoring. First, the time and date stamp provides a dose-by-dose estimate of adherence, thus enabling an understanding of patterns of pill-taking behavior. Most other adherence measures, such as self-report and pill counts, provide average estimates that do not distinguish between contiguous and intermittent lapses in adherence, which may have significantly different effects on the effectiveness of therapy.

MEMS caps, however, also have significant limitations. First, a pill bottle opening does not necessarily equate to pill ingestion. Second, the cap can only be used with a single bottle, which makes the use of pill boxes and other adherence aids impossible and prevents monitoring of multiple medications with a single device. Third, patients may take out multiple pills at a time for later dosing (i.e., a “pocket dose”). Similarly, patients may open the bottle without taking a pill (i.e., a “curiosity event”). Subjective reports may

be used to correct for these shortcomings; however, the accuracy of these self-reports is unknown and dilutes the objectivity of MEMS.

Another significant limitation of MEMS is the fact that the data must be periodically downloaded onto a computer for analysis. Researchers and clinicians are typically unaware of adherence problems until regularly scheduled visits, which may occur weeks to months after the lapse(s) occurred. For some conditions, like HIV/AIDS, lapses as short as a few doses may have irreversible clinical consequences, and real-time data transmission could allow for interventions prior to these clinical consequences.

Second-Generation Monitors

In the past few years, many new devices have been introduced for medication event monitoring, which add a variety of features to build on the first-generation monitor. See Table 1 for a summary description of which features are associated with each of these devices.

Several second generation monitors offer multiple compartments, each with a microelectronic sensor, to allow for monitoring of multiple medications. Another approach to multiple medications is to store all medications in the device and dispense one or more pills at predefined time periods. These devices serve as monitors by recording when the dispensing compartment is opened to retrieve the pill(s). An alternate system for dose monitoring is to equip blister packs with microelectronics, such that a wire is broken when the pill is removed from its compartment. Dosing can then be recorded through a radio-frequency identification (RFID) signal. A similar yet less sophisticated RFID system monitors the removal and insertion of entire blister packs into a device.

Many second-generation monitors offer reminder features and have liquid crystal displays indicating which pills to take, as well as other clinically relevant information, such as potential side effects or health education messages. A newer version of the MEMS cap displays the number of openings to help track if a dose was taken. Other devices have auditory alarms and/or visual cues to remind patients when to take their medications.

Medication Event Monitoring Systems, Table 1 Summary of second-generation device features^a

Device	Web site	Time/ date stamp	Multiple compartments per device	Cover for unit dosing	Educational features (e.g., LCD)	Auditory and/or visual reminders	Transmission of data for reminders and monitoring		Capacity for liquids/ applicators
							Phone/ web	Wireless	
MEMS™	www.aardexgroup.com	X			X				
Med- eMonitor™	www.informedix.com	X	X		X	X	X		
MedSignals™	www.medsignals.com	X	X		X	X	X		
MedMinder™	www.medminder.com	X	X			X	X		
Epill MedSmart™	www.epill.com	X	X	X	X	X	X		
Ubox	www.innovatorsinhealth.org	X	X	X		X			
Med-ic®	www.med-ic.com	X	X	X					
Cypak	www.cypak.com	X	X	X					
WisePill®	www.wisepill.com	X				X	X	X	X
SimPill®	www.simpill.com	X				X	X	X	
GlowCaps™	www.vitality.net	X				X	X	X	

^aDue to the rapidly evolving nature of technology development, this table may not be exhaustive. It is meant to give examples of devices currently in development or commercially available. All information on device features was obtained through the device web sites

Another common feature of second-generation monitors is the capacity for data transmission via the phone or internet. While some devices require cable connections, others are wireless, using Bluetooth to transmit to cell phone networks. These devices, thus, allow for real-time monitoring and the potential for real-time adherence interventions. Some systems have options to send phone calls, emails, and/or text messages to the patient, as well as friends, family members, health-care providers, and/or researchers to facilitate adherence support.

Despite these new features, this second generation of medication event monitors still has limitations. First, some devices have more pill capacity than others, and those with larger capacity have less portability. Second, few devices have options for liquid medications or medication applicators. Additionally, pocket doses and curiosity events remain a limitation for most devices, although some have compartment covers that limit each opening to one dose of medicine.

Third Generation

A third generation of monitors seeks to document actual ingestion of a medication. The ability to detect actual drug ingestion is highly appealing; however, such an approach may seem invasive and inappropriate. Ultimately, acceptability remains to be seen. These third-generation monitors use two approaches: metabolite detection and documentation of taggant ingestion (a taggant is chemical or physical marker added to materials to allow various forms of testing). See Table 2 for a

summary description of which features are associated with each of several third-generation devices.

In a monitoring system using metabolic detection, the patient urinates on a filter paper after medication ingestion. If a specific metabolite is present, a code is revealed on the filter paper. The patient then sends a text message with that code to document medication ingestion and in return automatically receives mobile phone airtime credit as an incentive. The Taggant ingestion systems involve a variety of materials and technologies, including a biocompatible antenna, magnet, and digestible microchip. A taggant is attached to each pill and detected by a small, wearable patch, wristwatch, or handheld reader as it travels through the digestive tract. Data is then transmitted in real time via cell phone networks. Another approach combines both metabolite detection and taggant ingestion. In this system, a taggant is released as the medication reaches the stomach and intestines. Following absorption, the taggant is metabolized to a volatile breath marker, and a breath sample is analyzed and data stored in the monitoring device for later assessment.

While these technologies are intriguing, the sensitivity and specificity of the ingestion detection mechanisms needs to be established. Results, for instance, may vary with pharmacokinetics. Additional complications include the requirement of collaboration with drug manufacturers and the need to adhere to the adherence monitoring strategy (e.g., patients must wear the taggant detection device or urinate on a filter paper) over time.

Medication Event Monitoring Systems, Table 2 Summary of third-generation device features^a

Device	Web site	Time/date stamp	Wireless transmission of monitoring data	Metabolite detection	Ingestible marker
XoutTB	www.xoutb.info	X	X	X	
MagneTrace	users.ece.gatech.edu/~mghovan	X	X		Magnet
IDCap	www.etectbio.com	X	X		Antennae
ChipSkin™	www.proteusbiomed.com	X	X		Microchip
SMART™	www.xhale.com	X		X	Drug taggant

^aDue to the rapidly evolving nature of technology development, this table may not be exhaustive. It is meant to give examples of devices currently in development or commercially available. All information on device features was obtained through the device web sites

Summary and Conclusions

All of the above described medication event monitoring devices provide objective information for understanding pill-taking behavior, which is critical for both interpretation of clinical trials and evaluation of treatment effectiveness. Emerging methods and strategies offer improvements in objective discrimination of adherence, especially those with the capacity for real-time data transmission. This approach allows for proactive prevention of the consequences of nonadherence, which has previously not been possible. Any detection strategy, however, is only as good as the accompanying intervention.

A final, important consideration for all medication event monitors, regardless of their generation, is cost. In the United States alone, medication nonadherence is estimated to cost hundreds of billions of dollars annually. Moreover, studies in both developed and developing settings indicate the cost-effective nature of adherence interventions (e.g., for HIV/AIDS treatment). Further research is needed into the effectiveness of medication event monitors as adherence interventions, and policies must be established for public and private insurance coverage.

Cross-References

► [Adherence](#)

References and Readings

- Ailinger, R. L., Black, P. L., & Lima-Garcia, N. (2008). Use of electronic monitoring in clinical nursing research. *Clinical Nursing Research*, 17(2), 89–97.
- Goldie, S. J., Paltiel, A. D., Weinstein, M. C., Losina, E., Seage, G. R., 3rd, Kimmel, A. D., et al. (2003). Projecting the cost-effectiveness of adherence interventions in persons with human immunodeficiency virus infection. *American Journal of Medicine*, 115(8), 632–641.
- Haberer, J. E., Kahane, J., Kigozi, I., Emenyonu, N., Hunt, P., Martin, J., et al. (2010). Real-time adherence monitoring for HIV antiretroviral therapy. *AIDS and Behavior*, 14(6), 1340–1346.

- Nachega, J. B., Leisegang, R., Bishai, D., Nguyen, H., Hislop, M., Cleary, S., et al. (2010). Association of antiretroviral therapy adherence and health care costs. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 152(1), 18–25.
- New England Healthcare Institute (NEHI). (2009). *Thinking outside the pillbox: A system-wide approach to improving patient medication adherence for chronic disease*. Cambridge: Author.
- World Health Organization. (2003). *Adherence to long-term therapies: Evidence for action*. Geneva: Author.

Meditation

Alan M. Delamater
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami
Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Attention training](#); [Concentration](#); [Contemplation](#); [Mental training](#)

Definition

Meditation refers to a variety of mental techniques designed to focus the mind, improve well-being, and facilitate spiritual development. Most of the world's religions include some type of meditation technique. In recent years, meditation techniques have also become increasingly recognized as helpful in the treatment of many physiological and emotional disorders, as well as promoting wellness in healthy individuals.

There are two major types of meditation techniques: concentration and insight. Concentrative meditations involve the development of single-pointed attention, i.e., concentration on a single object. In insight meditation, the object is to focus the attention on changing objects as they occur in the mind on a moment to moment basis. A good example of concentrative meditation is transcendental meditation in which an individual focuses on a mantra, paying attention to the silent repetition of the mantra in the mind while screening out other stimuli. As concentration

deepens, feelings of calm or tranquillity are experienced. Research has shown that when individuals practice this type of meditation, they experience a restful hypometabolic state in which their respiration, heart rate, blood pressure, muscle tension, and other indicators of sympathetic nervous system activation all decrease. This state of hypometabolic alertness has been termed the relaxation response by Herbert Benson. The relaxation response can be reliably elicited by the repetition of a mental stimulus (e.g., a mantra) while the individual adopts a relaxed mental attitude in a quiet environment.

Concentration is also an important component of insight meditation, but is used in insight meditation to focus on changing objects rather than a single object of attention. A key factor in insight meditation is the development of bare attention and mindfulness. Bare attention is observing phenomenon as they are, without comment, evaluation, or judgment. Mindfulness is the application of bare attention to changing objects as they occur in each moment, with an attitude of acceptance so that there is no clinging to objects that are desirable and there is no aversion to objects that are not desirable. In mindfulness practice, one does not identify with objects of attention. The goal is to increase the frequency of noticing objects as they arise and pass away in consciousness. As mindfulness becomes stronger and more sustained, insights about the nature of the mind and reality develop, including three fundamental characteristics of existence: impermanence, suffering, and the concept that the self is a creation. Insight or vipassana meditation has its origins in Buddhism and was developed over 2500 years ago; vipassana is the Pali word meaning to clearly see the nature of. In recent years, mindfulness has been incorporated into psychotherapeutic techniques. In addition to promoting spiritual development, research has shown that mindfulness can be helpful for stress reduction in healthy people as well as people with chronic health conditions and be an important aid in the treatment of a variety of psychological disorders.

Cross-References

- [Mindfulness](#)
- [Prayer](#)
- [Relaxation](#)
- [Transcendental Meditation](#)

References and Readings

- Benson, H. (2000). *The relaxation response—updated and expanded* (25th anniversary ed.). New York: Avon.
- Bohlmeijer, E., Prenger, R., Taal, E., & Cuijpers, P. (2010). The effects of mindfulness-based stress reduction therapy on mental health of adults with a chronic medical disease: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 68(6), 539–544.
- Goldstein, J. (1976). *The experience of insight: A simple and direct guide to Buddhist meditation*. Boulder: Shambhala.
- Goleman, D. (1996). *The meditative mind: Varieties of meditative experience*. New York: Tarcher.
- Hofmann, S. G., Sawyer, A. T., Witt, A. A., & Oh, D. (2010). The effect of mindfulness-based therapy on anxiety and depression: A meta-analytic review. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 78(2), 169–183.

Menarche

- [Puberty](#)

Menopausal Hormone Therapy

- [Hormone Treatment](#)

Menopause

Suzana Drobnjak

Department of Psychology, University of Zurich,
Binzmuehlestrasse, Switzerland

Definition

Menopause is a natural event in a woman's life. It describes the end of menstruation or, more

precisely, a permanent cessation of the primary functions of the human ovaries. Menopause can only be determined retrospectively, once 12 months have lapsed with no menstrual cycle. At this point a woman is considered to be infertile. Women usually enter menopause at the age of 50–52 years.

Menopause is distinguished from other related terms. Premenopause describes the years before the Perimenopause and it begins around the age of 40. At this time, the levels of reproductive hormones are becoming lower. Perimenopause, on the other hand, describes the beginning of irregular menstrual cycles until the final menstruation cycle, which then leads to Menopause. And finally, the Postmenopause is the time after 12 months of Menopause.

Menopause is associated with many biological and psychological changes. It begins when follicular maturation stops due to lack of follicles in the ovaries. At this time, the concentration of estrogen falls to low levels. Ovulation and the production of progesterone stop. The absence of estrogen disturbs the homeostasis of the hypothalamus-pituitary-gonadal axis. The low estrogen levels lead to a lack of negative feedback to the hypothalamus and pituitary. Consequently, the hypothalamus raises production of gonadotropin-releasing hormones, which leads to an increased release of follicle-stimulating hormone and luteinizing hormone. The body adjusts to the new hormonal balance and this leads to the appearance of several menopause symptoms, such as vasomotoric symptoms (hot flashes, headache, sweating, etc.), neuro-vegetative symptoms (insomnia, anxiety, depressive mood, etc.), organic symptoms (vaginal dryness, itchiness, etc.), metabolic symptoms (reduction of bone density, fat redistribution, etc.), and sexual symptoms (loss of libido function, etc.).

Aside from biological factors, Menopause transition can also lead to psychological changes. On the one hand, the risk of depression, anxiety, problems with concentration, and fatigue increases. On the other hand, the aforementioned symptoms of Menopause could affect well-being and life quality. It seems that psychological distress can also be influenced by social changes in

this phase of life, such as the moving out of adult children. Confrontation with the process of aging can also negatively affect general well-being. These symptoms, however, generally depend on individual predispositions and manifest differently in every women.

References and Readings

- Alexander, J. L., Dennerstein, L., Woods, N. F., McEwen, B. S., Halbreich, U., Kotz, K., & Richardson, G. (2007). Role of stressful life events and menopausal stage in wellbeing and health. *Expert Review Neurotherapeutics*, 7(Suppl. 11), 93–113.
- Buckler, H. (2005). The menopause transition: Endocrine changes and clinical symptoms. *The Journal of the British Menopause Society*, 11(2), 61–65.
- Sherman, S. (2005). Defining the menopausal transition. *The American Journal of Medicine*, 118(Suppl. 12B), 3–7.

Menstrual Headache

- [Migraine Headache](#)

Mental Ability

- [Cognitive Factors](#)
- [Cognitive Function](#)

Mental Disengagement

- [Distraction \(Coping Strategy\)](#)

Mental Disorder

- [Psychological Disorder](#)

Mental Function

- [Cognitive Factors](#)
 - [Cognitive Function](#)
-

Mental Health Professional

- [Psychologist](#)
-

Mental Health Surveillance

William Reeves¹ and Urs M. Nater²

¹Office of Surveillance, Epidemiology and Laboratory Services Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, USA

²Department of Psychology, University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria

Psychiatric Association (APA) classification system separates mental illnesses into categories based on symptoms observed by a health professional or reported by the patient; these are currently defined in the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders 4th edition (DSM-IV-TR). The World Health Organization's International Classification of Disease, 10th Revision, Clinical Modification (ICD-10-CM) defines mental illness categories similar, but not identical, to those in DSM-IV-TR. The APA is developing the DSM-V and working to achieve greater coordination with future editions of the ICD.

According to the US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, "public health surveillance is the ongoing systematic collection, analysis, interpretation, and dissemination of data about a health-related event for use in public health action to reduce morbidity and mortality and to improve health." In practice, mental health surveillance systems collect information concerning occurrence of mental illness.

Synonyms

[Mental illness monitoring or tracking](#); [Mental illness surveillance](#); [Mental illness \(mental health surveys\)](#); [Population health monitoring or tracking](#)

Definition

According to the World Health Organization, "mental health represents a state of well-being in which the individual realizes his/her own abilities, can cope with the normal stresses of life, can work productively and fruitfully, and is able to make a contribution to the community." Mental health is not merely the absence of mental illness; mental health and mental illness represent distinct constructs. However, reflecting perceived stigmatization, *mental health* is commonly used rather than *mental illness*.

Mental illness comprises conditions affecting cognition, mood, or behavior associated with distress or impaired functioning. The American

Description

Mental illness surveillance serves several public health functions as follows: (1) informing public health interventions; (2) estimating the impact of mental illness; (3) portraying the natural history of various conditions and impact of treatments on outcomes; (4) determining the distribution and occurrence of mental illness; (5) generating hypotheses and stimulating research; (6) evaluating prevention and control measures; and (7) facilitating program planning. Individual surveillance systems cannot serve all these functions, and multiple approaches must be used in combination to provide a complete mosaic.

As with infectious and chronic medical diseases, public health strategies for mental illness aim to reduce its incidence, prevalence, clinical course, impairment, and economic impact. Surveillance provides the evidence base to develop prevention and control strategies. Fundamentally, surveillance must quantify the burden imposed by mental illness and identify the high risk, often underserved, populations in need of intervention

services. In addition to representing an important public health problem in its own right, mental illness is significantly associated with chronic medical diseases (e.g., obesity, diabetes, and cardiovascular disease), which adds additional morbidity and mortality. Mental illness surveillance must consider these associations.

Surveillance also serves to monitor trends and detect and characterize changes. The greatest public health successes related to infectious disease (e.g., small pox, polio, influenza) have utilized this aspect of surveillance. More recently, chronic disease (e.g., cancer, cardiovascular disease) prevention and control strategies have successfully used surveillance trend data. Recognition is increasing as to the importance of tracking trends in mental illnesses associated with exposure to military combat or large-scale disasters (e.g., 9/11, Katrina, Deepwater Horizon).

Three categories of surveillance systems collect mental illness data. Optimally, their measures should be combined to plan, implement, and evaluate mental illness control strategies.

Population surveys measure occurrence of mental illness at national, state, and local levels. The US Department of Health and Human Services conducts national mental illness surveillance as part of ongoing surveys (e.g., National Survey on Drug Use and Health and National Health Interview Survey). More detailed national mental illness surveys occur sporadically (e.g., 1990/1992 and 2001/2003 National Comorbidity Surveys and 2001/2002 National Epidemiologic Survey on Alcohol and Related Conditions). National-level mental illness surveillance provides the evidence base for formulating policy and tracking progress on goals such as *Healthy People 2010 and 2020*. However, national-level surveillance has limited utility for state and local authorities responsible for designing, managing, and evaluating mental illness control programs. Currently, the Behavioral Risk Factor Surveillance System (BRFSS) represents the only ongoing US state/county-specific surveillance system. BRFSS measures mental illness, in selected states, through optional modules. Some population surveys define mental illness by stringent APA criteria from clinical evaluation using the Structured Clinical Interview for DSM (SCID) and Composite International

Diagnostic Interview (CIDI). More often, large-scale mental illness surveys use standardized and validated screening instruments (e.g., Patient Health Questionnaire-9), which have varying degrees of diagnostic sensitivity and specificity. Currently, US population surveys of mental illness measure only depression and nonspecific psychological distress, and so data is not available concerning anxiety disorders which are at least as common, equally severe, and also associated with chronic medical conditions.

Health-care surveys gather information from providers and insurers concerning patients' diagnoses and health-care use. They provide data on occurrence of mental illness in people who have access to and utilize medical care. Evaluation of health-care surveys in conjunction with population surveys provides information on health disparities. Examples of US health-care surveys include the National Ambulatory Medical Care Survey (NAMCS), National Hospital Discharge Survey (NHDS), and the National Nursing Home Survey (NNHS). The manner by which health-care surveys identify mental illness varies. In the USA, coding systems used by hospitals and medical providers typically involve the ICD-9 coding system, which is not fully congruent with the DSM. Mental health professionals generally use the DSM nomenclature, while primary care providers may use other terminologies. In practice, regardless of which diagnostic system is used, diagnosis varies based on training, local practice, availability of treatment resources, and available payment codes.

Vital statistics records represent the fundamental source of demographic, geographic, and cause-of-death information. Over 99% of deaths in developed countries, such as the USA, are registered. Suicide is the most serious potential outcome of mental illness. In 2006, suicide was the 11th leading cause of death in the USA, and most people who commit suicide have a psychiatric diagnosis at the time of their death. Suicide rates provide one of the few indicators of mental illness impact that can be compared cross-nationally.

As discussed above, most current public health efforts aim to provide mental illness services with the goal of reducing the impact of mental illness on the population. Public health research efforts

have also been initiated to explore protection and promotion of mental, emotional, and behavioral health and primary prevention of mental illness.

- Selection Bias
- Statistics
- Study Methodology
- Women's Health Initiative (WHI)
- World Health Organization (WHO)

Cross-References

- Absolute Risk
- Benefit Evaluation in Health Economic Studies
- Benefit-Risk Ratio
- Bias
- Bogalusa Heart Study
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
- Chronic Disease or Illness
- Community Sample
- Cost-Effectiveness Analysis (CEA)
- Clinical Decision-Making
- Cultural Factors
- Data
- Disease Burden
- Dissemination
- Framingham Heart Study
- General Population
- Generalizability
- Geographic Information System (GIS) Technology
- Health Disparities
- Healthy Cities
- Income Inequality and Health
- Medical Outcomes Study
- Mental Illness
- Mini-Finland Health Survey
- Minority Health
- Missing Data
- Mortality
- Mortality Rates
- Multiethnic Cohort Study
- National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES)
- National Health Interview Survey
- National Institute of Mental Health
- Population Health
- Population Stratification
- Population-Based Study
- Psychosocial Variables
- Public Health
- Reliability and Validity
- Screening

References and Further Reading

- Behavioral Risk Factor Surveillance System. <http://www.cdc.gov/brfss/index.htm>
- Galea, S., Norris, F. H. (2006). Chapter 11: Public mental health surveillance and monitoring. F. H. Norris, S. Galea, M. J. Friedman, P. J. Watson Methods for disaster mental health research. New York: Guilford Press.
- Guidelines Working Group. (2001). *Updated guidelines for evaluating public health surveillance systems. Recommendations from the Guidelines Working Group.* (MMWR 50/RR-13).
- Li, C., Ford, E. S., Zhao, G., Strine, T., Dhingra, S., Barker, L., et al. (2009). Association between diagnosed diabetes and psychological distress among U.S. adults: Findings from 2007 BRFSS. *International Journal of Public Health*, 54(Suppl. 1), S1–S119.
- National Ambulatory Medical Care Survey. <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/ahcd.htm>
- National Comorbidity Survey-Replication. <http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/topics/statistics/ncsr-study/index.shtml>
- National Health Interview Survey. <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhis.htm>
- National Hospital Discharge Survey. <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhds.htm>
- National Nursing Home Survey. <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nnhs.htm>
- Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2010). Results from the 2009 National Survey on Drug Use and Health. <http://www.oas.samhsa.gov/NSDUH/2k9NSDUH/2k9Results.htm>

Mental Illness

Andrew Fox
Recovery and Wellbeing Inpatient Services,
Birmingham and Solihull Mental Health NHS
Trust, Birmingham, West Midlands, UK

Synonyms

Psychiatric illness

Definition

Mental illnesses are particular ways of thinking, feeling, or behaving that are typically associated with distress or impairment and that are not accepted as normal by the dominant local culture. The concept is controversial, and there is ongoing debate about how best to describe and understand the experiences often subsumed under this term.

Description

Classification of Mental Illnesses

Mental illnesses are made up of clusters of symptoms (abnormal or statistically infrequent behavior, emotion, or thoughts) and are typically classified according to different categories, or diagnoses, so that a particular mental illness is considered as either present or not. There are many different forms of mental illnesses, and people may be classed as displaying several at any one time (known as comorbidity). The key manuals used to diagnose mental illnesses are the International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems (currently on its tenth revision; ICD-10), published by the World Health Organization, and the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (currently on its fifth edition), published by the American Psychiatric Association. According to these established manuals, individuals must demonstrate a certain number and/or pattern of symptoms in order to be considered as displaying evidence of the presence of a mental illness. Some example diagnoses from the ICD-10 (Chapter V: Mental and Behavioral Disorders) include depressive episode, bipolar affective disorder, panic disorder, posttraumatic stress disorder, generalized anxiety disorder, paranoid schizophrenia, and anorexia nervosa. “Dimensional” attempts to classify mental illnesses (e.g., “salience syndrome”; Van Os 2009) have incorporated the notion that symptoms of mental illness lie at one end of a continuum of human experiences, with less debilitating but similar experiences within the range of what may be considered present within the general population.

One alternative to diagnosis of mental illness is psychological formulation (Johnstone and Dallos 2014). This approach aims to integrate hypothesized etiological factors into an explanatory framework for the person’s current difficulties (e.g., low mood, anxiety). There are many different possible frameworks used for formulation, often – but not always – structured around the perspective of a school of psychological therapy.

Causes of Mental Illnesses

The precise cause of the experiences described as mental illnesses remains unclear, with many hypothesized mechanisms for each of the many different categories of mental illness. The popular diathesis-stress model proposes that individuals are vulnerable to experiencing symptoms of mental illness through their genetic predisposition and environmental stress triggers the onset of symptoms. Another popular and somewhat related general approach is the “biopsychosocial” perspective that suggests that multiple biological, psychological, and social factors are all implicated in the onset of mental illness. Psychological formulations often attempt to integrate specific hypothesized etiological factors with those that maintain the difficulties.

Treatment of Mental Illness

Given the multiple etiological and maintenance factors that can be considered in mental illness, there are many possible treatment options; however, the most popular remain medication and psychological therapy (“talking therapy”). Individuals may be offered a combination of treatment options including medication and psychological therapy.

Specialist practitioners, often psychiatrists, but sometimes nurses and psychologists, prescribe medication that is licensed for particular mental illnesses when there is evidence that it can be helpful in managing symptoms that a person may be experiencing. Individuals may be encouraged to try several different forms of medication until they find one that they and their mental health practitioner feel helps them.

There are numerous psychological therapies that are offered for different mental illnesses, often by psychiatrists, psychologists, nurses,

social workers, occupational therapists, and other individuals trained in specific forms of these therapies. Popular forms of psychological therapy include psychoanalysis, cognitive behavioral therapy, systemic (or family) therapy, and humanistic therapy. All forms of psychological therapy involve meeting for discussion with a trained mental health practitioner; however, the focus and content of these discussions will vary according to the type of psychotherapy. Often such therapy is delivered in individual sessions with a practitioner but may also be delivered in group, residential, or other social settings.

Controversies Regarding the Concept of Mental Illness

The concept of “mental illness” is highly controversial; the psychiatrist Thomas Szasz (1961) has been an influential opponent of the term, and the concept continues to attract criticism. The varieties of human experience and behavior that comprise what is viewed as a mental illness are often fluid, and what is termed mental illness in one time or context may not be termed mental illness in another (e.g., homosexuality was classified as a mental illness by the original Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders). As there are often legal powers available to control the freedom of individuals labeled as mentally ill, there has been criticism of how diagnostic labels of mental illness have been used to control and oppress minority groups. Some of the symptoms linked to particular categories of mental illness – schizophrenia in particular – are so heterogeneous that they have been widely criticized as lacking validity and reliability (Bentall 2003). Furthermore, the term itself (“illness”) may lend itself to the false assumption that experiences subsumed under the category of a mental illness are primarily the result of a physiological disease process and should be treated in a medical way, obscuring the complex nature of these experiences (e.g., Moncrieff and Middleton 2015). Indeed, there is often a social stigma associated with the label of a mental illness, especially if understood as resulting from some underlying physiological cause, and there can be negative consequences for those labeled as mentally ill (e.g., reduced employment opportunities, coercive treatments).

Given the criticisms of the concept of “mental illness,” alternative concepts have been suggested, such as mental/psychological disorder or distress. A recent development is the Power Threat Meaning Framework, which is an approach that attempts to describe a persons’ difficulties in a way that offers an alternative to medical diagnosis and classification (Johnstone & Boyle 2018).

Cross-References

- [Psychiatric Diagnosis](#)
- [Psychiatric Illness](#)
- [Psychological Disorder](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bentall, R. P. (2003). *Madness explained: Psychosis and human nature*. London: Allen Lane.
- Johnstone, L. & Boyle, M. with Cromby, J., Dillon, J., Harper, D., Kinderman, P., Longden, E., Pilgrim, D. & Read, J. (2018). *The Power Threat Meaning Framework: Towards the identification of patterns in emotional distress, unusual experiences and troubled or troubling behaviour, as an alternative to functional psychiatric diagnosis*. Leicester: British Psychological Society.
- Johnstone, L., & Dallos, R. (2014). Introduction to formulation. In L. Johnstone & R. Dallos (Eds.), *Formulation in psychology and psychotherapy: Making sense of people's problems* (pp. 1–17). Hove: Routledge.
- Moncrieff, J., & Middleton, H. (2015). Schizophrenia: A critical psychiatry perspective. *Current Opinion in Psychiatry*, 28(3), 264–268.
- Szasz, T. S. (1961). *The myth of mental illness: Foundations of a theory of personal conduct*. New York: Hoeber-Harper.
- Van Os, J. (2009). A salience dysregulation syndrome. *British Journal of Psychiatry*, 194, 101–103.
- World Health Organisation. (2016). *International statistical classification of diseases and related health problems, 10th revision, version for 2016*. Retrieved 2 Jan 2015, from <http://apps.who.int/classifications/icd10/browse/2016/en>

Mental Illness (Mental Health Surveys)

- [Mental Health Surveillance](#)

Mental Illness Monitoring or Tracking

- [Mental Health Surveillance](#)

Mental Illness Surveillance

- [Mental Health Surveillance](#)

Mental Imagery

- [Guided Imagery](#)

Mental Models of Illness

- [Common-Sense Model of Self-Regulation](#)

Mental Representations of Illness

- [Common-Sense Model of Self-Regulation](#)

Mental Status Examination

- [Screening, Cognitive](#)

Mental Strain

- [Psychosocial Work Environment](#)

Mental Strategies

- [Cognitive Strategies](#)

Mental Stress

Kristen Salomon

Department of Psychology, University of South Florida College of Arts and Sciences, Tampa, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Anxiety](#); [Distress](#); [Psychological stress](#)

Definition

A form of stress that occurs because of how events in one's external or internal environment are perceived, resulting in the psychological experience of distress and anxiety (Lazarus and Folkman 1984). Mental stress is often accompanied by physiological responses (Cacioppo 1994). Mental stress is most often induced in the laboratory by demanding and/or noxious stimuli, involving motivation to meet a performance criterion (Blascovich et al. 2003) and/or social-evaluative threat (Dickerson and Kemeny 2004), or interpersonal interactions, particularly those involving conflict (Glass and Singer 1972). Common mental stress tasks include preparing and giving a speech, performing arithmetic, tracing around star with only a mirror image as a guide, performing a reaction time task (Steptoe and Vögele 1991), and discussing a disagreed upon topic with another person (Gottman and Levenson 1992).

Cross-References

- [Anxiety](#)
- [Perceptions of Stress](#)
- [Physiological Reactivity](#)
- [Stress](#)
- [Stress Responses](#)
- [Stress, Emotional](#)

References and Readings

- Blascovich, J., Mendes, W. B., Tomaka, J., Salomon, K., & Seery, M. (2003). The robust natures of the biopsychosocial model: A reply to Wright and Kirby. *Personality and Social Psychology Review*, 7, 234–243.
- Cacioppo, J. T. (1994). Social neuroscience: Autonomic, neuroendocrine, and immune responses to stress. *Psychophysiology*, 31, 113–128.
- Dickerson, S. S., & Kemeny, M. E. (2004). Acute stressors and cortisol responses: A theoretical integration and synthesis of laboratory research. *Psychological Bulletin*, 130, 355–391.
- Glass, D. C., & Singer, J. E. (1972). *Urban stress. Experiments on noise and social stressors*. New York: Academic Press.
- Gottman, J. M., & Levenson, R. W. (1992). Marital processes predictive of later dissolution: Behavior, physiology, and health. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 63, 221–233.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Steptoe, A., & Vögele, C. (1991). Methodology of mental stress testing in cardiovascular research. *Circulation*, 83, II-14–II-24.

Mental Stress Task

- [Stress Test](#)

Mental Stressor

- [Stroop Color-Word Test](#)

Mental Training

- [Meditation](#)
- [Transcendental Meditation](#)

Mental Workload

- [Job Demand/Control/Strain](#)

Messenger RNA

- [RNA](#)

Meta-analysis

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

A meta-analysis is a quantitative evaluation of the evidence provided by two or more individual research studies that have addressed the same question. It commonly involves the statistical combination of summary statistics from various trials, but it also refers to analyses performed on the combination of raw data.

Description

Purposes of meta-analyses include:

- Providing a more precise estimate of the overall treatment effect of interest.
- Evaluating whether overall positive results are also seen in prespecified subgroups of participants.
- Evaluating apparently conflicting study results.

The conceptual basis of meta-analysis is straightforward: More data will provide a better opportunity to get a meaningful answer to a research question. However, appropriate implementation of the required statistical techniques and the appropriate interpretation of the results obtained are not so straightforward. Synthesizing the results from many individual studies can be difficult and confusing. Inconsistency between published studies addressing the same research question is not uncommon, particularly when different study designs have been employed.

Even though a meta-analysis does not require a new study to be conducted, it is still a research method in its own right. Therefore, “to ensure that a meta-analysis is scientifically valid, it is necessary to plan and conduct the analysis in an appropriate way. It is not sufficient to retrospectively go to a bunch of studies that you like the look of and stick them together!” (Kay 2007).

One way to combat inconsistencies is to employ the pooled data approach, i.e., to combine the data from all of the studies and to conduct a new analysis on these data. The size of the new data set will be (much) larger than the size of any of the individual data sets, and the analysis of a larger data set lends itself more readily to the identification of a relatively small but still clinically important treatment effect. Such treatment effects can have considerable public health benefits if they are seen in a very large number of patients with a common disease.

At the outset, the purpose for a meta-analysis must be stated, and the treatment effect of interest determined. Subsequently, the basic steps required for the conduct of a meta-analysis are as follows:

- Establishing rules for which of the identified studies will be allowed into the meta-analysis. This includes determining and detailing approaches to ensure consistent quality of the studies and how to handle poor quality studies.
- Identification of all relevant studies.
- Data abstraction and acquisition.
- Data analysis.
- Evaluating robustness.
- Dissemination of results and conclusions.

One straightforward approach to meta-analysis is to include every study identified and obtained. A counterargument is that, almost certainly, some studies will be “better” than others, and that “less good” studies perhaps should not be included if the “best” information is to be provided to the clinicians who will read the meta-analysis and therefore may base treatment decisions on its results. In the latter case, a priori inclusion and exclusion criteria must be created in advance of searching for studies. These effectively define “better” and “less good,” and hence determine

which of the studies about to be identified will be included in the meta-analysis.

The results of a completed meta-analysis would typically include the following:

- The estimated treatment effect (a point estimate) for each individual study included in the analysis, and a 95% confidence interval about each study’s estimate.
- The overall estimated treatment effect and its 95% confidence interval.

This information can be displayed in tabular form or in a graphical form called a confidence interval plot.

Having calculated the result of a meta-analysis, it can be informative to assess the robustness of the analysis. In any meta-analysis some of the studies included will be larger than others, and sometimes a small percentage of included studies can be considerably larger than the majority of others. The nature of the calculations performed in meta-analysis mean that the larger trials tend to influence the result more, since they tend to have greater precision. It can therefore be helpful to assess the robustness of the overall conclusion by performing the analysis without the data from the largest study or studies to see if the result remains qualitatively the same. If it does, then the result is deemed robust. If it does not, confidence in the overall result can be undermined. Additionally, if the results are considerably different, and the studies are considerably different from each other (heterogeneous), it may not be appropriate to conduct any form of meta-analysis using them.

While an analysis is certainly conducted when performing a meta-analysis, the term *meta-methodology* may better reflect the methodology used to collect the data before conducting the actual analysis (Turner 2011). This term emphasizes the methodological rigor that is needed in getting ready to conduct the analysis.

Cross-References

► [Systematic Review](#)

References and Further Readings

- Kay, R. (2007). *Statistical thinking for non-statisticians in drug regulation*. Chichester: Wiley.
- Turner, J. R. (2011). Editor's commentary: Additional associate editors, new submission category, and methodology. *Drug Information Journal*, 45, 405–411.

Metabolic Processes

► Metabolism

Metabolic Syndrome

Anna Maria Patino-Fernandez
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

Insulin resistance (IR) syndrome; Syndrome X

Definition

The metabolic syndrome (MS) in adults has been defined in the literature by various organizations, including the National Cholesterol Education Program Expert Panel (2001), although a standard definition does not exist in either the adult or child literature. In adults, the clustering of four health risk factors, obesity, hyperinsulinemia, high blood pressure, and dyslipidemia, has been referred to as syndrome X, insulin resistance syndrome, and/or metabolic syndrome (Reaven 1988). The dominant underlying risk factors for this syndrome appear to be abdominal obesity and insulin resistance. Insulin resistance is a generalized metabolic disorder in which the body can no longer use insulin efficiently. This is why the metabolic syndrome has also been called the insulin resistance syndrome. The MS risk factors manifest in childhood and have a major impact on the development of medical problems throughout the life course. Although the clustering of these risk factors is not

well understood in children, children who are overweight are more likely to have hyperlipidemia, elevated blood pressures, and elevated insulin levels (Cook et al. 2003). A decrease in insulin sensitivity is one of the first manifestations of MS in youth (Arslanian and Suprasongsin 1996), and insulin levels in children are positively associated with levels of triglycerides, blood pressure, and body mass index, and negatively associated with high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (Batey et al. 1997). The MS definition has been modified for the examination of MS in children and includes the presence of at least three of the following abnormalities: overweight, hypertension, hypertriglyceridemia, low HDL cholesterol, and impaired glucose tolerance (Cruz et al. 2004).

The American Heart Association and the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute recommend that MS in adults be identified as the presence of three or more of the following:

- Elevated waist circumference:
 - Men – equal to or greater than 40 in. (102 cm)
 - Women – equal to or greater than 35 in. (88 cm)
- Elevated triglycerides:
 - Equal to or greater than 150 mg/dL
- Reduced HDL (“good”) cholesterol:
 - Men – less than 40 mg/dL
 - Women – less than 50 mg/dL
- Elevated blood pressure:
 - Equal to or greater than 130/85 mmHg
- Elevated fasting glucose:
 - Equal to or greater than 100 mg/dL

Individuals with MS are at increased risk for coronary heart disease and other diseases related to plaque buildups in artery walls (e.g., stroke and peripheral vascular disease) and type 2 diabetes. The metabolic syndrome has become increasingly common in the United States, with over 50 million Americans having it. Some people are genetically predisposed to insulin resistance. Acquired factors, such as excess body fat and physical inactivity, can elicit insulin resistance and the metabolic syndrome in these people.

For managing both long- and short-term risk, lifestyle interventions are the first-line treatments

to reduce the MS risk factors. These lifestyle interventions include:

- Weight loss to achieve a desirable weight (in adults, a BMI less than 25 kg/m²)
- Increased physical activity, with a goal of at least 30 min of moderate-intensity activity on most days of the week
- Healthy eating habits that include fruits and vegetables; reduced intake of saturated fat, trans fat, and cholesterol; and appropriate portions

Cross-References

- Coronary Heart Disease
- Insulin Resistance
- Insulin Resistance (IR) Syndrome
- Obesity
- Type 2 Diabetes

References and Readings

- Arslianian, S. A., & Suprasongsin, C. (1996). Insulin sensitivity, lipids, and body composition in childhood: Is syndrome X present? *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology Medicine*, 81, 1058–1062.
- Batey, L. S., Goff, D. C., Tortolero, S. R., Nichaman, M. Z., Chan, W., Chan, F. A., et al. (1997). Summary measures of the insulin resistance syndrome are adverse among Mexican American versus Non-Hispanic white children. *Circulation*, 96, 4319–4325.
- Cook, S., Weitzman, M., Auinger, P., Nguyen, M., & Dietz, W. H. (2003). Prevalence of a metabolic syndrome phenotype in adolescents. *Archives of Pediatric and Adolescent Medicine*, 157, 821–827.
- Cruz, M. L., Weigensberg, M. J., Huang, T. T., Ball, G., Shaibi, G. Q., & Goran, M. I. (2004). The metabolic syndrome in overweight Hispanic youth and the role of insulin sensitivity. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 89, 108–113.
- <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/metabolic%20syndrome/DS00522>
- National Institutes of Health. (2001). *The third report of the national cholesterol education program expert panel on detection, evaluation, and treatment of high blood cholesterol in adults (Adult Treatment Panel III)*. NIH Publication 01–3670. Bethesda: National Institutes of Health.
- Reaven, G. M. (1988). Pathophysiology of insulin resistance in human disease. *Physiology Review*, 75, 473–486.

Metabolic Syndrome X

- Hyperinsulinemia

Metabolism

Wen B. Leong¹, Shahrads Taheri², Anna M. Stone³ and G. Neil Thomas¹

¹Institute for Applied Health Research, The University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

²Research Division, Weill Cornell Medicine, Doha, Qatar

³Thornley Street Surgery, Wolverhampton, UK

Synonyms

Metabolic processes

Definition

The word metabolism is derived from Greek and means “change.” It involves all chemical reactions or changes in a living organism. In simple terms, “metabolism is the chemistry of life” (Bing 1971). Due to the importance of metabolic processes to life, the processes have been highly conserved throughout evolution.

Description

Metabolism consists of multiple processes resulting in the breakdown and formation of molecules that sustain life. Metabolic processes are complex and can be influenced by internal and external factors. These processes are highly regulated and aim to maintain physiological balance or homeostasis in the face of a constantly changing environment. There are two types of metabolic reactions: anabolic and catabolic. These processes work hand in hand, although one may predominate depending on physiological or pathological state. Anabolic reactions predominate at times of

high substrate availability and involve transformations of smaller molecules into larger complex storage compounds. Catabolic reactions predominate at times of low substrate availability and are involved in the breakdown of molecules for energy utilization (Berg et al. 2012).

Catabolism involves energy production by breaking down complex molecules to simpler ones for energy usage or cell repair. For example, breakdown of glycogen, a carbohydrate, to glucose, a monosaccharide, produces cellular energy. This energy in turn can be used to create other complex products through anabolic reactions. Anabolic reactions are important as they produce important compounds essential for basic function of life including the synthesis of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) for genetic coding or peptide and steroid hormones from amino acids and cholesterol, respectively (Dominiczak 2007).

In metabolic processes, one molecule is transformed to another or to energy via cellular respiration. The steps of metabolic pathways are regulated by various enzymes that act as catalysts to speed up the chemical reactions. These enzymes are regulated at several levels from production to function by several factors including the cell's environmental milieu. Abnormalities in several metabolic pathways are associated with various disease conditions, both genetic and acquired. Manipulation of metabolic pathways is also important in treatment of several medical conditions.

Important Biochemical Compounds in Metabolism

Living organisms need food to grow and survive. Food can be divided into essential biochemical compounds called macro- and micronutrients: proteins, carbohydrates, lipids, vitamins, and minerals. Other important biochemical compounds include nucleotides, which are important in the transfer of genetic information for growth, maintenance, and repair.

Proteins

Proteins are made from amino acids joined together via peptide bonds. Degraded amino acids are converted to nitrogen which in humans

is transformed to urea (Brody 1999). Urea is excreted in urine by the kidneys. Proteins are vital in life as they are involved in many metabolic pathways either as catalytic enzymes or as peptide hormones (e.g., insulin) (Brownie and Kernohan 2005) regulating metabolic enzymes and processes. Proteins also function as the cellular cytoskeleton, part of the immune system as antibodies, and help in transport of substrates into cells as transporters or part of cell membrane channels.

Carbohydrates

Carbohydrates are formed by simple sugars or monosaccharides. These monosaccharides are fructose, galactose, and glucose. Monosaccharides are stored as complex carbohydrates (polysaccharides) such as glycogen in animal or starch in plants for energy utilization and help in structural formation of cells alongside with proteins (Dominiczak 2007).

Lipids

Lipids consist of a broad group of hydrophobic molecules (Brownie and Kernohan 2005), which are soluble in organic solvents. Lipids function as structural components in building of cell membranes (Berg et al. 2012). Although they are less accessible as substrates, lipids are also important source of energy storage (Dominiczak 2007). Cholesterol is an example of a lipid, which can subsequently be converted into bile acids or steroids to function as hormones in the endocrine system (Molina 2004).

Vitamins

Vitamins are organic compounds derived from the diet. They can be divided into water-soluble (vitamin B and C) or fat-soluble vitamins (vitamin A, D, E, and K). For most metabolic pathways, coenzymes or metabolic intermediates are essential to carry functional groups to be used in specific enzyme activity. Without these coenzymes, the chemical reaction will not be successful. Many vitamins act as coenzymes, for example, vitamin B1 (or thiamine) is a coenzyme in carbohydrate metabolism. Thiamine deficiency is common in chronic excessive alcohol consumption, and this can lead to disease of the nervous

system known as Wernicke's encephalopathy or beriberi causing problems to the cardiovascular, muscular, and nervous systems. Other functions of vitamins include maintenance in life and support for growth (King 2011).

Minerals

Minerals or inorganic compounds are needed for many different metabolic pathways. Some common examples of minerals are sodium, potassium, chloride, magnesium, iron, calcium, and phosphate. They all have different functions. Some examples are as follows: the electrolytes sodium, potassium, chloride, and water are important for blood pressure regulation; iodine is essential for the production of thyroid hormone; and iron is a key component of hemoglobin which carries oxygen. Calcium and phosphorus are important minerals for bone metabolism. Calcium is also the key to several cellular functions including muscle contraction, neurotransmission, hormone release, and metabolic enzyme regulation (Brody 1999).

Nucleotides

Within cells, there are heterocyclic compounds called purines and pyrimidines. These serve as bases for nucleotides and are formed from amino acids. Purine bases include adenine and guanine, while pyrimidines are thymine, cytosine, and uracil. When purine or pyrimidine bases are linked to carbohydrate, they are called nucleosides. Nucleotides are phosphorylated nucleosides (King 2011). Functions of nucleotides include acting as coenzymes, (e.g., nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide, NAD⁺), cell mediators (e.g., cyclic adenosine monophosphate, cyclic-AMP), and as energy storage in the form of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) for future energy transfer. Importantly, nucleotides are involved in gene coding in the form of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and ribonucleic acid (RNA) (Berg et al. 2012; King 2011).

Energy Metabolism

Unit of Measurement

Energy is measured in joules or calories. Joules, named after English physicist James Prescott Joule (b.1818-d.1889), is the unit of measurement

for energy in the international system of unit. One joule is equal to 0.2390 calorie, and one calorie is equal to 4.184 J (Brody 1999). Calories printed on food labels provide the measured energy gained within the body when the food is eaten and absorbed.

Krebs Cycle

After food is absorbed from the digestive system, they can be converted into energy. Fatty acids are used as a major energy source in most organs except the brain. The brain gets energy through breaking down glucose into carbon dioxide. It also uses ketone bodies during starvation or fasting states (Brody 1999). The liver on the other hand uses mainly fatty acid for energy so it can function to produce, store, and release glucose. The glucose stored within the liver can be used by other organs when in need. Both the breakdowns of glucose and fatty acids are metabolized through a pathway called the Krebs cycle (Brownie and Kernohan 2005).

The Krebs cycle is also known as the tricarboxylic acid cycle. It is a pathway which uses oxygen and nutrients to produce adenotriphosphates (ATP), the energy currency of cells (Krebs and Roberts 1973). Proteins, carbohydrates, and fatty acids can be metabolized to acetyl-CoA which then produces energy. These processes involved energy transfer or release for maintenance of life (Brownie and Kernohan 2005).

Energy Transfer

A main aim of metabolism is to transfer energy or release energy for usage. There are two basic laws of thermodynamics for energy, they are:

1. Energy can neither be created nor destroyed. It can only change forms. Therefore, the total amount of energy in an organism is the same.
2. Entropy always increases. This means energy can be produced by converting high-energy compounds to low-energy end products.

In life, energy changes can be expressed using the term free energy, which is the difference in the energy content from the initial compound and the

end product. For example, the energy content from glucose (initial compound) will be different when it is converted to carbon dioxide and water (end product). If there is a negative change in free energy, meaning there is release of energy from the initial high-energy compound when converted to a low-energy end product. One common example is the conversion of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) to adenosine diphosphate (ADP). The process which releases energy is called exergonic reaction (Brownie and Kernohan 2005).

A positive change in free energy means extra energy is needed for the process to convert the initial compound to the end product(s). This process is called endergonic reaction. The energy released is used to maintain the metabolic rate (Brownie and Kernohan 2005).

Metabolic Rate

The minimum body energy requirement within a body is called basal metabolic rate (BMR). It is the body's energy usage at rest in the post-absorptive state (no processes of digestion). The metabolic rate varies during different activities. During sleeping state, for example, metabolic rate may fall by 10% from the BMR, while BMR may increase by 10% post-meals. It also changes with different physical activities, aging, temperature, environment, and stress (Brody 1999).

A useful way to measure metabolic rate is by measuring respiratory quotient (RQ). As mentioned above, one of the end products of Krebs cycle is carbon dioxide, and, during metabolic pathways, oxygen is an essential compound. So by measuring the ratio between carbon dioxide released from respiration and the oxygen consumed, the result will be the total energy usage. The consumption of different substrates has different respiratory quotients and is regulated closely by different mechanisms (Brody 1999).

Regulatory Mechanisms

Metabolic processes are very complex and can be influenced by many factors to ensure responsiveness to alterations in the environment. This regulation occurs through several mechanisms: the nervous system, the endocrine system, and, at

cellular level, the activation of enzymes and feedback inhibition.

Nervous System

The nervous system controls metabolism through the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems. These systems can stimulate a metabolic pathway directly or indirectly through the endocrine system via release of hormones. For example, release of catecholamines stimulates energy production by breaking down fat and glycogen stores within the body. Epinephrine released can also act indirectly by activation of different receptors causing release of hormones, which in turn trigger a cascade of reactions. An example of this will be epinephrine causing the release of insulin or glucagon via α and β receptors within the endocrine organ, pancreas (Molina 2004).

Endocrine System

The endocrine system regulates metabolism through release of hormones into the circulation. Hormones act via their receptors to regulate different metabolic pathways. For example, growth hormone released from the pituitary gland will act on receptors in the liver to stimulate release of peptides called insulin-like growth factors (IGF), and this will lead to different metabolism thus stimulating growth (Molina 2004).

Activation and Deactivation of Enzymes

Many proteins are inactive and need addition of specific molecule to be converted to the active form. These activated proteins will then be able to function in metabolic pathways as active enzymes. The availability of the specific activating enzymes will thus determine balance of metabolic pathways.

Adenosine triphosphate or ATP is one of the commonest compounds which will donate a phosphate to attach to another protein, such as tyrosine resulting in active form of tyrosine ready for metabolism. The process to break and free phosphate from ATP needs specific enzymes, namely, protein kinases, to be available. Therefore, the availability of protein kinases acts as a regulatory factor. This process of attaching phosphate to proteins is called phosphorylation. There are many

different protein kinases available (Berg et al. 2012).

On the other hand, dephosphorylation can stop or slow down some metabolic pathways. It will remove the phosphate from the active protein by hydrolyzing the phosphate to become orthophosphate. Without the additional phosphate molecule, the active protein will become dormant. The key enzymes on dephosphorylation are called protein phosphatases (Berg et al. 2012).

Feedback Inhibition

The availability of the final products of the metabolic pathway can act as part of a feedback regulation causing preceding steps in the pathway to slow or stop. This prevents overproduction of certain compounds, for example, the end product of pyrimidine base nucleotide cytidine triphosphate will inhibit aspartate transcarbamoylase, the enzyme required for the first committed step of metabolism of the pyrimidine biosynthetic pathway producing N-carbamoyl-L-aspartate (Dominiczak 2007).

In summary, metabolism is the chemistry of life. There are many essential biochemical compounds needed to maintain life, and these compounds are used for storage, maintenance, or conversion into energy. Metabolic pathways are regulated by different mechanisms to maintain homeostasis. Any problems in any steps of metabolic pathway can lead to different diseases. Through manipulation of metabolic pathways, it is also possible to treat several medical conditions.

Cross-References

- [Basal Metabolic Rate](#)
- [Metabolic Syndrome](#)

References and Further Reading

- Berg, J. M., Tymoczko, J. L., & Stryer, L. (2012). *Biochemistry*. Basingstoke: WH Freeman and Company.
- Bing, F. C. (1971). The history of the word “metabolism”. *Journal of the History of Medicine and Allied Sciences*, 26(2), 158–180.
- Brody, T. (1999). *Nutritional biochemistry (electronic resource)*. San Diego: Academic.

Brownie, A. C., & Kernohan, J. C. (2005). *Medical biochemistry: A core text with self-assessment*. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone.

Dominiczak, M. H. (2007). *Flesh and bones of metabolism*. Edinburgh: Elsevier Mosby.

King, M. (2011). *The medical biochemistry page*. Retrieved 3 Mar 2011, from <http://www.themedicalbiochemistrypage.org/>.

Krebs, H. A. S., & Roberts, M. B. V. (1973). *The citric acid cycle. A further analysis of metabolism and its implications slide*. London: Audio-Learning.

Molina, P. E. (2004). *Endocrine physiology*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

Methylation

Jana Strahler

Clinical Biopsychology, Department of Psychology, University of Marburg, Marburg, Germany

Synonyms

[DNA-methylation](#); [Gene methylation](#); [Methylation of bases](#); [Protein methylation](#); [Transmethylation](#)

Definition

Addition of a methyl group ($-\text{CH}_3$), simple four-atom molecule, to a chemical compound.

Description

In biological systems, methylation is involved in multiple biochemical processes such as the regulation of gene expression, protein function, and RNA metabolism. Enzymes are the main catalysts constantly working to methylate or demethylate in a dynamic process.

DNA methylation refers to the modification of DNA caused by enzyme-induced addition of methyl groups to nucleobases, which alters the amount of messenger RNA. In general, methylated genes are ineffective, while unmethylated genes are active. The pattern of methylation

differs between gene regions with the coding region being highly methylated while the promoter region is mostly free of methylation. DNA methylation typically occurs at sites where cytosine is directly followed by guanine. While there is no change in DNA sequence, DNA methylation prevents translation and therefore, alters gene expression. Thus, the addition of methyl groups to DNA can affect whether the gene's signal to produce a protein is triggered. The absence of the protein product alters the development and function of the cell.

Protein methylation refers to the posttranslational addition of methyl groups to basic amino acid residues in DNA- and RNA-binding proteins which regulates protein function.

Transmethylation denotes the transfer of a methyl group of methyl group donors to C-, O-, or N-atoms of a biomolecule under the catalytic influence of transmethylase. Example: Synthesis of creatine, a nitrogenous organic acid that increases the formation of adenosine triphosphate.

Failures in DNA methylation cause reduced or heightened gene activity. Gene methylation is likely to be a major mechanism in different disease states such as atherosclerosis or lung cancer development and progression. In this context, methylation state is discussed as a potential marker for the early detection of cancer, that is, a biomarker for tumorigenesis. Furthermore, methylation plays a role in gene-environment interaction. Previous studies have shown that early life experiences may alter gene expression mediated via differential methylation patterns. Subjects suffering from Posttraumatic Stress Disorder show more unmethylated, active genes than unaffected subjects, and most of those genes are involved in immune system regulation. Thus, there is evidence for an association between stress-related disorders and epigenetic changes in immune system genes. Furthermore, there is also evidence for an association between diet and dietary supplements and gene methylation status implicating a possible mechanism for the effects of nutrients on human health.

Importantly, the *pattern of gene methylation is heritable*. Modifications made to DNA are maintained every time the cell divides. As already

noted, lifetime experiences, dietary habits, or environmental factors can change gene activity, that is, the amount of DNA methylation. There is evidence for genetic transmission of methylation patterns to the offspring (called transgenerational epigenetic inheritance). This suggests that epigenetic mechanisms may impact health for several subsequent generations but are also attractive targets for interventions in complex diseases. Future research will provide new advances in treatments and new tools for the identification of the function of genes. The identification, cataloging, and interpretation of DNA methylation is subject of the Human Epigenome Project.

Cross-References

- [DNA](#)
- [Epigenetics](#)
- [Gene](#)
- [Gene-Environment Interaction](#)
- [RNA](#)

References and Readings

- Alberts, B., Johnson, A., Walter, P., Lewis, J., Raf, M., & Roberts, K. (2007). *Molecular biology of the cell* (5th ed.). New York/London: Garland Science.
- Haslberger, A. G. (Ed.). (2010). *Epigenetics and human health: Linking hereditary, environmental and nutritional aspects*. Weinheim: Wiley-VCH Verlag GmbH & Co. KGaA.
- Hedgecoe, A. (2004). *The politics of personalized medicine: Pharmacogenetics in the clinic*. Cambridge, UK: University Press.
- Miller, G. E., & Cole, S. W. (2010). Functional genomic approaches in behavioral medicine research. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine. Methods and application* (pp. 443–454). New York/Dordrecht/Heidelberg/London: Springer.
- Szyf, M. (2005). *DNA methylation and cancer therapy*. Georgetown: Landes Bioscience.

Methylation of Bases

- [Methylation](#)

mHealth

► [Digital Health Coaching](#)

MHLC Scales

► [Multidimensional Health Locus of Control Scales](#)

Micro Data Collection and Analysis System

► [Surveys](#)

Migraine Headache

Jeanetta Rains¹ and Donald Penzien²

¹Center for Sleep Evaluation, Elliot Hospital, Manchester, NH, USA

²Wake Forest School of Medicine, Winston-Salem, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Classic migraine](#); [Common migraine](#); [Headache with aura](#); [Menstrual headache](#); [Migraine with aura](#); [Premenstrual headache](#); [Sick headache](#); [Vascular headache](#)

Definition

Migraine and other headaches are the most prevalent neurological conditions. In the Global Burden of Disease Survey 2016, migraine was ranked as the sixth most prevalent of 328 diseases and injuries and second-highest specific cause of disability worldwide. Among young to middle aged (15–49 years old), migraine is the #1 cause of years lived with disability. Migraine is recurrent headache characterized by moderate to severe pain, pulsating pain, unilateral location, and pain

that is aggravated by routine physical activity (e.g., walking, climbing stairs). Associated features include nausea and/or vomiting and photophobia (heightened sensitivity to light and sound). Headaches commonly last 4–72 h (untreated or unsuccessfully treated), but in children may be as short as 2 h. Chronic migraine, a complication or transformation of migraine, occurs 15 days per month or more and may be unremitting. The majority of migraineurs receive treatment in the primary care setting with a wide variety of acute and preventative medications. But even the best pharmacologic options have their limits. Headache is recognized as not merely a physiological problem but rather a *psychophysiological* disorder (i.e., a physical disorder subject to psychosocial influences and environmental stressors). Thus, identification of modifiable headache risk factors and management of headache triggers are common goals of headache care. Specific behavioral headache treatments may be utilized to augment, facilitate, or in certain cases offered in lieu of pharmacologic treatment. Behavioral treatments target the patient's headache-related physiological responses (relaxation training, biofeedback) or behaviors, emotions, and cognitions (cognitive-behavioral therapy, stress management). A large empirical literature evaluating these treatments has been produced within the past three decades showing efficacy comparable to pharmacological treatments. Despite efficacious drug and nondrug treatments, access to treatment remains limited and the burden of migraine continues to increase worldwide.

Description

Migraine Diagnoses

The widely used nosology for headache is *The International diagnosis Classification of Headache Disorders-3* (IHS 2018) which provides detailed DSM-style hierarchical diagnostic criteria for primary and secondary headache disorders. The majority of migraines can be subclassified according to IDHD-III as: 1.1 Migraine without aura (previously termed common migraine) or 1.2 Migraine with aura (classic

migraine). About one in five migraine sufferers experiences an aura prior to onset of a migraine headache. The migraine aura is a phenomenon in which one or more visual or sensory disturbances develop over a few minutes and disappear within 60 min. Aura is accompanied or followed within 60 min by headache. There are many different types of visual and sensory auras which may differ between attacks. Visual disturbance may be positive features (e.g., flickering, blurred, curved, or luminescent area in the visual field) and/or negative features (e.g., loss of vision). Aura may involve one such symptom or a succession of visual disturbances. Unilateral sensory disturbances are also common, such as pins-and-needles, arm or leg numbness or tingling, or one-sided weakness. Disturbances of speech may also occur, though they are a much less common aura symptom. Such neurological symptoms are fully reversible.

Chronic migraine is the most common headache diagnosis seen in neurology practice and multidisciplinary clinic. Most cases of chronic migraine evolve over time from less frequent migraine without aura. As chronicity develops, the headaches tend to lose their episodic character. Chronic migraine is characterized by having daily or almost daily head pain on 15 or more days per month and the average headache duration greater than 72 h (aka, transformed migraine, chronic daily headache). The pattern of progression of migraine from episodic to chronic over time has been well documented in headache literature, sometimes referred to as *chronification* or *transformation* of migraine. Medication overuse is the variable that has received the greatest attention as a potential cause for progression.

Medication-overuse headache (MOH) has been associated with over-the-counter and prescriptions medications commonly used in the treatment of migraine. Though these medications are effective for intermittent use, frequent use over an extended period of time may complicate headache itself. ICHD-3 defines minimum patterns of medication use considered to be associated with 8.2 Medication-overuse headache: ergotamines or triptans ≥ 10 days/month on a regular basis ≥ 3 months; opioids or combination analgesics ≥ 10 days/month on a regular basis for >3 months;

and simple analgesics ≥ 15 days/month >3 months. MOH is generally recognized to be relatively resistant to traditional pharmacological as well as behavioral treatments. However, following withdrawal of the overused medications MOH generally reverts to an episodic pattern which is responsive to behavioral and prophylactic treatments.

Epidemiology

Migraine affects an estimated 39 million people in the United States and over 1 billion worldwide. Across studies, epidemiologic reports find 10% of children, 6% of men, and up to 18% of all women in the USA (about 12% of the population as a whole) experience migraine. Roughly, three out of four migraine sufferers are female. Migraine prevalence peaks in the third and fourth decades of life. At this time period, for example, migraine is 3.3 times more common in women than men. The female preponderance and variance with age is presumed to be related to hormonal milestones in women. Females with migraine often notice a change in their migraine pattern with hormonal fluctuation. Migraine increases at menarche and with the menstrual period. Improvement or worsening occurs during pregnancy and menopause. Headaches are most common between 18 and 44 years of age and may decrease in the fifth decade of life.

Genetic Predisposition

There is a genetic predisposition to migraine. Approximately, 80% of migraine sufferers have a family history of migraine affecting a first-degree relative. Twin studies have demonstrated a familial influence. The concordance for migraine in monozygotic twins is greater than it is for dizygotic twins. However, it is also clear that the genetic background of the disorder is complex.

Disability and Impact

Migraine is associated with significant disability, lost work, and productivity. The problem can range from sporadic, infrequent headache with only minimal impact, to chronic, persistent headache that can severely disrupt the patient's life. In the USA alone, cost of medical care and lost productivity attributed to migraine has been

estimated to be \$36 billion per year. Worldwide, migraine was estimated to have caused 45 million years lived with disability in 2016, which represented an increase of 51%, compared to the 1990 survey. The increase in estimates from 1990 to 2016 reflects population growth and age composition of the populations assessed including fewer children and a greater number of teens and middle aged adults. Treatments effects are not evident in this data. This is attributed to the fact that treatments are not readily available to headache sufferers worldwide.

Risk Factors in the Transformation from Episodic to Chronic Migraine

Transformed migraine refers to the condition in which episodic migraine headache progresses to or “transforms” to chronic migraine – occurring at least 180 days per year. That is, high frequency chronic headache emerges, or escalates in frequency over time, from an earlier pattern of lower frequency episodic headache. Epidemiological studies suggest that there are specific variables or risk factors that might lead to progression from episodic to chronic migraine in selected patients: medication overuse, psychiatric comorbidity, stress, obesity, snoring, sleep disturbance, and others. Such modifiable risk factors may become potential targets for headache prevention.

Medication overuse: One of the most important and common causes of transformation is headache medication itself. When taken often, the very medications used to treat tension-type and migraine headache attacks can transform episodic headache into chronic headache. The medications known to play a role in this process include many over-the-counter and prescribed analgesics, analgesics combined with caffeine, opiates, ergotamines, and triptans. All these medications can be effective in treating episodic headache when used on an occasional basis. However, when used frequently, they may transform and aggravate headache. This process is called medication-overuse headache. MOH usually improves when the overuse ceases. Within 2 months (and frequently sooner), the chronic headache pattern will revert back to the earlier episodic headache pattern or will remit. When episodic headache persists, it is often much more

responsive to conventional treatment after the medication overuse has been eliminated.

Stress: Stress is the most commonly identified trigger for a headache in the average headache sufferer. Therefore, it is not surprising that frequent life changes and chronic daily stressors or “hassles” are also implicated in the development of chronic headaches.

Sleep: Headache may be aggravated by frequent sleep disturbance. The most common sleep problem for headache sufferers is insomnia, including difficulty falling asleep, difficulty staying asleep, or poor quality “nonrestful” sleep. Voluntarily limiting sleep or “burning the candle at both ends” can also increase risk of headache. Snoring and obstructive sleep apnea during sleep is a specific risk factor for chronic headache in some patients. Though the cause is not known, it could be because snoring disturbs sleep quality or compromises breathing at night.

Obesity: Obesity is an independent risk factor for chronic migraine after adjusting for comorbidities and demographic variables. Interestingly, obesity is not a risk factor for migraine in general. The prevalence of episodic migraine in general does not vary significantly with the body mass index (BMI). However, studies have shown among migraineurs, high BMI was associated with more frequent headache attacks.

Caffeine: Finally, although caffeine can be beneficial in moderate amounts and is used in some medications, it can also be a risk factor. Caffeine is the most widely used mood-altering substance in the United States. It is present in many beverages, dietary supplements, and in some foods such as chocolate. Many Americans consume caffeine daily with very little awareness that they are ingesting a drug with potent effects. For some headache sufferers, caffeine can aggravate headache in much the same way that medication overuse can.

Others: Female gender, presence of comorbid pain conditions, and psychiatric comorbidity have also been linked to transformation.

Psychiatric Comorbidity

Epidemiological studies have determined migraine and several psychiatric disorders to be comorbid. Psychiatric comorbidity portends a

poorer prognosis for both pharmacologic and behavioral treatments. Migraine is comorbid with depression (OR 2.2–4.0), generalized anxiety (OR 3.5–5.3), panic disorder (OR 3.7), and bipolar disorder (OR 2.9–7.3). Patients with chronic migraine are at increased risk for major depression (OR 6.4 vs. 2.7) as well as for anxiety disorders (ORs 6.9 vs. 3.2 for all migraineurs).

Pharmacologic Treatment

A wide range of acute and prophylactic medications are available for treatment of migraine. Acute medications fall into general classes of medicines including analgesics, ergotamines, and triptans. Analgesics are considered non-specific migraine medications as they work on pain systems in general, not just activated pain pathways involved in migraine. In contrast, triptans and ergotamines are migraine-specific medications. Analgesic and abortive medications are recommended for intermittent use. The American Migraine Prevalence and Prevention workgroup recommends a preventive medication for four to five nondisabling attacks or two or more disabling attacks per month. In addition, the use of behavioral headache medicine techniques combined with a daily medication will reduce the frequency of headaches further. A headache preventive therapy goal is to reduce attacks by 50% or more. Prophylactic or preventive medications are taken daily to prevent migraine attacks from occurring and commonly include a variety of antiepileptic, antidepressant, and antihypertensive medications. OnabotulinumtoxinA (BOTOX) is an injectable neurotoxin approved for treatment of chronic migraine. The mechanisms of action for migraine prevention remains unknown, but inhibition of nociceptive signaling has been suggested. Other medications (e.g., antiemetics, steroids) may also be utilized. Opiates are not commonly used due to their role in medication overuse headache and chronic migraine.

Behavioral Treatments for Migraine

Since the 1970s, behavioral treatments for migraine prevention have been established as independent therapies or combination with medications. Most behavioral treatments are classified into three broad categories: cognitive-behavioral

therapy (i.e., stress-management training), relaxation training, and biofeedback (often administered in conjunction with relaxation). More recently, mindfulness based treatments have been shown promise. In most instances, behavior therapies are used for preventing migraine episodes rather than for alleviating symptoms, once an attack has begun. Although these modalities may be effective as monotherapy, they are more often used in conjunction with medications. Goals for behavioral treatments include: reducing the frequency and severity of headache episodes; reducing headache-related disability; reducing reliance on medications; enhancing personal control over headache; and reducing distress and psychological symptoms.

Over 300 studies evaluating behavioral treatments for migraine have been published since the earliest empirical report evaluating a behavioral intervention for recurrent headache was published in 1969. The overwhelming majority of published clinical trials yielded positive outcomes, leading many professional practice organizations to recommend use of behavioral headache treatments alongside the preferred pharmacologic treatments for primary headache. An exhaustive meta-analysis of behavioral treatments for migraine funded by the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality found these behavioral interventions yielded 35–55% reduction in migraine versus 5% reduction for no-treatment controls. The meta-analysis was the basis for an evidence-based guideline for migraine management produced by the *U. S. Headache Consortium* whose membership included the American Academy of Family Physicians, American Academy of Neurology, American Headache Society, American College of Emergency Physicians, American College of Physicians, American Osteopathic Association, and the National Headache Foundation. The Consortium's recommendations pertaining to behavioral interventions for migraine are as follows:

1. Relaxation training, thermal biofeedback combined with relaxation training, electromyographic biofeedback, and cognitive-behavioral therapy may be considered as treatment options for prevention of migraine (Grade A Evidence).

2. Behavioral therapy may be combined with preventive drug therapy to achieve added clinical improvement for migraine (Grade B Evidence).

Behavioral treatment typically entails 6–12 individual clinic sessions with a professional. Cost and availability of behavioral medicine specialists that provide services severely limit access of the average patient to behavioral treatments. In recent years, alternative delivery formats have been developed to increase availability and cost-effectiveness, such as group administration and minimal therapist-contact treatments. Minimal-contact or “home-based” formats have been the most extensively developed in this arena and provide similar treatment components to their clinic-based counterparts. Skills are introduced in the clinic but training occurs primarily at home guided by written materials and audio recordings. Consequently, only three or four clinic sessions may be necessary when behavioral techniques are delivered via this format. Meta-analyses have demonstrated the utility of the minimal-contact treatment approach, indicating that for many patients such treatments can be as effective as those delivered in a clinic setting. Internet delivered CBT and self-help applications for relaxation therapy are promising for a select group of highly motivated and uncomplicated patients.

Self-Management

Headache Diary: Daily quantitative recordings of headache yield measures of headache frequency, duration, and intensity and may be employed to identify medication overuse, chronobiological patterns, menstrual and other headache triggers below, and to assess treatment outcomes. Diaries should be recorded daily, since memory for pain is prone to distortion. Diaries encourage patients to be systematic in their assessment of headache patterns and enable health-care providers to observe efficacy of treatments and dosages over time.

Headache Triggers: Identification and management of individual headache triggers is a common component of behavioral headache therapies. A trigger is an event that provokes headache within 24 h at least 50% of the time. The level of

vulnerability to any specific headache trigger factor varies from person to person. An individual's vulnerability to any given trigger factor also can rise and fall over time. Just the same, a person's overall tendency to experience a headache in response to trigger factors is likely to be an inherited trait. Prospective headache diaries are used to correlate headache onset or exacerbation with potential stimuli. The more common headache triggers reported by patients across studies are stress, menstruation, sleep disturbance, fasting or skipping meals, and weather. Additional triggers include alcohol, smoking, exercise, sexual activity, bright lights, odors, specific dietary additives, and others. There may be a threshold effect, in which multiple triggers or a combination of triggers tend to provoke headache. Headache trigger management includes: education about common headache precipitants, training patients to identify their unique triggers through prospective self-monitoring in a headache diary, applying behavior change principles to limit exposure to avoidable triggers (e.g., sleep deprivation) or apply self-management skills in responses to unavoidable triggers (e.g., stress).

Cross-References

- [Biofeedback](#)
- [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- [Headaches: Psychological Management](#)
- [Mindfulness](#)
- [Relaxation Techniques/Therapy](#)
- [Stress Management](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bergman-Bock, S. (2018). Associations between migraine and the most common psychiatric co-morbidities. *Headache*, 58, 346–353.
- GBD 2016 Headache Collaborators. (2018). Global, regional, and national burden of migraine and tension-type headache, 1990–2016: A systematic analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study 2016. *Lancet Neurology*, 17, 954–976.
- Headache Classification Subcommittee of the International Headache Society (IHS). (2018). The International Classification of Headache Disorders, 3rd edition. *Cephalalgia*, 38(Suppl. 1), 1–211.

- Penzien, D. B., Irby, M. B., Smitherman, T. A., Rains, J. C., & Houle, T. T. (2015). Well-established and empirically supported behavioral treatments for migraine. *Current Pain and Headache Reports*, 19, 34.
- Rains, J. C. (2018). Sleep and migraine: Assessment and treatment of comorbid sleep disorders. *Headache*, 58, 1074–1091.
- Smitherman, T. A., Burch, R., Sheikh, H., & Loder, E. (2013). The prevalence, impact, and treatment of migraine and severe headaches in the United States: A review of statistics from national surveillance studies. *Headache*, 53, 427–436.

Migraine with Aura

► [Migraine Headache](#)

Milieu Interieur

► [Homeostasis](#)

Miller, Neal

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Biographical Information



Neal Elgar Miller was born on August 3, 1909, in Milwaukee, Wisconsin. He earned a Bachelor's

degree from the University of Washington in 1931, a Master's from Stanford the following year, and his doctorate from Yale in 1935. He was then a social science research fellow at the Institute of Psychoanalysis, Vienna, for a year before returning to Yale as a faculty member in 1936.

During the Second World War, he served as an officer in charge of research in the Army Air Corps' Psychological Research Unit #1 in Nashville, Tennessee, and later directed the Psychological Research Project at the headquarters of the Flying Training Command in Randolph Field, Texas. Miller returned to Yale as Professor of Psychology and in 1952, he was appointed the first James Rowland Angell Professor of Psychology.

In 1966, Miller transferred to Rockefeller University, where he spent an additional 15 years of service. He became professor emeritus at Rockefeller in 1981 and research affiliate at Yale in 1985.

Major Accomplishments

Miller is often credited as being the founder of behavioral medicine. He made significant contributions to our understanding of the relationship between reinforcement mechanisms and the control of autonomic behavior, and pioneered the field of biofeedback, which is used successfully today to treat a variety of medical conditions. He was also active in many other fields of scientific investigation.

His early research focused on the investigation of Freudian theory and clinical phenomena using experimental analysis of behavior techniques. He concluded that fear is a learnable drive, and began to investigate other autonomic behaviors to determine if they could be modified through instrumental conditioning. He used behavioral methodologies and neurophysiological techniques to investigate hunger and thirst. This integration of ideas and practices laid the foundation for modern neuroscience, and also fundamentally changed understanding of behavior and motivation. Interdisciplinary collaboration was a hallmark of his work.

Following animal model work on anxiety, Miller began to investigate other autonomic behaviors, trying to find out if they could also be modified through instrumental conditioning. He investigated hunger and thirst, using behavioral methodologies and neurophysiological techniques. He concluded that the autonomic nervous system could be as susceptible to classical conditioning as the voluntary nervous system. This led to his work on biofeedback. Initial reaction in the scientific community to his claim that people could learn to control autonomic functions was not positive. However, his sustained investigation revealed that this is indeed the case, and biofeedback became gradually accepted in scientific circles as a method to help treat various medical conditions, including high blood pressure, epilepsy, attention deficit and hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), and migraines.

During his career, Miller was president of many learned societies, including the American Psychological Association (APA), the Society for Neurosciences, the Biofeedback Society of America, and the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research.

Miller received the APA Distinguished Scientific Contribution Award in 1959 and the APA Citation for Outstanding Lifetime Contribution to Psychology in 1991. In 1993, APA's Board of Scientific Affairs voted to honor him by establishing the Annual Neal Miller Distinguished Lecture, to be dedicated to neuroscience and animal research and presented at each APA convention. Miller himself presented the first lecture in 1994. The Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research established the Neal E. Miller New Investigator Award in his honor, and he received the National Medal of Science in 1964.

Editor's note: Dr. Miller passed away in 2002.

Cross-References

- [Autonomic Nervous System \(ANS\)](#)
- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Biofeedback](#)
- [Hypertension](#)
- [Migraine Headache](#)

References and Readings

- Coons, E. E. (2002). Neal Elgar Miller (1909–2002). *American Psychologist*, 57, 784–786.
- Miller, N. E. (1975). Behavioral medicine as a new frontier: Opportunities and dangers. In S. M. Weiss (Ed.), *Proceedings of the national heart and lung institute working conference on health behavior, 1975* (pp. 1–11). Washington, DC: DHEW Publ. #NIH, 76-868.
- Miller, N. E. (1979). Behavioral medicine: New opportunities but serious dangers. *Behavioral Medicine Update*, 1(2), 5–7.
- Miller, N. E. (1981). An overview of behavioral medicine: Opportunities and dangers. In S. M. Weiss, J. A. Herd, & B. H. Fox (Eds.), *Perspectives on behavioral medicine* (pp. 3–22). New York: Academic. (Note: Based on his Presidential address given at the meeting of the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research, Snowbird, Utah, June 1979b).
- Miller, N. E. (1983). Behavioral medicine: Symbiosis between laboratory and clinic. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 34, 1–31.
- Miller, N. E. (1984). Behavioral medicine. In R. J. Corsini (Ed.), *Encyclopedia of psychology* (Vol. 1, pp. 126–130). New York: Wiley Interscience.
- Miller, N. E. (1987). Behavioral medicine. In G. Adelman (Ed.), *Encyclopedia of neuroscience* (pp. 122–124). Boston: Birkhauser.
- Miller, N. E. (1992). Some trends from the history to the future of behavioral medicine. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 14(4), 307–309.
- Miller, N. E. (1995). Perspective on behavioral medicine and the brain's hierarchy of homeostatic controls. In T. Kikuchi, H. Sakuma, I. Saito, & K. Tsuboi (Eds.), *Biobehavioral self-regulation: Eastern and Western perspectives* (pp. 229–245). Tokyo: Springer.
- Spielberger, C. D. (1992). American Psychological Association citation for outstanding lifetime contribution to psychology. *American Psychologist*, 47, 847.
- Zimbardo, P. G., & Miller, N. E. (1958). The facilitation of exploration by hunger in rats. *Journal of Comparative and Physiological Psychology*, 51, 43–46.

Millon Behavioral Medicine Diagnostic (MBMD)

Mike Antoni

Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Sylvester Cancer Center, Miller School of
Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[MBMD](#)

Definition

Short Definition

The Millon Behavioral Medicine Diagnostic (MBMD) is a broadband self-report psychosocial instrument designed to assess physically ill and behavioral medicine patients to help develop effective treatment and management plans.

Description

The Millon Behavioral Medicine Diagnostic (MBMD) is a broadband self-report psychosocial instrument designed to assess physically ill and behavioral medicine patients aged 18–85 years to develop effective treatment and management plans. It provides information on test response patterns, health behaviors, psychiatric features, personality-based interpersonal coping styles, stress-moderating variables, and predicted responses to medical treatments.

The test was developed using a three-step validation process wherein theory-generated items were used to form the 29 clinical scales representing the domains tapped by the test (Millon et al. 2006). The initial validation sample comprised 720 patients (cancer, cardiac, diabetes, HIV, neurological, pain) drawn from medical settings across 22 states in the USA and Canada. Item content was refined to optimize scale internal consistency and test-retest reliability. Concurrent validity was determined through correlations with scales widely used in behavioral medicine research and with medical staff ratings. The MBMD is a 165-item true-false test in English and Spanish versions appropriate for a sixth grade education reading level. The test requires 20–25 min to complete and can be scored through a computer program, a fax-in service to the test publisher, or using hand-scoring templates.

The MBMD reports result in a profile depicting the raw scores and norm- and gender-adjusted prevalence scores for each scale representing the major test domains (psychiatric indicators [5 scales], coping styles [11 scales], stress moderators [6 scales], treatment prognostics [5 scales], and management guides [2 scales]). Scores on other test domains,

negative health behaviors and response patterns, are expressed as categories. The test also yields a multipage report that highlights patient assets and liabilities in each domain and uses “cross-domain” synthesis to modulate the interpretation of individual scores based on other domains in the profile (e.g., response pattern, psychiatric indicators, and coping style). At the end of the report, there is a one-page Health Provider Summary that includes the most salient aspects of the patient’s test results expressed in bulleted short phrases and a list of noteworthy item endorsements that may require immediate attention and follow-up.

Subsequent validation studies based on 711 patients undergoing bariatric surgery procedures and 1200 patients undergoing treatment for chronic pain in a variety of treatment settings across the USA have produced specialized test reports designed for use in these settings. Designed to accompany the general MBMD report, each of these “specialized” reports contains additional report sections germane to pretreatment considerations and longer-term patient management. The bariatric report contains information across 24 variables describing hypothesized benefits of additional presurgical assessments and interventions and the benefits of postsurgical adjunctive behavioral interventions. The pain report comes in two versions – a presurgical report and a nonsurgical report. The pain reports include general medical prevalence scores and chronic pain-specific percentile scores. The pain reports contain probabilistic statements relevant to pretreatment and posttreatment patient management. The MBMD is associated with health behaviors and medical outcomes in diverse clinical populations (Cruess et al. 2007, 2010; Farrell et al. 2011; Harper et al. 2010; Lavoie et al. 2010; Pereira et al. 2010; Lattie et al. 2013).

References and Readings

- Cruess, D., Meagher, S., Antoni, M. H., & Millon, T. (2007). Utility of the millon behavioral medicine diagnostic (MBMD) to predict adherence to highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART) medication regimens among HIV-positive men and women. *Journal of Personality Assessment*, 89, 277–290.

- Cruess, D., Localio, R., Platt, A., & Kimmel, S. (2010). Patient attitudinal and behavioral factors associated with warfarin non-adherence at outpatient anticoagulation clinics. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 17, 33–42.
- Farrell, K., Shen, B.-J., Mallon, S., Penedo, F., & Antoni, M. H. (2011). Utility of the millon behavioral medicine diagnostic (MBMD) to predict medication adherence in patients diagnosed with heart failure. *Journal of Clinical Psychology in Medical Settings*, 18(1), 1–12.
- Harper, R., Wager, J., & Chacko, R. (2010). Psychosocial factors in noncompliance during liver transplant selection. *Journal of Clinical Psychology in Medical Settings*, 17, 71–76.
- Lattie, E., Antoni, M. H., Millon, T., Kamp, J., & Walker, M. (2013). MBMD coping styles and psychiatric indicators and response to a multidisciplinary pain treatment program. *Journal of Clinical Psychology in Medical Settings*, 20, 515–525.
- Lavoie, K., Bouthiller, D., Bacon, S., Lemiere, C., Martin, J., Hamid, Q., et al. (2010). Psychologic distress and maladaptive coping styles patients with severe vs moderate asthma. *Chest*, 137, 1324–1331.
- Millon, T., Antoni, M., Millon, C., Minor, S., & Grossman, S. (2006). *Millon behavioral medicine diagnostic (MBMD) manual* (2nd ed.). Minneapolis: NCS Pearson.
- Pereira, D., Christian, L., Patidar, S., Bishop, M., Dodd, S., Athanason, R., et al. (2010). Spiritual absence and 1-year mortality after hematopoietic stem cell transplant. *Biology of Blood and Marrow Transplantation*, 16, 1171–1179.

Mindfulness

Alan M. Delamater
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami
Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Insight meditation](#); [Meditation](#)

Definition

A key factor in insight meditation is the development of bare attention and mindfulness. Bare attention is observing phenomenon as they are, without comment, evaluation, or judgment.

Mindfulness is the application of bare attention to changing objects as they occur in each moment, with an attitude of acceptance so that there is no clinging to objects that are desirable and there is no aversion to objects that are not desirable. In mindfulness practice, one does not identify with objects of attention. The goal is to increase the frequency of noticing objects as they arise and pass away in consciousness. Concentration is also an important component of insight meditation, but is used in insight meditation to focus on changing objects rather than a single object of attention (Goldstein 1976; Goleman 1988).

As mindfulness becomes stronger and more sustained, insights about the nature of the mind and reality are experienced, including three fundamental characteristics of existence: impermanence, suffering, and not self, i.e., the concept that the self is a creation. Insight or vipassana meditation has its origins in Buddhism and was developed over 2500 years ago; vipassana is the Pali word meaning to clearly see the nature of phenomenon.

In recent years, mindfulness has been incorporated into psychotherapeutic techniques and health-care interventions. There is a growing evidence base for its efficacy in treating pain, anxiety, stress, depression, and chronic health conditions, as well as for stress reduction and improved well-being in healthy people (Baer 2006; Bohlmeijer et al. 2010; Hofmann et al. 2010; Shapiro and Carlson 2009). Mindfulness has been adapted to several treatment programs, including mindfulness-based stress reduction (Kabat-Zinn 2003), mindfulness-based cognitive therapy (Segal et al. 2002), dialectical behavior therapy (Linehan 1993), and acceptance and commitment therapy (Hayes et al. 1999).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Meditation](#)
- ▶ [Mindfulness-Based Eating](#)
- ▶ [Mindfulness-Based Interventions](#)
- ▶ [Stress Management](#)
- ▶ [Transcendental Meditation](#)

References and Readings

- Baer, R. (2006). *Mindfulness-based treatment approaches: Clinician's guide to evidence base and applications*. Boston: Elsevier Academic Press.
- Bohlmeijer, E., Prenger, R., Taal, E., & Cuijpers, P. (2010). The effects of mindfulness-based stress reduction therapy on mental health of adults with a chronic medical disease: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 68(6), 539–544.
- Goldstein, J. (1976). *The experience of insight: A simple and direct guide to Buddhist meditation*. Boulder: Shambhala.
- Goleman, D. (1988). *The meditative mind: Varieties of meditative experience*. New York: Tarcher.
- Hayes, S., Strosahl, K., & Wilson, K. (1999). *Acceptance and commitment therapy*. New York: Guilford.
- Hofmann, S. G., Sawyer, A. T., Witt, A. A., & Oh, D. (2010). The effect of mindfulness-based therapy on anxiety and depression: A meta-analytic review. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 78(2), 169–183.
- Kabat-Zinn, J. (2003). Mindfulness-based interventions in context: Past, present, and future. *Clinical Psychology: Science and Practice*, 10, 144–154.
- Linehan, M. (1993). *Cognitive-behavioral treatment of borderline personality disorder*. New York: Guilford.
- Segal, Z. V., Williams, M. G., & Teasdale, J. D. (2002). *Mindfulness-based cognitive therapy for depression: A new approach to preventing relapse*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Shapiro, S. L., & Carlson, L. E. (2009). *The art and science of mindfulness: Integrating mindfulness into psychology and the helping professions*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Mindfulness-Based Cancer Recovery

► Mindfulness-Based Interventions

Mindfulness-Based Cognitive Therapy

► Mindfulness-Based Interventions

Mindfulness-Based Eating

Jean L. Kristeller

Department of Psychology, Indiana State University, Terre Haute, IN, USA

Synonyms

[MB-EAT](#); [MBIs](#); [Mindfulness](#)

Definition

Mindfulness-based eating interventions are group-based approaches designed to assist individuals both in developing the basic skills of mindfulness and at the same time applying these skills to a wide range of experience related to eating and to food choice (O'Reilly et al. 2014). Most approaches, although not all, draw on the core practices of Jon Kabat-Zinn's Mindfulness-Based Stress Reduction (MBSR) program, utilizing his definition of mindfulness: "paying attention in a particular way . . . in the present moment, and non-judgmentally" (Kabat-Zinn 1990/2013). The most widely investigated approach is Mindfulness-Based Eating Awareness Training (MB-EAT) and related interventions that have augmented that program for specific populations such as individuals with Type II diabetes. Similar to other MBIs (see the entry on "► [Mindfulness-Based Interventions](#)"), the programs typically last for 8 weeks or more, with sessions of 2–2.5 h, containing training in both general mindfulness and eating-related elements in all sessions. These are accompanied by home practice, both of sitting mindfulness and eating-related application (see below for a more detailed description). Of the MBIs, mindful eating applications are particularly relevant to behavioral medicine, given the physical and medical challenges of obesity, compulsive overeating, weight-related issues, and the growing recognition of the problems

and limitations associated with restrictive dieting (Mann et al. 2007).

Description

History

MB-EAT began developing in the 1980s, as a way to create linkages between meditation-based interventions, self-regulation theory, and core research on individual differences in the psychology of eating behavior and eating disorders. Much of the eating-related research, which has continued to expand, has explored the interplay of restrained eating, over-restrictive dieting, compulsive over-eating, social and environmental influences on eating, and internal experiences of hunger, taste, and satiety (Bartoshuk 1978; Geliebter and Hashim 2001; Herman and Polivy 1983; Kristeller and Rodin 1989; Polivy and Herman 1999; Rodin 1981). The development of MB-EAT was then further influenced by the work of Jon Kabat-Zinn and others on the value of mindfulness (Kristeller et al. *in press*; Kristeller and Wolever 2011). Other mindfulness-based eating approaches that developed independently include those laid out by Ronna Kabatznick (1998), Jan Chozen Bays (2009), Megrette Hammond (2007), and Lynn Rossy (Bush et al. 2014).

Target Groups

Although cultivating mindful eating can be valuable to almost anyone, a key target group are individuals with binge eating disorder. Over the last 30 years, the diagnosis of binge eating disorder was established as a way of capturing the extreme levels of episodic food intake accompanied by struggle and distress. Individuals meet DSM-V criteria with as few as one binge/week, accompanied by a sense of loss of control and substantial distress; as many as 30% of individuals with obesity may meet criteria for BED (Udo and Grilo 2018). Meta-analyses (Godfrey et al. 2015; O'Reilly et al. 2014) have supported the value of mindfulness-based interventions for a range of obesity-related issues and particularly

for binge eating disorder. Integrating mindful eating into programs for children and youth may also have value (Barnes and Kristeller 2016; Dalen et al. 2015) and for individuals undergoing bariatric surgery (Wnuk et al. 2018). It can be adapted for individuals with bulimia, but there is only very limited support/evidence for use for those with anorexia nervosa (Dunne 2018).

Components of Mindful Eating Programs

Similar to the value of mindfulness for addressing a wide range of cognitive and emotional reactivity, the elements within mindful eating programs focus both on engaging a general capacity for mindfulness, and from the beginning, extending that to a broad range of eating-related elements. Furthermore, the contrast is repeatedly highlighted regarding the negative impact of highly restrictive dieting, which, rather than reconnecting individuals to their physical, emotional, and social needs for food, does the opposite. Mindfulness creates a few moments of space to replace habitual with more mindful responses.

MBIs for eating regulation generally are multi-session with components including both general mindfulness training and eating-related. The emphasis is on creating a sustainable, and flexible, relationship to eating and food. MB-EAT is a 12-session program, with 10 weekly 2.5 h sessions and two follow-up sessions at 1-month intervals. Every session has components designed to engage both “inner” wisdom and “outer” wisdom. All sessions include formal mindfulness meditation practices, and mindful eating-related practices, about half with food, increasing in challenge from raisins to a buffet meal, including foods that may trigger overeating, such as cookies or chips. Other eating-related practices include cultivating awareness of physical hunger signals vs. other triggers for eating (thoughts, emotions, and/or social situations); awareness of taste satisfaction/satiety (or *sensory specific satiety*), which can occur quite rapidly with mindful attention; a fullness practice; and multiple other guided mindfulness practices related to self-acceptance, body

awareness, forgiveness, and wisdom/spiritual engagement. These are all part of cultivating “inner” wisdom. “Outer” wisdom components bring nonjudgmental awareness to elements of nutritional information, weight management, and engaging physical activity more effectively and to use this knowledge in a way that is flexible and sustainable. Leaders who complete a formal training process are expected to have a background in a health-related area and clinical/group treatment experience, and substantive personal practice in mindfulness meditation.

Variations on MB-EAT have adapted elements, with materials to specific targeted groups, in regard to both inner and outer wisdom elements. For example, another related program added several sessions to incorporate more stress management and expanded outer wisdom components for individuals with mild to moderate obesity but without BED (Mason et al. 2016b). The number of sessions may also be adapted as appropriate to the setting and/or population. Mindfulness has also been effectively integrated into dialectical behavior therapy (Safer et al. 2009) and to CBT approaches (Woolhouse et al. 2012), for individuals with BED.

Clinical Effects in Behavioral Medicine

Evidence is slowly growing in support of MB-EAT and related programs, based on a number of NIH-funded trials, with a range of populations, including those with binge eating disorder, weight issues from overweight through morbid obesity, and individuals with type 2 diabetes. Other evidence has focused on eating disorders more broadly, including mechanisms of change, but with limited research to date (Barney et al. 2019; Turgon et al. 2019). Some limited evidence suggests that normalization of metabolic regulation is independent of weight loss (Mason et al. 2016b). Evidence supports decreases in binging and other indicators of compulsive overeating, maintained at follow-up, and weight loss, correlated with frequency of use of mindfulness practice, along with decreases in depression (Kristeller et al. 2013); strong effects for reduced “reward-driven” eating, which predicted weight

loss, but independent of effects on stress (Mason et al. 2016a); and effects on diabetes management comparable to standard care (Miller et al. 2014).

Use of Mindful Eating in Behavioral Medicine Populations

Because mindful eating interventions appear acceptable and effective for a wide range of individuals, they may play an important role across a wide range of behavioral medicine populations who would usually be directed toward restrictive weight loss programs, both when compulsive overeating is present and when a broader range of overeating patterns may occur. Effectiveness with individuals with BED is particularly important to consider, given that in a very large national sample, individuals with BED have been shown to have higher prevalence of diabetes, hypertension, and high cholesterol and triglycerides, along with clinical levels of depression (Udo and Grilo 2019).

Cross-References

- Eating Disorders: Anorexia and Bulimia Nervosa
- Mindfulness-Based Interventions
- Obesity

References and Further Reading

- Barnes, V. A., & Kristeller, J. L. (2016). Impact of mindfulness-based eating awareness on diet and exercise habits in adolescents. *International Journal of Complementary and Alternative Medicine*, 3(2), 00070. <https://doi.org/10.15406/ijcam.2016.03.00070>.
- Barney, J. L., Murray, H. B., Manasse, S. M., Dochat, C., & Juarascio, A. S. (2019). Mechanisms and moderators in mindfulness- and acceptance-based treatments for binge eating spectrum disorders: A systematic review. *European Eating Disorders Review*, 27(4), 352–380. <https://doi.org/10.1002/erv.2673>.
- Bartoshuk, L. M. (1978). The psychophysics of taste. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 31, 1068–1077.
- Bays, J. C. (2009). *Mindful eating*. Boston: Shambala Press.
- Bush, H. E., Rossy, L., Mintz, L. B., & Schopp, L. (2014). Eat for life: A work site feasibility study of a novel

- mindfulness-based intuitive eating intervention. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 28(6), 380–388. <https://doi.org/10.4278/ajhp.120404-QUAN-186>.
- Dalen, J., Brody, J. L., Staples, J. K., & Sedillo, D. (2015). A conceptual framework for the expansion of behavioral interventions for youth obesity: A family-based mindful eating approach. *Childhood Obesity*, 11(5), 577–584.
- Dunne, J. (2018). Mindfulness in anorexia nervosa: An integrated review of the literature. *Journal of the American Psychiatric Nurses Association*, 24(2), 109–117. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1078390317711250>.
- Geliebter, A., & Hashim, S. A. (2001). Gastric capacity in normal, obese, and bulimic women. *Physiology & Behavior*, 74(4–5), 743–746. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0031-9384\(01\)00619-9](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0031-9384(01)00619-9).
- Godfrey, K. M., Gallo, L. C., & Afari, N. (2015). Mindfulness-based interventions for binge eating: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 38(2), 348–362. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10865-014-9610-5>.
- Hammond, M. (2007). Mindful eating. Tuning in to your food. *Diabetes Self-Management*, 24(2), 36.
- Herman, C. P., & Polivy, J. (1983). A boundary model for the regulation of eating. *Psychiatric Annals*, 13(12), 918–927. <https://doi.org/10.3928/0048-5713-19831201-03>.
- Kabat-Zinn, J. (1990/2013). *Full catastrophe living: Using the wisdom of your body and mind to face stress, pain, and illness* (15th anniversary Ed.). New York: Delta Trade Paperback/Bantam Dell.
- Kabatnick, R. (1998). *The Zen of eating*. New York: Berkeley Publishing.
- Kristeller, J. L., & Rodin, J. (1989). Identifying eating patterns in male and female undergraduates using cluster analysis. *Addictive Behaviors*, 14(6), 631–642. [https://doi.org/10.1016/0306-4603\(89\)90005-1](https://doi.org/10.1016/0306-4603(89)90005-1).
- Kristeller, J. L., & Wolever, R. Q. (2011). Mindfulness-based eating awareness training for treating binge eating disorder: The conceptual foundation. *Eating Disorders*, 19(1), 49–61. <https://doi.org/10.1080/10640266.2011.533605>.
- Kristeller, J. L., Wolever, R. Q., & Sheets, V. (2013). Mindfulness-based eating awareness training (MB-EAT) for binge eating: A randomized clinical trial. *Mindfulness*, 4. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12671-012-0179-1>.
- Kristeller, J. L., Wolever, R. Q., & Lieberstein, A. (in press). *Mindfulness-based eating awareness training (MB-EAT): A handbook of theory, research and practice*. New York: Guilford.
- Mann, T., Tomiyama, A. J., Westling, E., Lew, A.-M., Samuels, B., & Chatman, J. (2007). Medicare's search for effective obesity treatments: Diets are not the answer. *American Psychologist*, 62(3), 220–233. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0003-066X.62.3.220>.
- Mason, A. E., Epel, E. S., Aschbacher, K., Lustig, R. H., Acree, M., Kristeller, J., . . . , Daubenmier, J. (2016a). Reduced reward-driven eating accounts for the impact of a mindfulness-based diet and exercise intervention on weight loss: Data from the SHINE randomized controlled trial. *Appetite*, 100, 86–93. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.appet.2016.02.009>.
- Mason, A. E., Epel, E. S., Kristeller, J., Moran, P. J., Dallman, M., Lustig, R. H., . . . , Daubenmier, J. (2016b). Effects of a mindfulness-based intervention on mindful eating, sweets consumption, and fasting glucose levels in obese adults: Data from the SHINE randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 39(2), 201–213. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10865-015-9692-8>.
- Miller, C. K., Kristeller, J. L., Headings, A., & Nagaraja, H. (2014). Comparison of a mindful eating intervention to a diabetes self-management intervention among adults with type 2 diabetes: A randomized controlled trial. *Health Education & Behavior*, 41(2), 145–154. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1090198113493092>.
- O'Reilly, G. A., Cook, L., Spruijt-Metz, D., & Black, D. S. (2014). Mindfulness-based interventions for obesity-related eating behaviours: A literature review. *Obesity Reviews*, 15(6), 453–461. <https://doi.org/10.1111/obr.12156>.
- Polivy, J., & Herman, C. P. (1999). Distress and eating: Why do dieters overeat? *International Journal of Eating Disorders*, 26(2), 153–164. [https://doi.org/10.1002/\(sici\)1098-108x\(199909\)26:2<153::aid-eat4>3.0.co;2-r](https://doi.org/10.1002/(sici)1098-108x(199909)26:2<153::aid-eat4>3.0.co;2-r).
- Rodin, J. (1981). Current status of the internal-external hypothesis for obesity: What went wrong? *American Psychologist*, 36(4), 361–372. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0003-066X.36.4.361>.
- Safer, D. L., Telch, C. F., & Chen, E. Y. (2009). *Dialectical behavior therapy for binge eating and bulimia*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Turgen, R., Ruffault, A., Juneau, C., Blatier, C., & Shankland, R. (2019). Eating disorder treatment: A systematic review and meta-analysis of the efficacy of mindfulness-based programs. *Mindfulness*. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12671-019-01216-5>.
- Udo, T., & Grilo, C. M. (2018). Prevalence and correlates of DSM-5 – Defined eating disorders in a nationally representative sample of U.S. adults. *Biological Psychiatry*, 84(5), 345–354. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopsych.2018.03.014>.
- Udo, T., & Grilo, C. M. (2019). Psychiatric and medical correlates of DSM-5 eating disorders in a nationally representative sample of adults in the United States. *The International Journal of Eating Disorders*, 52(1), 42–50. <https://doi.org/10.1002/eat.23004>.
- Wnuk, S. M., Du, C. T., Van Exan, J., Wallwork, A., Warwick, K., Tremblay, L., . . . Sockalingam, S. (2018). Mindfulness-based eating and awareness training for post-bariatric surgery patients: A feasibility pilot study. *Mindfulness*, 9(3), 949–960. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12671-017-0834-7>.
- Woolhouse, H., Knowles, A., & Craft, N. (2012). Adding mindfulness to CBT programs for binge eating: A mixed-methods evaluation. *Eating Disorders*, 20(4), 321–339. <https://doi.org/10.1080/10640266.2012.691791>.

Mindfulness-Based Interventions

Linda Cillessen^{1,2}, Félix R. Compen^{1,2} and Anne E. M. Speckens¹

¹Center for Mindfulness, Department of Psychiatry, Radboud University Medical Center, Nijmegen, The Netherlands

²Donders Institute for Brain, Cognition and Behaviour, Radboud University, Nijmegen, The Netherlands

Synonyms

MBCR; MBCT; MBSR; Mindfulness; Mindfulness-based cancer recovery; Mindfulness-based cognitive therapy; Mindfulness-based stress reduction

Definition

Mindfulness-Based Interventions (MBIs) are protocolized group interventions teaching participants the practice of mindfulness. The term mindfulness refers to the skill of paying attention in a particular way: on purpose, in the present moment, and non-judgmentally (Kabat-Zinn and Hanh 2009). Mindfulness-based stress reduction (MBSR; Kabat-Zinn and Hanh 2009) and mindfulness-based cognitive therapy (MBCT; Segal et al. 2002) are the most widely applied and investigated MBIs. Both MBIs consist of eight weekly 2.5-h meetings during which participants collectively engage in guided meditation, gentle movement exercises, and psycho-education exercises (see below for a more thorough “Description”). Home practice, consisting of formal and informal meditation exercises, is an essential part of the intervention. MBIs are provided to various target groups, ranging from patients with specific mental or clinical conditions to healthy people interested in stress reduction. Adapted versions of MBSR and MBCT have been introduced to meet the needs of specific target groups, for example, mindfulness-based

cancer recovery (MBCR; Carlson et al. 2010) for (former) cancer patients.

Description

History

Mindfulness-Based Stress Reduction (MBSR) was founded in the 1970s by molecular biologist Jon Kabat-Zinn at the University of Massachusetts Medical Centre (Kabat-Zinn 1982; Kabat-Zinn and Hanh 2009). Kabat-Zinn originally developed MBSR as an outpatient program in behavioral medicine for management of chronic pain, aimed at patients who did not improve after regular medical care (Kabat-Zinn 1982). The roots of mindfulness meditation lie in Buddhist traditions. Kabat-Zinn extracted the practice of mindfulness from its Buddhist context to make mindfulness accessible for the Western, secular world (Maex 2011). A decade later, cognitive psychologists investigating effective relapse prevention in patients with recurrent depression gained interest in MBSR, and added elements of cognitive therapy (Beck 2011) to create MBCT (Segal et al. 2002). The development of MBCT elicited the interest of clinicians and researchers, and the number of research publications on MBIs has grown exponentially ever since. To safeguard the quality of MBIs, the UK Network for Mindfulness-Based Teacher Training Organizations was initiated. This network aims to support and develop good practice and integrity in the delivery of MBIs by professionals (<https://www.ukmindfulnessnetwork.co.uk/>). ACCESS MBCT, founded in 2018, aims to assure quality specifically for MBCT delivery, and provides an international listing of mental health professionals with excellent skills in MBCT (<https://accessmbct.com/>).

Target Groups

MBIs are continuously adapted to new target groups. These interventions are commonly applied in various medical target groups in the field of behavioral medicine, for example, patients with cancer, cardiovascular disease, or chronic

pain. MBIs are also provided for patients with (co-morbid) psychiatric disorders such as (recurrent) depression, anxiety, and addiction (Gotink et al. 2015) and for healthy people who wish to reduce their stress levels (Chiesa and Serretti 2009; Khoury et al. 2015). These interventions can be successfully applied in different target groups as they target general trans-diagnostic processes (e.g., cognitive reactivity and rumination) which have a detrimental effect on psychological well-being across all diagnostic categories.

MBI Model of (Sub-)Clinical Symptoms

Mindfulness teaches participants to pay attention to their subjective experience in a specific way, that is, non-judgmentally, non-reactively, and with kindness (Kabat-Zinn 1982; Segal et al. 2002). A meta-analysis confirmed that an increase of mindfulness skills and a reduction of cognitive and emotional reactivity and rumination mediate the beneficial clinical effects of MBIs (Gu et al. 2015). Furthermore, neuroimaging studies demonstrate that mindfulness meditation is associated with differential activation in brain areas related to attention regulation, emotions, and self-awareness (Tang et al. 2015). Structural differences in brain areas in the pre-frontal cortex and body awareness regions are found when comparing meditators with controls (Fox et al. 2014).

Increased mindfulness skills and reduced cognitive reactivity and rumination create the opportunity to disengage from automatic, habitual ways of responding to distress and instead to opt for non-automatic, more functional ways of coping with distress. Responding differently in reaction to subjective experience may result in decreased perception of pain (severity), decreased stress, anxiety or depression and decreased medication use (and side effects); increased ability to tolerate discomfort and to reflect on medical decisions (like seeking a second opinion); increased adherence to treatment and increased motivation for healthy lifestyle changes; improved social relationships and changes in health-related biological pathways (Ludwig and Kabat-Zinn 2008).

Components of MBIs

MBSR and MBCT are eight-week group interventions (Kabat-Zinn and Hanh 2009; Segal et al. 2002). Participants meet each week for a 2.5 h session. These sessions are guided by qualified mindfulness trainers (who preferably are [mental] healthcare professionals). Each session has a theme: for example, “the automatic pilot” or “thoughts are not facts.” A major part of the sessions consist of formal mindfulness meditation practices, such as the bodyscan, sitting meditation, movement exercises (hatha yoga), and walking meditation. In addition to the formal meditation practice, there are informal meditation exercises (like eating mindfully), group dialogue (known as enquiry), and psycho-education. During enquiry, the trainer and the participant mutually engage in exploring the participants’ direct experiences during meditation. Subsequently, it is explored whether these experiences during meditation are in any way related to experiences that occur in the participants’ daily life. Psychoeducation is usually tailored to the target group of the intervention; for example, preventing relapse in patients with recurrent depression. Between sessions 6 and 7, a “silent day” takes place. During that day, participants remain mostly silent, while their trainer guides them through various meditation exercises. A major difference between MBSR and MBCT is that MBCT also incorporates exercises based on cognitive therapy in various sessions.

Home practice is a major part of MBSR and MBCT and supports participants in incorporating mindfulness into their day-to-day living and increases their mindfulness skill level. Homework usually involves both formal and informal meditation exercises, and participants are asked to practice for 45 min for 6 days a week. Participants are expected to continue formal and informal meditation exercises after the end of the training.

MBSR and MBCT are usually delivered in a face-to-face group format, but delivery through telephone or internet or in an individual setting is also feasible and effective (Compen et al. 2018; Spijkerman et al. 2016). Furthermore, there is a growing number of adapted versions of MBSR

and MBCT, like MBCR (Carlson et al. 2010). These adapted versions might have changes in frequency, number, and duration of the sessions or homework. In addition, psycho-education might be targeted towards the specific patient group. However, to be qualified as an MBI, mindfulness meditation should be the major component, and homework in form of meditation practice must be included. Adaptations to the original MBSR/MBCT format should be well described and a rationale for the adaptation should be provided (Dimidjian and Segal 2015).

Clinical Effects in Behavioral Medicine

The evidence base for the effectiveness of MBIs is growing, although there are evidence gaps that limit these efficacy statements, such as the lack of research questions relevant to the dissemination or broad implementation of MBIs (Dimidjian and Segal 2015). Evidence for the effectiveness of MBIs is most compelling in the treatment of people with psychiatric disorders. A review and meta-analysis on relative efficacy of MBIs on clinical symptoms in 142 trials indicated that MBIs are equivalent to minimal and evidence-based treatments and superior to waitlist controls at follow-up (Goldberg et al. 2017). Furthermore, a number of meta-analyses have been conducted on MBIs as supportive treatment in behavioral medicine. A meta-analysis concluded MBIs have small effects on depression, anxiety, and psychological distress in patients with chronic somatic diseases (Bohlmeijer et al. 2010). In addition, MBIs reduce levels of anxiety and depression in cancer patients (Piet et al. 2012), cardiovascular disease, and chronic pain (Gotink et al. 2015). Furthermore, MBIs are increasingly applied throughout various medical target groups like Parkinson's Disease (Pickut et al. 2013) and irritable bowel syndrome (Gaylord et al. 2011). Although results in these groups are to be considered preliminary and more research is warranted, first results seem promising.

Considerations for MBIs in Behavioral Medicine Populations

In MBIs, participants practice the nonjudgmental observation of thoughts, feelings, and bodily

sensations. It is assumed that this practice gives rise to a more spacious, encompassing awareness. In turn, this creates the opportunity to deliberately disengage from dysfunctional habit patterns in reacting when this is considered more helpful. This method differs from traditional CBT interventions which assume that modification of underlying dysfunctional thinking leads to more functional behavior (Beck 2011). However, some dysfunctional thinking found in medical patients might be not suitable for modification. Consider the cancer patient who suffers from the conceivable fear of dying. He or she might not be able to challenge thoughts related to the fear as these thoughts, although maladaptive, are realistic. Mindfulness might be especially helpful for these patients, by providing another way of relating to these thoughts: one of nonjudging, nonreactivity, and kindness towards oneself.

Cross-References

- [Meditation](#)
- [Mindfulness](#)
- [Psychosocial Intervention](#)
- [Stress Management](#)
- [Yoga](#)

References and Further Reading

- Beck, J. S. (2011). *Cognitive behavior therapy: Basics and beyond*. New York/London: Guilford Press.
- Bohlmeijer, E., Prenger, R., Taal, E., & Cuijpers, P. (2010). The effects of mindfulness-based stress reduction therapy on mental health of adults with a chronic medical disease: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 68(6), 539–544.
- Carlson, L. E., Speca, M., & Segal, Z. (2010). *Mindfulness-based cancer recovery*. Oakland: New Harbinger.
- Chiesa, A., & Serretti, A. (2009). Mindfulness-based stress reduction for stress management in healthy people: A review and meta-analysis. *The Journal of Alternative and Complementary Medicine*, 15(5), 593–600.
- Compen, F., Bisseling, E., Schellekens, M., Donders, R., Carlson, L., van der Lee, M., & Speckens, A. (2018). Face-to-face and internet-b mindfulness-based cognitive therapy compared with treatment as usual in reducing psychological distress in patients with cancer:

- A multicenter randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 36, 2413–2421. <https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2017.76.5669>.
- Dimidjian, S., & Segal, Z. V. (2015). Prospects for a clinical science of mindfulness-based intervention. *American Psychologist*, 70(7), 593–620.
- Fox, K. C., Nijeboer, S., Dixon, M. L., Floman, J. L., Ellamil, M., Rumak, S. P., . . . Christoff, K. (2014). Is meditation associated with altered brain structure? A systematic review and meta-analysis of morphometric neuroimaging in meditation practitioners. *Neuroscience & Biobehavioral Reviews*, 43, 48–73.
- Gaylord, S. A., Palsson, O. S., Garland, E. L., Faurot, K. R., Coble, R. S., Mann, J. D., . . . Whitehead, W. E. (2011). Mindfulness training reduces the severity of irritable bowel syndrome in women: Results of a randomized controlled trial. *The American Journal of Gastroenterology*, 106(9), 1678.
- Goldberg, S. B., Tucker, R. P., Greene, P. A., Davidson, R. J., Wampold, B. E., Kearney, D. J., & Simpson, T. L. (2017). Mindfulness-based interventions for psychiatric disorders: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 59, 52–60. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cpr.2017.10.011>.
- Gotink, R. A., Chu, P., Busschbach, J. J., Benson, H., Fricchione, G. L., & Hunink, M. M. (2015). Standardised mindfulness-based interventions in healthcare: An overview of systematic reviews and meta-analyses of RCTs. *PLoS One*, 10(4), e0124344.
- Gu, J., Strauss, C., Bond, R., & Cavanagh, K. (2015). How do mindfulness-based cognitive therapy and mindfulness-based stress reduction improve mental health and wellbeing? A systematic review and meta-analysis of mediation studies. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 37, 1–12.
- Kabat-Zinn, J. (1982). An outpatient program in behavioral medicine for chronic pain patients based on the practice of mindfulness meditation: Theoretical considerations and preliminary results. *General Hospital Psychiatry*, 4(1), 33–47.
- Kabat-Zinn, J., & Hanh, T. N. (2009). *Full catastrophe living: Using the wisdom of your body and mind to face stress, pain, and illness*. New York: Delta.
- Khoury, B., Sharma, M., Rush, S. E., & Fournier, C. (2015). Mindfulness-based stress reduction for healthy individuals: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 78(6), 519–528.
- Ludwig, D. S., & Kabat-Zinn, J. (2008). Mindfulness in medicine. *JAMA*, 300(11), 1350–1352.
- Maex, E. (2011). The Buddhist roots of mindfulness training: A practitioners view. *Contemporary Buddhism*, 12(01), 165–175.
- Pickut, B. A., Van Hecke, W., Kerckhofs, E., Mariën, P., Vanneste, S., Cras, P., & Parizel, P. M. (2013). Mindfulness based intervention in Parkinson's disease leads to structural brain changes on MRI: A randomized controlled longitudinal trial. *Clinical Neurology and Neurosurgery*, 115(12), 2419–2425.
- Piet, J., Wurtzen, H., & Zachariae, R. (2012). The effect of mindfulness-based therapy on symptoms of anxiety and depression in adult cancer patients and survivors: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 80(6), 1007–1020. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0028329>.
- Segal, Z. V., Williams, J. M. G., & Teasdale, J. D. (2002). *Mindfulness-based cognitive therapy for depression: A new approach to preventing relapse*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Spijkerman, M. P. J., Pots, W. T. M., & Bohlmeijer, E. T. (2016). Effectiveness of online mindfulness-based interventions in improving mental health: A review and meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 45, 102–114. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cpr.2016.03.009>.
- Tang, Y.-Y., Hölzel, B. K., & Posner, M. I. (2015). The neuroscience of mindfulness meditation. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 16(4), 213–225.

Mindfulness-Based Stress Reduction

► Mindfulness-Based Interventions

Mini-Finland Health Survey

Arpo Aromaa
Health and Functional Capacity, National
Institute for Health and Welfare, Helsinki,
Finland

Definition

The Mini-Finland health survey (MFhes) is the first comprehensive nationwide study combining interview, questionnaire, and examination methods. Its baseline field work was carried out by the Social Insurance Institution's (SII) Mobile Clinic Unit (*Autoklinikka*) during 1978–1980 in a representative sample of adults aged 30 years, and 96% of the sample was interviewed and 90% examined. The register-based follow-up of the sample of 8,000 is complete until 2010.

Description

In Europe in the twentieth century, the SII Mini-Finland health examination survey (MFhes; in Finnish: *Mini-Suomi terveystutkimus*) carried out in 1978–1980 was the first comprehensive nationally representative study of health, chronic diseases, functional limitations, their determinants (social environmental, behavioral and biological risk, and protective factors), use of health services comprising rehabilitation, and need and unmet need for care and help. It combined the socio-medical, epidemiological, and social science research traditions of the SII, i.e., the paradigms and methodological skills of the Mobile Clinic Unit's health examinations and the Social Security Health Interview surveys, both initiated in 1964, soon after the introduction of the sickness insurance scheme covering the whole population of Finland. In addition to the general goals of a health survey, a special aim was to compare data on chronic diseases and need for care independently obtained by a health interview and a health examination.

The Sample

A two-stage cluster sample of 8,000 people aged 30 years and over in 40 study areas (clusters) was designed, and a list of eligible individuals with contact information was drawn from the national population register. The sampling frame comprised the whole population, i.e., also institutionalized people.

The Concept of Health

Health was conceptualized as a perceived, biological, and social phenomenon. Special emphasis was placed to the measurement of functional capacity, its limitations, handicaps, and disabilities. Work ability and functioning were concepts used to measure the state of "health" independently of the presence or absence of diseases.

The Phases of the Field Work

The main phases of the field survey were the health interview; the health examination, comprising a two phase field work; and a third

phase, the in-depth examination in the SII rehabilitation research center.

The Health Interview and the Examination

First, nurses (626 nurses over the whole country) carried out a structured health interview in the persons' home (or institution), and 7,703 persons (96% of the sample) participated. Within 1–6 weeks of the interview, all individuals in the sample were invited by letter to the Mobile Clinic Unit's health examination. The unit was situated centrally in the study area. In the initial screening phase, 7,217 individuals (90% of the sample) were interviewed and examined. A few months later, on the basis of findings in the screening phase and health-related data drawn from the SII's registers, those that might suffer from one of the core chronic diseases were asked to come to the clinical phase, 5,819 individuals (73%) attended the clinical phase and 4,840 (61%) were subjected to a doctor's structured history and examination, which as indicated by the screening phase findings concentrated on the cardiovascular and respiratory system, on the musculoskeletal system, or on all of them.

Non-attendants were approached by a mail questionnaire after the field study proper. Therefore, some health data are available on 98% of the whole sample.

Health-Related Content of the Health Interview

Perceived health, chronic disease or defect, care received, illness-induced change of occupation or duties, handicap caused by illness or defect in the present work, functional limitations (ADL and IADL), sickness days, psychological symptoms, perceived need of care or help for psychological symptoms and visits to a psychiatrist or a psychologist, use of medical care, prescription medicines (name and classification according to the main indication) currently used, dental care, preventive health examinations, smoking, and dietary habits.

Methods of the Health Examination

The health data were obtained by questionnaires, symptom interviews, tests of functioning, and clinical measurements. In the screening phase,

the order of the measurements was the following: (1) height, weight, and BMI; (2) interviews on symptoms; (3) a urine sample; (4) blood pressure (mercury sphygmomanometer) and heart rate; and (5) ECG and respiratory tests by a Vitalograph spirometer. Other tests and measurements were carried out in varying order. They comprised supplementary interviews, a joint function test, a dental examination, a chest X-ray, and a blood sample. Finally, psychometric group tests were carried out and reaction time was measured. The screening phase comprised, i.e., questions on psychological symptoms and the general health questionnaire (GHQ-36). The clinical examination for mental health problems consisted of a present state examination interview (short version) carried out by one trained psychiatric nurse. Half of these interviews were carried out during the screening phase and half during the clinical phase. In the clinical phase proper, to assess reliability/repeatability, all screening measurements were repeated on a 20% randomly drawn subsample of the subjects, and a clinical doctor's examination directed according to the earlier findings was carried out. The examining doctor recorded also any other concurrent diagnoses and assessed each examinee's work and functional ability, disabling diseases and need for care. Current good diagnostic and therapeutic practice was used as a yardstick when assessing the need for care and unmet need for care.

Finally, 991 persons were examined in depth for workability and rehabilitation needs in the SII Rehabilitation Research Centre.

Information Obtained by Questionnaires and Interviews During the Health Examination

Perceived health, chronic disease, diseases diagnosed by a doctor (a disease list of 32 diseases) and follow-up questions for each disease mentioned (hospital care ever, medicine use ever, current care by a medical doctor, current use of medicines), hospital care, surgical operations, care by a medical doctor, prescription medicines (name and classification according to indication), nonprescription medicines, work ability and work disability, ability to participate and perform tasks and duties outside gainful employment, as well as

in leisure time activities. There were also a set of questions on the ability to perform IADL and ADL activities. The final part comprised questions on physical activity such as physical strenuousness of work, leisure time physical activity comprising also details of regular exercise, and physical activity on the way to and from work. The last part of the main questionnaire of the health examination inquired about work and working conditions. A set of questions were specially constructed to describe leisure time activities and hobbies, and the final questions inquired about alcohol use in a way to allow quantification of the amount of absolute alcohol consumed on average during a week over the past month.

Record Linkage at the Time of the Field Work and Follow-up of the Cohort

By record linkage, after the field survey, further data were obtained from national registers on use of services, diseases, and disabilities. Final diagnostic assessments were made by combining all available information. As a result, diagnostic and other clinical data are available on 5,292 people invited to come to the doctor's examination. These are all of the individuals meeting the criteria screening positivity for the clinical phase and equal 66% of the sample.

Record linkage was used also for a follow-up of the sample, which today is complete until year 2009.

Biobank and Data Set

Frozen serum and plasma are stored by the National Institute for Health and Welfare (THL), and samples are being used for prospective studies to assess the impact of many biochemically determined risk and protective factors on mortality and risk of chronic diseases.

The large data set has been fully characterized and described, and upon proper agreement, the data can be and have been used extensively for collaborative research by THL and outside scientists.

Social Circumstances, Living Conditions, and Behavior

The readership may be especially interested in some of the available data on social

circumstances and living conditions as well as methods used for measuring health-related behavior.

The usual information on family/household is available such as data on the number of family members, their age distribution, the subject's marital status, the family head's occupation (current or latest previous) and his/her receipt of any pension benefit, the subject's educational attainment, the community (municipality) in which the subject has lived longest, the subject's receipt of a pension, and total family income.

The subject's main occupation and employer, working hours, possible unemployment or layoff, the salary basis (e.g., hourly or monthly payment, paid by the piece), and comparable information related to job and employment.

Furthermore, information such as the distance to the nearest public health center doctor, to the nearest private doctor, and to the nearest dentist was gathered.

Current Context of the Mini-Finland Health Survey

The Mini-Finland health survey was originally designed as a single-handed cross-sectional and epidemiological follow-up study. However, it is now part of a unique set of nationally representative cross-sectional and individual level follow-up studies based on the same concept and with the same or similar health interview and health examination data. I refer to the Health 2000 national survey (Aromaa and Koskinen 2004) and the ongoing Health 2011 national survey. The data gathered on these studies are even richer, and in addition to serum and plasma samples, the biobank now also contains DNA and RNA samples. After complete sequencing of the genome has become possible, the genetic information on the Health 2000 subjects has been extensively used to identify genes increasing the risk of the major public health problems, and corresponding effects on and interactions with social determinants, living conditions, and biological risk and protective factors of chronic diseases.

References and Further Reading

Aromaa, A., & Koskinen, S. (Eds.). (2004). *Health and functional capacity in Finland: Baseline results of the health 2000 Health Examination Survey*. Helsinki: Publications of the National Public Health Institute.

Minimally Intensive Interventions

► Stepped Care Models

Mini-Mental State Examination

Jane Upton
Department of Psychology, William James
College, Newton, MA, USA

Definition

This is a practical method for grading the cognitive state of patients for the clinician (Folstein and McHugh 1975).

Description

The mini-mental state examination was developed in 1975 (Folstein and McHugh 1975) and has since been widely used in clinical and research settings. It is most commonly used by clinicians in a medical setting to assess for dementia, where it is administered serially to assess the effect of time on the progression of dementia. It is a 30-item screening tool which takes approximately 10 min to complete by a trained administrator. Severe cognitive impairment is indicated by a score of (≤ 9 points) moderate (10–20 points) and mild (21–24 points). A score of 25 and over indicates normal cognition.

It includes the following tasks of cognition:

- Orientation to time and place
- Registration: The ability to learn the names of three objects
- Attention and calculation: The performance of serial 7 s, or spelling “world” backward
- Recall: Remembering the three objects that they had learned in the registration task
- Language: Naming a pencil and watch, repeating a sentence, following a three-stage command, reading and obeying a command, and writing a sentence
- Basic motor skills: Copying a design of two intersecting pentagons

Psychometric Properties

Reliability was investigated by Molloy and colleagues, who reported an intraclass correlation for the mini-mental state examination of 0.69 (Molloy et al. 1991). The inter-rater agreement, particularly for the attention and calculation task, has been reported as being poor (Davey and Jamieson 2004). This examination has been found to be responsive to change (Uhlmann et al. 1987).

The MMSE can be obtained from the current copyright owner Psychological Assessment Resources <http://www4.parinc.com/>

Cross-References

- Cognitive Appraisal

References and Further Reading

- Davey, R., & Jamieson, S. (2004). The validity of using the mini mental state examination in NICE dementia guidelines. *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery, and Psychiatry*, 75, 341–345. Retrieved from <http://jnnp.bmj.com/content/75/2/343.2.full.pdf>.
- Folstein, M., & McHugh, P. (1975). Mini mental state a practical method for grading the cognitive state of patients for the clinician. *Journal of Psychiatric Research*, 12, 189–198.
- Molloy, D., Alemayehu, E., & Roberts, R. (1991). Reliability of a standardised mini mental state examination compared with the traditional mini mental state

examination. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 148, 102–105.

- Uhlmann, R., Larson, E., & Buchner, D. (1987). Correlations of mini-mental state and modified dementia rating scale to measures of transitional health status in dementia. *Journal of Gerontology*, 42, 33–36. <https://doi.org/10.1093/geronj/42.1.33>.

Minor Tranquilizer

- Anxiolytic

Minority Health

Luz M. Garcini¹, Eleshia J. P. Morrison² and Georita Marie Frierson³

¹Ethnic Minority and Multicultural Health SBM SIG Co-Chair, SDSU/UCSD Joint Doctoral Program in Clinical Psychology, San Diego, CA, USA

²Department of Psychology, Ethnic Minority and Multicultural Health SBM SIG Chair, The Ohio State University, Columbus, OH, USA

³Department of Psychology, Southern Methodist University, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Health disparities](#); [Multicultural health](#)

Definition

Minority health refers to the special medical, psychosocial, and/or health needs of minority groups, including addressing the amelioration and prevention of health disparities. Health disparities refer to inequalities in the overall rate of disease prevalence, incidence, morbidity, mortality, or survival rates among certain groups of people when compared to the general population, as well as differences in the quality, outcomes, cost, or use of and access to health-care services (Minority Health and Health Disparities Research and

Education Act 2000). Although primarily associated with health issues among ethnic and racial minorities, minority health also addresses the medical, psychosocial, and/or health needs of people with disabilities and minorities on the basis of age, socioeconomic inequality, and sexual orientation. Thus, any sociodemographic variable could lead to a minority health concern.

Description

Historical Background of Minority Health in the United States

As early as the beginning of the 1900s, intellectual leaders and activists such as W.E.B. Du Bois and Booker T. Washington documented the effect of contextual factors (i.e., economic poverty, inferior education, segregation and racism) on the health and quality of life of minority groups, particularly African Americans (Thomas et al. 2006). In 1915, Washington launched a comprehensive public health education campaign, the Negro Health Improvement Week, to promote health education among segregated Blacks and to increase awareness of existing health disparities. Later, the campaign evolved into the National Negro Health Movement, one of the most effective movements to promote direct and indirect cooperation between government organizations and members of a minority group for the betterment of minority health. An important legacy of the National Negro Health Movement was that the Black community became among the most active American groups in the national and worldwide movement for minority health improvement.

During the 1960s and inspired by the civil rights movement, other ethnic minority groups also became increasingly involved in advocacy efforts aimed at community health improvement. A notable example was that of Latinos and the development of organizations such as the National Organization for Mexican American Services (NOMAS) and the Southwest Council of La Raza (SWCLR), which later became the National Council of La Raza (National Council of La Raza [NCLR] 2011). These organizations aimed to increase representation of the Latino

perspective at the local and national level on issues of health, education, immigration, housing, employment, training, and civil rights enforcement. Nevertheless, despite these early efforts, it was not until two decades later that minority health issues made it onto the national agenda.

In 1985, Margaret Heckler, Secretary of the US Department of Health and Human Services, released the Federal Report of the Secretary's Task Force on Black and Minority Health (Department of Health & Human Services [DHHS] 1985) to introduce minority health onto the national agenda. This report provided the first comprehensive national minority health study published by a government department to document widespread and persistent disparities in health status between various ethnic/racial minorities (i.e., African Americans, Hispanics, Native Americans, Asians and/or Alaskan Natives) and Whites. Additionally, Heckler's report provided several primary recommendations to address for the improvement of minority health. These recommendations were to (1) implement the dissemination of health education through community outreach; (2) develop culture- and context-sensitive health education programs and interventions; (3) improve access, delivery, and financing of health services to minority populations; (4) promote communication, coordination, and collaboration among federal and local agencies in administering programs addressing minority health issues; (5) improve the quality, availability, and use of health data pertaining to minority populations; and (6) increase and support research to inform the improvement of minority health. Given their relevance, the aforementioned recommendations continue to be at the forefront of the research and practice of minority health issues even to this date.

To manage the implementation of recommendations set forth by Heckler's report, the DHHS created the federal Office of Minority Health (OMH) in 1986 (OMH 2011). Two years later, and also in response to the same report, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) established its own Office of the Associate Director for Minority Health (ADMH), which later became the CDC's Office of Minority Health

(OMH) in 2002 and most recently the Office of Minority Health and Health Disparities (OMHD) (CDC 2011). Unique to the OMHD is its expanded focus on addressing minority health issues for populations defined not only by race/ethnicity but also by socioeconomic, age, disability, and risk status related to sex and gender. Also, acknowledging the importance of research as essential to the advancement of minority health, the National Institutes of Health (NIH) established the Office of Research on Minority Health in 1990. In 2000, the Minority Health and Health Disparities Research and Education Act signed by President Bill Clinton elevated the NIH Office of Research on Minority Health to become the National Institute on Minority Health and Health Disparities (NIMHD 2011). Since its establishment, the NIMHD has focused on emphasizing the need for and improvement of the visibility of basic, clinical, social, and behavioral research focusing on minority health issues and health disparities, as well as promoting research infrastructure and training of highly qualified minority scientists.

Important national and state initiatives exist that aim at health promotion and disease prevention and management among minority groups. For three decades, Healthy People, the nation's health agenda, has set a target for reaching health objectives for minority populations. In Healthy People 2000, the focus was on reducing health disparities, while Healthy People 2010 aimed to eliminate health inequality. Expanding on the goals of these two previous agendas, Healthy People 2020 aims at improving the health of all groups, thus extending its focus to address minority health beyond racial/ethnic groups to the inclusion of people with disabilities and minorities on the basis of age, socio-economic inequality, and sexual orientation. Expanding minority health to focus on vulnerable populations at risk beyond ethnic/racial groups is a more appropriate way to represent the needs and changing demographic profile of the US population.

Behavioral Medicine and Minority Health

The United States is undergoing fundamental changes in its minority populations that will

challenge the current health-care system and the field of behavioral medicine (Institute for the Future 2003; Yali and Revenson 2004). Continuing with current trends, there will be an increase in older populations, as well as growth in the number of people varying in sexual orientation. Likewise, the prevalence of certain ethnic/racial minorities will also increase. It is estimated that by 2050, non-Hispanic Whites will make up less than half of the US population (46.3%), with minority and immigrant groups becoming a majority. Of all ethnic/racial minorities, Hispanics or Latinos are expected to experience the largest population growth, from 16% today to 30% by 2050 (US Census Bureau 2010). As these population changes take place, the need for culture-sensitive and contextual approaches to the research and practice of minority health will be increasingly necessary. Given its interdisciplinary approach and biopsychosocial perspective, behavioral medicine provides an appropriate platform for the conceptualization, assessment, treatment, research, and policy development of minority health issues as defined by changing demographics in the USA. In developing an understanding of the effect of cultural and contextual determinants of health and illness to the prevention, promotion, etiology, diagnosis, treatment, and rehabilitation of minority health, behavioral medicine can efficiently and effectively address even the most complex issues pertaining to minority health.

Cross-References

- Behavioral Medicine
- Health Disparities
- Health Policy/Health-Care Policy

References and Readings

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC)/Office of Minority Health and Health Disparities (OMHD). (2011). Retrieved from <http://www.cdc.gov/omhd>
- Institute for the Future. (2003). *Health and health care 2010: The forecast, the challenge*. Princeton: Jossey-Bass.

- Minority Health and Health Disparities Research and Education Act of 2000. (2000). 106th congress.
- National Council of La Raza (NCLR). (2011). Retrieved from <http://www.nclr.org>
- National Institute on Minority Health and Health Disparities (NIMHD). (2011). Retrieved from <http://www.nimhd.nih.gov>
- Thomas, S. B., Benjamin, G. C., Almario, D., & Lathan, M. J. (2006). Historical and current policy efforts to eliminate racial and ethnic health disparities in the United States: Future opportunities for public health education. *Health Promotion Practice*, 7(3), 324–330.
- U.S. Census Bureau. (2010). Projections of the population by sex, race and Hispanic origin for the United States: 2010 to 2050. <http://www.census.gov/population/www/projections/files/nation/summary/np2008-t4.xls>
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Office of Minority Health. Office of Minority Health (OMH). (2011). Retrieved from <http://minorityhealth.hhs.gov>
- Yali, A. M., & Revenson, T. A. (2004). How changes in population demographics will impact health psychology: Incorporating a broader notion of cultural competence into the field. *Health Psychology*, 23(2), 147–155.

Minority Subgroups

Orit Birnbaum-Weitzman
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Ethnicity subgroups](#); [Subethnic groups](#); [Subgroup heterogeneity](#)

Definition

Minority subgroups refer to the within-group variation that is notably manifested among individuals from the same ethnic and racial group according to one or more sociodemographic factors including but not limited to nationality, language, religion, gender, social/immigration histories, educational level, and socioeconomic status.

Description

All racial/ethnic minority populations, including persons of Hispanic/Latino, African/Black, and Asian descent in the United States, are characterized by considerable diversity and can be further classified into minority subgroups. However, data on health aspects among minority groups have usually been combined in behavioral health analysis (For example see Whitfield et al. 2002). To a large extent, the health-care system still fails to understand the complexity and diversity of immigrant and ethnic populations (Srinivasan and Guillermo 2000). There is a need for greater specificity of racial and ethnic subgroups in behavioral medicine research (Feinleb 1993). Studies that fail to disaggregate minority subgroups may be inaccurately reporting health research and overlooking health risks experienced by some immigrant groups (Srinivasan and Guillermo 2000). Methodological difficulties typically arise in assessing the variables that are important in further classifying ethnic minorities into subgroups. However, by subsuming them under larger racial categories aggregating their data into one undifferentiated group, the health and health-care needs of specific minority subgroups are overlooked. Although scant, recent epidemiological studies are making an effort to collect additional data to characterize the heterogeneity of the standard racial/ethnic categories and provide data on subgroup differences. This trend will improve development of effective treatment interventions to address public health needs of ethnic minorities.

American ethnic subgroups vary substantially with respect to demographic and socioeconomic characteristics (see McCracken et al. 2007 for example in Asian Americans). There are extreme variations in income and rates of poverty among ethnic subgroups (Stone and McQuillan 2007; Srinivasan and Guillermo 2000), and these variations can affect health. Minority subgroups also vary markedly in terms of religion, culture, and language. The social and political histories of minority subgroups and the variability within these subgroups have implications for the general health and mental health of this population (see

for example Williams et al. 2010). Time since immigration is directly related to language spoken at home and English-language fluency and is also a source of variability within minorities (McCracken et al. 2007). Ethnic subgroups that have lived longer in the United States are more likely to speak English better or speak only English at home. This suggests that certain minority subgroups face different barriers to medical care as a result of linguistic and cultural differences (McCracken et al. 2007). Generational factors and the process of adjustment to living in the United States also have an impact on health and mental health.

Acculturation and adoption of westernized diets and behaviors can also contribute to explanations of health differences in minority subgroups. Within ethnic populations, minority subgroups show mixed profiles of health behaviors such as smoking, alcohol consumption, and levels of physical activity (Alegria et al. 2008; Williams et al. 2010). Additionally, samples from minorities living in the same geographical catchment areas suggest that despite little variation in environmental context, subgroup variations arise as a consequence of individual differences in religious and psychosocial experiences (Williams et al. 2010). Interreligious variation observed in some studies highlights the relevance of studying subgroup heterogeneity and indicates that a clear understanding and assessment of these concepts will increase the understanding of health differences between ethnic/racial groups (Williams et al. 2010). Furthermore, differential exposure to stressful experiences in particular discrimination stress can further explain inequalities in physical and mental health among minority subgroups and has been an important topic in minority research (Perez et al. 2008; Gee et al. 2009). Variations in perceived discrimination are related to socio-demographic and cultural differences across ethnic subgroups.

Hispanics/Latinos are the largest minority group in the United States, but they are not a homogeneous group. Hispanics are a diverse group in terms of nativity status, country of origin, racesocioeconomic status, and exposure to

U.S. culture (Borrell and Crawford 2009; Amaro and Zambrana 2000). Recent findings suggests that nativity status, racial identification, and country of origin may have implications for Hispanics' mortality and morbidity outcomes (Borrell and Crawford 2009). In contrast to the paradox of lower mortality rates for Hispanics as compared with non-Hispanics, disaggregated data suggest that the mortality advantage does not apply to all Hispanics (Borrell and Crawford 2009). Younger Hispanics, Puerto Rican men and women, Mexican American women, and those Hispanics who identify themselves as White exhibit higher death rates than non-Hispanic Whites (Borrell and Crawford 2009). Health status varies within Hispanics according to nationality and can differ between Puerto Ricans, Mexicans, and Cubans living in the USA (Borrell and Crawford 2008). The prevalence of hypertension among Hispanic Americans falls between that of Blacks and non-Hispanic Whites but appears to increase with the process of acculturation within Hispanics (Borrell and Crawford 2008). In addition, the prevalence of hypertension and other cardiovascular risk factors increases with decreasing socioeconomic status within Hispanic/Latino subgroups. (Borrell and Crawford 2008). Similarly, in contrast to the more commonly established belief that Latino populations are at lower risk of psychiatric disorders, when Latinos are disaggregated into ethnic subgroups and by nativity, a different picture of Latino mental health emerges, exhibiting a more limited application of the immigrant paradox (Alegria et al. 2008). Research shows that some Latino subgroups suffer from psychiatric disorders at rates comparable to non-Latino White individuals (Alegria et al. 2008).

Although there is a great quantity of detailed data available about the health of minorities, the need for greater specificity of minority subgroups is also evident in studies of African Americans and other Black populations in the United States. While an African American born and raised in the South, a Jamaican, a Haitian, a Kenyan, and an African American born and raised in the Northeast can all "Black", they are likely to differ in terms of beliefs, behavior, and mental and physical functioning (Williams and Jackson 2000).

Such diversity within the Black population may predict important differences in terms of health status (Williams and Jackson 2000). There have been few empirical studies of ethnic differences in health within the American Black population. One recent study used data from a national survey of the US Black population to examine the relationships among ethnicity, nativity, depressive symptoms, and physical health in the two largest ethnic groups of American Blacks, African Americans, and Caribbean Blacks (Griffith et al. 2011). Results showed that African Americans, US-born Caribbean Blacks, and Caribbean-born Blacks had significantly different self-ratings of their health and self-reports of being diagnosed with a chronic physical health condition: Caribbean-born Blacks had the best health outcomes, and US-born Caribbean Blacks had the worst (Griffith et al. 2011). This data highlights the importance of considering the ethnic diversity, within the American Black population.

Asian Americans and Pacific Islanders are another major US racial/ethnic group, defined by the US Census Bureau as individuals with origins in the Far East, Southeast Asia, or the Indian subcontinent (see McCracken et al. 2007). Asian groups are not limited to nationalities and include ethnic terms as well, such as the “Hmong”. Most incidence data and national level mortality data are available only for all Asian/Pacific Islander groups combined (McCracken et al. 2007). However, these populations are extraordinarily different with respect to country of origin, time since immigration, socioeconomic status, and other characteristics that affect health (McCracken et al. 2007). Chinese Americans are the largest Asian ethnic group in the United States and have one of the oldest immigration histories. The differences in cancer incidence and mortality among the Asian American ethnic subgroups illustrate the heterogeneity of this population (McCracken et al. 2007). In a recent review McCracken et al. (2007) showed that subgroups of Asian Americans have different type of cancers according to their immigration histories. For example, subgroups of Asian Americans with more recent immigration histories, such as Vietnamese and Koreans, have a higher burden of cancers not

typically observed at high rates in westernized countries, such as stomach and liver cancer. In contrast, other groups with older immigration histories, such as Japanese and Filipinos, have a higher rate of cancers commonly observed in the United States such as colorectal and breast cancers (McCracken et al. 2007).

Cross-References

- [Aggregate Data](#)
- [Cultural and Ethnic Differences](#)
- [Diversity](#)
- [Hispanic/Latino Health](#)

References and Readings

- Alegria, M., Canino, G., Shrout, P., Woo, M., Duan, N., Vila, D., et al. (2008). Prevalence of mental health illness in immigrant and non-immigrant US Latino groups. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 165, 359–369.
- Amaro, H., & Zambrana, R. E. (2000). Criollo, Mestizo, Mulato, LatiNegro, Indigena, White or Black? The US Hispanic/Latino Population and multiple responses to the 2000 Census. *American Journal of Public Health*, 90, 1724–1727.
- Borrell, L. N., & Crawford, N. D. (2008). Disparities in self-reported hypertension in Hispanic subgroups, non-Hispanic black and non-Hispanic white adults: the national health interview survey. *Annals of Epidemiology*, 18, 803–812.
- Borrell, L. N., & Crawford, N. D. (2009). All-cause mortality among Hispanics in the United States; Exploring heterogeneity by nativity status, country of origin, and race in the National Health Interview Survey-linked mortality file. *Annals of Epidemiology*, 19, 336–343.
- Feinleb, M. (1993). Data needed for improving the health of minorities. *Annals of Epidemiology*, 3, 199–202.
- Gee, G. C., Ro, A., Shariff-Marco, S., & Chae, D. (2009). Racial discrimination and health among Asian Americans: Evidence, assessment, and directions for future research. *Epidemiological Reviews*, 31, 130–151.
- Griffith, D. M., Johnson, J. L., Zhang, R., Neighbors, H. W., & Jackson, J. S. (2011). Ethnicity, nativity, and the health of American blacks. *Journal of Health Care for the Poor and Underserved*, 22, 142–156.
- McCracken, M., Olsen, M., Chen, M. S., Jemal, A., Thun, M., Cokkinides, V., et al. (2007). Cancer incidence, mortality, and associated risk factors among Asian Americans of Chinese, Filipino, Vietnamese, Korean, and Japanese ethnicities. *CA: A Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 57, 190–205.

- Perez, D. J., Fortuna, L., & Alegria, M. (2008). Prevalence and correlates of everyday discrimination among U.S. Latinos. *Journal of Community Psychology*, 36, 421–433.
- Srinivasan, S., & Guillermo, T. (2000). Toward improved health: Disaggregating Asian American and native Hawaiian/Pacific islander data. *American Journal of Public Health*, 90, 1731–1734.
- Stone, R. T., & MCQuillan, J. (2007). Beyond Hispanic/Latino: The importance of gender/ethnicity-specific earnings analysis. *Social Science research*, 36, 175–200.
- Whitfield, K. E., Weidner, G., Clark, R., & Anderson, N. B. (2002). Sociodemographic diversity in behavioral medicine. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 70, 463–481.
- Williams, D. R., & Jackson, J. S. (2000). Race/ethnicity and the 2000 census: Recommendations for African American and other black populations in the United States. *American Journal of Public Health*, 90, 1728–1730.
- Williams, E. D., Nazroo, J. Y., Kooner, J. S., & Steptoe, A. (2010). Subgroup differences in psychosocial factors relating to coronary heart disease in the UK south Asian population. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 69, 379–387.

Missing Data

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Missing values](#)

Definition

The term “missing data” refers to data that are not present in a final data set. While the term can apply to one or more subjects’ entire set of data that should be present, the more usual situation is where only part of one or more subjects’ entire set of data is missing.

Various methodologies have been developed to address this issue. One common and straightforward approach is to delete such records from any analyses that involve variables for which the records have missing values. This is called the

complete-subject analysis approach (Greenland and Rothman 2008). It is a viable option whenever subjects with complete data have effectively been randomly sampled from all the subjects in the study, in which case the missing data are regarded as “missing completely at random.”

However, this approach does have drawbacks. It can be very inefficient if many subjects have missing values, and particularly if many subjects have just a few missing data values each, since so many data points are effectively discarded (it discards all the data present in a subject’s record, even if only one study variable in the record has a missing value). Therefore, many alternative approaches have been developed (Greenland and Rothman 2008).

As Donders et al. (2006) observed, “Missing data are a common problem in all types of medical research.” Simple methods of handling missing data include complete or available case analysis, the missing-indicator method, and overall mean imputation. Unfortunately, however, these approaches lead to inefficient analyses and, more seriously, they often produce severely biased estimates of the association(s) being investigated (Donders et al. 2006). More sophisticated imputation techniques, such as multiple imputation, yield better results.

Missing data are also a problem for researchers employing structural equation modeling (SEM) techniques. Different approaches include full information maximum likelihood (FIML), listwise deletion, pairwise deletion, and similar response pattern imputation (Enders and Bandalos 2001). These authors performed a Monte Carlo simulation examining the performance of these missing data methods and found that FIML estimation was superior across all conditions of the design.

Cross-References

- [Data](#)
- [Randomization](#)
- [Structural Equation Modeling \(SEM\)](#)

References and Further Readings

- Donders, A. R. T., van der Heijden, G. J. M. G., Stijnen, T., & Moons, K. G. M. (2006). A gentle introduction to imputation of missing values. *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 59, 1087–1091.
- Enders, C. K., & Bandalos, D. L. (2001). The relative performance of full information maximum likelihood estimation for missing data in structural equation models. *Structural Equation Modeling*, 8(3), 430–457.
- Greenland, S., & Rothman, K. J. (2008). Fundamentals of epidemiologic data analysis. In K. J. Rothman, S. Greenland, & T. L. Lash (Eds.), *Modern epidemiology* (3rd ed., pp. 213–237). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

values occur equally often. It is also possible for there to be no mode for a data set, which happens when each value is unique. These properties of the mode, i.e., that it may have multiple values in some instances and be undefined in others, are considerable drawbacks to its use.

Cross-References

- [Central Tendency](#)
- [Median](#)

Missing Values

- [Missing Data](#)

Mistrust

- [Hostility](#)

Mixed-Effects Modeling

- [Multilevel Modeling](#)

Mode

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

The mode is a measure of central tendency. It is the most frequently occurring value in a data set.

Unlike the mean, which is extremely well suited as a measure of central tendency for continuous data, the mode is better suited to numeric data for which there are only a few unique values.

There may be more than one value of the mode for a data set, which happens when two or more

Model

- [Theory](#)

Model of Self-Regulation

- [Self-Regulation Model](#)

Moderate-Vigorous Physical Activity

- [Aerobic Exercise](#)

Moderators/Moderating Factors

Pamela S. King
Pediatric Prevention Research Center,
Department of Pediatrics, Wayne State University
School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Definition

A moderator variable is a qualitative (e.g., gender, SES) or quantitative (e.g., amount of social

support) variable that affects the direction and/or strength of the relationship between an independent or predictor variable and a dependent or criterion variable. In research, in order to infer that a variable is a moderating variable, there must be a significant statistical interaction between the predictor and the moderator (i.e. $p < 0.05$).

Description

Conceptual Meaning

A moderator variable affects the relationship between a predictor variable (X) and an outcome variable (Y). Moderator variables commonly affect the strength of the relationship between X and Y. For example, social support is thought to function as a moderator of the relationship between stress and negative health outcomes: in the presence of low social support, there is a strong relationship between stress and negative health outcomes; in the presence of high social support, however, the association between stress and health is weak to nonexistent. In some cases, a moderator can affect the direction of association between X and Y (e.g., a positive association between X and Y at high levels of the moderator, and a negative association between X and Y at low levels of the moderator).

Statistical Approach

Researchers typically use regression analyses to detect a moderator effect. In this type of analysis, the moderator variable and the predictor variable (X) are both entered as predictors in the regression model (i.e., “main effects”). The interaction between the predictor and moderator (i.e., the product of the moderator and predictor variables) is also entered as a predictor in the regression model. Because of the way the interaction term is computed (moderator $\times$ predictor), the main effects for the predictor and moderator will be highly correlated with the interaction term, which could result in problems with the regression model due to multicollinearity. To prevent problems due to multicollinearity, it is recommended that the predictor and moderator variables be “centered” before calculating their interaction.

Centering simply means that these variables are transformed by subtracting each variable by its sample mean (e.g., $X - \text{mean of } X$). If a moderator effect is present, the interaction term in the regression model will be significant ($p < 0.05$). In the presence of a significant interaction, main effects for the predictor and moderator are usually not interpreted.

In order to interpret statistically significant interactions, researchers usually plot regression lines (representing the association between X and Y) for high and low values of the moderator. This allows researchers to see how the association between X and Y is different for different levels of the moderator. After plotting the simple regression lines for high and low values of the moderator, researchers can test the significance of the slopes of the regression lines. In some cases, one slope might be significant, but the other might not, indicating a significant association between X and Y for one level of the moderator, but not for the other level of the moderator.

Distinction Between Moderator and Mediator Variables

It is important to note the distinction between the term moderator and the term mediator, as these two terms are often confused in the literature. Both moderators and mediators are “third variables” discussed in the context of the relationship between a predictor and an outcome. As discussed above, moderator variables are those that can affect the strength and/or direction of the relationship between X and Y (i.e., $X \times \text{Moderator} \rightarrow Y$). A mediator variable, on the other hand, is a mechanism; it explains how a predictor and an outcome are related. The relationship between the predictor, the mediator, and the outcome can be written as $X \rightarrow \text{Mediator} \rightarrow Y$. In other words, the predictor causes the mediator, which then causes Y (i.e., the mediator is in the middle of a causal chain linking the predictor to the outcome).

Cross-References

- [Mediators](#)
- [Social Support](#)

References and Reading

- Aiken, L. S., & West, S. G. (1991). *Multiple regression: Testing and interpreting interactions*. Thousand Oaks: SAGE.
- Baron, R. M., & Kenny, D. A. (1986). The moderator-mediator variable distinction in social psychological research: Conceptual, strategic and statistical considerations. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 51, 1173–1182.
- Bauer, D. J., & Curran, P. J. (2005). Probing interactions in fixed and multilevel regression: Inferential and graphical techniques. *Multivariate Behavioral Research*, 40, 373–400.
- Cohen, J., Cohen, P., West, S. G., & Aiken, L. S. (2003). *Applied multiple regression/correlation analysis for the behavioral sciences* (3rd ed.). Hillsdale: Erlbaum.
- Holmbeck, G. N. (1997). Toward terminological, conceptual, and statistical clarity in the study of mediators and moderators: Examples from the child-clinical and pediatric psychology literatures. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 65(4), 599–610.
- Holmbeck, G. N. (2002). Post hoc probing of significant moderational and mediational effects in studies of pediatric populations. *Journal of Pediatric Psychology*, 27(1), 87–96.
- McClelland, G. H., & Judd, C. M. (1993). Statistical difficulties of detecting interactions and moderator effects. *Psychological Bulletin*, 114(2), 376–390.
- Online utilities to probe interaction effects (e.g., testing the significance of simple slopes), *Probing interactions in multiple linear regression, latent curve analysis, and hierarchical linear modeling*. Retrieved from <http://www.quantpsy.org/interact/index.html>

"Mono" or Mononucleosis

- [Epstein-Barr Virus](#)

Monokines

- [Cytokines](#)

Monounsaturated Fats

- [Fat, Dietary Intake](#)

Monounsaturated Fatty Acids

- [Fat: Saturated, Unsaturated](#)

Monozygotic Twins

Jennifer Wessel
Public Health, School of Medicine, Indiana
University, Indianapolis, IN, USA

Synonyms

[Identical twins](#)

Definition

Monozygotic (MZ) twins are pairs of individuals resulting from the fertilization of one egg (monozygote literally means one egg, or zygote). The zygote goes through several cell divisions, and the cells then separate into two groups, resulting in two separate embryos.

MZ twins have identical copies of all of their genes. Therefore, unlike dizygotic (DZ) twins who can be same-sex or opposite-sex pairs, all MZ twins are same-sex pairs. At young ages their epigenetic material is nearly identical, but as they age the different environmental influences they experience can change their epigenetic material. Phenotypes, e.g., physical and mental traits and disease states, can therefore differ between pairs of twins.

Cross-References

- [Dizygotic Twins](#)

References and Further Readings

- Elston, R. C., Olson, J. M., & Palmer, L. (2002). *Biostatistical genetics and genetic epidemiology* (1st ed.). Chichester: Wiley.

- Nussbaum, R. L., Mc Innes, R. R., & Willard, H. F. (2001). *Genetics in medicine* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders.
- Spector, T. D., Snieder, H., & MacGregor, A. J. (2000). *Advances in Twin and Sib-pair analysis* (1st ed.). London: Greenwich Medical Media.

Mood

Maria Kleinstäuber
Department of Clinical Psychology and
Psychotherapy, Philipps University, Marburg,
Germany

Synonyms

Affective state; Feeling; Feeling state

Definition

In contrast to *emotion*, mood is defined as a transient, low-intensity, nonspecific, and subtle affective state that often has no definite cause. Along with all the transient affective states of everyday life, mood also includes low-activation, low-energy states such as fatigue or serenity. Although the terms *mood* and *affect* are often used synonymously, affect is more of an umbrella term that includes both emotions and moods. Mood states are short-term and transient affective states, whereas stable, long-term individual differences in the tendency to experience a certain mood state are defined as affective traits. Affective traits can be differentiated from *temperaments* in that they are broader, more general, dispositional constructs, which combine several affective traits and cognitive or behavioral characteristics. Furthermore, the concept of affective traits, in contrast to the concept of temperaments, does not include any implications regarding the origin of the trait.

Description

Affective experiences of everyday life are characterized by mixed mood states, rather than the

experience of pure emotion. Mood states inform us continuously about our general state of being and, therefore, play an important role in human self-regulatory processes. Potentially important factors that are involved in intraindividual fluctuations in mood, or differences across individuals, can be divided into four broad categories: affective traits and temperaments, exogenous factors (e.g., events, activities, ingestion of substances, physical aspects of environment), endogenous rhythmic patterns and sociocultural rhythms (e.g., circadian rhythms, mood changes across menstrual cycle or the seasons), as well as individual differences in characteristic variability of moods.

Moods and Biobehavioral System

Mood states should not be assumed to be isolated subjective experiences, but instead should be seen as an important component of a complex biobehavioral system that includes affective, cognitive, biological, and behavioral components. Theories focusing on the issue of causal primacy touch on the question of whether cognitions arise first and produce affective states or whether affective states appear independently and can induce cognitive changes. These theories have so far turned out to be unproductive. Instead it has been proposed that the various components of the biobehavioral system are connected by complex feedback loops and work synchronously. Changes in one component, therefore, produce changes in all of the others. This assumption supports the behavioral medical conceptualization of health and illness, which integrates biological, behavioral, as well as psychological issues in an interactive way. It also emphasizes the role of the affective component (including states of mood) on health status.

Measuring Mood

In affective research, mood is mostly assessed using self-ratings. Some rather contradictory assumptions exist about the dimensional structure of self-reported mood. Current evidence strongly

supports the existence of two orthogonal dimensions: positive affect and negative affect. This implies that knowledge of an individual's current level of negative mood says very little about their level of positive mood. Therefore, in appraising mood it is very important to assess both dimensions separately. Although most research on mood is based on self- or clinician ratings, a variety of concerns regarding this method exist, such as biases due to social desirability, expectancy effects, or the idiosyncratic interpretation of anchoring points of rating scales. Behavioral measures of mood are an alternative approach to self-ratings. A typical behavioral technique employs a consensually accepted manipulation of mood (e.g., autosuggestion techniques such as reading positive, negative, or neutral self-referent statements) followed by a battery of behavioral measures (e.g., measures of psychomotor speed or activation). This method also has serious limitations, such as biases, due to the motivation of participants to comply with the perceived expectations of the experimenter, or the problem of time-limited effects. In recent years measurement paradigms that emphasize real-world, real-time data capture became more and more popular in research of mood, typically referred to as ecological momentary assessment (EMA). EMA allows a repeated assessment of individuals in the context of their typical daily routines under application of a range of various techniques (e.g., self-rating scales, investigator-administered, in-person assessments, paper-and-pencil or mobile-technology-administered assessments, monitoring or automated assessments of mood-related biological or physiological reactions).

Impact of Mood on Health-Relevant Cognitive Processes

Moods can have an impact on a variety of cognitive processes. Most of the past research has been on associations between mood and memory, judgmental, and evaluative processes. These associations also play an important role in conceptualizations of illness and health in behavioral medicine. Research on associations between

mood and memory has identified various phenomena. *Mood-congruent encoding* implies that material is learned more thoroughly if the affective tone of that material is consistent with an individual's mood state. This is considered a robust phenomenon occurring with most mood states. *Mood-congruent retrieval* is defined as an increased recall of material that is of the same affective tone as the mood experienced during retrieval. This effect has been shown less frequently. *Mood-dependent memory* implies that an individual remembers material learned in a particular mood state better on occasions when the individual is in that same mood state. One of the most popular theories attempting to explain these phenomena is the *associative network theory*. It postulates that memory is an associative network of nodes representing units such as concepts, schemes, events, and also affective states. Due to associative links that can form between these units, activation of a memory unit spreads to neighboring associated nodes. The effects mentioned are also relevant to behavioral medical approaches. A typical example is that of mood-congruent effects of depressive mood being associated with poorer memory for positive experiences and/or better memory for negative experiences, which in turn can maintain the vicious cycle of depressive syndrome. An enduring depressive mood can in turn be associated with complications in the healing processes of various diseases.

For explaining the impact of mood on judgments, the *affect infusion model* (AIM; Forgas 1995) can be applied. *Affect infusion* describes the process whereby affectively loaded information becomes involved in the judgmental process and biases the judgmental outcome. According to the AIM, the occurrence of affect infusion on judgment appears in dependence upon the use of different judgmental strategies, which in turn depend upon features of the target, the judge, and the situation. The model implies that more extensive processing strategies increase the impact of mood on judgment; as such strategies offer a greater scope for the incorporation of affectively loaded information. This association between mood and judgments has extremely

important consequences for behavioral medical approaches, for the reason that mood has a major impact on people's perceptions of symptoms of illness, their health efficacy judgments, and their expectations of potential diseases they might have in the future. Individuals in a positive mood seem to judge their health more favorably than individuals in a negative mood. Furthermore, it has been demonstrated that negative mood is associated with negative judgments about symptoms, symptom severity, or health status across different illnesses (e.g., asthma, Parkinson's disease, rheumatoid arthritis). In addition, negative mood seems to be associated with a lower detection threshold and a higher selective attention for physical symptoms.

Impact of Mood on Health Decision-Making Processes and Health Behavior

Research on the association between mood and behavior has demonstrated relatively consistent results for the mood-congruent effects of positive mood, with the exception that positive mood promotes positive behaviors – only if the behavior is not a threat to continuation of the positive mood. For negative moods the findings are much more contradictory. In behavioral medicine in particular, mood effects on behavior play an important role concerning disease-preventive as well as disease-management behaviors. Typical examples are that individuals in a negative mood show insufficient asthma control behavior or that negatively tempered individuals with chronic heart failure fail to seek advice for relevant cardiac symptoms.

Peters et al. (2006) distinguish four separable roles of affect and mood important to health-decision-making processes. First mood can function as information and can act as a cue for important judgments, including probability judgments. For example it has been demonstrated that individuals interpret new information about risks and benefits of a specific treatment technology in ways that are consistent with their affect (i.e., positive affect is associated with the perception of a lower risk and higher benefit). Second, mood can have

an impact on which information an individual focuses attention on. Third mood can act as a motivator for action or processing of information. Finally mood can help individuals comparing effectively very different decision options and information, because it is easier for persons to integrate affective cues in complex decisional processes than cognitive information. These functions of affect and mood can be integrated in self-regulation models of health behavior.

Models of health behaviors based on self-regulation perspectives, such as the cognitive-social health information processing (C-SHIP) framework (Miller et al. 1996), give affective states and mood an equal weight to cognitive processing in regard to health behaviors and can be well connected with the previously defined roles of affect and mood in regard to health behavior. The C-SHIP model has been especially applied to coping with cancer. Five interconnected cognitive-affective units which process cancer-related information are assumed: Besides individual's self-construals of the cancer threat, cancer-related self-efficacy beliefs, cancer-related values or goals, repertoire of coping skills, and also individual's emotional responses to cancer threats are considered.

Impact of Mood on Health Status and Outcome

In general, mood seems to be associated not only with the subjective perception of health status but also with objective aspects of health. For example, individuals with a chronic tendency to experience negative mood report higher levels of health problems, especially more psychophysiological disorders. Similar findings have been demonstrated for highly reactive persons (e.g., persons who quickly change the intensity of their moods). For cardiovascular disease in particular, enduring tendencies toward negative mood seem to be linked to the duration, development, and course of the disease. Enduring negative mood seems to contribute to pathophysiological processes in the complex network of bidirectional signals linking brain activity, the endocrine, and the immune systems. Such

a complex network of central nervous, endocrine, and immune responses can be observed in clinical depression with its core feature of persisting negative affect, for example. Regarding the endocrine system, depression seems to be associated with patterns of dysregulated HPA activities. This HPA dysregulation could be connected to deleterious effects on the immune system. Moreover in depression abnormal activity in the prefrontal cortex (e.g., indicated by patterns of prefrontal EEG asymmetry) associated with negative affect goes along with changes of immune response (e.g., lower antibody titers after vaccination for influenza). Finally, several studies showed that major depression seems to be associated with various functional and phenotypic changes in the immune system (e.g., increase in neutrophils, decreases in B and T cells, deficiencies in the NK cell activity, elevated levels of proinflammatory cytokines). Affective research shows that not only negative mood but also positive mood has an impact on health status and is associated with favorable health outcomes. It has been demonstrated that positive affect activates the neuroendocrine, autonomic, and immune systems. For example, cortisol level has been shown to be consistently lower in individuals with higher levels of positive mood, and beneficial effects of positive mood on cardiovascular function including blood pressure and heart rate have also been found. Moreover associated with positive mood, beneficial changes of the immune system or enhanced immune function can be observed, such as an increase of immunoglobulin A, of the number of certain subsets of white blood cells, of NK-cell numbers, and of specific cytokines (e.g., IL-2, IL-3), while other cytokines are decreased (e.g., interferon- α , TNF- α). The impact of positive mood seems to be independent of the impact of negative mood; therefore, it is speculated that positive mood has its own specific biological correlates.

In conclusion, it is not surprising that mood can impact the healing processes of different diseases. Behavioral interventions focusing on improving mood in patients with chronic diseases, therefore, seem to play an important role in the treatment of medical problems. In patients with different chronic medical conditions (e.g., heart disease,

diabetes mellitus, asthma, cancer, arthritis), behavioral therapeutic interventions (e.g., relaxation, biofeedback, graded exercise) have been found to have a positive effect on anxiety and depressive mood.

Cross-References

- [Affect](#)
- [Affect Arousal](#)
- [Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine](#)
- [Emotional Responses](#)
- [Emotions: Positive and Negative](#)

References and Further Readings

- Clore, G. L., & Martin, L. L. (2000). *Theories of mood and cognition: A users Handbook*. Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Dalgeish, T., & Power, M. J. (Eds.). (1999). *Handbook of cognition and emotion*. New York: Wiley.
- Forgas, J. P. (1995). Mood and judgment: The affect infusion model (AIM). *Psychological Bulletin*, 117(1), 39–66.
- Furukawa, T. A. (2010). Assessment of mood: Guides for clinicians. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 68(6), 581–589. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpsychores.2009.05.003>.
- Lewis, M., Haviland-Jones, J. M., & Feldman Barrett, L. (2008). *Handbook of emotions*. New York: Guilford.
- Miller, S. M., Shoda, Y., & Hurley, K. (1996). Applying cognitive social theory to health-protective behavior: Breast self-examination in cancer screening. *Psychological Bulletin*, 119(1), 70–94. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0033-2909.119.1.70>.
- Morris, W. N. (1989). *Mood: The frame of mind*. New York: Springer.
- Peters, E., Lipkus, I., & Diefenbach, M. A. (2006). The functions of affect in health communications and in the construction of health preferences. *Journal of Communication*, 56, S140–S162. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1460-2466.2006.00287.x>.
- Watson, D. (2000). *Mood and temperament*. New York: Guilford.
- Wenze, S. J., & Miller, I. W. (2010). Use of ecological momentary assessment in mood disorders research. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 30(6), 794–804. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cpr.2010.06.007>.

Mood Variability

- [Diurnal Mood Variation](#)

Morbidity Burden

► [Comorbidity](#)

Mortality

G. David Batty
Department of Epidemiology and Public Health,
University College London, London, UK

Synonyms

[Death](#); [Fatality](#); [Vital status](#)

Definition

Mortality is a measure of human longevity and, by proxy, health that is widely utilized by demographers, epidemiologists, actuaries, and economists. Mortality data typically describe the number of deaths by place and time. Many nations, particularly high-income countries, have a civil registration system of deaths, often accompanied by the underlying cause of death as coded on a death certificate by an attending physician. In accordance with the rules of the International Classification of Diseases (WHO), the underlying cause of death is defined as “the disease or injury which initiated the train of morbid events leading directly to death, or the circumstances of the accident or violence which produced the fatal injury.”

Cross-References

► [Mortality Rates](#)

References and Further Reading

World Health Organization (2011). *International classification of diseases*. <http://www.who.int/classifications/icd/en/>. Accessed Feb 2011

Mortality Rates

G. David Batty
Department of Epidemiology and Public Health,
University College London, London, UK

Synonyms

[Death rate](#)

Definition

A mortality rate is an estimate of the proportion of a population group dying during a specific period of time. Mortality rates can be based on how many people die of any cause (“total mortality”) or can be used to describe the death rate of a certain illness or condition, such as dementia or avian influenza.

Mortality rate is calculated as the number of people dying (numerator) divided by the number of people at risk of dying (denominator). The latter estimate is typically based on midyear population data.

In order to produce readily understandable results, the mortality rate – which is typically calculated as a small fraction – is often multiplied up by expressing it as deaths per 100 or 1,000 individuals. For instance, in a town of 10,000 residents, if ten people die of a heart attack over a given period of time, the mortality rate due to this condition would be said to be one in 1,000 persons.

Cross-References

► [Mortality](#)

References and Further Reading

Bonita, R., Beaglehole, R., Kjellström, T. (2006). Basic Epidemiology. World Health Organization

Motivational Interviewing

Demetria Cain

Center for Health Intervention and Prevention,
University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Definition

Motivational interviewing is a guided, client-centered style of counseling used to help clients explore and resolve ambivalence toward health behavior change. Based on the principles of motivational psychology, it is designed to produce rapid, internally motivated change by mobilizing the client's own change resources. Motivational interviewing is not defined by a technique, but by its spirit as an interpersonal style for facilitating change (Miller and Rollnick 1991; Rollnick and Miller 1995).

Description

Motivational interviewing developed from William R. Miller's research on studying behavioral self-control training as a treatment for alcohol addiction. In his early research, Miller noted that a non-confrontational treatment approach lowered drinking levels among alcoholics compared to a therapist outpatient treatment approach (Miller 1978). Motivational interviewing formed from the notion that counseling can have a huge effect on behavior change when it emphasizes personal responsibility and supports cognitive dissonance in clients who experience ongoing health behavior problems but exhibit awareness for the behavior's negative consequences.

Stemming from these initial concepts, Miller and Rollnick (1991) further elaborated on the fundamental concepts and approaches for this style of counseling in a clinical procedure description. The five basic principles of motivational interviewing are *expressing empathy*, *developing discrepancy*, *avoiding argumentation*, *rolling with resistance*, and *supporting self-efficacy*. In expressing empathy, the therapist seeks to

communicate great respect for the client. The therapist's role is a blend of supportive confidant and knowledgeable consultant. The client's freedom of choice and self-direction is supported and respected. Persuasion is given in gentle, subtle ways with the assumption that behavior change is up to the client. In developing discrepancies, motivational interviewing seeks to focus the client's awareness toward discrepancies in their behavior. When people perceive a discrepancy between where they are and where they want to be, they become motivated to change. When the therapist avoids argumentation, they employ strategies to assist the client in accurately seeing the consequences of their behavior. Direct confrontation of behavior can produce resistance. Instead, the therapist passively guides the client to voice their own arguments for change. In rolling with resistance, the therapist views ambivalence toward change as normal, and resistance is explored openly. Instead of challenging a client's resistance, the therapist moves with it, but with the goal of shifting the client's perceptions in the process. Self-efficacy is the belief that one can perform a particular behavior or accomplish a particular task and is a critical determinant of behavior change (Bandura 1982). Through the therapist's support, the client must be confident that behavior change is possible.

Motivation interviewing was used as the style of counseling in Motivational Enhancement Therapy and tested in the National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism's (NIAAA) multisite cooperative agreement called Project Match. In this clinical trial, patients with alcohol abuse and dependence were matched to different treatment options based on their personal characteristics. Motivational Enhancement Therapy was shown as effective as a 12 Step Facilitation therapy and a Cognitive Behavioral Coping Skills Therapy for alcohol dependency treatment (Miller et al. 1992).

Motivational interviewing's efficacy comes from its ability to help guide clients through a natural process of recovery. The Transtheoretical Model of Behavior Change (Prochaska and DiClemente 1984) describes the stages of change clients move through as they progress in

modifying problem behaviors. The stages of change are precontemplation, contemplation, determination, action, maintenance, and relapse. In motivational interviewing, the therapist assists the client in moving from one stage to the next by addressing where they are and where they want to be.

Motivational interviewing has been synonymous with brief interventions because of terms like “brief motivational counseling,” but they are distinctly different concepts (Holder et al. 1991). The six elements believed to be active ingredients to induce change in brief interventions are summarized in the acronym FRAMES and consist of giving FEEDBACK of personal risk or impairment, placing emphasis on personal RESPONSIBILITY for change, giving clear ADVICE to change, providing a MENU of alternative change options, expression of therapist EMPATHY, and facilitating client SELF-EFFICACY (Miller and Sanchez 1994). Although the elements of FRAMES are analogous with motivational interviewing, it is important to distinguish the differences between the mechanisms that make brief interventions effective and the methods designed to encourage behavior change in motivational interviewing (Rollnick and Miller 1995).

Techniques used by therapist in motivational interviewing are structured into the two phases: building motivation for change and strengthening commitment to change (Miller et al. 1993). While building motivation for change, the therapist helps the client make the decision to change by using open-ended questions to elicit self-motivational statements of problem perception, using reflective listening to demonstrate empathy, summarizing themes that need further emphasis, and affirming the client’s challenges. While strengthening commitment to change, the therapist helps the client move from contemplation to action by recognizing the client’s readiness for change, discussing a potential plan of action, communicating free choice, and discussing consequences of action or inaction.

Although motivational interviewing was formed out of alcohol treatment research, it has moved into other realms of health behavior

change research. Motivational interviewing has shown promise in behavior change related to HIV risk behavior, substance abuse, smoking cessation, physical activity, diabetes self-care, and many others.

Those interested in learning more about motivational interviewing can seek information on this style of counseling from resources developed for clinicians, researchers, and trainers. Through the Motivational Interviewing Network of Trainers (MINT), there are opportunities to learn motivational interviewing through one of many training courses.

Cross-References

- [Health Behavior Change](#)
- [Self-Efficacy](#)
- [Stages-of-Change Model](#)

References and Readings

- Bandura, A. (1982). Self-efficacy mechanism in human agency. *American Psychologist*, 37, 122–147.
- Holder, H., Longabaugh, R., Miller, W. R., & Rubonis, A. V. (1991). The cost of effectiveness for treatment for alcoholism: A first approximation. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, 52, 517–540.
- Miller, W. R. (1978). Behavioral treatment of problem drinkers: A comparative outcome study of three controlled drinking therapies. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 46(1), 74–86.
- Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (1991). *Motivational interviewing: Preparing people for change*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Miller, W. R., & Sanchez, V. C. (1994). Motivating young adults for treatment and lifestyle change. In G. Howard (Ed.), *Alcohol use and misuses by young adults* (pp. 55–82). Notre Dame: University of Notre Dame Press.
- Miller, W. R., Zweben, A., DiClemente, C. C., & Rychtarik, R. G. (1992). *Motivational enhancement therapy manual: A clinical research guide for therapists treating individuals with alcohol abuse and dependence*. Rockville: National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism.
- Prochaska, J. O., & DiClemente, C. C. (1984). *The trans-theoretical approach: Crossing traditional boundaries of therapy*. Homewood: Dow Jones/Irwin.
- Rollnick, S., & Miller, W. R. (1995). What is motivational interviewing? *Behavioural and Cognitive Psychotherapy*, 23, 325–334. <http://motivationalinterview.org/>.

Motivational Interviewing in Work Disability

Joanne Park^{1,2}, Douglas P. Gross³ and Shaniff Esmail²

¹Workers' Compensation Board of Alberta
Millard Health, Edmonton, AB, Canada

²Department of Occupational Therapy, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

³Department of Physical Therapy, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Definition

Motivational interviewing (MI) is a client-centered, directive therapeutic approach that enhances readiness for behavioral change by assisting clients to explore and resolve ambivalence (Miller and Rollnick 2002). The *spirit* of MI is the underlying perspective of how MI should be practiced (Miller and Rollnick 2013). It includes collaboration (partnership that honors the client's expertise and perspectives), evocation (resources and motivation for change reside within the client), and autonomy (client's right and capacity for self-direction) (Miller and Rollnick 2002, 2013). MI was originally used in the area of substance abuse; however, it has been found to be more broadly effective and has been applied to other medical and behavioral disorders where a change in behavior is required such as gambling, eating disorders, and general well-being (i.e., increasing physical activity, weight loss, or healthy diet) (Hettema et al. 2005; Burke et al. 2003; Lundahl et al. 2010; Rubak et al. 2005). Until recently, MI has not previously been evaluated with the individuals experiencing work disability. However, there are several characteristics of MI which make it suitable for addressing behavior change with this population: (1) its effectiveness with individuals who are reluctant or ambivalent about behavior change; (2) behavior change can be achieved within a short timeframe; (3) the approach is not limited to individuals with specific demographic characteristics; and (4) it can easily be integrated with existing programs and

interventions (Hettema et al. 2005). A recent cluster randomized controlled trial evaluating the effectiveness of MI for increasing RTW rates in workers with disabling musculoskeletal disorders found that MI integrated into work rehabilitation is more effective than the routine rehabilitation alone (Park et al. 2017). A larger percentage of workers returned to work at time of discharge from rehabilitation, and they also had lower disability recurrence rates over the follow-up year (Gross et al. 2017). Results support the use of MI as a promising intervention for facilitating RTW.

Description

MI has been thought of as an amalgamation of principles and techniques adopted from several models of psychotherapy and behavior change theory (Resnicow et al. 2002). For example, MI has been considered an evolution of Rogers client-centered therapy where a supportive and empathic approach is used; however, the consciously directive method used to resolve ambivalence in the direction of change sets it apart from other client-centered therapies (Hettema et al. 2005). MI philosophies of exploring the client's own arguments for change have been associated with Bem's self-perception theory which suggests people are more committed to statements that they hear themselves defend and support (Hettema et al. 2005).

MI is typically discussed in the context of the stages of change used in the Readiness for Change Model, or in the case of disabled workers readiness for return to work (Franché et al. 2007). The stages of change in the Readiness for Change Model provide a framework for understanding the process of behavioral change as a representation of an individual's level of readiness for change, while MI provides the means to facilitate the change process (Britt et al. 2004; Miller and Rollnick 2009). A fundamental goal of MI involves assisting individuals to overcome ambivalence about behavior change and has been found to be particularly effective with people whose readiness to change is low (Hettema et al. 2005; Resnicow

et al. 2002), which is often the case in individuals experiencing work disability. Although it is not necessary to allocate individuals to a specific stage of change when engaging in MI, it may be beneficial to understand the workers' level of readiness to adjust the intervention approach and more fully meet the client at their current stage of change (Hettema et al. 2005).

The method of MI consists of four processes outlined by Miller and Rollnick that form the flow of the approach (Miller and Rollnick 2013). The four processes are as follows:

1. *Engaging*: establishment of a working relationship and helpful connection by both parties
2. *Focusing*: clarifying the agenda and direction of change one intends to move
3. *Evoking*: eliciting the individual's own motivation for change
4. *Planning*: developing commitment to change and expressing a specific action plan.

MI views individuals as dynamic and complex, driven by contending and conflicting motives, resulting in ambivalence and fluctuating degrees of self-efficacy (Butterworth et al. 2006). Thus, MI appears to be especially compatible for addressing psychosocial aspects related to behavior change including those experienced by disabled workers (Park et al. 2017). Ambivalence can occur when a disabled worker experiences uncertainty and/or contradictory ideas about their ability to perform work (Park et al. 2017). Although most injured workers do not experience significant complications in their RTW process, approximately 15–20% of injured workers experience extended periods of work disability (Dyck 2009). In addition to a disabled worker's physical limitations, psychosocial barriers may influence a worker's behavior contributing to difficulties in their RTW process. Evidence indicates that psychosocial undercurrents pervade most behavioral change, including ambivalence, self-efficacy, self-perception, and motivation (Hettema et al. 2005). RTW uncertainty and extended work disability can reduce motivation and prevent workers from participating in rehabilitation or the RTW process such as seeking employment or testing their abilities through a RTW trial.

The pivotal role motivation plays in health behaviors combined with the strategies involved in MI appears to be well suited for facilitating readiness of disabled workers to RTW (Jensen 2016). Regardless of the population MI is used with, the three most important theoretical foundations to MI approach for MI practitioners include: (1) behavior change is influenced by motivation and can fluctuate over time; (2) the practitioner's role is to provide a safe and supportive atmosphere to help facilitate behavior change; and (3) behavior change has multiple phases (Miller and Rollnick 2002; Jensen 2016). In summary, MI is a well-researched approach used to facilitate behavior change and holds promise for facilitating RTW in individuals experiencing work disability.

Cross-References

- [Disability](#)
- [Motivational Interviewing](#)
- [Readiness for Return-to-Work \(RRTW\)](#)
- [Stages of Change Model](#)

References and Further Reading

- Britt, E., Hudson, S. M., & Blampied, N. M. (2004). Motivational interviewing in health settings: A review. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 53, 147–155.
- Burke, B. L., Arkowitz, H., & Menchola, M. (2003). The efficacy of motivational interviewing: A meta-analysis of controlled clinical trials. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 71(5), 843–861.
- Butterworth, S., Linden, A., McClay, W., & Leo, M. C. (2006). Effect of motivational interviewing-based health coaching on employees' physical and mental health status. *Journal of Occupational Health Psychology*, 11(4), 358–365.
- Dyck, D. E. G. (2009). *Disability management: Theory, strategy & industry practice* (4th ed.). Ottawa: LexisNexis.
- Franché, R., Corbiere, M., Lee, H., Breslin, C., & Hepburn, G. (2007). The Readiness for Return-To-Work (RRTW) scale: Development and validation of a self-report staging scale in lost-time claimants with musculoskeletal disorders. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 17, 450–472.
- Gross, D. P., Park, J., Rayani, F., Norris, C. M., & Esmail, S. (2017). Motivational interviewing improves sustainable return to work in injured workers after

- rehabilitation: A cluster randomized controlled trial. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation* (in press).
- Hettema, J., Steele, J., & Miller, W. R. (2005). Motivational interviewing. *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology*, 1, 91–111.
- Jensen, M. P. (2016). Motivational interviewing for enhancing return to work. In I. Z. Shultz & R. J. Gatchel (Eds.), *Handbook of return to work* (pp. 365–379). New York: Springer Science and Business Media.
- Lundahl, B. W., Kunz, C., Bronwell, C., Tollefson, D., & Burke, B. L. (2010). A meta-analysis of motivational interviewing: Twenty-five years of empirical studies. *Research on Social Work Practice*, 20(2), 137–160.
- Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (2002). *Motivational interviewing preparing people for change* (2nd ed.). New York: Guilford.
- Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (2009). Ten things that motivational interviewing is not. *Behavioural and Cognitive Psychotherapy*, 37, 129–140.
- Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (2013). *Motivational interviewing helping people change* (3rd ed.). New York: Guilford.
- Park, J., Esmail, S., Rayani, F., Norris, C. M., & Gross, D. P. (2017). Motivational interviewing for workers with disabling musculoskeletal disorders: Results of a cluster randomized control trial. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10926-017-9712-3>. (Published online 26 May).
- Resnicow, K., DiIorio, C., Woet, J. E., Borrelli, B., Hecht, J., & Ernst, D. (2002). Motivational interviewing in health promotion: It sounds like something is changing. *Health Psychology*, 21(5), 444–451.
- Rubak, S., Sandbaek, A., Lauritzen, T., & Christensen, B. (2005). Motivational interviewing: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *British Journal of General Practice*, 55(513), 305–312.

Motor Behavior

- [Benefits of Exercise](#)

Mourning

- [Bereavement](#)

MPH

- [MPH \(Masters of Public Health\)](#)

MPH (Masters of Public Health)

Pedro C. Castellon

Epidemiology and Public Health, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Masters of public health](#); [MPH](#); [Public health education](#)

Definition

The need for dedicated health professionals to focus on the health of the population led to the creation of a new career and formal training and education in public health. By the end of the nineteenth century, there were several schools of medicine and nursing to train future medical professionals, but there were no formal training programs for the field of public health. In an effort to establish education for a separate public health career, the Rockefeller Foundation provided funding to create the first endowed school of public health at the Johns Hopkins University in 1918. At that time the career and formal education for public health was created for individuals to dedicate their career to controlling infectious diseases, improving sanitation, assuring the safety of food and water, and providing immunizations (Gebbie et al. 2003).

Since the creation of formal education for public health, both schools and programs of public health have awarded the Masters of Public Health (M.P.H.) degree and other public health-related degrees and certificates (Gebbie et al. 2003). Presently (4/21/2011) there are 44 accredited schools and 79 accredited programs of public health in the United States. There are also two accredited schools and four accredited programs of public health outside the United States (Council on Education for Public Health 2011). In general, the curriculum for the M.P.H. degree and other similar degrees consists of courses in epidemiology,

environmental health, health services and administration, biostatistics, and social and behavioral sciences.

This coursework provides the appropriate training and education for public health professionals to establish careers in both the private and public sectors. Those working in private sectors typically work as researchers within an academic institution or a pharmaceutical company, while those working in the public sector work as nutritionists, epidemiologists, food safety inspectors, health educators, and policy analysts in local, state, or federal health departments. Public health professionals continue to control infectious diseases, provide immunizations, and assure the safety of food and water, but today they also confront complex health issues such as obesity and cancer, improving access to health care, and reducing environmental hazards (WhatIsPublicHealth.? n.d.).

Cross-References

- [Epidemiology](#)
- [Nutrition](#)
- [Obesity](#)
- [Public Health](#)

References and Readings

- Council on Education for Public Health. (2011, April 21). Schools of Public Health and Public Health Programs accredited by the Council on Education for Public Health, List by Accreditation Category. Retrieved from <http://www.ceph.org>
- Gebbie, K., Rosenstock, L., & Hernandez, L. M. (Eds.). (2003). *Who will keep the public healthy? Educating public health professionals for the 21st century*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press.
- WhatIsPublicHealth.org. (n.d.) Retrieved 30 May 2011 from <http://www.whatispublichealth.org>

MRI

- [Magnetic Resonance Imaging \(MRI\)](#)

mRNA

- [RNA](#)

Multicultural Health

- [Minority Health](#)

Multiculturalism

- [Diversity](#)

Multidimensional Health Locus of Control Scales

Kenneth A. Wallston
School of Nursing, Vanderbilt University,
Nashville, TN, USA

M

Synonyms

[MHLC scales](#)

Definition

A set of individual difference measures assessing a person's belief as to whether their health status is determined by "internal" causes, such as their own behavior, or "external" causes, such as God, powerful other people, fate, luck, or chance.

Description

Based on Julian Rotter's social learning theory (Rotter 1966), there are three forms of the MHLC scales. Forms A and B (Wallston et al. 1978) assess health locus of control beliefs in

general and are appropriate to be used with people who are basically healthy. Form C of the MHLC scale (Wallston et al. 1994) is used with people who have an existing health condition (such as cancer or diabetes) to ascertain whether they believe changes in their condition are controlled by internal or external forces. It can be made specific to a given condition (e.g., to assess diabetes locus of control).

All three forms of the MHLC scales have multiple dimensions (or subscales) that can be administered together or separately. The internal health locus of control (IHLC) subscale assesses whether the person's health (or condition) is affected by the person's own behavior. The chance health locus of control (CHLC) subscale assesses how much the person believes their health status is determined by fate, luck, chance, or random occurrences, while the powerful others health locus of control (PHLC) subscale assesses the extent to which the behavior of other people (e.g., family, friends, healthcare providers) is thought to be responsible for changes in one's health. In addition to those three subscales, one more external subscale has been developed. The God locus of health control (GLHC) (Wallston et al. 1999) subscale assesses people's beliefs about the degree to which their health (or health condition) is determined by God or a Higher Power.

Since their publication in the 1970s, the MHLC scales have been translated into many languages and have been used in thousands of studies around the world, either as measures of predictors or of outcomes. In 2005, a special issue of the *Journal of Health Psychology* published an article on the validity of the MHLC scales (Wallston et al. 2007) plus articles illustrating the many ways that the scales can be used in health-related research. Although most studies show there are benefits to having an internal health locus of control orientation as opposed to an external orientation, the picture is more complex than that. Copies of the scales along with scoring information, a bibliography, and frequently asked questions about their usage and scoring can be found at <https://nursing.vanderbilt.edu/projects/wallston/>.

Cross-References

- Beliefs
- External Locus of Control
- Locus of Control
- Perceived Control

References and Further Readings

- Rotter, J. B. (1966). Generalized expectancies for interval versus external control of reinforcement. *Psychological Monographs*, 80, 609.
- Wallston, K. A. (2005). The validity of the multidimensional health locus of control scales. *Journal of Health Psychology*, 10, 623–631.
- Wallston, K. A., Wallston, B. S., & DeVellis, R. F. (1978). Development of the Multidimensional Health Locus of Control (MHLC) scales. *Health Education Monographs*, 6, 160–170.
- Wallston, K. A., Stein, M. J., & Smith, C. A. (1994). Form C of the MHLC scales: A condition-specific measure of locus of control. *Journal of Personality Assessment*, 63, 534–553.
- Wallston, K. A., Malcarne, V. L., Flores, L., Hasdottir, I., Smith, C. A., Stein, M. J., Weisman, M. H., & Clements, P. J. (1999). Does God control your health? The God locus of health control scale. *Cognitive Therapy and Research*, 23, 131–142.

Multidimensional Measure of Religiousness/Spirituality

- Brief Multidimensional Measure of Religiousness/Spirituality (BMMRS)

Multiethnic Cohort Study

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Synonyms

Cross-cultural cohort study

Definition

The Multiethnic Cohort (MEC) study was a prospective study which included people from Hawaii and California. It recruited people from the main cultural groups residing there – Native Hawaiians, African Americans, Latinos, Japanese Americans, and whites. In such MEC studies, researchers sample subgroups of people belonging to one of several preselected cultural groups. These groups were expected to have a different prevalence of a given disease, and the study aimed to investigate which risk factors accounted for such differences. The MEC study included over 215,000 men and women. Generally speaking, by running the study prospectively and simultaneously for all ethnic subgroups, effects of “historical events” (e.g., development of a new treatment for a disease, a known public figure develops an illness, or an infectious epidemic) occur for all participants at the same time. Furthermore, by conducting the study prospectively, researchers used similar assessment tools and controlled for the identical confounders, across ethnic groups. This resulted with more methodological rigor and thus greater inferential validity in the results.

Numerous studies emerged from the MEC study, in relation to several health outcomes. Initially planned to examine ethnic differences in cancer, this research found that Native Hawaiians have 65% higher risk of breast cancer than white Americans. One explanation for this excess, which was partly confirmed, was that Native Hawaiians have more frequent polymorphisms in sex steroid pathways (Pike et al. 2002). Another study compared the rates of mortality from myocardial infarction and other cardiac reasons, between those ethnic groups. Native Hawaiians and African Americans had the highest death rates, which were mostly explained by their higher prevalence of diabetes and hypertension (Henderson et al. 2007). Such studies enable health policymakers and public health professionals to target specific risk factors in specific ethnic groups, to prevent such outcomes. Furthermore, MEC studies can shed light on “nature-nurture” interactions, where environmental factors (e.g., smoking, diet, psychosocial stressors, housing conditions) and ethnicity (proxy measure

of genetic risk) or actual genetic polymorphism may interact in relation to onset of diseases. By identifying the most “at-risk” subgroups and their risk factors, preventative measures may be taken to result in more equal health status among different ethnic groups.

Cross-References

- [Cultural and Ethnic Differences](#)
- [Epidemiology](#)

References and Further Readings

- Henderson, S. O., Haiman, C. A., Wilkens, L. R., Kolonel, L. N., Wan, P., & Pike, M. C. (2007). Established risk factors account for most of the racial differences in cardiovascular disease mortality. *PLoS One*, 2, e377.
- Pike, M. C., Kolonel, L. N., Henderson, B. E., Wilkens, L. R., Hankin, J. H., Feigelson, H. S., et al. (2002). Breast cancer in a multiethnic cohort in Hawaii and Los Angeles: Risk factor-adjusted incidence in Japanese equals and in Hawaiians exceeds that in whites. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 11, 795–800.

M

Multifactorial Disease

- [Comorbidity](#)

Multilevel Analysis

- [Hierarchical Linear Modeling \(HLM\)](#)

Multilevel Intervention

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Synonyms

[Complex intervention](#)

Definition

This term can refer to two concepts. First, a multilevel intervention (MLI) refers to addressing various risk factors in one intervention, either at the prevention stage or at the treatment stage of an illness. Second, an MLI refers to an intervention which involves several levels of people or entities such as individual patients, groups, and communities. Both definitions reflect that illnesses and health are a multifactorial problem, requiring either to modify several risk factors or to involve several levels in one's social and health context. In coronary heart disease (CHD) prevention, the Minnesota Heart Health Project (MHHP) combined both meanings of the MLI concept. First, they aimed to conduct a lifestyle behavior change program, targeting diet, physical activity, smoking, and alcohol reduction. Second, this was achieved by involving individuals, community leaders, teachers, physicians, the media, classes, and schools. Thus, they addressed the multiple risk factor aspect of MLI as well as various levels of intervention units, the social-organizational aspect of the MLI. Mittelman et al. (1986) revealed the implementation of the MLI, in which they conducted the MLI on three towns/cities and compared that to matched control towns/cities over time. However, follow-up studies found modest effects of the MHHP, mainly due to control communities possibly also receiving health education and due to overall increases in certain risk factors such as obesity over time. Another MLI is the Ornish lifestyle change program, where CHD patients learned to alter their diet, physical activity, smoking, and stress responses. Compared to controls, the MLI-treated group showed regression in atherosclerosis (Ornish et al. 1990). Other types of public health hazards such as traffic accidents could indeed benefit from an MLI approach, where students, teachers, universities, community leaders, safety authorities, schools, and communities can be involved in risk factor modification. This is especially needed because traffic accidents occur because of many factors and affect large segments of society. Thus, an

MLI approach is suitable for problems involving multiple risk factors or multiple social contexts.

Cross-References

► [Prevention: Primary, Secondary, Tertiary](#)

References and Further Readings

- Mittelman, M. B., Luepker, R. V., Jacobs, D. R., Bracht, N. F., Carlaw, R. W., Crow, R. S., et al. (1986). Community-wide prevention of cardiovascular disease: Education strategies of the Minnesota Heart Health Program. *Preventive Medicine*, 15, 1–17.
- Ornish, D., Brown, S. E., Scherwitz, L. W., Billings, J. H., Armstrong, W. T., Ports, T. A., et al. (1990). Can lifestyle changes reverse coronary heart disease? The lifestyle heart trial. *Lancet*, 336, 129–133.

Multilevel Modeling

Simon Sherry¹ and Anna MacKinnon²

¹Department of Psychology, Dalhousie University, Halifax, NS, Canada

²Department of Psychology, McGill University, Montreal, QC, Canada

Synonyms

[Hierarchical linear modeling \(HLM\)](#); [Mixed-effects modeling](#); [Random-coefficient regression modeling](#); [Random-effects modeling](#)

Definition

Multilevel modeling is a data analysis technique used to analyze nested data. Nested data refers to data wherein units of analysis at one level are nested within units of analysis at higher levels. Multilevel data are observed in cross-sectional designs which sample individuals nested within groups. An example of this type of multilevel data is patients (level 1) nested within hospitals (level

2). Multilevel data are also found in repeated measures designs (e.g., multiwave longitudinal or experience sampling designs) which sample repeated reports nested within individuals. An example of this type of multilevel data is an experience sampling study where repeated reports of pain (level 1) are nested within individuals (level 2). In multilevel modeling, *level* thus refers to the structure of the data. The lower level (level 1) represents the most detailed unit of analysis and has the greatest number of data points. Level 2 represents the higher level within which level 1 observations are nested.

Description

Why Is Multilevel Modeling Necessary?

Multilevel modeling is necessary because nested data structures violate the assumption of independence required by traditional, single-level data analysis techniques such as analysis of variance and ordinary least squares multiple regression. That is, in nested data, observations at the lower level (level 1) are not independent. For example, individuals (level 1) sampled from the same neighborhood (level 2) may be more similar than individuals sampled from a different neighborhood. Single-level data analysis techniques often fail to take into account such a nested data structure and either ignore the nested data structure (violating the assumption of independence) or collapse across the levels of the nested data structure (ignoring potentially meaningful variability in the data). Violating the assumption of independence may result in underestimation of standard errors and inflation of type I error rates.

In contrast, multilevel modeling allows for data to be analyzed at one level while accounting for variance at other levels. Maximum likelihood algorithms are typically used in multilevel analyses, which allow for simultaneous estimation of multiple error terms. As a result, standard errors are more accurate, and type I error rates are not inflated. In addition, multilevel modeling enables unique types of analyses. Multilevel analyses are similar to single-level regression analyses, where

intercepts and slopes are calculated. However, unlike single-level regression analyses, multilevel modeling permits cross-level analyses, wherein a level 2 predictor is used to predict a level 1 outcome. For example, an investigator may test if the neighborhood people live in (level 2) predicts their obesity (level 1). Although such computations are complex, there are many software programs which perform multilevel modeling, including HLM, LISREL, MLwiN, MPlus, R, SAS, SPSS, and Stata.

Considerations When Using Multilevel Modeling

Power. Although sample sizes at both levels warrant consideration, in general, sample size at the higher level has a greater influence on power than sample size at the lower level. For example, in experience sampling studies, the number of participants (level 2) has a greater influence on power than the number of reports per participant (level 1).

Intraclass correlation. It is also necessary to test if multilevel modeling is even necessary. Multilevel modeling is not necessary if there is no variation at higher levels. Variation at higher levels may be computed using the intraclass correlation coefficient. The intraclass correlation coefficient measures the degree to which the lower level units (level 1) belonging to the same higher level unit (level 2) are dependent or clustered. Larger intraclass correlation coefficients indicate more dependence or clustering at higher levels. The occurrence of dependence or clustering at higher levels indicates it is important to use multilevel modeling to protect against inflation of type I error rates and to capture variability at higher levels of the nested data structure.

Missing data. Multilevel modeling is often used to analyze repeated measures data, where missing data are common. Because multilevel analyses typically use maximum likelihood algorithms, participants with missing data may be included in analyses. In multilevel modeling, results are weighted by the amount of data contributed by each participant. That is, participants who provide more data contribute more to the results than participants who provide less data.

Fixed and random effects. Another consideration in multilevel modeling is whether effects are fixed or random. With random effects, the outcome-predictor relationship varies across level 2 units. That is, the slope and the intercept of the regression line are assumed to vary across level 2 units. With fixed effects, the variables of interest do not vary across level 2 units; the slope and the intercept are the same for all level 2 units. If random effects are modeled, the results are assumed to generalize to the population from which cases were sampled, whereas, if fixed effects are modeled, the results are confined to the cases studied. However, random effects models typically require greater sample sizes and may be more complicated to interpret.

Centering. Variables in multilevel modeling may be centered around the group mean (i.e., the mean of each level 1 unit) or centered around the grand mean (i.e., the mean of all the level 2 units). For example, in an experience sampling study involving repeated reports (level 1) nested within individuals (level 2), group mean centering is conceptually equivalent to creating variables that are relative to the individual's own mean based on his/her repeated reports, whereas grand mean centering is conceptually equivalent to creating variables that are relative to the overall mean of all reports provided by all the individuals in the study. Centering aids in interpretation of the results and the choice of centering affects the estimates computed. Decisions regarding centering should be made on a theoretical basis.

Autocorrelation. In repeated measures designs, autocorrelation is an issue. Because of the repeated nature of the data, residual errors in repeated measures data may be correlated (i.e., autocorrelation). The simplest and the most common autocorrelation structure is the first-order autoregressive error structure in which reports closer together in time are more strongly correlated than reports further apart in time. Some software programs (e.g., MPlus or SAS) also model more complex error structures to better account for autocorrelation.

Advantages of Multilevel Modeling

Nested data commonly arises in the field of behavioral medicine. By taking into account the nested structure of the data, multilevel modeling provides more contextualized analyses. For example, multilevel modeling may be used to test neighborhood effects on individuals' obesity, partner effects on patients with cardiovascular disease, and peer influences on adolescents' risky health behaviors. Multilevel modeling may also be used in repeated measures designs, including multi-wave longitudinal and experience sampling studies of health behaviors (e.g., smoking, diet, exercise, and medication adherence), chronic illnesses (e.g., pain, diabetes, and HIV), and physiological processes (e.g., cardiovascular reactivity and neuroendocrine levels).

There are several advantages to using multilevel modeling to analyze repeated measures data. Multilevel modeling is able to analyze unbalanced designs, including unequally spaced data and missing data. Using multilevel modeling, it is possible to simultaneously estimate within person and between persons effects. For example, a researcher could study if on days when a participant experiences more stress, he or she smokes more compared to days when he or she experiences less stress (a within person effect). This effect may then be tested to see if it generalizes across all participants in the study (a between persons effect) or to see whether between person differences, such as personality traits, moderate the relationship between stress and smoking (a cross level interaction).

Limitations of Multilevel Modeling

Multilevel modeling is an advanced statistical technique, which requires a solid grounding in statistics. Increasingly, resources are available to support researchers using multilevel modeling (e.g., Bickel 2007; Field 2009; Hox 2010; Raudenbush and Bryk 2002). Specialized software is also usually needed to conduct multilevel modeling. However, increasingly, mainstream software also performs multilevel analyses.

New Applications and Developments

Multilevel modeling is not limited to regression analyses. In recent years, researchers are combining multilevel modeling with other data analysis techniques. For example, multilevel modeling may be used in testing moderation, mediation, path models, structural models, growth curves, and meta-analyses. By integrating these data analysis techniques, multilevel modeling is able to analyze a wider variety of research questions.

Conclusion

Multilevel modeling is needed to appropriately analyze the nested data structures that often occur in research on behavioral medicine. Careful consideration of the above issues is critical to appropriately using this data analysis technique.

Cross-References

- [Missing Data](#)
- [Multivariate Analysis](#)
- [Repeated Measures Design](#)

References and Readings

- Bickel, R. (2007). *Multilevel analysis for applied research: It's just regression!* New York: Guilford.
- Field, A. (2009). *Discovering statistics using SPSS*. Thousand Oaks: Sage.
- Hox, J. (2010). *Multilevel analysis techniques and applications*. Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Raudenbush, S., & Bryk, A. (2002). *Hierarchical linear models*. London: Sage.

Multimorbidity

- [Comorbidity](#)

Multiphase Optimization Strategy (MOST)

Carly M. Goldstein^{1,2} and Kari C. Kugler³

¹The Weight Control and Diabetes Research Center, The Miriam Hospital, Providence, RI, USA

²Warren Alpert Medical School, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA

³Department of Biobehavioral Health, The Pennsylvania State University, University Park, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Factorial experimental designs](#); [Optimized behavioral interventions](#); [Resource management](#)

Definition

The multiphase optimization strategy (MOST) is an engineering-inspired framework for developing efficient, effective, cost-effective, and scalable behavioral interventions (Collins 2018). The framework includes three phases: preparation, optimization, and evaluation. As a part of the MOST framework, an intervention scientist chooses an optimization criterion, e.g., the most effective intervention that can be delivered under a certain cost per person, or with the least amount of time commitment for participants, to base decisions about which intervention components to include in an optimized intervention that later can be evaluated during the evaluation phase.

Description

MOST is an engineering-inspired framework for building more efficient, effective, and scalable interventions. This framework elaborates on the process of optimization in addition to the classic approach of developing behavioral interventions.

Common to the classic approach of developing behavioral interventions, the decision about what to target in an intervention is based on scientific theory, empirical evidence, and clinical experience. Since behaviors are complex, interventions are often multicomponent; a component is any aspect of an intervention that can be separated out for study such as intervention content, features that promote adherence, or interventions aimed at improving delivery fidelity. In the classic approach, the components are assembled into a treatment package and typically evaluated via a 2-arm randomized controlled trial (RCT). This classic is the gold standard to evaluating an intervention's efficacy or effectiveness (and is a phase of MOST); however, it is not an efficient approach for answering other research questions that may be helpful in improving the treatment's efficiency, effectiveness, and scalability. For example, it may be important to know which components are making positive contributions to the overall effect so that any components that are not having an impact can be removed. If there were null findings, it may be important to know if the positive impact of one component might be offset by the negative impact of another component. The 2-arm RCT was not designed to answer these questions, and thus, a different approach is needed. Borrowing principles from the field of engineering, MOST can help researchers answer these questions (in the optimization phase) to develop more effective, efficient, scalable, and economical interventions.

As part of the preparation phase, one of the first steps to developing an intervention is identifying a conceptual model of the health issue based on theory, empirical evidence, and clinical practice. From this model, the researcher identifies intervention components that they believe will be effective in producing the target outcome. These are candidate components and can include strategies such as motivational interviewing (Bernstein et al. 2017), pharmaceuticals like nicotine replacement therapies (Piper et al. 2016), features to improve adherence such as physical activity partners (Phillips et al. 2018), and text messages (Pellegrini et al. 2014).

Other activities in the preparation phase include conducting feasibility studies (without

hypothesis testing) and identifying a clear optimization criterion. As noted above, example optimization criteria might be to include only components that are effective at producing a minimum amount of change on the desired outcome, or including only those components that when combined can be delivered under a certain cost per person, or is cost-effective (see cross-referenced entry), or be delivered in less than 30 min.

Once the components have been identified and an optimization criterion set, the intervention scientist is ready for the optimization phase of MOST. "Optimization is the process of identifying the intervention that provides the best expected outcome available within key constraints imposed by the need for efficiency, economy, and/or scalability" (Collins 2017). Any experimental design can be used for the optimization phase so long as it makes the best use of resources to answer the research question. Most often, a factorial design is used. Factorial experiments can have two or more factors and two or more levels per factor, whose experimental conditions take on all possible combinations of the levels across all such factors (e.g., a full factorial design with 4 factors, each with 2 levels, yields 16 experimental conditions). An analysis of variance of a factorial design provides researchers with the information to determine which components are "active" and which are unnecessary and which components are synergistic or antagonistic with one another. It is important to use effect coding ($-1, 1$) when analyzing data from a factorial experiment because it will result in uncorrelated effect estimates, which is preferable over dummy coding ($0, 1$) (see Kugler et al. 2012). Fractional factorial designs use a special case of the factorial experiment, but with this design, the number of experimental conditions is reduced in a principled way, lessening the burden of implementing more experimental conditions compared to a full factorial design. Fractional factorial designs require the assumption that higher-order interactions are negligible in size or are not of important scientific interest. This represents some of the trade-offs when considering full factorial designs compared to fractional factorial

designs. The results of an optimization trial provide information about which component levels to include in the optimized intervention based on the prespecified optimization criterion.

The final phase of MOST is the evaluation phase. In this phase, the optimized intervention (that is now assembled as a treatment package) is evaluated for either efficacy (against a standard of care or appropriate comparison arm via a RCT) or effectiveness (evaluated using designs including a pragmatic trial or implementation-effectiveness hybrid trial).

As noted above, MOST can be applied for fixed or adaptive interventions (see cross-referenced entry) where the intervention changes over time based on participant response. An approach to the optimization of adaptive interventions might include Sequential, Multiple Assignment, Randomization Trial (SMART) designs. SMART designs are currently being used to target substance use disorders (Schmitz et al. 2018), obesity (Naar-King et al. 2016), and suicide (Pistorello et al. 2017). For high-intensity adaptive interventions like just-in-time adaptive interventions (JITAIs; Nahum-Shani et al. 2015), system identification (Timms et al. 2014) or micro-randomized trials (Klasnja et al. 2015) can be used during the optimization phase.

The use of MOST provides an opportunity to significantly contribute to the movements of agile science (see cross-referenced entry) and evidence-based behavioral medicine (see cross-referenced entry) interventions. The principles and phases of MOST are especially good fits for the current scientific landscape with limited resources but the need for major public health impact.

Cross-References

- Agile Science
- eHealth Cost-Effectiveness
- eHealth/mHealth Trial Methodology
- Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine (EBBM)
- Multilevel Modeling

References and Further Reading

- Baker, T. B., Smith, S. S., Bolt, D. M., Loh, W.-Y., Mermelstein, R., Fiore, M. C., Piper, M. E., & Collins, L. M. (2017). Implementing clinical research using factorial designs: A primer. *Behavior Therapy*, 48, 567–580.
- Bernstein, S. L., Dziura, J., Weiss, J., Miller, T., Vickerman, K. A., Grau, L. E., et al. (2017). Tobacco dependence treatment in the emergency department: A randomized trial using the multiphase optimization strategy. *Contemporary Clinical Trials*, 66, 1–8. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cct.2017.12.016>.
- Brown, C. H., Curran, G., Palinkas, L. A., Aarons, G., Wells, K. B., Jones, L., Collins, L. M., Duan, N., Mittman, B., Wallace, A., Tabak, R., Ducharme, L., Chambers, D., Neta, G., Wiley, T., Landsverk, J., Cheung, K., & Cruden, G. (2017). An overview of research and evaluation designs for dissemination and implementation. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 38, 1–22.
- Collins, L. M. (2013). Optimizing family interventions: The Multiphase Optimization Strategy (MOST). In S. McHale, P. McHale, P. Amato, & A. Booth (Eds.), *Emerging methods in family research*. New York: Springer.
- Collins, L. M. (2017). *An introduction to the multiphase optimization strategy (MOST) for optimizing interventions*. Presentation, The Pennsylvania State University.
- Collins, L. M. (2018). *Optimization of behavioral, biobehavioral, and biomedical interventions: The Multiphase Optimization Strategy (MOST)*. New York: Springer.
- Collins, L. M., Murphy, S. A., & Bierman, K. (2004). A conceptual framework for adaptive preventive interventions. *Prevention Science*, 3, 185–196. <https://doi.org/10.1023/B:PREV.0000037641.26017.00>.
- Collins, L. M., Murphy, S. A., Nair, V., & Strecher, V. (2005). A strategy for optimizing and evaluating behavioral interventions. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 30, 65–73. https://doi.org/10.1207/s15324796abm3001_8.
- Collins, L. M., Murphy, S. A., & Strecher, V. (2007). The Multiphase Optimization Strategy (MOST) and the Sequential Multiple Assignment Randomized Trial (SMART): New methods for more potent e-health interventions. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 32, S112–S118. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amepre.2007.01.022>. PMID: PMC2062525.
- Collins, L. M., Dziak, J. J., & Li, R. (2009a). Design of experiments with multiple independent variables: A resource management perspective on complete and reduced factorial designs. *Psychological Methods*, 14, 202–224. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0015826>. PMID: PMC2796056.
- Collins, L. M., Chakraborty, B., Murphy, S. A., & Strecher, V. (2009b). Comparison of a phased experimental approach and a single randomized clinical trial for developing multicomponent behavioral interventions. *Clinical Trials*, 6, 5–15. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1740774508100973>. PMID: PMC2711350.

- Collins, L. M., Baker, T. B., Mermelstein, R. J., Piper, M. E., Jorenby, D. E., Smith, S. S., Schlam, T. R., Cook, J. W., & Fiore, M. C. (2011). The multiphase optimization strategy for engineering effective tobacco use interventions. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 41, 208–226. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12160-010-9253-x>. PMID: PMC3053423.
- Collins, L. M., MacKinnon, D. P., & Reeve, B. (2013). Commentary: Some methodological considerations in theory-based health behavior research. *Health Psychology*, 32, 586–591. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0029543>. PMID: PMC3832141.
- Collins, L. M., Dziak, J. J., Kugler, K. C., & Trail, J. B. (2014a). Factorial experiments: Efficient tools for evaluation of intervention components. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 47, 498–504. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amepre.2014.06.021>. PMID: PMC4171184.
- Collins, L. M., Nahum-Shani, I., & Almirall, D. (2014b). Optimization of behavioral dynamic treatment regimens based on the sequential, multiple assignment, randomized trial (SMART). *Clinical Trials*, 11, 426–434.
- Collins, L., Trail, J., Kugler, K., Baker, T., Piper, M., & Mermelstein, R. (2014c). Evaluating individual intervention components: Making decisions based on the results of a factorial screening experiment. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 4, 238–251. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s13142-013-0239-7>. PMID: PMC4167900.
- Collins, L. M., Kugler, K. C., & Gwadz, M. V. (2015). Optimization of multicomponent behavioral and biobehavioral interventions for the prevention and treatment of HIV/AIDS. *AIDS and Behavior*, 20(Suppl 1), 197–214.
- Collins, L. M., Kugler, K. C., & Gwadz, M. V. (2016). Optimization of multicomponent behavioral and biobehavioral interventions for the prevention and treatment of HIV/AIDS. *AIDS and Behavior*, 20, 197–214. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10461-015-1145-4>. PMID: PMC4715714.
- Klasnja, P., Hekler, E. B., Shiffman, S., Boruvka, A., Almirall, D., Tewari, A., & Murphy, S. A. (2015). Micro-randomized trials: An experimental design for developing just-in-time adaptive interventions. *Health Psychology*, 34(0), 1220–1228. <https://doi.org/10.1037/hea0000305>.
- Kugler, K. C., Trail, J. B., Dziak, J. J., & Collins, L. M. (2012). Effect coding versus dummy coding in analysis of data from factorial experiments. University Park, PA: The Methodology Center, Pennsylvania State University.
- Naar-King, S., Ellis, D. A., Idalski Carcone, A., Templin, T., Jacques-Tiura, A. J., Brogan Hartlieb, K., ... Jen, K. L. C. (2016). Sequential multiple assignment randomized trial (SMART) to construct weight loss interventions for African American adolescents. *Journal of Clinical Child & Adolescent Psychology*, 45(4), 428–441. <https://doi.org/10.1080/15374416.2014.971459>.
- Nahum-Shani, I., Hekler, E. B., & Spruijt-Metz, D. (2015). Building health behavior models to guide the development of just-in-time adaptive interventions: A pragmatic framework. *Health Psychology*, 34(S), 1209–1219. <https://doi.org/10.1037/hea0000306>.
- Nair, V., Strecher, V., Fagerlin, A., Ubel, P., Resnicow, K., Murphy, S. A., Little, R., Chakraborty, B., & Zhang, A. (2008). Screening experiments and the use of fractional factorial designs in behavioral intervention research. *American Journal of Public Health*, 98, 1354–1359. PMID: PMC2446451.
- Pellegrini, C. A., Hoffman, S. A., Collins, L. M., & Spring, B. (2014). Optimization of remotely delivered intensive lifestyle treatment for obesity using the multiphase optimization strategy: Opt-IN study protocol. *Contemporary Clinical Trials*, 38(2), 251–259. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cct.2014.05.007>. NOTE: READ THIS ARTICLE WITH ITS CORRIGENDUM, <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cct.2015.09.001>.
- Phillips, S. M., Collins, L. M., Penedo, F. J., Courneya, K. S., Welch, W., Cottrell, A., et al. (2018). Optimization of a technology-supported physical activity intervention for breast cancer survivors: Fit2Thrive study protocol. *Contemporary Clinical Trials*, 66, 9–19. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cct.2018.01.001>.
- Piper, M. E., Vasilenko, S. A., Cook, J. W., & Lanza, S. T. (2016). What a difference a day makes: Differences in initial abstinence response during a smoking cessation attempt. *Addiction*, 112, 330–339. <https://doi.org/10.1111/add.13613>.
- Pistorello, J., Jobes, D., Compton, S., Locey, N. S., Walloch, J. C., Gallop, R., ..., Dickens, Y. (2017). Developing adaptive treatment strategies to address suicidal risk in college students: A pilot sequential, multiple assignment, randomized trial (SMART). *Archives of Suicide Research*, 0, 1–21. <https://doi.org/10.1080/13811118.2017.1392915>.
- Schmitz, J. M., Stotts, A. L., Vujanovic, A., Weaver, M., Yoon, J., Vincent, J., & Green, C. (2018). A sequential multiple assignment randomized trial for cocaine cessation and relapse prevention: Tailoring treatment to the individual. *Contemporary Clinical Trials*, 65, 109–115. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cct.2017.12.015>.
- Timms, K. P., Rivera, D. E., Collins, L. M., & Piper, M. E. (2014). A dynamical systems approach to understand self-regulation in smoking cessation behavior change. *Nicotine & Tobacco Research*, 16(Suppl 2), S159–S168. <https://doi.org/10.1093/ntn/ntt149>.
- Wyrick, D. L., Rulison, K. L., Fearnow-Kenney, M., Milroy, J. J., & Collins, L. M. (2014). Moving beyond the treatment package approach to developing behavioral interventions: Addressing questions that arose during an application of the multiphase optimization strategy (MOST). *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 4, 252–259. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s13142-013-0247-7>. PMID: PMC4167894.

Multiple Predictors

► Multiple Risk Factors

Multiple Regression

► Regression Analysis

Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial (MRFIT)

Jonathan Newman
Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Definition

The Multiple Risk Factor Interventional Trial (MRFIT) was a large, randomized primary prevention trial to test the effect of multiple interventions to reduce the risk of premature coronary heart disease (CHD) in 12,866 men, age 35–57, with one or more of three risk factors (hypertension, hyperlipidemia, or cigarette smoking) without a prior history of CHD. The trial was conducted in 22 clinical centers in the United States. MRFIT was conducted by the National Institutes of Health (NIH) and National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute and was massive in scope, screening 356,222 men for the desired study population. These risk factors were chosen because they are modifiable, and there was an expectation (largely unproven at the time) that reduction of these factors should have beneficial results on the development of premature CHD. A subsample of 3,110 men was recruited to participate in the Behavior Pattern Study, which investigated the relationship between certain behavior patterns and CHD risk.

Six thousand four hundred and twenty eight participants were assigned to the intervention group, and 6,438 were assigned to the usual care

group. Active follow-up was obtained for 6 years, and more than 25 years of surveillance has occurred. The intervention group was instructed to follow a diet designed to result in a nutrient intake of 30–35% of calories from fat, with pre-specified intakes of cholesterol and un/saturated fats. This group also received counseling and audiovisual aids to encourage smoking cessation. High blood pressure (BP) was treated with a stepped-care approach using weight loss and medications as validated in prior studies. The usual care group was referred to their individual physician or care provider and received risk-factor management as considered appropriate by these providers. The primary endpoint was CHD death. Participants in both groups had annual assessments of changes in their risk factor levels and were monitored annually for CHD morbidity and mortality.

One of the main findings of the MRFIT study – in both the active follow-up and the 25+ year surveillance – is that the relationship between cholesterol and CHD mortality is continuous, graded, and strong, i.e., that CHD risk is progressively higher at every cholesterol level from normal to higher levels, without a threshold effect. The MRFIT study also clearly demonstrated the importance of dietary cholesterol in CHD risk. This result remained robust after controlling for study factors such as age, systolic BP, diabetes, smoking status, race, and socioeconomic status. MRFIT also demonstrated the near linear relationship between systolic BP and CHD death and the relationship between both systolic and diastolic BP on risk of kidney failure. Importantly, MRFIT participants who stopped smoking had reductions in CHD morbidity and mortality when smoking cessation was implemented along with other risk modification strategies. While failing to demonstrate clear increases in CHD risk associated with type A behavior patterns, the Behavior Pattern Substudy of MRFIT was an important contribution to the field of behavioral cardiology. Lastly, the original 1986 MRFIT paper also introduced the concept of low or optimal CHD risk, proposing a first set of criteria, and emphasized both the rarity and benefit of this phenotype.

References and Readings

- Neaton, J. D., Wentworth, D., & The Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial Research Group. (1992). Serum cholesterol, blood pressure, cigarette smoking, and death from coronary heart disease: Overall findings and differences by age for 316,099 white men. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 152, 56–64.
- Stamler, J., Wentworth, D., & Neaton, J. D. (1986). Is relationship between serum cholesterol and risk of premature death from coronary heart disease continuous and graded? *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 256(20), 2823–2828.
- The Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial Group. (1979). The MRFIT behavior pattern study. I. Study design, procedures, and reproducibility of behavior pattern judgments. *Journal of Chronic Disorder*, 32, 293–305.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (1990). Smoking cessation and cardiovascular disease. In: *The health benefits of smoking cessation*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Centers for Disease Control, Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Office on Smoking and Health, 200-5. DHHS publication no. [CDC] 90-8416.

Multiple Risk Factors

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Synonyms

Multiple predictors

Definition

The etiology and prognosis of many diseases are complex, and assuming single causal agents alone could result in scientific and clinical “ignorance.” Most major causes of morbidity and mortality, such as cancer, coronary heart disease (CHD), dementia, or traffic accidents (TA), are caused by and are predicted by multiple risk factors. In the case of CHD, for example, researchers often distinguish in behavioral medicine between background demographic risk factors such as age,

gender, and education level; known biomedical risk factors such as family history of CHD, smoking, hypertension, physical inactivity, cholesterol level, and inflammatory markers; and behavioral risk factors such as hostility, effort-reward imbalance at work, and little social support. Some of the biomedical risk factors can indeed also be conceptualized as behavioral such as physical inactivity or smoking. Simultaneously testing multiple risk factors is then statistically done by multivariate analyses, where statistically significant risk factors from univariate tests are then simultaneously considered, to identify the unique risk factors of a disease, independent of other ones considered. This then helps to create a parsimonious model, which only considers the independent predictors, of use in clinical prognostication.

For example, after finding that hostility is the main “toxic” element from the type A behavior pattern, studies examined extensively the etiological and prognostic role of hostility in CHD, in multivariate analyses, where multiple risk factors named above were considered. Many studies supported the etiological independent role of hostility in CHD in multivariate analyses (e.g., Dembroski et al. 1989). However, some studies did find that certain “known” CHD risk factors, such as physical activity, smoking, and alcohol consumption, accounted for the hostility-CHD relationship, since after statistically controlling for their effects, hostility no longer predicted CHD (Everson et al. 1997). Yet, in a recent meta-analysis of all studies on anger, hostility, and CHD, Chida and Steptoe (2009) concluded that anger and hostility have an independent role in the risk of CHD and in its prognosis. The multivariate analysis serves to examine whether a factor has an etiological or prognostic role, independent of established risk factors, and if not, then to identify which factor mediates (“explains”) its role in the disease. Another recent and unique example of testing effects of multiple risk factors comes from a prospective study which examined the ability of physical activity and self-efficacy to perform physical activity, to predict cardiovascular events in middle-aged men. In a multivariate analysis which controlled for

multiple confounders including triglycerides, blood pressure, and actual reported physical activity, self-efficacy to perform physical activity still significantly predicted cardiovascular events (Bergström et al. 2015).

At times, consideration of multiple risk factors also enables to identify interactive effects, which can help to point at a particularly high-risk group, who can benefit from scarce intervention efforts. For example, Gidron et al. (2002) found that hostility synergistically interacted with CHD family history in relation to severity of coronary artery disease. Thus, for prevention at the population level, it may be better to focus on high-hostile people who have a first-degree relative with CHD. Thus, the identification of multiple risk factors and their statistical interactions enables to better estimate one's risk of a disease and to treat people by targeting all significant independent risk factors (e.g., diet, physical activity, hostility reduction). By identifying and modifying multiple risk factors, we can aim to prevent or treat illnesses more effectively, as was done in the lifestyle modification intervention trial (Ornish et al. 1990).

Cross-References

- [Epidemiology](#)
- [Etiology/Pathogenesis](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bergström, G., Börjesson, M., & Schmidt, C. (2015). Self-efficacy regarding physical activity is superior to self-assessed activity level, in long-term prediction of cardiovascular events in middle-aged men. *BMC Public Health*, 15, 820.
- Chida, Y., & Steptoe, A. (2009). The association of anger and hostility with future coronary heart disease: A meta-analytic review of prospective evidence. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 53, 936–946.
- Dembroski, T. M., MacDougall, J. M., Costa, P. T., Jr., & Grandits, G. A. (1989). Components of hostility as predictors of sudden death and myocardial infarction in the multiple risk factor intervention trial. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 51, 514–522.
- Everson, S. A., Kauhanen, J., Kaplan, G. A., Goldberg, D. E., Julkunen, J., Tuomilehto, J., et al. (1997). Hostility and increased risk of mortality and acute myocardial infarction: The mediating role of behavioral risk factors. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 146, 142–152.
- Gidron, Y., Berger, R., Lugasi, B., & Ilia, R. (2002). Interactions of psychological factors and family history in relation to coronary artery disease. *Coronary Artery Disease*, 13, 205–208.
- Ornish, D., Brown, S. E., Scherwitz, L. W., Billings, J. H., Armstrong, W. T., Ports, T. A., et al. (1990). Can lifestyle changes reverse coronary heart disease? The lifestyle heart trial. *Lancet*, 336, 129–133.

Multiple Sclerosis

► [Neuromuscular Diseases](#)

Multiple Sclerosis: Psychosocial Factors

Kyle R. Noll¹ and Laura H. Lacritz²

¹Department of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation, Baylor College of Medicine, Houston, TX, USA

²Department of Psychology, The University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center at Dallas, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Demyelinating disease](#); [Quality of life](#)

Definition

Early research into the psychological aspects of multiple sclerosis (MS) focused on an undifferentiated category referred to as “mental symptoms,” which included fatigue, sleep, emotional, and cognitive problems. These relatively imperceptible symptoms were initially considered secondary to the more overt physical symptoms believed to be most impairing. However, with improved methodologies for measuring the domains of psychological functioning,

impairments in psychosocial functioning are now recognized as a primary and often disabling consequence of the disease.

Description

Disease Characteristics

Pathology

MS is an autoimmune disorder that involves a chronic inflammatory process characterized by neuronal demyelination and inflammation in white matter regions, as well as more subtle tissue damage in diffuse areas of gray matter. The disease causes axonal demyelination in which the fatty myelin sheaths covering the axons of nerve cells are attacked by the body's immune system (Richardson et al. 1997). More specifically, MS attacks oligodendrocytes, glial cells responsible for the production and maintenance of the myelin sheath, causing a thinning of the axonal sheath and transection of axons in the later stages of its more progressive forms (Compston and Coles 2008). The neuronal damage results in gliosis (i.e., a proliferation of astrocytes) that leads to the formation of glial scars, also referred to as sclerotic plaques or lesions.

Diagnosis

Initial presentation of MS involves one or more of a variety of symptoms that include optic nerve dysfunction (e.g., visual deficits), sensory disturbance (e.g., pain, numbness, and tingling sensations), pyramidal tract dysregulation (e.g., increased muscle tone and hyperreflexia), ataxia, bladder and bowel dysfunction, and sexual problems, as well as cognitive impairment and emotional symptoms (Olek and Dawson 2002). The varied presentation of MS can make diagnosis difficult, which often requires a combination of clinical symptoms and positive findings from neuroimaging and laboratory tests (see Table 1). Furthermore, the occurrence of one MS attack may be insufficient to make a diagnosis and time between exacerbations can be years. Thus, a definitive diagnosis can sometimes take months to years. However, the existence of disease-modifying

Multiple Sclerosis: Psychosocial Factors,
Table 1 McDonald criteria for MS diagnosis^a

	Additional data needed for MS diagnosis
Clinical presentation	
> = 2 attacks; objective clinical evidence of > = 2 lesions or objective clinical evidence 1 lesion with reasonable historical evidence of a prior attack	None
2 or more attacks; objective clinical evidence of 1 lesion	Lesion(s) dissemination in <i>space</i> (DIS) on MRI as demonstrated by: > = 1 lesion in at least 2 of 4 MS typical regions (periventricular, juxtacortical, infratentorial, or spinal cord); or await further clinical attack implicating a different CNS site
1 attack; objective clinical evidence of 2 or more lesions	Lesions dissemination in <i>time</i> (DIT) on MRI as demonstrated by simultaneous presence of asymptomatic gadolinium-enhancing and nonenhancing lesions at any time; or a new enhancing lesion(s) on follow-up MRI, irrespective of its timing with reference to a baseline scan; or await a second attack
1 attack; objective clinical evidence of 1 lesion (clinically isolated syndrome)	Lesion dissemination in <i>space</i> and <i>time</i> (as defined above; or await a second attack
Insidious neurological progression suggestive of MS (PPMS)	1 year of disease progression plus 2 of 3 of the following criteria: 1. Evidence of DIS in the brain based on > = 1 lesion in the MS-characteristic brain regions 2. Evidence of DIS in the spinal cord based on > = 2 lesions in the cord 3. Positive CSF (isoelectric focusing evidence of oligoclonal bands and/or elevated IgG index)

^aAdapted from Polman et al. (2011)
MRI magnetic resonance imaging, *PPMS* primary progressive multiple sclerosis, *CSF* cerebrospinal fluid, *IgG* immunoglobulin G

agents that can slow progression of the disease makes early diagnosis and treatment particularly important. Multiple sclerosis may have a variable or progressive course. The US National Multiple Sclerosis Society classifies MS phenotypes as relapsing-remitting (RRMS), primary progressive (PPMS), secondary progressive (SPMS), and progressive-relapsing (PRMS).

Course

MS has been estimated to affect between 2 and 150 of every 100,000 people (Rosati 2001). The majority of patients are diagnosed between 20 and 50 years of age, women are affected 2–3 times as often as men, and its prevalence is greatest in individuals of northern European descent (Prakash et al. 2008). RRMS is the most common subtype and is the initial course of 80% of individuals with MS (Compston and Coles 2008). Approximately 65% of those with an initial RRMS presentation begin to exhibit progressive neurologic decline classified as SPMS (Lublin and Reingold 1996). Regardless of subtype, most cases of MS eventually cease to remit and become slowly progressive over time.

Patients with MS have an average life expectancy that is 7 years shorter than the general population, though patients usually die of MS-related disability rather than the disease process itself. Though the disease has no known cure, use of disease-modifying drugs (e.g., interferons, immunosuppressant agents, and cytotoxic agents) has significantly improved outcomes for individuals with MS. Such agents decrease clinical relapses, disability progression, and lesion load, and may also have cognitive benefits, though more research is needed (Amato et al. 2006).

Psychosocial Factors

Cognitive Functioning

Cognitive processes rest upon dynamic brain networks that are highly dependent on the integrity of long white matter tracts to facilitate information flow between distant cortical areas. MS lesions can disrupt connections between cortical regions, often resulting in impairments of cognitive

functioning. Cognitive deficits have been estimated to be present in up to 65% of patients (Rao 1997). Impairment can occur even in the early stages of the disease, and complete remission of cognitive symptoms is uncommon across all disease subtypes (Amato et al. 2006).

Although there is no uniform pattern of cognitive impairments in MS, greatest deficits are often seen in learning and memory, with working memory and short-term recall the most significantly impacted (Calabrese 2006). Other commonly affected domains include information processing speed, complex visuospatial abilities, conceptual reasoning, and sustained attention, while primary language functions and verbal intellectual skills are usually unaffected. Additional factors that may impact cognition include depression, anxiety, and fatigue, as well as lesion location, size, and medication use.

Psychological Functioning

Individuals with MS are susceptible to emotional problems both as a direct result of disease pathology and as a consequence of coping with its numerous symptoms. Up to 60% of patients seek professional help for emotional problems during the course of their illness. Many MS symptoms are not noticeable to others (e.g., weakness, dizziness, headache, impaired coordination, muscle spasticity, bladder and bowel dysfunction, fatigue, sleep problems, pain, and sexual difficulties), but can result in daily problems and impact emotional functioning (National Multiple Sclerosis Society 2010).

Given unpredictable exacerbations, symptomatology, and prognosis, it is not surprising that depression and anxiety are commonly associated with MS. The most common mood disorder co-occurring with MS is major depressive disorder, which is present in up to 54% of patients (Patten et al. 2003). This rate far surpasses those of many other common neurological or medical conditions. Anxiety disorders have also been identified in approximately 25% of MS patients, which is slightly less than their prevalence in the general population (Kessler and Wang 2008). Comorbid anxiety and major depressive disorders in MS are associated with increased somatic

symptoms, suicidal ideation, interpersonal difficulty, and decreased treatment adherence.

Quality of Life

Quality of life (QoL) refers to an individual's subjective well-being as determined by psychosocial, health, economic, and environmental factors. Unsurprisingly, such factors can be significantly impacted by the constellation of cognitive, emotional, and physical symptoms characteristic of MS. MS leads to unemployment in 50–80% of cases within a 10-year disease course, making it the most common cause of neurological disability in young and middle-aged adults in the United States and Europe (Johnson 2007).

Although physical problems are the most recognizable symptoms of MS, impairments in mental functions appear to be the most important predictor of QoL (Wynia et al. 2008). Mental impairments (including cognitive and emotional problems) are present in more than 80% of patients and are major predictors of disability, unemployment, and caregiver distress. Patients with less impairment in mental functions report better QoL in the domains of mental health, emotional functioning, social functioning, bodily pain, and vitality. All MS patients are at risk for decreased QoL, though QoL is lowest in the more progressive forms of the disease. While fatigue is more prevalent than cognitive and emotional problems and can significantly impact daily functioning, its impact on QOL is limited.

Summary

The demyelinating lesions of MS cause a disconnection of neuronal pathways resulting in a variety of clinical symptoms that tend to be episodic and fluctuate in severity and course. The constellation of symptoms characteristic of the disease often impact physical, cognitive, and psychological functioning, that in turn tend to negatively impact overall quality of life. Further, cognitive impairments (e.g., memory, processing speed, and attention), depression, anxiety, fatigue, and sleep problems are often more functionally impairing than the physical symptoms of the disease,

leading to unemployment, disability, and decreased subjective well-being.

Cross-References

- [Fatigue](#)
- [MRI](#)
- [Psychosocial Factors](#)
- [Quality of Life](#)

References and Readings

- Amato, M. P., Portaccio, E., & Zipoli, V. (2006). Are there protective treatment for cognitive decline in MS. *Journal of the Neurological Sciences*, 245, 183–186.
- Calabrese, P. (2006). Neuropsychology of multiple sclerosis: An overview. *Journal of Neurology*, 253(Suppl. 1), 10–15.
- Compston, A., & Coles, A. (2008). Multiple sclerosis. *Lancet*, 372, 1502–1517.
- Johnson, S. K. (2007). The neuropsychology of multiple sclerosis. *Disease-a-Month*, 53, 172–176.
- Kessler, R. C., & Wang, P. S. (2008). The descriptive epidemiology of commonly occurring mental disorders in the United States. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 29, 115–129.
- Lublin, F. D., & Reingold, S. C. (1996). Defining the clinical course of multiple sclerosis: Results of an international survey. National multiple sclerosis society (USA) Advisory committee on clinical trials of new agents in multiple sclerosis. *Neurology*, 46, 907–911.
- National Multiple Sclerosis Society. (2010). *Symptoms of multiple sclerosis*. Retrieved March 24, 2010, from <http://www.nationalmssociety.org/about-multiple-sclerosis/what-we-know-about-ms/symptoms/index.aspx>
- Olek, M. J., & Dawson, D. M. (2002). *Multiple sclerosis and other inflammatory demyelinating diseases of the central nervous system: Neurology in clinical practice* (Vol. 2, 3rd ed.). New York: Butterworth Heinemann.
- Patten, S. B., Beck, C. A., Williams, J. V., Barbui, C., & Metz, L. M. (2003). Major depression in multiple sclerosis: A population-based perspective. *Neurology*, 61, 1524–1527.
- Polman, C. H., Reingold, S. C., Banwell, B., Clanet, M., Cohen, J. A., Filippi, M., et al. (2011). Diagnostic criteria for multiple sclerosis: 2010 revisions to the McDonald criteria. *Annals of Neurology*, 69, 292–302.
- Prakash, R. S., Snook, E. M., Lewis, J. M., Motl, R. W., & Kramer, A. F. (2008). Cognitive impairments in relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis: A meta-analysis. *Multiple Sclerosis*, 14, 1250–1261.
- Rao, S. M. (1997). Neuropsychological aspects of multiple sclerosis. In C. S. Raine, H. F. McFarland, & W. W.

Tourtellotte (Eds.), *Multiple sclerosis: Clinical and pathogenetic basis* (pp. 357–362). London: Chapman and Hall.

Richardson, J. T. E., Robinson, A., & Robinson, I. (1997). Cognition and multiple sclerosis: A historical analysis of medical perceptions. *Journal of the History of the Neurosciences*, 6, 302–319.

Rosati, G. (2001). The prevalence of multiple sclerosis in the world: An update. *Neurological Sciences*, 22, 117–139.

Wynia, K., Middel, B., van Dijk, J. P., De Keyser, J. H., & Reijneveld, S. A. (2008). The impact of disabilities on quality of life in people with multiple sclerosis. *Multiple Sclerosis*, 14, 972–980.

Multistage Submaximal Exercise Test

► [Graded Exercise](#)

Multuser Dungeon/Dimension/Domain (MUD)

► [Health Gaming](#)

Multivariate Analysis

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Multivariate analyses analyze several outcome variables at the same time, all as a function of one or more predictor variables (Piantadosi 2005).

Cross-References

► [Univariate Analysis](#)

References and Further Readings

Piantadosi, S. (2005). *Clinical trials: A methodologic perspective* (2nd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley-Interscience.

Muscle Wasting

► [Atrophy](#)

Musculoskeletal Pain

► [Arthritis: Psychosocial Aspects](#)

Music and Health

Alexandra Wuttke-Linnemann^{1,2},
Anja C. Feneberg³ and Urs M. Nater⁴

¹Center for Mental Health in Old Age,
Landeskrankenhaus (AÖR), Mainz, Germany

²Department of Psychiatry and Psychotherapy,
University Medical Center Mainz, Mainz,
Germany

³Department of Applied Psychology: Health,
Development, Enhancement and Intervention,
Faculty of Psychology, University of Vienna,
Vienna, Austria

⁴Department of Psychology, University of
Vienna, Vienna, Austria

Definition

Music can be defined from various different perspectives, for instance, in technical terms with a focus on the combination and sequence of sound elements and attributes (e.g., pitch, timbre, loudness), as a socially and culturally constructed art form or as a subjective percept or experience. Accordingly, there is no clear-cut definition of what, exactly, music is. Typically, music incorporates one or more non-electronic or electronic instrument(s) and/or vocalization(s). Musical

activities include listening to music (e.g., radio, playlist, concert) and engaging in music making (e.g., playing an instrument, singing).

With respect to music interventions in healthcare settings, most researchers and clinicians have come to the consensus that music therapy (MT) and music medicine (MM) describe different music-based approaches. MT involves a trained music therapist who uses active or receptive musical activities to promote the client's health. An important factor underlying health promotion in MT is the therapeutic relationship that develops between client and therapist through shared musical experiences. In contrast, MM interventions aim to enhance mental or physical health without the involvement of a music therapist. These interventions might be conducted by regular healthcare staff or can be self-administered by patients. Examples include the use of prerecorded music as a pain-management tool in surgical settings or listening to music to reduce stress and increase quality of life in patients with chronic mental or physical disease (e.g., Bernatzky et al. 2011; Bradt et al. 2011).

Description

Applications of Music in Behavioral Medicine

Music has a long tradition of use as a therapeutic agent, dating back to ancient history and even beyond. Greek philosophers such as Pythagoras, Plato, and Aristotle already appreciated the healing power of music and its benefits for the “spirit, body, and soul” (Thaut 2015). Nowadays, music is used in manifold forms for treatment purposes, spanning from professional MT, through MM interventions, to mere music listening in everyday life. Music reaches people of all ages, and there is broad support for the use of music as an adjuvant treatment, with beneficial effects being reported in many patient groups (e.g., depression, anxiety, pain, dementia). Moreover, beneficial effects of music are also consistently reported in healthy populations in the social, emotional, and cognitive domain. As an example, singing in a choir is associated with emotional and social benefits, playing an

instrument is associated with emotional and cognitive benefits, and even merely listening to music in daily life can lead to stress reduction. Particularly in view of the fact that music is popular, easily accessible, and ubiquitous in daily life, it presents itself as valuable, cost-effective, and non-pharmacological intervention in behavioral medicine (Linnemann et al. 2017).

Theoretical Framework

Music has numerous physiological effects on the human body and mind. One model explaining how music exerts its health-beneficial effects posits that these effects are mediated by a reduction in biopsychological stress levels (Thoma and Nater 2011). Whereas the acute stress response is adaptive in nature, exposure to chronic or extremely stressful situations can pose a threat to health through the chronic activation of major stress systems in the body, the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis and the autonomic nervous system (ANS). These stress-sensitive systems interact with the immune system and are linked to various aspects of mental and physical health. Music has the capacity to modulate the activity of the HPA axis, the ANS, and the immune system (Chanda and Levitin 2013), supporting the assumption that these biological systems act as mediating agents between music and health. Although the precise physiological mechanisms underlying the health-beneficial effects of music remain to be elucidated, this “biopsychological mediation model” is supported by a growing body of empirical evidence and provides a valid theoretical framework for future research.

Physiological Mechanisms Underlying the Health-Beneficial Effects of Music

Musical experiences are the result of many inter-related bottom-up and top-down processes in the auditory neural pathways and additional brain regions that regulate emotional, sensory-motor, and cognitive functions (Särkämö et al. 2013). The empirically grounded neurocognitive model of music perception by Koelsch (2011) proposes a serial processing of music, starting with the translation of acoustic cues into neural activity patterns

in the cochlea. These signals are further processed in the auditory brainstem and thalamus. The thalamus projects to the amygdala, which is involved in the emotional evaluation of incoming information, and to the auditory cortex, where basic acoustic features are analyzed. At a later stage, musical syntax (e.g., chords, harmonies, rhythms) and meaning in music are analyzed, complemented by an integration with music-related associations (e.g., memories). These steps take place in parts of the prefrontal cortex, the premotor cortex, and the hippocampal formation. In addition, emotions that are potentially induced by music (e.g., pleasure, joy, melancholia) come into play through the activity of limbic and paralimbic areas, most prominently the amygdala, the nucleus accumbens, the hippocampus, and the orbitofrontal cortex. These brain regions are engaged in the neurobiological reward network via dopaminergic neurons. Moreover, the amygdala and the hippocampus play a significant role in the regulation of autonomic functioning and the HPA axis, which interact with the immune system. Accordingly, these neurobiological mechanisms might explain the connections between music and health.

Indeed, music interventions have been shown to affect neuroendocrine activity in a plethora of studies which primarily investigated the stress hormone cortisol, the main effector hormone of the HPA axis. These findings have been summarized in five recent reviews (Chanda and Levitin 2013; Fancourt et al. 2014; Finn and Fancourt 2018; Kreutz et al. 2013; Thoma and Nater 2011). All authors outline a wide variety of studies indicating beneficial effects of music on cortisol, leading to the conclusion that music has the capacity to exert stress-reducing effects on the hormonal level in both clinical and non-clinical populations. Furthermore, the impact of music listening on the ANS has received probably even more intensive research attention, with studies focusing on a multitude of autonomic parameters (e.g., norepinephrine, heart rate, heart rate variability, skin conductance, salivary alpha-amylase). Since the brainstem is responsible for rapidly adapting autonomic processes such as heart rate, blood pressure, and respiration, it has

been suggested that an early analysis of acoustic features of music in the brainstem nuclei might mediate the effects of music on autonomic arousal (Chanda and Levitin 2013; Koelsch 2014). The majority of findings are in line with this theory, since autonomic biomarkers seem to be particularly sensitive to characteristics of the music (e.g., rhythm, tempo, valence, arousal). Moreover, music listening and music-related activities also lead to beneficial changes in a variety of immune markers, for example, natural killer cells, cytokines, and immunoglobulins, suggesting that music has the potential to enhance the body's immune response (Fancourt et al. 2014). It is noteworthy that some studies included in the abovementioned reviews found either no significant effect or an unexpected upregulation of stress-sensitive systems. This heterogeneity of findings can partly be reconciled by considering methodological differences, e.g., types of musical stimuli, length of music intervention, population and/or sample characteristics, or aspects of the environment.

What Is Health Beneficial About Music?

Research suggests that not only is music per se able to exert health-beneficial effects but that various aspects associated with the music, the situation, and the person also interact in explaining the effects of music on the body and mind. Characteristics of the music and the person have been more extensively studied than situational influences, which have recently begun to garner more interest.

First of all, with regard to characteristics of the music, there is broad consensus that music that is slow in tempo, low in arousal, and high in valence is generally appropriate for the reduction of psychological and physiological levels of stress (Chanda and Levitin 2013; Tan et al. 2012; de Witte et al. 2019). Only recently have interdisciplinary research attempts been undertaken to investigate objective acoustic features in music (e.g., spectral flux, timbral features, rhythmic regularity) and their effects on stress- and health-related outcomes (Gingras et al. 2014; Knox et al. 2011; Lartillot et al. 2008). Moreover, the latest research studies in this field have focused on

the potential effects of frequency-modulated music on stress-sensitive systems, with promising results, although these findings need to be corroborated by further extensive randomized controlled studies (Akimoto et al. 2018; Feneberg et al. [submitted](#); Nakajima et al. 2016; Roden et al. 2019).

Next, a wide range of person-specific characteristics have been proposed to influence the psychological and physiological responses to different types of music. Examples that have been investigated in this regard include gender, age, music preferences, musical training/expertise, personality traits, autobiographical memories, (mental) health status, cognitive style of music listening, and habitual mood regulation strategies. For instance, experimental studies suggest that high scores on facets of the personality dimension “sensation seeking” are associated with reduced ANS activity, reduced feelings of activation, and increased feelings of relaxation in response to highly arousing music (i.e., heavy metal and techno music; e.g., Gerra et al. 1998; Nater et al. 2005). Most of the research on the interaction between person-specific traits and music has been undertaken in cross-sectional and experimental studies. Interestingly, a clear pattern of person-specific characteristics contributing to the beneficial effects of music on emotion, cognition, and health in other settings (e.g., music listening in everyday life, music-based interventions) has not yet been substantiated.

Finally, there is accumulating evidence underlining the need to consider situational factors (e.g., control over music selection, reasons for music listening, presence of others, initial mood state, etc.), and their interaction with personal and musical characteristics, as important determinants for the health-beneficial effects of music listening (Greb et al. 2019; Juslin et al. 2008). In this regard, specific reasons for music listening in a given situation, particularly listening to music for the purposes of relaxation and activation, have been found to moderate subjective levels of stress and HPA axis secretion as well as ANS activity in the expected direction (Kappert et al. 2019; Linnemann et al. 2015). Additionally, the presence of others while listening to music is suggested to boost the stress-reducing effects of

music listening, which might be explained by increased feelings of social cohesion through music (Linnemann et al. 2016). Furthermore, many researchers emphasize the importance of an individual’s personal choice of music in the context of music-listening interventions, referring to the associated feelings of control, higher emotional engagement, and liking of music, which are aspects that have been associated with favorable effects on health-related outcomes. However, two meta-analyses on the effects of music on psychological and physiological stress levels did not find a superiority of participant-selected over predetermined music (Pelletier 2004; de Witte et al. 2019), indicating that the stress-reducing effects of music might not depend entirely on control over the music selection. Nevertheless, self-selected music might make a greater contribution to other health-related outcomes (e.g., emotion regulation, pain management), which have been the subject of recent investigations (Feneberg et al. [submitted](#); Petot et al. 2019).

Cross-References

► Singing and Health

References and Further Readings

- Akimoto, K., Hu, A., Yamaguchi, T., & Kobayashi, H. (2018). Effect of 528 Hz music on the endocrine system and autonomic nervous system. *Health*, 10(09), 1159–1170. <https://doi.org/10.4236/health.2018.109088>.
- Bernatzky, G., Presch, M., Anderson, M., & Panksepp, J. (2011). Emotional foundations of music as a non-pharmacological pain management tool in modern medicine. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 35(9), 1989–1999. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neubiorev.2011.06.005>.
- Bradt, J., Dileo, C., Grocke, D., & Magill, L. (2011). Music interventions for improving psychological and physical outcomes in cancer patients. *The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, (8), CD006911. <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD006911.pub2>.
- Chanda, M. L., & Levitin, D. J. (2013). The neurochemistry of music. *Trends in Cognitive Sciences*, 17(4), 179–193. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tics.2013.02.007>.
- de Witte, M., Spruit, A., van Hooren, S., Moonen, X., & Stams, G.-J. (2019). Effects of music interventions on stress-related outcomes: A systematic review and two

- meta-analyses. *Health Psychology Review*, 1–31. <https://doi.org/10.1080/17437199.2019.1627897>.
- Ellis, R. J., & Thayer, J. F. (2010). Music and autonomic nervous system (Dys)function. *Music Perception*, 27(4), 317–326. <https://doi.org/10.1525/mp.2010.27.4.317>.
- Fancourt, D., Ockelford, A., & Belai, A. (2014). The psychoneuroimmunological effects of music: A systematic review and a new model. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 36, 15–26. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbi.2013.10.014>.
- Feneberg, A. F.*, Kappert, M. B.*, Maidhof, R. M., Doering, B. K., Olbrich, D., & Nater, U. M. (submitted). Efficacy, treatment characteristics, and biopsychological mechanisms of music-listening interventions in reducing pain (MINTREP): Study protocol of a pilot randomized controlled trial.
- Finn, S., & Fancourt, D. (2018). The biological impact of listening to music in clinical and nonclinical settings: A systematic review. *Progress in Brain Research*, 237, 173–200. <https://doi.org/10.1016/bs.pbr.2018.03.007>.
- Gerra, G., Zaimovic, A., Franchini, D., Palladino, M., Giucastro, G., Reali, N., et al. (1998). Neuroendocrine responses of healthy volunteers to ‘techno-music’: Relationships with personality traits and emotional state. *International Journal of Psychophysiology*, 28(1), 99–111. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0167-8760\(97\)00071-8](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0167-8760(97)00071-8).
- Gingras, B., Marin, M. M., & Fitch, W. T. (2014). Beyond intensity: Spectral features effectively predict music-induced subjective arousal. *Quarterly Journal of Experimental Psychology*, 67(7), 1428–1446. <https://doi.org/10.1080/17470218.2013.863954>. (2006).
- Gold, C., Solli, H. P., Krüger, V., & Lie, S. A. (2009). Dose-response relationship in music therapy for people with serious mental disorders: Systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 29(3), 193–207. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cpr.2009.01.001>.
- Greb, F., Steffens, J., & Schlotz, W. (2019). Modeling music-selection behavior in everyday life: A multilevel statistical learning approach and mediation analysis of experience sampling data. *Frontiers in Psychology*, 10(390). <https://doi.org/10.3389/fpsyg.2019.00390>.
- Juslin, P. N., Liljeström, S., Västfjäll, D., Barradas, G., & Silva, A. (2008). An experience sampling study of emotional reactions to music: Listener, music and situation. *Emotion*, 8(5), 668–683. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0013505>. (Washington, D.C.).
- Kappert, M. B., Wuttke-Linnemann, A., Schlotz, W., & Nater, U. M. (2019). The aim justifies the means-differences among musical and nonmusical means of relaxation or activation induction in daily life. *Frontiers in Human Neuroscience*, 13(36). <https://doi.org/10.3389/fnhum.2019.00036>.
- Knox, D., Beveridge, S., Mitchell, L. A., & MacDonald, R. A. R. (2011). Acoustic analysis and mood classification of pain-relieving music. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*, 130(3), 1673–1682. <https://doi.org/10.1121/1.3621029>.
- Koelsch, S. (2011). Toward a neural basis of music perception – A review and updated model. *Frontiers in Psychology*, 2(110). <https://doi.org/10.3389/fpsyg.2011.00110>.
- Koelsch, S. (2014). Brain correlates of music-evoked emotions. *Nature Reviews. Neuroscience*, 15(3), 170–180. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nrn3666>.
- Kreutz, G., Quiroga Murcia, C., & Bongard, S. (2013). Psychoneuroendocrine research on music and health: An overview. In R. A. R. MacDonald, G. Kreutz, & L. Mitchell (Eds.), *Music, health, and wellbeing* (3rd ed., pp. 458–476). Oxford: Oxford University Press. <https://doi.org/10.1093/acprof:oso/9780199586974.003.0030>.
- Lartillot, O., Toivainen, P., & Eerola, T. (2008). A Matlab toolbox for music information retrieval. In C. Preisach, H. Burkhardt, L. Schmidt-Thieme, & R. Decker (Eds.), *Data analysis, machine learning and applications* (pp. 261–268). Heidelberg: Springer.
- Linnemann, A., Ditzen, B., Strahler, J., Doerr, J. M., & Nater, U. M. (2015). Music listening as a means of stress reduction in daily life. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 60, 82–90. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.psyneuen.2015.06.008>.
- Linnemann, A., Strahler, J., & Nater, U. M. (2016). The stress-reducing effect of music listening varies depending on the social context. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 72, 97–105. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.psyneuen.2016.06.003>.
- Linnemann, A., Strahler, J., & Nater, U. M. (2017). Assessing the effects of music listening on psychobiological stress in daily life. *Journal of Visualized Experiments: JoVE*. Advance online publication. <https://doi.org/10.3791/54920>.
- Lunde, S. J., Vuust, P., Garza-Villarreal, E. A., & Vase, L. (2019). Music-induced analgesia: How does music relieve pain? *Pain*, 160(5), 989–993. <https://doi.org/10.1097/j.pain.0000000000001452>.
- Nakajima, Y., Tanaka, N., Mima, T., & Izumi, S.-I. (2016). Stress recovery effects of high- and low-frequency amplified music on heart rate variability. *Behavioural Neurology*, 2016, 5965894. <https://doi.org/10.1155/2016/5965894>.
- Nater, U. M., Krebs, M., & Ehlert, U. (2005). Sensation seeking, music preference, and psychophysiological reactivity to music. *Musicae Scientiae*, 9(2), 239–254. <https://doi.org/10.1177/102986490500900205>.
- Pelletier, C. L. (2004). The effect of music on decreasing arousal due to stress: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Music Therapy*, 41(3), 192–214. <https://doi.org/10.1093/jmt/41.3.192>.
- Petot, T., Bouscaren, N., Maillard, O., Huiart, L., Boukerrou, M., & Reynaud, D. (2019). Comparing the effects of self-selected music versus predetermined music on patient anxiety prior to gynaecological surgery: A study protocol for a randomised controlled trial. *Trials*, 20(1), 20. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s13063-018-3093-6>.

- Roden, I., Früchtenicht, K., Kreutz, G., Linderkamp, F., & Grube, D. (2019). Auditory stimulation training with technically manipulated musical material in preschool children with specific language impairments: An explorative study. *Frontiers in Psychology, 10*(21). <https://doi.org/10.3389/fpsyg.2019.02026>.
- Särkämö, T., Tervaniemi, M., & Huotilainen, M. (2013). Music perception and cognition: Development, neural basis, and rehabilitative use of music. *Wiley Interdisciplinary Reviews. Cognitive Science, 4*(4), 441–451. <https://doi.org/10.1002/wcs.1237>.
- Tan, X., Yowler, C. J., Super, D. M., & Fratianne, R. B. (2012). The interplay of preference, familiarity and psychophysical properties in defining relaxation music. *Journal of Music Therapy, 49*(2), 150–179. <https://doi.org/10.1093/jmt/49.2.150>.
- Thaut, M. H. (2015). Music as therapy in early history. *Progress in Brain Research, 217*, 143–158. <https://doi.org/10.1016/bs.pbr.2014.11.025>.
- Thoma, M. V., & Nater, U. M. (2011). The psychoneuroendocrinology of music effects on health. In A. Costa, & E. Villalba (Eds.), *Horizons in Neuroscience Research*, Vol. 6 (S. 1-15). Hauppauge: Nova Science Publishers, Inc.

Mutagen

► Carcinogens

Myasthenia Gravis

► Neuromuscular Diseases

MyPlate

Sheah Rarback
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

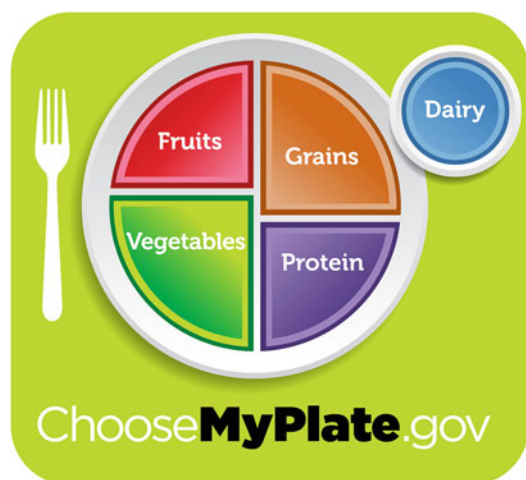
Synonyms

Healthy eating guide

Definition

The Food Guide Pyramid was a visual representation of the recommendations for daily food intake. The Food Guide Pyramid followed the recommendations of the USDA Dietary Guidelines. The Food Guide Pyramid was first published by the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) in 1992 and was updated approximately every 5 years. In 2005, the Food Guide Pyramid changed to a vertical representation of food groups and emphasized exercise by including a person walking up “stairs” on the side of the pyramid. As the Dietary Guidelines were updated June 2010, the Food Guide Pyramid was eliminated in 2011. The USDA launched a new site in 2011 called Choose My Plate and can be accessed at www.choosemyplate.gov.

Although the Food Guide Pyramid changes every 5 years, the basic message remains the same. Recommendations are to include a variety of foods each day including whole grains, dark-green and orange vegetables, dry beans and peas, fresh or frozen fruit, limited fruit juice, calcium-rich foods such as low-fat and fat-free milk and milk products, and low-fat or lean meats and poultry. There are unique Food Guide Recommendations for preschoolers, children, and pregnant women, as shown in Choose My Plate (Fig. 1).



MyPlate, Fig. 1 The plate is one half fruit and vegetables, a bit over a quarter grains, a bit under a quarter protein and a glass of dairy

Cross-References

► [Healthy Eating](#)

References and Readings

Frieden, T. (2010). A framework for public health action: The health impact pyramid. *American Journal of Public Health, 100*, 590–595.

Gao, X., Wilde, P., Lichtenstein, A., & Tucker, K. (2006). The 2005 USDA food guide pyramid is associated with more adequate nutrient intakes within energy constraints than the 1992 pyramid. *Journal of Nutrition, 136*(5), 1341–1346.

Myths

► [Cultural Factors](#)

N

***n* = 1 Science**

- [Quantified Self](#)

N1, N2, N3

- [Non-REM Sleep](#)

N3

- [Slow-Wave Sleep](#)

n-3 Fatty Acids

- [Omega-3 Fatty Acids](#)

Naïve Theories

- [Lay Beliefs](#)

National Cancer Institute

Jasmin Tiro and Simon J. Craddock Lee
Department of Clinical Sciences, The University
of Texas Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas,
TX, USA

Basic Information

The US National Cancer Institute (NCI)

The National Cancer Institute is the oldest and largest of the 27 institutes and 6 centers that comprise the US National Institutes of Health (NIH), which are part of the US Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) Public Health Service (PHS). First established in 1937 by Congress, NCI's mission and responsibilities were expanded in the *National Cancer Act of 1971*. Currently, the NCI's main responsibility is to coordinate the National Cancer Program, which fosters research, training, and health information dissemination programs with respect to the cause, diagnosis, prevention, and treatment of cancer, rehabilitation from cancer, and survivorship concerns of cancer patients and their families. Through this program, the NCI:

- Supports a national network of regional and community cancer centers
- Conducts and fosters cancer research through intramural (its own laboratories and clinics) and extramural programs (grants and cooperative agreements with universities, hospitals, research foundations, and businesses)
- Reviews, approves, and monitors grants supporting novel research projects on the causes, diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of cancer
- Collects, analyzes, and disseminates cancer research findings
- Trains health professionals in cancer diagnosis and treatment and researchers in basic, clinical, cancer control, behavioral, and population sciences
- Supports collaborative research between US and foreign researchers

Unique Budget Process of the NCI

Unique among the institutes in the NIH, NCI has the authority to submit an annual budget proposal directly to the president (called the “Bypass Budget” because it circumvents the NIH/DHHS budget process; see Fig. 1). The White House Office of Management and Budget (OMB) reviews and integrates the NCI proposal into the president’s executive branch budget which reflects the administration’s fiscal and management priorities for the next year. Then, Congress reviews the president’s proposal and makes a recommendation, and final appropriations are enacted into law after approval by both houses of Congress and signature by the

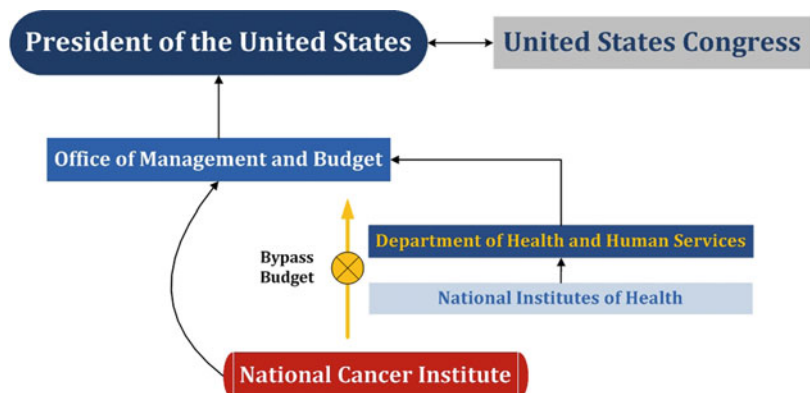
president. Every year, NCI publishes online the Bypass Budget Proposal for the coming fiscal year and the Annual Fact Book, which summarizes the distribution of budget among the research programs and funding mechanisms for the past fiscal year. In 2009, NCI’s budget was \$4.97 billion not including the additional \$1.26 billion from the American Recovery and Reinvestment Act (ARRA) funds intended to be distributed in fiscal years 2009 and 2010. Approximately 43% of the total NCI 2009 budget was allocated for 5,461 research project grants, including 543 grants made possible by ARRA funds.

The US government has made cancer a national priority and has allocated significant resources to understand the complexity of cancer as a disease process as well as processes of cancer care. Thus, the NCI has become a leading supporter of behavioral, social, and population research in basic, intervention, and applied science related to cancer.

NCI Organizational Structure and Governance

The NCI’s organizational structure consists of the Office of the NCI Director, two intramural divisions/centers, and five extramural divisions. The current NCI director is Dr. Harold Varmus, Nobel laureate. The NCI director receives programmatic and scientific advice and counsel from three national bodies of appointed experts. The *National Cancer Advisory Board* (NCAB) advises the secretary of DHHS and the NCI director with respect to the activities of the Institute. Appointed by the president, members are leading representatives of

National Cancer Institute, Fig. 1 Bypass budget process of the National Cancer Institute (The National Cancer Institute, NIH (Bethesda, MD), <http://www.cancer.gov/aboutnci/servingpeople/nci-budget-information/budget-process>. Accessed date 7/2011)



health and scientific disciplines, including at least two experts in public health and the behavioral or social sciences. NCAB approves research grant award decisions made by NCI program staff who prioritize applications ranked according to scientific merit through independent peer review. The *Board of Scientific Advisors* (BSA) provides scientific advice and guidance on a wide variety of matters concerning scientific program policy, progress, and future direction of the NCI's *extramural* research programs and provides concept review of extramural program initiatives. The BSA charter specifically requires that one or more members have expertise with cancer epidemiology, cancer prevention and control, cancer education, cancer information services, and community outreach. The *Board of Scientific Counselors* (BSC) provides analogous scientific advice and guidance regarding *intramural* research programs.

Major Impact on the Field

Division of Cancer Control and Population Sciences (DCCPS)

The main division charged with fostering behavioral medicine is the extramural Division of Cancer Control and Population Sciences (DCCPS), created in 1997 and currently led by social psychologist, Dr. Robert Croyle. Cancer control science is defined as “basic and applied research in the behavioral, social, and population sciences to create or enhance interventions that, independently or in combination with biomedical approaches, reduce cancer risk, incidence, morbidity and mortality, and improve quality of life” (Cancer Control Program Review Group, 1998-modified). For a history of cancer control and commentary on how to advance the science of cancer control, see Hiatt and Rimer (1999).

DCCPS conducts and supports integrated research in a wide range of disciplines and fields including anthropology, behavioral sciences, demography, epidemiology, genetics, health communication, health policy, health services research, psychology, public health, sociology, and surveillance. DCCPS funds research on the full continuum of cancer control that spans

prevention, detection, diagnosis, treatment, survivorship, and end-of-life care to “understand the causes and distribution of cancer in populations; support the development and delivery of effective interventions; monitor and explain cancer trends in all segments of the population.” As a result of its mission, DCCPS represents one of the largest concentrations of social, behavioral, and population scientists at the NIH.

DCCPS is organized around five research program areas: Epidemiology and Genetics, Surveillance, Applied, Behavioral, and Survivorship. The latter three programs are of central interest to researchers in behavioral medicine. The Applied Research Program fosters research to understand how and why cancer care and control activities in the USA influence patterns and trends in cancer outcomes (incidence, morbidity, mortality, and survival). The Behavioral Research Program fosters a wide range of research from basic behavioral research to evaluation and dissemination of interventions to promote cancer prevention and control behaviors and informed decision-making. The Office of Cancer Survivorship fosters research on the short- and long-term biopsychosocial effects of cancer and its treatment. An overview of the history and scientific accomplishments of the first 10 years of DCCPS (1997–2007) can be found online at the NCI website (www.cancercontrol.gov).

Current Major Programs and Initiatives of DCCPS

DCCPS is a leader in supporting transdisciplinary research in tobacco control, population health disparities, cancer-related energetics (physical activity), cancer screening, and health communication research (Croyle 2008; Rebbeck et al. 2010; Stokols et al. 2003). DCCPS has led or partnered with other institutes and offices (e.g., National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute; National Institute on Minority Health and Health Disparities) on large NIH funding mechanisms to establish research centers to leverage transdisciplinary and team science research in these cancer domains.

DCCPS also collaborates with the NIH Office of Behavioral and Social Science Research (OBSSR) to jointly fund innovative grants and projects. For example, the Grid-Enabled Measures Database enables researchers to share

standardized measures of theory-based constructs through OppNet, a trans-NIH initiative to fund and advance research elucidating mechanisms and processes within and among individuals and groups that affect health-related behaviors.

Other key theoretic and methodologic initiatives that engage behavioral medicine include cognitive, affective, and social processes in health, health behavior theory development, measurement of health constructs (e.g., quality of cancer care), questionnaire design and testing, and the integration of behavioral and biomedical scientific approaches (Stefanek et al. 2009). These scientific areas are reflected in networks of individual investigators collaborating with NCI scientific staff, as well as in funding opportunities calling for grant applications to advance these efforts.

Cancer Centers Program

The National Cancer Act of 1971 also established NCI-designated Cancer Centers for clinical research, training, and demonstration of advanced diagnostic and treatment methods for cancer. To be awarded designation, these centers must periodically undergo peer review and meet a national series of competitive standards and demonstrate excellence in cancer research through the operation of formal programs. As of 2010, there are 66 Cancer Centers across the USA that have been awarded NCI designation. Forty of these centers carry *Comprehensive* Cancer Center status, which reflects integration and collaborative research in clinical trials and patient care, as well as programmatic emphases in epidemiology and cancer control. As such, NCI-designated Comprehensive Cancer Centers are often leading proponents of cancer-related behavioral medicine.

Conclusion

The US National Cancer Institute is the largest organization dedicated to supporting cancer research in the world. Through its efforts, it provides vision and leadership to the global cancer community. This is especially true in the area of behavioral oncology and cancer control. The NCI recognizes the importance of transdisciplinary research efforts in addressing the cancer continuum.

References and Readings

- Croyle, R. T. (2008). The National Cancer Institute's transdisciplinary centers initiatives and the need for building a science of team science. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 35(Suppl. 2), s90–s93.
- Hiatt, R. A., & Rimer, B. K. (1999). A new strategy for cancer control research. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 8(11), 957–964.
- NCI Division of Cancer Control & Population Sciences. Available at <http://cancercontrol.cancer.gov/index.html>. Accessed April 2011.
- Niederhuber, J. E. (2007). A look inside the national cancer institute budget process: Implications for 2007 and beyond. *Cancer Research*, 67, 856–862.
- Rebbeck, T. R., Paskett, E., & Sellers, T. A. (2010). Fostering transdisciplinary science. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 19(5), 1149–1150.
- Stefanek, M. E., Andrykowski, M. A., Lerman, C., Manne, S., Glanz, K., & AACR Behavioral Science Task Force. (2009). Behavioral oncology and the war on cancer: Partnering with biomedicine. *Cancer Research*, 69(18), 7151–7156.
- Stokols, D., Fuqua, J., Gress, J., Harvey, R., Phillips, K., Baezconde-Garbanati, L., Unger, J., Palmer, P., Clark, M. A., Colby, S. M., Morgan, G., & Trochim, W. (2003). Evaluating transdisciplinary science. *Nicotine Tobacco Research*, 5(S1), S21–S39.

National Children's Study

Steven E. Lipshultz¹, Tracie L. Miller²,
James D. Wilkinson¹ and Miriam A. Mestre³
¹Wayne State University School of Medicine,
Detroit, MI, USA

²Department of Pediatrics, Miller School of
Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

³Department of Pediatrics, Wayne State
University School of Medicine, Detroit, MI, USA

Synonyms

NCS

Definition (and Description)

The National Children's Study (NCS) was planned to be the largest, longitudinal study of US children and their parents. It was designed to be "the first large birth cohort study in any

nation to specifically examine the influence of environmental factors on birth outcomes, child health, and human development and the first designed to systematically examine the influence of gene-environment interactions on children's health." (Landrigan et al. 2006). It was authorized by the Children's Health Act of 2000 and led by the Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development of the National Institutes of Health (NIH) in collaboration with a consortium of federal government partners. The NCS Vanguard (Pilot) Study began in 2009, testing methods and procedures planned for use in a larger Main Study. When recruitment ended in July 2013, the Vanguard Study had enrolled approximately 5,000 children in 40 locations across the country. The planned NCS Main Study aimed to follow 100,000 children from before birth to 21 years of age. After several years of piloting, the Main Study had still not been launched and on December 12, 2014, the NIH Director decided to close the study following the advice of an expert review group.

References and Further Reading

Landrigan, P. J., et al. (2006). The National Children's Study: A 21-year prospective study of 100 000 American children. *Pediatrics*, 118, 2173–2186. Retrieved from www.nationalchildrensstudy.gov.

National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES)

Barbara Resnick
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

National health and nutrition examination survey,
The

Definition

The National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) is a program of studies designed to assess the health and nutritional status of adults and children in the United States. The survey is unique in that it combines interviews and physical examinations. NHANES is a major program of the National Center for Health Statistics (NCHS). NCHS is part of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and has the responsibility for producing vital and health statistics for the nation.

The NHANES program began in the early 1960s and has been conducted as a series of surveys focusing on different population groups or health topics. In 1999, the survey became a continuous program. The focus of the survey changes based on current health care trends and needs. Each year the survey includes a sample of 5,000 persons representative of the general population.

The NHANES interview includes demographic, socioeconomic, dietary, and health-related questions. The examination component consists of medical, dental, and physiological measurements, as well as laboratory tests administered by medical personnel.

Findings from this survey are used to determine the prevalence of major diseases and risk factors for diseases. Information is available to consider such things as nutritional status and its association with health promotion and disease prevention. NHANES data are also used to set norms for height, weight, and blood pressure and to establish public health policy, to guide health maintenance and prevention program and services and expand what is known about health in our country.

References and Readings

The National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES). Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhanes/about_nhanes.htm

National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, The

► [National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey \(NHANES\)](#)

National Health Interview Survey

Donna Miller¹, Cristina A. Fernandez² and David J. Lee²

¹Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Health Statistics, Hyattsville, MD, USA

²Department of Epidemiology and Public Health, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[National health survey](#); [NHIS](#)

Basic Information

The National Health Interview Survey (NHIS) is a principal source of information on the health status of the civilian noninstitutionalized population of the United States. The NHIS is one of the major data collection programs of the National Center for Health Statistics (NCHS), a component of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). The NHIS has been in the field continuously since 1957 and is the nation's largest household health survey. The survey was authorized by Congress in order to obtain national estimates on disease, injury, impairment, disability, and related issues for the US population. The NHIS has evolved over the years, with significant questionnaire redesigns in 1982 and 1997.

Major Impact on the Field

Purpose

The main objective of the NHIS is to monitor the health of the United States population through the collection and analysis of data on a broad range of health topics. The NHIS provides data for the analysis of health trends, barriers to care, health status, health-care access and utilization, health-related behaviors, and risk factors. A major strength of this survey lies in the ability to display these health characteristics by many demographic and socioeconomic characteristics. Survey results have been instrumental in tracking health status and health-care access, and monitoring progress toward achieving national health objectives. The NHIS is a major source of data used for *Healthy People*, which provides 10-year national health objectives and tracks progress toward achieving them for improving the health of all Americans.

Sample Design

The NHIS is a cross-sectional household interview survey designed to be representative of the civilian noninstitutionalized population of the United States. The sampling plan follows a multistage area probability design that permits the representative sampling of households and non-institutional group quarters (e.g., college dormitories). The NHIS sample design is reevaluated and modified after every US decennial census. The NHIS sample design oversamples selected minority subgroups including African Americans, Hispanics, and starting in 2006, Asians. Persons aged 65+ in these selected minority groups are also oversampled. Since the last NHIS sample redesign was implemented in 2006, the expected annual interviewed sample size has been about 35,000 households with approximately 87,500 persons, although the sample sizes vary appreciably over time.

The NHIS data files contain sample weights based on the unit of analysis (e.g., household, person). The NHIS sample is chosen such that each person in the covered population has a known nonzero probability of selection. These probabilities of selection, along with adjustments for nonresponse and post-stratification to sex, age,

and race/ethnicity census population control totals, are reflected in the sample weights provided. It is necessary to utilize the weights provided in analyses of the NHIS data, along with the stratification and primary sampling unit information, for valid statistical inferences.

Content of the Questionnaire

The NHIS collects basic health and demographic data, which can be used to develop prevalence estimates of a wide variety of health measures. The NHIS questionnaire contains a set of Core questions and Supplemental questions. The Core includes questions about chronic conditions, disability, health behaviors, risk factors, health insurance coverage, and health-care use. Core questions have remained largely unchanged since 1997, which allows for trend analysis and for pooling data from more than one NHIS year, thus increasing the sample size for analytic purposes. The Supplemental questions change from year to year and collect additional data pertaining to current health issues of national importance (e.g., cancer, immunization, diabetes).

A 1997 questionnaire redesign separated the Core questions into three main components: the Family Core (collects information on all family members), the Sample Adult Core (collects information directly from one randomly selected adult, aged 18 and over, in each family in the household), and the Sample Child Core, which is only administered if a child resides in the family (collects information on one randomly selected child, aged 17 and under, from a knowledgeable adult family member).

The Family Core questionnaire includes sections on health status and limitations, injuries and poisoning, health-care access and use, health insurance coverage, and sociodemographic characteristics. The Sample Adult Core questionnaire includes sections on health conditions and health behaviors in addition to more detailed questions on some topics included in the Family Core. The Sample Child Core questionnaire includes questions on health conditions and more detailed questions on some topics included in the family core.

Data Collection Procedures

The NHIS data are collected by interviewers who are employed and trained by the US Census Bureau in accordance with procedures specified by NCHS, via personal household interviews. Prior to 1997, NHIS interviews were conducted using paper and pencil. After a questionnaire redesign was implemented in 1997, all data were collected by interviewers using computer-assisted personal interviewing, allowing interviewers to enter responses directly into the computer during the interviews.

Prior to 1997, all adult members of the household aged 18 and over who were at home at the time of the interview were invited to participate and to respond for themselves; however, a proxy respondent often provided responses for all household members. After the 1997 questionnaire redesign, a greater emphasis was placed on self-reporting to improve data quality. Data collection procedures for conducting the household, family, and children interviews remained largely unchanged, but sample adults must respond for themselves (except in rare cases where they are unable to do so).

Confidentiality

All data collected in the NHIS are used for statistical purposes only and are guaranteed by law to be held in the strictest of confidence. Survey participation is voluntary, and the confidentiality of responses is assured under Section 308(d) of the Public Health Service Act, which forbids the disclosure of any information that may compromise the confidentiality promised to its survey respondents.

Record Linkages

The NHIS data are routinely linked to administrative records enabling researchers to examine factors that influence disability, chronic disease, health-care utilization, morbidity, and mortality. The NHIS is linked to death certificate records from the National Death Index; Medicare and Medicaid enrollment and claims data from the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services;

and Retirement, Survivor and Disability Insurance and Supplemental Security Income benefit data from the Social Security Administration. Immunization data for children in the 1997–1999 NHIS are linked to physician medical records in the National Immunization Provider Record Check Study. Starting with the 1996 Medical Expenditure Panel Survey (MEPS), the NHIS data can be linked to the MEPS data which are drawn from a subsample of households that participated in the prior year's NHIS, allowing users to link, for example, the 1995 NHIS to the 1996 MEPS. The NHIS data are also linked to contextual data including air monitoring data obtained from the Environmental Protection Agency.

Data Availability

The NHIS data are available via public-use and restricted-use data files. Public-use NHIS data files are released annually and are available for download from the NCHS web site. Restricted-use linked NHIS data files, which contain indirect identifiers such as geographical locations or specific dates, are available for use through the NCHS Research Data Center (RDC). The RDC is a secure environment designed to protect the confidentiality of survey respondents, while also allowing researchers the ability to access restricted-use data for research purposes only.

Documentation containing detailed information on the public-use and restricted-use NHIS data files is available on the NCHS web site. Reports providing statistics based on data collected from NHIS and detailed documentation on the NHIS design, sampling procedures, and guidance for analyzing the data are also available. Information on the NHIS Early Release Program which provides very timely estimates of key health and health-related indicators is also provided on the NCHS web site. Harmonized NHIS public-use data and documentation going back to the early 1960s are available in the Integrated Health Interview Series, maintained by the University of Minnesota. (See section G for more information on these resources.)

References and Readings

- For additional information on NHIS, see: http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhis/about_nhis.htm
- For information on NHIS questionnaires by year of survey, see: http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhis/nhis_questionnaires.htm
- For information on NHIS design and estimation, see: <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhis/methods.htm>
- For information on NHIS reports and data linked to NHIS, see: http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhis/nhis_products.htm
- For information on the 1997 NHIS questionnaire redesign, see: http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhis/nhis_redesign.htm and ftp://ftp.cdc.gov/pub/Health_Statistics/NCHS/Dataset_Documentation/NHIS/1997/srvydesc.pdf
- For information on NHIS Supplements, see: http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhis/supplements_cosponsors.htm
- For information on the NHIS Early Release Program, see: <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nhis/releases.htm>
- For information on accessing restricted-use NHIS data in the NCHS Research Data Center, see: <http://www.cdc.gov/rdc/>
- For information on NHIS data linked to air quality data, see: http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data_access/data_linkage/air_quality.htm
- For information on the Integrated Health Interview Series (IHIS), see: <http://www.ihis.us/ihis/>

National Health Survey

► National Health Interview Survey

National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute

Martica H. Hall
Department of Psychiatry, University of
Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Basic Information

The National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI) is one of the National Institutes of Health (NIH). Its mission is the advancement of research on, and the prevention and treatment of, heart, lung, and blood diseases and sleep disorders.

The National Heart Institute (NHI) was established in 1948 as one of the National Institutes of Health (NIH). The National Heart Institute's mission was to advance research and training related to heart disease and functioning. Its functions were broadened in 1969 and 1976 to include lung (National Heart and Lung Institute; NHLI) and blood diseases (National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute; NHLBI), respectively. The NHLBI is also responsible for the adequacy and safety of the nation's blood supply.

Major Impact on the Field

Organizationally, the NHLBI includes the Office of the Director, an Intramural Research Program, and an Extramural Research Program. The Office of the Director provides strategic planning, policy guidance, program development and evaluation, and institute coordination. It also liaisons with Federal agencies, professional societies, and the public and is responsible for the dissemination of information regarding the prevention of heart, lung, and blood diseases and sleep disorders. The Office of the Director includes divisions, centers, and branches that support bioinformatics development; epidemiological studies of the etiology of heart, lung, and blood diseases and sleep disorders; the translation of scientific evidence into clinical practice; and the elimination of health disparities through the education and career development of a diverse workforce.

The Intramural Research Program includes a multinational team of NIH investigators and clinicians who conduct basic and clinical research and technology development related to heart, lung, and blood diseases and sleep disorders. In contrast, the Extramural Research Program supports heart, lung, and blood diseases and sleep disorders research, research training, and career development of investigators outside of the NIH. These activities are supported through various extramural award mechanisms including research, program project, and center grants; cooperative agreements and research contracts; research career development awards; and institutional and individual national research service awards. Three

divisions (Cardiovascular, Lung, Blood Diseases and Disorders) foster research and training in their related areas.

Cross-References

► [National Institutes of Health](#)

References and Readings

NHLBI home page. www.nhlbi.nih.gov

National Institute of Child Health and Human Development

Deborah Lee Young-Hyman
Department of Pediatrics, Georgia Prevention
Institute Georgia Health Sciences University,
Augusta, GA, USA

Basic Information

The National Institute of Child Health and Human Development (NICHD) was established by federal law in October 1962. The mission of NICHD encompasses that every person is born healthy and wanted; no harmful effects are suffered by women in the reproductive process; children have the opportunity to live healthy and productive lives; and to ensure the health, productivity, independence, and well-being of people through optimal rehabilitation (<http://www.nih.gov/about/almanac/organization/NICHD.htm>).

Major Impact on the Field

This mission statement informs the research programs supported by NICHD as follows:

Projects funded through NICHD adopt a life course perspective, such that conditions are studied prior to and during pregnancy, as well as

during childhood, as they impact the health and well-being of children and adults, including person based and environmental factors and their interaction. The process of growth and development is assumed to be continual and evolving, such that research focuses also include cellular, molecular, and developmental biology. Basic, clinical, and epidemiologic research is conducted regarding reproductive science, with emphasis on safe and effective regulation of fertility, solving problems of infertility, and understanding consequences of reproductive behavior and population change. This last focus is behavioral and social science based.

NICHD also supports the research training of clinicians in order to address areas of critical public health concern. A current focus is obesity prevention and treatment throughout the life course, with particular emphasis on the maternal-fetal environment. In 2008–2009, the National Children's Study was launched in concert with the Centers for Disease Control (CDC), a longitudinal study of environmental influences on child health. This study will follow approximately 100,000 subjects across diverse areas the United States, and span over 20 years, mapping multiple environmental influences on children's health status. As the issues addressed by NICHD span biologic systems, NICHD often partners with NIDDK and NHLBI to fund projects which target disease prevention and intervention during childhood, particularly the antecedents of diabetes and cardiovascular disease.

The division of intramural research addresses the biological and neurobiological, medical, and behavioral aspects of normal and abnormal human development.

In addition to issues of biology, NICHD supports research that addresses health literacy and numeracy, health maintenance, use of health care and community resources to improve child health, and the interaction between risk behaviors, psychological morbidity, and health outcomes.

NICHD supports a systems approach to discovery, whereby the focus of inquiry can range from the maternal-child dyad, to the family-school or family-health care environment. Therefore, besides a strong commitment to

developmental biology discovery, there is emphasis on how health prevention attitudes and behavior translate into public health issues.

Cross-References

- [National Children's Study](#)
- [National Institutes of Health](#)

References and Readings

NICHD home page. www.nichd.nih.gov/.

National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases

Deborah Lee Young-Hyman
Department of Pediatrics, Georgia Prevention
Institute Georgia Health Sciences University,
Augusta, GA, USA

Basic Information

National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases (NIDDK) conducts and supports research ranging from basic science to translational multidisciplinary studies regarding the *endocrine system*. This consists of *a system of glands*, each of which *secretes a type of hormone into the bloodstream to regulate the body*. In addition, related organs such as the kidney, liver, and gonads are studied as secondary contributors of hormonal input to the endocrine system. An endocrine axis denotes the interrelationship of function between glands and organs caused by reciprocal hormonal and cellular functions, including the brain. Functions regulated by endocrine hormones range from growth and pubertal development to basic metabolism and brain-mediated behavior. The endocrine system has systemic effects on the body, and therefore, NIDDK funds and takes a leadership role in studies

encompassing the endocrine system, related organ systems, hormonal dysregulation and chronic disease, lifestyle as it relates to prevention and disease course of metabolic diseases, proteinomics, genomics, and gene environment interactions (<http://www2.niddk.nih.gov/AboutNIDDK/>).

Major Impact on the Field

In addition to its broader mission, NIDDK is dedicated to the funding of projects which address health disparities. Minorities are disproportionately affected by endocrine disorders, in particular diabetes and obesity, and have poorer disease outcomes. Diabetes is the single largest cause of end-stage renal disease (ESRD). In order to address these multifactorial illnesses, the NIDDK is a proponent of multidisciplinary research, reflecting the bench to bedside application of basic research findings to clinical care. NIDDK has a history of funding large clinical trials and epidemiologic studies which have addressed issues such as disease development and progression (types 1 and 2 diabetes), primary and secondary prevention (type 2 diabetes), and secondary prevention (preserving the health of neonates in mothers with gestational diabetes).

Because treatment of endocrine disorders such as autoimmune and weight-related diabetes is based on individual behavior, the NIDDK has an emphasis on behavioral aspects of disease prevention and management and has funding mechanisms (R18, R34) which emphasize the inclusion of behavior change strategies as primary or secondary treatment of disease prevention and management. Clinical trials, in particular the Diabetes Prevention Program (DPP) and Preventing Type II Diabetes (STOPP-T2D), have had major behavioral components and have helped to establish the clinical superiority of behavior/lifestyle change over pharmacologic intervention in lifestyle-based disease development and treatment (<http://www2.niddk.nih.gov/Research/ScientificAreas/Diabetes/Type2Diabetes/CTT2.htm>). NIDDK also maintains a network of biobehavioral researchers who conduct studies regarding the prevention and early treatment of type 1 diabetes ([\[diabetestrialnet.org/\]\(http://diabetestrialnet.org/\)\) and is dedicated to providing funding to train clinician-scientists across disciplines to carry out this work.](http://www.</p></div><div data-bbox=)

Content areas of current NIDDK-funded behavioral research include hormonal regulation of appetite; associations between inflammation, glycemia, and mood; insulin resistance, exercise, and cognition; psychiatric disorders and risk for diabetes; translation of effective care models to underserved populations; and health-care delivery channels to improve pre-disease risk factors such as obesity in children and adults. Applications for funding behavioral approaches are likely to be assigned to the Division of Diabetes, Endocrinology and Metabolic Diseases (DEM).

Cross-References

► [National Institutes of Health](#)

References and Readings

NIDDK home page. www.niddk.nih.gov/

National Institute of Mental Health

Jennifer Pellowski

Department of Behavioral and Social Sciences,
Brown University School of Public Health,
Providence, RI, USA

Basic Information

The National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH) is a part of the National Institutes of Health (NIH) which focuses on clinical research associated with mental illness and behavioral disorders through biological and behavioral perspectives. It focuses on the prevention, recovery, and cures of mental illness and is the nation's scientific leader in this area.

NIMH was envisioned on July 3, 1946, when President Truman signed the National Mental

Health Act. This act acknowledged the plight of World War II soldiers coming back from war with mental illnesses caused or exacerbated by the environmental stress of war. It also recognized that the incidence rate of mental illness in the general population was higher than originally thought. To address this need for psychiatric care, the National Institute of Mental Health was formally established on April 15, 1949.

Since the beginning, NIMH has been at the forefront of mental health research focusing especially on assessing psychiatric needs of the nation, using cutting-edge technologies to determine when, where, and how mental illness occurs and finding treatments to slow or cure these mental illnesses. It commenced this long history of research in the 1950s and 1960s, starting with the Mental Health Study Act of 1955. The purpose of the Mental Health Study Act was to access the mental health issues affecting the American public as well as what resources were available at that time to treat those suffering from illness. This resulted in the report *Action for Mental Illness* which called for a national program to address individual needs on specific mental health problems.

NIMH continued to make strides during the 1970s and 1980s with its focus on the use of cutting-edge biological techniques, technologies, and treatments to aid in attempts to answer the questions of how, when, and why mental illness happens and how to treat those who are suffering. These aims resulted in the creation of the PET scan to measure brain function as well as the use of lithium, a revolutionary treatment for mania.

A resolution later signed by President George H. W. Bush declared the 1990s “The Decade of the Brain,” and NIMH continued to focus on the advances in imaging technologies as well as the interaction between the brain, behavior, and the environment to gain more knowledge about specific mental health illnesses. Currently, NIMH works to fulfill four objectives: (1) define the mechanisms of complex behaviors; (2) chart mental illness trajectories to determine when, where, and how to intervene; (3) strive for prevention and cures; and (4) strengthen the public health impact of NIMH-supported research.

To fulfill these objectives, NIMH conducts and funds internal and external research studies. With a budget of upward of \$1.5 billion, NIMH provides many grants to independent researchers, as well as contracts through requests for applications (RFAs). It also provides training grants to pre- and postdoctoral students to encourage entry into biomedical and behavior fields of research.

In conjunction with the goals of obtaining new knowledge through research, NIMH also acts to disseminate this newly found knowledge. It accomplishes this through conferences and lectures open to the general public in addition to providing booklets, brochures, and fact sheets. It also supplies curriculum and educational tools to primary and secondary schools to aid in the teaching process.

National Institute of Mental Health
Science Writing, Press, and Dissemination Branch
6001 Executive Boulevard, Room 6200, MSC
9663 Bethesda, MD 20892-9663

Major Impact on the Field

The National Institute of Mental Health is the nation’s scientific leader in research on the causes, treatment, and prevention of mental illness. The NIMH acts to bridge the gap between research and the larger community by providing leadership in the dissemination of information for clinicians, patients, policy makers, and the general public.

Cross-References

- [Depression](#)
- [Dissemination](#)
- [National Institutes of Health](#)
- [Stress, Posttraumatic](#)

References and Further Readings

National Institute of Mental Health. (2009) *A participant’s guide to mental health clinical research*. Bethesda: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

National Institutes of Health. (1999, September). *National Institute of Mental Health: Important events in NIMH history*. Retrieved 16 Feb 2011, from NIH 1999 Almanac <http://www.nih.gov/about/almanac/archive/1999/organization/nimh/history.html>.

National Institutes of Health. (2011, February 11). *About NIMH*. Retrieved 16 Feb 2011, from National Institute of Mental Health <http://www.nimh.nih.gov/about/index.shtml>.

Walls, T. (2008, July 31). *The National Mental Health Act of 1946 and the establishment of NIMH: Ongoing challenges*. Retrieved 16 Feb 2011, from Scattergood Program for the Applied Ethics of Behavioral Health <http://www.scattergoodethics.org/?q=node/1146>.

National Institute of Nursing Research

Barbara Resnick
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Basic Information

The development of NINR has had a major impact on building nursing science as delineated by the many successes and the growing number of doctorally prepared nurses engaged in research. Specifically, NINR has had a great influence on genetics research with a focus on bench to bedside, palliative care and symptom management research, end-of-life research, and research in long-term care.

Major Impact on the Field

The major impact of NINR has been in the development of nurse researchers and nursing science in general.

Cross-References

► [National Institutes of Health](#)

References and Readings

National Institute of Nursing Research. Retrieved from www.ninr.nih.gov. Accessed March 2012.

National Institute of Nursing Research publication: Bringing science to life. Retrieved from http://www.ninr.nih.gov/NR/rdonlyres?BCDD9E7E-C6A5-4578-B5B5-333895F54AA5/0/NINR_History_Book_508.pdf. Accessed March 2012.

National Institute on Aging

Natalie E. Bustillo
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Coral Gables, FL, USA

Basic Information

The National Institute on Aging (NIA) is one of the institutes of the National Institutes of Health (NIH). The mission of the NIA is to conduct research about the aging process, to promote understanding of aging, and to disseminate advances in aging research to the public. The NIA sponsors aging research through the extramural and intramural research programs (National Institute on Aging [NIA] 2009).

The extramural research program consists of aging studies conducted at public and private organizations, such as hospitals and universities. The four extramural research programs supported by the NIA are: Division of Aging Biology, Division of Behavioral and Social Research, Division of Neuroscience, and Division of Geriatrics and Clinical Gerontology. Research conducted by the Division of Aging Biology examines the physiological mechanisms involved in the aging process using humans and animals. Examination of the biological processes involved in aging aid in the understanding of how biochemical changes associated with aging may be risk factors for diseases later in life. The Division of Behavioral and Social Research seeks to understand the aging process at the individual and group level. Emphasis is placed on how individuals change over time and the impact it has on greater society. The Division of

Neuroscience supports research related to increasing the understanding of how the nervous system is impacted by the effects of aging. Alzheimer's disease and other dementias are the main research areas in this division. Research studies supported by the Division of Geriatrics and Clinical Gerontology consist of three main areas, which include Geriatrics, Clinical Gerontology, and Clinical Trials. The focus of this division is to examine age-related health concerns and identify risk factors associated with age-related diseases. The four divisions of the extramural research program offer grants and training opportunities to further enhance the aging research field (NIA 2011).

The intramural research program conducts studies in multiple NIH sites in Maryland. The focus of this research program is to examine the physiological age-related changes that occur throughout the lifespan in order to better understand the physiology of age-related diseases, such as Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, and cancer. In addition to examining the physiology of age-related diseases, the intramural research program also aims to understand the predictors of positive health (NIA 2010).

Major Impact on the Field

The NIA has made many initiatives in the field of behavioral medicine through their ongoing research studies, clinical trials, and published findings.

Clinical Trials

The NIA supports multiple clinical trials examining multiple age-related conditions. The various medical conditions funded by the NIA-funded clinical trials include atherosclerosis, diabetes mellitus, hypercholesterolemia, hypertension, inflammation, menopause, obesity, and osteoporosis. In addition, the NIA funds clinical research relevant to promoting health behavior and managing psychological stress.

For example, the NIA is committed to understanding more about Alzheimer's disease. One of the clinical trials funded by the NIA tested whether Pioglitazone, a drug traditionally used to treat type

2 diabetes, was effective at slowing the progression of Alzheimer's disease (Geldmaher 2009). Similarly, the NIA funded a trial to evaluate the effectiveness of antioxidant treatments for patients diagnosed with Alzheimer's disease (Galasko 2009). Additional clinical trials have been funded by the NIA to assess decision-making abilities of patients diagnosed with Alzheimer's disease and to identify Alzheimer's disease-related brain changes and predictors of memory loss (de Leon 2009; Karlawish 2009).

Publications

The NIA has published various resources available to the public that demonstrate its initiatives in the field of behavioral medicine. Published resources include information about the importance of engaging in positive health behaviors such as eating a healthy diet, quitting smoking, exercising, and sleeping well. The NIA has also published resources for issues related to depression, coping with death, memory loss, and sexuality in adulthood.

Cross-References

► [Aging](#)

References and Readings

- de Leon, M. J. (2009). *PET changes in Alzheimer's disease (AD)*. Retrieved November 28, 2011, from <http://clinicaltrials.gov/show/NCT00094913>
- Galasko, D. (2009). *Anti-oxidant treatment of Alzheimer's disease*. Retrieved November 28, 2011, from <http://clinicaltrials.gov/show/NCT00117403>
- Geldmaher, D. (2009). *Pioglitazone in Alzheimer disease*. Retrieved November 28, 2011, from <http://clinicaltrials.gov/show/NCT00982202>
- Karlawish, J. (2009). *Memory aid for informed consent in Alzheimer's research*. Retrieved November 28, 2011, from <http://clinicaltrials.gov/show/NCT00105612>
- National Institute on Aging. (2009). About NIA. Retrieved November 28, 2011, from <http://www.nia.nih.gov/AboutNIA/>
- National Institute on Aging. (2010). Welcome to the intramural research program. Retrieved November

28, 2011, from <http://www.grc.nia.nih.gov/branches/osd/mission.htm>

National Institute on Aging. (2011). Research programs (extramural). Retrieved November 28, 2011, from <http://www.nia.nih.gov/ResearchInformation/ExtramuralPrograms/>

National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism

Jennifer Pellowski

Department of Behavioral and Social Sciences,
Brown University School of Public Health,
Providence, RI, USA

Basic Information

The National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA) is part of the National Institutes of Health and focuses on research associated with the causes, treatment, and prevention of alcoholism. NIAAA became the leading federal agency to address alcoholism as a public health problem after the passage of the Comprehensive Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism Prevention, Treatment, and Rehabilitation Act of 1970. Also referred to as the Hughes Act of 1970, this legislation established NIAAA as part of the National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH).

Since its conception, NIAAA has been at the forefront of alcohol-related research starting with its investigation of fetal alcohol spectrum disorder (FASD) at a time when many scientists and physicians doubted its existence. In 1977, it held the first national FASD research conference, which highlighted epidemiological and clinical research and led to the issue of the first FASD government health advisory. Since then, their research has expanded to include the genetics of alcoholism, benefits of alcohol consumption, neurological examinations of the impact of alcohol, and improving health care and treatment of those that suffer from alcohol abuse and alcoholism as well as other topics.

It conducts and funds internal and external research studies. NIAAA focuses on

multidisciplinary efforts including epigenetics, neuroscience, public health, epidemiology, genetics, and public policy. It also acts to relay information to clinicians, patients, policymakers, and the general public in an accessible manner. Notable projects include Project MATCH and Project COMBINE, which have developed new ways of approaching treatment and therapy for those suffering from alcoholism. Additional studies have also identified targeted populations, specifically pregnant women and youth, and subsequently focused research efforts to highlight specific needs of these populations to increase prevention. In addition to internal research, NIAAA also provides financial and other forms of support to researchers through requests for applications (RFAs) and program announcements (PAs) as well as through other small grants.

In conjunction with the goal of conducting and supporting research, the NIAAA also works to disseminate this newly found information including providing information to the general public through pamphlets and brochures as well as educational training programs. NIAAA also sponsors several public health programs that range in topics and targeted populations from pregnant women to youth and young adults.

National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism

5635 Fishers Lane, MSC 9304

Bethesda, MD 20892-9304

URL: <http://www.niaaa.nih.gov>

Major Impact on the Field

The National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism is the largest funder of research concerning alcoholism and alcohol-related problems in the United States. It is a keystone of alcohol abuse and alcoholism research and provides leadership in the dissemination of information for clinicians, patients, and the general public. The NIAAA acts to bridge the gap between research and the community at large through educational programs and changes in public policy.

Cross-References

- [Alcohol Abuse and Dependence](#)
- [Alcohol Consumption](#)
- [Binge Drinking](#)
- [National Institutes of Health](#)

References and Further Readings

- National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism. (2011). *About NIAAA*. Retrieved 14 Feb 2011, from National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism: <http://www.niaaa.nih.gov/AboutNIAAA/Pages/default.aspx>.
- National Institutes of Health Office of the Director. (1998). *National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism: Important events in NIAAA history*. Retrieved 14 Feb 2011, from NIH Almanac 1998: <http://www.nih.gov/about/almanac/archive/1998/organization/niaaa/history.html>.
- Thomas, J. D., Warren, K. R., & Hewitt, B. G. (2010). Fetal alcohol spectrum disorders: From research to policy. *Alcohol Research and Health*, 33, 118–126.
- Warren, K. R., & Hewitt, B. G. (2010). NIAAA: Advancing alcohol research for 40 years. *Alcohol Research and Health*, 33, 5–17.

function of the OD is to “plan, manage, and coordinate” the specific policies and procedures laid out for these institutes (United States Department of Health and Human Services 2010a). The policies and procedures are developed and implemented through extensive collaboration and input from the OD and NIH staff. Other sources of information include the extramural scientific community, patient advocacy and volunteer organizations, Congress, and the Director’s Council of Public Representatives, a federal committee made up of members of the general public. The current director of the NIH is Francis S. Collins. Dr. Collins’ job is to efficiently and effectively integrate the information from his advisors and provide direction for specific “Areas of Research Emphasis,” the future goals and directions that the NIH identifies as beneficial to science and society. Themes that are to be addressed in the coming years include translational medicine, health-care reform, global health, and empowering and energizing the research community (United States Department of Health and Human Services 2010a).

National Institutes of Health

Vaughn Bryant¹ and Anne Frankel²

¹Behavioral and Social Sciences, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA

²Robert Stempel College of Public Health and Social Work, Florida International University, Miami, FL, USA

Basic Information

Overview

The National Institutes of Health (NIH) is an agency of the United States Department of Health and Human Services. It consists of the Office of the Director (OD) and 27 institutes and centers which make up the largest source of medical and scientific funding in the world (United States Department of Health and Human Services & National Institutes of Health 2010). The main

Application Process

Sustained funding is a necessary component for advancing science. In order to facilitate innovative projects that support scientific progress, the NIH funds grants, cooperative agreements, and contracts (United States Department of Health and Human Services 2010b). The NIH lists several key factors in being awarded funding: (1) the project must be of high scientific caliber, (2) it must be investigator-initiated, and (3) the research must be unique and innovative. In order to provide guidance for funding opportunities, NIH notifies researchers of the availability of funds through Funding Opportunity Announcements (FOAs), which are posted in the NIH Guide for Grants and Contracts and on Grants.gov. Other sources of funding information include Parent Announcements, Program Announcements (PAs), and Requests for Applications (RFAs). The NIH also supports research centers and intramural research (United States Department of Health and Human Services 2010b; United States Department of

Health and Human Services & National Institutes of Health: Office of Extramural Research 2009).

Funding opportunities exist for a variety of research structures, including individuals, domestic institutions, and foreign institutions. Further, the NIH seeks to fund investigators at various points in their scientific careers. For example, special programs and announcements have been created targeting young and early stage investigators in order to help this population establish their career and ultimately flourish in the realm of scientific research. More senior investigators may choose to be mentors for early stage investigators and directors of projects or institutes (United States Department of Health and Human Services 2010b).

Historically, it has been considered difficult to be awarded an NIH grant. However, competition is critical for improving the level of applications and ultimately the caliber of scholarly research. In order to determine which grants are awarded funding, applications typically go through a rigorous process known as peer review. The peer review process involves multiple readings of each application by credentialed peers in the relevant field and helps to establish the quality of the grants funded. The NIH lists five major review criteria looked at by reviewers when examining and scoring applications: the significance of the project; investigator background; level of innovation, approach, and methodology; proposed environment for the study; and probability of success (United States Department of Health and Human Services & National Institutes of Health: Office of Extramural Research 2011). Before reviewers meet, they give each application a preliminary score on a scale from 1 (exceptional) to 9 (poor). Applications which receive a score above a predetermined threshold score progress to a full committee meeting. At this meeting, reviewers discuss the strengths and weaknesses of each application and create an impact/priority score, which determines the percentile ranking that will organize applications for possible funding. Program officers then determine how review scores are translated into funding for a certain number of applications. Often, applications are submitted

twice: if an initial application is not granted review, comments are provided to the applicant, and they are encouraged to submit an amendment. Grants are reviewed both by the center for the scientific review and the institutes themselves for special initiatives. Special review processes only allow for one submission (United States Department of Health and Human Services & National Institutes of Health: Office of Extramural Research 2011).

Funding Success

Funding success is an important measure of the level of competition. Success rates are reported as the percentage of reviewed grant applications that receive funding, which is determined by dividing the number of competing applications funded by the sum of the total number of competing applications reviewed and the number of funded carry-overs (United States Department of Health and Human Service & National Institutes of Health 2009). Success rates are computed on a fiscal year basis and include applications that are peer-reviewed and either scored or unscored by an Initial Review Group. Applications that have one or more amendments in the same fiscal year are only counted once. Funding success rates are typically between 10% and 20% (United States Department of Health and Human Services & National Institutes of Health: Office of Extramural Research 2011; United States Department of Health and Human Service & National Institutes of Health 2009; United States Department of Health and Human Services 2010c). In 2010, there was an overall success rate of approximately one in five grants, which accounts for both new investigators and established investigators, who may be more likely to get funding based on past awarded grants. Thus, this measure may not be representative of the level of competition for new or less established investigators. After peer review, successful grantees go through the award process in which the grantee is notified of an award and assigned a program officer who manages the distribution and monitoring of the award. Grant awards can range from a few thousand to tens of millions of dollars and depend on

numerous factors including the type of grant (known at NIH as the “grant mechanism”), the institution, the structure of the proposal (individual vs. center), the period of time that the award is assigned, and many more. The oldest and most common mechanism applied for is the R01, which cannot exceed \$250,000 annually in direct costs, unless a special request is made (United States Department of Health and Human Services & National Institutes of Health 2010). Other common grant types are K mechanisms, which represent training grants, fellowships, and early stage investigator-initiated research; U mechanisms, which are cooperative agreements; and R21 exploratory grants.

Funding and Scientific Accomplishments

Funding of the NIH has been integral to the progression of innovative scientific discovery. President Obama recently released his 2012 budget proposal, in which he requested a 745 million dollar increase to the NIH budget. When added to the existing budget, the total request for the NIH is 32 billion dollars. Considering the 3.5% rate of inflation, the proposed amount is roughly equivalent to flat funding (Brown 2011).

The latest scientific accomplishments of NIH-funded projects were highlighted in a recent status report (United States Department of Health and Human Services 2011). Many of these accomplishments have been in the area of HIV/AIDS, with the development of antiretrovirals (ARVs) to treat the disease as one of the most notable. One large-scale study involved an ARV microbicide for women and found a 50% protection rate against HIV transmission. Future research focuses for the NIH in the field of HIV/AIDS will be on vaccine development and efficacy.

Advances in technology are key to NIH’s research success. For example, because of NIH-sponsored research, high-resolution imaging is becoming a critical part of studying disease and disease progression. Findings of a study conducted by the National Lung Society suggest that low-dose CT screening can decrease lung-cancer deaths by 20% among heavy smokers. Another technological innovation becoming increasingly important in the treatment of disease

is stem cells. Researchers recently found that mouse embryonic and induced pluripotent stem cells can be used to generate new hair cells, which has implications for hearing loss and deafness in humans. Finally, influenza vaccines have been improved to protect against multiple strains of the virus, which has helped science progress toward the goal of eradicating the virus worldwide.

Future Changes and Directions

There are many areas in the health sciences that are under-researched, including pain control, drug delivery, vaccines, medical informatics, and more that may lead to future initiatives and structural changes. The NIH is currently developing translational research initiatives by creating a clinical and translational research institute, which would help facilitate the process of translating clinical findings to practical applications such as drug development and other health improvements. Another example of a structural change to the NIH is the recent vote by the Scientific Management Review Board to merge the National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA) and the National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism (NIAAA) (Mcmanus 2010). These proposals indicate that the NIH is responsive to changes in science and attempts to accommodate these changes through reorganization and constant refinement both at the structural level and the scientific level.

Major Impact on the Field

The NIH is the largest source of funding for medical research in the world. Major contributions to various scientific fields linked directly to NIH funding cannot be understated. For example, the increase in lifespan in the United States from 47 to 78 between 1900 and 2009 has been attributed to the long history of NIH funding (United States Department of Health and Human Services & National Institutes of Health 2010). Diseases such as smallpox, measles, polio, and chronic conditions such as diabetes and cancer, which were once death sentences, are now eradicated,

curable, preventable, or treatable. In fact, rates of cancer diagnoses and cancer-related deaths have seen significant drops in recent years (United States Department of Health and Human Services 2008). The field of mental health has seen advances, including the development of more effective antidepressants as well as improvements in the overall treatment for mental health and substance use disorders. The Human Genome Project, an ambitious campaign that began in 1990 and involved researchers from all over the world dedicated to decoding the mysteries of the human genetic code, resulted in the sequencing of the human genome in 2003. This enormous effort has given researchers unique insight into more than 1,800 disease genes and has played an invaluable role in the development of genetic tests (United States Department of Health and Human Services & National Institutes of Health 2011). Prevention research has made immense strides due to NIH funding and has resulted in a better understanding of measures that can be taken to reduce the risk of heart disease, stroke, dementia, and many other adverse health conditions.

More than 80 Nobel Prizes have been presented to NIH-funded projects. However, scientific advances resulting from NIH-supported projects extend well beyond the ones receiving special recognition, and often the true impact of such projects cannot be gauged until long after their completion. Additionally, despite major cuts to NIH funding, the latest advances in comparative effectiveness research offer a better understanding of how to best utilize and distribute funds to maximize the long-term impact that projects will be able to have in their respective fields. Each day, NIH-funded projects address the challenges of a changing health climate facing chronic disease, the resurgence of old diseases, and emergence of new, and progress toward a healthier society both across the United States and worldwide.

Cross-References

- [National Cancer Institute](#)
- [National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases](#)

References and Readings

- Brown, D. (2011). *Budget 2012 and CDC* [Updated February 14, 2011; cited April 25, 2011]. Available from <http://voices.washingtonpost.com/44/2011/02/budget-2012-nih-and-cdc.html>
- Mcmanus, R. (2010). Board recommends merger of NIDA, NIAAA. *NIH Record*, 62(20). [Updated October 1, 2010; cited April 22, 2011]. Available from http://nihrecord.od.nih.gov/newsletters/2010/10_01_2010/story1.htm.
- NIH home page. www.nih.gov/.
- United States Department of Health and Human Service & National Institutes of Health. (2009). *NIH success rate definition*. Bethesda [Updated February, 2009 cited April 27, 2011]. Available from: http://report.nih.gov/UploadDocs/NIH_Success_Rate_Definition.pdf
- United States Department of Health and Human Services. (2010a). *Office of the director, major components*. Bethesda: National Institutes of Health. [Updated October 26, 2010; cited February 26, 2011]. Available from <http://www.nih.gov/icd/od/offices.htm>.
- United States Department of Health and Human Services. (2010b). *Grant application basics*. Bethesda: National Institutes of Health. [Updated Nov 16, 2010; Cited Feb 26, 2011]. Available from http://grants.nih.gov/grants/grant_basics.htm.
- United States Department of Health and Human Services. (2010c). *National Institutes of Health: Research portfolio online reporting tools*. Bethesda. [Updated December 14, 2010; cited April 28, 2011]. Available from http://report.nih.gov/award/success/Success_ByIC.cfm.
- United States Department of Health and Human Services. (2011). *National Institutes of Health overview by institute* [Cited April 25, 2011]. Available from <http://officeofbudget.od.nih.gov/pdfs/FY12/COPY%20of%20NIH%20BIB%20Chapter%202-9-11-%20FINAL.PDF>
- United States Department of Health and Human Services & National Institutes of Health. (2010a). *About the National Institutes of Health*. Bethesda [Updated October 27, 2010; cited February 26, 2011]. Available from <http://www.nih.gov/about>
- United States Department of Health and Human Services & National Institutes of Health. (2010b). *Types of grant programs* [Updated February 18, 2010; cited April 28, 2011]. Available from http://grants.nih.gov/grants/funding/funding_program.htm
- United States Department of Health and Human Services & National Institutes of Health. (2011). *NIH fact sheets: Human genome project* [Cited 2011 August 24]. Available from <http://report.nih.gov/NIHfactsheets/ViewFactSheet.aspx?csid=45>
- United States Department of Health and Human Services & National Institutes of Health: Office of Extramural Research. (2009). *Description of the NIH guide for grants and contracts*. Bethesda [Updated 2009 June 26; cited 2011 April 25]. Available from <http://grants.nih.gov/grants/guide/description.htm>

United States Department of Health and Human Services & National Institutes of Health: Office of Extramural Research. (2011). *Peer review process*. Bethesda [Updated April 14, 2011, cited April 25, 2011]. Available from http://grants.nih.gov/grants/peer_review_process.htm

United States Department of Health and Human Services, National Institutes of Health, & National Cancer Institute. (2008). *NCI Cancer bulletin*, 5(8) [Updated December 2, 2008; cited August 20, 2011]. Available from <http://www.cancer.gov/aboutnci/ncicancerbulletin/archive/2008/120208/page10>

Wadman, M., (2010, August 12). One year at the helm. *Nature*, 466 [Cited February 26, 2011]. Available from http://www.nih.gov/about/director/articles/nature_08122010.pdf

National Occupational Classification

► Job Classification

National Statistics Socioeconomic Classification

► Job Classification

Natural Killer Cell Activity

Riyad Khanfer
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The
University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Definition

Natural killer (NK) cells form an important arm of the innate immune system (nonspecific immunity). They develop in the bone marrow and circulate in the blood. They are called NK cells because they are always active naturally and can kill before they encounter any antigens. They

have important roles in eliminating virally infected cells without having specificity against any particular viruses and act as early component of the host response to viral infections. NK cells also play role in fighting cancer cells in the body. NK cells are considered part of the group of lymphocytes; however, they have neither antigen receptor nor antibody receptor, and they are larger in size than T and B lymphocytes.

Upon NK cells activation, they produce cytotoxic granules which contain many molecules like perforins, TNF- α , lymphotoxin- β , INF- α , and many granzymes. NK cells kill virally infected cells by secreting these cytotoxic granules after recognizing the infected cells by lacking MHC (major histocompatibility complex) class I molecule, which is not present in the virally infected cells. Also, these granules contain other molecules like TNF (tumor necrosis factor) which can activate apoptosis through death domain of TNF receptor of the target cell; also, NK cells kill by apoptosis via Fas ligand – Fas receptor mechanism upon engagement of the NK cell receptor with the target cell receptor.

NK cells have a mechanism of checking cells by detecting the amount of MHC I protein on the cell surface; cells which express enough amount of MHC I will escape the killing by NK cells, and cells with reduced amount of MHC I will be targeted and killed by NK cells via programmed cell death after targeted by the cytotoxic granules. NK cells can be activated in response to interferons and macrophage-derived cytotoxins.

NK cells secrete cytokines such as interferon γ and interleukin 12 which help in CD4 T lymphocytes differentiation. NK cells are among the first to encounter cancer cells of the innate immunity components, and they secrete interferon γ which recruit other component of the immune system.

To control their cytotoxic activities, NK cells have two types of receptors on their surface: the first set are activating receptors that induce killing by NK cells and called KAR (killer activating receptors), while the second set of receptors are inhibitory which inhibit NK cells activation and therefore prevent killing of the normal host cells (killer inhibitory receptors KIR), and the KIRs are specific for MHC class I molecule.

Also, NK cells kill cancer cells as well as viral-infected cells by detecting an important specific protein expressed often at the surface of these cells as a result of cellular physiological stresses, such as postneoplastic transformation or viral infection. NK cells express complementary cell surface receptor for the above stress proteins which strongly activate NK cells and the production of the NK cell cytotoxic granules.

<i>Summary: Specific features of NK cells function and killing</i>
Part of innate immunity
Kill cancer and virus-infected cells
Killing without specificity
Have two types of receptors: KAR to kill and KIR to avoid killing
Secrete some cytokines like IL12 and IF- γ
Produce cytotoxic molecules to kill target cells by apoptosis
Screen target cells by lack of MHC I expression
Recognize stress proteins on physiologically stressed cells

Cross-References

- Immune Function
- Macrophages

References and Further Reading

Delves, P. J., Martin, S. J., Burton, D. R., & Roitt, I. M. (2006). *Roitt's essential immunology* (11th ed.). Malden: Blackwell.

Janeway, C. A., Travers, P., Walport, M., & Shlomchik, M. J. (2005). *Immunobiology* (6th ed.). New York: London Garland Science.

Levinson, W. (2006). *Review of medical microbiology and immunology* (9th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

Weinberg, R. (2007). *The biology of cancer*. New York: Garland Science.

NCS

- National Children's Study

Needle Exchange Programs

Hansel Tookes
Department of Epidemiology and Public Health,
Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

NEPs; SEPs; Syringe exchange programs

Definition

In 2006, injection drug users (IDUs) accounted for 12% of the 56,300 new human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infections in the USA (Hall et al. 2008). In 2007, 15% of the 43,000 new hepatitis B virus (HBV) infections and 44% of the 17,000 new hepatitis C virus (HCV) infections in the USA were among IDUs (Guardino et al. 2010). IDUs are susceptible to infection via sharing injection equipment and high-risk sexual behavior. While the National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA) recommends use of a new, sterile syringe each injection, many IDUs contract these viral infections through the sharing of contaminated syringes. In response to these viral epidemics, syringe exchange programs (SEPs) have been implemented in many countries including the United States (USA) (Mathers et al. 2010). These programs allow IDUs to exchange contaminated syringes for sterile syringes, with the goal of reducing the likelihood of IDUs' sharing used syringes.

The first SEPs in the USA opened in the late 1980s in Tacoma, Washington, followed shortly by programs in San Francisco, California; Portland, Oregon; and New York, New York (Hagan et al. 1991). The North American Syringe Exchange Network (NASEN) estimates that there are currently 184 SEPs operating in the USA (Guardino et al. 2010). In December of 2009, President Barack Obama signed a bill authorizing the use of federal dollars for SEPs. This signing marked the end of a 21-year-long Congressional

ban on SEPs instituted in 1988 at the height of the AIDS epidemic (Kerlikowske and Crowley 2010).

A 1997 Report to Congress by the then Secretary of Health and Human Services Donna Shalala established SEPs as an effective component of a comprehensive strategy to prevent HIV and other blood-borne infectious diseases (Shalala 1997). Many studies have shown that SEPs help to reduce the sharing of syringes among IDUs, and IDUs have reported no increased unsafe disposal in areas where SEPs were providing more syringe coverage (Bluthenthal et al. 2007; Neaigus et al. 2008; Watters et al. 1994). Further, SEPs provide a range of preventive care services. Most SEPs services include HIV/AIDS counseling and testing, HCV counseling and testing, condom distribution, referral to substance abuse treatment, alcohol swabs, and safe-injection education. Additional services are often available including primary medical care, tuberculosis screening, and comprehensive hepatitis screening services including HAV and HBV vaccination (Guardino et al. 2010).

SEPs help refer IDUs to treatment and do not encourage drug use among IDUs or recruit new users (Vlahov and Junge 1998). SEPs also help IDUs use sterile syringes and share less, reducing risk of blood-borne illness (Des Jarlais et al. 1994; Heimer et al. 1998). HIV incidence among IDUs has decreased by 80% from before SEPs (1988–1990) to their maximum coverage (2003–2006) (Hall et al. 2008). These data are of high public health significance because in 2010, the Departments of State and Health and Human Services have issued policy guidance for US and global partners in the President's Emergency Plan for AIDS Relief (PEPFAR) in the implementation of SEPs, but SEP coverage has yet to increase domestically. Despite the evidence, IDUs have limited coverage with SEPs offered in only 36 states, the District of Colombia, and Puerto Rico (Guardino et al. 2010). However, in 2011, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention will issue guidance on SEPs to all US Health Departments, which will include recommendations relevant to syringe exchange programs.

Cross-References

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
- HIV Infection
- HIV Prevention

References and Readings

- Bluthenthal, R. N., Anderson, R., Flynn, N. M., & Kral, A. H. (2007). Higher syringe coverage is associated with lower odds of HIV risk and does not increase unsafe disposal among syringe exchange program clients. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, 89(2–3), 214–222.
- Daniels, D., Grytdal, S., & Wasley, A. (2009). Surveillance for acute viral hepatitis—United States, 2007. *MMWR*, 58(SS-3), 1.
- Des Jarlais, D. C., Freidman, S. R., Sottheran, J. L., Weston, J., Marmor, M., Yancovitz, S. R., et al. (1994). Continuity and change within an HIV epidemic: Injection drug users in New York City, 1984–1992. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 271, 121–127.
- Guardino, V., Des Jarlais, D. C., Arasteh, K., Johnston, R., Purchase, D., Solberg, A., Lansky, A., & Lentine, D. (2010). Syringe exchange programs – United States, 2008. *MMWR*, 59, 1488–1491. Accessed 12 Aug 2010 from <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm5945a4.htm>.
- Hagan, H., Des Jarlais, D. C., Purchase, D., Reid, T., & Friedman, S. R. (1991). The Tacoma syringe exchange. *Journal of Addictive Diseases*, 10(4), 81–88.
- Hall, H. I., Song, R., Rhodes, P., et al. (2008). Estimation of HIV Incidence in the United States. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 300, 520–529.
- Heimer, R., Khoshnood, K., Bigg, D., Guydish, J., & Junge, B. (1998). Syringe use and reuse: Effect of needle exchange programs in three cities. *JAIDS*, 18 (Suppl. 1), AS37–AS44.
- Kerlikowske, G., & Crowley, J. S. (2010). *Expanding access to evidence-based services for injection drug users*. Accessed 26 July 2010 from www.Whitehouse.gov (Posted 7.16.10).
- Mathers, B. M., Degenhardt, L., Ali, H., Wiessing, L., Hickman, M., Matick, R. P., et al. (2010). HIV prevention, treatment and care services for people who inject drugs: A systematic review of global, regional and national coverage. *Lancet*, 375(9719), 1014–1028.
- Neaigus, A., Zhao, M., Gyarmathy, V. A., Cisek, L., Friedman, S. R., & Baxter, R. C. (2008). Greater drug injecting risk for HIV, HBV and HCV infection in a city where syringe exchange and pharmacy syringe distribution are illegal. *Journal of Urban Health*, 85(3), 309–322.
- Shalala, D. E. (1997, February 18). *Needle exchange programs in America: Review of published studies and*

- ongoing research. Report to the Committee on Appropriations for the Departments of Labor, Health and Human Services, Education and Related Agencies.
- Vlahov, D., & Junge, B. (1998). The role of needle exchange programs in HIV prevention. *Public Health Reports*, 113(Suppl. 1), 75–80.
- Watters, J. K., Estilo, M. J., Cark, G. L., & Lorrwick, J. (1994). Syringe and needle exchange as HIV/AIDS prevention for injection drug users. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 271(2), 115–120.

Negative Affect

Deborah M. Stringer
Department of Psychology, University of Iowa,
Iowa City, IA, USA

Synonyms

Emotional distress; Negative emotion

Definition

Negative affect is a broad concept that can be summarized as feelings of emotional distress (Watson et al. 1988); more specifically, it is a construct that is defined by the common variance between anxiety, sadness, fear, anger, guilt and shame, irritability, and other unpleasant emotions. A variety of converging evidence suggests that negative affect is largely statistically independent from positive affect (e.g., Watson 1988), but it is also clear that there exists a dimension called pleasantness-unpleasantness that has relations to both negative and positive mood terms (e.g., happiness and sadness). Some workers (e.g., Russell and Carroll 1999) take the existence of the bipolar pleasantness-unpleasantness factor as evidence that negative affect and positive affect form a single dimension.

Negative affect and the dispositional tendency toward negative affect (called neuroticism, negative affectivity, or negative emotionality) are a large component of many forms of psychopathology including mood disorders, anxiety disorders, and personality disorders. Negative affect has also been associated with such important areas in behavioral medicine as coping with illness or

caregiving, blood pressure and heart rate, perceived stress, drinking motives, tobacco smoking, drug use, disordered eating, self-reported sleep quality, and cardiovascular disease.

Cross-References

- Negative Affectivity
- Negative Thoughts
- Neuroticism
- Positive Affect
- Positive Affect Negative Affect Scale (PANAS)
- Stress

References and Readings

- Russell, J. A., & Carroll, J. M. (1999). On the bipolarity of positive and negative affect. *Psychological Bulletin*, 125, 3–30. <https://doi.org/10.1037//0033-2909.125.1.3>.
- Watson, D. (1988). The vicissitudes of mood measurement: Effects of varying descriptors, time frames, and response formats on measures of positive and negative affect. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 55, 128–141. <https://doi.org/10.1037//0022-3514.55.1.128>.
- Watson, D., Clark, L. A., & Tellegen, A. (1988). Development and validation of brief measures of positive and negative affect: The PANAS scales. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 54, 1063–1070. <https://doi.org/10.1037//0022-3514.54.6.1063>.

Negative Affectivity

Johan Denollet
CoRPS – Center of Research on Psychology in
Somatic diseases, Tilburg University, Tilburg,
The Netherlands

Synonyms

Neuroticism

Definition

Negative affectivity (NA) is a broad personality trait that refers to *the stable tendency to*

experience negative emotions (Watson and Clark 1984). Individuals who are high in NA are more likely to report negative affective mood states across time and regardless of the situation. They also report more somatic symptoms and have an attention bias toward adverse stimuli or potentially threatening situations (Watson and Pennebaker 1989).

NA is closely related to *neuroticism* (Costa and McCrae 1987) as one of the broad trait domains in the Five Factor Model of personality. Because NA is centrally defined by the tendency to experience negative affect (Watson and Pennebaker 1989), the label NA is used here to designate dysphoric individual differences that are relatively stable over time. From a cognitive point of view, individuals who are high in NA may take a gloomy view of things and are inclined to be worrying. From an affective point of view, symptoms of depressed mood are often accompanied by other negative emotions like anxiety and anger (Watson and Clark 1984).

There are a number of reasons why it is important to account for individual differences in NA in clinical research and practice. First, *psychological risk factors tend to cluster together within individuals*; clustering of these factors, in turn, elevates the risk for adverse outcomes. NA is a personality trait that predisposes to clustering of negative emotions as a psychological risk factor (Denollet 2005; Suls and Bunde 2005). Second, individuals who are high in NA may *scan the world for signs of impending trouble* and seem to focus their attention on adverse stimuli (Watson and Pennebaker 1989). This may explain why NA or neuroticism has been associated with more reactivity to stressful events and with more negative appraisals of interpersonal stressors. Third, NA may be related to *difficulties in coping with life stress* (Depue and Monroe 1986) and is associated with an increased risk of affective disorder (Watson, Clark, & Harkness, 1994) and symptoms of both emotional and somatic distress (Watson and Pennebaker 1989).

Some have argued that neuroticism or NA is associated with complaints of chest pain but not actual heart disease (Costa and McCrae 1987).

However, one should not overlook potential associations between NA and *decrements in physical health*. There is a substantial overlap among the various negative affective dispositions (anger, anxiety, and depression) that have been associated with an increased risk of cardiovascular disease. This suggests that a general disposition toward negative emotions – the core of NA – may be important as a potential determinant of adverse health outcomes (Denollet 2005; Suls and Bunde 2005).

Broad and stable personality traits such as NA may carry with them much potential for scientific and clinical purposes. NA taps into chronic attributes of individuals and has many referent attributes and therefore has much predictive and explanatory power. NA can be reliably *assessed with the 7-item NA measure of the DS14* (Denollet 2005), a scale that was specifically designed to assess this stable tendency to experience negative emotions.

Cross-References

- Neuroticism
- Type D Personality

References and Readings

- Costa, P. T., & McCrae, R. R. (1987). Neuroticism, somatic complaints, and disease: Is the bark worse than the bite? *Journal of Personality*, 55, 299–316.
- Denollet, J. (1991). Negative affectivity and repressive coping: Pervasive influence on self-reported mood, health, and coronary-prone behavior. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 53, 538–556.
- Denollet, J. (2005). DS14: Standard assessment of negative affectivity, social inhibition, and type D personality. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 67, 89–97.
- Depue, R. A., & Monroe, S. M. (1986). Conceptualization and measurement of human disorder in life stress research: The problem of chronic disturbance. *Psychological Bulletin*, 99, 36–51.
- Suls, J., & Bunde, J. (2005). Anger, anxiety, and depression as risk factors for cardiovascular disease: The problems and implications of overlapping affective dispositions. *Psychological Bulletin*, 131, 260–300.
- Watson, D., & Clark, L. A. (1984). Negative affectivity: The disposition to experience aversive emotional states. *Psychological Bulletin*, 96, 465–490.

Watson, D., Clark, L. A., & Harkness, A. R. (1994). Structures of personality and their relevance to psychopathology. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology, 103*, 18–31.

Watson, D., & Pennebaker, J. W. (1989). Health complaints, stress, and distress: Exploring the central role of negative affectivity. *Psychological Review, 96*, 234–254.

Negative Cognitions

► [Negative Thoughts](#)

Negative Emotion

► [Negative Affect](#)

Negative Emotionality

► [Neuroticism](#)

Negative Relationship

► [Inverse Relationship](#)

Negative Religious Coping

► [Religious Coping](#)

Negative Social Interaction

► [Social Conflict](#)

Negative Thoughts

Alan Kessedjian

Clinical Psychologist, Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Anger](#); [Anxiety](#); [Avoidance](#); [Catastrophizing/Catastrophic thinking](#); [Depression](#); [Hostility](#); [Loneliness](#); [Negative affect](#); [Negative cognitions](#); [Neuroticism](#); [Perceived stress](#); [Pessimism](#); [Rumination](#); [Worry](#)

Definition

Negative thoughts are cognitions about the self, others, or the world in general that are characterized by negative perceptions, expectations, and attributions and are associated with unpleasant emotions and adverse behavioral, physiological, and health outcomes.

Negative thoughts are cognitive components of negative psychosocial variables such as depressive symptoms, anxiety, loneliness, and hostility. Depressive cognitions, for instance, include thoughts of hopelessness, helplessness, and diminished self-worth. Anxiety is a negative affective state or trait that is accompanied and perpetuated by worry and rumination. Loneliness is a negative state or trait that is characterized by perceptions of social threat, negative expectations in social interactions, and lower self-esteem. Hostility is characterized by derogation of others and thoughts of aggression and revenge. Negative thoughts are often intrusive and unwanted and require effort to suppress.

Negative thoughts are assumed to play a major role, together with related negative emotions, in the associations of negative psychosocial variables with poorer health behaviors, greater physiological reactivity, poorer health, and higher rates of mortality. Negative thoughts tend to co-occur with each other, and their combined contributions may exceed those of any particular negative thought. Alternatively, specific negative thoughts

may exert unique effects on health-related outcomes. The effects of loneliness on systolic blood pressure, for example, are independent of the effects of negative thoughts related to perceived stress, depressive symptoms, poor social support, and hostility (Hawkey et al. 2010). On the other hand, worrying and pessimism tend to be correlated, and each has shown a positive prospective association with risk for coronary heart disease (Kubzansky et al. 1997; Kubzansky et al. 2001), but it is not known whether the effects of worrying and pessimism on disease risk are independent of each other or confounded with each other. Mechanistic models of health risk employ negative thoughts as precursors to behaviors that have health consequences. For instance, low self-esteem has been shown to prospectively predict health problems through its effect on the quality of social bonds (Stinson et al. 2008).

Neuroticism is a personality trait that is defined as a propensity for negative thoughts and experiences of many kinds and has been associated with mortality (Shipley et al. 2007). Because neuroticism is associated with a variety of specific negative thoughts, studies sometimes employ neuroticism as a covariate to determine the extent to which health effects are attributable to a specific negative psychosocial variable or negative thought as opposed to negativity more generally.

Cross-References

- [Happiness and Health](#)
- [Psychological Factors](#)
- [Psychosocial Predictors](#)
- [Psychosocial Variables](#)
- [Unipolar Depression](#)

References and Further Reading

- Hawkey, L. C., Thisted, R. A., Masi, C. M., & Cacioppo, J. T. (2010). Loneliness predicts increased blood pressure: Five-year cross-lagged analyses in middle-aged and older adults. *Psychology and Aging*, 25, 132–141.
- Kubzansky, L. D., Kawachi, I., Spiro, A., III, Weiss, S. T., Vokonas, P. S., & Sparrow, D. (1997). Is worrying bad for your heart? A prospective study of worry and

coronary heart disease in the normative aging study. *Circulation*, 95, 818–824.

- Kubzansky, L. D., Sparrow, D., Vokonas, P., & Kawachi, I. (2001). Is the glass half empty or half full? A prospective study of optimism and coronary heart disease in the normative aging study. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 63, 910–916.
- Shipley, B. A., Weiss, A., Der, G., Taylor, M. D., & Deary, I. J. (2007). Neuroticism, extraversion, and mortality in the UK health and lifestyle survey: A 21-year prospective cohort study. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 69, 923–931.
- Stinson, D. A., Logel, C., Zanna, M. P., Holmes, J. G., Cameron, J. J., Wood, J. V., et al. (2008). The cost of lower self-esteem: Testing a self- and social-bonds model of health. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 94, 412–428.

Neonatal Mortality

- [Infant Mortality](#)

Neoplasm of the Prostate

- [Cancer, Prostate](#)

NEPs

- [Needle Exchange Programs](#)

Nerve Cell

- [Neuron](#)

Nerve Damage

- [Diabetic Neuropathy](#)

Nested Case-Control Study

- [Nested Study](#)

Nested Study

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Nested case-control study](#)

Definition

A nested case-control study is one that is “nested” within a cohort study.

In many cohort studies, all subjects provide a wide range of information at the time of recruitment, e.g., results from a physical examination, answers to multiple questionnaires, blood and urine samples, and results from imaging techniques. Because of the large numbers of subjects in these studies and the cost of analyzing some biological samples, some of these resources are often not analyzed in detail at the time of collection, but are stored for future use. The nested case-control study is performed using subjects who develop the disease of interest in due course, and control subjects who are selected from those who were disease-free at the time the case subjects (those who developed the disease) were diagnosed.

The appropriate data sets and samples are then retrieved and analyzed for these two subsets (cases and controls) of the original cohort recruited into the study. This approach maintains the major advantage of a cohort study in that the exposure data were collected before the development of the disease in the case subjects, while requiring the analysis (and associated costs) for only those who become entered into the nested case-control study (Webb et al. [2005](#)).

Cross-References

- [Case-Control Studies](#)
- [Cohort Study](#)

References and Further Readings

Webb, P., Bain, C., & Pirozzo, S. (2005). *Essential epidemiology: An introduction for students and health professionals*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Net Generation

- [Digital Native](#)

Neural

- [Neurological](#)

NeuroAIDS

- [HIV-Associated Neurocognitive Disorder](#)

Neurobehavioral Assessment

- [Neuropsychology](#)

Neurocognitive Assessment

- [Neuropsychology](#)

Neuroendocrine Activation

Wiebke Arlt¹ and Ana Vitlic²

¹Institute of Metabolism and Systems Research,
The University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

²University of Huddersfield, Huddersfield, UK

Synonyms

[Flight-or-fight response](#); [Stress cascade](#); [Stress response](#)

Definition

Neuroendocrine activation is activation of both neuronal and endocrine pathways in situations when either internal or external factors act in a way that disturbs the body's homeostasis.

Description

From its very origin, life has been exposed to a highly dynamic environment. In order to survive, everything, from the simple primordial ribonucleic acid (RNA) molecules to the highly structured organisms that exist in the present world, had to learn how to fight these changes and eventually benefit from them. Nevertheless, no matter how beneficial these changes proved to be in the end, first encountered, they usually provoked a physiological response, commonly known as stress. Often, very hostile environments forced more complex organisms, like vertebrates, to develop a response that Walter Cannon (1914) first introduced as a “fight-or-flight” response, which describes a number of physiological changes involved in regulation of the body's response to stimuli. This response aims to maintain body homeostasis, the mechanism that keeps internal environment in the body as constant and balanced as possible (Pacák and Palkovits 2001).

One of the key features in this adaptive response is neuroendocrine activation (Miller and O'Callaghan 2002), which includes activation of two systems: the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis and the sympathetic nervous system (SNS). Neuroendocrine activation can be triggered in two ways: as a feedback signal from peripheral receptors that have recognized the altered homeostasis or by the direct stimulation from an activated brain regulatory center (Vigas and Jezová 1996). Even though different stressors activate different pathways and circuits within an organism, they will always result in the series of neural and endocrine adaptations known as the stress cascade (Miller and O'Callaghan 2002). The key site involved in neuroendocrine activation is the hypothalamus (Barrett 2005).

Activation of both HPA axis and SNS starts from this very small but extremely important part of diencephalon, the rear part of the forebrain. The hypothalamus consists of a large number of nuclei that represent clusters of neurons and are connected with each other by bundles of nerve fibers, called nerve tracts. Both nuclei and nerve fibers are situated in three prominent features: supraoptic (anterior) region, tuberal or middle region, and mammillary or posterior region. From its posterolateral nuclei, the hypothalamus establishes strong, direct connections with autonomic nuclei in the brain stem and spinal cord. In this way, this part of central nervous system (CNS) structure controls SNS functions (Barrett 2005). At the same time, and as a response to stress, the hypothalamus releases a neuropeptide called corticotrophin-releasing hormone (CRH) (Griffin and Ojeda 2004), which stimulates the anterior pituitary gland to release another hormone, adrenocorticotrophic hormone or ACTH, into general circulation. ACTH in turn stimulates the adrenal cortical cells of the adrenal glands to synthesize and release species-specific glucocorticoids into the blood. The tight control of these glucocorticoids (mainly cortisol in humans) is sustained via negative feedback that controls and, in the end, terminates the release of CRH (Griffin and Ojeda 2004). The necessity for this very subtle regulation of the HPA axis at different levels is well represented by adverse health consequences caused by its dysregulation (Tsigos and Chrousos 2002). For example, increased HPA axis activity and the hyperproduction of cortisol can lead to melancholic depression which can be accompanied by atherosclerosis and deposition of visceral fat, as well as the suppression of immune cells which can lead to higher prevalence of infectious diseases but increased resistance to autoimmune/inflammatory diseases (Tsigos and Chrousos 2002). Hypo-production of cortisol, on the other hand, will lead to the state of the relative resistance to infectious but increased susceptibility to inflammatory and autoimmune diseases and, in its more severe form, a serious condition known as Addison's disease (Griffin and Ojeda 2004). Clearly, one of the very important consequences of HPA axis activation is immunosuppression

(Nance and Meltzer 2003). This includes changes in leukocyte trafficking and function, decreased production of inflammatory cytokines, and inhibition of their effects on target tissues. However, although glucocorticoids can express variable effects on different systems, resulting sometimes in activation and sometimes in suppression of their function, their primary goal is always to act as the guardians of body homeostasis (Munck et al. 1984). Therefore, it is not stress that glucocorticoids fight against; it is altered homeostasis that triggers their secretion and activation.

Stress triggers the activation of both pituitary gland and adrenal cortex, as well as specialized “neuroendocrine tissue” in the hypothalamus, but it can also act via sympathetic neurons responsible for presence of the circulating catecholamines, epinephrine, and norepinephrine (i.e., adrenaline and noradrenaline) secreted from the adrenal medulla (Barrett 2005). This is known as the sympathoadrenal-medullary axis or SAM axis/system. Stress can also cause an integrated response that originates entirely within the central nervous system, where activation of cortical and hypothalamic brain centers acts via postganglionic sympathetic neurons, those that innervate smooth muscles of the blood vessels, as well as the heart, skeletal muscles, kidney, gut, and other organs (Barrett 2005). In other words, both short-term physiological changes (such as acute exercise) and chronic pathophysiological disorders (chronic heart failure) will lead to CNS-mediated SNS activation (Goldstein 1987). SNS activation involves the release of norepinephrine at the end of the postganglionic neurons, which leads to vasoconstriction of the blood vessels, such as those in the skin, gut, and kidneys. In addition, through its preganglionic fibers of splanchnic nerves, the nerves that innervate internal organs, it also regulates hormone secretion from adrenal medulla (Barrett 2005). The cells of this endocrine gland, chromaffin cells, synthesize and secrete epinephrine and, to a lesser extent, norepinephrine. The presence of these catecholamines in the blood stream (e.g., in response to the exercise-induced stress) will lead to cognitive arousal, cardiac stimulation, and constriction of peripheral blood vessels, including the gastrointestinal

tract. At the same time, the skeletal muscle blood flow will remain preserved and the bronchial smooth muscle relaxed, increasing oxygen delivery to the exercising muscle (Barrett 2005). On the other hand, a rise in plasma glucocorticoid levels activates different hormones, prostaglandins, and other arachidonic acid metabolites, lymphokines, and bioactive peptides which in turn challenge homeostasis through different physiological mechanisms again affecting endocrine, renal, and nervous, as well as the immune systems. However, unlike components of HPA axis, secretion of adrenal medullary hormones is not regulated by endocrine feedback loop, but it is controlled by CNS instead (Barrett 2005).

In summary, activation of the autonomic and neuroendocrine system during stress has been developed as a protective mechanism in “flight-or-fight” situations where it serves to mobilize the metabolic resources necessary to support the requirements of the organism (Havel and Taborsky 2003). Neuroendocrine activation during stress through SAM system triggers the release of neuropeptides such as epinephrine and norepinephrine and, via activation of HPA axis, causes an increase in secretion of cortisol and the pancreatic hormone glucagon (Havel and Taborsky 2003) while simultaneously decreasing insulin production. As the pancreatic hormone glucagon raises blood glucose levels, and insulin acts as its antagonist by lowering them down, this neuroendocrine pattern will cause an increase in hepatic glucose production in situations that demand increased muscular activity (Havel and Taborsky 2003). In other words, increased physical activity presented in the “flight-or-fight” response will increase the demand for the glucose consumption and effectively balance its higher production, therefore maintaining normal glucose plasma level (Havel and Taborsky 2003). Among modern types of stress, exercise-induced stress is the only one that parallels somatic motor activation present during “flight-or-fight” response (Havel and Taborsky 2003).

The problem arises when neuroendocrine activation exceeds the body’s metabolic requirements, typical in situations of chronic psychological stress and large amounts of caffeine uptake, as well as the

pathological conditions such as that of chronic myocardial infarction. Further examples of this negative effect of neuroendocrine activation in humans today are stress-induced hyperglycemia (Havel and Taborsky 2003), hypoxia, and trauma. These will trigger neuroendocrine activation and secretion of glucose-mobilizing hormones without adequate glucose utilization and therefore will lead to the state of hyperglycemia (Havel and Taborsky 2003).

Caffeine intake (Lane et al. 2002) can also mimic stress-induced activation of neuroendocrine system and lead to a rise in plasma levels of epinephrine and norepinephrine, as well as glucocorticoids such as cortisol. Like stress situations, caffeine not only enhances cardiac output, diastolic blood pressure, and heart rate, as well as skeletal muscle blood flow, but can also potentiate already stress-induced increases in cardiac output and plasma concentration of epinephrine and cortisol (Lane et al. 2002).

One of the important protective roles of neuroendocrine activation is sustaining circulation in vital organs (such as the heart, brain, kidney), in the situations of extensive blood loss, e.g., hemorrhage (Swedberg 2002). To sustain its role, neuroendocrine activation causes tachycardia, constriction of peripheral blood vessels, and volume expansion. Unfortunately, what is beneficial in one situation can become detrimental in other pathological conditions. The example of this is a chronic heart failure (Swedberg 2002), where direct consequences of chronic neuroendocrine activation are sodium and water retention. This then leads to the constrictions of blood vessels that will increase demand for oxygen, as well as to toxic cellular effects. All of these combined may cause cardiac dysfunction and higher morbidity and death in chronic heart failure patients (Swedberg 2002).

Therefore, neuroendocrine activation is an adaptive response to changing and demanding external and internal environment, and another example of the complex structure of living organisms, so carefully and subtly regulated that exposure to any new phenomenon, can turn this strong protector into a very dangerous enemy.

Cross-References

- [ACTH](#)
- [Adrenal Glands](#)
- [Hypothalamus](#)

References and Further Reading

- Barrett, E. J. (2005). The adrenal gland. In W. F. Boron & E. L. Boulpaep (Eds.), *Medical physiology: A cellular and molecular approach* (pp. 1049–1065). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Becker, K. L. (2001). *Principles and practice of endocrinology and metabolism*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins.
- Cannon, W. B. (1914). The emergency function of the adrenal medulla in pain and the major emotions. *American Journal of Physiology*, 33, 356–372.
- Goldstein, D. S. (1987). Stress-induced activation of the sympathetic nervous system. *Baillière's Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 1, 253–278.
- Griffin, J. E., & Ojeda, S. R. (2004). *Textbook of endocrine physiology*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Havel, P. J., & Taborsky, G. J., Jr. (2003). Stress-induced activation of the neuroendocrine system and its effects on carbohydrate metabolism. In D. Porte, R. S. Sherwin, A. Baron, M. Ellenberg, & H. Rifkin (Eds.), *Ellenberg and Rifkin's diabetes mellitus* (pp. 129–150). New York: McGraw-Hill Professional.
- Lane, J. D., Pieper, K. F., Phillips-Bute, B. G., Bryant, J. E., & Kuhn, C. M. (2002). Caffeine affects cardiovascular and neuroendocrine activation at work and home. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 64, 593–603.
- Miller, D. B., & O'Callaghan, J. P. (2002). Neuroendocrine aspects of the response to stress. *Metabolism*, 51, 5–10.
- Munck, A., Guyre, P. M., & Holbrook, N. J. (1984). Physiological functions of glucocorticoids in stress and their relation to pharmacological actions. *Endocrine Reviews*, 5, 25–44.
- Nance, D. M., & Meltzer, J. C. (2003). Interactions between the adrenergic and immune systems. In J. Bienenstock, E. J. Goetzl, & M. G. Bienenstock (Eds.), *Autonomic neuroimmunology* (pp. 15–34). New York: Taylor & Francis.
- Pacák, K., & Palkovits, M. (2001). Stressor specificity of central neuroendocrine responses: Implications for stress-related disorders. *Endocrine Reviews*, 22, 502–548.
- Swedberg, K. (2002). Importance of neuroendocrine activation in chronic heart failure. Impact on treatment strategies. *European Journal of Heart Failure*, 2, 229–233.
- Tsigos, C., & Chrousos, G. P. (2002). Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis, neuroendocrine factors and stress. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 53, 865–871.

Vigas, M., & Jezová, D. (1996). Activation of the neuroendocrine system during changes in homeostasis during stress conditions. *Bratislava Medical Journal*, 97, 63–71.

Neuroendocrine Theory of Aging

Emil C. Toescu

Division of Medical Sciences, The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Hormone theory of aging](#)

Definition

The neuroendocrine hypothesis of aging proposes that aging results from the functional perturbations, both in neuronal control and in endocrine output, of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis. These perturbations result in dysfunction in the activity of various endocrine glands and their target organs. The other consequence is a developing imbalance in hormonal cross-communication between various endocrine axes.

Description

The neuroendocrine system has two central components: the hypothalamus, a structure that is part of the central nervous system (CNS), and the pituitary gland, situated in an anatomical bone depression at the base of the skull, just behind the crossing of the optical nerves (optic chiasm). The two components, forming the hypothalamo-pituitary (HP) axis, are extensively linked, though a stalk that contains both vascular and neuronal connections.

The activity of the system is regulated both by neurotransmitters and neuropeptides secreted locally in the CNS and by circulating hormones.

Together, these factors control the secretion by the hypothalamus of hormonal factors that induce or inhibit the downstream release of hormones from the pituitary gland. In addition to this central role in the control of the endocrine system, the hypothalamus has also an important role in the control and integration of activities in the sympathetic and parasympathetic branches of the autonomic nervous system, thus influencing a wide array of essential physiological functions such as heart beat, blood pressure, and vascular reactivity or glucose metabolism. By changes in neuronal activity in specific discrete nuclei, the hypothalamus also regulates the food intake and the distribution and regulation of fat metabolism, in response to peripheral appetite-inducing, orexigenic (ghrelin) or appetite-reducing, anorexigenic (e.g., leptin) agents.

Aging is associated with multiple endocrinological changes, including a decrease in estrogens in women (menopause) and testosterone in men (andropause), dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA), and DHEA sulfate (adrenopause), as well as decreases in growth hormone (GH) and insulin-like growth factor (IGF-1) (somatopause).

The general form of the neuroendocrine hypothesis of aging proposes that aging results from the functional perturbations, both in neuronal control and in endocrine output, of the HP axis, that result in a dysfunction in the activity of the endocrine glands and their target organs, as well as imbalances in the hormonal and signaling cross-communication between the various components of the endocrine axes. A relevant feature of the activity of the neuroendocrine system is that the secretion of many of the hormone-releasing factors controlling individual endocrine systems is cyclical, integrated mainly in diurnal (24 h) but also in monthly or longer cycles, through activity in the hypothalamic suprachiasmatic nucleus (SCN). Thus, the neuroendocrine hypothesis of aging proposes that with aging, through yet to be defined mechanisms, the activity of the body clock is perturbed resulting in a gradual and progressive dys-synchronization of the hormonal output. Similar disruptions in SCN activity affect other processes showing a diurnal cycle, such as the sleeping.

Several examples can illustrate this effect of aging on the endocrine system and the resulting functional effects. Thus, with increasing age, there is a decreased secretion of hypothalamic gonadotrophin-releasing hormone (GnRH) and a significant change in the pulsatile rhythm of its secretion that results in a decreased and more erratic secretion of luteinizing hormone (LH). This desynchronization, together with the decrease in the ovarian secretion of regulatory factors, leads, over a period of time, to the loss of reproductive cycles in females. The associated decrease in number of ovarian follicles contributes also to the decline in estrogen levels in aged women, leading to some of the of age-associated changes in postmenopausal women, such as the atrophy of the secondary reproductive tissues, reductions in bone density, or alterations in various cognitive functions. Decreased secretion of GnRH in males results in changes in LH and consecutive decrease in androgen levels, with corresponding loss of skeletal muscle and reproductive functions.

In many instances, the term “neuroendocrine theory of aging” is used in a much more restricted meaning and refers to the consequences of the age-related changes in the hypothalamo-pituitary-adrenocortical gland (HPA) axis. At the top of this axis, the parvocellular neurons in the paraventricular nucleus of the hypothalamus secrete corticotrophin-releasing hormone (CRH) that stimulates the anterior pituitary secretion of the adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH). The target organs for this latter hormone are the adrenal glands (situated above each kidney), where it activates the secretion of the glucocorticoids (GCs; cortisol, in humans, corticosterone, in rodents) from specific cortical cells in the cortex of the gland. The GCs have a wide range of effects – some are related to glucose metabolism, inducing through various mechanism increases in glucose concentration in the blood, while others are related with the immune response, upregulating overall the expression of anti-inflammatory proteins and decreasing the levels of pro-inflammatory proteins. In addition to these effects and very relevant to the mechanisms linking glucocorticoids with the aging process, the GC

hormones play a vital role in regulating the stress response. Together with other stress-sensitive systems (e.g., the sympathetic response mediated by secretions from the medullar part of the same adrenal gland), GCs prepare the body for adaptation by mobilizing energy stores, suppressing nonessential physiological systems (e.g., feeding, reproduction), and generating behavioral responses to stimuli perceived as stressful. In the various target organs, including the brain, GCs act through two types of receptors. The glucocorticoid receptor (GR) is expressed throughout the brain, with relatively higher density in the hippocampus and prefrontal cortex. The mineralocorticoid receptor (MR) has a more restricted distribution, mainly in the hippocampus. The existence of both types of receptors in hippocampus is very relevant since the hippocampus, while being a central node in the networks controlling learning and memory, is also exerting an inhibitory effect on the hypothalamic release of CRH and, thus, can exert significant control on the HPA axis.

Two interrelated concepts are important for understanding this formulation of the neuroendocrine theory of aging, particularly in respect to brain aging: (1) chronic stress is associated with increases in circulating GC concentrations, and (2) such increases in GCs induce an enhanced vulnerability of neurons to a variety of neuro- and excitotoxic agents. Thus, in a simple scheme, the decrease in the number of GRs and MRs observed with increasing age would contribute to an impaired regulation of the HPA axis, enhanced basal levels of circulating GCs, neuronal death and hippocampal atrophy, and cognitive impairment (the glucocorticoid hypothesis of brain aging).

Experimental evidence indicates that, in fact, the age-dependent changes in HPA axis activity are of a much subtler nature. With age, there are variable changes in the effects of GCs (cortisol) on ACTH secretion or of ACTH on cortisol secretion, while the capacity of the adrenal gland to produce GCs is not affected. Whereas the physiological cortisol circadian rhythmicity is maintained in essence, a significant age-related increase in the peak cortisol levels in

physiological aging and an advance shift in the onset of the circadian cortisol rise result in an overall elevated serum GC level. With the important role of the GCs in mediating the stress response, one of the important functional consequences of these changes in the activity of the HPA axis is an increased responsiveness and an impaired ability to terminate stress responses, resulting in prolonged GC exposures.

Further difficulties in tracing a simple causal relationship between dysregulation in the HPA axis, aging, and behavioral and cognitive impairment have been generated by recent data indicating that not all types of cognition are impaired, such that both encoding and consolidation of emotional learning is, in fact, facilitated by GCs or that in certain conditions, such as the caloric restriction model in rodents, increased GC levels can be present while cognition performance is better than in the aged-matched control groups on a normal diet. Such results led to the recent proposal that the relationship between GCs, aging, and cognition represents a divergent imbalance between an age-dependent increase in GCs efficacy on some cell types, such as neurons in the hippocampus, enhancing the catabolic processes, and a decreased efficacy on other cell types, resulting in a decreased protective, anti-inflammatory response.

It is still unknown whether the age-associated reduction in hippocampal volume is the primary event leading to elevated levels of cortisol or the other way around, elevated levels of cortisol causing hippocampal atrophy. It is also possible that both events reflect a broader syndrome, often observed during aging, called the metabolic syndrome, and characterized by reduced glucose tolerance, hypertension, obesity, and elevated levels of cortisol. In addition, the actual role of circulating GCs in controlling the aging process is further complicated by the fact that the concentrations of active GC forms (cortisol, in humans, and corticosterone, in rodents) that interact with the intracellular receptors are controlled not only by the circulating levels of GCs but also by powerful pre-receptor mechanisms in the cytosol, such as the enzyme 11 β -hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase I (11-HSD

I) that is able to convert inactive forms of GCs (cortisone) into active forms (cortisol). Recent experiments indicate that modulation of 11-HSD I expression and activity has effects both on the aging phenotype and on the age-associated cognitive changes.

An important line of support for a neuroendocrine theory of aging comes from studies in the last few decades on the powerful effect of caloric restriction (CR) in delaying aging and increasing life span, in species ranging from yeast and worms to mice, rats, and monkeys (the results in humans are promising but not yet conclusive). From an evolutionary viewpoint, the effect of CR appears to be explained by organisms having evolved adaptation mechanisms in their neuroendocrine systems to maximize survival during periods of food shortage. Although CR induces wider endocrine modifications (fall in thyroid hormones (T_3), increased circulating corticosterone (in rodents), with little change in the secretion of the central regulator factors on the HPA axis, and decreased gonadal hormones), the proposed central mechanism of action of CR is through insulin signaling. It is known that aging is associated with increases in insulin resistance and adiposity, and it is becoming clear that long-time exposure to insulin resistance accelerates biological aging. For example, in diabetes, there is early onset of certain diseases of aging, such as dementia, as well as signs of general body aging such as frailty. Chronic stress may accelerate these age-related metabolic changes. Stress is related to obesity, especially abdominal obesity, and insulin resistance in both animal and human models.

Lifting the veil as to the endocrine mechanisms involved, the positive effects of CR are reproduced, to a large extent, in animal models that have spontaneous or genetically engineered reductions in the activity of the GH/IGF-1 axis, starting with the initial reports of antiaging effects of hypophysectomized animals, more than 50 years ago. The nature of the processes involved was discovered by genetic studies, initiated in worms (*C. elegans*), showing that mutations in some genes in this pathway confer resistance to environmental stress, enhanced resistance to

starvation, and, most importantly, extended longevity. Many of these same genes are conserved in humans: the insulin/insulin-like growth factor-I (IGF-I) peptide and *daf-2* gene (in worms) are homologs of the human insulin and IGF-I receptor, while *age-1* (worms) is related to a conserved phosphoinositol-3-kinase that responds to insulin receptor activation and *daf-16* (worms) is a homolog of a human transcription factor.

The endocrine mechanisms of the antiaging effects of CR highlight also some of the subtleties of the complex set of processes that regulate the process of normal aging and the resultant potential pitfalls in designing and offering rejuvenation cures. Insulin/IGF-1 signaling is one of the most crucial cellular pathways regulating protein synthesis, glucose metabolism, and cellular proliferation and differentiation. The somatotrophic axis in mammals, having the growth hormone (GH) as the major peripheral hormone, can stimulate the expression and secretion of IGF-1 in the liver and modulate the metabolism of several target tissues directly via different GH receptors. Several endocrine mutants, expressing either elevated or reduced levels of GH/IGF-1 hormones, highlight the significance of this axis in the regulation of growth and body size since the deficiencies in the function of GH/IGF-1 axis invariably lead to decreased anabolic capacity and reduced growth. The fact that the GH circulating levels are reduced with age could thus account for many of the features of the aging phenotype and form one face of the so-called GH/IGF-1 paradox of aging. The other face of it is the demonstration of the significant antiaging effects of reducing IGF/insulin signaling, as exemplified by the CR process. To date, the paradox does not have a satisfactory resolution, and it is difficult to decide whether reduced activity in the GH/IGF-1 axis should be viewed as a cause or a simple effect of aging. Furthermore, it can be argued that the decline in GH secretion with age represents a protective mechanism against insulin resistance and/or cancer or even an activation of survival mechanisms rather than simply reflecting a progressive failure of the hypothalamus-somatotrope axis. One way to reduce the conceptual tension generated by this neuroendocrine paradox is to

invoke one of the most powerful evolutionary theories of aging, the antagonistic pleiotropy theory, which argues that, from an evolutionary perspective, aging results from the action of a number of physiological and/or homeostatic systems that exert several effects (pleiotropic), some of which being positive and beneficial at early stages of individual development, while others being negative and detrimental at later stages of development. Against this backdrop, opinions about the potential use and benefits of GH or GH secretagogues as antiaging agents differ widely and are highly controversial. Overall, data from well-designed clinical studies reported to date indicate unfavorable risk-benefit ratio for treatment of normal elderly subjects with GH. Prescribing GH to individuals who are not GH deficient in an attempt to slow aging is not supported by the available evidence, is not included among its approved uses, and, in the USA, is specifically disallowed.

The same cautious view should be taken in respect to the adrenal sex steroid, dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) proposed as another antiaging fountain of youth hormone. With age, there is a large and abrupt decrease of estrogens in postmenopausal women and a slower and gradual decrease of testosterone in men. In a similar fashion, DHEA and its sulfate ester also fall progressively with age. The fact that the changes in DHEA correlate well with other age-induced modifications, such as increased fat mass and visceral adiposity, reduced bone mineral density, reduced muscle mass, and increased frailty, led to proposals for DHEA treatments or even sex hormones, in elderly individual otherwise endocrinologically well. However, well-controlled clinical trials have repeatedly failed to show significant improvements in either the biological parameters tested or in the overall quality of life reporting.

Cross-References

- [Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Axis](#)
- [Neuroendocrine Activation](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bartke, A. (2009). The somatotrophic axis and aging: Mechanisms and persistent questions about practical implications. *Experimental Gerontology*, 44(6–7), 372–374.
- Brown-Borg, H. M. (2009). Hormonal control of aging in rodents: The somatotrophic axis. *Molecular and Cellular Endocrinology*, 299(1), 64–71.
- Chahal, H. S., & Drake, W. M. (2007). The endocrine system and ageing. *The Journal of Pathology*, 211(2), 173–180.
- Dumitriu, D., Rapp, P. R., McEwen, B. S., & Morrison, J. H. (2010). Estrogen and the aging brain: An elixir for the weary cortical network. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 1204, 104–112.
- Hertoghe, T. (2005). The “multiple hormone deficiency” theory of aging: Is human senescence caused mainly by multiple hormone deficiencies? *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 1057, 448–465.
- Landfield, P. W., Blalock, E. M., Chen, K. C., & Porter, N. M. (2007). A new glucocorticoid hypothesis of brain aging: Implications for Alzheimer’s disease. *Current Alzheimer Research*, 4(2), 205–212.
- Levy, E. A., Tammer, A. H., Penman, J., Kent, S., & Paolini, A. G. (2010). Calorie restriction at increasing levels leads to augmented concentrations of corticosterone and decreasing concentrations of testosterone in rats. *Nutrition Research*, 30(5), 366–373.
- Stewart, P. M. (2006). Aging and fountain-of-youth hormones. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 355(16), 1724–1726.
- Weinert, B. T., & Timiras, P. S. (2003). Invited review: Theories of aging. *Journal of Applied Physiology*, 95(4), 1706–1716.

Neurogenetics

► Neurogenomics

Neurogenomics

Ornit Chiba-Falek
Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC,
USA

Synonyms

[Neurogenetics](#)

Definition

Neurogenomics is the interface of neurobiology and genome sciences. It is the study of how the genome as a whole contributes to the evolution, development, structure, and function of the nervous system. Neurogenomics research employs genetic strategies, including investigations of the genome sequence and products (transcriptomes and proteomes), to identify genes involved in the nervous system and to understand their gene-product function and the biological mechanisms through which they contribute to brain development, function, plasticity, and disease. A major goal in neurogenomics is the isolation of genes linked to neurological diseases such as Alzheimer’s and Parkinson’s diseases. Outcomes of such research programs will improve the ability to diagnose neurological disease even before it strikes and will advance the development of novel therapeutic targets to prevent and/or halt the progression of these diseases.

Description

Trends toward large-scale interdisciplinary research projects advance the neurosciences and provide firm foundation the vigorous exploration of the frontier between neurobiology and genome sciences. Neurogenomics field includes, but is not limited to, research of genes that cause neurological disorders; molecular mechanisms through which disease genes act; animal models and in vitro techniques for studying pathways of gene function; genetically based studies of neuronal patterning, migration, connectivity, and cognitive/behavioral function; and the genetic basis of normal neural development and function. These studies promote also the development of preclinical disease biomarkers, gene-based therapeutics for neurological disorders, and pharmaceuticals targeted to specific gene products.

Genetic methodologies are having a rapidly increasingly impact on studies of the normal and diseased nervous system. The recent advances in genomic and other high-throughput “omic” technologies have allowed an expansion from single-gene to genome-wide analyses, providing a step

forward toward a global understanding of neurological and neuropsychiatric disorders. To date, more than 200 genes have been identified that cause or contribute, in various extents, to neurological disorders. Examples of recent milestone advances are the following: (1) A meta-analysis of genome-wide association studies in Parkinson's disease identified 11 Parkinson's risk loci that surpassed the threshold for genome-wide significance. Six were previously identified loci (*MAPT*, *SNCA*, *HLA-DRB5*, *BST1*, *GAK*, and *LRRK2*), and five were newly identified loci (*ACMSD*, *STK39*, *MCCC1/LAMP3*, *SYT11*, and *CCDC62/HIP1R*). (2) Large Alzheimer's GWAS and replication studies reported genome-wide significant association with the strongest most established genetic risk factor for sporadic late-onset Alzheimer's disease, the *APOE* genomic region, and with three novel loci (*CLU*, *CRI*, and *PICALM*). (3) Using comparative genomics approach, it was found that rare structural variants (CNV) disrupt multiple genes in neurodevelopmental pathways in schizophrenia.

Furthermore, the development of new model organisms (such as the *C. elegance*, honeybee, *Drosophila*, and zebra fish) for neuroscience research is being accelerated by extensive genome sequencing and the application of comparative and functional genomics technologies.

These modern technologies also impact the availability of information and data sharing. Resources for neurogenomics research – such as tissue and information registries, gene expression and function atlases of the brain of animal models, human brain transcriptomes, and whole genome genotypes from neurological affected subjects and control – have been rapidly developed and are becoming publicly available for investigators to use.

References and Further Readings

- Boguski, M. S., & Jones, A. R. (2004). Neurogenomics: At the intersection of neurobiology and genome sciences. *Nature Neuroscience*, 7, 429–433.
- Gibbs, J. R., van der Brug, M. P., Hernandez, D. G., Traynor, B. J., Nalls, M. A., Lai, S. L., et al. (2010). Abundant quantitative trait loci exist for DNA methylation and gene expression in human brain. *PLoS Genetics*, 6, e1000952.
- Harold, D., Abraham, R., Hollingworth, P., Sims, R., Gerrish, A., Hamshere, M. L., et al. (2009). Genome-wide association study identifies variants at *CLU* and *PICALM* associated with Alzheimer's disease. *Nature Genetics*, 41, 1088–1093.
- International Parkinson Disease Genomics Consortium. (2011). Imputation of sequence variants for identification of genetic risks for Parkinson's disease: a meta-analysis of genome-wide association studies. *Lancet*, 377(9766), 641–649.
- Lein, E. S., Hawrylycz, M. J., Ao, N., Ayres, M., Bensinger, A., Bernard, A., et al. (2007). Genome-wide atlas of gene expression in the adult mouse brain. *Nature*, 445, 168–176.
- Walsh, T., McClellan, J. M., McCarthy, S. E., Addington, A. M., Pierce, S. B., Cooper, G. M., et al. (2008). Rare structural variants disrupt multiple genes in neurodevelopmental pathways in schizophrenia. *Science*, 320, 539–543.
- Whitworth, A. J., Wes, P. D., & Pallanck, L. J. (2006). *Drosophila* models pioneer a new approach to drug discovery for Parkinson's disease. *Drug Discovery Today*, 11, 119–126.

Neuroimaging

Elliott A. Beaton

Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences and the M.I.N.D. Institute, University of California-Davis, Sacramento, CA, USA

Cross-References

- ▶ Alzheimer's Disease
- ▶ Gene
- ▶ Genetics
- ▶ Genome-Wide Association Study (GWAS)
- ▶ Genomics
- ▶ Parkinson's Disease: Psychosocial Aspects

Synonyms

Brain imaging; Computerized tomography (CT); Diffuse optical imaging (DOI); Event-related optical imaging (EROI); Functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI); Imaging; Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI); Positron emission tomography (PET)

Definition

Neuroimaging broadly refers to the relatively noninvasive technologies and techniques for localizing, measuring, and visualizing central nervous system function and structure. Common neuroimaging methodologies include magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), positron emissions tomography (PET), and computerized tomography (CAT/CT).

Description

Neuroimaging refers to a collection of techniques used to noninvasively view structure and function of living brain tissue. The methods used to visualize brain tissue have evolved significantly over the last several decades from using x-ray technologies to the more recent and increasingly ubiquitous (nuclear) magnetic resonance imaging.

Contrast X-Rays and Computerized Axial Tomography (CAT/CT)

X-ray photography creates images by passing x-rays through the body and onto a photographic plate by taking advantage of variation in x-ray radiation absorption of different tissues. Certain molecules and denser materials absorb more radiation and thus less reaches the photographic plate. This method is excellent for seeing skeletal bones that appear on the photographic plate with a high degree of contrast compared to surrounding tissues. It is less useful for tissues that do not strongly differ in x-ray radiation absorption such as parts of the brain. One method to get around this is to introduce a radiopaque agent to increase contrast by differentially absorbing x-rays. This allows for the visualization of the cerebral ventricular and circulatory systems. Pneumoencephalography involves injecting air into the cerebral ventricular system to briefly displace cerebral spinal fluid (CSF), and cerebral angiography involves injecting a radiopaque dye into a cerebral artery. These methods are limited in the information they produce but can be used to examine general brain atrophy, damage, or displacement of blood vessels.

The next step in the evolution of x-ray imaging of the living brain was the introduction of computed tomography (CT) which is sometimes referred to as computerized axial tomography (CAT). However, CT is more appropriate because “axial” merely refers to the plane of image acquisition, and images can just as easily be acquired in the coronal or sagittal planes. CT utilizes an x-ray detector rather than a photographic plate. The x-ray source and detector are mounted opposite one another on a rotating ring inside a tube that encircles the person being scanned. The CT scanner captures numerous images of the brain from several angles as the x-ray source and detector rotate around the head. These images are then reconstructed by a computer to make three-dimensional multi-slice images of the living brain. The brighter and darker areas of the images are described as “hyperdense” and “hypodense,” respectively, with grayish components of the images as “isodense.” Water and CSF appears almost black, white matter darker than gray matter, and skull as nearly white. Variation in image intensity is more carefully delineated in Hounsfield units (HU) with water having an HU of 0, CSF and HU between 8 and 18, gray matter and white matter HU = 37–41 and 30–34, respectively, and bone HU = 600–2,000. CT scans have the benefit of being relatively inexpensive and having very fast acquisition times, making them particularly valuable tools for detecting recent brain trauma and intracranial lesions in emergency situations. Limitations of CT scanning include poorer contrast between brain tissue types, and the number of CT scan any one person can have at a given time is limited because of safety requirements to limit exposure to x-ray radiation. Furthermore, while CT can be used to visualize brain structure, it is not useful for measuring brain function while engaging in a process or activity. Other methods allowing for accurate localization of brain function include positron emissions tomography (PET) and functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI). Imaging equipment that combine CT and PET technologies in one package are now commonly available and increase information yield and utility with

the practical benefit of taking up less space than dedicated CT and PET scanners.

Single-Photon/Positron Emissions Tomography (SPECT/PET)

Positron emissions tomography (PET) and single-photon emission computerized tomography (SPECT) are used to image brain activity. This method also uses radiation and radiation detectors, but rather than shooting an x-ray through the material to be imaged, PET utilizes radiolabeled tracers in the form of chemicals that have specific actions within the brain. For example, fluorine-18-labeled 2-fluoro-2-deoxy-D-glucose (18 F-FDG) is a commonly used radiotracer. When 18 F-FDG is injected into the carotid artery, it is rapidly taken up by metabolically active neurons during an experimental task as it very similar to glucose. However, it cannot be metabolized like glucose and thus accumulates in active brain regions where it slowly breaks down. The radioactive label (or ligand) gives off photons (i.e., SPECT) as a result of a nuclear process where a proton in the nucleus is converted into a neutron, neutrino, and a positron (i.e., PET). Both the neutrino and the positron are then ejected from the nucleus. The kinetic energy of the ejected positron both varies and declines at a rate that depends on the nature of the surrounding material. When an ejected positron meets an electron, it creates an annihilation reaction where the electron and the positron turn into two photons that travel in opposite directions (180°) of each other. These photons are measured as a line by two of a series of scintillation detectors mounted in opposition from one another. The images created by the PET scanner are not images of the brain itself; rather, they are images created from the relative distributions of detected amounts of radioactivity in brain regions of interest.

PET is powerful methodology that can be used to study hemodynamics, drug action localization, receptor function, metabolism, and even molecular processes including DNA synthesis. PET is particularly valuable in detecting disease processes that may be evident as metabolic variation but not are yet manifested as anatomical abnormality that could be detected using CT or MRI.

However, PET images can be effectively combined with CT or MRI images, providing accurate localization of accumulated radioactivity. PET is also advantageous in that radiation exposure is relatively limited. The primary limitation of PET is the necessity for local access to a cyclotron to produce radiotracers. The radiotracers have a very short half-life and thus must be made in close physical proximity to the PET scanner and utilized quickly. The limitations of PET and CT have led to a significant increase in application of methods that do not utilize hard radiation like x-rays or radiolabels that are expensive to produce. Structural and functional magnetic resonance imaging (sMRI and fMRI, respectively) and the recent emergence of near infrared spectroscopic imaging (NIRSI) allow for detailed analyses of both brain structure and function in the living brain.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)/Functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging (fMRI)

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) methods produce images of the brain and other bodily regions that are high in both contrast and resolution. Although some MRI methods utilize contrast agents, MRI does not expose patients or study participants to ionizing radiation. Rather, this technique utilizes a very powerful homogeneous and stable electromagnetic field.

This brief description of how MRI works is limited to “classical”/Newtonian physics, but quantum mechanical descriptions are available elsewhere. Protons are found in all of the nuclei of the atoms that make up the body, but conventional MRI utilizes hydrogen protons. Hydrogen protons spin randomly with their magnetic moments “pointing” in random directions until they are in the influence of the strong magnetic field of the MRI scanner where they all align in parallel with the direction (z-axis) of the external field generated by the electromagnet. Application of a radiofrequency (RF) pulse is applied to the z-axis aligned hydrogen protons with an excitation/receiver coil. As a result of absorbed energy from the RF pulse, the hydrogen protons move or “flip” into a higher energy state that is antiparallel to the z-axis toward the x-y plane. With the

removal of the RF pulse, the hydrogen protons “relax” or move back into alignment with the external electromagnetic field along the z-axis and release the absorbed energy from the RF pulse as electromagnetic waves that are detected by the excitation/receiver coil and other magnetic gradient coils in three dimensions.

Static contrast methodologies are used to generate anatomical images of the brain. Depending on the type of RF pulse applied, the images highlight different types of tissue or fluids. Static contrast between tissue types is achieved by three properties of protons in tissues: (1) the proton density (i.e., how many hydrogen protons are in the region), (2) proton relaxation times along the z-axis (i.e., the longitudinal relaxation time or T1), and (3) proton relaxation times along the x-y plane (i.e., the transverse relaxation time or T2). Motion contrasts detect dynamic properties of protons in tissues and fluids to generate images of blood flow, capillary irrigation, perfusion, and diffusion of water.

Functional MRI (fMRI) refers to MRI methodologies that estimate brain activity. Brain slices are repeatedly imaged over time, allowing for statistical contrast of experimental manipulations. The most common is blood oxygen level-dependent (BOLD) fMRI. BOLD fMRI methods exploit changes in levels of oxygen in the blood that result from the metabolic demands of brain tissue during neural activity. Active brain tissue utilizes oxygen, and the change from an oxygenated state to a deoxygenated state can be detected because deoxygenated blood is paramagnetic. Other methods include perfusion or dynamic-contrast MRI, which measures changes in blood volume using an injected paramagnetic contrast agent such as gadolinium, or magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS), which measures localized levels of brain metabolites. There is also diffusion MRI that measures diffusion coefficients of water in brain tissue. Diffusion tensor imaging (DTI) examines the water diffusion coefficients in neighboring voxels to estimate the shapes and directions of white matter tracts.

MRI possesses advantages over CT and PET including very high-resolution images that can be acquired without ionizing radiation. In most MRI procedures, no contrast agent is needed, and

the procedures are completely noninvasive. MRI still requires significant safety procedures though. The magnet is always active, and any objects that are susceptible to magnetism can become dangerous projectiles within the boundaries of the field. Furthermore, patients and study participants must be screened for metallic objects or medical devices such as pacemakers in and on their bodies.

Diffuse Optical Imaging or Tomography (DOI/DOT) and Near Infrared Spectroscopy (NIRS)

Diffuse optical imaging (DOI) and near infrared spectroscopy (NIRS) are relatively new applications for measuring relative changes in blood volume and oxygenation via hemoglobin levels as a proxy for cellular metabolism. These methods exploit changes in the properties of near IR light projected through tissue in the absorptive spectra and light scattering properties of water, oxygenated hemoglobin, and deoxygenated hemoglobin. Like BOLD fMRI, DOI measures the hemodynamic response as blood flows to the active tissue supplying oxygen to satisfy the metabolic needs of neurons in the active region. Changes in the way that light moves through brain tissue from the IR source to the IR detector can be computationally modeled, and blood flow to particular brain regions can be examined based on the placement of the IR source and detectors.

Modeling how light moves through the various tissues of the head is a complex process that contributes to DOI and NIRS limitations. One method of simplifying the model is to assume the brain region being scanned is essentially “flat” and that the tissues do not differ in their optical properties. However, anatomical MRI can be combined with DOI/NIRS to provide a better model of absorption and scattering of light with bone and other head tissues. Advantages of this technology include a high degree of portability, rapid data acquisition, relative low cost, and complete noninvasiveness. The primary disadvantages result from the lack of robust spatial resolution and that imaging is limited to surface and near-surface brain tissue.

Cross-References

► Brain, Imaging

References and Readings

- Azar, F., & Intes, X. (Eds.). (2008). *Translational multimodal optical imaging*. Norwood: Artech House.
- Christian, P. E., & Waterstram-Richm, K. M. (Eds.). (2012). *Nuclear medicine and PET/CT technology and techniques* (7th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Hanson, S. J., & Bunzl, M. (Eds.). (2010). *Foundational issues in human brain mapping*. Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press.
- Huttel, S. A., Song, A. W., & McCarthy, G. (2008). *Functional magnetic resonance imaging* (2nd ed.). Sunderland: Sinauer Associates.
- Jezzard, P., Mathews, P. M., & Smith, S. S. (2001). *Functional MRI: An introduction to methods*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Jiang, H. (2010). *Diffuse optical tomography*. Boca Raton: CRC Press/Taylor and Francis LLC.
- Mettler, F. A., & Guiberteau, M. J. (2006). *Essentials of nuclear medicine imaging* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders/Elsevier.
- Romans, L. (2011). *Computed tomography for technologists: A comprehensive text*. Baltimore: Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams and Wilkins.
- Wahl, R. L., & Beanlands, R. S. B. (Eds.). (2009). *Principles and practice of PET and PET/CT* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins/Wolters Kluwer.

Neuroimmune Regulation

► Neuroimmunomodulation

Neuroimmunology

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

This term refers to the interdisciplinary field merging neurology, immunology, and aspects of

neuroscience. It is a scientific and clinical domain. Scientifically, neuroimmunology tries to understand the bidirectional links between the nervous and immune systems and their implications to illnesses. Clinically, various “classical” neuroimmune diseases (e.g., multiple sclerosis – MS) and recently more diseases are being recognized as being influenced by both the nervous and immune systems, including cancer and coronary heart disease. The biological underpinnings of neuroimmunology include the descending pathways from the brain to the immune system, manifested by innervation of lymph nodes, effects of stress hormones on immunity, and the presence of neurotransmitter receptors on immune cells (Dantzer et al. 2000). In parallel, ascending pathways include the vagus nerve, expressing receptors for interleukin-1, brain regions lacking the blood-brain barrier (BBB), and a “domino-like” effect of prostaglandins, an end point of inflammation, on both sides of the BBB (Dantzer et al. 2000; Tracey 2009). MS, for example, represents an inflammatory autoimmune insult on nerves, which eventually leads to the episodic and degenerative characteristic of this disease (Compston and Coles 2002). Understanding neuroimmune interactions has been pivotal for developing treatments for MS. Another extraordinary example is the work of Schwartz and colleagues who demonstrated that due to the “immune privilege” status of the brain, closed brain injuries may not undergo immune protection, while in contrast, following a homing intervention of T cells to the brain, recovery is accelerated (Schwartz and Moalem 2001). The relevance of neuroimmune interactions to other diseases has recently been claimed by researchers in relation to coronary heart disease (Gidron et al. 2007) and cancer (Gidron et al. 2005), based on multiple converging evidence. In cancer, for example, a new neuroimmunomodulation index, which reflects vagal activity over inflammation, was found to predict survival in two fatal cancers (Gidron et al. 2016). Further scientific efforts may hopefully reveal the clinical and therapeutic implications of such neuroimmune associations in different diseases.

Cross-References

► Neuroimmunomodulation

References and Further Readings

- Compston, A., & Coles, A. (2002). Multiple sclerosis. *The Lancet*, 359, 1221–1231.
- Dantzer, R., Konsman, J. P., Bluthé, R. M., & Kelley, K. W. (2000). Neural and humoral pathways of communication from the immune system to the brain: Parallel or convergent? *Autonomic Neuroscience*, 85, 60–65.
- Gidron, Y., Perry, H., & Glennie, M. (2005). The Vagus may inform the brain about sub-clinical tumours and modulate them: An hypothesis. *The Lancet Oncology*, 6, 245–248.
- Gidron, Y., Kupper, N., Kwaijtaal, M., Winter, J., & Denollet, J. (2007). Vagus-brain communication in atherosclerosis-related inflammation: A neuroimmunomodulation perspective of CAD. *Atherosclerosis*, 195, e1–e9.
- Gidron, Y., De Couck, M., Van Laethem, J. L., Schallier, D., De Greve, J., Mareshall, R. (2016). Paper to be presented at the *PCS 2nd International Lung Cancer Symposium*, Budapest.
- Schwartz, M., & Moalem, G. (2001). Beneficial immune activity after CNS injury: Prospects for vaccination. *Journal of Neuroimmunology*, 113, 185–192.
- Tracey, K. J. (2009). Reflex control of immunity. *Nature Reviews Immunology*, 9, 418–428.

Neuroimmunomodulation

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Synonyms

Neuroimmune regulation

Definition

This term refers to the modulating role of the nervous system in relation to immune functions. This modulation reflects part of the bidirectional communication between the nervous system and

the immune system. Neuroimmunomodulation is possible due to the existence of receptors for neurotransmitters (e.g., norepinephrine, acetylcholine) on immune cells and due to innervation of lymph nodes by sympathetic nervous system (SNS) fibers (Felten et al. 1984). These innervating fibers influence the trafficking and proliferation of immune cells, all evidence for neuroimmunomodulation. Another more recently discovered form of neuroimmunomodulation includes the one by the vagus nerve, where its descending (efferent) branches inhibit cytokine synthesis in peripheral monocytes, via the alpha-7 nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (Tracey 2009). However, the precise process by which this occurs is still under investigation and may involve certain T cells in the spleen, which indirectly respond to vagal signals and then produce themselves acetylcholine to inhibit cytokine synthesis by macrophages (Rosas-Ballina et al. 2011). The neuroimmunomodulating role of the vagus nerve may have clinical implications since the inflammatory response is at the core of the etiology of severe chronic diseases such as cancer and coronary heart disease. Thus, vagal activity is hypothesized to possibly modulate the progress of such diseases (Gidron et al. 2005, 2007), a matter under current investigation. In cancer, for example, a new neuroimmunomodulation index, which reflects a ratio of vagal activity over inflammation, was found to predict longer survival in two fatal cancers (Gidron et al. 2016), a testimony for the clinical relevance of this topic. Neuroimmunomodulation is also manifested by the differential effects of the cerebral hemispheres on peripheral immunity. Studies have shown that the left hemisphere has immune-potentiating effects, while the right hemisphere has immunosuppressive effects (Davidson et al. 1999; Meador et al. 2004). These effects were found in animals and humans and were found to be mediated by the sympathetic response, since blocking beta-adrenergic receptors abolished differences in immunity between the hemispheres. Here too, the neuroimmunomodulatory effects of the hemispheres may have clinical roles since a shift from left to right hemisphere activity during stressful periods correlated with more reported illnesses (Lewis et al. 2007). Furthermore, in a matched prospective design, people with right

hemisphere lateralization were at significantly higher risk of reporting the common cold than those with left hemispheric lateralization, independent of confounders (Gidron et al. 2010). Neuroimmunomodulation has a central role in behavior medicine, by possibly explaining how psychological factors influence the risk of disease, since the SNS, vagal nerve activity, and hemispheric lateralization are each related to psychological factors as well as to immunity and risk of certain illnesses. Research is only at the beginning of understanding these neuromodulatory links and of possibly utilizing them in the service of preventing or treating diseases.

Cross-References

- [Immune Responses to Stress](#)
- [Neuroimmunology](#)
- [Psychoneuroimmunology](#)

References and Further Readings

- Davidson, R. J., Coe, C. C., Dolski, I., & Donzella, B. (1999). Individual differences in prefrontal activation asymmetry predict natural killer cell activity at rest and in response to challenge. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 13, 93–108.
- Felten, D. L., Livnat, S., Felten, S. Y., Carlson, S. L., Bellinger, D. L., & Yeh, P. (1984). Sympathetic innervation of lymph nodes in mice. *Brain Research Bulletin*, 13, 693–699.
- Gidron, Y., Perry, H., & Glennie, M. (2005). The vagus may inform the brain about sub-clinical tumours and modulate them: An hypothesis. *The Lancet Oncology*, 6, 245–248.
- Gidron, Y., Kupper, N., Waijtaal, M., Winter, J., & Denollet, J. (2007). Vagus-brain communication in atherosclerosis-related inflammation: A neuroimmunomodulation perspective of CAD. *Atherosclerosis*, 195, e1–e9.
- Gidron, Y., Hall, P., Wesnes, K. A., & Bucks, R. S. (2010). Does a neuropsychological index of hemispheric lateralization predict onset of upper respiratory tract infectious symptoms? *British Journal of Health Psychology*, 15, 469–477.
- Gidron, Y., De Couck, M., Van Laethem, J. L., Schallier, D., De Greve, J., Mareshall, R. (2016). Paper to be presented at the *PCS 2nd International Lung Cancer Symposium*, Budapest.
- Lewis, R. S., Weekes, N. Y., & Wang, T. H. (2007). The effect of a naturalistic stressor on frontal EEG asymmetry, stress, and health. *Biological Psychology*, 75, 239–247.
- Meador, K. J., Loring, D. W., Ray, P. G., Helman, S. W., Vazquez, B. R., & Neveu, P. J. (2004). Role of cerebral lateralization in control of immune processes in humans. *Annals of Neurology*, 55, 840–844.
- Rosas-Ballina, M., Olofsson, P. S., Ochani, M., Valdés-Ferrer, S. I., Levine, Y. A., Reardon, C., Tusche, M. W., Pavlov, V. A., Andersson, U., Chavan, S., Mak, T. W., & Tracey, K. J. (2011). Acetylcholine-synthesizing T cells relay neural signals in a vagus nerve circuit. *Science*, 334, 98–101.
- Tracey, K. J. (2009). Reflex control of immunity. *Nature Reviews Immunology*, 9, 418–428.

Neurological

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Synonyms

[Neural](#)

Definition

Neurological refers to any process or disorder involving the nervous system or its components. The nervous system includes the central and peripheral nervous systems (CNS and PNS, respectively). These systems are composed of neuronal fibers (axons and dendrites) which transmit neurological information to and from neurons, cell bodies that process neurological information, as well as other types of cells (e.g., astrocytes, microglia). The CNS, the “headquarters” of the body, processes and regulates multiple bodily responses and psychological responses to external and internal stimuli. These numerous neurological processes are carried out by various levels of the CNS including the brain stem (basic vital signs), the limbic system (memory, sensory, autonomic,

immune, hormonal, and emotional processes), and the cortex (executive function and information processing, overall modulation of multiple systems). Neurological disorders are a heterogeneous group of disorders that involve abnormal functioning of the nervous system, PNS or CNS, or both. These could be manifested motorically (as in Parkinson's disease and stroke), behaviorally (as in Alzheimer's disease), or in neurophysiological tests (as in epilepsy or stroke). Neurological diseases caused by genetic mutations are often congenital (e.g., congenital insensitivity to pain with anhidrosis), developmental disorders of the nervous system (e.g., spina bifida), neurodegenerative diseases (e.g., Alzheimer's disease), diseases due to cerebral ischemia (e.g., stroke), injuries to the PNS or CNS, seizures (e.g., epilepsy), cancers (e.g., glioma), and infections (e.g., meningitis). These disorders are treated by neurologists, physicians who specialize in neurological disorders and their etiology and treatment. A major consequence of neurological disorders is their psychosocial impact, both on the patient and on his or her social environment. Often, the social stigma associated with certain neurological problems is quite severe (de Boer 2010) and has the potential to isolate patients. This is of great importance for behavior medicine and includes the assessment of the health-related quality of life affected by such conditions. Some studies have also found that stressful life events precede and predict prognosis in neurological diseases such as in multiple sclerosis (Mitsonis et al. 2008). The accumulating evidence linking neuroimmune processes (e.g., inflammation, vagal nerve modulation) to stress and to peripheral and central pathways (Tracey 2009) and to neurological diseases reveals the importance of the interdisciplinary nature of the neurologist's work, encompassing basic biology, medicine, and behavioral sciences.

Cross-References

- [Neuroimaging](#)
- [Neuron](#)

References and Further Readings

- de Boer, H. M. (2010). Epilepsy stigma: Moving from a global problem to global solutions. *Seizure*, 19, 630–636.
- Mitsonis, C. I., Zervas, I. M., Mitropoulos, P. A., Dimopoulos, N. P., Soldatos, C. R., Potagas, C. M., & Sfagos, C. A. (2008). The impact of stressful life events on risk of relapse in women with multiple sclerosis: A prospective study. *European Psychiatry*, 23, 497–504.
- Tracey, K. J. (2009). Reflex control of immunity. *Nature Reviews Immunology*, 9, 418–428.

Neuromuscular Diseases

Robert J. Gatchel¹, Christopher Robert^{1,2},
Nathan Landers¹ and Ryan Hulla¹

¹Department of Psychology, College of Science,
University of Texas at Arlington,
Arlington, TX, USA

²University of Missouri, Columbia, MO, USA

Synonyms

[Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis](#); [Multiple sclerosis](#);
[Myasthenia gravis](#); [Spinal muscular atrophy](#)

Definition

Neuromuscular disease (NMD) is a phenomenon encompassing approximately 600 rare diseases that impair muscle function (Knuijt et al. 2014).

Description

Most of these diseases stem from a loss of communication between nerve cells (motor neurons) and voluntary muscles or skeletal muscles that, in many cases, lead to progressive muscle weakness and premature death (Larkindale et al. 2013; Bos et al. 2015). Some neuromuscular diseases affect involuntary muscles or smooth muscles and may negatively impact heart function and respiration (Benditt and Boitano 2013). Benditt and Boitano (2013) also report breathing

disorders and pulmonary complications to be the leading causes of mortality among neurologic diseases. Abnormal signaling or, in some cases, complete loss of communication between neurons and muscles stems from two general pathologies where the cause of dysfunction is either direct (muscle pathology) or indirect (nerve pathology) (Anderson et al. 2016). The former affects muscles directly, whereas the latter acts on the nervous systems' control over muscle activity and causes variable weakness of proximal (closer to the body's torso) and distal (farther from the body's torso) muscles (Anderson et al. 2016). Both pathologies cause a wide range of disabilities that commonly result in the following symptoms: muscle weakness, rigidity, myalgia (pain in the muscle or muscle groups), myoclonus (involuntary muscle twitching), loss of muscular control, and/or muscle atrophy or hypertrophy (Knuijt et al. 2014; Martinez et al. 2014). Neuromuscular diseases are, for the most part, regarded as degenerative, and symptoms such as spasticity (unusual muscle tightness) and paralysis are common in the advanced stages of disease. Individuals with a NMD diagnosis often experience these physical symptoms in tandem with reductions in psychosocial functioning (Bos et al. 2015). The physical symptoms associated with NMDs usually cause, or further exacerbate, existing deficits in psychosocial functioning that negatively impact patients' health-related quality of life (HRQoL). Decreased social support, reduced self-efficacy, and daily problems coping can affect HRQoL in NMD patients (Martinez et al. 2014; Bos et al. 2015).

Prevalences of specific NMDs greatly vary and are highly diverse. The rate of incidence can range from less than 1 case per 100,000 (Ullrich Muscular Dystrophy) to as many as 1 in 1,214 (Charcot-Marie-Tooth Disease; Benatar 2006; Braathen 2012; Norwood et al. 2009). Differences found in specific prevalence over numerous studies have been attributed to various methods of assessment/evaluation, founders' effect (lowered genetic variation in a new population established by very few individuals from a larger population), and even the underestimation of early death due to the disease (Braathen 2012;

Norwood et al. 2009). Although many of the individual NMDs are in fact relatively rare, Norwood et al. (2009) found the combined prevalence of disorders to be 37 per 100,000. This high, overall prevalence signifies NMD as encompassing a much more significant proportion of patients with chronic disease than would be assumed from simply observing individual prevalences (Norwood et al. 2009). The current literature of overall NMD prevalence is scarce. The literature that does exist is very population specific and, therefore, subject to variations in result due to the heritable nature of different NMD diseases (Rasmussen et al. 2012; Norwood et al. 2009).

Despite the individual diseases being rare, NMDs incur significant costs to society. Larkindale et al. (2013) estimated a conservative estimate of the national costs for three common NMDs (amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Duchenne muscular dystrophy, and myotonic dystrophy) to range from \$1.07 to \$1.4 billion per year. To mitigate the economic burden associated with NMDs, Larkindale et al. (2013) also have suggested cost-effective interventions that slow disease progression, reduce health-care requirements, and prolong mobility.

NMDs can manifest in a number of ways, but the most prevalent NMDs stem from the following causes: dysfunction of the muscle (myopathy); neuromuscular junction, also known as the motor neurons point of communication with the muscle fiber (referred to as myasthenia); peripheral nerve (neuropathy); or anterior nerve cells (neuronopathy; Bos et al. 2015; Phillips et al. 2009). The specific causes of many neuromuscular diseases, however, remain ambiguous. Despite this elusiveness, most neuromuscular diseases are caused by single-gene mutations (Fratta and Hanna 2015). In fact, advances in genetic research have elucidated the molecular mechanisms underlying many neuromuscular diseases (Fratta and Hanna 2015). Researchers now suspect that even sporadic neuromuscular diseases, such as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), are heritable to some degree (Chio and Lauria 2015). Whatever the cause, many neuromuscular diseases exhibit a high

degree of symptom homogeneity and can manifest at birth or later in life (Knuijt et al. 2014).

Various manifestations of NMD warrant diverse and interdisciplinary treatment, making accurate diagnosis essential to tailoring effective treatments that address the needs of individual patient characteristics and produce more favorable outcomes (Chio and Lauria 2015). It is worth noting that treatments for neuromuscular diseases often focus on the management of the NMD by improving patients' mobility, quality of life, coping, and longevity rather than recovery (Kley et al. 2013). New therapies commonly aim to stymie progression rather than reverse tissue damage (Morrow et al. 2016). Initially, comprehensive neurological examinations are necessary in the evaluation of NMDs (Frazer et al. 2013). Such examinations may include direct clinical observation, biochemical testing, isokinetic testing, nerve conduction analysis, and genetic/molecular testing (Frazer et al. 2013; El Mhandi and Bethoux 2013). Muscle biopsies can indicate classic dystrophic changes associated with NMDs, and walking tests are often used to measure walking capabilities, treatment efficacy, and disease progression (Frazer et al. 2013; Anderson et al. 2016). The measurement of muscle electrical activity, or electromyography (EMG), and nerve conduction studies fall under the category of electrodiagnostic medicine testing. Such testing often serves as an effective diagnostic tool for most neuromuscular diseases (Loseth and Torbergson 2013). Loseth and Torbergson (2013) also note that EMG is the most valuable method for assessing myopathy and neurography, while direct imaging of nerves is most informative for neuropathy and is a complementary method for assessing patients with severe NMDs.

With advances in neuroimaging technology, many clinicians have turned to diagnostic imaging as an identification method as well. This method is especially effective when a stroke, tumor, or other anatomical abnormalities are thought to be the primary cause of the disease. Morrow et al.' (2016) investigation of the comparative responsiveness, validity, and sensitivity of MRI indices supports the use of MRI outcome measures to monitor intramuscular fat accumulation and

reduction of muscle fluid retention, both of which are common pathological processes associated with NMDs. It should also be noted that because many neuromuscular diseases are heritable, genetic/molecular testing can be useful to diagnose or predict the risk of disease inheritance. Genetic testing for NMDs during pregnancy often results in a prenatal diagnosis that may lead to subsequent planning that can increase therapeutic effectiveness as well as medical care for patients and caregivers (Frazer et al. 2013). In addition, Frazer et al. (2013) note that many NMDs affect women of childbearing age. Pregnant women with an NMD face substantial risk for pregnancy complications, in addition to increasing the heritable risk of the particular NMD to a child.

The overall heterogeneity of NMD etiology creates a variety of treatments that are equally diverse. In fact, pathogenesis diversity pervades not just the broad category of NMDs but even the individual disorders. The absence of a comprehensive understanding of the cause of NMDs presents a major obstacle in creating effective comprehensive treatments and, indeed, suggests the necessity of tailoring treatments to the individual needs of the patient (Chio and Lauria 2015; Benatar 2006). Unfortunately, due to the deficient comprehension of the pathology of NMDs, many of the current treatments and therapies in use lack proper evidence-based empirical support (Benatar 2006; Cup et al. 2011). The general palliative treatments that are empirically supported include physical exercise, ventilators, pharmacological interventions, pain management, and various surgeries (Benatar 2006; Kley et al. 2013). The specific treatments employed are entirely dependent upon the individual disorder and the symptoms presented, as certain treatments can yield adverse effects from one disorder but prove beneficial in another (Kley et al. 2013). In more recent years, research for disease-modifying genetic therapies has begun to receive more attention as an effort to target the molecular defects at the root of the disorders (Douglas and Wood 2013). Finally, many clinical researchers cite the lack of high-quality data as being the greatest disadvantage in better understanding the etiology,

treatment, and prognosis of many NMDs. Common problems in such clinical research include low recruitment due to rarity of NMDs, the selection of a specific NMD to examine, limited clinician understanding of clinical research methodologies, and a lack of responsive outcome measures to assess treatment effectiveness in clinical trials (Benatar 2006; Morrow et al. 2016).

References and Further Reading

- Anderson, L. K., Knake, K. L., Witting, N., & Vissing, J. (2016). Two- and 6-minute walk tests assess walking capability equally in neuromuscular diseases. *American Academy of Neurology*, 86, 442–445.
- Benatar, M. (2006). *Neuromuscular disease: Evidence and analysis in clinical neurology*. Totowa: Humana Press.
- Benditt, J. O., & Boitano, L. J. (2013). Pulmonary issues in patients with neuromuscular disease. *Concise Clinical Review*, 187(10), 1046–1055. <https://doi.org/10.1164/rccm.201210-1804CI>.
- Bos, I., Kuks, J. B. M., & Wynia, K. (2015). Development and testing psychometric properties of an ICF-based health measure: The neuromuscular disease impact profile. *Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*, 47(5), 445.
- Braathén, G. J. (2012). Genetic epidemiology of Charcot-Marie-tooth disease. *Acta Neurologica Scandinavica*, 126, iv. <https://doi.org/10.1111/ane.12013>.
- Chio, A., & Lauria, G. (2015). Degenerative neuromuscular diseases: Crucial gene and cell machinery discoveries. *Round-up*, 15, 12–13.
- Cup, E. C., Pieterse, A. J., Hendricks, H. T., van Engelen, B. M., Oostendorp, R. B., & van der Wilt, G. J. (2011). Implementation of multidisciplinary advice to allied health care professionals regarding the management of their patients with neuromuscular diseases. *Disability & Rehabilitation*, 33(9), 787–795.
- Douglas, A. G. L., & Wood, M. J. A. (2013). Splicing therapy for neuromuscular disease. *Molecular and Cellular Neurosciences*, 56, 169–185. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mcn.2013.04.005>.
- El Mhandi, L., & Bethoux, F. (2013). Isokinetic testing in patients with neuromuscular diseases. *American Journal of Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation*, 92(2), 163–178. <https://doi.org/10.1097/PHM.0b013e31826ed94c>.
- Fratta, P., & Hanna, M. G. (2015). Neuromuscular diseases: Progress in gene discovery drives diagnostics and therapeutics. *Round-up*, 14, 13–14.
- Frazer, K. L., Porter, S., & Goss, C. (2013). The genetics and implications of neuromuscular diseases in pregnancy. *Continuing Education*, 27(3), 205–214. <https://doi.org/10.1097/JPN.0b013e318299c338>.
- Kley, R. A., Tarnopolsky, M. A., & Vorgerd, M. (2013). Creatine for treating neuromuscular disorders. *The Cochrane Library*, 6, 1361–6137.
- Knuijt, S., Kalf, J., de Swart, B., Drost, G., Hendricks, H., Geurts, A., & van Engelen, B. (2014). Dysarthria and dysphagia are highly prevalent among various types of neuromuscular diseases. *Disability and Rehabilitation*, 36(15), 1285–1289. <https://doi.org/10.3109/09638288.2013.845255>.
- Larkindale, J., Yang, W., Hogan, P., Simon, C., Zhang, Y., Jain, A., Habeeb-Louks, E., Kennedy, A., & Cwik, V. (2013). Cost of illness for neuromuscular disease in the United States. *Muscle & Nerve*, 49, 431–438. <https://doi.org/10.1002/mus.23942>.
- Loseth, S., & Torbergesen, T. (2013). Electromyography and neurography in patients with severe neuromuscular diseases. *Tidsskrift for den Norske Lægeforening*, 133(2), 174–178.
- Martinez, O., Jometon, A., Perez, M., Lazaro, E., Amayar, I., Lopez-Paz, J. F., Oliva, M., Parada, P., Berrocoso, S., Iglesias, A., Cabarello, P., Martinez, L., & Barcena, J. E. (2014). Effectiveness of teleassistance at improving quality of life in people with neuromuscular diseases. *Spanish Journal of Psychology*, 17(86), 1–9.
- Morrow, J. M., Sinclair, C. D. J., Fischmann, A., Machado, P. M., Reilly, M. M., Yousry, T. A., Thornton, J. S., & Hanna, M. G. (2016). MRI biomarker assessment of neuromuscular disease progression: A prospective observational cohort study. *Lancet Neurology*, 15, 65–77.
- Norwood, F. L. M., Harling, C., Chinnery, P. F., Eagle, M., Bushby, K., & Straub, V. (2009). Prevalence of genetic muscle disease in Northern England: In-depth analysis of a muscle clinic population. *Brain*, 132(11), 3175–3186. <https://doi.org/10.1093/brain/awp236>.
- Phillips, M., Flemming, N., & Tsintzas, K. (2009). An exploratory study of physical activity and perceived barriers to exercise in ambulant people with neuromuscular disease compared with unaffected controls. *Clinical Rehabilitation*, 23(8), 746–755. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0269215509334838>.
- Rasmussen, M., Risberg, K., Vølle, A., & Skjeldal, O. H. (2012). Neuromuscular disorders in children in South-Eastern Norway. *Journal of Pediatric Neurology*, 10(2), 95–100.

Neuron

Marijke De Couck
Free University of Brussels (VUB), Jette,
Belgium

Synonyms

Nerve cell

Definition

Neurons are the basic building blocks of the nervous system, which includes the brain, the spinal cord, and the peripheral nervous system. These specialized cells are the information-processing units responsible for receiving, processing, and transmitting information by electrical and chemical signaling. Chemical signaling occurs via synapses, specialized connections with other cells.

Structure

Although the morphology of various types of neurons differs in some respects, they all contain four distinct regions with differing functions in the communication of information: the cell body (soma), the dendrites, the axon, and the axon terminals. Most neurons have multiple dendrites, which receive chemical signals from the axon termini of other neurons. Dendrites convert these signals into small electric impulses and transmit them in the direction of the cell body. The cell body contains the nucleus and is the site of synthesis of virtually all neuronal proteins. Almost every neuron has a single axon, which is specialized for the conduction of a particular type of electric impulse, called an action potential, away from the cell body toward the axon terminus. When an action potential reaches a chemical synapse, a neurotransmitter is released into the synaptic cleft. The axon terminals are the small branches of the axon that form the synapses, or connections, with other cells. A single axon in the central nervous system can synapse with many neurons and induce responses in all of them simultaneously (Lodish et al. 2000).

Classification

Neurons can be classified by their morphology and function. Functionally, we can distinguish afferent neurons, efferent neurons, and interneurons. Sensory neurons are afferent neurons that

convey information from tissues and organs to the central nervous system. Motor neurons are efferent neurons that transmit signals from the central nervous system to the effector cells. The interneurons connect neurons within specific regions of the central nervous system.

Neurons can also be classified anatomically into unipolar, bipolar, and multipolar neurons. Unipolar neurons are those where the dendrite and axon merge into a single process of the cell body. Bipolar neurons are those where axon and single dendrite are on opposite ends of the soma, while multipolar neurons consist of more than two dendrites.

Functions

Neurons connect to each other to form networks. Neurotransmitters are used to carry the signal across the synapse to other neurons (Lodish et al. 2000). The shape, structure, and connectivity of nerve cells are important aspects of neuronal function. Genetic and epigenetic factors that alter neuronal morphology or synaptic localization of pre- and postsynaptic proteins contribute significantly to neuronal output and function and may underlie clinical states. Furthermore, neuronal loss is one of the major pathological hallmarks of neurodegenerative disorders including Alzheimer's disease (AD), Parkinson's disease, Huntington's disease, and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. In daily mental functioning and psychiatric conditions, the pathways and amounts of neurotransmitters crossing between neurons influence and represent at the neuronal level such conditions. Examples include reduced serotonin in depression and aggression. Numerous studies have shown that neuronal stimulation can also influence behavior. For example, a study in rats showed that the stimulation of one single neuron in the somatosensory cortex can change the animal's detection behavior (Houweling und Brecht 2008). Thus, the neuron is the basic unit of the nervous system, and understanding its multiple functions is of pivotal significance in health and disease.

References and Readings

- Houweling, A. R., & Brecht, M. (2008). Behavioural report of single neuron stimulation in somatosensory cortex. *Nature*, 451, 65–68.
- Lodish, H., Berk, A., Zipursky, S. L., et al. (2000). *Molecular cell biology* (4th ed.). New York: WH Freeman.

Neuronal Nitric Oxide Synthase (nNOS)

► Nitric Oxide Synthase (NOS)

Neuropeptide Y (NPY)

Mustafa al'Absi
University of Minnesota Medical School, School of Medicine, University of Minnesota, Duluth, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Hormones](#)

Definition

Neuropeptide Y (NPY) is a 36-amino acid hormone expressed in multiple sensory, cerebral, and autonomic pathways. It is a highly conserved peptide reflecting its important role in the body.

In 1982, NPY was isolated from the hypothalamus, and early studies to characterize specific locations and functions of this neuropeptide documented the presence of NPY neurons within the paraventricular nucleus (PVN) of the hypothalamus. Subsequent experiments using a technique called in situ hybridization also found the highest cellular levels of NPY messenger RNA within the arcuate nucleus of the hypothalamus. Research has also demonstrated the presence of NPY in other areas within the brainstem, monoaminergic neurons, and GABAergic neurons in the cortex. Peripherally, NPY is present in

sympathetic nerve fibers and innervated organs including the blood vessels, heart, gastrointestinal tract, thyroid gland, and sensory nerves.

Several receptors are targeted by NPY and these receptors are widely distributed throughout the body. These include subtypes Y1 and Y5 receptors which mediate effects of NPY on appetite stimulation, and receptors Y2 and Y4 which mediate NPY effects on appetite reduction. The wide distribution of these receptors results in various effects on multiple central and peripheral functions. These effects can be a result of direct NPY action or indirect though influencing other neurotransmitters, such as norepinephrine and glutamate.

NPY Functions

NPY plays a significant role in a number of physiological and behavioral processes. It is involved in regulating emotions, energy balance, and cognitive functions. NPY increases food intake while also increasing rate and proportion of nutrients storage as fat. It may also interrupt pain processing leading to analgesic effects. Administering NPY by injecting it directly into the PVN leads to increases in the release of corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH). Because CRH is involved in regulating various psychological and stress-related processes, it is thought that NPY is indirectly involved in these processes.

NPY and Appetite Regulation

The involvement of NPY in appetite regulation has received significant attention over the last 20 years, with animal research documenting NPY orexigenic effect. Studies on rats and using multiple methodologies, including immunochemical and in situ hybridization techniques, have shown that activation of NPY neurons increases food intake. Injecting the NPY agonist dexamethasone into the third ventricle or the hypothalamus increases appetite. Consistent results were also found when using antagonists that block NPY receptor. The blocking effect led to reduction in NPY neuron activity and reduction in food intake. When the receptors that inhibit the release of NPY (called autoreceptor Y2) were activated in the

arcuate nucleus reduction in appetite was noted. Blocking these autoreceptors also led to the reverse effect of increased food intake. Studies that used genetically obese rats have also been conducted to investigate the role of NPY and found that NPY contributes to obesity through direct and indirect pathways. For example, both NPY mRNA and NPY release are high in obesity animal models. Factors that contribute to obesity, such as glucocorticoids, also increase NPY release. Other hormones that block NPY, such as leptin, have also been found to reduce appetite and reduce risk for obesity.

NPY and Emotion Regulation

NPY is involved in the regulation of emotional and affective behaviors. It also influences cognition functions and pain perception. For example, several of the NPY hypothalamic functions have been found to be dysregulated in depression. Hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis functions and disruption of appetite regulation in addition to disrupted circadian rhythm occur in depression and have been attributed to certain abnormalities of NPY functions. When NPY is administered into the hypothalamic PVN, it increased ACTH and corticosterone. It is also known that NPY fibers directly innervate CRH-producing neurons within PVN, and injection of NPY increases CRH levels. Patients with depression show decreased levels of NPY in CSF. Similar observation was found in suicide victims. Pharmacological treatment for depression using tricyclic antidepressants and treatment using electroconvulsive shocks were associated with increased NPY in multiple areas of the brain. Research also suggests that depressive symptoms associated with withdrawal from a stimulant like cocaine may be related to reduced levels of NPY caused by chronic drug use.

Studies related to anxiety have also shown a negative association between the level of anxiety and NPY levels in cerebrospinal fluid. Observational research using electrophysiological and behavioral approaches in multiple models of anxiety has demonstrated anxiolytic effects of NPY when administered intracerebroventricularly. This research has also been advanced toward pinpointing specific structures that are involved

in this effect of NPY and has shown that localized microinjection into the central nucleus of the amygdala was specifically effective in producing NPY anti-anxiety effects. NPY anxiolytic effect in the amygdala appears to be mediated by Y1 receptor. Considering that this location is where multiple stress-response factors and neurochemical pathway also interact suggests that NPY plays a significant role in regulating the stress response.

Studies both in humans and in animals indicate the possibility that NPY is directly involved in regulating the stress response and emotional reactivity. In humans, observational studies have indicated that NPY may have anxiolytic effects and may help in coping with stress by facilitating speedy recovery after exposure to intense stressors. Related to this, one study in veterans with post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) measured plasma NPY and compared them with veterans with no PTSD. The study found that veterans who did not suffer from PTSD had higher NPY levels than those with PTSD, suggesting that NPY may be a marker of the ability to recover from stress. On the other hand, studies in both mice and monkeys have demonstrated that exposure to repeated stress leads to increased NPY release. This is a similar effect to that seen when the animal ingests a high fat, high sugar diet. It is possible that the increased NPY concentrations contribute to increased fat buildup, especially around the waist and abdomen, and the effects of chronic stress on metabolism function are mediated by NPY.

Cross-References

- [Anxiety](#)
- [Appetite and Appetite Regulation](#)
- [Depression](#)
- [Leptin](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Readings

- Allen, Y. S., Adrian, T. E., Allen, J. M., Tatemoto, K., Crow, T. J., Bloom, S. R., et al. (1983). Neuropeptide Y distribution in the rat brain. *Science*, 221, 877–879.

- Morales-Medina, J. C., Dumont, Y., & Quirion, R. (2010). A possible role of neuropeptide Y in depression and stress. *Brain Research*, 1314, 194–205.
- Yehuda, R., Brand, S., & Yang, R. K. (2006). Plasma neuropeptide Y concentrations in combat exposed veterans: Relationship to trauma exposure, recovery from PTSD, and coping. *Biological Psychiatry*, 59, 660–663.

Neuropsychological Assessment

► Neuropsychology

Neuropsychology

Richard Hoffman

Academic Health Center, School of Medicine-Duluth Campus University of Minnesota, Duluth, MN, USA

Synonyms

Brain-behavior relationships; Neurobehavioral assessment; Neurocognitive assessment; Neuropsychological assessment

Definition

Neuropsychology is a subdivision of the field of psychology that is concerned with the investigation of brain-behavior relationships. The broad category of neuropsychology can be further divided into experimental neuropsychology and clinical neuropsychology, with this latter specialty definable as an applied science focusing on the behavioral sequelae and manifestations of brain dysfunction.

Description

Neuropsychology is currently one of the fastest-growing scientific specialty areas in the field of

psychology, and the subspecialty area of human clinical neuropsychology is of direct relevance to behavior medicine practitioners and researchers as well as physicians in clinical practice, especially neurologists and neurosurgeons. Neuropsychologists in clinical practice use a variety of specially constructed tests and test batteries to assess the functional effects of brain trauma, infection, neoplasias, and structural changes to the brain (including vascular abnormalities and strokes) as well as degenerative central nervous system disorders, cortical and subcortical dementias, and progressive disorders of the nervous system, such as multiple sclerosis, Huntington's disease, and Parkinson's disease. Specialized neuropsychological test batteries have been constructed to investigate the neurocognitive effects of alcohol and drugs of abuse, assess the functional effects of epilepsy and diabetes, and assess the effects of neurotoxins and hypoxia. More recently, neuropsychological assessment has played a key role in delineating cognitive sequelae related to medical disorders such as autonomic nervous system disorders, cardiovascular diseases, endocrine and metabolic disorders, rheumatologic conditions, and immune-mediated disease. In the field of neuropsychiatry, the neuropsychology of schizophrenia and mood and affective disorders has been extensively studied, and neuropsychological impairments have been identified that are independent of medication effects or the psychiatric illnesses themselves.

Modern clinical neuropsychology is very much a hybrid specialty, with influences from – and ties to – neurology, neurosurgery, neuroimaging (especially functional neuroimaging), neuropsychiatry, cognitive psychology, neuroscience, and clinical psychology as well as significant advances that have been made in experimental neuropsychology, particularly in the areas of memory and learning. This is reflected in the broad range of functional domains that are examined in neuropsychological assessment, as noted in Table 1.

Specialized neuropsychological test batteries have been developed for child and pediatric populations in addition to the adult and aged adult populations, and neuropsychological

Neuropsychology, Table 1 Domains of brain-behavior functioning in neuropsychological assessment

Orientation and general mental status
Estimation of premorbid status
Potential for malingering/symptom validity testing
Sensory deficits and paresthesias
Motor and gait disturbances
Psychomotor activity and speed of information processing
Processing efficiency and reaction time
Response inhibition
Visual search and visuomotor scanning
Psychomotor efficiency
Speed of information processing
Motor speed
Grip strength
Disorders of perceptual function/apraxias
Attention and concentration
Mental speed
Visual attention
Auditory attention
Divided attention/visual monitoring and visual sequencing
Vigilance and sustained attention
Selective attention/freedom from distractibility
Working memory
Verbal abilities and language skills
Disorders of language functions/aphasias
Receptive language
Expressive language
Object naming/anomias
Verbal fluency
Phonemic fluency
Semantic fluency
Learning and memory
Visual learning and immediate memory
Verbal learning and immediate memory
Visual delayed memory
Verbal delayed memory
Long-term declarative memory and remote memory
Nondeclarative and procedural memory
Implicit memory
Incidental memory
Semantic and episodic autobiographical memory
Recognition and working memory speed
Spatial memory
Visual perception
Spatial cognition
Visuospatial skills and construction skills
Drawing skills

(continued)

Neuropsychology, Table 1 (continued)

Visual discrimination
Visuospatial construction
Visuospatial integration
Facial recognition matching
Executive functions and conceptual skills
Metacognitive functions
Cognitive flexibility
Abstract reasoning/concept formation
Planning and sequencing ability
Judgment
Decision-making
Novel problem-solving
Overall intellectual abilities
Crystallized intelligence
Fluid intelligence
Academic achievement skills
Emotional functioning, personality, and affect
Instrumental activities of daily living/competencies
Compensatory strategies

assessment is of great value in the assessment of developmental and learning disorders of childhood. Child and pediatric neuropsychology has close ties to both child neurology and behavioral pediatrics, in addition to child psychiatry and contemporary learning models in child psychology.

Neuropsychology is a relatively new area of scientific inquiry. Sir William Osler first used the term “neuropsychology” in 1913, but neuropsychology as an emerging scientific discipline can trace its roots to the contemporary psychology, experimental/cognitive psychology, and neurology of the mid-1930s. In 1935, Ward Halstead at the University of Chicago – in close collaboration with neurologists and neurosurgeons – carefully observed the behavior of brain-damaged patients and constructed a battery of ten functional tests or neuropsychological tests designed to provide a comprehensive assessment of the functional impairment seen in individuals with known injury to the brain. This was the first true battery of neuropsychological tests, later refined by Ralph Reitan at the University of Indiana (working closely with neurosurgery colleagues), culminating in the Halstead-Reitan neuropsychological test battery, which is still in use today. A contemporary of Halstead’s in Russia, the

neurologist and psychoanalyst A.R. Luria, carefully studied aphasia in the 1930s and later did extensive single-case studies in the 1940s of the effect of brain injury on the behavior of individuals, many who were injured in World War II. The legacy of Luria is reflected in contemporary neuropsychological assessment that emphasizes an individualized, hypothesis-testing approach to neuropsychological assessment, including careful observation of the qualitative responses of the patient examinee.

The earliest neuropsychological test batteries were designed to accurately and efficiently assess the type and extent of specific brain problems and the area or areas of the brain affected and were quite successful in doing so. At the present time, neuropsychological assessment can extend localization information already available from neuroimaging studies and also address in addition many more issues related to treatment planning, educational planning, and the impact of brain problems on a variety of tasks of daily living, some of which are listed in Table 2.

There are currently a wide variety of specialized neuropsychological test batteries that have been constructed to examine specific diseases or disorders, many of which are designed to be administered following one or more cognitive screening tests. There are also dozens of single neuropsychological tests designed to assess very specific areas of brain functioning. Many of the newer test batteries are hypothesis driven and symptom specific such that individual patients with the same medical diagnosis or disorder may be given different component subtests depending upon their specific presenting symptoms and performance on the initial tests given (the flexible battery approach). There also remain several fixed neuropsychological test batteries where all patients – or all patients with a given diagnosis or disorder – are given the same tests. Irrespective of whether a fixed or flexible battery approach is employed, the performance of the examinee is customarily compared relative to normative data of individuals without neurological disorder matched by age, gender, and education in order to arrive at reliable and valid conclusions. There has been a great deal of interest in the past decade

Neuropsychology, Table 2 Common diagnostic questions that neuropsychological assessment can help answer

Does the patient have an impaired memory and, if so, what does that mean for that patient and for the treating physicians?
Is dementia present and, if so, what kind of dementia and how severe is it?
Can the patient understand and follow health-care provider instructions regarding their medical care?
What is the patient capable of doing vocationally and can the patient return to work following a neurological injury? What components need to be included in the patient's rehabilitation plan? Is the patient a candidate for a cognitive rehabilitation program, and what should be included in this program?
Does the patient have only psychological or psychiatric problems, or do they have brain problems as well?
What problems remain for the patient following successful physical recovery from a head injury, stroke, or other brain injury?
What is the patient's capacity in a legal sense (can they drive a car safely, manage their money adequately, participate fully in legal matters such as criminal or civil trials, can they maintain professional licensure)?
What are the cognitive and functional effects of progressive illnesses as time progresses (dementias, brain tumors, progressive deteriorating disorders such as Huntington's, etc.)?
What is normal aging versus neurological disease/dementia?
Is the temporal lobe epilepsy patient a candidate for resection surgery?
Does the patient have specific learning disabilities/attention deficit disorder? What needs to be included in educational programming and follow-up?
Is the patient in need of a conservator or guardian? Are there neuropsychological deficits that require supervision, additional support, or placement out of the home (such as nursing home placement)?

in developing neuropsychological test instruments and neuropsychological test batteries that can be administered and scored using desktop or laptop computers, in some cases including the generation of short reports comparing patient performance to available norms as well as facilitating the creation of databases of neuropsychological patient test performance. Further development in this area, possibly including interfacing neuropsychological test data with existing neuroimaging data, may prove invaluable in both clinical practice and research.

Cross-References

- [Cognitive Function](#)
- [Cognitive Impairment](#)
- [Neurological](#)

References and Further Reading

- Armstrong, C., & Morrow, L. (Eds.). (2010). *Handbook of medical neuropsychology; applications of cognitive neuroscience*. New York: Springer.
- Davis, A., & D'Amato, C. (Eds.). (2010). *Handbook of pediatric neuropsychology*. New York: Springer.
- Grant, I., & Adams, K. M. (Eds.). (2009). *Neuropsychological assessment of neuropsychiatric and neuromedical disorders*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Joseph, R. (Ed.). (2013). *Neuropsychology, neuropsychiatry, and behavioral neurology*. New York: Springer Science and Business Media.
- Kolb, B., & Whishaw, I. Q. (2015). *Fundamentals of human neuropsychology* (7th ed.). New York: Worth Publishers.
- Kreutzer, J., DeLuca, J., & Caplan, B. (2011). *Encyclopedia of clinical neuropsychology*. New York: Springer.
- Lezak, M. D., Howieson, D., Bigler, E., & Tranel, D. (2012). *Neuropsychological assessment* (5th ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.
- McCarthy, R. A., & Warrington, E. K. (2013). *Cognitive neuropsychology: A clinical introduction* (2nd ed.). San Diego: Academic.
- Morgan, J., & Ricker, J. (Eds.). (2016). *Textbook of clinical neuropsychology*. New York: Taylor & Francis.
- Reynolds, C. R., & Fletcher-Janzen (Eds.). (2013). *Handbook of clinical child neuropsychology*. New York: Springer.
- Waldstein, S. R., & Elias, M. F. (Eds.). (2015). *Neuropsychology of cardiovascular disease*. New York: Psychology Press.

hypothalamus of cattle. It plays multiple physiological and pathological roles since it affects the nervous, cardiac, immune, and gastrointestinal systems, among others. NT is found in the central nervous system (CNS) and in the gastrointestinal system. It seems to play a role as an endogenous antipsychotic peptide and a role in colorectal cancer (Mustain et al. 2011). In cancer, NT and its receptor neurotensin receptor 1 have been found to play oncogenic roles. They mark prognosis in breast, lung, and head and neck cancers. Furthermore, NT seems to play a role in tumor growth as it acts as a growth factor as well as in promoting metastasis (Dupouy et al. 2011). These have important implications for drug development in the treatment of cancers as well. Dysregulation of NT also plays a role in schizophrenia and in the sensitizing reaction toward drugs, thus playing a possible role in addiction as well. Given this knowledge, NT can be a target in the treatment of such diseases (Caceda et al. 2006). NT is closely related to the dopaminergic system and has thus been studied in relation to diseases related to dopamine including Parkinson's disease. NT is widely distributed in the CNS and is projected in numerous circuits including the mesocorticolimbic circuit, implicated in pain and in the stress response. One study found that an NT receptor antagonist prevented from acute stress to induce cardiac mast cell degranulation (Pang et al. 1998), possibly of relevance to the effects of stress on cardiac diseases. Given its multipotent roles in regulation of behavior and in onset of diseases, NT requires further research in behavior medicine as well.

N

Neurotensin

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

Neurotensin (NT) is a multipotent 13-amino acid neuropeptide, originally found in the

Cross-References

- [Addictive Behaviors](#)

References and Further Readings

- Cáceda, R., Kinkad, B., & Nemeroff, C. B. (2006). Neurotensin: Role in psychiatric and neurological diseases. *Peptides*, 27, 2385–2404.
- Dupouy, S., Mourra, N., Doan, V. K., Gompel, A., Alifano, M., & Forgez, P. (2011). The potential use of the

neurotensin high affinity receptor 1 as a biomarker for cancer progression and as a component of personalized medicine in selective cancers. *Biochimie*, 93, 1369–1378.

- Mustain, W. C., Rychahou, P. G., & Evers, B. M. (2011). The role of neurotensin in physiologic and pathologic processes. *Current Opinion in Endocrinology, Diabetes, and Obesity*, 18, 75–82.
- Pang, X., Alexacos, N., Letourneau, R., Seretakis D, D., Gao, W., Boucher, W., Cochrane, D. E., & Theoharides, T. C. (1998). A neurotensin receptor antagonist inhibits acute immobilization stress-induced cardiac mast cell degranulation, a corticotropin-releasing hormone-dependent process. *Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapy*, 287, 307–314.

Neurotic Anger, Subcategory of Anger

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Synonyms

[Neurotic hostility](#)

Definition

This term refers to a type of anger which mainly reflects the affective component of anger. Neurotic anger (or neurotic hostility) is contrasted with antagonistic anger (or antagonistic hostility), which refers mainly to the behavioral component of anger (Dembroski and Costa 1987). Neurotic anger includes feelings of anger and is associated with the personality dimension of neuroticism-emotional stability, with neuroticism being the tendency to attend to, experience, and report negative affect. In contrast, antagonistic anger refers mainly to the agreeable-antagonism dimension of personality and includes disagreeable behavior, argumentativeness, rudeness, being evasive, and lack of cooperation. This distinction is of great importance in behavior medicine because studies have shown that mainly antagonistic, but not

neurotic, anger/hostility is the element of anger/hostility predictive of cardiovascular reactivity to stress and of coronary artery disease (Felsten 1996). Furthermore, some studies even suggest that neuroticism (which includes neurotic anger) may be a factor unrelated to survival (Costa and McCrae 1987). The latter authors suggested that neuroticism (which includes neurotic anger) is related mainly to self-reported but not to objective indices of health, primarily because self-reported indices are biased by perceptions and reporting of physical and emotional symptoms, strongly related to neuroticism. These perceptions are thought to involve less physiological overactivity, while antagonistic anger/hostility is thought to involve greater physiological reactivity, explaining its prediction of cardiac disease (Felsten 1996). In a study done on 103 healthy women, impulsive anger-out (similar to antagonistic anger), but not neurotic anger, was found to correlate with an unhealthy lipid profile (Siegmán et al. 2002). It has been suggested that the use of objective measures of disease could partly solve this issue as well as the use of measures of antagonistic anger/hostility. On the other hand, clinically, while individuals with neurotic anger may not always be more ill on objective measures, they suffer from excessive distress, for which they require psychological assistance.

Cross-References

- [Coronary Artery Disease](#)
- [Neuroticism](#)

References and Further Readings

- Costa, P. T., & McCrae, R. R. (1987). Neuroticism, somatic complaints, and disease: Is the bark worse than the bite? *Journal of Personality*, 55, 299–316.
- Dembroski, T. M., & Costa, P. T., Jr. (1987). Coronary prone behavior: Components of the type A pattern and hostility. *Journal of Personality*, 55, 211–235.
- Felsten, G. (1996). Five-factor analysis of Buss-Durkee hostility inventory neurotic hostility and expressive hostility factors: Implications for health psychology. *Journal of Personality Assessment*, 67, 179–194.

Sieglman, A. W., Malkin, A. R., Boyle, S., Vaitkus, M., Barko, W., & Franco, E. (2002). Anger, and plasma lipid, lipoprotein, and glucose levels in healthy women: The mediating role of physical fitness. *Journal of Behavior Medicine*, 25, 1–16.

Neurotic Hostility

► [Neurotic Anger, Subcategory of Anger](#)

Neuroticism

Leigh A. Sharma
Department of Psychology, University of Iowa,
Kenosha, WI, USA

Synonyms

[Negative affectivity](#); [Negative emotionality](#)

Definition

Neuroticism, broadly defined, refers to an individual's tendency to experience negative affect or negative emotional states (e.g., anger, anxiety, hostility, sadness); those high in neuroticism react more strongly to negative stimuli (e.g., threat, frustration, loss) than those low in neuroticism. Structural models of personality establish that neuroticism is linked to Digman's alpha, composed of negative emotionality and disinhibition, in a two-factor model; negative affectivity/negative emotionality splits from disinhibition in three- and four-factor models and emerges as neuroticism in a five-factor model (Markon et al. 2005). Most broad personality measures include a neuroticism scale (e.g., measures of the five-factor model of personality), and as early as 1984, authors were demonstrating the high levels of relations among these scales (Watson and Clark 1984). Neuroticism scores tend to peak in adolescence and decline

moderately through adulthood (Roberts and Mroczek 2008), and evidence demonstrates that females tend to score slightly but significantly higher than males (Costa et al. 2001).

Neuroticism is a dimension of normal personality, though it is linked to several psychological phenomena and behavioral tendencies. Evidence demonstrates neuroticism acts as a nonspecific vulnerability to the internalizing disorders (e.g., anxiety, depression) and that it can account for a portion of the comorbidity among them (Malouff, Thorsteinsson, & Schutte, 2005). Further, after controlling for sociodemographic variables, neuroticism has been linked to higher rates of smoking, drinking alcohol, and using illegal drugs; poor physical health; lower quality of life; and mortality from all causes (Lahey 2009).

Cross-References

- [Negative Affect](#)
- [Negative Affectivity](#)
- [Negative Thoughts](#)
- [Personality](#)
- [Trait Anxiety](#)

References and Readings

- Costa, P. T., Terraciano, A., & McCrae, R. R. (2001). Gender differences in personality traits across cultures: Robust and surprising findings. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 81, 322–331.
- Lahey, B. B. (2009). Public health significance of neuroticism. *American Psychologist*, 2009, 241–256.
- Malouff, J. M., Thorsteinsson, E. B., & Schutte, N. S. (2005). The relationship between the five-factor model of personality and symptoms of clinical disorders: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Psychopathology and Behavioral Assessment*, 27, 101–114.
- Markon, K. E., Krueger, R. F., & Watson, D. (2005). Delineating the structure of normal and abnormal personality: An integrative hierarchical approach. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 88(1), 139–157.
- Roberts, B. W., & Mroczek, D. (2008). Personality change in adulthood. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 17, 31–35.
- Watson, D., & Clark, L. A. (1984). Negative affectivity: The disposition to experience aversive emotional states. *Psychological Bulletin*, 96(3), 465–490.

Neurotransmitter

Susan Dorsey
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Definition

A neurotransmitter is a naturally occurring (endogenous) chemical messenger that passes a message from one neuron to the next by being released into the synaptic gap from the axon of the presynaptic neuron and then attaching itself to the receptor on the dendrite of the postsynaptic neuron.

Neurotransmitters allow neurons to pass on both excitatory and inhibitory messages when they fire. Excitatory messages mean that the next neuron is more likely to fire having received the message, while inhibitory messages mean that the next neuron is less likely to fire.

Some chemicals act as both neurotransmitters and hormones. Neurotransmitters can only influence neurons that come into contact with by traveling over the very small gaps at synapses. In contrast, hormones are secreted by endocrine glands into the blood stream, which carries them around the body and enables them to affect cells that are distant from their point of origin. Another major difference is that neurotransmitters exert their influence for a very brief time: reuptake or chemical decomposition takes place very quickly. In contrast, once released into the blood stream, hormones remain present, and hence active, for much longer.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Central Nervous System](#)
- ▶ [Dopamine](#)
- ▶ [Epinephrine](#)
- ▶ [Serotonin](#)

New Drug Development

- ▶ [Pharmaceutical Industry: Research and Development](#)

NHIS

- ▶ [National Health Interview Survey](#)

Nicotine

Motohiro Nakajima and Mustafa al'Absi
University of Minnesota Medical School, School of Medicine, University of Minnesota, Duluth, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Cigarette](#); [Smoking](#); [Tobacco](#)

Definition

Nicotine is a psychostimulant alkaloid that is addictive and heavily used in cigarettes and other tobacco-related products. It is primarily metabolized by the liver to cotinine, and the average half-life is 2 h.

Description

Upon administration, nicotine binds to nicotinic cholinergic receptors (nAChRs), ligand-gated ion channels composed of several subunits, that are located in central and peripheral nervous systems. Stimulation of nAChRs by nicotine leads to the release of various neurotransmitters. Of those, dopamine secreted in the mesolimbic area and the frontal cortex mediates pleasurable experience and rewarding pathways linked to the positive

reinforcement of nicotine (Benowitz 2010). Other neurotransmitters, such as norepinephrine, acetylcholine, glutamate, serotonin, beta-endorphin, and gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA), are also released in response to nicotine and mediate its effects on attention, tension reduction, and appetite suppression. These symptoms are commonly cited motivators of tobacco use by smokers. Nicotine activates the sympathetic nervous system which leads to the release of epinephrine from the adrenal medulla, eventually increasing heart rate, blood pressure, and cardiac output. Nicotine excites paraventricular nucleus in the hypothalamus leading to the release of corticotrophin-releasing factors (CRF), causing the release of adrenocorticotropin (ACTH) from the anterior pituitary, promoting the production of cortisol in the adrenal cortex (i.e., hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenocortical (HPA) axis). Nicotine-induced activation of cardiovascular and HPA functions are very similar to those changes observed during stress. Nicotine modulates pain perception: It induces analgesia via endogenous opioid system. Nicotine may also play a role in stress-induced analgesia through increased activity in the cardiovascular system. Taken together, acute exposure to nicotine activates multiple central neurochemical regulatory systems that influence psychological and physiological processes and behavior. Pharmacological effects of nicotine play an important role in the development of nicotine dependence and addiction.

Repeated exposure to nicotine leads to tolerance or neuroadaptation to the effects of nicotine. Desensitization of nAChRs in the central system may contribute to abstinence-related withdrawal symptoms and craving. Nicotine withdrawal is associated with negative affect including anger, tension, depression, difficulty in concentration, impatience, insomnia, and restlessness (Hughes 2007). Absence of nicotine may also be linked to reduction of cardiovascular and adrenocortical activity. These symptoms typically peak within a few days of nicotine abstinence and may last for 2–4 weeks and are powerful determinants of smoking lapse and relapse (al' Absi et al. 2005).

Maintenance of nicotine intake may result from the combination of positive and negative reinforcement. Smokers may take up cigarettes to enhance subjective mood and pleasure (positive reinforcement) but also consume them to maintain levels of nicotine in the body to prevent withdrawal symptoms (negative reinforcement). Certain environmental cues associated with smoking may facilitate subsequent smoking behaviors due to conditioning. Genetic component may also contribute to these processes. Furthermore, chronic nicotine use may be related to structural and functional changes in various stress and emotion-regulations systems as well as endogenous pain modulation mechanisms, which may lead to increased withdrawal symptoms and risk for early smoking relapse.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Cortisol](#)
- ▶ [Dopamine](#)
- ▶ [Heart Disease and Smoking](#)
- ▶ [Smoking Behavior](#)
- ▶ [Stress](#)

References and Readings

- al' Absi, M., Hatsukami, D., & Davis, G. L. (2005). Attenuated adrenocorticotrophic responses to psychological stress are associated with early smoking relapse. *Psychopharmacology*, 181, 107–117.
- Benowitz, N. L. (2010). Nicotine addiction. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 362, 2295–2303.
- Hughes, J. R. (2007). Effects of abstinence from tobacco: Valid symptoms and time course. *Nicotine & Tobacco Research*, 9, 315–327.

Nicotine Dependence and Nicotine Addiction

- ▶ [Cessation Intervention \(Smoking or Tobacco\)](#)

Nicotine Patch

Jed E. Rose

Department of Psychiatry, Duke Center for Nicotine and Smoking Cessation Research, Durham, NC, USA

Definition

Nicotine skin patches are drug delivery systems that are worn on the skin and provide the user with a controlled dose of nicotine to assist in smoking cessation, by replacing the nicotine previously obtained from cigarettes. The ability of nicotine to permeate intact skin has been known for decades, but the first published study exploring the therapeutic potential of transdermal nicotine to ameliorate tobacco withdrawal symptoms appeared in 1985 (Rose et al. 1985). Previous work in the 1970s had developed transdermal patches for the delivery of medications such as scopolamine and nitroglycerin. Theoretically, transdermal drug administration has the advantages over oral delivery in providing a more uniform blood level of a therapeutic agent and avoiding first-pass liver metabolism. However, other theoretical considerations initially argued against the efficacy of providing a steady level of nicotine in treating tobacco dependence, since it was widely believed that smokers were addicted to rapid bolus delivery of nicotine from inhaled smoke, which could not be duplicated using a nicotine patch. Nonetheless, transdermal nicotine has been shown to be efficacious in aiding smoking cessation, approximately doubling success rates over placebo. In 1991, nicotine patches were approved for marketing in the United States as a prescription drug, and they have been available over the counter since 1996. Despite well-established efficacy (Stead et al. 2008), however, long-term success rates (1 year following treatment) are often only 10–15%.

The standard nicotine patch dose is 21 mg/day, similar to that of a pack of cigarettes; however, the delivery is more uniform than with cigarettes. After 6–8 weeks of wearing 21 mg/day patches, weaning doses are often recommended providing

14 mg/day for 2–4 weeks and 7 mg/day for 2–4 weeks. Combination therapy, entailing adding other forms of nicotine replacement, such as nicotine polacrilex (nicotine chewing gum) or nicotine lozenge, to supplement nicotine patch treatment, increases success rates beyond treatment using the nicotine patch alone.

Interestingly, the mechanism of action of nicotine patch therapy has still not been fully elucidated. One hypothesis holds that successful abstinence is facilitated by nicotine replacement due to the alleviation of nicotine withdrawal symptoms. However, while withdrawal alleviation is clearly obtained from nicotine replacement using nicotine patches, other mechanisms may be more important, such as the attenuation of the rewarding effects of cigarette smoking. When a cigarette is smoked after nicotine blood levels have been elevated from wearing nicotine patches, cigarettes are rated less enjoyable (Levin et al. 1994). Moreover, the odds ratio of preventing the first “lapse” following an attempt to quit smoking is only marginally increased by nicotine patch treatment. In contrast, the progression from an initial lapse to a relapse is markedly reduced (Shiffman et al. 2006). These results suggest that nicotine patch treatment helps smokers remain abstinent largely by affecting their reaction to the first cigarette smoked in a way that discourages the subsequent reuptake of smoking.

In a similar vein, studies in the last several years have shown that initiating nicotine patch treatment before a target quit date, while smokers temporarily continue to smoke, significantly enhances efficacy (Rose et al. 2009). Thus, as the rewarding effects of smoking are attenuated, smoking behavior declines, and smokers are better able to succeed in quitting when they reach their target quit date. Although not yet approved in the United States, pre-cessation use of nicotine patch has been approved in Australia, Canada, and the United Kingdom.

Cross-References

- [Nicotine](#)
- [Smoking Behavior](#)

References and Readings

- Levin, E. D., Westman, E. C., Stein, R. M., Carnahan, E., Sanchez, M., Herman, S., et al. (1994). Nicotine skin patch treatment increases abstinence, decreases withdrawal symptoms and attenuates rewarding effects of smoking. *Journal of Clinical Psychopharmacology*, 14, 41–49.
- Rose, J. E., Herskovic, J. E., Trilling, Y., & Jarvik, M. E. (1985). Transdermal nicotine reduces cigarette craving and nicotine preference. *Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, 38, 450–456.
- Rose, J. E., Herskovic, J. E., Behm, F. M., & Westman, E. C. (2009). Pre-cessation treatment with nicotine patch significantly increases abstinence rates relative to conventional treatment. *Nicotine & Tobacco Research*, 11(9), 1067–1075.
- Shiffman, S., Scharf, D. M., Shadel, W. G., Clark, D. B., Gwaltney, C. J., Paton, S. M., et al. (2006). Analyzing milestones in smoking cessation: Illustration in a nicotine patch trial in adult smokers. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 74(2), 276–285.
- Stead, L. F., Perera, R., Bullen, C., Mant, D., & Lancaster, T. (2008). Nicotine replacement therapy for smoking cessation. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews* 2008(1), CD000146. <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD000146.pub3>.

Night-Shift Workers and Health

Michele L. Okun

Department of Psychology, University of Colorado Colorado Springs, Colorado Springs, CO, USA

Synonyms

Grave yard shift

Definition

Shift work refers to a job schedule in which employees work hours other than the standard hours of 8 a.m. to 5 p.m. or a schedule other than the standard workweek – Monday through Friday in the USA.

Description

Human beings are by nature a diurnal species with a natural tendency among adults to sleep at night and be most active during the day. Society is largely structured to facilitate such tendencies, with most social interactions, familial gatherings, and work hours during the daylight hours. However, there is often occasion to diverge from these norms especially for work purposes. Today's society is driven by a 24 h mentality which demands that over 8.6 million people (in the USA) perform shift work (Kryger et al. 2005).

Circadian factors are a primary determinant of one's ability to cope with shift work. Humans are biologically wired to sleep during the night and be most active during the day. Certain biological processes determine the body's natural sleep–wake cycle, particularly the secretion of melatonin in response to the light–dark cycle. Such processes are not easily changed so as to shift the natural cycle. Some evidence indicates that sleep phase adjustment for a night worker, as measured by urine melatonin, can take as long as 5–6 days (90 min phase delay per day) before melatonin onset is readjusted to the new schedule.

In addition to endogenous determinants of the sleep cycle, there are other factors known as zeitgebers (time givers) that contribute to one's perceived normal sleep–wake cycle. Such zeitgebers include social factors like meal times and social gatherings and natural factors like daylight and night. These timing cues help orient the body to a certain time schedule and to encourage humans to be active during the day. However, for a night-shift worker who must be awake during the night, these zeitgebers can work against an individual's inclination to remain awake at night resulting in dysregulated immune, hormonal, and cardiovascular function, thereby contributing to poor health.

Domestic factors also play a big role in sleep and subsequent health of the shift worker. For the night worker, social, familial, and societal obligations often impinge on sleep time since they occur in opposition to the night worker's schedule. Moreover, many shift workers have families and homes to care for that often require significant attention during daylight hours. Not only do

these domestic factors inhibit a shift worker from obtaining adequate sleep during the day but they often impact the quality of the sleep he/she does get. Several consequences can arise from poor coping with a shift-work lifestyle, including a predisposition to depression and anxiety (Akerstedt 2003), as well as cardiometabolic stress and cognitive impairments (Kecklund and Axelsson 2016). Not surprisingly, shifting of one's sleep to the daytime hours can have negative consequences (Akerstedt 2003). Not only is shift work (and daytime sleep) in contradiction to most of the biological system's circadian rhythms, but it is a strong predictor in the development of chronic sleep disorders. For instance, shift workers have been found to have sleep maintenance insomnia as opposed to sleep onset insomnia, which results in a constant state of sleep deprivation. Surveys in Europe and in the USA have found that night workers get approximately 10 h less sleep per week than day workers. Akerstedt and colleagues found that there is a significant loss of Stage 2 and REM sleep among shift workers. Although a night worker's sleep loss can be partially attenuated by sleeping longer on days off, they are unable to "repay the debt" and still experience chronic sleep deprivation and its consequences.

Health consequences of shift work include cardiovascular disease, diabetes, and obesity. There are also associations with stomach problems and ulcers, increased depression, and risk for injury or accidents. Many of these adverse outcomes stem from dysregulation of metabolic, digestive, and immune processes that maintain alignment with the circadian rhythm. While important and often necessary for many people to perform shift work, it is imperative to understand and appreciate the significant toll that shift work can have on health and social relationships (Akerstedt 1990).

Cross-References

- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- [Metabolic Syndrome](#)
- [Sleep Deprivation](#)

References and Further Reading

- Akerstedt, T. (1990). Psychological and psychophysiological effects of shift work. *Scandinavian Journal of Work, Environment & Health*, 16(Suppl. 1), 67–73.
- Akerstedt, T. (2003). Shift work and disturbed sleep/wakefulness. *Occupational Medicine*, 53(2), 89–94.
- Kecklund, G., & Axelsson, J. (2016). Health consequences of shift work and insufficient sleep. *BMJ*, 355, i5210.
- Kryger, M., Roth, T., & Derent, W. (2005). *Principles and practice of sleep medicine*. Philadelphia: Elsevier Saunders.
- van Drongelen, A., Boot, C. R., Merkus, S. L., Smid, T., & van der Beek, A. J. (2011). The effects of shift work on body weight change – A systematic review of longitudinal studies. *Scandinavian Journal of Work, Environment & Health*, 37(4), 263–275.

Nitric Oxide Synthase (NOS)

Sarah Aldred
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Endothelial nitric oxide synthase \(eNOS\)](#); [Inducible nitric oxide synthase \(iNOS\)](#); [Neuronal nitric oxide synthase \(nNOS\)](#)

Definition

Nitric oxide synthase (NOS) is an enzyme which catalyzes the formation of nitric oxide (NO). NO is a free radical gas, which acts as a vasodilator, and is formed from the amino acid arginine. NOS comprises a family of enzymes which were first described in 1989. NOS is present in the human body in three distinct isoforms: neuronal NOS (nNOS) found predominantly in neuronal tissue, inducible NOS (iNOS) being inducible in a wide range of cells and tissues, and endothelial NOS (eNOS) which was first found in vascular endothelial cells.

Description

Three distinct genes for the human NOS isoforms exist, with 51–57% homology between the human isoforms in primary amino acid sequence. The similarity in genomic structure indicates a common ancestral NOS gene. The isoforms are classified by the tissue in which they were originally found, although it is now known that expression of these enzymes also occurs in other cell types, such as cardiac muscle, skeletal muscle, and blood platelets. The NOS enzymes are dimeric in their active form, and function is facilitated by the cofactors NADPH (nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate-oxidase) and tetrahydrobiopterin (BH₄). Other cofactors are calmodulin/calcium, heme, flavin mononucleotide (FMD), and flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD). A summary of the reaction catalyzed by NOS can be written as:



The enzyme consists of two domains, an oxygenase and a reductase domain, which both have catalytic activities. Binding sites for heme and BH₄ reside on the oxygenase domain and are linked to the reductase domain through a binding site for calmodulin. The binding sites for FAD and FMD are also found on the reductase domain. To allow production of NO, the enzyme must be fully coupled through BH₄. Deficiencies in any of the cofactors can influence NO biosynthesis.

iNOS and nNOS are soluble and found predominantly in the cytosol, while eNOS is a membrane-associated protein, docked to regions of the plasma membrane called caveolae.

nNOS

nNOS was initially identified in neuronal cells, but has since been identified in the many other cells including those of the gastrointestinal tract. It has a role in NO production for sphincter relaxation and blood flow and modulates the response to glutamate.

iNOS

iNOS as its name suggests is inducible. It is calcium insensitive, in contrast to the calcium-sensitive isoforms nNOS and eNOS. iNOS is linked with the immune response. Previous research in this field has identified that iNOS is expressed as a result of inflammation, but its role in inflammatory disease is a complex one. iNOS has also been implicated in attenuation or suppression of inflammatory tissue injury. In addition, NO forms part of the nonspecific immune defense mechanism against invading microorganisms. NO and superoxide ions are produced in response to microorganisms and react together to form the reactive ion peroxynitrite which, with NO, has the ability to react with and kill invading cells.

eNOS

eNOS is present in the cells of the endothelium, and its main function is to regulate blood flow and blood pressure. eNOS is activated by the pulsatile flow of blood causing a small release of NO with every heart beat. When intracellular levels of calcium increase, eNOS detaches from the plasma membrane and becomes activated. The requirement for calcium is significantly reduced if the enzyme becomes phosphorylated on one of its serine residues, and phosphorylation is now recognized as a common mechanism for activation of eNOS.

More details can be found in Packer (1996).

Cross-References

► [Oxidative Stress](#)

References and Further Reading

Packer, L. (Ed.). (1996). *Nitric oxide, part A: Sources and detection of NO; NO synthase: Sources and detection of NO; NO synthase pt. A (methods in enzymology)* (Vol. 268). San Diego: Academic.

Nocebo and Nocebo Effect

Magne Arve Flaten

Department of Psychology, University of Tromsø,
Tromsø, Norway

Synonyms

Anxiety; Context effect; Expectancy

Definition

A nocebo is any inert substance, procedure, apparatus, or similar that alone has no effect in the body. The nocebo effect is the psychological and/or physiological response to the nocebo when it is administered with a suggestion that the substance, procedure, apparatus, or similar will increase pain or unpleasantness, or otherwise harm the individual.

Description

Placebo comes from the Latin word “nocere” which means “I will harm” and has been used in medicine to describe treatments that worsen or induce symptoms in the patient, without having a specific effect on the symptom.

A nocebo effect may occur when a substance, procedure, or other stimulus is administered to a person together with a suggestion that this will increase pain or unpleasantness, or in some way harm the person. The nocebo effect occurs whether or not the substance or procedure is harmful or painful. Thus, a substance or procedure that induces a placebo effect may, when administered with the opposite suggestion, induce a nocebo effect (Flaten et al. 1999). The nocebo effect may consequently be considered the opposite of the placebo effect.

Nocebo effects have mostly been studied in the field of pain. The effect may be observed as an increase in pain report to a painful stimulus after suggestion that the pain will increase, although

the stimulus is kept at constant levels. The nocebo effect may also be observed as the induction of pain by a non-painful stimulus that is administered with information that it will induce pain (Colloca et al. 2008). Nocebo effects have also been observed in asthmatic patients and in nausea, but are not well researched outside the field of pain.

Brain imaging studies have shown that nocebo effects are associated with further increases in brain regions activated by painful stimulation, i.e., a painful stimulus activates certain brain regions (often the anterior cingulate cortex and insula), the activation of which have been found to be further increased by expectation that the pain will become more intense. These effects are the opposite of those observed during placebo analgesia.

One mechanism underlying nocebo effects is most likely anxiety. Information that a procedure or substance will induce pain or may harm induces anxiety, which in turn increases pain. Administration of an anxiolytic reduces nocebo hyperalgesia. Furthermore, blockade of cholecystokinin, a hormone associated with anxiety, has been found to block completely nocebo hyperalgesia (Benedetti et al. 2007).

Nocebo effects are clinically relevant for diagnostic or therapeutic medical procedures. Injections of anesthetics, e.g., may be made painful, or more painful, if the information provided by health personnel performing these procedures induces nervousness or anxiety in the patient (Varela et al. 2010).

Cross-References

- [Functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging \(fMRI\)](#)
- [Pain](#)

References and Readings

- Benedetti, F., Lanotte, M., Lopiano, L., & Colloca, L. (2007). When words are painful – unraveling the mechanisms of the nocebo effect. *Neuroscience*, 147(2), 260–271.

- Colloca, L., Sigauo, M., & Benedetti, F. (2008). The role of learning in nocebo and placebo effects. *Pain, 136* (1–2), 211–218.
- Flaten, M. A., Simonsen, T., & Olsen, H. (1999). Drug-related information generates placebo and nocebo responses that modify the drug response. *Psychosomatic Medicine, 61*(2), 250–255.
- Varellman, D., Pancaro, C., Capiello, E. C., & Camann, W. R. (2010). Nocebo-induced hyperalgesia during local anesthetic injection. *Anesthesia and Analgesia, 110*(3), 868–870.

Noise-Related Hearing Loss

- [Hearing Impairment \(Noise Pollution Related\)](#)

Noncoding RNA

- [RNA](#)

Noncommercial Advertising

- [Social Marketing](#)

Noncompliance

- [Unintentional Nonadherence](#)

Non-exercise Behavior

Sally A. M. Fenton
School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation
Sciences, University of Birmingham,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Non-exercise physical activity](#); [Physical activity intensity](#)

Definition

Movement behaviors accumulated throughout the day that are not undertaken as part of structured, purposeful moderate-to-vigorous physical activity (MVPA) and exercise. These behaviors comprise sedentary behavior (e.g., sitting) and light physical activity (e.g., lifestyle-embedded activities of daily living).

Description

Movement should be conceptualized as a continuum, ranging from almost no movement at all (e.g., sedentary behavior, ≤ 1.5 metabolic equivalents) through to light physical activity (e.g., incidental movement, lifestyle-embedded activities, 1.6–2.9 metabolic equivalents) to moderate-to-vigorous physical activity, MVPA (e.g., running, playing sports, structured exercise, ≥ 3 metabolic equivalents) (Tremblay et al. 2010).

Evidence consistently demonstrates that MVPA has a key preventative role in risk and incidence of obesity, cardiovascular disease, type 2 diabetes, and some cancers (Physical Activity Guidelines Advisory Committee 2018). Consequently, government organizations globally endorse specific guidelines relating to the amount of MVPA necessary to accrue benefits to health (e.g., 30 min, 5 $\times$ week for adults). These prescriptive recommendations centered on accumulating “purposeful Physical Activity” are a key feature of public health guidelines.

However, while it is often MVPA and “exercise” that are considered necessary for health gains, we should not discount the health impacts of other “non-exercise behaviors” that occur lower down the movement continuum – i.e., sedentary behavior and light physical activity. These “non-exercise behaviors” comprise a variety of constituents, such as sitting, standing, ambulation, talking, fidgeting, incidental movement, and normal domestic and lifestyle activities, all of which occur ubiquitously throughout the day. Indeed, studies employing device-based assessments of behavior (e.g., accelerometers) indicate MVPA comprises $<5\%$ of the waking day, with the

remainder of the day involving sedentary and light physical activity (Hamilton et al. 2008). As such, while MVPA may represent an important biological stimulus for improving health and preventing disease, the relative dose of non-exercise behavior accrued by individuals across days, weeks, and decades may represent an important biological exposure in itself and may have substantial implications for health (Owen et al. 2009; Tremblay et al. 2010).

In recognition, the number of studies seeking to determine the health implications of non-exercise behaviors has grown exponentially in recent decades. In particular, observational evidence from both longitudinal and cross-sectional research demonstrates adverse associations between sedentary behavior with unfavorable biomarker profiles and with risk of developing major chronic diseases, such as cardiovascular disease, type 2 diabetes, and some cancers (Biswas et al. 2015; Patterson et al. 2018). Prospective epidemiological studies also suggest high levels of sedentary behavior may increase the risk of cardiovascular, cancer, and all-cause mortality (Patterson et al. 2018; Wullems et al. 2016).

Less research has focused specifically on understanding the role of light physical activity for health, but evidence reports reverse associations to those observed for sedentary behavior. For example, research indicates higher levels of light physical activity to demonstrate negative relationships with biomarkers of cardiovascular disease and type 2 diabetes (Healy et al. 2008) and reduced risk of all-cause mortality (Chastin et al. 2019). In addition, light physical activity and sedentary behavior are strongly inversely correlated, suggesting promoting light physical activity may be a feasible approach to ameliorating the negative health consequences of sedentary behavior. The potential benefits of replacing sedentary behavior with light physical activity have been demonstrated in research that statistically models the effect of substituting time in one behavior for another. Specifically, isothermal substitution studies indicate that replacement of sedentary time with light physical activity is associated with improved cardio-metabolic health (Grgic

et al. 2018) and reduced mortality risk (Rees-Punia et al. 2019).

Given this new understanding of health impacts of non-exercise behaviors, it is argued that there is now sufficient evidence for public health experts and health professionals to acknowledge the role of sedentary behavior and light physical activity in making recommendations about physical activity (Hamilton et al. 2008). Specifically, a “whole-of-day approach” to physical activity promotion is being increasingly advocated, which includes reducing sedentary time and increasing light-intensity activity (the “non-exercise” part of the movement continuum), as well as increasing MVPA (Hamilton et al. 2008; Tremblay et al. 2010).

With that said, a significant proportion of society may find engaging in MVPA a challenge and/or have not embraced an organized or structured program of exercise. For these individuals, reducing sedentary behavior, and replacing it with light physical activity, may be perceived as a relatively more feasible, achievable, and viable approach to increasing levels of physical activity (Biswas et al. 2018). This may be particularly true for older adults and patient groups, who are at increased risk of compromised physical function and mobility disability, and may therefore spend the majority of their day engaged in non-exercise behavior (Manns et al. 2012). Indeed, recent evidence suggests that replacement of 30 min/day of sitting (sedentary behavior) with light physical activity is associated with 14% mortality risk reduction among the least active adults (<17 min MVPA/day) (Rees-Punia et al. 2019).

Moving forward, experimental research confirming the health impacts of non-exercise behavior is critical to enable more specific guidelines to be developed regarding sedentary behavior and light physical activity. Such research should aim to (1) establish dose-response associations between non-exercise behaviors and pertinent health indicators, (2) identify potential moderators in these relationships (e.g., MVPA), and (3) explore the possibility of reverse causality (Ekelund et al. 2016; Xu et al. 2019). In addition, the physiological mechanisms underlying the associations between non-exercise behaviors

(and the act of replacing differing periods of sedentary behavior with light physical activity) with health outcomes and/or disease processes are not yet understood. As we move along the movement continuum, behaviors may provoke different physiological responses, resulting in activation of different biological pathways and varying implications for health. Studies of the biological responses to sedentary behavior and light physical activity are paramount for elucidating the physiological mechanisms operating at the non-exercise end of the movement continuum, which are responsible for the emerging link between non-exercise behavior and health (Tremblay et al. 2010).

Cross-References

- Exercise
- Physical Activity
- Physical Activity and Health
- Physical Activity/Inactivity: Objective Measurement of

References and Further Readings

- 2018 Physical Activity Guidelines Advisory Committee, P. A. G. A. (2018). *Physical activity guidelines advisory committee scientific report*. Retrieved from Washington, DC.
- Biswas, A., Oh, P. I., Faulkner, G. E., Bajaj, R. R., Silver, M. A., Mitchell, M. S., & Alter, D. A. (2015). Sedentary time and its association with risk for disease incidence, mortality, and hospitalization in adults: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 162(2), 123–132. <https://doi.org/10.7326/M14-1651>.
- Biswas, A., Oh, P. I., Faulkner, G. E., Bonsignore, A., Pakosh, M. T., & Alter, D. A. (2018). The energy expenditure benefits of reallocating sedentary time with physical activity: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Public Health*, 40(2), 295–303. <https://doi.org/10.1093/pubmed/idx062>.
- Chastin, S. F. M., De Craemer, M., De Cocker, K., Powell, L., Van Cauwenberg, J., Dall, P., et al. (2019). How does light-intensity physical activity associate with adult cardiometabolic health and mortality? Systematic review with meta-analysis of experimental and observational studies. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*, 53(6), 370–376. <https://doi.org/10.1136/bjsports-2017-097563>.
- Ekelund, U., Steene-Johannessen, J., Brown, W. J., Fagerland, M. W., Owen, N., Powell, K. E., et al. (2016). Does physical activity attenuate, or even eliminate, the detrimental association of sitting time with mortality? A harmonised meta-analysis of data from more than 1 million men and women. *Lancet*, 388(10051), 1302–1310. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736\(16\)30370-1](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(16)30370-1).
- Grgic, J., Dumuid, D., Bengoechea, E. G., Shrestha, N., Bauman, A., Olds, T., & Pedisic, Z. (2018). Health outcomes associated with reallocations of time between sleep, sedentary behaviour, and physical activity: A systematic scoping review of isotemporal substitution studies. *International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 15(1), 69. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12966-018-0691-3>.
- Hamilton, M. T., Healy, G. N., Dunstan, D. W., Zderic, T. W., & Owen, N. (2008). Too little exercise and too much sitting: Inactivity physiology and the need for new recommendations on sedentary behavior. *Current Cardiovascular Risk Reports*, 2(4), 292–298. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12170-008-0054-8>.
- Healy, G. N., Wijndaele, K., Dunstan, D. W., Shaw, J. E., Salmon, J., Zimmet, P. Z., & Owen, N. (2008). Objectively measured sedentary time, physical activity, and metabolic risk: The Australian diabetes, obesity and lifestyle study (AusDiab). *Diabetes Care*, 31(2), 369–371. <https://doi.org/10.2337/dc07-1795>.
- Manns, P. J., Dunstan, D. W., Owen, N., & Healy, G. N. (2012). Addressing the nonexercise part of the activity continuum: A more realistic and achievable approach to activity programming for adults with mobility disability? *Physical Therapy*, 92(4), 614–625. <https://doi.org/10.2522/ptj.20110284>.
- Owen, N., Bauman, A., & Brown, W. (2009). Too much sitting: A novel and important predictor of chronic disease risk? *British Journal of Sports Medicine*, 43(2), 81–83. <https://doi.org/10.1136/bjsm.2008.055269>.
- Patterson, R., McNamara, E., Tainio, M., de Sa, T. H., Smith, A. D., Sharp, S. J., et al. (2018). Sedentary behaviour and risk of all-cause, cardiovascular and cancer mortality, and incident type 2 diabetes: A systematic review and dose response meta-analysis. *European Journal of Epidemiology*. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10654-018-0380-1>.
- Rees-Punia, E., Evans, E. M., Schmidt, M. D., Gay, J. L., Matthews, C. E., Gapstur, S. M., & Patel, A. V. (2019). Mortality risk reductions for replacing sedentary time with physical activities. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 56(5), 736–741. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amepre.2018.12.006>.
- Tremblay, M. S., Colley, R. C., Saunders, T. J., Healy, G. N., & Owen, N. (2010). Physiological and health implications of a sedentary lifestyle. *Applied Physiology, Nutrition and Metabolism*, 35(6), 725–740. <https://doi.org/10.1139/H10-079>.
- Willems, J. A., Verschueren, S. M., Degens, H., Morse, C. I., & Onambele, G. L. (2016). A review of the

assessment and prevalence of sedentarism in older adults, its physiology/health impact and non-exercise mobility counter-measures. *Biogerontology*, 17(3), 547–565. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10522-016-9640-1>.

Xu, C., Furuya-Kanamori, L., Liu, Y., Faerch, K., Aadahl, M., Seguin, R. A., et al. (2019). Sedentary behavior, physical activity, and all-cause mortality: Dose-response and intensity weighted time-use meta-analysis. *Journal of the American Medical Directors Association*. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jamda.2019.05.001>.

Non-exercise Physical Activity

- [Non-exercise Behavior](#)
- [Physical Activity/Inactivity: Objective Measurement of](#)

Nonexperimental Designs

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Observational designs](#); [Observational studies](#); [Observational study](#)

Definition

There are two fundamental types of study design: experimental and nonexperimental (Piantadosi 2005). Experimental designs (discussed in their own entry) involve a series of measurements (observations) made under conditions in which the influences of interest are controlled by the research scientist. Nonexperimental studies are often called observational studies, but this term is inaccurate; it does not definitively distinguish between nonexperimental studies and experimental studies, in which observations are also made.

The term “nonexperimental” is not a relative quality judgment compared with experimental. This nomenclature simply distinguishes

methodological approaches. In some cases, non-experimental studies are the only type of medical study that can legitimately be used. If one wishes to examine the potentially negative health impact of a specific influence, such as exposure to nicotine via smoking cigarettes or living close to an environmental toxin, it is not appropriate for the research scientist to exert control over the influence of interest by asking some individuals to smoke or to live in a certain location. Rather, the research scientist makes use of naturally occurring cases of individuals who have and have not smoked and individuals who live close to and far from an environmental toxin to examine a potential relationship between the influence of interest and a specific health outcome.

Case-control studies and cohort studies are examples of nonexperimental designs.

Cross-References

- [Case-Control Studies](#)
- [Cohort Study](#)
- [Experimental Designs](#)

References and Further Readings

- Piantadosi, S. (2005). *Clinical trials: A methodologic perspective* (2nd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley.
- Rothman, K. J., Greenland, S., & Lash, T. L. (2008). Types of epidemiologic studies. In K. J. Rothman, S. Greenland, & T. L. Lash (Eds.), *Modern epidemiology* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Nonidentical Twins

- [Dizygotic Twins](#)

Non-insulin-Dependent Diabetes Mellitus

- [Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus](#)

Non-REM Sleep

Salvatore Insana
Western Psychiatric Institute and Clinic,
Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

N1, N2, N3; Quiet sleep; Sleep stages 1, 2, 3, and 4

Definition

Sleep can be measured with polysomnography (PSG) (see review, Keenan and Hirshkowitz 2011). Polysomnographically measured sleep can be classified into distinct behavioral categories. Non-Rapid Eye Movement (NREM) sleep is a distinct sleep behavior classification. NREM sleep is a term used to describe, as the name suggests, sleep stages that are not Rapid Eye Movement (REM) sleep. NREM sleep includes sleep stages N1, N2, and N3 as defined by the 2007 American Academy of Sleep Medicine (AASM) sleep scoring manual (Iber et al. 2007). NREM sleep is otherwise known as the combination of sleep stages 1, 2, 3, and 4 as identified by the Rechtschaffen and Kales “classic criteria” (Rechtschaffen and Kales 1968).

General descriptions of AASM scoring criteria for each NREM sleep stage are briefly stated. N1 is characterized by the expression of slow rolling eye movements, decreased muscle tone, and low-amplitude, mixed-frequency brain activity (4–7 Hz). N2 is characterized by K-complexes (a negative vertex sharp brain wave immediately followed by a positive wave that lasts ≥ 0.5 s) and sleep spindles (a train of brain waves with high frequency [11–16 Hz] and low amplitude that last ≥ 0.5 s). N3 is characterized by slow brain waves that are high amplitude (> 75 V), low frequency (0.5–2 Hz), and occur throughout $\geq 20\%$ of a given epoch. N3 sleep includes stages 3 and 4 sleep in the Rechtschaffen and Kales’

classification and is also frequently called “delta” or “slow-wave” sleep.

NREM sleep has been observed among all mammals (Siegel 2009). The function of human sleep, and particularly NREM sleep, is complex and unknown (e.g., Rector et al. 2009; Siegel 2009). Theories about the function of each NREM sleep stage are briefly mentioned. N1 serves as the transitional stage from wake to sleep. N2 components (spindles and K-complexes) are thought to integrate new memories and regulate arousal from sleep (Halász 2005; Tamminen et al. 2010). N3, or rather the amount of N3, is thought to reflect the homeostatic sleep drive, or one’s escalating need for sleep with increasing time awake (Dijk et al. 1990). NREM sleep appears central to memory formation; specifically, NREM sleep and REM sleep complement each other to process and consolidate various types of memory (Diekelmann and Born 2010).

Human development: From birth to approximately 6 months post-term, infant sleep patterns are classified into either REM or NREM; during this period, these classifications are also referred to as active sleep and quiet sleep, respectively (Grigg-Damberger et al. 2007). Following 6 months post-term, infant NREM sleep patterns become more complex, and then can be categorized into N1, N2, and N3 sleep stages – in addition to REM sleep. Across the life span, generally, the percentages of N1 and N2 sleep increase, whereas N3 and REM sleep decrease (Ohayon et al. 2004).

Cross-References

- Polysomnography
- REM Sleep
- Sleep
- Sleep Architecture

References

- Diekelmann, S., & Born, J. (2010). The memory function of sleep. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 11, 114–126.

- Dijk, D. J., Brunner, D. P., Beersma, D. G., & Borbély, A. A. (1990). Electroencephalogram power density and slow wave sleep as a function of prior waking and circadian phase. *Sleep*, 13, 430–440.
- Grigg-Damberger, M., Gozal, D., Marcus, C. L., Quan, S. F., Rosen, C. L., Chervin, R. D., et al. (2007). The visual scoring of sleep and arousals in infants and children. *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*, 3, 201–240.
- Halász, P. (2005). K-complex, a reactive EEG graphoelement of NREM sleep: An old chap in a new garment. *Sleep Medicine Reviews*, 9, 391–412.
- Iber, C., Ancoli-Israel, S., Chesson, A., Quan, S. F., & American Academy of Sleep Medicine. (2007). *The AASM manual for the scoring of sleep and associated events: Rules, terminology and technical specifications* (1st ed.). Westchester: American Academy of Sleep Medicine.
- Keenan, S., & Hirshkowitz, M. (2011). Monitoring and staging human sleep. In M. H. Kryger, T. Roth, & W. C. Dement (Eds.), *Principles and practice of sleep medicine* (5th ed., pp. 1602–1609). St. Louis: Elsevier.
- Ohayon, M. M., Carskadon, M. A., Guilleminault, C., & Vitiello, M. V. (2004). Meta-analysis of quantitative sleep parameters from childhood to old age in healthy individuals: Developing normative sleep values across the human lifespan. *Sleep*, 27, 1255–1273.
- Rechtschaffen, A., & Kales, A. (1968). *A manual of standardized, techniques and scoring system for sleep stages in human subjects. NIH publication* (Vol. 204). Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office.
- Rector, D. M., Schei, J. L., Van Dongen, H. P., Belenky, G., & Krueger, J. M. (2009). Physiological markers of local sleep. *European Journal of Neuroscience*, 29, 1771–1778.
- Siegel, J. M. (2009). Sleep viewed as a state of adaptive inactivity. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 10, 747–753.
- Tamminen, J., Payne, J. D., Stickgold, R., Wamsley, E. J., & Gareth Gaskell, M. (2010). Sleep spindle activity is associated with the integration of new memories and existing knowledge. *Journal of Neuroscience*, 30, 14356–14360.

Nonseminoma

- [Cancer, Testicular](#)

Nonsteroidal Anti-inflammatory Medications (NSAIDs)

- [Anti-inflammatory Medications](#)

Nonverbal Communication

Elizabeth Galik

School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Body language](#); [Kinesics](#)

Definition

Nonverbal communication is a complex system of communication that involves sending and receiving messages without the use of words. Nonverbal communication consists of a combination of (1) body movement (kinesics), such as gestures, posture, stance, and facial expressions; (2) touch (haptics); (3) eye contact and gaze, (4) bodily use of physical space, position, and proximity (proxemics), and nonverbal vocalizations that convey emotions or attitudes (paralanguage), such as laughing, crying, whistling, speech hesitancy, and tone. Research has indicated that 50–90% of social meaning is transmitted through nonverbal communication (Knapp and Hall 2007). Functions of nonverbal communication include expression of emotion and attitude, communication of interpersonal relationships, support or contradiction of verbal communication, reflection of personality, and performance of social rituals, such as greetings and farewells (Argyle 1988; Argyle and Hinde 1972). Nonverbal communication is particularly influenced by the function of culture (Agliati et al. 2006). An understanding of nonverbal communication can be applied widely in a variety of fields such as medicine, business, politics, psychology, education, and the criminal justice system.

References and Readings

- Agliati, A., Vescovo, A., & Anolli, L. (2006). A new methodological approach to nonverbal behavior analysis in cultural perspective. *Behavioral Research Methods*, 38(3), 364–371.

- Argyle, M. (1988). *Bodily communication* (2nd ed.). New York: Methuen.
- Argyle, M., & Hinde, R. A. (1972). *Nonverbal communication*. Oxford: Cambridge University Press.
- Buck, R. (1984). *The communication of emotion*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Buck, R., & Duffy, R. (1980). Nonverbal communication of affect in brain damaged patients. *Cortex*, 16, 351–362.
- Buck, R., & Van Lear, C. A. (2002). Verbal and nonverbal communication: Distinguishing symbolic, spontaneous, and pseudo-spontaneous nonverbal behavior. *Journal of Communication*, 52, 522–541.
- Ekman, P., & Friesen, W. V. (1969). Nonverbal leakage and cues to deception. *Psychiatry*, 32, 88–105.
- Ekman, P., & Friesen, W. V. (1975). *Unmasking the face*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.
- Knapp, M. L., & Hall, J. A. (2007). *Nonverbal communication in human interaction* (5th ed.). Wadsworth: Thomas Learning.
- Ross, E. (1981). The aprosodias: Functional-anatomic organization of the affective components of language in the right hemisphere. *Archives of Neurology*, 38, 561–569.

Norepinephrine/ Noradrenaline

Sabrina Segal
Department of Neurobiology and Behavior,
University of California, Irvine, CA, USA

Definition

Norepinephrine/noradrenaline is a catecholamine that is released as a stress hormone in the peripheral sympathetic nervous system via the adrenal medulla and initiates the fight or flight response. It is released as a neurotransmitter in the central sympathetic nervous system via noradrenergic neurons.

Norepinephrine is synthesized from dopamine by dopamine beta-hydroxylase through a series of enzymatic steps, beginning with tyrosine hydroxylase. This enzyme converts tyrosine to L-dihydroxyphenylalanine (L-DOPA), which in turn is transformed to dopamine by dopa-decarboxylase and packaged into storage vesicles. The membrane-bound enzyme, beta-hydroxylase, converts dopamine to norepinephrine within storage vesicles.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Catecholamines](#)
- ▶ [Norepinephrine/Noradrenaline](#)
- ▶ [Sympatho-adrenergic Stimulation](#)

References and Readings

- Cannon, W. B. (1914). The interrelations of emotions as suggested by recent physiological research. *The American Journal of Psychology*, 25(2), 256–282.
- Christensen, N. J. (1982). Catecholamines and essential hypertension. *Scandinavian Journal of Clinical and Laboratory Investigation*, 42, 211–215.
- Chrousos, G. P., & Gold, P. W. (1992). The concepts of stress and stress system disorders. Overview of physical and behavioral homeostasis. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 267(9), 1244–1252.
- Clayton, E., & Williams, C. (2000). Adrenergic activation of the nucleus tractus solitaries potentiates amygdale norepinephrine release and enhances retention performance in emotionally arousing and spatial memory tasks. *Behavioral Brain Research*, 112, 151–158.
- Coull, J. T. (1994). Pharmacological manipulations of the alpha2-noradrenergic system: Effects on cognition. *Drugs & Aging*, 5, 116–126.
- Kalat, J. W. (1992). *Biological psychology* (4th ed.). Belmont: Wadsworth Publishing Company.
- van Stegeren, A. H. (2008). The role of the noradrenergic system in emotional memory. *Acta Psychologica*, 127(3), 532–541.

Norms

Chad Barrett
Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado, Denver, CO, USA

Synonyms

[Social norms](#)

Definition

In the context of psychological assessment, norms refer to sets of scores from well-defined samples that are used for standardizing and interpreting

assessments. Norms are derived from sampling one or more groups of individuals and obtaining the distribution of scores on a particular assessment for each group. These sets of scores make it possible to interpret the scores of individuals who are assessed. The score of individual test takers can be compared to the scores from the group to which they belong. This provides a basis for comparison and makes it possible to interpret a person's score. For example, if a high school student obtains a certain score on an aptitude test, there is no way to interpret their score without comparing it to the scores of other high school students. If only 5% of their peers scored better than them, this would indicate that they demonstrated exceptional aptitude on the test relative to their peers. However, if 95% of their peers scored better than them, this would indicate that they demonstrated a diminished aptitude relative to their peers. Given that norms are essential for interpretation, it is important that norms be based on samples that are sufficiently representative of the populations they represent and large enough to minimize standard error (Kaplan and Saccuzzo 2008; Kline 2000).

Norms, also called social norms, refer to rules or standards of expected behavior that are shared by members of a certain group. Social norms shape individual group members' perceptions about the acceptability of certain behaviors (injunctive norms) as well as the type, and frequency, of behaviors that other group members perform (descriptive norms). A person's perceptions of social norms are often constructed by observing the behavior of other group members, by communicating with other group members, and by exposure to normative messages through media outlets and from explicit or implicit instruction (Dubios 2003; Hechter and Opp 2005). Social norms have been found to influence a variety of health-related behaviors, such as eating and exercise habits, alcohol consumption, smoking, drug use, and seeking medical help (Berkman and Glass 2000; Borsari and Carey 2003; McNeill et al. 2006; Shaikh et al. 2008; Sorensen et al. 2007). According to the social norms approach, individuals who engage in unhealthy behaviors often overestimate the extent to which others

engage in those unhealthy behaviors and underestimate the extent to which others engage in healthy behaviors. Such misperceptions predict the likelihood of engaging in unhealthy or healthy behaviors. Many interventions that focus on correcting such misperceptions by providing normative feedback have been successful in correcting such misperceptions and in promoting healthier behaviors (Berkowitz 2003, 2004).

Cross-References

- [Assessment](#)
- [Psychometrics](#)

References and Readings

- Berkman, L. F., & Glass, T. (2000). Social integration, social networks, social support, and health. In L. F. Berkman & I. Kawachi (Eds.), *Social epidemiology* (pp. 137–173). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Berkowitz, A. D. (Ed.). (2003). *The social norms resource book*. Little Falls: PaperClip Communications.
- Berkowitz, A. D. (2004). *The social norms approach: Theory, research, and annotated bibliography*. Unpublished manuscript. Retrieved November 22, 2011 from http://www.alanberkowitz.com/articles/social_norms.pdf
- Borsari, B., & Carey, K. B. (2003). Descriptive and injunctive norms in college drinking: A meta-analytic integration. *Journal of Studies on Alcohol*, 64, 331–341.
- Dubios, N. (Ed.). (2003). *A sociocognitive approach to social norms*. New York: Routledge.
- Emmons, K. M., Barbeau, E. M., Gutheil, C., Stryker, J. E., & Stoddard, A. M. (2007). Social influences, social context, and health behaviors among working-class, multi-ethnic adults. *Health Education & Behaviour*, 34, 315–334.
- Hechter, M., & Opp, K. (Eds.). (2005). *Social norms*. New York: Russell Sage.
- Kaplan, R. M., & Saccuzzo, D. P. (2008). *Psychological testing: Principles, applications, and issues*. Belmont: Cengage Learning.
- Kline, P. (2000). *The handbook of psychological testing* (2nd ed.). London: Routledge.
- McNeill, L. H., Kreuter, M. W., & Subramanian, S. V. (2006). Social environment and physical activity: A review of concepts and evidence. *Social Science & Medicine*, 63, 1011–1022.
- Shaikh, A. R., Yaroch, A. L., Nebeling, L., Yeh, M. C., & Resnico, K. (2008). Psychosocial predictors of fruit and vegetable consumption in adults a review of the

literature. *American Journal of Preventative Medicine*, 34, 535–543.

Sorensen, G., Stoddard, A. M., Dubowitz, T., Barbeau, E. M., Bigby, J., Emmons, K. M., et al. (2007). The influence of social context on changes in fruit and vegetable consumption: Results of the healthy directions studies. *American Journal of Public Health*, 97, 1216–1227.

Nosocomophobia

► [Hospital Anxiety](#)

Nosocomial Medical Errors

► [Human Factors/Ergonomics](#)
 ► [Iatrogenic Conditions](#)

Numerical Information

► [Data](#)

Numerical Representation of (Biological, Psychological, Behavioral) Information

► [Data](#)

Nurses' Health Study

William Whang
 Division of Cardiology, Columbia University
 Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Definition

The Nurses' Health Study is a long-term cohort study that has collected information about

cardiovascular and other disease risk factors, in addition to lifestyle factors, since its beginning in 1976 (Belanger et al. 1978). At the onset, 121,701 female registered nurses, aged 30–55 years, completed a questionnaire about their medical history and disease risk factors. The cohort has been followed up every 2 years with mailed questionnaires that update exposure information and inquire about newly diagnosed medical illnesses. Numerous analyses involving NHS data have been performed, including investigation of the impact of smoking cessation on long-term risks of coronary artery disease (Kawachi et al. 1994) and relationship between phobic anxiety and coronary heart disease events (Albert et al. 2005).

References and Further Reading

- Albert, C. M., Chae, C. U., Rexrode, K. M., Manson, J. E., & Kawachi, I. (2005). Phobic anxiety and risk of coronary heart disease and sudden cardiac death among women. *Circulation*, 111, 480–487.
- Belanger, C. F., Hennekens, C. H., Rosner, B., & Speizer, F. E. (1978). The nurses' health study. *The American Journal of Nursing*, 78, 1039–1040.
- Kawachi, I., Colditz, G. A., Stampfer, M. J., et al. (1994). Smoking cessation and time course of decreased risks of coronary heart disease in middle-aged women. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 154, 169–175.

Nutrient Intake

► [Nutrition](#)

Nutrition

Steven Gambert
 Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
 University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Dietary requirements](#); [Nutrient intake](#)

Definition

Nutrition is the process by which living organisms obtain nutrients and use them for proper growth and development, cellular metabolism, and repair. It is a process that involves the ingestion, digestion, absorption, transport, assimilation, and excretion of essential nutrients.

Description

Nutrition is the process by which living organisms obtain nutrients and use them for proper growth and development, cellular metabolism, and repair. It is a process that involves the ingestion, digestion, absorption, transport, assimilation, and excretion of essential nutrients. In order to insure an adequate “nutrition,” there are a variety of macro and micro-nutrients that must be obtained. While the body has the ability to utilize certain nutrients obtained through nutrition to provide the building blocks for cellular growth, maturation, and repair, some are essential and must be part of one’s nutrition. This is illustrated by the fact that although animal and plant protein contain 20 amino acids, 9 are considered “essential” and not able to be produced by the body itself.

Recommended Dietary Allowances are established by the Food and Nutrition Board of the National Research Council and represent the nutrient allowances thought to be necessary for the maintenance of good health (National Research Council, NRC 1989). Malnutrition is the state associated with either an under or over intake of essential components of one’s nutritional requirements including calories and specific nutrients such as protein, fat, minerals, and vitamins. Examples include obesity (an excess intake of calories), marasmus (a deficiency in caloric intake), kwashiorkor (a deficiency in protein intake), among other examples. Certain individuals will require intake above the minimum daily requirement of certain nutrients. One example is calcium. The RDA is 800–1,500 mg of elemental calcium daily. Individuals who are breast-feeding, pregnant, or who have metabolic bone disease should be at the higher range of intake.

Each individual utilizes nutrients differently based on genetic and environmental factors. Muscle has a higher metabolic utilization than fat and individuals with more muscle have a higher caloric requirement to maintain their body weight. Catecholamines and thyroid hormone play a role in our ability to up and downregulate our metabolism as well as the type of food we consume. For example, individuals who “nibble,” eating multiple meals throughout the day are metabolically different from those who “gorge” (one meal a day) their dietary intake even at the same level of caloric consumption. Eating only one meal a day (gorger) causes the body to function the rest of the day as it is starving and metabolically down-regulating metabolism. Not all foods are also handled the same in the body with only 78% of protein utilized by the body due to the increase in metabolic work needed to break down the protein bonds as compared to fat and carbohydrate that are utilized by the body at 99% and 98%, respectively.

Nutritional assessment may be done by assessing a variety of measures including body mass index. This is a calculated value that is determined by taking the weight in kilograms divided by the height in meters squared. A value of 19–25 is considered to be normal and values over 30 are considered to be obese. Another measure of nutritional status is pre-albumin with values of 20 or greater indicating adequate protein stores. A questionnaire (mini-nutritional assessment) can provide information to predict who is at risk of malnutrition (Kaiser et al. 2009).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Carbohydrates](#)
- ▶ [Nutrition Data System for Research \(NDSR\)](#)
- ▶ [Obesity](#)

References and Readings

- Kaiser, M. J., et al. (2009). Validation of the nutritional assessment short form (MNA8-SF): A practical tool for identification of nutritional status. *The Journal of Nutrition, Health & Aging*, 3, 782–788.

National Research Council (NRC) (1989). Diet and health: Implications for reducing chronic disease risk. *Report of the Committee on Diet and health, Food, and Nutrition Board* (750 pp). Washington, DC: National Academy Press.

Nutrition Data System for Research (NDSR)

Lisa Harnack
Division of Epidemiology and Community Health, School of Public Health, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Definition

Nutrition Data System for Research (NDSR) is a Windows-based dietary analysis program designed for the collection and analyses of 24-h dietary recalls and the analysis of food records, menus, and recipes. The system is developed and maintained by the University of Minnesota Nutrition Coordinating Center (ncc.umn.edu).

Description

Overview of NDSR

NDSR is a software application that may be used to quantify the food and nutrient intake of individuals, analyze the nutrient composition of menus, and calculate the nutrient composition of food recipes. Consequently, the program has both research and practice applications in the arena of behavioral medicine. Examples of its use include collection and analysis of 24-h dietary recalls from study participants to evaluate the effect of a nutrition intervention on food and nutrient intake. In clinical settings, NDSR is used to analyze food records kept by patients as a behavioral monitoring tool. Institutions such as hospitals, prisons, and colleges use NDSR in planning nutritionally balanced menus. The program is also used to calculate the nutrient content of recipes for publication in health promotion pamphlets, cook books, etc.

Food and Nutrient Database

The University of Minnesota Nutrition Coordinating Center (NCC) Food and Nutrient Database serves as the source of food composition information in the software. This database includes over 18,000 foods, including 7,000 brand-name products. Ingredient choices and preparation methods provide more than 160,000 food variants. Values for 162 nutrients, nutrient ratios, and other food components are generated from the database. Also, food group assignments are provided so that intake of food categories such as fruits and vegetables may be calculated. Missing nutrient values are kept to a minimum by obtaining nutrient composition information from a variety of sources and utilizing standardized imputation procedures (Schakel et al. 1988, 1997; Westrich et al. 1994). The database is updated annually to reflect marketplace changes and new analytic data.

24-H Dietary Recall Collection and Analysis

Dietary recall data gathered by interview are entered directly into NDSR. The software searches for foods and brand products by name. Sophisticated search algorithms locate the food, and the interview prompts standardize requests for more detail. Dietary intake data gathered by interview are governed by the multiple-pass approach interview methodology. Four distinct passes provide multiple opportunities for the participant to recall and clarify food intake.

Dietary supplement use may be assessed in conjunction with collection of 24-h dietary recalls using the Dietary Supplement Assessment Module included in NDSR. Use of all types of dietary supplements and nonprescription antacids is queried in the module. The database linked with the module includes over 2,000 dietary supplement products. A “missing product” feature in the software allows the user to add products to the database. The coding of foods and dietary supplements occurs automatically as data are entered. Calculation of nutrients occurs immediately and yields data per ingredient, food, meal, and day in report and analysis file formats.

Food Record, Menu, and Recipe Analysis

Data entry windows tailored for direct entry of food records, menus, and recipes are provided in NDSR. The coding of foods occurs as data are entered. Calculation of nutrients occurs simultaneously, allowing for generation of reports and analysis files immediately following completion of data entry.

Background and History

NDSR was developed and is maintained by the University of Minnesota Nutrition Coordinating Center (NCC). NCC was established in 1974 by the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI) to support the food-coding and nutrient-analysis needs of two historically significant national collaborative research programs – the Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial (MRFIT) and the Lipid Research Clinics (LRC). For these studies, a standardized mainframe computer-based food-coding and nutrient-analysis system was created by NCC in collaboration with NHLBI and outside experts in nutrition, statistics, computer science, and education (Dennis et al. 1980). This system was designed for in-house use, with NCC staff responsible for using it to code foods for nutrient calculations.

By 1977, NCC services were made available to other researchers studying the impact of diet and nutrition on various health conditions, including cardiovascular disease, cancer, hypertension, obesity, diabetes, age-related eye disease, and acquired immune deficiency syndrome (HIV/AIDS). In 1988, NCC released Nutrition Data System (NDS), a DOS-based software program designed to provide a standardized interview and direct data entry for collection of dietary intake (Feskanich et al. 1989). For the first time, coding of foods and amounts was computerized, providing immediate calculation of nutrient data. The software was developed for distribution to researchers for use on their own computers. A user manual, technical support, and training were among the services developed by NCC to support those using NDS.

Since 1998, NCC has worked to keep NDSR up-to-date with computer hardware and software

advances, and dietary intake assessment methodological improvements. In addition, major expansion to the nutrients and foods in the NCC Food and Nutrient Database has been made to keep the database current, with the ever-expanding food marketplace and the growing number of nutrients and other food components of interest to researchers and of importance to human health.

Cross-References

- [Fat, Dietary Intake](#)
- [Nutrition](#)
- [Nutritional Supplements](#)

References and Readings

- Dennis, B., Ernst, N., Hjortland, M., Tillotson, J., & Grambsch, V. (1980). The NHLBI nutrition data system. *Journal of the American Dietetic Association*, 77, 641–647.
- Feskanich, D., Sielaff, B., Chong, K., & Bartsch, G. (1989). Computerized collection and analysis of dietary intake information. *Computer Methods and Programs in Biomedicine*, 30, 47–57.
- Nutrition Data System for Research. <http://www.ncc.umn.edu/products/ndsr.html>.
- Schakel, S., Buzzard, M., & Gebhardt, S. (1997). Procedures for estimating nutrient values for food composition databases. *Journal of Food Composition and Analysis*, 10, 102–114.
- Schakel, S., Sievert, Y., & Buzzard, M. (1988). Sources of data for developing and maintaining a nutrient database. *Journal of the American Dietetic Association*, 88, 1268–1271.
- Westrich, B., Buzzard, M., Gatewood, L., & McGovern, P. (1994). Accuracy and efficiency of estimating nutrient values in commercial food products using mathematical optimization. *Journal of Food Composition and Analysis*, 77, 223–239.

Nutritional Supplement

- [Nutritional Supplements](#)

Nutritional Supplements

Steven Gambert

Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

Dietary supplement; Food supplement; Nutritional supplement

Definition

A nutritional supplement is a product available in any form that is intended to provide nutrients that are considered to either be lacking or insufficient in the diet. These may contain one of more of the following: vitamins, minerals, fiber, fatty acids, amino acids, and herbs or other botanicals. It is intended for ingestion in pill, capsule, tablet, powder, or liquid form and is not to be used as a conventional food or as a primary form of meal.

Description

A nutritional supplement is a product available in any form that is intended to provide nutrients that are considered to either be lacking or insufficient in the diet (US Food and Drug Administration). These may contain one of more of the following: vitamins, minerals, fiber, fatty acids, amino acids, and herbs or other botanicals. It is intended for ingestion in pill, capsule, tablet, powder, or liquid form and is not to be used as a conventional food or as a primary form of meal. While various countries regulate nutritional supplements in different ways, in the United States, nutritional supplements are regulated by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) as a category of foods, not drugs, and are not regulated by the National Academy of Sciences that provides the Recommended Dietary

Allowances (RDA's) (National Research Council 1989). Anyone wishing to market a dietary/nutritional supplement that contains a "new dietary ingredient" as defined as "a vitamin, mineral, herb or other botanical (Goldman 2001), amino acid, or dietary substance for use by man to supplement the diet by increasing total dietary intake or a concentrate, metabolite, constituent, extract, or combination of any of these must notify the FDA prior to marketing and receive approval as per the provisions of the Dietary Supplement and Health Education Act of 1994. Nutritional supplements must not be used for diagnosis, treatment, cure, or prevention of any disease. In 2007, the FDA implemented a 'current good manufacturing practices' policy to ensure that nutritional supplements are produced in a 'quality manner,' do not contain contaminants or impurities, and are accurately labeled." There are a wealth of products available that are characterized as nutritional supplements with a majority of persons in the USA reporting intake of at least one. While some nutritional supplements may have benefits based on limited studies, many have not been proven to have clinically significant benefits (Blendon et al. 2001).

Cross-References

► Nutrition

References and Readings

- Blendon, R. J., DesRoches, C. M., Benson, J. M., Brodie, M., & Altman, D. E. (2001). Americans views on the use and regulation of dietary supplements. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 161(6), 805–810.
- Goldman, P. (2001). Herbal medicines today and the roots of modern pharmacology. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 135, 594–600.
- National Research Council. (1989). *Recommended dietary allowances* (10th ed.). Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- US Food and Drug Administration. (2012). *Dietary supplement information*. Retrieved from <http://www.cfsan.fda.gov/dms/supplmnt.html>

O

Obesity

Chad D. Jensen¹, Amy F. Sato² and Elissa Jelalian³

¹Department of Psychology, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT, USA

²Department of Psychology, Kent State University, Kent, OH, USA

³Department of Psychiatry, Rhode Island Hospital, Brown Medical School, Providence, RI, USA

Synonyms

Overweight

Definition

The prevalence of obesity has increased dramatically in the USA and worldwide over the past 30 years. Obesity and its consequences represent a significant public and individual health concern. Generally, obesity results when there is a sustained energy imbalance such that caloric intake (i.e., through food and beverages) exceeds caloric output (i.e., body functions, physical activity). In adults, obesity is defined as a body mass index (kg/m^2) of 30 or higher and overweight is defined as a BMI between 25.0 and 29.9. In children and adolescents, obesity is defined as a BMI at or above

the 95th percentile for age and gender, and overweight is defined as a BMI at or above the 85th percentile. Current estimates suggest that 32% of men and 35% of women in the USA meet criteria for obesity (Flegal et al. 2010). Similarly, almost 17% of US children and adolescents (ages 2–19) are obese and 32% of youth are either overweight or obese (Ogden et al. 2010). Although increases in prevalence may have slowed over the past 10 years, researchers estimate that if the trajectory of obesity prevalence continues at present rates, almost half of US adults will meet criteria for obesity by 2020 (Stewart et al. 2009).

Obesity confers significant risk for individual medical, psychological, and social risks. Deleterious health effects strongly associated with obesity include cardiovascular disease, type 2 diabetes, certain types of cancers, sleep apnea, asthma, joint problems, depression, and suboptimal quality of life. Additionally, obesity represents a sizeable economic burden on society. The direct costs of medical care for adult obesity-related illness have been estimated to exceed \$147 billion annually (Finkelstein et al. 2009). Moreover, estimates suggest that increases in obesity-related illness explain 27% of the increase in overall health-care spending in the USA between 1987 and 2001 (Thorpe et al. 2004). Direct costs of childhood and adolescent obesity-related illness are estimated at 14.1 billion for prescription, outpatient, and emergency costs (Trasande and

Chatterjee 2009) in addition to 237.6 million for inpatient treatment (Trasande et al. 2009).

Given the high prevalence of obesity in children and adults, prevention and treatment approaches have received increasing attention. Individual and group interventions for obesity have adopted behavioral (i.e., “lifestyle”), pharmacological, and surgical approaches (Wilfley et al. 2007; Wadden et al. 2012). Establishing a healthy eating plan and attaining recommended levels of physical activity are key lifestyle components for both obesity prevention and treatment.

Cross-References

- [Diabesity in Children](#)
- [Nutrition](#)
- [Physical activity](#)

References and Readings

- Finkelstein, E. A., Trogdon, J. G., Cohen, J. W., & Dietz, W. (2009). Annual medical spending attributable to obesity: Payer- and service-specific estimates. *Health Affairs*, 28(5), w822–w831.
- Flegal, K. M., Carroll, M. D., Ogden, C. L., & Curtin, L. R. (2010). Prevalence and trends in obesity among US adults, 1999–2008. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 303(3), 235–241.
- Ogden, C. L., Carroll, M. D., Curtin, L. R., Lamb, M. M., & Flegal, K. M. (2010). Prevalence of high body mass index in US children and adolescents, 2007–2008. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 303(3), 242–249.
- Stewart, S. T., Cutler, D. M., & Rosen, A. B. (2009). Forecasting the effects of obesity and smoking on U.S. life expectancy. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 361(23), 2252–2260.
- Thorpe, K. E., Florence, C. S., Howard, D. H., & Joski, P. (2004). The impact of obesity on rising medical spending. *Health Affairs*, 23, 480–486.
- Trasande, L., & Chatterjee, S. (2009). The impact of obesity on health service utilization and costs in childhood. *Obesity*, 17, 1749–1754.
- Trasande, L., Liu, Y., Fryer, G., & Weitzman, M. (2009). Effects of childhood obesity on hospital care and costs, 1999–2005. *Health Affairs*, 28, w751–w760.
- Wadden, T. A., Webb, V. L., Moran, C. H., & Bailer, B. A. (2012). Lifestyle modification for obesity. *Circulation*, 125(9), 1157–1170.
- Wilfley, D. E., Tibbs, T. L., Van Buren, D. J., Reach, K. P., Walker, M. S., & Epstein, L. H. (2007). Lifestyle interventions in the treatment of childhood overweight: A meta-analytic review of randomized controlled trials. *Health Psychology*, 26, 521–532.

Obesity in Children

Elizabeth R. Pulgaron¹ and Alan M. Delamater²

¹Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

²Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Overweight children](#)

Definition

Obesity in children is defined as having a body mass index (BMI) at or above the 95th percentile compared to peers of the same age and gender.

Description

BMI is calculated from height and weight and plotted on a growth chart according to the child's age and gender. Obesity occurs when over time more calories are consumed than expended. Many factors affect obesity including poor eating habits, lack of exercise, family history, and psychosocial problems. Very few cases of obesity can be attributed to a specific disease.

Recent estimates indicate that nearly 10% of infants and toddlers and 12% of children and adolescents aged 2 through 19 years meet criteria for obesity in the United States (Ogden et al. 2010). Correlates of childhood obesity include genetics, environment, metabolism, behavior, culture, and SES. Children from ethnic minority backgrounds and lower socioeconomic status are at an increased risk of being obese. Obesity has a

strong familial component: if a child's parent is obese, there is a 50% chance that the child will be obese; if both parents are obese, the likelihood of the child being obese increases to 80% (Whitaker et al. 1997). Obese children have a high likelihood of remaining obese as adults (Freedman et al. 2005).

The consequences of being obese are potentially severe, including higher risk for cardiovascular disease, hypertension, dyslipidemia, stroke, impaired glucose tolerance, type 2 diabetes, cancer, breathing problems, joint problems, and fatty liver disease. In addition to health consequences, there are also psychosocial and emotional consequences of being obese. Obese children often experience bullying and teasing in school which is associated with poor self-esteem and low self-confidence.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Body Mass Index](#)
- ▶ [Overweight](#)

References and Readings

- Freedman, D. S., Khan, L. K., Serdula, M. K., Dietz, W. H., Srinivasan, S. R., & Berenson, G. S. (2005). The relation of childhood BMI to adult adiposity: The Bogalusa heart study. *Pediatrics*, 115, 22–27.
- Ogden, C. L., Carroll, M. D., Curtin, L. R., Lamb, M. M., & Flegal, K. M. (2010). Prevalence of high body mass index in US children and adolescents, 2007–2008. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 303(3), 242–249.
- Whitaker, R., Wright, J., Pepe, M., Seidel, K., & Dietz, W. (1997). Predicting obesity in young adulthood from childhood and parental obesity. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 337, 869–873.

Obesity Treatment

- ▶ [Lifestyle Changes](#)

Obesity: Causes and Consequences

Chad D. Jensen¹, Amy F. Sato² and Elissa Jelalian³

¹Department of Psychology, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT, USA

²Department of Psychology, Kent State University, Kent, OH, USA

³Department of Psychiatry, Rhode Island Hospital, Brown Medical School, Providence, RI, USA

Description

Obesity results from a complex interplay of biologic, environmental, genetic, and psychosocial factors that influence appetite, satiety, and food storage in the form of body fat. At a fundamental level, obesity results from a sustained positive energy balance; that is, consuming more energy than one expends over an extended period of time. Weight gain results from excess caloric intake, and weight loss results from greater caloric expenditure than intake. Thus, excessive caloric intake and insufficient physical activity are the primary contributors to obesity.

Biologic Influences

Research has demonstrated that energy balance is highly influenced by a complex biological system. This system balances the amount of fat in the body, partially by regulating the unconscious drive to eat (Friedman 2009). This drive to eat is adaptive in times of food scarcity but has become problematic given the relative abundance of high-calorie foods and limited physical activity participation in today's society.

Genetic Contributors

Although the dramatic increase in obesity is not genetic in origin, genes interact with environmental factors to give individuals in the same environment significantly different risks of becoming obese. Estimates of the heritability of obesity – the percentage of variability due to genetic

factors – range from 70% to 80%, indicating that genetics play a clear role in increasing one's vulnerability to becoming obese (Walley et al. 2009).

Perinatal Influences

Recent research has also highlighted the important contribution of the perinatal environment to development of obesity. Studies have demonstrated that severely obese mothers are much more likely to have obese children than previously obese mothers who lost weight prior to conception (Kral et al. 2006). These results highlight the significance of gene-environment interactions: Epigenetic influences play a critical role in one's likelihood of becoming obese.

Environmental Factors

There is increasing recognition of the extent to which environmental factors contribute to the rise in obesity. Indeed, American society has been characterized as an *obesogenic environment* that promotes excess eating and physical inactivity (Swinburn et al. 1999). Energy expenditure has decreased for most individuals in the developed world, largely because employment primarily consists of sedentary work, energy-saving devices limit physical exertion, and transportation requires little physical effort. In concert with decreases in physical activity, access to highly palatable, inexpensive food that requires little or no preparation has increased dramatically. These foods are often high in caloric content and contain high amounts of fat and sugar. Additionally, the food industry promotes consumption of these foods through aggressive advertising and promotion, a practice that has been shown to increase their consumption (Kumanyika et al. 2008).

Research has consistently demonstrated that attributes of the “built” environment (i.e., buildings such as homes, schools, and shopping centers, as well as the ways in which these buildings are configured within space) also contributes to the prevalence of obesity. Individuals who live in walkable neighborhoods with access to recreation facilities are more likely to be physically active and less likely to be obese. Residents of communities with ready access to healthful foods tend to have healthier diets and lower incidence of

obesity. Furthermore, environmental characteristics that contribute to obesity affect low-income and racial minorities disproportionately, contributing to higher levels of obesity among these groups (Sallis and Glanz 2009). Fast-food restaurants in particular have been identified as a key contributor to the rise in obesity, and these restaurants are more prevalent in low-income neighborhoods, a characteristic thought to partially explain the higher incidence of obesity among the poor (Powell et al. 2007).

Consequences of Obesity

A broad spectrum of medical, psychological, social, and behavioral consequences result from obesity. These consequences have been shown to arise from one of two factors: the increased mass of fat in the body of the obese individual and the risks resulting from metabolic changes associated with excess fat.

Consequences Due to Metabolic Changes

One of the most well-known risks associated with metabolic changes arising from excess fat is the higher incidence of type 2 diabetes mellitus. Associated conditions include insulin insensitivity and metabolic syndrome, a concurrence of elevated blood pressure, cholesterol, centrally deposited fat, and elevated blood sugar. Cardiovascular disease including hypertension is also a frequent consequence of obesity. Estimates suggest that as many as 50% of obese individuals suffer from hypertension. Excess body weight also increases the risk of heart failure. Increased cardiac work resulting from higher body mass raises the likelihood of cardiomyopathy and heart failure in obese individuals. Obese individuals are also at risk for nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, a constellation of liver abnormalities associated with obesity. Certain forms of cancer, including colorectal, prostate, and female reproductive and breast cancers, are more prevalent among obese individuals (Bray 2004).

Consequences Due to Increased Fat Mass

Medical comorbidities associated with increased fat mass include osteoarthritis, cartilage and bone metabolism problems independent of weight

bearing effects, and skin pigmentation and stretch marks. Obstructive sleep apnea risk is also greatly elevated in obese individuals.

Equally concerning are the psychosocial consequences associated with obesity. Obese individuals experience significant social stigmatization, including difficulty obtaining employment, education, and health care in addition to difficulties establishing and maintaining social relationships. Obese children are also more likely to have academic problems and to experience social difficulties, such as peer victimization and increased loneliness. Furthermore, obese individuals are more likely to report poor quality of life, depression, and disordered eating (Bean et al. 2008).

Obesity Shortens Life

The detrimental effects of obesity combine to shorten life for individuals with this condition. Although estimates of life-shortening effects vary, obesity has been shown to shorten life on a population level. Indeed, the rise in rates of obesity has overwhelmed the positive effects of reduced rates of smoking on a population level (Stewart et al. 2009). Individuals with obesity (BMI 30–39.9) have a reduced median survival rate of 2–4 years, while for those with extreme obesity (BMI 40–45), survival is reduced by 8–10 years (Prospective Studies Collaboration 2009).

Conclusion

In summary, obesity is caused by energy imbalance resulting from excess caloric input relative to expenditure. The increased rate of obesity observed in the USA over the last three decades has been attributed primarily to an interaction between biologic risk for obesity and an *obesogenic environment* that provides limited opportunity for physical activity and ready access to calorie-dense foods. There are a number of medical and psychosocial consequences associated with obesity, including cardiovascular disease, joint problems, type 2 diabetes, depression, social stigmatization, poorer quality of life, and abbreviated life expectancy. These consequences underscore the importance of prevention and

intervention efforts to ameliorate the negative consequences of obesity.

Cross-References

- [Nutrition](#)
- [Physical Inactivity](#)

References and Readings

- Bean, M. K., Stewart, K., & Olbrisch, M. E. (2008). Obesity in America: Implications for clinical and health psychologists. *Journal of Clinical Psychology in Medical Settings*, 15, 214–224.
- Bray, G. A. (2004). Medical consequences of obesity. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 89, 2583–2589.
- Friedman, J. M. (2009). Causes and control of excess body fat. *Nature*, 459, 340–342.
- Kral, J. G., Biron, S., Simard, S., Hould, F. S., Lebel, S., Marceau, S., et al. (2006). Large maternal weight loss from obesity surgery prevents transmission of obesity to children who were followed for 2 to 18 years. *Pediatrics*, 118, 1644–1649.
- Kumanyika, S. K., Obarzanek, E., Stettler, N., Bell, R., Field, A., Fortmann, F. A., et al. (2008). Population-based prevention of obesity: The need for comprehensive promotion of healthful eating, physical activity, and energy balance. A scientific statement from American Heart Association Council on epidemiology and prevention, interdisciplinary committee for prevention. *Circulation*, 118, 428–464.
- Olshansky, S. J., Passaro, D. J., Hershow, R. C., Layden, J., Carnes, B. A., Brody, J., et al. (2005). A potential decline in life expectancy in the United States in the 21st century. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 352, 1138–1145.
- Powell, L. M., Auld, M. C., Chaloupka, F. J., O'Malley, P. M., & Johnston, L. D. (2007). Association between access to food stores and adolescent body mass index. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 33(4S), S301–S307.
- Prospective Studies Collaboration. (2009). Body-mass index and cause-specific mortality in 900,000 adults: Collaborative analyses of 57 prospective studies. *The Lancet*, 373, 1083–1096.
- Sallis, J. F., & Glanz, K. (2009). Physical activity and food environments: Solutions to the obesity epidemic. *Millbank Quarterly*, 87, 123–154.
- Stewart, S. T., Cutler, D. M., & Rosen, A. B. (2009). Forecasting the effects of obesity and smoking on US life expectancy. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 361(23), 2252–2260.
- Swinburn, B., Egger, G., & Raza, F. (1999). Dissecting obesogenic environments: The development and

application of a framework for identifying and prioritizing environmental interventions for obesity. *Preventive Medicine*, 29, 563–570.

Walley, A. J., Asher, J. E., & Froguel, P. (2009). The genetic contribution to non-syndromic human obesity. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 10, 431–442.

Obesity: Prevention and Treatment

Amy F. Sato¹, Chad D. Jensen² and Elissa Jelalian³

¹Department of Psychology, Kent State University, Kent, OH, USA

²Department of Psychology, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT, USA

³Department of Psychiatry, Rhode Island Hospital, Brown Medical School, Providence, RI, USA

Description

Obesity prevention and treatment approaches have been developed for individuals across the developmental continuum, from childhood through adulthood. The basic goal of obesity prevention and treatment approaches is to shift energy balance (i.e., calories consumed versus calories expended) in order to reduce the presence of, or risk for, excess weight.

Obesity Prevention

Obesity prevention efforts include attention to both promoting healthy dietary intake and achieving adequate physical activity. The NIH Obesity Research Task Force outlines three levels of obesity prevention (US Department of Health and Human Services 2004). Primary prevention is aimed at all individuals regardless of weight or obesity risk status. Secondary prevention seeks to prevent further weight gain in individuals who are already overweight or obese. The goal of tertiary prevention is to prevent complications due to co-occurring health problems (e.g., type 2 diabetes) in individuals who are already overweight or obese. A staged, or tiered, approach to obesity prevention and treatment has been recommended

for child and adolescent overweight and obesity, with the appropriate level of intervention determined based on degree of overweight and presence of comorbidity (see Spear et al. 2007). With respect to youth, it is recommended that children ages 6 and older be screened for obesity, and then referred to multicomponent behavioral interventions to promote improvement in weight status (US Preventive Services Task Force 2010). Obesity prevention programs are aimed at fostering a healthy lifestyle (e.g., consumption of fruits and vegetables, minimizing sugar-sweetened beverages, obtaining 60 min daily physical activity, and limiting screen time).

Environmental factors, such as the high cost of healthy foods and lack of access to safe places to exercise, are key contributors to the increased prevalence of obesity (Hill and Peters 1998; Sallis and Glanz 2009). For this reason, obesity prevention efforts are also aimed at community and population level change (Khan et al. 2009). Environmental- and policy-level changes can be divided into six categories aimed to (1) promote availability and affordability of healthy food/beverages (e.g., improve geographic availability of supermarkets in underserved areas), (2) support choice of healthy foods and beverages (e.g., restrict availability of high-calorie, high-fat, high-sugar, and high-sodium content foods and beverages in public service areas), (3) encourage breastfeeding (e.g., support for breastfeeding in the workplace), (4) encourage physical activity/limit sedentary activity in youth (e.g., require physical education in schools), (5) create safe communities that increase physical activity through changes in the built environment (e.g., increase access to outdoor recreational facilities), and (6) encourage communities to organize for change (e.g., participate in community coalitions or partnerships to address obesity) (Khan et al. 2009).

Obesity Treatment

The treatment of overweight and obesity in children and adults shares the same fundamental principal, which is to increase energy expenditure and decrease caloric intake. However, the goal of treatment may differ somewhat depending on age. For adults, obesity treatment seeks to reduce body weight. For children, the

goal of obesity treatment may be either reduction of body weight or deceleration of weight gain (Oude Luttikhuis et al. 2009). The most appropriate mode of treatment is based on several considerations, including initial degree of overweight, previous intervention efforts, co-morbid health problems, and age.

Lifestyle Intervention

There is a strong evidence base for multi-component lifestyle intervention approaches that combine dietary restriction, physical activity prescription (increasing physical activity, limiting sedentary behaviors), and behavioral modification approaches for the treatment of obesity in adults and youth (Oude Luttikhuis et al. 2009; Shaw et al. 2005). Behavioral modification components for adults and youth typically include goal setting, self-monitoring, stimulus control, reinforcement, and problem solving (Jelalian and Hart 2009; Oude Luttikhuis et al. 2009; Shaw et al. 2005). Research supports including parent involvement as part of lifestyle intervention approaches for pre-adolescent children (Spear et al. 2007).

A comprehensive review of behavioral treatments for overweight and obese adults (18 years and older) revealed that the combination of behavioral or cognitive-behavioral techniques with dietary and exercise interventions was effective in producing short-term and long-term (12-month) weight loss (Shaw et al. 2005). However, maintenance of weight loss following behavioral intervention continues to be poor, with participants typically gradually discontinuing changes in exercise and diet and consequently regaining weight (Perri et al. 2001). For overweight and obese children and adolescents, a comprehensive review of randomized controlled trials utilizing lifestyle intervention found that the combination of dietary intervention, physical activity, and behavior modification components was effective compared to standard care and self-help (Oude Luttikhuis et al. 2009). This is consistent with a previous meta-analysis which found that lifestyle interventions for pediatric obesity yield significant decreases in obesity immediately posttreatment, compared to no treatment or education-only controls (Wilfley et al. 2007).

Pharmacological Intervention

Pharmacological intervention approaches have been utilized for the treatment of obesity in both adults and adolescents (i.e., 12 years or older). In adults, the most commonly studied antiobesity medications have been orlistat and sibutramine. Results of a comprehensive review of these medications in adults suggested that, combined with lifestyle modification, orlistat and sibutramine resulted in greater weight loss than placebo with maintenance of weight loss at long-term follow-up (i.e., 12+ months; Padwal et al. 2004). The majority of the research in adolescents has focused on metformin, orlistat, and sibutramine as antiobesity drugs, with preliminary support for these pharmacologic interventions in adolescents (Delamater et al. 2008; US Preventive Services Task Force 2010). Orlistat is approved by the FDA for use in children ages 12 and older (US Preventive Services Task Force). However, recently, sibutramine was withdrawn from the US and Canadian markets due to concerns arising from research finding that it was associated with an increased risk of cardiovascular events (e.g., myocardial infarction; James et al. 2010). Finally, attrition rates with pharmacological interventions are somewhat high and there is a need for more methodologically rigorous studies of pharmacological treatments for obesity, with longer-term follow-up (Padwal et al. 2004).

Surgical Intervention

Surgical interventions for obesity have increased as the prevalence of obesity and morbid obesity (BMI ≥ 40) has increased in adults as well as in children and adolescents. Bariatric surgery, a surgical intervention for obesity, seeks to reduce weight and maintain weight loss via restriction of dietary intake, malabsorption of food, or a combination of these mechanisms (Colquitt et al. 2009). Gastric bypass (i.e., Roux-en-Y, resectional gastric bypass) and adjustable gastric banding have been the most commonly performed types of surgery, although other methods are available (e.g., biliopancreatic diversion, sleeve gastrectomy, vertical banded gastroplasty) (Colquitt et al. 2009). A comprehensive review of surgical interventions found that bariatric surgery was more effective in producing short- and

long-term weight loss relative to nonsurgical interventions (e.g., dietary intervention) (Colquitt et al.). However, this may be due in part to the fact that most adult and adolescent bariatric surgery patients have a high BMI (i.e., $\text{BMI} \geq 40$), and therefore have more weight to lose (Colquitt et al.; Delamater et al. 2008). Though results are mixed, overall, the available evidence suggests that gastric bypass yields greater weight loss than adjustable gastric banding or vertical banded gastroplasty, but similar to banded gastric bypass and isolated sleeve gastrectomy (Colquitt et al. 2009). Gastric bypass surgery has been found to be efficacious for the treatment of obese adolescents, and preliminary evidence supports the use of adjustable gastric banding in severely obese adolescents, with promising short-term and long-term weight reduction (Delamater et al. 2008).

Summary

A range of obesity prevention and treatment approaches have been implemented in adults as well as in children and adolescents. Prevention and intervention efforts involve attention to achieving a healthy diet and maintaining adequate levels of physical activity and, at the most basic level, seek to shift energy balance toward achieving weight loss or decelerating the rate of weight gain. Behavioral lifestyle interventions have traditionally received the most attention, with support for use in both adult and child populations; however, pharmacologic and surgical interventions have increasingly received support in adults and adolescents.

Cross-References

- [Nutrition](#)
- [Physical Inactivity](#)
- [Weight Loss](#)

References and Readings

Colquitt, J. L., Picot, J., Loveman, E., & Clegg, A. J. (2009). Surgery for obesity. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 15(2), CD003641.

- Delamater, A. M., Jent, J. F., Moine, C. T., & Rios, J. (2008). Chapter 14. Empirically supported treatment of overweight adolescents. In E. Jelalian & R. J. Steele (Eds.), *Handbook of childhood and adolescent obesity* (pp. 221–240). New York: Springer.
- Hill, J. O., & Peters, J. C. (1998). Environmental contributions to the obesity epidemic. *Science*, 280, 1371–1374.
- James, W. P., Caterson, I. D., Coutinho, W., Finer, N., Van Gaal, L. F., Maggioni, A. P., et al. (2010). Effects of sibutramine on cardiovascular outcomes in overweight and obese subjects. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 263(10), 907–917.
- Jelalian, E., & Hart, C. N. (2009). Pediatric obesity. In M. C. Roberts & R. G. Steele (Eds.), *Handbook of pediatric psychology* (4th ed., pp. 446–463). New York: Guilford.
- Khan, L. K., Sobush, K., Keener, D., Goodman, K., Lowry, A., Kakietek, J., & Zaro, S. (2009). Recommended community strategies and measurements to prevent obesity in the United States. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 58(RR07), 1–26.
- Oude Luttikhuis, H., Baur, L., Jansen, H., Shrewsbury, V. A., O'Malley, C., Stolk, R. P., et al. (2009). Interventions for treating obesity in children. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 21(1), CD001872.
- Padwal, R., Li, S. K., & Lau, D. C. (2004). Long-term pharmacotherapy for obesity and overweight. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, (3), CD004094.
- Perri, M. G., Nezu, A. M., McKelvey, W. F., Shermer, R. L., Renjilian, D. A., & Viegner, B. J. (2001). Relapse prevention training and problem-solving therapy in the long-term management of obesity. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 69(4), 722–726.
- Sallis, J. F., & Glanz, K. (2009). Physical activity and food environments: Solutions to the obesity epidemic. *The Milbank Quarterly*, 87, 123–154.
- Shaw, K. A., O'Rourke, P., Del Mar, C., & Kenardy, J. (2005). Psychological interventions for overweight or obesity. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, (2), CD003818.
- Spear, B. A., Barlow, S. E., Ervin, C., Ludwig, D. S., Saelens, B. E., Schetzina, K. E., et al. (2007). Recommendations for treatment of child and adolescent overweight and obesity. *Pediatrics*, 120(Suppl 4), S254–S288.
- US Department of Health & Human Services. (2004). *Strategic plan for NIH obesity research*. Washington, DC: National Institutes of Health.
- US Preventive Services Task Force. (2010). Screening for obesity in children and adolescents: US preventive services task force recommendations statement. *Pediatrics*. <https://doi.org/10.1542/peds.2009-2037>. Published online Jan 18, 2010.
- Wilfley, D. E., Tibbs, T. L., Van Buren, D. J., Reach, K. P., Walker, M. S., & Epstein, L. H. (2007). Lifestyle interventions in the treatment of childhood overweight: A meta-analytic review of randomized controlled trials. *Health Psychology*, 26(5), 521–532.

Obrist, Paul A

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Biographical Information

Paul A. Obrist was born on June 17, 1931. He received his B.S. degree from Cornell University in 1953 and his Ph.D. from the University of Rochester in 1958. His graduate training included 2 years of clinical psychology at the Veterans Administration and a 2-year teaching assistantship, assisting in the teaching of introductory personality, child, and abnormal psychology. He also had extensive predoctoral research experience, culminating in his thesis research, "An Investigation of the Claim of Autonomic Discrimination Without Awareness and the Relationship of GSR Conditioning to Measures of Skin Conductance."

Obrist held a postdoctoral fellowship at the Fels Research Institute from June 1958 to June 1960. His specialty area was psychophysiology, working under the guidance of John Lacey. He then moved to the University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, in 1960 as an assistant professor of psychology in the department of psychiatry. He progressed to associate professor in 1965 and full professor in 1970. His primary focus was developing the department's psychophysiology laboratory and guiding research (both chronic dog preparation and young human adults) on the role of behavioral stress in the etiology of hypertension.

Major Accomplishments

From the time of his arrival at UNC-Chapel Hill until his death in 1987, Obrist established and maintained one of the most prominent and productive psychophysiology research laboratories in the world. From his earliest studies, he sought to identify the cardiovascular mechanisms responsible for inducing variations in cardiovascular performance and to understand the functions that

these cardiovascular responses serve in the context of behavior. His bringing behavior and physiology together in this manner generated a comprehensive view of cardiovascular psychophysiology.

Obrist was particularly proud of being president of the Society for Psychophysiological Research from 1974 to 1975. Additional honors included being the recipient of the 1985 Award for Distinguished Contributions to Psychophysiology from the Society for Psychophysiological Research and being conferred the honor of fellow by the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research, the American Association for the Advancement of Science, and the American Psychological Association (Divisions 3, 6, and 38).

Obrist received numerous National Institute for Mental Health (NIMH) and National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI) grants from 1963 to 1987. He was the recipient of continuous NIMH R01 grant funding from 1963 to 1976 and continuous NHLBI funding from 1976 to 1987. During his career, he published over 100 papers, one authored book, and one edited book.

Many outstanding psychophysiolgists (including some who went on to make their mark in the fields of health psychology and behavioral medicine) had the good fortune to be trained in his laboratory. Among his trainees who later became department chairs were James Lawler (University of Tennessee-Knoxville), Kathleen Lawler-Row (East Carolina University), James McCubbin (Clemson University), and Michael T. Allen (University of Mississippi). P. Murali Doraiswamy became head of the Division of Biological Psychiatry at Duke University, where Andrew Sherwood continued his research. Kathy Light joined Obrist's laboratory in 1976, collaborating as a research scientist and assuming directorship of the lab in 1987. The coeditor of this encyclopedia, J. Rick Turner, also trained under Obrist and Light. Light also trained her own graduate students there, including Susan Girdler who is now professor and director of the university's Stress and Health Research Program.

One of Obrist's central themes was that psychophysiolgists (and, by extension, those in behavioral medicine and health psychology)

should become better biologists. The depth of biological discussions in this encyclopedia attests to the usefulness of this approach.

Cross-References

- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- [Psychophysiology: Theory and Methods](#)

References and Readings

- Allen, M. T., Sherwood, A., & Obrist, P. A. (1986). Interactions of respiratory, and cardiovascular adjustments to behavioral stressors. *Psychophysiology*, 23, 532–541.
- Langer, A. W., Hutcheson, J. S., Charlton, J. D., McCubbin, J. A., Obrist, P. A., & Stoney, C. M. (1985a). On-line minicomputerized measurement of respiratory gas exchange during exercise. *Psychophysiology*, 22, 50–58.
- Langer, A. W., Stoney, C. M., McCubbin, J. A., Hutcheson, J. S., Obrist, P. A., & Charlton, J. D. (1985b). Cardiopulmonary adjustments during exercise and an aversive reaction time task: Effects of beta-adrenoceptor blockade. *Psychophysiology*, 22, 59–68.
- Light, K. C., & Obrist, P. A. (1985). Renal and cardiovascular effects of psychological stress and sodium intake. In E. S. Katkin & S. B. Manuck (Eds.), *Advances in behavioral medicine* (pp. 89–114). Greenwich: JAI Press.
- Obrist, P. A. (1962). Some autonomic correlates of serial learning. *Journal of Verbal Learning and Verbal Behavior*, 1, 100–104.
- Obrist, P. A. (1963a). Skin resistance levels and the galvanic skin response: Unilateral differences. *Science*, 139, 227–228.
- Obrist, P. A. (1963b). Cardiovascular differentiation of sensory stimuli. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 25, 450–459.
- Obrist, P. A., & Light, K. C. (1988). Active-passive coping and cardiovascular reactivity: Interaction with individual differences and types of baseline. In A. Baum, W. Gordon, & J. A. Herd (Eds.), *Proceedings of the academy of behavioral medicine research* (pp. 109–126). New York: Academic.
- Obrist, P. A., Grignolo, A., Koepke, J. P., Langer, A. W., & Light, K. C. (1985). Behavioral influences and beta-adrenergic mechanisms: The kidney and sodium retention. In R. B. Williams (Ed.), *Perspectives on behavioral medicine* (Vol. 2, pp. 183–187). New York: Academic.
- Obrist, P. A., Light, K. C., Langer, A. W., & Koepke, J. P. (1986a). Psychosomatics. In M. Coles, E. Donchin, & S. Porges (Eds.), *Psychophysiology: Systems, processes and applications* (pp. 626–645). New York: Guilford Press.
- Obrist, P. A., Light, K. C., Sherwood, A., & Allen, M. T. (1986b). Behavioral influences on blood pressure control: Implications for the hypertensive process. In W. H. Birkenhager & J. L. Reid (Series Eds.) & R. C. Tarazi, & A. Zanchetti (Vol. Eds.), *Handbook of hypertension: Vol. 8. Section on physiology and pathophysiology of hypertension* (pp. 250–277). Amsterdam: Elsevier/North Holland.
- Obrist, P. A., Light, K. C., Sherwood, A., Allen, M. T., Langer, A. W., & Koepke, J. P. (1986c). Some working hypothesis on the significance of behavioral-evoked cardiovascular reactivity to pathophysiology. In T. H. Schmidt, T. D. Dembroski, & C. Blumchen (Eds.), *Biological and psychological factors in cardiovascular disease* (pp. 406–417). Berlin: Springer.
- Sherwood, A., Allen, M. T., Obrist, P. A., & Langer, A. W. (1986). Evaluation of beta-adrenergic influences on cardiovascular and metabolic adjustments to physical and psychological stress. *Psychophysiology*, 23, 89–104.

Observational Designs

- [Case-Control Studies](#)
- [Clinical Trial](#)
- [Cohort Study](#)
- [Nonexperimental Designs](#)

Observational Studies

- [Case-Control Studies](#)
- [Clinical Trial](#)
- [Cohort Study](#)
- [Nonexperimental Designs](#)

Observational Study

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Epidemiological study](#)

Definition

An observational study explores the relationship between an identified putative cause and its effects when it is not possible to conduct a prospective interventional study.

Description

Multiple study designs are available for, and essential to, empirical investigation of factors of interest in behavioral medicine and public health research. These fall into two fundamental categories: experimental, or interventional, and non-experimental, or noninterventional. An example of an interventional study is the randomized, concurrently controlled clinical trial. Randomization of participants to one of two (or more) treatment arms means that participant characteristics are very likely equally distributed between the treatment groups and therefore that differences between responses in the treatment arms can most reliably be attributed to the nature of the treatments.

Observational studies, which are a fundamental aspect of epidemiological research, fall within the noninterventional category: neither randomization nor intervention occurs. They include cohort, case-control, and case-crossover studies. Observational study designs are able to generate information in circumstances in which randomization and intervention are not possible or, where theoretically possible, are considered unethical. An often-cited example is the investigation of the effects of living in a location where an environmental influence may be unhealthful, for example, close to a power plant emitting toxic waste materials. Given that we have reason to believe that the influence may be unhealthful, it is not possible to recruit a group of healthy participants and randomize them to two groups – one (the test group) being asked to live in the potentially unhealthy location for a period of time such as a year and the other (the control group) living in a location where there is no reason to assume it is detrimental to health – and then comparing their health at the end of the year. In contrast, it may be

possible to retrospectively identify a cohort of individuals who have lived in the putatively unhealthy location and compare their health with that of a separate cohort of individuals who are as close in other characteristics (e.g., age, weight/obesity status, smoking behavior, general health status before living in the putatively unhealthful location, if available) as possible.

When designing, conducting, and analyzing an observational study that contains a control cohort (not all of them do), it is important to bear in mind that, while care has been taken to match the control cohort to the test cohort as closely as possible, there are likely to be some differences. Overt biases are characteristics that can be identified and accurately measured. In this case, statistical methodologies that attempt to correct for between-group differences in these characteristics may be employed. These include stratification, covariance analyses, and multivariate regression. In contrast, hidden biases are potential differences due, for example, to a given factor(s) of interest not being recorded. Other statistical methodologies are appropriate in this case, including sensitivity analyses that assess how sensitive the study's conclusions are to a range of hidden biases of likely magnitudes.

As with all study designs, observational designs, which can range widely in size and detail, have acknowledged weaknesses and strengths. A weakness is that, while they can identify associations between events, they cannot demonstrate causation, i.e., that one event directly causes the other. Several strengths include the following.

As noted earlier, they can be employed when interventional studies cannot be performed. They can also be useful in studying rare events and gathering information about what actually happens in real-world settings. Finally, establishment of an association between a particular influence and a health outcome can be the driving force behind further research. If biologically plausible, the association can lead the way in developing a program of interventional clinical trials to investigate the association: such studies have the ability to provide compelling evidence of causality. In this circumstance, the responsible observational study can be considered a pilot study or

hypothesis-generating study. If compelling evidence of causality is generated in clinical trials that have their genesis in the results of an observational study, that study may have a direct influence on future clinical decision-making and clinical practice.

Cross-References

- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Bias](#)
- [Case-Control Studies](#)
- [Case-Crossover Studies](#)
- [Clinical Decision-Making](#)
- [Clinical Trial](#)
- [Cohort Study](#)
- [Experimental Designs](#)
- [Nonexperimental Designs](#)
- [Pilot Study](#)
- [Public Health](#)
- [Randomization](#)
- [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)
- [Regression Analysis](#)
- [Study Protocol](#)

References and Further Reading

- Almirall, J., Serra-Prat, M., Bolibar, I., & Balasso, V. (2017). Risk factors for community-acquired pneumonia in adults: A systematic review of observational studies. *Respiration*, *94*, 299–311.
- Canuto, R., da Silva Garcez, A., Kac, G., de Lira, P. I. C., & Olinto, M. T. A. (2017). Eating frequency and weight and body composition: A systematic review of observational studies. *Public Health Nutrition*, *20*, 2079–2095.
- Mills, S., White, M., Brown, H., et al. (2017). Health and social determinants and outcomes of home cooking: A systematic review of observational studies. *Appetite*, *111*, 116–134.
- Sumner, J., Harrison, A., & Doherty, P. (2017). The effectiveness of modern cardiac rehabilitation: A systematic review of recent observational studies in non-attenders versus attenders. *PLoS One*, *12*, e0177658.
- Thiese, M. S. (2014). Observational and interventional study design types; an overview. *Biochemia Medica (Zagreb)*, *24*, 199–210.
- Tin Tin Htar, M., Stuurman, A. L., Ferreira, G., et al. (2017). Effectiveness of pneumococcal vaccines in preventing pneumonia in adults, a systematic review and meta-analyses of observational studies. *PLoS One*, *12*, e0177985.

Obstructive Sleep Apnea

- [Sleep Apnea](#)

Occipital

- [Brain, Cortex](#)

Occupation

- [Job Classification](#)
- [Occupational Therapy](#)

Occupational Classification

- [Job Classification](#)

Occupational Health

Johannes Siegrist

Work Stress Research, Centre for Health and Society Faculty of Medicine, University of Düsseldorf, Life Science Center, Düsseldorf, Germany

Synonyms

[Organizational health](#); [Work-related health](#)

Definition

“Occupational health” is defined as the field of research and intervention that deals with work- and employment-related influences on people’s health and health-related behaviors and their modification. The field of occupational health is broader than the academic discipline of

occupational medicine as it includes organizational, psychosocial, and behavioral aspects in addition to the more traditional physical and chemical hazards, thus incorporating research and expertise from social and behavioral sciences.

Description

Generally, behavioral medicine is interested in two approaches toward occupational health. The first approach considers the organizations, companies, and businesses where large population groups can be met recurrently and simultaneously as an ideal setting of implementing programs of behavioral modification. In these programs, health-adverse behaviors such as smoking, unhealthy diet, or lack of physical exercise are targeted with the aim of promoting a healthy lifestyle. These individual- or group-based interventions are often supported by employers and health insurance organizations as they were shown to produce benefits to both employees and employers. The second approach focuses on those aspects of work and employment that directly affect the health of working people. Here, scientific analyses of these associations and interventions based on respective evidence are of central interest.

As the nature of employment and work has changed significantly over the last half century, psychological and socio-emotional demands and threats evolving from an adverse psychosocial environment have become more widespread in all advanced societies (Schnall et al. 2009). Technological progress and economic growth in the context of globalized markets and trades result in new types of tasks (e.g., information and communication technologies, person-based services) and in an increase of chronic psychosocial stress at work. This increase is mainly due to work pressure under growing competition, often in combination with threats to job continuity and security. Although the quality of work and employment follows a social gradient leaving those in lower socioeconomic positions at higher risk, stressful work in advanced societies has become common in more privileged parts of the workforce as well

(Eurofound 2015). Chronic exposure to a stressful psychosocial work environment affects the health of working people by triggering negative emotions and by eliciting recurrent psychobiological stress responses in the organism that compromise different bodily systems in the long run, promoting the development of distinct physical and mental disorders (McEwen 2007).

To identify and measure a health-adverse psychosocial work environment, a theoretical model is needed that delineates specific “toxic” components within complex and diverse work settings at a level of high generalization. Several such models were proposed, but the following concepts are considered most established up to now as they have been supported by a substantial body of empirical research. First, the “demand-control model” posits that a specific job task profile characterized by high quantitative demands in combination with a low degree of decision latitude or control elicits recurrent stress reactions. These effects are moderated by the presence or absence of social support at work (Karasek and Theorell 1990). Second, the “effort-reward imbalance model” is based on the basic principle of reciprocity of contractual social exchange. High efforts spent at work that are not reciprocated by adequate rewards trigger recurrent stressful experience. Rewards include salary or wage, promotion prospects and job security, and esteem or appreciation from significant others. Effort-reward imbalance is frequent among employees who have no alternative choice in the labor market or who work in highly competitive jobs. Stressful experience is reinforced among those who are overcommitted to their work (Siegrist 1996). Third, the “organizational justice model” claims that unfair procedures within organizations and inappropriate interpersonal relationships, in particular within the hierarchies of organizations, are experienced as stressful (Greenberg 2010).

Health-adverse effects of these complementary models of stressful psychosocial work environments have been demonstrated by a series of prospective epidemiological cohort studies, supplemented by findings on psychobiological pathways from experimental and “naturalistic” investigations. Evidence is particularly robust in

case of cardiovascular risk and disease and in case of affective disorders (Kivimäki and Steptoe 2018; Rugulies et al. 2017; Siegrist and Wahrendorf 2016; Theorell et al. 2015). This information can be used to identify targets (e.g., particular businesses and/or groups of employees) for health-promoting interventions that are commonly implemented at one or several of the following levels. At the personal level, the individual workers' coping resources are strengthened by different approaches of stress management (e.g., relaxation and meditation techniques, cognitive-behavioral interventions). At the interpersonal or group level, social relationships at work are improved (e.g., communication, leadership, esteem, social support). At the organizational or structural level, interventions target changes in the division of work, work time, work load, task content, promotion prospects, or monetary and non-monetary rewards. Evidence indicates that interventions which combine these levels produce stronger and more sustainable effects than single-level interventions (Semmer 2008). Moreover, integrating health-promoting behavioral change into programs of stress management and organizational change seems particularly promising in an attempt of reducing social inequalities in health where those in lower socioeconomic positions suffer from a higher work-related burden of disease.

Behavioral interventions in occupational health are commonly located at the level of primary prevention where they are directed either at the workforce as a whole or at specific vulnerable subgroups. However, behavioral interventions at the level of secondary prevention are becoming more important as working populations are aging. Improving return to work in chronically ill and disabled people is considered a major challenge of occupational health, particularly with regard to mental health and well-being. There is a strong business case in terms of sickness absence reduction and productivity gain for introducing such secondary prevention measures where behavioral medicine expertise can be successfully implemented (e.g., individual placement and support models) (Black 2008).

Despite these promises, occupational health from a behavioral medicine perspective still has

to face substantial challenges (Eurofound 2015; Siegrist and Wahrendorf 2016). So far, only a minority of companies and organizations is committed to promote healthy work. There is a lack of resources, information, and personnel and management incentives. In view of the afflictions of economic crises and of rapid transformation of work and employment, basic material and psychosocial needs of working people need to be maintained by sustainable social and labor policies at national and international levels. Against this background, promoting awareness, solid evidence, and models of good practice in the field of behavioral occupational health and prioritizing investments into good quality of work and employment at different policy levels are important measures to strengthen healthy work locally and globally.

Cross-References

- [Epidemiology](#)
- [Heart Disease and Stress](#)
- [Job Related to Health](#)
- [Occupational Rehabilitation](#)
- [Work](#)
- [Worksite Health Promotion](#)

References and Further Reading

- Black, C. (2008). *Working for a healthier tomorrow*. London: TSO.
- Eurofound. (2015). *Convergence and divergence of job quality in Europe 1995–2010*. Luxembourg: Publications Office of the European Union.
- Greenberg, J. (2010). Organizational injustice as an occupational health risk. *The Academy of Management Annals*, 4, 205–243.
- Karasek, R. A., & Theorell, T. (1990). *Healthy work stress, productivity, and the reconstruction of working life*. New York: Basic Books.
- Kivimäki, M., & Steptoe, A. (2018). Effects of stress on the development and progression of cardiovascular disease. *Nature Reviews in Cardiology*, 15(4), 215–229.
- McEwen, B. M. (2007). Physiology and neurobiology of stress and adaptation: Central role of the brain. *Physiological Reviews*, 87, 873–904.
- Rugulies, R., Aust, B., & Madsen, I. E. (2017). Effort-reward imbalance at work and risk of depressive disorders. A systematic review and meta-analysis of

- prospective cohort studies. *Scandinavian Journal of Work, Environment & Health*, 43(4), 294–306.
- Schnall, P. L., Dobson, M., & Rosskam, E. (Eds.). (2009). *Unhealthy work: Causes, consequences cures*. Amityville: Baywood Press.
- Semmer, N. (2008). Stress management and well-being interventions in the workplace. In *State of science review: SR-C6, report by the Foresight Project*. London: Government Office for Science.
- Siegrist, J. (1996). Adverse health effects of high effort-low reward conditions at work. *Journal of Occupational Health Psychology*, 1, 27–41.
- Siegrist, J., & Wahrendorf, M. (Eds.). (2016). *Work stress and health in a globalized economy: The model of effort-reward imbalance*. Cham: Springer International Publications.
- Theorell, T., Hammarström, A., Aronsson, G., Träskman Bendz, L., Grape, T., Hogstedt, C., Marteinsdottir, I., Skoog, I., & Hall, C. (2015). A systematic review including meta-analysis of work environment and depressive symptoms. *BMC Public Health*, 15, 738.

Occupational Mental Health

► Organizational Health Psychology

Occupational Prestige

► Occupational Status

Occupational Rehabilitation

Douglas P. Gross¹, Calvin Haws² and Joanne Park^{2,3}

¹Department of Physical Therapy, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

²Workers' Compensation Board of Alberta Millard Health, Edmonton, AB, Canada

³Department of Occupational Therapy, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Synonyms

Industrial rehabilitation; Vocational rehabilitation; Work rehabilitation

Definition

Occupational rehabilitation is the science and practice of maximizing function in workers with a disabling health condition, including assisting them to return to a level of work activity appropriate to their functional, psychological, and cognitive capacity. Related and synonymous terms include work rehabilitation, industrial rehabilitation, and vocational rehabilitation, among others. The past decades have seen the development of therapies and programs aimed at helping working-age adults with musculoskeletal, neurological, and mental health conditions that lead to work disability (Jundt and King 1999). Although the programs may have different names, their goals are fundamentally similar including restoring physical abilities as well as psychological and functional tolerances of the disabled worker in order to return them to gainful employment (Schultz et al. 2007).

Description

Standards of occupational rehabilitation practice, program parameters, and service delivery methods vary depending on context, jurisdiction, and provider characteristics. Individual programs and the various disciplines involved can be influenced by the needs of the worker population served, employer needs, disability management practices, as well as insurance and compensation system policies (Jundt and King 1999; Wyrick et al. 1991). However, often an interdisciplinary approach is taken involving physical therapists, occupational therapists, kinesiologists, and psychologists, and focuses on improving physical and functional abilities, return-to-work planning, individual counseling, and educational workshops (Gross et al. 2012; Bendix et al. 1996). An integrated care approach that also involves the workplace and other relevant stakeholders has been found cost-effective (Lambeek et al. 2010a, b; Loisel et al. 1997).

Occupational rehabilitation often includes functional restoration, graded activity, or other types of physical conditioning (Poiraudau et al.

2007; Macedo et al. 2010). There is evidence indicating programs that incorporate functional restoration are effective for facilitating return-to-work in patients with subacute and chronic back pain, especially if augmented with a workplace component (Schaafsma et al. 2010). Specific components of occupational rehabilitation programs are typically based on findings of a baseline assessment of function, pain, workplace barriers, and other barriers to recovery (Gross and Battie 2005). Functional activities that are limited on baseline assessment are incorporated into the exercise and work simulation programs. Graded and progressive upgrades to the exercises and work simulation activities are made until the worker demonstrates the ability to perform pre-accident level work or until a plateau has been reached and no further improvement is being observed.

Occupational rehabilitation programs were initially developed primarily for workers with musculoskeletal disorders such as work injuries and regional pain disorders (Hadler 2005; Isernhagen 1995). More recently, occupational rehabilitation has expanded to workers with other health conditions including neurological, psychiatric, and mental health disorders (i.e., depression and anxiety), as well as cancer survivors. Rehabilitation approaches in these areas still aim to maximize function through physical and mental training, but also strive to find accommodations for workers with permanent functional impairment. This involves balancing abilities with acceptable physical and mental work demands. For example, rehabilitation of cancer survivors may include training and accommodation strategies for managing fatigue associated with chemotherapy treatment (Feuerstein 2009), while rehabilitation of workers with traumatic brain injury may incorporate more cognitive and executive functioning tasks aimed at improving memory, attention, comprehension, planning, motor programming and execution, as well as abstract thinking (Tyerman 2012). Rehabilitation for these populations often include more one-to-one counseling and group-based activities compared to occupational rehabilitation programs for workers with musculoskeletal disorders. Although there are several

rehabilitation approaches to address neurological and other disorders, best practice standards including which approach is most effective and for whom remains unclear (Fadyl and McPherson 2009).

Research Needs

For acute health disorders influencing work ability, most evidence-based guidelines recommend further assessment and intervention if recovery has not occurred within 4–6 weeks to avoid progression to chronic pain and disability (van Tulder et al. 2006; Group AAMPG 2004; Gatchel et al. 2003). In this subacute “golden stage,” various types of occupational rehabilitation interventions have been recommended including physical conditioning programs (Schaafsma et al. 2010), worksite-based interventions (van Vilsteren et al. 2015), and complex multidisciplinary biopsychosocial rehabilitation (Marin et al. 2017). Systematic reviews of these interventions have reported some supportive evidence (Schaafsma et al. 2010; van Vilsteren et al. 2015; Marin et al. 2017); however, individual response to these interventions is highly variable with some workers benefiting while others do not. Currently, clinicians are unable to identify with complete accuracy which claimants will respond best to the various rehabilitation options and referral is often made in a trial-and-error fashion (Haldorsen 2003). Individual factors such as expectations of recovery and previous health care seem to predict in general who will respond to rehabilitation (Gross and Battie 2005; Sandstrom and Esbjornsson 1986), but only recently have researchers explored whether specific characteristics can be used to target interventions to achieve optimal outcomes (Steenstra et al. 2009).

Further research on stratified or personalized rehabilitation is needed to determine if interventions can be targeted more effectively and increase rates of return to work. Additionally, published evaluations of functional restoration or graded activity interventions indicate the duration of these programs varies between 3 and 26 weeks (Gross et al. 2012; Poiradeau et al. 2007; Macedo et al. 2010). Further research is needed to determine optimal dosage and duration of

occupational rehabilitation. Lastly, further work is needed to develop interventions addressing psychosocial factors, which are often the largest barriers to return-to-work following occupational rehabilitation.

In summary, occupational rehabilitation has a long clinical and research tradition of maximizing functional ability and return to work among disabled workers. Evidence indicates these programs and individual components are cost-effective. However, further research is needed to optimize effectiveness and provide personalized care aimed at individual workers' specific recovery barriers.

Cross-References

- [Disability](#)
- [Return to Work](#)
- [Readiness for Return-to-Work \(RRTW\)](#)
- [Rehabilitation](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bendix, T., Bendix, A. F., Busch, E., & Jordan, A. (1996). Functional restoration in chronic low back pain. *Scandinavian Journal of Medicine & Science in Sports*, 6, 88–97.
- Fadyl, J. K., & McPherson, K. M. (2009). Approaches to vocational rehabilitation after traumatic brain injury: A review of the evidence. *Journal of Head Trauma Rehabilitation*, 24, 195–212.
- Feuerstein, M. (2009). *Work and cancer survivors*. New York/London: Springer.
- Gatchel, R. J., Polatin, P. B., Noe, C., Gardea, M., Pulliam, C., & Thompson, J. (2003). Treatment- and cost-effectiveness of early intervention for acute low-back pain patients: A one-year prospective study. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 13, 1–9.
- Gross, D. P., & Battie, M. C. (2005). Predicting timely recovery and recurrence following multidisciplinary rehabilitation in patients with compensated low back pain. *Spine*, 30, 235–240.
- Gross, D. P., Haws, C., & Niemelainen, R. (2012). What is the rate of functional improvement during occupational rehabilitation in workers' compensation claimants? *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 22, 292–300.
- Group AAMPG. (2004). *Evidence-based management of acute musculoskeletal pain: A guide for clinicians: Australian Government National Health and Medical Research Council*. Bowden Hills: Australian Academic Press.
- Hadler, N. M. (2005). *Occupational musculoskeletal disorders* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Haldorsen, E. M. (2003). The right treatment to the right patient at the right time. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 60, 235–236.
- Isernhagen, S. J. (1995). *The comprehensive guide to work injury management*. Gaithersburg: Aspen Publishers.
- Jundt, J., & King, P. M. (1999). Work rehabilitation programs: A 1997 survey. *Work*, 12, 139–144.
- Lambeek, L. C., van Mechelen, W., Knol, D. L., Loisel, P., & Anema, J. R. (2010a). Randomised controlled trial of integrated care to reduce disability from chronic low back pain in working and private life. *BMJ*, 340, c1035.
- Lambeek, L. C., Bosmans, J. E., Van Royen, B. J., Van Tulder, M. W., Van Mechelen, W., & Anema, J. R. (2010b). Effect of integrated care for sick listed patients with chronic low back pain: Economic evaluation alongside a randomised controlled trial. *BMJ*, 341, c6414.
- Loisel, P., Abenhaim, L., Durand, P., et al. (1997). A population-based, randomized clinical trial on back pain management. *Spine*, 22, 2911–2918.
- Macedo, L. G., Smeets, R. J., Maher, C. G., Latimer, J., & McAuley, J. H. (2010). Graded activity and graded exposure for persistent nonspecific low back pain: A systematic review. *Physical Therapy*, 90, 860–879.
- Marin, T. J., Van Eerd, D., Irvin, E., Couban, R., Koes, B. W., Malmivaara, A., van Tulder, M. W., Kamper, S. J. (2017) Multidisciplinary biopsychosocial rehabilitation for subacute low back pain. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 6:CD002193. <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD002193.pub2>.
- Poiraudeau, S., Rannou, F., & Revel, M. (2007). Functional restoration programs for low back pain: A systematic review. *Annales de Réadaptation et de Médecine Physique*, 50, 425–429. 419–424.
- Sandstrom, J., & Esbjornsson, E. (1986). Return to work after rehabilitation. The significance of the patient's own prediction. *Scandinavian Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*, 18, 29–33.
- Schaafsma, F., Schonstein, E., Whelan, K. M., Ulvestad, E., Kenny, D. T., & Verbeek, J. H. (2010). Physical conditioning programs for improving work outcomes in workers with back pain. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 2010(1), CD001822.
- Schultz, I. Z., Stowell, A. W., Feuerstein, M., & Gatchel, R. J. (2007). Models of return to work for musculoskeletal disorders. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 17, 327–352.
- Steenstra, I. A., Knol, D. L., Bongers, P. M., Anema, J. R., van Mechelen, W., & de Vet, H. C. (2009). What works best for whom? An exploratory, subgroup analysis in a randomized, controlled trial on the effectiveness of a workplace intervention in low back pain patients on return to work. *Spine*, 34, 1243–1249.
- Tyerman, A. (2012). Vocational rehabilitation after traumatic brain injury: Models and services. *NeuroRehabilitation*, 31, 51–62.

- van Tulder, M., Becker, A., Bekkering, T., et al. (2006). Chapter 3. European guidelines for the management of acute nonspecific low back pain in primary care. *European Spine Journal*, 15(Suppl 2), S169–S191.
- van Vilsteren, M. I., van Oostrom, S. H., de Vet, H. C., Franche, R. L., Boot, C. R., Anema, J. R. (2015). Workplace interventions to prevent work disability in workers on sick leave. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. CD006955. (10). <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD006955.pub3>.
- Wyrick, J. M., Niemeyer, L. O., Ellexson, M., Jacobs, K., & Taylor, S. (1991). Occupational therapy work-hardening programs: A demographic study. *American Journal of Occupational Therapy*, 45, 109–112.

people, occupational patterns, the factors that influence people's participation in occupation, and the relationship between occupation and health.

Description

Occupational science is concerned with the nature, performance, and outcomes of the ordinary and extraordinary things people do in their everyday lives. It is an interdisciplinary synthesis of basic knowledge (Yerxa 1993), which draws from the human sciences, population studies, engineering, economics, ecology, and political sciences (Dickie 2010).

Occupational Resilience

► Organizational Health Psychology

Occupational Science

Clare Hocking
Faculty of Health and Environmental Sciences,
Auckland University of Technology, Auckland,
New Zealand

Definition

Occupational science is the systematic study of the things that people do (their occupations). Occupations include everyday activities undertaken to care for self and others, animals and living and inanimate objects; secure shelter and sustenance; raise children; develop and test abilities, learn, and experience a sense of competence; contribute to family and community; create or distribute material wealth; play and enjoy life; pursue interests; celebrate significant life events; express creativity and spirituality; preserve or regain health; and the things people do for rest and restoration. In brief, occupation is everything people do to occupy themselves (Townsend 1997). Research is undertaken at the level of individuals, groups, or populations, with an emphasis on understanding what occupations mean to

Occupation

Within occupational science, various definitions of occupation have been proposed. While no consensus is sought, many definitions have included notions of occupation being self-initiated, intentional, and self-directed; meaningful; and organized, goal-directed, or purposeful (Crabtree 1998; Yerxa et al. 1989). These characteristics, and the fact that occupations are identifiable and named within their cultural context, differentiate occupations from actions (such as brushing hair out of one's eyes) (Yerxa 1993). Occupations command some level of attention, energy, time, and interest (Gray 1997), are a means of fulfilling needs or meeting environmental demands, and lead to development and competence (Crabtree 1998; Yerxa 1998). They are variously described as discrete chunks of activity or as enfolded – indicating that people might be doing more than one occupation at a time, as in directing children's play while preparing a meal. Occupations are also considered unique, in that an occupation cannot be repeated exactly as it was done before and each person performs an occupation in his or her own way (AOTA 1997). Occupations are patterned, in that many occupations occur on a regular and repeated basis, and expected to change over time in response to maturation and over the lifespan.

Occupational Science Perspective on People

Occupational scientists view people as occupational beings (Yerxa et al. 1990), meaning that engaging in occupation is part of the essential nature of being human. Accordingly, occupation is positioned as the mechanism by which people develop and exercise their innate capacities; fulfill basic needs for food, water, and shelter; “adapt to changes in the environment, and flourish as individuals” (Wilcock 1993, p. 17). Because she considered the need for occupation to be innate, Wilcock argued that lack of engagement in occupation is experienced as a discomfort that warns of a problem, manifesting as boredom, anxiety, depression, loneliness, tiredness, or tension; as a protective energy surge, triggering use of one’s capacities; and as a sense of pleasure, satisfaction, or competence, which rewards and prompts engagement in occupation. While these assertions remain largely untested, adoption of the concept of flow into the occupational science literature suggests acceptance of these premises (Csikszentmihalyi 1993).

Emergence of Occupational Science

Occupational science was founded by scholars at the University of Southern California (Yerxa et al. 1989), who initiated the discipline to “support the practice of occupational therapy” (Yerxa et al. 1990, p. 1) by generating a unique and substantive knowledge base for the profession, and to consolidate occupational therapy’s place in academia by demonstrating its field is worthy of scholarly investigation (Yerxa 1993). The discipline’s focus on occupation is described as providing an alternative conceptualization of health to the biomedical focus that predominates in post-industrial societies. Occupational science rejects the mind-body split of physical disability and mental illness (Yerxa 1993), instead emphasizing that occupation (doing) is a determinant of health and well-being, as well as being the mechanism through which people “learn to be competent, participating masters of their environments” (Yerxa 1993,

p. 3) and experience being, becoming, and belonging (Wilcock 2006).

Primary Focuses

Occupation is a complex concept. Within the diverse topics addressed, much of the occupational science research has coalesced around several key concerns; the relationship between occupation and health, the meanings occupation holds, and occupation as a means of identity construction.

Large-scale empirical studies to establish the influence occupation has on health have been conducted by researchers from the University of Southern California, targeting lifestyle redesign™ for elders living in the community and for individuals at risk of decubitus ulcers and other health conditions (Clark et al. 2004; Clark and Lawlor 2009). In the Well Elderly Study, elders who were assisted to incorporate meaningful occupations into their everyday lives achieved global improvements in physical and social functioning, vitality, and mental health. Delivery of the intervention was cost-effective, and participants reported substantially reduced health costs. Smaller-scale studies have investigated the impact of various health conditions on individuals’ occupations, explored the concept of occupational balance, and identified patterns of engagement in occupation associated with self-reported stress levels or health status.

Exploration of the relationship between occupation and well-being utilizing a history of ideas methodology has generated theoretical understandings of using occupation to both promote health and well-being, and to prevent illness and disability (Wilcock 2006). These perspectives align with the Declaration of Alma Ata and the Ottawa Charter, which call for the reorientation of health services toward the pursuit of health, and point to the need for widespread reform of occupational therapy to address population health (Wilcock and Hocking 2004).

In addition to the focus on health, multiple small-scale qualitative studies have explored the meaning and experience of engaging in

occupation. Perspectives range from meaning making through participation in cultural and mundane occupations (traditional forms of Indian dance, making a cup of tea) to the meaning of specialized occupations, such as teaching in a tertiary setting. Meaning has been explored through studies of participation in solitary and group occupations, such as cake decorating or singing in a choir, in relation to ritual, and from the perspective of making and using objects (Dickie 2010; Hocking 2009). An emerging perspective, grounded in Deweyan pragmatism, is that occupation is a transaction between the environment, self, and others. This strand of discussion draws attention to the ways internal and external changes mediate the meanings experienced and conveyed through occupation, and implicitly critiques earlier studies of individuals' engagement in occupation that paid little attention to environmental influences (Dickie et al. 2006).

A third focus has been the construction of identity and sense of self through occupation (Phelan and Kinsella 2009), including the ways identity is strengthened or claimed (Christiansen 1999; Rudman 2002). Occupational identity is frequently discussed in relation to roles or role loss, gender, ethnicity, group membership, place or living with a chronic illness. In vulnerable groups, including older adults, refugees, migrants, and asylum seekers, restrictions and disruptions in occupation have been associated with identity change or preservation.

Key Concepts in Occupational Science

Occupational Deprivation

Grounded in the belief that "unused skill or capacity . . . can become a disease centre or else atrophy or disappear" (Maslow, cited in Wilcock 1993, p. 21), Wilcock proposed that insufficient engagement in occupations has detrimental effects on health. Occupational deprivation is the term used to refer to situations where people experience chronic or permanent health problems due to lack of access to the range of occupations required

to sustain health, because of cultural, political, economic, or social factors outside of themselves. Examples include the deliberate occupational deprivation of prisoners; sex role stereotypes, and cultural and religious sanctions that curtail women's participation in culturally meaningful occupations; the displacement and containment of refugees and asylum seekers (Whiteford 2010), and the lack of opportunity to engage in occupation experienced by older people living in care facilities.

Occupational Justice

An aspect of social justice, occupational justice hinges on the equitable distribution of resources "as part of fair, enabling and empowering societies" (Wilcock 2006, p. 245). Four occupational rights have been proposed, centering on (a) experiencing occupation as meaningful and enriching; (b) participation in occupations that foster development, health and social inclusion; (c) having choice in occupations, at individual or population levels; and (d) deriving fair privileges from participation in diverse occupations (Townsend and Wilcock 2004). Systematically depriving people of occupation, to the extent that individual and population health are undermined (Stadnyk et al. 2010), is termed an occupational injustice. Such injustices are thought to manifest at the individual level as chronic stress, fatigue, and immune deficiencies and at a population level as civic disturbance and social disintegration. The concept of occupational justice has been taken up by the World Federation of Occupational Therapists in its Position Statement on Human Rights (n.d.). Related concepts including occupational marginalization and occupational apartheid have been proposed.

Occupational Potential/Possibilities

While occupational potential has been defined as "a vision of future possibilities for engagement in occupations, or structuring of society to enable people to participate as fully as possible" (Christiansen and Townsend 2010, p. 421), it is more usually considered to refer to the human

potential that emerges through participation in occupation (Asaba and Wicks 2010). Assumptions include that people naturally strive to develop their potential, employing creativity and constructive means across the life course. Human potential is not seen as predetermined; rather it is responsive to both the person and the social environment, relates to participation in occupation, and emerges over time as human capacities are exercised. The concept of occupational potential relates to the notion of possibilities, viewed as the interaction between experiences, actions, skills, and contexts.

Co-occupation

First published in 1996, the concept of co-occupation refers to those occupations where the shared participation of two or more people is requisite, such as playing on a see-saw, feeding an infant, or playing “peek-a-boo” (Zemke and Clark 1996). In relation to infants, co-occupation is discussed in terms of promoting development, adaptation, and interaction. Researchers have sought to establish psychological, physiological, and behavioral differences between people engaged in solitary occupations and co-occupations, with some statistically significant differences identified.

Scope of Occupational Science

The scope of the discipline has been described as encompassing the substrates, form, function, and socio-cultural and historical context of human occupation (Clark et al. 1991). The substrates comprise humans’ capacity to engage in occupation, including:

- Neuromuscular and other bodily structures, which both give the potential for and delimit human’s capacities (e.g., physical strength, dexterity, and reaction times)
- Metabolic functions to maintain homeostasis despite exertion, which manifest as fitness, endurance, recovery times, and so on
- Cognitive and psychological processes such as information processing, memory, and

regulation of emotions, which provide the capacity to maintain attention and monitor performance, and to remember, interpret, and apply the culturally accumulated and individually acquired knowledge of occupations

- Learned motor patterns and ways of responding.

Humans’ stereoscopic vision, opposable thumbs, upright posture (which frees the hands to manipulate objects), and the size of humans’ cerebral cortex (thus, the capacity for language, judgment, problem solving, and self-consciousness) have been identified as particularly important physical characteristics (Wilcock 2006), which underpin these substrates.

The form of an occupation is its observable features. Depending on the occupation, different characteristics will be important. Those might include the capacities required to carry out the occupation (e.g., sufficient strength to wield a hammer), where the occupation usually takes place, who typically participates in the occupation (age, gender, socioeconomic status, ethnicity), whether the occupation is completed alone or with others, the time of day it is usually performed, how long it takes and the sequence of steps involved, how rigidly the steps or timeframes must be adhered to, the pace or tempo of performance required, and what tools or resources are used.

Other sources have included aspects that are not observable in their definition of an occupational form, such as the cultural meanings the occupation holds, the rules that govern performance, and the cognitive processes involved in monitoring performance (Nelson 1999).

The function of an occupation is what is achieved by participating in it. There may be a concrete product, such as the vegetables growing in the garden, in addition to individual gains (a child learns about caring for seedlings), group outcomes (a family conserves its financial resources), and societal consequences (horticultural knowledge is preserved and disseminated).

The sociocultural context of an occupation shapes the meanings associated with it. For instance, expectations related to individuals' socioeconomic status, gender, age, and ethnicity influence who does what and how people respond to people acting within and outside of those norms. The sociocultural context also influences the value placed on different occupations, with playing football being more acceptable to mainstream society than driving a stolen car, and programming a computer likely to be better remunerated than cleaning a bathroom – even though keeping bathrooms clean has an important role in preserving people's health. The historical development of an occupation can influence the meaning attributed to it, as in an occupation attributed the status of a tradition, as well as how widely dispersed it is across different cultures and people of different ages. Making bread and baskets, cleaning, building, weaving, raising crops, and fishing are occupations present in many cultures, albeit using different technologies. Reading a book is a more recent occupation, although its history spans several centuries, that is encouraged in school-aged children and an assumed ability in adults, even if they prefer not to participate. Playing interactive games on a computer has a shorter history, and younger rather than older people tend to have higher levels of proficiency in that occupation.

Critical Perspectives in Occupational Science

A range of critical discourses are emerging in the literature (Whiteford and Hocking 2012). It is acknowledged that Western assumptions of the centrality of occupations in people's lives, the meanings occupations hold, and individualist rather than collectivist understandings predominate, and indigenous perspectives, such as the things people do to care for the land or in relation to the spiritual world, have not received much attention. One review of the discipline's research has also identified a gender inequity, with "adult, white women without disabilities" (Pierce et al. 2010, p. 209) being the group most studied by

presenters at conferences convened by the Society for the Study of Occupation: USA between 2002 and 2007. A similar bias is evident in the Journal of Occupational Science.

In response to such critiques, a derived emic method was developed to generate cross-cultural understandings of occupation (Shordike et al. 2010), a transactional perspective has been advocated (Dickie et al. 2006), and governmentality has provided a critical lens through which to consider people's occupational choices (Rudman et al. 2009).

Cross-References

► Occupational Therapy

References and Readings

- AOTA. (1997). Statement: Fundamental concepts of occupational therapy: Occupation, purposeful activity and function. *American Journal of Occupational Therapy*, 51, 864–866.
- Asaba, E., & Wicks, A. (2010). Occupational potential. *Journal of Occupational Science*, 17, 120–124.
- Christiansen, C. (1999). Defining lives: Occupation as identity: An essay on competence, coherence, and the creation of meaning. *American Journal of Occupational Therapy*, 53, 547–558.
- Christiansen, C. H., & Townsend, E. A. (Eds.). (2010). *Introduction to occupation: The art and science of living* (2nd ed.). Upper Saddle River: Pearson Education.
- Clark, F., & Lawlor, M. C. (2009). The making and mattering of occupational science. In E. B. Crepeau, E. S. Cohn, & B. A. Boyt Schell (Eds.), *Willard and Spackman's occupational therapy* (11th ed., pp. 2–14). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Clark, F. A., Parham, D., Carlson, M. E., Frank, G., Jackson, J., Pierce, D., et al. (1991). Occupational science: Academic innovation in the service of occupational therapy's future. *American Journal of Occupational Therapy*, 45, 300–310.
- Clark, F. A., Jackson, J., & Carlson, M. (2004). Occupational science, occupational therapy and evidence-based practice: What the well Elderly study has taught us. In M. Molineux (Ed.), *Occupation for occupational therapists* (pp. 200–218). Oxford: Blackwell.
- Crabtree, J. L. (1998). The end of occupational therapy. *American Journal of Occupational Therapy*, 52, 205–214.

- Csikszentmihalyi, M. (1993). Activity and happiness: Towards a science of occupation. *Journal of Occupational Science: Australia*, 1(1), 38–42.
- Dickie, V. A. (2010). Are occupations processes too complicated to explain? What we can learn by trying. *Journal of Occupational Science*, 17, 195–203.
- Dickie, V., Cutchin, M. P., & Humphry, R. (2006). Occupation as transactional experience: A critique of individualism in occupational science. *Journal of Occupational Science*, 13, 83–93.
- Gray, J. M. (1997). Application of the phenomenological method to the concept of occupation. *Journal of Occupational Science: Australia*, 4, 5–17.
- Hocking, C. (2009). The challenge of occupation: Describing the things people do. *Journal of Occupational Science*, 16, 140–150.
- Nelson, D. (1999). Occupational terminology interactive dialogue: Occupational form. *Journal of Occupational Science*, 6, 76–78.
- Phelan, S., & Kinsella, A. E. (2009). Occupational identity: Engaging socio-cultural perspectives. *Journal of Occupational Science*, 16, 85–91.
- Pierce, D., Adler, K., Baltisberger, J., Fehringer, E., Hunter, E., Malkawi, S., et al. (2010). Occupational science: A data-based American perspective. *Journal of Occupational Science*, 17, 204–215.
- Rudman, D. L. (2002). Linking occupation and identity: Lessons learned through qualitative exploration. *Journal of Occupational Science*, 9, 12–19.
- Rudman, D. L., Huot, S., & Dennhardt, S. (2009). Shaping ideal places for retirement: Occupational possibilities within contemporary media. *Journal of Occupational Science*, 16(1), 18–24. <https://doi.org/10.1080/14427591.2009.9686637>.
- Shordike, A., Hocking, C., Pierce, D., Wright-St. Clair, V., Vittayakorn, S., Rattakorn, P., et al. (2010). Respecting regional culture in an international multi-site study: A derived ethic method. *Qualitative Research*, 10(3), 333–355. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1468794109360145>.
- Stadnyk, R. L., Townsend, E. A., & Wilcock, A. A. (2010). Occupational justice. In C. H. Christiansen & E. A. Townsend (Eds.), *Introduction to occupation: The art and science of living* (2nd ed., pp. 329–358). Upper Saddle River: Pearson Education.
- Townsend, E. (Ed.). (1997). *Enabling occupation: An occupational therapy perspective*. Ottawa: CAOT Publications.
- Townsend, E., & Wilcock, A. (2004). Occupational justice. In C. H. Christiansen & E. A. Townsend (Eds.), *Introduction to occupation: The art and science of living* (pp. 243–273). Upper Saddle River: Pearson Education.
- Whiteford, G. E. (2010). Occupational deprivation: Understanding limited participation. In C. H. Christiansen & E. A. Townsend (Eds.), *Introduction to occupation: The art and science of living* (2nd ed., pp. 303–328). Upper Saddle River: Pearson Education.
- Whiteford, G. E., & Hocking, C. (Eds.). (2012). *Critical perspectives on occupational science: Society, inclusion, participation*. Oxford: Wiley-Blackwell.
- Wilcock, A. (1993). A theory of the human need for occupation. *Journal of Occupational Science: Australia*, 1(1), 17–24.
- Wilcock, A. A. (2006). *An occupational perspective of health* (2nd ed.). Thorofare: Slack.
- Wilcock, A. A., & Hocking, C. (2004). Occupation, population health and policy development. In M. Molineux (Ed.), *Occupation for occupational therapists* (pp. 219–230). Oxford: Blackwell.
- World Federation of Occupational Therapists. (n.d.). *Position statement on human rights*. Retrieved from <http://www.wfot.org/documents.asp?cat=31>.
- Yerxa, E. J. (1993). Occupational science: A new source of power for participants in occupational therapy. *Journal of Occupational Science: Australia*, 1(1), 3–9.
- Yerxa, E. J. (1998). Health and the human spirit for occupation. *American Journal of Occupational Therapy*, 52(6), 412–418.
- Yerxa, E. J., Clark, F., Jackson, J., Parham, D., Stein, C., & Zemke, R. (1989). An introduction to occupational science: A foundation for occupational therapy in the twenty-first century. *Occupational Therapy in Health Care*, 6(4), 1–17.
- Yerxa, E. J., Clark, F., Frank, G., Jackson, J., Parham, D., Pierce, D., et al. (1990). An introduction to occupational science: A foundation for occupational therapy in the twenty-first century. *Occupational Therapy in Health Care*, 6(4), 1–17.
- Zemke, R., & Clark, F. (Eds.). (1996). *Occupational science: The evolving discipline*. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis.

Occupational Status

Karen Jacobs¹, Miranda Hellman²,
Jacqueline Markowitz¹ and Ellen Wuest²

¹Occupational Therapy, College of Health and Rehabilitation Science, Sargent College, Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

²Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

Employment status; Job prestige; Occupational prestige

Definition

Occupational status is the “collective term encompassing occupational performance

components, occupational performance, and occupational role performance” (Jacobs and Jacobs 2009).

Occupational performance components are “any subsystem that contributes to the performance of an occupation” (such as self-care, leisure, work, education, etc.) (Jacobs and Jacobs 2009).

Occupational performance is “the act of doing and accomplishing a selected activity or occupation that results from the dynamic transaction among the client, the context, and the activity” (Jacobs and Jacobs 2009).

Occupational role performance is the “rights, obligations, and expected behavior patterns associated with a particular set of activities or occupations, done on a regular basis, and associated with social cultural roles” (Hillman and Chapparo 1995).

Overall, occupational status can be thought of as the various roles that a person identifies through participation in occupations. Occupational status may be impacted by other factors such as socioeconomic status. However, in general, it is being engaged in an occupation for wages.

Cross-References

- [Job Demand/Control/Strain](#)
- [Job Performance](#)

References and Readings

- Hillman, A., & Chapparo, C. J. (1995). An investigation of occupational role performance in men over sixty years of age, following a stroke. *Journal of Occupational Science*, 2(3), 88–99.
- Jacobs, K., & Jacobs, L. (2009). *Quick reference dictionary for occupational therapy* (5th ed.). Thorofare: SLACK Incorporated.

Occupational Therapy

Carolyn Baum¹, LEEANNE M. CAREY² and
HELENE J. POLATAJKO³

¹Program in Occupational Therapy, Washington University School of Medicine in St. Louis, St. Louis, MO, USA

²Occupational Therapy, School of Allied Health, La Trobe University, Melbourne, VIC, Australia

³Department of Occupational Therapy and Occupational Science, Faculty of Medicine, University of Toronto, Toronto, ON, Canada

Synonyms

[Activities of daily living \(ADL\)](#); [Daily life skills](#); [Health science](#); [Instrumental activities of daily living](#); [ergotherapy](#); [Occupation](#); [Occupational science](#); [Participation](#); [Rehabilitation](#)

Definition

The World Federation of Occupational Therapists (WFOT) defines occupational therapy as a client-centered health profession concerned with promoting health and well-being through occupation. The primary goal of occupational therapy is to enable people to participate in the activities of everyday life. Occupational therapists achieve this outcome by working with people and communities to enhance their ability to engage in the occupations they want to, need to, or are expected to do or by modifying the occupation or the environment to better support their occupational engagement (WFOT 2012).

Description

Occupational therapy, founded in 1917, has become a well-established profession within the areas of health and rehabilitation with over 95 member countries in the WFOT membership. Occupational therapists use a variety of interventions to foster recovery, modify activities for

Occupational Therapist

- [Therapy, Occupational](#)

successful performance, and facilitate or adapt environments to enable persons to improve or regain the ability to participate in meaningful and satisfying activities that are necessary to support everyday living. Occupational therapy is applied at individual, group, community, and population levels (Söderback 2009; Christiansen et al. 2015).

The term “occupation,” as used by occupational therapists, refers to more than paid work; it refers to all manner of meaningful activities and includes activities necessary to care for self and others, education, work, play, leisure, and social participation. The profession holds a number of key values and assumptions. In particular, it views people as occupational beings, believes in the positive relationship between occupation and health, and holds that all people have the need for and right to engagement in meaningful occupation and experience the health and well-being it brings (Townsend and Polatajko 2013; Duncan 2011; Christiansen et al. 2015).

Occupational therapy is an applied discipline with theoretical underpinnings related to occupation and its enablement. The practice of occupational therapy draws from numerous sciences including occupational science and neuroscience, as well as the behavioral, biomedical, psychological, social, and environmental sciences. The integration of knowledge from these diverse sciences and its application to daily life place the profession in a key position to contribute to the translation of science to everyday living to improve the human condition (Carey and Baum 2011).

The Practice of Occupational Therapy

As an applied science, occupational therapy is focused on the role occupation plays in the everyday lives of those who experience difficulties in engaging in the activities they want to do, need to do, or are expected to do. Occupational therapists become involved when the occupations of everyday living are compromised or are at risk of being compromised by health conditions, injuries, or potentially disabling conditions. They help people overcome activity limitations or occupational participation restrictions by identifying barriers to occupational engagement and by

evaluating the processes that support it. Occupational therapy interventions are designed to promote engagement, restore function, and enable important activities and occupational participation. Occupational therapists rely on a variety of valid and reliable measurement tools and intervention techniques that assist in their assessment and enablement of engagement in the important occupations of everyday living and promote their unique roles as members of a team supporting a person’s development, recovery, and integration or reintegration in everyday life. Occupational therapy practitioners understand performance and engagement from a holistic perspective and address all aspects of performance when providing interventions.

Occupational therapists use a client-centered approach and conduct a detailed analysis of the fit between a person’s capacity, the occupational demands, and the environment to determine the best approaches to improving capacity and/or modifying occupations and adapting environments to facilitate change and enable performance and engagement (Law et al. 2005; Polatajko et al. 2013; Christiansen et al. 2015). Eriksson, Kottorp, Borg, and Tham describe the limitations to daily occupations caused by disruptions of health and social situation as “occupational gaps,” the gaps that occur between what the individual wants, needs, and is expected to do and what he or she actually does.

Occupational therapy is practiced in a wide range of settings, including hospitals, rehabilitation settings, health centers, mental health centers, community centers, private practices, and primary care sites including physician offices, homes, workplaces, schools, and residences for seniors and those living with chronic and developmental disabilities. Clients are actively involved in the therapeutic process, and outcomes of occupational therapy are measured in terms of occupational performance and engagement, participation, and well-being (WFOT 2012). Occupational therapists bridge between the medical perspective focused on impairment reduction, management, or recovery and the sociocultural perspective focused on the contexts in which people live their lives. Occupational therapists are committed to promoting inclusion,

diversity, independence, and safety for all recipients in various stages of life, health, and illness and are guided by an Occupational Therapy Code of Ethics and/or Conduct (American Occupational Therapy Association 2005; College of Occupational Therapists 2015; Canadian Association of Occupational Therapists 2007; Occupational Therapy Board of Australia 2014).

The day-to-day practice of occupational therapy is guided by jurisdictionally relevant bodies; at the international level, it is guided by the self-appointed World Federation of Occupational Therapists (WFOT 2010). All schools worldwide must meet minimum standards established by WFOT. Many countries have additional standards, and some have registration or certification standards that must be met by therapists to practice. There are also national and international bodies, such as the American, Australian, Canadian, British, and Swedish Associations of Occupational Therapists that support and regulate practice. Occupational therapy practice has an established literature supporting the theoretical underpinnings of the profession, its measures, and interventions. The science of occupational therapy contributes to occupational science, neuroscience, and environmental science and furnishes evidence to support recovery and/or adaptive or compensatory strategies that improve the lives of people, support development, or maintain health and well-being.

The Science of Occupational Therapy

The science of occupational therapy provides a unique contribution to the understanding of human occupation and participation in the everyday activities of living. Occupational therapy is based on the premise that humans have a basic need for occupation and health, and well-being is dependent on and can be supported through meaningful and purposeful engagement in occupations. Occupation is a primary source of meaning (Christiansen 1999; Hasselkus 2002) and a determinant of life satisfaction (Eriksson et al. 2009). A number of empirical studies have identified occupational engagement as a determinant of health and well-being (Clark et al. 1997; Glass et al. 1999; Herzog et al. 1998; Horgas et al. 1998; Hultsch et al. 1999). The

absence of engagement in occupation may lead to physiological decline and negatively impact health (Kielhofner 2004; Townsend and Polatajko 2013). Importantly, occupation has the potential to be therapeutic.

The science of occupational therapy seeks to understand the mechanisms that support *function, activity, participation*, and the *environmental enablers and barriers* that make function, activity, and participation possible. Occupational therapy scientists study the full range of phenomena that is human occupation. From basic mechanisms of body function and structure to sociocultural influences, they address measurement, intervention, and translational and health services research.

Cross-References

- Activities of Daily Living (ADL)
- Productivity
- Work

References and Further Reading

- American Occupational Therapy Association. (2005). Occupational therapy code of ethics. *American Journal of Occupational Therapy*, 59, 639–642.
- British Association of Occupational Therapists and College of Occupational Therapists. (2015). Code of ethics and professional conduct. Retrieved from <https://www.rcot.co.uk/practice-resources/rcot-publications/downloads/rcot-standards-and-ethics>. Accessed 15 Aug 2018.
- Canadian Association of Occupational Therapists. (2007). Canadian association of occupational therapists code of ethics. Retrieved from <https://www.caot.ca/site/pt/codeofethics?nav=sidebar>. Accessed 15 Aug 2018.
- Carey, L. M., & Baum, C. (2011). Occupational therapy. In N. P. Azari (Ed.), *Encyclopaedia of sciences and religions*. Heidelberg: Springer.
- Christiansen, C. (1999). Defining lives: Occupation as identity: An essay on competence, coherence, and the creation of meaning. *American Journal of Occupational Therapy*, 53, 547–558.
- Christiansen, C., Baum, C. M., & Bass-Haugen, J. (2015). *Occupational therapy: Performance, participation, and well-being* (4th ed.). Thorofare: SLACK.
- Clark, F., Azen, S. P., Zemke, R., Jackson, J., Carlson, M., Mandel, D., et al. (1997). Occupational therapy for independent-living older adults: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 278, 1321–1326.

- Duncan, E. A. (Ed.). (2011). *Foundations for practice in occupational therapy*. Churchill Livingstone/Elsevier Health Sciences.
- Eriksson, G., Kottorp, A., Borg, J., & Tham, K. (2009). Relationship between occupational gaps in everyday scientists study the full range of phenomena that is human occupation. From basic mechanisms of body function and structure to sociocultural influences, they address measurement, intervention, and translational and health services research life, depressive mood and life satisfaction after acquired brain injury. *Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*, 41, 187–194.
- Glass, T. A., de Leon, C., Marottoli, R. A., & Berkman, L. F. (1999). Population based study of social and productive activities as predictors of survival among elderly Americans. *British Medical Journal*, 319, 478–483.
- Hasselkus, B. (2002). *The meaning of everyday occupation*. Thorofare: SLACK.
- Herzog, A. R., Franks, M. M., Markus, H. R., & Holmberg, D. (1998). Activities and well-being in older age: Effects of self-concept and educational attainment. *Psychology and Aging*, 13, 179–185.
- Horgas, A. L., Wilms, H., & Baltes, M. M. (1998). Daily life in very old age: Everyday activities as expression of successful living. *The Gerontologist*, 38, 556–568.
- Hultsch, D. E., Hertzog, C., Small, B. J., & Dixon, R. A. (1999). Use it or lose it: Engaged lifestyle as a buffer of cognitive decline in old age? *Psychology and Aging*, 14, 245–263.
- Kielhofner, G. (2004). *Conceptual foundations of occupational therapy* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: F. A Davis. Authoritative texts on occupational therapy.
- Law, M. C., Baum, C. M., & Dunn, W. (2005). *Measuring occupational performance: Supporting best practice in occupational therapy* (2nd ed.). Thorofare: SLACK.
- Occupational Therapy Board of Australia. (2014). Code of conduct. Retrieved from <http://www.occupationaltherapyboard.gov.au/Codes-Guidelines/Code-of-conduct.aspx>. Accessed 15 Aug 2018.
- Polatajko, H. J., Davis, J., Cantin, N., Dubouloz-Wilner, C.-J., & Trentham, B. (2013). Occupation-based practice: The essential elements, Chapter 8. In E. A. Townsend & H. J. Polatajko (Eds.), *Enabling occupation II: Advancing an occupational therapy vision for health, well-being and justice through occupation* (2nd ed., pp. 203–227). Ottawa: CAOT Publications ACE.
- Söderback, I. (Ed.). (2009). *International handbook of occupational therapy interventions* (Vol. 1, 1st ed.). New York: Springer.
- Townsend, E. A., & Polatajko, H. J. (2013). *Enabling occupation II: Advancing an occupational therapy vision for health, well-being & justice through occupation* (2nd ed.). Ottawa: CAOT Publications ACE.
- World Federation of Occupational Therapists. (2012). Definition of occupational therapy. Retrieved from <http://www.wfot.org/AboutUs/AboutOccupationalTherapy/DefinitionofOccupationalTherapy.aspx>. Accessed 15 Aug 2018.

Odds Ratio

Elizabeth M. Maloney

Formerly of the Viral and Rickettsial Division,
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention,
Atlanta, GA, USA

Definition

An odds ratio (OR) is a measure of association between an exposure and an outcome (i.e., disease) and is commonly derived from data collected in a case-control study design. When the outcome is rare, the OR is a good estimate of the relative risk of the outcome. The absolute value of the OR varies in size from 0 to infinity; its size is an indication of the magnitude of the association. An OR >1.0 indicates that the likelihood of the exposure is increased in the presence of the outcome. For example, an OR of 3.00 is interpreted as meaning that those with the outcome are three times as likely to be exposed compared to those without the outcome. An OR <1.0 indicates that the likelihood of the exposure is decreased in the presence of the outcome, which is often referred to as a “protective effect.” For example, an OR of 0.70 is interpreted as meaning that persons with the outcome are 1.00–0.70, or 30%, less likely to be exposed compared to persons without the outcome. Since a case-control design is cross-sectional in nature, an OR cannot be used to assess causation between an exposure and an outcome.

The precision of the OR is determined based on the computation of a 95% confidence interval (CI) around the OR, and is greatly affected by the sample size. A narrow CI indicates greater precision, and conversely, a wide CI indicates less precision and more variability. The larger the sample size, the greater the precision of the OR. A CI that *does not* include 1.0 indicates that the OR is statistically significant. An unadjusted OR and 95% CI can be computed using the simple chi-square statistic, or logistic regression analysis if preferred. However, logistic regression analysis is typically used to generate an OR and 95% CI that is adjusted for the effects of one or more confounders.

Office Blood Pressure Measurement (OBPM)

► Blood Pressure Classification

Office of Family Assistance

► Family Assistance

Oils

► Fat: Saturated, Unsaturated

Oldenburg, Brian

Brian Oldenburg
School of Population and Global Health,
The University of Melbourne, Melbourne,
VIC, Australia

Biographical Information



Career Development and Impact

Brian Oldenburg was born in Sydney, Australia, in 1953. He received his Bachelor of Science (Honors in Psychology) degree from the University of New South Wales (UNSW) in 1975, and he then worked in a community mental health center in Sydney before living and working in the United

Kingdom for 2 years. He returned to Australia in 1978 to the School of Psychiatry at Prince Henry Hospital and the University of NSW, before completing a Masters of Clinical Psychology in 1983. He completed his Ph.D. degree in the UNSW School of Medicine and Psychiatry in 1987. He was employed as a lecturer and then senior lecturer in the Department of Public Health, University of Sydney (1987–1994), before becoming a professor and inaugural head of the School of Public Health at Queensland University of Technology in Brisbane, Australia (1994–2006). In 2006, Oldenburg became the inaugural professor and director of International Public Health and Associate Dean International at Monash University in Melbourne, Australia. Since 2006, he has also been a visiting professor at the University of Queensland as well as an honorary professor at the Finnish National Public Health Institute (KTL) and also China's Beijing Centers for Disease Control, Shanghai Jiao Tong University, the Chinese University of Hong Kong, and the Public Health Foundation of India. He was also a regional director of the Asia-Pacific Academic Consortium for Public Health for several years from 2004, and he has been a regular consultant for the World Health Organization since 2003. He was a public health consultant in China for the 5 years leading up to the Beijing Olympic Games in 2008. He undertook a landmark review for the South African Human Sciences Research Council of their research program on the “Social Aspects of HIV/AIDS and Health” in 2008. In 2014, he relocated from Monash University to become the inaugural professor of Non-Communicable Disease Control in the School of Population and Global Health at the University of Melbourne and director of the Centre for Health Equity (2014–2018). In January 2018, he was appointed as the inaugural director of a new *WHO Collaborating Centre on Implementation Research for the Prevention and Control of NCDs*.

He has served on many national and international committees and advisory boards related to health psychology, behavioral medicine, and public health. He has also held senior editorial appointments on the *European Journal of Health Psychology*, *International Journal of Behavioral*

Medicine, Health Psychology Review, Translational Behavioral Medicine, and a number of other journals. He has also held senior appointments on many national and international organizations; for example, he has served as the secretary, president, local program chair, and congress program chair for the International Society of Behavioral Medicine over the past 20 years. He received the Public Health Recognition Award from the Asia-Pacific Academic Consortium for Public Health in 2004, and in 2006, he was awarded Lifetime Fellow Membership of US Society for Behavioral Medicine, for his contribution to “building evidence-based population health interventions that can guide practice and change policy globally.” He also has invited membership of the United Kingdom Faculty of Public Health for his achievements in global public health. In 2014, he was awarded Distinguished Scientist by the International Society for Behavioral Medicine, and in 2017, he was awarded Distinguished International Researcher by the American Psychological Association (Division 38). He regularly provides significant evidence-based advice to government and nongovernment organizations in Australia and internationally about how governments and countries can more effectively prevent and manage chronic conditions, thereby improving the health of their people.

Major Accomplishments

Oldenburg’s research has made a substantial contribution to evidence development, practice, and policy in the fields of public health, prevention, and behavioral medicine in Australia and more globally, over the last 30 years. He has a very distinguished and internationally recognized track record in the design, implementation, and evaluation of behavioral, psychosocial, and environmental interventions for the prevention and management of chronic disease and the promotion of health and well-being in community, healthcare, workplace, school, and other settings. Conducted with one of his academic mentors, Gavin Andrews, his earliest intervention trials conducted in the early 1980s focused on psychosocial and

behavioral interventions to improve rehabilitation and health outcomes for patients following myocardial infarction. Conducted with another of his mentors, Graham Macdonald, in the early 1980s, his doctoral research investigated how psychosocial and behavioral factors were important for treatment adherence and quality of life in people on renal dialysis. His interest in the complex interplay between biological, psychosocial, and behavioral factors in the development, course, and outcomes of chronic conditions is one that has continued throughout his research over the last 30 years. For example, his research team is currently examining the comorbid relationship between negative emotions and both cardiovascular disease and diabetes in order to develop new approaches to interventions.

Since 1990, most of Oldenburg’s intervention trials have had a “real-world” focus, and they have emphasized implementation and policy and practice uptake. He has undertaken recent prevention and chronic disease management trials in China, Malaysia, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh, India, and South Africa. His team has recently completed a large trial of diabetes prevention using structured lifestyle intervention in non-urban communities in Kerala, India (K-DPP), which is now moving into the scale-up phase with the state governments of Kerala and Tamil Nadu in India. His interventions have involved both “soft human touch” (peer support, socio-behavioral, and environmental interventions) and, increasingly, more “high-tech” (ICT) interventions, often in combination with one another. For example, his research team has developed one of the first automated conversational telehealth programs in the world to improve diabetes management (*Australasian TLC Diabetes*), and this very innovative program has now been recently developed and trialed as a mHealth program, called *My Diabetes Coach* (MDC). The results of these trials demonstrate that people living with diabetes and other chronic conditions in the community can significantly improve self-management and, thereby, their health and other outcomes, by using these kinds of interactive telehealth programs using interactive voice recognition and speech. He is the director of a newly established research center in Australia to use

new digital technologies to improve chronic disease outcomes in Australia and other countries.

His research has also focused on chronic disease and socioeconomic health inequalities and social disadvantage as well as interventions with Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander populations in Australia and disadvantaged and vulnerable populations in other countries. In recent years he has led a number of training and capacity building programs in resource-constrained countries. This has included a 5-year capacity building and training grant from the US National Institutes of Health (*D43 Grant*) to establish the ASCEND Network in Asia (*Asian Non-Communicable Chronic Disease Research Network*), 2010–2015. This program established a comprehensive and cross-country research training program for early-career researchers in the prevention and control of chronic diseases in the Asia-Pacific Region. Over the last 10 years, he has led the establishment of the implementation science training and capacity building program for the Global Alliance for Chronic Diseases – www.gacd.org – which is leading research collaborations on chronic diseases worldwide to tackle NCDs, particularly in low- and middle-income countries. He regularly provides significant evidence-based advice to government and non-government organizations in Australia and internationally, about how governments and countries can more effectively prevent and manage chronic conditions, thereby improving the health of their people.

Cross-References

- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Cardiac Rehabilitation](#)
- [Diabetes](#)
- [International Society of Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Population Health](#)
- [Public Health](#)

References and Further Reading

Mathews, E., Thomas, E., Absetz, P., D'Esposito, F., Aziz, Z., Balachandran, S., Daivadanam, M., Thankappan, K. R., & Oldenburg, B. (2018). Cultural adaptation of a

peer-led lifestyle intervention program for diabetes prevention in India: The Kerala diabetes prevention program (K-DPP). *BMC Public Health*, 17(1), 974.

- Oldenburg, B., & Absetz, P. (2011). Lost in translation: Overcoming the barriers to global implementation and exchange of behavioral medicine evidence. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 1, 252–255.
- Oldenburg, B., & Glanz, K. (2008). Diffusions of innovation. In K. Glanz, B. K. Rimer, & K. Viswanath (Eds.), *Health behavior and health education: Theory, research and practice* (4th ed.). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Oldenburg, B., Perkins, R. J., & Andrews, G. (1985). A controlled trial of psychological intervention in myocardial infarction. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 53(6), 852–859.
- Oldenburg, B., Absetz, P., & Chan, C. (2010). Behavioral interventions for prevention and management of chronic disease. In A. Steptoe, K. Freedland, J. R. Jennings, M. Llabre, S. Manuck, & E. Susman (Eds.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 969–988). New York: Springer.
- Oldenburg, B., Absetz, P., Dunbar, J., Reddy, P., & O'Neil, A. (2011). The spread of diabetes prevention programs around the world: A case study from Finland and Australia. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 1(2), 270–282.
- Oldenburg, B., Taylor, C. B., O'Neil, A., et al. (2015). Using new technologies to improve the prevention and management of chronic conditions in populations. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 36, 483–505.
- Thankappan, R., Thirunavukkarasu, S., & Oldenburg, B. (2018). A peer-support lifestyle intervention for preventing type 2 diabetes in India. *PLoS Medicine*, 15(6), e1002575. *Main results demonstrating significant improvements in cardiometabolic outcomes.*

Older Adult

- [Elderly](#)

Omega-3 Fatty Acids

Matthew Muldoon
Department of Medicine, University of
Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Alpha-linolenic acid](#); [DHA](#); [EPA](#); [Fish oil](#); [n-3 fatty acids](#); [Omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids](#)

Definition

Fatty acids are fat molecules that are ubiquitous in the diet and all living organisms. The long-chain, omega-3 fatty acids, eicosapentaenoic and docosahexaenoic acids (EPA, DHA) are known to be effective in reducing recurrence of heart disease events and in the treatment of depression. EPA and DHA are being studied in relation to heart disease prevention, various psychiatric disorders, eye health, cancer, immune function, and arthritis.

Description

Basic Science

Biochemistry and Nutritional Sources

Triglycerides are the classic fat molecule and consist of three fatty acids bound to a 3-carbon glycerol backbone. Phospholipids are triglycerides in which a phosphate group has replaced one of the fatty acids. Phospholipids are the primary building block of all cell membranes.

Fatty acids are simple chains of carbon atoms of lengths between 6 and 22 with a carboxylic acid group at one end. Saturated fatty acids have all single bonds between carbon atoms, monounsaturated fatty acids have a single double bond, and polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) have multiple double bonds. PUFAs are classified as omega-6 when the terminal double bond is present at the sixth carbon atom, and omega-3 when it occurs at the third carbon.

The principle long-chain omega-6 fatty acid is arachidonic acid (AA), and the omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids of interest are EPA and DHA. Humans synthesize AA from the essential fatty acid, linoleic acid, and EPA and DHA from the essential fatty acid, alpha-linolenic acid. However, the efficiency of these synthetic steps is limited for EPA and more so for DHA. As a result, EPA and DHA are viewed as “conditionally essential” in the diet. Only seafood has significant quantities of EPA and DHA, and within seafood oily fish such as salmon, trout, tuna, and mackerel are the richest sources of these nutrients. In North

America and Europe, median EPA and DHA intake is under 200 mg/day, substantially less than earlier and more primitive cultures.

Functional Roles

The multiple actions of the long-chain, omega-3 fatty acids in biological chemistry establish their importance generally to health and disease and, therefore, the biological plausibility of various sequelae of nutritional deficiency. Phospholipids are the basic building block of cell and organelle membranes, and most have an AA, EPA, or DHA in sn-2 position of the glycerol backbone. DHA and AA are highly concentrated in brain phospholipids, and DHA edges out AA as the most prevalent PUFA in human brain gray matter and synaptic membranes. As a highly unsaturated fatty acid, DHA increases the fluidity of cell membranes relative to other fatty acids. Fluidity is a physicochemical property of membranes that modulates the location and activity of membrane-bound proteins, including enzymes, ion transporters, and neurotransmitter receptors.

PUFAs are released by phospholipases and then serve as precursors to eicosanoids – families of prostaglandins, thromboxanes, and leukotrienes regulating inflammation, vasomotion, and hemostasis. AA-derivatives are pro-inflammatory while EPA-derived eicosanoids are relatively anti-inflammatory. Increased EPA availability competes with, and reduces the production of, AA-derived eicosanoids. Additionally, EPA and DHA serve as precursors of resolvins which temper inflammation, vasoconstriction, and thrombogenesis. Finally, DHA both affects brain-derived neurotrophic factor production and forms nitro-fatty acids that are reactive electrophilic species which modulate oxidative stress.

Acting through the preceding mechanisms, the long-chain n-3 PUFA exert neurotrophic effects. These include promotion of neurogenesis, dendritic arborization, selective pruning, and myelination. In a complementary fashion, neural tissue degeneration may be reduced by neuroprotective or anti-apoptotic effects of DHA. Logically, the foregoing cellular roles of PUFA may be expected to affect neurotransmission, either generally or selectively. Evidence from laboratory

experiments and humans studies indicates that omega-3 fatty acid exposure affects serotonergic and dopaminergic neurotransmission.

Clinical Investigation

Early Brain Development

From the last trimester through the second year of life, the human brain undergoes very rapid growth and during this period DHA accretion is rapid and depends upon maternal delivery across the placenta and via breast milk. Infants of mothers reporting low perinatal maternal fish consumption have low early childhood intelligence and increased risk of suboptimal outcomes for pro-social behavior, fine motor, communication, and social development scores. Similarly, the effects of breast-feeding on IQ may be moderated by genetic variation in fatty acid metabolism. Randomized clinical trials suggest that supplementing the diets of either pregnant mothers or infants with DHA improves cognitive development.

Affective Disorders

Evidence from numerous observational studies links low intake of omega-3 fatty acids with greater risk of major depressive disorder and, more generally, depressive symptomatology. Randomized and placebo-controlled trials of fish oil supplementation indicate efficacy in treating this disorder. Treatment benefit appears after 2–3 months of supplementation and appears to be most robust for EPA. In persons not suffering from major depression, supplementation has not been found to affect mood symptoms.

Cognitive Functioning, Decline, and Dementia

Cross-sectional studies and small randomized trials in children and non-elderly adults using dietary data, blood levels, or supplementation suggest that higher intake enhances cognitive performance. However, absent more strongly designed investigations, it is unclear whether such effects are robust and which aspects of cognitive functioning are affected. A comparative wealth of studies finds omega-3 fatty acids to correlate inversely with age-related cognitive decline. Clinical trials to date have provided

only inconsistent evidence that taking a fish oil supplement ameliorates cognitive decline among elderly individuals.

Dementia risk in large cohort studies is greatest in persons with relatively low omega-3 fatty acid intake. However, no clinical trial has tested supplementation effects on dementia incidence, and two trials of disease progression found no benefit. Nonetheless, omega-3 fatty acids may be protective in persons not carrying the gene conveying risk for Alzheimer's disease, APOE $\epsilon 4$.

Other Psychiatric Disorders

Other major conditions such as schizophrenia and attention-deficit/hyperactivity have also been linked to low consumptions of EPA and DHA. Preliminary evidence of efficacy from supplementation exists, and additional studies are underway.

Public Health

Potential Health Benefits and Risks of Consumption of Fish or Omega-3 Fatty Acid Supplements

As summarized above, a variety of common and serious chronic health conditions are associated with low dietary consumption of the omega-3 fatty acids, EPA, and DHA. To date, clinical trials providing 2–6 months of supplementation have yielded mixed evidence of intervention efficacy, although dose and/or duration may not have been sufficient. National intake levels are low, and long-term diet modification has the potential to affect the incidence of various disorders and, accordingly, have substantial public health benefit.

Risks of fish consumption require consideration. Mercury is toxic to the brain in high doses and may have mild effects on the central and peripheral nervous systems with more modest exposure. Mercury bio-accumulates in aquatic food chains, reaching potentially dangerous concentrations in large, predatory fish with long life spans (e.g., swordfish, shark, and king mackerel). Caution against consumption of these fish during pregnancy is particularly emphasized, whereas consumption of other fish and any shellfish three times a week is widely considered to be safe.

PCBs and dioxin are organochlorine compounds produced by commercial and industrial processes. Although they contaminate many foods (e.g., beef, chicken, butter, and fish), their levels are decreasing in recent years and PCBs and dioxin have not been clearly linked to adverse health outcomes in contemporary clinical studies. Fish oil capsules can contain varying amounts of PCBs and dioxins, but typically have no mercury.

Public Health Recommendations

To the extent that EPA and DHA can be synthesized by humans, albeit at low rates, these nutrients are not absolutely required in the diet and this complicates attempts to arrive at consensus regarding dietary recommendations. Nonetheless, a variety of expert bodies have issued recommendations and these generally suggest minimum daily intake of 250–500 mg of EPA and DHA. In order to achieve putative health benefits, persons with lifelong low intake of EPA and DHA consumption may need to increased consumption well above these recommended targets.

Cross-References

- [Cognitive Function](#)
- [Coronary Heart Disease](#)
- [Fat, Dietary Intake](#)
- [Neurotransmitter](#)

References and Readings

- Appleton, K. M., Rogers, P. J., & Ness, A. R. (2010). Updated systematic review and meta-analysis of the effects of n-3 long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids on depressed mood. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 91(3), 757–770.
- Chow, C. K. (2008). *Fatty acids in foods and their health implications* (3rd ed.). Boca Raton: CRC Press.
- Harris, W. S., Mozaffarian, D., Lefevre, M., Toner, C. D., Colombo, J., Cunnane, S. C., et al. (2009). Towards establishing dietary reference intakes for eicosapentaenoic and docosahexaenoic acids. *Journal of Nutrition*, 139(4), 804S–819S.
- Kidd, P. M. (2007). Omega-3 DHA and EPA for cognition, behavior, and mood: Clinical findings and structural-functional synergies with cell membrane phospholipids. *Alternative Medicine Review*, 12(3), 207–227.

- Mozaffarian, D., & Rimm, E. B. (2006). Fish intake, contaminants, and human health: Evaluating the risks and the benefits. *Journal of the American Medical Association (JAMA)*, 296(15), 1885–1899.

Omega-3 Polyunsaturated Fatty Acids

- [Omega-3 Fatty Acids](#)

Oncology (Oncologist)

Yu Yamada

Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, Kyushu University, Fukuoka, Japan

Definition

Oncology is the branch of medicine dealing with the biological and chemical properties of cancer, in addition to its prevention, development, diagnosis, and treatment. An oncologist is a medical professional who practices oncology. In general, oncology mainly consists of three primary disciplines: surgical oncology, radiation oncology, and medical oncology.

Surgical oncology is the field of surgery dedicated to the operative ablation of cancer. Surgery is the oldest treatment for cancer and the only treatment that can cure a patient with cancer, although chemotherapy for hematological malignances has also been known to be an effective cure. Recently, laparoscopy has emerged as a valuable tool in surgical oncology. Radiation oncology is the study of the use of radiation to destroy cancer. Radiation kills cancer cells by radiating the cells with either photons (i.e., x-rays and gamma rays) or particles (i.e., protons and electrons). Medical oncology is a subspecialty of internal medicine concerned with the study of cancer, especially chemotherapy involving treatment with

anticancer drugs (see “► [Chemotherapy](#)” for more information).

There are other subspecialties within oncology. Gynecologic oncology focuses on cancers of the female reproductive system. Pediatric and geriatric oncology is the branch of medicine that studies benign and malignant tumors in children and the elderly, respectively.

Behavioral medicine may be closely related to psycho-oncology, which is the study of psychological aspects of the treatment and management of patients with cancer. Psycho-oncology addresses two major psychological dimensions of cancer: the emotional reactions of the patients, families, and staff to cancer and its treatment (psychosocial) and the psychological and behavioral factors that influence cancer risk and survival (psychobiological). While great advances have been made in the fields of psycho-oncology in general, further research is needed (1) to improve the assessment and treatment of psychiatric syndromes in cancer patients, (2) to understand the nature of distress in all stages of disease and survival, (3) to assess the needs of special subgroups such as geriatric cancer patients, (4) to understand the mechanisms and implications of cognitive changes associated with cancer treatment, (5) to integrate basic science insights into clinical practice, and (6) to continue the development and study on intervention modalities for the full range of psychological and psychiatric symptoms and syndromes encountered in the oncology setting.

Cross-References

► [Cancer, Types of](#)

References and Readings

- Breitbart, W. S., & Alici, Y. (2009). Psycho-oncology. *Harvard Review of Psychiatry*, 17(6), 361–376.
- DeVita, V. T., & Lawrence, T. S. (2008). *DeVita, Hellman, and Rosenberg's cancer (cancer: principles & practice)*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Holland, J. C. (2009). *Psycho-oncology* (2nd ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.

Online Health Coaching

► [Digital Health Coaching](#)

Online Intervention Cost-Effectiveness

► [eHealth Cost-Effectiveness](#)

Online Psychotherapy

► [Online Therapy and E-Counseling](#)

Online Therapy and E-Counseling

Madalina L. Sucala
Johnson & Johnson, Health and Wellness
Solutions, New Brunswick, NJ, USA

Synonyms

[E-counseling](#); [E-therapy](#); [Internet-based therapy](#); [Online psychotherapy](#); [Telepsychology](#)

Definition

Building on previous definitions (APA 2013; Manhal-Baugus 2001; Rochlen et al. 2004), online therapy can be defined as the provision of psychological services via Internet, which can include, but is not limited to: interactive video-conferencing, chat, messaging, and email. Regardless of the delivery format, online therapy programs involve guidance provided by qualified mental health clinicians and the materials shared for the purpose of therapy (e.g., video clips, audio files, reading materials, emails, or texts) are developed by or with the advice of trained

professionals. It is important to consider that online therapy is not a form of psychotherapy per se but rather a form of therapy delivery (e.g., a form of therapy like Cognitive Behavioral Therapy can be delivered either in person or online). Online psychotherapy may be used to augment, or as an adjuvant to traditional in-person services (e.g., videoconferencing sessions combined with in-person therapy sessions), or it can be used as stand-alone service. Available technologies provide options for synchronous delivery (e.g., chat, videoconferencing) or asynchronous or delayed delivery (e.g., email) (Rochlen et al. 2004).

Description

Brief History

Online psychotherapy is a relatively recent development in the history of the broader field of psychotherapy. Technology-assisted or computerized treatments started to be developed in the late 1980s, and with the advent of Internet in the early 1990s, the field has evolved to online or Internet-delivered psychotherapy and, more recently, to smartphone app formats (Clough and Casey 2015; Taylor and Luce 2003).

Advantages and Risks

Considering that in 2018 about half of the world population has Internet, online psychotherapy is considered to offer the advantage of increased access to mental health care, as people no longer depend on the availability of psychological services in their geographical location. At the same time, more people may choose to access care through an online format where the stigma of going to a psychologist or therapist is no longer a barrier. Additionally, online psychotherapy may also decrease patient burden, as people can use psychological services from the comfort of their own homes, as well as work at their own pace, with reduced costs and time associated with travel (Perle and Nierenberg 2013).

Despite these advantages, some online psychotherapy formats (e.g., chat based, texting) have been criticized for the lack of face-to-face visibility, which prevents the transmission and detection

of nonverbal communication cues, thus potentially hindering therapeutic alliance. However, research indicates that even subtle text nuances may be detected and that, in fact, online psychotherapy has been found to generate good therapeutic alliance between the patient and the therapist (Knaevelsrud and Maercker 2006). Other lines of criticism have been focused on the fact that telecommunication technologies pose a unique potential threat to the security and transmission of client/patient data and information, and current guidelines advise professionals to consider these risks when selecting the technology means for their services. As technology is rapidly evolving, psychologists are encouraged to evaluate and assess the appropriateness of various technologies prior to using them with their patients to determine if the modality of service is appropriate, efficacious, and safe (APA 2013).

Research Overview

The use and research of online psychotherapy has been rapidly expanding in the last two decades, with growing evidence suggesting that the provision of mental health services over the Internet is both clinically efficacious and cost effective. A large number of programs have been developed and trials have been conducted for a wide range of psychiatric and somatic conditions, mostly using Internet-delivered cognitive behavior therapy (ICBT) (Andersson et al. 2014). Overall, meta-analytic findings indicate that online psychotherapy is as effective face-to-face therapy for conditions such as social anxiety disorder, panic disorder, depressive symptoms, body dissatisfaction, tinnitus, male sexual dysfunction, and spider phobia, when analyzed as an aggregated cohort (Andersson et al. 2014). Research findings provide support for the application of psychotherapeutic interventions through the Internet, using various approaches, methods, and online modalities, and to treat various problems (Barak et al. 2008).

Guidelines for Practice

Current guidelines recommend that clinicians who are providing online therapy should follow the same ethical and professional standards of care

and professional practice that are required when providing in-person services. Psychologists must be aware of the standards of practice for the setting or jurisdiction in which they offer their services and have the same responsibility to apply all current legal and ethical standards of practice (APA 2013).

Summary

In conclusion, online psychotherapy promises to be an effective, and potentially cost-effective, alternative and complement to face-to-face therapy. More studies are needed before firm conclusions can be drawn, but the findings to date show that some online psychotherapy programs are as effective as in-person therapy.

Cross-References

- Cognitive Behavioral Therapy (CBT)
- Psychological Science

References and Further Reading

- American Psychological Association. (2013). *Guidelines for the practice of telepsychology*. Honolulu: American Psychological Association's (APA) Annual Convention.
- Andersson, G., Cuijpers, P., Carlbring, P., Riper, H., & Hedman, E. (2014). Guided Internet-based vs. face-to-face cognitive behavior therapy for psychiatric and somatic disorders: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *World Psychiatry, 13*(3), 288–295. <https://doi.org/10.1002/wps.20151>.
- Barak, A., Hen, L., Boniel-Nissim, M., & Shapira, N. (2008). A Comprehensive Review and a Meta-Analysis of the Effectiveness of Internet-Based Psychotherapeutic Interventions, *Journal of Technology in Human Services, 26*:2-4, 109–160. <https://doi.org/10.1080/15228830802094429>.
- Clough, B. A., & Casey, L. M. (2015). The smart therapist: A look to the future of smartphones and mHealth technologies in psychotherapy. *Professional Psychology: Research and Practice, 46*(3), 147. <https://doi.org/10.1037/pro0000011>.
- Knaevelsrud, C., & Maercker, A. (2006). Does the quality of the working alliance predict treatment outcome in online psychotherapy for traumatized patients? *Journal of Medical Internet Research, 8*(4), e31. <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.8.4.e31>.
- Manhal-Baugus, M. (2001). E-therapy: Practical, ethical, and legal issues. *Cyberpsychology & Behavior, 4*(5), 551–563. <https://doi.org/10.1089/109493101753235142>.
- Perle, J. G., & Nierenberg, B. (2013). How psychological telehealth can alleviate society's mental health burden: A literature review. *Journal of Technology in Human Services, 31*(1), 22–41. <https://doi.org/10.1080/15228835.2012.760332>.
- Rochlen, A. B., Zack, J. S., & Speyer, C. (2004). Online therapy: Review of relevant definitions, debates, and current empirical support. *Journal of Clinical Psychology, 60*(3), 269–283. <https://doi.org/10.1002/jclp.10263>.
- Taylor, C. B., & Luce, K. H. (2003). Computer- and Internet-based psychotherapy interventions. *Current Directions in Psychological Science, 12*(1), 18–22. <https://doi.org/10.1111/1467-8721.01214>.

Online Training

- Williams LifeSkills Program

Operant Conditioning

Misato Takada

Department of Socio-Economics, Faculty of Economics, Daito Bunka University, Higashimatsuyama-shi, Saitama, Japan

Synonyms

Instrumental conditioning

Definition

A type of learning in which the probability of a behavior recurring is increased or decreased by the consequences that follow upon occurrence of the behavior. The three-term contingency represents the simplest conceptual model of operant conditioning (Holland and Skinner 1961).

Description

Operant conditioning applies many techniques and procedures first investigated by E. L. Thorndike (1898), but was later refined and extended by B. F. Skinner (1938). Although operant conditioning is built on the classical conditioning work of Ivan Pavlov (1927), it is distinguished from classical conditioning in that operant conditioning deals with the modification of “voluntary” (operant) behavior. The operant is behavior that acts on the environment to produce a consequence, which is meted out by the environment in response to the operant. This response encourages the operant to either repeat or cease the behavior. Operant conditioning techniques are currently used in clinical therapy, although they are typically applied as part of cognitive behavioral therapy.

Three-Term Contingency

Three-term contingency consists of discriminative stimulus, operant response, and consequences of behavior (reinforcer/punisher). Discriminative stimulus is an antecedent stimulus and is defined as a cue that signals the probable consequence of an operant response. That is, it signals whether the operant response will be reinforced or punished. Certain types of results occur after an organism performs a response to a discriminative stimulus. If the results are advantageous or favorable, the response increases; however, the response decreases when the results are disadvantageous or unfavorable.

In an example of operant conditioning, a hungry pigeon is caged in an operant box, which contains a feeder that can be activated to dispense feed by the pecking of a lighted key. Initially, the pigeon walks around the inside of the box and accidentally pecks at the key, which then releases feed. Although the pigeon does not comprehend the relation between the lighted key and feed, gradually, the frequency that the pigeon moves to the location where the feed is dispensed after pecking the lighted key increases. In this case, the pigeon learns the three-term contingency, consisting of the operant box (discrimination stimulation), pecking a lighted key (operant

response), and feed (reinforcer). The change in frequency with which the pigeon pecks the lighted key represents the process of operant conditioning.

Reinforcement

Reinforcement is the process of increasing or sustaining a behavior by its consequences. Two kinds of reinforcement exist: positive and negative reinforcement.

Positive reinforcement occurs when the frequency of a behavior is increased as a result of the presentation of favorable events or outcomes, known as positive reinforcers. This form of conditioning is termed reward training.

Negative reinforcement occurs when the frequency of a behavior is increased because it is followed by the removal of unfavorable events or outcomes, known as negative reinforcers. This form of conditioning is termed escape training.

Punishment

Punishment is a process by which a behavior is decreased by its consequences. There are two kinds of punishment: positive and negative.

Positive punishment occurs when a behavior is decreased because it is followed by the presentation of unfavorable events or outcomes, which are known as positive punishers. This form of conditioning is termed punishment training.

Negative punishment occurs when a behavior is decreased because it is followed by the removal of favorable events or outcomes, which are known as negative punishers. This form of conditioning is termed omission training.

Although punishment is more effective if combined with reinforcement, as appropriate and alternative behaviors can be learned, it is less effective without reinforcement because it only suppresses inappropriate behavior.

Extinction

Extinction is a process whereby the positive reinforcement of a previously reinforced behavior is discontinued. Organisms may exhibit resistance to extinction, by which a response continues even after the reinforcement ceases. The greater

the resistance to extinction, the longer the response will continue.

Notably, extinction may produce adverse side effects; two commonly noted effects are an increase in the frequency of the target response and an increase in aggression.

Shaping

Shaping is a method for conditioning an organism to perform a new behavior. It is well described by its technical name: the method of successive approximations. To approximate something is to get close to it, and successive approximations condition an organism in small steps. Shaping works by starting with whatever the organism can already do and subsequently reinforces with closer and closer approximations to a goal.

Five simple rules for shaping are as follows: (1) Ensure the target behavior is realistic and biologically possible. (2) Specify the entering and target behaviors. (3) Plan a small chain of behavioral changes leading from the entering behavior to the target behavior. (4) If a step proves too large, break it into smaller, more manageable steps. (5) Use reinforcers in small quantities to avoid satiation.

Schedule of Reinforcement

Several types of reinforcement schedules exist. If reinforcement occurs after each desired behavior, the situation is termed continuous reinforcement. However, if reinforcement occurs only after certain desired behaviors, it is referred to as partial reinforcement. A response learned under the latter conditions is more resistant to extinction, a phenomenon called the partial reinforcement effect.

Fixed-ratio schedules are those where a response is reinforced only after a specified number of responses, while variable-ratio schedules occur when a response is reinforced after an unpredictable number of responses. Fixed-interval schedules are those where the first response is rewarded only after a specified amount of time has elapsed. Variable-interval schedules occur when a response is rewarded after an unpredictable amount of time has passed.

The response styles of subjects, whether they are pigeons in an operant box or employees in a

workplace, vary based on the schedule used. Other factors being equal, a variable-ratio schedule produces the greatest number of responses from a subject in a given time period, whereas a fixed-ratio schedule fosters rapid learning of the desired response; the number of responses then remains steady, but is lower than those produced by a variable-ratio schedule. Fixed-interval schedules produce relatively few responses overall and a drop in number of responses immediately following reinforcement, although the number increases as the time for reinforcement nears. Variable-interval schedules result in slower learning of the response, followed by a steady number of responses, but produce fewer than those resulting from the fixed-ratio schedule.

Notably, the type of reinforcement schedule will have an impact on how quickly a behavior is extinguished.

Operant Conditioning Therapy

Operant conditioning therapy is a form of behavioral therapy that utilizes the procedures of shaping, token economy, chaining, response cost, time out, and stimulus control.

Token economy uses a token as a reinforcer. Tokens begin as essentially neutral stimuli and are of minor significance in and of themselves. However, as tokens become increasingly associated with the reinforcers for which they are exchanged, the tokens themselves can become mildly reinforcing. Chaining is yet another procedure that is based on shaping, but it is used to condition an entire complex series of different responses, not just one.

Response cost represents the removal of a positive reinforcer after the occurrence of an undesirable response. Time out is the time during which a discriminative stimulus is not available. Stimulus control is the process of controlling discriminative stimulus.

Cross-References

- [Behavior Change](#)
- [Behavior Modification](#)
- [Behavioral Inhibition](#)

- [Behavioral Intervention](#)
- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Behavioral Therapy](#)
- [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Holland, J. G., & Skinner, B. F. (1961). *The analysis of behavior: A program for self-instruction*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Mazur, J. E. (2006). *Learning and behavior* (6th ed.). Upper Saddle River: Prentice Hall.
- Mednick, S. A., Higgins, J., & Kirschenbaum, J. (1975). *Psychology: Explorations in behavior and experience*. New York: Wiley.
- Pavlov, I. P. (1927). *Conditioned reflexes: An investigation of the physiological activity of the cerebral cortex*. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.
- Reynolds, G. S. (1975). *A primer of operant conditioning* (Rev. ed.). Glenview: Scott Foresman.
- Robbins, S. J., Schwartz, B., & Wasserman, E. A. (2001). *Psychology of learning and behavior* (5th ed.). New York: W. W. Norton.
- Skinner, B. F. (1938). *The behavior of organisms: An experimental analysis*. New York: Appleton-Century.
- Skinner, B. F. (1953). *Science and human behavior*. New York: Macmillan.
- Thorndike, E. L. (1898). *Animal intelligence: An experimental study of the associative processes in animals* (Psychological review monograph supplement, Vol. 2, No. 4, Whole No. 8). Lancaster: Macmillan.

Operationalization of Anger

- [Anger, Measurement](#)

Operative Anxiety

- [Hospital Anxiety](#)

Opiate Neuropeptides

- [Endogenous Opioids/Endorphins/Enkephalin](#)

Opiate Peptides

- [Endogenous Opioids/Endorphins/Enkephalin](#)

Opiate Receptors

- [Endogenous Opioids/Endorphins/Enkephalin](#)

Opinion Poll

- [Surveys](#)

Opponent Process

Leah Irish

Department of Psychiatry, School of Medicine,
University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Definition

Opponent process is a general theoretical model applied to several psychophysiological concepts, whereby a conditioned response is followed by its opposite, and this opponent process becomes stronger and more efficient with repeated exposure.

Description

Opponent process is a general theoretical model that has been applied to a number of psychological experiences and their underlying neurological processes. It was initially proposed as a theory of color vision (Hurwich and Jameson 1957), but was later modified by Solomon and colleagues (1973, 1974, 1980) to apply to emotion and motivation. In a basic opponent process model, a stimulus elicits an unconditioned response referred to as “a process.” After a latency, a “b process” is activated, which opposes the a process and

reduces its intensity. Over repeated exposures, the strength of the *a* process does not change, but the *b* process becomes stronger and more efficient with a reduced latency period. The theory suggests that it is possible for the *b* process to become a conditioned response to neutral stimuli associated with the *a* process. Therefore, with repeated exposures, it is possible for the *b* process to occur before the *a* process, thus suppressing the experience of *a* altogether.

One classic demonstration of opponent process theory is a study of skydivers performed by Fenz and Epstein (1967). Prior to their first jump, novice skydivers reported feelings of terror (*a* process). After landing safely, the terror subsided and was replaced by feelings of exhilaration (*b* process). After several jumps, the terror became less intense because the feelings of exhilaration were stronger and came on more quickly. Measures of sympathetic nervous system activity (i.e., skin conductance, heart rate, respiration rate) before and after the jump paralleled these findings and further supported the opponent process theory (Fenz and Epstein 1967). According to opponent process theory, after many jumps, the neutral stimuli associated with skydiving (e.g., the plane, the parachute) may activate feelings of exhilaration that suppress the experience of terror, thus making skydiving a very positive experience for veteran skydivers.

Opponent process theory has been applied most notably to the study of addiction (Koob et al. 1993, 1997; Solomon and Corbit 1973). In these models, the pleasurable “high” of drug use (*a* process) is followed by an affective low during withdrawal (*b* process). After repeated use, the highs become shorter and less intense because the lows begin to occur more quickly. This motivates drug users to take more drugs in order to sustain the high, and this pattern leads to tolerance and addiction. These experiences are accompanied by biochemical alterations during and after drug use (Koob et al. 1993). Similar models have been proposed to explain motivation for a variety of behaviors including blood donation, breastfeeding, exercise, and workplace satisfaction. Opponent process theory has also been applied to the affective experience of attachment and separation anxiety.

Although the opponent process theory has been successful at modeling motivation for a variety of behaviors, it is not capable of explaining all human behaviors. For example, the model is notably less effective at explaining motivation for more primary or biological needs. Further, not all motivated behaviors are accompanied by opponent processes. Despite these limitations, the opponent process theory continues to serve as an effective model for conceptualizing conditioning of motivation and emotion.

Cross-References

- [Addictive Behaviors](#)
- [Affect](#)
- [Affect Arousal](#)
- [Sympathetic Nervous System \(SNS\)](#)

References and Readings

- Fenz, W. D., & Epstein, S. (1967). Gradients of physiological arousal in parachutists as a function of an approaching jump. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 29, 33–51.
- Hurvich, L. M., & Jameson, D. (1957). An opponent-process theory of color vision. *Psychological Review*, 64(6), 384–404.
- Koob, G. F., Markou, A., Weiss, F., & Schuteis, G. (1993). Opponent process and drug dependence: Neurobiological mechanisms. *Neurosciences*, 5, 351–358.
- Koob, G. F., Caine, S. B., Parsons, L., Markou, A., & Weiss, F. (1997). Opponent process model and psychostimulant addiction. *Pharmacology Biochemistry and Behavior*, 57(3), 513–521.
- Solomon, R. L. (1980). The opponent-process theory of acquired motivation: The costs of pleasure and the benefits of pain. *The American Psychologist*, 35, 691–712.
- Solomon, R. L., & Corbit, J. D. (1973). An opponent-process theory of emotion: II. Cigarette addiction. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, 81(2), 158–171.
- Solomon, R. L., & Corbit, J. D. (1974). An opponent-process theory of motivation: I. Temporal dynamics of affect. *Psychological Review*, 81(2), 119–145.

Opportunistic Infections

- [AIDS: Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome](#)

Optimal Aging

- [Successful Aging](#)
-

Optimism

- [Dispositional Optimism](#)
-

Optimism and Pessimism Scale (OPS)

- [Optimism and Pessimism: Measurement](#)
-

Optimism and Pessimism: Measurement

Ryan Garcia
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
at Dallas, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Attributional style questionnaire \(ASQ\)](#); [Expanded attributional style questionnaire \(EASQ\)](#); [Extended life orientation test \(E-LOT\)](#); [Life orientation test \(LOT\)](#); [Optimism and pessimism scale \(OPS\)](#); [Parent-rated life orientation test of children \(P-LOT\)](#); [Revised life orientation test \(LOT-R\)](#); [Youth life orientation test \(Y-LOT\)](#)

Definition

Measures assessing optimism and pessimism have been developed from two perspectives. The first is from the expectancy perspective which reflects the expectations an individual has about their future. From this perspective, dispositional optimism is described as the tendency for an individual to have positive expectations about

the future, whereas dispositional pessimism is the tendency to have negative expectations about the future. The second perspective is based on attributional style. Conceptually, attributional style refers to an individual's habitual manner of explaining the cause of negative events. Explanatory styles can be internal/external, stable/unstable, and global/specific. An optimistic explanatory style is when negative events and their causes are viewed as external, unstable, and specific. A pessimistic explanatory style is when a negative event and its cause are construed as internal, stable, and global.

Several different measures exist to assess optimism and pessimism from an expectancy perspective, and are primarily derived from the Life Orientation Test (LOT). The current standard for measuring optimism and pessimism in adults is the Revised Life Orientation Test (LOT-R). The LOT-R consists of ten items: three assessing optimism (e.g., "In uncertain times, I usually expect the best."), three assessing pessimism (e.g., "If something can go wrong for me, it will."), and four filler items to disguise the purpose of the test (e.g., "It's easy for me to relax"). In principal component factor analysis, all six items of the LOT-R yielded one factor accounting for 48.1% of the variance, with factor loadings of at least 0.58. The LOT-R has sufficient internal consistency (Cronbach's $\alpha = 0.78$), and test-retest reliability as administered between 4 and 28 months apart (0.68–0.79 respectively). The LOT and LOT-R are considered to be measures of "trait" dispositions while the Optimism Pessimism Scale (OPS) measures "state" dispositions. The Extended Life Orientation Test (E-LOT) is a longer measure comprised of items from the LOT and OPS measures, and was developed specifically to evaluate optimism and pessimism as independent constructs. The Youth Life Orientation Test (Y-LOT) is used in adolescent populations, while the Parent-rated Life Orientation Test of children (P-LOT) is a newer instrument designed to obtain parent's reports of their child's levels of optimism and pessimism.

Attributional measures of optimism and pessimism include the Attributional Style Questionnaire (ASQ) and Expanded Attributional Style

Questionnaire (EASQ). The ASQ is comprised of six positive and six negative events, while the EASQ contains only negative events. These measures assess appraisals of internality, stability, and globality. The ASQ attempts to assess attributional style through presenting an individual with 12 events, and asks them the cause of each event if they were to happen to them, and then rate the cause of the event on scales representing internality, stability, and globality. Half of the events are good events (e.g., “You become very rich.”) and half are bad events (e.g., “You have been looking for a job unsuccessfully for some time.”). The ASQ has shown good internal consistency for good events and bad events (Cronbach’s $\alpha = 0.75$ and 0.72 , respectively), and test-retest reliability over a 5-week time period (with scores ranging from 0.58 to 0.70).

There has been considerable debate in the literature regarding expectant measures of optimism and pessimism and whether optimism and pessimism should be regarded as a single-dimension or two-dimensional constructs. Research findings are varied, with some studies identifying the LOT and LOT-R as two dimensional (i.e., optimistic and pessimistic items load on two different dimensions during factor analysis), while others support a single-dimension interpretation (i.e., both optimistic and pessimistic items load on one dimension). Given the nature of the literature surrounding this topic, it is prudent to determine which orientation will best capture the construct of interest for the research question posed (e.g., expectant versus attributional), and to carefully consider issues surrounding the interpretation of test findings (e.g., the dimensionality of optimism and pessimism).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Attribution Theory](#)
- ▶ [Dispositional Optimism](#)
- ▶ [Explanatory Style](#)
- ▶ [Life Orientation Test \(LOT\)](#)
- ▶ [Neuroticism](#)
- ▶ [Pessimism](#)
- ▶ [Positive Affect Negative Affect Scale \(PANAS\)](#)

References and Readings

- Chang, E. C., Maydeu-Olivares, A., & D’Zurilla, T. J. (1997). Optimism and pessimism as partially independent constructs: Relationship to positive and negative affectivity and psychological well-being. *Personality and Individual Differences*, 23(3), 433–440.
- Dember, W. N., Martin, S., Hummer, M. K., Howe, S., & Melton, R. (1989). The measurement of optimism and pessimism. *Current Psychology: Research and Reviews*, 8, 102–119.
- Ey, S., Hadley, W., Allen, D. N., Palmer, S., Klosky, J., Deptula, D., et al. (2005). A new measure of children’s optimism and pessimism: The youth life orientation test. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, 46(5), 548–558.
- Lemola, S., Raikkonen, K., Matthews, K. A., Scheier, M. F., Heinonen, K., Pesonen, A. K., et al. (2010). A new measure for dispositional optimism and pessimism in young children. *European Journal of Personality*, 24, 71–84.
- Peterson, C., & Villanova, P. (1988). An expanded attributional style questionnaire. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, 97, 87–89.
- Peterson, C., Semmel, A., von Baeyer, D., Abramson, L. Y., Metalsky, G. I., & Seligman, M. E. P. (1982). The attributions style questionnaire. *Cognitive Therapy and Research*, 6, 287–300.
- Rasmussen, H. N., Scheier, M. F., & Greenhouse, J. B. (2009). Optimism and physical health: A meta-analytic review. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 37(3), 239–256.
- Scheier, M. F., & Carver, C. S. (1985). Optimism, coping, and health: Assessment and implications of generalized outcome expectancies. *Health Psychology*, 4(3), 219–247.
- Scheier, M. F., Carver, C. S., & Bridges, M. (1994). Distinguishing optimism from neuroticism (and trait anxiety, self-mastery, and self-esteem): A reevaluation of the life orientation test. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 67(6), 1063–1078.
- Smith, T. W., Pope, M. K., Rhodewalt, F., & Poulton, J. C. (1989). Optimism, neuroticism, coping, and symptom reports: An alternative interpretation of the Life Orientation Test. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 56(4), 640–648.

Optimism, Pessimism, and Health

Ryan Garcia

University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
at Dallas, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Dispositional optimism](#); [Dispositional pessimism](#)

Definition

Optimism is a dispositional variable characterized by a generalized positive expectation about the future, while pessimism reflects a generalized negative expectation about the future. Although optimism and pessimism were originally viewed as occupying opposite ends of a single dimension, they have also been considered as independent variables. However, the dimensionality of these two constructs continues to be an ongoing debate in the literature. Each has been associated with different outcomes. Optimism has been associated with better psychological and physiological health outcomes, and these relationships are thought to be mediated by a coping style characterized by problem and emotion approach coping strategies. In contrast, pessimism has been associated with poorer psychological and physiological health outcomes, which is believed to be mediated by the reliance upon problem and emotion avoidance coping strategies.

Description

Optimism is a dispositional variable that involves a propensity to foster positive expectations for the future. Pessimism, on the other hand, involves a propensity to foster negative expectations for the future. Optimistic and pessimistic beliefs are conceptually based on theories of coping and behavioral self-regulation, and are thought to influence behavior in the service of goal pursuit. Optimism is theorized to provide motivation for sustained goal pursuit, which is demonstrated by continued active and productively guided effort and behavior both in daily living and in stressful situations. Pessimism is thought to undermine active goal pursuit and effort, and to contribute to suboptimal outcomes. Other factors theorized to underlie optimistic and pessimistic coping strategies include confidence, doubt, engagement, and disengagement.

High levels of optimism have been associated with several positive physiological outcomes among adults coping with acute and chronic illness, including cardiac patients, and HIV + and AIDS patients. In cardiac patients, high levels of optimism have been associated with minimal increases in carotid intima thickness (an index of atherosclerosis in the carotid artery and a marker for heart disease) over a three-year period, and a decreased likelihood for developing coronary heart disease. Following coronary artery bypass surgery, high optimism has been associated with a quicker recovery and a significantly decreased chance of rehospitalization. In HIV + and AIDS patients, high optimism has shown associations with delayed symptom onset, slower disease progression, and decreased mortality.

High optimism has also been associated with psychosocial benefits among patients with chronic illness and those experiencing major life changes. Patients recovering from coronary artery bypass surgery report fewer negative mood states and higher satisfaction with medical care and quality of life after surgery, while adults with type 2 diabetes reported experiencing less depression and anxiety. Similar positive psychosocial outcomes have been found in cancer and HIV + populations, and ante- and postpartum mothers. Overall, pessimism is less beneficial for physiological and psychosocial outcomes in health contexts. Evidence suggests individuals high in pessimism experience more fatigue, depression and anxiety, and poorer outcomes and adjustment following illness and illness recovery. Strong support for the associations observed between optimism and pessimism, and physiological and psychosocial health outcomes was demonstrated in a recent meta-analysis of the literature on coping and health outcomes (see Rasmussen et al. 2009).

Coping styles have largely been investigated as mediating the associations between optimism, pessimism, and their observed outcomes. Thus far, research investigating coping styles among optimists and pessimists during times of distress has generally supported that optimists who

experience physiological and psychological benefits rely on approach coping strategies, while pessimists rely on avoidant coping strategies. Additional support for these coping styles among optimists and pessimists was shown in a meta-analysis in which general patterns emerged; problem and emotion approach coping strategies appear to characterize the coping styles of those high in optimism, while problem and emotion avoidance coping strategies characterize the coping styles of pessimists (Solberg Nes and Segerstrom 2006). Also, perceptions of control have been considered to contribute to the types of coping strategies optimists and pessimists use. Optimists seem to rely on problem approach coping strategies when confronted with controllable stressors and emotion approach coping strategies when dealing with uncontrollable stressors. This is thought to underlie an overall engagement and persistence in dealing with their problems, whether it be directly (e.g., active/instrumental coping or planning) or indirectly through cognitive strategies such as acceptance and positive reinterpretation and growth. On the other hand, pessimists seem to show the opposite response in similar situations and rely more on problem avoidance and emotion avoidance coping strategies such as avoidance, distraction, denial, escapism, or substance use. Pessimistic coping reflects an overall disengagement and withdrawal from dealing with stressors, regardless of their level of controllability. For a more detailed discussion about optimism, pessimism, and coping styles, please refer to Solberg Nes and Segerstrom (2006).

Cross-References

- Attribution Theory
- Dispositional Optimism
- Explanatory Style
- Life Orientation Test (LOT)
- Optimism and Pessimism: Measurement
- Pessimism
- Self-Regulation Model

References and Readings

- Abela, J. R. Z., Auerbach, R. P., & Seligman, M. E. P. (2008). Dispositional pessimism across the lifespan. In K. S. Dobson & D. J. A. Dozois (Eds.), *Risk factors in depression* (pp. 195–220). San Diego: Academic.
- Carver, C. S., Scheier, M. F., Miller, C. J., & Fulford, D. (2002). Optimism. In C. R. Snyder & S. J. Lopez (Eds.), *Oxford handbook of positive psychology* (pp. 303–312). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Carver, C. S., Scheier, M. F., & Segerstrom, S. C. (2010). Optimism. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 30, 879–889.
- Chang, E. C. (Ed.). (2002). *Optimism & pessimism: Implications for theory, research, and practice*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Folkman, S., & Moskowitz, J. T. (2004). Coping: Pitfalls and promise. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 55, 745–774.
- Rasmussen, H. N., Scheier, M. F., & Greenhouse, J. B. (2009). Optimism and physical health: A meta-analytic review. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 37(3), 239–256.
- Scheier, M. F., & Carver, C. S. (1985). Optimism, coping, and health: Assessment and implications of generalized outcome expectancies. *Health Psychology*, 4(3), 219–247.
- Scheier, M. F., & Carver, C. S. (1987). Dispositional optimism and physical well-being: The influence of generalized outcome expectancies on health. *Journal of Personality*, 55(2), 169–210.
- Scheier, M. F., & Carver, C. S. (1992). Effects of optimism on psychological and physical well-being: Theoretical overview and empirical update. *Cognitive Therapy and Research*, 16(2), 201–228.
- Scheier, M. F., & Carver, C. S. (2003). Self-regulatory processes and responses to health threats: Effects of optimism on well-being. In J. Suls & K. Wallston (Eds.), *Social psychological foundations of health* (pp. 395–428). Oxford, UK: Blackwell.
- Scheier, M. F., Weintraub, J. K., & Carver, C. S. (1986). Coping with stress: Divergent strategies of optimists and pessimists. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 51(6), 1257–1264.
- Skinner, E. A., & Zimmer-Gembeck, M. J. (2007). The development of coping. *Annual Reviews of Psychology*, 58, 119–144.
- Solberg Nes, L., & Segerstrom, S. C. (2006). Dispositional optimism and coping: A meta-analytic review. *Personality and Social Psychology Review*, 10(3), 235–251.

Optimized Behavioral Interventions

- Multiphase Optimization Strategy (MOST)

Oral Glucose Tolerance Test (OGTT)

Adriana Carrillo

Department of Pediatrics, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Glucose test](#)

Definition

The OGTT test is used for the diagnosis of prediabetes, diabetes, and rare disorders of carbohydrate metabolism. The OGTT is a procedure in which a standardized load of glucose is provided and plasma glucose levels are drawn at different times over a 2-h period. Insulin levels could be also obtained to determine insulin resistance. Normal values for fasting glucose levels are below 100 mg/dL. Impaired fasting plasma glucose levels are considered between 100 and 125 mg/dL, and fasting plasma glucose levels above 126 mg/dL are considered in the diabetes range. The 2-h glucose level will help in the definitive diagnosis of diabetes. Plasma glucose levels above 200 mg/mL are diagnostic for diabetes mellitus. Levels between 140 and 200 mg/mL at 2 h are considered in the prediabetes range.

Procedure

A diet that includes at least 60% of calories as carbohydrates should be provided at least for 3 days before the test. The test should not be performed if there is a history of a physiological stress such as infection, acute illness, trauma, or surgery over the past 2 weeks. Medications that could affect glucose levels should also be discontinued. Patient should be fasting for at least 10–12 h. A baseline sample is obtained, followed by administration of an oral glucose solution of 1.75 g/kg to a max of 75 g within

5 min. Samples are generally obtained at 30, 60, and 120 min after the glucose administration (Lifshitz 2007).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Fasting Glucose](#)
- ▶ [Hyperglycemia](#)

References and Readings

Lifshitz, F. (2007). *Pediatric endocrinology* (5th ed., p. 755). New York: Informa Healthcare.

Organ Replacement Therapy

- ▶ [Organ Transplantation: Psychological and Behavioral Aspects](#)

Organ Transplantation: Psychological and Behavioral Aspects

Mary Amanda Dew¹, Kristen R. Fox² and Andrea F. DiMartini¹

¹School of Medicine and Medical Center, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

²Nationwide Childrens Hospital, Columbus, OH, USA

Synonyms

[Organ replacement therapy](#)

Definition

Organ transplantation involves the surgical implantation of an organ or section of an organ into a person whose own organ is failing. The donor organ may come from a deceased

individual or, in some cases, from a living donor. Psychological and behavioral aspects of the organ transplantation process encompass transplant patients' emotional responses and mental health, as well as their behavior in adhering to the medical regimen both before and after transplantation. The living donor's psychological responses to donating an organ (most commonly a kidney or a liver segment) are also aspects to consider in the transplantation process.

Description

Individuals with end-stage diseases of the kidney, pancreas, intestines, liver, heart, or lung may receive organ transplantation to extend their lives and/or to improve the quality of their lives. Organs typically are transplanted from deceased individuals or, in the case of kidney and liver transplantation (and, more rarely, lung transplantation), may come from living donors. Organ transplantation is one of several organ replacement therapies. Dialysis for advanced kidney disease and mechanical circulatory support systems for advanced heart disease are examples of other such therapies. Organ transplantation is the optimal strategy for organ replacement because it is often less economically costly both to the patient and to payers (Medicare, private insurance companies) and because it can provide higher quality of life for a longer time period. However, like other organ replacement strategies, it is associated with numerous stressors that may take a psychological toll on patients and their families (Dew and DiMartini 2011; DiMartini et al. 2019; Kuntz et al. 2015; Sher and Maldonado 2019). It also has specific behavioral consequences: patients must adhere to a complex, lifelong medical regimen involving multiple medications and requirements for follow-up care. Finally, because some types of organ transplantation are increasingly reliant on living donors, it is important to recognize that these donors also face significant stressors associated with medical and surgical risks of surgery, potential financial issues, and longer-term physical health concerns (Dew and DiMartini 2011;

Dew et al. [in press](#); LaPointe Rudow et al. 2015; Sher and Maldonado 2019).

Herein we summarize the psychological and behavioral issues that are most prominent for organ transplant patients both before and after organ transplantation. We also describe psychological issues relevant for living donors. Lastly, we comment on interventions that have been developed to treat or prevent psychological or behavioral problems during the transplantation process.

Psychological Factors in Organ Transplant Patients

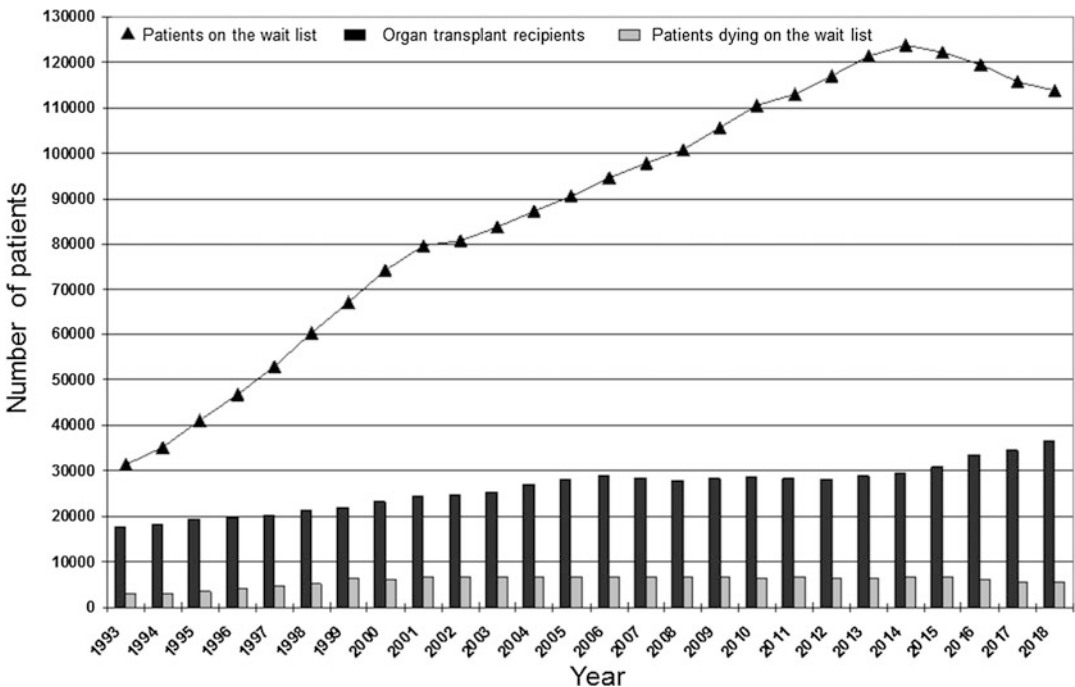
The evaluation for transplant eligibility, followed by the wait for an organ transplant are two of the chief stressors associated with the transplantation process (Dew and DiMartini 2011; Dew et al. 2007b). These stressors occur in the context of patients' physical morbidity and declines in physical functioning, and this physical decline is a potent chronic stressor as well. The evaluation for transplantation includes both an extensive medical component and a complete psychosocial assessment (Dew et al. 2018a; DiMartini et al. 2019; Kendall et al. 2017; Olbrisch et al. 2002). Patients often fear that their health is too poor for a transplant or that they may found ineligible for psychological or psychosocial reasons. As part of the evaluation process, patients' psychiatric history, substance use, intellectual functioning, medical adherence history, and psychosocial status are thoroughly reviewed by most transplant programs, and these areas influence decisions about whether to approve patients for transplantation. However, there is substantial variability across transplant programs in whether problems in these areas (e.g., current mood disorders, substance abuse history and current status) are viewed as contraindications to transplantation. In many circumstances, patients are not permanently ruled out for transplantation due to such problems but instead must undergo psychological or behavioral interventions, or demonstrate that certain problems are being addressed. For example, many programs require evidence of abstinence from alcohol or drug use for a period of months before an individual will be approved for

transplantation. The need to complete interventions before being approved for transplantation can be viewed by patients as one more hurdle to complete in the face of their significant medical illness. However, to the extent that they develop stronger coping skills or feelings of control due to these interventions, patients may become better prepared for life posttransplant.

In the USA and most other countries, after individuals are approved for transplantation, they are entered into a national waitlist for deceased donor organs. Because there are too few organs for the number of individuals in need, the waiting time for transplantation may be months to years (Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network/Scientific Registry for Transplant Recipients 2019). Figure 1 shows the number of individuals waiting for transplantation in the USA, as well as the number of organs available for transplantation between 1993 and 2018. It also shows the numbers of patient deaths on the wait list. Thus, in 2018, there were 113,759 patients on

the wait list. While 36,529 individuals received transplants in 2018, another 5436 died on the wait list. Fear of not surviving to transplantation is a looming and unfortunately very realistic concern among transplant candidates. Although strategies such as dialysis for advanced kidney disease and mechanical circulatory support for advanced heart disease can keep patients alive for extended periods during the wait for a transplant, these therapies bring their own risks for health problems and even death. Indeed, the development of complications from these therapies (e.g., infections) can result in an individual being removed from the transplant waiting list. Other stressors during the waiting period for transplant also stem from transplant candidates' declining physical health status: they may have to reduce or give up family and social roles (e.g., parental, household, work, or community responsibilities), and they may eventually become dependent on others for daily care.

The presence of these powerful stressors during the waiting period explains why patients show



Organ Transplantation: Psychological and Behavioral Aspects, Fig. 1 Size of wait list, number of transplants, and deaths on the wait list in the USA. (Source:

OPTN.transplant.hrsa.gov and US Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network and the Scientific Registry of Transplant Recipients Annual Reports)

high rates of psychological distress and diagnosable episodes of mental illness during this time. Mood and anxiety disorders are the most commonly diagnosed problems in these individuals (Corbett et al. 2013; Dew and DiMartini 2011; DiMartini et al. 2019; Sher and Maldonado 2019). Transplant candidates show higher rates of these disorders than do other chronic disease populations. Among the chief correlates of psychological distress and disorder in transplant candidates are physical symptom severity and physical functional impairments, as well as poorer social supports. History of psychological disorder is another important risk factor, suggesting the importance of taking steps to prevent new episodes of depression and anxiety as patients face the stressors associated with the evaluation and wait for transplantation.

After transplantation, there is overwhelming evidence that recipients' quality of life improves (Dew and DiMartini 2011; Sher and Maldonado 2019). In particular, transplant recipients show marked gains in physical functioning. Gains in mental health appear to be somewhat smaller. In the early months posttransplant, recipients typically voice high levels of optimism for the future and great relief that the uncertainties associated with the waiting period are over. Nevertheless, they remain at high risk for mood disorders (including major depression, dysthymia, and adjustment disorders) and anxiety disorders (including panic disorder, generalized anxiety disorder and adjustment disorders) during the first several years posttransplant (DiMartini et al. 2019; Sher and Maldonado 2019). The risk appears highest during the first year posttransplant, perhaps because of the major psychosocial adjustments required of patients during this period. For example, they must psychologically incorporate that fact that they have an organ from another person and – in many cases – that the donation was only possible because the donor had died. Patients must also adapt to new routines for medical follow-up care and to a new regimen of medications and permanent lifestyle changes related to diet, exercise, limited to no alcohol consumption, and no use of other substances. Patients themselves often comment on the

stressfulness of making these psychological and behavioral adjustments. They also report that they have developed significant depression or anxiety due to psychosocial stressors. These stressors include financial burdens associated with transplantation (because insurance coverage is often inadequate), difficulties returning to former social roles (e.g., returning to employment or parenting activities), and ongoing medical factors related to the transplant. For example, patients may develop complications such as infection, or they may experience acute rejection (i.e., their bodies may mount an immunologic reaction to the transplanted organ), despite the powerful immunosuppressant medications that they take. Additional personal or dispositional characteristics also appear to increase patients' vulnerability to both distress and diagnosable disorder early posttransplant. These include poor perceived social supports, use of avoidant coping strategies, a poor sense of mastery or control, and low levels of characteristics such as optimism or hope.

After the first year posttransplant, the risk for psychological disorders appears to decline. Over the next several years, patients may experience high levels of overall well-being. Their psychological distress levels are low, and this is likely because their physical functional status is at its peak: they have fully recovered from the transplant surgery, and they have been able to resume activities that were impossible during their earlier end-stage organ disease. Most patients express high degrees of appreciation that they were given this "second chance" at life.

There is some evidence that recipients' psychological distress levels begin to rise once again as they enter the later years of posttransplant life expectancy (Dew and DiMartini 2011). The typical survival time posttransplant varies across the different types of transplantation (Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network/Scientific Registry of Transplant Recipients 2019). Thus, while kidney, liver, and heart recipients each have median survival times well exceeding 10 years, the median survival time for lung recipients and intestine recipients is between 5 and 6 years. In the later years of transplant survivorship, patients are likely to develop chronic

rejection of the transplanted organ, a condition characterized by a progressive deterioration of the organ's function. They are also likely to experience problems secondary to immunosuppressant medications, including cancers and kidney damage. Some patients may be entered on the wait list for another transplant, with its consequent uncertainties as to whether another organ will become available. Other patients may be ineligible for re-transplantation because of conditions such as cancer. Such stressors during the late-term years increase patients' risk for renewed psychological distress. Research has not yet established whether symptoms of depression or anxiety are more prominent during these later years or whether psychosocial factors related to coping, poor social supports, low levels of optimism, etc. serve as additional risk factors for distress among late-term survivors.

Behavioral Factors in Organ Transplant Patients

Adherence to the medical regimen is the principle behavioral issue for patients (Denhaerynck et al. 2005; Dew et al. 2018b). We noted earlier that patients' medical adherence history is routinely considered during their evaluation for transplantation. Before they are approved for transplantation, patients may be required to demonstrate that they are willing and able to adhere to medical recommendations. After transplantation, patients must follow a lifelong regimen that includes (a) taking immunosuppressant and other medications, (b) attending medical follow-up evaluations and completing required tests, (c) monitoring vital signs and symptoms related to organ function, (d) following lifestyle recommendations regarding diet and exercise, and (e) limiting or abstaining from alcohol use and abstaining from other substance use. This regimen is designed to promote survival and optimal health, and growing evidence shows that nonadherence to its various components is indeed associated with morbidity and mortality posttransplant (Dew et al. 2018b; Korb-Savoldelli et al. 2010; Butler et al. 2004).

Many transplant recipients are able to adhere to their multifaceted regimen. However, some individuals have difficulty with one or more areas, and

this difficulty may begin as soon as they are discharged from the hospital after the transplant. Among the most common areas of nonadherence is medication-taking: across many studies, the average rate of nonadherence to immunosuppressant medications is approximately 23% of patients annually (Dew et al. 2007a). Lifestyle and health monitoring requirements are also areas of difficulty, with 19% to 25% of patients showing nonadherence annually. Nonadherence to substance use restrictions is less common, occurring in 1% to 4% of patients annually. As with other chronic diseases, nonadherence to the posttransplant regimen worsens with time posttransplant.

The correlates and risk factors for nonadherence to the transplant-related medical regimen have been difficult to identify. The World Health Organization proposed five categories of risk factors for nonadherence to chronic disease treatment regimens (Sabaté 2003). These categories include demographic factors, healthcare system and treatment provider factors (e.g., access to insurance and provider communication skills), disease-related factors (e.g., perceptions of health), treatment-related factors (e.g., medication side effects), and patient-related psychosocial factors (e.g., social supports). There is some evidence in support of each of these categories of factors in transplant recipients, although their impact has often been found to be relatively modest. The most important factor appears to be history of nonadherence before transplant. For example, smoking and alcohol abuse before transplant are strongly associated with posttransplant return to use of these substances, as would be expected given the powerful nature of most addictions. Nevertheless, return to substance use (or abuse) occurs in only a minority – less than 10% – of individuals who receive transplants (Dew et al. 2008).

Psychological Factors in Living Donors

Living donors give an invaluable gift to others. Their gift is all the more remarkable since they face major stressors associated with donation surgery and recovery. They may experience significant pain and discomfort, as well as time lost from work or other responsibilities, financial costs that

cannot be reimbursed, and longer-term health risks linked to the donation surgery itself or the loss of organ mass (Dew et al. [in press](#)).

Like transplant candidates, living donors undergo an extensive medical and psychosocial evaluation (Olbrisch et al. [2001](#); Dew et al. [in press](#); DiMartini et al. [2019](#)). Donor candidates may be as fearful as transplant candidates that they will not be approved as suitable donors. However, other potential donors may find the evaluation stressful because they are ambivalent about or uncertain that they should or want to donate. The evaluation process is designed to ensure that donors do not have major medical or psychological problems that would preclude safe donation, as well as to ensure that they understand the risks associated with donation, are not experiencing coercion or undue pressure from others to donate, and are able to make an informed choice to proceed with the surgery or not. Like transplant candidates, potential living donors may be required to undergo interventions to address any mental health or substance use issues before they are approved as donors.

A chief goal of living donation is to provide needed organs for patients yet protect the living donor from undue harm. This includes protection from psychological harm. Most donors, in fact, show very favorable quality of life outcomes, and extremely few express any regret associated with donating. The vast majority (up to 95%) also perceives the donation to have been a very gratifying experience that benefitted them personally (e.g., by helping them to reframe what was important in their lives) (Clemens et al. [2006](#); Dew et al. [in press](#)). Nonetheless, some donors experience psychological difficulties, including mood and anxiety disorders or heightened nonspecific psychological distress. Some of this distress appears to be linked to ongoing worries about the long-term impact of the donation on donors' physical health, as well as financial strains or family relationships that became strained in the aftermath of the donation. Predonation ambivalence about whether to donate has also been linked to the occurrence of psychological difficulties postdonation (Dew et al. [2007c](#), [in press](#)).

Interventions for Psychological or Behavioral Problems During the Transplantation Process

Transplant programs employ strategies found effective in other chronic disease and medically healthy populations in order to address psychological and adherence-related difficulties in organ transplant patients (Sher and Maldonado [2019](#)). To care for psychological distress, psychotropic medications may be prescribed, and referrals may be made for individual or group psychotherapy or supportive care. Some programs offer brief individual or group psychoeducational programs. Although transplant programs typically do not empirically evaluate the effectiveness of transplant-specific interventions in routine use, there is a separate and growing research literature testing interventions' effectiveness for addressing the psychosocial stressors and other issues specific to transplant patients, with a focus on improving medical adherence. These studies have had to overcome major constraints related to the fact that many transplant candidates and recipients reside long distances from their transplant center and may not be available to participate in face-to-face interventions except during periods of hospitalization around the time of the transplant. Similar constraints exist for living donors because they are even less likely to return to the transplant center after donation.

Results of the body of intervention research suggest that psychological distress can be reduced and medical adherence can be improved in transplant recipients. Such interventions have included brief counseling, coaching, and electronic monitoring and feedback on medication-taking patterns (De Bleser et al. [2009](#); Dew and DiMartini [2011](#); Dew et al. [2018b](#); Nevins et al. [2017](#)). Nevertheless, most studies have examined relatively short time periods of well less than 1 year. Whether these interventions' effects would be maintained over longer time periods and whether these interventions could be translated into routine use in transplant programs' clinical practice are important but unresolved issues (Myaskovsky et al. [2018](#)). There has been little to no examination of interventions to improve living donors' psychological and quality of life outcomes (Dew et al. [in press](#)). Instead, the approaches most often

recommended to promote good living donor outcomes are careful screening of donor candidates, followed by monitoring and follow-up of donors after donation so that donors needing additional psychological care are readily identified by transplant program personnel (Dew et al. *in press*; DiMartini et al. 2019). In routine clinical practice, similar strategies are important for ensuring good psychosocial outcomes in organ recipients as well.

Cross-References

- Adherence
- Anxiety Disorder
- Chronic Disease or Illness
- Depression: Symptoms
- Depression: Treatment
- Health Behaviors
- Health-Related Quality of Life
- Psychiatric Disorder
- Psychological Factors
- Psychological Stress
- Psychosocial Factors
- Quality of Life
- Stress
- Stressor

References and Further Reading

- Butler, J. A., Roderick, P., Mullee, M., Mason, J. C., & Peveler, R. C. (2004). Frequency and impact of non-adherence to immunosuppressants after renal transplantation: A systematic review. *Transplantation*, 77(5), 769–776.
- Clemens, K. K., Thiessen-Philbrook, H., Parikh, C. R., Yang, R. C., Karley, M. L., Boudville, N., et al. (2006). Psychosocial health of living kidney donors: A systematic review. *American Journal of Transplantation*, 6(12), 2965–2977.
- Corbett, C., Armstrong, M. J., Parker, R., Webb, K., & Neuberger, J. M. (2013). Mental health disorders and solid-organ transplant recipient. *Transplantation*, 96(7), 593–600.
- De Bleser, L., Matteson, M., Dobbels, F., Russell, C., & De Geest, S. (2009). Interventions to improve medication-adherence after transplantation: A systematic review. *Transplant International*, 22(8), 780–797.
- Denhaerynck, K., Dobbels, F., Cleemput, I., Desmyttere, A., Schäfer-Keller, P., Schaub, S., et al. (2005). Prevalence, consequences and determinants of non-adherence in adult renal transplant patients: A literature review. *Transplant International*, 18(10), 1121–1133.
- Dew, M. A., & DiMartini, A. F. (2011). Transplantation. In H. S. Friedman (Ed.), *Oxford handbook of health psychology* (pp. 522–559). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Dew, M. A., DiMartini, A. F., DeVito Dabbs, A., Myaskovsky, L., Steel, J., Unruh, M., et al. (2007a). Rates and risk factors for nonadherence to the medical regimen after adult solid organ transplantation. *Transplantation*, 83, 858–873.
- Dew, M. A., DiMartini, A. F., & Kormos, R. L. (2007b). Organ transplantation, stress of. In G. Fink (Ed.), *Encyclopedia of stress* (Vol. 3, 2nd ed., pp. 35–44). Oxford: Academic Press (Elsevier).
- Dew, M. A., Switzer, G. E., DiMartini, A. F., Myaskovsky, L., & Crowley-Matoka, M. (2007c). Psychosocial aspects of living organ donation. In H. P. Tan, A. Marcos, & R. Shapiro (Eds.), *Living donor transplantation* (pp. 7–26). New York: Informa Healthcare.
- Dew, M. A., DiMartini, A. F., Steel, J., DeVito Dabbs, A., Myaskovsky, L., Unruh, M., et al. (2008). Meta-analysis of risk for relapse to substance use after transplantation of the liver or other solid organs. *Liver Transplantation*, 14, 159–172.
- Dew, M. A., DiMartini, A. F., Dobbels, F., Grady, K. L., Jowsey-Gregoire, S. G., Kaan, A., et al. (2018a). The 2018 ISHLT/APM/AST/ICCAC/STSW recommendations for the psychosocial evaluation of adult cardiothoracic transplant candidates and candidates for long-term mechanical circulatory support. *Journal of Heart and Lung Transplantation*, 37(7), 803–823.
- Dew, M. A., Posluszny, D. M., DiMartini, A. F., Myaskovsky, L., Steel, J. L., & DeVito Dabbs, A. J. (2018b). Posttransplant medical adherence: What have we learned and can we do better? *Current Transplantation Reports*, 5(2), 174–188.
- Dew, M. A., DiMartini, A. F., Steel, J. L., & Jowsey-Gregoire, J. G. (in press). Psychosocial evaluation, care and quality of life. In K. Lentine, B. Concepcion, & E. Lerma (Eds.), *Living kidney donation*. New York: Springer Publishing.
- DiMartini, A. F., Shenoy, A., & Dew, M. A. (2019). Organ transplantation. In J. L. Levenson (Ed.), *The American Psychiatric Association Publishing textbook of psychosomatic medicine and consultation-liaison psychiatry* (3rd ed., pp. 859–906). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association Publishing, Inc.
- Kendall, K., Ansley, K., & Skillman, M. (2017). Psychosocial issues in transplantation. In S. Cupples, S. Lerret, V. McCalmont, & L. Ohler (Eds.), *Core curriculum for transplant nursing* (2nd ed., pp. 769–806). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer.
- Korb-Savoldelli, V., Sabatier, B., Gillaizeau, F., Guillemain, R., Prognon, P., Bégue, D., et al. (2010). Non-adherence with drug treatment after heart or lung

transplantation in adults: A systematic review. *Patient Education and Counseling*, 81(2), 148–154.

Kuntz, K., Weinland, S. R., & Butt, Z. (2015). Psychosocial challenges in solid organ transplantation. *Journal of Clinical Psychology in Medical Settings*, 22(2–3), 122–135.

LaPointe Rudow, D. L., Hays, R., Baliga, P., Cohen, D. J., Cooper, M., Danovitch, G. M., et al. (2015). Consensus conference on best practices in live kidney donation: Recommendations to optimize education, access and care. *American Journal of Transplantation*, 15(4), 914–922.

Myaskovsky, L., Jesse, M. T., Kuntz, K., Leinom, A. D., Peipert, J. D., Russell, C. L., et al. (2018). Report from the American Society of Transplantation Psychosocial Community of Practice Adherence Task Force: Real world options for promoting adherence in adult recipients. *Clinical Transplantation*, 32(9), e13353.

Nevins, T. E., Nickerson, P. W., & Dew, M. A. (2017). Understanding medication nonadherence after kidney transplant. *Journal of the American Society of Nephrology*, 28(8), 2290–2301.

Olbrisch, M. E., Benedict, S. J., Haller, D. L., & Levenson, J. L. (2001). Psychosocial assessment of living organ donors: Clinical and ethical considerations. *Progress in Transplantation*, 11(1), 40–49.

Olbrisch, M. E., Benedict, S. M., Ashe, K., & Levenson, J. L. (2002). Psychological assessment and care of organ transplant patients. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 70(3), 771–783.

Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network and the Scientific Registry of Transplant Recipients (2019). OPTN/SRTR 2017 annual data report. Department of Health and Human Services, Health Resources and Services Administration, Healthcare Systems Bureau, Division of Transplantation, Rockville; United Network for Organ Sharing, Richmond; Hennepin Healthcare Research Institute, Minneapolis. Accessed 13 Aug 2019 from https://srtr.transplant.hrsa.gov/annual_reports/2017_ADR_Preview.aspx.

Sabaté, E. (2003). *Adherence to long-term therapies: Evidence for action*. Geneva: World Health Organization. Accessed 12 June 2019 from https://www.who.int/chp/knowledge/publications/adherence_full_report.pdf.

Sher, Y., & Maldonado, J. (Eds.). (2019). *The psychosocial care of end-stage disease and transplant patients*. New York: Springer Publishing.

Organizational Health Promotion

► Worksite Health Promotion

Organizational Health Psychology

Monique F. Crane

Macquarie University, North Ryde/Sydney, NSW, Australia

Synonyms

Occupational mental health; Occupational resilience; Organizational health; Work-related health

Definition

“Occupational health” is a field of study and related interventions that serve to mitigate and circumvent work-related hazards to people’s physical and psychological health. This is achieved by understanding how work characteristics influence employee’s health-related behaviors and psychosocial outcomes in both positive and negative ways. These insights guide policy reform, organizational and team-level interventions, and individual-level interventions that are directed at modifying factors that support physical and psychological well-being. The social and behavioral sciences have made a considerable contribution to our current understanding of occupational health. In this way, occupational health has benefited from the insights of fields beyond those traditionally associated with physical health in the workplace.

Organizational Health

- Occupational Health
- Organizational Health Psychology

Description

Over the previous 40 years, changes to the nature of work and employment have had implications

for occupational health. Such changes have involved increased technology and atomization of certain job roles, shifts toward globalization which has meant organizations have undergone significant structural change (i.e., mergers, acquisitions). Economic challenges throughout the 1990s have also meant downsizing and reorganization, as businesses strive to remain viable (Sparks et al. 2001; Quinlan et al. 2001). Positive changes have also emerged, including an increase in the number of women who remain active in the workforce, as policy makers move toward greater support for maternity/paternity leave and flexible working arrangements (Sparks et al. 2001).

The challenges of the twenty-first-century workplace have implications for both physical and mental health with far reaching impacts beyond the work domain. Increasing work hours, competition, and time pressure have implications for the incidence of repetitive movement injuries, but also stress-related mental health issues (e.g., burnout, anxiety, depression). Workplace demands may have primary, but also downstream secondary, impacts on mental and physical health. In terms of secondary effects, longitudinal studies have demonstrated that high-strain jobs are associated with a higher likelihood of cardiovascular disease (e.g., Kuper and Marmot 2003) and other physical health problems. There are many possible explanations for this link, but one prominent mechanism is the emergence of problematic health behaviors that arise to manage the stress associated with high-demand work contexts (e.g., increased alcohol consumption, comfort eating, less exercise) as compared to those in lower-stress occupations (e.g., Payne et al. 2005; see Steptoe 1991 for review). A further secondary effect is the stress imposed on the family system. Increasing research in this area is unveiling the role that prolonged workplace stressors can have on the families of employees, particularly given the increase in households where both partners are engaged in the workforce. Work-family conflict occurs when the demands of one aspect are incompatible with the demands of the other (Kahn et al. 1964). As work demands increase, there is a greater risk that work-life conflicts will

emerge. Moreover, the conflict itself is an additional demand with its own outcomes for well-being (e.g., lower life satisfaction, quality of life; Greenhaus et al. 1987; Higgins and Duxbury 1992). Thus, occupational health is a complex interplay of factors resulting in both psychological and physical implications that reach far beyond the individual employee and their workplace.

When considering why people become ill, several models have emerged that place different weight on individual-level characteristics and organizational or team-level characteristics. Individual-level models attempt to explain why some people become ill when exposed to an adversity or stressor whereas others remain well with perhaps only small declines in physical or psychological functioning (Steptoe 1991). Such models highlight the possible preexisting genetic factors, the individual's health status, exercise, nutrition. Although these factors explain some of the variation in response to adversity, broadly speaking investigations of these markers have been challenging due to: (1) the effects of individual factors (e.g., poor nutrition) not lending themselves to the prediction of specific health outcomes, and (2) that these factors do not readily lend themselves to influence by an organization, and so it may be challenging for organizations to intervene in positive ways. Other individual-level models focus on the individual's resources to meet the demands occurring in their work and personal life. Mental health issues are considered more likely to arise where demands are considered to overwhelm the available individual resources (Hobfoll 1989; Folkman et al. 1986). Hobfoll (1989) reasons that insufficient resources limit the responses available when facing threats, and consequentially result in less effective coping. Individual resources come in many forms including adaptive beliefs about the self and one's capacity for agency over the world (e.g., self-efficacy, hope, optimism), social resources (e.g., strong ties with friends and family), coping and emotion regulatory repertoire, and practical aspects (e.g., time, money). These resources can be accessed at critical times and used to counteract demands.

Other models of workplace well-being and illness that present great promise are those that attribute employee well-being to characteristics of the organization and job design. According to the Job Demands-Resources Model of job burnout (Demerouti et al. 2001), burnout is possible in any profession where the job resources are outweighed by the job demands. Burnout is characterized by a sense of exhaustion, a lack of efficacy, and a psychological detachment from work. Although the exhaustion aspect overlaps with the experience of stress, burnout is the result of chronic demands where employees feel less engagement and capacity. Job demands refer to the physical, social, or organizational aspects of a job that result in a psychological or physical cost. Job resources are those job aspects that reduce the cost of demands, help to accomplish work-related goals, and are a source of personal growth or opportunity (e.g., job control, decision-making autonomy, and organizational support). A combination of high demands and low resources can lead to both exhaustion and disengagement (Bakker and Demerouti 2007). In recent years, these models have been extended to include the role of individual resources (e.g., self-efficacy; Xanthopoulou et al. 2007). Studies have demonstrated that personal resources are related to reduced exhaustion and increased work engagement, and notably that job resources appeared to have its beneficial effects, in part, by enhancing personal resources (Xanthopoulou et al. 2007). Thus, providing employees with job resources enhances their individual-level capacities highlighting the critical role of organizational and team-level factors.

These models provide clues about how to support employee well-being via preventative interventions at several levels. At the individual-level, stress management and resilience training programs have become increasingly popular in the past decade. Most examples of such strategies attempt to teach commonly adaptive cognitive-behavioral skills (Robertson et al. 2015). Many approaches use a combination of cognitive-behavioral strategies (e.g., Arnetz et al. 2009; Cohn and Pakenham 2008; Waite and Richardson

2003), and involve psychoeducation and guided practice of the techniques. At the team-level, interventions can target aspects related to team factors such as communication, feedback, and team support. Organizational-level interventions may target improvements in job design including skill variety, task significance, workload, quality of the organizational community, and autonomy (Searle 2017). Importantly, in recent years, there is a growing acknowledgement that focusing on employee well-being in the workplace has positive effects on employee performance and job engagement.

An organizational and team-level strategy that requires a special note is the development of a safety climate. Safety climate was introduced 30 years ago (Zohar 1980) and has historically referred to an employee's perceptions of the practices, procedures, and rewards within the organization as they relate to safety behavior. Safety climate has been identified as critical to safe guarding an individual's physical well-being by encouraging compliance with safety procedures and practices. Griffin and Neal (2000) have shown that safety climate increases perceived safety knowledge and the willingness to work safely, which in turn was related to the safe performance of tasks. In more recent years, *psychological* safety climate has become an emerging area of interest for protecting staff psychological well-being, which is defined as policies, practices, and procedures directed at protecting the psychological health and safety of workers (Dollard and Bakker 2010). Examinations of psychological safety climate have demonstrated that it impacts on employee burnout via the reduction of job demands (i.e., work pressure, emotional demands) and an effect on engagement via an increase in job resources (i.e., skill discretion) (Dollard and Bakker 2010). This work reflects an important extension to the Job-Demands Resources Model by suggesting that psychological safety climate is a precondition for psychologically safe work conditions.

In many ways safety and psychological safety climates reflect one of the key challenges for advocates of occupational health, because these

constructs relate to the willingness of organizations to embrace the promotion of healthy workplaces. The emergent popularity of resilience and stress management interventions perhaps reflects this issue. In some cases, organizations over-emphasize the role of individual-level factors as the cause of well-being issues, rather than focusing on organizational or team-level practices (Crane 2017). This is despite the overwhelming evidence that organizational-level changes in combination with individual-level interventions provide the most sustainable outcomes for employee health.

Cross-References

- [Epidemiology](#)
- [Heart Disease and Stress](#)
- [Job Related to Health](#)
- [Occupational Rehabilitation](#)

References and Further Reading

- Arnetz, B. B., Nevedal, D. C., Lumley, M. A., Backman, L., & Lublin, A. (2009). Trauma resilience training for police: Psychophysiological and performance effects. *Journal of Police and Criminal Psychology*, 24, 1–9.
- Bakker, A. B., & Demerouti, E. (2007). The job demands-resources model: State of the art. *Journal of Managerial Psychology*, 22, 309–328.
- Cohn, A., & Pakenham, K. (2008). Efficacy of a cognitive-behavioral program to improve psychological adjustment. *Military Medicine*, 173, 1151–1156.
- Crane, M. F. (2017). *Managing for resilience: A practical guide for employee wellbeing and organisational performance*. London: Taylor and Francis.
- Demerouti, E., Bakker, A. B., Nachreiner, F., & Schaufeli, W. B. (2001). The job demands-resources model of burnout. *Journal of Applied Psychology*, 86, 499–512.
- Dollard, M. F., & Bakker, A. B. (2010). Psychosocial safety climate as a precursor to conducive work environments, psychological health problems, and employee engagement. *Journal of Occupational and Organizational Psychology*, 83, 579–599.
- Folkman, S., Lazarus, R. S., Gruen, R. J., & DeLongis, A. (1986). Appraisal, coping, health status, and psychological symptoms. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 50, 571–579.
- Greenhaus, J. H., Bedeian, A. G., & Mossholder, K. W. (1987). Work experiences, job performance, and feelings of personal and family well-being. *Journal of Vocational Behavior*, 31, 200–215.
- Griffin, M. A., & Neal, A. (2000). Perceptions of safety at work: A framework for linking safety climate to safety performance, knowledge, and motivation. *Journal of Occupational Health Psychology*, 5, 347–358.
- Higgins, C. A., & Duxbury, L. E. (1992). Work-family conflict: A comparison of dual-career and traditional-career men. *Journal of Organizational Behavior*, 13, 389–411.
- Hobfoll, S. E. (1989). Conservation of resources: A new attempt at conceptualising stress. *American Psychologist*, 44, 513–524.
- Kahn, R. L., Wolfe, D. M., Quinn, R. P., Snoek, J. D., & Rosenthal, R. A. (1964). *Organizational stress: Studies in role conflict and ambiguity*. New York: Wiley.
- Kuper, H., & Marmot, M. (2003). Job strain, job demands, decision latitude, and risk of coronary heart disease within the Whitehall II study. *Journal of Epidemiology & Community Health*, 57, 147–153.
- Payne, N., Jones, F., & Harris, P. R. (2005). The impact of job strain on the predictive validity of the theory of planned behaviour: An investigation of exercise and healthy eating. *British Journal of Health Psychology*, 10, 115–131.
- Quinlan, M., Mayhew, C., & Bohle, P. (2001). The global expansion of precarious employment, work disorganization, and consequences for occupational health: A review of recent research. *International Journal of Health Services*, 31, 335–414.
- Robertson, I. T., Cooper, C. L., Sarkar, M., & Curran, T. (2015). Resilience training in the workplace from 2003 to 2014: A systematic review. *Journal of Occupational and Organizational Psychology*, 88, 533–562.
- Searle, B. J. (2017). How work design can enhance or erode employee resilience. In M. F. Crane (Ed.), *Managing for resilience: A practical guide for employee wellbeing and organisational performance* (pp. 103–116). London: Taylor and Francis.
- Sparks, K., Faragher, B., & Cooper, C. L. (2001). Well-being and occupational health in the 21st century workplace. *Journal of Occupational and Organizational Psychology*, 74, 489–509.
- Steptoe, A. (1991). Invited review: The links between stress and illness. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 35, 633–644.
- Waite, P. J., & Richardson, G. E. (2003). Determining the efficacy of resiliency training in the work site. *Journal of Allied Health*, 33, 178–183.
- Xanthopoulou, D., Bakker, A. B., Demerouti, E., & Schaufeli, W. B. (2007). The role of personal resources in the job demands-resources model. *International Journal of Stress Management*, 14, 121–141.
- Zohar, D. (1980). Safety climate in industrial organizations: Theoretical and applied implications. *Journal of Applied Psychology*, 65, 96–102.

Orleans, C. Tracy

Tracy Orleans

Robert Wood Johnson Foundation, Princeton, NJ,
USA

Biographical Information



Carole Tracy Orleans (nee Schornagel) was born in Holland, Michigan, and obtained her B.A. degree in Psychology (summa cum laude) from Wellesley College in 1970. She completed her Ph. D. in Clinical Psychology at the University of Maryland, including a clinical internship in Medical Psychology at Duke University Medical Center in 1978.

Orleans is an internationally recognized leader in behavioral medicine, health and behavior, and tobacco control research. In the area of tobacco control, she has contributed to four *Surgeon General's Reports* and, with John Slade, coedited the first text on the management of nicotine addiction. She has led or co-led the development of several effective population-level national tobacco cessation programs which remain in wide use nationally (including *Free & Clear*, the first national proactive telephone quitline, the *Clear Horizons* quit smoking guide for older adults, the *Pathways to Freedom* guide for African American smokers). In addition, she played a leading role in the development of the NCQA's first HEDIS tobacco measure, which has been adopted as a standard metric for national health-care quality improvement, and

in early efforts to reduce smokeless tobacco use in Major League Baseball. In 1995, she was named by *Tobacco Control* as one of the 100 most widely cited tobacco control researchers.

Prior to joining the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation's (RWJF) professional staff in 1995, Orleans served as vice president for Research and Development, Johnson & Johnson Applied Behavioral Technologies (1993–1995); associate and full member (professor) and director of Tobacco Control Research at the Fox Chase Cancer Center (1985–1993); and assistant professor of Medical Psychology/Psychiatry at Duke University Medical Center (1978–1984) with an adjunct appointment as research associate with the Cecil B. Sheps Center for Health Policy Research at the University of North Carolina.

Major Accomplishments

As the senior scientist for the RWJF since 1998, Orleans has led numerous national efforts to identify and spread evidence-based clinical, public health (policy/environmental), and health-care systems interventions for health promotion, disease prevention, and chronic disease management. As RWJF's only behavioral medicine specialist, Orleans developed and led the Foundation's first Health and Behavior team, catalyzed the development of its first chronic disease management team, and made significant contributions to its substance abuse prevention, tobacco control, and childhood obesity prevention teams and initiatives. Her work has advanced RWJF's public policy and health-care systems grant-making in the areas of tobacco control, physical activity promotion, substance abuse prevention and treatment, chronic disease prevention and management, and childhood obesity prevention.

Orleans has developed and/or overseen a broad portfolio of RWJF research grants, initiatives, and competitive research programs, including: Active Living Research, Addressing Tobacco in Managed Care, Bridging the Gap (youth tobacco/substance use/and childhood obesity prevention), Healthy Eating Research, Improving Chronic Illness Care, Substance Abuse Policy Research, and

Prescription for Health (multiple risk health behavior change in primary care). She also has directed several RWJF program evaluations (e.g., Health e-Technologies, Reducing Underage Drinking through Coalitions, SmokeLess States), led numerous projects designed to translate evidence-based behavioral medicine interventions into policy and practice, and helped to organize and co-lead four national research “collaboratives” designed to coordinate and strengthen the collective impact of the nation’s major tobacco control and childhood obesity prevention research, practice, and policy initiatives, including those funded by the CDC, NIH, RWJF, USDA, HRSA, and Legacy Foundation.

Orleans has been PI or Co-PI on numerous NIH research grants and has authored or coauthored more than 225 publications in the areas of behavioral medicine, tobacco control, health promotion, disease prevention and management, and public health. She has served on many journal editorial boards throughout her career and is currently associate editor for policy for the *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*. In addition, she has been a member of numerous influential national scientific, health policy, and evidence review panels, including:

- The Community Preventive Services Task Force (2009–present)
- The *Healthy People* 2020 Prioritization Subcommittee (2009–2010)
- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (AHRQ) Tobacco Control Clinical Practice Guideline Panel (2006–2008)
- Partnership for Prevention’s Expert Panel on Worksite Wellness and Chronic Disease Management (2006–2008)
- The National Commission on Prevention Priorities (2003–present)
- The Cessation Subcommittee, Surgeon General’s Interagency Committee on Smoking and Health (2002–2003)
- The Institute of Medicine Committee: Identifying Priority Areas for Healthcare Quality Improvement (2002–2003)
- The US Preventive Services Task Force (1998–2004)
- Several National Cancer Institute Research Advisory Committees including for the Working Well Study (1990–1994), the Tobacco Research Implementation Group (1998–2000), and the Behavioral Science Research Division (1996–1997; 2010).

Orleans was honored to receive several awards and recognitions for her work in behavioral medicine. She is a fellow of the Society of Behavioral Medicine, the American Psychological Association Health Psychology Division, and the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research. A past-president of the Society of Behavioral Medicine (2000), she has received the Society’s Distinguished Service Award (2000, 2006) and its Distinguished Scientist Award (2008). In recognition of career contributions to tobacco control research, Orleans received the 1992 Joseph Cullen Tobacco Memorial Award from the American Society of Preventive Oncology and the 2007 John Slade Award for tobacco control policy research leadership from the Society for Research on Nicotine and Tobacco. In 2006, Orleans was named RWJF’s first Distinguished Fellow, and in 2010, she received the American Psychological Association Meritorious Research Service Commendation and the US Department of Health and Human Services Innovators Award, a group award.

Throughout her career, Orleans has been inspired and enriched by opportunities to address important health and health-care problems at the population level and to work with outstanding leaders and colleagues – including at Duke University Medical Center, the Fox Chase Cancer Center, the Robert Wood Johnson Foundation, and in every professional organization she has been part of. Their example and friendship, and the vital support and inspiration of her family (her husband Jeffrey, their sons Jesse and Alexander, and her mother) are the bedrock of all her professional accomplishments.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Health Promotion and Disease Prevention](#)
- ▶ [Public Health](#)
- ▶ [Tobacco Cessation](#)
- ▶ [Tobacco Use](#)

References and Readings

- Abrams, D. B., Orleans, C. T., Niaura, R. N., Goldstein, M. G., Prochaska, J. O., & Velicer, W. (1993). Treatment issues in smoking cessation: A stepped-care approach. *Tobacco Control*, 2(Suppl), 17–33.
- Brennan, L., Castro, S., Brownson, R. C., Claus, J., & Orleans, C. T. (2011). Accelerating evidence reviews and broadening evidence standards to identify effective, promising and emerging policy and environmental strategies for prevention of childhood obesity. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 32, 199–225.
- Glasgow, R., Orleans, C. T., Wagner, E., & Curry, S. (2001). The planned care model: A template for improving chronic illness and preventive care. *Milbank Quarterly*, 79, 579–612.
- Houpt, J., Orleans, C. T., George, L. K., & Brodie, H. K. H. (1979). *The importance of mental health services to general health care. Report prepared for the Institute of Medicine*. Cambridge, MA: Ballinger Publishing. Precursor to IOM Report Health and Behavior.
- Levy, D. T., Mabry, P. L., Graham, A. L., Abrams, D., & Orleans, C. T. (2010). Exploring scenarios for dramatically reducing smoking prevalence: A simulation model of the three-part cessation process. *American Journal of Public Health*, 100, 1253–1259.
- McKinnon, R. A., Orleans, C. T., Kumanyika, S. K., Haire-Joshu, D., et al. (2009). Considerations for an obesity policy research agenda. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 36, 351–357.
- Orleans, C. T. (2000). Promoting the maintenance of health behavior change: Recommendations for the next generation of research and practice. *Health Psychology*, 19, 76–83.
- Orleans, C. T. (2001). Efforts to reduce tobacco use among women: Cessation overview. In *1997 Surgeon general's report: Tobacco use among women*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
- Orleans, C. T. (2004). Addressing multiple behavioral health risks in primary care: Broadening the focus of health behavior change research and practice. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 27(2S), 1–4.
- Orleans, C. T. (2007). Increasing the demand for and use of effective smoking-cessation treatments: Reaping the full health benefits of tobacco-control science and policy gains – In our lifetime. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 33(6 Suppl), S340–S348.
- Orleans, C. T., & Slade, J. (Eds.). (1993). *Nicotine addiction: Principles and management*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Orleans, C. T., Strecher, V. J., Schoenbach, V. J., & Salmon, M. A. (1988). Smoking cessation initiatives for Black Americans. In *The health consequences of smoking: Nicotine addiction? A report of the surgeon general*. Rockville: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
- Orleans, C. T., Rimer, B. K., Salmon, M. A. (1990). Long-term psychological and behavioral consequences and correlates of smoking cessation. In *The health benefits of smoking cessation: A report of the surgeon general* (pp. 532–555, 561–578). Rockville: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
- Orleans, C. T., Schoenbach, V., Wagner, E. H., Quade, D., Salmon, M. A., Pearson, D., et al. (1991). Self-help quit smoking interventions: Effects of self-help materials, social support instructions and telephone counseling. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 59(3), 439–448.
- Orleans, C. T., Kristeller, J. L., & Gritz, E. R. (1993). Helping hospitalized smokers quit: New directions for treatment and research. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 61(5), 778–789.
- Orleans, C. T., Resch, N., Noll, E., Keintz, M. K., Rimer, B., Brown, T., et al. (1994). Use of transdermal nicotine in a state-wide prescription plan for the elderly: A first look at “real world” patch users. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 271, 601–607.
- Orleans, C. T., Boyd, N. R., Bingler, R., Heller, D., Fairclough, D., McClatchey, M., et al. (1998). A self-help intervention for African American smokers: Tailoring cancer information service counseling for a special population. *Preventive Medicine*, 27, S61–S70.
- Orleans, C. T., Gruman, J., Ulmer, C., Emont, S. L., & Hollendanner, J. K. (1999). Progress in population-based health promotion: Report card on six behaviors. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 14, 75–83.
- Schauffler, H., Barker, D. C., & Orleans, C. T. (2001). Medicaid coverage for tobacco dependence treatments. *Health Affairs*, 20, 298–304.
- Whitlock, E. P., Orleans, C. T., Pender, N., & Allan, J. (2002). Behavioral counseling interventions for health promotion and disease prevention in health care settings. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 22, 287–324.

Ornish Program and Dean Ornish

Manjunath Harlapur¹ and Daichi Shimbo²

¹Center of Behavioral Cardiovascular Health,
Division of General Medicine, Columbia
University, New York, NY, USA

²Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health,
Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

Dean Ornish

Definition

Dr. Dean Ornish is currently the president of the Preventive Medicine Research Institute in California and clinical professor of Medicine at University of California, San Francisco.

Description

Dr. Ornish is the founder and president of Preventive Medicine Research Institute in Sausalito, California, and on faculty at the University of California, San Francisco, as a clinical professor of medicine. Dr. Ornish received a medical degree at Baylor College of Medicine and underwent internal medicine training at Massachusetts General Hospital. His major contribution to medicine is his examination of the lifestyle modification/stress reduction approach to cardiovascular prevention and also cancer. He has published several seminal studies in this area. A few of these studies are described here.

In 1990, Ornish and colleagues published results (Ornish et al. 1990) from a landmark but small randomized trial (The Lifestyle Heart Trial) showing that intensive lifestyle changes for 1 year (10% fat vegetarian diet, exercise, stress management, and smoking cessation) was associated with regression in coronary artery disease on angiogram in cardiac patients ($N = 28$), whereas usual care was associated with coronary artery disease progression ($n = 20$). None of the patients were taking lipid-lowering medications.

In 1998, Ornish and colleagues published results of a longer follow-up period (i.e., 5 years) of the Lifestyle Heart Trial (Ornish et al. 1998). The study results were similar to the 1-year results. Patients with coronary disease assigned intensive lifestyle changes had regression in coronary artery disease on angiogram at 5-year follow-up, whereas a group that received usual care had coronary artery disease progression.

The group assigned to the intensive lifestyle changes also had a lower cardiac event rate during the 5-year follow-up.

In 2005, Ornish et al. (2005) demonstrated that in comparison to usual care group, comprehensive lifestyle changes for 1 year reduced the progression of early, low-grade prostate cancer in 93 men who had not chosen to undergo any conventional cancer treatment.

More recently, in 2008, Ornish et al. (2008) showed that comprehensive lifestyle changes for 3 months increased peripheral blood mononuclear cell telomerase activity (an enzyme that inhibits cellular aging) in 30 men with low-risk prostate cancer. This study was not randomized and did not have a control group.

Cross-References

- [Lipid Metabolism](#)
- [Preventive Medicine Research Institute \(Ornish\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Ornish, D., Brown, S. E., Scherwitz, L. W., Billings, J. H., Armstrong, W. T., Ports, T. A., et al. (1990). Can lifestyle changes reverse coronary atherosclerosis? The lifestyle heart trial. *The Lancet*, 336, 129–133.
- Ornish, D., Scherwitz, L., Billings, J., Brown, S. E., Gould, K. L., Merritt, T. A., et al. (1998). Intensive lifestyle changes for reversal of coronary heart disease five-year follow-up of the lifestyle heart trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 280, 2001–2007.
- Ornish, D., Weidner, G., Fair, W. R., Marlin, R., Pettengill, E. B., Raisin, C. J., et al. (2005). Intensive lifestyle changes may affect the progression of prostate cancer. *Journal of Urology*, 174(3), 1065–1070. <http://www.pmri.org/>
- Ornish, D., Lin, J., Daubenmier, J., Weidner, G., Epel, E., Kemp, C., et al. (2008). Increased telomerase activity and comprehensive lifestyle changes: A pilot study. *The Lancet Oncology*, 9(11), 1048–1057.

Orth-Gomér, Kristina

Kristina Orth-Gomér
Department of Clinical Neuroscience, Karolinska
Institute, Stockholm, Sweden

Biographical Information



Born in Stockholm, Kristina Orth-Gomér was educated with a focus on classic and modern languages at Whitlockska Samskolan, where she obtained baccalaureate in Latin, French, English, and German. After a short period of literature and civilization studies at the University of Lille, France, she began her studies of medicine at the Karolinska institutet, Stockholm. There, she obtained an M.D. in 1972 and a Ph.D. in 1979. She specialized in Internal Medicine in 1980 and later also in Social Medicine/Public Health Sciences.

With an interest in alternative therapies, she spent a semester at the Psychosomatische Kinderklinik, Eppendorf in Hamburg, where she also became involved in the 1968 students movements, which were particularly intense in France and Germany. She married in 1969 and welcomed her first child Johanna in 1973.

Trying to combine motherhood with medicine, Orth-Gomér was appointed an intern in internal medicine at the Seraphimer Hospital, Karolinska institutet. Before that, she served for a year as a research associate at the Cornell Medical School, Human Ecology Laboratory at the New York

Hospital, learning from scratch the research methodology of cardiovascular epidemiology and 24-h ambulatory ECG monitoring. She also spent a happy year with her young family in Manhattan, NYC.

Back in Stockholm, as an intern in internal medicine, with regular work hours from 8 to 18 h and night/weekend duties in the emergency room in between, Orth-Gomér did not see much of her daughter. She just barely obtained the admission for her daughter into the day care center, and she learned to appreciate the difficulties of fulfilling several multiple roles in a satisfactory manner at the same time.

Major Accomplishments

Research on Social Support

Her next research position, starting in 1980, offered a solution to the time puzzle. As an associate professor at the National Institute for Psychosocial Medicine (IPM) at the Karolinska Campus in Stockholm and head of the Unit for Social Factors and Health, she worked the same number of hours, but she could choose when and where.

Under the guidance of Lenart Levi, the IPM offered great opportunities to pursue the line of alternative therapies, while Töres Theorell at the IPM focused his research on stress and strain at work – and Torbjörn Akerstedt at IPM concentrated on odd work hours, sleep problems, and circadian rhythms – there was less knowledge about stress and strain during leisure time activities. To find research outside the work environment, the social network studies of Alameda County offered possibilities for scientific exchange with Lisa Berkman, Len Syme, and Jim House.

A question of considerable interest was the following: Are social networks as crucial for the maintenance of health in Sweden as in the USA? With the help of Statistics Sweden, a Swedish social network instrument, the social interaction index was constructed and applied in 17,400 men and women.

In a 6-year follow-up of the population, it was found that men and women who had more and better social contacts lived longer. Age was a strong confounder and controlling for age was crucial. With increasing age, mortality increased – and social contacts decreased dramatically. The remaining risk was smaller but statistically significant (Orth-Gomér and Johnson 1987).

In subsequent years, the quality and function of social contacts and their role in health promotion and disease prevention became the focus. A measure of social support with two subscales was constructed: attachment (close emotional ties) and social integration (social contacts in the society). These measures were then applied in populations and patients and almost invariably found to matter for health maintenance.

Behavioral Medicine

Behavioral medicine had evolved as a useful concept in the USA, but was unknown in Europe. Initially, introducing behavioral medicine met with some criticism. To launch another term and another society within this field, beside “psychosomatics,” “psychosocial medicine,” or “stress research,” was thought to be redundant. However, when the Swedish Society of Behavioral Medicine was inaugurated under the auspices of the Swedish Society of Medicine in Stockholm, in the presence of some 300 interested colleagues from medicine and behavioral sciences, it felt natural and appropriate. With the support by Arne Öhman, Karin Harms-Ringdahl, Christina Mats Fredriksson, Gösta Tibblin, and Stephen Weiss, Orth-Gomér served as president of the Swedish Society of Behavioral Medicine, 1986–1990.

A few years later, the International Society of Behavioral Medicine (ISBM) was formed and held its first conference in Uppsala in June 1990. It was a very successful conference, with an excellent faculty, which provided the right framework and starting point for the ISBM. It is not inappropriate to say that the success has been ongoing ever since. During the first years, ISBM expanded rather quickly, and there were many new societies formed. At the end of her term as president elect and president in 1990–1994, Kristina Orth-Gomér

reported that from five founding societies (USA, Netherlands Germany, Czech Republic, Sweden), ISBM had grown into 15 societies. The second conference in Hamburg in 1992 and the third conference in Amsterdam in 1994 were equally successful and raised a lot of interest and promise. With the fourth conference in Washington, the international nature of behavioral medicine was settled! Every researcher with a name within the field had gathered to make international behavioral medicine known and respected.

Interdisciplinarity and Integration

Collaboration with the European Society of Cardiology

The first step toward practical interdisciplinarity was taken when introducing behavioral medicine to the European cardiology community. To present scientists and practitioners of both fields and make them understand each other and talk to each other was more difficult than one could imagine.

In February 1999, Orth-Gomér presented her behavioral medicine ideas to the 50 member countries of the European Cardiology Forum at the Heart House in Nice, France. From studies in Canada and the USA, the European cardiologists were aware of the importance of depression – and of the impact of social disadvantage. They wanted to know how to interpret and how to treat their patients. Her handout of two pages with common behavioral medicine knowledge was quickly gone.

Kristina Orth-Gomér was then elected to collaborate with the European Society of Cardiology as a scientist, but she asked to do this as a representative of ISBM. This led to the formation of a multidisciplinary task force, which included not only behavioral medicine but also diabetes research, nutrition, physiology and rehabilitation, etc. The next step was to integrate this knowledge into the European Guidelines of Cardiovascular Disease Prevention in Clinical Practice (De Backer et al. 2003b).

Having attended the European Cardiovascular Epidemiology meetings for many years and presented her research, Kristina Orth-Gomér knew there was an interest of cardiologists in behavioral

medicine methodology. She was included as an ordinary member in the task force for CVD prevention and asked to work on several cardiology committees within the field. This led to ISBM being positioned and recognized as the appropriate partner among all the other psychosocial organizations in Europe.

A behavioral working group was formed which included the most experienced colleagues in the field. This group met at the first European meeting of the American Psychosomatic Society (APS) in Barcelona in 2002. This psychosocial working group described the contribution of behavioral factors to CHD, and they were accepted as such by the medical/cardiological community. A special psychosocial chapter was written and included in the full text of the guidelines (De Backer et al. 2003a).

This was a time of enthusiastic belief in the cross-fertilization that would come out of interdisciplinarity and internationalization.

There was firm resistance within the third task force to recognizing behavioral/psychosomatic processes as in any way being related to heart disease. It was argued that the evidence was just not there. The solution was to avoid the concept of etiology and instead talk about depression, social isolation, and other psychosocial risk factors as “barriers” to health promotion.

“Negative emotions. . . may constitute barriers to preventive efforts, both in patients and in high risk people. . .” (De Backer et al. 2003a). The barrier concept was more easily accepted. Furthermore, only empirical studies that had integrated both medical/cardiological and behavioral/psychosomatic contribution to risk of CHD were cited.

The European guidelines became a turning point, which made the behavioral/psychosomatic map change in Europe. It paved the way for several collaborative interdisciplinary efforts in Europe, Germany, the Netherlands, Scandinavia, and Hungary to name a few countries that saw a profound change in interest and attitude to this field. With the guidelines, the theories and findings in behavioral medicine had been empirically founded and widely accepted (2003).

Women's Cardiovascular Disease

The Stockholm female coronary risk study is a comprehensive study of women's risk factors, mechanisms, and pathways to CHD. It had full financial support from the NIH.

In a community-based case control design, women in Stockholm who were under 65 years and hospitalized at any of the ten coronary care units for an acute coronary event during a 3-year period were included. These 292 women patients were compared to 292 same-aged women, randomly obtained from the public census, who were thus representative of normal Stockholm women of the same age. The first publication (Orth-Gomér et al. 1997) demonstrated that lipoprotein (a), a genetically determined lipid compound, was a risk factor in women, as had previously been found in studies of men. The accompanying editorial observed that “Orth-Gomer et al. made a wise decision in using a case control design. . . , for what is, in women of this age, a rare disease” (Fortman and Marcovina 1997).

As part of the study protocol, Orth-Gomér developed a flowchart for integrating behavioral with medical risk factors, which has, since then, been used as a model for the first conference on Women, Stress, and Heart Disease held in Stockholm in 1993 (Orth-Gomér et al. 1998a).

It appears that one important characteristic of the female risk factor profile is the social support provided – or not provided – by family and friends and other members of the social network. This factor was consistently associated with several of the relevant mediators and pathways: with depressive symptoms with disturbed sleep patterns (Leineweber et al. 2003), with low heart rate variability and with disturbances of clotting and lipid profile (Wamala et al. 1999).

A further line of research was that of progression/regression of coronary artery disease (CAD) as assessed by quantitative coronary angiography. In a subsample of about a 100 women with CHD, two identical coronary angiograms were done with a 3-year interval, after initial hospitalization.

Richard Kirkeeide, from the Texas Medical Center, Houston, came once a year to the angiographic laboratory at the Karolinska in Stockholm

to calibrate the lab in order to ensure comparability between the two examinations. The subsequent evaluation of cine films, i.e., blinded comparison of pre- and post-angiograms was performed in Houston. In brief, we found that lack of social support as a psychosocial predictor was consistently related to progression of coronary artery disease. The better support, the slower was the progression (Orth-Gomér et al. 1998b). Indeed we found one small group of women who said they had both a good job and a happy marriage. This group showed a widening of the mean luminal diameter of the entire coronary tree – a regression of CAD over the 3 years. The magnitude of the change was about that seen as a result of medication with statins over a similar time period. In fact, this methodology had first been developed for use in statin trials (Wang et al. (2007)).

Conclusion

We now take for granted that women and men share leadership in professional societies. This is so only because of the efforts by an initially small cadre of female researchers who were pioneers in their male-dominated fields. Orth-Gomér has been a leader and pioneer in examining social factors in cardiovascular disease, particularly in women. She has led the Stockholm Female Coronary Risk Study and showed for the first time that marital stress in women increased risk of coronary events (e.g., cardiac death, recurrent MI) threefold, whereas work stress did not increase this risk in women (Orth-Gomer et al. (2000)). Her findings suggest that risk factors for adverse outcome in women are different from those of men. Kristina Orth-Gomér has now gone on to conduct intervention studies (e.g., SWITCHD) that specifically target stress reduction in women with coronary disease, and she has demonstrated a threefold reduction in mortality with this intervention (Orth Gomer et al. 2009). Her work has contributed to the sea change in cardiovascular medicine in the past decade in which it is now accepted that risk factors, clinical manifestations, and interventions in coronary disease differ between women and

men. Her many grants, publications, and scientific presentations demonstrate the depth and breadth of her work for behavioral medicine throughout her career.

Cross-References

- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Cardiology](#)
- [Public Health](#)
- [Women's Health](#)

References and Readings

- De Backer, G., Ambrosioni, E., Borch-Johnsen, K., Brotons, C., Cifkova, R., Dallongeville, J., et al. (2003a). European guidelines for CVD prevention in clinical practice. Third joint task force of European and other societies. *European Journal of Cardiovascular Prevention and Rehabilitation*, 1, S1–S78.
- De Backer, G., Ambrosioni, E., Borch-Johnsen, K., Brotons, C., Cifkova, R., Dallongeville, J., et al. (2003b). European guidelines on cardiovascular disease prevention in clinical practice. Third joint task force of European and other societies on cardiovascular disease prevention in clinical practice. *European Heart Journal*, 24, 1601–1610.
- Fortman, S., & Marcovina, S. M. (1997). Lipoprotein(a), a clinically elusive lipoprotein particle. *Circulation*, 95(2), 295–296.
- Leineweber, C., Kecklund, G., Janszky, I., Akerstedt, T., & Orth-Gomer, K. (2003). Poor sleep increases the prospective risk for recurrent events in middle aged women with coronary disease. The Stockholm Female Coronary Risk study. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 54, 121–127.
- Orth Gomer, K., Schnekiderman, N., Wang, H., Walldin, C., Blom, M., & Jernberg, T. (2009). Stress reduction prolongs life in women with coronary disease. The Stockholm Women's intervention trial for coronary heart disease (SWITCHD). *Circulation*, 2, 25–32. Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes.
- Orth-Gomer, K., & Johnson, J. V. (1987). Social network interaction and mortality. A six year follow up of a random sample of the Swedish population. *Journal of Chronic Diseases*, 40(10), 949–957.
- Orth-Gomér, K., Mittleman, M. A., Schenck-Gustafsson, K., Wamala, S. P., Eriksson, M., Belkic, K., et al. (1997). Lipoprotein (a) as a determinant of coronary heart disease in young women. *Circulation*, 2, 329–335.
- Orth-Gomér, K., Chesney, M., & Wenger, N. K. (1998a). *Women, stress, and heart disease* (pp. 1–298). Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum.

- Orth-Gomér, K., Horsten, M., Wamala, S. P., et al. (1998b). Social relations and extent and severity of coronary artery disease. The Stockholm Female Coronary Risk Study. *European Heart Journal*, 19(11), 1648–1656.
- Orth-Gomér, K., Wamala, S., Horsten, M., Schenck-Gustafsson, K., Schneiderman, N., & Mittleman, M. (2000). Marital stress worsens prognosis in women with coronary heart disease. The Stockholm Female Coronary Risk study. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 284(23), 3008–3014.
- Wamala, S. P., Mittleman, M. A., Schenck-Gustafsson, K., & Orth-Gomér, K. (1999). Potential explanations for the educational gradient in coronary heart disease: A population based case-control study of Swedish women. *American Journal of Public Health*, 89, 67–72.
- Wang, H. X., Leineweber, C., Kirkeeide, R., Svane, B., Schenck-gustafsson, K., Theorell, T., & Orth-Gomér, K. J. (2007). Psychosocial stress and atherosclerosis. Family and work stress accelerate progression of coronary disease in women. The Stockholm Female Coronary Angiography study. *Journal of Internal Medicine*, 261(3), 245–254.

OS

► Oxidative Stress

Osteopenia/Osteoporosis

Eun-Shim Nahm

School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Definition

Osteopenia Osteopenia is a condition where bone mineral density is lower than normal. It is considered to occur before osteoporosis. However, not every person diagnosed with osteopenia will develop osteoporosis. Osteopenia is not a disease but is a marker for the risk of fractures (Torpy et al. 2011).

Osteoporosis Osteoporosis (“porous bone”) is a systemic skeletal disease characterized by decreased bone mass, a loss of microarchitectural bone tissue, and a failure of the bone modulus (Cranney et al. 2007; Gardiner et al. 2007; Osteoporosis Education 2011). The individuals affected by this illness are susceptible to fracture.

In the United States, an estimated 44 million adults are living with either osteoporosis (ten million) or low bone mass (Osteoporosis Education 2011; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services PHS 2004). Several risk factors can influence the development of osteoporosis, including age (older age), race (White), family history (heredity/genetics), weight (low body weight/being small and thin), estrogen level (low), rheumatoid arthritis, and personal fracture history (National Osteoporosis Foundation 2007; U.S. Dept. of Health and Human Services PHS 2004). Postmenopausal women are at a high risk for osteoporosis because they lose bone mass faster than men as their estrogen level decreases after menopause (Camacho and Miller 2007; MacLean et al. 2008; The North American Menopause Society 2010). Although men are less affected than women, osteoporosis is also common among older men as approximately two million male older adults have osteoporosis (Qaseem et al. 2008). Osteoporosis in men, however, remains underdiagnosed and underreported (Qaseem et al. 2008; National Osteoporosis Foundation 2011a; Rochira et al. 2006; Szulc 2006).

Bone mineral density (BMD) refers to the amount of matter per square centimeter of bone. The BMD test is the only way to diagnose osteoporosis. This test can predict the chances of fracturing bones. The National Osteoporosis Foundation recommends a bone density test of the hip and spine by a central DXA (dual energy X-ray absorptiometry) machine to diagnose osteoporosis (National Osteoporosis Foundation 2011b). BMD test results are compared to the

Osteopenia/Osteoporosis, Table 1 Interpretation of T-score (National Osteoporosis Foundation n.d.)

Category	T-score range
Normal bone density	−1 to +1
Low bone density (osteopenia)	Between −1 and −2.5
Osteoporosis	−2.5 and below

ideal BMD of a healthy 30-year-old and reported using T-scores. A score of 0 means the BMD is equal to the norm for a healthy young adult. Differences between the norm and the BMD test results are measured in standard deviations (SDs). The lower the BMD score, the higher the risk for fracture (Table 1).

References and Readings

Camacho, P. M., & Miller, P. D. (2007). *Osteoporosis: A guide for clinicians*. Philadelphia: Lippincott.

Cranney, A., Jamal, S. A., Tsang, J. F., Josse, R. G., & Leslie, W. D. (2007). Low bone mineral density and fracture burden in postmenopausal women. *CMAJ: Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 177(6), 575–580.

Gardiner, A., El Miedany, Y., & Toth, M. (2007). Osteoporosis: Not only in women, but in men too. *British Journal of Nursing*, 16(12), 731–735.

MacLean, C., Newberry, S., Maglione, M., et al. (2008). Systematic review: Comparative effectiveness of treatments to prevent fractures in men and women with low bone density or osteoporosis. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 148(3), 197–213.

National Osteoporosis Foundation. (2011a). Prevalence report. Accessed October 15, 2011, from <http://www.nof.org/advocacy/resources/prevalencereport>

National Osteoporosis Foundation. (2011b). Diagnosing osteoporosis. Accessed May 20, 2011, from <http://www.nof.org/aboutosteoporosis/detectingosteoporosis/diagnosing>

National Osteoporosis Foundation. (2011c). Understanding osteoporosis. Accessed March 28, 2012, from <http://www.nof.org/aboutosteoporosis/prevention/healthyliving>

National Osteoporosis Foundation. (n.d.). Having a bone density test. Accessed August 15, 2011, from <http://www.nof.org/aboutosteoporosis/detectingosteoporosis/bmdtest>

Osteoporosis Education. (2011). About osteoporosis: Fast facts 2011. Accessed May 20, 2011, from <http://www.nof.org/node/40>

Qaseem, A., Snow, V., Shekelle, P., et al. (2008). Screening for osteoporosis in men: A clinical practice guideline from the American College of Physicians. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 148(9), 680–684.

Rochira, V., Balestrieri, A., Madeo, B., Zirilli, L., Granata, A. R., & Carani, C. (2006). Osteoporosis and male age-related hypogonadism: Role of sex steroids on bone (patho)physiology. *European Journal of Endocrinology*, 154(2), 175–185.

Szulc, P. (2006). Bone density, geometry, and fracture in elderly men. *Current Osteoporosis Reports*, 4(2), 57–63.

The North American Menopause Society. (2010). Management of osteoporosis in postmenopausal women: 2010 position statement of The North American Menopause Society. *Menopause*, 17(1), 25–54. Quiz 55–56.

Torpy, J. M., Lynn, C., & Glass, R. M. (2011). Osteopenia and preventing fractures. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 296(21), 2644.

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services PHS, Office of the Surgeon General. (2004). Bone health and osteoporosis: A report of the surgeon general. Accessed 22 Aug 2011, from <http://www.surgeongeneral.gov/library/bonehealth/content.html>

Outcome for the Single Case:
Random Control Index, Single
Subject Experimental Design,
and Goal Attainment Scale

Kenneth J. Ottenbacher¹ and Margaret E. Ottenbacher²

¹Division of Rehabilitation Sciences, University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston, TX, USA

²Institute for Translational Sciences, University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston, TX, USA

Synonyms

Single subject; Single-case experimental, or N of 1 clinical trials; Small-N

Definition

Traditional research and evaluation methods, including randomized clinical trials, are powerful techniques for determining the efficacy of health and behavioral interventions. Randomized clinical trials, however, have practical and ethical limitations when applied to many research questions important to the field of behavioral medicine (Concato et al. 2000). Alternative methods are needed to fully

examine the effectiveness of treatment techniques for individual patients and to document clinical accountability. This entry examines outcomes for the individual or single case.

Description

In this entry, three approaches are discussed that focus on evaluating outcome at the level of the *individual* person or patient: the *Reliability Change Index*, *Single-subject designs*, and *Goal Attainment Scaling*. These approaches are consistent with the client-/patient-centered focus in behavioral medicine. The assumption is made in presenting these procedures that systematic documentation of patient/client performance is the first step in the process of developing an evidence-based science for clinical practice. It is important to note that the procedures described are designed primarily to document clinical change and not to demonstrate causality.

Reliability Change Index (RCI)

The RCI, originally proposed by Jacobson, Follette, and Revenstorf (1984), is a general purpose measure that is useful with outcomes that are expected to remain relatively stable over time. Jacobson et al. (1984) argued that for a change in performance to be clinically significant it must be “statistically” reliable. That is, there must be a way to determine that the change in performance is not due to chance variation or measurement error. To make this determination, Jacobson et al. proposed the use of the *Reliability Change Index* (RCI). To compute the RCI, the following information is required: (a) pre-test score for an outcome measure, (b) the post-test score following treatment, and (c) the standard error of measurement (S_E) for the test. The S_E may be computed from the following formula: $S_E = S_1 [\text{sq root}(1 - r)]$ where S_1 equals the standard deviation for the test and r is the reliability coefficient. The RCI is calculated as: $\text{RCI} = (X_2 - X_1)/S_E$ where X_2 is the post-test score, X_1 is the pre-test score, and S_E is the standard error of measurement as defined above (Jacobson et al.).

In a subsequent article, Jacobson and Truax (1991) revised the *Reliability Change Index* and replaced the S_E with the standard error of difference S_{diff} . The S_E in the original formula is an index of the dispersion of an obtained score about a “true” score. The RCI, however, makes use of two *obtained* scores. The use of the S_E in the RCI formula assumes that the pre-test score is the “true” score and the Post-test score an obtained score (Jacobson and Truax 1991). This does not reflect the actual situation. The revised formula is $\text{RCI}' = (X_2 - X_1)/S_{diff}$. The S_{diff} can be computed as: $S_{diff} = S_1[\sqrt{2}(S_E)^2]$. The S_{diff} represents the amount of difference that would be expected between two scores obtained on the same test by the same individual as a function of measurement error alone. This assumption is consistent with obtaining pre- and post-test scores from a person in a clinical setting.

As an example, a student receiving education intervention for low academic performance might have an initial (pre-test) IQ score of 75 on the Stanford Binet test. Following 9 months of specialized instruction, the child’s IQ may increase to 85. The S_E for the IQ test is 5 points. Using the revised formula provided above: $\text{RCI}' = (X_2 - X_1)/S_{diff}$ or $\text{RCI}' = (85 - 75)/7.07 = 1.41$. This value is not statistically significant and indicates the change from 75 to 85 is within the range of measurement error.

Practitioners using the *Reliability Change Index* to document a clinically significant change in an individual client/patient should use the revised method (RCI') rather than the original formula (Jacobson and Truax 1991).

Single-Subject Design

Bloom, Fischer, and Orme (2009) argue that single-system designs, also referred to as single subject, small-N, single-case experimental, or N of 1 clinical trials, represent the preferred method of evaluating clinical change in many behavioral medicine environments. The basic steps followed in using single system designs to assess individual client/patient outcomes are presented below.

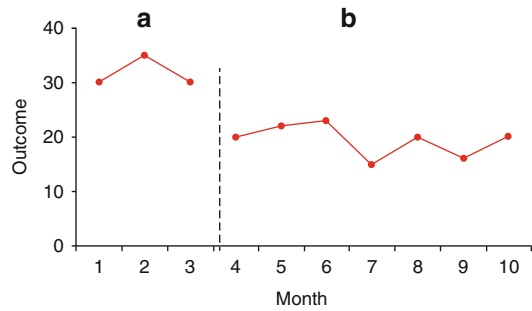
Step 1. Specifying the Problem. It is important that the clinical problem be clearly stated and

behaviors associated with the problem that can be observed and measured be identified. Traditionally, standardized norm-referenced tests are used to measure research outcomes when comparing persons in treatment versus control groups. Standardized norm-referenced assessments may be of limited value in single system designs where the same person(s) is assessed repeatedly. The ability to measure the person's repeated behavior is essential to implementing the single-system approach. Each outcome can be defined in terms of how often it occurs (frequency) or how long it occurs (duration) and also in terms of qualitatively desirable components (Bloom et al. 2009).

The behavior to be recorded must be clearly defined, and the rater must be familiar with how, when, where, and how long the behavior should be observed and recorded. Procedures have been developed to train raters and observers to determine the consistency and accuracy of their recording (Ottenbacher 1986).

Step 2. Selecting a Design. The logic of single-system designs rests on a comparison between phases when the intervention is present and when it is not, or when two or more treatments are compared. This comparison is generally made over time within one person (or a small group of participants). The sophistication of single-system designs has increased dramatically over the past two decades (Bloom et al. 2009). The discussion of designs presented here is meant to be illustrative rather than exhaustive. Readers should consult the references for more detailed information.

AB Designs. The AB design is the basic form of single-system design. The A represents the baseline or no treatment condition (phase A). Subsequent interventions are indicated by different letters of the alphabet. If an intervention baseline is repeated, then the same letter is used to represent the repeated phase. For example, Fig. 1 displays the effect of an exercise program on the weight loss of a cardiac patient. Phase A represents the baseline period where the person's weight was recorded on a monthly basis. A program of graded exercise and diet control was initiated at the end of month three and represents start of phase B. The vertical axis of the



Outcome for the Single Case: Random Control Index, Single Subject Experimental Design, and Goal Attainment Scale, Fig. 1 Example of AB design with baseline (A) and treatment (B) phases

graph indicates the patient's weight loss in pounds.

Other design variations are easily developed from this basic design pattern. Bloom et al. (2009) advocate the AB design as the cornerstone for conducting single-system evaluation and research. They contend that the fundamental step in becoming an accountable professional is to start counting with the AB design.

Variations of the AB Design. An extension of the AB design, in which the treatment is withdrawn in the third phase, is the ABA design. The withdrawal of the intervention provides greater confidence in determining the effect of the treatment. With each successive pattern change corresponding to the introduction or withdrawal of the treatment, it becomes increasingly unlikely that the change can be attributed to a coincidence. One disadvantage of the ABA design is that the patient is left in the absence of intervention. Another treatment phase (phase B) may be added to reintroduce the intervention effects resulting in an ABAB design.

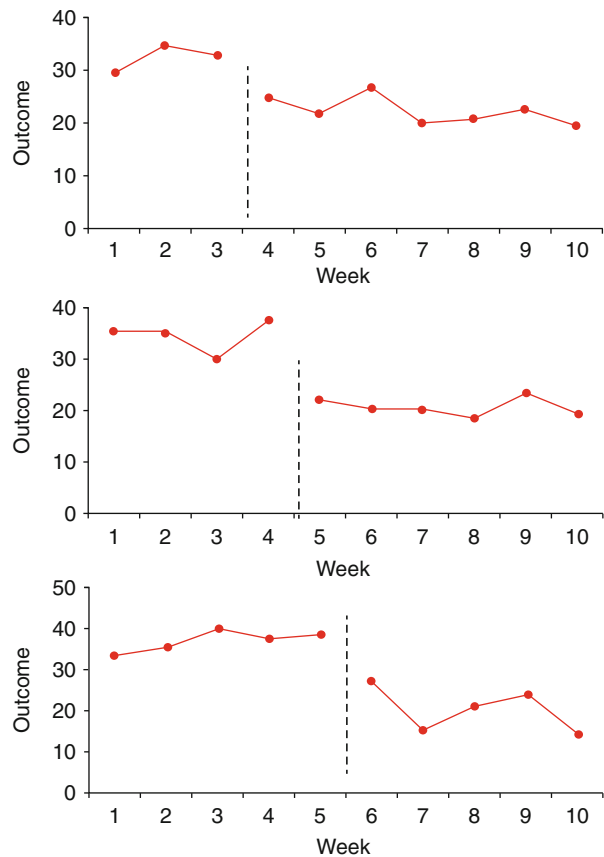
Multiple Baseline Designs. In some cases, the treatment or intervention cannot be withdrawn, or withdrawing the treatment may not result in a return to pre-intervention performance levels. In a multiple-baseline design, baseline and intervention data are collected on several individuals for a similar behavior or setting. The most common version of this design is the multiple baseline across participants where data are collected across several different individuals (Bloom et al. 2009).

Outcome for the Single Case: Random Control Index, Single Subject Experimental Design, and Goal Attainment Scale, Fig. 2

Example of multiple baseline design across three individuals

Multiple base-line across participants.

Includes replication and staggered introduction of treatment.



In a multiple baseline design, the intervention phase is introduced in a staggered manner across individuals, behaviors, or settings. Figure 2 illustrates a multiple-baseline across individuals. The intervention is introduced to each participant in a sequential, staggered manner, and the outcome measure recorded repeatedly. The consistently changing performance of each individual as the intervention is introduced strengthens confidence in the relation between the intervention and outcome. The multiple baseline design across individuals is a particularly useful single-system design because it does not require the withdrawal of treatment and has the additional benefit of including replication of the finding across participants.

Graphic analysis and visual inspection are the traditional analytic tools used to present and interpret the results of single-system research (Bloom et al. 2009). Kazdin (1982) has observed that as

single-system designs have become popular in applied research areas, there has been an increased emphasis on the need for statistical analysis of the data. The use of statistical procedures with single-system designs is controversial (Kazdin 1982). Several authorities feel it is inappropriate to use statistical techniques with single-system designs and contend that the application of statistical procedures confuses the issue of clinical and statistical significance. However, Edington (1996) argues that statistical and visual methods should be partners in the analytic endeavor to provide a clearer interpretation of single-system outcome research.

Goal Attainment Scaling (GAS)

The basic idea of GAS is not new. The practice of setting measurable goals for intervention is well established. Goals should be client/patient-centered and established in relation to the person's

home, work, and community environments (Rockwood et al. 1993).

The process of establishing goals in GAS is accomplished in series of steps (Kiresuk et al. 1994).

Step 1 is to identify an overall objective in collaboration with the person and his/her family.

Step 2 is to identify specific problem areas that should be addressed. This involves prioritizing areas and then identifying observable, reportable components.

Step 3 is to define specific behaviors or events that will indicate improvement in each of the areas selected in Step 2. The purpose is to provide the operational detail required to make the scale a useful instrument to evaluate performance.

Step 4, the clinician must determine the methodology that will be used to collect the desired information. A plan is developed that will determine how the information will be collected, who will collect it, and in what setting the data will be gathered.

Step 5 involves selecting the expected level of performance. This step relies on professional judgment and realistic appraisal of the client – it simultaneously is one of the strengths and liabilities of GAS. If the expected levels are at variance with actual performance, then the GAS score will reflect this inaccuracy. Step 5 is based on the assumption that experienced practitioners will be able to “predict” treatment outcome with input from the client, family members, and other health care providers. For example, if the clinician and others judge that it is realistic that the client loses 5 lbs in a month as part of a cardiac rehabilitation program, then this is a satisfactory operational criterion for the goal of weight reduction. This operational criterion relies heavily on the practitioner (and others) knowledge of the client, the intervention (e.g., cardiac rehabilitation program), and the environment.

Step 6 involves identifying the most favorable outcome, the least favorable outcome, and intermediate levels of client performance. Kiresuk et al. (1994) suggest that the

practitioner develop five levels of performance that range from the most favorable to the least favorable. The most favorable outcome should reflect what the client could accomplish if everything in the program goes smoothly. In the weight loss example, the most favorable outcome may be that the client loses 10 lb in 1 month. The least favorable outcome might be that the client gains 5 lb during the intervention. The expected outcome is to lose 5 lb. Each of the five levels is operationally defined and assigned a numeric value with 0 indicating the expected level of performance and -2 and $+2$ indicating the least and most favorable outcomes, respectively.

Step 7 involves checking to ascertain whether there are overlapping levels, gaps between levels, or more than one indicator in a problem area. The scale should also be checked to make sure that the definitions of behaviors are clear and that the instructions on how to collect data are not ambiguous. The final step (*Step 8*) is to ascertain the current status of the individual and determine when the client will be evaluated again to document if she or he has progressed. The selection of the time period between evaluations is related to the type of intervention provided, the expected level of performance, and external criteria imposed by third party payers, accrediting agencies and others.

The most commonly used system of scoring relies on the five-point scale of performance (see Step 6) with scores ranging from -2 to $+2$ for each scale. In this scheme, a rating of -2 is associated with the least favorable outcome; -1 less than expected; 0 expected level of performance; $+1$ greater than expected outcome; and $+2$ most favorable outcome. These ratings are used for each of the levels across all goals.

In scoring the GAS, *relative weights* are assigned to each of the goals identified for the client. There is no standard procedure for determining how each goal is weighted. The weighting is (ideally) achieved by consensus among the patient, clinician, family members, and other persons concerned with the patient's performance.

The weighing reflects a prioritizing or ranking of the goals. If four primary goals are prioritized, for example, then the most important goal is given a ranking (weight) of +4 and the least important goal a weight of +1. The weights (rankings) must be determined in the goal planning stage and not in the final assessment phase.

Evaluation Formula. After the intervention has been administered, the weights for the goals and the rating of each level of performance are used to compute a GAS score (Kiresuk and Sherman 1968). This score represents a numeric index of the client's improvement (or lack of improvement). The formula used to compute the goal attainment score is as follows:

$$T = 50 + \frac{(10 \sum W_i X_i)}{(1 - r) \sum W_i^2 + r(\sum W_i)^2}$$

X_i represents the outcome score for each behavior (a value from -2 to $+2$).

W_i represents the weighting for a particular goal.

r -value in the formula reflects the estimated average intercorrelation between outcome scores.

Kiresuk et al. (1994) suggest that an r -value of 0.30 can safely be assumed and used as a constant in the formula.

T -value is a standardized score with a mean of 50 and a standard deviation of 10.

A T -score of 50 corresponds to the 0 point on the original profile, that is, the expected level of performance ranging from -2 to $+2$. A T -score of greater than 50 represents performance above the expected level and a T -score of less than 50 reflects performance below the expected level.

The T -score is a better reflection of client performance than the simple raw score because it combines the outcome scores for all the goals to provide an overall measure of client improvement (or lack of improvement) (Kiresuk and Sherman 1968). Another advantage of the T -score is that it allows the weighting given to the individual goals to be incorporated into the final outcome.

An advantage of GAS is that it is not bound to any theoretical orientation or type of treatment or outcome measure. Another strength is that goals can be individualized and designed to represent

realistic expectations concerning client performance. The GAS strategy actively encourages cooperative person-centered goal setting. Input from clients, family members, and other health service providers is important in establishing and prioritizing (weighting) the goals and in determining realistic levels of expected performance (Kiresuk and Sherman 1968).

As Rockwood et al. (1993) accurately note "Goal Attainment Scaling can, quite properly, be viewed as an accountability system" (p. 450) it is not a research method. The procedures associated with GAS can, however, be incorporated into many standard research designs (Khan et al. 2008). If GAS is used in a research context then attention must be devoted to ensuring the internal validity of the investigation by blindly recording and establishing the reliability of the outcome measures. Khan and associates (2008) provide valuable suggestions and guidelines to practitioners interested in using GAS in a research context.

Implications for Practice and Research

The *Reliability Change Index*, *Single-subject designs* and *Goal Attainment Scaling* can assist practitioners in systematically evaluating change. It may not be realistic to expect behavioral medicine practitioners to complete complex and time-consuming research studies based on experimental procedures or randomized clinical trials. Practitioners do, however, have the opportunity and obligation to assess client/patient performance, document change, and report the results to consumers and colleagues. Increasingly, this obligation includes providing an opportunity for the patient and family to have a role in the assessment, intervention, and evaluation process. *Goal Attainment Scaling* and other patient-centered methods focused on individual outcomes can help improve the evidence-based services provided to persons with disabilities and chronic disease.

Cross-References

► [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)

References and Readings

- Bloom, M., Fischer, J., & Orme, J. G. (2009). *Evaluating practice: Guidelines for the accountable professional* (6th ed.). Boston: Allyn and Bacon.
- Concato, J., Shah, N., & Horwitz, R. I. (2000). Randomized, controlled trials, observational studies, and the hierarchy of research designs. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 342, 1887–1892.
- Edington, E. S. (1996). Randomized single-subject experimental designs. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 34, 567–574.
- Jacobson, N., & Truax, P. (1991). Clinical significance: A statistical approach to defining meaningful change in psychotherapy research. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 59, 12–19.
- Jacobson, N. S., Follette, W., & Revenstorf, D. (1984). Psychotherapy outcome research: Methods for reporting variability and evaluating clinical significance. *Behavior Therapy*, 15, 336–352.
- Kazdin, A. E. (1982). *Single-case research designs: Methods for clinical and applied settings*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Khan, F., Pallant, J. F., & Turner-Stokes, L. (2008). Use of goal attainment scaling in inpatient rehabilitation for persons with multiple sclerosis. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, 89, 652–659.
- Kiresuk, T., & Sherman, R. (1968). Goal attainment scaling: A general method of evaluating general mental health programs. *Community Mental Health Journal*, 4, 443–453.
- Kiresuk, T. J., Smith, A., & Cardillo, J. E. (1994). *Goal attainment scaling: Applications, theory and measurement*. Hillsdale: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Ottensbacher, K. J. (1986). *Evaluating clinical change: Strategies for occupational and physical therapists*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins.
- Rockwood, K., Stolee, P., & Fox, R. A. (1993). Use of goal attainment scaling in measuring clinically important change in the frail elderly. *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 46, 1113–1118.

Outpatient Treatment

- [Substance Abuse: Treatment](#)

Outreach Educators

- [Promotoras](#)

Ovarian Cancer

Ashley M. Nelson¹ and Erin S. Costanzo²

¹Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, MA, USA

²Department of Psychiatry, Carbone Cancer Center, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

Synonyms

[Ovarian carcinoma](#); [Ovarian neoplasm](#)

Definition

Ovarian cancer is a malignancy of the tissue of the ovary and most commonly consists of either an epithelial cell tumor, arising from cells on the surface of the ovary, or a germ cell tumor, in which the cancer forms in the egg cells.

Description

Approximately 22,530 new cases of ovarian cancer are estimated to be reported in the United States in 2019, and ovarian cancer ranks as the fifth most common cause of death among women with cancer (American Cancer Society 2019). Because ovarian cancer is difficult to detect during the early stages, women are often diagnosed with advanced disease that has spread to the lymph nodes or metastasized to other organs. The overall 5-year survival rate for women diagnosed with ovarian cancer is 47% (American Cancer Society 2019). The course of treatment varies by tumor type and stage but may include surgery to remove the tumor and/or one or both ovaries (oophorectomy), chemotherapy, radiation therapy, and/or targeted therapy.

A diagnosis of ovarian cancer and its corresponding treatment has been associated with significant decrements in emotional, physical, and functional quality of life (Arriba et al. 2010). Women with ovarian cancer often report

pervasive fatigue, disrupted sleep, and limitations in their ability to be active. Moreover, younger women typically experience loss of fertility, and many survivors report sexual concerns that persist well beyond the period of physical recovery. Not surprisingly, emotional distress is common, including symptoms of depression and anxiety. Distress can persist well after treatment ends, with survivors commonly reporting fear of a cancer recurrence and significant anxiety around follow-up clinic visits and diagnostic tests (Ahmed-Lecheheb and Joly 2016). Research on psychosocial interventions targeting symptom burden reduction and quality of life improvement is currently lacking.

Biobehavioral mechanisms by which behavioral factors may alter physiological pathways associated with ovarian tumor growth and development have also been investigated (Costanzo et al. 2011). For example, ovarian cancer patients who report greater depressive symptoms and less social support show elevated levels of pro-angiogenic cytokines including interleukin-6 and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) (Costanzo et al. 2011). Lower social attachment and greater lifetime stress exposure have also been linked to cortisol dysregulation, with chronically anxious ovarian cancer patients at greater risk (Cuneo et al. 2017; Armer et al. 2018). Stress hormones, including cortisol, norepinephrine, and epinephrine, have been shown to interfere with chemotherapy-mediated apoptosis of ovarian tumor cells and are linked to decreased survival time (Kang et al. 2016; Schrepf et al. 2015). Blockade of stress hormones through beta-blocker use has been linked to longer overall survival among beta-blocker users compared to nonusers (Watkins et al. 2015). Collectively, these findings suggest that behavioral factors may play an important role not only in quality of life but also in ovarian cancer outcomes.

Cross-References

- Cortisol
- Epinephrine
- Norepinephrine/Noradrenaline
- Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor (VEGF)

References and Further Readings

- Ahmed-Lecheheb, D., & Joly, F. (2016). Ovarian cancer survivors' quality of life: A systematic review. *Journal of Cancer Survivorship*, 10, 789–801.
- Armer, J. S., Clevenger, L., Davis, L. Z., Cuneo, M., Thaker, P. H., Goodheart, M. J., Bender, D. P., Dahmouch, L., Sood, A. K., Cole, S. W., Slavich, G. M., & Lutgendorf, S. K. (2018). Life stress as a risk factor for sustained anxiety and cortisol dysregulation during the first year of survivorship in ovarian cancer. *Cancer*, 124, 3401–3408.
- Arriba, L. N., Fader, A. N., Frasure, H. E., & von Gruenigen, V. E. (2010). A review of issues surrounding quality of life among women with ovarian cancer. *Gynecologic Oncology*, 119, 390–396.
- American Cancer Society. Cancer facts & figures 2019. (2019). Atlanta: American Cancer Society.
- Costanzo, E. S., Sood, A. K., & Lutgendorf, S. K. (2011). Biobehavioral influences on cancer progression. *Immunology and Allergy Clinics of North America*, 31, 109–132.
- Cuneo, M. G., Schrepf, A., Slavich, G. M., Thaker, P. H., Goodheart, M., Bender, D., Cole, S. W., Sood, A. K., & Lutgendorf, S. K. (2017). Diurnal cortisol rhythms, fatigue and psychosocial factors in five-year survivors of ovarian cancer. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 84, 139–142.
- Kang, Y., Nagaraja, A. S., Armaiz-Pena, G. N., Dorniak, P. L., Hu, W., Rupaimoole, R., Liu, T., Gharpure, K. M., Previs, R. A., Hansen, J. M., Rodriguez-Aguayo, C., Ivan, C., Ram, P., Sehgal, V., Lopez-Berestein, G., Lutgendorf, S. K., Cole, S. W., & Sood, A. K. (2016). Adrenergic stimulation of DUSP1 impairs chemotherapy response in ovarian cancer. *Clinical Cancer Research*, 22, 1713–1724.
- Schrepf, A., Thaker, P. H., Goodheart, M. J., Bender, D., Slavich, G. M., Dahmouch, L., Penedo, F., DeGeest, K., Mendez, L., Lubaroff, D. M., Cole, S. W., Sood, A. K., & Lutgendorf, S. K. (2015). Diurnal cortisol and survival in epithelial ovarian cancer. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 53, 256–267.
- Watkins, J. L., Thaker, P. H., Nick, A. M., Ramondetta, L. M., Kumar, S., Urbauer, D. L., Matsuo, K., Squires, K. C., Coleman, R. L., Lutgendorf, S. K., Ramirez, P. T., & Sood, A. K. (2015). Clinical impact of selective and nonselective beta-blockers on survival in patients with ovarian cancer. *Cancer*, 121, 3444–3451.

Ovarian Carcinoma

- Ovarian Cancer

Ovarian Neoplasm

► Ovarian Cancer

Overweight

Elizabeth R. Pulgaron
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

Excess weight

Definition

Being overweight is defined as being heavier than is healthy given a person's height, gender, and age. This includes having more body fat than is desired. Being classified as an overweight adult consists of having a body mass index (BMI) between 25 and 29.9. BMI is calculated by taking a person's weight in kilograms and dividing it by the square of the person's height in meters. For adults, a BMI of 25 is considered the 85th percentile. A similar calculation is computed to determine a child's BMI; however, gender and age are also added into the equation to account for differences in expected body fat at different developmental levels according to gender. Although BMI is a generally accepted measure for obesity, it is not diagnostic since it is not a direct measure of body fat. Other measures of body fat distribution include skinfold thickness tests, waist circumference, calculation of waist-to-hip circumference ratios, ultrasound, computed tomography, and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI; CDC 2009b).

Data from the United States National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) indicate that between 2005 and 2006, nearly 33% of adults 20 years and older were classified as overweight according to their BMI. From that

same survey, 34.3% and 5.9% of adults were classified as obese and extremely obese, respectively. Thus, 72.9% of adults in the USA were overweight or obese. Data from 2007 to 2008 indicated that 32% of children aged 2–19 years old met criteria for being overweight according to BMI (Ogden et al. 2010). These rates are much higher than those reported 10 years ago, which were significantly higher than the rates reported 10 years before that. High rates of obesity have been reported in other countries outside of the USA as well.

Being overweight is a result of chronic caloric imbalance, with more calories being consumed than expended each day. Genetics, environment, metabolism, behavior, culture, and SES all play a role in being overweight. The consequences of being overweight may be severe, including but not limited to higher risk for cardiovascular diseases, type 2 diabetes, cancer, hypertension, dyslipidemia, stroke, and sleep apnea (CDC 2009a). In addition to health consequences, there are also psychosocial and economic consequences of being overweight. These include morbidity and mortality, medical prevention and treatment expenses, and physical and psychological distress. For example, one study conducted by Gortmaker et al. (1993) followed obese adolescents for 7 years. Results indicated that young obese women completed less years of school, had lower household incomes, experienced higher rates of poverty, and were less likely to be married than women who had not been obese.

Cross-References

- Body Mass Index
- Obesity

References and Readings

- CDC. (2009a). *Overweight and obesity*. Retrieved January 31, 2011 from <http://www.cdc.gov/obesity/causes/health.html>.
- CDC. (2009b). *Overweight and obesity*. Retrieved January 31, 2011 from <http://www.cdc.gov/obesity/defining.html>.

- Gortmaker, S. L., Must, A., Perrin, J. M., Sobol, A. M., & Dietz, W. H. (1993). Social and economic consequences overweight in adolescence and young adulthood. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 329, 1008–1012.
- Ogden, C. L., Carroll, M. D., Curtin, L. R., Lamb, M. M., & Flegal, K. M. (2010). Prevalence of high body mass index in US children and adolescents, 2007–2008. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 303(3), 242–249.

Overweight Children

► Obesity in Children

Oxidative Stress

Sarah Aldred
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, The
University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

OS

Definition

Oxidative stress is an environment where the balance of prooxidant species to antioxidant species is altered in favor of the former. Prooxidant species include free radicals (e.g., the superoxide ion; O_2^-) and nonradical species (e.g., hydrogen peroxide; H_2O_2), which together are classified as reactive oxygen and nitrogen species (RONS). RONS are produced as a consequence of normal cellular oxidation processes. Sources include the mitochondrial electron transport chain, peroxisomes, endothelial or hepatic xanthine oxidase, and leukocytes. RONS have a variety of roles in normal homeostasis, including respiration and cellular signaling: RONS are reported to act as transient signaling molecules in the Ras GDP/GTP cycle and MAP kinase cascades,

through modification of protein-bound redox-sensitive thiol groups.

Antioxidants serve to delay or prevent the oxidation of substrates or cellular constituents. They may be endogenous, for example, the enzymes superoxide dismutase, glutathione peroxidase, and catalase, or exogenous and taken in via the diet such as vitamin A, C, and E.

RONS can increase to high levels in some disease processes or where there is antioxidant deficiency and may react with cellular constituents to cause damage, disruption of function, or degradation resulting in an oxidative stress.

Oxidative stress has been implicated in a number of diseases including Alzheimer's disease, vascular dementia, cardiovascular disease, rheumatoid arthritis, and diabetes.

Indices of Oxidative Stress

Proteins are highly susceptible to free radical insults, and such events can lead to irreversible oxidative modification. Free radicals can oxidize a protein's backbone and the side chains of particular amino acids (e.g., lysine, arginine, proline, and threonine), as well as induce protein fragmentation. In all of these instances, carbonyl groups ($C=O$) may be introduced into the protein's structure. In addition, the reaction of proteins with aldehyde compounds produced by lipid peroxidation (e.g., 4-hydroxynonenal (4-HNE) and malondialdehyde (MDA)) can lead to carbonyl formation.

Peroxynitrite ($ONOO^-$) is a highly potent reactive nitrogen species (RNS) formed during the reaction between nitric oxide (NO^*) and $O_2^{\cdot-}$. In addition to oxidizing proteins, $ONOO^-$ has the ability to nitrate proteins: a nitro group ($-NO_2$) replaces a hydrogen atom at the 3' position of a tyrosine residue, forming a 3-nitrotyrosine adduct. This posttranslational modification can impact upon protein function.

Polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFA) are components of cell membranes which are highly susceptible to oxidative damage by free radicals: such damage is referred to as free radical-mediated lipid peroxidation (LPO). The initial

step of LPO involves the free radical-mediated abstraction of hydrogen atoms from PUFA to form lipid radicals which react with molecular oxygen to form the highly reactive peroxy radical. This extremely unstable species can further oxidize lipids to produce new lipid radicals and thereby propagate a chain reaction. LPO can be terminated if lipid radicals (e.g., lipid peroxides) react with themselves to form stable lipid peroxide products, or if lipid-soluble antioxidants (e.g., vitamin E) are available to reduce peroxy radicals to lipid hydroperoxides.

Damage to DNA in peripheral blood lymphocytes and tissues of the human body is a highly sensitive and specific marker of oxidative stress. The use of DNA repair endonucleases (e.g., formamidopyrimidine glycosylase; FPG) allows the direct quantification of damage caused specifically by oxidative stress. Free radicals, and in particular the hydroxyl radical ($\text{OH}^\bullet$), cause sugar and base modifications, strand breaks, and DNA-protein cross-links.

Cross-References

► [Antioxidant](#)

References and Further Reading

Halliwell, B., & Gutteridge, J. (2007). *Free radicals in biology and medicine* (4th ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.

Oxytocin

Laura D. Kubzansky
Department of Society, Human Development, and Health, Harvard School of Public Health, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Pitocin](#); [Syntocinon](#) (synthetic forms)

Definition

Oxytocin is a peptide that is produced in the supraoptic (SON) and paraventricular nuclei (PVN) of the hypothalamus and released into circulation from the magnocellular neurons that extend to the posterior pituitary (peripheral system). It is released into the systemic bloodstream in pulsatile form by sensory and other stimuli. Oxytocin is also produced and released from parvocellular neurons in the PVN that project to numerous areas within the brain. It is a hormone but also functions as a neurotransmitter. Oxytocin is found in both males and females. Circulating levels of oxytocin and the number of oxytocinergic neurons in the hypothalamus are independent of sex, and oxytocin release and receptors are similarly induced and distributed in males and females.

Description

Oxytocin has well-known physiological functions during labor and in milk letdown in humans. However, animal research has also demonstrated effects of oxytocin on a broad range of social and affiliative behaviors, as well as on physiological and developmental outcomes. For example, oxytocin plays an important role in the ability to form normal social attachments and is involved with social recognition and social interaction behaviors for both males and females of a number of animal species (Carter 2003; Insel and Young 2001; Uvnas-Moberg 1998). Administering oxytocin has been shown to facilitate maternal behaviors among rodents such as grooming and licking pups, as well as other affiliative behaviors.

Research in both rodents and humans has found that oxytocin activity is elicited by various conditioned and nonconditioned sexual and social behaviors such as olfactory stimuli, touch, hair stroking, warmth, and pleasant vocal sounds (Depue and Morrone-Strupinsky 2005). As a result, investigators now posit that positive social behaviors and social bonding, characterized by repeated physical contact, can lead to the release of oxytocin (Uvnas-Moberg 1998). Additional

research in animals and humans suggests that oxytocin is involved in general central nervous arousal, with effects that oppose stress-related activation by inhibiting sympathetic nervous system activity and increasing parasympathetic activity, as well as inhibiting the release of glucocorticoids. Some animal work has also demonstrated that oxytocin seems to shift energy use toward more positive health-promoting internal activities like storing nutrients and increasing the rate of wound healing. These findings have led to strong interest among investigators in behavioral medicine, as to whether research on oxytocin in humans may provide new insights into the neurobiology of resilience and health.

The role of oxytocin in social, mental, and physical aspects of health in humans is an area of active investigation. Preclinical research suggests that oxytocin facilitates bonding and approach behaviors partly by inhibiting stress-related maladaptive cognitive, affective, and biological activation. Because of its potential role in mediating human social behavior, ongoing research is focused on whether oxytocin may lead to improved social and emotional functioning for a range of disorders including autism, schizophrenia, and anxiety or depression (Averbeck 2010; Bartz and Hollander 2006). Other studies in nonclinical populations have found that exogenously administered oxytocin reduces fear-related activation in the amygdala, reduces cortisol levels and distress in response to social stress, increases prosocial behaviors, and modulates social memory (Heinrichs et al. 2003, 2004; Kirsch et al. 2005; Kosfeld et al. 2005). However, effects of oxytocin do not appear to be uniformly positive and prosocial; other research has found that under certain conditions oxytocin may actually enhance negative responses to social stress in humans (Shamay-Tsoory et al. 2009).

Measuring oxytocin and its effects in humans presents some challenges. Oxytocin release into peripheral circulation is pulsatile, and it has a very short half-life. In addition, plasma oxytocin does not easily cross the blood–brain barrier and therefore may not be informative about oxytocin activity and effects in the brain. As a result, research on the role of oxytocin in human health is still in an

early period with investigators developing new assays and protocols for addressing these methodological challenges.

As with any biological substrate, oxytocin is likely to have a multiplicity of effects, and potential therapeutic and mechanistic insights will be enhanced as we achieve a greater understanding of the range of effects possible and the conditions under which they occur.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Attachment Theory](#)
- ▶ [Biomarkers](#)
- ▶ [Empathy](#)
- ▶ [Gender Differences](#)
- ▶ [Resilience](#)
- ▶ [Social Relationships](#)
- ▶ [Social Stress](#)
- ▶ [Social Support](#)
- ▶ [Stress](#)

References and Readings

- Averbeck, B. B. (2010). Oxytocin and the salience of social cues. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 107(20), 9033–9034.
- Bartz, J. A., & Hollander, E. (2006). The neuroscience of affiliation: Forging links between basic and clinical research on neuropeptides and social behavior. *Hormones and Behavior*, 50(4), 518–528.
- Carter, C. S. (2003). Developmental consequences of oxytocin. *Physiology and Behavior*, 79, 383–397.
- Depue, R. A., & Morrongiello, J. V. (2005). A neurobehavioral model of affiliative bonding: Implications for conceptualizing a human trait of affiliation. *The Behavioral and Brain Sciences*, 28(3), 313–350; discussion 350–395.
- Heinrichs, M., Baumgartner, T., Kirschbaum, C., & Ehlert, U. (2003). Social support and oxytocin interact to suppress cortisol and subjective responses to psychosocial stress. *Biological Psychiatry*, 54(12), 1389–1398.
- Heinrichs, M., Meinlschmidt, G., Wippich, W., Ehlert, U., & Hellhammer, D. H. (2004). Selective amnesic effects of oxytocin on human memory. *Physiology and Behavior*, 83(1), 31–38.
- Insel, T. R., & Young, L. J. (2001). The neurobiology of attachment. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 2(2), 129–136.
- Kirsch, P., Esslinger, C., Chen, Q., Mier, D., Lis, S., Siddhanti, S., et al. (2005). Oxytocin modulates neural

- circuitry for social cognition and fear in humans. *Journal of Neuroscience*, 25(49), 11489–11493.
- Kosfeld, M., Heinrichs, M., Zak, P. J., Fischbacher, U., & Fehr, E. (2005). Oxytocin increases trust in humans. *Nature*, 435(7042), 673–676.
- Shamay-Tsoory, S. G., Fischer, M., Dvash, J., Harari, H., Perach-Bloom, N., & Levkovitz, Y. (2009). Intranasal administration of oxytocin increases envy and Schadenfreude (gloating). *Biological Psychiatry*, 66(9), 864–870.
- Uvnas-Moberg, K. (1998). Oxytocin may mediate the benefits of positive social interaction and emotions. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 23(8), 819–835.

Oxytocin, Social Effects in Humans

Jennifer A. Bartz

Department of Psychology, McGill University,
Montreal, QC, Canada

Synonyms

[Pitocin](#); [Syntocinon \(synthetic forms\)](#)

Definition

Please see “Oxytocin” entry by L. D. Kubzansky

Description

Over the past two decades, there has been considerable interest in the role of oxytocin in human bonding and social behavior and cognition more generally. This entry will thus focus exclusively on this topic. As noted in the entry “Oxytocin,” decades of research has shown that oxytocin (and the structurally similar peptide, arginine vasopressin) plays a key role modulating mother-infant and adult-adult pair-bonds in nonhuman animals – specifically, oxytocin is involved in regulating maternal and alloparental (i.e., “babysitting”) behavior, partner preference formation, and social memory (a prerequisite to forming enduring pair-bonds for reviews, see, e.g., Carter 2014; Insel &

Young 2001; Ross & Young 2009). In contrast to the nonhuman animal research, research on oxytocin and social behavior and cognition in humans has lagged behind in large part because of methodological challenges studying the oxytocin system in humans. Nonetheless, with methodological advances, research in this area has grown considerably.

To date, there are three main ways of studying the role of oxytocin in human sociality. Most of the early work focused on assaying peripheral oxytocin in blood, saliva, or urine and looking at whether oxytocin levels are associated with indices of social behavior and/or cognition. This method is still used today but the extent to which peripheral oxytocin reflects central oxytocin is not entirely clear. There is also some debate about appropriate assay procedures (i.e., whether to use extracted or unextracted oxytocin). A second methodological approach is to look at variation in genes related to the oxytocin system – in particular, the oxytocin gene (*OXT*), the oxytocin receptor gene (*OXTR*), and the gene *CD38*, which has been implicated in, among other things, oxytocin secretion. A third methodological approach is to manipulate the availability of oxytocin via intranasal administration. In contrast to the other two approaches, exogenous administration allows one to make inferences about the causal role of oxytocin in human sociality, and it is this methodological approach that has received the most research attention to date in humans.

Research using intranasal technology has implicated oxytocin in various behaviors that, broadly speaking, fall under the category of other-oriented, “prosocial” behaviors including trust, cooperation, generosity, etc (e.g., Kosfeld et al. 2005). In addition to behavior, research has also implicated oxytocin in aspects of social cognition including emotion recognition and empathy (e.g., Domes et al. 2007; Bartz et al. 2010; in press), as well as social perception (e.g., perceptions of attractiveness and trustworthiness) (Theodoridou et al. 2009). Indeed, this growing body of literature contributed to the perception that oxytocin is “the hormone of love.”

Notwithstanding these findings, subsequent research has revealed that the effects of oxytocin

on social behavior and cognition can depend on the (social) context. In particular (Nitschke et al. 2018), research indicates that oxytocin does not reliably increase prosocial behavior when people are interacting with, for example, strangers, untrustworthy individuals, or out-group members. In addition, research indicates that the effects of oxytocin on social behavior and cognition can depend on the person. On the one hand, evidence suggests that oxytocin may be especially helpful, socially, for those who might broadly be characterized as less socially attuned and/or engaged (e.g., individuals who endorse traits of autism or more avoidantly attached individuals). On the other hand, a small but significant body of work suggests that oxytocin either has no effect or can actually undermine prosocial behavior in those who are preoccupied with and/or anxious about closeness as well as in individuals who have experienced early childhood trauma (Bartz 2016). In addition to these psychological moderators, there is some evidence that at least with regard to certain domains of behavior, the effects of oxytocin can be sexually dimorphic (Rilling et al. 2014). This is important to keep in mind given that many of the early intranasal oxytocin administration studies involved male-only samples.

These context- and person-dependent effects of oxytocin have both theoretical and applied significance. Regarding the former, they raise questions about the underlying mechanism by which oxytocin modulates human sociality. Here, a few hypotheses have been put forward: (1) that oxytocin heightens the salience of social cues, (2) that oxytocin promotes a motivational state to affiliate with others or approach motivation more generally, and (3) that oxytocin reduces anxiety and especially social anxiety (see Bartz et al. 2011; Nitschke, Krol & Bartz 2018 for in depth discussion). The context- and person-dependent effects of oxytocin also have applied implications. Given oxytocin's effects on social cognition and behavior, there has been interest in its therapeutic potential to treat psychiatric disorders marked by impaired social functioning – for example, autism spectrum disorders, schizophrenia, social anxiety disorder, borderline personality

disorder, and depression. That the effects of oxytocin can depend on the context in which it is given and/or the person to whom it is given suggests caution when considering using oxytocin as a therapeutic agent (Bartz, Zaki, Bolger & Ochsner 2011; Bartz 2016).

Cross-References

► [Oxytocin](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bartz, J. A., Nitschke, J. P., Krol, S. A., & Tellier, P. P. (in press). Oxytocin selectively improves empathic accuracy: A replication in men and novel insights in women. *Biological Psychiatry: Cognitive Neuroscience and Neuroimaging*.
- Bartz, J. A., Zaki, J., Bolger, N., & Ochsner, K. N. (2011). Social effects of oxytocin in humans: Context and person matter. *Trends in Cognitive Sciences*, 15(7), 301–309.
- Bartz, J. A., Zaki, J., Ochsner, K. N., Bolger, N., Kolevzon, A., Ludwig, N., & Lydon, J. E. (2010). Effects of oxytocin on recollections of maternal care and closeness. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 107(50), 21371–21375.
- Bartz, J. A. (2016). Oxytocin and the pharmacological dissection of affiliation. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 25, 104–110.
- Carter, C. S. (2014). Oxytocin pathways and the evolution of human behavior. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 65, 17–39.
- De Dreu, C. K., Greer, L. L., Handgraaf, M. J., Shalvi, S., Van Kleef, G. A., Baas, M., Ten Velden, F. S., Van Dijk, E., & Feith, S. W. (2010). The neuropeptide oxytocin regulates parochial altruism in intergroup conflict among humans. *Science*, 328(5984), 1408–1411.
- Domes, G., Heinrichs, M., Michel, A., Berger, C., & Herpertz, S. C. (2007). Oxytocin improves “mind-reading” in humans. *Biological Psychiatry*, 61(6), 731–733.
- Feldman, R., Monakhov, M., Pratt, M., & Ebstein, R. P. (2016). Oxytocin pathway genes: Evolutionary ancient system impacting on human affiliation, sociality, and psychopathology. *Biological Psychiatry*, 79(3), 174–184.
- Guastella, A. J., Mitchell, P. B., & Dadds, M. R. (2008). Oxytocin increases gaze to the eye region of human faces. *Biological Psychiatry*, 63(1), 3–5.
- Insel, T. R., & Young, L. J. (2001). The neurobiology of attachment. *Nature Reviews. Neuroscience*, 2(2), 129–136.

- Jurek, B., & Neumann, I. D. (2018). The oxytocin receptor: From intracellular signaling to behavior. *Physiological Reviews*, 98(3), 1805–1908.
- Kosfeld, M., Heinrichs, M., Zak, P. J., Fischbacher, U., & Fehr, E. (2005). Oxytocin increases trust in humans. *Nature*, 435(7042), 673–676.
- Marlin, B. J., Mitre, M., D'Amour, J. A., Chao, M. V., & Froemke, R. C. (2015). Oxytocin enables maternal behaviour by balancing cortical inhibition. *Nature*, 520(7548), 499–504.
- Nitschke, J., Krol, S. A., & Bartz, J. A. (2018). Oxytocin and human sociality: An interactionist perspective on the “hormone of love”. In O. C. Schultheiss & P. H. Mehta (Eds.) *International Handbook of Social Neuroendocrinology*. Routledge Psychology Press.
- Quintana, D. S., Rokicki, J., van der Meer, D., Alnaes, D., Kaufmann, T., Cordova-Palomera, A., Dieset, I., Andreassen, O. A., & Westlye, L. T. (2019). Oxytocin pathway gene networks in the human brain. *Nature Communications*, 10(1), 668.
- Rilling, J. K., Demarco, A.C., Hackett, P.D., Chen, X., Gautam, P., & Stair, S. (2014). Sex differences in the neural and behavioral response to intranasal oxytocin and vasopressin during human social interaction. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 39, 237–248.
- Ross, H. E., & Young, L. J. (2009). Oxytocin and the neural mechanisms regulating social cognition and affiliative behavior. *Frontiers in Neuroendocrinology*, 30(4), 534–547.
- Theodoridou, A., Rowe, A. C., Penton-Voak, I. S., & Rogers, P. J. (2009). Oxytocin and social perception: oxytocin increases perceived facial trustworthiness and attractiveness. *Hormones & Behaviour*, 56, 128–132.

P

P-30 Antigen

► [Prostate-Specific Antigen \(PSA\)](#)

Pain

Michael James Coons¹ and Jeremy Steglitz²

¹Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

²Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Clinical Psychology Division, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Pain management/control](#); [Pain, psychosocial aspects](#); [Pain threshold](#)

Definition

Pain is a noxious sensory phenomenon that provides information to organisms about the occurrence or threat of injury. Pain is also a multidimensional experience that results from a complex interaction between biological and psychological components and is further influenced by behavioral and social factors. The temporal

course of pain can range from acute, or time-limited states in response to injury, to chronic states in which pain persists beyond the point of tissue repair or healing. Although the Gate Control Theory (Melzack & Wall, 1967) provides a unified model of pain, a variety of pain subtypes exist that have different underlying mechanisms.

Description

Neurobiology of Pain

A primary function of the nervous system is to communicate information to alert organisms to the experience or threat of injury. Therefore, the noxious qualities of pain function to capture our attention and motivate action to minimize the risk of harm. Nociceptors are a specialized class of primary afferent nerves. Myelinated nociceptors signal sharp pain from heat and pressure stimuli on skin with hair. Unmyelinated nociceptors signal burning and pressure-induced pain on hairless skin. Both unmyelinated and myelinated nociceptors signal pain from chemical stimuli. Injury leads to increased pain sensitivity or hyperalgesia caused by inflammation.

CNS Mechanisms of Pain Modulation

At the level of the spinal cord, pain modulation occurs in the substantia gelatinosa (SG) of the dorsal horn. The SG serves an inhibitory or gating function that modulates pain signal transduction. Pain modulation also occurs in the periaqueductal

gray (PAG) and rostral ventromedial medulla (RVM) of the midbrain, which function as a bidirectional relay station. The system is involved in the suppression of ascending responses to harmful stimuli and enhances nociceptive responses. The PAG-RVM system has connections to the hypothalamus and limbic forebrain structures including the amygdala, anterior cingulate cortex, and anterior insula. Consequently, fear, attention, and pain expectancies exert top-down processes that influence pain perception.

Clinical Classifications of Pain

Postoperative Pain and its Management

Acute postoperative pain is a product of a range of physiological mechanisms. It comprises a constellation of sensory, emotional, and psychological experiences that follow surgery and is associated with autonomic, endocrine-metabolic, physiological, and behavioral responses. Considerable progress has been made to understand the functions of the peripheral and central nervous systems, mechanisms of acute postoperative pain, side effects of analgesic drugs, and techniques and interventions in surgical patients. However, improvements in the management of acute postoperative pain are needed. Specifically, the use of acute pain management services may help to ensure that evidence-based analgesic techniques are implemented. Furthermore, improved collaboration would be useful between interdisciplinary care teams including anesthesiologists, surgeons, nurses, and mental health professionals to optimize postoperative pain management.

Deep Somatic Tissue Pain Deep tissue pain encompasses pain from the joints and muscles. The pain is often diffuse and characterized by dull and aching sensations. Major sources of deep somatic tissue pain are inflammatory diseases, trauma, overload, and degenerative diseases. Under normal conditions, these nociceptors are activated by stimuli that can lead to structural damage including overload, twisting, pressure, and ischemic contraction. Under conditions of inflammation or trauma, nociceptors of

joint and muscle become increasingly sensitized, particularly to mechanical stimuli.

Two types of spinal cord neurons process nociceptive input from joint and muscle. These neurons show two distinct properties: (1) They converge inputs from the skin and deep tissue, and (2) they are activated by mechanical stimuli. Neurons in the thalamus and cortex process inputs from deep tissue.

Arthritis Osteoarthritis (OA) is a degenerative joint disease that results in pain localized to the joint cartilage and subchondral bone. It affects approximately 30% of adults 75 years and older. OA is classified by the location of the affected joints (e.g., hip or knee) and whether the pain is primary or secondary to other conditions or disease processes. OA pain may occur in response to mechanical stimuli but may be chemically mediated when joint tissues fail to adequately repair. Consequences of OA include loss of articular cartilage, new bone formation in the subchondral region, and formation of new cartilage and bone in the joints and are characterized by pain, stiffness, functional limitations, and impaired quality of life.

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) is an autoimmune disease that results in significant joint inflammation and pain. It affects nearly 1% of the adult population. RA involves both the small and large joints and is distributed symmetrically. RA may eventually progress to joint failure, which can result in secondary OA. Age, sex, family history, and tobacco use are significant risk factors for RA.

Treatment for arthritis is multidimensional. Components may include education about the disease process, weight loss to minimize joint stress, increased physical activity and/or physical therapy, analgesics, anti-inflammatory drugs, and local steroid or hyaluronic acid injections. Specific to RA, antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs) may be used to reduce inflammation and slow the disease progression. In severe or advanced cases, surgical intervention including joint replacement may be indicated.

Fibromyalgia Syndrome Fibromyalgia syndrome (FMS) is a persistent pain condition

involving the soft tissues. It affects approximately 2% in the general population and is significantly more prevalent among women than men. Although its etiology is unknown, significant advances have been made in understanding its clinical presentation. Pain is believed to result from central sensitization of somatosensory pathways that induce enhanced pain perception. This includes persistent, diffuse pain to touch at localized areas in soft tissues. Other systemic symptoms include recurrent headaches, dizziness, fatigue, morning stiffness, irritable bowel syndrome, irritable bladder syndrome, insomnia, cognitive dysfunction, depression, and anxiety.

Treatment for FMS is similar to that of other persistent pain conditions and includes education, physical activity and/or physical therapy, cognitive-behavioral therapy, and pharmacological interventions that act on central neural pathways.

Low Back Pain Low back pain (LBP) is defined as pain, muscle tension, or stiffness that is localized between the costal margin and inferior gluteal folds. It also presents with or without radiating leg pain. It can also be classified as specific, or in response to a known pathology (e.g., hernia, fracture), or nonspecific or idiopathic. Nonspecific LBP accounts for 90% of all cases. Physical exercises are currently the only empirically supported intervention to prevent LBP. Many randomized controlled trials and systematic reviews have been published that examine its treatment. Physical activity, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), and muscle relaxants are effective treatments for acute LBP. Physical therapy and CB therapy in the context of interdisciplinary pain treatment programs are recommended for persistent LBP.

Visceral Pain Visceral pain is diffuse. It results in referred pain (pain perceived in sites other than the site of injury or pain stimuli). Unlike somatic nociceptors, the activation of visceral nociceptors does not require tissue damage. Rather, it can be caused by the distension of hollow organs, traction on the mesentery, ischemia, and endogenous

chemicals associated with inflammatory processes.

Thorax Pain Angina pectoris is the most frequently occurring form of thorax pain. It is caused by myocardial ischemia but often produces chest pain that is distal to the ischemic event. Cardiac pain is mediated by interplay between autonomic reflexes and peripheral cardiac nerves. The thalamus and hypothalamus transmit cardiac pain to the prefrontal cortex. The occurrence of pain is slow and lacks spatial localization. The clinical presentation of myocardial ischemia can be different in men and women. Pharmacotherapy is the primary intervention for angina pectoris and acute myocardial infarction (MI) including beta-blockers, nitroglycerin, morphine, and anti-thrombotic agents. Percutaneous transluminal coronary intervention (PCI) and coronary artery bypass graft surgery (CAGB) are surgical interventions that improve coronary blood flow. Other forms of thorax pain include esophageal chest pain, aortic aneurysms, and pulmonary events including embolism.

Abdominal Pain Abdominal pain can be caused by chronic functional disorders or acute life-threatening conditions. Chronic disorders, such as irritable bowel syndrome, account for the majority of diagnoses that account for abdominal pain. Most chronic disorders result in enhanced pain perception in response to visceral stimuli, which results from central pain modulation mechanisms. In contrast, acute abdominal pain is caused by an identifiable stimulus or pathology (e.g., gastric ulcer). Although interventions for acute abdominal pain are highly effective, the development of efficacious treatments for chronic conditions is needed.

Orofacial Pain Orofacial pain is defined as pain experienced in the motor or sensory aspects of the trigeminal nerve system. Pain signals are transmitted to the nucleus caudalis in the medulla and project onward to the thalamus and cortex via the trigeminothalamic tract. Orofacial pain is exacerbated by central convergence, inflammation of the oral mucosa, and central sensitization to pain

(increased spontaneous firing of nerves). Prevention strategies include preoperative administration of NSAIDs to block inflammatory processes and local anesthetics to reduce central sensitization. However, due to common adverse events when using systemic opioids, their outpatient use is limited. The etiology of persistent (unremitting or recurrent) orofacial pain is poorly understood. Consequently, pain management is imprecise, and the majority of therapies are not validated.

Neuropathic Pain Neuropathic pain occurs in response to injury (lesion or dysfunction) of the nervous system. Numerous animal models have been proposed to account for the underlying mechanisms. One of the earliest models originated from the observation that animals attack a limb in which the axons of neurons have been severed following injury. This model suggests that a central sensitization process occurs, such that severed nerves exhibit greater spontaneous firing frequencies than healthy intact nerves. Individuals experiencing neuropathic pain describe their pain as “electric shocks, burning, tingling, itching, and prickling.” Examples of neuropathic pain conditions include neuropathies (e.g., peripheral, autonomic) and neuralgias (e.g., trigeminal). Pharmacological treatments may include topical analgesics, tricyclic antidepressants, anticonvulsants, and opioids.

Phantom Limb Pain This is a form of neuropathic pain and refers to perceived pain sensations in the anatomical space of a limb that has been amputated. Although the majority of individuals experience sensations related to the shape, posture, or movement of the missing limb, 60–80% of individuals experience intermittent or persistent pain. Although the specific mechanisms underlying phantom limb pain are not entirely understood, both the peripheral and central nervous systems are involved. Additional treatments may include sodium channel blockers, physical therapy, and transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation.

Cancer Pain The neurobiology of cancer pain is poorly understood. However, new models have

identified mechanisms that both produce and maintain cancer pain. Tumor cells and tumor-associated cells (macrophages, neutrophils, T-lymphocytes) are believed to sensitize primary afferent neurons in the periphery. Findings from these studies may lead to the development of novel therapies that act on these peripheral mechanisms and could improve the quality of life of individuals living with cancer.

Pain Assessment and Intervention Pain is a complex and subjective experience characterized by sensory-discriminative, motivational-affective, and cognitive-evaluative dimensions. Pain can be evaluated using a variety of tools including verbal and numerical self-report scales, visual analogue scales (VAS), self-report measures, behavioral observation, and physiological markers. A combination of these measures is recommended to yield the most valid information about this phenomenon.

Within clinical and research settings, the VAS, the McGill Pain Questionnaire (MPQ), and the Multidimensional Pain Inventory (MPI) are examples of commonly used instruments. Using a VAS, individuals are asked to rate their current pain intensity on a numeric scale that is anchored by 0 (no pain at all) and 10 (the most pain you could imagine experiencing). The McGill Pain Questionnaire was developed by Melzack and Wall (Melzack 1975). It evaluates the specific location(s), intensity, and qualities of pain that individuals currently experience. It contains four domains including sensory, affective, evaluative, and miscellaneous. It can either be clinician-administered or completed independently by patients in a self-report manner. The McGill Pain Questionnaire is a reliable and valid tool to assess the multidimensional nature of pain experience. For research applications where time is limited to obtain information, a short-form McGill Pain Questionnaire (SF-MPQ) is also available. The MPI is a comprehensive self-report instrument designed to evaluate a full range of experiences with persistent pain conditions. It includes dimensions of pain intensity, emotional distress, cognitive and functional adaptation, and social support. It has

also been shown to have solid psychometric properties.

Cognitive-Behavioral Approaches to Pain Management In the context of persistent pain conditions, cognitive-behavioral (CB) interventions focus on developing adaptive pain coping skills. These skills are intended to minimize the experience of pain, prevent or minimize pain exacerbations, and limit pain-related disability. A CB intervention addresses the subjective and contextual aspects of pain. First, patients receive education about theories of pain (e.g., Gate Control Theory) to foster an understanding of why pain persists beyond the point of tissue repair. Understanding this conceptual framework provides the foundation for deploying a series of related cognitive and behavioral interventions. Cognitive interventions may include cognitive restructuring to minimize pain catastrophizing, attention diversion and distraction techniques, and problem solving exercises. Behavioral interventions may include relaxation, paced diaphragmatic breathing, goal setting, behavioral activation, and graded exposure to feared physical activities. In the management of persistent pain, CB interventions are often most effective when implemented in the context of interdisciplinary care teams and can be used as an adjuvant to other physical, pharmacological, or surgical therapies.

Cross-References

- [Gate Control Theory of Pain](#)
- [Pain Anxiety](#)
- [Pain Management/Control](#)
- [Pain Threshold](#)
- [Pain, Psychosocial Aspects](#)
- [Pain-Related Fear](#)

References and Readings

- Bielefeldt, K., & Gebhart, G. F. (2006). Visceral pain: Basic mechanisms. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (pp. 721–736). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Dahl, J. B., & Kehlet, H. (2006). Postoperative pain and its management. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (5th ed., pp. 635–652). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Dionne, R. A., Kim, H., & Gordon, S. M. (2006). Acute and chronic dental and orofacial pain. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (5th ed., pp. 833–850). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Mantyh, P. W. (2006). Cancer pain: Causes, consequences, and therapeutic opportunities. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (5th ed., pp. 1087–1098). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Melzack, R. (1975). The McGill Pain Questionnaire: Major properties and scoring methods. *Pain*, 1, 275–299.
- Melzack, R., & Katz, J. (2006). Pain assessment in adult patients. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (5th ed., pp. 291–304). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Melzack, R., & Wall, P. D. (1967). Pain mechanisms: A new theory. *Science*, 150, 971–979.
- Meyer, R. A., Ringkamp, M., Campbell, J. N., & Raja, S. N. (2006). Peripheral mechanisms of cutaneous nociception. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (5th ed., pp. 3–34). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Nikolasjsen, L., & Stræhelin Jensen, T. (2006). Phantom limb. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (5th ed., pp. 961–972). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Ossipov, M. H., Lai, J., & Porreca, F. (2006). Mechanisms of experimental neuropathic pain: Integration from animal models. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (5th ed., pp. 929–946). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Russell, I. J., & Bieber, C. S. (2006). Myofascial pain and fibromyalgia syndrome. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (pp. 669–682). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Scadding, J. W., & Koltzenburg, M. (2006). Painful peripheral neuropathies. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (5th ed., pp. 973–1000). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Schaible, H. G. (2006). Basic mechanisms of deep somatic tissue. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (5th ed., pp. 621–635). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Scott, D. L. (2006). Osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (pp. 653–668). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Sylvén, C., & Erikson, E. (2006). Thorax. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (5th ed., pp. 737–752). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Turk, D. C. (2002). A cognitive-behavioral perspective on treatment of chronic pain patients. In R. J. Gatchel & D. C. Turk (Eds.), *Psychological approaches to pain*

- management: A practitioner's handbook* (pp. 138–158). New York: Guilford.
- van Tulder, M. W., & Koes, B. (2006). Low back pain. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (5th ed., pp. 699–708). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Wong, H. Y., & Mayer, E. A. (2006). A clinical perspective on abdominal pain. In S. B. McMahon & M. Koltzenburg (Eds.), *Wall and Melzack's textbook of pain* (5th ed., pp. 753–776). Philadelphia: Elsevier.

Pain Anxiety

Michael James Coons

Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Pain-related fear](#)

Definition

Pain anxiety is a future-oriented state of autonomic arousal that is triggered by the anticipation of pain. Similar to the tripartite model of anxiety, it is comprised of cognitive, physiological, and behavioral components. Pain anxiety is an affective manifestation of the autonomic nervous system that occurs in response to the anticipation of pain. Albeit to a lesser degree than that triggered by fear, the sympathetic nervous system becomes activated by the septo-hippocampal brain regions. Pain anxiety is characterized by cognitive, physiological, and behavioral symptoms. Cognitively, individuals become hypervigilant for pain-related cues by internally scanning their body (for internal signs and symptoms of pain) and the environment (for pain-inducing contexts or stimuli). They also anticipate experiencing pain in the future and may often expect their pain to be catastrophic (e.g., “Having to get my tooth fixed at the dentist will be excruciating”). In turn, individuals become motivated to

engage in avoidance behaviors to minimize the likelihood of experiencing future pain. According to fear-avoidance models of pain, behavioral avoidance (typically of situations involving physical activity or movement) leads to physical deconditioning and muscle atrophy, which in turn, may result in greater pain intensity. Pain anxiety and related avoidance behavior greatly contributes to the progression of acute to persistent pain.

The most common mode of assessment of pain anxiety involves the administration of well-validated self-report instruments. Several published scales are available that assess the nature and extent of pain-related cognitions (e.g., “When I hurt, I think about pain constantly”), pain-related avoidance (e.g., “I try to avoid activities that cause pain”), and physiological symptoms (e.g., “When I sense pain, I feel dizzy or faint”). Examples of self-report instruments include the Pain Anxiety Symptom Scale (PASS) and the Burn-Specific Pain Anxiety Scale. Alternative modes of assessing pain-related fear include semi-structured clinical interviews and the direct observation of patient behavior.

Cognitive behavior therapy (CBT) is the most well-validated intervention for pain anxiety. Treatment components include psychoeducation and introduction, demonstration, and practice of a variety of adaptive coping skills (i.e., progressive muscle relaxation, diaphragmatic breathing, mental imagery, behavioral activation and pleasant activity scheduling, activity-rest cycling, physical therapy/exercise, problem-solving, cognitive restructuring, and calming self-statements). In treating pain-related fear, special emphasis is placed on graded in vivo exposure with behavioral experiments. These latter components allow individuals to identify situations through which they can gather information to test and challenge their distorted pain-related cognitions.

Cross-References

- [Pain, Psychosocial Aspects](#)
- [Pain-Related Fear](#)

References and Readings

- Asmundson, G. J. G., Norton, P. J., & Vlaeyen, W. S. (2004). Fear-avoidance models of chronic pain: An overview. In G. J. G. Asmundson, J. W. S. Vlaeyen, & G. Crombez (Eds.), *Understanding and treating fear of pain* (pp. 3–24). New York: Oxford University Press.
- de Williams, A. C., & McCracken, L. M. (2004). Cognitive behavioral therapy for chronic pain: An overview with specific reference to fear avoidance. In G. J. G. Asmundson, J. W. S. Vlaeyen, & G. Crombez (Eds.), *Understanding and treating fear of pain* (pp. 293–312). New York: Oxford University Press.
- McNeil, D. W., & Vowles, K. E. (2004). Assessment of fear and anxiety associated with pain: Conceptualization, methods, and measures. In G. J. G. Asmundson, J. W. S. Vlaeyen, & G. Crombez (Eds.), *Understanding and treating fear of pain* (pp. 189–211). New York: Oxford University Press.

Pain Anxiety Symptoms Scale (PASS) and Short Version PASS-20

Lance M. McCracken

Psychology Department, Institute of Psychiatry,
King's College London, London, UK

Definition

Short self-report questionnaires designed to measure aspects of pain-related anxiety and avoidance for use in clinical assessment and research.

Description

The 40-item Pain Anxiety Symptoms Scale (PASS) (McCracken et al. 1992) and a shorter 20-item version of the same assessment instrument (PASS-20) (McCracken and Dhingra 2002) measure pain-related anxiety, fear, and avoidance. They were designed for clinical and research purposes and mostly for use with adults with recurrent or chronic pain conditions. However, they have been validated and used in people without

identified pain conditions, such as university students and people recruited from community settings (Abrams et al. 2007). The original PASS was developed at a time during the late 1980s and early 1990s when clinicians and researchers were beginning to focus greater attention on processes of fear and avoidance in relation to chronic pain. Since that time a model of chronic pain referred to as the “fear-avoidance” model has become a popular organizing framework guiding research and treatment development (Vlaeyen and Linton 2000). The PASS and PASS-20 have been used in research investigating models and mechanisms of pain-related disability, and in treatment process and outcome research (McCracken and Gross 1998; Vowles and McCracken 2008). They are also routinely used in clinical practice for analyzing and conceptualizing cases and in treatment-related decision making.

Both versions of the PASS include four subscales that reflect aspects of avoidance behavior (e.g., I will stop any activity as soon as I sense pain coming on), cognitive anxiety (e.g., During painful episodes it is difficult for me to think of anything else besides the pain), fear (e.g., When I feel pain I am afraid that something terrible will happen), and physiological anxiety (e.g., I find it hard to calm my body down after periods of pain). The four subscales are equal length in each version of the measure. All items are rated on a scale from 0 (never) to 5 (always). In the 40-item version five items are reverse-keyed and must be recoded before calculating summary scores. Summary scores for both versions are calculated by summing assigned items and then by summing the subscales to derive an overall score. There are no set cutoffs for interpreting scores from the instruments. One method to facilitate interpretation is to convert raw scores to standard scores or percentile ranks. As an example, a table of raw scores and percentile rank equivalents has been constructed from a large consecutive sample of patients seen at a tertiary care center in the UK (N = 339). From this raw scores of 15.0, 33.0, 60.0, and 78.0 from the PASS-20 correspond to the 5th, 25th, 75th, and 95th percentile, respectively.

The PASS and PASS-20 have been extensively validated. They both show very good internal consistency and temporal consistency (McCracken and Dhingra 2002; Roelofs et al. 2004) and a factor structure that generally matches the a priori subscale structure (Abrams et al. 2007; Larsen et al. 1997; Roelofs et al. 2004). Both versions of the instrument demonstrate adequate construct validity in relation to variables such as general anxiety and depression (e.g., Roelofs et al. 2004) and show mostly moderate to large correlations with important criterion variables, such as measures of physical and psychosocial disability (e.g., McCracken and Dhingra 2002). The original PASS (McCracken and Gross 1998) and the 20-item version (Vowles and McCracken 2008) both appear sensitive to the effects of multidisciplinary treatment for chronic pain.

For most uses currently the PASS-20 is preferred as it appears equivalent to the longer version in most important respects. The PASS-20 has been translated into Chinese, Dutch, French, Icelandic, Iranian, Polish, and Spanish, among other languages.

The fear-avoidance model of chronic pain has been a very useful model for understanding pain-related disability and for guiding the current generation of treatment developments for chronic pain. At the same time there are other theoretical and treatment developments that appear wider in scope and possibly more progressive than the fear-avoidance model. These developments include contextual approaches within cognitive behavior therapy, approaches such as Acceptance and Commitment Therapy (ACT) (Hayes et al. 1999) and mindfulness-based approaches. In this work measures such as the PASS-20 remain useful. Other variables that are known to have strong relations with pain-related fear and avoidance are also now frequently studied, such as acceptance of pain and values-based action, among others, and a wider process called psychological flexibility (e.g., Vowles and McCracken 2008). The point is that the PASS-20 and its focus on fear and avoidance remains relevant and the field is also evolving so that these processes are being examined in a broader

and well-integrated cognitive behavioral framework. These theoretical and treatment developments may be important to those who are hoping to assess pain-related fear and avoidance and may be seeking to use an instrument such as the PASS-20.

Cross-References

- [Chronic Pain](#)
- [Cognitive Behavior Therapy](#)

References and Readings

- Abrams, M. P., Carleton, R. N., & Asmundson, G. J. G. (2007). An exploration of the psychometric properties of the PASS-20 with a nonclinical sample. *The Journal of Pain*, 8, 879–886.
- Hayes, S. C., Strosahl, K. D., & Wilson, K. G. (1999). *Acceptance and commitment therapy: An experiential approach to behavior change*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Larsen, D. K., Taylor, S., & Asmundson, G. J. G. (1997). Exploratory factor analysis of the Pain Anxiety Symptoms Scale in patients with chronic pain complaints. *Pain*, 69, 27–34.
- McCracken, L. M., & Dhingra, L. (2002). A short version of the Pain Anxiety Symptom Scale (PASS-20): Preliminary development and validity. *Pain Research & Management*, 7, 45–50.
- McCracken, L. M., & Gross, R. T. (1998). The role of pain-related anxiety reduction in the outcome of multidisciplinary treatment for chronic low back pain: Preliminary results. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 8, 179–189.
- McCracken, L. M., Zayfert, C., & Gross, R. T. (1992). The Pain Anxiety Symptoms Scale: Development and validation of a scale to measure fear of pain. *Pain*, 50, 67–73.
- Roelofs, J., McCracken, L., Peters, M. L., Crombez, G., van Breukelen, G., & Vlaeyen, J. W. S. (2004). Psychometric evaluation of the Pain Anxiety Symptoms Scale (PASS) in chronic pain patients. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 27, 167–183.
- Vlaeyen, J. W. S., & Linton, S. J. (2000). Fear-avoidance and its consequences in chronic musculoskeletal pain: A state of the art. *Pain*, 85, 317–332.
- Vowles, K. E., & McCracken, L. M. (2008). Acceptance and values-based action in chronic pain: A study of treatment effectiveness and process. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 76, 397–407.

Pain Management/Control

Michael James Coons

Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg
School of Medicine, Northwestern University,
Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

Pain, psychosocial aspects

Definition

Pain is a multidimensional phenomenon. Pain management refers to the physiological (i.e., pharmacological, surgical), psychological, and behavioral interventions that are aimed at minimizing pain perception and alleviating pain-related interference and disability.

Description

Historically, pain was conceptualized using a disease model and was considered to be a purely sensory experience resulting from injury, inflammation, or tissue damage. However, limitations to this model became evident after observing diverse responses to pain across individuals despite objectively similar physical stimuli or trauma. In 1965, Melzack and Wall published a seminal paper in *Science* that outlined a revolutionary theory of pain (Melzack and Wall 1965).

Gate Control Theory

The Gate Control Theory emphasized central neural mechanisms at the level of the spinal cord that modulate afferent signals from peripheral nerves en route to the brain. This sensory modulation and subsequent pain perception is influenced by sensory input, cognitive processing, affective states, neural inhibitory capacities, activities of the stress-regulation system, and subsequent behavioral responses. Therefore,

interventions targeting these multiple mechanisms provide opportunity to achieve effective pain management.

Pharmacological and Surgical Interventions

Pharmacological interventions are often the first-line treatments for pain. Systemic analgesics are the focus of both acute and persistent pain management and include nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), including acetaminophen (ASA), and opioid analgesics (pure or in combination with NSAIDs). Combination opioid analgesics are typically administered orally; however, other routes of administration include rectal and sublingual. Pure opioids can be administered through the skin (with a transdermal patch), subcutaneously, or intravenously. These latter routes of administration are typically used when adequate pain relief is not achieved with the use of NSAIDs or combination opioids. In cases of neuropathic pain (i.e., pain due to dysfunction of the nervous system, in the absence of tissue damage), anti-epileptic medications are often used (e.g., pregabalin). In light of their misuse and abuse potential of opioids, individuals with persistent pain should be evaluated to determine if chronic opioid management is clinically appropriate. Individuals with a history of medical non-adherence or individuals with severe axis I or axis II pathology may require close monitoring if opioid medications are prescribed.

Surgical procedures for pain management range in their degree of invasiveness. Minimally invasive procedures include steroidal injections and nerve blocks (of the peripheral and sympathetic nerves). Maximally invasive procedures include radiofrequency ablations (for the local destruction of nervous tissue), spinal cord stimulator implantation (for the neuromodulation of afferent pain signals), and intrathecal pump implantations (for the direct administration of opioids and other analgesics into the cerebral spinal fluid when pain relief using other modalities has been unsuccessful). Particularly with these more invasive surgical interventions, individuals must adhere to medical recommendations to avoid potentially life-threatening adverse medical events. Consequently, candidates for these

procedures also require careful evaluation and selection by qualified professionals to ensure patient safety.

Cognitive Behavioral Interventions

Cognitive behavioral interventions focus on developing adaptive pain coping skills to minimize the experience of pain, prevent long-term exacerbations in pain, and minimize pain-related disability. For individuals with persistent pain (either intermittent-recurrent pain or unremitting pain), they often become anxious and fearful of the pain experience and avoid engaging in physical activity to minimize the experience of pain. However, over time, this behavioral avoidance contributes to the loss of physical strength, physical deconditioning, and muscular atrophy (i.e., loss of muscle mass) that exacerbates pain perception. In essence, the avoidance of physical activity *because* of pain results in pain intensification. This behavioral avoidance reinforces the fear of pain, resulting in greater anxiety and propensity to avoid physical activity. Furthermore, avoidance of pain often leads to avoidance of activities through which individual's derive meaning and value (e.g., participation in one's profession, spending time with family/friends). Over time, avoidance may contribute to a sense of isolation, undermine one's confidence in their ability to manage their pain, and increase the focus of their attention to the perception of pain. This process contributes the development or exacerbation of depression, the intensification of pain, and pain-related interference and disability.

Components of cognitive behavioral interventions for persistent pain include psychoeducation and introduction, demonstration, and practice of a variety of adaptive coping skills (i.e., progressive muscle relaxation, diaphragmatic breathing, mental imagery, behavioral activation and pleasant activity scheduling, activity-rest cycling, physical therapy/exercise, problem-solving, cognitive restructuring, and calming self-statements). Within a CBT protocol, the relaxation procedures reduce sympathetic arousal to both "close the gate" to minimize the transmission of afferent pain signals to the brain and reduce muscle tension associated with pain. The attention procedures (i.e., mental

imagery, pleasant activity scheduling) function to distract individuals from their pain experience and facilitate positive experiences and positive affect. The behavioral interventions (i.e., activity-rest cycling, behavioral activation, physical therapy/exercise) are intended to help individuals learn how to engage in activities despite experiencing pain and to both minimize pain-related interference and maintain their physical conditioning. While initial behavioral engagement often results in pain exacerbations, and over time, it is associated with reductions in pain intensity. In cases where individuals experience high degrees of pain-related fear and anxiety, graded exposure in vivo to physical movement may be required to minimize their affective response. Cognitive interventions (i.e., cognitive restructuring, calming self-statements, problem-solving) are intended to address pain catastrophizing (e.g., "This pain is so horrible I *cannot* do anything"), maladaptive pain beliefs (e.g., "Walking *should not* be painful"), and enable adaptive problem-solving skills. These cognitive behavioral interventions can be effectively delivered in individual or group formats, can be modified for family or system-based interventions, and can be augmented with the use of biofeedback equipment (e.g., superficial electromyography and monitoring of heart rate, respiration rate, peripheral temperature, and skin conductance). These applications are intended to provide individuals with physiological data that is used to help modulate sympathetic nervous system arousal using the coping skills outlined above.

Pain is a complex and multidimensional experience. In cases of persistent pain, individuals may benefit from clinical management by interdisciplinary teams. Although in some cases complete pain relief is not feasible, a combination of the approaches described above can minimize pain-related interference, disability, and the impact and potential for comorbid psychiatric conditions to maximize the quality of life experienced by individuals.

Cross-References

- [Pain](#)
- [Pain Anxiety](#)

- [Pain, Psychosocial Aspects](#)
- [Pain-Related Fear](#)

References and Readings

- Asmundson, G. J. G., Norton, P. J., & Norton, G. R. (1999). Beyond pain: The role of fear and avoidance in chronicity. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 19, 97–119.
- Asmundson, G. J. G., Norton, P. J., & Vlaeyen, J. W. S. (2004). Fear-avoidance models of chronic pain: An overview. In G. J. G. Asmundson, J. W. S. Vlaeyen, & G. Crobez (Eds.), *Understanding and treating fear of pain* (pp. 3–24). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Bajwa, Z. H., & Ho, C. (2004). Antiepileptics for pain. In C. A. Warfield & Z. H. Bajwa (Eds.), *Principles and practice of pain medicine* (2nd ed., pp. 649–654). New York: McGraw Hill.
- Day, M., & Anderson, S. (2004). Cryoanalgesia and radio-frequency. In C. A. Warfield & Z. H. Bajwa (Eds.), *Principles and practice of pain medicine* (2nd ed., pp. 751–764). New York: McGraw Hill.
- DeSio, J. M. (2004). Epidural steroid injections. In C. A. Warfield & Z. H. Bajwa (Eds.), *Principles and practice of pain medicine* (2nd ed., pp. 655–661). New York: McGraw Hill.
- Du Pen, S. L., & Du Pen, A. (2004). Neuraxial drug delivery. In C. A. Warfield & Z. H. Bajwa (Eds.), *Principles and practice of pain medicine* (2nd ed., pp. 720–739). New York: McGraw Hill.
- Keefe, F. J., Beaupre, P. M., & Gil, K. M. (2002). Group therapy for patients with chronic pain. In R. J. Gatchel & D. C. Turk (Eds.), *Psychological approaches to pain management: A practitioner's handbook* (pp. 234–255). New York: Guilford.
- Lamer, L. J. (2004). Intra-articular injections and facet blocks. In C. A. Warfield & Z. H. Bajwa (Eds.), *Principles and practice of pain medicine* (2nd ed., pp. 667–683). New York: McGraw Hill.
- Lehmann, L. J. (2004). Peripheral nerve blocks. In C. A. Warfield & Z. H. Bajwa (Eds.), *Principles and practice of pain medicine* (2nd ed., pp. 684–695). New York: McGraw Hill.
- Lipman, A. G., & Jackson, K. C. (2004). Opioid pharmacotherapy. In C. A. Warfield & Z. H. Bajwa (Eds.), *Principles and practice of pain medicine* (2nd ed., pp. 583–600). New York: McGraw Hill.
- Melzack, R. (1999). From the gate to the neuromatrix. *Pain*, 82(Suppl 6), S121–S126.
- Melzack, R., & Wall, P. D. (1965). Pain mechanisms: A new theory. *Science*, 150, 971–979.
- Simon, L. S. (2004). Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. In C. A. Warfield & Z. H. Bajwa (Eds.), *Principles and practice of pain medicine* (2nd ed., pp. 616–626). New York: McGraw Hill.
- Turk, D. C. (2002). A cognitive-behavioral perspective on treatment of chronic pain patients. In R. J. Gatchel & D. C. Turk (Eds.), *Psychological approaches to pain*

management: A practitioner's handbook (pp. 138–158). New York: Guilford.

Turk, D. C., Meichenbaum, D., & Genest, M. (1983). *Pain and behavioral medicine: A cognitive-behavioral perspective*. New York: Guilford.

Vlaeyen, J. W. S., de Jong, J., Sieben, J., & Crombez, G. (2002). Graded exposure in vivo for pain-related fear. In R. J. Gatchel & D. C. Turk (Eds.), *Psychological approaches to pain management: A practitioner's handbook* (pp. 210–233). New York: Guilford.

Pain Perception

- [Gate Control Theory of Pain](#)

Pain Recovery Inventory of Concerns and Expectations (PRICE) Questionnaire

William S. Shaw and Glenn Pransky
Center for Disability Research, Liberty Mutual
Research Institute for Safety, Hopkinton,
MA, USA
University of Massachusetts Medical School,
Worcester, MA, USA

Definition

The Pain Recovery Inventory of Concerns and Expectations (PRICE) is a 46-item self-report questionnaire that was developed to identify individuals with acute low back pain (LBP) who are at greatest risk of transitioning to chronic back pain and disability and to match them to one of three early intervention strategies (Shaw et al. 2013). The items were selected from existing research measures and chosen based on their ability to discriminate patient subgroups and to predict 3-month outcomes of pain, function, and return to work (Shaw et al. 2007). The questionnaire includes items relating to pain and pain beliefs, function, psychological well-being, recovery expectations, and workplace support. The PRICE was designed for working adults with

acute LBP and for administration within the first 2 weeks of pain onset. For each item, respondents are asked to indicate their level of agreement, their level of difficulty, or the frequency of their feelings and behaviors.

Description

Acute LBP is a common presenting complaint in primary care and other medical settings, and this painful condition often remits over time with little or no treatment. Approximately half of patients report a full recovery within 30 days. However, a significant number of acute cases transition to chronic pain and disability. One third of patients report lingering pain, functional impairment, or difficulties at work after 3 months, and 5–10% of patients will go on to experience long-term disability and work absence. Workplace and psychosocial variables have been shown to be important prognostic factors in LBP research (Shaw et al. 2006), and most clinical treatment guidelines for acute LBP have accordingly emphasized the need to take these issues into account when making early treatment decisions. However, few assessment tools are available to screen patients for elevated risk of disability and assign matching strategies for early intervention.

The PRICE measure was developed for both research and clinical applications. In clinical applications, the PRICE can be used to screen patients with acute LBP for risk of long-term disability and then match and prioritize early intervention strategies according to PRICE group designations: (a) cluster A, low risk (for whom only usual advice and reassurance is needed); (b) cluster B, *psychological distress* is the predominant risk factor for LBP disability; (c) cluster C, *workplace concerns* are the predominant risk factors for LBP disability; and (d) cluster D, *activity limitation* is the predominant risk factor for LBP disability.

The PRICE measure assesses eight core psychosocial constructs that are predictors of LBP

recovery: (a) pain intensity rating, (b) pain catastrophizing, (c) pain recovery expectations, (d) perceived life impact of pain to family and career, (e) ratings of restricted physical function, (f) fears that activity will increase pain or result in a more serious injury, (g) perceptions of workplace organizational support, and (h) depressive mood symptoms. The 46 questions included in the final PRICE measure were selected from a larger pool of 159 items comprised of eight existing scale measures (Reme et al. 2012). For each of the eight scales, a sensitivity analysis was conducted to determine how many items could be excluded while still retaining 90% of the scale's association with 3-month outcomes of function and return to work.

PRICE total scores and group designations are associated with 3-month outcomes of pain duration, functional improvement, and return to work. The eight existing scale measures that provided the initial pool of items for the PRICE have already undergone considerable testing with evidence of good reliability and validity. Total scores and group designations generated by the PRICE are reasonably stable from the first to second week of acute LBP. Proportions of cluster membership do not vary by gender.

A total PRICE score is based on the equally weighted average of seven subscale scores. Group classifications are based on the similarity of an individual scoring profile to four research prototypes: a low-risk group (40%), a high-risk group with elevated psychological distress (20%), a moderate-risk group with elevated workplace concerns (20%), and a moderate-risk group with elevated physical activity concerns (20%). A data dictionary and scoring algorithm for the PRICE can be obtained at no charge from the authors.

The PRICE was derived from a US cohort of 496 workers who were referred to occupational health clinics by their employers for evaluation of work-related acute low back pain and assessed within 14 days from pain onset. Patients in this clinical care setting may vary from those in primary care and other medical care settings. The

PRICE was designed as an early screening measure for acute low back pain (LBP); thus, the measure has not been validated for use with other patient populations. Also, inclusion of workplace support in the formulation of the PRICE may limit its applicability for those who are not in a traditional employment arrangement. The PRICE was intended to augment, not replace, standard medical intake and evaluation procedures including assessment of medical “red flags” that might signal the need for other diagnostic evaluations and specialty care.

The PRICE was constructed from existing scales and measures, some of which represent previously copyrighted materials. However, the authors of those measures have given their express permission to allow these items to be freely circulated as part of the PRICE measure as long as no fee is charged. There is no fee for photocopying or administering the PRICE measure, but the authors request notification of its use in research and clinical practice to aid in tracking and further evaluation of the measure.

References and Further Readings

- Reme, S. E., Shaw, W. S., Steenstra, I. A., Woiszwilllo, M. J., Pransky, G., & Linton, S. J. (2012). Distressed, immobilized, or lacking employer support? A -sub-classification of acute work-related low back pain. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 22, 541–552.
- Shaw, W. S., Linton, S. J., & Pransky, G. (2006). Reducing sickness absence from work due to low back pain: How well do intervention strategies match modifiable risk factors? *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 16, 591–605.
- Shaw, W. S., Pransky, G., Patterson, W., Linton, S. J., & Winters, T. (2007). Patient clusters in acute, work-related back pain based on patterns of disability risk factors. *Journal of Occupational & Environmental Medicine*, 49, 185–193.
- Shaw, W. S., Reme, S. E., Pransky, G., Woiszwilllo, M. J., Steenstra, I. A., & Linton, S. J. (2013). The pain recovery inventory of concerns and expectations: A psychosocial screening instrument to identify intervention needs among patients at elevated risk of back disability. *Journal of Occupational & Environmental Medicine*, 55(8), 885–894.

Pain Self-Management at Work

William S. Shaw and Glenn Pransky

Center for Disability Research, Liberty Mutual Research Institute for Safety, Hopkinton, MA, USA

University of Massachusetts Medical School, Worcester, MA, USA

Definition

Pain self-management at work is the ability of individuals to master issues of communication, job modification, pacing, and problem-solving to overcome health challenges at work. For workers with chronic pain problems, this approach can improve workplace function, coping, job satisfaction, social relations at work, and organizational support.

Description

One significant trend in the workforce is the advancing median age of workers and the growing prevalence of chronic medical conditions that can contribute to workplace pain, fatigue, task limitations, and reduced productivity. Approximately 40% of working adults report persistent or recurrent musculoskeletal pain conditions or other chronic health conditions that limit their ability to work (Burton et al. 2004). Because of aging trends in the workforce, the prevalence of chronic medical conditions, especially musculoskeletal conditions, will increase in coming years, and this may lead to productivity losses for employers (van Leeuwen et al. 2006). The inability of workers to successfully manage chronic pain and fatigue in the workplace may not only reduce workforce productivity but also increase business costs through higher turnover rates, absenteeism, retraining, and healthcare expense. This also represents a serious quality-of-life issue for workers who are struggling to maintain

employment and risking disability. Being able to continue to function at work has been shown to be a primary concern for aging workers with chronic health conditions (Peterson and Murphy 2010).

Despite having functional limitations, the majority of working-age adults with chronic musculoskeletal conditions are gainfully employed and continue full-time work without the need for formal job accommodations or physician-ordered restrictions. Qualitative research with workers suggests that the ability to continue working is possible by leveraging available job leeway and flexibility, by careful planning and decision-making with regard to work, by obtaining job assistance and social support in and out of work, and by communicating needs effectively and judiciously with peers and supervisors (Tveito et al. 2010). Past research has highlighted the importance of both organizational support and individual coping and problem-solving strategies to overcome health-related challenges at work, but there are only recent efforts to develop and test psychoeducational programs intended to improve coping and self-management strategies at work. What has not been studied is whether specific employer-supported organizational or educational interventions might help workers to improve coping and overcome health-related workplace challenges. More research is needed to assess pain and illness self-management interventions in the workplace.

One ongoing research trial is the “Manage at Work” study, a randomized trial of a five-session group intervention program targeting workers ($n = 240$) with chronic health concerns (Clinicaltrials.gov: NCT01978392). The Manage at Work study applies psychoeducational techniques borrowed from principles of cognitive behavioral therapy to enhance coping skills and provide individualized plans for problem-solving and dealing with temporary setbacks. The self-management approach to recurrent or persistent medical problems involves redefining health symptoms and functional challenges as subject to personal control and mastery and through the encouragement of an active, problem-solving perspective. Identification and modification of negative cognitions related to the health complaint is

also emphasized. SM interventions have been shown to consistently reduce the experience of pain, fatigue, functional limitations, and distress in clinical trials, but these programs have included no attention to workplace problems (Shaw et al. 2012). The primary outcomes being assessed in the study are work limitations and work engagement measured at baseline, 6 months, and 12 months follow-up. Secondary outcomes include turnover intention, sickness absence, job satisfaction, and healthcare utilization. Process variables and covariates include assessment of self-efficacy, work-related fatigue, emotional distress, work characteristics, general health status, and basic demographic variables. A parallel process evaluation is also being conducted to address issues of feasibility, recruitment, reach, and uptake. The study will be an important first step toward employer-sponsored programs involving psychological coping of workers with chronic health conditions that can impair workplace function.

References and Further Readings

- Burton, W. N., Pransky, G., Conti, D. J., Chen, C. Y., & Edington, D. W. (2004). The association of medical conditions and presenteeism. *Journal of Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 46(6 Suppl), S38–S45.
- Peterson, C. L., & Murphy, G. (2010). Transition from the labor market: Older workers and retirement. *International Journal of Health Services*, 40(4), 609–627.
- Shaw, W. S., Tveito, T. H., Geehern-Lavoie, M., Huang, Y. H., Nicholas, M. K., Reme, S. E., Wagner, G., & Pransky, G. (2012). Adapting principles of chronic pain self-management to the workplace. *Disability and Rehabilitation*, 32(24), 2035–2045.
- Tveito, T. H., Shaw, W. S., Huang, Y. H., Nicholas, M., & Wagner, G. (2010). Managing pain in the workplace: A focus group study of challenges, strategies and what matters most to workers with low back pain. *Disability and Rehabilitation*, 32(24), 2035–2045.
- van Leeuwen, M. T., Blyth, F. M., March, L. M., Nicholas, M. K., & Cousins, M. J. (2006). Chronic pain and reduced work effectiveness: The hidden cost to Australian employers. *European Journal of Pain*, 10(2), 161–166.

Pain Sensitivity

- Gate Control Theory of Pain

Pain Threshold

Michael James Coons¹ and Jeremy Steglitz²

¹Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

²Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Clinical Psychology Division, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Definition

Pain threshold is defined as the minimum intensity of a stimulus that is perceived to be painful. Previously, this threshold was believed to be uniform across individuals, such that given intensity of a stimulus was thought to produce a given pain response. However, it is now understood that the experience of pain is a subjective phenomenon, which is influenced by a complex interaction of biopsychosocial factors.

Historically, Specificity Theory and Pattern Theory posit that pain results from the direct transmission of peripheral stimuli to the brain, and stimulus response occurs in a reproducible relationship. However, limitations to these theories became evident after observing divergent responses to pain across individuals despite objectively similar physical stimuli or trauma. Consequently, Melzack and Wall proposed the Gate Control Theory of pain, which revolutionized our understanding of this phenomenon.

According to this theory, peripheral small diameter nerve fibers (i.e., pain receptors) and peripheral large diameter nerve fibers (i.e., normal receptors) project to the substantia gelatinosa (SG) in the dorsal horn of the spinal cord. The SG serves an inhibitory or gating function that modulates signal transduction. The SG also projects afferent fibers to the first transmission (T) cells. Activation of the T cells “activates the neural system” via the spinothalamic tract to facilitate pain perception.

In part, pain perception is determined by this bottom-up process. In the absence of sensory input, inhibitory neurons in the SG prevent

projection neurons from transducing signals to the brain (i.e., maintaining a closed gate). When there is a preponderance of stimulation of pain receptors, the inhibitory neurons in the SG becomes inactivated (opening the gate), permitting the afferent projection neurons to transduce pain signals to the T cells and to the brain. However, pain perception is also influenced by top-down processes that include cognitive processes (e.g., attention), neural inhibitory capacities, affective states, and activities of the stress-regulation system. These processes transduce efferent signals to the dorsal horn in the spinal cord that further modulate the spinal gate and subsequent pain perception. Pain threshold is determined by variation in spinal gate modulation from both bottom-up and top-down processes that facilitate pain perception.

Cross-References

- [Pain](#)
- [Pain Management/Control](#)
- [Pain, Psychosocial Aspects](#)

References and Readings

- Melzack, R. (1999). From the gate to the neuromatrix. *Pain*, 82(Suppl. 6), S121–S126.
- Melzack, R., & Wall, P. D. (1965). Pain mechanisms: A new theory. *Science*, 150, 971–979.
- McMahon, S. B., & Koltzenburg, M. (Eds.). (2006). *Melzack & Wall's textbook of pain*. London: Elsevier.

Pain, Psychosocial Aspects

Michael James Coons

Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Pain anxiety](#); [Pain management/control](#); [Pain-related fear](#)

Definition

Researchers and clinicians have begun to map the trajectory of pain from acute to persistent states. These outcomes are influenced by a complex interaction of biological, psychological, behavioral, and social components, which can be clustered into intrapersonal factors (factors affecting the level of the individual) and interpersonal factors (factors affecting the interaction between the individual and their environment). These factors influence both pain perception and responses to treatment.

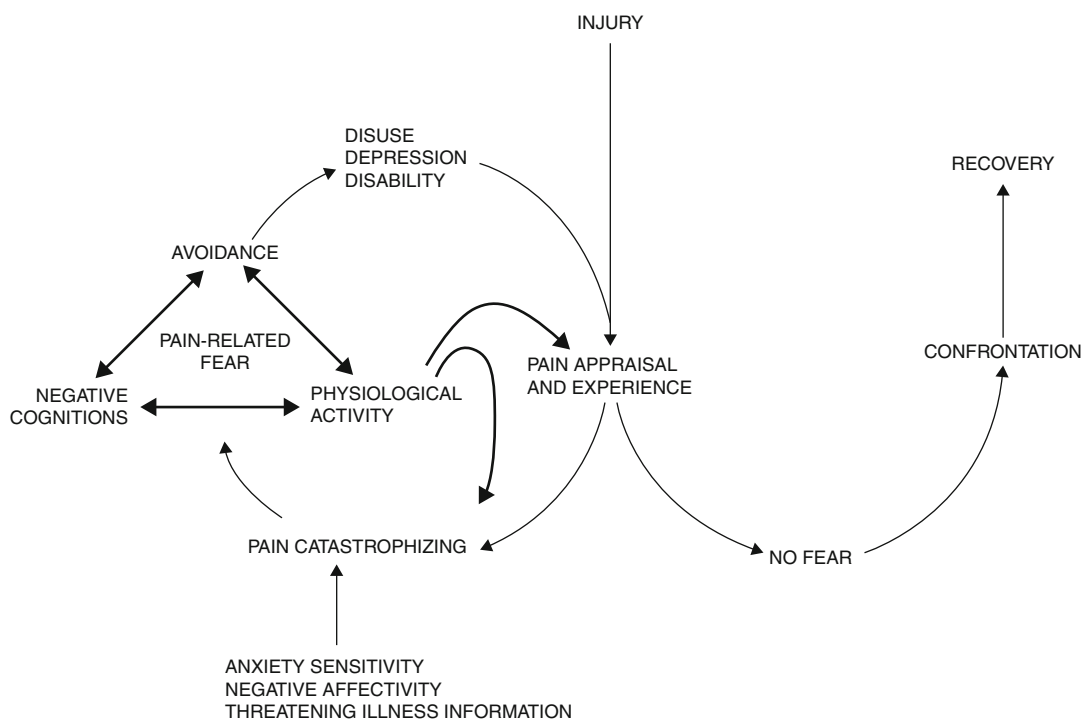
Description

Pain is a universal phenomenon experienced by most individuals. However, pain sometimes persists beyond a reasonable time during which tissue typically heals following injury. Several researchers have developed and articulated

conceptual models to understand how and why for some individuals pain transitions from acute to persistent states.

Fear-Avoidance Models of Pain

Fear-Avoidance Models posit that following the onset of pain (from injury or disease process), individuals appraise and evaluate their experience (see Fig. 1 Norton and Asmundson 2003). For those who perceive their pain in a realistic manner, they do not experience excessive fear of pain, are able to engage in activities following a reasonable healing period, and subsequently recover from their experience. However, for others, a more complicated course of recovery ensues triggering a variety of cognitive, physiological, and behavioral symptoms. For those that progress to develop persistent pain (either recurrent intermittent pain or unremitting pain), they interpret their pain to be catastrophic in nature (e.g., “This pain is so excruciating I cannot function”). This overinterpretation triggers a state of autonomic arousal and pain-



Pain, Psychosocial Aspects, Fig. 1 Amended fear-avoidance model of chronic pain (Copyright (2011) by the Association for Behavioral and Cognitive Therapies. Reprinted by permission of the publisher)

related fear. This fear is accompanied by a variety of somatic symptoms and negative cognitions about pain that motivates a variety of escape-avoidance behaviors (e.g., prolonged periods of rest, avoidance of physical activity). Over time, the anticipation of experiencing pain in the future motivates continued avoidance of activity, which in turn, leads to loss of physical strength, physical deconditioning, and muscle atrophy. These consequences result in increases in pain intensity, which continues to fuel this fear-avoidance cycle. Several individual difference variables have been identified that seem to place individuals at risk for developing persistent pain and include negative affectivity (i.e., trait experiences of negative emotions) and anxiety sensitivity (i.e., the propensity to experience fear of somatic sensations). Individuals that experience higher levels of these traits have been shown to be at greater risk for developing persistent pain conditions.

Intrapersonal Factors in Persistent Pain

Regardless of the nature of the pain experience (i.e., headache pain; orofacial pain), psychosocial factors have been shown to moderate pain intensity and progression. Specifically, depression, anxiety disorders (e.g., post-traumatic stress disorder, panic disorder, generalized anxiety disorder), substance use disorders, and somatoform pain disorders commonly co-occur with persistent pain conditions and are significantly higher than rates found in the general population. Furthermore, personality disorders also appear to occur more frequently among patients with persistent pain than among the general population; however, precise estimates in the general population are not available. These psychiatric phenomenon may share similar underlying processes to pain (that may account for their co-occurrence), are associated with more negative perceptions of pain, and influence individual's behavioral responses (e.g., are associated with greater pain-related avoidance). It has also been shown that heightened emotional reactivity, particularly when coupled with concurrent psychosocial stressors, further exacerbates negative perceptions of pain and predisposes individuals to pain-related disability. Furthermore, active coping skills (e.g., continuing

to engage in activities, distraction from pain) are associated with lower pain intensity and minimize the risk of pain persistence. In contrast, passive coping skills (e.g., pain-related avoidance behavior, reliance on others) are associated with higher pain intensity and increase the risk of pain persistence.

Interpersonal Factors in Persistent Pain

Beyond the individual, several interpersonal factors are associated with pain severity, persistence, and pain-related disability. Within the context of intimate relationships, displays of pain-related behavior solicit responses from others that become reinforced over time and may perpetuate negative outcomes. For instance, an individual with persistent low back pain may display grimacing and guarding behaviors in response to pain experienced while attempting to dress them self. However, their partner may respond by providing physical assistance to help this individual put on their clothes. Although this physical assistance helps to minimize the pain experienced, and facilitates the timely completion of this task, it reinforces the need for assistance contributing to more significant pain-related disability. Over time, such pain-related behaviors become negatively reinforced (since the assistance provided minimizes the experience of pain), which increases the likelihood of similar future behavioral responses. Furthermore, the need for assistance may undermine an individual's self-efficacy (i.e., their confidence in their ability to manage pain) and contribute to greater pain intensity, more frequent pain-related behavior, physical inactivity, and pain-related disability.

Psychosocial Factors and Treatment Response

Following the progression from acute to persistent pain, psychosocial factors have also been shown to influence responses to a variety of treatments. Across different categorical subtypes (i.e., low back pain; headache pain), the presence of axis I pathology (e.g., depression, anxiety, somatization) is associated with lower response to treatment (i.e., greater frequency and intensity of pain reports, greater perceived functional impairment), and may interfere with individual's ability to

engage in the treatment process (e.g., depression interferes with treatment attendance and adherence to interventions). Furthermore, it has been shown that the continued use of maladaptive coping skills (i.e., pain-related avoidance behaviors), positive attitudes and expectations about pain and disability (i.e., pain facilitates the maintenance of supportive relationships; pain prevents the return to unsatisfactory employment), and unresolved worker's compensation/personal injury cases are further associated with lower treatment response. Therefore, a comprehensive assessment of these psychosocial factors is imperative at the outset of any pain-related intervention. This can be accomplished by obtaining a detailed medical and psychosocial history, conducting semi-structured clinical and diagnostic interviews with both patients and their caregivers, the administration of self-report instruments, and consultation with current and past health-care providers.

Considered together, persistent pain conditions arise from a complex interaction of biological, psychological, social, and environmental factors. Understanding these relationships will help to identify factors that maintain and reinforce persistent pain across time and will provide insight into the development of effective pain management interventions.

Cross-References

- [Pain](#)
- [Pain Anxiety](#)
- [Pain Management/Control](#)
- [Pain-Related Fear](#)

References and Readings

- Asmundson, G. J. G., Norton, P. J., & Norton, G. R. (1999). Beyond pain: The role of fear and avoidance in chronicity. *Clinical Psychology Review, 19*, 97–119.
- Asmundson, G. J. G., Norton, P. J., & Vlaeyen, J. W. S. (2004). Fear-avoidance models of chronic pain: An overview. In G. J. G. Asmundson, J. W. S. Vlaeyen, & G. Crobez (Eds.), *Understanding and treating fear of pain* (pp. 3–24). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Gatchel, R. J., & Dersh, J. (2002). Psychological disorders and chronic pain: Are there cause-and-effect

- relationships? In D. C. Turk & R. J. Gatchel (Eds.), *Psychological approaches to pain management: A practitioner's handbook* (2nd ed., pp. 30–51). New York: Guilford Press.
- Gatchel, R. J., & Epker, J. (1999). Psychosocial predictors of chronic pain and response to treatment. In R. J. Gatchel & D. C. Turk (Eds.), *Psychosocial factors in pain: Critical perspectives* (pp. 412–434). New York: Guilford Press.
- Goubert, L., Crombez, G., & Peters, M. (2004). Pain-related fear and avoidance: A conditioning perspective. In G. J. G. Asmundson, J. W. S. Vlaeyen, & G. Crobez (Eds.), *Understanding and treating fear of pain* (pp. 25–50). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Keogh, E., & Asmundson, G. J. G. (2004). Negative affectivity, catastrophizing, and anxiety sensitivity. In G. J. G. Asmundson, J. W. S. Vlaeyen, & G. Crobez (Eds.), *Understanding and treating fear of pain* (pp. 91–116). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Linton, S. J., & Boersma, K. (2004). The role of fear-avoidance in the early identification of patients risking the development of disability. In G. J. G. Asmundson, J. W. S. Vlaeyen, & G. Crobez (Eds.), *Understanding and treating fear of pain* (pp. 213–235). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Norton, P. J., & Asmundson, G. J. G. (2003). Amending the fear-avoidance model of chronic pain: What is the role of physiological arousal? *Behavior Therapy, 34*, 17–30.
- Sanders, S. H. (2002). Operant conditioning with chronic pain: Back to basics. In D. C. Turk & R. J. Gatchel (Eds.), *Psychological approaches to pain management: A practitioner's handbook* (2nd ed., pp. 128–137). New York: Guilford Press.
- Turk, D. C., & Flor, H. (1999). Chronic pain: A biobehavioral perspective. In R. J. Gatchel & D. C. Turk (Eds.), *Psychosocial factors in pain: Critical perspectives* (pp. 18–34). New York: Guilford Press.
- Turk, D. C., & Gatchel, R. J. (1999). Psychosocial factors and pain: Revolution and evolution. In R. J. Gatchel & D. C. Turk (Eds.), *Psychosocial factors in pain: Critical perspectives* (pp. 481–494). New York: Guilford Press.

Pain-Related Fear

Michael James Coons
Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg
School of Medicine, Northwestern University,
Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Pain anxiety](#); [Pain, psychosocial aspects](#)

Definition

It is an affective manifestation of the fight-or-flight system in response to pain perception. The sympathetic nervous system becomes activated by the amygdala, resulting in cognitive, physiological, and behavioral symptoms. Following pain perception subsequent to injury or pain-inducing stimuli, pain is interpreted catastrophically by inferring more harmful or life-threatening outcomes to its underlying cause. For instance, when an individual experiences acute pain after rolling over on their ankle, they might infer that the pain is caused by a broken bone, rather than by a sprain. This negative cognitive bias is predisposed by trait-like factors including anxiety sensitivity (i.e., fear of interoceptive experiences) and negative affectivity (i.e., the propensity toward experiencing negative emotions). This cognitive process prompts hypervigilance toward interoceptive cues (e.g., pain or muscle tension consequent to their injury) and illness information in the internal or external environment (continued or exacerbated pain). This motivates a constellation of defensive behaviors (e.g., guarding, rest) that are intended to provide relief or escape from the pain-inducing state. Fear-avoidance models of pain, and the empirical evidence supporting such models, suggest that pain-related fear is a predisposing factor to the development of persistent pain conditions.

Assessment of Pain-Related Fear

The most common mode of assessment of pain-related fear involves the administration of well-validated self-report instruments. Several published scales are available including the Fear of Pain Questionnaire-III (FPQ-III) and the Fear-Avoidance Beliefs Questionnaire (FABQ). These measures assess the nature and extent of pain-related fear by asking individuals to rate how much they fear the pain associated with a variety of situations (e.g., “having someone slam a heavy car door on your hand,” “biting your tongue while eating”) or the nature and extent of a variety of pain-related beliefs (e.g., “Physical activity might harm my back,” “I should not do physical

activities that (might) make my pain worse”). Alternative modes of assessing pain-related fear include semi-structured clinical interviews and the direct observation of patient behavior.

Treatment of Pain-Related Fear

Cognitive behavior therapy (CBT) is a mainstay in the treatment of pain-related fear. Treatment components include psychoeducation, and introduction, demonstration, and practice of a variety of adaptive coping skills (i.e., progressive muscle relaxation, diaphragmatic breathing, mental imagery, behavioral activation and pleasant activity scheduling, activity-rest cycling, physical therapy/exercise, problem-solving, cognitive restructuring, and calming self-statements). In treating pain-related fear, special emphasis is placed on graded in vivo exposure with behavioral experiments. These latter components allow individuals to construct situations in which they collect information to test and challenge their distorted pain-related cognitions.

Cross-References

- [Pain Anxiety](#)
- [Pain, Psychosocial Aspects](#)

References and Readings

- Asmundson, G. J. G., Norton, P. J., & Vlaeyen, W. S. (2004). Fear-avoidance models of chronic pain: An overview. In G. J. G. Asmundson, J. W. S. Vlaeyen, & G. Crombez (Eds.), *Understanding and treating fear of pain* (pp. 3–24). New York: Oxford University Press.
- de Williams, A. C., & McCracken, L. M. (2004). Cognitive behavioral therapy for chronic pain: An overview with specific reference to fear avoidance. In G. J. G. Asmundson, J. W. S. Vlaeyen, & G. Crombez (Eds.), *Understanding and treating fear of pain* (pp. 293–312). New York: Oxford University Press.
- McNeil, D. W., & Vowles, K. E. (2004). Assessment of fear and anxiety associated with pain: Conceptualization, methods, and measures. In G. J. G. Asmundson, J. W. S. Vlaeyen, & G. Crombez (Eds.), *Understanding and treating fear of pain* (pp. 189–211). New York: Oxford University Press.

Palliative Care

Satoru Iwase and Chica Mori
Department Of Palliative Medicine, The
University of Tokyo Hospital, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

Hospices; Palliative medicine; Supportive care;
Terminal care

Definition

The World Health Organization (WHO) defines palliative care as “an approach that improves the quality of life of patients and their families facing the problems associated with life-threatening illness, through the prevention and relief of suffering by means of early identification and impeccable assessment and treatment of pain and other problems, physical, psychological and spiritual” (World Health Organization 2002).

Description

The goal of palliative care is to achieve the best possible quality of life for both the patients and their families.

Palliative care:

- Is a multidisciplinary task and uses a team approach by physicians, nurses, psychologists, social workers, and other health professionals to address the needs of patients and their families
- Offers a support system to help patients and their families in the community
- Is applicable at any age and at any stage in the course of illness, in conjunction with other therapies such as chemotherapy or radiation therapy which may prolong life
- Provides relief from distressing symptoms such as pain, shortness of breath, depression, drowsiness, and nausea

- Alleviates the adverse side effects, such as relieving the nausea related to chemotherapy
- Influences positively in the course of illness (Temel et al. 2010).

Dying is a normal event; however, many people feel uncomfortable discussing their own death as well as the death of someone close. A book “Hagakure,” written by a samurai warrior, who was keenly aware of the events of the day, teaches us how to cope with spiritual pain within the framework of our own insight. “There is something to be learned from a rainstorm. When meeting with a sudden shower, you try not to wet and run quickly along the road. But doing such things as passing under the eaves of houses, you still get wet. When you are resolved from the beginning, you will not be perplexed, though you still get the same soaking. This understanding extends to everything” (Yamamoto 2005).

Perception of physical, psychological, and spiritual pain may differ in various countries with different cultures and religions; nonetheless, we all aim for the same goal in palliative care.

Cross-References

- ▶ End-of-Life
- ▶ Religion/Spirituality
- ▶ World Health Organization (WHO)

References and Readings

- Temel, J. S., Greer, J. A., Muzikansky, A., Gallagher, E. R., Admane, S., Jackson, V. A., et al. (2010). Early palliative care for patients with metastatic non-small-cell lung cancer. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 363(8), 733–742. Retrieved August 19, 2010, from <https://www.nejm.org>.
- World Health Organization. (2002). *WHO definition of palliative care*. Retrieved September 28, 2009, from <http://www.who.int/cancer/palliative/definition/en/>
- Yamamoto, T. (2005). *Hagakure: The book of the samurai* (W. S. Wilson, Trans.). Tokyo: Kodansha International.

Palliative Medicine

► Palliative Care

Panic Attack

Michael James Coons

Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Panic disorder](#)

Definition

Panic attacks are a state of sympathetic nervous system arousal that results in a discrete episode of intense fear or discomfort in the absence of objective danger. This fear is accompanied by a host of somatic and cognitive symptoms. Symptoms include tachycardia (i.e., racing heart), sweating, palpitations, trembling, dyspnea (i.e., shortness of breath), feelings of being smothered or feelings of choking, nausea, chest pain, abdominal distress, dizziness, light headedness, derealization or depersonalization, numbness or tingling in the face or extremities, chills or hot flushes, fear of “going crazy,” fear of losing control, or fear of death from such an episode. Individuals must report experiencing at least 4 of the 13 possible somatic and cognitive symptoms. These aforementioned symptoms typically peak in intensity over a short period of time (i.e., 10 min or less). If individuals report experiencing excessive fear but manifest fewer than four symptoms, it is considered to be a limited-symptom panic attack. Panic attacks are classified into three main subtypes: cued panic attacks (i.e., panic attacks can occur in response to a specific situation or event), uncued panic attacks (i.e., panic attacks that occur “out of the blue” in the absence of a

discernable trigger), or situationally predisposed panic attacks (i.e., panic attacks that occur immediately on exposure to or in anticipation of a specific situational cue or trigger). The experience of at least two *uncued* panic attacks is a prerequisite for the diagnosis of panic disorder. However, panic attacks can occur in the context of any other anxiety disorder (e.g., generalized anxiety disorder, social anxiety disorder) when cued by situational events or triggers (e.g., in response to excessive worry; during a social interaction). The possible consequences of such episodes make panic attacks of interest to behavioral medicine.

Cross-References

► [Panic Disorder](#)

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual for mental disorders (Revised)* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: APA.
- Antony, M. M., & Swinson, R. P. (2000). *Phobic disorder and panic in adults: A guide to assessment and treatment*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- McCabe, R. (2001). Panic disorder and agoraphobia: A brief overview and guide to assessment. In M. M. Antony, S. M. Orsillo, & L. Roemer (Eds.), *Practitioner's guide to empirically based measures of anxiety* (pp. 87–94). New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum.

Panic Disorder

Michael James Coons

Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Panic attack](#)

Definition

According to the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual for Mental Disorders, Fourth Edition (DSM-IV-TR), panic disorder (PD) is an anxiety disorder that is defined by the experience of recurrent (two or more) uncured panic attacks. Following these attacks and for a period of at least 1 month, individuals must report experiencing concern about either having additional attacks, concern about the potential implications of having panic attacks (e.g., death), or significantly change their behavior because of the experience of panic attacks (e.g., avoidance of certain situations). In this context, panic attacks cannot occur in response to the physiological effects of a substance (e.g., caffeine, marijuana), cannot be due to a general medical condition, and cannot be better accounted for by another mental disorder (e.g., generalized anxiety disorder). PD can occur in isolation, or in the presence of agoraphobia (i.e., anxiety about particular places or situations in which individuals fear experiencing a panic attack). According to the DSM-IV-TR, PD occurs in approximately 1–2% of the general population. The onset of PD typically occurs between late adolescence and mid-30s. Researchers have shown that anxiety sensitivity (i.e., an individual difference variable involving the fear of anxiety-related somatic symptoms) is a robust predictor of the development of PD. However, PD (with or without agoraphobia) is diagnosed more commonly among women than among men.

Cognitive Behavioral Models

Theoretical models of PD suggest that among individuals who are predisposed to being fearful of somatic cues (i.e., having high levels of anxiety sensitivity), they catastrophically misinterpret physiological sensations when they occur (e.g., “my heart is racing, I *must* be having a heart attack”). Such distorted cognitions motivate a series of maladaptive behaviors (e.g., escaping the current situation to prevent the catastrophic outcome, avoiding situations because of the fear

of experiencing a future panic attack, not leaving the house alone in the event of a panic attack). Over time and across situations, these escape-, avoidance-, and safety-seeking behaviors become negatively reinforced, resulting in a reliance on engaging in these behaviors to either prevent a panic attack from occurring, or in minimizing the potential (perceived) negative and catastrophic outcome(s). Together, these maladaptive cognitions and behaviors contribute to greater sympathetic arousal that results in a host of somatic symptoms (e.g., racing heart, dyspnea, nausea, shaking/trembling), which perpetuates the cycle of panic.

Assessment

Prior to commencing any pharmacological or psychological intervention, it is essential to establish a differential diagnosis to determine if PD is the most appropriate diagnosis. This can be accomplished through the administration of structured clinical interviews, the completion of various self-report instruments, and if necessary, a thorough medical evaluation. The Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV (SCID-IV) and the Anxiety Disorders Interview Schedule IV (ADIS-IV) are the two “gold standard” clinical interviews for the anxiety disorders. These interviews are modeled after diagnostic criteria from the DSM-IV and assess the presence of all anxiety disorders, along with a variety of potentially comorbid axis I conditions (e.g., mood disorders, substance use disorders, somatoform disorders, psychotic disorders, and adjustment disorders). In conjunction with structured clinical interviews, a variety of well-validated self-report instruments are available to assess the nature, extent, and risk for PD symptoms. These include the Anxiety Sensitivity Index, Revised (ASI-R), the Panic Disorder Severity Scale (PDSS), and the Agoraphobic Cognitions Questionnaire (ACQ). If there is potential for a patient’s panic symptoms to be caused by an underlying medical condition (e.g., atrial fibrillation), a thorough medical evaluation is required before a diagnosis of PD can be established.

Treatment of PD

Efficacious treatments for PD include both pharmacological and psychological interventions. Both selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) and benzodiazepines are used in the treatment of PD. However, it is recommended that benzodiazepines be prescribed using a scheduled dose, as opposed to an “as needed” basis (i.e., PRN). This helps to minimize the risk of the benzodiazepine use becoming a maladaptive safety behavior that may exacerbate PD-related cognitive distortions. Cognitive behavior therapy (CBT) remains as the front-line psychological intervention for PD. Treatment components include psychoeducation (around the fight-or-flight system, CBT model of panic), identification and restructuring of cognitive distortions, and graded exposure (cognitive, in vivo, and interoceptive). Recent technological advancements permit the augmentation of exposure-based interventions with virtual reality equipment.

Cross-References

► [Panic Attack](#)

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual for mental disorders* (Revised 4th ed.). Washington, DC: Author.
- Antony, M. M., & Swinson, R. P. (2000). *Phobic disorder and panic in adults: A guide to assessment and treatment*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Taylor, S. (2000). *Understanding and treating panic disorder: Cognitive-behavioral approaches*. New York: Wiley.

Paradoxal Sleep

► [REM Sleep](#)

Parallel Group Design

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Independent treatments group design](#)

Definition

A parallel group design is an experimental study design in which each subject is randomized to one of two or more distinct treatment/intervention groups. Those who are assigned to the same treatment are referred to as a treatment group.

While the treatments that these groups receive differ, all groups are treated as equally as possible in all other regards, and they complete the same procedures during the study. This parallel activity on the part of the groups of individuals is captured in the term “parallel group design.”

The term controlled study is often heard in this context. One group will receive the treatment of interest and another group a control treatment, against which responses during and at the end of the treatment intervention are compared. Going one step further, the term concurrently controlled study makes clear that the different groups take part in their respective treatment arms at the same time. If all of the subjects in one treatment group completed their participation first, and then all of the other subjects completed their participation at some later time, it is quite possible that other factors could confound the results.

Cross-References

- [Crossover Design](#)
- [Randomization](#)

Parasympathetic

- ▶ [Autonomic Balance](#)
 - ▶ [Heart Rate Variability](#)
-

Parasympathetic Nervous System (PNS)

Michael Richter¹ and Rex A. Wright²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Geneva, Geneva, Switzerland

²Department of Psychology, College of Arts and Sciences, University of North Texas, Denton, TX, USA

Definition

The parasympathetic nervous system (PNS) is one of two main branches or subsystems of the autonomic nervous system (ANS). It originates in the brain stem and sacral spinal cord and commonly – but not always – yields peripheral adjustments that are complementary to those produced by its counterpart, the sympathetic nervous system (SNS).

Description

The parasympathetic nervous system is one of two main branches or subsystems of the autonomic nervous system, the physical system responsible for nonconsciously maintaining bodily homeostasis and coordinating bodily responses. Working with the second main branch, the sympathetic nervous system, the parasympathetic nervous system regulates a wide range of functions such as blood circulation, body temperature, respiration, and digestion. Parasympathetic activation commonly leads to adjustments on organs and glands that are complementary to those produced by sympathetic activation and suitable for low activity and bodily restoration (“rest and digest” as

opposed to “fight and flight”). Examples of low activity and restorative adjustments are constriction of blood vessels in the lungs, increased gastric secretion, and decreased heart rate and contraction force. Although parasympathetic adjustments tend to complement sympathetic adjustments, they do not always. For example, both parasympathetic nervous system arousal and sympathetic nervous system arousal increase salivary flow, although to different degrees and yielding different compositions of saliva.

Basic functional units of the parasympathetic nervous system are preganglionic and postganglionic neurons. Preganglionic neurons have cell bodies in the brainstem or sacral spinal cord and axons that extend to cell bodies of postganglionic neurons. Postganglionic neurons have cell bodies that are clustered in so-called ganglia and relatively short axons that innervate target organs and glands.

The major neurotransmitter of the parasympathetic nervous system is acetylcholine. It is the neurotransmitter of all preganglionic and postganglionic neurons. Stimulation of the cholinergic receptors of the nicotinic subtype located on the cell bodies of the postganglionic neurons by acetylcholine leads to an opening of non-specific ion channels. This opening permits the transfer of potassium and sodium ions, which depolarizes the postganglionic cell and initiates an action potential in the postganglionic cells. Muscarinic cholinergic receptors are located on target organs and glands. Stimulation of muscarinic receptors by acetylcholine activates G-proteins, which trigger the effector response via a second-messenger pathway. Specific effects depend on the innervated visceral structure. For instance, activation of the muscarinic receptors of the heart muscle leads to reduced heart rate and heart contraction force. Stimulation of muscarinic receptors of the salivary glands increases salivary flow.

In working jointly with the sympathetic nervous system, the parasympathetic nervous system does not function in an all-or-none fashion, but rather activates to different degrees. Depending on the affected visceral structure and situation, it may be more or less active than the sympathetic

nervous system. Shifts in the magnitude of sympathetic and parasympathetic influence can occur locally within a single visceral structure (e.g., the eye) or across visceral structures, with local shifts occurring to meet highly specialized demands (e.g., a change in ambient light) and global shifts adapting the body to large-scale environmental changes (e.g., the appearance of a substantial physical threat). Autonomic control is maintained by structures in the central nervous system that receive visceral information from an afferent (incoming) nervous system. A key central nervous system structure is the hypothalamus, which integrates autonomic, somatic, and endocrine responses that accompany different organism states.

Cross-References

- [Acetylcholine](#)
- [Autonomic Activation](#)
- [Autonomic Balance](#)
- [Autonomic Nervous System \(ANS\)](#)
- [Epinephrine](#)
- [Sympathetic Nervous System \(SNS\)](#)

References and Readings

- Berne, R. M., Levy, M. N., Koeppen, B. M., & Stanton, B. A. (2004). *Physiology* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Cacioppo, J. T., & Tassinari, L. G. (1990). *Principles of psychophysiology: Physical, social, and inferential elements*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Cacioppo, J. T., Tassinari, L. G., & Berntson, G. G. (2000). *Handbook of psychophysiology* (2nd ed.). New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Ganong, W. F. (2005). *Review of medical physiology* (22nd ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Levick, J. R. (2009). *An introduction to cardiovascular physiology* (5th ed.). London: Hodder.

Paraventricular Nucleus

- [Hypothalamus](#)

Parent-Child Concordance

- [Family Aggregation](#)

Parent-Rated Life Orientation Test of Children (P-LOT)

- [Optimism and Pessimism: Measurement](#)

Parietal

- [Brain, Cortex](#)

Parkinson's Disease

- [Parkinson's Disease: Psychosocial Aspects](#)

Parkinson's Disease: Psychosocial Aspects

Shawn McClintock, Matthieu Chansard and Mustafa M. Husain

Department of Psychiatry, The University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center at Dallas Columbia University/New York State Psychiatric Institute, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Degenerative parkinsonism](#); [Parkinson's disease](#); [Parkinsonism](#); [PD](#); [Secondary parkinsonism](#)

Definition

Parkinson's disease (PD) is the second most common neurodegenerative disorder and is characterized by motoric symptoms of resting tremor,

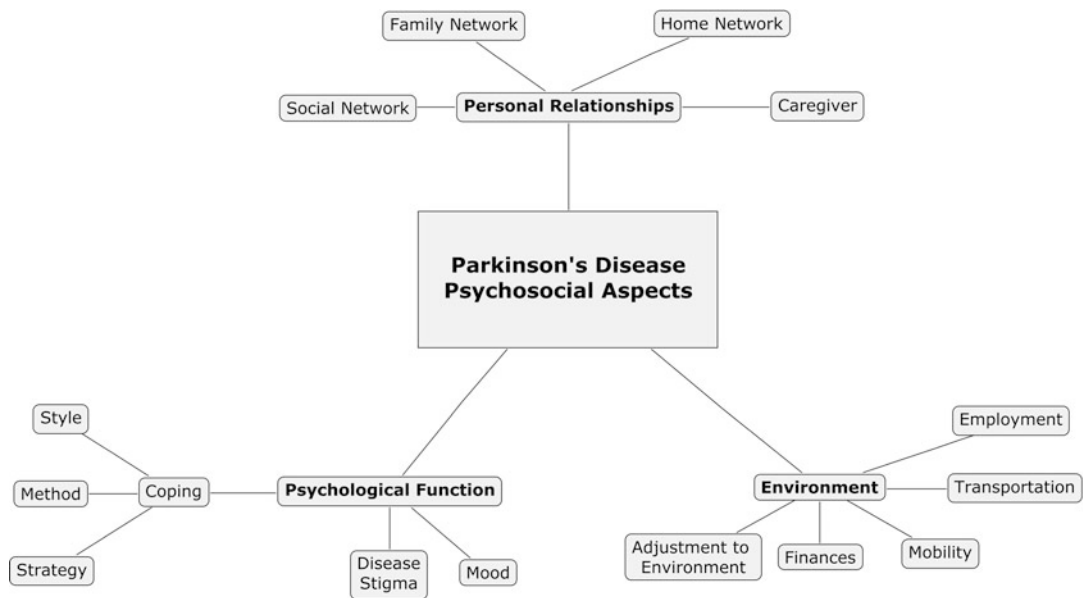
rigidity, bradykinesia, and gait disturbance. The psychosocial aspects of PD involve the interaction of PD symptomatology, psychological development and function, personal relationships, and environmental factors.

Description

Parkinson's disease (PD) is a common neurodegenerative disorder that affects approximately between 500,000 and a million Americans of all races and ethnic groups, and 0.3% (5 million) of the world's population. Pathologically, PD is an inexorably progressive disorder of unknown cause in which neurons of the substantia nigra progressively degenerate resulting in greater degrees of brain dopamine deficiency. In addition, a number of other neuronal pathways degenerate including cholinergic, noradrenergic, and serotonergic pathways. Primary motor manifestations of PD include resting tremor, bradykinesia (e.g., slowed motor ability), rigidity, and gait disturbance. Important clinical features to establish the

diagnosis of PD include asymmetric symptom onset and responsiveness to levodopa, a commonly used medication to treat PD symptoms. Due to a combination of endogenous and exogenous factors, a significant proportion of patients with PD also suffer from comorbid medical and psychiatric illnesses. This can include pain, insomnia, autonomic dysfunction, as well as sensory and cognitive difficulties.

There has been a primary use of a biomedical approach to inform PD that has focused on the physical, neurological, and medical PD symptoms. A biopsychosocial approach may inform other domains, particularly psychosocial function. Psychosocial aspects of PD revolve around three broad domains including (1) personal relationships, (2) psychological function, and (3) environmental factors (see Fig. 1). These domains are all impacted by the progression and severity of PD symptomatology and age. As patients progress through different disease stages, psychosocial aspects will be relatively affected. There are approximately five stages of PD. In stage 1, the PD symptoms are minimal and may have some impact on activities



Parkinson's Disease: Psychosocial Aspects, Fig. 1 Three global domains of psychosocial aspects relevant to persons with Parkinson's disease (PD) including psychological function, personal relationships, and the

environment. These three domains, independently or collectively, may be impacted by the progression and severity of PD symptomatology

of daily living, though by stage 2, the PD symptoms are more noticeable and begin to interfere with routine physical tasks. At stage 3, the PD symptoms may be more severe and impede most physical activities. At stages 4 and 5, the PD symptoms may be of such severity that the person is unable to live independently. Thus, greater PD disease severity is associated with greater adverse impact on psychosocial functions. For instance, late-stage PD decreases mobility and communication, thus limiting patients' ability to care for themselves and resulting in greater reliance upon others for activities of daily living. Decreased processing speed, medical problems, and other normal effects of aging exacerbated by PD factors limit self-care behaviors, which further impact psychosocial functioning.

Personal relationships are a tremendous resource for patients with PD. These relationships include many integrated networks of family and friends, and most importantly, caregivers. The size and quality of the social network as well as the subjective viewpoint of the patient all determine a social network's ability to assist patients with PD. A larger and higher quality network may be able to provide more resources than one that is small and of poor quality. The network's quality can be determined by its ability to provide resources for the PD patient in terms of physical and emotional support. Adequate relationship networks are essential to patient well-being, and patients should be encouraged to engage in activities that foster and enhance supportive relational networks. Importantly, should a professional caregiver be unavailable, family and friends may serve dual roles as caregivers, which can complicate the interpersonal relationship. The role of the caregiver may be minimal at the early stages of PD, but increases proportionately to the disease stage, as does stress and strain. Thus, it is important for caregivers to practice healthy stress management techniques.

The psychological functions domain includes mood and affect, personal view of self, and coping. There is a complex interaction between PD and psychological functions. For example, intact psychological functions before the onset of PD can help mitigate the onset of psychiatric illnesses

such as depression and decreased self-worth. On the other hand, PD has been associated with an increase in depression and decrease quality of life. Regarding personal perception, patients may be burdened by disease stigma and see themselves as impaired, incapable to care for themselves, and less worthy than others. These negative personal perceptions can be changed with therapeutic management, which can then have positive impacts on overall health. Coping functions can be subdivided into coping style (active, passive), coping method (problem-solving, emotional focused), and coping strategies (cognitive, behavioral, cognitive-behavioral). Adaptive coping functions can help minimize the impact of PD symptoms, decrease poor health burden, and increase psychosocial function. Patients and caregivers should work together when implementing coping strategies in order to ensure that they are in sync and achieve maximal benefit.

The environmental domain includes areas that involve patients with PD to interact with others. This includes such areas as finances, employment and occupational performance, and transportation and mobility. Physical PD symptoms (e.g., tremor, postural instability) can affect safety as well as employment and occupational performance. Patients may be unable to perform certain job duties due to PD symptoms or may be embarrassed by some symptoms such as tremors. This can impede work performance for those who are employed or limit others from seeking employment. Mobility and transportation difficulties can decrease self-reliance and increase dependency on others, which can then impact psychological functions. The adverse impact on environmental factors is related to the age of PD onset. Early PD onset tends to have a more marked adverse impact on multiple domains including employment, marital status, and quality of life. Some patients may view early PD onset as premature aging, with profound negative psychosocial consequences.

Parkinson's disease impacts not only motoric function but also psychosocial function. Given its progressive, degenerative nature, it can negatively affect psychosocial domains of personal relationships, psychological function, and environmental

factors. These domains are interrelated and are further associated with PD disease severity, age, and age of illness onset. A biopsychosocial approach to therapeutic management will help to inform these domains.

Cross-References

- [Coping](#)
- [Family Social Support](#)

References and Reading

- Ellgring, H., Seiler, S., Perleth, B., Frings, W., Gasster, T., & Oertel, W. (1993). Psychosocial aspects of Parkinson's disease. *Neurology*, 43(Suppl. 6), S41–S44.
- Imke, S. C. (2010). *Psychosocial care for Parkinson patients and care partners*. New York: Springer.
- Olanow, C. W., Stern, M. B., & Sethi, K. (2009). The scientific and clinical basis for the treatment of Parkinson disease. *Neurology*, 72(Suppl. 4), S1–S136.
- Tagliati, M., Guten, G., & Horne, J. (2007). *Parkinson's disease for dummies*. Hoboken: Wiley.

Parkinsonism

- [Parkinson's Disease: Psychosocial Aspects](#)

Paroxetine

- [Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors \(SSRIs\)](#)

Partial Sleep Deprivation

- [Sleep Restriction](#)

Participation

- [Occupational Therapy](#)

Participation Bias

- [Bias](#)

Participation Restrictions

- [Disability](#)

Participatory Research

Sheryl Zimmerman
School of Social Work, The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Community-based participatory research](#)

Definition

Participatory research is an approach to research that emphasizes equitable involvement and shared decision making of community members, organizational representatives, and researchers in all aspects of the research process, ranging from the choice of research question through the interpretation, dissemination, and application of results (Israel et al. 2005). While there has been longstanding recognition that meaningful, ongoing collaboration between communities and researchers is essential to the design and conduct of research that will ethically address community concerns and translate research findings into sustainable public health gains, there has been a resurgence of interest in the participatory approach to health research due to the confluence of two trends. First, researchers have faced the disconcerting fact that many promising findings published in the academic literature are never translated into behavior change by the target populations and therefore do not result in health improvement. Second, potential participants have

grown tired of being viewed as the “subjects” of research, and some feel that there has been little benefit to their communities in return for their participation even while they recognize the need for information-gathering. This convergence has led to a restriking of the power balance between the observers and the observed, and the promotion of participatory research.

Cross-References

► [Community-Based Participatory Research](#)

References and Readings

- Israel, B. A., Eng, E., Schulz, A. J., & Parker, E. A. (Eds.). (2005). *Methods in community-based participatory research for health*. San Francisco: Josey-Bass.
- Lantz, P. M., Israel, B. A., Schultz, A. J., & Reyes, A. (2005). *Community-based participatory research: Rationale and relevance for social epidemiology*. San Francisco: Josey-Bass.
- Minkler, M., & Wallerstein, N. (Eds.). (2003). *Community based participatory research for health*. San Francisco: Josey-Bass.

Passive Coping Strategies

Linda Carroll
Department of Public Health Sciences, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Synonyms

[Avoidance](#); [Helplessness](#)

Definition

Coping is the set of intentional, goal-directed efforts people engage in to minimize the physical, psychological, or social harm of an event or situation (Lazarus and Folkman 1984; Lazarus 1999). There are many different theoretical and empirical frameworks for understanding coping and many different ways of classifying coping strategies, but one such classification is “passive coping.”

Passive coping refers to feeling of helplessness to deal with the stressor and relying on others to resolve the stressful event or situation (Zeidner and Endler 1996). Those engaging in passive coping relinquish to others the control of the stressful situation and of their reaction to that situation, or allow other areas of their lives to be adversely affected by the stressful event or situation (Field, McCabe, & Schneiderman, 1985). This reliance on external resources is contrasted with “active coping,” in which the individual is relying upon their own resources to cope with the stressor. Passive coping is associated with depression and poor psychological adjustment, as well as a poor outcome.

Passive coping generally involves avoidance, withdrawal, and wishful thinking. Examples of passive coping strategies are such cognitions as “it’s awful and I feel that it overwhelms me,” “I pray to God it won’t last long,” and “I know someday someone will be here to help me and it will go away for a while.” Behavioral examples of passive coping strategies include talking (complaining) to others about the situation either to ventilate feelings, get sympathy or elicit their help, withdrawing from social and other activities, or relying on medication to cope with the situation. Catastrophization (e.g., thinking “it’s terrible and I think it’s never going to get better”) is sometimes considered a passive coping strategy.

Cross-References

► [Active Coping](#)
► [Coping](#)

References and Readings

- Field, T., McCabe, P. M., & Schneiderman, N. (1985). *Stress and coping*. Hillsdale: Erlbaum.
- Lazarus, R. S. (1999). *Stress and emotion: A new synthesis*. New York: Springer.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Moos, R. H. (1986). *Coping with life crises: An integrated approach*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Zeidner, M., & Endler, N. S. (1996). *Handbook of coping: Theory, research, applications*. New York: Wiley.

Passive Sensing

Mashfiqui Rabbi

Harvard University, Cambridge, MA, USA

Definition

Passive sensing is a data collection method that requires no or minimal interactions from humans. Examples of passive sensing are location tracking, physical activity recognition, conversation detection, etc.

Description

Passive sensing is a data collection method that requires no or minimal interactions from humans. A familiar example of passive sensing is location tracking, where a mobile app continuously tracks an individual's location in the background. Passive sensing, however, is not limited to location tracking. Other forms of passive sensing include tracking steps, physical activity (Lu et al. 2010), sleep (Lane et al. 2011), heart rate (Hovsepian et al. 2015), electrodermal response (Sano and Rosalind 2011), nonverbal speech patterns (Rabbi et al. 2011), app usage (Gordon et al. 2019), etc. Typically, passive sensing is done via smartphones, wearables (e.g., smartwatches), or implantable devices in the environment (e.g., Amazon Echo), but custom-made devices can empower novel ways to passively sense (Rahman et al. 2016).

A broad variety of data can be passively sensed. The most common form of passive sensing uses *physical sensors* (accelerometer, microphone, GPS, ECG) on the phones or wearables. However, passive sensing can include *derived streams* from sensor data; for example, physical activity data is a continuous stream that uses accelerometer and GPS sensors to recognize walking, running, sitting still, etc. Passive sensing is not done by physical sensors only; for example, we can capture app usage or typing speed. Such information can be used to assess cognitive

decline (Gordon et al. 2019) and Parkinson's symptoms (Arroyo-Gallego et al. 2017).

Passive sensing is rapidly growing in popularity in healthcare. The main advantage of passive sensing is that it can continuously and objectively monitor fine-grained human behavior in real-world settings. Prior to passive sensing, clinic visits in which patients recall their past behavior were the primary source of patient data. Such self-reporting is not only error-prone (people often cannot fully recall past events in their entirety), but it is also subjective and sporadic. It cannot capture human behavior between clinic visits or provide information like step counts or whether someone's blood pressure level falls outside of recommended ranges. Ecological momentary assessments (EMAs), in which people fill out surveys one or more times a day, can mitigate the lack of data between clinic visits. However, EMA data is not as fine-grained as passive sensing, and EMAs are prone to high-attrition rates because they interrupt users to ask for self-reports. Passive sensing, on the other hand, is usually an unobtrusive and low-burden method of data collection.

Research is ongoing on how passive sensing can make a difference in healthcare. Passive sensing has already made significant headway in some areas. For example, the electrocardiogram (ECG) feature in the latest smartwatches from Apple, Samsung, and Omron received FDA clearance for diagnostic purposes. Several devices for step count, actigraphy, and fall detection also received FDA clearance. Passive sensing technology to monitor sleep is also swiftly maturing – various sleep-tracking technologies using Doppler radar or Wi-Fi are quite promising. Mental health is another area where passive sensing has much potential (Cornet and Holden 2018). Researchers hypothesize that passive sensing can detect behavioral anomalies or biomarkers of a mental health decline at an early stage. Recent work with smartphone sensing, for example, suggests that depressive symptoms are correlated with lack of movement variability (Saeb et al. 2015) and lack of face-to-face conversation (Rabbi et al. 2011). People are working on using passive sensing in other areas too, notably for substance abuse

among younger adults (Bae et al. 2017) or cognitive decline among older adults (Gordon et al. 2019).

Passive sensing research needs to advance in several key areas in order to be more useful:

- (i) *Subjective Measures and Engagement*: Passive sensing is limited in capturing subjective data (e.g., mood, loneliness, helplessness, etc.). EMAs can capture subjective data, but they can cause disengagement due to their high burden (Rabbi et al. 2018). Passive sensing may be able to reduce the need for EMAs; if people behave differently in different subjective states, passive sensing might be able to pick up on these behavioral anomalies. For such a hybrid sensing approach, active learning and transfer learning from the artificial intelligence literature can be useful.
- (ii) *Clinically Relevant End-Points*: Clinical or behavioral science literature often describe abstract constructs (e.g., self-efficacy, barrier, lack of sleep) to predict health behavior and then define treatments based on these abstract constructs (Michie et al. 2014). Thus, predicting these abstract constructs could be more useful because clinicians find them more familiar and actionable. Furthermore, predicting these abstract constructs using machine learning is more feasible, since the risk of relapse and decline of health conditions often mediate through these constructs. For example, predicting mental health decline is harder than predicting sleep variability which often is a precursor to mental health decline.
- (iii) *Larger-Scale Deployment and Deep Learning*: Existing passive sensing studies are small, and they primarily focused on the feasibility of the technology. Unsurprisingly these feasibility results lack inconsistencies. Large-scale deployments are needed for more generalizable results. Larger deployments can also create big data for deep learning models which showed remarkable performance in other areas.
- (iv) *Privacy, Low Latency, and Poor Connectivity*: Passively sensing data are inherently personal and private. An open question is how to make this private data publicly available for research. Research on privacy and cryptography (differential privacy (Dwork 2011), multiparty authentication (Bater et al. 2017), etc.) can be useful to enable privacy-sensitive access to data even when the data is located at different sites. Processing data on-device can improve privacy as well as enable low latency service in poor connectivity environments. Low latency can provide real-time feedback, and poor connectivity can be useful for low SES. Google's TensorFlow Lite (<https://www.tensorflow.org/lite>) and Apple's Core ML (<https://developer.apple.com/documentation/coreml>) initiatives are taking steps to put sophisticated machine learning models on low-power devices like phones or wearables.
- (v) *Just-in-Time Adaptive Interventions*: A compelling application of passive sensing is to use the continuously monitored data to provide the right intervention at the right time (Nahum-Shani et al. 2017). Passive sensing can play a significant role in such timely interventions because it can pinpoint the right intervention for the right context.

In summary, passive sensing can continuously monitor and provide feedback on health behavior. Once passive sensing technologies mature, they will enable low-burden objective data collection outside of clinic visits, and their continuous monitoring capability will pave ways to provide the right intervention when people can benefit from it the most.

References and Further Reading

- Arroyo-Gallego, T., et al. (2017). Detection of motor impairment in Parkinson's disease via mobile touchscreen typing. *IEEE Transactions on Biomedical Engineering*, 64(9), 1994–2002.
- Bae, S., et al. (2017). Detecting drinking episodes in young adults using smartphone-based sensors. *Proceedings of the ACM on Interactive, Mobile, Wearable and Ubiquitous Technologies*, 1(2), 5.

- Bater, J., et al. (2017). SMCQL: Secure querying for federated databases. *Proceedings of the VLDB Endowment*, 10(6), 673–684.
- Cornet, V. P., & Holden, R. J. (2018). Systematic review of smartphone-based passive sensing for health and wellbeing. *Journal of Biomedical Informatics*, 77, 120–132.
- Dwork, C. (2011). Differential privacy. *Encyclopedia of cryptography and security* (pp. 338–340).
- Gordon, M. L., et al. (2019). App usage predicts cognitive ability in older adults. In: *Proceedings of the 2019 CHI conference on human factors in computing systems*, ACM.
- Hovsepian, K., et al. (2015). cStress: Towards a gold standard for continuous stress assessment in the mobile environment. In: *Proceedings of the 2015 ACM international joint conference on pervasive and ubiquitous computing*, ACM.
- Lane, N. D., et al. (2011). Bewell: A smartphone application to monitor, model and promote wellbeing. In: *5th international ICST conference on pervasive computing technologies for healthcare*.
- Lu, H., et al. (2010). The Jigsaw continuous sensing engine for mobile phone applications. In: *Proceedings of the 8th ACM conference on embedded networked sensor systems*, ACM.
- Michie, S. F., et al. (2014). *ABC of behaviour change theories*. London: Silverback Publishing.
- Nahum-Shani, I., et al. (2017). Just-in-time adaptive interventions (JITAs) in mobile health: Key components and design principles for ongoing health behavior support. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 52(6), 446–462.
- Rabbi, M., et al. (2011). Passive and in-situ assessment of mental and physical well-being using mobile sensors. In: *Proceedings of the 13th international conference on ubiquitous computing*, ACM.
- Rabbi, M., et al. (2018). Toward increasing engagement in substance use data collection: Development of the substance abuse research assistant app and protocol for a microrandomized trial using adolescents and emerging adults. *JMIR Research Protocols*, 7(7), e166.
- Rahman, T., et al. (2016). Nutrilizer: A mobile system for characterizing liquid food with photoacoustic effect. In: *Proceedings of the 14th ACM conference on embedded network sensor systems CD-ROM*, ACM.
- Saeb, S., et al. (2015). Mobile phone sensor correlates of depressive symptom severity in daily-life behavior: An exploratory study. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 17(7), e175.
- Sano, A., & Rosalind, W. (2011). Picard. Toward a taxonomy of autonomic sleep patterns with electrodermal activity. In: *2011 annual international conference of the IEEE engineering in medicine and biology society*, IEEE.

Passive Smoking

- [Secondhand Smoke](#)

Past Smokers

- [Ex-Smokers](#)

Pastors

- [Williams LifeSkills Program](#)

Pathophysiology

Michael Witthöft

Psychologisches Institut Abteilung Klinische Psychologie und Psychotherapie, Johannes Gutenberg Universität Mainz, Mainz, Germany

Definition

Pathophysiology (consisting of the Greek origin words “pathos” = suffering; “physis” = nature, origin; and “logos” = “the study of”) refers to the study of abnormal changes in body functions that are the causes, consequences, or concomitants of disease processes. Studies of pathophysiology are concerned with the investigation of *biological* processes that are directly related to disease processes of physical, mental, or psychophysiological conditions and disorders (e.g., alterations in the endocrine system, in certain neurotransmitters, or inflammatory parameters related to the activity of the immune system). Thus, pathophysiological research aims at identifying biological markers and mechanisms for predicting and explaining disease processes in terms of *etiology* and *pathogenesis*. Pathophysiology is formally considered as a subdiscipline within physiology.

Description

The fundamental aim of the domain of pathophysiology is to unravel the altered biological (i.e., physical and chemical) processes in our organism

that precede, accompany, or follow certain disorders or diseases. In this regard, pathophysiological research aims at identifying factors and mechanisms that are relevant for answering questions of *why* and *how* certain disorders and diseases develop (i.e., questions about *etiology* and *pathogenesis*). Pathophysiological mechanisms of mental, physical, and psychophysiological disorders are rather complex. Yet, many pathophysiological findings and models are incomplete, preliminary, and speculative. However, research into the biological mechanisms of conditions in behavioral medicine is growing rapidly.

Methods and Designs in Pathophysiology Research

Since *pathophysiology* is mainly concerned with identifying objective, biological factors that are relevant for certain disease processes, *quantitative methods* and *experimental* research designs are typically used. Current examples of research methods used in *pathophysiological* research in behavioral medicine are brain imaging techniques (i.e., (functional) magnetic resonance or positron emission tomography) to explore altered patterns of brain morphology and neural activity associated with certain disorders. Another example of pathophysiological research represents studies that aim at quantifying the amount of stress hormones (e.g., corticosteroids) in the blood and saliva (either in a resting state or after acute stress induction). In addition, *electroencephalography* and *electrocardiography* are typical diagnostic tools in pathophysiology research. In addition to studies with human patients and control participants, animal models (e.g., mouse and rat models) are also routinely used to test predictions of *pathophysiological* hypotheses relevant for our understanding of complex medical, psychological, and psychophysiological conditions in humans (e.g., stroke, schizophrenia).

Examples of Pathophysiological Research

As examples of *pathophysiological* investigations and findings relevant to the field of *behavioral medicine*, three examples from the realm of *obesity*, *chronic pain*, and *stress-related disorders* will be outlined briefly.

Pathophysiology of Obesity: The Metabolic Syndrome

Obesity is associated with an increased risk to develop numerous chronic and life-threatening diseases (e.g., cardiovascular diseases, type-2 diabetes, stroke). Several *pathophysiological* factors have been identified that frequently co-occur with obesity and that are suspected to mediate between *obesity* and severe medical diseases. In this regard, the following physiological abnormalities have been identified and termed “the metabolic syndrome” (Cornier et al. 2008): abdominal obesity, insulin resistance, dyslipidemia (i.e., abnormal amount of lipids in the blood), and hypertension. Among these four defining features, abdominal obesity and insulin resistance appear as the core factors in the *pathophysiology* of the *metabolic syndrome*. The *etiology* of the *metabolic syndrome* has to be considered as complex and multifactorial and is still widely unknown. As interventions aiming at treating and preventing the *metabolic syndrome*, lifestyle modifications and weight loss (e.g., via increased physical activity) are recommended.

Pathophysiology of Chronic Pain

Pain is considered as a highly adaptive sensation that effectively signals dangers in terms of threats to our body integrity and helps to avoid injuries. *Pain* is the result of a complex interplay between neurobiological and psychological processes, both in the peripheral and central nervous system. Although acute *pain* is highly adaptive, *chronic pain* typically lacks this adaptive purpose. Regarding chronic pain conditions, the mechanism of “central sensitization” (Woolf 2011) has been proposed to account for the phenomenon of ongoing pain in the absence of sufficient “objective” *nociceptive* stimulation. Accordingly, changes in the excitability of spinal cord neurons are responsible for reductions in pain thresholds, and prolonged neuronal responses to certain stimuli explain why stimuli that are generally considered as non-noxious and non-painful become pain-eliciting stimuli in patients with *chronic pain*. The concept of *central sensitization* rests on the principle of *neural plasticity* of the nociceptive system and a cascade of molecular and

biochemical processes has been observed to be involved in *central sensitization* (e.g., Latremoliere and Woolf 2009).

Pathophysiology of Stress Related Disorders

Ongoing and severe stress represents a threat to one's mental and physical well-being. Regarding the *pathophysiology* of the stress response, a chronic state of uncontrollable, stressful life circumstances has been linked to alterations in the function of the hormonal stress system. Qualitatively different alterations are thereby observed in certain mental and psychophysiological disorders: In the *pathophysiology* of depressive disorders, the hormonal stress system (in terms of the *hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenocortical* system; *HPA*) has been observed to be hyperactive which is reflected in increased *cortisol* secretion of the adrenal glands (e.g., Müller and Holsboer 2004). This *hypercortisolism* is the direct consequence of increased secretion of the corticotrophin releasing hormone (CRH) (from the paraventricular nucleus of the hypothalamus) and the release of the adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) via stimulation of the anterior pituitary gland (Ehlert et al. 2001). The *hypercortisolism* observed in depression is most likely attributable to dysfunctions in HPA-axis feedback mechanisms that are responsible for the downregulation of the cortisol release (via CRH and ACTH). It has to be acknowledged that the phenomenon of *hypercortisolism* only occurs in certain subtypes of depression (e.g., melancholic depression).

Interestingly, the opposite phenomenon of a reduced activity of the *HPA* system resulting in a state of *hypocortisolism* is observed in patients with atypical depression, and patients with complex stress-related disorders. Regarding the latter group of disorders, reduced levels of cortisol indicative of lower HPA-axis reactivity have been observed in patients with *posttraumatic stress disorder*, *chronic fatigue syndrome*, *chronic pain disorders*, *fibromyalgia*, *irritable bowel syndrome* and other *functional somatic syndromes* and *somatoform disorders*. Childhood traumas have also been linked to *hypocortisolism* as evidence for early life stress-induced dysregulation of the *HPA* axis (Heim et al. 2009). Moreover,

hypocortisolism was detected in people with rheumatoid arthritis and asthma.

Cross-References

- [Functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging \(fMRI\)](#)
- [Functional Somatic Syndromes](#)
- [Homeostasis](#)
- [Inflammation](#)
- [Psychopathology](#)
- [Somatoform Disorders](#)

References

- Cornier, M.-A., Dabelea, D., Hernandez, T. L., Lindstrom, R. C., Steig, A. J., Stob, N. R., et al. (2008). The metabolic syndrome. *Endocrine Reviews*, 29, 777–822.
- Ehlert, U., Gaab, J., & Heinrichs, M. (2001). Psychoneuroendocrinological contributions to the etiology of depression, post-traumatic stress disorder, and stress related bodily disorders: The role of the hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal axis. *Biological Psychology*, 57, 141–152.
- Heim, C., Ehlert, U., & Hellhammer, D. H. (2000). The potential role of hypocortisolism in the pathophysiology of stress-related bodily disorders. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 25, 1–35.
- Heim, C., Nater, U., Maloney, E., Boneva, R., Jones, J. F., & Reeves, W. C. (2009). Childhood trauma and risk for chronic fatigue syndrome. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 66, 72–80.
- Latremoliere, A., & Woolf, C. J. (2009). Central sensitization: A generator of pain hypersensitivity by central neural plasticity. *The Journal of Pain*, 10, 895–926.
- Lautenbacher, S., & Fillingim, R. B. (2004). *Pathophysiology of pain perception*. New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum.
- Müller, M., & Holsboer, F. (2004). Hormones, stress and depression. In C. Kordon, R.-C. Gaillard, & Y. Christen (Eds.), *Hormones and the brain*. Berlin: Springer.
- Steptoe, A. (2010). *Handbook of behavioral medicine – methods and application*. New York: Springer.
- Woolf, C. J. (2011). Central sensitization: Implications for the diagnosis and treatment of pain. *Pain*, 152, 2–15.

Patient Complexity

- [Comorbidity](#)

Patient Compliance

► Adherence

Patient Control

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

This is a central issue in behavior medicine, since it relates to models of stress and to patient behaviors and outcomes and has vast clinical implications. Patient control (PC) can reflect both subjective or perceived control and objective control. Perceived control can be understood as one's subjective appraisal of the ability to influence the causes or outcomes of a situation. Perceived control reflects a secondary appraisal process in general stress models (Lazarus and Folkman 1984; Taylor 1995). In contrast, objective control reflects the externally determined and externally validated level of control over a situation. Thus, objective PC is accurate, while subjective PC refers to subjective levels of control and, thus, could also be inaccurate. Subjective PC is a crucial predictor of health behaviors in the theory of planned behavior, showing a relation to behavior either directly or via intentions. For example, subjective PC has been shown to be important in choice over food types (Lawrence and Barker 2009), of relevance to overweight. Subjective PC is strongly related to the broader concept of self-efficacy, the belief that one can carry out a certain behavior despite the existence of barriers. Subjective PC could be affected by objective control but also by past experiences with similar or different stressful situations. Overgeneralizing the lack of control from an uncontrollable to a controllable situation reflects the core of "learned helplessness," which has vast implications for multiple outcomes including depression (Abramson et al. 1989) and possibly

even acceleration of tumors (Palermo-Neto et al. 2003). In pain patients, subjective PC is positively correlated with engagement in activity, of clinical relevance to daily functioning (Chiros and O'Brien 2011). Subjective PC can also be an important moderating variable in the detrimental effect of various factors on health or well-being. For example, Tovbin et al. (2003) found that low albumin (reflecting poor nutritional status) was related to poorer quality of life in dialysis patients, but only in those with low, but not high, subjective control. Objective PC is important in "patient-controlled analgesia" (PCA), where patients control the amount and timing of receiving analgesics during treatment for pain. A meta-analysis of 55 studies found that PCA led to less pain and greater patient satisfaction than did conventional analgesic regimens given by a health professional (Hudcova et al. 2006). Importantly, the subjective and objective aspects of PC are interrelated and are related to another related concept called locus of control. In patients receiving PCA, those with an external locus of control (thinking outcomes are due to chance or powerful others) had more pain and less satisfaction with this treatment. In contrast, an internal locus of control (thinking outcomes are due to one's own efforts, thus reflecting greater perceived control) was predictive of lower pain and greater satisfaction from PCA (Johnson et al. 1989). Taken together, PC is an important predictor of patient outcomes and can be a moderator of the effects of other factors or treatments on health outcomes. It is thus of great importance to assess and consider PC in behavior medicine research and clinical practice.

Cross-References

► Perceived Control

References and Further Readings

- Abramson, L. Y., Metalsky, G. I., & Alloy, L. B. (1989). Hopelessness depression: A theory-based subtype of depression. *Psychological Review*, 96, 358–372.

- Chiros, C., & O'Brien, W. H. (2011). Acceptance, appraisals, and coping in relation to migraine headache: An evaluation of interrelationships using daily diary methods. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 34, 307–320.
- Hudcova, J., McNicol, E., Quah, C., Lau, J., & Carr, D. B. (2006). Patient controlled opioid analgesia versus conventional opioid analgesia for postoperative pain. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 18, CD003348.
- Johnson, L. R., Magnani, B., Chan, V., & Ferrante, F. M. (1989). Modifiers of patient-controlled analgesia efficacy. I. Locus of control. *Pain*, 39, 17–22.
- Lawrence, W., & Barker, M. (2009). A review of factors affecting the food choices of disadvantaged women. *Proceedings of the Nutrition Society*, 68, 189–194.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Palermo-Neto, J., de Oliveira, M. C., & Robespierre de Souza, W. (2003). Effects of physical and psychological stressors on behavior, macrophage activity, and Ehrlich tumor growth. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 17, 43–54.
- Taylor, S. E. (1995). *Health psychology* (3rd ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Tovbin, D., Jean, T., Schnieder, A., Granovsky, R., & Gidron, Y. (2003). Psychosocial correlates and moderators of QOL in hemodialysis. *Quality of Life Research*, 12, 709–717.

Patient Decision Aid

- [Decision Aid](#)

Patient Decision Support Technology

- [Decision Aid](#)

Patient Education

- [Diabetes Education](#)
- [Health Education](#)

Patient Health/Engagement

- [Consumer Health Informatics](#)

Patient Privacy

- [Confidentiality](#)

Patient Protection

- [Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act \(HIPAA\)](#)

Patient Safety

- [Human Factors/Ergonomics](#)

Patient-Centered Care

Cassie Cunningham
College of Public Health, University of Iowa,
Liberty, IA, USA

Definition

Patient-centered care is a term that is becoming widely used in medical practice. It is typically described in the context of patient-practitioner communication. In contrast to provider-centered care, which places control and decision-making power almost solely in the hands of the health-care provider, is patient-centered. Patient-centered care promotes active participation on the part of the patient decisions regarding their health and health care. Moreover, patient-centered care requires practitioners to provide care concordant with the patient's values as well as account for the patient's desire for information provision and for shared decision-making responsibilities. Patient-centered care has been shown to be associated with increased patient satisfaction and adherence and may also enhance the relationship between the patient and the health-care provider.

References and Readings

- Mead, N., & Bower, P. (2000). Patient-centredness: A conceptual framework and review of the empirical literature. *Social Science Medicine*, 51, 1087–1110.
- Stewart, M. (2001). Towards a global definition of patient-centered care. *British Medical Journal*, 233, 444–445.

Patient-Reported Outcome

Hiroe Kikuchi

Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, Center Hospital, National Center for Global Health and Medicine, Tokyo, Japan

Definition

Patient-reported outcomes (PROs) are responses to questions or statements about their perceptions or activities, such as symptoms, capabilities, or performance of roles or responsibilities (Revicki et al. 2008).

Description

PROs are typically measured by self-completed questionnaires and combined in some way to create summary scores that can be used to measure concepts such as physical, psychological, or social functioning and well-being or symptom burden or severity. Symptoms can be rated based on frequency, severity, duration, degree of bother, or impact on patient activities. PROs are increasingly accompanying the traditional clinical ways of measuring health and the effects of treatment on the patient, both nationally and internationally, in order to make a more comprehensive evaluation. According to this context, The Patient-Reported Outcomes Measurement Information System (PROMIS[®]) initiative, funded by National Institutes of Health (NIH), began in 2004 with six primary research sites and a statistical coordinating center in the USA. The aims of PROMIS[®] are to use measurement science to create a state-of-

the-art assessment system for self-reported health and to provide clinicians and researchers access to a national resource for precise and efficient measurement of patient-reported symptoms, functioning, and health-related quality of life, appropriate for patients with a wide variety of chronic disease conditions (Cella et al. 2010). In addition, the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) guidance on “Patient-Reported Outcome Measures: Use in Medical Product Development to Support Labeling Claims” (2009) has engendered wide discussion about PRO domains that should be endpoints in clinical trials (Cleeland et al. 2010). In the guidance, reducing the severity and impact of symptoms is considered as a natural intervention endpoint for cancer, a condition associated with considerable symptom burden. Because symptoms are best described by patients who have them, PROs as measures of treatment effectiveness or the differences among treatments provide essential information about the efficacy and toxicity of a treatment and its effects on function. The FDA guidance provides a framework for addressing such issues as clinical significance, study design, and statistical methods. However, there are some problems to be solved. In the guidance, no set of recommended approaches for assessing specific symptoms by patient report in clinical trials exists, other than for pain. Recommendations about the best approach for evaluating responsiveness and determining minimally important differences for PRO instruments are still needed (Revicki et al. 2008). With regard to PROMIS[®], there are many sets of items including physical health, mental health, social health, and global health for adult and pediatric measures (Batterham et al. 2015). In addition, it has both versions of paper-and-pencil and computer adaptive tests and translations in Spanish and many other languages (Sung et al. 2016).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Cancer, Types of](#)
- ▶ [National Institutes of Health](#)
- ▶ [Pain](#)

References and Further Reading

- Batterham, P. J., Brewer, J. L., Tjhin, A., Sunderland, M., Carragher, N., & Cleave, A. L. (2015). Systematic item selection process applied to developing item pools for assessing multiple mental health problems. *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 68, 913–919.
- Boers, M. (2010). Standing on the promises: First wave validation reports of the patient-reported outcome measurement information system. *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 63, 1167–1168.
- Cella, D., Riley, W., Stone, A., Rothrock, N., Reeve, B., Yount, S., et al. (2010). Initial adult health item banks and first-wave testing of the Patient-Reported Outcomes Measurement Information System Network: 2005–2008. *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 63, 1179–1194.
- Cleeland, C. S., Sloan, J. A., & ASCPRO Organizing Group. (2010). Assessing the symptoms of Cancer using patient-reported outcomes (ASCPRO): Searching for standards. *Journal of Pain and Symptom Management*, 39, 1077–1085.
- Revicki, D., Hays, R. D., Cella, D., & Sloan, J. (2008). Recommended methods for determining responsiveness and minimally important differences for patient-reported outcomes. *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 61, 102–109.
- Sung, V. W., Griffith, J. W., Rogers, R. G., Raker, C. A., & Clark, M. A. (2016). Item bank development, calibration and validation for patient-reported outcomes in female urinary incontinence. *Quality of Life Research*, 25, 1645–1654.

Patients

- [Care Recipients](#)

Pavlovian Conditioning

- [Classical Conditioning](#)

Paxil®

- [Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors \(SSRIs\)](#)

PCP

- [Primary Care Physicians](#)

PD

- [Parkinson's Disease: Psychosocial Aspects](#)

Pediatric Psychology

- [Child Development](#)

Pediatric Quality of Life Inventory (PedsQL)

Meghan L. Marsac¹ and Melissa A. Alderfer²

¹Department of Pediatrics, Kentucky Children's Hospital and College of Medicine, University of Kentucky, Lexington, PA, USA

²Division of Oncology, The Children's Hospital of Philadelphia, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Synonyms

[PedsQL 4.0](#)

Definition

The Pediatric Quality of Life Inventory or PedsQL™, now in its fourth version, is a series of assessment instruments designed to measure the health-related quality of life. The authors of the measure conceptualize health-related quality of life as physical, psychological, and social functioning. The PedsQL 4.0 provides an opportunity for the assessment of both overall (generic) quality of life and disease-specific quality of life.

The PedsQL 4.0 Generic Core Scales are appropriate for assessing health-related quality

of life in both healthy and chronically ill children. The four scales making up this generic battery include Physical Functioning (8 items), Emotional Functioning (5 items), Social Functioning (5 items), and School Functioning (5 items). From these four core scales, three standardized summary scores can be calculated: a Total Quality of Life Score, a Physical Health Summary Score (based on the physical functioning items), and a Psychosocial Health Summary Score (combining emotional, social, and school items). In addition to these generic core scales, condition-specific modules have been developed for children with arthritis, asthma, brain tumors, cancer, cardiac conditions, cerebral palsy, diabetes, Duchenne muscular dystrophy, end-stage renal disease, eosinophilic esophagitis, neuromuscular disorders, pain, gastrointestinal diseases, sickle cell disease, rheumatological diseases, and transplant.

On each of the PedsQL 4.0 scales, the respondent is asked to indicate how much of a problem each item has been in the past month with response options of 0 = never, 1 = almost never, 2 = sometimes, 3 = often, and 4 = almost always. Item scores are reverse coded, linearly converted to a 100-point scale, and averaged to form scale and summary scores with higher scores indicating better quality of life. Parent-completed versions of the scales, reporting on their child's health-related quality of life, are available for infants (aged 1–12 months, 13–24 months), toddlers (aged 2–4 years), young children (aged 5–7 years), children (aged 8–12 years), and adolescents (aged 13–18 years). Parallel, developmentally appropriate, child self-report versions of the scales are available for young children (5–7 years), children (8–12 years), adolescents (13–18 years), young adults (18–25 years), and adults (>25 years). The PedsQL 4.0 is available in many languages including Spanish, French, German, Italian, Hebrew, Portuguese, and Russian. In addition, authors provide a guide for a linguistic validation process, if the language desired is not yet available. Authors of the PedsQL have chosen to allow organizations to build their own online version of the measure per their licensing agreement; the organization must agree to allow the online

version of the measure to be reviewed by measure authors.

The psychometric properties of the PedsQL 4.0 are generally good. Adequate internal consistency has been demonstrated for the scales with most researchers reporting coefficient alphas greater than .70. As evidence of validity, scores on the scales have been shown to correlate with other measures of health-related quality of life and to functional indices of health such as the number of days the child was ill, the number of school days missed by the child, the number of work days missed by the parent, and objective measures of disease severity. The generic core scales have also been found to distinguish between children with chronic health conditions and those who are healthy.

Further information regarding the PedsQL™ 4.0 including access to the measures can be obtained at www.pedsq.org.

Cross-References

- [Quality of Life](#)
- [Quality of Life: Measurement](#)

References and Further Readings

- Desai, A. D., Zhou, C., Stanford, S., Haaland, W., Varni, J. W., & Mangione-Smith, R. M. (2014). Validity and responsiveness of the Pediatric Quality of Life Inventory (PedsQL) 4.0 Generic Core Scales in the pediatric inpatient setting. *JAMA Pediatrics*, 68, 1114–1121.
- Franciosi, J. P., Hommel, K. A., Bendo, C. B., King, E. C., Collins, M. H., Eby, M. D., Marsolo, K., Abonia, J. P., von Tiehl, K. F., Putnam, P. E., Greenler, A. J., Greenberg, A. B., Bryson, R. A., Davis, C. M., Olive, A. P., Gupta, S. K., Erwin, E. A., Klinnert, M. D., Spergel, J. M., Denham, J. M., Furuta, G. T., Rothenberg, M. E., & Varni, J. W. (2013). PedsQL™ Eosinophilic Esophagitis Module: Feasibility, reliability and validity. *Journal of Pediatric Gastroenterology & Nutrition*, 57, 57–66.
- Palermo, T. M., Long, A. C., Lewandowski, A., Drotar, D., Quittner, A. L., & Walker, L. S. (2008). Evidence-based assessment of health-related quality of life and functional impairment in pediatric psychology. *Journal of Pediatric Psychology*, 33, 983–996.
- Panepinto, J. A., Torres, S., Bendo, C. B., McCavit, T. L., Dinu, B., Sherman-Bien, S., Bemrich-Stolz, C., &

Varni, J. W. (2014). PedsQL™ Multidimensional Fatigue Scale in sickle cell disease: Feasibility, reliability and validity. *Pediatric Blood & Cancer*, 61, 171–177.

Varni, J. W., Limbers, C. A., & Burwinkle, T. M. (2007). Impaired health-related quality of life in children and adolescents with chronic conditions: A comparative analysis of 10 disease clusters and 33 disease categories/severities utilizing the PedsQL 4.0 Generic Core Scales. *Health and quality of life outcomes*, 5, 43. <http://www.hqlo.com/content/5/1/43>

Varni, J.W., Bendo, C.B., Denham, J., Shulman, R.J., Self, M.M., Neigut, D.A., Nurko, S., Patel, A.S, Franciosi, J. P., Saps, M., Yeckes, A., Langseder, A., Saeed, S., & Pohl, J.F. (2015). PedsQL™ Gastrointestinal Symptoms Scales and Gastrointestinal Worry Scales in pediatric patients with functional and organic gastrointestinal diseases in comparison to healthy controls. *Quality of Life Research*, 24, 363–378.

Varni, J. W., Seid, M., & Kurtin, P. S. (2001). PedsQL™4.0: Reliability and validity of the Pediatric Quality of Life Inventory™ Version 4.0 generic core scales in healthy and patient populations. *Medical Care*, 39, 800–812.

PedsQL 4.0

► [Pediatric Quality of Life Inventory \(PedsQL\)](#)

Peer Coaches

► [Promotoras](#)

Peer Health Educators

► [Promotoras](#)

Peer Health Promoters

► [Promotoras](#)

Penetrance

Rong Jiang

Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Definition

Penetrance in genetics is the proportion of individuals carrying a particular gene variant (allele or genotype) that also possess an associated trait (phenotype). If penetrance of a disease allele is 100%, then all individuals carrying that allele will have the associated disease. Penetrance only considers whether individuals express the trait or not. This differs from expressivity, which characterizes qualitatively or quantitatively the extent of phenotypic variation given a particular genotype. Penetrance is age related (Bessett et al. 1998) and is affected by environmental and behavioral factors such as diet and smoking. It is also modified by other genes and epigenetic regulation.

Cross-References

► [Allele](#)
 ► [Epigenetics](#)
 ► [Genotype](#)
 ► [Phenotype](#)

References and Further Readings

Bessett, J. H., Forbes, S. A., Pannett, A. A. J., Lloyd, S. E., Christie, P. T., Wooding, C., et al. (1998). Characterization of mutations in patients with multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1. *American Journal of Human Genetics*, 62(2), 232–244.

Pepper

► [Capsaicin](#)

Peptic Ulcer

► Gastric Ulcers and Stress

Perceived Behavioral Control

► Perceived Control

Perceived Benefits

Yvonne Leung

Department of Psychosocial Oncology and Palliative Care, Princess Margaret Hospital, University Health Network/University of Toronto, Toronto, ON, Canada

Synonyms

Benefit finding; Flourishing; Positive by-products; Positive changes; Positive meaning; Posttraumatic growth; Stress-related growth; Thriving

Definition

Perceived benefit refers to the perception of the positive consequences that are caused by a specific action. In behavioral medicine, the term perceived benefit is frequently used to explain an individual's motives of performing a behavior and adopting an intervention or treatment. Researchers and theorists attempt to measure positive perceptions because they believe that a behavior is driven by an individual's cognition in terms of acceptability, motives, and attitudes toward such behavior, especially if positive.

In psychology, five models may explain the performance of health behavior related to the construct of perceived benefit. First, the Health Belief Model (Becker 1974) describes that the perceived benefit is one of the four major predictors of

health-related behavior. Second, the Trans-theoretical Model (Prochaska and DiClemente 1986) posits that the progress of change depends upon the decisional balance weighting between perceived benefits and barriers. Third, the Protection Motivation Theory (Rogers 1983) puts forward that the intention to protect oneself depends upon four cognitions among which is the perceived efficacy (including benefits) of the recommended preventive behavior. Finally, the Theory of Reasoned Action (Fishbein and Ajzen 1975) and its extension the Theory of Planned Behavior (Ajzen 1985) both suggest that a person's behavior is driven by the persons' attitude about the behavior, which consists of beliefs about the consequences of performing the behavior multiplied by his or her valuation of these consequences.

In trauma literature, perceived benefits essentially mean the perceptions of positive psychological changes as a result of coping with a trauma or a highly stressful event (McMillen and Fisher 1998). For example, after struggling with a highly stressful event, an individual may experience increases in personal strength, relatedness to others, and one's appreciation of life. In particular, McMiller and Fisher have developed the Perceived Benefit Scales (PBS) to assess several commonly reported positive by-products of adversity. On the PBS, respondents rate 30 positive by-product items on how similar they were to their own experiences by using a 5-point scale. The PBS has eight subscales: increased self-efficacy, increased faith in people, increased compassion, increased spirituality, increased community closeness, increased family closeness, lifestyle changes, and material gain. This concept is a form of cognitive coping strategy often associated with improved outcomes including participation in cancer screening tests.

Cross-References

- Benefit Finding
- Coping Strategies
- Positive Psychology
- Posttraumatic Growth

References and Readings

- Ajzen, I. (1985). From intentions to actions: A theory of planned behavior. In J. Kuhl & J. Beckmann (Eds.), *Action control: From cognition to behavior*. Berlin/Heidelberg/New York: Springer.
- Ajzen, I., & Fishbein, M. (1980). *Understanding attitudes and predicting social behavior*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.
- Becker, M. H. (Ed.). (1974). The health belief model and personal health behavior. *Health Education Monographs*, 2, 324–473.
- Fishbein, M., & Ajzen, I. (1975). *Belief, attitude, intention, and behavior: An introduction to theory and research*. Reading: Addison-Wesley.
- McMillen, J. C., & Fisher, R. H. (1998). The perceived benefit scales: Measuring perceived positive life changes after negative events. *Social Work Research*, 22, 173–186.
- Prochaska, J. O., & DiClemente, C. C. (1986). Toward a comprehensive model of change. In W. R. Miller & N. Heather (Eds.), *Treating addictive behaviors: Processes of change* (pp. 3–27). New York: Plenum Press.
- Rogers, R. W. (1983). Cognitive and physiological processes in fear appeals and attitude change: A revised theory of protection motivation. In J. Cacioppo & R. Petty (Eds.), *Social psychophysiology*. New York: Guilford Press.

Perceived Control

Peter A. Hall¹ and Chris Zehr²

¹Faculty of Applied Health Sciences, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

²Department of Health Studies and Gerontology, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Synonyms

Perceived behavioral control

Definition

Perceived behavioral control is the extent to which an individual perceives that they are in control of a given target behavior. It is considered

a core construct in the theory of planned behavior.

Description

Perceived behavioral control (PBC) was included in the theory of planned behavior (TPB; Ajzen 1991) in order to predict/explain behaviors that are not entirely under the volitional control of the individual. According to the TPB, PBC is determined by beliefs regarding factors that may act to facilitate or inhibit successful behavioral performance (Ajzen 1991; Conner and Armitage 1998). For example, a belief that exercising after work is associated with intractable barriers (i.e., cold weather, icy sidewalks, limited schedule) may lead to low perceived behavioral control over exercise, in turn leading to less frequent exercise during winter months. However, a belief that there are few barriers to exercising (i.e., favorable weather, few other time commitments) may result in greater perceived behavioral control over exercise, which in turn may lead to more frequent exercising during summer months. Importantly, control beliefs may concern factors external to the individual (e.g., weather conditions) or internal (e.g., innate ability; Conner and Armitage 1998).

In the context of the TPB, PBC is thought to influence behavioral performance in two ways: directly and indirectly. PBC affects behavioral performance indirectly by influencing behavioral intentions to perform a particular behavior (Armitage and Connor 2001). Those who perceive that they are in greater control of a given behavior may have stronger intentions to act compared to those who perceive less control over the behavior. That is, the influence of PBC on behavior is mediated through intentions.

PBC can affect behavioral performance directly (Armitage and Connor 2001). Given that perceptions of behavioral control may reflect actual behavioral control, PBC may influence behavioral performance as an immediate antecedent under conditions where there is little volitional control (Ajzen 1991). For example, if an individual does not have access to a fitness facility or

equipment, low PBC for engaging in resistance training would accurately reflect the individual's actual (low) control over the behavior.

References and Further Readings

- Ajzen, I. (1991). The theory of planned behavior. *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes*, 50(2), 179–211.
- Ajzen, I. (2002). Perceived behavioral control, self-efficacy, locus of control, and the theory of planned behavior. *Journal of Applied Social Psychology*, 32(4), 665–683.
- Armitage, C. J., & Connor, M. (2001). Efficacy of the theory of planned behavior: A meta-analytic review. *British Journal of Social Psychology*, 40(4), 471–499.
- Conner, M., & Armitage, C. J. (1998). Extending the theory of planned behavior: A review and avenues for further research. *Journal of Applied Social Psychology*, 28(15), 1429–1464. Special issue: Expectancy-value models of attitude and behavior.
- Godin, G., & Kok, G. (1996). The theory of planned behaviour: A review of its application to health-related behaviors. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 11(2), 87–98.

Perceived Risk

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

This term refers to an individual's subjective evaluation of his or her risk of an illness or an adverse outcome, often in relation to performing a certain risky behavior. This term maps onto the Health Belief Model (Rosenstock 1966), which tries to model why people use health services or adhere to medically advocated healthy behaviors. Perceived risk, for example, can be in relation to having a myocardial infarction due to smoking or having skin cancer due to sun exposure or having an accident due to risk taking on the road. Relevant to perceived risk, Weinstein (1982) coined the terms

“unrealistic optimism” and “unrealistic pessimism,” where people are asked to estimate their risk of having a disease or an adverse outcome, compared to people of their age and sex. Answers are rated on a Likert scale ranging, for example, from –5 (far below others' risk) through 0 (same as others' risk) to +5 (far above others' risk). Levels of perceived risk could be related to prior exposure to a condition, one's knowledge of such a condition, exposure to one of a condition's risk factors, and personality aspects. For example, in a recent review of 53 studies on risk perception among people at high risk for cancer, Tilburt et al. (2011) found that family cancer history, previous tests and treatments, younger age, believing in cancer's preventability and severity, monitoring coping style, distress, and the ability to process numbers all correlated with cancer risk perceptions. Concerning prediction, many studies have shown that perceived risk is related to various behavioral and health outcomes. For example, Mann et al. (2007) found that the level of perceived risk was one of several predictors of adherence to prescribed statins, which are used to treat hypercholesterolemia and prevent cardiac events. An older study found that young male drivers estimated their chance of having an accident as lower than their peers and as lower than older male drivers' estimates, when viewing various traffic scenarios (Finn and Bragg 1986). These incorrect perceptions of risk were interpreted as one of the reasons for the overrepresentation of young male drivers in fatal accidents. Knowing one's levels of perceived risk can help predicting his or her adherence to an advocated health behavior or to stopping an unhealthy behavior. Furthermore, perceived risk, if unrealistic, can be a target of brief cognitive restructuring, in the service of healthier behaviors, disease prevention, and treatment.

References and Further Readings

- Finn, P., & Bragg, B. W. (1986). Perception of the risk of an accident by young and older drivers. *Accident Analysis and Prevention*, 18, 289–298.
- Mann, D. M., Allegrante, J. P., Natarajan, S., Halm, E. A., & Charlson, M. (2007). Predictors of adherence to

- statins for primary prevention. *Cardiovascular Drugs and Therapy*, 21, 311–316.
- Rosenstock, I. M. (1966). Why people use health services. *The Milbank Memorial Fund Quarterly*, 44, 94–124.
- Tilburt, J. C., James, K. M., Sinicrope, P. S., Eton, D. T., Costello, B. A., Carey, J., et al. (2011). Factors influencing cancer risk perception in high risk populations: A systematic review. *Hereditary Cancer in Clinical Practice*, 19, 2.
- Weinstein, N. D. (1982). Unrealistic optimism about susceptibility to health problems. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 5, 441–460.

Perceived Stress

Anna C. Phillips
School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation
Sciences, University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Stress](#)

Definition (and Description)

Perceived stress is the feelings or thoughts that an individual has about how much stress they are under at a given point in time or over a given time period.

Perceived stress incorporates feelings about the uncontrollability and unpredictability of one's life, how often one has to deal with irritating hassles, how much change is occurring in one's life, and confidence in one's ability to deal with problems or difficulties. It is not measuring the types or frequencies of stressful events which have happened to a person, but rather how an individual feels about the general stressfulness of their life and their ability to handle such stress. Individuals may suffer similar negative life events but appraise the impact or severity of these to different extents as a result of factors such as personality, coping resources, and support. In this way, perceived stress reflects

the interaction between an individual and their environment which they appraise as threatening or overwhelming their resources in a way which will affect their well-being (Lazarus and Folkman 1984). Perceived stress is commonly measured as the frequency of such feelings via a questionnaire such as the Perceived Stress Scale (Cohen et al. 1983).

Cross-References

- [Life Events](#)
- [Negative Thoughts](#)
- [Perceived Stress Scale \(PSS\)](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Further Readings

- Cohen, S., Kamarck, T., & Mermelstein, R. (1983). A global measure of perceived stress. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 24, 385–396.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, coping and adaptation*. New York: Springer.

Perceived Stress Scale (PSS)

Sherilynn F. Chan¹ and Annette M. La Greca²

¹Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center, University of Cincinnati College of Medicine, Cincinnati, OH, USA

²Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Definition and Description

The Perceived Stress Scale (PSS) is one of the most widely used instruments to measure stress perceptions. The original PSS is a 14-item self-report measure designed to assess “the degree to which situations in one's life are appraised as stressful” (Cohen et al. 1983, p. 385). It is a global measure of stress, rather than a measure of specific

stressful life events. Specifically, items assess the extent to which one's life is perceived as "unpredictable, uncontrollable, and overloading" (Cohen et al. 1983, p. 387). The measure was intended for use with community samples of adolescents or adults with an educational level of junior high school or more. Sample items include the following: "In the last month...how often have you been upset because of something that happened unexpectedly?," "...how often have you felt that you were unable to control the important things in your life?," and "...how often have you felt confident about your ability to handle your personal problems?" (Cohen et al. 1983). Half of the questions are positively stated and reverse coded. Each item is rated on a 5-point scale (0 = Never, 1 = Almost Never, 2 = Sometimes, 3 = Fairly Often, 4 = Very Often) and summed to create a total score. Ten-item (PSS-10) and four-item (PSS-4) versions of this measure have been developed (Cohen and Williamson 1988; Cohen et al. 1983).

Both the 14- and 10-item versions have good psychometric properties. In studies of adults, the PSS-14 has strong internal consistency ($\alpha = 0.84$ to 0.86) and good test-retest reliability ($r = 0.85$ over a 2-day period, $r = 0.55$ over a 6-week period; Cohen et al. 1983). In terms of concurrent validity, the PSS-14 is positively related to the number and perceived impact of life stressors ($r = 0.17$ to 0.35 ; Cohen et al. 1983). With regard to predictive validity, PSS scores predict depressive symptoms ($r = 0.65$ to 0.76), social anxiety ($r = 0.37$ to 0.48), and various health-related outcomes ($r = 0.52$ to 0.65) (Cohen et al. 1983). Factor analyses conducted with psychiatric inpatients revealed two factors: perceived distress and perceived coping (Hewitt et al. 1992; Martin et al. 1995).

Psychometric data also support the reliability and validity of the PSS-10 (Roberti et al. 2006), and an exploratory factor analysis revealed two factors: perceived helplessness and perceived self-efficacy (Roberti et al. 2006). Measurement invariance across gender and a 2-year time frame for the two-factor model has been demonstrated (Barbosa-Leiker et al. 2013). The PSS-4 can be a useful measure when an abridged version is

needed; however, its internal reliability ($\alpha = 0.72$) and test-retest reliability ($r = 0.55$) are lower than that for the longer versions (Cohen et al. 1983). The PSS-14 and PSS-10 have been translated into many languages, including Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, German, Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, Finnish, Polish, Hungarian, Bulgarian, Serbian, Turkish, Greek, Hebrew, Russian, Arabic, Chinese, Korean, Japanese, and Thai. While some of these translated versions have been validated, the psychometric properties for many of them have not yet been evaluated ("Dr. Cohen's Scales" 2015).

The PSS has been used to assess perceived stress among many different populations including college, graduate, and medical students, nurses, physicians, athletes, pregnant and postpartum women, and the elderly. The PSS can be used to examine the role of appraised stress in physiological and behavioral disorders and can also be employed in research and clinical settings as an outcome variable (Cohen et al. 1983). Furthermore, this measure can be used as a screening device to identify individuals at risk for certain psychiatric disorders such as depression (Cohen et al. 1983) and may be a valuable tool for use within clinical settings to aid treatment planning and monitor treatment response (Roberti et al. 2006).

Cross-References

- [Perceived Stress](#)
- [Psychological Stress](#)

References and Further Reading

- Barbosa-Leiker, C., Kostick, M., Lei, M., McPherson, S., Roper, V., Hoekstra, T., & Wright, B. (2013). Measurement invariance of the perceived stress scale and latent mean differences across gender and time. *Stress and Health, 29*, 253–260.
- Cohen, S., & Williamson, G. (1988). Perceived stress in a probability sample of the United States. In S. Spacapan & S. Oskamp (Eds.), *The social psychology of health: Claremont symposium on applied social psychology*. Newbury Park: Sage.

- Cohen, S., Kamarck, T., & Mermelstein, R. (1983). A global measure of perceived stress. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 24, 385–396.
- Dr. Cohen's Scales. (2015, February 19). Retrieved August 9, 2019, from <https://www.cmu.edu/dietrich/psychology/stress-immunity-disease-lab/scales/index.html>
- Hewitt, P. L., Flett, G. L., & Mosher, S. W. (1992). The perceived stress scale: Factor structure and relation to depression symptoms in a psychiatric sample. *Journal of Psychopathology and Behavioral Assessment*, 14, 247–257.
- Martin, R. A., Kazarian, S. S., & Brieter, H. J. (1995). Perceived stress, life events, dysfunctional attitudes, and depression in adolescent psychiatric inpatients. *Journal of Psychopathology and Behavioral Assessment*, 17, 81–95.
- Roberti, J., Harrington, L., & Storch, E. (2006). Further psychometric support for the 10-item version of the perceived stress scale. *Journal of College Counseling*, 9(2), 135–147.

Perception of Internal Noise (False)

► Tinnitus and Cognitive Behavior Therapy

Perceptions of Stress

Kristen Salomon¹ and Mardís Karlsdóttir²

¹Department of Psychology, University of South Florida College of Arts and Sciences, Tampa, FL, USA

²Department of Psychology, The University of Iceland School of Health Sciences, Reykjavík, Iceland

Synonyms

Stress appraisals

Definition

The construals or appraisals of an event that result in the experience of stress. Major theoretical definitions of stress emphasize perception as an

important component responsible for the experience of stress. According to Lazarus and Folkman (1984), events are perceived as stressful if they are perceived as (1) relevant to one's well-being and (2) having the potential for harm or loss. Primary appraisals of demand, difficulty, and/or uncertainty when weighed against secondary appraisals of coping resources and abilities may result in further perceptions of stress as a challenge to be met and overcome (resources outweigh demands) or as a threat to be endured (demands outweigh resources). These resultant perceptions can influence the psychological and physiological responses to the stressor (Tomaka et al. 1993). Perceptions of a stressful event's duration (chronic vs. acute), severity, controllability, and predictability can also influence responses to the stressor. According to Hobfoll (1989), stress results from the perceived potential loss of resources. As a result, perceptions of current resources and the potential to gain resources are involved in perceiving an event as stressful.

Cross-References

- [Mental Stress](#)
- [Stress](#)
- [Stress Responses](#)

References and Readings

- Hobfoll, S. E. (1989). Conservation of resources: A new attempt at conceptualizing stress. *American Psychologist*, 44, 513–524.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Tomaka, J., Blascovich, J., Kelsey, R. M., & Leitten, C. L. (1993). Subjective, physiological, and behavioral effects of threat and challenge appraisals. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 65, 248–260.

Performance Anxiety

- [Anxiety](#)

Peripheral Arterial Disease (PAD)/Vascular Disease

Leah Rosenberg

Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

Complications of atherosclerosis; Intermittent claudication; Rest pain

Definition

Peripheral arterial disease is the mismatch of blood flow supply and demand in the distal arteries.

Description

Peripheral arterial disease (PAD) is a common manifestation of atherosclerosis and is often a complication of hypertension and/or diabetes. It is estimated that PAD affects more than eight million Americans. PAD, or the accumulation of atherosclerotic plaques leading to narrowing in noncardiac vasculature, can affect renal arteries, carotid arteries, or any other branch vessels from the aorta like the subclavian artery or iliacs. When patients with PAD become symptomatic, there is a mismatch between the metabolic supply and demand of a tissue. When an upper or lower extremity is involved, PAD may starve the affected muscle of oxygenated blood flow and causes discomfort or pain, usually exacerbated by increased activity of the affected limb. In the lower extremity, this mismatch generally presents as intermittent claudication, commonly referred to as “walking pain,” where patients develop lower extremity discomfort while ambulating. While there are anatomical entrapment syndromes, deep venous

thromboses, and other neurological entities that must be ruled out, PAD is a significant cause of morbidity and mortality (American Heart Association 2011).

PAD may present before arteriosclerotic disease of the great vessels, or heart becomes clinically relevant. Signs of lower extremity PAD on physical exam include shiny, tight, and hairless skin on the lower leg. Other signs of PAD include ischemic nonhealing leg ulcers and gangrene. The limb temperature often feels cool to the touch and has decreased sensation on examination. Most patients do not perceive the rest pain of intermittent claudication. In fact, only approximately 10% of patients with measurable PAD present to physicians complaining of the typical activity-related symptoms of PAD. Early signs of PAD include erectile dysfunction, leg cramps, or muscle fatigue that exceeds the expected effects of normal exertion.

The ankle-brachial index (ABI) is an excellent screening test for PAD of the distal extremity, although direct arteriography is the gold standard. Measuring a patient's ABI is a relatively low-cost, noninvasive diagnostic test that uses the systolic blood pressure readings of the brachial, posterior tibial, and dorsalis pedis arteries. Each lower extremity is examined separately. The formula involves by dividing the maximal ankle pressure in each lower extremity by the higher of the two brachial artery pressures.

The symptoms of PAD may be modifiable through lipid management and behavioral change. While not life threatening, moderate-to-severe PAD and claudication can have a serious impact on a patient's quality of life. Treatment for PAD may be behavioral (i.e., physical activity, smoking cessation), medication-based (statins and antiplatelet agents), or interventional (angioplasty, stent implantation, or bypass surgery).

References and Reading

Statistical Fact Sheet. (2011). Peripheral arterial disease. American Heart Association. <http://www.americanheart.org>. Accessed 9 Oct 2011.

Perseverative Cognition

J. F. Brosschot¹, Bart Verkuil¹ and

Julian F. Thayer²

¹Clinical, Health and Neuro Psychology, Leiden University, Leiden, The Netherlands

²Department of Psychology, The Ohio State University, Columbus, OH, USA

Synonyms

Intrusive thoughts; Repetitive thinking; Rumination; Worry

Definition

Perseverative cognition is defined as “the repeated or chronic activation of the cognitive representation of one or more psychological stressors” (Brosschot et al. 2006). Stressful events, or stressors, can make people “linger on” mentally. Humans, unlike animals, can make mental representations of stressors, long before and long after these events occur or are believed to occur. This continued cognitive representation of stressful events, before or after their occurrence, and even regardless of their actual occurrence, is called perseverative cognition. It can take the form of worry, rumination, angry brooding, etc., but also, for example, as mind wandering about negative topics. Perseverative cognition appears to play a causal or sustaining role in several major psychopathologies (anxiety disorders, depression, post-traumatic disorder) (Watkins 2008) – indeed, worry is the hallmark of general anxiety disorder – as well as in somatic disease, including subjective bodily complaints as well as cardiovascular disease (Verkuil et al. 2010).

During perseverative cognition, physiological activity can be increased. The “perseverative cognition hypothesis” (Brosschot et al. 2006) holds that the health damage due to stress is actually caused (“mediated”) by perseverative cognition, because the latter prolongs the physiological responses to stressors. It has been suggested that

perseverative cognition may partly be unconscious, while it still has physiological effects (Brosschot et al. 2010). This possibility, or the more general possibility of unconscious stress having health impacts, has the potential to open a new area in stress research.

There are several ways to reduce perseverative cognition. The most direct way is “postponing” or “scheduling” worrying or rumination, that is, limiting it to small daily time periods to obtain control over it. More indirect interventions are mediation mindfulness and computer-based attentional training techniques (Verkuil et al. 2010).

Cross-References

- Intrusive Thoughts
- Worry

References and Readings

- Brosschot, J. F., Gerin, W., & Thayer, J. F. (2006). The perseverative cognition hypothesis: A review of worry, prolonged stress-related physiological activation, and health. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 60, 113–124.
- Brosschot, J. F., Verkuil, B., & Thayer, J. F. (2010). Conscious and unconscious perseverative cognition: Is a large part of prolonged physiological activity due to unconscious stress? *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 69(4), 407–416.
- Verkuil, B., Brosschot, J. F., Gebhardt, W., & Thayer, J. F. (2010). When worries make you sick: A review of perseverative cognition, the default stress response and somatic health. *Journal of Experimental Psychopathology*, 1(1), 87–118.
- Watkins, E. R. (2008). Constructive and unconstructive repetitive thought. *Psychological Bulletin*, 134(2), 163–206.

Persistent Depressive Disorder

- Unipolar Depression

Persistent Pain

- Chronic Pain Patients

Personal Data Analytics

► [Quantified Self](#)

Personal Health Informatics

► [Consumer Health Informatics](#)

Personal Health Record

► [Electronic Health Record](#)

Personality

Matthew Cribbet and Paula Williams
Department of Psychology, University of Utah,
Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Synonyms

[Disposition](#); [Individual Difference Factors](#); [Traits](#)

Definition

Although definitions may vary across the theoretical and methodological approaches, the term *personality* generally refers to stable patterns in how people think, act, and feel that make them unique.

Description

The study of personality has been guided by two major themes: (a) the study of individual dimensions along which people differ (i.e., nomothetic approaches) and (b) the study of individuals as unique and integrated people (i.e., idiographic approaches). Diverse theoretical and methodological approaches that have guided research in these

two major domains have also contributed to controversies that have waxed and waned throughout the history of this discipline. In addition, research focused on explicating the relative role of the person versus the situation, as well as biology versus environment has been central to this area of psychology; however, in recent years, the focus on such false dichotomies has yielded to more integrated theoretical perspectives on personality. Emerging personality research ranges from the study of genetics and biological systems to the influence of culture on personality development and expression. An overview of the prominent theoretical approaches to the study of personality is provided below, including psychoanalytic, trait, social-cognitive, and interpersonal approaches.

Psychoanalytic Approaches to the Study of Personality

Although less prominent in current personality research, it is important to describe the psychoanalytic perspective on the development and manifestation of personality. Specifically, psychoanalytic approaches assert that stable personality patterns develop in childhood. According to this perspective, early childhood experiences are important, because they shape how individuals relate to others as adults. As individuals develop into mature adults, mental processes not only guide interpersonal interactions, but may also operate in parallel so that people can feel conflicted about the same person or situation. According to this perspective and start the sentence with Personality develops as individuals learn to relate to others by regulating tension associated with sexual and aggressive drives. Finally, psychoanalytic theory emphasizes the role of mental representations of the self, others, and relationships as a framework for how people interact with one another. Psychoanalytic approaches have emphasized that behavior arises from thoughts, feelings, and motives that are outside of awareness. This reliance on unconscious mental processes separates psychoanalytic approaches from other perspectives on personality development.

Early psychoanalytic writing placed motivation at the center of theories of personality.

According to this perspective, human motives could be grouped into two broad classes: life instincts (that include self-preservation and sexual motives) and death instincts or aggressive motives. This dualistic approach to personality was criticized for being overly simplistic. Subsequent research efforts expanded upon these two instincts by creating a more extensive catalog of “needs” or motives. These attempts to reformulate the psychoanalytic concept of instincts and motives stimulated a great deal of empirical research. Despite stark criticism, research on unconscious motives on adult behavior has provided the foundation for several important developments in the study of personality. For example, empirical work on unconscious motives has stimulated the fields of cognitive information processing, including research on implicit psychological mechanisms that have made the study of the unconscious more scientifically acceptable.

An important criticism of the psychoanalytic approach to personality is that the operationalization of key theoretical constructs has proven difficult. Assessments of unconscious motives and thoughts through the traditional psychoanalytic methods of free association, the unpacking of defense mechanisms, the analysis of transference processes, and dream interpretation have generally failed to hold up to minimal standards of reliability and validity necessary for empirical investigation.

Among the many attempts to operationalize psychoanalytic constructs for empirical investigation of personality, the Thematic Apperception Test (TAT) is perhaps the most well known and widely used. The popularity of the TAT as a measure of unconscious motives greatly diminished due to early criticisms of low internal consistency, temporal reliability, and a lack of correlation with self-reported measures of motives.

Trait Approaches to the Study of Personality

Trait theories of personality have typically used three different strategies to study the number, nature, and organization of dimensions along which people differ. One trait approach uses statistical techniques, such as factor analysis, to identify underlying personality dimensions applicable

to all people. Another approach is to construct typologies based on a priori theories that are applicable to subgroups of people. Finally, idiographic approaches to the study of personality reject the search for basic traits common to all people, and instead focus on patterns of behavior that are unique to an individual.

The *lexical hypothesis* has been central to trait approaches to personality. The *lexical hypothesis* states that most of the descriptors that distinguish one individual from another have become embedded in our natural language. If the *lexical hypothesis* is correct, the basic dimensions of personality can be discovered, because all important individual differences will be spoken and eventually encoded into trait descriptors. Early work guided by the *lexical hypothesis* provided some initial structure, but did not provide a framework for distinguishing, naming, and ordering individual differences in behavior and experience. Early taxonomic efforts paired down initial attempts to derive personality traits from large lists of terms, but were limited by data-analytic techniques that were not sophisticated enough to handle large and complex data sets. With statistical advancements, research focused on examining the factor structure of personality descriptors in the lexicon grew considerably. Proponents of this approach debated about the number of factors sufficient to describe personality (with 16, 5, and 3 being the predominant models) and the applicability of applying a group of factors to all people. Critics of the trait approach argued that these individual difference factors lacked consistency across situations and were poor at actually predicting specific behavior.

Following a brief period of relative dormancy in the 1970s and 1980s, due in part to the above-stated criticisms, research on the trait structure of personality increased dramatically during the mid-1980s. By the early 1990s, many personality psychologists reached a general (though still not unanimous) consensus that the trait domains could be described most broadly by five orthogonal factors, or clusters of traits. This five-factor trait model has been typically measured with self-report questionnaires and includes the following factors: neuroticism – hostility, depression, and anxiety; extraversion – warm, active, and

assertive; openness to experience – open to ideas, values, and fantasy; agreeableness – modest, straightforward, and altruistic; and conscientiousness – dutiful, self-disciplined, and ordered. Yet, some psychologists have maintained that three factors, not five, characterized as neuroticism, extraversion, and psychoticism – a dimension characterized by low agreeableness and low conscientiousness – account for a majority of the variance. Despite criticism regarding the underlying assumptions of factor-analytic techniques, the five-factor model approach to the study of personality has proven to be a useful model for predicting outcomes at the individual, interpersonal, and social levels of analysis.

Beyond factor-analytic approaches, some trait theorists propose that personality is based on bundles of trait-like characteristics that can be classified as types or typologies presumed to cover all people. Recent statistical advancements (e.g., multilevel modeling techniques) have greatly increased our understanding of individual differences by allowing for the examination of the trajectory and rate at which people change. These approaches tend to focus on limited subgroups by examining combinations of personality variables as well as other variables such as intelligence, conduct, and externalizing behavior. These statistical and methodological advances have allowed researchers to examine more variables and the ability to account for interactions among those variables when describing what constitutes personality. Whereas these approaches to the study of personality are innovative, they are not without flaw. Specifically, critics have noted that this approach disassembles people into component parts that results in “types” that account for a limited amount of the variance in whatever outcome is under investigation.

Finally, the idiographic approach to the study of personality rejects the search for underlying personality traits common to all people, and instead focuses on identifying central themes in an individual’s life. The idiographic approach is also concerned with describing the patterning of traits within an individual and using that pattern to predict future behavior. Research advocating for an idiographic approach claims that factor-

analytic approaches might not account for the full range of personality characteristics within a person.

Social-Cognitive Approaches to the Study of Personality

Personality psychology was greatly influenced by the cognitive revolution in psychology that occurred during the late 1950s and early 1960s. This early research rejected the construct of motivation and focused on the complexity of cognitive processes. Importantly, the cognitive revolution in psychology spurred interest in the importance of “the self,” leading to the examination of constructs such as self-esteem, self-schema, self-monitoring, and self-regulation. Research on the self broadened the view of personality by considering not only conceptions of what constitutes “the self,” but also the ways in which our self-concept reflects our perceptions of how others view and respond to us.

More broadly, the concept of self-identity has spawned research endeavors aimed at creating a conceptual bridge between the self and the role that social variables such as gender, race, class, and nationality play in the development of personality. Recent theoretical models of self-identity emphasize a “life story” approach to the study of personality. According to this perspective, personality is constructed by an individual through self-defining life narratives. These life narratives are created with the intent of describing individuals as integrated, whole people.

During the late 1960s and early 1970s, critiques of personality psychology produced a major crisis within the field, and led to an in-depth examination of many of the fundamental theories and methods used by personality psychologists. This perspective placed emphasis on situations, claiming that the examination of broad dispositional personality variables was unnecessarily overemphasized.

This approach advocated the notion that it is difficult to demonstrate the consistency of individual difference factors from one situation to the next and that individual difference factors rarely predict specific behaviors. This assertion not only challenged the basic premise of personality

psychology, but also generated a paradigmatic crisis, resulting in an ideological split between those who study individual difference factors and those who examine the effect of situations on people. Those psychologists who advocate for a situationist approach construe personality as an organized system of goals, motives, and expectancies that mediate psychological processes that occur across situations. Proponents of this approach maintain that this characterization of personality accounts for both stability within the person as well as adaptive behavior across situations.

The response to this critique was to improve measurement techniques and to conduct studies demonstrating the consistency of personality over time. Yet, other researchers responded by examining how moderator variables, such as gender, interact with situational factors and with traditional trait descriptors. Those who emphasize the importance of context or situation maintain that dispositional traits are manifest as affective and cognitive processes that become activated during a distinct situation. Over time, these situation-by-behavior profiles are thought to shape who we are as individuals, leading to “dispositional signatures” that distinguish us as unique individuals.

Interpersonal Approaches to the Study of Personality

From an interpersonal perspective, personality is considered to be expressed in interactions with other people. Interpersonal theories of personality development do not merely emphasize observable behavior between individuals. Instead, interpersonal theories extend beyond personality development to include personality structure, function, and even pathology. According to this perspective, interpersonal interactions support the development and maintenance of personality as patterns of interpersonal interactions give rise to lasting concepts of the self and others.

There have been two distinct empirical traditions to describe interpersonal functioning – the individual differences approach and the dyadic approach. The individual differences approach focuses on the qualities of an individual that are assumed to give rise to behavior that is consistent over time. This perspective led to various

formulations of a structural model of interpersonal traits, actions, and problems often referred to as the interpersonal circle or circumplex. Circumplex models of behavior are used to anchor descriptions of theoretical concepts. Circumplex models of personality maintain that individual differences can be described as combinations of the circle’s two underlying dimensions of dominance/submission and warmth/hostility. Interpersonal qualities close to one another on the perimeter of the circle are conceptually and statistically similar, qualities 90° apart are conceptually independent, but related, whereas qualities located 180° apart on the circle are considered conceptual and statistical opposites. This model of interpersonal functioning is not typically tied to interactions with a specific person or context, but rather is most often used to describe qualities of an individual interacting with a generalized other person.

In contrast, the dyadic approach assumes that two people comprise a basic unit of analysis for understanding personality. Accordingly, the interpersonal learning of social behaviors and self-concept is based on a variety of interpersonal situations. Interpersonal learning occurs across situations when interactions with others shape, refine, and maintain lasting conceptions of the self and others in relation to the self. In addition, this perspective on personality emphasizes that interpersonal behavior does not occur at random; instead, reciprocal relational patterns between two or more people help to define an interpersonal field. Within this interpersonal field, behavior from one individual pulls for responses from another, creating a dynamic, transactional process that leads to a conceptualization of the self. Interpersonal theories also include aspects of other theories of personality, but uniquely contribute to personality psychology by combining structural models that describe behavior with an examination of interpersonal situations.

Emerging Approaches to the Study of Personality

In recent years, the study of personality has benefited from advances in molecular genetics and functional imaging techniques. Within the

domain of molecular genetics, research has focused on identifying specific biological pathways that contribute to complex cognitive and emotional behaviors. Advancements in the field of behavioral genetics may increase our understanding of the biological underpinnings of how individual differences in personality emerge and how those individual differences confer risk or resilience for mental and physical health. Other approaches that apply molecular genetic techniques to the study of personality involve examining the association between a particular phenotype and a specific allele of a gene.

Functional neuroimaging techniques hold promise for understanding personality by examining brain activity among individuals with varying levels of individual difference factors. Emerging advances in neuroimaging techniques may also help to further refine our understanding of how people process emotional information, including social connections. Yet, examining a single variation in alleles or the functional contributions of one brain region will not hold much explanatory value for our understanding of individual differences in thought, behavior, and emotions. With advancing techniques, future research should involve the careful application of methods and concepts learned from decades of investigation in order to refine our understanding of personality.

Personality and Health: Implications for Behavioral Medicine

Theory and research examining the influence of personality on health and disease has been an influential force for the development of the fields of health psychology and behavioral medicine. Research in this domain has been concerned with understanding the effects of personality on both the development and trajectory of health and disease. Possible mechanisms linking personality and health include the psychophysiological effects of stress and the extent to which personality traits are related to specific behaviors that may either promote or compromise health. Of particular interest to behavioral medicine is research that examines how certain personality characteristics confer differential risk toward negative affective states and behavioral dysregulation that often

accompanies the diagnosis of and adjustment to chronic illness. Evidence that personality is a powerful predictor of health and illness has not only contributed to the development of behavioral medicine and health psychology, but has also helped revitalize personality research by challenging the critique of personality traits as having limited predictive utility.

Cross-References

- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Character Traits](#)
- [Health Psychology](#)
- [Phenotype](#)
- [Trait Anger](#)
- [Trait Anxiety](#)

References and Further Readings

- Barenbaum, N. B., & Winter, D. G. (2009). History of modern personality theory and research. In O. P. John, R. W. Robins, & L. A. Pervin (Eds.), *Handbook of personality: Theory and research* (pp. 3–28). New York: Guilford Press.
- McCrae, R. R., & John, O. P. (1992). An introduction to the five-factor model and its applications. *Journal of Research in Personality*, 60, 175–215.
- Pincus, A. L., & Ansell, E. B. (2003). Interpersonal theory of personality. In T. Millon & M. Lerner (Eds.), *Comprehensive handbook of psychology (Personality and social psychology)* (Vol. 5, pp. 209–229). New York: Wiley.
- Williams, P. G., Smith, T. W., & Cribbet, M. R. (2008). Personality and health: Current evidence, potential mechanisms, and future directions. In G. J. Boyle, G. Matthews, & D. H. Saklofske (Eds.), *Personality theory and assessment* (Vol. 1, pp. 635–658). Thousand Oaks: Sage.

Personality Hardiness

- [Hardiness and Health](#)

Pervasive Health

- [Quality of Life Technologies](#)

Pessimism

Ryan Garcia

University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
at Dallas, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Dispositional pessimism](#)

Definition

Pessimism is a personality variable that reflects the generalized tendency for an individual to have negative expectations about the future. Its development emerged along with that of dispositional optimism from models of self-regulation and goal achievement. Originally, pessimism was construed to reflect low levels of optimism, but it has emerged as an independent construct as the field of research has developed and grown. It is associated with a coping style characterized by problem and emotion avoidance coping (Solberg Nes and Segerstrom 2006). Research suggests a pessimistic orientation places one at increased risk for depression and anxiety. Pessimism has also been associated with several different adverse health outcomes across a variety of settings, ranging from HIV + populations to increased mortality rates in individuals with cancer. The following terms are related to pessimism: defensive pessimism, unrealistic pessimism, and self-handicapping; however, these terms are not identical to pessimism, and have different associations with other variables.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Attribution Theory](#)
- ▶ [Avoidance](#)
- ▶ [Dispositional Optimism](#)
- ▶ [Explanatory Style](#)
- ▶ [Life Orientation Test \(LOT\)](#)
- ▶ [Negative Thoughts](#)
- ▶ [Optimism and Pessimism: Measurement](#)

- ▶ [Optimism, Pessimism, and Health](#)
- ▶ [Self-Regulation Model](#)

References and Further Readings

- Abela, J. R. Z., Auerbach, R. P., & Seligman, M. E. P. (2008). Dispositional pessimism across the lifespan. In K. S. Dobson & D. J. A. Dozois (Eds.), *Risk factors in depression* (pp. 195–220). San Diego: Academic Press.
- Cantor, N., & Norem, J. K. (1989). Defensive pessimism and stress and coping. *Social Cognition*, 7, 92–112.
- Carver, C. S., & Scheier, M. F. (2002). Optimism, pessimism, and self-regulation. In E. C. Chang (Ed.), *Optimism & pessimism: Implications for theory, research, and practice* (pp. 31–51). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Norem, J. K. (2002). Defensive pessimism, optimism, and pessimism. In E. C. Chang (Ed.), *Optimism & pessimism: Implications for theory, research, and practice* (pp. 77–100). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Scheier, M. F., & Carver, C. S. (1985). Optimism, coping, and health: Assessment and implications of generalized outcome expectancies. *Health Psychology*, 4(3), 219–247.
- Scheier, M. F., & Carver, C. S. (1987). Dispositional optimism and physical well-being: The influence of generalized outcome expectancies on health. *Journal of Personality*, 55(2), 169–210.
- Scheier, M. F., & Carver, C. S. (1992). Effects of optimism on psychological and physical well-being: Theoretical overview and empirical update. *Cognitive Therapy and Research*, 16(2), 201–228.
- Solberg Nes, L., & Segerstrom, S. C. (2006). Dispositional optimism and coping: A meta-analytic review. *Personality and Social Psychology Review*, 10(3), 235–251.

Pew Internet and American Life Project

Chad Barrett

Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado, Denver, CO, USA

Definition

The Pew Internet and American Life Project is part of the Pew Research Center and is a nonpartisan and nonprofit organization that conducts

research in order to provide information on the issues, attitudes, and trends that influence America and the world. According to their website, The Pew Internet and American Life Project examines “the impact of the internet on families, communities, work and home, daily life, education, health care, and civic and political life” (Pew Internet and American Life Project website). Each year, The Pew Internet and American Life Project releases 15–20 reports of research that address “how Americans use the internet and how their online activities affect their lives” (Pew Internet and American Life Project website n.d.). Data collection methods typically involve nationwide random phone surveys, online surveys, and qualitative research. In addition, data collection efforts are often augmented by research conducted by government agencies, technology firms, academia, and by various other expert researchers. Pew Internet and American Life Project aims to provide authoritative reports while maintaining neutral positions on policy issues and abstaining from providing endorsements of specific technologies, industries, organizations, companies, and individuals.

Description

The website for the Pew Internet and American Life Project provides a brief summary of highlights from their research related to health and health care (Fox 2011). Such highlights include the following findings from recent surveys. Seventy-eight percent of adults in the USA use the internet and 83% own a cell phone. Eighty percent of internet users, or 59% of all US adults, use the internet to search for health or medical information. Seventeen percent of cell phone owners, or 15% of all US adults, have used their cell phones to look up health or medical information. Fox notes that since young people, Latinos, and African Americans are more likely than other groups to access the internet through their cell phones, this finding is of particular interest for studies targeting trends in these groups. Internet users most commonly search for health and medical information related to specific diseases or

conditions, treatments or procedures, and doctors or other health professionals.

Another line of research has been examining the trends in how the internet influences people’s relationships with health and medical information and with each other. As summarized by Fox (2011), many people use the internet to search for health information from other people’s personal health-related experiences or to connect with others with similar conditions. Thirty-four percent of internet users, 25% of adults in the USA, have read about another person’s experience with health or medical related issues by visiting an online news group, a website, or a blog. Twenty-four percent of internet users, or 18% of adults in the USA, have read online reviews of particular drugs or medical treatments. Eighteen percent of internet users, or 13% of adults in the USA, have used the internet to connect with other people who share similar health concerns. People with rare or chronic conditions are especially likely to attempt to connect with others through the internet. Twenty-seven percent of internet users, or 20% of adults in the USA, have used online applications to monitor their weight, diet, exercise routine, or some other health indicators or symptoms. Six percent of internet users, or 4% of adults in the USA, have visited one or more websites in order to post comments or questions concerning health or medical issues. Four percent of internet users, 3% of adults in the USA, have posted comments or discussions about their experiences with a particular drug or treatment.

In addition to such highlighted findings, the website of the Pew Internet and American Life Project provides links to relevant study reports. The Pew Internet and American Life Project collects a variety of data that could be relevant to the field of behavioral medicine. The Project’s website provides access to various studies and raw data sets dating back to 2000.

Cross-References

► [eHealth and Behavioral Intervention Technologies](#)

- Health Care
- Health Care Access
- Health Care Utilization
- Home Health Care
- Internet-Based Interventions
- Internet-Based Studies
- Public Health
- Social Capital and Health
- Telehealth

References and Further Reading

- Fox, S. (2011). *Pew internet: Health*. Retrieved November 25, 2011 from <http://www.pewinternet.org/Commentary/2011/November/Pew-Internet-Health.aspx>
- Pew Internet and American Life Project website. (n.d.). Retrieved November 25, 2011 from <http://pewinternet.org/About-Us.aspx>

PGD

- In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology

Pharmaceutical Industry: Research and Development

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

Drug development; New drug development

Definition

Contemporary research and development within the pharmaceutical industry is best described employing a lifecycle perspective. Four components of this are: drug discovery and drug design;

nonclinical development; clinical development; and postmarketing surveillance (Turner 2010).

Description

Drug Discovery and Drug Design

Drug discovery can be thought of as the work done from the time of the identification of a therapeutic need in a particular disease area to the time the drug candidate deemed most likely to safely affect the desired therapeutic benefit is identified. This drug candidate may be a small molecule or a biological macromolecule such as a protein or nucleic acid. The traditional mode of drug discovery is a long iterative process in which each molecule more closely approximates the ideal drug candidate. The modern discipline of drug design is much quicker. Computer simulation modeling examines the “docking” of the drug molecule with the drug receptor and identifies the most likely chemical structure that will best dock with the receptor. The science of molecular engineering is then used to create the molecule suggested by the computer simulation.

Nonclinical Development

Nonhuman animal research is currently necessary before regulatory permission will be given to test a new drug in humans. Since part of the overall nonhuman animal testing is done before the drug is first given to humans, the term “preclinical” has a certain appeal and is used by many authors in place of nonclinical. However, a significant amount of nonhuman animal testing is typically conducted after the first administration of the drug to humans. Some of the more lengthy, more complex, and more expensive nonhuman animal testing is typically not started until initial human testing reveals that the drug has a good safety profile in humans and therefore has a reasonable chance of being approved for marketing if it also proves to be effective in later clinical trials. In this entry, therefore, the term “nonclinical” has been adopted for research involving nonhuman animals.

While human pharmacological therapy is the ultimate goal, understanding nonclinical drug safety and efficacy is critical to subsequent rationally designed, ethical human trials. Nonclinical research gathers critical information concerning safety, drug dose, and route and frequency of administration. It involves *in vitro*, *ex vivo*, and *in vivo* testing. For example, when investigating the cardiac safety of noncardiac drugs (drugs for noncardiac indications are not supposed to influence the heart's activity, and if they do it is likely to be in a deleterious manner), the following progression of levels of testing occurs: subcellular (investigation of individual ion channels within cardiac cell muscles or cardiomyocytes); cellular; isolated cardiac tissue; isolated heart; anesthetized intact animal; and conscious animal.

Preapproval Clinical Development and Postmarketing Trials and Surveillance

Pharmaceutical clinical trials are often categorized into various phases, with any given trial being identified as belonging to one of them. These categories traditionally include Phase I, Phase II, Phase III, and Phase IV, described as follows:

- Phase I. Pharmacologically oriented studies that typically look for the best dose to employ. Comparison to other treatments is not typically built into the study design.
- Phase II. Trials that look for evidence of activity, efficacy, and safety at a fixed dose. Again, comparison to other treatments is not typically built into the study design.
- Phase III. Trials in which comparison with another treatment (e.g., placebo, an active control) is a fundamental component of the design. These trials are undertaken if Phase I and Phase II studies have provided preliminary evidence that the investigational drug is safe and effective.
- Phase IV. These are postmarketing trials, conducted once the drug has been approved and in therapeutic use. There are various sorts of Phase IV trials. Some can be quite similar in

design and conduct to preapproval therapeutic confirmatory trials. Other kinds include open-label trials, when both investigators and subjects know what treatment subjects are receiving, and large simple trials.

However, while commonly employed, these designations are not always used consistently. Accordingly, two studies with the same aims may be classified into different phases, and two studies classified into the same phase may have different aims. This nomenclature, therefore, can be confusing, and alternate systems of categorization are arguably more informative. One such system is presented in Table 1. The four categories correspond closely to Phase I to Phase IV, respectfully, but are more descriptive.

Among the goals of clinical development are:

- Estimation of the investigational drug's safety and tolerance in healthy adults.
- Determination of a safe and effective dose range, safe dosing levels, and the preferred route of administration.
- Investigation of pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics following a single dose and a multiple-dose schedule.
- Establishment and validation of biochemical markers in accessible body fluids that may permit the assessment of the desired pharmacological activity.
- Identification of metabolic pathways.
- Evaluation of the drug's safety and efficacy in a relatively small group of subjects with the disease or condition of clinical concern (the targeted therapeutic indication).
- Selection and optimization of final formulations, doses, regimens, and efficacy endpoints for larger scale, multicenter studies. Efficacy endpoints should be able to be measured reliably and should quantitatively reflect clinically relevant changes in the disease or condition of clinical concern.
- Evaluation of the drug's comparative efficacy (measured against placebo or an active comparator) in larger scale, multicenter studies, and collection of additional safety data.

Pharmaceutical Industry: Research and Development, Table 1 Classifying clinical studies according to their objectives. (Based on ICH E8: General considerations for clinical trials)

Objective of trials	Study examples
Human pharmacology Assess tolerance Describe or define pharmacokinetics (PK) and pharmacodynamics (PD) Explore drug metabolism and drug interactions Estimate (biological) activity	Dose-tolerance studies Single- and multiple-dose PK and/or PD studies Drug interaction studies
Therapeutic exploratory Explore use for the targeted indication Estimate dosage for subsequent studies Provide basis for confirmatory study design, endpoints, methodologies	Earliest trials of relatively short duration in well-defined narrow populations with the disease or condition of clinical concern, using surrogate of pharmacological endpoints or clinical measures Dose-response exploration studies
Therapeutic confirmatory Demonstrate/confirm efficacy Establish safety profile Provide an adequate basis for assessing benefit/risk relationship to support licensing (market approval) Establish dose-response relationship	Adequate and well-controlled studies to establish efficacy Randomized parallel dose-response studies Clinical safety studies Studies of mortality/morbidity outcomes Large simple trials Comparative studies
Therapeutic use Refine understanding of benefit-risk relationship in general or special populations and/or environments Identify less common adverse drug reactions Refine dosing recommendations	Comparative effectiveness studies Studies of mortality/morbidity outcomes Studies of additional endpoints Large simple trials Pharmacoeconomic studies

Cross-References

- [Comparative Effectiveness Research](#)
- [Efficacy](#)
- [Metabolism](#)
- [Placebo and Placebo Effect](#)

References and Further Readings

- ICH E8. (1997). *General considerations for clinical trials*. Accessed 09 Apr 2011, from http://www.ich.org/fileadmin/Public_Web_Site/ICH_Products/Guidelines/Efficacy/E8/Step4/E8_Guideline.pdf.
- Turner, J. R. (2010). *New drug development: An introduction to clinical trials*. New York: Springer.

Pharmacological Stress Tests

Beate Ditzen¹, Urs M. Nater² and Christine Heim³
¹Department of Psychosocial Medicine, Heidelberg University, Heidelberg, Germany
²Department of Psychology, University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria
³Institute of Medical Psychology, Charité University Medicine Berlin, Berlin, Germany

Synonyms

[HPA axis stimulation tests](#); [Pharmacological challenge tests](#)

Definition

The Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal (HPA) axis is the major neuroendocrine stress system in humans. Appropriate functioning of this highly dynamic multilevel system and its feedback mechanisms are assumed to modulate psycho-

Pharmacological Challenge Tests

- [Pharmacological Stress Tests](#)

physiological adaptation to all major and minor challenges in life. In line with this, profound HPA axis alterations have been found in psychiatric disorders (most prominently affective disorders), in chronic medical disorders (e.g., cardiovascular disease), and in unexplained medical symptoms (e.g., chronic fatigue, Nater et al. 2008). Furthermore, it has been suggested that restoration of glucocorticoid receptor functioning and thereby improvement of HPA axis integrity might mediate treatment outcome in some disorders (such as depression) (Holsboer 2000).

In order to assess the functional integrity of the HPA axis and its feedback mechanisms, standard pharmacological challenge tests have been developed. Targeting different levels of the axis, these tests meet two main goals: (a) to stimulate the HPA axis in order to assess its top-down reactivity, and (b) to stimulate negative feedback mechanisms of the HPA axis in order to test its feedback sensitivity.

Description

In general, HPA axis functioning can be assessed with repeated measures of its unstimulated effector steroids, that is, corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), and cortisol.

CRH is best measured in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF). Plasma levels do not seem to reflect hypothalamic CRH secretion because (1) in addition to the CNS, many tissues in the periphery (such as the placenta) produce CRH and (2) the relatively high concentrations of CRH from the hypothalamic-hypophyseal portal venous blood are bound by CRH-binding protein until they reach the peripheral veins (Cunnah et al. 1987).

ACTH can be assessed in blood. Because the analysis of ACTH concentrations from blood plasma is relatively expensive, the number of repeated measures is usually limited. With a short plasma half-life and episodic secretion, ACTH levels in plasma have shown wide fluctuations and should be assessed in combination with repeated cortisol measures in order to increase reliability.

Cortisol can be measured in plasma (unbound and bound cortisol fraction), in saliva (unbound cortisol fraction), and in urine (unbound fraction).

Note that single measures of CRH, ACTH, or cortisol do not give a valid picture of HPA axis integrity, and more information is obtained by repeated testing.

Besides psychological challenge tests of HPA axis activity (Dickerson and Kemeny 2004), highly standardized pharmacological challenge tests have also been developed. Among others, the administration of Insulin, Naloxone, Fenfluramine, Alprazolam, synthetic CRH, synthetic ACTH, Metyrapone, and Dexamethasone have been used to provoke changes in HPA axis activity. In the following, the most widely used HPA axis challenge tests will be briefly characterized. Note that all challenge tests need to be employed under standardized conditions in a clinical setting.

CRH Stimulation Test

CRH stimulates ACTH secretion. Accordingly, administration of CRH is used to assess information about HPA axis dysregulation occurring down from the level of the pituitary (ACTH and cortisol).

Following one or two blood draws in order to assess ACTH and cortisol baseline levels, an IV bolus of 1 µg/kg of body weight CRH is administered. Repeated blood sampling at min 15, 30, 60, 90, and 120 will show a rapid rise and subsequent gradual decline in ACTH and cortisol following CRH administration.

In healthy subjects, the cortisol response in plasma after 30–60 min following injection is higher than 10 µg/dL (276 nmol/L). Usually, the test is well tolerated, with transient facial flushing in about 20% of the participants, occasional shortness of breath, or rare tachycardia, and hypotension.

ACTH Stimulation Test

With the ACTH stimulation test, the acute adrenal response to ACTH can be assessed. Before and following administration of 0.25 mg synthetic human α 1–24-ACTH (tetracosactrin, cosyntropin, or “Synacthen”) intramuscularly or intravenously, cortisol levels are measured

repeatedly (e.g., baseline, 30, 45, and 60 min after injection). Due to ACTH administration, plasma cortisol rapidly increases within 30 min to at least 18–20 $\mu\text{g/dL}$ (496–552 nmol/L), with peak responses at 30–60 min. Interestingly, substantially lower doses of ACTH were associated with the same endocrine response as the above-described high dosage. Consequently, the so-called low-dose ACTH test (1 μg) is gaining greater importance in endocrine research (Dickstein et al. 1991). Possible adverse side effects of this test include bradycardia, tachycardia, hypertension, peripheral edema, and rash. These side effects should disappear within a few hours after testing.

Dexamethasone Suppression Test

The synthetic corticosteroid Dexamethasone (Dex) binds to glucocorticoid receptors and thereby mimics the effects of cortisol. Consequently, researchers employ the Dexamethasone Suppression Test (DST) in order to assess HPA axis feedback sensitivity with an expected reduction in cortisol secretion following the administration of Dex.

In the standard DST procedure, 1 mg Dex is administered orally at 11:00 p.m. The following morning (8:00 a.m.), cortisol levels are determined in blood, saliva, or urine and may be again measured at 4:00 p.m. In healthy subjects, the standard DST will minimize cortisol secretion with plasma cortisol levels less than 2 $\mu\text{g/dL}$ (50 nmol/L) at both measure time points. In depressed patients, the DST is thought to show non-suppression of cortisol due to *reduced* feedback sensitivity. However, studies on this test in depression have not shown high sensitivity and specificity (APA Task Force on Laboratory Tests in Psychiatry 1987), with only about 40–60% of patients demonstrating a failure to suppress cortisol in response to the standard DST (Yehuda 2006). In disorders characterized by *increased* HPA axis feedback sensitivity (such as Post-traumatic Stress Disorder, PTSD), the low-dose DST (0.5 mg or 0.25 mg) is preferably used. Following this test, normal cortisol suppression results in values around 5 $\mu\text{g/dL}$. The low-dose DST has been widely used in PTSD research, with

PTSD subjects having been exposed to traumas (e.g., childhood abuse, combat, or Holocaust exposure) showing hyperresponsiveness (= lower post-DST cortisol) in this test (Yehuda 2006). No adverse side effects have been reported for the DST.

Dex-CRH Test

In order to more precisely characterize underlying mechanisms of non-suppression in the Dex test, the combined Dex-CRH test has been developed, and improved sensitivity of this test compared to the Dex test has been shown in depression (Heuser et al. 1994). With the Dex-CRH test, the oral administration of Dexamethasone (1.5 mg) at 11:00 p.m. is combined with the intravenous administration of 100 μg CRH the following day in the afternoon (between 2:00 p.m. and 3:00 p.m.). Blood samples will be repeatedly collected before CRH administration, and again at 15, 30, 60, 90, and 120 min after administration.

In healthy individuals, ACTH and cortisol will be suppressed prior to CRH administration. After CRH injection, ACTH and cortisol levels are first increasing and then decreasing (Carroll et al. 1981). Patients suffering from current major depression, but also from other psychiatric and medical conditions, show increased sensitivity, with markedly elevated ACTH and cortisol levels following the Dex-CRH test (Ising et al. 2005). Particularly in depression, repeated Dex-CRH testing has been discussed as a surrogate marker for drug efficacy (Ising et al. 2007). Adverse side effects following the combined Dex-CRH test are identical to those following CRH administration alone.

Metyrapone Test

Metyrapone is a method for assessing ACTH secretory reserve via the interruption of the negative feedback on the HPA axis. The drug inhibits P450c11 (11 β -hydroxylase), the enzyme that catalyzes the final step in cortisol biosynthesis. The inhibition of cortisol secretion interrupts negative feedback of the HPA axis, which results in a compensatory increase in ACTH. This increase in ACTH secretion then stimulates biosynthesis in the cortisol precursor steroid (11-deoxycortisol) in plasma.

The overnight metyrapone test is used in order to test whether altered cortisol secretion is a function of increased/decreased ACTH drive from the pituitary or a result of adrenal alterations. A quantity of 30 mg/kg of metyrapone is administered orally, preferably at midnight. Plasma 11-deoxycortisol is then determined the following morning at 8 a.m. In healthy subjects, 11-deoxycortisol levels in plasma rise to more than 7 µg/dL (0.2 µmol/L) and plasma ACTH levels rise to greater than 100 pg/mL (22 pmol/L) the following morning. The test has been used in PTSD research (for a review see Yehuda 2006) as well as in depression research (Young et al. 2007). Possible adverse side effects include gastrointestinal symptoms, headaches, dizziness, hypotension, and allergic skin reactions.

Summary and Outlook

The investigation of neuroendocrine alterations in psychiatric and medical disorders has largely improved our knowledge of the pathophysiology of these disorders. The next steps will be to further improve the sensitivity, specificity, and thereby validity of HPA axis challenge tests. Note that so far, reliable results can only be obtained with repeated application of challenge tests and repeated HPA axis assessment. Confounding factors, such as eating disorders, restrictive dieting, diabetes, gender, and alcohol consumption have been discussed in the literature with mixed results (e.g., APA Task Force on Laboratory Tests in Psychiatry 1987; Ising et al. 2005; Young et al. 2007). This is particularly relevant, as oftentimes these factors might be substantially altered in psychiatric and medical conditions.

A variety of CNS processes can trigger or dampen HPA activation. Among others, these mechanisms may include alterations in levels vasopressin, serotonin, endorphins, oxytocin, neuropeptide Y, substance P, and cytokines. So far, on the level of HPA axis dynamics alone, we are not able to trace back specifically involved CNS mechanisms; in other words, the specificity of HPA axis challenge tests cannot exceed the specificity of the HPA axis itself. Future studies

should combine imaging data, administration of centrally active substances (e.g., intranasal administration of vasopressin and oxytocin), in combination with HPA axis challenge tests, thus providing further insights into the specificity of the involved mechanisms in healthy as well as in pathological endocrine functioning.

Cross-References

- Adrenal Glands
- Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Axis
- Pituitary-Adrenal Axis

References and Readings

- APA Task Force on Laboratory Tests in Psychiatry. (1987). The dexamethasone suppression test: An overview of its current status in psychiatry. The APA task force on laboratory tests in psychiatry. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 144(10), 1253–1262.
- Carroll, B. J., Feinberg, M., Greden, J. F., Tarika, J., Albala, A. A., Haskett, R. F., et al. (1981). A specific laboratory test for the diagnosis of melancholia. Standardization, validation, and clinical utility. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 38(1), 15–22.
- Cunnah, D., Jessop, D. S., Besser, G. M., & Rees, L. H. (1987). Measurement of circulating corticotrophin-releasing factor in man. *Journal of Endocrinology*, 113(1), 123–131.
- Dickerson, S. S., & Kemeny, M. E. (2004). Acute stressors and cortisol responses: A theoretical integration and synthesis of laboratory research. *Psychological Bulletin*, 130(3), 355–391.
- Dickstein, G., Shechner, C., Nicholson, W. E., Rosner, I., Shen-Orr, Z., Adawi, F., et al. (1991). Adrenocorticotropin stimulation test: Effects of basal cortisol level, time of day, and suggested new sensitive low dose test. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 72(4), 773–778.
- Felitti, V. J., Anda, R. F., Nordenberg, D., Williamson, D. F., Spitz, A. M., Edwards, V., et al. (1998). Relationship of childhood abuse and household dysfunction to many of the leading causes of death in adults. The Adverse Childhood Experiences (ACE) Study. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 14(4), 245–258.
- Heuser, I., Yassouridis, A., & Holsboer, F. (1994). The combined dexamethasone/CRH test: A refined laboratory test for psychiatric disorders. *Journal of Psychiatric Research*, 28(4), 341–356.
- Holsboer, F. (2000). The corticosteroid receptor hypothesis of depression. *Neuropsychopharmacology*, 23(5), 477–501.

- Ising, M., Kunzel, H. E., Binder, E. B., Nickel, T., Modell, S., & Holsboer, F. (2005). The combined dexamethasone/CRH test as a potential surrogate marker in depression. *Progress in Neuro-Psychopharmacology & Biological Psychiatry*, 29(6), 1085–1093.
- Ising, M., Horstmann, S., Kloiber, S., Lucae, S., Binder, E. B., Kern, N., et al. (2007). Combined dexamethasone/corticotropin releasing hormone test predicts treatment response in major depression – a potential biomarker? *Biological Psychiatry*, 62(1), 47–54.
- Nater, U. M., Maloney, E., Boneva, R. S., Gurbaxani, B. M., Lin, J. M., Jones, J. F., et al. (2008). Attenuated morning salivary cortisol concentrations in a population-based study of persons with chronic fatigue syndrome and well controls. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 93(3), 703–709.
- Yehuda, R. (2006). Advances in understanding neuroendocrine alterations in PTSD and their therapeutic implications. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 1071, 137–166.
- Young, E. A., Ribeiro, S. C., & Ye, W. (2007). Sex differences in ACTH pulsatility following metyrapone blockade in patients with major depression. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 32(5), 503–507.

Pharmacotherapy for Depression

- [Depression: Treatment](#)

Phasic REM

- [REM Sleep](#)

Phenotype

Jeanette McCarthy
Community and Family Medicine, Duke
University Medical Center, Durham, NC, USA

Definition

The term phenotype refers to an organism's outward appearance and characteristics. This contrasts with the individual's genotype, the set of

alleles that an offspring inherits from both parents. In the behavioral sciences, including Behavioral Medicine, the fundamental issue of heredity is the extent to which differences in genotype account for differences in phenotype, i.e., observed differences among individuals (Plomin et al. 1997).

In contrast to single-gene disorders such as Huntington's disease and phenylketonuria (PKU), complex dimensions, disorders, and conditions of clinical concern in Behavioral Medicine are influenced by heredity, but not by one gene alone. Multiple genes are typically involved, and so too are multiple environmental influences, and phenotypes are often the result of the combined effects of both genotype and environmental factors.

Cross-References

- [Allele](#)
- [Genotype](#)

References and Further Readings

- Plomin, R., DeFries, J. C., McClearn, G. E., & Rutter, M. (1997). *Behavioral genetics* (3rd ed.). New York: W.H. Freeman and Company.

Physical Ability/Disability

- [Activities of Daily Living \(ADL\)](#)

Physical Activity

- [Benefits of Exercise](#)
- [Exercise](#)

Physical Activity and Cancer

- [Cancer and Physical Activity](#)

Physical Activity and Health

M. Bernardine¹ and Georita Marie Frierson²

¹Centers for Behavioral and Preventive Medicine, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA

²Department of Psychology, Southern Methodist University, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

Assessment; Exercise

Definition

Physical activity (PA) is any body movement that leads to skeletal muscle contraction and noticeable increases in energy expenditure (US Department of Health and Human Services [USDHHS] 2008). Such activities can be walking, washing windows, or gardening.

Description

Introduction

There is strong evidence that there are greater physical, physiological, and possibly mental health benefits from a lifestyle that includes more occupational and leisure-time physical activity (PA) than a predominantly sedentary (inactive or underactive) lifestyle (USDHHS 2008). These benefits include a risk reduction for type 2 diabetes, overweight/obesity, cardiovascular disease, stroke, high blood pressure, an adverse lipid profile, osteoporosis, sarcopenia, and loss of function and autonomy in older age. There is also a great interest in the benefits of PA for mitigating and possibly preventing cancer and its significant morbidity and mortality rates: the evidence is strongest for the prevention of colon and breast cancer. Regular PA can also help in weight loss (when combined with reduced calorie intake) and is associated with reduced depression and better cognitive functioning (among older adults) (USDHHS).

On the negative end, there is low risk of adverse events such as injuries, when generally healthy people engaged in moderate-intensity activity. However, when performing the same activity, people who are less fit are more likely to be injured than those who are fitter. The risk of cardiac events such as heart attacks during PA is rare. But there is a risk of such events when an individual suddenly becomes much more active than usual (e.g., shoveling snow). When both the benefits and risks of PA are considered, it is clear that the health benefits of PA far outweigh the risks of adverse events for a majority of people.

Given the overwhelming evidence for substantial benefits from PA, *physical inactivity* is a national public health problem. Recent data from the 2009 National Health Interview Survey (NHIS) indicates that 35% of US adults report engaging in regular leisure-time PA, 33% reported some leisure-time PA, and 33% report no participation in leisure-time PA (<http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/fastats/exercise.htm>.) NHIS data for 2005–2007 showed that 30.7% of US adults engaged in PA sufficient in frequency and duration to be classified as regular and 39.7% report no leisure-time PA (Schoenborn and Adams 2010). Men (61.9%) were more likely than women (58.9%) to engage in at least some leisure-time activity. The percentage of adults who engage in at least some leisure PA increased with education and with family income but decreased with increasing age. Married adults were more likely than those in other marital status groups to engage in at least some leisure-time PA. White adults (61.9%) and Asian adults (60.3%) were more likely than black adults (48.8%) to engage in at least some leisure-time PA. Finally, adults living in the US South (27.4%) were least likely to engage in regular leisure-time PA compared with adults living in any other region.

What Is Physical Activity?

Body movement for the purposes of health benefits can be defined by multiple constructs. Some of these constructs are similar but are still distinct. *PA* is any body movement that leads to skeletal muscle contraction and noticeable increases in energy expenditure (USDHHS 2008). Such activities can

be walking, washing windows, or gardening. To assess how much PA someone has to engage in for a specific health outcome, the term “dose response” is used (USDHHS). Dose response refers to the frequency, intensity, duration, and type of PA needed for a certain health outcome (i.e., fitness). Typically, PA is measured in kilocalorie (kcal), metabolic equivalent (MET), minutes, or MET-minutes per day or week (USDHHS). Such measurements occur through various assessment methods that will be addressed below.

A construct that can be seen as interchangeable with PA is exercise, but these terms are not identical. *Exercise*, a subset of PA, is planned, structured, and repetitive bodily movement (such as participating in an aerobics class) with the goal of improving or maintaining physical fitness (USDHHS 2008). *Physical fitness* primarily consists of aerobic power or cardiorespiratory fitness measured by maximal and submaximal stress testing or a field test (USDHHS). PA is something an individual does which can help to achieve greater physical fitness. In addition to PA, various factors such as age, sex, health status, and genetics can also affect physical fitness. In *aerobic activity* or endurance activity, the body's large muscles move in a rhythmic manner for a sustained period of time as in brisk walking, biking, or swimming. *Resistance training* (or strength training) consists of repetitive movements geared toward greater skeletal muscle strength, power, endurance, and mass (USDHHS). *Flexibility training* refers to repetitive activities to improve the movement of joints through their full range of motion (USDHHS).

Assessment of Physical Activity

Reliable and valid measures of PA are essential to understand energy expenditure in various populations. There are three common ways to assess PA: (1) criterion methods, (2) objective measures, and (3) subjective/self-reports. The selection of any of these three methods can be based on feasibility, cost, the specific research or clinical setting, and type of population.

Criterion methods such as doubly labeled water and indirect calorimetry are the gold

standards for measuring PA (Vanhees et al. 2005). Doubly labeled water (DWL) measures total energy expenditure and does not require individuals to log their daily activity because it uses the body's water to record metabolic rates. Thus, this technique is objective and requires little participant burden. Even with these advantages, various factors that lead to changes in energy expenditure such as PA, basal metabolic rate, and diet-induced energy expenditure cannot be teased apart from each other (Vanhees et al. 2005). Another important criterion method is indirect calorimetry. Energy expenditure is measured by oxygen consumption and carbon dioxide production through collected respiratory gases or in a respiration chamber (Vanhees et al. 2005). Both DWL and indirect calorimetry are expensive and have limited usability. They are less feasible in studies where participants have to monitor their daily PA in the community or home setting or over multiple assessments or over extended periods.

The objective measures of PA include fitness testing, accelerometers, and pedometers. As mentioned earlier, aerobic capacity is measured through fitness testing conducted on a treadmill, stationary bike, or a field test. These tests yield levels of peak oxygen consumption (VO_2 peak) which is an index of cardiorespiratory capacity (Gelibeter et al. 1997). These treadmill or bike tests must be overseen by a physician and are expensive but are used to assess fitness in clinical and research studies.

Accelerometers and pedometers are more commonly seen in the literature because they are relatively inexpensive (\$10–\$450 and above) and participants can be taught how to use them without extensive training. Accelerometers and pedometers are motion sensors but with different purposes. Accelerometers measure all body movement and physical activities and can yield the dose of PA (e.g., Fogelholm et al. 1998). Thus, accelerometers are significantly more expensive than pedometers due to their use of technology (Vanhees et al. 2005).

Pedometers are battery-operated step counters that are worn on the waist and measure steps when engaging in PA (Vanhees et al. 2005). They are efficient in monitoring steps but may produce

inaccurate readings due to inadvertent body movements. Activities such as biking and other activities where the body torso is stationary are not suitable for pedometers as are water activities. The reliability and validity of pedometers have been addressed in the literature (e.g., Vanhees et al.). It is anticipated that the next generation of pedometers will yield information on the “dose” of PA (i.e., intensity, frequency, and duration).

The third category of assessments is the subjective, self-report measures which include diaries, interviews, and questionnaires (e.g., Van Poppel et al. 2010). These subjective methods are inexpensive and generally do not take significant time. The measures are commonly used when assessing PA of large numbers of individuals. As with all self-report measures, problems with recall, over-estimation, and interviewer skill limit the validity of these instruments.

Physical Activity Guidelines

There are various PA guidelines for public health benefits, weight loss, or weight management and for patients treated for diseases such as cancer (Schmitz et al. 2010; USDHHS 2008). For the purposes of this chapter, PA guidelines for improving general health for adults will be discussed.

In the 1960s and 1970s, the PA literature provided information that many health benefits could be achieved through vigorous intensity or high levels of PA. Since then, a large research base led to the first public health and PA guidelines issued in 1995 by the American College of Sports Medicine (ACSM) and Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) (Pate et al. 1995). These guidelines recommended that “every US adult should accumulate 30 min or more of moderate-intensity PA on most, preferably all, days of the week.” The guidelines were based on evidence that moderate-intensity PA accumulated in short bouts could lead to improved health outcomes.

Due to further advances in understanding the health benefits of PA, misunderstanding of the prior 1995 ACSM and CDC PA guidelines, and continued physical inactivity of many Americans, a new set of PA guidelines were issued in 2007 by

the ACSM and American Heart Association (AHA) (Haskell et al. 2007). These 2007 guidelines were tailored for children, healthy adults between the ages of 18–65, and older adults over age 65. For healthy adults, the guidelines recommend moderate-intensity aerobic PA for at least 30 min on 5 days each week or vigorous-intensity aerobic activity for at least 20 min on 3 days each week (Haskell et al. 2007). These guidelines also clarified that (a) 30 min of aerobic or endurance activity can be achieved in at least 10-min bouts, (b) resistance training should be performed at least twice a week, and (c) individuals who wish to engage in more activity to improve health or reduce risk of disease could surpass the minimum recommendations (Haskell et al.).

In 2008, the US Department of Human and Health Services (USDHHS) released PA guidelines for health benefits and recommended a minimum of 150 min of moderate-intensity PA, 75 min of vigorous-intensity PA, or 500–1000 MET min of PA per week. A combination of moderate- and vigorous-intensity activity could be used to achieve these recommendations. These guidelines did not provide an empirically supported dose response prescription that included frequency of PA (i.e., number of days a week) because of insufficient evidence. On the other hand, the guidelines did clarify that the upper limit of MET values for moderate activity is 5.9 and the lower limits of vigorous activity are 6 METs. In the past, 6 METs overlapped as the highest and lowest values for moderate and vigorous PA, respectively (USDHHS 2008).

Finally, there are other PA guidelines such as those related to the number of steps per day needed to achieve health benefits. It is commonly known that 2000 steps equal 1 mile. Current PA guidelines suggest that accumulating at least 10,000 steps and greater per day indicates that one is active, and accumulating at least 12,500 steps per day indicates that an individual is very active (e.g., Tudor-Locke and Bassett 2004).

Theories and Interventions

To respond to the challenge of reducing sedentary behavior, numerous interventions have been developed and tested for specific patient

populations (e.g., individuals with diabetes, cardiovascular disease, osteoarthritis, cancer), individuals with specific risk factors (high cholesterol, hypertension), and the general population at various phases of the lifespan (young children, school-aged, college-level, middle-aged, and older adults). The interventions have been offered at schools, work sites, and in communities. PA has also been targeted to reduce other risk behaviors (e.g., smoking, alcohol, and other drug addiction). More recently, PA has been emphasized as part of the initiatives to combat the obesity epidemic in the USA. The interventions have yielded varying degrees of success. The Task Force on Community Preventive Services (Kahn et al. 2002) concluded that there are six types of interventions that have been shown to increase PA and cardiorespiratory fitness: point-of-decision prompts, community-wide education, school physical education and community social support, individual health behavior, and enhanced access to places for PA combined with informational outreach activities. Interventions have been offered using various modalities (in-person, by telephone, web-based, and more recently, using mobile technology such as palmtop computers and mobile phones) with varying degrees of “reach” to modify sedentary behavior.

In developing interventions, there is growing interest in *community-based participatory research* especially to reach subgroups that are more challenging to reach but are characterized by sedentary lifestyles. This type of research addresses predictors of health at the community and individual levels and includes the community of interest in the whole research enterprise. Thus, the participants or community are commonly involved with all areas of research conceptualization, development, and data collection. Furthermore, culturally relevant strategies and theories and social marketing principles are integrated a priori in the study to enhance recruitment and retention efforts. Community-based participatory research is gaining popularity given the public health epidemic of obesity and physical inactivity in diverse populations (Yancey et al. 2004).

PA interventions have been based on theories of behavior change. One of the more commonly

used theories is *Social Cognitive Theory* (SCT) (Bandura 1986) which posits that behavior, environmental factors, and personal factors of the individual, such as cognitions, emotions, and physical characteristics, are mutually influential. Interventions based on SCT focus on the importance of individuals’ ability to control their behavior and how changes in the individual or the environment can produce changes in behavior. Success in being able to initiate and maintain the behavior change is determined by an individual’s ability to regulate his or her own behavior through personal strategies (e.g., setting PA goals, monitoring progress toward goals), as well as environmental approaches (e.g., using social support or environmental prompts).

The *Theory of Planned Behavior* (Tpb) (Ajzen 1991) is another widely used theory that proposes that behavior is directly predicted by intention, which in turn, is directly predicted by attitude, subjective norm, and perceived control. Perceived control is the belief that a behavior can be performed with ease or difficulty and it may directly predict the behavior, attitude is the personal evaluation of performing the behavior, and subjective norm is the perceived normative beliefs of relevant others regarding the behavior. Thus, according to the theory, individuals will intend, and be motivated to, perform a behavior such as PA when they view it favorably, believe that important others think they should be physically active, and believe that PA is under their control and can be carried out.

The *Transtheoretical Model* (TTM) of health behavior change (Prochaska and DiClemente 1983) postulates that individuals move through a series of six stages of motivational readiness while making a behavior change (i.e., precontemplation, contemplation, preparation, action, maintenance, and termination), and this approach has been applied to PA (Marcus and Simkin 1993). While progressing through these stages, the individual engages in ten different cognitive and behavioral processes of change that are important in the adoption and maintenance of a new behavior. For example, research suggests that cognitive processes of change (e.g., setting realistic goals) should be encouraged among those in

precontemplation and contemplation, while behavioral processes (e.g., placing reminders to exercise at work or home) should be promoted among those in the more advanced stages of motivational readiness. TTM-based interventions attempt to tailor PA programs to a participant's motivational readiness to change and utilize the processes of change to encourage progression in motivational readiness for PA.

The *Self-Determination Theory* (SDT) posits that behaviors are regulated by motives that range on a continuum from highly controlled (extrinsically motivated) to fully autonomous (intrinsically motivated). Extrinsically motivated behaviors arise to avoid negative emotions, a threat or a demand. Extrinsic motivation is also involved when an individual performs a behavior that he or she feels is valuable (but not necessarily inherently enjoyable; Ryan and Deci 2000). Intrinsically motivated behaviors are those that are done to provide the individual inherent enjoyment, satisfaction, or pleasure. It is thought that intrinsic motivation for behaviors such as PA leads to greater interest, more confidence, and longer persistence of the behavior.

The *Protection Motivation Theory* (Rogers 1983) emphasizes threat and coping appraisal. Threat appraisal consists of perceived severity (estimated threat of disease) and perceived vulnerability (estimate of chance of developing the disease), and coping appraisal consists of response efficacy (expectancy that the recommended behavior, i.e., PA, can remove the threat) and self-efficacy (belief that one can carry out the recommended behavior successfully, i.e., adopt and maintain PA). Both threat and coping appraisal affect intention to be physically active and PA behavior.

Theories that focus on the individual (e.g., beliefs, attitudes) have led to the development of various interventions to promote PA. However, variables based on these theories do not explain more than a relatively small percentage of the variance in PA levels. *Ecological models* have become increasingly popular in acknowledging multiple levels of influence on PA: individual, social/cultural, organizational, community, physical environment, and policy.

They are “macro” in the sense that they go beyond the individual-level choices and decisions to become active in an effort to reduce sedentary lifestyles (King et al. 2002). Such models focus on the environmental variables, the related type of PA (e.g., transit vs. recreational), and the extent to which specific environmental conditions (e.g., built environment) can facilitate or constrain recreational activity, transit activities, or both. For example, availability of playgrounds, sidewalks, biking, or walking trails is likely to facilitate PA. Conversely, unsafe neighborhoods and lack of sidewalks are likely to hinder PA.

To achieve widespread adoption of physically active lifestyles, much needs to be done to determine what models will facilitate dissemination of PA interventions and which approaches will help adapt interventions for culturally diverse subgroups. The costs and benefits of such interventions also require attention. Finally, sustaining PA over time will require change at the policy and legislative levels as has been the case with smoking cessation.

Conclusions

PA has an important role to play in the prevention and management of many chronic diseases. Although there has been improvement in the overall prevalence of regular PA in the USA, a large subgroup does not engage in regular PA. Efforts to promote PA have focused on individual-level factors and, to a lesser extent, factors at the community and population level. New technologies can help extend the reach of interventions. However, addressing the barriers to adopting and maintaining PA in the twenty-first century will require efforts at the individual, community, population, and policy levels.

References and Readings

- Ajzen, I. (1991). The theory of planned behavior. *Organization Behavior and Human Decision Processes*, 50, 179–211.

- Bandura, A. (1986). *Social foundations of thought and action: A social cognitive theory*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.
- Fogelholm, M., Hilloskorpi, H., Laukkanen, R., Oja, P., Van Marken, L. W., & Westerterp, K. (1998). Assessment of energy expenditure in overweight women. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, 30, 1191–1197.
- Gelibeter, A., Maher, M. M., Gerace, L., Gutin, B., Heymsfield, S. B., & Hashim, S. A. (1997). Effects of strength of aerobic training on body composition, resting metabolic rate, and peak oxygen consumption in obese dieting subjects. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 66(3), 557–563.
- Haskell, W. L., Lee, I.-M., Pate, R. R., Powell, K. E., Blair, S. N., Franklin, C. A., et al. (2007). Physical activity and public health: Updated recommendation for adults from the American College of Sports Medicine and the American Heart Association. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, 39(8), 1423–1434.
- Kahn, E. B., Ramsey, L. T., Brownson, R. C., Heath, G. W., Howze, E. H., Powell, K. E., et al. (2002). The effectiveness of interventions to increase physical activity: A systematic review. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 22(4S), 73–107.
- King, A. C., Stokols, D., Talen, E., Brassington, G. S., & Killingsworth, R. (2002). Theoretical approaches to the promotion of physical activity. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 23(2), 15–25.
- Marcus, B. H., & Simkin, L. R. (1993). The stages of exercise behavior. *Journal of Sports Medicine and Physical Fitness*, 33(1), 83–88.
- Pate, R. R., Pratt, R. M., Blair, S. N., Haskell, W. L., Macera, C. A., Bouchard, C., et al. (1995). Physical activity and public health: A recommendation from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and the American College of Sports Medicine. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 273, 402–407.
- Prochaska, J. O., & DiClemente, C. C. (1983). Stages and processes of self-change of smoking: Toward an integrative model of change. *Journal of Consulting & Clinical Psychology*, 51(3), 390–395.
- Rogers, R. W. (1983). Cognitive and physiological process in fear appeals and attitude change: A revised theory of protection motivation. In J. R. Cacioppo & R. E. Petty (Eds.), *Social psychology: A source book* (pp. 153–176). New York: Guilford Press.
- Ryan, R. M., & Deci, E. L. (2000). Self-determination theory and the facilitation of intrinsic motivation, social development, and well-being. *American Psychologist*, 55(1), 68–78.
- Schmitz, K. H., Courneya, K. S., Matthews, C. M., Demark-Wahnefried, W., Galvao, D. A., Pinto, B. M., et al. (2010). American College of Sports Medicine roundtable on exercise guidelines for cancer survivors. *Medicine & Science in Sports and Exercise*, 42, 258–266.
- Schoenborn, C. A., & Adams, P. F. (2010). Health behaviors of adults: United States 2005–2007. National Center for Health Statistics. *Vital and Health Statistics*, 10(245), 1–132.
- Tudor-Locke, C., & Bassett, D. R. (2004). How many steps/day are enough? Preliminary pedometer indices for public health. *Sports Medicine*, 34, 1–8.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2008). *Physical Activity Guidelines Advisory Committee report, 2008*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.
- Van Poppel, M. N., Chinapaw, M. J., Mokkink, L. B., van Mechelen, W., & Terwee, C. B. (2010). Physical activity questionnaires for adults: A systematic review of measurement properties. *Sports Medicine*, 44(7), 565–600.
- Vanhees, L., Lefevre, J., Philippaerts, R., Martens, M., Huygens, W., Troosters, T., et al. (2005). How to assess physical activity? How to assess physical fitness? *European Journal of Cardiovascular Prevention and Rehabilitation*, 12, 102–114.
- Yancey, A. K., Kumanyika, S. K., Ponce, N. A., McCarthy, W. J., Fielding, J. E., Leslie, J. P., et al. (2004). Population-based interventions engaging communities of color in healthy eating and activity living: A review. *Preventing Chronic Disease*, 1, A09.

Physical Activity Change in Healthcare Settings

Mark Stoutenberg

Department of Kinesiology, Temple University,
Philadelphia, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Exercise is medicine](#); [Exercise prescription](#);
[Physical activity counseling](#)

Definition

Clinicians and other health personnel can influence public health outcomes through physical activity counseling in health settings. However, counseling alone is often not sufficient for the adoption of sustained, long-term physical activity habits. A more comprehensive framework is needed for implementing behavior change strategies throughout the entire patient visit to a healthcare setting. This framework provides an

organized, systems-change approach for busy clinicians and their healthcare teams who may have had little formal training in physical activity counseling and face multiple institutional barriers. This approach is guided by lessons learned from decades of experience integrating of physical activity counseling in health settings around the world.

Description

The engagement of our health systems and healthcare providers in promoting physical activity is one potential strategy for increasing physical activity levels at a population level (Patrick et al. 2009). Healthcare providers see a large portion of the general population, often several times throughout the year. These ongoing, multiple contacts, offer the ideal opportunity to provide brief, impactful physical activity counseling to patients. Comprehensive strategies exist for conducting physical assessment and counseling as part of a normal clinic visit (Lobelo et al. 2014, 2018). Assessing patient physical activity levels, providing brief counseling, writing customized prescriptions, and referring patients to existing community resources can all be completed in a matter of minutes when done in a coordinated manner by the entire healthcare team.

Two of the earliest trials examining physical activity counseling in health settings were the Physician-based Assessment and Counseling for Exercise (PACE) (Calfas et al. 1996) and the Activity Counseling Trial (ACT) (Simons-Morton et al. 2001). In PACE, physicians spent 3–5 min of the office visit discussing information and strategies based on patient level of readiness for becoming more active, followed by a phone counseling session with a health educator to reinforce information provided during the clinic visit. A significantly greater proportion of patients who visited physicians in the PACE intervention arm reported being regularly active, increasing their walking time by 40 min a week. In ACT, investigators examined the effectiveness of three different physical activity counseling interventions compared to current practices in the

primary care setting. Inactive adults received either advice (information only), assistance (behavioral counseling), or counseling (behavioral counseling + biweekly phone counseling). Patients in both the assistance and the counseling interventions significantly increased their physical fitness by 5%, with a significantly greater proportion of patients in the counseling group achieving national physical activity guidelines 24 months after the beginning of the trial. Together, these two trials demonstrated that physical activity counseling in the healthcare setting is feasible without unduly burdening healthcare providers, leading to multiple calls of action urging healthcare providers to provide brief physical activity counseling to all of their inactive patients (McPhail and Schippers 2012; Vuori et al. 2013; Berra et al. 2015).

A necessary first step to effectively providing physical activity counseling is to determine the current physical activity level of patients (Greenwood et al. 2010). Assessing patient physical activity levels is the cornerstone to any subsequent behavior change counseling (Stoutenberg et al. 2017). As with other clinical indicators, the initial diagnosis sends a crucial message to patients that physical activity is of equal importance to traditional vital signs, such as bodyweight and blood pressure, while emphasizing the importance of maintaining favorable activity levels to achieve optimal health. When incorporated as a vital sign in the electronic medical record, the simple act of assessing physical activity levels has shown to effectively increase discussion and documentation of physical activity habits, as well as provision of physical activity referrals, while resulting in small but significant reductions in bodyweight and hemoglobin A1c levels (Grant et al. 2014). The assessment of physical activity levels identifies inactive individuals and serves as the initial catalyst in a physical activity “counseling cascade.”

Once a patient’s current activity level is identified, the next step is to understand the patient’s readiness to change their physical activity behavior. Readiness for change is a component of the transtheoretical model, a theory which emerged from psychotherapy to treat addictive behaviors

(Prochaska and Velicer 1997), but has since been adapted to help understand readiness to engage in physical activity (Hutchinson et al. 2009). The transtheoretical model is a dynamic model that facilitates behavior change through a series of stage-specific strategies and processes of change. Individuals are characterized into one of five “stages of change” (pre-contemplation, contemplation, preparation, action, and maintenance) with specific behavior change strategies customized to facilitate transition to a higher stage of change. Strategies for individuals at lower levels of readiness include the provision of information about physical activity and its benefits, discussion of perceived barriers, and advocating for small changes. Individuals at higher levels of readiness may be engaged in goal setting, developing a specific physical activity plan to achieve their goals, creating a supportive environment for being active, and self-monitoring techniques (Riebe 2018).

Armed with knowledge of the patient’s physical activity levels and readiness to change, the provider is now positioned to engage their patient in behavior change strategies. One model commonly used in healthcare settings to facilitate physical activity behavior change is the 5As model (Pinto et al. 2005; Carroll et al. 2011, 2012). The 5As (assess, advise, agree, assist, arrange) is a proven framework for providers to assess current physical activity levels; advise on the benefits of becoming more physically active; collaboratively agree on physical activity goals based on the patient’s desires and needs; assist the patient in utilizing problem-solving techniques, overcoming barriers, and identifying supportive resources; and arrange a specific plan for future follow-up. Another proven physical activity counseling technique that is widely used in health setting is the use of motivational interviewing (VanBuskirk and Wetherell 2014). Motivational interviewing is a method for approaching patients, who are ambivalent about making a health behavior change, and is considered to be more effective than traditional, advice giving, counseling strategies (Rubak et al. 2005; Miller and Rollnick 2013). The goal of motivational interviewing is to encourage patients to

express their own reasons for behavior change by fostering internal motivation. Motivational interviewing has proven to be effective in promoting physical activity in breast cancer survivors (Pudkasam et al. 2018), as well as in adults with type 2 diabetes (Soderlund 2018), obesity (Burgess et al. 2017), and chronic health conditions (O’Halloran et al. 2014).

After behavioral counseling, patients should receive both a customized physical activity “prescription” and a referral to community-based physical activity resources. The physical activity prescription is a reinforcing behavioral strategy encouraging patients to become more physically active (Thornton et al. 2016). Physical activity prescriptions can be provided through a number of different written or electronic formats, such as simple, customized prescription pads or handouts with information about being active with specific health conditions. The “Green Prescription” in New Zealand is an example of a successful, nationally coordinated effort to provide patients with a basic physical activity prescription (Swinburn et al. 1998). When delivering the physical activity prescription, it is important for providers to be mindful of their scope of practice and, potentially, a lack of formal physical activity training.

The last step in the clinic setting – providing patients with a physical activity referral – is critically important in supporting their efforts to become more physically active, especially when considering that effective physical activity counseling conducted by healthcare providers may be unfeasible given the lack of time to engage patients in preventive counseling (Lamming et al. 2017). Given that the most common barrier to providing physical activity counseling in the clinic setting is a limited amount of time providers have with their patients, physical activity counseling needs to be very brief (<5 min). The referral connects patients to supportive resources for becoming more physically active in their local community setting. These resources may include certified exercise professionals, recognized places for being physically active (i.e., local park systems, community recreation centers), and evidence-based programs (i.e., Matter of Balance,

EnhanceFitness). Physical activity referral schemes have been used with great success throughout Europe (Leijon et al. 2009; Campbell et al. 2015) and are a valuable primary care intervention for promoting physical activity.

Employing specific behavior change strategies with patients is an essential component of increasing patient physical activity levels. The optimal way to intervene and encourage patients to be physically active is still unknown but likely varies across a number of different factors, such as gender, socioeconomic status, education level, and neighborhood characteristics of the patient. Implementation of the steps discussed in this entry need not be the responsibility of any one person. Multiple members of the healthcare team, such as medical assistants during the assessment of traditional vital signs, can assess physical activity levels and readiness to change, while discharge nurses or front desk personnel can provide the final referral. While healthcare providers cannot single-handedly solve the epidemic of physical inactivity, they have a special opportunity to be an important part of the solution by integrating physical activity as a part of routine care.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Benefits of Exercise](#)
- ▶ [Exercise](#)
- ▶ [Motivational Interviewing](#)
- ▶ [Physical Activity and Health](#)
- ▶ [Primary Care](#)
- ▶ [Primary Care Physicians](#)
- ▶ [Primary Care Providers](#)
- ▶ [Stages-of-Change Model](#)
- ▶ [Transtheoretical Model of Behavior Change](#)

References and Further Reading

- Berra, K., Rippe, J., & Manson, J. E. (2015). Making physical activity counseling a priority in clinical practice: The time for action is now. *JAMA*, 314(24), 2617–2618.
- Burgess, E., Hassmén, P., Welvaert, M., & Pampa, K. L. (2017). Behavioural treatment strategies improve adherence to lifestyle intervention programmes in adults with obesity: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clinical Obesity*, 7(2), 105–114.
- Calfas, K. J., Long, B. J., Sallis, J. F., Wooten, W. J., Pratt, M., & Patrick, K. (1996). A controlled trial of physician counselling to promote the adoption of physical activity. *Preventive Medicine*, 25, 225–233.
- Campbell, F., Holmes, M., Everson-Hock, E., Davis, S., Woods, H. B., Anokye, N., et al. (2015). A systematic review and economic evaluation of exercise referral schemes in primary care: A short report. *Health Technology Assessment*, 19(60), 1–110.
- Carroll, J. K., Antognoli, E., & Flocke, S. A. (2011). Evaluation of physical activity counseling in primary care using direct observation of the 5as. *Annals of Family Medicine*, 9(5), 416–422.
- Carroll, J. K., Fiscella, K., Epstein, R. M., Sanders, M. R., & Williams, G. C. (2012). A 5a's communication intervention to promote physical activity in underserved populations. *BMC Health Services Research*, 12, 374.
- Grant, R. W., Schmittiel, J. A., Neugebauer, R. S., Uratsu, C. S., & Sternfeld, B. (2014). Exercise as a vital sign: A quasi-experimental analysis of a health system intervention to collect patient-reported exercise levels. *Journal of General Internal Medicine*, 29(7), 1081.
- Greenwood, L. J., Joy, E. A., & Stanford, J. B. (2010). The physical activity vital sign: A primary care tool to guide counseling for obesity. *Journal of Physical Activity and Health*, 7, 571–576.
- Hutchinson, A. J., Breckon, J. D., & Johnston, L. H. (2009). Physical activity behavior change interventions based on the transtheoretical model: A systematic review. *Health Education & Behavior*, 36(5), 829–845.
- Lamming, L., Pears, S., Mason, D., Morton, K., Bijker, M., Sutton, S., et al. (2017). What do we know about brief interventions for physical activity that could be delivered in primary care consultations? A systematic review of reviews. *Preventive Medicine*, 99, 152–163.
- Leijon, M. E., Bendtsen, P., Nilsen, P., Festin, K., & Ståhle, A. (2009). Does a physical activity referral scheme improve the physical activity among routine primary health care patients? *Scandinavian Journal of Medicine & Science in Sports*, 19(5), 627–636.
- Lobelo, F., Stoutenberg, M., & Hutber, A. (2014). The exercise is medicine global health initiative: A 2014 update. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*, 48(22), 1627–1633.
- Lobelo, F., Rohm Young, D., Sallis, R., Garber, M. D., Billinger, S. A., Duperly, J., et al. (2018). Routine assessment and promotion of physical activity in healthcare settings: A scientific statement from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*, 137(18), e495–e522.
- McPhail, S., & Schippers, M. (2012). An evolving perspective on physical activity counselling by medical professionals. *BMC Family Practice*, 13, 31.
- Miller, W. R., & Rollnick, S. (2013). *Motivational interviewing: Helping people change*. New York: Guilford Press.
- O'Halloran, P. D., Blackstock, F., Shields, N., Holland, A., Iles, R., Kingsley, M., et al. (2014). Motivational interviewing to increase physical activity in people

- with chronic health conditions: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clinical Rehabilitation*, 28(12), 1159–1171.
- Patrick, K., Pratt, M., & Sallis, R. E. (2009). The healthcare sector's role in the U.S. national physical activity plan. *Journal of Physical Activity & Health*, 6(Suppl 2), S211–S219.
- Pinto, B. M., Goldstein, M. G., Ashba, J., Sciamanna, C. N., & Jette, A. (2005). Randomized controlled trial of physical activity counseling for older primary care patients. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 29(4), 247–255.
- Prochaska, J. O., & Velicer, W. F. (1997). The transtheoretical model of behavior change. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 12(1), 38–48.
- Pudkasam, S., Polman, R., Pitcher, M., Fisher, M., Chinlumphaseert, N., & Apostolopoulos, V. (2018). Physical activity and breast cancer survivors: Importance of adherence, motivational interviewing and psychological health. *Maturitas*, 116, 66–72.
- Riebe, D. (2018). *ACSM's guidelines for exercise testing and prescription* (10th ed.). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer.
- Rubak, S., Sandbæk, A., Lauritzen, T., & Christensen, B. (2005). Motivational interviewing: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *British Journal of General Practice*, 55(513), 305–312.
- Simons-Morton, D. G., Blair, S. N., King, A. C., Morgan, T. M., Applegate, W. B., O'Toole, M., et al. (2001). Effects of physical activity counseling in primary care: The activity counseling trial: A randomized controlled trial. *JAMA*, 286(6), 677–687.
- Soderlund, P. D. (2018). Effectiveness of motivational interviewing for improving physical activity self-management for adults with type 2 diabetes: A review. *Chronic Illness*, 14(1), 54–68.
- Stoutenberg, M., Shaya, G. E., Feldman, D. I., & Carroll, J. K. (2017). Practical strategies for assessing patient physical activity levels in primary care. *Mayo Clinic Proceedings. Innovations, Quality & Outcomes*, 1(1), 8–15.
- Swinburn, B. A., Walter, L. G., Arroll, B., Tilyard, M. W., & Russell, D. G. (1998). The green prescription study: A randomized controlled trial of written exercise advice provided by general practitioners. *American Journal of Public Health*, 88(2), 288–291.
- Thornton, J. S., Frémont, P., Khan, K., Poirier, P., Fowles, J., Wells, G. D., & Frankovich, R. J. (2016). Physical activity prescription: A critical opportunity to address a modifiable risk factor for the prevention and management of chronic disease: A position statement by the Canadian Academy of Sport and Exercise Medicine. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*, 50, 1109–1114.
- VanBuskirk, K. A., & Wetherell, J. L. (2014). Motivational interviewing with primary care populations: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 37(4), 768–780.
- Vuori, I. M., Lavie, C. J., & Blair, S. N. (2013). Physical activity promotion in the health care system. *Mayo Clinic Proceedings*, 88(12), 1446–1461.

Physical Activity Counseling

► [Physical Activity Change in Healthcare Settings](#)

Physical Activity Intensity

► [Non-exercise Behavior](#)
 ► [Physical Activity/Inactivity: Objective Measurement of](#)

Physical Activity Monitors

Danielle Arigo and Kristen Pasko
 Department of Psychology, Rowan University,
 Glassboro, NJ, USA

Synonyms

[Activity trackers](#); [Wearable fitness trackers](#)

Definition

Physical activity monitors are technological devices that provide objective assessment of physical activity engagement, including parameters such as frequency, intensity (type) of activity (e.g., steps, light intensity, aerobic intensity), length of time in specific types of activity, and energy expenditure.

Description

Regular engagement in physical activity (PA) can lower risk for several of the leading causes of death in the USA (e.g., cardiovascular disease, cancer) and shows unique benefits for weight control, mood disorders, and overall well-being (Penedo and Dahn 2005; Warburton and Bredin 2017). As a result, PA engagement is a key

outcome of interest in behavioral medicine research, practice, and policy, and decisions about how best to measure PA in behavioral medicine work are critical to the success of the field's PA promotion efforts. Self-reports of PA engagement are useful for some purposes. Given that people tend to overestimate the length of time and intensity of their PA (Garriguet et al. 2015; Steene-Johannessen et al. 2016), however, objective measures of PA are preferable to maximize the reliability and validity of PA outcomes (Ong et al. 2011). A wide range of PA monitoring devices is available for this purpose, differing in measurement method, price, and strengths/limitations. Popular devices for collecting ambulatory PA (i.e., in individuals' natural environments) in research and practice include:

1. **Pedometers** are worn on the waist or hip to capture accumulated steps (e.g., per day, within a specific time frame), measured from vertical pelvic displacements. Pedometers are inexpensive, inconspicuous, and easy to use, making them accessible to a wide range of populations (Ong et al. 2011). Limitations include lack of information about activity intensity, timing, or energy expenditure and modest reliability among individuals with BMIs >30 (Berlin et al. 2006; Shepherd et al. 1999; Vanhees et al. 2005).
2. **Research-grade accelerometers** measure change in speed with respect to time in gravitational acceleration units, typically for multiple spatial axes (Berlin et al. 2006). Many stand-alone devices are worn on the wrist, waist, or ankle and collect information about steps, activity intensity (including sedentary time), episodes ("bouts") of sedentary and moderate- or vigorous-intensity activity, timing of activity, and energy expenditure. These devices also can be used to estimate sleep parameters and can be integrated with geolocation (GPS). Related technology provides additional information about body posture (i.e., thigh-worn inclinometers such as activPAL), which increases the accuracy of sedentary activity measurement. Some devices require a hard line connection to download data, whereas

others sync data wirelessly. Research-grade devices have high accuracy and often high cost to purchase, and some have proprietary software required to download and/or calculate desired outcome estimates (e.g., ActiGraph, activPAL). The use of device-specific software necessitates additional skills to calculate and interpret data. These devices usually do not provide real-time feedback to users, which is useful for observational studies or PA promotion programs for which the device itself is not intended to change behavior.

3. **Commercially available accelerometers** (e.g., Fitbit, Apple Watch, Samsung Gear Fit) use similar technology to research-grade devices; they are most often worn on the wrist and provide real-time feedback, offering the consistent self-monitoring that facilitates health behavior change (Lewis et al. 2015; Teixeira et al. 2015). Many commercially available devices have associated webpages and/or smartphone apps that can sync data wirelessly and display (or output to data files) PA parameters in attractive user interfaces. Parameters include steps per day and minutes in different activity intensities, and some models also monitor and display/output sleep and heart rate data. These are lower in cost than research-grade tools and show somewhat lower accuracy (Evenson et al. 2015), and it may be difficult for some users to maximize their benefit without technical assistance (e.g., setting up profiles, syncing devices with apps, or interpreting feedback). Accelerometers also come embedded in many available smartphones (e.g., iPhone) with associated apps that display PA engagement. This technology is not likely to require costs beyond the smartphone hardware and may be easiest for smartphone users to incorporate, as it does not require a separate device. However, smartphone accelerometers show variable accuracy when used to measure daily activities in the natural environment – particularly for women, who often do not carry phones in their pockets (Brodie et al. 2018).
4. **Heart rate (HR) monitors** approximate energy expenditure via heart rate, which is

associated with oxygen consumption (Freedson and Miller 2000). Early HR monitors used a transmitter belt (worn around the chest) and a receiver watch; commercial devices worn on the wrist are now used more often (e.g., Fitbit, portable navigation devices, smartwatches; Dooley et al. 2017). Strengths of modern HR devices include low cost and ease of wear; given that many factors influence HR (e.g., emotional state, temperature, humidity, body position, food intake; Livingstone 1997; Tapia et al. 2007), however, these monitors provide limited accuracy for PA parameters.

5. **Portable indirect calorimeters** measure energy expenditure via inhalation of oxygen and exhalation of carbon dioxide, which are used to calculate metabolic rate. This method requires users to breathe into a device (e.g., bag or mask); modern handheld models have reduced the cost, size, and difficulty of data collection with this method, though it remains fairly costly and requires considerable training to maximize accuracy (Haugen et al. 2007; Ndahimana and Kim 2017). Consequently, indirect calorimetry is most often used in clinical settings among patients with specific health conditions (Frankenfield et al. 2005; Haugen et al. 2007).
6. **Smart clothing** embeds sensor technology into fabrics or between layers of fabric, to collect information about electrocardial activity, respiration, acceleration, and heart rate (Lymberis and Paradiso 2008). Commercially available smart clothing often connects to smartphone applications that display parameters such as steps and activity intensity (e.g., Sensoria Fitness Socks). These devices are expensive and not yet routinely used in PA research or practice, but may become more common in these settings as cost and functionality improve.

Decisions about the use of ambulatory PA monitoring devices in research, practice, or policy should be informed by several situational factors, including:

1. The purpose of a given program (e.g., observation vs. intervention via device)
2. The specific parameters and level of accuracy needed to achieve this purpose (e.g., accurately quantifying the proportion of a population who engages in recommended levels of PA per week)
3. Availability of resources (e.g., funds to purchase devices, skill required to train device users or interpret PA data)

Cross-References

- [Ambulatory Monitoring](#)
- [Behavior Change](#)
- [Physical Activity](#)
- [Self-monitoring](#)

References and Further Reading

- Berlin, J. E., Storti, K. L., & Brach, J. S. (2006). Using activity monitors to measure physical activity in free-living conditions. *Physical Therapy*, 86, 1137–1145.
- Brodie, M. A., Pliner, E. M., Ho, A., Li, K., Chen, Z., Gandevia, S. C., & Lord, S. R. (2018). Big data vs accurate data in health research: Large-scale physical activity monitoring, smartphones, wearable devices and risk of unconscious bias. *Medical Hypotheses*, 119, 32–36.
- Dooley, E. E., Golaszewski, N. M., & Bartholomew, J. B. (2017). Estimating accuracy at exercise intensities: A comparative study of self-monitoring heart rate and physical activity wearable devices. *JMIR mHealth and uHealth*, 5, 1–12.
- Edwardson, C. L., Winkler, E. A., Bodicoat, D. H., Yates, T., Davies, M. J., Dunstan, D. W., & Healy, G. N. (2017). Considerations when using the activPAL monitor in field-based research with adult populations. *Journal of Sport and Health Science*, 6, 162–178.
- Evenson, K. R., Goto, M. M., & Furberg, R. D. (2015). Systematic review of the validity and reliability of consumer-wearable activity trackers. *International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 12, 1–22.
- Frankenfield, D., Roth-Yousey, L., & Compber, C. (2005). Comparison of predictive equations for resting metabolic rate in healthy nonobese and obese adults: A systematic review. *Journal of the American Dietetic Association*, 105, 775–789.
- Freedson, P. S., & Miller, K. (2000). Objective monitoring of physical activity using motion sensors and heart

- rate. *Research Quarterly for Exercise and Sport*, 71, 21–29.
- Garriguet, D., Tremblay, S., & Colley, R. C. (2015). Comparison of physical activity adult questionnaire results with accelerometer data. *Statistics Canada*, 26(7). Retrieved from <https://www150.statcan.gc.ca/n1/pub/82-003-x/2015007/article/14205-eng.pdf>.
- Haugen, H. A., Chan, L. N., & Li, F. (2007). Indirect calorimetry: A practical guide for clinicians. *Nutrition in Clinical Practice*, 22, 377–388.
- Jagim, A. R., Camic, C. L., Kisiolek, J., Luedke, J., Erickson, J., Jones, M. T., & Oliver, J. M. (2018). Accuracy of resting metabolic rate prediction equations in athletes. *The Journal of Strength & Conditioning Research*, 32, 1875–1881.
- Lewis, Z. H., Lyons, E. J., Jarvis, J. M., & Baillargeon, J. (2015). Using an electronic activity monitor system as an intervention modality: A systematic review. *BMC Public Health*, 15, 1–15.
- Livingstone, M. B. E. (1997). Heart-rate monitoring: The answer for assessing energy expenditure and physical activity in population studies? *British Journal of Nutrition*, 78, 869–871.
- Lymberis, A., & Paradiso, R. (2008). Smart fabrics and interactive textile enabling wearable personal applications: R&D state of the art and future challenges. In *2008 30th annual international conference of the IEEE engineering in medicine and biology society* (pp. 5270–5273). IEEE.
- McArdle, W. D., Katch, F. I., & Katch, V. L. (2010). *Exercise physiology: Nutrition, energy, and human performance* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Ndahimana, D., & Kim, E. K. (2017). Measurement methods for physical activity and energy expenditure: A review. *Clinical Nutrition Research*, 6, 68–80.
- Ong, L., & Blumenthal, J. A. (2010). Assessment of physical activity in research and clinical practice. In *Handbook of behavioral medicine* (pp. 31–48). New York: Springer.
- Penedo, F. J., & Dahn, J. R. (2005). Exercise and well-being: A review of mental and physical health benefits associated with physical activity. *Current Opinion in Psychiatry*, 18, 189–193.
- Shepherd, E. F., Toloza, E., McClung, C. D., & Schmalzried, T. P. (1999). Step activity monitor: Increased accuracy in quantifying ambulatory activity. *Journal of Orthopaedic Research*, 17, 703–708.
- Steene-Johannessen, J., Anderssen, S. A., Van der Ploeg, H. P., Hendriksen, I. J., Donnelly, A. E., Brage, S., & Ekelund, U. (2016). Are self-report measures able to define individuals as physically active or inactive? *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, 48, 235–244.
- Tapia, E. M., Intille, S. S., Haskell, W., Larson, K., Wright, J., King, A., & Friedman, R. (2007). Real-time recognition of physical activities and their intensities using wireless accelerometers and a heart rate monitor. In *2007 11th IEEE international symposium on wearable computers* (pp. 37–40).
- Teixeira, P. J., Carraça, E. V., Marques, M. M., Rutter, H., Oppert, J. M., De Bourdeaudhuij, I., ... & Brug, J. (2015). Successful behavior change in obesity interventions in adults: A systematic review of self-regulation mediators. *BMC Medicine*, 13, 1–16.
- Vanhees, L., Lefevre, J., Philippaerts, R., Martens, M., Huygens, W., Troosters, T., & Beunen, G. (2005). How to assess physical activity? How to assess physical fitness? *European Journal of Cardiovascular Prevention & Rehabilitation*, 12, 102–114.
- Warburton, D. E., & Bredin, S. S. (2017). Health benefits of physical activity: A systematic review of current systematic reviews. *Current Opinion in Cardiology*, 32, 541–556.

Physical Activity/Inactivity: Objective Measurement of

Sophia Brady¹, Jet J. C. S. Veldhuijzen van Zanten¹, Joan L. Duda¹, George D. Kitas² and Sally A. M. Fenton¹

¹School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation Sciences, University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

²Russells Hall Hospital, The Dudley Group NHS Foundation Trust, Dudley, UK

Synonyms

Non-exercise physical activity; Physical activity intensity

Definition

Device-based assessments of physical activity, including pedometers, accelerometers, and multi-sensor devices.

Description

Background

Unequivocal evidence exists for the association between physical activity (PA) and health. Consequently, the promotion of PA is a global public

health priority, with intervention efforts increasing exponentially worldwide. In developing and evaluating interventions, the accurate surveillance of free-living PA is critical for several reasons: first to be able to examine dose-response relationships between PA and health to optimize the potential efficacy of interventions, second to determine adherence to (a) current PA recommendations (e.g., 150 min of moderate-intensity PA/week) and/or (b) doses of PA evidenced to produce meaningful changes in health outcomes, and third to establish whether interventions to promote PA are effective at bringing about change in behavior.

Until recently, self-report measures (e.g., questionnaires, proxy reports, diaries) have been extensively used to estimate and quantify levels of PA, due to their low cost and ease of administration. However, self-report measures are prone to recall bias, with participants overreporting and misinterpreting the frequency, intensity, and duration of their PA. By comparison, device-based (objective) assessments of PA – such as pedometers and accelerometers – offer a relatively more valid and reliable means of assessing PA (1). Consequently, these instruments are increasingly considered the preferred method for quantifying PA in both large-scale epidemiological research and smaller observational and experimental studies. Below, we describe the most commonly used objective methods to assess “free-living PA” (PA accumulated as part of normal daily activity), highlighting advantages and limitations of each method.

Pedometers

Pedometers assess free-living PA via recording daily step counts, to provide an estimate of total PA accumulated across a specific time period (e.g., days, weeks). Typical study protocols require participants to wear pedometers during waking hours for 5–7 days, to obtain a reliable estimate of daily physical activity. Pedometers are small and inexpensive and do not require any skill or training of the participant. As a result, they are frequently used to provide objective estimates of free-living PA in large-scale, cohort studies.

Advantages and Limitations: Pedometers are valid and reliable measures of PA in adults (2), yielding a percentage error of only $\pm 3\%$ and correlations of >0.89 , when compared to direct observation. However, some studies suggest pedometers lack sensitivity when used to assess PA in specific populations. For example, pedometers demonstrate 56% error where participants had a step cadence of 50 steps/min, leading to significant inaccuracies and misestimations in measurements of PA in older, less mobile populations (3). In addition, non-ambulatory activities cannot be assessed with pedometers (e.g., swimming and cycling), and pedometers do not afford the ability to measure frequency, intensity, and duration of PA. As such, pedometers are particularly limited in their application to research which seeks to understand the dose-response relationship between PA and health, as well as estimate adherence to PA recommendations concentrated on specific doses of PA. Even so, pedometers offer a useful alternative to self-report when seeking to determine changes in PA over time (e.g., epidemiology, in response to intervention) or to examine incidental, less structured PA (e.g., housework or gardening), as well as differences in total levels of PA engagement between individuals.

Accelerometers

Accelerometers are small, lightweight devices which measure the accelerations of body movements to which they are attached (e.g., the torso or wrist). To reliably assess free-living PA, protocols require that accelerometers are worn for at least 7 days (1). Devices record accelerations resulting from body movement continuously, and data is stored within the device for subsequent download and interpretation. Accelerometer data can be extracted as raw data (i.e., gravity-based acceleration units (g-units), where $1\text{ g} = 9.81\text{ m/s}^2$) or “count-based” data. The latter involves raw data being compressed (using manufacturers software) and time-stamped, to provide an “accelerometer count” per unit of time (i.e., per epoch). Epochs are user-specified and can range from 1 to 60 s.

Both raw and count-based accelerometer data can be interpreted to quantify frequency, intensity,

and duration of free-living PA. Specifically, accelerometer output (raw or count-based data) can be calibrated against energy expenditure (EE) (measured by indirect calorimetry), to identify thresholds at which accelerometer data corresponds to different intensities of PA. These thresholds are determined according metabolic equivalents (METs) and referred to as “cut-points.”

Advantages and Limitations: Accelerometers have been widely validated among healthy adults and children, in controlled laboratory conditions and free-living settings. Studies demonstrate correlations of 0.88 between counts/minute measured by accelerometer and indirect calorimetry during treadmill walking in an adult population (4), as well as high inter-instrument reliability in free-living settings (5). As such, the superior validity of accelerometers relative to self-report, and their ability to accurately measure frequency, intensity, and duration of PA (which pedometers cannot assess), is the main advantage of these devices and offers the ability to more accurately establish dose-response associations between PA and health, estimate population prevalence of physical inactivity and/or adherence to physical activity recommendations, and measure response to interventions targeting increasing PA. Consequently, accelerometers are viewed as the most promising tool for accurately assessing free-living PA, particularly in large-scale epidemiological and intervention studies.

However, many complex methodological and analytical decisions are required to deal with accelerometer data. Consequently, measurement protocols (e.g., number of days wear, epoch length) and analysis approaches (e.g., cut points used) are highly heterogeneous across studies, even where similar research questions are being asked in comparable populations (6). This absence of a “gold standard recommendation,” for analysis of accelerometer data, results in subjective interpretation of what is advocated to be “objective data” (7).

A further notable drawback of accelerometry is the inability of these devices to accurately assess activities that require increased EE, but no (or little) whole-body movement (e.g., weight-

lifting, cycling). In addition, accelerometers underestimate the energy cost of stair climbing, as they are unable to capture the energy cost of lifting body weight against gravity. Nevertheless, engagement in such behaviors can be captured via other means (e.g., self-report), to give an indication of the contributions of these activities toward daily PA. Thus combining accelerometry with self-report is recommended.

With that said, where studies are conducted on smaller scale, and with sufficient financial resource, more expensive “multi-sensor devices”—which combine physiological parameters (e.g., heart rate) with accelerometer data—may offer a more valid and reliable alternative to PA measurement.

Multi-sensor Activity Monitors

Multi-sensor activity monitors are combined sensors that measure and integrate data from two sources: physiological data collected in response to activity (e.g., heart rate, skin temperature) and movement data captured with accelerometry. Examples include the ActiHeart™ monitor (heart rate + accelerometry) and the SenseWear Armband (galvanic skin response + accelerometry).

Advantages and Limitations: Multi-sensor activity monitors overcome the key limitation of accelerometry; namely, dual input from both accelerometry and a physiological parameter not only enhances their validity and accuracy for measuring PA EE but also means these devices are less likely to misclassify low acceleration-high intensity behaviors (e.g., weight lifting) as low-intensity activities. For example, studies have shown that multi-sensor devices give more accurate estimations of EE during cycling, non-weight bearing activities, low intensity activities, and stair climbing, when compared to accelerometers. However, due to (a) increased complexity of data recorded and analytical approaches required and (b) the necessity for multi-sensor devices to be individually calibrated, these dual-input monitors are particularly time-consuming for use in research. They are also more expensive than accelerometers, therefore typically used in small-scale experimental/intervention studies which

require precise estimates of PA, rather than population-based studies of PA behavior.

A rise in the popularity of multi-sensor PA monitoring has been observed in the commercial market. Currently, several “fitness trackers” have been developed, employing accelerometry and heart rate to estimate free-living PA and quantify daily EE. However, recent research has indicated most commercially available activity trackers significantly underestimate free-living EE, when compared to the research grade monitors (e.g., the ActiHeart and SenseWear Armband) (8). Consequently, commercial physical activity devices are not currently considered appropriate for use in research.

Conclusion

Assessment of PA using pedometers, accelerometers, and multi-sensor devices enables more accurate and valid assessment of free-living PA, relative to traditional self-report methods. Pedometers offer large-scale, cheap, and reliable measurements of daily physical activity; however they lack the ability to measure the frequency, intensity, and duration of PA. Accelerometers are able to capture these different dimensions of PA, but the manner in which the data gathered is analyzed to provide estimates regarding frequency, intensity, and duration of PA requires a degree of subjective interpretation (e.g., which cut points to use, cut-based vs. raw data) (1). As a result, while accelerometers are termed objective devices, it would be more accurate to refer to them as “device-based assessments of PA.” Multi-sensor activity monitors currently provide more valid means of quantifying PA intensity, frequency, and duration, but researchers should consider the “trade-off” between precision vs. ease of assessment and cost.

Cross-References

- Exercise
- Exercise Testing
- Interventions and Strategies to Promote Physical Activity
- Physical Activity

- Physical Activity and Health
- Physical Inactivity

References and Further Readings

- Chowdhury, E. A., Western, M. J., Nightingale, T. E., Peacock, O. J., & Thompson, D. (2017). Assessment of laboratory and daily energy expenditure estimates from consumer multi-sensor physical activity monitors. *PLoS One*, 12(2), e0171720.
- Dowd, K. P., Szeklicki, R., Minetto, M. A., Murphy, M. H., Polito, A., Ghigo, E., et al. (2018). A systematic literature review of reviews on techniques for physical activity measurement in adults: A DEDIPAC study. *The International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 15(1), 15.
- Freedson, P., Bowles, H. R., Troiano, R., & Haskell, W. (2012). Assessment of physical activity using wearable monitors: Recommendations for monitor calibration and use in the field. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, 44(1 Suppl 1), S1–S4.
- Kelly, L. A., McMillan, D. G., Anderson, A., Fippinger, M., Fillerup, G., & Rider, J. (2013). Validity of actigraphs uniaxial and triaxial accelerometers for assessment of physical activity in adults in laboratory conditions. *BMC Medical Physics*, 13(1), 5.
- Liu, S., Brooks, D., Thomas, S., Eysenbach, G., & Nolan, R. P. (2015). Lifesource XL-18 pedometer for measuring steps under controlled and free-living conditions. *Journal of Sports Sciences*, 33(10), 1001–1006.
- Martin, J., Krc, K., Mitchell, E., Eng, J., & Noble, J. (2012). Pedometer accuracy in slow walking older adults. *International Journals of Therapeutic Rehabilitation*, 19(7), 387–393.
- Troiano, R. P., McClain, J. J., Brychta, R. J., & Chen, K. Y. (2014). Evolution of accelerometer methods for physical activity research. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*, 48(13), 1019–1023.
- Vanhelst, J., Baquet, G., Gottrand, F., & Beghin, L. (2012). Comparative interinstrument reliability of uniaxial and triaxial accelerometers in free-living conditions. *Perceptual and Motor Skills*, 114(2), 584–594.

Physical Capacity

- Physical Fitness

Physical Condition

- Physical Fitness

Physical Environment

► Built Environment

Physical Exam

► Physical Examination

Physical Examination

Margaret Hammersla
University of Maryland School of Nursing,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Health assessment](#); [Physical exam](#)

Definition

Physical examination, assessment, is the systematic process of collecting data about a patient or client using the techniques of inspection, palpation, percussion, and auscultation to guide a clinician in the process of diagnosis of pathological states as well as developing a plan of care (Fennessey and Wittmann-Price 2011). Physical assessment is an ongoing process that enables the clinician to continuously evaluate a patient's signs and symptoms, to monitor effectiveness of treatment, and to make adjustments in the plan of care as required (Zambas 2010). This physical assessment is conducted in a systematic manner that is comfortable to both the patient and clinician; typically this is done using a head-to-toe approach.

Physical assessment is done for one of two reasons. The first reason is to conduct a complete physical exam of the entire body in order to screen the patient for potential health problems that have not yet manifested symptoms (Bickley and Szilagy 2008) and monitor chronic health

concerns. This exam is traditionally categorized based on body system (e.g., cardiovascular, respiratory, gastrointestinal). Each body system has its own set of unique advanced assessment procedures that allow the clinician to make a judgment about physical function based on what he or she sees, hears, and feels.

The second reason is to investigate a patient's chief complaint or follow-up on a current health problem such as hypertension or diabetes (Stern et al. 2009). For this more focused exam the clinician makes a determination of what body systems and exam components need to be conducted based on the differential diagnosis and/or the pathophysiology of the current health problem. This more focused exam typically utilizes more advanced techniques to obtain a deeper understanding of the physical changes that may be occurring due to disease process (Bickley and Szilagy 2008).

Physical assessment, along with health history, is the first and most vital step in diagnosing and planning care for patients. A skilled clinician will be able to utilize findings from the physical exam to both support and rule out diagnoses.

Cross-References

- [Clinical Settings](#)
- [Diabetes](#)
- [Hypertension](#)
- [Primary Care](#)
- [Primary Care Physicians](#)

References and Readings

- Bickley, L. S., & Szilagy, P. G. (2008). *Bates' guide to physical examination and history taking* (10th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins.
- Fennessey, A., & Wittmann-Price, R. A. (2011). Physical assessment: A continuing need for clarification. *Nursing Forum*, 46(1), 45–50.
- Stern, S. D. C., Cifu, A. S., & Altkorn, D. (2009). *Symptom to diagnosis: An evidence based guide* (2nd ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.
- Zambas, S. I. (2010). Purpose of the systematic physical assessment in everyday practice: Critique of a “sacred cow”. *Journal of Nursing Education*, 49(6), 305–310.

Physical Fitness

Nerissa Campbell¹, Stefanie De Jesus¹ and Harry Prapavessis²
¹Exercise and Health Psychology Laboratory, The University of Western Ontario, London, ON, Canada
²Faculty of Health Sciences, The University of Western Ontario, London, ON, Canada

Synonyms

Functional health; Habitual performance; Physical capacity; Physical condition

Definition

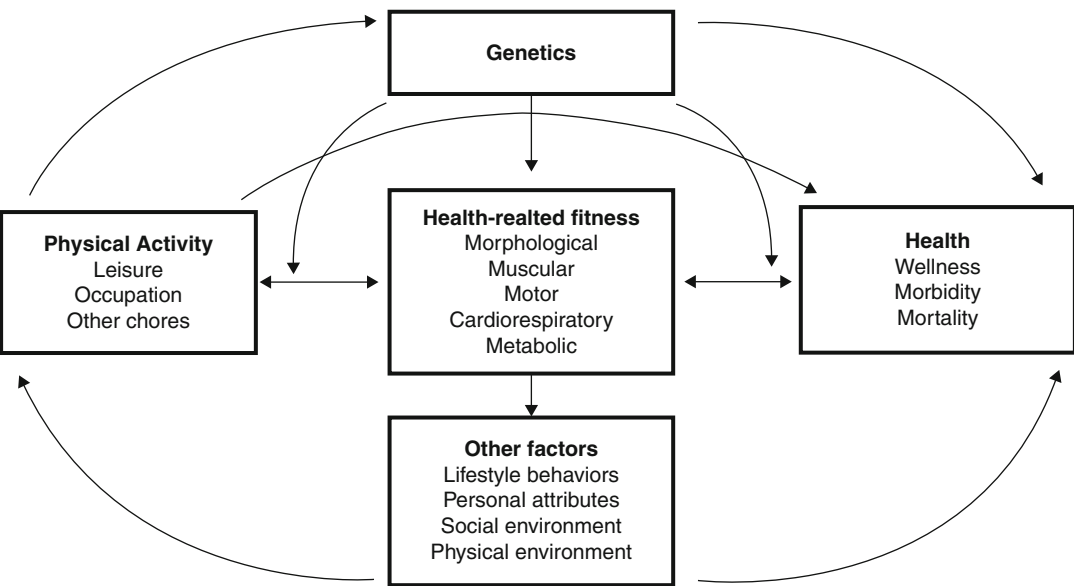
Physical fitness is one’s ability to execute daily activities with optimal performance, endurance, and strength with the management of disease, fatigue, and stress and reduced sedentary behavior.

Description

Physical fitness has multiple components and is conceptualized as either performance- or health-related. The specificity of performance-related fitness regarding one’s athletic skill best relates to an individual’s athletic performance. Conversely, health-related fitness is generalized to health status and is affected positively or negatively by one’s habitual physical activity habits. Given the complexity of physical fitness and the epidemiological analysis taken presently, health-related fitness will be the focus of this discussion.

There are five major components of health-related fitness: morphological, muscular, motor, cardiorespiratory, and metabolic (see below), with muscular and cardiorespiratory fitness being the two primary facets assessed in research. As outlined in Fig. 1, a complex relationship exists among the five biological traits, physical activity level, and health outcome.

There are numerous methods to assess the different components of health-related physical fitness, ranging in feasibility and utility for a laboratory versus field-based testing. Morphology is typically assessed using body mass index (BMI, expressed as kg/m²), a crude measure of body composition. More



Physical Fitness, Fig. 1 Bouchard et al. (2006), p. 17

objective measures of body composition include skinfold technique, bioelectrical impedance, and dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry. Muscular strength can be evaluated by tensiometers, handgrip dynamometers, and strength gauges. Conversely, muscular endurance is measured by performing the maximum number of repetitions of common body movements, such as sit-ups or push-ups. Motor skills involve fine and gross motor skills and are most commonly assessed by a battery of tests that target balance, speed, control precision, reaction time, aim, and coordination. Cardiorespiratory fitness is the ability of the cardiovascular and respiratory systems to deliver oxygen to working muscles, in addition to the ability of those tissues to utilize that oxygen to produce energy. Peak VO_2 , a reflection of cardiorespiratory fitness, is the highest rate of oxygen consumption by muscles during exercise and can be directly assessed by a maximal exercise test. Alternatively, peak VO_2 can be measured indirectly using a submaximal exercise test or timed distance run/walk protocol. Finally, to determine metabolic health, blood pressure and biochemical analyses of blood triglycerides and fasting plasma glucose are examined.

Natural differences exist in health-related physical fitness across the life span and by sex and ethnicity. The extent of the difference is dependent on the specific component of fitness. In general, level of physical fitness declines with age. Age-related decreases in peak VO_2 and muscular strength make even the simplest tasks physically demanding for the elderly compared to younger people. Sex differences in physical fitness are primarily attributed to differences in absolute muscle mass and morphology between males and females. Males generally tend to have higher levels of cardiorespiratory fitness and strength and decreased flexibility compared to females. Similarly, differences in cardiorespiratory fitness have been found between white and black individuals. On average, white males and females are found to have higher maximal VO_2 values compared to black males and females. It is important to keep in mind that depending on the population of interest, different approaches may be needed in order to appropriately assess physical fitness. For example, a maximal VO_2 exercise test may be appropriate for

healthy adults or the fit elderly, whereas a different approach for assessing VO_2 in obese individuals or frail older persons may be required.

A multidisciplinary approach is necessary to achieve and maintain physical fitness. Specifically, meeting recommended physical activity and nutrition guidelines as well as acquiring adequate rest are each important components to overall functional health. Not surprisingly, cardiovascular disease, diabetes, cancer, obesity, depression, osteoporosis, and premature death are associated with inadequate physical activity and hence poor physical fitness.

Health-Related Fitness Components and Traits

Morphological component	Body mass for height
	Body composition
	Subcutaneous fat distribution
	Abdominal visceral fat
	Bone density
Cardiorespiratory component	Flexibility
	Submaximal exercise capacity
	Maximal aerobic power
	Heart functions
	Lung functions
Muscular component	Blood pressure
	Power
	Strength
Motor component	Endurance
	Agility
	Balance
	Coordination
Metabolic component	Speed of movement
	Glucose tolerance
	Insulin sensitivity
	Lipid and lipoprotein metabolism
	Substrate oxidation characteristics

Bouchard et al. (2006), p. 17.

Cross-References

- [Body Composition](#)
- [Body Mass Index](#)
- [Exercise Testing](#)
- [Handgrip Strength](#)
- [Maximal Exercise Stress Test](#)
- [Physical Activity and Health](#)

References and Readings

- Bouchard, C., Blair, S. N., & Haskell, W. L. (2006). *Physical activity and health*. Champaign: Human Kinetic.
- Bouchard, C., & Shephard, R. J. (1994). Physical activity, fitness and health: The model and key concepts. In C. Bouchard, R. J. Shephard, & T. Stephens (Eds.), *Physical activity, fitness and health, International Proceedings and consensus statement* (pp. 77–88). Champaign: Human Kinetics.
- Caspersen, C. J., Powell, K. E., & Christenson, G. M. (1985). Physical activity, exercise, and physical fitness: Definitions and distinctions for health-related research. *Public Health Reports*, 100(2), 126–131.
- Larson, L. A. (1974). *Fitness, health, and work capacity: International Standards for assessment*. New York: Macmillan.
- Warburton, D. E. R., Nicol, C. W., & Bredin, S. S. D. (2006). Health benefits of physical activity: The evidence. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 174(6), 801–809.

Physical Fitness Testing

- [Exercise Testing](#)

Physical Illness

- [Psychosocial Work Environment](#)

Physical Inactivity

Tyler Clark
School of Psychology, The University of Sydney,
Sydney, NSW, Australia

Definition

Physical inactivity is the failure to meet the minimum recommended physical activity guidelines

(i.e., 30-min moderate-intensity exercise on at least 5, although preferably all, days of the week or 75-min vigorous-intensity exercise to be undertaken in no less than 20-min increments thrice a week). Physical inactivity is one of the World Health Organization's (WHO) 12 leading risks to health. Physical inactivity is widespread and associated with increases in all causes of mortality and is an independent risk factor for chronic diseases.

Physical inactivity differs from sedentary behavior (e.g., sitting and not moving); physical inactivity refers to not meeting the aforementioned guidelines.

Description

Prevalence

The American Heart Association estimates that 60% of the world population does not meet recommended physical activity guidelines (American Heart Association 2001). The American Centre for Disease Control (CDC) estimates 25% of adults are not active at all.

Risk Factors

Physical inactivity increases with age. While physical activity typically peaks in early adolescence, it then begins to decline, regardless of gender (World Health Organization 2011a). Other demographic risk factors include low income and less education.

Behavioral correlates of physical inactivity include a reduction in leisure-time physical activity and the inclusion of more sedentary occupational and domestic activities (Healey 2007).

Other environmental correlates of physical activity include population overcrowding, increased levels of crime, high-density traffic, low air quality, and a lack of parks, sidewalks, and sports/recreation facilities (WHO 2011a).

Health Risks

Physical inactivity increases all cause mortality (World Health Organization 2011b). The WHO

estimates as many as two million deaths worldwide as attributable to physical inactivity. It is also an independent risk factor for chronic diseases such as ischemic heart disease, stroke, type 2 diabetes, breast cancer, colon cancer, and depression. Physical inactivity is also a leading cause of falls and fall-related injuries, particularly in older populations.

Physical inactivity has indirect health burdens as well, which include pain, disability, anxiety, and increased suffering due to medical conditions. These indirect burdens often lead to a reduction in an individual's quality of life, as well as shorter life expectancy, less workforce participation, decreased bone and functional health, and weight gain (Taylor 2009).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Chronic Disease or Illness](#)
- ▶ [Lifestyle, Sedentary](#)
- ▶ [Physical Activity](#)
- ▶ [Quality of Life](#)
- ▶ [Risk Factors and Their Management](#)
- ▶ [Sedentary Behaviors](#)

References and Readings

- American Heart Association. (2009). Physical inactivity. Available at americanheart.org. Accessed 8 Dec 2010.
- Fletcher, G. F., Balady, G. J., Amsterdam, E. A., et al. (2001). Exercise standards for testing and training: A statement for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association. *Circulation*, 104, 1694–1740.
- Healey, J. (2007). *Physical activity*. Thirroul: Spinney Press.
- Taylor, S. E. (2009). *Health psychology* (7th ed.). New York: McGraw Hill. International Edition.
- World Health Organization. (2011a). Global strategy on diet, physical activity and health. Available at <http://www.who.int/dietphysicalactivity/pa/en/index.html>. Accessed 8 Jan 2011.
- World Health Organization. (2011b). Physical activity. Available at: http://www.who.int/topics/physical_activity/en/. Accessed 8 Jan 2011.

Physical Therapy

Marilyn Moffat

Department of Physical Therapy, New York University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Kinesiotherapy](#); [Physiotherapy](#); [Therapy, Physical](#)

Definition

Physical therapy is a health service concerned with identifying and maximizing quality of life and movement potential within the spheres of promotion, prevention, intervention/treatment, habilitation, and rehabilitation. The spheres of practice are aimed at physical, psychological, emotional, and social well-being of a patient/client. Physical therapy involves the interaction between physical therapists and patients/clients, other health professionals, families, caregivers, and communities in a process where movement potential is assessed, goals are agreed upon, and interventions carried out using knowledge and skills unique to physical therapists (World Confederation for Physical Therapy 2011a, b).

Description

Physical therapy is the service provided only by, or under the direction and supervision of, physical therapists to people and populations to develop, maintain, and restore maximum movement and functional ability throughout the lifespan. Physical therapist practice includes the provision of services in circumstances where movement and function are threatened by the process of aging or by injury, diseases, disorders, or other conditions of health. Functional movement and physical activity are central to physical therapist practice since they are at the core of what it means to be healthy. Physical therapists are guided in their practice by the professional behaviors of

accountability, altruism, compassion/caring, cultural competence, ethical behavior, integrity, personal/professional development, professional duty, and social responsibility and advocacy. Physical therapist education consists of university-based education leading to entry-level qualifications that range internationally from bachelors to masters or doctorate entry qualifications.

Physical therapist practice follows a patient/client management model that includes examination/assessment, evaluation, diagnosis, prognosis, plan of care, intervention/treatment, and reexamination (World Confederation for Physical Therapy 2011a, b).

Examination by the physical therapist involves history taking, screening of the patient's/client's systems (cardiovascular/pulmonary, musculoskeletal, neuromuscular, and integumentary) and the use of specific tests and measures, the results of which are evaluated within a process of evidence-based clinical reasoning to determine the facilitators and barriers to optimal human functioning. The tests and measures used by physical therapists include any of the following: aerobic capacity/endurance; anthropometric characteristics; assistive technology; balance; circulation (arterial, venous, lymphatic); community, social, and civic life; cranial and peripheral nerve integrity; education life; environmental factors; gait; integumentary integrity; joint integrity and mobility; mental functions; mobility (including locomotion); motor function; muscle performance (including strength, power, endurance, and length); neuromotor development and sensory integration; pain; posture; range of motion; reflex integrity; self-care and domestic life; sensory integrity; ventilation and respiration; and work life.

Based upon the examination results, physical therapists evaluate the findings from the examination (history, systems review, and tests and measures) to make clinical judgments regarding patients/clients. Physical therapists formulate the diagnosis(es) that results in the identification of

existing or potential impairments, activity limitations, and participation restrictions and then determine patient/client prognoses and identify the most appropriate intervention/treatment strategies for the patient/client management. The plan of care is developed that is consistent with legal, ethical, and professional obligations and administrative policies and procedures of the practice environment. Specific interventions/treatments are determined with measurable outcomes and goals associated with the plan of care and with the involvement of the person and their care providers, both professional and personal. Plans may include referral to other agencies and service delivery providers.

Physical therapists provide, whenever possible, evidence-based physical therapy interventions to achieve patient/client goals and outcomes. These interventions/treatment encompass the following major areas:

1. Patient/client-related instruction.
2. Therapeutic exercise (including aerobic capacity/endurance conditioning or reconditioning, flexibility exercises, neuromotor development training, relaxation, and strength, power, and endurance training for head, neck, limb, pelvic-floor, trunk, and ventilatory muscles).
3. Functional training in self-care and domestic life, work, community, social and civic life; (including activities of daily living training, barrier accommodations or modifications, developmental activities, device and equipment use and training, functional training programs, instrumental activities of daily living training, and injury prevention or reduction).
4. Airway clearance techniques (including breathing strategies, manual/mechanical techniques, and positioning).
5. Assistive technology (including aids for locomotion, orthoses, prostheses, seating and positioning technologies, and devices to improve safety, function, and independence).
6. Biophysical agents (including forms of energy to assist muscle force generation, decrease

unwanted muscular activity, increase wound healing, modulate or decrease pain, reduce or eliminate edema, improve circulation, and decrease inflammation and connective tissue extensibility or restriction);

7. Integumentary repair and protection techniques (including techniques to enhance wound perfusion and facilitate healing, bio-physical agents, debridement, dressings, and topical agents);
8. Manual therapy techniques (including manual lymphatic drainage, manual traction, massage, mobilization/manipulation, neural tissue mobilization, and passive range of motion);
9. Motor function training (including balance training, gait and locomotion training, and posture training).

Interventions/treatment are aimed at prevention of impairments, activity limitations, participation restrictions, and injury. Interventions provided by physical therapists also include prevention, health promotion, and fitness for individuals of all ages and for groups and communities.

Reexamination by physical therapists occurs throughout the episode of service delivery to evaluate the effectiveness of interventions/treatment and outcomes and to adjust the plan of care in response to findings. Outcomes monitoring is part of building the evidence base for modifying the patient/client plan, as well as for the research underpinning professional physical therapy practice.

Physical therapy is an essential part of the health and community/welfare services delivery systems. Professional education prepares physical therapists to practice independently of other health service delivery providers as autonomous practitioners and also within interdisciplinary rehabilitation/habilitation programs to prevent, gain, maintain, or restore optimal function and quality of life in individuals with loss and disorders of movement. Physical therapists may act as first contact practitioners, and patients/clients may

seek direct services without referral from another health professional. Physical therapists provide consultation within their expertise and determine when patients/clients need to be referred to other professional providers.

Physical therapists are guided by their own code of ethical principles. Thus, they may be concerned with any of the following purposes:

- Promoting the health and well-being of individuals and the general public/society, emphasizing the importance of physical activity and exercise.
- Preventing impairments, activity limitations, participatory restrictions and disabilities in individuals at risk of altered movement behaviors due to health or medically related factors, socioeconomic stressors, environmental factors, and lifestyle factors.
- Providing interventions/treatment to restore integrity of body systems essential to movement, maximize function and recuperation, minimize incapacity, and enhance the quality of life, independent living, and workability in individuals and groups of individuals with altered movement behaviors resulting from impairments, activity limitations, participatory restrictions, and disabilities.
- Modifying environmental, home, and work access and barriers to ensure full participation in one's normal and expected societal roles.

Physical therapists also contribute to the development of local, national, and international health policies and public health strategies. Physical therapists may also have roles in management, administration, supervision of personnel, education, research, and consultation to businesses, schools, government agencies, other organizations, or individuals.

Physical therapy services may be provided to individuals or populations and in a wide range of service settings, including but not limited to: community-based rehabilitation programs;

community settings including primary health care centers; individual homes; field settings (including in response to disasters); educational and research centers; fitness centers; health clubs; gymnasia and spas; hospices; hospitals; nursing homes; occupational health centers; out-patient clinics; physical therapist private offices and clinics; prisons; public settings (e.g., shopping malls) for health promotion; rehabilitation centers; residential homes; schools including pre-schools and special schools; senior citizen centers; sports centers/clubs; and workplaces/companies.

Cross-References

- [Activities of Daily Living \(ADL\)](#)
- [Activity Level](#)
- [Aerobic Exercise](#)
- [Back Pain](#)
- [Cancer and Physical Activity](#)
- [Cardiac Rehabilitation](#)
- [Cardiovascular Disease Prevention](#)
- [Chronic Disease Management](#)
- [Exercise](#)
- [Exercise Testing](#)
- [Exercise, Benefits of](#)
- [Interventions and Strategies to Promote Physical Activity](#)
- [Lifestyle, Active](#)
- [Lifestyle, Healthy](#)
- [Massage Therapy](#)
- [Physical Activity and Health](#)
- [Physical Fitness](#)
- [Vocational Assessment](#)

References and Further Reading

- World Confederation for Physical Therapy. (2007). Description of physical therapy. <https://www.wcpt.org/policy/ps-descriptionPT>. Accessed 5 Aug 2018.
- World Confederation for Physical Therapy. (2011a). Policy statement: Description of physical therapy. <https://www.wcpt.org/policy/ps-descriptionPT>. Accessed 5 Aug 2018.

- World Confederation for Physical Therapy. (2011b). Policy statement: Protection of title. http://www.wcpt.org/sites/wcpt.org/files/files/PS_Protection_Title_Sept 2011.pdf. Accessed 5 Aug 2018.

Physical Well-Being

- [Happiness and Health](#)

Physician-Assisted Suicide

- [Euthanasia](#)

Physiological Reactivity

Kristen Salomon

Department of Psychology, University of South Florida College of Arts and Sciences, Tampa, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Stress reactivity](#); [Stress responses](#)

Definition

Physiological reactivity involves bodily changes in response to stressful stimuli or events. The classic features of physiological reactivity are increases in sympathetic nervous system and hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis (HPA) activity, often referred to as the “fight-or-flight” response (Cannon 1932). These responses include increases in heart rate, blood pressure, cardiac contractility, and cortisol. Changes in parasympathetic nervous system activity, immune function (Cacioppo 1994), and non-HPA endocrine function (Taylor et al. 2000) can

also occur. For reactivity to serve as a meaningful metric, stress responses must be compared to an unstressed resting state, or baseline, to control for wide individual differences in resting levels (Jennings et al. 1992). Physiological reactivity is most often assessed in response to acute stressors on the order of minutes (Steptoe and Vögele 1991).

Cross-References

- [Mental Stress](#)
- [Perceptions of Stress](#)
- [Stress](#)
- [Stress Responses](#)

References and Readings

- Cacioppo, J. T. (1994). Social neuroscience: Autonomic, neuroendocrine, and immune responses to stress. *Psychophysiology*, 31, 113–128.
- Cacioppo, J. T., Tassinary, L. G., & Berntson, G. G. (2007). *Handbook of psychophysiology*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Cannon, W. B. (1932). *The wisdom of the body*. New York: Norton.
- Jennings, J. R., Kamarck, T., Stewart, C., Eddy, M., & Johnson, O. (1992). Alternate cardiovascular baseline assessment techniques: Vanilla or resting baseline. *Psychophysiology*, 29, 742–750.
- McEwen, B. S. (1998). Stress, adaptation, and disease: Allostasis and allostatic load. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 840, 33–44.
- Sapolsky, R. M. (1994). *Why zebras don't get ulcers*. New York: Holt.
- Steptoe, A., & Vögele, C. (1991). Methodology of mental stress testing in cardiovascular research. *Circulation*, 83, II-14–II-24.
- Stern, R. M., Ray, W. J., & Quigley, K. S. (2001). *Psychophysiological recording*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Taylor, S. E., Klein, L. C., Lewis, B. P., Gruenewald, T. L., Gurung, R. A., & Updegraff, J. A. (2000). Biobehavioral responses to stress in females: Tend-and-befriend, not fight-or-flight. *Psychological Review*, 107, 411–429.

Physiotherapy

- [Physical Therapy](#)

Pickering, Thomas G.

Eoin O'Brien

The Conway Institute, University College Dublin, Belfield, Dublin, Ireland

Biographical Information



Dr. Thomas George Pickering

Thomas George Pickering was born in the United Kingdom in 1940. He was educated at Bryanston School in Blandford, England, and went on to study medicine at Trinity College, Cambridge, and the Middlesex Hospital Medical School, London, where he graduated in 1966.

Pickering's early postgraduate years were spent at the Middlesex and the Radcliffe Infirmary. He became a member of the Royal College of Physicians of London in 1968, becoming a fellow in 1980. He received a Ph.D. degree from Oxford University in 1970. In 1972, he went to New York to take up appointments as Associate Physician at the Rockefeller University Hospital and Assistant Professor at Cornell University. He spent 2 years as Assistant Professor at the Rockefeller University working with Neal Miller on biofeedback mechanisms. He was appointed Assistant Physician to the New York Hospital in

Editors' Note: Dr. Pickering passed away in 2009. The American Society of Hypertension has established the Thomas Pickering Memorial Lecture, the first of which was delivered at the Scientific Meeting in May 2012.

1974. He returned to the Radcliffe Infirmary in 1974 to work with Peter Sleight.

Pickering's earliest hypertension research at Oxford focused on baroreceptor function, the autonomic nervous system, and the emerging class of cardiovascular medications known as the adrenoreceptor blockers. Although he remained in Oxford from 1974 to 1976, the possibility of being able to work as both a practicing physician and a clinical investigator drew him back to New York City and Cornell University Medical College, where he spent more than 20 years in a productive career in cardiovascular behavioral medicine, clinical hypertension, and blood pressure measurement research. In 2000, he became Director of Behavioral Cardiovascular Health and the Hypertension Program at the Cardiovascular Institute of Mount Sinai Medical Center, and in 2003 he moved to Columbia University Medical College as Professor of Medicine and Director of the Behavioral Cardiovascular Health and Hypertension Program.

Major Accomplishments

Pickering practiced "translational research" long before the term became fashionable, translating his clinical observations in medical practice to research endeavors throughout his career. He made important observations on the relationship between renovascular disease and cardiovascular complications, and the impact of renal revascularization. He also observed that anxiety, perceived stress, job strain, and the medical care environment itself induced hypertension in some individuals who otherwise would not have been classified as hypertensive. He had a deep belief that psychosocial mechanisms played an important role in the pathogenesis of cardiovascular disorders.

Pickering's research interests also focused on new methods of blood pressure measurement, particularly the use of 24-h ambulatory monitoring and self monitoring. His identification of the importance of the circadian variability of blood pressure led to the study of the psychological

influences of work and stress in hypertension and heart disease, a field in which he was regarded as the world authority. At a clinical level he studied the influence of sleep in hypertension and methods of improving adherence to medication in order to obtain better control of elevated blood pressure. Pickering also studied the application of non-pharmacological approaches to the management of hypertension, publishing prolifically in these areas. He published a total of almost 500 original research articles in a clear and concise manner. Several highly acknowledged experts acknowledge his leadership in coining the terms "white-coat hypertension" and "masked hypertension," conditions which he not only described, but did much to explain with well-designed studies. This work systematically investigated whether white-coat hypertension was benign, and whether masked hypertension enhanced risk.

Pickering served on many governmental and academic bodies including the American Society of Hypertension; the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute; the International Society of Hypertension; the American Heart Association; the US Cardiorenal Advisory Committee; the US Food and Drug Administration; and the Committee on Gulf War and Stress of the Institute of Medicine. As a senior editor of the *Journal of Clinical Hypertension* he wrote numerous editorials. In his later years he came to feel strongly that self-monitoring of blood pressure, as well as ambulatory blood pressure monitoring, should be covered by third-party insurance companies for patient hypertension care. In 2002, after 19 years of lobbying, a scientific meeting of the Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services was established to develop a national policy for coverage of ambulatory blood pressure monitoring for patients with white-coat hypertension. At Pickering's suggestion, not only was evidence of the benefits of ambulatory monitoring presented at this meeting but the patients who had benefited gave testimony. The patients' stories had a substantial impact, and the meeting voted unanimously to approve national coverage for ambulatory monitoring.

Cross-References

- [Adherence](#)
- [Hypertension](#)

References and Reading

- Devereux, R. B., Pickering, T. G., Harshfield, G. A., Kleinert, H. D., Denby, L., Clark, L., et al. (1983). Left ventricular hypertrophy in patients with hypertension: Importance of blood pressure response to regularly recurring stress. *Circulation*, 68, 470–476.
- O'Brien, E. (2009). In memoriam. *Journal of Hypertension*, 27, 1715–1716.
- O'Brien, E., & White, W. B. (2010). Thomas George Pickering, 1940–2009. Special memorial tribute issue. *Blood Pressure Monitoring*, 15, 67–114.
- Pickering, T. G. (1992). The ninth Sir George Pickering memorial lecture: Ambulatory monitoring and the definition of hypertension. *Journal of Hypertension*, 10, 401–409.
- Pickering, T. G., & White, W. B. (2008). American Society of Hypertension position paper: Home and ambulatory blood pressure monitoring-when and how to use self (home) and ambulatory blood pressure monitoring. *Journal of Clinical Hypertension*, 10, 850–855.
- Pickering, T. G., Harshfield, G. A., Kleinert, H. D., Blank, S., & Laragh, J. H. (1982). Blood pressure during normal daily activities, sleep, and exercise: Comparison of values in normal and hypertensive subjects. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 247, 992–996.
- Pickering, T. G., Sos, T. A., Vaughan, E. D., Case, D. B., Sealey, J. E., Harshfield, G. A., et al. (1984). Predictive value and changes in renin secretion in hypertensive patients with unilateral renovascular disease undergoing successful renal angioplasty. *The American Journal of Medicine*, 76, 398–404.
- Pickering, T. G., Herman, L., Devereux, R. B., Sotelo, J. E., James, G. D., Sos, T. A., et al. (1988a). Recurrent pulmonary oedema in hypertension due to bilateral renal artery stenosis: Treatment by angioplasty or surgical revascularization. *Lancet*, 2, 551–552.
- Pickering, T. G., James, G. D., Boddie, C., Harshfield, G. A., Blank, S., & Laragh, J. H. (1988b). How common is white coat hypertension? *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 259, 225–228.
- Pickering, T. G., Coats, A., Mallion, J. M., Mancina, G., & Verdecchia, P. (1999). Blood pressure monitoring: Task force V-white-coat hypertension. *Blood Pressure Monitoring*, 4, 333–341.
- Pickering, T. G., Hall, J. E., Appel, L. J., Falkner, B. E., Graves, J., Hill, M. N., et al. (2005). Recommendations for blood pressure measurement in humans and experimental animals: Part I-blood pressure measurement in humans: A statement for professionals from the Subcommittee of Professional and Public Education of the American Heart Association Council on High Blood Pressure Research. *Hypertension*, 45, 142–161.
- Pickering, T. G., Shimbo, D., & Haas, D. (2006). Ambulatory blood pressure monitoring. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 354, 2368–2374.
- Pickering, T. G., Miller, N. H., Ogedegbe, G., Krakoff, L. R., Artinian, N. T., & Goff, D. (2008). Call to action on use and reimbursement for home blood pressure monitoring: Executive summary-a joint scientific statement from the American Heart Association, American Society of Hypertension, and Preventive Cardiovascular Nurses Association. *Hypertension*, 26, 2259–2267.
- White, W. B. (2009). In memoriam. Thomas G. Pickering 1940–2009. *Hypertension*, 54, 917–918.

Pilot Study

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Exploratory study](#); [Feasibility study](#)

Definition

An initial, relatively small-scale study that tests the methods and procedures that researchers are considering using in a larger-scale study, which may be a randomized concurrently controlled clinical trial.

Description

When researchers have identified a potential intervention for a disease or condition of clinical concern and are considering conducting a large clinical trial to determine if there is compelling evidence of the intervention's likely usefulness in clinical practice, designing and conducting a smaller-scale pilot study can be very informative. Most large-scale clinical trials are expensive to conduct and take a long time to complete. So, if a pilot study reveals that the likely success of such

a trial is unacceptably low, the researchers may decide that their resources may be better directed toward another potential intervention.

At the point in time when a large-scale clinical trial is designed, a research question, a null hypothesis, and a research hypothesis need to be determined and hypothesis testing undertaken. However, formalized hypothesis testing is not the goal of a pilot study. A pilot study's purpose is to assess the feasibility and acceptability of the approach being considered for a subsequent clinical trial.

Questions a pilot study can answer include, but are not limited to, the following: Are there sufficient individuals with the disease or condition of clinical concern in the geographic region(s) in which the clinical trial would be conducted, i.e., is recruitment of an appropriately large number of trial participants feasible? Once participants have been recruited, is the nature of the trial sufficiently amenable to participants for them to remain in the trial, i.e., is retention going to be adversely affected by burdensome requirements of participating in the trial? Can the intended trial treatments actually be delivered per protocol at the investigational sites conducting the trial? Will trial participants actually do what they are required to do by the study protocol, i.e., will treatment-specific adherence rates be sufficiently high? For each of these feasibility measures, clear quantitative benchmarks for evaluating successful or unsuccessful feasibility should be determined in advance of conducting the pilot study.

Pilot studies can be nonrandomized or randomized in nature. Nonrandomized studies may be designed as open-label studies, where participants, and others involved in running the trial, know what treatment they are receiving. At the other end of the study design spectrum, some pilot studies may be randomized, double-blind studies, where neither the participants nor the investigators at the clinical sites conducting the trial know what treatment each participant is receiving.

As noted, hypothesis testing is not a component of pilot studies, which should be thought of as a means of determining whether or not it is feasible to design and conduct a large-scale clinical trial that will incorporate hypothesis testing.

That said, researchers should take equal care in the design, conduct, interpretation, reporting, and transparency of pilot studies as they do in later confirmatory studies.

Cross-References

- [Adherence](#)
- [Double-Blind Study](#)
- [Public Health](#)
- [Randomization](#)
- [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)
- [Study Protocol](#)

References and Further Reading

- Craig, P. (2017). A new CONSORT extension should improve the reporting of randomized pilot and feasibility trials. *Journal of Clinical Epidemiology*, 84, 30–32.
- Eldridge, S. M., Chan, C. L., Campbell, M. J., et al. (2016). CONSORT 2010 statement: Extension to randomised pilot and feasibility trials. *Pilot Feasibility Studies*, 2, 64.
- Enrique, A., Mooney, O., Salamanca-Sanabria, A., Lee, C. T., Farrell, S., & Richards, D. (2019). Assessing the efficacy and acceptability of an internet-delivered intervention for resilience among college students: A pilot randomised control trial protocol. *Internet Interventions*, 17, 100254.
- Kaur, N., Figueiredo, S., Bouchard, V., Moriello, C., & Mayo, N. (2017). Where have all the pilot studies gone? A follow-up on 30 years of pilot studies in clinical rehabilitation. *Clinical Rehabilitation*, 31, 1238–1248.
- Kistin, C., & Silverstein, M. (2015). Pilot studies: A critical but potentially misused component of interventional research. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 314, 1561–1562.
- National Institutes of Health. National Center for Complementary and Integrative Health. Pilot studies: common uses and misuses. Available at: https://nccih.nih.gov/grants/whatnccihfunds/pilot_studies. Accessed 23 July 2019.

Pitocin

- [Oxytocin](#)
- [Oxytocin, Social Effects in Humans](#)

Pituitary-Adrenal Axis

Jennifer Heaney

Clinical Immunology Service, The University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

Definition

The pituitary-adrenal axis comprises the pituitary gland (located at the base of the brain) and adrenal glands (located on top of the kidneys). The main interactions that take place between these two endocrine glands are part of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis. Corticotrophin-releasing hormone (CRH) stimulates the secretion of adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) from the anterior pituitary; this in turn stimulates the release of cortisol from the adrenal cortex (Martin et al. 1997). More detail on the pituitary-adrenal axis and its function in the HPA axis can be found in Widmaier et al. (2004), O’Riordan et al. (1988), and Greenspan and Forsham (1983).

Cross-References

- ▶ [ACTH](#)
- ▶ [Adrenal Glands](#)
- ▶ [Corticotropin-Releasing Hormone \(CRH\)](#)
- ▶ [Energy: Expenditure, Intake, Lack of](#)
- ▶ [Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Axis](#)
- ▶ [Hypothalamus](#)

References and Further Reading

- Greenspan, F. S., & Forsham, P. H. (1983). *Basic and clinical endocrinology*. Los Altos: Lange Medical Publications.
- Martin, J. B., Reichlin, S., & Brown, G. M. (1997). *Clinical neuroendocrinology*. Philadelphia: F.A. Davis.
- O’Riordan, F. L. H., Malan, P. G., & Gould, R. P. (1988). *Essentials of endocrinology* (2nd ed.). Oxford: Blackwell.
- Widmaier, E. P., Raff, H., & Strang, K. T. (2004). *Vander, Sherman, and Luciano’s human physiology: The mechanism of body function*. New York: McGraw-Hill.

Placebo and Placebo Effect

Magne Arve Flaten¹ and Mustafa Al’absi²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Tromsø, Tromsø, Norway

²University of Minnesota Medical School, School of Medicine, University of Minnesota, Duluth, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Conditioned response](#); [Context effect](#); [Expectancy effect](#)

Definition

A placebo is any inert substance, procedure, apparatus, or similar, that alone has no effect in the body. The placebo effect is the psychological and/or physiological response to the placebo when it is administered with a suggestion that the substance, procedure, apparatus, or similar will have an effect in the individual.

Description

Placebo comes from the Latin word “placere” which means “I shall please” and has been used in medicine to describe treatments that please the patient, but that has no specific effect on the symptom.

A placebo effect may occur when a substance, procedure, or other stimulus is administered to a person, together with a suggestion that this will reduce or heal a symptom. The placebo effect may occur whether the substance or procedure is effective in reducing the symptom or not, as effective treatments may also induce placebo effects. Both the substance or procedure and the suggestion are necessary to produce a placebo effect. Administration of a pill without the suggestion, or the suggestion without the pill, will not generate a placebo effect. Thus, a placebo alone is not sufficient to generate a placebo effect, as it must be

accompanied by a suggestion. The suggestion can be in the form of verbal information, e.g., “this capsule may contain a painkiller,” that induces an expectation that the treatment will reduce the symptom. The expectation has been found to be correlated to the actual placebo response. Thus, it could be argued that the term “expectancy effect” should replace the vague and often misinterpreted term “placebo effect.” Placebo effects may also be implicit and communicated through contextual factors. For example, a “pill” provided by a physician may have a stronger “placebo” effect than a pill provided by a nonmedical professional.

Placebo effects may also occur as a result of a conditioning process. For example, after the individual has been subject to effective treatment, an association between treatment and its outcome may develop. The shape or color of tablets the patient has taken in the past to reduce pain or other problems may be associated with the drug effect, since the shape or color of the tablet (the conditioned stimulus) is reliably followed by reduction in the symptom (the unconditioned response). The features of the tablet can be associated with the effect of the drug in the central nervous system (the unconditioned stimulus) and come to elicit conditioned decreases in the symptom. Placebo effects induced by actual experience with the drug effect are stronger than placebo effects induced by verbal information alone (Flaten et al. 1999). For some symptoms, the conditioned stimulus exerts its effect by inducing an expectation, for other symptoms unconscious, automatic processes seem to be responsible for the placebo effect (Benedetti et al. 2003).

The placebo effect is observed as a reduction in a symptom in a group that receives placebo treatment with suggestion, compared to a natural history control group that receives no treatment and no suggestion. The natural history group controls for normal variations in the symptom due to normal healing processes or other changes that are not due to expectations of treatment effects. Response bias is serious problem, as subjects may feel obliged or may have a tendency to report on the symptom in accordance with the suggestion provided by the experimenter, without there being any improvement in the symptom, and studies must control

for demand characteristics. Placebo analgesia, a reduction in pain due to expectations of having received a painkiller, is the most studied form of placebo effect. Pain is accompanied by changes in autonomic function, by well-defined changes in the event-related potential to painful stimulation, and by a cerebral response reliably involving the somatosensory cortex, the anterior cingulate cortex, and the insula. Placebo analgesia is accompanied by reduction in these correlates to the reported pain, indicating that the placebo effect is due to changes in the brain’s response to the pain signal and not solely to a response bias, although this may contribute.

Multiple neurobiological pathways are thought to be involved in mediating effects of placebo, including those related to the endogenous opioid system and stress response systems. Placebo analgesia has been found to be reversible or partly reversible by the opioid antagonist naloxone. This is further evidence that the placebo effect is not due to a response bias, and indicates that expectations of pain relief activate the mid-brain descending pain inhibitory system. Wager et al. (2004) found that expectations of pain relief were associated with increased activity in the periaqueductal gray in the midbrain, a nucleus that controls pathways descending to the rostral ventral medulla and the dorsal horn. There, this pathway inhibits pain transmission, resulting in a reduced pain signal to the brain areas mentioned above, with a consequent reduction in pain sensation. Injections of opioids into the periaqueductal gray and the ventral medulla reduce pain, suggesting that endogenous opioids reduce pain via the same descending system. Eippert et al. (2009) furthermore showed that placebo analgesia involved dorsal horn activity, indicating that placebo analgesia is due to expectation of pain relief that in turn activates the descending endorphin-mediated pain inhibitory system.

In addition to pain, placebo effects are documented in, e.g., Parkinson’s disease, depression, cardiac heart disease, sexual function, and airway resistance in asthmatic patients. This implies that there are several placebo effects with different underlying mechanisms. In Parkinson’s disease, placebo treatment has been

found to increase dopamine release in the basal ganglia, thereby improving motor function. Increased dopamine release has also been implicated in placebo analgesia. Most studies have found only a partial reversal of placebo analgesia by naloxone, whereas some studies have found no effect of naloxone on the placebo analgesic response. Thus, non-opioid mechanisms play a role in placebo analgesia. It has been hypothesized that placebo treatment leads to reduced anxiety or negative emotions, that could be a common factor across placebo effects, and that different placebo treatments could activate additional disease-specific mechanisms.

Placebo effects can also be observed in the response to drugs of habitual use or abuse. Caffeine, e.g., increases arousal and decreases reaction time and fatigue, and habitual coffee drinkers who believe they receive caffeine but get a placebo, respond with caffeine-like reactions of increased alertness and faster reaction times, and increased dopamine release in areas associated with reinforcement. Subjects who believe they drink alcohol but receive placebo drinks report symptoms of intoxication and display deteriorated performance on cognitive and motor tasks. Likewise, subjects who believe they receive amphetamine but receive a placebo still report amphetamine-like effects.

Placebos are used as controls in randomized clinical trials, where the effect of the intervention is defined as the improvement over placebo. Since the participant does not know to which arm of the trial he or she has been randomized to, expectations of drug effects are the same in both arms, and expectations of receiving effective treatment are lower than in ordinary clinical practice or in experimental studies on the placebo effect. Thus, placebo effects are smaller or absent in clinical trials (Hróbjartsson and Gøtzsche 2001). Drugs or other treatments may have noticeable subjective effects like drowsiness or nausea that may inform the participant that he or she has received active medication, thereby unblinding the trial for the participants in the active arm. To solve this problem active placebos are used, i.e., drugs that have similar subjective effects to the tested drug, but that have no effect on the symptom, instead of inactive placebos.

Cross-References

- [Functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging \(fMRI\)](#)
- [Pain](#)
- [Randomized Controlled Trial](#)

References and Readings

- Benedetti, F., Pollo, A., Lopiano, L., Lanotte, M., Vighetti, S., & Rainero, I. (2003). Conscious expectation and unconscious conditioning in analgesic, motor, and hormonal placebo/nocebo responses. *Journal of Neuroscience*, 23(10), 4315–4323.
- Eippert, F., Finsterbusch, J., Bingel, U., & Buchel, C. (2009). Direct evidence for spinal cord involvement in placebo analgesia. *Science*, 326(5951), 404–404.
- Flaten, M. A., Simonsen, T., & Olsen, H. (1999). Drug-related information generates placebo and nocebo responses that modify the drug response. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 61(2), 250–255.
- Hróbjartsson, A., & Gøtzsche, P. C. (2001). Is the placebo powerless? *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 344(21), 1594–1602.
- Wager, T. D., Rilling, J. K., Smith, E. E., Sokolik, A., Casey, K. L., Davidson, R. J., et al. (2004). Placebo induced changes in fMRI in the anticipation and experience of pain. *Science*, 303(5661), 1162–1167.

Plain Tobacco Packaging

Melanie Wakefield

Centre for Behavioural Research in Cancer,
Cancer Council Victoria, Melbourne, VIC,
Australia

Synonyms

[Standardized tobacco packaging](#)

Definition

Plain tobacco packaging is a legislative measure that requires the removal of branding from tobacco packages (including colors, imagery, corporate logos, and trademarks) and permits

manufacturers to print only the brand name on packages in a mandated location, font size, and style. Plain tobacco packs may contain health warnings and other government-mandated information, but pack appearance, including color, is otherwise standardized.

Description

Plain tobacco packaging is one of the measures in tobacco control that forms a broader comprehensive suite of strategies (involving tobacco taxation, regulation, and education) that are designed to lower population demand for tobacco and ultimately reduce tobacco's harmful consequences. Plain packaging provides an incremental step that builds upon other tobacco control policies.

Tobacco marketing has been dominated by three themes: promoting satisfaction with the product (taste, freshness, mildness), assuaging concerns about the harms of smoking, and creating associations between smoking and desirable outcomes (such as independence, social success, sexual attraction, thinness, etc.) (National Cancer Institute 2008). Traditional avenues for tobacco marketing have included advertising on television, radio, magazines, billboards, transit signage, and at the point of sale. With strong evidence that tobacco advertising and promotion is causally related to increased tobacco use (National Cancer Institute 2008), governments have increasingly banned traditional avenues for promoting tobacco. In response, tobacco companies have gradually placed much greater reliance on promotion through tobacco packaging.

It is notable that compared to most other consumer packaging that is discarded after purchase, tobacco packaging remains with the product and is therefore taken out and may be displayed whenever tobacco is used. Internal tobacco company documents made public as a result of litigation demonstrate how companies used package design and branding to reassure consumers of harms and increase appeal, including to targeted population groups such as youth and women (Wakefield et al. 2002; Kotnowski and Hammond 2013), and to

reduce the salience of health warnings (Chapman and Carter 2003).

Recognizing the enormous global burden of harm caused by tobacco, the Framework Convention on Tobacco Control (FCTC), which was adopted by the World Health Organization in 2003 (World Health Organization 2003) and has been ratified by some 180 countries, provides guidelines for policy action to reduce the demand for and supply of tobacco. FCTC Articles 11 (packaging and labeling) and 13 (tobacco advertising, promotion, and sponsorship) provide relevant guidelines for plain tobacco packaging implementation. In the context of FCTC Articles 11 and 13, plain packaging aims to reduce the attractiveness of tobacco products; reduce the effects of tobacco packaging as a form of advertising; address package design elements that may suggest some products are less harmful than others; and increase the noticeability and effectiveness of health warnings.

Plain packaging refers to the removal of branding from packs aside from the brand name, which, like other elements of the pack, must be standardized (Fig. 1). Australia was the first nation to fully implement plain packaging in December 2012, followed by France (2017), the United Kingdom (2017), New Zealand (2018), and Norway (2018). There has since been a great deal of momentum worldwide around the adoption of plain packaging, with some 25 countries and territories either having fully adopted the measure or working toward it by late 2018 (Canadian Cancer Society 2018). The growing momentum internationally for plain packaging implementation occurred despite the first plain packaging legislation in Australia being stridently opposed and challenged by tobacco companies and by certain nations under international trade law. For example, the Australian law was subject to a constitutional challenge in its High Court (dismissed in 2012), a challenge under a bilateral investment treaty between Australia and Hong Kong (dismissed in 2015) and a World Trade Organization challenge brought by four nations (dismissed 2018 (World Trade Organization 2018), under appeal). The tobacco industry also pursued unsuccessful challenges to plain packaging in the courts of the



Plain Tobacco Packaging, Fig. 1 Cigarette packs in Australia before and after plain packaging. (Reproduced with permission of Quit Victoria)

United Kingdom, France, and Norway (World Health Organization Framework Convention on Tobacco Control; McCabe Centre for Law and Cancer 2019).

A comparison of the first five countries showed considerable variation in plain packaging implementation (Moodie et al. 2019). For example, in Australia and New Zealand, plain packaging applies to all tobacco products, whereas in the United Kingdom and France, the law applies only to cigarettes and rolling papers and excludes cigars and shisha tobacco. While all countries specify that cigarette sticks must have standard appearance with no marking other than the brand variant name (United Kingdom, Norway, France) or an alphanumeric code (Australia, New Zealand) appearing in a specified font size, type, and position, only New Zealand standardizes tobacco pack and pouch sizes and cigarette stick dimensions.

Most research to date has not aimed to measure the direct effectiveness of plain packaging on smoking prevalence, especially given its

implementation in most countries is so recent. Rather, research has generally examined its impact on intermediate outcomes that are known to contribute to reducing smoking prevalence within a comprehensive tobacco control strategy. A recent systematic review concluded that plain packaging reduces product appeal, generally reduces expectations of taste and quality, reduces misperceptions that some cigarettes are less harmful than others (although only when plain packs are a uniformly dark color), and may reduce smoking prevalence (McNeill et al. 2017). A Post-Implementation Review of plain packaging legislation in Australia included analysis of smoking prevalence between 2001 and 2015. Controlling for the effects of tobacco tax increases and other tobacco policies over this period, the report concluded that plain packaging policy contributed approximately 0.55% of the 2.2% decline in smoking prevalence over the 34 months following implementation (Australian Government Department of Health 2016).

The tobacco industry has continued to pursue marketing strategies through packaging innovations that were not completely limited in nations that were early adopters of plain packaging. These strategies included a rapid increase in brand variant names and descriptors, cigarettes with varying filter types, and novel pack sizes. These marketing strategies influence product appeal and can create erroneous perceptions about the relative harms of different products and therefore undermine the intent of plain packaging. Researchers have encouraged subsequent countries to extend and strengthen plain packaging legislation by restricting or banning brand variant names and color descriptors (such as in Uruguay, where only one brand variant is permitted per brand family (DeAtley et al. 2018)); developing larger and more salient pack warnings; requiring cigarette sticks themselves to have a more dissuasive appearance (e.g., by being an unattractive color or featuring a health warning); and using package inserts to direct tobacco users to smoking cessation support (Hoek and Gendall 2017; Moodie et al. 2019).

Cross-References

- [Tobacco Advertising](#)
- [Tobacco Control](#)

References and Further Reading

- Australian Government Department of Health. (2016). Tobacco plain packaging post-implementation review – Department of Health. Available from: <https://ris.pmc.gov.au/2016/02/26/tobacco-plain-packaging>. Accessed 27 Aug 2019.
- Canadian Cancer Society. (2018). Cigarette packaging health warnings: International status report, 6th ed. Canada, Canadian Cancer Society. Available from: <http://www.cancer.ca/~media/cancer.ca/CW/for%20media/Media%20releases/2018/CCS-international-warnings-report-2018%2D%2D-English%2D%2D-2-MB.pdf?la=fr-CA>. Accessed 27 Aug 2019.
- Chapman, S., & Carter, S. M. (2003). “Avoid health warnings on all tobacco products for just as long as we can”: A history of Australian tobacco industry efforts to avoid, delay and dilute health warnings on cigarettes. *Tobacco Control*, 12(Suppl 3), iii13–iii22. Available from: <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14645944>.
- DeAtley, T., Bianco, E., Welding, K., & Cohen, J. E. (2018). Compliance with Uruguay’s single presentation requirement. *Tobacco Control*, 27(2), 220–224. Available from: <http://tobaccocontrol.bmj.com/content/tobaccocontrol/27/2/220.full.pdf>.
- Hoek, J., & Gendall, P. (2017). Policy options for extending standardized tobacco packaging. *Bulletin of the World Health Organization*, 95(10), 726–728. Available from: <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29147047>.
- Kotnowski, K., & Hammond, D. (2013). The impact of cigarette pack shape, size and opening: Evidence from tobacco company documents. *Addiction*, 108(9), 1658–1668. <https://doi.org/10.1111/add.12183>. Available from: <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23600674>.
- McNeill, A., Gravelly, S., Hitchman, S. C., Bauld, L., Hammond, D., et al. (2017). Tobacco packaging design for reducing tobacco use. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 4, CD011244. Available from: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/28447363>. Accessed 27 Aug 2019.
- Moodie, C., Hoek, J., Scheffels, J., Galopel-Morvan, K., & Lindorff, K. (2019). Plain packaging: Legislative differences in Australia, France, the UK, New Zealand and Norway, and options for strengthening regulations. *Tobacco Control*, 28, 485–492. <https://doi.org/10.1136/tobaccocontrol-2018-054483>. Available from: <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/?term=moodie+scheffels>.
- National Cancer Institute. The Role of the Media in Promoting and Reducing Tobacco Use. Tobacco Control Monograph No. 19. Bethesda, MD: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, National Institutes of Health, National Cancer Institute. NIH Pub, No. 07–6242, June 2008. (Chapter 1 Overview and Conclusions, pp 3–24).
- Wakefield, M., Morley, C., Horan, J., & Cummings, K. M. (2002). The cigarette pack as image: New evidence from tobacco industry documents. *Tobacco Control*, 11(Suppl 1), i73–i80. <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11893817>.
- World Health Organization. (2003). Framework Convention on Tobacco Control. <https://www.who.int/fctc/cop/about/en/> with FCTC Guidelines available from: https://www.who.int/fctc/treaty_instruments/adopted/en/. Accessed 27 Aug 2019.
- World Health Organization. (2016). Plain packaging of tobacco products: Evidence, design and implementation. Geneva, World Health Organization. Available from: https://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/handle/10665/207478/9789241565226_eng.pdf;jsessionid=6F11C5FF4131C1609BC38DA04E54FC65?sequence=1. Accessed 27 Aug 2019.
- World Trade Organization. Reports of the panels, Australia – certain measures concerning trademarks, geographical indications and other plain packaging requirements applicable to tobacco products and

packaging. WTO docs WT/DS435/R, WT/DS441/R, WT/DS458/R, WT/DS467/R. June 28, 2018. Available from: https://www.wto.org/english/tratop_e/dispu_e/435_441_458_467r_e.pdf. Accessed 27 Aug 2019.

World Health Organization Framework Convention on Tobacco Control; McCabe Centre for Law and Cancer. Challenges in domestic courts to plain (standardized) packaging (WHO FCTC Articles 11 and 13). Available from: <https://untobaccocontrol.org/kh/legal-challenges/domestic-courts/plain-packaging/>. Accessed 27 Aug 2019.

Plasma Lipid

► Lipid

Plasminogen Activator Inhibitor (PAI-1)

Jonathan Newman
Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Definition

The rupture of an atherosclerotic plaque is a recognized key event in acute ischemic syndromes, such as myocardial infarctions. The intravascular thrombotic response to a ruptured plaque is a complex cascade of thrombogenic (clot-forming) and thrombolytic (clot-dissolving) mechanisms. A key component of the thrombotic cascade is plasminogen activator inhibitor type 1 (PAI-1). PAI-1 inhibits the activation of plasminogen by tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) and urokinase (uPA) and, hence, inhibits clot lysis.

PAI-1 is a single-chain glycoprotein composed of nearly 380 amino acids. It is a member of the serine proteases family and is synthesized by vascular endothelium and smooth muscle cells in both normal and atherosclerotic arteries. By synthesizing molecules like PAI-1, arterial smooth muscle cells can prevent bleeding from small vascular injuries; congenital deficiencies of PAI-1 are a rare cause of abnormal bleeding.

Associations between PAI-1 and incident or recurrent coronary heart disease (CHD) have been demonstrated, but not definitively proven. While circadian variation in PAI-1 levels (highest in the morning) may correlate to circadian patterns of myocardial infarction (highest in the morning), the relationship of PAI-1 to CHD, independent of other prothrombotic risk factors for coronary heart disease, such as diabetes or insulin resistance, has not been clearly shown. Additionally, individuals with specific genetic variations leading to increased PAI-1 production have not been clearly shown to have an increased risk of CHD. Lastly, while important in constitutive pathways of fibrinolysis, it is not clearly known whether the increased PAI-1 expression seen following plaque rupture and thrombosis is a causal pathway or an effect of the inciting event.

References and Readings

- Humphries, S. E., Panahloo, A., Montgomery, H. E., Green, F., & Yudkin, J. (1997). Gene-environment interaction in the determination of levels of haemostatic variables involved in thrombosis and fibrinolysis. *Thrombosis and Haemostasis*, 78(1), 457–461.
- Juhan-Vague, I., Pyke, S. D., Alessi, M. C., Jespersen, J., Haverkate, F., & Thompson, S. G. (1996). Fibrinolytic factors and the risk of myocardial infarction or sudden death in patients with angina pectoris. ECAT Study Group. European Concerted Action on Thrombosis and Disabilities. *Circulation*, 94(9), 2057–2063.
- Lee, M. H., Vosburgh, E., Anderson, K., & McDonagh, J. (1993). Deficiency of plasma plasminogen activator inhibitor 1 results in hyperfibrinolytic bleeding. *Blood*, 81(9), 2357–2362.

Platelet Plug

► Fibrinogen

Pleasant Affect

► Positive Affectivity

PMD

- [Primary Care Physicians](#)

Polymorbidity

- [Comorbidity](#)

Polymorphism

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

The term “polymorphism” refers to a locus with two or more alleles. The translation from Latin is “multiple forms.” It is therefore a difference in DNA sequence at a particular locus.

Cross-References

- [Allele](#)
- [DNA](#)
- [Locus](#)
- [Single Nucleotide Polymorphism \(SNP\)](#)

References and Further Readings

Britannica. (2009). *The Britannica guide to genetics* (Introduction by Steve Jones). Philadelphia: Running Press.

Polysomnogram

- [Polysomnography](#)

Polysomnography

Christopher E. Kline
Department of Health and Physical Activity,
University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Polysomnogram](#); [Sleep study](#)

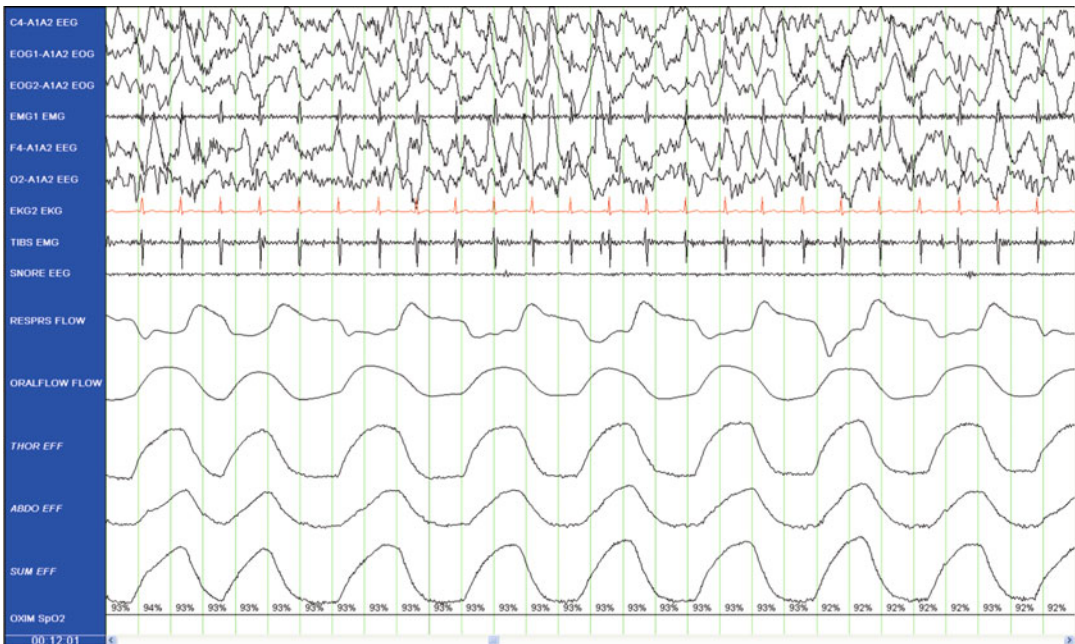
Definition

Polysomnography is the simultaneous recording of numerous physiological signals during attempted sleep, including activity of the brain, heart, eyes, and muscles. Polysomnography is considered the gold standard for the objective assessment of sleep and diagnosis of many clinical sleep disorders.

Description

Polysomnography (PSG), termed as such because of the multiple physiological signals that are recorded during attempted sleep, has been employed for the characterization of sleep/wake status since the early 1900s. Measurement of brain electrical activity, or electroencephalography (EEG), is the primary physiological signal assessed during PSG. Concurrent measurement of eye movement (electrooculography, or EOG), submental muscle activity (electromyography, or EMG), and cardiac activity (electrocardiography, or ECG) is essential for the discrimination of specific stages of sleep. Besides the basic recording montage of EEG, EOG, EMG, and ECG, supplemental measures can be added to PSG for the assessment of respiratory and limb movement activity during sleep (Fig. 1).

Polysomnography is most commonly performed in a sleep laboratory. However, due to digitization of sleep signals, portability of data collection units, and increased data storage capacities, full-scale polysomnography is now able to be performed in the home. Home-based PSG allows for a more



Polysomnography, Fig. 1 A 30-s epoch of a standard clinical polysomnogram. Channels are listed on the left column. Electroencephalographic (C4-A1A2, F4-A1A2, O2-A1A2), electrooculographic (EOG1-A1A2, EOG2-A1A2), and electromyographic (EMG1) channels are shown here and are needed for identification of sleep stages. Additional channels are included here for monitoring leg

movements (TIBS; anterior tibialis EMG activity), cardiac activity (EKG2), snoring (SNORE), breathing patterns (RESPRS, nasal pressure; ORALFLOW, oronasal thermistor), respiratory effort (THOR EFF, thoracic effort; ABDO EFF, abdominal effort; SUM EFF, sum of thoracic and abdominal effort channels), and oxyhemoglobin saturation (OXIM SpO2)

ecological assessment of sleep, since patients often report altered sleep due to the artificial sleep laboratory environment (Edinger et al. 2001).

Indications

Polysomnography can be conducted for the objective assessment of sleep for any individual, regardless of whether a sleep disorder is suspected. However, PSG is indicated for the diagnosis of sleep-disordered breathing, narcolepsy, certain types of parasomnias (e.g., seizure disorders), and periodic limb movement disorder (Kushida et al. 2005).

Preparation

Prior to electrode placement, sites should be briefly cleaned with alcohol and an abrasive skin preparation to minimize impedance levels. Electrode cups are then filled with conducting paste and affixed to the proper site with medical tape or electrode paste backed by gauze. Alternatively,

some sleep laboratories attach scalp electrodes with collodion glue. Electrode position for the EEG follows the International 10–20 system (Harner and Sannitt 1974). A typical EEG montage for sleep includes bilateral electrodes in the occipital, central, and frontal regions, with bilateral mastoid process electrodes as reference electrodes (Iber et al. 2007).

For the electrooculogram, electrodes should be placed 1 cm lateral to and above the outer canthus of the right eye and 1 cm lateral to and below the outer canthus of the left eye. For the electromyogram, electrodes are placed to assess the activity of the submental muscle of the chin; when limb movements need to be assessed, EMG activity of the anterior tibialis is measured with two electrodes on each leg. A basic electrocardiogram lead, with torso electrodes corresponding to right arm and left leg placement, provides an assessment of cardiac activity. When sleep-disordered breathing is suspected, an oronasal thermal sensor

and nasal cannula pressure transducer are used to detect airflow, respiratory effort is assessed with either esophageal manometry or (more commonly) inductance plethysmography belts around the thorax and abdomen, and measurement of oxyhemoglobin saturation is obtained with finger pulse oximetry. Sensors that measure snoring intensity and track body position through the night are commonly added to the recording montage.

Recording and Analysis

Following patient preparation, impedance checks and biocalibrations are performed to assure signal quality. Ideally, the electrode impedance for facial and scalp electrodes should not exceed 5 kilohms (Iber et al. 2007). Biocalibrations are a set of instructions delivered to the patient to verify signal quality. Recording system calibration is also undertaken before commencement of the sleep study.

With EEG, EOG, EMG, and ECG, changes in electrical potential are detected from electrodes at the skin surface, with the electrical potential at one site measured in relation to its referent electrode. Physiological signals are amplified, digitized, and then displayed for inspection and analysis. During digitization, signals are sampled at a specific rate (a minimum of 200 Hz is recommended for the recording of EOG, EEG, EMG, and ECG), with low- and high-frequency filter settings used to reduce signal artifact. For EOG, EEG, and EMG, signals are measured and displayed in microvolts, whereas millivolts are used to display ECG signals.

Standardized scoring guidelines for sleep were first established in 1968 (Rechtschaffen and Kales 1968), updated in 2007 (Iber et al. 2007) and continue to be modified periodically (Berry et al. 2018). Separate guidelines for scoring pediatric sleep were included in the 2007 update (Grigg-Damberger et al. 2007; Iber et al. 2007). Sleep stage scoring occurs in 30-s epochs, with each epoch assigned a specific sleep stage that occupies the majority of the epoch.

Electroencephalographic activity is the primary characteristic that distinguishes sleep stages, with EOG and EMG being essential for the detection of rapid eye movement (REM) sleep. In adults, five distinct stages can be scored: wakefulness (W), stage 1 non-REM sleep (N1), stage 2 non-REM sleep (N2), stage 3 non-REM sleep (N3), and REM sleep (R). Stage W is characterized by a predominance of low-voltage, high-frequency EEG (most often alpha and beta frequency) and eye blinks, with elevated chin EMG activity. In stage N1 sleep, alpha EEG activity transitions to slightly lower-frequency EEG (typically theta frequency), often accompanied by slow rolling eye movements, vertex sharp waves (sharply negative, transient waveforms distinguishable from background activity), and an attenuation of chin EMG from stage W. Stage N2 sleep is characterized by the presence of K complexes (high-amplitude biphasic waveforms typically ≥ 0.5 s in duration) or sleep spindles (rhythmic bursts of sigma-frequency EEG for ≥ 0.5 s) over a background of low-voltage, high-frequency EEG, along with a lack of EOG activity and further attenuation of chin EMG activity. Sleep is considered to be stage N3 sleep, also known as slow-wave sleep, when $\geq 20\%$ of an epoch contains slow-wave activity (delta EEG frequency with amplitude > 75 μ V). Finally, stage R sleep is characterized by low-amplitude, high-frequency EEG activity similar to wakefulness and N1 sleep but with irregular rapid eye movements and minimal chin EMG activity (Iber et al. 2007).

The duration, percentage of total sleep time, and distribution of sleep stages across the night are typically retained for analysis. In addition, typical parameters measured from PSG-scored sleep include sleep onset latency (i.e., the length of time it takes to fall asleep), wakefulness after sleep onset (i.e., the amount of wakefulness that occurs after initially falling asleep), total sleep time (i.e., the total amount of sleep obtained), and sleep efficiency (i.e., the ratio of time spent asleep to the total duration of attempted sleep). In addition to these traditional measures of sleep, quantitative assessment of the sleep EEG is possible, in which the spectral content of the sleep

EEG is decomposed to reveal the power of specific EEG frequency bands (Vasko et al. 1997).

Additional guidelines are present when assessing respiratory events and periodic limb movements (Berry et al. 2018). An apnea is characterized by a $\geq 90\%$ reduction in airflow for at least 10 s. A hypopnea is typically defined as $\geq 30\%$ reduction in airflow for ≥ 10 s with a $\geq 3\%$ decrease in oxyhemoglobin saturation or an arousal, although alternative (older) scoring rules are sometimes used that can significantly impact the total number of hypopneas detected (e.g., $\geq 50\%$ airflow reduction, $\geq 4\%$ oxyhemoglobin desaturation; Hirotsu et al. 2019). An apnea that is accompanied by inspiratory effort is considered to be obstructive, whereas an apnea without inspiratory effort is classified as a central apnea. An apnea that is without inspiratory effort initially but resumes in the latter portion of the event is considered a mixed apnea. Significant leg movements during sleep are characterized by elevated tibialis anterior EMG activity that lasts for 0.5–10 s that is not immediately preceded or followed by a respiratory event (Berry et al. 2018).

Limitations

Despite its recognition as the gold standard for the objective assessment of sleep, there are many situations in which PSG might not be desirable and/or feasible. These include assessment of sleep across multiple nights, 24-h recording of sleep/wake activity, and assessment of a large cohort of patients. Under these conditions, PSG may be excessive in cost, labor, or patient burden. Wrist actigraphy may be an acceptable alternative in these situations.

In addition, the “first night effect” is a well-documented phenomenon in which disturbed sleep is reported when assessed by PSG, presumably due to the discomfort and burden imposed by the numerous wires and electrodes and, if conducted in the laboratory, unfamiliar environment. Although this sleep disturbance has been shown to take multiple nights of PSG recording before resolution in some studies, most address the first night effect by conducting at least two

consecutive nights of PSG recording and discarding the data from the first night in subsequent analyses.

Although considered an objective measure of sleep, the scoring of PSG is subject to human influence and therefore some degree of subjectivity. Although most sleep laboratories employ trained polysomnographic technicians to evaluate sleep studies, significant between-technician variation is possible (Rosenberg and Van Hout 2013). Automated sleep stage scoring systems have the potential to remove the variability in manual sleep stage scoring and greatly reduce labor costs, but these are still in development (Sun et al. 2017).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Actigraphy \(Wrist, for Measuring Rest/Activity Patterns and Sleep\)](#)
- ▶ [Brain Wave](#)
- ▶ [Non-REM Sleep](#)
- ▶ [Quantitative EEG Including the Five Common Bandwidths \(Delta, Theta, Alpha, Sigma, and Beta\)](#)
- ▶ [REM Sleep](#)
- ▶ [Sleep](#)
- ▶ [Sleep and Health](#)
- ▶ [Sleep Apnea](#)
- ▶ [Sleep Architecture](#)
- ▶ [Slow-Wave Sleep](#)

References and Further Reading

- Berry, R. B., Albertario, C. L., Harding, S. M., Lloyd, R. M., Plante, D. T., Quan, S. F., . . . Vaughn, B. V. (2018). *The AASM manual for the scoring of sleep and associated events: Rules, terminology and technical specifications (version 2.5)*. Darien: American Academy of Sleep Medicine.
- Butkov, N., & Lee-Chiong, T. (Eds.). (2007). *Fundamentals of sleep technology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Edinger, J. D., Glenn, D. M., Bastian, L. A., Marsh, G. R., Daile, D., Hope, T. V., . . . Meeks, G. (2001). Sleep in the laboratory and sleep at home II: Comparisons of middle-aged insomnia sufferers and normal sleepers. *Sleep*, 24, 761–770.

- Grigg-Damberger, M., Gozal, D., Marcus, C. L., Quan, S. F., Rosen, C. L., Chervin, R. D., . . . Iber, C. (2007). The visual scoring of sleep and arousal in infants and children. *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*, 3, 201–240.
- Harner, P. F., & Sannitt, T. (1974). *A review of the international ten-twenty system of electrode placement*. Quincy: Grass Instrument Company.
- Hirotsu, C., Haba-Rubio, J., Andries, D., Tobback, N., Marques-Vidal, P., Vollenweider, P., . . . Heinzer, R. (2019). Effect of three hypopnea scoring criteria on OSA prevalence and associated comorbidities in the general population. *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*, 15, 183–194.
- Iber, C., Ancoli-Israel, S., Chesson, A., & Quan, S. F. (2007). *The AASM manual for the scoring of sleep and associated events: Rules, terminology and technical specifications* (1st ed.). Westchester: American Academy of Sleep Medicine.
- Keenan, S., & Hirshkowitz, M. (2017). Sleep stage scoring. In M. H. Kryger, T. Roth, & W. C. Dement (Eds.), *Principles and practice of sleep medicine* (6th ed., pp. 1567–1575). Philadelphia: Elsevier.
- Kushida, C. A., Littner, M. R., Morgenthaler, T., Alessi, C. A., Bailey, D., Coleman, J., Jr., . . . Wise, M. (2005). Practice parameters for the indications for polysomnography and related procedures: An update for 2005. *Sleep*, 28, 499–521.
- Rechtschaffen, A., & Kales, A. (Eds.). (1968). *A manual of standardized terminology, techniques and scoring system for sleep stages in human subjects*. Los Angeles: UCLA Brain Information Service/Brain Research Institute.
- Rosenberg, R. S., & Van Hout, S. (2013). The American Academy of Sleep Medicine inter-scoring reliability program: Sleep stage scoring. *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*, 9, 81–87.
- Sun, H., Jia, J., Goparaju, B., Huang, G. B., Sourina, O., Bianchi, M. T., & Westover, M. B. (2017). Large-scale automated sleep staging. *Sleep*, 40, zsx139.
- Vasko, R. C., Jr., Brunner, D. P., Monahan, J. P., Doman, J., Boston, J. R., el-Jaroudi, A., . . . Kupfer, D. J. (1997). Power spectral analysis of EEG in a multiple-bedroom, multiple-polygraph sleep laboratory. *International Journal of Medical Informatics*, 46, 175–184.

Polyunsaturated Fats

► Fat, Dietary Intake

Polyunsaturated Fatty Acids

► Fat: Saturated, Unsaturated

Population Health

Peter A. Hall¹ and Chris Zehr²

¹Faculty of Applied Health Sciences, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

²Department of Health Studies and Gerontology, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Definition

Population health is a general approach to assessing and managing health at the level of the whole population. Reduction of healthcare inequities, prevention of illness, and ecological improvement are all central objectives of the population health approach.

Description

Population health is an approach that aims to improve the health of entire population with an emphasis on understanding and decreasing health inequities among groups of people within the population (Hertzman et al. 1994). This approach deviates from a traditional biomedical approach that focuses treatment at an individual level and instead targets group-level phenomena through the implementation of broad-based and widely diffusible health interventions (Jeffery 1989; Rose 1985). Rather than focusing on treating illnesses after they emerge, population health interventions are characterized by a strong emphasis on primary prevention or preventing illness before it develops. As such, modifiable risk factors for illness are a common focus of population health intervention such as smoking, obesity, high blood pressure, physical inactivity, and unhealthy diet as well as preventable disease such as heart disease, stroke, preventable cancers, and diabetes (Wanless 2003).

A defining feature of the population health approach is an emphasis on upstream determinants of illness rather than proximal causes

(Hawe 2007; Link and Phelan 1995). For example, it has been established that cigarette smoking is associated with myriad negative health consequences. A population health approach seeks to elucidate the conditions and factors that put individuals at greater risk of smoking uptake (e.g., low education levels, low income levels, peer group influence). By identifying such upstream determinants of illness, population health interventions are developed to target these.

The population health approach considers health status as a product of a diverse range of factors that include, but are not limited to, individual behavior and lifestyle; biological and genetic factors; early development; the physical, social, and economic environment; and the nature of the healthcare system itself (Evans and Stoddart 1990; Kindig and Stoddart 2003). Rather than viewing these influences as distinct and individual causes of illness and/or health, these and any other health-determining factors are viewed to interact with each other to determine the health status of the population as a whole.

Population health research has highlighted social conditions as a particularly important determinant of health (Link and Phelan 1995; Marmot 2003). Socioeconomic status (SES), a measure of income and social position, has received a significant amount of attention. For example, those living higher on the socioeconomic gradient tend to experience better health outcomes and a longer life expectancy than those lower on the gradient (Hertzman et al. 1994; Lynch et al. 2000). Due to the emphasis on minimizing inequities, a central focus of population health has been to determine the nature of the SES-longevity relationship and how to mitigate it.

Because population health research seeks to impact the greatest number of people possible, interventions based on population health research are often implemented through policy, but also include media campaigns that serve to educate and make individuals aware of certain health-protective behaviors while warning of health-risk behaviors (Hawe 2007). Population health interventions can also be delivered as programming in settings such as schools, churches, and

workplaces. Moreover, when considering the diverse array of determinants of health, population health interventions have the potential to span different sectors not traditionally associated with health intervention (i.e., public transportation, education, agriculture, urban planning) to address a particular health issue.

A criticism of the population health approach is that while biomedical approaches to health care provide tailored treatment for individuals with specific health conditions, population health interventions generally work in a broad stroke manner targeting groups of individuals for whom intervention may not be necessary or beneficial. For example, using data from the Framingham Heart Study, Rose (1985) calculated that even a 10 mmHg lowering of the blood pressure distribution of a population could result in 30% reduction in mortality attributed to blood pressure. Though this may be potentially beneficial for the overall health of a population, this may provide little personal benefit to each individual. This has been termed the “prevention paradox” (Rose 1985).

Despite this, Rose (1985) notes that population strategies can be powerful in their influence. Given that population health approaches are concerned with affecting large groups of people, they have the capacity to change social norms so that a health-risk behavior becomes less socially acceptable or, alternatively, that a health-protective behavior becomes more accepted.

Cross-References

- [Health Promotion](#)
- [Public Health](#)

References and Further Reading

- Evans, R. G., & Stoddart, G. L. (1990). Producing health, consuming health care. *Social Science & Medicine*, 31(12), 1347–1363.
- Evans, R. G., Barer, M. L., & Marmor, T. R. (Eds.). (1994). *Why are some people healthy and others are not? The determinants of health of populations*. Hawthorne: Aldine De Gruyter.

- Frankish, C. J., Green, L. W., Ratner, P. A., Chomik, T., & Larsen C. (1996). *Health impact assessment as a tool for population health promotion and public policy*. A Report Submitted to the Health Promotion Division of Health Canada. Institute of Health Promotion Research, University of British Columbia.
- Glouberman, S., & Miller, J. (2003). Evolution of the determinants of health, health policy, and health information systems in Canada. *American Journal of Public Health*, 93(3), 388–392.
- Hawe, P. (2007). What is population health? Retrieved from http://www.ucalgary.ca/PHIRC/pdf/Hawe_2007-PopHealth.pdf.
- Health, S. (1999). *A population health framework for Saskatchewan regional health authorities*. Regina: Saskatchewan Health.
- Hertzman, C., Frank, J., & Evans, R. G. (1994). Heterogeneities in health status and the determinants of population health. In R. G. Evans, M. L. Barer, & T. R. Marmor (Eds.), *Why are some people healthy and others not?* (pp. 67–92). New York: Walter de Gruyter.
- Jeffery, R. W. (1989). Risk behaviors and health: Contrasting individual and population perspectives. *American Psychologist*, 44(9), 1194–1202.
- Kindig, D., & Stoddart, G. (2003). What is population health? *American Journal of Public Health*, 93(3), 380–383.
- Link, B. G., & Phelan, J. (1995). Social conditions as fundamental causes of disease. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 35, 80–94.
- Lynch, J. W., Smith, G. D., Kaplan, G. A., & House, J. S. (2000). Income inequality and mortality: Importance to health of individual income, psychosocial environment, or material conditions. *British Medical Journal*, 320(7243), 1200–1204.
- Marmot, M. G. (2003). Understanding social inequalities in health. *Perspectives in Biology and Medicine*, 46(3), S9–S23.
- Public Health Agency of Canada. (1996). *Towards a common understanding: Clarifying the core concepts of population health approach*. Discussion paper. Cat. No. H39-391/1996E. ISBN 0-662-25122-9. Retrieved from: <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/ph-sp/docs/commo-n-commune/index-eng.php>
- Rose, G. (1985). Sick individuals and sick populations. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 14(1), 32–38.
- Wanless, D. (2003). *Securing good health for the whole population: Population health trends*. London: HM Treasury.

Population Stratification

Abanish Singh

Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC, USA

Definition

Often an apparently homogenous population group contains subgroups that are genetically distinct. These subgroups may have allele frequency differences due to systematic ancestry differences. Such population structure is known as population stratification.

Description

The mixture of groups of individuals with different allele frequency, i.e., heterogeneous genetic backgrounds, undermines the reliability of association testing results. The assumption of population homogeneity in association studies may not always be true, and violation of the assumption can result in statistical errors. Genetically distinct population subgroups, possibly resulted from interbreeding of two different population groups, can exhibit disequilibrium between pairs of unlinked loci which may create confounding or spurious associations. Therefore, it becomes important to find and quantify genetically distinct subgroups within a population group. Various techniques including principal component analysis have been successfully used to quantify population stratification.

Cross-References

- [Allele](#)
- [Gene](#)
- [Genetics](#)
- [Genome-Wide Association Study \(GWAS\)](#)

Population Health Monitoring or Tracking

- [Mental Health Surveillance](#)

References and Further Readings

- Cardon, L. R., & Palmer, L. J. (2003). Population stratification and spurious allelic association. *The Lancet*, 361, 598–604.
- Engelhardt, B. E., & Stephens, M. (2010a). Analysis of population structure: A unifying framework and novel methods based on sparse factor analysis. *PLoS Genetics*, 6(9), 1–12. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pgen.1001117>. e1001117.
- Engelhardt, B. E., & Stephens, M. (2010b). Analysis of population structure: A unifying framework and novel methods based on sparse factor analysis. *PLoS Genetics*, 6, 1–12. e1001117.
- Patterson, N., Price, A. L., & Reich, D. (2006). Population structure and eigenanalysis. *PLoS Genetics*, 2(12), 2074–2093. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pgen.0020190>. e190.
- Price, A. L., Patterson, N. J., Plenge, R. M., Weinblatt, M. E., Shadick, N. A., & David, R. (2006). Principal components analysis corrects for stratification in genome-wide association studies. *Nature Genetics*, 38(8), 904–909.
- Tiwari, H. K., Barnholtz-Sloan, J., Wineinger, N., Padilla, M. A., Vaughan, L. K., & Allison, D. B. (2008). Review and evaluation of methods correcting for population stratification with a focus on underlying statistical principles. *Human Heredity*, 66, 67–86. <https://doi.org/10.1159/000119107>.
- Wacholder, S., Rothman, N., & Caporas, N. (2000). Population stratification in epidemiologic studies of common genetic variants and cancer: quantification of bias. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 92(14), 1151–1158. <https://doi.org/10.1093/jnci/92.14.1151>.

Population-Based Study

Roselind Lieb
Department of Psychology, Division of Clinical
Psychology and Epidemiology, Basel,
Switzerland

Definition

Population-based studies aim to answer research questions for defined populations. Answers should be generalizable to the whole population addressed in the study hypothesis, not only to the individuals included in the study. This point addresses the point of external validity of research findings. Therefore, the valid definition as well as the reliable and valid identification of populations

in which research questions for specific populations can be studied is the most important issue in population-based studies.

Population-based studies may include a variety of study types. They may include case-control studies, cross-sectional studies, twin studies, or prospective and retrospective cohort studies. The important issue is the selection of the individuals that are included into the study – they should be representative of all individuals in the a priori defined specific population.

For example, in a population-based prospective cohort study, in which an association between a specific exposure and a specific outcome (i.e., the onset of a certain disease) is studied, all individuals sampled for the study should be representative for the addressed population. This means that the individuals under exposure and non-exposure should be identified within the same population. They should differ only on the exposition factor. Likewise, in a population-based case-control study, cases and controls should be also identified in the same population. Otherwise, differences between cases and controls can be attributed to different population characteristics.

Cross-References

- Cohort Study
- Follow-Up Study

References and Further Reading

- Rothman, K. J., Greenland, S., & Lash, T. L. (2012). *Modern epidemiology* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Susser, E., Schwartz, S., Morabia, A., & Bromet, E. J. (2006). *Psychiatric epidemiology*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Szklo, M. (1998). Population-based cohort studies. *Epidemiologic Reviews*, 20, 81–90.

Positive Affect

- Happiness and Health

Positive Affect Negative Affect Scale (PANAS)

Vincent Tran

Southwestern Medical Center, University of Texas, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

Positive and negative affect schedule

Definition

The Positive and Negative Affect Schedule (PANAS) (Watson et al. 1988) is one of the most widely used scales to measure mood or emotion. This brief scale is comprised of 20 items, with 10 items measuring positive affect (e.g., excited, inspired) and 10 items measuring negative affect (e.g., upset, afraid). Each item is rated on a five-point Likert Scale, ranging from 1 = *Very Slightly or Not at all* to 5 = *Extremely*, to measure the extent to which the affect has been experienced in a specified time frame. The PANAS was designed to measure affect in various contexts such as at the present moment, the past day, week, or year, or in general (on average). Thus, the scale can be used to measure state affect, dispositional or trait affect, emotional fluctuations throughout a specific period of time, or emotional responses to events.

The PANAS is based on a two-dimensional conceptual model of mood, where the full range of affective experiences are reflected along two broad dimensions of positive mood (i.e., extent to which one is experiencing a positive mood such as feelings of joy, interest, and enthusiasm) and negative mood (i.e., extent to which one is generally experiencing a negative mood such as feelings of nervousness, sadness, and irritation). Importantly, the PANAS was developed to provide a brief scale that measures positive and negative affect as separate and largely uncorrelated constructs, such that one can experience both positive and negative emotions simultaneously. Both the positive and negative affect scales have good internal

consistency, with Chronbach's $\alpha \geq .84$ for each scale across multiple time frames. The scales also demonstrate good convergent and discriminant validity. The two-factor structure of the PANAS has been examined extensively and appears to be robust across different populations and temporal instructions.

Other versions of the PANAS have been developed. The PANAS-X is an extended version of the PANAS that may be used when more discrete measures of specific affective experiences are necessary. The PANAS-X includes 60 items that measure not only the two higher order scales (positive affect and negative affect), but also specific affects (joviality, self-assurance, attentiveness, fear, hostility, guilt, sadness, shyness, fatigue, serenity, and surprise). The I-PANAS-SF (International PANAS-Short Form) contains 10 items to measure positive and negative affect, and was developed to reduce redundancy or eliminate ambiguous meanings of some of the original PANAS terms. The PANAS-C is a child version of the PANAS; emotion terms were altered and instructions were simplified for use in childhood populations. Finally, the PANAS has also been translated into other languages, such as Japanese and Spanish.

Cross-References

- [Affect](#)
- [Emotions: Positive and Negative](#)
- [Mood](#)

References and Further Readings

- Eid, M., & Diener, E. (Eds.). (2006). *Handbook of multi-method measurement in psychology*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Joiner, T. E., Sandin, B., Chorot, P., Lostao, L., & Marquina, G. (1997). Development and factor analytic validation of the SPANAS among women in Spain: (More) cross-cultural convergence in the structure of mood. *Journal of Personality Assessment*, 68, 600–615.
- Kaplan, R. M., & Saccuzzo, D. P. (2008). *Psychological testing: Principles, applications, and issues* (7th ed.). Belmont: Wadsworth.

- Laurent, J., Catanzaro, S. J., et al. (1999). A measure of positive and negative affect for children: Scale development and preliminary validation. *Psychological Assessment*, 11(3), 326–338.
- McDowell, I. (2006). *Measuring health: A guide to rating scales and questionnaires* (3rd ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Thompson, E. R. (2007). Development and validation of an internationally reliable short-form of the positive and negative affect schedule (PANAS). *Journal of Cross-Cultural Psychology*, 38(2), 227–242.
- Watson, D., & Clark, L. A. (1994). *The PANAS-X: Manual for the positive and negative affect schedule-expanded form*. Iowa City: University of Iowa.
- Watson, D., & Clark, L. A. (1997). The measurement and mismeasurement of mood: Recurrent and emergent issues. *Journal of Personality Assessment*, 68, 267–296.
- Watson, D., Clark, L. A., & Tellegen, A. (1988). Development and validation of brief measures of positive and negative affect: The PANAS scales. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 54(6), 1063–1070.

Positive Affectivity

Katherine T. Fortenberry¹, Kate L. Jansen^{2,3} and Molly S. Clark⁴

¹Department of Family and Preventative Medicine, The University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

²Behavioral Health, Midwestern University, Glendale, AZ, USA

³Department of Family Medicine, University of Mississippi Medical Center, Jackson, MS, USA

⁴Midwestern University College of Health Sciences, Clinical Psychology, Glendale, AZ, USA

Synonyms

Pleasant affect; Positive emotion

Definition

Positive affect can be described as the experience of a set of emotions reflecting pleasurable engagement with the environment. Positive affect reflects neither a lack of negative affect nor the opposite of

negative affect, but is a separate, independent dimension of emotion (Watson and Tellegen 1985). It may be exhibited as either a trait-like variable, typically referred to as *positive affectivity*, or as a state-like variable (Watson 2002). Research on positive affectivity has focused on associations with beneficial coping mechanisms, increased cognitive flexibility, and certain health benefits and improved outcomes.

Description

Watson and Tellegen (1985) presented a two-factor model of mood and affect, in which high levels of positive affect reflect enthusiastic, active, and alert mood states. They contrast this to negative affect, which includes aversive mood states, such as anger, guilt, nervousness, and fear. They suggest that a lack of positive affect reflects sadness and lethargy, whereas a lack of negative affect reflects calmness and serenity. Alternately, positive affect has been conceptualized to include positive emotions that reflect both high and low levels of energy and activation, including joy, interest, contentment, and love (Fredrickson 1998; Fredrickson and Losada 2005). Positive affectivity (i.e., the trait-like disposition to experience positive affect) has been found to relate to the personality variable of extraversion (Finch et al. 2012), which is one broad factor in the Five Factor Model of personality. This trait is frequently measured via the Positive and Negative Affect Schedule (PANAS; Watson et al. 1988; see also Tuccito et al. (2010) for more information regarding measurement validation). Lack of positive affect is considered central in the development and maintenance of depressive disorders (Watson et al. 1995); individuals with major depression have more difficulty experiencing and maintaining positive affect in response to a pleasant experience than would an individual without depression (Horner et al. 2014). An effective treatment for depression utilizes behavioral activation to target anhedonia and induce positive experiences, which is thought to increase experience of positive affect (Dimidjian et al. 2011).

Fredrickson's (1998) *broaden and build model* of positive affect posits that positive emotion broadens individuals' awareness, encouraging creative, flexible, and exploratory thoughts and actions. She suggests that positive emotions serve an evolutionary function by expanding physical, intellectual, and social resources, enhancing overall well-being and health. Empirical research finds that individuals with induced positive, but not negative, affect experienced broader scope of attention and more a varied repertoire of potential action (Fredrickson and Branigan 2005). Neuropsychological research has supported positive affect's beneficial influence on cognition. Specifically, positive affect enhances consolidation of long-term memory, working memory, and creative problem solving, potentially via an increase in brain dopamine levels (Ashby et al. 2002).

The influence of positive affectivity on health and health processes has been extensively examined (see Pressman and Cohen 2005). Positive affectivity is consistently and prospectively linked to lower reports of pain, fewer symptoms, and better self-rated health. Positive affectivity is also associated reduced risk of stroke incidence (Ostir et al. 2001), reduced risk of infection in healthy adults (Cohen et al. 2003), and improved cognitive functioning in older adults (Allerhand et al. 2014). However, less consistent evidence has been found in mortality and survival studies (Freak-Poli et al. 2015). Positive affectivity is thought to influence health either through a main effect model, in which positive affect directly affects physiological processes and/or coping behavior, or through a stress-buffering model, in which positive affectivity influences health by ameliorating potentially harmful influences of stressful life events on health (see Dockrey and Steptoe 2010; Ong et al. 2011).

The research on positive affectivity can be associated with the rise of interest in Positive Psychology, which examines the science of positive human functioning and its association with health outcomes (see Seligman and Csikszentmihalyi 2000; Seligman 2008).

Cross-References

- [Emotions: Positive and Negative](#)
- [Negative Affectivity](#)
- [Positive Affect Negative Affect Scale \(PANAS\)](#)
- [Positive Psychology](#)

References and Further Readings

- Allerhand, M., Gale, C. R., & Deary, I. J. (2014). The dynamic relationship between cognitive functioning and positive well-being in older people: A prospective study using the English Longitudinal Study of Aging. *Psychology and Aging, 29*, 306–318.
- Ashby, F. G., Valentin, V. V., & Turken, A. U. (2002). The effects of positive affect and arousal and working memory and executive attention: Neurobiology and computational models. In S. C. Moore & M. Oaksford (Eds.), *Emotional cognition: From brain to behavior* (pp. 245–287). Amsterdam: John Benjamins Publishing Company.
- Cohen, S., Doyle, W. J., Turner, R. B., Alper, C. M., & Skoner, D. P. (2003). Emotional style and susceptibility to the common cold. *Psychosomatic Medicine, 65*, 652–657.
- Dimidjian, S., Barrera, M., Martell, C., Munoz, R. F., & Lewinsohn, P. M. (2011). The origin and current status of behavioral activation treatments for depression. *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology, 7*, 1–38.
- Dockrey, S., & Steptoe, A. (2010). Positive affect and psychobiological processes. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews, 35*, 69–75.
- Finch, J. F., Baranik, L. E., Lui, Y., & West, S. G. (2012). Physical health, positive and negative affect, and personality: A longitudinal analysis. *Journal of Research in Personality, 46*, 537–545.
- Freak-Poli, R., Mirza, S. S., Franco, O. H., Ikram, M. A., Hofman, A., & Tiemeier, H. (2015). Positive affect is not associated with incidence of cardiovascular disease: A population-based study of older persons. *Preventive Medicine, 74*, 14–20.
- Fredrickson, B. L. (1998). What good are positive emotions? *Review of General Psychology, 2*, 300–319.
- Fredrickson, B. L., & Branigan, C. (2005). Positive emotions broaden the scope of attention and thought-action repertoires. *Cognition and Emotion, 19*, 313–332.
- Fredrickson, B. L., & Losada, M. F. (2005). Positive affect and the complex dynamics of human flourishing. *American Psychologist, 60*, 678–686.
- Horner, M. S., Siegle, G. J., Schwartz, R. M., Price, R. B., Haggerty, A. E., Collier, A., & Friedman, E. S. (2014). C'mon get happy: Reduced magnitude and duration of response during a positive-affect induction in depression. *Depression and Anxiety, 31*, 952–960.
- Ong, A. D., Mroczek, D. K., & Riffin, C. (2011). The health significance of positive emotions in adulthood

- and later life. *Social and Personality Psychology Compass*, 5(8), 538–551.
- Ostir, G. V., Markides, K. S., Peek, K., & Goodwin, J. S. (2001). The associations of emotional well-being and the incidence of stroke in older adults. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 63, 210–215.
- Pressman, S. D., & Cohen, S. (2005). Does positive affect influence health? *Psychological Bulletin*, 131, 925–971.
- Seligman, M. E. P., & Csikszentmihalyi, M. (2000). Positive psychology: An introduction. *American Psychologist*, 55, 5–14.
- Seligman, M. E. P. (2008). Positive health. *Applied Psychology: An international review*, 57, 3–18.
- Tuccito, D. E., Giacobbi, P. R., & Leite, W. L. (2010). The internal structure of positive and negative affect: A confirmatory factor analysis of the PANAS. *Educational and Psychological Measurement*, 70, 125–141.
- Watson, D. (2002). Positive affectivity: The disposition to experience pleasurable emotional states. In C. R. Snyder (Ed.), *Handbook of Positive Psychology* (pp. 106–119). New York: Oxford.
- Watson, D., Clark, L. A., & Tellegen, A. (1988). Development and validation of brief measures of positive and negative affect: The PANAS Scales. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 54, 1063–1070.
- Watson, D., & Tellegen, A. (1985). Toward a consensual structure of mood. *Psychological Bulletin*, 98, 219–235.
- Watson, D., Weber, K., Assenheimer, J. S., Clark, L. A., Strauss, M. E., & McCormick, R. A. (1995). Testing a tripartite model: I. *Evaluating the convergent and discriminant validity of anxiety and depression symptom scales. Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, 104, 1–14.

and positive psychology to understand and improve the health and broader well-being of older adults (usually defined as those over 65 years old). It is the ability to adapt positively to and make the best of the experiences of aging, including maintaining well-being in the face of age-related events and transitions (such as multiple chronic illnesses and disabilities, sensory decline, caregiving duties, and bereavement). The term positive aging developed out of dissatisfaction with the term successful aging, which (at least initially) required the absence of both chronic illnesses and cognitive decline. Many older adults describe themselves as aging successfully despite having chronic illnesses and functional decline, and their own definitions of successful aging include not merely health, but also activity, happiness and contentment, relationships, and independence.

Positive aging thus involves keeping as healthy as possible, while maintaining positive attitudes, and continuing to engage socially and meaningfully in life despite the challenges of aging. As an extension of positive psychology, positive aging emphasizes strengths acquired throughout the life span which help older adults optimize their well-being while dealing with the transitions occurring in later life (Hill and Smith 2015).

Positive Aging

Susan J. (Sue) Ferguson
Department of Psychology, Macquarie
University, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Synonyms

Active aging; Proactive aging; Productive aging;
Resilient aging

Definition

Positive aging incorporates concepts and research from developmental psychology, gerontology,

Description

Older adults typically report higher levels of subjective well-being (such as positive affect) and lower rates of mental illnesses (except dementia), at least until around age 75 years, compared to other age groups. Thus, a sizable proportion of older adults are aging positively. This higher *positive affect* may contribute to better physical health outcomes through a range of pathways including promoting health behaviors, reducing physiological reactivity to stress, and enhancing recovery from stress. There is promising evidence that positive affect may have its effect on physical health through the immune system and HPA axis and that the effects of these pathways may be strongest among older adults (Ong et al. 2011). Conversely, other evidence suggests that the effects of positive

affect on health are most likely bidirectional. Similarly, having high *purpose or meaning in life* is another aspect of positive aging, and predicts a range of health behavior and health outcomes over time, including mortality, health-related quality of life, less frequent heart attacks, and less physical decline in older adults (Krause and Hayward 2012).

Other developmental and positive psychological *strengths* linked to positive aging (e.g., social support, forgiveness, hope and optimism, gratitude, self-compassion, positive attitudes to aging, mindfulness, and wisdom) have also been associated with various measures of physical health (subjective health, health behaviors, functional limitations, physiological measures, and in some cases longevity) in older adults. For example, a review by Westerhof et al. (2014) concluded that subjective aging (how people view their own aging process) had a small but significant effect on health behaviors, health, and even survival. Positive aging constructs are also linked to better quality of life outcomes in those older adults who have chronic illnesses. For example, optimism is associated with improved well-being in individuals diagnosed with cancer, and in cardiovascular disease (CVD) patients, optimism even prospectively predicted fewer readmissions to hospital (Huffman et al. 2016).

Interventions

Several approaches have been taken to enhance the aging experience through psychosocial intervention. One area with promising evidence of potential health improvements is gratitude interventions. For example, in heart failure patients (with a mean age of 66 years), a gratitude journaling intervention led to reduced inflammatory markers and improved heart rate variability responses (Redwine et al. 2016). A review of mindfulness interventions has also demonstrated improvements by alleviating mental symptoms and improving physical functioning in individuals diagnosed with CVD, and chronic pain (Greeson and Chin 2019). While this review was not specific to older adults, encouraging findings from recent small studies (e.g., Perez-Blasco et al. 2016) suggest the findings also apply to this age

group. Unfortunately, positive psychology interventions in older adults are still rare and most have not yet been subject to efficacy and effectiveness investigations in terms of physical health outcomes. Qualitative research suggests that wisdom acquired in dealing with other challenges earlier in life helps older adults deal with self-management of new chronic illnesses later in life (Perry et al. 2015). This suggests that health professionals should develop interventions that build on pre-existing skills, rather than assuming that self-management skills or psychosocial resources or strengths need to be taught/developed from scratch.

Cross-References

- Aging
- Emotions: Positive and Negative
- Forgiveness
- Gerontology
- Hope
- Optimism
- Positive Psychology
- Successful Aging
- Well-Being

References and Further Reading

- Greeson, J. M., & Chin, G. R. (2019). Mindfulness and physical disease: a concise review. *Current Opinion in Psychology*, 28, 204–210. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.copsyc.2018.12.014>.
- Hill, R. D., & Smith, D. J. (2015). Positive aging: At the crossroads of positive psychology and geriatric medicine. In P. A. Lichtenberg, B. T. Mast, B. D. Carpenter, & J. Loebach Wetherell (Eds.), *APA handbook of clinical geropsychology, vol 1: History and status of the field and perspectives on aging* (pp. 301–329). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Huffman, J. C., Beale, E. E., Celano, C. M., Beach, S. R., Belcher, A. M., Moore, S. V., . . . Januzzi, J. L. (2016). Effects of optimism and gratitude on physical activity, biomarkers, and readmissions after an acute coronary syndrome: The gratitude research in acute coronary events study, *Circulation: Cardiovascular Quality and Outcomes*, 9(1), 55–63. <https://doi.org/10.1161/circoutcomes.115.002184>.

- Krause, N., & Hayward, D. (2012). Religion, meaning in life, and change in physical functioning during late adulthood. *Journal of Adult Development*, 19, 158–169. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10804-012-9143-5>.
- Ong, A. D., Mroczek, D. K., & Riffin, C. (2011). The health significance of positive emotions in adulthood and later life. *Social and Personality Psychology Compass*, 5(8), 538–551. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1751-9004.2011.00370.x>.
- Perez-Blasco, J., Sales, A., Meléndez, J. C., & Mayordomo, T. (2016). The effects of mindfulness and self-compassion on improving the capacity to adapt to stress situations in elderly people living in the community. *Clinical Gerontologist*, 39(2), 90–103. <https://doi.org/10.1080/07317115.2015.1120253>.
- Perry, T. E., Ruggiano, N., Shtompel, N., & Hassevoort, L. (2015). Applying Erikson's wisdom to self-management practices of older adults: Findings from two field studies. *Research on Aging*, 37(3), 253–274. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0164027514527974>.
- Redwine, L. S., Henry, B. L., Pung, M. A., Wilson, K., Chinh, K., Knight, B., . . . Mills, P. J. (2016). Pilot randomized study of a gratitude journaling intervention on heart rate variability and inflammatory biomarkers in patients with stage B heart failure. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 78(6), 667–676. <https://doi.org/10.1097/PSY.0000000000000316>.
- Westerhof, G. J., Mische, M., Brothers, A. F., Barrett, A. E., Diehl, M., Montepare, J. M., . . . Wurm, S. (2014). The influence of subjective aging on health and longevity: A meta-analysis of longitudinal data. *Psychology & Aging*, 29(4), 793–802. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0038016>.

Positive and Negative Affect

- [Emotions: Positive and Negative](#)

Positive and Negative Affect Schedule

- [Positive Affect Negative Affect Scale \(PANAS\)](#)

Positive By-Products

- [Perceived Benefits](#)

Positive Changes

- [Perceived Benefits](#)

Positive Emotion

- [Happiness and Health](#)
- [Positive Affectivity](#)

Positive Emotions

- [Well-Being: Physical, Psychological, and Social](#)

Positive Meaning

- [Perceived Benefits](#)

Positive Psychology

Lisa G. Aspinwall¹ and Watcharaporn Pengchit²

¹Department of Psychology, The University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

²Faculty of Psychology, Chulalongkorn University, Bangkok, Thailand

Definition

Positive psychology, the scientific study of positive phenomena from the neurobiology of positive emotions to application in the clinic and in everyday life, encompasses multiple efforts to understand and promote well-being and health (Aspinwall and Staudinger 2003; Aspinwall and Tedeschi 2010; Lopez and Snyder 2009; Ryff and Singer 1998; Seligman and Csikszentmihalyi 2000). Key elements include (a) the identification of human strengths (qualities and processes that

allow people to navigate adversity, pursue their goals, and make the most of life) and (b) empirical research directed toward understanding the diverse conditions that create and sustain such strengths. These processes have been investigated in a wide variety of domains, including education, social development, close relationships, aging, work, and health.

Description

Core Concerns of Positive Psychology and Health

Positive psychology is an active and growing field, with thousands of published articles in the last decade, two major handbooks, a new *Encyclopedia of Positive Psychology*, a specialized journal (the *Journal of Positive Psychology*), and several edited volumes, journal special issues, and international conferences devoted to this topic. Within this voluminous literature, there are three main areas that examine the relationship of positive phenomena to physical health: (a) psychological adaptation to illness, (b) the impact of positive phenomena, such as positive mood, optimism, and hope, on physical health, and (c) interventions that use insights from this research to improve well-being in general and among people managing serious illness.

Understanding Psychological Adaptation to Illness

Multiple lines of research have examined the impact of negative life events, including serious illness, on people's beliefs about themselves, the benevolence of others, personal control, and views of the future. In general, research suggests that people who have experienced serious illness or other forms of adversity frequently report *both* positive and negative life changes. Frequently reported positive changes include a better sense of one's values and priorities, stronger social relationships, and an enhanced appreciation for life. Negative changes include fears for the future and feelings of personal vulnerability. Such changes are understood by many researchers to be the product of active efforts to manage and derive

meaning and/or benefit from one's circumstances (Folkman 2011; Taylor 1983). Exciting developments in this line of research have related finding meaning and/or benefit to subsequent physical health outcomes, such as immune function (Park et al. 2009; Taylor et al. 2000).

As exciting as these findings are, it is important to understand their boundary conditions. In particular, not all events produce benefits or growth or do so for all people. Some particularly challenging events (severe interpersonal stressors, wartime experiences) seem to defy meaning-making coping. Further, large-scale longitudinal panel studies of life satisfaction following long-term unemployment and divorce suggest that people may not, on average, fully adjust to these events. Finally, there appear to be multiple "normal" responses to adversity. A recent advance in this area – made possible by rigorous prospective longitudinal studies of bereavement (Bonanno 2004) – is the recognition that there may be multiple trajectories of mental health outcomes following adversity, with many respondents reporting stable good or even improving outcomes and a subset of respondents reporting either enduring preexisting distress or new elevations in distress. These different patterns of adjustment over time highlight the need to understand the antecedents and processes that account for them. The finding that there is considerable variation in response to adversity also suggests that global positive outcomes (e.g., "Cancer was the best thing that ever happened to me") may be true for some people, but may grossly misrepresent the experiences of others.

Understanding the Relation of Positive Phenomena to Physical Health

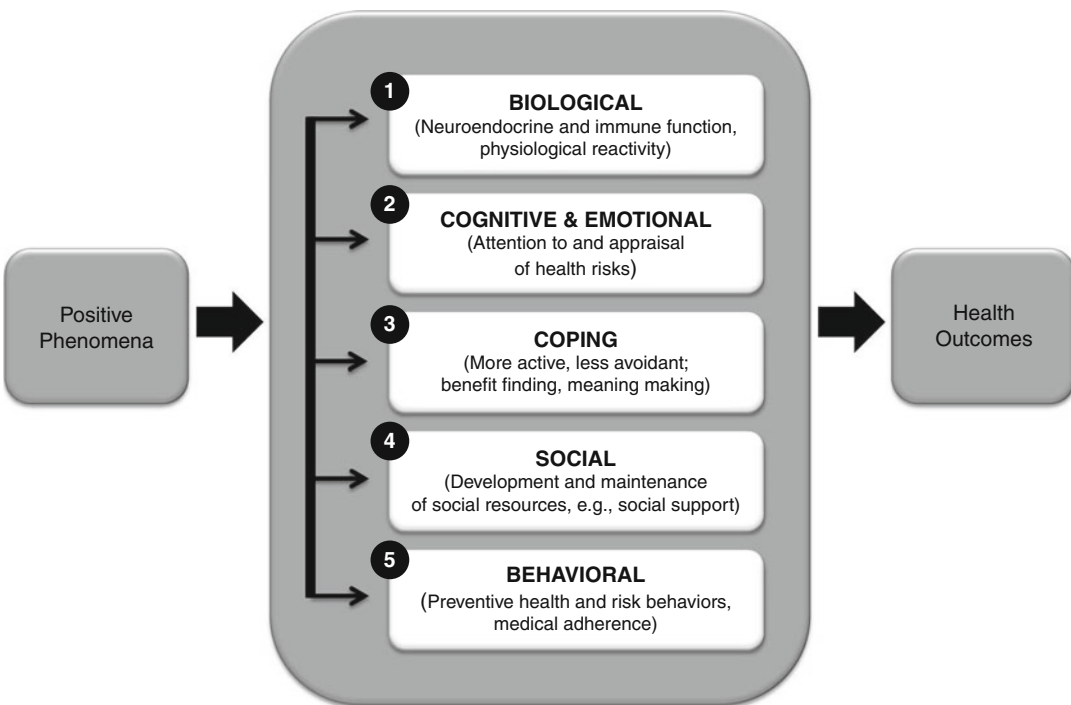
Although most research in positive psychology focuses on psychological well-being, there is increasing interest in the relation of such concepts as optimism, hope, positive affect, gratitude, benefit finding, and growth to physical health. Several recent meta-analyses suggest that positive phenomena show a reliable prospective beneficial relationship to multiple health outcomes, including longevity, in both healthy and ill samples (Diener and Chan 2011; Howell et al. 2007;

Pressman and Cohen 2005; Rasmussen et al. 2009). Importantly, this relationship is (a) not explained by the detrimental effects of either negative emotions or pessimistic expectations and (b) comparable in magnitude to that of these more widely studied negative phenomena. At present, the findings seem to be stronger for healthy samples than among people managing illness, and the strength of the findings varies by disease, with stronger and more encouraging findings for cardiovascular disease and HIV than for cancer mortality.

Researchers have examined multiple complementary pathways through which positive phenomena are related to health outcomes (Aspinwall and Tedeschi 2010). Five sets of pathways are shown in Fig. 1. The first set of pathways involves direct relations to neuroendocrine and immune functions implicated in the etiology and progression of disease, as well as physiological reactivity to laboratory stressors. A second and third set of pathways involve the relation of positive phenomena to multiple aspects of attending

to, appraising, and coping with health-risk information and the demands of serious illness, including the benefit-finding and meaning-making processes described earlier. A fourth set of pathways involves the relationship between positive phenomena and the development and maintenance of supportive social ties, especially during times of illness or other adversity. The fifth pathway represents the relationship of positive phenomena to the practice of preventive health behaviors, such as good nutrition, exercise, and sleep; the decreased practice of risk behaviors, such as substance abuse; and improved medical adherence.

Recent findings from the Women's Health Initiative illustrate the multiple pathways through which positive phenomena may influence health outcomes. In an 8-year prospective study of coronary heart disease in a sample of more than 97,000 US women, ages 50–79 (Tindle et al. 2009), dispositional optimism was found to prospectively predict decreased risk for coronary heart disease and all-cause mortality in the overall



Positive Psychology, Fig. 1 Five mutually interactive and complementary sets of pathways through which positive phenomena, such as positive mood and optimism, may influence human health

sample. Optimism also predicted lower cancer-related mortality for African-American women, but not Caucasian women. Compared to pessimists, optimists were less likely to have diabetes, hypertension, high cholesterol, or depressive symptoms; they were less likely to smoke, be sedentary, or be overweight; and they reported higher education and income, greater employment and health insurance, and greater religious attendance. However, the real kicker is that controlling for *all* of the above factors, optimism still predicted better health outcomes. These findings suggest that there is much that remains to be understood about the relationship of positive beliefs to important health outcomes and that the multiple pathways outlined in Fig. 1 and described in the following sections may be implicated in such findings.

1. *Biological pathways.* At present, more is known about the prospective relationship of positive phenomena to diverse health outcomes than about the specific pathways through which these outcomes are realized. Most studies have focused on cardiovascular, neuroendocrine, and immune function. Both experimental laboratory studies and field experiments link the induction of positive self-beliefs to reduce cardiovascular and neuroendocrine reactivity to evaluative stressors and to more rapid recovery from induced negative states among healthy young adults. Recent reviews link optimism to improved immune function, both among healthy people managing naturalistic stressors such as law school entry and among people managing HIV infection. These lines of research have also identified some potential short-term physiological costs associated either with optimists' active coping efforts or with the relatively intense positive affect inductions used to study physiological outcomes in laboratory settings (Pressman and Cohen 2005). However, these authors also noted that these costs were not seen in naturalistic ambulatory studies where positive affect was associated with health-protective responses. Many researchers
- have attributed the health-protective findings of optimism and positive mood to reductions in perceived stress, highlighting the importance of such appraisals in understanding how positive phenomena are related to health outcomes.
2. *Attention to and appraisal of threatening health information.* In contrast to the idea that being happy or optimistic reduces awareness of negative realities (e.g., seeing one's world through "rose-colored glasses"), several experiments have demonstrated that induced positive affect or positive self-beliefs (e.g., through self-affirmation or success manipulations) promote constructive attention to negative information about health risks and personal weaknesses when the information is relevant to the self and said to be useful (Aspinwall and Tedeschi 2010). Similar findings have been obtained for dispositional optimism. Interestingly, this greater attention to negative information does not appear to be in the service of downplaying its negativity or relevance to the self, but instead appears to be strongly responsive to its potential value in warding off or managing future negative events. The ability to adaptively confront, manage, and remember such information may have beneficial links to both coping and health behavior.
3. *Coping with serious illness.* A large literature suggests that positive affect and optimism promote constructive methods of coping with adversity, involving planning, information-seeking, suppression of competing activities, and seeking both instrumental and emotional social support (Aspinwall and Tedeschi 2010). Notably, positive beliefs are consistently inversely associated with deleterious forms of avoidant coping, such as denial, mental and behavioral disengagement, and substance use. Researchers have argued that the tendency toward active, engaged forms of coping with adversity shown in pathway #3 and the ability to attend to negative information shown in pathway #2 may work together to promote a more informed understanding of actual or potential stressors. The term "upward spiral" has been used to characterize such processes.

4. *Development and maintenance of social resources.* Recent meta-analytic evidence suggests that positive affect plays a major role in the maintenance of satisfying social relationships (Lyubomirsky et al. 2005). Specifically, people who report frequent positive affect also report a greater number of – and more satisfying – social relationships. Similarly, college students who reported greater optimism on arrival to college reported both greater initial friendship network size and greater increases in perceived social support over the course of their first semester, and these social ties buffered distress at the end of the semester. Existing evidence suggests that there may be more at work in such findings than the idea that it is pleasant to be around people in a good mood. People in a good mood seem better able to understand the goals and priorities of their interaction partners, to express more gratitude, and to be more likely to help others than people in a neutral mood. These particular processes suggest that an important direction for future research and intervention might be to examine these processes among people managing illnesses and other demands such as caregiving that are known to tax social resources over time.
5. *Health behaviors and medical adherence.* An emerging literature suggests that positive beliefs and states are robust prospective predictors of better health behavior, including diet, exercise, and sleep, and lower practice of risk behaviors, such as substance abuse (Aspinwall and Tedeschi 2010). These findings have been obtained both in healthy community samples, including large samples of older adults, and among people managing serious illnesses, such as HIV infection. In contrast, prospective studies link negative beliefs, such as pessimism and fatalism, to the practice of a wide range of health-risk behaviors, including substance abuse and high-risk sexual behavior. Understanding how positive beliefs like hope and optimism are related to the practice of inherently forward-looking behaviors, like preventive health behavior, remains an important

research question. Researchers are also starting to examine how positive phenomena may be related to behavior change and medical adherence. Although it is well known that negative affect and interpersonal stressors contribute to relapse from behavior change efforts in multiple domains, the question of whether and how positive phenomena may have facilitative effects needs further investigation. With respect to medical adherence, randomized controlled trials of interventions in hospital settings demonstrate that increasing patients' optimism about the success of cardiac rehabilitation improves outcomes like angina symptoms and return to work.

Summary and Remaining Conceptual Questions. This section outlined five sets of pathways through which positive feelings and beliefs may influence physical health. These multiple pathways are complementary, rather than competing, and are likely to work in concert (Aspinwall and Tedeschi 2010). Specifically, the ability to maintain attention to negative information about health risks may work in tandem with more active forms of coping that are more likely to elicit information about one's situation and support for managing it. Similarly, finding benefits and growth in one's experience and maintaining supportive social ties may each be related to subsequent health behaviors in important ways. Research that examines the interplay of these different pathways will likely yield not only a more complex account of the ways in which positive phenomena may be linked to human health but also an understanding of some of the cumulative benefits that may result.

Interventions to Promote Health and Well-Being

Interventions derived from the principles and pathways reviewed here have been employed to promote well-being in healthy samples, as well as psychosocial adjustment to chronic illness (Folkman 2011; Park et al. 2009). For example, a burgeoning literature on the kinds of experiences that make people happy and the processes that contribute to hedonic adaptation both to

positive and negative events have been usefully employed in interventions to improve daily positive affect, primarily in healthy samples. For people living with chronic illnesses like diabetes, various interventions ranging from writing about one's positive experiences to multiple-component programs have proved effective in enhancing positive affect, at least in laboratory settings. Experimental interventions to increase hope and gratitude have also been shown to improve reported pain tolerance and physical symptoms, respectively. Finally, although they were not conducted under the rubric of positive psychology, psychosocial interventions to provide social support and reduce stress among people managing serious illness suggest that such interventions reliably reduce pain and anxiety and improve quality of life (Aspinwall and Tedeschi 2010; Park et al. 2009). Understanding how the various pathways suggested here may be implicated in such effects – and used to enhance them – among people managing serious illness remains an important goal for future research.

Controversies with Respect to Both Theory and Application

The study of how positive phenomena – especially positive thinking – are related to health has generated both academic and cultural controversies (Aspinwall and Staudinger 2003; Aspinwall and Tedeschi 2010; Becker and Marecek 2008; Lazarus 2003). Researchers have questioned whether the focus on positive or optimal human functioning is new or sufficiently distinctive or developed to merit a special name as a new field; whether separating positive phenomena from negative phenomena is practicable, desirable, or meaningful (e.g., coping with adversity may inherently involve both); and whether the field focuses too much on the individual as the unit of analysis at the neglect of important social, cultural, economic, structural, and environmental determinants of health and well-being. With respect to positive psychology and health, critics have questioned (a) whether the field is too narrowly focused on individual positive feelings and self-beliefs as the primary outcomes of optimal

human functioning; (b) whether the promotion of positive thinking among those managing serious illness may be trivial, distracting, and ultimately useless; and (c) whether positive thinking might actually be actively harmful if it impairs attention to negative aspects of experience or contributes to a culture of blame for individual misfortune.

Several critics (as well as the present authors) have traced the history of these ideas to the New Thought movement and subsequent popular efforts to promote health, well-being, and financial success through positive thinking (e.g., *The Power of Positive Thinking*, *The Secret*; see Aspinwall and Tedeschi 2010, for discussion). With respect to the application of positive psychology to understanding health and illness, a primary concern – reflected more in critiques of the popular self-help literature on positive thinking than in scientific discourse on these issues – is the potential misuse of findings suggesting that positive emotions and beliefs may predict physical health and recovery from illness. Specifically, the demonstration that a positive attitude (e.g., optimism or hope) is linked to better health outcomes for some people in some situations may create, or be used to promote, unrealistic expectations about the ability to cure disease through positive thinking. Similarly, the demonstration that some people with serious illness report benefits and growth can be misconstrued to suggest that all people should do so, all of the time and regardless of circumstance. These pressures to maintain uniformly positive thoughts and feelings and to ascribe deteriorating health to failures of positive attitude have been described as “saccharine terrorism” and the “tyranny of optimism.” While researchers have in general been quite careful not to mandate positive feelings among people dealing with adversity (and in fact have documented the presence of both positive and negative life changes and multiple trajectories of adjustment), various popular treatments have promoted the notion that an exclusive focus on positive thoughts and feelings will cure illness. Some critics aptly note that this approach is particularly prevalent – and pernicious – in popular treatments of cancer survivorship (Aspinwall and Tedeschi 2010).

Conclusion

As scientific research on the relationship of positive phenomena to health proceeds, rigorous process-oriented research should dispel the notion that there is some kind of magic bullet to be found in positive thinking. Continued examination of the multiple biological, cognitive, emotional, social, and behavioral pathways linking positive phenomena to health is essential. Further, researchers interested in a balanced understanding of the link between positive phenomena and health outcomes should continue to design studies that are sensitive to both potential benefits and liabilities of particular kinds of positive (and negative) thoughts and feelings in different situations (Aspinwall and Staudinger 2003; Aspinwall and Tedeschi 2010). Indeed, what the study of health and illness has to offer positive psychology is the opportunity to examine the multiple ways in which positive and negative phenomena may go hand in hand as people manage serious illness and its treatment.

Cross-References

- Adherence
- Aging
- Behavior Change
- Benefit Finding
- Bereavement
- Cancer Survivorship
- Cardiac Rehabilitation
- Cardiovascular Disease
- Coping
- Coronary Heart Disease
- Denial
- Diabetes
- Exercise
- Fatalism
- Hypertension
- Immune Function
- Longevity
- Meta-analysis
- Mortality
- Nutrition
- Optimism

- Overweight
- Perceived Benefits
- Pessimism
- Physiological Reactivity
- Sexual Risk Behavior
- Sleep
- Stressor
- Substance Abuse
- Well-Being

References and Readings

- Aspinwall, L. G., & Staudinger, U. M. (Eds.). (2003). *A psychology of human strengths: Fundamental questions and future directions for a positive psychology*. Washington, DC: APA Books.
- Aspinwall, L. G., & Tedeschi, R. G. (2010). The value of positive psychology for health psychology: Progress and pitfalls in examining the relation of positive phenomena to health. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 39, 4–15.
- Becker, D., & Marecek, J. (2008). Dreaming the American dream: Individualism and positive psychology. *Social and Personality Psychology Compass*, 2, 1767–1780.
- Bonanno, G. A. (2004). Loss, trauma, and human resilience: Have we underestimated the human capacity to thrive after extremely aversive events? *American Psychologist*, 59, 20–28.
- Diener, E., & Chan, M. Y. (2011). Happy people live longer: Subjective well-being contributes to health and longevity. *Applied Psychology: Health and Well-being*, 3(1), 1–43.
- Folkman, S. (Ed.). (2011). *The Oxford handbook of stress, health, and coping*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Howell, R. T., Kern, M. L., & Lyubomirsky, S. (2007). Health benefits: Meta-analytically determining the impact of well-being on objective health outcomes. *Health Psychology Review*, 1, 1–54.
- Lazarus, R. S. (2003). Does the positive psychology movement have legs? *Psychological Inquiry*, 14, 93–109.
- Lopez, S. J., & Snyder, C. R. (Eds.). (2009). *Oxford handbook of positive psychology* (2nd ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Lyubomirsky, S., King, L., & Diener, E. (2005). The benefits of frequent positive affect: Does happiness lead to success? *Psychological Bulletin*, 131, 803–855.
- Park, C. L., Lechner, S. C., Antoni, M. H., & Stanton, A. L. (Eds.). (2009). *Medical illness and positive life change*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Pressman, S. D., & Cohen, S. (2005). Does positive affect influence health? *Psychological Bulletin*, 131, 925–971.

- Rasmussen, H. N., Scheier, M. F., & Greenhouse, J. B. (2009). Optimism and physical health: A meta-analytic review. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 37, 239–256.
- Ryff, C. D., & Singer, B. (1998). The contours of positive human health. *Psychological Inquiry*, 9, 1–28.
- Seligman, M. E. P., & Csikszentmihalyi, M. (2000). Positive psychology: An introduction. *American Psychologist*, 55, 1–54.
- Taylor, S. E. (1983). Adjustment to threatening events: A theory of cognitive adaptation. *American Psychologist*, 38, 1161–1173.
- Taylor, S. E., Kemeny, M. E., Reed, G. M., Bower, J. E., & Gruenewald, T. L. (2000). Psychological resources, positive illusions, and health. *American Psychologist*, 55, 99–109.
- Tindle, H. A., Chang, Y.-F., Kuller, L. H., Manson, J. E., Robinson, J. G., et al. (2009). Optimism, cynical hostility, and incident coronary heart disease and mortality in the women's health initiative. *Circulation*, 120, 656–662.

Positron Emission Tomography (PET)

- Brain, Imaging
 - Neuroimaging
-

Post Traumatic Stress Disorder

Cortney Taylor Zimmerman¹, Whitney M. Herge² and Annette M. La Greca³

¹Department of Pediatrics, Baylor College of Medicine/Texas Children's Hospital, Houston, FL, USA

²Department of Psychology, Texas Scottish Rite Hospital for Children, Dallas, TX, USA

³Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Definition (and Description)

A majority of adolescents have been exposed to a potentially traumatic event in their lifetime (61.8%; McLaughlin et al. 2013), and a significant percentage of trauma-exposed youth develop

post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) (Alisic et al. 2014). PTSD is a debilitating condition that is associated with several poor mental and physical health outcomes. As such, it is imperative to understand the development and course of PTSD, including its prevalence, comorbid conditions, assessment, treatment, and prognosis.

Diagnostic Criteria

PTSD is listed under trauma- and stressor-related disorders in the DSM-5 (American Psychiatric Association 2013). Criteria for diagnosis includes (A) direct or indirect *exposure* to actual or threatened death, serious injury, or sexual violence as well as symptoms from the following clusters; (B) one or more *intrusion* symptoms following the event; (C) persistent *avoidance* of stimuli (i.e., memories, thoughts, feelings, or external reminders) associated with the traumatic event; (D) two or more indications or *negative alterations* in cognition and mood; and (E) two or more symptoms of marked alterations in *arousal and reactivity* following the event (APA DSM-5 2013, pp. 271–272). The disturbances in criteria B-E must last more than 1 month. These symptoms must cause clinically significant distress or impaired functioning in the individual and cannot be accounted for by another disorder.

Some of these criteria represent a change from DSM-IV-TR (American Psychiatric Association 2010). For example, criterion A expanded to include direct and *indirect* exposure to trauma. The other criteria expanded as well to include (B) *intrusion*, (C) *avoidance* of stimuli, (D) two or more indications or *negative alterations* in cognition and mood, and (E) two or more symptoms of marked alterations in *arousal and reactivity* following the event.

Further, the DSM-5 accounts for the differences in symptom presentation between young children (6 years and younger) and older children and adults who experience PTSD. Criterion A changed to reflect direct exposure, in-person witnessing of the event, and learning the event occurred to a *parent or caregiving figure*. Within Category B (intrusion), DSM-5 notes that children

may have *repetitive play* reflecting the traumatic event, or trauma-specific *reenactment during play*, whereas adults may have recurrent, involuntary, or intrusive memories of the event. Category C was modified for young children to reflect *both the avoidance and the negative alterations* in cognitions (which are Categories C and D in older children and adults). Further, DSM-5 specifies a different number of symptoms required to meet criteria for children than adults. For example, children are required to evidence one or more symptoms of avoidance or negative alterations in cognitions, whereas adults are required to exhibit one symptom of avoidance and two symptoms of negative alterations in cognitions. Importantly, studies suggest that the DSM-5 criteria for young children also may be a good fit for preadolescent youth and identify about twice as many children with PTSD as the adult-based criteria (Danzi and La Greca 2017). Also noteworthy is the fact that DSM-5 and the new ICD-11 criteria identify different children as meeting criteria for PTSD (La Greca et al. 2017).

Prevalence

Prevalence rates for PTSD vary greatly depending on the severity, type, and length of exposure or repeated exposure to traumatic events, as well as other demographic factors (Alisic et al. 2014). In the United States, 62% of adolescents surveyed reported experiencing at least one traumatic event, and 19% reported experiencing three or more traumatic events (McLaughlin et al. 2013). Reported lifetime DSM-IV PTSD prevalence in the same sample was 4.7% and was higher among females than males (McLaughlin et al. 2013). Recent meta-analyses suggest that 15.9% of trauma-exposed youth develop post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) and the rate is twice as high in girls as in boys (Alisic et al. 2014). Also, rates of PTSD are typically highest with events that involve interpersonal violence, such as sexual abuse or the unexpected death of a loved one (Alisic et al. 2014; Kessler et al. 2017). Per the APA, US Latinos, African Americans, and American Indians tend to have higher rates of

PTSD than US non-Latino whites. Lower SES, lower education, and childhood adversity such as family dysfunction or parental separation are all risk factors for development of PTSD following a traumatic event.

Course of Disorder over Time

Individuals who experience PTSD symptoms less than 1 month from the traumatic event may meet criteria for a diagnosis of acute stress disorder; if symptoms persist for more than 1 month, then the diagnosis is changed to PTSD. Child physical or sexual abuse is often associated with a more chronic course of PTSD from childhood through adulthood. Finally, individuals who initially present with subsyndromal PTSD, but meet the full criteria at six months or more posttrauma, are considered to have PTSD *with delayed expression*. Some resilient individuals present with only a few symptoms of traumatic stress that never reach clinical thresholds and remit over time.

Common Comorbidities

People with PTSD are 80% more likely than those without PTSD to have symptoms that meet criteria for at least one other mental disorder (APA 2013). Further, 70–90% of the time, PTSD has been found to be comorbid with at least one other disorder in adolescents (Fan et al. 2011) and young children (Scheeringa et al. 2003). Depression, anxiety, and substance use are common comorbid diagnoses (Bonanno et al. 2010). Substance use disorder and conduct disorder are more common among males than females. Among young children, oppositional defiant disorder and separation anxiety disorder are the most common comorbidities (APA 2013).

It is unclear whether PTSD plays a casual role in the development of additional comorbid conditions or whether preexisting psychological conditions predispose a person to develop

PTSD following a trauma (Perrin et al. 2000). In one study with adult flood survivors, authors concluded PTSD lead to some psychiatric disorders (McMillen et al. 2002), and that concept was replicated in another study with young children following a hurricane (Scheeringa and Zeanah 2008). It is also possible that a broader underlying factor leads to the development of both PTSD and other conditions, which would account for the high rate of comorbidity (Perrin et al. 2000). Additional research is necessary to better understand the directionality of these comorbid relationships, which would also advance the conceptualization and treatment of PTSD.

Measures

There are several measures used in the assessment and diagnosis of PTSD in children and adults. The type of measure chosen depends on many factors, including the availability of a trained clinician, the individual's time and presenting condition(s), and the cost of the measure.

Clinician-administered interviews are the most thorough tools available and include (1) the Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-5 (Clinician Version), used with adolescents and adults (SCID-5-CV; First et al. 2016), and (2) the Kiddie-Schedule for Affective Disorders and Schizophrenia, used with children and adolescents and revised to be compatible with DSM-5 diagnoses (K-SADS-PL DSM-5; Kaufman et al. 2016). Each of these interviews includes a PTSD-specific module for assessing the presence of a traumatic event and any resulting symptoms required for diagnosis (American Psychiatric Association 2013). Although clinician-administered interviews are the most thorough diagnostic tool, they are also the most time-consuming as well as the most expensive option.

Self-report measures of PTSD for adults include the PTSD Checklist for DSM-5 (PCL-5; Weathers et al. 2013). For school-aged children and adolescents, the Child PTSD Symptom Scale for DSM-5 (CPSS-5; Foa et al. 2018) and the UCLA PTSD Reaction Index for DSM-5

(PTSD-RI-5; Steinberg and Beyerlein 2014) are the most widely used measures. Although these measures are easy to administer and do not require a trained clinician, the measures provide only a screening for elevated PTSD symptoms and require follow-up evaluations for a formal diagnosis.

Treatment and Prognosis

Several treatment options are available for individuals with PTSD. Trauma-focused cognitive behavioral therapy (TF-CBT) for children and adults has the strongest evidence as an effective treatment; prolonged exposure is also effective for adults and promising for youth (Courtois et al. 2017; La Greca and Danzi 2019). Eye movement desensitization and reprocessing (EMDR) is probably efficacious for adults and youth with PTSD (Courtois et al. 2017; Diehle et al. 2015; La Greca and Danzi 2019). Trauma and Grief Component Therapy for Adolescents (TGCTA) is another newer therapy option with strong initial support (Saltzman et al. 2017). Another treatment option, sometimes utilized in conjunction with psychotherapy, is medication. However, there is not strong research support for utilization of SSRIs or SNRIs, especially in children (La Greca and Danzi 2019).

Typically, PTSD symptoms decline substantially over the first year posttrauma (Bonanno et al. 2010), after which symptoms are chronic and further declines are more gradual (e.g., La Greca et al. 2010; Shaw et al. 1996). The prognosis for individuals with PTSD varies greatly depending on whether the individual has any comorbid conditions, their level of social support, or whether they have received treatment. Individuals with comorbid conditions (such as depression or substance use), poor social support, and who do not seek treatment have a poorer prognosis than those without these concerns. For individuals who do receive treatment, some evidence a decrease in symptoms after only four sessions of CBT, while others may require a longer course of treatment (Foa et al. 2008).

References and Further Reading

- Alisic, E., Zalta, A. K., van Wesel, F., Larsen, S. E., Hafstad, G. S., Hassanpour, K., & Smid, G. E. (2014). Rates of post-traumatic stress disorder in trauma-exposed children and adolescents: Meta-analysis. *The British Journal of Psychiatry*, 204, 335–340.
- American Psychiatric Association. (2010). DSM-5 development. Downloaded from <http://www.dsm5.org/ProposedRevisions/Pages/proposedrevision.aspx?rid=165>
- American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Arlington: American Psychiatric Association.
- Bisson, J., & Andrew, M. (2007). Psychological treatment of post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD). *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 3, CD003388. <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD003388.pub3>.
- Bonanno, G. A., Brewin, C. R., Kaniasty, K., & La Greca, A. M. (2010). Weighing the costs of disaster: Consequences, risks, and resilience in individuals, families, and communities. *Psychological Science in the Public Interest*, 11(1), 1–49. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1529100610387086>.
- Cohen, J. A., Berliner, L., & Mannarino, A. (2010). Trauma focused CBT for children with co-occurring trauma and behavior problems. *Child Abuse and Neglect*, 34, 215–224.
- Copeland, W. E., Keeler, G., Angold, A., & Costello, E. J. (2007). Traumatic events and posttraumatic stress in childhood. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 64, 577–584.
- Costello, E. J., Erkanli, A., Fairbank, J. A., & Angold, A. (2002). The prevalence of potentially traumatic events in childhood and adolescence. *Journal of Traumatic Stress*, 15, 99–112.
- Courtois, C. A., Sonis, J., Brown, L. S., Cook, J., Fairbank, J. A., & Friedman, M. et al. (2017). Clinical practice guidelines for the treatment of posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) in adults. Retrieved from <https://www.apa.org/ptsd-guideline/ptsd.pdf>
- Danzi, B. A., & La Greca, A. M. (2017). Optimizing clinical thresholds for PTSD: Extending the DSM-5 preschool criteria to school-age children. *International Journal of Clinical and Health Psychology*, 17(3), 234–241. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijchp.2017.07.001>.
- Diehle, J., Opmeer, B. C., Boer, F., Mannarino, A. P., & Lindauer, R. J. (2015). Trauma-focused cognitive behavioral therapy or eye movement desensitization and reprocessing: what works in children with post-traumatic stress symptoms? A randomized controlled trial. *European Journal of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*, 24(2), 227–236.
- Fan, F., Zhang, Y., Yang, Y., Mo, L., & Liu, X. (2011). Symptoms of posttraumatic stress disorder, depression, and anxiety among adolescents following the 2008 Wenchuan earthquake in China. *Journal of Traumatic Stress*, 24(1), 44–53.
- First, M. B., Williams, J. B., Karg, R. S., & Spitzer, R. L. (2016). *Structured clinical interview for DSM-5 disorders-clinician version (SCID-5-CV)*. Arlington: American Psychiatric Association Publishing.
- Foa, E. B., Johnson, K. M., Feeny, N. C., & Treadwell, K. R. (2001). The child PTSD symptom scale: A preliminary examination of its psychometric properties. *Journal of Clinical Child Psychology*, 30(3), 376–384. https://doi.org/10.1207/S15374424JCCP3003_9.
- Foa, E. B., Keane, T. M., Friedman, M. J., & Cohen, J. (Eds.). (2008). *Effective treatments for PTSD: practice guidelines from the International Society for Traumatic Stress Studies* (2nd ed.). New York: Guilford Press.
- Foa, E. B., Asnaani, A., Zang, Y., Capaldi, S., & Yeh, R. (2018). Psychometrics of the child PTSD symptom scale for DSM-5 for trauma-exposed children and adolescents. *Journal of Clinical Child & Adolescent Psychology*, 47(1), 38–46. <https://doi.org/10.1080/15374416.2017.1350962>.
- Kaufman, J., Birmaher, B., Brent, D., Rao, U., Flynn, C., Moreci, P., et al. (1997). Schedule for affective disorders and schizophrenia for school-age children-present and lifetime version (K-SADS-PL): Initial reliability and validity data. *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*, 36, 980–988.
- Kaufman, J., Birmaher, B., Axelson, D., Perepletchikova, F., Brent, D., & Ryan, N. (2016). K-SADS-PL DSM-5. Retrieved from <https://www.kennedykrieger.org/sites/default/files/library/documents/faculty/ksads-dsm-5-screener.pdf>
- Kessler, R. C., Aguilar-Gaxiola, A., Alonso, J., Benjet, C., Bromet, E. J., Cardoso, G., . . . Koenen, K. C. (2017). Trauma and PTSD in the WHO world mental health surveys. *European Journal of Psychotraumatology*, 8(5). <https://doi.org/10.1080/20008198.2017.1353383>
- La Greca, A. M., & Danzi, B. A. (2019). Posttraumatic stress disorder. In M. J. Prinstein, E. A. Youngstrom, E. J. Mash, & R. A. Buckley (Eds.), *Treatment of childhood disorders* (4th ed.). New York: Guilford Press.
- La Greca, A. M., Silverman, W., Lai, B., & Jaccard, J. (2010). Hurricane-related exposure experiences and stressors, other life events, and social support: Concurrent and prospective impact on children's persistent posttraumatic stress. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, (6), 78. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0020775>.
- La Greca, A. M., Taylor, C. J., & Herge, W. (2012). Traumatic stress disorders in children and adolescents. In G. Beck & D. Sloan (Eds.), *Oxford handbook of traumatic stress disorders*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- La Greca, A. M., Danzi, B. A., & Chan, S. F. (2017). DSM-5 and ICD-11 as competing models of PTSD in preadolescent children exposed to a natural disaster: Assessing validity and co-occurring symptomatology. *European Journal of Psychotraumatology*, 8(1), 1310591. <https://doi.org/10.1080/20008198.2017.1310591>.
- McLaughlin, K. A., Koenen, K. C., Hill, E. D., Petukhova, M., Sampson, N. A., Zaslavsky, A. M., & Kessler, R. C. (2013). Trauma exposure and posttraumatic stress

- disorder in a national sample of adolescents. *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*, 52(8), 815–830.e14.
- McMillen, C., North, C., Mosley, M., & Smith, E. (2002). Untangling the psychiatric comorbidity of post-traumatic stress disorder in a sample of flood survivors. *Comprehensive Psychiatry*, 43(6), 478–485.
- Perrin, S., Smith, P., & Yule, W. (2000). Practitioner review: The assessment and treatment of post-traumatic stress disorder in children and adolescents. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, 41(3), 277–289.
- Saltzman, W. R., Layne, C. M., Pynoos, R. S., Olafson, E., Kaplow, J. B., & Boat, B. (2017). *Trauma and grief component therapy for adolescents: A modular approach to treating traumatized and bereaved youth*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Scheeringa, M. S., & Zeanah, C. H. (2008). Reconsideration of harm's way: Onsets and comorbidity patterns of disorders in preschool children and their caregivers following Hurricane Katrina. *Journal of Clinical Child and Adolescent Psychology*, 37(3), 508–518.
- Scheeringa, M. S., Zeanah, C. H., Myers, L., & Putnam, F. W. (2003). New findings on alternative criteria for PTSD in preschool children. *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*, 42(5), 561–560.
- Shaw, J. A., Applegate, B., & Schorr, C. (1996). Twenty-one-month follow-up study of school-age children exposed to Hurricane Andrew. *Journal of the American Academy of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry*, 35, 359–364.
- Steinberg, A. M. & Beyerlein, B. (2014). UCLA PTSD reaction index: DSM-5 version. Retrieved from http://www.nctsn.org/nctsn_assets/pdfs/mediasite/ptsd-training.pdf
- Steinberg, A. M., Brymer, M. J., Decker, K. B., & Pynoos, R. S. (2004). The University of California at Los Angeles post-traumatic stress disorder reaction index. *Current Psychiatry Reports*, 6(2), 96–100.
- Weathers, F. W., Litz, B. T., Keane, T. M., Palmieri, P. A., Marx, B. P., & Schnurr, P. P. (2013). The PTSD checklist for DSM-5 (PCL-5). Scale available from the National Center for PTSD at www.ptsd.va.gov

Posterior Hypothalamic Area

► Hypothalamus

Postpartum Blues

► Postpartum Depression

Postpartum Depression

Michele L. Okun

Department of Psychology, University of Colorado Colorado Springs, Colorado Springs, CO, USA

Synonyms

Major depressive disorder; Postpartum blues

Definition

Postpartum depression is moderate to severe depression in a woman after she has given birth. It may occur soon after delivery or up to a year later. Most of the time, it occurs within the first 3 months after delivery.

Description

Major depressive disorder with a postpartum onset (PPMD) is a prevalent and serious disorder. Postpartum major depression (PPMD) is moderate to severe depression in a woman after she has given birth, clinically resembling major depression as described in DSM-IV. Feelings of anxiety, irritation, tearfulness, and restlessness are common in the week or two after pregnancy. These feelings are often called the postpartum blues or “baby blues.” These symptoms almost remit without the need for treatment. Postpartum depression may occur when the baby blues do not fade away or when signs of depression start 1 or more months after childbirth. Up to 20% of women will have an initial major depressive episode within the first 3-month postpartum (Gavin et al. 2005; O’Hara and Wisner 2014), with the risk of suffering recurrent postpartum major depression (PPMD) at about 25% (Wisner et al. 2004) and up to 49.9% of indigent women (Mayberry et al. 2007). Women are at the highest risk during their lifetimes for depressive episodes during the childbearing years (O’Hara et al. 1990).

PPMD is considered a serious public health concern (Gaynes et al. 2005; Wisner et al. 2006). The maternal role, which is vital to the infant's safety, survival, and well-being (Logsdon et al. 2006), can be compromised by PPMD and result in impaired maternal-infant bonding. Children of mothers with PPMD are at an increased risk of impaired mental and motor development, poor self-regulation, and behavior problems (Moehler et al. 2006). Postpartum depression and its consequences can persist from months to years after childbirth, with lingering limitations in physical and psychological functioning after recovery from depressive episodes (Burt and Stein 2002; Marcus and Heringhausen 2009; McCarter-Spaulding and Horowitz 2007).

A myriad of factors contribute to the etiology of both incident and recurrent PPMD (Beck 2001; Bloch et al. 2003; Gaynes et al. 2005). Among the established risk factors, previous episodes of depression, family history of depression, and depressive symptomatology during pregnancy (O'Hara et al. 1991a, b) are the strongest predictors for both incident and recurrent episodes. Demographic variables, including marital status, race, age, and socioeconomic status, have also been implicated as risk factors (Beck 2001; Ross et al. 2006). Unfortunately, these recognized risk factors have proven inadequate at predicting which women will have a recurrent episode. Other risk factors that have been identified include the following: (1) age below 20 years; (2) currently abusing alcohol, taking illegal substances, or smoking (these also cause serious medical health risks for the baby); (3) having an unplanned pregnancy, or have mixed feelings about the pregnancy; (4) a stressful event during the pregnancy or delivery, including personal illness, death or illness of a loved one, a difficult or emergency delivery, premature delivery, or illness or birth defect in the baby; (5) little support from family, friends, or the significant other.

Disturbed sleep during late pregnancy represents another potential risk factor for PPMD. Several investigators report that disturbed sleep is a prodromal symptom of both first onset and recurrent depressive symptoms and/or episodes outside of the postpartum (Ford and Kamerow 1989) as

well as during the postpartum (Coble et al. 1994; Wolfson et al. 2003). Okun and colleagues showed that poor sleep quality in late pregnancy (Okun et al. 2009) as well as in the first 8 weeks postpartum (Okun et al. 2011) significantly contributed to recurrent PPMD. Wolfson and colleagues noted that women reporting more sleep disturbances in late pregnancy are more likely to have clinically significant depressive symptomatology at 2–4 weeks postpartum than those with few sleep disturbances (Wolfson et al. 2003). Coble and colleagues found that women with a history of depression had more sleep disturbances throughout pregnancy and into the postpartum than women without a history of depression (Coble et al. 1994). Taken together, these findings suggest that sleep disturbances in late pregnancy increase vulnerability to PPMD, particularly in women who are susceptible, such as those with a history of PPMD (Wisner et al. 2002).

There are two identified biological systems attributed to have an effect on the risk of developing PPMD. First are endocrine factors. Hormones such as progesterone, estradiol, prolactin, and cortisol peak during the last few weeks of pregnancy, followed by a drastic drop in their levels following delivery and into the early postpartum period (Abou-Saleh et al. 1998). Dramatic drops in hormone concentrations, especially progesterone and the estrogens, likely contribute to postpartum depression (Abou-Saleh et al. 1998; Bloch et al. 2003); however, their specific role is unclear. Administration of estrogens to postpartum women appears to reduce depressive symptoms (Dennis 2004). However, the dramatic reduction in concentrations of gonadal steroids after delivery does not lead to PPMD in all women (Bloch et al. 2003).

The second pathway involves alterations in the cytokine milieu (Bloch et al. 2003; Maes et al. 2000). The "cytokine hypothesis of depression" states that both the etiology and pathophysiology of depression are linked to dysregulation of inflammatory cytokines (Maes 1994). Puerperal women may be particularly vulnerable because inflammatory cytokines increase significantly during the last trimester of pregnancy in preparation for delivery (Romero et al. 2006). Women

who report increased depressive symptoms in pregnancy and the postpartum have corresponding higher levels of proinflammatory cytokines (Maes et al. 2000; Okun et al. 2013).

PPMD is a significant health concern. While there is no single test to diagnose PPMD, it is imperative for a woman to be evaluated if there is any indication that she has signs of depression or risk for depression. This will buttress not only her own mental and physical health but the health of her baby.

Cross-References

- Antidepressant Medications
- Women's Health

References and Further Reading

- Abou-Saleh, M. T., Ghubash, R., Karim, L., Krymski, M., & Bhai, I. (1998). Hormonal aspects of postpartum depression. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 23, 465–475.
- Beck, C. T. (2001). Predictors of postpartum depression: An update. *Nursing Research*, 50, 275–285.
- Bloch, M., Daly, R. C., & Rubinow, D. R. (2003). Endocrine factors in the etiology of postpartum depression. *Comprehensive Psychiatry*, 44, 234–246.
- Burt, V. K., & Stein, K. (2002). Epidemiology of depression throughout the female life cycle. *Journal of Clinical Psychiatry*, 63(Suppl 7), 9–15.
- Coble, P. A., Reynolds, C. F., Kupfer, D. J., Houck, P. R., Day, N. L., & Giles, D. E. (1994). Childbearing in women with and without a history of affective disorder. II. Electroencephalographic sleep. *Comprehensive Psychiatry*, 35, 215–224.
- Dennis, C. L. (2004). Preventing postpartum depression. Part I: A review of biological interventions. *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry*, 49(7), 467–475.
- Ford, D. E., & Kamerow, D. B. (1989). Epidemiologic study of sleep disturbances and psychiatric disorders. An opportunity for prevention? *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 262, 1479–1484.
- Gavin, N. I., Gaynes, B. N., Lohr, K. N., Meltzer-Brody, S., Gartehner, G., & Swinson, T. (2005). Perinatal depression: A systematic review of prevalence and incidence. *Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 106(5 Pt 1), 1071–1083.
- Gaynes, B. N., Gavin, N., Meltzer-Brody, S., et al. (2005). Perinatal depression: Prevalence, screening accuracy, and screening outcomes. *Evidence Report/Technology Assessment*, 119, 1–8.
- Logsdon, M. C., Wisner, K. L., & Pinto-Foltz, M. D. (2006). The impact of postpartum depression on mothering. *Journal of Obstetric, Gynecologic, and Neonatal Nursing*, 35, 652–658.
- Maes, M. (1994). Cytokines in major depression. *Biological Psychiatry*, 36(7), 498–499.
- Maes, M., Lin, A. H., Ombelet, W., et al. (2000). Immune activation in the early puerperium is related to postpartum anxiety and depressive symptoms. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 25, 121–137.
- Marcus, S. M., & Heringhausen, J. E. (2009). Depression in childbearing women: When depression complicates pregnancy. *Primary Care*, 36, 151–165.
- Mayberry, L. J., Horowitz, J. A., & Declercq, E. (2007). Depression symptom prevalence and demographic risk factors among U.S. women during the first 2 years postpartum. *Journal of Obstetric, Gynecologic, and Neonatal Nursing*, 36, 542–549.
- McCarter-Spaulling, D., & Horowitz, J. A. (2007). How does postpartum depression affect breastfeeding? *American Journal of Maternal/Child Nursing*, 32, 10–17.
- Moehler, E., Brunner, R., Wiebel, A., Reck, C., & Resch, F. (2006). Maternal depressive symptoms in the postnatal period are associated with long-term impairment of mother–child bonding. *Archives of Women's Mental Health*, 9(5), 273–278.
- O'Hara, M. W., Zekoski, E. M., Philipps, L. H., & Wright, E. J. (1990). Controlled prospective study of postpartum mood disorders: Comparison of childbearing and nonchildbearing women. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, 99, 3–15.
- O'Hara, M. W., Schlechte, J. A., Lewis, D. A., & Varner, M. W. (1991a). Controlled prospective study of postpartum mood disorders: Psychological, environmental, and hormonal variables. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, 100, 63–73.
- O'Hara, M. W., Schlechte, J. A., Lewis, D. A., & Wright, E. J. (1991b). Prospective study of postpartum blues: Biologic and psychosocial factors. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 48, 801–806.
- O'Hara, M. W. & Wisner, K. L. (2014). Perinatal mental illness: definition, description and aetiology. *Best. Pract. Res. Clin. Obstet. Gynaecol.*, 28, 3–12.
- Okun, M. L., Hanusa, B. H., Hall, M., & Wisner, K. L. (2009). Sleep complaints in late pregnancy and the recurrence of postpartum depression. *Behavioral Sleep Medicine*, 7, 106–117.
- Okun, M. L., Luther, J., Prather, A. A., Perel, J. M., Wisniewski, S., & Wisner, K. L. (2011). Changes in sleep quality, but not hormones predict time to postpartum depression recurrence. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 130, 378–384.
- Okun, M. L., Luther, J., Wisniewski, S., & Wisner, K. L. (2013). Disturbed sleep and inflammatory cytokines in depressed and nondepressed pregnant women: An exploratory analysis of pregnant outcomes. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 75, 1–13.
- Romero, R., Espinoza, J., Goncalves, L. F., Kusanovic, J. P., Friel, L. A., & Nien, J. K. (2006). Inflammation

- in preterm and term labour and delivery. *Seminars in Fetal and Neonatal Medicine*, 11(5), 317–326.
- Ross, L. E., Campbell, V. L., Dennis, C. L., & Blackmore, E. R. (2006). Demographic characteristics of participants in studies of risk factors, prevention, and treatment of postpartum depression. *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry*, 51, 704–710.
- Wisner, K. L., Parry, B. L., & Piontek, C. M. (2002). Clinical practice. Postpartum depression. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 347, 194–199.
- Wisner, K. L., Perel, J. M., Peindl, K. S., & Hanusa, B. H. (2004). Timing of depression recurrence in the first year after birth. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 78(3), 249–252.
- Wisner, K. L., Chambers, C., & Sit, D. K. (2006). Postpartum depression: A major public health problem. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 296, 2616–2618.
- Wolfson, A. R., Crowley, S. J., Anwer, U., & Bassett, J. L. (2003). Changes in sleep patterns and depressive symptoms in first-time mothers: Last trimester to 1-year postpartum. *Behavioral Sleep Medicine*, 1, 54–67.

Posttraumatic Growth

Vincent Tran
Southwestern Medical Center, University of
Texas, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

Adversarial growth; Benefit finding; PTG; Stress-related growth; Transformational coping

Definition

Posttraumatic growth is the experience of positive change after a traumatic or negative life event. It is theorized to be the positive or adaptive outcome of a meaning-making process in which individuals are forced into a reevaluation process of their worldviews after experiencing a negative or life-changing event. Through this reevaluation process, some individuals may develop a more coherent understanding of themselves and the world. Common examples of growth after trauma include changes in life values, improved

relationships with family and/or friends, growth in spiritual beliefs, and increased personal strength, empathy, or patience.

Description

The concept of growth from adversity is an ancient concept based in many religions and philosophical systems. However, it has been a formal focus of investigation in psychology only in the past few decades, coinciding with the development of psychometrically sound measures and the rise of positive psychology. The fields of health psychology and behavioral medicine, in particular, have latched onto the notion that one may experience positive change in response to adversity, including the adversity of coping with serious health threats and illnesses. For example, research on posttraumatic growth has been carried out in chronic illness populations such as patients with heart disease, cancer, rheumatoid arthritis, HIV/AIDS, and multiple sclerosis. It has also been studied in the context of veterans of war, victims of violence, bereavement, and family members/caregivers of those experiencing a negative life event.

Posttraumatic growth is conceptually very similar to benefit finding and stress-related growth, and these terms are often used interchangeably in the research literature. Multiple measures have been developed, which have facilitated the rigorous study of posttraumatic growth and related constructs. These scales include: benefit finding (Mohr et al. 1999; Tomich and Helgeson 2004); Stress-Related Growth Scale (Park et al. 1996); and the Posttraumatic Growth Inventory (Tedeschi and Calhoun 1996). Posttraumatic growth is differentiated from concepts such as resilience and hardiness, in which one may cope or adjust well in response to stress rather than experience positive transformation and an *improvement* in functioning, quality of life, or worldview. Posttraumatic growth is also conceptually differentiated from optimism because it reflects a change in experience rather than a dispositional trait, although the two constructs have been shown to be correlated.

Posttraumatic growth has been associated with adaptive coping processes including heightened problem-focused coping, social-support seeking, acceptance and positive reinterpretation, optimism, religion, cognitive processing, and positive affect. It has often been associated with better illness adjustment and health outcomes, less depression, and more positive well-being in chronic illness populations. Although the prevalence of posttraumatic growth varies widely from study to study, numerous studies suggest a majority of research participants endorse some type of growth from a negative or traumatic event.

Although research suggests that posttraumatic growth is associated with improved functioning and quality of life, there have been conflicting reports. Some studies report nonsignificant or even negative correlations between posttraumatic growth and well-being. These inconsistencies have driven researchers to more rigorously test proposed theories of posttraumatic growth and better clarify the processes by which posttraumatic growth occurs. More meticulous study has led to investigation of non-transformational change, mediators, moderators, and study of curvilinear associations between posttraumatic growth and well-being. Further elaboration on the theory of posttraumatic growth has led to studies on whether posttraumatic growth is the outcome of a series of life changes that have occurred or whether it is a cognitive process of reevaluation and understanding that unfolds over time. Researchers are also investigating whether posttraumatic growth reflects genuine changes in one's life (veridical growth) or whether it reflects perceptions of change or growth (non-veridical growth). Some have suggested that non-veridical growth may even reflect a maladaptive, defensive denial process, although others claim that perceptions of growth that do not reflect true life changes may promote well-being in response to a traumatic event.

Cross-References

- [Benefit Finding](#)
- [Coping](#)

- [Defensiveness](#)
- [Hardiness](#)
- [Optimism](#)
- [Positive Psychology](#)
- [Perceived Benefits](#)
- [Resilience](#)

References and Reading

- Affleck, G., & Tennen, H. (1996). Construing benefits from adversity: Adaptational significance and dispositional underpinnings. *Journal of Personality*, 64(4), 899–922.
- Calhoun, L. G., & Tedeschi, R. G. (Eds.). (2006). *Handbook of posttraumatic growth: Research & practice*. Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Helgeson, V. S., Reynolds, K. A., & Tomich, P. L. (2006). A meta-analytic review of benefit finding and growth. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 74(5), 797–816.
- Joseph, S., & Linley, P. A. (Eds.). (2008). *Trauma, recovery, and growth: Positive psychological perspectives on posttraumatic stress*. Hoboken: Wiley.
- Linley, P. A., & Joseph, S. (2004). Positive change following trauma and adversity: A review. *Journal of Traumatic Stress*, 17(1), 11–21.
- Lopez, S. J., & Snyder, C. R. (Eds.). (2009). *Oxford handbook of positive psychology* (2nd ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Mohr, D. C., Dick, L. P., Russo, D., Pinn, J., Boudewyn, A. C., Likosky, W., et al. (1999). The psychosocial impact of multiple sclerosis: Exploring the patient's perspective. *Health Psychology*, 18(4), 376–382.
- Park, C. L., & Helgeson, V. S. (2006). Growth following highly stressful life events: Current status and future directions. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 74(5), 791–796.
- Park, C. L., Cohen, L. H., & Murch, R. L. (1996). Assessment and prediction of stress-related growth. *Journal of Personality*, 64, 71–105.
- Park, C. L., Lechner, S. C., Antoni, M. H., & Stanton, A. L. (Eds.). (2009). *Medical illness and positive life change: Can crisis lead to personal transformation?* Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Tedeschi, R. G., & Calhoun, L. G. (1996). The posttraumatic growth inventory: Measuring the positive legacy of trauma. *Journal of Traumatic Stress*, 9(3), 455–471.
- Tedeschi, R. G., & Calhoun, L. G. (2004). Target article: Posttraumatic growth: Conceptual foundations and empirical evidence. *Psychological Inquiry*, 15(1), 1–18.
- Tedeschi, R. G., Park, C. L., & Calhoun, L. G. (Eds.). (1998). *Posttraumatic growth: Positive changes in the aftermath of crisis*. Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum.

Tomich, P. L., & Helgeson, V. S. (2004). Is finding something good in the bad always good? Benefit finding among women with breast cancer. *Health Psychology*, 23, 16–23.

Potential Years of Life Lost (PYLL)

► [Life Years Lost](#)

Power Spectral Analysis

► [Quantitative EEG Including the Five Common Bandwidths \(Delta, Theta, Alpha, Sigma, and Beta\)](#)

Practice Guideline

► [Clinical Practice Guidelines](#)

Praise

► [Prayer](#)

Prayer

Donna C. Burdzy and Kenneth Pargament
Department of Psychology, Bowling Green State University, Bowling Green, OH, USA

Synonyms

[Meditation](#); [Praise](#); [Supplication](#); [Thanksgiving](#); [Worship](#)

Definition

Prayer in all of its variations can be defined by two fundamental principles: (1) prayer is a form of communication and (2) the exchange of communication takes place between the self and the transcendent, immanent, and numinous forces that represent human notions of the sacred. Defining prayer in this way broadens William James’ classic conceptualization of prayer as “every kind of inward communion or conversation with the power recognized as divine” to include not only that which comes from God but everything that is imbued with the power of sacredness.

Description

Throughout history, humankind has manifested a yearning to communicate with the sacred through prayer. Expressed in vastly different cultures and religious traditions, prayer constitutes a universal phenomenon that plays a crucial role in humanity’s religious experience. In fact, for many individuals, prayer is their primary religious practice.

Prayer, in the theocentric Judaic, Christian, and Islamic religious traditions, represents a way to express thanks to God, participate in God’s will, and move closer to God. From a theocentric perspective, prayer is, simply put, communication with God. Prayer, however, is not limited to God-centered religions; it also features prominently in the practices of nontheistic religious traditions such as Zen and Theravada Buddhism, Jainism, and Taoism as well as animistic and pantheistic belief systems such as Shinto and the indigenous religions that feature the worship of nontheistic spiritual entities. Secular individuals without religious affiliations or theistic beliefs also pray regularly in a variety of ways.

Types of Prayer

Scholars have devised a number of classification schemes in an attempt to impose some order on the extraordinarily diverse modes of prayer

expression. Traditional descriptive typologies have focused on the reasons people pray as well as on the content of prayers. Gill (1994) classified prayers according to their intent: petition, invocation, thanksgiving, dedication, supplication, intercession, confession, penitence, and benediction prayers. Heiler (1932) proposed a rich typology to capture the “astonishing multiplicity” of the forms of prayer: primitive; ritual; Hellenistic; philosophical; personal; mystical; prophetic; the prayers of great religious personalities; the prayers of great men, poets, and artists; prayer in public worship; and prayer as a law of duty and good works.

More recently, researchers have developed typologies by asking people what they pray about, when they pray, why they pray, and to whom or what they pray. Ladd and Spilka (2002) proposed a threefold scheme which distinguishes among recipients of prayer. Inward prayer is directed toward one’s inner self, outward prayer represents a connection with another human, and upward prayer signifies sacred communication with the divine. Poloma and Pendleton (1991) classified prayer in terms of four concise categories. Petitionary prayer involves requests to fulfill one’s own spiritual or material needs or those of others by asking for guidance, forgiveness, and physical well-being. Meditative prayer involves thinking about the divine, communicating with the sacred, or merely being in the presence of the sacred. Ritual prayer involves silent or verbal recitation of specific religious texts or mantras from memory or by reading scripture. Colloquial prayer, which takes the form of a conversation between individuals and their God or divine figure, may blend aspects of petitionary and meditative prayer. Poloma and Gallup (1991) found that while Americans most widely practice colloquial prayer, meditative prayer was associated with a closer relationship with God and higher levels of well-being.

Most prayer typologies have been created out of research involving individuals from predominantly Western cultures in which prayer is typically experienced in the context of organized, theistic religion. However, Banzinger et al. (2008) found that the prayer experiences of

individuals from the Netherlands, a highly secularized society, also could be categorized using a typology similar to Poloma and Pendleton’s scheme. While Banzinger et al. argued for the creation of a secular prayer type, their findings support the notion that some types of prayer experiences may be common to both secular and non-secular individuals.

Prayer and Well-Being

The way that people communicate with the sacred can influence their physical and psychological health. Studies have linked prayer to better medical outcomes among patients dealing with cardiovascular disease, cancer, migraines, chronic pain post surgical recovery, and HIV.

Research studies have also shown that people who pray more frequently report a greater sense of well-being. More specifically, prayer has been associated with higher levels of overall mental health, lower levels of depression and anxiety, higher levels of self-esteem, and more positive mood among individuals with post-traumatic stress disorder (“PTSD”). How well prayer works may depend at least in part on how people perceive God. Bradshaw et al. (2008) found that frequency of prayer was positively correlated with higher rates of psychopathology among individuals who perceived God as remote or not loving. In contrast, among individuals who viewed God as close and loving, more prayer was tied to lower psychopathology. Other factors may also affect the relationship between prayer and well-being, including the content and intent of prayers, an individual’s level of spiritual maturity, and the availability of additional coping resources.

Although studies have consistently demonstrated significant correlations between prayer and well-being, researchers have not yet identified the underlying psychological mechanisms that account for this relationship. Prayer may affect well-being indirectly by strengthening the relationships between individuals, God, and their faith community which may buffer the negative impact of stressors on health and well-being. Prayer may also manifest its effects through

other psychological factors, such as increasing feelings of gratitude. Researchers have shown that greater frequency of prayer is associated with increased feelings of gratitude which are, in turn, correlated with lower rates of depression as well as higher levels of optimism and fewer negative health symptoms.

Prayer for one's own health and for the health of others represent the two most frequently used alternative health treatments in the United States. The proportion of Americans who pray to alleviate health problems increased from 43% in 2002 to 49% in 2007. This number may grow even further as the number of individuals who live with chronic physical or psychological illnesses rises. Many individuals who pray have also expressed a desire to integrate prayer practices into their medical treatment. In one study, 79% of critical care providers were asked by patients or their families to pray for them. In another survey, 48% of American patients indicated that they would like their doctor to pray for them. Over 90% of these patients felt that their doctor's prayers on their behalf had enhanced their health and aided in their recovery.

Some clinicians have begun to respond to the promising research findings and to the desires of many of their patients by considering how to incorporate prayer into specific treatments. Seventy-three percent of critical care nurses surveyed by Tracy et al. (2005) prayed while treating clients, and 81% of these nurses had recommended the use of prayer to their patients. Pargament et al. (1998) suggested that positive forms of religious coping such as seeking spiritual support through prayer could be successfully integrated into psychotherapy. The appropriateness of integrating spiritual practices such as prayer into treatment, however, remains a highly divisive topic within the health-care community.

References and Readings

- Bänzinger, S., Janssen, J., & Scheepers, P. (2008). Praying in a secularized society: An empirical study of praying practices and varieties. *The International Journal for the Psychology of Religion*, 18, 256–265.
- Bradshaw, M., Ellison, C. G., & Flannelly, K. J. (2008). Prayer, god imagery, and symptoms of psychopathology. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 47(4), 644–659.
- Fincham, F. D., Beach, S. R. H., Lambert, N., Stillman, T., & Braithwaite, S. R. (2008). Spiritual behaviors and relationship satisfaction: A critical analysis of the role of prayer. *Journal of Social and Clinical Psychology*, 27(4), 362–388.
- Gill, S. D. (1994). Prayer. In M. Eliade (Ed.), *The encyclopedia of religion* (Vol. 11, 2nd ed.). New York: Macmillan Reference.
- Heiler, F. (1932). *Prayer: A study in the history and psychology of religion*. London: Oxford University Press.
- Krause, N. (2009). Lifetime trauma, prayer and psychological distress in later life. *International Journal for the Psychology of Religion*, 19(1), 55–72.
- Ladd, K. L., & Spilka, B. (2002). Inward, outward, upward: Cognitive aspects of prayer. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 41(3), 475–484.
- Levin, J. (1996). How prayer heals: A theoretical model. *Alternative Therapies in Health & Medicine*, 2(1), 66–73.
- McCullough, M. E. (1995). Prayer and health: Conceptual issues, research review, and research agenda. *Journal of Psychology and Theology*, 23(1), 15–29.
- Pargament, K. I. (1997). *The psychology of religion and coping: Theory, research, practice*. New York: The Guilford Press.
- Pargament, K. I., Smith, B. W., Koenig, H. G., & Perez, L. (1998). Patterns of positive and negative religious coping with major life stressors. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 37(4), 710–724.
- Poloma, M. M., & Gallup, G. H., Jr. (1991). *Varieties of prayer: A survey report*. Philadelphia: Trinity Press International.
- Poloma, M. M., & Pendleton, B. F. (1991). The effects of prayer and prayer experiences on general wellbeing. *Journal of Psychology and Theology*, 19, 71–83.
- Tracy, M. F., Lindquist, R., Savik, K., Watanuki, S., Sendelbach, S., Kreitzer, M. J., et al. (2005). Use of complementary and alternative therapies: A national survey of critical care nurses. *American Journal of Critical Care*, 14, 404–414.

Cross-References

- [Meditation](#)
- [Religion](#)
- [Religious Ritual](#)
- [Spirituality](#)

Prediabetes

- [Hyperinsulinemia](#)
- [Impaired Glucose Tolerance](#)

Pregnancy

- [Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine](#)
- [Gestation](#)

Pregnancy Anxiety

Melissa Julian¹, Isabel F. Ramos², Nicole E. Mahrer³ and Christine Dunkel Schetter⁴

¹George Washington University, Washington, DC, USA

²Department of Psychology, UCLA, Los Angeles, CA, USA

³Department of Psychology, University of La Verne, La Verne, CA, USA

⁴Department of Psychology, University of California, Los Angeles (UCLA), Los Angeles, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Pregnancy-related anxiety](#); [Pregnancy-specific anxiety](#)

Definition

Pregnancy anxiety is a situation-specific negative emotional state tied to pregnancy-specific concerns or worries.

Description

Pregnancy is the period from conception to childbirth and is divided into three trimesters, with an average gestational length of 40 weeks. While pregnancy can be a positive experience for many women and their families, it can also be a very stressful time. Some pregnant women become anxious about the health of their fetus, labor and delivery, and their ability to parent a new infant, among other concerns. *Pregnancy anxiety* (also

referred to as *pregnancy-specific anxiety* or *pregnancy-related anxiety*) is a situation-specific negative emotional state tied to pregnancy-specific concerns or worries. *Anxiety* is defined as a negative emotional state characterized by worry, fear, and intrusive thoughts that are typically related to future events and often accompanied by somatic symptoms such as sweating and rapid heartbeat. Pregnancy anxiety is distinct from general anxiety in that the nature of the worries, fears, and thoughts are tied to pregnancy specifically. Research has documented that women who have higher pregnancy anxiety have higher risks of preterm birth and adverse developmental outcomes for their offspring. This entry will discuss the features of pregnancy anxiety, measures used to assess it, socioeconomic and personal factors associated with its development, potential mechanisms, and implications for infant and child developmental outcomes.

What Is Pregnancy Anxiety?

The worries and fears that underlie pregnancy anxiety usually focus on one's own health as a mother, the baby's health, labor, childbirth and hospital experiences, and parenting competence (Dunkel Schetter 2011). For example, anxiety about one's own health may include worries about high-risk medical conditions such as gestational diabetes or pregnancy-induced hypertension (preeclampsia) which can affect the mother's health. Some women worry that these conditions will hurt them and the baby. Women may also have significant concerns about the fetus in utero and about whether their baby will be healthy after birth. These particular fears are more frequent in women with previous miscarriages or difficulties with infertility (Guardino and Dunkel Schetter 2014). Concerns or worries about having a painful or traumatic birth experience also contribute to pregnancy anxiety, with many women being afraid that either they or their children will be harmed in the labor and delivery process. This occurs more often in women from countries with high rates of maternal mortality (Campos et al. 2007). Anxiety surrounding the ability to parent

may take the form of worrying about finances, childcare, or breast-feeding.

While these fears may be present throughout pregnancy, the nature of the fears typically change over the course of pregnancy as particular pregnancy-specific concerns and worries shift. For example, fears about miscarriage are greater in the first trimester when risk is higher, whereas concerns about the labor process or parenting a newborn tend to become more salient toward the end of pregnancy. Research has found that pregnancy anxiety is highest in the first trimester, decreases in the second semester, and increases again in the third trimester (Guardino and Dunkel Schetter 2014).

Measuring Pregnancy Anxiety

A review of pregnancy anxiety measures indicates that there are at least 15 pregnancy anxiety instruments that have been used internationally (Alderdice et al. 2012). One pregnancy anxiety scale (Rini et al. 1999) includes ten items that inquire about each of the concerns noted above and has reliability and validity data in English and Spanish. Another measure, published by Roesch et al. (2004), is a checklist measure that asks participants how often they experienced specific emotions (anxious, concerned, afraid, and panicky) due to their pregnancy in the past week. In our work, both measures have predicted preterm birth (Kramer et al. 2009) and length of gestation in term births (Ramos et al. 2019).

What Are the Harmful Effects of Pregnancy Anxiety?

Pregnancy anxiety is one of the strongest predictors of adverse birth outcomes, namely, preterm birth (PTB), and there is growing evidence for adverse implications for infant and child development. Other forms of stress and anxiety have been associated with poor birth outcomes; however, studies have found that pregnancy anxiety emerges as a stronger predictor (Dunkel Schetter 2011). Pregnancy anxiety is also associated with less optimal developmental outcomes in children,

even when controlling for medical risk during pregnancy. For example, pregnancy anxiety is associated with cognitive and motor performance in the infant's first year, including more behavioral reactivity, less cognitive development, and poorer attention regulation (Huizink et al. 2003). Many of these developmental difficulties can also persist into toddlerhood, childhood, and even pre-adolescence, with exposure to pregnancy anxiety in utero increasing risk for higher negative affectivity, greater anxiety, and impaired executive functioning in youth (Blair et al. 2011; Buss et al. 2011; Davis and Sandman 2012).

Why Is Pregnancy Anxiety Harmful?

The mechanisms through which pregnancy anxiety influences birth and developmental outcomes are being uncovered. Recent studies have focused on the effects of pregnancy anxiety on the intra-uterine environment and ways in which fetal development is programmed by maternal influences. One important potential mechanism is the mother's physiological stress response system, which is activated with elevated levels of pregnancy anxiety. Evidence suggests that pregnancy anxiety is linked to elevated levels of a stress-responsive peptide, placental corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), which in turn is known to trigger the timing of delivery (Mancuso et al. 2004; Ramos et al. 2019).

Who Is Most Likely to Have Pregnancy Anxiety?

Several socioeconomic and personal characteristics are associated with higher pregnancy anxiety. In general, first-time mothers have higher levels of pregnancy anxiety than those who have given birth before. Women with greater medical risks or complications that develop during pregnancy also score higher on measures of pregnancy anxiety. Women with lower incomes have higher levels of pregnancy anxiety. Also, married women and women with more social support are lower in pregnancy anxiety. Women with lower

self-esteem and mastery tend to have higher levels of pregnancy anxiety (Rini et al. 1999). Finally, women who are generally high in anxiety in their everyday lives or have anxiety disorders are more anxious in pregnancy as well.

In conclusion, pregnancy anxiety is a specific context-dependent form of anxiety characterized by concerns or worries surrounding pregnancy and childbirth. It is associated with serious birth complications and suboptimal developmental outcomes via effects on maternal physiology and fetal development. A better understanding of factors associated with the development of pregnancy anxiety may inform future interventions that prevent maternal and infant health risks. Models that explain pathways through which pregnancy anxiety influences birth and developmental outcomes are currently under investigation (Dunkel Schetter 2011).

Cross-References

- [Anxiety](#)
- [Maternal Stress](#)
- [Postpartum Depression](#)
- [Women's Health](#)

References and Further Reading

- Alderdice, F., Lynn, F., & Lobel, M. (2012). A review and psychometric evaluation of pregnancy-specific stress measures. *Journal of Psychosomatic Obstetrics and Gynecology*, 33(2), 62–77. <https://doi.org/10.3109/0167482X.2012.673040>.
- Blair, M. M., Glynn, L. M., Sandman, C. A., & Davis, E. P. (2011). Prenatal maternal anxiety and early childhood temperament. *Stress*, 14(6), 644–651. <https://doi.org/10.3109/10253890.2011.594121>.
- Buss, C., Davis, E. P., Hobel, C. J., & Sandman, C. A. (2011). Maternal pregnancy-specific anxiety is associated with child executive function at 6–9 years age. *Stress*, 14(6), 665–676. <https://doi.org/10.3109/10253890.2011.623250>.
- Campos, B., Schetter, C. D., Walsh, J. A., & Schenker, M. (2007). Sharpening the focus on acculturative change: ARSMA-II, stress, pregnancy anxiety, and infant birthweight in recently immigrated Latinas. *Hispanic Journal of Behavioral Sciences*, 29(2), 209–224. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0739986307300841>.
- Davis, E. P., & Sandman, C. A. (2012). Prenatal psychological predictors of anxiety risk in preadolescent children. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 37(8), 1224–1233. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.psyneuen.2011.12.016>.
- Dunkel Schetter, C. (2011). Psychological science on pregnancy: Stress processes, biopsychosocial models, and emerging research issues. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 62, 531–558. <https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.psych.031809.130727>.
- Guardino, C. M., & Dunkel Schetter, C. (2014). Understanding pregnancy anxiety: Concepts, correlates and consequences. *Zero to Three*, 34(4), 12–21.
- Huizink, A. C., Robles de Medina, P. G., Mulder, E. J., Visser, G. H., & Buitelaar, J. K. (2003). Stress during pregnancy is associated with developmental outcome in infancy. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, 44, 810–818. <https://doi.org/10.1111/1469-7610.00166>.
- Kramer, M. S., Lydon, J., Séguin, L., Goulet, L., Kahn, S. R., McNamara, H., ... & Platt, R. W. (2009). Stress pathways to spontaneous preterm birth: The role of stressors, psychological distress, and stress hormones. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 169(11), 1319–1326. <https://doi.org/10.1093/aje/kwp061>.
- Mancuso, R. A., Schetter, C. D., Rini, C. M., Roesch, S. C., & Hobel, C. J. (2004). Maternal prenatal anxiety and corticotropin-releasing hormone associated with timing of delivery. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 66(5), 762–769. <https://doi.org/10.1097/01.psy.0000138284.70670.d5>.
- Ramos, I. F., Guardino, C. M., Mansolf, M., Glynn, L. M., Sandman, C. A., Hobel, C. J., & Dunkel Schetter, C. (2019). Pregnancy anxiety predicts shorter gestation in Latina and non-Latina white women: The role of placental corticotrophin-releasing hormone. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 99, 166–173. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.psyneuen.2018.09.008>.
- Rini, C. K., Dunkel-Schetter, C., Wadhwa, P. D., & Sandman, C. A. (1999). Psychological adaptation and birth outcomes: The role of personal resources, stress, and sociocultural context in pregnancy. *Health Psychology*, 18(4), 333–345. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0278-6133.18.4.333>.
- Roesch, S. C., Dunkel Schetter, C., Woo, G., & Hobel, C. J. (2004). Modeling the types and timing of stress in pregnancy. *Anxiety, Stress & Coping*, 17(1), 87–102. <https://doi.org/10.1080/1061580031000123667>.

Pregnancy Complications

- [Pregnancy Outcomes: Psychosocial Aspect](#)

Pregnancy Outcomes: Psychosocial Aspect

Michele L. Okun

Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado Colorado Springs, Colorado Springs,
CO, USA

Synonyms

[Depression](#); [Pregnancy complications](#)

Definition

For most women, pregnancy is viewed as a natural and joyful event. In more than 80% of pregnancies, the delivery process is unremarkable, with no physiological or psychological complications. Indeed, the most notable changes associated with pregnancy often occur in social and partner relations, as well as changes to one's lifestyle. For instance, sleep deprivation and disturbance are the most frequently reported pregnancy-related disturbances. Pregnancy-related sleep disturbances, in turn, impact numerous facets of life including mood, cognition, social functioning, and memory (Harding 1975).

For a small percentage of women, pregnancy and delivery are complicated by a variety of adverse outcomes. Preeclampsia, intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR), or preterm delivery can significantly affect the psychological health of women. Psychosocial aspects of pregnancy outcomes range along a continuum and are multidimensional. Psychosocial functioning in association with pregnancy complications may be a function of coping strategies, social support, and the overall emotional health of the mother and father. Sociodemographic factors including parental age, socioeconomic status, and relationship quality also influence parental response to pregnancy complications. In the wake of adverse outcomes, parents may feel guilt, depression, anger, resentment, or withdrawal. Parents of infants

transferred to the neonatal intensive care unit (NICU) may experience additional psychological burden, sometimes altering relationship dynamics (Zager 2009) or mother-child bonding. Links between psychosocial factors and adverse pregnancy outcomes are currently underrecognized by health-care providers, which suggest that systematic prospective research is needed to more convincingly establish the significance of psychosocial factors and their potential for prevention.

Cross-References

► [Psychosocial Factors](#)

References and Further Reading

- Harding, M. E. (1975). Maternity. In M. E. Harding (Ed.), *The way of all women* (pp. 160–170). New York: Harper and Row.
- Lederman, R., & Weis, K. (2009). *Psychosocial adaptation to pregnancy: Seven dimensions of maternal role development* (3rd ed.). Dordrecht: Springer.
- Zager, A. (2009). Women's Medicine. The Global Library of Women's Medicine. Ref Type: Online Source.

Pregnancy Spacing

► [Family Planning](#)

Pregnancy-Related Anxiety

► [Pregnancy Anxiety](#)

Pregnancy-Specific Anxiety

► [Pregnancy Anxiety](#)

Prehypertension

Jonathan Newman

Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Description

In 2003, the seventh report of the Joint National Committee guidelines (JNC 7) proposed a classification for normal blood pressure (BP) and prehypertension based on the average of two more properly measured readings:

- Normal blood pressure: systolic < 120 mmHg and diastolic < 80 mmHg
- Prehypertension: systolic 120–139 mmHg or diastolic 80–89 mmHg

Compared to individuals with normal BP, prehypertensive individuals have a greater number of traditional cardiovascular disease (CVD) risk factors and have a greater risk of developing CVD independent of other CVD risk factors than individuals with BP < 120/80. Prehypertensive individuals also have a greater risk of developing hypertension than normotensive individuals. Therefore, prehypertension can be conceptualized as an intermediate phenotype at elevated risk of developing traditional risk factors for CVD (such as hypertension) and at independent risk of developing CVD itself.

However, the ideal surveillance and management strategies for patients with prehypertension have not been well defined. Due to the associations between prehypertension and the development of overt hypertension and CVD, in 2007, the United States Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF) recommended yearly BP screening for prehypertensive individuals and every other year screening for those with normotension. It remains unclear, however, how much of the excess CVD risk associated with prehypertension is due to the BP itself and how much is related to associated CVD risk factors: some analyses have shown that the excess CVD risk associated with prehypertension is attenuated after controlling for concomitant CVD risk factors. A more concrete

problem with the diagnosis of prehypertension, however, may be the number of people affected: a recent analysis of the US population found that 39% of adults were normotensive, 31% prehypertensive, and 29% hypertensive. This suggests only a minority of Americans have normal blood pressure and raises the question of whether prehypertension should be defined as a “disease” state.

While there is limited evidence to suggest that treatment of prehypertension may prevent the development of hypertension, JNC 7 recommends careful follow-up for the development of hypertension or signs of end-organ damage (e.g., renal dysfunction or left-ventricular hypertrophy). Without the presence of CVD or other CVD risk factors (such as diabetes), prehypertension is generally treated with nonpharmacologic therapies such as weight loss, sodium restriction, dietary modification, and exercise.

References and Readings

- Greenlund, K. J., Croft, J. B., & Mensah, G. A. (2004). Prevalence of heart disease and stroke risk factors in persons with prehypertension in the United States, 1999–2000. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 164(19), 2113–2118.
- Julius, S., Nesbitt, S. D., Egan, B. M., Weber, M. A., Michelson, E. L., Kaciroti, N., Black, H. R., Grimm, R. H., Jr., Messerli, F. H., Oparil, S., & Schork, M. A. (2006). Trial of Preventing Hypertension (TROPHY) Study Investigators. Feasibility of treating prehypertension with an angiotensin-receptor blocker. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 354(16), 1685–1697.
- U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. (2007). Screening for high blood pressure: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force reaffirmation recommendation statement. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 147(11), 783–786.
- Zhang, Y., Lee, E. T., Devereux, R. B., Yeh, J., Best, L. G., Fabsitz, R. R., & Howard, B. V. (2006). Prehypertension, diabetes, and cardiovascular disease risk in a population-based sample: The strong heart study. *Hypertension*, 47(3), 410–414.

Preimplantation Genetic Diagnosis

► [In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology](#)

Prejudice

► Stigma

Premenstrual Headache

► Migraine Headache

Pressure

► Stress

Prevalence

Linda Carroll
Department of Public Health Sciences, University
of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Synonyms

Prevalence number; Prevalence rate

Definition

Prevalence is a measure of frequency of an illness, disease, or health conditions. Unlike incidence, which reflects new occurrences or changes in health states, prevalence is concerned with already existing health conditions, regardless of whether that health condition is of recent onset or is long-standing. Thus, prevalence of a particular condition refers to the proportion of the population which has that condition at a specified time. It is usually presented as x cases per 1000 (or 10,000 or 100,000) people in the population. There are two types of prevalence: point prevalence (the type of prevalence most commonly reported) and period prevalence. Consider the example of the common cold. The “point prevalence” of the

common cold in New York City means the proportion of people in New York City with a cold at a given point in time, i.e., the number of New York City residents with a cold on a specific day divided by the total number of New York City residents on that day. It is like a “prevalence snapshot.” A 1-month “period prevalence” means the proportion of people in New York City who have had a cold at any point within the past month. It is analogous to time-lapse photography, reflecting the health state that has existed over a set period of time. A variation is lifetime prevalence or the proportion of people who have had the condition at any point during their lifetime.

Prevalence is usually measured in surveys or cross-sectional studies and reflects the burden of disease, rather than risk (incidence) of disease, which must be measured in longitudinal studies. Because prevalence is a measure of existing health conditions, it is affected by both incidence of that health state (the rate at which new cases develop) and the duration of that health state. A health condition might have a short duration because it is rapidly fatal, for example, rabies or Ebola, or because recovery is rapid, such as the case in the “24-h flu.” Prevalence of a particular health condition can increase because there is an increase in incidence (e.g., during an influenza epidemic) or because people with that health condition are living longer with that condition (e.g., treatments may have extended the lives of those who suffer from that health condition). Alternatively, more effective treatments may shorten the recovery time.

Because prevalence is affected by recovery or death, it is an unreliable estimate of disease risk. This can be illustrated in the following example. The Framingham Heart Study reported equal prevalence of coronary heart disease in men and women. This could lead to the mistaken conclusion that men and women are at equal risk of developing coronary heart disease. However, the follow-up studies demonstrated that men were at greater risk of developing coronary heart disease and also had a higher fatality rate; while women were less likely to develop heart disease, but when they did, it was also less likely to be fatal. Thus,

the prevalence in men and women was roughly equal because a lower risk was coupled with a longer duration of disease in women.

References and Readings

- Oleckno, W. A. (2002). *Essential epidemiology: Principles and applications*. Long Grove: Waveland Press.
- Rothman, K. J., Greenland, S., & Lash, T. L. (2008). *Modern epidemiology* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Szklo, M., & Nieto, F. J. (2007). *Epidemiology: Beyond the basics* (2nd ed.). Sudbury: James and Bartlett.

Prevalence Number

► [Prevalence](#)

Prevalence Rate

► [Prevalence](#)

Prevention: Primary, Secondary, Tertiary

Linda C. Baumann¹ and Alyssa Ylinen²

¹School of Nursing, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

²Allina Health System, St. Paul, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Levels of prevention](#)

Definition

The natural history of disease is the course from onset to resolution (Last 2000). The goal of epidemiology is to identify and understand causal factors of disease, disability, and injury so that

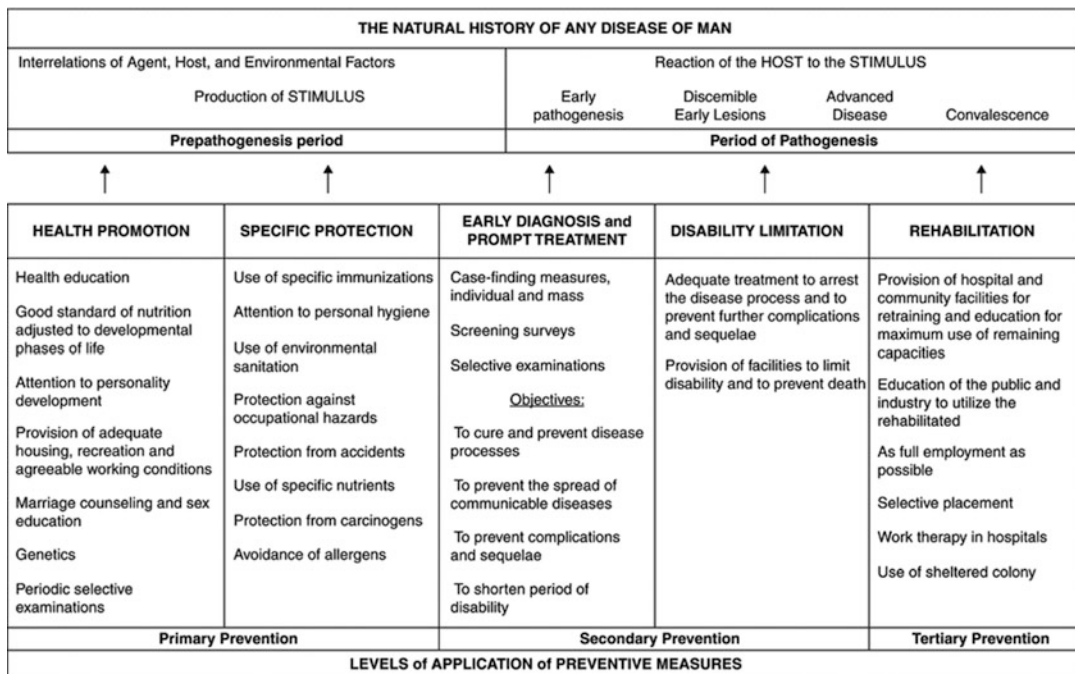
effective interventions can be implemented to prevent the occurrence of adverse processes before they begin or progress (Stanhope and Lancaster 2008). The definitions used in public health distinguish between primary prevention, secondary prevention, and tertiary prevention (Commission on Chronic Illness 1957).

Description

The term “primary prevention” refers to intervention measures to prevent the occurrence (incidence) of new disease, disability, or injury (Leavell and Clark 1965). This intervention must be implemented prepathogenesis and directed at individuals or groups at risk. Primary prevention efforts include health promotion and specific protection and are generally aimed at populations, not individuals (see Fig. 1). The application of primary prevention extends beyond medical problems and includes the prevention of other concerns that impact health and well-being, such as violence to environmental degradation. Education and public policy are major strategies for primary prevention.

Two other levels of prevention are termed secondary and tertiary prevention. Secondary prevention is a set of measures used for early detection and prompt intervention to control a problem or disease (prevalence) and minimize the consequences. Secondary prevention encompasses interventions that increase the probability that a person with a condition will have it diagnosed at a stage that treatment is likely to result in cure or reduction in the severity of a condition. Health screening is a major strategy of secondary prevention. Tertiary prevention focuses on the reduction of further complications of an existing disease, disability, or injury, through treatment and rehabilitation.

A landmark report published by the Institute of Medicine entitled *Reducing Risks for Mental Disorders* (IOM 1994) evaluated the body of research on the prevention of mental disorders. This report offered new definitions of prevention and provided recommendations on federal policies and programs. Levels of prevention across the natural



Prevention: Primary, Secondary, Tertiary, Fig. 1 Levels of application of preventive measures in the natural history of disease

disease history (Fig. 1) were defined as “prevention, treatment, and rehabilitation.” Prevention, according to the IOM report (1994), is similar to the concept of primary prevention and refers to interventions to delay or avoid the initial onset of a disorder. Further, prevention has three types: universal, selective, and indicated, to reduce new cases. Universal efforts are directed to the entire population; selective prevention is for those at significant risk of a disorder due to biological, social, or psychological risk factors; and indicated prevention is for those with a mild disorder that has the potential to become more severe if not addressed in a timely manner.

Treatment refers to the identification of individuals with a disorder and providing treatment for those disorders, which includes interventions to reduce the likelihood of future co-occurring disorders. Maintenance refers to interventions that are oriented to reduce relapse and recurrence and to provide rehabilitation. Maintenance incorporates what public health defines as some forms of secondary and all forms of tertiary prevention.

The concepts of risk and protective factors, risk reduction, and enhancement of protective factors (also referred to as fostering resilience) are central to most evidence-based prevention programs. Risk factors are those characteristics, variables, or hazards that, if present for a given individual, make it more likely that this individual, rather than someone selected at random from the general population, will develop a disorder. Protective factors improve a person’s response to an environmental hazard resulting in an adaptive outcome.

The Agency for Health Research and Quality (AHRQ) provides ongoing administrative, research, technical, and dissemination support to the US Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF) (<http://www.USPreventiveServicesTaskForce.org>). The USPSTF is an independent panel of nonfederal experts in prevention and evidence-based medicine and is composed of an interdisciplinary mix of primary care providers (physicians, nurses, and health behavior specialists). The USPSTF conducts scientific evidence reviews of a broad range of clinical preventive healthcare services (such as

screening, counseling, and preventive medications) and develops recommendations for primary care clinicians and health systems. These recommendations are published in the form of “Recommendation Statements.”

References and Further Readings

- Commission on Chronic Illness. (1957). *Chronic illness in the United States* (Vol. 1). Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.
- Institute of Medicine. (1994). *Reducing risks for mental disorders*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Last, J. M. (2000). *A dictionary of epidemiology* (4th ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Leavell, H. R., & Clark, E. G. (1965). *Preventive medicine for the doctor in his community* (3rd ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Stanhope, M., & Lancaster, J. (2008). *Public health nursing: Population-centered health care in the community* (7th ed.). St. Louis, MO: Mosby Elsevier.

Preventive Care

Shannon Idzik
University of Maryland School of Nursing,
Baltimore, MD, USA
University of Maryland Upper Chesapeake
Health Comprehensive CARE Center, Bel Air,
MD, USA

Synonyms

[Preventive healthcare](#); [Preventive medicine](#); [Prophylactic care](#)

Definition

Preventive care is the segment of health care that strives to prevent mental and physical illness. Many members of the health care team partner together to achieve proper preventive care.

Preventive care is divided into three levels of care: primary prevention, secondary prevention, and tertiary prevention.

Description

Primary preventive care is the prevention of disease in a susceptible population through health promotion, education, and protective efforts. Ensuring adequate nutrition, advising patients about skin protection from ultraviolet radiation, educating about seat belt use, promoting safe home and work environments, prescribing oral fluoride supplementation in children with fluoride-deficient water, and administering immunizations are all examples of primary preventive care.

Secondary preventive care is the prevention of disease through screening and early detection. Early recognition of disease through health care screening allows treatment to occur early in the course of the disease and may decrease complications. Examples of screening procedures that lead to the prevention of disease include fecal occult blood testing for detecting colon cancer, Pap smear for detecting early cervical cancer, routine mammography for early breast cancer, blood pressure and blood cholesterol measurement, oral examinations for early dental caries, and use of screening tools for depression.

Tertiary preventive care is the prevention of disease progression and disease sequelae after a chronic or irreversible disease diagnosis has been made. Limiting disability and promoting rehabilitation are important in tertiary prevention. Examples of tertiary prevention efforts include prescribing anticoagulating agents such as aspirin in patients who have cardiovascular disease, physical rehabilitation in patients who have suffered a stroke, and endodontic therapy in patients with severe dental decay.

Cross-References

► [Prevention: Primary, Secondary, Tertiary](#)

References and Further Readings

- Partnership for Prevention. (2016). *Clinical prevention*. Retrieved September 4, 2016 from <http://www.prevent.org/Publications-and-Resources.aspx>
- Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (PPACA). Pub. L. No. 111-148, 124 Stat. 119 (2010). Retrieved October 20, 2011 from <http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/PLAW-111publ148/pdf/PLAW-111publ148.pdf>
- Preventive Services – HealthCare.gov Glossary. (2016). *HealthCare.gov*. Retrieved September 4, 2016, from <https://www.healthcare.gov/glossary/preventive-services/>
- U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. (2016). *Recommendations*. Retrieved September 4, 2016 from <http://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/Page/Name/recommendations>

Preventive Healthcare

- [Preventive Care](#)

Preventive Medicine

- [Preventive Care](#)

Preventive Medicine Research Institute (Ornish)

Manjunath Harlapur¹ and Daichi Shimbo²

¹Center of Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Division of General Medicine, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

²Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health, Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Dean Ornish](#)

Definition

Preventive Medicine Research Institute (PMRI) is a nonprofit research institute located in Sausalito,

California, and founded by Dr. Dean Ornish. The mission of PMRI is to conduct scientific research examining the effects of diet and lifestyle choices on health outcomes.

Description

PMRI is a nonprofit research institute that is involved with scientific research studying the effects of diet and lifestyle choices on health and diseases. PMRI was founded by Dr. Dean Ornish, a leading researcher and physician advocating this type of prevention. The mission of PMRI is to conduct scientific research examining the effects of diet and lifestyle choices on health outcomes. In addition to research, another emphasis of PMRI is to educate health professionals and the lay public about the importance of preventive medicine and the benefits of lifestyle changes including diet, exercise, and stress management.

Cross-References

- [Coronary Artery Disease](#)

References and Further Reading

<http://www.pMRI.org/>

Previous Smokers

- [Ex-Smokers](#)

Pride

- [Self-esteem](#)

Primary Care

Shannon Idzik
University of Maryland School of Nursing,
Baltimore, MD, USA
University of Maryland Upper Chesapeake
Health Comprehensive CARE Center, Bel Air,
MD, USA

Synonyms

Primary health care

Definition

Primary care is a component of integrated health care in which comprehensive and accessible care is provided to a defined population. It is not disease or organ specific but rather examines a person's overall state of health and well-being. Primary care is often the first point of contact into a health system for persons with a health concern including those with acute and chronic physical, mental, and social health issues. Primary care is a longitudinal and continuous approach to health maintenance including health promotion, disease prevention, health education, and counseling and includes diagnosis, treatment, and management of acute and chronic conditions. Primary care focuses on the provision of primary, secondary, and tertiary prevention measures, such as screenings, immunizations, and prevention of disease progression or sequelae. In primary care, the patient is seen as a partner in their health and health decisions. The primary care provider partners with the patient to coordinate other health services which includes collaboration with and referral to other members of the health-care team. Continuity in primary care is essential to develop and establish a patient-provider relationship. Primary care is not setting specific and can be provided across a continuum of health settings such as the patient's private residence, provider office, hospital, or long-term care facility.

Cross-References

- [Clinical Settings](#)
- [Family Practice/Medicine](#)
- [Primary Care](#)
- [Primary Care Physicians](#)
- [Primary Care Provider](#)

References and Further Reading

- American Academy of Family Physicians. (2016). Primary care. Retrieved from <http://www.aafp.org/online/en/home/policy/policies/p/primarycare.html#Parsys0002>. Accessed 4 Sept 2016.
- Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (PPACA), Pub. L. No. 111–148, 124 Stat. 119. (2010). Retrieved from <http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/PLAW-111publ148/pdf/PLAW-111publ148.pdf>. Accessed 4 Sept 2016.
- Primary Care – HealthCare.gov Glossary. (2016). *HealthCare.gov*. Retrieved September 4, 2016, from <https://www.healthcare.gov/glossary/primary-care/>

Primary Care Nurse Practitioner

- [Primary Care Providers](#)

Primary Care Physicians

Steven Gambert
Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
University of Maryland, Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Family physician](#); [General internist](#); [PCP](#); [PMD](#);
[Primary care provider](#); [Primary medical doctor](#)

Definition

A primary care physician is the physician who provides primary care, the physician selected to be the first doctor contacted for any medical condition. The physician acts as the patient's

“gatekeeper,” providing ongoing medical care, preventive services, medical counseling, and referrals to specialists as needed. Examples of physicians who may be considered to be primary care physicians include family medicine physicians, internal medicine physicians, OB/GYN physicians, pediatricians, and at times emergency medicine physicians. The number of primary care physicians has been declining in recent years with more physicians seeking careers as subspecialists or pursuing specialty care with financial rewards and increasing demands on time being major reasons for this change (Bodenheimer 2006).

Cross-References

- [Primary Care Providers](#)

References and Readings

Bodenheimer, T. (2006). Primary care – will it survive? *New England Journal of Medicine*, 355(9), 861–864.

Primary Care Provider

- [Primary Care Physicians](#)
- [Primary Care Providers](#)

Primary Care Providers

Shannon Idzik
University of Maryland School of Nursing,
Baltimore, MD, USA
University of Maryland Upper Chesapeake
Health Comprehensive CARE Center, Bel Air,
MD, USA

Synonyms

Family nurse practitioner: Family physician;
General internist; General practitioner (GP);

[Internist](#); [Primary care nurse practitioner](#); [Primary care provider](#); [Primary medical doctor](#)

Definition

Primary care providers are generalist clinicians who provide integrated accessible health care to a defined population. Nurse practitioners, physicians, and physicians’ assistants who provide primary care are specially trained to provide primary care services. The primary care provider develops a sustained relationship with the patient and oversees all aspects of the patient’s health. The primary care provider partners with the patient to coordinate other health services which include collaboration with and referral to other members of the health-care team. Primary care providers are advocates for the patient throughout the entire health-care system.

Cross-References

- [Primary Care](#)
- [Primary Care Physicians](#)
- [Primary Care Provider](#)

References and Further Readings

- American Academy of Family Physicians. (2016). *Primary care*. Retrieved 4 Sept 2016, from <http://www.aafp.org/online/en/home/policy/policies/p/primarycare.html#Parsys0002>
- Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (PPACA), Pub. L. No. 111-148, 124 Stat. 119. (2010). Retrieved 4 Sept 2016, from <http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/pkg/PLAW-111publ148/pdf/PLAW-111publ148.pdf>
- Primary Care Provider – HealthCare.gov Glossary. (2016). *HealthCare.gov*. Retrieved 4 Sept 2016, from <https://www.healthcare.gov/glossary/primary-care-provider/>

Primary Health Care

- [Primary Care](#)

Primary Medical Doctor

- ▶ [Primary Care Physicians](#)
- ▶ [Primary Care Providers](#)

Primary Raynaud's Phenomenon

- ▶ [Raynaud's Disease and Stress](#)
- ▶ [Raynaud's Disease: Behavioral Treatment](#)

Principle of Equipoise

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Clinical equipoise](#); [Equipoise](#)

Definition

Clinical equipoise exists when all of the available evidence about a new intervention/treatment does not show that it is more beneficial than an alternative and, equally, does not show that it is less beneficial than the alternative. For example, to be able to conduct a clinical trial that involves administering an investigational treatment that may confer therapeutic benefit to subjects for whom such benefit is desirable to some individuals, and to administer a control intervention treatment that is not capable of conferring therapeutic benefit to others, there cannot be any evidence that suggests that the investigational intervention shows greater efficacy than the control treatment or that it leads to greater side effects than the control treatment.

When individuals agree to participate in a clinical study, they do so with the understanding that all of the treatments are assumed to be of equal value. By the end of the trial, there may be compelling

evidence that the investigational intervention is acceptably safe and statistically significantly more effective than the control intervention, but the study must be started with a good faith belief that the two treatments are of equal merit.

Treating subjects in clinical studies (trials) in an ethical manner is of paramount importance. Clinical equipoise is a cornerstone of such ethical conduct. Other fundamental ethical principles include respect for persons, beneficence, and justice (see Turner 2010).

Derenzo and Moss (2006) commented as follows:

Each study component has an ethical aspect. The ethical aspects of a clinical trial cannot be separated from the scientific objectives. Segregation of ethical issues from the full range of study design components demonstrates a flaw in understanding the fundamental nature of research involving human subjects. Compartmentalization of ethical issues is inconsistent with a well-run trial. Ethical and scientific considerations are intertwined.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Clinical Trial](#)
- ▶ [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)

References and Further Readings

- Derenzo, E., & Moss, J. (2006). *Writing clinical research protocols: Ethical considerations*. San Diego: Elsevier.
- Turner, J. R. (2010). *New drug development: An introduction to clinical trials*. New York: Springer.

Privacy

- ▶ [Confidentiality](#)

Proactive Aging

- ▶ [Positive Aging](#)

Probability

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

In situations where certainty is not possible, it can be helpful to assess how likely it is that something will occur. Quantification of this likelihood is particularly helpful in statistical analysis. The concept of probability is used in everyday language, but more loosely than in statistics. The statement “I’ll probably be there on Saturday” involves a probabilistic statement, but there is no precise degree of quantification. If you know the individual making this statement, past experience may lead you to an informed judgment concerning the relative meaning of probably, but this is still a subjective judgment, not a quantitative statement.

In statistics, a probability is a numerical quantity between zero (represented here as 0.00) and one (1.00) that expresses the likely occurrence of a future event. Past events cannot be associated with a probability of occurrence, since it is known in absolute terms whether they occurred or not. A probability of zero denotes that the event will not (cannot) occur. A probability of one denotes certainty that the event will occur. Any numerical value between zero and one expresses a relative likelihood of an event occurring. Additionally, the decimal expression of a probability value can be multiplied by 100 to create a percentage statement of likelihood. A probability of 0.50 would thus be expressed as a 50% chance that an event would occur. Similarly, and more relevantly to inferential hypothesis testing, probabilities of 0.05 and 0.01 would be expressed as a 5% chance and a 1% chance, respectively, that an event would occur.

Cross-References

- [Hypothesis Testing](#)
- [Statistics](#)

Problem Drinking

- [Binge Drinking](#)

Problem Solving

Seth A. Margolis¹, Patricia Osborne¹ and
Jeffrey S. Gonzalez²

¹Clinical Psychology, Health Emphasis, Ferkauf
Graduate School of Psychology, Yeshiva
University, Bronx, NY, USA

²Departments of Medicine and Epidemiology &
Public Health, Albert Einstein College of
Medicine, Bronx, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Problem-solving skills training \(PSST\)](#); [Problem-Solving Therapy – Primary Care \(PST-PC\)](#); [Problem-Solving Therapy – SO \(PST-SO\)](#); [Social Problem-Solving Therapy \(SPST\)](#)

Definition

Problem-solving therapy (PST) is a brief, empirically supported, cognitive-behavioral intervention aimed at training clients to identify, evaluate, and resolve everyday problems through the methodical application of problem-solving skills. In addition to teaching specific coping skills, PST emphasizes the importance of maintaining a positive *problem-solving orientation* and a rational *problem-solving style* (D’Zurilla and Nezu 2010).

An individual’s *problem-solving orientation* encompasses how one perceives problems, to what/whom they attribute these problems, how they appraise problematic situations, and the degree to which they view their problems as under their control. A major goal of PST is to help clients view problems as solvable challenges instead of insurmountable impasses.

A person’s *problem-solving style* addresses the characteristic way in which he or she attempts to

manage problems in living. PST advocates a rational approach. This form of problem solving is taught through the use of four essential skills: defining the problem in precise and objective terms (i.e., problem definition and formulation), brainstorming potential solutions (i.e., generation of alternatives), weighing the pros and cons of each alternative and creating a plan of action (i.e., decision making), and implementing the most appropriate solution and evaluating the outcome (i.e., implementation and verification). In combination, these skills are meant to help individuals manage their problems in an organized and systematic manner.

Problem solving serves a critical function in the successful management of chronic medical conditions. PST has, therefore, been adapted for individuals affected by cancer, obesity, diabetes, cardiovascular disease, traumatic brain injury, stroke, as well as older adults, caregivers, and to promote treatment adherence.

PST has been successfully delivered in individual, group, and family formats by psychologists, psychiatrists, social workers, nurses, and graduate-level trainees. Most forms of PST are manual based and all make use of homework assignments. PST therapists tend to balance directive and collaborative treatment styles.

PST interventions have been implemented in primary care settings (Catalan et al. 1991; Mynors-Wallis and Gath 1997; Oxman et al. 2008; Areán et al. 2010), via telephone and in the home (Grant et al. 2002), within community clinics and online (Wade et al. 2005, 2008).

Even though PST has been provided as both a stand-alone treatment and as a component of multifaceted interventions, more research is needed to adequately compare the two. Although some studies have addressed PST's applicability to minority groups (Sahler et al. 2005) and different age ranges (Areán et al. 2010), supplementary research is needed in these areas. Finally, given the evidence that PST can be a successful intervention for behavioral medicine settings, it would behoove future investigators to attempt to extend findings to other chronic health conditions.

Cross-References

- [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- [Stroop Color-Word Test](#)

References and Readings

- Allen, S. M., Shah, A. C., Nezu, A. M., Ciambrone, D., Hogan, J., & Mor, V. (2002). A problem-solving approach to stress reduction among younger women with breast carcinoma: A randomized controlled trial. *Cancer, 94*(12), 3089–3100.
- Areán, P. A., Perri, M. G., Nezu, A. M., Schein, R. L., Christopher, F., & Joseph, T. X. (1993). Comparative effectiveness of social problem-solving therapy and reminiscence therapy as treatments for depression in older adults. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 61*(6), 1003–1010.
- Areán, P. A., Raue, P., Mackin, R. S., Kanellopoulos, D., McCulloch, C., & Alexopoulos, G. S. (2010). Problem-solving therapy and supportive therapy in older adults with major depression and executive dysfunction. *American Journal of Psychiatry, 167*, 1391–1398.
- Catalan, J., Gath, D. H., Anastasiades, P., Bond, S. A., Day, A., & Hall, L. (1991). Evaluation of a brief psychological treatment for emotional disorders in primary care. *Psychological Medicine, 21*(4), 1012–1018.
- Chang, E. C., D'Zurilla, T. J., & Sanna, L. J. (Eds.). (2004). *Social problem solving: Theory, research, and training*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- D'Zurilla, T. J., & Nezu, A. M. (2010). Problem-solving therapy. In K. S. Dobson (Ed.), *Handbook of cognitive-behavioral therapies* (3rd ed., pp. 197–225). New York: Guilford Press.
- Grant, J. S., Elliott, T. R., Weaver, M., Bartolucci, A. A., & Ginger, J. N. (2002). Telephone intervention with family caregivers of stroke survivors after rehabilitation. *Stroke, 33*(8), 2060–2065.
- Hegel, M. T., Barrett, J. E., & Oxman, T. E. (2000). Training therapists in problem-solving treatment of depressive disorders in primary care: Lessons learned from the "treatment effectiveness project". *Families, Systems & Health, 18*, 423–435.
- Houts, P. S., Nezu, A. M., Nezu, C. M., & Bucher, J. A. (1996). The prepared family caregiver: A problem-solving approach to family caregiver education. *Patient Education and Counseling, 27*, 63–73.
- Mynors-Wallis, L., & Gath, D. (1997). Predictors of treatment outcome for major depression in primary care. *Psychological Medicine, 27*(3), 731–736.
- Nezu, A. M., Nezu, C. M., Felgoise, S. H., McClure, K. S., & Hots, P. S. (2003). Project genesis: Assessing the efficacy of problem-solving therapy for distressed adult cancer patients. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 71*(6), 1036–1048.

- Nezu, A. M., Nezu, C. M., & D’Zurilla, T. J. (2010). Problem-solving therapy. In N. Kazantzis, M. S. Reinecke, & A. Freeman (Eds.), *Cognitive and behavioral theories in practice* (pp. 76–114). New York: Guilford Press.
- Oxman, T. E., Hegel, M. T., Hull, J. G., & Dietrich, A. J. (2008). Problem-solving treatment and coping styles in primary care for minor depression. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 76*(6), 933–943.
- Perri, M. G., Nezu, A. M., McKelvey, W. F., Shermer, R. L., Renjilian, D. A., & Viegner, B. J. (2001). Individual versus group therapy for obesity: Effects of matching participants to their treatment preferences. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 69*(4), 722–726.
- Sahler, O. J., Fairclough, D. L., Phipps, S., Mulhern, R. K., Dolgin, M. J., Noll, R. B., et al. (2005). Using problem-solving skills training to reduce negative affectivity in mothers of children with newly diagnosed cancer: Report of a multisite randomized trial. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 73*(2), 272–283.
- Wade, S. L., Wolfe, C., Brown, T. M., & Pestian, J. P. (2005). Putting the pieces together: Preliminary efficacy of a web-based family intervention for children with traumatic brain injury. *Journal of Pediatric Psychology, 30*(5), 437–442.
- Wade, S. L., Walz, N. C., Carey, J. C., & William, K. M. (2008). Preliminary efficacy of a web-based family problem-solving treatment program for adolescents with traumatic brain injury. *Journal of Head Trauma Rehabilitation, 23*(6), 369–377.

Problem-Focused Coping

Linda Carroll

Department of Public Health Sciences, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Synonyms

[Active coping](#)

Definition

Coping refers to the intentional efforts we engage in to minimize the physical, psychological, or social harm of an event or situation. There are many different frameworks for understanding coping and many different ways of classifying coping strategies, but one such classification is problem-focused coping vs. emotion-focused

coping. Problem-focused coping is that kind of coping aimed at resolving the stressful situation or event or altering the source of the stress. Coping strategies that can be considered to be problem-focused include (but are not limited to) taking control of the stress (e.g., problem solving or removing the source of the stress), seeking information or assistance in handling the situation, and removing oneself from the stressful situation.

Problem-focused coping is distinguished from emotion-focused coping, which is aimed at managing the emotions associated with the situation, rather than changing the situation itself. For example, when anxious about an upcoming exam, use of problem-focused coping strategies might involve checking with the teacher about material one is unsure of, or increasing the time spent studying, or even deciding not to take the exam (although removing oneself from the stressor might have other negative consequences in this particular example). In contrast, emotion-focused coping strategies might involve self-talk to increase one’s confidence in one’s test taking ability or using relaxation techniques to decrease fear and anxiety. Problem-focused coping works best when the source of the stress is potentially under an individual’s control; however, when the source of the stress is beyond the individual’s control, such strategies are not usually helpful. Examples are dealing with bereavement. In situations like this, problem-focused coping is less likely to be helpful than emotion-focused coping, for example, processing one’s feelings or releasing one’s feelings. Problem- and emotion-focused coping are not mutually exclusive, and individuals frequently use both problem- and emotion-focused coping strategies to deal with stress. For example, when feeling threatened, initial use of emotion-focused coping to gain control over the fear can facilitate the subsequent use of problem-focused coping. Problem- and emotion-focused coping are the two subscales that comprise the Ways of Coping Checklist.

Cross-References

- [Active Coping](#)
- [Coping](#)

References and Readings

- Field, T., McCabe, P. M., & Schneiderman, N. (1985). *Stress and coping*. Hillsdale: Erlbaum.
- Lazarus, R. S. (1999). *Stress and emotion: A new synthesis*. New York: Springer.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Moos, R. H. (1986). *Coping with life crises: An integrated approach*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Zeidner, M., & Endler, N. S. (1996). *Handbook of coping: Theory, research, applications*. New York: Wiley.

Problem-Solving Skills Training (PSST)

► Problem Solving

Problem-Solving Therapy – Primary Care (PST-PC)

► Problem Solving

Problem-Solving Therapy – SO (PST-SO)

► Problem Solving

Productive Aging

► Positive Aging

Productivity

► Job Performance

Progress

► Aging

Promotoras

P. H. Amelie Ramirez¹ and Barbara Turner²

¹Department of Epidemiology and Biostatistics, The University of Texas Health Science Center at San Antonio, San Antonio, TX, USA

²The University of Texas Health Science Center at San Antonio, San Antonio, TX, USA

Synonyms

Community health advisors; Community health representatives; Community health workers (CHW); Health navigators; Lay health advisors; Lay health advocates; Outreach educators; Peer coaches; Peer health educators; Peer health promoters

Definition

Promotoras (or *promotoras de salud*) are female community health workers who provide a variety of services in their role as liaison between underserved Hispanics and traditional health care services. Their male counterparts are *promotores*, although it is less common to have men serve in this role. These terms translate to “promoters” of health, in this case among Hispanics who have historically experienced challenges accessing health care services and deficiencies in outcomes of care. These individuals are either volunteers or employees of the local health care system or other entities administering community interventions. They typically live in the community or neighborhood that they serve and thus can better communicate and relate to their clients because of their shared community experiences.

Description

Essentially, the *promotora* concept is a form of community-based peer support: nonprofessionals helping others with various health needs. These needs include: culturally appropriate education, informal advice and counsel, social support and encouragement, interpretation and translation, advocacy for health needs, disease management and prevention, health care system navigation, and community resource guidance. Depending upon the community health priorities and the specific goals and objectives of particular programs, *promotoras* may provide one or a combination of these services.

Historically, *promotoras* are part of a long tradition of lay health workers who serve critical health care and disease prevention roles in cultures around the world. For example, in eighteenth century Russia, *feldshers* began providing medical assistance in urban hospitals and the army. In China, during the 1960s, farmworkers were trained as “barefoot doctors” to give first aid, immunizations, and health education in rural areas. In Haiti, village health workers known as *accompagnateurs* attended individuals suffering from tuberculosis and HIV/AIDS. In Africa, health care workers provide the main form of health care delivery and especially have served as the linchpin for HIV prevention and treatment. Origins of the *promotoras* can also be found in Latin American countries, where laymen and laywomen were trained by church groups and other organizations to give community health assistance.

Efforts to establish formal community health worker programs in this country can be traced back over a half-century. Such outreach was subsequently included in the federal Migrant Health Act of 1962 and the Economic Opportunity Act of 1964, mandating utilization of community health aides in many neighborhoods and migrant worker camps (Hill et al. 1996). The Affordable Care Act of 2010 provided a more recent endorsement of the concept, specifying community health workers as an integral component of the nation’s health care workforce (Affordable Care Act of 2010). With the rise in health care costs in recent

times and increased awareness of the scope and cost of health disparities in this country, the peer-support approach has gained increasing support as a viable and potentially cost-effective means of helping fill gaps in the health care system. However, the evidence so far is conflicting and comes from less than optimally designed studies.

In the USA today, the nomenclature for peer health promotion personnel is diverse, including: community health workers (CHW), community health advisors, lay health advisors, lay health advocates, peer coaches, outreach educators, health navigators, peer health promoters, peer health educators, community health representatives, and, in Hispanic communities, *promotoras*. Often, some of these terms, including CHW and *promotoras*, are used interchangeably or in combination.

Surveys have found that these community health workers operate in all 50 states (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Health Resources and Services Administration 2007). Programs utilizing *promotoras* have flourished especially in states with large Hispanic populations such as California and along the USA-Mexico border. In 2009, Hispanics represented 16% of the US population (U.S. Census Bureau News 2010) and this proportion is expected to rise dramatically in the coming decades. With the growing number of Hispanics, the peer-assistance concept has been incorporated into health programs and interventions across the country. This model has been evaluated in large cities, mid-size and smaller communities, as well as agricultural areas (working with farmworkers and their families), with favorable results in many studies.

Promotora involvement has been found to be useful in a broad range of needs, such as management of diabetes and other health conditions prevalent among Hispanics, screening for cancer and other diseases, and access to health care overall. They also can focus on addressing specific needs such as prenatal care, or healthy lifestyle behaviors in general (e.g., proper diet and exercise). In addition to working with diabetes and cancer patients, survivors, and at-risk individuals, *promotoras*/CHW have been involved in interventions targeting cardiovascular disease,

HIV/AIDS, high blood pressure, asthma, mental illness, and other diseases.

Firsthand knowledge of the local Hispanic community and the personal and institutional barriers that residents of the community face in attaining adequate health care uniquely prepares *promotoras* for their liaison role. As Spanish speakers and residents of the neighborhoods they serve, *promotoras* offer assistance to reduce or remove linguistic and cultural barriers for segments of the population that have historically been difficult to reach for local health care agencies and services. At the same time, *promotoras* can provide assistance to professional health care personnel by educating providers and their staff about sociocultural factors that influence the health knowledge, beliefs, and attitudes, as well as the values and behaviors, of their Hispanic patients.

Among the strengths of the *promotora*/CHW models employed in various community health programs is the broad diversity of services peer health workers have been able to deliver. For example, as liaisons between health providers and underserved Hispanics, *promotoras* sometimes serve as interpreters as well as health system navigators, assisting in identification of benefits that clients are eligible to receive, and helping them complete necessary applications and forms. As case managers, *promotoras* typically facilitate contacts of health care providers with community members by maintaining accurate contact information and a record of interactions. As community organizers, *promotoras* have been called upon to motivate and encourage members of the community to participate actively in efforts to improve neighborhood living conditions. And as health educators, *promotoras* distribute and explain print and other informative materials aimed at promoting screening, preventing disease, discouraging smoking, managing chronic diseases, and other health promotion purposes. In addition, interventions have utilized *promotoras* in various other roles, including as group presentation leaders; role models; and guides to community social, transportation, childcare, and other services and resources.

Promotoras are typically respected and trusted members of the community they serve. Due to their familiarity with their community and neighborhood, *promotoras* can move freely within the community and engage with various sectors. They provide their services in convenient locations, including homes, schools, churches, clinics, hospitals, community centers, job sites, and other locales. In many programs, they also participate in community events, such as health fairs.

In the past, *promotoras* and other community health workers have typically been trained on the job. With the increased utilization of peer-support models over the years, concerns about the quality of this training and the need for more standard certification of these workers have been increasingly raised. However, as of 2010, only a handful of states had taken steps to address these issues. In 1999, Texas was the first state to legislate voluntary training and certification for *promotoras* and community health workers (Nichols et al. 2005). In Minnesota, select community colleges offer a standardized curriculum for community health worker certification, with completion required for a worker to be eligible as a Medicaid provider (Rosenthal et al. 2010). In numerous states, certificates are being awarded, typically by community colleges and other programs, for completion of a course of community health worker studies. Proponents of required certification or credentialing note potential benefits, including offering assurance that workers possess basic competencies and promoting perceived legitimacy within health/human services fields. Others, however, contend that requiring certification may have a detrimental effect on the number of peer health workers from poor, minority neighborhoods and communities that most need to be served (Family Strengthening Policy Center 2006).

From the substantial experience with *promotora*/CHW program implementation and research, the evidence is growing that peer support offers unique benefits to improve health care delivery and outcomes. This is particularly relevant, given rapidly expanding lower-socio economic status (SES) racial/ethnic segments of the population (particularly Hispanics), growing

numbers of patients with chronic diseases, and spiraling health care costs. Systematic reviews of the benefit of peer support currently find that the evidence lacks sufficient rigor. Consequently, much more research needs to be conducted to define roles and scope of activities, determine effectiveness, develop consistent and adequate training, provide fair compensation, and, via certification and/or similar means, define a universally accepted and respected niche for *promotoras* among the nation's health care workforce.

Cross-References

- Health Disparities
- Health Education
- Health Literacy

References and Readings

- Balcasar, H. G., Byrd, T. L., Ortiz, M., Tondapu, S. R., & Chavez, M. (2009). A randomized community intervention to improve hypertension control among Mexican Americans: Using the *promotoras de salud* community outreach model. *Journal of Health Care for the Poor and Underserved*, 20(4), 1079–1094.
- Boothroyd, R. I., & Fisher, E. B. (2010). Peers for progress: Promoting peer support for health around the world. *Family Practice*, 27(Suppl. 1), i62–i68.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2011). Community health workers/*Promotores de Salud*: Critical connections in communities. Accessed online from <http://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/projects/comm.htm>
- Doull, M., O'Connor, A. M., Welch, V., Tugwell, P., Wells, G. A. (2008). Peer support strategies for improving the health and well-being of individuals with chronic diseases (Protocol). Copyright © 2008 The Cochrane Collaboration. Published by Wiley.
- Family Strengthening Policy Center. (2006). *Community health workers: Closing gaps in families' health resources* (Policy Brief No. 14). Accessed online from <http://www.nydic.org/fspc/practice/documents/Brief14.pdf>
- Hill, M. N., Bone, L. R., & Butz, A. M. (1996). Enhancing the role of community health workers in research. *Image*, 28, 221–226.
- Kumar, P. (2007). Providing the providers – Remedying Africa's shortage of health care workers. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 356, 2564–2567.
- Nichols, D. C., Berrios, C., & Samar, H. (2005). Texas' community health workforce: from state health promotion policy to community-level practice. *Preventing Chronic Disease*, 2(Special Issue), A13. Published online 2005 October 15.
- O'Brien, M. J., Halbert, C. H., Bixby, R., Pimentel, S., & Shea, J. A. (2010). Community health worker intervention to decrease cervical cancer disparities in Hispanic women. *Journal of General Internal Medicine*, 25(11), 1186–1192. Epub 2010 July 7.
- Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, PL111-148, § 5101, 5102, 5313, 5403, and 3509 (2010).
- Rosenthal, E. L., Brownstein, J. N., Rush, C. H., Hirsch, G. R., Willaert, A. M., Scott, J. R., et al. (2010). Community health workers: Part of the solution. *Health Affairs*, 29(7), 1338–1342.
- U.S. Census Bureau News, U.S. Department of Commerce. (2010, July 15). Facts for Features CB10-FF.17. Accessed online from http://www.census.gov/newsroom/releases/pdf/cb10ff-17_hispanic.pdf
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Health Resources and Services Administration. (2007, March). Community health workers national workforce study. Accessed online from <http://bhpr.hrsa.gov/healthworkforce/chw/default.htm#preface>
- Vargas, R. B., & Cunningham, W. E. (2006). Evolving trends in medical care-coordination for patients with HIV and AIDS. *Current HIV/AIDS Reports*, 3(4), 149–153.
- Viswanathan, M., Kraschnewski, J., Nishikawa, B., Morgan, L. C., Thieda, P., Honeycutt, A., et al. (2009). *Outcomes of community health worker interventions* (Evidence Report/Technology Assessment No. 181, Prepared by the RTI International-University of North Carolina Evidence-based Practice Center under Contract No. 290 2007 10056 I, AHRQ Publication No. 09-E014). Rockville, MD: Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality.

Prophylactic Care

- Preventive Care

Prophylactic Use

- Condom Use

Prospective Study

- Follow-Up Study

Prostate

Marc A. Kowalkowski^{1,2}, Heather Honoré Goltz^{1,2}, Stacey L. Hart³ and David Latini⁴

¹HSR&D Center of Excellence, Michael E. DeBaakey VA Medical Center (MEDVAMC 152), Houston, TX, USA

²Department of Social Sciences, University of Houston-Downtown, Houston, TX, USA

³Department of Psychology, Ryerson University, Toronto, ON, Canada

⁴Scott Department of Urology, Baylor College of Medicine, Houston, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Prostate gland](#)

Definition

Prostate Anatomy

The prostate is a walnut-sized gland that functions in the male reproductive system. It is positioned in front of the rectum and directly below the bladder, which stores urine. The prostate also encircles the proximal urethra, the canal which carries urine from the bladder and through the penis.

Three distinct zones of glandular tissue make up the prostate: the peripheral zone, central zone, and transition zone. Additionally, there is an area of fibromuscular tissue on the anterior surface. Each anatomic zone is uniquely affected by different disease processes. The majority of prostate cancers develop in the peripheral zone, the largest zone by volume, while benign prostatic hyperplasia originates in the transition zone.

Description

Prostate Function

The prostate produces the thick, milky-white alkaline fluid that forms part of semen. The fluid

provides nourishment to sperm and, along with fluid from the bulbourethral (Cowper's) glands, helps to neutralize the acidity of the urine residue in the male urethra and of the female vaginal canal, increasing the life span of sperm. During ejaculation, contraction of smooth muscles moves the fluid from the prostate into the urethral tract where it mixes with the sperm produced by the testicles and additional fluid from the bulbourethral glands and seminal vesicles. The resulting mixture, semen, passes from the urethra and out through the penis.

Common Disorders of the Prostate

There are three common conditions of the prostate: prostatitis, benign prostatic hyperplasia, and prostate cancer. Generally, older men are more susceptible to prostate disease. However, prostatitis can affect men at any age. Prostatitis is a benign infection of prostatic tissue, usually caused by bacteria. Inflammation can result in urine retention in the bladder, resulting in bladder distention (i.e., enlargement) and exposing the bladder to additional risk for infection. Additionally, prostatitis can trigger several urinary problems (e.g., pain or burning upon urination, urgency, and trouble voiding). Benign prostatic hyperplasia, or BPH, is another common prostatic condition caused by the noncancerous enlargement of the prostate gland in aging men. As the prostate enlarges, it compresses the urethra and irritates the bladder. Obstruction of the urethra, as well as gradually diminishing bladder function, results in the symptoms of BPH including dribbling after urination or a need to urinate often, especially at night. Some men also experience urinary incontinence, the involuntary discharge of urine. BPH symptoms can severely affect a man's, as well as his partner's, quality of life and can be further compounded by psychological factors (e.g., depression and anxiety) associated with BPH symptoms. Prostate cancer is the most common malignancy and the second most common cause of cancer death among men in the United States. Response to treatment is best when the disease is caught early. However, prostate cancer is generally asymptomatic when the disease is

localized to the prostate. Screening for prostate cancer includes serum prostate-specific antigen (PSA) testing and digital rectal examination. There are many treatment options available to men diagnosed with prostate cancer (e.g., active surveillance, radiotherapy, and surgery). However, there is currently no consensus regarding the optimal treatment.

Cross-References

► [Prostate-Specific Antigen \(PSA\)](#)

References and Readings

- Gacci, M., Bartoletti, R., Figlioli, S., Sarti, E., Eisner, B., Boddi, V., et al. (2003). Urinary symptoms, quality of life and sexual function in patients with benign prostatic hypertrophy before and after prostatectomy: A prospective study. *British Journal of Urology International*, 91, 196.
- Mitropoulos, D., Anastasiou, I., Giannopoulou, C., Nikolopoulos, P., Alamanis, Z., & Dimopoulos, C. (2002). Symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia: Impact on partners' quality of life. *European Urology*, 41, 240–245.
- Ramakrishnan, K., & Salinas, R. C. (2010). Prostatitis: Acute and chronic. *Primary Care*, 37, 547–563, vii–ix.
- Tanagho, E. A., & McAninch, J. W. (Eds.). (2008). *Smith's general urology* (17th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Wein, A. J., Coyne, K. S., Tubaro, A., Sexton, C. C., Kopp, Z. S., & Aiyer, L. P. (2009). The impact of lower urinary tract symptoms on male sexual health: EpiLUTS. *British Journal of Urology International*, 103(Suppl. 3), 33–41.

Prostate Gland

► [Prostate](#)

Prostatectomy

► [Radical Prostatectomy, Psychological Impact](#)

Prostate-Specific Antigen (PSA)

Marc A. Kowalkowski^{1,2}, Heather Honoré Goltz^{1,2}, Stacey L. Hart³ and David Latini⁴

¹HSR&D Center of Excellence, Michael E. DeBakey VA Medical Center (MEDVAMC 152), Houston, TX, USA

²Department of Social Sciences, University of Houston-Downtown, Houston, TX, USA

³Department of Psychology, Ryerson University, Toronto, ON, Canada

⁴Scott Department of Urology, Baylor College of Medicine, Houston, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Kallikrein-3](#); [P-30 antigen](#); [Semenogelase](#); [Seminin](#)

Definition

Prostate-specific antigen (PSA) is a protein produced by cells of the prostate gland. PSA functions in male fertility, and most of it gets expelled from the body in semen. However, low levels circulate in the blood. Elevated serum PSA levels often indicate the presence of prostate cancer and other prostate disorders.

Description

Measuring PSA

The PSA screening test measures the total level of PSA circulating in the blood serum. PSA levels above 4 ng per milliliter are considered above normal. However, total PSA does not offer a definitive diagnosis for cancer or other prostate disease. Therefore, additional measures of PSA have been integrated to depict a more comprehensive profile of prostate disease characteristics. For example, PSA velocity measures the rate of increase in PSA over time. Generally, larger PSA velocity is associated with prostate cancer. Free

PSA is the percentage of circulating PSA that is not bound to other proteins. On average, men with a low percentage of free PSA are more likely to have cancer. PSA density is the PSA level divided by prostate volume. The likelihood of cancer is increased when PSA density is high.

PSA Testing and Current Guidelines

PSA testing has become increasingly popular because it allows detection of prostate cancer at early stages, before palpable detection during digital rectal examination. However, PSA testing also presents a high rate of false-positive and false-negative results, which has generated substantial controversy with regard to whether or not PSA screening is effective at reducing cancer deaths. Two large, randomized clinical trials are currently evaluating the efficacy of PSA screening. Preliminary findings indicate modest reductions in cancer deaths in the screening group but also note over-detection and potential overtreatment of clinically insignificant cancers in the same group. Accounting for these complex issues, the American Cancer Society (ACS) has revised its recommendations regarding routine PSA screening. The revised guidelines now recommend that doctors initiate comprehensive discussions with patients about their options for screening and that men use decision-making tools to make an informed choice about testing. The ACS suggests these guidelines are appropriate for patients over age 50 who are in good health with greater than 10 years of life expectancy. For men at higher risk (e.g., African American men and men with a positive family history), ACS guidelines suggest that discussions about screening begin earlier. The ACS does not endorse screening for men with several comorbid conditions or for men with less than 10 years of life expectancy. In response to the preliminary findings from the previously mentioned studies, the American Urological Association (AUA) also revised its screening recommendations, which suggest extending screening to younger men. The AUA advises that PSA screening should be offered to well-informed men aged 40 years or older who have a life expectancy of at least 10 years. Additionally, AUA guidelines emphasize a shift away from

using a single PSA threshold to determine whether to proceed to additional diagnostics. Instead, the combination of many factors (e.g., PSA profile over time, family history, race, age) should be considered.

References and Readings

- American Cancer Society. (2010). *Cancer facts and figures 2010*. Atlanta, GA: Author.
- American Urological Association. (2009). *Prostate-specific antigen best practice statement: 2009 Update*. Washington, DC: American Urological Association Education and Research.
- Andriole, G. L., Grubb, R. L., Buys, S. S., Crawford, E. D., Chia, D., Church, T. R., et al. (2009). Mortality results from a randomized prostate-cancer screening trial. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 360, 1310–1319.
- Carroll, P. R., Whitson, J. M., & Cooperberg, M. R. (2010). Serum prostate-specific antigen for the early detection of prostate cancer: Always, never, or only sometimes? *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 28, 1–3.
- Jacobsen, S. J., Katusic, S. K., Bergstralh, E. J., Oesterling, J. E., Ohrt, D., Klee, G. G., et al. (1995). Incidence of prostate cancer diagnosis in the eras before and after serum prostate-specific antigen testing. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 274, 1445–1449.
- Schroder, F. H., Hugosson, J., Roobol, M. J., Tammela, T. L., Ciatto, S., Nelen, V., et al. (2009). Screening and prostate-cancer mortality in a randomized European study. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 360, 1320–1328.
- Tanagho, E. A., & McAninch, J. W. (Eds.). (2008). *Smith's general urology* (17th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Vickers, A. J., Savage, C., O'Brien, M. F., & Lilja, H. (2008). Systematic review of pretreatment prostate-specific antigen velocity and doubling time as predictors for prostate cancer. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 27, 398–403.

Prostatic Adenocarcinoma

- [Cancer, Prostate](#)

Protected Sex

- [Condom Use](#)

Protection of Human Subjects

Marianne Shaughnessy
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Human subjects protections](#)

Definition

The organized oversight of research to ensure the rights and well-being of participants.

Description

The protection of human subjects in clinical research evolved in response to conditions surrounding medical research that were deemed unacceptable in the early to mid-twentieth century. In December 1946, an American military tribunal opened criminal proceedings against 23 German physicians who conducted medical experiments on thousands of concentration camp prisoners without their consent. Most of the subjects of these experiments died or were permanently disabled as a result. The Nuremberg Code of 1948 resulted, stating that “voluntary consent of a human subject is absolutely essential” and that “the benefits of research must outweigh the risks” (NIH). In 1964, the World Medical Association published recommendations for research involving human subjects, and the Declaration of Helsinki governs international research ethics and defines rules for “research combined with clinical care” and “non-therapeutic research.” This declaration was revised in 1975, 1983, 1989, and 1996 and remains the basis for Good Clinical practices used today (WMA).

In the United States, the Tuskegee Syphilis Study (1932–1972) described the natural history

of syphilis in 600 low-income African American males, 400 of whom were infected. Over 40 years, researchers provided medical examinations, but infected subjects were never told of their disease nor offered treatment, even after a known cure became available in 1947. Many of the subjects died from syphilis-related causes during the study. The study was stopped in 1973 by the U.S. Department of Health, Education and Welfare after its existence was publicized (CDC). The publicity generated by the Nuremberg trials, the Tuskegee study, and other studies created a mistrust of medical researchers and a demand for standards and guidelines for the ethical conduct of research. On July 12, 1974, the National Research Act (Pub. L. 93–348) was signed into law, creating the National Commission for the Protection of Human Subjects of Biomedical and Behavioral Research. This commission generated the Belmont Report in 1976, a summary of the ethical principles identified by the Commission that should be used to guide human subjects research. These principles include (1) respect for persons, (2) beneficence, and (3) justice. The application of these general principles is further described in specific guidance for obtaining informed consent, complete assessment of risks, and benefits and selection of research subjects.

Medical research is conducted in a variety of academic and corporate settings, but all human subjects research studies should be evaluated by an Institutional Review Board or similar research oversight committee prior to initiation. This is a requirement for all federally funded research in the United States. These oversight boards are responsible for the review of each proposed study to ensure that the principles of the Belmont Report are applied and that the rights of potential and actual participants are respected. The Association for the Accreditation of Human Research Protection Programs (AAHRPP) reviews the processes established by these research oversight bodies and grants accreditation for such programs that meet general requirements and demonstrate processes geared toward continual improvement of research and the protection of human subjects.

Cross-References

- [Research Participation, Risks and Benefits of](#)

References and Readings

- Association for the Accreditation of Human Research Protection Programs. Retrieved May 18, 2011 from <http://www.aahrpp.org>
- Center for Information and Study on Clinical Research Participation (CISCRP). Retrieved May 18, 2011 from <http://www.ciscrp.org/>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Retrieved May 18, 2011 from <http://www.cdc.gov/tuskegee/timeline.htm>
- NIH Office of Human Subjects Research. Retrieved May 18, 2011 from <http://ohsr.od.nih.gov/guidelines/nuremberg.html>
- The Belmont report*. Retrieved May 18, 2011 from <http://ohsr.od.nih.gov/guidelines/belmont.html>
- The Hastings Center. Retrieved May 18, 2011 from <http://www.thehastingscenter.org>
- World Medical Association (WMA). Retrieved May 18, 2011 from <http://www.wma.net/en/30publications/10policies/b3/>

Protective Factors

- [Cardiovascular Risk Factors](#)

Protein Methylation

- [Methylation](#)

Proteomics

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Proteomics is the study of all of a genome's putative proteins and involves the systematic analysis

of proteins to determine their identity, quantity, and function (Soloviev et al. 2004).

Description

The Human Genome Project and related work have focused considerable attention on sequencing aspects of genomic research. However, as Holmes et al. (2005) noted, “The eventual goal of these projects is actually to determine how the genome builds life through proteins. DNA has been the focus of attention because the tools for studying it are more advanced and because it is at the heart of the cell, carrying all the information – the blueprint – for life. However, a blueprint without a builder is not very useful, and the proteins are the primary builders within the cell.”

It is of interest to characterize the complement of expressed proteins from a single genome. Monitoring the expression and properties of a large number of proteins provides important information about the physiological state of a cell and, by extension, an organism. Cells can express very large numbers of different proteins, and the “expression profile” (the number of proteins expressed and the expression level of each of them) can vary in different cell types. Given that each cell contains all genomic material and hence information, this differential expression of proteins explains why cells perform different functions (Soloviev et al. 2004).

The 20,000–25,000 genes in the human genome actually generate many more than the commensurate number of proteins, with estimates as high as one million appearing in the literature (Augen 2005). This huge number results from the observation that multiple, distinct proteins can result from a single gene. Consider the following steps in the journey from the genome to the proteome (Holmes et al. 2005):

- DNA replication results in many gene forms.
- Ribonucleic acid (RNA) transcription leads to pre-messenger RNA.
- RNA maturation results in mature messenger RNA.
- Protein translation results in an immature protein.

- Protein maturation results in a mature protein in the proteome (posttranslational modifications are possible here).

The tremendous diversity of proteins in the proteome is facilitated by multiple possible means of protein expression. At each stage of the multistep process just described, alternate mechanisms produce variants of the “standard” protein, resulting in a proteome that is far greater than the genome that generates it. Posttranslational modifications play a considerable part in this creation of diversity. These modifications include, for example, the process of glycosylation in which proteins are glycosylated and hence become glycoproteins, which act as receptors and enzymes.

Nobel Laureate James Watson commented as follows with regard to the fields of proteomics and transcriptomics (Watson 2004): “In the wake of the Human Genome Project, two new post-genomic fields have duly emerged, both of them burdened with unimaginative names incorporating the ‘-omic’ of their ancestor: proteomics and transcriptomics. Proteomics is the study of the proteins encoded by genes. Transcriptomics is devoted to determining where and when genes are expressed – that is, which genes are transcriptionally active in a given cell.”

Cross-References

- [DNA](#)
- [Genomics](#)
- [Human Genome Project](#)

References and Further Readings

- Augen, J. (2005). *Bioinformatics in the post-genomic era: Genome, transcriptome, proteome, and information-based medicine*. Boston: Addison-Wesley.
- Holmes, M. R., Ramkissoon, K. R., & Giddings, M. C. (2005). Proteomics and protein identification. In A. D. Baxevanis & B. F. F. Ouellette (Eds.), *Bioinformatics: A practical guide to the analysis of genes and proteins* (3rd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley-Interscience.
- Soloviev, M., Barry, R., & Terrett, J. (2004). Chip-based proteomics technology. In R. Rapley & S. Harbron

- (Eds.), *Molecular analysis and genome discovery*. Hoboken: Wiley.
- Watson, J. D. (2004). *DNA: The secret of life*. New York: Alfred A Knopf.

Prototyping

- [Agile Science](#)

Proxy

- [Surrogate Decision Making](#)

Prozac[®]

- [Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors \(SSRIs\)](#)

Psychiatric Diagnosis

Toru Okuyama

Division of Psycho-oncology and Palliative Care,
Nagoya City University Hospital, Nagoya, Aichi,
Japan

P

Synonyms

[Diagnostic criteria](#); [Psychiatric disorder](#)

Definition

Psychiatric diagnosis defines a psychiatric disorder which causes subjective distress and disability and can be conceptualized based on symptomatology, epidemiology, and pathophysiology. The primary purpose of the psychiatric diagnosis is to distinguish a certain condition from non-disease conditions or other disease conditions and to make

health providers communicate better with each other by using shared concepts and languages. Psychiatric diagnosis facilitates researches by maintaining the internal validity of each psychiatric disease and is important for examining the external validity of findings when applying research evidences into individual patients.

Description

The top two most important and frequently used psychiatric diagnoses classification systems are the International Classification of Disease (ICD) by World Health Organization (WHO) and the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM) edited by the American Psychiatric Association.

The ICD is the international standard diagnostic classification of physical and psychiatric diseases and other health conditions, defined by WHO. It has been developed for the purpose of international use since the beginning, and WHO Member States compile national mortality and morbidity statistics based on this diagnostic system. The tenth revision was published in 1992. The classification of mental and behavioral disorders is included in Chap. F. ICD-10 consists of Clinical Descriptions and Diagnostic Guidelines and Diagnostic Criteria for Research. The former provides clinical descriptions detailing the principal signs and symptoms of each disorder. The latter is intended to help those researching specific disorders to maximize the homogeneity of study groups.

The latest version of DSM is the fourth edition text revision published in 2000 (DSM-IV-TR), in which several important features are included. First, it adopts the descriptive approach: the diagnoses criteria are defined based on the symptomatology, rather than the underlying causes. Secondly, clearly defined diagnostic criteria are provided for each specific disorder. These criteria include lists of features that must be present for diagnoses to be made. Thirdly, DSM-IV-TR is a multidimensional evaluation system (Axis I: clinical disorders and other conditions that may be a focus of clinical attention, Axis II: personality disorders and mental retardation, Axis III: any

physical disorder or general medical condition, Axis IV: the psychosocial and environmental problems that contribute significantly to the development or exacerbation of the current disorder, Axis V: a global assessment of functioning). The codes and terms used in the DSM-IV are designed to correspond with the codes used in the ICD-10.

It is also important how to apply these diagnostic criteria into each actual patient, in order to maximize the reliability of psychiatric diagnosis. Structured interviews were developed for this purpose. In structured interviews, the procedures for interviews including how to ask about the presence or absence of certain symptom and how to categorize patients' responses are strictly defined so that high inter-rater reliability of the diagnosis can be achieved. Since currently there are no gold standard objective diagnostic tests for psychiatric diagnosis, structured interviews are considered to be gold standard.

A clinical diagnosis includes the whole process of diagnostic formulation in addition to a psychiatric diagnosis based on the diagnostic criteria. A diagnostic formulation is an attempt to understand each patient comprehensively and individually by describing what has been influencing the feeling and behavior of the patient and what relationship might exist between the patient's life situation/background and the psychiatric illness.

Cross-References

► [Diagnostic Interview Schedule](#)

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders (Text revision)* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: Author.
- World Health Organization. (1992). *ICD-10: The ICD-10 classification of mental and behavioural disorders: Clinical descriptions and diagnostic guidelines*. Geneva: Author.
- Zimmerman, M., & Spitzer, R. L. (2009). Classification in psychiatry. In B. J. Sadock, V. A. Sadock, & P. Ruiz (Eds.), *Comprehensive textbook of psychiatry* (pp. 1003–1052). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Psychiatric Disorder

- [Psychiatric Diagnosis](#)
- [Psychiatric Illness](#)
- [Psychological Disorder](#)

Psychiatric Illness

Maxine Holmqvist
Clinical Health Psychology, University of
Manitoba, Winnipeg, MB, Canada

Synonyms

[Mental illness](#); [Psychiatric disorder](#); [Psychological disorder](#)

Definition

A condition or syndrome with distinctive cognitive, affective, and/or behavioral symptoms, arising from underlying psychobiological dysfunction and causing significant distress, impairment, or an increased risk of death, pain, disability, or an important loss of freedom (American Psychiatric Association [APA] 2000).

Description

Psychiatry is a branch of medicine that focuses on the diagnosis and treatment of mental illness. It did not emerge as an independent discipline until the late 1800s; however, the roots of psychiatric assessment and treatment extend back to the ancient Greeks and Egyptians (for a comprehensive overview of the history of psychiatry, see Wallace and Gach 2008). Psychiatric illnesses are currently diagnosed with reference to either the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 4th edition (DSM-IV; APA 2000) or the International Classification of Disease, 10th revision (ICD-10; for more information on these systems, see

Psychological Disorders, this volume). Psychiatric diagnoses are descriptive, and with few exceptions, they convey very little about etiology. McHugh and Slavney (McHugh and Slavney 1998) identify different perspectives that psychiatrists use to conceptualize cases and plan interventions. Disease reasoning presupposes that a patient's condition is the result of changes or defects in brain functioning. In contrast to this, behavioral reasoning presupposes that a patient's condition is the result of dysfunctional behavior. These two perspectives suggest different interventions; where the presumed cause is pathology of the brain, it follows that the appropriate treatment would likely involve medical intervention (e.g., pharmaceutical drugs, surgery, transcranial magnetic stimulation), while a behavioral disorder would respond best to behavioral treatment (e.g., attention to antecedents and consequences, behavior modification, exposure therapy). The use of the word "illness" in the term "psychiatric illness" implies that disease reasoning is being used; an illness is something a patient *has* rather than something that they are *doing* (McHugh and Slavney 1998). Therefore, this term may be more commonly used to refer to psychoses and disorders with known biological pathophysiology (e.g., Huntington's disease) and less commonly used to refer to conditions where symptoms are primarily behavioral or appear more voluntary (e.g., gambling, anorexia nervosa).

Regardless of their presumed origin, psychiatric illnesses such as depression and post-traumatic stress disorder are risk factors for the onset of complex medical conditions like coronary heart disease. Furthermore, psychiatric illnesses may develop as a consequence of disease processes, and can be significant independent predictors of poor prognosis in several conditions, including heart disease and end-stage renal disease.

Cross-References

- [Mental Illness](#)
- [Psychiatric Diagnosis](#)
- [Psychiatric Disorder](#)
- [Psychological Disorder](#)

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders, Fourth Edition, Text Revision*. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association. See also <http://www.psych.org/mainmenu/research/dsmiv.aspx>.
- Lippi, G., Montagnana, M., Favaloro, E. J., & Franchini, M. (2009). Mental depression and cardiovascular disease: A multifaceted, bidirectional association. *Seminars in Thrombosis and Hemostasis*, 35, 325–336.
- McHugh, P. R., & Slavney, P. R. (1998). *The perspectives of psychiatry*. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press.
- Wallace, E. R., & Gach, J. (Eds.). (2008). *History of psychiatry and medical psychology: With an epilogue on psychiatry and the mind-body relation*. New York: Springer.
- World Health Organization. (2007). *International statistical classification of diseases and related health problems, 10th revision, version for 2007*. Retrieved 1 Jan 2011 from <http://apps.who.int/classifications/apps/icd/icd10online/>

Psychiatric Surgery

► Psychosurgery

Psychoeducation

Shin-ichi Suzuki¹ and Asuka Tanoue²

¹Faculty of Human Sciences, Graduate School of Human Sciences, Waseda University, Tokorozawa-shi, Saitama, Japan

²Advanced Research Center for Human Science, Waseda University, Tokorozawa, Saitama, Japan

Synonyms

Health Education

Definition

Psychoeducation is a method of providing patients/clients and their families a theoretical and practical approach to understanding and coping with the consequences of their psychological

disorders/problems or physical illnesses/responses.

The main goals of psychoeducation are the enhancement of adherence; improvement of illness management or stress control skills, such as early recognition of episode recurrence and development of strategies for effective coping with symptoms; improvement of social and occupational functions; and quality of life.

The role of psychoeducation encompasses not only imparting knowledge and information regarding treatment/psychological support through media such as leaflets or information web sites or feedback to individuals based on test results, but it is also characterized by active cooperation such as intervention exercises with patients and their families.

Psychoeducation may be conducted in a group including individuals with similar problems (e.g., chronic diseases such as diabetes, HIV/AIDS, and PTSD) and individual therapy sessions. Group therapy is also expected to foster support among patients/clients. Thus, the psychoeducational approach has a lot in common with general psychosocial support for schizophrenia, mood disorders, eating disorders, and drug addiction, but it can also be applied to further the field of education.

Particularly, in the context of a medical setting, the therapists will try to explain the normal reactions of symptoms related to each psychological disorder or physical illness at the beginning. This will prevent any misinformation from being circulated among the patients and expand their understanding of the intervention, and it will lead to an improvement in the interactions of patients/clients in the treatment. Evidence from systematic reviews has reinforced the effect of these treatments stating that psychoeducational interventions for unipolar depression are effective, can prevent the worsening of depression, and be used as a preventive instrument (e.g., Cuijpers 1997).

As mentioned above, psychoeducation is a treatment that is routinely practiced in a number of fields, and it will continue to be considered essential in terms of the treatment and prevention of relapses.

Cross-References

► [Health Education](#)

References and Further Reading

Cuijpers, P. (1997). Bibliotherapy in unipolar depression: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Behavior Therapy and Experimental Psychiatry*, 28, 139–147.

Psychological and Social Conditions People Experience in the Workplace

► [Psychosocial Work Environment](#)

Psychological and Social Effects

► [Psychosocial Impact](#)

Psychological Disorder

Maxine Holmqvist
Clinical Health Psychology, University of
Manitoba, Winnipeg, MB, Canada

Synonyms

[Behavioral disorder](#); [Emotional disorder](#); [Mental disorder](#); [Psychiatric disorder](#); [Psychiatric illness](#)

Definition

A distinctive pattern of cognitive, and/or behavioral symptoms in an individual, arising from underlying psychobiological dysfunction and causing significant distress, impairment, or an increased risk of death, pain, disability, or an

important loss of freedom (American Psychiatric Association 2000). Psychological disorders do not include culturally sanctioned responses to life events (e.g., feeling sad after a significant loss).

Description

The term “psychological disorder” is often used interchangeably with similar terms, including “mental disorder” and “psychiatric illness.” It may be a preferable term to “mental disorder,” which evokes a mind/body dualism that is inconsistent with modern theories that emphasize the biopsychosocial origins of disease (Fulford et al. 2006). The term “psychological disorder” is broad, encompassing both disorders that manifest primarily with dysfunctional behaviors (e.g., anorexia nervosa, alcohol dependence) and disorders that manifest primarily with involuntary symptoms (e.g., schizophrenia, depression; McHugh and Slavney 1998). In contrast, the term “psychiatric illness” more typically refers to the latter category, assuming that these disorders are more rooted in brain dysfunction (see *Psychiatric Illness*, this volume). To date, genetic studies have not supported this distinction (e.g., Bienvenu et al. 2011).

Historical Background

Psychological disorders are cultural constructs, created through a variety of social processes, including debate, voting, and expert consensus (Raskin and Lewandowski 2000). Classifying psychological symptoms into disorders allows service providers to communicate with one another and for evidence-based knowledge to be accumulated and shared. It can enhance treatment planning and is critical for health care management (e.g., allowing governments to monitor the incidence and prevalence of various conditions in the population and allocate resources appropriately). While modern classification systems are empirically informed, current diagnostic categories are heavily influenced by historical forces (Kendler 2009). Today, the two most

common classification systems for psychological disorders are the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 4th edition (DSM-IV), and the International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems, 10th revision (ICD-10). Both the DSM-IV and the ICD-10 are categorical systems that enable the user to record the presence or absence of a condition or disease according to certain standardized rules; in contrast to this, dimensional systems of classification are quantitative and are more likely to utilize psychometric measures and statistical procedures. In addition to more closely mirroring theoretical models of psychological pathology that characterize symptoms on a continuum with normal functioning (see “Psychological Pathology”, this volume), these systems can be helpful in providing additional information that is likely to be important clinically. The importance of dimensional assessment to treatment planning and monitoring in particular has also been highlighted, and several proposed dimensional assessments are being evaluated for feasibility during the upcoming DSM-V field trials (Stein et al. 2010).

The Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM)

The DSM is published by the American Psychiatric Association (APA). Its aim is to provide common language and standard criteria for the classification of mental disorders, and it is the primary system used in North America. There have been five revisions since the DSM was first published in 1952 (APA 2000). The current edition is the 4th edition, text revision (DSM-IV-TR); the fifth edition (DSM-V) is due to be published in May 2013 (American Psychiatric Association 2011). The DSM describes how qualified individuals can assign diagnoses based on predetermined criteria. Diagnoses are recorded using a multiaxial system, with different disorder subtypes coded on different axes. While efforts have been made to keep the diagnostic codes in the DSM consistent with the ICD, this has not always been possible due to the differing revision cycles. Primary goals

for the DSM-V include improving diagnostic validity and reliability and enhancing clinical utility.

International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems (ICD)

The ICD originated in the 1850s, when medical statisticians identified the need for a standard nomenclature to record cause of death and other important health statistics. Originally published as the International List of Causes of Death by the International Statistical Institute in 1893, responsibility for the ICD was taken over by the World Health Organization (WHO) when it was created in 1948 (World Health Organization 2007). Currently, the ICD is the international standard diagnostic classification system for epidemiological reporting and research among WHO member states (e.g., monitoring the incidence and prevalence of diseases in a population, recording national mortality and morbidity statistics); it also aims to provide useful information for health management and clinical purposes. The scope of the ICD has increased with each revision and update. In the early 1960s, a series of meetings were held with the aim of improving the diagnosis and classification of mental health disorders. The current edition, the ICD-10, was completed in 2007 and contains a comprehensive listing of “mental and behavioral disorders,” which are coded on axis V (F00-F99).

As with psychiatric illnesses, psychological disorders can often predict the risk of developing complex medical conditions (e.g., heart disease); the reverse is also true. Furthermore, psychological disorders have prognostic value in some illnesses, including cancer, heart disease and renal failure.

Cross-References

- [Mental Illness](#)
- [Psychiatric Disorder](#)

- [Psychiatric Illness](#)
- [Psychological Pathology](#)

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders, Fourth Edition, Text revision*. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Association. See also <http://www.psych.org/mainmenu/research/dsmiv.aspx>.
- American Psychiatric Association. (2011). DSM-5 Development Page. Retrieved from <http://www.dsm5.org/Pages/Default.aspx>
- Bienvenu, O. J., Davydow, D. S., & Kendler, K. S. (2011). Psychiatric 'diseases' versus behavioral disorders and degree of genetic influence. *Psychological Medicine*, 41, 33–40.
- Fulford, K. W. M., Thornton, T., & Graham, G. (2006). *Oxford textbook of philosophy and psychiatry*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Kendler, K. S. (2009). An historical framework for psychiatric nosology. *Psychological Medicine*, 39, 1935–1941.
- Ladwig, K. H., Baumert, J., Marten-Mittag, B., Kolb, C., Zrenner, B., & Schmitt, C. (2008). Posttraumatic stress symptoms and predicted mortality in patients with implantable cardioverter-defibrillators: Results from the prospective living with an implanted cardioverter-defibrillator study. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 65, 1324–1330.
- McHugh, P. R., & Slavney, P. R. (1998). *The perspectives of psychiatry* (2nd ed.). Baltimore: The Johns Hopkins University Press.
- Raskin, J. D., & Lewandowski, A. M. (2000). The construction of disorder as human enterprise. In R. A. Neimeyer & J. D. Raskin (Eds.), *Constructions of disorder: Meaning-making frameworks for psychotherapy* (pp. 15–40). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Stein, D. J., Phillips, K. A., Bolton, D., Fulford, K. W. M., Sadler, J. Z., & Kendler, K. S. (2010). What is a mental/psychiatric disorder? From DSM-IV to DSM-V. *Psychological Medicine*, 40, 1759–1765.
- World Health Organization. (2007). *International statistical classification of diseases and related health problems, 10th Revision, version for 2007*. Retrieved 1 Jan 2011 from <http://apps.who.int/classifications/apps/icd/icd10online/>

Psychological Factors

- [Psychosocial Factors](#)

Psychological Factors and Health

Jane Upton

Department of Psychology, William James College, Newton, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Psychological variables](#); [Psychosocial factors](#)

Definition

Thoughts, feelings, and attitudes that influence behavior

Description

Behavioral medicine incorporates not only the effect of individual's actions on their health but also how psychological factors affect the physical body. This is a progression from traditional biomedicine, which conceptualizes the mind and the body as separate entities. Behavioral medicine has started to break down this artificial boundary, illuminating the close relationship between mind and body, and therefore the role that psychological factors play in disease.

A key psychological factor is stress, which is known to affect many systems of the body. This summary will focus on the immune system, a system once thought to be independent of psychological factors. Research investigating the effect of stress on vaccinations generally indicates that chronic psychological stress impacts on the immune response. In a study conducted by Cohen and colleagues, 394 healthy individuals completed a questionnaire to assess degree of psychological stress and were then given nasal drops containing a respiratory virus (Cohen et al. 1991). The rates of respiratory infection increased in a dose-response manner with increases in psychological stress. This relationship was not altered when the researchers

controlled for variables that might affect this relationship (e.g., the infectious status of subjects in close vicinity to each other). The level of psychological stress reported by the individuals prior to exposure to the virus was therefore directly related to the level of infection. This relationship has been consistently duplicated; for example, Phillips and colleagues found that the stress of bereavement in the year prior to influenza vaccination was associated with a poorer antibody response (Phillips et al. 2006).

However, it is too simplistic to conclude that stress suppresses the immune system. Different types of psychological stress have different effects on the immune system. It is therefore important to differentiate between acute, short-term stress and long-term chronic stress. It has generally been found that long-term stress suppresses the immune system (Bauer et al. 2000), whereas acute stress potentiates it (Herbert et al. 1994).

It is important to note though that the effect of psychologically stressful events varies between individuals based on how they evaluate the event and their coping strategies (Lazarus and Folkman 1984). Pettingale and colleagues investigated the effect of coping strategy on recovery from cancer (Pettingale et al. 1985). Fifty-seven women who had recently undergone mastectomy were interviewed 4 months after their operation. They were categorized in to four groups dependent on coping strategy: stoic acceptance, denial, fighting spirit, and helplessness/hopelessness. They found that coping strategy was related to 10-year disease-free survival; those women who adopted denial or fighting spirit coping strategies tended to survive longer.

The level of chronic stress and coping styles may interact to affect the immune system. Stowell and colleagues found that under conditions of high chronic stress, people who had active coping styles had higher proliferation of leukocytes to stimulation by mitogens than people who had avoidance coping mechanisms (Stowell et al. 2001). However, they also found that when experiencing low levels of chronic stress, people that used avoidance mechanisms to cope had higher proliferation levels of leukocytes than those that used more active mechanisms to cope.

The relationships between certain coping methods and immune function may therefore depend on perceived stress levels.

Immune response may also be affected by personality traits such as neuroticism (Phillips et al. 2005), internalization in adolescents (Morag et al. 1999), and trait negative affect (Marsland et al. 2001). More widely, it has been suggested that a constellation of personality traits such as high levels of anxiety, neuroticism, depression, anger, and hostility may be linked with a range of diseases (Friedman and Booth-Kewley 1987). However, prospective studies are required to confirm that these traits contribute to the etiology and progression of disease.

Schnurr and colleagues investigated the effect of post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) in 605 veterans of World War II and the Korean conflict (Schnurr and Avion 2000). They controlled for age, smoking, alcohol use, and body weight at study entry. They found that PTSD symptoms were associated with increased onset of arterial lower gastrointestinal dermatologic and musculoskeletal disorders. The authors state that it is premature to draw firm conclusions from their study about the relationship of PTSD to these disorders. However, their findings were very similar to those reported by Boscarino and colleagues in their study of Vietnam War veterans (Boscarino 1997).

Less dramatically, it has also been found that daily hassles affect the physical body. In a study of 48 undergraduate students, levels of daily hassles correlated with the General Health Questionnaire somatic symptoms scale (Sheffield et al. 1996). Daily hassles have also been linked with fluctuations in blood pressure. Steptoe and colleagues (1996) recorded the blood pressure (BP) hourly from 49 male firefighters on work and nonwork days (Steptoe et al. 1996). They found that systolic BP readings accompanied by feelings of anger and stress were significantly greater than those without negative moods in both work and nonwork settings. They concluded that the raised systolic BP during working hours observed was affected both by physical activity and concurrent mood and that stress and anger were particularly influential.

Cross-References

- [Psychosocial Predictors](#)
- [Psychosocial Variables](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bauer, E., Vedhara, K., Perks, P., Wilcock, G. K., Lightman, S. L., Shanks, N., et al. (2000). Chronic stress in caregivers of dementia patients is associated with reduced lymphocyte sensitivity to glucocorticoids. *Journal of Neuroimmunology*, 103, 84–92. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0165-5728\(99\)00228-3](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0165-5728(99)00228-3).
- Boscarino, J. (1997). Diseases among men 20 years after exposure to severe stress: Implications for clinical research and medical care. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 59(6), 605–614.
- Cohen, S., Tyrrell, D., & Smith, A. (1991). Psychological stress and susceptibility to the common cold. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 325, 606–612.
- Friedman, H., & Booth-Kewley, S. (1987). The “disease-prone personality”: A meta-analytic view of the construct. *The American Psychologist*, 42, 539–555. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0003-066X.42.6.539>.
- Herbert, T., Cohen, S., Marsland, A. L., Bachen, E., Rabin, B., Muldoon, M., et al. (1994). Cardiovascular reactivity and the course of immune response to an acute psychological stressor. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 56(4), 337–344.
- Lazarus, R., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Marsland, A. L., Cohen, S., Rabin, B., & Manuck, S. (2001). Associations between stress, trait negative affect, acute immune reactivity, and antibody response to hepatitis b injection in healthy young adults. *Health Psychology*, 20, 4–11. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0278-6133.20.1.4>.
- Morag, M., Morag, A., Reichenberg, M., Lerer, B., & Yirmiya, R. (1999). Psychological variables as predictors of rubella antibody titers and fatigue – A prospective double blind study. *Journal of Psychiatric Research*, 33, 389–395.
- Pettingale, K., Morris, T., Greer, S., & Haybittle, J. (1985). Mental attitudes to cancer; an additional prognostic factor. *Lancet*, 1(8431), 750.
- Phillips, A. C., Carroll, D., Burns, V. E., & Drayson, M. (2005). Neuroticism, cortisol reactivity, and antibody response to vaccination. *Journal of Personality*, 42, 232–238. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1469-8986.2005.00281.x>.
- Phillips, A. C., Carroll, D., Burns, V. E., Ring, C., Macleod, J., Drayson, M., et al. (2006). Bereavement and marriage are associated with antibody response to influenza vaccination in the elderly. *Immunity*, 20, 279–289. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbi.2005.08.003>.
- Schnurr, P. P., & Avion, S. (2000). Physician-diagnosed medical disorders in relation to PTSD symptoms in older male military veterans. *Health Psychology*, 19(1), 91–97. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0278-6133.19.1.91>.
- Sheffield, D., McVey, C., & Carroll, D. (1996). Daily events and somatic symptoms: Evidence of a lagged relationship. *The British Journal of Medical Psychology*, 69, 267–269.
- Stephens, A., Roy, M., & Evans, O. (1996). Psychosocial influences on ambulatory blood pressure over working and non-working days. *Journal of Psychophysiology*, 10(3), 218–227.
- Stowell, J. R., Kiecolt-glaser, J. K., & Glaser, R. (2001). Perceived stress and cellular immunity: When coping counts. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 24(4), 323–339.

Psychological Pathology

Maxine Holmqvist
Clinical Health Psychology, University of
Manitoba, Winnipeg, MB, Canada

Synonyms

[Abnormal psychology](#); [Psychopathology](#)

Definition

The scientific study of psychological disorders and their causes.

Description

Psychological pathology is the study of the causes, components, course, and consequences of psychological disorders. These are characterized by *abnormality* and *dysfunction*.

Abnormality

Psychological disorders are defined by diagnostic criteria, like those outlined in the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM; American Psychiatric Association [APA] 2000)

or the International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Conditions (ICD; World Health Organization 2007). These criteria are composed of “marker symptoms,” or thoughts, feelings, and/or behaviors identified as abnormal for a variety of reasons (e.g., because they cause distress, disadvantage, or disability or are highly inflexible or irrational; Stein et al. 2010). Symptoms can be understood as qualitatively different from normal or as extreme variants of common traits. Some symptoms are abnormal because they deviate significantly from a statistical mean. The notion of deviance from the mean is the underlying rationale for many commonly used psychometric tests, but is perhaps most clearly illustrated using the concept of intelligence. It is assumed that intelligence is normally distributed in the population; thus, individuals whose scores on a standardized test of intelligence fall below a specific cutoff may be diagnosed with mental retardation. It is important to note that even in this circumstance, meeting this cutoff is not sufficient for a diagnosis; there must be additional evidence of dysfunction (e.g., deficits in self-care and academic performance; APA 2000). Thus, a trait or behavior is not necessarily “pathological” simply because it is highly unusual – high intelligence may be equally rare, but is not usually debilitating. Similarly, some characteristics that are presumed to be dysfunctional may be quite common (e.g., depressive thoughts, binge drinking). Importantly, abnormality can only be defined in reference to a given population; thus, the boundaries between normal and abnormal will shift over time and across cultures.

Dysfunction

Symptoms that cause significant impairment in important life domains may also be considered “pathological.” Accordingly, dysfunction is often assessed with reference to the consequences of the symptom or disorder. Increasingly, psychological research is providing evidence of dysfunction by showing that certain psychological traits or

behavioral patterns (e.g., perfectionism, type “A” personality, avoidance of feared stimuli) are reliably associated with undesirable physiological, social, and occupational outcomes (e.g., procrastination, chronic hypertension, strengthening of a phobic response). Dysfunction is also sometimes assessed in evolutionary terms, with symptoms referred to as “maladaptive,” suggesting that they deviate from functioning that would have led to survival and reproductive success in the past.

Cross-References

- [Psychiatric Disorder](#)
- [Psychiatric Illness](#)
- [Psychological Disorder](#)

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders, text revision* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: Author.
- Stein, D. J., Phillips, K. A., Bolton, D., Fulford, K. W. M., Sadler, J. Z., & Kendler, K. S. (2010). What is a mental/psychiatric disorder? from DSM-IV to DSM-V. *Psychological Medicine*, 40, 1759–1765.
- World Health Organization. (2007). *International statistical classification of diseases and related health problems, 10th revision, version for 2007*. Retrieved 1 Jan 2011 from <http://apps.who.int/classifications/apps/icd/icd10online/>

Psychological Predictors

- [Psychosocial Predictors](#)

Psychological Researcher

- [Psychologist](#)

Psychological Science

Peter A. Hall

Faculty of Applied Health Sciences, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Synonyms

Scientific psychology

Definition

The term *psychological science* refers to the accumulated body of psychological knowledge (i.e., pertaining to brain, behavior, social, or mental processes) that has been generated through the systematic application of the scientific method. The term *psychological science* may also refer to the process of conducting psychological research through the use of the scientific method.

Description

The scientific approach to studying social, mental, and behavioral phenomena has existed for the full history of the field of psychology. Though some have questioned the applicability of scientific methods to the exploration of mental phenomena for at least as long as its existence, psychological science has always been at the core of psychology as a field, and scientific rigor has been an aspiration even within the applied subdisciplines of psychology, including clinical psychology, health psychology, and behavioral medicine. Psychology as a discipline has stricter adherence to the scientific method than most social sciences, and so the nature of accumulated knowledge within psychology in the first century of its existence can be largely described as “scientific” in nature.

Commitment to the scientific method in psychological research is traceable back to William James (1842–1910) in North America and

Wilhelm Wundt (1832–1920) in Europe, though its roots likely extend even earlier than these two individuals. Notably, both James and Wundt were trained initially as physicians, highlighting the long-standing interconnectedness of psychological science and medical science from the time that psychology emerged as a legitimate area of scientific inquiry. Psychological knowledge aims to be scientifically grounded by following basic scientific criteria of empiricism, replicability of a method, and the testing of generalizable hypotheses and models which eventually explain psychological phenomena.

In 1989, the inaugural issue of *Psychological Science* was published by the Association for Psychological Science (formerly named the American Psychological Society). This flagship journal was intended to be a showcase for leading psychological research conducted with rigorous adherence to the scientific method. The prominence of *Psychological Science* has grown steadily from its inception to present, and it is currently the highest ranking empirical journal in the field of psychology (Association for Psychological Science 2015).

Cross-References

- Behavioral Sciences at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
- Health Psychology

References and Further Readings

Association for Psychological Science. (2015). *Psychological Science* (journal home page). http://www.psychologicalscience.org/index.php/publications/journals/psychological_science

Psychological Scientist

- Psychologist

Psychological Stress

Shin-ichi Suzuki¹ and Daisuke Ito²

¹Faculty of Human Sciences, Graduate School of Human Sciences, Waseda University, Tokorozawa-shi, Saitama, Japan

²Department Clinical Psychology, Graduate School of Education, Hyogo University to Teacher Education, Kato, Hyogo, Japan

Synonyms

[Distress](#); [Strain](#); [Stress](#); [Stressor](#)

Definition

H. Selye (1936) defined stress as “nonspecific responses that be resulted from a variety of different kinds of stimuli.” However, Selye’s stress theory has only focused on physiological stress, and psychological factors have not been considered. Research on life stress examined the relationship between diseases and life events. Many studies were conducted for clarifying the psychological factors related to stress, and the results revealed that psychological factors play a significant role in the occurrence of physiological and psychological stress responses. Lazarus and Folkman (1984) proposed that stress occurs when people perceived that the demands from external situations were beyond their coping capacity. Today, the definition “stress is the process of interaction from resolution requests from the environment (known as the *transactional* model)” is widely accepted.

From the perspective of psychological stress research, the ambiguous elements related to stress have distinguished two aspects of stress. One is called “stressors,” which cause stress (e.g., interpersonal problem, hard work, noise, and trauma). Another is called “stress responses,” which are nonspecific physical and

mental changes induced by stressors (e.g., frustration, depression, anxiety, and stomachache). Psychological stress responses that caused by various daily experiences are emotional, cognitive, and behavioral changes; their degrees have also become main factors affecting physical and mental health. However, as mentioned in the definition of Lazarus and Folkman (1984), psychological stressors are related to one’s cognition and coping process rather than induced stress responses directly. Therefore, an effective approach for reducing psychological stress responses should include not only the removal of stressors but also enhancing the cognitive and behavioral coping capability. A number of studies have demonstrated the effectiveness of cognitive-behavioral stress management in influencing psychological and physiological parameters.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Cognitive Appraisal](#)
- ▶ [Coping](#)
- ▶ [Mental Stress](#)
- ▶ [Stress](#)
- ▶ [Stress Responses](#)
- ▶ [Stress, Emotional](#)
- ▶ [Stressor](#)

References and Further Reading

- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Selye, H. (1936). A syndrome produced by diverse nocuous agents. *Nature*, 138, 32.

Psychological Stress Task

- ▶ [Stress Test](#)

Psychological Stressor

- [Stress Test](#)

Psychological Testing

- [Assessment](#)

Psychological Variables

- [Psychological Factors and Health](#)
- [Psychosocial Variables](#)

Psychologist

Vincent Tran
Southwestern Medical Center, University of
Texas, Dallas, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Mental health professional](#); [Psychological researcher](#); [Psychological scientist](#)

Definition

A psychologist is a professional who has earned a doctoral degree in psychology at a regionally accredited university or professional school. Some psychologists are primarily involved in conducting research and contributing to the scientific body of knowledge in psychology, while others use this scientific knowledge in applied settings. Psychologists work in several different work sectors, including clinical practice settings, academic and research settings, and consultation to apply psychological principles in private or

public industries. Major settings in which psychologists work include universities and medical schools, private practice, clinics and counseling centers, industry and government, hospitals, and school districts. In recent decades, psychologists have increasingly focused their work on health-related research and with patients in medical settings. This is evidenced in the rapid growth of the membership in the Health Psychology Division of the American Psychological Association (Division 38), and in the fact that psychologists comprise 73% of the interdisciplinary membership of the Society of Behavioral Medicine.

Although psychologists often enjoy a variety of professional roles, some psychologists (e.g., clinical and counseling psychologists) are primarily involved in the practice of psychology. Applied psychologists focus on the identification, assessment, treatment, and/or consultation related to psychological issues impacting human behavior in applied settings. Interventions may include individual, group, or family psychotherapy, as well as consultation with community and private organizations. In order to regulate the practice of psychology and to ensure mental and behavioral health services are provided by qualified professionals, psychologists must obtain a professional license. Each state has its own requirements for licensure; in addition to the doctoral degree, states commonly require additional postdoctoral training and passing scores on national and state licensure exams.

Other psychologists primarily conduct basic or applied research and/or teach in academic or university settings. Psychological science uses statistical and empirical methods of measurement to understand mental processes and behavior, which can be at the social, cognitive, biological, and/or emotional level. Major specialty areas studied in psychology include clinical, counseling, educational, experimental, industrial/organizational, developmental, social, personality, physiological, and quantitative psychology. The American Psychological Association, an organization representing psychologists in the United States, has 54 divisions and interest groups,

demonstrating the range and variety of subdisciplines or specialty interest areas of psychologists. The Association for Psychological Science is an organization dedicated to promoting scientifically oriented psychologists and psychology as a scientific discipline.

Cross-References

- [Health Psychology](#)
- [Medical Psychology](#)
- [Psychological Science](#)

References and Further Readings

- APA. (2011a). *American Psychological Association*. Retrieved 13 Dec 2011, from <http://www.apa.org/>.
- APA. (2011b). *What is APA's definition of a psychologist?* American Psychological Association. Retrieved 11 Jan 2011, from <http://www.apa.org/support/about/apa>.
- APS. (2011). *Association for Psychological Science*. Retrieved 13 Dec 2011, from <http://www.psychologicalscience.org>.
- Keefe, F., Portner, L., & Somers, T. (2010). The SBM career trajectories survey: Findings and next steps. Society of Behavioral Medicine. Retrieved 13 Dec 2011, from <http://www.sbm.org/about/councils/education-training-and-career-development/career-trajectories>.
- Smith, M. W., & Passer, R. E. (2001). *Psychology: Frontiers and applications*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Stricker, G., Widiger, T. A., & Weiner, I. B. (Eds.). (2003). *Handbook of psychology: Clinical psychology* (Vol. 8). Hoboken: Wiley.

Psychometric Properties

Annie T. Ginty
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Psychometrics](#)

Definition

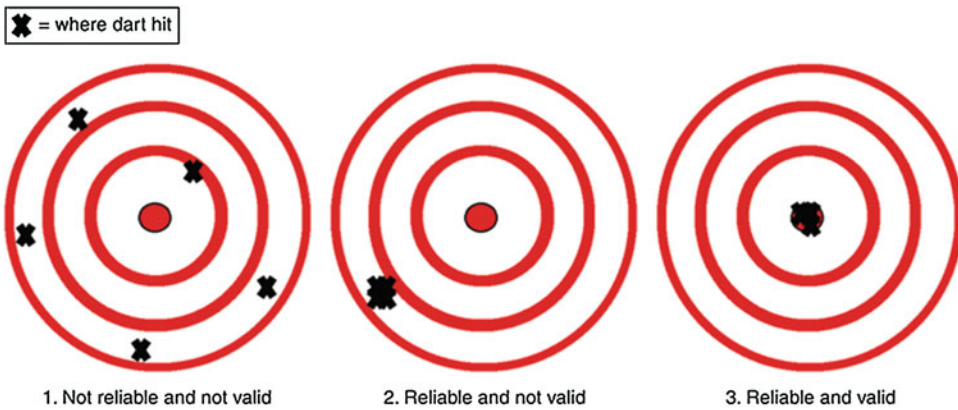
Psychometrics is the construction and validation of measurement instruments and assessing if these instruments are reliable and valid forms of measurement. In behavioral medicine, psychometrics is usually concerned with measuring individual's knowledge, ability, personality, and types of behaviors. Measurement usually takes place in the form of a questionnaire, and questionnaires must be evaluated extensively before being able to state that they have excellent psychometric properties, meaning a scale is both reliable and valid.

Description

A reliable scale consistently measures the same construct. This can occur across testing sessions, individuals, and settings. A valid measure measures what it says it is going to measure. If something is valid, it is always reliable. However, something can be reliable without being valid.

For example (see Fig. 1), if someone has five darts and is told to hit the bull's eye every time, their ideal aim is to be both reliable (consistent) and valid (accurate) with their throws. In part 1, the throws are neither reliable nor valid because their efforts are scattered across the board. In part 2, the throws were reliable, hitting the same spot every time. However, they did not hit the targeted spot of the bull's eye so they were not valid. Part 3 shows the perfect example of being both reliable and valid. The throws hit the spot they intended to hit and did so consistently. This same concept is applied to questionnaire measurements.

If a researcher is trying to create a new scale to measure depression, they want to make sure the scale reliably measures depression in someone with depression. For example, if the same individual filled out the questionnaire three times in the same day, they would produce the same score each time. The researcher also wants to make sure the scale is valid, which means that the scale is actually measuring depressive symptoms and not some other mood or behavior.



Psychometric Properties, Fig. 1 An example of reliability and validity

Cross-References

- [Construct Validity](#)
- [Validity](#)

References and Further Reading

- DeVellis, R. F. (2003). *Scale development: Theory and applications* (2nd ed.). London: Sage.
- Grimm, G. L., & Yamold, P. R. (2000). *Reading and understanding more multivariate statistics*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Psychometric Theory

- [Psychometrics](#)

Psychometrics

J. Rick Turner
 Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
 Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Psychometric theory](#)

Definition

Psychometric theory is a well-recognized approach for developing psychological measurement and standardized education tests (Kim-O and Embretson 2010). It can be divided into two categories: classical test theory (CTT) and item response theory (IRT). CTT was pioneered a century ago by Spearman, while IRT developed in the 1950s and 1960s.

Kim-O and Embretson (2010) provided a thorough discussion of IRT and why it has become the preferred approach. In the CTT model, estimates of examinees' true test scores are often linear transformations of the raw test score, and are related to relevant normative populations by the transformation. Alternative test forms can be used to estimate true scores if the forms are parallel tests with the same expected true scores and error distributions. Psychometric indices for items in CTT are related to the properties of the test scores, particularly reliability and variance. In other words, item difficulty is defined as the proportion of persons passing or endorsing an item, while item discrimination is defined as the correlation of the item with the total test score.

The CTT approach, however, has several limitations. An examinee's true score depends on the difficulty level of a test, i.e., it is test-dependent: Scores will not be comparable between easy and hard tests. Second, the item characteristics depend

on the ability of examinees, i.e., they are sample-dependent. Item difficulty, for example, will vary substantially if the true score distributions vary between populations. Third, one of the key assumptions, that two true test scores and two error variances are identical in the two tests (the parallel test assumption), is never fully met in practice. Therefore, it becomes difficult to compare examinees who take different tests, and to contrast items whose characteristic indices are computed using different groups of examinees.

In contrast, in the IRT approach the examinee's true score is not test-dependent, the item parameters are not sample-dependent, and the parallel test assumption is not needed. See Kim-O and Embretson (2010) for further discussion of this approach.

Psychometric theory is used extensively in behavioral medicine research. As two examples, Kiernan et al. (2011) assessed the psychometric properties, initial levels, and predictive validity of a measure of perceived social support and sabotage from friends and family for healthy eating and physical activity. Second, Lo et al. (2011) introduced the Death and Dying Distress Scale (DADDS), a new, brief measure developed to assess death-related anxiety in advanced cancer and other palliative populations. Their paper described its preliminary psychometrics based on a sample of 33 patients with advanced or metastatic cancer. Additional examples are provided in the "References and Readings" section of this entry.

medicine. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 113–123). New York: Springer.

Kowalchuk Horn, K., Jennings, S., Richardson, G., et al. (2012). The patient-specific functional scale: Psychometrics, clinimetrics, and application as a clinical outcome measure. *The Journal of Orthopaedic and Sports Physical Therapy*, 42(1), 30–42.

Lo, C., Hales, S., Zimmermann, C., et al. (2011). Measuring death-related anxiety in advanced cancer: Preliminary psychometrics of the death and dying distress scale. *Journal of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology*, 33 (Suppl. 2), S140–S145.

Maddux, R. E., Lundh, L. G., & Bäckström, M. (2011). The Swedish depressive personality disorder inventory: Psychometrics and clinical correlates from a DSM-IV and proposed DSM-5 perspective. *Nordic Journal of Psychiatry*. Sept 22nd [epub ahead of print].

Robinson, D. W., Jr., Cormier, J. N., Zhao, N., et al. (2012). Health-related quality of life among patients with metastatic melanoma: Results from an international phase 2 multicenter study. *Melanoma Research*, 22(1), 54–62.

Psychoneuroendocrinology

Jutta M. Wolf¹ and Eve Saucier²

¹Department of Psychology, Brandeis University, Waltham, MA, USA

²Brandeis University, Waltham, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Behavioral endocrinology](#)

Cross-References

- [Psychometric Properties](#)
- [Validity](#)
- [Variance](#)

References and Further Reading

Kiernan, M., Moore, S. D., & Schoffman, D. E. (2011). Social support for healthy behaviors: Scale psychometrics and prediction of weight loss among women in a behavioral program. *Obesity (Silver Spring, MD)*. Oct 13th [Epub ahead of print].

Kim-O, M.-A., & Embretson, S. E. (2010). Item response theory and its application to measurement in behavioral

Psychoneuroendocrinology (PNE) is an interdisciplinary field of research integrating psychology, endocrinology, and neuroscience to study the interactions between mind, brain, and hormonal function (Dantzer 2010).

More specifically, PNE focuses on the way psychological factors influence neuroendocrine functions and, conversely, the way hormones influence higher brain functions. As such, PNE is not only interested in hormone synthesis, release, transport, breakdown, and feedback control but in the interaction of hormones with their target tissues (e.g.,

the immune system), including the molecular mechanisms of their action.

PNE research is often concerned with health implications associated with even subtle chronic changes in hormonal patterns. While sex is one of the biggest factors influencing the body's neuroendocrine state, other factors of interest include health effects of age-related changes and changes observed in the context of diseases such as the metabolic syndrome or mood and anxiety disorders. By far, the most intensely studied area, however, is PNE of stress, which aims at describing and understanding neuroendocrine changes associated with acute as well as chronic physiological and especially psychological stress and how stress-related changes in turn impact behavior, cognition, affect, and health (for a review, see Dantzer 2010).

Cross-References

- [Behavioral Immunology](#)
- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Psychoneuroimmunology](#)
- [Stress](#)
- [Sympathetic Nervous System \(SNS\)](#)
- [Sympatho-adrenergic Stimulation](#)

References and Further Reading

- Dantzer, R. (2010). Psychoneuroendocrinology of stress. In F. K. George, M. Le Michel, & F. T. Richard (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of behavioral neuroscience* (pp. 126–131). Oxford: Academic.

Definition

Psychoneuroimmunology (PNI) is the study of the functional relationships between central nervous system, behavior, and immune system.

These relationships have been documented to be multidirectional. For example, while behavior can influence immune processes through changes in nervous system signals, immune signals have been shown to alter the function of the central nervous system, thereby influencing behavior. Further, all systems exert regulatory control over each other, forming a complex communication network.

PNI research aims at describing this network and thus to contribute to the understanding of the behavioral and biological mechanisms underlying the links between psychosocial factors and health as well as disease development and progression. Psychosocial factors studied in PNI thereby range from negative psychological states such as depression and anxiety, to social support, interpersonal relationships, and personality factors. Disease-related processes investigated include cancer, susceptibility to infection, wound healing, HIV/AIDS, autoimmune diseases, and cardiovascular diseases. One important PNI branch focuses on how stress and stress-related neuroendocrine processes (see “► [Psychoneuroendocrinology](#)”) affect health as well as disease development and progression.

As such, PNI is truly interdisciplinary, integrating not only knowledge from immunology, neuroscience, and psychology but also from areas such as psychiatry, endocrinology, physiology, and pharmacology.

Psychoneuroimmunology

Jutta M. Wolf and Kirsten Rene
Department of Psychology, Brandeis University,
Waltham, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Behavioral immunology](#)

Cross-References

- [Behavioral Immunology](#)
- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Cytokines](#)
- [Immune Responses to Stress](#)
- [Inflammation](#)
- [Psychoneuroendocrinology](#)
- [Sickness Behavior](#)
- [Wound Healing](#)

References and Further Reading

- Ader, R. (2001). Psychoneuroimmunology. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 10(3), 94–98.
- Cohen, S., & Herbert, T. B. (1996). Health psychology: Psychological factors and physical disease from the perspective of human psychoneuroimmunology. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 47, 113–142.
- Maier, S. F., Watkins, L. R., & Fleshner, M. (1994). Psychoneuroimmunology: The interface between behavior, brain, and immunity. *American Psychologist*, 49(12), 1004–1017.
- Schedlowski, M., & Tewes, U. (Eds.). (1996). *Psychoneuroimmunology: An interdisciplinary introduction*. New York/Boston/Dordrecht/London/Moscow: Kluwer Academic/Plenum.
- Vedhara, K., & Irwin, M. (Eds.). (2007). *Human psychoneuroimmunology*. New York: Oxford University Press.

Psycho-oncology

- [Cancer: Psychosocial Treatment](#)

Psychopathology

- [Psychological Pathology](#)

Psychophysiologic Disorders

- [Psychosomatic Disorder](#)

Psychophysiologic Reactivity

Mark Hamer
Epidemiology and Public Health, Division of
Population Health, University College London,
London, UK

Synonyms

[Stress response](#)

Definition

Psychophysiologic reactivity refers to cardiovascular and biological responses to situations that are perceived as stressful, threatening, and/or physically harmful. Reactivity is defined as the response with respect to resting values. Some of the stressors that are commonly used in laboratory-based psychophysiological studies are designed to replicate real life, such as problem solving and public speaking tasks (Kamarck and Lovallo 2003). It is, however, often advantageous to use novel stressors, such as the Stroop word-color conflict task and mirror tracing, in order to remove the potential confounding influences of education and work experience. Psychophysiologic stress testing allows individual differences in responses to standardized stress to be evaluated and related to psychosocial factors and health outcomes (Chida and Hamer 2008). Behaviorally evoked psychophysiological responses are a relatively stable individual trait, consistent across time and stressor type. The magnitude or pattern of an individual's stress response is largely augmented by the immediate actions of the autonomic nervous system and delayed response of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis, which releases various hormones (i.e., catecholamines, cortisol, etc.) into the circulation. These systems drive specific responses that include an increase in blood pressure and heart rate, changes in cardiac sympatho-vagal balance, skeletal muscle vasodilatation, the release of hemostatic and inflammatory markers, and activation of various immune cells. Although psychophysiologic reactivity is beneficial for maximizing performance, excessive and enduring responses are also relevant to health and well-being and are thought to contribute to underlying disease pathology.

Cross-References

- [Blood Pressure Reactivity or Responses](#)
- [Heart Disease and Cardiovascular Reactivity](#)
- [Psychophysiologic Recovery](#)
- [Stroop Color-Word Test](#)

References and Readings

- Chida, Y., & Hamer, M. (2008). Chronic psychosocial factors and acute physiological responses to laboratory-induced stress in healthy populations: A quantitative review of 30 years of investigations. *Psychological Bulletin*, 134(6), 829–885.
- Kamarck, T. W., & Lovallo, W. R. (2003). Cardiovascular reactivity to psychological challenge: Conceptual and measurement considerations. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65(1), 9–21.

Psychophysiological Recovery

Mark Hamer
Epidemiology and Public Health, Division of
Population Health, University College London,
London, UK

Synonyms

[Relaxation](#); [Return to baseline](#); [Rumination](#)

Definition

Psychophysiological recovery is defined as the rate at which a cardiovascular or biological variable returns to resting levels following a stressor. It is not uncommon to observe prolonged elevation in blood pressure following induction of mental stress, and this might last for up to an hour or so following the cessation of the stressor. This has also been observed in naturalistic settings, for example, in teachers, blood pressure has been shown to remain elevated throughout the evening following a stressful working day at school. A slower rate of psychophysiological recovery has been linked to several risk factors and poorer health outcomes (Brosschot 2010). One difficulty with isolating the predictive value of recovery is that those taking the longest time to return to baseline are likely to be those who showed the greatest reactivity. Nevertheless, recent evidence suggests that poor recovery and heightened reactivity are in fact independent predictors of health

outcomes. The mechanisms underlying poorer psychophysiological recovery are incompletely understood, although various psychological factors such as rumination and coping strategies have been implicated.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Cardiovascular Recovery](#)
- ▶ [Psychophysiological Reactivity](#)

References and Readings

- Brosschot, J. F. (2010). Markers of chronic stress: Prolonged physiological activation and (un)conscious perseverative cognition. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 35(1), 46–50.

Psychophysiological

Douglas Carroll
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Definition

Psychophysiology is an interdisciplinary science concerned with the impact of psychological exposures and behavioral challenges on physiological systems. The adjective “psychophysiological” describes this impact. For example, the effect on blood pressure of exposure to a mental stress task would be described as a psychophysiological effect.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Psychophysiology: Theory and Methods](#)

Psychophysiology: Theory and Methods

William R. Lovallo¹ and Tony W. Buchanan²

¹Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, University of Oklahoma Health Sciences Center and VA Medical Center, Oklahoma City, OK, USA

²Department of Psychology, Saint Louis University, Saint Louis, MO, USA

Synonyms

Psychophysiological

Definition

How does our mental and emotional life tie in with the workings of the body? Psychophysiology is the branch of psychology that studies the behavior of the individual in a biological context. It is an attempt to chart the mutual interactions between psychological processes and the workings of the body, giving equal emphasis to both.

Description

A fundamental principle of psychophysiology is that thoughts and feelings cannot exist apart from the body – here we include the brain as part of the body. It follows that a full understanding of psychological processes depends on understanding the biological context from which they proceed. Due to its emphasis on integrating our understanding of mental and physiological processes, psychophysiology has contributed to research methods and theory building in behavioral medicine and also to the neurosciences of cognition and emotion. Psychophysiology finds its place in behavioral medicine by providing a theoretical basis and a set of measurement methods that help to disentangle relationships between psychology and biology and between our thoughts

and emotional experiences in relation to good and poor health. From this perspective, psychophysiologicalists bring a physiological emphasis to the study of behavior relative to mental processes including the measurement of cognitive functions and emotional states. As a result of this effort, psychophysiology has contributed to the science of the physiology of emotions and the impact of these psychophysiological interactions on good and poor health. Although it is accepted in psychophysiology that thoughts and feelings do not exist without the brain and the body, it is necessary to emphasize that the thoughts and feelings of interest are not to be seen as equivalent to, or directly reducible to, these physiological processes.

Importantly, behavioral medicine focuses on the feelings, behaviors, and physiological responses in response to stressors as situated (a) in a person and (b) in a particular environmental context. Behavioral medicine as a field may focus on both the person and the influence of contextual factors such as socioeconomic status or race/ethnicity on stress-related illnesses. The emphasis of psychophysiology, by contrast, is primarily on the person and specifically the functions of organ systems, such as the cardiovascular system, endocrine system, or immune system, in the course of psychophysiological investigations. This calls for a methodology that allows cognitive processes and emotional experience to be studied simultaneously with physiological functioning in ways that are unobtrusive and minimally invasive. This ensures that the person being studied is behaving in a normal manner, as in everyday life, and is not reacting unduly to the apparatus or laboratory setting. Psychophysiological techniques used to study cognitive processes include extensive use of scalp recordings of the electroencephalogram (EEG) accompanied by increasingly sophisticated processing of the measured waveforms. A related method for the study of cognitive processes and emotional states is the use of functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI). The fMRI signal is frequently processed to study momentary activity of brain regions in persons performing specific psychological tasks.

Statistical mapping of activity in the cortex and subcortical structures can then allow comparison of task-related activation with activation during appropriate control tasks. This method allows inferences about specific psychological processes and simultaneous activation of discrete brain regions to be mapped spatially and in real time. Together these methods permit a degree of temporal and spatial resolution of generalized activity in relation to specific regions of the cortex as well as processing of specific sensory events relative to cognitive processes.

Recent work using these combined methods has allowed for a better understanding of the bidirectional relationships between brain activity and physical health, whereby specific brain activity may lead to poor physical health, or vice versa. For example, stressor-evoked activity in particular brain regions is positively related to both markers of inflammation and risk for cardiovascular disease. Such findings point to several potential targets for treatment: psychotherapy for changing brain responses to stress, immunotherapy, and therapies targeting the cardiovascular system. The inclusion of measures of brain function in the psychophysiological toolbox of behavioral medicine represents an important advance toward understanding and ultimately improving the well-being of the whole person.

In the area of behavioral medicine, a primary emphasis has been placed on psychophysiological principles to study responses to stress in the laboratory, responses to stressors in daily life, and individual differences in such responses. Behavioral medicine is both a science and an approach to clinical practice. These two parts are concerned with the influence of behavioral factors on health and disease. Behavioral medicine holds that states of health can be influenced by overt behaviors, such as dietary habits, and by covert behaviors, such as emotional states and stress responses. This perspective leads behavioral medicine researchers to ask questions about the ways that emotional states and stress responses can affect health through their influence on physiology. The goal is to bring to light how our behaviors and our ways of perceiving and reacting to the world

may affect our well-being for better or worse. Such research addresses questions in several major areas, including (1) how the body responds during positive and negative emotional states, (2) how a given person's stress reactivity may vary over time, (3) the ways in which persons differ from one another in their stress responses, and (4) on the positive side, to establish the behavioral and physiological patterns that lead to good health and longevity. To carry out such research, behavioral medicine draws in part on the theory and methods developed in the field of psychophysiology. Psychophysiology, then, serves as a way of thinking and a set of methods that connect emotional and societal influences acting on an individual to physical health outcomes via measures of physiology that may impact such outcomes.

In laboratory studies, people are often exposed to stressors to determine how they react to such challenges both emotionally and physiologically. The results are thought to indicate how emotionally relevant events can affect physiology in daily life and whether they may contribute to disease. As one example, a commonly used stressor is public speaking. This challenges the subject to make up a short speech and deliver it without notes and to do so in a fluent and convincing manner. Public speaking is stressful because most people wish to avoid the embarrassment of doing poorly and to be seen as masterful and competent by observers in the laboratory. Using this method, the social evaluation and uncontrollability of the real world can be modeled in a small way in the laboratory, and the participant's ego is invoked to produce a stress response. During public speaking, this process of social evaluation, along with the resulting fear and anxiety, produces substantial increases in heart rate, blood pressure, and stress hormones, including catecholamines and cortisol. The person's mood states are assessed at rest before the task begins and again at the end using paper-and-pencil measures or brief interviews. Similarly, cardiovascular reactions are measured at rest and during stress using automated blood pressure monitors and impedance cardiographs, and endocrine responses may

be collected using saliva or blood sampling. In this manner, the person's psychological, cardiovascular, and endocrine reactions may be measured to provide a picture of how physiological reactions are set off by psychologically meaningful events.

This research strategy can then be extended to compare different kinds of people for potential differences in their physiological reactivity to stress. One common example is for the researcher to identify young, healthy individuals who have a family history of high blood pressure and also to find those with no such history. These family history groups can then be compared in the laboratory for differences in their stress responses, perhaps using the public speaking stressor or some other method. This allows potential differences in stress reactivity to be assessed in relation to a family history of this prevalent cardiovascular disease. It is then possible to follow such people for a period of years to establish who among them will become hypertensive and who will retain a normal blood pressure. Do people from the family history group have a greater likelihood of becoming hypertensive in middle age? Are people with greater reactions to stress more likely to become hypertensive, regardless of family history? Such studies therefore allow potential interactions between family history and stress reactivity to be studied. If people with a family history of hypertension who are also highly reactive to social stress are much more likely to become hypertensive, then we would conclude that the family history constituted a biologically based risk factor that was enhanced by an elevated level of stress responsivity. In contrast, should risk of hypertension be increased equally by high reactivity in people with and without a family history of hypertension, we would conclude that family history and reactivity tendencies contribute to hypertension risk in an additive manner.

Although the laboratory provides a well-controlled environment with an extensive range of measurement techniques, ambulatory methods have been used with increasing frequency outside the laboratory to document how challenges in

persons' daily lives can affect cardiovascular, endocrine, or immune systems. Such methods measure the person's responses to naturalistic stressors, such as work stress, or challenges in the home, such as family conflict or the stress of caring for a chronically ill spouse. Such studies rely on small, lightweight monitors that can be worn comfortably as persons go about their daily routines. These monitors can make reliable measurements in a wide range of circumstances. Such systems are able to track heart rate, blood pressure, and physical activity, as well as other indices. In addition, the person usually reports on their subjective state using smartphone-based measures. As in laboratory studies, this ambulatory method may be used to estimate the interaction of stress responses and disease risk. People with and without a family history of hypertension may be compared as they go about their daily lives. As in the laboratory, people with the largest or most prolonged reactions to stress at home or at work are suspected of having greater risk of future disease, and again, they may be followed up for actual occurrence of hypertension in future years. Ambulatory systems currently in use include traditional Holter electrocardiographs, blood pressure monitors, and impedance cardiographs. The success of these systems along with the increasing ubiquity of smartphone and smartwatch technology has led several commercial companies to develop reliable products for research and clinical use.

Although some research focuses on family history of disease in studying individual differences, other work seeks to connect psychological dispositions, such as hopelessness, depression, or temperament traits such as hostility to disease risk. Studies using this strategy may compare those who are highly hostile with nonhostile people using a specific hostility-provoking interaction, such as harassing comments during work on a difficult task. By measuring physiological reactions to such specific challenges in people with different psychological characteristics, a clearer picture may be developed of the psychological and physiological interplay that is suspected of contributing to disease.

Studies of genetic characteristics have recently yielded another influential method for establishing individual difference groups. In turn these genetically identified groups may be compared using psychophysiological methods. The availability of powerful genotyping technology on commercially available arrays and scanners has allowed large numbers of people to be classified with up to a million single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs). These SNPs are then taken to represent spontaneous mutations in functional genes that contribute to measurable differences in cognitive and emotional processes and ultimately health outcomes. For example, recent work has shown that variation in a SNP of the central catecholamine system is related to differences in stress hormone response, especially in people who have experienced early life stress. Such interactions among genetics, physiology, and life history demonstrate the complex patterns that may be addressed via psychophysiological research.

While much of this research focuses on negative emotional states, stress responses, and risk of disease, there is a growing interest in the relation between positive emotional states and resilience against disease. As in the above examples, such persons can be selected for their emotional traits using a combination of self-report techniques and in laboratory tests of brain function. Health outcomes can then be compared between people high in positive affect versus those reporting low positive affect.

The research examples listed above all depend on testing people while they are relaxed and resting, as well as when they are under stress or perhaps in a pleasurable mood. For these reasons, it is desirable to use measurement methods that do not cause discomfort or distress. Behavioral medicine research has therefore relied on methods of psychophysiological measurement that are noninvasive or minimally invasive and cause the volunteer no discomfort. Many of the examples above focused on the cardiovascular system which can be studied using noninvasive methods such as the electrocardiogram, blood pressure monitoring, and impedance cardiography to

measure pumping action of the heart and constriction of the blood vessels and, occasionally, fluid output to assess kidney function. Stress research often uses additional methods to track responses of the endocrine system, involving collection of urine, blood, or saliva for measurement of stress hormones and other substances associated with stress and pain. Still, other studies examine the immune system using minimally invasive techniques in the collection of blood for later measurement of the numbers of immune system cells and their biological activity. The application of techniques such as EEG and fMRI are similarly noninvasive, requiring no exposure to radioactivity and allowing for at least a semblance of normal behavior. Finally, the application of such psychophysiological techniques calls for appropriate selection of tasks and ways to analyze the data.

Psychophysiology provides both an important way of thinking as well as a set of tools in the larger field of behavioral medicine. The advent of new technologies including smartphone applications, new methods of ambulatory monitoring, and functional neuroimaging adds to the psychophysiological toolkit to better address the relationships between our psychology and our health. Future directions for this work include addressing how the brain takes in information – both from the external world and from the body – and translates this into stress responses. In addition to the sensory role played by the brain, new questions focusing on how brain responses may mitigate or exacerbate a person's response to stress will be important to tackle. Ultimately, the methods of psychophysiology will enable researchers and clinicians to better understand how psychological variables translate into health, for better or for worse.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Ambulatory Blood Pressure](#)
- ▶ [Ambulatory Monitoring](#)
- ▶ [Blood Pressure](#)
- ▶ [Blood Pressure Reactivity or Responses](#)
- ▶ [Heart Rate](#)
- ▶ [Hypertension](#)

- [Magnetic Resonance Imaging \(MRI\)](#)
- [Psychophysiological](#)
- [Psychosocial Factors](#)
- [Psychosocial Predictors](#)
- [Psychosocial Variables](#)
- [Stress Test](#)
- [Systolic Blood Pressure \(SBP\)](#)

References and Further Readings

- Buchanan, T., & Lovallo, W. R. (2019). The role of genetics in stress effects on health and addiction. *Current Opinion in Psychology*, 27, 72–76.
- Carroll, D., Ginty, A. T., Whittaker, A. C., Lovallo, W. R., & de Rooij, S. R. (2017). The behavioural, cognitive, and neural corollaries of deficient biological reactions to acute psychological stress. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 77, 74–86.
- Cohen, S., Gianaros, P. J., & Manuck, S. B. (2016). A stage model of stress and disease. *Perspectives on Psychological Science*, 11, 456–463.
- Erickson, K. I., Creswell, J. D., Verstynen, T. D., & Gianaros, P. J. (2014). Health neuroscience: defining a new field. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 23, 446–453.
- Gerin, W. (2010). Laboratory stress testing methodology. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 633–648). New York: Springer.
- Gianaros, P. J., & Jennings, J. R. (2018). Host in the machine: A neurobiological perspective on stress and cardiovascular disease. *American Psychologist*, 73, 1031–1044.
- Gianaros, P. J., Marsland, A. L., Kuan, D. C.-H., Schirada, B. L., Jennings, J. R., Sheu, L. K., Hariri, A., Gross, J. J., & Manuck, S. B. (2014). An inflammatory pathway links atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease risk to neural activity evoked by the cognitive regulation of emotion. *Biological Psychiatry*, 75, 738–745.
- Lovallo, W. R. (2016). *Stress and health* (3rd ed.). Sage.
- Obrist, P. A. (1981). *Cardiovascular psychophysiology: A perspective*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Steptoe, A., & Poole, L. (2010). Use of biological measures in behavioral medicine. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 619–632). New York: Springer.
- Turner, J. R. (1984). *Cardiovascular reactivity and stress: Patterns of physiological response*. New York: Plenum Press.

Psychosocial Adaptation

- [Psychosocial Adjustment](#)

Psychosocial Adjustment

Fong Chan¹, Elizabeth da Silva Cardoso², Julie Chronister³ and Emma Hiatt⁴

¹Department of Rehabilitation Psychology and Special Education, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

²Department of Educational Foundations and Counseling Programs, The City University of New York-Hunter College, New York, NY, USA

³Department of Counseling, San Francisco State University, San Francisco, CA, USA

⁴Rehabilitation Psychology and Special Education, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

Synonyms

[Psychosocial adaptation](#); [Rehabilitation psychology](#); [Response to disability](#)

Definition

Chronic illness and disability profoundly impacts the lives of many individuals. For example, approximately one in five Americans has physical, sensory, psychiatric, or cognitive impairments that affect their daily activities. Psychosocial adaptation entails the integration of illness or disability into the individual's life, identity, self-concept, and body image. Psychosocial adaptation is defined as the process in which a person with a disability moves from a state of disablement to a state of enablement and is characterized by the transformation from negative to positive well-being (Livneh and Antonak 2005). Observed across disability groups, psychosocial adaptation occurs as the individual moves toward a state of optimal person-environment congruence. The final stage of psychosocial adaptation, known as adjustment, represents maximum congruence between the individual's subjective experience and his or her external environment.

Description

Introduction

Psychosocial adjustment to chronic illness and disability (CID) is a long-term, dynamic process influenced by intrinsic and extrinsic variables within a specific context (Chan et al. 2009a; Livneh and Antonak 2005). There are several terms used to describe the adjustment to disability process. Specifically, *adjustment*, *adaptation*, and *acceptance* of disability are concepts commonly used to describe the process and outcome of coping with CID. *Adaptation* has been defined as the dynamic process a person with CID experiences in order to achieve the final state of optimal person-environment congruence known as *adjustment* (Smedema et al. 2009). The term *acceptance* was coined by Beatrice Wright (1983) who defined *disability acceptance* as an outcome in which the disability is incorporated as part of the individual's self-concept and is accepted as non-devaluing. Today, *response to disability* is a widely accepted terminology considered to most accurately describe the adjustment process, because it fully conveys response to disability as a subjective experience that is not necessarily negative. Furthermore, response to disability involves a dynamic process as opposed to a one-time event (Smart 2009). The response to disability process reaches beyond psychological aspects of adjustment to include a complex and dynamic interaction of a wide variety of psychological, societal, environmental, and personal factors. This entry will provide readers with a review of the prominent psychological, social, environmental, and personal factors that interact to influence the individual process.

Psychological Factors

Somatopsychology. Psychological aspects of CID have been most broadly explored in the context of *somatopsychology*, the study of the physique's influence on behavior and how that relationship is mediated by the effectiveness of the body as a tool for actions. The emphasis of somatopsychology is on the meaning of disability that is unique to the individual, as well as the value the disability holds for other individuals in a person's life (Smedema et al.

2009). The theory considers self-concept, body image, and coping to be psychological schemas and functions crucial to successful adaptation. Specifically, *self-concept* and *body image* represent mental schemas by which humans perceive and identify themselves. An individual with CID must alter one's body image and self-concept to incorporate the physical changes into one's daily life. Therefore, reorganization of these mental schemas is critical to successful adaptation (Livneh and Antonak 2005).

Coping. Coping strategies also affect the response to disability process. Coping requires the individual draw on some personal or environmental resource to reduce the negative impact of a stressor (Chronister et al. 2009), including both adaptive and maladaptive strategies. In the context of disability adjustment, coping generally refers to cognitions, emotions, or behaviors that mediate the relationship between disability-related stressors (i.e., nature, type, duration, prognosis, perception, and severity) and the response to disability. Coping strategies associated with response to disability can be divided into three psychological categories: cognitive, behavioral, and affective (Smart 2009). *Cognitive* response refers to how an individual chooses to think about or view the disability. *Behavioral* response refers to actions taken to manage the disability, including compliance to treatment recommendations, seeking social support, returning to work, and using self-advocacy strategies to manage the impact of stigma and prejudice. *Affective* response refers to how the individual feels about the disability and how he or she manages the emotions associated with the disability (Smart 2009). A positive coping strategy within the context of disability may include having a realistic view of the disability and awareness of limitations without exaggerating them. Conversely, a negative coping strategy may involve substance use or self-blame. The coping strategies employed strongly influence the response to disability. For example, healthy coping strategies, such as seeking out social support or redefining life goals, may improve body image and quality of life while decreasing social isolation and feelings of helplessness.

Based upon the disability acceptance theory (Wright 1983), Wright developed a cognitive

restructuring framework known as the *coping* versus *succumbing* model. In this model, a person said to be *succumbing* to disability overemphasizes negative effects of impairment and neglects the challenge for change and meaningful adaptation. Conversely, a person said to be *coping* with disability is able to focus on personal assets and is oriented to activities that are within the individual's physical capabilities (Smedema et al. 2009). Wright (1983) proposed four primary value changes that reflect the *coping* perspective including (a) *Enlargement of the scope of values*, which requires the individual recognize that values beyond those presumed lost can be achieved despite limitations of CID; (b) *Subordination of the physique* occurs when the individual changes the cognitive belief that physical is a true representation of one's worth, desirability, or competency; (c) *Containment of disability effects* occurs when the individual recognizes disability as limited to the impact of the actual impairment, rather than being globally debilitating; and (d) *Transformation from comparative status to asset values*, which occurs when the individual avoids comparing oneself to a nondisabled standard and focuses attention on his or her assets (Smart 2009). The four primary value changes challenge each of the previously held beliefs, resulting in acceptance of disability (Wright 1983). Conversely, signs of the *succumbing* perspective include (a) denial or acting as if the disability does not exist; (b) idolizing normal standards or applying old values to the new situation; (c) failure to modify previous aspirations within the context new situations; (d) eclipsing behavioral possibilities and limiting one's opportunity to learn new skills to address the new situations more effectively; and (e) overcompensation of perceived deficiencies in one area by exaggerated striving in another area (Wright 1983).

Stage model. The response to disability process has also been conceptualized as a sequence of psychological stages, similar to those experienced during grief (Smedema et al. 2009). Stage models typically describe the process of adjustment as a linear series of psychological stages, requiring the completion of previous stages before the final

stage of adjustment. Many stage models have been proposed to describe stages of adjustment. Livneh and Antonak (2005) concluded that the numerous stage models may be described within these five broad categories: (a) initial impact, which includes shock and anxiety; (b) defense mobilization, which includes bargaining and denial; (c) initial realization, which includes mourning, depression, and internalized anger; (d) retaliation, which includes externalized anger or aggression; and (e) reintegration or reorganization, which includes acknowledgment, acceptance, and final adjustment. The stage models provide a structure for understanding and predicting the course and outcome of an individual's response process (Smart 2009). Nonetheless, the applicability of the stage theory to persons with CID has been criticized for the following three reasons: (a) "stages" are not universally experienced; (b) a state of final adjustment (e.g., resolution, acceptance, assimilation) is not always achieved; and (c) psychological recovery does not follow an orderly sequence of reaction phases (Livneh and Antonak 2005). Finally, the existence of a universal, progressive, phase-like, orderly sequence of predetermined psychosocial reactions to disability has not been adequately supported by empirical research (Livneh & Antonak).

Ecological model. The most contemporary approach to conceptualizing and understanding the response to disability process is the *ecological* approach. Considered atheoretical, this approach incorporates components of somatopsychology and stage theory, while emphasizing the interaction of personal and contextual variables (social/environmental and personal factors) on psychosocial adaptation (Smedema et al. 2009). This approach also adopts a comprehensive and holistic approach to outcome measurement beyond that of acceptance or adjustment to CID, encompassing a person's overarching quality of life (Livneh and Antonak 2005). As such, understanding response to disability beyond the psychological processes described above is critical in developing a full perspective of an individual's response to disability. Below is a review of key contextual variables important to consider in the response process.

Societal Factors

Societal definitions of disability. The manner in which society defines CID influences the adjustment to process. Definitions of disability help to identify the location of the problem and who is held responsible for the solution (Smart 2009). Four of the most popular models of disability include the (a) biomedical model; (b) environmental model; (c) functional model; and (d) sociopolitical model. The biomedical model has the longest history. This model defines disability as pathology located within the individual and represents a deviation from the norm. Therefore, treatment is focused solely on “fixing” the individual. The environmental model suggests that the individual’s environment may cause, define, or exaggerate the disability. For example, if a person with paraplegia does not have a wheelchair, then the impairment is worsened. The functional model posits that the functions of the individual influence the definition of the disability. For example, an individual who is physically active would be much more affected by mobility impairments. Finally, the sociopolitical model, also known as the Minority Group Model or the Independent Living Model, proposes that disability is not a personal attribute, but caused by society, and thus society should bear the responsibility for dealing with disability (Smart 2009). *Self-advocacy* is a critical component of the sociopolitical model of disability. Self-advocacy is rooted in the American ideals of autonomy and self-determination. In contrast to consequences of the medical model, including dependency, marginality, and social exclusion, self-advocacy refers to persons with disabilities taking control of their own lives, speaking up for themselves, being in control of their own resources, and having the right to make life decisions without undue influence or control from others.

The World Health Organization International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health (WHO 2001) is a contemporary, biopsychosocial approach to defining disability that considers the biomedical, environmental, functional, and social models in its explanation of disability. This model conceptualizes disability along five major domains: (a) body functions and

structures; (b) activities; (c) participation; (d) personal factors; and (e) environmental factors (Chan et al. 2009b). The ICF recognizes disability as an interaction between all of these factors and cannot be defined apart from the individual’s context.

Societal attitudes. Negative attitudes toward persons with disabilities are well documented in the literature (Chan et al. 2009c). Negative attitudes or unfavorable evaluative statements related to a person, object, or event are considered *invisible barriers* that arise from the environment and impact the response process by limiting opportunities, access, and help-seeking behaviors, as well as reducing overall quality of life (Chan et al. 2009c). Related concepts include *prejudice*, *discrimination*, and *stigma*. *Prejudice* is a negative generalization toward a group of people and the assumption that an individual belonging to that group has the characteristics based on the generalization. For example, “all persons with CID are intellectually inferior.” *Discrimination* is the action carried out based upon prejudice. For example, an employer who does not hire a person with CID because he or she believes persons with CID are “unsafe.” Finally, *stigma* is a term that encompasses the problems associated with stereotyping, prejudice, and discrimination; it is the chain of events resulting from negative attitudes and beliefs, resulting in discrimination. Persons with disabilities often have limited access to work, housing, and other community resources because of stigmatizing attitudes that have led to discriminatory behavior (Chan et al.).

Commonly cited sources of negative attitudes and stereotypical views regarding persons with CID include the *safety threat*, the *ambiguity of disability*, the *salience of the disability*, *spread or overgeneralization*, *moral accountability for the cause and management of the disability*, *inferred emotional consequences of the disability*, and the *fear of acquiring a disability* (Smart 2009). Cook (1998) indicated that the general public also exhibits a “hierarchy of preferences” for specific groups of persons with CID; for example, people hold more favorable attitudes toward persons with physical disabilities than individuals with mental disabilities and persons tend to have more positive

attitudes toward persons with intellectual disabilities than those with psychiatric disabilities.

Environmental Factors

A large majority of persons with CID live at or below the poverty level (Smart 2009). Although most persons with CID report they want to work (Louis Harris Associate Inc. Polls 1994), and despite protections afforded by the Americans with Disabilities Act, persons with CID have greater difficulty finding or maintaining work, and unemployment and underemployment rates of persons with disabilities are high (Smart 2009). This is due in part to prejudice and discrimination, worksite inaccessibility, and financial disincentives built into many disability benefits programs (e.g., SSI/SSDI). Other environmental factors that influence the response process include limited mobility and access to transportation, architectural barriers, frequency and duration of hospitalizations, lack of institutional support (medical services, educational programs and technological supports; political and religious groups), poor living conditions, limited availability of job opportunities, and inadequate accessibility of worksites (Livneh and Antonak 2005).

Personal Factors

Age and developmental status. Age and developmental stage, such as those identified by Erikson (1968), interact with CID to influence the response process. For example, the process of adaptation differs significantly between individuals born with CID and those who acquire CID later in life. Developmentally speaking, for an *infant* with a congenital disability, the primary task of establishing trust in the world through the relationship with mother or primary caregiver may be compromised if the infant is hospitalized for long periods and is cared for by multiple health professionals (Smart 2009), whereas during *early adulthood*, the tasks of establishing a family and beginning a career are important and may be impacted by CID. For *older adults*, the resulting impact of CID on independence and functioning is variable, ranging from minimal impact to substantial lifestyle change. While functional loss and

disability may be a normal part of aging for some, social isolation, dependence, restricted activities and participation, and the loss of loved ones surrounding the individual can impact quality of life. Indeed, with disability, older adults face multiple life transitions in later years of life.

Gender. Gender is important to consider in the response process. Patterson et al. (2005) suggest that men and women respond differently to various CIDs. For example, in the area of spinal cord injury, men experience greater difficulties related to sexual functioning than women, resulting in feelings of loss of “manhood” or “masculinity.” With respect HIV/AIDS, women are more socially isolated than men because of cultural backgrounds commonly associated with females with HIV/AIDS, and because rates of transmission are lower and occur through a different mode. Furthermore, a woman with HIV/AIDS experiences issues related to pregnancy, including potential transmission from mother to infant. Women and men also respond differently following myocardial infarction, such that men return to work sooner and are more likely to participate in physical activity to cope with stressors related to the condition.

Culture. Culture involves the beliefs, customs, practices, social behaviors, and set of attitudes of a particular nation or group of people (Chronister and Johnson 2009), and *worldview* is the framework of ideas and beliefs through which an individual interprets the world and interacts with it according to their philosophy, values, emotions, and ethics. Culture and worldview inform how disability is defined and experienced, and both aspects contribute to the response to disability process. For example, in contrast to the explanation of disability perpetuated by the medical model, some cultures perceive the origin of disability to be of the metaphysical-spiritual realm. For other cultures, disability is a condition that should not be altered, because it is considered to be predetermined by fate and not amenable to adaptive intervention. For example, the deaf culture rejects the notion that group members have a disability and identify as individuals with a different communication modality that live in a hearing world. Furthermore, the number of persons from

culturally diverse backgrounds in the USA with CID is disproportionate, and these individuals are often at risk for experiencing multiple negative experiences or “double” discrimination and stigmatization, barriers that are likely to influence response to CID (Chronister and Johnson 2009).

Disability. Disability characteristics are also important to consider in the adjustment process and vary significantly across and within conditions. According to Smart (2009), there are ten disability factors that influence response to disability including time of onset (congenital, acquired), type of onset (insidious versus acute), course of disability (direction, pace of movement, degree of predictability), functions impaired (meaning of functioning, degree of intrusiveness, residual functioning and assistive technology), severity of the disability (number of disabilities experienced and areas of functioning affected, treatment necessary, and degree of stigma directed at the individual), visibility of the disability, degree of disfigurement, and prognosis (what is expected for the future).

Sexual orientation/identity. Sexual orientation is an important factor to consider in the response to disability process. Persons with CID that are identified with sexual orientations, such as lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, queer, questioning, intersex, and asexual (LGBTQQIA), are vulnerable to stereotypes, bigotry, abuse, bullying, and violence. They are subject to a complex array of prejudices by the mainstream population, including double prejudice for equal rights, higher rates of marginalization and discrimination, confusion in navigating identity development, and the prevailing view that persons with disability are asexual or unsuitable sexual partners (Miville et al. 2009).

Conclusion

Response to CID involves a complex and dynamic interaction of psychological, social, environmental, and personal variables. Somatopsychology and stage models provide a foundation for understanding the psychological processes of disability adjustment. The ecological approach builds upon this work to facilitate a

broader conceptualization of psychosocial adjustment to address the importance of additional personal and contextual variables. Indeed, response to CID is a unique, personal experience that must be considered within the individual’s context, including the sociocultural influences that contribute to how society defines and responds to CID. Contemporary definitions of disability conceptualize disability from a biopsychosocial perspective (i.e., WHO ICF model), recognizing body functioning and contextual factors as critical to disability determination and intervention planning. This framework, coupled with the ecological approach to adjustment to disability, replaces traditional approaches to yield a more holistic picture of adaptation.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Attitudes](#)
- ▶ [Chronic Disease or Illness](#)
- ▶ [Coping](#)
- ▶ [Depression](#)
- ▶ [Disability](#)
- ▶ [Health Disparities](#)

Acknowledgments The contents of this entry were developed with support through the *Rehabilitation Research and Training Center on Effective Vocational Rehabilitation Service Delivery Practices* (EBP-VR-RRTC) established at both the University of Wisconsin-Madison and the University of Wisconsin-Stout under a grant from the Department of Education, National Institute on Disability and Rehabilitation Research (NIDRR) grant number PR# H133B100034. However, those contents do not necessarily represent the policy of the Department of Education, and endorsement by the Federal Government should not be assumed.

References and Readings

- Chan, F., Cardoso, E., & Chronister, J. A. (2009a). *Understanding psychosocial adjustment to chronic illness and disability: A handbook for evidence-based practitioners in rehabilitation*. New York: Springer Publishing.
- Chan, F., Gelman, J. S., Ditchman, N. M., Kim, J. H., & Chiu, C. Y. (2009b). The World Health Organization ICF model as a conceptual framework of disability. In F. Chan, E. Cardoso, & J. Chronister (Eds.),

- Psychosocial interventions for people with chronic illness and disability: A handbook for evidence-based rehabilitation health professionals*. New York: Springer.
- Chan, F., Livneh, H., Pruett, S., Wang, C.-C., & Zheng, L. X. (2009c). Societal attitudes towards disability: Concepts, measurements, and interventions. In F. Chan, E. Da Silva Cardoso, & J. A. Chronister (Eds.), *Understanding psychosocial adjustment to chronic illness and disability: A handbook for evidence-based practitioners in rehabilitation* (pp. 333–367). New York: Springer.
- Chronister, J., & Johnson, E. (2009). Multiculturalism and adjustment to disability. In F. Chan, E. Da Silva Cardoso, & J. A. Chronister (Eds.), *Understanding psychosocial adjustment to chronic illness and disability: A handbook for evidence-based practitioners in rehabilitation* (pp. 479–528). New York: Springer.
- Chronister, J., Johnson, E., & Lin, C. P. (2009). In F. Chan, E. D. S. Cardoso, F. Chan, E. D. S. Cardoso, & J. A. Chronister (Eds.), *Understanding psychosocial adjustment to chronic illness and disability: A handbook for evidence-based practitioners in rehabilitation* (pp. 111–148). New York: Springer.
- Cook, D. (1998). Psychosocial impact of disability. In R. M. Parker & E. M. Szymanski (Eds.), *Rehabilitation counseling: Basics and beyond* (3rd ed., pp. 303–326). Austin: Pro-Ed.
- Erikson, E. H. (1968). *Identity: Youth and crisis*. New York: Norton.
- Livneh, H., & Antonak, R. F. (2005). Psychosocial aspects of chronic illness and disability. In F. Chan, M. J. Leahy, & J. Saunders (Eds.), *Case management for rehabilitation health professionals* (Vol. 2, 2nd ed., pp. 3–43). Osage Beach: Aspen Professional Services.
- Louis Harris Associate Inc. Polls. (1994). *N.O.D.L. Harris survey of disabled Americans*. Washington, DC: National Organization of Disability.
- Miville, M. L., Romero, L., & Corpus, M. J. (2009). Incorporating affirming, feminist and relational perspectives: The case of Juan. In M. E. Gallardo & B. W. McNeil (Eds.), *Intersections of multiple identities: A casebook of evidence-based practices with diverse populations* (pp. 175–201). New York: Routledge.
- Patterson, J. B., DeLaGarza, D., & Schaller, J. (2005). Rehabilitation counseling practice: Considerations and interventions. In R. M. Parker, E. M. Szymanski, & J. B. Patterson (Eds.), *Rehabilitation counseling, basics and beyond* (4th ed., pp. 155–186). Austin: ProEd.
- Smart, J. (2009). *Disability, society, and the individual* (2nd ed.). Austin: Pro-Ed.
- Smedema, S. M., Bakken-Gillen, S. K., & Dalton, J. (2009). Psychosocial adaptation to chronic illness and disability: Models and measurement. In F. Chan, E. Da Silva Cardoso, & J. A. Chronister (Eds.), *Understanding psychosocial adjustment to chronic illness and disability: A handbook for evidence-based practitioners in rehabilitation* (pp. 51–73). New York: Springer.
- World Health Organization. (2001). *International classification of functioning, disability, and health: ICF*. Geneva: World Health Organization. Retrieved November 28, 2008, from <http://www.who.int/classification/icf>.
- Wright, B. A. (1983). *Physical disability: A physical approach* (2nd ed.). New York: Harper and Row.

Psychosocial Aspects

► Psychosocial Characteristics

Psychosocial Benefits and Aspects of Physical Activity

Rick LaCaille¹ and Elaine Marshall²

¹Psychology Department, University of Minnesota Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

²University of Minnesota Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

Definition

Numerous aspects of psychological well-being related to physical activity (PA) have been examined using epidemiological, cross-sectional, and experimental research strategies, including depression, anxiety, mood/affect, stress, self-perception, cognitive performance, and quality of life. These aspects have been considered in terms of acute bouts and chronic exercise/PA and potential underlying mechanisms. Moreover, personality correlates of PA as well as excessive engagement in exercise have been examined.

Description

The beneficial effects of PA for enhanced physical health and reduced risk of premature mortality are well known; however, notable psychological benefits have also been documented in the literature

(Reiner et al. 2013). Although exercise has been used for treating a variety of mental disorders, currently there is limited high-quality research to support it as a stand-alone intervention rather than an adjunctive treatment to pharmacotherapy or psychological therapy (Morgan et al. 2013). Some meta-analytic evidence suggests sufficient levels of exercise may improve functioning, comorbid disorders, and cognition for individuals with schizophrenia (Firth et al. 2015) as well as reduce the risk for comorbid physical health problems (Holley et al. 2011). Although additional randomized control trials are needed to evaluate interventions for treating psychological disorders, some data suggest psychosocial benefits in terms of alleviating both primary and secondary symptoms of psychological disorders, including body dissatisfaction and improved social functioning and mood.

Depression

The most well-established support for the beneficial associations between psychosocial functioning and PA comes from studies examining depression. Prospective epidemiological studies have found 20% to 33% lower odds of depression for physically active individuals (Dishman et al. 2013). A recent meta-analytic review of exercise interventions found large effects for individuals with major depressive disorder, versus no treatment controls, with the reduction in depression appearing for aerobic exercise at moderate-to-vigorous levels of intensity (Schuch et al. 2016). Unfortunately, long-term maintenance of the beneficial effects for MDD was not available. Some data also point to PA yielding effects comparable to antidepressant medications with the effects for exercise appearing less quickly than medications but exercise offering a reduced risk for relapse with depression (Barbour et al. 2007).

A recent meta-analysis of high-quality meta-analyses of PA interventions and depressive symptoms (i.e., nonclinical depression) has reinforced the previous findings but revealed somewhat smaller moderate effects with subclinical depressed individuals (Rebar et al. 2015). Given that the severity of depression is greater in clinical populations and has more possibility for

larger decreases than in nonclinical populations, the differences in effect sizes may be attributable to potential floor effects with the subclinical samples. Taken together, the findings from these systematic reviews establish that PA has noteworthy effects for reducing depression.

Anxiety and Stress Reactivity

Another noteworthy area of well-documented salutary effects of PA includes decreased anxiety for both clinical and nonclinical samples. Studies of individuals without an anxiety disorder have shown reductions in state anxiety immediately following single bouts of exercise as well as more sustained PA (Ensari et al. 2015; Rebar et al. 2015). A recent qualitative review of exercise intervention studies with individuals with elevated levels of anxiety or anxiety disorders concluded that small-to-medium effect sizes were evident, with exercise equally effective as established treatments for anxiety (cognitive behavioral therapy and medication; Stonerock et al. 2015). Paralleling the findings with depressive disorders, anxiety reduction resulting from PA appears to be stable but more delayed. Generally, PA interventions with clinical samples yield anxiolytic effects, and these effects appear more substantial than observed with nonclinical samples (Conn 2010). No consistent differential effect appears evident for aerobic versus non-aerobic forms of PA, though greater anxiety reduction typically results with moderate-to-vigorous intensity levels of exercise.

Acute exercise initially stimulates the same cardiovascular responses as psychosocial stressors; however, different mechanisms (e.g., parasympathetic withdrawal vs. sympathetic activity) are engaged through exercise, which contribute to both its beneficial health effects and reduction in reactivity to stressors. Some evidence suggests increased fitness and chronic exercise lessen physiological reactivity and improve recovery from psychosocial stressors (Forcier et al. 2006). A more recent meta-analysis of both animal and human controlled aerobic exercise programs observed moderate effects for reductions in stress reactivity (Ramirez sand Wipfli 2013). Data from the animal studies indicated

that hormone and catecholamine reductions were the major variables of influence for reactivity to stressors following habitual exercise, whereas for the human studies, lowered blood pressure reactivity appeared an important outcome with chronic exercise. In addition to the beneficial effects of habitual PA, a meta-analytic review of acute aerobic exercise controlled trials revealed reduced stress reactivity for diastolic and systolic blood pressure with the stronger effects evident with moderate-to-vigorous exercise intensity lasting from 20 min to 2 h with stressors administered up to 30 min following exercise (Hamer et al. 2006).

Affective Response

While mood and affect have, at times, been used interchangeably, efforts have been made within the PA/exercise literature to elucidate these constructs (e.g., Ekkekakis and Petruzzello 2000). Moods are emotion-related expressions (e.g., anxious mood, depressed mood) that are multifaceted, spanning brief moments to days, and possibly developing without an identifiable event. Although affect is also viewed as an emotion-related expression, it is more basic and varies along the dimensions of activation-deactivation and the subjective experience of valence (i.e., pleasant-unpleasant). That said, following a single bout of exercise, affect has been found to increase in positive engagement and diminish in terms of physical exhaustion (Masters et al. 2011). Data have also suggested that exercise may result in greater vigor, relaxation, and tranquility and reduced tension, irritability, and fatigue. Exercise intensity strongly influences affective responses, with clearer positive affectivity occurring with low-to-moderate intensity exercise. Acute low-to-moderate exercise enhances affect for 30 min following an exercise session (Reed and Ones 2006). However, as intensity increases, more interindividual variability occurs in affective responses and may result in higher levels of negative/unpleasant affect. Research has indicated that the ventilatory threshold (i.e., near maximal level of intensity and transition from aerobic to anaerobic metabolic supplementation) appears to be the point at which pleasant affective responses

diminish while exercising, with affective response almost entirely negative at intensities that exceed the threshold (Ekkekakis et al. 2011). Importantly, research has also examined the bidirectional nature of PA and affect and generally observed higher positive affect predicted PA over the next few hours, though negative affect appears more inconsistently predictive of subsequent PA (e.g., Schwerdtfeger et al. 2010). Cognitive variables (e.g., attentional focus) appear to influence affective responses with intensities below or near the threshold; however, physiological/interoceptive variables (e.g., muscular or respiratory cues) come to play a more dominant role in influencing the affective response as the threshold is approached or exceeded. An important implication of this line of investigation lies in the potential to improve adherence to a PA program for exercisers by developing self-monitoring skills and cognitive strategies (e.g., attentional distraction vs. association) while exercising to maximize reinforcing positive affective responses (e.g., Gillman and Bryan *in press*).

Self-Perception

Self-perception is a multifaceted construct within which lie several related subjective attitudes and beliefs about one's self (e.g., self-esteem, self-concept) that may be organized in hierarchical levels (e.g., global self-esteem, physical self-esteem domain, situation-specific efficacy). Data suggests concerns with body image increase from adolescence through adulthood for both males and females, although females are at a higher risk overall. Exercise interventions have been shown to improve body image concerns, especially for older populations who report greater dissatisfaction (Campbell and Hausenblas 2009). Reviews of PA interventions reinforce this pattern of improved self-perceptions with the greatest improvements occurring for individuals with lower self-esteem. Some data also suggest that females may benefit more from participation in an exercise program than their male counterparts in terms of increased body image, physical self-esteem, and self-efficacy for exercise (Hausenblas and Fallon 2006). Importantly, global self-esteem has been shown to improve with participation in

PA as well, especially when this results in lower BMI and a change in physical fitness (Elavsky 2010; Reddon et al. 2017; Spence et al. 2005). Multiple studies have reported increased self-efficacy as a factor in overall global self-esteem (Babic et al. 2014; Elavsky 2010; Reddon et al. 2017). For instance, adult women who were initially sedentary or had low activity that engaged in a PA program reported increases in self-efficacy, which led to improved global self-esteem (Elavsky 2010). In a meta-analysis of children and adolescents of both sexes, participation in PA was strongly associated with perceived competence, although it should be noted that the study could not identify whether increased PA led to increased perceived competence or vice versa (Babic et al. 2014). This data indicates that improvements to self-esteem seem to be associated with by-products of PA, including reductions in BMI and increases in body image, self-efficacy, and fitness. Although both aerobic forms of PA and weight/resistance training seem beneficial, the combination of the two appears to offer greater improvements in body image and physical self-esteem.

Cognitive Performance

The effect of PA on cognitive functioning is an area with a rapidly growing body of research with evidence supporting the cognitive benefits for both adults and children (Clark and Williams 2011; Etnier et al. 2006). Because it is well understood that some amount of cognitive decline is normal with increased age, many studies focus on the aging population. Typically, studies with older adults have the most pronounced effects with simple reaction time/speed-based tasks and executive-control tasks (e.g., planning, response inhibition, task choice/switching). There is some evidence to support that PA improves cognitive performance for both cognitively normal and impaired adults, though research points to cognitively impaired adults showing more improvements with aerobic activity than those who are not impaired (Etnier 2017). Importantly, data also suggest that exercise may confer protective benefits with older adults, as those with higher levels of daily PA have been shown to be at less

risk of developing Alzheimer's disease compared with less active adults when evaluated 4 years later (Buchman et al. 2012).

With regard to school-aged children, benefits associated with PA have been observed in several cognitive domains (e.g., attention, reaction time, time-on-task, and executive functioning) as well as improved academic performance (Donnelly et al. 2016). Although cross-sectional design studies have suggested moderate size effects favoring fitter participants, most randomized exercise interventions indicate a more modest effect on improved cognitive processes. Not all forms of exercise demonstrate equivalent effects, in that more complex and controlled movements appear to yield greater improvements on executive functioning than simple actions (Álvarez-Bueno et al. 2017). For both children and adults, improved cognitive processing has been seen with acute bouts of exercise and longer-term PA programs (Biddle et al. 2000). Generally, acute bouts of exercise have demonstrated larger effects when lasting 30–60 min; PA programs exceeding 6 months have also shown greater improvements than briefer interventions. Although the emphasis within the literature is usually on aerobic forms of PA, combining aerobic and resistive/weight training forms of exercise has demonstrated somewhat larger cognitive performance gains.

While more robust research is needed, multiple studies have indicated that increased PA may lead to brain structure changes in both children and adults (Álvarez-Bueno et al. 2017). Studies point to increased volume in the hippocampus, an important structure for memory, with PA (Donnelly et al. 2016; Etnier 2017). In addition, increases in exercise have been associated with increases in brain-derived neurotrophic factor, which plays a large role in neuroplasticity and neural growth (Etnier 2017). The data in this area point to promising benefits of PA on multiple facets of cognition, with rapidly expanding research on the mechanisms and reasons for this.

Quality of Life

Quality of life (QoL) is a multifaceted construct often encompassing physical (e.g., physical functioning, bodily pain), mental (e.g., vitality), and

social components (e.g., role limitations, social functioning) or overall satisfaction with life and psychological well-being. In terms of PA, QoL has been studied mostly with older adults and/or those managing a chronic illness. A meta-analysis of older adults, without clinical disorders, found small-to-medium effects for PA on various aspects of quality of life/well-being, with aerobic forms of exercise and moderate intensity providing the greatest benefits (Netz et al. 2005). Another recent review examined the quality of life outcomes in the general adult population and reported consistently moderate-to-strong positive effects of PA in cross-sectional studies (Bize et al. 2007). More recently, Awick et al. (2017) examined the effects of changes in moderate-to-vigorous PA and psychological distress (i.e., depression, anxiety, stress, sleep dysfunction) on QoL in older adults enrolled in a 6-month exercise program. Reduced psychological distress mediated the relationship between increased PA and improved QoL. Importantly, the findings from this study help disentangle the benefits of PA and specify the direction of changes in PA, psychological distress, and QoL. However, given that considerably fewer investigations have employed randomized control trials to examine the effects of PA on QoL in healthy samples, the generalizability to the general population is limited at present.

Personality

There is a long history of examining potential associations between PA and personality characteristics, particularly traits (extraversion, conscientiousness, neuroticism, openness, and agreeableness) encapsulated within the Five-Factor Model (FFM). Systematic reviews have reported small positive associations with PA for extraversion and conscientiousness and a small negative association with neuroticism (Rhodes and Smith 2006; Sutin et al. 2016; Wilson and Dishman 2015). Of these associations, conscientiousness appears to have a more robust relationship with increased frequency of activity. Furthermore, time engaged in actual sedentary behaviors is related to higher neuroticism and lower conscientiousness (Sutin et al. 2016). While less consistently noted in the literature,

PA appears to be positively related to openness and inversely associated with agreeableness. The negative association between agreeableness and PA, however, looks to be accounted for by increases in agreeableness and declines in activity levels as one ages (Wilson and Dishman 2015).

Beyond higher-order personality traits, facet-level traits appear to show larger associations with PA (Rhodes and Pfaeffli 2012). In particular, activity (extraversion) and self-discipline and industriousness/ambition (conscientiousness) have shown larger effects. Other non-FFM-specific aspects of personality (e.g., grit, mental toughness) have also shown an association with greater PA (Gerber et al. 2012; Reed et al. 2012). Some attention has also been directed toward examining personality traits such as sensation seeking and impulsivity and their presence within individuals engaging in adventure-based PA (e.g., rock climbing, skiing, snowboarding). Generally, sensation seeking has been associated with higher levels of physical risk-taking (Taylor et al. 2006), though may vary somewhat by the type of activity (e.g., scuba divers; Lee and Tseng 2015). The potential bidirectional associations between regular PA and personality traits have also been garnering attention. However, thus far the findings appear mixed (Allen et al. 2017; Stephan et al. 2014), and it seems that personality is more involved in shaping of PA engagement than PA is in influencing personality changes.

Compulsive Physical Activity

Although most literature points to the vast benefits of PA on psychological well-being, some reports suggest potentially harmful effects for certain individuals. The diagnostic validity of “exercise addiction” has been questioned by some investigators, and the incidence of such patterns are thought to be rare, though excessive PA/exercise has been more frequently reported as a secondary feature of some pre-existing clinical disorders (e.g., body/muscle dysmorphia). Even though exercise addiction has not been included in any previous version of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, some researchers contend that compulsive patterns of exercise can be understood as behavioral addictions (Berczik

et al. 2014). By using Brown's components of addiction (Brown 1993), it has been asserted that because exercise can alter mood, lead to tolerance, create personal conflict, and result in withdrawal, it can be considered a behavioral addiction in certain cases (Berczik et al. 2014). Some researchers have also utilized the dualist model of passion (Vallerand et al. 2003) to differentiate between exercise engagement that may be construed as harmonious versus obsessive. For instance, Paradis et al. (2013) found that exercise dependence, as operationalized by the dimensions of time, tolerance, withdrawal, continuance, intention effects, lack of control, and reduction in other activities, was associated with high levels of obsessive passion. In contrast, harmonious passion only showed a positive association with the dimensions of time and tolerance, suggesting that for some individuals engaging in exercise is related to time spent exercising and increases in fitness, rather than a dependence (Paradis et al. 2013).

A notable negative effect of excessive exercise is risk for injury. Some research shows that individuals who exercise at high levels do so despite conflicts like injury or lack of time (Lichtenstein et al. 2017). In addition, while excessive exercise is typically seen as being related to eating disorders, some compulsive exercise is unrelated to weight loss and is done as a means to improve performance, yet is still associated with an unattainable body ideal (Lichtenstein et al. 2017). However, some data support the use of PA/exercise as an adjunctive treatment for eating disorders with improvements in reduced drive for thinness and binge eating (Stathopoulou et al. 2006). Of note, those at risk of engaging in excessive exercise may demonstrate high level of perfectionism, obsessive-compulsive traits, and neuroticism (Lichtenstein et al. 2017). This data suggests that some populations are at a greater risk for developing an unhealthy relationship with exercise due to maladaptive behavioral patterns, personality traits, and other variables.

Summary and Conclusions

In addition to numerous salutary effects for health, chronic disease management, and increased

longevity, PA has clearly demonstrated psychosocial benefits. Notably, PA has a sizeable antidepressant effect, as well as several other psychosocial benefits such as reduced anxiety, improved body image and physical self-esteem, enhanced cognitive performance, and greater QoL. Affective responses preceding and following PA are associated with subsequent PA and appear to vary as a consequence of the intensity with higher levels often resulting in a diminished positive and increased negative affective responses. Helping exercisers self-identify and regulate the affect-intensity relationship may prove useful in maximizing the reinforcing positive affective responses and improving longer-term adherence to a healthier PA lifestyle. Some personality traits (e.g., conscientiousness, extraversion) have been shown to have consistent, but relatively small, associations with PA. The association is less evident with lower-intensity lifestyle activities (e.g., walking) than more vigorous PA. Although PA may be associated with some diminished psychological well-being for select individuals engaging in compulsive behavioral patterns, overall, it appears that the benefits of PA surpass the risks of excessive activity. Numerous mechanisms have been proposed in the literature to elucidate the effects of PA, including psychological/cognitive (e.g., self-efficacy/competence, autonomy and personal control, distraction) and physiological/biochemical changes (e.g., thermogenic, cerebral adaptations, monoamine, and endorphin levels). Research directed toward further clarifying the underlying mechanisms for PA engagement is warranted and may serve a critical role in assisting identification of more efficacious and tailored strategies for those at risk of insufficient PA.

Cross-References

- [Benefits of Exercise](#)
- [Interventions and Strategies to Promote Physical Activity](#)
- [Physical Activity and Health](#)
- [Stress, Exercise](#)

References and Further Readings

- Allen, M. S., Magee, C. A., Vella, S. A., & Laborde, S. (2017). Bidirectional associations between personality and physical activity in adulthood. *Health Psychology, 36*(4), 332–336. <https://doi.org/10.1037/hea0000371>.
- Álvarez-Bueno, C., Pesce, C., Cervero-Redondo, I., Sánchez-López, M., Martínez-Hortelano, J. A., & Martínez-Vizcaíno, V. (2017). The effect of physical activity interventions on children's cognition and meta-cognition: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of the American Academy of Child & Adolescent Psychiatry, 56*(9), 729–738. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jaac.2017.06.012>.
- Awick, E. A., Ehlers, D. K., Aguiñaga, S., Daugherty, A. M., Kramer, A. F., & McAuley, E. (2017). Effects of a randomized exercise trial on physical activity, psychological distress and quality of life in older adults. *General Hospital Psychiatry, 49*, 44–50. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.genhosppsych.2017.06.005>.
- Babic, M. J., Morgan, P. J., Plotnikoff, R. C., Lonsdale, C., White, R. L., & Lubans, D. R. (2014). Physical activity and physical self-concept in youth: Systematic review and meta-analysis. *Sports Medicine, 44*(11), 1589–1601. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s40279-014-0229-z>.
- Barbour, K. A., Edenfield, T. M., & Blumenthal, J. A. (2007). Exercise as a treatment for depression and other psychiatric disorders: A review. *Journal of Cardiopulmonary Rehabilitation and Prevention, 27*, 359–367. <https://doi.org/10.1097/01.HCR.0000300262.69645.95>.
- Berezik, K., Griffiths, M. D., Szabó, A., Kurimay, T., Urban, R., & Demetrovics, Z. (2014). Exercise addiction. *Behavioral Addictions, 317–342*. <https://doi.org/10.1016/b978-0-12-407,724-9.00013-6>.
- Biddle, S. J. H., Fox, K. R., & Boutcher, S. H. (Eds.). (2000). *Physical activity and psychological well-being*. London: Routledge.
- Bize, R., Johnson, J. A., & Plotnikoff, R. C. (2007). Physical activity level and health-related quality of life in the general adult population: A systematic review. *Preventive Medicine, 45*, 401–415. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ypmed.2007.07.017>.
- Brown, R. I. F. (1993). Some contributions of the study of gambling to the study of other addictions. In W. R. Eadington & J. Cornelius (Eds.), *Gambling behavior and problem gambling* (pp. 341–372). Reno: University of Nevada Press.
- Buchman, A., Boyle, P., Yu, L., Shah, R., Wilson, R., & Bennett, D. (2012). Total daily physical activity and the risk of AD and cognitive decline in older adults. *Neurology, 78*(17), 1323–1329. <https://doi.org/10.1212/wnl.0b013e3182535d35>.
- Campbell, A., & Hausenblas, H. A. (2009). Effects of exercise interventions on body image. *Journal of Health Psychology, 14*(6), 780–793. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1359105309338977>.
- Clark, U. S., & Williams, D. (2011). Exercise and the brain. In R. A. Cohen & L. H. Sweet (Eds.), *Brain imaging in behavioral medicine and clinical neuroscience* (pp. 257–273). New York: Springer.
- Conn, V. S. (2010). Anxiety outcomes after physical activity interventions: Meta-analysis findings. *Nursing Research, 59*, 224–231. <https://doi.org/10.1097/NNR.0b013e3181dbb2f8>.
- Dishman, R. K., Heath, G. W., & Lee, I. M. (2013). *Physical activity epidemiology* (2nd ed.). Champaign: Human Kinetics.
- Donnelly, J. E., Hillman, C. H., Castelli, D., Etnier, J. L., Lee, S., Tomporowski, P., Lambourne, K., & Szabo-Reed, A. N. (2016). Physical activity, fitness, cognitive function, and academic achievement in children. *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise, 48*(6), 1223–1224. <https://doi.org/10.1249/mss.0000000000000966>.
- Ekkekakis, P., & Petruzzello, S. J. (2000). Analysis of the affect measurement conundrum in exercise psychology: I Fundamental issues. *Psychology of Sport and Exercise, 1*, 71–88. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S1469-0292\(00\)00010-8](https://doi.org/10.1016/S1469-0292(00)00010-8).
- Ekkekakis, P., Parfitt, G., & Petruzzello, S. J. (2011). The pleasure and displeasure people feel when they exercise at different intensities. *Sport Medicine, 41*(8), 641–671. <https://doi.org/10.2165/11590680-000000000-00000>.
- Elavsky, S. (2010). Longitudinal examination of the exercise and self-esteem model in middle-aged women. *Journal of Sport and Exercise Psychology, 32*(6), 862–880. <https://doi.org/10.1123/jsep.32.6.862>.
- Ensari, I., Greenlee, T. A., Motl, R. W., & Petruzzello, S. J. (2015). Meta-analysis of acute exercise effects on state anxiety: An update of randomized controlled trials over the past 25 years. *Depression & Anxiety, 32*, 624–634. <https://doi.org/10.1002/da.22370>.
- Etnier, J. L. (2017). Physical activity, physical fitness, and cognition. In *Oxford research encyclopedia of psychology*. <https://doi.org/10.1093/acrefore/9780190236557.013.198>.
- Etnier, J. L., Nowell, P. M., Landers, D. M., & Sibley, B. A. (2006). A meta-regression to examine the relationship between aerobic fitness and cognitive performance. *Brain Research Reviews, 52*, 119–130. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.brainresrev.2006.01.002>.
- Firth, J., Cotter, J., Elliott, R., French, P., & Yung, A. R. (2015). A systematic review and meta-analysis of exercise interventions in schizophrenia patients. *Psychological Medicine, 45*, 1343–1361. <https://doi.org/10.1017/S0033291714003110>.
- Forcier, K., Stroud, L. R., Papandonatos, G. D., Hitsman, B., Reiche, M., Krishnamoorthy, J., & Niaura, R. (2006). Links between physical fitness and cardiovascular reactivity and recovery to psychological stressors: A meta-analysis. *Health Psychology, 25*, 723–739. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0278-6133.25.6.723>.
- Gerber, M., Kalak, N., Lemola, S., Clough, P. J., Puhse, U., Elliot, C., & Brand, S. (2012). Adolescents' exercise and physical activity are associated with mental toughness. *Mental Health and Physical Activity, 5*, 35–42. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mhpa.2012.02.004>.
- Gillman, A. S., & Bryan, A. D. (in press). Mindfulness versus distraction to improve affective response and

- promote cardiovascular exercise behavior. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*.
- Hamer, M., Taylor, A., & Steptoe, A. (2006). The effect of acute aerobic exercise on stress related blood pressure responses: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Biological Psychology*, 71, 183–190. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopsycho.2005.04.004>.
- Hausenblas, H. A., & Fallon, E. A. (2006). Exercise and body image: A meta-analysis. *Psychology and Health*, 21, 33–47. <https://doi.org/10.1080/14768320500105270>.
- Holley, J., Crone, D., Tyson, P., & Lovell, G. (2011). The effects of physical activity on psychological wellbeing for those with schizophrenia: A systematic review. *British Journal of Clinical Psychology*, 50, 84–105. <https://doi.org/10.1348/014466510X496220>.
- Lee, T. H., & Tseng, C. H. (2015). How personality and risk-taking attitude affect the behaviour of adventure recreationists. *Tourism Geographies: An International Journal of Tourism*, 17, 307–331. <https://doi.org/10.1080/14616688.2014.1000955>.
- Lichtenstein, M. B., Hinze, C. J., Emborg, B., Thomsen, F., & Hemmingsen, S. D. (2017). Compulsive exercise: links, risks and challenges faced. *Psychology Research and Behavior Management*, 10, 85–95. <https://doi.org/10.2147/prbm.s113093>.
- Masters, K. S., Spielmann, G. I., LaCaille, R. A., Goodson, J. T., Larsen, B. T., Heath, E. M., & Knestel, A. (2011). Effects of home exercise on immediate and delayed affect and mood among rural individuals at risk for type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Journal of Social, Behavioral, and Health Sciences*, 5(1), 1–16.
- Morgan, A. J., Parker, A. G., Alvarez-Jimenez, M., & Jorm, A. F. (2013). Exercise and mental health: An exercise and sports Science Australia commissioned review. *Journal of Exercise Physiology Online*, 16, 64–73.
- Netz, Y., Wu, M. J., Becker, B. J., & Tenenbaum, G. (2005). Physical activity and psychological well-being in advanced age: A meta-analysis of intervention studies. *Psychology and Aging*, 20, 272–284. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0882-7974.20.2.272>.
- Paradis, K. F., Cooke, L. M., Martin, L. J., & Hall, C. R. (2013). Too much of a good thing? Examining the relationship between passion for exercise and exercise dependence. *Psychology of Sport and Exercise*, 14(4), 493–500. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.psychsport.2013.02.003>.
- Ramirez, E., & Wipfli, B. (2013). Exercise and stress reactivity in humans and animals: Two meta-analyses. *International Journal of Exercise Science*, 6(2), 144–156.
- Rebar, A. L., Stanton, R., Geard, D., Short, C., Duncan, M. J., & Vandelanotte, C. (2015). A meta-meta-analysis of the effect of physical activity on depression and anxiety in non-clinical adult populations. *Health Psychology Review*, 9(3), 366–378. <https://doi.org/10.1080/17437199.2015.1022901>.
- Reddon, H., Meyre, D., & Cairney, J. (2017). Physical activity and global self-worth in a longitudinal study of children. *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise*, 49(8), 1606–1613. <https://doi.org/10.1249/mss.0000000000001275>.
- Reed, J., & Ones, D. S. (2006). The effect of acute aerobic exercise on positive activated affect: A meta-analysis. *Psychology of Sport and Exercise*, 7, 477–514. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.psychsport.2005.11.003>.
- Reed, J., Pritschet, B. L., & Cutton, D. M. (2012). Grit, conscientiousness, and the transtheoretical model of change for exercise behaviour. *Journal of Health Psychology*, 18, 612–619. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1359105312451866>.
- Reiner, M., Niermann, C., Jekuac, D., & Woll, A. (2013). Long-term health benefits of physical activity – a systematic review of longitudinal studies. *BMC Public Health*, 13, 813. <https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2458-13-813>.
- Rhodes, R. E., & Pfaeffli, L. A. (2012). Personality and physical activity. In E. O. Acevedo (Ed.), *The Oxford handbook of exercise psychology* (pp. 195–223). New York: Oxford University Press. <https://doi.org/10.1093/oxfordhb/9780195394313.013.0011>.
- Rhodes, R. E., & Smith, N. E. I. (2006). Personality correlates of physical activity: A review and meta-analysis. *British Journal of Sports Medicine*, 40, 958–965. <https://doi.org/10.1136/bjism.2006.028860>.
- Schuch, F. B., Vancampfort, D., Richards, J., Rosenbaum, S., Ward, P. B., & Stubbs, B. (2016). Exercise as a treatment for depression: A meta-analysis adjusting for publication bias. *Journal of Psychiatric Research*, 77, 42–51. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpsychires.2016.02.023>.
- Schwerdtfeger, A., Eberhardt, R., Chmitorz, A., & Schaller, E. (2010). Momentary affect predicts bodily movement in daily life: An ambulatory monitoring study. *Journal of Sport & Exercise Psychology*, 32, 674–693.
- Spence, J. C., McGannon, K. R., & Poon, P. (2005). The effect of exercise on global self-esteem: A quantitative review. *Journal of Sport and Exercise Psychology*, 27, 311–334. <https://doi.org/10.1123/jsep.27.3.311>.
- Stathopoulou, G., Powers, M. B., Berry, A. C., Smits, J. A. J., & Otto, M. W. (2006). Exercise interventions for mental health: A quantitative and qualitative review. *Clinical Psychology: Science and Practice*, 13, 179–193. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1468-2850.2006.00021.x>.
- Stephan, Y., Sutin, A. R., & Terracciano, A. (2014). Physical activity and personality development across adulthood and old age: Evidence from two longitudinal studies. *Journal of Research in Personality*, 49, 1–7. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jrp.2013.12.003>.
- Stonerock, G. L., Hoffman, B. M., Smith, P. J., & Blumenthal, J. A. (2015). Exercise as treatment for anxiety: Systematic review and analysis. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 49(4), 542–556. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12160-014-9685-9>.
- Sutin, A. R., Stephan, Y., Luchetti, M., Artese, A., Oshio, A., & Terracciano, A. (2016). The five-factor model of personality and physical inactivity: A meta-analysis of 16 samples. *Journal of Research in Personality*, 63, 22–28. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jrp.2016.05.001>.

- Taylor, M. K., Gould, D. R., Hardy, L., Woodman, T., & LaCaille, R. (2006). Factors influencing physical risk taking in rock climbing. *Journal of Human Performance in Extreme Environments*, 9(1), 15–26. <https://doi.org/10.7771/2327-2937.1044>.
- Vallerand, R. J., Blanchard, C., Mageau, G. A., Koestner, R., Ratelle, C., Leonard, M., et al. (2003). Les passions de l'âme: On obsessive and harmonious passion. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 85, 756–767. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0022-3514.85.4.756>.
- Wilson, K. E., & Dishman, R. K. (2015). Personality and physical activity: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Personality and Individual Differences*, 72, 230–242. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.paid.2014.08.023>.

Psychosocial Characteristics

Adriana Dias Barbosa Vizzotto¹,
Alexandra Martini de Oliveira², Helio Elkis³,
Quirino Cordeiro⁴ and Patrícia Cardoso Buchain¹

¹Occupational Therapist of the Occupational Therapy Service, Institute of Psychiatry – Hospital das Clínicas University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

²Occupational Therapy Service, Institute of Psychiatry – Hospital das Clínicas University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

³Department and Institute of Psychiatry, University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

⁴Department of Psychiatry and Psychological Medicine, Santa Casa Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

Synonyms

[Psychosocial aspects](#); [Psychosocial factors](#)

Definition

Psychosocial characteristics is a term used to describe the influences of social factors on an individual's mental health and behavior.

Description

A psychosocial approach to human behavior involves the relation between intrapersonal psychological and environmental aspects. Psychosocial characteristics is commonly described as an individual's psychological development in relation to his/her social and cultural environment. “Psychosocial” means “pertaining to the influence of social factors on an individual's mind or behavior, and to the interrelation of behavioral and social factors” (Oxford English Dictionary 2012). Psychosocial factors, at least in the context of health research, can be defined as the mediation of the effects of social structural factors on individual health, conditioned and modified by the social structures contexts in which they exist (Martikainen et al. 2002). These statements raise the question of what the relevant broader social structural forces are and how such forces might influence health through their effects on individual features.

Psychosocial health is another term very important which includes four components of well-being: mental, emotional, social, and spiritual health. Their balance and interrelationships help a person lead a healthier life (Donatelle 2004).

Individual psychological and social aspects are related to individual's social conditions, mental, and emotional health. For example, the main factors that influence children's mental health are the social and psychological environment (Halpen and Figueiras 2004).

Environmental factors play an important role in the etiology of emotional problems in childhood. The cumulative risk effects from a “vulnerable environment,” e.g., negligence, poverty, drug abuse, are more important in determining emotional problems in children than the presence of one single stressor, regardless of its magnitude. According to Baryluk (2003), the analysis of the characteristics of a juvenile delinquent's sample showed a high rate of psychiatric disorder and social phobia, alcoholism, organic brain dysfunctions, low intelligence quotients, and behavior problems.

The term “psychosocial” is widely used for determining an individual’s health outcome. Psychological and social factors expressed as thoughts, expressive emotions, and behaviors are significant for human functioning and the occurrence of disease. Mentally healthy people tend to react in positive ways to negative situations, compared to emotional unstable people, who react negatively to similar situations. Hence, irrational thoughts may be a sign of bad psychosocial health. Therefore, for psychosocial instable people, it is preferable to have special social bonds with and social support from other people. On the other hand, prejudice from others is often a result of poor psychosocial health that causes poor social relations.

Hence it is understood that health is better understood in terms of a combination of biological, psychological, and social factors rather than only in biological terms (Santrock 2007). This is in contrast to the traditional and reductionist biomedical model of medicine which suggests that every disease process can be explained in terms of an underlying deviation from normal function such as a pathogen, genetic or developmental abnormality, or injury (Engel 1977).

The World Health Organization’s (WHO 2001) definition of health is “a state of complete physical mental and social well-being, and not merely the absence of disease and infirmity.” The concept of “psychosocial health,” in some cases, may combine traditional medical definitions of disease and infirmity with measures that reflect individual responses to disease and even in some cases indicators of the social context itself. However, such measures have merit in recognizing individuals’ experiences and quality of life, meaning an important outcome of individual’s psychosocial condition (Martikainen et al. 2002).

Cross-References

► [Psychosocial Impact](#)

References and Further Reading

- Barylnik, J. (2003). Psychopathology, psychosocial characteristics, and family environment in juvenile delinquents. *The German Journal of Psychiatry*, 6, 30–32. <http://www.gjpsy.uni-goettingen.de>. ISSN 1433-1055.
- Donatelle, R. J. (2004). *Health: The basics*. 5E. Publication, March 2004 copyrights date. San Francisco: Pearson/Benjamin Cummings.
- Engel, G. L. (1977). The need for a new medical model: A challenge for biomedicine. *Science*, 196, 129–136.
- Halpen, R., & Figueiras, A. C. M. (2004). Environmental influences on child mental health. *Journal of Pediatrics*, 80(2 Suppl), S104–S110.
- Martikainen, P., Bartley, M., & Lahelma, E. (2002). Psychosocial determinants of health in social epidemiology. *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 31, 1091–1093.
- OED Online. (2012). Oxford University Press. Dictionary online <http://www.oed.com/>. Retrieved April 29, 2012.
- Santrock, J. W. (2007). *A topical approach to human life-span development* (3rd ed.). St. Louis: McGraw-Hill.
- World Health Organization (WHO). (2001). *The mental health report 2001: Mental health, new understanding hope*. Geneva: Author.

Psychosocial Factors

Jane Upton

Department of Psychology, William James College, Newton, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Psychological factors](#); [Psychosocial variables](#)

Definition

Social factors include general factors at the level of human society concerned with social structure and social processes that impinge on the individual. Psychological factors include individual-level processes and meanings that influence mental states. Sometimes, these words are combined as “psychosocial.” This is shorthand term for the combination of psychological and social, but it also implies that the effect of social processes

are sometimes mediated through psychological understanding (Stansfeld and Rasul 2007).

Description

The relationship between psychological factors and the physical body can be influenced by social factors, the effects of which are mediated through psychological understanding. Examples of psychosocial factors include social support, loneliness, marriage status, social disruption, bereavement, work environment, social status, and social integration. To illustrate that the role psychosocial factors can play in physical disease, this entry will focus on the relationship between social support and mortality.

In 1979, Berkman and Syme conducted a prospective study to investigate the relationship between social support and mortality (Berkman and Syme 1979). The study included 6,928 adults from the general population of Alameda County, California. They recorded four sources of social contact: marriage, contacts with close friends and relatives, church membership, and informal and formal group associations; mortality was followed-up 9 years later. They found that respondents with each type of social tie had lower mortality rates than respondents lacking such connections. From these four variables, they then constructed a Social Network Index, which weighted intimate contacts more heavily than more superficial ones. Using this index, they found a consistent pattern of increased mortality rates with each decrease in social connection. Men who were the most isolated had an age-adjusted mortality rate 2.3 times higher than men with the most connections. This relationship was independent of self-reported physical health status, year of death, socioeconomic status, and such health behaviors as smoking, alcohol ingestion, physical inactivity, obesity, and low utilization of preventive health services or health practices.

The effects of level of social support on mortality rates were investigated by Rosengren and colleagues (Rosengren et al. 1993). They invited half of all men in Gothenburg who were born in

1933 (then 50 years old) to have a health examination and complete a measures of emotional support and social integration. Seventy-six percent responded. These men were then followed-up after 7 years, and mortality ascertained. Their data indicated that emotional support may attenuate the impact of adverse life events, possibly by strengthening the psychobiological resistance to stress.

Frasure-Smith and colleagues found in their study of 887 post-myocardial infarction (MI) patients that depression, but not social support, was directly related to mortality (Frasure-Smith et al. 2000). However, very high levels of support protected patients from the negative prognostic consequences of depression. They found that three different measures of social support independently improved depression: higher scores on a measure of perceived social support, a greater number of close friends and relatives, and living with other people. They suggest that clinicians should ascertain patient's views of their social support in their assessments of post-MI depression.

Differences in health status between people with differing levels of social integration cannot simply be attributed to differences in health behaviors between the two groups. In two parallel studies, Cacioppo and colleagues investigated four mechanisms by which loneliness (a discrepancy between their desired and actual relationships) may negatively impact on morbidity and mortality (Cacioppo et al. 2002): (1) poorer health behaviors than nonlonely individuals, (2) altered cardiovascular activation, (3) elevated levels of hypothalamic pituitary adrenocortical activation, and (4) poorer sleep quality. Participants were 89 undergraduate students, and in a second study, 25 older adults (age range 53–78 years). They found that the health behaviors of lonely and nonlonely participants were similar. However, cardiovascular function differed between these groups in both the younger and older participants. They speculated that the differences they found in the hemodynamic function observed in the younger subjects may contribute to elevated blood pressure in lonely older

adults. They also found that younger and older lonely adults suffered lower quality sleep, possibly leading to diminished health and well-being.

The plethora of research in this area, measuring different aspects of social relationships, led to uncertainty as to which aspect increased the risk of mortality. A recent meta-analytic review of 148 studies has revealed that stronger social relationships increased the likelihood of survival by 50% (Holt-Lunstad et al. 2010). They found that complex measures of social integration were better predictors of mortality than binary indicators of residential status (e.g., living alone or with others). This is partly because living in a negative social relationship can increase risk of mortality. However, they also caution against assuming causation, due to the difficulty of conducting randomized controlled trials to investigate this topic. They conclude that the data they present makes a compelling case for social relationship factors to be viewed as an important risk factor alongside factors such as smoking, diet, and exercise.

Cross-References

- [Acute Myocardial Infarction](#)
- [Bereavement](#)
- [Cardiovascular Risk Factors](#)
- [Daily Stress](#)
- [Loneliness](#)
- [Psychological Factors and Health](#)
- [Psychosocial Characteristics](#)
- [Social Support](#)

References and Further Reading

- Berkman, L., & Syme, S. (1979). Social networks, host resistance, and mortality: A nine-year follow-up study of alameda county residents. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 109(2), 186–204.
- Cacioppo, J., Hawkley, L., Crawford, L., Ernst, F., Burleson, M., Kowalewski, R., et al. (2002). Loneliness and health: Potential mechanisms. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 64, 407–417.
- Frasure-Smith, N., Lesperance, F., Gravel, G., Masson, A., Juneau, M., Talajic, M., et al. (2000). Social support,

depression, and mortality during the first year after myocardial infarction. *Circulation*, 101, 1919–1924.

Holt-Lunstad, J., Smith, T., & Layton, J. (2010). Social relationships and mortality risk: A meta-analytic review. *PLoS Medicine*, 7(7). <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pmed.1000316>.

Rosengren, A., Orth-Gomer, K., Wedel, H., & Wilhelmsen, L. (1993). Stressful life events, social support, and mortality in men born in 1933. *British Medical Journal*, 307, 1102–1105.

Stansfeld, S., & Rasul, F. (2007). Psychosocial factors, depression and illness. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Depression and physical illness* (pp. 19–52). Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.

Psychosocial Factors and Traumatic Events

Shin-Ichi Suzuki¹ and Yuko Yanai²

¹Faculty of Human Sciences, Graduate School of Human Sciences, Waseda University, Tokorozawa-shi, Saitama, Japan

²Department of Psycho-Oncology, National Cancer Center Japan, Chuo-ku, Japan

Synonyms

[Interpersonal relationships](#); [Psychosocial stress](#); [Stressful life event](#)

Definition

Psychosocial factors are influences that affect a person psychologically or socially. There are multidimensional constructs encompassing several domains such as mood status (anxiety, depression, distress, and positive affect), cognitive behavioral responses (satisfaction, self-efficacy, self-esteem, and locus of control), and social factors (socioeconomic status, education, employment, religion, ethnicity, family, physical attributes, locality, relationships with others, changes in personal roles, and status).

Description

Psychosocial Factors in Everyday Life

Psychosocial factors and influences differ across individuals and may contribute to the development or aggravation of mental and physical disorders. Previous studies have indicated that depression, anxiety, hostility, social isolation and lack of social support, work-related stress, and behavioral escape-avoidance coping were associated with the risk of mortality for patients with cardiac disease (Rozanski et al. 1999; Hemingway and Marmot 1999). A serious loss (bereavement, divorce, and disability), relationship problems, work-related stress, family crisis, financial setback, or any unwelcome life change can trigger depressive disorders (Meltzer et al. 1995). Furthermore, those disorders may negatively impact some psychosocial factors. For example, depressive disorders substantially reduce a person's ability to work effectively and personal and family income and increase the probability of unemployment (Ormel et al. 1999).

Psychosocial Factors in Natural and Technological Disasters

Repeated disasters in Japan such as the Great Hanshin Earthquake and the Great East Japan Earthquake showed us the importance of these psychosocial factors in life events. Furthermore, the Great East Japan Earthquake caused not only death and destruction but also secondary disasters such as the Fukushima nuclear accident. The severity of these natural and technological disasters (e.g., the extent of death and destruction, the length of exposure, evacuation, proximity to the epicenter, and contradictory media reports about the health effects of radiation) are likely to have an adverse impact on victims' mental health (Bromet et al. 2011).

In contrast, positive psychosocial factors in life events such as connectedness to others, the spirit of patience, politeness, and mutual aid may contribute to prevent an aggravation of the situation and change things for the better. In The Great Hanshin Earthquake and The Great East Japan Earthquake, Japanese people have handled their

grief and loss and overcome numerous difficulties with mutual cooperation and the spirit of patience. Indeed, some survivors managed to endure the traumatic events relatively well, and resilience and social tie were significant protective factors in dealing with such events (Kukihara et al. 2014; Sugimoto et al. 2015). These psychosocial factors provide us the energy to recover from severe life events.

Cross-References

- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- [Depression: Symptoms](#)
- [Life Events](#)
- [Religion/Spirituality](#)
- [Self-Esteem](#)
- [Socioeconomic Status \(SES\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bernard, L. B. (1988). *Health psychology: A psychosocial perspective*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice Hall.
- Bromet, E. J., Havenaar, M., & Guey, L. T. (2011). A 25 year retrospective review of the psychological consequences of the Chernobyl accident. *Clinical Oncology*, 23, 297–305.
- Davison, L. M., Weiss, L., O'Keefe, M., & Baum, A. (1991). Acute stressors and chronic stress at Three Mile Island. *Journal of Traumatic Stress*, 4, 481–493.
- Hemingway, H., & Marmot, M. (1999). Psychosocial factors in the aetiology and prognosis of coronary heart disease: Systematic review of prospective cohort studies. *British Medical Journal*, 318, 1460–1467.
- Kukihara, H., Yamawaki, N., Uchiyama, K., Arai, S., & Horikawa, E. (2014). Trauma, depression and resilience of earthquake/tsunami/nuclear disaster survivors of Hirono, Fukushima, Japan. *Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences*, 68, 524–533.
- Meltzer, H., Gill, B., & Petticrew, M. (1995). *The prevalence of psychiatric morbidity among adults living in private households, OPCS surveys of psychiatric morbidity, report 1*. London: HMSO.
- Ormel, J., Von Korff, M., Oldehinkel, T., Simon, G., Tiemens, B. G., & Ustun, T. B. (1999). Onset of disability in depressed and non-depressed primary care patients. *Psychological Medicine*, 29, 847–853.
- Rozanski, A., Blumenthal, J. A., & Kaplan, J. (1999). Impact of psychological factors on the pathogenesis of cardiovascular disease and implications for therapy. *Circulation*, 99, 2192–2217.

Sugimoto, T., Umeda, M., Shinozaki, T., Naruse, T., & Miyamoto, Y. (2015). Sources of perceived social support associated with reduced psychological distress at 1 year after the great East Japan earthquake: Nationwide cross-sectional survey in 2012. *Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences*, 69, 580–586.

Psychosocial Impact

Alexandra Martini de Oliveira¹, Patrícia Cardoso Buchain², Adriana Dias Barbosa Vizzotto², Helio Elkis³ and Quirino Cordeiro⁴

¹Occupational Therapy Service, Institute of Psychiatry – Hospital das Clínicas University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

²Occupational Therapist of the Occupational Therapy Service, Institute of Psychiatry – Hospital das Clínicas University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

³Department and Institute of Psychiatry, University of São Paulo Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

⁴Department of Psychiatry and Psychological Medicine, Santa Casa Medical School, São Paulo, SP, Brazil

Synonyms

Psychological and social effects

Definition

Psychosocial impact is defined as the effect caused by environmental and/or biological factors on individual's social and/or psychological aspects.

Several psychiatric disorders may affect psychological and social aspects of individual's lives. Examples are (a) obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), whereas these patients might present social marital disabilities, problems related to occupations and low income (Vikas et al. 2011), (b) people with cancer, who experienced negative psychological effect such as bad feelings and

fears, as well as moderate to high levels of anxiety and psychological distress (Primo et al. 2000), (c) traumatic events such disasters, urban violence, and expose of terrorism may also impact on present psychosocial status (Eisenman et al. 2009). Natural disasters, like flooding, have been reported to cause a wide range of psychosocial impacts, leading the victims to present psychiatric symptoms (Paranjothy et al. 2011). For example, after the tsunami in Southern Thailand and Hurricane Katrina in the USA caused high levels of posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) among the victims. The prevalence of mental health disorders has been significantly higher among individuals who experienced floodwater in their houses compared to individuals who did not face this type of personal experience (Paranjothy et al. 2011). Individuals who are victims of these environmental phenomena might need more substantial and sometimes sustained intervention (de Zulueta 2007).

Cross-References

► [Psychosocial Characteristics](#)

References and Readings

- de Zulueta, C. F. (2007). Mass violence and mental health: Attachment and trauma. *International Review of Psychiatry*, 19, 221–233.
- Eisenman, D. P., Glik, D., Ong, M., Zhou, Q., Tseng, C. H., Long, A., et al. (2009). Terrorism-related fear and avoidance behavior in a multiethnic urban population. *American Journal of Public Health*, 99, 168–174.
- Paranjothy, S., Gallacher, J., Amlôt, R., Rubin, G. J., Page, L., Baxter, T., et al. (2011). Psychosocial impact of the summer 2007 floods in England. *BMC Public Health*, 11, 145.
- Primo, K., Compas, B. E., Oppedisano, G., Howell, D. C., Epping-Jordan, J. E., & Krag, D. N. (2000). Intrusive thoughts and avoidance in breast cancer: Individual differences and associations with psychological distress. *Psychology and Health*, 14, 1141–1153.
- Vikas, A., Avasthi, A., & Sharan, P. (2011). Psychosocial impact of obsessive-compulsive disorder on patients and their caregivers: A comparative study with depressive disorder. *The International Journal of Social Psychiatry*, 57, 45–56.

Psychosocial Implications

- [Genetic Testing, Psychological Implications](#)

Psychosocial Intervention

- [Cancer: Psychosocial Treatment](#)

Psychosocial Oncology

- [Cancer: Psychosocial Treatment](#)

Psychosocial Predictors

Joanna Long and Jennifer Cumming
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Health behavior predictors](#); [Psychological predictors](#)

Definition

Psychosocial variables which act as predictors either of other psychosocial variables or behaviors, cognitions, risk, severity, mortality, or a number of other factors which may relate to behavioral medicine research, such as health outcomes.

Description

Psychosocial variables encompass both the social and psychological aspects of someone's life and

cover a broad range of both positive and negative factors often measured in behavioral medicine research. Social factors include quality of life, health behaviors (alcohol consumption, smoking status, drug use), physical activity level, and socioeconomic status, whereas personal factors include depressive symptoms, perceived stress levels, anxiety, and mood (see ► [“Psychosocial Variables”](#)). Psychosocial variables often interrelate and can be used to predict behavioral and/or health outcomes. These variables also act as risk factors for mental health and chronic conditions, such as rheumatoid arthritis, HIV, gastrointestinal disorders, and Parkinson's disease, among many others. For these reasons, psychosocial predictors are important to assess when investigating cofactors of disease and targeting interventions within a population.

Within cross-sectional research, psychosocial predictors may correlate with other psychosocial variables or the behavior and health outcomes investigated. Examples of cross-sectional studies using psychosocial predictors within behavioral medicine research include Ng and Jeffery (2003) who found an inverse relationship between perceived stress and exercise, and Blair and Church (2004) who investigated the link between physical activity status with obesity and health behaviors, such as smoking and diet. Although this design provides immediate research, it is limited to a particular time point for assessing relationships that may vary over time. Alternatively, longitudinal designs are used to study psychosocial predictors in a group of individuals over a period of time, perhaps for many years. This may permit researchers to predict future behaviors, risk, and health outcomes in research. For example, Leserman et al. (1999) investigated the relationship between perceived stress and AIDS diagnosis in HIV patients over 5.5 years. Also, Whooley et al. (2008) investigated the relationship between depressive symptoms and health behaviors such as physical activity levels, smoking status, and alcohol consumption with risk of cardiovascular events over 5 years in patients with existing coronary heart disease. Taking assessments at multiple time points permits researchers to examine whether changes in psychosocial factors relate to

long-term disease or condition changes. Compared to cross-sectional research, a longitudinal study also provides a more accurate idea of the direction of the predictor's relationship. However, cross-sectional and longitudinal studies cannot infer causation or show the direction of the relationship.

Cross-References

► [Psychosocial Variables](#)

References and Further Reading

- Blair, S. N., & Church, T. S. (2004). The fitness, obesity, and health equation: Is physical activity the common denominator? *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 292(10), 1232–1234.
- Leserman, J., Jackson, E. D., Petitto, J. M., Golden, R. N., Silva, S. G., Perkins, D. O., et al. (1999). Progression to AIDS: The effects of stress, depressive symptoms, and social support. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 61, 397–406.
- Ng, D. M., & Jeffery, R. W. (2003). Relationships between perceived stress and health behaviors in a sample of working adults. *Health Psychology*, 22(6), 638–642.
- Whooley, M. A., de Jonge, P., Vittinghoff, E., Otte, C., Moos, R., Carney, R. M., et al. (2008). Depressive symptoms, health behaviors, and risk of cardiovascular events in patients with coronary heart disease. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 300(20), 2379–2388.

Psychosocial Stress

- [Psychosocial Factors and Traumatic Events](#)
- [Trier Social Stress Test](#)

Psychosocial Traits

- [Character Traits](#)

Psychosocial Variables

Joanna Long and Jennifer Cumming
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Health behavior variables](#); [Psychological variables](#)

Definition

Variables encompassing psychological and social factors.

Description

The term “psychosocial” has a broad meaning when considering health research and social epidemiology. It is formed from two words: psychological and social. Psychological factors can be positive, such as happiness, affect, and vitality, or negative, such as anxiety, perceived stress, and depressive symptoms. These can also be split to distinguish between trait and state aspects. Personality traits, depressive factors, well-being, quality of life, and the impact of significant life events and trauma are less likely to fluctuate on a day-to-day basis (i.e., more trait-like or stable variables), whereas anxiety, perceived stress, mood, affect, happiness, and vitality are more unstable (i.e., more state-like). Furthermore, cognitive, behavioral, and affective facets within psychosocial factors can be identified. For example, someone may think about taking up smoking, and subsequently begin smoking, which in turn may lower perceived stress levels.

Social factors involve the relationship a person has with their environment, such as their age, sex, ethnicity, level, and perception of social support, socioeconomic status, neighborhood factors, family history, and health behaviors. The environment can also promote or hinder whether individuals

engage in positive or negative health behavior. For example, certain behavioral factors, such as the likelihood of exercise participation, smoking, alcohol intake, and drug abuse may be influenced by the physical environment. If an individual lives within a community that is safe and accessible, for example, they may be more likely to engage in high levels of outdoor physical activity, such as walking around the neighborhood.

Psychosocial variables therefore encompass a large range of factors relating to an individual's psychological state and social environment and potentially have either positive and negative consequences for health and behavioral outcomes (see ► [“Psychosocial Predictors”](#)). These variables are also important to consider when investigating either the risk, or progression, of an illness or disease. For example, high perceived stress levels, anxiety, and depression may accelerate progression of HIV or coronary heart disease (Barefoot et al. 1996; Leserman 2008). Similarly, understanding of these variables allows researchers to examine developmental processes, such as healthy aging or the effects of a long-term intervention within the population.

There are two main ways of measuring psychosocial variables. Administering questionnaires is the most common method used in research. For example, the Perceived Stress Scale (PSS) (Cohen et al. 1983) assesses the degree to which situations in one's life are perceived as stressful, whereas the Centre for Epidemiological Studies Depression Scale (CES-D) (Kohout et al. 1993) measures current level of depressive symptomatology. The items making up the questionnaire are often summed together to create an overall score for the variable being measured (e.g., depression) and can be compared to norms generated for clinical and general populations. For example, the CES-D questionnaire has a range between 0 and 30, with a score of 10 or more indicating possible clinical depression. It is important that the questionnaires used are reliable, valid, and specific to the population which is being studied. Alternatively, researchers may choose to use structured or semistructured interviews to assess psychosocial variables. A structured interview involves asking respondents a predetermined and limited number

of questions about a specific topic, whereas a semistructured interview is more flexible and allows new questions to be brought up or emerging topics to be explored. Interviews provide a qualitative aspect to the research, which is often used to complement the quantitative data provided by questionnaires when taking a mixed-methods approach.

Cross-References

- [Psychosocial Factors](#)
- [Psychosocial Predictors](#)

References and Further Reading

- Barefoot, J. C., Helms, M. J., Mark, D. B., Blumenthal, J. A., Califf, R. M., Haney, T. L., O'Connor, C. M., Siegler, I. C., & Williams, R. B. (1996). Depression and long term mortality risk in patients with coronary heart disease. *American Journal of Cardiology*, 78, 613–617.
- Cohen, S., Kamarck, T., & Mermelstein, R. (1983). A global measure of perceived stress. *Journal of Health and Social Behaviour*, 24, 385–396.
- Kohout, F. J., Berkman, L. F., Evans, D. A., & Cornoni-Huntley, J. (1993). Two shorter forms of the CES-D depression symptoms index. *Journal of Aging and Health*, 5, 179–193.
- Leserman, J. (2008). Role of depression, stress and trauma in HIV disease progression. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 70, 539–545.

Psychosocial Work Environment

Karen Jacobs¹, Miranda Hellman²,
Jacqueline Markowitz¹ and Ellen Wuest²

¹Occupational Therapy, College of Health and Rehabilitation Science, Sargent College, Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

²Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Mental strain](#); [Physical illness](#); [Psychological and social conditions people experience in the workplace](#); [Stress and occupational health](#)

Definition

Psychosocial work environment pertains to interpersonal and social interactions that influence behavior and development in the workplace. Research has been conducted to determine the effects of the psychosocial work environment on stress levels and overall health. One study in particular found that low levels of support and control at work leads to increased rates of sickness absence (North et al. 1996). In other words, a positive and supportive psychosocial work environment is beneficial to employees in an occupational organization.

Cross-References

- [Job Demand/Control/Strain](#)
- [Positive Affectivity](#)
- [Positive Psychology](#)
- [Psychological Factors](#)
- [Psychosocial Characteristics](#)
- [Psychosocial Impact](#)

References and Readings

- North, F. M., Syme, S. L., Feeney, A., Shipley, M., & Marmot, M. (1996). Psychosocial work-environment and sickness absence among British civil servants: The Whitehall II study. *American Journal of Public Health*, 86, 332–340.

Psychosomatic

Makiko Ito
Department of Stress Science and Psychosomatic Medicine, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Definition

Psychosomatic is defined as one involving or depending on both the mind and the body as mutually dependent entities.

The term has been used to refer to the following:

1. Physical disorders, those caused or aggravated by psychological factors and, less often, to mental disorders caused or aggravated by physical factors
2. The branch of medicine concerned with the mind-body relations
3. The field of study, one sometimes designated “psychosomatics,” concerned with the relationship between mind and body

Description

It is said that the foundation for psychosomatic movement was laid 2,500 years ago in ancient Greece.

In the fifth century BC, Hippocratic principles emphasized what we consider to be some of the basic tenets of psychosomatic medicine: concern about the relationship between the physician and the patient and about importance of the environment and of the adaptive factors in health and disease.

Francis Bacon advocated investigation of the mental faculties and of the interaction of body and mind by case studies and by study of the relationships between the individual and society. A passage written by Bacon in 1605 is the first explicit scientific statement about psychosomatic medicine in English.

Psychiatry and psychosomatic medicine owe an immense debt to Johann Reili, who was the first use the word psychiatry.

Another pioneer in German psychiatry was Johann Heinroth, who was the first to use the word psychosomatic in 1818. He insisted that the mind in health and disease was essential to the treatment of illness.

The significance of Freud’s dynamic principles of psychological causality and of the unconscious is enhanced.

In the 1920s and 1930s, psychosomatic concepts were supported by two major advances in physiology as well as by psychoanalytic findings. Pavlov’s discovery of the conditioned reflex

furnished a tool for measuring emotional correlates of stress, and Cannon's work on adrenaline, the endocrine glands, and on the autonomic nervous system stimulated the development of research in psychophysiology.

Resurgent interest in psychosomatic medicine in the 1920s and the 1930s started with clinical work, initially case histories that described psychosomatic phenomena. Within a few years, Alexander and Dunbar proposed theories of psychosomatic illness.

In 1950s, Hans Selye advocated a concept that an external stressor had an influence on physical health, which is called "general adaptation syndrome." The theory of Selye contributed to mind and body medical advance greatly.

George L. Engel proposed that health is affected by a biological factor, a psychological factor, and the social support.

After that, including a famous Framingham study, a way of thinking that an unhealthy habit and action had an influence on health directly came to attract attention worldwide. Health and a complicated biological, psychological, and sociological health model about the disease came to be recognized in the medicine, and a field called the behavior medicine was born in this way. The current psychosomatic medicine regards this behavior medicine as the one of the important theoretical bases, but aims at the promotion of the medical care of all people while not only it but also psychology takes in various study.

Cross-References

► [Psychosomatic Disorder](#)

References and Readings

- Kannel, W. B., & Eaker, E. D. (1986). Psychosocial and other features of coronary heart disease: Insight from Framingham study. *American Heart Journal*, 112(5), 1066–1073.
- Lipowski, Z. J. (1984). What does the word "Psychosomatic" Really mean? A historical and semantic inquiry. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 46(2), 153–171.
- Schwab, J. J. (1985). Psychosomatic medicine: Its past and present. *Psychosomatics*, 26(7), 583–593.

Psychosomatic Diseases

► [Psychosomatic Disorder](#)

Psychosomatic Disorder

Tetusya Ando

Department of Psychosomatic Research, National Institute of Mental Health, National Center of Neurology and Psychiatry, Kodaira-shi, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

[Psychophysiologic disorders](#); [Psychosomatic diseases](#); [Psychosomatic illness](#)

Definition

1. Somatic diseases or disorders characterized by objective organic changes and/or functional changes that could be induced, progressed, aggravated, or exacerbated by psychological, social, and/or behavioral factors.
2. Physical illness or symptom believed to be caused by psychological factors.

Description

The term "psychosomatic" carries two connotations having an ancient tradition in Western thinking and medicine: psychogenesis of disease and holism. Psychogenesis is an etiologic hypothesis about the role of psychological factors in human disease. The core notion of holism is that mind and body is inseparable and mutually dependent aspects of man, and it implies a view of the human being as a whole.

The idea of psychogenesis resulted in the concept of psychosomatic disorder, a physical illness or symptoms believed to be caused by

psychological factors. Notion of psychogenesis has been criticized because it is incompatible with current multifactorial view of diseases, and the term “psychosomatic disorder” is misleading since it implies a special class of disorders of psychogenic etiology and absence of psychosomatic interface in other diseases.

Holistic concept resulted in multifactorial model of illness called “biopsychosocial” model by Engel. In this model, illness is a result of interacting mechanisms at the cellular, tissue, organic, interpersonal, and environmental level. Biopsychosocial approach to illness and health covers the psychosomatic medicine, behavioral science, social science, neuroscience, stress physiology and epidemiology, psychoneuroendocrinology/immunology, psychoncology, and so on.

Psychosomatic medicine has focused on the study of the interaction of psychosocial and biological factors in health and disease. Psychosocial factors may induce, sustain, or modify the course of virtually all kind of diseases including infections and cancer, though their relative weight may vary from disease to disease and from patient to patient suffering from the same disease. Japanese Society of Psychosomatic Medicine defined psychosomatic disorders as somatic diseases “characterized by objective organic changes and/or functional changes that could be induced, progressed, aggravated, or exacerbated by psychological, social, and/or behavioral factors.”

Psychosocial factors possibly affecting individual vulnerability, onset, course, and outcome of diseases are early and recent life events, chronic stress, personality variables, coping ability, social support, psychological state such as depression, anxiety, anger, hostility, irritability, psychological well-being, and abnormal illness behavior. Mechanisms through which psychosocial factors could influence health and disease are mediated by central and autonomic nervous systems, neuroendocrine systems, and immune systems. Psychosocial stressors may also affect health and disease through changes in health-related habits and behaviors, such as smoking, eating, drinking, exercise, and drug use. Psychological factors may also play role in adjustment to disease,

attitude to medical care, doctor-patient relationship, adherence to treatment, impairment in social functioning, and quality of life of patients.

For example, high levels of stress, low levels of social support or social isolation, low socioeconomic status, personality factors, and negative emotions such as anger or hostility, depression, and anxiety are associated with increased cardiovascular disease morbidity and mortality. These psychosocial factors have been associated with enhanced sympathetic nervous system activation, impaired parasympathetic activity, increased circulating levels of catecholamines and corticosteroid, enhanced blood coagulation and fibrinolysis, endothelial dysfunction, coronary vasospasm, and various inflammatory markers. Lifestyle modification (e.g., smoking cessation, diet, exercise) improves cardiovascular health. Psychological interventions, such as relaxation, stress management, cognitive, and behavior therapies may improve psychological distress and psychological functioning in cardiovascular patients.

As a summary, the term “psychosomatic disorders” is misleading and discouraged to be used at least in the sense of psychogenic disease. Holistic concept, another major connotation of “psychosomatic,” resulted in biopsychosocial model of illness. Irrespective of whether the term “psychosomatic disorder” is used or not, it is important to perform research and medical practice of a disease from a multifactorial perspective.

Cross-References

► [Psychoneuroendocrinology](#)

References and Readings

- Engel, G. L. (1977). The need for a new medical model: A challenge for biomedicine. *Science*, 196, 129–136.
- Fava, G. A., & Sonino, N. (2000). Psychosomatic medicine: Emerging trends and perspectives. *Psychotherapy and Psychosomatics*, 69, 184–197.
- Lipowski, Z. J. (1986). Psychosomatic medicine: Past and present. *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry*, 31, 2–21.

Psychosomatic Illness

► Psychosomatic Disorder

Psychosomatic Medicine

► Health Psychology

Psychosomatics

► Somatization

Psychosurgery

Douglas Carroll
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

Psychiatric surgery

Definition

Psychosurgery is brain surgery conducted explicitly to amend aspects of human behavior. As such, it can be distinguished from neurosurgery, where the aim is to address some specific and identifiable brain pathology such as a tumor. Although there are noticeable gray areas such as brain surgery for intractable pain or to halt the spread of epileptic seizures from one brain hemisphere to the other, the above distinction is important in differentiating between the primarily behavioral aims of psychosurgery and the primary aims of treating physical pathology that characterize neurosurgery.

Description

The first psychosurgical operation was undertaken on November 12, 1935 by Egas Moniz at the Neurological Institute of the University of Lisbon, Portugal. Moniz's surgery was conducted on severely disturbed psychiatric patients who had proved resistant to other forms of treatment. He called his operation the prefrontal leucotomy; a wire garrote inserted via a cannula or "leucotome" was used to sever connections between the prefrontal cortex and more posterior parts of the brain. In 1949, Moniz was awarded the Nobel Prize in Medicine "for his discovery of the therapeutic value of prefrontal leucotomy in certain psychoses." Moniz's activities in the field of psychosurgery were curtailed, though, when he was shot by one of his psychosurgical patients; the bullet lodged in his spine and he retired, a hemiplegic, in 1944.

However, Moniz's initiative was enthusiastically transported to the USA and UK, where the operation was re-branded: the frontal lobotomy was born. As indicated, the target patient group were psychiatric patients suffering from severe and intransigent psychoses. The Second World War through up a great number of such patients; the late 1940s and early 1950s were to prove the heyday of the frontal lobotomy. It has been estimated that between 40,000 and 50,000 operations were conducted in the USA during that period with a further 12,000 undertaken in the UK. From its outset, psychosurgery was subject to fierce controversy. Its opponents regarded it as a grievous, unjustified, and irreversible assault on the human personality. Its proponents, on the other hand, confidently testified that it was a valid and efficacious treatment for many seemingly intractable psychiatric disorders. Sober and objective assessment was difficult since the vast majority of psychosurgical data stem from uncontrolled observations where even the minimal attributes of good experimental design are absent: control groups, independent evaluation of treatment effects, lengthy follow-ups, etc. Accordingly, claims of efficacy based on data of such dubious scientific status can command little confidence.

By the late 1950s, psychosurgery was on the wane; the newly introduced major tranquilizers offered a seemingly easier and decidedly less contentious way of managing the behavior of severely disturbed psychiatric patients. Nevertheless, just as it seemed safe to go back into mental hospital, psychosurgery began to re-brand itself once more. By the late 1960s and early 1970s, psychosurgery was enjoying a modest renaissance. This time around, the operations were technically more sophisticated. The main differences, though, were the neural and behavioral targets. No longer was the prefrontal cortex the focus but rather structures that lay deep within the brain: components of the limbic system such as the amygdala, which is implicated in emotion and motivation. No longer was severe psychosis the sole or even main target; instead, the focus had shifted to vaguer and more diagnostically problematic behaviors such as aggression and hyperactivity. Deviance had replaced psychiatric disturbance. As before, the battle between opponents and proponents was enjoined, and as before, the available data did not afford anything like a proper scientific assessment. Again, its day in the sun was short-lived; psychosurgery had all but disappeared by the 1980s. This time, though, it was regulation and legislation that did the trick.

References and Further Reading

Valenstein, E. S. (1973). *Brain control: A critical examination of brain stimulation and psychosurgery*. New York: Wiley.

Psychotherapy for Depression

► [Depression: Treatment](#)

Psychotherapy for IBS

► [Irritable Bowel Syndrome \(IBS\): Psychological Treatment](#)

PTG

► [Posttraumatic Growth](#)

PTS

► [Stress, Posttraumatic](#)

Puberty

Adriana Carrillo and Carley Gomez-Meade
Department of Pediatrics, Miller School of
Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Menarche](#); [Sexual maturation](#)

Definition

Puberty is the transition from being sexually immature to sexual maturity and attainment of reproductive capacity. Complex interactions of hypothalamic-pituitary hormones and neuroendocrine factors take place to initiate puberty. Recent research indicates kisspeptin and its receptor GPR54 to play a key part in the initiation of puberty. Kisspeptin and GPR54 increase at the onset of puberty. Kisspeptin neurons innervate and stimulate hypothalamic gonadotropin releasing hormone (GNRH) neurons. In addition, kisspeptin neurons express estrogen and androgen receptors which may be important for the onset and tempo of puberty. The onset of puberty is also marked by increasing pulse and frequency of GNRH from the hypothalamus. GNRH then stimulates the pituitary to secrete gonadotropins (luteinizing hormone (LH) and follicle stimulating hormone (FSH)) which directly stimulates the ovaries or testes to produce sex steroids. The increase of sex steroids induces the physical

changes of puberty. The progressive physical changes during puberty are described by the Tanner staging system. Both boys and girls have five stages. The first Tanner stage (Tanner stage I) is prepubertal or sexual immaturity and the fifth Tanner stage describes a sexually mature adult. Tanner stage II marks the beginning of sexual maturation (Lifshitz 2007; Oakley et al. 2009).

Puberty begins earlier in girls than boys. The normal range for the onset of puberty in females is 8–13 years of age. The first sign of puberty in girls is breast development at an average age of 10.4 years in Caucasian girls. African American girls begin puberty earlier at a mean age of 9.5 years. Tanner stages follow progress through puberty with changing contour of the breast. The development of pubic hair is not under the same control as the ovaries. Adrenarche is a result of increased adrenal androgens and occurs before breast development in 10% of girls. Pubic hair is also described by Tanner stages. Puberty is also marked by an increase in percent body fat, maturation of the vaginal mucosa, and uterine and endometrial growth. Accelerated growth begins early in puberty for girls with peak growth velocity during Tanner stage II–III. The average age of menarche for Caucasian girls is 12.5 years and 12 years for African American girls. Menarche is associated with a deceleration in growth and typically occurs during Tanner stage IV. Menarche occurs approximately 2 years after Tanner stage II breast development in normally maturing girls. Early menstrual cycles may be anovulatory and irregular with subsequent ovulation and development of regular cycles. Adult contour breast and adult pubic hair distribution marks Tanner stage V and the completion of puberty.

The normal age range for the onset of puberty in boys is 9–14 years. The average age for the development of Tanner stage II for Caucasian males is 12 years and 11.2 years for African American males. The first sign of puberty in boys is increased testicular volume. Puberty progresses with continued testicular enlargement and penile enlargement as described by the Tanner stages. Mid-puberty axillary hair and androgen

sensitive hair on the face, chest and back begins. Also in mid-puberty, males have peak linear growth, voice change, and acne. There is a progressive increase in total bone mineral content and lean body mass and a decline in body fat. Spermatarche is attained at Tanner stage III. Peak growth velocity occurs during Tanner stage IV in males. Puberty is complete at Tanner stage V with adult genitalia and adult distribution of pubic hair.

Deviations from normal in the onset of puberty and progression through puberty may represent normal variation or pathological disease. Normal variations include premature adrenarche, gynecomastia during male puberty, and premature thelarche in females. Precocious puberty or delayed puberty may represent abnormal pubertal development. It is important to recognize abnormal variations in puberty that may require intervention.

Premature adrenarche is the early development of pubic hair, typically after 6 years of age for males and females. It is more common in females and is usually benign. Females with a history of premature adrenarche have an increased risk of polycystic ovarian syndrome and insulin resistance. A bone age radiograph can be used to determine effects of sex steroids on skeletal maturation. The bone age in premature adrenarche is normal. In addition, gonadotropin hormones are normal and there is no breast development in females or testicular enlargement in males.

Gynecomastia is usually a self-limiting development of palpable breast tissue in 40% of males during puberty. It usually begins in early puberty and resolves within 2 years. It is typically minimal and does not require treatment. Some conditions are associated with excessive or prolonged gynecomastia including Klinefelter syndrome and other causes of decreased testosterone production. Other pathological causes of gynecomastia are some testicular tumors, liver failure, ketaconazole, spirinolactone, marijuana, and other medications.

In females, early benign breast development is called premature thelarche. It is usually present at birth and increases in size over the first 2 years of life. It may also occur around 6 years of age. It is

nonprogressive and is not associated with accelerated growth, elevated pubertal hormones, or other changes associated with puberty. As with premature adrenarche, this is not associated with accelerated growth, normal bone age, or elevated pubertal hormones.

Precocious puberty is the abnormal development of secondary sexual characteristics before 7 years of age in Caucasian females, 6 years of age in African American females, and before 9 years of age in males. Precocious puberty in females is most commonly idiopathic premature activation of the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis, termed idiopathic central precocious puberty. Other causes of central precocious puberty include abnormalities of the central nervous system (CNS) such as brain tumors, intracranial irradiation, infections, or congenital malformations. CNS pathology is more common in males than in females. Outside of the CNS, estrogen or testosterone production may occur independent of gonadotropin secretion from the pituitary gland. In females, estrogen from ovarian cysts, ovarian tumors, or exogenous estrogen exposure may stimulate the onset of puberty. Rarely, genetic mutations can stimulate ovarian estrogen production. McCune Albright syndrome is due to an activating mutation of a signaling protein that results in café au lait spots, fibrous dysplasia, and precocious puberty in females. In males, androgen production stimulating penile growth and pubic hair can come from adrenal or testicular tumors. Congenital adrenal hyperplasia is due to a genetic mutation that leads to the overproduction of adrenal androgens that causes precocious puberty in males and virilization in females. Virilization in females includes clitoromegaly, hirsutism, and acne.

If puberty does not occur spontaneously prior to 14 years in males and 13 years in females it is considered delayed. In addition, puberty in males should be completed within 4.5 years after its onset. If a female has not menstruated by 16 years of age or 5 years after the onset of puberty it is termed primary amenorrhea. The most common reason for delayed puberty is constitutional delay of growth and puberty.

Constitutional delay is characterized by a decline in growth velocity during early childhood followed by a normal growth velocity with a delayed bone age. Puberty occurs late and final height is normal. There is typically a family history of late puberty.

Pathologic causes of delayed puberty can be divided into those due to failure of the hypothalamus or pituitary to secrete gonadotropins and those due to failure of gonads to respond to gonadotropins. Delayed puberty with low gonadotropins can be secondary to chronic disease, genetic syndromes, gene mutations, or CNS pathology. Syndromes that are associated with low gonadotropins are Prader-Willi, Lawrence Moon, and Kallman syndromes. Anorexia, malnutrition, HIV, Crohn's disease and hemoglobinopathies are some of the chronic conditions that may cause delayed puberty. Endocrine disorders associated with delayed puberty are hypothyroidism and hyperprolactinemia. Tumors, radiation, infection, or congenital malformation can affect the production and secretion of gonadotropins.

Delayed puberty due to gonadal failure is most commonly due to sex chromosome abnormalities. Klinefelter syndrome males carry two X chromosomes and one Y chromosome. Klinefelter syndrome is characterized by testicular failure, disproportionate long limbs, poor musculature, and gynecomastia. In females, Turner syndrome is due to loss of genetic material from one X chromosome. Females with turners have ovarian failure, short stature, and a spectrum of other dysmorphisms. Gonadal failure can also be due to gonadal dysgenesis or direct damage to the gonads such as trauma, medication, radiation or infection (Lifshitz 2007; Sperling 2008).

References and Readings

- Lifshitz, F. (2007). *Pediatric endocrinology* (5th ed.). New York: Informa Healthcare.
- Oakley, A. E., Clifton, D. K., & Steiner, R. A. (2009). Kisspeptin signalling in the brain. *Endocrine Reviews*, 30(6), 713.
- Sperling, M. (2008). *Pediatric endocrinology* (3rd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders/Elsevier.

Public Health

Marc D. Gellman
Behavioral Medicine Research Center,
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Definition

Public health refers to activities by which a society attempts to increase life expectancy, decrease morbidity, and help improve health-related quality of life.

Description

An important cornerstone of public health is prevention. Primary prevention refers to measures taken to reduce the incidence of disease. In the case of CVD (cardiovascular disease), for example, people may be encouraged to quit smoking, decrease intake of dietary fat, and increase physical activity before diseases become evident. In contrast, secondary prevention involves reducing the prevalence of disease by shortening its duration. Mortality from certain cancers, for example, prostate cancer, is decreased by early detection of the cancers when they are still treatable. Still another form of prevention is tertiary prevention. This involves reducing the complications associated with chronic diseases reducing the complications associated with chronic diseases and minimizing disability and suffering. Medication adherence training in HIV/AIDS (human immunodeficiency virus/acquired immune deficiency syndrome) patients is a form of tertiary prevention.

There has often been a widespread misconception that public health is limited to “health care for low-income families.” The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention created a list of the Ten Great Public Health Achievements in the twentieth century that remind us of how far we have come, how we got here, and exactly what public health is: the active protection of a nation’s

health and safety, credible information to enhance health decisions, and partnerships with local minorities and organizations to promote good health. The choices of topics for the following list were based on the opportunity for prevention and the impact on death, illness, and disability: they are not ranked by order of importance. The list includes the following: vaccination, motor vehicle safety, safer workplaces, control of infectious diseases, decline in deaths from coronary heart disease (CHD) and stroke, safer and healthier foods, healthier mothers and babies, family planning, fluoridation of drinking water, and, last but not least, the recognition of tobacco use as a health hazard.

During this period, the health and life expectancy of persons residing in the United States improved dramatically. Since 1900, their average lifespan lengthened by greater than 30 years, of which 25 years of this gain are attributable to advances in public health. The unprecedented increase in longevity seen during the first half of the twentieth century was also seen in other countries, primarily in economically advanced countries. The decrease in mortality rate was largely due to a decline in infectious diseases related to vaccination, decreased exposure to infection because of improved hygiene, improved nutrition, and the development of antibiotics to cope with bacterial infections. However, as infectious diseases declined as the leading cause of mortality in economically advanced countries, they were eclipsed by chronic diseases. By the middle of the twentieth century, CHD, cancer, and stroke accounted for more than 60% of the deaths in the United States.

Public health efforts to eradicate infectious diseases have successfully led to an increase in longevity in economically developed and even many less developed countries. Similarly, improvements in healthy lifestyle have led to decreases in morbidity and increases in longevity in these countries during the second half of the twentieth century. At the same time, the HIV/AIDS pandemic in sub-Saharan Africa has led to an even steeper decline in life expectancy. The growing spread of HIV/AIDS across the Asian continent is of considerable concern.

At this point, early in the twenty-first century, the major causes of death in the United States include (1) heart disease, (2) cancer, (3) stroke, (4) unintentional injuries, (5) chronic obstructive pulmonary disorder, (6) pneumonia and influenza, (7) diabetes, (8) suicide, (9) liver disease, (10) HIV/AIDS, and (11) homicide. Behavioral, psychosocial, and sociocultural factors associated with lifestyle contribute to virtually all of these causes of mortality. Even in the case of infectious disease such as pneumonia, risk factors can be related to disruptions of natural pulmonary host mechanisms related to lifestyle factors such as smoking and alcohol abuse. Similarly, infection from HIV is primarily spread through high-risk sexual practices and the sharing of contaminated drug paraphernalia.

As scientists attempted to find specific causal agents in the pathogenesis of cancer and CVD throughout most of the twentieth century, a new approach emerged. Unable to find single causes of diseases, attention shifted to the role of environment and host in the pathogenesis of chronic diseases. Whereas single cause-and-effect models proved successful in studying the genesis of infectious diseases, an understanding of the basis of chronic diseases turned to models based on the presence of risk factors. The identification of risk factors makes prediction of chronic diseases more likely, but individual risk factors cannot be identified as necessary and sufficient causes for many diseases. In this respect, interactions among agent, host, and the environment have now taken center stage.

At the beginning of the risk factor revolution, it was widely believed that the causes of chronic diseases such as CHD could be explained in terms of a few biological (e.g., high cholesterol, high blood pressure) and lifestyle (e.g., smoking) risk factors; this turned out not to be the case. Other variables contributing to CHD turned out to include physical inactivity, excess consumption of alcohol, and obesity. Still other factors under investigation include individual difference variables such as depression and hostility and socio-cultural variables including low socioeconomic status, ethnic minority status, lack of social support, and occupational stress.

To achieve public health objectives, it is sometimes useful to deal with unyielding problems at multiple levels. Although behavioral interventions administered at the individual level tend to produce successful weight loss in the short term, few people maintain their weight loss over the long term. In order for individual-based interventions to succeed on a population basis, such interventions should take place in a sociocultural environment that is conducive to healthful eating and exercise. Improving the availability of healthy food choices, providing economic incentives for healthy eating by selective taxation, ensuring through the schools that children and adolescents get adequate exercise, enhancing accessibility of physical activity for the general public by providing bicycle paths and highway lanes, and initiating mass media campaigns supporting a healthy lifestyle could be useful for maintaining weight loss.

The recent successes in tobacco control in the United States provide a heartening example of how multilevel approaches to a major public health problem can lead to a decline in disease. In this case, the improvements have occurred in CVD, some cancers including lung and esophageal cancer, and respiratory diseases. At the interpersonal level, smoking cessation interventions, sometimes in conjunction with pharmacologic treatment, have been effective. At the organizational level, smoking cessation support groups, school campaigns against smoking, restrictions on smoking in restaurants and work sites, and reductions in health insurance premiums for nonsmokers have been established. Finally, at the societal level, laws against juvenile smoking, taxation of cigarettes, and government-sponsored antismoking campaigns have all been realized. These measures have led to a marked improvement in the nation's health.

A distinction is sometimes made between clinical or high-risk approaches to disease treatment and prevention versus population-based strategies. Although there is some value in differentiating between these approaches, they should be seen as complementary because neither strategy is effective for all behaviors or all target groups. Thus, an important public health task is to identify which risk behaviors are open to individual-based versus population-based interventions and how to

make these interventions synergistic with one another. Application of the social and behavioral sciences to improve health and combat disease occurs at multiple levels and requires putting into practice different skills both within and across levels. Genetic counseling for those at familial risk of disease, family counseling to reduce substance abuse, and interfamilial violence and group counseling to help those living with HIV/AIDS are examples of interpersonal interventions at the individual level. At the organizational level, interpersonal interventions such as blood pressure screenings and smoking cessation programs, the provision of physical fitness facilities, and media communication have been used in schools, work sites, and community centers. Finally, societal-type interventions involving media and policy actions can occur at the community, state, or federal level. Seat belt laws, public service announcements about drunk driving, and taxation of cigarettes are examples of interventions at this level.

A recent concern within the field of public health is the impact climate change will have on health. A significant contribution to our understanding of the impact of climate change on health has come from the work of *The Lancet Countdown: Tracking Progress on Health and Climate Change*, an international, multidisciplinary research collaboration between academic institutions and experts across the world. The most recent report from this research collaboration, published in 2018, monitors progress on health and climate change across the domains of climate change impacts, exposures, and vulnerabilities; adaptation, planning, and resilience for health; mitigation actions and health co-benefits; finance and economics; and public and political engagement.

Widespread social disorganization and the growing disparity in income within and between nations also pose a global threat to public health. There is a strong association between socioeconomic status and health. This rise in income inequality has coincided with broadening inequalities in health and longevity. Poor people not only have lower incomes, they increasingly have shorter lives than do higher-income individuals.

Because public health is a global matter that is closely tied to international policies, hope for

future improvements in public health will largely depend on global improvements in public policy.

Cross-References

- [Cancer Prevention](#)
- [Cardiovascular Disease Prevention](#)
- [Cardiovascular Risk Factors](#)
- [Centers for Disease Control and Prevention](#)
- [HIV Prevention](#)
- [Multiple Risk Factors](#)
- [Prevention: Primary, Secondary, Tertiary](#)
- [Smoking Prevention Policies and Programs](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bor, J., Cohen, G. H., & Galea, S. (2017). Population health in an era of rising income inequality: USA, 1980–2015. *Lancet*, 389, 1475–1490. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736\(17\)30571-8](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(17)30571-8).
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (1999). Achievements in public health, 1900–1999; Changes in the public health system. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 48, 1141–1147.
- Institute of Medicine. (2001a). *Health and behaviour: The interplay of biological, behavioural and societal influences*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Institute of Medicine. (2001b). *New horizons in health: An integrative approach*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Kawachi, I. (1999). Social capital and community effects on population and individual health. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 896, 120–130.
- Posner, S. F. (2012). Advancing and improving preventing chronic disease: Public health research, practice and policy. *Preventing Chronic Disease*, 9, 110291. <https://doi.org/10.5888/pcd9.110291>.
- Schneider, M. J. (2011). *Introduction to public health* (2nd ed.). Boston: Jones & Bartlett Learning.
- Smedley, B. D., & Syme, S. L. (2000). *Promoting health: Intervention strategies from social and behavioral research*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Turnock, B. J. (2012). *Essentials of public health* (2nd ed.). Boston: Jones & Bartlett Learning.
- Watts, N., Adger, W. N., Ayeb-Karlsson, S., et al. (2016). The Lancet Countdown: Tracking progress on health and climate change. *Lancet*, 389, 1151–1164. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736\(16\)32124-9](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(16)32124-9).
- Watts, N., Amann, M., Arnell, N., et al. (2018). The 2018 report of the Lancet Countdown on health and climate change: Shaping the health of nations for centuries to come. *Lancet*, 392, 2479–2514. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736\(18\)32594-7](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(18)32594-7).

World Health Organization. (2000). *The world health report 2000: Executive summary*. Geneva: World Health Organization.

hospitalization rates, and might increase mortality. Treatments include pharmacotherapy, psychotherapy, and pulmonary rehabilitation.

Public Health Education

- [MPH \(Masters of Public Health\)](#)

Public Interest Advertising

- [Social Marketing](#)

Public Service Advertising

- [Social Marketing](#)

Puff Topography

- [Smoking Topography](#)

Pulmonary Disorders, COPD: Psychosocial Aspects

Akihisa Mitani
Department of Respiratory Medicine, The
University of Tokyo Hospital, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

[Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease](#)

Definition

Patients with COPD often suffer from anxiety and depression. These psychological distresses cause low quality of life, social isolation, increased

Description

Patients pulmonary disorders are more likely to be of lower self-esteem and downgrade the significance of life in their depression, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) is no exception. However, in spite of the high prevalence of the disease, psychosocial aspects of COPD and other pulmonary diseases have not been fully investigated, compared to cancers or cardiovascular diseases (Hill and Geist 2008; Hynninen and Breivte 2005; Kaptein and Scharloo 2008; Kaptein and Scharloo 2009; Maurer and Rebbapragada 2008; von Leupoldt and Dahme 2007).

(COPD) is a disease characterized by airflow obstruction. The respiratory symptoms are dyspnea, chronic cough, and sputum production. The treatments of COPD include medications focusing on bronchodilators, pulmonary rehabilitation, and oxygen administration.

Psychiatric disorders often appear in patients with COPD. Among them, anxiety and depression are most frequent, but the accurate prevalence is hard to say. In previous reports, the prevalence of anxiety ranges between 10% and 100% and the prevalence of depression, between 10% and 80%. However, it is an indisputable fact that anxiety and depression are often underdiagnosed and/or undertreated. Other disorders include panic disorder, hypochondriasis, and hysteria.

Variables, such as physical disability, smoking, long-term oxygen therapy (LTOT), low body mass index, and severe dyspnea, are associated with anxiety and depression.

As for anxiety, major presumed underlying mechanisms are smoking and dyspnea. Smoking is the most important environmental risk factor for the development of COPD. Adolescents with high levels of anxiety tend to have smoking habits, and smokers with a history of an anxiety-related disorder also experience more symptoms of nicotine withdrawal on cessation of smoking, resulting in tendency to nicotine addiction. Therefore, patients

with COPD caused by smoking are likely to show higher levels of anxiety than the general population. Dyspnea is the most common symptom of COPD. The severity of dyspnea changes in response to air temperature or exercise and notably increases during acute exacerbations. For the patients, such episodes of increased dyspnea during exacerbations are associated with anxious feelings, although dyspnea at rest or on exertion does not correlate so much with anxiety. Furthermore, anxiety, in turn, increases the sensation of dyspnea. These bidirectional relationships between dyspnea and anxiety contribute to the increased prevalence of anxiety-related disorders in COPD (Kaptein and Scharloo 2008).

Depression in COPD could be caused by various factors such as low body mass index. However, some of them are confounders, making the analysis difficult. The lack of social support for elderly people, their past medical history, and their low socioeconomic status are mixed as risk factors for depression. The use of systemic corticosteroids for treatment, although the long-term use of it is not a standard medication, might cause depression. In addition, there is a relationship between smoking and depression, but little is known about it. Cigarette smoking might prompt a feeling of relaxation for some patients, and smoking cessation could be associated with an increased rate of depression. Chronic hypoxemia and LTOT are also closely related to symptoms of depression, although the underlying mechanisms remain unclear. It is true that LTOT improves survival and exercise capacity, but it may, at the same time, reduce social interactions because the use of oxygen therapy makes the patients lose in several areas of their lives.

Psychological stress typically plays a considerable role in the life of COPD patients because of the interaction of somatic and psychological factors. The emotional response to chronic pulmonary disorders results in further inactivity and social isolation. The patient may feel useless and lose interest in future project. In addition, COPD patients with psychological disorder tend to feel fatigue and short of breath more than patients without such a distress, although psychological distress has not been proved to worsen objective

measures of functional exercise capacity. Inadequate perception of dyspnea contributes to a progressive avoidance of activities, resulting in a vicious circle where a physical deconditioning leads to more dyspnea.

As a result, anxiety in COPD patients lowers quality of life and increases hospitalization rates and the economic burden. Intensities of anxiety are correlated with measures of social isolation, suggesting that COPD patients with anxiety have impaired social interactions. The impact of anxiety on the physical disability and mortality of COPD patients is less clear. Depression also causes low quality of life, decreased adherence to treatment, increased frequency of hospital admissions, and prolonged length of stay, resulting in higher medical cost. In addition, depression negatively affects physical function in COPD patients, and the mortality rate among depressed patients is increased. Furthermore, depressed patients tend to make a preference for “do not resuscitate” decisions.

Treatments of psychological distress in COPD patients consist of pharmacotherapy, psychotherapy, and pulmonary rehabilitation.

In pharmacological therapy, antidepressants are commonly used, although evidence for their use in COPD patients is inadequate. Still, they might benefit COPD patients with symptom of anxiety and depression. Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) are regarded as first-line therapy. Tricyclic antidepressants and low-dose benzodiazepines could be effective. Administration of benzodiazepines to COPD patients with hypercapnia demands extreme caution because of their respiratory depressant effect; needless to add, each drug has its own side effects and must be used carefully.

Many psychological aspects are relevant to a variety of treatments of COPD. One of the most recent focuses within behavioral treatment on COPD is on self-management. Self-management education is likely to be associated with a reduction in hospital admissions without any detrimental effects in other parameters. Other methods, such as relaxation and biofeedback training, also might have some good effect, although many questions are still not answered.

COPD patients with respiratory symptom should receive comprehensive pulmonary rehabilitation with or without psychological distress. There is growing evidence that it does improve depressive symptoms. However, there remain some questions to be solved. Further research should focus on finding effective and acceptable maintenance strategies. It also remains to be solved whether pulmonary rehabilitation is as effective in COPD patients with severe anxiety and depression. Above all, it is not clear which elements confer psychosocial benefits for COPD patients. Only improvements in exercise capacity may be associated with improvements in anxiety and depression, or it would be better to add a specific psychological component to pulmonary rehabilitation. At present, it is considered reasonable that a comprehensive pulmonary rehabilitation programs should include at least disease education or psychosocial components as the most effective formats.

Cross-References

► [Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease](#)

References and Readings

- Hill, K., & Geist, R. (2008). Anxiety and depression in end-stage COPD. *European Respiratory Journal*, 31(3), 667.
- Hynninen, K. M., & Breivte, M. H. (2005). Psychological characteristics of patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: A review. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 59(6), 429.
- Kaptein, A. A., & Scharloo, M. (2008). Illness perceptions and COPD: An emerging field for COPD patient management. *The Journal of Asthma*, 45(8), 625.
- Kaptein, A. A., & Scharloo, M. (2009). 50 years of psychological research on patients with COPD—road to ruin or highway to heaven? *Respiratory Medicine*, 103(1), 3.
- Maurer, J., & Rebbapragada, V. (2008). Anxiety and depression in COPD: Current understanding, unanswered questions, and research needs. *Chest*, 134 (Suppl. 4), 43S.
- von Leupoldt, A., & Dahme, B. (2007). Psychological aspects in the perception of dyspnea in obstructive pulmonary diseases. *Respiratory Medicine*, 101(3), 411.

Pulmonary Function

Valerie Sabol

School of Nursing, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Lung function](#)

Definition

Pulmonary function testing (PFT) is a process for assessing functional status of the lungs, for screening obstructive and restrictive lung disease, and for evaluating treatment response (e.g., medications, chest physical therapy). Spirometry, using a spirometer, is the most common of the pulmonary function tests and measures the amount (volume) and the speed (flow) of air that can be inhaled and exhaled. It is designed to measure changes in lung volume and can only measure lung volume compartments that exchange gas with the atmosphere.

In preparation for PFT, bronchodilator medications are typically held so that bronchodilator response can be assessed after baseline spirometry. For example, short-acting inhaled bronchodilators should not be used for 4 h prior to testing; long-acting beta-agonist bronchodilators are typically held for 12 h prior to testing. Notably, the spirometry procedure is highly dependent on individual effort and cooperation and, to ensure reproducibility, is generally repeated three times.

The spirometry procedure measures the volume of air exhaled at specific time points (0.5, 1.0, 2.0, and 3.0 s) during a forceful and complete exhalation after a maximal inhalation. The total exhaled volume, known as the forced vital capacity (FVC), the volume exhaled in the first second, known as the forced expiratory volume in one second (FEV₁), and their ratio (FEV₁/FVC). The results are usually given in both raw data (liters per second) and percent predicted (i.e., the test result as a percent of the

predicted values for the patients of similar characteristics). The FEV_1/FVC ratio is important for distinguishing obstructive airway disease and restrictive disease; a reduced ratio suggests obstructive airway disease. A reduced FVC in combination with a normal or increased ratio suggests restrictive disease (if accompanied by reduced lung volumes). Accordingly, spirometry is a key diagnostic test for asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) (when performed before and after bronchodilator) and is useful to assess for causes of airflow obstruction. It is also used to monitor management of a broad spectrum of respiratory and neuromuscular diseases (that affect respiratory muscles).

As a person ages, the natural elasticity of the lungs decreases, and this translates into smaller lung volumes and capacities. Males typically have a larger lung volume and capacity than females. Subsequently, PFT interpretation should be based on results of a normal person of the same age and gender. Body height and size also have an impact on PFT results. As an individual ages, their body mass may increase as the body fat to lean body mass ratio changes. For example, if an individual becomes overweight/obese, the abdominal mass limits diaphragm movement, and the PFT observed (measured) results will be less than predicted (from preestablished data tables of individuals with a normal body mass index). Ethnicity may also impact PFT results, and interpretation of observed data should be compared to data of similar ethnic groups.

Cross-References

- [Bronchitis](#)
- [Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease](#)
- [Emphysema](#)
- [Lung Function](#)

References and Further Reading

- Culver, B. H., Graham, B. L., Coates, A. L., Wanger, J., Berry, C. E., Clarke, P. K., Hallstrand, T. S., Hankinson, J. L., Kaminsky, D. A., MacIntyre, N. R., McCormack, M. C., Rosenfeld, M., Stanojevic, S., & Weiner, D. J. (2017). ATS Committee on proficiency standards for pulmonary function laboratories. Recommendations for a standardized pulmonary function report. An official American Thoracic Society technical statement. *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*, 196(11), 1463.
- Holland, A. E., Spruit, M. A., Troosters, T., Puhan, M. A., Pepin, V., Saey, D., McCormack, M. C., Carlin, B. W., Sciurba, F. C., Pitta, F., Wanger, J., MacIntyre, N., Kaminsky, D. A., Culver, B. H., Revill, S. M., Hernandez, N. A., Andrianopoulos, V., Camillo, C. A., Mitchell, K. E., Lee, A. L., Hill, C. J., & Singh, S. J. (2014). An official European Respiratory Society/American Thoracic Society technical standard: Field walking tests in chronic respiratory disease. *The European Respiratory Journal*, 44(6), 1428–1446.
- Pellegrino, R., Viegi, G., Brusasco, V., Crapo, R. O., Burgos, F., Casaburi, R., Coates, A., van der Grinten, C. P., Gustafsson, P., Hankinson, J., Jensen, R., Johnson, D. C., MacIntyre, N., McKay, R., Miller, M. R., Navajas, D., Pedersen, O. F., & Wanger, J. (2005). Interpretative strategies for lung function tests. *The European Respiratory Journal*, 26(5), 948.

Pulse Rate

- [Heart Rate](#)

Purpose

- [Meaning \(Purpose\)](#)

Q

qEEG

► [Quantitative EEG Including the Five Common Bandwidths \(Delta, Theta, Alpha, Sigma, and Beta\)](#)

QTL

► [Quantitative Trait Locus \(QTL\)](#)

Qualitative Research Methods

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Qualitative research methods collect and analyze qualitative data, which are often expressed in words rather than numbers. Qualitative data can be distinguished from quantitative data, which are expressed in numbers (e.g., a systolic blood pressure of 120 mm of mercury [mmHg]).

One example of a qualitative characteristic is skin coloration (at least as traditionally described).

While normal skin colors vary from pinkish white to black, medical conditions and diseases can cause alterations of an individual's skin color. Anemia can lead to a white color (in those not normally so white). Various inflammations can lead to a red color (e.g., a severe rash), and cyanosis resulting from cardiac failure or lung failure leads to a blue color. Such assessments are not recorded and reported in numbers but in descriptive text.

Some researchers regard categorical data as qualitative data, even though numerical representations do occur when presenting the data. Consider the variables sex and blood group. Each of us falls into a mutually exclusive category for each one, e.g., male or female, and O, A, B, and AB. None of us falls into more than one category in each case. Additionally, there is no order to the categories: blood group B neither comes before or after blood group O. In a group of individuals of interest, data could be presented as counts of the number of individuals falling into each category in each case, thereby using numbers.

There are categories that can be ordered. For example, ordered categories of a pain that is experienced would be mild, moderate, and severe. Again, for a group of individuals of interest (perhaps subjects undergoing mindful meditation therapy or another behavioral intervention for pain), it is possible to describe how many individuals reported a pain falling in each of the categories.

Cross-References

► [Data](#)

References and Further Reading

Piantadosi, S. (2005). *Clinical trials: A methodologic perspective* (2nd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley-Interscience.

Quality of Life

Maartje de Wit and Tibor Hajos
Medical Psychology, VU University Medical
Center, Amsterdam, North Holland,
The Netherlands

Synonyms

[Health-related quality of life](#)

Definition

Quality of life (QoL) is a term used to refer to an individual's total well-being. There is disagreement between scientists, sociologists, and clinicians about the conceptualization of QoL, and hence, a clear definition is lacking (Hunt 1997). However, current definitions can be categorized into three types (Farquhar 1995): (1) global definitions, such as happiness/unhappiness; (2) definitions that break down QoL into a series of components or dimensions; and (3) focused definitions, which are often pragmatic approaches in which QoL is seen as synonymous with domains of the field of interest to the researchers (e.g., functional status is sometimes used as a measure of QoL by health researchers).

The first type of definitions has been researched since Aristotle, and still no consensus has been reached on how to define happiness and how to measure it (Fayers und Machin 2000). The second and third types of definitions have underlying assumptions for which consensus exists

about the domains encompassed by QoL. These latter two types of definitions provide a more practical approach for research purposes.

Across all definitions, considerable agreement exists that QoL is conceptualized as a multi-dimensional construct incorporating primarily the person's evaluation of his/her own life. The World Health Organization (WHO) defines QoL as the individuals' perception of their position in life in the context of the culture and value systems in which they live and in relation to their goals, expectations, standards, and concerns. It is a broad-ranging concept affected in a complex way by the person's physical health, psychological state, level of independence, social relationships, personal beliefs, and their relationship to salient features of their environment (World Health Organization 1995).

The impact of health and illness on a person's QoL is referred to as health-related quality of life (HRQoL). QoL and HRQoL are often used interchangeably.

Cross-References

- [Health-Related Quality of Life](#)
- [Multiple Sclerosis: Psychosocial Factors](#)
- [Quality of Life: Measurement](#)

References and Readings

- Farquhar, M. (1995). Definitions of quality of life: A taxonomy. *Journal of Advanced Nursing*, 22(3), 502–508.
- Fayers, P., & Machin, D. (2000). *Quality of life assessment, analysis and interpretation*. Chichester: Wiley.
- Hunt, S. M. (1997). The problem of quality of life. *Quality of Life Research*, 6(3), 205–212.
- World Health Organization. (1995). The World Health Organization Quality of Life assessment (WHOQOL): Position paper from the World Health Organization. *Social Science and Medicine*, 41(10), 1403–1409.

Quality of Life Assessments

- [Measures of Quality of Life](#)

Quality of Life Instruments

► Measures of Quality of Life

Quality of Life Technologies

Katarzyna Wac
University of Copenhagen, Copenhagen,
Denmark
QoL Lab, University of Geneva, Geneva,
Switzerland

Synonyms

Health informatics; Health information systems;
Pervasive health; Well-being technologies

Definition

Quality of Life Technologies (QoLT) refers to any technologies for assessment or improvement of the individual's QoL. QoLT leverage an increasing availability of miniaturized computing, storage, and communication sensor- and actuator-based, context-rich technologies that can be embedded within various personal devices, for example, smartphones and wearables. QoLT can rely on hardware technologies (i.e., devices or physical interaction elements) or software technologies (e.g., apps or web-based interfaces) or, most likely, a combination of both. QoLT on an increasing scale are personalizable to satisfy the intended needs of the user anywhere and anytime and can be used in a continuous and longitudinal yet minimally intrusive way, in the individual's daily life (Wac 2018). QoLT may interact with the user via visual, auditory, haptic, or olfactory interfaces. QoLT is usually always connected to the Internet via a wired (for stationary QoLT) or, on a growing scale, wireless technologies (e.g., WiFi, 4G), supporting its user's daily life mobility. QoLT designers and developers are continuously researching ways of understanding the

appropriateness of the technology for its use and factors influencing their users' acceptance. QoLT ideally shall be evidence-based. However, many emerging technologies still lack evidence for their effectiveness and efficacy, especially in their early development stage.

Concerning the aims of QoLT, it may provide for the individual (Schulz et al. 2012):

- (a) An objective, quantitative, embedded assessment of his/her QoL. Currently, QoL is assessed in individuals infrequently while relying on memory-based, context-poor approaches. These approaches are leveraging subjective self-reports via validated instruments to gather an individual's responses referred to as Patient-Reported Outcomes (PROs). The QoLT, as defined here, does not include ePROs, i.e., technologies for an assessment of PROs via electronic means, like a web or a mobile app (Jensen et al. 2015). For example, QoLT does not include a subjective assessment of physical activity via web-based self-report called IPAQ (Hagströmer et al. 2006).
- (b) Maintenance or prevention of his/her QoL decline.
- (c) Enhancement of his/her QoL.
- (d) Compensation for his/her QoL loss.

The above-defined aims of QoLT may be redefined further. Namely, either QoLT focuses on enabling the specific external observable behaviors, e.g., physical activity, that contribute to the individual's QoL or it focuses on the assessment of the behaviors that are a result of the individual's QoL state. Therefore, given an example of physical activity in the context of the four aims (a–d), QoLT may:

- (a) Enable an objective assessment of the individual QoL, e.g., an objective assessment of external observable physical activity via wearable actigraphy technologies or mobile apps embedded within a smartphone
- (b) Enable physical activity maintenance or improvement toward predefined, evidence-based goals

- (c) Enhance physical activity toward its optimization for athletes
- (d) Enable physical activity via prosthetic limb or an exoskeleton

Concerning the types of QoLT users, a specific QoLT can be used (Chatterton and Wilson 2014):

- (i) At the individual level
- (ii) By an individual at the interpersonal, peer-to-peer level
- (iii) At the community level
- (iv) At the segment/group level
- (v) At the population level, across socioeconomic, cultural, and environmental conditions

An example of wearable actigraphy technologies or mobile apps embedded within a smartphone for physical activity assessment can be applied at all levels (i–v): for an individual physical activity assessment, peer-based assessment, geographical community-based, a segment of the population, or whole population-based assessment of their physical activity.

Cross-References

- [Patient-Reported Outcome](#)
- [Quality of Life](#)
- [Well-being](#)

References and Further Reading

- Chatterton, T., & Wilson, C. (2014). The “Four Dimensions of Behaviour” framework: A tool for characterising behaviours to help design better interventions. *Transportation Planning and Technology*, 37(1), 38–61.
- de Wit, M., & Hajos, T. (2013). Quality of life. In M. D. Gellman & J. R. Turner (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of behavioral medicine*. New York: Springer.
- Hagströmer, M., Oja, P., & Sjöström, M. (2006). The International Physical Activity Questionnaire (IPAQ): A study of concurrent and construct validity. *Public Health Nutrition*, 9(6), 755–762.
- Jensen, R. E., Rothrock, N. E., DeWitt, E. M., Spiegel, B., Tucker, C. A., Crane, H. M., . . . Cella, D. (2015). The role of technical advances in the adoption and integration of patient-reported outcomes in clinical care. *Medical Care*, 53(2), 153.
- Schulz, R., Beach, S. R., Matthews, J. T., Courtney, K. L., & Dabbs, A. J. D. V. (2012). Designing and evaluating quality of life technologies: An interdisciplinary approach. *Proceedings of the IEEE*, 100(8), 2397–2409.
- Wac, K. (2018). From quantified self to quality of life. In *Digital health* (Health informatics). Dordrecht: Springer.
- Wac, K., Fiordelli, M., Gustarini, M., & Rivas, H. (2015). *Quality of life technologies: Experiences from the field and key research challenges*. IEEE Internet Computing (IEEE IC), special issue on Personalized Digital Health, July 2015.
- Wac, K., Rivas, H., & Fiordelli, M. (2017). *Guest editorial: Quality of life technologies*, special issue: IEEE Computer, March 2017.
- WHO Working Group. (1998). The World Health Organization quality of life assessment (WHOQOL): Development and general psychometric properties. *Social Science & Medicine*, 46(12), 1569–1585.

Quality of Life: Measurement

Maartje de Wit
Medical Psychology, VU University Medical Center, Amsterdam, North Holland, The Netherlands

Definition

Subjective assessment of the various aspects of quality of life.

Description

Quality of Life (QoL) is considered an important outcome variable in health-care practice and research. Consideration of QoL provides health-care providers, researchers, and policy makers insight into how variables of interest (e.g., chronic disease, medication use, living environment) impact a person's subjective well-being, which is instrumental to improving health-care practice systems.

QoL measures may be of potential value in comparing outcomes in clinical trials, evaluating

interventions, commissioning programs of care, assessing the outcomes of new treatments, and in audit work. Further on, measuring health-related QoL (HRQoL) can facilitate discussion between patients and professionals in health care and stimulate the dialogue between medical outcomes and patients' subjective views (de Wit et al. 2008; Detmar et al. 2002; Pouwer et al. 2001).

Measurement of QoL

Despite a clear definition of QoL, there is general agreement that health-related QoL (HRQoL) encompasses physical, cognitive, affective, psychological, social well-being, health perception, and disease- and treatment-related symptoms. Overall QoL expands upon this and incorporates non-medical-related aspects of a person's life such as the influence of work, spirituality, and other life circumstances (Koot 2001).

QoL can include both objective and subjective perspectives in each domain (Testa and Simonson 1996). The objective assessment of QoL focuses on what the individual can do, and is important in defining the degree of health. The subjective assessment of QoL includes the meaning to the individual; essentially it involves the translation or appraisal of the more objective measurement of health status into the experience of QoL. Differences in appraisal account for the fact that individuals with the same objective health status can report very different subjective QoL (Fayers and Machin 2000).

Generic and Disease Specific Instruments

There are a wide variety of instruments available to obtain information on QoL. These instruments can be divided into generic and disease-specific instruments. Generic measures attempt to measure all important domains of QoL. Generic measures are most useful when comparisons or decisions have to be made for large groups of patients with disparate conditions and backgrounds (Fayers and Machin 2000). For example, it gives the opportunity to compare the QoL of people with diabetes with their healthy peers or to people with asthma.

Disease-specific measures include domains that are designed to be valid only for a specified condition. Therefore they maximize content

validity and support greater sensitivity and specificity (Guyatt et al. 1993), and may be particularly informative for disease management at the individual patient level. Advances in the development of QoL questionnaires for children resulted in generic questionnaires with complementary disease-specific modules (Bullinger 2005; Ravens-Sieberer et al. 2008; Varni et al. 1999, 2005). This measurement approach enables researchers and professionals to compare children with a specific disease to their healthy peers and also examine the impact of the disease at the same time.

QoL Measurement in Children

The development and validation of instruments for children have evolved over the past 30 years. Traditionally, parents have been the ones reporting on their child's HRQoL, because the child was seen as an unreliable respondent. When the child is very young or ill, the child may indeed be unable to complete questionnaires. However, relying on the parent as informant may result in incomplete assessment to the extent that the child's subjective experience and perceptions of HRQoL may be overlooked (Eiser and Morse 2001a). Especially as the child grows older and develops his/her own life, the HRQoL reports of parents become less informative. It has been shown that parents and children agree more on objective domains of HRQoL (i.e., physical functioning) than on subjective domains, like emotional and social functioning (Eiser and Morse 2001a; Janse et al. 2008).

As children and parents do not necessarily share similar views about the impact of illness, children are more directly involved in decisions about their own care and treatment as they mature. However, assessment of QoL in children poses unique problems (Eiser and Morse 2001a). Children do not share adult views about the cause, aetiology, and treatment of illness. They may interpret questions differently, and adopt a different time perspective. In addition, their ability to use rating scales, understand the language, and generally complete lengthy questionnaires of the type used in adult work, may be compromised by age and cognitive development. These

considerations have guided the development of QoL questionnaires especially for children (Eiser and Morse 2001a; Solans et al. 2008).

Choosing an Instrument

Because of the broad, multidimensional nature of QoL, it is advised that researchers who want to measure QoL define what they mean by “quality of life,” or explain which domains of quality of life they want to measure using a specific instrument. For example, the terms “health-related QoL” (HRQoL), “functional status,” and “health status” are often used interchangeably. However, although health or functional status can be part of HRQoL, it does not take the patient’s perspective into account.

The Patient-Reported Outcome and Quality of Life Instrument Database (PROQOLID) (www.proqolid.org, Mapi Research Institute 2001–2011) provides an outline of available instruments to measure patient-reported outcomes or QoL. It should be noted, however, that identification of an instrument in this database does not necessarily mean it is valid and reliable in view of the question at hand. Thus, instruments should be selected with care (Bradley 2001; Eiser and Morse 2001b; Fayers and Machin 2000; Koot and Wallander 2001; Solans et al. 2008).

Cross-References

- [Health-Related Quality of Life](#)
- [Quality of Life](#)

References and Readings

- Bradley, C. (2001). *Handbook of psychology and diabetes*. Amsterdam: Harwood Academic.
- Bullinger, M. (2005). *Translations DISABKIDS*. Retrieved February, 2006, from <http://kidscreen.diehauptstadt.de/disabkids/master/translations/index.html>
- de Wit, M., Delemarre-van de Waal, H. A., Bokma, J. A., Haasnoot, K., Houdijk, M. C., Gemke, R. J., et al. (2008). Monitoring and discussing health-related quality of life in adolescents with type 1 diabetes improve psychosocial well-being: A randomized controlled trial. *Diabetes Care*, 31(8), 1521–1526.
- Detmar, S. B., Muller, M. J., Schomagel, J. H., Wever, L. D., & Aaronson, N. K. (2002). Health-related quality-of-life assessments and patient-physician communication: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288(23), 3027–3034.
- Eiser, C., & Morse, R. (2001a). Can parents rate their child’s health-related quality of life? Results of a systematic review. *Quality of Life Research*, 10(4), 347–357.
- Eiser, C., & Morse, R. (2001b). A review of measures of quality of life for children with chronic illness. *Archives of Disease in Childhood*, 84(3), 205–211.
- Fayers, P., & Machin, D. (2000). *Quality of life. Assessment, analysis and interpretation*. Chichester: Wiley.
- Guyatt, G. H., Feeny, D. H., & Patrick, D. L. (1993). Measuring health-related quality of life. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 118(8), 622–629.
- Janse, A. J., Sinnema, G., Uiterwaal, C. S., Kimpen, J. L., & Gemke, R. J. (2008). Quality of life in chronic illness: Children, parents and paediatricians have different, but stable perceptions. *Acta Paediatrica*, 97, 1118–1124.
- Koot, H. M. (2001). The study of quality of life: Concepts and methods. In J. L. Wallander & H. M. Koot (Eds.), *Quality of life in child and adolescent illness. Concepts, methods and findings* (pp. 3–17). East Sussex: Brunner-Routledge.
- Koot, H. M., & Wallander, J. L. (2001). Challenges in child and adolescent quality of life research. In H. M. Koot & J. L. Wallander (Eds.), *Quality of life in child and adolescent illness. Concepts, methods and findings* (pp. 431–456). East Sussex: Brunner-Routledge.
- Mapi Research Institute. (2001–2011). *PROQOLID*. Retrieved January 25, 2011, from www.proqolid.org
- Pouwer, F., Snoek, F. J., van der Ploeg, H. M., Ader, H. J., & Heine, R. J. (2001). Monitoring of psychological well-being in outpatients with diabetes: Effects on mood, HbA(1c), and the patient’s evaluation of the quality of diabetes care: A randomized controlled trial. *Diabetes Care*, 24(11), 1929–1935.
- Ravens-Sieberer, U., Gosch, A., Rajmil, L., Erhart, M., Bruil, J., Power, M., et al. (2008). The KIDSCREEN-52 quality of life measure for children and adolescents: Psychometric results from a cross-cultural survey in 13 European countries. *Value in Health*, 11(4), 645–658.
- Solans, M., Pane, S., Estrada, M.-D., Serra-Sutton, V., Berra, S., Herdman, M., et al. (2008). Health-related quality of life measurement in children and adolescents: A systematic review of generic and disease-specific instruments. *Value in Health*, 11(4), 742–764.
- Testa, M. A., & Simonson, D. C. (1996). Assessment of quality-of-life outcomes. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 334(13), 835–840.
- Varni, J. W., Seid, M., & Rode, C. A. (1999). The PedsQL: Measurement model for the pediatric quality of life inventory. *Medical Care*, 37(2), 126–139.

Varni, J. W., Burwinkle, T. M., & Seid, M. (2005). The PedsQL™ as a pediatric patient-reported outcome: Reliability and validity of the PedsQL™ Measurement Model in 25,000 children. *Expert Review of Pharmacoeconomics & Outcomes Research*, 5, 705–719.

Quality of Work

► Job Performance

Quality-Adjusted Life Years (QALYs)

M. Bryant Howren

Department of Psychology, The University of Iowa and Iowa City VA Healthcare System, Iowa City, IA, USA

Definition

The *quality-adjusted life year* (QALY) is a standardized measure of disease burden which combines both survival and health-related qualities of life into a single index. The QALY is primarily used in cost-effectiveness analyses to guide decisions regarding the distribution of limited healthcare resources among competing health programs or interventions for a population of interest but has also been used to aid decisions regarding clinical management and individual patient care.

Conceptually based in expected utility theory, the QALY rests on the assumption that preference-weighted values may be attached to specific health states relative to the time spent in those states. Because the QALY incorporates both quantity and quality of life, it therefore provides a reasonable estimate of the amount of quality time (i.e., health benefit) an individual may experience as a result of a particular health program or intervention. Furthermore, comparisons between

programs or interventions may be made both within a single disease and across different diseases. Consequently, the QALY has been widely used as an outcome measure in medicine, psychology, public health, and economics.

Calculation of the QALY requires various health states be assigned a value ranging from zero to one, with zero representing death and one representing ideal health. Health states considered worse than death (i.e., a health state valuation less than zero) can also exist and are assigned a negative value. In order to determine the values of each particular health state, respondents are asked to rate them relative to one another or using an anchor point such as death. Several methods may be used to ascertain valuations, including preference measurement techniques such as the standard gamble or time trade-off, or through the use of rating scales, such as the EQ-5D, Health Utilities Index, Quality of Well-Being Scale, and SF-6D.

A number of limitations have been described with respect to the measurement and incorporation of QALYs. In particular, QALYs may be less useful in the context of preventive health programs (i.e., when health effects may not materialize for some time), or chronic diseases (i.e., where quality of life may be more important than survival). Other concerns include inconsistencies among valuations due to method variance, situations in which population-level preferences about a particular disease differ from preferences of the subgroup afflicted with the disease and, more generally, decisions regarding whose preferences should matter most when assigning values to specific health states. These limitations notwithstanding, the QALY serves as a straightforward, intuitive measure of disease burden and remains an important tool in healthcare decision-making.

Cross-References

- [Benefit Evaluation in Health Economic Studies](#)
- [Clinical Decision-Making](#)
- [Health-Related Quality of Life](#)

References and Further Readings

- Drummond, M. F., Sculpher, M. J., Torrance, G. W., O'Brien, B. J., & Stoddart, G. L. (2005). *Methods for the economic evaluation of health care programmes*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Gold, M. R., Stevenson, D., & Fryback, D. G. (2002). HALYs and QALYs and DALYs, oh my: Similarities and differences in summary measures of population health. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 23, 115–134.
- Kaplan, R. M., & Frosch, D. L. (2005). Decision making in medicine and health care. *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology*, 1, 525–556.
- Kaplan, R. M., & Groessl, E. J. (2002). Applications of cost-effectiveness methodologies in behavioral medicine. *Journal of Consulting & Clinical Psychology*, 70, 482–493.
- Kind, P., Lafata, J. E., Matuszewski, K., & Raisch, D. (2009). The use of QALYs in clinical and patient decision-making: Issues and prospects. *Value in Health*, 12, S27–S30.
- Nord, E. (1999). *Cost-value analysis in health care: Making sense out of QALYs*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Weinstein, M. C., Torrance, G., & McGuire, A. (2009). QALYs: The basics. *Value in Health*, 12, S5–S9.

Quantified Self

Melanie Swan
Philosophy Department, Purdue University,
West Lafayette, IN, USA

Synonyms

Health self-management; Lifelogging; $n = 1$ science; Personal data analytics; Self-experimentation; Self-tracking

Definition

The Quantified Self is a social health movement that began in San Francisco, California, in 2007, led by Gary Wolf and Kevin Kelly from Wired magazine. The *Quantified Self* is an individual engaged in the self-tracking of any kind of biological, physical, behavioral, or environmental data. The attitude is a proactive stance toward

obtaining information and acting on it, particularly to solve a problem. A variety of areas may be tracked and analyzed, for example, exercise, weight, energy level, mood, time usage, sleep quality, health, cognitive performance, and learning strategies (Fig. 1). Health is an important but nonexclusive focus, where objectives may include general tracking, pathology resolution, and peak performance. Regarding adoption, the quantified self is a broad phenomenon in the sense that 69% of US adults track a health indicator like weight, diet, exercise routine, or symptom (Fox 2013); and there are 25 million active worldwide Fitbit users (Fitbit 2018). In some sense everyone is already a self-tracker since many individuals measure something about themselves, and since humans have innate curiosity, tinkering, and problem-solving capabilities.

Description

Motivations for Quantified Self-Experimentation

In addition to immediate problem-solving, other motivations for self-tracking include collecting information about phenomena for greater understanding or longitudinal archiving, for example, to record and reference exercise histories on a scale of decades. The assumption is that the personalized informatics data streams that are now available bring visibility and quantification to a situation, such that different interventions might be tested, and problems resolved.

Genesis and Underpinnings

The Quantified Self is a modern phenomenon, emerging at the confluence of data science, wearable computing, and personalized medicine (the patient-centric Health 2.0 movement). The modern algorithmic society is one that tracks and surveils, including individuals that track and surveil themselves (Kelly 2016). This could have tyrannizing and detrimental effects, as in Foucault's panopticon concept, or an impact that is empowering and beneficial, as the Quantified Self movement promulgates. Wolf sees the

Self-Tracking Categories	Self-Tracking Variables
Physical activities	Sleep, exercise, distance (miles, steps), calories, repetitions, sets, heart rate, VO2 max, METs (metabolic equivalents), desk-sitting
Diet	Calories consumed (grams of carbs, fat, protein), ingredients, nutrients, glycemic index, satiety, portions, supplements, tastiness
Psychological states and traits	Health, energy, mood, happiness, irritation, emotions, anxiety, self-esteem, depression, confidence, engagement
Mental and cognitive states and traits	IQ, alertness, focus, attention, reaction, memory, verbal fluency, patience, creativity, reasoning, psychomotor vigilance
Environmental variables	Location, architecture, weather, noise, water, pollution, clutter, light, season, motivation, activity, surroundings
Episodic and situational variables	Context, situation, fulfillment, health status, time of day, day of week
Social variables	Influence, trust, values, role, community, recognition, support

Quantified Self, Fig. 1 Typical quantified self-tracking project categories and variables (Swan 2013, 86)

quantified self phenomenon as self-knowledge through self-tracking with technology (Wolf 2010).

Quantified Self Community and Tools

There is a worldwide Quantified Self Community which comes together in show-and-tell meetups and conferences. The typical format is presenting a self-tracking project and answering three questions in a simplified version of the scientific method: “What did you do?” “How did you do it?” and “What did you learn?” The tools used for quantified self-tracking include Fitbit smart watches, wearables, and apps, although Excel sheets and pen and paper are also not unusual. Data are typically analyzed with traditional techniques such as visualization and linear regression to establish correlations among the variables under investigation.

Quantified Self Research Studies

A study of quantified self-tracking projects found that the main motivation was to resolve or optimize a specific lifestyle issue such as sleep quality (Swan 2012). Another finding was that quantified self-experimenters often iterated through many different solutions, and kinds of solutions, before finding a final resolution point. The biggest area of

self-experimentation was sleep quality, and of concern, its link to work productivity. For one individual, raising the bed mattress solved the problem, and for another, tracking and reducing caffeine consumption. Another finding was that there was not much introspection as to experimental results and their meaning, but rather a pragmatic attitude toward having a problem that needed solving. A benefit of self-experimentation projects was that the velocity of question-asking and experimental iteration could be much faster than with traditional methods. Further, it was not uncommon for study participants to forget the initial problem situation, once resolved.

Criticisms

Quantified self-experimentation has drawn critique regarding the scientific soundness of practitioner methods and conclusions. $N = 1$ science has so far not made a general contribution to scientific understanding, and some researchers wonder whether it is wise to conclude anything from $n = 1$ studies. One team points out that drawing additional attention to the self and personalized data may amplify a condition such as depression (Jarrold et al. 2011). Likewise, access to personalized data might increase cyberchondria (internet hypochondria). However, the main tenor



of studies investigating the broad use of quantified self-experimentation has documented the overall benefits of self-tracking to life-long health and wellness outcomes, as well as the psychology of empowerment and responsibility-taking for health self-management (Meyer et al. 2014; Swan et al. 2010).

Quantified Self Data Rights and Health Policy

The Quantified Self movement raises important contemporary questions about a person's right to their own biological data, including ownership and monetization of these data, and who may legally interpret the data. Traditionally, there was not a clear business model for quantified self-tracking data; however, new technologies such as blockchain and deep learning could advance the possibility of new business models such as Data Markets. Financial incentives and tools might make it easier for individuals to self-assemble electronic medical records (EMRs) in an app with remunerated privacy-protected computation (blockchain) and medical diagnostic pattern recognition (deep learning). These kinds of Data Markets and quantified self-tracking applications could help link healthcare providers and individuals to realize the Meaningful Use provision regarding patient electronic data. This is part of the US American Reinvestment & Recovery Act of 2009, which includes the "Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health (HITECH) Act" measure.

Quantified Self and the Scientific Method ($n = 1$ Studies)

The Quantified Self movement has made innovative contributions to the traditional scientific method. While not widely used or studied, the self-organized one-person study ($n = 1$ science) has nevertheless provided relevant results to some individuals for health self-management. Quantified self-experiments range in what professionals would gauge as their degree of rigor. One of the more exacting is Rosane Oliveira's multi-year investigation regarding diabetes and heart disease risk, using her identical twin sister as a control, and testing vegan dietary shifts and metabolism markers such as insulin and glucose

(Oliveira 2016). Personal responsibility-taking is seen as a key element in health management, which can include an individual's data acquisition, interpretation, and self-experimentation activities. Movements like the Quantified Self could be helpful in the face of public health challenges such as the obesity epidemic.

The scientific method in turn provides quantified self-experimenters with useful tools for self-discovery. Interesting challenges arise regarding traditional features of the scientific method such as the placebo effect and the double-blind study. Self-experimenters have a conundrum in that they may forego any possible benefit of the placebo effect by being knowledgeable about their activity. Quantified self-experimentation might also provide new information about the placebo effect. For example, the individual could create (and measure) a different kind of placebo effect by mixing up the interventions, and remaining ignorant while recording data, until the conclusion of the experiment.

Health Social Networks and Preventive Medicine

The Quantified Self movement is characterized not only by $n = 1$ study but also by group study. Group health research studies could be a potential precursor and supplement to traditional clinical trials, which are expensive and time-consuming to run. The premise of preventive medicine is that conditions may not reach clinical detectability until they are 80% advanced in their lifecycle; however, having quantified self data might help predict and avoid condition onset. Persons engaged in Quantified Self data collection could be extremely helpful to the preventive medicine effort. Health Social Networks (such as Patients Like Me, TuDiabetes Inspire.com, and Facebook groups) are a mechanism for persons with similar conditions to meet and collaborate by joining condition-specific group studies.

Philosophy of Quantified Self and Behavior Change

To the extent that the stakes are improved health and well-being, for either the $n = 1$ Quantified

Self-tracker or the public health industry, quantified self methods could be helpful. The action-oriented component that seems to accompany quantified self data collection could be crucial to behavior change. Personalized data acquisition could be seen as the first step in any process that includes behavior change. The reason is because even merely having information, and being able to see the result of interventions, is an instigating tool that may prompt individuals to consider different courses of action. An analogy is available from the energy industry, in which studies found that having access to tracking data reduced electricity consumption by 10%, and 30% when financial incentives were added (Petersen et al. 2007).

The Quantified Self Becomes the Qualified Self

A salient philosophical aspect of quantified self activity is that it is fundamentally both a quantitative and a qualitative phenomenon. Quantified self-tracking includes both the collection of objective metrics data and the subjective experience of these data. The Quantified Self is becoming the Qualified Self in new ways. The individual body and mind becomes a more knowable, calculable, and administrable object through quantified self activity. Individuals are having an increasingly intimate relationship with data as it mediates the experience of the self and reality. The always-on data climate provides a new and objective fourth-person perspective from which to view the self and the world. The further impact of data-driven health social movements such as the Quantified Self could be having new ways of understanding and configuring human identity.

References and Further Reading

- Fitbit. (Press Release, 2018) <https://investor.fitbit.com/press/press-releases/press-release-details/2018/Fitbit-Community-Grows-to-More-Than-25-Million-Active-Users-in-2017/default.aspx>. Accessed 4 Aug 2018.
- Fox, S. (2013). Tracking for health. Pew Internet.
- Jarrod, W., Javitz, H. S., Krasnow, R., et al. (2011). Depression and self- focused language in structured interviews with older adults. *Psychological Reports*, 109(2), 686–700.

- Kelly, K. (2016). *The inevitable*. New York: Penguin Books.
- Meyer, J., Simske, S., Siek, K. A., Gurrin, C. G., & Hermens, H. (2014). Beyond quantified self: Data for wellbeing. In: Proceedings: CHI EA '14 CHI '14 extended abstracts on human factors in computing systems, pp. 95–98.
- Oliveira, R. (2016). My story: From vegetarian veterinarian to plant-based spokesperson. UC Davis Integrative Medicine.
- Petersen, J. E., Shunturov, V., Janda, K., et al. (2007). Dormitory residents reduce electricity consumption when exposed to real-time visual feedback and incentives. *International Journal of Sustainability in Higher Education*, 8(1), 16–33.
- Swan, M. (2012). Health 2050: The realization of personalized medicine through crowdsourcing, the quantified self, and the participatory biocitizen. *Journal of Personalized Medicine*, 2(3), 93–118.
- Swan, M. (2013). The quantified self: Fundamental disruption in big data science and biological discovery. *Big Data*, 1(2), 85–99.
- Swan, M., Hathaway, K., Hogg, C., McCauley, R., & Vollrath, A. (2010). Citizen science genomics as a model for crowdsourced preventive medicine research. *Journal of Participatory Medicine*, 2, e20.
- Wolf, G. (2010). The data-driven life. *New York Times Magazine*.

Quantitative EEG Including the Five Common Bandwidths (Delta, Theta, Alpha, Sigma, and Beta)

Salvatore Insana
Western Psychiatric Institute and Clinic,
Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

Frequency analysis; Power spectral analysis; qEEG; Spectral analysis

Definition

Quantitative electroencephalography (qEEG) is an analytical technique that can be used to objectively describe the frequency and power of electroencephalography data.

Description

Quantitative electroencephalography (qEEG) can be used in any application where electroencephalography (EEG) is applied. In this entry, qEEG will be described in the context of its application in the measurement of brain activity patterns that can be used to infer sleep. Sleep can be measured with polysomnography (PSG), which is currently considered the “gold standard” measure of sleep-wake states. EEG is an integral component to PSG, along with electrooculography (EOG), and electromyography (EMG). In order to assure standardized PSG measurement procedures, there are uniform practice parameters established by the American Academy of Sleep Medicine (AASM [Iber et al. 2007]). The AASM sleep-monitoring practice parameters include specified criteria for electrode placement, equipment calibration, and PSG acquisition. Once PSG sleep signals (i.e., EEG, EOG, and EMG) are appropriately recorded, the signals can be used together for visual analyses; additionally or alternatively, EEG can be independently used for quantitative analyses.

Visual PSG Analyses: When sleep is measured with PSG, the measured signals are typically sectioned into consecutive 30-s intervals throughout the entire PSG recording period. These 30-s intervals are termed “epochs.” Within each epoch, the PSG measured signals (i.e., EEG, EOG, and EMG) are cumulatively used to differentiate sleep from wake, and to further classify sleep into different categories that are known as sleep stages. According to the AASM (Iber et al. 2007), sleep can be classified into four stages that include N1, N2, N3, and Rapid Eye Movement (REM) sleep. Sleep stage scoring is completed by a trained technician who visually interprets the PSG signals in accordance with the aforementioned standard practice parameters. Once visually scored, sleep can be described by variables that include, but not limited to, time spent in particular stages, latency to particular stages, arousals from sleep, and specific physiological events during sleep. Visually scored sleep can be displayed on a hypnogram plot.

Quantitative EEG analyses: When sleep is measured with EEG, the measured signals can be analyzed and described quantitatively by their frequency and power. There are mathematically detailed components to quantitative EEG analysis; these components will be broadly described (see reviews, Campbell 2009; Thakor and Tong 2004). Preliminary processing includes digitization and prefiltering. Typically, EEG signals are digitized at a rate of 256 Hz, are band-limited using a low-frequency and high-frequency filters (e.g., signals ≤ 0.5 and ≥ 64 Hz are removed) to remove irrelevant signals, and are decimated (e.g., halved to 128 Hz) for the analyses. Low-frequency artifacts are removed; for example, epochs that were visually scored as wakefulness or movement artifact could be excluded. High-frequency EEG artifacts are removed; for example, an algorithm can be implemented that excludes a predetermined bin length (e.g., 4 s) if that bin exceeds a predetermined high-frequency threshold relative to the frequency in adjacent bins. Once artifacts are removed, a fast Fourier transformation (FFT) is implemented to analyze wave frequency (in Hertz) within the epochs; that is, epochs are analyzed according to moving windows that partially overlap with preceding and succeeding windows. For example, a 30-s epoch that is analyzed according to a 4-s window can have a 2-s overlap among windows, thus yielding 15 windows for the epoch. Common FFT window functions include Hanning, Hamming, Bartlett, and Welch; these functions differ in duration and window overlap lengths (Campbell 2009; Thakor and Tong 2004). Wave amplitude is sampled in microvolts and is squared to convert the wave amplitude to power; power is calculated within each frequency band, described below.

Power is grouped according to frequency within specific broad bands or frequency ranges. There are five commonly used frequency bands that are examined with spectral analysis. The frequency bands typically fall within the range of 0.5–32 Hz; however, these frequency bands can slightly vary by laboratory and can be further broken down into narrower components as guided by the research or clinical question. The

behavioral functions that correspond to each frequency band during sleep have not been clearly elucidated; however, current theories are briefly mentioned. The delta band encompasses the frequency range of 0.5–4 Hz. Delta activity is positively associated with the homeostatic sleep drive in such a manner that delta activity increases in correspondence to increased awake time (Dijk et al. 1990). The theta band encompasses the frequency range of 4–8 Hz. Similar to delta activity, theta activity is positively associated with the homeostatic sleep drive (Dijk et al. 1990). The alpha band encompasses the frequency range of 8–12 Hz. Alpha activity is positively associated with relaxed wakefulness and drowsiness associated with sleep onset (Cantero et al. 2002). Alpha activity is also present during REM sleep and is theorized as being a micro-arousal that can then lead to a full arousal during sleep; the purpose (s) of alpha associated arousals during REM sleep is unknown (Cantero and Atienza 2000). The sigma band encompasses the frequency range of 12–16 Hz. Sigma activity is positively associated with sleep spindles and has been linked to learning, memory, and intelligence (Fogel and Smith 2011; Geiger et al. 2011). The beta band encompasses the frequency range of 16–32 Hz. Beta activity is positively associated with physiological arousal and psychological stress (Hall et al. 2007).

Spectral EEG power within particular bandwidths changes throughout development (Gaudreau et al. 2001). Spectral EEG power is highly variable across individuals, but demonstrates a trait-like “fingerprint” that is stable within individuals across nights (De Gennaro et al. 2005), as well as across both sleep and wake states (Ehlers et al. 1998). Spectral EEG power has been implicated in a wide range of sleep research topics including stress (Hall et al. 2000), intelligence (Geiger et al. 2011), memory (Fogel and Smith 2011), psychopathology (Tekell et al. 2005), and sleep disorders (Buysse et al. 2001; Krystal and Edinger 2010; Perlis et al. 2001).

Spectral power can be calculated for each EEG recording site (e.g., C3/M2, and C4/M1). Total, or absolute, power is the sum of all power

frequencies, within each epoch, across all bandwidths analyzed. Relative power is the power per bandwidth divided by total power times 100. Relative power density can be used to describe individual differences in variability because it is standardized by an individual’s total power. qEEG calculations are commonly paired with visually scored sleep stages; this pairing can yield power in particular bands during specific sleep stages (e.g., delta power during non-REM sleep [NREM]). Once analyzed, sleep power spectra can be visually displayed on modeled power frequency curves with frequency, in Hertz, on the X-axis and the logarithmic power transformation on the Y-axis. The modeled power frequency curve can represent the entire night, or a specified sleep state such as all NREM sleep, the first NREM sleep bout, all REM sleep, etc.

To date, neither qEEG standardized analyses nor practice parameters have been established; therefore, the qEEG techniques can vary by laboratory (e.g., Vasko et al. 1997). For instance, laboratories use different methods for identifying low- and high-frequency artifacts, choice of window for weighting epochs, definition of frequency broad band ranges, and the specific electrode placement used for analyses (e.g., C3/M2, C4/M1, or average of the two locations). Thus, when reporting qEEG values, a thorough description of the acquisition, processing, and interpretation techniques are of paramount importance.

Cross-References

- [Non-REM Sleep](#)
- [Polysomnography](#)
- [REM Sleep](#)
- [Sleep](#)
- [Sleep Architecture](#)

References and Reading

- Buysse, D. J., Hall, M., Begley, A., Cherry, C. R., Houck, P. R., Land, S., et al. (2001). Sleep and treatment response in depression: New findings using power spectral analysis. *Psychiatry Research*, 103, 51–67.

- Campbell, I. G. (2009). EEG recording and analysis for sleep research. *Current Protocols in Neuroscience*, 49, 10.2.1–10.2.19.
- Cantero, J. L., & Atienza, M. (2000). Alpha burst activity during human REM sleep: Descriptive study and functional hypotheses. *Clinical Neurophysiology*, 111, 909–915.
- Cantero, J. L., Atienza, M., & Salas, R. M. (2002). Human alpha oscillations in wakefulness, drowsiness period, and REM sleep: Different electroencephalographic phenomena within the alpha band. *Clinical Neurophysiology*, 32, 54–71.
- De Gennaro, L., Ferrara, M., Vecchio, F., Curcio, G., & Bertini, M. (2005). An electroencephalographic fingerprint of human sleep. *NeuroImage*, 26, 114–122.
- Dijk, D. J., Brunner, D. P., Beersma, D. G., & Borbély, A. A. (1990). Electroencephalogram power density and slow wave sleep as a function of prior waking and circadian phase. *Sleep*, 13, 430–440.
- Ehlers, C. L., Kupfer, D. J., Buysse, D. J., Cluss, P. A., Miewald, J. M., Bisson, E. F., & Grochocinski, V. J. (1998). The Pittsburgh study of normal sleep in young adults: Focus on the relationship between waking and sleeping EEG spectral patterns. *Electroencephalography and Clinical Neurophysiology*, 106, 199–205.
- Fogel, S. M., & Smith, C. T. (2011). The function of the sleep spindle: A physiological index of intelligence and a mechanism for sleep-dependent memory consolidation. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 35, 1154–1165.
- Gaudreau, H., Carrier, J., & Montplaisir, J. (2001). Age-related modifications of NREM sleep EEG: From childhood to middle age. *Journal of Sleep Research*, 10, 165–172.
- Geiger, A., Huber, R., Kurth, S., Ringli, M., Jenni, O., & Achermann, P. (2011). The sleep EEG as a marker of intellectual ability in school age children. *Sleep*, 34, 181–189.
- Hall, M., Buysse, D. J., Nowell, P. D., Nofzinger, E. A., Houck, P., Reynolds, C. F., 3rd, & Kupfer, D. J. (2000). Symptoms of stress and depression as correlates of sleep in primary insomnia. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 62, 227–230.
- Hall, M., Thayer, J. F., Germain, A., Moul, D., Vasko, R., Puhl, M., Miewald, J., & Buysse, D. J. (2007). Psychological stress is associated with heightened physiological arousal during NREM sleep in primary insomnia. *Behavioral Sleep Medicine*, 5, 178–193.
- Iber, C., Ancoli-Israel, S., Chesson, A., Quan, S. F., & American Academy of Sleep Medicine. (2007). *The AASM manual for the scoring of sleep and associated events: Rules, terminology and technical specifications* (1st ed.). Westchester: American Academy of Sleep Medicine.
- Krystal, A. D., & Edinger, J. D. (2010). Sleep EEG predictors and correlates of the response to cognitive behavioral therapy for insomnia. *Sleep*, 33, 669–677.
- Perlis, M. L., Smith, M. T., Andrews, P. J., Orff, H., & Giles, D. E. (2001). Beta/Gamma EEG activity in patients with primary and secondary insomnia and good sleeper controls. *Sleep*, 24, 110–117.
- Tekell, J. L., Hoffmann, R., Hendrickse, W., Greene, R. W., Rush, A. J., & Armitage, R. (2005). High frequency EEG activity during sleep: Characteristics in schizophrenia and depression. *Clinical EEG and Neuroscience*, 36, 25–35.
- Thakor, N. V., & Tong, S. (2004). Advances in quantitative electroencephalogram analysis methods. *Annual Review of Biomedical Engineering*, 6, 453–495.
- Vasko, R. C., Brunner, D. P., Monahan, J. P., Doman, J., Boston, R. J., El-Jaroudi, A., et al. (1997). Power spectral analysis of EEG in a multiple-bedroom, multiple-polygraph sleep laboratory. *International Journal of Medical Informatics*, 46, 175–184.

Quantitative Trait Locus (QTL)

Matthew A. Simonson
Institute for Behavioural Genetics, Boulder, CO,
USA

Synonyms

QTL

Definition

A quantitative trait locus (QTL) is a region of DNA that influences, or is otherwise associated with, a quantitative trait (Mackay 2001). Unlike “Mendelian” traits, most traits that vary within a population are influenced by a large number of genes. The genetic effects of Mendelian traits are predominantly influenced by a single genetic locus that is inherited through simple and predictable patterns. Some examples of such traits in humans include blood type, albinism, and Huntington’s disease (Dipple and McCabe 2000). Alternatively, traits such as height, intelligence, risk for most forms of illness, as well as many others, are usually due to the combined effect of many genes and regulatory regions. Such traits vary over a continuous range and are

quantifiable by the degree to which the trait is expressed (Weiss et al. 2006).

To identify genetic regions that harbor QTLs, genetic markers are first identified across an organism's chromosomes. By examining whether a marker co-segregates with a trait through a pedigree more often than expected by chance, the regions of the genome near those markers are thought to have some effect on the trait (Morgan 1911). This method of mapping traits to regions of genomes has been applied to several model organisms, both plant and animal, for roughly 100 years. The mapping of QTL regions, called "linkage analysis," has enabled the identification of genes and causal polymorphisms for several human traits (Almasy and Blangero 2009).

By locating which QTLs (and associated genes or regulatory regions) contribute to a trait, a better understanding of the genetic architecture of a phenotype is gained (Eaves 1994). Through an increased understanding of the genetic architecture of traits, more refined methods of analysis can be employed. By combining information from genome-wide linkage studies with genome-wide association studies (GWAS), susceptibility alleles that would have previously been overlooked can be identified (Howrigan et al. 2011). Also, if a region is identified as a QTL relevant to a phenotype, it can then be sequenced (Feltus et al. 2011). By analyzing the sequence in a region, a better understanding of the underlying biology of a trait can then be ascertained.

Cross-References

- [Admixture](#)
- [Allele](#)
- [Benefit Evaluation in Health Economic Studies](#)
- [DNA](#)
- [Phenotype](#)
- [Single Nucleotide Polymorphism \(SNP\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Almasy, L., & Blangero, J. (2009). Human QTL linkage mapping. *Genetica*, 136(2), 333–340.
- Dipple, K. M., & McCabe, E. R. (2000). Phenotypes of patients with "simple" Mendelian disorders are complex traits: thresholds, modifiers, and systems dynamics. *American Journal of Human Genetics*, 66(6), 1729–1735.
- Eaves, L. J. (1994). Effect of genetic architecture on the power of human linkage studies to resolve the contribution of quantitative trait loci. *Heredity*, 72(Pt 2), 175–192.
- Feltus, F. A., Saski, C. A., Mockaitis, K., Haiminen, N., Parida, L., Smith, Z., et al. (2011). Sequencing of a QTL-rich region of the *Theobroma cacao* genome using pooled BACs and the identification of trait specific candidate genes. *BMC Genomics*, 12, 379.
- Howrigan, D. P., Laird, N. M., Smoller, J. W., Devlin, B., & McQueen, M. B. (2011). Using linkage information to weight a genome-wide association of bipolar disorder. *American Journal of Medical Genetics. Part B, Neuropsychiatric Genetics*, 156B(4), 462–471.
- Mackay, T. F. (2001). Quantitative trait loci in *Drosophila*. *Nature Reviews Genetics*, 2(1), 11–20.
- Morgan, T. H. (1911). Random segregation versus coupling in mendelian inheritance. *Science*, 34(873), 384.
- Weiss, L. A., Pan, L., Abney, M., & Ober, C. (2006). The sex-specific genetic architecture of quantitative traits in humans. *Nature Genetics*, 38(2), 218–222.

Questionnaire Development

- [Scale Development](#)

Quiet Sleep

- [Non-REM Sleep](#)

Quit Smoking

- [Smoking Cessation](#)

R

RA

- [Degenerative Diseases: Joint](#)
- [Rheumatoid Arthritis: Psychosocial Aspects](#)

Racial Inequality in Economic and Social Well-Being

Kristine M. Molina¹ and
Twyla Blackmond Larnell²

¹Department of Psychological Sciences,
University of California, Irvine, Irvine, CA, USA

²Loyola University Chicago, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Racial/ethnic disparities](#); [Social health](#)

Definition

Racial inequalities in economic and social well-being refer to disproportionate differences between as well as within racial/ethnic groups across areas of economic and social life (e.g., education, housing, and crime) that can fundamentally shape the life chances and opportunities for optimal health and functioning of individual persons and populations (Bambra et al. 2009; Blank 2001).

Description

Widely cited indicators of economic and social well-being include educational attainment, employment, marital status, income, wealth, housing, and crime. Wider economic and social indicators include broader conditions of living (e.g., physical infrastructure, sanitation), school (e.g., underperforming or dilapidated schools), and work environments (e.g., organizational and task structure), as well as access to resources (e.g., geographic access, paid sick time, and health insurance), services (e.g., language interpreters, transportation, and quality healthcare), and capital acquired through social, work, and community networks (Bambra et al. 2009; Blank 2001).

In the USA and other Western countries where the institutionalization of racism creates a socially stratified society, whites represent the dominant and privileged racial group whereas racial/ethnic minorities occupy subordinate positions in the social hierarchy; thus, inequalities in many indicators of economic and social well-being continue to be racially structured. Indeed, discriminatory policies as well as discrimination in the labor and housing markets contribute to concentration of certain racial/ethnic minority groups across geographic areas with high levels of poverty, underperforming schools, higher crime rates, and other social ills (Blank 2001; Brewer and Heitzeg 2008).

For example, on average, African Americans/Blacks, American Indian/Alaskan Natives, and

Hispanics/Latinos continue to lag behind Whites on many economic indicators such as household income, wealth, and educational attainment (e.g., high school and college graduation rates). Further, Hispanics/Latinos have, on average, higher labor force participation rates than other racial/ethnic groups, yet tend to be overrepresented in low-wage (e.g., housekeeping and service sector jobs) and hazardous occupations (e.g., construction) (National Council of La Raza 2011). On the other hand, Asians are generally more likely to have rates of high socioeconomic status similar to Whites (CAP 2015). However, significant subgroup variation exists within racial/ethnic groups and by gender. For example, Pacific Islanders (e.g., Hmong, Laotian, and Cambodian) typically fare much worse than other Asian ethnic groups (Ramakrishnan and Ahmad 2014). Regarding some indicators of social well-being, compared to white women, women of color are more likely to be minimum-wage workers than any other group (Baron 2014). Further, men and women of color are more likely to encounter greater exposure to certain forms of violence, including state-sanctioned (e.g., police brutality) and community violence, to come into contact with the criminal justice system, and to be incarcerated (Brewer and Heitzeg 2008). Research that focuses on examining between as well as within-group variation across indicators of economic and social well-being is clearly warranted.

Racial inequalities in economic indicators are key contributors of inequalities in social well-being and vice-versa, both of which are fundamentally linked to the unequal burden of disease and increased mortality experienced by many racial/ethnic minority groups across every stage of life and worldwide (Bambra et al. 2009; Cheng et al. 2016). Racial inequalities experienced early in life (e.g., childhood and adolescence) across key indicators (e.g., poverty, parental education, household income, and incarceration) are known to contribute to accumulated economic and social disadvantages throughout the life-course and across generations – all of which can have significant effects on human development and quality of life (Cheng et al. 2016).

Eliminating existing disparities across economic and social indicators is critical to a nation's health. Given that racial inequalities in one area of well-being tends to be closely linked to inequalities in other areas, intergenerational (e.g., parents, youth, and families), multilevel (e.g., individual, schools, community, and policy), and intersectoral approaches (e.g., addressing health, educational, housing policies in concert) are sorely needed to reduce, and ultimately eliminate, the unequal distribution of economic and social inequalities that contribute to racial/ethnic health inequities.

Cross-References

- [Racial/Ethnic Disparities](#)
- [Racism](#)
- [Socioeconomic Status \(SES\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bambra, C., Gibson, M., Sowden, A., Wright, K., Whitehead, M., & Pettecrew, M. (2009). Tackling the wider social determinants of health and health inequalities: Evidence from systematic reviews. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 64, 284–291.
- Baron, S. (2014). *State of the states report 2014: Local momentum for national change to cut poverty and inequality*. Washington, DC: Center for American Progress.
- Blank, R. M. (2001). An overview of trends in social and economic well-being, by race. In N. J. Smelser, W. J. Wilson, & F. Mitchell (Eds.), *America becoming: Racial trends and their consequences* (pp. 21–39). National Academies Press: National Research Council.
- Brewer, R. M., & Heitzeg, N. A. (2008). The racialization of crime and punishment: Criminal justice, color-blind racism, and the political economy of the prison industrial complex. *American Behavioral Scientist*, 51, 625–644.
- Center for American Progress. (2015). *Economic indicators and people of color*. Center for American Progress: Author. <https://cdn.americanprogress.org/wp-content/uploads/2015/08/05075343/PeopleOfColor-Econ-FS.pdf>
- Cheng, T. L., Johnson, S. B., & Goodman, E. (2016). Breaking the intergenerational cycle of disadvantage: The three generation approach. *Pediatrics*, 137(6). <https://doi.org/10.1542/peds.2015-2467>.
- National Council of La Raza. (2011). *We needed the work: Latino worker voices in the new economy*. Washington,

DC: National Council of La Raza. https://issuu.com/nclr/docs/jobquality_web

Ramakrishnan, K., & Ahmad, F.Z. (2014). Income and poverty. In *State of Asians Americans and Pacific Islanders*. Washington, DC: Center for American Progress. <https://www.americanprogress.org/issues/race/reports/2014/04/23/87520/state-of-asian-americans-and-pacific-islanders-series/>

Racial/Ethnic Discrimination

► Racism

Racial/Ethnic Disparities

► Racial Inequality in Economic and Social Well-Being

Racism

Twyla Blackmond Larnell¹ and
Kristine M. Molina²

¹Loyola University Chicago, Chicago, IL, USA

²Department of Psychological Sciences,
University of California, Irvine, Irvine, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Racial/ethnic discrimination](#)

Definition

Racism, rooted in the ideological belief that different phenotypic makeup (e.g., physical attributes) of racial groups makes them innately inferior or superior to others, is defined as a structured system that ranks groups based on their perceived value and used as a tool for justifying disparate treatment and allocation of resources, reinforcing

unequal power relations, and maintaining structural inequalities (Golash-Boza 2016; Omi and Winant 2014; Wade 2014).

Description

Racism generates discriminatory practices and differential treatment toward those perceived as inferior (Golash-Boza 2016; Omi and Winant 2014). Historically, certain racial groups (e.g., Blacks, Hispanics/Latinos) have been regarded as biologically different compared to non-Hispanic/Latino whites, thereby *innately*, inferior (Golash-Boza 2016; Wade 2014). As a result, racial minorities are more likely to experience different forms of racism, including *institutional and structural*, *interpersonal*, and *internalized racism* (Jones 2000), and to bear the disproportionately associated economic, social, and health costs across the life span (Alvarez et al. 2016). Together, these varying forms of racism impact the health of different populations through a number of mechanisms and have thus been regarded as a fundamental cause of health and healthcare inequalities (Williams and Mohammed 2013).

Interpersonal discrimination involves discriminatory acts often based on biases and prejudices toward others, has generally been the most widely studied form of racism in health-related research, and is usually measured as a target's perceptions of unfair treatment (Kressin et al. 2008; Williams and Mohammed 2013). For example, racial biases held by healthcare professionals can shape their behavior, which can manifest as disparate treatment toward racial/ethnic minority patients, including inaccurate medical evaluations and assessments, less access to information and referrals, and lack of timely, appropriate, and quality provision of medical treatment (Feagin and Bennefield 2014; Williams and Mohammed 2013). Disparate treatment in the healthcare context has been shown to be associated with rising health and healthcare inequalities (Feagin and Bennefield 2014; Williams and Mohammed 2013). Research also shows that overt and subtle forms of interpersonal discrimination act as a

psychosocial stressor that can engender pathogenic physiological responses (e.g., increased cortisol levels, inflammation), diminished cognition (e.g., impaired performance and self-regulation), health-damaging behavior (e.g., substance use, emotional eating), and negative emotions (e.g., sadness), thereby resulting in increased risk for a host of adverse health outcomes (e.g., chronic health conditions, psychiatric disorders, reduced health-related quality of life) (Alvarez et al. 2016; Williams and Mohammed 2013).

Second, institutional racism relates to discriminatory policies, practices, laws, social norms, and procedures embedded in the daily operations of institutional (e.g., healthcare system) and social structures – whether intentional or not – that systematically disproportionately adversely impact certain groups, including racial/ethnic minorities, by limiting their rights and privileges (Feagin and Bennefield 2014; Golash-Boza 2016; Omi and Winant 2014; Williams and Mohammed 2013). For example, racial/ethnic minority groups disproportionately experience structural racism as a result of discriminatory practices and policies in the housing and labor market, which have downstream effects that result in residential segregation – a key determinant of violent crime and incarceration rates, both of which have been shown to negatively impact the health of individuals, their families, and communities (Williams and Mohammed 2013). Further, racial/ethnic minority's overrepresentation in geographic areas with concentrated poverty, underperforming schools, higher crime rates, chemical pollutants, and other social issues can also directly or indirectly contribute to health (Alvarez et al. 2016; Feagin and Bennefield 2014; Jones 2000; Kressin et al. 2008; Williams and Mohammed 2013). Other manifestations of this form of racism include disparate access to goods and services (e.g., lack of access to health insurance or differential access to and quality of healthcare from preventative to end-of-life care) and opportunities, which can result in differential access to power (e.g., access to resources and knowledge) and limited economic and social mobility (Feagin and Bennefield 2014; Golash-Boza 2016; Jones 2000; Williams and Mohammed 2013). Limited

access to societal resources positions racial/ethnic minorities to a host of downstream adverse outcomes across the life course. Overall, institutional racism – as systematic exclusion, segregation, and incarceration of racial “others” – contributes to the maintenance of the existing racial hierarchy and associated social and health inequalities across generations (Feagin and Bennefield 2014; Golash-Boza 2016; Omi and Winant 2014; Williams and Mohammed 2013).

Lastly, internalized racism has been neglected relative to other forms of racism, although it is now garnering greater attention given its harmful effects on the health of racial/ethnic minorities (Jones 2000; Williams and Mohammed 2013). This type of racism refers to the way people think and feel about themselves and toward members of their racial group. More specifically, it refers to the acceptance (i.e., internalization) by oppressed groups (e.g., racial/ethnic minorities) regarding negative stereotypes and prejudicial beliefs and attitudes held by the dominant group and society in general about one's own group (Jones 2000). The deleterious effects of internalizing societal beliefs of racial minority group's perceived inferiority and lack of value may indirectly impact health via the erosion of one's self-esteem and worth, engendering feelings of self-doubt, self-devaluation and self-blame, helplessness, and resignation – reinforcing the perceived superiority of the dominant group and sustaining unequal power relations and oppression (Jones 2000). Indeed, internalized racism has been shown to relate to greater engagement in health-damaging behaviors and poorer mental and physical health (Jones 2000; Williams and Mohammed 2013).

A growing body of research continues to document robust associations among different types of racism and a wide range of health indicators, finding support for their role in accounting for persistent disparities across different health indicators, even when controlling for the effect of other explanatory factors, including socioeconomic status (Williams and Mohammed 2013). Considering and addressing the role of racism on health thus remains an important area of scientific inquiry and a critical public health issue targeted at reducing risk of poor individual-level health

and, ultimately, eliminating population-level health inequities (Williams and Mohammed 2013).

Cross-References

- [Ethnicity](#)
- [Racial Inequality in Economic and Social Well-Being](#)
- [Racial/Ethnic Disparities](#)
- [Social Epidemiology](#)
- [Social Factors](#)

References and Further Reading

- Alvarez, A. N., Liang, C. T. H., & Neville, H. A. (2016). *The cost of racism for people of color: Contextualizing experiences of discrimination*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Feagin, J., & Bennefield, Z. (2014). Systemic racism and U.S. healthcare. *Social Science and Medicine*, 103, 7–14.
- Golash-Boza, T. (2016). A critical and comprehensive sociological theory of race and racism. *Sociology of Race and Ethnicity*, 2(2), 129–141.
- Jones, C. P. (2000). Levels of racism: A theoretical framework and a gardner's tale. *American Journal of Public Health*, 90(8), 1212–1215.
- Kressin, N. R., Raymond, K. L., & Manze, M. (2008). Perceptions of race/ethnicity-based discrimination: A review of measures and evaluation of their usefulness for the health care setting. *Journal of Health Care for the Poor and Underserved*, 9(3), 697–730.
- Omi, M., & Winant, H. (2014). *Racial formation in the United States: From the 1960s to the 1980s*. New York: Routledge.
- Wade, N. (2014). *A troublesome inheritance: Genes, race, and human history*. New York: Penguin Press.
- Williams, D. R., & Mohammed, S. A. (2013). Racism and health I: Pathways and scientific evidence. *American Behavioral Scientist*, 57(8), 1152–1173.

Racism and Health

- [Discrimination and Health](#)

Radiation Therapy

- [Cancer Treatment and Management](#)

Radical Prostatectomy, Psychological Impact

Heather Honoré Goltz^{1,2},
Marc A. Kowalkowski^{1,2}, Stacey L. Hart³ and
David Latini⁴

¹HSR&D Center of Excellence, Michael
E. DeBakey VA Medical Center (MEDVAMC
152), Houston, TX, USA

²Department of Social Sciences, University of
Houston-Downtown, Houston, TX, USA

³Department of Psychology, Ryerson University,
Toronto, ON, Canada

⁴Scott Department of Urology, Baylor College of
Medicine, Houston, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Prostatectomy](#)

Definition

Radical Prostatectomy

Radical prostatectomy (RP) is a technique used to surgically remove the prostate gland and, commonly, the seminal vesicles, lymph nodes, and surrounding tissue. Surgeons have used RP to treat benign and malignant prostate disease for over 100 years. Advances in knowledge of pelvic anatomy, technology, and surgical techniques have positioned RP as a definitive treatment for localized prostate cancer. Currently, RP refers to several surgical approaches that vary, based on site of surgical entry and whether the surgery is “open” or uses minimally invasive “laparoscopic” techniques. These options include open retropubic (RRP), perineal (RPP), and laparoscopic and robotic-assisted laparoscopic (LRP) surgical approaches. Additionally, RP approaches may be used as first-line treatment for prostate cancer or second treatment after “biochemical recurrence” (i.e., rising prostate-specific antigen levels posttreatment). Other options for treatment include radiation, hormone therapy, or surveillance instead of active treatment.

Factors Influencing Receipt of Radical Prostatectomy

A number of factors influence patients' decisions to undergo active prostate cancer treatment. Factors specifically influencing receipt of RP treatment include patients' age, comorbid conditions, prostate cancer stage and grade, and the presence of metastases. Men who are older, or who have poor health status (e.g., obesity, comorbidities) and advanced stage or grade at the time of diagnosis are more likely to receive treatment modalities other than RP. Research is divided on the association between race/ethnicity and receipt of RP. Some authors have reported that African Americans are less likely to receive RP, possibly because of more advanced disease at diagnosis; while others report no ethnic variations in treatment patterns.

Complications of Radical Prostatectomy

RP approaches produce similar cancer-control outcomes but vary in terms of peri- and postoperative complications. Perioperative complications include neurological, bowel, rectal, and bladder injuries; deep venous thrombosis; and pulmonary embolism. While there are less data for LRP, it appears that rates for many perioperative complications are low for LRP but somewhat higher than rates for RRP and RPP. More common perioperative complications include urine leakage into the abdominal cavity, restrictive narrowing of the bladder neck, and excessive blood loss requiring transfusion. Higher rates of complications occur during RRP and RPP than during LRP. Many perioperative complications can be corrected surgically after discovery. Patients opting for surgical intervention tend to experience postoperative complications at significantly higher rates than those opting for other prostate cancer treatment modalities (e.g., electron beam radiation).

Urinary and bowel incontinence and sexual dysfunction are well-documented postoperative complications of RP. For example, RP causes changes in urinary function (i.e., urgency, frequency, control, incomplete emptying), irrespective of surgical approach. Urinary effects are usually immediate, and recovery times may vary substantially for men who develop stress urinary

incontinence. Men may take as long as 2–3 years before regaining some measure of continence after RP, though patients rarely experience continuous or complete incontinence. Post-RP continence rates at 12 months are between 40% and 95%, with patients at high-volume facilities achieving better continence rates. Hence, it is recommended that patients be monitored for 1 year post-RP before introducing medical or surgical interventions for urinary incontinence, as this issue may resolve with time. Findings from previous trials suggest that Kegel exercises and biofeedback prior to surgery may improve post-RP continence rates. In addition to provider- and facility-level factors, factors such as older age at the time of surgery, higher body mass index, higher prostate volume, perioperative RP bladder injury, and previous history of lower urinary tract symptoms or radiation therapy also contribute to post-RP urinary continence outcomes.

Post-RP sexual dysfunction is a complex phenomenon, with erectile dysfunction occurring in 25–85% of patients. This postoperative complication is more likely the result of a combination of the aging process, the disease itself, and RP treatment; but preoperative sexual function, comorbid health conditions, and lifestyle or behavioral factors (e.g., tobacco and alcohol use) are also contributing factors. Patients experiencing erectile difficulties immediately after surgery may gradually regain sexual function, particularly those with higher sexual functioning pre-RP; men have reported partial recovery of sexual function upwards of 2–4 years after surgery. Additional post-RP sexual effects include sterility, changes in penile length, and changes in orgasms resulting from concurrent removal of the prostate and seminal vesicles during RP.

Postoperative changes in bowel functioning are another potential complication of the RP surgical approach. Symptoms include increased frequency or urgency, diarrhea, and rectal bleeding. Men with post-RP bowel incontinence may report decline in bowel function at 4 months after surgery. As with urinary continence, many patients experiencing bowel dysfunction may recover function within the first year post-RP, while others may struggle with symptoms for years after treatment.

The Psychological Impact of Radical Prostatectomy

Advances in prostate cancer screening and detection are contributing to increasingly early prostate cancer diagnoses. A related trend concerns the often direct linkage between diagnosis and active treatment. Combined, these trends virtually ensure that younger men and those with low-risk prostate cancer will be offered treatment that they may or may not take and experience related side effects potentially for decades. In addition to medical complications, there are mental health and psychological complications.

A number of studies have examined psychosocial outcomes after prostate cancer treatment, including general, cancer-specific, and disease-specific health-related quality of life (HRQOL). General HRQOL encompasses a number of health domains related to mental/emotional, social, and physical/functional well-being. Cancer-specific instruments broadly assess the impact of having cancer across various health domains, while disease-specific instruments evaluate aspects of specific cancers. Commonly used general and cancer-specific HRQOL measures include the Medical Outcomes Survey Short Form-36 (or shorter versions) and the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer Quality of Life Questionnaire (EORTC-QLQ-30), respectively. The Prostate Cancer Index (PCI) and Expanded Prostate Cancer Index: Composite (EPIC) are widely used disease-specific instruments.

Peer-reviewed literature provides strong evidence concerning the relationship between receiving RP and reduced HRQOL from chronic urinary, sexual, and bowel complications. Based on longitudinal studies, men receiving RP initially experience problems across general HRQOL domains, such as vitality/energy and role-physical well-being that substantially resolve over the course of the first year; most will return to preoperative general HRQOL levels across many domains during that time period. In terms of cancer-specific or disease-specific HRQOL, receiving RP is linked to immediate decrements in urinary and sexual function. Urinary function reaches its nadir around 3 months post-RP and

gradually improves until years 2–3. At year 2, a substantial number of men's urinary function scores have not returned to preoperative levels, and they continue to report some degree of daily urine leakage. RP patients also experience decreased sexual functioning, reaching its nadir at 6 months post-RP and gradually improving through years 2–4. Yet return to presurgery levels of sexual function may not be possible for substantial numbers of patients; only about 34% of men undergoing RP return to preoperative levels by year 5. Men experiencing persistent erectile dysfunction may experience radical shifts in body image and confidence in initiating sexual intimacy, causing them to question their masculine and sexual identities.

Thus, post-RP complications cause a number of psychological, emotional, and social concerns that have lasting impact on men's HRQOL, including changes in masculine self-image and confidence and anxiety about cancer recurrence. The RP-HRQOL relationship is influenced by a number of demographic and psychosocial factors. Younger men undergoing RP experience greater recovery in terms of urinary and sexual function than their older male counterparts at 1-year post-prostatectomy. They also report lower urinary and sexual bother scores on average than older men. Men who are married or white are significantly more likely to return to pre-RP general HRQOL levels than their unmarried or racial/ethnic minority counterparts. Married men experience greater recovery in general health and social well-being domains; while those who are white experience gains in the physical, social well-being, and role-physical domains. Moderating or mediating psychosocial factors include health literacy, perceived stress, treatment satisfaction, and fear of recurrence.

Interventions exist that ameliorate many of the post-prostatectomy physical complications. For example, nonpharmacological interventions such as Kegel exercises or erectile aides (e.g., penile pumps) are available. Some RP patients may also experience enhanced sexual functioning with PDE-5 inhibitor usage; over one half of patients who initiate pharmacological penile rehabilitation recover natural erectile function by 18 months

post-RP. Interestingly, a number of men with erectile difficulties will discontinue treatment after the first failed intervention, despite evidence suggesting that men attempting two or more options are more likely to find effective treatment.

A growing number of randomized controlled trial-tested interventions are targeting prostate cancer patients and caregivers in clinically modifiable areas, such as physical and psychological symptom management, literacy and culturally appropriate educational materials, decisional aids, marital communication and adjustment, and other areas. Integrative psychological and behavioral approaches to prostate cancer treatment-related complications are warranted for improving HRQOL after RP. Behavioral medicine researchers and clinicians will increasingly be called upon to lend their expertise as part of multidisciplinary teams or in disseminating study results within clinical settings.

References and Readings

- Bokhour, B. G., Clark, J. A., Inui, T. S., Silliman, R. A., & Talcott, J. A. (2001). Sexuality after treatment for early prostate cancer: Exploring the meanings of "erectile dysfunction". *Journal of Internal Medicine*, 16, 649–655.
- Cooperberg, M. R., Moul, J. W., & Carroll, P. R. (2005). The changing face of prostate cancer. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 23(32), 8146–8151.
- Eton, D. T., & Lepore, S. J. (2002). Prostate cancer and health-related quality of life: A review of the literature. *Psycho-Oncology*, 11, 307–326.
- Knight, S. J., & Latini, D. M. (2009). Sexual side effects and prostate cancer treatment decisions: Patient information needs and preferences. *Cancer Journal*, 15(1), 41–44.
- Le, J. D., Cooperberg, M. R., Sadetsky, N., Hittleman, A. B., Meng, M. V., Cowan, J., et al. (2010). Changes in specific domains of sexual function and sexual bother after radical prostatectomy. *British Journal of Urology International*, 106(7), 1022–1029.
- Michaelson, M. D., Cotter, S. E., Gargollo, P. C., Zietman, A. L., Dahl, D. M., & Smith, M. R. (2008). Management of complications of prostate cancer treatment. *CA: Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, 58, 196–213.
- Muller, A., Parker, M., Waters, B. W., Flanigan, R. C., & Mulhall, J. P. (2009). Penile rehabilitation following radical prostatectomy: Predicting success. *Journal of Sexual Medicine*, 6(10), 2806–2812.
- Namiki, S., & Arai, Y. (2010). Health-related quality of life in men with localized prostate cancer. *International Journal of Urology*, 17, 125–138.
- Sandhu, J. S., & Eastham, J. A. (2010). Factors predicting early return of continence after radical prostatectomy. *Current Urology Reports*, 11, 191–197.
- Schover, L. R., Fouladi, R. T., Warneke, C. L., Neese, L., Klein, E. A., Zippe, C., et al. (2002). The use of treatments for erectile dysfunction among survivors of prostate carcinoma. *Cancer*, 95(11), 2397–2407.
- Shavers, V. L., & Brown, M. L. (2002). Racial and ethnic differences in the receipt of cancer treatment. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 94(5), 334–357.
- Sriprasad, S., Feneley, M. R., & Thompson, P. M. (2009). History of prostate cancer treatment. *Surgical Oncology*, 18, 185–191.
- Wilt, T. J., MacDonald, R., Rutks, I., Shamliyan, T. A., Taylor, B. C., & Kane, R. L. (2008). Systematic review: Comparative effectiveness and harms of treatments for clinically localized prostate cancer. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 148(6), 435–448.
- Wittman, D., Northouse, L., Foley, S., Gilbert, S., Wood, D. P., Balon, R., et al. (2009). The psychosocial aspects of sexual recovery after prostate cancer treatment. *International Journal of Impotence Research*, 21, 99–106.
- Wright, J. L., Lin, D. W., Cowan, J. E., Carroll, P. R., Litwin, M. S., & The CaPSURE Investigators. (2007). Quality of life in young men after radical prostatectomy. *Prostate Cancer and Prostatic Diseases*, 11(1), 67–73.

Random-Coefficient Model

► Hierarchical Linear Modeling (HLM)

Random-Coefficient Regression Modeling

► Multilevel Modeling

Random-Effects Modeling

► Multilevel Modeling

Randomization

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Randomization is a process of randomly assigning experimental subjects to one of the treatment groups so that many potential influences that cannot be controlled for (e.g., height, weight) or cannot be determined by observation (e.g., specific metabolic pathway influences in pharmaceutical clinical trials) are likely to be as frequent in one treatment group as they are in the other. The goal of randomization is to eliminate bias.

Randomization occurs after a subject's eligibility for a clinical trial has been determined and before any experimental data are collected. The process facilitates the random assignment of subjects to different treatment groups with the intent of avoiding any selection bias in subject assignment.

As discussed in the entry titled ► [“Hypothesis Testing,”](#) inferential statistics requires the random assignment of subjects to different treatment groups to allow differences in responses between treatment groups to be connected to the treatments received. Randomization means that other potential sources of influence on the data have been randomly allocated to each treatment group. That is, subjects have an independent (and usually, but not necessarily, equal) chance of being in the different groups. While subjects are typically randomized to two treatment groups in a 1:1 ratio, generating the same number of subjects in each group, other randomization ratios can be used. For example, a ratio of 2:1 for an active treatment versus a placebo treatment would mean that two thirds of the subjects would be randomized to the treatment group and one third to the placebo group. Such an unequal randomization ratio has various implications, including the consequence that the statistical power to detect a difference between the groups is not as high as it would be if the

same number of subjects had been used and the number of subjects in each group had been equal.

As noted, the goal of randomization is to eliminate bias. This includes subject bias, based on their knowledge of which treatment group they have been assigned to (this is not possible on all occasions, and can be particularly difficult in studies of behavioral medicine interventions), and investigator bias. Investigator bias is eliminated by preventing researchers from deliberately assigning subjects to one treatment group or the other. Two possible unconscious or conscious biases on the part of the researcher that are thus removed are an inclination to place less healthy subjects in the treatment group receiving the intervention they believe to be most beneficial, and an inclination to place the more healthy subjects in the group receiving a “favored” intervention to demonstrate its superiority.

Cross-References

- [Bias](#)
- [Hypothesis Testing](#)
- [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)

Randomized Clinical Trial

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Randomized concurrently controlled clinical trial;](#)
[Randomized controlled clinical trial](#)

Definition

A randomized clinical trial is one in which the subjects in each treatment group have been placed

in that group by a randomization procedure. Randomization involves randomly assigning experimental subjects to one of the treatment groups so that many potential influences that cannot be controlled for (e.g., height, weight) or cannot be determined by observation (e.g., specific metabolic pathway influences that may be relevant to the efficacy or safety of interventions in the trial) are likely to be as frequent in one treatment group as they are in the other (Turner 2010).

Description

The fundamental goal of randomization is to eliminate bias (or, pragmatically, to reduce it as much as possible). This includes subject bias, based on their knowledge of which treatment/intervention group they have been assigned to, and investigator bias. Investigator bias is eliminated by preventing investigators from deliberately assigning patients to one treatment group or the other. Two possible unconscious or conscious biases on the part of the investigators that are thus removed are an inclination to place less healthy subjects in the treatment group receiving the intervention they believe to be most beneficial, and an inclination to place the more healthy subjects in the investigational intervention group to demonstrate its superiority.

Randomized concurrently controlled clinical trials are generally regarded as the “gold standard” for providing compelling evidence that an intervention is effective. The treatment can be of various kinds, including pharmacological and behavioral. In the realm of behavioral medicine, two examples of interventional treatments are physical exercise and cognitive behavioral therapy. These interventions would be tested against one or more control interventions. These can be “active controls,” i.e., an intervention that is established to be efficacious in this context. They can also be “placebo controls,” i.e., interventions that are not able to be efficacious in this context, but whose implementation involves as many as possible of the same demands and benefits that the interventional treatment makes on, and provides to, subjects in the interventional group. Matthews (2006) commented as follows:

“Over the last two to three decades randomized concurrently controlled clinical trials have become established as the method which investigators must use to assess new treatments if their claims are to find widespread acceptance. The methodology underpinning these trials is firmly based in statistical theory, and the success of randomized clinical trials perhaps constitutes the greatest achievement of statistics in the second half of the twentieth century.”

Compelling evidence is sought that the investigational intervention is statistically significantly (and then clinically significantly) more effective than the comparator intervention. Such evidence is generated via the use of inferential hypothesis testing and a resultant p-value of less than 0.05. (Despite its attained prominence, the value of 0.05 was not ordained, but conceived by the renowned statistician Sir Ronald Fisher. Had he decided, for example, that odds of 1 in 25, with an analogous p-value of 0.04, were more suitable for this purpose than odds of 1 in 20, modern science might be held to a different standard.)

Randomization occurs after a subject’s eligibility for a clinical trial has been determined and before any experimental data are collected. The process of randomization is facilitated by the generation of a randomization list. This list is generated (often by a random-number generator) in advance of recruiting the first subject. The list is generated under the direction of the trial statistician, but, to maintain confidentiality, is not released to the statistician until the completion of the study.

Inferential statistics requires the random assignment of subjects to different treatment groups to allow differences in responses between treatment groups to be connected to the treatments administered. Randomization means that other potential sources of influence on the data have been randomly allocated to each treatment group. That is, subjects have an independent (and usually, but not necessarily, equal) chance of receiving either the investigational intervention or a control intervention.

Kay (2007) highlighted several methods of randomization, including simple randomization,

block randomization, and stratified randomization. Simple randomization involves assigning treatments to subjects in a completely random way. While this strategy is attractively simple, it is not advisable in the case of small trials. In the example of a trial involving 30 subjects randomized to two treatment groups, the probability of a 15–15 split, the most powerful from a statistical analysis point of view, is only 0.144, while the probability of a split of 11–19 or even more unbalanced is 0.20. While 30 subjects is a small number that is used for illustrative purposes here, some researchers advocate not using simple randomization schedules in trials with less than 200 participants. In such trials the stratified randomization approach is recommended. Many clinical trials in behavioral medicine are likely to involve such numbers of subjects, in contrast to therapeutic confirmatory trials in the pharmaceutical industry, where several thousands of subjects are typically employed.

Concurrent control is a critical feature of these trials. The term “control” has already been discussed here. The term “concurrent” simply means that the control treatment should be given at the same point in time (and also under the same conditions) as the intervention of interest.

Cross-References

► [Mode](#)

References and Further Reading

- Kay, R. (2007). *Statistical thinking for non-statisticians in drug regulation*. Chichester: Wiley.
- Matthews, J. N. S. (2006). *Introduction to randomized controlled clinical trials* (2nd ed.). Boca Raton: Chapman & Hall/CRC.
- Turner, J. R. (2010). *New drug development: An introduction to clinical trials* (2nd ed.). New York: Springer.

Randomized Concurrently Controlled Clinical Trial

► [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)

Randomized Controlled Clinical Trial

► [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)

Randomized Controlled Trial

► [Clinical Trial](#)

Raynaud's Disease and Stress

Leah Rosenberg¹ and Sarah Piper²

¹Department of Medicine, School of Medicine, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

²Institute of Metabolic Science, Addenbrookes Hospital, Metabolic Research Laboratories, University of Cambridge, Cambridge, UK

Synonyms

[Idiopathic Raynaud's Phenomenon](#); [Primary Raynaud's Phenomenon](#)

Definition

Raynaud's disease is a reversible vasospastic phenomenon triggered in susceptible patients by exposure to cold and/or emotional stress. The condition is characterized by arterial and arteriolar vasoconstriction, most commonly affecting the distal extremities such as the hands or, less commonly, the feet. The vasoconstriction produces a characteristic pallor and cyanosis of the involved digits (ischemic phase) followed by subsequent reperfusion and digit erythema, or redness.

Description

General Information

Raynaud's disease, or primary Raynaud's phenomenon, was first described in 1862 by Maurice

Raynaud, who observed the characteristic color changes of the hands of affected patients during episodes of vasospasm. Modern medicine differentiates Raynaud's disease, or primary Raynaud's phenomenon, which is an idiopathic disorder, from secondary Raynaud's phenomenon, which is commonly associated with rheumatologic or autoimmune causes and which often has a more severe clinical course.

Raynaud's disease predominantly affects females, with an estimated prevalence of 6–20% of women and 3–12.5% of men, and is more common in colder climates. The symptoms in Raynaud's disease typically begin prior to the age of 30, may involve associated pain or numbness during episodes of vasoconstriction, and tend to affect the extremities symmetrically. They can vary considerably in severity, with most individuals experiencing mild to moderate symptoms and others experiencing symptoms that are intermittently debilitating. Rarely, episodes of vasospasm in Raynaud's disease can progress to ulceration or necrosis of the involved digits.

Role of Stress

The exact relationship between emotional stress and Raynaud's disease is not clear. While most episodes of vasospasm in Raynaud's disease are caused by exposure to cold temperatures, emotional stress has long been thought to play a role in precipitating symptoms as well. In fact, management of Raynaud's disease during the mid-1900s fell under the purview and management of psychiatry and psychoanalysis, treated with questionable success with psychotherapeutic techniques. In more recent studies, patients have reported a role for stress in triggering Raynaud's attacks in up to 33% of episodes, experienced by a self-reported 21% of Raynaud's disease sufferers. Initially, it was hypothesized that Raynaud's patients who were susceptible to stress-triggered attacks may be more likely to manifest higher levels of anxiety in general, termed "trait anxiety," although the accuracy of this characterization is unclear. Studies in the 1980s failed to show any significant differences in measures of anxiety or "neuroticism" based on psychologic questionnaires. A study of the quality-of-life impact of

primary Raynaud's phenomenon suggested that patients suffering from the disease reported worse quality of life than control subjects and were more likely to report the subjective experience of moderate to severe anxiety symptoms. It remains uncertain, however, whether these findings inform an underlying psychiatric predisposition among Raynaud's sufferers to stress-triggered episodes or if the results are simply commonly seen complications of long-standing chronic disease.

Suspected Pathogenesis

The proposed pathogenesis of Raynaud's disease is not fully elucidated but seems to be closely related to the sympathetic nervous system, a physiologic mechanism triggered frequently by physiologic or emotional stress. Scientists have found that Raynaud's disease sufferers show an increased peripheral responsiveness to circulating catecholamines, or stress hormones, which are increased in all individuals in response to cold temperatures or emotional stress. People diagnosed with Raynaud's disease have been shown to have an increased sensitivity of the alpha-2 adrenergic receptors in peripheral blood vessels that detect these hormones, perhaps either through altered characteristics of the receptors themselves or through an increased density of receptors. By this model, levels of circulating catecholamines caused by emotional stress that would not typically trigger vasoconstriction in normal individuals could understandably trigger vasospasm in patients who are more sensitive to their effects, either with or without a predisposition to higher anxiety states.

Researching Stress and Raynaud's Disease

Efforts to study the effects of stress in Raynaud's disease have frequently produced equivocal and at times conflicting results. Early research in the 1940s and 1950s focused on measuring finger temperature in relation to emotional states to determine if emotional distress could cause vasospasm. While some initial studies documented correlative evidence of markedly decreased finger temperatures in Raynaud's patients exposed to emotional stressors, this correlation was not consistently replicated over the next decades. Some

studies even documented an increased finger temperature among Raynaud's sufferers in response to a provoked stress responses.

More recently, efforts to delineate the effect of stress in triggering Raynaud's attacks have revealed the possibility of a patient cohort that shows an increased susceptibility to emotional stress-triggered Raynaud's attacks, characterized by a higher trait anxiety scores than other Raynaud's sufferers. The Raynaud's Treatment Study in 2001 suggested that, while perceived stress alone did not seem to predict an increase in Raynaud's disease, increased anxiety scores were associated with more frequent attacks, particularly at warmer temperatures, as well as a higher reported severity of attacks at all temperatures and increased pain at temperatures greater than 40°. The observed effects were small but significant. It has been proposed that the effects of stress carry greater impact at higher temperatures than lower temperatures because of the absolute increase in cold-induced vasospasm below 40°. The effects of stress may only be observable at higher temperatures, where vasospasm is less universally triggering for Raynaud's sufferers.

Treatment

Understandably, the possible role of stress in triggering Raynaud's symptoms has led to the development and study of stress reduction-based interventions. Early recommendations of relaxation techniques have not shown any statistical benefit in studies. Cognitive-behavior treatments have been tested in small populations, again without any demonstrated benefit. Among non-pharmacologic treatments for Raynaud's disease, behavioral treatments seem to be the most effective in diminishing symptoms. For an in-depth discussion of behavioral treatments in Raynaud's disease, refer to "Raynaud's Disease and Behavioral Treatments."

References and Readings

Bakst, R., Merola, J. F., Franks, A. G., & Sanchez, M. (2008). Raynaud's phenomenon: Pathogenesis and management. *Journal of the American Academy of Dermatology*, 49(4), 633–653.

- Brown, K. M., Middaugh, S. J., Haythornthwaite, J. A., & Bielory, L. (2001). The effects of stress, anxiety, and outdoor temperatures on the frequency and severity of Raynaud's attacks: The Raynaud's treatment study. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 24(2), 137–153.
- De Angelis, R., Salaffi, F., & Grassi, W. (2008). Health-related quality of life in primary Raynaud phenomenon. *Journal of Clinical Rheumatology*, 14(4), 206–210.
- Goreczny, A. (Ed.). (1995). *Handbook of health and rehabilitative psychology*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Mittelman, B., & Wolff, H. G. (1939). Affective states and skin temperature: Experimental study on subjects with "Cold Hands" and Raynaud's syndrome. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 1, 271–292.

Raynaud's Disease: Behavioral Treatment

Leah Rosenberg¹ and Sarah Piper²

¹Department of Medicine, School of Medicine, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

²Institute of Metabolic Science, Addenbrookes Hospital, Metabolic Research Laboratories, University of Cambridge, Cambridge, UK

Synonyms

[Idiopathic Raynaud's Phenomenon](#); [Primary Raynaud's Phenomenon](#)

Definition

Raynaud's disease is a reversible vasospastic phenomenon triggered in susceptible patients by exposure to cold or emotional stress. The condition is characterized by arterial and arteriolar vasoconstriction, most commonly affecting the distal extremities, that produces a characteristic pallor and cyanosis of the involved digits (ischemic phase) followed by subsequent reperfusion and digit erythema, or redness.

Description

Symptoms of Raynaud's disease, including vasospasm and associated pain or numbness, are

frequently amenable at least in part to conservative approaches to treatment. These initial approaches focus on avoidance of potential environmental triggers which can vary according to individual patients but most often relates to exposure to cold temperatures. To minimize the risk of cold exposure, patients are advised to practice full body insulation since other areas of exposed skin besides the hands can precipitate attacks. Patients are advised to avoid sudden changes in temperature as well. Discontinuation of known vasoconstrictive medications, smoking cessation, avoidance of vibration, and discontinuation of caffeine consumption have also been counseled. Some individuals also benefit from a swing-arm maneuver that causes pooling of blood in the distal extremities to counteract the effects of vasoconstriction, shown in some people to abort the onset of a Raynaud's attack. While a majority of Raynaud's disease sufferers respond well to these recommendations with at least some reduction in the severity and frequency of symptoms, others require more aggressive pharmacologic or even behavioral interventions, described below.

For patients who do not respond to conservative interventions, the next step in treatment is frequently the initiation of a medication to inhibit vasospasm, such as calcium channel blockers. This class of medication has been shown in multiple studies to help decrease the rate of Raynaud's attacks and to mitigate the severity of attacks in a significant number of patients. Reports of side effects from these medications are common, including orthostatic hypotension, edema, headache, tachycardia, and constipation. Given poor tolerance of pharmacotherapy in some patients, behavioral treatments have been concurrently developed and researched to provide an alternative to medications. These interventions, most notably thermal biofeedback, autogenic training, and classical conditioning, have been tested head to head with medical treatments in some studies and have been shown to have potential benefit.

Behavioral treatments have been developed alongside medical therapies in treating Raynaud's disease, in part due to the known side effects of many medications but also due to early evidence

that principles of biofeedback may be very effective in controlling patient's symptoms.

Biofeedback is a behavioral technique developed in the last 40 years that links involuntary physiologic processes, such as heart rate, which often occur below the level of conscious awareness, to sensory stimuli that are easily perceptible and able to be tracked to note variations in these unconscious processes. Patients then use this information to manipulate the target physiologic response (e.g., slowing heart rate through conscious focus).

This technique has been applied to Raynaud's disease in several forms, the best-researched of which is thermal biofeedback. Thermal biofeedback (also called finger temperature biofeedback) is a behavioral treatment first studied in Raynaud's patients in the 1970s. The technique instructs individuals in the use of sensory feedback to convey an increase in finger temperature by facilitating peripheral vasodilation. This technique has been shown in several small studies to have strong efficacy in reducing Raynaud's attacks by up to 92.5%, particularly when the initial training was conducted during exposure to cold temperatures. Improvements in symptoms have been observed as long as 3 years from the time of initial training. Further studies, including those comparing the effectiveness of thermal biofeedback to standard medical therapies, have been inconclusive. The wide variability in study results is thought to be attributable to the underlying difficulty in teaching the technique, which often requires intensive instruction to achieve mastery. Patients who do achieve mastery are frequently able to facilitate hand rewarming through practiced conscious intervention in high-risk environments that would previously have triggered episodes of vasospasm. Despite these results, a recent head-to-head comparison of nifedipine, a standard medical treatment for Raynaud's, and thermal biofeedback was unimpressive, although authors highlighted the limitations in assessing the behavioral technique due to strong evidence that participants had not achieved mastery of the technique during the study, which likely significantly reduced its apparent effectiveness.

Another technique that may be in some part considered a relative of biofeedback is autogenic training. This technique was first introduced in the early 1930s within the mental health community to promote stress management and relief from somatic symptoms often related to anxiety. AT is a relaxation method consisting of passive self-monitoring of physiologic sensations such as heart rate to then inform self-initiated verbal cues intended to cause a desired change in physiologic effect or modification of the initial sensation. This technique has been applied to treatment models in Raynaud's disease through cultivation of an awareness of finger temperature and the application of cuing to trigger peripheral vasodilatation. The effectiveness of this technique is unclear. Some studies have shown an increase in finger temperature (often a measured outcome in Raynaud's research) that equals the observed efficacy of thermal biofeedback interventions, with reports of similar clinical efficacy. Combining the two techniques does not appear to convey any additional benefit, however.

Classical conditioning is a principle that pairs a behavior with a predictable outcome, such as salivation in response to the presentation of food, to an alternate stimulus to link the alternate stimulus with the outcome through repetitive training. In application to Raynaud's disease, Raynaud's disease sufferers have been conditioned to respond to exposure to cold temperatures with peripheral vasodilatation after serial exposures to cold ambient temperatures with concurrent immersion of the person's hands in warm water. Over time, patients were observed to have increased blood flow simply with exposure to cold temperatures even without the added exposure of warm water immersion. This technique, while not as well studied as thermal biofeedback, also has been shown to have a possible effect in decreasing the frequency and severity of Raynaud's attacks.

Less well-studied interventions have included progressive relaxation and guided imagery. These techniques focus on relieving emotional stress and providing improved relaxation. Progressive relaxation is a tool that involves the progressive contraction of muscle groups followed by sequential

release of muscle tone to achieve a global state of relaxation. Guided imagery is a technique that teaches patients to directed imagining of calming or peaceful imagery to facilitate relief from anxiety and stress. Both techniques been studied in conjunction with other behavioral interventions such as thermal biofeedback, but not as a stand-alone treatment.

Behavioral treatments such as thermal biofeedback, autogenic training, and classical conditioning have been shown to have variable effects on the symptom frequency and severity of Raynaud's disease sufferers, although evidence overall is supportive for a role of these treatments among this patient population. Certainly, further research will help to clarify the role of these interventions and to elucidate the mechanism by which their effect is mediated.

Cross-References

► [Raynaud's Disease and Stress](#)

References and Readings

- Bakst, R., Merola, J. F., Franks, A. G., & Sanchez, M. (2008). Raynaud's phenomenon: Pathogenesis and management. *Journal of the American Academy of Dermatology*, 49(4), 633–653.
- Baum, A. (Ed.). (2001). *Handbook of health psychology*. Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Freedman, R., Ianni, P., & Wenig, P. (1983). Behavioral treatment of Raynaud's disease. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 51, 539–549.
- Garcia-Carrasco, M., Jimenez-Hernandez, M., & Escarcega, R. (2008). Treatment of Raynaud's phenomenon. *Autoimmunity Reviews*, 8, 62–68.
- Jobe, J. B., Sampson, J. B., Roberts, D. E., & Kelly, J. A. (1986). Comparison of behavioral treatments for Raynaud's disease. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 9(1), 89–96.
- Karavidas, M. K., Tsai, P. S., Yucha, C., McGrady, A., & Lehrer, P. M. (2006). Thermal biofeedback for primary Raynaud's phenomenon: A review of the literature. *Applied Psychophysiology and Biofeedback*, 31(3), 203–216.
- Middaugh, S. J., Haythornthwaite, J. A., Thompson, B., Hill, R., Brown, K. M., Freedman, R. R., Attanasio, V., Jacob, R. G., Scheier, M., & Smith, E. A. (2001). The

Raynaud's treatment study: Biofeedback protocols and acquisition of temperature biofeedback skills. *Applied Psychophysiology and Biofeedback*, 26(4), 251–278.

Stetter, F., & Kupper, S. (2002). Autogenic training: A meta-analysis of clinical outcome studies. *Applied Psychophysiology and Biofeedback*, 27, 45–98.

Readiness for Return-to-Work (RRTW)

Timothy Wolf

Department of Occupational Therapy and
Neurology, Program in Occupational Therapy,
St. Louis, MO, USA

Synonyms

Vocational assessment

Definition

Readiness for return to work is the complex decision-making behavior related to returning to work after an injury or illness. In this process, individuals must consider their self-efficacy surrounding their ability to return to work; the interaction of the many third parties involved in returning to work including the employer and the healthcare and insurance providers; as well as the state of their disability as it interacts with the demands of the job. This term was originally conceived by Franche and Krause (2002) in their conceptual model for readiness for return to work.

Description

Work disability is often determined by an evaluation of impairments following injury or illness. This most often focuses on physical impairments which is apparent in most work evaluation methodologies, i.e., functional capacity evaluation. The limitation in this approach is that the healthcare community has long known that work

disability involves a lot of factors beyond what impairment can explain. Workers who are seemingly more impaired may return to work very quickly and without difficulty while workers who are seemingly less impaired may struggle with returning to work or never attempt to return to work at all. The notion of readiness for return to work is used to help address this limitation in current work assessment methodologies. The concept for readiness for return to work was developed by Franche and Krause (2002) to provide a framework for work disability research and practice that would account for the multiple factors that influence work disability. These factors include physical (i.e., impairments), psychological (i.e., self-efficacy related to completing the demands of the job), and social (i.e., the employee's interactions in the work environment, with healthcare providers/health insurance companies). They developed the Readiness for Return to Work model in order to combine these factors to explain return to work behaviors. The Readiness for Return to Work model incorporates two well-known theoretical models to explain a work-disabled person's behavior regarding return to work. First, the Phase Model of Occupational Disability provides a framework for understanding the developmental component of disability (Krause and Ragland 1994). Second, the Readiness for Change Model provides a framework for understanding the motivation to change behavior relative to returning to work (Prochaska and Diclemente 1983).

Further work with the Readiness for Return to Work model has focused on the application of the Readiness for Change Model to work behavior to help understand work-disabled individuals' motivation to return to work following injury or illness. There are five stages within the Readiness for Change Model that an individual will progress through (Prochaska and Diclemente 1983):

- *Precontemplation*: Workers are not thinking about returning to work and are not making plans to do so either.
- *Contemplation*: Workers are considering return to work but are still not engaging in the planning process to do so.

- *Preparation for action:* Workers are seeking information about returning to work and are also looking for feedback on their ability to meet the demands of the workplace. In addition, workers are making plans to return to work.
- *Action:* Workers return to work in some capacity.
- *Maintenance:* Workers use their skills and social support to help cope with adversity they encounter in returning to work in order to maintain their ability to work.

Within this model, it is important to note that workers can relapse anytime and start regressing through these stages. The Readiness for Return-to-Work Scale (RRTW) (Franché et al. 2007) is used to determine the worker's present stage. The results might be helpful for healthcare providers to determine support and resources needed for the worker to be able to return to work. This information can also be used to tailor interventions for the worker in order to improve the effectiveness of rehabilitation efforts.

Cross-References

► Vocational Assessment

References and Further Reading

- Franché, R. L., & Krause, N. (2002). Readiness for return to work following injury or illness: Conceptualizing the interpersonal impact of health care, workplace, and insurance factors. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation, 12*, 233–256.
- Franché, R. L., Corbiere, M., Lee, H., Breslin, F. C., & Hepburn, C. G. (2007). The readiness for return-to-work (RRTW) scale: Development and validation of a self-report staging scale in lost-time claimants with musculoskeletal disorders. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation, 17*, 450–472.
- Krause, N., & Ragland, D. R. (1994). Occupational disability due to low back pain: A new interdisciplinary classification based on a phase model of disability. *Spine, 19*, 1011–1020.
- Prochaska, J. O., & Diclemente, C. C. (1983). Stages and process of self-change of smoking: Toward an integrative model of change. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 51*, 390–395.
- Joanne Park^{1,2}, Douglas P. Gross³, Shaniff Esmail² and Renée-Louise Franché^{4,5,6}
- ¹Workers' Compensation Board of Alberta
Millard Health, Edmonton, AB, Canada
- ²Department of Occupational Therapy, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada
- ³Department of Physical Therapy, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada
- ⁴School of Population and Public Health, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada
- ⁵WorkSafe BC, Vancouver, BC, Canada
- ⁶Institute for Work and Health, Toronto, ON, Canada\

Readiness for Return-to-Work (RRTW) Scale

Definition

The Readiness for Return-To-Work (RRTW) scale assesses an individual's stage of readiness for return to work (RTW) among individuals off work due to a health condition and stage of readiness for work maintenance in those who have returned to work (Franché et al. 2007). Informed by the readiness for change model (Prochaska et al. 1994), the questionnaire categorizes respondents who are not working into four stages (*precontemplation*, *contemplation*, *prepared for action-self-evaluative*, or *prepared for action-behavioral*), while working respondents are categorized into either *uncertain maintenance* or *proactive maintenance*. The scale provides a final score for each readiness stage, calculated by taking the mean of items creating each factor. Higher scores within each stage indicate higher levels of beliefs associated with that stage. Questionnaire outcome can inform health-care providers and other stakeholders about how best to intervene (if at all) to facilitate sustainable RTW. The RRTW scale is relatively simple and straightforward to complete and freely available, making it attractive for use by clinicians in vocational and occupational

rehabilitation settings and staff in workers' compensation and other insurance bodies.

Description

The readiness for change model identifies individual and social factors that influence the initiation and maintenance of behavior change, such as RTW after injury (Franché and Krause 2002). This model conceptualizes the process of behavior change as the progression or relapse of an individual through the stages of change. A stage-based approach to RTW acknowledges that readiness for work varies across individuals off work due to a health condition. Some may be thinking about RTW, developing strategies for success, and actively planning their reintegration to the workforce. Others may not even be considering RTW. A developmental approach to RTW has been recommended (Pransky et al. 2005; Young et al. 2005). Although not yet widely adopted, evidence indicates that a phase-specific approach, or in this context stage-specific, offers a more complete and realistic understanding of the RTW process (Franché and Krause 2002).

The RRTW scale is one of the only tools measuring the construct of stage of readiness for RTW. The scale identifies four stages of change, informed by Prochaska's model, for those not working (Prochaska et al. 1994; Franché and Krause 2002). This includes:

- (1) *Precontemplation*: the individual is not thinking about behaviors that would initiate RTW.
- (2) *Contemplation*: the individual uses a decisional balance when considering RTW but is not actively engaging in behaviors involved in RTW.
- (3) *Prepared for action-self-evaluative*: the individual participates in behaviors such as seeking information regarding RTW, testing their abilities for RTW, and making tangible plans.
- (4) *Prepared for action-behavioral*: the individual engages in behaviors that put their RTW plan into action.

For those who are not working, the scale identifies two stages of change:

- (1) *Uncertain maintenance*: characterized by higher levels of functional disability, fear avoidance, and experiencing challenges staying at work.
- (2) *Proactive maintenance*: characterized by injured workers who utilize skills and social supports to manage high-risk situations that can lead to relapse and employ preventative strategies.

The RRTW scale was developed and validated in a Canadian study of workers' compensation claimants experiencing time loss from work due to musculoskeletal disorders (Franché et al. 2007). The 22-item tool consists of Scales A and B; Scale A contains 13 items for individuals who are not working, and Scale B includes nine items for individuals who are working. Each item is scored using a five-point Likert scale (1, strongly disagree; 5, strongly agree) representing characteristics of a specific readiness stage. For workers not working, 60% of the variance was explained by four factors: *precontemplation* (items a1, a2, a13), *contemplation* (items a9, a11, a12), *prepared for action-self-evaluative* (a4, a7 (item scale reversed), a8, a10), and *prepared for action-behavioral* (a3, a5, a6). For those working, 58% of the variance was explained by two factors: *uncertain maintenance* (b5, b6, b7, b8 (item scale reversed), b9) and *proactive maintenance* (b1, b2, b3, b4). Confirmatory factor analysis confirmed the initial model and had satisfactory fit indices. Concurrent validity of the RRTW scale was supported as relationships with other relevant constructs (i.e., depressive symptoms, fear avoidance, pain, and general health) were generally in the hypothesized direction.

The stability of the factorial structure of the RRTW scale remains to be established: The six stages initially identified (Franché et al. 2007) have not been consistently replicated in subsequent studies. The scale was tested in a Norwegian study evaluating a 5-day inpatient

occupational rehabilitation program (Braathen et al. 2013). Unlike Franche et al., this study only found two stages for the not working group: *RTW inability* which corresponds to the *precontemplation* stage and *RTW uncertainty* which corresponds to the *contemplation* stage. However, like Franche et al., two stages were identified for the working group, corresponding to *uncertain maintenance* and *proactive maintenance*. In another study, Canadian injured workers with subacute (6–12 weeks) and chronic (+12 weeks) musculoskeletal disorders attending an outpatient rehabilitation program were enrolled (Park 2017). This study found three stages for the not working group, *contemplation, prepared for action-self-evaluative*, and *prepared for action-behavioral*, and two stages for the working group, *uncertain maintenance* and *proactive maintenance*. Across these three validation studies, there were differences in readiness factors identified for the not working group. However, all three studies consistently found two factors for those working in some capacity. Further evaluation and validation of the RRTW scale could provide valuable information for understanding what determinants contribute to factors identified for the not working group.

The RRTW scale has potential for facilitating stage-specific interventions tailored to the needs of injured workers. The RRTW scale could also be used as a screen to guide assessments, for goal-setting purposes, and to assist with RTW decision making. The only longitudinal study examining predictive validity of the scale found that three dimensions (*prepared for action-self-evaluative*, *prepared for action-behavioral*, and *uncertain maintenance*) were significantly associated with future RTW in a sample of sick-listed individuals in Norway (Aasdahl et al. 2017). However, issues were identified with stage allocation and more research is needed on factor structure. Although the development and validation of the RRTW scale have shown promise in work rehabilitation, further validation is required to examine the progression from one stage to another, to confirm readiness stages in different

cultures and patient settings, and the utility of this scale in clinical settings.

Cross-References

- [Cognitions](#)
- [Health Assessment Questionnaire](#)
- [Health Beliefs/Health Belief Model](#)
- [Pain, Psychosocial Aspects](#)
- [Psychosocial Factors](#)
- [Psychosocial Predictors](#)
- [Psychosocial Variables](#)
- [Stages-of-Change Model](#)
- [Transtheoretical Model of Behavior Change](#)

References and Further Reading

- Aasdahl, L., Pape, K., Jensen, C., et al. (2017). Associations between the readiness for return to work scale and return to work: A prospective study. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*. Advanced online publication.
- Braathen, T. N., Brage, S., Tellnes, G., & Eftedal, M. (2013). Psychometric properties of the readiness for return to work scale in inpatient occupational rehabilitation in Norway. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 23, 371–380.
- Franché, R. L., & Krause, N. (2002). Readiness for return to work following injury or illness: Conceptualizing the interpersonal impact of health care, workplace, and insurance factors. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 12, 233–256.
- Franché, R. L., Corbière, M., Lee, H., Breslin, F. C., & Hepburn, C. G. (2007). The Readiness for Return-To-Work (RRTW) scale: Development and validation of a self-report staging scale in lost-time claimants with musculoskeletal disorders. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 17, 450–472.
- Park J. (2017). *Motivational interviewing and injured workers: Facilitating behaviour change in work rehabilitation*. PhD thesis, University of Alberta.
- Pransky, G., Gatchel, R., Linton, S. J., & Loisel, P. (2005). Improving return to work research. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 15, 453–457.
- Prochaska, J. O., Velicer, W. F., Rossi, J. S., et al. (1994). Stages of change and decisional balance for 12 problem behaviors. *Health Psychology*, 13, 39–46.
- Young, A. E., Roessler, R. T., Wasiak, R., McPherson, K. M., van Poppel, M. N., & Anema, J. R. (2005). A developmental conceptualization of return to work. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 15, 557–568.

RE-AIM Guidelines

Paul Estabrooks¹, Samantha M. Harden² and Kacie Allen Blackman²

¹Department of Health Promotions, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

²Department of Human Nutrition, Foods, and Exercise, Virginia Tech, Blacksburg, VA, USA

Synonyms

Evaluation of potential public health impact; Implementation science; Internal and external validity issues; Translational research

Definition

RE-AIM is a planning and evaluation framework that addresses the five dimensions of reach, effectiveness, adoption, implementation, maintenance (Glasgow et al. 1999). Interventions are defined broadly as community programs, clinical practices, environmental changes, and policy approaches. Reach is an individual-level measure and defined as the number, percent, and representativeness of participants, and in some cases, ongoing reach such as the dose or receipt of intervention components (c.f. Harden et al. 2014). Efficacy or effectiveness is defined as the individual-level change in the primary outcome, impact on quality of life, and assessment of potential negative outcomes. Adoption is a setting-level indicator and defined as the number, percent, and representativeness of settings and delivery personnel who agree to deliver an intervention. Setting-level implementation determines the cost of, and extent to which, the intervention is delivered as intended. Finally, maintenance is conceptualized at both the individual and setting level. At the individual level, maintenance is the degree to which behavior changes are sustained 6 months or longer after the intervention is complete. At the setting level, maintenance is the extent to which an intervention is sustained over time (c.f. Glasgow et al. 1999 and www.re-aim.org).

Description

The RE-AIM framework was developed to improve health behavior intervention reporting by also considering external validity during intervention planning and evaluation (Glasgow et al. 1999). The underlying proposition was that evidence that is contextual, practical, and robust is more likely to facilitate the translation of health behavior interventions into typical clinical or community practice. Further, considering each of the RE-AIM dimensions during the planning phase is hypothesized to result in interventions that can be widely adopted by different sites and personnel, have the ability for sustained and consistent implementation at a reasonable cost, reach large numbers of people (especially those who can most benefit), and produce replicable and long-lasting effects with minimal negative impacts (Glasgow and Emmons 2007; Harden et al. 2018; Klesges et al. 2005).

RE-AIM is one of the most frequently cited frameworks in dissemination and implementation grant applications at the National Institutes of Health (Kessler et al. 2013) and has been applied across a range of behavioral and health-related outcomes behavior interventions (Gaglio et al. 2013). Early reviews of the literature using the RE-AIM framework indicated that there was a paucity of focus on external validity-related dimensions (e.g., representativeness related to reach and adoption; Glasgow et al. 2004). More recently, reporting in these areas has improved, however, the degree to which RE-AIM dimensions have been consistently operationalized across studies is low (Harden et al. 2015). As a result, comparisons of relative reach, adoption, implementation, and maintenance are challenging (Harden et al. 2014). Most recently, a pragmatic focus on RE-AIM attempts to operationalize the framework using existing data and organizational goals to determine the relative value of assessment of each dimension for decision-making across a variety of settings (Estabrooks and Allen 2013; Glasgow and Estabrooks 2018; Harden et al. 2018). The remainder of this chapter will be dedicated to outlining pragmatic guidelines and operational definitions for each RE-AIM dimension.

Reach

Determining the number of individuals who participate in or are exposed to a given intervention is relatively straight forward. However, determining an appropriate denominator to calculate participation rate can be more difficult. In one study, investigators explored four indicators regarding reach of an older adult physical activity program that was delivered via DVD for 6-months (Harden et al. 2014). This study was conducted in a community where 105, 515 individuals may have been exposed to at least one of the recruitment strategies (e.g., newspaper, newsletter, radio announcement). During the intervention, 563 individuals responded to the recruitment strategies, 383 were determined to be eligible for intervention, and 307 individuals participated. In some cases, this would be reported as an 80% reach (307 of the 383). However, using the most conservative denominator, the total number exposed to recruitment was estimated at 105,515 with 307 final participants resulting in a study reach of 0.3%. The costs and types of recruitment strategies were deemed appropriate for this target audience, and the participants were representative (e.g., location in Illinois, race) of the target audience, with the exception of sex (participants were more likely to be female) and age (those who responded were more likely to be less than 65 years of age, and therefore ineligible). Finally, from months 1 to 6, DVD viewing *and* reporting decreased across the 6-month intervention. Taken together, ongoing reach data proved to be difficult to collect as it was participant self-reported, but costs and exposure data were more readily available via research records.

Efficacy or Effectiveness

Methods to determine the efficacy or effectiveness of a behavioral intervention have been exhaustively covered by other authors (e.g., Flay 1986). Briefly, a comparison of the ability of an intervention(s) to change a primary study outcome either under optimal or more real-world conditions provides estimates of efficacy or effectiveness, respectively. The comparison of changes in quality of life adds a dimension to effectiveness that allows a more patient-centered perspective and standardization for comparison across interventions targeting

different primary outcomes. The focus on unintended negative consequences can range from issues related to safety or changes the reduction of one health behavior in favor of increasing another (e.g., adding a fruit and vegetable intervention to an ongoing physical activity intervention could reduce the effectiveness in terms of changes in physical activity (Doerksen and Estabrooks 2007)). Other issues related to improving the external validity of documenting effectiveness include assessment of differential attrition across participants with different demographic profiles and the use intention-to-treat analyses.

Adoption

A simple example of analyzing staff adoption rates can be found through an adoption randomized controlled trial in which county-based health educators (HEs) were assigned to deliver FitEx or Active Living Every Day (ALED). FitEx is a statewide walking program adapted specifically for the system in which the HEs worked, whereas ALED was developed by a research institute and packaged for translation in their system. Training contact and dose for each program was the same for all HEs. Fourteen of the 18 HEs assigned to FitEx (77%) adopted the program whereas only 2 of the 18 HEs assigned to ALED (11%) adopted the program. Furthermore, and in alignment with recommendations for fully employing RE-AIM (Kessler et al. 2014), qualitative data regarding adoption or non-adoption were collected (Johnson et al. 2015). This work complemented the quantitative data and found that HE perceived FitEx to be more adaptable to their county and needs.

Implementation

Implementation includes costs of and the degree to which the intervention was delivered as intended. Reilly et al. (2018) examined the degree to which a state policy to label food based on nutrient content as green, yellow, or red (i.e., traffic light approach; green go, yellow slow, red mostly no) was assessed. In the study, they examined three different implementation strategies and found that higher intensive implementation strategies trended towards higher adherence to the

state level policy. When cost was considered more intensive, implementation strategies cost nearly twice the amount per school as the lower intensity option. However, when cost was considered relative to effectiveness in policy change, the lower intensity option was nearly twice the cost of the higher intensity option (Reilly et al. 2018).

Maintenance

It is recommended to gather data on individual- and system-level maintenance 6 months after the intervention ends. Perri et al. (2014) provide excellent examples of assessing individual level maintenance. In their studies, participants randomly assigned to different intensities of weight loss interventions delivered in rural sites were followed for 2 years (18 months after the initial 6-month weight loss intervention). They found that participants in medium and high intensity programs lost approximately 10 kg and sustained approximately two thirds of that weight loss 18 months later. They also examined cost effectiveness and found that the moderate intensity version was favored over low or high intensity versions of the intervention. Organizational level maintenance has been less studied to date, but Estabrooks and colleagues examined the potential to sustain physical activity programs for older adults to be more likely when the intervention strategies were integrated into organizational resources, job descriptions, and values (Estabrooks et al. 2011).

There is some interest in understanding how the dimensions of RE-AIM may interact to generate a significant public health impact (Glasgow et al. 2006). Specifically, it may be necessary to investigate the interplay between reach, effectiveness, and cost of adoption, implementation, and maintenance to inform public health practice related to multilevel health behavior/education interventions and policy decisions. The combination of Reach x Effectiveness measures the impact at the individual level primary outcome. A median effect size (ES) summary measure calculates an overall effectiveness score. The impact of an intervention treatment may vary between subgroups (e.g., gender, geographical location, and age). If the intervention effect is similar regardless of the participant characteristic of interest, the median

$ES_{\text{differential impact}}$ will be low (close to zero) and specifies robust effectiveness. Next Intervention effectiveness can be calculated by identifying the median ES across primary outcome measure then subtracting the median ES for negative outcomes and the median $ES_{\text{differential impact}}$. Lastly, to calculate the composite estimate of individual level impact (RxE), multiply the composite estimate for reach x composite intervention effectiveness. For example, $R \times E = 100 \text{ participants}/200 \text{ eligible and invited to participate} \times 0.2 \text{ effect size (ES) on total physical activity minutes}$, which is a RE of 0.1 which indicates that minimal or no difference across subgroups. To calculate the attributable population level impact of an intervention, multiply the individual level impact (RE) by the prevalence of a problem. For example, in a survey of 2000 women who gave birth in Wyoming in 2017, a total of 20 reported having gestational diabetes. Calculate the prevalence of gestational diabetes in this group $(20 \text{ new and pre-existing cases})/(2000 \text{ US population}) \times 100 = 1\%$. If the individual level impact is 0.2, then multiply by 0.01 to yield an attributable individual level impact of 0.002. The RE “efficiency” assists decision makers in deciding on adopting a given program. It is calculated by dividing the cost of an intervention by its individual level impact. For example, RE “efficiency” would be calculated as the cost of an intervention (\$5000) divided by individual level Impact $(0.2) = 25,000$. Glasgow and colleagues (2006) propose these types of interaction measurements for the other RE-AIM dimensions as well.

These operational definitions of constructs within the framework, examples across health promotion interventions, and suggested interaction calculations may lead to the pragmatic application of RE-AIM to inform decision-making and generalizability across practice settings and, ultimately, impact public health.

References and Further Reading

- Almeida, F. A., Smith-Ray, R. L., Van Den Berg, R., Schriener, P., Gonzales, M., Onda, P., et al. (2005). Utilizing a simple stimulus control strategy to increase physician referrals for physical activity promotion. *Journal of Sport & Exercise Psychology*, 27(4), 505–514.

- Doerksen, S. E., & Estabrooks, P. E. (2007). Brief fruit and vegetable messages integrated within a community physical activity program successfully change behavior. *International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 4, 12. <https://doi.org/10.1186/1479-5868-4-12>.
- Estabrooks, P. A., & Allen, K. C. (2013). Updating, employing, and adapting: A commentary on what does it mean to “employ” the RE-AIM model. *Evaluation & the Health Professions*, 36(1), 67–72. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0163278712460546>. Epub 2012 Oct 8.
- Estabrooks, P. A., & Gyurcsik, N. C. (2003). Evaluating the impact of behavioral interventions that target physical activity: Issues of generalizability and public health. *Psychology of Sport and Exercise*, 4(1), 41–55.
- Estabrooks, P. A., Bradshaw, M., Dzewaltowski, D. A., & Smith-Ray, R. L. (2008). Determining the impact of Walk Kansas: Applying a team-building approach to community physical activity promotion. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 36(1), 1–12.
- Estabrooks, P. A., Smith-Ray, R. L., Dzewaltowski, D. A., Dowdy, D., Lattimore, D., Rheume, C., et al. (2011). Sustainability of evidence-based community-based physical activity programs for older adults: Lessons from active for life. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 1(2), 208–215. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s13142-011-0039-x>.
- Flay, B. R. (1986). Efficacy and effectiveness trials (and other phases of research) in the development of health promotion programs. *Preventive Medicine*, 15(5), 451–474.
- Gaglio, B., Shoup, J. A., & Glasgow, R. E. (2013). The RE-AIM framework: A systematic review of use over time. *American Journal of Public Health*, 103(6), e38–e46. <https://doi.org/10.2105/AJPH.2013.301299>. Epub 2013 Apr 18.
- Glasgow, R. E., & Emmons, K. M. (2007). How can we increase translation of research into practice? Types of evidence needed. *Annual Review of Public Health*, 28, 413–433.
- Glasgow, R. E., & Estabrooks, P. E. (2018). Pragmatic applications of RE-AIM for health care initiatives in community and clinical settings. *Preventing Chronic Disease*. 2018, 15, 170271. <https://doi.org/10.5888/pcd15.170271>.
- Glasgow, R. E., Vogt, T. M., & Boles, S. M. (1999). Evaluating the public health impact of health promotion interventions: The RE-AIM framework. *American Journal of Public Health*, 89(9), 1322–1327.
- Glasgow, R. E., Klesges, L. M., Dzewaltowski, D. A., Bull, S. S., & Estabrooks, P. (2004). The future of health behavior change research: What is needed to improve translation of research into health promotion practice? *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 27(1), 3–12.
- Glasgow, R. E., Klesges, L. M., Dzewaltowski, D. A., Estabrooks, P. A., & Vogt, T. M. (2006a). Evaluating the impact of health promotion programs: Using the RE-AIM framework to form summary measures for decision making involving complex issues. *Health Education Research*, 21(5), 688–694.
- Glasgow, R. E., Nelson, C. C., Strycker, L. A., & King, D. K. (2006b). Using RE-AIM metrics to evaluate diabetes self-management support interventions. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 30(1), 67–73.
- Harden, S. M., Fanning, J. T., Motl, R. W., McAuley, E., & Estabrooks, P. A. (2014). Determining the reach of a home-based physical activity program for older adults within the context of a randomized controlled trial. *Health Education Research*, 29(5), 861–869. <https://doi.org/10.1093/her/cyu049>.
- Harden, S. M., Smith, M. L., Ory, M. G., Smith-Ray, R. L., Estabrooks, P. A., & Glasgow, R. E. (2018). RE-AIM in clinical, community, and corporate settings: Perspectives, strategies, and recommendations to enhance public health impact. *Frontiers in Public Health*, 6, 71. <https://doi.org/10.3389/fpubh.2018.00071>.
- Johnson, S. B., Harden, S. M., & Estabrooks, P. A. (2016). Uptake of evidence-based physical activity programs: Comparing perceptions of adopters and nonadopters. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 6(4), 629–637. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s13142-015-0371-7>.
- Kessler, R. S., Purcell, E. P., Glasgow, R. E., Klesges, K. M., Benkeser, R. M., & Peek, C. J. (2013). What does it mean to “employ” the RE-AIM model? *Evaluation & the Health Professions*, 36(1), 44–66. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0163278712446066>.
- Klesges, L. M., Estabrooks, P. A., Dzewaltowski, D. A., Bull, S. S., & Glasgow, R. E. (2005). Beginning with the application in mind: Designing and planning health behavior change interventions to enhance dissemination. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 29, 66–75.
- Perri, M. G., Limacher, M. C., von Castel-Roberts, K., Daniels, M. J., Durning, P. E., Janicke, D. M., et al. (2014). Comparative effectiveness of three doses of weight-loss counseling: Two-year findings from the rural LITE trial. *Obesity (Silver Spring)*, 22(11), 2293–2300. <https://doi.org/10.1002/oby.20832>.
- Reilly, K. L., Reeves, P., Deeming, S., Yoong, S. L., Wolfenden, L., Nathan, N., & Wiggers, J. (2018). Economic analysis of three interventions of different intensity in improving school implementation of a government healthy canteen policy in Australia: Costs, incremental and relative cost effectiveness. *BMC Public Health*, 18(1), 378. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12889-018-5315-y>.
- Schillinger, D., Handley, M., Wang, F., & Hammer, H. (2009). Effects of self-management support on structure, process, and outcomes among vulnerable patients with diabetes: A three-arm practical clinical trial. *Diabetes Care*, 32(4), 559–566.
- Stetler, C. B., Mittman, B. S., & Francis, J. (2008). Overview of the VA Quality Enhancement Research Initiative (QUERI) and QUERI theme articles: QUERI series. *Implementation Science*, 3, 8. www.re-aim.org.

Real-Life Blood Pressure Monitoring

► Ambulatory Blood Pressure

Reasons

► Attribution Theory

Recessive Inheritance

Laura Rodriguez-Murillo¹ and Rany M. Salem^{2,3}

¹Department of Psychiatry, Columbia University Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

²Broad Institute, Cambridge, MA, USA

³Cambridge Center, Cambridge, MA, USA

Definition

A trait that is inherited in a recessive fashion only manifests phenotypically in homozygous individuals, i.e., when the individual has two copies of the same recessive allele. Humans have two versions of all autosomal genes, called alleles, one

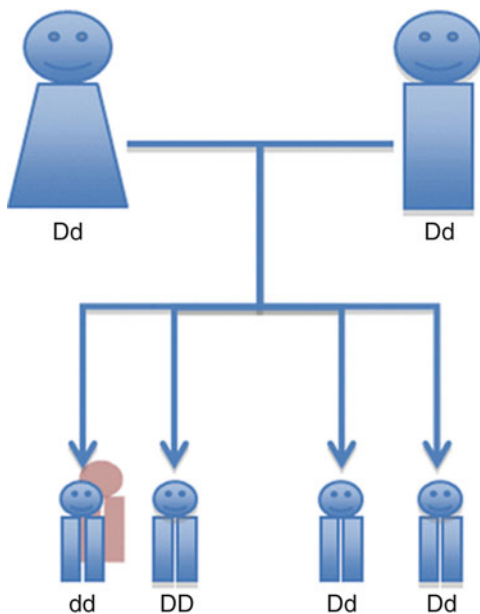
from each parent. The recessive trait is hidden in the heterozygous individual (Dd) if the other allele is inherited in a dominant fashion, and so this person is called a “carrier” of the recessive allele, but does not manifest the disease or trait. A recessive trait can only be passed to the offspring if both parents carry (Dd or dd) and transmit the recessive allele to their offspring. In the scenario where both parents are heterozygous carriers of the recessive trait, the children have 25% chance of inheriting two copies (dd) of the recessive allele and exhibiting the recessive trait (see pedigree figure, Fig. 1). An example of a disease with a recessive inheritance is Tay-Sachs disease that occurs when a child has two defective copies of the HEXA gene, neither of which can be successfully transcribed and form a functional enzyme product (Myerowitz and Costigan 1988).

Cross-References

- [Allele](#)
- [Dominant Inheritance](#)
- [Gene](#)
- [Genotype](#)
- [Heterozygous](#)
- [Homozygous](#)

References and Further Reading

- Lewis, R. (2005). *Human genetics. Concepts and applications* (7th ed.). Boston: McGraw-Hill Science/Engineering/Math.
- Myerowitz, R., & Costigan, F. C. (1988). The major defect in Ashkenazi Jews with Tay-Sachs disease is an insertion in the gene for the alpha-chain of beta-hexosaminidase. *Journal of Biological Chemistry*, 263(35), 18587–18589.
- Strachan, T., & Read, A. P. (2003). *Human molecular genetics* (3rd ed.). London/New York: Garland Science/Taylor & Francis Group.



Recessive Inheritance, Fig. 1 Recessive inheritance diagram. Highlighted individuals are affected by the disease after inheriting one recessive allele from each carrier parent (dd)

Recognition (Means of Acknowledgment)

- [Respect](#)

Recruitment and Retention of Research Subjects

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Recruitment of research participants](#)

Definition

Recruitment of research subjects is the process by which individuals are recruited as potential subjects in a research study. Upon learning full details of the study by reading the Informed Consent Form, eligible individuals may or may not decide to participate: Nonetheless, they have participated in the process of recruitment.

Description

While individual investigators can play an important role in subject recruitment – their access to potential subjects likely having been a reason for their being selected to participate in the trial – the primary responsibility for subject recruitment can fall on the principal investigator/holder of the grant that is funding the behavioral medicine research study. For all but the smallest studies, creation and implementation of a recruitment strategy and plan is an important and potentially critical operational step. This plan should be a formal written document that carefully considers best-case and worst-case scenarios, takes into account various timing influences (e.g., national holidays and typical vacation periods, seasons of the year, likely onset of flu season), and has contingencies built in to address all anticipated potential recruitment barriers.

Spilker (2009) provided the following operational definition of recruitment:

- Identifying potential pools of subjects and specific individual subjects who may be eligible to enroll in the trial.
- Attracting those individuals to consider participation.
- Discussing the trial with them.
- Prescreening subjects.
- Having subjects read an informed consent form, answering any questions they may have, and then having the subjects sign the consent form.
- Conducting a more complete and formal screening procedure.
- Being able to state that subjects are now enrolled in the trial.

Recruitment is of ongoing interest to a principal investigator throughout a trial, and there are several common metrics addressing this. One is “first subject first visit,” the date on which the first subject completes his or her first visit to the investigational site. In cases where there are multiple investigational sites another metric of interest is the date when 50% of the sites have each enrolled at least one subject.

Traditional subject recruitment strategies include the following:

- Advertisements on radio and television, and in print media.
- Mailing flyers to individuals and patient advocacy groups.
- Data mining from insurance company databases.
- Using web sites to publicize the trial.
- Posting information on a hospital’s bulletin board.
- Hospital staff wearing lapel pins that bring attention to the trial.

Cabell (2009) recently discussed another approach that focuses on understanding and utilizing the “patient pathway,” the route by which patients receive treatment. By understanding and

documenting the pathway via which patients with the disease or condition of clinical concern receive their current medical care, it becomes possible for recruitment specialists to reach out to clinicians and other behavioral medicine specialists who provide the care. This allows the specialists to access the appropriate patients and, should they be willing, recruit them as subjects for the trial.

While this entry focuses primarily on subject recruitment, it has become widely accepted that principal investigators need to devote considerable resources to subject retention as well as recruitment: The ultimate goal is for an enrolled subject to complete participation in the trial. Many characteristics of a subject's participation in the trial can influence the likelihood that he or she will complete the trial, including:

- The length of the treatment period. All subjects have personal and professional lives, and events that preclude trial completion – personal or family illness, relocating, financial difficulties – do and will happen. Some trials have relatively long treatment periods, and the researcher cannot alter this, but the length should alert the researcher to the need for appropriate contingency plans.
- How onerous participation is. If the trial's protocol requires subjects to undergo many procedures at many visits, withdrawal rate may increase. The burden of the trial should be considered at the protocol development phase, with an eye to decreasing noncritical subject tasks, such as filling out a large number of questionnaires that do not address the primary objective.
- Ease of traveling to the investigational site(s). If many subjects participating at a given site have to travel a considerable distance, and/or at considerable expense, each time they visit the site, the PI is well advised to address this proactively.

Specific retention strategies include:

- Providing reimbursement for expenses such as parking, meals, and babysitting.

- Calling subjects shortly before each visit to remind and assure them that provisions for their attendance are in place.
- Paying for, or actually providing transportation to and from the site.
- Providing escorts from and back to a parking lot, particularly if it is not well lighted, and/or in bad weather.
- Optimizing the environment in the subject waiting area. This can include having sufficient and appropriate magazines that are not 5 years out of date, providing toys for children who accompany subjects out of necessity, and ensuring that all trial staff treat the subjects courteously at all times.
- Reminding the subjects throughout the trial that their participation is extremely valuable in evaluating a new behavioral medicine intervention that, if successful, may provide considerable benefit to many patients. This can be done verbally and also by sending out regular newsletters.

Cross-References

► [Informed Consent](#)

References and Further Reading

- Cabell, C. (2009). Patient recruitment: Are we looking in the right place? *International Pharmaceutical Industry*, Summer issue, 38–41.
- Spilker, B. (2009). *Guide to drug development: A comprehensive review and assessment*. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Recruitment of Research Participants

► [Recruitment and Retention of Research Subjects](#)

Recurrence Risk Ratio

Jennifer Wessel
Public Health, School of Medicine, Indiana
University, Indianapolis, IN, USA

Definition

Recurrence risk ratio is a measure of familial aggregation of disease. When a genetic factor(s) cannot be measured directly, information on disease status among family members of an affected individual can be used to derive a genetic risk ratio. It can provide a rationale for performing genetic studies to identify the susceptibility alleles and has been used extensively in the mapping of complex diseases. The recurrence risk ratio, λ_R , is the ratio of disease manifestation in other family members to the affected individual compared with the disease prevalence in the general population.

The sibling recurrence risk ratio is commonly used, where the numerator would represent the risk of manifesting the disease given that one's sibling is affected:

$$\lambda_S = \frac{\text{Pr(D in a sibling/ affected case)}}{K}$$

where K is the prevalence of the disease in the general population.

Cross-References

- [Allele](#)
- [Gene](#)

References and Further Reading

- Risch, N. (1990a). Linkage strategies for genetically complex traits. I. Multilocus models. *American Journal of Human Genetics*, 46, 222–228.
- Risch, N. (1990b). Linkage strategies for genetically complex traits. II. The power of affected relative pairs. *American Journal of Human Genetics*, 46, 229–241.

Regression Analysis

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Linear regression](#); [Multiple regression](#); [Regression modeling](#)

Definition

In regression analysis it is assumed that a change in variable x will lead to a change in variable y. It is often the case that the researcher wishes to predict the value of y for a given value of x (Campbell et al. 2007).

Consider the case of linear regression and the plotting of a fitted regression line. In cases where linear regression is appropriate there is only one independent variable. Conventionally, the dependent variable is plotted on the vertical axis (y-axis) and the independent variable is plotted on the horizontal axis (x-axis). The equation $y = \alpha + \beta x$ is defined as the linear regression equation. Alpha (α) is the intercept, and Beta (β) is the regression coefficient (Greek letters are used to clarify that these are population parameters). The regression equation is a model that is used to describe or model the relationship between y and x. When the graph is plotted, alpha is the value of the equation when $x = 0$, and beta is the slope of the line drawn (plotted). An increase of x of one unit will be associated with a change in y of beta units.

A set of data is used to create the plot, and then to draw the regression line. Imagine a set of data describing hemoglobin levels and age in a set of 20 women. The individual subjects' data can be represented as a set of 20 paired observations, and these points can be plotted on the graph. The best fitting linear regression line is then drawn. This

line enables the determination of alpha and beta. Then, for any value of x , the appropriate value of y as given by this model can be calculated.

Since outcomes in behavioral medicine research are often influenced by more than one independent variable, the linear regression model can easily be extended to the technique of multiple regression. Multiple regression can address various questions of interest, including examination of the relationship between continuous variables while allowing for a third variable, and adjusting for differences in confounding factors between experimental groups (Machin et al. 2007). Examples are provided in the “References and Readings” section of this entry.

Cross-References

- [Data](#)
- [Experimental Group](#)
- [Multivariate Analysis](#)
- [Univariate Analysis](#)

References and Further Reading

- Campbell, M. J., Machin, D., & Walters, S. J. (2007). *Medical statistics: A textbook for the health sciences* (4th ed.). Chichester: Wiley.
- Naicker, N., Richter, L., Mathee, A., Becker, P., & Norris, S. A. (2011). Environmental lead exposure and socio-behavioral adjustment in the early teens: The birth to twenty cohort. *Science of the Total Environment*, 414, 120–125.
- Smith, K. J., Blizzard, L., McNaughton, S. A., Gall, S. L., Dwyer, T., & Venn, A. J. (2011). Takeaway food consumption and cardio-metabolic risk factors in young adults. *European Journal of Clinical Nutrition*. (Epub ahead of print).
- Soureti, A., Hurling, R., van Mechelen, W., Cobain, M., & Chinapaw, M. (2011). Moderators of the mediated effect of intentions, planning, and saturated-fat intake in obese individuals. *Health Psychology*. (Epub ahead of print).

Regression Modeling

- [Regression Analysis](#)

Regulation of Expression

- [Gene Expression](#)

Rehabilitation

Bengt H. Sjölund

University of Southern Denmark, Odense, DK, Denmark

Synonyms

[Habilitation](#)

Definition

According to the World Report on Disability, rehabilitation is “a set of measures that assist individuals who experience, or are likely to experience, disability to achieve and maintain optimal functioning in interaction with their environments” (World Health Organization [WHO] 2011).

Description

Rehabilitation literally means “redressing” (*Latin habitat – dress*). While there are many definitions of this concept, the world health organization (WHO) has defined rehabilitation as “a process aimed at enabling disabled persons to reach and maintain their optimal physical, sensory, intellectual, psychological and social functional levels. Rehabilitation provides disabled people with the tools they need to attain independence and self-determination.” Thus, the aim of rehabilitation has traditionally been seen as facilitating the normalization of human functioning after injury, disease, or due to congenital defects. It is usually said to comprise a number of coordinated measures of medical, psychological, social, educational and vocational nature. The Convention of the Rights

of Persons with Disabilities, in its article 26 calls for “appropriate measures . . . to enable persons with disabilities to attain and maintain their maximum independence, full physical, mental, social and vocational ability, and full inclusion and participation in all aspects of life” (United Nations 2006).

Background. Modern rehabilitation originated in British experiences of people with spinal cord injuries during the Second World War, where the neurosurgeon Dr. Ludwig Guttmann at Stoke-Mandeville pioneered the development of reliable rehabilitation programs for those with paraplegia and tetraplegia. Apart from crisis intervention, these programs placed strong emphasis on conservative treatment of the spinal fractures and on preventive measures, such as prophylactic bed positioning to avoid pressure sores, to empty the urinary bladder at regular intervals, and to train adequate techniques for breathing and coughing in high injuries. Effective techniques for independently taking care of personal hygiene as well as transferring were also developed, e.g., between a bed, a chair, and a wheelchair, including the effective handling of transport vehicles. After post-acute rehabilitation, a lifelong follow-up ensued. The result was that the remaining number of life years increased from 1 to 2 years after the injury (even in young people), to today’s normal life span for a paraplegic person, usually at an independent level, and a moderately reduced life span for the tetraplegic person, as a rule partly dependent.

In the mid-twentieth century, Physical and Rehabilitation Medicine (PRM) was established as an independent specialty in Western health care. It currently defines itself as “concerned with the promotion of physical and cognitive functioning, behavior, quality of life (activities and participation) and with the prevention, diagnosis, treatment and rehabilitation management of people with disabling medical conditions and co-morbidity across all ages” (Gutenbrunner et al. 2007).

Rehabilitation services have gradually been expanded to include people disabled by stroke, neurological disease, traumatic brain injury, chronic pain, cardiac and pulmonary

insufficiency, cancer, mental disorders, and other disabling conditions. Generally speaking, rehabilitation can be considered a re-adaptive process, where the disabled person adapts his/her set of values to a different, more restricted life situation. Originally, rehabilitation was based on a biomedical model, where problems in functioning of an individual were seen as due to a deviation from “normal” organ function. In the 1970s, the social model of disability was launched by disabled people’s organizations, where problems in functioning were instead viewed as society’s exclusion (by its design and organization) of such persons. These models have more recently been replaced by the biopsychosocial model of disability, recognizing biological as well as social factors (ICF, WHO 2001). This model is now acknowledged among both organizations of people with disabilities and among professional organizations.

The Interdisciplinary Team

It was recognized that many different health professions apart from physicians and nurses were necessary in the daily work to fulfill the multiple needs of people receiving rehabilitation services. This led to the development of *rehabilitation teams*, supervised by the rehabilitation physician. Today, these teams ideally contain psychologists (with cognitive-behavioral or neuropsychological background), physiotherapists, occupational therapists, social workers, nurses and sometimes vocational specialists, speech therapists, and recreational therapists. The expected norm in such *interdisciplinary* teams is group decision making, both in assessment, rehabilitation planning, and treatment. In the team, the disabled person is considered the most important member, both in planning and in decision making.

Rehabilitation Strategies

Common rehabilitation strategies are used, where the various team professionals contribute important components. The team members share responsibility for the rehabilitation given. The team conference, led by anyone of the team members, is the important forum for lateral communication and for decision making. A comprehensive rehabilitation plan is formulated, where time

frames, types of intervention, and responsible therapists are given, all communicated to and agreed with the disabled person. This concept allows a free exchange of ideas, may benefit from group synergies in problem solving, and facilitates the use of common strategies and coordination. However, it can be time consuming and the team members need training in the team process.

Disability Assessment, Rehabilitation and the ICF

An important part of the work is disability assessment, usually with a team approach, and greatly helped by the development of the International Classification of Functioning, Disability and Health (ICF) (WHO 2001). Special rating instruments provide supplementary information in this task. The ICF is based on the biopsychosocial model and is a *components of health* classification. It has advanced the understanding and assessment of disability in that it classifies both problems in human functioning (health conditions) and the context in which people with different levels of functioning live and act. The problems are characterized in three interconnected areas:

- *Impairments* are problems in body function or structure such as a significant deviation or loss.
- *Activity limitations* are difficulties an individual may have in executing activities.
- *Participation restrictions* are problems an individual may experience in involvement in life situations.

It is the *interaction* between a health condition and contextual factors, both environmental and personal that may be experienced as a *disability*. *Environmental factors* make up the physical, social, and attitudinal environment in which people live and conduct their lives, whereas *personal factors* are the particular background of an individual's life and living, and may include gender, race, age, other health conditions, fitness, lifestyle, habits, upbringing, coping styles, social background, education, profession, past and current experience, overall behavior pattern and

character style, individual psychological assets, and other characteristics.

Disability and Rehabilitation. Defining disability as an interaction means that disability is no longer the attribute of the person (World Report on Disability; WHO and World Bank 2011). The prevalence of disability in different countries varies greatly, not only due to differences in definitions but also in context, including cultural values. The current definition of rehabilitation (supra), "a set of measures that assist individuals who experience, or are likely to experience, disability to achieve and maintain optimal functioning in interaction with their environments," emphasizes firstly that disability is something experienced, i.e., subjective, and secondly that changing an individual's environment, e.g., by housing adaptation or by educating the family to change attitudes, is also part of rehabilitation. Consequently, rehabilitation is cross-sectional and often carried out by health professionals in cooperation with specialists on education, social welfare and employment. The fact that disability is seen as a subjective experience may also explain the core role of cognitive therapy as an important component in many rehabilitation programs, where modifications of thought patterns along with influencing the links between the individual's thoughts, emotions, and behaviors is vital.

ICF and Rehabilitation. It is obvious with the evolvement of the ICF as a conceptual model and the disability concept that rehabilitation should be defined in relation to these notions. An attempt to do so was elaborated in cooperation with several professional rehabilitation organizations by Stucki et al. (2007) and importantly, further developed by integrating the perspective of the disabled person to describe rehabilitation as a health strategy (Meyer et al. 2011) (Table 1).

Community-Based Rehabilitation

If there are few health professional resources such as in developing countries, *community-based rehabilitation* (CBR) performed locally by community groups, health assistants, families, and friends may be an alternative (Chatterjee et al. 2003; Gona et al. 2010; Dalal et al. 2010). CBR

Rehabilitation, Table 1 ICF-based conceptual description of rehabilitation strategy, modified version (ICF terms are marked in bold; from Meyer et al. 2011 with permission)

Rehabilitation is the health strategy which, based on WHO's integrative model of functioning, disability and health applies and integrates
Approaches to assess functioning in light of health conditions
Approaches to optimize a person's capacity
Approaches that build on and strengthen the resources of the person
Approaches that provide a facilitating environment
Approaches that develop a person's performance
Approaches that enhance a person's health-related quality of life in partnership between person and provider and in appreciation of the person's perception of his or her position in life over the course of a health condition and in all age groups; along and across the continuum of care, including hospitals, rehabilitation facilities and the community, and across sectors, including health, education, labor and social affairs; with the goal to enable persons with health conditions experiencing or likely to experience disability to achieve and maintain optimal functioning

started in Europe as rehabilitation in the home or in the work place in the 1970s as a cheaper alternative to institution-based rehabilitation and has spread rapidly in low-income countries, often advocated and performed by human rights activists and non-health professionals working with development with the additional goal to transform and strengthen local communities in third world countries.

The Effectiveness of Rehabilitation

The evidence base for the effectiveness of modern rehabilitation is now considerable, e.g., for traumatic brain injury and stroke (Cicerone et al. 2011), spinal cord injury (Martin Ginis et al. 2010), chronic musculoskeletal pain (Norlund et al. 2009; Schonstein et al. 2003), cardiac insufficiency (Dalal et al. 2010), breast cancer (Duijts et al. 2011), and some mental diseases (Twamley et al. 2003).

In summary, rehabilitation as the health strategy of functioning represents a unique health service delivery system that contributes markedly to restoring and maintaining health for people with

disabilities in most developed countries, but has insufficient resources in others. It is often substituted by voluntary community-based services in developing countries. Since many of the functional disturbances treated emanates from the nervous system, the rapidly expanding new neurobiology, having demonstrated plasticity, regeneration, and adult-born neural stem cells in adult man, will provide fascinating new therapeutical possibilities for the rehabilitation of persons with disabilities in the years to come.

Cross-References

- Occupational Therapy
- Physiotherapy

References and Readings

- Chatterjee, S., Patel, V., Chatterjee, A., & Weiss, H. A. (2003). Evaluation of a community-based rehabilitation model for chronic schizophrenia in rural India. *The British Journal of Psychiatry*, 182, 57–62.
- Cicerone, K. D., Langenbahn, D. M., Braden, C., Malec, J. F., Kalmar, K., Fraas, M., Felicetti, T., et al. (2011). Evidence-based cognitive rehabilitation: Updated review of the literature from 2003 through. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, 92, 519–530.
- Dalal, H. M., Zawada, A., Jolly, K., Moxham, T., & Taylor, R. S. (2010). Home based versus centre based cardiac rehabilitation: Cochrane systematic review and meta-analysis. *British Medical Journal*, 340, b5631. Review. Erratum in: *BMJ*. 2010;340:c1133.
- Duijts, S. F., Faber, M. M., Oldenburg, H. S., van Beurden, M., & Aaronson, N. K. (2011). Effectiveness of behavioral techniques and physical exercise on psychosocial functioning and health-related quality of life in breast cancer patients and survivors – a meta-analysis. *Psycho-Oncology*, 20, 115–126.
- Gona, J. K., Xiong, T., Muhit, M. A., Newton, C. R., & Hartley, S. (2010). Identification of people with disabilities using participatory rural appraisal and key informants: A pragmatic approach with action potential promoting validity and low cost. *Disability and Rehabilitation*, 32(1), 79–85.
- Gutenbrunner, C., Ward, A. B., & Chamberlain, M. A. (Eds.). (2007). White book on physical and rehabilitation medicine in Europe. *Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*, 39(Suppl. 45), 1–48.
- Martin Ginis, K. A., Jetha, A., Mack, D. E., & Hetz, S. (2010). Physical activity and subjective well-being among people with spinal cord injury: A meta-analysis. *Spinal Cord*, 48, 65–72.

- Meyer, T., Gutenbrunner, C., Bickenbach, J., Cieza, A., Melvin, J., & Stucki, G. (2011). Towards a conceptual description of rehabilitation as a health strategy. *Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*, 43, 765–769.
- Norlund, A., Ropponen, A., & Alexanderson, K. (2009). Multidisciplinary interventions: Review of studies of return to work after rehabilitation for low back pain. *Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*, 41, 115–121.
- Schonstein, E., Kenny, D. T., Keating, J., & Koes, B. W. (2003). Work conditioning, work hardening and functional restoration for workers with back and neck pain. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 1, CD001822.
- Stucki, G., Cieza, A., & Melvin, J. (2007). The international classification of functioning, disability and health: A unifying model for the conceptual description of the rehabilitation strategy. *Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*, 39, 279–285.
- Twamley, E. W., Jeste, D. V., & Lehman, A. F. (2003). Vocational rehabilitation in schizophrenia and other psychotic disorders: A literature review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *The Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease*, 191, 515–523.
- United Nations. (2006). *Convention on the rights of people with disabilities*. New York: Author. Retrieved November 14, 2006, from <http://www.un.org/disabilities/convention/conventionfull>.
- World Health Organization (WHO). (2001). *ICF: International classification of functioning, disability and health*. Geneva: Author. September 3, 2011, Also available online, <http://www.who.int/classifications/icf/en/>.
- World Health Organization (WHO), World Bank. (2011). *World report on disability*. Geneva: Author. Retrieved November 14, 2011, from http://www.who.int/disabilities/world_report/2011/en/.

Rehabilitation Psychology

► Psychosocial Adjustment

Relapse, Relapse Prevention

M. Kathleen B. Lustyk and Gabriela Navarrete
Department of Behavioral and Social Sciences,
Embry–Riddle Aeronautical University, Prescott,
AZ, USA

Synonyms

Remission and remission prevention

Definition

Relapse, as a clinical term, is the loss of ground gained towards positive behavior change or the return of problem behavior following a period of cessation. Not unlike a lapse, which is an initial setback or a single occurrence of the problem behavior, relapse is often associated with feelings of guilt and shame, and accompanied by self-degrading thoughts. Relapse prevention is an approach to therapy or education that helps one identify and anticipate triggers or precipitators of relapse. Relapse prevention also teaches behavioral coping strategies for managing high-risk situations in which triggers are present as well as coping strategies for urges, cravings, and negative emotional states that often precipitate relapse.

Description

With substance use disorders, relapse is the return to problematic substance use following a period of abstinence. Relapse is a major roadblock to treatment efficacy for substance use disorders because the majority of those trying to change addictive behaviors or attempt abstinence will relapse. Given what we know about the neurobiology of addiction, the high occurrence of relapse is not surprising. With substance use disorders, the brain's pleasure circuit is usurped such that what was once perceived as a pleasurable experience (e.g., drug use) becomes necessary to prevent a painful experience (i.e., withdrawal). The habit circuits involved in the addictive behaviors become entrained. For example, with habitual drug use, a trigger can produce a small amount of activity in the pleasure circuit and this pleasure “appetizer” can increase the desire or craving for the abused substance as well as the motivation to seek out and use the abused substance. Thus, triggers can tap the habit circuitry, which may ultimately result in relapse.

Triggers or high-risk precipitators of relapse often arise in interpersonal situations where

people or the environment can serve as powerful reminders of the pleasure and behaviors that once sustained the addiction. For example, an abstinent alcoholic may find the pub they used to frequent a powerful cue for drinking. Stress and other negative emotional states may also serve as triggers, especially if the habitual behavior served as a coping strategy to reduce stress or improve negative affect. The powerful role that even a deleterious coping strategy can have on stress and affect has motivated the continued study and application of Harm Reduction methods for managed use for substance use disorders.

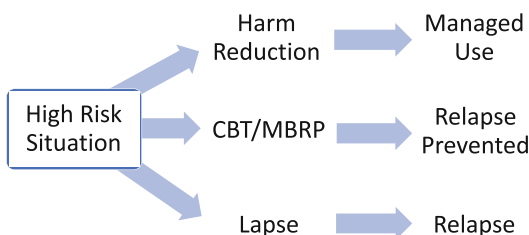
Harm Reduction Therapy takes on a much different approach in comparison to 12-step or other abstinence-based therapies. While abstinence may be the only approach that provides full protection from the adverse effects of substance use disorders, harm reduction strategies can help sufferers manage problem behaviors such as substance use before abstinence is achieved or in its stead. Harm reduction focuses on changing behaviors and use in order to minimize the health, social, and economic impacts associated with problematic substance use. However, therapeutic progress takes on a different definition with Harm Reduction as managed use constitutes progress. Thus, unlike abstinence, those who suffer from addiction in harm reduction therapy continue with their usage but at a decreased and managed level. The thought is that a decreased consumption or usage will reduce the risks and subsequently result in a higher rate of success in the treatment for substance use disorders.

In the presence of a trigger, relapse is not inevitable but is more likely without therapy. The way in which a person with a substance use disorder approaches the trigger can have profound effects on the outcome. If, for example, a person with a substance use disorder find themselves in high-risk situations whereby triggers result in a lapse, they may respond by removing themselves from that situation and chalk it up to a learning experience such that they will need to face similar situations differently in the future. Conversely, one could suffer an abstinence violation effect whereby the person berates himself or herself for

failing to remain abstinent. As such, an abstinence violation effect may compound the impact of negative affect on relapse if, for example, the sufferer convinces themselves that they will never be successful in managing their addiction and give in to full relapse.

A primary goal of relapse prevention therapy is the identification and prevention of high-risk situations that may lead to the return of problematic behavior. Prevention may be achieved through the implementation of coping strategies that facilitate positive behavior changes aimed at enhancing self-efficacy, managing lapses, and restructuring thought processes (prolapse). In the case of substance use disorders, relapse prevention reduces the return of substance misuse. One such strategy that has become a popular relapse prevention therapy for substance use disorders incorporates mindfulness. Mindfulness teaches one how to cultivate nonjudgmental, nonreactive present moment awareness. This type of awareness can allow for a kind of “space” between a person’s sensations or feelings and their ultimate reaction to them. This space may ultimately break the habit cycle. Mindfulness-based relapse prevention therapy incorporates cognitive-behavioral Relapse Prevention skills with mindfulness training to increase awareness and skillful action in high-risk situations. Mindfulness-based relapse prevention therapy is an effective aftercare treatment for substance use disorders, reducing relapse and substance-related problems. As an example, mindfulness-based relapse prevention therapy exerts salutary effects on negative affect and feelings of craving. Among other high-risk conditions associated with relapse, stress or psychological distress, and stressors or stressful life events, are among the most frequently endorsed reasons for relapse in those with substance use disorders. Mindfulness-based relapse prevention therapy is associated with reduced stress reactivity in the face of a stressor suggesting enhanced self-regulation in a high-risk or stress inducing situation (Fig. 1).

Readers interested in learning more about mindfulness-based relapse prevention therapy



Relapse, Relapse Prevention, Fig. 1 In the presence of high-risk situations, various processes can be engaged with differing outcomes. (a) harm reduction therapy allows for use in moderation which regulates problem behavior by keeping it managed within limits, (b) cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT) and/or mindfulness-based relapse prevention therapy utilize skills to prevent relapse such as meditation (c), in the absence of therapy, a lapse is likely to lead to relapse

are referred to the Bowen et al. (2011) reference listed below.

Cross-References

- [Addiction](#)
- [Mindfulness](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bowen, S., Chawla, N., & Marlatt, A. G. (2011). *Mindfulness-based relapse prevention for addictive behaviors: A clinician's guide*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Logan, D. E., & Marlatt, A. G. (2010). Harm reduction therapy: A practice-friendly review of research. *Journal of Clinical Psychology*, 66(2), 201–214.
- Lustyk, M. K. B., Chawla, M., Nolan, R., & Marlatt, G. A. (2009). Mindfulness meditation research: Issues of participant screening, safety procedures, and researcher training. *Advances in Mind-Body Medicine*, 24(1), 20–30.
- Marlatt, G. A., & Donovan, D. M. (2005). *Relapse prevention* (2nd ed.). New York: Guilford Press.

Relational Distress

- [Social Conflict](#)

Relationship Conflict

- [Social Conflict](#)

Relationship Processes

- [Interpersonal Processes](#)

Relationship Stress

- [Family Stress](#)

Relative Risk

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Relative risk is best defined in conjunction with absolute risk. For this example, we can define risk as the likelihood of an adverse consequence in two behavioral medicine interventions, Treatment A and Treatment B. Imagine that the risk is 1 in 10 for Treatment A and 2 in 10 for Treatment B. In this case, a relative risk statement can be made, saying that the probability of the event occurring following Treatment B is twice the probability of the event occurring following Treatment A. However, the same relative risk statement can be made for probabilities of 1 in 1,000,000 and 2 in 1,000,000. However, the absolute risks are vastly different: 1 and 2 in 10; and 1 and 2 in a million.

Description

Relative risk is often captured by a relative risk ratio. Consider a hypothetical trial in which the interventional treatment group receives a stress-reduction program intended to become an add-on treatment for patients with a serious disease that leads to heart attacks. This group of subjects is already receiving certain medication that is the “standard of care” for this condition. Subjects in the control group do not receive the stress-reduction intervention, but they too are receiving the standard of care medication. The trial is designed to investigate whether the standard of care medication plus the add-on intervention leads to fewer heart attacks than the standard of care medication alone.

The number of heart attacks is determined for each treatment group, and a relative risk ratio is calculated by considering the number of heart attacks in the treatment group as the numerator and the number of heart attacks in the control group as the denominator. If the number of events in each treatment group were to be precisely the same (the likelihood of which is vanishingly small), the value of the risk ratio will be unity, represented here as 1.00. If the number of events in the treatment group is less than that for the control treatment group, the value will be less than 1.00. Conversely, if the number of events in the treatment group is greater than that for the control treatment group, the value will be greater than 1.00.

Imagine that the value of the relative risk ratio is 0.80. This value conveys that, in this single trial, the addition of the stress-reduction program to the standard of care medication led to a 20% reduction in risk of heart attack. To estimate the true but unknown relative risk for the general patient population, confidence intervals (CIs) are placed around this value of 0.80, which in this context is called the relative risk point estimate. Let us calculate a two-sided 95% CI, which can be defined as a range of values that we are 95% confident that will cover the

true but unknown population risk ratio. Imagine that the lower and upper limits of the 95% CI are 0.70 and 0.92, respectively. (The calculation of a ratio means that these limits do not fall symmetrically around the point estimate.) The confidence interval provides insight into the likely occurrence of heart attacks in the general population receiving the stress-reduction program. The following statement can now be made:

- The data obtained from this single trial are compatible with as little as an 8% decrease and as much as a 30% decrease in the risk of a heart attack in the general population, and our best estimate is a decrease of 20%.

Consider now a scenario in which the relative risk point estimate is 1.50, and the lower and upper bounds of a two-sided 95% CI placed around this point estimate are 1.35 and 1.68, respectively. Such data would show that adding the stress-reduction intervention to the standard of care medication actually *increased* the risk of heart attack. The interpretation of such results is as follows:

- The data obtained from this single trial are compatible with as little as a 35% increase and as much as a 68% increase in risk of heart attack in the general population, and our best estimate is an increase in risk of 50%.

Cross-References

- [Absolute Risk](#)

Relaxation

- [Psychophysiological Recovery](#)

Relaxation Techniques

► Stress Management

Relaxation Techniques/ Therapy

Hiroe Kikuchi

Department of Psychosomatic Medicine, Center Hospital, National Center for Global Health and Medicine, Tokyo, Japan

Definition

Relaxation techniques/therapy are techniques for reducing stress and inducing relaxation.

Description

Relaxation techniques/therapy increase parasympathetic nervous system activity, thereby decreasing the opposing sympathetic nervous system activity such as the fight or flight phenomenon and decreasing arousal. There are a variety of techniques for inducing relaxation. Probably, the most common are variants of Jacobson's progressive muscle relaxation training. Other methods include autogenic training, use of relaxation imagery, biofeedback, and practices derived from meditation and yoga techniques (Jorm et al. 2008).

With regard to psychiatric illnesses, relaxation techniques/therapy are often used as a competing stimulus during systematic desensitization and as part of a comprehensive intervention strategy for the reduction of anxiety. They are more effective at reducing self-rated depressive symptoms than no or minimal treatment, while data on clinician-rated depressive symptoms are less conclusive. However, they are not as effective as psychological treatment (Jorm et al. 2008). In addition, progressive muscle relaxation training has

significant therapeutic efficiency in chronic insomnia in adult patients (Taylor and Roane 2010).

With regard to physical symptoms or diseases, relaxation techniques/therapy have positive effects on pain reduction (Palermo et al. 2010). In addition, they have a mild to moderate effect on reducing hot flushes in women with a history of breast cancer (Rada et al. 2010). Although many studies tried to investigate the effect of relaxation techniques/therapy on primary hypertension, the evidence in favor of causal association between relaxation and blood pressure reduction is weak due to the poor quality of the studies (Dickinson et al. 2008). Therefore, further research is required to investigate the possibility of relaxation on physical symptoms or diseases.

Cross-References

- Biofeedback
- Meditation
- Yoga

References and Further Readings

- Dickinson, H. O., Campbell, F., Beyer, F. R., Nicolson, D. J., Cook, J. V., Ford, G. A., et al. (2008). Relaxation therapies for the management of primary hypertension in adults. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 23, CD004935.
- Jorm, A. F., Morgan, A. J., & Hetrick, S. E. (2008). Relaxation for depression. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 8, CD007142.
- Palermo, T. M., Eccleston, C., Lewandowski, A. S., Williams, A. C., & Morley, S. (2010). Randomized controlled trials of psychological therapies for management of chronic pain in children and adolescents: An updated meta-analytic review. *Pain*, 148, 387–397.
- Rada, G., Capurro, D., Pantoja, T., Corbalán, J., Moreno, G., Letelier, L. M., et al. (2010). Non-hormonal interventions for hot flushes in women with a history of breast cancer. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 8, CD004923.
- Taylor, D. J., & Roane, B. M. (2010). Treatment of insomnia in adults and children: A practice-friendly review of research. *Journal of Clinical Psychology*, 66, 1137–1147.

Reliability and Validity

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

These two concepts are the basis for assessment in most scientific work in medical and social sciences. Reliability refers to the degree of consistency in measurement and to the lack of error. There are several types of indices of reliability. Internal reliability (measured by Cronbach's alpha) is a measure of repeatability of a measure. In psychometrics, a questionnaire of, for example, ten items is said to be reliable if its internal reliability coefficient is at least 0.70. This reflects approximately the mean correlation between each score on each item, with all remaining item scores, repeated across all items. Methodologically, this reflects a measure of repeatability, a basic premise of science. Another type of reliability is inter-rater reliability, which refers to the degree of agreement between two or more observers, evaluating a patient's behavior, for example. Thus, in the original type A behavior interview, which currently places more emphasis on hostility, researchers provide a measure of inter-rater reliability, reflecting their agreement on an observed behavior. Finally, test-retest reliability refers to stability of a measure over time, for example, over 2 weeks, 1 month, or 4 years. For example, hostility has a strong test-retest reliability over 1 year of $r = 0.85$, $p < 0.0001$ (Barefoot et al. 1983). This reliability can indicate stability of a measure and of the psychological phenomenon being assessed.

Validity of instruments refers to the degree to which instruments assess the construct they aim to measure. To test this, researchers have developed several types of validity indices. Face validity reflects the degree to which items of a scale "appear" to assess the construct they claim to,

based on the meaning of items. This can be judged by participants or experts rating the relevance of each item to the construct being investigated. Construct validity is a higher and more theoretical level of validity and refers to the degree to which scores on a scale correlate with scores on other measures of other constructs, with which they should be theoretically correlated. For example, a scale of anxiety would be expected to correlate with life events in one's past, the latter being a possible trigger of current anxiety levels. Concurrent validity refers to correlations between scores of two different measures of the same construct, for example, between two anxiety scales. Criterion validity occurs when scores on an instrument predict or correlate with an accepted criterion, for example, anxiety being associated with observed behavioral responses to a stressor. Alternatively, criterion validity can be measured by showing that anxiety scores of a group of patients with clinically high anxiety levels (e.g., post-traumatic stress disorder) are higher than those of a healthy control group, also referred to as discriminant validity. Finally, predictive validity reflects the degree to which scores on an instrument predict in time the outcome of people in the future. For example, an anxiety scale has predictive validity if it predicts health-care utilization over the next 12 months.

Another type of validity, a very important one, is internal validity. This reflects the confidence a researcher may have in his or her inferences from a study. This can be achieved by choosing an adequate study design, sampling, and methodological and statistical control over confounders. However, it also results from close consideration and measurement of all possible variables in a study, from sampling, to reliability and validity of tests, to control over confounders, etc. To the extent that these are achieved, the attribution of observed results to the effects of an independent variable or a predictor variable may be internally valid. Internal validity is perhaps the outmost important issue in scientific investigation, and a study can be scientifically valid if its internal validity is maintained. The extent to which these

two issues have been carefully regarded can be seen as questionable when viewing a recent crucial study published in *Science*, in which very few previously statistically significant results observed in 100 different past studies were subsequently replicated (Aarts et al. 2015). Reliability and validity should thus be seen as at least important and give prior importance before “statistical significance.”

Cross-References

- [Psychometric Properties](#)
- [Psychometrics](#)

References and Further Readings

- Aarts, A. A., Anderson, J. E., Anderson, C. J., Attridge, P. R., Attwood, A., Axt, J., Babel, M., Bahnik, S., Baranski, E., Barnett-Cowan, M., Bartmess, E., Beer, J., Bell, R., Bentley, H., Beyan, L., Binion, G., Borsboom, D., Bosch, A., Bosco, F. A., Bowman, S. D., Brandt, M. J., Braswell, E., Brohmer, H., Brown, B. T., Brown, K., Brüning, J., Calhoun-Sauls, A., Callahan, S. P., Chagnon, E., Chandler, J., Chartier, C. R., Cheung, F., Christopherson, C. D., Cillessen, L., Clay, R., Cleary, H., Cloud, M. D., Cohn, M., Cohoon, J., Columbus, S., Cordes, A., Costantini, G., Cramblet Alvarez, L. D., Cremata, E., Crusius, J., DeCoster, J., DeGaetano, M. A., Della Penna, N., den Bezemer, B., Deserno, M. K., Devitt, O., Dewitte, L., Dobolyi, D. G., Dodson, G. T., Donnellan, M., Donohue, R., Dore, R. A., Dorrough, A., Dreber, A., Dugas, M., Dunn, E. W., Easey, K., Eboigbe, S., Eggleston, C., Embley, J., Epskamp, S., Errington, T. M., Estel, V., Farach, F. J., Feather, J., Fedor, A., Fernández-Castilla, B., Fiedler, S., Field, J. G., Fitneva, S. A., Flagan, T., Forest, A. L., Forsell, E., Foster, J. D., Frank, M. C., Frazier, R. S., Fuchs, H., Gable, P., Galak, J., Galliani, E. M., Gampa, A., Garcia, S., Gazarian, D., Gilbert, E., Giner-Sorolla, R., Glöckner, A., Goellner, L., Goh, J. X., Goldberg, R., Goodbourn, P. T., Gordon-McKeon, S., Gorges, B., Gorges, J., Goss, J., Graham, J., Grange, J. A., Gray, J., Hartgerink, C., Hartshorne, J., Hasselman, F., Hayes, T., Heikensten, E., Henninger, F., Hodsoll, J., Holubar, T., Hoogendoorn, G., Humphries, D. J., Hung, C. O., Immelman, N., Irsik, V. C., Jahn, G., Jäkel, F., Jekel, M., Johannesson, M., Johnson, L. G., Johnson, D. J., Johnson, K. M., Johnston, W. J., Jonas, K., Joy-Gaba, J. A., Kappes, H. B., Kelso, K., Kidwell, M. C., Kim, S. K., Kirkhart, M., Kleinberg, B., Knežević, G., Kolorz, F. M., Kossakowski, J. J., Krause, R. W., Krijnen, J., Kuhlmann, T., Kunkels, Y. K., Kyc, M. M., Lai, C. K., Laique, A., Lakens, D., Lane, K. A., Lassetter, B., Lazarević, L. B., LeBel, E. P., Lee, K. J., Lee, M., Lemm, K., Levitan, C. A., Lewis, M., Lin, L., Lin, S., Lippold, M., Loureiro, D., Luteijn, I., Mackinnon, S., Mainard, H. N., Marigold, D. C., Martin, D. P., Martinez, T., Masicampo, E. J., Maticcotta, J., Mathur, M., May, M., Mechin, N., Mehta, P., Meixner, J., Melinger, A., Miller, J. K., Miller, M., Moore, K., Möschl, M., Motyl, M., Müller, S. M., Munafo, M., Neijenhuijs, K. I., Nervi, T., Nicolas, G., Nilsson, G., Nosek, B. A., Nuijten, M. B., Olsson, C., Osborne, C., Ostkamp, L., Pavel, M., Penton-Voak, I. S., Perna, O., Pernet, C., Perugini, M., Pipitone, R. N., Pitts, M., Plessow, F., Prenoveau, J. M., Rahal, R. M., Ratliff, K. A., Reinhard, D., Renkewitz, F., Ricker, A. A., Rigney, A., Rivers, A. M., Roebke, M., Rutchick, A. M., Ryan, R. S., Sahin, O., Saide, A., Sandstrom, G. M., Santos, D., Saxe, R., Schlegelmilch, R., Schmidt, K., Scholz, S., Seibel, L., Selterman, D. F., Shaki, S., Simpson, W. B., Sinclair, H. C., Skorinko, J. L., Slowik, A., Snyder, J. S., Soderberg, C., Sonnleitner, C., Spencer, N., Spies, J. R., Steegen, S., Stieger, S., Strohminger, N., Sullivan, G. B., Talhelm, T., Tapia, M., te Dorsthorst, A., Thomaes, M., Thomas, S. L., Tio, P., Traets, F., Tsang, S., Tuerlinckx, F., Turchan, P., Valášek, M., van't Veer, A. E., Van Aert, R., van Assen, M., van Bork, R., van de Ven, M., van den Bergh, D., van der Hulst, M., van Dooren, R., van Doorn, J., van Renswoude, D. R., van Rijn, H., Vanpaemel, W., Vásquez Echeverria, A., Vazquez, M., Velez, N., Vermue, M., Verschoor, M., Vianello, M., Voracek, M., Vuu, G., Wagenmakers, E. J., Weerdmeester, J., Welsh, A., Westgate, E. C., Wissink, J., Wood, M., Woods, A., Wright, E., Wu, S., Zeelenberg, M., & Zuni, K. (2015). PSYCHOLOGY. Estimating the reproducibility of psychological science. *Science*, 349, 1–8.
- Barefoot, J. C., Dahlstrom, W. G., & Williams, R. B., Jr. (1983). Hostility, CHD incidence, and total mortality: A 25-year follow-up study of 255 physicians. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 45, 59–63.
- Del Greco, L., Walop, W., & McCarthy, R. H. (1987). Questionnaire development: 2. Validity and reliability. *CMAJ*, 136, 699–700.

Religion

- [Religiousness/Religiosity](#)
- [Spirituality](#)

Religion/Spirituality

Stephen Gallagher and Warren Tierney
Department of Psychology, Faculty of Education
and Health Sciences, University of Limerick,
Castletroy, Limerick, Ireland

Synonyms

Religiosity; Religiousness; Spiritual; Spirituality

Definition

Even though there is much dispute among researchers regarding accurate definitions of spirituality and religion, it is generally accepted that spirituality concerns the exploration for the sacred, celestial, or transcendent side of life, while religion can be defined as a perception, influence, and behavior which emerges from a consciousness of, or alleged contact with, metaphysical entities which are deemed to perform an essential role in human life. Moreover, in contemporary society, the formation of a dichotomy is being witnessed: with spirituality representing the personal, subjective, inner-directed, unsystematic, liberating expression and religion signifying a formal, authoritarian, institutionalized inhibiting expression. Yet the concept of religion may further be separated into two categories: intrinsic and extrinsic religion. Intrinsic religion is an internalized faith which becomes an innate outlook on life. Extrinsic is focused more on individual practices driven by external motives, such as improved social standing or acceptance. Although religion and spirituality at times appear to be polarized concepts, for the moment, at least, it is impossible to completely segregate the two concepts as the search for the sacred occurs within various faith traditions, and most researchers agree that they are in fact overlapping constructs.

Description

Associations Between Spirituality, Religion, and Health

Historically, it was argued that the study of the natural and explicable phenomena belonged to science, whereas the relatively unexplained belonged to religion. This was very pertinent to the field of medicine. Nowadays, however, there is a strong realization that health involves the interaction of mind, body, and more. In fact, health is far more than a physical matter. Much of this realization has been attributed to a substantial body of literature which has accumulated over the last number of decades connecting spirituality, religion, and communal religious involvement to a variety of health outcomes (Hill and Pargament 2003; Koenig 2009; McCullough and Willoughby 2009; Powell et al. 2003). The links between spirituality and health are discussed elsewhere in this encyclopedia (see ► “Spirituality”). Even though the vast majority of studies report a beneficial effect of religion on health, this research has been the subject of considerable controversy. For example, religious involvement is strongly correlated with health-related factors, such as functional status, lifestyle, and social support, which may confound associations between religious observance, beliefs, and health (Sloan et al. 1999). Further, longitudinal studies have found differential stress-buffering effects: protective against multiple events but not discrete events (Schnittker 2001). It could be that religious coping is used as a last resort when individuals feel overwhelmed when dealing with multiple stressful episodes, especially when their personal coping resources fail or prove to be inadequate (Gallagher et al. 2015). However, what adds to this controversy is that the precise mechanisms behind the links between religion and health are not yet clear and are the subject of much research (Powell et al. 2003; Seeman et al. 2003).

A number of possible psychological, social, and physiological mediators have been proposed to account for this connection. For example, it could be that prayer may help people deal with

unpleasant situations or that faith promotes a positive disposition which facilitates coping. It is also becoming increasingly evident that religious/spiritual coping strategies can be divided into positive (e.g., seeking support from clergy, forgiveness, reappraisal) and negative (e.g., spiritual discontent, pleading for direct intercession, punishing God reappraisal) forms; positive forms typically relate to more positive outcomes, whereas negative religious coping strategies are generally related to more negative outcomes (Hill and Pargament 2003). Moreover, religious affiliations are associated with the practice of healthy lifestyles, and the social aspect of attending religious rituals, i.e., church, promotes social integration, all of which are linked to better health (Sloan and Ramakrishnan 2006). Further, religious attendance has been found to be inversely related to inflammatory cytokine high interleukin-6 levels (>5 pg/ml), providing supportive evidence of a direct link between religious observance and health (Koenig et al. 1997); this observed association was somewhat attenuated after controlling for age, sex, race, education, chronic illnesses, and physical functioning, implying that other factors may be driving the observed effects. In addition, the proponents of these links between religion and health would argue that the strongest evidence comes from intervention studies, demonstrating the positive effect of intercessory prayer on cardiovascular health (Townsend et al. 2002). However, in a very recent Cochrane Review, it was found that this particular evidence was rather weak and that trials of this type of intervention should not be undertaken, stating that they “would prefer to see any resources available for such a trial used to investigate other questions in health care” (Roberts et al. 2009). Another issue that needs to be addressed is the differential effects of intrinsic and extrinsic religion on psychological distress. Studies have indicated that intrinsic religious individuals who attend religious services demonstrate reduced anxiety, whereas extrinsically motivated individuals who attend services tend to portray anxiety (Koenig 2009). How these different religious concepts relate to physical health outcomes is still unclear, but the link

between psychological distress and ill health is well established (Roberts et al. 2009; Rugulies 2002).

How to Measure Spirituality and Religion

Measuring spirituality and religion has proven to be a very difficult task due to the researcher's inability to completely differentiate between religion and spirituality. This inadequacy has unlocked Pandora's box, due to the paradoxical question: is one measuring or has one measured spirituality or religion? Or are these religious measurements tapping into other constructs such as social support? Nonetheless, there are a number of measures available for measuring spirituality (see entry on ► [“Spirituality”](#)) and religion: the Religious Involvement Scale (Piedmont et al. 2009) is a useful scale to test how involved individuals are in religious activities; the Multi-Religion Identity Measure (Abu-Rayya et al. 2009) is a scale which can be used accurately in order to distinguish between members of different religions; and the Religious Coping Scale (RCOPE) (Pargament et al. 2000) can be used to assess religious coping. If one wants to measure both spirituality and religion, the Assessment of Spirituality and Religious Sentiments (ASPIRES) (Piedmont 2004) scale can be used, which has proved to have reliability and discriminant validity. Finally, and more recently, an Implicit Christian Humanist Implicit Association Test (Ventis et al. 2010) has been developed to measure both religion and spirituality which may have stronger behavioral correlates.

Cross-References

- [Religiousness/Religiosity](#)
- [Spirituality](#)

References and Further Readings

- Abu-Rayya, H., Abu-Rayya, M., & Khalil, M. (2009). The multi-religion identity measure: A new scale for use with diverse religions. *Journal of Muslim Mental Health*, 4, 124–138.

- Allport, G. W., & Ross, J. M. (1967). Personal religious orientation and prejudice. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 5, 432–443.
- Gallagher, S., Phillips, A. C., Lee, H. A. N., & Carroll, D. (2015). The association between spirituality and depression in parents caring for children with developmental disabilities: Social support and/or last resort. *Journal of Religion and Health*, 54(1), 358–370.
- Hill, P. C., & Pargament, K. I. (2003). Advances in the conceptualization and measurement of religion and spirituality: Implications for physical and mental health research. *American Psychologist*, 58, 64–74.
- Koenig, H. G. (2009). Research on religion, spirituality, and mental health: A review. *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry*, 54, 283–291.
- Koenig, H. G., Cohen, H. J., George, L. K., Hays, J. C., Larson, D. B., & Blazer, D. G. (1997). Attendance at religious services, interleukin-6, and other biological parameters of immune function in older adults. *International Journal of Psychiatry in Medicine*, 27, 233–350.
- Koenig, H. G., McCullough, M. E., & Larson, D. B. (Eds.). (2001). *Handbook of religion and health*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- McCullough, M. E., & Willoughby, B. B. (2009). Religion, self-regulation, and self-control: Associations, explanations, and implications. *Psychological Bulletin*, 135, 69–93.
- Pargament, K. I., Koenig, H. G., & Perez, L. M. (2000). The many methods of religious coping: Development and initial validation of the RCOPE. *Journal of Clinical Psychology*, 56, 519–543.
- Piedmont, R. L. (2004). *Assessment of Spirituality and Religious Sentiments (ASPIRES) technical manual*. Columbia: Author.
- Piedmont, R. L., Ciarrochi, J. W., Dy-Liacco, G. S., & Williams, J. G. (2009). The empirical and conceptual value of the spiritual transcendence and religious involvement scales for personality research. *Psychology of Religion and Spirituality*, 1(3), 162–179.
- Powell, L. H., Shahabi, L., & Thoresen, C. E. (2003). Religion and spirituality: Linkages to physical health. *American Psychologist*, 58, 36–52.
- Roberts, L., Ahmed, I., Halls, S., & Davison, A. (2009). Intercessory prayer for the alleviation of ill health. *Cochrane Database Systematic Review*, 2, CD000368. <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD000368.pub3>.
- Rugulies, R. (2002). Depression as a predictor for coronary heart disease a review and meta-analysis. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 23, 51–61.
- Schnittker, J. (2001). When is faith enough? The effects of religious involvement on depression. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 40, 393–411.
- Seeman, T. E., Dubin, L. F., & Seeman, M. (2003). Religiosity/spirituality and health: A critical review of the evidence for biological pathways. *American Psychologist*, 58, 53–63.
- Sloan, R. P., & Ramakrishnan, R. (2006). Science, medicine, and intercessory prayer. *Perspectives in Biological Medicine*, 49, 504–514.
- Sloan, R. P., Bagiella, E., & Powell, T. (1999). Religion, spirituality, and medicine. *Lancet*, 353, 664–667.
- Townsend, M., Kladder, V., Ayele, H., Mulligan, T., et al. (2002). Systematic review of clinical trials examining the effects of religion on health. *Southern Medical Journal*, 95, 1429–1434.
- Ventis, W., Ball, C. T., & Viggiano, C. (2010). A Christian humanist implicit association test: Validity and test – retest reliability. *Psychology of Religion and Spirituality*, 2, 181–189.

Religiosity

- Religion/Spirituality
- Spirituality

Religious Beliefs

- Spiritual Beliefs

Religious Ceremony

- Religious Ritual

Religious Coping

Jennifer Wortmann
Mental Health and Chaplaincy, VA Mid-Atlantic
MIRECC, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

Negative religious coping; Religious struggle;
Spiritual coping; Spiritual struggle

Definition

Religious coping is religiously framed cognitive, emotional, or behavioral responses to stress, encompassing multiple methods and purposes as well as positive and negative dimensions.

Description

Religion and spirituality translate into coping responses to stress insofar as they serve as available and compelling orienting systems and especially when stressors test “the limits of personal powers” (Pargament 1997, p. 310). Religion can provide a framework for understanding emotional and physical suffering and can facilitate perseverance or acceptance in the face of stressors. Religious coping encompasses religiously framed cognitive, emotional, or behavioral responses to stress. It may serve many purposes, including achieving meaning in life, closeness to God, hope, peace, connection to others, self-development, and personal restraint (Pargament 1997). Who uses religious coping depends on individual (e.g., degree of personal religious commitment), situational (e.g., stressfulness of the event), and cultural factors (Harrison et al. 2001). The outcomes of religious coping depend in part on the appropriateness of the coping method to the stressor (Pargament 1997; e.g., Park et al. 2012).

Early measures of coping very briefly assessed a limited array of religious coping strategies (Carver et al. 1989; Lazarus and Folkman 1984). The RCOPE religious coping scale by Pargament and colleagues expanded measurement of religious coping to include methods to find meaning, gain control, gain comfort and closeness to God, and achieve a life transformation (Pargament et al. 2000), and a brief version has shown good psychometric properties (Pargament et al. 2011). Additional measures have been developed to capture the related but somewhat broader domains of spiritual struggles (e.g., Exline et al. 2014; Wood et al. 2010). Measurement of diverse methods of religious coping permits researchers and clinicians to assess specific beliefs, experiences, or practices that differentially relate to health.

Religious coping may be active or passive in nature. An actively collaborative religious coping style in which a person considers him or herself partners with God in resolving a problem has been found to be more common and more effective than either a self-directing or passive style (Pargament 1997). Religious coping methods that have been shown to have a generally positive relationship with psychological adjustment to stress (Ano and Vasconcelles 2005), hence positive religious coping, include the collaborative style, benevolent reappraisal of the stressor, and seeking spiritual support from God, clergy, or members of one’s religious group. Religious coping is increasingly being researched in the contexts of multiple illnesses, and suspected mechanisms through which religious coping can influence health include relaxation, sense of control, and the promotion of healthy behaviors. Positive religious coping may alleviate the negative physical impacts of stress, yet more research is needed to isolate the specific strategies and mechanisms (Krause 2011). Although research has failed to show consistent relations between positive religious coping methods and physical health, future research may incorporate sophisticated design and proposed psychosocial (e.g., meaning, social support, meditation) and physiological mediation pathways (Park 2007; Seybold 2007). Moderation analyses may also help identify which individuals benefit under in particular circumstances (e.g., Pirutinsky et al. 2012).

Research has demonstrated consistent relations between negative religious coping methods and poorer mental and physical health (Ano and Vasconcelles 2005; Powell et al. 2003), including poorer health in the context of physical disease, such as increased risk of suicidal ideation in advanced cancer patients (Trevino et al. 2014) and depressive symptoms and poor quality of life in individuals with HIV/AIDS (Lee et al. 2014). Negative religious coping, also known as spiritual struggle, encompasses interpersonal, intrapersonal, and divine categories, including conflict with religious others, questioning, guilt, and perceived distance from or negative views of a higher power (Pargament 2007). Religious coping may also be a negative force in health if it interferes with receipt of necessary treatments (e.g., passive religious deferral).

Although generally less common than positive coping in response to stress (Abu-Raiya and Pargament 2015), negative religious coping is common in people facing serious or life-threatening illness. As such, researchers have recommended incorporating assessment of positive and negative religious coping in clinical practice to identify those at risk for the negative impacts of spiritual struggles and have begun to develop recommendations regarding interventions targeted at spiritual struggles (Pargament 2007).

Cross-References

- Coping
- Religion/Spirituality
- Religiousness/Religiosity
- Spirituality and Health
- Spirituality, Measurement of

References and Further Readings

- Abu-Raiya, H., & Pargament, K. I. (2015). Religious coping among diverse religions: Commonalities and divergences. *Psychology of Religion and Spirituality*, 7, 24–33. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0037652>.
- Ano, G. G., & Vasconcelles, E. B. (2005). Religious coping and psychological adjustment to stress: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Clinical Psychology*, 61, 461–480.
- Carver, C. S., Scheier, M. F., & Weintraub, J. K. (1989). Assessing coping strategies: A theoretically based approach. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 56, 267–283.
- Exline, J. J., & Rose, E. D. (2013). Religious and spiritual struggles. In R. F. Paloutzian & C. L. Park (Eds.), *Handbook of the psychology of religion and spirituality* (2nd ed., pp. 380–398). New York: Guilford Press.
- Exline, J. J., Pargament, K. I., Grubbs, J. B., & Yali, A. M. (2014). The religious and spiritual struggles scale: Development and initial validation. *Psychology of Religion and Spirituality*, 6, 208–222. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0036465>.
- Harrison, M. O., Koenig, H. G., Hays, J. C., Eme-Akwari, A., & Pargament, K. I. (2001). The epidemiology of religious coping: A review of recent literature. *International Review of Psychiatry*, 13, 86–93.
- Krause, N. (2011). Stress, religious-based coping, and physical health. Toward a sociological theory of religion and health. In A. J. Blasi (Ed.), *Toward a sociological theory of religion and health* (pp. 207–238). Leiden: Koninklijke Brill NV.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Lee, M., Nezu, A. M., & Nezu, C. M. (2014). Positive and negative religious coping, depressive symptoms, and quality of life in people with HIV. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 37, 921–930. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10865-014-9552-y>.
- Pargament, K. I. (1997). *The psychology of religion and coping: Theory, research, practice*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Pargament, K. I. (2007). *Spiritually integrated psychotherapy: Understanding and addressing the sacred*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Pargament, K. I., Koenig, H. G., & Perez, L. M. (2000). The many methods of religious coping: Development and initial validation of the RCOPE. *Journal of Clinical Psychology*, 56, 519–543.
- Pargament, K. I., Ano, G. G., & Wachholtz, A. B. (2005). The religious dimension of coping: Advances in theory, research, and practice. In R. F. Paloutzian & C. L. Park (Eds.), *Handbook of the psychology of religion and spirituality* (pp. 479–495). New York: Guilford Press.
- Pargament, K., Feuille, M., & Burdzy, D. (2011). The Brief RCOPE: Current psychometric status of a short measure of religious coping. *Religions*, 2, 51–76.
- Park, C. L. (2007). Religiousness/spirituality and health: A meaning systems perspective. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 30, 319–328.
- Park, C. L., Sacco, S. J., & Edmondson, D. (2012). Expanding coping goodness-of-fit: Religious coping, health locus of control, and depressed affect in heart failure patients. *Anxiety, Stress & Coping: An International Journal*, 25, 137–153. <https://doi.org/10.1080/10615806.2011.586030>.
- Pirutinsky, S., Rosmarin, D. H., & Holt, C. L. (2012). Religious coping moderates the relationship between emotional functioning and obesity. *Health Psychology*, 31, 394–397. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0026665>.
- Powell, L. H., Shahabi, L., & Thoresen, C. E. (2003). Religion and spirituality: Linkages to physical health. *American Psychologist*, 58, 36–52.
- Seybold, K. (2007). Physiological mechanisms involved in religiosity/spirituality and health. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 30, 303–309.
- Trevino, K. M., Balboni, M., Zollfrank, A., Balboni, T., & Prigerson, H. G. (2014). Negative religious coping as a correlate of suicidal ideation in patients with advanced cancer. *Psycho-Oncology*, 23, 936–945. <https://doi.org/10.1002/pon.3505>.
- Wood, B. T., Worthington, E. J., Exline, J. J., Yali, A. M., Aten, J. D., & McMinn, M. R. (2010). Development, refinement, and psychometric properties of the Attitudes Toward God Scale (ATGS-9). *Psychology of Religion and Spirituality*, 2, 148–167. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0018753>.

Religious Practice

- Religious Ritual

Religious Ritual

Login S. George and Crystal L. Park
Department of Psychology, University of
Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Synonyms

Church attendance; Prayer; Religious ceremony;
Religious practice; Religious service; Service
attendance

Definition

A religious ritual is any repetitive and patterned behavior that is prescribed by or tied to a religious institution, belief, or custom, often with the intention of communicating with a deity or supernatural power. Rituals may be performed individually or collectively during predetermined times (e.g., praying at specific times of day), elicited by events (e.g., mourning rituals performed after a death), or performed sporadically (e.g., praying at various times throughout the day).

Description

Rituals are an important aspect of religion because they allow believers to express and reaffirm their belief systems. One of the primary purposes of rituals is communication. Rituals communicate or are intended to communicate to self, others, or deities. They convey information regarding the commitments, beliefs, and values of the individuals performing the ritual and link them to the larger religious tradition. They reaffirm the religious frameworks individuals use to conceptualize and understand life and, thus, endow a sense of meaning. Religious rituals also serve other psychosocial functions such as emotional control, social support, and community cohesion. By structuring and prescribing behavior, rituals may ease anxiety and uncertainty and promote stability

and understanding in social interactions. It is thought that religious rituals may affect physical and mental health through the psychosocial functions that they serve.

In the context of health, prayer is one of the most common religious rituals examined. Studies of relationships between prayer and health have produced contradictory findings. Some have demonstrated favorable links between the two. For example, a longitudinal study of healthy elderly adults found that prayer was related to reduced mortality rates even after many potential confounds such as demographics, health practices, and social support were controlled for (Helm et al. 2000). In contrast, cross-sectional studies have found unfavorable relationships between prayer and health such that higher levels of prayer are related to more disability and pain. A possible explanation for this negative relationship is that those who are ill and suffering may turn to prayer as a way to deal with their distress. Prayer may become particularly relied upon when individuals are facing stress or illness in that prayer can be an important coping resource. The contradictory findings regarding prayer and health may also be due to the failure of many studies to examine factors such as frequency and content of prayer. Prayer can be categorized into different types based on its content, and evidence suggests that different types of prayer may have differing relationships with health and well-being. As of now, it seems that the relationship between prayer and health is a complex one and one that is yet to be fully explored or understood.

Numerous studies have also looked at relationships between frequency of service attendance and health. Ample evidence points to a strong positive relationship between the two. For example, a review of the literature concluded that there was a 25% reduction in mortality rates among those who attended religious services even after confounds and risk factors (such as demographics, healthy lifestyle, social support, and depression) were taken into account (Powell et al. 2003). A meta-analysis that included data from over 125,000 participants found a similar 25% reduction in mortality rates even after

potential confounding variables were taken into account (McCullough et al. 2000). Many pathways through which service attendance affects health have been proposed; service attendance may affect health by generating strong positive emotions, encouraging healthy behaviors, and providing access to resources and social support.

Other forms of religious rituals exist besides religious service and prayer, and such forms of rituals may be related to health as well. For example, religious mourning rituals have been postulated to play a role in constructively dealing with grief. Mourning rituals may provide a sense of mastery and control during a highly stressful and uncertain time by prescribing to individuals what ought to be done. Other collective rituals such as participation in religious festivals or ceremonies may foster social bonding and yield a sense of community and social support. Although it can be reasoned that such forms of rituals may affect health as it is related to many salutary psychosocial functions such as social support and a sense of control, currently there is very little empirical literature linking them to health.

In conclusion, although scholars have theorized that religious rituals serve a wide array of functions such as social cohesion, sense of meaning, emotional control, and personal control, all of which have been shown to be related to better health, very little research has examined the full linkages. With the exception of participation in formal worship services as strongly linked to better health, few solid conclusions regarding links between religious rituals and physical health can be drawn at this point. These questions await further empirical attention.

Cross-References

- Beliefs
- Coping
- Emotional Control
- Grieving
- Prayer
- Religion/Spirituality
- Social Support

References and Readings

- Helm, H. M., Hays, J. C., Flint, E. P., Koenig, H. G., & Blazer, D. G. (2000). Does private religious activity prolong survival? A six-year follow-up study. *Journals of Gerontology A: Biological and Medical Science*, 55, 400–405.
- Lee, B. Y., & Newberg, A. B. (2005). Religion and health: A review and critical analysis. *Zygon*, 40, 443–468.
- Masters, K. S., & Spielmann, G. I. (2007). Prayer and health: Review, meta-analysis, and research agenda. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 30, 329–338.
- McCullough, M. E., Hoyt, W. T., Larson, D. B., Koenig, H. G., & Thoresen, C. (2000). Religious involvement and mortality: A meta-analytic review. *Health Psychology*, 19, 211–222.
- Powell, L. H., Shahabi, L., & Thoresen, C. E. (2003). Religion and spirituality: Linkages to physical health. *American Psychologist*, 58, 36–52.
- Pruyser, P. (1968). *A dynamic psychology of religion*. New York: Harper & Row.
- Rappaport, R. (1999). *Ritual and religion in the making of humanity*. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press.
- Spilka, B. (2005). Religious practice, ritual, and prayer. In R. F. Paloutzian & C. L. Park (Eds.), *Handbook of the psychology of religion and spirituality* (pp. 435–459). New York: Guilford.

Religious Service

- Religious Ritual

Religious Social Support

Chad Barrett

Department of Psychology, University of Colorado, Denver, CO, USA

Synonyms

Church-based support

Definition

Religious social support can be described as the social support individuals receive as a result of

their religious beliefs and participation in religious activities. Social support refers to the size of one's social network and the perception of belonging to one or more groups. It also includes perceptions of received, provided, and expected emotional and tangible support from one's social network (Cohen et al. 2000). Thus, religious social support refers to the emotional and tangible support that one receives, provides, and expects from one's religious community. It may also refer to the size of one's social network as a result of participation in religious and spiritual activities (Debnam et al. 2011; Krause et al. 2001). Religious support is a multidimensional construct that has sometimes been operationalized differently across various studies. Most definitions of religious social support include the amount of religious involvement (usually indicated by frequency of attending religious services and related activities). Religious involvement is intended as a proxy measure of the social interaction and supportive relationships that one may form with fellow members of a religious community. Religious social support can be further specified according to type (emotional or spiritual) and source (clergy or laity members) of the support (Debnam et al. 2011). Occasionally, religious support includes a person's perception of emotional and tangible support received from supernatural entities as a result of religious or spiritual beliefs and activities. A four-dimensional model of religious social support has been described in the Brief Multidimensional Measure of Religiousness/Spirituality for Use in Health Research (NIA working group/Fetzer Institute 1999). The four dimensions are emotional support provided, emotional support received, negative interaction, and anticipated support.

Description

There is a broad literature linking religiosity and spirituality to mental and physical health (George et al. 2002; Koenig 2009; Koenig et al. 2001;

Oman and Thoresen 2005). In general, though not always, the large number of studies examining the relationship between religiosity and spirituality and mental and physical health suggest that religious and spiritual activities have a salutary influence on a variety of variables related to mental and physical health. Numerous studies involving participants in a variety of settings, from different ethnic backgrounds, in different age groups, and in different countries, some of which used longitudinal designs or random controlled trials, have found evidence that religious and spiritual activities are mostly related to better coping with stress and less depression, suicide, anxiety, and substance abuse (Koenig 2009). The positive influence of religion and spirituality goes beyond the mere absence of psychopathology to include greater general happiness, satisfaction with life, and sense of meaning and purpose (Miller and Kelley 2005). They are also related to better physical health, better health behaviors, and longer survival (George et al. 2002; Oman and Thoresen 2005; McCullough et al. 2000; Powell et al. 2003). People who attend religious services and activities once a week or more tend to have fewer illnesses, recover more quickly from illness, and live longer than those who attend less frequently (George et al. 2002). There is also evidence that they have lower blood pressure and reduced risk of hypertension. Many religious communities encourage health-promoting behaviors. Individuals who attend religious activities tend to engage in more exercise and less smoking and heavy drinking, and they tend to wear their seat belts more often. Further, they are more likely to seek preventative medical care and comply with medical treatment. At least one longitudinal study of over 2500 community participants spanning 30 years found that people who attended religious services more often were also more likely to adopt and maintain healthy behaviors, such as exercising and avoiding smoking and abusing alcohol (Oman and Thoresen 2005). At least two reviews found evidence from several large-scale studies that religious involvement is related to lower

mortality rates (McCullough et al. 2000; Powell et al. 2003). In both studies, on average, increased religious activity reduced mortality rates by about 25%.

It is likely that the influence religion and spirituality have on mental and physical health is partially mediated by religious social support. Social support in general, (i.e., social support that is not specific to religiously based social support) has often been related to better physical and mental health (Taylor 2011). Involvement in religious and spiritual communities seems to provide individuals with opportunities to develop greater social support. Individuals who participate in religious and spiritual communities may have additional, and/or unique, opportunities to benefit from social support. People who regularly attend religious and spiritual activities, compared to those who attend less frequently, typically have larger social networks and engage in more activities in which they provide or receive social support (Ellison et al. 2010; Oman and Thoresen 2005). Increased participation in religious community activities is associated with larger and more stable social networks and with more perceived social, and emotional, support (George et al. 2002; Strawbridge et al. 2001). Further, the quality of religious social support may be better. Members of religious and spiritual communities tend to share similar beliefs, worldviews, values, backgrounds, and experiences. They may also have more opportunities to share intimate moments, significant life experiences, and develop long-term friendships and bonds. They may feel more closely connected as a result of participating in common worship, prayer, services, or social groups and activities. In addition, religious and spiritual teachings that promote pro-social values can encourage and facilitate providing and receiving emotional and tangible support, especially during times of stress (Ellison and George 1994).

Religious social support may help individuals cope with stress by encouraging healthy coping strategies and may help them construct a sense of

meaning and purpose. Religious social support can also provide individuals with a sense of shared burden and comfort. Another way religious social support may influence physically and mentally is by encouraging healthy behaviors. Most religious and spiritual communities encourage their members to abstain from harmful behaviors such as drug and alcohol abuse, smoking, and unsafe sex. Dimensions of religious social support have been related to better eating and exercising habits (Debnam et al. 2011; Oman and Thoresen 2005; McCullough et al. 2000; Powell et al. 2003). However, the evidence for the mediating role of religious social support is mixed with some studies finding evidence for the mediating role of religious social support and some not finding this (George et al. 2002).

It is also important to note that increased involvement in religious and spiritual communities can sometimes have negative consequences. Religious and spiritual participation can sometimes be a source of stress rather than comfort. Interactions may be more negative than positive. For example, in religious communities where certain things such as divorce or homosexuality are strongly condemned, individuals and families experiencing these issues may encounter a variety of negative interactions with community members. In some cases, religious communities may reinforce unhealthy beliefs and behaviors. They can promote perfectionism, negative self-views, and exacerbate feelings of guilt, worry, and anxiety. They can perpetuate mental illness by interpreting pathological symptoms in religious and moralistic terms. Further, some religious communities may discourage members from seeking and adhering to medical treatment for physical and mental health issues (Exline and Rose 2005; Miller and Kelley 2005). Quite often, the negative reality of religious and spiritual activity exists alongside the positive benefits. Thus, religious social support includes both positive and negative elements.

Elements of religious and spiritual activities likely to influence health and mental health

include public participation (e.g., attendance at religious services and related activities), religious affiliation (i.e., belonging to religious groups or denominations), private religious practices (e.g., prayer, meditation, reading religious literature), and religious coping (relying on religion to help cope with stressful situations) (George et al. 2002).

Cross-References

- Religion/Spirituality
- Religious Coping
- Social Support

References and Readings

- Cohen, S., Underwood, L., & Gottlieb, B. H. (2000). *Social support measurement and intervention: A guide for health and social scientists*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Debnam, K., Holt, C. L., Clark, E. M., Roth, D. L., & Southward, P. (2011). Relationship between religious social support and general social support with health behaviours in a national sample of African Americans. *Journal of Behavioural Medicine*. Retrieved December 1, 2011, from <http://0-www.springerlink.com.skyline.ucdenver.edu/content/243t686161407262/>
- Ellison, C. G., & George, L. K. (1994). Religious involvement, social ties, and social support in a southeastern community. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 33, 46–61.
- Ellison, C., Hummer, R., Burdette, A., & Benjamins, M. (2010). Race, religious involvement, and health: The case of African Americans. In C. G. Ellison & R. A. Hummer (Eds.), *Religion, families, and health: Population-based research in the United States* (pp. 321–348). New Brunswick: Rutgers University Press.
- Exline, J. J., & Rose, E. (2005). Religious and spiritual struggles. In R. F. Paloutzian & C. L. Park (Eds.), *Handbook of the psychology of religion and spirituality* (pp. 435–459). New York: Guilford.
- Fetzer Institute, National Institute on Aging Working Group. (1999). *Multidimensional measurement of religiousness/spirituality for use in health research*. Kalamazoo: John E. Fetzer Institute.
- George, L. K., Ellison, C. G., & Larson, D. B. (2002). Explaining the relationships between religious involvement and health. *Psychological Inquiry*, 13, 190–200.
- Koenig, H. G. (2009). Research on religion, spirituality, and mental health: A review. *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry*, 54, 283–291.
- Koenig, H. G., McCullough, M. E., & Larson, D. B. (2001). *Handbook of religion and health*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Krause, N., Ellison, C., Shaw, B. A., Marcum, J. P., & Boardman, J. D. (2001). Church-based social support and religious coping. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 40, 637–656.
- McCullough, M. E., Hoyt, W. T., Larson, D. B., Koenig, H. G., & Thoresen, C. (2000). Religious involvement and mortality: A meta-analytic review. *Health Psychology*, 19, 211–222.
- Miller, L., & Kelley, B. S. (2005). Relationships of religiosity and spirituality with mental health and psychopathology. In R. F. Paloutzian & C. L. Park (Eds.), *Handbook of the psychology of religion and spirituality* (pp. 435–459). New York: Guilford.
- Oman, D., & Thoresen, C. E. (2005). Do religion and spirituality influence health? In R. F. Paloutzian & C. L. Park (Eds.), *Handbook of the psychology of religion and spirituality* (pp. 435–459). New York: Guilford.
- Powell, L. H., Shahabi, L., & Thorensen, C. E. (2003). Religion and spirituality: Linkages to physical health. *American Psychologist*, 58, 36–52.
- Strawbridge, W. J., Shema, S. J., Cohen, R. D., & Kaplan, G. A. (2001). Religious attendance increases survival by improving and maintaining good health practices, mental health, and stable marriages. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 23, 68–74.
- Taylor, S. E. (2011). Social support: A Review. In M. S. Friedman (Ed.), *The handbook of health psychology* (pp. 189–214). New York: Oxford University Press.

Religious Struggle

- Religious Coping

Religiousness

- Religion/Spirituality
- Spirituality

Religiousness and Health

- Spirituality and Health

Religiousness/Religiosity

Stephen Gallagher and Warren Tierney
Department of Psychology, Faculty of Education
and Health Sciences, University of Limerick,
Castletroy, Limerick, Ireland

Synonyms

[Religion](#); [Spirituality](#)

Definition

The terms religiousness and religiosity are used interchangeably but often defined as an individual's conviction, devotion, and veneration toward a divinity. However, in its most comprehensive use, religiosity can encapsulate all dimensions of religion, yet the concept can also be used in a narrow sense to denote an extreme view and overdedication to religious rituals and traditions. This rigid form of religiosity in essence is often viewed as a negative side of the religious experience; it can be typified by an overinvolvement in religious practices which are deemed to be beyond the social norms of one's faith.

Description

Religiousness/Religiosity and Health

As the use of the concept religiosity has a certain ambiguity in its definition, the lack of clarification can lead to much confusion among researchers. Further, adding to this complexity is the fact that research has found both negative and positive relationships between religiosity and a variety of health outcomes (Miller and Kelley 2005). Thus, future researchers may need to investigate not only linear patterns but to test for nonlinear associations between these particular constructs and need to appreciate that religiosity can often be

used to represent an extreme view and overdedication to religious rituals and traditions that are positioned outside social norms. Indeed, such obsessive behaviors are frequently viewed as pathological, and perhaps it is these excessive practices that underlie the negative ill-health associations that have been observed. Moreover, some researchers have proposed a bidirectional and interaction model to explain these complex relationships (Erwin-Cox et al. 2007).

Measuring Religiosity/Religiousness

When one is measuring religiosity and religiousness, they are in fact measuring how religious an individual is. The Faith Maturity Scale (Benson et al. 1993) is an 11-item self-report questionnaire which is segregated into two subscales: horizontal and vertical faith maturity. The vertical scale assesses closeness to God, while the horizontal subscale reviews the existent to which faith has motivated an individual to assist another person. The Centrality of Religiosity Scale (CRS) measures the general intensities of five theoretical defined core dimensions of religiosity: the public practice, private practice, religious experience, ideology, and intellectual dimensions (Huber and Huber 2012). Also, religiousness can be measured using a number of scales such as the Religiosity Index (Piedmont 2001) and the Religion Schema Scale (Streib et al. 2010). While the Mature Religiosity Scale (de Vries-Schot et al. 2012) measures a combination of healthy religiosity and salutary faith and is primarily concerned with their protective roles in mental health. However, as researchers neglect to consider that religiousness may also denote religiosity, one must analyze specific questions from the scales in order to assess the religiosity of an individual. Similarly, it is not yet clear whether these scales allow for assessment of the more extreme aspects of religiosity which have been associated with ill health.

Cross-References

- [Religion](#)
- [Spirituality](#)

References and Further Readings

- Benson, P. L., Donahue, M. J., & Erikson, J. A. (1993). The faith maturity scale: Conceptualization, measurement, and empirical validation. *Research in the Social Scientific Study of Religion*, 5, 1–26.
- de Vries-Schot, M. R., Pieper, J. Z. T., & van Uden, M. H. F. (2012). Mature religiosity scale: Validity of a new questionnaire. *European Journal of Mental Health*, 7(2012), 57–71.
- Erwin-Cox, B., Hoffman, L., Grimes, C. S. M., & Fehl, S. (2007). Spirituality, health, and mental health: A holistic model. In K. Rockefeller (Ed.), *Psychology, spirituality and healthcare*. Westport: Praiger Books.
- Huber, S., & Huber, O. W. (2012). The centrality of religiosity scale (CRS). *Religions*, 3, 710–724.
- Miller, L., & Kelley, B. (2005). Relationships of religiosity and spirituality with mental health and psychopathology. In R. F. Paloutzian & C. L. Park (Eds.), *Handbook of the psychology of religion and spirituality*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Piedmont, R. L. (2001). Spiritual transcendence and the scientific study of spirituality. *Journal of Rehabilitation*, 67, 4–14.
- Streib, H., Hood, R. R., & Klein, C. (2010). The religious schema scale: Construction and initial validation of a quantitative measure for religious styles. *The International Journal for the Psychology of Religion*, 20, 151–172.

REM Sleep

Salvatore Insana
Western Psychiatric Institute and Clinic,
Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

Active sleep; Paradoxal sleep; Phasic REM; Tonic REM

Definition

Rapid eye movement (REM) sleep is a behavioral classification of sleep that is characteristic to rapid jerky eye movements and is associated with increased incidence of dream activity. REM is present in humans from birth throughout the life

span and is expressed by all terrestrial mammals as well as birds.

Description

Rapid eye movement (REM) sleep is widely known by its shortened acronym “REM” sleep – when pronounced, REM rhymes with “gem.” Sleep can be measured with polysomnography (PSG). Polysomnographically measured sleep can be classified into distinct categories that include N1, N2, N3, and REM – the focus of this entry. REM can be classified as defined by the 2007 American Academy of Sleep Medicine sleep scoring manual (Iber et al. 2007) and is similarly classified according to the Rechtschaffen and Kales “classic criteria” (Rechtschaffen and Kales 1968). REM sleep was given its name due to the rapid and jerky eye movements that occur during this behavioral state. Another common term used to describe REM sleep is “paradoxal sleep” because brain activity during REM sleep has a striking resemblance to that observed during wakefulness, hence the paradox. The term “paradoxal sleep” was coined in the late 1950s by Michel Jouvet, M.D.

REM sleep was discovered and first reported in the early 1950s by Eugene Aserinsky, Ph.D. and his mentor Nithaniel Kleitman, Ph.D. The discovery was made through Aserinsky’s doctoral dissertation study, serendipitously, when Aserinsky observed rapid eye movements among his sleeping participants (Aserinsky and Kleitman 1953). During the late 1950s and early 1960s, William C. Dement, M.D., Ph.D. began researching REM sleep in greater detail (e.g., Dement and Kleitman 1957), which initiated his to-be legendary career in sleep science, and provided a platform for sleep science to advance. During the 1950s and 1960s era, the groundbreaking discovery of REM sleep lead to the acknowledgment of brain activity during sleep, which countered the conventional wisdom that the brain was inactive during this behavioral state. In sum, the discovery of REM sleep propagated the investigations that built the foundation for the

development of modern sleep medicine as it stands today (Dement 2005).

A characteristic component of REM sleep is an unstructured pattern of low amplitude (4–7 Hz) mixed frequency neurological activity, as measured by electroencephalography. The neurological activity during REM sleep displays sawtooth wave forms or trains of sharp triangular waves that occur at 2–6 Hz. Behavioral and physiological changes occur during REM sleep, including rapid eye movements, poikilothermia, atonia (i.e., low or absent muscle tone), fast bursts of transient muscle activity, shallow irregular breathing, increased heart rate and blood pressure, increased genital blood flow, and increased neurological oxygen and glucose metabolism. Poikilothermia is the loss of thermoregulatory control, resulting in the body temperature gravitating toward the ambient environmental temperature; sweating and shivering also cease. Atonia is when the skeletal musculature essentially enters a state of paralysis, which likely functions to avoid acting out the dreams that typically occur during REM sleep. Transient increases in heart rate, blood pressure, and irregular breathing typically occur during dream content and co-occur with rapid eye movements. Increased genital blood flow leads to erections that are unrelated to dream content for men and increased vaginal blood flow for women. Dreams typically occur during REM sleep (Dement and Kleitman 1957); brain activity associated with dreams increases, which propagates increased neurological oxygen and glucose metabolism. Due to the multiple physiological and behavioral expressions during REM sleep, REM sleep can be further subdescribed as phasic or tonic. Phasic is the occurrence of rapid eye movements and muscle twitches, whereas tonic is the more constant state of REM between the phasic events.

Typically, sleep transitions from wake into N1, followed by N2, followed by N3, and then followed by REM – this progressive series is termed a “sleep cycle.” Sleep cycles typically occur throughout sleep at approximately 50-min intervals among infants and approximately 90–110-min intervals among adults. Several

sleep cycles occur throughout the night, and the time spent in the different sleep stages changes within each sleep cycle. During the first sleep cycle, REM may only last several minutes; REM episodes within each subsequent sleep cycle become progressively longer throughout the night. Thus, typically, the first portion of the night primarily consists of non-REM sleep (i.e., N1, N2, and N3), and the second portion of the night primarily consists of REM sleep.

Although the true function of sleep, and particularly REM sleep, is unknown, to date several functions of REM sleep have been delineated (e.g., Rector et al. 2009; Siegel 2009). Dreams typically occur during REM sleep; although, the purpose of dreaming remains unknown. REM sleep may stimulate the brain during sleep through dreaming. REM sleep appears central to memory formation, where REM sleep and non-REM sleep (N1, N2, N3) complement each other to process and consolidate various memory forms (Diekelmann and Born 2010; Stickgold and Walker 2007). REM sleep also appears to be central to emotion regulation (Walker and van der Helm 2009). Despite the unknown purpose of REM sleep, it appears necessary to obtain. For example, total sleep deprivation, as well as experimentally induced REM sleep deprivation, leads to a compensatory increase in time spent in REM sleep during the following sleep episode, a phenomenon known as REM rebound. Furthermore, REM sleep has been observed among all terrestrial mammals and birds, but not reptiles.

Entering directly into REM sleep from wake, instead of into N1 first, is associated with a sleep disorder called narcolepsy. Several parasomnias are particularly linked to REM sleep, including nightmares, isolated sleep paralysis, and REM sleep behavior disorder. REM sleep disturbances are implicated in and are associated with numerous psychiatric disorders, including depression, schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, and posttraumatic stress disorder.

Human Development: From birth to approximately 6 months post-term, infant sleep patterns are classified into either REM or NREM; during the birth–6-month postterm period, these

classifications are also referred to as active sleep and quiet sleep, respectively. Following 6 months post-term, infant NREM sleep patterns become more complex and can be categorized into N1, N2, and N3 sleep stages – in addition to REM sleep. During the first few postterm months, infants spend approximately 50% of time in both REM and NREM sleep. During childhood, the percentage of time spent in REM sleep drops off, levels out to approximately 25% of the entire sleep time, and then gradually decreases across the life span. Across the life span, generally, the percentages of N1 and N2 sleep increase, whereas N3 and REM sleep decrease (Ohayon et al. 2004).

Cross-References

- [Non-REM Sleep](#)
- [Polysomnography](#)
- [Sleep](#)
- [Sleep Architecture](#)

References and Readings

- Aserinsky, E., & Kleitman, N. (1953). Regularly occurring periods of eye motility, and concomitant phenomena, during sleep. *Science*, 118, 273–274.
- Dement, W. C. (2005). History of sleep medicine. *Neurologic Clinics*, 23, 945–965.
- Dement, W., & Kleitman, N. (1957). Cyclic variations in EEG during sleep and their relation to eye movements, body motility, and dreaming. *Electroencephalography and Clinical Neurophysiology*, 9, 673–690.
- Diekelmann, S., & Born, J. (2010). The memory function of sleep. *Nature Reviews. Neuroscience*, 11, 114–126.
- Iber, C., Ancoli-Israel, S., Chesson, A., Quan, S. F., & for the American Academy of Sleep Medicine. (2007). *The AASM manual for the scoring of sleep and associated events: Rules, terminology and technical specifications* (1st ed.). Westchester: American Academy of Sleep Medicine.
- Ohayon, M. M., Carskadon, M. A., Guilleminault, C., & Vitiello, M. V. (2004). Meta-analysis of quantitative sleep parameters from childhood to old age in healthy individuals: Developing normative sleep values across the human lifespan. *Sleep*, 27, 1255–1273.
- Rechtschaffen, A., & Kales, A. (1968). *A manual of standardized, techniques and scoring system for sleep stages in human subjects*. Washington, DC: NIH Publication No. 204, US Government Printing Office.
- Rector, D. M., Schei, J. L., Van Dongen, H. P., Belenky, G., & Krueger, J. M. (2009). Physiological markers of local sleep. *The European Journal of Neuroscience*, 29, 1771–1778.
- Siegel, J. M. (2009). Sleep viewed as a state of adaptive inactivity. *Nature Reviews. Neuroscience*, 10, 747–753.
- Stickgold, R., & Walker, M. P. (2007). Sleep-dependent memory consolidation and reconsolidation. *Sleep Medicine*, 8, 331–343.
- Walker, M. P., & van der Helm, E. (2009). Overnight therapy? The role of sleep in emotional brain processing. *Psychological Bulletin*, 135, 731–748.

Remission and Remission Prevention

- [Relapse, Relapse Prevention](#)

Renin

George J. Trachte
Academic Health Center, School of Medicine-
Duluth Campus, University of Minnesota,
Duluth, MN, USA

General Background

Renin is an aspartyl protease that raises blood pressure, retains sodium, and alters gene transcription to adversely affect the kidney and heart. Renin cleaves a decapeptide, angiotensin I, from a large hepatic protein, angiotensinogen. Angiotensin-converting enzyme activates angiotensin I to the octapeptide, angiotensin II, by removal of two amino acids from the carboxyl terminus. Angiotensin II interacts with AT1 receptors to mediate most renin effects. The system is involved with the pathology of the following: congestive heart failure, myocardial infarction, hypertension, and diabetes mellitus (renal damage). Inhibitors of the system are beneficial in treating these pathologies and include direct renin inhibitors, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors, and angiotensin receptor antagonists.

Physiological Relevance

The renin-angiotensin system is thought to be important in adaptations to low-salt diets and normal development of the kidneys in utero.

Control of Renin Release

Renin is secreted from the kidney in response to the following: lower renal artery blood pressure, reduced dietary sodium intake, sympathetic nerve activation, and prostaglandins. Renin release is inhibited by elevated renal artery pressure, increased sodium consumption, β -receptor antagonists, and atrial natriuretic peptide.

Renin Tissue Localization and Molecular Biology

In addition to the kidney, renin (REN) mRNA is found in multiple organs, including the brain. The REN gene codes for a large 406 amino acid protein (pre-pro-renin). The removal of 23 amino acids from the carboxyl terminal results in the formation of prorenin. The final activation step removes 43 amino acids from the amino terminal to form the 340 amino acid active protein known as renin. Both renin and prorenin are secreted into the circulation. Prorenin can be activated by binding to its receptor even in the absence of conversion to renin. The enzyme converting prorenin to renin has not been identified but is believed to be specific to the kidney because nephrectomized patients or animals contain no renin in their circulation but prorenin is present. Inhibitors of the prorenin receptor have been shown to be beneficial in diabetic nephropathy and hypertension.

Behavioral Actions of Renin

Renin and other components of the renin-angiotensin system are present in the brain and are believed to impact memory negatively and to exacerbate Alzheimer's disease and other neurodegenerative disorders, potentially because the

prorenin receptor tends to promote the formation of reactive oxidative products. Prorenin receptors are present on substantia nigra neurons where they augment toxicity in dopaminergic neurons, potentially worsening Parkinson's disease. Renin secretion polymorphisms also are one of five pathway-wide associations for schizophrenia. Results with the prorenin receptor and prorenin-processing enzyme are absolutely specific for the renin pathway and should assist in determining relevant behavioral effects of the system in the future. In contrast, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors or polymorphisms have multiple behavioral effects, but these could be unrelated to the renin-angiotensin system because of the nonspecific nature of the angiotensin-converting enzyme. Alterations in angiotensin-converting enzyme activity have been associated with the following: greater physical activity, improved cognition, panic disorder, depression, suicide, autism, physical aggression, schizophrenia, and Alzheimer's disease.

Repeated Measures Design

- [Crossover Design](#)

Repetitive Thinking

- [Perseverative Cognition](#)
- [Worry](#)

Repression

- [Defensiveness](#)

Repressive Coping

- [Defensiveness](#)

Reproductive Health

Ulrike Ehlert¹ and Simona Fischbacher²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland

²Klinische Psychologie und Psychotherapie, Universität Zürich, Zürich, Switzerland

Definition

As a part of general health and development, reproductive health, which refers to the reproductive processes and functions, is essential in adolescence and adulthood and also affects one's well-being beyond the reproductive years. Healthy development of the reproductive system in the fetus and during early childhood is required to achieve reproductive capacity. Reproductive maturity is usually reached after puberty, a phase characterized by biologically based growth and change processes modulated by psychosocial factors. In adulthood, when reproductive capacity is completely developed, a healthy menstrual cycle and male reproductive functioning are biological requirements for reproduction. Furthermore, individual reproductive goals need to be developed and pursued. For women, the fertile phase ends rapidly with menopause, whereas men usually experience a gradual decrease in fertility with increase in age.

Description

A Biopsychological Approach to Reproductive Health

From a biopsychological perspective, the association between psycho-endocrinological or psycho-immunological factors and reproductive processes is of interest. Deviations from the healthy sex hormone secretion are associated with the development and maintenance of various chronic diseases and modulate neurotransmitter systems associated with psychiatric disorders. On the other hand, infertility and diseases of the reproductive system affect one's psychological

well-being and may lead to impairments in social life, work productivity, interpersonal relationships, and sexuality (Stanton et al. 2002).

Stress is one of the most potent factors affecting reproductive health and is related to several reproductive disorders, such as cycle length disorders, infertility, premenstrual syndrome, or erectile dysfunction. The bidirectional interaction between the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis, as the most prominent stress-associated hormone system, and the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal (HPG) axis is well documented. The HPA axis exerts an inhibitory effect on the HPG axis, due to the inhibiting action of corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), arginine-vasopressin (AVP), and CRH-induced beta-endorphin release. In addition, cortisol suppresses secretion of the gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) and the luteinizing hormone (LH), and inhibits ovarian sex steroids (estrogen and progesterone) and testosterone. Sex steroids, on the other hand, have a modulating effect on the HPA axis (Creatsas et al. 2006).

Women's Reproductive Health

Women's reproductive health includes not only reproductive processes, a healthy reproductive system, and reproductive functioning, but also psychological well-being and a safe and satisfying sexual life. The biological basis of women's reproductive health is a healthy and ovulatory menstrual cycle. This entry will give a brief overview on the endocrinological processes of a healthy menstrual cycle.

Endocrinology of female reproduction and the menstrual cycle: The most important physiological function of the hypothalamic-pituitary-ovarian (HPO) axis is the control of reproduction. This hormonal system includes the hypothalamic GnRH, which is controlled by the GnRH-pulse generator, the pituitary gonadotropes, and sex-hormones produced by the ovaries. The menstrual cycle can be divided into three successive phases: the follicular phase, the ovulatory phase, and the luteal phase. Menstrual bleeding marks the first day of the follicular phase and occurs after the decrease in levels of progesterone and estrogen at the end of the previous cycle. At the beginning of

the follicular phase, the follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) stimulates the development of several follicles, resulting in a slow increase in a woman's estrogen level. As the estradiol level increases, its negative feedback on the pituitary inhibits secretion of FSH; consequently, the FSH level decreases. Shortly before ovulation occurs, maturation of the dominant follicle and the corresponding peak in estrogen level lead to a positive feedback on LH, generating a preovulatory LH surge. This surge causes the follicle to swell and rupture. Ovulation usually occurs after the LH surge. The following luteal phase is characterized by the formation of the corpus luteum and its production of progesterone and estrogen, which help to prepare the endometrium for implantation and maintenance of pregnancy. High progesterone level exerts negative feedback on the GnRH pulse frequency, and consequently, FSH and LH secretions decrease. Lacking stimulation by FSH and LH, the corpus luteum regresses after approximately 14 days. The following decline in estrogen and progesterone levels remove the negative feedback control on FSH, and its level increases again to initiate the next menstrual cycle.

The first day of menstrual bleeding is counted as the beginning of the menstrual cycle, which lasts until the day before the next onset of menses. Between the ages of 20 and 40 years, the average cycle length ranges from 27 to 30 days. Whereas the follicular phase can vary in length (13–15 days), the luteal phase lasts approximately 14 days, correlating with the life span of the corpus luteum. Menstrual cycle lengths vary most after menarche and before menopause, mainly because of anovulatory cycles (Rees et al. 2005).

Women's Reproductive Disorders

Reproductive health is influenced by a number of different factors, such as age, genetics, lifestyle, and exposure to environmental toxins. Thus, women's reproductive health not only includes the healthy aspects of reproduction but also diseases and conditions that negatively affect the female reproductive system. Reproductive disorders, defined as abnormalities in the reproductive

system, reduce reproduction and often affect overall health, psychological well-being, and sex life. This section will provide a brief outline of selected menstrual cycle-related reproductive disorders from the perspective of behavioral medicine.

Menstrual Cycle-Related Disorders

Cycle Length Disorders and Bleeding Disorders:

Cycle length disorders and bleeding disorders are deviations from normative patterns of menstrual functioning in terms of menstruation frequency or bleeding pattern. Cycle length disorders and bleeding disorders are often associated with anovulatory cycles and infertility. The most common are oligomenorrhea, amenorrhea, menorrhagia, and spotting or breakthrough bleeding. Oligomenorrhea is defined as infrequent menstruation, with 5–9 periods within 1 year; amenorrhea is the absence of a menstrual period. Primary amenorrhea (or the absence of a menstrual period until the age of 16) is a relatively rare disorder, whereas secondary amenorrhea (i.e., the absence of a menstrual period for 3 or more months) affects about 3% of women during the reproductive years (Rees et al. 2005). Menorrhagia is defined as prolonged and/or abnormally heavy periods, with a blood loss of more than 80 ml/period. Spotting or breakthrough bleeding usually affects young or perimenopausal women. Cycle length disorders or bleeding disorders can have organic, endocrine, or psychosocial causes. Exposure to chronic stress or traumatic events seems to influence the hypothalamic pulse generator, leading to a disturbance of reproductive function. Behavioral factors like restraint eating or excessive exercise may contribute to the development of menstrual disorders. In addition, there is a close association between eating disorders, such as anorexia nervosa or obesity, and cycle length disorders (Creatsas et al. 2006).

Dysmenorrhea: Dysmenorrhea is defined as pelvic pain associated with the bleeding phase of the menstrual cycle and can be classified as either primary or secondary, depending on the absence or presence of an identifiable pelvic pathology. Painful cramping is felt in the lower abdomen or back area and is often accompanied by somatic or

psychological symptoms, for example, headache, nausea, vomiting, dizziness, restlessness, fatigue, and depressed mood. Dysmenorrhea often interferes with daily activities and may result in absenteeism from school or work (Stanton et al. 2002). The cause of dysmenorrhea can be either organic (e.g., endometriosis) or functional (associated with excessive production of prostaglandines). Studies have shown that affected women show a learning history of enhanced body vigilance and anticipated pain-avoidance behavior. The widely used therapy options for dysmenorrhea are non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) to inhibit prostaglandin production and oral contraceptives to suppress ovulation. Pain relief can also be achieved by behavioral therapy methods, such as relaxation techniques or an increase in (physical) activity.

Premenstrual Syndrome and Premenstrual Dysphoric Disorder: Up to 90% of women of reproductive age experience some degree of premenstrual symptoms. A smaller group of women report symptoms meeting criteria of premenstrual syndrome (PMS), and less than 10% of women are classified as having premenstrual dysphoric disorder (PMDD). According to the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Health Disorders* 5th edition (in development process; www.dsm5.org), indications of PMDD include depressive symptoms (decreased interest in usual activities, depressed mood, self-deprecating thoughts, difficulty concentrating, hopelessness, affective lability, and change in sleep and appetite), anxiety symptoms (feeling of tension or anxiety, irritability or anger, and feeling overwhelmed), and physical symptoms (bloating, breast tenderness, and joint or muscle pain). Symptoms begin in the late luteal phase and remit after the onset of the follicular phase. Women suffering from PMDD often experience impairment of work productivity and interpersonal relationships and increased healthcare utilization. Although the etiology of PMS/PMDD has not been definitely established, studies suggest that the cause of PMS/PMDD is allopregnanolone and GABA_A receptor dysfunction, serotonin abnormalities, and a special sensitivity to the withdrawal or fluctuation of

estrogen and progesterone (Freeman 2003). Depending on the predominant symptoms, different treatment options seem to be effective: oral contraceptives, stress management training, exercise, dietary regulation, vitamins, herbal preparations, cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT), and selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) (Rapkin 2003).

Endometriosis: Endometriosis is a common gynecological condition that affects women of reproductive age. It is a condition in which extra-uterine, glandular, and stromal endometrial-like tissue grows in physiologically abnormal locations, often within the fallopian tubes, on the outside of the tubes and ovaries, or on the surface of the uterus and intestines. These cells are influenced by monthly hormonal changes; they build up during the menstrual cycle and are shed as levels of sex steroids decrease. Endometriosis is associated with several symptoms, including chronic pelvic pain, dysmenorrhea, menstrual disorders, infertility, dyspareunia (painful intercourse), and dysuria (painful or difficult urination). The exact cause of endometriosis remains unknown; several factors have been suggested, for example, the presence of estrogen, retrograde menstruation, hereditary factors, immune system function, and environmental influence. In addition, discrepancies between the reported location of pain and endoscopic findings make it difficult for women and their gynecologists to handle the symptoms. Affected women present greater susceptibility to mood disturbances, and depressive or anxiety symptoms may play a role in the maintenance of pelvic pain (Gao et al. 2006).

Polycystic Ovary Syndrome: Polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS) is one of the most common endocrine disorders, affecting about 5–10% of women of childbearing age. Symptoms are heterogeneous and include oligo- or anovulation, biochemical or clinical hyperandrogenism (hirsutism, acne, and alopecia), polycystic ovaries, hyperinsulinemia, infertility, and obesity. The exact etiology has not yet been clarified, but considerable knowledge of the underlying pathophysiologic mechanism and management has been gained. Various lines of evidence

suggest a genetic component, but the candidate genes have yet to be identified. Several hypotheses have been proposed to explain the pathogenesis of PCOS:

- (a) An alteration in LH pulse frequency and amplitude, resulting from an increased frequency of GnRH pulses and leading to increased androgen synthesis in the theca cells within the ovary
- (b) Hyperinsulinemia, resulting from insulin resistance and acting synergistically with LH to stimulate ovarian testosterone production and decrease serum sex hormone-binding globulin (SHBG) concentrations
- (c) A primary defect of sex steroid synthesis, leading to increased androgen production and anovulation

The treatment of PCOS depends on the predominant symptoms and the women's stage of life (Jones et al. 2008). The management (e.g., lifestyle management and exercise) of PCOS is directed toward improving the woman's health-related quality of life. A growing body of evidence suggests that affected women are at increased risk for cardiovascular disease, type II diabetes mellitus, dyslipidemia, metabolic syndrome, and affective disorders (Azziz 2007).

Reproductive Health Issues Not Related to the Menstrual Cycle

The following disorders are not related to the endocrinological processes of the menstrual cycle but to female sexual health.

Vulvodynia: Vulvodynia is defined as vulvar discomfort (burning, irritation, or sharp pain) often accompanied by sexual dysfunction and affective distress in the absence of anatomic or neurologic findings. Many factors have been proposed to be possible causes (e.g., genetic, immune, or hormonal factors), yet the etiology remains unknown. Comorbidity with psychosomatic disorders, such as irritable bowel syndrome or fibromyalgia, points to a potential psychosomatic cause. Vulvar discomfort affects one's psychological well-being, relationship quality, and

sexuality; however, only a few randomized controlled studies have been conducted to study vulvodynia. Apart from numerous medical treatment options (including topical, oral, and injectable medications), biofeedback and relaxation techniques are helpful, especially when vaginismus is concomitant. There is growing evidence that CBT for pain management reduces pain severity and improves sexual functioning in women suffering from vulvodynia.

Pruritus Vulva: Pruritus vulva is characterized by severe itching of the external female genitalia. It can be caused by infections, systemic diseases, or mechanical stimulation. Scratching, which relieves the physical discomfort, may eventually lead to chronic painful sensations in the vulva area. Therapeutic interventions, such as psychoeducation, diverting attention, and development of new coping skills, seem to be promising approaches.

Other Common Reproductive Diseases/Disorders

- Ovarian cancer
- Cervical cancer
- Neoplasia and dysplasia of the cervix
- Uterine cancer
- Sexually transmitted diseases
- Pelvic inflammatory disease/pelvic pain
- Ovarian cysts
- Benign/malignant breast ailments
- Medical complications during gestation
- Low birth weight
- Reduced fertility/infertility

Male Reproductive Health

The endocrinology of male reproduction and a healthy reproductive system are biological requirements for successful reproduction and an important part of overall health in men. The following section will describe the endocrinology of male reproduction and the healthy male reproductive system.

Endocrinology of Male Reproduction and the Male Reproductive System: The male morphologic reproductive system includes the hypothalamic-pituitary-testicular (HPT) axis, penis, scrotum, epididymis, vas deferens,

accessory glands, seminal vesicles, prostate, and urethra. The testes have two important functions: production of sperm and synthesis of androgen (testosterone). Both functions are regulated by an endocrine feedback mechanism of the hypothalamus and the pituitary. The pulsatile hypothalamic release of GnRH causes the secretion of FSH and LH. Whereas FSH primarily acts on Sertoli cells to facilitate spermatogenesis, LH acts on Leydig cells in the testicular interstitium to stimulate steroidogenesis, particularly of testosterone. Testosterone is necessary for spermatogenesis, and together with inhibin (which is secreted by the Sertoli cells), it downregulates LH and FSH release via a negative feedback loop (Nieschlag and Behre 2001).

Male Reproductive Disorders

The above-mentioned endocrinological functioning of male reproduction describes healthy male reproduction. However, male reproduction can be diminished by a variety of diseases and conditions. In the following section, selected male reproductive disorders will be discussed.

Hypogonadism: Primary or secondary hypogonadism is a defect of the testes, resulting in inadequate production of androgen (causing androgen deficiency) and germ cells. Primary hypogonadism is caused by abnormal testicular function. Reasons for primary hypogonadism include genetic disorders (e.g., Klinefelter's syndrome), viral orchitis, and the influence of toxins, among others. Secondary hypogonadism results from a malfunction in the hypothalamus or pituitary gland, which inhibits secretion of pituitary hormones. Symptoms of hypogonadism can be observed in the developing fetus (e.g., improperly formed external genitals), during puberty (e.g., absence of testicular growth and secondary sexual characteristics), and adulthood (e.g., decreased fertility). Hypogonadism is associated with loss of libido, erectile dysfunction, concentration problems, decreased interest in activities, depression, irritability, sleep disorders, loss of muscle strength, and loss of bone density. The most commonly used therapy for hypogonadism is testosterone replacement therapy (Nieschlag and Behre 2001).

Erectile Dysfunction: Erectile dysfunction is defined as the "consistent inability to achieve or maintain an erection sufficient for satisfactory sexual performance." The prevalence rate ranges from 7% for men aged between 18 and 29 years to 18% for men aged between 50 and 59 years. The cause of erectile dysfunction can be organic or psychogenic. Several risk factors have been detected, including cardiovascular disease, hypertension, smoking, stress, and alcohol or drug abuse. Psychosocial distress, relationship problems, depression, and performance anxiety seem to be potential psychosocial causes. The management of erectile dysfunction includes lifestyle modification, medication (sildenafil citrate), psychotherapy, and surgery. There is evidence that psychotherapy improves erectile functioning, interpersonal assertiveness, and relationship satisfaction and reduces anxiety in men suffering from erectile dysfunction (Nieschlag and Behre 2001).

Chronic Prostatitis/Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndrome: Chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CP/CPPS) is characterized by pain in the pelvis or perineum, which may be accompanied by ejaculatory disturbances, dysuria, fatigue, low libido, and erectile dysfunction. Chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome can result either from a bacterial infection (5–10% of all cases) or may not be associated with an identifiable cause, which is the most common type of CP/CPPS. Several different causes have been suggested (including immunological, neurological, endocrine, and psychological causes), yet the actual cause remains unknown. Recently published studies have shown that several traditionally used medications (antimicrobials, anti-inflammatories, and alpha-blockers) do not significantly ameliorate symptoms of CP/CPPS (Tripp et al. 2004). Affected men often report helplessness, catastrophic thinking about pain, pain-contingent resting for coping with pain, and a low perceived control over pain. There is primary evidence that psychotherapy, which focuses on decreasing negative thoughts and emotional responses related to pain while building up self-management skills, is predictive of positive treatment outcomes for patients with CP/CPPS (Nickel et al. 2007).

Other Common Reproductive Diseases/Disorders

- Infertility
- Sexually transmissible diseases
- Testicular cancer

Reproductive Health in Middle-Aged and Elderly Men

Whereas women show an unavoidable clear cessation of reproductive capacity, men usually maintain fertility through old age. Similar to women, men may also experience physical and psychological symptoms due to changing concentrations of steroid hormones from midlife onward. Age-related decline in insulin, growth hormone, thyroid hormones, aldosterone, melatonin, and progesterone has been demonstrated. Cortisol, on the other hand, increases with advancing age. Testosterone and bioavailable testosterone show a decline of 35–50% between the ages of 20 and 80 years, whereas the LH level increases slightly with age. In addition to age-related variations in hormone concentrations, loss of circadian rhythm of LH and testosterone levels has been demonstrated. Furthermore, sex hormone-binding globulin (SHBG) increases with age, leading to reduced bioavailable testosterone (Hermann et al. 2000).

Partial Androgen Deficiency in Aging Men: If decline in testosterone levels is associated with symptoms of androgen deficiency, the condition is called andropause, androgen deficiency in aging men, or partial androgen deficiency in aging men. The incidence and prevalence of androgen deficiency (or unequivocally low serum testosterone levels) in middle-aged men and elderly men are difficult to determine, particularly because of controversial diagnostic criteria and because some of the symptoms are also experienced by normal aging men. Androgen deficiency is associated with symptoms similar to those experienced by menopausal women or men suffering from hypogonadism. Several studies have indicated that testosterone replacement therapy can improve many of these parameters in middle-aged and elderly men. However, the risks of testosterone replacement therapy (e.g., cardiovascular disease) have not been fully assessed.

Other Age-Associated Disorders: Several age-associated histomorphological alterations of the

testes have been observed. Age seems to have a negative impact on spermiogenesis, and there is an association between chromosomal abnormalities in spermatozoa and age. One of the most common age-associated morbid changes is prostate hyperplasia (benign enlargement of the prostate); it is sometimes accompanied by erectile dysfunction, which affects quality of life and can cause mood disorders and relationship problems. The major risk factor for erectile dysfunction is age, with an incidence rate of 5–15% for complete impotence and a prevalence of 52% (of erectile dysfunction of any grade) in men between the ages of 40 and 70 years.

Summary

As a part of general health, reproductive health, which refers to the processes and functions of the reproductive system, is essential across the life span. From a biopsychological perspective, a close association between the endocrinology of the reproductive system and psychosocial well-being is of interest. Normal and healthy functioning of the reproductive system and processes is one of the biological fundamentals of psychosocial well-being. Nevertheless, reproductive health includes the diseases, disorders, and conditions that affect the functioning of the male and female reproductive system, their sexual life, and mental health.

Cross-References

- [Androgen](#)
- [Breast Cancer](#)
- [Endometriosis](#)
- [Erectile Dysfunction](#)
- [Estrogen](#)
- [Family Planning](#)
- [Gestation](#)
- [Menopause](#)
- [Puberty](#)
- [Sex Hormones](#)
- [Sexual Functioning](#)
- [Women's Health](#)

References and Readings

- Azziz, R. (Ed.). (2007). *The polycystic ovary syndrome. Current concepts on pathogenesis, and clinical care*. New York: Springer.
- Creatas, G., Mastorakos, G., & Chrousos, G. P. (Eds.). (2006). *Women's health and disease. Gynecologic, endocrine, and reproductive issues*. Boston: Blackwell.
- Freeman, E. W. (2003). Premenstrual syndrome and premenstrual dysphoric disorder: Definitions and diagnosis. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 28, 25–37.
- Gao, X., Yeh, Y. C., Outley, J., Simon, J., Botteman, M., & Spalding, J. (2006). Health-related quality of life burden of women with endometriosis: A literature review. *Current Medical Research and Opinion*, 22(9), 1787–1797.
- Hermann, M., Untergasser, G., Rumpold, H., & Berger, P. (2000). Aging of the male reproductive system. *Experimental Gerontology*, 35, 1267–1279.
- Jones, G. L., Hall, J. M., Balen, A. H., & Ledger, W. L. (2008). Health-related quality of life measurement in women with polycystic ovary syndrome: A systematic review. *Human Reproduction Update*, 14, 15–25.
- Nickel, J. C., Mullins, C., & Tripp, D. A. (2007). Development of an evidence-based cognitive behavioral treatment program for men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *World Journal of Urology*, 26, 167–172.
- Nieschlag, E., & Behre, H. M. (Eds.). (2001). *Andrology. Male reproductive health and dysfunction*. Berlin: Springer.
- Rapkin, A. (2003). A review of treatment of premenstrual syndrome and premenstrual dysphoric disorder. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 28, 39–53.
- Rees, M., Hope, S., & Ravnkar, V. (Eds.). (2005). *The abnormal menstrual cycle*. Oxfordshire: Taylor & Francis Group.
- Stanton, A. L., Lobel, M., Sears, S., & Stein De Luca, R. (2002). Psychosocial aspects of selected issues in women's reproductive health: Current status and future directions. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 70(3), 751–770.
- Tripp, D. A., Nickel, J. C., Landis, J. R., Wang, Y. L., & Knauss, J. S. (2004). Predictors of quality of life and pain in chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: Findings from the National Institutes of Health Chronic Prostatitis Cohort Study. *British Journal of Urology International*, 94, 1279–1282.

Research Benefits

- [Research Participation, Risks and Benefits of](#)

Research Ethics Committee

- [Ethics Committee](#)
- [Human Subjects Committee](#)
- [Institutional Review Board \(IRB\)](#)

Research Methodology

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Study methodology](#)

Definition

Research methodology falls in between study design (including the design of a clinical trial) and data management and analysis. It is concerned with the acquisition of optimum quality data.

Three factors are of central importance in determining the attainment of statistical significance:

1. Variation *between* the two sets of data (one receiving the behavioral intervention of interest, the test treatment group, and one receiving a control treatment, the control treatment group). This is between-groups variation.
2. Variation *within* the two sets of data, or within-groups variation.
3. The total number of subjects participating in the study (the sum of subjects in each treatment group), sometimes expressed as the size of the trial.

The following statements can then be made for each of these factors, assuming in each case that the other two factors remain constant:

- The greater the between-groups variation (operationalized as the greater the difference between the group means, i.e., the greater the treatment effect), the more likely it is that the difference will attain statistical significance.
- The greater the within-groups variation, the less likely it is that the difference will attain statistical significance.
- The greater the number of subjects participating in the trial, the more likely it is that the difference will attain statistical significance.

Notice that two of these three factors address variation. Consider the first statement, which is intuitively the most straightforward. The larger the treatment effect, the more likely it is to attain statistical significance. That is, all other factors being constant, the greater the treatment's efficacy the more likely it is that compelling evidence for the use of the new treatment is provided.

The influence of the treatment can be considered a systematic influence. It is the signal in which we are interested. In contrast, in the present context, the within-groups variation can be regarded as nonsystematic variation, or the noise against which we desire to detect the signal. This noise has two components: biological variation and random error. Since we all have unique biological systems, including those pertinent to a treatment's influence on the body (a statement that is true for identical twins and other identical births given the gene-environment interactions they experience), biological variation is inevitable and perfectly normal.

In contrast, random error can be addressed. Indeed, minimizing random error is a key focus of research methodology. There are multiple instances where such error can occur, with the following being just a few examples:

- Administering the wrong behavioral treatment to a subject on one or more occasions during the trial.
- Employing measurement equipment that is substandard (e.g., blood pressure monitors).
- Conducting blood pressure measurements in an inconsistent manner (e.g., using the

dominant arm sometimes and the nondominant arm at others).

- Recording a measurement incorrectly.
- Misplacing data.

Optimum quality research methodology contributes to optimum quality data. All researchers must strive to the greatest extent possible to execute their role in a study flawlessly to reduce random error, thus allowing the trial the best opportunity of accurately assessing the test treatment's characteristics.

Cross-References

► [Efficacy](#)

Research Participation, Risks and Benefits of

Marianne Shaughnessy
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Research benefits](#); [Research risks](#)

Definition

Voluntary decision to engage in a process of organized scientific inquiry (research).

Description

The conduct of human subjects research relies on the voluntary participation of persons in research studies. The design of a particular study and definition of the population of interest will define which person or populations will be sought for recruitment into a research study. The decision to

participate in a research study begins with a process known as informed consent. Informed consent is referred to as a process because continued review and education must be offered throughout every stage of participation in a study, and consent to continue participation is ongoing. Through this process, participants are continually informed about the requirements of their participation, any known risks associated with participation, and any potential benefits (to themselves or to a larger community) that may result from their participation. Prior to the start of research projects, an institutional review board will review the risks and benefits of proposed research from a scientific and human subject's perspective. However, before actually enrolling in a research study, every participant (or legally authorized representative, in the event the participant cannot consent on his/her own behalf) should understand the potential risks and benefits to the individual associated with participation in the research. The risks and benefits of participation must be explained completely to all potential participants and, ideally, the participant communicates a thorough understanding of the research procedures, risks, and benefits prior to providing initial consent. In some cases, not all the risks of participation may be known. It is not uncommon for researchers to include a statement in the consent form advising potential participants that there may be unknown risks to participation.

Examples of some of the risks involved in research participation may include physical injury, as may occur when testing the safety of a new drug or medical device, or psychological injury, such as the diagnosis of a mental health problem during testing or data collection. There may also be a financial cost associated with research participation, such as treatment of research related illnesses or injuries not covered by the research study or the participant's medical insurance. However, generally speaking, the most common risk encountered is the breach of confidential information collected during the course of participation in human subjects research. The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996 (HIPAA) has had a significant impact on the way all protected health information (PHI)

is collected and stored in both clinical and research arenas; therefore, researchers are required to make provisions to safeguard an individual's health information collected as part of their research participation (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services [DHHS] 2011).

Examples of some of the benefits of research participation may include direct physical benefit, such as relief from disease symptoms from the use of an experimental drug or other intervention. Psychological benefits may evolve through a targeted mental health intervention. Often, subjects will agree to participate in research with the knowledge that there may be no direct benefit to self but that they are making a contribution to science and therefore the greater good of society. Some research studies offer direct financial compensation for participation, but this practice causes concern regarding the potential for payment to unduly influence participation and thus obscure risks, impair judgment, or encourage misrepresentation (Grady 2005). The research application and consent form should state how any risks will be minimized, and the institutional review board or regulatory body overseeing research should carefully evaluate the research study protocol to ensure that overall, benefits outweigh the risks.

Cross-References

- Confidentiality
- Protection of Human Subjects

References and Readings

- Grady, C. (2005). Payment of clinical research subjects. *Journal of Clinical Investigation*, 115(7), 1681–1687.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2011). Health information privacy. Accessed May 2, 2011, from <http://www.hhs.gov/ocr/privacy/>

Research Risks

- Research Participation, Risks and Benefits of

Research to Practice Translation

Bonnie Spring¹, Angela Fidler Pfammatter², Sara A. Hoffman³ and Jennifer L. Warnick⁴

¹Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

²Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

³Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Evanston, IL, USA

⁴University of Florida, Gainesville, FL, USA

Synonyms

Dissemination and implementation; Knowledge translation; Translational research

Definition

Research to practice translation is the process of adapting principles and findings from scientific investigation in order to apply them in real-world practice (Sung et al. 2003; Woolf 2008). The translational process typically proceeds through a series of phases: T1 (translation of fundamental research findings to develop new practical applications), T2 (adaptation of efficacious treatments into a form that is effective in usual practice settings), and T3 (dissemination and implementation of research-tested interventions so that they are taken up widely by care systems and become usual practice). Although T1, T2, and T3 are all part of research to practice translation, the phrase connotes an emphasis on the later stages, particularly T3. The problem addressed is the slow and incomplete uptake of scientific discoveries into clinical and public health practice. Barriers that impede translation include lack of resources for practitioner training, resistance to change, competing institutional priorities, and lack of infrastructure to support new practices.

Description

Background

A bifurcation between basic and applied research has characterized US science policy since the mid-1940s. In the wake of World War II, Vannevar Bush, Science Advisor to President Franklin D. Roosevelt, wrote an advisory entitled “Science: The Endless Frontier.” In it, he advocated for major federal investment in basic science research as the engine that would drive the post-war economy. Bush drew a distinction between basic research, motivated fundamentally by curiosity and a quest for understanding, versus applied research, motivated by the need to solve practical problems. He contended that new insights from basic research are the prime mover of technological and medical progress. Because major advances result from discoveries in remote, unexpected scientific domains, it is virtually impossible to predict which basic scientific inquiries will produce major advances. Consequently, Bush aimed to protect unfettered, curiosity-driven pursuit of scientific understanding from being constrained by worries about whether the knowledge to be gained had any practical use. Arguing that industrial and medical progress would stagnate if basic research were neglected, he succeeded in prompting major federal investment in basic research, including creation of what was to become the National Science Foundation.

Over the next half century, it gradually became apparent that the insights emerging from basic science research were not being translated into practical applications. An analysis by Balas and Boren (2000) indicated that, even after 17 years, only 14% of research knowledge is adopted into practice. By 2001, the Institute of Medicine (IOM) used the term “chasm” to describe the gap between scientific knowledge and actual clinical practice. There was also growing realization that Vannevar Bush’s contention that “applied research invariably drives out pure” drew too sharp a dichotomy. In a 1996 book entitled, *Pasteur’s Quadrant*, Donald Stokes presented a fourfold table, whereby research could be either low or high on both quest for fundamental understanding and considerations about use. Stokes

argued that the most generative, valuable research falls into *Pasteur's Quadrant*, inspired simultaneously *both* by the need to solve a practical problem *and* by curiosity to understand how nature works. A consequence of these realizations has been some realignment of budget allocations at the National Institutes of Health (NIH) to support greater investment in translational and applied research. In fiscal year 1998, the NIH allocated 31% of its budget to applied research and 57% to basic science (Institute of Medicine [IOM] 1998). By fiscal year 2007, the amount allocated to applied research was 41%, increasing to 48% by fiscal year 2016 (National Science Board 2004; NIH 2016).

New Research Approaches to Facilitate Translation

In 2003, the Institute of Medicine's Clinical Round Table presented a schema to conceptualize blockades within the translational pipeline (Sung et al. 2003). The identified obstacles are shown in Fig. 1 (adapted from Sung et al. 2003).

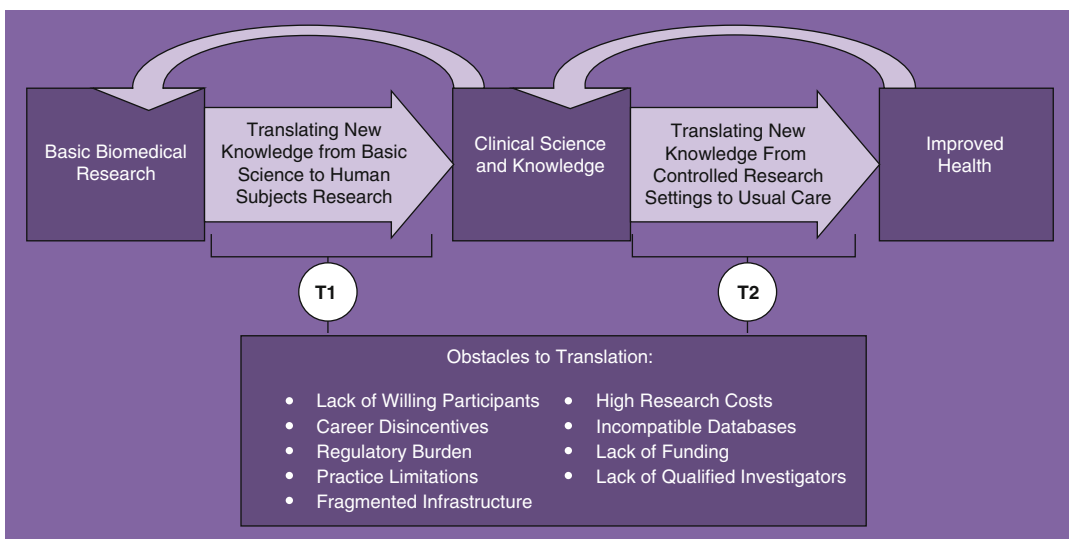
Although T1 translation remains a concern, attention has focused increasingly on blockages later in the pipeline. There has been major federal investment in comparative effectiveness research to address a T2 blockade: determining which

treatments work best in usual practice, as contrasted with research settings. Moreover, a further translational phase (T3 – implementation) has been recognized, acknowledging the need to overcome system-level obstacles that impede uptake of best research-tested practices into institutions and health-care systems (Westfall et al. 2007) (see also entry on ► “[Translational Behavioral Medicine](#)”). Practice-based research and community-based participatory research (CBPR) are two research approaches now being applied to learn how to overcome implementation barriers (Woolf 2008).

An insight that is driving attention toward later phase translation is the desire to scale evidence-based interventions to bring their benefits to more of the population. A highly efficacious treatment available to very few will have less public health impact than a less effective treatment available to many (Glasgow et al. 2006). Stated differently, population-level impact is the product of efficacy and reach (Abrams et al. 1996).

Comparative Effectiveness Research

The US Agency for Health Research and Quality (AHRQ) defines comparative effectiveness research (CER) as the conduct and synthesis of research that compares the benefits and harms of



Research to Practice Translation, Fig. 1 Translating basic biomedical research into clinical practice and improved health outcomes (Adapted from Sung et al. 2003)

different strategies to prevent, diagnose, treat, and monitor health conditions in “real-world” settings. CER is a T2 research strategy that addresses practitioners’ need to know the relative merits of treatment options available to them. CER takes two main forms: (1) systematic evidence reviews that evaluate benefits and harms of treatment options for different groups of people on the basis of preexisting research and (2) new studies that generate evidence about the effectiveness of health-care practices in usual practice. The most common CER methodologies have been randomized controlled trials (RCTs) (60% of total CER), followed by systematic reviews (14%), and retrospective observational studies (6%). The most common CER interventions have been pharmacological (34% of total CER), delivery system (20%), and behavioral (16%) (Department of Health and Human Services [DHHS] and Federal Coordinating Council for Comparative Effectiveness Research 2009).

Implementation Research

The aim of T3 or implementation research (IR) is to learn how to overcome barriers that limit the uptake of evidence-based practices into usual care. A core insight is that “if we want more evidence-based practice, we need more practice-based evidence” (Green and Kreuter 2005). Few practitioners or health-care system administrators appreciate being admonished by academic researchers for not following scientific practices. Many respond that the research evidence they are being asked to follow is rarefied: derived from patients, clinicians, and settings different from those in the contexts where they work. They advocate making translational processes more bidirectional, so that an understanding of the practice context informs the genesis of relevant research.

Practice-Based Research

Because primary care is the gateway by which most of the population accesses health care, it offers a major channel to deliver evidence-based care to the public. In 1999, Congress enabled the Agency for Health Research and Quality (AHRQ) to establish practice-based research networks (PBRNs) that engage groups of experienced,

practicing clinicians in framing research questions whose answers could improve the practice of primary care (Green and Hickner 2006). By helping practices collaborate to address quality improvement questions with rigorous research methods, AHRQ hopes that PBRNs can produce research findings that are more immediately relevant to clinicians and therefore readily assimilated into everyday practice.

Patient-Centered Outcomes Research Institute (PCORI)

Despite a voluminous body of medical research, too often the evidence doesn’t answer questions that patients, clinicians, and insurers face routinely. To address this challenge, Congress authorized the Patient-Centered Outcomes Research Institute (PCORI) as part of the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act of 2010. PCORI is charged to identify critical unanswered questions about health care, fund comparative effective research (CER), and disseminate the results in ways that end users will find most valuable. This means engaging patients as partners in the research endeavor by learning which approaches to care are most responsive to patients’ concerns, circumstances, and preferences. The resultant patient-centered research reconfigures the direction of the translational pipeline that has historically flowed from researcher to practitioner to patient. By engaging patients, providers, insurers, and payers together as stakeholders in the research process, PCORI facilitates collective engagement in the process of expanding evidence-based practice and health-care quality (Selby et al. 2015).

Community-Based Participatory Research

Whereas both patient-centered research and community-based participatory research (CBPR) engage end users in the production of research, CBPR goes a step further by integrating social action into the research motivation. CBPR aims explicitly to reduce health disparities, overcome social injustice, and improve community well-being. In contrast, social action is not a required part of the research funded by PCORI. Guided by a core set of values, CBPR builds on community strengths and resources; facilitates collaboration,

co-learning, and capacity building; and balances investment in knowledge generation with a long-term commitment to action that supports equity and benefits the community (Israel et al. 2008). A guiding principle of community-based participatory research is that culture, religious values, and economic factors specific to a community are integral to any decision about best practices. Consequently, multiple community stakeholders, rather than just a core research team, need to participate in all aspects of the research enterprise so that the resulting findings are relevant, responsive to stakeholder concerns, and therefore implemented. An underlying premise of this approach is that an equitable standing and distribution of power between researchers and the community is most likely to empower the community to implement emergent evidence-based practices as part of a long-lasting community commitment to health-care improvement (Muhammad et al. 2015).

Educating Researchers and Practitioners About Translation

Research to practice translation is still an evolving field with the overarching goal of improving health-care practice. Several training resources are available about research to practice translation. First, the NIH Office of Behavioral and Social Science Research (OBSSR) offers a residential summer training institute on Dissemination and Implementation Research in Health (https://obssr-archive.od.nih.gov/scientific_areas/translation/dissemination_and_implementation/index.aspx). Another OBSSR-funded resource that can be accessed remotely and free of charge is the Evidence-Based Behavioral Practice (EBBP) site available at www.ebbp.org. Among the interactive online learning modules available at ebbp.org are several dedicated to (a) shared decision-making with individuals, (b) collaborative decision-making with communities, (b) stakeholder perspectives about research and evidence-based practice, and (c) implementation. Finally, a third set of resources involve several new scholarly journals: *The Journal of*

Translational Medicine (2003), *Science: Translational Medicine* (2009), and *Translational Behavioral Medicine* (2011).

Cross-References

- Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine (EBBM)
- Translational Behavioral Medicine

References and Further Reading

- Abrams, D. B., Orleans, C. T., Niaura, R., Goldstein, M. G., Prochaska, J. O., & Velicer, W. (1996). Integrating individual and public health perspectives for treatment of tobacco dependence under managed care: A combined stepped care and matching model. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 18, 290–304.
- Balas, E. A., & Boren, S. A. (2000). Managing clinical knowledge for health care improvement. In J. Bemmell & A. T. McCray (Eds.), *Yearbook of medical informatics* (pp. 65–70). Stuttgart: Schattauer Publishing Company.
- Bush, V. (1945). *Science, the endless frontier: A report to the president by Vannevar Bush, director of the office of scientific research and development*. Washington, DC: United States Government Printing Office.
- Department of Health and Human Services & Federal Coordinating Council for Comparative Effectiveness Research. (2009). *Report to the president and the congress* [Internet]. Washington, DC: HHS; [cited 2011 Jan 11]. Available from <http://www.hhs.gov/recovery/programs/ce/cerannualrpt.pdf>
- Glasgow, R. E., Klesges, L. M., Dziewaltowski, D. A., Estabrooks, P. A., & Vogt, T. M. (2006). Evaluating the impact of health promotion programs: Using the RE-AIM framework to form summary measures for decision making involving complex issues. *Health Education Research*, 21(3), 688–694.
- Green, L. A., & Hickner, J. (2006). A short history of primary care practice-based research networks: From concept to essential research laboratories. *The Journal of the American Board of Family Medicine*, 19(1), 1–10.
- Green, L. W., & Kreuter, M. W. (2005). *Health program planning: An educational and ecological approach* (4th ed.). Boston: McGraw Hill.
- Institute of Medicine Committee on the NIH Research Priority-Setting Process. (1998). *Scientific opportunities and public needs: Improving priority setting and public input at the national institutes of health*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press.

- Israel, B. A., Schulz, A. J., Parker, E. A., & Becker, A. B. (2008). Review of community-based research: Assessing partnership approaches to improve public health. *Annual Review of Public Health, 19*, 173–202.
- Muhammad, M., Wallerstein, N., Sussman, A. L., Avila, M., Belone, L., & Duran, B. (2015). Reflections on researcher identity and power: The impact of positionality on community based participatory research (CBPR) processes and outcomes. *Critical Sociology, 41*(7–8), 1045–1063.
- National Institutes of Health. (2016). *FY 2012 – FY 2017 distribution of budget authority percentage for basic and applied research*. [Internet] from: <https://officeofbudget.od.nih.gov/pdfs/FY16/Basic%20and%20Applied%20FY%202002%20-%20FY%202017%20R2%20-%20V.pdf>. Retrieved 7/2/2016.
- National Science Board. (2004). *Science and engineering indicators 2004 (NSB 04-01)*. Arlington: National Science Foundation, Division of Science Resources Statistics.
- Selby, J. V., Forsythe, L., & Sox, H. C. (2015). Stakeholder-driven comparative effectiveness research: An update from PCORI. *JAMA, 314*(21), 2235–2236.
- Stokes, D. (1997). *Pasteur's quadrant: Basic science and technological innovation*. Washington, DC: Brookings Institute.
- Sung, N. S., Crowley, W. F., Jr., Genel, M., Salber, P., Sandy, L., Sherwood, L. M., et al. (2003). Central challenges facing the national clinical research enterprise. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 289*, 1278–1287.
- Westfall, J. M., Mold, J., & Fagnan, L. (2007). Practice-based research—“blue highways” on the NIH roadmap. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 297*(4), 403–406.
- Woolf, S. H. (2008). The meaning of translational research and why it matters. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 299*(2), 211–213.

Residential Treatment

- [Substance Abuse: Treatment](#)

Resilience

- [Resilience: Measurement](#)
- [Salutogenesis](#)
- [Williams LifeSkills Program](#)

Resilience to Adversity

Melissa Julian¹, Chelsea Romney²,
Nicole E. Mahrer³ and Christine Dunkel Schetter⁴

¹George Washington University, Washington, DC, USA

²University of California, Los Angeles (UCLA), Los Angeles, CA, USA

³Department of Psychology, University of La Verne, La Verne, CA, USA

⁴Department of Psychology, University of California, Los Angeles (UCLA), Los Angeles, CA, USA

Definition

Resilience is the capacity of a system to adapt successfully to challenges that threaten system functioning, survival, or development.

Description

Resilience refers to the process of withstanding or overcoming stress with minimal disturbance to one's functioning, physical and mental health, and well-being (Rutter 1999) and is primarily studied within the context of trauma and severe stress. Early research focused on children who did remarkably well over time despite experiencing early adversity. More recent research has focused on recovery following traumatic events or disasters, such as the September 11th terrorist attack in New York City or Hurricane Katrina in New Orleans. With the growing focus on positive psychology in the past few decades, resilience in the context of stress and coping has become a burgeoning area of research across many types of stressors, contexts, and groups of people.

Resilience may be conceptualized in three ways – as responses to major stressors, as outcomes of the coping process, or as factors that facilitate adaptive responses. The last approach conceptualizes resilience as a set of protective

factors or resources, either socioenvironmental or innate, that enable an individual to adaptively respond to stressors (Dunkel Schetter and Dolbier 2011). All of these approaches fit under the umbrella of resilience as an overarching concept (Luthar et al. 2000; Zautra et al. 2010). Once thought to be an extraordinary phenomenon, we now know that resilience, even following major adversity, is fairly common (Masten 2014). Resilience can also be viewed from an evolutionary perspective. Humans innately have capacities to manage and overcome stress; some people may even grow or thrive in the aftermath of adversity (Bonanno 2004).

Current approaches define resilience within a systems framework as the capacity of a system to adapt successfully to challenges that threaten system function, survival, or development (Masten 2018). Resilience operates at multiple levels and is embedded in systems that span from the community level to the psychological and biological systems within a single individual. For example, a community can be resilient by having disaster preparedness plans in place, holding emergency drills, and generally preparing individuals to respond safely and calmly. Just as communities differ in their resilience capacity, so do individuals.

An individual's resilience capacity is not stable, but rather changes over time and differs across contexts (Rutter 2006). For example, a person may seem to be resilient in the context of chronic stressors such as neighborhood-related adversity or academic stress, but not in the context of relationship conflict. Resilience can also change across the lifespan, such that a person might become more or less resilient over certain developmental periods. Resilience has been studied in early childhood, adolescence, and through older adulthood, and there is evidence that all age ranges have the ability to enhance their resilience capacity. However, children tend to be particularly resilient and are especially skilled at building resilience if given the opportunity (Masten 2014).

Resilience is a multicomponent and dynamic phenomenon with many possible contributors. Given a systems perspective, a person can be resilient in certain areas more than others and across biological, social, or psychological levels.

The factors that contribute to a person's resilience capacity can be referred to as *resilience resources*. Dunkel Schetter and Dolbier (2011) developed a taxonomy of six categories of resilience resources.

Personality or dispositional resources include relatively stable traits such as being an optimistic person by nature (dispositional optimism) and personality factors from the Big Five personality cluster, such as conscientiousness and agreeableness. *Self and ego-related resources* include a person's self-efficacy, mastery, and self-esteem. Having a positive view of the self and of one's ability is important in being able to overcome adversities and the challenges they pose (Marmot 2003). Extensive research indicates that both *personality* and *self and ego-related resources* contribute to favorable outcomes following stress.

Interpersonal and social factors include perceived available support and having a strong social network. Perceiving that others are available as a source of support is a powerful resource that has been linked with several health benefits (Uchino 2004). However, in times of adversity, actual received emotional, tangible, or instrumental support from family and close friends is critical in increasing one's resilience capacity.

World views and culturally based beliefs and values include resources such as spirituality and religious beliefs or practices, which have a multitude of positive implications for dealing with hardships throughout life (Cheadle and Schetter 2017). Factors such as believing that there is a higher power and believing that the higher power has a beneficial role in one's life can be helpful in one's ability to cope in the face of difficulties. Cultural factors such as familism in Latinos, or collectivism in Asian cultures, can also be protective.

Behavioral and cognitive skills include resources such as emotion regulation skills and active coping which enable a person to manage stress. For example, mindfulness and relaxation techniques that promote calmness in the face of stress are adaptive ways to cope with many types of adversity (Brown et al. 2007).

The final category, *endowed or acquired resources*, includes resources such as high socioeconomic status, a genetic predisposition to good health, and strong cognitive abilities. For

example, research indicates that both education and income generally enhance health and well-being and are valuable resources in the context of stress as well.

While some resilience resources are fairly stable and inflexible, other resilience resources can be learned and practiced. For example, coping and emotion regulation skills or building a greater social support network are factors that can be fostered, but changing one's socioeconomic status is much more difficult. Counselors can help individuals process specific or ongoing events, learn how to reframe thoughts, and provide tools for emotional coping. Although personal growth in the face of adversity can often be difficult, a focus on fostering these more malleable resilience resources may enhance individuals' ability to adapt to stressors with minimal disturbance to functioning or well-being.

Currently, researchers use various measures to assess resilience. Two established measures are the Connor-Davidson Resilience Scale (CD-RISC; Connor and Davidson 2003) and the Brief Resilience Scale (BRS; Smith et al. 2008). Recently, our group has developed a brief resilience measure for young adults in higher education settings. The Resilience Resources Scale (RRS) is a 12-item instrument that assesses several of the specific personal and social factors that contribute to one's resilience capacity.

In conclusion, resilience refers to a system's capacity to adaptively respond to and withstand challenges, whether they are traumatic events or chronic stressors. Resilience research can help advance our understanding of the processes affecting at-risk individuals. An individual's capacity to be resilient will change throughout the lifespan and vary across situations. Resilience resources contribute to a person's resilience capacity, and further study of them may be particularly useful in the development of interventions to promote resilience for people of all ages.

References and Further Reading

Bonanno, G. A. (2004). Loss, trauma, and human resilience: Have we underestimated the human capacity to thrive after extremely aversive events? *American*

- Psychologist*, 59(1), 20–28. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0003-066X.59.1.20>.
- Brown, K. W., Ryan, R. M., & Creswell, J. D. (2007). Mindfulness: Theoretical foundations and evidence for its salutary effects. *Psychological Inquiry*, 18(4), 211–237. <https://doi.org/10.1080/10478400701598298>.
- Cheadle, A. C. D., & Schetter, C. D. (2017). Untangling the mechanisms underlying the links between religiousness, spirituality, and better health. *Social and Personality Psychology Compass*, 11(2), 1–10. <https://doi.org/10.1111/spc3.12299>.
- Connor, K. M., & Davidson, J. R. T. (2003). Development of a new resilience scale: The Connor-Davidson Resilience Scale (CD-RISC). *Depression and Anxiety*, 18(2), 76–82. <https://doi.org/10.1002/da.10113>.
- Dunkel Schetter, C., & Dolbier, C. (2011). Resilience in the context of chronic stress and health in adults. *Social and Personality Psychology Compass*, 5(9), 634–652. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1751-9004.2011.00379.x>.
- Luthar, S. S., Cicchetti, D., & Becker, B. (2000). The construct of resilience: A critical evaluation and guidelines for future work. *Child Development*, 71(3), 543–562. <https://doi.org/10.1111/1467-8624.00164>.
- Marmot, M. (2003). Self esteem and health. *British Medical Journal*, 327(7415), 574–575. <https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.327.7415.574>.
- Masten, A. S. (2014). *Ordinary magic: Resilience in development*. New York: The Guilford Press.
- Masten, A. S. (2018). Resilience theory and research on children and families: Past, present, and promise. *Journal of Family Theory and Review*, 10(1), 12–31. <https://doi.org/10.1111/jftr.12255>.
- Rutter, M. (1999). Resilience concepts and findings: Implications for family therapy. *Journal of Family Therapy*, 21, 119–144. <https://doi.org/10.1111/1467-6427.00108>.
- Rutter, M. (2006). Implications of resilience concepts for scientific understanding. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 1094(1), 1–12. <https://doi.org/10.1196/annals.1376.002>.
- Smith, B. W., Dalen, J., Wiggins, K., Tooley, E., Christopher, P., & Bernard, J. (2008). The brief resilience scale: Assessing the ability to bounce back. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 15(3), 194–200. <https://doi.org/10.1080/10705500802222972>.
- Uchino, B. N. (2004). *Social support and physical health: Understanding the health consequences of relationships*. New Haven/London: Yale University Press.
- Zautra, A. J., Hall, J. S., & Murray, K. E. (2010). Resilience: A new definition of health for people and communities. In J. R. Reich, A. J. Zautra, & J. S. Hall (Eds.), *Handbook of adult resilience* (pp. 3–30). New York: Guilford.

Resilience Training

- Williams LifeSkills Program

Resilience: Measurement

Hannah Süss and Susanne Fischer

Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy, Institute of Psychology, University of Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland

Synonyms

Hardiness; Resilience; Sense of coherence – measurement

Definition

Resilience is a relatively stable trajectory of healthy functioning after a potentially stressful event, which is characterized by transient symptoms and minimal impairment.

Description

The above definition of resilience implies the occurrence of a *potential stressor* as well as the presence of certain *resilience factors*, which contribute to a *beneficial* rather than a pathological *outcome* (Bonanno 2004; Bonanno and Diminich, 2013; Bonanno et al. 2011). Despite general consensus on the conceptualization of resilience, there are ambiguities in how its components are operationalized.

Regarding *potential stressors*, operationalization depends on the individual research question and on the population of interest. In studies on children and adolescents, the focus is usually on adverse early life events, such as childhood trauma, or on socioeconomic deprivation as a variant of chronic stress. In adults, trauma occurring during the adult life span, critical life events, and various forms of chronic stress have been the subject of most research. In terms of chronic stress, important topics have been resilience in the face of chronic diseases (e.g., Deshields et al. 2016; Goubert and Trompeter 2017; Tan-Kristanto and Kiriopoulos, 2015) and minority

stress (e.g., Babatunde-Sowole et al. 2016; Woodward et al. 2017). Most studies adopt self-reported measurement approaches, such as structured interviews or checklists and questionnaires to retrospectively assess potential stressors. Such measures are sometimes complemented by biological parameters, such as brain activity, autonomic, endocrine, or immune parameters, which may serve as indicators of long-lasting physiological changes in response to severe or long-lasting stress.

In order to measure *beneficial outcomes* after previous exposure to stressors, composite indices across multiple behavioral domains of functioning (e.g., school or recreational activities) are often created in children and adolescents. Also, achievement of developmental milestones can be used as an indicator of successful adaptation. Such measurements commonly rely on evaluations and ratings provided by parents or teachers. In contrast, studies investigating adults are mostly designed within clinical contexts. As a consequence, beneficial outcomes equal the absence of somatic symptoms, physical diseases, psychological distress, or mental disorders. The assessment of physical and mental well-being usually relies on self-reported measures, but again, structured interviews may be used to determine the absence or presence of particular illnesses.

There are two types of *resilience factors*: psychological and biological. In order to assess psychological resilience factors, several questionnaires have been developed over the past decades (Ahern et al. 2006; Pangallo et al. 2015; Windle et al. 2011). Some refer to global resilience constructs, such as sense of coherence (Antonovsky 1979), hardiness (Kobasa 1979), or ego-resiliency (Block and Block 1980). Further global resilience scales are the Resilience Scale (RS; Wagnild and Young 1993), the Connor-Davidson Resilience Scale (CD-RISC; Connor and Davidson 2003), and the Resilience Scale for Adults (RSA; Friborg et al. 2003). The RS was developed based on interviews with community-dwelling older women after experience of critical life events. Principal component analysis of the 25 items revealed two factors labeled “personal competence” and “acceptance of self and life.” The

scale has been employed in population based as well as clinical contexts. The CD-RISC, by contrast, predominantly consists of questions addressing coping behavior. A preliminary validation study conducted by the authors yielded a structure of five factors based on the 25 items of the test. Application of the instrument has so far mostly been limited to clinical trials. Finally, the RSA also incorporates items on external resilience factors, such as social support. Overall, five dimensions were empirically found to adequately describe the resilience concept as suggested by the authors, namely, personal competence, social competence, family coherence, social support, and personal structure. The scale has been used in studies in both healthy participants and patient samples. Moreover, a number of scales to measure resilience with regard to specific chronic diseases are now available. One example for this is the Resilience Scale Specific to Cancer (RS-SC; Ye et al. 2018). Finally, a number of more specific traits have commonly been associated with resilience, and for all of these, questionnaires are available. These include self-efficacy (Sherer et al. 1982), positive affectivity (Watson et al. 1988), optimism (Scheier et al. 1994), self-esteem (Rosenberg 1965), active coping (Folkman and Lazarus 1988), and social support (Sarason et al. 1983).

While resilience factors have traditionally been examined psychometrically, more recent research has sought to identify biological underpinnings of resilience (Charney, 2004; Feder et al. 2009; Russo et al. 2012). Studies in this area of research usually utilize experimental designs directed at exploring the biological processes involved in beneficial outcomes in the aftermath of a stressor. Concerning neuronal processes, researchers have demonstrated that various brain structures and pathways, such as the medial prefrontal cortex, the hippocampal pathway and the mesolimbic pathway are involved in resilience (Han and Nestler 2017; Liu et al. 2018). In addition, according to Walker et al. (2017), the following markers are particularly promising in serving as biological resilience factors: noradrenaline, corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), neuropeptide Y (NPY), the acoustic startle response,

cardiovascular stress reactivity (response amplitude), heart rate variability (HRV), cortisol, dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA), glucocorticoid sensitivity, and pro-inflammatory cytokines. The authors postulate that resilient individuals are characterized by lower concentrations of noradrenaline, CRH and pro-inflammatory cytokines, a decreased acoustic startle response, lower cardiovascular stress reactivity, higher concentrations of NPY and DHEA, and a higher HRV. Notably, with regard to cortisol and glucocorticoid sensitivity, depending on the outcome measure, (i.e., absence or presence of a particular illness), lower or higher concentrations may favor resilience. For instance, hyperactivity of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis has been found in melancholic depression, alcohol use disorder, and eating disorders (Chrousos 2009). In contrast, posttraumatic stress disorder or somatic symptom disorders seem to be associated with diminished HPA activity. Finally, research into genetic factors fostering resilient trajectories has recently gained momentum. Accumulating evidence shows that polymorphisms within various genes that code for components of the HPA axis, such as *NR3C1* and *FKBP5*, seem to play an important role in facilitating beneficial outcomes after the occurrence of a potential stressor (Zannas and West 2014).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Active Coping](#)
- ▶ [Chronic Disease or Illness](#)
- ▶ [Coping](#)
- ▶ [Hardiness](#)
- ▶ [Life Events](#)
- ▶ [Minority Subgroups](#)
- ▶ [Optimism and Pessimism: Measurement](#)
- ▶ [Positive Affectivity](#)
- ▶ [Resilience](#)
- ▶ [Self-Efficacy](#)
- ▶ [Self-Esteem](#)
- ▶ [Sense of Coherence](#)
- ▶ [Social Support](#)
- ▶ [Stress](#)
- ▶ [Stress, Early Life](#)
- ▶ [Stress, Posttraumatic](#)

References and Further Reading

- Ahern, N. R., Kiehl, E. M., Lou Sole, M., & Byers, J. (2006). A review of instruments measuring resilience. *Issues in Comprehensive Pediatric Nursing*, 29, 103–125.
- Antonovsky, A. (1979). *Health, stress, and coping: New perspectives on mental and physical well-being*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Babatunde-Sowole, O., Power, T., Jackson, D., Davidson, P. M., & DiGiacomo, M. (2016). Resilience of African migrants: An integrative review. *Health Care or Women International*, 37, 946–963.
- Block, J. H., & Block, J. (1980). The role of ego-control and ego-resiliency in the organization of behavior. In W. A. Collins (Ed.), *Development of cognition, affect, and social relations: The Minnesota Symposia on child psychology*. Hillsdale: Erlbaum.
- Bonanno, G. A. (2004). Loss, trauma, and human resilience: Have we underestimated the human capacity to thrive after extremely aversive events? *American Psychologist*, 59, 20–28.
- Bonanno, G. A., & Diminich, E. D. (2013). Annual research review: Positive adjustment to adversity—trajectories of minimal-impact resilience and emergent resilience. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, 54, 378–401.
- Bonanno, G. A., Westphal, M., & Mancini, A. D. (2011). Resilience to loss and potential trauma. *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology*, 7, 511–535.
- Charney, D. S. (2004). Psychobiological mechanisms of resilience and vulnerability: Implications for successful adaptation to extreme stress. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 161, 195–216.
- Chrousos, G. P. (2009). Stress and disorders of the stress system. *Nature Reviews Endocrinology*, 5, 374–381.
- Connor, K. M., & Davidson, J. R. (2003). Development of a new resilience scale: The Connor-Davidson resilience scale (CD-RISC). *Depression and Anxiety*, 18, 76–82.
- Deshields, T. L., Heiland, M. F., Kracen, A. C., & Dua, P. (2016). Resilience in adults with cancer: Development of a conceptual model. *Psycho-Oncology*, 25, 11–18.
- Feder, A., Nestler, E. J., & Charney, D. S. (2009). Psychobiology and molecular genetics of resilience. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 10, 446–457.
- Folkman, S., & Lazarus, R. S. (1988). *Manual for the ways of coping questionnaire*. Palo Alto: Consulting Psychological Press.
- Friborg, O., Hjemdal, O., Rosenvinge, J. H., & Martinussen, M. (2003). A new rating scale for adult resilience: What are the central protective resources behind healthy adjustment? *International Journal of Methods in Psychiatric Research*, 12, 65–76.
- Goubert, L., & Trompetter, H. (2017). Towards a science and practice of resilience in the face of pain. *European Journal of Pain*, 21, 1301–1315.
- Han, M. H., & Nestler, E. J. (2017). Neural substrates of depression and resilience. *Neurotherapeutics*, 14, 677–686.
- Kobasa, S. C. (1979). Stressful life events, personality, and health: An inquiry into hardiness. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 37, 1–11.
- Liu, H., Zhang, C., Ji, Y., & Yang, L. (2018). Biological and psychological perspectives of resilience: Is it possible to improve stress resistance? *Frontiers in Human Neuroscience*, 12, 1–12.
- Martin, M. M., & Rubin, R. B. (1995). A new measure of cognitive flexibility. *Psychological Reports*, 76, 623–626.
- Pangallo, A., Zibarras, L., Lewis, R., & Flaxman, P. (2015). Resilience through the lens of interactionism: A systematic review. *Psychological Assessment*, 27, 1–20.
- Rosenberg, M. (1965). *Society and the adolescent self-image*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.
- Russo, S. J., Murrough, J. W., Han, M. H., Charney, D. S., & Nestler, E. J. (2012). Neurobiology of resilience. *Nature Neuroscience*, 15, 1475–1484.
- Sarason, I. G., Levine, H. M., Basham, R. B., & Sarason, B. R. (1983). Assessing social support: The social support questionnaire. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 44, 127–139.
- Scheier, M. F., Carver, C. S., & Bridges, M. W. (1994). Distinguishing optimism from neuroticism (and trait anxiety, self-mastery, and self-esteem): A reevaluation of the life orientation test. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 67, 1063–1078.
- Sherer, M., Maddux, J. E., Mercandante, B., Prentice-Dunn, S., Jacobs, B., & Rogers, R. W. (1982). The self-efficacy scale: Construction and validation. *Psychological Reports*, 51, 663–671.
- Tan-Kristanto, S., & Kiropoulos, L. A. (2015). Resilience, self-efficacy, coping styles and depressive and anxiety symptoms in those newly diagnosed with multiple sclerosis. *Psychology, Health & Medicine*, 20, 635–645.
- Wagnild, G. M., & Young, H. M. (1993). Development and psychometric evaluation of the resilience scale. *Journal of Nursing Measurement*, 1, 165–178.
- Walker, F. R., Pfingst, K., Carnevali, L., Sgoifo, A., & Nalivaiko, E. (2017). In the search for integrative biomarker of resilience to psychological stress. *Neuroscience & Biobehavioral Reviews*, 74, 310–320.
- Watson, D., Clark, L. A., & Tellegen, A. (1988). Development and validation of brief measures of positive and negative affect: The PANAS scales. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 54, 1063–1070.
- Windle, G., Bennett, K. M., & Noyes, J. (2011). A methodological review of resilience measurement scales. *Health and Quality of Life Outcomes*, 9, 1–18.
- Woodward, E. N., Banks, R. J., Marks, A. K., & Pantalone, D. W. (2017). Identifying resilience resources for HIV prevention among sexual minority men: A systematic review. *AIDS and Behavior*, 21, 2860–2873.

- Ye, Z. J., Liang, M. Z., Li, P. F., Sun, Z., Chen, P., Hu, G. Y., Yu, Y. L., Wang, S. N., & Qiu, H. Z. (2018). New resilience instrument for patients with cancer. *Quality of Life Research*, 27, 355–365.
- Zannas, A. S., & West, A. E. (2014). Epigenetics and the regulation of stress vulnerability and resilience. *Neuroscience*, 264, 157–170.

Resilient Aging

► Positive Aging

Resistance Training

Roland Thomeé
Department of Rehabilitation Medicine,
Sahlgrenska University Hospital, Göteborg,
Sweden

Definition

Resistance training has an impact on many-body systems such as the muscular, respiratory, skeletal, and neural, but also the immune, endocrine, and metabolic (Deschenes and Kraemer 2002).

Description

Resistance training has been used for a very long time. There is documentation from 700 B.C. of the very strong Bybon in Greece lifting a 140 kg rock over his head with only one hand. The legendary Milon from Italy lifted a new born calf every day until the calf was a full-grown bull. This is the first documentation of progressive resistance training (Fry and Newton 2002). Among the pioneers in research on resistance training Thomas L. De Lorme needs to be mentioned. In 1946 he presented a method for resistance training using the one repetition maximum (1RM) (De Lorme 1946). This concept is still widely used today

describing the intensity used in resistance training programs.

In order to achieve the desired response on the body it is important to understand the basic principles of resistance training. Resistance training can, according to the American Sports Medicine Institute (<http://www.asmi.org/>), be defined as a gradual overload of the musculoskeletal system resulting in improved capacity. In general resistant training is often synonymous with strength training. Depending on the design the resistance training program can result in improved muscle strength, muscle volume, muscle power, or muscle endurance. Motor control can improve with better balance, coordination, and technique. Also tendons, ligaments, articular cartilage, and bones can improve their capacity as a result of resistance training (Deschenes and Kraemer 2002).

There are several methods available and various effects of the resistance training program are achieved depending on the frequency, intensity, and volume of the training (Wernbom et al. 2007). The program needs to specify the number of weeks of training, the number of training sessions performed per week, the number of exercises used for each muscle group, the number of sets and repetitions used for each exercise, and how long time of rest is given in between sets and exercises. For general strength training it can be recommended that the program consists of two session per week, two exercises per major muscle group, two to three sets of 8–12 repetitions per exercise with 30 s of rest in between sets and exercises (Haskell et al. 2007). In order to improve muscle power, i.e., the ability to produce a high force rapidly, a moderate load moved as fast as possible is recommended. For muscular endurance the number of repetitions should exceed 20 and the rest between sets and exercises decreased to a minimum (Wernbom et al. 2007).

One mode of strength training can be classified as dynamic external resistance, including free weights and weight machines, where the resistance is moved through the range of motion of the joint. Another mode can be classified as accommodating resistance, for example,

isokinetic (the speed of movement is constant and the resistance offered by the machine accommodates to the applied force through the whole range of motion). A third mode can be classified as isometric resistance where no movement occurs during muscle force development. For the first two modes one usually differs concentric from eccentric muscle action. In a concentric muscle action the muscle shortens while developing force and in the eccentric muscle action the muscle lengthens while developing force. There is no evidence as of now for the superiority of any mode and/or type of muscle action over other modes and types (Wernbom et al. 2007). Given sufficient frequency, intensity, and volume of work, all three types of muscle actions can induce significant increased muscle volume at an impressive rate.

Cross-References

► [Isometric/Isotonic Exercise](#)

References and Readings

- De Lorme, T. L. (1946). Heavy resistance exercises. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, 27, 607–630.
- Deschenes, M. R., & Kraemer, W. J. (2002). Performance and physiologic adaptations to resistance training. *American Journal of Physical Medicine & Rehabilitation*, 81(11 Suppl), S3–S16. <https://doi.org/10.1097/01.PHM.0000029722.06777.E9>.
- Fry, A. C., & Newton, R. U. (2002). A brief history of strength training and basic principles and concepts. In W. Kraemer & K. Häkkinen (Eds.), *Strength training for sport* (pp. 1–19). Oxford: Blackwell Scientific.
- Haskell, W. L., Lee, I. M., Pate, R. R., Powell, K. E., Blair, S. N., Franklin, B. A., & Bauman, A. (2007). Physical activity and public health: Updated recommendation for adults from the American College of Sports Medicine and the American Heart Association. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, 39(8), 1423–1434. <https://doi.org/10.1249/mss.0b013e3180616b27.00005768-200708000-00027> [pii].
- Wernbom, M., Augustsson, J., & Thomee, R. (2007). The influence of frequency, intensity, volume and mode of strength training on whole muscle cross-sectional area in humans. *Sports Medicine*, 37(3), 225–264. 3734 [pii].

Resource Management

► [Multiphase Optimization Strategy \(MOST\)](#)

Respect

Catharina Vogt¹ and Nadine Skoluda²

¹RespectResearchGroup, University of Hamburg, Hamburg, Germany

²Faculty of Psychology, University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria

Synonyms

[Appreciation](#); [Civility](#); [Recognition \(means of acknowledgment\)](#); [Responsiveness](#)

Antonyms

[Disrespect](#); [Rudeness](#)

Definition

Having its nomological roots in the Latin verb *respicere* meaning to “look around,” “show consideration,” and “pay attention to someone,” the term respect was coined by philosophers (e.g., Darwall 1977; Dillon 1992), with Immanuel Kant (1785) being the most prominent. With the aim of sharpening the concept of respect, researchers argued for a differentiation from connotatively related concepts such as acceptance, care, courtesy, status, tolerance, trust, dignity, affirmation, or even justice (e.g., Rogers and Ashforth 2017; van Quaquebeke et al. 2007) leading to the definition by Van Quaquebeke and Eckloff (2010, p. 344): “A person who respects another person acts in such a manner that it in return engenders a feeling in the other person of being appreciated in his/her importance and worth as a person.” Accordingly, the setting of respect requires a social interaction, with one person (sender) who is paying attention and is responsive to another person

(recipient) who is perceiving these actions as such, resulting in feelings of belongingness and/or being recognized and valued (De Cremer and Tyler 2005). Thus the concept of respect in an interaction is only justified if the intended recipient has also perceived the sent respect as such. However, the concept of respect is often used inconsistently; its meaning is shaped by the situational context; and so respect research is faced with the challenge of investigating the various meanings and integrating the results into an overall picture (Rogers and Ashforth 2017). Due to the criticism of semantically ambiguous definitions of respect (Frei and Shaver 2002; van Quaquebeke et al. 2007), and its ambiguous use in everyday language, researchers have proposed a division of the term into two parts: horizontal (general/recognition) respect and vertical (particular/appraisal) respect (Darwall 1977; Decker and Van Quaquebeke 2015; Grover 2014; Rogers and Ashforth 2017; van Quaquebeke et al. 2007). By means of both horizontal and vertical respect, those who show respect communicate how they relate to those to whom the respect was targeted at. Of note, horizontal respect and vertical respect are intertwined and can be simultaneously present in the same social situation.

The central component of horizontal respect is the recognition and unconditional consideration of a person as an equal counterpart, regardless of his/her qualities and achievements, on the basis of his/her human dignity (Lalljee et al. 2007; Renger and Simon 2011). Correspondingly, potentially every human being can be respected horizontally. At the core of horizontal respect is the equality of both, the sender and the recipient of respect. This facilitates the formation of a “We” unit between the sender and recipient (Rogers and Ashforth 2017). Horizontal respect is typically dichotomous, communicating respect or disrespect (van Quaquebeke et al. 2007).

Vertical respect refers to the recognition of a person’s expertise or abilities. This emphasizes the “Me” (Rogers and Ashforth 2017), as it focuses on the inequality between the sender and the recipient based on the evaluation of the recipient in terms of their achievements, qualities, and behaviors in comparison to the respect sending person.

By virtue of their characteristics, respect recipients stand out positively from those who show respect to them. Through vertical respect, senders signal that they are open to the influence of the respect recipient (van Quaquebeke et al. 2007). Vertical respect can be seen as a dimensional continuum.

Within the respect research, the construct of respect varies broadly: it is operationalized as an attitude (e.g., Lalljee et al. 2007), behavior (e.g., Voigt et al. 2017), expectation (e.g., Van Quaquebeke and Eckloff 2010), need (Tay and Diener 2011), perception (De Cremer and Tyler 2005; Greguras and Ford 2006; perception of received and sent respect, respectively), stressor (Semmer et al. 2007), and value (Ng and Diener 2014).

Description

Social Interaction/Context

Due to its interactional nature, respect plays a role in all domains of society. Within the occupational context, organizational respect (e.g., Grover 2014), respectful leadership (e.g., Van Quaquebeke and Eckloff 2010), respectful inquiry (Van Quaquebeke and Felps 2018), respect as a motivator (e.g., Renger and Simon 2011), and lack of respect as a job stressor (e.g., Semmer et al. 2007) have been investigated in various contexts of leader-follower teams in corporations, as well as in prisons (e.g., Rogers and Ashforth 2017), schools (Mertz et al. 2015), public service (e.g., police) (e.g., Warren 2011), politics (e.g., Molders and Van Quaquebeke 2017), professional sports (Prestwich and Lalljee 2009), and primary healthcare settings such as medical or therapeutic contexts (e.g., Koskeniemi et al. 2018; Murante et al. 2017) and nurse-physician collaborations (Wang et al. 2018). Within the private domain, respect is suggested to play an important role in close relationships between friends, family members, and intimate partners (e.g., Frei and Shaver 2002; Selcuk and Ong 2013).

Functions and Findings

Even though mutual respect is the basis for successful cooperation and is believed to be one of the

most important ethical values of our time (Ng and Diener 2014), the term and its practical implications have only been the focus of research since the 2000s. Regarding the function of respect, horizontal and vertical respect address the needs and values of social belongingness and social reputation/self-esteem (De Cremer and Mulder 2007). Further, respect is thought to act as a “social lubricant and glue” (p. 197; van Quaquebeke et al. 2007) and can thus contribute to how individuals evaluate the quality of social interactions or interpersonal relationships. For example, respect plays a pivotal role in conflict resolution (De Cremer 2003). Beyond its social functions, perceived respect is believed to contribute to individual’s well-being (e.g., Tay and Diener 2011). According to the effort-reward imbalance model (ERI; Siegrist et al. 2004), a model of occupational gratification crisis, respect can be understood as a form of (social) reward and can even act as a motivating factor for behavior.

Whereas disrespect has detrimental effects on perceived stress (e.g., see also “stress-as-offense-to-self,” Semmer et al. 2007), sleep quality (Pereira et al. 2014), performance capability, and functioning in interpersonal relationships (Lind et al. 1998; Miller 2001), a high degree of perceived respect is associated with individuals’ vitality (Selcuk and Ong 2013), self-esteem (De Cremer and Tyler 2005), general health (Vinberg 2008), relationship quality (Frei and Shaver 2002), job performance (Rogers et al. 2017), self-determination and job satisfaction (Decker and Van Quaquebeke 2015), commitment to ones’ in-group (Erez et al. 2009), organizational participation (Stürmer et al. 2008), creativity (Carmeli et al. 2015), autonomy (Renger and Simon 2011), pride (Boezeman and Ellemers 2008), and positive affect and mood (Strahler et al. 2019).

Cross-References

- [Interpersonal Relationships](#)
- [Job Performance](#)
- [Job Satisfaction/Dissatisfaction](#)

- [Self-esteem](#)
- [Sleep](#)
- [Stress](#)
- [Well-being](#)

References and Readings

- Boezeman, E. J., & Ellemers, N. (2008). Pride and respect in volunteers’ organizational commitment. *European Journal of Social Psychology*, 38, 159–172.
- Carmeli, A., Dutton, J. E., & Hardin, A. E. (2015). Respect as an engine for new ideas: Linking respectful engagement, relational information processing and creativity among employees and teams. *Human Relations*, 68(6), 1021–1047.
- Darwall, S. L. (1977). Two kinds of respect. *Ethics*, 88(1), 36–49.
- De Cremer, D. (2003). Noneconomic motives predicting cooperation in public good dilemmas: The effect of received respect on contributions. *Social Justice Research* 16(4), 367–377.
- De Cremer, D., & Mulder, L. B. (2007). A passion for respect: On understanding the role of human needs and morality. *Gruppendynamik und Organisationsberatung*, 38(4), 439–449.
- De Cremer, D., & Tyler, T. R. (2005). Am I respected or not? Inclusion and reputation as issues in group membership. *Social Justice Research*, 18, 121–153.
- Decker, C., & Van Quaquebeke, N. (2015). Getting respect from a boss you respect: How different types of respect interact to explain subordinates’ job satisfaction as mediated by self-determination. *Journal of Business Ethics*, 131(3), 543–556.
- Dillon, R. S. (1992). Respect and care – toward moral integration. *Canadian Journal of Philosophy*, 22(1), 105–131.
- Erez, A., Sleebos, E., Mikulincer, M., Van Ijzendoorn, M. H., Ellemers, N., & Kroonenberg, P. M. (2009). Attachment anxiety, intra-group (dis)respect, actual efforts, and group donation. *European Journal of Social Psychology*, 39(5), 734–746.
- Frei, J. R., & Shaver, P. R. (2002). Respect in close relationships: Prototype definition, self-report assessment, and initial correlates. *Personal Relationships*, 9(2), 121–139.
- Greguras, G. J., & Ford, J. M. (2006). An examination of the multidimensionality of supervisor and subordinate perceptions of leader-member exchange. *Journal of Occupational and Organizational Psychology*, 79, 433–465.
- Grover, S. L. (2014). Unraveling respect in organization studies. *Human Relations*, 67(1), 27–51.
- Kant, I. (1785). *Groundwork of the metaphysics of morals*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.

- Koskenniemi, J., Leino-Kilpi, H., Puukka, P., Stolt, M., & Suhonen, R. (2018). Being respected by nurses: Measuring older patients' perceptions. *International Journal of Older People Nursing*, 13(3), e12127.
- Lalljee, M., Laham, M., & Tam, T. (2007). Unconditional respect for persons: A social psychological analysis. *Gruppendynamik und Organisationsberatung*, 38, 451–464.
- Lind, E. A., Kray, L., & Thompson, L. (1998). The social construction of injustice: Fairness judgments in response to own and others unfair treatment by authorities. *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes*, 75(1), 1–22.
- Mertz, C., Eckloff, T., Johannsen, J., & Van Quaquebeke, N. (2015). Respected students equal better students: Investigating the links between respect and performance in schools. *Journal of Educational and Developmental Psychology*, 5, 74–86.
- Miller, D. T. (2001). Disrespect and the experience of injustice. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 52, 527–553.
- Molders, C., & Van Quaquebeke, N. (2017). When and how politicians' disrespect affects voters' trust in the political system: The roles of social judgments and category prototypicality. *Journal of Applied Social Psychology*, 47(9), 515–527.
- Murante, A. M., Seghieri, C., Vainieri, M., & Schafer, W. L. A. (2017). Patient-perceived responsiveness of primary care systems across Europe and the relationship with the health expenditure and remuneration systems of primary care doctors. *Social Science & Medicine*, 186, 139–147.
- Ng, W., & Diener, E. (2014). What matters to the rich and the poor? Subjective well-being, financial satisfaction, and postmaterialist needs across the world. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 107(2), 326–338.
- Pereira, D., Semmer, N. K., & Elfering, A. (2014). Illegitimate tasks and sleep quality: An ambulatory study. *Stress and Health*, 30(3), 209–221.
- Prestwich, A., & Lalljee, M. (2009). The determinants and consequences of intragroup respect: An examination within a sporting context. *Journal of Applied Social Psychology*, 39(5), 1229–1253.
- Renger, D., & Simon, B. (2011). Social recognition as an equal: The role of equality-based respect in group life. *European Journal of Social Psychology*, 41(4), 501–507.
- Rogers, K. M., & Ashforth, B. E. (2017). Respect in organizations: Feeling valued as “we” and “me”. *Journal of Management*, 43(5), 1578–1608.
- Rogers, K. M., Corley, K. G., & Ashforth, B. E. (2017). Seeing more than orange: Organizational respect and positive identity transformation in a prison context. *Administrative Science Quarterly*, 62(2), 219–269.
- Selcuk, E., & Ong, A. D. (2013). Perceived partner responsiveness moderates the association between received emotional support and all-cause mortality. *Health Psychology*, 32(2), 231–235.
- Semmer, N. K., Jacobshagen, N., Meier, L. L., & Elfering, A. (2007). Occupational stress research: The “stress-as-offense-to-self” perspective. In J. Houdmont & S. McIntyre (Eds.), *Occupational health psychology: European perspectives on research, education and practice* (Vol. 2, pp. 43–60). Castelo da Maia: ISMAI Publishers.
- Siegrist, J., Starke, S., Chandola, T., Godin, I., Marmot, M., Niedhammer, I., et al. (2004). The measurement of effort-reward imbalance at work: European comparisons. *Social Science & Medicine*, 58(8), 1483–1499.
- Strahler, J., Nater, U. M., & Skoluda, N. (2019). Associations between health behaviors and factors on markers of healthy psychological and physiological functioning: A daily diary study. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, kaz018. <https://academic.oup.com/abm/advance-article-abstract/doi/10.1093/abm/kaz018/5498794?redirectedFrom=fulltext>.
- Stürmer, S., Simon, B., & Loewy, M. I. (2008). Intraorganizational respect and organizational participation: The mediating role of collective identity. *Group Processes & Intergroup Relations*, 11(1), 5–20.
- Tay, L., & Diener, E. (2011). Needs and subjective well-being around the world. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 101(2), 354–365.
- Van Quaquebeke, N., & Eckloff, T. (2010). Defining respectful leadership: What it is, how it can be measured, and another glimpse at what it is related to. *Journal of Business Ethics*, 91, 343–358.
- Van Quaquebeke, N., & Felps, W. (2018). Respectful inquiry: A motivational account of leading through asking questions and listening. *Academy of Management Review*, 43(1), 5–27.
- van Quaquebeke, N., Henrich, D. C., & Eckloff, T. (2007). “It’s not tolerance I’m asking for, it’s respect!” A conceptual framework to differentiate between tolerance, acceptance and (two types of) respect. *Gruppendynamik und Organisationsberatung*, 38(2), 185–200.
- Vinberg, S. (2008). Workplace health interventions in small enterprises: A Swedish longitudinal study. *Work – A Journal of Prevention Assessment & Rehabilitation*, 30(4), 473–482.
- Voigt, R., Camp, N. P., Prabhakaran, V., Hamilton, W. L., Hetey, R. C., Griffiths, C. M., et al. (2017). Language from police body camera footage shows racial disparities in officer respect. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 114(25), 6521–6526.
- Wang, Y. Y., Wan, Q. Q., Guo, J., Jin, X. Y., Zhou, W. J., Feng, X. L., et al. (2018). The influence of effective communication, perceived respect and willingness to collaborate on nurses' perceptions of nurse-physician collaboration in China. *Applied Nursing Research*, 41, 73–79.
- Warren, P. Y. (2011). Perceptions of police disrespect during vehicle stops: A race-based analysis. *Crime & Delinquency*, 57(3), 356–376.

Respiratory Sinus Arrhythmia

Randall Steven Jorgensen

Department of Psychology, Syracuse University,
Syracuse, USA

Synonyms

Heart rate variability (HRV)

Definition

In mammals, heart rate (HR) ordinarily accelerates during inspiration and decelerates during expiration, and the tenth cranial nerve (i.e., vagus nerve) exerts a profound influence on this heart rate variability (HRV). This oscillation of R-wave (the sharp upward spike of the QRS complex associated with the contraction of the heart) to R-wave intervals (RRI) is a cardiorespiratory phenomenon called respiratory sinus arrhythmia (RSA); since RRI, which are inversely related to moment-to-moment HR, reflect vagal stimulation, noninvasive measures of RSA are commonly used to estimate autonomic cardiovascular control (Grossman and Taylor 2007). The “peak to valley” time-domain estimate, usually quantified in milliseconds (ms), corresponds to the inspiratory-expiratory difference in RRI. For estimates based on spectral analysis and other frequency-domain approaches, RRI variation is estimated within the respiratory frequency range (.15–.4 Hz); to reflect statistical units of variance, ms^2 is commonly used. For steady-state conditions (viz., respiratory parameters, momentary physical activity, metabolic activity, and autonomic tone remain nearly constant), these estimates are almost perfectly correlated (Grossman and Taylor). These noninvasive measures’ covariation with cardiac vagal tone, however, can be confounded by such factors as respiratory rate and volume, changes in physical and metabolic activity, body weight, age, and sympathetic nervous system tone; this confounding is more pronounced in between-group designs (e.g., high blood pressure vs. normal blood pressure groups) than within-

subject designs (e.g., examining within-person changes in RSA following atropine administration) (Grossman and Taylor 2007).

The vagus has been posited to be a key factor in emotional regulation and health (Thayer and Lane 2009). Researchers, therefore, have used noninvasive measures of HRV and RSA to predict health and psychological well-being. These ostensible markers of cardiac vagal tone are reported to covary with cardiovascular disease, anxiety, depression, and childhood behavior disorders (Berntson et al. 2007; Thayer and Lane 2007). Even when the predicted associations are revealed, the (a) correlational designs; (b) paucity of multivariate/multilevel studies cutting across anatomical, physiological, and behavioral domains; and (c) inadequate controls of confounds (e.g., bodily motion and respiration rate) make interpretation of underlying causal and multiply determined pathways ambiguous (Berntson et al. 2007). At minimum, it is important to take into account and address the confounding variables discussed earlier (for guidelines, see Grossman and Taylor 2007).

Cross-References

- Heart Rate Variability
- Parasympathetic

References and Readings

- Berntson, G. G., Cacioppo, J. T., & Grossman, P. (2007). Whither vagal tone. *Biological Psychology*, 74, 297–300. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopsycho.2006.08.006>.
- Grossman, P., & Taylor, E. W. (2007). Toward understanding respiratory arrhythmia: Relations to cardiac vagal tone, evolution, and biobehavioral functions. *Biological Psychology*, 74, 263–285. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopsycho.2005.11.014>.
- Thayer, J. F., & Lane, R. D. (2007). The role of vagal function in the risk for cardiovascular disease and mortality. *Biological Psychology*, 74, 224–242. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopsycho.2005.11.013>.
- Thayer, J. F., & Lane, R. D. (2009). Claude Bernard and the heart-brain connection: Further elaboration of a model of neurovisceral integration. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 33, 81–88. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neubiorev.2008.08.004>.

Response Inhibition

- [Behavioral Inhibition](#)

Response to Disability

- [Psychosocial Adjustment](#)

Responses to Stress

- [General Adaptation Syndrome](#)

Responsibility

- [Self-Blame](#)

Responsiveness

- [Respect](#)

Rest Pain

- [Peripheral Arterial Disease \(PAD\)/Vascular Disease](#)

Retrospective Study

Jane Monaco
Department of Biostatistics, The University of
North Carolina at Chapel Hill, Chapel Hill, NC,
USA

Definition

A study in which the outcome of interest has already occurred when the study initiated is commonly referred to as retrospective study.

Some investigators have used the terms retrospective and case-control interchangeably. This usage is misleading since study designs other than case-control studies can be retrospective. For example, in a retrospective cohort study (Okasha et al. 2002) examining the relationship between body mass index (BMI) during early adulthood and cancer death, both the exposure and the outcome had occurred at the initiation of the study. University students' weight and height information was obtained from annual physical records at the University of Glasgow health service from 1948 to 1968. Cancer mortality was determined based on a central registry in Scotland that identifies the cause of death (National Health Service Central Register). Subjects with BMI in the highest quartile were found to be at higher risk of cancer death than individuals in the lowest BMI quartile.

In a retrospective study, data may be collected based on clinical records, employment records, or memory. These retrospective data can be more prone to bias, such as recall bias, than prospective designs studying the same association.

Some investigators may also use the term "retrospective" in a different way, referring to the timing of the measurements of the exposure and outcome; studies in which the exposure is measured after the outcome is measured can be referred to as retrospective (Rothman and Greenland 1998, pp. 74–75).

Cross-References

- [Case-Control Studies](#)
- [Cohort Study](#)

References and Further Reading

- Kleinbaum, D. G., Sullivan, K. M., & Barker, N. D. (2007). *A pocket guide to epidemiology*. New York: Springer.
- Okasha, M., McCarron, P., McEwen, J., & Davey Smith, G. (2002). Body mass index in young adulthood and cancer mortality: A retrospective cohort study. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 56, 780–784.
- Rothman, K. J., & Greenland, S. (1998). *Modern epidemiology*. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven.

Return to Baseline

► Psychophysiology Recovery

Return to Work

Beth Grunfeld

Department of Psychological Sciences, Birkbeck College, University of London, London, UK

Synonyms

Occupational rehabilitation; Sickness absence; Vocational rehabilitation

Definition

Return-to-work (RTW) status is regarded as a return to normal work-related activity following illness or return to suitable employment that takes account of post-illness ability and priorities.

Description

Scope

Mental illness and musculoskeletal diseases are the most common causes of long-term sickness, although other chronic conditions such as heart disease and cancer make a significant contribution to recorded sickness absence. It is estimated that each UK employee loses an estimated 30.4 days of productivity annually as a consequence of sick days or underperformance resulting from ill-health. This is estimated to cost employers between 2 and 16% of annual salary costs due to lost productivity and as a consequence of implementing sickness management systems. In Australia, lost productivity through absenteeism is estimated to cost \$33 billion, with a total of 92 million working days being lost each year.

While in the USA, illness-related lost productivity costs an estimated \$530 billion per year with around 893 million days lost due to illness. These figures include all cause illnesses and any duration of illness. Return to work is specifically concerned with returning to the work place following longer periods of absence, which is important as it is known that the longer a person is absent from the workplace, the greater the risk of non-return.

Costs of Being Out of Work

Employment is important not only for individual financial reasons but also because being out of work is thought to contribute to, and aggravate, adverse health outcomes. A 10% reduction in health-related quality of life (in absolute terms) has been observed as a consequence of unemployment, and the largest impact is observed in the domains of anxiety and depression (Norström et al. 2019), a finding that has endured over the past two decades. Not working is associated with reduced self-esteem, lowered self-efficacy, and decreased belief in one's ability to return to the workplace (Creed et al. 2001). The relationship between unemployment and negative health outcomes is thought to be mediated by factors such as lower socioeconomic status, financial anxiety, and a chronic stress pathway involving temporary lowered immunity whereby lower natural killer cell cytotoxicity (NKCC) associated with unemployment reflects differences in the cytotoxic capacity of the cell.

Factors Influencing Return to Work

Many patients do well following treatment; however, some experience ongoing negative outcomes from the disease or treatment (including pain, fatigue, and low mood) that may impact everyday functioning, including work. For example, over a quarter of cancer survivors report high symptom burden 1-year post-diagnosis, even after treatment termination (Shi et al. 2011). Furthermore, return-to-work rates have been shown to vary across cancer types (Cooper et al. 2013), and longer return-to-work times have been

reported among patients undergoing certain treatments (surgery/chemotherapy) or experiencing fatigue.

In addition to disease- and treatment-related factors, non-modifiable demographic factors, such as higher education and socioeconomic status, are associated with successful return to work. More recently, psychological factors have been shown to impact on effective return to work including self-efficacy, lower levels of fear avoidance, positive expectations of recovery, and illness cognitions (Cooper et al. 2013). Such psychological factors may be modifiable through psychoeducational strategies presenting the opportunity for intervention to improve return to work.

Conversely, poorer return-to-work outcomes are associated with older age, being female, greater reported pain and depression, work requiring high physical demands, and greater disability or work limitations. In addition, among employees with mental health conditions, multiple short sickness absences, or a period of 8 days or more of sickness absence per year are associated with high risk for subsequent long-term sickness absence (Sumanen et al. 2017). Furthermore, although some illnesses (including specific cancer types) have a high return-to-work rate, we know that a significant proportion of patients return to work too early, or in an inappropriate manner, which results in them taking additional sick leave or leaving the workplace.

Interventions to Support Return to Work

Several interventions to support working have been developed across illness groups, including musculoskeletal disorders, back pain, cancer, heart disease, and multiple sclerosis. These interventions have tended to focus on ergonomic adaptation within the workplace with the aim of minimizing the risk of physical injuries, likely to be experienced by these patient groups. Interventions targeted at patients with cancer include a 12-week occupational physician-led intervention focused on increasing physical activity to support return to work (Groeneveld et al. 2012), a case

management approach involving signposting/referring patients to services (e.g., physiotherapy, occupational, or psychological therapy) to support return to work (Hubbard et al. 2013), and a tool that cancer survivors use to guide discussions about working (Munir et al. 2013). However, this tool focused on interactions with employers and health-care professionals and not on patients' beliefs and barriers that impact workability (one's perception of one's ability to work) and influence work behavior. Furthermore, a Cochrane review reported low-quality evidence for return-to-work rates for psychoeducational interventions (interventions that encompass a broad range of activities that combine educational and other activities such as counseling and supportive care); however, this was based on only two studies: one that focused on teaching self-care behaviors to manage fatigue and one comprising lectures focused on side effects, stress, and coping. The review concluded that there was a need for more high-quality randomized controlled trials (de Boer et al. 2015). Furthermore, a meta-synthesis of qualitative research studies highlighted the need for vocational interventions with patients to be person centered and for such interventions to acknowledge the role of social, clinical, and work-related factors (Wells et al. 2013).

Methodological Considerations

Studies of the incidence of sickness absence often utilize employer or national data registries. These provide reliable and comprehensive data about absence but lack wider data about participants and their health-related background, including important diagnostic information. Furthermore, studies have tended to examine return to work within discrete groups, for example, a particular illness, but few have examined factors influencing return to work across illnesses or among participants with comorbidities. Such an approach could help identify modifiable factors that could inform more generic, cost-effective intervention packages to support return to work following illness.

Cross-References

- [Cancer Survivorship](#)
- [Health-Related Quality of Life](#)
- [Vocational Rehabilitation](#)
- [Work](#)

References and Further Reading

- Cooper, A. F., Hankins, M., Rixon, L., Eaton, E., & Grunfeld, E. A. (2013). Distinct work-related, clinical and psychological factors predict return to work following treatment in four different cancer types. *Psychooncology*, 22(3), 659–667.
- Creed, P. A., Bloxsome, T. D., & Johnston, K. (2001). Self-esteem and self-efficacy outcomes for unemployed individuals attending occupational skills training programs. *Community, Work & Family*, 4, 285–303.
- de Boer, A. G., Taskila, T. K., Tamminga, S. J., et al. (2015). Interventions to enhance return-to-work for cancer patients. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858>. CD007569.
- Groeneveld, I. F., de Boer, A. G., & Frings-Dresen, M. H. (2012). A multidisciplinary intervention to facilitate return to work in cancer patients: Intervention protocol and design of a feasibility study. *BMJ Open*, 2, e001321.
- Hubbard, G., Gray, N. M., Ayansina, D., et al. (2013). Case management vocational rehabilitation for women with breast cancer after surgery: A feasibility study incorporating a pilot randomised controlled trial. *Trials*, 14, 175.
- Munir, F., Kalawsky, K., Wallis, D. J., et al. (2013). Using intervention mapping to develop a work-related guidance tool for those affected by cancer. *BMC Public Health*, 13, 6.
- Norström, F., Waenerlund, A. K., Lindholm, L., Nygren, R., Sahlén, K. G., & Brydsten, A. (2019). Does unemployment contribute to poorer health-related quality of life among Swedish adults? *BMC Public Health*, 19(1), 457.
- Shi, Q., Smith, T. G., Michonski, J. D., Stein, K. D., Kaw, C., & Cleeland, C. S. (2011). Symptom burden in cancer survivors 1 year after diagnosis: A report from the American Cancer Society's studies of cancer survivors. *Cancer*, 117(12), 2779–2790.
- Sumanen, H., Pietiläinen, O., Lahelma, E., & Rahkonen, O. (2017). Short sickness absence and subsequent sickness absence due to mental disorders – A follow-up study among municipal employees. *BMC Public Health*, 17, 15.
- Wells, M., Williams, B., Firnigl, D., et al. (2013). Supporting 'work-related goals' rather than 'return to work' after cancer? A systematic review and meta-synthesis of 25 qualitative studies. *Psychooncology*, 22, 1208–1219.

Revised Life Orientation Test (LOT-R)

- [Optimism and Pessimism: Measurement](#)

Rheumatoid Arthritis: Psychosocial Aspects

Toshihide Hashimoto

Division of Rehabilitation, Joumou Hospital,
Maebashi, Japan

Synonyms

[RA](#)

Definition

Rheumatoid arthritis is a chronic, systemic, and progressive inflammatory disease that is characterized by swelling, pain, and deformity of the joints. It affects not only synovial joints but also many tissues and organs of the body.

Description

Rheumatoid Arthritis (RA)

RA affects about 0.5–1.0% of the general population worldwide. Women are afflicted two to three times more often than men. Individuals between 40 and 60 years of age are more prone to RA, but people can be affected at any age. Although the cause of RA has not been fully elucidated, genetics, infection, hormones, and the environment play a major role in the onset and progression of RA.

The initial symptoms of RA generally occur in the smaller joints (e.g., finger or wrist joints) and gradually spread symmetrically to the larger joints (e.g., elbow or knee joints). In affected joints, inflammation first occurs in the synovial membrane. Abnormal synovium, called “pannus,” multiplies gradually and results in cartilage damage

and bone erosion and ultimately leading to destruction of the joints. Consequently, RA patients suffer from joint symptoms, such as pain, swelling, stiffness, deformity, and restriction of motion.

In addition, inflammation involved in RA may affect various organs, including the lung, heart and blood vessels, kidneys, bone, and skin. RA patients also experience some general symptoms due to chronic inflammation, such as anemia, fatigue, low-grade fever, sleep disorder, and lack of appetite.

These symptoms can cause physical disability and various psychosocial problems in RA patients. Consequently, many RA patients experience loss of income, reduction/loss of recreational and social activities, and disability in doing housework and taking care of children. These physical and social disabilities are likely to disturb their interpersonal relationships and lead to psychological disorders. Depression and anxiety have also been known to cause increased pain and other RA-related symptoms (Erickson et al. 2016; Firestein 2016; McInnes and Schett 2011).

Psychological Distress of RA Patients

Depression is significantly more common among RA patients than healthy individuals. Recent meta-analyses have revealed the prevalence of major depressive disorder to be 16.8% based upon standard clinical interviews and depressive symptoms to be between 14.8% and 38.8% based upon screening tools. These figures are presumed to be higher than that of the general population and similar to or higher than those of other chronic conditions.

Many factors have been associated with depression of RA patients. In terms of RA-related symptoms, increases in self-reported pain, fatigue, and physical disability are likely to lead to a more depressive state. The causal relationship between pain, fatigue, disability, and depression is complex and is considered multidirectional. On the other hand, the association between depression and indices of inflammation (i.e., C-reactive protein (CRP), erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), swollen joint count, grip strength, and radiological status) remains contradictory.

Recently, psychosocial factors have been emphasized as important variables that are associated with depression. In general, increased

depression among RA patients is related to being female, of a younger age, with a lower income, less employment, greater work disability, more social stress, less social support, dysfunctional familial background, maladaptive coping strategy, and distorted cognition.

In clinical practice, objective clinical variables (CRP, ESR, or joint count) and subjective patient-reported physical symptoms are considered as important indices of treatment effectiveness. However, clinicians do not tend to pay close attention to the mood state of RA patients. Depressed RA patients may not verbally express their emotions, because they judge that their emotional and physical conditions are a part of their RA symptoms, and often hesitate to admit their mental distress. Accordingly, depression in RA patients is most likely underestimated by clinicians. Thus, all health-care professionals should attempt to observe whether RA patients exhibit latent depression (Bruce 2008; Matcham et al. 2013; Sheehy et al. 2006).

Relationship Between RA-Related Symptoms and Psychosocial Factors

Pain, fatigue, and physical disability are RA-related symptoms that need to be addressed by all health-care professionals. Pain is the most common and basic symptom among RA patients. Fatigue is also common and the most burdensome symptom. The prevalence of fatigue ranges greatly, from 40% to 80%, most likely because the definitions and methods of measurement are not uniform. Fatigue is perceived as a frustrating or exhausting state, which impacts every situation of life, and persists for a long time. Pain, fatigue, and physical disability influence the psychological well-being and social participation among RA patients. Moreover, psychosocial factors, i.e., perception of symptoms, self-efficacy, coping strategy, social stress, and social support, play important roles in modifying the process and outcome of RA-related symptoms and psychological distress.

The perception of symptoms remains an individual belief, in how RA will influence oneself, how long RA will last, whether RA can be controlled, and what the outcomes of RA are. RA patients with negative beliefs, such as “catastrophizing” (the tendency to focus on symptoms and predict extremely

negative outcomes) or “helplessness” (the belief that nothing can be done by oneself to deal with symptoms), may manifest increased symptoms and poor psychological well-being. On the other hand, self-efficacy (the confidence in one’s ability to accomplish sufficiently a desired outcome) and an adaptive coping strategy (the suitable and effective process to deal with stresses and difficulties of life) are considered to improve symptoms and psychological distress.

All health-care professionals should make efforts to inform RA patients of the cause, treatment, clinical course, and result of RA at the early stage of their disease, before they have poor perception of symptoms and acquire maladaptive coping strategies. There are indications that cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) and mindfulness are effective for the treatment of pain and depression in RA patients, particularly when administered at the early stage of the disease. These interventions would help patients to manage RA-related symptoms and comorbidities, by learning coping strategies to manage pain, other physical symptoms, and emotional consequences, that would prevent the development of psychological difficulties associated with RA (Backman 2006; Bruce 2008; Repping-Wuts et al. 2009; Sharpe 2016; Sheehy et al. 2006).

Relevance to Clinical Practice

During the past second decade, drug treatment for RA has improved significantly. Conventional synthetic disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs (csDMARDs) and biological DMARDs (drugs that block or modify the effect of factors of the immune system, such as cytokines and cells) have been introduced to RA patients in the early stage. These new medications effectively reduce the inflammation of RA and prevent the advancement of joint erosion and deformities. These drug therapies have the potential to reduce not only RA-related symptoms but also comorbidities. Consequently, the clinical course of RA could change significantly, leading to a decrease in the number of patients who suffer from pain, fatigue, disability, and psychosocial distress.

However, such medications have several problems, including potential side effects (e.g., lung or

liver dysfunction, infection, or malignancy), ineffectiveness for some patients, and the high cost of treatment. While many, but not all, patients are expected to benefit from these medical advancements in RA, they will likely experience new psychosocial problems. Therefore, health-care professionals must further examine psychosocial factors that accompany new therapies to evaluate both the positive and negative influences on patients (Humphreys et al. 2016; O’Dell 2016; Singh et al. 2016).

Cross-References

- [Psychosocial Characteristics](#)
- [Psychosocial Factors](#)

References and Further Reading

- American College of Rheumatology (ACR). Retrieved from <http://www.rheumatology.org>
- Backman, C. L. (2006). Arthritis and pain. Psychosocial aspects in the management of arthritis pain. *Arthritis Research & Therapy*, 8, 221–227.
- Bruce, T. O. (2008). Comorbid depression in rheumatoid arthritis: Pathophysiology and clinical implications. *Current Psychiatry Reports*, 10, 258–264.
- Erickson, A. R., et al. (2016). Chapter 70: Clinical features of rheumatoid arthritis. In G. S. Firestein, R. C. Budd, S. E. Gabriel, I. B. McInnes, & J. R. O’Dell (Eds.), *Kelley & Firestein’s textbook of rheumatology* (10th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Firestein, G. S. (2016). Chapter 69: Etiology and pathogenesis of rheumatoid arthritis. In G. S. Firestein, R. C. Budd, S. E. Gabriel, I. B. McInnes, & J. R. O’Dell (Eds.), *Kelley & Firestein’s textbook of rheumatology* (10th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.
- Humphreys, J., Hyrich, K., & Symmons, D. (2016). What is the impact of biologic therapies on common co-morbidity in patients with rheumatoid arthritis? *Arthritis Research & Therapy*, 18, 282.
- Matcham, F., Rayner, L., Steer, S., & Hotopf, M. (2013). The prevalence of depression in rheumatoid arthritis: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Rheumatology*, 52, 2136–2148.
- McInnes, I. B., & Schett, G. (2011). The pathogenesis of rheumatoid arthritis. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 365, 2205–2219.
- O’Dell, J. R. (2016). Chapter 71: Treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. In G. S. Firestein, R. C. Budd, S. E. Gabriel, I. B. McInnes, & J. R. O’Dell (Eds.), *Kelley & Firestein’s textbook of rheumatology* (10th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

- Repping-Wuts, H., van Riel, P., & van Achterberg, T. (2009). Fatigue in patients with rheumatoid arthritis: What is known and what is needed. *Rheumatology*, 48, 207–209.
- Sharpe, L. (2016). Psychosocial management of chronic pain in patient with rheumatoid arthritis: Challenge and solutions. *Journal of Pain Research*, 9, 137–146.
- Sheehy, C., Murphy, E., & Barry, M. (2006). Depression in rheumatoid arthritis – Underscoring the problem. *Rheumatology*, 45, 1325–1327.
- Singh, J. A., Saag, K. G., Bridges, S. L., Jr., Akl, E. A., Bannuru, R. R., Sullivan, M. C., et al. (2016). 2015 American College of Rheumatology Guideline for the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. *Arthritis and Rheumatism*, 68, 1–26.
- The European League Against Rheumatism (EULAR). Retrieved from <http://www.eular.org>

Ribosomal RNA

► RNA

Rief, Winfried

Alexandra Martin
Friedrich-Alexander University Erlangen-Nürnberg, University Hospital, Erlangen, Erlangen, Germany

Biographical Information



Winfried Rief was born in Ellwangen, Germany, on May 12, 1959. He is married to Sabine and has

a son. Rief studied physics at the University of Karlsruhe, Germany (1978–1979), and psychology at the University of Trier, Germany (1979–1984), receiving a Diploma in psychology in 1984. His doctoral thesis presented EEG-based research about “Visual Information Processing in Chronic Schizophrenics” and led to the awarding of the Ph.D. degree at the University of Konstanz in 1987.

Rief completed postgraduate training in cognitive-behavioral therapy (1988) and is a licensed Psychological Psychotherapist. He gained excellent clinical experiences and was Head of the psychology department at the Roseneck Hospital in Prien (1989–2000), a behavioral medicine center specialized in the inpatient treatment of eating disorders, anxiety, somatoform disorders, and other conditions, which is affiliated with the Medical Faculty of the University of Munich. He accomplished the “Habilitation” – the regular German academic qualification for professorship – at the University of Salzburg, Austria in 1994.

Rief was appointed as Professor of Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy at the University of Marburg, Germany, in 2001 and since then has chaired the division for clinical psychology. He is also Head of the Outpatient Clinic for Psychological Interventions and Head of the postgraduate training program in cognitive-behavior therapy. He has been an invited guest professor for research visits at the University of Auckland Medical School, New Zealand (2002), Harvard Medical School Institute of Psychiatry (2004), and at the University of California, San Diego, Department of Psychiatry (2009).

Rief is an active participant in many professional organizations. He was President of the German Society of Behavioral Medicine and Behavior Modification (DGVM; 2001–2005). He served as Member and as Chair of the speaker group of the section for “Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy” in the German Psychological Society (Fachgruppe Klinische Psychologie und Psychotherapie in der Deutschen Gesellschaft für Psychologie DGPs; 1996–1998; 2005–2008). He was one of the founding members of the German Society of Biofeedback, and later served as

President in this organization (DGBFB 2000–2004). He organized many national and international scientific meetings, for example, the “International Symposium on Somatoform Disorders” (co-sponsored by the Division of Mental Health of the World Health Organization; Prien, 1997), the Congress of the German Society of Behavioral Medicine (Prien, 1999, co-organized with Prof. Dr. Manfred Fichter), the International Congress “Somatoform Disorders” (Marburg 2002), the International Congress of Behavioral Medicine (Mainz 2004, co-organized with Prof. Dr. Wolfgang Hiller), and the Annual Meetings of the German Society of Biofeedback (2001, 2007). Rief is recipient of the Biofeedback Foundation of Europe Award for Excellent Scientific Contribution (2004).

Rief has been appointed as reviewer for several research funding organizations, including the Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft (DFG) (German Research Foundation), Swiss National Fonds (SNF), NIHR Biomedical Research Center for Mental Health, and the Institute of Psychiatry/King’s College London. In 2011, he was elected as coordinator for DFG grants in the field of clinical and health psychology in Germany. He currently serves or has served as an editorial board member in several scientific journals (*Behavioural and Cognitive Psychotherapy*; *British Journal of Health Psychology*; *Cognitive Behaviour Therapy*; *Current Opinion in Psychiatry*; *Psychology and Health*; *Psychotherapie in Psychiatrie, Psychosomatik und Klinischer Psychologie*; *Verhaltenstherapie*; *Zeitschrift für Psychiatrie, Psychologie und Psychotherapie ZPPP*).

Major Accomplishments

Rief is a world-leading scientist in the field of *somatoform disorders*. For more than 20 years, his research has considerably advanced the knowledge about epidemiology, etiology, and effective treatments of somatoform disorders. He has shown that medically unexplained symptoms

are not only prevalent in medical settings, but also common in the general population. With the Screening for Somatoform Symptoms (SOMS) he and Professor Wolfgang Hiller provided a reliable and valid instrument to assess somatoform syndromes that are associated with considerable distress, disability, and health care utilization. One of his most recent research projects (funded by a DFG grant) aimed to investigate course and classification of medically unexplained physical complaints in the general population. Against the background of current proposals to improve the classification of somatoform disorders and related syndromes in the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders DSM-5 and the International Classification of Diseases ICD-11, Rief and colleagues were the first who tested the most prominent classification proposals (such as the Complex Somatic Symptom Disorder). Their results showed that classification criteria that include positive psychological features (such as somatic illness attribution and illness behavior) are advantageous in identifying people with health care needs and disability as compared to approaches that focus simply on symptom count and the absence of sufficient medical explicability (Rief et al. 2011c). Based on his expertise in the classification of somatoform disorders Rief was appointed as an ICD-11 representative of the International Association for the Study of Pain IASP to coordinate revision proposals for pain diagnoses, and he was Member of the Expert Conference on Somatic Presentations of Mental Disorders (Task: Preparation of classification criteria for ICD-11 and DSM-V) under the auspices of the American Psychiatric Association (APA), the National Institute of Health (NIH), and the World Health Organization (WHO) (2006).

Rief has always been interested in processes that contribute to etiology and maintenance of somatoform disorders. He demonstrated the roles of cognitive processes such as symptom interpretation and memory biases (Rief et al. 2006b), of illness behaviors, and especially of neurobiological and psychoneuroimmunological processes in

somatoform disorders (Rief and Barsky 2005; Rief and Broadbent 2007).

Rief and his colleagues conducted a number of randomized clinical trials to evaluate the effects of different intervention strategies in somatoform syndromes (all funded by research grants from the DFG, the Federal Ministry of Education, Research BMBF Germany, and others). These studies demonstrated, for example, that a cognitive-behavior group-based inpatient treatment is effective in somatoform disorders, and that even a minimal intervention program designed for subjects in primary care results in symptom improvement. The evaluation of a special training program for general practitioners to improve management of patients with unexplained physical symptoms showed a reduction in health care utilization, but appeared not to be sufficient to improve disability in patients. Rief will continue to develop psychological treatments further to enhance their clinical effects in somatoform disorders.

Placebo effects and placebo and nocebo mechanisms are one of Rief's most recent research fields (Rief et al. 2006a). He has published meta-analytical results showing that close to 70% of positive effects of antidepressants are already reported for the placebo group. In line with his interest in the development of somatic symptoms, he was able to show that expectation of side effects results in higher side effect rates in clinical trials. Consequently, many subjects discontinuing drug intake because of side effects were shown to be in the placebo group. He is the spokesperson of a German Research Unit "Expectation and conditioning as basic mechanisms of placebo and nocebo effects," which covers eight subprojects on placebo and nocebo mechanisms (total budget about 2.7 Mio. EUR; local budget for Rief's work is 640,000,- EUR). Together with colleagues of this research unit, he has published new proposals for study design in clinical trials (Rief et al. 2011b).

Rief's breadth of research interests in the field of behavioral medicine is demonstrated by additional studies he has conducted in obesity (e.g.,

BMBF grants' "Counseling of obese patients including genetic findings" and "Psychosocial, legal, and ethical aspects of genetic and molecular obesity research"), cancer (Rief et al. 2011a), tinnitus (e.g., DFG grant "Psychophysiological aspects and treatment of chronic tinnitus" (Weise et al. 2008), chronic pain, CBT in schizophrenia, side effect assessment in clinical trials, and public health issues. In international projects, he has collaborated with distinguished members of Harvard Medical School (A. Barsky), UCSD (J. Dimsdale), Auckland Medical School (K. Petrie), and many others. His current publication record includes more than 300 publications in peer-reviewed journals, 15 books and co-edited books, and numerous book sections.

Cross-References

- Biofeedback
- International Society of Behavioral Medicine
- Nocebo and Nocebo Effect
- Placebo and Placebo Effect
- Psychophysiology: Theory and Methods
- Somatoform Disorders

References and Readings

- Rief, W., & Barsky, A. J. (2005). A psychobiological perspective on somatoform disorders. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 30, 996–1002.
- Rief, W., & Broadbent, E. (2007). Explaining medically unexplained symptoms-models and mechanisms. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 27, 821–841.
- Rief, W., Avorn, J., & Barsky, A. J. (2006a). Medication-attributed adverse effects in placebo groups. Implications for assessment of adverse effects. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 166(2), 155–160.
- Rief, W., Heitmüller, A. M., Reisberg, K., & Rüddel, H. (2006b). Why reassurance fails in patients with unexplained symptoms-an experimental investigation of remembered probabilities. *PLoS Medicine*, 3(8), e269. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pmed.0030269>.
- Rief, W., Bardwell, W. A., Dimsdale, J. E., Natarajan, L., Flatt, S. W., Pierce, J. P. for the Women's Healthy Eating and Living (WHEL) Study Group. (2011a). Long-term course of pain in breast cancer survivors:

- A four year longitudinal study. *Breast Cancer Research and Treatment*, 130, 579–586.
- Rief, W., Bingel, U., Schedlowski, M., & Enck, P. (2011b). Mechanisms involved in placebo and nocebo responses and implications for drug trials. *Clinical Pharmacology and Therapeutics*, 90, 722–726.
- Rief, W., Mewes, R., Martin, A., Glaesmer, H., & Braehler, E. (2011c). Evaluating new proposals for the psychiatric classification of patients with multiple somatic symptoms. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 73, 760–768.
- Weise, C., Heinecke, K., & Rief, W. (2008). Biofeedback-based behavioural treatment for chronic tinnitus-results of a randomised controlled trial. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 76, 1046–1057.

Ringing in the Ears

► Tinnitus

Risk Aversion

► Risk Perception

Risk Factors

► Diathesis-Stress Model

Risk Factors and Their Management

Bernt Lindahl
Occupational and Environmental Medicine,
Department of Public Health and Clinical
Medicine, Umeå University, Umeå, Sweden

Definition

The term “risk factor” describes factors that are associated with an increased risk of developing a

disease but that are not sufficient to cause the disease. In this topic, risk factors for our most important noncommunicable diseases, such as cardiovascular disease (CVD), type 2 diabetes, and certain forms of cancer, are discussed. Special emphasis is on explaining the link between an individual’s choice of lifestyle (behaviors) and these diseases. This link is called “the metabolic syndrome” and can be described as a group of risk factors that occur together, are modifiable by lifestyle change, and increase the risk for CVD and diabetes. Some implications of this lifestyle metabolic syndrome association may also be drawn to other diseases, such as dementia and depression. Management of these cardio-metabolic risk factors is primarily behavior modification or long-term lifestyle change. Often, the lifestyle treatment needs to be complimented by pharmacologic treatment for some specific risk factors, such as LDL-cholesterol and high blood pressure.

Description

Risk Factors

During the last four decades, it has been said that three risk factors, often called the traditional risk factors, could explain 50% of the risk of getting an acute heart attack or an acute myocardial infarction (AMI). The three risk factors were smoking, serum cholesterol, and blood pressure. In 2004, the Interheart study was published, and this worldwide case-control study found nine modifiable risk factors to explain 90% of the risk of getting AMI (Yusuf et al. 2004). The study compared 15,000 cases of AMI with the same number of controls without having AMI. They found that smoking and lipid disorder, mainly high total and LDL-cholesterol, were the most powerful of these nine risk factors. The others were blood pressure, diabetes, abdominal obesity, psychosocial factors, physical activity, fruit and vegetables, and alcohol consumption. The last three of these risk factors were in reality protecting factors, since a higher level of physical activity, fruit and vegetables, and alcohol were associated with a lower rate of AMI. The strength of this worldwide study is that the risk factor pattern for AMI was the same among

men and women, between different geographical regions of the world and also between different racial or ethnic groups (Yusuf et al. 2004).

Smoking

Smoking is perhaps the most important risk factor for cardiovascular disease (CVD), and if one was to be confronted with a patient with CVD and several other risk factors, who still was a smoker, the foremost advice would be to discuss how to stop smoking (Burell and Lindahl 2008). The consequences of smoking and how to work with tobacco and smoking cessation will be dealt with elsewhere.

Lipids

Disturbances in blood lipids are strong risk factors for atherosclerosis and cardiovascular disease, such as coronary heart disease, stroke, and peripheral artery disease. There are two main forms of lipids in the blood: cholesterol and triglycerides. Total cholesterol can be subdivided into low density lipoprotein (LDL)-cholesterol, sometimes called bad cholesterol since it increases the risk of cardiovascular disease, and high density lipoprotein (HDL)-cholesterol, sometimes called good cholesterol since it reduces the risk of cardiovascular disease (Faergeman 2008). As a rule of thumb, in order to avoid atherosclerosis and risk of CVD, an individual's total cholesterol should be below 5 mmol/L, LDL-cholesterol below 3 mmol/L, triglycerides below 2 mmol/L, and HDL-cholesterol above 1 mmol/L. For some individuals, the lipid goals need to be even more advanced. In secondary prevention, for instance, when you already have had one heart attack and you want to prevent another one, the aim for the LDL-cholesterol level may be below 2.5 mmol/L or 2.0 mmol/L. All patients with cardiovascular disease, diabetes, and familial high cholesterol belong to this group of individuals (Faergeman 2008).

Obesity, Insulin Resistance, and the Metabolic Syndrome

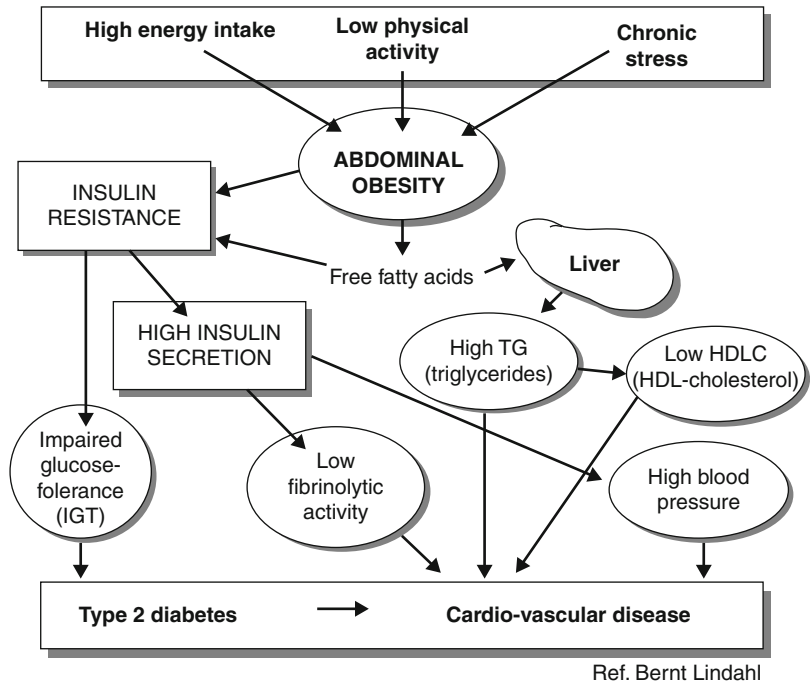
Obesity has long been the main modifiable risk factor for type 2 diabetes, and during the last decade, a nearly explosive growth over the

world of both obesity and diabetes has been demonstrated. This development has mostly been attributed to developed countries, but has also increasingly been found in many developing countries (Barnett and Kumar 2004; Björntorp 2001). Obesity is often defined as a condition of excessive fat accumulation in adipose tissue to the extent that health may be impaired and is the result of an imbalance between energy intake and expenditure (Björntorp 2001). If an individual consumes more energy than he/she spends, fat tissue will accumulate, and obesity may follow. According to the World Health Organization (WHO), obesity is defined as a body mass index (BMI) of 30 kg/m² or more. Although obesity per se is a strong risk factor for diabetes and CVD, it was discovered already in the beginning of the 1950s that the male form of obesity having most of the fat deposit localized around the waist, i.e., abdominal obesity, was an even stronger risk factor (Barnett and Kumar 2004; Björntorp 2001). A waist circumference of 94 cm (37 in.) in men and 80 cm (32 in.) in women has been shown to increase the risk of getting diabetes and CVD, and this risk is further increased with a waist of 102 cm (40 in.) or above in men and 88 cm (35 in.) or above in women. The first level could be seen as an alerting zone, i.e., an obligation to inform the individual about the increased risk and discuss possible solutions. The second level is often called "an action level," implying that these individuals really ought to be offered inclusion in a lifestyle program (Björntorp 2001).

Portal-Visceral Hypothesis and Insulin Resistance

Several of the nine modifiable risk factors from the Interheart study are highly correlated to each other, i.e., they are more often than by chance found together in the same individual. As shown in Fig. 1, low physical activity in combination with high energy intake and sustained psychosocial stress will increase the risk of developing obesity and especially abdominal obesity. A large amount of abdominal fat, which is more metabolically active than subcutaneous fat, will release large amounts of fatty acids to the blood circulation. Large amounts of free fatty acids at muscular level will reduce the uptake of glucose

Risk Factors and Their Management, Fig. 1 The metabolic syndrome: the link between lifestyle, type 2 diabetes, and cardiovascular disease



due to a subnormal insulin action. A state of insulin resistance will follow, which may be defined as a state in which a given concentration of insulin produces a less than expected biological effect. The small increase in glucose concentration in the circulation that will follow will in turn increase the secretion of insulin from the beta cells in the pancreas. Glucose uptake at muscular level will be restored, despite that insulin resistance still exists. However, the price to pay is a larger than normal insulin secretion. This could go on for years with increasing body weight, waist circumference, insulin resistance, and high beta cell activity. The long-term problem is that the beta cells get exhausted and lose their ability to produce insulin (Kumar and O’Rahilly 2005).

In the beginning of such a development, the amount of insulin secreted is not high enough to take care of the carbohydrates after a meal and plasma glucose often rises to levels beyond the normal. This is called a state of impaired glucose tolerance (IGT), and without a lifestyle change, this state will worsen to type 2 diabetes in about

50% of the cases within a 10-year period. IGT is a reversible state, and much attention in primary prevention of type 2 diabetes has been devoted to find and to treat this group of high-risk individuals. Impaired glucose tolerance (IGT) as well as impaired fasting glucose (IFG), i.e., having a higher than normal plasma glucose in the fasting state but not after a meal, may be called prediabetic states (Ganz 2005; Kumar and O’Rahilly 2005).

Other effects of insulin resistance and high insulin secretion are the appearance of risk factors such as high blood pressure and a specific lipid disturbance, characterized by high levels of triglycerides and low levels of HDL-cholesterol. This lipid combination is relatively common and considered to be a strong risk factor for CVD. The combination of these multiple risk factors for diabetes and cardiovascular disease is called “the metabolic syndrome” (Fig. 1). Other names for this risk state are syndrome X, the deadly quartet, or the insulin resistance syndrome. The description above is based upon the portal-visceral

hypothesis for the mechanism of developing insulin resistance. However, other mechanisms have also been discussed (Kumar and O’Rahilly 2005).

Adipose Tissue as an Endocrine Organ

During the last 15 years, our knowledge of fat tissue has changed tremendously, from being just a reservoir for energy to being the largest endocrine organ in the body. The handling of energy intake and expenditure and of hunger and satiety as well as effects on blood pressure and inflammatory systems are regulated, at least in part, by hormones or hormone-like substances (adipokines) produced and secreted from fat cells in adipose tissue (Kumar and O’Rahilly 2005).

Ectopic Fat Accumulation

A third possible mechanism for the development of insulin resistance and increased risk for diabetes is “ectopic fat” accumulation. The definition of ectopic fat is that it is accumulation of fat cells in other tissues than adipose tissue. It has been shown that ectopic fat in liver and muscle tissues is associated with central (liver) and peripheral (muscles) insulin resistance, and accumulation of fat droplets in the neighborhood of the beta cells in the pancreas has been associated with a disturbance in insulin secretion (Kumar and O’Rahilly 2005).

Type 2 Diabetes and Cardiovascular Disease

From population studies, using different metabolic syndrome definitions, as much as 20–25% of the adult population has been found to have a metabolic syndrome. Besides having the risk of developing diabetes, the risk of getting CVD is two- to threefold higher among those with the metabolic syndrome. Today, type 2 diabetes, due to its strong correlation with CVD (macrovascular complications of diabetes), is by many considered to be in its essence a cardiovascular disease, and among diabetes patients, there is a three- to fourfold increased risk for CVD. Importantly, much points to the fact that the CVD risk already starts to rise when the individuals start to accumulate

body fat and is clearly increased in the state of the metabolic syndrome, and even more so in impaired glucose tolerance. In other words, the risks of developing type 2 diabetes and cardiovascular disease should be seen as parallel phenomena, and not as a simple case of diabetes being followed by CVD (the “common soil” hypothesis). This has of course large implications on when in this process of development it is optimal to start the prevention or treatment of these risk states or diseases (Ganz 2005; Kumar and O’Rahilly 2005).

The strong association between diabetes and CVD could also be demonstrated from another point of view. In a recent Swedish study on acute myocardial infarction patients submitted to hospital care and followed up 3 months later with among other things an oral glucose tolerance test, it was demonstrated that only 35% of the AMI patients had normal glucose concentrations. A majority of the cases (65%) had either unknown diabetes or prediabetes (Norhammar et al. 2002).

Other Related Diseases

The same kind of reasoning as above, using the same risk factor pattern, has also given rise to implications for other types of diseases (outcomes), such as certain types of cancers (mainly breast, colon, and prostate), dementia, and depression. However, our knowledge is much more limited in this area of research.

Management of Risk Factors

Behavior Modification and Long-Term Lifestyle Change

As discussed above, in reality, many of our most important risk factors for noncommunicable diseases, such as type 2 diabetes and cardiovascular disease as well as certain forms of cancer, dementia, and depression, are the same and are also associated with each other in a complex pattern of interrelationships, such as in the metabolic syndrome (Fig. 1). An individual’s choice of lifestyle will have great impact on these relationships, and the metabolic syndrome may be seen as the

link between the lifestyle of an individual and the risk to develop type 2 diabetes and cardiovascular disease for that individual. Of course, heredity also influences many of these interrelationships, but this is a risk factor that, at least today, is unmodifiable. Behavior modification inducing long-term lifestyle change with increased physical activity and a lowered energy intake, often based upon a low-fat high-fiber diet, and sometimes also the inclusion of stress management techniques in the lifestyle change, has been the standard for an intensive lifestyle change program. Studies using this approach often achieve a weight loss of 5–10% of the initial body weight (Barnett and Kumar 2004; Burell and Lindahl 2008; Ganz 2005). Although, this is a relatively modest weight loss for someone having obesity, it has been shown to generate large beneficial effects on the metabolism. However, it seems crucial that the weight loss is achieved by a lifestyle change. An intensive lifestyle program induces a multitude of effects that protect against both cardiovascular disease and type 2 diabetes. In the Finnish Diabetes Prevention Study (DPS), a weight loss difference between the intensive lifestyle group and the control group of 2.7 kg after 2 years resulted in a reduction of diabetes development of 58% at the 3-year follow-up (Tuomilehto et al. 2001).

Effects of Physical Activity

There is a strong inverse relationship between physical activity, type 2 diabetes, and cardiovascular disease, and the evidence for this relationship must be considered as solid (Burell and Lindahl 2008). Furthermore, a large body of evidence examining the effects of physical activity on cardiovascular risk factors has also documented beneficial effects, mainly a lowering of blood pressure and a less atherogenic lipid profile. A paradigm shift concerning physical activity was launched in 1995, proclaiming that even less intensive and shorter bouts of physical activity may have health promoting effects (Pate et al. 1995). It was shown that a dose

corresponding to an energy expenditure of 1000 kcal per week significantly lowered all-cause mortality by 20–30%, and CVD mortality possibly even more. This level of energy expenditure corresponds to about 30 min of moderately intensive physical activity each day, i.e., brisk walks, bicycling, and swimming. An updated version of this physical activity statement was published in 2007 (Haskell et al. 2007).

Effects of a Healthy Diet

In the last decade, our understanding of how nutrients and foods promote cardiac health or increase the risk for diabetes and cardiovascular disease has grown substantially, but the search for an optimal composition of food intake is far from over. Diets that are higher in monounsaturated fatty acids, fiber, and low glycemic foods (slow carbohydrates) appear to improve insulin resistance, blood glucose, and blood lipids. Additionally, three food intake strategies to prevent cardiovascular disease have been suggested. First, to increase intake of unsaturated fats and decrease intake of saturated and trans-fats, second, to increase intake of omega-3 fatty acids, and last, to increase consumption of fruits, vegetables, nuts, and whole grains (Hu and Willett 2002).

Adherence to a Long-Term Lifestyle Change

Two key features of such an intensive lifestyle program in order to achieve adherence are goal-setting and self-monitoring. The goals should be realistic, measurable, concrete, and engaging, and there should be both short- and long-term goals. Simple ways of self-monitoring key behaviors, such as food intake and physical activity, should also be included in such a lifestyle program (Burell and Lindahl 2008; Ganz 2005).

Management of Specific Risk Factors: High LDL-Cholesterol and High Blood Pressure

In addition to a comprehensive lifestyle program, some specific risk factors need to be treated with medications, either because the lifestyle program

is insufficient to handle the risk factor in an optimal way or because healthy lifestyle change does not impact enough on the risk factor in question. In order to lower LDL-cholesterol, lipid-modifying drugs, especially use of statins, are the standard treatment in cases with familial high cholesterol levels and in patients with cardiovascular disease and type 2 diabetes (Faergeman 2008). In order to control high blood pressure, a lifestyle change is often not enough, and the use of antihypertensive drugs is customary.

Cross-References

► Behavior Change

References and Further Reading

- Barnett, A. H., & Kumar, S. (Eds.). (2004). *Obesity & diabetes*. Chichester: Wiley.
- Björntorp, P. (Ed.). (2001). *International textbook of obesity*. Chichester: Wiley.
- Burell, G., & Lindahl, B. (2008). Management of specific behavioural risk factors – Exercise, obesity and smoking. In I. M. Graham & R. B. D'Agostino (Eds.), *Therapeutic strategies in cardiovascular risk* (pp. 201–211). Oxford: Clinical Publishing.
- Faergeman, O. (2008). Management of specific risk factors – Lipids. In I. M. Graham & R. B. D'Agostino (Eds.), *Therapeutic strategies in cardiovascular risk* (pp. 213–232). Oxford: Clinical Publishing.
- Ganz, M. (Ed.). (2005). *Prevention of type 2 diabetes*. Chichester: Wiley.
- Haskell, W. L., Lee, I.-M., Pate, R. R., Powell, K. E., Blair, S. N., Franklin, B. A., et al. (2007). Physical activity and public health. Updated recommendation for adults from the American College of Sports Medicine and the American Heart Association. *Circulation*, 116, 1081–1093.
- Hu, F. B., & Willett, W. C. (2002). Optimal diets for prevention of coronary heart disease. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288, 2569–2578.
- Kumar, S., & O'Rahilly, S. (Eds.). (2005). *Insulin resistance*. Chichester: Wiley.
- Norhammar, A., Tenerz, Å., Nilsson, G., Hamsten, A., Efendic, S., & Rydén, L. (2002). Glucose metabolism in patients with acute myocardial infarction and no previous diagnosis of diabetes mellitus: A prospective study. *Lancet*, 359, 2140–2144.
- Pate, R. R., Pratt, M., Blair, S. N., Haskell, W. L., Macera, C. A., Bouchard, C., et al. (1995). Physical activity and public health. A recommendation from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and the American College of Sports Medicine. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 273, 402–407.
- Tuomilehto, J., Lindström, J., Eriksson, J. G., Valle, T. T., Hämäläinen, H., Lanne-Parikka, P., et al. (2001). Prevention of type 2 diabetes mellitus by changes in lifestyle among subjects with impaired glucose tolerance. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 344, 1343–1350.
- Yusuf, S., Hawken, S., Ounpuu, S., Dans, T., Avezum, A., Lanas, F., et al. (2004). Effect of potentially modifiable risk factors associated with myocardial infarction in 52 countries (the INTERHEART study): Case-control study. *Lancet*, 364, 937–952.

Risk Perception

Catherine Darker¹ and Anna C. Whittaker²

¹Public Health and Primary Care, Institute of Population Health, School of Medicine, Trinity College Dublin, The University of Dublin, Dublin, Ireland

²School of Sport, Faculty of Health Science and Sport, University of Stirling, Stirling, UK

Synonyms

Risk aversion; Risk-taking

Definition

Risk perceptions are beliefs about potential harm or the possibility of a loss. It is a subjective judgment that people make about the characteristics and severity of a risk.

Description

The degree of risk associated with a given behavior is generally considered to represent the likelihood and, given its occurrence, the consequences

of harmful effects that result from that behavior. To perceive risk includes evaluations of the probability as well as the consequences of an uncertain outcome. There are three dimensions of perceived risk – perceived likelihood (the probability that one will be harmed by the hazard), perceived susceptibility (an individual's constitutional vulnerability to a hazard), and perceived severity (the extent of harm a hazard would cause). Risk perceptions are central to many health behavior theories. For example, models that have been developed specifically to predict health behavior such as the health belief model (Rosenstock 1966), the protection motivation theory (Rogers 1975), and the self-regulation model (Leventhal et al. 1980) all contain constructs that explicitly focus on risk perceptions. In addition, other models such as the theory of reasoned action (Fishbein and Ajzen 1975), the theory of planned behavior (Ajzen 1985), and the social cognitive theory (Bandura 1977) also include perceptions of risk indirectly via other constructs.

Biases and Heuristics in Risk Assessment

The estimation of risk tends to be a complex process that depends on factors such as the context in which the risk information is presented and the way the risk is being described and also on personal and cultural characteristics. Tversky and Kahneman (1973) proposed that when faced with the difficult task of judging risk, people use a limited number of strategies, called heuristics, to simplify these judgments. These heuristics can be useful shortcuts for thinking for most of us most of the time, but they may lead to inaccurate judgments in some situations in which case they become cognitive biases. There are three broad biases that can affect risk perceptions, and these are the availability heuristic, the representativeness heuristic, and the anchoring and adjustment heuristic.

Availability heuristic is a phenomenon in which people predict the frequency or likelihood of an event, or a proportion within a population, based on how easily an example can be brought to mind (Tversky and Kahneman 1973). We make decisions based on the knowledge that is readily

available in our minds rather than examining all the alternatives. Most of the time, our brains use the availability heuristic without us even realizing it. Often this gives our brains the quick shortcut to the answer we need, and in many cases the judgments are accurate. However, as with any shortcut, sometimes the availability heuristic can lead us to make mistakes. Some events are easier to recall than others, not because they are more common but because they stand out in our minds.

Representativeness heuristic is an occurrence in which individuals assess the frequency of a particular event based solely on the generalization of a previous similar event (Gilovich et al. 2002). Naturally, relying on past experiences can be beneficial and allow for quick conclusions to be reached, but the cost of being able to make quick decisions is oftentimes accuracy. The fact that a mental representation, which can be compared to a new situation, exists in your memory does not have any bearing on how likely that representation is to occur in reality.

Anchoring and adjustment heuristic is a phenomenon in which people start with one piece of known information, known as an anchor, and then adjust said information to create an estimate of an unknown risk (Epley and Gilovich 2006). The adjustment, however, is usually conservative, and hence, the final judgment is usually biased toward the anchor.

Psychometric Paradigm of Risk Assessment

The “psychometric paradigm” developed by Slovic, Fischhoff, and Lichtenstein was a landmark in research about public attitudes toward risks (Fischhoff et al. 1978, 1983; Slovic et al. 1980, 1982, 1985). These studies demonstrated that the public is not irrational. Ordinary people simply use a broader definition of “risks” than experts when making their judgments about which ones are of most concern to them. “Experts” base their risk ratings on the expected number of fatalities. “Lay people,” in contrast, have a richer definition of risk. This incorporates a number of more qualitative characteristics such as “voluntariness” (whether people have a choice

about whether they face the risk), “immediacy of effect” (the extent to which the effect is immediate or might occur at some later time), and “catastrophic potential” (whether many people would be killed at once). Slovic et al. (1985) identified and analyzed 18 characteristics of this kind using factor analysis and found that they could be resolved into three factors broadly defined as “dread,” “unknown,” and “exposure.” Further, high perceived risk, and hence a desire for societal regulation, was associated. Psychometric paradigm assumes that with appropriate design of survey instruments, many of these factors can be quantified (Slovic 1992).

Research within the psychometric paradigm turned to focus on the roles of affect, emotion, and stigma in influencing risk perception. Psychometric research identified a broad domain of characteristics that may be condensed into three high-order factors: (1) the degree to which a risk is understood, (2) the degree to which it evokes a feeling of dread, and (3) the number of people exposed to the risk. A dread risk elicits visceral feelings of terror, uncontrollability, catastrophe, and inequality. An unknown risk is new and unknown to science. The more a person dreads an activity, the higher its perceived risk and the more that person wants the risk reduced (Slovic et al. 1982).

Cross-References

- [Cancer Risk Perceptions](#)
- [Cognitive Appraisal](#)
- [Perceived Benefits](#)
- [Perceived Risk](#)
- [Risky Behavior](#)

References and Further Reading

- Ajzen, I. (1985). From intentions to actions: A theory of planned behavior. In J. Kuhl & J. Beckman (Eds.), *Action-control: From cognition to behavior* (pp. 11–39). Heidelberg: Springer.
- Bandura, A. (1977). Self-efficacy: Toward a unifying theory of behavior change. *Psychological Review*, 84, 191–215.
- Epley, N., & Gilovich, T. (2006). The anchoring-and-adjustment heuristic: Why the adjustments are insufficient. *Psychological Science*, 17, 311–318.

- Fischhoff, B., Slovic, P., Lichtenstein, S., Read, S., & Combs, B. (1978). How safe is safe enough? A psychometric study of attitudes towards technological risks and benefits. *Policy Studies*, 9, 127–152.
- Fischhoff, B., Slovic, P., & Lichtenstein, S. (1983). The public vs. ‘the experts’. In V. T. Covello, W. G. Flamm, J. V. Rodricks, & R. G. Tardiff (Eds.), *The analysis of actual vs. perceived risks* (pp. 235–249). New York: Plenum.
- Fishbein, M., & Ajzen, I. (1975). *Belief, attitude and intention and behavior: An introduction to theory and research*. Reading: Addison-Wesley.
- Gilovich, T., Griffin, D., & Kahneman, D. (2002). *Heuristics and biases – the psychology of intuitive judgment*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Kahneman, D., & Tversky, A. (1973). On the psychology of prediction. *Psychological Review*, 80, 237–251.
- Leventhal, H., Meyer, D., & Nerenz, D. (1980). The common sense representation of illness danger. *Medical Psychology*, 2, 7–30.
- Plous, S. (1993). *The psychology of judgment and decision making*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Rogers, R. W. (1975). A protection motivation theory of fear appeals and attitude change. *Journal of Psychology*, 91, 93–114.
- Rosenstock, I. M. (1966). Why people use health services. *The Milbank Memorial Fund Quarterly*, 44, 94–127.
- Slovic, P. (1992). Perception of risk: Reflections on the psychometric paradigm. In S. Krimsky & D. Golding (Eds.), *Social theories of risk* (pp. 117–152). Westport: Praeger.
- Slovic, P. (2000). *The perception of risk*. Sterling: Earthscan.
- Slovic, P., Fischhoff, B., & Lichtenstein, S. (1980). Facts and fears: Understanding perceived risk. In R. C. Schwing & W. A. Albers (Eds.), *Societal risk assessment: How safe is safe enough?* (pp. 181–216). New York: Plenum Press.
- Slovic, P., Fischhoff, B., & Lichtenstein, S. (1982). Why study risk perception? *Risk Analysis*, 2, 83–93.
- Slovic, P., Fischhoff, B., & Lichtenstein, S. (1985). Characterizing perceived risk. In R. W. Kates, C. Hohenemser, & J. X. Kaspersen (Eds.), *Perilous progress: Managing the hazards of technology*. Boulder: Westview Press.
- Tversky, A., & Kahneman, D. (1973). Availability: A heuristic for judging frequency and probability. *Cognitive Psychology*, 5, 207–232.
- Tversky, A., & Kahneman, D. (1974). Judgments under uncertainty: Heuristics and biases. *Science*, 185, 1124–1131.
- Wildavsky, A., & Dake, K. (1990). Theories of risk perception: Who fears what and why? *American Academy of Arts and Sciences (Daedalus)*, 119, 41–60.

Risk Pooling

- [Health Insurance: Comparisons](#)

Risk Reduction

► Harm Reduction

Risk Taking

► Risky Behavior

Risk-Benefit Assessment

► Benefit-Risk Estimation

Risk-Benefit Ratio

► Benefit-Risk Estimation

Risk-Taking

► Risk Perception

Risky Behavior

Tereza Killianova
Free University of Brussels (VUB), Jette,
Belgium

Synonyms

[Risk taking](#)

Definition

Risky behavior or risk-taking behavior is defined according to Trimpop (1994) as “any consciously,

or non-consciously controlled behavior with a perceived uncertainty about its outcome, and/or about its possible benefits, or costs for the physical, economic or psycho-social well-being of one-self or others.” In addition to this broad definition, there are other definitions of risky behavior depending on the field of research. While in the economic view, risk is defined in terms of the variability of possible monetary outcomes, in the clinical literature, the risk is generally defined as exposure to possible loss or harm (Schonberg et al. 2011). Turner et al. (2004) described risk-taking behavior further as either a socially unacceptable volitional behavior with a potentially negative outcome in which precautions are not taken, such as speeding, drinking and driving, drugs abuse, unprotected sex, . . . , or a socially accepted behavior in which the danger is recognized (climbing, competitive sports,. . .). This description is important when looking at the relation between risk-taking behavior and injuries. It has been shown that risk-taking behavior is associated with an increased chance of sustaining an injury. However, this relation was not shown in the case of high-skilled, risk-taking sports (Turner et al. 2004). Risky behavior can be a direct consequence and manifestation of a risk-taking personality or of sensation-seeking personality. These can be reliably assessed by various existing questionnaires. In behavior medicine, risk behavior is an important factor to consider, since it is a predictor of various adverse health outcomes. In the domain of driving, risky behaviors, such as excessive speeding or driving under the influence of alcohol, are known predictors of traffic accidents (Jonah 1997), one of the 10 leading causes of mortality worldwide. In infectious diseases, risky behavior in the form of unprotected sex or having multiple partners often co-occurs (Biglan et al. 1990) and can increase the risk of HIV/AIDS, a leading cause of death in Africa. Thus, identifying people likely to perform risky behaviors and developing and testing interventions to prevent risky behaviors are crucial for contributing to prevention of diseases and adverse health outcomes at the individual and social levels.

Cross-References

► Risk Perception

References and Readings

- Biglan, A., Metzler, C. W., Wirt, R., Ary, D., Noell, J., Ochs, L., et al. (1990). Social and behavioral factors associated with high-risk sexual behavior among adolescents. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 13, 245–261.
- Jonah, B. A. (1997). Sensation seeking and risky driving: A review and synthesis of the literature. *Accident Analysis and Prevention*, 29, 651–665.
- Schonberg, T., Fox, C. R., & Poldrack, R. A. (2011). Mind the gap: Bridging economic and naturalistic risk-taking with cognitive neuroscience. *Trends in Cognitive Sciences*, 15(1), 11–19.
- Trimpop, R. (1994). *The psychology of risk taking behavior*. Amsterdam: Elsevier Science.
- Turner, C., McClure, R., & Pirozzo, S. (2004). Injury and risk-taking behavior—a systematic review. *Accident Analysis and Prevention*, 36, 93–101.

Risky Drinking Episode

► Binge Drinking

RNA

Jana Strahler
Clinical Biopsychology, Department of
Psychology, University of Marburg, Marburg,
Germany

Synonyms

[Coding RNA](#); [Messenger RNA](#); [mRNA](#); [Noncoding RNA](#); [Ribosomal RNA](#); [rRNA](#); [Transfer RNA](#); [tRNA](#)

Definition

Ribonucleic acid (RNA) is a chain of multiple nucleotides (a polynucleotide) consisting of a

molecule of sugar (ribose), a molecule of phosphoric acid, and a nucleic base (uracil, cytosine, guanine, or adenine). In contrast to DNA, RNA is normally single-stranded. Its main function within the cell is the conversion of the genetic information into proteins, i.e., gene expression. There are different RNA molecules exerting different functions, the so-called coding and noncoding RNA. Coding RNA, also called messenger RNA (*mRNA*), copies information from the DNA and carries this information to the ribosome, the cell organelle where protein synthesis takes place. There are different forms of noncoding RNA with transfer RNA and ribosomal RNA being the most important. Transfer RNA (*tRNA*) molecules take amino acids and transport them to the ribosome. Ribosomal RNA (*rRNA*) is the fundamental part of the ribosome and catalyzes protein synthesis.

Research has demonstrated that various types of stressors modulate RNA. For instance, social isolation, chronic stress, and low socioeconomic status are associated with immunological impairment mediated via alterations in immune-related RNA expression. In contrast, there is also evidence for an RNA-regulating effect of positive psychological states.

Cross-References

► DNA ► Gene Expression

References and Readings

- Cole, S. W., Hawkey, L. C., Arevalo, J. M., Sung, C. Y., Rose, R. M., & Cacioppo, J. T. (2007). Social regulation of gene expression in human leukocytes. *Genome Biology*, 8(9), R189.
- Sloan, E. K., Capitanio, J. P., Tarara, R. P., Mendoza, S. P., Mason, W. A., & Cole, S. W. (2007). Social stress enhances sympathetic innervation of primate lymph nodes: Mechanisms and implications for viral pathogenesis. *Journal of Neuroscience*, 27(33), 8857–8865.

Robert Wood Johnson Foundation

Stephanie Ann Hooker
Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Basic Information

The Robert Wood Johnson Foundation (RWJF) is one of the world's largest private philanthropic foundations, with a mission of improving public health in the United States. Upon his death, Robert Wood Johnson II (of Johnson & Johnson Services Inc.) dedicated virtually all of his fortune to establish this foundation.

The RWJF funds projects that are “innovative” and have “measurable impact” in seven different program areas. These program areas include childhood obesity, coverage (health care), human capital (preparation of health professionals), pioneer (innovative health-related technologies), public health, quality/equality (health care), and vulnerable populations. Within these seven program areas, the RWJF funds a variety of different types of projects including service demonstrations, gathering and monitoring of health-related statistics, public education, training and fellowship programs, policy analysis, health services research, technical assistance, communications activities, and evaluations. In 2009, the RWJF funded \$350 million in grants, and approximately 20% of the funding was dedicated to research-related projects.

Major Impact on the Field

The RWJF seeks to better society and the lives of Americans through its philanthropic contributions. Some notable past efforts include the creation of the 911 emergency response system across the United States; the introduction of new methods for the research, prevention, and treatment of tobacco use; and the establishment of the field of end-of-life/palliative care.

Each year, the RWJF publishes a book entitled *To Improve Health and Health Care: The Robert*

Wood Johnson Foundation Anthology. The book focuses on approximately 10 different topics every year and describes why the foundation funded certain topics, what the program activities were, what was accomplished, how the program fits with RWJF, and what lessons were learned. The most recent volume (XIV) focused on health and health care of vulnerable populations. This anthology is one way the foundation examines its impact on public health, and it is available on the foundation's website.

Cross-References

- [Palliative Care](#)
- [Public Health](#)

References and Further Reading

- Isaacs, S. L., & Dolby, D. C. (Eds.). (2011). *To improve health and health care: The Robert Wood Johnson Foundation anthology* (Vol. XIV). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Robert Wood Johnson Foundation. (2011). Retrieved July 15, 2011 from <http://www.rwjf.org>

rRNA

- [RNA](#)

Rumination

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

Rumination is both a state and trait tendency to focus on negative events, emotions, and symptoms and their occurrence, causes, and consequences (Nolen-Hoeksema 1991; Rydstedt et al. 2011). Multiple conceptualizations of

rumination exist, each having its own measure, and tested in different contexts. The majority of research has tested and shown rumination to play a key role in the onset and maintenance of depression. However, some research also shows that it causes and maintains distress in physically ill patients (see review by Soo et al. 2009). Rumination is a marker of poor adaptation, since it is thought to prolong one's psychophysiological response to a stressor even long after it has ended. In a review of this domain, Brosschot (2010) views rumination as part of perseverative cognitions, where people have a sustained cognitive representation of past stressors, beyond their mere existence. Brosschot also contends that much of the effects of rumination could also be unconscious, even impacting one's well-being during sleep. Furthermore, rumination is thought to mediate the association between stress and one's psychophysiological responses. Rumination, which amplifies one's failure to achieve goals, can be contrasted with more constructive self-reflection which is more distant and less immersed in one's experiences. Supporting this, among people moderately high on rumination, promotion failure predicted depressive symptoms. In contrast, among people high on self-reflection, promotion failure was not predictive of severe increases in depressive symptoms (Jones et al. 2009). Looking at physiological indices of stress, Rydstedt et al. (2011) found that rumination interacted synergistically with job ambiguity (a known stressor) in relation to morning cortisol in British workers. As such, rumination amplified the effects of job ambiguity on a physiological marker of stress, namely, morning cortisol. Thus, rumination amplifies and worsens the impact of negative events, both in terms of their "duration" and in terms of their possible psychophysiological consequences. A study conducted by Klein et al. (2012) assessed implicit job-stress associations using the implicit association test. This could reflect to some extent an unconscious measure of rumination about work. Only this implicit measure significantly and positively correlated with waking cortisol, while an explicit measure of job intrusions did not (Klein et al. 2012). This result supports the contention of Brosschot (2010) that even implicit rumination

may exert long-term psychophysiological consequences. Some research shows that meditation can reduce levels of rumination. A relevant study by Hanstede et al. (2008) found that meditation led to greater reductions in obsessive-compulsive symptoms, related to rumination, compared to a wait-list control condition. The health consequences, mechanisms, and the ability to reduce rumination with meditation all require further research.

Cross-References

- [Coping Strategies](#)
- [Negative Thoughts](#)
- [Neuroticism](#)
- [Perseverative Cognition](#)
- [Psychophysiologic Reactivity](#)
- [Worry](#)

References and Further Readings

- Brosschot, J. F. (2010). Markers of chronic stress: Prolonged physiological activation and (un)conscious perseverative cognition. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 35, 46–50.
- Hanstede, M., Gidron, Y., & Nyklicek, I. (2008). The effects of a mindfulness intervention on obsessive-compulsive symptoms in a non-clinical student population. *Journal of Nervous and Mental Diseases*, 196, 776–779.
- Jones, N. P., Papadakis, A. A., Hogan, C. M., & Strauman, T. J. (2009). Over and over again: Rumination, reflection, and promotion goal failure and their interactive effects on depressive symptoms. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 47, 254–259.
- Klein, M., Weksler, N., Gidron, Y., Heldman, E., Gurski, E., Smith, O. R., & Gurman, G. M. (2012). Do waking salivary cortisol levels correlate with anesthesiologist's job involvement? *Journal of Clinical Monitoring and Computing*, 26, 407–413.
- Nolen-Hoeksema, S. (1991). Responses to depression and their effects on the duration of depressive episodes. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, 100(4), 569–582.
- Rydstedt, L. W., Cropley, M., & Devereux, J. (2011). Long-term impact of role stress and cognitive rumination upon morning and evening saliva cortisol secretion. *Ergonomics*, 54, 430–435.
- Soo, H., Burney, S., & Basten, C. (2009). The role of rumination in affective distress in people with a chronic physical illness: A review of the literature and theoretical formulation. *Journal of Health Psychology*, 14, 956–966.

S

Saccharide

► Carbohydrates

Saliva

► Salivary Biomarkers

Salivary Biomarkers

Douglas A. Granger¹ and Sara B. Johnson²

¹Center for Interdisciplinary Salivary Bioscience Research, School of Nursing, Bloomberg School of Public Health, and School of Medicine The Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, MD, USA

²School of Medicine and Bloomberg School of Public Health, Johns Hopkins School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

Analytes; Biomarkers; Saliva

In the interest of full disclosure, DAG is founder and Chief Strategy and Scientific Advisor at Salimetrics LLC (State College, PA). DAG's relationship with Salimetrics LLC is managed by the policies of the Conflict of Interest Committee at the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine.

Definition

Behavioral medicine research is increasingly being influenced by theoretical models that explain individual differences in behavior and disease risk as a function of interrelated biological, behavioral, social, and contextual forces. This multi-level theoretical approach follows technical innovations that have made measuring the activity of many biological systems straightforward, portable, and cost efficient. Saliva, in particular, has received attention as a biospecimen; sample collection is perceived as feasible, cost-efficient, and safe, and salivary assays as reliable and accurate (see Table 1). A single oral fluid specimen can provide information about a range of physiologic systems, chemical exposures, and genetic variability relevant to basic biological function, health, and disease. The purpose of this review is to provide a road map for investigators interested in integrating this unique biospecimen into the next generation of studies in behavioral medicine.

Description

Oral fluid as a biospecimen: "Saliva" is a composite of oral fluids secreted from many different glands. The source glands are located in the upper posterior area of the oral cavity (*parotid gland* area), lower area of the mouth between the cheek and jaw (*submandibular gland* area), and under the tongue (*sublingual gland* area). There are also

Salivary Biomarkers, Table 1 Perceived advantages of oral fluids as a research specimen compared to serum

“Minimally invasive”	Considered “acceptable and noninvasive” by research participants and patients
	Collection is quick, non-painful, uncomplicated
“Safety”	Reduces transmission of infectious disease by eliminating the potential for accidental needle sticks
	CDC does not consider saliva a class II biohazard unless visibly contaminated with blood
“Self-collection”	Allows for community- and home-based collection
	Enables specimen collection in special populations
“Economics”	Eliminates the need for a health care intermediary (e.g., phlebotomist, nurse)
	Resources for collection and processing samples are of low cost and available
“Accuracy”	Salivary levels of many analytes represent the “free unbound fraction” or biological active fraction in the general circulation

Source: US Department of Health and Human Services (2000)

many minor secretory glands in the lip, cheek, tongue, and palate. A small fraction of oral fluid (i.e., crevicular fluid) comes from serum leakage, either from the cleft area between teeth and gums, or from mucosal injury or inflammation. In the presence of significant mucosal or epithelial inflammation, however, serum constituents may contribute substantially to oral fluids. Each secretory gland produces a fluid that differs in volume, composition, and constituents. Oral fluid is water-like in composition and has a pH (acidity) between 6 and 9; it has minimal buffering capacity, so substances placed in the mouth can change salivary acidity very quickly.

An understanding of how a given analyte makes its way into oral fluid is key to interpreting individual differences in that analyte, as well as its association with outcomes of interest. Many of the salivary analytes of interest in biobehavioral

research are serum constituents (e.g., steroid hormones). Serum constituent analytes are transported into saliva either by *filtration* between the tight spaces between acinus or duct cells in the salivary glands, or by *diffusion* through acinus or duct cell membranes. In contrast, some analytes found in oral fluids are synthesized, stored, and released from the granules within the secretory cells of the salivary glands (i.e., enzymes, mucins, cystatins, histatins). Still others are components of humoral immunity (antibodies, complement) or compounds (cytokines) secreted by immune cells (neutrophils, macrophages, lymphocytes). In addition to these analytes, saliva contains sufficient cellular material to obtain high quantity and quality DNA (Zimmerman et al. 2007).

The *rate* of saliva secretion can significantly influence levels of salivary analytes produced locally in the mouth (e.g., alpha-amylase (sAA), secretory IgA) as well as those that migrate into saliva from blood by filtration (e.g., dehydroepiandrosterone-sulfate and other conjugated steroids) (Malamud and Tabak 1993). Oral fluid secretion is influenced by many factors, including the day-night cycle, chewing movement of the mandibles, taste and smell, medications that cause dry mouth, as well as medical conditions and treatments that affect salivary gland function (e.g., radiation therapy, Sjögren’s syndrome). It is important to note, therefore, that for analytes influenced by flow rate, the measured concentration or activity of the analyte (e.g., U/mL, pg/mL) must be multiplied by the flow rate (mL/min). The resulting measure is expressed as *output as a function of time* (e.g., U/min, pg/min).

Sample Collection: Even under normative-healthy conditions, more than 250 species of bacteria are present in oral fluids (Paster et al. 2001). During upper respiratory infections, oral fluids are highly likely to contain agents of disease. Oral fluid specimens should, therefore, be handled with *universal precautions* when used in research and diagnostic applications.

Saliva collection devices have historically involved cotton-based absorbent materials. Placed in the mouth for 2–3 min, oral fluids

rapidly saturate the cotton; fluids are subsequently recovered by centrifugation or compression. Most of the time, this approach is convenient, simple, and time-efficient. However, when the sample volume is small, the specimen can be diffusely distributed in the cotton fibers, making sample recovery problematic (Harmon et al. 2007). The process of absorbing oral fluid with cotton and other materials also interferes with several salivary immunoassays (Groschl and Rauh 2006). Further, where in the mouth oral swabs are placed may affect the measured levels or activity of some salivary analytes (e.g., Beltzer et al. 2010). Standardizing swab placement instructions and monitoring compliance can minimize this threat to measurement validity.

In early studies, saliva flow was often stimulated using techniques that involved chewing or tasting various substances (e.g., gums, waxes, sugar crystals, powdered drink mixes). When not used minimally and/or consistently, some of these methods may change immunoassay performance (Granger et al. 2007). Indirectly, stimulants also influence levels of salivary analytes that depend on saliva flow rate (SIgA; dehydroepiandrosterone-sulfate (DHEA-S); Neuropeptide Y (NPY); Vasoactive Intestinal Peptide, (VIP)). Researchers are advised to avoid these techniques.

Collecting *whole saliva* by “passive drool” (Granger et al. 2007) is an alternative collection approach that minimizes many of the threats to validity described above. Briefly, participants imagine they are chewing their favorite food, slowly moving their jaws in a chewing motion, and allowing oral fluid to pool in their mouth. Next, they gently force the specimen through a short plastic drinking straw into a vial. The advantages of this procedure include the following: (1) A large sample volume may be collected relatively quickly (3–5 min). (2) Target collection volume may be confirmed by visual inspection in the field. (3) The fluid collected is a pooled specimen mixture of the output from all salivary glands. (4) The procedure does not introduce interference related to stimulating or absorbing

saliva. (5) Collection materials are of very low cost. (6) Samples can be aliquoted and archived for future assays.

Blood Leakage into Oral Fluid: Blood poses a threat to the validity of salivary analyte measurements because most analytes are present in serum in much higher levels (10–100-fold) than in saliva. Specifically, to meaningfully index *systemic* (vs oral) biological activity, analyte levels in saliva must be highly correlated with levels measured in serum. This serum-saliva association depends, in part, on circulating molecules being appropriately and consistently transported into oral fluids (Malamud and Tabak 1993). When the integrity of diffusion or filtration is compromised (e.g., through blood leakage directly into salivary fluid), the level of the serological marker in saliva will be affected. Blood leakage into oral fluid is more common among individuals with poor oral health (i.e., open sores, periodontal disease, gingivitis), certain infectious diseases (e.g., HIV), and tobacco users. Samples visibly contaminated with blood present varying degrees of yellow-brownish hue. Kivlighan et al. (2004) have proposed a five-point Blood Contamination in Saliva Scale (BCSS) that rates contamination from one (no visible color) to five (deep, rich, dark yellow or brown). Under healthy conditions, BCSS ratings ($N = 42$) averaged 1.33 ($SE = .08$); after microinjury caused by vigorous tooth brushing, ratings averaged 2.42 ($SE = .19$).

Particulate Matter and Interfering Substances: As noted above, items placed in the mouth can influence the integrity of oral fluid samples. Food residue in the oral cavity may introduce particulate matter in samples, change salivary pH or composition, and/or contain substances (e.g., bovine hormones, active ingredients in medications, enzymes) that cross-react with assays. Accordingly, research participants should not eat or drink for 20 min prior to sample donation. In the event that they do eat in this time window, participants should rinse their mouths with water. Importantly, however, they must wait at least 10 min after rinsing before a specimen is collected to avoid artificially lowering estimates of salivary

analytes. Access to food and drink should be carefully planned and scheduled when study designs involve repeated sample collections over long time periods.

Sample Handling, Transport, and Storage: Typically, once specimens are collected, they should be kept cold or frozen. Refrigeration prevents degradation of some salivary analytes and restricts the activity of proteolytic enzymes and growth of bacteria. Conservatively, it is recommended that samples be kept frozen. At minimum, samples should be kept cold (on ice or refrigerated) and frozen later on the day of collection. Repeated freeze-thaw cycles should be avoided. DHEA, estradiol, and progesterone are very sensitive to freeze-thaw, whereas DNA, cortisol, testosterone, and sAA are robust (up to at least three cycles). Freeze-thaw cycles should be considered in the context of plans to aliquot and archive frozen samples for future assays. It should also be noted that some salivary analytes (e.g., neuropeptides) may require specimens be collected into pre-chilled storage vials (Carter et al. 2007) or treated with neuropeptidase inhibitors (e.g., EDTA, aprotinin) to minimize degradation (Dawidson et al. 1997). For large-scale national surveys, investigators working in remote areas, or patients collecting samples at home, freezing and shipping these frozen samples can be logistically complex and cost-prohibitive. In such circumstances, the impact of the handling and storage conditions should be documented by pilot work, or alternative biospecimens should be considered.

Medications: As noted above, many medications can indirectly affect some analytes by reducing salivary flow (e.g., diuretics, hypotensives, antipsychotics, antihistamines, barbiturates, hallucinogens, cannabis, and alcohol). Further, the condition for which the medication is prescribed or taken may itself directly influence analyte levels or activity (Granger et al. 2009). Few behaviorally oriented studies involving salivary analytes comprehensively document medication usage. Further, a lack of normative data coupled with wide individual variation in salivary analyte levels makes it impractical to identify improbable values due to medication use (unless the value is not physiologically plausible).

Medications that are applied intranasally, inhaled, or applied as oral topicals (e.g., teething gels) are of particular concern. Residue in the oral cavity left by these substances may change saliva composition and/or interfere with antibody-antigen binding in immunoassays. The name, dosage, and schedule of all medications taken (prescription and nonprescription) within 48 h should be recorded and used to statistically evaluate the possibility that medication use is driving analyte-outcome relationships.

Assays for Salivary Analytes: Immunoassays are the main laboratory techniques employed to assess levels and activity of salivary analytes. Most immunoassays share two basic steps. Antibodies prepared against a specific salivary analyte are coated to the bottom of a microtiter plate well; these antibodies are used to capture the target molecules. Conversely, antigens may be coated to the wells to capture antibodies present in the sample. Most modern assays employ a labeling design known as enzyme immunoassay (EIA), which uses enzymes coupled to antigens or antibodies (i.e., the enzyme conjugate). To measure salivary cortisol, for instance, antibodies to cortisol are fixed to the plastic surface of a microtiter well. The specimen and a cortisol-enzyme conjugate are added into the well and incubated. During the incubation, cortisol from the sample and the cortisol-enzyme conjugate compete for available antibody-binding sites. The well is then rinsed to remove unbound materials. Next, a substrate is added that reacts with the enzyme conjugate to produce a color. The degree of color in each reaction well is measured in units of optical density (OD). The more cortisol in the sample, the lower the amount of cortisol-conjugate that is bound to the plate, and the lower the OD in that reaction well. To determine concentrations of cortisol in the unknown samples, samples with known concentrations of cortisol (standards) are analyzed as part of each assay. Results from the standards are used to establish a calibration curve from which concentration/volume units can be interpolated from OD.

Operationalizing Individual Differences: A “basal level” is the level or activity of an analyte that represents the “stable state” of the host during

a resting period. One approach to assessing “basal” levels is to sample early in the morning before the events of the day are able to contribute variation. However, day-to-day variability differs across salivary analytes depending on a number of factors including inherent variation in the production/release of the analytes, rate of their metabolism/degradation, and their sensitivity to environmental influences. Therefore, a single time-point measure of salivary analytes (other than invariant genetic polymorphisms) is unlikely to yield meaningful insight into an individual’s true “basal level.” The reliability of “basal” estimates of salivary analytes can be enhanced by sampling at the same time of day across a number of days, then aggregating (by averaging assay results or physically pooling specimens) across days.

Most salivary biomarker/analyte studies have involved a reactivity/regulation paradigm; this approach uses repeated samples to evaluate time-dependent changes in analytes (i.e., cortisol, sAA) in response to (or in anticipation of) a discrete event. The number of samples collected depends on the research question and logistical and practical issues (e.g., participant’s tolerance for sampling burden). The optimal design for the measurement of salivary cortisol and sAA reactivity and regulation involves a pre-pre-[task]-post-post-post sampling scheme with samples collected on arrival to the lab (after consent) immediately before the task, then again immediately, 10-, 20- and 40-min post-challenge. Although some studies have yielded consistent mean-level differences in the patterns of cortisol response following a stressful or novel event, there are more often significant individual differences in stress-reactivity. Some individuals exhibit unexpected patterns of change (or no change), as well as continuously increasing or decreasing analyte levels over time.

An important component of variability in salivary analyte levels, both within and between individuals, is the diurnal rhythm. Most salivary hormone levels (e.g., cortisol) are high in the morning, decline before noon, and then decline more slowly in the afternoon and evening hours (Nelson 2005). By contrast, levels of sAA show

the opposite pattern with low levels in the morning and higher levels in the afternoon (Nater et al. 2007). The nonlinear nature of these patterns requires multiple sampling time points to create adequate statistical models. A typical sampling design for salivary cortisol would involve sampling immediately upon waking, 30-min post-waking, midday (around noon), in the late afternoon, and immediately prior to bed.

Many analytical techniques have been used to model individual differences in diurnal rhythm including mean levels, evaluating the awakening response, and calculating summary measures of analytes over time (e.g., area under the curve, Pruessner et al. 2003). Another approach, growth curve modeling (McArdle and Bell 2000), has recently gained popularity for a number of reasons. Briefly, growth models allow the level and slope of the diurnal rhythm to be examined in the same model and their distinct effects on predictors can be evaluated; they minimize the impact of error or noise in measured values; and the presence of individual differences in the diurnal rhythm can be statistically tested (e.g., McArdle and Bell 2000).

Another analytical approach, hierarchical linear modeling (HLM) allows investigators to estimate values across the day for an individual, based on several samples (Bryk and Raudenbush 1992). Then, deviations from these expected values can be predicted from momentary states and feelings (e.g., mood states) about activities reported at that time of day. Documenting everyday events and emotions that help explain changes in analyte levels or activity across a time period of interest may strengthen causal inference when paired with samples across multiple days. For example, in studies focusing on cortisol, samples are collected approximately 20 min after a diary entry. Computerized handheld devices have made self-assessments quite feasible.

Analytes in Saliva of Interest to Behavioral Medicine: To date, most biobehavioral research has focused on a small number of salivary analytes, that is, cortisol, testosterone, DHEA, and sAA. In fact, however, the salivary proteome has recently been characterized, and includes

more than 1,000 analytes (Hu et al. 2007). These analytes provide information about the following: (1) systemic body processes, (2) local oral biology, (3) surrogate markers of physiological activity, (4) antibodies, (4) medications and environmental exposures, and (5) genetic factors. Each category of analyte is briefly discussed below and summarized in Table 2.

The first group of analytes is present in saliva because oral fluid represents an ultra-filtrate of analytes found in the bloodstream (i.e., serum constituents). Because of high serum-saliva correlations, measuring these analytes in saliva enables investigators to make interferences about systemic physiological states. Adrenal and gonadal hormones are exemplars of this category of salivary markers (e.g., see Table 2).

Most analytes in oral fluid are produced locally in the oral cavity and are secreted from salivary glands. While individual differences in these salivary analytes may reflect systemic processes, a major contributor is local oral biology (e.g., local inflammatory processes, oral health and disease). Many salivary immune and inflammatory markers such as neopterin, beta-2-microglobulin, cytokines, and C-reactive protein (see Table 2) fall into this category. Markers in this group may be less interesting to investigators outside the fields of oral biology and oral health.

A third group of salivary analytes is produced locally by salivary glands, but the levels vary predictably with systemic physiological activation. For example, sympathetic nervous system activation affects the release of catecholamines from nerve

Salivary Biomarkers, Table 2 Salivary analytes of potential interest to biobehavioral research

<i>Endocrine</i>		
Aldosterone	Estradiol, Estriol, Esterone	
Androstenedione	Progesterone; 17-OH Progesterone	
Cortisol	Testosterone	
Dehydroepiandrosterone, and –sulfate	Melatonin	
Adiponectin, leptin, ghrelin	Oxytocin, Vassopressin	
<i>Immune/inflammation</i>		
Secretory immunoglobulin A (SIgA)	Beta-2-microglobulin (B ₂ M)	
Neopterin	Cytokines	
Soluble tumor necrosis factor receptors	C-reactive protein (CRP)	
<i>Autonomic nervous system</i>		
Alpha-amylase (sAA)	Neuropeptide Y (NPY)	
Vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP)	Chromogranin A	
<i>Nucleic acids</i>		
Human genomic	mRNA	
Mitochondrial	Microbial	
Bacterial	Viral	
<i>Antibodies specific for antigens</i>		
Measles	Hepatitis A	Herpes simplex
Mumps	Hepatitis B	Epstein-Barr
Rubella	Hepatitis C	HIV
<i>Pharmaceuticals/environmental chemicals</i>		
Cotinine	Alcohol	Pesticides
Meth-, amphetamine	Lithium	Metals
Methadone	Cocaine	Opioids
Marijuana (THC)	Caffeine	Phenytoin
Bisphenol-A (BPA)	Barbituates	

Sources: Cone and Huestis (2007), Malamud and Tabak (1993), Tabak (2007), and US Department of Health and Human Services (2000)

endings, and these compounds' action on adrenergic receptors influences the activity of the salivary glands. For instance, salivary alpha-amylase is considered a *surrogate marker* of ANS activation, as are salivary measures of neuropeptide Y and vasoactive intestinal peptide.

Antibodies to specific antigens (e.g., HIV antibodies) comprise another group of salivary analytes. Table 2 offers several additional examples. Antibodies in oral fluids reflect an individual's immunological history and pathogen/microbe exposure. Further, depending on the specific antibody measured, they may reflect local and/or systemic immune activity. To date, relatively few biobehavioral studies have taken advantage of the information provided by salivary antibodies.

A variety of pharmaceuticals, abused substances, and environmental contaminants can be quantitatively monitored in oral fluids (see Table 2). One example is bisphenol-A (BPA) – a constituent of polycarbonate plastic and epoxy resins used in water bottles, baby bottles, and food containers that may leach into food and drink. Daily BPA exposures below the US Human Exposure limit (50 ug/kg/day) have been linked to permanent changes in genitalia, early puberty, and reversal of sex differences in brain structure (Maffini et al. 2006).

A final group of analytes has been made possible by recent technical advances allowing high quantity and quality DNA to be extracted from whole saliva (Zimmerman et al. 2007). Saliva samples collected to assess individual differences in salivary analytes, and biomarkers can yield reliable and valid information about genetic polymorphism.

Conclusion and Future Directions: As the gateway to the body, the mouth senses and responds to the external world, and reflects what is happening inside the body. Oral fluids provide insight into environmental exposures and contaminants, and serve as an early warning system for disease and infection. Genetic analyses using oral fluids can help explain individual differences, predict outcomes of medical treatments, and identify polymorphisms that affect disease risk and resilience. As the number of substances

that can be reliably measured in saliva increases, oral fluid may become an increasingly attractive alternative to collecting blood. The wealth of information provided by salivary analytes has the potential to greatly enrich behavioral medicine research.

Cross-References

- [Adrenal Glands](#)
- [Adrenergic Activation](#)
- [Antibodies](#)
- [Autonomic Nervous System \(ANS\)](#)
- [Behavioral Immunology](#)
- [Biobehavioral Mechanisms](#)
- [Central Nervous System](#)
- [Chronobiology](#)
- [Circadian Rhythm](#)
- [Cortisol](#)
- [Genetics](#)
- [Public Health](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Readings

- Adam, E. (2006). Transactions among adolescent trait and state emotion and diurnal and momentary cortisol activity in naturalistic settings. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 31, 664–679.
- Arendorf, T. M., Bredekamp, B., Cloete, C. A., & Sauer, G. (1998). Oral manifestations of HIV infection in 600 South African patients. *Journal of Oral Pathology & Medicine*, 27, 176–179.
- Beall, C. M., Worthman, C. M., Stallings, J., Strohl, K. P., Brittenham, G. M., & Barragan, M. (1992). Salivary testosterone concentration of Aymara men native to 3,600 m. *Annals of Human Biology*, 19, 67–78.
- Beltzer, E. K., Fortunato, C. K., Guaderrama, M. M., Peckins, M. K., Garramone, B. M., & Granger, D. A. (2010). Salivary flow on alpha-amylase: Collection technique, duration, and oral fluid type. *Physiology and Behavior*, 101, 289–296.
- Booth, A., Johnson, D. R., Granger, D. A., Crouter, A. C., & McHale, S. (2003). Testosterone and child and adolescent adjustment: The moderating role of parent-child relationships. *Developmental Psychology*, 39, 85–98.
- Brandtzaeg, P. (2007). Do salivary antibodies reliably reflect both mucosal and systemic immunity? *Annals of the New York Academy of Science*, 1098, 288–311.
- Bryk, A. S., & Raudenbush, S. W. (1992). *Hierarchical linear models*. Newbury Park: Sage.

- Carter, C. S., Pournajafi-Nazarloo, H., Kramer, K. M., Ziegler, T. E., White-Traut, R., Bello, D., & Schwertz, D. (2007). Oxytocin: Behavioral associations and potential as a salivary biomarker. *Annals of the New York Academy of Science*, 1098, 312–322.
- Chard, T. (1990). *An introduction to radioimmunoassay and related techniques* (4th ed.). Amsterdam, NY: Elsevier.
- Cone, E. J., & Huestis, M. A. (2007). Interpretation of oral fluid tests for drugs of abuse. *Annals of the New York Academy of Science*, 1098, 51–103.
- Dabbs, J. M., Jr. (1991). Salivary testosterone measurements: Collecting, storing, and mailing saliva samples. *Physiology and Behavior*, 49, 815–817.
- Dawidson, I., Blom, M., Lundeborg, T., Theodorsson, E., & Angmar-Mansson, B. (1997). Neuropeptides in the saliva of healthy subjects. *Life Sciences*, 60, 269–278.
- Flinn, M. V., & England, B. G. (1995). Childhood stress and family environment. *Current Anthropology*, 36, 854–866.
- Granger, D. A., Kivlighan, K. T., Fortunato, C., Harmon, A. G., Hibel, L. C., Schwartz, E. B., & Whemolua, G.-L. (2007). Integration of salivary biomarkers into developmental and behaviorally-oriented research: Problems and solutions for collecting specimens. *Physiology and Behavior*, 92, 583–590.
- Granger, D. A., Hibel, L. C., Fortunato, C. K., & Kapelewski, C. H. (2009). Medication effects on salivary cortisol: Tactics and strategy to minimize impact in behavioral and developmental science. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 34, 1437–1448.
- Groschl, M., & Rauh, M. (2006). Influence of commercial collection devices for saliva on the reliability of salivary steroids analysis. *Steroids*, 71, 1097–1100.
- Gunnar, M. R., & Vasquez, D. (2001). Low cortisol and a flattening of the expected daytime rhythm: Potential indices of risk in human development. *Development and Psychopathology*, 13, 515–538.
- Gunnar, M., Mangelsdorf, S., Larson, M., & Hertzgaard, L. (1989). Attachment, temperament, and adrenocortical activity in infancy: A study of psychoendocrine regulation. *Developmental Psychology*, 3, 355–363.
- Haeckel, R., & Bucklitsch, I. (1987). Procedures for saliva sampling. *Journal of Clinical Chemistry and Biochemistry*, 25, 199–204.
- Harmon, A. G., Hibel, L. C., Rumyansteva, O., & Granger, D. A. (2007). Measuring salivary cortisol in studies of child development: Watch out—what goes in may not come out of saliva collection devices. *Developmental Psychobiology*, 49, 495–500.
- Harmon, A. G., Towe, N. R., Fortunato, C. K., & Granger, D. A. (2008). Differences in saliva collection location and disparities in baseline and diurnal rhythms of alpha-amylase: A preliminary note of caution. *Hormones and Behavior*, 54, 592–596.
- Hellhammer, J., Fries, E., Schweusthal, O. W., Schlotz, W., Stone, A. A., & Hagemann, D. (2007). Several daily measurements are necessary to reliably assess the cortisol rise after awakening: State- and trait components. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 32, 80–86.
- Horvat-Gordon, M., Granger, D. A., Schwartz, E. B., Nelson, V., & Kivlighan, K. T. (2005). Oxytocin is not a valid biomarker when measured in saliva by immunoassay. *Physiology and Behavior*, 16, 445–448.
- Hu, S., Loo, J. A., & Wong, D. T. (2007). Human saliva proteome analysis. *Annals of the New York Academy of Science*, 1098, 323–329.
- Kivlighan, K. T., Granger, D. A., Schwartz, E. B., Nelson, V., Curran, M., & Shirtcliff, E. A. (2004). Quantifying blood leakage into the oral mucosa and its effects on the measurement of cortisol, dehydroepiandrosterone, and testosterone in saliva. *Hormones and Behavior*, 46, 39–46.
- Kugler, J., Hess, M., & Haake, D. (1992). Secretion of salivary immunoglobulin A in relation to age, saliva flow, mood states, secretion of albumin, cortisol, and catecholamines in saliva. *Journal of Clinical Immunology*, 12, 45–49.
- Maffini, M. V., Rubin, B. S., Sonnenschein, C., & Soto, A. M. (2006). Endocrine disruptors and reproductive health: The case of bisphenol-A. *Molecular and Cellular Endocrinology*, 254, 179–186.
- Malamud, D., & Tabak, L. (1993). Saliva as a diagnostic fluid. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 694, 216–233.
- McArdle, J. J., & Bell, R. Q. (2000). An introduction to latent growth models for developmental data analysis. In T. D. Little, K. U. Schnabel, & J. Baumert (Eds.), *Modeling longitudinal and multiple-group data: Practical issues, applied approaches, and specific examples* (pp. 69–107). Hillsdale: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- McArdle, J. J., & Nesselroade, J. (1994). Using multivariate data to structure developmental change. In S. H. Cohen & H. W. Reese (Eds.), *Life-span developmental psychology* (pp. 223–267). Hillsdale: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Melnick, R., Lucier, G., Wolfe, M., Hall, R., Stancel, G., Prins, G., Gallo, M., Reuhl, K., Ho, S. M., Brown, T., Moore, J., Leakey, J., Haseman, J., & Kohn, M. (2002). Summary of the national toxicology program's report of the endocrine disruptors low-dose peer review. *Environmental Health Perspectives*, 110, 427–431.
- Nater, U. M., Rohleder, N., Schlotz, W., Ehler, U., & Kirschbaum, C. (2007). Determinants of the diurnal course of salivary alpha-amylase. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 32, 392–401.
- Nelson, R. J. (2005). *An introduction to behavioral endocrinology*. Sunderland: Sinauer Associates.
- Nemoda, Z., Horvat-Gordon, M., Fortunato, C. K., Beltzer, E. K., Scholl, J. L., & Granger, D. A. (2011). Assessing genetic polymorphisms using DNA extracted from cells present in saliva samples. *BMC Medical Research Methodology*, 11, 170.
- Nieuw Amerongen, A. V., Ligtenberg, A. J. M., & Veerman, E. C. I. (2007). Implications for diagnostics in the biochemistry and physiology of saliva. *Annals of the New York Academy of Science*, 1098, 1–6.
- Paster, B. J., Boches, S. K., Galvin, J. L., Ericson, R. E., Lau, C. N., Levanos, V. A., Sahasrabudhe, A., & Dewhirst, F. E. (2001). Bacterial diversity in human

subgingival plaque. *Journal of Bacteriology*, 183, 3770–3783.

- Pruessner, J., Kirschbaum, C., Meinlschmid, G., & Hellhammer, D. H. (2003). Two formulas for computation of the area under the curve represent measures of total hormone concentration versus time-dependent change. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 28, 916–931.
- Raff, H., Homar, P. J., & Skoner, D. P. (2003). New enzyme immunoassay for salivary cortisol. *Clinical Chemistry*, 49, 203–204.
- Rees, T. D. (1992). Oral effects of drug abuse. *Critical Reviews in Oral Biology and Medicine*, 3, 163–184.
- Reibel, J. (2003). Tobacco and oral diseases. Update on the evidence, with recommendations. *Medical Principles and Practice*, 12(Suppl. 1), 22–32.
- Santavirta, N., Kontinen, Y. T., Tornwall, J., Segerberg, M., Santavirta, S., Matucci-Cerinic, M., & Bjorvell, H. (1997). Neuropeptides of the autonomic nervous system in Sjogren's syndrome. *Annals of Rheumatoid Disease*, 56, 737–740.
- Scannapieco, F. A., Papandonatos, G. D., & Dunford, R. G. (1998). Associations between oral conditions and respiratory disease in a national sample survey population. *Annals of Periodontology*, 3, 251–256.
- Schwartz, E. B., Granger, D. A., Susman, E. J., Gunnar, M. R., & Laird, B. (1998). Assessing salivary cortisol in studies of child development. *Child Development*, 69, 1503–1513.
- Shirtcliff, E. A., Granger, D. A., Schwartz, E. B., & Curran, M. J. (2001). Use of salivary biomarkers in biobehavioral research: Cotton based sample collection methods can interfere with salivary immunoassay results. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 26, 165–173.
- Smyth, J. M., Ockenfels, M. C., Gorin, A. A., Cately, D., Porter, L. S., Kirschbaum, C., Hellhammer, D. H., & Stone, A. A. (1997). Individual differences in the diurnal cycle of cortisol. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 22, 89–105.
- Sreebny, L. M., & Schwartz, S. S. (1997). A reference guide to drugs and dry mouth – 2nd edition. *Gerodontology*, 14, 33–47.
- Stone, A. A., Broderick, J. E., Schwartz, J. E., Shiffman, S., Litcher-Kelly, L., & Calvanese, P. (2003). Intensive momentary reporting of pain with an electronic diary: Reactivity, compliance, and patient satisfaction. *Pain*, 104, 343–351.
- Tabak, L. A. (2007). Point-of-care diagnostics enter the mouth. *Annals of the New York Academy of Science*, 1098, 7–14.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2000). *Oral health in America: A report of the surgeon general*. Rockville: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, National Institute of Dental and Craniofacial Research, National Institutes of Health.
- Veerman, E. C. I., Van Den Keijbus, P. A. M., Vissink, A., & Nieuw Amerongen, A. V. (1996). Human glandular saliva: Their separate collection and analysis. *European Journal of Oral Science*, 104, 346–352.
- Zimmerman, B. G., Park, N. J., & Wong, D. T. (2007). Genomic targets in saliva. *Annals of the New York Academy of Science*, 1098, 184–191.

Salt, Intake

Kelly Doran

University of Maryland, Baltimore School of Nursing, Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

Sodium; Sodium chloride

Definition

Salt is a dietary element made up of sodium and chlorine (U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2011a).

Description

A majority (90%) of sodium consumed comes from salt (Centers for Disease Control & Prevention 2011). The body needs a small amount of sodium for fluid regulation, nerve impulse transmission, and muscle function. The kidneys are responsible for retaining sodium (if body stores are low) or excreting sodium through urine (if body stores are too high). However, if the kidneys do not excrete enough sodium, the excess sodium will accumulate in the blood. This can lead to high blood pressure, from an increase in fluid volume in the arteries, ultimately putting additional stress on the heart (Mayo Clinic 2011a; U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2011a).

Recommendations

For children ages 1–3, 4–8, and 9–13, the recommended daily sodium intake is 1,500 mg, ≤1,900 mg, and ≤2,200 mg, respectively. Those ages 14 and older are recommended to consume ≤2,300 mg a day (U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human

Services 2015). However, the American Heart Association recommends the general public to reduce their sodium intake to no more than 1,500 mg per day (American Heart Association Presidential Advisory 2011). In addition, those with certain diseases (e.g., cirrhosis and congestive heart failure) may be recommended lower sodium intake levels by their primary care providers (U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2011b).

A half of a teaspoon of salt is approximately 1,200 mg of sodium, and one teaspoon of salt is approximately 2,300 mg of sodium (American Heart Association 2011). More than 85% of Americans consume 2,300 mg of sodium or more a day; the average intake of sodium for Americans over 2 years of age is 3,400 mg per day (Centers for Disease Control & Prevention 2011; U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2010). Diets high in sodium have been associated with an increased risk for high blood pressure, heart disease, and stroke (American Heart Association 2011). Generally, when salt intake is reduced, it only takes a few weeks for blood pressure to decrease (Centers for Disease Control & Prevention 2011).

Identifying Sources of Sodium

Most foods naturally contain sodium (U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2011b); however, this form of sodium only accounts for about 12% of daily sodium intake. An additional 11% of sodium intake comes from cooking at home and adding salt while eating. A majority (77%) of the sodium Americans consume comes from processed foods, foods bought at stores, packaged foods, and foods cooked at restaurants (Centers for Disease Control & Prevention 2010). Sodium is added to foods to act as a preservative, cure meat, retain moisture, and enhance color and flavor (American Heart Association 2011; U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2010). When food and beverages were

grouped in 96 categories, the top six categories that contributed the most sodium to Americans' diets included yeast breads, chicken and chicken mixed dishes, pizza, pasta and pasta dishes, cold cuts, and condiments (National Cancer Institute 2010).

Reading food labels is important for determining sodium intake because milligrams of sodium in food can vary even for the same type of food. For instance, a slice of frozen pizza can range from 450 to 1,200 mg of sodium (Centers for Disease Control & Prevention 2011). However, caution should be used reading the %DV (daily value) on the food label because the percentage is based on 2,400 mg, which is 100 or 900 mg higher than the recommended daily sodium intake depending on recommended group (U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2015; U.S. Food and Drug Administration 2011; American Heart Association Presidential Advisory 2011). Food packaging messages can be confusing (Centers for Disease Control & Prevention 2011). For example, a package message titled unsalted or no salt added simply means no salt was added while processing the food; yet, reading the label is important because some of the ingredients may contain sodium (Mayo Clinic 2011b). Additionally, looking at the ingredients list can help determine if sodium was added. Sodium is sometimes called different names; some examples include baking soda, monosodium glutamate, and sodium nitrite (U.S. National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2011b; Mayo Clinic 2011b).

Methods for Reducing Sodium

Some methods for reducing the amount of sodium consumed can include (Mayo Clinic 2011b; National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute n.d.; National Library of Medicine and National Institutes of Health 2010; U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services 2010; American Heart Association 2011):

- Following specific heart-healthy diets (e.g., dietary approaches to stop hypertension, which is also called the DASH diet)
- Eating fresh foods
- Using food labels to purchase items low in sodium
- Ordering lower sodium items when eating out
- Using healthy salt substitutes to replace salt

Cross-References

► Hypertension

References and Further Readings

- American Heart Association. (2011). Sodium (salt or sodium chloride). Retrieved 15 Apr 2011, from http://www.heart.org/HEARTORG/GettingHealthy/NutritionCenter/HealthyDietGoals/Sodium-Salt-or-Sodium-Chloride_UCM_303290_Article.jsp
- American Heart Association Presidential Advisory. (2011). Population-wide reduction in salt consumption recommended. Retrieved 15 Apr 2011, from <http://www.newsroom.heart.org/index.php?s=43%26item=1237>
- Centers for Disease Control & Prevention. (2010). Sodium and food sources. Retrieved 15 Apr 2011, from <http://www.cdc.gov/salt/food.htm>
- Centers for Disease Control & Prevention. (2011). Sodium fact sheet. Retrieved 15 Apr 2011, from http://www.cdc.gov/dhds/data_statistics/fact_sheets/fs_sodium.htm
- Mayo Clinic. (2011a). Sodium: How to tame your salt habit now. Retrieved 15 Apr 2011, from <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/sodium/NU00284>
- Mayo Clinic. (2011b). Sodium: How to tame your salt habit now (continued). Retrieved 15 Apr 2011, from <http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/sodium/NU00284/NSECTIONGROUP=2>
- National Cancer Institute. (2010). Sources of sodium among the US population, 2005–06. Risk factor monitoring and methods branch website. *Applied Research Program*. Retrieved 22 Mar 2012, from <http://riskfactor.cancer.gov/diet/foodsources/sodium/>
- National Library of Medicine, & National Institutes of Health. (2010). Tasty stand-ins for salt. *NIH Medline Plus*, 5, 15.
- National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute. (2003). Your guide to lowering high blood pressure: Healthy eating. Retrieved 15 Apr 2011, from http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/hbp/prevent/h_eating/h_eating.htm
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, & U.S. Department of Agriculture. (2010). Available at <http://health.gov/dietaryguidelines/dga2010/dietaryguidelines2010.pdf>
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, & U.S. Department of Agriculture. (2015–2020). *Dietary guidelines for Americans* (8th ed.). Dec 2015. Available at <http://health.gov/dietaryguidelines/2015/guidelines/>
- U.S. Food and Drug Administration (2011). How to understand and use the nutrition facts label. Retrieved 15 Apr 2011, from <http://www.fda.gov/food/labelingnutrition/consumerinformation/ucm078889.htm>
- U.S. National Library of Medicine, & National Institutes of Health (2011a). Dietary sodium. Retrieved 15 Apr 2011, from <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/dietarysodium.html>
- U.S. National Library of Medicine, & National Institutes of Health (2011b). Sodium in diet. Retrieved 15 Apr 2011, from <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/002415.htm>

Salutogenesis

Sefik Tagay

Department of Psychosomatic Medicine and Psychotherapy, University of Duisburg-Essen, Essen, North Rhine-Westphalia, Germany

Synonyms

Hardiness; Resilience; Self-efficacy; Sense of coherence

Definition

The medical sociologist Aaron Antonovsky (1923–1994) introduced the term “salutogenesis” which derives from the Latin “salus = health” and the Greek “genesis = origin.” Antonovsky was mainly interested in the question of what creates and what sustains health rather than explaining the causes of disease in the pathogenic direction (Antonovsky 1979, 1987, 1993). In his salutogenetic model, he described health as a continuum between total ease (health) and total disease rather than a health-disease dichotomy. Therefore, his most important research question was: What causes health (salutogenesis)? (rather than what are

the reasons for disease (pathogenesis)). The core concepts of salutogenesis show great conceptual overlap with the theory of “hardy personality” (Kobasa 1979, 1982), the theory of “self-efficacy” (Bandura 1977), and with the theory of “resilience” (Werner and Smith 1982).

The central terms of the salutogenetic theory are sense of coherence (SOC) and general resistance resources (GRRs). Antonovsky postulates that the status of health and well-being depends on these personal and environmental resources (Antonovsky 1979, 1987).

Description

Sense of Coherence (SOC)

Sense of coherence explains why humans in stressful situations stay well and are even able to improve their physical, mental, and social well-being. Antonovsky (1993) suggested that SOC depicts a stable and long-lasting way of looking at the world. He postulated that SOC is mainly formed in the first three decades of life and then becomes relatively stable.

Antonovsky defined SOC as a:

Global orientation that expresses the extent to which one has a pervasive, enduring though dynamic feeling of confidence that (1) the stimuli, deriving from one’s internal and external environments in the course of living are structured, predictable, and explicable; (2) the resources are available to one to meet the demands posed by these stimuli; and (3) these demands are challenges, worthy of investment and engagement. (Antonovsky 1987, p. 19)

The SOC consists of three dimensions (Antonovsky 1987) as follows:

1. *Comprehensibility (cognitive component)*: The internal and external environments are interpreted as understandable, consistent, structured, and predictable.
2. *Manageability (behavioral component)*: Individuals consider resources to be personally available to help them cope adequately with demands or problems.

3. *Meaningfulness (motivational component)*:

This dimension refers to the extent to which a person feels that life makes sense, and that problems and demands are worth investing energy in. Additionally, it determines whether a situation is appraised as challenging, and whether it is worth making commitments and investments in order to cope with it.

According to Antonovsky (1987) the third component is the most important aspect of SOC.

General Resistance Resources (GRRs)

The general resistance resources (GRRs) are biological and psychosocial factors that make it easier for people to perceive their lives as predictable, controllable, and understandable. Typical GRRs are money, intelligence, social support, self-esteem, ego-strength, healthy behavior, traditions, and culture. These types of resources can help the person to deal in a better way with the challenges of life. In general, the GRRs lead to life experiences that promote a better SOC (Antonovsky 1987).

Measuring Sense of Coherence

With the Sense of Coherence (SOC) Scale, there is only one instrument that measures sense of coherence worldwide. Antonovsky (1987) developed the SOC as a self-report questionnaire with Likert-type items; higher scores indicate a better SOC. This instrument exists in a long form (SOC-29) and in a short form (SOC-13). In the long form, 11 items refer to “comprehensibility,” 8 items refer to “meaningfulness,” and 10 items refer to “manageability.” The SOC scale is a reliable, valid, and cross-culturally applicable instrument. SOC seems to be a multidimensional concept rather than a unidimensional one (Eriksson and Lindström 2005). By 2007, the SOC questionnaire has been used in at least 44 languages all over the world (Singer and Brähler 2007).

Sense of Coherence and Health (Empirical Evidence)

Empirical evidence shows a strong association between SOC and mental health. A large number

of studies consistently reveal a negative relationship of SOC with depression, anxiety, and post-traumatic symptoms (Antonovsky 1993; Eriksson and Lindström 2007; Tagay et al. 2006, 2009). In a recent review, Eriksson and Lindström (2007) synthesized empirical findings on SOC and examined its capacity to explain health and its dimensions. SOC was strongly related to perceived health. The stronger the SOC, the better the perceived health in general. This relation was manifested in study populations regardless of age, sex, ethnicity, nationality, and study design. Therefore, numerous authors assert that there is substantial empirical support for the idea that SOC promotes health. A strong SOC is associated with successful coping with the inevitable stressors that individuals encounter in the course of their daily lives, and therefore, with better outcomes (Antonovsky 1993; Eriksson and Lindström 2007). All in all, SOC seems to have a main, moderating, or mediating role in the explanation of health, and it seems to be able to predict health (Schnyder et al. 1999; Tagay et al. 2011).

Cross-References

- [Coping](#)
- [Health](#)
- [Optimism](#)
- [Self-Esteem](#)
- [Stress](#)
- [Well-Being](#)

References and Readings

- Antonovsky, A. (1979). *Health, stress, and coping*. San Francisco/Washington/London: Jossey-Bass.
- Antonovsky, A. (1987). *Unraveling the mystery of health*. San Francisco/London: Jossey-Bass.
- Antonovsky, A. (1993). The structure and properties of the sense of coherence scale. *Social Science & Medicine*, 36, 725–733.
- Bandura, A. (1977). Self-efficacy: Toward a unifying theory of behavioral change. *Psychological Review*, 84, 191–215.
- Eriksson, M., & Lindström, B. (2005). Validity of Antonovsky's sense of coherence scale. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 59, 460–466.
- Eriksson, M., & Lindström, B. (2007). Antonovsky's sense of coherence scale and its relation with quality of life – a systematic review. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 61, 938–944.
- Kobasa, S. C. (1979). Stressful life events, personality, and health. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 37, 1–11.
- Kobasa, S. C. (1982). The hardy personality: Toward a social psychology of stress and health. In G. S. Sanders & J. Suls (Eds.), *Social psychology of health and illness* (pp. 3–32). Hillsdale: Erlbaum.
- Schnyder, U., Büchi, S., Mörgeli, H., Senky, T., & Klaghofer, R. (1999). Sense of coherence—a mediator between disability and handicap? *Psychotherapy and Psychosomatics*, 68, 102–110.
- Singer, S., & Brähler, E. (2007). *Die "Sense of coherence scale". Testhandbuch zur deutschen Version*. Göttingen: Vandenhoeck & Ruprecht.
- Tagay, S., Erim, Y., Brähler, E., & Senf, W. (2006). Religiosity and sense of coherence – protective factors of mental health and well-being? *Zeitschrift für Medizinische Psychologie*, 4, 165–171.
- Tagay, S., Mewes, R., Brähler, E., & Senf, W. (2009). Sense of coherence in female patients with bulimia nervosa: A protective factor of mental health? *Psychiatrische Praxis*, 36, 30–34.
- Tagay, S., Düllmann, S., Schlegel, S., Nater-Mewes, R., Repic, N., Hampke, C., Brähler, E., Gerlach, G., & Senf, W. (2011). Effects of inpatient treatment on eating disorder symptoms, health-related quality of life and personal resources in anorexia and bulimia nervosa. *Psychotherapie, Psychosomatik, Medizinische Psychologie*, 61(7), 319–327.
- Werner, E., & Smith, R. (1982). *Vulnerable but invincible. A longitudinal study of resilient children and youth*. New York: McGraw Hill.

Sample Size Estimation

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Sample-size calculation](#); [Sample-size determination](#); [Study size](#)

Definition

Sample-size estimation is the process by which a researcher decides how many subjects to include

in a given clinical trial. Sample-size estimation is a critical part of the design of clinical trials, and, like all design issues, this must be addressed in the study protocol before the trial commences.

Description

Many sources use the terms sample-size determination or sample-size calculation when discussing this issue. The term sample-size estimation emphasizes that deciding on the sample size that will be employed in a clinical trial is a process of estimation that involves both statistical and clinical informed judgment and not a process of simply calculating the “right” answer. It is true that mathematical calculations are made in this process, and, for a given set of values that are placed into the appropriate formula in any given circumstance, a precise answer will be given. However, the values that are placed into the formula are chosen by the researcher.

Some of the values that need to be entered into the formula are typically chosen from a standard set of possibilities, with the researcher deciding which of several generally acceptable values is best suited for the intentions of a given trial. Other values are estimates based on data that may be available in existing literature or may have been collected in an earlier trial. These include the estimated treatment effect and the variability associated with the estimated treatment effect.

The likelihood of a successful outcome (at least from the point of view that “success” means obtaining a statistically significant result) can be increased by increasing the sample size. When designing a study, the researcher wants to ensure that a large enough sample size is chosen to be able to detect an important difference that does in fact exist. It is certainly possible that a trial can fail to demonstrate such a difference simply because the sample size chosen was too small. Therefore, it might appear reasonable to think that a very big sample size is a good idea. However, increasing the sample size increases the expenses, difficulties and overall length of a trial. Somewhere, for each researcher and each study, an acceptable sample size needs to be chosen that balances the likelihood

of a statistically significant result with the cost and time involved in conducting the clinical trial.

Several variables need to be considered in the process of sample-size estimation. The values of these variables in any given case can be chosen by the researcher based on several considerations. Relevant terms include:

- Type I errors and Type II errors. A Type I error occurs when a significant result is “found” when it does not really exist, and a Type II error occurs when one fails to find a significant difference that actually exists.
- The probability of making a Type I error, α . This is also the level of statistical significance chosen, typically 0.05, but it is possible to choose 0.01 or even more conservative values.
- The probability of making a Type II error, β . A probability value must be between 0 and 1: therefore, β will be between 0 and 1.
- Power, calculated as $1 - \beta$. Since the probability represented by β will be between 0 and 1, power will also be between 0 and 1 since it is defined as $1 - \beta$. The power of a statistical test is the probability that the null hypothesis is rejected when it is indeed false. Since rejecting the null hypothesis when it is false is extremely desirable, it is generally regarded that the power of a study should be as great as practically feasible.

Sample-size estimation can be performed for any study design. In each case, the respective formula will be used to estimate the sample size required. For the formula used in the type of study design discussed in some entries in the Methodology section (i.e., a comparison of a new behavioral medicine treatment or intervention with an existing one), each of the variables we have discussed will have certain influences on the sample size, N , that will be given by the formula. These influences, i.e., their relationships with N given that all of the others remain the same, can be summarized as follows:

- The smaller the chosen value of α , the larger the value of N that will be given.

- The smaller the chosen value of β , the larger the value of N that will be given. This is because power is defined as $1 - \beta$. As β decreases, power increases; as power increases, the larger the value of N that will be given.
- The larger the standardized effect size, the smaller the value of N that will be given. The standardized treatment effect is the estimated treatment effect divided by the variability associated with it.

Cross-References

- [False-Negative Error](#)
- [False-Positive Error](#)
- [Probability](#)
- [Study Protocol](#)

Sample-Size Calculation

- [Sample Size Estimation](#)

Sample-Size Determination

- [Sample Size Estimation](#)

Sarcopenia

Oliver J. Wilson¹ and Anton J. M. Wagenmakers²

¹Institute for Sport, Physical Activity and Leisure, Leeds Beckett University, Leeds, UK

²Research Institute for Sport and Exercise Sciences, Liverpool John Moores University, Liverpool, UK

Synonyms

[Anabolic resistance](#); [Disuse atrophy](#); [Skeletal muscle atrophy](#)

Definition

Sarcopenia is a syndrome characterized by a progressive generalized loss of skeletal muscle mass and strength with a risk of adverse outcomes such as physical disability, poor quality of life, and death. Sarcopenia is derived from Greek “sarx” for flesh and “penia” for loss.

Description

The global population aged 60 years or older is expected to more than double from 901 million in the year 2015 to 2.1 billion by 2050 (www.un.org). A common result of the aging process is the loss of skeletal muscle mass. This is associated with metabolic disease such as type 2 diabetes (Park et al. 2009), impaired physical performance (e.g., walking and rising from a chair), self-reported disability (Janssen et al. 2002), and the increased risk of accidental falls (Szulc et al. 2005) and fractures (Fiatarone Singh et al. 2009). Hip fractures are among the most common site of fracture in elderly individuals (Johnell and Kanis 2006), and elderly hip fracture patients have a threefold higher all-cause age- and sex-standardized risk of mortality than the general population (Panula et al. 2011). Consequently, maintaining muscle mass will be very important for lowering the socioeconomic burden of an aging population.

The age-related loss of skeletal muscle mass and physical function was termed sarcopenia by Rosenberg (1989). The European Working Group on Sarcopenia in Older People (EWGSOP) now defines sarcopenia as “a syndrome characterized by progressive and generalized loss of skeletal muscle mass and strength with a risk of adverse outcomes such as physical disability, poor quality of life and death” (Cruz-Jentoff et al. 2010). The EWGSOP suggests three stages of severity for sarcopenia that depends on the cutoff points appropriate to the measurement technique used to measure muscle mass, strength, and physical performance. The “presarcopenia” stage is present in individuals who combine a low muscle mass

without impact on skeletal muscle strength or physical performance. “Sarcopenia” is the stage in which individuals combine a low muscle mass with either a low muscle strength or low physical performance. Finally, “severe sarcopenia” is present in individuals who combine a low muscle mass with a low muscle strength and low physical performance. In a systematic review, the estimated prevalence of sarcopenia using EWGSOP criteria was 1–29% in community-dwelling individuals and 14–33% of those receiving long-term care (Cruz-Jentoft et al. 2014). Using other diagnostic criteria, Baumgartner et al. (1998) observed the prevalence of sarcopenia in >50% of males and females aged >80 years.

Sarcopenia can be masked by weight stability in the presence of a concomitant increase in fat mass. However, the prolonged accumulation of fat mass can lead to obesity, resulting in “sarcopenic obesity.” This presents further complications as excess fat mass which, in association with chronic low-level pro-inflammatory cytokines, can result in the development of insulin resistance in a variety of tissues such as the endothelium of the microvasculature and within skeletal muscle fibers. This leads to periods of hyperglycemia, hyperinsulinemia, and hyperlipidemia and the development of type 2 diabetes and cardiovascular disease (Wagenmakers et al. 2006, 2016).

The genesis of sarcopenia can be attributable to physical inactivity and inadequate nutrition among other factors (Table 1).

Effect of Age on Skeletal Muscle

Skeletal muscle mass peaks between 20 and 30 years of age and the loss of muscle mass begins in the fourth decade (Janssen et al. 2000). The loss of muscle mass is more notable in lower than upper limbs (Janssen et al. 2000) with leg skeletal muscle mass lost at an average rate of approximately 1% per year for males and females during their eighth decade (Goodpaster et al. 2006). Most individuals aged over 70 years will possess about 80% of the muscle mass of those aged 20–30 years.

Sarcopenia, Table 1 Summary of the potential mechanisms underpinning sarcopenia

Whole body
Reduced physical activity and muscle disuse
Loss of motor neurons
Reduced growth hormone and insulin-like growth factor-I production
Chronic pro-inflammatory state
Increased glucocorticoid production and receptor activity
Malnutrition
Muscular
Reduced number and proliferative capacity of skeletal muscle satellite cells
Mitochondrial DNA mutations and apoptosis
Increased intracellular production of glucocorticoids
Impaired insulin-mediated increase in microvascular perfusion
Blunting of the effects of amino acids on muscle protein synthesis
Blunting of the effects of insulin on muscle protein breakdown
Impaired transcriptional responses of muscle to exercise and nutrition

Leg strength can be lost at an average rate of approximately 2.8% and 3.8% per year for females and males aged >70 years over a 3-year period (Goodpaster et al. 2006). This exceeds the annual loss of muscle mass and suggests a reduction in muscle quality (force per unit area of tissue) with age. Muscle power also declines with age, and low muscle power is associated with a two- to threefold greater risk of impaired physical performance than low muscle strength (Bean et al. 2003). The effect of age on muscle strength and power has been termed dynapenia (Manini and Clark 2012). The loss of skeletal muscle mass and strength is evident even in those who engage in regular aerobic or resistance exercise.

Sarcopenia and dynapenia have been linked to the age-related loss of spinal motor neurons (Aagaard et al. 2010). This leads to a reduction in the number and size of muscle fibers and results in impaired muscle mechanical performance (Aagaard et al. 2010). Some of the denervated muscle fibers are reinnervated by surviving motor units, leading to the formation of very

large motor units and the appearance of fiber-type grouping (Andersen 2003). Of the remaining muscle fibers, atrophy is more notable in type II fibers. In people aged 88 years, type II fibers had atrophied in size to about 43% of a matched group of 25-year-olds, but type I fibers had atrophied in size to about 75% of their younger counterparts (Andersen 2003). These effects, in combination with an age-related decline in neuromuscular function, lead to impaired muscle mechanical performance and a reduced ability to complete normal daily living tasks such as walking and rising from a chair (Aagaard et al. 2010). Further age-related changes include the infiltration of fat and connective tissue within the muscle and a reduction in type II fiber satellite cell content (Koopman and van Loon 2009). A reduction in the oxidative capacity of skeletal muscle is also observed with age and is likely attributable to a reduction in mitochondrial content and/or function. This results in poor endurance and increased fatigability, compromising the ability to live an independent lifestyle. Poor oxidative capacity is also mechanistically linked to the development of insulin resistance and type 2 diabetes (Wagenmakers et al. 2006, 2016).

Protein Metabolism in the Elderly

Contemporary evidence suggests basal rates of muscle protein synthesis (MPS) and muscle protein breakdown (MPB) in the elderly equal that of younger individuals and does not explain the age-related loss of muscle mass (Wall et al. 2014). Instead, sarcopenia might be attributable to anabolic resistance, the reduced ability to mount a youthful response of MPS to protein ingestion, and/or muscle loading (Witard et al. 2016). The mechanisms underlying anabolic resistance remain to be elucidated, but impairments may exist at the cellular level (e.g., protein/amino acid digestion, absorption, and transport) and molecular level (e.g., Akt-mTOR-p70S6K signaling pathway) (Wall et al. 2014; Witard et al. 2016). These may impede the availability of amino acids for MPS and blunt the

sensing and transduction of amino acid- and/or insulin-dependent signaling, thereby limiting the stimulation of MPS and the inhibitory effects of insulin on MPB. As exercise increases the sensitivity of the muscle to the anabolic effects of protein intake, increasing the physical activity rates of the elderly may help counteract anabolic resistance (Wall et al. 2014).

Muscle loss and anabolic resistance may also develop through periods of reduced physical activity and muscle disuse. An accelerated loss of muscle mass and blunting of postprandial MPS in elderly individuals after 2 weeks of reduced daily physical activity have been reported (Breen et al. 2013). Suggestions have also been made that an accelerated loss of muscle mass during periods of illness leading to bed rest (<10 days) is irreversible and will lead to stepwise reductions in muscle mass (Wall et al. 2013).

The age-associated decline in daily physical activity and total energy expenditure also leads to a gradual reduction of both the calorie and protein intake, if the dietary protein content is kept constant. Consequently, sedentary and frail elders may fail to consume the current recommended daily allowance (RDA) for protein intake (0.8 g/kg body mass). An increase of the protein intake of the diet from ± 15 to ≥ 20 En% is enough to prevent this deficit (Houston et al. 2008). In addition, such an increase will be more effective in maximally stimulating (post-exercise) MPS and, therefore, attenuating the loss of muscle mass (Houston et al. 2008; Wall et al. 2014; Witard et al. 2016).

Resistance Training in the Elderly

Resistance exercise training is a potent stimulator of MPS, leading to increased muscle mass (mostly attributable to type II fiber hypertrophy) and strength in the young, elderly, frail elderly, and older individuals presenting with comorbidities. Resistance training therefore offers an effective strategy to counteract sarcopenia and improve functional muscle capacity. The American College of Sports Medicine (Chodzko-Zajko

et al. 2009) recommends progressive resistance training at least 2 days per week using 8–10 exercises involving the major muscle groups over 8–12 repetitions. Gains in muscular endurance of up to 200% have also been reported after completing moderate- to high-intensity resistance training (Chodzko-Zajko et al. 2009). An increase in mitochondrial protein content and oral glucose tolerance has also been reported in the elderly after resistance training (Frank et al. 2016).

Conclusion

Sarcopenia contributes to the increased risk of falls, fractures, and functional impairment and increased dependency. The loss of muscle mass is also associated with type 2 diabetes. Anabolic resistance to protein and exercise may contribute to the development of sarcopenia, and this may be further exacerbated through periods of reduced physical activity or bed rest. The accelerated loss of muscle mass during these periods may be irreversible. However, resistance exercise is a potent stimulator of MPS, and progressive resistance training results in improved muscle mass and strength and will give older individuals the confidence to continue to engage in aerobic exercise such as walking. The combination of resistance and aerobic exercise is optimal to maintain metabolic health until a very high age.

Cross-References

- [Atrophy](#)
- [Cytokines](#)
- [Glucocorticoids](#)
- [Insulin](#)
- [Physical Inactivity](#)

References and Further Readings

- Ågaard, P., Suetta, C., Caserotti, P., Magnusson, S. P., & Kjaer, M. (2010). Role of the nervous system in sarcopenia and muscle atrophy with aging: Strength training as a countermeasure. *Scandinavian Journal of Medicine & Science in Sports*, 20, 49–64.
- Andersen, J. L. (2003). Muscle fibre type adaptation in the elderly human muscle. *Scandinavian Journal of Medicine & Science in Sports*, 13, 40–47.
- Baumgartner, R. N., Koehler, K. M., Gallagher, D., Romero, L., Heymsfield, S. B., Ross, R. R., Garry, P. G., & Lindeman, R. D. (1998). Epidemiology of sarcopenia among the elderly in New Mexico. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 147(8), 755–763.
- Bean, J. F., Leveille, S. G., Kiely, D. K., Bandinelli, S., Guralnik, J. M., & Ferrucci, L. (2003). A comparison of leg power and leg strength within the InCHIANTI study: Which influences mobility more? *Journals of Gerontology. Series A, Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*, 58(8), 728–733.
- Breen, L., Stokes, K. A., Churchward-Venne, T. A., Moore, D. R., Baker, S. K., Smith, K., Atherton, P. J., & Phillips, S. M. (2013). Two weeks of reduced activity decreases leg lean mass and induces “anabolic resistance” of myofibrillar protein synthesis in healthy elderly. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 98(6), 2604–2612.
- Chodzko-Zajko, W. J., Proctor, D. N., Fiatarone Singh, M. A., Minson, C. T., Nigg, C. R., & Salem, G. J. (2009). Exercise and physical activity for older adults. *Medicine & Science in Sports & Exercise*, 41, 1510–1530.
- Cruz-Jentoff, A. J., Baeyens, J. P., Bauer, J. M., Boirie, J. M., Cederholm, T., Landi, F., Martin, F. C., Michel, J. P., Rolland, Y., Schneider, S. M., Topinkova, E., Vandewoude, M., & Zamboni, M. (2010). Sarcopenia: European consensus on definition and diagnosis: Report of the European working group on sarcopenia in older people. *Age and Ageing*, 39(4), 412–423.
- Cruz-Jentoft, A. J., Landi, F., Schneider, S. M., Zúñiga, C., Arai, H., Boirie, Y., Chen, L. K., Fielding, R. A., Martin, F. C., Michel, J. P., Sieber, C., Stout, J. R., Studenski, S. A., Vellas, B., Woo, J., Zamboni, M., & Cederholm, T. (2014). Prevalence of and interventions for sarcopenia in ageing adults: A systematic review. Report of the International Sarcopenia Initiative (EWGSOP and IWGS). *Age and Ageing*, 43(6), 748–759.
- Fiatarone Singh, M. A., Singh, N. A., Hansen, R. D., Finnegan, T. P., Allen, B. J., Diamond, T. H., Diwan, A. D., Lloyd, B. D., Williamson, D. A., Smith, E. U., Grady, J. N., Stavrinou, T. M., & Thompson, M. W. (2009). Methodology and baseline characteristics for the sarcopenia and hip fracture study: A 5-year prospective study. *Journal of Gerontological Advances in Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*, 64A(5), 568–574.
- Frank, P., Andersson, E., Pontén, M., Ekblom, B., Ekblom, M., & Sahlin, K. (2016). Strength training improves muscle aerobic capacity and glucose tolerance in elderly. *Scandinavian Journal of Medicine & Science in Sports*, 26(7), 764–773.
- Goodpaster, B. H., Park, S. W., Harris, T. B., Kritchevsky, S. B., Nevitt, M., Schwartz, A. V., Simonsick, E. M., Tykavsky, F. A., Visser, M., & Newman, A. B. (2006).

- The loss of skeletal muscle strength, mass, and quality in older adults: The health, aging and body composition study. *The Journals of Gerontology. Series A, Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*, 61(10), 1059–1064.
- Houston, D. K., Nicklas, B. J., Ding, J., Harris, T. B., Tylavsky, F. A., Newman, A. B., Lee, J. S., Sahyoun, N. R., Visser, M., Kritchevsky, S. B., & Health ABC Study. (2008). Dietary protein intake is associated with lean mass change in older, community-dwelling adults: The Health, Aging, and Body Composition (Health ABC) Study. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 87(1), 150–155.
- Janssen, I., Heymsfield, S. B., Wang, Z., & Ross, R. (2000). Skeletal muscle mass and distribution in 468 men and women aged 18–88 yr. *Journal of Applied Physiology*, 89(1), 81–88.
- Janssen, I., Heymsfield, S. B., & Ross, R. (2002). Low relative skeletal muscle mass (sarcopenia) in older persons is associated with functional impairment and physical disability. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 50(5), 889–896.
- Johnell, O., & Kanis. (2006). An estimate of the worldwide prevalence and disability associated with osteoporotic fractures. *Osteoporosis International*, 17, 1726–1733.
- Koopman, R., & van Loon, L. J. (2009). Aging, exercise, and muscle protein metabolism. *Journal of Applied Physiology*, 106, 2040–2048.
- Manini, T. M., & Clark, B. C. (2012). Dynapenia and aging: An update. *Journals of Gerontology. Series A, Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*, 67(1), 28–40.
- Panula, J., Pihlajamäki, H., Mattila, V. M., Jaatinen, P., Vahlberg, T., Aarnio, P., & Kivela, S. L. (2011). Mortality and cause of death in hip fracture patients aged 65 or older – A population-based study. *BMC Musculoskeletal Disorders*, 12(105), 1–6.
- Park, S. W., Goodpaster, B. H., Lee, J. S., Kuller, L. H., Boudreau, R., de Rekeneire, N., Harris, T. B., Kritchevsky, S., Tylavsky, F. A., Nevitt, M., Cho, Y. W., & Newman, A. B. (2009). Excessive loss of skeletal muscle mass in older people with type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care*, 32, 1993–1997.
- Rosenberg, I. (1989). Summary comments: Epidemiological and methodological problems in determining nutritional status of older persons. *American Journal of Clinical Nutrition*, 50, 1231–1233.
- Szulc, P., Beck, T. J., Marchand, F., & Delmas, P. D. (2005). Low skeletal muscle mass is associated with poor structural parameters of bone and impaired balance in elderly men – The MINOS study. *Journal of Bone and Mineral Research*, 20(5), 721–729.
- Wagenmakers, A. J., vanRiel, N. A., Frenneaux, M. P., & Stewart, P. M. (2006). Integration of the metabolic and cardiovascular effects of exercise. *Essays in Biochemistry*, 42, 193–210.
- Wagenmakers, A. J., Strauss, J. A., Shepherd, S. O., Keske, M. A., & Cocks, M. (2016). Increased muscle blood supply and transendothelial nutrient and insulin transport induced by food intake and exercise: Effect of obesity and ageing. *Journal of Physiology*, 594, 2207–2222.
- Wall, B. T., Dirks, M. L., & van Loon, L. J. C. (2013). Skeletal muscle atrophy during short-term disuse: Implications for age-related sarcopenia. *Ageing Research Reviews*, 12, 898–906.
- Wall, B. T., Cermak, N. M., & van Loon, L. J. C. (2014). Dietary protein considerations to support active ageing. *Sports Medicine*, 44(2), S185–S194.
- Witard, O. C., McGlory, C., Hamilton, D. L., & Phillips, S. M. (2016). Growing older with health and vitality: A nexus of physical activity, exercise and nutrition. *Biogerontology*, 17, 529–546.
- www.un.org United Nations, Department of Economic and Social Affairs: Population Division. (2015). *World population prospects: The 2015 revision, key findings and advance tables*. Accessed 25 Aug 2016.

Saturated Fats

- [Fat, Dietary Intake](#)

Saturated Fatty Acids

- [Fat: Saturated, Unsaturated](#)

SBM

- [Society of Behavioral Medicine](#)

Scale Development

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Synonyms

[Questionnaire development](#)

Definition

Scale development is an essential stage in the assessment of constructs and variables in behavior medicine and in any social and health science. Scales are used for assessment of self-reported variables including mood, daily disability, various types of symptoms, adherence to recommended diet, etc. Though there is no explicit “rule” for the stages of scale development, certain steps need to be included for claiming that a scale is reliable and valid. The reliability of a scale is very important and refers to its repeatability and lack of measurement error. This is tested by internal reliability tests (Cronbach’s α) and by a test-retest reliability of scores over time. Validity is an essential aspect of a scale and refers to the extent to which it measures what it claims to measure. This is tested by several manners including “face validity,” concurrent validity, construct validity, and criterion validity. When developing a scale, it is essential to have a clear definition of the concept it refers to. Thus, for example, an anxiety scale should not have items assessing depression since these are not the same construct. After choosing an acceptable definition for the construct, a group of “experts” on the construct meets to provide items or even topics related to the construct, from which the researcher creates items. The chosen items will reflect the most common topics or items suggested by the expert panel. The panel can be experts from the field (psychologists, physicians, etc.) and patients who experienced the issue under investigation, thus reflecting experienced “experts.” Then, the investigator can ask another group of experts or patients to rate the relevance of each item to the construct, reflecting face validity. The items with a mean relevance above a chosen criterion will be selected for the preliminary scale. Next, the researcher administers the scale to a larger sample, with theoretically relevant additional tests. This will enable to test the internal reliability, concurrent validity against another scale assessing the same construct, and the construct validity against scales assessing theoretically related constructs. Finally,

an acceptable criterion (e.g., ill vs. healthy sample) will enable to test the scale’s criterion validity. Predictive validity can also be tested by examining whether the scale’s scores predict a certain event or outcome in the future, beyond the effects of known confounders. For example, Barefoot et al. (1989) tested the predictive validity of a shorter hostility scale derived from the original Ho scale in the Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory. They found that the brief scale which included cynicism, hostile affect, and aggressive responding predicted death better than the original full Ho scale, supporting the brief scale’s predictive validity. These steps are needed for scale development, to verify a scale’s reliability and validity, for use in research and clinical evaluations.

Cross-References

► [Reliability and Validity](#)

References and Further Readings

- Barefoot, J. C., Dodge, K. A., Peterson, B. L., Dahlstrom, W. G., & Williams, R. B., Jr. (1989). The Cook-Medley hostility scale: Item content and ability to predict survival. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 51, 46–57.
- Clark, L. A., & Watson, D. (1995). Constructing validity: Basic issues in objective scale development. *Psychological Assessment*, 3, 309–319.

Scatter

► [Dispersion](#)

Scenario Design

► [Scenario-Based Design](#)

Scenario-Based Design

Colleen Stiles-Shields

Loyola University, Chicago, IL, USA

Northwestern University, The University of
Chicago, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

Scenario design; Scenario-based design; User-centered design approaches

Definition

Scenario-based design is a validated and user-centered design approach, used early in the design process of a technology or product, which relies upon “scenarios” or stories to capture the elements of interaction between a person and a future product.

Description

Scenario-based design (SBD) refers to a family of validated user-centered design approaches that use “scenarios,” or stories, to inform the design of a technology or product. These scenarios are narratives, which may be in the form of text, storyboards, videos, etc. The scenarios are created and utilized to concretely define a user’s experience of an interaction with a technology, what happens during that interaction, and how it happens. Indeed, given that scenarios are like stories, they have characters, character goals and actions, and a plot within a larger setting. Through the use of scenarios, the use of the product becomes contextualized and more explicit, thereby informing ultimate design decisions (Carroll 1985; Rosson and Carroll 2002).

Use in the Design of Behavioral Intervention Technologies

SBD is increasingly being utilized in the field of behavioral medicine, primarily in designing behavioral intervention technologies (BITs). As BITs tend to be designed by interdisciplinary teams, ranging from engineers to psychologists (Schueller et al. 2014), SBD lends well to the design process across disciplines. Indeed, SBD’s use of scenarios to contextualize a BIT interaction is similar to the use of case vignettes to establish clinical practice techniques (a training practice common in medical and clinical fields), while also being a design approach familiar to technologists, usability experts, and engineers. Further, the use of SBD provides a common framework and language for the interdisciplinary team to utilize throughout the design process (Carroll 2000). Recent examples of the use of SBD include BITs targeting well-being and mental health in youth (Blythe and Wright 2006; Bødker 2000; Orlowski et al. 2015) and apps targeting symptoms of depression and anxiety in adults (Mohr et al. 2017; Stiles-Shields et al. 2016). Additionally, in examining the impact of the use of SBD in the design of medication alerts for prescribers, system usability improved, errors were reduced, and the prescribers reported a decrease in perceived work load (Russ et al. 2014). For the purposes of direct application of SBD to the design process of BITs, the remainder of the description of SBD will utilize the design of a mobile treatment app for adults with depression as an example.

Framework

The framework of SBD involves three primary phases: Analysis, Design, and Prototype and Evaluation (Rosson and Carroll 2002). The first phase of the framework is *Analysis*, in which claims about current practices and possible stakeholders are identified through the use of *Problem Scenarios*. Problem Scenarios depict the story of a user in a current practice. To represent the user, personas are often created to elucidate the benefits and challenges that may be incorporated and/or addressed through the design process. For the

example of the design of an app for depression, the persona demographics could be informed by samples of adults interested in treatments delivered through technology, treatment-seeking patients in traditional community or clinic settings, and/or national prevalence rates of adults with depression. These personas would be individualized (e.g., “Sara,” a 21-year-old Latina with moderate depression who moved to a new city within the last year), and then used in Problem Scenarios designed to highlight benefits and challenges associated with seeking depression treatment through current practices (e.g., face-to-face therapy, medication, and/or self-help resources). A *Claims Analysis* would follow, with the intention to reveal positive and negative features about current practice. For example, a design team might consider varying positive (e.g., a therapist can directly address “Sara’s” concerns as they are brought up in the moment) and negative (e.g., “Sara” might need to wait several weeks for an initial therapy session, possibly impacting her motivation and symptomology) features of a face-to-face therapy session (e.g., a “current practice” for depression treatment). A stakeholder analysis would also follow. *Stakeholders* include anyone who might be impacted by the product. Stakeholders might have conflicting interests from other stakeholders, and may be Primary (use the product), Secondary (provide input or receive output from the product), or Tertiary (no direct involvement but effected by successes or failures). For example, in the design of an app for adults with depression, stakeholders might include: patients with depression (Primary); researchers and clinical providers (Secondary); and users of future iterations of the app, the immediate social network of the patient, referral sources, developers and technologists, and other mHealth researchers (Tertiary). Through the Analysis process of SBD, designers elucidate the positive and negative elements of current practices for stakeholders, while identifying how a new product will maintain, enhance, or alter current practice (Carroll 1985; Rosson and Carroll 2002).

The second phase of the SBD framework is *Design*, in which multiple iterations of designs are completed through analyses of Design Claims informed by *Activity Scenarios*, *Information Design Scenarios*, and *Interaction Design*

Scenarios. Activity Scenarios are persona interactions with the new technology, and therefore serve as initial depictions of the transformation from the current practice to the new design features. The intended output of Activity Scenarios is *Design Claims*, which detail new features and their purposes. For example, an Activity Scenario for the design of an app for depression may depict “Sara” locating the app on an app store and learning about the functionality through pop up notifications at app launch; a Design Claim from this scenario would include brief, informative notifications at initial launch. Information Design Scenarios add nuance to the Activity Scenarios, such that they make perceptual details more explicit. The ultimate aim of this process is to identify how a user might perceive or interpret the product and/or information provided. For example, an Information Design Scenario would describe specifically what the launch notification reads to “Sara” and how she might interpret that information. Finally, Interaction Design Scenarios extend the design process initiated by the previous scenarios by explicitly detailing the actions a user might take, and how the system would respond. For example, these scenarios would provide step-by-step information about “Sara’s” launch of the app, what is presented, how she proceeds, etc. Throughout the Design phase of the SBD framework, multiple iterations are completed across personas to inform and enrich the design (Carroll 1985; Rosson and Carroll 2002).

The final phase of the SBD framework is *Prototype and Evaluation*. Resulting from the multiple iterations of scenarios created during the Analysis and Design phases, *Prototypes* may be created as preliminary models of aspects of the designed product. Prototypes may range from simple (e.g., paper drawings, tending to be less costly and time intensive) to complex/realistic (e.g., an initial version of a mobile app, tending to have greater validity). The purpose of creating prototypes in the SBD process is to engage in usability evaluations of the designs. These evaluations may be formative (i.e., occurring during the design and development) or summative (i.e., occurring at the end of the development stage; Tullis and Albert 2008; Please see “Usability Testing” entry for more information). This evaluative process enables teams to finalize

their designs and prepare for the ultimate creation of a new product.

Benefits

Multiple benefits of SBD have been highlighted in the literature. First, scenarios evoke careful attention and reflection for design teams through their use of depictions of persona experiences with the product. This process often highlights how well design ideas align with ultimate user and designer goals. Second, scenarios allow for flexibility, in that they are easily revised, but can also promote concrete solutions to identified problems. Third, scenarios can be created from multiple perspectives and levels, and for varying purposes. They can anchor design discussions in specific work products, across multiple disciplines, and design team members. Finally, scenarios are easily abstracted and categorized, promoting the recognition, use, and reuse of generalizations or patterns that emerge in interactions with the designed product (Carroll 1985, 2000; Rosson and Carroll 2002). SBD therefore stands as a promising and accessible means for interdisciplinary teams to design BITs, or other products which may promote behavioral health.

Cross-References

► Usability Testing

References and Further Reading

- Blythe, M. A., & Wright, P. C. (2006). Pastiche scenarios: Fiction as a resource for user centred design. *Interacting with Computers*, 18(5), 1139–1164. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.intcom.2006.02.001>.
- Bødker, S. (2000). Scenarios in user-centred design—Setting the stage for reflection and action. *Interacting with Computers*, 13(1), 61–75. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0953-5438\(00\)00024-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0953-5438(00)00024-2).
- Carroll, J. M. (1985). *Scenario-based design: Envisioning work and technology in system development*. New York: Wiley.
- Carroll, J. M. (2000). Five reasons for scenario-based design. *Interacting with Computers*, 13(1), 43–60. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0953-5438\(00\)00023-0](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0953-5438(00)00023-0).
- Mohr, D. C., Tomasino, K. N., Lattie, E. G., Palac, H. L., Kwasny, M. J., Weingardt, K., et al. (2017). IntelliCare: An eclectic, skills-based app suite for the treatment of depression and anxiety. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 19(1). <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.6645>.
- Orlowski, S. K., Lawn, S., Venning, A., Winsall, M., Jones, G. M., Wyld, K., et al. (2015). Participatory research as one piece of the puzzle: A systematic review of consumer involvement in design of technology-based youth mental health and well-being interventions. *JMIR Human Factors*, 2(2). <https://doi.org/10.2196/humanfactors.4361>.
- Rosson, M. B., & Carroll, J. M. (2002). *Usability engineering: Scenario-based development of human-computer interaction*. San Francisco: Morgan Kaufmann.
- Russ, A. L., Zillich, A. J., Melton, B. L., Russell, S. A., Chen, S., Spina, J. R., et al. (2014). Applying human factors principles to alert design increases efficiency and reduces prescribing errors in a scenario-based simulation. *Journal of the American Medical Informatics Association*, 21(e2), e287–e296. <https://doi.org/10.1136/amiajnl-2013-002045>.
- Schueller, S. M., Begale, M., Penedo, F. J., & Mohr, D. C. (2014). Purple: A modular system for developing and deploying behavioral intervention technologies. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 16(7). <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.3376>.
- Stiles-Shields, C., Montague, E., & Mohr, D. C. (2016). *The use of scenario-based design for the development of behavioral intervention technologies*. International Society for Research on Internet Interventions (ISRII) 8th scientific meeting, Washington, DC.
- Tullis, T., & Albert, B. (2008). *Measuring the user experience: Collecting, analyzing, and presenting usability metrics*. Burlington: Morgan Kaufmann Publishers.

Schneiderman, Neil

Neil Schneiderman

Department of Psychology, Behavioral Medicine Research Center, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA



Neil Schneiderman was born in Brooklyn, New York, on February 24, 1937. He has been

married to his wife Eleanor since 1960 and is the father of three children and grandfather of five. Schneiderman received his A.B. degree from Brooklyn College, spent 2 years in the US Army, earned his Ph.D. degree in Psychology from Indiana University, and received postdoctoral training in Neurophysiology and Neuropharmacology in the Physiological Institute of the University of Basel, Switzerland. Schneiderman was appointed as assistant professor at the University of Miami, Coral Gables, Florida, in 1965, rising through the ranks to become professor in 1974. He subsequently received secondary appointments as professor of Medicine, Public Health Sciences, Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, and Biomedical Engineering. In 1989, he was awarded an endowed chair as the James L. Knight Professor of Health Psychology. Since 1986, he has served as the director of the Division of Health Psychology in the Department of Psychology and as director of the University of Miami Behavioral Medicine Research Center. He also served extensively as chair of the NIH-funded University of Miami General Clinical Research Center Advisory Committee. Schneiderman has directed pre- and postdoctoral NIH training grants involving cardiovascular disease from the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI) since 1979 and HIV/AIDS from the National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH) from 1993 to 2017.

Schneiderman was the second editor in chief of the journal *Health Psychology* before becoming founding editor in chief of the *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*. Within the NIH, he served as a member of the Biopsychology Study Section, NHLBI Research Training Review Committee, and NIMH Health Behavior and Prevention Review Committee. In the American Psychological Association (APA), he was chair of the Board of Scientific Affairs and is a fellow in the Divisions of Experimental Psychology (3), Behavioral Neuroscience and Comparative Psychology (6), and Health Psychology (38) as well as a former president of Division 38. A founding fellow of the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research, Schneiderman later served as president

of that organization. Schneiderman also served as president of the International Society of Behavioral Medicine (ISBM). He is a fellow of the Society of Behavioral Medicine and of the American College of Clinical Pharmacology. He is also the recipient of the APA Distinguished Scientific Contribution Award (1994), Society of Behavioral Medicine Distinguished Scientist Award (1997), ISBM Outstanding Scientific Achievement Award (2004), and American Psychosomatic Society Distinguished Scientist Award (2014).

Major Accomplishments

Schneiderman's first two empirical research articles were published in *Science* in 1962. Written with his academic mentor, Isidore Gormezano, the papers described animal models of eyelid and nictitating membrane Pavlovian conditioning in rabbits. These preparations were suitable for concomitantly studying behavioral and neurophysiological processes in conscious, minimally restrained animals. Subsequently, Schneiderman added heart rate conditioning to the repertoire of animal models, and for the next several decades, he and his colleagues traced neuronal pathways involved in Pavlovian conditioning of cardiovascular responses in rabbits. This began with identifying the cells of origin of vagal cardioinhibitory motoneurons in the rabbit medulla, using histochemistry, microstimulation, and single neuron extracellular electrophysiological recordings, and continued with mapping the central nervous system pathways that mediated conditioned and unconditioned cardiovascular adjustments. Key collaborators included James Schwaber, Marc Kaufman, Howard Ellenberger, and Michael Spyer. The study of central nervous system pathways mediating differentiated patterns of cardiovascular adjustments also led Schneiderman and his colleagues including Marc Gellman, Barry Hurwitz, Maria Llabre, and Pat Saab to conduct an important series of psychophysiological studies in humans. They described differentiated patterns of neurohormonal and cardiovascular responses to separate behavioral stressors as a

function of race, gender, and hypertensive status. These responses were also shown to be influenced by such psychosocial factors as harassment and hostility. Subsequently, Schneiderman collaborated with Philip McCabe, Armando Mendez, and other Miami scientists in documenting the psychosocial prevention of atherosclerosis progression in a rabbit model of coronary artery disease.

Because of Schneiderman's interest in relationships among biological regulation, psychosocial factors, and disease processes, it was not surprising that he also joined with colleagues including MaryAnn Fletcher, Gail Ironson, and Nancy Klimas relatively early in the HIV/AIDS epidemic to study relationships between psychosocial variables and endocrine-immune regulation in HIV-infected patients, when AIDS was beginning to ravage the Miami community. This, in turn, led Schneiderman, Michael Antoni, and their collaborators to begin to use group-based cognitive behavior therapy and relaxation training in randomized controlled trials to influence psychosocial, endocrine, and immune factors and even to reduce HIV viral load to undetectable levels in patients who were failing their regimen of highly active antiretroviral drugs.

Schneiderman's broad research experience, including intervention studies with clinical patients, prepared him to serve as principal investigator of the Miami Field Center for the NIH/NHLBI "Enhancing Recovery in Coronary Heart Disease Patients (ENRICHED)" randomized trial. The trial compared cognitive behavior therapy and usual care in post-myocardial infarction patients. Although that trial produced null results in terms of morbidity and mortality, Schneiderman and colleagues conducted a secondary analysis that suggested that the trial appeared to decrease morbidity and mortality in White men, but not in women or minority patients. Based on the supposition that the null result in the ENRICHED trial was due to the protocol not being sufficiently tailored to women, Schneiderman joined with Kristina Orth-Gomér and other Swedish colleagues to conduct the "Stockholm Women's Intervention Trial for

Coronary Heart Disease (SWITCHED)." This trial, which used group-based cognitive behavior therapy and relaxation training in women previously hospitalized for myocardial infarction or coronary revascularization, showed a significant decrease in mortality rate for the intervention compared with a usual care group. Similar results have now also been reported by others.

In addition to Schneiderman's contributions in basic science and in clinical trials research, he has been actively involved in population-based observational studies such as those with Ronald Goldberg and Jay Skyler. As the principal investigator of the Miami Field Center of the NIH/NHLBI multicenter Hispanic Community Health Study/Study of Latinos, Schneiderman and his colleagues in Miami, including Frank Penedo, David Lee, and Marc Gellman, as well as investigators in the Bronx, Chicago, and San Diego are characterizing the health status and disease burden of Hispanic adults living in the United States, describing the positive and negative consequences of immigration and acculturation in relation to lifestyle and access to health care and assessing likely causal factors of disease in this diverse population. This study, sponsored by the NIH, was initiated in 2006 and is funded until 2024. Between 2008 and 2011, 16,415 women and men 18–74 years of age, who self-identified as being Hispanic or Latino, completed a 6.5 h baseline clinical exam. Participants were recruited from a stratified random sample of households in defined committees in the Bronx, Chicago, Miami, and San Diego, thus including a wide range of ancestral backgrounds. The study assessed risk factors and prevalence of heart, lung, blood, and sleep disorders, liver and kidney dysfunction, diabetes, cognitive impairment, dental problems, and hearing disorder. A second clinic exam was conducted on 80% of the original cohort between 2014 and 2017, and a third exam is being conducted between 2019 and 2023. The emphasis of clinic exams 2 and 3 is on long-term follow-up and disease incidence. In summary, Schneiderman's contributions have been in terms of basic science, population-based observational studies, and randomized clinical trials.

Cross-References

► [International Society of Behavioral Medicine](#)

References and Further Readings

- Ironson, G. H., Gellman, M. D., Spitzer, S. B., Llabre, M. M., Pasin, R. D., Weidler, D. J., et al. (1989). Predicting home and work blood pressure measurements from resting baselines and laboratory reactivity in black and white Americans. *Psychophysiology*, 26, 174–184.
- Orth-Gomér, K., Schneiderman, N., Wang, H., Walldin, C., Blom, M., & Jernberg, T. (2009). Stress reduction prolongs life in women with coronary disease: The Stockholm women's intervention trial for coronary heart disease (SWITCHD). *Circulation. Cardiovascular Quality and Outcomes*, 2, 25–32. <https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCOUTCOMES.108.812859>.
- Schneiderman, N., Fuentes, I., & Gormezano, I. (1962). Acquisition and extinction of the classically conditioned eyelid responses in the albino rabbit. *Science*, 136, 650–652.
- Schneiderman, N., Saab, P. G., Catellier, D. J., Powell, L. H., DeBusk, R. F., Williams, R. B., et al. (2004). Psychosocial treatment within sex by ethnicity subgroups in the enhancing recovery in coronary heart disease (ENRICHED) clinical trial. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 66, 475–483.
- Schwaber, J., & Schneiderman, N. (1975). Aortic nerve activated cardioinhibitory neurons and interneurons. *American Journal of Physiology*, 229, 783–789.

Scientific Psychology

► [Psychological Science](#)

Screen Time

Sally A. M. Fenton
School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation
Sciences, University of Birmingham,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Computer use](#); [Screen-based behaviors](#); [Sedentary behavior](#); [TV viewing](#)

Definition

The time spent engaged in screen-based behaviors. **These behaviors can be performed while being sedentary or physically active.*

Screen time refers to the time spent engaged in “screen-based” behaviors, such as watching television (TV) and using a smartphone, tablet, or computer (Tremblay et al. 2017). Screen time is the most studied component sedentary behavior (i.e., waking behavior ≤ 1.5 metabolic equivalents, while in a sitting, reclining, or lying posture), with researchers typically examining the link between screen-based sedentary behaviors and several health indicators – such as adiposity and cardio-metabolic (including diabetes and metabolic syndrome) and a cardiovascular outcome (van Ekris et al. 2017).

Much of the existing research in this domain includes observational studies investigating the adverse health consequences of TV viewing time among children and adults. Overall, results of both cross-sectional and prospective studies are suggestive of a positive (adverse) relationship between TV viewing and adiposity indicators among youth, such as overweight/obesity, body-mass-index, and body fat (%) (Biddle et al. 2017, 2018). In addition, prospective studies in adults suggest higher levels of TV viewing are linked to increased risk of cardiovascular, cancer, and all-cause mortality (Dunstan et al. 2010). However, authors consistently emphasize that the associations observed between TV viewing with studied health outcomes may be bi-directional in nature (i.e., we cannot rule out reverse causality) and might be mediated or moderated by coexisting behaviors, such as physical activity (Biddle et al. 2018). These considerations are not exclusive to studies examining the health implications of TV viewing, but extend to other screen-based behavior, such as using a computer, smartphones, tablet, or screen-based entertainment systems.

With this in mind, future research that considers the mediating roles of concomitant health behaviors in the associations between screen time and various health outcomes is critical, particularly when we consider how advances in modern technology have changed the manner in which people access and engage in screen-based

behaviors. For example, increased use of smartphones and tablets – not of which will be engaged in through sitting – have contributed to overall declines in TV viewing (Ofcom 2018). Consequently, screen-based behaviors can be engaged when being sedentary (e.g., at home, watching TV) or while being active (e.g., using a phone while walking, exergames), across many contexts (e.g., home, school, work, travel) and for many different purposes (e.g., work/study, recreation). The changing technological landscape that is facilitating access to screen-based behaviors is therefore essential to consider when studying the role of “screen time” – and the diverse behaviors this may encompass – for health indicators in different populations.

In their recent “Terminology Consensus Project,” the Sedentary Behaviour Research Network highlight caveats to the definition of screen time, emphasizing the importance of describing whether screen-based behaviors are undertaken while sitting, stationary, or being physically active, as well the context (and type) of screen time. Specific definitions include:

- **Sedentary screen time:** Time spent using a screen-based device (e.g., smartphone, tablet, computer, television) while being sedentary in any context (e.g., school, work, recreational).
**Currently, the most commonly researched definition of screen time.
- **Active screen time:** Time spent using a screen-based device (e.g., smartphone, tablet, computer, television) while not being stationary in any context (e.g., school, work, recreational). Examples of active screen time include playing active video games and running on a treadmill while watching television.
- **Stationary screen time:** Time spent using a screen-based device (e.g., smartphone, tablet, computer, television) while being stationary in any context (e.g., school, work, recreational).
- **Recreational screen time:** Time spent in screen-based behaviors that are not related to school or work.

In conducting future research centered on the health consequences of screen time, the development of new measures aligned with these nuanced

definitions will be essential. Such measures should serve to assess the specific type of screen-based behavior, as well as the behavioral and environmental context in which it occurs.

Cross-References

- [Lifestyle, Sedentary](#)
- [Sedentary Behaviors](#)
- [Sedentary Time](#)

References and Further Readings

- Biddle, S. J. H., Garcia Bengoechea, E., Pedisic, Z., Bennie, J., Vergeer, I., & Wiesner, G. (2017). Screen time, other sedentary behaviours, and obesity risk in adults: A review of reviews. *Current Obesity Reports*, 6(2), 134–147. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s13679-017-0256-9>.
- Biddle, S. J. H., Pearson, N., & Salmon, J. (2018). Sedentary behaviors and adiposity in young people: Causality and conceptual model. *Exercise and Sport Sciences Reviews*, 46(1), 18–25. <https://doi.org/10.1249/JES.0000000000000135>.
- Dunstan, D. W., Barr, E. L., Healy, G. N., Salmon, J., Shaw, J. E., Balkau, B., et al. (2010). Television viewing time and mortality: The Australian diabetes, obesity and lifestyle study (AusDiab). *Circulation*, 121(3), 384–391. <https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.109.894824>.
- Ofcom. (2018). *Media nations: UK 2018*. Retrieved from https://www.ofcom.org.uk/_data/assets/pdf_file/0014/116006/media-nations-2018-uk.pdf.
- Tremblay, M. S., Aubert, S., Barnes, J. D., Saunders, T. J., Carson, V., Latimer-Cheung, A. E., et al. (2017). Sedentary Behavior Research Network (SBRN) – Terminology Consensus Project process and outcome. *The International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 14(1), 75. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12966-017-0525-8>.
- van Ekris, E., Altenburg, T. M., Singh, A. S., Proper, K. I., Heymans, M. W., & Chinapaw, M. J. M. (2017). An evidence-update on the prospective relationship between childhood sedentary behaviour and biomedical health indicators: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Obesity Reviews*, 18(6), 712–714. <https://doi.org/10.1111/obr.12526>.

Screen-Based Behaviors

- [Screen Time](#)

Screening

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Synonyms

[Early detection](#)

Definition

Screening refers to the process of surveying a population or sample of a population, in the attempt to identify people at risk for or with a given health condition. Screening is a crucial part of epidemiology, as it informs about the prevalence and risk factors of various health conditions in a population. Furthermore, screening is crucial for preventive medicine, since it enables to identify people who may benefit from primary, secondary, or tertiary interventions. Screening for primary prevention reflects identifying people without a risk factor (e.g., hypertension, depression), to prevent the risk factor and subsequent illnesses. Screening for secondary prevention could be among people with a risk factor, to prevent an illness. And screening for tertiary prevention would be done to prevent relapse or mortality in people already ill (e.g., after a first myocardial infarction). Screening could be in relation to psychosocial factors such as hostility or anxiety, to behavioral risk factors of disease such as smoking or excessive alcohol drinking, and to genetic profiles. For implementing screening tests in clinical use to reliably predict disease risk or prognosis, it is crucial to know the relative risk for a disease in people high and low on a screening risk factor as well as the correct value of “false positives” (Wald and Morris 2011). It is of utmost importance to identify the criteria or cutoffs for screening in clear, precise, and operational manners (e.g.,

smoking more than ten cigarettes/day, depression score above 10 on the Center for Epidemiological Studies Depression Scale). Screening then enables either to study specific subpopulations at risk for health conditions or for treating them. One important criterion for screening tests is their accuracy. A test is thought to be 95% accurate if in 95% of the times it predicts correctly who has a disease (sensitivity) and if 95% of the time it predicts correctly who does not have a disease (specificity). Screening also enables to increase one’s therapeutic and statistical effects, since by excluding people below a certain cutoff, researchers can prevent a “floor effect” of therapeutic effectiveness. Regretfully, such exclusion is often not practiced in psychological intervention trials. In clinical practice, the cutoffs used to screen are a function of previously defined cutoffs from research or clinical studies, a function of how severe a risk the researchers aim to identify, and the available therapeutic resources that can be allocated for treating the “screened in” subpopulation later. Furthermore, in randomized controlled trials (RCT), the more strict screening criteria are, the longer could be the trial’s duration as the sought patient profile becomes more scarce. Thus, the screening criteria are a function of the research question and available resources for such screening and subsequent treatment, and this is a vital part of clinical epidemiology and research and of therapeutic preventative interventions.

Cross-References

- [Cancer Prevention](#)
- [Epidemiology](#)
- [Population-Based Study](#)
- [Population Health](#)

References and Further Readings

- Wald, N. J., & Morris, J. K. (2011). Assessing risk factors as potential screening tests. A simple assessment tool. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 171, 286–291.

Screening, Cognitive

Richard Hoffman

Academic Health Center, School of Medicine-
Duluth Campus University of Minnesota, Duluth,
MN, USA

Synonyms

[Cognitive impairment tests](#); [Cognitive status tests](#);
[Dementia screening tests](#); [Mental status examination](#)

Definition

Cognitive screening is a brief, performance-based assessment of one or more domains of neurobehavioral or cognitive functioning. These assessments typically are completed using standardized cognitive screening tests that can be completed at bedside or in the clinic in 20–30 min or less, often accompanied by interview information elicited from family members or other informants who know the examinee well and can comment on their observations about the examinee's behaviors or changes in their behaviors.

Description

Cognitive screening tests are very commonly used in behavioral medicine, neuropsychology, neuropsychiatry, and primary care medicine. Surveys indicate that cognitive screening instruments are used by over 50% of practitioners in neuropsychiatry and such tests have become a mainstay in the practice of medicine over the course of the last 35 years. Because cognitive screening tests are brief and require a minimum of specialized testing equipment, they can in most cases be administered at bedside, in a busy clinic, or in the emergency department and serve to identify those

patients who might benefit from more extensive workups, including neuroimaging, metabolic assays and blood work, or more extensive neuropsychological testing. Cognitive screening tests are used as one central component in the initial differential diagnosis of delirium versus dementia and are perhaps most frequently used in the initial screening for dementias and mild cognitive impairment (MCI), both of which are underdiagnosed in their earliest stages in primary care practice due to the subtlety of their initial presenting symptoms.

Changes in cognitive functioning are frequently seen as a consequence of a number of neurological and general medical diseases, including dementias and degenerative diseases of the cerebral cortex and subcortical regions of the brain. In addition to central nervous system diseases, cognition may also be affected by other systemic diseases, including respiratory, cardiovascular, and renal diseases as well as some infectious diseases, diseases of the liver and pancreas, nutritional deficiencies, metabolic diseases and diabetes, adverse effects of medications, and exposure to toxic substances. Judicious use of cognitive screening instruments can provide evidence to suggest an underlying medical disorder heretofore undiagnosed and may help guide the use of medications and medication dosages, as well as provide information that may prompt the treatment of reversible conditions, such as reversible dementias and pseudodementias.

Cognitive screening tests can help detect deficits associated with disorders that are commonly missed in a standard psychiatric intake interview, especially in emergency room settings, including patients who present with mild disorientation or evidence of possible substance abuse. In addition, many primary psychiatric disorders have significant effects on cognition, such as affective disorders and schizophrenia, and some focal neurological disorders such as focal strokes, neoplasias, and seizure disorders may have combined cognitive and affective sequelae.

Among the most commonly used and well-researched brief cognitive screening tests are the

Mini-Mental State Examination (MMSE), the Cognitive Capacities Screening Examination (CCSE), and the Short Portable Mental Status Questionnaire (SPMSQ), but there are numerous cognitive screening tests available to practitioners at the present time, and these are listed in Table 1. Although there is considerable variability in the component sections of the cognitive screening tests listed in Table 1, in general each contains some assessment of orientation (does the patient know who they are, where they are, and know the day and date), attention and concentration, language skills, memory and immediate recall of verbal information, and visuospatial or drawing/copying skills. Most cognitive screening tests are designed to be completed within 10 min or less. The BIMC, the ACE-R, the CASI, the Cognistat, the RBANS, the HSCS, and the CAMCOG-R contain more extensive subtests and may require up to 30 min to complete. The Mattis Dementia Rating Scale requires 20–45 min to complete and provides assessment of attention, initiation perseveration, visuospatial construction, reasoning, and memory.

Since 1988, there have been several cognitive screening tests designed to be administered by phone or telehealth link, often used in epidemiological studies as more extensive follow-up instruments after an initial administration face-to-face of a brief screening instrument such as the MMSE or the SASSI. Six such instruments are listed in Table 1.

Also listed in Table 1 are five-guided interview or informant-based cognitive screening instruments which are designed to document information from family members or caregivers of patients regarding observed cognitive decline, changes in behavior, or – in the case of the Deterioration Cognitive Observee (DECO) instrument – changes in activity level, long-term memory, short-term memory, visuospatial processing, and new skill learning. Although these can be used as stand-alone measures, they are perhaps best used to complement the findings from cognitive screening tests directly administered to the patient in question.

There is now considerable interest in the development of cognitive screening tests for specific at-risk populations, and recent examples include a

Screening, Cognitive, Table 1 Cognitive screening tests

Brief cognitive screening tests
AB Cognitive Screen (ABCS)
Abbreviated Mental Test Score (AMTS)
Addenbrooke's Cognitive Examination III (ACE-III)
Animal Fluency Test
Blessed Information-Memory-Concentration Test (BIMC)
Blessed Orientation-Memory-Concentration Test (OMC)
Brief Alzheimer Screen (BAS)
Brief Cognitive Assessment Tool (BCAT)
Brief Cognitive Rating Scale (BCRS)
Brief Interview for Mental Status (BIMS)
Brief Memory and Executive Test (BMET)
Bowles-Langley Technology/Ashford Memory Test
Cambridge Cognitive Examination-Revised (CAMCOG-R)
Clock Drawing Test (CDT)
Cognitive Abilities Screening Instrument (CASI)
Cognitive Assessment Screening Test (CAST)
Cognistat (also known as the Neurobehavioral Cognitive Status Examination or NCSE)
Cognitive Capacity Screening Examination (CCSE)
Cognitive Disorders Examination (Codex)
Cognitive Failures Questionnaire (CFQ)
Cognitive Performance Scale (CPS)
Cognitive Screening Battery for Dementia in the Elderly
Community Screening Interview for Dementia (CSI'D')
Computer-Administered Neuropsychological Screen for Mild Cognitive Impairment (CANS-MCI)
Continuous Recognition Test
Dementia Questionnaire (DQ)
DemTest
Double Memory Test
Eurotest
Fototest
Free and Cued Selective Reminding Test/Five Words Test
Fuld Object Memory Evaluation
Galveston Orientation and Amnesia Test (GOAT)
General Practitioner Assessment of Cognition (GPCOG)
Geriatric Evaluation of Mental Status (GEMS)
Hasegawa Dementia Scale-Revised (HDS-R)
High Sensitivity Cognitive Screen (HSCS)
Hopkins Verbal Learning Test (HVLT)
Imon Cognitive Impairment Screening Test (ICIS)
Isaacs' Set Test of Verbal Fluency
Kingston Standardized Cognitive Assessment
Kokmen Short Test of Mental Status (STMS)
Mattis Dementia Rating Scale (DRS)

(continued)

Screening, Cognitive, Table 1 (continued)

Memory and Executive Screening (MES)
Memory Impairment Screen (MIS)
Memory Orientation Screening Test (MOST)
Mental Alteration Test (MAT)
Mental Status Questionnaire (MSQ)
Middlesex Elderly Assessment of Mental State (MEAMS)
Mini-Addenbrooke's Cognitive Examination (M-ACE)
Mini-Cog
Mini-Mental Status Examination (MMSE)
Mini-Severe Impairment Battery (Mini-SIB)
Modified Mini-Mental Status Examination (3MS)
Modified WORLD Test (WORLD)
Montpellier Screen (Mont)
Montreal Cognitive Assessment (MoCA)
Neurobehavioral Cognitive Status Examination (NCSE)
Philadelphia Brief Assessment of Cognition
Poppelreuter Overlapping Figure
Queen Square Screening Test for Cognitive Deficits
Quick Mild Cognitive Impairment Screen (Qmci)
Quick Test for Cognitive Speed (AQT)
Rapid Dementia Screening Test (RDST)
Repeatable Battery for the Assessment of Neuropsychological Status (RBANS)
Revised Mattis Dementia Rating Scale (DRS-2)
Rowland Universal Dementia Assessment Scale (RUDAS)
Saint Louis University Mental Status Examination (SLUMS)
Severe Impairment Battery (SIB)
Seven-Minute Screen (7MS)
Severe MMSE
Short and Sweet Screening Instrument (SASSI)
Short Blessed Test (SBT)
Short Cognitive Battery (B2C)
Short Cognitive Evaluation Battery (SCEB)
Short Memory Questionnaire (SMQ)
Short Portable Mental Status Questionnaire (SPMSQ)
Short Test of Mental Status (STMS)
Six-item Cognitive Impairment Test (6CIT)
Six-Item Screener (SIS)
Sweet 16
Takeda Three Colors Combination Test
TE4D-Cog
Test for the Early Detection of Dementia from Depression (TE4D-Cog)
Test Your Memory Test (TYM)
Three Word Recall (3WR)
Time and Change Test (T&C)
Trail Making Test (TMT)

(continued)

Screening, Cognitive, Table 1 (continued)

Tree Drawing Test (TDT; Koch's Baum Test)
Verbal Fluency Categories (VFC)
Verbal Fluency Animals (VFA)
Visual Association Test
Cognitive screening tests for specialized patient populations
High Sensitivity Cognitive Screen
HIV Dementia Scale
Immediate Post-Concussion Assessment and Cognitive Testing (ImPACT)
Mini-Mental Parkinson (MMP)
Informant- or proxy-rated screening instruments
The Alzheimer Disease 8 (AD8)
Blessed Dementia Rating Scale (BDRS)
Deterioration Cognitive Observee (DECO)
Informant Questionnaire for Cognitive Decline in the Elderly (IQCODE)
Quick Dementia Rating Scale (QDRS)
Telephone and mail screening instruments
Dementia Questionnaire
Five-Minute Telephone Version of the Short Blessed Test (SBT)
Minnesota Cognitive Acuity Screen
Structured Telephone Interview for Dementia Assessment (STIDA)
Telephone Interview for Cognitive Status (TICS)
Telephone MMSE (TMMSE)

cognitive screening test designed to assess changes in cognition in Parkinson patients (MMP), two cognitive screening tests designed to detect the early signs of AIDS-related dementia in AIDS patients (the High Sensitivity Cognitive Screen test and the HIV Dementia Scale), and a recently developed test to screen for post-concussion cognitive changes, the Immediate Post-Concussion Assessment and Cognitive Testing (ImPACT).

With the aging of the population have come an increased interest in cognitive screening in geriatric populations and the increased need to identify early signs of dementia and early signs of mild cognitive impairment, especially as new treatments are developed that are capable of modifying the progression of dementias. In primary care medicine, the standard of practice in the very near future may well include cognitive screening of all patients over the age of 75 in addition to screening of all younger patients when there is a reason to suspect cognitive impairment.

Cross-References

► Neuropsychology

References and Further Reading

- Cullen, B., O'Neill, B., Evans, J. J., Coen, R. F., & Lawlor, B. A. (2007). A review of screening tests for cognitive impairment. *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery, and Psychiatry*, 78, 790–799.
- Demakis, G. J., Mercury, M. G., & Sweet, J. J. (2000). Screening for cognitive impairments in primary care settings. In M. E. Maruish (Ed.), *Handbook of psychological assessment in primary care settings* (pp. 555–582). London: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Larner, A. (Ed.). (2017). *Cognitive screening instruments: A practical approach*. New York: Springer.
- Lonie, J. A., Tierney, K. M., & Ebmeier, K. P. (2009). Screening for mild cognitive impairment: A systematic review. *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry*, 24, 902–915.
- Malloy, P. F., Cummings, J. L., Coffey, C. E., Duffy, J., Fink, M., Lauterbach, E. C., et al. (1997). Cognitive screening instruments in neuropsychiatry: A report of the Committee on Research of the American Neuropsychiatric Association. *Journal of Neuropsychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences*, 9, 189–197.
- Mitchell, A. J., & Malladi, S. (2010). Screening and case finding tools for the detection of dementia. Part I: Evidence-based meta-analysis of multidomain tests. *American Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry*, 18, 759–782.
- Mitrushina, M. (2009). Cognitive screening methods. In I. Grant & K. M. Adams (Eds.), *Neuropsychological assessment of neuropsychiatric and neuromedical disorders* (pp. 101–126). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Tombaugh, T. N., & McIntyre, N. J. (1992). The mini-mental state examination: A comprehensive review. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 40, 922–935.

Seasonal Affective Disorder

Kathryn A. Roecklein and Patricia M. Wong
Department of Psychology, University of
Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

Bipolar disorder, with seasonal pattern; Major depressive disorder, with seasonal pattern

Definition

The most common presentation of seasonal affective disorder (SAD) is recurrent depressive episodes in winter followed by spring remission (Rosenthal et al. 1984). SAD is diagnosed according to the American Psychiatric Association not as a separate disorder, but rather as a course specifier to describe the pattern of depressive episodes in patients meeting criteria for major depressive disorder, or bipolar I or II disorder (American Psychiatric Association [DSM-IV-TR] 2000). Criteria for the seasonal specifier include (1) recurrence of major depressive episodes at a specific time of year; (2) full remission (or change to mania/hypomania) from depression also recurring at a specific time of year; (3) at least two major depressive episodes meeting criteria 1 and 2 within the last 2 years, with no occurrence of nonseasonal depression within the same period; and (4) experiencing a greater number of major depressive episodes meeting SAD criteria than that of nonseasonal depression throughout the individual's lifetime (American Psychiatric Association [DSM-IV-TR] 2000).

Description

Epidemiology. SAD is characterized by depressed mood, anhedonia, and fatigue, as well as higher rates of appetite increase, weight gain, and hypersomnia compared to nonseasonal major depression (Magnusson and Partonen 2005). Ten to twenty percent of patients with depression seeking outpatient treatment have a seasonal pattern of recurrences, and SAD accounts for 10–22% of all unipolar and bipolar mood disorders (Roecklein et al. 2010). A notable characteristic of sleep in SAD is that, in contrast with the predominance of insomnia in nonseasonal depression, a majority of individuals with SAD experience hypersomnia (68–80%; e.g., Rosenthal et al. 1985). Given that seasonality, the tendency to vary in mood and behavior across the seasons (Kasper et al. 1989; Rosen et al. 1990), is normally distributed, a range of mild to severe seasonal changes are likely to occur in behavioral medicine research and practice.

Etiology. Etiological models propose that seasonal changes in the environment, being light

levels or other conditioned cues, trigger onset in fall or winter (Rohan et al. 2009; Sohn and Lam 2005). Lewy et al. (1987) proposed that winter changes in day length lead to a delay in internal circadian rhythms relative to clock time or other rhythms like sleep and wake. Wehr et al. (2001) proposed that winter changes in day length are encoded by nocturnal melatonin release duration as a “circadian signal of change of season,” leading to behavioral and physiological changes in humans similar to those of seasonally breeding mammals. Transforming environmental light levels to neural signals is mediated by a retinal pathway to the central clock, and this pathway could be differentially sensitive across individuals, leading some to be vulnerable to insufficient input in winter (Hebert et al. 2002). These circadian and retinal hypotheses may interact with one another, as well as with the monoamine hypothesis (i.e., serotonin and dopamine) and cognitive behavioral mechanisms (Rohan et al. 2009).

Treatment. The recommended first-line treatment for SAD is light therapy, while antidepressants are also commonly used (Lam and Levitt 1999). Light therapy typically requires daily exposure to 10,000-lux of white or full-spectrum fluorescent light for at least 30 min, although efforts to refine the wavelength and reduce duration are being tested clinically. Among antidepressants, Bupropion XL is the first FDA-approved drug for the treatment of winter depression. A double-blind, placebo-controlled, multisite trial testing Bupropion XL on adults with a history of SAD demonstrated that the overall proportion of depression recurrences following treatment was lower for those taking Bupropion (16%) than for those using a placebo (28%; Modell et al. 2005), although the low rate of recurrence indicates a significant placebo response. In addition, cognitive behavioral therapy is as effective as light therapy for acute treatment during a depressive episode, and has prophylactic effects 1 year later in reducing the risk of a subsequent episode (Rohan et al. 2004). Given that multiple empirically validated treatments are available, detecting seasonal patterns in clinical settings can improve patient outcomes.

Implications for behavioral medicine. Seasonal variations in mood and behavior are relevant

to Behavioral Medicine research and clinical practice. Such implications can be divided into specific biopsychosocial components including biological characteristics (e.g., genetic risk for seasonality, neurotransmitter and neurohormonal seasonal fluctuations), behaviors (e.g., seasonal changes in physical activity, sleep, substance use, and eating behavior), and social factors (e.g., seasonal changes in social activity rhythms). Candidate behavioral mechanisms in SAD include behavioral disengagement (i.e., lack of response-contingent positive reinforcement) as well as emotional and psychophysiological reactivity to light and seasonal visual stimuli. Several biological mechanisms in SAD have also been proposed (Rohan et al. 2009). The circadian phase shift hypothesis suggests that in the fall and winter months, the timing of different circadian rhythms (e.g., melatonin release, sleep-wake cycle) is out of phase, or desynchronized from other rhythms and/or environmental factors (e.g., dusk/dawn cycle). Another hypothesis is that individuals with SAD have retinas that are less sensitive to light; low environmental light levels in the winter then lead to subthreshold levels of light information transmitted to the brain. The photoperiodic hypothesis proposes that some individuals with SAD maintain biological mechanisms to track changes in photoperiod, a circadian signal of change between seasons, evidenced by individuals with SAD who demonstrate a longer duration of nocturnal melatonin release in the winter months. Rohan et al. (2009) proposed that behavioral and cognitive mechanisms contribute to a psychological vulnerability that, when integrated with biological vulnerabilities, may explain the onset, maintenance, or remission of SAD. Although these separate mechanisms have been shown to play a role in SAD, it is not yet clear if these factors are mechanistic in the cause or maintenance of the disease.

Cross-References

- [Circadian Rhythm](#)
- [Depression: Symptoms](#)
- [Psychiatric Diagnosis](#)
- [Unipolar Depression](#)

References and Further Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th). Washington, DC: Author.
- Hebert, M., Dumont, M., & Lachapelle, P. (2002). Electrophysiological evidence suggesting a seasonal modulation of retinal sensitivity in subsyndromal winter depression. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 68(2–3), 191–202.
- Kasper, S., Wehr, T. A., Bartko, J. J., Gaist, P. A., & Rosenthal, N. E. (1989). Epidemiological findings of seasonal changes in mood and behavior. A telephone survey of Montgomery County, Maryland. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 46(9), 823–833.
- Lam, R. W., & Levitt, A. J. (Eds.). (1999). *Clinical guidelines for the treatment of seasonal affective disorder*. Vancouver: Clinical & Academic.
- Lewy, A. J., Sack, R. L., Miller, L. S., & Hoban, T. M. (1987). Antidepressant and circadian phase-shifting effects of light. *Science*, 235(4786), 352–354.
- Magnusson, A., & Partonen, T. (2005). The diagnosis, symptomatology, and epidemiology of seasonal affective disorder. *CNS Spectrums*, 10(8), 625–634.
- Modell, J. G., Rosenthal, N. E., Harriett, A. E., Krishen, A., Asgharian, A., Foster, V. J., et al. (2005). Seasonal affective disorder and its prevention by anticipatory treatment with bupropion XL. *Biological Psychiatry*, 58(8), 658–667.
- Roecklein, K. A., Rohan, K. J., & Postolache, T. T. (2010). SAD: Is seasonal affective disorder a bipolar variant? *Current Psychiatry*, 9(2), 42–54.
- Rohan, K. J., Roecklein, K. A., & Haaga, D. A. F. (2009). Biological and psychological mechanisms of seasonal affective disorder: A review and integration. *Current Psychiatry Reviews*, 5(1), 37–47.
- Rohan, K. J., Tierney Lindsey, K., Roecklein, K. A., & Lacy, T. J. (2004). Cognitive-behavioral therapy, light therapy, and their combination in treating seasonal affective disorder. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 80, 273–283.
- Rosen, L. N., Targum, S., Terman, M., Bryant, M., Hoffman, H., Kasper, S., et al. (1990). Prevalence of seasonal affective disorder at four latitudes. *Psychiatry Research*, 31(2), 131–144.
- Rosenthal, N. E., Sack, D. A., Gillin, J. C., Lewy, A. J., Goodwin, F. K., & Davenport, Y. (1984). Seasonal affective disorder. A description of the syndrome and preliminary findings with light therapy. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 41(1), 72–80.
- Rosenthal, N. E., Sack, D., James, S., Parry, B., Mendelson, W., Tamarkin, L., et al. (1985). Seasonal affective disorder and phototherapy. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 453, 260–269.
- Sohn, C. H., & Lam, R. W. (2005). Update on the biology of seasonal affective disorder. *CNS Spectrums*, 10(8), 635–646.
- Wehr, T. A., Duncan, W. C., Jr., Sher, L., Aeschbach, D., Schwartz, P. J., Turner, E. H., et al. (2001). A circadian signal of change of season in patients with seasonal affective disorder. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 58(12), 1108–1114.

Secondary Care

► Clinical Settings

Secondary Gain

► Symptom Magnification Syndrome

Secondary Parkinsonism

► Parkinson's Disease: Psychosocial Aspects

Secondary Prevention Programs

► Cardiac Rehabilitation

Secondhand Smoke

Susan J. Bondy

Dalla Lana School of Public Health, University of Toronto, Toronto, ON, Canada

Synonyms

Environmental tobacco smoke; Involuntary exposure to tobacco smoke; Passive smoking

Definition

The exposure to, and effects of, inhalation of cigarette smoke by an individual other than the active smoker. The term is also applied, more specifically, to smoke exhaled by an active smoker that remains in the environment.

Description

Secondhand smoke includes sidestream smoke from the end of a lit cigarette and exhaled smoke (United States Department of Health and Human Services 2006, 2010; World Health Organization International Agency for Research on Cancer 2004). Harmful components identified specifically in cigarette smoke measured in the air include gases (e.g., carbon monoxide), droplets, and respirable particles which result from the release, combustion, and partial combustion of the tobacco leaves and cigarette paper, as well as flavorants, additives, and other chemicals introduced at agricultural, manufacturing, or packaging stages (California Environmental Protection Agency 2005a). Secondhand smoke, has been shown to contain elevated levels of a large number of known and probable human carcinogens as well as many other toxins with proven causal links to human health conditions (California Environmental Protection Agency 2005b; Institute of Medicine 2010; United States Department of Health and Human Services 2010; United States Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development, Office of Health and Environmental Assessment & U.S. EPA 1992; World Health Organization International Agency for Research on Cancer 2004). It has been estimated that, in 2004, one third of all children and nonsmoking adults worldwide were exposed to secondhand smoke, and that this avoidable exposure was responsible for over 600,000 premature deaths or 1% of all deaths (Oberg et al. 2010). As with active smoking, there is no confirmed risk-free level of exposure to secondhand cigarette smoke (United States Department of Health and Human Services 2006, 2010).

Concentrations of secondhand smoke (and resulting levels of toxic exposure) vary widely and are influenced by: the number of cigarettes and rate of active smoking; the time elapsed since cigarettes were lit and extinguished; the volume of the affected air space; ventilation, air exchange rates, and direction of air flow; and the duration of exposure (California Environmental Protection Agency 2005a). Air concentrations in occupational and private settings, where smoking is permitted, often exceed occupational safety standards for specific agents, and biomarker levels in heavily exposed nonsmokers can overlap levels observed in active smokers (California Environmental Protection Agency 2005b; United States Department of Health and Human Services 2006). Exposure levels in outdoor settings can vary from negligible to concentrations similar to indoor levels if the passive smoker is exposed to the stream of smoke (Institute of Medicine 2010).

Measuring exposure for research, surveillance, and program evaluation may be achieved through air sampling or use of markers of human exposure in biological samples. Air monitoring assesses for concentrations for one or more specific component of tobacco smoke or respirable particulates of specific sizes (Institute of Medicine 2010; United States Department of Health and Human Services 2006). The most widely used biomarkers include exhaled carbon monoxide, and cotinine (a metabolite of nicotine) in saliva, urine, or blood samples. Other biomarkers used in research include, metabolites other than cotinine and concentrations of known carcinogens, as well as through use of other biological media (e.g., testing for accumulated cotinine and nicotine in hair samples from exposed individuals, even newborns as an indication of late prenatal exposure).

Over 40 years of evidence exists on the adverse health effects caused by passive smoke exposure. This evidence has been summarized in prominent reports by international health agencies including International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) (International Agency for Research on Cancer 2004, 2009), the Office of the United States Surgeon General (United States

Department of Health and Human Services 2006, 2010), and others (California Environmental Protection Agency 2005b; Institute of Medicine 2010). The major classes of health effects linked to passive smoking include cancers, respiratory disorders, cardiovascular diseases, reproductive effects, and adverse effects on pre- and postnatal growth and development.

Carcinogenic effects of passive smoking can be expected to be consistent with those for active smoking (International Agency for Research on Cancer 2004), and for both, the increased risk is dose-dependent. Secondhand smoke has a confirmed causal role in the development of lung cancer in exposed nonsmokers (California Environmental Protection Agency 2005b; International Agency for Research on Cancer 2004; United States Department of Health and Human Services 2006) and is suggested to increase the risks of nasal and nasopharyngeal cancers in adults (California Environmental Protection Agency 2005b; United States Department of Health and Human Services 2006). There is also evidence to suggest secondhand smoke increases the risk of all childhood cancers, studied collectively, as well as specific childhood cancers (California Environmental Protection Agency 2005b; United States Department of Health and Human Services 2006). For several cancers with definitive evidence linking them to active smoking (including various digestive, kidney, and bladder cancers), there is not sufficient quantitative data to show a causal association with secondhand smoke exposure in humans (International Agency for Research on Cancer 2009). The role of secondhand smoke in breast cancer remains more controversial with The California EPA (California Environmental Protection Agency 2005b) being the first health agency to draw the conclusion of a causal association, while other agencies have not concluded that there is a strong link between active or passive cigarette smoke exposure and breast cancer (International Agency for Research on Cancer 2009; United States Department of Health and Human Services 2010).

Conclusive evidence of noncancer respiratory effects of passive smoking include lower

respiratory tract illness in children and adults, prevalence of asthma in children, and severity of asthma in children and adults (United States Department of Health and Human Services 2006). Secondhand smoke also causes recurrent otitis media and middle ear effusion in children (United States Department of Health and Human Services). Passive smoke exposure has also been found to cause adverse and lasting effects on lung function and lung development in children associated with prenatal passive smoking and secondhand exposure in childhood (United States Department of Health and Human Services). Secondhand smoke has been identified as a risk factor for sudden infant death syndrome, with sufficient evidence to suggest a causal association, and associated with a small reduction in birth weight when nonsmoking mothers are exposed while pregnant (United States Department of Health and Human Services).

In terms of cardiovascular diseases, secondhand smoke exposure is accepted as a cause of coronary heart disease morbidity and mortality in adult women and men as well as acute cardiac events (Institute of Medicine 2010; United States Department of Health and Human Services 2006). Even brief exposure to environmental cigarette smoke can lead to vascular function changes and arrhythmic effects associated with acute cardiovascular events in susceptible individuals (Institute of Medicine 2010; United States Department of Health and Human Services 2010).

The World Health Organization Framework Convention on Tobacco Control (FCTC) requires that all signatory nations adopt and enforce measures to protect their populations from exposure to tobacco smoke (World Health Organization 2003, 2011). Protecting the population from secondhand smoke is identified as a key, evidence-based, measure to reduce death, disease, and disability caused by tobacco (World Health Organization 2003). FCTC guidelines (and others International Agency for Research on Cancer 2009; United States Department of Health and Human Services 2006, 2010) recommend that this be achieved through making all environments 100% smoke free as opposed to reliance on ventilation or creation of designated smoking spaces, which have

proven ineffective. Legislation and other measures should apply equally to outdoor spaces wherever there is evidence of exposure (United States Department of Health and Human Services 2006, 2010; World Health Organization 2011).

A number of educational, legislative, occupational, and clinical interventions to eliminate exposure to tobacco smoke have been implemented and evaluated. Evidence from several countries has shown that legislated bans in a variety of settings including workplaces, bars, and restaurants have been effective in terms of: achievement of compliance, improved air quality, reduced human biomarker levels of exposure, and a corollary effect of reducing smoking prevalence among individuals exposed to the restrictions (Institute of Medicine 2010; International Agency for Research on Cancer 2009; United States Department of Health and Human Services 2006). There is also growing evidence that event rates for acute cardiac events have been reduced successfully by legislative and other interventions to eliminate smoking in workplaces and other settings and reduce secondhand smoke exposure (Institute of Medicine 2010; United States Department of Health and Human Services 2010).

Cross-References

- [Cancer and Smoking](#)
- [Heart Disease and Smoking](#)
- [Institute of Medicine](#)
- [Smoking and Health](#)
- [Smoking Behavior](#)
- [Smoking Cessation](#)
- [Tobacco Control](#)
- [Tobacco Use](#)
- [World Health Organization \(WHO\)](#)

References and Readings

- California Environmental Protection Agency. (2005a). *Proposed identification of environmental tobacco smoke as a toxic air contaminant. Part A: Exposure assessment*. Sacramento: California Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Environmental Health Hazard Assessment.
- California Environmental Protection Agency. (2005b). *Proposed identification of environmental tobacco smoke as a toxic air contaminant. Part B: Health effects*. Sacramento: California Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Environmental Health Hazard Assessment.
- Institute of Medicine. (2010). *Secondhand smoke exposure and cardiovascular effects: Making sense of the evidence*. Washington, DC: Committee on Secondhand Smoke Exposure and Acute Coronary Events, Board on Population Health and Public Health Practice, Institute of Medicine of the National Academies.
- International Agency for Research on Cancer. (2004). *IARC monographs on the evaluation of carcinogenic risks to humans* (volume 83: Tobacco smoke and involuntary smoking). Lyon: International Agency for Research on Cancer.
- International Agency for Research on Cancer. (2009). *IARC handbook of cancer prevention. volume 13: Evaluating the effectiveness of smoke-free policies*. Lyon: International Agency for Research on Cancer, World Health Organization.
- Oberg, M., Jaakkola, M. S., Woodward, A., Peruga, A., & Pruss-Ustun, A. (2010). Worldwide burden of disease from exposure to second-hand smoke: A retrospective analysis of data from 192 countries. *Lancet*, 377(9760), 139–146.
- United States Department of Health and Human Services. (2006). *The health consequences of involuntary exposure to tobacco smoke: A report of the Surgeon General*. Rockville: United States Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Office of the Surgeon General.
- United States Department of Health and Human Services. (2010). *How tobacco smoke causes disease: The biology and behavioral basis for smoking-attributable diseases. A report of the Surgeon General*. Rockville: United States Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Office of the Surgeon General.
- United States Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development, Office of Health and Environmental Assessment & U.S. EPA. (1992). *Respiratory health effects of passive smoking (also known as exposure to secondhand smoke or environmental tobacco smoke ETS)*. EPA/600/6-90/006F. Washington, DC: United States Environmental Protection Agency (US EPA).
- World Health Organization. (2003). *WHO framework convention on tobacco control*. Geneva: Author.
- World Health Organization. (2011). *WHO framework convention on tobacco control: Guidelines for implementation Article 5.3; Article 8; Articles 9 and 10; Article 11; Article 12; Article 13; Article 14–2011 edition*. Geneva: Author.
- World Health Organization International Agency for Research on Cancer. (2004). *IARC monographs on the evaluation of carcinogenic risks to humans. volume 83: Tobacco smoke and involuntary smoking*. Lyon: International Agency for Research on Cancer.

Sedentary Activity

► [Lifestyle, Sedentary](#)

Sedentary Behavior

► [Screen Time](#)

Sedentary Behaviors

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Synonyms

[Physical inactivity](#)

Definition

Sedentary behaviors are an increasingly common problem worldwide, with important health consequences. These behaviors include long durations of sitting in front of the TV or the computer, playing computer or TV games, and a general lack of peripheral limb movements. These behaviors have risen due to a multitude of reasons including technological advancements, greater dependence on transportation, urbanization and hence smaller distances to work or schools spent walking, the omnipresence of TV and computers, and our dependence on such means for information, work, leisure, and communication. Various measures and scales exist to assess sedentary behaviors, and these depend on the type of behaviors assessed, the time frame the questions refer to (days, weeks, etc.), and the response format (e.g.,

a Likert scale or hours). This variability in assessment and use of different cutoffs could of course impact on the prevalence of sedentary behaviors identified in various samples. The prevalence of sedentary behaviors was found to be 58% in a nationally representative sample of Americans aged between 20 and 59 years. When looking just at sitting, one in four Americans spends 70% of their waking time sitting. Furthermore, people in developed countries may spend 4 h a day watching TV and 1 h a day in their vehicle. Importantly, the metabolic and health consequences of sedentary behaviors are distinct from the effects of lack of physical exercise (Owen et al. 2010). In a 21-year follow-up study, the number of hours riding in a car, alone or in combination with hours in front of a TV, significantly predicted cardiovascular disease mortality, independent of confounders (Warren et al. 2010). In contrast, taking daily breaks from sedentary behaviors is related to reduced waist circumference and to improved metabolic outcomes, independent of total amount of sedentary behaviors and of physical exercise (Healy et al. 2008). Mental health problems such as anxiety and depression are also associated with more sedentary behaviors, independent of general physical activity level (de Wit et al. 2011). Finally, an important study examined prospectively over 25 years the relationship between sedentary behavior (TV viewing >3 h/day) and long-term cognitive functions using various measures of processing speed and executive functioning. Indeed, sedentary behavior significantly predicted longer processing speed and poorer executing functioning (inhibition), independent of multiple confounders such as education, age, sex, and hypertension (Hoang et al. 2016). Thus, sedentary behaviors are an important topic for research and intervention in behavior medicine.

Cross-References

- [Cardiovascular Risk Factors](#)
- [Lifestyle, Sedentary](#)
- [Obesity: Causes and Consequences](#)
- [Physical Activity and Health](#)

References and Further Readings

- de Wit, L., van Straten, A., Lamers, F., Cuijpers, P., & Penninx, B. (2011). Are sedentary television watching and computer use behaviors associated with anxiety and depressive disorders? *Psychiatry Research*, 186, 239–243.
- Healy, G. N., Dunstan, D. W., Salmon, J., Cerin, E., Shaw, J. E., Zimmet, P. Z., et al. (2008). Breaks in sedentary time: Beneficial associations with metabolic risk. *Diabetes Care*, 31, 661–666.
- Hoang, T. D., Reis, J., Zhu, N., Jacobs, D. R., Jr., Launer, L. J., Whitmer, R. A., Sidney, S., & Yaffe, K. (2016). Effect of early adult patterns of physical activity and television viewing on midlife cognitive function. *Journal of the American Medical Association – Psychiatry*, 73, 73–79.
- Owen, N., Healy, G. N., Matthews, C. E., & Dunstan, D. W. (2010). Too much sitting: The population health science of sedentary behavior. *Exercise and Sport Sciences Reviews*, 38, 105–113.
- Warren, T. Y., Barry, V., Hooker, S. P., Sui, X., Church, T. S., & Blair, S. N. (2010). Sedentary behaviors increase risk of cardiovascular disease mortality in men. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, 42, 879–885.

Sedentary Time

Ciara M. O'Brien¹, Joan L. Duda¹,
George D. Kitas² and Sally A. M. Fenton¹

¹School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation Sciences, University of Birmingham, Birmingham, UK

²Russells Hall Hospital, The Dudley Group NHS Foundation Trust, Dudley, UK

Definition

Sedentary Time (vs. Sedentary Behavior)

Sedentary behavior has been defined as “any waking behavior characterized by an energy expenditure ≤ 1.5 metabolic equivalents (METs), while in a sitting, reclining or lying posture” (Tremblay et al. 2017). Common sedentary behaviors include watching television, reading a book, working at a computer, and driving motorized transport.

Sedentary time refers to the sum of all sedentary behaviors that are undertaken throughout the

course of a day. For example, time spent traveling to work by car, sitting working at an office desk, and watching television during leisure time all represent different sedentary behaviors but accumulate to contribute toward “total sedentary time.” However, within the field of sedentary behavior research, the terms sedentary time and sedentary behavior are often used interchangeably, and incorrectly.

Description

Measurement of Sedentary Time

Methods employed to assess sedentary time include both self-report measures and objective devices. Until recently, self-report measures were more frequently used in large-scale studies or epidemiological research due to their ease of application and relatively low-cost. Examples include diaries and questionnaires, such as the Bouchard Physical Activity Record and the International Physical Activity Questionnaire, respectively. However, the validity of the data collected using these measures is somewhat limited, due to social desirability bias and errors in participant recall. Moreover, most self-report measures largely focus on assessing specific sedentary behaviors (e.g., screen-based behaviors such as television viewing) rather than overall time spent sedentary.

Objective devices, such as accelerometers and posture sensors, are being more readily employed for the measurement of sedentary time due to their superior validity and reliability relative to self-report measures. Accelerometers (e.g., the ActiGraph) assess sedentary time on the basis of accelerations recorded over prespecified time periods (epochs). These accelerations are subsequently converted to accelerometer “counts,” which are interpreted against validated “count thresholds” or “cut points,” to determine the frequency and duration of sedentary time. Numerous cut points have been developed for this purpose, for example, Troiano et al. (2008) defines adults’ sedentary time as ≤ 99 counts per minute (cpm), and Freedson et al. (2005) have proposed cut points of ≤ 149 cpm to classify sedentary time in

children. Such cut points have been derived by establishing the upper limit of accelerometer counts recorded while undertaking activities requiring ≤ 1.5 METs (measured with indirect calorimetry). Consequently, accelerometers enable measurement of sedentary time on the basis of energy expenditure, but they typically do not afford the ability to determine the posture at which the behavior was undertaken. This may lead to misclassification of low energy, non-sitting behaviors (e.g., standing) as contributors toward sedentary time. Similarly, posture sensors (e.g., the activPAL) are not able to quantify the energy cost of sitting/lying behaviors they measure and therefore may misclassify seated active behaviors (e.g., cycling) as sedentary time. Bearing these limitations in mind, devices that have the ability to combine both accelerometry and posture classification should provide the most comprehensive and accurate assessment of sedentary time.

Sedentary Time and Health

The problem of sedentariness is receiving increased attention due to the high prevalence of this behavior among youth, adults, and older adults, coupled with growing evidence for the role of sedentary time in the development of poor health (Biswas et al. 2015; Hoare et al. 2016). For example, epidemiological research indicates that adolescents accumulate 6 h/day of accelerometer-assessed sedentary time, and sedentary time estimates increase with age (Collings et al. 2014). For adults, the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (Healy et al. 2011) indicated that sedentary time represents around 50–60% of waking hours when measured with accelerometry. Still, older adults represent the most sedentary age group, with sedentary time estimates of almost 10 h per day (Harvey et al. 2015).

The adverse health consequences of high sedentary time include increased risk of developing cardiovascular disease, type 2 diabetes, metabolic syndrome, and compromised mental health (Biswas et al. 2015; Hoare et al. 2016). Furthermore, a review of recent epidemiological studies

indicated a probable causal positive association between sedentary time and all-cause mortality (Biddle et al. 2016). Importantly, the deleterious health consequences of sedentary time are observed to be independent of participation in moderate-vigorous physical activity (i.e., activity ≥ 3 METs).

Still, despite growing evidence for negative health consequences of sedentary time, studies are yet to determine exactly “how much” sedentary time is bad for us. As a result, current guidelines can only recommend reducing overall sedentary time. Research examining the dose-response association between sedentary time and poor health is therefore necessary to refine sedentary time guidelines.

Cross-References

- [Cardiovascular Risk Factors](#)
- [Lifestyle, Sedentary](#)
- [Sedentary Behaviors](#)
- [Type 2 Diabetes](#)

References and Further Reading

- Biddle, S. J., Bennie, J. A., Bauman, A. E., Chau, J. Y., Dunstan, D., Owen, N., et al. (2016). Too much sitting and all-cause mortality: Is there a causal link? *BMC Public Health*, 16, 635.
- Biswas, A., Oh, P. I., Faulkner, G. E., Bajaj, R. R., Silver, M. A., Mitchell, M. S., et al. (2015). Sedentary time and its association with risk for disease incidence, mortality, and hospitalization in adults: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 162(2), 123–132.
- Collings, P. J., Wijndaele, K., Corder, K., Westgate, K., Ridgway, C. L., Dunn, V., et al. (2014). Levels and patterns of objectively-measured physical activity volume and intensity distribution in UK adolescents: The ROOTS study. *International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 11(23), 1–12.
- Freedson, P. S., Pober, D., & Janz, K. F. (2005). Calibration of accelerometer output for children. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, 37(11 Suppl), S523–S530.
- Harvey, J. A., Chastin, S. F., & Skelton, D. A. (2015). How sedentary are older people? A systematic review of the amount of sedentary behaviour. *Journal of Aging and Physical Activity*, 23(3), 471–487.

- Healy, G. N., Matthews, C. E., Dunstan, D. W., Winkler, E. A., & Owen, N. (2011). Sedentary time and cardio-metabolic biomarkers in US adults: NHANES 2003–06. *European Heart Journal*, 32(5), 590–597.
- Hoare, E., Milton, K., Foster, C., & Allender, S. (2016). The associations between sedentary behaviour and mental health among adolescents: A systematic review. *International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 13(1), 108.
- Tremblay, M. S., Aubert, S., Barnes, J. D., Saunders, T. J., Carson, V., Latimer-Cheung, A. E., et al. (2017). Sedentary behaviour research network (SBRN) – Terminology consensus project process and outcome. *International Journal of Behavioral Nutrition and Physical Activity*, 14(75), 1–17.
- Troiano, R. P., Berrigan, D., Dodd, K. W., Mâsse, L. C., Tilert, T., & McDowell, M. (2008). Physical activity in the United States measured by accelerometer. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, 40(1), 181–188.

Seek Feedback

- [Self-Monitoring](#)

Selection Bias

- [Bias](#)

Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors (SSRIs)

Michael Kotlyar¹ and John P. Vuchetich²

¹Department of Experimental and Clinical Pharmacology, College of Pharmacy, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN, USA

²Department of Psychiatry, University of Minnesota School of Medicine, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Synonyms

Celexa[®]; Citalopram; Escitalopram; Fluoxetine; Fluvoxamine; Lexapro[®]; Luvox[®]; Paroxetine; Paxil[®]; Prozac[®]; Sertraline; Zoloft[®]

Definition

The SSRIs are a family of medications that act primarily (but not exclusively) by inhibiting serotonin reuptake pumps (Finley 2009; Sussman 2009). These medications are used to treat a variety of psychiatric disorders including depression, generalized anxiety disorder, obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), panic disorder, premenstrual dysphoric disorder, bulimia nervosa, social phobia, and posttraumatic stress disorder (Sussman). Clinicians should consult the product labeling for each individual medication to determine the indications that each drug is currently approved to treat, since not all of the SSRIs are indicated in the treatment of all of these disorders (although in some cases there is data in the literature suggesting efficacy for a given agent for the treatment of conditions for which it does not have an indication). In the treatment of most types of depression, the SSRIs have similar efficacy to older classes of medications such as the tricyclic antidepressants. However better tolerability at therapeutic doses and lower toxicity in overdose has led to an increased use of SSRIs and decreased use of these older agents over the past several decades (American Psychiatric Association [APA] 2010; Baldessarini 2006; Finley 2009). As with all antidepressants, full therapeutic effects are not observed for as long as 8 weeks in the treatment of depression or longer in the treatment of other disorders (such as OCD), however some symptoms may start to improve sooner (APA 2010; Finley 2009; Kirkwood et al. 2008). In the treatment of depression, all of the SSRIs are thought to be approximately equally effective and therefore initial choice of therapy is often based on factors such as patient preference, prior response to the medication, cost, side effect profile of the individual agents, and the probability that a drug interaction will occur between the antidepressant being chosen and the other medications that the patient is on (APA 2010; Finley 2009). Although the mechanism of action of the SSRIs is similar, lack of efficacy following treatment with one of the drugs in this class does not necessarily predict lack of efficacy by another medication in this class (APA 2010).

There are currently six medications classified as SSRIs that are approved for marketing in the United States (i.e., fluoxetine, paroxetine, sertraline, citalopram, escitalopram, and fluvoxamine) (APA 2010). The SSRIs are similar in many respects; however, important differences between agents are present. Some of these differences are in the side effect profiles of the various drugs and in the likelihood of each drug contributing to a drug-drug interaction with other medications that a patient is taking.

All of the SSRIs have been commonly associated with side effects such as gastrointestinal complaints (e.g., nausea and diarrhea), disturbances in sleep and headache (APA 2010; Finley 2009). Although an individual patient could have any of the side effects listed, fluoxetine is generally considered the most likely to cause insomnia while paroxetine is often considered to be the most sedating. In many patients, these side effects decrease after the first week of therapy. Additionally, all of the SSRIs have been associated with sexual dysfunction (in both men and women) with the most common symptom reported being delayed orgasm, although decreased interest in sex or erectile dysfunction can also occur (APA 2010; Finley 2009). Since many patients may not spontaneously report sexual side effects, clinicians should inform patients that these may occur and determine if these have been problematic. Serotonin syndrome which includes neurobehavioral (e.g., lethargy and mental status changes), autonomic (e.g., sweating, blood pressure, and heart rate changes), and neuromuscular (e.g., rigidity and tremor) signs and symptoms has been rarely reported with the use of an SSRI as mono-therapy (Chyka 2008). However, the risk of serotonin syndrome increases when SSRIs are used in combination with other serotonergic agents, particularly with monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs) (APA 2010; Chyka 2008). SSRIs have also been associated with increased bleeding risk, likely due to the presence of serotonin transporters on blood platelets (Sussman 2009). Other side effects such as increased sweating, osteoporosis, bruxism, akathisia, and hyponatremia have been reported occasionally as have a wide range of other side

effects (APA 2010; Finley 2009). As with all antidepressants, the SSRIs carry a warning regarding increased suicidality, particularly in children, adolescents, and young adults (under age 24) during the initial stages of therapy (Sussman 2009).

Substantial differences between the SSRIs are present in the pharmacokinetic properties of the agents and in the likelihood that the drug can contribute to drug-drug interactions. For example, fluoxetine is notable for its long half-life (i.e., 4–6 days) and that of its active metabolite norfluoxetine (4–16 days) (Teter et al. 2008). A longer half-life means that any side effects will persist for a longer period of time after discontinuation of the medication. Discontinuation of SSRIs has been associated with withdrawal symptoms characterized by headache, anxiety, flu-like symptoms, and paresthesias (APA 2010). Therefore, it is advisable to taper the medication when possible. The likelihood of a withdrawal syndrome is less likely in SSRIs with longer half-lives (such as fluoxetine) since the decline in the concentration of medications occurs more gradually.

Many of the SSRIs have been found to interact with other medications, some of which may be commonly co-administered with the SSRIs. The cytochrome P450 (CYP450) superfamily of enzymes is responsible for the metabolism of a large number of medications. There are numerous specific isoenzymes within the CYP450 superfamily of enzymes and the degree to which each is affected by an individual SSRI varies considerably. For example, paroxetine and fluoxetine are both strong inhibitors of CYP2D6 (with fluoxetine being a moderate inhibitor of several other CYP450 isoenzymes) (APA 2010; Finley 2009). Since antidepressants are frequently co-administered with other medications, care should be taken to identify and manage any potential drug-drug interactions. It is important to consider the impact of drug interactions both when initiating an enzyme inhibitor (since concentrations of affected medications can increase) and when discontinuing an enzyme inhibitor (since concentrations of affected medication can decrease).

Cross-References

- [Anxiety Disorder](#)
- [Depression: Symptoms](#)

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2010). *Practice guideline for the treatment of patients with major depressive disorder* (3rd ed.). Washington, DC: Author. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 167(Suppl. 10), 1–124.
- Baldessarini, R. J. (2006). Drug therapy of depression and anxiety disorders. In L. S. Goodman, A. Gilman, L. L. Brunton, J. S. Lazo, & K. L. Parker (Eds.), *Goodman & Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics* (11th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill, Medical.
- Chyka, P. A. (2008). Clinical toxicology. In J. T. DiPiro, R. L. Talbert, G. C. Yee, G. R. Matzke, B. G. Wells, & L. M. Posey (Eds.), *Pharmacotherapy: A pathophysiologic approach* (7th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.
- Finley, P. R. (2009). Mood disorders: Major depressive disorders. In M. A. Koda-Kimble, L. Y. Young, B. K. Alldredge, R. L. Corelli, B. J. Guglielmo, W. A. Kradjan, & B. R. Williams (Eds.), *Applied therapeutics: The clinical use of drugs* (9th ed.). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Kirkwood, C. K., Makela, E. H., & Wells, B. G. (2008). Anxiety disorders: Posttraumatic stress disorder and obsessive-compulsive disorder. In J. T. DiPiro, R. L. Talbert, G. C. Yee, G. R. Matzke, B. G. Wells, & L. M. Posey (Eds.), *Pharmacotherapy: A pathophysiologic approach* (7th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.
- Sussman, N. (2009). Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors. In B. J. Sadock, V. A. Sadock, P. Ruiz, & H. I. Kaplan (Eds.), *Kaplan & Sadock's comprehensive textbook of psychiatry* (9th ed.). Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer Health/Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Teter, C. J., Kando, J. C., Wells, B. G., & Hayes, P. E. (2008). Depressive disorders. In J. T. DiPiro, R. L. Talbert, G. C. Yee, G. R. Matzke, B. G. Wells, & L. M. Posey (Eds.), *Pharmacotherapy: A pathophysiologic approach* (7th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

Self, The

- [Self-Identity](#)

Self-Assessment

- [Self-examination](#)

Self-Attitude

- [Self-Concept](#)
- [Self-image](#)

Self-Blame

Stephanie Ann Hooker
Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Synonyms

[Responsibility](#)

Definition

Self-blame is the attribution that the consequences one experiences are a direct result of one's actions or character. In the context of behavioral medicine, this may be either beneficial or harmful depending on if it leads to positive behavior change or increased negative affectivity and lack of behavior change.

Description

Self-blame is indirectly related to perceived control, where individuals who self-blame more often also are more likely to believe they have greater control over their lives. Because enhancements in perceived self-control are adaptive to psychological well-being, one may assume that self-blame may also be adaptive. However, this is not always the case.

Janoff-Bulman (1979) proposed two types of self-blame: (1) an adaptive, control-oriented response where the focus is on the individual's behavior and (2) a maladaptive, esteem-oriented response where the focus is on the individual's character. Self-blame is adaptive when individuals recognize that they had some control over

the situation but failed to act appropriately. Thus, these individuals can modify their behavior for future events. On the other hand, self-blame is maladaptive when individuals blame their character flaws for the outcome; this is referred to as characterological self-blame. These flaws are generally seen as stable, so these individuals make no efforts to change. This can lead to recurrence of the same problems and feelings of helplessness and depression.

Although Janoff-Bulman's (1979) theory of self-blame seems plausible, there is little support for these notions in the literature. Two studies did not support the theory that behavioral self-blame is adaptive in breast cancer patients; rather, behavioral self-blame was positively associated with symptoms of anxiety and depression (Bennett et al. 2005; Glinder and Compas 1999). Moreover, Bennett et al. found that both forms of self-blame were unrelated to perceptions of control, which directly contradicts the theory of self-blame.

However, one study of head and neck cancer patients supported Janoff-Bulman's (1979) theory. Low behavioral self-blame (smoking specific) was related to greater likelihood of continued smoking after the cancer diagnosis (Christensen et al. 1999). The relationship held for those patients with high and low perceived control over cancer recurrence, although those with low perceived control had almost a three times greater probability of continued smoking after a cancer diagnosis than those with higher perceived control over cancer recurrence. Furthermore, in this study, it appeared that specific behavioral self-blame was more predictive of behavior than a general behavioral self-blame. The authors suggest this may be because of the patients' knowledge of how specific behaviors related to the likelihood of having cancer and that patients do not attribute their behavior in general as the cause of cancer. This study illustrates the importance of understanding how patients' attributions of self-blame, perceived control, and knowledge of their condition may interact in predicting behavior change following a cancer diagnosis.

In the literature self-blame may be used interchangeably with responsibility. However, there are important differences between self-blame and responsibility that should be recognized. Self-blame differs from responsibility in that self-blame suggests that one intentionally brings about negative consequences, whereas responsibility is related more to perceived control over the event (Voth and Sirois 2009). Indeed, Voth and Sirois demonstrated in their study of patients with inflammatory bowel disease that self-blame is related to poor psychological adjustment, whereas responsibility is related to better psychological adjustment. Self-blame was associated with increased use of avoidant coping strategies, whereas responsibility was associated with decreased use of avoidant coping strategies. Avoidant coping was related to poorer psychological adjustment.

Theories of self-blame in behavioral medicine suggest that self-blame has maladaptive and adaptive qualities. Self-blame can be adaptive when individuals recognize their past actions caused their negative consequences, and they also recognize that their behavior is modifiable. Thus, individuals can make positive behavior changes in these cases, which can improve health. However, self-blame is maladaptive when it is primarily characterological in nature. This may lead individuals to feel helpless and to have poorer psychological adjustment to disease. Thus, it is imperative for researchers to properly define the self-blame construct for their research in order to further understand self-blame's role in behavioral medicine.

References and Further Reading

- Bennett, K. K., Compas, B. E., Beckjord, E., & Glinder, J. G. (2005). Self-blame and distress among women with newly diagnosed breast cancer. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 28, 313–323.
- Christensen, A. J., Moran, P. J., Ehlers, S. L., Raichle, K., Karmell, L., & Funk, G. (1999). Smoking and drinking behavior in patients with head and neck cancer: Effects of behavioral self-blame and perceived control. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 22, 407–418.

- Glinder, J. G., & Compas, B. E. (1999). Self-blame attributions in women with newly diagnosed breast cancer: A prospective study of psychological adjustment. *Health Psychology, 18*, 475–481.
- Janoff-Bulman, R. (1979). Characterological versus behavioral self-blame: Inquiries into depression and rape. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 37*, 1798–1809.
- Voth, J., & Sirois, F. M. (2009). The role of self-blame and responsibility in adjustment to inflammatory bowel disease. *Rehabilitation Psychology, 54*, 99–108.

Self-Care

Linda C. Baumann¹ and Alyssa Ylinen²

¹School of Nursing, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

²Allina Health System, St. Paul, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Self-management](#)

Definition

Self-care as described by Orem (1995) is “action of persons who have developed or developing capabilities to use appropriate, reliable and valid measures to regulate their own functioning and development in stable or changing environments” (p. 43). Self-care is both caring “for” oneself and “by” oneself. Self-care promotes well-being and is a perceived condition of personal existence characterized by experiences of contentment, pleasure, and happiness. It is associated with health and with sufficiency of resources. This definition is consistent with Diener’s (2009) concept of subjective well-being as an individual’s global judgment of values and standards that are significant to life satisfaction.

A paradigm that is emerging in health-care delivery for people with chronic conditions is that they are their own principal caregivers;

health-care professionals act as consultants and advisors in supporting them in self-care and self-management of their condition. This paradigm of collaborative care and self-management education involves shared decision making between providers and patients. Self-management education includes providing patients with information, problem-solving skills, and behavioral strategies to enhance their lives.

Diabetes is an excellent example of a health condition that requires self-management skills to maintain optimal control through healthy eating, being active, taking medications, monitoring, problem solving, reducing risks, and healthy coping. http://www.diabeteseducator.org/DiabetesEducation/Patient_Resources/AADE7_PatientHandouts.html Self-management education can occur in group settings where peers can provide emotional support and practical information for problem solving. In addition to knowledge and skills, self-care behaviors are determined by attitudes and beliefs, social and environmental influences, and self-efficacy expectations.

Description

Self-care is the thoughts and actions a person takes to achieve or maintain health and well-being.

Cross-References

► [Self-Management](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bodenheimer, T., Lorig, K., Holman, H., & Grumbach, K. (2002). Patient self-management of chronic disease in primary care. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 288*, 2469–2475.
- Diener, E. (2009). *The science of well-being*, (Social indicators book series, Vol. 37). New York: Springer.
- Orem, D. E. (1995). *Nursing: Concepts and practice* (6th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.

Self-Concept

Tara McMullen

Doctoral Program in Gerontology, University of Maryland Baltimore and Baltimore County, Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

Self-attitude; Self-identity; Self-image

Definition

Self-concept can be defined as one's beliefs about oneself.

Description

Self-concept is a difficult yet important terms to define as self-concept attempts to explain human behavior (micro). Defining self-concept is difficult as a large number of terms use the term 'self' to define some sort of individualistic behavior (Burns 1980). However, in its simplest form, self-concept can be defined as one's beliefs about oneself. Carl Rogers (1951) suggested that oneself, or the "self," plays a role in the development of personality and behavior.

Self-concept can be seen as what an individual understands him or herself to be, cultivated by the appraisal of oneself (Epstein 1973). Self-concept is an organized system of learned beliefs, perceptions, and feelings that aid in the understanding of oneself. Simply, self-concept is the perception an individual has of one's personal characteristics, formed and shaped by society and attitudes. The understanding of oneself is established by one's character, personality, traits, and appearance. Self-concept is developed from an individual's "I," "me," and/or "mine" experience (Burns 1980).

As individuals age, their self-concept is organized and reorganized by their social and nonsocial experiences (Burns 1980). Characteristics in an individual's social environment structure understanding of who the individual is (Epstein 1973). The self-concept or the "who am I" assessed by the individual can be defined and then redefined as the individual encounters many life experiences. In this sense, self-concept can be designated as a multifaceted phenomenon that is dynamic and can change due to experiences, environments, and social affiliations (Markus and Wurf 1987). Thus, self-concept is not fixed and is based individual on the context or situation. Moreover, Burns (1980) suggests that individuals may have many overlapping self-concepts that have been shaped and developed by various beliefs, experiences, and events. Therefore, self-concept can be seen as a multifaceted and individualized process.

An individual can develop a positive or negative self-concept based entirely on the evaluations of oneself. Bailey (2003) states that self-concept is associated with individualistic qualities that can be assessed rather than measured. "Non-measurable" aspects to one's self can be seen as physical attributes, religious preferences, and/or personality traits (Bailey 2003). Thus, self-concept is a learned trait. Rogers (1951) suggests that the self, through self-concept, must be maintained in order to avoid anxiety and stress. This ability to maintain one's self-concept can be achieved through the maintenance of self-esteem (Rosenberg 1979). It has been suggested that self-concept consists of one's self-image and one's self-esteem (Burns 1980). Self-image can be defined as the perception individuals have of themselves physically, psychologically, philosophically, and politically, developed through the agency of their societal experiences and development (Fisher 1986; Statt 1990). Self-esteem is operationally defined as an individual's orientation toward oneself (Rosenberg 1965); self-worth, motivations, and perceptions encompass the conceptualization of an individual's understanding of who they are (Rosenberg 1965). Thus, the process

in which individuals view themselves constructed by the perceptions they have of their self-worth aids in the development of self-concept.

Self-concept can be measured in children and adults by means of various psychometric scales such as the Tennessee Self Concept Scale (Fitts 1991) and the Piers-Harris Children's Self-Concept Scale (Piers 1984).

Cross-References

- [Self-Blame](#)
- [Self-esteem](#)
- [Self-examination](#)
- [Self-Identity](#)
- [Self-image](#)

References and Readings

- Bailey, J. A. (2003). Self-image, self-concept, and self-identity revisited. *Journal of the National Medical Association*, 95, 383–386.
- Burns, R. B. (1980). *Psychology for the health professions*. Lancaster: MTP Press.
- Epstein, S. (1973). The self-concept revisited – Or a theory of a theory. *The American Psychologist*, 28, 404–416.
- Fisher, S. (1986). *Development and structure of the body image* (Vol. 1). Hillsdale: Erlbaum.
- Fitts, W. H. (1991). *Tennessee self-concept scale manual*. Los Angeles: Western Psychological Services.
- Harriman, P. L. (1947). *The new dictionary of psychology*. New York: The Philosophical Library.
- Markus, H., & Nurius, P. (1986). Possible selves. *The American Psychologist*, 41, 954–969.
- Markus, H., & Wurf, E. (1987). The dynamic self-concept: A social psychological perspective. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 38, 299–337.
- Piers, E. V. (1984). *Revised manual for the Piers-Harris children's self-concept scale*. Los Angeles: Western Psychological Services.
- Piers, E. V. (1986). *The Piers-Harris children's self-concept scale, revised manual*. Los Angeles: Western Psychological Services.
- Rogers, C. R. (1951). *Client-centered counselling*. Boston: Houghton-Mifflin.
- Rosenberg, M. (1965). *Society and the adolescent self-image*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.
- Rosenberg, M. (1979). *Conceiving the self*. New York: Basic Books.

- Rosenberg, M. (1986). *Conceiving the self*. Malabar: Krieger.
- Rosenberg, M. (1989). *Society and the adolescent self-image*. Middeltown: Wesleyan University Press.
- Statt, D. (1990). *The concise dictionary of psychology*. New York: Routledge.

Self-Conception

- [Self-image](#)

Self-Consciousness

- [Self-image](#)

Self-Construal

- [Self-Identity](#)

Self-Control

- [Behavioral Inhibition](#)
- [Self-Regulation Model](#)

Self-Control Capacity

- [Self-Regulatory Capacity](#)

Self-Control Failure

- [Self-Regulatory Fatigue](#)

Self-Determination Theory

Lauren Law, Dawn Wilson and Hannah G. Lawman

Department of Psychology, University of South Carolina, Columbia, SC, USA

Synonyms

[Cognitive evaluation theory](#)

Definition

Self-determination theory is a theory of human motivation that describes two distinct types of motivation: autonomous (regulated through natural and internal processes such as inherent enjoyment or satisfaction) and controlled (regulated through externally held demands and social expectations). Autonomous motivation can be elicited and sustained through social–environmental factors including high autonomy, competence, and relatedness and may contribute to long-term maintenance of a behavior change.

Description

Self-determination theory (SDT) is a theory of human motivation that describes motivation in two distinct types: autonomous and controlled (Deci and Ryan 2008). Autonomous motivation, which includes intrinsic and well-internalized extrinsic motivation, is regulated through natural and internal processes such as inherent satisfaction and can be thought of as an individual's innate desire to engage in healthy behaviors independent of external influences. Autonomous motivation can be elicited and sustained through social contextual conditions including social support from significant others that facilitates intrinsic motivation (e.g., autonomy, competence, and relatedness) in contrast to conditions that undermine one's innate propensity for it such as

authoritarian or highly controlled interpersonal interactions (Ryan and Deci 2000). An intrinsically motivated individual may engage in healthy eating because it aligns with his/her self-concept and is enjoyable. Controlled (extrinsic) motivation is regulated through externally held demands and expectations that are contingent on rewards or punishments. An extrinsically motivated individual may engage in healthy eating for approval from peers or to avoid health consequences rather than inherent enjoyment or self-satisfaction. While both types of motivation represent an individual's intention to act, health behavior outcomes resulting from autonomous versus controlled motivation may be qualitatively different. A growing evidence base shows that autonomous motivation may more likely contribute to the maintenance of health behaviors compared to controlled motivation (Ng et al. 2012).

SDT provides a framework for understanding motivational influences on health behaviors, such as healthy diet, physical activity, safe sex practices, and substance use. The conceptualization of motivation on a continuum allows for distinctions to be made in the type and quality of motivation that may contribute to different outcomes. SDT makes distinctions between autonomous and controlled motivation with autonomous motivation being more inherently enjoyable, long-lasting, and internally regulated, while controlled motivation consists of motivation that is primarily driven by externally held demands, social pressures, and reinforcers (Deci and Ryan 2008). For example, controlled motivation based on social pressures has been shown to be negatively related to fruit and vegetable intake compared to autonomous motivation which positively predicted this health behavior (McSpadden et al. 2016).

SDT originally conceptualized the motivation continuum as ranging from amotivation to extrinsic to intrinsic motivation. Amotivation is conceptualized as having no intention to act and has been associated with a lack of outcome value, as well as a lack of beliefs about the link between behavior and desired outcome, or competence in performing the behavior. On the one end of the continuum, motivation is hypothesized to be

regulated extrinsically and controlled by rewards and punishments or other externally regulated processes. Extrinsic motivation may be broken down into subcategories based on increasing levels of intrinsic regulation: extrinsic, introjected (i.e., somewhat external regulation or internal rewards and/or punishments), and identified (somewhat internal regulation and holds personal importance; Deci and Ryan 1985; Ryan and Deci 2000). At the other end of the continuum, intrinsic motivation is regulated or controlled by an individual's inherent satisfaction, novelty, and drive. Previous research has supported beneficial effects of intrinsic motivation compared to extrinsic motivation in substance abuse treatment outcomes (Zeldman et al. 2004) and in predicting mental health and job outcomes in the workplace (Vansteenkiste et al. 2007). However, some researchers have combined extrinsic and introjected into controlled-type motivation and combined identified and intrinsic into autonomous-type motivation (Deci and Ryan 2008). This has resulted in a shift of the primary motivation differentiation moving toward autonomous and controlled in conceptualizing intrinsic and extrinsic in a more dynamic fashion.

SDT emphasizes the role of social context in understanding health behavior motivation and suggests its influence on behavior is through affecting social contextual conditions that may help to elicit and sustain intrinsic motivation. These conditions are described as psychological needs that are inherent to being human and consist of the needs for competence, autonomy, and relatedness. Social relationships (e.g., social support), environmental characteristics (e.g., built environment, resources), and cultural practices and norms (e.g., gender roles) can influence these psychological needs and in turn facilitate or undermine one's sense of intrinsic motivation for engaging in healthy behaviors (Deci and Ryan 1985, 2008; Ryan and Deci 2000). An intervention to increase physical activity, the Active by Choice Today trial, focused on increasing social support (relatedness), teaching behavioral skills (competence), and encouraging choice (autonomy) to provide conditions that facilitate the development of autonomous motivation to

be physically active for a lifetime (Wilson et al. 2008). This trial showed a significant intervention effect on increasing accelerometry estimates of physical activity in youth during the afterschool program as compared to a general health education program (Wilson et al. 2011). Similarly, researchers and clinicians interested in reducing substance use have utilized autonomy-supportive strategies for resisting peer pressure (competence) for substance use while preserving positive peer relationships (relatedness) and increasing their choices for alternative activities (autonomy; Williams et al. 2000).

Application of SDT to interventions with other behavioral change theories, such as Social Cognitive Theory (SCT) or Family Systems Theory (FST), has also been implemented in recent trials. For example, the Families Improving Together for Weight Loss trial combined essential elements from SCT including self-monitoring and goal setting and FST including family communication skills and social support with SDT strategies that promoted parental autonomy-supportive communication to enhance motivation for health behavior change in overweight African American adolescents (Wilson et al. 2015). Integrating evidenced-based theoretical frameworks will allow researchers to design comprehensive interventions that are relevant and effective in improving long-term health behaviors.

There is growing evidence that interventions that address cognitive and social factors related to health behavior change may also have ripple effects, such as impacting additional physical, mental, and social health outcomes that were not the intended targeted outcomes (Wilson 2015). This suggests that these health behavior interventions may have far-reaching benefits and impact population health more broadly. Mata et al. (2009) found that increased motivation for exercise behavior also had positive effects on eating self-regulation in a weight control intervention, suggesting that utilizing SDT in health behavior interventions may support multiple health behavior change. Further, a recent meta-analysis of studies utilizing SDT in health interventions showed positive relationships between supportive health

climates that emphasized autonomous motivation and mental and physical health, suggesting that positive health climate-based interventions may be a cost-effective strategy to improve a variety of health outcomes (Ng et al. 2012). In addition, a recent study found that applying SDT to financial incentives was a cost-effective strategy for increasing adherence to existing treatments (Kullgren et al. 2016). However, it is important to utilize theories of motivation, such as SDT, in behavioral economics studies to better understand which types of incentive structures may yield consistent positive changes across different settings (Haff et al. 2015).

In conclusion, SDT has been shown to be a promising theory for individual health behavior change that emphasizes the importance of a positive social context in fostering motivation over time and across health behaviors. Applications of SDT, especially when coupled with other evidenced-based theoretical frameworks of behavior change, show strong promise for future interventions that could be important for improving population level health outcomes.

Cross-References

- [Health Behaviors](#)
- [Motivational Interviewing](#)

References and Further Reading

- Deci, E. L., & Ryan, R. M. (1985). *Intrinsic motivation and self-determination in human behavior*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Deci, E. L., & Ryan, R. M. (2008). Facilitating optimal motivation and psychological well-being across life's domains. *Canadian Psychology*, 49(1), 14–23.
- Haff, N., Patel, M. S., Lim, R., Zhu, J., Troxel, A. B., Asch, D. A., & Volpp, K. G. (2015). The role of behavioral economic incentive design and demographic characteristics in financial incentive-based approaches to changing health behaviors: A meta-analysis. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 29(5), 314–323.
- Kullgren, J. T., Williams, G. C., Resnicow, K., An, L. C., Rothberg, A., Volpp, K. G., & Heisler, M. (2016). The promise of tailoring incentives for healthy behaviors. *International Journal of Workplace Health Management*, 9(1), 2–16.
- Mata, J., Silva, M. N., Vieira, P. N., Carraça, E. V., Andrade, A. M., Coutinho, S. R., . . . , & Teixeira, P. J. (2009). Motivational “spill-over” during weight control: Increased self-determination and exercise intrinsic motivation predict eating self-regulation. *Health Psychology*, 28(6), 709.
- McSpadden, K. E., Patrick, H., Oh, A. Y., Yaroch, A. L., Dwyer, L. A., & Nebeling, L. C. (2016). The association between motivation and fruit and vegetable intake: The moderating role of social support. *Appetite*, 96, 87–94.
- Ng, J. Y., Ntoumanis, N., Thøgersen-Ntoumani, C., Deci, E. L., Ryan, R. M., Duda, J. L., & Williams, G. C. (2012). Self-determination theory applied to health contexts a meta-analysis. *Perspectives on Psychological Science*, 7(4), 325–340.
- Ryan, R. M., & Deci, E. L. (2000). Self-determination theory and the facilitation of intrinsic motivation, social development, and well-being. *American Psychologist*, 55(1), 68–78.
- Vansteenkiste, M., Neyrinck, B., Niemiec, C. P., Soenens, B., Witte, H., & Broeck, A. (2007). On the relations among work value orientations, psychological need satisfaction and job outcomes: A self-determination theory approach. *Journal of Occupational and Organizational Psychology*, 80(2), 251–277.
- Wilson, D. K. (2015). Behavior matters: The relevance, impact, and reach of behavioral medicine. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 49(1), 40–48.
- Williams, G. C., Cox, E. M., Hedberg, V. A., & Deci, E. L. (2000). Extrinsic life goals and health-risk behaviors in adolescents. *Journal of Applied Social Psychology*, 30(8), 1756–1771.
- Wilson, D. K., Kitzman-Ulrich, H., Williams, J. E., Saunders, R., Griffin, S., Pate, R., et al. (2008). An overview of “The Active by Choice Today” (ACT) trial for increasing physical activity. *Contemporary Clinical Trials*, 29(1), 21–31.
- Wilson, D. K., Van Horn, M. L., Kitzman-Ulrich, H., Saunders, R., Pate, R., Lawman, H. G. . . . , & Mansard, L. (2011). Results of the “Active by Choice Today” (ACT) randomized trial for increasing physical activity in low-income and minority adolescents. *Health Psychology*, 30(4), 463–471.
- Wilson, D. K., Kitzman-Ulrich, H., Resnicow, K., Van Horn, M. L., George, S. M. S., Siceloff, E. R., . . . , & Coulon, S. (2015). An overview of the Families Improving Together (FIT) for weight loss randomized controlled trial in African American families. *Contemporary Clinical Trials*, 42, 145–157.
- Zeldman, A., Ryan, R. M., & Fiscella, K. (2004). Motivation, autonomy support, and entity beliefs: Their role in methadone maintenance treatment. *Journal of Social and Clinical Psychology*, 23(5), 675–696.

Self-Directed Violence

- [Suicide](#)

Self-Efficacy

Jorie Butler

Department of Psychology, University of Utah,
Salt Lake City, UT, USA

Definition

Self-efficacy: Self-efficacy is the belief in personal ability to successfully perform challenging life tasks. Self-efficacy plays an important role in a person's emotions, cognitions, motivational activities, and behaviors across a variety of activities.

Description

Self-efficacy is rooted within Social Cognitive Theory (Bandura 1986) in which people are characterized as active agents of control within their own lives – dynamically influencing their personal environments by organizing responses to opportunities, reflecting on past performances, and self-regulating behavior. Self-efficacy influences response organization, develops in part from reflection, and contributes to self-regulation, particularly, by fostering approach-oriented behavior and persistence in the face of obstacles. Attribution Theory (Weiner 1992), which includes the properties of locus, stability, controllability, also provides a framework for understanding self-efficacy. Locus reflects the cause of a situation as internal or external to a person. Stability reflects how changeable the situation is perceived to be. Controllability is an indicator of whether the person can willfully change a situation. A negative situation such as reaching an unhealthy weight could be interpreted as internal (*Being this heavy is my fault*), stable (*I've always been too heavy*), and uncontrollable (*It doesn't matter what I eat, I just get heavier*), resulting in poor self-efficacy for weight control in the future. In contrast, reaching an unhealthy weight could be interpreted as external (*Weight gain is common with age*), unstable (*This weight came on, it can come off!*), and controllable (*Now that I realize*

I'm eating too much and moving too little, I can change that behavior), producing opportunities for improvements in future self-efficacy.

Social Learning Theory (Bandura 1977b) explains development of self-efficacy via four principle pathways: mastery experiences, modeling, social persuasion, and physiology. Past experiences are most predictive of future experiences. People engage in tasks and actions, interpret the outcome, and develop perceptions of their competence within the task domain. Mastery experiences result from multiple successes and promote self-efficacy. Failures are detrimental to developing self-efficacy, although the negative impact of failures is diminished when failures occur attempting a task that has been successfully completed on multiple occasions. The primacy of mastery experiences in self-efficacy development speaks to the titration between efficacy development and actual performance. Self-efficacy develops in domains in which skills are acquired often through the combination of effortful practice and natural talent. Self-efficacy development can be fostered by modeling, particularly when successful completion of activities is modeled by someone viewed as admirable and possessing desired capabilities of the observer. Conversely, a model who fails to perform a desired activity can weaken an observer's sense of competence for performing the activity. Social persuasions involve effective encouragement (not empty praise) that can be instrumental in fostering self-efficacy when the tasks are achievable or nearly achievable. Negative social persuasion deflates self-efficacy. Social persuasion is an important pathway by which parents, teachers, coaches, employment supervisors, and others can facilitate or damage developing self-efficacy. Physiological responses during task attempts influence self-efficacy development. Emotional states indicative of negative arousal such as stress and fear are indicators that the task is difficult and may indicate anticipated failure. In contrast, excitement, anticipation of fun, happiness, or a sense of work "flow" indicate positively developing efficacy. Individuals experiencing negative adjustment periods – such as depressive states or grief – will have difficulty developing self-efficacy. Self-efficacy

can develop more freely when negative emotional states are resolved.

Self-efficacy influences behavior across many domains, including the choices of activities to become involved in effortful work to complete activities, persistence in the face of setbacks or failures, and resilience following adversity (Schunk and Pajares 2005). Individuals tend to avoid activities for which they anticipate poor performance and approach tasks for which they anticipate success. Thus, individuals with low self-efficacy in a given domain may avoid it all together, thus contributing to narrowing of life skills. High self-efficacy contributes to task engagement. High self-efficacy is also associated with effortful engagement in tasks – particularly when intrinsic motivation to engage in the task is also present. Persistence in the face of setbacks is more likely when individuals have high self-efficacy for the task. With the expectation for eventual failure (a component of low self-efficacy), persistence is unlikely. In addition, when failures or enduring obstacles are encountered, low self-efficacy may contribute to a sense of failure and withdrawal from the situation whereas high self-efficacy may contribute to resilience.

Self-efficacy is an integral component of a number of models designed to explain health behavior – primarily because self-efficacy contributes to the willingness to try to change undesirable health behavior, successful implementation of health behavior change, and persistently maintaining health behavior change over time. The Theory of Reasoned Action was extended to form the Theory of Planned Behavior. The extension incorporated self-efficacy as a key factor in changing health behavior along with personal attitudes toward change and the attitudes of significant others toward the change (Ajzen 1991). Self-efficacy was also incorporated into the Health Belief Model during the 1980s – reflecting understanding of the importance of the construct in promoting health (Rosenstock et al. 1988). The Health Behavior Change Model (Prochaska and Velicer 1997) incorporates self-efficacy as a contributor to stages of change. Self-efficacy can influence a person's thoughts about needing change (in the contemplation stage).

A person high in self-efficacy will anticipate success and may progress more quickly to the active preparation stage – involving active planning for change behaviors. In addition, self-efficacy will influence effective active change (action stage) as persons high in self-efficacy may more effectively respond to setbacks with persistence and resilience. This quality of those high in self-efficacy also contributes to effective sustainment of the changed behavior (maintenance stage).

Self-efficacy is generally best understood in specific domains and the concept is well supported across multiple domains including school performance, athletic achievement, occupational arenas, and in health behaviors including health maintenance (such as diet and exercise), recovery from acute events such as surgery, and coping with chronic illness or dangerous diagnoses. There is some evidence for a generalized self-efficacy as individuals expect better competence for activities when they have demonstrated aptitude in other activities in the past (Smith 1989). Self-efficacy contributes a theoretically grounded explanation for the myriad ways in which people shape their own environments by seeking out opportunities for success, persisting in the face of hard work and adversity, learning from past experiences, and responding with resilience to failure.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Efficacy](#)
- ▶ [Efficacy Cognitions](#)
- ▶ [Hopelessness](#)
- ▶ [Locus of Control](#)
- ▶ [Salutogenesis](#)
- ▶ [Self-Concept](#)
- ▶ [Self-Image](#)
- ▶ [Theory of Reasoned Action](#)

References and Further Readings

- Ajzen, I. (1991). The theory of planned behavior. *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes*, 50, 179–211.
- Ajzen, I., & Fishbein, M. (1980). *Understanding attitudes and predicting social behavior*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.

- Bandura, A. (1977a). Self-efficacy: Toward a unifying theory of behavioral change. *Psychological Review*, 84, 191–215.
- Bandura, A. (1977b). *Social learning theory*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.
- Bandura, A. (1986). *Social foundations of thought and actions: A social cognitive theory*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.
- Fishbein, M., & Ajzen, I. (1975). *Belief, attitude, intention, and behavior: An introduction to theory and research*. Reading: Addison-Wesley.
- Prochaska, J. O., & Velicer, W. F. (1997). The trans-theoretical model of health behavior change. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 12, 38–48.
- Rosenstock, I. M., Strecher, V. J., & Becker, M. H. (1988). Social learning theory and the health belief model. *Health Education Quarterly*, 15, 175–183.
- Schunk, D. H., & Pajares, F. (2005). Competence perceptions and academic functioning. In A. J. Elliot & C. S. Dweck (Eds.), *Handbook of competence and motivation* (pp. 84–104). New York: Guilford Press.
- Smith, R. E. (1989). Effects of coping skills training on generalized self-efficacy and locus of control. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 56, 228–233.
- Walker, J. (2001). *Control and the psychology of health: Theory, measurement and applications*. Buckingham: Open University Press.
- Weiner, B. (1986). *An attributional theory of motivation and emotion*. New York: Springer.
- Weiner, B. (1992). *Human motivation: Metaphors, theories, and research*. Newbury Park: Sage.

Self-esteem

Shin-ichi Suzuki¹ and Koseki Shunsuke²

¹Faculty of Human Sciences, Graduate School of Human Sciences, Waseda University, Tokorozawa-shi, Saitama, Japan

²Faculty of Psychology and Education, J. F. Oberlin University, Machida-shi, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

Pride; Self-respect

Definition

Self-esteem can be defined as a positive self-evaluation or a concept broader than confidence.

It refers to an individual's cognitive appraisal that is constant over time. A positive self-appraisal indicates higher self-esteem, and a negative self-appraisal indicates lower self-esteem. Self-esteem is not perceived anytime, but it essentially influences one's actions, consciousness, or attitude. One who is perceived to have high self-esteem pursues goals aggressively and actively. Further, they are perceived to be amiable by themselves or by others. In this sense, self-esteem becomes indispensable to mental health or social adaptation.

In the previous study concerning self-esteem, an individual's self-esteem was considered in terms of not only his or her tendency and degrees of appraisal, which could be positive or negative, but also its relationship with the individual's cognitive faculty. James (1890) propounded that “self-esteem is successes divided by desire.” This formula suggests that just thinking that one could succeed in the desired field increases self-satisfaction. This formula is similar to the theory on the gap between ideal self and real self (Rogers et al. 1951).

An individual's self-esteem strongly correlates with the affection, unconditional acceptance, and nurturing attitude that the parents display. Self-esteem can be measured in various ways, the most representative being Rosenberg's (1965) questionnaire and Coopersmith's (1967) scales. Because each scale may be different in terms of its dimensionalities or factors, it is necessary to consider the characteristics of the scales used or interpreted on a case-by-case basis.

Cross-References

- Attitudes
- Cognitive Appraisal
- Self-Concept

References and Further Reading

- Coopersmith, S. (1967). *The antecedents of self-esteem*. San Francisco: WH Freeman.
- James, W. (1890). *The principles of psychology*. New York: Holt.

- Rogers, C. R., Dorfman, E., Gordon, T., & Hobbs, N. (1951). *Client-centered therapy: Its current practice, implications, and theory*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin.
- Rosenberg, M. (1965). *Society and adolescent self-image*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.

Self-Evaluate

► Self-Monitoring

Self-Evaluation

► Self-examination

Self-examination

Tara McMullen
 Doctoral Program in Gerontology, University of
 Maryland Baltimore and Baltimore County,
 Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Self-assessment](#); [Self-evaluation](#); [Self-monitoring](#);
[Self-rating](#)

Definition

Self-examination can be seen as a process of evaluation or appraisal of one's qualities, traits, and characteristics.

Description

Self-examination can be seen as a process of evaluation or appraisal of one's qualities, traits, and characteristics. The evaluation of one's qualities,

traits, and characteristics helps develop one's self-image and aids in the development of one's self-awareness or self-concept. Self-examination may result in a positive or negative self-feeling, which may enhance or decrease individuals' ideas about themselves. The evaluation of oneself can be seen as the attempt to understand one's motivations and behaviors. In addition, the examination of oneself is likely to affect self-esteem, which may affect self-image. Individuals who deem themselves as worthy may have a greater self-esteem, which may maintain one's "self." Rogers (1951) suggests that the self must be maintained in order to avoid anxiety and stress. Further, theorists often define self-examination as the evaluation or rating of oneself. This evaluation or rating is often defined as the degree to which an individual is self-aware and may result in a negative or positive self-actualization. This formed self-awareness helps develop the basis of individual self-regulation or the ability of one to control one's behaviors and actions (Hull 2002). Therefore, an individual defines one's self-concept from the degree to which the individual self-examines their personal traits, motivations, behaviors.

The act of self-examination may result in individuals self-monitoring themselves. Self-monitoring can be seen as the degree to which an individual manages or controls the image presented to others in social circumstances (Rawn et al. 2007). An individual who is a "high self-monitor" may be adept at self-monitoring and motivated to alter individual behavior in order to impact the responses of peers in social situations (Rawn et al. 2007). An individual who is a "low self-monitor" remains constant in individual behavior and will not alter individual behavior in social situations (Rawn et al. 2007). Further, the act of self-examination may result in self-criticism, or the awareness that individual traits and/or characteristics do not compare to the ideal self-image one may have for oneself. This self-criticism may be a result of the self-examination of one's strengths and weaknesses and may increase the evaluation of one's image. One may examine and reexamine individual strengths and

weaknesses in order to measure self-actualization, or the fulfillment of one's potential (Maslow 1943, 1976). Therefore, the greater the self-actualization, the more defined one's self-concept may be, and possibly the greater the self-acceptance an individual may have for oneself. Self-acceptance is defined as the attitude toward one's self and one's individual qualities (English und English 1958).

Research that explores how self-evaluation impacts everyday situations has become common. For example, Judge, Locke, and Durham (1997), in a study exploring workplace job satisfaction, found that individuals with greater self-evaluations were more likely to have a higher self-esteem, self-efficacy, personal control, and emotional stability and were motivated to perform well in the workplace. Judge et al. (1997) conceptually define self-esteem, self-efficacy, locus of control, and "neuroticism-stability" as core self-evaluations. Judge et al. suggest that core self-evaluations are the "fundamental, subconscious conclusions individuals reach about themselves, other people, and the world" (Judge et al. 1998).

Cross-References

- [Self-blame](#)
- [Self-concept](#)
- [Self-esteem](#)
- [Self-identity](#)
- [Self-image](#)

References and Readings

- English, H. B., & English, A. C. (1958). *A comprehensive dictionary of psychology and psychoanalytic terms*. New York: Longmans, Green.
- Hull, J. G. (2002). Modeling the structure of self-knowledge and the dynamics of self-regulation. In A. Tesser, D. A. Stapel, & J. V. Wood (Eds.), *Self and Motivation: Emerging Psychological Perspectives* (pp. 173–206). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Judge, T. A., Locke, E. A., & Durham, C. C. (1997). The dispositional causes of job satisfaction: A core evaluations approach. *Research in Organizational Behavior*, 19, 151–188.
- Judge, T. A., Locke, E. A., Durham, C. C., & Kluger, A. N. (1998). Dispositional effects on job and life satisfaction: The role of core evaluations. *Journal of Applied Psychology*, 83, 17–34.
- Maslow, A. H. (1943). A theory of human motivation. *Psychological Review*, 50, 37.
- Maslow, A. H. (1976). Self-actualization psychology. In J. Fadiman & R. Frager (Eds.), *Personality and personal growth*. New York: Harper Collins.
- Rawn, C. D., Mead, N., Kerkhof, P., & Vohs, K. D. (2007). The influence of self-esteem and ego threat on decision making. In K. D. Vohs, R. F. Baumeister, & G. Loewenstein (Eds.), *Do Emotions Help or Hurt Decision Making? A Hedgefoxian Perspective* (pp. 157–182). New York: Russell Sage Foundation Press.
- Rogers, C. (1951a). Perceptual reorganization in client-centered therapy. In R. R. Blake & G. V. Ramsey (Eds.), *Perception: An approach to personality*. New York: Ronald Press.
- Rogers, C. (1951b). *Client-centered therapy* (pp. 13–71). Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company.

Self-Experimentation

- [Quantified Self](#)

Self-Identity

Katherine T. Fortenberry¹, Kate L. Jansen² and Molly S. Clark³

¹Department of Family and Preventative Medicine, The University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT, USA

²Behavioral Health, Midwestern University, Glendale, AZ, USA

³Midwestern University College of Health Sciences, Clinical Psychology, Glendale, AZ, USA

Synonyms

[Self-concept](#); [Self-construal](#); [Self-perspective](#); [Self-schema](#); [Self-system](#); [Self, The](#); [Sense of self](#)

Definition

Self-identity can be conceptualized as a dynamic, contextually based system (Baumeister 1998). It is a complex structure centered in memory and cognition that helps define who we are, how we relate to others, and our place in the world (Swann and Bosson 2008). It is also considered a key motivating force that influences personality and behavior. Self-identity is thought to drive our interactions with others (Andersen and Chen 2002), goals and future roles (Markus and Wurf 1987), and experience of emotions (Higgins 1989). Self-identity is also believed to regulate and motivate behavior by providing key self-regulation through a feedback system (Carver and Scheier 2002).

Description

A person's self-views are considered fundamental to how he or she interprets events, experiences emotion, and behaves. Individuals have distinct identities in different social roles, and differentiation into multiple role-related selves (e.g., self as a student, self as an athlete) is a process of normal development that begins in adolescence or earlier (Oosterwegel and Oppenheimer 2002). Self-identity differs in content and structure across individuals, and likely varies as a function of culture or gender (Cross and Madson 1997).

Research has examined the importance of the organization of positive and negative attributes within self-identity, namely, compartmentalization (i.e., negative attributes enclosed within a single role) and integration (i.e., negative attributes spread across multiple roles; see Showers and Zeigler-Hill 2007). The structure of self-identity is considered contextual and fluctuates between situations as different aspects of the self-structure are activated, strongly relating to mood and self-esteem. A person with a compartmentalized self-structure would experience more positive moods when a role containing predominantly positive attributes is activated frequently, but experience negative moods when a role containing negative attributes is activated. In contrast, both positive and negative attributes are

frequently activated in an integrated self-structure, moderating the adverse emotional consequences of activating negative beliefs.

Self-identity is also conceptualized as dynamic. Andersen and Chen (2002) take an interpersonal developmental approach to understanding self-identity in different situations. In their theory of the relational self, they suggest that self-identity develops through interactions with significant others, who set *exemplars*, or cognitive templates stored in long-term memory. These exemplars are set in motion by environmental cues, so that behavior with different individuals varies based upon the active exemplar. Therefore, *who we are now* may differ when with different people.

In addition to describing *who we are now*, views of self-identity also describe *who we may become*. Higgins (1987) suggests that a driving force in self-identity is comparison of the *actual* self to the *ideal* self and *ought* self. A discrepancy between the selves is thought to cause negative psychological states, which initiate behavior that is designed to reduce the discrepancy. Similarly, Carver and Scheier (1998) describe that all individuals strive toward goals, which organize and motivate behavior. Comparisons between future goals and current behavior create emotions that drive future behavior. Positive emotions are experienced and behavior is reinforced when an action is judged to move us closer to a goal; negative emotions are experienced and behavior may change when an action is inconsistent with attaining a goal. Therefore, self-identity is part of a regulatory system that not only reflects, but also drives, who we are and who we will become.

Markus and Nurius (1986) suggest that current self-identity is strongly influenced by *possible selves*, or who we either want to become, or fear becoming, in the future. In this view, self-identity is fluid, continuously developing as possible selves are achieved, modified, or relinquished. Possible selves are thought to directly influence current behavior by providing movement toward or away from possible selves (i.e., approaching hoped-for selves or avoiding feared selves). Exposure to possible selves has been shown to influence exercise behavior (Ouellette et al. 2005) and school involvement in adolescents (Oyserman

et al. 2002) over time. Possible selves are thus considered to play key roles in self-regulatory processes of motivation and behavior (Hoyle and Sherrill 2006). By comparing current self-identity with future selves, possible selves provide a framework in which to interpret and contextualize *who we are now*.

Self-identity is important for Behavioral Medicine because one's self-conceptions can influence how one responds to chronic illness, and can be altered by the experience of chronic illness. As views of the future are highly impacted by circumstances, major life events are likely to lead to changes in these views and, likewise, to changes in self-identity (Tesser et al. 2002). The diagnosis of a chronic illness is an example of this type of event. Adverse outcomes are likely if an illness contains attributes that reflect negatively onto an individual's self-identity. For example, individuals with lung cancer are more likely than individuals with prostate or breast cancer to associate stigma and self-blame with their illness, leading to negative psychological outcomes (Else-Quest et al. 2009). However, a growing body of literature suggests that positive outcomes such as perceptions of personal growth, improvements in life priorities and important relationships, and positive changes in personality (i.e., increased patience, tolerance, and empathy) can also occur as a result of dealing with adverse circumstances such as a chronic illness (Pakenham 2005; Tedeschi and Calhoun 2004).

Self-identity is also relevant to health promotion and illness prevention behaviors. Self-identity plays key roles in self-regulatory processes of motivation and behavior (Hoyle and Sherrill 2006), with the potential to influence health behavior in both positive and negative ways. For example, contemplating an image of a future possible self as an exerciser or non-exerciser influenced exercise behavior at four-week follow-up (Ouellette et al. 2005). Additionally, individuals' self-identity related to both smoking and quitting smoking independently predicted future attempts to quit. In contrast, sexually active teens who viewed STD's as more stigmatized were significantly less likely to have received STD screening over the last year (Cunningham et al. 2009). Goals that individuals

wish to achieve, and views of who they are as they achieve these goals, are thought to be continuously present in the self-concept, providing a feedback loop that regulates these behaviors.

Cross-References

- [Benefit Finding](#)
- [Chronic Disease Management](#)
- [Posttraumatic Growth](#)
- [Self-Concept](#)
- [Self-Image](#)
- [Self-Regulation](#)
- [Stigma](#)

References and Further Readings

- Andersen, S. M., & Chen, S. (2002). The relational self: An interpersonal social-cognitive theory. *Psychological Review*, 109, 619–645.
- Baumeister, R. R. (1998). The self. In D. T. Gilbert, S. T. Fiske, & G. Lindzey (Eds.), *The handbook of social psychology* (Vol. 1, 4th ed., pp. 680–740). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Carver, C. S., & Scheier, M. F. (1998). *On the self-regulation of behavior*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Carver, C. S., & Scheier, M. F. (2002). Coping processes and adjustment to chronic illness. In A. J. Christensen & M. H. Antoni (Eds.), *Chronic physical disorders: Behavioral medicine's perspective* (pp. 47–68). Malden: Blackwell.
- Cross, S. E., & Madson, L. (1997). Models of the self: Self-construals and gender. *Psychological Bulletin*, 122, 5–37.
- Cunningham, S. D., Kerrigan, D. L., Jennings, J. M., & Ellen, J. M. (2009). Relationships between perceived STD-related stigma, STD-related shame and STD screening among a household sample of adolescents. *Perspectives on Sexual and Reproductive Health*, 41, 225–230.
- Else-Quest, N. M., LoConte, N. K., Schiller, J. H., & Hyde, J. S. (2009). Perceived stigma, self-blame, and adjustment among lung, breast, and prostate cancer patients. *Psychology and Health*, 24, 949–964.
- Higgins, E. T. (1987). Self-discrepancy: A theory related self and affect. *Psychological Review*, 94, 319–340.
- Higgins, E. (1989). Continuities in self-regulatory and self-evaluative processes: A developmental theory relating self and affect. *Journal of Personality*, 57, 407–444.
- Hoyle, R. H., & Sherrill, M. R. (2006). Future orientation in the self-system: Possible selves, self-regulation, and behavior. *Journal of Personality*, 74(6), 1674–1696.

- Markus, H., & Nurius, P. (1986). Possible selves. *American Psychologist*, 41, 954–969.
- Markus, H., & Wurf, E. (1987). The dynamic self-concept: A social psychological perspective. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 38, 299–337.
- Oosterwegel, A., & Oppenheimer, L. (2002). Jumping to awareness of conflict between self-representations and its relation to psychological wellbeing. *International Journal of Behavioral Development*, 26, 548–555.
- Ouellette, J. A., Hessling, R., Gibbons, F. X., Reis-Bergan, M., & Gerrard, M. (2005). Using images to increase exercise behavior: Prototypes versus possible selves. *Personality and Social Psychology Bulletin*, 31, 610–620.
- Oyserman, D., Terry, K., & Bybee, D. (2002). A possible selves intervention to enhance school involvement. *Journal of Adolescence*, 25, 313–326.
- Pakenham, K. I. (2005). Benefit finding in multiple sclerosis and associations with positive and negative outcomes. *Health Psychology*, 24, 123–132.
- Showers, C. J., & Zeigler-Hill, V. (2007). Compartmentalization and integration: The evaluative organization of contextualized selves. *Journal of Personality*, 75(6), 1181–1204.
- Swann, W. B., & Bosson, J. K. (2008). Identity negotiation: A theory of self and social interaction. In R. W. Robins & L. A. Pervin (Eds.), *Handbook of personality psychology: Theory and research* (3rd ed., pp. 448–471). New York: Guilford Press.
- Tedeschi, R. G., & Calhoun, L. G. (2004). Posttraumatic growth: Conceptual foundations and empirical evidence. *Psychological Inquiry*, 15, 1–18.
- Tesser, A., Crepaz, N., Collins, J. C., Cornell, D., & Beach, S. R. H. (2002). Confluence of self-esteem regulation mechanisms: On integrating the self-zoo. *Personality and Social Psychology Bulletin*, 26, 1476–1489.

Self-image

Tara McMullen

Doctoral Program in Gerontology, University of Maryland Baltimore and Baltimore County, Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

Self-attitude; Self-concept; Self-conception; Self-consciousness; Self-identity

Definition

Self-image is how an individual thinks they should be (English and English 1958). An individual's self-image is comprised of many attitudes, opinions, and ideals.

Description

Like self-concept, self-image is conceptually a difficult term to define due to the large number of varied terms using “self” as a phrase to define some sort of behavior (Burns 1980). However, self-image is important as it delineates how a self-aware individual views themselves or their image, which further establishes one's self-concept (Harriman 1947). Self-image is how an individual thinks they should be (English and English 1958). An individual's self-image is comprised of many attitudes, opinions, and ideals. Self-image develops at a young age and is a process which develops throughout the lifespan. Beginning at a young age, self-image can be seen as a physical process (Statt 1990). However, self-image is developed not only from body image and physical aspects but also from concepts shaped by society and attitudes.

Self-image is a measurable assessment of one's characteristics. Measurable aspects belonging to an individual build and maintain an individual's self-image. Measurable aspects can be identified as achievements and appearance (Bailey 2003). Self-image is how an individual perceives him/herself based on measurable traits developed at an early age (Bailey 2003). Like self-concept, an individual's self-image may be a learned trait structured from an individual's attitude toward a group, idea, object, and so forth (Rosenberg 1989). Thus, defined behavior may emerge from self-image; however, this behavior is not seen as fixed as it may deviate with the occurrence of different experiences and roles (Burns 1980). In addition, self-image may be affected by an individual's self-esteem. Self-esteem is defined as an individual's orientation toward oneself

(Rosenberg 1965). Rosenberg (1989) suggested that the more uncertain an individual is in regard to who they perceive he/she is, the more likely the individual will have a lowered self-esteem. A lower degree of self-esteem may render a negative self-image, diverging from the ideal self-image individuals may hold for themselves (Burns 1980). The ideal self can be defined as who an individual aspires to be. The ideal self is one part of self-concept and helps individuals better evaluate who they are (Burns 1980).

How individuals perceive who they are may depend on the individual's social environment and/or culture. Self-image can further be characterized as the perception an individual has of who he/she is physically, psychologically, philosophically, and politically, developed through the agency of individual societal experiences and development (Fisher 1986; Statt 1990). Individuals may develop a self-image that is associated with societal roles and norms (Markus and Kitayama 1991). Individuals in collectivist or individualistic cultures may establish who they are based on the culture in which they were raised. A collectivist culture accentuates individual's social roles and responsibilities within the context of social groups, while an individualistic culture accentuates individual identity and achievements (Nevid 2009). Thus, experiences and culture aid in the development of one's self-image. In defining individual roles, culture imparts a strong effect on the individual self-image.

Self-image has been measured in many populations by means of various psychometric scales such as the Rosenberg Self-Esteem Scale (Rosenberg 1989). Further, theory, such as the Social Identity Theory (Tajfel and Turner 1979) and the Objective Self-Awareness Theory (Duval and Wicklund 1972) have emerged from interpretations of self-image and self-consciousness.

References and Readings

- Bailey, J. A. (2003). Self-image, self-concept, and self-identity revisited. *Journal of the National Medical Association*, 95, 383–386.
- Burns, R. B. (1980). *Psychology for the health professions*. Lancaster: MTP Press.
- Duval, T. S., & Wicklund, R. A. (1972). *A theory of objective self-awareness*. New York: Academic Press.
- English, H. B., & English, A. C. (1958). *A comprehensive dictionary of psychology and psychoanalytic terms*. New York: Longmans, Green.
- Fisher, S. (1986). *Development and structure of the body image* (Vol. 1). Hillsdale: Erlbaum.
- Fitts, W. H. (1991). *Tennessee self concept scale, manual*. Los Angeles: Western Psychological Services.
- Harriman, P. L. (1947). *The new dictionary of psychology*. New York: The Philosophical Library.
- Markus, H., & Kitayama, S. (1991). Culture and the self: Implication for cognition, emotion, and motivation. *Psychology Review*, 98, 224–253.
- Markus, H., & Nurius, P. (1986). Possible selves. *The American Psychologist*, 41, 954–969.
- Markus, H., & Wurf, E. (1987). The dynamic self-concept: A social psychological perspective. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 38, 299–337.
- Nevid, J. S. (1990). *Essentials of psychology: Concepts and applications* (2nd ed.). Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company.
- Nevid, J. S. (2009). *Psychology: Concepts and applications* (3rd ed.). Belmont: Cengage.
- Rogers, C. (1951a). Perceptual reorganization in client-centered therapy. In R. R. Blake & G. V. Ramsey (Eds.), *Perception: An approach to personality*. New York: Ronald Press.
- Rogers, C. (1951b). *Client-centered therapy* (pp. 13–71). Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company.
- Rosenberg, M. (1965). *Society and the adolescent self-image*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.
- Rosenberg, M. (1979). *Conceiving the self*. New York: Basic Books.
- Rosenberg, M. (1986). *Conceiving the self*. Malabar: Krieger.
- Rosenberg, M. (1989). *Society and the adolescent self-image*. Middletown: Wesleyan University Press.
- Statt, D. (1990). *The concise dictionary of psychology*. New York: Routledge.
- Tajfel, H., & Turner, J. C. (1979). An integrative theory of intergroup conflict. In W. G. Austin & S. Worchel (Eds.), *The social psychology of intergroup relations* (pp. 33–47). Monterey: Brooks/Cole.

Cross-References

- Body Image and Appearance-Altering Conditions
- Self-Concept

Self-Inflicted Injurious Behavior

- Suicide

Self-Management

Andrea Wallace

College of Nursing, University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, USA

Synonyms

Self-care

Definition

The process of actively engaging in activities aimed at controlling the negative effects of an illness, particularly a chronic illness, on one's health.

Description

Self-management concerns the acquisition of knowledge, as well as application of skills, necessary to engage in a complex set of health-promoting behaviors in the context of daily living. This process of integrating a number of complex behaviors in an effort to maintain wellness often involves problem-solving, decision-making, resource utilization, and communicating with multiple health-care providers. The ability to adapt health behaviors based on physiological or psychological information is a key element of self-management. The importance of self-management is undergirded by its role in health outcomes: It has been demonstrated that those who successfully engage in self-management activities experience better health-related outcomes for a number of chronic conditions.

Based on early studies of those living with chronic conditions, it has been proposed that the tasks related to self-management generally fall within three primary categories addressing: (1) medical management, which includes activities such as taking medications or adhering to a special diet; (2) role management, which includes

actions allowing one to adopt roles that accommodate for one's condition; and (3) emotional management, which includes actions aimed at coping with emotions associated with an illness, such as uncertainty, depression, and fear (Corbin and Strauss 1988). It follows, then, that a wide array of psychosocial factors play a role in one's ability to successfully engage in self-management including, but not limited to, social support, motivation, confidence (self-efficacy), and depression. In addition, the ability to read and understand written information (literacy), understand and manipulate numerical information (numeracy), verbal memory, planning, and motor speed have all been associated with disease self-management behavior.

Although disease-specific self-management education is widely accepted as beneficial, its effect on health outcomes has been difficult to establish, primarily due to variability in the nature of the programs and populations tested. Because of the complexity associated with self-management, education and support aiming to train patients to manage their chronic disease attempt to address the many factors and tasks associated with self-management as well as tailor training to the individual needs of patients. However, some common elements among self-management education programs include general information about an illness (e.g., physiology), establishing and personalizing a treatment or self-care "plan" that addresses the behaviors necessary for improved disease outcomes and strategies to facilitate health-related behavior change and maintenance (Funnell et al. 2009; Lorig and Holman 2003). Many programs are guided by a specific theoretical framework and plan training to target variables believed to be important facilitators and barriers to self-management such as means of promoting patients' perceived self-efficacy (confidence) in engaging in health-promoting activities (Bandura 1997). A recent focus has been on the feasibility and broad dissemination of programs facilitating self-management and behavior change.

Driven by rising prevalence, costs, and poor outcomes associated with chronic illnesses,

health-care settings have recently begun to focus on models of service delivery that best support patients' self-management needs. Although these efforts have been given a number of names, some common elements include easy access to health-care providers, providing disease-specific education, incorporating interdisciplinary teams of health-care providers (e.g., physicians, social workers, physical therapists), proactive reminders to both clinicians and patients about health maintenance needs (e.g., routine blood tests), and strategies for supporting the adoption and maintenance of health-promoting behaviors, such as behavioral goal setting between health-care providers and patients (Bodenheimer et al. 2002a, b; Patient-Centered Primary Care Collaborative 2010; The MacColl Institute for Healthcare Innovation 2010).

Cross-References

- Behavior Change
- Chronic Disease Management
- Disease Management
- Fatigue
- Health Behaviors
- Health Promotion
- Self-Care
- Self-efficacy

References and Readings

- Bandura, A. (1997). *Self-efficacy: The exercise of control*. New York: Freeman.
- Bodenheimer, T., Wagner, E. H., & Grumbach, K. (2002a). Improving primary care for patients with chronic illness. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288(14), 1775–1779.
- Bodenheimer, T., Wagner, E. H., & Grumbach, K. (2002b). Improving primary care for patients with chronic illness: The chronic care model, Part 2. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288(15), 1909–1914.
- Corbin, J., & Strauss, A. (1988). *Unending work and care: Managing chronic illness at home*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Funnell, M. M., Brown, T. L., Childs, B. P., Haas, L. B., Hosey, G. M., & Jensen, B. (2009). National standards for diabetes self-management education. *Diabetes Care*, 32(Suppl. 1), S87–S94.
- Lorig, K. R., & Holman, H. (2003). Self-management education: History, definition, outcomes, and mechanisms. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 26(1), 1–7.
- Patient-Centered Primary Care Collaborative. (2010). *Patient-centered medical Home*. Retrieved 24 Jan-2010, from <http://www.pcpcc.net/patient-centered-medical-home>
- The MacColl Institute for Healthcare Innovation. (2010). *The chronic care model*. Retrieved 24 Jan-2010, from http://www.improvingchroniccare.org/index.php?p=The_Chronic_Care_Model%26s=2

Self-Management Education

- Diabetes Education

Self-medication

Nicole Brandt
School of Pharmacy, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

Self-treatment

Definition

Self-medication is the use of medications, treatments, and/or substances by an individual without a medical prescription. Self-medication is the most popular form of self-care, which is defined as the personal preservation of health through prevention and self-treatment of ailments (Ryan et al. 2009). In regards to self-care, substances used to self-medicate include but are not limited to over-the-counter (OTC) medications, nutritional supplements, and other nonprescription medications. The number of OTC medications has increased significantly, allowing more individuals to practice self-medication. These nonprescription medications can be purchased at various

locations such as pharmacies, supermarkets, and retail superstores (Wazaify et al. 2005).

This increase in self-medicating practices entails both advantages and disadvantages. The benefits of self-medication include increased access to treatment, increased patient involvement in their own health care, economical choices, and evidence of cost-effectiveness compared to prescription treatments in some situations. The drawbacks of self-treatment are the threat of misuse and abuse of medications, incorrect self-diagnosis, a delay in appropriate treatment, and an increased risk of drug-drug interactions (Hughes et al. 2001). Due to the many risks listed above, safety is a major concern with self-medication. To ensure safety with self-treatment, patient education about the medication is a necessity (Bradley and Blenkinsopp 1996). Pharmacists are in a pivotal position to help ensure appropriate and safe use of various medications by patients that are obtained without a prescription.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Nutritional Supplements](#)
- ▶ [Self-care](#)
- ▶ [Self-management](#)

References and Readings

- Bradley, C., & Blenkinsopp, A. (1996). Over the counter drugs: The future for self medication. *British Medical Journal*, 312, 835–837.
- Hughes, C. M., McElnay, J. C., & Fleming, G. F. (2001). Benefits and risks of self medication. *Drug Safety*, 24(14), 1027–1037.
- Ryan, A., Wilson, S., Taylor, A., & Greenfield, S. (2009). Factors associated with self-care activities among adults in the United Kingdom: A systematic review. *BMC Public Health*, 9, 96.
- Wazaify, M., Shields, E., Hughes, C. M., & McElnay, J. C. (2005). Societal perspectives on over-the-counter (OTC) medicines. *Family Practice*, 22, 170–176.

Self-Monitor

- ▶ [Self-Monitoring](#)

Self-Monitoring

David Cameron¹ and Thomas L. Webb²

¹Information School, The University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

²Department of Psychology, The University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

Synonyms

[Seek feedback](#); [Self-evaluate](#); [Self-monitor](#)

Definition

Self-monitoring can refer to (1) self-monitoring expressive behavior and self-presentation (the extent to which people observe and control their expressive behavior and self-presentation) and (2) self-monitoring goal progress (periodically noting current state and comparing these perceptions with whichever goals are currently relevant).

Description

Self-Monitoring Expressive Behavior and Self-Presentation

People differ in the extent to which they self-monitor (observe and control) their expressive behavior and self-presentation. High self-monitors think about how they appear to others and take care to portray themselves in a socially appropriate manner. Thus, high self-monitors are likely to monitor their facial expression, content of speech, tone of voice, expressed emotionality, and so on. In contrast, low self-monitors do not monitor these things, either because they lack the ability to do so or because they are not motivated to do so.

A number of studies have examined differences between high and low self-monitors. For example, low self-monitors tend to behave in ways that are more consistent with their attitudes

and are better able to imagine how their own behavior relates to particular traits (e.g., the extent to which they are sociable). In contrast, individuals who score high on self-monitoring scales are particularly sensitive to social cues and are better able to imagine the prototypic type of person that would be described as holding a particular trait (e.g., a sociable person), perhaps because they are keen to be able to tailor their own behavior so as to demonstrate certain traits (e.g., to appear sociable). High self-monitors are even more likely to choose friends who facilitate the construction of their own situationally appropriate appearances and romantic partners with an attractive physical appearance. The idea that people self-monitor their expressive behavior has been hugely influential, and these studies just only hint at the wealth of differences.

The self-monitoring scale was developed to measure these individual differences. There are 25 items including “I guess I put on a show to impress or entertain people”; “in different situations and with different people, I often act like very different persons”; and “even if I am not enjoying myself, I often pretend to be having a good time.” The scale was revised by Lennox and Wolfe who proposed a shorter 13-item scale with 6 items measuring sensitivity to the expressive behavior of others (e.g., “I am often able to read people’s true emotions correctly through their eyes”) and 7 items measuring the ability to modify self-presentation (e.g., “once I know what the situation calls for, it’s easy for me to regulate my actions accordingly”). Lennox and Wolfe also proposed a separate 20-item “Concern for Appropriateness” scale measuring cross-situational variability (e.g., “different people tend to have different impressions about the type of person I am”) and attention to social comparison information (e.g., “I usually keep up with clothing style changes by watching what others wear”). Despite this revision (and others), there remains a debate over exactly what the self-monitoring scale measures.

Self-Monitoring Goal Progress

A separate, but potentially overlapping, literature has examined whether and how people monitor

their current standing in relation to their personal goals, for example, whether and how people assess if they are on track to maintain a healthy weight. While monitoring goal progress can involve feedback from external sources, people can, and do, self-monitor. Self-monitoring in this sense involves periodically noting one’s current state and comparing these perceptions with whichever goals are currently relevant. For example, a person with the goal to reach a particular weight for their health might monitor caloric intake and physical activity. Monitoring goal progress, therefore, involves a series of processes from deciding to seek information (e.g., I need to monitor the suitability of the food I consume), becoming aware of and directing attention toward relevant information (e.g., looking at nutritional information), interpreting the information (e.g., this indicates a high-/low-fat/sugar content), and so on. Relevant goals provide both a comparative standard and also a schema for making sense of the information available. The person can monitor behavior (e.g., food chosen) or the outcomes of behavior (e.g., at routine health checkups). Monitoring may also vary on a temporal dimension (e.g., hourly, daily, weekly, or monthly) and can occur with respect to goals represented at different levels of specificity, for example, monitoring progress toward relatively high-level values comprising principles (or “be” goals, e.g., to be healthy), specific behavioral goals (or “do” goals, e.g., to take more exercise), or even the performance of motor programs (e.g., “one last rep”).

Monitoring goal progress is central to a number of models of goal striving and self-regulation (e.g., control theory), but only a few studies have examined the effect of manipulating the likelihood that people would or could self-monitor. Polivy et al. (1986) investigated the effect of being able to monitor consumption on unhealthy eating. Participants were asked to taste some chocolates and to “eat as many as necessary to ensure accurate ratings.” Unbeknown to participants, the researchers manipulated how easy it was for participants to monitor their consumption; some participants were asked to leave their chocolate wrappers on the table, others to place them in a wastebasket that was already half full of

wrappers. The main finding was that participants asked to leave their wrappers on the table (and so, presumably, found it easy to monitor how many chocolates they had eaten) ate less than those asked to put the wrappers in the wastebasket. Quinn et al. (2010) found that self-monitoring helped people to break bad habits. Across two studies, prompting participants to use vigilant monitoring (thinking “don’t do it” and watching carefully for mistakes) proved more effective in helping participants to avoid habitual responses (e.g., staying up too late, eating too much) than prompting stimulus control (removing oneself from the situation or removing the opportunity to perform the behavior). Prompting or facilitating behavioral monitoring has also proven an influential technique for promoting goal attainment. In summary, people who self-monitor their current standing in relation to their goals tend to be better able to achieve their goals and make changes to their behavior than people who do not.

Cross-References

- [Behavior Change](#)
- [Self-examination](#)
- [Self-Regulation](#)

References and Further Reading

- Abraham, C., & Michie, S. (2008). A taxonomy of behavior change techniques used in interventions. *Health Psychology, 27*, 379–387.
- Ajzen, I., Timko, C., & White, J. B. (1982). Self-monitoring and the attitude behavior relation. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 42*, 426–435.
- Ashford, S. J., & Cummings, L. L. (1983). Feedback as an individual resource: Personal strategies of creating information. *Organizational Behavior and Human Performance, 32*, 370–398.
- Carver, C. S., & Scheier, M. F. (1982). Control theory: A useful conceptual framework for personality, social, clinical, and health psychology. *Psychological Bulletin, 92*, 111–135.
- Carver, C. S., & Scheier, M. F. (1990). Origins and functions of positive and negative affect: A control process view. *Psychological Review, 97*, 19–35.
- Gangestad, S. W., & Snyder, M. (2000). Self-monitoring: Appraisal and reappraisal. *Psychological Bulletin, 126*, 530–555.
- Kluger, A. N., & DeNisi, A. (1996). The effects of feedback interventions on performance: A historical review, a meta-analysis, and a preliminary feedback intervention theory. *Psychological Bulletin, 119*, 254–284.
- Lennox, R. D., & Wolfe, R. N. (1984). Revision of the self-monitoring scale. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 46*, 1349–1364.
- Polivy, J., Herman, C. P., Hackett, R., & Kuleshnyk, I. (1986). The effects of self-attention and public attention on eating in restrained and unrestrained subjects. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 50*, 1253–1260.
- Quinn, J. M., Pascoe, A., Wood, W., & Neal, D. T. (2010). Can’t help yourself? Monitor those bad habits. *Personality and Social Psychology Bulletin, 36*, 499–511.
- Snyder, M. (1974). Self-monitoring expressive behavior. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 30*, 526–537.
- Snyder, M. (1979). Self-monitoring processes. *Advances in Experimental Social Psychology, 12*, 85–128.
- Snyder, M., & Cantor, N. (1980). Thinking about ourselves and others: Self-monitoring and social knowledge. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 39*, 222–234.
- Snyder, M., Gangestad, S., & Simpson, J. A. (1983). Choosing friends as activity partners: The role of self-monitoring. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 45*, 1061–1072.
- Snyder, M., Berscheid, E., & Glick, P. (1985). Focusing on the exterior and the interior: Two investigations of the initiation of personal relationships. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 48*, 1427–1439.

Self-Monitoring of Blood Glucose

- [Glucose Meters and Strips](#)

Self-Murder

- [Suicide](#)

Self-Perspective

- [Self-Identity](#)

Self-Rating

► Self-examination

Self-Regulation

► Self-Regulation Model

Self-Regulation Model

Pablo A. Mora¹ and Gozde Ozakinci²

¹Department of Psychology, The University of Texas at Arlington, Arlington, TX, USA

²Health Psychology, School of Medicine, University of St Andrews, St Andrews, UK

Synonyms

Model of self-regulation; Self-control; Self-Regulation

Definition

Self-regulation is a dynamic and systematic process that involves efforts to modify and modulate thoughts, emotions, and actions in order to attain goals.

Description

Self-regulation refers to the dynamic cognitive, affective, and behavioral processes that underlie goal attainment. It is important to note that not all types of situations involving goal attainment or problem solving constitute self-regulation. What makes self-regulation unique is that the target of problem solving is set by or focuses on the individual (i.e., self), its “machinery” (e.g., physical problems such as symptoms), and subjective feelings or affect.

Models of self-regulation are based on the idea of cybernetic control and propose that actions are regulated by a TOTE (Test, Operate, Test, Exit) feedback control loop. Central to the idea of feedback loop is the corrective actions that result from the detection and evaluation of discrepancies between input (internal or external) and a reference value. In the context of health, “feeling good” (i.e., not having any symptoms) can be considered a reference value or goal. Thus, when a person experiences a headache (i.e., discrepancy between current state and feeling good), he or she will engage in corrective actions to rid himself or herself of the headache such as taking a pain reliever or resting. If the headache subsides (i.e., test has determined that the discrepancy was eliminated), then the loop ends (i.e., exit). If not, then a new loop will begin.

These self-regulation principles have been widely applied to the study and explanation of multiple psychological phenomena. Psychological models of self-regulation diverge in terms of their foci of interest and emphases; however, they do share core features. Common features of psychological self-regulation models are: (1) goal setting, (2) developing and enacting strategies to achieve these goals, (3) developing criteria to determine proximity to the goal, and (4) determining, based on goal proximity, whether corrective actions are needed or whether the goal needs to be revised. Self-regulation is an iterative process that may require constant evaluation to ensure that the distance between the person’s status and the goal is the desired one. One additional commonality shared by behavioral models is the importance they ascribe to affective experiences as integral to self-regulation. Affect, as a core component of the motivational system, can be the reference value that triggers self-regulatory behaviors, be the product of progress toward a goal or lack thereof (i.e., negative affect resulting from not attaining a goal), and/or influence cognitions and behaviors involved in self-regulatory activities (e.g., symptom perception). Models that integrate affective experiences with self-regulation propose that problem-focused and emotion-focused goals and the behavioral processes used by individuals to attain such goals operate in a parallel yet

interrelated fashion (see commonsense model of self-regulation, stress-behavior model advanced by Lazarus and Folkman, or work on self-regulation of affect conducted by Carver and Scheier).

Hierarchical Structure of Goals

Goals are usually differentiated and hierarchically organized in terms of their level of abstraction (Carver and Scheier 1990a). At the highest level of abstraction, one can find goals related to self-concepts (e.g., ideal self and undesired self), self-assessments (e.g., self-rated health), and general affect (e.g., depressed or happy mood). Specific, concrete actions such as daily activities performed by an individual (e.g., buying low fat food) are at the lower level of the hierarchy. Attaining higher-order goals requires that lower-level goals are accomplished; that is, lower-level goals constitute routes to higher-order ones (e.g., buying and consuming low fat food in order to achieve better health). Abstract goals also provide internal consistency and coherence to lower-level goals and to the actions performed to achieve specific higher-order goals. The relationship between goals of different levels of abstraction is quite dynamic. Thus, while a single abstract goal can be attained by pursuing multiple lower-level, concrete goals, it is also possible to simultaneously attain multiple, distinct higher-order goals by setting and pursuing the same lower-level, concrete goals. For instance, a person can get closer to their ideal, healthy self and farther from their undesired, decrepit self by engaging in similar lower-level self-regulatory activities (e.g., engaging in regular exercises and eating a healthful diet).

Feedback Loops and Behavioral Strategies Involved in Goal Attainment

In self-regulation, goals provide the reference values for feedback loops and motivate and guide actions. Individuals may engage in two types of overall feedback loops depending on whether the reference value (i.e., goal) represents a desired state (i.e., approach) or whether it represents an undesired one (i.e., avoidance, Carver

2006). Behavior directed toward desired goals is regulated by a negative feedback loop. In this case, a reduction of the discrepancy between the current state (i.e., input) and the goal (i.e., reference value) dominates the individual's actions. Behaviors involved in the avoidance of reference value, on the other hand, are controlled by a positive feedback loop. Thus, efforts are deployed to maintain or enlarge a discrepancy between the input and the reference value. Many times avoiding an undesired state may require that individuals set desired goals. For example, infirmity (undesired goal) can be avoided by establishing a regime of regular exercise and a healthy diet (desired goals). One can argue that positive feedback loops are part of larger negative feedback loops that motivate individuals to reduce discrepancy between their current status and the reference value. In the case discussed above, an individual for whom avoiding infirmity is critical will need to develop achievable, concrete goals in order to appraise progress. Thus, the reference value for "avoiding infirmity" can take the form of "being symptom-free," a goal that is regulated by a negative feedback loop.

The two strategies discussed above assume that goals set by an individual are attainable; however, there are situations in which, regardless of effort, goal attainment can become difficult or impossible. In such situations, abandoning activities directed at the pursuit of the goal will result in better adjustment than maintaining goal-directed efforts. Research has shown that goal disengagement can result in improved well-being if goal-directed efforts are focused on alternative goals when available. If alternative goals are unavailable, inability to disengage from goal pursuit can result in frustration, negative affect, and increased stress (Miller and Wrosch 2007). For older adults, goal disengagement and goal reengagement may be a key strategy for adjustment to physical changes and for successful aging.

Goal attainment and affect. As indicated above, affect can be an indicator of progress toward the attainment of a goal. Carver and Scheier (1990b) have proposed a second feedback

process that monitors whether a person's efforts are being successful in attaining a goal. Success in closing the gap between one's status and a given goal results in positive affect. Slow progress or failure to attain a goal, on the other hand, results in negative affect. Individuals differ in terms of the reference values they use to determine what constitutes acceptable or unacceptable progress. Accordingly, similar rates of discrepancy reduction can result in two very different responses if the individuals use different criteria to appraise the effectiveness of their actions.

Research on self-discrepancies provides an interesting example of how proximity to a goal can elicit positive or negative moods (Mora et al. [in press](#)). These data have shown that individuals who felt they were farther from being at their worst (i.e., undesired self) reported less anxiety and depression and more happiness than their counterparts who felt closer to their feared self. These affective experiences can, in turn, influence subsequent evaluations of progress and actions. Negative mood arisen from perceptions that progress toward a goal is slow can result in maladaptive behaviors especially if new actions are focused on reducing negative feelings. Depressive feelings may alter perceptions of control over their environment and future outcomes, and lead individuals to give up on their efforts to attain a goal. Despite its critical and multifaceted role in self-regulation, there is a dearth of research examining the multiple interactive ways in which cognitive/behavioral and affective self-regulation operates.

Organization of Goals and Actions: Goal Cognitions

Germane to the relationships among goals of different levels of abstraction are goal cognitions (Karoly [1993](#)) and action plans (Leventhal [1970](#)). Goal cognitions are mental models or schemas that organize domain-specific goals and actions or procedures to attain those goals (in health literature, goal cognitions are referred as illness representations). For instance, a schema for an abstract, higher-order goal of "being healthy" would involve several less abstract concrete goals such as engaging in exercise, eating

healthful food, and improving coping skills. These goals, in turn, would be connected in the mental schema to more concrete, lower-level goals such as setting days to go the gym, eating more complex carbohydrates, and learning how to meditate to reduce stress. Action plans translate aspects of goal pursuit (e.g., beliefs, attitudes, evaluation criteria) into actual, concrete behaviors. These behaviors help link goals at different levels of abstraction and provide continuity to the pursuit of abstract goals. In the current example, being healthy requires the person to set and attain multiple concrete goals. Goal cognitions will specify the action plans required to attain the concrete goals in route to reach the higher-order, abstract goal. Thus, to attain the various goals on route to being healthy, the person will need to engage in actions such as joining a gym, building a routine of going to the gym, and choosing the specific workout routine (e.g., cardio and/or weightlifting).

Conscious and Nonconscious Aspects of Self-Regulation

Although the terms "goal setting" and "self-regulation" suggest conscious volition, processes involved in self-regulation are the result of both automatic and intentional behaviors. Awareness of every single process involved in self-regulation would unnecessarily tax the organism and result in maladaptation. Action plans required for the attainment of a goal can become automated behaviors if goal pursuit is an ongoing activity. For instance, the management of a chronic condition such as hypertension requires that people take medications every day. To ensure that doses are not missed, a person may decide to put pills in a case and place this case on top of the counter next to the coffee maker. By doing this, taking the pill can become an automated behavior that imposes a minimal burden on the cognitive system of the individual. It is in consciousness, however, where automatic and intentional processes are integrated. Ensuring that doses have not been missed, the person needs to engage in a conscious decision-making process (e.g., pick up the pill case and count the remaining pills).

Recently, investigators interested in the volitional aspects of self-regulation have been devoting increased attention to the idea of self-control. Although sometimes self-control and self-regulation are used interchangeably, self-control refers to the capacity to consciously and effortfully regulate one's affect, cognitions, and behaviors (Hagger et al. 2010). In attempting to explain the reasons individuals engage in maladaptive behaviors (e.g., smoking), researchers have argued that self-control is a limited resource (Ego Strength model: Baumeister et al. 2007). The Ego Strength model argues that self-control works as "a muscle" that can become tired after repeated use (i.e., ego depletion). In other words, a person's capacity to engage in self-control becomes reduced following previous acts of self-control. Although the idea of ego depletion has received support from experimental studies, a recent meta-analysis suggests that the strength model does not fully explain the mechanisms underlying self-control and additional theoretical perspectives need to be integrated into the strength model (Hagger et al. 2010). The results from the meta-analysis suggest that motivation, fatigue, self-efficacy, and affect are involved in self-control and ego-depletion processes. Further research in this area is needed to better understand how self-control and ego depletion operate in real world contexts in which long-term and unplanned attempts at self-control occur frequently.

Moderators of Self-Regulation

Self-regulation occurs within particular settings and is, thus, influenced by individual, social, and cultural factors. Personality, an individual factor, has been implicated in various processes of self-regulation such as appraisal, coping, and behaviors (Cervone et al. 2006). For instance, research has shown that individuals high in neuroticism (one of the big five personality traits) consistently and reliably perceive and report more physical symptoms than their low neuroticism counterparts (Watson and Pennebaker 1989). Because physical symptoms are a departure from normal functioning, increases in symptomatology may trigger prompt self-regulatory actions (e.g.,

care seeking) if symptoms are perceived to be indicators of imminent threat. Research on coping has revealed that individual differences such as optimism and pessimism influence goal pursuit. Specifically, individuals who have positive views about the future tend to engage in problem-focused coping, whereas individuals who perceive the future as uncertain tend to either engage in emotion-focused coping or else disengage from goal pursuit (Rasmussen et al. 2006). Personality can also have an impact on the selection of specific behaviors used by individuals to deal with threat. There is evidence that individuals high in optimism and conscientiousness who face stressful situations select coping procedures that improve well-being and adjustment (O'Connor et al. 2009).

Social factors and culture can also influence the various stages of self-regulation from goal setting to selection and performance of corrective actions through multiple pathways. Social comparisons can help individuals to determine the origin of their physical symptoms (e.g., food poisoning if everybody at dinner has the same symptoms or stomach flu if symptoms are unique to one person) and, thereby, select the necessary corrective actions to deal with such symptoms (Leventhal et al. 1997). Research has also demonstrated that social relations (i.e., social network size) can influence long-term self-regulatory activities such as participation in cardiac rehabilitation among patients with acute coronary syndrome (Molloy et al. 2008).

Culture has been shown to influence the type of stimuli that trigger self-regulation, the content of goals, the specific corrective actions, and the appraisal criteria involved in goal attainment. Anthropological research has shown that the interpretation and attribution of bodily symptoms varies across culture. This body of evidence suggests that culturally determined illness models are powerful determinants of the ways people experience illness conditions. For example, work on depression has shown that among certain ethnic groups (e.g., Chinese), depression is usually experienced as a somatic disorder (Kleinman 1977). This difference in experience can shape what

actions are taken to remediate the problem (e.g., seeing a primary care physician instead of a mental health specialist) and the criteria to determine the success of the remedial actions (e.g., improvement in physical versus affective well-being). The impact of culture on the construction and development of the self has led some authors to question the idea that self-regulation is set by and focuses on the individual. In collectivistic cultures where the self is construed as closely interrelated to others, goal setting can be motivated by a need to please the person's social network (Trommsdorff 2009). Future research needs to determine whether the mechanisms of self-regulation guided by interrelatedness are different from those underlying self-regulation of intraindividual processes.

Self-Regulation and Health

Although most models of self-regulation have originated outside the domain of behavioral medicine (see the Commonsense Model of Self-regulation for an exception), the use of self-regulatory principles and ideas to understand health-related behaviors has been relatively widespread. Models such as the Health Beliefs Model, Theory of Reasoned Action, and Social Cognitive Theory which focus on specific aspects of self-regulation such as social (e.g., norms) and psychological (e.g., self-efficacy) determinants have been utilized to understand self-regulation of health behaviors. In general, the use of these models has focused more on the description of predictors of goals rather than on the underlying mechanisms that explain self-regulatory behaviors. In addition, goal pursuit is usually examined by these models as a single-event rather than a continuous process (Maes and Karoly 2005). Recent efforts, however, have been directed at the understanding and examination of self-regulation as a process by investigating how goal-directed behaviors in health domains are initiated and maintained. Evidence has provided convincing support that the various phases of self-regulation are controlled by different processes. Studies examining health behaviors such as smoking cessation and engagement in exercise

activities have revealed that factors such as self-efficacy and attitudes toward the specific behavior are important determinants of initiation. Maintenance of health behaviors, on the other hand, is influenced by factors such as satisfaction with behavioral change. A recent study examining data from participants in a smoking cessation program provided further evidence of the complexity of self-regulation processes (Baldwin et al. 2009). In this study, the authors found that maintenance of health-related behaviors was a heterogeneous process and that the factors that influenced satisfaction with behavioral maintenance varied according to whether they had quit smoking recently or not.

Final Remarks

Literature and research on self-regulation has grown rapidly over the past 20 years. New research has expanded the understanding of self-regulation mechanisms but more research is needed. Some of the research questions that remained underexplored include changes in self-regulation over time, factors that contribute to long-term self-regulatory behaviors (e.g., adherence to medical treatment for chronic conditions), and the multiple and simultaneous pathways through which cognitive and affective self-regulation interact.

New opportunities provided by advances in technology, especially in brain imaging, are opening exciting areas of inquiry (e.g., cognitive neuroscience of self-regulation). Similarly, increased understanding of the psychophysiology of stress offers an invaluable opportunity to understand how self-regulatory processes get under the skin.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Active Coping](#)
- ▶ [Behavioral Intervention](#)
- ▶ [Common-Sense Model of Self-regulation](#)
- ▶ [Optimism](#)
- ▶ [Self-Efficacy](#)
- ▶ [Self-Regulatory Capacity](#)
- ▶ [Self-Regulatory Fatigue](#)

References and Further Readings

- Baldwin, A. S., Rothman, A. J., & Jeffery, R. W. (2009). Satisfaction with weight loss: Examining the longitudinal covariation between people's weight-loss-related outcomes and experiences and their satisfaction. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 38, 213–224.
- Baumeister, R. F., & Vohs, K. D. (2004). *Handbook of self-regulation: research, theory, and applications*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Baumeister, R. F., Vohs, K. D., & Tice, D. M. (2007). The strength model of self-control. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 16(6), 351–355. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-8721.2007.00534.x>.
- Boekaerts, M., Zeidner, M., & Pintrich, P. R. (1999). *Handbook of self-regulation*. San Diego/London: Academic Press.
- Carver, C. (2006). Approach, avoidance, and the self-regulation of affect and action. *Motivation and Emotion*, 30(2), 105–110. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s11031-006-9044-7>.
- Carver, C. S., & Scheier, M. (1990a). Principles of self-regulation: Action and emotion. In E. T. Higgins, R. M. Sorrentino, et al. (Eds.), *Handbook of motivation and cognition: Foundations of social behavior* (Vol. 2, pp. 3–52). New York: Guilford Press.
- Carver, C. S., & Scheier, M. F. (1990b). Origins and functions of positive and negative affect: A control-process view. *Psychological Review*, 97(1), 19–35.
- Carver, C. S., & Scheier, M. F. (1998). *On the self-regulation of behavior*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Cervone, D., Shadel, W. G., Smith, R. E., & Fiori, M. (2006). Self-regulation: Reminders and suggestions from personality science. *Applied Psychology: An International Review*, 55(3), 333–385. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1464-0597.2006.00261.x>.
- Folkman, S., & Lazarus, R. S. (1988). The relationship between coping and emotion: Implications for theory and research. *Social Science & Medicine*, 26(3), 309–317.
- Hagger, M. S., Wood, C., Stiff, C., & Chatzisarantis, N. L. D. (2010). Ego depletion and the strength model of self-control: A meta-analysis. *Psychological Bulletin*, 136(4), 495–525. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0019486>.
- Karoly, P. (1993). Mechanisms of self-regulation: A systems view. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 44, 23–52.
- Kleinman, A. M. (1977). Depression, somatization and the “new cross-cultural psychiatry”. [Case reports comparative study]. *Social Science and Medicine*, 11(1), 3–10.
- Leventhal, H. (1970). Findings and theory in the study of fear communications. In L. Berkowitz (Ed.), *Advances in experimental social psychology* (Vol. 5, pp. 120–186). New York: Academic.
- Leventhal, H. (1983). Behavioral medicine: Psychology in health care. In D. Mechanic (Ed.), *Handbook of health, health care, and the health professions* (pp. 709–743). New York: The Free Press.
- Leventhal, H., Hudson, S., & Robitaille, C. (1997). Social comparison and health: A process model. In B. P. Buunk & F. X. Gibbons (Eds.), *Health, coping, and well-being: Perspectives from social comparison theory* (pp. 411–432). Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Maes, S., & Karoly, P. (2005). Self-regulation assessment and intervention in physical health and illness: A review. *Applied Psychology*, 54(2), 267–299. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1464-0597.2005.00210.x>.
- Miller, G. E., & Wrosch, C. (2007). You've gotta know when to fold'em. *Psychological Science*, 18(9), 773–777. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-9280.2007.01977.x>.
- Molloy, G. J., Perkins-Porras, L., Strike, P. C., & Steptoe, A. (2008). Social networks and partner stress as predictors of adherence to medication, rehabilitation attendance, and quality of life following acute coronary syndrome. *Health Psychology*, 27(1), 52–58. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0278-6133.27.1.52>.
- Mora, P. A., Musumeci-Szabo, T. J., Popan, J., Beamon, T., & Leventhal, H. (in press). Me at my worst: Exploring the relationship between the undesired self, health, and mood among older adults. *Journal of Applied Social Psychology*.
- O'Connor, D., Conner, M., Jones, F., McMillan, B., & Ferguson, E. (2009). Exploring the benefits of conscientiousness: An investigation of the role of daily stressors and health behaviors. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 37(2), 184–196. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12160-009-9087-6>.
- Rasmussen, H. N., Wrosch, C., Scheier, M. F., & Carver, C. S. (2006). Self-regulation processes and health: The importance of optimism and goal adjustment. *Journal of Personality*, 74(6), 1721–1747. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-6494.2006.00426.x>.
- Schunk, D. H., & Zimmerman, B. J. (1994). *Self-regulation of learning and performance: issues and educational applications*. Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.
- Trommsdorff, G. (2009). Culture and development of self-regulation. *Social and Personality Psychology Compass*, 3(5), 687–701. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1751-9004.2009.00209.x>.
- Watson, D., & Pennebaker, J. W. (1989). Health complaints, stress, and distress: Exploring the central role of negative affectivity. *Psychological Review*, 96(2), 234–254.

Self-Regulatory Ability

► Self-Regulatory Capacity

Self-Regulatory Capacity

David Cameron¹ and Thomas L. Webb²

¹Information School, The University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

²Department of Psychology, The University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

Synonyms

Self-control capacity; Self-regulatory ability; Strength model of self-control

Definition

Self-regulatory capacity refers to people's ability to exert control over their thoughts, feelings, and actions, for example, the capacity to inhibit prejudice, make oneself feel better, or select healthy food. However, self-regulatory capacity is thought to be a limited resource that (i) is temporarily depleted by exertions of self-control (an effect termed "ego-depletion") and (ii) differs in strength from person to person.

Description

Limited Self-Regulatory Capacity

Self-regulatory capacity refers to an individual's ability to exert control over their behavior, thoughts, and feelings. The capacity for self-regulation differs between individuals and can differ intraindividually dependent on situational factors, such as the experience of self-regulatory fatigue. Self-regulation is closely related to goal-driven behavior and is characterized by the process of attempting to work toward a desired held goal. For example, in terms of health behavior, an individual may regulate their diet to reach a specific weight or resist a personal temptation such as cigarettes to reach their goal of overcoming a smoking addiction. Self-regulatory capacity

would influence how successfully an individual pursues such goals, alongside other factors such as the prepotency of the action that needs to be overcome. The modal model of self-regulatory capacity (strength model) poses that persistence with self-regulation can lead to a temporary state of self-regulatory fatigue and lapses of self-regulation can occur. In terms of the prior examples, this could include short-term gratifications such as deviations from a planned diet or the resumption of smoking.

Self-regulatory capacity can be measured using a wide variety of cognitive or behavioral tests. Examples include persistence at impossible (e.g., completing unsolvable anagrams) or aversive (e.g., consuming unpleasant drinks, squeezing a handgrip, cold pressor) tasks; response time or errors made in inhibition tasks (Stroop task, stop signal); resisting temptation (limiting alcohol consumption); and suppression of emotional expression. The key criterion for a task measuring self-regulatory capacity is the requirement for the person to override an otherwise dominant response (e.g., the desire to give up, to read the words in the Stroop task). Tasks that are simply difficult (e.g., complex math puzzles) or stressful (e.g., watching an emotional video) are unlikely to reflect the same ability. The strength model argues that self-regulation draws from a universal pool – that exerted effort at one self-regulation task impairs ability at performing a subsequent, seemingly distinct, task. Presenting these tasks in sequence is a commonly used method to examine self-regulatory capacity.

Self-regulatory capacity has an important relation to health behavior. Many behaviors which are considered to have long-term benefits, such as eating a healthy diet or maintaining an exercise regimen, are notably absent from people's routines, while behaviors that are demonstrably harmful in the long term such as smoking, unhealthy diets, unprotected sexual intercourse, or substance abuse are common in society. The contrast between these behaviors can be seen in the temporal distance between the costs and benefits: behaviors associated with improved health

typically only show a beneficial change over the longer term, while the costs (such as the self-regulatory effort in changing behavior) are high in the short term, whereas behaviors that show a high cost of being harmful to health in the long term offer immediate benefits (such as the satiation of an immediate desire or need). In the context of temporal self-regulation theory, self-regulatory capacity acts as a moderator of the link between an individual's intentions for health behavior, which are shaped by the temporal differences between perceived costs and benefits for an action, and the individual's actual observed behavior. A greater capacity for self-regulation is predicted to be associated with the ability to overcome prepotent responses, such as habitual smoking, and follow intentions for behavior, such as intention to quit smoking. Limited capacity for regulation is predicted to be associated with lapses in self-control and the resumption of prepotent responses; so despite the intention to quit smoking, this would not translate into actionable behavior.

Nature of Self-Regulatory Capacity

The precise nature of self-regulatory capacity remains elusive – since the development of the strength model in 1994, a multitude of studies using the two-task paradigm indicate a limited self-regulatory capacity; a meta-analysis of these suggests a reliable effect. However, more recent research challenges the size and reliability of effects previously observed.

Self-regulatory capacity has been linked to the biological substrate of blood glucose levels – Gailliot and colleagues (2007) identify that depletion of self-regulatory capacity was correlated with blood glucose levels and that performance on self-regulatory tasks could be restored with blood glucose supplements (namely, lemonade). The strength model has since been updated to situate a central monitor of available, or potentially available, glucose as a candidate for momentary self-regulatory capacity.

Self-regulatory capacity's apparent dependence on glucose availability suggests a similarity with executive functions known to be affected by

available glucose levels (e.g., the attentional system). Self-regulation is considered to exist alongside this diverse array of higher cognitive processes and may work in concert with others, particularly that of planning and error detection. Self-regulation can be considered as a goal-driven process because it is used by an individual who seeks to override one state of behavior, thoughts, or feelings with another goal state. As such, an individual is required to recruit multiple executive processes to reach goal states: representations of one's current state and goal state must be held alongside a plan for how to achieve the goal state, detection of discrepancy (or error) between these two states must occur, and self-regulation to change the current experienced state toward the goal is required. Apparent failures in the wider system of self-regulation may not be restricted to a depleted self-regulatory capacity; related systems such as that of error detection may impair self-regulation if there is an incorrect perception of error between the current state and desired state.

Like other aspects of executive function, self-regulatory capacity is associated with the frontal lobes. Both neuroimaging and lesion studies indicate that self-regulatory actions such as the control of behavioral and emotional output is closely associated with the ventromedial prefrontal cortex. In addition, the ventromedial-orbitofrontal cortex has been particularly associated with the self-regulatory process of suppressing previously rewarding responses. Damage to this area often results in a diminished or absent ability to inhibit immediately rewarding actions, even though the semantic knowledge of an action's inappropriateness may still be intact. These regions associated with self-regulatory capacity show high connectivity with executive areas related to the processes involved in self-monitoring, which support the process of self-regulation. The anterior cingulate cortex is associated with the degree and nature of conflict between competing responses to situations such as the short-term desire to satiate an immediate need against the longer-term goal for a healthier lifestyle. The dorsolateral prefrontal cortex has been associated with the resolution of detected response conflict alongside attentional

and planning behavior. These regions working in cohort are considered to form the neural circuitry underpinning self-regulation.

Individual Differences in Self-Regulatory Capacity

In addition to situational demands on self-regulatory capacity, there is also a body of research suggesting that there may be stable individual differences in self-regulatory capacity. Some people simply seem better than others at, for example, selecting healthy food, cheering themselves up, and acting in an egalitarian manner. In support of this idea, Hofmann et al. (2008) found that individual differences in working memory capacity moderated participants' ability to self-regulate their sexual interest, consumption of tempting food, and anger expression. In a similar vein, a number of authors have proposed measures of self-regulatory capacity such as the Self-Control Behavior Inventory, the Self-Control Questionnaire, and the Brief Self-Control Scale (BSCS). In each case, differences have been found between people that reliably map onto various self-control outcomes such as task performance, impulse control, interpersonal relations, and so on.

Building Self-Regulatory Capacity

Much like with general executive function training, there is a significant interest in the possibility that self-regulatory capacity can be improved in individuals through practice. Meta-analysis of training studies indicates that training can have a positive effect on some elements of self-regulatory capacity, particularly when measured using the two-task paradigm.

Cross-References

- [Cold Pressor Task](#)
- [Ego-Depletion](#)
- [Emotion](#)
- [Limited Resource](#)
- [Prejudice](#)
- [Self-Control](#)

- [Self-Report Inventory](#)
- [Stroop Color-Word Test](#)
- [Working Memory](#)

References and Further Reading

- Baumeister, R. F., & Vohs, K. D. (2018). Strength model of self-regulation as limited resource: Assessment, controversies, update. In *Self-regulation and self-control* (pp. 78–128). New York: Routledge.
- Brandon, J. E., Oescher, J., & Loftin, J. M. (1990). The self-control questionnaire: An assessment. *Health Values, 14*, 3–9.
- Carter, E. C., & McCullough, M. E. (2014). Publication bias and the limited strength model of self-control: Has the evidence for ego depletion been overestimated? *Frontiers in Psychology, 5*, 823.
- Fagen, S. A., Long, N. J., & Stevens, D. J. (1975). *Teaching children self-control: Preventing emotional and learning problems in the elementary school*. Columbus: Charles E. Merrill.
- Friese, M., Frankenbach, J., Job, V., & Loschelder, D. D. (2017). Does self-control training improve self-control? A meta-analysis. *Perspectives on Psychological Science, 12*(6), 1077–1099.
- Gailliot, M. T., Baumeister, R. F., DeWall, C. N., Maner, J. K., Plant, E. A., Tice, D. M., Brewer, L. E., & Schmeichel, B. J. (2007). Self-control relies on glucose as a limited energy source: Willpower is more than a metaphor. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 92*, 325–336.
- Hagger, M. S., Wood, C., Stiff, C., & Chatzisarantis, N. L. D. (2010). Ego depletion and the strength model of self-control: A meta-analysis. *Psychological Bulletin, 136*, 495–525.
- Hagger, M. S., Chatzisarantis, N. L., Alberts, H., Anggono, C. O., Batailler, C., Birt, A. R., . . . , Calvillo, D. P. (2016). A multilab preregistered replication of the ego-depletion effect. *Perspectives on Psychological Science, 11*(4), 546–573.
- Hall, P. A., & Fong, G. T. (2013). Temporal self-regulation theory: Integrating biological, psychological, and ecological determinants of health behavior performance. In *Social neuroscience and public health* (pp. 35–53). New York: Springer.
- Hofmann, W., Friese, M., Gschwendner, T., Wiers, R. W., & Schmit, M. (2008). Working memory capacity and self-regulatory behavior: Toward an individual differences perspective on behavior determination by automatic versus controlled processes. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 95*, 962–977.
- Tangney, J. P., Baumeister, R. F., & Boone, A. L. (2004). High self-control predicts good adjustment, less pathology, better grades, and interpersonal success. *Journal of Personality, 72*, 271–324.

Self-Regulatory Fatigue

David Cameron¹ and Thomas L. Webb²

¹Information School, The University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

²Department of Psychology, The University of Sheffield, Sheffield, UK

Synonyms

Ego-depletion; Limited resource; Self-control failure

Definition

Self-regulatory fatigue refers to the temporary depletion of individuals' capacity for self-control. In a state of self-regulatory fatigue, individuals find it harder to resist making impulsive purchases, inhibit prejudice, or regulate their own emotions (an effect often termed "ego-depletion"). Self-regulatory fatigue arises from the extended use of self-regulation, which is thought to be a limited resource.

Description

Limited Self-Regulatory Capacity

Self-regulatory fatigue describes the temporary impairment in self-control performance after prior exertions of self-control (an effect also referred to as "ego-depletion"). The strength model of self-regulation draws the analogy between muscular fatigue and self-regulatory fatigue. Muscular fatigue occurs after repeated or prolonged acts of physical exertion, where longer or more effortful exertions lead to a greater experience of fatigue. Similarly, persistent acts of self-regulation, such as the overriding of impulses, result in a mental fatigue, limiting the effectiveness of further regulatory efforts. Again, longer or more effortful exertions of self-regulation lead to a greater experience of self-regulatory fatigue.

Like muscular fatigue, rest and recuperation are hypothesized to restore the temporary depletion in self-regulatory strength.

It is important to distinguish between subjective and actual self-regulatory fatigue, although the two can coincide. Self-regulatory persistence and ego-depletion is associated with the physiological indications and subjective feelings of fatigue such as somnolence and decreased attention. Subjective fatigue is thought to mediate between exertions of self-regulation and subsequent decrements in self-regulatory ability. However, subjective fatigue – or the belief that one is fatigued – can have effects that are independent of actual fatigue. Despite experiencing prior effortful self-regulation, individuals perceiving themselves to be low in fatigue can engage in subsequent regulation more effectively than those perceiving themselves to be high in fatigue. A second contributing factor to the state of self-regulatory fatigue is motivation. Individuals may cease persistence at self-regulation if they believe that the effort exerted during self-regulation costs more than the outcome of self-regulation is worth. Self-regulatory fatigue is, therefore, not merely a state of exhaustion in which the individual is willing to engage a task and yet unable to persist but can also lead to acquiescence – the person willfully consents to relax self-control because they are not motivated to do otherwise.

Measuring Self-Regulatory Fatigue

The strength model poses that exertions of self-regulation draw from a limited self-regulatory capacity. However, this hypothesis of capacity has proven difficult to objectively measure. A range of cognitive or behavioral tests have been implemented to measure self-regulatory fatigue. Common examples include persistence at impossible (e.g., unsolvable puzzles) or unpleasant (e.g., consuming unpleasant drinks, cold pressor) tasks; response time or errors made in inhibition tasks (modified Stroop task, go/no-go); resisting temptation (limiting alcohol consumption); and regulating facial expression. In such cases, the primary means for measuring self-regulatory fatigue is a comparison of

performance at a self-regulatory task between individuals in a depleted state (those having exerted prior self-regulation) against individuals in a non-depleted state (those having completed a difficult task such as complex math problems that does not require self-regulation). As a result, self-regulatory fatigue and the presence of a limited resource are only measured indirectly; thus the relationship between subjective fatigue, motivation, and self-regulatory fatigue remains unclear.

Attempts at more direct and biological measures of self-regulatory fatigue have been made. Blood glucose levels have been reported to show a correlation with self-regulatory fatigue, suggesting a positive link between available caloric energy to the brain and available mental resource. However, glucose supply itself is not thought to be a causal link to self-regulatory fatigue, as glucose dynamics are too small to account for differences between depleted and non-depleted states. The strength model for self-regulatory fatigue has more recently been revised to incorporate a monitor of potentially available (rather than direct levels of) glucose as a possible driver of self-regulatory fatigue. Alternative physiological measures, such as glycogen store levels and heart rate variability, have also been suggested as means of measuring resource availability and self-regulatory fatigue.

Overcoming Self-Regulatory Fatigue

While the primary means to counteract self-regulatory fatigue are rest and recuperation, the effects of self-regulatory fatigue may be moderated or counteracted by a number of other means. The induction of a positive mood by others, including humor and laughter, observation of others undergoing successful self-regulation, salient social goals, primed ideas of success, a broadened mindset through self-affirmation, external attribution of the causes of depletion, perception of a low state of fatigue, simultaneous tensing or firming of muscles, and monetary incentives all serve to encourage individuals to persist at self-regulation. However, in many cases, this increased persistence is considered to deprioritize conservation of remaining resources rather than a reduction in fatigue. Poor

performance in an unannounced third self-regulatory task after the standard two-task design often indicates that depleted participants have persisted beyond their typical point of self-regulatory fatigue rather than overcoming fatigue. Further interventions, such as the prior practice of self-regulation tasks or the formulation of implementation intentions (“if . . . then . . .” plans), serve to encourage persistence at self-regulation through moderating the effort required to expend during successful self-regulation.

Wider Implications of Self-Regulatory Fatigue

Self-regulatory fatigue has been implicated in a number of problems for both the individual and society. While warnings about substance abuse, risky sexual practice, and unhealthy diets are extensively promoted, there equally exists a widespread failure of individuals to adhere to these guidelines or rules. Experimental studies such as those examining alcohol or unhealthy food consumption demonstrate that these behaviors are affected by both self-regulatory fatigue and individuals’ chronic tendencies. A chronic tendency that is typically suppressed, such as a high temptation to drink alcohol, becomes more likely to shape behavior when an individual is depleted. In contrast, an individual with low trait temptation to drink alcohol might show no change in alcohol consumption when depleted because it is not necessary to engage in self-regulation. Further examples of behaviors affected by self-regulatory fatigue include impulsive or overspending, emotional regulation such as anger management, interpersonal interaction, self-presentation or impression formation, and stereotype suppression.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Ego-Depletion](#)
- ▶ [Fatigue](#)
- ▶ [Limited Resource](#)
- ▶ [Self-Control](#)
- ▶ [Self-Report Inventory](#)
- ▶ [Working Memory](#)

References and Further Reading

- Baddeley, A. (2007). *Chapter 13: Working memory, thought and action*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Baumeister, R. F., & Vohs, K. D. (2018). Strength model of self-regulation as limited resource: Assessment, controversies, update. In *Self-regulation and self-control* (pp. 78–128). New York: Routledge.
- Baumeister, R. F., Heatherton, T., & Tice, D. M. (1994). *Losing control: How and why people fail at self-regulation*. London: Academic.
- Baumeister, R. F., Gailliot, M., DeWall, N., & Oaten, M. (2006). Self-regulation and personality: How interventions increase regulatory success, and how depletion moderates the effects of traits on behavior. *Journal of Personality*, 74, 1773–1802.
- Baumeister, R. F., Tice, D. M., & Vohs, K. D. (2018). The strength model of self-regulation: Conclusions from the second decade of willpower research. *Perspectives on Psychological Science*, 13(2), 141–145.
- Beedie, C. J., & Lane, A. M. (2012). The role of glucose in self-control: Another look at the evidence and an alternative conceptualization. *Personality and Social Psychology Review*, 16(2), 143–153.
- Gailliot, M. (2008). Unlocking the energy dynamics of executive functioning: Linking executive functioning to brain glycogen. *Perspectives on Psychological Science*, 3, 245–263.

is the bewildering variety of measurement instruments (Dekker 2009). Although validated, the limitations of self-report questionnaires are that the researcher is dependent on the research participant to be completely truthful and unbiased and to be able to accurately remember details.

References and Further Reading

- Dekker, J. (2009). Measurement instruments in behavioral medicine. *International Journal of Behavioural Medicine*, 16, 89–90. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s12529-009-9049-1>.
- Stone, A., Turkkan, J., Bachrach, C., Jobe, J., Kufzman, H., Cain, V., et al. (2009). *The science of self-report*. Taylor & Francis e-library. Retrieved from <http://books.google.co.uk/books>

Self-Report

Jane Upton
Department of Psychology, William James
College, Newton, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Self-report inventory](#)

Definition

Self-report includes an individual's reports about what they are feeling, what they are doing, and what they recall happening in the past (Stone et al. 2009).

These are captured by validated self-report questionnaires, of which there are many. Indeed, one of the challenges facing behavioral medicine

Self-Report Inventory

► [Self-Report](#)

Self-Reported Patient Outcome Measure

► [Health Assessment Questionnaire](#)

Self-Respect

► [Self-esteem](#)

Self-Schema

► [Self-Identity](#)

Self-System

► [Self-Identity](#)

Self-Tracking

► Quantified Self

Self-Treatment

► Self-medication

Seligman, Martin

Stephanie Ann Hooker
Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Biographical Information

Dr. Martin Seligman



Martin E. P. Seligman was born August 12, 1942, in Albany, NY. He received his A.B. from Princeton University in 1964 and his Ph.D. in Psychology from the University of Pennsylvania in 1967 (Shah [n.d.](#)). After receiving his doctorate, he began his career as an assistant professor at Cornell University in Ithaca, NY. He soon returned to the University of Pennsylvania where he was promoted to associate professor and to professor of Psychology and then to director of

the Clinical Training Program. He is currently the Zellerbach Family Professor of Psychology in the Department of Psychology at the University of Pennsylvania and the director of the Positive Psychology Center (University of Pennsylvania [2007](#)). Early in his career, Seligman studied depression and defined the theory of learned helplessness and pessimism. His work progressed from a focus on pessimism to optimism, and hence from depression to happiness. He believed that psychology focused too much on mental illness and not enough on health and flourishing; thus, he pioneered the field of positive psychology in 2000 (Seligman and Csikszentmihalyi [2000](#)).

Major Accomplishments

In 1996, Seligman was elected president of the American Psychological Association (APA) by the largest vote in history. As president, he chose the theme of positive psychology and called for an integration of human flourishing, strengths, and virtues into the science and practice of psychology. He noted that psychology and psychiatry had focused primarily on mental illness (e.g., depression, suffering, victimization, anger, anxiety), but had forgotten positive forms of mental health (e.g., positive emotion, engagement, positive relationships, purpose, accomplishment) (Seligman [2008](#)). His mission in the APA paralleled his personal mission to promote positive psychology.

In 2008, he began his next mission: to promote a new movement in psychology, positive health (Seligman [2008](#)). He argued that people desire more than just the absence of suffering and pain; they desire well-being and flourishing that in itself can be protective against mental illness and disease. Thus, he defined positive health as the subjective, biological, and functional realms that can predict positive aspects of mental health, e.g., longevity, positive emotion, prognosis, and suggested areas for which positive health could be incorporated into studies of well-being and illness.

Seligman has published 20 books and over 200 articles on motivation and personality, including best sellers such as *Learned Optimism*, *Authentic Happiness*, and *The Optimistic Child*

(Shah n.d.). He is one of the most often-cited psychologists and the thirteenth most likely name to appear in a general psychology textbook (TED Conferences LLC 2008). Seligman also created the Masters of Applied Positive Psychology program at the University of Pennsylvania. Many institutions, including the National Institute on Aging, the National Science Foundation, and the National Institute of Mental Health, have supported his research. He has received numerous awards, including two Distinguished Scientific Contribution awards from the APA, the William James Fellow Award, and the James McKeen Cattell Fellow Award from the Association for Psychological Science, the MERIT Award from the National Institute of Mental Health, the Laurel Award of the American Association for Applied Psychology and Prevention, and the Lifetime Achievement Award of the Society for Research in Psychopathology.

Cross-References

- [Learned Helplessness](#)
- [Optimism](#)
- [Positive Psychology](#)

References and Readings

- Seligman, M. E. P. (1975). *Helplessness: On depression, development, and death*. San Francisco: W. H. Freeman.
- Seligman, M. E. P. (1990). *Learned optimism*. New York: Knopf.
- Seligman, M. E. P. (1993). *What you can change and what you can't: The complete guide to successful self-improvement*. New York: Knopf.
- Seligman, M. E. P. (1996). *The optimistic child: Proven program to safeguard children from depression and build lifelong resilience*. New York: Houghton Mifflin.
- Seligman, M. E. P. (2002). *Authentic happiness: Using the new positive psychology to realize your potential for lasting fulfillment*. New York: Free Press.
- Seligman, M. (2008). Positive health. *Applied Psychology: An International Review*, 57, 3–18.
- Seligman, M., & Csikszentmihalyi, M. (2000). Positive psychology: An introduction. *American Psychologist*, 55, 5–14.
- Shah, N. (n.d.). *Seligman, Martin E. P.* Retrieved 15 July 2011 from http://www.pabook.libraries.psu.edu/palitmap/bios/Seligman_Martin.html

- TED Conferences, LLC. (2008). *Speakers: Martin Seligman: Psychologist*. Retrieved 15 July 2011 from http://www.ted.com/index.php/speakers/martin_seligman.html
- The Trustees of the University of Pennsylvania. (2006). *Authentic happiness*. <http://www.authentichappiennessas.upenn.edu/seligman.aspx>
- University of Pennsylvania. (2007). *Positive psychology center: Seligman bio*. Retrieved 15 July 2011 from <http://www.ppc.sas.upenn.edu/bio.htm>

Selye, Hans

Adrienne Stauder
Institute of Behavioural Sciences, Semmelweis
University Budapest, Budapest, Hungary

Biographical Information

Dr. Hans Selye 1973

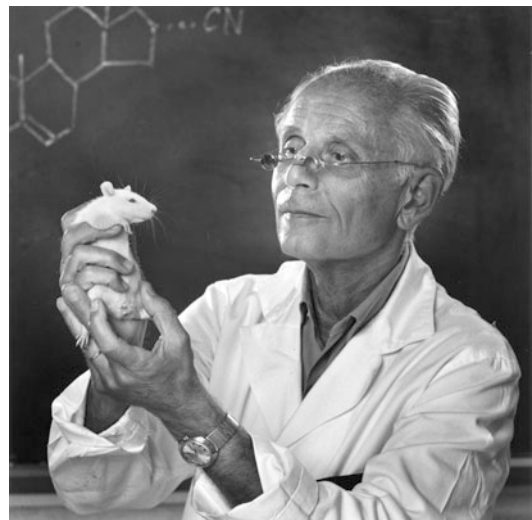


Photo by Yousuf Karsh

Hans Selye was born on January 26, 1907, in Vienna, Austria. His mother Maria Felicitas Langbank was an Austrian, his father Hugo Selye was a Hungarian military surgeon, and his grandfather and great grandfather were family doctors. Selye completed his elementary and secondary school education in Komarno (Slovakia). Since 1924 he studied medicine in Prague, Rome,

and Paris, and obtained his diploma at the German University of Prague in 1929. He started his research at the Institute of Experimental Pathology in Prague, and got his doctorate in biochemistry in 1931.

A Rockefeller Research Fellowship allowed Selye to continue his scientific career at the Department of Biochemical Hygiene of the Johns Hopkins University in Baltimore in 1931, and then from 1932 at the Department of Biochemistry of the McGill University in Montreal. He became lecturer then associate professor in biochemistry, and also in histology. He received Canadian citizenship in 1939, and became Doctor of Sciences in 1942. From 1945 to 1976 he directed the Institute of Experimental Medicine and Surgery (IMCE) at the University of Montreal, which gained international reputation under his leadership. After his retirement he remained active as founding president of the International Institute of Stress in Montreal (1976), and as co-founder of the Hans Selye Foundation (1979) until his death on October 15, 1982.

Selye held honorary doctorates from 18 universities, was a member of the Academy of Science of the Royal Society of Canada and 43 scientific societies, was an honorary citizen of many cities and countries, and received numerous high-ranking awards and distinctions. He was nominated for the Nobel Prize in physiology or medicine for 10 consecutive years (first in 1949), but he never received it. In 2006 he was inducted as a member of the Canadian Medical Hall of Fame.

Major Accomplishments

Selye is one of the most well-known, most productive scientists of the twentieth century. He wrote his name in the history of science by introducing the concept of stress. As a result of his work the word “stress” previously used in other contexts gained a physiological meaning and has been adopted in all languages. His research work had great impact in the field of endocrinology, physiology, biochemistry, epidemiology of chronic diseases, and behavioral medicine, not only on scientific thinking but also among lay

people all around the world. Selye authored or coauthored 39 books and over 1,600 scientific articles, and his work has been estimated to have been cited in more than 300,000 scientific papers, although Somorjai (2007) could compile a list of only 800 of all his publications.

Selye’s most important finding, the discovery of the stress syndrome, was accidental during his attempts to isolate a special female hormone from the placenta (Selye 1964, 1967b). The originality of his thinking was that he started to research the significance of the nonspecific reactions that he observed. His first short note describing “the non-specific response to noxious agents” was published in *Nature* in 1936, followed in the same year by a longer article in *The British Journal of Experimental Pathology* describing the General Adaptation Syndrome. In the following years, he systematically developed his comprehensive theory on stress (Selye 1950) and envisaged the existence of diseases of adaptation (Selye 1946).

His researches on steroids turned his interest to the inflammatory process (Selye 1943, 1949, 1965), then to the phenomena of calciphylaxis (Selye 1962) and of thrombohemorrhagy (Selye 1967a). Through these experiments he confirmed his hypothesis that diseases such as heart disease, rheumatoid arthritis, anaphylaxis, depression, autoimmune diseases, and Alzheimer disease are in fact all diseases of adaptation. Although his experiments were always on animals, over the years Selye became more and more interested in how his research results could be applied to medicine and to society. While his original definition of stress – “nonspecific response of the living organism to any stimuli, for example, effort, focused attention, pain, illness, failure, joy, success, that cause changes,” – implied that the stressor can be either pleasant or unpleasant, since similar physiological/biochemical changes are produced, he later made the distinction between good stress (eustress) and bad stress (distress) (Selye 1974).

Selye expanded his model to include Perception, Conditioning Factors, and Coping Mechanisms. This so-called *Selye – Smith Conceptual Model of Stress Variables* served as theoretical

basis to the comprehensive course “Stress Management for Optimal Health” offered by Selye’s Institute first to health professionals and then to the lay public (Smith and Selye 1979). Selye proposed that stress education and stress management should be important elements of preventive medicine.

Research was a passion for Selye. He was very much interested in great discoveries, the history and psychology of science, and in personal characteristics of scientists. These topics appeared in his lectures, books, and also in his every day discussions. He emphasized that original ideas were the most important elements in research that must be tested and proved by well-designed experiments. He also gave special attention to research methodology. On one hand, he was reluctant to adapt complicated technological methods, and he emphasized in all forums that one always should try to view the entire organism in its complexity and not to get lost with tiny little details without considering how they relate to the whole organism (Selye 1967b). On the other hand he introduced new methods in experimental surgery (Selye et al. 1960). He also carefully selected his laboratory assistants based on their skillfulness.

Effective information processing was another key element of Selye’s exceptional productivity. He systematically developed his library that became world famous. He worked out his own “Symbolic Shorthand System for Medicine and Physiology” (SSS) that was subsequently published and used until the start of the computer era (Selye and Mishra 1957). He also followed a very structured daily schedule at his Institute as well as in his private life (Selye 1964). Selye was also a charismatic teacher. He shared his knowledge and his devotion to science with his fellow workers and students, exerting a deep influence on their lives and careers. He invited talented young researchers from all over the world to work in his Institute. He also invited many world renowned professors (the so-called Claude Bernard Professors). Thus, young researchers had the opportunity to meet famous personalities. They not only delivered one or two lectures, but participated in daily routine of the Institute and at informal dinners and discussions at Selye’s house. Selye also

traveled over the world and very often he obtained the recognition of his audience not only by his research results and presentation style, but also by giving his lecture in the language of the respective country. He not only shared his experiences with the scientific community, but could transmit his knowledge about stress, the process of scientific research, and related subjects to the general lay population by writing several popular books such as *The Stress of Life* (1956), *From Dream to Discovery* (1964), *In Vivo: The Case for Supramolecular Biology* (1967b), and *Stress without Distress* (1974) that have been translated into many languages.

Selye’s scientific heritage is formally maintained by the Hans Selye Foundation, Montreal, Canada, www.stresscanada.org.

Cross-References

- [Coping](#)
- [Stress](#)
- [Stress: Appraisal and Coping](#)

References and Readings

- Berczi, I. Stress and disease: The contribution of Hans Selye to: Neuroimmune Biology. A personal reminiscence. Retrieved March 30, 2012 from <http://home.cc.umanitoba.ca/~berczii/page2.htm>
- Selye, H. (1936a). A syndrome produced by diverse noxious agents. *Nature*, 138, 32.
- Selye, H. (1936b). Thymus and adrenals in the response of the organism to injuries and intoxications. *British Journal of Experimental Pathology*, 17, 234–248.
- Selye, H. (1943). Morphological changes in the fowl following chronic overdosage with various steroids. *Journal of Morphology*, 73, 401.
- Selye, H. (1946). The general adaptation syndrome and the diseases of adaptation. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology*, 6, 117–230.
- Selye, H. (1949). Effect of ACTH and cortisone upon an anaphylactoid reaction. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 61, 553–556.
- Selye, H. (1950). *Stress*. Montreal: Acta.
- Selye, H. (1956). *The stress of life*. New York: McGraw Hill.
- Selye, H. (1962). *Calciphylaxis*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Selye, H. (1964). *From dream to discovery*. New York: McGraw Hill.

- Selye, H. (1965). *The mast cells*. Washington, DC: Butterworths.
- Selye, H. (1967a). Experimental thrombohemorrhagic phenomena. *The American Journal of Cardiology*, 20(2), 153–160.
- Selye, H. (1967b). *In vivo: The case for supramolecular biology*. New York: Livesight.
- Selye, H. (1974). *Stress without distress* (p. 364). Philadelphia: Lippincott.
- Selye, H. (1979). *The stress of my life: A scientist's memoir*. New York: Van Nostrand Reinhold.
- Selye, H., & Mishra, R. K. (1957). Symbolic shorthand system for medicine and physiology. *Federation Proceedings*, 16(3), 704–706.
- Selye, H., Bajusz, E., Grasso, S., & Mendell, P. (1960). Simple techniques for the surgical occlusion of coronary vessels in the rat. *Angiology*, 11, 398–407.
- Smith, M. J. T., & Selye, H. (1979). Stress: Reducing the negative effects of stress. *The American Journal of Nursing*, 11, 1953–1955.
- Somorjai, N. (2007). Bibliography Hans Selye. Retrieved March 30, 2012 from http://www.selyesociety.hu/pdf/Selye_bibliography_2011.pdf.
- Stauder, A., & Kovács, P. B. (Eds.). (2007). *Stress. A memorial book on the birth centenary of Hans Selye*. Budapest: Downtown Artists' Society.
- The American Institute of Stress: Hans Selye and The Birth of Stress. Retrieved March 30, 2012 from <http://www.stress.org/hans.htm>.
- Université de Montréal: Hans Selye: Une vie en images. Retrieved March 30, 2012 from http://www.archiv.umontreal.ca/exposition/Hans_Selye/index.html

SEM

- [Structural Equation Modeling \(SEM\)](#)

Semenogelase

- [Prostate-Specific Antigen \(PSA\)](#)

Seminin

- [Prostate-Specific Antigen \(PSA\)](#)

Seminoma

- [Cancer, Testicular](#)

Senescence

- [Immunosenescence](#)

Senior

- [Elderly](#)

Sense of Coherence

- [Salutogenesis](#)

Sense of Coherence – Measurement

- [Resilience: Measurement](#)

Sense of Self

- [Self-Identity](#)

Separation

- [Divorce and Health](#)

SEPs

- [Needle Exchange Programs](#)

Sera

► Serum

Serious Games

► Health Gaming

Serostatus: Seronegative and Seropositive

Angela White
Department of Psychology, University of
Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Synonyms

[HIV status](#)

Definition

Serostatus refers to the extent to which HIV antibodies can be detected in an individual's serum. This detection is an indicator of HIV infection.

Description

An individual is considered to be seronegative when the amount of HIV antibodies are not sufficient enough to be detected using an antibody test, although indication of HIV infection can be determined through the use of more sensitive culture, antigen, and viral gene detection techniques (Fultz 1989; Kaslow and Francis 1989; O'Malley 1988). Individuals who are seronegative may not

produce HIV antibodies for months or year after HIV infection, or they may stop producing these antibodies after some unknown time interval. There is a long incubation period associated with being seronegative; individuals may not show physical symptoms associated with HIV/AIDS for several months or years after the initial HIV infection. As such, it is difficult to determine the ability of seronegative individuals to spread HIV (Kaslow and Francis 1989).

An individual is considered to be seropositive when HIV antibodies are detected on a HIV antibody test (Fultz 1989; O'Malley 1988). Individuals who have detectable HIV antibodies are considered to be "HIV-positive." The period of time between HIV infection and seroconversion (the presence of detectable antibodies in the serum) may range from 2 weeks to 3 months; this period of time is referred to as the "window period" (Stine 2003).

Some individuals who are seropositive, or "HIV-positive," exhibit symptoms associated with an acute mononucleosis-like syndrome immediately after being infected with HIV. This syndrome has been known as acute HIV syndrome or acute retroviral syndrome; its symptoms include sweats, lethargy, headaches, muscle aches, fever, and sore throat (Fultz 1989; Stine 2003). Not all seropositive individuals experience this syndrome. Other seropositive individuals remain asymptomatic for several weeks. All seropositive individuals, whether symptomatic or asymptomatic, are infected with HIV and can infect others through blood and genital secretions and by transmission from mother to fetus (Fultz 1989; O'Malley 1988). In 2001, the Center for Disease Control and Prevention proposed the Serostatus Approach to Fighting the HIV Epidemic (SAFE) program to encourage awareness that individuals may be HIV-positive even if they appear to be outwardly healthy. This program attempted to reduce the spread of HIV by extending prevention services and improving treatment adherence for individuals with a seropositive status and by providing training to

individuals who give these services (Normand et al. 1995; Stine 2003).

Being notified of a seropositive status is associated with behavioral and psychological changes. For instance, individuals who receive a positive test result may reduce their high-risk sexual activity. However, they also may experience increased stress and depression. Also, these individuals may feel compelled to disclose their HIV status to family, friends, and potential sexual parents. Some barriers associated with the disclosing HIV status include the disclosure of a stigmatized identity (such as being gay or an intravenous drug user), the fear of losing health insurance or employment, and the concern of being stigmatized by family and friends (Stall et al. 1989).

References and Readings

- Black, P. H., & Levy, E. M. (1988). The HIV seropositive state and progression to AIDS: An overview of factors promoting progression. In P. O'Malley (Ed.), *The AIDS epidemic: Private rights and the public interest* (pp. 97–107). Boston: Beacon.
- Fultz, P. (1989). The biology of human immunodeficiency viruses. In R. A. Kaslow & D. P. Francis (Eds.), *The epidemiology of AIDS: Expression, occurrence, and control of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection* (pp. 3–17). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Kaslow, R. A., & Francis, D. P. (1989). Epidemiology: General considerations. In R. A. Kaslow & D. P. Francis (Eds.), *The epidemiology of AIDS: Expression, occurrence, and control of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection* (pp. 117–135). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Normand, J., Vlahov, D., & Moses, L. E. (1995). *Preventing HIV transmission: The role of sterile needles and bleach*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- O'Malley, P. (1988). *The AIDS epidemic: Private rights and the public interest*. Boston: Beacon.
- Stall, R., Coates, T. J., Mandel, J. S., Morales, E. S., & Sorensen, J. L. (1989). Behavioral factors and intervention. In R. A. Kaslow & D. P. Francis (Eds.), *The epidemiology of AIDS: Expression, occurrence, and control of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 infection* (pp. 266–281). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Stine, G. J. (2003). *AIDS update 2003: An annual overview of acquired immune deficiency syndrome*. Upper Saddle River: Prentice Hall.

Serotonin

Marc D. Gellman

Behavioral Medicine Research Center,
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Definition

Serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine or 5-HT) is a neurotransmitter that is particularly important in central nervous system modulation.

Description

Serotonin (5-hydroxytryptamine or 5-HT) is synthesized from the amino acid tryptophan. It is a major neurotransmitter, considered an indolamine monoamine, that is particularly important in central nervous system modulation, especially in the brain. Serotonin is also found in peripheral sites and regarded as a neuromodulator. In the periphery, serotonin is found in enteric neurons, part of the autonomic nervous system that governs the functions of the gastrointestinal tract. Serotonin is also found in blood platelets and cells of the gut.

In the brain serotonin plays an important neuromodulatory role involved in the regulation of mood, appetite, and sleep and in the cognitive functions of learning and memory.

Serotonin plays an important role in mental processes and has been implicated in many psychiatric disorders. Modulation of serotonin at synapses is thought to be a major action of several classes of pharmacological antidepressants, including selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs). It is uncertain whether low serotonin levels contribute to depression or if depression causes a fall in serotonin levels.

Cross-References

- [Antidepressant Medications](#)
- [Central Nervous System](#)
- [Depression: Treatment](#)
- [Sleep](#)

References and Further Reading

Pilowsky, P. (Ed.). (2019). *Serotonin: The mediator that spans evolution*. London: Academic. <https://doi.org/10.1016/C2013-0-14440-6>.

Serotonin Transporter Gene

Anett Mueller¹ and Turhan Canli²

¹Department of Psychology, State University of New York at Stony Brook, Stony Brook, NY, USA

²Department of Psychology, Stony Brook University Psychology B-214, Stony Brook, NY, USA

Synonyms

SERT; SLC6A4 (solute carrier family 6, member 4)

Definition

In humans, the gene that encodes for the serotonin transporter is called the serotonin transporter gene which is modulated by the functional serotonin-transporter-linked polymorphism (5-HTTLPR), a variable number of tandem repeats in the 5' promoter region.

Description

The neurotransmitter *serotonin* (5-hydroxytryptamine, 5-HT) is probably best known for its modulation of neural activity and the modulation of various neuropsychological processes such as

mood, perception, emotion, and cognition. Serotonin is also implicated in the pathogenesis of many psychiatric and neurological disorders and furthermore, it is involved in brain development and plasticity of brain areas related to cognitive and emotional processes (Berger et al. 2009; Trevor et al. 2010). Additionally, the serotonin transporter is considered to be the initial site of action of broadly used antidepressant drugs, such as selective serotonin uptake inhibitors (SSRIs), and several potentially neurotoxic compounds.

Following neuronal stimulation, serotonin is transmitted into the synaptic cleft and then binds to receptors on the membrane of the postsynaptic neuron. Serotonin is then removed from the synaptic cleft via special proteins, called *transporters*. Serotonin transporters are located in the serotonin neuron; they transport serotonin from the synaptic cleft back into the presynaptic neuron in both the brain and many peripheral tissues terminals. In humans, the gene that codes for the serotonin transporter contains a number of common variants (polymorphisms), including the serotonin-transporter-linked promoter region (5-HTTLPR) of the serotonin transporter gene (SLC6A4). This polymorphism is located upstream of the transcription start site on the long arm of the 17th chromosome (17q11.1-q12). The majority of alleles are composed of either fourteen ("short" or "S" allele) or sixteen repeated ("long" or "L" for allele) units, which differentially modulate on the expression and function of 5-HTT. The short form of 5-HTTLPR has been associated with a reduced transcription of the 5-HTT gene, which leads to a decreased 5-HTT expression and availability and also a reduced 5-HT uptake (Lesch et al. 1996). In addition to the S and L alleles, there is an A > G single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP), a single nucleotide variation in a genetic sequence, upstream of the repetitive region that comprises the 5-HTTLPR. The derived L_G allele has been associated with decreased 5-HTT transcription relative to the L_A allele. The frequency of 5-HTTLPR alleles can vary substantially across ethnic groups, thus, showing population stratification.

The short allele variant of 5-HTTLPR was first reported to be associated with personality traits such as neuroticism and harm avoidance (Lesch

et al.). Subsequent work has reported *5-HTTLPR* allelic variation to a wide range of phenotypes including aggression, anxiety, and affective disorders. Most studies have implied that *5-HTTLPR* has only a moderate impact on these behavioral predispositions of 3–4% or less of the total variance. The less active *S* allele has been associated, either by itself or in interaction with adverse life events, with abnormal levels of anxiety, fear, and depression. Despite the association between presence of the *S* allele and psychopathology, studies of patient responsiveness to SSRIs suggest no strong link between *5-HTTLPR* genotype and drug effectiveness.

However, if the *S* allele produced only deleterious consequences, evolutionary pressures should have led to its removal from the gene pool. Thus, more recent studies have begun to accrue evidence for favorable phenotypes associated with the *S* allele. For example, studies revealed an improved performance in (social) cognition in individuals with the *S* allele (Homberg and Lesch 2010). On the other hand, the *L* allele, originally viewed as the protective allele, also has negative associations with at-risk phenotypes, such as cardiovascular health (e.g., increased cardiovascular reactivity and greater probability of myocardial infarction) (Fumeron et al. 2002; Williams et al. 2001) or certain psychiatric diseases (e.g., psychosis or posttraumatic stress disorder, PTSD) (Goldberg et al. 2009; Grabe et al. 2009). In addition to allelic association on observed phenotypes, there is growing evidence for gene-by-environment (G x E) interactions, suggesting that individuals possessing the *S* allele are predisposed to an increased risk for major depression or suicidal ideation as a function of early life stress. The first evidence for this G x E interaction in humans was presented by Caspi et al. (2003) who investigated more than 800 individuals over 23 years and found that life stress and depression was moderated by the *5-HTTLPR* genotype. Individuals with the *S* allele showed a higher probability of depressive symptoms, diagnosis of depression and suicidal attempts when exposed to stressful life events. However, replication studies have shown somewhat inconsistent results and thus, these findings are still a matter

of debate. In addition to behavioral studies, non-invasive functional MRI (fMRI) studies have also shown that structural and functional characteristics of neural circuits involved in emotion and cognition can be moderated by the interaction of life stress and *5-HTTLPR* genotype.

Most recently, investigators have come to recognize the potential gene regulatory role of epigenetic mechanisms in mediating environmental effects on brain function and on behavior (Rutter et al. 2006). For example, it has been argued that environmental influences bear the potential to persistently modify neuronal units during early development by epigenetic programming of emotionality (Weaver et al. 2004; Weaver 2007). This has first been shown with respect to the glucocorticoid receptor gene and individual differences in rodents' stress reactivity: variations in maternal care have been shown to modify the expression of genes that regulate behavioral and endocrine responses to stress and hippocampus synaptic development. Thus, alterations of particular genomic regions within the *5-HTT* in response to varying environmental conditions might serve well as a major source of variation in biological and behavioral phenotypes. Indeed, there is now emerging evidence linking *5-HTTLPR* genotype to individual differences in epigenetic methylation (Philibert et al. 2007, 2008).

Studies that use biological endophenotypes, such as stress-induced HPA activation, might be more strongly associated with a specific polymorphism than a psychiatric disorder (Uher and McGuffin 2010). However, given the fact that brain serotonin and more specifically *5-HTTLPR* shows pleiotropic behavioral effects, we need to learn and understand more about the biological function and how *5-HTTLPR* becomes associated with various different phenotypes. The modulation of these multiple behavioral processes might very likely be regulated by multiple serotonin receptors that are expressed in multiple brain regions. In summary, *5-HTTLPR* seems to play an important, though not yet fully understood, role in behavioral medicine. We will likely gain new serotonergic drugs and disease treatments as well as a more thorough understanding of complexity of human biology from this research.

Cross-References

- [Depression](#)
- [Gene-Environment Interaction](#)
- [Serotonin](#)

References and Readings

- Berger, M., Gray, J. A., & Roth, B. L. (2009). The expanded biology of serotonin. *Annual Review of Medicine*, 60, 355–366.
- Caspi, A., Sugden, K., Moffitt, T. E., Taylor, A., Craig, I. W., Harrington, H., et al. (2003). Influence of life stress on depression: moderation by a polymorphism in the 5-HTT gene. *Science*, 301(5631), 386–389.
- Fumeron, F., Betoulle, D., Nicaud, V., Evans, A., Kee, F., Ruidavets, J. B., et al. (2002). Serotonin transporter gene polymorphism and myocardial infarction: Etude Cas-Temoins de l'Infarctus du Myocarde (ECTIM). *Circulation*, 105(25), 2943–2945.
- Goldberg, T. E., Kotov, R., Lee, A. T., Gregersen, P. K., Lencz, T., Bromet, E., et al. (2009). The serotonin transporter gene and disease modification in psychosis: Evidence for systematic differences in allelic directionality at the 5-HTTLPR locus. *Schizophrenia Research*, 111(1–3), 103–108.
- Grabe, H. J., Spitzer, C., Schwahn, C., Marcinek, A., Frahnöw, A., Barnow, S., et al. (2009). Serotonin transporter gene (SLC6A4) promoter polymorphisms and the susceptibility to posttraumatic stress disorder in the general population. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 166(8), 926–933.
- Homberg, J. R., & Lesch, K. P. (2010). Looking on the bright side of serotonin transporter gene variation. *Biological Psychiatry*, 69, 513–519.
- Lesch, K. P., Bengel, D., Heils, A., Sabol, S. Z., Greenberg, B. D., Petri, S., et al. (1996). Association of anxiety-related traits with a polymorphism in the serotonin transporter gene regulatory region. *Science*, 274(5292), 1527–1531.
- Philibert, R., Madan, A., Andersen, A., Cadoret, R., Packer, H., & Sandhu, H. (2007). Serotonin transporter mRNA levels are associated with the methylation of an upstream CpG island. *American Journal of Medical Genetics. Part B, Neuropsychiatric Genetics*, 144B(1), 101–105.
- Philibert, R. A., Sandhu, H., Hollenbeck, N., Gunter, T., Adams, W., & Madan, A. (2008). The relationship of 5HTT (SLC6A4) methylation and genotype on mRNA expression and liability to major depression and alcohol dependence in subjects from the Iowa Adoption Studies. *American Journal of Medical Genetics. Part B, Neuropsychiatric Genetics*, 147B(5), 543–549.
- Rutter, M., Moffitt, T. E., & Caspi, A. (2006). Gene-environment interplay and psychopathology: Multiple varieties but real effects. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, 47(3–4), 226–261.
- Trevor, A. J., Katzung, B. G., & Masters, S. B. (2010). *Katzung and Trevor's pharmacology examination and*

board review (9th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill Medical.

- Uher, R., & McGuffin, P. (2010). The moderation by the serotonin transporter gene of environmental adversity in the etiology of depression: 2009 update. *Molecular Psychiatry*, 15(1), 18–22.

Weaver, I. C. (2007). Epigenetic programming by maternal behavior and pharmacological intervention. Nature versus nurture: Let's call the whole thing off. *Epigenetics*, 2(1), 22–28.

Weaver, I. C., Cervoni, N., Champagne, F. A., D'Alessio, A. C., Sharma, S., Seckl, J. R., et al. (2004). Epigenetic programming by maternal behavior. *Nature Neuroscience*, 7(8), 847–854.

Williams, R. B., Marchuk, D. A., Gadde, K. M., Barefoot, J. C., Grichnik, K., Helms, M. J., et al. (2001). Central nervous system serotonin function and cardiovascular responses to stress. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 63(2), 300–305.

SERT

- [Serotonin Transporter Gene](#)

Sertraline

- [Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors \(SSRIs\)](#)

Serum

Briain O. Hartaigh
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Antiserum](#); [Sera](#)

Definition

Serum is blood plasma with the coagulatory proteins removed. It is a clear, pale-yellow, thin, and sticky fluid that moistens the surface of serous

membranes or that is secreted by such membranes when they become inflamed. In blood, serum is obtained after coagulation, upon separating whole blood into its solid and liquid components. This is achieved whereby blood is drawn from the subject and is allowed to naturally form a blood clot. After blood is allowed to clot and stand, a centrifuge is used to extract the red blood cells and the blood clot, which contains platelets and fibrinogens. In practice, blood serum is used in numerous diagnostic tests as well as blood typing.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Antibodies](#)
- ▶ [Antigens](#)

References and Further Reading

Abbas, A. K., & Lichtman, A. H. (2004). *Basic immunology: Functions and disorders of the immune system* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

Service Attendance

- ▶ [Religious Ritual](#)

Sex

- ▶ [Sexual Behavior](#)

Sex Hormones

- ▶ [Estrogen](#)

Sexual Activity

- ▶ [Sexual Behavior](#)

Sexual Behavior

Jennifer L. Brown

Department of Behavioral Sciences and Health Education, Emory University School of Public Health, Atlanta, GA, USA

Synonyms

[Sex](#); [Sexual activity](#)

Definition

There is a diverse array of activities that can be classified as sexual behavior: masturbation, oral-genital stimulation (oral sex), penile-vaginal intercourse (vaginal sex), and anal stimulation or anal intercourse. Sexual behaviors may also include activities to arouse the sexual interest of others or attract partners. Individuals engage in sexual behaviors for a variety of reasons, differ in their acceptability based on societal norms, and change across the lifespan.

Description

What is Sexual Behavior: Types of Sexual Behaviors

Sexual behavior includes a wide variety of activities individuals engage in to express their sexuality (Crooks and Baur 2008). Abstinence and celibacy are terms used for individuals who do not engage in certain or any sexual behaviors. Kissing and touching are sexual behaviors that stimulate the erogenous zones of one's partner. Masturbation is a sexual behavior referring to stimulation of one's genitals to create sexual pleasure. Individuals may also engage in oral stimulation of a partner's genitals; terms used to describe oral-genital stimulation include: oral sex (referring broadly to oral-genital stimulation), cunnilingus (oral stimulation of the vulva), and fellatio (oral stimulation of the penis). Anal stimulation includes either touching around the anus or penile insertion in the anus (often referred to as anal sex). Penile-vaginal intercourse

involves insertion of the penis into a female's vagina; this behavior too has a variety of other synonymous terms (e.g., vaginal sex, coitus). The frequency that these and other sexual behaviors are engaged in has enormous individual variability and may differ based upon many factors (e.g., social acceptability, age).

Sexual Behavior: The Role of Societal Norms

Societal norms for acceptable sexual behaviors differ across cultures. Paraphilia refers to less common sexual behaviors within a given society or culture; an example of such behavior is a fetish. In some cultures, the nature of the relationship affects which behaviors are deemed acceptable. For instance, sexual behavior may be deemed appropriate only within the context of marriage. Similarly, societal perspectives on sexual orientation may influence whether sexual behaviors are viewed as socially acceptable.

Reasons for Sexual Behavior Engagement

Individuals engage in sexual behaviors for a multitude of reasons. Sexual behavior may be engaged in to experience sexual pleasure, sexual arousal, or orgasm. Procreation or a desire for children may motivate sexual behavior. Sexual behaviors may also be used to earn money or acquire other goods or services; prostitution refers to the exchange of a sexual behavior for monetary or other compensation. Additionally, pornography may motivate engagement in sexual behaviors. Unfortunately, sexual behaviors also occur in nonconsensual or coerced contexts (e.g., rape) and in the form of abuse (e.g., child sexual abuse) or sexual exploitation (e.g., pedophilia). Sexual behavior engagement may also have unintended consequences (e.g., unplanned pregnancy) or pose health risks associated with the acquisition of sexually transmitted diseases, including human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).

Developmental Perspectives on Sexual Behavior Engagement

Engagement in sexual activity changes across one's lifespan, and there is considerable variation

in sexual development (Crooks and Baur 2008). During childhood, sexual behaviors may include self-stimulation of the genitals or engagement in play that may be viewed as sexual in nature (e.g., "playing doctor" with a peer). Puberty typically occurs during adolescence and results in dramatic physical changes including the development of secondary sex characteristics. Adolescence is typically linked to increases in sexual activity, both self-stimulation behaviors and sexual behavior with partners. During adulthood, and as people age, there is considerable individual variation of sexual behavior engagement.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Condom Use](#)
- ▶ [HIV Infection](#)
- ▶ [HIV Prevention](#)
- ▶ [Sexual Functioning](#)
- ▶ [Sexual Hookup](#)
- ▶ [Sexual Risk Behavior](#)

References and Readings

- Crooks, R., & Baur, K. (2008). *Our sexuality* (10th ed.). Pacific Grove: Thomson.

Sexual Dysfunction

- ▶ [Sexual Functioning](#)

Sexual Functioning

Robyn Fielder
Center for Health and Behavior, Syracuse
University, Syracuse, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Sexual dysfunction](#)

Definition

Sexual functioning is characterized by absence of difficulty moving through the stages of sexual desire, arousal, and orgasm, as well as subjective satisfaction with the frequency and outcome of individual and partnered sexual behavior.

Description

Sexual functioning is an important aspect of quality of life. Our understanding of sexual functioning is influenced by not only the current state of medical knowledge but also the social values upheld in our culture. Healthy sexual functioning is characterized by a lack of pain or discomfort during sexual activity and a lack of physiological difficulty moving through the three-phase sexual response cycle of desire, arousal, and orgasm. In addition, sexual functioning is indicated by subjective feelings of satisfaction with the frequency of sexual desire and sexual behavior, as well as subjective pleasure during individual and partnered sexual activity.

Kaplan's three-phase model is the basis for current models of healthy sexual response. The desire phase consists of sexual fantasies and desire to engage in sexual behavior. The arousal phase involves subjective feelings of pleasure along with physiological changes conducive to sexual intercourse. Males experience penile tumescence and erection, and females experience pelvic vasocongestion and vaginal lubrication. The orgasm phase consists of peak feelings of sexual pleasure and a release of sexual tension. Males ejaculate semen, whereas females experience contractions of the outer vaginal wall; additionally, in both males and females, the anal sphincter contracts. Individuals may experience physiological and/or psychological difficulties at any or all of the three phases of sexual response. A resolution period, characterized by relaxation and, for males, a refractory period, follows orgasm.

Etiology of Sexual Dysfunction

The etiology of sexual problems is often a complex combination of biological/medical, psychological, and social factors. For example, the sexual dysfunction may be secondary to a chronic health condition or psychotropic medication. In other cases, performance anxiety, low mood, or previous traumatic experiences may impair sexual functioning. Moreover, conflicts within a relationship as well as within the larger sociocultural context may affect an individual's sexual functioning. Due to the variety of potential predisposing, precipitating, and maintaining factors, clinicians are encouraged to take a biopsychosocial approach to assessment and treatment of problems in sexual functioning.

Sexual Dysfunction Disorders

Consistent with the medical model of disease, most research and scholarship focuses on sexual dysfunction rather than healthy sexual functioning. The American Psychiatric Association's *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (2000) describes nine main disorders of sexual dysfunction, which are grouped into four categories: desire, arousal, orgasm, and pain. All nine disorders share some common diagnostic criteria: the dysfunction is persistent and recurrent; the dysfunction is not substance-induced, due to a general medical condition, or part of another Axis I mental disorder; and the dysfunction causes clinically significant distress or interpersonal difficulty. Sexual dysfunctions are also classified according to their onset (lifelong or acquired), context (generalized or situational), and etiology (due to psychological factors or due to combined psychological and medical factors). Additional diagnostic options include sexual dysfunction due to a general medical condition, substance-induced sexual dysfunction, and sexual dysfunction not otherwise specified.

Desire disorders are characterized by lack of interest in sex, absence of sexual fantasies and sexual behavior, or fear of sexual contact. In hypoactive sexual desire disorder, there is a low level of sexual fantasy and desire for sex. In

sexual aversion disorder, genital sexual contact is feared and actively avoided.

Arousal disorders are characterized by difficulty attaining or maintaining sexual arousal. Male erectile disorder is the most researched type of sexual dysfunction and receives the most media attention, particularly since the advent of Sildenafil (Viagra) in 1998. Erectile dysfunction is the inability to maintain an erection adequate for sexual penetration until completion of sexual activity. Female sexual arousal disorder is the inability to attain or maintain vaginal lubrication until completion of sexual activity.

Orgasm disorders are characterized by delay in or absence of orgasm on one extreme, or, on the other extreme, by occurrence of orgasm before the individual wants. In female orgasmic disorder and male orgasmic disorder, orgasm is delayed or absent despite normal sexual arousal and sufficient sexual stimulation. Premature ejaculation describes the occurrence of ejaculation with minimal stimulation before, upon, or soon after penetration and before the individual wants to orgasm.

Sexual pain disorders are characterized by genital pain that is not due to a general medical condition. In dyspareunia, which affects both males and females, genital pain occurs during sex. In vaginismus, involuntary muscle spasms of the vagina prevent penetration or may cause pain if it is attempted.

Prevalence of Sexual Dysfunction

Epidemiological surveys suggest problems with sexual functioning are common among the general population. For example, prevalence rates of premature ejaculation, erectile dysfunction, and female orgasmic disorder are 5%, 5%, and 10%, respectively, among community samples (Wincze and Carey 2001). Symptoms that do not meet full diagnostic criteria for a sexual dysfunction disorder are likely much more common. Patients struggling with sexual health problems may be reluctant to seek medical consultation due to embarrassment or privacy concerns. Many health care providers are also uncomfortable discussing

sexuality, so patients' sex-related questions and concerns may be neglected in clinical settings.

Assessment of Sexual Functioning

Clinicians are advised to employ multimethod assessment of sexual functioning by including medical, psychosocial, and psychophysiological components. All three perspectives provide valuable information that aids in diagnosing sexual dysfunction, hypothesizing the etiology of the problem, and developing an appropriate treatment plan.

A medical evaluation is an essential piece of the sexual functioning assessment. A general physical examination allows for biological causes (e.g., general medical conditions, such as diabetes or cancer, as well as other vascular, neurologic, or hormonal conditions) to be ruled out. A gynecological or urological exam ensures no anatomical complications. Physical symptoms, such as bleeding or pain, can also be addressed. Medical providers should attend to any notable medical history (e.g., surgeries) as well as any prescription medications or substance use that may affect sexual functioning.

For the psychosocial evaluation, an interview is essential to learn about the onset, frequency, intensity, and duration of the presenting complaint(s). In addition, clinicians should assess pertinent areas including family history, adolescence, significant relationships in adulthood, sexual history, and sexual abuse or trauma. Although an individual patient may present with sexual complaints, difficulties with sexual functioning are often better understood in the context of the individual's sexual relationship. In many cases (e.g., when working with a patient who is married or in a committed relationship), involving the patient's sexual partner in the psychosocial evaluation (with the patient's permission) facilitates a better resolution. It is often advisable to interview the patient's sexual partner separately to find out more about the presenting complaint. A joint interview with the patient and his or her partner also provides additional insight into the couple's

interaction style, relationship quality, and non-sex-related problems that may cause interpersonal tension. For some patients, self-administered questionnaires may be used to supplement the psychosocial interview. Questionnaires may provide an easier method whereby to disclose sensitive information compared to a face-to-face interview.

The third potential component of the evaluation is psychophysiological assessment. Depending on the presenting complaint, psychophysiological measures can be quite helpful in differential diagnosis. For example, nocturnal penile tumescence is the gold standard for differential diagnosis for male patients with erectile dysfunction. Inability to obtain erections during sleep indicates a medical cause, whereas ability to maintain erections during sleep suggests a psychosocial cause.

Treatment of Sexual Dysfunction

Often the first therapeutic intervention occurs during the comprehensive assessment. During the psychosocial and medical evaluations, clinicians normalize the patient's problem, provide information, and correct misunderstandings. Formal treatment plans will depend on the presumed cause of the sexual dysfunction. Medical treatments include options such as pharmacotherapy (e.g., Viagra for erectile dysfunction), gels and creams (e.g., lubricating gels to compensate for problems with female arousal), hormone replacement therapy (e.g., testosterone to increase sexual desire), and surgery (e.g., penile implants to treat organic erectile dysfunction). Psychological treatments include psychoeducation about healthy sexual functioning, behaviorally focused sex therapy with the patient or the patient and his or her partner (e.g., using the stop-start technique to treat premature ejaculation), interpersonally focused couples therapy with the patient and his or her partner (e.g., working on trust or communication), or more traditional individual therapy with the patient (e.g., treating mood, anxiety, or trauma symptoms).

Cross-References

► Sexual Behavior

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed., text revision). Washington, DC: Author.
- Balon, R., & Segraves, R. T. (Eds.). (2005). *Handbook of sexual dysfunction* (Medical psychiatry series, Vol. 30). Boca Raton: Taylor & Francis.
- Balon, R., & Segraves, R. T. (Eds.). (2009). *Clinical manual of sexual disorders*. Arlington: American Psychiatric Publishing.
- Carey, M. P., & Gordon, C. M. (1995). Sexual dysfunction among heterosexual adults: Description, epidemiology, assessment, and treatment. In L. Diamant & R. McAnulty (Eds.), *The psychology of sexual orientation, behavior, and identity: A handbook* (pp. 165–196). Westport: Greenwood.
- Fagan, P. J. (2004). *Sexual disorders: Perspectives on diagnosis and treatment*. Baltimore: The Johns Hopkins University Press.
- IsHak, W. W. (Ed.). (2008). *The guidebook of sexual medicine*. Beverly Hills: A & W Publishing.
- Maurice, W. L. (1999). *Sexual medicine in primary care*. St. Louis: Mosby.
- Nusbaum, M., & Rosenfeld, J. A. (2005). *Sexual health across the lifecycle: A practical guide for clinicians*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Rowland, D. L., & Incrocci, L. (Eds.). (2008). *Handbook of sexual and gender identity disorders*. Hoboken: Wiley.
- Wincze, J. P., & Carey, M. P. (2001). *Sexual dysfunction: Guide for assessment and treatment* (2nd ed.). New York: Guilford.

Sexual Hookup

Robyn Fielder
Center for Health and Behavior, Syracuse
University, Syracuse, NY, USA

Synonyms

Casual sex; Hooking up

Definition

A sexual hookup is a sexual interaction between partners who are not dating or in a committed romantic relationship. There is no universal definition of sexual hookups, but qualitative research has begun to converge on the most common interpretation of hookup, which has three main components. First, hookups may involve a range of sexual behaviors, from kissing to sex. Kissing and sexual touching occur more frequently, but oral and vaginal sex occur during a significant minority of hookups. Anal sex during a hookup is rare. The variety of sexual behaviors that can occur during hookups causes ambiguity. From a research or public health perspective, behavioral specificity is needed to distinguish among different levels of sexual risk behavior. Condom use is rare during oral sex hookups, suggesting a potential risk for sexually transmitted diseases.

Second, hookup partners are not dating or in a committed romantic relationship. They may be friends, acquaintances, or strangers, or they may have been in a romantic relationship in the past. The most common connection between partners is friendship. Third, hookups do not signify an impending romantic commitment, so partners typically do not expect a relationship to result from the encounter. Instead, hookups are expected to serve a utilitarian function of sexual pleasure. However, individuals may desire a relationship with their hookup partner, and some engage in hookups with the hope that a relationship will eventually develop. Besides these three main criteria, hookups are also understood in terms of what they lack (emotional attachment and commitment). Emerging adults' descriptions of typical hookups are highly consistent, even between those who have and have not hooked up.

Several biomedical, sociocultural, and college environment changes occurring over the past 50 years have contributed to emergence of the hookup culture. Notably, emerging adults increasingly choose to postpone serious committed relationships to focus on self-development. Hookups offer a convenient way to obtain sexual intimacy without the commitment or time investment required by a relationship. Accordingly, hooking up has become very common among adolescents

and emerging adults. A minority of middle and high school students and the majority of college students report hookup experience. Hooking up has replaced traditional dating as the main way to explore relationships and sexual behavior on college campuses. Hookup behavior among similarly aged noncollege attending youth is rarely studied.

Research has investigated several characteristics of sexual hookups. Hookups frequently co-occur with alcohol use, and alcohol use is a strong predictor of hookup behavior. Hookups are often spontaneous, but some individuals plan to hook up (either with a particular partner or with anyone). A variety of sexual, emotional, and social motives may lead individuals to hook up, such as sexual desire, intoxication, excitement, and desire to feel attractive. Some hookup partners interact only once, but some hook up multiple times, which is sometimes known as "friends with benefits." Hookups are also related to casual sex, as both lack emotional attachment. The main differences are the greater variety of sexual behaviors and partner types involved in hookups compared to casual sex and the extent to which hooking up has become a normative experience for youth.

Cross-References

- [Condom Use](#)
- [Sexual Behavior](#)
- [Sexual Risk Behavior](#)

References and Readings

- Bogle, K. A. (2008). *Hooking up: Sex, dating, and relationships on campus*. New York: New York University Press.
- Owen, J. J., Rhoades, G. K., Stanley, S. M., & Fincham, F. D. (2010). "Hooking up" among college students: Demographic and psychosocial correlates. *Archives of Sexual Behavior*, 39, 653–663.
- Stinson, R. D. (2010). Hooking up in young adulthood: A review of factors influencing the sexual behavior of college students. *Journal of College Student Psychotherapy*, 24, 98–115.

Sexual Maturation

- [Puberty](#)

Sexual Orientation

Jason W. Mitchell

Center for AIDS Intervention Research, Medical
College of Wisconsin, Milwaukee, WI, USA

Definition

Sexual orientation is the sexual attraction, emotional, and/or romantic state that a person endures toward women, men, or both sexes. Sexual orientation also pertains to a person's sense of identity that is tied to these attractions, behaviors, and membership into a community with similar individuals (American Psychological Association [APA] 2011). Therefore, sexual orientation is the compilation of a person's sexual behavior and sense of sexual identity.

These two core components of sexual orientation are developed across a person's life span, yet many believe it to be an innate and fixed state (APA 2011). Nonetheless, an individual's sexual orientation is often characterized with a label, such as heterosexuality, homosexuality, or bisexuality. Sometimes asexuality is also considered as a separate entity of sexual orientation. Those labels normally, but not always, incorporate and include the individuals' sexual identity and sexual behavior of her or his sexual orientation. Because sexuality may be viewed as a fluid construct, an individual's sexual behavior may change over time while maintaining the same sexual identity. An example of this phenomenon would be when a heterosexual male experiments sexually with another male. Another exception to this generalization is when a self-identified lesbian woman has sex with a male. As such, these categories exist on a continuum of sexuality.

Scientists and psychologists have created measures of sexual orientation to better assess an individuals' sexuality. Typically, these measures will include a range of "solely heterosexual" to "solely homosexual" with "bisexuality" falling somewhere in between these two categories and "asexuality" not being included. A variety of

measurements exist to assess sexual orientation. However, an individual's sexual orientation may change over time, and as such, measuring this construct at a single point in time (i.e., cross-sectional study) does have its limitations. Nonetheless, more studies are including a variety of measures that assess the sexual behavior and identity dimensions of sexual orientation.

The most well-recognized measurement of sexual orientation for males and females is the Kinsey scale (Kinsey et al. 1948, 1953). The scale ranges from 0 for "exclusively heterosexual with no homosexual" to 6 for "exclusively homosexual." The original scale does not include an "asexual" rating or category nor does it take into account any changes of sexual orientation over a period of time. Since then, other measurements of sexual orientation have been created and reviewed. For more information and references, please refer to the further readings section.

Cross-References

► [Sexual Behavior](#)

References and Readings

- American Psychological Association. (2011). *Sexual orientation and homosexuality*. Retrieved 4 Feb 2011 from <http://www.apa.org/topics/sexuality/orientation.aspx>
- Chung, Y. B., & Katayama, M. (1996). Assessment of sexual orientation in lesbian/gay/bisexual studies. *Journal of Homosexuality*, 30(4), 49–62.
- Kinsey, A., Pomeroy, W., & Martin, C. (1948). *Sexual behavior in the human male*. Philadelphia: Saunders. ISBN 978-0253334121.
- Kinsey, A., Pomeroy, W., Martin, C., & Gebhard, P. (1953). *Sexual behavior in the human female*. Philadelphia: Saunders. ISBN 978-0253334114.
- Sell, R. L. (1996). The self assessment of sexual orientation: Background and scoring. *Journal of Gay, Lesbian, and Bisexual Identity*, 1(4), 295–310.

Sexual Risk

► [Sexual Risk Behavior](#)

Sexual Risk Behavior

Theresa Senn
Center for Health and Behavior, Syracuse
University, Syracuse, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Sexual risk](#); [Unprotected sex](#)

Definition

Sexual risk behavior is any sexual behavior (typically condom-unprotected oral, vaginal, or anal intercourse) that puts one at risk for an adverse health outcome. Adverse health outcomes may include an unwanted pregnancy or contracting a sexually transmitted disease (STD), including human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).

Vaginal intercourse is the only sexual behavior that puts an individual at risk for unwanted pregnancy. There are many methods for reducing the risk of unwanted pregnancy, including hormonal contraceptives, correct and consistent condom use, surgical methods such as a vasectomy or tubal ligation, and other methods such as an intra-uterine device or a diaphragm.

Sexual behavior falls on a continuum from no risk to low risk to high risk for contracting an STD. The risk level of the sexual behavior depends on the STD under consideration. For example, with respect to HIV, masturbation incurs virtually no risk, oral sex is low risk, and vaginal and anal intercourse are high-risk behaviors. However, oral sex is a high-risk behavior for contracting some STDs such as gonorrhea.

The risk level of a particular sexual behavior also depends on with whom the behavior occurs. Any sexual behavior that occurs when an individual is alone is generally no risk because the individual is not at risk of contracting an STD from him- or herself. In addition, any sexual behavior that occurs within the context of a mutually

monogamous relationship, in which both individuals are not infected with any STDs (especially when confirmed by testing), confers no risk of contracting an STD for either individual. Sexual behavior puts an individual at risk for contracting an STD only when his or her sexual partner is infected with an STD.

The risk of a particular sexual behavior also depends on the individual's sexual network. Sexual risk increases with an increasing number of sexual partners, and/or an increasing number of a sex partner's partners, because there is an increasing likelihood that one of these individuals is infected with an STD. In other words, the larger the sexual network, the greater the sexual risk.

STDs can have serious consequences, including epididymitis in men, pelvic inflammatory disease and pregnancy complications in women, infertility, and cancer (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010d). In addition, the presence of another STD facilitates the transmission of HIV through sexual exposure (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2007). HIV weakens the immune system, ultimately leading to death when the immune system is so weakened it is unable to fight off infections or cancers (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010a). STDs can also have negative relationship and social consequences due to the stigma surrounding some STDs.

The majority of STDs are either bacterial or viral (Holmes et al. 2008). In general, bacterial STDs can be cured with antibiotics, although some STDs are becoming resistant to antibiotics that had previously successfully treated the disease (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010b). Viral STDs have no cure, although there are medications that can help to manage outbreaks or viral load. STDs may sometimes be cleared from the body with no treatment (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010c).

Condoms are an effective way to reduce the risk of contracting an STD when they are used consistently and correctly. Although the value of condoms for the prevention of some STDs that can be transmitted through genital-to-genital

contact, such as human papillomavirus and herpes simplex virus, has been debated, recent evidence suggests that condoms reduce the risk of STD infection from these pathogens as well (Holmes et al. 2008).

Numerous factors influence sexual risk behavior. These factors can be broadly categorized into individual-level factors, partner- or relationship-level factors, and social or structural factors. Researchers have typically focused on only one level of influence at a time, although the integration of individual-level, partner or relationship-level, and social or structural factors has recently been attempted in the Network-Individual-Resource Model for HIV prevention (Johnson et al. 2010).

The relation between individual-level factors and sexual risk behavior has been extensively researched. Numerous health behavior theories, including the health belief model, social-cognitive theory, the theory of planned behavior, and the information-motivation-behavioral skills model, have been used to explain why individuals engage in sexual risk behavior (Fisher and Fisher 2000). Constructs from these models such as perceived risk, benefits of and barriers to risk reduction, self-efficacy, social norms, attitudes, intentions, and skills have been associated with sexual risk behavior (Fisher and Fisher 2000).

Because sexual risk behavior usually occurs within a dyad, researchers have begun to consider partnership-level influences on sexual behavior. At the partnership level, variables such as intimate partner violence and the balance of power in a relationship may influence sexual risk behavior. There are few existing theories that incorporate partner influences on sexual risk behavior; one exception is a framework recently proposed by Karney et al. (2010), which posits that sexual risk behavior is influenced by the ability to communicate about and coordinate sexual behavior, which, in turn, is influenced by the individual beliefs and motivations of each partner as well as by the nature of the relationship.

Although it is commonly accepted that social and structural factors influence sexual risk

behavior, because of the complexity and breadth of these factors, it is difficult to develop a general model that predicts how these factors influence sexual risk behavior. Several broad frameworks have been suggested that specify different levels of structural influence (Gupta et al. 2008). Structural factors that influence sexual risk behavior vary depending on the social, cultural, and economic conditions faced by the population under study. Some structural factors associated with sexual risk behavior include gender inequality and poverty (Gupta et al. 2008). In the United States, one factor that has received considerable recent attention is the male-to-female ratio. Social and structural factors such as the high mortality rate among African American males due to disease and violence, high rate of incarceration among African American males, and high rates of poverty and unemployment among African American males (making them less desirable as potential husbands) have led to an unbalanced ratio of available African American men to women. This shortage of men relative to women may reduce women's power in relationships and their ability to insist on monogamy, ultimately leading to high rates of partner concurrency (Adimora and Schoenbach 2002).

Behavioral medicine researchers and practitioners have played an important role in the design and evaluation of interventions to reduce sexual risk behavior. Numerous interventions have been developed to target the individual-level determinants of sexual risk behavior. These interventions, particularly those that include motivational and skills elements, are effective in reducing sexual risk behavior (Crepaz et al. 2007, 2009; Johnson et al. 2006). Few interventions have been developed to target the partnership-level determinants of sexual risk behavior (Karney et al. 2010); this is an important area for future research. Although there are challenges to implementing and evaluating structural interventions, some programs, such as microcredit programs for women and policies requiring condoms be used for sex work, have successfully reduced sexual risk behavior in some settings (Gupta et al. 2008).

Additional research on structural-level sexual risk reduction interventions is needed, as is research on interventions that target multiple levels of influence.

References and Readings

- Adimora, A. A., & Schoenbach, V. J. (2002). Contextual factors and the black-white disparity in heterosexual HIV transmission. *Epidemiology*, *13*, 707–712.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2007). *CDC fact sheet: The role of STD prevention and treatment in HIV prevention*. Retrieved 6 Jan 2011 from <http://cdc.gov/std/HIV/stds-and-hiv-fact-sheet.pdf>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010a). *Basic information about HIV and AIDS*. Retrieved 6 Jan 2011 from <http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/topics/basic/index.htm>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010b). *CDC fact sheet: Basic information about antibiotic-resistant gonorrhea (ARG)*. Retrieved 6 Jan 2011 from <http://cdc.gov/std/Gonorrhea/arg/basic.htm>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010c). *CDC fact sheet: Genital HPV*. Retrieved 6 Jan 2011 from <http://cdc.gov/std/hpv/hpv-fact-sheet-press.pdf>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010d). *CDC fact sheets: Sexually transmitted diseases*. Retrieved 6 Jan 2011 from http://cdc.gov/std/healthcomm/fact_sheets.htm
- Crepaz, N., Horn, A. K., Rama, S. M., Griffin, T., Deluca, J. B., Mullins, M. M., et al. (2007). The efficacy of behavioral interventions in reducing HIV risk sex behaviors and incident sexually transmitted disease in Black and Hispanic sexually transmitted disease clinic patients in the United States: A meta-analytic review. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, *34*, 319–332.
- Crepaz, N., Marshall, K. J., Aupont, L. W., Jacobs, E. D., Mizuno, Y., Kay, L. S., et al. (2009). The efficacy of HIV/STI behavioral interventions for African American females in the United States: A meta-analysis. *American Journal of Public Health*, *99*, 2069–2078.
- Fisher, J. D., & Fisher, W. A. (2000). Theoretical approaches to individual-level change in HIV risk behavior. In J. L. Peterson & R. J. DiClemente (Eds.), *Handbook of HIV prevention* (pp. 3–55). New York: Kluwer Academic/Plenum.
- Gupta, G. R., Parkhurst, J. O., Ogden, J. A., Aggleton, P., & Mahal, A. (2008). Structural approaches to HIV prevention. *The Lancet*, *372*, 764–775.
- Holmes, K. K., Sparling, P. F., Stamm, W. E., Piot, P., Wasserheit, J. N., et al. (2008). Introduction and overview. In K. K. Holmes, P. F. Sparling, W. E. Stamm, P. Piot, J. N. Wasserheit, L. Corey, et al. (Eds.), *Sexually transmitted diseases* (4th ed., pp. xvii–xxv). New York: McGraw Hill.
- Johnson, B. T., Carey, M. P., Chaudoir, S. R., & Reid, A. E. (2006). Sexual risk reduction for persons living with HIV: Research synthesis of randomized controlled trials, 1993 to 2004. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*, *41*, 642–650.
- Johnson, B. T., Redding, C. A., DiClemente, R. J., Mustanski, B. S., Dodge, B., Sheeran, P., et al. (2010). A network-individual-resource model for HIV prevention. *AIDS and Behavior*, *14*, S204–S221.
- Karney, B. R., Hops, H., Redding, C. A., Reis, H. T., Rothman, A. J., & Simpson, J. A. (2010). A framework for incorporating dyads in models of HIV-prevention. *AIDS and Behavior*, *14*, S189–S203.

Sexuality and Stress

Hanna M. Mües¹ and Urs M. Nater²

¹Department of Clinical and Health Psychology, Faculty of Psychology, University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria

²Department of Psychology, University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria

Introduction

According to many therapy manuals and self-help guides on sexuality, stress is the number one factor inhibiting sexual desire. However, no sufficient empirical evidence can be found to support this claim. Since both sexuality and stress are important factors of everyday life and contribute substantially to health (e.g., McEwen 1998; World Health Organization [WHO] 2006), this entry attempts to provide a summary of the current state of knowledge regarding how sexuality and stress might be intertwined.

Sexuality

Human sexuality plays a central role throughout life (WHO 2006) and “encompasses sex, gender identities and roles, sexual orientation, eroticism, pleasure, intimacy and reproduction” (WHO 2006, p. 5). There are three key components of sexual experience and behavior, based on the sexual response cycle (Masters and Johnson 1966), modified by Kaplan (1979), and repeatedly reported in the scientific literature: sexual desire, sexual arousal, and orgasm. According to Bancroft, sexual desire

and arousal are “two ‘windows’ into the complexity of sexual arousal [...], one focusing on the incentive motivation component (desire) and the other on the arousal component (excitement)” (2009, p. 65). An orgasm, often seen as the goal of sexual activity, is associated with pleasure and reduced tension (Bancroft 2009). The importance of these factors is also evident in the division of sexual dysfunctions presented in the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-5; American Psychiatric Association 2013).

Among other factors, sexuality is influenced by psychological, social, and biological factors (WHO 2006) such as reproductive hormones, which play an essential role in human sexual development, sexual function, and sexual experience and behavior (Bancroft 2009). The main reproductive hormones include steroid (e.g., testosterone, estradiol) and peptide hormones (e.g., vasopressin, oxytocin). Androgens, such as testosterone, and estrogens, such as estradiol, are produced by the testes as well as the ovaries and play an important role for sexuality in both men and women. Testosterone seems to be especially relevant for sexual desire and arousal in both men and women (Bancroft 2009).

Given that sexuality plays such an essential role throughout life, maintaining sexual health is highly important. Sexual health can be defined as “a state of physical, emotional, mental and social well-being in relation to sexuality; it is not merely the absence of disease, dysfunction or infirmity” (WHO 2006, p. 5). It “requires a positive and respectful approach to sexuality and sexual relationships, as well as the possibility of having pleasurable and safe sexual experiences, free of coercion, discrimination and violence” (WHO 2006, p. 5).

A sexual dysfunction, by contrast, is characterized as a sexual problem that occurs recurrently or in the majority of sexual contacts, leads to significant distress, lasts for at least half a year and cannot directly be explained by another mental disorder, severe relationship distress, or other significant stressors, a disease, or substance or medication intake (American Psychiatric Association 2013). The most common sexual dysfunctions have been found to involve lack of sexual desire (prevalence rates between 10% and 61.5%) and

lack of sexual arousal (prevalence rates between 12% and 49%) in women, and premature ejaculation (prevalence rates between 1% and 10%) and erectile dysfunction (prevalence rates between 1% and 10% for individuals younger than 40 years old) in men (McCabe et al. 2016).

Stress

Acute stress can be caused by potential stressors such as major life events or situations necessitating a “fight or flight” response, while chronic stress can be caused by potential stressors such as daily hassles. Whether an individual perceives a potential stressor as a stressor is determined by the individual’s perception of the situation as well as the individual’s general health (McEwen 1998). Specifically, according to the transactional model of stress and coping, in a step called “primary appraisal”, a situation is evaluated as irrelevant, positive, or, as in the case of a stressor, dangerous (Lazarus and Folkman 1984). In a concomitant step called “secondary appraisal”, available resources and coping strategies are analyzed. Depending on “primary appraisal” and “secondary appraisal”, a stressful situation can be categorized as harm or loss, a threat or a challenge by an individual and can thus differ between individuals (Lazarus and Folkman 1984). Acute and chronic stress can both have negative long-term consequences (McEwen 1998).

The Association between Sexuality and Stress

Sexual experience and behavior seems to be negatively associated with stress (e.g., Abedi et al. 2015), although there is some contrasting evidence regarding sexual desire, which can be seen as a component of sexual experience and behavior (Morokoff and Gilliland 1993; Raisanen et al. 2018).

Results from cross-sectional studies: Specifically, stress has been negatively associated with the frequency of sexual intercourse in women (Abedi et al. 2015). Furthermore, while one study reported that stress was negatively associated with sexual desire in women (Abedi et al. 2015), another

study found a positive association between stress and sexual desire in both women and men (Morokoff and Gilliland 1993). In women, in the study by Abedi et al. (2015), sexual arousal and lubrication were negatively associated with stress, while Hamilton and Meston (2013) also found a negative association between genital arousal and levels of stress as well as cortisol levels, but did not find a significant association between psychological arousal and stress. Moreover, the study by Abedi et al. (2015) also reported a negative association between stress and satisfaction as well as stress and orgasm, and a positive association between stress and sexual pain in women.

Results from experiments inducing stress: One of the few experimental studies to have investigated the association of sexual experience and behavior with stress found that receiving a sexual reward in the form of viewing mildly erotic images compared to viewing neutral images before participating in the Trier Social Stress Test (TSST) positively affected stress in men: Participants in the reward condition showed significantly lower cortisol reactivity during the TSST compared to participants in the neutral condition (Creswell et al. 2013).

Results from longitudinal studies: In addition, some studies have examined the link between sexual experience and behavior and stress longitudinally. Specifically, stress was negatively associated with sexual desire for partnered sexual activity in women but positively associated with sexual desire for partnered sexual activity in men, and not associated with sexual desire for non-partnered sexual activity in men or women (Raisanen et al. 2018). Furthermore, the authors found that testosterone was negatively associated with sexual desire for partnered sexual activity in women and with sexual desire for non-partnered sexual activity in women with lower levels of stress, but positively associated with sexual desire for non-partnered sexual activity in women with high levels of stress. In men, testosterone was not associated with sexual desire for partnered sexual activity, but positively associated with sexual desire for non-partnered sexual activity. Stress moderated the association between testosterone and sexual desire for non-partnered sexual activity

but not between testosterone and sexual desire for partnered sexual activity (Raisanen et al. 2018). In addition, research has shown a negative association of same-day stress with occurrence of sexual intercourse, genital stimulation, and orgasm with and without the partner in women (Burleson et al. 2007). Stress was also negatively associated with frequency of sexual activity, satisfaction, and relationship satisfaction in women (Bodenmann et al. 2010). Contrasting these findings, Hall, Kusunoki, Gatny, and Barber found that women with moderate to severe stress symptoms showed a significantly higher frequency of sexual intercourse (2014). Furthermore, in line with these results, intimacy, including sexual intercourse, was significantly associated with lower levels of daily salivary cortisol (Ditzen et al. 2008). Also, sexual intercourse led to better blood pressure reactions under stress compared to engagement in other or no sexual activities (Brody 2006). In another study, experiencing a stressful day increased the probability of engaging in sexual intercourse the next day, although this probability was higher for men than for women (Ein-Dor and Hirschberger 2012). Furthermore, sexual intercourse on 1 day led to lower levels of stress the next day for both genders. While this link between stress and sexual intercourse was unaffected by relationship satisfaction for women, men with lower relationship satisfaction showed a higher stress relief following sexual intercourse (Ein-Dor and Hirschberger 2012). In addition, physical affection on 1 day predicted lower stress on the following day in women (Burleson et al. 2007). Similarly, genital stimulation and orgasm with a partner predicted lower stress the next day, but only for women with a shorter relationship duration; no such effect was found for women with longer relationship duration. Stress, however, did not significantly affect any of the variables on the following day in this study in women (Burleson et al. 2007).

Outlook

So far, study findings on the link between sexual experience and behavior and stress are not

straightforward. Few studies have investigated this link bidirectionally or longitudinally. Moreover, there is little research investigating this relationship in daily life, thus limiting the ecological validity of previous studies. Additionally, studies comparing the sex-stress link between men and women are scarce. Hence, future research will need to focus on investigating the bidirectional link between sexual experience and behavior and stress in both men and women, ideally in a setting characterized by high ecological validity. Furthermore, while the assessment of stress requires a multidimensional measurement approach (Nater 2018), previous analyses have rarely sampled and included biological stress parameters such as cortisol or alpha-amylase, even though it is widely known that these parameters not only represent the human stress reaction biologically but have also been associated with negative health consequences (e.g., Kudielka and Kirschbaum 2014). Similarly, testosterone has been linked to both sexual desire and arousal (e.g., Bancroft 2009). Thus, future studies should incorporate a comprehensive measurement of biological parameters (e.g., cortisol, alpha-amylase, and testosterone) and thus fulfill the requirements of a multidimensional measurement approach. Finally, to date, no studies have investigated the sex-stress link in the everyday life of patients diagnosed with a sexual dysfunction, even though acquiring knowledge in this area might inform further valuable treatment options. Hence, future research should investigate the association between sexual experience and behavior and stress in individuals with diagnosed sexual dysfunctions such as female sexual interest/arousal disorder, as this is one of the most frequently occurring sexual dysfunctions.

Cross-References

- [Daily Stress](#)
- [Immune Responses to Stress](#)
- [Mental Stress](#)

- [Perceived Stress](#)
- [Perceptions of Stress](#)
- [Psychological Stress](#)
- [Sexual Behavior](#)
- [Sexual Functioning](#)
- [Stress](#)
- [Stress Reactivity](#)
- [Stress Responses](#)
- [Stress, Emotional](#)
- [Stress: Appraisal and Coping](#)
- [Stress-Related Disorders](#)
- [Trier Social Stress Test](#)

References and Further Reading

- Abedi, P., Afrazeh, M., Javadifar, N., & Saki, A. (2015). The relation between stress and sexual function and satisfaction in reproductive-age women in Iran: A cross-sectional study. *Journal of Sex & Marital Therapy*, 41(3), 384–390. <https://doi.org/10.1080/0092623X.2014.915906>.
- American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders: DSM-5* (5th ed.). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Publishing.
- Bancroft, J. (2009). *Human sexuality and its problems* (3rd ed.). Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone.
- Bodenmann, G., Atkins, D. C., Schär, M., & Poffet, V. (2010). The association between daily stress and sexual activity. *Journal of Family Psychology*, 24(3), 271–279. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0019365>.
- Brody, S. (2006). Blood pressure reactivity to stress is better for people who recently had penile-vaginal intercourse than for people who had other or no sexual activity. *Biological Psychology*, 71, 214–222. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopsycho.2005.03.005>.
- Burleson, M. H., Trevathan, W. R., & Todd, M. (2007). In the mood for love or vice versa? Exploring the relations among sexual activity, physical affection, affect, and stress in the daily lives of mid-aged women. *Archives of Sexual Behavior*, 36(3), 357–368. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10508-006-9071-1>.
- Creswell, J. D., Pacilio, L. E., Denson, T. F., & Satyshur, M. (2013). The effect of a primary sexual reward manipulation of cortisol responses to psychosocial stress in men. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 75(4), 397–403. <https://doi.org/10.1097/PSY.0b013e31828c4524>.
- Ditzen, B., Hoppmann, C., & Klumb, P. (2008). Positive couple interactions and daily cortisol: On the stress-protecting role of intimacy. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 70(8), 883–889. <https://doi.org/10.1097/PSY.0b013e318185c4fc>.
- Ein-Dor, T., & Hirschberger, G. (2012). Sexual healing: Daily diary evidence that sex relieves stress for men

- and women in satisfying relationships. *Journal of Social and Personal Relationships*, 29(1), 126–139. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0265407511431185>.
- Hall, K. S., Kusunoki, Y., Gatny, H., & Barber, J. (2014). Stress symptoms and the frequency of sexual intercourse among young women. *Journal of Sexual Medicine*, 11(8), 1982–1990. <https://doi.org/10.1111/jsm.12607>.
- Hamilton, L. D., & Meston, C. M. (2013). Chronic stress and sexual function in women. *Journal of Sexual Medicine*, 10(10), 2443–2454. <https://doi.org/10.1111/jsm.12249>.
- Kaplan, H. S. (1979). *Disorders of sexual desire and other new concepts and techniques in sex therapy*. New York: Brunner/Mazel.
- Kudielka, B. M., & Kirschbaum, C. (2014). Sex differences in HPA axis responses to stress: A review. *Biological Psychology*, 69, 113–132. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopsycho.2004.11.009>.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. Berlin: Springer.
- Masters, W. H., & Johnson, V. E. (1966). *Human sexual response*. Boston: Little, Brown.
- McCabe, M. P., Sharlip, I. D., Lewis, R., Atalla, E., Balon, R., Fisher, A. D., et al. (2016). Incidence and prevalence of sexual dysfunction in women and men: A consensus statement from the fourth international consultation on sexual medicine 2015. *The Journal of Sexual Medicine*, 13(2), 144–152. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jsxm.2015.12.034>.
- McEwen, B. S. (1998). Protective and damaging effects of stress mediators. *New England Journal of Medicine*, 338(3), 171–179. <https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJM199801153380307>.
- Morokoff, P. J., & Gilliland, R. (1993). Stress, sexual functioning, and marital satisfaction. *The Journal of Sex Research*, 30(1), 43–53. <https://doi.org/10.1080/00224499309551677>.
- Nater, U. M. (2018). The multidimensionality of stress and its assessment. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 73, 159–160. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbi.2018.07.018>.
- Raisanen, J. C., Chadwick, S. B., Michalak, N., & van Anders, S. M. (2018). Average associations between sexual desire, testosterone, and stress in women and men over time. *Archives of Sexual Behavior*, 47(6), 1613–1631. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10508-018-1231-6>.
- Stoléru, S., Fonteille, V., Cornélis, C., Joyal, C., & Moulrier, V. (2012). Functional neuroimaging studies of sexual arousal and orgasm in healthy men and women: A review and meta-analysis. *Neuroscience & Biobehavioral Reviews*, 36(6), 1481–1509. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neubiorev.2012.03.006>.
- World Health Organization (WHO). (2006). *Defining sexual health: Report of a technical consultation of sexual health, 28–31 January 2002*. Sexual Health Document Series. Geneva. Retrieved from http://www.who.int/reproductivehealth/publications/sexual_health/defining_sexual_health.pdf

Sexually Transmitted Disease/Infection (STD/STI)

- [AIDS: Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome](#)
- [HIV Infection](#)

Sexually Transmitted Diseases (STDs)

Theresa Senn
Center for Health and Behavior, Syracuse
University, Syracuse, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Sexually transmitted infections](#); [Venereal diseases](#)

Definition

A sexually transmitted disease is a disease that is transmitted through sexual contact (World Health Organization).

Our knowledge of sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) is still evolving. Currently, at least 35 pathogens that can be transmitted sexually have been identified (Holmes et al. 2008). Although some sexually transmissible pathogens can be transmitted through other routes besides sexual contact, generally a disease is classified as an STD when the primary method of transmission in a population is sexual contact (Holmes et al.).

There are five different types of pathogens that can be transmitted sexually: (a) bacteria, such as gonorrhea or chlamydia; (b) viruses, such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), herpes simplex virus, or human papillomavirus (HPV); (c) protozoa, such as trichomoniasis; (d) fungi, such as *Candida albicans* (although the primary mode of transmission for this pathogen is not sexual); and (e) ectoparasites, such as pubic lice (Holmes et al. 2008). Depending on the pathogen, STDs can be transmitted through bodily fluids

(e.g., blood, semen, cervicovaginal fluid), feces, or skin-to-skin contact. Thus, the transmission of an STD usually involves vaginal or anal intercourse, oral sex (including oral-genital contact and oral-anal contact), or genital-to-genital contact.

STD symptoms vary depending on the pathogen involved, as well as the sex of the infected person and the site of infection. Symptoms associated with some of the more common STDs include blisters or ulcers, pain or burning during urination, discharge, abdominal pain, and pain during intercourse. However, many individuals who are infected with an STD do not have any symptoms (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010d). Such “asymptomatic” individuals may unknowingly infect a sexual partner with the STD.

Testing for STDs is generally conducted in medical facilities (although community- and home-based testing protocols are now available). Depending on the STD, testing may involve urethral or cervical swabs, swabs taken from the site of an ulcer, urine testing, blood testing, and clinical examination (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010d). In the United States, some STDs must be reported (by health-care providers) to county, state, or federal health authorities; for example, positive test results for chlamydia, gonorrhea, and syphilis must be reported to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention for disease surveillance and monitoring (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2009).

STDs can have serious consequences, including epididymitis in men, pelvic inflammatory disease and pregnancy complications in women, infertility, and cancer (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010d). In addition, individuals who are co-infected with HIV and another STD are more likely to transmit HIV through sexual exposure, and individuals who are infected with an STD are more likely to acquire HIV through sexual exposure from an HIV-positive partner (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2007). HIV weakens the immune system, ultimately leading to death when the immune system is so weakened it is unable to fight off infections

and cancers (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010a). STDs can also have negative interpersonal and social consequences due to the stigma surrounding some STDs.

The majority of STDs are either bacterial or viral (Holmes et al. 2008). In general, bacterial STDs can be cured with antibiotics, although some STDs are becoming resistant to many classes of antibiotics that had previously successfully treated the disease (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010b). Viral STDs have no cure, although there are medications that can help to manage outbreaks or viral load. STDs such as HPV may sometimes be cleared from the body with no treatment (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2010c).

An individual's likelihood of acquiring an STD is based on his or her sexual behavior and the risk of transmission per sexual act with an infected partner. Sexual behaviors that affect the likelihood of acquiring an STD include the number of sexual partners, the number of unprotected sexual acts, and the types of unprotected sexual acts. The risk of transmission per sexual act depends in part on the pathogen as well as the individual's biology. Different pathogens are associated with different risks of transmission per sexual act. Biological factors associated with transmission risk include the individual's immune response and the mucosal surface area exposed during the sexual act; women, for example, are more likely than men to be infected with an STD through vaginal intercourse because women have a larger mucosal surface area that is exposed during vaginal intercourse, and young women are more likely to acquire an STD because they have an immature cervix. STD risk is also affected by the STD prevalence in an individual's sexual network, which is influenced by the rate of sexual partner change, partner concurrency (i.e., multiple, overlapping sexual partnerships), and degree of disassortative mixing (i.e., sexual partners who are dissimilar in certain characteristics, such as age or sexual activity Garnett 2008).

To date, some types of HPV and some types of hepatitis are the only STDs that can be prevented through vaccination. Other medical strategies are

currently being developed for STD prevention, such as vaginal microbicides and preexposure prophylaxis. STDs can also be prevented through behavioral change. Abstaining from sexual contact is the only certain way to prevent most STDs. However, other behavioral strategies including correct and consistent condom use, engaging in sexual activity only with one partner who is not infected with any STD and who has no other sexual partners, and having fewer sexual partners will reduce the likelihood of acquiring an STD.

Behavioral medicine can play a large role in STD prevention. Behavioral interventions can promote sexual risk reduction behavior, by encouraging individuals to use condoms consistently and correctly for all sexual activity, be in a mutually monogamous sexual relationship with an uninfected partner, or adopt other strategies that will reduce the risk of contracting an STD. Behavioral interventions have been shown to be effective in reducing sexual risk behavior and STDs in a variety of populations (Crepaz et al. 2007, 2009; Johnson et al. 2006). Behavioral medicine can also play a role in encouraging the adoption of biomedical strategies. For example, behavioral medicine strategies could be used to encourage STD and HIV testing, vaccine acceptance, the completion of medications for curable STDs and adherence to medications for viral STDs, and male circumcision, which may reduce the spread of STDs and HIV.

Cross-References

► Sexual Risk Behavior

References and Readings

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2007). *CDC fact sheet: The role of STD prevention and treatment in HIV prevention*. Retrieved 6 Jan 2011 from <http://cdc.gov/std/HIV/stds-and-hiv-fact-sheet.pdf>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2009). *Sexually transmitted disease surveillance, 2008*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services,

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for HIV/AIDS, Viral Hepatitis, STD, and TB Prevention, Division of STD Prevention.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010a). *Basic information about HIV and AIDS*. Retrieved 6 Jan 2011 from <http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/topics/basic/index.html>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010b). *CDC fact sheet: Basic information about antibiotic-resistant gonorrhea (ARG)*. Retrieved 6 Jan 2011 from <http://cdc.gov/std/Gonorrhea/arg/basic.htm>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010c). *CDC fact sheet: Genital HPV*. Retrieved 6 Jan 2011 from <http://cdc.gov/std/hpv/hpv-fact-sheet-press.pdf>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2010d). *CDC fact sheets: Sexually transmitted diseases*. Retrieved 6 Jan 2011 from <http://cdc.gov/std/healthcomm/factsheets.htm>
- Crepaz, N., Horn, A. K., Rama, S. M., Griffin, T., Deluca, J. B., Mullins, M. M., et al. (2007). The efficacy of behavioral interventions in reducing HIV risk sex behaviors and incident sexually transmitted disease in Black and Hispanic sexually transmitted disease clinic patients in the United States: A meta-analytic review. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 34, 319–332.
- Crepaz, N., Marshall, K. J., Aupont, L. W., Jacobs, E. D., Mizuno, Y., Kay, L. S., et al. (2009). The efficacy of HIV/STI behavioral interventions for African American females in the United States: A meta-analysis. *American Journal of Public Health*, 99, 2069–2078.
- Garnett, G. P. (2008). The transmission dynamics of sexually transmitted infections. In K. K. Holmes, P. F. Sparling, W. E. Stamm, P. Piot, J. N. Wasserheit, L. Corey, et al. (Eds.), *Sexually transmitted diseases* (4th ed., pp. 27–40). New York: McGraw Hill.
- Holmes, K. K., Sparling, P. F., Stamm, W. E., Piot, P., Wasserheit, J. N., et al. (2008). Introduction and overview. In K. K. Holmes, P. F. Sparling, W. E. Stamm, P. Piot, J. N. Wasserheit, L. Corey, et al. (Eds.), *Sexually transmitted diseases* (4th ed., pp. xvii–xxv). New York: McGraw Hill.
- Johnson, B. T., Carey, M. P., Chaudoir, S. R., & Reid, A. E. (2006). Sexual risk reduction for persons living with HIV: Research synthesis of randomized controlled trials, 1993 to 2004. *Journal of Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndromes*, 41, 642–650.
- World Health Organization. *Health topics: Sexually transmitted infections*. Retrieved 6 Jan 2011 from http://www.who.int/topics/sexually_transmitted_infections/en/

Sexually Transmitted Infections

► Sexually Transmitted Diseases (STDs)

SF-36

Stephanie Ann Hooker
Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Synonyms

Short form 36

Definition

The SF-36 is a 36-item self-report measure of health-related quality of life. It has eight subscales measuring different domains of health-related quality of life: physical functioning (PF), role-physical (RP), bodily pain (BP), general health (GH), vitality (VT), social functioning (SF), role-emotional (RE), and mental health (MH). Two component scores are derived from the eight subscales: a physical health component score and a mental health component score. The SF-36 also includes a single item that assesses perceived change in health status over the past year. Higher scores on all subscales represent better health and functioning. From its development to 2011, more than 16,000 articles were published using the SF-36. SF-36 is also known as the Short Form 36 Health Survey Questionnaire.

Description

Development

Ware and colleagues (Stewart and Ware 1992; Ware 1988, 1990) developed the SF-36 from the Medical Outcomes Study, a study of the health, well-being, and functioning of randomly selected patients seen by randomly selected physicians and other medical providers in three large metropolitan areas. Items were chosen for the SF-36 because they were items commonly used in other health surveys and the domains were ones that

seemed to be commonly affected by differing health and disease states. After 10 years of use, the SF-36 was revised to address wording and response choice categories. The SF-36 version 2 (SF-36v2) is the current version (Ware et al. 2007).

Health Domain Scales

Physical Functioning (PF). The PF scale is a 10-item measure of physical limitation in a range of activities from vigorous exercise to performing self-care activities.

Role-Physical (RP). The RP scale contains four items and measures limitations in various roles, including work and daily activities.

Bodily Pain (BP). The BP scale has two items that measure body pain intensity and the extent to which pain interferes with daily activities.

General Health (GH). The five-item GH scale measures overall self-rated health.

Vitality (VT). The VT scale has four items that measure vitality, energy level, and fatigue and is meant to be a measure of subjective well-being.

Social Functioning (SF). The SF scale includes two items that measure the impact of physical and mental health on social functioning.

Role-Emotional (RE). The RE scale measures role limitations due to mental health difficulties with three items, including amount of time spent on work or other activities, amount of work accomplished, and the care with which work is performed.

Mental Health (MH). The MH scale has five items that measure anxiety, depression, loss of behavioral/emotional control, and psychological well-being.

Component Summary Scales

Component summaries were developed to reduce the number of scores derived from this measure from 8 to 2. They also have the advantages of having smaller confidence intervals than the health domain scales and limiting floor and ceiling effects. The Physical Component Summary (PCS) combines items from the PF, RP, BP, and GH scales, and the Mental Health Component Summary (MCS) combines items from the VT, SF, RE,

and MH scales. Each provides one score to assess physical and mental health, respectively.

Reliability

Estimates for internal consistency reliability are very good for all subscales. The two component summary scores show evidence for very high internal consistency ($\alpha = .95$ and $\alpha = .93$ for the PCS and MCS, respectively). Internal consistency estimates for the health domain scales are also high, ranging from $\alpha = .83$ (GH) to $\alpha = .95$ (RP) (Ware et al. 2007). Evidence suggests that test-retest reliability for the SF-36 over a 3-week interval is very good, with estimates of .94 and .81 for the PCS and MCS scales, respectively (Ware et al. 1995).

Validity

The SF-36 has been widely used in health research, and the user manual (Ware et al. 2007) provides a comprehensive list of studies offering evidence for the scales' construct validity. The content of the SF-36 survey was compared with other well-known health surveys to establish content validity (cf., Ware et al. 1994, for a list of references).

Options

Along with the 36-item SF-36, the shorter 12-item (SF-12) and 8-item (SF-8) versions of the SF are also available. Both shorter versions offer scores on all eight health domains and the two component summary scores. Versions 1 and 2 of both the SF-36 and the SF-12 are available for use (there is only one version of the SF-8). All forms are available in the standard 4-week recall and the acute 1-week recall versions. Additionally, the SF-8 is available in a 24-h recall version.

Administration

The survey is designed for adults 18 and over and can be given in a self-report paper/pencil format or in an interview format. The SF-36 and its other forms are available for licensure from QualityMetric Incorporated (www.qualitymetric.com).

Cross-References

► Health-Related Quality of Life

References and Readings

- Quality Metric Incorporated. (2011). <http://www.qualitymetric.com/>
- Stewart, A. L., & Ware, J. E., Jr. (Eds.). (1992). *Measuring functioning and well-being: The medical outcomes study approach*. Durham: Duke University Press.
- Ware, J. E., Jr. (1988). *How to score the revised MOS short-form health scales*. Boston: Institute for the Improvement of Medical Care and Health, New England Medical Center.
- Ware, J. E., Jr. (1990). Measuring patient function and well-being: Some lessons from the medical outcomes study. In K. A. Heitgoff & K. N. Lohr (Eds.), *Effectiveness and outcomes in health care: Proceedings of an invitational conference by the Institute of Medicine Division of Health Care Services* (pp. 107–119). Washington, DC: National Academy Press.
- Ware, J. E., Jr., Kosinski, M., DeBrot, D. J., Andrejasich, C. M., & Bradt, E. W. (1995, October). *Comparison of patient responses to SF-36 Health Surveys that are self-administered, interview administered by telephone, and computer-administered by telephone*. Paper presented at the Eastern Regional Meeting of the American Federation for Clinical Research, New York, NY.
- Ware, J. E., Jr., Gandek, B., & The IQOLA Project Group. (1994). The SF-36 health survey: Development and use in mental health research and the IQOLA project. *International Journal of Mental Health*, 23, 49–73.
- Ware, J. E., Jr., Kosinski, M., Bjorner, J. B., Turner-Bowker, D. M., Gandek, B., & Meruish, M. E. (2007). *User's manual for the SF-36v2 health survey* (2nd ed.). Lincoln: Quality Metric Incorporated.

Short Form 36

► SF-36

Shortness of Breath

► Dyspnea

Sick Headache

► Migraine Headache

Sickness Absence

► [Return to Work](#)

Sickness Behavior

Aric A. Prather

Center for Health and Community, University of California, San Francisco, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Cytokine-induced depression](#); [Inflammation-associated depression](#)

Definition

Sickness behavior is a coordinated set of adaptive behavioral changes that occur in physically ill animals and humans during the course of infection. These behaviors include lethargy, depressed mood, reduced social exploration, loss of appetite, sleepiness, hyperalgesia, and, at times, confusion. This set of behaviors often accompanies fever and is considered a motivational state responsible for reorganizing an ill individual's perceptions and actions to enable better coping with infection (Dantzer et al. 2008).

Description

Sickness behavior is a normal response to infection and is characterized by endocrine, autonomic, and behavioral changes triggered by soluble proteins produced at the site of infection. Activated immune cells, such as macrophages and dendritic cells, release biochemical mediators called pro-inflammatory cytokines, such as interleukin (IL)-1, IL-6, and tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-alpha, which coordinate the local and systemic inflammatory response during active infection. These inflammatory mediators, in turn, act on the brain

facilitating behavioral changes associated with sickness.

Much of the evidence supporting a link between pro-inflammatory cytokines and sickness behaviors comes from experimental studies in animals and humans. Peripheral and central administration of IL-1 and TNF-alpha in healthy laboratory animals induces fever and behavioral symptoms of sickness, including depressed activity, decreased food intake, and a curled posture. Sexual behavior is similarly reduced, particularly among females. IL-1 receptor antagonist (IL-1RA) blocks the biological effects of IL-1 when co-administered at 100- to 1000-fold excess dose with IL-1. Treatment with IL-1RA abrogates the depressing effect on social behavior but not food-motivated behavior, suggesting that IL-1 is a key mechanism in social function (Bluthe et al. 1992). Similar effects are seen when IL-1RA is injected directly into the brain. Time course studies of the behavioral effects of IL-1 in animals show changes in social exploration gradually develop within 2 h of peripheral administration whereas changes in food-motivated behavior reach a maximum by 1 h following treatment. Interestingly, IL-6 administered systemically or centrally has no behavioral effects despite inducing a fever response. That said, IL-6 does have the capacity to potentiate the effects of subthreshold dose of IL-1 administration suggesting that IL-6 may be behaviorally active only in the context of other pro-inflammatory mediators.

In humans, administration of endotoxin, a component of the outer membrane of Gram-negative bacteria, leads to systemic elevations in pro-inflammatory cytokines. This stimulus has been shown to cause participants to experience flu-like symptoms (e.g., fever, chills) as well as fatigue and depressed affect (reviewed in DellaGioia and Hannestad 2010). Moreover, a recent study demonstrated that subjects exposed experimentally to endotoxin led to increased self-reported levels of depressed mood and reduced activity in the ventral striatum in response to reward cues (Eisenberger et al. 2010), which is consistent with anhedonia.

There is substantial overlap between the behavioral components of sickness behavior and major depression in humans. As such, pro-

inflammatory cytokines are proposed to participate in the pathophysiology of depression and potentially account for the high prevalence of depression among the medically ill (Smith 1991; Raison et al. 2006; Dantzer et al. 2008). Patients treated with immune-activating medications, such as IFN- α therapy prescribed for patients suffering with Hepatitis C or certain cancers, show elevated rates of depression compared to patients undergoing alternative therapies (Raison et al. 2006). Indeed, patients undergoing IFN- α therapy tend to experience depressive symptoms coupled with anxiety and irritability over a background of neurovegetative sickness-like symptoms, including sleep disorders, fatigue, and decreased appetite. While the mood disturbances generally occur between 4 and 12 weeks of treatment, the neurovegetative symptoms occur more rapidly, within the first 2 weeks of treatment.

Significant research efforts have focused on the neurochemical effects of inflammation that underlie sickness behavior and related depressive symptoms. Experimental animal data demonstrates that pro-inflammatory cytokines enhance indoleamine 2,3 dioxygenase (IDO) that peaks 24-h after endotoxin administration. This increase in IDO leads to a decrease in tryptophan (TRP), an essential amino acid that is actively transported into the brain for the synthesis of serotonin. IDO also leads to a decrease in kynurenine (KYN) and other tryptophan-related metabolites. Animals pretreated with a potent anti-inflammatory agent that blocks pro-inflammatory cytokines in the periphery and in the brain show significant reductions in both sickness and depressive behaviors. In contrast, animals treated with an inhibitor of IDO show a reduction in depressive behaviors but not neurovegetative symptoms, providing important evidence for the role of tryptophan metabolism in cytokine-induced depression (Dantzer et al. 2008). It is anticipated that this research will have important implications for effective treatment of inflammation-related depression in humans.

- [Inflammation](#)
- [Psychoneuroimmunology](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bluthe, R. M., Dantzer, R., & Kelley, K. W. (1992). Effects of interleukin-1 receptor antagonist on the behavioral effects of lipopolysaccharide in rat. *Brain Research*, 573, 318–320.
- Dantzer, R., Bluthe, R. M., Castanon, N., Kelley, K. W., Konsman, J. P., Laye, S., et al. (2007). Cytokines, sickness behavior, and depression. In R. Ader (Ed.), *Psychoneuroimmunology* (4th ed., pp. 281–318). New York: Academic Press.
- Dantzer, R., O'Connor, J. C., Freund, G. G., Johnson, R. W., & Kelley, K. W. (2008). From inflammation to sickness and depression: When the immune system subjugates the brain. *Nature Neuroscience Reviews*, 9, 46–56.
- DellaGioia, N., & Hannestad, J. (2010). A critical review of human endotoxin administration as an experimental paradigm of depression. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 34, 130–143.
- Eisenberger, N. I., Berkman, E. T., Inagaki, T. K., Rameson, L. T., Mashal, N. M., & Irwin, M. R. (2010). Inflammation-induced anhedonia: Endotoxin reduces ventral striatum responses to reward. *Biological Psychiatry*, 15, 748–754.
- Miller, A. H., Maletic, V., & Raison, C. L. (2009). Inflammation and its discontents: The role of cytokines in the pathophysiology of major depression. *Biological Psychiatry*, 65, 732–741.
- Raison, C. L., Capuron, L., & Miller, A. H. (2006). Cytokines sing the blues: Inflammation and pathogenesis of depression. *Trends in Immunology*, 27, 24–31.
- Smith, R. S. (1991). The macrophage theory of depression. *Medical Hypotheses*, 35, 298–306.

Siegrist, Johannes

Johannes Siegrist

Work Stress Research, Centre for Health and Society Faculty of Medicine, University of Düsseldorf, Life Science Center, Düsseldorf, Germany

Cross-References

- [Depression: Symptoms](#)
- [Illness Behavior](#)

Johannes Siegrist was born in Zofingen, Switzerland, on August 6, 1943. His nationality is Swiss, and he is married to Karin and has two

daughters. Siegrist studied Sociology, Social Psychology, Philosophy, and History at the Universities of Basel (Switzerland) and Freiburg i.Br. (Germany). He received his M.A. (1967) and his Ph.D. (1969) in Sociology at the University of Freiburg. After postdoctoral training at the Universities of Ulm and Freiburg, he accomplished his habilitation in Sociology at the University of Freiburg (1973). In 1973, he was appointed as Professor of Medical Sociology at the Faculty of Medicine, University of Marburg (Germany), where he served until 1992, interrupted by Visiting Professorships at the Institute for Advanced Studies in Vienna (Austria) and at the Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health in Baltimore, USA. In 1992, Siegrist was appointed as Professor of Medical Sociology and Director of the Department of Medical Sociology at the Faculty of Medicine, Heinrich Heine University of Dusseldorf, Germany, and as Director of the Postgraduate Training Program of Public Health at the same university. After his retirement in 2012, he was granted a Senior Professorship at this university to continue his research activities (Fig. 1).

Siegrist has been President of the International Society of Behavioral Medicine (ISBM; 1996–1998), President of the European Society of Health and Medical Sociology (1990–1992), and Director of the European Science Foundation Program on Social Variations in Health Expectancy in Europe (1999–2003). He was Chair of the Section “Behavioral Sciences” of Academia Europaea (2004–2012), member of the Expert Panel of the German Research Foundation (2006–2010), and member of a Scientific Committee and two working groups of the German Academy of Sciences Leopoldina (since 2011).

He has been a Task Group Leader to the Marmot Review (Strategic Review of Health Inequalities in England post-2010) for the British Government, with a focus on work and health. In this same function, he has coordinated and edited a report on employment and working conditions in the context of the “Review of Social Determinants of Health and the Health Divide in the WHO European Region,” commissioned by the WHO European Office in 2011. Since 2015, he is a member of the Advisory Board of OECD



Siegrist, Johannes, Fig. 1 Johannes Siegrist

on guidelines for measuring the quality of working environments and a lead author of the report on social progress prepared by the International Panel for Social Progress (IPSP).

Siegrist served as Associate Editor or Advisory Board Member of several international journals (e.g., *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, *Social Science & Medicine*, *Social Psychiatry and Psychiatric Epidemiology*, *Work & Stress*, *European Journal of Public Health*, *Scandinavian Journal of Work, Environment and Health*).

The awards he received include Honorary Member of the European Society of Health and Medical Sociology where he also received the Research Award, Member of Academia Europaea (London), and Corresponding Member of the Heidelberg Academy of Sciences. He received the Salomon Neumann Award of the German Society of Social Medicine and Prevention, the Hans Roemer Award of the German College of Psychosomatic Medicine, and the Belle van Zuylen Chair at the University of Utrecht, the Netherlands.

Major Accomplishments

Siegrist's major contribution to scientific research concerns the development and test of a theoretical model of an adverse psychosocial work environment, with the aim of explaining stress-related disorders, termed "effort-reward imbalance" (ERI). The model posits that failed reciprocity of effort spent and rewards received at work ("high cost-low gain") elicits strong negative emotions and psychobiological stress responses with adverse long-term effects on health. Starting from cross-sectional and longitudinal epidemiological research in the late 1970s and early 1980s, together with collaborators Ingbert Weber, Karin Siegrist, Richard Peter, and others at Marburg University, he systematically elaborated and expanded research on the ERI model in a network of national and international scientific collaboration. The questionnaire measuring the model has been incorporated in a number of epidemiological studies (e.g., Whitehall II, GAZEL, CONSTANCES, German Socioeconomic Panel, German National Cohort Study) and was successfully applied in other sociocultural contexts (e.g., Japan) and in rapidly developing societies (e.g., China, Brazil).

Evidence from prospective cohort studies indicates that continued experience of failed reciprocity in terms of the ERI model is associated with significantly elevated odds of stress-related disorders. Most robust results are available on depression and coronary heart disease. Additionally, findings point to elevated risks of alcohol dependence, type 2 diabetes, reduced health functioning, sickness absence, and disability. This epidemiological evidence was supplemented by experiments and "naturalistic" studies (e.g., ambulatory blood pressure and heart rate monitoring), where reduced immune function, enhanced autonomic activity, and altered release patterns of stress hormones were linked to ERI, often in a dose-response relationship. Siegrist was also involved in some intervention studies where measures of reducing ERI at work were followed by improvements of well-being and mental health.

Siegrist applied the ERI model to other types of contractual social exchange, e.g., voluntary work,

marital, or parent-child relations. Available results support the notion that failed reciprocity in core social roles exerts negative effects on health and well-being, suggesting a basic link between perceived injustice of effortful exchange and the development of stress-related disorders in humans. Siegrist has expanded this research with a focus on retirement, volunteering, and healthy aging, together with Morten Wahrendorf and other colleagues, in the frame of the Survey of Health, Ageing and Retirement in Europe (SHARE) and additional longitudinal investigations on aging populations. As a crosscutting topic of his long-lasting research career, Siegrist has put special emphasis on explaining and reducing avoidable social inequalities in health, both as a scientist and as an advocate for different stakeholders where he has proposed evidence-based policy recommendations for improving quality of work and employment and for reducing the burden of stress-related disease.

Cross-References

- [International Society of Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [Occupational Health](#)

References and Further Reading

- Siegrist, J., & Marmot, M. (Eds.). (2006). *Social inequalities in health: New evidence and policy implications*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Siegrist, J., & Wahrendorf, M. (Eds.). (2016). *Work stress and health in a globalized economy: The model of effort-reward imbalance*. Dordrecht: Springer.
- Siegrist, J., Starke, D., Chandola, T., Godin, I., Marmot, M., Niedhammer, I., & Peter, R. (2004). The measurement of effort-reward imbalance at work. European comparisons. *Social Science & Medicine*, 58, 1483–1499.

Simulation Games

- [Health Gaming](#)

Singing and Health

Genevieve A. Dingle¹ and Stephen Clift²

¹The University of Queensland,
Brisbane, QLD, Australia

²Sidney de Haan Research Centre for Arts and
Health, Canterbury Christ Church University,
Canterbury, UK

Synonyms

Choir; Choral singing; Group singing; Vocal group

Definition

Singing in health contexts typically involves participants with one or more health condition(s) gathering to sing together at weekly rehearsals and sometimes performing within a hospital or health service or in the community. Sessions commonly include a series of warm-up exercises, learning new songs as a group, and singing songs already in the singers' repertoire. Singing groups may be led by musicians, music educators, music therapists, or community musicians. Typically one or more health professionals are in attendance to support participants who require it. Some health choirs are for patients only while others feature patients and staff, or patients and carers, singing together.

Description

Examples of single condition choirs include the "Sing to Live" choir for people affected by breast cancer in Illinois; the "Brainwaves" and "Stroke a Chord" choirs in Australia for adults who have experienced a stroke; "Sing Your Lungs Out" choir in New Zealand and "Singing for Better Breathing" choirs in the UK for people who have chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; and "Remini-Sing" choir in Australia and "Singing for the Brain" in the UK for people with dementia and

their carers. Other choirs include singers with a variety of diagnoses, for instance, the "Choir of Hard Knocks" in Australia comprises adults who are socially marginalized as a result of their mental illness, addiction, neurological condition, disability, or other ongoing health condition.

The purpose of health choirs is to improve the health and wellbeing of participants, rather than merely to keep patients occupied or, at the other extreme, to achieve an elite level of musical performance. These health aims may be met through the physical demands of standing, moving, and controlling the breath during regular singing rehearsals (e.g., Skingley et al. 2018) and the cognitive demands of listening, producing the correct sounds with the correct timing, learning and recalling lyrics and melodies, and coordinating movements such as swaying, tapping, and clicking while singing. The wellbeing aims may be met through the social bonding effects of group singing (e.g., Pearce et al. 2015) as well as the uplifting effect group singing has on emotions (e.g., Dingle et al. 2017). The social and emotional effects of choir singing may be particularly important for individuals affected by chronic health conditions whose ability to socialize may be adversely affected as a consequence of their health condition and its treatment. Indeed, a cross-national survey study of 1779 choristers revealed that singers perceived the following health benefits: social connection, physical and physiological benefits (specifically respiratory health), cognitive stimulation, mental health, enjoyment, and transcendence (Moss et al. 2018).

Emerging research shows that group singing is related to improved health and wellbeing among adults affected by cancers. For instance, one study examined the impact of singing on mood, stress, and immune response in three populations affected by cancer: carers ($n = 72$), bereaved carers ($n = 66$), and patients ($n = 55$). Assessments taken before and after 1 h of singing showed that singing was associated with significant reductions in negative emotions and increases in positive emotions, accompanied by significant increases in a majority of measured cytokines (substances secreted by cells as part of an immune response). Furthermore, singing was

associated with reductions in cortisol, beta-endorphin, and oxytocin levels. These positive effects of singing were found in all three groups (Fancourt et al. 2016). In a Welsh study with 816 participants, a sub-sample of 203 completed initial, 3-month and 6-month questionnaires. Over time, measures of vitality and overall mental health improved, while levels of anxiety reduced significantly in both patients and non-patients (Reagon et al. 2017).

In the area of respiratory health, a review of six studies reported that singing has the potential to improve health-related quality of life, particularly related to physical health, and levels of anxiety without causing significant side effects. Qualitative data indicate that singing is an enjoyable experience for patients, who consistently report that it helps them to cope with their condition better (Lewis et al. 2016).

In relation to cognitive health, choir singing has been found to improve measures of cognitive functioning and wellbeing among healthy older adults (e.g., Coulton et al. 2015; Dingle et al. 2018). Much research is currently focusing on the potential benefits of choir singing for people with dementias. For instance, a Finnish study recruited 89 dyads (people with early dementia and their caregivers) and randomized them to a 10-week singing coaching group, a 10-week music listening coaching group, or a usual care control group (Särkämö et al. 2013). Compared with usual care, both weekly singing and music listening improved mood, orientation, and remote episodic memory and to a lesser extent, also attention and executive function and general cognition. Singing also enhanced short-term and working memory and caregiver wellbeing, whereas music listening had a positive effect on quality of life.

Turning to mental health, a systematic review of studies of choir singing for adults experiencing mental health conditions found that the results of seven longitudinal studies showed that while people with mental health conditions participated in choir singing, their mental health and wellbeing significantly improved with moderate to large effect sizes (Williams et al. 2018). Often physical health conditions were also featured in these

samples, although changes in physical health measures were less frequently reported. Moreover, six qualitative studies based on interviews with choir participants yielded converging themes, indicating that group singing can provide enjoyment, improve emotional states, develop a sense of belonging, and enhance self-confidence in participants.

Taken together, this body of research on choir singing shows that it is associated with improvements in biological measures such as improved immune functioning and decreased stress hormone levels; improved lung functioning among people with respiratory conditions; improved cognitive performance in older adults; and improved self-reported mood, mental health, and wellbeing. Often these benefits extend to family members and carers who are also affected by the health condition and its treatment.

Cross-References

► Music and Health

References and Further Reading

- Coulton, S., Clift, S., Skingley, A., & Rodriguez, J. (2015). Effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of community singing on mental health-related quality of life of older people: Randomised controlled trial. *The British Journal of Psychiatry*, 207(3), 250–255. <https://doi.org/10.1192/bjp.bp.113.129908>.
- Dingle, G. A., Williams, E., Jetten, J., & Welch, J. (2017). Choir singing and creative writing enhance emotion regulation in adults with chronic mental health conditions. *British Journal of Clinical Psychology*, 56(4), 443–457. <https://doi.org/10.1111/bjc.12149>.
- Dingle, G., Ellem, R., Davidson, R., Haslam, C., Clift, S., Humby, M., Stathis, A., & Williams, E. (2018). *Live wires music program connects and aids cognitive performance of older adults*. Paper presented at the Australian Association for cognitive behaviour therapy national conference, Brisbane, 25–27 Oct 2018.
- Fancourt, D., Williamon, A., Carvalho, L. A., Steptoe, A., Dow, R., & Lewis, I. (2016). Singing modulates mood, stress, cortisol, cytokine and neuropeptide activity in cancer patients and carers. *eCancer*, 10, 631. <https://doi.org/10.3332/ecancer.2016.631>.
- Lewis, A., Cave, P., Stern, M., Welch, L., Taylor, K., Russell, J., Doyle, A., Russell, A., McKee, H., Clift, S., Bott, J., & Hopkinson, N. S. (2016). Singing

- for lung health – A systematic review of the literature and consensus statement. *NPJ Primary Care Respiratory Medicine*, 26, 16080. <https://doi.org/10.1038/npjpcrm.2016.80>.
- Moss, H., Lynch, J., & O'Donoghue, J. (2018). Exploring the perceived health benefits of singing in a choir: An international cross-sectional mixed-methods study. *Perspectives in Public Health*, 138(3), 160–168. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1757913917739652>.
- Pearce, E., Launay, J., & Dunbar, R. I. M. (2015). The ice-breaker effect: Singing mediates fast social bonding. *Royal Society Open Science*, 2, 150221. <https://doi.org/10.1098/rsos.150221>.
- Reagon, C., Gale, N., Dow, R., Lewis, I., & van Duersen, R. (2017). Choir singing and health status in people affected by cancer. *European Journal of Cancer Care*, 26, e12568. <https://doi.org/10.1111/ecc.12568>.
- Särkämö, T., Tervaniemi, M., Laitinen, S., Numminen, A., Kurki, M., Johnson, J. K., & Rantanen, P. (2013). Cognitive, emotional, and social benefits of regular musical activities in early dementia: Randomized controlled study. *The Gerontologist*, 54(4), 634–650. <https://doi.org/10.1093/geront/gnt100>.
- Skingley, A., Clift, S., Hurley, S., Price, S., et al. (2018). Community singing groups for people with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: Participant perspectives. *Perspectives in Public Health*, 133(1), 66–75. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1757913917740930>.
- Williams, E., Dingle, G., & Clift, S. (2018). A systematic review of mental health and wellbeing outcomes of group singing for adults with a mental health condition. *European Journal of Public Health*. <https://doi.org/10.1093/eurpub/cky115>. Accepted 26 May 2018.

Single Nucleotide Polymorphism (SNP)

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

SNP (pronounced “snip”)

Definition

The term “single nucleotide polymorphism” contains two defining criteria. First, it refers to a

single nucleotide, i.e., an individual base pair, that can differ between individuals. Second, the word polymorphism indicates that a particular nucleotide change of interest is shared by at least 1% of the population.

SNPs occur when one base pair replaces another base pair in a point mutation (see DNA entry for discussion of bases). For example, an A-T pairing may be replaced by a G-C pairing. Such a mutation does not typically harm the organism.

Cross-References

- DNA
- Polymorphism

References and Further Reading

Britannica. (2009). *The Britannicaguide to genetics* (Introduction by Steve Jones). Philadelphia: Running Press.

Single Subject

- Outcome for the Single Case: Random Control Index, Single Subject Experimental Design, and Goal Attainment Scale

Single-Case Experimental, or N of 1 Clinical Trials

- Outcome for the Single Case: Random Control Index, Single Subject Experimental Design, and Goal Attainment Scale

Situational Responsiveness

- Job Performance

Skeletal Muscle Atrophy

► Sarcopenia

Skin Cancer Prevention: Sun Protection, Sun Safety, Sunscreen Use

Karen Glanz

Schools of Medicine and Nursing, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, USA

Definition

Skin cancer is the most commonly diagnosed cancer in the United States, with more than one million Americans diagnosed with skin cancer each year. The incidence of skin cancer has increased dramatically worldwide in the last decade. Both main types of skin cancer – malignant melanoma and non-melanoma skin cancer (NMSC) – are now significant public health concerns. While skin cancer rates are increasing, it is considered one of the most preventable types of cancer.

The greatest risk factor for skin cancer is exposure to ultraviolet radiation, or UV radiation, which comes mainly from the sun. Behavioral recommendations for primary prevention of skin cancer include: limit time spent in the sun, avoid the sun during peak hours (10 a.m. to 4 p.m.), use sunscreen with a sun protection factor (SPF) of 15 or higher when outside, wear protective clothing (hats, shirts, pants) and sunglasses, seek shade when outdoors, and avoid sunburn. These behaviors, if consistently practiced, can help prevent all forms of skin cancer. There is some concern that using sunscreen will lead people who are trying to get a suntan to stay in the sun for a longer time, so another recommendation for prevention is not to intentionally bake in the sun or seek a tan.

Additional, important recommendations for behaviors to prevent skin cancer and related

morbidity and mortality include performing regular skin self-examination and seeking professional evaluation of suspicious skin changes. Further, avoidance of indoor tanning and the use of tanning salons and tanning beds (also called “solaria”) are strongly recommended.

An understanding of patterns of behavior can help to guide efforts to prevent skin cancer. More people take precautions at the beach or on vacation than when taking outdoor recreation. Parents are more likely to protect their children than themselves. Children are more often protected from UV radiation if their parents also protect themselves. Adolescents seem especially resistant to advice about skin cancer prevention and minimizing sun exposure.

Most skin cancer prevention interventions reported in the literature are directed at the general population through school-based curricula, multi-component community programs, or media campaigns, and some recent trials have targeted people with high sun exposure at work or during outdoor recreation. Children, adolescents, and adults at high risk are important audiences for skin cancer prevention.

This chapter provides an overview of skin cancer prevention for the general population and groups at increased risk due to genetic or environmental exposures. The reference sources include evidence reviews, key research articles reporting on well-designed studies, and works addressing issues in measurement and methodology for skin cancer prevention research and evaluation.

Description

Evidence Reviews

An extensive evidence review of strategies to prevent skin cancer was undertaken by the Task Force on Community Preventive Services, and the results and recommendations were published in Saraiya et al. (2004). This report presents the results of systematic reviews of the effectiveness of interventions to prevent skin cancer by reducing exposure to ultraviolet radiation (UVR). The Task Force on Community Preventive Services

found that education and policy approaches were effective when implemented in primary schools and in recreational or tourism settings but found insufficient evidence to determine effectiveness in other settings. This evidence review is currently being updated to reflect the continuing growth of the scientific literature on behavioral interventions to prevent skin cancer during the past decade.

Comprehensive Community Programs Including Mass Media

There is a long history of comprehensive, multi-component community skin cancer prevention programs, especially in Australia, where skin cancer is highly prevalent. These programs include mass media and communication campaigns as an integral part of these community programs.

Two related sun protection programs have been conducted in Australia for more than 20 years: Slip! Slop! Slap! from 1980 to 1988 and SunSmart from 1988 to the present (Montague et al. 2001). These programs have played an important role in changing the whole society's approach to the sun and have resulted in marked reductions in sun exposure. An examination of trends in behavioral risk factors for skin cancer over 15 years was examined in an Australian population exposed to the SunSmart program including SunSmart television advertising. Higher exposure to SunSmart advertising in the weeks before the interview increased preferences for not tanning, hat and sunscreen use, and greater clothing protection. These results indicate that sustained multicomponent programs with media campaigns can both prompt and reinforce skin cancer preventive behaviors.

Interventions in Schools

The most often studied settings for skin cancer prevention programs are schools, and there is good evidence that educational and policy interventions can be effective in primary schools (Saraiya et al. 2004). Of the many reported studies, a few are particularly well designed, carefully described, have long follow-up periods, and/or use objective outcome measures. The Kidskin intervention trial in Western Australia is

particularly noteworthy and had a 6-year follow-up period. The "Kidskin" study involved three groups: control, "moderate," and "high" intervention. Results showed that children in the intervention groups – especially the "high" group – reported less sun exposure and spent less time outdoors in the middle of the day. There was little difference between groups in the wearing of hats or sunscreen (Milne et al. 2001). Children in the intervention groups – especially the high group – were less tanned at the end of the summer; this effect was greater for the back than for the forearms. There was also a smaller increase in the number of nevi (or moles) on the backs of children in the intervention groups (English et al. 2005). Further, the program had a positive effect on hat wearing on the playground, especially in the "high" intervention groups, but did not change children's use of shade at lunchtime (Giles-Corti et al. 2004).

Outdoor Workers

Outdoor workers are at high risk for skin cancer because they receive regular and significant solar UVR exposure. In a well-designed study to reduce UVR exposure among ski instructors, greater program implementation was associated with less sunburn. In an intervention for US Postal Service workers, regular sunscreen and hat use were higher among the intervention group than among the control group after 3 months and at 3-year follow-up (Mayer et al. 2007, 2009).

Recreation Settings

Intense and prolonged sun exposure often occurs during outdoor recreation activities. High UVR exposure, often with minimal clothing, tends to occur at beach and swimming pool settings. Other outdoor recreation settings include camps, zoos, and parks. Large and well-designed studies of skin cancer prevention in these locations have been reported. Effective skin cancer prevention programs for children have been evaluated in swimming pool settings (Glanz et al. 2002; Glanz et al. 2005) and for beachgoers at Northeastern (Weinstock et al. 2002) and Midwestern (Pagoto et al. 2003) beaches as well as at zoos (Mayer et al. 2001).

High-Risk Groups

Targeting skin cancer prevention to people at high risk may result in greater effects of preventive strategies and an efficient public health strategy. Risk factors for skin cancer include age, sun-sensitive phenotypes, excess sun exposure, family history, personal history of skin cancer or precancerous lesions, and some other medical conditions. There is a need to develop low-cost, effective interventions to improve skin cancer prevention and early detection behaviors among a broader population of persons at moderate and high risk. (Geller et al. 2006) and Glanz, Schoenfeld, and Steffen (2010) describe studies of effective tailored interventions that specifically target individuals at high risk, either siblings of melanoma patients or adults determined to be at moderate or high risk for skin cancer. These studies focused on both prevention and skin examinations. A study of a group of people who have tested positive in genetic testing for skin cancer-related mutations and found that positive genetic test results led to greater intentions to obtain total body skin examinations and adhere to skin self-examination recommendations (Aspinwall et al. 2008).

Screening and Early Detection

Screening for skin cancer through health-care-provider skin exams and skin self-examination has the potential to help detect skin cancers at an earlier stage (i.e., when they are thinner) so that they are more curable and less serious. Although there has not been a large randomized trial of skin screening in the United States, an Australian trial reported by Aitken et al. (2006) provides promising evidence of the impact of skin screening and how it can be successfully implemented. A randomized trial was conducted to determine whether a multicomponent intervention can increase total skin self-examination (TSSE) performance. Participants received instructional materials, a video, and a brief counseling session and a brief follow-up phone call and tailored feedback letters. Results showed that the intervention group increased TSSE performance in the intervention group compared to the control group (Weinstock et al. 2007). A follow-up article

aimed to identify the most important Check-It-Out intervention components for promoting TSSE. Results showed that watching the video, using the hand mirror, shower card, American Cancer Society brochure, sample photographs, and finding the health educator helpful were associated with performing TSSE at 2 months, 12 months, or both. The studies of high-risk groups reported by Geller et al. (2006) and Glanz et al. (2010) also targeted behavioral outcomes of skin self-examination and thorough examination of all moles.

Measurement and Methodology

Advances in skin cancer prevention depend on good quality research and ideally different intervention studies that can be compared to understand the impact of various strategies. Most skin cancer prevention studies use verbal reports, or self-report, to measure habitual sun exposure and solar protection behaviors. Despite the well-known limitations of verbal reports of behavior, these measures are the most practical for use in both population surveillance and descriptive and intervention research (Glanz and Mayer 2005). Therefore, the comparability of assessments across population-based surveys and outcome measures used in intervention research is important, and a core set of measures was recently published by a diverse group of investigators in the field (Glanz et al. 2008). In addition, because it is important to continue to build a research tool kit for measures other than surveys, including objective biological measures and observational measures, recent research to validate self-reports of sunscreen use (Glanz et al. 2009) and other behaviors is of particular importance to the field.

Conclusion

Skin cancer prevention interventions have demonstrated modest success, with the majority of programs being conducted in school settings. It is believed that the ideal intervention strategies for reducing exposure to ultraviolet radiation (UVR) exposure are coordinated, sustained,

community-wide approaches that combine education, mass media, and environmental and structural changes. Interventions within specific organizational settings such as schools, health care, recreation programs, and workplaces provide useful ways to reach important audiences like children and are suitable venues for structural supports such as environmental and policy change that complement educational efforts. It is generally agreed that environmental and structural changes also need to be part of successful skin cancer prevention efforts. Advances in measurement and methods in skin cancer prevention research will contribute to future efforts to address this important and widespread health and behavior problem.

Cross-References

► Cancer Prevention

References and Readings

- Aitken, J. F., Janda, M., Elwood, M., Youl, P. H., Ring, I. T., & Lowe, J. B. (2006). Clinical outcomes from skin screening clinics within a community-based melanoma screening program. *Journal of the American Academy of Dermatology*, 54, 105–114.
- Aspinwall, L. G., Leaf, S. L., Dola, E. R., Kohlmann, W., & Leachman, S. A. (2008). CDKN2A/p16 genetic test reporting improves early detection intentions and practices in high-risk melanoma families. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 17, 1510–1519.
- English, D. R., Milne, E., Jacoby, P., Giles-Corti, B., Cross, D., & Johnston, R. (2005). The effect of a school-based sun protection intervention on the development of melanocytic nevi in children: 6-year follow-up. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 14, 977–980.
- Geller, A. C., Emmons, K. M., Brooks, D. R., Powers, C., Zhang, Z., Koh, H. K., Heeren, T., Sober, A. J., Li, F., & Gilchrest, B. A. (2006). A randomized trial to improve early detection and prevention practices among siblings of melanoma patients. *Cancer*, 107, 806–814.
- Giles-Corti, B., English, D., Costa, C., Milne, E., Cross, D., & Johnston, R. (2004). Creating SunSmart schools. *Health Education Research*, 19, 98–109.
- Glanz, K., & Mayer, J. A. (2005). Reducing UVR exposure to prevent skin cancer: Methodology and measurement. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 29, 131–142.
- Glanz, K., Geller, A. C., Shigaki, D., Maddock, J., & Isneec, M. R. (2002). A randomized trial of skin cancer prevention in aquatic settings: The Pool Cool program. *Health Psychology*, 21, 579–587.
- Glanz, K., Steffen, A., Elliott, T., & O’Riordan, D. (2005). Diffusion of an effective skin cancer prevention program: Design, theoretical foundations, and first-year implementation. *Health Psychology*, 24, 477–487.
- Glanz, K., Yaroch, A. L., Dancel, M., Saraiya, M., Crane, L. A., Buller, D. B., et al. (2008). Measures of sun exposure and sun protection practices for behavioral and epidemiologic research. *Archives of Dermatology*, 144, 217–222.
- Glanz, K., McCarty, F., Nehl, E. J., O’Riordan, D. L., Gies, P., Bundy, L., et al. (2009). Validity of self-reported sunscreen use by parents, children and lifeguards. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 36, 63–69.
- Glanz, K., Schoenfeld, E. R., & Steffen, A. (2010). Randomized trial of tailored skin cancer prevention messages for adults: Project SCAPE. *American Journal of Public Health*, 100, 735–741.
- Mayer, J. A., Lewis, E. C., Eckhardt, L., Slymen, D., Belch, G., Elder, J., et al. (2001). Promoting sun safety among zoo visitors. *Preventive Medicine*, 33, 162–169.
- Mayer, J. A., Slymen, D. J., Clapp, E. J., Pichon, L. C., Eckhardt, L., Eichenfield, L. F., et al. (2007). Promoting sun safety among US postal service letter carriers: Impact of a 2-year intervention. *American Journal of Public Health*, 97, 559–565.
- Mayer, J. A., Slymen, D. J., Clapp, E. J., Pichon, L. C., Elder, J. P., Sallis, J. F., et al. (2009). Long-term maintenance of a successful occupational sun safety intervention. *Archives of Dermatology*, 145, 88–89.
- Milne, E., English, D. R., Johnston, R., Cross, D., Borland, R., Giles-Corti, B., et al. (2001). Reduced sun exposure and tanning in children after 2 years of a school-based intervention (Australia). *Cancer Causes and Control*, 12, 387–393.
- Montague, M., Borland, R., & Sinclair, C. (2001). Slip! Slop! Slap! and SunSmart, 1980–2000: Skin cancer control and 20 years of population-based campaigning. *Health Education & Behavior*, 28, 290–305.
- Pagoto, S., McChargue, D., & Fuqua, R. (2003). Effects of a multicomponent intervention on motivation and sun protection behaviors among midwestern beachgoers. *Health Psychology*, 22, 429–433.
- Saraiya, M., Glanz, K., Briss, P. A., Nichols, P., White, C., Das, D., et al. (2004). Interventions to prevent skin cancer by reducing exposure to ultraviolet radiation – a systematic review. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 27, 422–466.
- Weinstock, M. A., Rossi, J. S., Redding, C. A., & Maddock, J. E. (2002). Randomized controlled community trial of the efficacy of a multicomponent stage-matched intervention to increase sun protection among beachgoers. *Preventive Medicine*, 35, 584–592.
- Weinstock, M. A., Risica, P. M., Martin, R. A., Rakowski, W., Dubé, C., Berwick, M., et al. (2007). Melanoma early detection with thorough skin self-examination: The “check it out” randomized trial. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 32, 517–524.

SLC6A4 (Solute Carrier Family 6, Member 4)

► Serotonin Transporter Gene

Sleep

Martica H. Hall
Department of Psychiatry, University of
Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Definition

Sleep is a complex reversible neurobiological state characterized by closed eyes, behavioral quiescence, and perceptual disengagement from one's surroundings.

Description

Healthy adults cycle between two types of sleep during the typical nocturnal sleep period: non-rapid eye movement (NREM) sleep and rapid eye movement (REM) sleep. When healthy adults fall asleep, they enter NREM sleep and usually move from lighter stages of sleep (e.g., Stages N1 and N2) to deeper sleep (e.g., Stage N3) before entering their first REM sleep period. The terms “light” and “deep” sleep refer to the ease with which one can be awakened from sleep and become fully oriented to one's surroundings. The descent from light into deep NREM sleep is characterized by decreasing inputs from external stimuli, a slowing of catabolic processes, and an increase in parasympathetic nervous system activity. In contrast, REM sleep is characterized by autonomic instability and active mental activity. In healthy adults, individual NREM-REM cycles generally last approximately 90 min, although the duration of sleep cycles varies across individuals. During the first third of the night, NREM sleep is more prevalent, whereas REM sleep becomes more prevalent during the last third of the night.

Sleep can be characterized along multiple dimensions. Here we focus on four dimensions of sleep that have been most widely evaluated in relation to health and functioning; these include sleep *duration*, *continuity*, *architecture*, and *quality*. It is important to recognize that each of these dimensions of sleep changes across the life span, from infancy through old age and may, additionally, be moderated by sex, race/ethnicity, and mental and physical health conditions (Carrier et al. 2001; Carskadon and Dement 2005; Hall et al. 2009; Ohayon et al. 2004).

Sleep Duration

The two most commonly assessed indices of sleep duration include “time in bed” and “total sleep time.” Operationally, time in bed (TIB) may be defined as total hours elapsed between getting into bed to go to sleep at night (“good night time”) and waking up in the morning (“good morning time”). Total sleep time (TST) may be operationalized as time in bed minus the amount of time needed to fall asleep (“sleep latency”) and amount of time spent awake during the night (“wakefulness after sleep onset”).

Sleep duration is one of the most widely studied dimensions of sleep in relation to health and functioning (see entry on ► “Sleep Duration, ► Sleep and Health”). For the most part, this literature has documented robust associations among sleep duration extremes (generally, <6 h or >8 h) and indices of morbidity and mortality. One meta-analysis of 23 studies reported pooled relative risk (RR) values of 1.10 (95% CI = 1.06–1.15) and 1.23 (95% CI = 1.17–1.30) for all-cause mortality and short and long sleep duration, respectively (Gallicchio and Kalesan 2009).

It must be noted, however, that studies using objective measures (actigraphy, PSG) of sleep duration and health outcomes are lacking. This issue is especially important given discrepancies between self-reported and objective indices of sleep duration, which may be confounded by other risk factors for morbidity and mortality such as age, sex, race, BMI, and comorbidities. Nor do measures of sleep duration differentiate

between individuals with or without primary sleep disorders such as sleep apnea and insomnia, which have been widely linked to health and functioning (Boivin 2000; Somers 2005).

Sleep Continuity

Measures of sleep continuity focus on one's ability to initiate and maintain sleep (see ► [“Sleep Continuity,”](#) ► [Sleep Fragmentation](#)” entries). *Sleep latency* refers to the amount of time it takes to fall asleep (e.g., minutes from “good night time” to onset of sleep), whereas *wakefulness after sleep onset* (WASO) refers to the total amount of wakefulness during the sleep period (e.g., minutes of wakefulness between sleep onset and “good morning time”). *Sleep efficiency* is a proportional sleep continuity measure which refers to the percentage of time in bed spent asleep. Although operational definitions may differ across laboratories, sleep efficiency is commonly calculated as follows: (time spent asleep/time in bed) $\times$ 100.

Compared to sleep duration, fewer population-based studies have evaluated relationships among sleep continuity and indices of health and functioning. Several studies have linked self-reported sleep continuity disturbances with incident Type2 diabetes and cardiovascular disease (as reviewed by Mezick et al. under review). Although few in number, other studies have reported significant cross-sectional associations between objectively assessed sleep continuity disturbances and health outcomes including obesity, increased blood pressure, increased inflammation, decreased circulating natural killer cell numbers, and the metabolic syndrome (Hall et al. 1998; Knutson et al. 2009; Mills et al. 2007). In their longitudinal study of sleep and all-cause mortality in healthy older adults, Dew and colleagues reported that participants with PSG-assessed sleep latencies of greater than 30 min were at 2.14 times greater risk of death (95% CI = 1.25–3.6) compared to those who fell asleep in less than 30 min, after adjusting for age, medical burden, and other relevant covariates (Dew et al. 2003).

Emerging evidence based on experimental models of sleep fragmentation suggests that endocrine, immune, metabolic, and autonomic mechanisms may be important pathways through which sleep continuity disturbances influence health and functioning (Bonnet and Arand 2003; Janackova and Sforza 2008; Redwine et al. 2003; Tartar et al. 2009). In terms of its relevance to behavioral medicine and health, sleep continuity appears to be exquisitely sensitive to psychological and social factors such as stress, loneliness, relationship quality, and socioeconomic status Akerstedt et al. 2002; Cacioppo et al. 2002; Cartwright and Wood 1991; Friedman et al. 2005; Hall et al. 2008).

Sleep Architecture

Sleep architecture refers to the pattern or distribution of visually scored NREM and REM sleep stages as well as quantitative measures derived from power spectral analysis of the EEG (see ► [Sleep Architecture](#)” entry). Within NREM sleep, measures of sleep architecture include stages N1–N3. Lighter stages of sleep are characterized by low-amplitude, fast-frequency EEG activity whereas deeper stages of sleep are characterized by high-amplitude, low-frequency EEG activity generated by rhythmic oscillations of thalamic and cortical neurons (see Jones 2005).

Patients with medical disorders including cardiovascular and kidney disease, diabetes, and cancer exhibit lighter sleep architecture profiles compared to healthy individuals (e.g., Jauch-Chara et al. 2008; Ranjbaran et al. 2007). Yet, these studies do not indicate whether sleep architecture profiles were a contributing cause or consequence of disease. Both possibilities are plausible given experimental evidence of bidirectional relationships among components of sleep architecture and physiological processes important to health and functioning including metabolic, endocrine, autonomic, and immune mechanisms (e.g., Hall et al. 2004; Opp 2006; Rasch et al. 2007). The longitudinal study of sleep and mortality by Dew et al. (2003) is the only published study, to date, that has evaluated

relationships among measures of sleep architecture and indices of morbidity or mortality. In this study, risk for mortality was significantly higher in individuals with extreme amounts of REM sleep (upper and lower 15th percentile of the sample distribution); the visually scored slow-wave sleep percentage was also modestly associated with survival time.

Experimental manipulation of sleep architecture, although technically complex, may be an especially promising approach to disentangling cause and effect and evaluating cellular and molecular mechanisms through which sleep architecture affects and is affected by health. Quantitative analysis of the EEG, which shows trait-like characteristics, may hold promise for identifying sleep phenotypes that confer vulnerability to or resilience against disease (e.g., Tucker et al. 2007). This latter point may be especially relevant to behavioral medicine models of disease given that decreased slow-wave sleep and increased EEG spectral power in the fast-frequency beta band have been linked with symptoms of stress and a variety of chronic stressors including job strain, marital dissolution, and bereavement (Cartwright and Wood 1991; Hall et al. 1997; Kecklund and Akerstedt 2004).

Sleep Quality

Sleep quality generally refers to subjective perceptions about one's sleep. The Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index (PSQI), which is the most widely used self-report sleep instrument and has been translated into over 30 languages, is an example of a "multiple-indicator" measure of sleep quality (Buysse et al. 1989). The PSQI includes 18 retrospective questions about one's sleep over the past month. These questions are used to derive seven subscales (sleep duration, sleep latency, sleep efficiency, sleep disturbance, daytime dysfunction, use of medications for sleep, and overall sleep quality), each of which has a range of 0–3. These subscales may be summed to generate a global measure of subjective sleep quality with a range of 0–21; higher values reflect greater subjective sleep complaints.

In a community-based study of midlife adults without clinical cardiovascular disease, Jennings and colleagues reported that higher PSQI-assessed sleep quality complaints were associated with increased prevalence of the metabolic syndrome (Jennings et al. 2007). Other cross-sectional studies have reported greater subjective sleep quality complaints in patients with hypertension, diabetes, kidney disease, polycystic ovary syndrome, and cancer compared to age- and sex-matched healthy controls (e.g., Liu et al. 2009; Sabbatini et al. 2008; Tasali et al. 2006). Subjective sleep quality complaints may be a consequence of disease. It may also indirectly impact health via health behavior pathways. For instance, subjective perceptions that one's sleep is not sound or restorative may lead to increased daytime caffeine use and increased use of alcohol prior to sleep which, in turn, may negatively impact health and functioning.

Summary

Converging evidence suggests numerous links between specific dimensions of sleep and important indices of health and functioning. The two most prevalent sleep disorders, insomnia and sleep apnea, too have been prospectively linked to adverse health outcomes (see entries for "► [Obstructive Sleep Apnea](#)"). Yet, little is understood about *how* specific dimensions of sleep or sleep disorders may confer vulnerability or resilience to disease. Identification of the cellular and molecular pathways through which sleep affects and is affected by health is critical to advancing our understanding of the sleep-health relationship in the context of behavioral medicine.

Cross-References

- [Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine](#)
- [Sleep Architecture](#)
- [Sleep Continuity](#)
- [Sleep Duration](#)
- [Sleep Quality](#)

References and Further Readings

- Akerstedt, T., Knutsson, A., Westerholm, P., Theorell, T., Alfredsson, L., Kecklund, G., et al. (2002). Sleep disturbances, work stress and work hours: A cross-sectional study. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 53, 741–748.
- Boivin, D. B. (2000). Influence of sleep-wake and circadian rhythm disturbances in psychiatric disorders. *Journal of Psychiatry & Neuroscience*, 25, 446–458.
- Bonnet, M. H., & Arand, D. L. (2003). Clinical effects of sleep fragmentation versus sleep deprivation. *Sleep Medicine Reviews*, 7, 297–310.
- Buysse, D. J., Reynolds, C. F., Monk, T. H., Berman, S. R., & Kupfer, D. J. (1989). The Pittsburgh sleep quality index: A new instrument for psychiatric practice and research. *Psychiatry Research*, 28, 193–213.
- Cacioppo, J. T., Hawkley, L. C., Bernston, G. G., Ernst, J. M., Gibbs, A. C., Stickgold, R., et al. (2002). Do lonely days invade the nights? Potential social modulation of sleep efficiency. *Psychological Science*, 13, 384–387.
- Carrier, J., Land, S., Buysse, D. J., Kupfer, D. J., & Monk, T. H. (2001). The effects of age and gender on sleep EEG power spectral density in the middle years of life (aged 20–60 years old). *Psychophysiology*, 38, 232–242.
- Carskadon, M. A., & Dement, W. C. (2005). Normal human sleep: an overview. In M. H. Kryger, T. Roth, & T. Dement (Eds.), *Principles and practice of sleep medicine* (pp. 13–23). Philadelphia: Elsevier/Saunders.
- Cartwright, R. D., & Wood, E. (1991). Adjustment disorders of sleep: The sleep effects of a major stressful event and its resolution. *Psychiatry Research*, 39, 199–209.
- Dew, M. A., Hoch, C. C., Buysse, D. J., Monk, T. H., Begley, A. E., Houck, P. R., et al. (2003). Healthy older adults' sleep predicts all-cause mortality at 4 to 19 years of follow-up. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65, 63–73.
- Friedman, E. M., Hayney, M. S., Love, G. D., Urry, H. L., Rosenkranz, M. A., Davidson, R. J., et al. (2005). Social relationships, sleep quality, and interleukin-6 in aging women. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences U S A*, 102, 18757–18762.
- Gallicchio, L., & Kalesan, B. (2009). Sleep duration and mortality: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Journal of Sleep Research*, 18, 148–158.
- Hall, M., Buysse, D. J., Dew, M. A., Prigerson, H. G., Kupfer, D. J., & Reynolds, C. F. (1997). Intrusive thoughts and avoidance behaviors are associated with sleep disturbances in bereavement-related depression. *Depression and Anxiety*, 6, 106–112.
- Hall, M., Baum, A., Buysse, D. J., Prigerson, H. G., Kupfer, D. J., Reynolds, C. F., et al. (1998). Sleep as a mediator of the stress-immune relationship. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 60, 48–51.
- Hall, M., Vasko, R., Buysse, D. J., Ombao, H., Chen, Q., Cashmere, J. D., et al. (2004). Acute stress affects heart rate variability during sleep. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 66, 56–62.
- Hall, M., Buysse, D. J., Nofzinger, E. A., Reynolds, C. F., & Monk, T. H. (2008). Financial strain is a significant correlate of sleep continuity disturbances in late-life. *Biological Psychology*, 77, 217–222.
- Hall, M., Matthews, K. A., Kravitz, H. K., Gold, E. B., Buysse, D. J., Bromberger, J. T., et al. (2009). Race and financial strain are independent correlates of sleep in mid-life women: The SWAN sleep study. *Sleep*, 32, 73–82.
- Janackova, S., & Sforza, E. (2008). Neurobiology of sleep fragmentation: Cortical and autonomic markers of sleep disorders. *Current Pharmaceutical Design*, 14, 3474–3480.
- Jauch-Chara, K., Schmid, S. M., Hallschmid, M., Born, J., & Schultes, B. (2008). Altered neuroendocrine sleep architecture in patients with type 1 diabetes. *Diabetes Care*, 31, 1183–1188.
- Jennings, J. R., Muldoon, M., Hall, M., Buysse, D. J., & Manuck, S. B. (2007). Self-reported sleep quality is associated with the metabolic syndrome. *Sleep*, 30, 219–223.
- Jones, B. E. (2005). Basic mechanisms of sleep-wake states. In M. H. Kryger, T. Roth, & W. C. Dement (Eds.), *Principles and practice of sleep medicine* (pp. 136–153). Philadelphia: Elsevier/Saunders.
- Kecklund, G., & Akerstedt, T. (2004). Apprehension of the subsequent working day is associated with a low amount of slow wave sleep. *Biological Psychology*, 66, 169–176.
- Knutson, K. L., Van Cauter, E., Rathouz, P. J., Yan, L. L., Hulley, S. B., Liu, K., et al. (2009). Association between sleep and blood pressure in midlife: The CARDIA sleep study. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 169, 1055–1061.
- Liu, L., Fiorentino, L., Natarajan, L., Parker, B. A., Mills, P. J., Sadler, G. R., et al. (2009). Pre-treatment symptom cluster in breast cancer patients is associated with worse sleep, fatigue and depression during chemotherapy. *Psycho-Oncology*, 18, 187–194.
- Mills, P. J., von Kanel, R., Norman, D., Natarajan, L., Ziegler, M. G., Dimsdale, J. E., et al. (2007). Inflammation and sleep in healthy individuals. *Sleep*, 30, 729–735.
- Ohayon, M. M., Carskadon, M. A., Guilleminault, C., & Vitiello, M. V. (2004). Meta-analysis of quantitative sleep parameters from childhood to old age in healthy individuals: Developing normative sleep values across the human lifespan. *Sleep*, 27, 1255–1273.
- Opp, M. R. (2006). Sleep and psychoneuroimmunology. *Neurologic Clinics*, 24, 493–506.
- Ranjbaran, Z., Keefer, L., Stepanski, E., Farhadi, A., & Keshavarzian, A. (2007). The relevance of sleep abnormalities to chronic inflammatory conditions. *Inflammation Research*, 56, 1–7.
- Rasch, B., Dodt, C., Moelle, M., & Born, J. (2007). Sleep-stage-specific regulation of plasma catecholamine concentration. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 32, 884–891.

- Redwine, L., Dang, J., Hall, M., & Irwin, M. (2003). Disordered sleep, nocturnal cytokines, and immunity in alcoholics. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65, 75–85.
- Sabbatini, M., Pisani, A., Crispo, A., Nappi, R., Gallo, R., Cianciaruso, B., et al. (2008). Renal transplantation and sleep: A new life is not enough. *Journal of Nephrology*, 21(Suppl 13), S97–S101.
- Somers, V. K. (2005). Sleep: A new cardiovascular frontier. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 353, 2070–2073.
- Tartar, J. L., Ward, C. P., Cordeira, J. W., Legare, S. L., Blanchette, A. J., McCarley, R. W., & Strecker, R. E. (2009). Experimental sleep fragmentation and sleep deprivation in rats increases exploration in an open field test of anxiety while increasing plasma corticosterone levels. *Behavioural Brain Research*, 197, 450–453.
- Tasali, E., Van Cauter, E., & Ehrmann, D. A. (2006). Relationships between sleep disordered breathing and glucose metabolism in polycystic ovary syndrome. *The Journal of Clinical Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 91, 36–42.
- Tucker, A. M., Dinges, D. F., & Van Dongen, H. P. (2007). Trait interindividual differences in the sleep physiology of healthy young adults. *Journal of Sleep Research*, 16, 170–180.

Description

It is generally accepted that 7–8 h is the optimal amount of sleep needed per night for adequate daytime functioning and to reduce the risk of developing serious medical conditions. However, many Americans sleep less than 7 h per night and many report sleep difficulties. The percentage of men and women reporting sleeping less than 6 h per night has increased significantly over the last 20 years. Broad societal changes, including longer work hours, shift work, later night life, increased dependence on technology, and a current mindset of “if you snooze, you lose” have contributed to the increases in sleep loss among adults. Sleep loss increases the risk and incidence of diseases that may ultimately result in death. Many of the studies examining sleep duration and adverse health outcomes have found a U-shaped relationship suggesting that too little sleep and too much sleep is detrimental to health. And, between 7 and 8 h of sleep appears to be associated with reduced health risk.

Sleep and Health

Faith S. Luyster
School of Nursing, University of Pittsburgh,
Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Sleep deprivation](#)

Definition

Sleep is defined as a reversible state of perceptual disengagement and unresponsiveness to the external environment. Sleep is a complex physiological and behavioral process that is part of every individual's life and a critical determinant of physical and mental health.

Sleep and Mortality

Growing evidence over the last few decades suggests that progressively shorter (<7 h per night) or longer (>8 h per night) sleep duration is associated with a greater risk of mortality (Cappuccio et al. 2010; Kripke et al. 2002). The mechanisms that underlie these associations are not fully understood. Potential adverse physiologic effects of short sleep duration may contribute to negative health outcomes like cardiovascular disease, diabetes, and obesity, all of which are associated with increased mortality risk. Sleep restriction has been shown to impair glucose tolerance, increase evening cortisol levels, alter sympathetic nervous system activity, reduce leptin levels and increase levels of ghrelin, and increase inflammatory markers. The mechanisms linking long sleep duration with mortality is unknown and may be explained by underlying confounders such as depression, low socioeconomic status, undiagnosed

medical disease, poor physical health, and less physical activity.

Sleep and Cardiovascular Disease

Sleeping less than 7 h per night has been found to increase the risk of developing high blood pressure (i.e., hypertension) and elevate blood pressure in those with existing hypertension (Calhoun and Harding 2010). Long sleep duration (≥ 9 h per night) may also increase the risk of hypertension. The effect of insufficient sleep on blood pressure may help to explain the relationship between poor sleep and cardiovascular disease and stroke. Researchers have found both short (< 7 h per night) and long (> 8 h per night) sleep durations are associated with a greater risk of developing or dying from coronary heart disease and stroke (Cappuccio et al. 2011).

There is also growing evidence of a connection between ► **“Sleep Apnea”** and cardiovascular disease. People with sleep apnea have frequent awakenings at night as a result of repetitive pauses in breathing. This sleep fragmentation and reoccurring drops in oxygen levels in the blood called hypoxemia cause increases in blood pressure during the night that can persist during the daytime and over time can lead to hypertension. People with sleep apnea have an increased risk of developing coronary heart disease, stroke, and heart failure. In a 10-year study, severe sleep apnea was associated with an increased risk of fatal and nonfatal cardiovascular events.

Sleep and Obesity

Numerous studies have reported a link between sleep duration and obesity. For example, researchers have shown that people who sleep less than 6 h per night or more than 8 h per night are more likely to have a higher body mass index and that people who sleep 8 h have the lowest BMI (Cappuccio et al. 2008). Several pathways

have been identified that could mediate the relationship between short sleep and increased risk of obesity: alterations in glucose metabolism, appetite control, and energy expenditure. Sleep loss impacts hormones that regulate glucose processing and appetite (Taheri et al. 2004). After sleep loss, the body's tissues are less responsive to insulin (i.e., insulin resistance), a hormone secreted by the pancreas that regulates the level of glucose in the body. As a result, glucose levels in the blood remain high, making it more difficult for the body to use stored fat for energy. Sleep loss also impacts hormones involved in appetite regulation causing people to eat even when they have had an adequate number of calories. Specifically, short sleep lowers levels of leptin, a “full signal” hormone, and increases levels of ghrelin, an appetite stimulant hormone. One night of sleep loss can decrease energy expenditure (i.e., calories burned) during rest.

Sleep and Diabetes

Numerous epidemiological studies have found that short (≤ 6 h per night) and long (≥ 9 h per night) sleep durations are associated with an increased risk of developing type 2 diabetes and impaired glucose tolerance, a precursor to diabetes (Knutson and Van Cauter 2008). Insulin resistance associated with sleep loss can over time compromise the ability of β -cells in the pancreas to release insulin, causing higher than normal levels of glucose in the blood which can lead to type 2 diabetes. In a study of healthy adults, restricting sleep to 4 h per night for six nights led to impaired glucose tolerance.

In addition, sleep apnea is a risk factor for developing type 2 diabetes. Several potential mechanisms explaining how sleep apnea may alter glucose metabolism have been proposed. Sleep fragmentation and hypoxemia associated with sleep apnea can alter autonomic and neuroendocrine function, increase release of inflammatory cytokines, and induce adipokines and thus play a role in altering glucose metabolism.

Sleep and Cancer

Emerging evidence suggests that sleep duration may increase risks of several types of cancer. The first investigation of the association between sleep and breast cancer found women with longer sleep durations (≥ 9 h per night) had a decreased risk of breast cancer. Subsequent studies have found mixed results with some studies finding an inverse relationship between short sleep duration and risk of breast cancer and one study found no association. Short sleep duration was associated with an increased risk of colorectal cancer in patients undergoing colonoscopy screening and an increased risk of prostate cancer. Epidemiological studies have reported a significantly increased risk of developing a number of malignancies including breast, colon, prostate, and endometrial cancer in night-shift workers. Nocturnal melatonin suppression due to decreased sleep duration or light exposure at night in the case of shift workers may alter the oncogenic action of melatonin (Blask [2009](#)).

Sleep and the Immune System

The relationship between sleep and immunity is reciprocal such that infections increase sleep duration and sleep deprivation negatively impacts immune function. Experimental studies have shown that sleep deprivation results in suppression in natural killer cell activity, reductions in interleukin-2 production, increased circulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines such as IL-6, tumor necrosis factor (TNF) α , and reduction of anti-inflammatory cytokines (Bryant et al. [2004](#)). Sleep is needed for optimal resistance to infection. Sleep restriction in healthy adults has been shown to reduce antibody production response to the influenza vaccination. One night of sleep deprivation reduced the formation of specific antibodies to hepatitis A antigens after vaccination. Short sleep duration in the weeks preceding exposure to rhinovirus increased the susceptibility to developing a cold.

Sleep and Neurocognitive Function

It has been established that sleep deprivation impairs cognitive and motor performance (Durner and Dinges [2005](#)). However, some people are more vulnerable to the effects of sleep loss than others. Sleep deprivation studies have found a wide range of effects on cognitive function including decrements in attention especially vigilance, working and long-term memory, decision making, response inhibition, processing speed, and reasoning (Lim and Dinges [2010](#)). Sleep deprivation results in impairments in psychomotor performance that are comparable to those induced by alcohol consumption at or above the legal limit (Williamson and Feyer [2000](#)). Sleep loss increases the risk of traffic accidents as demonstrated by poor performance on driving simulators after sleep deprivation. In addition to an increased risk for motor vehicle crashes, sleep deprivation and related neurocognitive impairments are associated with work-related injuries and fatal accidents. Sleep apnea is also associated with deficits in cognitive function and accounts for a significant proportion of motor vehicle accidents.

Sleep and Mental Health

Numerous studies have shown a high rate of comorbidity between sleep complaints (e.g., insomnia) and psychiatric disorders, especially mood and anxiety disorders (Staner [2010](#)). This relationship goes beyond mere co-occurrence and is bidirectional since insomnia contributes to the development or exacerbation of depression and anxiety disorders, and affective disorders and their treatments contribute to insomnia (Neckelmann et al. [2007](#); Sateia [2009](#)). Nondepressed individuals with insomnia have a two times greater risk for developing depression than individuals without sleep difficulties. Sleep problems affect outcomes for patients with depression. Studies report that depressed patients who continue to experience insomnia are at greater risk of relapse and recurrence of depression and risk of suicide.

Conclusions

Sleep loss is a growing public health problem worldwide. The health consequences of a sleepy society are enormous and have a significant economic impact with billions of dollars spent on direct medical costs associated with morbidities and sleep-related injuries and accidents. Sleep deprivation can alter biological processes underlying cardiovascular, metabolic, and immune function. Cumulative long-term effects of sleep loss have been associated with a number of serious health consequences, including cardiovascular disease, obesity, cancer, and type 2 diabetes. Sleep is not a luxury and is as important for health as other health-promoting behaviors like diet and exercise. Public awareness is needed to emphasize and reinforce the essentialness of sleep for health.

Cross-References

- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- [Glucose: Levels, Control, Intolerance, and Metabolism](#)
- [Hypertension](#)
- [Immune Function](#)
- [Insomnia](#)
- [Insulin](#)
- [Sleep](#)
- [Sleep Apnea](#)
- [Sleep Duration](#)
- [Type 2 Diabetes](#)

References and Further Readings

- Blask, D. E. (2009). Melatonin, sleep disturbance and cancer risk. *Sleep Medicine Reviews*, 13(4), 257–264.
- Bryant, P. A., Trinder, J., & Curtis, N. (2004). Sick and tired: Does sleep have a vital role in the immune system? *Nature Reviews Immunology*, 4, 457–467.
- Calhoun, D. A., & Harding, S. M. (2010). Sleep and hypertension. *Chest*, 138(2), 434–443.
- Cappuccio, F. P., Taggart, F. M., Kandala, N. B., & Currie, A. (2008). Meta-analysis of short sleep duration and obesity in children and adults. *Sleep*, 31(5), 619–626.
- Cappuccio, F. P., D'Elia, L., Strazzullo, P., & Miller, M. A. (2010). Sleep duration and all-cause mortality:

- A systematic review and meta-analysis of prospective studies. *Sleep*, 33(5), 585–592.
- Cappuccio, F. P., Cooper, D., D'Elia, L., Strazzullo, P., & Miller, M. A. (2011). Sleep duration predicts cardiovascular outcomes: A systematic review and meta-analysis of prospective studies. *European Heart Journal*, 32(12), 1484–1492.
- Durmer, J. S., & Dinges, D. F. (2005). Neurocognitive consequences of sleep deprivation. *Seminars in Neurology*, 25(2), 117–129.
- Knutson, K. L., & Van Cauter, E. (2008). Associations between sleep loss and increased risk of obesity and diabetes. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 1129(1), 287–304.
- Kripke, D. F., Garfinkel, L., Wingard, D. L., Klauber, M. R., & Marler, M. R. (2002). Mortality associated with sleep duration and insomnia. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 59(2), 131–136.
- Lim, J., & Dinges, D. F. (2010). A meta-analysis of the impact of short-term sleep deprivation on cognitive variables. *Psychological Bulletin*, 136(3), 375–389.
- Neckelmann, D., Mykletun, A., & Dahl, A. A. (2007). Chronic insomnia as a risk factor for developing anxiety and depression. *Sleep*, 30(7), 873–880.
- Sateia, M. J. (2009). Update on sleep and psychiatric disorders. *Chest*, 135(5), 1370–1379.
- Staner, L. (2010). Comorbidity of insomnia and depression. *Sleep Medicine Reviews*, 14(1), 35–46.
- Taheri, S., Lin, L., Austin, D., Young, T., & Mignot, E. (2004). Short sleep duration is associated with reduced leptin, elevated ghrelin, and increased body mass index. *PLoS Medicine*, 1(3), e62.
- Williamson, A. M., & Feyer, A. M. (2000). Moderate sleep deprivation produces impairments in cognitive and motor performance equivalent to legally prescribed levels of alcohol intoxication. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 57(10), 649–655.

Sleep Apnea

Faith S. Luyster

School of Nursing, University of Pittsburgh,
Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Obstructive sleep apnea](#); [Sleep-disordered breathing](#)

Definition

Sleep apnea is a common sleep disorder characterized by repetitive pauses in breathing or very shallow breaths during sleep (Strollo and Rogers 1996; Young et al. 2002). Pauses in breathing, known as apneas, and shallow breathing events, called hypopneas, can last a few seconds to minutes and can occur multiple times during the night. The termination of apneas and hypopneas is associated with a transient arousal from sleep. Sleep disruption due to frequent arousals may lead to excessive daytime sleepiness or fatigue. Loud snoring, witnessed breathing interruptions, and excessive daytime sleepiness are the most common signs of sleep apnea. Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) occurs when the airway collapses or is blocked during sleep. Central sleep apnea results from temporary loss of ventilatory effort lasting at least 10 seconds and can co-occur with OSA. An evaluation for sleep apnea entails an assessment for signs and symptoms and a detailed craniofacial examination followed by a full night of in-laboratory or portable polysomnography to confirm diagnosis (Epstein et al. 2009). Sleep apnea requires long-term management. Positive airway pressure therapy, oral appliances, and surgery are the most common treatments for sleep apnea, but other behavioral interventions such as weight loss, smoking cessation, body position, and alcohol and sedative cessation, can be useful adjuncts to conventional therapies (Epstein et al. 2009). Untreated sleep apnea can result in a number of negative consequences, including excessive daytime sleepiness and fatigue, psychological symptoms, cognitive and performance impairments, and increased risk for cardiovascular and cerebrovascular disease (Bradley and Floras 2009; Sateia 2003). Decreased vigilance or falling asleep at the wheel increases the risk of motor vehicle crashes in individuals with sleep apnea (Ellen et al. 2006).

Cross-References

- Polysomnography
- Sleep Fragmentation

References and Further Readings

- Bradley, T. D., & Floras, J. S. (2009). Obstructive sleep apnoea and its cardiovascular consequences. *The Lancet*, 373(9657), 82–93.
- Ellen, R. L. B., Marshall, S. C., Palayew, M., Molnar, F. J., Wilson, K. G., & Man-Son-Hing, M. (2006). Systematic review of motor vehicle crash risk in persons with sleep apnea. *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*, 2(2), 193–200.
- Epstein, L. J., Kristo, D., Strollo, P. J., Friedman, N., Malhotra, A., Patil, S. P., et al. (2009). Clinical guideline for the evaluation, management, and long-term care of obstructive sleep apnea in adults. *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*, 5(3), 263–276.
- Sateia, M. J. (2003). Neuropsychological impairment and quality of life in obstructive sleep apnea. *Clinics in Chest Medicine*, 24(4), 249–259.
- Strollo, P. J., & Rogers, R. M. (1996). Obstructive sleep apnea. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 334(2), 99–104.
- Young, T., Peppard, P. E., & Gottlieb, D. J. (2002). Epidemiology of obstructive sleep apnea: A population health perspective. *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*, 165(9), 1217–1239.

Sleep Architecture

Salvatore Insana

Western Psychiatric Institute and Clinic,
Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Definition

Sleep Architecture is the visual representation of the way sleep stages are organized throughout a polysomnographically recorded sleep interval. Sleep Architecture is displayed on a hypnogram plot.

Description

Sleep can be measured with polysomnography (PSG), which consists of multiple measures that include, but are not limited to, electroencephalography (EEG), electrooculography (EOG), and electromyography (EMG) (see for a review Keenan and Hirshkowitz 2011). PSG literally translates to “many” (poly) “sleep” (somno) “writings” (graphy). When sleep is measured

with PSG, the measured signals are typically sectioned into 30-s intervals consecutively throughout the entire PSG recording period. These 30-s intervals are termed “epochs.” Within each epoch, the PSG-measured signals (from EEG, EOG, and EMG) are cumulatively used to differentiate sleep from wake, and to further classify sleep into different categories that are known as sleep stages.

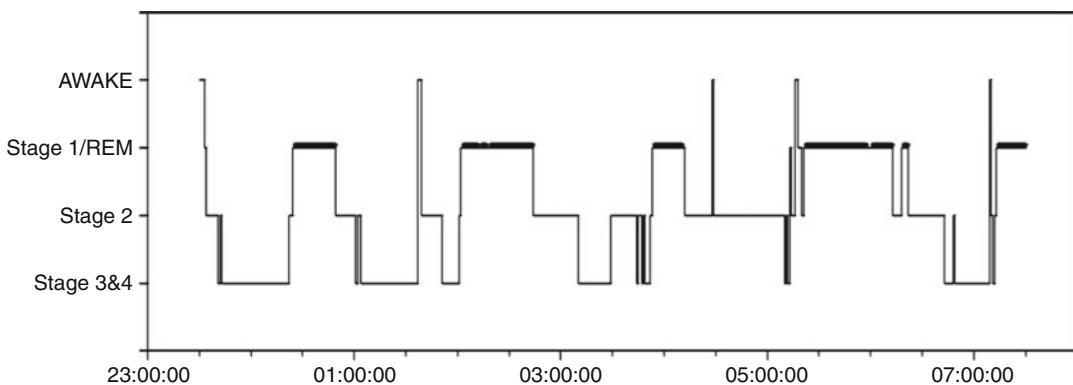
According to the 2007 American Academy of Sleep Medicine standard practice parameters, sleep can be classified into four stages that include N1, N2, N3, and Rapid Eye Movement (REM) sleep (Iber et al. 2007). The PSG signals are used to identify each individual epoch as a particular sleep stage. The act of using PSG signals to identify each epoch as a particular sleep stage is known as sleep stage scoring. Sleep stage scoring is completed by a trained technician who visually interprets the PSG signals in accordance with standard practice parameters.

Once the entire PSG sleep study is scored, the study is summarized into a clinical report. The clinical report describes the sleep parameters measured (e.g., EEG, EOG, EMG, airflow parameters), sleep scoring data (e.g., lights out clock time, lights on clock time, total sleep time), arousal events (e.g., number of arousals, arousal index), respiratory events (e.g., apnea index, hypopnea index), cardiac events (e.g., average heart rate during sleep), movement events (e.g., number of periodic limb movements during sleep), and summary statements (e.g., findings

related to sleep diagnoses, behavioral observations, sleep hypnogram). Of particular relevance to sleep architecture is the sleep hypnogram.

The sleep hypnogram is a summary figure that visually displays the scored wake and sleep stages as they occurred throughout the entire PSG recording period. The sleep hypnogram is formatted with time throughout the entire PSG sleep study as a continuous variable on the X-axis, and the visually scored wake and sleep stages as categorical variables on the Y-axis. The categorical wake and sleep stages are positioned with REM closest to the intersection with the X-axis, followed by N3, N2, N1, and wake in an upward ascending order; however, the order and format of these stages can vary per laboratory (e.g., Fig. 1).

As time progresses throughout the sleep monitoring period, the person being monitored naturally enters and exits the wake and sleep stages that are indicated on the Y-axis. The time spent in a particular stage is represented by a horizontal line adjacent to the respective stage, and the length of that horizontal line reflects the time spent in that particular stage as it corresponds to the “real time” for which the stage occurred – indicated on the X-axis. During a stage transition, the horizontal line turns 90° (right angle) positive or negative to become vertical and adjacent to the newly entered stage – as indicated on the Y-axis; then the line turns 90° (right angle) once again to reach a horizontal position with a length that represents the time spent in that particular stage – indicated on



Sleep Architecture, Fig. 1 Sleep hypnogram and sleep architecture during a 20-year-old female’s overnight sleep monitoring period

the X-axis. As the different wake and sleep stages fluctuate throughout the night, the hypnogram line appears at different horizontal levels (stage-dependent [Y-axis]), at different lengths on each level (time-dependent [X-axis]); and as the levels shift (stage shift), the horizontal line is connected to the previous and subsequent horizontal level by a vertical line (e.g., elbow connector).

Consequently, the wake and sleep stages represented on a sleep hypnogram resemble the back drop of a city skyline, with continuous geometric cubes and rectangles of different heights and widths that appear to continuously penetrate and retreat from the skyline. The figurative reference to a city skyline has been generally accepted, and has literally generated the term “sleep architecture.” Thus, sleep architecture is the visual representation of wake and sleep stages that occurred throughout a polysomnographically recorded sleep interval, and is displayed on a hypnogram plot.

The visual structure of sleep architecture is dependent upon the sleep stage, and the time in the particular sleep stage. Typically, sleep is entered through N1, followed by N2, followed by N3, and then followed by REM – this progressive series is termed a “sleep cycle.” The typical sleep cycle occurs throughout sleep at approximately 50-min intervals among infants (Grigg-Damberger et al. 2007) and approximately 90–110-min intervals among adults (Iber et al. 2007). The time spent in the different stages changes throughout the night. The first portion of the night primarily consists of non-REM sleep (i.e., N1, N2, and N3), and the second portion of the night primarily consists of REM sleep.

The sleep architecture displayed on the hypnogram from a normative adult PSG sleep study will display cumulatively longer horizontal lines adjacent to N1, N2, and N3 during the first portion of the night relative to the second portion, and will conversely display cumulatively longer horizontal lines adjacent to REM during the second portion of the night relative to the first portion. A sleep hypnogram will display the sleep stage cyclicality, as well as changes in time spent in particular stages as they occur throughout the recording period – this differs across nights. Since the time spent in different sleep stages generally

changes throughout the lifespan (Ohayon et al. 2004), the percentage of time spent in each sleep stage, as reflected in the histogram, can differ by to the age of the person assessed.

Cross-References

- [Non-REM Sleep](#)
- [Polysomnography](#)
- [REM Sleep](#)
- [Sleep](#)

References and Further Readings

- Grigg-Damberger, M., Gozal, D., Marcus, C. L., Quan, S. F., Rosen, C. L., Chervin, R. D., et al. (2007). The visual scoring of sleep and arousals in infants and children. *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*, 3, 201–240.
- Iber, C., Ancoli-Israel, S., Chesson, A., Quan, S. F., & American Academy of Sleep Medicine. (2007). *The AASM manual for the scoring of sleep and associated events: Rules, terminology and technical specifications* (1st ed.). Westchester: American Academy of Sleep Medicine.
- Keenan, S., & Hirshkowitz, M. (2011). Monitoring and staging human sleep. In M. H. Kryger, T. Roth, & W. C. Dement (Eds.), *Principles and practice of sleep medicine* (5th ed., pp. 1602–1609). St. Louis: Elsevier.
- Ohayon, M. M., Carskadon, M. A., Guilleminault, C., & Vitiello, M. V. (2004). Meta-analysis of quantitative sleep parameters from childhood to old age in healthy individuals: Developing normative sleep values across the human lifespan. *Sleep*, 27, 1255–1273.

Sleep Continuity

Elizabeth Mezick

Department of Psychology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Sleep efficiency](#); [Sleep fragmentation](#); [Sleep maintenance](#)

Definition

Sleep continuity refers to the amount and distribution of sleep versus wakefulness in a given

sleep period; it includes both sleep initiation and sleep maintenance (Hall et al. [in press](#)). Specific indices of sleep continuity may include latency to sleep onset, number of awakenings after sleep onset, total time of wakefulness after sleep onset, and overall sleep efficiency. Sleep continuity is most often assessed using self-report questionnaires (i.e., retrospective reports, morning diaries or logs), wrist actigraphy, or polysomnography.

Sleep continuity declines as part of the normal aging process (Ohayon et al. [2004](#)). Disruptions in sleep continuity are typical among individuals with insomnia and are also commonly reported by or observed in those with mood disorders, anxiety disorders, and substance disorders. Many medical conditions and treatments are also related to disrupted sleep continuity; some of the most common examples include sleep apnea, chronic pain, asthma and respiratory conditions, chronic renal disease, infectious diseases, and cancer. Decreased sleep continuity has been associated with increased inflammatory markers, susceptibility to infection, elevated blood pressure, obesity, presence of metabolic syndrome, diabetes, and cardiovascular disease. Several studies have reported a link between decreased sleep continuity and incident diabetes or incident cardiovascular disease.

Cross-References

► [Sleep Fragmentation](#)

References and Further Readings

- Hall, M., Greeson, J., & Mezick, E. (in press). Sleep as a biobehavioral risk factor for cardiovascular disease. In S. R. Waldstein, W. J. Kop, & L. I. Katzel (Eds.), *Handbook of cardiovascular behavioral medicine*. New York: Springer.
- Ohayon, M. M., Carkadon, M. A., Guilleminault, C., & Vitiello, M. V. (2004). Meta-analysis of quantitative sleep parameters from childhood to old age in healthy individuals: Developing normative sleep values across the human lifespan. *Sleep*, 27, 1255–1273.

Sleep Curtailment

► [Sleep Restriction](#)

Sleep Debt

► [Sleep Restriction](#)

Sleep Deprivation

Martica H. Hall

Department of Psychiatry, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Sleep deprived](#)

Definition

Sleep deprivation generally refers to the total loss of sleep due to experimental manipulations or circumstance.

Description

Sleep deprivation refers to the total loss of sleep. The term is generally used in the context of experimental manipulations which keep individuals (or experimental animals) awake throughout their usual sleep period. Sleep deprivation also occurs in naturalistic conditions such as when a student stays awake all night to study for an exam. Experimental and observational sleep deprivation studies have been used to evaluate the cognitive, behavioral, emotional, and physiological consequences of sleep loss.

Experimental sleep deprivation studies in humans generally deprive participants of 1–3 nights of sleep, resulting in 24–72 h of wakefulness. Experimental animal models can extend sleep deprivation for much longer periods of time (e.g., 2 weeks). In both kinds of studies,

electroencephalographic (EEG) monitoring is used to ensure wakefulness, usually through interactions with study staff or procedural manipulations. For example, the classical “disk-over-water” method pioneered by Dr. Allan Rechtschaffen at the University of Chicago involved placing two animals on a rotating disk suspended above water (Rechtschaffen and Bergmann 1995). A barrier divided the disk into half, with the experimental animal on one side of the disk and the yoked animal on the other. When the experimental animal showed EEG signs of sleep, the disk would rotate. If the animal did not wake up, they would fall into the water when they reached the barrier. Through conditioning, the experimental animal would learn to wake up as soon as the disk started to rotate. The yoked animal, on the other hand, would learn to sleep when the disk was *not* rotating. This elegant design allowed experimenters to tease apart the effects of movement and stress associated with older forms of sleep deprivation (e.g., placing the animal on a continuous running wheel with no option for escape) from the effects of sleep deprivation. In human studies, the constant routine protocol, which involves keeping participants in a recumbent position for the duration of the protocol, is used to control for the influence of extraneous factors such as increased movement on study outcomes.

Although individuals may feel that sleep deprivation has no adverse effects on them, experimental evidence suggests that perceptions of resiliency to sleep loss are unfounded. The “disconnect” between subjective perceptions of sleepiness and objective indices of health and functioning in humans has been systematically documented by Dr. David Dinges and his colleagues at the University of California (see Lim and Dinges 2008). More recently, others have demonstrated that one night of total sleep deprivation in healthy young adults is associated with increased blood pressure and amygdala reactivity to negative emotional stimuli (Franzen et al. 2011; Yoo et al. 2007). As a complement to studies in

humans, animal models, which allow exquisite control over sleep and wakefulness, have begun to elucidate the influence of sleep deprivation on gene expression, molecular signaling, and synaptic plasticity (e.g., Seugnet et al. 2011; Wang et al. 2010). Taken as a whole, these studies demonstrate that sleep is essential to health and functioning across species.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Gene Expression](#)
- ▶ [Sleep](#)
- ▶ [Sleep and Health](#)

References and Further Readings

- Franzen, P. L., Gianaros, P. J., Marsland, A. L., Hall, M., Siegle, G. J., Dahl, R. E., et al. (2011). Cardiovascular reactivity to acute psychological stress following sleep deprivation. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 73(8), 679–682.
- Lim, J., & Dinges, D. F. (2008). Sleep deprivation and vigilant attention. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 1129, 305–322.
- Rechtschaffen, A., & Bergmann, B. M. (1995). Sleep deprivation in the rat by the disk-over-water method. *Behavioural Brain Research*, 69(1–2), 55–63.
- Seugnet, L., Suzuki, Y., Donlea, J. M., Gottschalk, L., & Shaw, P. J. (2011). Sleep deprivation during early-adult development results in long-lasting learning deficits in adult *Drosophila*. *Sleep*, 34(2), 137–146.
- Wang, H., Liu, Y., Briesemann, M., & Yan, J. (2010). Computational analysis of gene regulation in animal sleep deprivation. *Physiological Genomics*, 42(3), 427–436.
- Yoo, S. S., Gujar, N., Hu, P., Jolesz, F. A., & Walker, M. P. (2007). The human emotional brain without sleep: A prefrontal amygdala disconnect. *Current Biology*, 17, R877–R878.

Sleep Deprived

- ▶ [Sleep Deprivation](#)

Sleep Duration

Christopher E. Kline

Department of Health and Physical Activity,
University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

Total sleep time

Definition

Sleep duration typically refers to the total amount of sleep obtained, either during the nocturnal sleep episode or across the 24-h period.

Description

Measurement

Sleep duration can be measured via questionnaire, diary, actigraphy, or polysomnography. In population-based epidemiologic studies, single-item self-report measures of sleep duration have often been utilized (e.g., *How many hours of sleep do you obtain on a typical night?*). In clinical and research settings, sleep diaries, actigraphy, and polysomnography provide assessments of sleep duration. Sleep diaries involve the subjective report of sleep duration, typically assessed daily for a minimum of 1 week. Actigraphy provides an objective estimate of sleep/wake status from the detection of bodily movement, whereas polysomnography measures sleep duration through the assessment of multiple physiological signals, including brain, eye, and muscle activity. Although typically correlated, large discrepancies are often noted between subjective and objective measures of sleep duration; in most populations, self-reported sleep duration is overestimated compared to objective measurement (Matthews et al. 2018).

Sleep Duration Across the Lifespan

Sleep is regulated by a complex interaction of homeostatic and circadian factors. The homeostatic process reflects the need for sleep, accumulating during sustained wakefulness and dissipating during sleep. The circadian process, driven by outputs of the circadian pacemaker, promotes wakefulness during the day and evening and promotes sleep during the night, with the peak sleep-promoting signal during the early morning. Thus, circadian signals oppose the rise of homeostatic sleep pressure during the day, allowing for uninterrupted daytime wakefulness. Both circadian and homeostatic processes promote sleep onset, with circadian sleep-promoting signals facilitating continued consolidated sleep despite the gradual dissipation of homeostatic sleep pressure over the course of the night. Aging results in changes in the homeostatic and circadian regulation of sleep, with a phase advance of the circadian wake-promoting signal (i.e., increased signal for wakefulness in the morning but decreased in the evening) and reduced homeostatic drive for sleep (Dijk et al. 1999). As a result, sleep in older adults is commonly phase advanced, of shorter duration, and with greater fragmentation compared to younger adults.

In general, sleep duration decreases from infancy through old age. Sleep duration (per 24 h) averages >13 h during infancy, gradually declining to 8–9 h during late adolescence (Williams et al. 2013). Normative sleep duration then declines throughout adulthood to approximately 6.5 h at 60 years, at which point sleep duration tends to stabilize (Ohayon et al. 2004). However, these average values do not indicate whether sleep need is being met, particularly during development. For instance, although weekday sleep duration decreases throughout childhood and adolescence, weekend sleep duration remains similar from age 5 to 16. This pattern suggests a greater influence of environmental factors (e.g., school schedules) than biological or maturational influences on sleep duration during childhood and adolescence.

Whether sleep duration has changed dramatically over recent decades is controversial. Whereas some studies have documented significant decreases in sleep duration and increased prevalence of short sleep over the past 30–50 years (Ford et al. 2015), others have presented evidence that longitudinal changes in sleep duration have been minimal to nonexistent (Bin et al. 2013; Youngstedt et al. 2016). Moreover, recent work suggests that average adult sleep duration has minimally increased (~1 min/year) over the past 15 years (Basner and Dinges 2018). Other studies estimate that the prevalence of short and long sleep duration (i.e., the extremes of sleep duration that are most strongly associated with health risk) has not appreciably changed over ~30 years (Bonke 2015).

Sleep Duration and Health

Sleep is an essential behavior for memory consolidation, development, and restoration of nervous, immune, skeletal, and muscular systems. Consequently, the amount of sleep obtained has a significant influence on one's health and functioning. Sleep duration is at least partly determined by genetic influences, so interindividual differences in sleep duration are to be expected. Nevertheless, a significant association between sleep duration and health has been consistently documented in epidemiologic research.

The association between sleep duration and health typically has a U-shaped distribution, with the lowest risk associated adverse health outcomes typically observed with a sleep duration of ~7 h for adults (Itani et al. 2017; Jike et al. 2018). Both short and long sleep have been associated with increased risk of mortality and numerous morbidities, including cardiovascular disease (e.g., atherosclerosis), metabolic dysfunction (e.g., type 2 diabetes, obesity), and cognitive impairment. However, the most marked morbidity and mortality risks have been associated with extreme short and long sleep (<5 and >9 h, respectively).

The possible mechanisms by which sleep duration affects health likely differ between short and long sleep duration. Most research has focused on how short sleep may affect health, with blunted

hormonal control of appetite, increased inflammatory levels, alterations in hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis and sympathoadrenal activity, and decreased immunity to pathogens observed following short-term experimental sleep restriction (Grandner et al. 2010). Plausible mechanisms linking long sleep duration to excess morbidity and mortality are less clear; however, fatigue, impaired immunity, reduced photoperiod length, and underlying disease have been postulated (Youngstedt and Kripke 2004). However, short and long sleep share some possible mechanisms. Both short and long sleep duration are more common among with those with low socioeconomic status and racial/ethnic minorities. Moreover, sleep complaints and poor health behaviors (e.g., smoking, alcohol, physical inactivity) are more prevalent in short and long sleepers in comparison to those with normal sleep duration.

Sleep Duration Recommendations

In recognition of the growing evidence base on the importance of adequate sleep duration for optimal health, multiple professional organizations have published consensus sleep duration recommendations for children and adults. The American Academy of Sleep Medicine (AASM) recognized that daily sleep need differs across development as they recommended, for example, 12–16 h for infants and 8–10 h for teenagers (Paruthi et al. 2016). For adults, the AASM (along with the Sleep Research Society) recommended sleep duration ≥ 7 h to promote ideal health (Watson et al. 2015). Recommendations from the American Thoracic Society and National Sleep Foundation were similar to those from the AASM (Mukherjee et al. 2015; Hirshkowitz et al. 2015).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Actigraphy \(Wrist, for Measuring Rest/Activity Patterns and Sleep\)](#)
- ▶ [Polysomnography](#)
- ▶ [Sleep](#)
- ▶ [Sleep and Health](#)

- [Sleep Deprivation](#)
- [Sleep Quality](#)
- [Sleep Restriction](#)

References and Further Reading

- Basner, M., & Dinges, D. F. (2018). Sleep duration in the United States 2003–2016: First signs of success in the fight against sleep deficiency? *Sleep*, *41*, zsy012.
- Bin, Y. S., Marshall, N. S., & Glozier, N. (2013). Sleeping at the limits: The changing prevalence of short and long sleep durations in 10 countries. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, *177*, 826–833.
- Bonke, J. (2015). Trends in short and long sleep in Denmark from 1964 to 2009, and the associations with employment, SES (socioeconomic status) and BMI. *Sleep Medicine*, *16*, 385–390.
- Dijk, D. J., Duffy, J. F., Riel, E., Shanahan, T. L., & Czeisler, C. A. (1999). Ageing and the circadian and homeostatic regulation of human sleep during forced desynchrony of rest, melatonin and temperature rhythms. *Journal of Physiology*, *516*, 611–627.
- Ford, E. S., Cunningham, T. J., & Croft, J. B. (2015). Trends in self-reported sleep duration among US adults from 1985 to 2012. *Sleep*, *38*, 829–832.
- Grandner, M. A., Hale, L., Moore, M., & Patel, N. P. (2010). Mortality associated with short sleep duration: The evidence, the possible mechanisms, and the future. *Sleep Medicine Reviews*, *14*, 191–203.
- Hirshkowitz, M., Whiton, K., Albert, S. M., Alessi, C., Bruni, O., DonCarlos, L., ... Ware, J. C. (2015). National Sleep Foundation's updated sleep duration recommendations: Final report. *Sleep Health*, *1*, 233–243.
- Itani, O., Jike, M., Watanabe, N., & Kaneita, Y. (2017). Short sleep duration and health outcomes: A systematic review, meta-analysis, and meta-regression. *Sleep Medicine*, *32*, 246–256.
- Jike, M., Itani, O., Watanabe, N., Buysse, D. J., & Kaneita, Y. (2018). Long sleep duration and health outcomes: A systematic review, meta-analysis and meta-regression. *Sleep Medicine Reviews*, *39*, 25–36.
- Matthews, K. A., Patel, S. R., Pantescio, E. J., Buysse, D. J., Kamarck, T. W., Lee, L., & Hall, M. H. (2018). Similarities and differences in estimates of sleep duration by polysomnography, actigraphy, diary, and self-reported habitual sleep in a community sample. *Sleep Health*, *4*, 96–103.
- Mukherjee, S., Patel, S. R., Kales, S. N., Ayas, N. T., Strohl, K. P., Gozal, D., & Malhotra, A. (2015). An official American Thoracic Society statement: The importance of healthy sleep. Recommendations and future priorities. *American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine*, *191*, 1450–1458.
- Ohayon, M. M., Carskadon, M. A., Guilleminault, C., & Vitiello, M. V. (2004). Meta-analysis of quantitative sleep parameters from childhood to old age in healthy individuals: Developing normative sleep values across the human lifespan. *Sleep*, *27*, 1255–1273.
- Paruthi, S., Brooks, L. J., D'Ambrosio, C., Hall, W. A., Kotagal, S., Lloyd, R. M., ... Wise, M. S. (2016). Recommended amount of sleep for pediatric populations: A consensus statement of the American Academy of sleep medicine. *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*, *12*, 785–786.
- Watson, N. F., Badr, M. S., Belenky, G., Bliwise, D. L., Buxton, O. M., Buysse, D., ... Tasali, E. (2015). Recommended amount of sleep for a healthy adult: A joint consensus statement of the American Academy of sleep medicine and Sleep Research Society. *Sleep*, *38*, 843–844.
- Williams, J. A., Zimmerman, F. J., & Bell, J. F. (2013). Norms and trends of sleep time among US children and adolescents. *JAMA Pediatrics*, *167*, 55–60.
- Youngstedt, S. D., Goff, E. E., Reynolds, A. M., Kripke, D. F., Irwin, M. R., Bootzin, R. R., ... Jean-Louis, G. (2016). Has adult sleep duration declined over the last 50+ years? *Sleep Medicine Reviews*, *28*, 69–85.
- Youngstedt, S. D., & Kripke, D. F. (2004). Long sleep and mortality: Rationale for sleep restriction. *Sleep Medicine Reviews*, *8*, 159–174.

Sleep Efficiency

- [Sleep Continuity](#)
- [Sleep Fragmentation](#)

Sleep Fragmentation

Elizabeth Mezick

Department of Psychology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Sleep continuity](#); [Sleep efficiency](#); [Sleep maintenance](#)

Definition

Sleep fragmentation typically refers to brief arousals that occur during a sleep period. The American Sleep Disorders Association (1992) defines an arousal as an abrupt shift in

electroencephalographic (EEG) frequency (suggestive of an awake state) which is 3 s or greater in duration and which occurs after at least 10 consecutive seconds of sleep. A number of other definitions of arousal have been published or suggested since that time, with some recommending that elements or physiological responses other than EEG frequency be taken into account (e.g., autonomic activation without cortical involvement) (Janackova and Sforza 2008). When assessed with actigraphy, sleep fragmentation may refer to the amount of movement or restlessness in a sleep period. For example, actigraph software programs use algorithms to calculate a sleep fragmentation index, based on the number or proportion of total sleep epochs characterized by movement. When used in a more general sense, sleep fragmentation may also refer to the overall amount and distribution of wakefulness in a sleep period and can be considered the inverse of sleep continuity. For example, some authors have used the term “sleep fragmentation” to describe parameters such as wakefulness after sleep onset and sleep efficiency.

Elevated sleep fragmentation occurs in those with sleep apnea and may correlate with daytime sleepiness. Increased sleep fragmentation as assessed by actigraphy has been associated with a number of physical and psychiatric health outcomes, as well as deficits in neurobehavioral performance. Experimental models of sleep fragmentation, which typically disrupt sleep briefly using auditory, mechanical, or other stimuli, have been used to examine the neurophysiologic, cognitive, and behavioral consequences of fragmented sleep.

Cross-References

- [Sleep Apnea](#)
- [Sleep Continuity](#)

References and Further Readings

American Sleep Disorders Association Atlas Task Force. (1992). EEG arousals: Scoring rules and examples. *Sleep*, 15, 173–184.

Bonnet, M. H., & Arand, D. L. (2003). Clinical effects of sleep fragmentation versus sleep deprivation. *Sleep Medicine Reviews*, 7, 297–310.

Janackova, S., & Sforza, E. (2008). Neurobiology of sleep fragmentation: Cortical and autonomic markers of sleep disorders. *Current Pharmaceutical Design*, 14, 3474–3480.

Sleep Maintenance

- [Sleep Continuity](#)
- [Sleep Fragmentation](#)

Sleep Quality

Christopher E. Kline
Department of Health and Physical Activity,
University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Sleep refreshment](#); [Sleep satisfaction](#)

Definition

Sleep quality is defined as one’s satisfaction of the sleep experience, integrating aspects of sleep initiation, sleep maintenance, sleep quantity, and refreshment upon awakening.

Description

Sleep quality is widely recognized as a vital contributor to optimal health and functioning. Yet, despite its common usage, “sleep quality” is a term without a clear definition or operationalization (Ohayon et al. 2017).

Measurement

Measurement of sleep quality is difficult due to its imprecise definition. The construct of sleep quality likely incorporates aspects of sleep quantity,

sleep continuity, the feeling of refreshment upon awakening, and daytime sleepiness (Harvey et al. 2008). Many of these aspects cannot be easily measured in an objective fashion. Thus, sleep quality is often assessed with self-reported measures.

Sleep diaries, which track sleep on a daily basis, often assess sleep quality by incorporating a Likert-type rating scale (e.g., 1: *very poor sleep quality*; 5: *very good sleep quality*) or a visual analogue scale (with anchors of *very poor* and *very good* sleep quality) into the diary. Questionnaires, on the other hand, assess sleep quality through the measurement of different domains of the sleep experience. The most widely used questionnaire, the Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index, is an 18-item instrument with seven components: sleep quality, sleep latency, sleep duration, habitual sleep efficiency, sleep disturbances, sleeping medication use, and daytime dysfunction (Buysse et al. 1989). Another common measure, the Medical Outcomes Study Sleep Scale, assesses six different aspects of sleep: sleep disturbance, sleep adequacy, daytime sleepiness, snoring, awakening with shortness of breath or headache, and sleep quantity (Hays et al. 2005). Scores on both of these measures have been shown to identify individuals who characterize their sleep as being poor in quality.

An alternative approach to measuring sleep quality involves measuring self-reported or objectively recorded sleep parameters related to the magnitude of nocturnal wakefulness, such as sleep onset latency, total wakefulness, sleep efficiency, number of awakenings, or arousals. Moreover, measures of sleep “depth” derived from polysomnography, such as the amount of N1 sleep or N3 sleep (sometimes referred to as “light” and “deep” sleep, respectively), have sometimes been used to characterize sleep quality. However, these parameters often fail to completely capture the essence of sleep quality. In particular, sleep quality should not be considered to be synonymous with the amount of sleep obtained. For example, in comparison to those who report a sleep duration of 7–8 h, poor sleep quality is more prevalent with short and long sleep.

Correlates with Sleep Parameters

Across multiple studies, objective sleep parameters have exhibited only minimal concordance with sleep quality, with sleep efficiency, wakefulness after sleep onset, and total sleep time typically showing the strongest, yet still modest, correlations (Kaplan et al. 2017a, b). While some studies have found that the spectral density of the sleep electroencephalographic (EEG) content correlated with sleep quality (Krystal and Edinger 2008), others have failed to observe a strong link (Gabryelska et al. 2019; Kaplan et al. 2017a). Overall, these findings suggest that sleep quality is a multifaceted construct that cannot be captured by a single surrogate sleep parameter or objective surrogate markers.

Sleep Quality and Health

Poor sleep quality is widespread in modern society. Approximately one-third of adults complain of poor sleep quality, though in most studies, prevalence estimates are based upon insomnia-related symptoms. Poor sleep quality has been associated with increasing age, low socioeconomic status, poor general health, psychological distress, and poor lifestyle behaviors (e.g., high caffeine use, sedentary lifestyle, smoking).

How poor sleep quality may influence future morbidity or mortality risk is less clear. Epidemiologic studies have found that poor sleep quality is predictive of increased risk of metabolic dysfunction and mortality risk (Cappuccio et al. 2010; Kojima et al. 2000). However, most studies have focused on sleep duration rather than sleep quality, perhaps due to the difficulty in concisely defining sleep quality. Interestingly, in studies that have concurrently assessed the health risks of sleep duration and sleep quality, the strongest risk is associated with those reporting poor sleep quality and inadequate sleep duration (Vgontzas et al. 2013), with similar (or greater, in some cases) risk associated with poor sleep quality relative to extreme sleep duration (Bin 2016).

Cross-References

- [Actigraphy \(Wrist, for Measuring Rest/Activity Patterns and Sleep\)](#)

- [Insomnia](#)
- [Polysomnography](#)
- [Sleep](#)
- [Sleep and Health](#)
- [Sleep Architecture](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bin, Y. S. (2016). Is sleep quality more important than sleep duration for public health? *Sleep*, 39, 1629–1630.
- Buyse, D. J., Reynolds, C. F., III, Monk, T. H., Berman, S. R., & Kupfer, D. J. (1989). The Pittsburgh Sleep Quality Index: A new instrument for psychiatric practice and research. *Psychiatry Research*, 28, 193–213.
- Cappuccio, F. P., D’Elia, L., Strazzullo, P., & Miller, M. A. (2010). Quantity and quality of sleep and incidence of type 2 diabetes: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Diabetes Care*, 33, 414–420.
- Gabryelska, A., Feige, B., Riemann, D., Spiegelhalter, K., Johann, A., Białasiewicz, P., & Hertenstein, E. (2019). Can spectral power predict subjective sleep quality in healthy individuals? *Journal of Sleep Research*, 28, e12848.
- Harvey, A. G., Stinson, K., Whitaker, K. L., Moskowitz, D., & Virk, H. (2008). The subjective meaning of sleep quality: A comparison of individuals with and without insomnia. *Sleep*, 31, 383–393.
- Hays, R. D., Martin, S. A., Sesti, A. M., & Spritzer, K. L. (2005). Psychometric properties of the medical outcomes study sleep measure. *Sleep Medicine*, 6, 41–44.
- Kaplan, K. A., Hardas, P. P., Redline, S., & Zeitzer, J. M. (2017a). Correlates of sleep quality in midlife and beyond: A machine learning analysis. *Sleep Medicine*, 34, 162–167.
- Kaplan, K. A., Hirshman, J., Hernandez, B., Stefanick, M. L., Hoffman, A. R., Redline, S., . . . Zeitzer, J. M. (2017b). When a gold standard isn’t so golden: Lack of prediction of subjective sleep quality from sleep polysomnography. *Biological Psychology*, 123, 37–46.
- Kojima, M., Wakai, K., Kawamura, T., Tamakoshi, A., Aoki, R., Lin, Y., . . . Ohno, Y. (2000). Sleep patterns and total mortality: A 12-year follow-up study in Japan. *Journal of Epidemiology*, 10, 87–93.
- Krystal, A. D., & Edinger, J. D. (2008). Measuring sleep quality. *Sleep Medicine*, 9, S10–S17.
- Ohayon M., Wickwire E. M., Hirshkowitz M., Albert S. M., Avidan A., Daly F. J., . . . Vitiello, M. V. (2017). National Sleep Foundation’s sleep quality recommendations: First report. *Sleep Health*, 3, 6–19.
- Vgontzas, A. N., Fernandez-Mendoza, J., Liao, D., & Bixler, E. O. (2013). Insomnia with objective short sleep duration: The most biologically severe phenotype of the disorder. *Sleep Medicine Reviews*, 17, 241–254.

Sleep Refreshment

- [Sleep Quality](#)

Sleep Restriction

Martica H. Hall
Department of Psychiatry, University of
Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Partial sleep deprivation](#); [Sleep curtailment](#); [Sleep debt](#)

Definition

Sleep restriction generally refers to situational or experimentally induced reductions in overall sleep duration.

Description

Sleep restriction refers to the partial loss of sleep. The term is generally used in the context of experimental manipulations which keep individuals (or experimental animals) awake for some portion of their usual sleep period. Sleep restriction also occurs in naturalistic conditions such as when new parents have to wake repeatedly to care for their newborn child or when an individual purposefully reduces their sleep time in order to meet the competing demands of work, family, or other obligations. Importantly, sleep restriction differs from insomnia in that sleep-restricted individuals do not have an adequate opportunity to sleep whereas individuals with insomnia have sleep difficulties despite adequate opportunity to sleep (see ► [“Insomnia”](#) entry). Experimental and observational sleep restriction studies have been used to

evaluate the cognitive, behavioral, emotional, and physiological consequences of sleep restriction, including the loss of specific components of sleep (e.g., slow-wave sleep).

Dr. Eve Van Cauter and her colleagues at the University of Chicago have been instrumental in highlighting the public health implications of partial sleep restriction, or sleep “curtailment” across the life span (Hanlon and Van Cauter 2011). In a series of carefully controlled studies in healthy young adults, Van Cauter and colleagues demonstrated that sleep restriction is associated with metabolic and endocrine alterations that underlie glucose tolerance, insulin sensitivity, and weight gain. These results are mirrored in epidemiologic studies of obesity and diabetes risk in children and adults (Hanlon and Van Cauter 2011). Other consequences of experimental sleep restriction include decrements in working memory, alterations in inflammatory markers, and decreased testosterone levels in males (Casement et al. 2006; Irwin et al. 2006; Leproult and Van Cauter 2011; Prather et al. 2009). Experimental laboratory studies have also begun to selectively deprive experimental subjects of specific sleep stages to better understand their function. For instance, animal models have been used to identify the neurophysiological mechanisms through which REM sleep regulates learning and memory (Poe et al. 2010). In the only study of its kind conducted to date, Tasali et al. (2008) demonstrated that selective suppression of slow-wave sleep in healthy, lean adults resulted in marked decreases in insulin sensitivity. Importantly, these effects were independent of sleep duration.

Societal trends suggest that large numbers of adults are chronically sleep-restricted. During the work week, they may build up a sleep “debt” and perceive that this debt may be “paid” on non-work nights. Epidemiologic evidence that documents the buildup of sleep debt during the work week and its payment on non-work nights is lacking. Moreover, experimental evidence suggests that multiple, long recovery nights may be necessary to “repay” sleep debt induced by chronic partial sleep restriction (Banks et al. 2010). Although the systematic evaluation of the impact of sleep

restriction on indices of health and functioning is in its infancy, the epidemiological and experimental data amassed thus far supports the belief that this is an important public health concern.

References and Further Readings

- Banks, S., Van Dongen, H. P., Maislin, G., & Dinges, D. F. (2010). Neurobehavioral dynamics following chronic sleep restriction: dose-response effects of one night for recovery. *Sleep*, 33, 1013–1026.
- Casement, M. D., Broussard, J. L., Mullington, J. M., & Press, D. Z. (2006). The contribution of sleep to improvements in working memory scanning speed: A study of prolonged sleep restriction. *Biological Psychology*, 72(2), 208–212.
- Hanlon, E. C., & Van Cauter, E. (2011). Quantification of sleep behavior and of its impact on the cross-talk between the brain and peripheral metabolism. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 108(Suppl 3), 15609–15616.
- Irwin, M. R., Wang, M., Campomayor, C. O., Collado-Hidalgo, A., & Cole, S. (2006). Sleep deprivation and activation of morning levels of cellular and genomic markers of inflammation. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 166(16), 1756–1762.
- Leproult, R., & Van Cauter, E. (2011). Effect of 1 week of sleep restriction on testosterone levels in young healthy men. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 305(21), 2173–2174.
- Poe, G. R., Walsh, C. M., & Bjorness, T. E. (2010). Cognitive neuroscience of sleep. *Progress in Brain Research*, 185, 1–19.
- Prather, A. A., Marsland, A. L., Hall, M., Neumann, S. A., Muldoon, M. F., & Manuck, S. B. (2009). Normative variation in self-reported sleep quality and sleep debt is associated with stimulated pro-inflammatory cytokine production. *Biological Psychology*, 82(1), 12–17.
- Spiegel, K., Tasali, E., Penev, P., & Van Cauter, E. (2004). Brief communication: Sleep curtailment in healthy young men is associated with decreased leptin levels, elevated ghrelin levels, and increased hunger and appetite. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 141(11), 846–850.
- Tasali, E., Leproult, R., Ehrmann, D. A., & Van Cauter, E. (2008). Slow-wave sleep and the risk of type 2 diabetes in humans. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 105(3), 1044–1049.

Sleep Satisfaction

► Sleep Quality

Sleep Stages 1, 2, 3, and 4

► [Non-REM Sleep](#)

Sleep Stages 3 and 4

► [Slow-Wave Sleep](#)

Sleep Study

► [Polysomnography](#)

Sleep-Disordered Breathing

► [Sleep Apnea](#)

Slim Disease

► [Cachexia \(Wasting Syndrome\)](#)

Slow-Wave Sleep

Salvatore Insana
Western Psychiatric Institute and Clinic,
Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Synonyms

[Deep sleep](#); [Delta sleep](#); [N3](#); [Sleep stages 3 and 4](#)

Definition

Sleep can be measured with polysomnography (PSG) (see review, Keenan and Hirshkowitz 2011). Polysomnographically measured sleep

behaviors can be classified into distinct categories. Slow-wave sleep (SWS) is a distinct sleep behavior classification. SWS is also known as stage N3 sleep as defined by the 2007 American Academy of Sleep Medicine sleep scoring manual (Iber et al. 2007). SWS is otherwise known as the combination of sleep stages 3 and 4 according to the Rechtschaffen and Kales “classic criteria” (Rechtschaffen and Kales 1968). Other common terms used to describe SWS are “delta sleep” and “deep sleep.”

A characteristic component of SWS is the organized pattern of neurological activity that is emitted from the brain as measured by electroencephalography. A component of the organized pattern of neurological activity is the presence of slow waves, otherwise known as delta waves. Slow waves have high amplitude (>75 V) and low frequency (0.5–2 Hz). When slow waves occur during sleep, and present within 20% or more of an epoch, that epoch is classified as SWS, or N3.

Although the true function of sleep and particularly SWS is unknown (e.g., Rector et al. 2009; Siegel 2009), to date the primary explanation is that SWS reflects the homeostatic sleep drive, or one’s escalating need for sleep with increasing time awake. This relation is exemplified when One’s time spent in SWS increases relative to their time previously spent awake (Bersagliere and Achermann 2010). Thus, SWS is described as the “restorative component” of sleep. Common parasomnias that can occur during SWS are sleep walking and night terrors.

Human Development: Due to developmental changes in infant sleep patterns, typically SWS can be scored by 4–4.5 months post-term (Grigg-Damberger et al. 2007). The percentage of SWS obtained is highest during early-life and decreases from early childhood through old age (Ohayon et al. 2004).

Cross-References

- [Non-REM Sleep](#)
- [Polysomnography](#)
- [REM Sleep](#)

- [Sleep](#)
- [Sleep Architecture](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bersagliere, A., & Achermann, P. (2010). Slow oscillations in human non-rapid eye movement sleep electroencephalogram: Effects of increased sleep pressure. *Journal of Sleep Research*, 19, 228–237.
- Grigg-Damberger, M., Gozal, D., Marcus, C. L., Quan, S. F., Rosen, C. L., Chervin, R. D., et al. (2007). The visual scoring of sleep and arousals in infants and children. *Journal of Clinical Sleep Medicine*, 3, 201–240.
- Iber, C., Ancoli-Israel, S., Chesson, A., Quan, S. F., & for the American Academy of Sleep Medicine. (2007). *The AASM manual for the scoring of sleep and associated events: Rules, terminology and technical specifications* (1st ed.). Westchester: American Academy of Sleep Medicine.
- Keenan, S., & Hirshkowitz, M. (2011). Monitoring and staging human sleep. In M. H. Kryger, T. Roth, & W. C. Dement (Eds.), *Principles and practice of sleep medicine* (5th ed., pp. 1602–1609). St. Louis: Elsevier.
- Ohayon, M. M., Carskadon, M. A., Guilleminault, C., & Vitiello, M. V. (2004). Meta-analysis of quantitative sleep parameters from childhood to old age in healthy individuals: Developing normative sleep values across the human lifespan. *Sleep*, 27, 1255–1273.
- Rechtschaffen, A., & Kales, A. (1968). *A manual of standardized, techniques and scoring system for sleep stages in human subjects* (NIH Publication No. 204). Washington DC: US Government Printing Office.
- Rector, D. M., Schei, J. L., Van Dongen, H. P., Belenky, G., & Krueger, J. M. (2009). Physiological markers of local sleep. *The European Journal of Neuroscience*, 29, 1771–1778.
- Siegel, J. M. (2009). Sleep viewed as a state of adaptive inactivity. *Nature Reviews: Neuroscience*, 10, 747–753.

Small-N

- [Outcome for the Single Case: Random Control Index, Single Subject Experimental Design, and Goal Attainment Scale](#)

Smokeless Tobacco

- [Tobacco Control](#)

Smoking

- [Lifestyle Changes](#)
- [Nicotine](#)
- [Tobacco Control](#)

Smoking and Health

Elizabeth Baker and Monica Webb Hooper
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Coral Gables, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Cigarette smoking and health](#); [Health consequences of smoking](#); [Smoking and health effects](#); [Tobacco smoking and health](#)

Definition

Health represents a physical, mental, and emotional state of well-being. Health is not simply the absence of disease or sickness but can be defined as a state of optimal wellness.

Cigarette smoking is the act of inhaling smoke from burning tobacco. Cigarette smoking is directly related to a decline in health and various associated health outcomes. There is no safe level of smoking; therefore, for optimal health, tobacco use should be avoided.

Description

The adverse health effects of smoking have been well documented. Each year, smoking causes more deaths than murders, suicides, HIV, drug and alcohol use, and auto accidents combined (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] 2009). In the United States, cigarette smoking is responsible for over 443,000 deaths, \$96 billion in medical expenditures, and 5.1 million years of potential life lost annually (CDC

2009). In fact, 1 out of 5 Americans will die prematurely from the effects of smoking. Tobacco use is responsible for five to six million deaths per year worldwide (Jha 2009). This makes cigarette smoking the single largest preventable cause of disease and death.

Cigarette smoking causes much of its damage to the body through the inhaled smoke (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services et al. 2010). Cigarettes contain over 7,000 chemical compounds, many of which are toxic and/or carcinogenic. It is the inhalation of these chemicals that leads to increased risks for heart disease, cancer, and stroke (USDHHS 2004). Heart disease is the leading cause of death in the USA and particularly among smokers. Smoking cigarettes causes the heart to work harder by raising heart rate and blood pressure (Erhardt 2009). Additionally, poisonous gases such as carbon monoxide limit the amount of oxygen carried in the blood. This results in a two- to four-fold increased risk of heart attack and stroke (USDHHS 2004). Smoking also causes lung disease such as chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), which includes emphysema and chronic bronchitis (U.S. Department of Health & Human Services et al. 2010). Indeed, smoking causes about 90% of all deaths from chronic airway obstruction (Forey et al. 2011). There is a well-established link between smoking and multiple cancers including the lung, mouth, throat, stomach, uterus, esophagus, cervix, bladder, and acute myeloid leukemia (USDHHS 2004). Nearly one third of all cancer deaths can be linked directly to cigarette smoking (CDC 2010). People who suffer from chronic diseases such as diabetes and HIV are especially vulnerable to the negative effects of tobacco use. Indeed, smokers with a chronic disease may experience increased complications, longer hospitalizations, interactions with medications, and increased risk of death (CDC 2010).

Smoking also takes a toll on mental health and overall well-being. There is a robust relationship between cigarette smoking and perceived stress (Kassel et al. 2003). Smokers tend to report greater stress levels compared to nonsmokers (Cohen and Williamson 1988). And although

smokers believe that cigarette smoking provides stress relief, research suggests that smoking might cause additional stress (Heishman 1999). Smoking is also associated with increased risk of affective disorders, such as anxiety and depression. Smokers with mental health disorders report substantially greater symptom burden and functional disability compared to nonsmokers (Covey 1998; McCloughen 2003; Morissette 2007). Smoking also reduces the effectiveness of a number of medications used to help manage the symptoms of depression and schizophrenia (Goff 1992).

Smoking also affects health in other ways. Compared to nonsmokers, smokers have increased risks of blindness, periodontal disease, deafness, sexual dysfunction, sleeping difficulties, headaches, and premature aging, including wrinkles and damage to the skin (USDHHS 2010). Among men, smoking causes an increased risk of erectile dysfunction (Tengs 2001). Women who smoke have increased risk of hip fractures, infertility, and premature menopause (USDHHS 2001).

Smoking not only affects the health of smokers but also impacts individuals around them (USDHHS 2006). Nonsmokers who are exposed to tobacco smoke inhale many of the same toxins and cancer-causing substances as smokers. Secondhand smoke (or passive smoking) is responsible for numerous health problems among adults, including an increased risk of heart disease and cancer (USDHHS 2006). Women who smoke during pregnancy risk passing on the toxins from cigarettes to their babies. Such exposure leads to increased risk for premature labor, low birth weight, and birth defects (USDHHS 2006). Children and infants also suffer from secondhand smoke exposure including asthma attacks, ear infections, respiratory illness, and sudden infant death syndrome (USDHHS 2006).

There are many immediate and long-term health benefits of smoking cessation (USDHHS 2004). After the last cigarette, a person's heart rate and blood carbon monoxide level drop to normal within hours. Lung function and capacity improves within days. The excess risk of coronary heart disease, cancers of the lung and mouth, and

stroke reduce to that of a nonsmoker 1–15 years after quitting smoking (USDHHS 2004). Quitting smoking at any age and despite any existing medical conditions can help improve overall health.

Cross-References

► Smoking Cessation

References and Further Readings

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2009). Annual smoking-attributable mortality, years of potential life lost, and productivity losses—United States, 2000–2004. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 58(2), 29–33. Retrieved from <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion. (2010). *Cancer statistics 2010*. Retrieved from <http://www.cdc.gov/Features/>
- Cohen, S., & Williamson, G. (1988). Perceived stress in a probability sample of the United States. In S. Spacapan & S. Oskamp (Eds.), *The social psychology of health: Claremont symposium on applied social psychology* (pp. 31–68). Newbury Park: SAGE.
- Covey, L. L. S. C. (1998). Cigarette smoking and major depression. *Journal of Addictive Diseases*, 17(1), 35–46.
- Erhardt, L. (2009). Cigarette smoking: An undertreated risk factor for cardiovascular disease. *Atherosclerosis*, 205(1), 23–32. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.atherosclerosis.2009.01.007>.
- Forey, B., Thornton, A., & Lee, P. (2011). Systematic review with meta-analysis of the epidemiological evidence relating smoking to COPD, chronic bronchitis and emphysema. *BMC Pulmonary Medicine*, 11(1), 36.
- Goff, D. C. (1992). Cigarette smoking in schizophrenia: Relationship to psychopathology and medication side effects. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 149(9), 1189–1194.
- Heishman, S. J. (1999). Behavioral and cognitive effects of smoking: Relationship to nicotine addiction. *Nicotine & Tobacco Research*, 1(2), S143–S147. <https://doi.org/10.1080/14622299050011971>.
- Jha, P. (2009). Avoidable global cancer deaths and total deaths from smoking. *Nature Reviews Cancer*, 9(9), 655–664. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nrc2703>.
- Kassel, J. D., Stroud, L. R., & Paronis, C. A. (2003). Smoking, stress, and negative affect: Correlation, causation, and context across stages of smoking. *Psychological Bulletin*, 129, 270–304. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0033-2909.129.2.270>.
- McCloughen, A. A. (2003). The association between schizophrenia and cigarette smoking: A review of the literature and implications for mental health nursing practice. *International Journal of Mental Health Nursing*, 12(2), 119–129.
- Morissette, S. S. B. (2007). Anxiety, anxiety disorders, tobacco use, and nicotine: A critical review of interrelationships. *Psychological Bulletin*, 133(2), 245–272.
- Tengs, T. O. (2001). The link between smoking and impotence: Two decades of evidence. *Preventive Medicine*, 32(6), 447.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Coordinating Center for Health Promotion, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Office on Smoking and Health. (2006). *The health consequences of involuntary exposure to tobacco smoke: A report of the surgeon general*. Atlanta: Author.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Office on Smoking and Health. (2004). *The health consequences of smoking: A report of the surgeon general*. Atlanta: Author.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Office on Smoking and Health, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion. (2010). *How tobacco smoke causes disease: The biology and behavioral basis for smoking-attributable disease: A report of the surgeon general*. Atlanta: Author.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Office of the Surgeon General. (2001). *Women and smoking: A report of the surgeon general*. Rockville: Author.

Smoking and Health Effects

► Smoking and Health

Smoking Behavior

Elizabeth Baker and Monica Webb Hooper
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Coral Gables, FL, USA

Synonyms

Cigarette smoking; Smoking habits; Smoking topography; Tobacco use

Definition

Smoking behaviors are actions taken by a person that are associated with the burning and inhalation of a substance. Smoking behavior is multifaceted and includes the actual act of smoking, puffing style, depth of inhalation, and rate and frequency of smoking.

Description

The act of smoking consists of several behaviors and is usually applied to tobacco/cigarettes. A smoker is defined as a person who has a lifetime history of smoking 100 cigarettes or more with current smoking on some days or every day. Most people experiment with smoking during adolescence and do not intend to become regular, addicted, or dependent smokers. Environmental or social factors (e.g., peer pressure) often play a role in smoking initiation. Over time, smoking behavior can become a pattern (i.e., habit) and tolerance develops. The next step is the development of dependence, which is indicated by both tolerance and withdrawal symptoms during periods of abstinence from smoking. Finally, people maintain the compulsive (e.g., addictive) behavior largely because of nicotine dependence.

Smoking behavior is based on individual differences. Smoking topography is defined as the unique manner in which an individual smokes a cigarette. In particular, topography includes the quantity of puffs per cigarette, puff volume, velocity, and duration (Scherer 1999). Each of these behaviors is a component of how a cigarette is smoked. On average, smokers ingest less than 1.5 mg of nicotine per cigarette (Jarvis et al. 2001; United States Federal Trade Committee 2000). This amount varies depending on cigarette brand and how an individual smokes a cigarette (Djordjevic 2000). Dependent smokers seek to regulate the amount of nicotine they receive to maintain the desired physical and emotional state and to avoid withdrawal. In general, a smoker takes about 10 puffs per cigarette (Scherer 1999). A smoker can consciously or

unconsciously control nicotine intake by the time taken in between puffs (referred to as puff frequency or puff interval). Smokers may also block the ventilation holes in filtered cigarettes to increase nicotine delivery. The depths of inhalation, duration of the puff, and the amount of smoke in a puff (volume) are all characteristics of smoking behavior that impact exposure to the chemicals and toxins in cigarettes and the subsequent damage to the body (Scherer 1999).

The frequency of daily smoking is another aspect of smoking behavior. The Centers for Disease Control [CDC] (2005) reported that 83% of all smokers are daily users. Daily smokers average 20 cigarettes per day (CDC 2005). Intermittent or light smokers do not smoke daily and are thought to be less nicotine dependent. The time to the first cigarette of the day and the frequency of daily smoking are indicators of nicotine dependence. Smoking immediately after waking is one of the best predictors of nicotine dependence. In addition, smoking most of one's cigarettes during the first 2 h of the day is suggestive of dependence (Heatherton 1989). A greater frequency of daily smoking may be related to difficulty quitting smoking.

Smoking behavior is variable and can change depending on the circumstance or day. For instance, puffs per cigarette may decrease while watching television or may increase while listening to another person talking. The number or duration of puffs may also change according to emotional state. Research has found that increased smoking often occurs during times of personal crisis and stressors (Shiffman et al. 1996). Many smokers report increased smoking in social situations such as being in the company of other smokers or while attending parties. Smokers also vary in their handling of cigarettes; some may hold the cigarette in their mouth, while others allow them to burn in ashtrays or between their fingers.

Smoking behavior is complex. Learning models suggest that smoking behavior is maintained by operant conditioning, including positive and negative reinforcement, and classical conditioning, through the repeated pairing of

smoking to various physical and emotional states (Wilker 1973). Such learning makes smoking cessation a formidable challenge for most smokers (Patten and Martin 1996).

Cross-References

- ▶ Behavior Change
- ▶ Smoking Cessation
- ▶ Smoking Topography

References and Further Reading

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2005). Cigarette smoking among adults – United States, 2004. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 54(44), 1121–1124. Retrieved 23 November 2011, from <http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/>
- Djordjevic, M. M. V. (2000). Doses of nicotine and lung carcinogens delivered to cigarette smokers. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 92(2), 106–111.
- Heatherton, T. T. F. (1989). Measuring the heaviness of smoking: Using self-reported time to the first cigarette of the day and number of cigarettes smoked per day. *British Journal of Addiction*, 84(7), 791–800.
- Jarvis, M. J., Boreham, R., Primatesta, P., Feyerabend, C., & Bryant, A. (2001). Nicotine yield from machine-smoked cigarettes and nicotine intakes in smokers: Evidence from a representative population survey. *Journal of the National Cancer Institute*, 93(2), 134–138. <https://doi.org/10.1093/jnci/93.2.134>.
- Patten, C., & Martin, J. (1996). Does nicotine withdrawal affect smoking cessation? Clinical and theoretical issues. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 18(3), 190–200. <https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02883397>.
- Scherer, G. G. (1999). Smoking behaviour and compensation: A review of the literature. *Psychopharmacology*, 145(1), 1–20.
- Shiffman, S., Paty, J., Gnys, M., Kassel, J., & Hickcox, M. (1996). First lapses to smoking: Within-subjects analysis of real-time reports. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 64(2), 366–379. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0022-006X.64.2.366>.
- United States Federal Trade Committee. (2000). “Tar,” nicotine, and carbon monoxide of the smoke of 1294 varieties of domestic cigarettes for the year 1998. Retrieved 23 November 2011, from <http://www.ftc.gov/reports/tobacco/1998tar%26nicotinereport.pdf>
- Wilker, A. (1973). Dynamics of drug dependence: Implications of a conditioning theory for research and treatment. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 28, 611.

Smoking Cessation

Denise de Ybarra Rodríguez and Monica Webb Hooper

Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

Synonyms

Cigarette smoking cessation; Quit smoking; Stop smoking; Tobacco cessation; Tobacco smoking cessation

Definition

Tobacco smoking is defined as the practice of burning and inhaling tobacco. The combustion from the burning allows the nicotine, tar, and other chemicals and toxins to be absorbed through the lungs. Cigarette smoking is the most prevalent form of consuming tobacco. Most national surveys define a current smoker as having smoked at least 100 (5 packs) cigarettes in their lifetime and currently smokes on at least some days.

Cessation refers to a halting or stopping. Smoking cessation refers to the stopping of cigarette use. Smoking cessation may refer to choosing to stop smoking deliberately or become abstinent due to external and/or environmental factors leading to stopping or quitting smoking.

Description

Smoking cessation is the single most important health behavior change a person can make. Since the 1964 Surgeon General’s Report concluded that smoking causes cancer, about 50 million people have successfully quit smoking. Approximately 69% of current smokers state that they want to stop, and 52% have made an attempt to quit smoking in the past year (Centers for Disease Control & Prevention [CDC] 2011).

Smoking cessation has major health benefits. The most common causes of death in the United States are cardiovascular disease, cancer, cerebrovascular accidents, and chronic lower respiratory diseases (Kochanek et al. 2011); smoking cessation has been associated with a reduced risk of dying from these diseases (U.S. Department of Health & Human Services [USDHHS] 1990). The benefits of smoking cessation are greater the earlier one quits, though the benefits of quitting can be experienced even after an extended smoking history. For example, after 15 years of smoking cessation, the excess risk of heart disease for a former smoker is equivalent to a never-smoker. With the increasing duration of cessation, the overall rate of cancer mortality approaches that of nonsmokers (USDHHS).

There are several evidence-based smoking cessation methods. Behavioral interventions include brief physician advice to quit, self-help materials, telephone-based interventions, internet-based counseling and support groups, and group and individual counseling (Fiore et al. 2008). Brief physician advice to quit smoking has been demonstrated to increase the likelihood of cessation by 30%. Self-help cessation interventions increase the likelihood of cessation by 20%. Telephone-based interventions increase the likelihood of cessation by 20%, though tobacco quitlines have increased the odds of cessation by up to 60%. Group and individual counseling increase the likelihood of cessation by 30% and 70%, respectively. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved seven smoking cessation pharmacotherapies. These include varenicline (marketed as Chantix in the United States and Champix in Canada and Europe), bupropion (marketed as Zyban), transdermal nicotine patches, nicotine gum, nicotine lozenges, nicotine nasal spray, and the nicotine inhaler. Nicotine patches, gum, and lozenges are available in the USA over the counter; varenicline, bupropion, nicotine nasal spray, and the nicotine inhaler require a physician's prescription. Use of nicotine replacement therapies or bupropion doubles the chances of smoking cessation, while recent evidence suggests that varenicline can triple the

likelihood of cessation. Using more than one method when trying to quit (e.g., combination of nicotine replacement with counseling or a telephone quitline) further increases the likelihood of cessation, and the likelihood of cessation increases with the number of formats utilized.

There are also smoking cessation methods that are not based on empirical evidence. Indeed, the most common method of attempting to quit is unassisted quitting (going "cold turkey"). However, approximately 90% of unassisted quit attempts fail. Complementary and alternative methods such as acupuncture, acupressure, laser therapy, and hypnotherapy have been evaluated as smoking cessation methods. However, these methods are not more effective than a placebo (Barnes et al. 2010; White et al. 2011).

Public health policy and campaigns have been instrumental in decreasing the prevalence of smoking in the USA. These policies have restricted indoor smoking via clear indoor air acts (e.g., restaurants, airplanes, and workplaces) in most states and have increased taxes on cigarettes. Public health campaigns have utilized mostly media formats to increase knowledge about the dangers of smoking.

Smoking cessation can result in temporary discomfort, known as nicotine withdrawal. When a person quits smoking, they can enter into nicotine withdrawal within 30 min. The peak of withdrawal occurs within 48–72 h for dependent smokers and usually lasts 1–2 weeks if cessation is maintained. Symptoms of nicotine withdrawal include changes in mood (e.g., irritability, anger, depression, sadness, anxiety, and nervousness), desire or craving to smoke, difficulty concentrating, increased appetite, weight gain, insomnia, restlessness, impatience, constipation, dizziness, coughing, and dreaming or nightmares. The use of FDA-approved cessation aids can minimize withdrawal symptoms.

Smoking cessation is greatly encouraged because of the multiple health benefits that follow. Since the dangers of smoking have been identified, the prevalence has declined and leveled off at 20%. Cigarette smoking is the leading cause of preventable death, disease, and disability in the

USA. Multiple methods to achieve smoking cessation exist, though some of these methods have a greater likelihood of success.

Cross-References

- [Cancer and Smoking](#)
- [Lifestyle Changes](#)
- [Smoking and Health](#)
- [Tobacco Control](#)

References and Further Readings

- Barnes, J., Dong, C. Y., McRobbie, H., Walker, N., Mehta, M., & Stead, L. F. (2010). Hypnotherapy for smoking cessation. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*. <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD001008.pub2>.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2011). Quitting smoking among adults—United States, 2001–2010. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 60(44), 1513–1519.
- Fiore, M. C., Jaén, C. R., Baker, T. B., Bailey, W. C., Benowitz, N. L., Curry, S. J., et al. (2008). *Clinical practice guideline: Treating tobacco use and dependence*. Rockville: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Public Health Service.
- Kochanek, K. D., Xu, J., Murphy, S. L., Miniño, A. M., & Kung, H.-C. (2011). Deaths: Preliminary data for 2009. *National Vital Statistics Reports*, 59(4), 1–51.
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (1990). *The health benefits of smoking cessation: A report of the surgeon general*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Office on Smoking and Health.
- United States Department of Health and Human Services (USDHHS). (1982). *The health consequences of smoking: Cancer: A report of the surgeon general*. Rockville: USDHHS.
- White, A. R., Rampes, H., Liu, J. P., Stead, L. F., & Campbell, J. (2011). Acupuncture and related interventions for smoking cessation. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews*, 1, CD000009. <https://doi.org/10.1002/14651858.CD000009.pub3>.

Smoking Habits

- [Smoking Behavior](#)

Smoking Prevention

- [Tobacco Control](#)

Smoking Prevention Policies and Programs

Andrea C. Villanti and David B. Abrams
Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School of Public Health, The Schroeder Institute for Tobacco Research and Policy Studies at Legacy, Washington, DC, USA

Synonyms

[Tobacco control](#)

Definition

Since up to 80% of smoking initiation has been shown to occur in adolescence, individual and group-level smoking prevention interventions have focused on youth to avert addiction and the long-term health consequences of smoking. A focus of policy efforts for youth prevention has been restricting youth access to tobacco products at the point of purchase. Effective interventions with broader reach to reduce tobacco product initiation among adolescents and adults include policies that increase the unit price of tobacco products and mass media campaigns when combined and coordinated with other interventions.

Description

From 2002 to 2010, the prevalence of past month tobacco use in the United States among those aged 12 and above declined from 30.4% to 27.4%, with stalled reductions in prevalence in the later years. Currently, 23.0% of the population aged 12 or

older smokes cigarettes. Patterns in current tobacco and cigarette use and experimentation with smoking cigarettes were similar for middle school and high school students; while overall prevalence has reached a historic low, no overall declines were noted in youth tobacco use for the 2006–2009 period. Among youth, cigarette smoking is more prevalent among whites than blacks and slightly higher among males than females.

Young people are particularly vulnerable to tobacco addiction due to the effect of nicotine on the reward pathways in the developing brain (from in utero to young adulthood). Additionally, some people are at much greater risk of tobacco use due to genetics, poverty, abuse, neglect, trauma, and other comorbid psychological or cognitive factors such as mood disorders, behavioral, conduct, and attention problems. Beyond the individual, there are numerous variables that affect tobacco use, including adult, household and peer behavior, advertising and promotion, availability and price of tobacco products, poverty, unemployment, neighborhood, community, and cultural norms.

Comprehensive national tobacco strategies use a combination of methods to achieve four main goals: (1) to prevent initiation among youth and young adults, (2) to promote quitting among adults and youth, (3) to eliminate exposure to secondhand smoke, and (4) to identify and eliminate tobacco-related disparities among population groups. Since up to 80% of smoking initiation has been shown to occur in adolescence, individual and group-level smoking prevention interventions have focused on youth to avert addiction and the long-term health consequences of smoking. A focus of policy efforts for youth prevention has been restricting youth access to tobacco products at the point of purchase. Recent data indicates increasing initiation in young adults in the USA, possibly due to targeted marketing efforts by the tobacco industry, and signals the need for extended prevention efforts beyond youth. Effective interventions with broader reach to reduce tobacco product initiation among adolescents and adults include policies that increase the unit price of tobacco products and mass media campaigns when combined and coordinated with other interventions.

Individual and School-Based Programs for Youth

For many years, smoking prevention efforts for adolescents were conducted primarily through school-based programs, which have been shown to have positive short-term effects, but little effect on long-term prevention. Early school-based tobacco curricula focused on social influences, training youth to resist social pressures to use tobacco; studies of these interventions have shown that social influences programming alone is not effective in reducing long-term initiation of smoking. More recent school-based programs have achieved greater success by addressing multiple determinants of tobacco use, including communication skills, coping, personal and social competence, and physical consequences of smoking.

Restricting Youth Access to Tobacco Products

Youth access laws prohibit retailers from selling tobacco products to youth under the age of 18. These laws require enforcement to ensure compliance by the many types of retailers selling tobacco products – from street vendors to convenience stores and online distributors. Adolescent access to cigarette vending machines, low enforcement of these laws, and difficulties in confirming age at purchase in online transactions are all barriers to the success of these laws. Studies indicate that youth access laws can slow increases in adolescent smoking and reduce both smoking prevalence and cigarette consumption, but a very high level of retailer compliance is necessary before these changes occur.

Interventions to Increase the Price of Tobacco Products

Tobacco taxation has been hailed as the most effective intervention to reduce demand for and consumption of tobacco products. Increases in tobacco taxes result in increased cigarette prices, and price has been shown to be a key factor in determining both smoking initiation and cigarette consumption among adults and adolescents.

Price elasticity of demand is defined as the percentage change in consumption of a product following a 1% increase in price. Among US adults, estimates of the price elasticity of cigarette

demand typically fall between -0.3 and -0.5 , relating to a 3% or 5% decrease in consumption, respectively, for a 10% increase in price. Adolescents have been shown to be almost three times more sensitive to cigarette price increases than adults for several reasons, including the following: First, adolescents have been posited to be less addicted to nicotine and more able to reduce or quit smoking following cigarette price increases. Second, adolescents typically have a lower income and spend a larger fraction of their disposable income on cigarettes than adults. Third, adolescents are also likely to be present-oriented and may not be willing to spend the additional money on cigarettes at the expense of other activities. Reductions in adolescent smoking following tobacco tax interventions may also result from fewer smoking peers.

Mass Media Campaigns to Prevent Tobacco Use

Tobacco marketing includes all efforts of the industry to promote tobacco products, and industry marketing has been linked to a variety of smoking behaviors among both adults and youth, notably youth tobacco initiation. Countermarketing is a strategy used by public health agencies to protect individuals who may be susceptible to the influence of tobacco industry marketing – particularly youth – by responding directly to that marketing. Prior to the end of 1999, major statewide comprehensive tobacco control programs in California, Massachusetts, Arizona, Oregon, and Florida included countermarketing media campaigns which were shown to reduce adult and youth smoking; results from evaluations of these interventions indicated that these campaigns had more influence on smoking behavior in younger compared to older adolescents. The 1998 Tobacco Master Settlement Agreement (MSA) in the United States included provisions for reducing youth access to tobacco products and restricted marketing in venues or media attended by youth. Funds were also dedicated from the MSA to create a foundation to develop and deliver national anti-tobacco messages. The truth[®] campaign, a national tobacco countermarketing effort launched in 2000 by the American Legacy Foundation, has repeatedly

been shown to be effective in reducing smoking among adolescents, specifically younger adolescents. Around the same time, tobacco companies developed youth smoking prevention media campaigns which have been shown to be ineffective, and in the case of parent-targeted advertising, to reduce perceptions of smoking-related harm and to increase approval of smoking and intention to smoke among older adolescents.

Future Directions in Smoking Prevention

Passage of the Family Smoking Prevention and Tobacco Control Act in 2009 gave the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) authority to regulate tobacco products and their marketing to protect the public health. One of FDA's first actions was to ban candy flavorings in cigarettes shown to be appealing to youth in order to reduce youth smoking initiation. Other possible regulatory actions aimed at tobacco use prevention include banning menthol in cigarettes, reducing the amount of nicotine in cigarettes to a non-addictive level, and introducing large, graphic warning labels on health effects of tobacco use to cigarette and smokeless tobacco packaging. The national scale of regulatory action through the FDA has the potential to dramatically influence population-level tobacco use and must be complemented by tobacco control efforts at the community, local, and state levels to achieve the maximum impact on prevention.

Summary

Comprehensive tobacco control programs have taken a community-based approach to smoking prevention, using a combination of school-based, policy, educational, and mass media interventions to change the social environment and conditions related to smoking behavior with positive results. Reviews of community-based programs show that coordinated multicomponent interventions reduce smoking among young people more than single strategies alone and that the level of program funding and implementation is critical to the success of these interventions. A population-based health promotion approach that includes media, education, screening, interventions in community settings and policy can provide avenues to address tobacco use more comprehensively. Coordination

of policy and program efforts from the local to the national level is needed to enhance the effectiveness of tobacco use prevention interventions.

Cross-References

- [Smoking and Health](#)
- [Smoking Behavior](#)
- [Smoking Cessation](#)
- [Tobacco Cessation](#)
- [Tobacco Use](#)

References and Further Readings

- American Legacy Foundation. *Youth smoking prevention mass media campaign*. Retrieved from <http://www.thetruth.com/>
- Center for Tobacco Products, Food and Drug Administration. Retrieved from <http://www.fda.gov/tobaccoproducts/default.htm>
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2007). *Best practices for comprehensive tobacco control programs-2007*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Office on Smoking and Health. Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/tobacco/stateandcommunity/best_practices/index.htm
- Farrelly, M. C., Davis, K. C., Haviland, M. L., Messeri, P., & Heaton, C. G. (2005). Evidence of a dose-response relationship between "truth" antismoking ads and youth smoking prevalence. *American Journal of Public Health*, 95(3), 425-431.
- Institute of Medicine. (2007). *Ending the tobacco problem: A blueprint for the nation*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press. Retrieved from <http://www.iom.edu/Reports/2007/Ending-the-Tobacco-Problem-A-Blueprint-for-the-Nation.aspx>
- Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. (2011). *Results from the 2010 National Survey on drug use and health: Summary of national findings*. NSDUH Series H-41, HHS Publication No. (SMA) 11-4658. Rockville: Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration. Retrieved from <http://www.samhsa.gov/data/NSDUH/2k10Results/Web/PDF/2k10Results.pdf>
- Task Force on Community Preventive Services. (2005). Tobacco. In: S. Zaza, P. A. Briss, & K. W. Harris (Eds.), *The guide to community preventive services: What works to promote health?* (pp. 3-79). Atlanta: Oxford University Press. Retrieved from <http://www.thecommunityguide.org/tobacco/index.html>

Smoking Profile

- [Smoking Topography](#)

Smoking Topography

Stefanie De Jesus
Exercise and Health Psychology Laboratory,
The University of Western Ontario, London,
ON, Canada

Synonyms

[Puff topography](#); [Smoking behavior](#); [Smoking profile](#)

Definition

Smoking topography is a representation of the physical characteristics of smoking behavior, such as puff count, puff volume, average flow, puff duration, and interpuff interval.

Description

An individual's interaction with a substance (e.g., tobacco, marijuana) or object (e.g., pipe, e-cigarette) used for smoking is highly complex, multifaceted, and distinct. Smoking topography attributes have been found to be a function of sex, personality, stress level, nicotine yield, cigarette type (i.e., menthol versus non-menthol), ethnicity, and body mass index.

An array of subjective and objective methods exist to measure smoking topography, each differing in accuracy, precision, and feasibility. These include observation, self-report, cigarette weighing, expired carbon monoxide breath levels, and biomarkers (e.g., nicotine, cotinine, or thiocyanate). Specialized instruments (e.g., pressure transducers, flowmeters, and puff analyzers)

provide an unrestricted assessment of smoking topography.

Smoking topography has been examined across various disciplines and populations, such as nicotine metabolism, smoking cessation, exercise, adolescents, and individuals with schizophrenia. There is an impetus to further study smoking topography as it is reflective of the rewarding and reinforcing effects of addictive substances, compensation, harm reduction efforts, and exposure to harmful elements and potential carcinogens.

Cross-References

- [Cancer and Smoking](#)
- [Cessation Intervention \(Smoking or Tobacco\)](#)
- [Nicotine](#)
- [Smoking and Health](#)
- [Smoking Behavior](#)
- [Smoking Cessation](#)

References and Further Readings

- Benowitz, N. L. (2001). Compensatory smoking of low-yield cigarettes. In National Cancer Institute (Ed.), *Risks associated with smoking cigarettes with low machine-measured yields of tar and nicotine* (pp. 39–64). Bethesda: US Department of Health and Human Services, National Institutes of Health, National Cancer Institute.
- De Jesus, S., Hsin, A., Faulkner, G., & Prapavessis, H. (2015). A systematic review and analysis of data reduction techniques for the CReSS smoking topography device. *Journal of Smoking Cessation, 10*, 12–28. <https://doi.org/10.1017/jsc.2013.31>.
- Shahab, L., West, R., & McNeill, A. (2008). The feasibility of measuring puffing behaviour in roll-your-own cigarette smokers. *Tobacco Control, 17*(Suppl 1), i17–i23. <https://doi.org/10.1136/tc.2007.021824>.

SNP (Pronounced “Snip”)

- [Single Nucleotide Polymorphism \(SNP\)](#)

Social Behavior

- [Interpersonal Circumplex](#)

Social Capital and Health

Martin Lindström

Department of Clinical Sciences, Malmö, Sweden

Social capital has no direct synonyms. Social cohesion is a broader concept which is *not* directly synonymous with social capital. Social cohesion is a combination of absence of latent social conflict, e.g., in the form of social and economic inequality, ethnic tensions or other forms of polarization, and the presence of strong social bonds measured by levels of trust and reciprocity (i.e., social capital), a strong “civil society” which bridge social divisions, and institutions of conflict management (e.g., a responsive democracy and an independent judiciary) (Kawachi and Berkman 2000).

Definition

The definition of social capital varies by author and academic tradition. Robert Putnam (political science) defines social capital as “features of social organization, such as trust, norms, and networks that can improve the efficiency of society by facilitating coordinated actions” (Putnam 1993). According to James Coleman (sociology), social capital is “. . . a variety of different entities (that) facilitate certain actions of individuals who are within a structure” (Coleman 1990), while Pierre Bourdieu (sociology) defines it as “. . . the sum of the resources, actual or virtual, that accrue to an individual or a group by virtue of possessing a durable network” (Bourdieu and Wacquant 1992). The definitions of Putnam, pertaining to the population level of social capital, and Coleman, pertaining to social networks of

individuals, have been more commonly used in behavioral medicine and public health than that of Bourdieu, which is closer to the individual level, is less distinct in relation to social support, and also concerns the power structure within social groups and structures. Health as a concept is defined elsewhere.

Description

The social capital concept was first used in 1916 but originates in its modern context in the fields of sociology and political science. Social capital concerns the characteristics of interaction between actors such as individuals, social groups, and organizations rather than the characteristics of actors per se. Social capital includes interpersonal trust, trust in institutions, reciprocity, civic participation, social participation, and social networks which increase cooperation and decrease transaction costs in society.

The first articles concerning social capital and health appeared in international medical and public health journals in the mid-1990s with a fast increase in the number of publications after 1996–1998. From approximately 40 international journal publications in 2001 (Macinko and Starfield 2001), the number of journal publications has increased to 1,179 in 2011 in PubMed only (December 19, 2011). Already in 2001, Macinko and Starfield identified four levels of analysis of social capital and health: the macro (countries, regions), meso (neighborhoods, municipalities), micro (social networks), and psychological (trust) levels (Macinko and Starfield 2001). Putnam's definition of social capital, which includes trust despite Putnam's macro and meso perspectives because the level of trust may be regarded as a trait of populations and countries just as well as a cognitive trait of the individual, has, together with Coleman's definition, had the strongest impact in the behavioral medicine and public health literature, although other authors such as Bourdieu and Portes are also referred to and their definitions also used in empirical studies.

Although Putnam had earlier stated that the area of health and public health was probably a

research area not particularly strongly associated with and affected by social capital (Putnam 1993), he 7 years later contended, based on the dramatic increase of results of empirical studies, that health and public health was probably one of the most important areas associated with and affected by social capital (Putnam 2000). Kawachi et al. (1999) suggested four main causal pathways by which social capital may affect health: direct psychological and psychosocial stress pathways, social norms and values which foster health-related behaviors, access to health care and amenities through social networks and contacts, and crime, particularly violent crime (Kawachi et al. 1999).

Kawachi et al. (1997) found in an early ecological study that low levels of social capital were associated with a higher total mortality rate and higher rates of a wide range of major causes of death, including coronary heart disease (CHD), cerebrovascular disease, unintentional injury, and infant mortality (Kawachi et al. 1997). Later epidemiological, ecological, and individual level studies have, just to give some examples, revealed significant associations between low levels of social capital and higher age-adjusted mortality rates, shorter life expectancy, higher mortality and violent crime rates, higher coronary heart disease morbidity and mortality, low birth weight rates, higher incidence rates of a variety of sexually transmitted diseases, low life satisfaction, less happiness, poor self-rated health, poor mental health (measured with the GHQ12 index), poor physical and mental health measured by SF-12, depression, psychiatric morbidity, higher suicide rates, worse chronic conditions, functional limitations (Islam et al. 2006), and health-related behaviors such as lower levels of leisure time physical activity (Lindström et al. 2001). Some studies have investigated associations between vertical social capital, i.e., trust and participation across a well-defined power gradient, and health (Sundquist et al. 2006). Multilevel studies, which mostly include the individual level and one or more contextual levels of analysis, have e.g. shown that low social capital is associated with poor self-rated health and violent crime

(Islam et al. 2006). Multilevel analyses have also demonstrated significant associations between social capital and access to health care (Lindström et al. 2006). Multilevel analyses have increasingly been conducted in order to disentangle the associations between contextual level social capital and individual level health in order to avoid the “ecological fallacy,” which denotes the risk of drawing erroneous conclusions concerning individual health from observations of ecological data, and the “individualist fallacy,” which denotes the risk of missing associations and effects of neighborhood or other forms of contextual social capital on individual health.

Since social capital is a characteristic of social relations, trust, and cooperation between individuals, groups, and organizations rather than of individuals, one important issue related to social capital and health is to define relevant social contexts for the analysis of the association and impact of contextual social capital on health and health-related phenomena such as health-related behaviors and access to health care and amenities. Most multilevel studies include neighborhoods or other geographic entities as second, third, and so forth levels of analysis. However, one question concerns whether geographic entities are the most relevant social contexts. This discussion is highly relevant because many multilevel studies have shown small or moderate associations between neighborhood and geographic social capital and health of individuals within single countries, while the statistical associations between social capital and health have been stronger and more consistent in individual level studies. Recently, some prospective cohort studies have investigated workplace social capital and found significant effects on, e.g., depression (Kouvanonen et al. 2008). In studies of social capital and school children and adolescents, the family and schools are relevant social contexts in addition to neighborhoods. Putnam suggested already in 2000 that the Internet would become a relevant area for studies of social capital and social networks (Putnam 2000).

Most studies of social capital and health are cross-sectional, i.e., they measure all factors at the

same point in time which makes causal inference formally impossible. In many instances, causality may go in both directions. Social capital may, e.g., cause poor mental health, but mental health may also affect social capital in the forms of social participation in social networks, civic participation, and feelings of trust and reciprocity. A few longitudinal studies with panel data including three waves of observations or more have been conducted in recent years (Giordano and Lindström 2011).

Social capital is not always associated with better health. Szreter and Woolcock developed the concepts of bonding, bridging, and linking social capital. Bonding social capital denotes “trusting and cooperative relations between members of a network who see themselves as being similar in terms of their shared social identity,” while bridging social capital refers to “relations of respect and mutuality between people who know they are not alike in some sociodemographic (or social identity) sense (differing by age, ethnic group, class, etc.)” (Szreter and Woolcock 2004). While many social networks, associations, and organizations, e.g., youth organizations, sports clubs, and labor unions, manage to combine bonding and bridging social capital, some other, e.g., criminal networks, do not. This phenomenon of exclusion of outsiders and the rest of society is sometimes referred to as “the dark side of social capital,” and its effects on health may be detrimental. Linking social capital refers to “norms of respect and networks of trusting relationships between people who are interacting across explicit, formal, or institutionalized power or authority gradients in society” (Szreter and Woolcock 2004).

Critique against the research concerning social capital and health has been expressed by the so-called neo-materialists, who claim that it obscures underlying ideological, political, administrative, and economic determinants of health inequalities and other public health issues. The neo-materialists emphasize the importance of active governments, active welfare politics, and economic preconditions for the realization of public health programs (Navarro 2004).

Cross-References

- [Cross-Sectional Study](#)
- [Longitudinal Study](#)
- [Multilevel Analysis](#)
- [Social Cohesion](#)
- [Social Support](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bourdieu, P., & Wacquant, L. (1992). *Invitation to reflexive sociology*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Coleman, J. S. (1990). *Foundations of social theory*. Princeton: Harvard University Press.
- Giordano, G. N., & Lindström, M. (2011). Social capital and change in psychological health over time. *Social Science and Medicine*, 72, 1219–1227.
- Islam, K., Merlo, J., Kawachi, I., Lindström, M., & Gerdtham, U. (2006). Social capital and health: Does egalitarianism matter? A literature review. *International Journal for Equity in Health*, 5, 3.
- Kawachi, I., & Berkman, L. (2000). Social cohesion, social capital, and health. In L. Berkman & I. Kawachi (Eds.), *Social epidemiology* (pp. 174–190). Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Kawachi, I., Kennedy, B. P., Lochner, K., & Prothrow-Stith, D. (1997). Social capital, income inequality, and mortality. *American Journal of Public Health*, 87, 1491–1498.
- Kawachi, I., Kennedy, B. P., & Wilkinson, R. G. (1999). Social capital and self-rated health: A contextual analysis. *American Journal of Public Health*, 89, 1187–1193.
- Kouvonen, A., Oksanen, T., Vahtera, J., Stafford, M., Wilkinson, R., Schneider, J., et al. (2008). Low workplace social capital as a predictor of depression. The Finnish public sector study. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 167(10), 1143–1151.
- Lindström, M., Hanson, B. S., & Östergren, P. O. (2001). Socioeconomic differences in leisure-time physical activity: The role of social participation and social capital in shaping health related behaviour. *Social Science and Medicine*, 52, 441–451.
- Lindström, M., Axén, E., Lindström, C., Beckman, A., Moghaddassi, M., & Merlo, J. (2006). Social capital and access to a regular doctor: A multilevel analysis in southern Sweden. *Health Policy*, 79, 153–164.
- Macinko, S., & Starfield, B. (2001). The utility of social capital in research on health determinants. *The Milbank Quarterly*, 79(3), 387–427.
- Navarro, V. (2004). Commentary: Is social capital the solution or the problem? *International Journal of Epidemiology*, 33, 672–674.
- Putnam, R. D. (1993). *Making democracy work. Civic traditions in modern Italy*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.

- Putnam, R. D. (2000). *Bowling alone. The collapse and revival of American community*. New York/London: Simon and Schuster.
- Sundquist, J., Johansson, S. E., Yang, M., Sundquist, J., Johansson, S. E., Yang, M., et al. (2006). Low linking social capital as a predictor of coronary heart disease in Sweden: A cohort study of 2.6 million people. *Social Science and Medicine*, 62, 954–963.
- Szreter, S., & Woolcock, M. (2004). Health by association? Social capital, social theory, and the political economy of public health. *International Epidemiology*, 33, 650–667.

Social Circumstance

- [Sociocultural](#)

Social Cohesion

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Definition

Social cohesion (SC) refers to the degree to which links between a society's members are strong and the degree to which people in a community share values and goals and are interdependent. Durkehiem conceptualized SC as a major protective variable against adversities including suicide. In his seminal work, Durkheim found that Catholics have lower suicide rates than Protestants, and he attributed this to greater social control and cohesion in the former than among the latter (Pickering and Walford 2000). Kelleher and Daly (1990) found that reduced SC (indexed by reduced marriage rates and increased separations) was among the variables possibly contributing to increased suicide rates in Ireland, between 1970 and 1985. The Dutch sociologist Geert Hofstede conducted the first empirically based quantification of international cultural dimensions in the 1970s in IBM plants around the world. Among

his four main cultural dimensions, individualism emerged, which can be seen as the opposite of SC. Individualism from Hofstede's scores does predict on a global level present suicide rates (Gidron and Ferreira 2012). Recent studies have also tested the relationship between SC and various health outcomes, pertinent to behavioral medicine. Chaix et al. (2008) found in Sweden that low SC predicted myocardial infarctions, independent of important demographic variables. More recently, Clark et al. (2011) found that each one point increase in SC predicted a reduction of 53% in deaths attributed to stroke, independent of confounders. SC was assessed individually by six items reflecting social interactions and contacts with neighbors. One mechanism could be that more cohesive societies (such as religious kibbutzim in Israel vs. secular ones) also promote a healthier psychosocial profile – higher sense of coherence and lower hostility levels (Kark et al. 1996). The concept of SC is thus one domain where concepts important in behavioral medicine and sociology may influence health at the more macro level of societies. One type of simple intervention which may increase SC is Walton and Cohen's social belonging method, where people are indirectly shown that others experience similar negative experiences as they do. This was found to raise academic performance in vulnerable or stigmatized people (Walton and Cohen 2007). This could have important implications for preventative medicine and public health. Programs for increasing the sense of belongingness and SC need to be developed and adapted to large-scale social contexts, and their effects on health outcomes can then be empirically examined.

Cross-References

- [Social Support](#)
- [Suicide Risk, Suicide Risk Factors](#)

References and Further Readings

- Chaix, B., Lindström, M., Rosvall, M., & Merlo, J. (2008). Neighborhood social interactions and risk of acute

- myocardial infarction. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 62, 62–68.
- Clark, C. J., Guo, H., Lunos, S., Aggarwal, N. T., Beck, T., Evans, D. A., et al. (2011). Neighborhood cohesion is associated with reduced risk of stroke mortality. *Stroke*, 42, 1212–1217.
- Gidron, Y., & Ferreira, O. (2012). *Culture & international suicide rates*. Paper presented at the sixth annual international conference on psychology, May, Athens.
- Kark, J. D., Carmel, S., Sinnreich, R., Goldberger, N., & Friedlander, Y. (1996). Psychosocial factors among members of religious and secular kibbutzim. *Israel Journal of Medical Sciences*, 32, 185–194.
- Kelleher, M. F., & Daly, M. (1990). Suicide in Cork and Ireland. *British Medical Journal*, 157, 533–538.
- Pickering, W. S. F., & Walford, G. (Eds.). (2000). *Durkheim's suicide: A century of research and debate*. London: Psychology Press/Routledge.
- Walton, G. M., & Cohen, G. L. (2007). A question of belonging: Race, social fit, and achievement. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 92, 82–96.

Social Conflict

Orit Birnbaum-Weitzman

Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Interpersonal conflict](#); [Negative social interaction](#); [Relational distress](#); [Relationship conflict](#); [Social stress](#)

Definition

Social conflict refers to the various types of negative social interactions that may occur within social relationships including, but not limited to, arguments, rejection, criticism, hostility, insensitivity, unwanted demands, and ridicule (Seeman 2001). Social conflict can also escalate to include physical violence. Conflict refers to overt behavior rather than subjective states. It typically results from purposeful interaction among two parties in a competitive setting in which the parties are aware of the incompatibility of positions. Social conflict can extend to different social relationships

including those with significant others such as spouses, family members, and friends, as well as less intimate relationships.

Description

Studies on social conflict and interpersonal stress suggest that negative aspects of social interactions including social conflict and social control are inversely related to emotional well-being and health (Miller et al. 2009). There is substantial evidence that interactions marked by acute conflict and negative emotions have direct physiological consequences. Epidemiological studies have linked social isolation, low social support, and high levels of social conflict with morbidity and mortality (Miller et al. 2009). Changes in immune function and elevated inflammation have been suggested as key pathways underlying the association between social conflict and health (Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 2010). Inflammation is a key pathogenic mechanism in many infections and cardiovascular and neoplastic diseases. Recent studies have also linked stressful interpersonal relationships to alterations in gene expression and intracellular signaling mechanisms (Miller et al. 2009).

Consistent evidence also points to the strong relationship between social conflict and psychological distress. Specifically, interpersonal stress and conflict with family and friends has been reliably associated with negative affect, depression, and emotional stress responses (Graham et al. 2007). Depression has been proposed as a particularly important psychological mechanism by which social conflict in close relationships affect immune function (Miller et al. 2009). The literature indicates that social conflict is associated with a range of physiological and psychological mechanisms that are in turn associated with concomitant alterations in the cardiovascular, endocrine, and immune systems. Family conflict and discord and domestic violence have also been linked to suicidal behavior (Van Orden et al. 2010). In drug abusers, interpersonal conflict has been also associated with an increased probability of a history of suicide attempt and ideation (Van Orden et al. 2010).

Social conflict has been assessed using self-report questionnaires about relationship quality and quantity as well as in experimental studies of laboratory-induced marital conflict (Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 2010). To date, there is not one standard measure to assess social conflict. Different types of study designs have been used to assess the impact of social conflict on physical and emotional well-being including correlational studies, experimental studies of couples, and animal studies (see Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 2010). Correlational studies suggest that social isolation, lack of social support, and interpersonal conflict are associated with biological markers of inflammation (i.e., C-reactive protein and interleukin-6). More recent studies have also suggested a plausible link between distressed pair-bond relationships and plasma levels of oxytocin in females and vasopressin in males. However, this research is still preliminary. In other correlation studies, men and women who had recently undergone a marital separation or divorce had poorer immune function than demographically matched married individuals (see Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 2010).

According to Kiecolt-Glaser et al. (1998), being married is not always protective, especially if there is frequent interpersonal conflict in the couple. In experimental studies with married couples, this group of researchers has shown that conflictive social interactions consistently result in heightened blood pressure and heart rate, especially for those with high trait hostility. Conflict discussion tasks are also widely used in marital research by this group and others. Discussion of marital problems has been associated with both immediate and longer term physiological changes related to the degree of negativity or hostility displayed during conflict (see Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 2010). Gender differences have been observed in these studies, with women evidencing greater sensitivity to negative marital interactions than men. Similarly, marital conflict shows a greater impact on health and physiological functioning in older adults compared to young couples. In general, this research suggests that relationships that are stable and long lasting but marked by social conflict have the potential to function as both an acute and chronic stressor that may impact health over an extensive period

of time (Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 2010). Relationship conflict and termination can also provoke detrimental health behaviors including disturbed sleep, unhealthy diets, less physical activity, smoking, and greater use of alcohol and other drugs. Thus, relationships characterized by hostility and conflict could have negative health consequences.

The most common social conflict models involving laboratory animals are variations of the resident-intruder model wherein one animal is placed in the home cage of another. Animal studies have shown that social conflict and disruption of social relationships have important immunological and endocrine consequences (Huhman 2006). In rodents, an aggressive social encounter is typically accompanied by elevated levels of stress hormones and changes in cellular and humoral immunity. Exposure to social conflict appears to have long-lasting behavioral and physiological effects not just in defeated/subordinate animals but also in dominant ones that appear to be moderated by developmental level (Huhman 2006). Data from experimental primate models also show that stressful social relationships can exacerbate viral infections by altering gene expression responses to infection. Social conflict models in animals may be useful for studying the physiological concomitants of a number of psychiatric disorders including major depression (see Huhman 2006).

Cross-References

- [Family Stress](#)
- [Interpersonal Relationships](#)
- [Marriage and Health](#)

References and Readings

- Graham, J. E., Christian, L. M., & Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K. (2007). Close relationships and immunity. In R. Ader (Ed.), *Psychoneuroimmunology* (pp. 781–798). Burlington, MA: Elsevier Academic Press.
- Huhman, K. L. (2006). Social conflict models: Can they inform us about human psychopathology? *Hormones and Behavior*, 50, 640–646.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Glaser, R., Cacioppo, J. T., & Malarkey, W. B. (1998). Marital stress: Immunologic,

neuroendocrine and autonomic correlates. *Annals of New York Academic Sciences*, 840, 656–663.

- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Gouin, J. P., & Hantsoo, L. (2010). Close relationships, inflammation, and health. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 35, 33–38.
- Miller, G., Chen, E., & Cole, S. W. (2009). Health psychology: Developing biologically plausible models linking the social world and physical health. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 60, 501–524.
- Seeman, T. (2001). How do others get under our skin: Social relationships and health. In C. D. Ryff & B. H. Singer (Eds.), *Emotion, social relationships and health* (pp. 189–209). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Van Orden, K. A., Witte, T. K., Cukrowicz, K. C., Braithwaite, S. R., Selby, E. A., & Joiner, T. E. (2010). The interpersonal theory of suicide. *Psychological Review*, 117, 575–600.

Social Determinants of Health

- [Social Factors](#)

Social Ecological Framework

- [Ecological Models: Application to Physical Activity](#)

Social Ecological Model

- [Ecological Models: Application to Physical Activity](#)

Social Epidemiology

G. David Batty
Department of Epidemiology and Public Health,
University College London, London, UK

Definition

While epidemiology is defined as the study of the distribution and determinants of disease and typically treats social determinants as background to

biomedical phenomena, social epidemiology is a sphere of enquiry in its own right. It is distinguished by explicitly investigating social determinants of population distributions of health, disease, and well-being. Social epidemiology was perhaps first coined as a discipline in the 1950s; postgraduate programs in social epidemiology are now offered.

Cross-References

- [Epidemiology](#)
- [Socioeconomic Status \(SES\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Berkman, L., & Kawachi, I. (Eds.). (2000). *Social epidemiology*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Krieger, N. (2001). A glossary for social epidemiology. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 55(10), 693–700.

Social Factors

Emily Kothe
School of Psychology, University of Sydney,
Sydney, NSW, Australia

Synonyms

[Social determinants of health](#); [Socioeconomic status \(SES\)](#)

Definition

The conditions under which people are born, live, work, and age are collectively known as the social determinants of health. These social factors include both economic and social conditions and are may be responsible for the health inequities both within and between countries.

Description

Research into the social factors underpinning health arose from the dual observations of health disparities both within and between countries. These disparities can be easily (although crudely) demonstrated by way of differences in life expectancy for different groups.

Between-country differences in adult mortality are growing rapidly. Whereas mortality rose in Africa, Central and Eastern Europe between 1970 and 2002, global mortality fell overall during the same period (World Health Organization 2003). These differences in mortality rates are especially stark when comparing life expectancy by country. For example, while the average life expectancy at birth is 89.78 years in Monaco, it is just 29.3 years in Haiti (CIA 2011).

Large differences in morbidity and mortality are also apparent within the same country. For example, in Australia, the life expectancy for Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islanders is approximately 10 years below the national average (Australian Bureau of Statistics 2010).

Study of the social factors that underlie health provides possible mechanisms by which this large health disparity can be understood. The major social factors which influence health include both structural determinants of health, and the conditions of an individual's daily life. Research linking social factors to health outcome has identified a number of key social determinants of health (e.g., Wilkinson and Marmot 2003). These include:

- The social gradient
- Stress
- Early life
- Social exclusion
- Work and unemployment

These factors are thought to influence health both indirectly and directly. In many cases, social factors act in combination to have a cumulative impact on health. For example, while unemployment is known to have a direct influence on

health, it is also likely to have an indirect influence on health through its influence on other social factors (e.g., stress).

The Social Gradient

It is widely recognized that poverty is related to high levels of illness and disease. Data consistently shows that the health status of individuals in the poorest countries leads to significantly lower life expectancy and significantly higher risk of disease than that of individuals in richer countries.

The influence of socioeconomic status is also apparent within countries and appears to have an influence on health across the socioeconomic spectrum. This effect, known as the social gradient, shows that even within industrialized countries, both mortality and morbidity are linearly distributed across different levels of socioeconomic advantage and disadvantage. This research suggests that even moderate differences in wealth, and associated social factors, can have an important impact on health status.

For more information, see Social Class.

Early Life

Maternal deprivation and ill-health during pregnancy have both been linked to poor fetal development. Factors such as malnutrition, maternal stress, and inadequate prenatal care all increase the risk of childhood mortality and have profound impacts on health throughout later life.

Research has also linked circumstances during infancy to both physical and mental health in adult life. Social functioning, physical health, and the performance of health-protective behaviors have all been linked to experiences in early life.

For more information, see Maternal Stress; Birth Weight; Child Neglect; Child Development; Stress, Early Life.

Stress

Social and psychological circumstance can have a profound impact on the number of stressors an individual is exposed to and the level of stress that they experience. Increased levels of stress have been linked to increased risk of both morbidity and mortality.

Research suggests that exposure to stressors can have both direct and indirect influences on health. Chronic stress can directly increase risk of disease through its influence on physiological processes such as immune function. However, both acute and chronic stress can also lead to high rates of health-damaging behaviors such as alcohol consumption and smoking.

For more information, see Stress; Stressor.

Social Exclusion

Social exclusion relates to the isolation of certain member within a society and is associated with high rates of disease and mortality. It is most often related to relative poverty, low educational attainment, unemployment, and experiences of stigma and discrimination.

Individuals who experience social exclusion are subject to a pattern of multiple deprivations that prevent them from participating fully in society. This is often characterized by poor access to services, including health care, housing, education, and transport.

For more information, see Social Capital and Health; Stigma.

Work and Unemployment

Research suggests that work and unemployment have separate – but at times overlapping – influences on health.

In general, being unemployed places individuals at increased risk of a number of diseases (e.g., depression and heart disease). The effects of unemployment on health are linked to both

material deprivation that may occur due to a lack of income, and to the psychological consequences of being unemployed. The influence of unemployment on health appears to manifest itself even before individuals become unemployed, such that experiencing high levels of job insecurity (in many cases, a precursor of unemployment) can be as harmful to health as being unemployed.

In addition to the role of perceived job security, it appears that there are a range of factors that determine the extent to which employment is health protective. These include:

- Level of job control
- Level of job demand
- Adequacy of rewards for job performance

In particular it appears that professions that are characterized by low control but high demand place workers at increased risk of ill-health. Importantly social support and recognition of job performance, either through higher wages or increased social status, both appear to be health protective.

For more information, see Work-Related Stress.

Social Causation and Social Drift: Explanation of Possible Causal Relationships Between Social Factors and Health

When attempting to understand the influence of social factors on health, it is important to consider the possible causal relationships between these social factors and health. Broadly speaking, there are two possible ways of understanding the causal relationship between these factors. These explanations are described below using the example of the social gradient (Morrison and Bennett 2008).

The first explanation – called social causation – would suggest that low socioeconomic status is causally related to health problems (i.e., that there is something about low socioeconomic status that “causes” ill-health). For example, an individual who experiences being socioeconomically disadvantaged

may be exposed to poor living conditions which cause later health problems.

The second explanation – called social drift – would suggest that ill-health is causally related to low socioeconomic status (i.e., that experiencing illness “causes” an individual to lose their socioeconomic position). For example, an individual who has to leave work due to illness may find that without a steady income, they are now socioeconomically disadvantaged.

Longitudinal studies provide evidence for both explanations. For example, studies have consistently shown that low socioeconomic status baseline is a predictor of heart disease at follow-up and that individuals who become unemployed are more likely to suffer from health complaints than individuals who stay employed. On the basis of this evidence, it would appear most likely that social factors and health have a bidirectional relationship (Morrison and Bennett 2008).

Cross-References

- [Birth Weight](#)
- [Child Development](#)
- [Child Neglect](#)
- [Health Care Access](#)
- [Maternal Stress](#)
- [Social Capital and Health](#)
- [Stigma](#)
- [Stress](#)
- [Stress, Early Life](#)
- [Stressor](#)
- [Work-Related Stress](#)

References and Readings

- Australian Bureau of Statistics. (2010). *Experimental life tables for Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Australians, 2005–2007* (Cat. No. 3302.0.55.003). Canberra: Author.
- CIA. (2011). *The world factbook: Life expectancy at birth*. Retrieved 18 Nov 2010 from <https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/the-world-factbook/rankorder/2102rank.html#>
- Marmot, M. (2005). Social determinants of health inequalities. *The Lancet*, 365(9464), 1099–1104.

- Morrison, V., & Bennett, P. (2008). *An introduction to health psychology*. New York: Prentice Hall.
- Wilkinson, R. G., & Marmot, M. G. (2003). *Social determinants of health: The solid facts*. Copenhagen: World Health Organization.
- World Health Organization. (2003). *World health report 2003: Shaping the future*. Geneva: Author.

Social Health

► Racial Inequality in Economic and Social Well-Being

Social Inhibition

Johan Denollet
CoRPS – Center of Research on Psychology in Somatic diseases, Tilburg University, Tilburg, The Netherlands

Synonyms

Behavioral inhibition

Definition

Social inhibition (SI) is a broad personality trait that refers to *the stable tendency to inhibit the expression of emotions and behaviors in social interaction* (Asendorpf 1993). Individuals who are high in SI are more likely to feel inhibited, tense, and insecure when with others. In children, the label *behavioral inhibition* is often used to describe this tendency (Gest 1997).

SI is more closely related to the *interpersonal dimension* of introversion/extraversion than to intrapsychic facets of extraversion such as positive affect or excitement seeking. Infants and children with an inhibited temperament tend to develop into adults who avoid people and

situations that are novel or unfamiliar (Schwartz et al. 2003). Hence, individuals who are high in SI try to avoid potential “dangers” involved in social interaction, such as disapproval or criticism by others, through the deliberate inhibition of self-expression (Asendorpf 1993). They tend to experience discomfort in encounters with other people, may keep other people at a distance, and are less likely to actively seek social support.

Interestingly, recent imaging research demonstrates the effect of social inhibition on the *neural coding of threatening signals* in the human brain (Kret et al. 2011). Socially inhibited adults may show greater signal response in the brain to threatening stimuli than adults who are not socially inhibited (Schwartz et al. 2003). Other research also indicates that socially inhibited people tend to overactivate a broad cortical network in the brain when looking at fearful or angry facial and bodily expressions (Kret et al. 2011).

There are several reasons why it is important to account for individual differences in SI in clinical research and practice. First, SI has been related to *difficulties in coping with the challenges of everyday life*. For example, inhibited children may show a delay in establishing a first stable partnership and finding a first full-time job in early adulthood (Asendorpf et al. 2008). Second, socially inhibited individuals may seem quiet on the surface, while they may actually *avoid interpersonal conflict* through excessive control over their emotional and behavioral responses. Third, SI has been associated with an increased long-term *risk of developing internalizing problems* (Asendorpf et al. 2008), including anxiety disorders (Rapee 2002) and other forms of distress (Gest 1997) in adulthood.

SI may also increase the risk of physical health problems. Individuals who are high in SI display physiologic hyperreactivity to stress (Cole et al. 2003), and the active inhibition of emotions induces increased cardiovascular reactivity (Gross and Levenson 1997). In clinical research, SI has been associated with the progression of HIV (Cole et al. 2003) and with an increased risk of adverse cardiac events in patients with heart disease (Denollet et al. 2006).

SI can be reliably assessed with the 7-item SI measure of the DS14 (Denollet 2005), a scale that was specifically designed to assess this broad and stable tendency to inhibit the expression of emotions and behaviors in social interaction.

Cross-References

► [Type D Personality](#)

References and Readings

- Asendorpf, J. B. (1993). Social inhibition: A general-developmental perspective. In H. C. Traue & J. W. Pennebaker (Eds.), *Emotion, inhibition, and health* (pp. 80–99). Seattle: Hogrefe & Huber.
- Asendorpf, J. B., Denissen, J. J., & van Aken, M. A. (2008). Inhibited and aggressive preschool children at 23 years of age: Personality and social transitions into adulthood. *Developmental Psychology*, 44, 997–1011.
- Cole, S. W., Kemeny, M. E., Fahey, J. L., Zack, J. A., & Naliboff, B. D. (2003). Psychological risk factors for HIV pathogenesis: Mediation by the autonomic nervous system. *Biological Psychiatry*, 54, 1444–1456.
- Denollet, J. (2005). DS14: Standard assessment of negative affectivity, social inhibition, and type D personality. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 67, 89–97.
- Denollet, J., Pedersen, S. S., Ong, A. T., Erdman, R. A., Serruys, P. W., & van Domburg, R. T. (2006). Social inhibition modulates the effect of negative emotions on cardiac prognosis following percutaneous coronary intervention in the drug-eluting stent era. *European Heart Journal*, 27, 171–177.
- Gest, S. D. (1997). Behavioral inhibition: Stability and associations with adaptation from childhood to early adulthood. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 72, 467–475.
- Gross, J. J., & Levenson, R. W. (1997). Hiding feelings: The acute effects of inhibiting negative and positive emotion. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, 106, 95–103.
- Kret, M. E., Denollet, J., Grèzes, J., & de Gelder, B. (2011). The role of negative affectivity and social inhibition in perceiving social threat: An fMRI study. *Neuropsychologia*, 49, 1187–1193.
- Rapee, R. M. (2002). The development and modification of temperamental risk for anxiety disorders: Prevention of a lifetime of anxiety? *Biological Psychiatry*, 52, 947–957.
- Schwartz, C. E., Wright, C. I., Shin, L. M., Kagan, J., & Rauch, S. L. (2003). Inhibited and uninhibited infants “grown up”: Adult amygdalar response to novelty. *Science*, 300, 1952–1953.

Social Integration

► [Social Support](#)

Social Isolation

► [Loneliness](#)

► [Loneliness and Health](#)

Social Marketing

Sara Mijares St. George¹ and Dawn Wilson²

¹Department of Public Health Sciences, University of Miami Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

²Department of Psychology, University of South Carolina, Columbia, SC, USA

Synonyms

[Cause marketing](#); [Noncommercial advertising](#); [Public interest advertising](#); [Public service advertising](#)

Definition

Social marketing is the application of marketing principles to non-tangible “products,” including ideas, attitudes, and lifestyle changes. Unlike traditional marketing, the primary goal of social marketing is to improve public health, not to increase the marketer’s profitability (Lefebvre and Flora 1988). Specifically, it is a planning and intervention model that targets audiences with marketing technologies to improve health and quality of life (Andreasen 1995). There are five principles addressed in the “marketing mix” of social marketing, known as the “5 Ps:” product, price, place, promotion, and positioning. “Product” is the target behavior (e.g., breastfeeding,

healthy eating). “Price” refers to the social, economic, and psychological costs involved in adopting the target behavior. “Place” is the setting, community context, or distribution channels for the product. “Promotion” includes the steps taken to make the audience aware of the ideas, behaviors, and their benefits and may also involve interpersonal communication, media messages, grassroots approaches, special events, and incentives. Lastly, “positioning” describes how the product is framed, namely, to maximize perceived benefits and minimize perceived costs.

Social marketing campaigns using mass media strategies have been effective in promoting positive health behavior outcomes. For example, the Stanford Five-City Project for Heart Disease Prevention, (Farquhar et al. 1985, 1990) which targeted specific audiences, developed a product (i.e., a 6-week quitting contest), and involved local television stations, resulted in a 30% increase in smoking cessation. Similarly, the VERB Campaign (Huhman et al. 2005; Wong et al. 2004) utilized mass media techniques such as advertising on television, on billboards, through a website, and through school- and community-based promotions to increase physical activity in ethnically diverse youth and their parents. While both of the aforementioned social marketing campaigns involved mass media strategies to promote their “products,” social marketing campaigns that use interpersonal channels and target the social context may maximize success in promoting health behavior change.

Indeed, effective and sustainable social marketing campaigns are driven largely by social factors (e.g., social norms, social support) and involve the target population in the social marketing processes to increase the integration of the program into established community structures (Bryant et al. 2000). For example, Wilson et al. (2010) used a collaborative community process to develop a social marketing campaign which motivated citizens in a low-income, high-crime community to use a walking path. With the assistance of a communications firm, a community steering committee guided the development of the overall social marketing objectives and approach. One of

five key objectives, including increasing perceptions of safety and social connectedness, was targeted each month using corresponding print materials (e.g., a 12-month calendar, matching door hangers). Through grassroots social networking, the program engaged residents to participate in walks with peers, allowing them to feel safe and connected to their neighbors. This study is an example of how involving constituents in the process of social marketing ensures that the approach is tailored and truly fits the needs of the target audience. Furthermore, social marketing campaigns that strategically provide opportunities for interactions between neighbors, friends, and families may influence social norms and support around a particular health behavior and foster a social climate of behavior change.

Cross-References

- [Health Behaviors](#)
- [Health Communication](#)
- [Social Support](#)

References and Readings

- Andreasen, A. (1995). *Marketing social change: Changing behavior to promote health, social development, and the environment*. San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Bryant, C., Forthofer, M., Landis, D., & McDermott, R. (2000). Community-based prevention marketing: The next steps in disseminating behavior change. *American Journal of Health Behavior*, 24, 61–68.
- Farquhar, J., Fortmann, S., MacCoby, N., Haskell, W., Williams, P., Flora, J., et al. (1985). The Stanford five-city project: Design and methods. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 122(2), 323.
- Farquhar, J., Fortmann, S., Flora, J., Taylor, C., Haskell, W., Williams, P., et al. (1990). Effects of communitywide education on cardiovascular disease risk factors: The Stanford five-city project. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 264(3), 359.
- Huhman, M., Potter, L., Wong, F., Banspach, S., Duke, J., & Heitzler, C. (2005). Effects of a mass media campaign to increase physical activity among children: Year-1 results of the VERB campaign. *Pediatrics*, 116(2), e277.
- Lefebvre, C., & Flora, J. (1988). Social marketing and public health intervention. *Health Education & Behavior*, 15(3), 299.

Wilson, D. K., Trumpeter, N. N., St. George, S. M., Coulon, S. M., Griffin, S., Van Horn, M. L., et al. (2010). An overview of the “positive action for today’s health” (PATH) trial for increasing walking in low income, ethnic minority communities. *Contemporary Clinical Trials*, 31, 624–633.

Wong, F., Huhman, M., Asbury, L., Bretthauer-Mueller, R., McCarthy, S., Londe, P., et al. (2004). VERB™-a social marketing campaign to increase physical activity among youth. *Preventing Chronic Disease*, 1(3), 1–7.

Social Media

► Social Networking Sites

Social Network

- Family Social Support
- Family, Relationships
- Social Support

Social Networking Sites

Carly M. Goldstein^{1,2} and Anna Luke³

¹The Weight Control and Diabetes Research Center, The Miriam Hospital, Providence, RI, USA

²Warren Alpert Medical School, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA

³Department of Psychology, Kent State University, Kent, OH, USA

Synonyms

Digital media; Social media; Virtual communities

Definition

Social networking sites, sometimes characterized under the umbrella term social media, are virtual communities or networks that allow individuals,

communities, and organizations to create and disseminate user-generated content including but not limited to pictures, videos, text, memes, and profile pages for individuals or groups; social media content has greater virality than other web-based content. By connecting a user’s profile (maintained by the social media organization) to other individuals or groups, social networks are formed. Well-known social media sites include Facebook, Myspace, Twitter, Instagram, and Snapchat. When social networking sites were first popularized, the average users were emerging adults, but now users represent a wide range of ages, races, and places of residence.

Description

Social media encompasses all online platforms on which media content is uploaded, and social networking sites are online, dynamic, interaction-based communities where online relationships can be created or maintained. These terms are often used interchangeably and are inherently related.

Social networking sites have undergone rapid and dramatic development since their creation. Emailing, with its ability to connect with others electronically and its inclusion of individualized “profiles” (i.e., email addresses), is considered to be one of the preliminary social network modalities. In the late 1990s, instant communication platforms were developed, such as instant messaging (e.g., AOL Instant Messenger), chat rooms, and online blog communities (e.g., Live Journal). Myspace, LinkedIn, and Facebook, all social networking sites, followed in the early 2000s; they allowed individual users and collective groups to create personalized page profiles from which they could “friend” one another, which adds the other user to the original user’s social network. Users could publicly signify their identity and affiliations (e.g., schools, profession) and choose to connect with preexisting acquaintances or reach out to new ones. Although Facebook remains the most popular social networking site to date (Dagan and Beskin 2015), social networking sites that allow users to

comment on shared photographs and videos, such as Instagram and Snapchat, have grown in popularity. Online dating sites are popular, specialized, social networking sites. Most sites allow users to geo-tag posts to indicate their location; content can be aggregated by location.

Social networking sites are used by individuals across the life span, although the most prevalent users are young adults and adolescents (Pagoto et al. 2016), with 92% of teenagers reporting daily Internet access and 71% report using more than one social networking site (Pew Research Center 2015a). Widespread smartphone/tablet ownership has facilitated increased social networking site use from mobile phones: nearly two-thirds of American adults own smartphones, of which approximately 75% reported accessing social networking sites on their phones at least once in the last week (Pew Research Center 2015b).

Although many social networking sites were originally designed to connect with acquaintances, their size, speed, and accessibility have made them increasingly utilized platforms for consumers and corporations to disseminate information, communicate, and coordinate social action (Pagoto et al. 2016). Businesses and researchers have also turned to these sites to advertise products or memberships, collect data on users, and engage with a large sample of diverse consumers and patients. Additionally, Twitter users are more likely to elect sharing their information publicly, making Twitter an innovative and convenient data collection tool (Turner-McGrievy and Beets 2015). Users can also highlight important words or phrases by preceding them with a hashtag (#), a microblogging convention that allows users to see others' messages related to that topic; if many people tweet a common hashtag, such as related to a news sensation or popular artist, the hashtag is prominently featured as "trending" on the site (Gruzd and Haythornthwaite 2013). This potential for virality is a core defining characteristic that differentiates social media content from other Internet content.

Peer-to-peer health care, the use of social networking sites to engage with other patients and health care professionals, is a subtype of electronic health (eHealth) that has become an

increasingly popular strategy for individuals to obtain and share information about health conditions and provide social support (Balatsoukas and Kennedy 2015; Pagoto et al. 2016). Beyond benefit to the individual, researchers and community health workers are harnessing the potential power of these sites to deliver prevention messages and intervention to improve health and outcomes through behavior change (Balatsoukas and Kennedy 2015). Social networking-based interventions can reduce barriers of traditional treatment (e.g., scheduling, transportation, social obligations; Pagoto et al. 2016). Messages exchanged between people in a social network may be more influential than messages delivered by an unknown outsider (Maher et al. 2014). These messages may also produce higher patient engagement and retention in interventions (Maher et al. 2014). Social networking sites have been effective in trials targeting smoking, sedentary behavior, weight loss, sedentary behavior, physical activity, and dietary awareness (Cheung et al. 2015; Maher et al. 2014).

Despite numerous advantages, there are many limitations for using social networking sites for research and intervention. While they are capable of quickly spreading useful, correct information, they are equally effective in facilitating the spread of misinformation. This is best illustrated in discussions of childhood vaccinations on social media sites, in which less than 25% of discussants were aware that the majority of evidence supports the safety and efficacy of vaccines (Seymour et al. 2015). Additionally, most health-related studies utilizing social networking sites have not isolated the effects of specific components, and extraneous variables may have influenced the results. Finally, numerous effective in-person interventions are challenging to modify for social networking-based delivery (Pagoto et al. 2016). Modifications may be needed to reach or surpass the success of in-person interventions. Controlled trials with foci on translation of delivery and patient engagement are necessary.

Social networking-based interventions may have massive impacts on health outcomes, but the current evidence is based primarily on qualitative data. Growing evidence with rigorous

methodology suggests that virtual communities represent one of the biggest opportunities for research and behavior change of this generation (Eysenbach et al. 2004). Smartphone ownership continues to rise among racial and ethnic minority groups (Pew Research Center 2015c), making social networking-based interventions an exciting opportunity to deliver high-quality behavioral interventions to individuals who are both typically underrepresented in research and often disproportionately affected by chronic health conditions. Research has indicated that the larger a group, the more contagious an idea becomes, highlighting social networking sites as a promising platform to impact healthy behavior changes (Luhmann and Rajaram 2015).

Cross-References

- eHealth
- Social Marketing

References and Further Readings

- Balatsoukas, P., & Kennedy, C. M. (2015). The role of social network technologies in online health promotion: A narrative review of theoretical and empirical factors influencing intervention effectiveness. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 17(6), e141. <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.3662>.
- Cheung, Y. T. D., Chan, C. H. H., Lai, C. K. J., Chan, W. F. V., Wang, M. P., Li, H. C. W., Chan, S. S. C., & Lam, T. H. (2015). Using whatsapp and facebook online social groups for smoking relapse prevention for recent quitters: A pilot pragmatic cluster randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 17(10), e238. <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.4829>.
- Dagan, N., & Beskin, D. (2015). Effects of social network exposure on nutritional learning: Development of an online educational platform. *JMIR Serious Games*, 3(2), e7. <https://doi.org/10.2196/games.4002>.
- Eysenbach, G., Powell, J., Englesakis, M., Rizo, C., & Stern, A. (2004). Health related virtual communities and electronic support groups: Systematic review of the effects of online peer to peer interactions. *British Medical Journal*, 328(7449), 1–6.
- Gruzd, A., & Haythornthwaite, C. (2013). Enabling community through social media. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 15(10), e248. <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.2796>.
- Luhmann, C. C., & Rajaram, S. (2015). Memory transmission in small groups and large networks: An agent-based model. *Psychological Science*, 26(12), 1909–1917. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0956797615605798>.
- Maher, C. A., Lewis, L. K., Ferrar, K., Marshall, S., De Bourdeaudhuij, I., & Vandelandotte, C. (2014). Are health behavior change interventions that use online social networks effective? A systematic review. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 16(2), e40. <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.2952>.
- Pagoto, S., Waring, M. E., May, C. N., Ding, E. Y., Kunz, W. H., Hayes, R., & Oleski, J. L. (2016). Adapting behavioral interventions for social media delivery. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 18(1), e24. <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.5086>.
- Pew Research Center. (2015a). *Teens, social media and technology overview 2015*. Retrieved from <http://www.pewinternet.org/2015/04/09/teens-social-media-technology-2015/>
- Pew Research Center. (2015b). *The smartphone difference*. Retrieved from <http://www.pewinternet.org/2015/04/01/us-smartphone-use-in-2015/>
- Pew Research Center. (2015c). *Technology device ownership: 2015*. Retrieved from <http://www.pewinternet.org/2015/10/29/technology-device-ownership-2015/>
- Seymour, B., Getman, R., Saraf, A., Zhang, L. H., & Kalendarian, E. (2015). When advocacy obscures accuracy online: Digital pandemics of public health misinformation through an antifuoride case study. *American Journal of Public Health*, 105(3), 517–523. <https://doi.org/10.2105/ajph.2014.302437>.
- Turner-McGrievy, G. M., & Beets, M. W. (2015). Tweet for health: Using an online social network to examine temporal trends in weight loss-related posts. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 5(2), 160–166. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s13142-015-0308-1>.

Social Networks

- Social Relationships
-

Social Norms

- Norms
-

Social Pain

- Loneliness

Social Problem-Solving Therapy (SPST)

► Problem Solving

Social Processes

► Interpersonal Processes

Social Relationships

Kristin J. August¹ and Karen S. Rook²

¹Department of Psychology, Rutgers University, Camden, NJ, USA

²Department of Psychology and Social Behavior, University of California Irvine, Irvine, CA, USA

Synonyms

Interpersonal relationships; Social networks; Social ties

Definition

Broadly defined, social relationships refer to the connections that exist between people who have recurring interactions that are perceived by the participants to have personal meaning. This definition includes relationships between family members, friends, neighbors, coworkers, and other associates but excludes social contacts and interactions that are fleeting, incidental, or perceived to have limited significance (e.g., time-limited interactions with service providers or retail employees). Scientists interested in behavioral medicine often emphasize the informal social relationships that are important in a person's life, or the person's social network, rather than formal relationships, such as those with physicians, lawyers, or clergy. Relationship phenomena of interest to scientists encompass both the

specific interactions that individuals experience with members of their social networks and the global perceptions of those interactions, which are shaped by past and current interactions with important social network members. The interactions that occur with social network members are often positive, and include the provision of emotional and material support, companionship, and encouragement of health-enhancing behaviors. Interactions with social network members also can be negative, however, and can include insensitive, unresponsive, hurtful, or intrusive actions by others.

Description

A large body of evidence suggests that social relationships are associated with health. Research has linked social relationships to mortality and morbidity (Berkman et al. 2000; Cohen 2004; House et al. 1988a). People with fewer social network ties have been found to have an elevated risk for a number of diseases, including cardiovascular disease and stroke, some forms of cancer, infectious disease, and possibly dementia (Cohen 2004; Uchino 2006). Social relationships also have been linked to the onset and progression of chronic illness, as well as illness adjustment, post-surgical recovery, disability, and survival (e.g., Seeman and Crimmins 2001). Increased confidence in the associations between social relationships and health stems from the fact that the associations emerge not only in large, well-controlled cross-sectional and longitudinal epidemiological studies, but also in experimental studies of humans and animals. Moreover, the strength of these associations is impressive, as evidenced by research suggesting that the effects of social relationships on health are comparable in size to the effects of conventional risk factors, such as smoking (House et al. 1988).

Structural Versus Functional Aspects of Social Relationships

Both structural and functional aspects of social relationships have been distinguished (Berkman et al. 2000). Structural aspects refer to the

existence and objective characteristics of social relationships, whereas functional aspects refer to the functions performed by and subjective qualities of social relationships (House et al. 1988b). Structural characteristics of interest to health researchers include the size of a person's social network, the frequency of contact with social network members, and the nature of the role relationships with network members (e.g., family member, friend, coworker). Research has demonstrated that some structural aspects of social relationships, such as social network size and frequency of contact, are related to health. For example, having more social ties and more frequent social interaction has been found to be associated with lower risks for mortality and poor mental and physical health outcomes. Similarly, the marital relationship has been found to be especially consequential for health, relative to other role relationships. Married individuals, compared to unmarried individuals, have a lower prevalence and incidence of both mental and physical health problems and a lower mortality risk (House et al. 1988). Furthermore, research suggests that men may derive more health benefits from marriage than do women. Poor quality marriages, however, and the disruption associated with divorce or widowhood appear to be particularly deleterious to mental and physical health (Burman and Margolin 1992).

Although numerous robust associations between structural aspects of social relationships and health have been documented, functional aspects also need to be examined in order to understand how and why social relationships impact health. The most commonly studied social network function that contributes to health is social support. A great deal of evidence suggests that social support can help to buffer people from the adverse effects of life stress (Cohen 2004; Uchino et al. 1996). Different types of social support have been distinguished (emotional, instrumental, informational), all of which are conceptualized as ways that social network members provide each other with care and aid in times of need. Different types of support are viewed as being important in the context of different stressors, although evidence suggests that

emotional support is important across a very broad range of stressors (Cohen and Wills 1985).

Beyond social support, social relationships also serve as sources of companionship, which provides opportunities for enjoyable interaction and camaraderie. The positive affect and relief from stress afforded by companionship, in turn, help to sustain health and well-being (Rook 1987). Social network members also monitor each other's health behavior and intervene to discourage health-compromising behavior, leading researchers to be interested in the health effects of social regulation (or social control; Umberson 1987).

The beneficial functions of social relationships also have been posited to have negative counterparts (Rook 1998). Specifically, social relationships not only can provide support, companionship, and social regulation, but also can fail to provide support or can provide misguided support, can reject or neglect others, and can foster bad, rather than good, health practices. Even though such negative interactions with others are relatively rare, they can take a considerable toll on health and well-being (Rook 1998).

Pathways by Which Social Relationships Influence Health

Understanding the pathways by which social relationships influence health is a key goal for health researchers. Three main pathways have been identified (Berkman et al. 2000; Rook et al. 2010): The first pathway involves psychological processes and conditions associated with social relationships, such as positive and negative emotions, feelings of self-worth and self-efficacy, coping strategies, and depression. The second pathway involves physiological processes, or activation of bodily systems (endocrine, cardiovascular, and immune) in response to various kinds of social interactions. The third pathway involves health behaviors that are fostered by interactions with social network members, including health-enhancing behaviors (e.g., exercise) as well as health-compromising behaviors (e.g., smoking). All three of these pathways have the potential to have independent and joint effects on morbidity and, ultimately, mortality.

Pathways having beneficial health effects. Social support, companionship, and social regulation are believed to affect health through unique mechanisms. Social support is thought to dampen the emotional, physiological (neuroendocrine, cardiovascular, immune), and behavioral effects of stress by improving one's perceived ability to cope with stress (Uchino 2006; Uchino et al. 1996). Companionship, on the other hand, is thought to influence health and well-being by enhancing positive affect and providing a respite from stress (Rook 1987). Positive affect, in turn, has been linked to lower rates of morbidity, fewer symptoms and less pain from health conditions, and greater longevity (Pressman and Cohen 2005). Companionship also may activate physiological processes, such as the release of oxytocin, a neuropeptide that helps to counter harmful stress responses, including release of the stress hormone, cortisol. Social control is believed to affect health through two primary, but opposing, processes (Hughes and Gove 1981). Specifically, social control may discourage health-compromising behaviors and encourage health-enhancing behaviors, thereby contributing to better health and ultimately, a lower risk of mortality. Yet, at the same time, to the extent that social control involves constraints on others' behavior, it may provoke psychological distress, erode feelings of self-efficacy, and kindle relationship tensions. The psychological and relationship costs of social control may thus reduce or cancel the health benefits of social control, although the net effects of social control on health are not yet fully understood (Rook et al. 2010).

Pathways having detrimental health effects. Persistent conflict in social relationships, as well as the absence or loss of social relationships, also impact health through a number of mechanisms. Specifically, recurring strains and conflicts in social relationships lead to repeated activation of physiological systems (e.g., hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis or sympathetic nervous system activity) and impaired immune functioning. These chronically activated and dysregulated physiological systems, in turn, may accelerate disease onset and progression. Additionally, social isolation and loneliness have been linked

to negative emotions, chronic stress, cardiovascular activation, low physical activity, and impaired sleep (Cacioppo et al. 2002). Finally, it is important to recognize that social network members sometimes encourage undesirable, rather than desirable, health practices. For example, evidence suggests that adolescents sometimes recruit their peers to use illegal substances or to engage in other risky health behaviors. Thus, conflict and tensions in social relationships, social isolation and loneliness, and undesirable social influence all can increase the risk of disease onset and progression.

Conclusion

It is well established that social relationships are important for health and well-being, and research has identified key aspects of social relationships that warrant consideration in efforts to understand these links with health. The psychological, physiological, and behavioral pathways by which social relationships affect health also are beginning to be understood. As this literature evolves and expands to document patterns that exist across different sociodemographic and lifespan contexts, it may help to inform interventions designed to strengthen social relationships and, in turn, health.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Family and Medical Leave Act](#)
- ▶ [Family Assistance](#)
- ▶ [Family Planning](#)
- ▶ [Family Stress](#)
- ▶ [Family Studies \(Genetics\)](#)
- ▶ [Family Systems Theory](#)
- ▶ [Family Violence](#)
- ▶ [Family, Caregiver](#)
- ▶ [Family, Income](#)
- ▶ [Family, Relationships](#)
- ▶ [Family, Structure](#)
- ▶ [Loneliness](#)
- ▶ [Psychosocial Characteristics](#)
- ▶ [Psychosocial Factors](#)
- ▶ [Social Capital and Health](#)
- ▶ [Social Cohesion](#)

- ▶ [Social Conflict](#)
- ▶ [Social Factors](#)
- ▶ [Social Stress](#)
- ▶ [Social Support](#)

References and Readings

- Berkman, L. F., Glass, T., Brissette, I., & Seeman, T. E. (2000). From social integration to health: Durkheim in the new millennium. *Social Science and Medicine*, 51, 843–857.
- Burman, B., & Margolin, G. (1992). Analysis of the association between marital relationships and health problems: An interactional perspective. *Psychological Bulletin*, 112, 39–63.
- Cacioppo, J. T., Hawkley, L. C., Crawford, L. E., Ernst, J. M., Burleson, M. H., Kowalewski, R. B., et al. (2002). Loneliness and health: Potential mechanisms. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 64, 407–417.
- Cohen, S. (2004). Social relationships and health. *American Psychologist*, 59, 676–684.
- Cohen, S., & Wills, T. A. (1985). Stress, social support, and the buffering hypothesis. *Psychological Bulletin*, 98, 310–357.
- House, J. S., Landis, K. R., & Umberson, D. (1988a). Social relationships and health. *Science*, 241, 540–545.
- House, J. S., Umberson, D., & Landis, K. R. (1988b). Structures and processes of social support. *Annual Review of Sociology*, 14, 293–318.
- Hughes, M., & Gove, W. R. (1981). Living alone, social integration, and mental health. *The American Journal of Sociology*, 87, 48–74.
- Pressman, S. D., & Cohen, S. (2005). Does positive affect influence health? *Psychological Bulletin*, 131, 925–971.
- Rook, K. S. (1987). Social support versus companionship: Effects on life stress, loneliness, and evaluations by others. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 52, 1132–1147.
- Rook, K. S. (1998). Investigating the positive and negative sides of personal relationships: Through a lens darkly? In B. H. Spitzberg & W. R. Cupach (Eds.), *The dark side of close relationships* (pp. 369–393). Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Rook, K. S., August, K. J., & Sorkin, D. H. (2010). Social network functions and health. In R. J. Contrada & A. Baum (Eds.), *The handbook of stress science: Biology, psychology, and health* (pp. 123–136). New York: Springer.
- Seeman, T. E., & Crimmins, E. (2001). Social environment effects on health and aging. Integrating epidemiologic and demographic approaches and perspectives. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 954, 88–117.
- Uchino, B. N. (2006). Social support and health: A review of physiological processes potentially underlying links

to disease outcomes. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 29, 377–387.

Uchino, B. N., Cacioppo, J. T., & Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K. (1996). The relationship between social support and physiological processes: A review with emphasis on underlying mechanisms and implications for health. *Psychological Bulletin*, 119, 488–531.

Umberson, D. (1987). Family status and health behaviors: Social control as a dimension of social integration. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 28, 306–319.

Social Resources

- ▶ [Family Social Support](#)
- ▶ [Social Support](#)

Social Stress

Vanessa Juth¹ and Sally Dickerson²

¹Nursing Science, University of California Irvine, Irvine, CA, USA

²Pace University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Interpersonal stress or conflict](#); [Societal stress](#)

Definition and Description

Social stress can be broadly defined as a perceived threat that is based on one's relation to or association with another person or group of people. There is great variability in the types of social stress that one may experience. It can arise from interpersonal interactions, such as those with family members, friends, professional colleagues, and strangers; from evaluated performances, including giving a speech in front of an audience; from sharing an experience with someone, such as patients and caregivers dealing with a chronic illness; or from group, community, or societal

dynamics, for instance, one's socioeconomic or professional status within a community or society.

Different types of social stress can lead to a range of observable and measurable responses. For instance, socially evaluated performances may lead to negative emotions and self-conscious thoughts. Severe interpersonal social stress, for example, verbal abuse between spouses, may lead to psychological distress (e.g., post-traumatic distress). Workplace social stress can have physiological impacts, including cardiovascular, endocrinological, immunological, and other system responses. Social discrimination, for instance, being treated unfairly or differently due to one's personal characteristics (e.g., gender, race, physical attributes, sexual orientation), can also be linked with negative physiological responses and with risky health behaviors (e.g., substance use, binge eating).

In order to overcome or deal with social stress, people engage in a variety of coping responses. These include active and passive coping strategies in which the individual either engages with or withdraws from the source of the social stress. Active coping strategies include problem-solving strategies (e.g., changing public policy steps to better provide healthcare services for underserved minority groups) and emotion-focused strategies (e.g., verbally communicating one's concerns with a friend about their drug use). Passive coping strategies include avoidant strategies (e.g., ignoring a rude co-worker) and distraction strategies (e.g., taking up exercise to overcome loss of a relationship).

Social stress and its associated responses, as well as the coping strategies used to manage them, can have serious health effects. For instance, acute (e.g., sudden job loss), frequent (e.g., repetitive marital strife), and chronic (e.g., bereavement) social stressors can compromise physiological functioning as well as self-reported physical and mental health conditions. Social stressors can also have long-lasting effects, such that social stress experienced early on in life (e.g., childhood) influences endocrine system responses (e.g., cortisol) to stress in adulthood. Furthermore, social status within a group, community, or society at large

(e.g., socioeconomic status) can increase the risk for negative health outcomes and/or behaviors across the lifespan.

Cross-References

- [Biobehavioral Mechanisms](#)
- [Psychosocial Factors](#)
- [Social Conflict](#)
- [Social Relationships](#)
- [Social Support](#)
- [Stress Reactivity](#)

References and Further Reading

- Dickerson, S. S., & Kemeny, M. E. (2004). Acute stressors and cortisol responses: A theoretical integration and synthesis of laboratory research. *Psychological Bulletin*, 130, 355–391.
- Juth, V., Silver, R. C., & Sender, L. (2015a). The shared experience of adolescent and young adult cancer patients and their caregivers. *Psycho-Oncology*, 24, 1746–1753.
- Juth, V., Smyth, J. M., Carey, M., & Lepore, S. (2015b). Social constraints are associated with negative psychological and physical adjustment in bereavement. *Applied Psychology: Health and Well-Being*, 7, 129–148.
- Miller, G., Chen, E., & Cole, S. W. (2009). Health psychology: Developing biologically plausible models linking the social world and physical health. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 60, 501–524.

Social Support

John Ruiz¹, Courtney C. Prather² and Erin E. Kauffman²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Arizona, Tucson, AZ, USA

²Department of Psychology, University of North Texas, Denton, TX, USA

Synonyms

[Moderators/moderating factors](#); [Social integration](#); [Social network](#); [Social resources](#)

Definition

Social support refers to the belief that one is valued, cared for, and loved by others in a social network. Social support can generally be conceptualized as reflecting two broad factors (Cohen and Syme 1985; Cohen and Wills 1985). Structural support reflects properties of the social network and the degree to which a person participates in that network (i.e., social integration). Functional support refers to the ways by which network members aid the individual through tangible assistance or through psychological and emotional buffering. Social support is among the most widely studied and robust psychosocial moderators of health. This entry will expand upon this description, review evidence linking it to health, examine hypothesized mechanisms, and discuss future directions.

Description

Social support is a multicomponent construct reflecting the size, quality, and availability of one's social resources to moderate stress. Social support should be distinguished from conceptually related terms. *Social capital* is a sociological term referring to stock or stored social credit. *Social network* refers to the social collectives or groups to which a person may belong. *Social integration* refers to the degree to which a person is embedded in or a part of a social network. *Relationship* is a descriptor often used to characterize a specific type of social tie.

Social support is generally conceptualized as having structural (i.e., size of the social network, degree of social integration) and functional (i.e., support processes; support received versus support perceived) characteristics. In addition, the quality of support is increasingly recognized as an important moderator of the relationship between support and health. Importantly, relationships are not uniformly positive, with some acting as sources of stress (Uchino 2004).

Measures

Social support is generally measured by self-report. Data sources may include demographic data from hospital, census, or other records; interviews; psychometrically validated instruments; and ad hoc items and measures.

Structural Measures of Support

The simplest of the social integration measures is marital status which is consistently identified as a protective factor in large, prospective studies of mortality. Marital status is a particularly attractive measure as it is a common demographic characteristic and, thus, available for analysis with many kinds of health data. Many researchers are also interested in measuring the size of one's social networks and the degree to which a person is embedded in the networks. One well-validated multicomponent measure of social integration is the Social Network Index (SNI; Berkman and Syme 1979) which provides an aggregate score of social integration by sampling activity in multiple relationships. Lower SNI scores are predictive of a nearly two fold increase in mortality risk. Finally, the literature is replete with numerous ad hoc structural support measures including measures of number of networks, network size, as well as the number of specific kinds of relationships such as friendships, and others.

Functional Measures of Support

Functional measures can be classified into support received and support perceived. Interestingly, measures of received and perceived support tend not to be highly correlated. Measures of received supportive behavior allow assessment of the actual social resources available to an individual. For example, the Inventory of Socially Supportive Behaviors (ISSB; Barrera et al. 1981) is a 40-item structural support measure assessing the frequency with which one receives a variety of supportive actions. Measures of perceived social support assess an individual's beliefs about the social resources available to them. Perceived support measures generally consist of two factors:

beliefs about support available, and satisfaction with level of perceived support. A widely used example of a perceived support measure is Cohen and Wills (1985) Interpersonal Support Evaluation List (ISEL) which assesses perceptions of belonging, tangible support, support appraisals, and confidence in support perceptions.

Quality of Support

Relationship quality has generally been assessed along a single dimension ranging from positive to negative. However, emerging models hypothesize that relationships can have both positive and negative characteristics. The Quality of Relationship Inventory (QRI: Pierce, Baldwin, and Lydon, 1997) is among the most popular multidimensional measures. The 25-item, self-report measure yields discrete support and conflict scales as well as a total quality rating. Several authors have suggested that the relationship quality dimensions of positivity and negativity are orthogonal, yielding four basic relationship types: (1) high positive, low negative (i.e., supportive relationship), (2) low positive, high negative (i.e., conflictual relationship), (3) high positive, high negative (i.e., ambivalent relationship), and (4) low positive, low negative (i.e., benign/irrelevant relationship). The Social Relationships Index (SRI: Uchino 2004) is an example of this multidimensional relationship quality assessment approach. Although health outcome data is limited, this conceptualization appears to be gaining acceptance as a more theoretically sound approach.

Social Support and Health

Social support is among the most robust predictors of disease and all-cause mortality. For example, a recent meta-analysis of 148 studies estimated the effect of social relationships to improve survival rates by 50% (Holt-Lunstad et al. 2010). This effect varied by measurement, with multidimensional measures of social integration associated with more than 90% increase in survival rates. As noted by the authors, the

magnitude of the effect of social support on mortality is likely diluted in these studies by unmeasured negative aspects of social relationships (e.g., a conflictual marriage). The results of this meta-analysis extend the work of previous systematic reviews and meta-analyses in identifying that social support is a substantial health and disease moderator with effects equivalent to more traditionally acknowledged risk factors such as cigarette smoking and obesity.

Cardiovascular Disease

The strongest evidence for a protective role of social support on health comes from studies of cardiovascular diseases such as coronary heart disease (CHD) morbidity and mortality (Smith and Ruiz 2002). Multiple prospective studies of initially healthy samples have demonstrated that lower social integration and social support are associated with greater CHD incidence, faster disease progression, risk of myocardial infarction (MI), and greater risk for all-cause mortality. Among persons with diagnosed CHD, lower social support is predictive of significantly greater risk of recurrent MI and death. For example, Welin et al. (2000) found an almost three-fold increased chance of cardiac mortality in post-MI patients with low perceived emotional support at 10-year follow-up. A similar effect size was found by Berkman et al. (1992). Some studies indicate that low social integration is only associated with survival in the most severely isolated of the population. In a review of the literature, Mookadam and Arthur (2004) estimated a two to three times increased risk of 1-year mortality in the socially isolated population, with little health benefits resulting from support systems above this threshold. Moreover, there is some evidence that the beneficial effects of social support on cardiac health are stronger among women and that functional measures of support are more strongly related to cardiac disease compared to structural measures.

Effect sizes for social integration in healthy samples for future development of CHD are

comparable to those of more traditional risk factors such as cigarette smoking (Orth-Gomer et al. 1993). Similarly, social integration is as strong a predictor of mortality among clinical populations as traditional risk factors such as cholesterol level, tobacco use, and hypertension in the patient population (Mookadam and Arthur 2004). An important conceptual issue is whether high social support connotes a cardiovascular benefit akin to physical activity or whether it is simply the absence of support that is relevant. In addition, the relative value of structural versus functional support remains an open question. Regardless, the cumulative evidence indicates social support is an important moderator of cardiovascular risk.

Cancer

The relationship between social support and cancer is quite mixed. A recent systematic review of the prospective longitudinal literature concluded that in the context of breast cancer, greater social support was associated with slower disease progression in five of seven well-designed studies. Structural indices were the more commonly used and significant measure of social support in these studies. In contrast, there were no associations between measures of social support and other types of cancer with the paradoxical exception of more social support related to faster cancer progression in a sample of colorectal patients (Villingshoj et al. 2006). A meta-analysis of 87 studies estimated the relative risk of perceived social support and measures of social network size on mortality among cancer patients to be .82 and .80, respectively, suggesting a beneficial effect (Pinquart and Duberstein 2010). Inconsistencies between studies may be partially explained by differences in support types measured and patient needs. The type of support associated with improved prognosis appears to vary by cancer site, with perceived social support representing a stronger predictor for leukemia and lymphoma, whereas breast cancer patients benefit more from have a large number of social ties (Pinquart and Duberstein 2010).

In contrast to the mixed findings regarding physical outcomes, a robust literature supports

the beneficial effects of social support on emotional and psychological reactions to cancer and associated treatments. Moreover, cancer is often a shared interpersonal experience – affecting supports as well as patients. A meta-analysis of these *contagion effects* estimated the correlation between patient and caregiver distress is .35 (Hodges et al. 2005). Importantly, partner response to illness affects patient adjustment, particularly in terms of quality of life. The type of coping employed (e.g., positive versus negative), relationship maintenance behaviors, and the amount of communication about the relationship may also be important moderators of couples adjustment.

With respect to interventions, efforts have largely focused on increasing the patient's social network size and opportunity for emotional support. Perhaps the most well known of these interventions was conducted by Spiegel et al. (1989). Women with late-stage metastatic breast cancer were randomized to either supportive group therapy or wait-list control. Findings that women in the treatment condition survived approximately 18 months longer generated interest in the possible healing role of support. Several clinical and prospective trials have failed to replicate these results, fueling doubts about the potential physical benefits of the approach. Regardless, there is substantial effort to translate socially based interventions from bench to bedside where their emotional and quality of life benefits are well recognized.

HIV/AIDS

Conclusions regarding the benefits of social support on physical outcomes in the context of HIV/AIDS are limited by the small number of published studies. A prospective study of HIV-positive men with hemophilia demonstrated that lower levels of perceived support at baseline were predictive of faster decreases in CD4 T-lymphocyte levels, a key marker of AIDS status, over a 4-year follow-up (Theorell et al. 1995). Leserman and colleagues conducted a study of 82 asymptomatic gay men, in which greater satisfaction with social support was associated with slower progression to AIDS, regardless of

network size (Leserman et al. 1999). In contrast, other studies have found perceived support to be unrelated to progression to AIDS. More research is needed to adequately evaluate these relationships.

The social environment of the HIV/AIDS population may be uniquely important because of the social stigma associated with the diagnosis (Herek and Glunt 1988). Stigma is associated with both personal distress and hesitancy to self-disclose status to sexual partners, potentiating further transmission of the infection either by the individual or the individual's un-informed sexual partners. A meta-analysis of 21 studies showed that greater perceived social support was associated with increased likelihood of self-disclosing one's HIV-positive status (Smith et al. 2008). Disclosure of HIV status is associated with increased social support within those relationships, indicating that disclosure may be a positive method of eliciting support from others.

Mechanisms

Social support is hypothesized to affect health and well-being through two pathways. The *main effects* hypothesis suggests that having more social resources reduces the chances of exposure to stressful circumstances or the magnitude of threat associated with certain environments. For example, one is likely to be safer walking at night with a large group of friends than when walking alone. Numerous studies have shown that having more social resources (measured as the number of social ties, the degree of social integration, etc.) is predictive of lower disease incidence, better survival following illness, lower all-cause mortality, and greater longevity irrespective of the quality of those relationships. Interestingly, these social resources need not be human to have a beneficial effect. Several studies have demonstrated that having a loving pet is associated with less stress and better survival following disease incidents such as a heart attack.

Social support may also affect health by moderating or reducing the impact of stressful circumstances (i.e., *stress buffering hypothesis*). After a stressful romantic breakup, a friend may comfort you with a hug, by providing you with

an opportunity to vent your emotions, or by introducing you to someone new. Substantial laboratory data demonstrates that provision of support reduces self-reported stress and acute physiological responses to lab stressors. For example, individuals who received a note communicating emotional support from a supportive friend experience less blood pressure increase during a subsequent speech task relative to those who receive a note from a less supportive person (Uno et al. 2002). Importantly, the perception of support appears to be more important than the actual provision of support. For example, imagining a supportive tie prior to a stressor results in less cardiovascular reactivity and less self-reported stress (i.e., buffering) compared to imagining an acquaintance (Smith et al. 2004). These findings support the idea that social support, received or perceived, can reduce stressful experiences.

Future Directions

Future research will continue to expand upon conceptual distinctions regarding sources of support and related actions. Longitudinal research is also needed to understand the biobehavioral mechanisms by which social support translates into disease risk. Further, more research is needed to determine whether it is better to have substantial support or simply to not be alone. Finally, emerging social phenomenon such as texting and online social networking through Facebook, Twitter, and other forums presents new challenges for researchers to conceptualize, measure, and gauge as moderators of health.

Cross-References

- [Psychosocial Factors](#)
- [Psychosocial Predictors](#)
- [Psychosocial Variables](#)
- [Social Capital and Health](#)
- [Social Cohesion](#)
- [Social Conflict](#)
- [Social Factors](#)
- [Social Relationships](#)

References and Further Readings

- Barrera, M., Sandler, I. N., & Ramsay, T. B. (1981). Preliminary development of a scale of social support: Studies on college students. *American Journal of Community Psychology*, 9(4), 435–447.
- Berkman, L. F., Leo-Summers, L., & Horwitz, R. I. (1992). Emotional support and survival after myocardial infarction. A prospective, population-based study of the elderly. *Annals of Internal Medicine*, 117(12), 1003–1009.
- Berkman, L. F., & Syme, S. L. (1979). Social networks, host resistance, and mortality: A nine-year follow-up study of Alameda County residents. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 109(2), 186–204.
- Cohen, S., & Syme, S. L. (1985). Issues in the study and application of social support. In S. Cohen & S. L. Syme (Eds.), *Social Support and health* (pp. 3–22). San Francisco: Academic Press Inc..
- Cohen, S., & Wills, T. A. (1985). Stress, social support, and the buffering hypothesis. *Psychological Bulletin*, 98(2), 310–357.
- Herek, G. M., & Glunt, E. K. (1988). An epidemic of stigma: Public reactions to AIDS. *American Psychologist*, 43(11), 886–891.
- Hodges, L. J., Humphris, G. M., & Macfarlane, G. (2005). A meta-analytic investigation of the relationship between the psychological distress of cancer patients and their carers. *Social Science & Medicine*, 60(1), 1–12. 1982.
- Holt-Lunstad, J., Smith, T. B., & Layton, J. B. (2010). Social relationships and mortality risk: A meta-analytic review. *PLoS Medicine*, 7(7), e1000316–e1000316.
- Leserman, J., Jackson, E. D., Petitto, J. M., Golden, R. N., Silva, S. G., Perkins, D. O., et al. (1999). Progression to AIDS: The effects of stress, depressive symptoms, and social support. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 61(3), 397–406.
- Mookadam, F., & Arthur, H. M. (2004). Social support and its relationship to morbidity and mortality after acute myocardial infarction: Systematic overview. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 164(14), 1514–1518.
- Orth-Gomer, K., Rosengren, A., & Wilhelmsen, L. (1993). Lack of social support and incidence of coronary heart disease in middle-aged Swedish men. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 55, 37–43.
- Pierce, T., Baldwin, M. W., & Lydon, J. E. (1997a). A relational schema approach to social support. In G. Pierce, S. Lakey, & B. R. Sarason (Eds.), *Sourcebook of social support and personality* (pp. 19–47). New York: Plenum Press.
- Pierce, G. R., Sarason, I. G., Sarason, B. R., & Solky-Butzel, J. A. (1997b). Assessing the quality of personal relationships. *Journal of Social and Personal Relationships*, 14(3), 339–356.
- Pinquart, M., & Duberstein, P. R. (2010). Associations of social networks with cancer mortality: A meta-analysis. *Critical Reviews in Oncology/Hematology*, 75(2), 122–137.
- Smith, R., Rossetto, K., & Peterson, B. L. (2008). A meta-analysis of disclosure of one's HIV-positive status, stigma and social support. *AIDS Care*, 20(10), 1266–1275.
- Smith, T. W., & Ruiz, J. M. (2002). Psychosocial influences on the development and course of coronary heart disease: Current status and implications for research and practice. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 70(3), 548–568.
- Smith, T. W., Ruiz, J. M., & Uchino, B. N. (2004). Mental activation of supportive ties, hostility, and cardiovascular reactivity to laboratory stress in young men and women. *Health Psychology*, 23(5), 476–485.
- Spiegel, D., Bloom, J. R., Kraemer, H. C., & Gottheil, E. (1989). Effect of psychosocial treatment on survival of patients with metastatic breast cancer. *Lancet*, 2(8668), 888–891.
- Theorell, T., Blomkvist, V., Jonsson, H., Schulman, S., Berntorp, E., & Stigendal, L. (1995). Social support and the development of immune function in human immunodeficiency virus infection. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 57(1), 32–36.
- Uchino, B. N. (2004). *Social support and physical health: Understanding the health consequences of relationships*. New Haven: Yale University Press.
- Uno, D., Uchino, B. N., & Smith, T. W. (2002). Relationship quality moderates the effect of social support given by close friends on cardiovascular reactivity in women. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 9, 243–262.
- Villingshoj, M., Ross, L., Thomsen, B. L., & Johansen, C. (2006). Does marital status and altered contact with the social network predict colorectal cancer survival? *European Journal of Cancer (Oxford, England: 1990)*, 42(17), 3022–3027.
- Welin, C., Lappas, G., & Wilhelmsen, L. (2000). Independent importance of psychosocial factors for prognosis after myocardial infarction. *Journal of Internal Medicine*, 247(6), 629–639.

Social Support at Work

► Job Satisfaction/Dissatisfaction

Social Ties

► Social Relationships

Societal Stress

► [Social Stress](#)

Society of Behavioral Medicine

Stephanie Ann Hooker
Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Synonyms

[SBM](#)

Definition

The Society of Behavioral Medicine (SBM) is a nonprofit organization founded in 1978. The organization strives to be multidisciplinary in nature, creating a dialogue between nursing, public health, psychological, and medical professionals to promote the study of interactions between behavior, biology, and the environment and to apply that knowledge to improve the health and well-being of individuals and communities. This is further illustrated through SBM's vision statement, which is "Better Health Through Behavior Change." In 2011, over 2000 behavioral and biomedical researchers and clinicians were members of SBM.

SBM hosts an annual meeting for its members and other behavioral medicine researchers and clinicians to share recent research findings and clinical strategies. SBM also sponsors two journals, *Annals of Behavioral Medicine* and *Translational Behavioral Medicine: Practice, Policy, and Research*.

References and Readings

Society of Behavioral Medicine. (2011). Society of Behavioral Medicine (SBM). Retrieved July 15, 2011, from <http://www.sbm.org>.

Sociocultural

Patricia Gonzalez¹ and Orit Birnbaum-Weitzman²
¹Institute for Behavioral and Community Health (IBACH), Graduate School of Public Health, San Diego State University, San Diego, CA, USA
²Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Social circumstance](#); [Sociocultural context](#); [Sociocultural factors](#); [Socioeconomic position](#); [Socioeconomic status \(SES\)](#)

Definition

"Sociocultural" refers to a wide array of societal and cultural influences that impact thoughts, feelings, behaviors, and ultimately health outcomes. Sociocultural determinants of health and illness encompass socioeconomic status (SES) factors (traditionally assessed by income, education, occupation) and cultural factors. There are several dimensions encompassed by the term, which can include race, ethnicity, ethnic identity, sex, acculturation, language, beliefs and value systems, attitudes, and religion.

Description

Sociocultural factors are salient determinants of health and have been found to be associated with a

multitude of health outcomes including health behaviors (e.g., physical activity, diet, health screenings, and health-care utilization) and illness (e.g., cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and depression). Sociocultural factors are complex and may vary by sex, age, and racial/ethnic groups. In recent years, the term sociocultural has been extensively used in the literature in connection with physical and mental health outcomes.

Social and cultural factors play a central role in preventing illness, maintaining good health, and treating disease. Research has shown that an individual's social environment, family, neighborhood, school, and workplace have a significant impact on health. At the same time, cultural factors influence how physical and mental illness are viewed and diagnosed. A great advance in understanding the determinants of health and disease has been the identification of social and cultural factors influencing them. Social and cultural factors are pertinent not only to understanding individuals' health status but also recognizing the existing health disparities among different populations. In particular, a substantial body of research suggests that social factors stand at the root of health disparities (Marmot 2005).

Some of the most salient sociocultural factors studied in relation to health disparities, including morbidity and mortality, are SES and race/ethnicity. Levels of health within the USA vary dramatically among different social, economic, and racial/ethnic groups. Moreover, considerable research suggests that determinants of health often reflect economic disparities (Braveman et al. 2010). Higher income levels are linked with overall better health, including self-rated health, lower cardiovascular risk factors, and lower mortality (Braveman et al. 2011; Hajat et al. 2011). The incidence and prevalence of many diseases (e.g., cardiovascular disease, arthritis, diabetes, and cervical cancer) increases as SES decreases. In addition, SES differences in mortality have been observed for many causes of death including some cancers, diabetes, and

cardiovascular disease. Similarly, individuals with higher SES have greater life expectancy rates than individuals with lower income levels (Braveman et al. 2011). In terms of health status, adults with lower incomes are more likely to report their health status as poor or fair compared with adults with higher incomes (Braveman et al. 2011).

Several explanations have been proposed to account for the association between socioeconomic standing and health. First, economic stability enables individuals to live in safer neighborhoods, access healthier food alternatives, have more leisure time for physical activity, and endure less stress. Second, income impacts access to high-quality health care such that lower SES individuals are less likely to be covered by health insurance and to receive high-quality health care (Braveman et al. 2011). Hence, the uninsured may have less access to preventive services (e.g., health screenings) and early diagnosis. Greater education is also linked with longer life expectancy. Individuals who have completed college have a greater life expectancy (at least 5 years longer) than individuals who have not completed high school (Braveman et al. 2011). Higher education levels are associated with greater knowledge regarding health and feelings of control (Braveman et al. 2011) over different domains of one's life. Therefore, education increases the likelihood that individuals will have the knowledge to prevent illness. As illustrated by these health patterns, SES disparities in health mirror a gradient pattern, with greater social and economic advantage being associated with better health.

Differences in health have also been observed based on race/ethnicity. For example, compared to non-Hispanic Whites, morbidity and mortality rates for cardiovascular disease (CVD) are higher among African-Americans (Payne et al. 2005). Compared to non-Hispanic Whites, African-Americans and Hispanics are more likely to have diabetes (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention 2011). Moreover, ethnic-minority and low-income groups have a disproportionate

burden of death and disability as a result of cardiovascular disease. In addition, although significant progress has been made in reducing cancer mortality rates in the USA, decreases in cancer mortality rates in ethnic minorities have been slower compared to non-Hispanic Whites (American Cancer Society 2011).

Culture refers to the shared values, beliefs, and norms held in common by a defined group of people. Within each culture, there is a set of behaviors and values related to health and illness which may vary between different groups, causing differing viewpoints toward illness. Each culture has a set of norms for behavior with related beliefs, knowledge, and customs. Acculturation, a related cultural construct, is often used to explain ethnic disparities in health outcomes. Acculturation as a predictive variable is based on the premise that culturally based knowledge, attitudes, and beliefs influence people to behave in particular ways and to select specific health choices. For limited English proficiency (LEP) individuals, language barriers can contribute to health disparities. For example, LEP individuals may encounter difficulties communicating with medical professionals, understanding printed health information or accessing health-related services due to lack of information about available services (American College of Physicians 2010). Moreover, some individuals may fear jeopardizing their immigration status by using health services. Research also suggests that cultural norms within the USA or Western society contribute to lifestyles and behaviors associated with risk factors for diseases (e.g., cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular disease) (Thomas et al. 2004). Therefore, health behavior interventions must address the target group's belief systems as well as cultural values.

Although the US population is diverse, health policies and interventions are often based on Western cultural assumptions. Often, minimal attention is given to aspects of culture from the perspective of individuals from diverse ethnic or SES membership groups. It is key to acknowledge that social and cultural factors may explain related

health behaviors and, in part, elucidate disparities between ethnic/racial and SES groups. More specifically, research findings examined from the perspective of sociocultural differences may provide more meaningful information and help develop innovative intervention strategies for ameliorating some of the disparities in health outcomes and access to health care.

Cross-References

- [Health Disparities](#)
- [Socioeconomic Status \(SES\)](#)

References and Readings

- American Cancer Society. (2011). *Cancer facts & figures*. Atlanta: American Cancer Society.
- American College of Physicians. (2010). *Racial and ethnic disparities in health care*. Philadelphia: American College of Physicians.
- Braveman, P. A., Cubbin, C., Egerter, S., Williams, D. R., & Pamuk, E. (2010). Socioeconomic disparities in the United States: What the patterns tell us. *American Journal of Public Health, 100*, S186–S196.
- Braveman, P. A., Egerter, S. A., & Mockenhaupt, R. E. (2011). Broadening the focus: The need to address the social determinants of health. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 40*, S4–S18.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2011). *National diabetes fact sheet: National estimates and general information on diabetes and prediabetes in the United States, 2011*. Atlanta: U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.
- Hajat, A., Kaufman, J. S., Rose, K. M., Siddiqi, A., & Thomas, J. C. (2011). Long-term effects of wealth on mortality and self-rated health status. *American Journal of Epidemiology, 173*, 192–200.
- Marmot, M. (2005). Social determinants of health inequalities. *The Lancet, 365*, 1099–1104.
- Payne, T. J., Wyatt, S. B., Mosley, T. H., Dubbert, P. M., Guiterrez-Mohammed, M. L., Calvin, R. L., et al. (2005). Sociocultural methods in the Jackson Heart Study: Conceptual and descriptive overview. *Ethnicity & Disease, 15*, S6–38–S6–48.
- Thomas, S. B., Fine, M. J., & Ibrahim, S. A. (2004). Health disparities: The importance of culture and health communication. *American Journal of Public Health, 94*, 2050.

Sociocultural Context

- [Sociocultural](#)

Sociocultural Differences

Melissa Walls
Biobehavioral Health and Population Sciences,
University of Minnesota Medical School –
Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

Definition

Sociocultural approaches to understanding differences in health call attention to the roles of and potential interdependence between social and cultural factors for health outcomes.

Cultural attitudes, beliefs, values, history, and systems of knowledge are interdependent with the social environment that includes economic status, community and family systems, and interpersonal relationships. Together, sociocultural factors may impact health in numerous ways, such as influencing access/barriers to health care and service utilization preferences/patterns as well as affecting health behaviors such as diet and exercise.

Cross-References

- [Aerobic Exercise](#)
- [Sociocultural](#)

Sociocultural Factors

- [Sociocultural](#)

Socioeconomic Position

- [Sociocultural](#)
- [Socio-economic Status](#)

Socio-economic Status

G. David Batty
Department of Epidemiology and Public Health,
University College London, London, UK

Synonyms

[Socioeconomic position](#)

Definition

Social class is often used by social scientists when the more generic socioeconomic status or socioeconomic position is preferable. Socioeconomic status refers to particular social strata in society and can be measured at a personal or geographical level. For an individual, indicators include occupational social class, occupational prestige, educational attainment, household income, housing tenure, household amenities, and car ownership. For a geographical area, composite measures are often derived from the characteristics of residents in a defined location (Galobardes et al. [2007](#)).

In the context of epidemiology, socioeconomic status has been most commonly related to disease (particularly cardiovascular disease) and disease risk factors (particularly health behaviors such as smoking). Socioeconomic inequalities (variations) in health are essentially universal: with the exception of very few outcomes, poorer health is more common in poorer people. As such, reducing these differentials is a priority for many governments and health agencies.

References and Further Reading

Galobardes, B., Lynch, J., & Davey Smith, G. (2007). Measuring socioeconomic position in health research. *British Medical Bulletin*, 81–82, 21–37.

Socioeconomic Status (SES)

- ▶ [Education, Lack of: As a Risk Factor](#)
- ▶ [Social Factors](#)
- ▶ [Sociocultural](#)

Sodium

- ▶ [Salt, Intake](#)

Sodium Chloride

- ▶ [Salt, Intake](#)

Sodium, Sodium Sensitivity

Jonathan Newman
Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Definition

Sodium chloride (NaCl), commonly known as salt, is a molecule crucial for fluid balance and free-water homeostasis. However, overconsumption of sodium/salt plays an important role in the development of essential hypertension. Essential hypertension is seen almost exclusively in societies where average daily sodium consumption is greater than 2.3 g. In contrast, hypertension is rare in populations with low-sodium consumption (typically less than 1.2 g/day). These effects of sodium consumption appear independent of

other potential causes of essential hypertension, such as obesity.

The blood pressure (BP) responsiveness to variations in sodium intake is known as salt sensitivity.

The change in BP to salt intake varies significantly between individuals and in the same individual at different times.

Salt sensitivity also increases with age and is more prominent in those with diabetes, obesity, and metabolic syndrome.

It may also be more common in African-Americans and other populations, in which excess salt intake may play an important role in the development of hypertension.

There is evidence to suggest that salt-sensitive individuals with normal blood pressure are at a greater risk of developing hypertension and at further risk of hypertension progression and poor blood pressure control. The mechanisms of salt sensitivity are incompletely understood but likely involve a combination of altered salt/water homeostasis, abnormal vascular signaling pathways, and other metabolic abnormalities such as type 2 diabetes and electrolyte abnormalities, such as hypokalemia.

References and Readings

- Barba, G., Galletti, F., Cappuccio, F. P., Siani, A., Venezia, A., Versiero, M., Della Valle, E., Sorrentino, P., Tarantino, G., Farinaro, E., & Strazzullo, P. (2007). Incidence of hypertension in individuals with different blood pressure salt-sensitivity: Results of a 15-year follow-up study. *Journal of Hypertension*, 25(7), 1465–1471.
- Obarzanek, E., Proschan, M. A., Vollmer, W. M., Moore, T. J., Sacks, F. M., Appel, L. J., Svetkey, L. P., Most-Windhauser, M. M., & Cutler, J. A. (2003). Individual blood pressure responses to changes in salt intake: Results from the DASH-Sodium trial. *Hypertension*, 42(4), 459–467.

Solid Fats

- ▶ [Fat: Saturated, Unsaturated](#)

Somatic Symptom Disorder

- ▶ [Hypochondriasis](#)
- ▶ [Somatization](#)
- ▶ [Somatoform Disorders](#)

Somatic Symptoms

Kurt Kroenke

Department of Medicine, Indiana University,
Indianapolis, IN, USA

Regenstrief Institute, Indianapolis, IN, USA

VA HSR&D Center for Implementing Evidence-
Based Practice, Indianapolis, IN, USA

Definition

Mental health professionals commonly label bodily symptoms as “somatic” to distinguish them from cognitive, emotional, or other types of non-somatic symptoms (Kroenke 2007a). In contrast, bodily symptoms are more often referred to as “physical” symptoms by those practicing in general medical, surgical and other non-mental health care professions. Somatic symptoms are exceedingly prevalent, accounting for over half of all outpatient encounters. About half of these are pain complaints (e.g., headache, chest pain, abdominal pain, back pain, joint pains), a quarter are upper respiratory (e.g., cough, sore throat, ear or nasal symptoms), and the remainder are non-pain, non-upper-respiratory symptoms (e.g., fatigue, insomnia, dizziness, palpitations).

Description

Epidemiology

About 80% of individuals in the general population experience one or more symptoms each month, of who less than 1 in 4 seek care (Kroenke and Rosmalen 2006). This ubiquitous nature of somatic symptoms mandates that some thresholds be set to distinguish most “persons” who experience common symptoms from the

smaller subset of individuals who qualify as “patients.” Some thresholds might include severity of the symptom: its duration or persistence; the degree of occupational or social impairment; the level of patient distress, concerns or worries; the decision to seek treatment or use health care; and the direct and indirect financial costs.

An exact medical diagnosis that accounts for the symptom is often not established, with at least one-third of somatic symptoms lacking an adequate physical explanation and referred to by a variety of labels, including functional, idiopathic, atypical, somatoform, or unexplained.

About three-fourths of outpatients presenting with somatic complaints experience improvement within 2 weeks, while 20–25% of symptoms become chronic or recurrent.

Functional Somatic Syndromes

These conditions consist of a cluster of somatic symptoms for which the etiology is poorly understood and include disorders such as irritable bowel syndrome, fibromyalgia, chronic fatigue syndrome, temporomandibular disorder, interstitial cystitis, and others. Experts have questioned whether these are all separate disorders or instead part of a group of poorly explained somatic conditions sharing common features. Supporting the latter, literature syntheses have revealed that these disorders frequently overlap, both at the level of specific syndromes (half to two-thirds of patients with one syndrome also suffer from one or more additional syndromes) as well as in terms of individual symptoms (Kroenke and Rosmalen 2006). Second, they are similar in rates of psychiatric comorbidity, particularly depression and anxiety (Henningesen et al. 2003). Third, functional somatic syndromes respond similarly to certain therapies traditionally considered “psychological” treatments, such as antidepressants and cognitive-behavioral therapy.

Psychological Comorbidity

In patients presenting with poorly explained physical symptoms, a depressive disorder can be diagnosed 50–60% of the time, and an anxiety disorder 40–50% of the time, regardless of the type of symptom. While the specific type of symptom is not particularly important in terms of

predicting depression or anxiety, the number of symptoms is. In two primary care studies involving 1500 patients, those who endorsed 0–1, 2–3, 4–5, 6–8, or ≥ 9 physical symptoms on a 15-symptom scale, the proportion with a depressive or anxiety disorder was 6%, 20%, 33%, 58%, and 80% respectively, suggesting a “dose-response” effect between the number of physical symptoms and the likelihood of psychiatric comorbidity.

Two-thirds of primary care patients with major depression present exclusively with somatic complaints, and half report multiple, unexplained somatic symptoms. Also, depression is present in a quarter to a third of patients referred to medical specialty clinics and, if depressed, referred patients are only about a quarter as likely to have a physical diagnosis established as an explanation for their symptoms triggering the referral. Even disease-specific somatic symptoms (e.g., chest pain in patients with coronary artery disease, dyspnea in patients with pulmonary disease, joint pain in patients with arthritis) are at least as strongly associated with depression and anxiety as they are with objective physiologic measures of the medical disorder (Katon et al. 2007).

Overlap among somatic, anxiety and depressive symptoms (the *SAD triad*) is more common than the “pure” form of any of the three types of symptoms (Löwe et al. 2008). For example, very high levels of depressive, anxiety and somatic symptoms are present in 7%, 8%, and 10% of primary care patients, respectively. However, only 26% of depressed patients have depression alone (i.e., without high levels of anxiety and/or somatic symptoms), 43% of anxious patients have anxiety only, and 46% of patients with high somatic symptom levels have somatization alone. Predictors of psychological comorbidity in patients with somatic symptoms are summarized in Table 1.

Somatoform Disorders

Somatoform disorders currently defined in the American Psychiatric Association’s Diagnostic and Statistical Manual, 4th Edition (DSM-IV) include somatization disorder (chronic history of multiple medically unexplained symptoms), conversion disorder (unexplained neurological symptoms), hypochondriasis (preoccupation with having

Somatic Symptoms, Table 1 Predictors of psychological comorbidity in patients with somatic symptoms

Symptom remains medically unexplained after clinical assessment
Multiple symptoms
Three or more unexplained symptoms
Pain symptoms in two or more regions of the body
Multiple functional somatic syndromes
Chronic or recurrent symptom (s)
Excessive health care use
Medication history
Polypharmacy (especially for symptoms)
Poor response of symptoms to multiple medications
Nocebo response (nonspecific adverse effects to multiple medications)
Difficult clinician-patient relationship
Number of S4 predictors ^a
Stress recently
Symptom count is high
Self-rated health is low
Severity of symptom is high

^aThe four S4 predictors are (1) stress in past week (yes/no); (2) Patient reports being “bothered a lot” by five or more symptoms on the PHQ-15 scale of 15 somatic symptoms; (3) self-rated overall health of poor or fair on a 5-point scale (excellent, very good, good, fair, poor); (4) self-rated severity of presenting somatic symptom of ≥ 6 on 0 (none) to 10 (unbearable) scale. The likelihood of a depressive or anxiety disorder with 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4 of these S4 predictors is 8%, 16%, 43%, 69%, and 94%, respectively

a serious medical illness that persists despite medical evaluations and reassurance), body dysmorphic disorder (distorted perceptions of specific bodily features), and chronic pain disorder. However, these are likely to be substantially revised in DSM-V (Kroenke et al. 2007). In particular, criteria for the most common type of somatoform disorder (full and abridged versions of somatization disorder) are likely to rely less on symptom counts or the degree to which symptoms are “medically explained” and more on positive psychological criteria characteristic of somatizing patients (e.g., excessive illness worry and health anxiety, inordinate health care use, catastrophizing).

Measuring Somatic Symptoms

The PHQ-15 is a brief, freely-available scale (www.phqscreeners.com) that measures 15 symptoms that account for more than 90% of non-upper-respiratory symptoms seen in primary

care (Kroenke et al. 2010). The PHQ-15 asks patients to rate how much they have been bothered by each symptom during the past month on a 0 (“not at all”) to 2 (“bothered a lot”) scale. Thus, the total score ranges from 0 to 30, with cutpoints of 5, 10, and 15 representing thresholds for mild, moderate, and severe somatic symptom severity, respectively.

Increasing scores on the PHQ-15 are strongly associated with functional impairment, disability, health care use, and somatoform disorder diagnoses. Also, items on the PHQ-15 overlap better with other validated somatization screeners than any other two screeners do with one another. There is emerging evidence that the PHQ-15 is responsive to treatment.

Treatment

Treatment of somatoform disorders as well as functional somatic syndromes has been recently reviewed (Abbass et al. 2009; Jackson et al. 2006; Kroenke 2007b). In addition to symptom-specific treatments (e.g., analgesics for pain, medications specific to the symptoms for irritable bowel syndrome, medications recently approved for fibromyalgia), the two most evidence-based treatments for both somatoform disorders and functional somatic syndromes are cognitive behavioral therapy and antidepressants, which have a beneficial effect on the somatic symptoms in these conditions independent of their effect on psychological symptoms such as depression and anxiety. Additionally, regular visits with a primary physician, avoidance of excessive testing, and evaluation of new symptoms (but not repeated evaluation of chronic symptoms) is beneficial. A clinical approach to the patient with unexplained somatic symptoms is outlined in Table 2.

Strategies for managing chronic somatization

- Schedule regular, brief appointments that are not related to symptom exacerbations
- Limit extensive diagnostic testing and multiple subspecialty referrals, especially for symptoms previously evaluated
- When new symptoms arise, conduct focused evaluations and testing rather than exhaustive work-ups

Somatic Symptoms, Table 2 Clinical approach to the patient with unexplained somatic symptoms

Initial visit	
Symptom-specific evaluation	Focus the interview and physical examination on the relevant symptom(s) Stratify symptoms into those that are at higher risk of a serious cause (e.g., angina-like chest pain; acute abdominal pain; syncope) and those that are seldom urgent (back pain, fatigue, insomnia). Identify “red flags” of a potentially serious cause (e.g., focal neurologic findings in patient with dizziness or headache; abnormal cardiac exam in patient with syncope)
Probe for symptom-specific concerns and expectations	“Is there anything else you were worried about?” (Serious cause? How long symptom might last?) “Is there anything else you wanted or thought might be helpful?” (Test? subspecialty referral? Specific treatment?)
Consider short-term use of symptom-specific medications (often available over-the-counter)	Simple analgesics for pain Gastrointestinal medications for dyspepsia or constipation Decongestants, antihistamines, cough suppressants for upper respiratory symptoms
Watchful waiting	Have patient follow-up in 2–6 weeks if symptom is not resolved
Follow-up visits	
Psychological screening	Especially for treatable depressive and anxiety disorders (see www.phqscreeners.com) Assess for somatization (PHQ-15 or other scale)
Diagnostic evaluation	Selective testing and/or specialty referral, especially if new unexplained symptom, if findings on interview or examination are worrisome for serious cause, or if patient insists

(continued)

Somatic Symptoms, Table 2 (continued)

Chronic symptom therapies	Pharmacological – analgesics; gastrointestinal medications; antidepressants, other Nonpharmacological – cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT); other psychological or behavioral therapies; exercise; pain self-management programs; reattribution
---------------------------	--

- Empathize with the complaint. Do not dispute the reality of the symptom or associated impairment.
- Focus on symptom management/reduction rather than elimination (coping rather than cure).
- Strive for gradual rehabilitation (maximizing function despite the symptom) rather than chronic disability
- Emphasize that referral is for consultation or co-management rather than dismissal (i.e., you are not “dumping” the patient)

Cross-References

- ▶ [Antidepressant Medications](#)
- ▶ [Anxiety Disorder](#)
- ▶ [Chronic Pain](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- ▶ [Depression: Treatment](#)
- ▶ [Medically Unexplained Symptoms](#)
- ▶ [Pain](#)
- ▶ [Somatization](#)
- ▶ [Somatoform Disorders](#)
- ▶ [Stress](#)
- ▶ [Symptoms](#)

References and Readings

Abbass, A., Kisely, S., & Kroenke, K. (2009). Short-term psychodynamic psychotherapy for somatic disorders:

Systematic review and meta-analysis of clinical trials. *Psychotherapy and Psychosomatics*, 78, 265–274.

Dimsdale, J. E., Xin, Y., Kleinman, A., Patel, V., Narrow, W. E., Sirvatka, P. J., & Regier, D. A. (Eds.). (2009). *Somatic presentations of mental disorders: Refining the research agenda for DSM-V*. Arlington: American Psychiatric Association.

Henningsen, P., Zimmermann, T., & Sattel, H. (2003). Medically unexplained physical symptoms, anxiety, and depression: A meta-analytic review. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65, 528–533.

Jackson, J. L., O’Malley, P. G., & Kroenke, K. (2006). Antidepressants and cognitive behavioral therapy for symptom syndromes. *CNS Spectrums*, 11, 212–222.

Katon, W., Lin, E., & Kroenke, K. (2007). The association of depression and anxiety with medical symptom burden in patients with chronic medical illness. *General Hospital Psychiatry*, 29, 147–155.

Kroenke, K. (2007a). Somatoform disorders and recent diagnostic controversies. *Psychiatric Clinics of North America*, 30, 593–619.

Kroenke, K. (2007b). Efficacy of treatment for somatoform disorders: A review of randomized clinical trials. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 69, 881–888.

Kroenke, K., & Rosmalen, J. G. M. (2006). Symptoms, syndromes and the value of psychiatric diagnostics in patients with functional somatic disorders. *Medical Clinics of North America*, 90, 603–626.

Kroenke, K., Sharpe, M., & Sykes, R. (2007). Revising the classification of somatoform disorders: Key questions and preliminary recommendations. *Psychosomatics*, 28, 277–285.

Kroenke, K., Spitzer, R. L., Williams, J. B. W., & Löwe, B. (2010). The patient health questionnaire somatic, anxiety, and depressive symptom scales: A systematic review. *General Hospital Psychiatry*, 32, 345–359.

Löwe, B., Spitzer, R. L., Williams, J. B. W., Mussell, M., Schellberg, D., & Kroenke, K. (2008). Depression, anxiety, and somatization in primary care: Syndrome overlap and functional impairment. *General Hospital Psychiatry*, 30, 191–199.

Somatization

Winfried Rief
Department of Clinical Psychology and
Psychotherapy, Philipps University of Marburg,
Marburg, Germany

Synonyms

[Psychosomatics](#); [Somatic symptom disorder](#)

Definition

Somatization can be defined as “the tendency to experience a variety of somatic symptoms that are usually poorly described by biomedical disease processes”

Description

The term “somatization” goes back to psychodynamic theory and describes the transformation of unconscious conflicts and repressed emotions into somatic symptoms. Later on, Lipowski defined somatization as “a tendency to experience and communicate somatic distress in response to psychosocial stress and to seek medical help for it” (Lipowski 1986). Therefore, this definition postulates that psychosocial stress is the cause for somatization and that seeking medical help is a necessary feature of this syndrome. However, current concepts of somatization use this term more descriptively. According to these modern concepts, somatization could be defined as “the tendency to experience a variety of somatic symptoms that are usually poorly described by biomedical disease processes.” In this definition, the presence of multiple somatic complaints is the core feature of somatization.

Somatization itself is not a diagnosis, but is frequently related to the former diagnostic group of “somatoform disorders,” which has been reformulated to “Somatic Symptom Disorder” in DSM-5. If multiple somatic symptoms are part of a depressive syndrome or anxiety disorder, the term could be also used. It is not recommended to use the term “somatization” for a postulated association between psychological conflicts and serious medical conditions (e.g., cancer). However, medical conditions like cancer or diabetes can also be associated with multiple medical symptoms that are not explained by the biomedical disease itself. For this subgroup of patients with serious medical conditions, the additional use of the term “somatization” could be appropriate.

Current behavioral-medical concepts prefer the process of “somatosensory amplification” and other perceptual models to describe the development and maintenance of somatization.

Somatosensory amplification summarizes the process of focusing attention to bodily perceptions; together with health worries and a catastrophizing style of interpreting bodily perceptions, selective attention leads to an amplified style of perceiving somatic symptoms. If symptoms are chronic, further sensitization processes might be involved. Further details on modern concepts of somatization can be found in Barsky (1992), Henningsen et al. (2018), and Rief and Martin (2014).

Cross-References

► [Somatoform Disorders](#)

References and Further Readings

- Barsky, A. J. (1992). Amplification, somatization, and the somatoform disorders. *Psychosomatics*, 33, 28–34.
- Henningsen, P., Gundel, H., Kop, W. J., Lowe, B., Martin, A., Rief, W., Rosmalen, J. G. M., Schroder, A., van der Feltz-Cornelis, C., Van den Bergh, O., & Grp, E.-S. (2018). Persistent physical symptoms as perceptual dysregulation: A Neuropsychobehavioral model and its clinical implications. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 80(5), 422–431. <https://doi.org/10.1097/psy.0000000000000588>.
- Lipowski, Z. J. (1986). Somatization: A borderland between medicine and psychiatry. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, 135, 609–614.
- Rief, W., & Martin, A. (2014). How to use the new DSM-5 diagnosis somatic symptom disorder in research and practice? A critical evaluation and a proposal for modifications. *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology*, 10, 339–367.

Somatoform Disorders

Winfried Rief

Department of Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy, Philipps University of Marburg, Marburg, Germany

Synonyms

[Functional somatic symptoms](#); [Medically unexplained physical symptoms](#); [Somatic symptom disorder](#)

Definition

The common feature of somatoform disorders is the presence of physical symptoms that could indicate a general medical condition, but the physical symptoms are not fully explained by a well-known biomedical disease, by the direct effects of a substance, or by another mental disorder. Somatoform disorders have been replaced by somatic symptom disorders in DSM-5. This group includes somatic symptom disorder, conversion disorder, illness anxiety disorder, and others.

Description

The term “somatoform disorder” has been introduced by DSM-III (*Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, third version) as a category for a group of diagnoses. The common feature of somatoform disorders is the presence of physical symptoms that could indicate a general medical condition, but the physical symptoms are not fully explained by a well-known biomedical disease, by the direct effects of a substance, or by another mental disorder (e.g., panic disorder, depression). Symptoms must cause clinically significant distress or impairment. Somatoform disorders have to be distinguished from factitious disorders and malingering; the physical symptoms in somatoform disorders are not intentional or imagined, but patients perceive these symptoms similar to other physical symptoms caused by medical conditions.

After conceptual critique, the group of somatoform disorders has been replaced by the group of “somatic symptom disorder” (SSD). Again, somatic symptoms are in the core of classifying SSD, but the role of the etiology was discarded, while psychological features such as illness worries, ruminations, and others play a more crucial role. Beyond SSD, illness anxiety disorder, conversion disorder, psychological factors affecting other medical conditions, and factitious disorders are further diagnoses in this category. If pain is the predominant symptom, a diagnoses of somatic symptom disorder with predominant pain can be considered.

While most people suffer from somatic symptoms from time to time, a diagnosis of somatoform disorder or SSD should be only given if the symptoms cause clinically significant distress or impairment. A diagnosis of conversion disorder is justified if people suffer from motor or sensory symptoms or deficits that are not fully accounted by a medical condition. Illness anxiety disorder is considered if illness anxieties (such as in hypochondriasis) are predominant, but somatic symptoms are not significant (such as in SSD). In “Western” cultures, pain symptoms are the most frequent somatic symptoms. If pain duration is longer than 3 months, it should be considered to be chronic. In most cases, chronic pain conditions are not sufficiently understood with pure biomedical approaches, but psychological and social factors have to be also considered.

Somatoform disorders and somatic symptom disorders can develop as a result of the interaction of psychological factors (selective attention to bodily processes, overinterpretation of somatic sensations, illness fears, demoralization) with biomedical factors (e.g., traumatic injuries, car accidents, biological dysregulation of stress and immune responses) and with social factors (e.g., reinforcement of symptom expression by proxies, strong biomedical orientation of health-care systems, fears of doctors to overlook biomedical causes). While somatization typically refers to the experience of multiple medically unexplained symptoms, the concept of somatosensory amplification refers to the self-reinforcing circle of attention to somatic processes, overinterpretation of somatic sensations, intensified physical sensations, and behavioral consequences (Barsky 1992). Modern concepts emphasize perceptual processes (Henningsen et al. 2018). Somatoform disorders and SSD are more prevalent in women than in men. General somatic symptoms can be found in more than 10% of the population (Wittchen and Jacobi 2005).

The classification of “medically explained” versus “medically unexplained” symptoms was found to be unreliable, and medical doctors highly disagree in their ratings about causality of somatic symptoms. Therefore the former concept of somatoform disorders was criticized and accused to further continue a “mind-body separation”

instead of favoring a biopsychosocial model. The revision of this category in DSM-5 tries to overcome these shortcomings, but even the new classification bears some problems (Rief and Martin 2014).

To date, no well-founded pharmacological treatment is available for patients with somatoform syndromes. There is some evidence for the use of SSRIs (selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors) in patients with illness anxieties. Psychological interventions (especially behavioral-medical interventions) have been shown to be effective in all groups of somatoform disorders and somatic symptom disorders. However, effect sizes vary substantially, with highest effect sizes for the psychological treatment of illness anxiety, while effect sizes for the treatment of somatization disorder or chronic pain conditions are only in the low to medium range. The rate of overlooked medical conditions that can explain the somatic symptoms does not seem to be increased compared to other mental disorders: long-term studies reveal that less than 10% of patients with somatic symptom disorders must be considered to be misdiagnosed biomedical conditions.

Cross-References

- [Functional Somatic Syndromes](#)
- [Somatization](#)
- [Somatic Symptom Disorder](#)

References and Further Readings

- Barsky, A. J. (1992). Amplification, somatization, and the somatoform disorders. *Psychosomatics*, 33, 28–34.
- Henningsen, P., Gundel, H., Kop, W. J., Lowe, B., Martin, A., Rief, W., Rosmalen, J. G. M., Schroder, A., van der Feltz-Cornelis, C., Van den Bergh, O., & Grp, Euronet-Soma. (2018). Persistent physical symptoms as perceptual dysregulation: A Neuropsychobehavioral model and its clinical implications. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 80(5), 422–431. <https://doi.org/10.1097/psy.0000000000000588>.
- Rief, W., & Martin, A. (2014). How to use the new DSM-5 diagnosis somatic symptom disorder in research and

practice? A critical evaluation and a proposal for modifications. *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology*, 10, 339–367.

- Wittchen, H. U., & Jacobi, F. (2005). Size and burden of mental disorders in Europe – a critical review and appraisal of 27 studies. *European Neuropsychopharmacology*, 15, 357–376.

Spatial Analysis

- [Geographic Information System \(GIS\) Technology](#)

Spectral Analysis

- [Quantitative EEG Including the Five Common Bandwidths \(Delta, Theta, Alpha, Sigma, and Beta\)](#)

Speech and Language Pathology

- [Speech and Language Therapy](#)

Speech and Language Therapy

Steven Harulow
Royal College of Speech and Language
Therapists, London, UK

Synonyms

[Speech and language pathology](#); [Speech therapy](#); [Speech, language, and communication therapy](#)

Definition

Speech and language therapy is an evidence-based discipline that anticipates and responds to the needs of individuals who experience speech, language, communication, or swallowing difficulties. Speech and language therapy works in partnership with individuals and their families and with other professions and agencies to reduce the impact of these often isolating difficulties on well-being and the ability to participate in daily life (Royal College of Speech and Language Therapists 2005).

Speech and language therapists (SLTs) are the lead experts regarding communication and swallowing disorders. This does not mean that others do not work within these areas or that others do not have many skills that may overlap with or complement those of SLTs. Rather, SLTs, through their preregistration education, and later experience, have greater depth and breadth of knowledge and understanding of these clinical areas and associated difficulties. This enables SLTs to lead on the assessment, differential diagnosis, intervention with, and management of individuals with communication and swallowing disorders.

Speech and language therapy assistants and bilingual co-practitioners are integral members of the speech and language therapy team, employed to act in a supporting role under the direction of a professionally qualified SLT.

Description

A wide range of individuals can potentially benefit from speech and language therapy, including:

- Babies with feeding and swallowing difficulties
- Children (from neonates to school age), adolescents, and adults with special needs in communication, communication disability, and/or swallowing disorders associated with diagnosed impairments, genetic and medical

conditions, trauma, developmental delays, mental health problems, and learning disability

- Children (from neonates to school age), adolescents, and adults with special needs in the following areas: speech, voice, fluency, language, psychologically based communication disorders, social skills, problem solving, literacy, swallowing functions, and alternative and augmentative communication (AAC)
- Parents and families, caregivers, communication partners, friends, and colleagues of people with communication and swallowing disorders

Speech and language therapists work in and across a variety of settings.

Within education, these settings include:

- Local education authority nurseries and schools (mainstream and special)
- Language and communication units and colleges of further education
- Independent nurseries and schools
- Play groups
- Government-funded initiatives

Within health and social care, settings include:

- Hospitals inpatient and outpatient centers and hospices
- Specialist centers: child development centers, rehabilitation centers, specialist joint consultative clinics
- Primary care: community clinics, community day centers
- Supported living homes
- Mental health services
- Initiatives in areas of social deprivation (such as Sure Start)

Speech and language therapists have an increasing role within the legal system, including within the penal system/prisons, in court tribunals, and as part of adult and child protection services.

They also work in independent practice, as part of social enterprises and for the voluntary/charitable sector.

All speech and language therapy intervention is delivered on the basis of ongoing assessment and review of progress with the individual (and/or carer as appropriate) as measured against targeted outcomes. Various approaches or models of working have been developed to meet the needs of individuals and context.

The following are key principles guiding the provision of services:

- The rights, wishes, and dignities of each individual and their carers are respected at all times.
- Effective intervention is based on a holistic understanding of the individual, including their social, cultural, economic, political, and linguistic context.
- The safety of the individual is paramount.
- Speech and language therapy intervention aims to be efficient and effective, i.e., best results against targeted outcomes within given resources.

Speech and language therapy services may operate at the level of the person (working with individuals); the level of their environment (working with people, processes, or settings); and the level of the wider community (influencing attitude, culture, or practice). The form of intervention will vary according to the changing needs of the individual and contexts.

Benefits

Speech and language therapy can contribute to the following health, educational, and psychosocial benefits:

- Improvement in general health and well-being
- Increased independence
- Improved participation in family, social, occupational, and educational activities
- Improved social and family relationships
- Reduction in the negative effects of communication disability and the harm or distress this may cause to the individual and others

- Reduced risk of surgical intervention and poor nutrition in the case of individuals with swallowing disorders
- Reduced health risks and length of hospital stay through the prevention of respiratory problems associated with swallowing difficulties
- Reduced risk of surgical intervention by maintaining healthy voice mechanisms
- Reduced risk of educational failure
- Reduced risk of social isolation
- Prevention of certain speech, language, and communication disorders

Outcomes

The outcomes of speech and language therapy include:

- Diagnosis of communication and/or swallowing disorders
- Maintenance of optimal communication and/or swallowing abilities
- Improvement in the speech, language, and communication abilities of individuals
- Improved use of existing function
- Reduction of communication anxiety and avoidance
- Provision and use of AAC where oral communication is limited or precluded by a physical condition
- Improvement in interaction and effective social communication
- Increased awareness of others about communication and/or swallowing disorders, intervention, and management
- Improved communication environment
- Greater opportunities for communication
- Improvement in the individual's understanding of the nature and implications of a communication and/or swallowing disorder

In 2010, the Royal College of Speech and Language Therapists (RCSLT) commissioned analysts Matrix Evidence to review the existing evidence and undertake an economic evaluation

of the provision of speech and language therapy to four specific client groups. The aim of this was to pinpoint the benefits generated by speech and language therapy in relation to the costs of provision. The result was the UK-wide study “The economic case for speech and language therapy” (Marsh et al. 2010).

The Matrix research aimed to determine the costs and benefits for four common speech and language therapy client groups:

- Adults with dysphagia post stroke
- Adults with aphasia post stroke
- Children with speech and language impairment (SLI)
- Children with autism

Matrix Evidence undertook an evaluation of the costs and benefits of speech and language therapy intervention for each condition and compared either the effects of speech and language therapy with the effects of alternative forms of treatment, or the effects of intensive against less intensive therapy. Specifically, the analysis evaluated:

- Speech and language therapy for stroke survivors with dysphagia compared with “usual” care
- Enhanced NHS speech and language therapy for stroke survivors with aphasia compared with usual NHS therapy
- Enhanced speech and language therapy for children with SLI compared with existing therapy provision
- Enhanced speech and language therapy for children with autism compared with usual SLT treatment

The results of the Matrix report show that speech and language therapy for all four cohorts and conditions represents an efficient use of public resources. The net benefits of the interventions - including health and social care cost savings, quality of life, and productivity gains - are

positive and exceed their costs. The report shows the total annual net benefit across aphasia, SLI, and autism is £765 million; it excludes dysphagia from the calculation since the two poststroke conditions are not mutually exclusive.

The RCSLT

Established as the College of Speech Therapists in 1945, the Royal College of Speech and Language Therapists (RCSLT) is the membership organization for UK SLTs, providing and promoting:

- Support and professional leadership for members, including the setting of standards
- Strategic direction for the profession
- Consistent, effective, and accurate professional representation to external bodies and the government
- Heightened public awareness of the medical, social, and emotional effects of communication, eating, drinking, and swallowing difficulties
- Heightened awareness of the contribution of speech and language therapy with the public, government, other professions, and the media

The RCSLT provides leadership so that issues concerning the profession are reflected in public policy and people with communication, eating, drinking, or swallowing difficulties receive optimum care.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Alzheimer’s Disease](#)
- ▶ [Brain Injury](#)
- ▶ [Brain Tumor](#)
- ▶ [Chronic Disease Management](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Impairment](#)
- ▶ [Cost-Effectiveness](#)
- ▶ [Neurological](#)
- ▶ [Neuromuscular Diseases](#)

- [Nutrition](#)
- [Occupational Therapy](#)
- [Rehabilitation](#)
- [Stroke Burden](#)

References and Further Reading

For more information, visit the RCSLT website: www.rcslt.org

Marsh, K., Bertranou, E., Suominen, H., Venkatachalam, M. (2010). An economic evaluation of speech and language therapy: Final report. December 2010. *Matrix Evidence*.

Royal College of Speech Therapists Language. (2005). *Communicating quality* (Vol. 3, pp. 2–28). London: RCSLT.

Speech Therapy

- [Speech and Language Therapy](#)

Speech, Language, and Communication Therapy

- [Speech and Language Therapy](#)

Sperm Donation

- [In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology](#)
- [Surrogacy](#)

Sperm Donor

- [In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology](#)
- [Surrogacy](#)

Spinal Muscular Atrophy

- [Neuromuscular Diseases](#)

Spiritual

- [Religion/Spirituality](#)

Spiritual Beliefs

Afton N. Kapuscinski
Psychology Department, Syracuse University,
Syracuse, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Religious beliefs](#); [Spirituality](#)

Definition

The concept of spiritual beliefs is a critical component of the broader terms *spirituality* or *religiousness* and is to some degree inseparable from them. The meanings of these terms, however, remain elusive. In fact, the paramount importance, and difficulty, with defining spiritual concepts has proven a prominent obstacle to establishing a cohesive body of literature. The empirical research is littered with varying, and sometimes incompatible, ways of understanding spiritual constructs (Hill and Pargament 2003; Kapuscinski and Masters 2010). Researchers disagree, for example, regarding the relationship of religiousness and spirituality. This issue takes on special significance when *beliefs* in particular are the subject of consideration because Western notions of religion often differentiate believers from unbelievers based on their convictions (beliefs), rather than behaviors. Historically, spirituality and religiousness were considered to be, if

not the same entity, intimately tied to one other. One's personal ideas about and experiences of the sacred were both informed by and occurred in the context of institutional religious beliefs and practices. In recent years, however, a growing minority of Americans have begun to identify themselves as "spiritual but not religious." The distinction often involves the term spiritual being used to signify personal beliefs or experiences of the sacred, apart from traditional religious doctrine and organizations. Interestingly, although most people recognize religion and spirituality as somewhat different concepts, they also see the terms as sharing much in common, including traditional religious concepts of God, Christ, and the church (Zinnbauer et al. 1999).

Some researchers have taken the connotation of spirituality as an individual's internal communion with the transcendent and sharply separated it from the idea of religiousness now defined narrowly as involvement with organized beliefs and practices (Hill and Pargament 2003; Zinnbauer et al. 1999). In some cases, the supernatural or sacred is completely removed from the notion of spirituality or spiritual beliefs, leaving a search for meaning or perspective that is unrelated to the transcendent. Some researchers (Kapusinski and Masters 2010; Koenig 2010) do not support this separation on several grounds, including that the removal of the sacred creates a somewhat artificial notion of spirituality, devoid of any substance that separates it from mental health variables like optimism and purpose in life. Therefore, the conceptual state of affairs on these topics does not allow spiritual beliefs to be cleanly separated from spirituality or religiousness. All of these concepts overlap significantly.

Nevertheless, despite the overlap, thematic elements in the literature suggest that spiritual beliefs per se may be defined as convictions about self, others, and the world, which emerge from a search for the transcendent or sacred, and include the values regarding lifestyle and moral conduct derived from these convictions. Spiritual beliefs may be roughly synonymous with the notion of spiritual worldview, the basis of which is a belief in the transcendent. Beliefs may or may not include doctrine associated with religious

institutions (e.g., that an omnipotent God created the universe, as in the Judeo-Christian tradition).

Description

Most of the questionnaires designed to assess spirituality emphasize beliefs as a critical element of what is measured, and a few, like the Beliefs and Values Scale (King et al., 2006) and the Royal Free Interview for Spiritual and Religious Beliefs (King et al. 2001), focus on beliefs specifically. Thus, consistent with the discussion above, the spiritual beliefs component of religiousness and spirituality (R/S) is strongly embedded in research findings on R/S, even when studies do not claim to focus specifically on beliefs. A wealth of evidence demonstrates that both R/S in general, and sometimes beliefs in particular, influence physical and mental health.

Physical Health

Available research generally indicates a relationship between R/S variables and better physical health and implicates the value of incorporating this aspect of culture into health-promoting interventions. Masters and Hooker (2011) provide an overview of the R/S and health literature. Religious service attendance stands out as a variable that consistently predicts mortality. Frequent attendees are at reduced risk of mortality compared to those who never attended services, even when standard controls are included, and the relationship is especially strong for African Americans. Importantly, this relationship appears to transcend culture, with research demonstrating that R/S serves as a protective factor against mortality in a variety of countries, including non-Western societies such as China and Israel. In this light, it is very important to note that service attendance does not measure spiritual beliefs per se. Nevertheless, the literature also indicates that spiritual beliefs are related to improved outcomes for seriously ill individuals. In cancer patients, for example, spiritual beliefs predict positive psychological adjustment and higher rates of perceived

cancer-related growth. Studies also indicate spiritual beliefs and practices may be helpful for cardiac patients, putting them at reduced risk of morbidity, complications, and depression following surgery. However, the relationship between R/S and health is complex, with some studies indicating a detrimental relationship between certain R/S variables and health outcomes. For instance, cardiac patients who viewed God as responsible for their *illnesses* had more difficult recoveries, whereas individuals who attributed their recoveries to God enjoyed better outcomes. Psychologists have theorized several pathways to explain the relationship between R/S and health variables, including the idea that R/S is associated with increased social support, positive coping skills, and the adoption of a healthy lifestyle (e.g., abstinence from smoking and alcohol use, regular exercise, and utilization of preventative health care).

Mental Health

The vast majority of research also indicates a positive association between mental health and spiritual beliefs (Koenig 2010). Individuals scoring higher on measures of spirituality are consistently less likely to have depressive symptoms or disorders, with an effect equivalent in size to that of gender and depression. Similarly, many studies indicate that anxiety is lower for individuals who are more spiritual and that spiritually based interventions result in reduced anxiety. However, the results are mixed – with some research indicating a positive correlation between certain spiritual variables (e.g., spiritual struggle) and anxiety. The relationship between spiritual beliefs and substance use is less ambiguous, with the preponderance of evidence indicating that more spiritual individuals are significantly less likely to engage in substance use, misuse, and abuse.

Despite marked disagreement regarding conceptualization of spiritual constructs, the interaction (whether beneficial or detrimental) of spiritual beliefs with both physical and mental health highlights the significance of recognizing this dimension of human experience in both the science and practice of psychology.

Cross-References

- Religion/Spirituality
- Spirituality and Health
- Spirituality, Measurement of

References and Readings

- Hill, P. C., & Pargament, K. I. (2003). Advances in the conceptualization of religiousness and spirituality: Implications for physical and mental health research. *The American Psychologist*, 58, 64–74. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0003-066X.58.1.64>.
- Kapuscinski, A. N., & Masters, K. S. (2010). The current status of measures of spirituality: A critical review of scale development. *Psychology of Religion and Spirituality*, 2, 191–205. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0020498>.
- King, M., Jones, L., Barnes, K., Low, J., Walker, C., Wilkinson, S., et al. (2006). Measuring spiritual belief: Development and standardization of a beliefs and values scale. *Psychological Medicine*, 36, 417–425. <https://doi.org/10.1017/S003329170500629X>.
- King, M., Speck, P., & Thomas, A. (2001). The royal free interview for spiritual and religious beliefs: Development and validation of a self-report version. *Psychological Medicine*, 31, 1015–1023. <https://doi.org/10.1017/S0033291701004160>.
- Koenig, H. G. (2010). Spirituality and mental health. *International Journal of Applied Psychoanalytic Studies*, 7, 116–122. <https://doi.org/10.1002/aps.239>.
- Koenig, H. G., McCullough, M. E., & Larson, D. B. (Eds.). (2001). *Handbook of religion and health*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Masters, K. S., & Hooker, S. A. (2011). Impact of religion and spirituality on health. In J. Aten, K. O'Grady, & E. Worthington (Eds.), *The psychology of religion and spirituality for clinicians: Using research in your practice* (pp. 357–386). New York: Routledge.
- Zinnbauer, B. J., Pargament, K. I., & Scott, A. B. (1999). The emerging meanings of religiousness and spirituality: Problems as prospects. *Journal of Personality*, 67(6), 889–919. <https://doi.org/10.1111/1467-6494.00077>.

Spiritual Coping

- Religious Coping

Spiritual Struggle

- Religious Coping

Spirituality

Stephen Gallagher and Warren Tierney
Department of Psychology, Faculty of Education
and Health Sciences, University of Limerick,
Castletroy, Limerick, Ireland

Synonyms

Religion; Religiosity; Religiousness

Definition

Spirituality is a very unclear concept that has no concrete definition. By its very nature, the concept of spirituality is deeply rooted in religion, yet in contemporary spirituality, there is an incremental divide emerging between religion and spirituality. Therefore, in present-day society, the formation of a dichotomy with spirituality representing the personal, subjective, inner-directed, unsystematic, liberating expression and religion signifying a formal, authoritarian, institutionalized inhibiting expression is being witnessed. Spirituality has also been defined as a subjective and fluid approach to experiences which leads one to search for enlightenment, whereby behaviors are practiced in accordance with these sacred beliefs. Similarly, one can also consider spirituality to be something personal, which is defined by individuals themselves and is mostly likely devoid of the rules and regulations associated with religion.

Description

Pathways Linking Spirituality to Health

Rendering a congruent spiritual outlook on life has been associated with an enhanced quality of life, better mental and physical health, and improved recovery from various illnesses. However, the precise mechanisms behind these relationships remain unclear. This can be partly attributed to several reasons: first, the lack of a

clear conceptual definition of what spirituality is; second, researchers using both concepts of religion and spirituality interchangeably; third, measuring both concepts with similar assessments (e.g., denomination and frequency of religious observance) which clearly are not adequate to capture a measure of one's spiritual beliefs; and finally, social acceptance that being spiritual entails performing soothing activities such as meditation, yoga or praying, etc., which may be tied to social interactions. Thus, it is necessary to distinguish social factors involved in these practices from spirituality itself. All of the above make it difficult to draw any firm conclusions; thus, caution must be warranted when interpreting the data from such studies. Nonetheless, a number of pathways linking spirituality and health have been proposed, from direct physiological mechanisms (e.g., immune functioning) to more indirect stress buffering (e.g., coping strategies) and lifestyle choices (e.g., dietary and exercise behaviors coupled to one's spiritual beliefs) (Miller and Thorensen 2003). For example, a positive correlation between spirituality and T-cell percentages in HIV-positive women has been reported, suggestive of a more direct physiological route, while other studies support a more indirect pathway; spiritual beliefs have been found to be linked to lower stress, better nutrition, and more exercise, all of which are associated with positive health indices (Koenig et al. 2001). However, what is more interesting is the strong evidence coming from intervention research; a number of studies have been conducted along this line, but one study found that those taught spiritual meditation had greater decreases in anxiety, negative affect, and frequency of migraine headaches compared to those who practiced internally focused secular meditation, externally focused secular meditation, or muscle relaxation (Wachholtz and Pargament 2009). Taken together, these studies indicate that spirituality influences health and that interventions targeting this concept can bring health benefits.

However, despite these positive benefits, a word of caution is warranted when investigating these relationships as there are also negative health consequences associated with spirituality. For example, a spiritual struggle denotes the

anxiety and pressure about spiritual concerns inside oneself, with others, and the godly. Indeed, this spiritual struggle is associated with poor mental and physical health among suffers in some traditional faith practices (Rosmarin et al. 2009); hence, it is sometimes difficult to determine whether spirituality is a resource or a liability and adds to the complexity that already exists in this spirituality-health relationship, which in some instances may not be linear (Gallagher et al. 2015). Further, there have been attempts to adopt the concept of spirituality into an overall definition of health, and some now argue that spiritual health and growth are equally important for quality of life (Sawatzky et al. 2005); thus, spirituality can now be viewed and measured as an endpoint itself.

Measuring Spirituality

Measuring spirituality is a very difficult task due to lack of agreed-upon definition and its close-knit ties with religion. However, there have been some admirable attempts to capture the concept using self-report methods, and some of the measures include the Daily Spiritual Experience Scale (Underwood and Teresi 2002), the Intrinsic Spirituality Scale (Hodge 2003) and the Spiritual Well-Being Scale (Paloutzian and Ellison 1991), and the Theistic Spiritual Outcome Survey (Richards et al. 2005), while the Spiritual Transcendence Scale (Piedmont 1999), the Beliefs and Values Scale (King et al. 2006), and Spiritual Connection Scale (Wheeler and Hyland 2008) offer a conceptualization of spirituality which is nonreligious; these may be useful when one is dealing with individuals who are more inclined to adopt a contemporary view of spirituality.

Cross-References

- Religion
- Religion/Spirituality
- Religiousness/Religiosity
- Spiritual Beliefs

References and Further Readings

- Gallagher, S., Phillips, A. C., Lee, H. A. N., & Carroll, D. (2015). The association between spirituality and depression in parents caring for children with developmental disabilities: Social support and/or last resort. *Journal of Religion and Health, 54*, 358–370.
- Hill, P. C., & Pargament, K. I. (2003). Advances in the conceptualization and measurement of religion and spirituality: Implications for physical and mental health research. *American Psychologist, 58*, 64–74.
- Hodge, D. R. (2003). The intrinsic spirituality scale. *Journal of Social Service Research, 30*(1), 41–61.
- King, M., Jones, L., Barnes, K., Low, J., Walker, C., Wilkinson, S., et al. (2006). Measuring spiritual belief: Development and standardization of a beliefs and values scale. *Psychological Medicine, 36*(3), 417–425.
- Koenig, H. G. (2009). Research on religion, spirituality, and mental health: A review. *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry, 54*, 283–291.
- Koenig, H. G., McCullough, M. E., & Larson, D. B. (Eds.). (2001). *Handbook of religion and health*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Miller, W. R., & Thoresen, C. E. (2003). Spirituality, religion, and health: An emerging research field. *American Psychologist, 58*, 24–35.
- Paloutzian, R. E., & Ellison, C. W. (1991). *Manual for the spiritual well-being scale*. Nayack: Life Advance.
- Peterman, A. H., Fitchett, G., Brady, M. J., Hernandez, L., & Cella, D. (2002). Measuring spiritual well-being in people with cancer: The functional assessment of chronic illness therapy-spiritual well-being scale (FACIT-Sp). *Annals of Behavioral Medicine, 24*, 49–58.
- Piedmont, R. L. (1999). Does spirituality represent the sixth factor of personality? Spiritual transcendence and the five-factor model. *Journal of Personality, 67*, 985–1013.
- Richards, P. S., Smith, T., Schowalter, M., Richard, M., Berrett, M. E., & Hardman, R. K. (2005). Development and validation of the theistic spiritual outcome survey. *Psychotherapy Research, 15*, 457–469.
- Rosmarin, D. H., Pargament, K. I., & Flannelly, K. J. (2009). Do spiritual struggles predict poorer physical/mental health among Jews? *The International Journal for the Psychology of Religion, 19*, 244–258.
- Sawatzky, R., Ratner, P. A., & Chiu, L. (2005). A meta-analysis of the relationship between spirituality and quality of life. *Social Indicators Research, 72*, 153–188.
- Underwood, L. G., & Teresi, J. A. (2002). The daily spiritual experience scale: Development, theoretical description, reliability, exploratory factor analysis and preliminary construct validity using health-related data. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine, 24*, 22–33.

- Wachholtz, M. A. B., & Pargament, K. I. (2009). Migraines and meditation: Does spirituality matter? *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 3, 351–366.
- Wheeler, P., & Hyland, M. E. (2008). The development of a scale to measure the experience of spiritual connection and the correlation between this experience and values. *Spirituality Health*, 9, 193–217.

Spirituality and Health

Kevin S. Masters

Department of Psychology, University of
Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

Synonyms

[Faith and health](#); [Religiousness and health](#)

Definition

Spirituality is an elusive term for which definitional consensus has yet to be reached. Many definitions include concepts concerning that which is beyond the material world and may include features of life that are not commonly perceptible by the physical senses. This is sometimes said to include a search for the sacred or belief in the transcendent. Common themes in definitions of spirituality include connectedness or relationship, subjectivity, personal experience, behaviors reflecting sacred or secular beliefs, and belief in something transcendent. This entry regards spirituality as related to health, an area of significantly increased research activity over the last 15–20 years.

Description

Over the last 15–20 years, scholars have become significantly more interested in determining if there is a relationship between spirituality and

health, what the strength of this relationship might be, and if the relationship varies depending on the specific dimensions of both spirituality and health under consideration. Clearly both spirituality and health are multidimensional constructs, and thus, any general statement on their relationship will be an oversimplification.

The first major problem that investigators have in this area is, indeed, defining both terms. In this entry, the definitional focus is on spirituality. An important first question pertains to the similarities and differences between religion and spirituality. Most scholars currently agree that they are related, but not synonymous constructs. This understanding diverges from the historic conceptualization that viewed spirituality and religion as indivisible entities but coincides temporally with the increasing secularization of Western culture (Zinnbauer et al. 1999). Compared to spirituality, religion is often viewed as including more organized social or group practices with well-defined rituals, doctrinal creeds, and statements of faith. Spirituality, on the other hand, is thought to be more subjective and personal, lacking in the organizational elements that characterize religion. Shahabi et al. (2002) reported that 10% of individuals in a US national stratified sample classified themselves as spiritual, but not religious. Nevertheless, most highly religious individuals note that their spirituality is pursued within the context of their religion. Further, a common theme for definitions of both religion and spirituality is reference to a higher power, and 70% of spirituality definitions referred to traditional concepts of God, Christ, and the church as constituting what is sacred (Zinnbauer et al. 1997). Based on a review of the nursing literature, Emblen (1992) defined spirituality as “a personal life principle which animates a transcendent quality of relationship with God” (p. 45). More recently, Saucier and Skrzypinska (2006) demonstrated that subjective spirituality and tradition-oriented religiousness are empirically independent and correlate quite distinctly with personality dimensions. It has also been observed that neither spirituality nor religiousness can be

simply reduced to a commonly measured personality variable (Piedmont 1999; Saroglou and Muñoz-García 2008; Saucier and Skrzypinska 2006).

Given the definitional problems with spirituality, it is not surprising that there are measurement concerns as well. Recently, Kapuscinski and Masters (2010) reviewed work in this area. They not only observed the lack of definitional consensus and related measurement confusion but also suggested that, given the dearth of lexical studies of spirituality, it is quite likely that the spiritual construct as defined by researchers differs from popular understanding and use of the term.

Clearly, these basic problems limit the extent that strong statements can be made regarding spirituality and health. At this point, most of the research has not focused on spirituality per se, as differentiated from religiousness, but rather has used measures such as religious service attendance as proxies for spirituality or has confounded religion and spirituality often using the R/S naming convention to represent both simultaneously and therefore demonstrate that no attempt at conceptual separation was made. There is significant research suggesting that some practices that are often associated with spirituality or considered behavioral indicators of spirituality can be effective. For example, meditation has a strong history of beneficial findings in the area of stress management and has been an important component in some major lifestyle interventions such as the Ornish Lifestyle Heart Trial (Ornish et al. 1983, 1990). Nevertheless, intervention studies that include a specifically spiritual intervention are almost nonexistent, and observational research, even if longitudinal, is severely limited in considering cause and effect relations. For example, it is clear that people tend to pray more when they are ill (negative relationship with health), but it is quite likely that it is the illness that is “causing” the increase in prayer rather than prayer having a negative impact on health. Investigations on frequency of prayer and health are, at this point, nonconclusive and largely characterized by cross-sectional research designs of self-report data. A few studies have investigated the content

of prayer and found that, for example, self-esteem is higher among older adults when they pray, believing that only God knows when and how to best answer prayer (Krause 2004). Krause (2003) also found that prayer for material things did not alleviate the burden of financial strain on physical health. But these are very preliminary findings, and much work in this area remains.

Finally, there are many behavioral and cognitive practices that could be considered either spiritual or not spiritual depending on how they are conceptualized and contextualized. These include concepts such as gratitude, forgiveness, relaxation, compassion, hope, optimism, faith, and connectedness among others. The extent that these may be considered aspects of spirituality depends on many factors notably the extent to which they are conceptualized as aspects of relating to the transcendent or sacred.

Cross-References

- [Spiritual Beliefs](#)
- [Spirituality, Measurement of](#)

References and Readings

- Emblen, J. D. (1992). Religion and spirituality defined according to current use in nursing literature. *Journal of Professional Nursing*, 8, 41–47. [https://doi.org/10.1016/8755-7223\(92\)90116-G](https://doi.org/10.1016/8755-7223(92)90116-G).
- Kapuscinski, A. N., & Masters, K. S. (2010). The current status of measures of spirituality: A critical review of scale development. *Psychology of Religion and Spirituality*, 2, 191–205.
- Krause, N. (2003). Praying for others, financial strain, and physical health status in late life. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 42, 377–391.
- Krause, N. (2004). Assessing the relationships among prayer expectancies, race, and self-esteem in late life. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 42, 395–408.
- Ornish, D., Brown, S. E., Scherwitz, L. W., Billings, J. H., Armstrong, W. T., Ports, T. A., et al. (1990). Can lifestyle changes reverse coronary heart disease? The lifestyle heart trial. *Lancet*, 336, 129–133.
- Ornish, D., Scherwitz, L. W., Doody, R. S., Kesten, D., McLanahan, S. M., Brown, S. E., et al. (1983). Effects of stress management training and dietary changes in treating ischemic heart disease. *JAMA*, 249, 54–59.

- Piedmont, R. L. (1999). Does spirituality represent the sixth factor of personality? Spiritual transcendence and the five-factor model. *Journal of Personality*, 67, 983–1013. <https://doi.org/10.1111/1467-6494.0080>.
- Saroglou, V., & Muñoz-Garcia, A. (2008). Individual differences in religion and spirituality: An issue of personality traits and/or values. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 47, 83–101.
- Saucier, G., & Skrzypinska, K. (2006). Spiritual but not religious? Evidence for two independent dispositions. *Journal of Personality*, 74, 1257–1292. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-6494.2006.00409.x>.
- Shahabi, L., Powell, L. H., Musick, M. A., Pargament, K. I., Thoresen, C. E., Williams, D., et al. (2002). Correlates of self-perception of spirituality in American adults. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 24, 59–68. https://doi.org/10.1207/S15324796ABM2401_07.
- Zinnbauer, B. J., Pargament, K. I., Cole, B., Rye, M. S., Butter, E. M., Belavich, T. G., et al. (1997). Religion and spirituality: Unfuzzifying the fuzzy. *Journal for the Scientific Study of Religion*, 36, 549–564. <https://doi.org/10.2307/1387689>.
- Zinnbauer, B. J., Pargament, K. I., & Scott, A. B. (1999). The emerging meanings of religiousness and spirituality: Problems as prospects. *Journal of Personality*, 67, 889–919. <https://doi.org/10.1111/14676494>.

Spirituality, Measurement of

Afton N. Kapuscinski
Psychology Department, Syracuse University,
Syracuse, NY, USA

Definition

Quantitative assessment of spirituality, typically in the form of self-report questionnaires.

Description

Measuring spirituality poses a serious challenge to research in the psychology of religion and spirituality. The principal source of difficulty is researchers' inability to reach a consensus on how to define spirituality, especially regarding its relationship to the concept of religiousness (Kapuscinski and Masters 2010). As language in the United States has shifted over the past few

decades, such that religion and spirituality are no longer considered to be synonymous, researchers have created instruments intended to measure spirituality as a concept distinct from religiousness. However, the definitions used to generate measures of spirituality are highly diverse, resulting in some instruments that appear to share little overlap in content (Kapuscinski and Masters 2010). For instance, some measures define spirituality using language stemming from traditional religious institutions (e.g., "God"), whereas others include no reference to the transcendent or sacred in their conceptualizations. An additional concern is that some themes in the way researchers tend to understand spirituality stand in contrast to how the term is used in common language by the general public (Hill and Pargament 2003; Zinnbauer et al. 1999). Specifically, researchers tend to sharply divide spirituality from religion, such that religion is considered to be comprised of external behaviors (e.g., religious service attendance) and is associated with formal institutions, whereas spirituality is comprised of personal, inner experience that is separate from organized religion. Further, researchers are inclined to view spirituality as a health-promoting quality associated with positive psychological and societal benefits, and religiousness, in contrast, is perceived to be restrictive and unhealthy. The empirical literature, however, indicates that non-researchers regard the concepts as overlapping considerably and view both religiousness and spirituality as positive qualities. Moreover, researchers' connotations are not consistent with research linking both religion and spirituality to positive mental and physical health outcomes (Masters and Hooker 2011).

Further, theoretical concerns arise regarding the feasibility of quantifying and operationally defining a concept that seems to be, by its nature, highly experiential and personalized. The literature indicates that like researchers, individuals differ in how they understand spirituality (Zinnbauer et al. 1999). Interestingly, the majority of researchers do not consult participants regarding conceptualization of spirituality when developing new measures (Kapuscinski and Masters 2010). Miller and Thoresen (2003) comment that

from the believer's perspective, scientists can at best explore mere reflections of spirituality, which approximate but never fully capture its essence.

The disagreement regarding how to conceptualize spirituality is implied by the sheer number of available spirituality instruments. Reviews of measures (Hill and Hood 1999; MacDonald et al. 1995; MacDonald et al. 1999) indicate that over 100 measures exist that are designed to measure a variety of spiritual constructs, including spirituality, intrinsic spirituality, spiritual experiences, spiritual meaning, spiritual development, spiritual transcendence, spiritual transformation, and spiritual well-being. Most measures appear to address interest in or search for the sacred and focus on assessing cognitive (e.g., meaning, beliefs, values) or emotional (e.g., peace, hope, connection) experiences associated with the sacred. Several high-quality measures should be considered as appropriate for use in health psychology research. The FACIT Spiritual Well-Being Scale (Peterman et al. 2002) was designed specifically to assess aspects of spirituality relevant to quality of life for chronically ill individuals. The Daily Spiritual Experiences Scale (Underwood and Teresi 2002) includes language that is relevant to individuals from various faith traditions and has demonstrated a relationship to important health variables such as alcohol consumption and depression. Additionally, the Spiritual Transcendence Scale (Piedmont 1999), which does not include language associated with institutional religion, is noteworthy for its high-quality scale development and validation practices and includes an observer report form. When selecting a measure for use, researchers should carefully consider whether or not the content of scale items is consistent with the conceptualization of spirituality relevant to their study and population of interest.

Cross-References

- [Spiritual Beliefs](#)
- [Spirituality](#)
- [Spirituality and Health](#)

References and Readings

- Hill, P. C., & Hood, R. W. (Eds.). (1999). *Measures of religiosity*. Birmingham: Religious Education.
- Hill, P. C., & Pargament, K. I. (2003). Advances in the conceptualization of religiousness and spirituality: Implications for physical and mental health research. *American Psychologist*, 58, 64–74. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0003-066X.58.1.64>.
- Kapuscinski, A. N., & Masters, K. S. (2010). The current status of measures of spirituality: A critical review of scale development. *Psychology of Religion and Spirituality*, 2, 191–205. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0020498>.
- MacDonald, D. A., LeClair, L., Holland, C. J., Alter, A., & Friedman, H. L. (1995). A survey of measures of transpersonal constructs. *Journal of Transpersonal Psychology*, 27, 171–235.
- MacDonald, D. A., Friedman, H. L., & Kuentzel, J. G. (1999). A survey of measures of spiritual and transpersonal constructs: Part one – research update. *Journal of Transpersonal Psychology*, 31, 137–154.
- Masters, K. S., & Hooker, S. A. (2011). Impact of religion and spirituality on health. In J. Aten, K. O'Grady, & E. Worthington (Eds.), *The psychology of religion and spirituality for clinicians: Using research in your practice* (pp. 357–386). New York: Routledge.
- Miller, W. R., & Thoresen, C. E. (2003). Spirituality, religion and health: An emerging research field. *American Psychologist*, 58, 24–35. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0003-066X.58.1.24>.
- Peterman, A. H., Fitchett, G., Brady, M. J., Hernandez, L., & Cella, D. (2002). Measuring spiritual well-being in people with cancer: The functional assessment of chronic illness therapy – spiritual well-being scale (FACIT-Sp). *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 24, 49–58. <https://doi.org/10.1207/S15324796ABM2401>.
- Piedmont, R. L. (1999). Does spirituality represent the sixth factor of personality? Spiritual transcendence and the five-factor model. *Journal of Personality*, 67, 986–1013. <https://doi.org/10.1111/1467-6494.00080>.
- Underwood, L. G., & Teresi, J. A. (2002). The daily spiritual experience scale: Development, theoretical description, reliability, exploratory factor analysis and preliminary construct validity using health-related data. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 24, 22–33. https://doi.org/10.1207/S15324796ABM2401_04.
- Zinnbauer, B. J., Pargament, K. I., & Scott, A. B. (1999). The emerging meanings of religiousness and spirituality: Problems as prospects. *Journal of Personality*, 67(6), 889–919. <https://doi.org/10.1111/1467-6494.00077>.

Squamous Cell Carcinoma of the Cervix (SCCC)

- [Cancer, Cervical](#)

Stages of Change Model

► [Transtheoretical Model of Behavior Change](#)

Stages-of-Change Model

Jonathan A. Shaffer
Department of Medicine/Division of General
Medicine, Columbia University Medical Center,
New York, NY, USA

Definition

The Stages-of-Change Model was developed by James Prochaska and Carlo DiClemente as a framework to describe the five phases through which one progresses during health-related behavior change (Prochaska und DiClemente 1983). It is part of their broader Transtheoretical Model, which not only assesses an individual's readiness to act to eliminate a problem behavior but also includes strategies and processes of change to guide the individual through the stages. The Stages-of-Change Model originated in research related to psychotherapy and the cessation of addictive behaviors, such as smoking, alcohol and substance abuse, and issues related to weight management (Buxton et al. 1996). Although Prochaska and DiClemente initially hypothesized that individuals progress linearly through a series of discrete stages of change, researchers now believe that a cyclical or "spiral" pattern more accurately represents how most people change unhealthy behavior over time. Since its development, the Stages-of-Change Model has been related to a variety of problem behaviors, associated with treatment outcomes, and integrated in stage-based interventions. Although most scientists and clinicians agree that the model has heuristic value, it has been criticized by some researchers.

Description

History of the Model

Stage theories have been integral to the field of psychology since its inception and include Freud's and Erikson's psychosexual stages, Kohlberg's stages of moral development, Piaget's stages of cognitive development, and Maslow's hierarchy of needs (Dolan 2005). DiClemente and Prochaska's Stages-of-Change Model uses language similar to Horn. Specifically, Horn hypothesized four stages of change associated with health-related behavior: (1) contemplating change, (2) deciding to change, (3) short-term change, and (4) long-term change (Horn 1976). DiClemente and Prochaska initially identified four stages of changes associated with smoking cessation and maintenance: (1) thinking about change (contemplation), (2) becoming determined to change (decision making), (3) actively modifying behavior and/or environment (action), and (4) maintaining new behaviors (maintenance). Precontemplation was later identified as a separate stage preceding contemplation.

Description of Stages

Precontemplation. The individual in the precontemplation stage has no intention to change his or her behavior in the foreseeable future (Prochaska und Norcross 2001). Although individuals are unaware of their problems, their families, friends, neighbors, and employees are often very aware of these problems. Individuals presenting for treatment in the precontemplation stage generally do so because of pressure from others.

Contemplation. During the contemplation stage, individuals are aware that a problem exists and seriously consider overcoming it. However, they have not yet made a commitment to do so. According to Prochaska and Norcross, individuals often remain stuck in this stage for long periods.

Preparation. The preparation stage combines intention and behavioral criteria. Individuals in the preparation stage intend to enact change in the next month and have unsuccessfully attempted

to do so in the past year. These individuals report small behavioral changes, but they have not yet reached a criterion for effective action, such as abstinence from smoking or sufficient weight loss. These individuals do intend to take action in the very near future.

Action. Individuals in the action stage modify their behavior, experiences, and environment in order to overcome their problems. This stage involves the most overt behavioral changes and requires considerable commitment of time and energy. Modifications of the problem behaviors made in this stage are most visible to others and tend to elicit others' recognition. Individuals in this stage must have successfully altered their problem behavior for a period of 1 day to 6 months.

Maintenance. Individuals in the maintenance stage concentrate on preventing relapse and consolidating the gains attended during the previous stage. These individuals must have remained free of their problem behavior and consistently engaged in a new incompatible behavior for more than 6 months.

Termination. Individuals who reach this stage have completed the change process and no longer have to work to prevent relapse. This stage involves total confidence or self-efficacy across all high-risk situations and no temptation to relapse.

Assessing Stages of Change

Multiple ways for measuring stage of change have been proposed and devised, and researchers/clinicians usually assign people to stages on the basis of their responses to questions concerning their prior behavior and current behavioral intentions (Weinstein, Rothman, & Sutton, 1998). A Stages-of-Change Questionnaire has been developed as a brief and reliable instrument for measuring stages of change in psychotherapy and has been adopted to evaluate stages of change for specific problem behaviors (McConaughy, Prochaska, & Velicer, 1983). This continuous measure includes questions such as "As far as I'm concerned, I don't have problems that need changing" (precontemplation), "I have a problem and I really think I should work on it"

(contemplation), "I am working really hard to change" (action), and "I may need a boost right now to help me maintain the changes I've already made" (maintenance). Given that attributes that define the stages of change are mainly internal to the individual (e.g., beliefs, plans, attributions), measurement is often imperfect (Weinstein, Rothman, & Sutton, 1998).

Stages of Change and Specific Health Behaviors

The Stages-of-Change Model has been used to understand a variety of problem behaviors including smoking cessation, cessation of cocaine use, weight control, high-fat food consumption, adolescent delinquent behaviors, risky sexual behaviors, sunscreen use, radon gas exposure, exercise acquisition, mammography screening, and physicians' preventive practices with smokers (Prochaska et al. 1994).

Stage-Based Treatments

The Stages-of-Change Model has been used to aid in treatment planning and to develop stage-based treatments. Prochaska (1991) has argued that a person's stage of change provides prescriptive and prescriptive information about appropriate treatments (Prochaska 1991). For example, those who are in the preparation or action stages presumably benefit from action-oriented therapies, whereas those in the precontemplation or contemplation stages likely may benefit more from insight-oriented, consciousness raising interventions.

Several interventions based on stage-based models of change have been developed to modify risk behaviors. These interventions are tailored to take into account the current stage an individual has reached in the change process in contrast to "one size fits all" interventions. A systematic review of these interventions identified 37 RCTs of such interventions aimed at smoking cessation, promotion of physical activity, dietary change, multiple lifestyle changes, mammography screening, and treatment adherence (Riemsma et al. 2002). The authors of this review concluded that there is little evidence to suggest that stage-based interventions are more effective compared to

non-stage-based interventions, no intervention, or usual care. Nonetheless, they recommend additional studies of tailored interventions which involve frequent reassessment of patients' readiness to change. Reviews of stage-based lifestyle interventions in primary care (Van Sluijs, Van Poppel, & Van Mechelen, 2004) and stage-based interventions for smoking cessation (Riemsma et al. 2003) have likewise resulted in limited scientific evidence in support of these interventions.

Revised Stages-of-Change Model

Freeman und Dolan (2001) offered a revised Stages-of-Change Model with five additional changes to more precisely determine a psychotherapy patient's position on the continuum of change (Freeman & Dolan). This revised model has been recommended as a more dynamic and flexible one that provides clinicians with a more experience-centered focus from which to make treatment decisions.

Non-contemplation is the stage during which an individual is not considering or even thinking about changing. These individuals do not actively avoid, resist, or oppose change; they are rather unaware of their need to change or of the effect their behavior has on others. Anti-contemplation involves the process of becoming reactive and violently opposed to the notion of needing change, a response often seen in individuals who are legally mandated to attend treatment or who come to treatment at the urging of their family, friends, or significant others. Freeman and Dolan's precontemplation and contemplation stages are identical to those of Prochaska and DiClemente. Their action planning stage occurs when the clinician and patient have collaboratively developed a treatment focus and treatment plan. Patients in this stage are actively willing to plan change, and next progress to the action stage of Prochaska and DiClemente's model. Prelapse, lapse, and relapse stages may then occur prior to the maintenance stage. During prelapse, an individual experiences overwhelming thoughts, desires, and cravings to engage in the problem behavior. During lapse, the skills needed to maintain the action stage decrease or are ignored. During relapse, the individual returns to the problem

behavior. As in Prochaska and DiClemente's model, the maintenance stage occurs when the individual actively works toward maintaining the cessation of the problem behavior.

Evaluation of the Stages-of-Change Model

The Stages-of-Change Model is not without criticism. Those who have criticized the model argue that its inherent concept of discrete stages involves arbitrary distinctions; it falsely assumes that individuals make coherent and stable plans, and it neglects the role of reward, punishment, and associative learning that contribute to the maintenance of problem behaviors (West 2005). Others have found that minimal supportive evidence for the Stages-of-Change Model exists (Whitelaw, Baldwin, Bunton, & Flynn, 2000) and questioned the model's internal validity (Ahijevych und Wewers 1992; Bandura 1997; Farkas et al. 1996), external validity (Clarke und Eves 1997), and ethical difficulties associated with interventions derived from the Stages-of-Change Model (Piper und Brown 1998).

Notwithstanding the criticisms and absence of evidence discussed above, the Stages-of-Change Model provides a pragmatic framework for practitioners and clinical researchers, and it is intuitively appealing to many in the fields of clinical psychology, behavioral medicine, public health, and other fields. Future research promises to offer improved measurement of stages, qualitative case studies of practitioner utilization, and process-based implementation evaluation of the model in various settings (Whitelaw, Baldwin, Bunton, & Flynn, 2000).

Cross-References

- ▶ [Health Beliefs/Health Belief Model](#)
- ▶ [Transtheoretical Model of Behavior Change](#)

References and Readings

- Ahijevych, K., & Wewers, M. (1992). Processes of change across five stages of smoking cessation. *Addictive Behaviors*, 17(1), 17–25.

- Bandura, A. (1997). Editorial: The anatomy of stages of change. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 12, 8–10.
- Buxton, K., Wyse, J., & Mercer, T. (1996). How applicable is the stages of change model to exercise behaviour? A review. *Health Education Journal*, 55(2), 239–256.
- Clarke, P., & Eves, F. (1997). Applying the transtheoretical model to the study of exercise on prescription. *Journal of Health Psychology*, 2(2), 195–207.
- Dolan, M. (2005). Stages of change. In A. Freeman et al. (Eds.), *Encyclopedia of cognitive behavior therapy* (pp. 387–390). New York: Springer.
- Farkas, A., Pierce, J., Zhu, S., Rosbrook, B., Gilpin, E., Berry, C., et al. (1996). Addiction versus stages of change models in predicting smoking cessation. *Addiction*, 91(9), 1271–1280.
- Freeman, A., & Dolan, M. (2001). Revisiting Prochaska and DiClemente's stages of change theory: An expansion and specification to aid in treatment planning and outcome evaluation. *Cognitive and Behavioral Practice*, 8(3), 224–234.
- Horn, D. (1976). A model for the study of personal choice health behavior. *International Journal of Health Education*, 19(1), 89–98.
- McConaughy, E., Prochaska, J., & Velicer, W. (1983). Stages of change in psychotherapy: Measurement and sample profiles. *Psychotherapy: Theory, Research & Practice*, 20(3), 368–375.
- Piper, S., & Brown, P. (1998). Psychology as a theoretical foundation for health education in nursing: empowerment or social control? *Nurse Education Today*, 18(8), 637–641.
- Prochaska, J. (1991). Prescribing to the stage and level of phobic patients. *Psychotherapy: Theory, Research, Practice, Training*, 28(3), 463.
- Prochaska, J., & DiClemente, C. (1983). Stages and processes of self-change of smoking: toward an integrative model of change. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 51(3), 390–395.
- Prochaska, J., & Norcross, J. (2001). Stages of change. *Psychotherapy: Theory, Research, Practice, Training*, 38(4), 443.
- Prochaska, J., Velicer, W., Rossi, J., Goldstein, M., Marcus, B., Rakowski, W., et al. (1994). Stages of change and decisional balance for 12 problem behaviors. *Health Psychology*, 13, 39–39.
- Riemsma, R., Pattenden, J., Bridle, C., Sowden, A., Mather, L., Watt, I., et al. (2002). A systematic review of the effectiveness of interventions based on a stages-of-change approach to promote individual behaviour change. *Health Technology Assessment*, 6(24), 1–231.
- Riemsma, R., Pattenden, J., Bridle, C., Sowden, A., Mather, L., Watt, I., et al. (2003). Systematic review of the effectiveness of stage based interventions to promote smoking cessation. *British Medical Journal*, 326(7400), 1175.
- Van Sluijs, E., Van Poppel, M., & Van Mechelen, W. (2004). Stage-based lifestyle interventions in primary care: Are they effective? *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 26(4), 330–343.
- Weinstein, N., Rothman, A., & Sutton, S. (1998). Stage theories of health behavior: Conceptual and methodological issues. *Health Psychology*, 17, 290–299.
- West, R. (2005). Time for a change: Putting the transtheoretical (stages of change) model to rest. *Addiction*, 100(8), 1036–1039.
- Whitelaw, S., Baldwin, S., Bunton, R., & Flynn, D. (2000). The status of evidence and outcomes in stages of change research. *Health Education Research*, 15(6), 707–718.

Standard Deviation

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

A simple measure of dispersion is the range, the arithmetic difference between the greatest (maximum) and the least (minimum) value in a data set. While this characteristic is easily calculated and useful in initial inspections of data sets, by definition it only uses two of the values in a data set. In a large data set most pieces of numerical information are therefore not used in the calculation of the range, and it is not known whether many data points lie close to the minimum, maximum, or mean, or in any other distribution pattern.

Two more sophisticated measures of dispersion are variance and the standard deviation. These measures are intimately related to each other and take account of all values in a data set. The calculation of variance involves calculating the deviation of each data point from the mean of the data set, squaring these values, and summing them. The process of squaring the deviation is mathematically necessary: If the raw deviations were to be summed they would always sum to zero. However, the squaring process creates the problem that the units of measurement of variance are not the same as the units of measurement of the original data. In the vast majority of cases, the data

points in our studies are not simply numbers, but numerical representations of information measured in certain units. For example, a systolic blood pressure measurement of “125” is actually a measurement of 125 millimeters of mercury (mmHg). Since the calculation of variance involves squaring certain values, the variance of a set of blood pressure data points would actually be measured in squared millimeters of mercury, a nonsensical unit.

Fortunately, this problem can be solved by simply calculating the square root of the variance. The resulting value is called the standard deviation (SD), and the unit of measurement of the SD is the same as the unit of measurement of the original data points. The SD is a very commonly presented descriptor in research studies. It is usually presented in conjunction with the mean in the form “mean $\pm$ SD.”

Cross-References

► [Variance](#)

Standard Normal (Z) Distribution

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Z distribution](#)

Definition

The Standard Normal distribution, also known as the Z distribution, is one particular form of the Normal distribution in which the mean is zero (i.e., 0) and the variance is unity (i.e., 1). This can be written as ($\mu = 0$, $\sigma = 1$).

Before presenting the Z distribution, it is necessary to discuss the Normal distribution in general. Imagine that the heights of a large number of adult males (or females) are measured and the results plotted as a histogram. Height is plotted in inches on the x-axis and the number of people within each height category is plotted on the y-axis. There would be many more people close to the middle of the histogram than close to either end, since more individuals are close to the mean height, and very few are very tall or very short. Given a large sample and decreasingly thin bars in the histogram (that is, the width of the measurement intervals along the x-axis becomes infinitely small such that the height data become continuous), a curve can be superimposed on this histogram. One particular version of a density curve is called the Normal distribution. This distribution is of considerable interest since height and many physiological variables conform very closely (but not perfectly) to this distribution. Since the word normal is used in everyday language, and since its meaning in Statistics is different and important, the word is written in this entry with an upper case N when it is used in its statistical sense.

The Normal distribution has several notable properties:

- The highest point of the Normal curve occurs for the mean of the population. The properties of the Normal distribution ensure that this point is also the median value and the mode.
- The shape of the Normal curve (relatively narrow or relatively broad) is influenced by the standard deviation (SD) of the data. The sides of the curve descend more gently as the standard deviation increases and more steeply as it decreases.
- At a distance of approximately ± 2 SDs from the mean, the slopes of the downward curves change from a relatively smooth downward slope to a curve that extends out to infinity and thus never quite reaches the x-axis. For practical purposes, the curve is often regarded as intercepting the x-axis at a distance of ± 3 SDs from the mean, but this is an approximation.

Area Under the Normal Curve

The area under the Normal curve is of considerable interest in the discipline of Statistics. That is, it is of considerable interest to define and quantify the area bounded by the Normal curve at the top and the x -axis at the bottom. This area will be defined as 1.00, or as 100%. Given this interest, the final bullet point in the previous list raised an issue that appears problematic. That is, it appears that, if the two lower slopes of the Normal curve never quite reach the x -axis, the area under the curve is never actually fully defined and can therefore never be calculated precisely. Fortunately, this apparent paradox can be solved mathematically.

The solution is related to the observation that the sum of an infinite series can converge to a finite solution. An example that effectively demonstrates the solution here is the geometric series " $1/2 + 1/4 + 1/8 + \dots$ *ad infinitum*." That is, the series starts with $1/2$, and every subsequent term is one half of the previous term. Given this, the terms of the series never vanish to zero. However, the sum of them is precisely 1.00. The proof of this is as follows, where the series is represented as S :

$$S = 1/2 + 1/4 + 1/8 + \dots \text{ad infinitum} \quad (1)$$

Both sides of this equation are then multiplied by the same value, namely, 2 (multiplying both sides of an equation by a constant means that the sides are still of equal value):

$$2S = 1 + 1/2 + 1/4 + \dots \text{ad infinitum} \quad (2)$$

The value S is then subtracted from both sides (subtracting a constant from both sides of an equation means that the sides are still of equal value). First, consider the left-hand side (LHS) of Eq. 2:

LHS of Eq. 2: $2S - S$, which equals S .

Now consider the right-hand side (RHS) of Eq. 2. Subtracting S from this quantity can be represented as:

RHS of Eq. 2: $(1 + 1/2 + 1/4 + \dots \text{ad infinitum}) - S$, which equals what, exactly?

To determine the unknown value we can use Eq. 1, which shows that S is equal to $(1/2 + 1/4 + 1/8 + \dots \text{ad infinitum})$. Therefore, the right-hand side of Eq. 2 can be written as follows:

RHS of Eq. 2: $(1 + S) - S$, which equals 1.

Equation 2 can therefore be rewritten as:

$$S = 1$$

Therefore, despite the initial paradoxical nature of the statement, it can indeed be shown that the sum of an infinite series can converge to a finite solution.

Returning to the topic of immediate interest, i.e., the area under the Normal curve, the statement that the terms of the geometric series never vanish to zero can be reinterpreted in this context as saying that the curves of the Normal curve never intercept the x -axis. Despite this statement, however, an adaptation of the proof just provided shows that the area under the Normal curve is indeed precisely equal to 1.00, or 100%. The visual equivalent of this is that there is indeed a defined area under the Normal curve, bounded by the curve and the x -axis, and the value of this area can be represented as 1.00, or 100%. This can be demonstrated formally using integral calculus. It can also be thought of as analogous to the statement that the probability of all mutually exclusive events must sum to 1.00.

It is of particular interest in Statistics that the means of many large samples taken from a particular population are approximately distributed in this Normal fashion, i.e., they are said to be Normally distributed. This is true even when the population data themselves are not Normally distributed. The mathematical properties of a true Normal distribution allow quantitative statements of the area under the curve between any two points on the x -axis. It was just demonstrated that the total area under the Normal curve is 1, or 100%. It is also of interest to know the proportion of the total area under the curve that lies between two points that are equidistant from the mean. These points are typically represented by multiples of the standard deviation (SD). From the properties of the mathematical equation that

governs the shape of the Normal curve, it can be shown that:

- The central 90% of the area under the curve lies between the mean ± 1.645 SDs
- The central 95% of the area under the curve lies between the mean ± 1.960 SDs
- The central 99% of the area under the curve lies between the mean ± 2.576 SDs

The area under the curve is representative of the number of data points falling within that range. That is, the percentage of the area under the curve translates directly into the percentage of data points falling between the two identified points. Of particular relevance for many research studies is that 95% of the area under the curve lies between the mean ± 1.960 SDs. The value of 1.960 is often rounded up to 2, leading to the statement in many practical examples in textbooks that 95% of the data points fall within the mean ± 2 SDs.

The Z Distribution

The Z distribution is such that the mean and the standard deviation in the immediately preceding statements can be removed, leading to the following statements:

- The central 90% of the area under the curve lies between ± 1.645 .
- The central 95% of the area under the curve lies between ± 1.960 .
- The central 99% of the area under the curve lies between ± 2.576 .

This distribution is used extensively in Statistics, and underpins many more complex statistical procedures (Durham and Turner 2008).

Cross-References

- [Data](#)
- [Hypothesis Testing](#)
- [Median](#)

- [Mode](#)
- [Probability](#)
- [Standard Deviation](#)

References and Further Reading

Durham, T. A., & Turner, J. R. (2008). *Introduction to statistics in pharmaceutical clinical trials*. London: Pharmaceutical Press.

Standardized Tobacco Packaging

- [Plain Tobacco Packaging](#)

State Anxiety

- [Anxiety](#)

Static Exercise

- [Isometric/Isotonic Exercise](#)

Statins

Ken Ohashi
Department of General Internal Medicine,
National Cancer Center Hospital, Chuo-ku,
Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

[HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors](#)

Definition

Statins, also known as HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors, are a class of cholesterol lowering agents that are prescribed worldwide to hyperlipidemic patients who are at high risk for cardiovascular disease. Statins currently on the market include pravastatin, simvastatin, fluvastatin, atorvastatin, rosuvastatin, and pitavastatin. Statins exert their effect through inhibition of 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A (HMG-CoA) reductase, the rate-limiting enzyme of cholesterol biosynthesis in the liver. In many clinical trials, statins have been beneficial both in the primary and secondary prevention of coronary heart disease. Recent clinical and experimental data suggest that the benefit of statins may extend beyond their lipid lowering effects. Those cholesterol-independent or “pleiotropic” effects of statins involve improving endothelial dysfunction, enhancing the stability of atherosclerotic plaques, decreasing oxidative stress and inflammation, and inhibiting the thrombogenesis.

Cross-References

► [Hyperlipidemia](#)

subjects in a research study to infer the likely responses to the same treatment in the general population of patients who would receive the treatment or intervention if it entered general behavioral medicine practice.

The ultimate purpose of the results from a single behavioral medicine study, such as a randomized clinical trial, is not to tell us precisely what happened in that trial, but to gain insight into likely responses to the behavioral treatment or intervention in patients with the disease or condition of clinical concern who would receive the treatment. Inferential statistics allows us to do this.

The treatment effect calculated from the data in the single study is regarded as the treatment effect point estimate. Confidence intervals are then placed around this point estimate. The range of values between the lower limit and the upper limit of the confidence interval represents a range that covers the true but unknown population treatment effect with a specified degree of confidence.

Cross-References

► [Hypothesis Testing](#)
 ► [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)

Statistical Inference

J. Rick Turner
 Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Inferential statistics](#)

Definition

Statistical inference is a process of using the precise data and results from a specific group of

Statistical Inquiry

► [Surveys](#)

Statistics

J. Rick Turner
 Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

For present purposes, the discipline of Statistics (recognized here by the use of an upper case

“S”) can be usefully defined as an integrated discipline that is critically and fundamentally important in all of the following activities associated with clinical research in behavioral medicine:

- Identifying a research question that needs to be answered.
- Deciding upon the design of the study, the methodology that will be employed, and the numerical information (data) that will be collected.
- Presenting the design, methodology, and data to be collected in a study protocol. This study protocol specifies the manner of data collection and addresses all methodological considerations necessary to ensure the collection of optimum quality data for subsequent statistical analysis.
- Identifying the statistical techniques that will be used to describe and analyze the data in a section within the protocol or in an associated statistical analysis plan, which should be written in conjunction with the study protocol.
- Describing and analyzing the data. This includes analyzing the variation in the data to see if there is compelling evidence that the treatment is safe and effective. This process includes evaluation of the statistical significance of the results obtained and, very importantly, their clinical significance.
- Presenting the results of a clinical study to the research and clinical communities in conference talks and posters, and in journal publications.

Cross-References

- [Clinical Decision-Making](#)
- [Hypothesis Testing](#)
- [Statistical Inference](#)

Stem Cells

Keiki Kumano

Department of Cell Therapy and Transplantation Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Definition

Stem cells are found in all multicellular organisms. They are defined by the ability to renew themselves through mitotic cell division (self-renewal) and to generate all the differentiated cell types of the tissue (multipotency). For this definition, one stem cell divides into one father cell that is identical to the original stem cell and another daughter cell that is differentiated.

The mammalian stem cells are divided into two broad types: embryonic stem cells and adult somatic stem cells. Embryonic stem cells are isolated from the inner cell mass of blastocysts, and adult somatic stem cells that are found in adult tissues. In a developing embryo, stem cells can differentiate into all of the specialized embryonic tissues. The stem cells can become any tissue in the body, excluding a placenta. Only the morula's cells are totipotent, able to become all tissues and a placenta.

In adult organisms, stem cells and progenitor cells act as a repair system for the body, replenishing specialized cells, but also maintain the normal turnover of regenerative organs, such as blood, skin, or intestinal tissues. In addition to the definition described above, adult stem cells are thought to be quiescent within the niche, dividing infrequently to generate one stem cell copy and a rapidly cycling cell (transient amplifying cell). Transient amplifying cells undergo a limited number of cell divisions and differentiate into the functional cells of the tissues.

Recently, the third stem cells, artificially established, induced pluripotent stem cells (iPSCs) are generated. Previously, nuclear transfer of embryo into the adult somatic cells is known to be able to reprogram the somatic cells. These are not adult stem cells but rather reprogrammed

cells (e.g., epithelial cells) given pluripotent capabilities. So reprogramming factors are thought to exist in the embryo or embryonic stem cells. Using genetic reprogramming with transcription factors, pluripotent stem cells equivalent to embryonic stem cells have been derived from human adult tissue. Shinya Yamanaka and his colleagues used the transcription factors Oct3/4, Sox2, c-Myc, and Klf4 in their experiments on cells from human faces. Another groups used a different set of factors, Oct4, Sox2, Nanog, and Lin28, and more limited combination of these factors (Oct3/4, Sox2, Klf4 (OSK), OS, only Oct3/4) can reprogram the adult tissue.

Stem cell therapy has the potential to dramatically change the treatment of human disease. A number of adult stem cell therapies already exist, particularly bone marrow transplantation that is used to treat hematological disease (leukemia, lymphoma, etc.). In the future, stem cell therapy will be broadened to treat a wider variety of diseases including cancer, neurological diseases, several inherited diseases, and so on.

Cross-References

- [Genetics](#)
- [Hematopoietic Stem Cell Transplantation](#)

Stepped Care Models

Carly M. Goldstein^{1,2} and Sarah Jones³

¹The Weight Control and Diabetes Research Center, The Miriam Hospital, Providence, RI, USA

²Warren Alpert Medical School, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA

³Skidmore College, Saratoga Springs, NY, USA

Synonyms

[Adaptive interventions](#); [Minimally intensive interventions](#)

Definition

Stepped care models are minimally intensive care models for treating conditions or changing behaviors. Patients are initially typically provided with an easy-to-disseminate, low-cost, minimally intensive intervention. If this does not produce remission of undesirable symptoms or sufficient behavior change, patients are provided with a slightly more intensive and more costly intervention. This continues until patients receive an intervention that produces the desired outcome. Ideally, each patient receives the least resource-intensive yet most effective treatment they need. Stepped care models require repeated assessments to determine if a treatment is effective (and can be stepped down), too burdensome (and should be stepped down), ineffective (and must be stepped up), when another treatment becomes available and more likely to produce better effects (requiring deimplementation of the current treatment and initiation of the new treatment), or inappropriate/unlikely to produce effects (and must be stepped down or discontinued altogether).

Description

Stepped care models involve the systematic process of care for an individual through stages of treatment meant to address the severity of their condition(s). Stepped care models can take many forms at various steps, such as bibliotherapy, computerized services, medications, and in-person treatment (e.g., cognitive behavioral therapy, a medical procedure).

There is a necessity for resource-efficient psychiatric, behavioral, and medical care. Frequently, individuals encounter insufficiently available care options (Jacobi et al. 2017; Carels et al. 2009). Many individuals do not have the financial means, transportation, or time to get the care they need, they do not have access to high-quality care, or the initial care they receive is insufficient to cause meaningful remission of symptoms; rather than pursue adequate care, they discontinue services or experience crisis requiring higher acuity treatment. Such patterns of care utilization are

frequently seen in smoking cessation, psychotherapy for depression or severe mental illness, and weight management.

Stepped care models seek to solve these problems by being a resource-efficient form of care that is accessible, cost-effective, and innovative. Stepped care models have shown clinical and medical benefit for numerous populations and treatment needs. For example, stepped care approaches for weight loss have produced better outcomes or similar weight losses (with lower costs) when compared to standard treatments (Waring et al. 2014). Stepped care approaches have also been found to be effective for the treatment of substance use disorders, including reduced overall drug use (Kidorf et al. 2007).

Stepped care programs may use weekly monitoring and initial assessment data to determine whether a patient needs to step up or down in the stepped care model. Patients may be evaluated for the severity and type of disorder they have, and the patient's preferences are also considered when deciding whether to go into the lowest level of care or higher (Waring et al. 2014; Carels et al. 2009). After treatment initiation, a follow-up assessment of regular symptom monitoring helps the clinician to determine if the original treatment should be transitioned to more intensive treatments, less intensive treatments, or if the treatment should be kept the same, according to how the patient is responding to treatment (Carels et al. 2009).

An example of the stepped model program developed for chronic pain includes pain self-management strategies and cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT). A clinical trial targeted musculoskeletal pain in veterans. In this case, the stepped care model kept participants engaged by including constant contact (biweekly) to check engagement in treatment. Participants were also taught self-management strategies on how to deal with their pain, such as goal setting, positive self-talk, and other relaxation techniques (Bair et al. 2015). Results found that a combination of analgesics, self-management strategies, and CBT effectively reduced the effects of pain on veterans' day-to-day lives (Bair et al. 2015).

The stepped care model has also been effective for weight management. In one program using

motivation interviewing (MI), a therapeutic technique used to increase motivation for changes in behavior (Carels et al. 2007), participants met for 45–60 min weekly for MI until they reached their weight loss goal. Participants who were in the stepped care condition lost significantly more weight in comparison to non-stepped care participants. Participants in the stepped care condition also self-reported increased physical activity (Carels et al. 2007). In the context of weight management, the stepped care model may be useful in increasing participation and motivation in weight loss programs.

Stepped care models can be incredibly impactful if adopted. The affordability, accessibility, effectiveness, resource efficiency, and immediacy of care of this model could lead to higher rates of individuals in need receiving treatment without undue stress on the healthcare system.

Cross-References

- Agile Science
- Health Care System
- Multilevel Intervention
- Patient-Centered Care

References and Further Readings

- Bair, M. J., Ang, D., Wu, J., Outcault, D. S., Sargent, C., Kempf, C., Froman, A., Schmid, A., Damush, T., Yu, Z., Davis, W. L., & Kroenke, K. (2015). Evaluation of stepped care for chronic pain (ESCAPE) in veterans of the Iraq and Afghanistan conflicts: A randomized clinical trial. *JAMA Internal Medicine*, 175(5), 682–689. <https://doi.org/10.1001/jamainternmed.2015.97>.
- Carels, R. A., Darby, L., Cacciapaglia, H. M., Konrad, K., Coit, C., Harper, J., Kaplar, E. M., Young, K., Baylen, A. C., & Versland, A. (2007). Using motivational interviewing as a supplement to obesity treatment: A stepped-care approach. *Health Psychology*, 26(3), 369–374. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0278-6133.26.3.369>.
- Carels, R. A., Wott, C. B., Young, K. M., Gumble, A., Darby, L. A., Oehlhof, M. W., Harper, J., & Koball, A. (2009). Successful weight loss with self-help: A stepped-care approach. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 32(6), 503–509. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10865-009-9221-8>.
- Jacobi, C., Beintner, I., Fittig, E., Trockel, M., Braks, K., Schade-Brittinger, C., & Dempfle, A. (2017). Web-based

aftercare for women with bulimia nervosa following inpatient treatment: Randomized controlled efficacy trial. *Journal of Medical Internet Research*, 19(9). <https://doi.org/10.2196/jmir.7668>.

Kidorf, M., Neufeld, K., King, V. L., Clark, M., & Brooner, R. K. (2007). A stepped care approach for reducing cannabis use in opioid-dependent outpatients. *Journal of Substance Abuse Treatment*, 32(4), 341–347. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jsat.2006.09.005>.

Waring, M. E., Schneider, K. L., Appelhans, B. M., Busch, A. M., Whited, M. C., Rodrigues, S., Lemon, S. C., & Pagoto, S. L. (2014). Early-treatment weight loss predicts 6-month weight loss in women with obesity and depression: Implications for stepped care. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 76(5), 394–399. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jpsychores.2014.03.004>.

Steptoe, Andrew (1951–)

Mika Kivimäki

Epidemiology and Public Health, University College London, London, UK

Biographical Information



Andrew Steptoe was born in London on April 24, 1951. He is British Heart Foundation Professor of Psychology at University College London, UK, where he is also the Director of the Division of Population Health, a grouping of academic departments including Epidemiology and Public Health, Primary Care and Population Health, Infection and Population Health, and the Medical Research Council Clinical Trials Unit. Steptoe graduated in Natural Sciences from Cambridge in 1972 and completed his Doctorate at Oxford University in 1976. He was appointed lecturer in psychology at St. George's Hospital Medical School in 1977, becoming professor and chair of

the Department in 1988. He moved to his present research chair at University College London in 2000, where he is the Director of the Psychobiology Group. Steptoe is also the Director of the English Longitudinal Study of Ageing, a population cohort of older men and women in England.

Major Accomplishments

Steptoe was one of the small group of behavioral medicine specialists, who developed the International Society of Behavioral Medicine (ISBM) in the 1980s. He served as the third President of the ISBM from 1994 to 1996. Additionally, he was the former President of the Society for Psychosomatic Research in the UK. He was the cofounding editor of the *British Journal of Health Psychology* along with Jane Wardle and has served as an associate editor of *Psychophysiology*, the *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, the *British Journal of Clinical Psychology*, and the *Journal of Psychosomatic Research* and is on the editorial boards of six other journals.

Steptoe is the author of more than 550 journal articles and papers, and author or editor of 17 books, most recently the *Handbook of Behavioral Medicine* (Steptoe 2010) and *Stress and Cardiovascular Disease* (Hjemdahl et al. 2012). His research has addressed many topics in behavioral medicine, including stress and health, socioeconomic status, the determinants of health behavior, health behavior change, cardiovascular disease, respiratory disorders, aging, and positive well-being. His collaborative research with Professor Marmot has focused on understanding the biological processes through which lower socioeconomic status and psychosocial risk factors influence cardiovascular disease risk. This work has involved laboratory studies of the influence of psychosocial factors on cardiovascular, neuroendocrine, and immune function, and naturalistic studies of blood pressure, cortisol, and other biological measures.

Steptoe has advanced our understanding of the psychobiology of health and diseases and the multiple associations between affect and biology in everyday life. He and his team found that people from lower socioeconomic groups

tend to suffer the biological effects of stress for longer than more affluent people. This is a potential pathway linking low socioeconomic status with increased risk for coronary heart disease. Further studies by Steptoe's group showed that in some patients, intense episodes of anger and stress occurred in the hours immediately before the onset of chest pain. In experiment settings, episodes of mental stress, similar to those encountered in everyday life, were found to cause transient (up to 4 h) endothelial dysfunction in healthy young individuals. These studies have been important in demonstrating the role of emotional factors in the triggering of coronary ischemia and acute coronary syndromes. Steptoe is also one of the leading scientists on the protective effects of positive affect in physical health.

Steptoe has received many honors for his work. He is a Fellow of the Society of Behavioral Medicine and the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research in the USA, the Academy of Medical Sciences, the Academy of Learned Societies for the Social Sciences, and the British Psychological Society.

Cross-References

- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- [Psychological Stress](#)
- [Socioeconomic Status \(SES\)](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Further Reading

- Hjemdahl, P., Rosengren, A., & Steptoe, A. (Eds.). (2012). *Stress and cardiovascular disease*. London: Springer.
- Kunz-Ebrecht, S. R., Kirschbaum, C., Marmot, M., & Steptoe, A. (2004). Differences in cortisol awakening response on work days and weekends in women and men from the Whitehall II cohort. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 29, 516–528.
- Steptoe, A. (Ed.). (2006). *Depression and physical illness*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Steptoe, A. (Ed.). (2010). *Handbook of behavioral medicine*. New York: Springer.
- Steptoe, A., & Appels, A. (Eds.). (1990). *Stress, personal control, and health*. Chichester: Wiley.

- Steptoe, A., & Wardle, J. (Eds.). (1994). *Psychosocial processes and health: A reader*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Steptoe, A., Pollard, T. M., & Wardle, J. (1995). Development of a measure of the motives underlying the selection of food – The food choice questionnaire. *Appetite*, 25, 267–284.
- Steptoe, A., Doherty, S., Rink, E., Kerry, S., Kendrick, T., & Hilton, S. (1999). Behavioural counselling in general practice for the promotion of healthy behaviour among adults at increased risk of coronary heart disease: Randomised trial. *BMJ*, 319, 943–947.
- Steptoe, A., Cropley, M., Griffith, J., & Kirschbaum, C. (2000). Job strain and anger expression predict early morning elevations in salivary cortisol. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 62, 286–292.
- Steptoe, A., Willemsen, G., Owen, N., Flower, L., & Mohamed-Ali, V. (2001). Acute mental stress elicits delayed increases in circulating inflammatory cytokine levels. *Clinical Science*, 101, 185–192.
- Steptoe, A., Wardle, J., & Marmot, M. (2005). Positive affect and health-related neuroendocrine, cardiovascular, and inflammatory processes. *PNAS*, 102, 6508–6512.
- Steptoe, A., Hamer, M., & Chida, Y. (2007). The effects of acute psychological stress on circulating inflammatory factors in humans: A review and meta-analysis. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 21, 901–912.

Stereotypes

- [Stigma](#)

Steroid Hormones

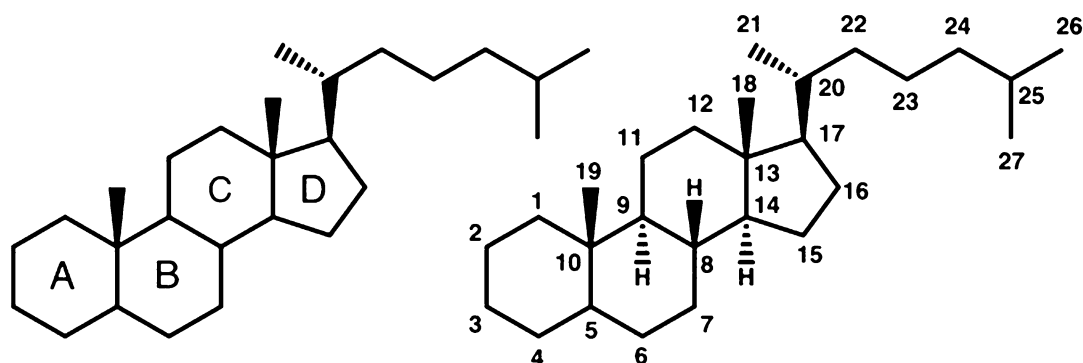
- [Estrogen](#)
- [Steroids](#)

Steroids

Sarah Aldred
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Steroid hormones](#)



Steroids, Fig. 1 Structure and carbon numbering scheme for cholesterol and other steroids

Definition

A steroid or steroid hormone is a biomolecule derived from cholesterol, with a characteristic structure containing four fused rings (see Fig. 1).

Cholesterol is the precursor for five major classes of steroid hormones: progestagens, glucocorticoids, mineralcorticoids, androgens, and estrogens. These hormones are powerful signaling molecules that are released in order to elicit a specific response.

Androgens, such as testosterone, are responsible for the development of male sex characteristics, whereas estrogens are responsible for the development of female sex characteristics. Dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) is the most abundant circulating steroid in humans, and is a precursor for the sex hormones, testosterone and estradiol. In addition, DHEA is a cortisol antagonist.

Glucocorticoids, such as cortisol, promote the formation of glycogen and inhibit the inflammatory response. They enable humans (and animals) to respond to stress.

Steroids act by interaction with cellular receptors that serve as transcription factors to regulate gene expression. Steroids are incredibly potent and elicit very specific responses due to their interaction with steroid receptors.

- [Estrogen](#)
- [Inflammation](#)

References and Further Reading

- Berg, J. M., Tymoczko, J. L., & Stryer, L. (2002). *Biochemistry* (5th ed.). New York: WH Freeman.
- Nussey, S., & Whitehead, S. (2001). *Endocrinology*. Oxford: BIOS Scientific Publishers.

Sterol

- [Cholesterol](#)

Stigma

Valerie Earnshaw¹ and Stephenie Chaudoir²

¹Department of Public Health, Yale University, New Haven, CT, USA

²Department of Psychology, Bradley University, Peoria, IL, USA

Cross-References

- [Androgen](#)
- [Cortisol](#)

Synonyms

[Deviance](#); [Discrimination](#); [Prejudice](#); [Stereotypes](#); [Stigmatization](#)

Definition

A stigma is a personal attribute, mark, or characteristic that is socially devalued and discredited (Goffman 1963). A wide variety of attributes are stigmas, including physical illnesses (e.g., HIV/AIDS, tuberculosis, epilepsy), mental illnesses (e.g., schizophrenia, mental disability), social norm violations (e.g., homosexuality, sex work, drug use, obesity), and certain demographic characteristics (e.g., racial/ethnic background, gender, socioeconomic status). People who possess a stigma are perceived and treated negatively by others and ultimately suffer worse physical, psychological, and behavioral outcomes than people who do not possess a stigma.

The following sections describe how certain attributes become socially devalued, how stigma impacts individuals who possess a stigma (i.e., stigmatized people) and who do not possess a stigma (i.e., nonstigmatized people) via a series of stigma mechanisms, and other considerations relevant to stigma. Because HIV/AIDS is one of the strongest stigmas throughout the world and has received a great deal of empirical attention related to stigma (e.g., Aggleton and Parker 2002), it used as the primary example of stigma throughout these sections.

The Social Construction of Stigma

Stigmas are socially constructed (Crocker et al. 1998). In other words, certain attributes become devalued as the result of a social process (Link and Phelan 2001) rather than as the result of innate differences between people who possess the attribute and people who do not possess the attribute. This social process involves stereotyping by associating the attribute with negative characteristics. For example, people living with HIV/AIDS (PLWHA) may be stereotyped to be promiscuous. The social process also involves separating the people who have the attribute into out-group categories. HIV-negative people may view other HIV-negative as part of their social group (i.e., part of “us”) but PLWHA as part of a different social group (i.e., part of “them”). Finally, the social process involves experiences of status loss and discrimination

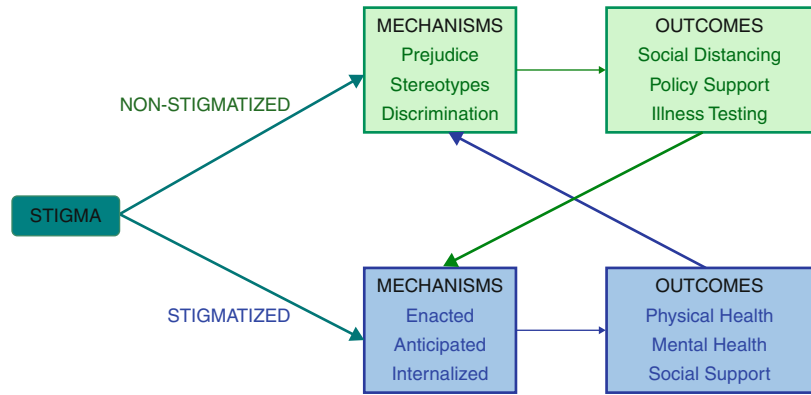
by people who have the attribute. PLWHA may not be given medical care because of their HIV-status. Importantly, the social process that results in stigma relies on power. Nonstigmatized people have more power than stigmatized people and use this power to produce and reproduce social inequities and inequalities. This happens in both subtle ways (e.g., stigmatized people being paid systematically less than nonstigmatized people) and blatant ways (e.g., stigmatized people being enslaved by nonstigmatized people).

Because stigma results from a social process, the extent to which an attribute is devalued varies across different social contexts. Social contexts include both individual relationships and cultural contexts. For example, individual people (e.g., friends, family members, employers, and health-care providers) vary in the degree to which they view HIV/AIDS as a devalued attribute. Similarly, HIV/AIDS may be more devalued in some socio-cultural contexts (e.g., Asian cities) than others (e.g., North American cities; Rao et al. 2008). The extent to which an attribute is devalued also varies across time. For example, devaluation associated with HIV/AIDS decreased during the 1990s within the United States (Herek et al. 2002). Taken together, the degree of devaluation associated with a stigma is not universal or fixed; instead, it changes relative to specific social contexts and time periods.

Stigma Mechanisms and Outcomes

Individuals are impacted by stigma via a series of stigma mechanisms. Stigma mechanisms refer to the ways in which people react to either possessing or not possessing a particular stigma (Earnshaw and Chaudoir 2009). Stigma mechanisms, in turn, result in physical, psychological, and behavioral outcomes for both stigmatized and nonstigmatized people. Figure 1 is adapted from the HIV Stigma Framework (Earnshaw and Chaudoir 2009) and shows how stigma leads to stigma mechanisms, which in turn lead to outcomes. Because they represent the link between the social process of stigma and outcomes associated with stigma, stigma mechanisms are often measured by researchers.

Stigma, Fig. 1 Stigma framework



Individuals who do not possess the stigma experience the stigma mechanisms of prejudice, stereotyping, and discrimination. Prejudice refers to negative emotions and feelings toward people who possess the stigma. For example, HIV-negative people may feel disgust toward PLWHA. Stereotypes refer to group-based beliefs about people who possess the stigma. HIV-negative people may believe that PLWHA are mostly gay men. Finally, discrimination refers to behavioral expressions of prejudice directed toward people who possess the stigma. HIV-negative people might refuse to hire, medically treat, or give housing to PLWHA. Although people who do not possess the stigma have more power than people who possess the stigma, people who do not possess the stigma may still suffer negative consequences due to stigma mechanisms. For example, an HIV-negative person who endorses the stereotype that PLWHA are mostly gay men may be less likely to engage in safe sex, be tested for HIV, or seek health care for HIV-related symptoms if they do not identify as a gay man. Consequently, belief in stereotypes can put HIV-negative people at risk for contracting HIV and not receiving treatment.

Individuals who possess the stigma experience the stigma mechanisms of anticipated stigma, enacted stigma, and internalized stigma. Enacted stigma, also called experienced stigma, refers to experiences of prejudice, stereotyping, and/or discrimination. For example, PLWHA may

experience social rejection from friends and family members. Anticipated stigma refers to expectations of prejudice, stereotyping, and/or discrimination. PLWHA may expect that they will not be hired by a potential employer. Finally, internalized stigma refers to the endorsement of prejudice and stereotypes associated with one's stigma and applying them to the self. PLWHA may feel that they are dirty due to their HIV status. Further, stigma mechanisms experienced by individuals who do not possess the stigma may impact the outcomes of individuals who do possess the stigma. Discrimination perpetuated by HIV-negative people may be experienced as enacted stigma by PLWHA.

Stigma mechanisms profoundly impact the physical, psychological, and behavioral outcomes of stigmatized individuals. Meta-analytic evidence has shown that stigma mechanisms are associated with decreased physical health (e.g., increased physical illnesses and illness symptoms; Pascoe and Smart Richman 2009) and mental health (e.g., increased depression and decreased self-esteem; Mak et al. 2007). Additionally, stigma mechanisms are associated with maladaptive behaviors which may further undermine the health of stigmatized individuals. For example, stigma mechanisms are related to behaviors such as delayed HIV treatment initiation and non-adherence to medication regimens (Chesney and Smith 1999). Stigma mechanisms are further related to decreased likelihood of disclosure among individuals living with concealable

stigmatized identities including HIV/AIDS (Smith et al. 2008).

Other Considerations

Intersectional stigma and layered stigma refer to the possession of multiple stigmas. For example, a gay man living with HIV possesses two stigmas: homosexuality and HIV. Possessing multiple stigmas may exacerbate the impact of stigma on individuals.

Associative stigma, courtesy stigma, and affiliate stigma refer to being connected to someone who possesses a stigma. For example, an HIV-negative man who has a daughter living with HIV/AIDS may experience associative stigma due to his connection to his daughter. People who possess an associative stigma may experience negative outcomes via stigma mechanisms typically reserved for people who possess a stigma.

Concealable stigmas refer to devalued attributes that cannot be seen by others. Examples of concealable stigmas include many physical and mental illnesses and some social norm violations such as homosexuality and drug use. In contrast, visible stigmas refer to devalued attributes that can be seen by others. Examples of visible stigmas include many demographic characteristics such as racial/ethnic background and gender. Whereas people with concealable stigmas can hide their stigma from others in some social interactions, people with visible stigmas cannot.

Cross-References

- [Discrimination and Health](#)
- [Health Disparities](#)

References and Readings

Aggleton, P., & Parker, R. (2002). *A conceptual framework and basis for action: HIV/AIDS stigma and discrimination*. Geneva: Joint United Nations Programme on HIV/AIDS.

Allport, G. W. (1954). *The nature of prejudice*. Oxford, UK: Addison-Wesley.

Brewer, M. B., & Brown, R. J. (1998). Intergroup relations. In D. T. Gilbert, S. T. Fiske, & G. Lindzey (Eds.), *The handbook of social psychology* (4th ed., pp. 554–593). Boston: McGraw-Hill.

Chesney, M. A., & Smith, A. W. (1999). Critical delays in HIV testing and care: The potential role of stigma. *The American Behavioral Scientist*, 47, 1162–1174. <https://doi.org/10.1177/00027649921954822>.

Crocker, J., Major, B., & Steele, C. (1998). Social stigma. In D. T. Gilbert, S. T. Fiske, & G. Lindzey (Eds.), *The handbook of social psychology* (Vol. 2, 4th ed., pp. 504–553). Boston: McGraw-Hill/Distributed exclusively by Oxford University Press.

Earnshaw, V. A., & Chaudoir, S. R. (2009). From conceptualizing to measuring HIV stigma: A review of HIV stigma mechanism measures. *AIDS and Behavior*, 13, 1160–1177. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10461-009-9593-3>.

Goffman, E. (1963). *Stigma: Notes on the management of spoiled identity*. New York: Simon & Schuster.

Herek, G. M., Capitano, J. P., & Widaman, K. F. (2002). HIV-related stigma and knowledge in the United States: Prevalence and trends, 1991–1999. *American Journal of Public Health*, 92, 371–377. <https://doi.org/10.2105/ajph.92.3.371>.

Jones, E. E., Farina, A., Hastorf, A. H., Markus, H., Miller, D. T., & Scott, R. A. (1984). *Social stigma: The psychology of marked relationships*. New York: W. H. Freeman and Company.

Link, B. G., & Phelan, J. C. (2001). Conceptualizing stigma. *Annual Review of Sociology*, 27, 363–385. <https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.soc.27.1.363>.

Major, B., & O'Brien, L. T. (2005). The social psychology of stigma. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 56, 393–421. <https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.psych.56.091103.070137>.

Mak, W. W. S., Poon, C. Y. M., Pun, L. Y. K., & Cheung, S. F. (2007). Meta-analysis of stigma and mental health. *Social Science & Medicine*, 65(2), 245–261. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.socscimed.2007.03.015>.

Pascoe, E. A., & Smart Richman, L. (2009). Perceived discrimination and health: A meta-analytic review. *Psychological Bulletin*, 135(4), 531–554. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0016059>. (Supplemental).

Rao, D., Angell, B., Chow, L., & Corrigan, P. (2008). Stigma in the workplace: Employer attitudes about people with HIV in Beijing, Hong Kong, and Chicago. *Social Science & Medicine*, 67, 1541–1549. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.socscimed.2008.07.024>.

Smith, R., Rossetto, K., & Peterson, B. L. (2008). A meta-analysis of disclosure of one's HIV-positive status, stigma and social support. *AIDS Care*, 20(10), 1266–1275. <https://doi.org/10.1080/09540120801926977>.

Stigmatization

- [Stigma](#)

Stop Smoking

- [Smoking Cessation](#)
-

Strain

- [Psychological Stress](#)
-

Stranger Anxiety

- [Anxiety](#)
-

Strength Model of Self-Control

- [Self-Regulatory Capacity](#)
-

Stress

Kristen Salomon
Department of Psychology, University of South
Florida College of Arts and Sciences, Tampa,
FL, USA

behavioral efforts to manage the event and its outcomes (Lazarus and Folkman 1984). The stimuli or events that cause stress are referred to as stressors (Mason 1975). Stress often results in psychological distress and efforts to cope with the event. Physiological stress responses are often in support of efforts to manage the stressful event and protect the organism from harm (McEwen and Seeman 1999). Stress may not be a uniformly negative experience, as stressful events may also include the potential for benefit and growth (Lazarus & Folkman). Early views of stress focused on physical stress – events that perturb the resting homeostasis of the body, such as changes in temperature or physical injury (McEwen and Seeman 1999). Current views of stress focus heavily on social and psychological sources, with appraisals of the event and the perceived coping resources as key features. Stress may be categorized by its severity, its time course (acute, repeated, or chronic), and degree of control over the stressor. Distinctions also have been made between active coping stressors and passive coping stressors (Obrist 1981). Active coping stressors require overt behavioral action, such as giving a speech or performing a reaction time task, whereas passive coping stressors require that the individual endure without behavioral action, such as watching gruesome photos. Psychological and physiological stress responses have been shown to differ based upon these dimensions (Tomaka et al. 1993).

Synonyms

[Anxiety](#); [Distress](#); [Mental stress](#); [Pressure](#); [Psychological stress](#)

Definition

Stress is a transactional process occurring when an event is perceived as relevant to an individual's well-being, has the potential for harm or loss, and requires psychological, physiological, and/or

Cross-References

- [Coping](#)
- [Family Stress](#)
- [Life Events](#)
- [Perceived Stress](#)
- [Perceptions of Stress](#)
- [Physiological Reactivity](#)
- [Psychological Stress](#)
- [Stress Responses](#)
- [Stress, Emotional](#)
- [Trier Social Stress Test](#)

References and Readings

- Cohen, S., Kessler, R. C., & Gordon, L. U. (1995). *Measuring stress: A guide for health and social scientists*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Hobfoll, S. E. (1989). Conservation of resources: A new attempt at conceptualizing stress. *American Psychologist*, 44, 513–524.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Mason, J. W. (1975). A historical view of the stress field (Parts I and II). *Journal of Human Stress*, 1, 6–12 & 22–36.
- McEwen, B. S., & Seeman, T. (1999). Protective and damaging effects of mediators of stress. Elaborating and testing the concepts of allostasis and allostatic load. *Annals of the NY Academy of Science*, 896, 30–47.
- Obrist, P. A. (1981). *Cardiovascular psychophysiology: A perspective*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Selye, H. (1956). *The stress of life*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Tomaka, J., Blascovich, J., Kelsey, R. M., & Leitten, C. L. (1993). Subjective, physiological, and behavioral effects of threat and challenge appraisals. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 65, 248–260.

Stress and Occupational Health

- [Psychosocial Work Environment](#)

Stress Appraisals

- [Perceptions of Stress](#)

Stress Cascade

- [Neuroendocrine Activation](#)

Stress Diathesis Models

- [Stress Vulnerability Models](#)

Stress Disorder

- [Anxiety Disorder](#)

Stress Management

Catherine Benedict

Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Coping with stress](#); [Relaxation techniques](#); [Stress reduction](#)

Definition

Stress management techniques and interventions can be broadly categorized into skills that are provided via education, relaxation training, psychosocial interventions, and group formats, alone or in combination, that aim to reduce the stress response by targeting coping strategies and relaxation skills.

Description

The deleterious effects of stress on health and well-being are well documented and have led to the incorporation of stress management techniques into many psychosocial treatment protocols, alone or in combination with medical treatments. Chronic stress has been linked to physiologic changes such as neuroendocrine and immune dysregulation, and worsened disease profiles. One of the most prominent associations between stress and poor health has been in the area of cardiovascular risk. For example, evidence suggests that chronic stress is associated with increased sympathetic cardiovascular activity and damage to endothelial functioning,

which increases the risk of several cardiovascular conditions, such as arterial hypertension, coronary artery disease, and arrhythmias. Therefore, incorporation of stress management into clinical and research protocols designed to improve health and well-being has become increasingly popular.

The field of stress management is comprised of a variety of methods and techniques. Relaxation skills training methods with the most empirical support include progressive relaxation or progressive muscle relaxation, autogenic training, biofeedback, mental imagery, and other Eastern or Westernized meditation methods. Various cognitive techniques and in some cases, pharmacotherapy, are also part of stress management programs. Other methods that have been incorporated into stress management include listening to relaxing music, massage, aerobic exercise, diaphragmatic breathing, and postural relaxation methods. Some evidence suggests that “active” stress management techniques (e.g., breathing-guided relaxation training) may be more effective in reducing stress symptoms and inducing improved autonomic cardiovascular regulation than “passive” techniques (e.g., massage). Several standardized stress management interventions have been developed and shown to be efficacious in reducing symptoms of stress and improving various indicators of physical and mental health and quality of life. Empirical evidence supports the use of stress management techniques in the treatment of migraines, pain, and other somatic complaints, and have also been used to reduce stress symptoms, improve adjustment, well-being, and quality of life in a range of patient populations, including those diagnosed with type 2 diabetes, coronary heart disease, fibromyalgia, chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS), human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), and cancer.

Stress management intervention strategies range from single session psychosocial treatments to multifaceted treatments involving psychosocial and behavioral modification components. Likewise, intervention aims and target outcomes also range from behavior and lifestyle changes (e.g., diet, exercise, and

utilization of stress management techniques) to changes in psychological and physical well-being (e.g., relief of depressive or anxious symptoms, cortisol regulation). It is hypothesized that if one can manage stress effectively, an individual’s ability to adopt lifestyle changes that positively impact health outcomes will be maximized. Conversely, chronic stress has been associated with negative lifestyle factors including poor diet, sedentary lifestyle, alcohol and substance use, and poor adherence to medical regimens. Therefore, many stress management programs include medical endpoints such as disease risk factors, disease morbidity, and mortality. For example, stress management interventions in coronary heart disease may include known risk factors as relevant endpoints, such as being overweight or obese, smoking status, blood pressure, cholesterol, lipids, cardiac ischemia (e.g., angina), and number of cardiac events and/or procedures (e.g., myocardial infarction, angioplasty). Endpoints may be measured at proximal, intermediate, or distance time points, depending on the outcome of interest.

Cultural factors have also been shown to be associated with stress and stress management. Although all cultures experience stress and its sequelae, psychosocial sources of stress, the expression of stress symptoms, and the use and acceptability of stress management techniques varies across cultures. For example, evidence suggests that Hispanics are more likely to experience somatic symptoms in response to stress, compared to non-Hispanic Whites. Cultural differences in stress symptoms will likely lead to varying intervention and treatment approaches. Individuals who present with emotional symptoms of stress without a somatic component, for example, receive more treatment in the United States compared to South Korea, a collectivist culture in which individuals are less likely to express signs of emotional distress directly. However, there is no cross-cultural difference between the United States and South Korea in treatment of somatic symptoms of stress, suggesting that treatment methods may be culturally biased.

Stress Management Techniques and Interventions

Many different methods of stress management have been employed with empirical support across a range of populations. Progressive relaxation or progressive muscle relaxation consists of consecutively tensing and relaxing different sets of muscle groups throughout the body, generally starting with the feet and systematically progressing up to the head. Diaphragmatic breathing consists of taking deep breaths in which the diaphragm contracts and the abdomen, rather than the chest, is extended. This type of breathing involves a slow and deep inhalation through the nose, usually to a count of 10, followed by slow and complete exhalation for a similar count; the process is repeated for a preferred number of times to facilitate relaxation. Using mental imagery as a stress management tool involves imagining a scene, place, or event that is considered safe, peaceful, and restful; one that is associated with affective feelings of happiness, job, and contentment. Alternatively, images may involve mental pictures of stress flowing out of the body or being locked away in a padlocked chest. All of the senses are incorporated into the mental imagery exercise and it is encouraged to develop details and complex images that invoke sensual perceptions. The imagined place is used as a retreat from environmental stressors, with the goal of having the body react to imagined scenes of peace and tranquility as if they were real, counteracting the adrenergic effects of stress. These methods have been shown to be beneficial through self-report measures of stress and well-being and physical measures of the body's stress response through biofeedback methods.

Biofeedback is a method that keeps track of the body's physiological responses in real time, generally through machines that measure heart rate, muscle tension, or brain waves. Most often, biofeedback is used as a tool to facilitate control over the stress response sequelae. Individuals are taught to recognize the stress response when it is underway and employ relaxation techniques (e.g., deep breathing, mental imagery, or adaptive cognitive replacement) to calm physiological arousal.

Theory and empirical evidence suggest that the real-time feedback of physiological changes in response to stress and the utilization of stress management techniques facilitate learning and adoption of effective relaxation methods into daily life.

Stress Management Programs

Many stress management interventions for clinical populations consist of a combination of methods that frequently incorporate a variety of cognitive and behavioral techniques. For example, cognitive-behavioral stress management (CBSM) interventions have been employed and been shown to have beneficial effects in stressed nonclinical subjects and a range of patient populations. These interventions typically aim to improve adaptive coping and reduce psychological distress through the use of emotion regulation strategies and relaxation training. Didactic training typically addresses stress appraisal and cognitive coping strategies to improve stress management of general- and disease-specific stressors. Often, a psychoeducational component about the nature and consequences of stress and disease processes is also incorporated into intervention protocols. The CBSM protocol consists of a 10-week manualized group intervention in which groups meet for 2 h per week; sessions consist of 90 min of didactic discussion and exercises and 30 min of relaxation training. During the didactic portion of each session, participants are provided information regarding stress awareness, physical responses to stress, and the appraisal process and are taught a variety of cognitive-behavioral techniques designed to manage general- and disease-specific stress. Cognitive techniques include learning to identify cognitive distortions and cognitive restructuring processes (e.g., rational thought replacement), effective coping strategies (e.g., emotional-focused vs. problem-focused coping), and anger management and assertiveness training (e.g., effective communication). Information related to disease physiology, diagnosis, and treatment are also provided and health maintenance strategies are reviewed.

During the relaxation portion, participants are taught a variety of techniques through group relaxation exercises, including progressive muscle relaxation, guided imagery, meditation, and diaphragmatic breathing. Participants are encouraged to practice the techniques at home on a daily basis. The CBSM intervention has been shown to be effective in increasing stress management skills, which has been related to improvements in a number of quality-of-life domains, in HIV, cancer, and CFS populations.

Similarly, some have demonstrated the efficacy of a group-based stress management program that included progressive muscle relaxation training, didactic training in the use of cognitive and behavioral skills to bring awareness to and reduce physiological symptoms of stress (e.g., guided imagery, deep breathing techniques, thought stopping, and recognition of life stressors), and education on the negative effects of stress on health in improving glycemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes. Participants learned stress management techniques in a group-based intervention format and were instructed to practice muscle relaxation at home twice daily with the aid of an audiotape. Specific instructions were given to encourage “mini-practices” (i.e., brief, 30-s versions of a progressive relaxation session) to facilitate the use of stress management and relaxation techniques into daily life. Although similar interventions have been conducted and shown positive effects on blood glucose, findings have been mixed as several others have failed to show a therapeutic effect of stress management on diabetes control.

Mindfulness-based stress reduction (MBSR) is a clinically standardized meditation program, originally developed as a group-based intervention for chronic pain but has since demonstrated efficacy for patients with a range of mental and physical disorders, as well as healthy subjects. The MBSR protocol consists of three different stress management techniques: body scan, which involves focusing on different parts of the body, bringing attention and awareness to sensations and feelings, breath awareness, and relaxation; sitting meditation, which involves focusing on body sensations and breathe, as well as

nonjudgmental awareness of the cognitions and the stream of thoughts and distractions that pass through the mind; and Hatha yoga practice, which consists of breathing exercises, stretching, and postural exercises designed to strengthen and relax the musculoskeletal system. The MBSR program is an 8- to 10-week group intervention in which sessions typically last 2.5 h, with an additional single all-day session per course. Homework of at least 45 min a day, 6 days a week, is also encouraged, which may consist of meditation practice, mindful yoga, and/or incorporating mindfulness into daily life. Groups may be either homogenous or heterogeneous with regard to illnesses or presenting problems of participants. Empirical evidence provides consistent and relatively strong effect sizes regarding the efficacy of MBSR on a number of psychological (e.g., depressive and anxiety symptoms, coping style) and physical (e.g., medical symptoms, sensory pain, physical impairment, and functional quality of life) well-being in clinical and non-clinical populations. Clinical populations have included patients diagnosed with anxiety disorders, depression, chronic pain, fibromyalgia, cancer, and stress related to environmental contexts (e.g., medical school, prison life), as well as relatively healthy individuals interested in improving their ability to cope with normal stressors of daily living.

Stress management interventions for healthy and patient populations are promising. However, findings have been mixed and the literature is limited by measurement and research design problems, insufficient information regarding intervention components and protocol fidelity, clinical relevance of statistically significant effects, and feasibility and dissemination concerns regarding the translation of research protocols into clinical practice. Nevertheless, given the detrimental effects of stress on psychological and physical well-being, further research is needed using large-scale, randomized clinical trials, with sound methodological procedures that include objective markers of health and disease status, in addition to self-report measures of psychosocial well-being and functional indicators of distress.

Cross-References

► Anger Management

References and Readings

- Antoni, M. H., Lechner, S. C., Kazi, A., Wimberly, S. R., Sifre, T., Urcuyo, K. R., Phillips, K., Glück, S., & Carver, C. S. (2006). How stress management improves quality of life after treatment for breast cancer. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 74*(6), 1143–1152.
- Blumenthal, J. A., Sherwood, A., Babyak, M. A., Watkins, L. L., Waugh, R., Georgiades, A., Bacon, S. L., Hayano, J., Coleman, R. E., & Hinderliter, A. (2005). Effects of exercise and stress management training on markers of cardiovascular risk in patients with ischemic heart disease. *Journal of the American Medical Association, 293*(13), 1626–1634.
- Brown, J. L., & Vanable, P. A. (2008). Cognitive-behavioral stress management interventions for personal living with HIV: A review and critique of the literature. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine, 35*, 26–40.
- Chiesa, A., & Serretti, A. (2009). Mindfulness-based stress reduction for stress management in healthy people: A review and meta-analysis. *The Journal of Alternative and Complementary Medicine, 15*(5), 593–600.
- Gaab, J., Blattler, N., Menzi, T., Pabst, B., Stoyer, S., & Ehler, U. (2003). Randomized controlled evaluation of the effects of cognitive-behavioral stress management on cortisol responses to acute stress in healthy subjects. *Psychoneuroendocrinology, 28*, 767–779.
- Lehrer, P. M., Carr, R., Sargunraj, D., & Woolfolk, R. L. (1994). Stress management techniques: Are they all equivalent, or do they have specific effects? *Biofeedback and Self-Regulation, 19*(4), 353–401.
- Lehrer, P. M., Woolfolk, R. L., & Sime, W. E. (Eds.). (2007). *Principles and practice of stress management*. New York: Guildford.
- Lucini, D., Malacarne, M., Solaro, N., Busin, S., & Pagani, M. (2009). Complementary medicine for the management of chronic stress: Superiority of active versus passive techniques. *Journal of Hypertension, 27*, 2421–2428.
- McEwen, B. S. (2007). Physiology and neurobiology of stress and adaptation: Central role of the brain. *Physiological Reviews, 87*, 873–904.
- Smith, J. E., Richardson, J., Hoffman, C., & Pilkington, K. (2005). Mindfulness-based stress reduction as supportive therapy in cancer care: Systematic review. *Journal of Advanced Nursing, 52*(3), 315–327.
- Surwit, R. S., van Tilburg, M. A., Zucker, N., McCaskill, C. C., Parekh, P., Feinglos, M. N., Edwards, C. L., Williams, P., & Lane, J. D. (2002). Stress management improves long-term glycemic control in type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care, 25*(1), 30–34.

Stress Mindset

Jacob J. Keech and Kyra Hamilton
School of Applied Psychology, Menzies Health
Institute Queensland, Griffith University,
Brisbane, QLD, Australia

Synonyms

Beliefs about stress; Implicit theories; Lay beliefs

Definition

Stress mindset refers to a set of beliefs individuals hold about the consequences of experiencing stress. This includes the belief that stress has enhancing consequences (i.e., a stress-is-enhancing mindset) and the contrasting belief that stress has debilitating consequences (i.e., a stress-is-debilitating mindset) for health and vitality, performance and productivity, and learning and growth (Crum et al. 2013). Stress mindset contrasts with transactional stress appraisal (Lazarus & Folkman 1984); in that the former concerns beliefs about the stress response in general which is theorized to apply across situations, whereas the latter is a single response to a stressor in a particular situation.

Description

Mindsets refer to the beliefs about the malleability of personal qualities that serve as a mental lens or framework through which people make predictions about and judge the meaning of life events (Dweck et al. 1995; Yeager & Dweck 2012). Mindsets are otherwise known as implicit theories in the literature. The term “implicit” is ascribed to these beliefs as they tend not to be explicitly articulated (Dweck et al. 1995; Yeager & Dweck 2012). However, it is not clear whether mindsets are truly implicit and operating outside of conscious awareness, consistent with dual-process theories of cognition and behavior.

Crum et al. (2013) applied the mindset concept to stress research, finding that stress mindset influences a range of stress-related outcomes and is distinct from other important variables in the stress process, such as stressor appraisal and amount of stress. Supporting the notion that stress mindset is a distinct variable in the stress process, Kilby and Sherman (2016) found stress mindset exhibited a moderate correlation with challenge appraisal and no significant correlation with threat appraisal following a mathematics stressor task. They also found no significant difference in stress mindset scores before and after the stressor task, suggesting that stress mindset may not be influenced by stressful events. The potential implicit operation of stress mindset was explored by Keech et al. (2018) using an implicit association test (IAT) based on the single-category procedure (Karpinski & Steinman 2006). Despite the reliability of the test being adequate, the test was not related to any of the outcome variables or the explicit measure of stress mindset. Given this was preliminary research, further studies are needed to understand the processes through which stress mindsets operate.

Mean stress mindset scores across a range of observational studies and experimental studies premanipulation indicate that on average people by default tend to endorse a stress-is-debilitating mindset (Crum et al. 2013, 2017; Keech et al. 2018; Kilby & Sherman 2016; Park et al. 2018). Crum et al. (2013) argue that this is due to public health messages being framed around the requirement of reducing stress to prevent negative consequences. Despite these defaults, several studies have demonstrated that stress mindsets are malleable, with mean mindset scores rising to a level that reflects endorsing a stress-is-enhancing mindset following an experimental manipulation (Crum et al. 2013, 2017).

Measuring Stress Mindset

To date, two self-report measures of stress mindset have been published: the Stress Mindset Measure (SMM; Crum et al. 2013) and the Stress Control Mindset Measure (SCMM; Keech et al. 2018). The SMM is an eight-item scale that examines the extent to which an individual holds a

stress-is-enhancing mindset. There is a general and a stressor-specific version. No known studies have been published using the specific version following its initial publication. Crum et al. (2013) describe stress-is-enhancing and stress-is-debilitating mindsets as two ends of a spectrum, and items in the SMM are presented as fixed-enhancing (e.g., “Experiencing stress enhances my performance and productivity”) versus fixed-debilitating (e.g., “Experiencing stress debilitates my performance and productivity”). However, many people have non-enhancing experiences of stress, and stress can be both enhancing and debilitating. Preliminary evidence from experimental research also suggests that presenting a balanced view of stress rather than a positive or negative view of stress alone yields lower heart rates and diastolic blood pressure following a laboratory-induced stressor (Liu et al. 2017). Arguing that the polarized approach to measurement of stress mindset diverges from how the construct was conceptualized by Crum et al. (2013) and from mindset theory more broadly (e.g., Dweck et al. 1995; Job et al. 2015), Keech et al. (2018) developed the 15-item SCMM. The SCMM is framed to assess the extent to which an individual holds the mindset that stress “can be” enhancing (e.g., “Stress can be used to enhance your performance and productivity”).

Associations Between Stress Mindset and Health-Related Outcomes

Several experimental and correlational studies have observed effects of stress mindset on health and wellbeing, physiological, and affective outcomes in response to laboratory stressor tasks and ecological stress experiences over short periods of time. For example, Crum et al. (2017), in an experimental study examining the influence of stress mindset on a range of outcomes in response to a laboratory stressor, found those who were primed with a stress-is-enhancing mindset exhibited greater positive but not negative affect when anticipating and following the induced stressor. Other studies have examined the association between stress mindset and health and wellbeing outcomes in the context of ecological experiences of stress. Park et al. (2018) found

that stress mindset moderated the effect of stressful life events on perceived distress (mediator) and in turn self-control. Keech et al. (2018) found that stress mindset predicted proactive coping behavior under stress, perceived general somatic symptoms, perceived distress, perceived physical health, and, indirectly, psychological wellbeing. Crum et al. (2013) observed a small effect of a stress mindset manipulation on depression and anxiety symptoms from baseline to three days postintervention among company employees.

Two studies have examined the physiological effects of stress mindset when faced with laboratory-induced stressors. Crum et al. (2013) reported that stress mindset moderated the effect of a laboratory-induced stressor on cortisol, yet Crum et al. (2017) found no effect of stress mindset on cortisol in anticipation of, and following, a laboratory-induced stressor. These physiological effects should therefore be interpreted with caution and further research is required to replicate these findings. Crum et al. (2017) also found a quadratic effect of stress mindset on dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate (DHEAS) – a neurosteroid hormone which in reduced levels may increase vulnerability to neurotoxic effects of stress (Maninger et al. 2009) – with those in the enhancing condition experiencing sharper increases and sharper declines in DHEAS prior to and following the laboratory-induced stressor.

Two correlational studies support that stress mindset influences coping responses. Measuring workload anticipation and approach coping daily over five days, Casper et al. (2017) found that employees endorsing a stress-is-enhancing mindset made more approach-coping efforts in anticipation of a high workload. Keech et al. (2018) also found in a cross-sectional study that stress mindset predicted proactive coping behavior under stress.

Providing further evidence to support these notions that beliefs about stress can influence health outcomes, two large national longitudinal studies have found the perception that stress is affecting one's health to be associated with premature death in the United States (Keller et al.

2012) and adverse cardiovascular events in the United Kingdom (Nabi et al. 2013).

How Could Stress Mindset Improve Health?

Keech et al. (2018) proposed a stress beliefs model outlining two mechanisms through which stress mindsets may improve health and wellbeing outcomes. The first of which is that those endorsing more of an enhancing stress mindset would favor more proactive behaviors when coping with stress. The study demonstrated empirically that proactive behavior under stress mediated the influence of stress mindset on psychological wellbeing and perceived stress. Further research is required to evaluate causal links and to examine the role of more emotion-focused coping behaviors under stress in this process.

The second mechanism proposed by Keech et al. (2018) is that those endorsing more of an enhancing stress mindset may interpret the physiological arousal characteristic of the stress response as less adverse than those holding more of a debilitating stress mindset. Keech et al. (2018) provided preliminary empirical support for this process, finding that self-reported perceived general somatic symptoms mediated the effect of stress mindset on psychological wellbeing, perceived stress, and perceived physical health. Further investigation of this process is required. One line of future enquiry is examining whether stress mindsets influence the use of situational cognitive strategies such as arousal reappraisal when under stress (Jamieson et al. 2012).

Conclusion and Future Directions

While preliminary evidence points to positive outcomes being associated with eliciting a stress-is-enhancing mindset prior to the experience of laboratory-induced stressors and ecological stressors over a short period of time, observed effects have been small to medium in magnitude, and it remains unclear whether these mindsets would be activated during the experience of acute and chronic ecological stressors with established links to adverse health outcomes over longer periods of time. Future research should seek to investigate the influence of stress mindset in these contexts to better understand

whether these mindsets can be leveraged to meaningfully reduce the impact of stress on health. Further exploration of the mechanisms through which stress mindsets may influence outcomes is also important for maximizing intervention effects and for determining appropriate applications of these interventions.

Cross-References

- Lay Beliefs
- Perceived Stress
- Perceptions of Stress
- Stress Management
- Stress: Appraisal and Coping

References and Further Reading

- Casper, A., Sonnentag, S., & Tremmel, S. (2017). Mindset matters: The role of employees' stress mindset for day-specific reactions to workload anticipation. *European Journal of Work and Organizational Psychology*, 26(6), 798–810. <https://doi.org/10.1080/1359432X.2017.1374947>.
- Crum, A. J., Salovey, P., & Achor, S. (2013). Rethinking stress: The role of mindsets in determining the stress response. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 104(4), 716–733. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0031201>.
- Crum, A. J., Akinola, M., Martin, A., & Fath, S. (2017). The role of stress mindset in shaping cognitive, emotional, and physiological responses to challenging and threatening stress. *Anxiety, Stress, and Coping*, 30(4), 379–395. <https://doi.org/10.1080/10615806.2016.1275585>.
- Dweck, C. S., Chiu, C., & Hong, Y. (1995). Implicit theories and their role in judgments and reactions: A word from two perspectives. *Psychological Inquiry*, 6(4), 267–285. https://doi.org/10.1207/s15327965pli0604_1.
- Jamieson, J. P., Nock, M. K., & Mendes, W. B. (2012). Mind over matter: Reappraising arousal improves cardiovascular and cognitive responses to stress. *Journal of Experimental Psychology: General*, 141(3), 417–422. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0025719>.
- Job, V., Walton, G. M., Bernecker, K., & Dweck, C. S. (2015). Implicit theories about willpower predict self-regulation and grades in everyday life. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 108(4), 637–647. <https://doi.org/10.1037/pspp0000014>.
- Karpinski, A., & Steinman, R. B. (2006). The single category implicit association test as a measure of implicit social cognition. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 91(1), 16–32. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0022-3514.91.1.16>.
- Keech, J. J., Hagger, M. S., O'Callaghan, F. V., & Hamilton, K. (2018). The influence of university students' stress mindsets on health and performance outcomes. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 52(12), 1046–1059. <https://doi.org/10.1093/abm/kay008>.
- Keller, A., Litzelman, K., Wisk, L. E., Maddox, T., Cheng, E. R., Creswell, P. D., & Witt, W. P. (2012). Does the perception that stress affects health matter? The association with health and mortality. *Health Psychology*, 31(5), 677. <https://doi.org/10.1037/a0026743>.
- Kilby, C. J., & Sherman, K. A. (2016). Delineating the relationship between stress mindset and primary appraisals: Preliminary findings. *SpringerPlus*, 5, 336. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s40064-016-1937-7>.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. New York: Springer Publishing.
- Liu, J. J. W., Vickers K., Reed M., Hadad M. (2017). Reconceptualizing stress: Shifting views on the consequences of stress and its effects on stress reactivity. *PLoS ONE*, 12, e0173188
- Maninger, N., Wolkowitz, O. M., Reus, V. I., Epel, E. S., & Mellon, S. H. (2009). Neurobiological and neuropsychiatric effects of dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) and DHEA sulfate (DHEAS). *Frontiers in Neuroendocrinology*, 30(1), 65–91. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.yfrne.2008.11.002>.
- Nabi, H., Kivimäki, M., Batty, G. D., Shipley, M. J., Britton, A., Brunner, E. J., . . . , & Singh-Manoux, A. (2013). Increased risk of coronary heart disease among individuals reporting adverse impact of stress on their health: The Whitehall II prospective cohort study. *European Heart Journal*, 34(34), 2697–2705. <https://doi.org/10.1093/eurheartj/ehz216>.
- Park, D., Yu, A., Metz, S. E., Tsukayama, E., Crum, A. J., & Duckworth, A. L. (2018). Beliefs about stress attenuate the relation among adverse life events, perceived distress, and self-control. *Child Development*, 89(6), 2059–2069. <https://doi.org/10.1111/cdev.12946>.
- Yeager, D. S., & Dweck, C. S. (2012). Mindsets that promote resilience: When students believe that personal characteristics can be developed. *Educational Psychologist*, 47(4), 302–314. <https://doi.org/10.1080/00461520.2012.722805>

Stress Reactivity

Wolff Schlotz

Institute of Experimental Psychology, University of Regensburg, Regensburg, Germany

Synonyms

Stress responsivity

Definition

Stress reactivity is the capacity or tendency to respond to a stressor. It is a disposition that underlies individual differences in responses to stressors and is assumed to be a vulnerability factor for the development of diseases.

Description

People respond differently when exposed to the same stressor. Such differences can be observed in all four major stress response domains, namely, physiology, behavior, subjective experience, and cognitive function. Within the physiological domain, two response systems are of particular importance: cardiovascular responses (indicated by blood pressure and heart rate), driven by sympathetic nervous system (SNS) activity, and output of the glucocorticoid hormone cortisol from the adrenal cortex, driven by hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis activity. Stress reactivity is assumed to be stable over time, i.e., persons showing high responses at an initial assessment also show high responses when the assessment is repeated at a later time. Stress reactivity can be conceptualized as specific or general. Whereas specific stress reactivity reflects reactivity of a particular response system (e.g., cardiovascular stress reactivity; endocrine stress reactivity; affective stress reactivity), general stress reactivity is indicated by aggregation of responses across domains and/or stressors.

The relevance of stress reactivity for behavioral medicine rests primarily on the assumption that high stress reactivity is assumed to be a vulnerability factor for disease that predicts disease outcome variance independently of well-established risk factors. As early as in the first half of the twentieth century it was proposed that the size of blood pressure responses to placing the hand in cold water (cold pressor test) would indicate the risk of later development of hypertension. More recently, a growing body of evidence from longitudinal studies that used laboratory stress tests support the assumption that cardiovascular stress reactivity is indeed a risk factor for subclinical and clinical cardiovascular disease. This has

been shown for both physiological stressors such as the cold pressor test and psychological stressors such as pressure to perform in a social situation (e.g., public speaking). On the basis of this evidence it has been concluded that cardiovascular stress reactivity is a risk factor for cardiovascular disease in addition to the classic risk factors of family history, obesity, smoking, diabetes mellitus, and hypercholesterolemia. As for endocrine stress reactivity, a few longitudinal studies found evidence for associations between endocrine stress reactivity and increased risk for disease. However, this research area is much less developed than that for cardiovascular stress reactivity, and the evidence is less robust. Finally, it has been suggested that endocrine and affective stress reactivity might be a risk factor for the development of mental disorders such as psychosis, depression, and anxiety disorders. Again, research in this area is still relatively scarce and the evidence mostly relies on cross-sectional studies.

In contrast to specific stress reactivity, the concept of general stress reactivity emphasizes generalizability of responses across response systems and stressors. It is based on the notion that stress responses have a common origin in brain areas that mediate activation of the HPA axis and the SNS, as well as behavioral and subjective-emotional responses. In particular, hippocampus, amygdala, and prefrontal cortex are higher central mediators of subjective-emotional responses. These areas are functionally connected to the hypothalamic and brainstem nuclei which are critical in activating the HPA axis and the SNS. If a stressor is processed in higher brain areas, stress responses are expected to show relatively high covariance. This is to be expected for psychological stressors, but less so for physiological stressors. Thus, dissociations between response systems might reflect individual differences at both levels. In addition, observed physiological stress responses are influenced by peripheral factors such as receptor sensitivity in the periphery or vascular resistance. Although high covariance between response systems would be expected, a number of factors such as different dynamics of the response systems, habituation effects, measurement error, and limited variance due to limited

stressor intensity act at attenuating associations between responses.

Complementary to the notion of general stress reactivity, the concepts of individual response specificity (IRS) and stimulus response specificity (SRS) reflect observations of dissociation between response systems or stressors. The concept of IRS describes individual differences in patterns of responses, for example, one person might respond to stressors with a high blood pressure but low cortisol increase, whereas another person might also show a high cortisol increase. SRS describes such response patterns as related to stressors, for example, it has been proposed that the HPA axis in humans is activated by stressors that include social evaluative threat, but not by cognitive effort without that component. In research, it is often difficult to reliably detect general stress reactivity, IRS or SRS response patterns. Although there is now increasing evidence for the concept of general stress reactivity, associations between responses are usually moderate. Therefore, it is important to note that it is not possible to use the stress response in one domain or system as a general indicator of responses in other domains. Although it has been suggested that such dissociations might present useful information about psychobiological responses systems of an individual that could be valuable for behavioral medicine, to date little is known about the stability and implications of response dissociations.

Stress reactivity can be assessed both in the laboratory and in daily life. The major advantage of laboratory stress tests is the high degree of standardization over the conditions implemented. However, stress responses in the laboratory have limited ecological validity, i.e., do not necessarily reflect stress reactivity in daily life. For that reason, ambulatory assessment methods are increasingly used and present the opportunity to assess real-time stress reactivity in daily life for both research and clinical practice. A number of factors influence stress reactivity, with implications for clinical decisions. For example, it is known that stress reactivity is associated with sex, age, ethnicity, personality factors, preexisting disease, and the presence or absence of chronic stress. Due to such moderating factors there is a wide

range of associations between stress reactivity and disease outcome. Therefore, the predictive value varies across individuals, making it difficult to use stress reactivity scores in clinical practice. Although the reliability of stress reactivity assessments could be increased by assessing aggregated stress responses in a repeated measure/multiple stressors design, few studies have implemented this design due to the high demands on resources. It would be expected that stronger and more consistent association with disease could be observed with such a design. Finally, an important conclusion from the variety of findings on associations between stress response systems is that, as mentioned above, a single assessment of one response system cannot be used as an indicator for stress responses in other systems. The notion of a consistent "gold-standard" indicator of stress reactivity is not supported by the research literature.

As the assessment of physiological stress responses is relatively expensive and fraught with practical problems, clinicians often rely on retrospective self-reports of individual stress experience to assess stress reactivity. However, such subjective measures of stress experience confound individual stress reactivity with frequency of exposure to daily life stress. Recently, a self-report instrument for the assessment of perceived stress reactivity has been developed and evaluated. Although retrospective self-report methods cannot replace real-time measures, they present an opportunity to assess patients' perceptions of their own stress reactivity in daily life when resources to assess real-time responses are lacking or when such self-observations are of primary interest.

Stress reactivity is assumed to be a consequence of the individual genetic makeup and early environmental factors. Quantitative genetic studies using mainly twin designs have concluded that approximately 50% of the variance in stress responses is due to genetic factors. However, there is some variability of estimates between studies, and the amount of heritability seems to change with repeated exposure to the same stressor. Molecular genetic studies have revealed a number of single gene variants that might influence stress responses in different systems, although many of these effects of candidate genes need replication

before valid conclusions can be drawn. In addition to genetic makeup, factors of the environment early in life have been shown to influence stress reactivity. A number of studies suggest that an adverse prenatal environment might exert long-term effects on stress reactivity in the offspring. Similarly, adverse early postnatal environmental factors such as maternal care or abuse have been shown to affect stress reactivity, with consequences for the risk of mental disorder later in life. Animal studies have suggested that such early environmental effects might be mediated by epigenetic changes in specific brain areas.

Despite good evidence for the prediction of cardiovascular disease by cardiovascular stress reactivity, potential pathways and causal chains of effects are unclear. In addition, not all individuals with high cardiovascular stress reactivity later develop cardiovascular disease. This points at another factor implicated in the pathway. It is likely that high stress reactivity leads to disease particularly if a highly stress reactive individual is exposed to chronic stress in daily life (diathesis-stress model). Other areas of discussion are the potential adaptive function of high stress reactivity in an evolutionary context, and the significance of low levels of stress reactivity for the development of diseases and disorders.

Cross-References

- [General Adaptation Syndrome](#)
- [Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Axis](#)
- [Individual Differences](#)
- [Physiological Reactivity](#)
- [Stress](#)
- [Stress Responses](#)
- [Stress Test](#)
- [Stress Vulnerability Models](#)
- [Stressor](#)
- [Sympathetic Nervous System \(SNS\)](#)

References and Readings

Chida, Y., & Steptoe, A. (2010). Greater cardiovascular responses to laboratory mental stress are associated with poor subsequent cardiovascular risk status:

- A meta-analysis of prospective evidence. *Hypertension*, 55(4), 1026–1032.
- Contrada, R. J., & Baum, A. (Eds.). (2010). *The handbook of stress science: Biology, psychology, and health*. New York: Springer.
- Heim, C., & Nemeroff, C. B. (2001). The role of childhood trauma in the neurobiology of mood and anxiety disorders: preclinical and clinical studies. *Biological Psychiatry*, 49(12), 1023–1039.
- Kudielka, B. M., Hellhammer, D. H., & Wust, S. (2009). Why do we respond so differently? Reviewing determinants of human salivary cortisol responses to challenge. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 34(1), 2–18.
- Lovallo, W. R. (2005). *Stress and health: Biological and psychological interactions* (2nd ed.). Thousand Oaks: Sage.
- Manuck, S. B., & McCaffery, J. M. (2010). Genetics of stress: Gene-stress correlation and interaction. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 455–478). New York: Springer.
- Myn-Germeys, I., & van Os, J. (2007). Stress-reactivity in psychosis: Evidence for an affective pathway to psychosis. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 27(4), 409–424.
- Phillips, D. I. (2007). Programming of the stress response: A fundamental mechanism underlying the long-term effects of the fetal environment? *Journal of Internal Medicine*, 261(5), 453–460.
- Schlotz, W., Yim, I. S., Zoccola, P. M., Jansen, L., & Schulz, P. (2011). The perceived stress reactivity scale: Measurement invariance, stability and validity in three countries. *Psychological Assessment*, 23(1), 80–94.
- Treiber, F. A., Kamarck, T., Schneiderman, N., Sheffield, D., Kapuku, G., & Taylor, T. (2003). Cardiovascular reactivity and development of preclinical and clinical disease states. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65(1), 46–62.
- Ulrich-Lai, Y. M., & Herman, J. P. (2009). Neural regulation of endocrine and autonomic stress responses. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 10(6), 397–409.

Stress Reduction

- [Stress Management](#)

Stress Response

- [Immune Responses to Stress](#)
- [Neuroendocrine Activation](#)
- [Psychophysiological Reactivity](#)

Stress Responses

Kristen Salomon

Department of Psychology, University of South
Florida College of Arts and Sciences, Tampa,
FL, USA

Synonyms

[Stress](#); [Stress reactivity](#)

Definition

Stress responses are psychological, physiological, and behavioral responses to an event perceived as relevant to one's well being with some potential for harm or loss and requiring adaptation. Psychological stress responses often include negative emotions, such as anxiety, distress, or anger, although positive emotional states related to feeling challenged and driven may also occur. Cognitive efforts aimed at coping with the stressor, such as planning, distancing, and/or reinterpreting, also occur (Lazarus and Folkman 1984). Physiological stress responses are often those that are in support of coping with or fleeing from the stressor, and protecting the organism from potential harm. These responses include, but are not limited to, changes in heart rate, blood pressure, cortisol, and immune function (Sapolsky 1994). Behavioral stress responses involve actions also aimed at coping with or fleeing from the stressful event, such as actively performing a task or withdrawing effort from a situation perceived as impossible (Lazarus and Folkman 1984).

Cross-References

- [Coping](#)
- [Physiological Reactivity](#)

References and Readings

- Cacioppo, J. T. (1994). Social neuroscience: Autonomic, neuroendocrine, and immune responses to stress. *Psychophysiology*, 31, 113–128.
- Cohen, S., Kessler, R. C., & Gordon, L. U. (1995). *Measuring stress: A guide for health and social scientists*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Sapolsky, R. M. (1994). *Why zebras don't get ulcers*. New York: Holt.

Stress Responsivity

- [Stress Reactivity](#)

Stress Test

Jet J. C. S. Veldhuijzen van Zanten
School of Sport, Exercise and Rehabilitation
Sciences, University of Birmingham,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Mental stress task](#); [Psychological stress task](#);
[Psychological stressor](#)

Definition

Laboratory mental stress tasks are commonly used in behavioral medicine to assess the physiological responses to a standardized stressor in a controlled setting (Turner 1994).

Description

Even though originally it was thought that particularly exaggerated physiological responses to mental stress can be predictive of cardiovascular disease (Obriest 1981), there is now growing evidence that blunted physiological responses can

also be associated with poor health (Carroll et al. 2009). Other evidence is available that not the responses to mental stress itself but the physiological recovery upon completion of the stress task can be related with the poor health outcomes (Larsen and Cristenfeld 2011). There is a large body of research that explores the associations between psychological traits (e.g., competitiveness and hostility) and mental disorders (e.g., depression and anxiety) with the individual differences in physiological responses to mental stress (Lovallo 1997). Participants that have been included in these stress studies comprise of young healthy participants, elderly people, and a wide variety of clinical populations. This section will describe the general setup of a laboratory stress task and the most commonly used mental stress tasks in behavioral medicine. Even though the focus will be on mental stress tasks, it is worth noting that physical tests, such as exercise, tilt test, and cold pressor, are also readily used in laboratory settings.

In order to assess the physiological responses to a mental stress task, it is important to assess the resting physiological state of the participant. To quantify the stress response, a reactivity score is calculated, which is the difference between the physiological activity during the stress task and the activity during the rest period (Turner 1994). A typical stress session starts with a resting period of 15–30 min, during which the participant is relaxed. Relaxation can be facilitated by listening to music, reading magazines, or watching a low-stimulating video. This is followed by an explanation of the stress task with, where appropriate, a brief practice session and the actual stress task. Upon completion of the stress task, a recovery period is started, during which the participant is asked again to relax, similar to the baseline rest period. The duration of the recovery period is depending on the variables that are under investigation. Whereas heart rate is known to return to baseline relatively soon after the end of the stress task, changes in other variables, in particular blood-based measures such as cytokines, will not be seen until 30 min or longer (Steptoe et al. 2007). In general, physiological data collection is conducted throughout each of these periods.

When exploring the effects of individual differences in physiological responses to mental stress, it is crucial that the testing procedures are identical between participants (Turner 1994). The conditions in the laboratory, such as temperature and number of experimenters present, but also time of day, should be kept consistent. Care should also be taken to standardize the instructions of the task, which can be done by having the instructions prerecorded. Finally, adherence of the participants to the pre-session instructions is important. These involve most commonly avoiding strenuous exercise, food, caffeine, and smoking, as well as instructions about the medication which could influence the physiological measurements. The pre-session instructions are dependent on the physiological measures that are under investigation.

Mental Stress Tasks

Public Speaking – The participant is asked to give a speech in front of an audience and/or a video camera, following a brief preparation period. The topic of speech is psychologically stressful such as “pretend that you are falsely accused of shoplifting and that you have to defend yourself to the shop owner” or “describe your personal strengths and weaknesses” or “describe a recent event that caused anger.” The participant will be told that the audience will be critically evaluating the content and delivery of the speech (Van Eck et al. 1996).

Mental Arithmetic – Different varieties are available for mental arithmetic tasks, which include serial subtraction or addition of double-digit numbers or serial addition of single-digit numbers with an element of retention. These tasks, even though not complicated in nature, have been developed to be provocative by adding components of increased time pressure, competition, harassment when a wrong answer is given, and social evaluation (Veldhuijzen van Zanten et al. 2004).

Trier Social Stress Test – This is a combination of mental arithmetic task followed by a public speech, all under conditions of social evaluation.

In addition to the two varieties of mental stress, this task also has a postural component as the speech is conducted while upright (Kirschbaum and Hellhammer 1993).

Computer Games – A variety of computer games have been used to induce stress in participants, which has been mainly conducted in younger participants. These tasks often have a strong component of competition; participants are either directly competing against the experimenter (often in a modified situation to standardize the success rate between participants) or competing against the other participants in the study.

Stroop Color Word Task – The participants are presented with words which describe colors, but the color of the letters is incongruent with the color that the word is written in. For example, the word red is written with yellow ink, and the word yellow is written with red ink. The participant is asked to call out the color of the ink (Stroop 1935).

Mental stress tasks are subject to the effects task novelty and habituation (Turner 1994). For example, even though all of these tasks provoke an increase of heart rate throughout the task, typically, the peak heart rate response is seen at the start of the test. Particularly when a participant is asked to complete the task on different occasions, it is important to maintain the engagement of the participant in each session. It has been shown that the addition of stressful elements such as social evaluation and competition will help to facilitate this. To ensure that the desired levels of stress are obtained, it is common practice to add a measure of self-reported perceptions of the task to each session. These can vary from a simple Likert scale related to perceived stressfulness and difficulty or measures of state stress and anxiety levels both before and after the stress task.

The stress tasks vary in terms of generalizability to real-life settings. Interestingly, an overview of various stress task revealed that public speaking tasks were most consistently effective in inducing myocardial ischemia in patients with coronary heart disease (Strike and Steptoe 2003). It is possible that this is due to the more naturalistic nature of the task than, for example, mental arithmetic or Stroop task. However, care should

be taken when interpreting the effectiveness of a certain task to induce physiological changes between studies, as it is hard to compare the stressfulness of tasks between studies. Ambulatory recording techniques are available for the assessment of physiological measurements in real-life setting. Even though these field studies cannot be standardized between participants, it is worth noting that there is evidence that the laboratory cardiovascular responses to mental stress were predictive of ambulatory physiological assessments (Strike and Steptoe 2003).

Cross-References

- [Cardiovascular Recovery](#)
- [Immune Responses to Stress](#)
- [Mental Stress](#)
- [Psychological Stress](#)
- [Psychophysiologic Reactivity](#)
- [Stressor](#)
- [Trier Social Stress Test](#)

References and Further Reading

- Carroll, D., Lovallo, W. R., & Phillips, A. C. (2009). Are large physiological reactions to acute psychological stress always bad for health? *Social and Personality Psychology Compass*, 3, 725–743.
- Kirschbaum, C., & Hellhammer, D. H. (1993). The ‘Trier Social Stress Test’ – A tool for investigating psychobiological stress responses in a laboratory setting. *Neuropsychobiology*, 28, 76–81.
- Larsen, B. A., & Cristenfeld, N. J. (2011). Cognitive distancing, cognitive restructuring, and cardiovascular recovery from stress. *Biological Psychology*, 86, 143–148.
- Lovallo, W. R. (1997). *Stress & health, biological and psychological interactions*. Thousand Oaks: Sage.
- Obst, P. A. (1981). *Cardiovascular psychophysiology: A perspective*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Steptoe, A., Hamer, M., & Chida, Y. (2007). The effects of acute psychological stress on circulating inflammatory factors in humans: A review and meta-analysis. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 21, 901–912.
- Strike, P. C., & Steptoe, A. (2003). Systematic review of mental stress-induced myocardial ischaemia. *European Heart Journal*, 24, 690–703.
- Stroop, J. (1935). Studies of interference in serial verbal reactions. *Journal of Experimental Psychology*, 18, 643–662.

- Turner, J. R. (1994). *Cardiovascular reactivity and stress*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Van Eck, M. M., Nicolson, N. A., Berkhof, H., & Sulon, J. (1996). Individual differences in cortisol responses to a laboratory speech task and their relationship to responses to stressful daily events. *Biological Psychology*, 43, 69–84.
- Veldhuijzen van Zanten, J. J. C. S., Ring, C., Burns, V. E., Edwards, K. M., Drayson, M., & Carroll, D. (2004). Mental stress-induced hemoconcentration: Sex differences and mechanisms. *Psychophysiology*, 41, 541–551.

Stress Testing

► Exercise Testing

Stress Vulnerability Models

Conny W. E. M. Quaedflieg¹ and Tom Smeets²

¹Faculty of Psychology and Neuroscience, Maastricht University, Maastricht, MD, The Netherlands

²Department of Medical and Clinical Psychology, Tilburg School of Social and Behavioral Sciences, Tilburg University, Tilburg, The Netherlands

Synonyms

Stress diathesis models

Definition

Vulnerability models are used to identify factors that are causally related to symptom development. Stress vulnerability models describe the relation between stress and the development of (psycho) pathology. They propose an association between (1) latent endogenous *vulnerability factors* that interact with stress to increase the adverse impact of stressful conditions, (2) *environmental factors* that influence the onset and course of (psycho) pathology, and (3) *protective factors* that buffer against or mitigate the effects of stress on pathological responses.

Description

The prevalence of stress-related mental disorders encompassing mood and anxiety disorders in Europe is above 20%. This morbidity is associated with high health-care costs, disability, and potential mortality. It is widely acknowledged that there are individual differences in how stressful people judge a particular event to be as well as in their ability to cope with adverse stressful life events. While historically stress was said to play an initiating role in the development of pathology, only a minority of people who experience adverse stressful life events go on to develop pathology. To distinguish people who develop pathology from people who do not (i.e., are resilient), vulnerability processes are suggested that predispose individuals to psychopathology when confronted with severe stressors. In the late 1970s, Zubin and Spring were the first to introduce this idea in the field of behavioral medicine by postulating a vulnerability model for schizophrenia. They suggested that humans inherit a predisposition to mental illness but that an interaction between the genetic vulnerability and biological or psychosocial stressors is necessary to develop the disorder. The relationship between predispositional factors (or diathesis) and development of pathology has been described in four basic stress vulnerability models.

Stress Vulnerability Models

The first and most simple stress vulnerability model, the *dichotomous interactive* model, suggests that when predispositional factors are absent, even severe stress will not result in pathology. Instead, it is only when predispositional factors are present that stress may, depending on the severity of the stress, lead to the expression of pathology. Alternatively, the *quasi-continuous* model suggests varying degrees of predisposition with a continuous effect of predispositional factors on pathology once a threshold has been exceeded. The third, more extensive *threshold* model incorporates a specific individual threshold that is determined by the degree of vulnerability

and the level of experienced stress. Finally, perhaps the most comprehensive model is the *risk-resilience continuum* model that incorporates different levels of severity of pathology by postulating a continuum that ranges from vulnerability to resilience. This model explicitly emphasizes resiliency characteristics that can make people more resistant to the impact of stress. Note that according to this latter model, even highly resilient individuals might still be at risk for developing pathology when experiencing extreme stress, but their individual threshold will be higher and the symptomatology of post-trauma pathology is likely to be less severe. Collectively, these four models are used to describe the relation between predispositional factors and the development of various pathologies.

Vulnerability Factors

In general, stress vulnerability models postulate that a genetic vulnerability interacts with adverse life events or stressors to produce pathology. This gene-environment interaction with regard to stress and the development of pathology has been most extensively investigated in mood disorders such as depression. Gene-environment interaction studies use monozygotic twin, adoption, and family studies as tools to identify predispositional factors in shared and non-shared environments in order to differentiate genetic from environmental influences. In twin studies, a higher prevalence of pathology in monozygotic twins reared in different environments is used to confirm a genetic predisposition, whereas in adoption studies, the effect of the environment (adoptive parents) can be offset against the effect of genes (biological parents). Using these methods the heritability of major depression, for example, has been estimated at around 40%.

At the neurochemical level, the serotonin (5-HT) system has been implicated in depression. 5-HT regulates among other mood, activity, sleep, and appetite. Accumulating evidence indicates that individuals with a serotonergic vulnerability, manifested in a more sensitive brain serotonergic

system, have an increased likelihood of developing mood-related disorders. Specifically, polymorphisms in the 5-HT transporter system (5-HTT) have been associated with stressful life events, a heightened risk for depression, and reactivity to negative emotional stimuli. Individuals carrying two copies of the short variant of the 5-HTT allele (i.e., 5-HTTLPR), a less active gene resulting in fewer 5-HTT transporters, for instance, display an increased sensitivity to the impact of mild stressful life events and an excessive amygdala activity to fearful faces and produce elevated and prolonged levels of cortisol in response to a laboratory stressor compared to individuals with the long variant of the 5-HTT allele. The heritability of the stress hormone response has also been investigated with family studies in relatives of patients with depression using neuroendocrine functioning tests. For example, studies with the dexamethasone suppression test, a drug test used to measure the effectiveness of the negative feedback mechanism of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis at the level of the pituitary, have found an amplified set point of the HPA axis in relatives of depressed patients compared to healthy controls.

Moreover, 5-HT is also involved in the modulation of the HPA axis and its associated regulatory actions in the secretion of cortisol, the major human glucocorticoid stress hormone. Cortisol binds to two corticosteroid receptors in the brain, namely, the mineralocorticoid receptor (MR) and the glucocorticoid receptor (GR). Two mechanisms of cortisol binding are known. First, cortisol can bind to the hormone response element on DNA to influence gene expression (intracellular MR and GR binding properties). Secondly, cortisol can bind to membrane versions of the corticosteroid receptors to influence glutamate transmission and gene expression in the brain. The MR controls the basal HPA activity through inhibition of the HPA axis, facilitating the selection of adaptive behavioral responses and preventing minor adverse stressful life events to disturb homeostasis. In contrast, the GR promotes recovery after stress as well as the storage of information for future events. The balance

between the MR and GR receptors determines the threshold and termination of the HPA axis response to stress. Increased MR expression or functionality has been associated with increased adaptability to cope with stressors. For example, animal studies have demonstrated that increased MR expression contributes to a more adaptive stress response via regulation of the tonic inhibition. Moreover, MRs play a role in memory formation and retrieval during stressful situations, and impaired memory formation alters the appraisal of stressful situations. Likewise, studies have demonstrated that individuals with polymorphisms in the GR gene display higher cortisol responses and inefficient recovery of the HPA axis following standardized laboratory stress tests, thus revealing predisposition factors for stress-related pathology.

Genes can have a direct effect on the development of various brain systems. To illustrate this point, altered gene expression can reduce plasticity in brain circuits regulating mood, anxiety, and aggression, thereby decreasing one's ability to cope with stressful life events. Moreover, genes can bias brain circuits to inefficient information processing which can result in the expression of pathology (e.g., intrusive memories in patients suffering from posttraumatic stress disorder). Genetic polymorphisms are then viewed as vulnerability factors given that they produce an increased sensitivity to the impact of stressful life events. However, it should be kept in mind that replication studies of candidate gene associations in pathology are relatively sparse and that most disorders are polygenetic. Additionally, the net outcome of a stressor is at least in part determined by the individual's personality traits that may be formed by genes, potentially indirectly influencing the selection of environments and thus the risk of exposure to adverse effects.

Lifespan models have examined the relation between early-life stressful events, later stressful life events, and pathology development. Undifferentiated neuronal systems are dependent on early experience during development. It is suggested that early-life stress results in inefficient information processing and sensitization of

brain circuits involved in regulating stress reactivity, which may ultimately render people more vulnerable. Different brain structures have specific developmental trajectories resulting in a variety of pathological response after stress across the lifespan. For example, prenatal stress originating from maternal stress or postnatal environmental stress such as the quality of parental care influences the regulation of the HPA axis. Specifically, different early stress experiences result in either a HPA axis hyper- or hypofunction, due to a different regulation of glucocorticoid receptors in the hippocampus. In turn, altered HPA axis activity shapes the activity in prefrontal areas as well as the connectivity between prefrontal areas and the amygdala, which in turn influences the processing of emotions and stress-coping strategies. However, exposure to a manageable stressor during childhood can also desensitize the stress circuits, producing experience-based resilience in which brain systems tend to become less reactive to future stress. Early-life stress can hence be protective in that it can negate or diminish the negative outcomes or alternatively promote adaptive functioning in the context of adverse stressful life events. Additionally, other psychosocial factors during development like social support, parental care, and affective style have been identified as potentially protective factors that can enhance adaptive coping during or after stress. In a similar vein, brain frontal alpha asymmetry has been suggested to bias individuals' affective style and emotion regulation capacities. Specifically, left frontal activation has been linked to approach behavior and suggested to be an indicator of decreased vulnerability to depression, whereas right frontal activation is viewed as a predispositional factor, lowering the threshold for adverse impact of stressful conditions.

In sum, stress vulnerability models underscore that the nature and intensity of the stressor in combination with genetic vulnerability factors, phenotypic vulnerability factors (personality, neuroendocrine reactivity), and both genetic and phenotypic protective (resilience) factors determine the impact and sequela of adverse stressful life events.

Cross-References

- [Corticosteroids](#)
- [Cortisol](#)
- [Family Stress](#)
- [Family Studies \(Genetics\)](#)
- [Gene-Environment Interaction](#)
- [Glucocorticoids](#)
- [Hypothalamic-Pituitary-Adrenal Axis](#)
- [Individual Differences](#)
- [Quantitative EEG Including the Five Common Bandwidths \(Delta, Theta, Alpha, Sigma, and Beta\)](#)
- [Resilience](#)
- [Stress](#)
- [Stress Reactivity](#)
- [Stress Responses](#)
- [Stress Test](#)
- [Stress, Caregiver](#)
- [Stress, Early Life](#)
- [Stress: Appraisal and Coping](#)
- [Stressor](#)
- [Trier Social Stress Test](#)
- [Twin Studies](#)

References and Further Reading

- Coan, J. A., & Allen, J. J. B. (2003). The state and trait nature of frontal EEG asymmetry in emotion. In K. Hugdahl & R. J. Davidson (Eds.), *The asymmetrical brain* (pp. 565–616). Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press.
- Curtis, W. J., & Cicchetti, D. (2003). Moving research on resilience into the 21st century: Theoretical and methodological considerations in examining the biological contributors to resilience. *Development and Psychopathology*, 15, 773–810.
- DeRijk, R. H., & de Kloet, E. R. (2008). Corticosteroid receptor polymorphisms: Determinants of vulnerability and resilience. *European Journal of Pharmacology*, 583, 303–311.
- Gotlib, I. H., Joormann, J., Minor, K. L., & Hallmayer, J. (2008). HPA axis reactivity: A mechanism underlying the associations among 5-HTTLPR, stress, and depression. *Biological Psychiatry*, 63, 847–851.
- Huizink, A., & De Rooij, S. (2018). Prenatal stress and models explaining risk for psychopathology revisited: Generic vulnerability and divergent pathways. *Development and Psychopathology*, 30(3), 1041–1062. <https://doi.org/10.1017/S0954579418000354>.
- Ingram, R. E., & Luxton, D. D. (2005). Vulnerability-stress models. In B. L. Hankin & J. R. Z. Abela (Eds.), *Development of psychopathology: A vulnerability-stress perspective* (pp. 32–46). Thousand Oaks: Sage.

- Lupien, S. J., McEwen, B. S., Gunnar, M. R., & Heim, C. (2009). Effects of stress throughout the lifespan on the brain, behaviour and cognition. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 10, 434–445.
- Oitzl, M. S., Champagne, D. L., van der Veen, R., & de Kloet, E. R. (2010). Brain development under stress: Hypotheses of glucocorticoid actions revisited. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 34, 853–866.
- Stahl, S. M. (2008). *Stahl's essential psychopharmacology: Neuroscientific basis and practical applications* (3rd ed.). New York: Cambridge University Press.
- ter Heugde, F., De Rijk, R. H., & Vinkers, C. H. (2015). The brain mineralocorticoid receptor and stress resilience. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 52, 92–110.
- Van Praag, H. M., de Kloet, E. R., & van Os, J. (2004). *Stress, the brain and depression*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Zubin, J., & Spring, B. (1977). Vulnerability—a new view of schizophrenia. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, 86, 103–126.

Stress, Caregiver

Youngmee Kim¹ and Kelly M. Shaffer²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Coral Gables, FL, USA

²University of Virginia School of Medicine, Charlottesville, VA, USA

Synonyms

Caregiver burden; Caregiver hassle; Caregiver strain

Definition

The stress of caregivers is defined as a feeling experienced when a person thinks that the demands of caregiving exceed the personal and social resources the individual is able to mobilize (Lazarus and Folkman 1984).

Description

An illness affects not only the quality of life of individuals with the disease but also that of their family members and close friends who care for the

patients. The stress of caregivers is defined as a feeling experienced when a person thinks that the demands of caregiving exceed the personal and social resources the individual is able to mobilize (Lazarus and Folkman 1984). The caregiver role of family members incorporates diverse aspects involved in dealing with an illness of the relative. This role includes providing the patient with cognitive/informational, emotional, financial/legal, daily activity, medical, and spiritual support, as well as facilitating communication with medical professionals and other family members and assisting in the maintenance of social relationships (Kim and Given 2008). All of these aspects can contribute to caregivers' stress when they perceive it difficult to mobilize their personal and social resources to carry out each of the caregiving-related tasks. Therefore, identifying the gaps between resources available for caregiving and the caregiving demands, unmet needs in caregiving, should be the initial step in the development of programs designed to reduce caregivers' stress and enhance their quality of life.

In addition to assessing the diverse aspects of caregivers' stress and unmet needs, understanding how caregivers' stress varies across the illness trajectory is an important concern (Kim et al. 2010). For example, in the early phase of caregivership, caregivers' stress is often associated with providing informational and medical support to the patients. During the remission phase, dealing with uncertainty about the future, fear that the disease may come back, the financial burden of extended treatment needs of the patients, and changes in social relationships are major sources of caregivers' stress. After the death of the patients, spiritual concerns and psychological and physical recovery efforts from caregiving strain are the challenges caregivers face.

Another important aspect of caregivers' stress is their own unmet needs – things that are not directly related to caring for the patient but represent important personal needs to the caregivers. That is, in addition to caring for the individual with an illness, family caregivers likely have responsibilities for self-care and care for other family members that may have to be set aside or ignored in order to carry out the caregiver role.

This complex construct of caregiver stress has been associated with caregivers' demographic characteristics (Kim et al. 2010; Pinquart and Sörensen 2003, 2005). For example, younger caregivers have reported greater stress in providing psychosocial, medical, financial, and daily activity support during the early phase of the illness trajectory. During the remission years after the illness onset, however, younger caregivers have reported greater stress only in daily activity. Gender has been also an important factor (Kim and Loscalzo 2018). Female caregivers have reported greater stress from dealing with psychosocial concerns of the patients, other family members, and themselves. Ethnic minorities tend to report lower levels of psychological stress but greater levels of physical stress from caregiving. Studies have found mixed associations of caregiver stress to other demographic characteristics, such as education, income, and employment status.

Caregivers' poorer mental health has also been related to higher levels of stress from meeting the medical needs of the patients during the early phase of illness, whereas during remission, poorer mental health has been related to financial stress from caregiving. Furthermore, cancer caregivers' increased risk of poor physical health has recently been recognized by a large epidemiological study using Swedish registries (Ji et al. 2012). This study showed that spouses of persons with cancer, compared with unaffected spouses, were more vulnerable to poor cardiovascular health, including risk of coronary heart disease (13% increase) and stroke (26% increase) up to 20 years after their spouse's cancer diagnosis. Perceived level of stress from providing care has been significantly related to the caregivers' quality of life years later (Kim et al. 2015). Caregivers' depressive symptoms have also shown to be the unique predictor of physical health decline over 6 years (Shaffer et al. 2017). Caregivers who reported higher levels of psychosocial stress from caregiving have shown poorer mental health consistently and strongly across different phases of the illness trajectory.

The physical burden of caregiving, documented in objective measures, has also been

considerable. For example, compared with matched non-caregivers, caregivers for a spouse with dementia report more infectious illness episodes, have poorer immune responses to influenza virus and pneumococcal pneumonia vaccines, show slower healing for small standardized wounds, have greater depressive symptoms, and are at greater risk for coronary heart disease (Vitaliano et al. 2003). A recent meta-analysis (2003) concluded that compared with demographically similar non-caregivers, caregivers of dementia patients had a 9% greater risk of health problems, a 23% higher level of stress hormones, and a 15% poorer antibody production. Moreover, caregivers' relative risk for all-cause mortality was 63% higher than non-caregiver controls.

Immune dysregulation has been identified as a key mechanism linking caregiving stress to physical health. Chronically stressed dementia caregivers have numerous immune deficits compared to demographically matched non-caregivers, including lower T-cell proliferation, higher production of immune regulatory cytokines (interleukin-2 [IL-2], C-reactive protein [CRP], tumor necrosis factor-alpha [TNF- α], IL-10, IL-6, D-dimer), decreased antibody and virus-specific T-cell responses to influenza virus vaccination, and a shift from a Th1 to Th2 cytokine response (i.e., an increase in the percentage and total number of IL10+/CD4+ and IL10+/CD8+ cells) (Segerstrom and Miller 2004; Vitaliano et al. 2003). A 6-year longitudinal community study (Kiecolt-Glaser et al. 2003) documented that caregivers' average rate of increase in IL-6 was about four times as large as that of non-caregivers. The mean annual change in IL-6 among former caregivers did not differ from that of current caregivers, even several years after the death of the spouse. There were no systematic group differences in chronic health problems, medications, or health-relevant behaviors that might otherwise account for changes in caregivers' IL-6 levels during the 6 years of the study period (2003).

Another mechanism linking caregiving stress to poor physical health is lifestyle behaviors. Family members with chronic strain from caring for dementia patients increase health-risk behaviors,

such as smoking and alcohol consumption (Carter 2002). They also get inadequate rest and inadequate exercise and forget to take prescription drugs to manage their own health conditions, resulting in poorer physical health (Beach et al. 2000; Burton et al. 1997).

In summary, caregiver stress is a multi-dimensional construct that varies in nature across the illness trajectory. Certain caregivers by their demographic characteristics can be identified as a vulnerable subgroup to greater caregiving stress. Overall, however, caregiving stress takes a considerable toll on the caregivers' mental and physical health. Such effects deserve further systematic study to understand their psychological, biological, and behavioral pathways.

Cross-References

- [Alzheimer's Disease](#)
- [Cancer Survivorship](#)
- [Caregiver/Caregiving and Stress](#)
- [Daily Stress](#)
- [Dementia](#)
- [Family Stress](#)
- [Family, Caregiver](#)
- [Family, Relationships](#)
- [Quality of Life](#)

References and Readings

- Beach, S. R., Schulz, R., Yee, J. L., & Jackson, S. (2000). Negative and positive health effects of caring for a disabled spouse: Longitudinal findings from the caregiver health effects study. *Psychology and Aging, 15*(2), 259–271.
- Burton, L. C., Newsom, J. T., Schulz, R., Hirsch, C. H., & German, P. S. (1997). Preventive health behaviors among spousal caregivers. *Preventive Medicine, 26*(2), 162–169.
- Carter, P. A. (2002). Caregivers' descriptions of sleep changes and depressive symptoms. *Oncology Nursing Forum, 29*(9), 1277–1283.
- Ji, J., Zöller, B., Sundquist, K., Sundquist, J. (2012). Increased risks of coronary heart disease and stroke among spousal caregivers of cancer patients. *Circulation, 125*, 1742–1747.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., Preacher, K. J., MacCallum, R. C., Atkinson, C., Malarkey, W. B., & Glaser, R. (2003).

Chronic stress and age-related increases in the pro-inflammatory cytokine IL-6. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America*, 100, 9090–9095.

- Kim, Y., & Given, B. A. (2008). Quality of life of family caregivers of cancer survivors across the trajectory of the illness. *Cancer*, 112(Suppl. 11), 2556–2568.
- Kim, Y., & Loscalzo, M. (Eds.). (2018). *Gender in psychoneurology*. New York, NY: Oxford University Press. ISBN 978-0-19-046225-3.
- Kim, Y., Kashy, D. A., Spillers, R. L., & Evans, T. V. (2010). Needs assessment of family caregivers of cancer survivors: Three cohorts comparison. *Psycho-Oncology*, 19, 573–582.
- Kim, Y., Carver, C. S., Shaffer, K. M., Gansler, T., & Cannady, R. S. (2015). Cancer caregiving predicts physical impairments: Roles of earlier caregiving stress and being a spousal caregiver. *Cancer*, 121, 302–310.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Pinquart, M., & Sörensen, S. (2003). Differences between caregivers and noncaregivers in psychological health and physical health: A meta-analysis. *Psychology and Aging*, 18(2), 250–267.
- Pinquart, M., & Sörensen, S. (2005). Ethnic differences in stressors, resources, and psychological outcomes of family caregiving: A meta-analysis. *The Gerontologist*, 45(1), 90–106.
- Segerstrom, S. C., & Miller, G. E. (2004). Psychological stress and the human immune system: A meta-analytic study of 30 years of inquiry. *Psychological Bulletin*, 130, 601–630.
- Shaffer, K. M., Kim, Y., Carver, C. S., & Cannady, R. S. (2017). Depressive symptoms predict cancer caregivers' physical health decline. *Cancer*, 123, 4277–4285.
- Vitaliano, P. P., Zhang, J., & Scanlan, J. M. (2003). Is caregiving hazardous to one's physical health? A meta-analysis. *Psychological Bulletin*, 129, 946–972.

Stress, Early Life

Christine Heim

Institute of Medical Psychology, Charité
University Medicine Berlin, Berlin, Germany

Synonyms

Adversity, early life; Trauma, early life

Definition

In order to define early life stress in humans, two main criteria must be considered: (a) the developmental age range that is subsumed under “early life” and (b) the characteristics of the events that would be considered as “stressful” during early life. There is no such generally agreed upon definition (Heim et al. 2003).

Many investigators use an upper age limit to define the early life criterion, usually between 12 and 18 years. An alternative approach is to define the early life period by developmental stage, using, for example, sexual maturation (such as menarche in girls) as a cutoff criterion.

As for the stress criterion, prevailing models suggest that stress is generally experienced when an individual is confronted with a situation, which is appraised as personally threatening and for which adequate coping resources are unavailable. In addition, threats to physiological homeostasis, such as injury or illness, elicit stress responses. Any such situation occurring within the defined developmental period may be classified as early life stress. The most salient forms of early life stress in humans are abuse (sexual, physical, emotional), neglect (emotional, physical), and parental loss (death, separation). Other forms of early life stress include accidents, physical illness, surgeries, natural disasters, and war or terrorism-related events. Less obvious experiences, which pose significant distress on a child, include unstable families, inadequate parental care, dysfunctional relationships between parent and child, and poverty.

Early life stress is often complex, inasmuch as various forms coexist or are associated among each other. While early life stress may be a single event, it more typically occurs as chronic or ongoing adversity in most cases. Taken together, there remains substantial ambiguity in the definition of early life stress in humans (Heim et al. 2003).

Description

It is well established that early life stress, such as childhood abuse, neglect, or loss, dramatically

increases the risk for developing a wide range of psychiatric disorders as well as certain medical diseases later in life. Among the major psychiatric disorders, depression and anxiety disorders have been most prominently linked to early life stress. Medical disorders, for which early-life stress induces risk, include ischemic heart disease, lung disease, cancer, gastrointestinal disorders, and chronic fatigue and pain syndromes among others. Early life stress has further been linked to a variety of risk behaviors, including smoking, alcohol, or drug abuse, impulsive behavior, promiscuity, teen pregnancy, and suicide (for further reading, see Anda et al. 2006). Many of the above disorders and risk behaviors are elicited or aggravated by acute stress, and individuals with early life stress experiences have decreased thresholds to exhibit symptoms and risk behaviors even upon mild challenge (Hammen et al. 2000).

The precise mechanisms that mediate the detrimental and persistent impact of early adversity on long-term adaptation and health have been the subject of intense inquiry over decades. Advances from neuroscience research have provided compelling insights into the enormous plasticity of the developing brain as a function of experience. For example, visual sensory input early in life is required for normal development of the visual cortex and perception, and disruptive experiences during such critical periods of plasticity can lead to lifelong and sometimes irreversible damage. The same principle may be applied to stress experiences during critical periods early in life that may permanently impact on the development of brain regions implicated in the regulation of emotion and stress responses (for further reading, see Weiss and Wagner 1998). Enduring effects of early life stress on the brain and its regulatory outflow systems, including the autonomic, endocrine, and immune systems, may then lead to the development of a vulnerable phenotype with increased sensitivity to stress and risk for a range of behavioral and somatic disorders (for further reading, see Heim et al. 2004).

Compelling support for this hypothesis comes from a burgeoning literature of studies in animal

models that provide the direct and causal evidence that early adverse experience, such as prolonged maternal separation or naturally occurring low maternal care, leads to structural, functional, and epigenetic changes in a connected network of brain regions that is implicated in neuroendocrine control, autonomic regulation and vigilance, and emotional regulation or fear conditioning. These neural changes converge into lifelong increased physiological and behavioral responses to subsequent stress in animal models (see Heim et al. 2004; Lupien et al. 2009; Meaney 2001). These effects appear to be present across species and in different models of adversity, while the unifying element across studies is timing of the stressor in early life. Particularly intriguing are results from animal studies suggesting that epigenetic changes, stress sensitization, and maternal care behavior are transmitted into the next generation (Francis et al. 1999; Franklin et al. 2010).

Accumulating evidence suggests that these preclinical findings can be translated to humans. For example, adult women with histories of childhood sexual or physical abuse exhibit markedly increased neuroendocrine and autonomic responses to psychosocial laboratory stress, particularly those with depression (Heim et al. 2000). Other alterations in humans with early life stress experiences include glucocorticoid resistance, increased levels of inflammation, increased central corticotropin-releasing hormone activity and decreased activity of the prosocial neuropeptide, oxytocin (Carpenter et al. 2004; Danese et al. 2007; Heim et al. 2008; Heim et al. 2009). A small hippocampus has also been linked to early life stress in humans (Vythilingam et al. 2002). Early adversity has also been found to be associated with epigenetic changes of the glucocorticoid receptor gene in hippocampal tissue obtained by postmortem from suicide victims, leading to reduced glucocorticoid receptor expression and enhanced stress responses (McGowan et al. 2008).

Taken together, these neurobiological and epigenetic changes secondary to early life stress likely reflect risk to develop depression and a

host of other disorders in response to additional challenge. In several studies, these changes were not present in depressed persons without early life stress, suggesting the existence of biologically distinguishable subtypes of depression as a function of early life stress (Heim et al. 2004, 2008). These subtypes of depression were also found to be responsive to differential treatments (Nemeroff et al. 2003). Therefore, consideration of early life stress might be critical to guide treatment decisions.

Several genes moderate the link between childhood trauma and adult risk for depression and other disorders, including the serotonin transporter, corticotropin-releasing hormone receptor 1, FK506 binding protein 5, and oxytocin receptor genes. A more recent idea is that such genetic factors might reflect general sensitivity to the environment, inasmuch as persons who are susceptible to the detrimental effects of trauma might also be particularly amenable to the beneficial effects of a positive social environment or early psychological intervention (Binder et al. 2008; Bradley et al. 2008, 2011; for further reading, see Caspi et al. 2010).

References and Readings

- Anda, R. F., Felitti, V. J., Bremner, J. D., Walker, J. D., Whitfield, C., Perry, B. D., et al. (2006). The enduring effects of abuse and related adverse experiences in childhood. *European Archives of Psychiatry and Clinical Neuroscience*, 256, 174–186.
- Binder, E. B., Bradley, R. G., Liu, W., Epstein, M. P., Deveau, T. C., Mercer, K. B., et al. (2008). Association of FKBP5 polymorphisms and childhood abuse with risk of posttraumatic stress disorder symptoms in adults. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 299, 1291–1305.
- Bradley, R. G., Binder, E. B., Epstein, M. P., Tang, Y., Nair, H. P., Liu, W., et al. (2008). Influence of child abuse on adult depression: Moderation by the corticotropin-releasing hormone receptor gene. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 65, 190–200.
- Bradley, B., Westen, D., Binder, E. B., Jovanovic, T., & Heim, C. (2011). Association between childhood maltreatment and adult emotional dysregulation: Moderation by oxytocin receptor gene. *Development and Psychopathology*, 23(2), 439–452.
- Carpenter, L., Tyrka, A., McDougale, C. J., Malison, R. T., Owens, M. J., Nemeroff, C. B., et al. (2004). CSF corticotropin-releasing factor and perceived early-life stress in depressed patients and healthy control subjects. *Neuropsychopharmacology*, 29, 777–784.
- Caspi, A., Hariri, A. R., Holmes, A., Uher, R., & Moffitt, T. E. (2010). Genetic sensitivity to the environment: The case of the serotonin transporter gene and its implications for studying complex diseases and traits. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 167, 509–527.
- Danese, A., Pariante, C. M., Caspi, A., Taylor, A., & Poulton, R. (2007). Childhood maltreatment predicts adult inflammation in a life-course study. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences United States of America*, 104, 1319–1324.
- Francis, D., Diorio, J., Liu, D., & Meaney, M. J. (1999). Nongenomic transmission across generations of maternal behavior and stress responses in the rat. *Science*, 286, 1155–1158.
- Franklin, T. B., Russig, H., Weiss, I. C., Gräff, J., Linder, N., Michalon, A., et al. (2010). Epigenetic transmission of the impact of early stress across generations. *Biological Psychiatry*, 68, 408–415.
- Hammen, C., Henry, R., & Daley, S. E. (2000). Depression and sensitization to stressors among young women as a function of childhood adversity. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 68, 782–787.
- Heim, C., Newport, D. J., Heit, S., Graham, Y. P., Wilcox, M., Bonsall, R., et al. (2000). Pituitary-adrenal and autonomic responses to stress in women after sexual and physical abuse in childhood. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 284, 592–597.
- Heim, C., Meinlschmidt, G., & Nemeroff, C. B. (2003). Neurobiology of early-life stress and its relationship to PTSD. *Psychiatric Annals*, 33, 1–10.
- Heim, C., Plotsky, P. M., & Nemeroff, C. B. (2004). Importance of studying the contributions of early adverse experience to neurobiological findings in depression. *Neuropsychopharmacology*, 29, 641–648.
- Heim, C., Newport, D. J., Mletzko, T., Miller, A. H., & Nemeroff, C. B. (2008). The link between childhood trauma and depression: Insights from HPA axis studies in humans. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 33, 693–710.
- Heim, C., Young, L. J., Newport, D. J., Mletzko, T., Miller, A. H., & Nemeroff, C. B. (2009). Lower cerebrospinal fluid oxytocin concentrations in women with a history of childhood abuse. *Molecular Psychiatry*, 14, 954–958.
- Lupien, S. J., McEwen, B. S., Gunnar, M. R., & Heim, C. (2009). Effects of stress throughout the lifespan on the brain, behaviour and cognition. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 10, 434–445.
- McGowan, P. O., Sasaki, A., D'Alessio, A. C., Dymov, S., Labonté, B., Szyf, M., et al. (2008). Epigenetic regulation of the glucocorticoid receptor in human brain associates with childhood abuse. *Nature Neuroscience*, 12, 342–348.

- Meaney, M. J. (2001). Maternal care, gene expression, and the transmission of individual differences in stress reactivity across generations. *Annual Reviews in Neuroscience*, 24, 1161–1192.
- Nemeroff, C. B., Heim, C., Thase, M. E., Klein, D. N., Rush, A. J., Schatzberg, A. F., et al. (2003). Differential responses to psychotherapy versus pharmacotherapy in patients with chronic forms of major depression and childhood trauma. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences United States of America*, 100, 14293–14396.
- Vythilingam, M., Heim, C., Newport, J., Miller, A. H., Anderson, E., Bronen, R., et al. (2002). Childhood trauma associated with smaller hippocampal volume in women with major depression. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 159, 2072–2080.
- Weiss, M. J., & Wagner, S. H. (1998). What explains the negative consequences of adverse childhood experiences on adult health? Insights from cognitive and neuroscience research. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 14, 356–360.

Stress, Emotional

Tamar Mendelson
Mental Health, Johns Hopkins Bloomberg School
of Public Health Johns Hopkins University,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

Emotional distress; Mental stress; Psychological stress; Stress

Definition

Emotional stress involves the experience of negative affect, such as anxiety, in the context of a physiological stress response that includes cardiovascular and hormonal changes. Emotional stress commonly occurs when an individual perceives that he or she does not have adequate personal resources to meet situational demands effectively (Lazarus 1966).

Description

Early conceptions of stress characterized its physical properties, with a focus on the disruption of homeostasis in an organism (Selye 1956). The stress concept subsequently evolved to include a greater emphasis on the influence of psychological factors on the stress process. The term “emotional stress” reflects the fact that the stress process in humans involves a substantial affective component.

Emotional stress includes both negative affect, such as anxiety and distress, as well as a cascade of physiological responses associated with the stress-response system. Physiological responses promote “fight or flight” and include activation of the hypothalamic pituitary adrenal (HPA) axis, which stimulates secretion of cortisol, and activation of the sympathetic nervous system, which increases heart rate (Sapolsky 1994). Behavioral responses may include attempts to flee or avoid the stressor or to actively address it.

Emotional stress can be triggered by various stress exposures, including major life events, chronic stressful situations, and daily hassles. Certain objective features of a stressor influence the likelihood that it will produce emotional stress. For instance, emotional stress is more likely to result from stressors that are not within an individual’s control (e.g., a death) and affect central aspects of an individual’s life (Dohrenwend 2000).

Individual differences are also critical components in predicting levels of emotional stress, particularly when the stressor is not extremely traumatic. Thus, the same stressor may produce emotional stress in one individual but not in another. Richard Lazarus and Susan Folkman’s work has established the importance of appraisal processes in generating or buffering against stress (Lazarus and Folkman 1984). Emotional stress results from an appraisal that the situation is threatening and that efforts to address it effectively are not likely to be successful. In contrast, a sense of positive challenge may arise if the situation is not perceived as overly threatening or if the perceiver feels capable of an effective response. Similarly, a number of other factors

can increase risk for, or protect against, emotional stress. These factors include the ability to employ effective coping strategies and the presence of positive social supports (Kessler et al. 1985).

A life course perspective is important for understanding the etiology of vulnerability to emotional stress. Both vulnerability to stress and resilience are likely shaped over the life course by complex interactions of genetic factors, biological mechanisms, and environmental exposures. Emerging research suggests that exposure to stress and adversity during sensitive periods early in the life course (prenatal, early postnatal, childhood) may be especially critical in influencing genetic expression and impacting the developing stress-response system, with long-term effects on vulnerability to emotional stress (Andersen and Teicher 2009; Dudley et al. 2011; Shonkoff et al. 2009).

A key reason for continued interest in the study of emotional stress is its well-documented link with development of both mental and physical disorders. Major depressive disorder and post-traumatic stress disorder are two commonly studied psychiatric sequelae of emotional stress. Emotional stress has also been found to predict cardiovascular disease and other physical health problems (Brotman et al. 2007; Rozanski et al. 1999). Putative mechanisms linking emotional stress with psychiatric and physical disorders include stress-related neurobiological changes (e.g., dysregulation of the HPA axis) and increased cardiovascular reactivity to stress with slow recovery (Chida and Steptoe 2010; Hammen 2005); detailed understanding of these pathways requires more study.

A variety of psychosocial stress management interventions have been developed to reduce emotional stress and prevent its negative effects on health. Such interventions generally aim to enhance positive coping methods, including the use of relaxation techniques, exercise, and cognitive strategies for managing stress. Some stress management interventions have been shown to have positive effects on emotional and physical outcomes (e.g., Blumenthal et al. 2005).

Cross-References

- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- [Coping](#)
- [Depression: Symptoms](#)
- [Relaxation](#)
- [Stress Reactivity](#)
- [Stress Responses](#)
- [Stress Vulnerability Models](#)
- [Stress, Early Life](#)
- [Stress: Appraisal and Coping](#)
- [Stressor](#)
- [Sympathetic Nervous System \(SNS\)](#)

References and Readings

- Andersen, S. L., & Teicher, M. H. (2009). Desperately driven and no brakes: Developmental stress exposure and subsequent risk for substance use. *Neuroscience and Behavioral Reviews*, 33, 516–524.
- Blumenthal, J. A., Sherwood, A., Babyak, M. A., Watkins, L. L., Waugh, R., Georgiades, A., et al. (2005). Effects of exercise and stress management training on markers of cardiovascular risk in patients with ischemic heart disease: A randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 293, 1626–1634.
- Brotman, D. J., Golden, S. H., & Wittstein, I. S. (2007). The cardiovascular toll of stress. *Lancet*, 370, 1089–1100.
- Chida, Y., & Steptoe, A. (2010). Greater cardiovascular responses to laboratory mental stress are associated with poor subsequent cardiovascular risk status: A meta-analysis of prospective evidence. *Hypertension*, 55, 1026–1032.
- Dohrenwend, B. P. (2000). The role of adversity and stress in psychopathology: Some evidence and its implications for theory and research. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 41, 1–19.
- Dudley, K. J., Li, X., Kobor, M. S., Kippin, T. E., & Bredy, T. W. (2011). Epigenetic mechanisms mediating vulnerability and resilience to psychiatric disorders. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 35, 1544–1551.
- Hammen, C. (2005). Stress and depression. *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology*, 1, 293–319.
- Kessler, R. C., Price, R. H., & Wortman, C. B. (1985). Social factors in psychopathology: Stress, coping, and coping processes. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 36, 531–572.
- Lazarus, R. S. (1966). *Psychological stress and the coping process*. New York: McGraw Hill.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Rozanski, A., Blumenthal, J. A., & Kaplan, J. (1999). Impact of psychological factors on the pathogenesis

- of cardiovascular disease and implications for therapy. *Circulation*, 99, 2192–2217.
- Sapolsky, R. M. (1994). *Why zebras don't get ulcers*. New York: Holt.
- Selye, H. (1956). *The stress of life*. New York: Mc-Graw-Hill.
- Shonkoff, J. P., Boyce, W. T., & McEwen, B. S. (2009). Neuroscience, molecular biology, and the childhood roots of health disparities. Building a new framework for health promotion and disease prevention. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 301, 2252–2259.

Stress, Exercise

Rick LaCaille¹ and Marc Taylor²

¹Psychology Department, University of Minnesota Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

²Behavioral Sciences and Epidemiology, Naval Health Research Center, San Diego, CA, USA

Definition

Exercise is a form of physical activity that involves repeated body movements that are both structured and planned with the intention of maintaining or enhancing one's health or physical fitness. Typically, exercise is characterized as either aerobic or anaerobic with the former emphasizing the use of oxygen for sustained movements such as jogging or swimming, whereas the latter emphasizes the use of muscle glycogen supply and metabolism as sources of energy for higher-intensity activities such as strength and resistance training. Moreover, exercise has been defined in terms of being chronic/regular/habitual or as acute/single bout.

Stress represents a response among biopsychosocial systems in an effort to adapt to a challenge. The nature of the challenge has been delineated along several dimensions, including but not limited to its intensity, duration, frequency, quality, and familiarity. The stress response has been measured in naturally occurring situations as well as in laboratory settings and ranged from self-reported questionnaires to physiological

indices of neuroendocrine, heart rate, and blood pressure reactivity.

Description

The health benefits of exercise and physical fitness have been well documented in the literature. In particular, the effects of exercise on reduced morbidity and mortality from cardiovascular disease have received a great deal of attention, in part, due to the association between stress and cardiovascular disease and the potential attenuation of physiological reactivity to stressors. Notably, an acute bout of exercise may also act as a stressor and elicit the same cardiovascular and neuroendocrine responses as psychosocial stressors without the detrimental effects health. As exercise becomes chronic and habitual, the physiological adaptations (e.g., reduced heart rate and blood pressure and increased parasympathetic activity) that occur are thought to yield similar responses and adaptations in the presence of psychosocial stressors. This beneficial adaptation and reduced sensitivity to stress is characterized in the literature as the cross-stressor-adaptation hypothesis. Thus, the effect of exercise on stress response is somewhat paradoxical as it is considered to be both a stressor and a potential modifier of stress. Most investigations of exercise-stress adaptations have relied upon laboratory stressors (e.g., mental arithmetic, public speaking and evaluative scenarios, cold pressor tests, reaction time, Stroop color-word test), cardiorespiratory responses, and cross-sectional designs. Although a number of studies have examined the association between exercise/fitness and psychophysiological stress responses, the findings have been rather mixed even among the reviews and quantitative analyses of the literature.

In an initial meta-analysis of the relationship between aerobic fitness and resistance to stress reactivity by Crews and Landers (1987), the overall effect size across multiple indices was $d = 0.48$ with effects ranging from 0.15 to 0.87. The findings from this review suggested that fitness/exercise training was beneficial in reducing reactivity

to stressors with regards to heart rate $d = (0.39)$, diastolic blood pressure $d = (0.40)$, systolic blood pressure $d = (0.42)$, self-reported stress $d = (0.57)$, skin response $d = (0.67)$, and muscle tension $d = (0.87)$. The review has since been criticized for a number of methodological limitations including confounding reactivity with recovery. Later qualitative reviews reported no beneficial effect for fitness on stress reactivity in terms of heart rate, blood pressure, or catecholamine responses, with the effect on stress recovery determined to be inconclusive (Claytor 1991; De Geus and Van Doornen 1993). More recently, Jackson and Dishman (2006) revealed in a meta-analytic review that fitness was associated with a slight increase in stress reactivity to laboratory psychosocial stressors. Notably, a small effect size was present between cardiorespiratory fitness and stress response recovery, indicating that physically fitter individuals appeared to have an enhanced and quicker recovery following their peak stress response. In contrast to these findings, Forcier et al.'s (2006) meta-analytic review examining the effects of aerobic fitness on stress reactivity and recovery revealed that, despite considerable heterogeneity present in the analyses and no significant moderation effects (e.g., gender, stressor intensity), significant effects for exercise/fitness were found for decreased heart rate and systolic blood pressure reactivity. Additionally, a significant effect was found for fitness and heart rate recovery, though no such effect was present for systolic blood pressure. Thus, the findings from this meta-analysis suggest a beneficial attenuated physiological reactivity and improved recovery from psychosocial stressors as a consequence of fitness/chronic exercise. Although the effects between fitness and reactivity/recovery appeared small in magnitude (e.g., 1.8 bpm heart rate reactivity, 3.7 mmHg systolic blood pressure reactivity), the differences are equivalent to 15–25% reductions in reactivity which may still be of clinical importance.

Evidence from a recent meta-analysis (Hamer et al. 2006) examining blood pressure response to a psychosocial stressor suggested that an acute bout of aerobic exercise may result in a significant

reduction in reactivity. That is, medium effect sizes revealed that exercise resulted in beneficial attenuated stress reactivity for both diastolic and systolic blood pressure with reductions of a 3.0 mmHg and 3.7 mmHg in diastolic and systolic responses, respectively. The observed effects appeared most robust with psychosocial stressors administered up to 30 min postexercise with moderate to vigorous exercise intensity and durations lasting from 20 min to 2 h. The findings from this review offer the possibility that the effects of acute exercise may account for some of the mixed results from studies examining chronic exercise and blood pressure reactivity because habitually exercising may place an individual in the post-exercise “window” more frequently when encountering daily stressors and thereby result in attenuated stress responses.

Although evidence from meta-analytic reviews is lacking, some studies have reported relationships between physical fitness and reduced hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis psychosocial stress reactivity, such as cortisol and inflammatory cytokine production. However, the ability to draw solid conclusions in this area is currently limited. With regard to sympathetic-adrenal-medullary responses, the findings appear conflicting as a result of sampling methodology and exercise intensity and durations employed. Some studies have found no effect of fitness on norepinephrine and epinephrine levels, whereas other studies have reported higher norepinephrine levels in the early phases of a stress response or, conversely, an association between lower levels of fitness and an increased norepinephrine response. In animal analogue studies, levels of norepinephrine have been shown to increase in the frontal cortex following an acute bout of exercise, suggesting increased vigilance to threat and reactivity; however, reduced levels have been found in the hypothalamus and hippocampus which suggests diminished stress reactivity.

In summary, although it appears that acute and chronic exercise and fitness may favorably influence an individual's response to psychosocial stress, further research is needed to clarify this relationship. Reviews of the literature suggest

that there is a need for greater methodological rigor and reporting as well as examination of potential moderators of exercise-reactivity and exercise-recovery associations.

Cross-References

- [Benefits of Exercise](#)
- [Physical Activity and Health](#)
- [Stress](#)
- [Stress Reactivity](#)
- [Stressor](#)

References and Readings

- Buckworth, J., & Dishman, R. K. (2002). *Exercise psychology*. Champaign: Human Kinetics.
- Claytor, R. P. (1991). Stress reactivity: Hemodynamic adjustments in trained and untrained humans. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, 23, 873–881.
- Crews, D. J., & Landers, D. M. (1987). A meta-analytic review of aerobic fitness and reactivity to psychosocial stressors. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise*, 19(Suppl), S114–S120.
- De Geus, E. J. C., & Van Doornen, L. J. P. (1993). The effects of fitness training on the physiological stress response. *Work and Stress*, 7, 141–159.
- Edenfield, T. M., & Blumenthal, J. A. (2011). Exercise and stress reduction. In A. Baum & R. Contrada (Eds.), *The handbook of stress science: Biology, psychology, and health* (pp. 301–319). New York: Springer.
- Forcier, K., Stroud, L. R., Papandonatos, G. D., Hitsman, B., Reiches, M., Krishnamoorthy, J., et al. (2006). Links between physical fitness and cardiovascular reactivity and recovery to psychological stressors: A meta-analysis. *Health Psychology*, 25, 723–739.
- Hamer, M., Taylor, A., & Steptoe, A. (2006). The effect of acute aerobic exercise on stress related blood pressure responses: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Biological Psychology*, 71, 183–190.
- Hand, G. A., Phillips, K. D., & Wilson, M. A. (2006). Central regulation of stress reactivity and physical activity. In E. Acevado & P. Ekkekakis (Eds.), *Psychobiology of physical activity* (pp. 189–201). Champaign: Human Kinetics.
- Jackson, E. M., & Dishman, R. K. (2006). Cardiorespiratory fitness and laboratory stress: A meta-regression analysis. *Psychophysiology*, 43, 57–72.
- Sothmann, M. S., Buckworth, J., Claytor, R. P., Cox, R. H., White-Welkley, J. E., & Dishman, R. K. (1996). Exercise training and the cross-stressor adaptation hypothesis. *Exercise and Sport Sciences Reviews*, 24, 267–287.

Stress, Posttraumatic

Viana Turcios-Cotto

Department of Psychology, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, USA

Synonyms

PTS

Definition

Posttraumatic stress is a stress reaction characterized by a multitude of symptoms following a traumatic event. Symptoms can be affective, behavioral, cognitive, and/or physiological in nature. These symptoms appear only after exposure to an event that involved a threat to one's physical integrity such as actual or threatened death or serious injury to oneself, witnessing such a threat on another person, or learning of such a threat experienced by a family member or other close person. A traumatic event can come in many forms including but not limited to a natural disaster (e.g., earthquake, tornado), violent personal attack, (e.g., rape, robbery), military combat, terrorist attack, severe automobile accident, or diagnosis of life-threatening illness (American Psychiatric Association [APA] 1994). Although posttraumatic stress is similar to posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD), a diagnosable psychological condition, it is distinctly different in that the symptoms of posttraumatic stress may not be as severe or as numerous as those of PTSD. Thus, not all of the criteria necessary for diagnosis of PTSD are met, and the symptoms typically do not cause clinically significant distress or impairment in important areas of functioning.

Description

Rates of trauma exposure are unclear, but it is estimated that a majority of people, over 60%, living within the United States have experienced

at least one traumatic event (Resick et al. 2008). Some of those affected will develop no signs of distress, whereas some will develop clinically significant, diagnosable signs of distress, and yet others, people experiencing posttraumatic stress, can be categorized as developing subclinical levels of distress. Like many other psychological difficulties, whether or not someone develops significant signs of distress after a traumatic event depends on many variables such as the individual's coping abilities, trauma history, support system, type of traumatic event, intensity of the event, proximity to the event, and so on. Individuals with diminished coping abilities, extensive trauma histories, weak support systems, and who experience more intense and physical traumas closer to their bodies will be at greater risk for suffering from more severe posttraumatic distress (APA 1994; Resick et al. 2008). Since the subclinical population does not warrant a diagnosis and most likely does not seek treatment due to the lack of or low level of impairment, it is difficult to estimate how many are afflicted by posttraumatic stress. However, individuals living with posttraumatic stress experience various difficulties, which can be categorized into groups of affective, behavioral, cognitive, and physiological symptoms.

Affective Symptoms

After a traumatic event, one can feel a variety of stressful emotions as a consequence for days, weeks, or even months after the experience. Intense fear and helplessness are characteristic markers of posttraumatic stress (APA 1994; Beidel and Stipelman 2007; Resick et al. 2008). A person can feel scared that the event might reoccur at any moment and horror that he or she will be unable to stop it from happening again. One might fear for their life and worry that death or severe injury is imminent, creating constant anxiety, and perhaps a sense of a foreshortened future (APA 1994; Beidel and Stipelman, 2007). Some people may react to a traumatic incident with guilt and/or shame, unwilling to talk to others about the incident believing that they are at fault for the event. Sadness and even depression can also arise as a result from experiencing a trauma. This can lead to no longer finding

pleasure in activities that the person once enjoyed or in diminished social involvement (Beidel and Stipelman 2007). Lastly, an individual may experience a feeling of anger, manifested through irritability or outbursts (APA 1994). This anger may be focused on the event itself; it may also be geared toward others, perhaps blaming others for the occurrence of the event or fueled by mistrust of others. Overall, the affective symptoms that result from posttraumatic stress are typically negative and can become harmful if they linger for too long.

Behavioral Symptoms

Certain behaviors that were not present before a traumatic event can also surface as a result. Hypervigilance, a constant watchful eye on one's surroundings, is a hallmark behavior used to protect oneself from unexpected threats. This hypervigilance includes heightened sensory sensitivity with an intense, somewhat irrational reaction or an exaggerated startle response (APA 1994; Beidel and Stipelman 2007). For example, an individual who has personally experienced an earthquake may become more aware of slight tremors, flickering lights, rattling windows, or rumbling sounds that others do not notice. These stimuli might arouse fear or anxiety in the individual who might feel as if they are reexperiencing the traumatic event. A person may also purposely work toward not reexperiencing or remembering the event. He or she might avoid certain places, people, smells, sounds, topics of conversation, or anything else that might trigger memories of the incident and may even be unable to recall certain aspects of the event altogether (Beidel and Stipelman 2007; Resick et al. 2008). One might also learn to numb their feelings so that they no longer experience fear, anxiety, or anger as a protective measure from the various affective symptoms that may have developed after the trauma. However, this typically also leads to numbing positive affect such as joy and excitement as well, restricting one's range of affect (APA 1994; Beidel and Stipelman 2007). Avoidance and numbing can further cause a person to become somewhat reclusive and decrease involvement in social situations, resulting in a feeling of detachment or estrangement from friends and family. In

general, the behavioral symptoms that appear after a traumatic event are used as coping mechanisms to either protect oneself to keep such an event from reoccurring or to distance oneself from the event that has occurred.

Cognitive Symptoms

There are key cognitions that are representative of those individuals who have experienced a trauma. Most often, there is an overgeneralization of the event and the harm that it caused (Resick et al. 2008). In other words, an individual might believe that harmful or deadly events happen more often and in more places than previously thought. He or she might feel that he or she is always at risk and lacks safety, misappraising minor events or stimuli as much more dangerous than they really are. A victim might lose trust in others and think that others are out to harm him or her, particularly if another human being caused the trauma. Other distorted cognitions about power and control may surface as well (Resick et al.). Such beliefs might be that one has no control or power over events in their daily life, perhaps lowering self-esteem. Another distortion might be self-blame where the victim believes he or she had complete control and power in the situation, bringing the traumatic event upon him or herself. This can result in a feeling of shame or guilt.

Although cognitive symptoms usually only include cognitions or beliefs that a person holds, in the case of posttraumatic stress, they also include ideas, images, and impulses that might materialize in one's mind after a traumatic event. Individuals might have sudden, intrusive memories of images, smells, sounds, etc., of the event flash in his or her mind (APA 1994). The victim might also have distressing dreams about the incident or feel and act as if he or she is reliving the terrible moment (Resick et al. 2008). Due to the many stressors experienced after a traumatic event, concentration may be difficult for individuals with posttraumatic stress.

Physiological Symptoms

Posttraumatic stress causes physiological changes as well. Most notably, there is an

increase in heart rate and sweat gland activity. Levels of cortisol may also rise. These symptoms may lead to exhaustion or various serious illnesses such as heart disease (Resick et al. 2008; Sarafino 2008).

Summary

Posttraumatic stress is a psychological stress reaction following a traumatic event. It is characterized by a multitude of affective, behavioral, cognitive, and physiological symptoms that negatively impact an individual. However, the symptoms are not severe enough to cause impairment in social, occupational, or other areas of functioning and therefore do not warrant a diagnosis. Nevertheless, if symptoms become more severe and do not diminish within a month's time, they may be a sign of a diagnosable psychological condition, posttraumatic stress disorder. In such a case, the individual should seek treatment from a professional psychologist or counselor.

Cross-References

- [Post Traumatic Stress Disorder](#)
- [Posttraumatic Growth](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Readings

- American Psychiatric Association. (1994). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: Author.
- Beidel, D. C., & Stipelman, B. (2007). Anxiety disorders, chapter 11. In M. Hersen, S. M. Turner, & D. C. Beidel (Eds.), *Adult psychopathology and diagnosis* (5th ed., pp. 349–409). Hoboken: Wiley.
- Resick, P. A., Monson, C. M., & Rizvi, S. L. (2008). Posttraumatic stress disorder, chapter 2. In D. H. Barlow (Ed.), *Clinical handbook of psychological disorders: A step-by-step treatment manual* (4th ed., pp. 65–122). New York: Guilford Press.
- Sarafino, E. P. (2008). Stress – Its meaning, impact, and sources, chapter 3. In E. P. Sarafino (Ed.), *Health psychology: Biopsychosocial interactions* (6th ed., pp. 61–86). Hoboken: Wiley.

Stress: Appraisal and Coping

Susan Folkman

Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
University of California San Francisco,
San Mateo, CA, USA

Definition

Stress has been defined traditionally either as a *stimulus*, often referred to as a *stressor*, that happens to the person such as a laboratory shock or loss of a job, or as a *response* characterized by physiological arousal and negative affect, especially anxiety. In his 1966 book, *Psychological Stress and the Coping Process* (Lazarus 1966), Richard Lazarus defined stress as a relationship between the person and the environment that is appraised as personally significant and as taxing or exceeding resources for coping. This definition is the foundation of stress and coping theory (Lazarus and Folkman 1984).

Description

Stress and coping theory provides a framework that is useful for formulating and testing hypotheses about the stress process and its relation to physical and mental health. The framework emphasizes the importance of two processes, appraisal and coping, as mediators of the ongoing relationship between the person and the environment. Stress and coping theory is relevant to the stress process as it is experienced in the ordinary events of daily life, major life events, and chronic stressful conditions that stretch out over years.

Appraisal refers to the individual's continuous evaluation of how things are going in relation to his or her personal goals, values, and beliefs. Primary appraisal asks "Am I okay?" Secondary appraisal asks "What can I do?" Situations that signal harm or potential harm that is personally significant and in which there are few options for controlling what happens are appraised as stressful. Stress appraisals include harm or loss, which

refer to damage already done; appraisals of threat, which refer to the judgment that something bad might happen; and appraisals of challenge, which refer to something that may happen that offers the opportunity for mastery or gain as well as some risk of an unwelcome outcome. Situations that are appraised as high in personal significance and low in controllability, for example, are usually appraised as threats, and situations that are high in personal significance and high in controllability are more likely to be appraised as challenges.

The concept of appraisal addresses the issue of variability of responses among people experiencing a similar stressor and why a given situation may be more stressful for one person than another. The situation may involve goals, values, or beliefs that are more personally significant for one person than for another, or one person may be better equipped than another to control the situation's outcome. Appraisal-based approaches now dominate the field (Pearlin et al. 1981).

Appraisals generate emotions that vary in quality and intensity according to the person's evaluation of personal significance (primary appraisal) and options for coping (secondary appraisal). Threat appraisals, for example, are often accompanied by fear, anxiety, and worry; harm/loss appraisals are often accompanied by anger, sadness, or guilt; and challenge appraisals are often accompanied by eagerness and excitement as well as a touch of threat.

People experience a complex array of emotions during real-life stressful events, including positive as well as negative emotions (Folkman 1997, 2008). Emotions indicate that something is happening that matters to the individual. Emotions also often signal what the person intends to do. Negative emotions have long been associated with the individual's preparation to approach or avoid, fight or flee (Lazarus 1991). Positive emotions have more recently been examined for their roles in the stress process. Positive emotions, for example, are associated with widened focus of attention, motivating meaning-focused coping, and eliciting social support (Folkman 2008; Fredrickson 1998).

Coping refers to the thoughts and actions people use to manage distress (emotion-focused

coping), manage the problem causing the distress (problem-focused coping), and sustain positive well-being (meaning-focused coping). Emotion-focused coping includes strategies such as distancing, humor, and seeking social support that are generally considered adaptive, and strategies such as escape-avoidance, day dreaming, and blaming others that are generally considered maladaptive. Problem-focused coping includes strategies such as information gathering, seeking advice, drawing on previous experience, negotiating, and problem solving. Meaning-focused coping includes strategies such as focusing on deeply held values, beliefs, and goals; reframing or reappraising situations in positive ways; and amplifying positive moments over the course of a day (Folkman and Moskowitz 2000).

Coping is influenced by the person's coping resources including psychological, spiritual, social, environmental, and material resources, and by the nature of the situation, especially whether its outcome is controllable or has to be accepted. Problem-focused coping is used more in situations that are controllable, and emotion-focused coping is used more in situations that have to be accepted. Meaning-focused coping appears to be used more in situations that are chronic and not resolvable, such as in caregiving or serious illness. It is hypothesized that meaning-focused coping becomes more active when initial coping efforts fail to make the situation better (Folkman 2011). Meaning-focused coping sustains other coping efforts and restores coping resources.

People use an array of coping strategies in real-life situations. Most situations involve more than one coping task or goal, each of which requires a coping strategy tailored to that task or goal. And people switch coping strategies when the ones they are using do not have the desired effect. Coping also changes as an encounter unfolds in response to changes in the environment, the situation, or to changes within the person.

Coping effectiveness is determined contextually because effective coping in one situation may be ineffective in another. For instance, distancing may be ineffective when a person should be problem solving or preparing for an upcoming

challenge, whereas it may be effective when there is nothing to be done, as when waiting for a test result. Researchers often identify on an a priori basis the outcome that is desired, such as improved mood. In such cases, effective coping is the coping that is associated with the desired outcome.

Another approach to evaluating coping is to examine the goodness of the fit between the appraised options for coping and the choice of coping strategy. Problem-focused coping that is used when the situation is appraised as controllable, for example, would be a good fit, whereas the same form of coping in situation where nothing can be done would be a poor fit. Conversely, distancing that is used when there is nothing that can be done would be a good fit, whereas the same form of coping in a controllable situation that called for attention would be a poor fit.

Like appraisal, coping is key to understanding why the outcomes of given stressful situations can vary from person to person. Two people may cope quite differently with the same stressful situation because of differences in their resources, experiences, motivation, preferences, and skills for coping.

The dynamic quality of the stress process is evident in changes in the appraisal and reappraisal process, the fluidity of emotions, and changes in coping thoughts and actions as an encounter unfolds. The processes are also in reciprocal relationships. An outcome of appraisal and coping at Time 1, such as mood, for example, can become a predictor of appraisal and coping at Time 2.

References and Readings

- Folkman, S. (1997). Positive psychological states and coping with severe stress. *Social Science and Medicine*, 45, 1207–1221.
- Folkman, S. (2008). The case for positive emotions in the stress process. *Anxiety, Stress, and Coping*, 21, 3–14.
- Folkman, S. (Ed.). (2011). *The Oxford handbook of stress, health, and coping*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Folkman, S., & Moskowitz, J. T. (2000). Positive affect and the other side of coping. *American Psychologist*, 55, 647–654.

- Fredrickson, B. L. (1998). What good are positive emotions? *Review of General Psychology Special Issue: New Directions in Research on Emotion*, 2, 300–319.
- Lazarus, R. S. (1966). *Psychological stress and the coping process*. New York: McGraw Hill.
- Lazarus, R. S. (1991). *Emotion and adaptation*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Pearlin, L. I., Lieberman, M. A., Menaghan, E. G., & Mullan, J. T. (1981). The stress process. *Journal of Health and Social Behavior*, 22, 337–356.

Stress-Associated Disorders

- [Stress-Related Disorders](#)

Stressful Life Event

- [Psychosocial Factors and Traumatic Events](#)

Stressful Life Events

- [Life Events](#)

Stress-Induced Asthma

- [Asthma and Stress](#)

Stress-Induced Disorders

- [Stress-Related Disorders](#)

Stressor

- [Psychological Stress](#)

Stress-Related Disorders

Susanne Fischer¹ and Urs M. Nater²

¹Clinical Psychology and Psychotherapy, Institute of Psychology, University of Zurich, Zurich, Switzerland

²Department of Psychology, University of Vienna, Vienna, Austria

Synonyms

[Stress-associated disorders](#); [Stress-induced disorders](#)

Definition

The term “stress-related disorders” is used in various ways in the scientific literature. A narrow definition includes conditions that are clearly *caused* by stress. Consequentially, merely a handful of (mental) disorders (e.g., posttraumatic stress disorder) are deemed eligible for this label. By contrast, a broad definition includes all illnesses that are somehow adversely *impacted* by stress. This can mean that stress is involved in the predisposition, precipitation, and/or perpetuation of a particular condition. Given that stress exerts negative effects on numerous bodily systems (e.g., the autonomic nervous system, the endocrine system, and the immune system) and on health behaviors (e.g., eating, physical activity, substance use), virtually all mental disorders and a large proportion of somatic diseases can be classified as stress-related disorders according to this definition.

Description

The continuum between conditions in which stress is a causal versus a contributing factor is reflected by the various diagnostic codes for stress-related disorders. In the 11th edition of the International Classification of Diseases (ICD-11; WHO [2018b](#)), stress is most prominently mentioned in “disorders specifically associated with stress” within the

mental disorders chapter. This category includes adjustment disorder and posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD), among other disorders that are triggered by trauma, critical life events, or chronic stress, and is analogous to the category of “trauma- and stressor-related disorders” in the fifth edition of the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (DSM-5; APA 2013). In addition, stress is featured as a general “factor influencing health status” at the very end of the ICD-11 and as a “psychological factor affecting disorders or diseases classified elsewhere” within the chapter on mental disorders. These codes are usually used in somatic diseases in which stress is a risk or exacerbating factor (e.g., in cardiovascular or inflammatory diseases).

Stress-related symptoms are highly diverse. When stress is the main factor involved in the development of a particular illness (e.g., in PTSD or adjustment disorder), typical symptoms include depressed mood, anhedonia, problems in concentration, anxiety, irritability, and sleep disturbance. When stress is one among several factors contributing to the development and/or maintenance of a condition (e.g., in somatic symptom disorder or hypertension), any number of these symptoms may be found, in addition to the unique conglomerate of symptoms pertaining to the disease/disorder in question. However, it is often difficult to establish a clear distinction between stress-related symptoms and symptoms of other origins (e.g., a genetic abnormality), especially as stress may exacerbate almost any symptom via its negative effects on stress-responsive bodily systems (e.g., impaired immune functioning) and lifestyle behaviors (e.g., physical inactivity, smoking).

The contribution of stress-related disorders to the global burden of disease is high. Posttraumatic stress disorder alone has a lifetime prevalence of 3.9% (Koenen et al. 2017), and diseases that are adversely affected by stress are among the most debilitating conditions worldwide. According to the WHO (2018a), the top five current causes of disability-adjusted life years (DALYs) and death are ischemic heart disease, stroke, lower respiratory infection, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), and road injury. Of these, all three

noncommunicable diseases, that is, ischemic heart disease, stroke, and COPD, have direct and indirect links to stress. For instance, a meta-analysis of over 500,000 individuals showed that long working hours (i.e., more than 55 h per week) were directly associated with a significantly increased risk of both ischemic heart disease and stroke (Kivimaki et al., 2015). This can be attributed to physical inactivity and repeated activation of the stress response. Similarly, an extensive meta-analysis confirmed that smoking, which is often used as a means to cope with stress, is a major risk factor for COPD, causing airway obstruction, mucus hypersecretion, and emphysema (Forey et al. 2011).

Depending on the role of stress in the development and/or maintenance of a particular disorder, and depending on the type of stressor involved, different interventions can be applied to alleviate symptom burden. When stress is causal and traumatic (e.g., a rape victim developing PTSD), trauma-focused cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) should be applied. This treatment comprises prolonged exposure to traumatic cues or memories as well as cognitive restructuring of dysfunctional trauma-related beliefs. In cases where stress is causal, but non-traumatic (e.g., a critical life event or chronic stress triggering an adjustment disorder), the choice of psychological intervention will depend on whether a patient shows symptoms of depression, anxiety, or disturbance of conduct. In the case of depression, behavioral activation or sleep hygiene may prove to be effective, whereas anxiety may best be managed by relaxation exercises or cognitive restructuring, and patients with disturbance of conduct may benefit from social skills training. Finally, when (chronic) stress is a contributing factor, stress management techniques may be a worthy addition to pharmacological or other somatic therapies (e.g., antidepressants for major depressive disorder, surgery after myocardial infarction). Such programs either target the stressor itself (e.g., effort-reward imbalance at work); the individual appraisal of potentially stressful situations, including personality traits that foster stress (e.g., perfectionism); or the immediate consequences of stress (e.g., elevated sympathetic activity, smoking as a coping strategy).

Cross-References

- Autonomic Nervous System (ANS)
- Cardiovascular Disease
- Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease
- Cognitive Behavioral Therapy (CBT)
- Cognitive Restructuring
- Coping
- Health Behaviors
- Hypertension
- Ischemic Heart Disease
- Physical Activity
- Physical Inactivity
- Post Traumatic Stress Disorder
- Relaxation Techniques
- Smoking
- Stress
- Stress Disorder
- Stress Management
- Stress, Posttraumatic
- Stress Response

References and Further Readings

- APA. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Washington D.C.: APA.
- Forey, B. A., Thornton, A. J., & Lee, P. N. (2011). Systematic review with meta-analysis of the epidemiological evidence relating smoking to COPD, chronic bronchitis and emphysema. *BMC Pulmonary Medicine*, 11, 36. <https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2466-11-36>.
- Kivimäki, M., Jokela, M., Nyberg, S. T., Singh-Manoux, A., Fransson, E. I., Alfredsson, L., et al. (2015). Long working hours and risk of coronary heart disease and stroke: A systematic review and meta-analysis of published and unpublished data for 603,838 individuals. *Lancet*, 386(10005), 1739–1746. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736\(15\)60295-1](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(15)60295-1).
- Koenen, K. C., Ratanatharathorn, A., Ng, L., McLaughlin, K. A., Bromet, E. J., Stein, D. J., et al. (2017). Posttraumatic stress disorder in the world mental health surveys. *Psychological Medicine*, 47(13), 2260–2274. <https://doi.org/10.1017/S0033291717000708>.
- WHO. (2018a). *Global Health estimates 2016: Deaths by cause, age, sex, by country and by region* (pp. 2000–2016). Geneva: WHO.
- WHO. (2018b). International statistical classification of diseases and related health problems (11th revision). Retrieved from <https://icd.who.int/browse11/l-m/en>.

Stress-Related Growth

- Benefit Finding
- Perceived Benefits
- Posttraumatic Growth

Stroke Burden

Jonathan Newman
Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Definition

Description

Strokes are one of the leading causes of death and disability: each year, nearly 800,000 Americans experience a new or recurrent stroke. Approximately 600,000 of these are first events and roughly 180,000 are recurrent attacks. In the United States, strokes accounted for 1 out of every 16 deaths in 2004, and more than 50% of the deaths attributable to strokes occurred outside of the hospital. When separated from other cardiovascular diseases, stroke is the third leading cause of death, behind heart disease and cancer. Importantly, strides have been made in reduction of stroke mortality: the stroke death rate has fallen more than 20% from 1994 to 2004. However, important disparities remain. While Hispanic, Latino, American Indian, and Pacific Islander populations have somewhat lower stroke death rates than whites, black men and women continue to have significantly higher stroke death rates than all other populations, and the prevalence of stroke remains higher in minority populations than among whites. Lastly, because women live longer than men, in 2004, women accounted for greater than 60% of stroke deaths in the United States.

In addition to the significant mortality, the morbidity associated with stroke is considerable: more than 25% of stroke survivors older than age 65 are disabled 6 months later. The length of time to recover from a stroke depends on its initial severity. From 50% to 70% of stroke survivors

regain functional independence, but 15–30% are permanently disabled, and 20% require institutional care at 3 months after onset. Although 70% of strokes are a first cardiovascular event, 15% of survivors will have a recurrent event within 1 year, and 30% will have a recurrent event within 5 years. The period soon after an acute stroke is associated with the highest rate of stroke recurrence, and the risk of stroke following a transient ischemic attack (TIA) is over 10% for the following 90 days.

The medical costs of stroke are high: the estimated direct and indirect costs of stroke for 2008 are \$65.5 billion USD. In comparison, the 2008 costs for coronary heart disease were estimated at \$156.4 billion USD, making stroke one of the leading US health-care expenditures. The mean lifetime cost of ischemic stroke is over \$140,000 USD, and 70% of the first-year costs following an acute stroke are due to inpatient hospital costs.

Finally, the burden associated with stroke contains an important association with other cardiovascular disease processes and risk. Many risk factors for stroke overlap with those of cardiac and peripheral vascular disease. This overlap has led to the concept of “global risk” for cardiovascular disease in general, of which stroke is one component. High blood pressure is the greatest risk factor for stroke, but factors like smoking, diabetes, and low high-density lipoprotein levels are important risk factors. Depression has been suggested to be an independent risk factor for stroke. The occurrence of a stroke is therefore likely to be the initial manifestation of a global cardiovascular disease process, with high morbidity, mortality, and cost, and risk factors that overlap with traditional cardiovascular risk factor categories.

References and Readings

- Asplund, K., Stegmayr, B., & Peltonen, M. (1998). From the twentieth to the twenty-first century: A public health perspective on stroke. In M. D. Ginsberg & J. Bogousslavsky (Eds.), *Cerebrovascular disease pathophysiology, diagnosis, and management* (Vol. 2). Malden: Blackwell. Chap 64.
- Rosamond, W. D., Folsom, A. R., Chambless, L. E., Wang, C. H., McGovern, P. G., Howard, G., Copper, L. S., &

Shahar, E. (1999). Stroke incidence and survival among middle-aged adults: 9-year follow-up of the Atherosclerotic Risk in Communities (ARIC) cohort. *Stroke*, 30, 736–743.

- Rosamond, W., Flegal, K., Furie, K., et al. (2008). Heart disease and stroke statistics-2008 update: A report from the American Heart Association Statistics Committee and Stroke Statistics Subcommittee. *Circulation*, 117, e25–e146.

Stroop Color-Word Test

Mark Hamer

Epidemiology and Public Health, Division of Population Health, University College London, London, UK

Synonyms

[Mental stressor](#); [Problem solving](#)

Definition

The Stroop test is commonly used in psychophysiological studies as a problem-solving task to elicit mental stress. The test is an incongruent task that requires participants to identify the name of a color (e.g., “blue,” “green,” or “red”) that is printed in a conflicting color not denoted by the name (e.g., the word “red” printed in blue ink instead of red ink). The task primarily evokes beta-adrenergically driven responses, resulting in increased heart rate and cardiac output. Functional neuroimaging studies of the Stroop effect have consistently revealed activation in the frontal lobe and more specifically in the anterior cingulate cortex and dorsolateral prefrontal cortex, two structures hypothesized to be responsible for conflict monitoring and resolution.

Cross-References

- [Blood Pressure Reactivity or Responses](#)
- [Heart Rate](#)

Structural Equation Modeling (SEM)

Maria Magdalena Llabre and William Arguelles
Department of Psychology, University of Miami,
Coral Gables, FL, USA

Synonyms

SEM

Definition

Structural equation modeling (SEM) is a multivariate statistical methodology for the estimation of a system of simultaneous linear equations that may include both observed and latent variables. With origins in the path analysis work of the biometrician Sewell Wright and the factor analysis tradition of Charles Spearman, over the past 40 years, SEM has transitioned from a novel methodology for linear models to a mainstream statistical framework for the analysis of latent variable models. SEM-related techniques may be used to examine a wide variety of structures, including causal models, measurement models, growth models, latent classes or mixtures, and combinations of these. The generality and flexibility of SEM, the development of efficient estimation methods, and the availability of computer programs contribute to the utility of this methodology for addressing important research questions in behavioral medicine.

Description

The first step in an SEM analysis is the specification of the model. SEM models are specified via either a system of structural equations or, more commonly, a path diagram. Included in the path diagram are the observed variables to be analyzed, the constructs or latent variables to be inferred, the unobserved but ever-present errors or disturbances, and the ways in which these observed

and unobserved variables are related to one another. The path diagram is a valuable tool in itself, helping investigators better understand their research questions and their data. A path diagram forces the investigator to think critically about every variable relevant to the phenomenon under study.

Observed variables (also called indicators) are the variables we measure directly. These could be exogenous (variables whose causes are not included in the model) or endogenous (variables whose causes are posited in the model). *Path analysis* is a special case of SEM in which all variables specified in a model are observed (except for the errors) and assumed to be perfectly reliable. However, when reliability is not perfect and indicators contain measurement error, as is often the case, parameter estimates may be biased. One of the key features of SEM is the possibility of combining multiple observed variables into *latent variables* (the constructs of interest). A latent variable, like a construct, is not observed directly, but is rather inferred from the covariances shared among its corresponding indicators. For example, we could combine multiple measures of depression into a latent variable to improve reliability. Thus, a general SEM model may be viewed as having two components: a structural model (which allows for the specification and testing of relationships among variables) and a measurement model (which offers the advantage of using latent variables to represent constructs of interest, modeling sources of measurement error and bias associated with directly observed variables).

Generally speaking, the purpose of analyzing SEM models is twofold. First, we wish to test whether the specified model fits the data. Second and simultaneously, we want to estimate the parameters of interest and test them for significance. The most common *method of estimation* used by available computer programs is maximum likelihood (ML), performed iteratively to arrive at an admissible solution. ML parameter estimates are unbiased, consistent, efficient, and normally distributed in large samples. Given a particular model specification, this method is used to generate and compare a model-implied

variance-covariance matrix to the data-based variance-covariance matrix. ML estimates are those that minimize the discrepancy between those two matrices, and as such, yield parameter values that have the greatest likelihood of having given rise to the sample values obtained, assuming a multivariate normal distribution. The typical output from a computer analysis will have indices of model fit, as well as the parameter estimates, their standard errors, and z-values used to test them for significance.

The primary index used to test model fit is a χ^2 statistic. However, given this statistic's direct dependence on sample size, with large sample sizes, even small differences between the two matrices may yield a significant χ^2 indicative of poor model fit. Several other indices have been developed and proposed as either alternatives or companions to the χ^2 in such cases, including the comparative fit index (CFI), the root mean squared error of approximation (RMSEA), and the standardized root mean residual (SRMR). Beyond overall measures of fit, it is important to make sure that parameter estimates make sense in relation to the problem being investigated.

In terms of the structural aspect of SEM, the *parameters of primary interest* are the path coefficients (or the direct effects among the variables). In SEM, the variances and covariances among the exogenous variables are also estimated, as well as the variances and covariances of the disturbances. In terms of the measurement aspect of SEM, the parameters of primary interest are the factor (or latent variable) loadings, the measurement error variances, and the variances and covariances of the latent variables.

When working within the SEM framework using ML estimation, it is possible to take advantage of its full information capabilities to include all of the available data. Often referred to as full information maximum likelihood (FIML), this approach to *missing data* has been shown to yield unbiased parameter estimates when missingness is related to variables that are accessible for analysis (Little and Rubin 2002; Schafer and Graham 2002). Comparable

to multiple imputation, this method is superior to other missing data techniques such as listwise or pairwise deletion, or mean, regression, or hotdeck imputation, particularly when data are not missing completely at random (Enders 2006).

SEM is a large sample methodology and the appropriate sample size must be considered keeping in mind several issues including model complexity, estimation method, and statistical power. With samples less than 100 participants, models must be simple and the variables normally distributed, otherwise problems with model convergence are likely to arise. As a general rule, more complex models or non-normal data will require more participants.

Of note, testing of *alternative models* is necessary to strengthen the causal inferences often associated with SEM. Sometimes researchers improperly assume that models that fit the data represent reality, without recognizing there are always multiple alternative models that fit just as well. Models can be rejected but not proven. It is important to consider design features such as randomization, experimentation, longitudinal designs, instrumental variables, or inclusion of other variables to strengthen model interpretation.

In addition to testing relationships among variables, means and mean structures may be analyzed. For example, multiple groups may be compared with respect to means of latent variables, or mean changes over time may be modeled using *latent growth modeling*. Many other extensions are possible but their description is beyond the scope of this entry. However, this is an active area of research and readers are encouraged to learn more by consulting available textbooks, Web sites, and papers. A very readable conceptual introduction to SEM is provided by Kline (2010). A more detailed presentation of its use in behavioral medicine may be found in Llabre (2010). The Web site for Mplus (Muthen and Muthen 2011) – one of the more popular computer programs – contains a lot of useful information on the basics of SEM, as well as extensions to more complex models.

Cross-References

- [Hierarchical Linear Modeling \(HLM\)](#)
- [Latent Variable](#)
- [Missing Data](#)
- [Randomization](#)

References and Readings

- Enders, C. K. (2006). Analyzing structural equation models with missing data. In G. R. Hancock & R. O. Mueller (Eds.), *Structural equation modeling: A second course* (pp. 313–344). Greenwich: Information Age Publishing.
- Kline, R. (2010). *Principles and practice of structural equation modeling* (2nd ed.). New York: Guilford Press.
- Little, R. J., & Rubin, D. B. (2002). *Statistical analysis with missing data* (2nd ed.). Hoboken: Wiley.
- Llabre, M. M. (2010). Structural equation modeling in behavioral medicine research. In A. Steptoe (Ed.), *Handbook of behavioral medicine: Methods and applications* (pp. 895–908). New York: Springer.
- Muthen, L., & Muthen, B. (1998–2011). *Mplus user's guide*. Los Angeles: Muthen & Muthen.
- Schafer, J. L., & Graham, J. W. (2002). Missing data: Our view of the state of art. *Psychological Methods*, 7, 147–177.

Structural Variant

- [Copy Number Variant \(CNV\)](#)

Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-IV (SCID)

Ulrike Kübler
Department of Psychology, University of Zurich,
Binzmuehlestrasse, Zurich, Switzerland

Definition

The structured clinical interview for DSM-4 (SCID) is a semistructured interview created to

make reliable psychiatric diagnoses in adults according to the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual*, fourth edition (DSM-IV). The SCID has two parts: one for DSM-IV Axis I disorders (SCID-I) and another for DSM-IV Axis II personality disorders (SCID-II).

In order to meet different needs, the SCID-I is available in two versions: the research version (SCID-I-RV; First et al. 2002) and the clinician version (SCID-CV; First et al. 1996). In contrast to the SCID-CV, the SCID-I-RV comprises more disorders, subtypes, severity, and course specifiers and is easier to modify. The SCID-I-RV itself is also available in different versions. The broadest SCID-I-RV version comprises ten self-contained diagnostic modules: mood episodes, psychotic and associated symptoms, psychotic disorders, mood disorders, substance use disorders, anxiety disorders, somatoform disorders, eating disorders, adjustment disorders, and an optional module which allows psychiatric diagnoses that may be of the interviewer's interest, such as the module on acute stress disorder and on minor depressive disorder.

The SCID-I starts with an open-ended overview that includes questions about demographic information, work history, chief complaint, past and present periods of psychopathology, treatment history, and current functioning. This is followed by the diagnostic modules, which are presented in a three-column format: the left-hand column contains the interview questions, the middle column contains the corresponding DSM-IV criteria, and in the right-hand column ratings for the criteria are indicated. Besides rating the presence of the DSM-IV criteria for Axis I disorders, the SCID-I also enables rating of Axis III, IV, and IV of the DSM (see DSM-IV for more details).

The SCID-II (First et al. 1997) is only offered in a single version. It covers the ten standard DSM-IV Axis II personality disorders (avoidant, dependent, obsessive-compulsive, paranoid, schizotypal, schizoid, histrionic, narcissistic, borderline, antisocial personality disorder), as well as personality disorder not otherwise specified, and the appendix categories

depressive personality disorder and passive-aggressive personality disorder. The item format and the conventions of the SCID-II are very similar to those of the SCID-I. The SCID-II consists of several questions organized in sections in accordance with the DSM-IV diagnoses for personality disorders. In most cases, the questions correspond accurately with the criteria. To shorten overall administration time, the SCID-II is also provided with a self-report screening questionnaire that is intended to be administered at first. After this questionnaire has been filled out, only those items indicating personality abnormalities need to be inquired in more detail during the interview.

The SCID-II is often used in conjunction with the SCID-I. While administration of SCID-I typically takes between 45 and 90 min, the complete administration time of the SCID-II usually lasts about 1 h. Ideally, the SCID is administered by a trained interviewer familiar with the diagnostic criteria used in the DSM-IV. The SCID can be used in both healthy individuals and psychiatric patients. In individuals with either severe psychotic symptoms or severe cognitive impairments, the administration of the SCID is not recommended.

Overall, the SCID is a widely used assessment tool in both research and clinical settings in many countries. Various versions of the SCID have been translated into multiple languages, including Mandarin, Spanish, French, and German. The psychometric properties of the SCID-I and the SCID-II have been evaluated in several adult populations in numerous investigations, with encouraging results for most Axis I and Axis II disorders (e.g., Lobbestael et al. 2010). Computer-assisted versions of the SCID are also available.

Notably, since October 2015 the Structured Clinical Interview for DSM-5 diagnoses (SCID-5) has been available in English. The SCID-5 can be ordered in two versions: SCID-5-CV (clinician version; comparable with SCID-CV) and SCID-5-PD (personality disorders; comparable with SKID-II). For more information on the SCID-5, the reader is referred to the American Psychiatric Association Publishing website.

References and Further Reading

- <https://www.appi.org/scid5>
- American Psychiatric Association. (2000). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (4th ed.). Washington, DC: Author. Text revision.
- First, M. B., Spitzer, R. L., Gibbon, M., & Williams, J. B. W. (1996). *Structured clinical interview for DSM-IV axis I disorders, clinician version (SCID-CV)*. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press.
- First, M. B., Gibbon, M., Spitzer, R. L., Williams, J. B. W., & Benjamin, L. S. (1997). *Structured clinical interview for DSM-IV axis II personality disorders, (SCID-II)*. Washington, DC: American Psychiatric Press.
- First, M. B., Spitzer, R. L., Gibbon, M., & Williams, J. B. W. (2002). *Structured clinical interview for DSM-IV-TR axis I disorders, research version, patient edition, (SCID-I/P)*. New York: Biometrics Research, New York State Psychiatric Institute.
- Lobbestael, J., Leurgans, M., & Arntz, A. (2010). Interrater reliability of the structured clinical interview for DSM-IV axis I disorders (SCID I) and axis II disorders (SCID II). *Clinical Psychology & Psychotherapy*, 18(1), 75–79. <https://doi.org/10.1002/cpp.693>.

Study Methodology

► Research Methodology

Study Protocol

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

The study protocol is “the most important document in clinical trials, since it ensures the quality and integrity of the clinical investigation in terms of its planning, execution, conduct, and the analysis of the data” (Chow and Chang 2007). The study protocol is a comprehensive plan of action that contains information concerning the goals of the study, details of subject recruitment, details of safety monitoring, and all aspects of design,

methodology, and analysis. (In some cases, a Statistical Analysis Plan, associated with and written at the same time as the study protocol, will contain the detailed description of the analyses to be conducted.)

Description

The creation of study protocol requires input from many individuals. Consider a study protocol for a pharmaceutical clinical trial, since this is likely to be more extensive (and complex) than some smaller trials for behavioral medicine interventions and treatments. By considering this more extensive version, one will be able to judge which parts are and are not needed on a case by case basis.

In the case of a pharmaceutical trial, input will be needed from clinical scientists, medical safety officers, study managers, data managers, and statisticians. Consequently, while one clinical scientist or medical writer may take primary responsibility for the protocol's preparation, many members of the study team make important contributions.

The requirements of a study protocol include:

- Objectives (usually primary and secondary objectives). These goals of the study are stated as precisely as possible.
- Measurements related to the drug's safety, and procedures to ensure the safety of all subjects while participating in the trial.
- Inclusion and exclusion criteria. These provide detailed criteria for subject eligibility for participation in the trial.
- Details of the procedures for physical examinations.
- Laboratory procedures. Full details of the nature and timing of all procedures and tests are provided.
- Electrocardiogram (ECG) measurement and any other measurements such as imaging.
- Drug treatment schedule. Route of administration, dosage, and dosing regimen are detailed. This information is also provided for the control treatment.

- In the case of later-phase trials, measurements of efficacy. The criteria to be used to determine efficacy are provided.
- In the case of later-phase trials, details of the method of diagnosis of the disease or condition of clinical concern for which the drug is intended.
- Statistical analysis. The precise analytical strategy needs to be detailed, here and/or in an associated statistical analysis plan.

Inclusion and exclusion criteria are central components of clinical trials. A study's inclusion and exclusion criteria govern which individuals interested in participating in the trial are admitted to the study as subjects. Criteria for inclusion in the study include items such as the following:

- Reliable evidence of a diagnosis of the disease or condition of clinical concern.
- Being within a specified age range.
- Willingness to take measures to prevent pregnancy during the course of treatment. This includes a female in the trial not becoming pregnant (she may be receiving the drug being tested), and a male participating in the trial not causing a female to become pregnant (he may be receiving the drug being tested).

Criteria for exclusion from the study may include:

- Taking certain medications for other medical conditions and which therefore cannot safely be stopped during the trial.
- Participation in another clinical trial within so many months prior to the commencement of this study.
- Liver or kidney disease.

While inclusion and exclusion criteria are typically provided in two separate lists in regulatory documentation, exclusion criteria can be regarded as further refinements of the inclusion criteria. Meeting all the inclusion criteria allows a person to be considered as a study participant, while not meeting any exclusion criteria is also necessary to allow the person to become a participant.

Cross-References

- [Informed Consent](#)

References and Further Reading

Chow, S.-C., & Chang, M. (2007). *Adaptive design methods in clinical trials: Concepts and methodologies*. Boca Raton: CRC/Taylor Francis.

Study Size

- [Sample Size Estimation](#)

Subethnic Groups

- [Ethnicity](#)
- [Minority Subgroups](#)

Subgroup Heterogeneity

- [Minority Subgroups](#)

Subject Characteristics

- [Demographics](#)

Subjective Well-Being

- [Happiness and Health](#)

Submissiveness

- [Interpersonal Circumplex](#)

Substance Abuse

- [Alcohol Abuse and Dependence](#)
- [Dependence, Drug](#)
- [Lifestyle Changes](#)

Substance Abuse: Treatment

John Grabowski
Department of Psychiatry, Medical School,
University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN, USA

Synonyms

[Addiction rehabilitation](#); [Chemical dependency treatment](#); [Drug abuse: treatment](#); [Drug and alcohol treatment](#); [Drug dependence treatment](#); [Drug rehabilitation](#); [Inpatient treatment](#); [Outpatient treatment](#); [Residential treatment](#)

Definition

Treatment refers to a defined, empirically evaluated, data-based intervention intended to manage, remediate, or cure a diagnosed condition, here, impairing or problematic drug use. Historically, there have been two frameworks underpinning substance use treatment, the “disease” and “learning/conditioning” models (Higgins 1997). While some assumptions are divergent and perhaps irreconcilable, a broad integrative view dictates that genetic and other biological factors interact with behavior and environmental factors as composite determinants of substance use disorders. The diagnostic criteria applied to determining need for treatment are found in the International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems (ICD) 10 (“*Mental and behavioral disorders due to psychoactive substance use*”—“*a wide variety of disorders that differ in severity and clinical form but that are all attributable to the use of one or more psychoactive substances, which may or may not have been*

medically prescribed") and The American Psychiatric Association Diagnostic and Statistical Manual (DSM) IV, ("*Substance Related Disorders*"—"The Substance-Related Disorders include disorders related to the taking of a drug of abuse (including alcohol), to the side effects of a medication, and to toxin exposure"). The intervention may include behavioral, psychological, social, and pharmacological components delivered by skilled practitioners. There is a wide range of self-help and other efforts with little or no documented efficacy that are beyond the purview of this entry as are a number of criminal justice-based interventions.

Description

Underlying Disciplines, Principles, Goals, and Focus

In the public and lay domain, putative treatments for substance use disorders (i.e., "drug abuse" or "addiction") are legend and varied in their underpinnings. However, the core principles for systematic treatment of substance use disorders reside in empirically based interventions of psychology, psychiatry, pharmacology, behavioral science, and neuroscience. Despite diverse theoretical, conceptual, and terminological differences, there are many commonalities in both practice and behaviors and thoughts that are the focus of treatment. Emphasis is typically placed on avoiding drug use-related circumstances (physical or social) and replacing drug-seeking, drug use, and drug-related thoughts with other behaviors (e.g., coping skills, problem-solving skills). The interventions focus on altering biology, behavior, and social interaction through behavioral/psychological and pharmacological techniques. Longer term pharmacotherapy focuses on substituting a therapeutic medication (e.g., methadone) at controlled doses for the drug used (opiate) or a medication blocking (e.g., naltrexone) the effects of the drug used (opiate) with untoward consequences. Each strategy produces blunting or elimination subjective drug effects. Short-term alleviation of withdrawal symptoms or disturbed behavior is achieved with specific

symptomatic treatment (e.g., anxiolytics, sedatives, antidepressants, antipsychotics).

Two important considerations in discussion of treatment are the determinants and correlates of the disorders and the not uncommon existence of co-occurring psychiatric/behavioral or medical problems. These may predate or be a consequence of the substance use disorder(s). The most common comorbid condition for treatment is multiple drug use (e.g., cocaine, heroin, alcohol). Next, the psychological/psychiatric diagnoses of problematic drug use or dependence are not uncommon among individuals also diagnosed for schizophrenia, depression, posttraumatic stress disorder, etc. Indeed, observation of common symptoms associated with extreme drug use, for example, disorganization, paranoid ideation, hallucinations, may reveal existence of the other psychiatric condition. Increasing awareness of co-occurrence of other psychiatric conditions with substance use disorders has resulted in extensive research, discussion, and review of conceptualization of treatment. For example, should specialized single interventions be applied to each presenting condition or should integrated treatments be devised? Questions arise as to correlation, association, and causation. Did the substance use cause psychiatric illness or precipitate its onset and reveal its existence or a predisposition? Did the psychiatric illness predispose to drug use, perhaps as a means to self-medicate the underlying condition? Finally, in instances of severe drug use, medical consequences (e.g., respiratory depression, cardiovascular event, accident-induced trauma) rather than psychiatric symptoms may lead to identification of problematic drug use and need for treatment.

Critical in establishing treatment strategies and regimens is understanding that the substance use disorder is the consequence of multiple determinants, some amenable to manipulation or intervention, others not. As with forms of some other common conditions, for example, hypertension, diabetes, obesity, a complex interplay of genetic, biological, behavioral, social, and other environmental factors contributes to the observed disease. However, limits must exist on diagnosis and treatment. Thus, while some patients present with

reasonably stable life styles, educational backgrounds, and work histories, others using the same drugs may have limited education and skills. In both cases, systematic focus on diagnosed conditions is essential. However, the myriad collateral circumstances are the purview of other domains (e.g., social service networks, job counselors, educational systems), which can be addressed more effectively, for example, by adept case managers and other experts, rather than health care providers. The two historical models continue to influence the perspective and goals of treatment. Underpinning an integrative behavioral learning perspective is the concept that just as one learns other behaviors (reading, using the internet, sports), one learns to use drugs. The behavior is maintained by biological, behavioral, and social rewards or reinforcers. The treatment strategy is establishment or learning of other behaviors sustained by non-drug reinforcers, while drug seeking and taking are diminished or eliminated. The disease model assumes a “chronic relapsing disease” evidenced when a predisposed individual is exposed to and begins using psychoactive drugs; complete and perpetual abstinence is the goal and relapse is always imminent (Higgins 1997). To the extent that biology underlies behavior, the integrated learning model accounts for genetic and biological differences but focuses on new behaviors and reinforcers rather than the chronicity of disease.

Treatment Settings, Dose, and Costs

Distinct from the intervention is the setting or environment in which treatment is provided. Settings include outpatient (e.g., office, clinics, emergency rooms), inpatient (e.g., hospital facilities), and residential (e.g., community-like living arrangements). The opportunity for access to patients is increased in controlled residential settings and some supplement the professionally driven therapy with a variety of “self-help” activities such as group discussions. Still others may have options for attending work or school. However, many of the same fundamental interventions can be applied in any of these settings. For example, a course of cognitive behavior therapy could be applied weekly in a mental health care

practitioner’s office, an inpatient facility, a residential care setting, or for that matter a prison. Another dimension of “setting” is whether care is provided to a single patient by a therapist, or with a group of patients, having the therapist interacting with individual members and also facilitating discussion among members. Attempts to match individuals to particular settings for treatment have been flawed and generally ineffective. For example, no data point to advantages of inpatient compared to outpatient care, regardless of severity for treatment of the behavior of substance use itself.

Similarly distinct is the actual amount or “dose” of intervention. Inpatient settings in which the patient resides continuously for days or weeks do not necessarily deliver more, or more efficacious therapeutic care than treatment delivered to a patient residing at home and functioning in her or his natural environment while receiving office-based care a few hours a week. For example, while inpatient or residential care may shield a patient from access to drugs, including alcohol and nicotine, it also prevents them from having exposure to the very environments in which it will be necessary to engage in life without problematic drug use; this exposure is both essential and therapeutic. As an aside, inpatient and residential care are extremely costly strategies that are well beyond the resources of most individuals and, with increasing health cost burdens for society, will be of diminishing importance except in unusual circumstances.

Evaluation and Monitoring

Drug use severity, as determined by substance used, frequency and amount of use, may be critical to determining treatment required. Thorough diagnostics and history determination permit tailoring treatment. An interview method termed Timeline Follow Back (Sobell et al. 1986) permits careful structuring of a history of use. The accepted diagnostic interviews conforming to elements of the DSM or ICD criteria are necessary to determine severity, existence of comorbid conditions, and plausible treatment plans. A collateral finding in many studies of therapeutic interventions for substance use disorders is that

individuals presenting with less severe conditions are more successful in treatment. For example, individuals who on entry for evaluation have negative biological screening tests for the drug used (see below) are more likely to continue successfully for a full course of treatment. Comorbid conditions and individual differences in a range of social and environmental circumstances must always be considered.

Both at intake and during treatment, objective measures of determining current use are essential. For alcohol use, this may be a breath test or urine screen. Tobacco smoking can be readily determined using CO monitoring while other tobacco use can be monitored with saliva or urine screens for cotinine, primary metabolite of nicotine. Virtually all other drug use can be monitored with simple and widely available urine screen procedures and this is essential, much as regular blood pressure evaluation is critical in treatment of hypertension or glucose level monitoring is critical to diabetes treatment.

Interventions: Behavioral, Pharmacological, and Combined

Behavioral therapy/psychotherapy and pharmacotherapy are the two broad classes of intervention applied to psychiatric disorders including substance use disorders. Current science points to remarkably effective interventions for specific types of substance use disorders, limited efficacy for some forms of substance use disorders, and for others, little efficacy or even exacerbation of drug use (e.g., olanzapine and cocaine use).

Some therapies are designed primarily to promote understanding of an existing problem or motivate entry into more extended or intensive treatment (e.g., motivational enhancement therapy). Other treatments are intended to provide a systematic course of intervention addressing the gamut of problems linked to substance use disorder and cessation of use (e.g., cognitive behavior therapy, contingency management). Still other interventions are composites with elements incorporated from a number of conceptual and pragmatic frameworks (e.g., community reinforcement approach, matrix model).

There is a clear need to distinguish between treatment of acute drug-related symptoms, notably withdrawal syndromes, and the complex behaviors of drug seeking and drug taking. A patient can achieve a “drug free” state within days by enforced abstinence. Sleep patterns and other biological functions and a variety of disrupted behaviors may stabilize within days or weeks. This normalization does not directly address the problems of drug seeking and drug use; however, for a small minority of individuals, a period of abstinence/cessation, however achieved, may be sufficient. Even this observation may be confounded since these individuals often undergo repeated cessation attempts before achieving behavioral change. For most, some supplemental intervention, ranging from brief, structured therapies to multiple structured sessions, will be required at some point in the drug use career to attain meaningful beneficial outcomes. Indeed, some scientists conceptualize substance use disorders as chronic for many individuals, requiring ongoing treatment and support, similar to obesity (McLellan 2002).

There are several behavioral, or psychotherapy, interventions for which strong supporting data of efficacy exist. One is cognitive behavior therapy; another is contingency management sometimes applied within the broader community-based reinforcement approach; and a third encompassing a range of theoretical frameworks entails variants of “talk therapy.” Components or variants exist with labels such as “the matrix model” (Shoptaw et al. 1994), “relapse prevention,” and “dialectical behavior therapy.” Diverse techniques (e.g., hypnotism, acupuncture) have been incorporated into treatment models with little evidence of added efficacy compared to well-constructed behavioral therapies. All effective non-pharmacological therapies ultimately focus on behavior and thought directed at minimizing or eliminating drug use while increasing the frequency of a range of socially appropriate constructive behaviors. Among adults, these goals are more readily achieved when the individual arrives at therapy with an age and ability appropriate set of social skills, training, job history, and experience. Still, there are times when

additional focused therapeutic elements may be included, for example, parenting or marital counseling.

In the realm of pharmacotherapy, opiate replacement therapy (methadone, buprenorphine) provides a clear example of robust and effective treatment applicable to use and dependence ranging from iv heroin use to oral oxycodone use. Some promising data suggest potential efficacy of a similar replacement, or agonist-like strategy for stimulant dependence though there are currently no FDA-approved medications. Possible substitute medications for stimulant dependence include amphetamine analogs. Similarly, while there are currently no approved medications for treatment of marijuana use and dependence, a promising agent that represents substitution or replacement, tetrahydrocannabinol/cannabidiol, is currently being evaluated. A variety of strategies addressing different behaviors and pharmacological mechanisms have been applied to alcohol use (disulfiram, benzodiazepines, naltrexone, acamprosate) with greater or lesser efficacy. Similarly, several medications (nicotine preparations, bupropion, varenicline) have been shown to have varying degrees, but nevertheless modest effectiveness in treatment of tobacco use and nicotine dependence. There are several nicotine preparations (gum or polacrilex, lozenges, nasal spray, patches, inhalers) that alone produce relatively modest rates of cessation across broad populations but have meaningful public health consequences due to the prevalence of tobacco use and the costs of associated diseases. Disulfiram for alcohol dependence has a unique profile: through metabolic interference, it results in high levels of acetaldehyde and induced severe discomfort; integrated into a well-controlled regimen, it can be very effective but is not widely used. Naltrexone and acamprosate appear to have modest effects in reducing alcohol intake or sustaining abstinence. For individuals whose alcohol use is found to be highly correlated with diagnoses of comorbid depression or anxiety, effective treatment may stem from administration of anxiolytics or antidepressants. In some instances, use of two or more medications may be a useful therapeutic approach. A dilemma across most medical and psychiatric is

nonadherence or noncompliance with medication regimens. This is particularly true for antagonist medications such as disulfiram and naltrexone.

Ultimately, for many instances of substance use disorders, benefit of joint action of concurrently applied behavioral and pharmacological interventions may be important in all but the least severe cases. This is analogous to treatment of other disorders with clear biological and behavioral determinants. For example, hypertension may be treated with combined behavioral (e.g., exercise, diet) and pharmacological (e.g., ACE inhibitors) interventions. Similarly, depression, while amenable to both behavioral and pharmacological treatments, may be most effectively treated with a combination (e.g., CBT and SSRIs). The need for continuing intervention in treatment of substance use disorders may vary. For example, pharmacotherapy with an effective course of behavior therapy establishing (or reestablishing) alternative behaviors and eliminating drug use may still entail long-term maintenance pharmacotherapy. The latter may be necessitated by biological perturbations that predated or were a consequence of drug use. Here continued medication sustains biological and behavioral stability that would otherwise not be achieved or would only continue with unnecessary behavioral, emotional, or biological burden on the patient. Exemplifying this is treatment of heroin dependence. On completing initial behavioral treatment combined with methadone or buprenorphine maintenance, some patients may successfully undergo gradual reduction in medication dose. In other instances, perhaps more severe and involving many years of heroin use, maintenance pharmacotherapy for years or decades is desirable and warranted. The need for maintenance may reside in engrained perturbations in biology and behavior, resulting from prolonged heroin use. Generally, the costs and inconvenience of maintenance replacement are outweighed by nearly inevitable return to drug dependence and associated dire psychosocial and medical consequences when abstinence without further treatment is undertaken.

Often discussed is the concept of "relapse," "return to drug use," or in some instances, "development of new drug use." Early in treatment

(often within days but up to 3–6 months), there may be graded but rapid return to previous baseline levels of use. Some individuals may use a drug a few times, for example, smoke a cigarette, or consume alcohol. They may even engage in periodic use, heavy use, or a binge, but through sustained therapy eventually refrain from further use. The likelihood of return to use greatly decreases after a year. Confounding these general observations are individuals who enter treatment and never use the drug again as well as those who are abstinent for years and then resume use. In some cases, individuals treated for heavy use, for example, heavy alcohol drinking, may resume nominal social use without return to heavy drinking. Here the legal status of a drug is germane. Treatment with a goal of abstinence from cocaine or heroin use has positive implications beyond those related to reducing impairment from drug effects, for example, no risk of incarceration. For those engaged in heavy alcohol use, reduced use may be a realistic, achievable, beneficial goal. However, as with cigarette smoking, the entrenched habitual behavior combined with reinforcing effects of the drug may preclude a goal of moderation. Finally, a small subset of individuals who have well-established behaviors of problematic use may be successfully treated for use of one drug, but at some later date develop similarly problematic use of a different drug. This would reflect reestablishment of drug seeking and taking, but not “relapse” as the word is commonly used. As with any complex disorder with multiple determinants, the core constellation of symptoms, here drug seeking and drug taking, can be addressed directly with supplemental specialty intervention when appropriate.

References and Readings

- Higgins, S. T. (1997). Applying learning and conditioning theory to the treatment of alcohol and cocaine abuse. In B. Johnson & J. Roache (Eds.), *Drug addiction and its treatment* (pp. 367–386). Philadelphia: Lippencott-Raven.
- McLellan, A. T. (2002). Have we evaluated addiction treatment correctly? Implications from a chronic care perspective. *Addiction*, 97(3), 249–252.
- Shoptaw, S., Rawson, R. A., McCann, M. J., & Obert, J. L. (1994). The matrix model of outpatient stimulant abuse

treatment: Evidence of efficacy. *Journal of Addictive Diseases*, 13(4), 129–141.

- Sobell, M. B., Sobell, L. C., Klajner, F., Pavan, D., & Basian, E. (1986). The reliability of a timeline method for assessing normal drinker college students' recent drinking history: Utility for alcohol research. *Addictive Behaviors*, 11(2), 149–161.

Substance Dependence

- [Alcohol Abuse and Dependence](#)

Substance H

- [Histamine](#)

Substance Use Disorders

- [Dependence, Drug](#)

Success

- [Attribution Theory](#)

Successful Aging

Barbara Resnick
School of Nursing, University of Maryland,
Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Optimal aging](#)

Definition

Successful aging has been addressed and discussed repeatedly with at least 29 different

definitions articulated from both cross-sectional and longitudinal research studies. Common themes across all of this work describe successful aging as the absence of physical and mental disability. Generally, successful aging is noted to occur when the individual has perceived “good health.”

Description

Successful Aging

The concept of successful aging emerged in the late 1980s and early 1990s as a departure from the loss-focused geriatric and gerontological research that preceded the concept. In their groundbreaking 1987 article, *Human Aging: Usual and Successful*, Rowe and Kahn argued that the cognitive and physiological losses documented in the literature as age-related changes were mischaracterizations of the natural aging process. “We believe that the role of aging per se in these losses has often been overstated and that a major component of many age-associated declines can be explained in terms of lifestyle, habits, diet, and an array of psychosocial factors extrinsic to the aging process.”

Definition

Successful aging has been addressed and there are at least 29 different definitions articulated from both cross-sectional and longitudinal research studies. Common themes across all of this work consider successful aging as the absence of physical and mental disability and perceived “good health.” In addition, successful aging has increasingly been associated with resilience and maintenance of an active lifestyle and having good supportive relationships. Everyone has the opportunity to age successfully. From the outside, objectively, this may look very different across people. For some, aging successfully is still working at age 98. For others, it is sitting quietly in a room in assisted living and reliving past memories reviewing very rich, fulfilling lives.

More important than the absolute state of health of the individual is the notion of one’s conceptualization and acceptance of his or her health status. Acceptance of changes and optimization of physical and mental health are the most

critical aspects of aging successfully. Changes that occur as part of normal aging must be accepted, addressed, and adjusted to. Vision changes that occur starting around age 40 provide the first experience adults have to cope with and age successfully. Successful adaptation includes buying reading glasses over the counter as needed or getting eye examinations and vision testing done and getting new glasses! Increasingly baby boomers carry small lights with magnification to read restaurant menus, telephone books, and other pertinent information. Other changes, such as painful degenerative joint disease, are not so easily or commonly recognized, accepted, and adjusted to. It is being able to accept and adjust to changes that are at the core of successful aging.

As noted, resilience is central to successful aging. The word “resilience” comes from the Latin word “salire,” which means to spring up and the word “resilire” means to spring back. Resilience, therefore, refers to the capacity to spring back from a physical, emotional, financial, or social challenge. Being resilient indicates that the individual has the human ability to adapt in the face of tragedy, trauma, adversity, hardship, and ongoing significant life stressors. Resilient individuals are able to adapt to all types of situations, especially with regard to social functioning, morale, and somatic health, and are less likely to succumb to illness. That is, a resilient individual may still get ill but will respond in a way in which he or she optimizes recovery, maintenance, or even death in a way that defines resilience. Resilience, as a component of the individual’s personality, develops and changes over time through ongoing experiences with the physical and social environment. Resilience can, therefore, be perceived as a dynamic process that is influenced by life events and challenges. Increasingly, there is evidence that resilience is related to motivation, specifically the motivation to age successfully and to recover from physical or psychological traumatic events.

Resilience research has helped to uncover the many factors or qualities within individuals that are associated with resilience. These include such things as positive interpersonal relationships, incorporating social connectedness with a willingness to extend oneself to others, strong internal

resources, having an optimistic or positive affect, keeping things in perspective, setting goals and taking steps to achieve those goals, high self-esteem, high self-efficacy, determination, and spirituality which includes purpose of life, religiousness or a belief in a higher power, creativity, humor, and a sense of curiosity. Strengthening any of these factors will help individuals to become more resilient when faced with a challenge.

Older women who have successfully recovered from orthopedic or other stressful events describe themselves as resilient and determined and tend to have better function, mood, and quality of life than those who are less resilient. These are the women who at 97 engage in rehabilitation services post-hip fracture to their fullest ability and then following discharge home are insistent on getting back on their exercise equipment at the gym. Resilience has also been associated with adjustments following the diagnosis of dementia, widowhood, management of chronic pain, and overall adjustment to the stressors associated with aging. Thus, it is through resilience he or she adjusts, adapts, and addresses the physical, emotional, and mental challenges that are to be anticipated as one ages.

Older adults accrue a lifetime of experiences through which resilience develops. Resilient individuals generally age successfully. A resilient older adult is exemplified by such things as accepting the loss of a spouse; symptoms associated with an acute medical event; or a fracture and responding with determination to recover and grow through the experience. He or she does not waste energy on complaining about what has happened but rather on pooling the resources needed to overcome the challenging event.

Resilience alone is not sufficient to assure successful aging. It is believed that all individuals have the innate ability to be resilient and return to homeostasis successfully and to transform, change, and grow, regardless of age. He or she must, however, summon motivation in the face of adversity to be resilient. Thus, motivation may be present independent of resilience, but resilience depends on being motivated to successfully reintegrate. Resilient reintegration requires increased energy, or motivation, for resilience to successfully occur.

Motivation comes from within and is based on an inner urge that moves or prompts a person to action. This is in contrast to resilience which is stimulated in response to adversity or challenge. Motivation refers to the need, drive, or desire to act in a certain way to achieve a certain end. We do not need to be challenged to be motivated. We do have to be motivated to respond, with resilience, to a challenging event. There are some factors that are associated with both resilience and motivation such as determination, self-efficacy, being open and willing to experience new things, and social supports. The capacity to be resilient and/or motivated is present in everyone and choices are made in the face of routine and challenging situations to be motivated and/or resilient. Motivation related to engaging in physical activities may be high for some individuals while others are motivated to sit in a chair or lie in a bed. Conversely, some older adults are motivated to take classes in a senior center while others refuse to even consider this and are motivated to sit daily and watch television alone. Some individuals are resilient with regard to physical challenges but cannot cope with challenges associated with finances or cognitive changes. Thus, there are traits and characteristics of individuals associated with resilience and motivation as well as external factors that can impact resilience and motivation as individuals respond to challenges or activities within their lives.

Resilience, unlike motivation, relies on the individual experiencing a life challenge or some type of adversity. These challenges may be developmental challenges such as those associated with normal aging (e.g., vision changes), or they may be social and/or economic challenges such as those experienced by the loss of employment, the loss of a spouse, or a move into an assisted living facility. Conversely, motivation is not dependent on an adverse event or challenge; rather motivation is a necessary component for all activity. Routine personal care activities such as bathing and dressing require motivation, as do making plans to have dinner with a friend or play cards. Resilience would be required, however, when he or she is faced with bathing and dressing challenges following a wrist fracture.

Keys to Aging Well

An individual has the ability to be resilient as long as he or she is motivated to do so. The first step in the process is to engage in appropriate health promotion activities, particularly exercise. Due to the changes that can occur with aging, underlying physical capability will vary among older individuals. For some individuals, maintaining a regular exercise program will involve running for 40 min on the treadmill. For others, it may be walking within their apartment building or long-term care facility, doing a sitting exercise program, or swimming or walking in the water. There is, however, an exercise program that matches each individual's needs. This is critically important to appreciate and recognize. The benefit of physical activity for older adults should not focus on preventing cardiovascular disease and managing blood pressure to prevent a stroke. Rather, it should be geared toward the mental health benefits associated with physical activity as well as the sense of achievement and physical benefit of maintaining function and improving balance and strength.

Successful Aging Guidelines

Meta-analytic reviews provide strong evidence to support the many benefits of exercise including decreased risk of coronary heart disease and stroke; decreased progression of degenerative joint disease; prevention of osteoporosis of the lumbar spine; decreased incidences of falls; increased gait speed if the activity is of sufficient intensity and dosage; improved cognitive function in sedentary older adults and in those with dementia; a modest benefit in quality of life for frail older adults; and a positive association with successful aging. Current guidelines from the American College of Sports Medicine and the American Heart Association recommend that all older adults engage in moderately intense aerobic exercise for 30 min daily at least 5 days a week or vigorous exercise 20 min a day, 3 days a week. In addition, each should do eight to ten strength training exercises, 10–15 repetitions of each exercise two to three times per week. These exercises are well described in a book published by the National Institute of Aging, *Exercise: A Guide from the*

National Institute of Aging. For older adults at risk for falling, balance exercise is also recommended. It is not known, however, what dose of exercise is needed for each individual to age successfully. For some, a walk to get the mail is sufficient psychologically to constitute an exercise program. For others, one activity a day (e.g., playing bridge, going to dinner) makes them feel successful and engaged. The focus should be on helping the individual understand what successful aging means to them and helping them develop a plan to achieve that.

Unfortunately, all too many older adults assume that they cannot exercise or engage actively in routine life activities and social activities because of underlying disease, pain, shortness of breath, or other limiting symptoms. Health outcomes can be achieved at even relatively low levels of exercise intensity, particularly for those who have previously been sedentary. Thus, initiation of physical activity even at 1-min intervals is an important step to successful aging. Adjustments can be made to engage them in social activities via chair positioning that will help them maintain independence in public or remain comfortable to sit for a game of bridge or an evening eating with friends. Solving these challenges is part of the necessary resilience needed to age successfully. Health-care providers can serve as sources to help with overcoming such challenges and barriers.

In addition to physical activity, mental stimulation may also be important for successful aging. In a recent meta-analysis, there was not statistical support to indicate that cognitive stimulation through structured programs prevents or slows the progression of Alzheimer's disease. The current research, however, is limited by a lack of consensus on what constitutes the most effective type of cognitive training, insufficient follow-up times, a lack of matched active controls, and few outcome measures showing changes in daily functioning, global cognitive skills, or a decrease in disease progression. Keeping actively engaged mentally through volunteer work or activities within one's own living space certainly will build resilience and likewise assure successful aging. Opportunities abound for such activities,

however, as with physical activity the older individual must be motivated to initiate and engage in these activities.

Older adults should be encouraged to move beyond their level of comfort and engage in new and different activities to stimulate their minds and their bodies. If playing bridge or doing a crossword puzzle is lifelong acquired skill, newer activities such as learning a new language or playing an instrument will provide important mind stimulation and encourage plasticity and growth.

The Health-Care Provider's Role in Successful Aging

Informing young and older adults about the ways in which to age successfully is the first step toward facilitating successful aging for any individual. There are ways in which to measure resilience and motivation, although at a clinical level they will not necessarily direct interventions. Thus, the best approach is to motivate individuals toward resilient behaviors.

Cross-References

- [Aging](#)
- [Elderly](#)
- [Exercise](#)
- [Geriatric Medicine](#)
- [Gerontology](#)
- [Physical Activity](#)

References and Readings

- Boardman, J., Blalock, C., & Button, T. (2008). Sex differences in the heritability of resilience. *Twin Research and Human Genetics*, 11(1), 12–27.
- Bonanno, G., Galea, S., Bucciarelli, A., & Vlahov, D. (2007). What predicts psychological resilience after disaster? The role of demographics, resources, and life stress. *Death Studies*, 31(10), 863–883.
- Chow, S., Hamagani, F., & Nesselroade, J. (2007). Age differences in dynamical emotion-cognition linkages. *Psychology and Aging*, 22(4), 765–780.
- Hardy, S., Concato, J., & Gill, T. (2002). Stressful life events among community-living older persons. *The Journal of General Internal Medicine*, 17(11), 832–838.
- Hardy, S., Concato, J., & Gill, T. (2004). Resilience of community-dwelling older persons. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 52(2), 257–262.
- Harris, P. (2008). Another wrinkle in the debate about successful aging: The undervalued concept of resilience and the lived experience of dementia. *International Journal of Aging and Human Development*, 67(1), 43–61.
- Hegney, D., Buikstra, E., Baker, P., Rogers-Clark, C., Pearce, S., Ross, H., et al. (2007). Individual resilience in rural people: A Queensland study, Australia. *Rural and Remote Health*, 7(4), 620–625.
- Hicks, G., Simonsick, E. M., Harris, T. B., Newman, A. B., Weiner, D. K., Nevitt, M. A., & Tykavsky, F. A. (2005). Trunk muscle composition as a predictor of reduced functional capacity in the health, aging and body composition study: The moderating role of back pain. *The Journal of Gerontology Series A, Biological Sciences and Medical Sciences*, 60(11), 1420–1424.
- Karoly, P., & Ruehlman, L. (2006). Psychological “resilience” and its correlates in chronic pain: Findings from a national community sample. *Pain*, 123(1–2), 90–97.
- Lee, H., Brown, S., Mitchell, M., & Schiraldi, G. (2008). Correlates of resilience in the face of adversity for Korean women immigrating to the US. *Journal of Immigrant and Minority Health*, 10(5), 415–422.
- O’Connell, R., & Mayo, J. (1998). The role of social factors in affective disorders: A review. *Hospital & Community Psychiatry*, 39, 842–851.
- Ong, A., Bergeman, C., Bisconti, T., & Wallace, K. (2006). Psychological resilience, positive emotions, and successful adaptation to stress in later life. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 91(4), 730–749.
- Resnick, B., Orwig, D., Zimmerman, S., Simpson, M., & Magaziner, J. (2005). The exercise plus program for older women post hip fracture: Participant perspectives. *The Gerontologist*, 45(4), 539–544.
- Rossi, N., Bisconti, T., & Bergeman, C. (2007). The role of dispositional resilience in regaining life satisfaction after the loss of a spouse. *Death Studies*, 31(10), 863–883.
- Sanders, A., Lim, S., & Sohn, W. (2008). Resilience to urban poverty: Theoretical and empirical considerations for population health. *American Journal of Public Health*, 98(6), 1101–1106.
- Wagnild, G., & Young, H. (1993). Development and psychometric evaluation of the resilience scale. *Journal of Nursing Measurement*, 1(2), 165–177.
- Werner, E., & Smith, R. (1992). *Overcoming the odds: High risk children from birth to adulthood*. Ithaca: Cornell University Press.

Sudden Cardiac Death

- [Cardiac Death](#)
- [Death, Sudden](#)

Suicidal Ideation, Thoughts

Orit Birnbaum-Weitzman¹ and Mariam Dum²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

²Jackson Memorial Hospital, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

Suicidal impulses; Suicidal thoughts

Definition

Suicidal ideation refers to thoughts or impulses of engaging in behavior intended to end one's life (Nock et al. 2008). Suicidal ideation should be distinguished from suicidal plan, which refers to the formulation of a specific method through which one intends to die, and from suicide attempt, which refers to an actual engagement in potentially self-injurious behavior in which there is at least some intent to die (Nock et al. 2008).

Description

Ongoing suicidal ideation is a chronic risk factor and has been considered predictive of suicidal behavior especially if accompanied with severe hopelessness, prior suicide attempts, not having a child under 18 years old living at home, and a history of alcohol and drug abuse (Tishler and Reiss 2009). Suicidal ideation represents an important phase in the suicidal process and often precedes suicide attempts or completed suicide. However, not all patients experiencing suicidal ideation attempt suicide (Weissman et al. 1999). While approximately 10–20% of the population across diverse countries report suicidal ideation and 3–5% have made a suicide attempt at some time in their life, only 0.01% will complete suicide (Kessler et al. 2005). Acute risk factors including severe anxiety, agitation, and severe anhedonia are most predictive of whether

someone will commit suicide in inpatients (Tishler and Reiss 2009; Bostwick and Rackley 2007).

Physical as well as mental health problems have been associated with suicidal ideation. Patients with chronic medical illnesses, such as HIV and cancer, and especially those experiencing physical pain are more likely to report suicidal thoughts (Tang and Crane 2006). Certain medical illnesses, such as neurological disorders and some cancers, appear to have higher rates of suicidal ideation and suicide compared to other medical disorders (Hugues and Kleespies 2001). A higher prevalence of suicidal ideation has been observed in patients experiencing pain associated with a variety of medical conditions including migraines, musculoskeletal pain, fibromyalgia, and arthritis (Tang and Crane 2006). Research suggests that the location and type of pain as well as the intensity and duration of the pain may have implications for the risk of suicidal ideation (Tang and Crane 2006). In addition, sleep-onset insomnia associated with pain is also a significant discriminator of the presence or absence of suicidal ideation (Tang and Crane 2006).

Research in the elderly suggests that physical illness plays an important role in suicidal ideation and behavior (Szanto et al. 2002). In the elderly with physical illness, untreated or undertreated physical pain, anticipatory anxiety regarding the progression of the physical illness, fear of dependence, and fear of burdening the family have been reported as the major contributing factors for suicidal ideation (Szanto et al. 2002). For all age groups, social isolation is considered another important risk factor that has been shown to be associated with suicidal ideation.

Sociodemographic factors including age and income level have also been associated with suicidal ideation (Kessler et al. 2005). In general, younger age, lack of education, and unemployment have been associated with higher rates of suicidal ideation and may represent an increased risk associated with social disadvantage (Nock et al. 2008). For all age groups, social isolation is considered another important risk factor that has

been shown to be associated with suicidal ideation (Van Orden et al. 2010).

Prior suicide attempts and the presence of a psychiatric disorder are the most consistently reported risk factors associated with suicidal ideation and behavior (Nock et al. 2008). Mood disorders such as anxiety and particularly depression significantly increase the risk of suicidal ideation in the general population and in medical patients in particular. Suicidal ideation has also been associated with other mental illnesses including severe anxiety, psychotic and personality disorders, and alcohol and substance abuse (Van Orden et al. 2010). A number of psychological processes have been found to exacerbate suicidal ideation. Specifically, findings from cross-sectional as well as longitudinal studies have attested to the role of hopelessness and helplessness, feelings of defeat and entrapment, deficits in problem solving abilities, and avoidant coping in the development of suicidal ideation (Van Orden et al. 2010; Nock et al. 2008; Szanto et al. 2002).

The presence of suicidal ideation in a clinical or medical setting typically requires a thorough risk assessment including chronic and acute risk factors as well as the frequency, intensity, and duration of suicidal thoughts (see Tishler and Reiss 2009 for prevention in medical settings).

References and Readings

- Kessler, R. C., Berglund, P., Borges, G., Nocke, M., & Wang, P. S. (2005). Trends in suicide ideation, plans, gestures, and attempts in the United States, 1990–1992 to 2001–2003. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 293, 2487–2495.
- Nock, M. K., Borges, G., Bromet, E. J., Cha, C. B., Kessler, R. C., & Lee, S. (2008). Suicide and suicidal behavior. *Epidemiologic Reviews*, 30, 133–154.
- Szanto, K., Gildengers, A., Mulsant, B. H., Brown, G., Alexopoulos, G. S., & Reynolds, C. F. (2002). Identification of suicidal ideation and prevention of suicidal behavior in the elderly. *Drugs & Aging*, 19, 11–24.
- Tang, N. K., & Crane, C. (2006). Suicidality in chronic pain: A review of the prevalence, risk factors, and psychological links. *Psychological Medicine*, 36, 575–586.
- Tishler, C. L., & Reiss, N. S. (2009). Inpatient suicide: Preventing a common sentinel event. *General Hospital Psychiatry*, 31, 103–109.
- Van Orden, K. A., Witte, T. K., Cukrowicz, K. C., Braithwaite, S. R., Selby, E. A., & Joiner, T. E. (2010). The interpersonal theory of suicide. *Psychological Review*, 117, 575–600.
- Weissman, M. M., Bland, R. C., Canino, G. J., Greenwald, S., Hwu, H. G., Joyce, P. R., et al. (1999). Prevalence of suicide ideation and suicide attempts in nine countries. *Psychological Medicine*, 29, 9–17.

Suicidal Impulses

► [Suicidal Ideation, Thoughts](#)

Suicidal Thoughts

► [Suicidal Ideation, Thoughts](#)

Suicide

Mariam Dum¹ and Orit Birnbaum-Weitzman²

¹Jackson Memorial Hospital, Miami, FL, USA

²Department of Psychology, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Deliberate self-harm](#); [Self-directed violence](#); [Self-Inflicted injurious behavior](#); [Self-murder](#)

Definition

Suicide is the act of intentionally ending one's own life. The definition of suicide reflects three important components (Rudd et al. 2001): (a) that the person died, (b) that the person's behavior caused death, and (c) that the person intended to cause his or her own death. While intentionality is the most precise characteristic that distinguishes those who have died by suicide and those who had died by other causes, its assessment remains controversial.

Description

Suicide is a major public health problem, and reports from the World Health Organization (WHO) indicate that suicide is projected to become an increasingly important contributor to the global burden of disease over the coming decades. Suicide is the 11th leading cause of death among all ages in the United States and the 13th leading cause of death worldwide. Suicide rates vary significantly cross-nationally (Center for Disease Control and Prevention 2007). In general, rates are highest in Eastern Europe and lowest in Central and South America, with the United States, Western Europe, and Asia falling in the middle. Epidemiological surveys showed that 2.7% of the US population has made a suicide attempt (Nock et al. 2008). Most individuals that attempt suicide die during their first suicide attempt (Nock et al. 2008). Within medical settings, according to Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations (JCAHO 2010), suicide ranks among the five top most frequent sentinel events in hospitals. Seeking help from mental health professionals can assist in the reduction of distressing psychological symptoms. However, according to a recent review, while 45% of people who successfully committed suicide contacted a primary care provider within 1 month of their death, only 20% contacted mental health services within the same time period (Lauma et al. 2002).

Rudd et al. (2001) provide in their book a good description on a number of psychiatric, psychological, demographic, and biological variables have been recognized as suicide risk factors. The presence of one or more psychiatric problem is a central variable explaining suicide acts. At least 90% of individuals who have died from suicide have had at least one psychiatric disturbance. In addition, past suicide attempts, history of childhood abuse, and family history of suicide are associated with increased risk of suicide. Other variables that contribute to suicide risk are psychological variables, such as hopelessness, impulsivity, problem-solving deficits, and perfectionism. In terms of demographic variables, men are more likely to die by suicide than are women.

Death by suicide is more common in older, lower socioeconomic status, and veterans. Similarly, non-Hispanic White individuals have a higher rate of suicide than individuals from other ethnical background. In addition, individuals who are unemployed, single, divorced, or widowed are also at a higher risk. Biological variables have also been found to be associated with suicide behaviors. Family, twin, and adoption studies have found evidence for heritable risk of suicidality. Biological factors related to lower levels of serotonin metabolites in the cerebrospinal fluid, higher serotonin receptor binding in platelets, and fewer presynaptic serotonin transporter sites were found in individuals who died by suicide. In addition, biological factors that inhibit impulsive behaviors, such as greater postsynaptic serotonin receptors in specific brain areas, such as the prefrontal cortex, have been associated with suicide behaviors.

The high rate of medical illness among individuals who committed suicide shows that both mental disorders and physical illness are important risk factors. Research shows variability in the risk of suicide according to the type of medical diagnosis. According to Hughes and Kleespies (2001), medical illnesses such as AIDS, cancer, chronic pain, end-stage renal diseases, severe neurological disorders, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease have been correlated with increased risk of suicide. In contrast, they reported that other medical conditions including sclerosis, heart transplant, hypertension, rheumatoid arthritis, neoplasms, and cervix and prostate cancer have not been associated with increased risk. Studies have shown that at least one quarter of inpatients that have committed suicide in medical/surgical units did not report any previous psychiatric history (JCAHO 2010). Furthermore, suicide among these patients tends to happen within the first 2 weeks of their initial diagnosis (JCAHO 2010). This highlights the need of assessing suicidality in individuals who have chronic medical problems or who have been recently diagnosed with a life-threatening illness. Additionally, significant differences have been found between individuals who have completed suicide in inpatient psychiatric facilities and inpatient medical units. According to these studies, individuals

who committed suicide in medical units tend to be older, their death did not include careful planning, and their means of committing suicide were significantly more violent (Nock et al. 2008).

In contrast to the vast literature on variables associated with suicide, there are some studies that have identified protective factors. Protective factors are those that decrease the probability of suicide in the presence of elevated risk. Rudd et al. (2001) summarized some of the most consistent findings in the literature are supportive social network or family, reasons for living, and religious beliefs. Being pregnant and having young children in the home are also protective against suicide.

Clinical providers face the difficulty of recognizing individuals at risk of committing suicide as no single factor is sufficient to trigger or protect an individual from a suicidal act. Suicide warning signs are the earliest detectable signs or symptoms that indicate high risk for suicide in the near term (i.e., within minutes, hours, or days before the suicidal act; Rudd et al. 2001). They provide immediate cues to loved ones or clinical providers of the imminent risk of attempting to end one's life. Some suicide warning signs include hopelessness, anger, dramatic changes in mood, acting recklessly or engaging in risky activities, reports of feeling trapped, increased alcohol or drug use, withdrawal from loved ones, agitation or anxiety, and drastic sleep changes (Rudd et al. 2001).

Due to the difficulty of preventing and recognizing suicide, the assessment of suicide risk should be completed in a standardized and systematic way. In addition to assessing risk and protective factors, as well as warning signs to understand the risk level of an individual, suicide ideation, suicide plan, intent to act, previous suicide attempts, and the medical lethality of means need to be considered. When assessing suicide risk, it is important to differentiate between chronic risk and acute risk (Rudd et al. 2001). Chronic risk involves the presence of risk factors. Acute risk is determined by suicide ideation, intention, and a suicide plan in combination with warning signs. Acute risk can be further classified into low, moderate, and high. Low acute risk involves the presence of suicide thoughts with

no specific plan, intent, or behavior. Moderate acute risk involves the presence of suicide ideation and a plan without intent or behavior. High acute risk refers to the presence of persistent suicide ideation and a specific plan with the intent to die.

References and Readings

- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2007). Web-based injury statistics query and reporting system (WISQARS). Retrieved June 20, 2011, from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Injury and Prevention Control Website: <http://www.cdc.gov/ncipc/WISQARS>
- Hughes, D., & Kleespies, P. (2001). Suicide in the medically ill. *Suicide and Life Threatening Behaviors*, 31, 48–59.
- Joint Commission on Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations. (2010). *Sentinel event statistics data*. Retrieved June 20, 2011, from the Joint Commission Website: http://www.jointcommission.org/sentinel_event_statistics_quarterly/
- Lauma, J. B., Martin, C. E., & Pearson, J. L. (2002). Contact with mental health and primary care providers before suicide: A review of the evidence. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 159(6), 909–916.
- Nock, M. K., Borges, G., Bromet, E. J., Cha, C. B., Kessler, R. C., & Lee, S. (2008). Suicide and Suicidal Behavior. *Epidemiologic Reviews*, 30, 133–154.
- Rudd, M. D., Joiner, T., & Rajab, M. H. (2001). *Treating suicide behavior: An affective, time-limited approach*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Wenzel, A., Brown, G. K., & Beck, A. T. (2009). *Cognitive therapy for suicide patients: Scientific and clinical applications*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Suicide Risk, Suicide Risk Factors

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Definition

Death from suicide in 1998 was ranked by the World Health Organization (WHO) as the 12th

leading cause of mortality worldwide. Suicide is the cause of death of one million people a year worldwide (Lineberry 2009). Suicide has been committed via several methods, which vary across geographic regions (Ajdacic-Gross et al. 2008). It is a main cause of death in later adolescence (ages 15–24 years; Shields et al. 2006).

The main difficulty in suicide prevention is its prediction because it constitutes a rare event and because of the multiple risk factors of suicide. These include situational factors such as social stressors and life events (e.g., unemployment, poverty), psychological factors such as hopelessness and hostility, biological factors (e.g., reduced brain-derived neurotrophic factor, protein kinase A; Dwivedi and Pandey 2011), and mere access to means of suicide (e.g., arms). One main difficulty in predicting suicidal behavior is the reliance on self-reported instruments, where people either conceal their real replies or are unaware of them. Furthermore, most studies in this domain have been retrospective and thus carry multiple sources of bias including survivors' and family members' attempt to find an explanation rather than the real cause.

Conversely, some recent studies have shown that assessing implicit associations between the “self” and “life” versus “death,” with the Implicit Association Test, predicted suicidal behavior beyond what was detected by traditional risk factors (e.g., depression, past attempts, clinicians' ratings; Nock et al. 2010). Similarly, attention biases to suicide-related words relative to neutral words, using the “emotional Stroop,” predicted suicidal behavior better than traditional risk factors (Cha et al. 2010). More research needs to utilize such instruments to identify additional suicide risk factors assessed in such indirect manners. Often, an accumulation of risk factors occurs, culminating in the tragic event. To conclude, explicit and implicit psychosocial factors and biological and situational factors serve as risk factors for suicide and need to be considered in the important attempt to prevent this severe health outcome. Given that recent studies mentioned here found that attention bias to suicide-related

concepts predicted risk of suicide, future studies may also wish to test whether targeting such biases via attention-modification training, which was found to reduce mental problems (e.g., Heeren et al. 2015), may also prevent suicide in people with known suicide risk factors.

Cross-References

- [Hopelessness](#)
- [Suicide](#)

References and Further Readings

- Ajdacic-Gross, V., Weiss, M. G., Ring, M., Hepp, U., Bopp, M., Gutzwiller, F., et al. (2008). Methods of suicide: International suicide patterns derived from the WHO mortality database. *Bulletin of the World Health Organization*, 86, 726–732.
- Cha, C. B., Najmi, S., Park, J. M., Finn, C. T., & Nock, M. K. (2010). Attentional bias toward suicide-related stimuli predicts suicidal behavior. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, 119, 616–622.
- Dwivedi, Y., & Pandey, G. N. (2011). Elucidating biological risk factors in suicide: Role of protein kinase A. *Progress in Neuropsychopharmacology and Biological Psychiatry*, 35, 831–841.
- Heeren, A., Mogoșe, C., Philippot, P., & McNally, R. J. (2015). Attention bias modification for social anxiety: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clinical Psychology Review*, 40, 76–90.
- Lineberry, T. (2009). Suicide rates in 2009. Do the economy and wars have an effect? *Minnesota Medicine*, 92, 49–52.
- Nock, M. K., Park, J. M., Finn, C. T., Deliberto, T. L., Dour, H. J., & Banaji, M. R. (2010). Measuring the suicidal mind: Implicit cognition predicts suicidal behavior. *Psychological Science*, 21, 511–517.
- Shields, L. B., Hunsaker, D. M., & Hunsaker, J. C., 3rd. (2006). Adolescent and young adult suicide: A 10-year retrospective review of Kentucky medical examiner cases. *Journal of Forensic Sciences*, 51, 874–879.

Sulcus

- [Brain, Cortex](#)

Summary Data

► Aggregate Data

Sun Exposure

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Definition

Sun exposure refers to the amount and manner in which people expose themselves to sunlight. This is a highly complex parameter for quantification, as it relies on self-report and its effects depend on multiple environmental and personal factors, as well as on frequency and location of exposure on the body. Most skin cancers are related to sun exposure, and a great majority of exposure to sun takes place before adulthood, making children and adolescents central target groups for assessment and prevention of sun exposure and skin cancers. Multiple studies have linked sun exposure to various cancers, particularly to skin cancer. In a review of 57 studies, intermittent sun exposure and history of burns were related to risk of melanoma. In contrast, high occupational sun exposure was inversely related to melanoma. Furthermore, factors such as country of study seem to moderate effects of sun exposure on melanoma, suggesting that effects of sun exposure depend on geographical factors as well. Indeed, geographic latitude synergistically interacts with history of sunburn in relation to occurrence of melanoma (Gandini et al. 2005). A major cause of melanoma due to sun exposure is ultraviolet light (Armstrong and Kricker 1993). Various questionnaires exist for assessing sun exposure, which consider the manner and duration of sun exposure, context (working vs. nonworking days), and cumulating measures in relation to various time frames (years or one's life time; Kricker et al. 2005). Importantly, to achieve greater test-retest reliability, it may be

beneficial to assess sun exposure in relation to activities (e.g., with family, at work) rather than in relation to specific time periods (Yu et al. 2009). In children, important social factors related to usage of sun protective agents include parental reminders (Donavan and Singh 1999). Furthermore, in children, sun protective behavior decreases with age though sun exposure increases with age, possibly reflecting greater peer pressure and reduced parental control in older children (Pichora and Marrett 2010). Thus, sun exposure reflects a major and complex cause of various skin cancers and must be properly assessed and better controlled in attempt to prevent skin cancers. Future studies may wish to identify the social pressures people face concerning sun exposure and the cognitive barriers people have about protection from sun exposure, which could be then targeted by “psychological inoculation,” an evidence-based cognitive method with far stronger effects than health education only (Duryea et al. 1990).

Cross-References

► Cancer Screening/Detection/Surveillance

References and Further Readings

- Armstrong, B. K., & Kricker, A. (1993). How much melanoma is caused by sun exposure? *Melanoma Research*, 3, 395–401.
- Donavan, D. T., & Singh, S. N. (1999). Sun-safety behavior among elementary school children: The role of knowledge, social norms, and parental involvement. *Psychological Reports*, 84, 831–836.
- Duryea, E. J., Ransom, M. V., & English, G. (1990). Psychological immunization: Theory, research, and current health behavior applications. *Health Education & Behavior*, 17(2), 169–178.
- Gandini, S., Sera, F., Cattaruzza, M. S., Pasquini, P., Picconi, O., Boyle, P., et al. (2005). Meta-analysis of risk factors for cutaneous melanoma: II. Sun exposure. *European Journal of Cancer*, 41, 45–60.
- Kricker, A., Vajdic, C. M., & Armstrong, B. K. (2005). Reliability and validity of a telephone questionnaire for estimating lifetime personal sun exposure in epidemiologic studies. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 14, 2427–2432.
- Pichora, E. C., & Marrett, L. D. (2010). Sun behaviour in Canadian children: Results of the 2006 national sun survey. *Canadian Journal of Public Health*, 101, 14–18.

Yu, C. L., Li, Y., Freedman, D. M., Fears, T. R., Kwok, R., Chodick, G., et al. (2009). Assessment of lifetime cumulative sun exposure using a self-administered questionnaire: Reliability of two approaches. *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers & Prevention*, 18, 464–471.

Supervisory Attentional System

► [Executive Function](#)

Supplication

► [Prayer](#)

Supportive Care

► [Palliative Care](#)

Suprachiasmatic Nucleus

► [Hypothalamus](#)

Supraoptic Nucleus

► [Hypothalamus](#)

Surgery

► [Cancer Treatment and Management](#)

Surgical Resection

► [Cancer Treatment and Management](#)

Surrogacy

Miranda Montrone¹ and Kerry Sherman²

¹Counselling Place, Glebe, Sydney, NSW, Australia

²Department of Psychology, Centre for Emotional Health, Macquarie University, Sydney, NSW, Australia

Synonyms

[ART](#), [Assisted reproductive technology](#); [Commissioning parent](#); [Cross-border reproductive care](#); [Egg donation](#); [Egg donor](#); [Embryo donation](#); [Gestational carrier](#); [ICSI](#); [Infertility](#); [Intended parent](#); [IVF](#); [Sperm donation](#); [Sperm donor](#); [Surrogate mother](#)

Definition

A surrogacy arrangement is one in which, before the child is conceived, the commissioning parent/s (also known as intended parent/s) and the surrogate mother (also known as gestational carrier, or birth mother) and her partner (if she has one) agree that the surrogate will become pregnant with the intention that the child will, at birth, be given into the care of the commissioning parent/s to raise as their own.

Description

Common reasons for surrogacy include absence of the uterus (such as hysterectomy for women or men without a female partner), congenital malformation of the uterus, or a medical condition that compromises pregnancy making it unsafe for the commissioning woman (intended mother) or her prospective baby. Surrogate conception may occur in a number of ways including where the genetic material is provided by both commissioning parents or by one only of them, by both the surrogate mother and her partner or by one only of them, or by third-party donors (egg, sperm, or

embryo) who are not involved in the actual surrogacy arrangement. A surrogacy arrangement can take the form of a natural process, through the surrogate's self-insemination, or occur at an in vitro fertilization (IVF) clinic through assisted reproductive technology. Surrogacy, as practiced worldwide, is primarily IVF or gestational surrogacy that does not involve any genetic material of the surrogate or her partner but may involve third-party donor gametes. Insemination surrogacy (also known as genetic, traditional, or partial surrogacy) is less common.

The availability and conditions of surrogacy arrangements vary according to the jurisdiction in which the arrangement takes place (Jadva 2016). For example, in the USA, gestational surrogacy is primarily undertaken through IVF clinics with the gestational carrier being financially compensated for her contractual participation in the surrogacy arrangement. In comparison, in countries such as Australia and New Zealand, only altruistic surrogacy is legally permitted, with mostly gestational surrogacy (Hammarberg et al. 2011). In the UK surrogacy is altruistic, with both gestational and genetic insemination surrogacy (Van den Akker 2007). Commercial surrogacy has also been available in a number of developing countries including India (Lamba et al. 2018), Thailand, Mexico, Cambodia, and more recently, Greece and Ukraine. In many of these countries, the commissioning parents mostly originate from the developed world, with the surrogates having significantly less agency over decisions in the surrogacy arrangement, with subsequent legal and ethical implications. One of the greatest challenges arises from this type of cross-border surrogacy where there is uncertainty regarding the status of the parent and the child, particularly when considering the legal aspects of citizenship (Crockin 2013).

Despite the conception process being relatively straightforward medically, the psychological and social implications of surrogacy are complex. Social relationships between the surrogate and commissioning parents vary from close family or friends, to those where there is no prior or anticipated subsequent, relationship between the surrogate and the child born of the surrogacy arrangement. For many intended parents, the

point of surrogacy may reflect years of physical, emotional, and financial stressors in the unsuccessful quest to conceive through IVF-type techniques. This, in turn, may lead the intended parents to be over vigilant and anxious about the surrogate's well-being throughout the pregnancy (Greenfeld 2014). It is critical that the capacity of the commissioning woman to manage the emotional challenges is considered prior to engaging in the surrogacy arrangement, including the challenges of having another woman carrying her baby. Potential conflicts may also arise between the intended parents and the surrogate from differences in values and preferences regarding diet, medications, delivery options, and even termination options, if required. Variations in the amount of contact that intended parents expect to have with the surrogate during the pregnancy and whether or not the surrogate will maintain contact antenatally can be sources of conflict, particularly as the expectations of all involved parties may fluctuate with changing circumstances surrounding the surrogacy. Trust is clearly a key factor underlying successful surrogacy arrangements, pointing to the need for adequate pre-surrogacy counselling and education for all involved parties (Fuchs and Berenson 2016). In best medical and psychological practice, counselling should address four key principles relating to the best interests of the child born of the surrogacy arrangement; the surrogate's ability to make free and informed decisions; the requirement that the surrogate be free of exploitation; and a requirement for legal clarity about the resulting parent-child relationship, including documented information of genetic and birth history (Hammarberg et al. 2011).

There is no universally agreed standard for implications counselling in surrogacy. Professional psychological counselling may be provided through a treating IVF clinic, or it may be provided by a mental health professional independent of the treating clinic. There may be a requirement for in-depth psychological assessment and screening such as is required in the USA for gestational carriers and egg (oocyte) donors (Fuchs and Berenson 2016). In some countries, such as Australia, there may be pre-surrogacy

psychosocial assessment of all parties to the surrogacy arrangement including the intended parents. In the UK pre-surrogacy counselling of all parties is recommended, but not mandated (Norton et al. 2015). Overall, there is more intensive and comprehensive attention to the psychosocial issues in countries such as the USA, UK, Australia, Canada, and New Zealand, with less being provided in countries such as Ukraine, Greece, Mexico, India, Thailand, and Cambodia.

With increasing uptake of surrogacy arrangements worldwide, there is a need to consider the short- and long-term outcomes for all parties concerned. In general, surrogates appear to score within the normal range on personality tests and to have medically and psychologically healthy pregnancies (Klock and Covington 2015). The greatest psychological challenge for surrogates appears to be at the time for the surrogate to hand over the child following the birth (Jadva 2016). Regarding the adjustment of children born of surrogates, one systematic review of 55 studies reported that by 10 years of age, these children had similar levels of psychological functioning as children naturally conceived and those conceived through assisted reproductive technology (ART) (Söderström-Anttila et al. 2016). The findings from one study of gay men parenting a child conceived through surrogacy further support the view that this practice has no adverse effects on child health outcomes (Carone et al. 2018). Moreover, it appears that disclosure to the child about the surrogacy arrangement is common in such families, reflecting a greater level of openness within the family than has been found in children conceived from other assisted third-party reproduction (Iliov et al. 2017). Despite a growing literature in this area, unfortunately there is limited high-quality research, with few studies providing adequate control groups and sample sizes and most studies having low-response rates questioning the generalizability of these findings (Söderström-Anttila et al. 2016). Clearly, there is an urgent need for more methodologically rigorous investigations regarding the psychosocial correlates and consequences of individuals involved in surrogacy arrangements.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Assisted Reproductive Technology](#)
- ▶ [Infertility](#)
- ▶ [Infertility and Assisted Reproduction: Psychosocial Aspects](#)
- ▶ [Infertility-Related Stress](#)
- ▶ [In Vitro Fertilization](#)
- ▶ [In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology](#)

References and Further Reading

- Carone, N., Lingiardi, V., Chirumbolo, A., & Baiocco, R. (2018). Italian gay father families formed by surrogacy: Parenting, stigmatization, and children's psychological adjustment. *Developmental Psychology*, 54(10), 1904–1916.
- Crockin, S. L. (2013). Growing families in a shrinking world: Legal and ethical challenges in cross-border surrogacy. *Reproductive Biomedicine Online*, 27(6), 733–741.
- Fuchs, E. L., & Berenson, A. B. (2016). Screening of gestational carriers in the United States. *Fertility and Sterility*, 106(6), 1496–1502.
- Greenfeld, D. A. (2014). Use of gestational carriers: Psychological aspects. In J. M. Goldfarb (Ed.), *Third party reproduction: A comprehensive guide* (pp. 79–83). New York: Springer.
- Hammarberg, K., Johnson, L., & Petrillo, T. (2011). Gamete and embryo donation and surrogacy in Australia: The social context and regulatory framework. *International Journal of Fertility and Sterility*, 4(4), 176–183.
- Iliov, E., Blake, L., Jadva, V., Roman, G., & Golombok, S. (2017). The role of age of disclosure of biological origins in the psychological wellbeing of adolescents conceived by reproductive donation: A longitudinal study from age 1 to age 14. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, 58(3), 315–324.
- Jadva, V. (2016). Surrogacy: Issues, concerns and complexities. In S. Golombok, R. Scott, J. B. Appleby, M. Richards, & S. Wilkinson (Eds.), *Regulating reproductive donation* (pp. 126–139). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Klock, S. C., & Covington, S. N. (2015). Results of the Minnesota multiphasic personality inventory-2 among gestational surrogacy candidates. *International Journal of Gynecology & Obstetrics*, 130, 257–260.
- Lamba, N., Jadva, V., Kadam, K., & Golombok, S. (2018). The psychological well-being and prenatal bonding of gestational surrogates. *Human Reproduction*, 33(4), 646–653.
- Norton, W., Crawshaw, M., Hudson, N., Culley, L., & Law, C. (2015). A survey of UK fertility clinics' approach to surrogacy arrangements. *Reproductive Biomedicine Online*, 31, 327–338.

- Söderström-Anttila, V., Wennerholm, U.-B., Loft, A., Pinborg, A., Aittomäki, K., Bente Romundstad, L., & Bergh, C. (2016). Surrogacy: Outcomes for surrogate mothers, children and the resulting families – A systematic review. *Human Reproduction Update*, 22(2), 260–276.
- Van den Akker, O. B. (2007). Psychosocial aspects of surrogate motherhood. *Human Reproduction Update*, 13(1), 53–62.

Surrogate

► [In Vitro Fertilization, Assisted Reproductive Technology](#)

Surrogate Decision Making

Howard Sollins

Attorneys at Law, Shareholder at Baker Donelson in the BakerOber Health Law Group, Baltimore, MD, USA

Synonyms

[Proxy](#)

Definition

Surrogate Decision Making

If an individual is unable to make decisions about personal health care, some other individual can be authorized to provide direction. Such a person is called the surrogate decision maker, a proxy, or some other term specific to the type of authorization. For example, under an advance directive, the decision maker is typically an “agent”; under a durable power of attorney for health care, the decision maker is the “attorney in fact” (although in slang, some health-care providers refers to such persons as “the POA”); an individual may be judicially appointed as a “guardian,” or state law may identify certain next of kin or other close persons as eligible to serve as a surrogate. State law will determine the role of domestic

partners in the absence of an advance directive appointing someone as an agent.

Each type of surrogate or proxy has a scope of authority to make health-care decisions for an individual depending on the source of the surrogate or proxy’s authority and state law. For example, the surrogate may have broad authority to consent to health care and to refuse or direct the withdrawal of health care but with limitations if the care is life-sustaining. An agent under an advance directive from an individual may have immediate, broader authority to direct the withholding or withdrawal of life-sustaining treatment than a surrogate acting only under state law. Guardians may nor may not need court approval for certain actions involving life-sustaining treatment.

Surrogates or proxies appointed by the individual patient have decision making priority. Where there is no such person, state law determines the process for consulting with next of kin or others, which can include close friends, potentially in an order of hierarchy as to who priority, and how to resolve disagreements among those with the same level of relationship. Where there are no such persons or there is an irreconcilable disagreement, a judicial guardianship may be needed. Ethics committees or Patient Care Advisory Committees are examples of bodies within a health-care facility that can be very helpful in gathering an evaluating information about an individual’s clinical condition, treatment options and prognosis, previously expressed wishes, interpretations of available documents, varying points of view, and related considerations.

In a recent study, it was noted that surrogate decision making is often required for older Americans at the end of life. Among a sample of 4246 deaths of respondents in the Health and Retirement Study, proxies reported that 42.5% of these individuals needed decision making about medical treatment before death; 70.3% of subjects lacked the capacity to make those decisions themselves and, overall, 29.8% required decision making at the end of life but lacked decision-making capacity. These findings suggest that more than a quarter of elderly adults may need surrogate decision making before death.

Cross-References

► [End-of-Life Care](#)

References and Readings

Silveira, M. J., Kim, S. Y. H., & Langa, K. M. (2010). Advance directives and outcomes of surrogate decision making before death. *The New England Journal of Medicine*, 362, 1211–1218.

Surrogate Mother

► [Surrogacy](#)

Surveys

Seppo Laaksonen
University of Helsinki, Helsinki, Finland

Synonyms

[Micro data collection and analysis system](#); [Opinion poll](#); [Statistical inquiry](#)

Definition

Survey is a methodology and a practical tool used to collect, handle, and analyze in a systematic way information from individuals. These individuals or micro units can be of various types, such as people, households, hospitals, schools, businesses, or other corporations. The units can be simultaneously available from two or more levels such from households and their members. Information in surveys may be concerned various topics such as people's personal characteristics, their behavior, health, salary, attitudes and opinions, incomes, poverty and housing environments, or characteristics and performance of businesses. Survey research is unavoidably interdisciplinary, although the role of statistics is most influential since the data for surveys is constructed in a quantitative form. Correspondingly, many

survey methods are special statistical applications. However, surveys exploit substantially many other sciences such as informatics, mathematics, cognitive psychology, and theory of submatter sciences of each survey topic.

Basic Survey Concepts

A key concept in surveys is *target population* the universe of which should be exactly determined and realistic. It is possible that there are more than one target population (e.g., hospitals of certain types and their clients during a specific period). Before determining a strict target population, a researcher can have in mind *population of interest*, but this is often too difficult to reach, and hence, a realistic population is chosen. For example, more or less heavy alcohol drinkers may be interest for a researcher, but such people cannot be found from any data source. Respectively, such a target population is not realistic, but fortunately, one can try with a larger target population where there are also nondrinkers or light drinkers. The study itself can, among others, concentrate on those heavy drinkers, and results are correct if there are in data enough such people in order to get appropriate results. This requires also that we have a good frame and *frame population* from which reasonable data are downloaded. A drawback is that although the frame seems to be ideal, it includes such people who do not belong to our realistic target population, nevertheless, and secondly, we cannot get responses from all selected people due to *nonresponse*. Thus, when designing data collection, it is necessary to predict nonresponse and other gaps as well as possible in order to get enough respondents for the study.

Sampling

Survey data can cover the whole target population, but if it is large, it is rational to use sampling. This leads to plan an optimal sampling design. The design may be more or less complex. The simplest one is to use completely random selection in which case every frame unit has an equal *inclusion probability* to be selected in the sample. Such a design is rarely rational since the data collection may be too expensive or such a frame is not available. For these reasons, the most common strategy in people surveys is in the first stage,

to select so-called *clusters* (small areas, service houses, households), and in the second stage, the desired sample units (target people, clients, household members) are to be interviewed and studied. This strategy is called *two-stage sampling*, but *three-stage sampling* is also applied. These both strategies lead to *probability sampling* that is definitely a valid method. Naturally, next steps must have been done successfully too.

Two- and three-stage samplings are generally called multistage sampling, but if the study units are selected directly from the frame, it is one-stage sampling, but this term is not much used. In contrast, the term *element sampling* is common. Multistage sampling is *hierarchical* in its nature, that is, we approach to study units by stage by stage. This strategy is different from *multiphase sampling* in which case after one sample selection, a new sample from the first sample has been selected. This is much used in *panels* in which case the second or the consecutive samples have been selected even with 100% from those who have responded in the first phase. This panel approach gives opportunity to follow respondents over time. It is common in health, poverty, and living condition research, for instance. Panel designs can be very complex too. *Rotating design* is much used when needed to analyze data both *cross-sectionally* (for a specific time point or time period) and *longitudinally* (for following individuals over time). Long panels might be hard to do well, and there can be met too much nonresponse that leads a worsening data quality.

Two-phase sampling is also useful when analyzing how respondents differ from nonrespondents. This information is necessary for survey quality documentation, but it can be used also for improving the quality. The second phase could in this case lead to draw a subsample of the nonrespondents, and then attempts to get some information from them. Naturally, this is not easy since they are reluctant, but most nonrespondents still are willing to answer to some simple but key questions of the survey.

Moreover, it is often advantageous to exploit *stratification* in surveys. This leads to create a number of strata that are like subpopulations. Sampling designs for each stratum may be similar or different. The main varying point is maybe that

the sample size has been allocated for each stratum so that the research targets are satisfied ideally. Typically, the relative sample size is larger for a smaller stratum population and smaller for a larger population, respectively. This is due to an ordinary target to get about as accurate estimates (results) for each stratum.

Data Collection Tools and Methods

Data collection is not ready after selection a sample (or the full data). Three other major tasks are needed: (1) design the questionnaire, (2) decide the data collection mode (mail or phone or face-to-face interviewing or web or mixed mode such as web plus phone), (3) collect supported data (auxiliary) both for sampling and further data handling. Such data are required both from respondents and nonrespondents. *Auxiliary data* are very advantageous for adjusting *sampling weights* from the initial ones. Consequently, the bias in estimates will be reduced.

Data Cleaning and Analysis

Survey data should be cleaned before starting the analysis. In addition to computing the sampling weights, the following tasks are needed: data editing, imputation of missing data, data documentation (called metadata), data collection process documentation (called paradata), and selection of a good IT format (e.g., SPSS or SAS). The sampling design strategy is necessary to correctly take into account in the analysis.

Cross-References

- [Clusters](#)
- [Cohort Study](#)
- [Data](#)
- [Internet-Based Studies](#)
- [Interview](#)
- [Multivariate Analysis](#)
- [Odds Ratio](#)
- [Participation Bias](#)
- [Population Stratification](#)
- [Probability](#)
- [Randomization](#)
- [Regression Analysis](#)
- [Retrospective Study](#)

- [Sample Size Estimation](#)
- [Selection Bias](#)
- [Standard Deviation](#)
- [Statistics](#)
- [Study Methodology](#)

References and Readings

- Bethlehem, J. G. (2009). *Applied survey methods: a statistical perspective* (375 pp). Hoboken: Wiley.
- de Leeuw, E. D., Hox, J. J., & Dillman, D. A. (Eds.). (2009). *International handbook of survey methodology*. New York/London: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates \Taylor and Francis Group. 549 pp.

Surwit, Richard S.

James A. Blumenthal
 Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral
 Sciences, Duke University Medical Center,
 Durham, NC, USA

Biographical Information



Richard S. Surwit received his B.A. from Earlham College and Ph.D. in clinical psychology from McGill University. He completed a postdoctoral fellowship in psychophysiology at Harvard

University and joined the Duke faculty in 1977. He is currently professor of medical psychology and vice chair for research in the Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Science at Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC.

Major Accomplishments

Surwit's early work focused on the utility of biofeedback in the treatment of medical disorders, including Raynaud's disease and hypertension, and he was instrumental in establishing one of the first clinical biofeedback facilities in the country. Over the course of a long and productive career, his scientific contributions range from basic research on the use of mouse models to examine genetic and behavioral interactions in the development of obesity to clinical investigations of the effects of stress and hostility on glucose metabolism and diabetes. He also pioneered the use of computers in the medical management of such chronic diseases as diabetes and congestive heart failure. He has received multiple grants from the National Institutes of Health, private foundations, and industry to support his research program. He has played a key administrative role in the Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences at Duke University as vice chair for research and is a former president of the Society of Behavioral Medicine. He also has served on the editorial boards of such journals as *Health Psychology*, the *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, *Obesity*, and *Metabolism*. He is the recipient of numerous awards and honors including the Research Career Award in Health Psychology from the American Psychological Association.

Cross-References

- [Diabetes](#)

Sustainability

- [Ecosystems, Stable and Sustainable](#)

Dr. Surwit recently received the Distinguished Scientist Award from the Society of Behavioral Medicine.

Sympathetic

- ▶ [Autonomic Balance](#)
- ▶ [Heart Rate Variability](#)

Sympathetic Nervous System (SNS)

Michael Richter¹ and Rex A. Wright²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Geneva, Geneva, Switzerland

²Department of Psychology, College of Arts and Sciences, University of North Texas, Denton, TX, USA

Definition

The sympathetic nervous system (SNS) is one of two main branches or subsystems of the autonomic nervous system (ANS). It originates in the thoracic and upper lumbar segments of the spinal cord and commonly – but not always – yields peripheral adjustments that are complementary to those produced by its counterpart, the parasympathetic nervous system (PNS).

Description

The sympathetic nervous system is one of two main branches or subsystems of the autonomic nervous system, the physical system responsible for unconsciously maintaining bodily homeostasis and coordinating bodily responses. Working with the second main branch, the parasympathetic nervous system, the sympathetic nervous system regulates a wide range of functions such as blood circulation, body temperature, respiration, and digestion. Sympathetic activation commonly leads to adjustments on organs and glands that are complementary to those produced by parasympathetic activation and suitable for high activity (“fight and flight” as opposed to “rest and digest”). Examples of high-activity adjustments

are constriction of blood vessels in the skin, dilation of blood vessels in the skeletal muscles and lungs, and increased heart rate and contraction force. Although sympathetic adjustments tend to complement parasympathetic adjustments, they do not always. For example, both sympathetic nervous system arousal and parasympathetic nervous system arousal increase salivary flow, although to different degrees and yielding different compositions of saliva.

Basic functional units of the sympathetic nervous system are preganglionic and postganglionic neurons. Preganglionic neurons have cell bodies in the thoracic and upper lumbar segments of the spinal cord and axons that extend to cell bodies of postganglionic neurons. Postganglionic neurons have cell bodies that are clustered in the so-called ganglia and relatively long axons that innervate target organs and glands. The major neurotransmitters of the sympathetic nervous system are acetylcholine and norepinephrine. Acetylcholine is the neurotransmitter of all preganglionic neurons. Stimulation of cholinergic receptors of the nicotinic subtype located on the cell bodies of the postganglionic neurons by acetylcholine leads to an opening of nonspecific ion channels. This opening permits transfer of potassium and sodium ions, which depolarizes the postganglionic cell and initiates an action potential. Norepinephrine is the neurotransmitter of most sympathetic postganglionic neurons and stimulates adrenergic receptors lying on targeted visceral structures. All adrenergic receptors are coupled with G-proteins, but transmission pathways depend on the receptor subtype. Activation of alpha-1 receptors changes the calcium concentration in the cell, which in turn triggers the specific effect on the targeted visceral structure. Alpha-2 and beta receptors trigger visceral responses by affecting cAMP production in the cell. Specific effects depend on the receptor subtype and on the innervated visceral structure. For instance, stimulation of alpha-1 receptors on blood vessels of skeletal muscles leads to vasoconstriction and reduced blood flow, whereas stimulation of alpha-1 receptors on the radial pupil muscle leads to muscle contraction and increased pupil size. Stimulation of beta-2

receptors on the heart leads to increased heart rate and contraction force, whereas stimulation of beta-2 receptors on skeletal muscle blood vessels leads to vasodilation and increased blood flow.

In working jointly with the parasympathetic nervous system, the sympathetic nervous system does not function in an all-or-none fashion, but rather activates to different degrees. Depending on the affected visceral structure and situation, it may be more or less active than the parasympathetic nervous system. Shifts in the magnitude of sympathetic and parasympathetic influence can occur locally within a single visceral structure (e.g., the eye) or across visceral structures, with local shifts occurring to meet highly specialized demands (e.g., a change in ambient light) and global shifts adapting the body to large-scale environmental changes (e.g., the appearance of a substantial physical threat). Autonomic control is maintained by structures in the central nervous system that receives visceral information from an afferent (incoming) nervous system. A key central nervous system structure is the hypothalamus, which integrates autonomic, somatic, and endocrine responses that accompany different organism states.

Cross-References

- [Acetylcholine](#)
- [Autonomic Activation](#)
- [Autonomic Balance](#)
- [Autonomic Nervous System \(ANS\)](#)
- [Epinephrine](#)
- [Parasympathetic Nervous System \(PNS\)](#)

References and Further Readings

- Berne, R. M., Levy, M. N., Koeppen, B. M., & Stanton, B. A. (2004). *Physiology* (5th ed.). St. Louis: Mosby.
- Cacioppo, J. T., & Tassinari, L. G. (1990). *Principles of psychophysiology: Physical, social, and inferential elements*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Cacioppo, J. T., Tassinari, L. G., & Berntson, G. G. (2000). *Handbook of psychophysiology* (2nd ed.). New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Ganong, W. F. (2005). *Review of medical physiology* (22nd ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Levick, J. R. (2009). *An introduction to cardiovascular physiology* (5th ed.). London: Hodder.

Sympathetic Nervous System (SNS) Activation

► [Sympatho-adrenergic Stimulation](#)

Sympatho-adrenergic Stimulation

Sabrina Segal

Department of Neurobiology and Behavior,
University of California, Irvine, CA, USA

Synonyms

[Adrenergic activation](#); [Sympathetic nervous system \(SNS\) activation](#)

Definition

Activation of one of the three branches (the sympathetic nervous system) of the autonomic nervous system via disruption of physiological homeostasis which results in the release of epinephrine/adrenaline and norepinephrine/noradrenaline from the adrenal medulla.

Description

The sympatho-adrenomedullary (SAM) system is one of two major components of the stress system. Stress activates the sympathetic nervous system and the goal of this response is to return the individual to physiological homeostasis. Epinephrine release from the adrenal medulla causes physiological alterations in cardiovascular tone, respiration rate, and blood flow to the muscles. Epinephrine does not cross the blood-brain barrier, but acts indirectly on the brain via the vagus nerve, which projects to the nucleus of the solitary tract (NTS), resulting in noradrenergic projections to the amygdala, as well as other brain regions. The release of epinephrine and norepinephrine from the adrenal

medulla increases blood glucose levels and enhances alertness, learning, and memory.

Cross-References

► [Norepinephrine/Noradrenaline](#)

References and Readings

- Cannon, W. B. (1914). The interrelations of emotions as suggested by recent physiological research. *The American Journal of Psychology*, 25(2), 256–282.
- Chrousos, G. P., & Gold, P. W. (1992). The concepts of stress and stress system disorders. Overview of physical and behavioral homeostasis. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 267(9), 1244–1252.
- Hollenstein, T., McNeely, A., Eastabrook, J., Mackey, A., & Flynn, J. (2011). Sympathetic and parasympathetic responses to social stress across adolescence. *Developmental Psychobiology*. <https://doi.org/10.1002/dev.20582>.
- Sherwood, L. (2008). *Human physiology: From cells to systems* (7th ed., p. 240). Stamford: Cengage Learning.
- Tilders, F. J. H., & Berkenbosch, F. (1986). CRF and catecholamines; their place in the central and peripheral regulation of the stress response. *Acta Endocrinology*, 113, S63–S75.

Symptom Magnification Syndrome

Karen Jacobs

Occupational Therapy, College of Health and Rehabilitation Science, Sargent College, Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Learned symptom behavior](#); [Maladaptation of symptom behaviors to chronic illness](#); [Malingering](#); [Martyr behavior](#); [Secondary gain](#)

Definition

Symptom magnification is a self-destructive, socially reinforced behavioral response pattern

consisting of reports or displays of symptoms which function to control the life of circumstances of the sufferer.

Description

Symptom magnification syndrome (SMS) may be described as a conscious or unconscious self-destructive learned pattern of behavior which is maintained through social reinforcement and typically controls the individual's life activities. SMS may be labeled “malingering” or exaggerated psychological complaints which can be associated with individuals who are seeking financial compensation or a secondary gain, e.g., increased attention from a family member, from symptom reporting. The validity scales of the Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory-2 (MMPI-2) are widely used for the detection of exaggerated psychological complaints.

Cross-References

- [Psychosocial Adjustment](#)
- [Psychosocial Predictors](#)
- [Psychosocial Variables](#)
- [Psychosocial Work Environment](#)
- [Psychosomatic](#)
- [Psychosomatic Disorder](#)
- [Somatic Symptoms](#)
- [Somatization](#)
- [Somatoform Disorders](#)

References and Readings

- Kopel, S., Walders-Abramson, N., MsQuaid, E., Seifer, R., Koinis-Mitchell, D., Klein, R., et al. (2010). Asthma symptom perception and obesity in children. *Biological Psychology*, 84, 135–141.
- Matheson, L. N. (1986). *Work capacity evaluation: Systematic approach to industrial rehabilitation*. Anaheim: Employment and Rehabilitation Institute of California.
- Matheson, L. N. (1987). *Symptom magnification casebook*. Matheson: Employment and Rehabilitation Institute of California.
- Theodore, B., Kishino, N., & Gatchel, R. (2008). Biopsychosocial factors that perpetuate chronic pain, impairment, and disability. *Psychological Injury and Law*, 1, 182–190.

Tsushima, W., & Tsushima, V. (2009). Comparison of MMPI-2 validity scales among compensation-seeking Caucasian and Asian American medical patients. *Assessment, 16*, 159–164.

Symptom Scale

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Synonyms

[Symptoms Inventory](#)

Definition

Symptom scales are psychometric instruments aimed at assessing the frequency or severity of any type of symptom associated with a mental or physical health condition. Development of symptom scales requires the same type of rigor as any other self-report instrument requires, including tests of internal reliability and test-retest reliability and face, concurrent, construct, and predictive validity. Questions on such scales can be asked in relation to a specific time frame (e.g., the present moment, the past week) and in relation to certain severity levels. For example, in the assessment of pain symptoms, patients may be asked to rate their level of average and worse pain in a given time frame. Finally, some scales also ask the extent to which certain symptoms interfere with one's daily functioning, as is often done in the domain of quality of life or pain. Another issue is whether the scale includes items concerning general symptoms or disease-specific symptoms. One of the earliest developed psychological symptom scales is the Symptom Checklist 90 (SCL-90) which was designed to assess psychological symptoms for evaluating the outcomes of mental health interventions and for research purposes. The symptoms are assessed in relation to the past 7 days and are categorized into nine dimensions (e.g., psychoticism, depression). Its

internal reliability is adequate (e.g., Cronbach's alpha of 0.77–0.90 on its dimensions). Its concurrent, construct, and predictive validities have been shown as well. A physical symptom scale is the Patient Health Questionnaire 15 (PHQ-15; Kroenke et al. 2002). This scale assesses 15 common physical symptoms including stomach, back, head, and chest pains, dizziness, shortness of breath, etc. Scores on the PHQ-15 correlate with functional status and with health-care utilization. Numerous other instruments exist for assessment of various psychiatric symptoms including depression, anxiety, and post-traumatic stress disorder and for disease-specific symptoms. The latter include symptom scales of upper respiratory infections (Orts et al. 1995), the Rose chest pain questionnaire (Rose et al. 1977), and many others. More recently, Baxter et al. (2011) developed a brief pictorial scale for assessing nausea in children which can be used for pediatric oncological treatments. Symptom scales are a basic element in diagnosis and monitoring of treatment effects and in research in many health disciplines including medicine and behavior medicine. However, it is noteworthy to consider the limitations of symptom scales, as in most self-report scales. These include reporting biases, memory, and lack of self-awareness. One important factor known to underlie reporting biases is neuroticism or negative affectivity, which, when elevated, often leads to inflated symptom reporting and needs to be considered when patients complete symptom scales (Watson and Pennebaker 1989).

Cross-References

► [Somatic Symptoms](#)

References and Further Readings

- Baxter, A. L., Watcha, M. F., Baxter, W. V., Leong, T., & Wyatt, M. M. (2011). Development and validation of a pictorial nausea rating scale for children. *Pediatrics, 127*, e1542–e1549.
- Kroenke, K., Spitzer, R. L., & Williams, J. B. (2002). The PHQ-15: Validity of a new measure for evaluating the severity of somatic symptoms. *Psychosomatic Medicine, 64*, 258–266.

- Orts, K., Sheridan, J. F., Robinson-Whelen, S., Glaser, R., Malarkey, W. B., & Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K. (1995). The reliability and validity of a structured interview for the assessment of infectious illness symptoms. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine, 18*, 517–529.
- Rose, G., McCartney, P., & Reid, D. D. (1977). Self-administration of a questionnaire on chest pain and intermittent claudication. *British Journal of Preventive & Social Medicine, 31*, 42–48.
- Watson, D., & Pennebaker, J. W. (1989). Health complaints, stress, and distress: Exploring the central role of negative affectivity. *Psychological Review, 96*, 234–254.

Symptom-Limited Exercise Test

► Maximal Exercise Stress Test

Symptoms

Tana M. Luger
Department of Psychology, University of Iowa,
Iowa City, IA, USA

Synonyms

Indicators

Definition

Symptoms are physical sensations or changes in internal state that a person recognizes, interprets, and reports (Pennebaker 1982). Although symptoms are a key indicator of disease, it has been shown that perceived symptoms do not always correspond with objective, physiological pathology. Thus, researchers have sought to examine the various factors that can influence the perceptual processing and attributing of physical symptoms.

Because perception involves attention to certain cues while ignoring others, a person is more likely to recognize symptoms if their external world is not supplying them with information or

distractions (Pennebaker 1982). For example, a person with a boring job is more likely to report symptoms than one with a fast-paced job. The assumption is that the person with the boring job can focus more attention on his internal, physical state rather than managing the external.

There is much evidence that people selectively search for information when interpreting their symptoms. People tend to focus on information which either confirms their expectations or shows the potential symptoms to be benign (Leventhal et al. 1998; Pennebaker 1982). Situational cues may also influence a person's search for information. For example, a recent outbreak of influenza in one's town may make a person more sensitive to his physiological changes and more likely to interpret his symptoms as signs of the flu. Previous experience with similar symptoms may also prime a person to attribute symptoms as being indicators of a particular disease (Jemmott III et al. 1988).

Finally, researchers have found that individual differences like gender, age, and personality can affect the amount that people report symptoms (Pennebaker 1982). For example, women tend to report more physical symptoms than men, older adults report more than young adults, and those high in the personality trait of negative affectivity report more than those high in positive affectivity. One reason suggested for these differences are differing tendencies to focus on one's internal state, resulting in more attention and recognition of symptoms.

Cross-References

- Cognitive Appraisal
- Common-Sense Model of Self-regulation
- Illness Cognitions and Perceptions

References and Readings

- Jemmott, J. B., III, Croyle, R. T., & Ditto, P. H. (1988). Commonsense epidemiology: Self-based judgments from laypersons and physicians. *Health Psychology, 7*, 55–73.
- Leventhal, H., Leventhal, E. A., & Contrada, R. J. (1998). Self-regulation, health, and behavior:

A perceptual-cognitive approach. *Psychology & Health*, 13, 717–733.

Pennebaker, J. W. (1982). *The psychology of physical symptoms*. New York: Springer.

Symptoms Inventory

► Symptom Scale

Syndrome X

► Metabolic Syndrome

Syntocinon (Synthetic Forms)

- Oxytocin
- Oxytocin, Social Effects in Humans

Syringe Exchange Programs

► Needle Exchange Programs

Systematic Bias

► Bias

Systematic Desensitization

Alan Kessedjian¹ and Faisal Mir²

¹Clinical Psychologist, Birmingham, UK

²School of Sport and Exercise Sciences, University of Birmingham, Edgbaston, Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

Graded exposure counterconditioning

Definition

Systematic desensitization or graded exposure is a behavioral intervention commonly used in the treatment of phobias and other anxiety-related disorders. Individuals with phobias tend to possess irrational fears of stimuli such as heights, close spaces, dogs, and snakes. In order to cope, the individual avoids such stimuli. Since escaping from the phobic object reduces anxiety temporarily, the individual's behavior to reduce the perceived fear is negatively reinforced. The aim of systematic desensitization is to overcome this avoidance by gradually exposing individuals to the phobic stimulus until their anxiety to the fear is extinguished (Sturmey 2008).

Description

Joseph Wolpe (1915–1997)

Joseph Wolpe was a South African-born American doctor. During his work as a medical officer, Wolpe's task was to treat soldiers who were diagnosed with "war neurosis" which is now referred to as post-traumatic stress disorder. It was argued at the time that by talking about their war experiences would lead to a resolution of their symptoms. However, this was not found to be the case, and Wolpe became increasingly disillusioned by Freud's psychoanalytic therapy. It was this which served as a catalyst for Wolpe to discover other more effective treatment strategies (Wolpe 1973).

Wolpe began to investigate behavioral strategies through laboratory experiments. One of his concepts was reciprocal inhibition by which anxiety is inhibited by a feeling which is incompatible such as relaxation (Wolpe 1961). He pioneered the intervention assertiveness training and deciphered that this approach was useful for people who were anxious about social situations. As they learned assertiveness skills, this assisted to minimize the anxiety associated with such situations and in turn relaxed. As this proved to be highly fruitful, it further led to the development of systematic desensitization (Wolpe 1973).

Systematic Desensitization

It was discovered that fears could be learned through the behavioral model of classical conditioning (see ► [“Classical Conditioning”](#)). Therefore, Wolpe (1973) sought to eliminate the fear response generated by the stimulus and replace it with a competing response of relaxation. The notion of systematic desensitization was based upon two principles of conditioning. The first was that an individual could not produce two different responses to stimuli such as fear and relaxation. Secondly, classical conditioning often involves stimulus generalization which refers to stimuli which are similar and lead to the learned response of fear (Sturmey 2008).

During the process of systematic desensitization, the therapist works in conjunction with the person who has a phobia to ascertain the exact stimulus which triggers the phobia. Next, the individual is taught relaxation-inducing techniques often related to a cue for relaxing. After this stage, the therapist and individual develop a list of fear-evoking stimuli, ranging from very mild to very intense anxiety. This list is referred to as a hierarchy of fears as the stimulus items are listed in order of the intensity of fear they evoke. Then, working gradually the therapist attempts to recondition the person so that the stimuli in the hierarchy become associated with a relaxed response rather than fear. Once the individual can eventually confront the stimulus which originally evoked the greatest anxiety and remains relaxed, then the phobia has been effectively extinguished (Sturmey 2008).

Systematic desensitization has been found to be highly effective in the treatment of phobias (Clark 1963), sexual disorders (Obler 1973), and traumatic nightmares (Schindler 1980).

Cross-References

- [Anxiety Disorder](#)
- [Behavior Change](#)
- [Behavior Modification](#)
- [Behavioral Intervention](#)
- [Behavioral Therapy](#)
- [Classical Conditioning](#)
- [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Clark, D. F. (1963). The treatment of monosymptomatic phobia by systematic desensitization. *Behaviour Research and Therapy*, 1(1), 63–68.
- Obler, M. (1973). Systematic desensitization in sexual disorders. *Journal of Behavior Therapy and Experimental Psychiatry*, 4(2), 93–101.
- Schindler, F. E. (1980). Treatment by systematic desensitization of a recurring nightmare of a real life trauma. *Journal of Behavior Therapy and Experimental Psychiatry*, 11(1), 53–54.
- Sturmey, P. (2008). *Behavioral case formulation and intervention: A functional analytic approach*. Chichester: Wiley.
- Wolpe, J. (1961). The systematic desensitization treatment of neuroses. *The Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease*, 132(3), 189–203.
- Wolpe, J. (1973). *The practice of behavior therapy* (2nd ed.). New York: Pergamon Press.

Systematic Review

J. Rick Turner

Campbell University College of Pharmacy and Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Systematic reviews present a descriptive assessment of a collection of original research articles related to a specific research question. These reviews “collate, compare, discuss, and summarize the current results in that field” (Matthews 2006). Campbell et al. (2007) noted that “It has now been recognised that to obtain the best current evidence with respect to a particular therapy all pertinent clinical trial information needs to be obtained.” This “overview process” (Campbell et al. 2007) has led to many changes in the way clinical trial programs are developed. They have become an integral part of evidence-based medicine, impacting decisions that affect patient care.

A considerable problem in writing such reviews is the retrieval of all relevant publications in the behavioral medicine literature, although the advent of computerized searchable databases has made this task much less arduous.

While such a narrative review can be very useful in its own right, it can also be the first step in a

two-step process that also includes conducting a meta-analysis. This provides a statistical (quantitative) answer, whereas the authors' conclusions in a systematic review will largely be qualitative.

Cross-References

► [Meta-analysis](#)

References and Further Reading

- Campbell, M. J., Machin, D., & Walters, S. J. (2007). *Medical statistics: A textbook for the health sciences* (4th ed.). Chichester: Wiley.
- Matthews, J. N. S. (2006). *Introduction to randomized controlled clinical trials* (2nd ed.). Boca Raton: Chapman & Hall/CRC Press.

Systems Theory

Afton N. Kapuscinski
Psychology Department, Syracuse University,
Syracuse, NY, USA

Definition

An approach to science that emphasizes unity and wholeness (von Bertalanffy 1968) and views factors that influence phenomena as mutually affecting each other at various levels of complexity.

Description

Systems theory, which became popular in the mid-twentieth century, developed in opposition to some of the philosophical assumptions that permeated the sciences across a variety of disciplines (von Bertalanffy 1968). Specifically, systems theory opposed the idea that knowledge about the universe is best obtained through a perspective rooted in notions of reductionism, mechanism, and objectivism (Midgley 2000). Mechanism assumes that the universe and all phenomena contained within it can be likened to machines, composed of parts that operate in

predictable, logical ways. Therefore, traditional scientific theory and methodology seeks to reduce complex phenomena to the functions of the smallest possible parts (reductionism), assuming that such analysis will yield complete understanding and ultimately control, in the area under study (Midgley 2000). For example, a reductionistic approach to psychology may pose that all behavior can ultimately be traced to genetic endowment or chemical reactions occurring at the level of individual brain cells.

Systems theorists, however, argue that the search for simple, linear, cause and effect relationships between variables may lead to the neglect of developing more holistic, comprehensive conceptual models (Midgley 2000), leaving the field of psychology impoverished in a couple of ways. First, mechanistic and reductionist approaches may struggle to explain emergent properties of systems, that is, those qualities of a system that cannot be explained merely as the sum of its individual parts (Bertalanffy 1968), such as the human capacity for agency, creativity, or love. Even the concept of life itself cannot be explained by the activity of individual cells (Bertalanffy), but emerges from a complex system of interacting cells. Second, reductionistic scientific disciplines tend to exist in relative isolation from each other, without attempts at integration that may benefit the individual field, as well as facilitate broader societal improvement. Since system thinking views the boundaries between disciplines as somewhat unnecessary and artificial, a behavioral medicine investigator working from a systems perspective may draw from many sciences to obtain a more holistic understanding of a given topic. Therefore, in contrast to the “zooming in” approach of reductionism, systems thinking values panning outward to examine different levels of contextual factors that may be influencing and be influenced by a particular aspect of a system – including concepts across disciplines.

Ecological models of health behavior (see Sallis et al. 2008) are a good example of research grounded in systems thinking. These models assume multiple influences on health behaviors at various levels, with influences interacting across the levels (Sallis et al. 2008). For example, consider the problem of cardiovascular disease.

A systemic approach to reducing the incidence of cardiovascular disease would aim to target a variety of factors that are interacting to determine one's degree of risk for developing the condition, including biological (e.g., hypertension, high cholesterol), psychological (e.g., hostility), social (interpersonal relationships and support), and behavioral (e.g., diet, exercise, medication compliance) contributors. Such conceptualization in behavioral medicine is often referred to as taking a biopsychosocial approach, a form of systems thinking. A systemic model would also examine contextual factors that affect the individual, such as health care utilization or level of education, which may influence the individual's exposure to preventative medicine and information about healthy eating habits. Further, the approach would likely be mindful of broader social and economic concerns (e.g., unemployment rate, racial inequality) that may, in turn, influence one's access to these resources and thus would also be considered relevant to intervention efforts. These types of ecological models have been developed to further understanding of various health behaviors such as physical activity, tobacco control, and diabetes management (Sallis et al. 2008).

Just as systems theory questions the validity of boundaries between disciplines, it also disputes the boundary between scientists and their objects of study (Midgley 2000). Systems theorists reject the position that one can passively observe reality, standing separate from the object of study, but holds that scientists interact with these objects to actively create reality and interpret observations based on the lens through which they view them (von Bertalanffy 1968). If objectivism is not possible and scientists can never capture "reality," then theories and methodologies become "ways of seeing" that are full of value (Midgley 2000). A critical implication of this shift in thinking is the possibility for theoretical pluralism, wherein investigators value contributions from various perspectives and types of research.

Influence on Psychotherapy

The principles inherent in the systems approach have influenced important shifts in the way

psychotherapists understand the process of facilitating client change. First, there has been a shift away from the traditional psychoanalytic approach, which viewed the therapist as a relatively objective figure who could successfully remove his or her self from the process, providing the patient with a "blank screen" on which to project unconscious material for interpretation by the therapist. Modern psychoanalytic approaches, such as the object relations or two-person paradigms, assert that the therapist cannot avoid revealing the self and influencing the therapeutic encounter so as to create it along with the patient (Levenson 1995). When viewing the therapeutic relationship as a system, the interaction between the therapist and patient, including the therapists' behaviors and feelings, becomes critically important and should be considered to aid case formulation and planning interventions. Since a change in any part of a system affects the whole of the system (von Bertalanffy 1968), the therapist's attempts to foster a healthy relationship can encourage improved interpersonal functioning in the patient (Levenson 1995). Second, systems theory gave rise to another popular paradigm for understanding individual and family dysfunction, known as family systems theory. Family systems theory holds that an individual's or family's distress cannot be understood fully by looking at any one person in isolation, but must be viewed as the symptom of problematic patterns of interactions within the larger family structure (Smith-Acuña 2010). Systems therapists therefore seek to improve the functioning of the family as a unit.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Ecological Models: Application to Physical Activity](#)
- ▶ [Family Systems Theory](#)

References and Readings

- Breunlin, D. C., Schwartz, R. C., & Mac Kune-Karrer, B. (2001). *Metaframeworks: Transcending the models of family therapy*. San Francisco: Wiley.
- Levenson, H. (1995). *Time-limited dynamic psychotherapy: A guide to clinical practice*. New York: Basic Books.

- Midgley, G. (2000). *Systemic intervention: Philosophy, methodology and practice*. New York: Plenum.
- Sallis, J. F., Owen, N., & Fisher, E. B. (2008). Ecological models of health behavior. In K. Glanz, B. K. Rimer, & K. Viswanath (Eds.), *Health behavior and health education: Theory, research and practice* (pp. 465–485). San Francisco: Wiley.
- Smith-Acuña, S. (2010). *Systems theory in action: Applications to individual, couple, and family therapy*. Hoboken, NJ: Wiley.
- von Bertalanffy, L. (1968). *General systems theory*. London: Penguin.

Systolic Blood Pressure (SBP)

Annie T. Ginty
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Synonyms

[Blood pressure](#)

Definition

Systolic blood pressure is the force exerted by blood on arterial walls during ventricular contraction measured in millimeters of mercury (see Tortora and Grabowski 1996). It is the highest pressure measured; normal range for systolic blood pressure is <120 mmHg.

Cross-References

- [Blood Pressure](#)
- [Blood Pressure Classification](#)
- [Blood Pressure, Measurement of](#)
- [Diastolic Blood Pressure \(DBP\)](#)

References and Further Reading

- Tortora, G. J., & Grabowski, S. R. (1996). *Principles of anatomy and physiology* (8th ed.). New York: Harper Collins College.

T

Tachycardia

Lois Jane Heller

Department of Biomedical Sciences, University of Minnesota Medical School – Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

Definition

The word “tachycardia” means rapid heart rate. This condition is more precisely defined as a heart rate that is above the age-adjusted range of normal heart rates (see Table 1). Children normally have higher heart rates than adults and can tolerate rapid heart rates more easily.

Description

Normal Determinants of Heart Rate

Heart rate is normally established by the rate of spontaneous generation of an electrical signal (action potential) by “pacemaker” cells located in the sinoatrial (SA) node of the heart (in the wall of the right atrium near the entry of the superior vena cava) (Mohrman and Heller 2011). These electrical signals are normally generated at a rate of 60–100 beats per min in a human adult. They are propagated from the SA node through the atrial and ventricular muscle cells in a set pathway that stimulates contraction in a pattern that optimizes pumping of blood from the heart.

Most other cardiac muscle cells have the potential to act as pacemakers, but the SA nodal cells drive the heart at a slightly faster rate than any of these other “latent” pacemakers.

The normal fluctuations in heart rate that occur in response to normal changes in the body’s metabolic demands are accomplished by altering autonomic neural influences on the SA nodal pacemaker cells from the parasympathetic and sympathetic nervous system. Increased sympathetic activity causes an increase in heart rate whereas increase in parasympathetic activity causes a decrease in heart rate.

Symptoms of Tachycardia

A person with significant tachycardia may or may not be aware that their heart rate is fast without actually measuring their pulse rate (Valentin et al. 2008). However, tachycardia often results in a feeling of light-headedness, dizziness, tunnel vision, or fainting. Other symptoms may include muscle weakness, nervousness, sweating, pallor, or a feeling of fullness in the chest. The cause of many of these symptoms is often related to a decrease in arterial blood pressure and therefore blood flow to the brain and other tissues.

Physiological Cause of the Symptoms

The amount of blood that the heart pumps in a minute is called the cardiac output (Mohrman and Heller 2011). This is determined by the volume of blood ejected in each beat (*stroke volume*) and the number of beats per minute (*heart rate*):

Tachycardia, Table 1 Age-associated upper limit to normal human heart rates. (Adapted from Greene 1991)

Less than 1 year	~170 bpm
1–2 years	~150 bpm
3–5 years	~135 bpm
6–12 years	~130 bpm
12–15 years	~120 bpm
15 years through adulthood	~100 bpm

Cardiac output = stroke volume $\times$ heart rate

One might predict from this equation that the cardiac output would increase whenever heart rate increased. This is true over the normal range of heart rates. However, when the heart rate exceeds this normal range, the cardiac output may actually fall. There are three primary reasons for this: (1) There is insufficient time between beats to allow the heart to fill adequately. (2) The coronary circulation to the cardiac muscle may be compromised by the compressive forces in the ventricular wall associated with each individual beat. (3) The energy requirements for the heart increase enormously and may not be met by the compromised coronary blood flow.

Physiological Causes of Tachycardia

1. *Atrial Tachycardia or Supraventricular Tachycardia* (i.e., associated with a narrow QRS complex on an ECG) (Valentin et al. 2008). This condition is more common than ventricular tachycardia (see below) and can often be successfully treated. It is often uncomfortable and alarming to the individual, but does not usually portend immediate, possibly fatal consequences.
 - (a) *Sinus Tachycardia* – Elevated sympathetic neural activity or an increase in circulating catecholamines stimulates the normal pacemaker cells in the SA node to fire at a very rapid rate and this electrical signal is then carried via normal pathways through the entire heart.
 - (b) *Ectopic Atrial Pacemakers* – Atrial cells that are not part of the SA node can sometimes become irritable and generate

electrical signals that spread throughout the cardiac tissue.

- (c) *AV Nodal Reentrant Tachycardia* – This is a conduction defect rather than a pacemaker defect. In this case, a rapid heart rate may result from an abnormal portion of conduction pathway usually found in the AV node in which the electrical signal circles back on itself to rapidly re-excite the downstream tissue.
 - (d) *Atrial Flutter* – An ectopic pacemaker or reentrant pathway in the atria evokes in a very rapid atrial rate such that AV node fails to conduct every signal. The atria may beat three or more times for each ventricular beat. The ventricular rate may be faster than normal or within the normal range but the atrial rate is faster.
 - (e) *Atrial Fibrillation* – The atrial conduction pathways become disorganized and the normal synchronized excitation of the atrial tissue is disrupted. Electrical signals are initiated and conducted in bizarre patterns, resulting in unpredictable intermittent conduction through the AV node. This results in an irregular ventricular rhythm that may, on the average, be faster than normal (tachycardia), normal, or slower than normal (bradycardia).
2. *Ventricular Tachycardias* (i.e., associated with wide QRS complex on an ECG). This is a more serious condition than atrial tachycardia and needs immediate attention. The heart is still operating as a pump but the possibility of a sudden deterioration to ventricular fibrillation is high.
 - (a) *Ectopic Ventricular Pacemakers* – Ventricular cells can sometimes become irritable and generate electrical signals that spread throughout the cardiac tissue. This may occur if blood flow to a portion of the ventricular wall is inadequate and the tissue becomes ischemic.
 - (b) *Ventricular Reentrant Pathways* – In this case, a rapid heart rate may result from abnormal conduction of the electrical signal through a small portion of ventricular

muscle such that the electrical signal circles back on itself to rapidly re-excite the cardiac tissue. Because all cardiac muscle cells are electrically connected, this rapidly firing small group of cells can drive the ventricles at a fast rate.

Cross-References

- [Arrhythmia](#)
- [Maximal Exercise Heart Rate](#)

References and Readings

- Greene, M. G. (Ed.). (1991). *The Harriet Lane handbook* (12th ed.). St Louis: Mosby Yearbook.
- Mohrman, D. E., & Heller, L. J. (2011). *Cardiovascular physiology* (Lange series 7th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Valentin, F., O'Rourke, R. A., Walsh, R. A., & Poole-Wilson, P. (2008). *Hurst's the heart* (12th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Tailored Communications

Celette Sugg Skinner
Clinical Sciences, The University of Texas
Southwestern Medical Center at Dallas
Harold C. Simmons Cancer Center, Dallas,
TX, USA

Synonyms

[Tailored health behavior change interventions](#)

Definition

“Tailored communications are any combination of information intended to reach one specific person, based on characteristics unique to that person, related to the outcome of interests, and derived from an individual assessment” (Kreuter and Farrell 2000).

Description

Background

The field of behavioral medicine studies how behaviors affect health and medical conditions, as well as how behaviors can be changed. Good behavior-change interventions are, of course, guided by strong health behavior theories that elucidate factors (variables) affecting individuals' behaviors. One of most basic of these, the Health Belief Model (HBM), was developed in the 1950s when the US public health service consulted with psychologists to understand why people were not availing themselves of free tuberculosis screenings. This simple model delineates three major factors (or theoretical constructs) affecting whether people take a health action. They must feel susceptible to a health threat serious enough to warrant attempts to reduce the risk, believe that changing their behavior would reduce their risk, and overcome perceived barriers to behavior change (Champion and Skinner 2008). Individuals can vary widely on these beliefs. One's threat perception may be low whereas another may perceive the threat but not believe the behavior change would have benefit for lowering it. Among those who perceive barriers to behavior change, specific types of barriers may vary widely. For example, not having a ride to a screening site is very different from not being able to afford screening or of being afraid the screen would find a problem.

Message Customization

Face-to-face communications are usually customized for different people. For example, nurses seeking to facilitate medication adherence communicate with different patients differently, depending on factors influencing *that persons'* behavior. The message differs when talking with someone who cannot remember to take the pills versus someone avoiding the medication due to side effects. But only recently did this kind of message customization become possible in mass-produced media such as print and video. From the 1950s through the 1980s, mass-media communications such as brochures and videos were developed to address an array of variables,

with the hope that at least some of the message components would be relevant to most audience members.

Mass-Produced Tailored Communications

In the 1980s, the rise of micro-computing capabilities opened possibilities for mass-producing communications that retained advantages of customized face-to-face interactions. These “tailored communications” are reminiscent of tailor-made clothing that is based on numerous measurements taken by the tailor before beginning his work. Tailored communications begin with measures of people’s behavior-influencing factors such as the HBM variables of perceived risks and beliefs about the behavior’s benefits and barriers. The “fabric” of tailored communications is distinct text, audio, or graphic components that are “sewn” together to fit the measurements of a particular message recipient.

In their 2000 book, *Tailored Health Messages; Customizing Communication with Computer Technology* Kreuter, Farrell et al. provide this elegant definition of tailored communications: “any combination of information intended to reach one specific person, based on characteristics unique to that person, related to the outcome of interests, and derived from an individual assessment.” Continuing the clothing analogy, this definition distinguishes between tailored and targeted communications, as follows. *Tailored communications* – and tailored clothing – are intended to fit one individual. *Targeted communications* – and off-the-rack clothing – are intended to fit any one of a group sharing some common characteristics (e.g., men who wear a size 40 long, like pin-stripes, and shop in a certain price range). Targeted messages are usually directed to a particular demographic group (i.e., African American church members) and address factors known to be important for *many* members of that group. In contrast, tailored communications are based on individual-level assessment of theory-based behavior-influencing variables, with a unique combination of messages assembled for each individual within the group (Kreuter and Skinner 2000).

The original rationale for tailoring was that tailored communications would be more noticeable and compelling and less burdensome because they are streamlined to only include content relevant to the recipient. According to Petty and Cacioppo (Petty et al. 1981), the more personal involvement with the message, the more careful consideration (i.e., “central processing”) and elaboration on the message which, in turn, increases likelihood of attitude and behavior change.

Early Trials of Tailored Print Communications

Several initial randomized trials compared printed communications that were v. were not tailored on theory-derived behavior-influencing variables (Skinner et al. 1999). Three of these, targeting mammography screening (Skinner et al. 1994), smoking cessation (Strecher et al. 1994), and dietary change (Campbell et al. 1994), were conducted among primary-care patients who completed telephone surveys and were randomly assigned to receive tailored or non-tailored printed newsletters. In addition to age, race, and risk factors, messages in the tailored letters directly addressed variables such as the recipients’ perceived risk, benefits and barriers, their stage of behavior adoption, characteristics such as age, race, and risk factors and, for smokers, causal attributions for past failed quit attempts. In each of these three studies, the non-tailored letter version addressed a number of factors that had been shown to influence people’s behaviors, in general. For example, the non-tailored mammography letter was adapted from a letter from US Surgeon General’s office mailed to women who requested information about breast cancer screening. Because these three trials were designed to compare tailored versus non-tailored *content*, the tailored letters did not include statements such as “the information was prepared especially for you,” as have later studies. Tailored and non-tailored letters looked very much alike. They were printed in black and white on two-column 8½ × 11 paper and included a head-and-shoulders line drawing. Therefore, it is remarkable that recipients of the tailored letters were more likely to report remembering and reading their letters. Receipt of a tailored letter was also associated

with behavior change (Campbell et al. 1994), at least among important subgroups (Skinner et al. 1994; Strecher et al. 1994). Indeed, of the seven initial comparisons of tailored versus. non-tailored print communications, six (Skinner et al. 1999) found more behavior change among tailored recipients.

Movement Toward Different Comparisons

Given these impressive results from studies comparing tailored versus similar non-tailored print, and with tailoring technology expanding rapidly, tailoring researchers moved on to different comparisons. Studies tested tailored communications as an adjunct to other intervention components such as self-help smoking manuals, and compared tailored messages delivered through different media, such as tailored print versus tailored telephone counseling (Champion et al. 2007; Rimer et al. 2002), tailored on different types of variables (Kreuter et al. 2005), and with and without booster doses (Skinner 2006). Even within the tailored print medium, researchers moved beyond the newsletter format to tailored booklets and magazines with tailored features such as cartoons and advice columns (Rimer et al. 2002; Kreuter et al. 2005). Because there were so many kinds of comparisons of different tailoring approaches and for different target behaviors, data do not exist from head-to-head comparisons of every feature (e.g., more vs. less content, fewer vs. more graphics). As reported in a 1998 review of the “first generation” of tailored communications, these various comparisons showed mixed results, and “when (tailored print communications) are only one component of a complex intervention strategy without a factorial design, it is more difficult to isolate their relative contribution to the overall intervention effect” (Skinner et al. 1999, p 296). Nonetheless, this initial review and several others published subsequently (Kreuter and Farrell 2000; Kroeze et al. 2006; Revere and Dunbar 2001; Rimer and Glassman 1999) reported that tailoring seems to “work” both for attracting and retaining attention and for facilitating behavior change. Further, delivering tailored messages via print plus another medium such as telephone generally is more effective than tailored print alone.

Interactive “Real-Time” Tailoring

Original print-tailored interventions collected questionnaire data and then used that entire “batch” of data to put together specific messages that, depending on algorithms, were selected from a library of potential messages. More recently, CD-ROMs, DVDs, and the internet have allowed for interactive tailoring based on data collected during program use rather than in questionnaire form before the intervention is delivered. For example, a DVD or CD-ROM can ask a question about barriers to behavior change, then immediately show videos, selected from a tailored video library, that address the specific barriers named by the user (Skinner et al. 2011). Some web-based programs provide tailored content based on pre-determined algorithms, others allow users to “self-tailor” by selecting any content of interest to them. As described in Lustria et al. 2009 review of computer-tailored health interventions delivered over the web, these interventions “have involved a great diversity of features and formats,” and “further outcome research is needed to enhance our understanding of how and under what conditions computer-tailoring leads to positive health outcomes in online behavioral interventions” (Lustria et al. 2009, p. 156). Therefore, as with the print-tailored communications, it is difficult to draw conclusions across studies.

Conclusions and Challenges

One problem in understanding findings and implications of tailored communication intervention studies is that journals often severely limit the amount of space for intervention descriptions. As a result, we have many statistics associated with the intervention outcomes, but we know little about the interventions themselves. In other words, we may learn that “it worked” without knowing exactly what “it” was or with what “it” was compared. Tailoring researchers have, therefore, recently called for new reporting standards through which intervention studies will report similar descriptions and metrics, which should help in evaluation and dissemination of best practices in tailored interventions (Harrington and Noar 2011).

In summary, communication interventions that are tailored to include theory-based messages

relevant to individual recipients, based on data collected from them, are generally better than non-tailored communications in drawing the attention of message recipients and facilitating their health behavior change. However, questions still remain about optimal amounts and types of tailoring for different behavioral targets and through different media.

Cross-References

- [Health Behavior Change](#)
- [Health Behaviors](#)
- [Health Beliefs/Health Belief Model](#)
- [Health Communication](#)
- [Health Risk \(Behavior\)](#)
- [Stages-of-Change Model](#)

References and Readings

- Campbell, M. K., DeVellis, B. M., Strecher, V. J., Ammerman, A. S., DeVellis, R. F., & Sandler, R. S. (1994). Improving dietary behavior: The effectiveness of tailored messages in primary care settings. *American Journal of Public Health, 84*, 783–787.
- Champion, V. L., & Skinner, C. S. (2008). The health belief model. In K. Glanz, B. K. Rimer, & K. Viswanath (Eds.), *Health behavior and health education: Theory, research and practice* (4th ed., pp. 45–65). San Francisco: Jossey-Bass.
- Champion, V., Skinner, C. S., Hui, S., Monahan, P., Juliar, B., Daggy, J., et al. (2007). The effect of telephone versus print tailoring for mammography adherence. *Patient Education and Counseling, 65*, 416–423.
- Harrington, N. G., & Noar, S. M. (2011). Reporting standards for studies of tailored interventions. *Health Education Research, 27*(2), 331–342.
- Kreuter, M. W., & Farrell, D. (2000). *Tailoring health messages: Customizing communication with computer technology*. Mahwah: Lawrence Erlbaum.
- Kreuter, M. W., & Skinner, C. S. (2000). Tailoring: What's in a name? *Health Education Research, 15*, 1–4.
- Kreuter, M. W., Skinner, C. S., Holt, C. L., Clark, E. M., Haire-Joshu, D., Fu, Q., et al. (2005). Cultural tailoring for mammography and fruit and vegetable intake among low-income African-American women in urban public health centers. *Preventive Medicine, 41*, 53–62.
- Kroeze, W., Werkman, A., & Brug, J. (2006). A systematic review of randomized trials on the effectiveness of computer-tailored education on physical activity and dietary behaviors. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine, 31*, 205–223.
- Lustria, M. L., Cortese, J., Noar, S. M., & Glueckauf, R. L. (2009). Computer-tailored health interventions delivered over the Web: Review and analysis of key components. *Patient Education and Counseling, 74*, 156–173.
- Petty, R. E., Cacioppo, J. R., & Goldman, R. (1981). Personal involvement as a determinant of argument-based persuasion. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 41*, 847–855.
- Revere, D., & Dunbar, P. J. (2001). Review of computer-generated outpatient health behavior interventions: Clinical encounters “in absentia”. *Journal of the American Medical Informatics Association, 8*, 62–79.
- Rimer, B. K., & Glassman, B. (1999). Is there a use for tailored print communications in cancer risk communication? *Journal of the National Cancer Institute Monographs, 25*, 140–148.
- Rimer, B. K., Halabi, S., Skinner, C. S., Lipkus, I. M., Strigo, T. S., Kaplan, E. B., et al. (2002). Effects of a mammography decision-making intervention at 12 and 24 months. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine, 22*, 247–257.
- Skinner, C. S. (2006). Tailored interventions for screening mammography: When is a booster dose important? *Patient Education and Counseling, 65*, 87–94.
- Skinner, C. S., Strecher, V. J., & Hoppers, H. (1994). Physicians' recommendations for mammography: Do tailored messages make a difference? *American Journal of Public Health, 84*, 43–49.
- Skinner, C. S., Campbell, M. K., Rimer, B. K., Curry, S., & Prochaska, J. O. (1999). How effective is tailored print communication? *Annals of Behavioral Medicine, 21*, 290–298.
- Skinner, C. S., Buchanan, A., Champion, V., Monahan, P., Rawl, S., Springston, J., et al. (2011). Process outcomes from a randomized controlled trial comparing tailored mammography interventions delivered via telephone vs. DVD. *Patient Education & Counseling, 85*, 308–312.
- Strecher, V. J., Kreuter, M., Den Boer, D. J., Kobrin, S., Hoppers, H. J., & Skinner, C. S. (1994). The effects of computer-tailored smoking cessation messages in family practice settings. *Journal of Family Practice, 39*, 262–270.

Tailored Health Behavior Change Interventions

- [Tailored Communications](#)

Teens

- [Williams LifeSkills Program](#)

Telehealth

- [eHealth and Behavioral Intervention Technologies](#)

Telehealth Cost-Effectiveness

- [eHealth Cost-Effectiveness](#)

Telencephalon

- [Brain, Cortex](#)

Telephone Coaching

- [Williams LifeSkills Program](#)

Telepsychology

- [Online Therapy and E-Counseling](#)

Telomere and Telomerase

A. Janet Tomiyama¹ and Elissa S. Epel²
¹Rutgers University, New Brunswick, NJ, USA
²Department of Psychiatry, Weill Institute for Neurosciences, University of California, San Francisco, CA, USA

Definition

Telomeres are noncoding repeat DNA sequences (consisting of TTAGGG) that cap the ends of eukaryotic chromosomes. Telomerase is an enzyme that adds basepairs to telomeres.

Description

Like the plastic tips that protect shoelaces from unravelling, telomeres protect DNA material. When cells divide, the enzymes that replicate the chromosomes are unable to do so fully. The main purpose of telomeres is to form a buffer so that genetic material is not lost in this process. With each cell division, telomeres can shorten, and when telomeres become critically short, a cell undergoes senescence (cell arrest). Telomeres also function to protect chromosomes from genomic instability, end-to-end chromosome fusion, less efficient cell division, loss of ability for cell replenishment, and apoptosis or cell death (Blackburn 2000).

Because of these important functions, telomeres are related to a number of health outcomes and disease states. Shorter telomere length is associated with chronic diseases of aging such as cardiovascular disease, cancer development, and Alzheimer's disease, and is related to earlier mortality. Telomere length is also thought to be an indicator of biological, rather than chronological, age (Epel 2009).

Telomere length is associated with a number of psychosocial factors. For example, depression, higher perceived stress, longer stress duration, caregiving, lower socioeconomic status, pessimism, childhood adversity, and lower subjective well-being are correlated with shorter telomere length. Health behaviors such as smoking, lack of physical activity, and repeated dieting as well as altered metabolic states such as obesity and insulin resistance are also linked with shorter telomere length (Lin et al. 2009).

Telomerase is the enzyme that adds base pairs back onto telomeres. This serves to protect telomeres from shortening. Recent work suggests telomerase may have future applications for antiaging therapies as evidenced by telomerase knockout mice displaying reversed aging with telomerase treatment (Jaskelioff et al. 2010).

Telomerase, like telomeres, appears to be responsive to psychological states, and may serve to protect cells under stress. Exposure to acute stress (Epel et al. 2010) as well as states of chronic psychosocial adversity are associated

with high telomerase. Because telomerase levels change more dynamically than telomere length, psychosocial interventions such as meditation (Jacobs et al. 2010) and comprehensive lifestyle changes (Ornish et al. 2008) have been tested in preliminary studies as a potential treatment to increase telomerase, with promising results.

Cross-References

- [Aging](#)
- [Alzheimer's Disease](#)
- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- [Chromosomes](#)
- [Depression](#)
- [Insulin Resistance](#)
- [Lifestyle Changes](#)
- [Meditation](#)
- [Obesity](#)
- [Pessimism](#)
- [Physical Activity](#)
- [Smoking and Health](#)
- [Socioeconomic Status \(SES\)](#)
- [Subjective Well-Being](#)

References and Readings

- Blackburn, E. H. (2000). Telomere states and cell fates. *Nature*, 408, 53–56.
- Epel, E. (2009). Telomeres in a life-span perspective: A new “psychobiomarker?”. *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 18, 6–10.
- Epel, E. S., Lin, J., Dhabhar, F. S., Wolkowitz, O. M., Puterman, E., Karan, L., et al. (2010). Dynamics of telomerase activity in response to acute psychological stress. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 24, 531–539.
- Jacobs, T. L., Epel, E. S., Lin, J., Blackburn, E. H., Wolkowitz, O. M., Bridwell, D. A., et al. (2010). Intensive meditation training, immune cell telomerase activity, and psychological mediators. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 36(5), 664–681.
- Jaskelioff, M., Muller, F. L., Paik, J., Thomas, E., Jian, S., Adams, A. C., et al. (2010). Telomerase reactivation reverses tissue degeneration in aged telomerase-deficient mice. *Nature*, 469, 102–106.
- Lin, J., Epel, E., & Blackburn, E. (2009). Telomeres, telomerase, stress, and aging. In G. G. Benton & J. T. Cacioppo (Eds.), *Handbook of neuroscience for the behavioural sciences*. New York: Wiley.
- Ornish, D., Lin, J., Daubenmier, J., Weidner, G., Epel, E., Kemp, C., et al. (2008). Increased telomerase activity and comprehensive lifestyle changes: A pilot study. *The Lancet Oncology*, 9, 1048–1057.

Temporal

- [Brain, Cortex](#)

Temporal Self-Regulation Theory

Peter A. Hall

Faculty of Applied Health Sciences, University of Waterloo, Waterloo, ON, Canada

Synonyms

[Dual process models of health behavior](#); [Dual systems models](#)

Definition

Temporal self-regulation theory (TST; Hall and Fong 2007; Hall and Marteau 2014) is a theoretical framework for explaining individual health behavior. TST posits that health behavior is proximally determined by three factors: *intention strength*, *behavioral prepotency*, and *executive function*. The latter two constructs are theorized to have direct influences on behavior and also to moderate the intention-behavior link. Specifically, intentions are proposed to have a stronger influence on behavioral performance in the presence of stronger executive function and/or when the behavioral prepotency is weak. Also included in the model is consideration of ecological context in the form of contingencies supplied to the behavior by the social and physical environment (i.e., *ambient temporal contingencies*). In the TST model, *intention strength* is a function of anticipated connections between one's behavior and

salient outcomes (i.e., *connectedness beliefs*); the valence of the latter can range from negative (i.e., costs) to positive (i.e., benefits). These beliefs are weighted hyperbolically by temporal proximity (i.e., *temporal valuations*), as assumed by intertemporal choice theory. For example, the perceived self-relevant contingencies for making a healthy dietary choice might include eventual benefits (e.g., improved appearance, better health status), but more temporally proximal – therefore more heavily influential-immediate costs (e.g., inconvenience, monetary costs, time costs). The sum of the perceived contingencies weighted by their respective temporal proximities should determine intention strength to make a healthy dietary choice, according to the TST model.

Description

The aim of the TST is to explain variability in health behavior in a manner that is sensitive to biological capacities for self-control (i.e., executive function), motivation level, and the ecological context in which the behavior takes place. Given the complexities of the model and the fact that it crosses many levels of analysis (from biological to social to ecological), it is expected that the model is not typically testable in its entirety. Rather, individual components of the model may be tested individually or in relation to each other (e.g., hypothesized moderating effects), ideally using experimental paradigms.

The TST model was initially offered as an improvement over traditional models of individual health behavior which posited that behavior was most proximally determined by social cognitive variables, without direct or indirect links to neurobiological resources. While TST preserves the central role of intention strength, it adds two important moderating and direct effects on health behavior performance: (1) *executive function (EF)* and (2) *behavioral prepotency (BPP)*.

EFs are commonly ascribed to operation of the prefrontal cortex and associated neural systems implicated in the neurobiology of self-control (Miller and Cohen 2001). BPP is the psychological inertia of a given behavior, by virtue of

frequent past performance in similar contexts or via the presence of strong cues (which may be social or visceral in nature) to perform the behavior at a given time. The combination of EF and BPP determines the likelihood that intentions will be translated into behavior, and each also has direct influences on behavior itself regardless of intention.

Additional components of TST that differentiate it from its predecessors are (1) an explicit focus on temporal proximity of behavioral contingencies as determinants of their relative potency and (2) a consideration of ecological factors as causal agents in health behavior performance. These two components are conceptually linked, as ecological contexts often determine what kinds of consequences (positive, neutral, or negative) are experienced following performance of a behavior, as well as the relative proximity of those consequences (immediate vs. long term).

The primary contribution of the TST model has been to provide some basis for understanding the possibility of brain-behavior relationships as being partial determinants of health behavior trajectories and to provide an interface for individual models of health behavior with ecological and social-level determinants of behavior. Given that intention strength (Armitage and Connor 2001) and behavioral prepotency (Wood and Neal 2007) are among the most well-established determinants of behavior in the extant research literature, the construct within TST that has required the most empirical justification is the inclusion of biologically based EF. The importance of EF as a causal determinant of health-related behaviors has been underscored in recent years with the advent of epidemiological, observational, and experimental findings from diverse fields of research (see Hall and Marteau 2014 for a review).

Cross-References

- [Executive Function](#)
- [Self-Regulatory Capacity](#)
- [Theory](#)

References and Further Readings

- Armitage, C. J., & Connor, M. (2001). Efficacy of the theory of planned behaviour: a meta-analytic review. *British Journal of Social Psychology*, 40, 471–499.
- Hall, P. A., & Fong, G. T. (2007). Temporal self-regulation theory: A model for individual health behavior. *Health Psychology Review*, 1, 6–52.
- Hall, P. A., & Marteau, T. M. (2014). Executive function in the context of chronic disease prevention: Theory, research and practise. *Preventive Medicine*, 68, 44–50.
- Miller, E. K., & Cohen, J. D. (2001). An integrative theory of prefrontal cortex function. *Annual Review of Neuroscience*, 24, 167–202.
- Wood, W., & Neal, D. T. (2007). A new look at habits and the interface between habits and goals. *Psychological Review*, 114, 843–863.

Tension

- [Affect Arousal](#)

Terminal Care

- [End-of-Life Care](#)
- [Palliative Care](#)

Tertiary Care

- [Clinical Settings](#)

Testicular Neoplasms

- [Cancer, Testicular](#)

Testoid

- [Androgen](#)

Thanatophobia

- [Death Anxiety](#)

Thanksgiving

- [Prayer](#)

The KIID Study, in Finnish also: SVVT (Sepelvaltimotaudin vaaratekijätutkimus)

- [Kuopio Ischemic Heart Disease Risk Factor Study](#)

Theories of Behavior Change

- [Intervention Theories](#)

Theory

Julia Allan
School of Medicine and Dentistry, University of Aberdeen, Aberdeen, Scotland, UK

Synonyms

[Conjecture](#); [Model](#)

Definition

A theory is a coherent set of statements or ideas used to organize, generalize, explain, and predict phenomena. Theories are based on observations, experimentation, and abstract reasoning, and play a fundamental role in scientific research.

Theories must (a) successfully describe and explain existing observations, (b) make predictions about future observations, and (c) be falsifiable, that is, they must be refutable by some conceivable event or observation.

While not directly verifiable, theories gain support as empirical evidence accumulates in their favor, particularly if such evidence results from “risky” predictions where the outcome could conceivably have been different (Popper 1963/2004). An accumulation of contradictory empirical evidence results in the theory being abandoned, modified, or superseded by a new theory. This dynamic process of testing, evaluation, and change allows research to move forwards toward the “truth.” Theories provide a shared language for researchers to use, enabling the development of a cumulative science. The most useful theories are those that make specific and relevant predictions that can be tested in a straightforward manner.

Prominent theories in behavioral medicine cover a range of domains and include the Transactional Theory of Stress and Coping (Lazarus und Folkman 1984), Type D Personality (Denollet et al. 1996), the Theory of Planned Behavior (Ajzen 1991), and the Common Sense Model of Self-Regulation of Health and Illness (Leventhal et al. 1992).

Cross-References

- [Causal Diagrams](#)
- [Hypothesis Testing](#)

References and Readings

- Ajzen, I. (1991). The theory of planned behaviour. *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes*, 50, 179–211.
- Denollet, J., Sys, S. U., Stroobant, N., Rombouts, H., Gillebert, T. C., & Brutsaert, D. L. (1996). Personality as independent predictor of long term mortality in patients with coronary heart disease. *Lancet*, 347, 417–421.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal and coping*. New York: Springer.

- Leventhal, H., Diefenbach, M., & Leventhal, E. A. (1992). Illness cognition: Using common sense to understand treatment adherence and affect cognition interactions. *Cognitive Therapy and Research*, 16, 143–163.
- Popper, K. R. (1963/2004). *Conjectures and refutations: The growth of scientific knowledge*. London: Routledge.

Theory of Reasoned Action

Lara LaCaille

Department of Psychology, University of Minnesota Duluth, Duluth, MN, USA

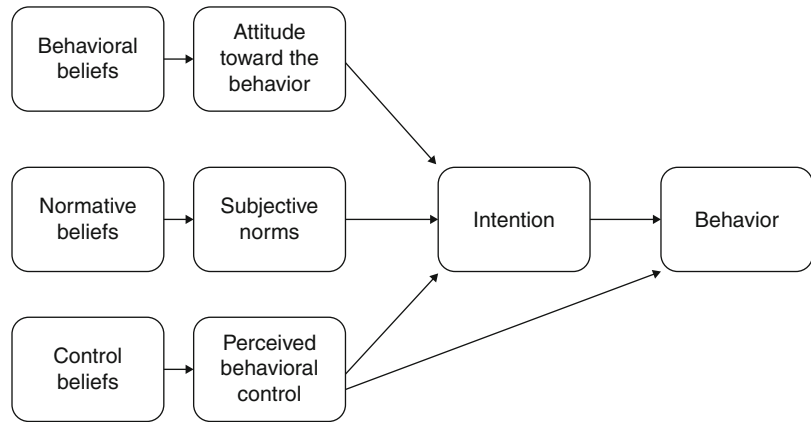
Definition

The Theory of Reasoned Action (TRA; Ajzen und Fishbein 1980; Fishbein und Ajzen 1975) and its extension, the Theory of Planned Behavior (TPB; Ajzen 1985, 1991), are cognitive theories that offer a conceptual framework for understanding human behavior in specific contexts. In particular, the theory of planned behavior has been widely used to assist in the prediction and explanation of several health behaviors.

Description

According to the initial Theory of Reasoned Action, an intention to engage in a certain behavior is considered the best predictor of whether or not a person actually engages in that behavior. Intentions, in turn, are predicted by attitudes and subjective norms. That is, the more positively a person regards a certain behavior or action and the more they perceive the behavior as being important to their friends, family, or society, the more likely they are to form intentions to engage in the behavior. Ajzen, however, noted the importance of a behavior being under volitional control in both forming intentions and engaging in the actual behavior. Therefore, he added perceived behavioral control to the model, which is now known as the Theory of Planned Behavior. See Fig. 1.

Theory of Reasoned Action, Fig. 1 Theory of planned behavior



Description of the Theoretical Factors

Behavioral beliefs and attitudes: A person first forms beliefs about the outcomes of a given behavior (e.g., “If I exercise, I will improve my health, lose weight, and be more attractive”). These beliefs contribute to his or her attitude or evaluation of the outcome of the behavior (e.g., “Being healthy and attractive is good/valuable”). The more favorable the attitude, the stronger the intention.

Normative beliefs and subjective norms: Normative beliefs refer to a person’s perception about the expectations of important others (e.g., “My friends think I should exercise”). These beliefs contribute to the perception of social pressure and contribute to motivation to comply (e.g., “I feel pressured to exercise and I want to fit in with my friends”). The more powerful the perceived norm/pressure, the stronger the intention.

Control beliefs and perceived behavioral control: A person forms beliefs about the factors that may facilitate or be barriers to engaging in the specific behavior (e.g., “I have time before work, I have access to a gym, and I am physically able to exercise”). These beliefs lead to a perception of behavioral control or sense of ease/difficulty in engaging in the behavior (e.g., “I will be able to exercise”). Although many researchers have used the terms self-efficacy and perceived behavioral control interchangeably, including Ajzen (1991), these concepts are not quite synonymous. Whereas self-efficacy reflects individuals’ beliefs

about their competence or internal control, perceived behavioral control also incorporates other external/environmental factors (e.g., time, resources, social support). The greater the perceived behavioral control, the stronger the intention and the greater the likelihood of engaging in the behavior.

Intention: Intentions refer to peoples’ plan of action and represent their expressed motivation to perform the behavior.

Evaluation of the Model

Meta-analytic reviews have supported the predictive efficacy of the TPB model for both behavioral intentions and behaviors (Armitage und Conner 2001; Godin und Kok 1996; Sheeran 2002). The theory typically accounts for about 40–50% of the variance in intentions and 20–40% of the variance in behavior. The relative importance of each of the three factors (attitudes, norms, perceived behavioral control) varies across behaviors and situations. Subjective norms are usually the weakest predictor, though this may reflect measurement issues or people’s denial of the effects of social pressures. With regard to health behaviors, the model is better at predicting some behaviors (exercise, condom use, drug use, and cigarette smoking) than others (weight loss and dietary behavior, clinical and screening behavior, oral hygiene; see Godin & Kok). Intentions are usually more potent than perceived behavioral control in

predicting health behaviors, suggesting that such behaviors are largely driven by personal motivation.

Although TPB is widely used and offers one of the most robust set of predictors of human behavior, it has been criticized for failing to include emotional variables, such as perceptions of threat, mood, and affect, which may limit its predictive power, particularly with certain health behaviors. It has been argued that many behaviors are not rational and that one's affect may be counter to one's cognitions about engaging in a particular behavior. Thus, attitude may be shaped by affect in addition to beliefs. Another criticism of the TRA/TPB model is that the majority of research testing the theory has been correlational (cross-sectional or longitudinal, typically with brief follow-up periods). The experimental studies testing the theory have provided less support for the model (Webb und Sheeran 2006).

Measurement of the Theory of Planned Behavior Constructs

It is common practice to assess each of the constructs with only one or two items, though multi-item measures are often recommended. Differences in the way the constructs are assessed have led to confusion and may account for some of the variation between studies (see Armitage und Conner (2001) for a meta-analytic review of such differences).

Attitude: Attitude is typically assessed via the use of semantic differential scales that tap into both affective and cognitive attitude. Pairs of adjectives (reflecting a positive and negative component of an attitude) that have relevance to the health behavior being studied are provided as anchors. For example, "To me, engaging in regular exercise is..." [*unpleasant-pleasant*; *unsatisfying-satisfying*(affective); *harmful-beneficial*; *useless-useful* (cognitive)].

Subjective norms: When assessing subjective norms, it is recommended to measure both injunctive norms (what others think) and descriptive norms (what others actually do). Social groups are often identified as peers, family, friends, or

important people. Examples of items include the following: "People who are important to me think I should exercise regularly" (injunctive); "My friends exercise regularly" (descriptive). Items are usually measured using a 7-point Likert scale.

Perceived behavior control: Perceived behavioral control is often measured with Likert-scale items assessing both internal control (i.e., self-efficacy), such as "I am confident that I can exercise regularly," a perception of ease/difficulty of engaging in the behavior, such as "It is easy for me to exercise," and perception of control, such as "How much personal control do you feel you have over engaging in regular exercise?" In general, measures of self-efficacy account for the most added variance to intentions.

Intentions: Many researchers assess intentions with one Likert-scale item, such as "I intend to engage in regular exercise for the next 3 months." Although intentions tend to be highly reliable, additional items may strengthen the measurement of this construct. Items are sometimes phrased as, "I will try to..." "I plan to..." and "I will make an effort to..." This construct has also been assessed with questions related to self-prediction (e.g., "It is likely that I will engage in regular exercise over the next 3 months"), though such a conceptualization probably incorporates perceived behavioral control.

Behavior: Behavior is often assessed via self-report, but observed behavior is clearly preferred. The TPB model typically predicts more of the variance in self-reported behavior than observed behavior.

Specific recommendations and guidelines for developing questionnaires for use in a particular study are offered by Ajzen (see <http://people.umass.edu/ajzen/tpb.html>), Fishbein und Ajzen (2010), Godin und Kok (1996), and the National Cancer Institute (see <http://cancercontrol.cancer.gov/brp/constructs/index.html>).

Cross-References

- [Attitudes](#)
- [Self-efficacy](#)

References and Readings

- Ajzen, I. (1985). From intentions to action: A theory of planned behavior. In J. Kuhl & J. Beckman (Eds.), *Action control: From cognitions to behaviors* (pp. 11–39). New York: Springer.
- Ajzen, I. (1991). The theory of planned behavior. *Organizational Behavior and Human Decision Processes*, 50, 179–211.
- Ajzen, I. (n.d.) *Theory of planned behavior*. Retrieved 6 July, 2011 from <http://people.umass.edu/ajzen/tpb.html>
- Ajzen, I., & Fishbein, M. (1980). *Understanding attitudes and predicting social behavior*. Englewood Cliffs: Prentice-Hall.
- Armitage, C. J., & Conner, M. (2001). Efficacy of the theory of planned behavior: A meta-analytic review. *British Journal of Social Psychology*, 40, 471–499.
- Fishbein, M., & Ajzen, I. (1975). *Belief, attitude, intention and behavior: An introduction to theory and research*. Reading: Addison-Wesley.
- Fishbein, M., & Ajzen, I. (2010). *Predicting and changing behavior: The reasoned action approach*. New York: Psychology Press.
- Godin, G., & Kok, G. (1996). The theory of planned behavior: A review of its applications to health-related behaviors. *American Journal of Health Promotion*, 11(2), 87–98.
- National Cancer Institute, US National Institutes of Health. (n.d.) *Health behavior constructs: Theory, measurement, and research*. Retrieved 6 July, 2011 from <http://cancercontrol.cancer.gov/brp/constructs/index.html>
- Sheeran, P. (2002). Intention-behaviour relations: A conceptual and empirical review. In W. Stroebe & M. Hewstone (Eds.), *European review of social psychology* (Vol. 12, pp. 1–36). London: Wiley.
- Webb, T. L., & Sheeran, P. (2006). Does changing behavioral intentions engender behavior change? A meta-analysis of the experimental evidence. *Psychological Bulletin*, 132, 249–268.

Therapy, Family and Marital

Ashley K. Randall¹ and Guy Bodenmann²

¹College of Integrative Sciences and Arts,
Arizona State University, Tempe, AZ, USA

²Department of Psychology, University of Zurich,
Zurich, Switzerland

Synonyms

Couple therapy; Family therapy; Interventions therapy

Definition

Both family and marital therapy are branches of psychotherapy that aim to facilitate positive change, by addressing the dyad and family as a whole. Broadly, these branches of psychotherapy help teaching communication and problem-solving techniques in an effort to ameliorate distress.

Description

There are a wide range of therapeutic interventions that work with families and couples during times of distress. The goal of each therapeutic approach is to alleviate the distress, to strengthen dyadic and family resources, and to improve well-being of the couple or family members. Although family and couple therapies can be applied with various techniques or theoretical approaches, there are common approaches that have been shown effective in alleviating family distress, such as behavioral family and couple therapy.

Family Therapy Techniques

Therapeutic techniques for families are grounded in family systems theory, which states that each member of the family is interconnected and one cannot just treat one family member independently (Segrin and Flora 2005). The most common family therapy techniques address adolescent concerns in respect to the family dynamic.

Below, we review some of the commonly used therapies.

Bowen's family approach. Bowen's family systems theory views behavior within the family as an emotional unit. This theory operates under the balance of two forces: togetherness and individuality, whereby too much of any one force can create an imbalance in the system. Bowen's approach also uses eight concepts that aim to explain family development and functioning: (1) differentiation of self, (2) triangles, (3) nuclear emotional process, (4) family projection process, (5) multigenerational transmission process,

(6) sibling position, (7) emotional cutoff, and (8) societal emotion process. Some of the main goals of therapy include reframing the family problem as a multigenerational problem that is caused by factors outside the individual and to lower the family “emotional turmoil” (Bowen 2004; Bowen Center for the Study of the Family 2011).

Structural family therapy (SFT). SFT is a way to address problems within the family by looking at the invisible rules or boundaries which help its functioning (family rules). The role of the therapist is to manipulate the therapy session in a way to accelerate change in the family, for example, by changing the seating of each family member. This helps the family members see the unbalance of the family system and the dysfunctional patterns that have developed (Minuchin 1974).

Brief strategic family therapy (BSFT). BSFT aims to improve and change the family interaction patterns that have led to the disruptive behaviors in adolescents. Specifically, BSFT targets children between the ages of 6 and 17 that display or are at risk for developing behavior, conduct, and substance abuse problems. Specifically, BSFT focuses on inappropriate family alliances, poor boundaries (open vs. closed), and allows the parents to recognize the adolescent is not necessarily the cause for familial problems but the expression of dysfunctional family patterns (Szapocznik and Williams 2000).

Functional family therapy (FFT). FFT is an intervention program that focuses on adolescents with disruptive behavior problems (conduct, alcohol, and/or substance abuse). The goal is to reduce the problem behavior while using an individualized nonjudgmental attitude, focusing on strengths and protective factors specific to each client. This intervention can be implemented in a variety of settings such as schools, probation and aftercare systems, and well as in mental health facilities (Alexander and Parsons 1982).

Multisystemic therapy (MST). MST is an intensive family- and community-based treatment

program that focuses on the entire “world” of chronic and violent juvenile offenders – their homes and families, schools and teachers, neighborhoods and friends (Henegger et al. 1998).

Other techniques, such as contextual therapy, focal family therapy, systemic therapy, and symbolic-experimental family therapy have also been used in family therapy (see Gurman and Kniskern 1991, for an overview).

Marital Therapy

Traditional behavioral couple therapy (TBCT). TBCT attempts to increase the level of reinforcing exchange between the two partners. This approach classically aims at teaching more effective communication and problem-solving skills that will enhance the ability of the couple to effectively communicate as well as minimize punishment and maximize reward (Jacobson and Christensen 1994; Jacobson and Margolin 1979).

Cognitive behavioral couple therapy (CBCT). CBCT takes the basic principles of TCBT and incorporates partner’s relationship assumptions, standards, expectancies, and attributions that contribute to the relationship distress (Baucom et al. 1998; Epstein and Baucom 2002).

Integrated behavioral couple therapy (IBCT). IBCT also takes the basic principles of CBCT and expands them to emphasize interventions aimed at increasing acceptance. The three components, empathetic joining, tolerance building, and detachment from the problem, are focused at enhancing the couple’s ability to appreciate the differences in their marriage (Christensen et al. 1995; Jacobson and Christensen 1998).

Emotion-focused couple therapy (EFCT). EFCT focuses on inner emotional experiences in combination with self-reinforcing interactions, based on adult attachments and attachment bonds. Therapists in this approach try to (1) access and reprocess the emotional experience of the partners’ and (2) restructure the partner’s interaction patterns. Partners are thought to learn new aspects about themselves and develop a more functional pattern of interaction with their partner

that is cohesive with their specific attachment needs (Greenberg and Johnson 1988; Johnson and Greenberg 1985).

Integrated systematic couple therapy (ISCT). The specific goal of ISCT is not to resolve all of the issues causing distress but rather instigated a reversal of the negative interaction. ISCT is based on procedures from family and marital systems therapy and primarily targets the problem at the interaction level. Specifically, ISCT tries to initiate a reversal in the “fight cycle” by changing the meaning attributed to the situation. Empirical evidence exists for the efficacy of ISCT showing greater maintenance of marital satisfaction and goal attainment after the intervention (Greenberg and Goldman 1985).

Insight-oriented therapy (IOMT). IOMT focuses on the interpretation of underlying intra-personal and interpersonal dynamics between the couple partners contributing to the marital distress. IOMT also examines developmental issues, interactions, expectations, and maladaptive relationship patterns that may exist in the relationship. The role of the therapist is to guide the couple to gain a better understanding and clarification of each partner’s unconscious feelings and beliefs that may be affecting the relationship (Snyder and Wills 1989; Wills 1982).

Coping-oriented couple therapy (COCT). COCT is based on stress and coping research in couples and cognitive behavioral couple therapy. It aims to enhance communication, problem-solving, and dyadic coping in both partners (Bodenmann 2007, 2010). A main focus lies on dyadic coping and building mutual intimacy and understanding. A key element of this approach is the three-phase method. By means of this method the therapist aims to enhance mutual understanding for each partner’s personal functioning (that becomes most evident in stressful situations) and its impact on the close relationship as well as the enhancement of mutual support that matches personal needs of the partner. Overall, this approach fosters (a) understanding for each partner’s personality, (b) mutual dyadic coping, and (c) mutual intimacy, trust in the partner, cohesion, and emotional security (Table 1).

Prevention Programs

Several evidence-based programs aim to prevent marital distress (e.g., Couples Communication Program (CCP); Miller et al. 1983; Premarital-Relationship Enhancement Program (PREP); Markman et al. 1994, Couples Coping Enhancement Training (CCET); Bodenmann and Shantinath 2004).

Efficacy of Marital and Family Therapy

The efficacy of family and couple therapies are well documented (Dunn and Schwebel 1995; Shadish and Baldwin 2005) including substantial mean effect sizes which demonstrate the effectiveness in relieving distress ($d = .74-.95$; Shadish et al. 1993; $d = .50-1.30$; Shadish and Baldwin 2003). Prior research has shown that approximately 70% of couples seeking evidence-based couple therapy report an improvement after therapy (Baucom et al. 1998; Christensen and Heavey 1999), and more recent numbers suggest 46–56% of couples show significant clinical improvement (Christensen et al. 2010).

Application to Behavioral Medicine

Family and marital therapy techniques have been used to alleviate distress within the family, stemming from things such as communication issues or family dynamics. Nevertheless, some of these therapeutic approaches have been used for a range of behavioral and physical health problems (see Snyder et al. 2006 for a review). Additionally, CanCOPE is an education program developed for people facing cancer (personally or within the family). The focus of this program is to strengthen the resources within the family so that they can more effectively deal with the realities of cancer management (Scott et al. 2004). Family-based obesity treatment programs have also been developed, and show that child–parent interactions can influence the outcome of obesity treatment (Temple et al. 2006). Osterman, Sher, Hales, Canar, Singla and Tilton (2003) encourage health psychologists to incorporate more of a couple’s perspective into illness, so that the partner can facilitate health-promoting attitudes and behaviors.

Therapy, Family and Marital, Table 1 Marital and family therapies

Marital and family therapies	Goal	Content
<i>Family therapies</i>		
Bowenian Family Therapy	Individuals are encouraged to look at the view they play in the family system, patterns of emotional reactivity, and interlocking triangles. In addition, the goal is to decrease anxiety	Examines how the family may operate as an “emotional system” using key concepts such as: triangles, differentiation of the self, emotional cutoff, and sibling position
Structural Family Therapy (SFT)	Address the problem in functioning within a family, in an attempt to restructure the family system’s rules to become more flexible (Minuchin 1974)	Therapist helps to show family how their family system may be unbalanced and to help the family see the dysfunctional patterns they have created. SFT also helps families move toward an understanding of how the behavior has developed into a positive feedback loop
Brief Strategic Family Therapy (BSFT)	Aims to improve family interaction and change family interaction patterns that have led to disruptive behaviors in adolescents (e.g., conduct problems, delinquency, and drug abuse) (Szapocznik and Williams 2000)	BSFT operates on five basic concepts: (1) <i>context</i> – the behavior cannot be understood outside the context to which it occurs; (2) <i>systems</i> – the family is an interconnected entity that cannot be understood by just examining one member; (3) <i>structure</i> – provides the habitual and repetitive patterns of family interaction; (4) <i>strategy</i> – interventions tend to be practical, problem-focused, and planned; and (5) <i>content versus process</i> – the therapist’s focus is on how the family members’ interaction, not what the family members discuss, is the problem
Functional Family Therapy (FFT)	Family intervention program for adolescents with disrupting behavior problems (conduct, alcohol, and/or substance abuse). The goal is to reduce the problem behavior while using an individualized nonjudgmental attitude, focusing on strength/protective factors that are linked to each client (Alexander and Parsons 1982; Alexander et al. 2000)	FFT operates on five major components: (1) <i>engagement phase</i> – the goal of this phase is to demonstrate a desire to listen and help. The therapist focuses on immediate responsiveness and maintains a strength-based focus; (2) <i>motivational phase</i> – the goals of this phase include creating a positive motivational context that will facilitate change, minimizing hopelessness, and changing the meaning of the family context to promote change; (3) <i>relational assessment</i> – the focus of this phase is on intra- and extra-familial context (e.g., values, interaction patterns, and sources of resistance, resources, and limitation); (4) <i>behavior change phase</i> – this phase helps build coping patterns, such as teaching communication as well as training conflict resolution; and (5) <i>generalization phase</i> – this phase focuses on extending positive family functions and helps the family plan for relapse prevention (e.g., using other family and community members for support)
Multisystemic Therapy (MST)	Intensive family and community-based treatment program that focuses on violent and criminal youth behavior (Henegglar et al. 1998)	MST views the child/adolescent embedded within interconnected systems: family, peers, school, neighborhood, and community/culture. Focus is on increasing parenting skills: spending time with children, teaching communication techniques and how to develop boundaries/discipline, and teaching skills on how to deal with conflict. Help adolescents participate in positive activities (sports or extracurricular clubs) and create a supportive social network among family, peers, and community to maintain change

(continued)

Therapy, Family and Marital, Table 1 (continued)

Marital and family therapies	Goal	Content
<i>Couple therapies</i>		
Traditional Behavioral Couple Therapy	Attempts to increase the level of reinforcing exchange between partners Minimize punishment and maximize reinforcement (Jacobson and Margolin 1979; Jacobson and Christensen 1994)	Help couples identify positive behaviors that they can do for one another (e.g., show more affection). Help guide couples to engage in these behaviors and acknowledge when they occur (e.g., to give praise)
Cognitive Behavioral Couple Therapy (CBCT)	Examined the evidence about their thoughts about their partner Alter assumptions and standards, couple evaluates consequences of living according to their standards and assumptions about their partner (Baucom et al. 1998; Epstein and Baucom 2002)	Use of cognitive restructuring strategies to modify different types of dysfunctional cognitions. Examine the interplay between thoughts, emotions, and behavior
Integrated Behavioral Couple Therapy (IBCT)	To help the couple think about the problem and identify feelings associated with that issue before one can accept them (Christensen et al. 1995; Jacobson and Christensen 1998)	Educate couples that partners need to learn a way to alter negative emotional responses that make them and their partners unhappy Teaches couple new ways to resolve problems and emotions through three steps: (1) Empathetic joining, (2) tolerance building, and (3) detachment from the problem
Emotion-Focused Couple Therapy (EFCT)	Conceptualizes distress in adult romantic relationships in terms of attachment theory. Focus on re-establishing attachment bonds (Johnson and Greenberg 1985; Greenberg and Johnson 1988)	(1) Identify the negative interaction cycle of the conflict, (2) access unacknowledged feelings, (3) reframe the problem(s) in terms of underlying feelings, (4) promote identification with disowned needs and aspects of self, (5) promote acceptance by each partner; (6) facilitate the expression of needs and wants to restructure the interaction based on the new understandings, (7) establish the emergence of new solutions (cycles), and (8) consolidate new positions
Integrated Systematic Couple Therapy (ISCT)	Try to change meaning attributed to situation that caused distress. Aims to initiate a reversal in the “fight cycle” (self-perpetuating negative cycles that lead to changes in behavior) (Greenberg and Goldman 1985)	(1) Define the issue presented, (2) identify the negative interactional cycle, (3) attempt restructuring, (4) reframe the problem using positive connotation followed by prescribing the symptom, (5) restrain using “go slow” and dangers of improvement, (6) consolidate the frame, and (7) prescribe a relapse
Insight-Oriented Marital Therapy (IOMT)	Emphasis is on the interpretation of underlying intra- and interpersonal dynamics that influence relationship distress (Wills 1982; Snyder and Wills 1989)	Focus on expectations, interactions, and maladaptive relationship rules using clarification and interpretation, to highlight unconscious feelings, beliefs, or thoughts causing the marital discord
Copying-Oriented Couple Techniques (COCT)	Teach couples the notion the better the partners <i>together</i> can cope with stress, the higher their chance for optimal marital satisfaction and stability (Bodenmann et al. 2008)	Focus on educating the couple about the effects stress has on the relationship. Couples become aware of the influence of environmental factors on their close relationship. Focus on teaching dyadic copying that goes beyond the traditional models of interpersonal communication and social support in close relationships

Cross-References

► Family Stress

References and Readings

- Alexander, J. F., & Parsons, B. V. (1982). *Functional family therapy*. Monterey: Brooks/Cole.
- Alexander, J. F., Pugh, C., Parsons, B. V., & Sexton, T. L. (2000). *Functional family therapy* (2nd ed.). Boulder: Center for the Study and Prevention of Violence, University of Colorado.
- Baucom, D. H., Shoham, V., Mueser, K. T., Daiuto, A. D., & Stickle, T. R. (1998). Empirically supported couple and family interventions for marital distress and adult mental health problems. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 66*, 53–88.
- Bodenmann, G. (2007). Dyadic coping and the 3-phase-method in working with couples. In L. VandeCreek (Ed.), *Innovations in clinical practice: Focus on group and family therapy* (pp. 235–252). Sarasota: Professional Resources Press.
- Bodenmann, G. (2010). New themes in couple therapy: The role of stress, coping and social support. In K. Hahlweg, M. Grawe, & D. H. Baucom (Eds.), *Enhancing couples. The shape of couple therapy to come* (pp. 142–156). Cambridge, MA: Hogrefe Publishing.
- Bodenmann, G., & Shantinath, S. D. (2004). The Couples Coping Enhancement Training (CCET): A new approach to prevention of marital distress based upon stress and coping. *Family Relations, 53*(5), 477–484.
- Bodenmann, G., Plancherel, B., Beach, S. R. H., Widmer, K., Gabriel, B., & Meuwly, N. (2008). Effects of coping-oriented couples therapy on depression. A randomized clinical trial. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 76*, 944–954.
- Bowen, M. (2004). Family psychotherapy in office practice. *Family Systems, 7*(1), 29–44.
- Bowen Center for the Study of the Family. (2011). Bowen family therapy. Retrieved October 2011 from: www.thebowencenter.org
- Christensen, A., & Heavey, C. L. (1999). Interventions for couples. *Annual Review Psychology, 50*, 165–190.
- Christensen, A., Jacobson, N. S., & Babcock, J. C. (1995). Integrative behavioral couple therapy. In N. S. Jacobson & A. S. Gurman (Eds.), *Clinical handbook of marital therapy* (2nd ed., pp. 31–64). New York: Guilford Press.
- Christensen, A., Atkins, D. C., Baucom, B., & Yi, J. (2010). Marital status and satisfaction five years following a randomized clinical trial comparing traditional versus integrative behavioral couple therapy. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 78*, 225–235.
- Dunn, R. L., & Schwebel, A. I. (1995). Meta-analytic review of marital therapy outcome research. *Journal of Family Psychology, 9*, 58–68.
- Epstein, N. B., & Baucom, D. H. (2002). *Enhanced cognitive-behavioral therapy for couples: A contextual approach*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Greenberg, L. S., & Goldman, A. (1985). *Integrated systemic couples' therapy: A treatment manual*. Unpublished manuscript, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, Canada.
- Greenberg, L. S., & Johnson, S. M. (1988). *Emotionally focused therapy for couples*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Gurman, A. S., & Kniskern, D. P. (1991). *Handbook of family therapy* (Vol. I and II). New York: Brunner & Mazel.
- Heneggler, S. W., Schoenwald, S. K., Borduin, C. M., Rowland, M. D., & Cunningham, P. B. (1998). *Multi-systemic treatment of antisocial behavior in children and adolescents*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Jacobson, N. S., & Christensen, A. (1994). *Traditional behavioral couple therapy manual*. Unpublished manuscript, University of Washington.
- Jacobson, N. S., & Christensen, A. (1998). *Acceptance and change in couple therapy: A therapist's guide to transforming relationships*. New York: Norton.
- Jacobson, N. S., & Margolin, G. (1979). *Marital therapy: Strategies based on social learning and behavior exchange principles*. New York: Brunner/Mazel.
- Johnson, S. M., & Greenberg, L. S. (1985). Emotionally focused couples therapy: An outcome study. *Journal of Marital and Family Therapy, 11*, 313–317.
- Markman, H. J., Stanley, S., & Blumberg, S. L. (1994). *Fighting for your marriage: Positive steps for preventing divorce and preserving a lasting love*. San Francisco: Jossey Bass.
- Miller, S., Wackman, D. B., & Nunnally, E. W. (1983). Couple communication: Equipping couples to be their own best problem solvers. *The Counseling Psychologist, 11*, 73–77.
- Minuchin, S. (1974). *Families and family therapy*. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press.
- Osterman, G. P., Sher, T. G., Hales, G., Canar, W. J., Singla, R., & Tilton, T. (2003). *Physical illness*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Scott, J. L., Halford, W. K., & Ward, B. (2004). United we stand? The effects of a couple-coping intervention on adjustment to breast or gynecological cancer. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 76*, 1122–1135.
- Segrin, C., & Flora, J. (2005). Theoretical perspectives on family communication: Family systems theory. In *Family communication* (pp. 28–33). Mahwah: Erlbaum.
- Shadish, W. R., & Baldwin, S. A. (2003). Meta-analysis of MFT interventions. *Journal of Marital and Family Therapy, 29*, 547–570.
- Shadish, W. R., & Baldwin, S. A. (2005). Effects of behavioral marital therapy: A meta-analysis of randomized

- controlled trials. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 73, 6–14.
- Shadish, W. R., Montgomery, L. M., Wilson, P., Wilson, M. R., Bright, I., & Okwumabua, T. (1993). Effects of family and marital psychotherapies: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 61, 992–1002.
- Snyder, D. K., & Wills, R. M. (1989). Behavioral vs. insight oriented marital therapy: A controlled comparative outcome study. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 57, 39–46.
- Snyder, D. K., Castellani, A. M., & Whisman, M. A. (2006). Current status and future directions in couple therapy. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 57, 317–344.
- Szapocznik, J., & Williams, R. A. (2000). Brief strategic family therapy: Twenty-five years of interplay among theory, research and practice in adolescent behavior problems and drug abuse. *Clinical Child and Family Psychology Review*, 3(2), 117–134.
- Temple, J. L., Wrotniak, B. H., Paluch, R. A., Roemmich, J. N., & Epstein, L. H. (2006). Relationship between sex of parent and child on weight loss and maintenance in a family-based obesity treatment program. *International Journal of Obesity*, 30, 1260–1264.
- Wills, R. M. (1982). *Insight oriented marital therapy* [Treatment manual]. Unpublished manuscript, Wayne State University, Detroit.

Therapy, Occupational

Jennifer Creek¹, Kit Sinclair² and
Cecilia W. P. Li-Tsang³

¹Occupational Therapist, Guisborough,
North Yorkshire, UK

²School of Medical and Health Sciences,
Tung Wah College, Kowloon, Hong Kong, China

³Department of Rehabilitation Sciences,
The Hong Kong Polytechnic University,
Kowloon, Hong Kong, China

Synonyms

Ergotherapy; Occupational therapist

Definition

Occupational therapy is a profession that works with people of all ages and abilities, helping them to perform those tasks and roles essential

to productive living. The primary goal is to assist people to participate satisfactorily in the things they want and need to do, such as: taking care of themselves and others; working; volunteering, and participating in hobbies, interests, and social events. Occupational therapists are concerned with all the activities that make up the pattern of people's lives, and with people's capacity to carry out those activities in ways that support their health and well-being.

Description

For occupational therapists, the concept of *occupation* goes beyond paid work to encompass everything that people do in their daily lives, including self-care, domestic activities, interactions with others, work, and leisure activities. Occupational therapists understand that occupation is fundamental to survival, to development and learning across the lifespan, to social relations, to individual health and well-being, and to the well-being of communities. Occupation enables the development and integration of bodily systems, promotes socialization, and verifies the individual's identity as a contributing member of society.

Occupational therapy intervention is a complex, dynamic process that comprises multiple practices and is undertaken within particular contexts. Intervention does not follow a standard process but is specific to particular clients, contexts, and environments. The approach taken, the goals of intervention and the techniques employed by the occupational therapist are strongly influenced by the social context in which the therapist is working, the work setting, government policies and standards, local norms and procedures, and the available research evidence.

Through the therapeutic use of everyday activities, occupational therapists work to mitigate the effects of disease or injury and prevent secondary disability. They also help people to manage and live with long-term health conditions, such as arthritis, diabetes, and cancer. The focus of intervention is not on the person's diagnosis, impairment, or functional limitations but on the

impact that illness, disability, or environmental factors can have on someone's ability to carry out expected daily activities. Activity and occupation are both the goal of occupational therapy and the main therapeutic tool. Three of the ways that occupational therapists help people to participate in the occupations they need and want to do are by enhancing people's own knowledge and life skills, adapting environments to better support occupation, and finding new ways of doing activities.

The occupational therapist works not only with a person's functional problems but also with the *meaning* of restricted activity to his or her life. This has been called a two-body practice because occupational therapy is concerned both with the physical body and with the whole person, including social, cultural, and psychological aspects.

The knowledge base that supports a two-body practice is necessarily broad and varied. Occupational therapists have a deep understanding of the importance of activity and occupation in people's lives and additionally draw on relevant knowledge from the biological, medical, psychological, social, and technological sciences. Areas of knowledge include theory, research, policy, and legislation. In most countries, occupational therapy entry-level education is a Bachelors, Masters, or Doctoral degree.

Occupational therapy is practiced in a wide range of public, private, and voluntary sector settings, although most occupational therapists work in the fields of health and social care. They work with people of all ages, who have functional problems arising from physical, psychological, social, educational, economic, or other difficulties. Examples of occupational therapy practices include: helping children to achieve their developmental milestones, working with communities to develop disaster preparedness and response strategies, and assisting older people to reduce the risk of falls.

Occupational therapy clients may be individuals, groups of people, communities, health and social care agencies, or other organizations. Individual clients may be hospital or community patients, schoolchildren, workers, compensation

claimants, caregivers, homeless people, or anyone who is experiencing occupational dysfunction. Group clients can be families, co-workers, paid carers, or groups of patients. Some occupational therapists work in the areas of public health, primary care, occupational health, or health promotion. They may work in the field of law as expert witnesses or consultants, for example, carrying out assessments to ascertain the level of disability sustained following an accident.

Occupational therapists work in a wide range of settings. Their major role is in habilitation and rehabilitation; helping people to gain or regain the ability to perform their occupations and preventing secondary disability. However, they also contribute to the treatment of, and early recovery from, injury and disease. They are engaged in health promotion and disease prevention with populations at risk. They work with those who have long-term or deteriorating health conditions, assisting them to remain active for as long as possible and slowing down the decline of functional ability. Increasingly, occupational therapists are working with older people to promote their health and well-being through activity. Those occupational therapists who work with marginalized and displaced persons, such as refugees and homeless people, employ a human rights perspective.

Occupational therapists are experts in assessing function in the activities of daily life, including personal care, mobility, domestic activities, social interactions, education, leisure, and work. When a person is unable to perform the activities of daily life to an acceptable standard, the occupational therapist can assist him or her to relearn the necessary skills, develop new skills, or adapt activities so that they are within the individual's capabilities. The occupational therapist can also recommend augmentative and assistive technology, communication aids and equipment, and environmental modifications to support function or compensate for loss of function.

An expert occupational therapist is able to engage with people within their own environments, to identify the activities that have meaning and relevance for them, and to work in partnership

to devise individually tailored interventions. The occupational therapist works in collaboration with individuals, families, care givers, employers, teachers, co-workers, colleagues, and others to develop and deliver relevant and effective interventions. As far as possible, people are engaged as active partners in the process and interventions are carried out within people's own living and working environments.

Occupational therapy has relevance for everyone who is experiencing occupational dysfunction, and it is practiced in many countries throughout the world. Services are contextualized to local culture, resources, occupations, and needs. In most countries, it is regulated as a health profession. The worldwide professional body for occupational therapy is the World Federation of Occupational Therapists (WFOT): member countries all have a national professional body and full member countries also have at least one occupational therapy education program approved by the WFOT.

References and Further Reading

- American Association of Occupational Therapists. www.aota.org/About-Occupational-Therapy.aspx. Accessed 29 Aug 2018.
- Australian Occupational Therapy Association. <http://aboutoccupationaltherapy.com.au>. Accessed 29 Aug 2018.
- Mattingly, C. (1994). Occupational therapy as a two-body practice: the body as machine. In C. Mattingly & M. H. Fleming (Eds.), *Clinical reasoning: forms of inquiry in a therapeutic practice*. Philadelphia: FA Davis.
- Nhunzvi, C., & Galvaan, R. (2017). Defining occupational therapy. In S. A. Dsouza, R. Galvaan, & E. L. Ramugondo (Eds.), *Concepts in occupational therapy: understanding Southern Perspectives* (pp. 103–109). Manipal: Manipal University Press.
- Pentland, D., Kantartzis, S., Clausen, M. G., & Witemyre, K. (2018). *Occupational therapy and complexity: defining and describing practice*. London: Royal College of Occupational Therapists.

Therapy, Physical

► Physical Therapy

Thoughts

► Cognitions

Thriving

► Perceived Benefits

Thrombosis

► Coagulation of Blood

Tinnitus

Linda C. Baumann¹ and Alyssa Ylinen²

¹School of Nursing, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

²Allina Health System, St. Paul, MN, USA

Synonyms

Ringing in the ears

Definition

Tinnitus is a condition characterized by the perception of sound in the ears or head without the presence of an external source. Tinnitus itself is not a disease, but a symptom that can result from a number of different causes. Sounds heard can manifest in many different ways such as low to high pitched, heard in one or both ears, heard as a single noise or competing noises, or be heard intermittently or continuously. Sounds have been described as ringing, buzzing, blowing, humming, hissing, whooshing, hissing, and whistling

among many others. Mild forms of tinnitus are very common and experienced by most people at some point in their lives. More severe forms, however, are less common and can lead to chronic sleep disturbance, anxiety, and depression.

Description

Tinnitus is generally categorized into two types: subjective tinnitus and objective tinnitus. Objective tinnitus is the less common of the two types, and sound is not only heard by the patient but also audible to other people, most often a clinician listening with a stethoscope or an ear tube. Pulsatile tinnitus is a common example of objective tinnitus. It is caused by muscle contractions or audible blood flow in arteries or veins (e.g., bruits) close to the inner ear that resonate as rhythmic pulsing in the ear. Subjective tinnitus is the most common form and is heard exclusively by the patient. This type of tinnitus has many causes and pathologies.

Although tinnitus is most often associated with abnormalities of the auditory or central nervous systems, it can also be caused by nonauditory etiologies. These include hypertension and cardiovascular disease, hypo- and hyperthyroidism, stress and fatigue, temporomandibular joint (TMJ) disorder, poor diet and physical inactivity, and wax buildup in the outer ear putting pressure on the tympanic membrane. Exposure to excessive noise is also a common cause of tinnitus, which can precede hearing loss and should therefore be an indicator of the need for protection from excessive noise exposure. Tinnitus associated with abnormalities of the auditory or central nervous systems including middle ear infections; damage to the inner ear; disorders that affect the central nervous system such as meningitis, encephalitis, and stroke; head and neck trauma; surgical injury; tumors affecting the acoustic nerve (cranial nerve VIII); Meniere's disease (an inner ear disorder characterized by hearing loss vertigo and tinnitus); and vestibular schwannoma (e.g., acoustic neuroma). Over 200 ototoxic medications are associated with inducing tinnitus. These medications include

aspirin, some antibiotics, diuretics, cancer chemotherapy drugs, and quinine.

With many causes of tinnitus, treatment of the underlying disease often alleviates symptoms. Drug therapies include benzodiazepines, anticonvulsants, antidepressants, vasodilators, tranquilizers, and antihistamines. Acamprosate, a drug used to treat alcohol dependence, has shown to have potential as a treatment, as well as zinc and gabapentin. Antiarrhythmic agents such as lidocaine have also shown to have tinnitus-suppressing qualities.

Hearing aides are another modality shown to benefit patients. Loss of hearing often increases awareness of tinnitus, and a hearing aid, which amplifies external sound, often helps mask the perception of tinnitus. Wearable sound generators or tinnitus maskers are also used. These devices fit into the ear much like a hearing aid and deliver low-level sound directly into the ear.

Cochlear implant is a treatment used in patients whose tinnitus is accompanied by severe hearing loss. Electrical and magnetic stimulation treatments include transcranial magnetic stimulation and trans-electrical nerve stimulation. Cognitive behavioral therapy treatments include tinnitus retraining therapy (TRT), tinnitus activities treatment, sound therapies, auditory discrimination therapy, and neurofeedback. Alternative therapies for tinnitus have included acupuncture, hypnosis, craniosacral therapy, antioxidants, vitamin, and herbal remedies.

References and Further Readings

- Langguth, B., Hajak, G., Kleinjung, T., Cacace, A., & Moller, A. R. (Eds.). (2007). *Tinnitus: Pathophysiology and treatment*. Amsterdam: Elsevier.
- Tinnitus. (2010a). *American academy of otolaryngology-head and neck surgery*. Retrieved 18 Feb 2011, from <http://www.entnet.org/HealthInformation/tinnitus.cfm>
- Tinnitus. (2010b). *Medline plus medical encyclopedia*. Retrieved 18 Feb 2011, from <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/003043.htm>
- Tinnitus. (2010c). *National Institutes of Health: NIDCD*. Retrieved 18 Feb 2011, from <http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/health/hearing/tinnitus>

Tinnitus and Cognitive Behavior Therapy

Gerhard Andersson

Department of Behavioural Science and Learning,
Linköping University, Linköping, Sweden

Synonyms

Hearing disturbances; Perception of internal noise (false)

Definition

Tinnitus is an auditory perceptual phenomenon that is defined as the conscious perception of internal noises without any outer auditory stimulation. The sounds may be very loud and bizarre, and the most common ones are heard like a high-pitched musical tone or a rushing sound like escaping steam or air. Other descriptions can be more complicated such as metallic sounds, multiple tones of varying frequencies, and mixtures between buzzing and ringing.

Tinnitus is in most cases a temporary sensation, which many people have experienced at least sometime in their life. However, it may develop into a chronic condition, and prevalence figures show that at least 10–15% of the general population have tinnitus. Fortunately, most persons do not have severe tinnitus. Only about 1–3% of the adult population has severe tinnitus, in the sense that it causes marked disruption of everyday activities, mood changes, reduced quality of life, and disrupted sleep patterns. Tinnitus has been reported in children, but in its severe form, it is more common in adults and in particular in the elderly.

Tinnitus is known to occur in association with almost all the dysfunctions that involve the human auditory system. This includes damage to the middle ear, the cochlea, the audiovestibular cranial nerve, and pathways in the brain from cochlear nucleus to primary auditory cortex. A common distinction is often made between so-called objective (somatosounds, which can actually be heard

from the outside) and subjective tinnitus (that are heard only by the afflicted person). Objective tinnitus represents a minority of cases. Subjective tinnitus has been linked to sensorineural hearing loss, caused by various deficits such as age-related hearing loss and noise exposure. Links to other conditions such as temporomandibular joint dysfunction have also been found. Tinnitus has been explained as the result of increased neural activity in the form of increased burst firing or as a result from pathological synchronization of neural activity. Other suggested mechanisms are hypersensitivity and cortical reorganization. With the advent of modern imaging techniques, it has been observed that tinnitus involves certain areas of the brain, particularly those that are related to hearing and processing of sounds. Some involvement of the brain's attentional and emotional systems has also been seen (Cacace 2003).

Description

Distress and Tinnitus

What distinguishes mild from severe tinnitus is not easily established, apart from variations in subjective ratings of intrusiveness and loudness. In particular, in attempts to determine the handicap caused by tinnitus, it has not been possible to make the determination using the characteristics of the tinnitus itself (e.g., loudness, pitch, etc.). However, psychological factors are of major importance in determining the severity of tinnitus, and this has been observed in both clinical and epidemiological studies.

The problems experienced by tinnitus patients can be divided into four categories: hearing difficulties including noise sensitivity, emotional consequences, concentration problems, and insomnia. In addition, there might be interpersonal consequences and occupational difficulties (e.g., for a musician, admitting tinnitus can be regarded as a sign of weakness).

Hearing loss is the most common symptom that goes together with tinnitus and that can in itself be a great problem. Another common problem is noise sensitivity, which in its severe form can develop into hyperacusis, which is sensitivity

to everyday sounds not regarded as loud by most people.

In its severe form, tinnitus is strongly associated with lowered mood and depression. Suicide caused by tinnitus is however rare. Most cases reported have had comorbid psychiatric disturbances. Anxiety, and in particular anxious preoccupation with somatic sensations, is an aggravating factor, and stress is often mentioned as a negative factor for tinnitus and in particular in association with major adverse life events, but the evidence for this notion is weak. Personality factors have been investigated, and associations have been reported between degree of optimism and tinnitus distress (Andersson 1996) and between perfectionism and tinnitus distress (Andersson et al. 2005a).

Tinnitus patients often report difficulties with concentration, for example, with reading. Often this is perceived as auditory intrusions while trying to hold concentration on a task. Until recently, there have been few attempts to measure tinnitus patients' performance on tests of cognitive functioning, but recent research implies a role of the working memory system (Hallam et al. 2004). Another line of research has focused on the role of selective information processing. Finally, sleep problems represent a significant element in tinnitus patients' complaints and are often a driving reason for seeking help.

Theories

Among the most influential psychological theories on why tinnitus becomes annoying is Hallam et al.'s (1984) habituation model of tinnitus, which presents the notion that tinnitus annoyance is caused by lack of habituation, and the neurophysiological model by Jastreboff and coworkers (Jastreboff 1990), which is a classical conditioning model where the tinnitus signal is conditioned to aversive reactions such as anxiety and fear. The latter model puts less emphasis on conscious mechanisms involved in tinnitus perception. Other researchers have endorsed a cognitive-behavioral conceptualization of tinnitus, suggesting a major role for thoughts and beliefs regarding tinnitus (Andersson 2002).

In clinical settings, management of tinnitus involves taking history of its characteristics such as onset, loudness, character, fluctuations, and severity. Audiological and neuro-otological measurements such as pure-tone audiometry, otoscopy, and brain stem audiometry are also included in routine assessment to exclude treatable conditions (Andersson et al. 2005b).

Treatments

There is a long history of attempts to cure tinnitus, but surgical and pharmacological interventions have been largely without any success. When the aim is to reduce the suffering, treatment outcome is more promising, and psychologically informed treatments have been found to be helpful in randomized trials (Andersson and Lyttkens 1999).

Among the psychosocial treatments, cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT) is the most researched alternative. As for other medical conditions such as chronic pain, CBT for tinnitus distress is directed at identifying and modifying maladaptive behaviors and cognitions by means of behavior change and cognitive restructuring. The focus is on applying techniques such as applied relaxation in real-life settings. An overview of the techniques used in CBT for tinnitus is presented in the Table. There is now evidence from randomized trials that CBT can be effective for alleviating the distress caused by tinnitus in adults (e.g., Hesser et al. 2011), including a trial on the use of CBT with older adults, and also that it works in a self-help format presented via the Internet (Kaldo et al. 2008). However, while the effects are promising, there is room for more improvement, and tinnitus is a typical example of an area where multidisciplinary input is necessary. Most recent development in CBT for tinnitus is to incorporate treatment procedures from acceptance and commitment therapy (ACT; Hayes et al. 1999).

Conclusion

Tinnitus is a poorly understood phenomenon, and while the role of psychological factors is widely acknowledged, there is yet little research on basic

mechanisms such as information processing bias, the role of psychopathology, and the influence of the tinnitus sound on working memory capacity. While there are few cases of tinnitus for which surgical and medical interventions might help, in most cases, there is no cure in the sense that the tinnitus sound will not disappear. However, longitudinal fluctuations of both loudness and severity of tinnitus have been observed, and health psychologists could benefit in the pursuit of an explanation why it is that tinnitus becomes bothersome only for a proportion of individuals. When it comes to methods to lessen the distress and to cope with the adverse consequences, such as lowered mood and sleep difficulties, CBT is a promising approach. However, the dissemination of CBT into audiological hospital settings has been slow, and there are very few clinical psychologists working with tinnitus. Self-help methods are promising and could at least partly solve that problem, and there is also much to be done regarding preventive work as noise-induced hearing loss is the cause of tinnitus in one third of cases with recent onset of tinnitus (Table 1).

Tinnitus and Cognitive Behavior Therapy, Table 1 Overview of cognitive-behavioral treatment for tinnitus

Case formulation
Structured clinical interview following audiological screening
Questionnaire assessment
Treatment rationale and information
Treatment presented in 6–10 sessions
Applied relaxation (1. progressive relaxation, 2. short progressive relaxation, 3. cue-controlled relaxation, and 4. rapid relaxation)
Positive imagery
Sound enrichment by means of external sounds
Hearing tactics and advice regarding noise sensitivity
Modification of negative thoughts and beliefs
Behavioral sleep management
Advice regarding concentration difficulties, exercises of concentration (mindfulness)
Exposure to tinnitus
Advice regarding physical activity
Relapse prevention
Follow-up
Interview and questionnaires

Cross-References

► [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)

References and Readings

- Andersson, G. (1996). The role of optimism in patients with tinnitus and in patients with hearing impairment. *Psychology and Health, 11*, 697–707.
- Andersson, G. (2002). Psychological aspects of tinnitus and the application of cognitive-behavioral therapy. *Clinical Psychology Review, 22*, 977–990.
- Andersson, G., Airikka, M.-L., Buhrman, M., & Kaldo, V. (2005a). Dimensions of perfectionism and tinnitus distress. *Psychology, Health & Medicine, 10*, 78–87.
- Andersson, G., Baguley, D. M., McKenna, L., & McFerran, D. J. (2005b). *Tinnitus: A multidisciplinary approach*. London: Whurr.
- Andersson, G., & Lyttkens, L. (1999). A meta-analytic review of psychological treatments for tinnitus. *British Journal of Audiology, 33*, 201–210.
- Cacace, A. T. (2003). Expanding the biological basis of tinnitus: Cross-modal origins and the role of neuroplasticity. *Hearing Research, 175*, 112–132.
- Hallam, R. S., McKenna, L., & Shurlock, L. (2004). Tinnitus impairs cognitive efficiency. *International Journal of Audiology, 43*, 218–226.
- Hallam, R. S., Rachman, S., & Hinchcliffe, R. (1984). Psychological aspects of tinnitus. In S. Rachman (Ed.), *Contributions to medical psychology* (Vol. 3, pp. 31–53). Oxford: Pergamon Press.
- Hayes, S. C., Strosahl, K. D., & Wilson, K. G. (1999). *Acceptance and commitment therapy*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Hesser, H., Weise, C., Zetterqvist Westin, V., & Andersson, G. (2011). A systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials of cognitive-behavioral therapy for tinnitus distress. *Clinical Psychology Review, 31*(4), 545–553.
- Jastreboff, P. J. (1990). Phantom auditory perception (tinnitus): Mechanisms of generation and perception. *Neuroscience Research, 8*, 221–254.
- Kaldo, V., Levin, S., Widarsson, J., Buhrman, M., Larsen, H. C., & Andersson, G. (2008). Internet versus group cognitive-behavioral treatment of distress associated with tinnitus. A randomised controlled trial. *Behavior Therapy, 39*, 348–359.

Tiredness

► [Fatigue](#)

Tissue Repair

► [Wound Healing](#)

Tobacco

► [Nicotine](#)

Tobacco Advertising

Reiner Hanewinkel and Matthis Morgenstern
Institute for Therapy and Health Research, Kiel,
Germany

Synonyms

[Tobacco marketing](#); [Tobacco promotion](#)

Definition

Tobacco advertising is a form of communication by the tobacco industry with the aim of promoting tobacco products (typically cigarettes) and use. Different forms of advertising can be classified into “above the line” (ATL) and “below the line” (BTL) advertising. ATL advertising is traditional mass media advertising in print, television, radio, in cinemas, and on billboards. BTL advertising focuses more on specific target groups and uses less traditional advertising methods, such as sponsoring, promotion, event marketing, point-of-sale displays, product placements, direct marketing, ambient marketing, viral marketing, or brand stretching. Most research on the effects of tobacco advertising focuses on ATL advertising. However, the importance of BTL tobacco advertising is growing in the light of bans or partial bans of traditional tobacco advertising in most countries.

Description

A fundamental premise for the tobacco industry to spend money into tobacco advertising is the assumption that it is effective. The term “effective” can refer to different levels or “outcomes.” It can either mean that tobacco advertising increases the market share of a specific brand, given a fixed market size for tobacco products. It can also mean that tobacco advertising increases or stabilizes the market size, by recruiting new smokers and by stimulating current smokers not to quit or ex-smokers to relapse. Empirical research conducted by non-industry-funded researchers has mainly focused on the latter interpretation of effectiveness, which is the one with high impact from a public health perspective.

One type of study in this field has analyzed changes in the global or country-specific tobacco market size dependent on advertising spending or dependent on changes in tobacco policy (e.g. implementation of advertising bans). These studies are usually time series or interrupted time-series designs and use highly aggregated data. While many of the early econometric studies found no association between aggregate cigarette advertising spending and total market sales, there are also studies that found positive relations, especially if the aggregation of the data was reduced (Saffer and Chaloupka 2000). Studies that compare countries with and without advertising bans or that conduct comparisons within a country before and after an advertising ban often find that bans reduce overall consumption of tobacco (Quentin et al. 2007). The effect is stronger in countries with comprehensive bans compared to partial bans.

A second type of studies uses individual-level data, looking at the effects of tobacco advertising on smoking behavior, mostly of young people. These studies are either experimental and quasi-experimental studies or cross-sectional and longitudinal observational studies. The effect of tobacco advertising is usually studied in terms of individual exposure to tobacco advertising. This is some form of induced exposure in the experimental studies or a measure of self-reported advertising exposure in the observational studies.

Measures of exposure can be direct (e.g., advertising recall, brand recall, notice of advertising, liking of advertising, ownership of promotional items) or indirect (e.g., television screen times, reception and liking of specific television programs, movies, sports, or magazines). A 2006 systematic review of the empirical evidence based on individual-level studies found 29 studies from 5 continents with more than 300,000 participants (DiFranza et al. 2006). The authors concluded that there is strong evidence for a link between exposure to tobacco promotion and tobacco use of children and adolescents. Applying Hill's criteria for judging the likelihood of a causal relationship between exposure and behavior, the authors found that many of Hill's criteria of causation were fulfilled (Hill 1965). They found that (1) children are exposed to tobacco promotion before the initiation of tobacco use (criterion temporality), (2) exposure increases the risk for initiation (criterion strength), (3) greater exposure results in higher risk (criterion dose-response), (4) the increased risk is robust (criterion consistency), (5) the risk is scientifically plausible (criterion plausibility), and (6) no other explanation can account for the evidence (criterion analogy). A recent study additionally confirmed the Hill criterion "specificity" (Hanewinkel et al. 2011).

It is less explicitly studied *how* this effect is mediated, i.e., how tobacco advertising leads to an increase in market size. However, tobacco advertising is not systematically different from other forms of advertising and can, therefore, be conceptualized within broader psychological and marketing theories. Most psychological theories of advertising can be classified as "hierarchy of effects" models (Vakratsas and Ambler 1999). These models suggest that advertising is not directly influencing behavioral responses, but that the effects are always mediated by a mental process. In the broadest sense, this mental process is a change in object valence, the object being the brand, the product, the product group, or the advertising itself. The most common models used to explain the effects of advertising are based on the information processing approach (McGuire 1976). They assume that people are persuaded by the contents of the advertising and

consciously follow a cognitive path which is mediated by preferences, attitudes, norms, and beliefs about the advertised object. Newer variants of these models are the so-called dual-process models which conceptualize two routes of information processing, a central route and a peripheral route (Eagly and Chaiken 1993; Petty and Cacioppo 1986). The central route is activated if advertising contents are thoughtfully elaborated and recipients have high involvement and attention. On the peripheral route, information is less thoughtfully processed (low involvement) which happens if advertisements are consumed rather casually. Recipients with low involvement are more influenced by peripheral or emotional characteristics of the advertising (e.g., attractiveness of the source, colors, music). Most recent psychological theories even go a step further and assume that conscious mental processes are not a necessary precondition for behavioral influences (Bargh 2002; Harris et al. 2009). From this perspective, advertising is a form of behavioral priming that automatically affects the perceiver. The term "automatic" implies that the consumer does not have to be aware of having seen the advertising and also does not have to be aware that she/he responded to it. Such conceptions of advertising effects have, of course, strong implications for prevention strategies as it may be very difficult to counteract unconscious advertising effects.

Cross-References

- [Tobacco Control](#)
- [Tobacco Use](#)

References and Readings

- Bargh, J. A. (2002). Losing consciousness: Automatic influences on consumer judgment, behavior and motivation. *Journal of Consumer Research*, 29(2), 280–286.
- DiFranza, J. R., Wellman, R. J., Sargent, J. D., Weitzman, M., Hipple, B. J., & Winickoff, J. P. (2006). Tobacco promotion and the initiation of tobacco use: Assessing the evidence for causality. *Pediatrics*, 117(6), e1237–e1248.
- Eagly, A. H., & Chaiken, S. (1993). Process theories of attitude formation and change: The elaboration

- likelihood model and heuristic systematic models. In A. H. Eagly & S. Chaiken (Eds.), *The psychology of attitudes* (pp. 305–325). Fort Worth: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich.
- Hanewinkel, R., Isensee, B., Sargent, J. D., & Morgenstern, M. (2011). Cigarette advertising and teen smoking initiation. *Pediatrics*, 127(2), e271–e278.
- Harris, J. L., Bargh, J. A., & Brownell, K. D. (2009). Priming effects of television food advertising on eating behavior. *Health Psychology*, 28(4), 404–413.
- Hill, A. B. (1965). The environment and disease: Association or causation? *Proceedings of the Royal Society of Medicine*, 58, 295–300.
- McGuire, W. J. (1976). Some internal psychological factors influencing consumer choice. *Journal of Consumer Research*, 2(4), 302–319.
- Petty, R. E., & Cacioppo, J. T. (1986). *Communication and persuasion: Central and peripheral routes to attitude change*. New York: Springer.
- Quentin, W., Neubauer, S., Leidl, R., & König, H. H. (2007). Advertising bans as a means of tobacco control policy: A systematic literature review of time-series analyses. *International Journal of Public Health*, 52(5), 295–307.
- Saffer, H., & Chaloupka, F. (2000). The effect of tobacco advertising bans on tobacco consumption. *Journal of Health Economics*, 19(6), 1117–1137.
- Vakratsas, D., & Ambler, T. (1999). How advertising works: What do we really know? *Journal of Marketing*, 63(1), 26–43.

Tobacco Cessation

► Smoking Cessation

Tobacco Control

Pekka Puska
National Institute of Health and Welfare (THL),
Helsinki, Finland

Synonyms

Secondhand smoke; Smokeless tobacco;
Smoking; Smoking cessation; Smoking prevention;
Tobacco policy

Definition

Tobacco control includes all measures aiming at the reduction of tobacco use and of its harmful consequences in the population.

Thus tobacco control includes measures aiming at both prevention and cessation of the use of all tobacco products – both smoking and the use of smokeless tobacco.

Description

Introduction

The great health risks from smoking have been convincingly shown since the 1950s. It is now known that all forms of tobacco use, both smoking and the use of smokeless tobacco, i.e., are both addictive and potentially lethal. Scientific evidence confirms that smokers have significantly elevated risks of death from many cancers, cardiovascular and respiratory diseases, and many other fatal conditions (US Department of Health and Education and Welfare 1972). The harmful effects of secondhand smoke have also long been convincingly established (Öberg et al. 2011).

Tobacco is a highly addictive substance that directly kills half of its users, as well as non-smokers exposed to secondhand smoke. There is no safe form of tobacco use or no safe level of exposure to secondhand smoke.

It is estimated that currently about one billion of men (nearly 50% of adult men) and about 250 million women (over 10% of women) in the world smoke. Smoking rates among men seem to have peaked but among women still increasing on global scale.

Tobacco kills currently annually some six million people (about 10% of world deaths) and with current trends some eight million people annually by 2030. Of the tobacco deaths, some three-fourths occur in low- and middle-income countries and generally proportionally more among lower socioeconomic segments of the population. The economic costs of tobacco-related harms are enormous: both the direct costs to health services and the indirect societal costs (Eriksen et al. 2014).

Health professionals started to warn about the harmful consequences of tobacco use already in the 1950s. Because of the disinformation and lobbying of the big tobacco industry, policy actions to reduce tobacco use started much later, generally only in the 1980s and the 1990s. A milestone was the adoption of the WHO Framework Convention on Tobacco Use, FCTC, in 2003 (WHO 2003). Currently some 180 countries have ratified the convention that is a pioneering example of the use of international law in the field of public health. FCTC covers all the main elements of tobacco control.

Elements of Tobacco Control

Reduction of Demand for Tobacco

Education and communication: This includes comprehensive educational and public awareness programs on the health risks and on the addictive nature of tobacco products and exposure to tobacco smoke. This includes also effective training programs on tobacco control to health workers, to other professional and community groups dealing potentially with tobacco control, as well as to decision-makers.

Tobacco cessation: Stopping tobacco use is often very difficult because of strong physical addiction to nicotine and to the social dependence to the habit. During the last few decades, pharmacological and nonpharmacological (psychological, educational) methods have been developed to effectively help smokers and other tobacco users to quit the habit. Tobacco control policies include measures to provide tobacco users access to cessation services.

Elimination of tobacco advertising and promotion: An important background for the global tobacco epidemic is the powerful push from the multinational tobacco industry in the form of effective advertising, promotion, sponsorship, and lobbying of decision-makers. Thus an important component of tobacco control is a comprehensive ban on advertising, promotion, and sponsorship. Here an international agreement is especially important because of the cross border spreading of advertising. It is also important to

eliminate false or misleading messages about the tobacco products.

Price and tax measures: Price is an important aspect of the use of any product. Accordingly price and tax measures are effective and important means of reducing tobacco consumption, in particular among young persons.

Regulation on the contents of tobacco products: Although there is no safe tobacco products, authorities can introduce regulations on testing, measuring, and levels of the contents and emissions of tobacco products. This can also include introduction of self-extinguishing cigarettes to reduce fires. National legislation can also regulate tobacco product disclosures.

Smoke-free environments: Exposure to tobacco smoke, especially indoors, is a health risk to everybody and especially to vulnerable population groups like children. At the same time, smoke-free environments discourage initiation and continuation of smoking. Thus important elements of any tobacco control policies include the prohibition of smoking in indoor workplaces, public transport, indoor public places, and also in other public places (e.g., stadia).

Packaging and labeling of tobacco products: Tobacco product packages and labels should not promote the product by any false, misleading, or deceptive messages. Such messages may include terms like “low tar,” “light,” “ultralight,” or “mild.” Tobacco products should carry large and clear health warnings in text or in form of pictures. Recently also generic tobacco packages have been proposed.

Reduction of the Supply of Tobacco

Sale to minors: An important part of tobacco-related health work is the prevention of tobacco use among children and youth and moving the possible initiation to as late as possible. Thus sale of tobacco to minors should be prohibited, and this legislation is well enforced, e.g., by requiring the purchaser to provide appropriate evidence of age. Vending machines should be placed so that minors cannot buy from them. Regulations should also prohibit sale of tobacco products by minors, as well as sale of individual or small cigarette packets.

Illicit trade: Surprisingly the big part of tobacco used in the world is smuggled, manufactured illicitly, or counterfeited. Thus elimination of illicit trade of tobacco products is important, and an issue in which international collaboration by authorities is especially needed.

Economic alternatives to tobacco business: The reduction of tobacco use calls also for the reduction of tobacco growing. Thus alternatives for tobacco growing should be encouraged, as well as also other viable alternatives for tobacco-related work.

Other Aspects of Tobacco Control

Research, monitoring, and surveillance: Although the scientific base of tobacco control is very strong, further research is needed in several areas. It is also important that every country has also its own research on aspects of its special features. Monitoring of tobacco use trends in the population and its subgroups is crucial. It is also important to monitor many aspects of determinants and process of tobacco use as well as activities related to tobacco control.

Exchange of information: For the international collaboration and the reporting of the FCTC, the implementation exchange of tobacco control-related information is needed. This includes, e.g., information on legislative, administrative, and other tobacco control measures, as well as information on tobacco use trends.

International collaboration in scientific, technical, and legal fields of tobacco control: Because of the global nature of the tobacco epidemic, the tobacco control calls for strong international collaboration, much assisted by the international FCTC-related work.

Implementation of International Tobacco Control

The FCTC Convention Secretariat published in 2014 a summary report on the global progress in implementation of the FCTC (2014). The report concluded that the implementation of the Convention has progressed steadily since the entry in force in 2005, but the implementation levels vary substantially between different policy measures. Overall, countries report high implementation rates for

measures on packaging and labeling, sales to minors, and education, training, and public awareness. Rates remain low in areas like disclosure of marketing expenditures or programs for tobacco use cessation.

The implementation of tobacco control measures varies across different regions of the world. Also comparability of reports from different countries varies both concerning implementation measures and tobacco use data.

Overall there seems to be notable progress in introduction and implementation of various tobacco control measures in most parts of the world. After 10 years of existence of the Convention, the Secretariat has commissioned an assessment of the global impact of FCTC by a group of independent experts.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Health Promotion and Disease Prevention](#)
- ▶ [Public Health](#)
- ▶ [Risk Factors and Their Management](#)
- ▶ [Smoking Prevention Policies and Programs](#)

References and Further Readings

- Eriksen, M., McKay, J., Schluger, N., Gomeshtapeh, F. I., & Drope, J. (2014). *The tobacco Atlas*. Atlanta: American Cancer Society.
- FCTC. (2014). *Global progress report 2014 on report on implementation of the WHO Framework Convention on Tobacco Control*. Geneva: The Convention Secretariat.
- Öberg, M., Jaakkola, M., Woodward, A., Peruga, A., & Pruss-Ustun, A. (2011). Worldwide burden of disease from exposure to second-hand smoke: A retrospective analysis of data from 192 countries. *The Lancet*, 377, 139–146.
- US Department of Health, Education and Welfare. (1972). *The health consequences of smoking. A report of the surgeon general: 1972*. DHEW Publication No. (HSM) 72–7516. Washington, DC.
- WHO. (2003). *WHO framework convention on tobacco control*. Geneva: World Health Organization.

Tobacco Marketing

- ▶ [Tobacco Advertising](#)

Tobacco Policy

► [Tobacco Control](#)

Tobacco Promotion

► [Tobacco Advertising](#)

Tobacco Smoking and Health

► [Smoking and Health](#)

Tobacco Smoking Cessation

► [Smoking Cessation](#)

Tobacco Use

► [Smoking Behavior](#)

Tonic REM

► [REM Sleep](#)

Total Cholesterol

► [Lipid](#)

Total Cholesterol in the Blood

► [Lipid, Plasma](#)

Total Sleep Time

► [Sleep Duration](#)

Touch

► [Massage Therapy](#)

Traditional Chinese Medicine

► [Acupuncture](#)

Trail-Making Test

Romola S. Bucks
School of Psychological Science, The University
of Western Australia (M304), Perth, WA,
Australia

Synonyms

[Trails](#)

Definition

This term refers to a widely used test assessing organized visual search, planning, attention, set shifting, cognitive flexibility, and divided attention (Rabin et al. [2005](#)): all capacities thought to be executive in nature. Originally developed by Partington in 1938 (Partington and Leiter [1949](#)), it was first published as part of the *Army Individual Test Battery* (1984). The test is currently available in public domain (see Lezak et al. [2004](#); Strauss et al. [2006](#)) and revised versions (e.g., Reynolds [2002](#); Salthouse et al. [2000](#)) and as part of a number of assessment batteries (e.g., Delis et al. [2001](#)).

The standard trail-making test (TMT) contains two parts: Trails A and Trails B, which usually take no more than 5–10 min to complete. In Trails A, the participant draws lines to connect consecutively numbered circles, drawn on a single A4 sheet (1-2-3...). In Trails B, the participant connects consecutively numbered and lettered circles, alternating between them (e.g., 1-A-2-B-3...) on a second sheet. The participant is asked to connect the numbers, or numbers and letters, as fast as possible without lifting the pencil from the sheet. Revised versions (e.g., Delis et al. 2001; Reynolds 2002; Salthouse et al. 2000) usually contain an equivalent to Trails B, plus up to four other subtests designed to help the assessor distinguish the cause(s) of difficulties in the switching task, such as number or letter sequencing, visual scanning, or motor deficits.

The main performance measure is time taken to complete the sequence, but errors are commonly recorded as they can also be clinically useful (Lezak et al. 2004) and some variants score the number of items completed in a fixed period of time (Salthouse et al. 2000). Because of the significant motor requirements of the task, normative data are often age stratified (e.g., Mitrushina et al. 1999; Tombaugh 2004; see e.g., Hester et al. 2005, for difference and ratio norms). Education-based norms are also recommended (Tombaugh 2004).

Trails A is thought to rely most markedly on processing speed and tracking skills, whereas Trails B is thought to require more executive skills because it requires shifting between sequences (Kortte et al. 2002), inhibition, and visual working memory (Fellows et al. 2017). Indeed, fMRI evidence supports this view: Zakzanis et al. (2005) found greater left frontal activation in the dorso-lateral prefrontal cortex during Trails B than Trails A.

Three methods of comparing Trails A and B are commonly employed: total time to complete Trails A subtracted from total time to complete Trails B (B–A); the ratio of Trails B to Trails A (B/A); or a residual representing the difference between Trails B performance predicted using Trails A (B.A; Fellows and Schmitter-Edgecombe 2015; Salthouse 2011). Evidence suggests that the

ratio or the residual may be clearer indices of executive function by controlling for baseline motor, speed, visual tracking, age, and sequencing differences (Arbuthnott and Frank 2000; Salthouse 2011).

Both parts of the TMT are highly sensitive to dementia and brain injury, including Parkinson's (Goldman et al. 1998) and Alzheimer's disease (Chen et al. 2000). Importantly, deficits in TMT performance predict everyday activities of daily living difficulties (Bell-McGinty et al. 2002), including medication management (Fellows et al. 2017) and mortality (Vazzana et al. 2010) and may indicate preclinical Alzheimer's dementia (Chen et al. 2000).

Cross-References

- [Executive Function](#)
- [Neuropsychology](#)

References and Further Reading

- Arbuthnott, K., & Frank, J. (2000). Trail making test, part B as a measure of executive control: Validation using a set-switching paradigm. *Journal of Clinical and Experimental Neuropsychology*, 22, 518–528.
- Bell-McGinty, S., Podell, K., Franzen, M., Baird, A. D., & Williams, M. J. (2002). Standard measures of executive function in predicting instrumental activities of daily living in older adults. *International Journal of Geriatric Psychiatry*, 17, 828–834.
- Chen, P., Ratcliff, G., Belle, S. H., Cauley, J. A., DeKosky, S. T., & Ganguli, M. (2000). Cognitive tests that best discriminate between presymptomatic AD and those who remain nondemented. *Neurology*, 55, 1847–1853.
- Delis, D., Kaplan, E., & Kramer, J. (2001). *Delis-Kaplan executive function scale*. San Antonio: The Psychological Corporation.
- Fellows, R. P., & Schmitter-Edgecombe, M. (2015). Between-domain cognitive dispersion and functional abilities in older adults. *Journal of Clinical and Experimental Neuropsychology*, 37, 1013–1023.
- Fellows, R. P., Dahmen, J., Cook, D., & Schmitter-Edgecombe, M. (2017). Multicomponent analysis of a digital trail making test. *Clinical Neuropsychologist*, 31, 154–167.
- Goldman, W. P., Baty, J. D., Buckles, V. D., Sahrman, S., & Morris, J. C. (1998). Cognitive and motor functioning in Parkinson disease: Subjects with and without

- questionable dementia. *Archives of Neurology*, 55, 674–680.
- Hester, R. L., Kinsella, G. J., Ong, B., & McGregor, J. (2005). Demographic influences on baseline and derived scores from the trail making test in healthy older Australian adults. *Clinical Neuropsychologist*, 19, 45–54.
- Kortte, K. B., Horner, M. D., & Windham, W. K. (2002). The trail making test, part B: Cognitive flexibility or ability to maintain set? *Applied Neuropsychology*, 9, 106–109.
- Lezak, M. D., Howieson, D. B., Loring, D. W., Hannay, H. J., & Fischer, J. S. (2004). *Neuropsychological assessment* (4th ed.). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Mitrushina, M. N., Boone, K. L., & D’Elia, L. (1999). *Handbook of normative data for neuropsychological assessment*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Partington, J. E., & Leiter, R. G. (1949). Partington’s pathway test. *Psychological Service Center Bulletin*, 1, 9–20.
- Rabin, L. A., Barr, W. B., & Butler, L. A. (2005). Assessment practices of clinical neuropsychologists in the United States and Canada: A survey of INS, NAN, APA division 40 members. *Archives of Clinical Neuropsychology*, 20, 33–65.
- Reynolds, C. R. (2002). *Comprehensive trail-making test*. Austin: PRO-ED.
- Salthouse, T. A. (2011). What cognitive abilities are involved in trail-making performance? *Intelligence*, 39, 222–232.
- Salthouse, T. A., Toth, J., Daniels, K., Parks, C., Pak, R., Wolbrette, M., & Hocking, K. (2000). Effects of aging on the efficiency of task switching in a variant of the trail making test. *Neuropsychology*, 14, 102–111.
- Strauss, E., Sherman, E. M. S., & Spreen, O. (2006). *A compendium of neuropsychological tests: Administration, norms, and commentary*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Tombaugh, T. N. (2004). Trail making test A and B: Normative data stratified by age and education. *Archives of Clinical Neuropsychology*, 19, 203–214.
- Vazzana, R., Bandinelli, S., Lauretani, F., Volpato, S., Lauretani, F., Di Iorio, A., et al. (2010). Trail making test predicts physical impairment and mortality in older persons. *Journal of American Geriatrics Society*, 58, 719–723.
- Zakzanis, K. K., Mraz, R., & Graham, S. J. (2005). An fMRI study of the trail making test. *Neuropsychologia*, 43, 1878–1886.

Trait Anger

Judith Carroll

Cousins Center for Psychoneuroimmunology,
University of California, Los Angeles, CA, USA

Synonyms

Hostile affect; Hostility

Definition

Trait anger is described as a dispositional characteristic where one experiences frequent anger, with varying intensity (e.g., mild irritability, intense rage), and is often accompanied by related negative emotions such as envy, resentment, hate, and disgust (Buss 1961; Siegman and Smith 1994). There is considerable construct overlap between hostile dispositions and trait anger, making it difficult to disentangle. Martinn et al. (2000) have proposed a three-factor model of trait anger, which includes the anger-related affect, behavior (i.e., aggression), and cognitions (i.e., cynicism), similar to several of the subscales of the Cook-Medley Hostility Scale (Barefoot et al. 1989). A frequently used measure of trait anger is the Spielberger State-Trait Anger Expression Inventory (STAXI), which measures trait anger as having a proneness to experiencing anger either as a general tendency (*Anger temperament*), or with provocation (*Anger Reactions*) (Spielberger 1988; Spielberger and Sydeman 1994). Furthermore, Spielberger describes three different styles of anger expression: (1) showing anger emotions (*Anger-Out*), (2) preventing anger from being expressed but still experiencing it internally (*Anger-In*), or (3) having the initial affective response but then regulating it well (*Anger-Control*) (Spielberger 1988).

Behavioral medicine research has documented associations of trait anger, and the related constructs of hostility, with greater cardiovascular disease incidence and progression (al’Absi and Bongard 2006; Chida and Steptoe 2009; Miller

Trails

► Trail-Making Test

et al. 1996; Siegman and Smith 1994; Smith et al. 2004). Although poor health behaviors are thought to partially explain these associations (Everson et al. 1997; Siegman and Smith 1994), it is also likely that this trait disposition contributes to worse health through the repeated emotionally driven activation of the neuroendocrine stress response and its associated downstream biological effects, including increases in blood pressure, inflammation, and oxidative stress (Carroll et al. 2010, 2011; Greeson et al. 2009; Smith and Gallo 1999; Suarez et al. 1998). Further work is needed to better define the mechanisms of this association.

Cross-References

- [Anger, Measurement](#)
- [Hostility, Cynical](#)
- [Hostility, Measurement of](#)

References and Further Readings

- al'Absi, M., & Bongard, S. (2006). Neuroendocrine and behavioral mechanisms mediating the relationship between anger expression and cardiovascular risk: Assessment consideration and improvements. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 29, 573–591.
- Barefoot, J. C., Dodge, K. A., Peterson, B. L., Dahlstrom, G., & Williams, R. B. (1989). The cook-medley hostility scale: Item content and ability to predict survival. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 51, 46–57.
- Buss, A. H. (1961). *The psychology of aggression*. New York: Wiley.
- Carroll, J. E., Marsland, A. L., Jenkins, F., Baum, A., Muldoon, M. F., & Manuck, S. B. (2010). A urinary marker of oxidative stress covaries positively with hostility among midlife community volunteers. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 72(3), 273–280.
- Carroll, J. E., Low, C. A., Prather, A. A., Cohen, S., Fury, J. M., Ross, D. C., et al. (2011). Negative affective responses to a speech task predict changes in interleukin (IL)-6. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 25, 232–238.
- Chida, Y., & Steptoe, A. (2009). The association of anger and hostility with future coronary heart disease: A meta-analytic review of prospective evidence. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 53(11), 936–946.
- Everson, S. A., Kauhanen, J., Kaplan, G. A., Goldberg, D. E., Julkunen, J., Tuomilehto, J., et al. (1997). Hostility and increased risk of mortality and acute myocardial infarction: The mediating role of behavioral risk factors. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 146(2), 142–152.
- Greeson, J. M., Lewis, J. G., Achanzar, K., Zimmerman, E., Young, K. H., & Suarez, E. C. (2009). Stress-induced changes in the expression of monocytic beta2-integrins: The impact of arousal of negative affect and adrenergic responses to the anger recall interview. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 23(2), 251–256.
- Martinn, R., Watson, D., & Wan, C. K. (2000). A three-factor model of trait anger: dimensions of affect, behavior, and cognition. *Journal of Personality*, 68, 869–897.
- Miller, T. Q., Smith, T. W., Turner, C. W., Guijarro, M. L., & Hallet, A. J. (1996). A meta-analytic review of research on hostility and physical health. *Psychological Bulletin*, 119, 322–348.
- Siegman, A. W., & Smith, T. W. (Eds.). (1994). *Anger, hostility, and the heart*. Hillsdale: Erlbaum.
- Smith, T. W. (1992). Hostility and health: Current status of a psychosomatic hypothesis. *Health Psychology*, 11(3), 139–150.
- Smith, T. W., & Gallo, L. C. (1999). Hostility and cardiovascular reactivity during marital interaction. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 61(4), 436–445.
- Smith, T. W., Glazer, K., Ruiz, J. M., & Gallo, L. C. (2004). Hostility, anger, aggressiveness, and coronary heart disease: An interpersonal perspective on personality, emotion, and health. *Journal of Personality*, 72(6), 1217–1270.
- Spielberger, C. D. (1988). *Manual for the state-trait anger expression inventory (STAXI)*. Odessa: Psychological Assessment Resources.
- Spielberger, C., & Sydeman, S. J. (1994). State-trait anxiety inventory and state-trait anger expression inventory. In M. E. Maruish (Ed.), *The use of psychological testing for treatment planning and outcome assessment* (pp. 292–321). Hillsdale: Erlbaum.
- Suarez, E. C., Kuhn, C. M., Schanberg, S. M., Williams, R. B., Jr., & Zimmermann, E. A. (1998). Neuroendocrine, cardiovascular, and emotional responses of hostile men: The role of interpersonal challenge. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 60(1), 78–88.

Trait Anxiety

Yori Gidron

SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile, Lille, France

Synonyms

[Neuroticism](#)

Definition

Trait anxiety refers to the stable tendency to attend to, experience, and report negative emotions such as fears, worries, and anxiety across many situations. This is part of the personality dimension of neuroticism versus emotional stability. Trait anxiety also manifests by repeated concerns about and reporting of body symptoms. Trait anxiety is characterized by a stable perception of environmental stimuli (events, others' statements) as threatening. Trait-anxious people often experience and express also state anxiety, in situations in which most people do not experience such responses. This bias is thought to reflect a cognitive-perceptual bias. At the perceptual level, there is an over-attentional bias to threatening stimuli. At the cognitive level, there is a distorted negative interpretation of information congruent with and fostering anxious responses. Finally, at the level of memory, there is over-recall of threatening information. These three biases are common in people with a trait-anxious personality type and have important etiological roles in various types of affective disorders (Mathews and Macleod 2005). Trait anxiety is commonly assessed with the State-Trait Anxiety Inventory – trait version (Spielberger et al. 1970) – though other instruments exist as well. An indirect measure of anxiety was developed using the implicit association test – IAT. Indeed, the Anxiety-IAT correlated with self-reported anxiety but outperformed the latter in predicting various criteria (Egloff and Schmukle 2002). Trait anxiety is an important predictor and moderator in behavior medicine. For example, trait anxiety predicts functional recovery following spine surgery, risk of posttraumatic stress disorder, as well as adaptation to and risk of death following myocardial infarction (e.g., Székely et al. 2007). These relationships could occur since trait anxiety is related to various coping strategies and to various neurophysiological responses. For example, high trait-anxious people demonstrate greater activity in the amygdala and reduced activity in the inhibitory dorsal anterior cingulate cortex, during extinction of fear responses (Sehlmeyer et al. 2011). This brain pattern can explain their increased

vulnerability for psychological disorders and adaptation problems. As such, this psychological trait deserves attention in research and clinical applications of behavior medicine. The underlying causes, mechanisms for contributing to poor health outcomes, and ways for reducing the consequences of trait anxiety are important avenues of research for the benefit of clinical practice.

Cross-References

- [Anxiety and Heart Disease](#)
- [Anxiety and Its Measurement](#)
- [Anxiety Disorder](#)

References and Further Readings

- Egloff, B., & Schmukle, S. C. (2002). Predictive validity of an implicit association test for assessing anxiety. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 83, 1441–1455.
- Mathews, A., & MacLeod, C. (2005). Cognitive vulnerability to emotional disorders. *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology*, 1, 167–195.
- Sehlmeyer, C., Dannlowski, U., Schöning, S., Kugel, H., Pyka, M., Pfleiderer, B., et al. (2011). Neural correlates of trait anxiety in fear extinction. *Psychological Medicine*, 41, 789–798.
- Spielberger, C. D., Gorsuch, R. L., & Lushene, R. E. (1970). *Manual for the state-trait anxiety inventory*. Palo Alto: Consulting Psychologists Press.
- Székely, A., Balog, P., Benkő, E., Breuer, T., Székely, J., Kertai, M. D., et al. (2007). Anxiety predicts mortality and morbidity after coronary artery and valve surgery—a 4-year follow-up study. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 69, 625–631.

Traits

- [Personality](#)

Trans Fats

- [Fat, Dietary Intake](#)
- [Trans Fatty Acids](#)

Trans Fatty Acids

Leah Rosenberg
Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Trans fats](#)

Definition

Trans fatty acids are unsaturated fatty acids with one double bond in the *trans* structural configuration as opposed to the *cis* conformation. These differences in conformation likely have consequences in the development of atherosclerosis secondary to diets rich in *trans* fatty acids. Dyslipidemia and adverse health outcomes have been linked to frequent consumption of *trans* fatty acids. While *trans* fatty acids do appear in nature, the vast majority in industrialized-world diets are manufactured to promote shelf life stability and enhance flavor in prepared foods. Preventative approaches to cardiovascular disease prevention and management include elimination of *trans* fatty acid consumption (Curhan and Mitch 2007). Certain municipalities, such as New York City, have recently enacted prohibitions against the use of *trans* fatty acids in restaurant food.

References and Readings

Curhan, G. C., & Mitch, W. E. (2007). Chapter 53-Diet and kidney disease. In *Section IX – Conservative and pharmacologic management of kidney disease* (Brenner and Rector's the kidney) (8th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders.

Transactional Model

► [Cognitive Appraisal](#)

Transcendental Meditation

Alan M. Delamater
Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami
Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Attention training](#); [Concentration](#); [Contemplation](#); [Meditation](#); [Mental training](#)

Definition

Transcendental meditation (TM) is a meditation technique that has its origins in the ancient Vedic tradition of India. In the 1960s, Maharishi Mahesh Yogi introduced this meditative technique to the western world in a simple, nonreligious fashion, and since then TM has been practiced by millions of people worldwide. A considerable amount of research has been conducted on the effects of TM on physiological and psychological outcomes. Overall, the results of this research indicate that the practice of TM has beneficial effects in individuals with chronic health conditions as well as healthy people.

TM is classified as a concentrative meditation technique. The method consists of twice-daily 20 min practice in which the individual focuses on their mantra which is individually prescribed by a certified instructor. The individual is instructed to sit in a relaxed posture in a quiet environment and focus on the silent repetition of their mantra in their mind to the exclusion of other thoughts or feelings.

As concentration deepens, feelings of calm or tranquility are experienced. Research has shown that when individuals practice this type of meditation, they experience a restful hypometabolic state in which their respiration, heart-rate, blood pressure, muscle tension, and other indicators of sympathetic nervous system activation all decrease. This state of hypometabolic, restful alertness has been termed “the relaxation response.” The relaxation response can be reliably

elicited by the repetition of a mental stimulus (e.g., a mantra) while the individual adopts a relaxed mental attitude in a quiet environment.

Cross-References

- [Meditation](#)
- [Mindfulness](#)
- [Relaxation](#)

References and Readings

- Anderson, J. W., et al. (2008). Blood pressure response to transcendental meditation: A meta-analysis. *American Journal of Hypertension*, 21(3), 310–316.
- Benson, H. (1975). *The relaxation response*. New York: Morrow.
- Chandler, H. M., et al. (2005). Transcendental meditation and postconventional self-development: A 10-year longitudinal study. *Journal of Social Behavior and Personality*, 17(1), 93–121.
- Dillbeck, M. C., & Orme-Johnson, D. W. (1987). Physiological differences between transcendental meditation and rest. *American Psychologist*, 42, 879–881.
- Goleman, D. (1988). *The varieties of the meditative experience*. New York: Tarcher.
- Mahesh Yogi, M. (1963). *Transcendental meditation*. New York: New American Library.
- Paul-Labrador, M., et al. (2006). Effects of randomized controlled trial of transcendental meditation on components of the metabolic syndrome in subjects with coronary heart disease. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 166, 1218–1224.
- So, K. T., & Orme-Johnson, D. W. (2001). Three randomized experiments on the holistic longitudinal effects of the transcendental meditation technique on cognition. *Intelligence*, 29(5), 419–440.
- Walton, K. G., et al. (2004). Review of controlled clinical research on the transcendental meditation program and cardiovascular disease: Risk factors, morbidity, and mortality. *Cardiology in Review*, 12(5), 262–266.

Transducer

Yori Gidron
SCALab, Lille 3 University and Siric Oncollile,
Lille, France

Synonyms

[Biophysical converter](#)

Definition

In physics, a transducer is a device or system which converts one type of energy to another type. In biology, this term can refer to cells or intracellular elements which transform one form of input or signal to another. Both are applicable for behavior medicine. Looking at devices, transducers are found in any machine which measures bodily parameters and depicts them electronically. A device measuring heart rate or pulse can detect changes in light passing through blood vessels, which reflect amount of blood as a function of one's heart rate. These changes in light are sensed, for example, by photoresistors, which are then translated to changes in electrical energy (current), which is then translated to digital numbers reflecting the rate of change in heart rate. The photoresistor constitutes the transducer in this case. Such devices are pivotal in medical diagnosis and in psychophysiological research. Another example of a device would be a galvanic skin conductance measure, which detects changes in electrical conductance of the skin, which reflects sympathetic activity and input into the skin. The conductance is translated into a digital representation, to reflect sympathetic activity. This too is used in psychophysiological research on stress responses.

Biologically, numerous transducers exist in the pathways of the sensory system and in cells. In the eyes, for example, the retina contains numerous photoreceptor cells that contain molecules called opsins. These photoreceptor cells synapse onto neuronal pathways and, via signal transducers, convert light energy detected by the opsins to neuronal energy, for visual processing in the brain. In the auditory system, sound reaches the middle ear after being channeled by the ear's shape. The eardrum and bones carry vibrations to the inner ear, where physical movements are transformed to fluid movement in the cochlea. This fluid movement excites hair cells in the basilar membrane that generates, via transduction, neuronal signals to the auditory cortex for higher auditory processing. Another example is the neuroendocrine transducer, where a neuron, for example, in the pituitary gland, translates

electrical stimulation in its input to secretion of hormones at its output. In recent years, the vagus nerve has been found to be a pivotal neuroimmune transducer since its paranglia express receptors for interleukin-1, an inflammatory signal (Ek et al. 1998). Upon signaling by that cytokine, neuronal information is carried to the brain via acetylcholine, the major vagal neurotransmitter, thus translating immune to nerve information, which then triggers several negative feedback anti-inflammatory loops (Tracey 2009). Transducers also play major roles in diseases. In cancer, for example, among multiple intracellular signaling pathways, the signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3) is a transcription factor which is active upon extracellular activation by many signals including cytokines and growth factors. STAT3 plays a role in cell apoptosis and growth. In some cancers, constant activity of STAT3 is related to procarcinogenic activity and to poor prognosis (e.g., Alvarez et al. 2006). Thus, transducers are omnipresent in the body (or in devices) and are crucial for communication between the body and the external world as well as between different types of signals inside the body, in relation to health and disease.

Cross-References

► [Psychophysiological](#)

References and Further Readings

- Alvarez, J. V., Greulich, H., Sellers, W. R., Meyerson, M., & Frank, D. A. (2006). Signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 is required for the oncogenic effects of non-small-cell lung cancer-associated mutations of the epidermal growth factor receptor. *Cancer Research*, 66, 3162–3168.
- Ek, M., Kurosawa, M., Lundeberg, T., & Ericsson, A. (1998). Activation of vagal afferents after intravenous injection of interleukin-1 β : Role of endogenous prostaglandins. *Journal of Neuroscience*, 18, 9471–9479.
- Tracey, K. J. (2009). Reflex control of immunity. *Nature Reviews Immunology*, 9, 418–428.

Trans-fatty Acids

► [Fat: Saturated, Unsaturated](#)

Transfer RNA

► [RNA](#)

Transformational Coping

► [Posttraumatic Growth](#)

Translational Behavioral Medicine

Bonnie Spring¹, Angela Fidler Pfammatter², Sara A. Hoffman³ and Jennifer L. Warnick⁴
¹Department of Preventive Medicine, Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA
²Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA
³Feinberg School of Medicine, Northwestern University, Evanston, IL, USA
⁴University of Florida, Gainesville, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Implementation](#); [Integrated behavioral medicine research, practice, policy](#); [Research to practice translation](#)

Definition

“Translation” is the process of adapting theoretical principles and empirical findings from research so that these can be applied in the real-world contexts of clinical and public health practice (Sung et al. 2003; Westfall et al. 2007; Woolf 2008). In

translational behavioral medicine (TBM), knowledge from the basic psychosocial, behavioral, and biomedical sciences is applied to develop behavioral interventions to improve health, evaluate the effectiveness of those interventions, and study how to improve their implementation in practice and policy. The overarching objective of TBM is to advance, integrate, and actualize knowledge from the research, practice, and policy arenas to improve the health of individuals and communities. To advance progress in translating behavioral science knowledge to improved health, a new scholarly professional journal, *Translational Behavioral Medicine: Practice, Policy, Research*, was established in 2011 by the Society of Behavioral Medicine, with founding editor, Dr. Bonnie Spring.

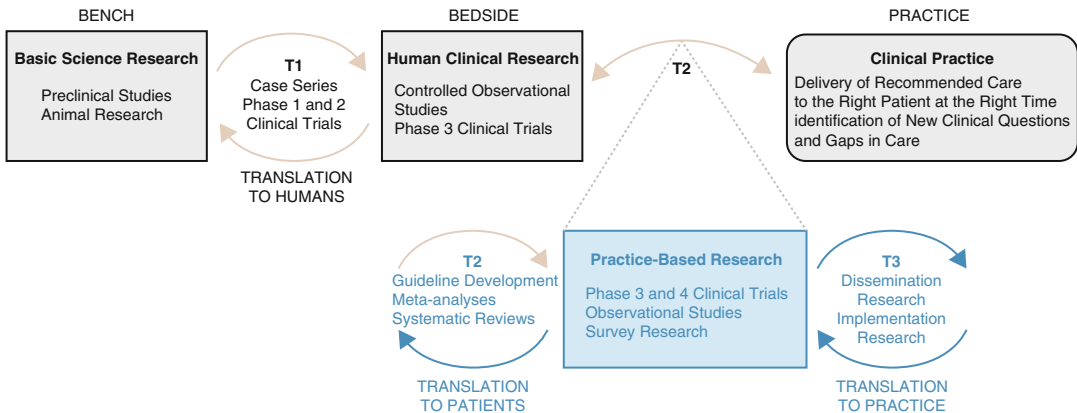
Description

In 2001, the Institute of Medicine (IOM) published a report on the quality of health care in the United States. The IOM noted the chasm between the health care Americans receive and the kind they should receive. They attributed this gap largely to inadequate translation of scientific discoveries into actual practices. An oft-cited statistic is that it takes 15–20 years for a scientific discovery to influence clinical practice (Balas and Boren 2000). Moreover, even when a research-supported treatment does become recognized as a best practice, adherence across practitioners is highly variable.

The translation process proceeds through a series of phases, as illustrated in the conceptual model by Westfall et al. (2007), shown in Fig. 1. The first translational phase (T1) utilizes knowledge obtained from the study of basic biological, psychosocial, and behavioral processes to inform the development and refinement of promising health interventions. T1 research, sometimes called “bench to bedside,” provides the first link from basic science to human clinical application. The second translational phase (T2), sometimes called “bench to trench,” is concerned with evaluating the efficacy and effectiveness of interventions under conditions that become progressively less controlled and more representative of the general population and usual practice settings. The third translational phase (T3) is sometimes called dissemination and implementation (D & I). T3 research examines how to facilitate the uptake of evidence-based (research-supported) interventions into routine, day-to-day provision of clinical care and public health services. In contrast to T1, which concerns developing interventions, and T2, which concerns determining whether interventions work, T3 research examines how to get effective interventions widely implemented in real-world settings.

T1 Translation

The earliest work of T1 translation is focused on developing the intervention; later work is focused on optimizing or refining it. The ideas that



Translational Behavioral Medicine, Fig. 1 Translational research phases from the NIH roadmap (Reprinted with permission from Westfall et al. (2007))

underlie behavioral medicine interventions tend to originate from one of two fields: epidemiology and basic biopsychosocial sciences. The field of origin then influences the research designs initially implemented to develop a candidate intervention. Whereas epidemiologists commonly apply observational approaches, basic behavioral and psychosocial scientists are more likely to implement experimental methods.

Intervention Development

A simple form of naturalistic observational research design is a *case series* (or clinical series). In a case series to develop a new treatment, a single individual or small group of individuals is observed (either prospectively or retrospectively using recorded information). The aim is to detect whether an association exists between exposure to putative therapeutic elements and a clinical event (e.g., symptom improvement or remission). Usually applied in the earliest phases of treatment development, a series of cases may be gathered to establish “proof of concept” that a new treatment holds sufficient promise to warrant further study. An advantage of case series studies is that they capture clinical events in a naturalistic context. Disadvantages are that case studies examine small, highly selected samples of people who may be atypical. Also, case series can demonstrate only correlation, not causation.

In contrast to a naturalistic observational approach, when using *experimental methods*, the researcher manipulates one or more independent variables to determine the effects on a dependent variable. These methods lend themselves well to the needs of basic scientists who study fundamental questions about mechanisms that underlie human functioning. Basic behavioral scientists usually approach intervention development by hypothesizing that probing a particular psychosocial or biobehavioral mechanism will have a beneficial effect on the health outcome of interest. Because experimental methods are ideally suited to carry out such work, they have become a cornerstone of research on the science of behavior change. Such work endeavors to build interventions from the ground up based on an understanding of how and why humans function as they

do. Once an early prototype intervention has been assembled, a type of experiment called a phase I clinical trial can be conducted to pilot test the safety, feasibility, acceptability, and optimal dosing of a potential intervention. Typically, phase I trials are conducted with small samples of participants, who are relatively free of complex medical histories.

Intervention Optimization

Behavioral medicine interventions usually combine multiple treatment components that are brought together as a package haphazardly, rather than systematically. For example, an intervention to promote physical activity might aggregate individual coaching delivered by an exercise physiologist together with provision of a free gym membership, a wrist worn accelerometer that detects and wirelessly transmits physical activity data to the participant’s smartphone, and incentives for wearing the accelerometer and meeting activity goals. The developer’s reason for bundling intervention components into a single treatment package is usually to produce the strongest possible treatment effect and the largest benefit on the targeted health outcome when the developed intervention is formally evaluated in a randomized controlled trial. However, choosing to test a treatment package before evaluating its individual components can prove disadvantageous for long-term treatment implementation. The available toolbox of behavioral interventions is filled with compound, multi-session treatments that received limited uptake because the multi-component intervention proved too complex and expensive for the health-care system to implement and too burdensome for patients to fully engage. Because only the complete treatment package has been evaluated, it remains unclear which treatment components produced the positive effect, whether some treatment elements are inert and could be eliminated (potentially reducing costs), and whether the dose and timing of the delivery of other components is optimal. Subsequent “dismantling” studies are needed to address those questions and evaluate more efficient versions of treatment delivery, but those are rarely undertaken.

In contrast, *multiphase optimization strategy* (MOST), adapted from engineering science, is a methodology designed to build new interventions from the ground up by first optimizing and evaluating the contribution of individual intervention components (Collins et al. 2007). Questions about the intensity, timing, or duration of treatment components are examined in experiments that vary them systematically. MOST follows a sequential, stepped approach to intervention development. The first step (screening) is to establish a conceptual, theoretical model of how the eventual intervention should produce benefit and to apply the model to derive the potential intervention components. The second step (refining) involves experimenting to examine the impact of individual intervention components. That stage may be followed by further experimentation to refine and optimize the components (e.g., by modifying their dose, timing, or delivery channel). Once the individual treatment components are optimized, the third step is to assemble the treatment package (the beta intervention) and confirm its efficacy via a randomized controlled trial (RCT). If the trial proves successful, the fourth step is releasing the new intervention and further testing its effectiveness in real-world settings. Note that the MOST approach delays the RCT of a treatment package until after the intervention has been systematically optimized. A key feature of the MOST strategy is that each subsequent version of the intervention will have been engineered and empirically validated to be superior to the previous one on whatever optimization parameter the interventionist desires.

A first phase of optimizing an intervention in MOST is usually to select intervention components that target the key mechanisms specified by the conceptual model. Next, a *factorial experiment* may be conducted to estimate the effect size associated with each component. The choice of which components to include in the treatment package can then be optimized. If, for example, cost-effectiveness is the optimization goal, then each included component can be chosen based on what has been learned about its effect size and its cost. The aim is to compile the treatment package that produces the maximum change attainable for

a given level of financial resources. The treatment package could also be optimized for temporal efficiency, such that the components produce the maximal cardiovascular health benefit that a primary care nurse can accomplish in her five available minutes of clinic time per patient. Alternatively, the intervention can be optimized for reach, e.g., to maximize the number of low-income adults that can be exposed to an intervention with available resources. By optimizing for a specific context, MOST emphasizes the careful, efficient management of resources to increase the implementation of scientifically grounded practices.

The rationale for conducting a factorial experiment in the MOST framework is in some sense to optimize the best “one-size-fits-all” treatment that can be made available for the average patient given particular contextual constraints. This strategy accords with contemporary evidence-based practice process policy by initially offering patients the treatment or intervention that has the strongest overall empirical support for efficacy and effectiveness, regardless of cost considerations (Spring and Neville 2010). However, since health-care resources are never unlimited, and since both individual and contextual variability are evident in how individuals respond to an intervention, a different research design in the MOST framework also can be applied.

The *sequential multiple assignment randomized trial* (SMART) is a research design that allows the researcher to learn how to adapt interventions by identifying what intervention works for whom and at what time (Almirall et al. 2014). SMART trials are well suited to establish evidence-based practice policy to manage the health of a population. The aim of a SMART trial is to derive decision rules for how to modify intervention over time in order to respond to variability in the treatment response. The SMART trial examines tailoring variables that have the potential to be useful for determining when or to whom an intervention should be optimally delivered. As the tailoring variable changes, the SMART design implements multiple random assignments over the course of the trial. Hence, the yield from a SMART trial is a set of decision rules that specify how best to make

changes in the intervention to adapt optimally to variation in the outcome. The stepped series of decision rules that will comprise the intervention to emerge from a SMART can be triggered by time, by a change in a variable of interest, or by attaining a criterion on a variable. For example, the first randomization in a SMART design could be conducted in order to learn whether low-intensity or moderate-intensity activity is the optimal starting goal to assign a physical activity intervention to treat frailty. The second randomization might test whether it is more effective to maintain or to step up treatment intensity if the patient fails to improve within a predetermined period.

In contrast to a tailoring variable like changes in frailty or weight loss that unfold gradually over time, some important health outcomes change more rapidly. Examples include mood, stress, concentration, or willingness to exercise, which can fluctuate many times per day. In such cases, decision rules are needed to determine when, how, and what to deliver to people so that the intervention will arrive at a time and in a format when they need it and will use it. Microrandomized trials can be implemented to formulate decision rules needed to craft such *just-in-time adaptive interventions* (JITAI) (Nahum-Shani et al. 2014; Klasnja et al. 2015). The JITAI's decision rules operate on real-time information to select and trigger an appropriate intervention to the individual at the right time. For example, a microrandomized trial might deliver an exercise prompt or no exercise prompt in the morning and in the evening while tracking whether the person exercised in the hour immediately following the microrandomization. If the exercise prompt triggers increased physical activity, compared to no prompt, in the morning but not the evening, the researcher would conclude that time of day is a useful tailoring variable and would implement a decision rule that only delivers exercise prompts in the morning. If the exercise prompt triggers greater activity than no prompt at both times of day, then time of day would prove not to be a useful tailoring variable, and the decision rule would specify that exercise can be prompted at either time of day.

Ideally, both initial intervention development and intervention optimization should occur during T1 translation before the developed intervention is subjected to evaluation in a clinical trial. Doing so allows intervention's mechanisms of action, its selection of treatment components, and its decision rules regarding which components to administer, when, and to whom to be systematically developed before the trial.

T2 Translation

The T2, "bench to trench," translational phase is concerned with evaluating the efficacy and effectiveness of interventions under conditions that become progressively less controlled and more representative of the general population and usual practice settings. T2 research introduces phase II and III clinical trials to test the efficacy and effectiveness of developed and optimized interventions. Phase II clinical trials evaluate the efficacy of an intervention for the treatment of a specific, circumscribed problem. Efficacy testing is performed under optimal conditions; for example, in an academic medical setting, employing highly trained research staff as interventionists, and involving patients without co-occurring health conditions. Phase III trials move past the highly controlled conditions and are often called studies of effectiveness (in contrast to efficacy) because they involve more "real-world," less highly selected settings, interventionists, and patients. For example, local staff in a community setting may deliver an intervention as part of their regular job duties to most of their patients with the target health problem. Such trials impose few exclusion criteria and enroll patients even if they have comorbidities.

Randomized controlled trials (RCTs) are the gold standard method of testing whether a treatment works. After screening for inclusion and exclusion criteria, patients are randomly assigned to one of two or more treatments, such that neither they nor the interventionist knows the treatment prior to randomization. In a two-group design, participants in one group receive the active intervention (e.g., smoking cessation treatment), and participants in the other group receive a control intervention (e.g., general health education) that is

comparable in some elements (e.g., credibility, contact time) but inert in the active elements (e.g., specific skills training) thought responsible for the treatment's effect. The primary outcome might change from baseline in the number of study participants who smoke. Because the group allocation is concealed until randomization has occurred, neither investigator nor patient can influence the treatment assignment, so that participants have an equal chance of being assigned to either the intervention or the control group. This enables researchers to eliminate any bias that might otherwise occur in the group assignment.

Two different randomization procedures are employed in RCTs. They are (1) fixed allocation randomization (which includes simple, blocked, or stratified randomization) and (2) adaptive randomization (which includes baseline adaptive or response-adaptive randomization). Simple randomization is analogous to repeated fair coin tossing. However, this procedure is prone to creating imbalanced group sizes. Blocked randomization (also referred to as permuted block randomization) instead ensures that at no time during the randomization will the difference between group sizes be large, and at some points, groups will be equal. Stratified randomization helps to ensure the even distribution of certain factors (e.g., gender) between the groups and conditions. In adaptive randomization, the probability of being randomized to different groups changes as the study progresses. Altering the randomization procedure can help to overcome imbalances based on differences in participants' baseline characteristics (i.e., baseline adaptive randomization) or based on their responses at a later point in the study (i.e., response-adaptive randomization).

In RCTs testing drug treatments, the use of identical appearing pills to contain active and inactive agents makes it possible to keep both participants and study personnel naïve to group assignment, a state of affairs referred to as double blind. When only participants are naïve, the trial is described as being single blind. Blinding participants and personnel to study conditions helps to ensure that treatment effects are due to the intervention, rather than person-level factors (e.g., knowledge or expectancies about the treatment

or outcome). However, double blinding is rarely feasible in trials of behavioral interventions: Both patients and interventionists usually know which treatment is being given. One important form of blinding that does remain feasible is blinding of outcome assessors. When blinded, the assessors who evaluate study outcomes are unaware of whether patients belong to the treatment or the control group.

RCTs are the gold standard for evaluating treatments because this design surpasses others in its internal validity. This means that outcome differences between the study groups can be attributed to the treatment because the researchers held constant other extraneous variation between groups. The presence of the control group enables the researcher to account for shared influences, such as being repeatedly assessed or receiving attention from professionals. Equally important is the need to establish treatment fidelity, i.e., that the intended intervention was delivered as planned. Fidelity is induced by training and supervising therapists to follow a treatment protocol (i.e., a treatment manual or algorithm) and is monitored to ensure that critical intervention elements are delivered. The RCT's internal validity permits researchers to make causal inferences, that is, to attribute between group differences in patient outcomes to variation in the treatment. Its drawbacks are that RCTs are expensive and time-consuming to implement and that random assignment of study participants to conditions is not always feasible. Just as an RCT's validity is compromised by low-quality design or execution, its utility is undermined by incomplete reporting. To facilitate comprehensive, uniform reporting of RCTs, most scholarly journals in health have adopted the international CONSORT guidelines, which guide the information to be reported when publishing a RCT (Moher et al. 2010).

In some cases, randomization of participants to intervention conditions is infeasible (or impossible), and *quasi-experimental designs* need to be used. These designs gained popularity with the development of advanced statistical procedures to control for the effect of extraneous variables associated with group membership. In essence, these procedures help researchers to overcome some of the

limitations of non-randomization. Suppose, for example, a researcher wished to study the effect of cigarette taxation policy on the prevalence of smoking. Ideally, one would randomize state legislatures to tax on cigarettes at different rates. However, that would not be feasible. Therefore, instead of being randomized, states will be grouped into those that tax cigarettes at more versus less than \$1.00 per pack. Quasi-experimental designs are more susceptible than RCTs to confounding variables that may affect the outcomes of interest. In this case, we will find that the prevalence of smoking is lower in states that impose higher cigarette taxes. However, there are other demographic, geographic, and sociocultural differences besides cigarette taxation between states that have the highest and lowest prevalence of cigarette smoking. For instance, Minnesota, Massachusetts, and Rhode Island, three states that have among the lowest smoking rates, tax cigarette taxes at least \$3.00 per pack. In contrast, Kentucky, Missouri, and Tennessee, several states with the highest smoking rates levy a cigarette tax per pack between \$0.17 and \$0.62. In addition to their lower tax rates, Kentucky and Missouri are states where tobacco is grown and manufactured. Hence, it will not be possible to determine whether it is the imposition of differing cigarette taxes or other extraneous differences that account for the observed variation in smoking prevalence.

The advantage of quasi-experimental designs is that they are broadly applicable and easy to implement. For policy interventions or other contexts that preclude randomization, quasi-experimental designs may be the only option available. Their disadvantage is that non-randomization prevents researchers from being able to make causal inferences about what generated the outcomes, particularly because confounding variables (both measured and unmeasured) offer alternative explanations.

T3 Translation

The T3, or dissemination and implementation (D & I) phase of translation, incorporates both primary and secondary research, such as the creation of systematic evidence reviews and practice guidelines. Unlike primary research, which

involves the collection of new data, systematic evidence reviews are secondary research that cull and combine information from prior reports. The science of systematic reviewing is in itself a sophisticated and evolving field with many nuances that surround the unbiased acquisition of publications, extraction and analysis of data, and interpretation of results. Systematic reviews offer a means to evaluate whether the evidence about a treatment's effectiveness is strong and consistent enough to warrant widespread application in practice. If the data are plentiful and the studies sufficiently similar, a systematic review can provide evidence about whether a treatment's effects are broadly generalizable. In other words, the review can indicate whether there are boundary conditions or types of people for whom the treatment is less helpful or even contraindicated. The comprehensive, unbiased evidence base analyzed for a systematic review affords an excellent grounding from which experts can formulate practice guidelines. The dissemination of evidence-based guidelines conveys best research-tested practices to clinicians and policy makers.

D & I studies also include primary research evaluating how to facilitate the uptake of evidence-based (research-supported) interventions into routine, day-to-day provision of clinical care and public health services. In contrast to T1 and T2, which concern determining whether interventions work (and for whom), T3 research examines how to get effective interventions widely implemented in real-world settings. The aim of primary D & I research is to identify and learn how to overcome barriers at the practitioner, institutional, and system levels that keep effective interventions from being used. Barriers may include limitations in clinician training or skills, lack of available resources for training, competing institutional priorities, or policy barriers (e.g., lack of insurance reimbursement).

Cross-References

- [Evidence-Based Behavioral Medicine \(EBBM\)](#)
- [Research to Practice Translation](#)

References and Further Reading

- Abernethy, A. P., & Wheeler, J. L. (2011). True translational research: Bridging the three phases of translation through data and behavior. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 1(1), 26–30. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s13142-010-0013-z>.
- Almirall, D., Nahum-Shani, I., Sherwood, N. E., & Murphy, S. A. (2014). Introduction to SMART designs for the development of adaptive interventions: With application to weight loss research. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 4(3), 260–274.
- Balas, E. A., & Boren, S. A. (2000). Managing clinical knowledge for health care improvement. In J. Bemmell & A. T. McCray (Eds.), *Yearbook of medical informatics 2000: Patient-centered systems* (pp. 65–70). Stuttgart: Schattauer Verlagsgesellschaft mbH.
- Collins, L. M., Murphy, S. A., & Strecher, V. (2007). The multiphase optimization strategy (MOST) and the sequential multiple assignment randomized trial (SMART): New methods for more potent eHealth interventions. *American Journal of Preventive Medicine*, 32(5), S112–S118. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.amepre.2007.01.022>.
- Dougherty, D., & Conway, P. H. (2008). The “3T’s” road map to transform US health care: The “how” of high-quality care. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 299, 2319–2321.
- Hopewell, S., Dutton, S., Yu, L., Chan, A., & Altman, D. (2010). The quality of reports of randomized trials in 2000 and 2006: Comparative study of articles indexed in PubMed. *BMJ*, 340, c1432.
- Klasnja, P., Hekler, E. B., Shiffman, S., Boruvka, A., Almirall, D., Tewari, A., & Murphy, S. A. (2015). Microrandomized trials: An experimental design for developing just-in-time adaptive interventions. *Health Psychology*, 34(S), 1220.
- Moher, D., Hopewell, S., Schulz, K., Montori, V., & Gotzsche, P. (2010). Consort 2010 explanation and elaboration: Updated guidelines for reporting parallel group randomized trials. *BMJ*, 340, c869.
- Nahum-Shani, I., Spring, B., Smith, S. N., Collins, L. M., Witkiewitz, K., Tewari, A., & Murphy, S. A. (2014). Just-in-time adaptive interventions (JITAs): Key components and design principles for ongoing health behavior support. *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*, 1–17.
- Spring, B. (2011). Translational behavioral medicine: A pathway to better health. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 1(1), 1–3.
- Spring, B., & Neville, K. (2010). Evidence-based practice in clinical psychology. In D. Barlow (Ed.), *Oxford handbook of clinical psychology* (pp. 128–149). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Sung, N. S., Crowley, W. F., Jr., Genel, M., Salber, P., Sandy, L., Sherwood, L. M., Johnson, S. B., Catanese, V., Tilson, H., Getz, K., Larson, E. L., Scheinberg, D., Reece, E. A., Slavkin, H., Dobs, A., Grebb, J., Martinez, R. A., Korn, A., & Rimoin, D. (2003). Central

challenges facing the national clinical research enterprise. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 289(10), 1278–1287.

Westfall, J. M., Mold, J., & Fagnan, L. (2007). Practice-based research—“Blue Highways” on the NIH roadmap. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 297(4), 403–406.

Woolf, S. H. (2008). The meaning of translational research and why it matters. *JAMA: The Journal of the American Medical Association*, 299(2), 211–213.

Translational Research

- [RE-AIM Guidelines](#)
- [Research to Practice Translation](#)

Transmethylation

- [Methylation](#)

Transtheoretical Model of Behavior Change

James O. Prochaska

Clinical and Health Psychology, University of Rhode Island, Kingston, RI, USA

Synonyms

[Stages of change model](#)

Definition

The Transtheoretical Model (TTM) construes behavior change as an intentional process that unfolds over time and involves progress through a series of six stages of change (Prochaska et al. 1992). TTM integrates principles and processes of change from across leading theories, hence the name Transtheoretical.

Description

Precontemplation (not ready) is the initial stage in which individuals are not intending to take action in the foreseeable future, usually assessed as the next 6 months.

People can be in this stage due to a lack of awareness of the health consequences of a behavior.

Or, they can be demoralized about their abilities to change, like millions of people who have tried to lose weight multiple times in multiple ways. This stage is often misunderstood to mean that these people do not want to change.

The history of demoralized individuals indicates that they want to change, but they have given up on their abilities to change.

Contemplation (getting ready) is the stage in which individuals are intending to change in the next 6 months, but not immediately in the next month. These individuals are more aware of the benefits or pros of changing but can also be acutely aware of the cons, such as having to give up some of their favorite foods or having to risk failure. Decisional conflict between the pros and cons can lead to profound ambivalence reflected in the motto: "When in doubt, don't act." With smokers intending to quit for good in the next 6 months, without help, less than 50% will quit for 24 h in the next 12 months.

In the Preparation (ready) stage, individuals are intending to take action in the next month. Their number one concern is, "If I act, will I fail?" The emphasis here is helping them to be well-prepared, because people know in growing up, the better prepared they are in academics or athletics, the more likely they are to reach their goal.

In the Action stage, change is typically overt and observable, with individuals having quit smoking, started exercising, or practicing stress management. This is the busiest stage, where people have to work the hardest to keep from regressing or returning to an earlier stage. Many people believe the worst risks for relapse will be over in a few days or few weeks. We find that people who progress through Action work the hardest for about 6 months, which happens to

represent the steepest part of relapse curves across addictions (Prochaska and DiClemente 1983). So, Action is defined as 6 months being risk-free and we encourage individuals to think of this time as the behavior medicine equivalent of life-saving surgery. Following such surgery, would they give themselves 6 months to recover? Will they let others know they will not be at their best and will need more support? This is the type of priority needed to progress through this tough time.

Maintenance is the stage in which people are free from their problem for 6 months to 5 years. People are considered cured from cancer after 5 years without symptom remission. For many people, it may take 5 years to get free from behavioral causes of cancer. During this stage, individuals do not have to work as hard, but they do have to be prepared to cope with the most common causes of relapse. These causes are times of distress, when people are anxious, depressed, lonely, bored, or stressed. Average Americans cope with such distress by increasing unhealthy habits. We try to prepare people to cope with such temptations through healthy alternatives, like talking with a supportive person, walking, or relaxing.

Termination is the stage in which people are totally confident that they are never going back to their high-risk behavior and have no temptation to return. We have found that of alcoholics and smokers in their first 5 years of abstinence, about 20% have reached this criterion (Snow et al. 1992). These people can put all of their change efforts into enhancing other aspects of their lives. But, for many it may mean a lifetime of maintenance. The ideal goal is to have a new healthy behavior be automatic and under stimulus control, like taking an aspirin every day at the same time and place.

Applying TTM usually begins by assessing which stage the patient is in and then helping them set a realistic goal for now, like progressing to the next stage. Research shows that if we try to pressure patients to progress quickly from Precontemplation to Action, there can be unforeseen consequences of dropping out of treatment, stopping until treatment is over and then quickly relapsing, or simply lying.

What are the principles for helping patients progress from Precontemplation to Contemplation? A meta-analysis of the pros and cons of changing for 48 health behaviors revealed some remarkable results from 120 datasets from studies from 10 countries in 9 languages (Hall and Rossi 2008). The cons are clearly greater than the pros in Precontemplation (PC) and the pros are clearly higher in Contemplation (C). So, the first principle of progress is to raise the pros. With sedentary individuals, we might ask them if they like bargains and tell them that if so, physical activity (PA) is the bargain basement of behaviors. There is no other behavior from which they can get as many benefits as PA. We would ask them to list all the benefits that they believe they could get from regular PA, chart their list, and then challenge them to try to double the list. Most have five or six and we tell them there are over 70 scientific benefits and we only want them to find five more (Prochaska and Prochaska 2016). If we see the list going up, it is like seeing cholesterol or blood pressure coming down. We know our behavior medicine is working.

In Contemplation (C), the pros and cons are exactly tied, reflecting their profound ambivalence. From C to Preparation (PR), the cons come down, so the second principle is to help lower the cons. The number one con for PA is time, so some individuals lower this con by riding a lifecycle where they can multitask and read or review an article for work, read a book for pleasure, or catch up on the news. Others may volunteer to help coach their kid's soccer team and at the same time, get some PA, be with their child, do community service, meet more parents, and have fun. Fortunately, the cons have to decrease only half as much as the pros increase, so we put twice as much emphasis on raising the pros.

In the Preparation stage, the pros clearly outweigh the cons, so individuals are not encouraged to take action until they have a favorable profile. Once in the Action stage, they can use their growing list of pros to put other principles and processes of change into operation. When they write down on their "To-Do" list, "walking for my heart" they are making a daily commitment

based on the process of self-liberation from Existential Therapy. When they look at the list they are cued to action based on stimulus control from Behavior Therapy. When they scratch off their list, they are reinforcing themselves based on Skinnerian Theory. As they move from one pro to the next each week, like walking for my weight, my sleep, my self-esteem, my immune system, and my sex life, after a while they may be running. Over time, they are using PA to affirm so much of their body, selves, and others based on self-reevaluation from Cognitive Behavior Theory and Self-Psychology.

This description illustrates how different principles and processes are applied to produce progress at different stages of change. This integrative approach led to the development of computer-tailored interventions (CTIs) by which individuals are assessed on TTM variables related to their current stage. Their assessment is compared to a normative database, and they can be given feedback on how they are applying principles and processes of change compared to peers who make the most progress. Over time, they can be given feedback compared to themselves, such as "Congratulations, you have progressed two stages, which means you have about tripled the chances you will be taking effective action in the next few months."

Such CTIs have been found in randomized population trials to be effective with a growing range of problems, including smoking, exercise, diet, stress, depression, bullying, partner violence, and medication adherence. The percentage of those in the Action or Maintenance stage at long-term follow-up ranges from about 25% for smoking (Prochaska et al. 2001) to about 45% for exercise and diet (Prochaska et al. 2008), to over 65% for stress (Evers et al. 2006) and medication adherence (Johnson et al. 2006). These results are with populations in which typically the majority, like 80%, would be labeled as unmotivated or not ready to change when we proactively reached out to them at home, school, work, or in clinics to offer them help matched to their personal needs. The results can be remarkably robust with very comparable outcomes with smoking, for

example, with adolescents and older smokers, Hispanic and African-American smokers, and smokers with mental illness (Velicer et al. 2007).

Similar interventions have been found to be just as effective when we treat populations for three or four behaviors at the same time (Prochaska et al. 2006). Individuals working on one behavior are just as effective as those working on two who are just as effective as those working on three. But, very few people are taking action on more than one behavior at a time because they are not ready. So, they can be progressing through early stages on two behaviors, for example, while they are working to maintain action on another single behavior.

One exciting development in simultaneously changing multiple behaviors is the phenomenon of coaction. Coaction is the increased probability that individuals who take action on one behavior (like exercise) are likely to take action on a second behavior (like diet). We have found that significant coaction typically occurs only in our TTM treatment groups (e.g., Paiva et al. 2012; Johnson et al. 2014; Mauriello et al. 2010) and not in control groups, suggesting it is likely to be treatment induced.

With a population of 1400 employees in a major medical setting, the study of Prochaska et al. (2008) made available online modular TTM computerized-tailored interventions or three motivational interviewing (a psychotherapeutic approach designed to enhance motivation for positive change) telephonic or in-person sessions for each of four behaviors (smoking, inactivity, BMI >25, and stress). Patients chose which behaviors to target and how much time and effort to spend on any behavior. At 6 months, both treatments outperformed the Health Risk Intervention (HRI), which included feedback on the person's stage for each risk and guidance on how they could progress to the next stage.

With a population of 1800 students recruited from eight high schools in four states, Mauriello et al. (2010) applied a second-generation strategy with exercise as the primary behavior. Students received three online sessions of fully tailored CTIs. The secondary behaviors of fruit and

vegetable intake and limited television watching alternated between moderate and minimal (stage-only) tailoring. Over the course of the 6-month treatment, there were significant treatment effects in each of the three behaviors, but only changes in fruit and vegetable intake were sustained at 12 months. Significant coaction was found for each pair of behaviors in the treatment group but none in the control group. The amount of coaction decreased after treatment, suggesting that longer treatment may be needed for this age population where health risk behaviors tend to increase.

Mauriello et al. (2016) also successfully tested the concept of healthy pregnancy with women on Medicaid at Community health Clinics as they worked on multiple behaviors of stress management, smoking cessation, and healthy eating. As with any theory, effective applications may be limited more by our creativity than by the ability of the theory to drive significant research and effective interventions.

Prochaska et al. (2012) recruited 3391 adults from 39 states who were at risk for lack of exercise and ineffective stress management. This study involved a strategy for multiple tailored behavior change. One treatment group received a fully tailored TTM online for the primary behavior of stress management and minimal tailoring for exercise. A second group received three sessions of optimally tailored telephonic coaching for exercise and minimal tailoring for stress. In this study, the TTM exercise coaching outperformed the TTM online stress management, which outperformed the controls. Also, the exercise coaching produced significant effects on healthy eating and depression management, which were not treated. Finally, the same order of effective treatment was found for enhancing five domains of well-being: emotional health, physical health, life evaluation, thriving, and overall well-being. This study represents the greatest impact to date on decreasing health risk behaviors and increasing health and well-being; over time the outcomes will have much greater impact on populations with multiple risk behaviors who have the highest risk for mortality, disabilities, lost productivity, and increased health care costs (Prochaska 2008).

References and Further Reading

- Evers, K. E., Prochaska, J. O., Johnson, J. L., Mauriello, L. M., Padula, J. A., & Prochaska, J. M. (2006). A randomized clinical trial of a population and transtheoretical model-based stress-management intervention. *Health Psychology, 25*, 521–529.
- Hall, K. L., & Rossi, J. S. (2008). Meta-analytic examination of the strong and weak principles across 48 health behaviors. *Preventive Medicine, 46*, 266–274.
- Johnson, S. S., Driskell, M. M., Johnson, J. L., Dymont, S. J., Prochaska, J. O., Prochaska, J. M., et al. (2006). Transtheoretical model intervention for adherence to lipid-lowering drugs. *Disease Management, 9*, 102–114.
- Johnson, S. S., Paiva, A., Mauriello, L., Prochaska, J. O., Redding, C. A., & Velicer, W. F. (2014). Coaction in multiple behavior change interventions: Consistency across multiple studies on weight management & obesity prevention. *Health Psychology, 33*(5), 475–480.
- Mauriello, L. M., Ciavatta, M. M. H., Paiva, A. L., Sherman, K. J., Castle, P. H., Johnson, J. L., & Prochaska, J. M. (2010). Results of a multi-media multiple behavior obesity prevention program for adolescents. *Preventive Medicine, 51*, 451–456.
- Mauriello, L. M., Van Marter, D. F., Umanzor, C. D., Castle, P. H., & de Aguiar, E. L. (2016). Using mhealth to deliver behavior change interventions within prenatal care at community health centers. *American Journal of Health Promotion, 30*(7), 554–562.
- Paiva, A. L., Prochaska, J. O., Hui-Qing Yin, H., Redding, C. R., Rossi, J. S., Blissmer, B., Robbins, M. L., Velicer, W. F., Lipschitz, J., Amoyal, N. R., Babbitt, S. F., Creedon, C. L., Sillice, M. A., Fernandez, A., McGee, H., & Horiuchi, S. (2012). Treated individuals who progress to action or maintenance for one behavior are more likely to make similar progress on another behavior: Coaction results of a pooled data analysis of three trials. *Preventive Medicine, 54*, 331–334.
- Prochaska, J. O. (2008). Multiple health behavior research represents the future of preventive medicine. *Preventive Medicine, 46*, 281–285.
- Prochaska, J. O., & DiClemente, C. C. (1983). Stages and processes of self-change of smoking: Toward an integrative model of change. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology, 51*, 390–395.
- Prochaska, J. O., & Prochaska, J. M. (2016). *Changing to thrive: Using the stages of change to overcome the top threats to your health and happiness*. Center City: Hazelden Publishing.
- Prochaska, J. O., DiClemente, C. C., & Norcross, J. C. (1992). In search of how people change: Applications to the addictive behaviors. *American Psychologist, 47*, 1102–1114.
- Prochaska, J. O., Norcross, J. C., & DiClemente, C. C. (1994). *Changing for good*. New York: Morrow. Released in paperback by Avon, 1995.
- Prochaska, J. O., Velicer, W. F., Fava, J. L., Rossi, J. S., & Tsoh, J. Y. (2001). Evaluating a population-based recruitment approach and a stage-based expert system intervention for smoking cessation. *Addictive Behaviors, 26*, 583–602.
- Prochaska, J. J., Velicer, W. F., Prochaska, J. O., Deluschi, K. I., & Hall, S. M. (2006). Comparing intervention outcomes in smokers with single versus multiple behavior risks. *Health Psychology, 25*, 380–388.
- Prochaska, J. O., Butterworth, S., Redding, C. A., Burden, V., Perrin, N., Leo, M., . . . , Prochaska, J. M. (2008). Initial efficacy of MI, TTM tailoring and HRI's with multiple behaviors for employee health promotion. *Preventive Medicine, 45*, 226–231.
- Prochaska, J. O., Ever, K. E., Castle, P. H., Johnson, J. L., Prochaska, J. M., Rula, E. Y., . . . , Pope, J. E. (2012). Enhancing multiple domains of well-being by decreasing multiple health risk behaviors: A randomized clinical trial. *Population Health Management, 15*, 276–286.
- Snow, M. G., Prochaska, J. O., & Rossi, J. S. (1992). Stages of change for smoking cessation among former problem drinkers: A cross-sectional analysis. *Journal of Substance Abuse, 4*, 107–116.
- Velicer, W. F., Redding, C. A., Sun, X., & Prochaska, J. O. (2007). Demographic variables, smoking variables, and outcome across five studies. *Health Psychology, 26*(3), 278–287.

Trauma, Early Life

► Stress, Early Life

Traumatic Brain Injury

Mary Spiers and Emily W. Reid
Department of Psychology, Drexel University,
Philadelphia, PA, USA

Synonyms

Brain damage; Brain injury; Brain trauma; Concussion; Head injury.

E. W. Reid: deceased.

Definition

Traumatic brain injury (TBI) is an acquired brain injury resulting in diffuse brain damage. Injury is caused by the direct impact of an external force or whiplash, which results in a rapid acceleration or deceleration of the brain against the skull. The rapid movement causes neurons to shear and tear, and the impact of the brain against the skull can result in bruising and bleeding. The trauma can cause secondary complications such as ischemia, increased blood pressure, or ruptured blood vessels. The impairments caused by TBI depend on its severity. Due to the diffuse nature of the injury, a variety of cognitive, emotional, and behavioral changes are often seen.

Description

Epidemiology of Traumatic Brain Injury

The CDC estimates that 1.5–2 million people suffer a traumatic brain injury (TBI) every year in the United States (Faul et al. 2010). Of those, an estimated 80% are mild in severity, 10% are moderate, and the remaining 10% have severe injuries (Kraus et al. 1996). A small proportion (estimated 275,000) are hospitalized, whereas 1.4 million are treated and released (Faul et al. 2010). This is likely to be an underestimate of incidence as many do not go to the emergency room, and it is estimated that 1.6–3.8 million sports-related TBIs occur each year, of which many are treated on the field and do not seek emergency room assistance (Brain Trauma Foundation 2011). Approximately 2% of the US population currently live with disabilities from TBI and represent a significant public health challenge (Brain Trauma Foundation 2011).

The majority of TBIs are caused by falls (35.2%), motor vehicle accidents (17.3%), striking or being struck by or against an object (16.5%), and assaults (10%) (Faul et al. 2010). Another common cause for military personnel is blast-related injury. Approximately 52,000 deaths each year are due to traumatic brain injury with motor vehicle accidents resulting in the largest number of fatalities (31.8%) (Faul et al. 2010).

TBI is the leading cause of death and disability for children and adults under the age of 44 (Brain Trauma Foundation 2011). Those most vulnerable to TBI are children, ages 0–4; older adolescents, ages 15–19; and adults over 65 years old. However, the number of emergency room visits for ages 0–14 is twice as many as those for adults over 65 years of age (Faul et al. 2010). Across all age groups, men sustain at least twice as many head injuries as women (Faul et al. 2010), and males, ages 0–4, have the highest rates of TBI-related emergency visits, hospitalizations, and deaths.

TBI also has a strong economic impact. In a 1998 consensus report from NIH, an estimated \$9–10 billion were spent on new TBI cases each year (“Consensus Conference,” 1999). Financially, the lifelong care for a person with a TBI is estimated to be between \$600,000 and \$1.9 million (Elias and Saucier 2006). The NIH acknowledges that these are likely underestimates of the actual cost, as these numbers do not reflect the lost earnings, costs to social services systems, and the value of time and forgone earnings of family members who care for persons with TBI (Elias and Saucier 2006). Further complications to care include insurance coverage, access to care, ability to navigate the health system, and available family and community support (“Consensus Conference,” 1999).

Mechanism of Injury

Traumatic brain injury results either from object penetration or from rapid acceleration or deceleration of the brain resulting in the classifications of open head and closed head injuries.

Open or Penetrating Head Injury

In an open or penetrating head injury, the skull and the covering of the brain, or meninges, are ruptured. These injuries occur when an object (e.g., bullet, knife, bone fragment) lodges or passes through the brain. Because the brain is exposed, infection is a concern. Also, because penetrating head injuries may create more focal damage than in a closed head injury, the pattern of behavioral deficits is dependent on location of injury. After-effects of the initial injury, including swelling and

bleeding, may cause more global, though usually time-limited, effects due to intracranial pressure or inflammatory response.

Closed Head Injury

The majority of head injuries are closed head injuries. These injuries occur by either direct impact or whiplash and may be caused by, for example, motor vehicle accidents, sports-related concussions, falls, and war-related blast injuries. The brain undergoes a rapid acceleration or deceleration or both but without skull penetration.

Contusions and/or hematomas may be seen at the location of impact (i.e., coup) and the opposite side of the brain (i.e., contre-coup) owing to the acceleration and deceleration of the brain against the skull. Despite the location of impact, a pattern of diffuse injury is likely to occur, impacting the frontal lobes and temporal poles because of the jagged surface of the tentorial plates that hold those brain structures in place. The physical forces may shear, tear, and rupture neurons, blood vessels, and the meninges, or covering, of the brain.

Diffuse axonal injury (DAI) may occur with shearing or tearing of neurons, often as a result of head rotation or rapid deceleration. Consequently, the axon damage can result in fewer axonal connections and/or less efficient transmission from one axon to another (Lux 2007). The neurons most vulnerable to this type of strain are those with long axons, usually white-matter tracts that connect distant brain regions. DAI produces two types of cell death, necrosis and apoptosis, which are the leading contributors to brain damage in closed head injuries. Both impede axonal transport, induce atypical metabolic changes, and cause the axon to swell. In DAI, the damage is widespread, regional, multifocal, and at times global, and the course of damage may change over time. The swelling leads to detachment downstream from other neurons. This pattern of deafferentation is considered to affect more neurons than those identified as originally damaged. Although the brain's plasticity does allow for new axonal growth in living neurons, spurious growth can cause additional complications by forming undesirable connections leading to behavioral disturbances.

Consequences of Traumatic Brain Injury

The neuropsychological and behavioral consequences of TBI are related to injury characteristics and severity. The injury characteristics of importance in the acute phase are length of loss of consciousness (LOC) and length of emergence into consciousness with accompanying degree of posttraumatic amnesia (PTA), characterized by confusion and disorientation. For example, LOC ranges from none to brief LOC in concussion and mild traumatic brain injury (MTBI) to weeks in severe head injury. Emergence into consciousness ranges from minutes to hours in MTBI to weeks to days in severe head injury. Corresponding recovery of neuropsychological functioning can range from days to years.

LOC and coma are directly associated with an injury to those areas of the brain, typically the lower brain stem and reticular activating system (RAS), that are involved in maintaining consciousness and arousal. Coma falls along a continuum related to depth of responsiveness and is typically assessed at regular intervals after an injury via the Glasgow Coma Scale (GCS) (Teasdale and Jennett 1974). The GCS assesses best motor, verbal, and eye opening response at one point in time. Scores range from 15 (can obey motor commands, is oriented, and eyes are open) to 3 (flaccid motor response, no verbal response, and no eye opening). Medically, coma is defined as a score of 3–8, which typically corresponds to a severe brain injury. Greater mortality is typically associated with scores below 7. Although initial severity of GCS is an important prognostic indicator for survival, other indicators, such as number of days to reach a GCS of 15, and length of PTA are added predictors for long-term neuropsychological outcome. Duration of PTA and education appear to be two of the best predictors of long-term functional outcome. On measures of global functioning and disability, those who had less education preinjury or a longer period of PTA had poorer outcomes 10 years after the injury (Ponsford et al. 2008).

The recovery from coma is a process of “emergence” in which greater awareness of environmental stimuli occurs. Characteristic of traumatic brain injury is a loss of recall for the actual impact event. Since the injured person does not recall the

event, he or she cannot usually give a reliable account of the length of LOC. This period of PTA is characterized by confusion and disorientation and typically includes both retrograde and anterograde amnesia. Retrograde amnesia is the impairment in the retrieval of information for events preceding the injury. Conversely, anterograde amnesia is impairment in encoding new memories after the injury.

The difference in diagnosis between mild, moderate and severe head injuries relates both to immediate injury severity as rated by the GCS and time related to resolution of symptoms. For example, MTBI is characterized by a GCS score of 13–15 and a fairly rapid resolution of LOC (less than 30 min) and PTA (less than 24 h). Moderate-level brain injuries are characterized by a GCS of 9–12, LOC between 30 min and 24 h, and PTA between 1 and 7 days. Severe head injuries are those with a GCS of 3–8, LOC longer than a day, and PTA longer than 7 days.

Neuropsychological Consequences of TBI

The neuropsychological consequences of TBI may include a number of deficits. However, those deficits that correspond to frontal and temporal injuries, as well as diffuse axonal injuries are most common. Specifically, these include difficulties in attention, memory, and language functions, executive dysfunction, and emotionality.

Regardless of injury severity, attentional deficits are common after TBI. Reports include a feeling of mental slowness, difficulty following conversations, losing a train of thought, and trouble with multitasking (Gronwall 1987; Van Zomeran and Brouwer 1994). The most universal consequence is a reduced ability to process information (McCullagh and Feinstein 2005). Therefore, when tasks become more complex, reaction time becomes slower. As a result, a TBI sufferer may not appear cognitively impaired in simpler routine assessments, but the deficits may become more evident in the multicomponent tasks of daily life (Granacher 2008; Lux 2007). Deficits are seen across all types of attention processing, including selective, sustained, and divided attention with particular problems on tasks that require controlled rather than automatic processing (Park et al. 1999).

In addition to attention and working memory difficulties, a deficit in episodic memory is a hallmark feature of TBI (Richardson 2000). Memory impairment is one of the most frequent (Arcia and Gualtieri 1993; King et al. 1995) and long-lasting complaints with significant deficits found in many people 10 years postinjury (Zec et al. 2001) and poor employment prognosis 7 years postinjury (Brooks et al. 1987). Furthermore, TBI patients tend to have impairments in prospective memory, or remembering to perform an intended action, which may lead to forgetting appointments, payment of bills, and medication taking (Kinsella et al. 1996). Adding further difficulty, patients tend to be less aware of their memory difficulties than those around them (McCullagh and Feinstein 2005).

Those with TBI may also experience language and communication difficulties. Speech tends to be less productive and efficient, with less content in longer discourse, and with greater fragmentation (Hartley and Jensen 1991). Additionally, language difficulties may include trouble naming objects and, to a lesser extent, comprehension of complex commands (Levin et al. 1976; Sarno et al. 1986).

Deficits in executive functioning influence functional, emotional, and social outcomes after TBI. The term “executive functioning” refers to higher-order capabilities that include goal setting, planning, initiating, sequencing, reasoning abilities, decision making, inhibiting responses, self-monitoring, and self-regulation (Stuss and Levine 2002). Since these processes underlie many daily and social skills, such as impulse control, judgment, creativity, emotional regulation, and moral judgment, routine testing might not detect the degree of impairment evident in these areas (Zillmer et al. 2008). Verbal fluency tests, as a measure of executive dysfunction, however, consistently show impairment for TBI patients because they require organization of verbal retrieval and recall, self-monitoring aspects of cognition, and effortful self-initiation and inhibition of responses. (Henry and Crawford 2004)

Emotional and behavioral complications are common after TBI and often lead to depressed and anxious mood, impulsivity, agitation, and amotivation (Vaishnavi et al. 2009). Mood disturbances are considered the most common

psychiatric complication of TBI and are often the most difficult adjustment for those who care for the TBI patient (Rosenthal et al. 1998). Approximately 10–60% of patients are depressed, reporting feelings of hopelessness, worthlessness, and anhedonia (Hurley and Taber 2002). Also, they display somatic symptoms, such as sleep disturbances, reduced initiation, fatigue, and changes in appetite. TBI patients have reduced participation in leisure activities and have difficulty engaging in new hobbies (Rosenthal et al. 1998). Mood disturbances can cause significant emotional distress in patients with TBI, contributing to the disruption of social relationships.

In sum, while a pattern of neuropsychological deficits in TBI may show common features, the evaluation of any particular individual should include a consideration of the unique injury location and severity features in a context of previous levels of education, work, and social history.

Cross-References

- [Brain Damage](#)
- [Brain, Injury](#)
- [Neuropsychology](#)

References and Readings

- Arcia, E., & Gualtieri, C. T. (1993). Association between patient report of symptoms after mild head injury and neurobehavioural performance. *Brain Injury*, 7, 481–489.
- Brain Trauma Foundation. (2011). Facts about TBI in the USA. Retrieved March 3, 2011, from <https://www.braintrauma.org/tbi-faqs/tbi-statistics/>
- Brooks, N., McKinlay, W., Symington, C., Beattie, A., & Campsie, L. (1987). Return to work within the first seven years of severe head injury. *Brain Injury*, 1, 5–19.
- Consensus Conference Writing Group. (1999). Consensus conference. Rehabilitation of persons with traumatic brain injury. NIH consensus development panel on rehabilitation of persons with traumatic brain injury. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 282(10), 974–983. jcf90001(pii).
- Elias, L. J., & Saucier, D. M. (2006). *Neuropsychology: Clinical and experimental foundations*. Boston: Pearson/Allyn & Bacon.
- Faul, M., Xu, L., Wald, M. M., & Coronado, V. G. (2010). Traumatic brain injury in the United States: Emergency department visits, hospitalizations and deaths 2002–2006. Retrieved March 3, 2011, from www.cdc.gov/TraumaticBrainInjury
- Granacher, R. P. (2008). *Traumatic brain injury: Methods for clinical and forensic neuropsychiatric assessment* (2nd ed.). Boca Raton: CRC Press/Taylor & Francis Group.
- Gronwall, D. (1987). *Advances in the assessment of attention and information processing after head injury in neurobehavioral recovery from head injury*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Hartley, L. L., & Jensen, P. J. (1991). Narrative and procedural discourse after closed head injury. *Brain Injury*, 5(3), 267–285.
- Henry, J. D., & Crawford, J. R. (2004). A meta-analytic review of verbal fluency performance in patients with traumatic brain injury. *Neuropsychology*, 18(4), 621–628. <https://doi.org/10.1037/0894-4105.18.4.621>.
- Hurley, R. A., & Taber, K. H. (2002). Emotional disturbances following traumatic brain injury. *Current Treatment Options in Neurology*, 4(1), 59–75.
- King, N. S., Crawford, S., Wenden, F. J., Moss, N. E., & Wade, D. T. (1995). The rivermead post concussion symptoms questionnaire: A measure of symptoms commonly experienced after head injury and its reliability. *Journal of Neurology*, 242(9), 587–592.
- Kinsella, G., Murtagh, D., Landry, A., Homfray, K., Hammond, M., & O’Beirne, L. (1996). Everyday memory following traumatic brain injury. *Brain Injury*, 10(7), 499–507.
- Kraus, J. F., McArthur, D. L., Silverman, T. A., & Jayaraman, M. (1996). Epidemiology of brain injury. In R. K. Naravan, J. E. Wilberger, & J. T. Povlishock (Eds.), *Neurotrauma*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Levin, H. S., Grossman, R. G., & Kelly, P. J. (1976). Aphasic disorder in patients with closed head injury. *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery & Psychiatry*, 39(11), 1062–1070.
- Lux, W. E. (2007). A neuropsychiatric perspective on traumatic brain injury. *Journal of Rehabilitation Research and Development*, 44(7), 951–962.
- McCullagh, S., & Feinstein, A. (2005). Cognitive changes. In J. M. Silver, T. W. McAllister, & S. C. Yudofsky (Eds.), *Textbook of traumatic brain injury* (1st ed., p. 321). Washington, DC: American Psychiatric.
- Park, N. W., Moscovitch, M., & Robertson, I. H. (1999). Divided attention impairments after traumatic brain injury. *Neuropsychologia*, 37(10), 1119–1133. S0028393299000342[pil].
- Ponsford, J., Draper, K., & Schonberger, M. (2008). Functional outcome 10 years after traumatic brain injury: Its relationship with demographic, injury severity, and cognitive and emotional status. *Journal of International Neuropsychological Society*, 14(2), 233–242. <https://doi.org/10.1017/S1355617708080272>.
- Richardson, J. (2000). *Clinical and neuropsychological aspects of closed head injury*. East Sussex: Psychology Press.
- Rosenthal, M., Christensen, B. K., & Ross, T. P. (1998). Depression following traumatic brain injury. *Archives*

of *Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, 79(1), 90–103.

- Sarno, M. T., Buonaguro, A., & Levita, E. (1986). Characteristics of verbal impairment in closed head injured patients. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, 67(6), 400–405.
- Stuss, D. T., & Levine, B. (2002). Adult clinical neuropsychology: Lessons from studies of the frontal lobes. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 53, 401–433. [https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.psych.53.100901.13522053/1/401\[pii\]](https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.psych.53.100901.13522053/1/401[pii]).
- Teasdale, G., & Jennett, B. (1974). Assessment of coma and impaired consciousness. A practical scale. *Lancet*, 2, 81–84.
- Vaishnavi, S., Rao, V., & Fann, J. R. (2009). Neuropsychiatric problems after traumatic brain injury: Unraveling the silent epidemic. *Psychosomatics*, 50(3), 198–205. <https://doi.org/10.1176/appi.psy.50.3.198>.
- Van Zomerén, A., & Brouwer, W. (1994). *Clinical neuropsychology of attention*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Zec, R. F., Zellers, D., Belman, J., Miller, J., Matthews, J., & Femeau-Belman, D. (2001). Long-term consequences of severe closed head injury on episodic memory. *Journal of Clinical and Experimental Neuropsychology*, 23(5), 671–691.
- Zillmer, E. A., Spiers, M. V., & Culbertson, W. C. (2008). *Principles of neuropsychology* (2nd ed.). Belmont: Thomson/Wadsworth.

Treatment of Fatigue

► Fatigue

Trier Social Stress Test

Lisa Juliane Weckesser¹, Robert Miller¹ and Clemens Kirschbaum²

¹Faculty of Psychology, Technische Universität Dresden, Dresden, Germany

²Department of Psychology, Faculty of Psychology, Technische Universität Dresden, Dresden, Germany

Synonyms

Laboratory stress protocol; Psychosocial stress; Stress

Definition

The Trier Social Stress Test is a standardized protocol for the reliable induction of acute psychosocial stress responses under laboratory conditions.

Description

Stress is a critical determinant of mental health (Van Hedger et al. 2017). Since impairments in mental health often manifest or aggravate in response to acute stress, investigating acute stress responses might reveal mechanisms that promote the transition from health to stress-related health impairments (Zänkert et al. 2019). To do this under standardized laboratory conditions, the Trier Social Stress Test (TSST) has been developed (Kirschbaum et al. 1993).

The TSST protocol consists of four components of 5 min each, i.e., instruction, preparation, free speech (covered as job interview), and mental arithmetic (totaling 20 min; Kirschbaum et al. 1993). In its most recent version, it requires three employees, one of whom functions as experimenter and two as mixed-gender jurors trained to withhold any positive or negative feedback during the whole procedure (i.e., stay neutral). A separate room equipped with two desks (one for the jurors, one for the participant), a watch with seconds hand, a video camera, and a microphone placed approx. 1 m in front of the jurors' table is additionally required. Before entering the TSST room, the experimenter asks the participant for which position he/she would hypothetically apply for (without providing any further information about the TSST). In front of the microphone, he/she informs the participant about the upcoming tasks (preparation, speech and mental arithmetic). Regarding the preparation, the participant is told that he/she may take notes about his/her speech but may not use them while giving the speech. Concerning the free speech, the participant is instructed to present only personality traits which qualify him/her for the position in question (but not any information usually provided in a curriculum vitae). After giving this instruction,

the experimenter leaves the room, and the participant takes a seat at the second table to prepare his/her speech. Henceforth, only the opposite-sex juror speaks to the participant, with the same-sex juror being responsible for camera operation. After exactly 5 minutes, one juror starts the camera, the other asks the participant to step in front of the microphone and give the free speech. Most participants have little more to say after approx. 2 minutes. Only after 20 s of silence, the juror asks the participant to continue with the speech as there is still time available. After making this request repeatedly without producing any speech response, the participant is asked a standardized question (e.g., about strengths and weaknesses). After 5 min of speaking, the participant is instructed to stop and continue with the mental arithmetic task comprising of a continuous serial subtraction of 17 from 2043 and to start anew from the initial number with every error he/she is made aware of. After 5 min of mental arithmetic, the participant is asked to stop and leave the room, in front of which he/she is awaited by the experimenter (for further assessments).

If the TSST protocol is implemented as described, it induces psychosocial stress responses in more than 70% of participants (Miller et al. 2013; Zänkert et al. 2019). These responses are characterized by the perception of threat to one's own social esteem or status, uncontrollability, and unpredictability (more detailed information is provided below), as well as by the activation of the sympathetic-adrenal-medullary (SAM) system and the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis (i.e., two key stress response systems; Dickerson and Kemeny 2004; Koolhaas et al. 2011). Social-evaluative threat, unpredictability, and uncontrollability are monitored by self-report measures (peaking in anticipation of or during the TSST exposure; Campbell and Ehler 2012; Hellhammer and Schubert 2012). Usually, SAM system activity is characterized by plasma (nor) epinephrine or salivary amylase concentrations as well as heart rate (variability), blood pressure, and electrodermal activity (peaking during TSST exposure and returning to resting values within the first 10 min after TSST cessation; Kirschbaum et al. 1993; Schommer et al. 2003; Ulrich-Lai and

Herman 2009). HPA axis activity is mostly characterized by plasma or salivary cortisol (peaking 10 to 25 min after TSST cessation and returning to resting values within 90 min after TSST cessation) or less frequently by plasma adrenocorticotrophic hormone or corticotropin-releasing hormone concentrations (wherein the latter two hormones finally lead to cortisol secretion; Kirschbaum et al. 1993; Schommer et al. 2003). Although the TSST induces alterations in many other systems as well, such as the low-grade inflammation in the innate immune system (Rohleder 2019), most of the TSST literature so far has focussed on acute HPA axis activity as indicated by cortisol concentrations in healthy as well as participant samples (Goodman et al. 2017; Miller and Kirschbaum 2019; Van Hedger et al. 2017; Zänkert et al. 2019).

This focus on HPA axis activity was largely based on findings showing that the HPA axis, unlike the SAM system, is only reliably activated in response to anticipated or perceived uncontrollability, unpredictability, or social-evaluative threat, but not in response to any physical or appetitive stimulation (de Souza Vale et al. 2010; Dickerson and Kemeny 2004; Hackney 2006; Hamilton et al. 2009; Krueger et al. 1998; Lovallo et al. 1990). This makes the HPA axis one if not the most specific stress response system to date and qualifies its humoral end product cortisol as an ideal analyte to quantify acute stress responses (Koolhaas et al. 2011). Importantly, the TSST affects all three components required for HPA axis activation: unpredictability (esp. of the tasks and their duration), uncontrollability (esp. of the juries' response and thus the outcome of the fictitious job interview), and social-evaluative threat (esp. through the presence of the jury and camera, as well as the risk of negative judgment and subsequent loss of social esteem or status; Dickerson and Kemeny 2004; Kirschbaum et al. 1993; Zänkert et al. 2019). These properties make the TSST superior to alternative stress-induction protocols, which is reflected in higher peak cortisol concentrations and longer recovery periods (that enable the reliable assessment of outcome variables) or the existence of first evidence confirming its external validity (Dickerson and Kemeny 2004; Henze et al. 2017; Zänkert et al. 2019).

The frequent and successful employment of the TSST in young adult populations has stimulated its adaptation for specific participant samples (e.g., children, retirees, psychiatric patients, and groups; Brenner et al. 2009; Buske-Kirschbaum et al. 1997; Kudielka et al. 1998; von Dawans et al. 2011) as well as the development of standardized control protocols (that do not reliably affect any of the aforementioned indicators of acute stress responses; Het et al. 2009; Wiemers et al. 2013). The TSST is therefore one of the most powerful tools to induce acute stress responses (with HPA axis activity) in the laboratory and thus well-suited to investigate stress-related alterations in health behavior or outcome measures (that comprises HPA axis activity itself; Kudielka et al. 2009; Zänkert et al. 2019).

The frequent use of the TSST has also enabled the identification of moderators of HPA axis activation or peak cortisol concentrations using meta-analytical methods (Dickerson and Kemeny 2004; Goodman et al. 2017; Miller and Kirschbaum 2019). Among these, gender, age (Miller and Kirschbaum 2019), oral contraceptive intake (Liu et al. 2017), glucose status (Gonzalez-Bono et al. 2002), and previous experience with the TSST (Kudielka et al. 2006; Petrowski et al. 2012; Schommer et al. 2003; Wüst et al. 2005) seem to be among the strongest moderators of TSST-induced HPA axis activity or peak cortisol concentrations (whereby high age, male sex, no oral contraceptive intake, high glucose availability, and no previous experience with the TSST are associated with higher peak cortisol concentrations than the respective control condition). Gender of the jurors, pre-TSST acclimation time, and the valence of the jurors' feedback appear to be the strongest methodological moderators of HPA axis activity or peak cortisol concentrations (with mixed-gender juries, acclimation times between 15 and 30 min, and neutral feedback inducing higher peak cortisol concentrations than the respective control condition; Goodman et al. 2017). Less important for HPA axis activity or peak cortisol concentrations – but of utmost importance to increase the comparability across different studies and laboratories using the TSST – seem to be time of the day, the number

of jurors, and venepuncture prior to TSST exposure (Goodman et al. 2017). Taken together, the completion of TSST studies in the afternoon with two mixed-gender jurors, no venepuncture, and the administration of a glucose-containing beverage (e.g., 200 ml grape juice) directly before TSST exposure is recommended along with the highest possible adherence to the above described TSST procedure and documentation of any protocol deviation (further recommendations are given in Gonzalez-Bono et al. 2002; Zänkert et al. 2019).

Despite its advantages and the high amount of accumulated knowledge about the TSST, further research is needed especially with respect to its transfer to scanning or virtual reality environment (with the existing adaptations still inducing comparably low and/or less reliable HPA axis activation or cortisol peak concentrations; Jönsson et al. 2010; Pruessner et al. 2008; Smeets et al. 2012) and the still lacking explanation of systematic differences in the TSST-induced peak cortisol concentrations between different study populations (that is not attributable to the abovementioned participant-related or methodological moderators; Miller and Kirschbaum 2019).

Cross-References

- Biomarkers
- Cortisol
- Stress
- Stress Response

References and Further Readings

- Brenner, K., Liu, A., Laplante, D. P., Lupien, S., Pruessner, J. C., Ciampi, A., Joob, R., & King, S. (2009). Cortisol response to a psychosocial stressor in schizophrenia: Blunted, delayed, or normal? *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 34(6), 859–868.
- Buske-Kirschbaum, A., Jobst, S., Wustmans, A., Kirschbaum, C., Rauh, W., & Hellhammer, D. (1997). Attenuated free cortisol response to psychosocial stress in children with atopic dermatitis. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 59(4), 419–426.
- Campbell, J., & Ehlers, U. (2012). Acute psychosocial stress: Does the emotional stress response correspond

- with physiological responses? *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 37(8), 1111–1134.
- de Souza Vale, R. G., Rosa, G., Júnior, R. J. N., & Dantas, E. H. M. (2010). Cortisol and physical exercise. In A. Esposito & B. Vito (Eds.), *Cortisol: Physiology, regulation and health implications* (pp. 129–138). New York: Nova Science Publisher.
- Dickerson, S. S., & Kemeny, M. E. (2004). Acute stressors and cortisol responses: A theoretical integration and synthesis of laboratory research. *Psychological Bulletin*, 130(3), 355–391.
- Gonzalez-Bono, E., Rohleder, N., Hellhammer, D. H., Salvador, A., & Kirschbaum, C. (2002). Glucose but not protein or fat load amplifies the cortisol response to psychosocial stress. *Hormones and Behavior*, 41(3), 328–333.
- Goodman, W. K., Janson, J., & Wolf, J. M. (2017). Meta-analytical assessment of the effects of protocol variations on cortisol responses to the Trier social stress test. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 80, 26–35.
- Hackney, A. C. (2006). Stress and the neuroendocrine system: The role of exercise as a stressor and modifier of stress. *Expert Reviews in Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 1(6), 783–792.
- Hamilton, L. D., Rellini, A. H., & Meston, C. M. (2009). Cortisol, sexual arousal, and affect in response to sexual stimuli. *The Journal of Sexual Medicine*, 5(9), 2111–2118.
- Hellhammer, J., & Schubert, M. (2012). The physiological response to Trier social stress test relates to subjective measures of stress during but not before or after the test. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 37(1), 119–124.
- Henze, G. I., Zänkert, S., Urschler, D. F., Hiltl, T. J., Kudielka, B. M., Pruessner, J. C., & Wüst, S. (2017). Testing the ecological validity of the Trier social stress test: Association with real-life exam stress. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 75, 52–55.
- Het, S., Rohleder, N., Schoofs, D., Kirschbaum, C., & Wolf, O. T. (2009). Neuroendocrine and psychometric evaluation of a placebo version of the “Trier Social Stress Test”. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 34(7), 1075–1086.
- Jönsson, P., Wallergård, M., Österberg, K., Hansen, Å. M., Johansson, G., & Karlson, B. (2010). Cardiovascular and cortisol reactivity and habituation to a virtual reality version of the Trier social stress test: A pilot study. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 35(9), 1397–1403.
- Kirschbaum, C., Pirke, K. M., & Hellhammer, D. H. (1993). The “Trier Social Stress Test” – A tool for investigating psychobiological stress responses in a laboratory setting. *Neuropsychobiology*, 28, 76–81.
- Koolhaas, J. M., Bartolomucci, A., Buwalda, B., de Boer, S. F., Fluegge, G., Korte, S. M., Meerlo, P., Murison, R., Olivier, B., Palanza, P., Richter-Levin, G., Sgoifo, A., Steimer, T., Stiedl, O., van Dijk, G., Wöhr, M., & Fuchs, E. (2011). Stress revisited: A critical evaluation of the stress concept. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 35(5), 1291–1301.
- Krueger, T., Exton, M. S., Pawlak, C., von zur Muehlen, A., Hartmann, U., & Schedlowski, M. (1998). Neuroendocrine and cardiovascular response to sexual arousal and orgasm in men. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 23(4), 401–411.
- Kudielka, B. M., Hellhammer, J., Hellhammer, D. H., Wolf, O. T., Pirke, K. M., Varadi, E., Pilz, J., & Kirschbaum, C. (1998). Sex differences in endocrine and psychological responses to psychosocial stress in healthy elderly subjects and the impact of a 2-week dehydroepiandrosterone treatment. *The Journal of Clinical Endocrinology & Metabolism*, 83(5), 1756–1761.
- Kudielka, B. M., Von Känel, R., Preckel, D., Zraggen, L., Mischler, K., & Fischer, J. E. (2006). Exhaustion is associated with reduced habituation of free cortisol responses to repeated acute psychosocial stress. *Biological Psychology*, 72(2), 147–153.
- Kudielka, B. M., Hellhammer, D. H., & Wüst, S. (2009). Why do we respond so differently? Reviewing determinants of human salivary cortisol responses to challenge. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 34(1), 2–18.
- Liu, J. J. W., Ein, N., Peck, K., Huang, V., Pruessner, J. C., & Vickers, K. (2017). Sex differences in salivary cortisol reactivity to the Trier social stress test (TSST): A meta-analysis. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 82, 26–37.
- Lovallo, W. R., Pincomb, G. A., Brackett, D. J., & Wislon, M. F. (1990). Heart rate reactivity as a predictor of neuroendocrine responses to aversive and appetitive challenges. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 52, 17–26.
- Miller, R., & Kirschbaum, C. (2019). Cultures under stress: A cross-national meta-analysis of cortisol responses to the Trier social stress test and their association with anxiety-related value orientations and internalizing mental disorders. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 105, 147–154.
- Miller, R., Plessow, F., Kirschbaum, C., & Stalder, T. (2013). Classification criteria for distinguishing cortisol responders from nonresponders to psychosocial stress: Evaluation of salivary cortisol pulse detection in panel designs. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 75(9), 832–840.
- Petrowski, K., Wintermann, G. B., & Siepmann, M. (2012). Cortisol response to repeated psychosocial stress. *Applied Psychophysiology Biofeedback*, 37(2), 103–107.
- Pruessner, J. C., Dedovic, K., Khalili-Mahani, N., Engert, V., Pruessner, M., Buss, C., Renwick, R., Dagher, A., Meaney, M. J., & Lupien, S. J. (2008). Deactivation of the limbic system during acute psychosocial stress: Evidence from positron emission tomography and functional magnetic resonance imaging studies. *Biological Psychiatry*, 63(2), 234–240.
- Rohleder, N. (2019). Stress and inflammation – The need to address the gap in the transition between acute and chronic stress effects. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 105, 164–171.
- Schommer, N. C., Hellhammer, D. H., & Kirschbaum, C. (2003). Dissociation between reactivity of the hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal axis and the sympathetic-adrenal-medullary system to repeated psychosocial stress. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 65(3), 450–460.

- Smeets, T., Cornelisse, S., Quaedflieg, C. W. E. M., Meyer, T., Jellicic, M., & Merckelbach, H. (2012). Introducing the Maastricht acute stress test (MAST): A quick and non-invasive approach to elicit robust autonomic and glucocorticoid stress responses. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 37(12), 1998–2008.
- Ulrich-Lai, Y. M., & Herman, J. P. (2009). Neural regulation of endocrine and autonomic stress responses. *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, 10(6), 397–409.
- Van Hedger, K., Bershad, A. K., & de Wit, H. (2017). Pharmacological challenge studies with acute psychosocial stress. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 85, 123–133.
- von Dawans, B., Kirschbaum, C., & Heinrichs, M. (2011). The Trier social stress test for groups (TSST-G): A new research tool for controlled simultaneous social stress exposure in a group format. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 36(4), 514–522.
- Wiemers, U. S., Schoofs, D., & Wolf, O. T. (2013). A friendly version of the Trier social stress test does not activate the HPA axis in healthy men and women. *Stress*, 16(2), 254–260.
- Wüst, S., Federenko, I. S., Van Rossum, E. F. C., Koper, J. W., & Hellhammer, D. H. (2005). Habituation of cortisol responses to repeated psychosocial stress – further characterization and impact of genetic factors. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 30(2), 199–211.
- Zänkert, S., Bellingrath, S., Wüst, S., & Kudielka, B. M. (2019). HPA axis responses to psychological challenge linking stress and disease: What do we know on sources of intra- and interindividual variability? *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 105, 86–97.

Triglyceride

Chad Barrett

Department of Psychology, University of Colorado, Denver, CO, USA

Synonyms

Lipid

Definition

Triglycerides are a type of lipid (fat) which consist of glycerol and three molecules of fatty acid and are found in blood plasma and fat tissue. They are derived from fats and carbohydrates that are consumed. When calories are consumed, the body converts any calories not immediately used by

tissues into triglycerides and transports them into fat cells for storage. Hormones regulate the release of triglycerides from fat tissues in order to provide energy for the body between meals. If the body uses fewer calories than are consumed in a day, then the surplus of calories can cause elevated levels of triglycerides (Welson 2006).

According to the American Heart Association, the normal level of triglycerides is less than 150 mg/dL and the optimal level of triglycerides is 100 mg/dL or lower. Borderline high levels range from 150 to 199 mg/dL; high levels range from 200 to 499 mg/dL; very high levels range from 500 mg/dL and above. Elevated levels of triglycerides are often the result of being overweight, physically inactive, smoking, excessive consumption of alcohol, and diets high in fat and carbohydrates. High levels of triglycerides have been linked to atherosclerosis (hardening of the arteries) and increased risk of heart disease, stroke, metabolic syndrome (Triglycerides 2010; What Your Cholesterol Levels Mean 2011), and Alzheimer's disease (Altman and Rutledge 2010). Interventions to lower triglycerides typically involve changes in lifestyle such as losing weight, adopting a more heart-healthy diet consisting of less fats and foods with added sugars, engaging in regular exercise, quitting smoking, and reducing alcohol consumption (Haffner et al. 2005; Graves and Miller 2003; Triglycerides 2010). Omega-3 fatty acids can also help reduce triglyceride levels and reduce the risk of cardiovascular diseases and possibly even strokes (Kris-Etherton et al. 2002).

Cross-References

- ▶ Cardiovascular Disease
- ▶ Cardiovascular Disease Prevention
- ▶ Cholesterol

References and Readings

- Altman, R., & Rutledge, J. C. (2010). The vascular contribution to Alzheimer's disease. *Clinical Science*, 119, 07–421. Retrieved from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20684749>.

- Graves, K. D., & Miller, P. M. (2003). Behavioral medicine in the prevention and treatment of cardiovascular disease. *Behavior Modification*, 27, 3–25.
- Haffner, S., Temprosa, M., Crandall, J., Fowler, S., Goldberg, R., Horton, E., et al. (2005). Intensive lifestyle. Intervention or metformin on inflammation and coagulation in participants with impaired glucose tolerance. *Diabetes*, 54, 1566–1572.
- Kris-Etherton, P. M., Harris, W. S., & Appel, L. J. (2002). Fish consumption, fish oil, omega-3 fatty acids and cardiovascular disease. *Circulation*, 106, 2747–2757. Retrieved from <http://circ.ahajournals.org/content/106/21/2747.full>.
- Triglycerides. (2010). Retrieved October 10, 2011, from http://www.heart.org/HEARTORG/GettingHealthy/NutritionCenter/Triglycerides_UCM_306029_Article.jsp
- Welson, L. T. (2006). *Triglycerides and cholesterol research*. New York: Nova.
- What your cholesterol levels mean*. (2011). Retrieved October 10, 2011, from http://www.heart.org/HEARTORG/Conditions/Cholesterol/AboutCholesterol/What-Your-Cholesterol-Levels-Mean_UCM_305562_Article.jsp

tRNA

► RNA

Tumor Necrosis Factor-Alpha (TNF-Alpha)

Nicolas Rohleder

Department of Psychology, Brandeis University,
Waltham, MA, USA

Synonyms

Cachectin

Definition

Tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-alpha) belongs to the group of pro-inflammatory cytokines. Cytokines are chemical messenger molecules of the immune system, and the group of pro-inflammatory cytokines characterizes molecules that are secreted in response to inflammatory

stimuli, and further promote inflammatory responses in target cells. The cytokine now known as tumor necrosis factor-alpha was first discovered as a molecule that appeared to be essential in the wasting syndrome associated with bacterial infection, and therefore initially referred to as cachectin. At the same time, another molecule was discovered that induced pronounced necrosis of certain tumors in organisms infected by gram-negative bacteria. This molecule turned out to be identical to cachectin, and both were then called tumor necrosis factor-alpha (Beutler and Cerami 1989; Pennica et al. 1984).

TNF-alpha is one of the major products secreted by macrophages that are activated by inflammatory stimuli, and it acts through a family of different receptors that have some structural similarities and are present as transmembrane proteins on a variety of target cells. There are two different categories of receptors, based on their effect on the target cell. The first category is characterized by intracellular signals preceding programmed cell death; these are most likely the receptors that mediate the tumor necrotic effects of TNF. The second category induces pro-inflammatory effects, for example, by stimulation of proliferation or transcription of further inflammatory mediators. On a systemic level, TNF-alpha plays a notable role in sepsis and in the induction of septic shock. Similar to the interleukins (IL)-6 and -18, TNF-alpha does also act on nonimmune tissues such as endothelial cells, adipocytes, muscle cells, the liver, and the gastrointestinal tract (Beutler and Bazzoni 1998; Hehlhans and Pfeffer 2005).

Of note, along with IL-1, TNF-alpha is an important mediator of CNS effects of peripheral inflammation. TNF-signaling into the CNS has been shown to activate the hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal axis, to induce hyperalgesia, to reduce food intake, and to contribute to the well-described sickness behavior response (e.g., Besedovsky et al. 1991; Watkins et al. 1995). This immune-to-CNS signaling function of TNF-alpha and other inflammatory cytokines plays an essential role in the control of peripheral inflammation during infectious and inflammatory diseases, and disruption of this loop leads to death

in animal models of inflammatory diseases (Sternberg 2006).

TNF-alpha and other inflammatory cytokines are further important as targets of CNS-to-immune signaling, and serve as a link between CNS states with disease-relevant pathophysiological factors. Inflammatory cytokine production is modulated by the sympathetic nervous system and the hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal axis, and pro-inflammatory cytokines in blood are sensitive to acute and chronic stress, and found increased in depression and posttraumatic stress disorder (e.g., Rohleder et al. 2009, 2010; Steptoe et al. 2007). Inflammatory cytokines also increase with age and have been found to predict later life morbidity and mortality (e.g., Bruunsgaard et al. 2003).

Cross-References

- [Depression](#)
- [Inflammation](#)
- [Post Traumatic Stress Disorder](#)
- [Psychoneuroimmunology](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Readings

- Besedovsky, H. O., del Rey, A., Klusman, I., Furukawa, H., Monge Arditi, G., & Kabiersch, A. (1991). Cytokines as modulators of the hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal axis. *The Journal of Steroid Biochemistry and Molecular Biology*, 40(4–6), 613–618.
- Beutler, B., & Bazzoni, F. (1998). TNF, apoptosis and autoimmunity: A common thread? *Blood Cells, Molecules & Diseases*, 24(2), 216–230.
- Beutler, B., & Cerami, A. (1989). The biology of cachectin/TNF – a primary mediator of the host response. *Annual Review of Immunology*, 7, 625–655.
- Bruunsgaard, H., Ladelund, S., Pedersen, A. N., Schroll, M., Jorgensen, T., & Pedersen, B. K. (2003). Predicting death from tumour necrosis factor-alpha and interleukin-6 in 80-year-old people. *Clinical and Experimental Immunology*, 132(1), 24–31.
- Hehlgans, T., & Pfeffer, K. (2005). The intriguing biology of the tumour necrosis factor/tumour necrosis factor receptor superfamily: Players, rules and the games. *Immunology*, 115(1), 1–20.
- Pennica, D., Nedwin, G. E., Hayflick, J. S., Seeburg, P. H., Derynck, R., Palladino, M. A., et al. (1984). Human tumour necrosis factor: Precursor structure, expression

and homology to lymphotoxin. *Nature*, 312(5996), 724–729.

- Rohleder, N., Marin, T. J., Ma, R., & Miller, G. E. (2009). Biologic cost of caring for a cancer patient: Dysregulation of pro- and anti-inflammatory signaling pathways. *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, 27(18), 2909–2915.
- Rohleder, N., Wolf, J. M., & Wolf, O. T. (2010). Glucocorticoid sensitivity of cognitive and inflammatory processes in depression and posttraumatic stress disorder. *Neuroscience and Biobehavioral Reviews*, 35(1), 104–114.
- Steptoe, A., Hamer, M., & Chida, Y. (2007). The effects of acute psychological stress on circulating inflammatory factors in humans: A review and meta-analysis. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 21(7), 901–912.
- Sternberg, E. M. (2006). Neural regulation of innate immunity: A coordinated nonspecific host response to pathogens. *Nature Reviews: Immunology*, 6(4), 318–328.
- Watkins, L. R., Goehler, L. E., Relton, J., Brewer, M. T., & Maier, S. F. (1995). Mechanisms of tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-alpha) hyperalgesia. *Brain Research*, 692(1–2), 244–250.

TV Viewing

- [Screen Time](#)

Twin Studies

Jennifer Wessel
Public Health, School of Medicine, Indiana
University, Indianapolis, IN, USA

Definition

The classic twin study builds on the fact that there are two kinds of twins that provide contrasting degrees of genetic relationship in siblings of the same age and family circumstances. Monozygotic (MZ) twins, or identical twins, have identical copies of all their genes. In contrast, dizygotic (DZ) twins, or fraternal twins, share, on average, only half of their genes by descent, as do ordinary siblings.

If there are genetic influences on the phenotype of interest, the MZ correlation will exceed that for

the DZ twins. The greater the influence of the genes in determining individual differences in the phenotype, i.e., the greater the proportion of phenotypic variance attributable to genetic differences, the greater the difference between the MZ and DZ correlations will be. With some simplification of assumptions, twice the difference between the MZ and DZ correlations can be taken as an estimate of the heritability of the trait.

If genetic influences are the only cause of familial aggregation, if there is no nonadditive genetic variation, and if mating is random with respect to the characteristic under study, the correlation for DZ twins would be expected to be half that for MZ twins. However, if there are significant nonadditive genetic influences or there is significant competition between the twins or other contrast effects that accentuate the genetic differences of siblings, the DZ correlation may be less than half the MZ correlation. Conversely, assortative mating (like marrying like) or imitative or cooperative effects within the sibship, e.g., cooperative involvement in smoking or drinking behavior, may cause the DZ correlation to exceed half the MZ correlation.

Environmental influences on the phenotype of interest have two distinct characteristic consequences. First, if there are environmental influences that are shared by siblings growing up in the same home, e.g., socioeconomic status or parenting style, the MZ and DZ correlations will reflect this source of familial aggregation to the same extent. In the absence of genetic influences, these shared environmental influences would lead to equal MZ and DZ correlations. If there are genetic influences present, the shared environment will raise the DZ correlation relative to the MZ correlation. Another point to consider is individual environmental influences. If there are significant environmental influences that are unique to individuals, e.g., significant personal life events, familial aggregation will be attenuated and the MZ and DZ correlations will be reduced, although their relative magnitudes will continue to reflect the importance of genetic versus shared environmental causes of familial aggregation.

Historically, the twin study design has been a key tool for understanding behavioral genetics,

but the use of twins has expanded to facilitate our understanding of the genetic contribution to a number of complex traits and diseases.

Cross-References

- [Dizygotic Twins](#)
- [Monozygotic Twins](#)

References and Further Reading

- Nussbaum, R. L., Mc Innes, R. R., & Willard, H. F. (2001). *Genetics in medicine* (6th ed.). Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Company.
- Spector, T. D., Snieder, H., & MacGregor, A. J. (2000). *Advances in twin and sib-pair analysis* (1st ed.). London: Greenwich Medical Media.

Type 1 Diabetes

- [Insulin-Dependent Diabetes Mellitus \(IDDM\)](#)

Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus

Luigi Meneghini

Diabetes Research Institute, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Autoimmune diabetes mellitus](#); [Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus \(IDDM\)](#); [Juvenile diabetes](#)

Definition

Type 1 diabetes (T1DM) is an elevation in blood glucose due to insufficient production of insulin thought to result from cell-mediated autoimmune destruction of insulin-producing pancreatic beta cells. Autoimmunity is manifested by

mononuclear cell invasion of islets (insulinitis) and the production of islet-specific antibodies, such as GAD (Glutamic Acid Decarboxylase), IA-2 auto-antibodies and ICA (Islet Cell Antibodies), detectable in ~85% of newly diagnosed patients. Genetic, environmental, and possibly other unknown factors contribute to disease susceptibility, which is most commonly manifested in the teenage years (hence the former designation of juvenile diabetes).

If not replaced, absolute insulin deficiency in T1DM results in severe hyperglycemia and diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA), which if left untreated can prove fatal (hence the designation insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus). Insulin replacement ideally takes the form of basal/bolus insulin therapy, delivered either via multiple daily insulin injections or an insulin pump infusion. Poorly controlled type 1 diabetes can lead to, among other complications, nephropathy (kidney damage manifested by excess protein in the urine) and end-stage kidney failure, retinopathy potentially leading to decreased visual acuity, and neuropathy and the risk of diabetic foot infections or ulcerations. Long-standing diabetes is also associated with increased risk for heart disease, stroke, and peripheral vascular disease. Maintaining good glycemic control, as reflected by an HbA1c of less than 7%, will prevent many of the chronic complications of the disease.

Cross-References

► [Diabetes](#)

References and Readings

Joslin, E. P., & Kahn, C. R. (2005). *Joslin's diabetes mellitus* (14th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Type 2 Diabetes

► [Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus](#)

Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus

Elizabeth R. Pulgaron¹ and Alan M. Delamater²
¹Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

²Department of Pediatrics, University of Miami Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Synonyms

[Non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus](#); [Type 2 diabetes](#)

Definition

In type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2D), high blood glucose (or hyperglycemia) is the result of the pancreas producing insufficient quantities of insulin due to beta-cell dysfunction, as well as insulin resistance. Peripheral insulin resistance, in which cells resist the action of insulin at the receptor level, occurs early in the disease course. Initially this is compensated for by increased production of insulin, or hyperinsulinemia. Over time, however, insulin secretion declines, and hyperglycemia results. There is no single cause of T2D, although it is generally accepted to be the result of genetic, physiologic, and lifestyle factors, including obesity and physical inactivity.

Most cases of diabetes worldwide are due to T2D. Obesity and family history are well-known correlates of T2D, with over 85% of individuals being either overweight or obese at diagnosis, and most having a positive family history of T2D. The incidence of T2D is increasing dramatically, particularly among children and youth, most likely attributable to the increase in obesity among youth. This increasing incidence is expected to continue in the future unless significant prevention efforts are successfully implemented at the population level.

T2D is generally managed by prescription of oral medications such as Metformin to help reduce blood glucose, but insulin is also used in the treatment of T2D. Because of the association of obesity with insulin resistance, weight loss is another important goal of treatment, achieved through

lifestyle modification of dietary habits and physical activity. The health complications associated with poorly controlled diabetes, whether from type 1 or T2D, include cardiovascular disease, renal disease, blindness, and limb amputations. Thus, management of T2D constitutes an important public health issue. In the past, T2D was referred to as non-insulin-dependent diabetes or adult onset diabetes. However, now that T2D is diagnosed at earlier ages in the life course and treatment often does utilize insulin, T2D is the accepted term.

Cross-References

- [Insulin Resistance](#)
- [Type 1 Diabetes](#)

References and Readings

- Joslin, E. P., & Kahn, C. R. (2005). *Joslin's diabetes mellitus* (14th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Kaufman, F. R. (2002). Type 2 diabetes mellitus in children and youth: A new epidemic. *Journal of Pediatric Endocrinology and Metabolism*, 15, 737–744.

Type 2 Diabetes Prevention

- [Diabetes Prevention Program](#)

Type A Behavior

Shin-ichi Suzuki¹ and Yoshihiko Kunisato²

¹Faculty of Human Sciences, Graduate School of Human Sciences, Waseda University, Tokorozawa-shi, Saitama, Japan

²School of Human Sciences, Senshu University, Kawasaki, Kanagawa, Japan

Definition

The type A behavior pattern is a personality type that is considered a risk factor for coronary artery disease.

It was described by Friedman and Rosenman in 1959. The type A behavior pattern is a complex set of actions and emotions and is characterized by floating hostility, a sense of time urgency, impatience, intense achievement drive, and a desire for recognition and advancement (Friedman 1996). A behavior pattern is associated with inadequacy and low self-esteem (Friedman 1996).

The association between type A behavior pattern and coronary artery disease has been examined for many decades; strong epidemiological evidence for this association exists. However, successive studies have failed to find an association between type A behavior pattern and coronary artery disease. From these findings, hostility was hypothesized to be the main psychosocial predictor of coronary artery disease instead of the global type A behavior pattern (Razzini et al. 2008; Trigo et al. 2005).

The type A behavior pattern was originally assessed by structured interview. The interviewer must have training to ask the questions in an interview format before administering them. In addition, self-report questionnaires have been developed. For example, the Bortner Rating Scale and Framingham Type A Scale assess the type A behavior pattern. Although self-report questionnaires have been used widely, Friedman (1996) noted that inconsistencies in the association between type A behavior pattern and coronary artery disease were caused by assessment methods including self-report questionnaires and structured interview. Friedman proposed the type A videotaped clinical examination (VCE) to detect physical signs of type A behavior patterns; it was valid for diagnosis of type A behavior patterns. The VCE method has predictive validity for myocardial infarctions.

Modifications of the type A behavior pattern were proposed and summarized by Friedman (1996). The modifications of the type A behavior pattern consisted of components including self-esteem enhancement and modifications of floating hostility and sense of time urgency. Friedman et al. (1986) conducted a large randomized clinical trial to examine the effects of type A modification group therapy for myocardial infarction male patients. Their results showed that the recurrence rate of coronary artery disease

in a treatment group was lower than that of a control group.

Cross-References

- Behavioral Medicine
- Coronary Artery Disease
- Coronary Heart Disease
- Health Psychology
- Hostility, Cynical
- Personality
- Trait Anger

References and Further Reading

- Friedman, M. (1996). *Type A behavior: Its diagnosis and treatment*. New York: Plenum Press.
- Friedman, M., & Rosenman, R. H. (1959). Association of specific overt behavior pattern with blood and cardiovascular findings; blood cholesterol level, blood clotting time, incidence of arcus senilis, and clinical coronary artery disease. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 169, 1286–1296.
- Friedman, M., Thoresen, C. E., Gill, J. J., Ulmer, D., Powell, L. H., Price, V. A., et al. (1986). Alteration of type A behavior and its effect on cardiac recurrences in post myocardial infarction patients: Summary results of the recurrent coronary prevention project. *American Heart Journal*, 112, 653–665.
- Razzini, C., Bianchi, F., Leo, R., Fortuna, E., Siracusano, A., & Romeo, F. (2008). Correlations between personality factors and coronary artery disease: From type A behaviour pattern to type D personality. *Journal of Cardiovascular Medicine (Hagerstown, Md.)*, 9, 761–768.
- Trigo, M., Silva, D., & Rocha, E. (2005). Psychosocial risk factors in coronary heart disease: Beyond type A behavior. *Revista Portuguesa de Cardiologia*, 24, 261–281.

Type D Personality

Johan Denollet
CoRPS – Center of Research on Psychology in Somatic diseases, Tilburg University, Tilburg, The Netherlands

Synonyms

Distressed personality type

Definition

The Type D (distressed) personality refers to a *general propensity to psychological distress* (Denollet et al. 2010) that is defined by elevated scores on two broad personality traits, negative affectivity (NA), and social inhibition (SI). NA refers to the tendency to experience negative emotions across time and situations, and SI to the tendency to inhibit the expression of emotions and behaviors in social interaction (Denollet 2005).

Description

Individuals with a Type D personality are more likely to report *feelings of dysphoria, tension, and worry* (Denollet 2005). On an interpersonal level, Type D individuals tend to feel *insecure and inhibited* in the company of others, fearing rejection and disapproval (Denollet). Although these individuals may experience emotional difficulties, this may not be acknowledged by others given their inhibited behavior. Type D individuals are less likely to express their true thoughts and feelings and may keep other people at a distance.

A number of studies have reported that Type D was associated with an increased risk of *mortality and other adverse events in cardiac patients*, even after statistical adjustment for measures of depression or anxiety. In 1996, a paper published in the *Lancet* was one of the first reports on Type D personality as an independent predictor of mortality in patients with heart disease (Denollet et al. 1996). A meta-analytic review that summarized the findings from Type D studies that were published over a 15-year period (1995–2009) concluded that this personality profile may be related to adverse health outcomes in patients with a cardiovascular condition (Denollet et al. 2010). Another independent meta-analytic review confirmed that Type D was associated with adverse health outcomes among patients with cardiovascular disorder (O'Dell et al. 2011). There are also null studies that found no effect of Type D personality on mortality in patients with heart failure (Coyne et al. 2011; Pelle et al. 2010) or

other cardiac conditions (Grande et al. 2011). However, depression or anxiety also failed to predict prognosis in these null studies.

The *prevalence* of Type D among patients with cardiovascular disease largely ranges between 25% and 35%. Type D personality and its two components, NA and SI, can be reliably assessed with the *DS14 self-report scale* (Denollet 2005). The 14 items of the DS14 are rated on a five-point Likert scale, ranging from 0 (false) to 4 (true) and are divided into NA and SI subscales. The seven NA items cover the tendency to experience feelings of dysphoria, anxiety, and irritability. The seven SI items cover social discomfort, reticence, and lack of social poise. These personality measures have good internal consistency and are stable over time. Due to its brevity and the simplicity of the items, completing the DS14 takes only a few minutes and comprises little burden to patients. The DS14 has been validated in multiple languages, making it widely applicable. In the International HeartQoL study of 6,222 patients with ischemic heart disease, cross-cultural measurement equivalence was demonstrated for the Type D scale in 21 countries (Kupper et al. 2012).

Type D research is based on the notion that (a) research should examine *the way traits combine* in the determination of disease, and that (b) the *delineation of subtypes* may help to identify groups of patients who share a set of relevant characteristics in terms of clinical course. Only those individuals scoring positive on both NA and SI are classified as “Type D.” Type D caseness is determined by a cutoff score ≥ 10 on both the NA and SI subscales. Some have argued that Type D personality is more accurately represented as a *dimensional* rather than as a *categorical* construct (Ferguson et al. 2009). The Type D construct does not infer a true taxon that is defined by discontinuity between groups on an underlying dimension; rather, individuals belong only probabilistically to Type D and non-Type D subgroups (Denollet et al. 2010). Therefore, dimensional and categorical approaches to Type D personality do not need to be mutually exclusive, but rather represent two different ways of capturing psychological tendencies of individuals (Chapman et al. 2007).

General distress, shared across anger, depression, and anxiety, partly accounts for the link between mind and heart (Denollet and Pedersen 2009). The Type D personality profile identifies *individuals who are particularly vulnerable to this adverse effect of general distress*. Hence, Type D personality is not a concurrent of standard psychological risk factors such as depression, anxiety, or stress, but rather aims at the early identification of individuals who are inclined to experience these manifestations of distress over a longer period of time. At first glance, depression and Type D personality may appear quite similar, but there are some clear differences. While depression reflects psychopathology, Type D represents a normal personality construct. Accordingly, a narrative review of 29 studies showed that Type D personality and depression are distinct manifestations of psychological distress, with different and independent cardiovascular effects (Denollet et al. 2010). It is not surprising that there is some overlap between Type D and the neuroticism and extraversion traits of the Five Factor Model of personality. However, Type D still predicts health outcomes after controlling for these traits (Denollet et al.), and both the Five Factor and Type D models are related to health outcomes in primary care patients (Chapman et al. 2007).

Several biological and behavioral pathways may *explain the link* between Type D and health outcomes. Potential *biological pathways* associated with Type D personality include elevated levels of the stress hormone cortisol (Molloy et al. 2008), elevated biomarkers of inflammation (Conraads et al. 2006; Einvik et al. 2011), decreased capacity to repair vascular damage (Van Craenenbroeck et al. 2009), and reduced heart rate recovery after exercise (von Känel et al. 2009). Type D has also been related to cardiovascular effects during experimental stress, including higher cardiac output (Williams et al. 2009) and blood pressure (Habra et al. 2003), and lower heart rate variability (Martin et al. 2010).

Behavioral pathways may also mediate the relationship between Type D personality and adverse health outcomes (Williams et al. 2008). In the International HeartQoL study of cardiac

patients from 21 different countries, Type D was associated with a higher prevalence of hypertension, smoking, and a sedentary lifestyle (Kupper et al. 2012). In the general population, Type D has also been linked to unhealthy behaviors such as smoking and physical inactivity (Einvik et al. 2011; Hausteiner et al. 2010). Type D individuals may show reluctance to consult clinical staff for cardiovascular symptoms (Schiffer et al. 2007), and are not likely to seek care for their mental problems (Williams et al. 2008). In the medical care for patients with chronic condition, *adherence to treatment* may be of particular importance. Type D has been associated with poor adherence to treatment in patients with cardiac (Williams et al. 2011) and sleep (Broström et al. 2007) disorders.

Type D personality has been mainly studied in cardiovascular patients, but there is evidence to suggest that Type D personality can also provide relevant information in *other populations* as well. Type D has been related to poor patient-reported health outcomes in patients with *other conditions*. In cancer survivors, for example, Type D personality has been associated with impaired quality of life and poor mental health (Mols et al. 2012). In the *general population*, Type D individuals have been shown to have an increased risk for clinically significant depression, panic disorder, and alcohol abuse (Michal et al. 2011). In this study, Type D was also robustly associated with major stressors such as traumatic events and social isolation. These authors concluded that Type D as a frequent disposition is of high relevance for health care (Michal et al. 2011). In other studies of individuals without cardiovascular disease, Type D personality was related to unhealthy behaviors such as smoking and low physical activity (Einvik et al. 2011; Hausteiner et al. 2010).

The evidence so far seems to indicate that patients with a Type D personality profile are at increased risk of for a multitude of adverse health outcomes, particularly in the context of cardiac disease. However, there still are a number of unresolved issues. Evidence suggests that social inhibition modulates the adverse effect of negative emotions on cardiac prognosis (Denollet et al.

2006) but more research is needed to test this model. Although to date the optimal treatment and the applicability of counseling options for Type D individuals are still unknown, screening may identify these high-risk patients. Overall, the findings of Type D research support the simultaneous use of specific and general measures of distress in cardiovascular research and practice. In this context, *screening for Type D personality with the DS14* (Denollet 2005) may be useful to improve clinical research and practice in the context of cardiovascular disease and other chronic conditions.

Cross-References

- Negative Affectivity
- Social Inhibition

References and Readings

- Broström, A., Strömberg, A., Mårtensson, J., Ulander, M., Harder, L., & Svanborg, E. (2007). Association of type D personality to perceived side effects and adherence in CPAP-treated patients with OSAS. *Journal of Sleep Research*, 16, 439–447.
- Chapman, B. P., Duberstein, P. R., & Lyness, J. M. (2007). The distressed personality type: Replicability and general health associations. *European Journal of Personality*, 21, 911–929.
- Conraads, V. M., Denollet, J., De Clerck, L. S., Stevens, W. J., Bridts, C., & Vrints, C. J. (2006). Type D personality is associated with increased levels of tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-alpha and TNF-alpha receptors in chronic heart failure. *International Journal of Cardiology*, 113, 34–38.
- Coyne, J. C., Jaarsma, T., Luttik, M. L., van Sonderen, E., van Veldhuisen, D. J., & Sanderman, R. (2011). Lack of prognostic value of type D personality for mortality in a large sample of heart failure patients. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 73, 557–562.
- Denollet, J. (2005). DS14: Standard assessment of negative affectivity, social inhibition, and type D personality. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 67, 89–97.
- Denollet, J., & Pedersen, S. S. (2009). Anger, depression and anxiety in cardiac patients: The complexity of individual differences in psychological risk. *Journal of the American College of Cardiology*, 53, 947–949.
- Denollet, J., Sys, S. U., Stroobant, N., Rombouts, H., Gillebert, T. C., & Brutsaert, D. L. (1996). Personality as independent predictor of long-term mortality in

- patients with coronary heart disease. *The Lancet*, 347, 417–421.
- Denollet, J., Pedersen, S. S., Ong, A. T., Erdman, R. A., Serruys, P. W., & van Domburg, R. T. (2006). Social inhibition modulates the effect of negative emotions on cardiac prognosis following percutaneous coronary intervention in the drug-eluting stent era. *European Heart Journal*, 27, 171–177.
- Denollet, J., Schiffer, A. A., & Spek, V. (2010). A general propensity to psychological distress affects cardiovascular outcomes: Evidence from research on the type D (distressed) personality profile. *Circulation: Cardiovascular Quality and Outcomes*, 3, 546–557.
- Einvik, G., Dammen, T., Hrubos-Strøm, H., Namtvedt, S. K., Randby, A., Kristiansen, H. A., et al. (2011). Prevalence of cardiovascular risk factors and concentration of C-reactive protein in type D personality persons without cardiovascular disease. *European Journal of Cardiovascular Prevention and Rehabilitation*, 18, 504–509.
- Ferguson, E., Williams, L., O'Connor, C., Howard, S., Hughes, B. M., Johnston, D. W., et al. (2009). A taxometric analysis of Type D personality. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 71, 981–986.
- Grande, G., Romppel, M., Vesper, J. M., Schubmann, R., Glaesmer, H., & Hermann-Lingen, C. (2011). Type D personality and all-cause mortality in cardiac patients – Data from a German cohort study. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 73, 548–556.
- Habra, M. E., Linden, W., Anderson, J. C., & Weinberg, J. (2003). Type D personality is related to cardiovascular and neuroendocrine reactivity to acute stress. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 55, 235–245.
- Hausteiner, C., Klupsch, D., Emeny, R., Baumert, J., Ladwig, K. H., & the KORA Investigators. (2010). Clustering of negative affectivity and social inhibition in the community: Prevalence of Type D personality as a cardiovascular risk marker. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 72, 163–171.
- Kupper, N., Pedersen, S. S., Höfer, S., Saner, H., Oldridge, N., & Denollet, J. (2012). Cross-cultural analysis of type D (distressed) personality in 6222 patients with ischemic heart disease: A study from the International HeartQoL Project. *International Journal of Cardiology*, in press.
- Martin, L. A., Doster, J. A., Critelli, J. W., Lambert, P. L., Purdum, M., Powers, C., et al. (2010). Ethnicity and type D personality as predictors of heart rate variability. *International Journal of Psychophysiology*, 76, 118–121.
- Michal, M., Wiltink, J., Grande, G., Beutel, M. E., & Brähler, E. (2011). Type D personality is independently associated with major psychosocial stressors and increased health care utilization in the general population. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 134, 396–403.
- Molloy, G. J., Perkins-Porras, L., Strike, P. C., & Steptoe, A. (2008). Type D personality and cortisol in survivors of acute coronary syndrome. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 70, 863–868.
- Mols, F., Thong, M. S., de Poll-Franse, L. V., Roukema, J. A., & Denollet, J. (2012). Type D (distressed) personality is associated with poor quality of life and mental health among 3080 cancer survivors. *Journal of Affective Disorders*, 136, 26–34.
- O'Dell, K. R., Masters, K. S., Spielmann, G. I., & Maisto, S. A. (2011). Does type D personality predict outcomes among patients with cardiovascular disease? A meta-analytic review. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 71, 199–206.
- Pelle, A. J., Pedersen, S. S., Schiffer, A. A., Szabó, B. M., Widdershoven, J. W., & Denollet, J. (2010). Psychological distress and mortality in systolic heart failure. *Circulation: Heart Failure*, 3, 261–267.
- Schiffer, A. A., Denollet, J., Widdershoven, J. W., Hendriks, E. H., & Smith, O. R. (2007). Failure to consult for symptoms of heart failure in patients with a type D personality. *Heart*, 93, 814–818.
- Van Craenenbroeck, E. M., Denollet, J., Paelinck, B. P., Beckers, P., Possemiers, N., Hoymans, V. Y., et al. (2009). Circulating CD34 + KDR + endothelial progenitor cells are reduced in chronic heart failure patients as a function of Type D personality. *Clinical Science*, 117, 165–172.
- von Känel, R., Barth, J., Kohls, S., Saner, S., Znoj, H., Saner, G., et al. (2009). Heart rate recovery after exercise in chronic heart failure: Role of vital exhaustion and type D personality. *Journal of Cardiology*, 53, 248–256.
- Williams, L., O'Connor, R. C., Howard, S., Hughes, B. M., Johnston, D. W., Hay, J. L., et al. (2008). Type D personality mechanisms of effect: The role of health-related behavior and social support. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 64, 63–69.
- Williams, L., O'Carroll, R. E., & O'Connor, R. C. (2009). Type D personality and cardiac output in response to stress. *Psychology and Health*, 24, 489–500.
- Williams, L., O'Connor, R. C., Grubb, N., & O'Carroll, R. (2011). Type D personality predicts poor medication adherence in myocardial infarction patients. *Psychology and Health*, 26, 703–712.

U

Understanding

- [Empathy](#)

Unexplained Patient Complaints

- [Medically Unexplained Symptoms](#)

Unexplained Symptoms

- [Medically Unexplained Symptoms](#)

Unintentional Nonadherence

Tavis S. Campbell, Jillian A. Johnson and
Kristin A. Zernicke
Department of Psychology, University of Calgary,
Calgary, AB, Canada

Synonyms

[Noncompliance](#)

Definition

Unintentional nonadherence refers to a non-deliberate alteration in treatment (e.g., medications, exercise, diet). Unintentional nonadherence includes forgetting, poor manual dexterity, lack of understanding of requirements, losing medications, or not being able to afford treatment (DiMatteo, 2004). Unlike intentional nonadherence that is more strongly related to individuals' beliefs, unintentional nonadherence is more strongly related to demographics and clinical variables, such as age, socioeconomic factors, and stage of illness (DiMatteo, 2004).

Cross-References

- [Noncompliance](#)

References and Readings

- DiMatteo, R. M. (2004). Variations in patients' adherence to medical recommendations: A quantitative review of 50 years of research. *Medical Care*, 42(3), 200–209.
- Horne, R. (2007). Adherence to treatment. In S. Ayers, A. Baum, & C. McManus (Eds.), *Cambridge handbook of psychology, health and medicine* (pp. 417–423). Cambridge, MA: Cambridge University Press.
- Wroe, A. I. (2002). Intentional and unintentional non-adherence: A study of decision making. *Journal of Behavioural Medicine*, 25(4), 355–372.

Unipolar Depression

Amy Wachholtz¹ and Elizabeth Gleyzer²

¹Department of Psychology, University of Colorado Denver, Denver, CO, USA

²Department of Psychology, William James College, Newton, MA, USA

Synonyms

Depressive episode; Dysthymia; Major depressive disorder; Persistent depressive disorder

Definition and Description

Unipolar depression is a mood disorder characterized by either persistent feelings of sadness or emptiness or by diminished interest or pleasure in activities (anhedonia). These symptoms are often accompanied by a combination of emotional/cognitive and vegetative symptoms. Emotional/cognitive symptoms involve those that are related to how a person processes information, e.g., depressed mood, feeling worthless or excessively guilty, feeling helpless, hopelessness, irritability, anhedonia, difficulty thinking or decreased concentration, or suicidal ideation. Vegetative symptoms are those symptoms that are directly related to the body, e.g., insomnia/hypersomnia, dysregulated eating, fatigue, or decreased energy. Functional impairment caused by depression can range from mild to moderate to severe (American Psychiatric Association [APA] 2013).

Etiology

Physiology, psychology and personality, genetics and family history, social environment, and life circumstances all play a role in a person's vulnerability to depression. It is unknown exactly how depression develops and the etiology is usually multifactorial and varies for every patient. Depression is a disorder that involves brain

structures, neurotransmitters, and cognitive and emotional processes.

Diagnosis

A physician, psychiatrist, psychologist, or other mental health professional can diagnose a patient with depression. In order to be diagnosed as depression, symptoms must be unremitting for more than 2 weeks and must include either depressed mood or anhedonia (APA 2013). Five additional emotional and vegetative criterion symptoms must be present. When diagnosing, clinicians consider duration of symptoms, symptom history, degree of functional impairment, and treatment history. While all people occasionally experience sadness, feeling "blue," or mood swings, it is important to note that depression affects important areas of a patient's life, such as social or occupational functioning, and is of greater severity than normative emotional responses. Individuals with depression may each present somewhat differently. Some patients may report irritability, tearfulness, somatic complaints, psychomotor agitation or slowing, social withdrawal, anger, or a combination of such symptoms.

The course of depression is often episodic, with symptoms remitting for a time and then returning (National Institute for Health and Care Excellence [NICE] 2009). When depressive symptoms are present and unremitting for more than 2 years and do not meet full criteria for depression, it is called persistent depressive disorder, or dysthymia (APA 2013).

The term unipolar depression is used to differentiate between this disorder and *bipolar depression* which involves periods of mania in addition to depression. The term depression is also differentiated from an *adjustment disorder* (see ► "Adjustment Disorders in Health"), which may include feeling depressive symptoms due to a specific life change (e.g., job loss, divorce, recent cancer diagnosis) or *bereavement* due to the loss of a loved one. However, both adjustment disorder and bereavement may progress to unipolar depression if symptoms are present for a prolonged period of time.

Comorbidity with Medical Disorders

Unipolar depression is associated with increased medical morbidity (Carney et al. 1995) and may be seen in conjunction with a number of physical health issues (see ► [“Comorbidity”](#)) including chronic pain, cancer, physical trauma, cardiac issues (heart attack), inflammatory bowel disease, diabetes, HIV/AIDS, chronic health concerns (see ► [“Maladaptation of Symptom Behaviors to Chronic Illness”](#)), and terminal stage illnesses. Patients with both depression and medical illness may have more severe symptoms of both (National Institute of Mental Health [NIMH] 2015). Chronic medical conditions and comorbid depression are associated with increased symptom reporting, amplification of severity of symptoms, and increased medical care costs (Katon and Ciechanowski 2002). And patients with chronic illnesses are at a higher risk for depression than the general population (Cassano and Fava 2002).

Depression and the chronic stress that often accompanies affective disorders have a negative effect on immune function through overproduction of proinflammatory cytokines (Kiecolt-Glaser and Glaser 2002). In immunocompromised patients, depression may contribute to prolonged or repeated infection and delayed healing due to inhibited immune responses (Kiecolt-Glaser and Glaser 2002).

Conversely, the presence of medical issues may also increase the risk of developing depression (Krishnan et al. 2002). Disruption of physiological systems such as endocrine, cardiovascular, or immune systems in medically ill patients can contribute to the development or recurrence of depression (Glannon 2002). For example, vitamin B12 deficiency can result in depressive symptoms (Tiemeier et al. 2002). Patients with an underactive thyroid, a condition called hypothyroidism, are susceptible to symptoms of depression (Kirkegaard and Faber 1998). Even those with subclinical hypothyroidism are at an increased risk of developing depression (Haggerty et al. 1993). Some patients with depression may show thyroid dysfunction such as lower levels of thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) and another thyroid hormone, T_3 (Stipčević et al. 2008).

Because of thyroid hormones' role in mood and cognition (Bauer et al. 2008), symptoms of hypothyroidism manifest in some patients as fatigue, depressed mood, appetite changes, fluctuations in weight, or memory difficulties (Hueston 2001) and may overlap with symptoms of depression. Depression can have an impact on cognition, especially in older adults. Depression can also mimic symptoms of dementia in older individuals. Depression may also be a precursor to dementia. In patients with mild cognitive impairment (MCI), depression is a risk factor for development of dementia (Modrego and Ferrández 2004). Overlapping symptoms of depression and dementia or MCI, such as cognitive slowing, lack of interest, loss of energy, and difficulty concentrating, may lead to misdiagnosis if not fully assessed.

When patients present in a medical setting, diagnosis of depression must take into account potential overlapping somatic symptoms such as fatigue, change in appetite, cognitive deficits, decreased concentration, and sleep difficulties. Additionally, some medications used to treat medical disorders can mimic or trigger depressive symptoms such as beta blockers and interferon treatments.

Treatment

The goal of all treatments for depression is to alleviate depressive symptoms and to help patients return to a normal level of functioning. Patients with depression may respond to some treatments and not others. Therefore, many clinicians are trained to offer a variety of treatment options that cater to the patient's presentation and symptom history. Common treatments for depression include cognitive-behavioral psychotherapy, interpersonal therapy, behavioral activation, antidepressant medications, or a combination of these treatments. Of the nonpharmacological options, cognitive-behavioral therapy (CBT) is most frequently recommended as an evidence-based approach to treatment. CBT is a model of therapy in which the patient and clinician work collaboratively to identify negative thoughts, beliefs, behaviors, and interpretations that contribute to

depressed mood. The clinician helps the patient develop skills to counteract problematic cognitive processes and behaviors and replace them with a repertoire of coping strategies (National Collaborating Centre for Mental Health [NCCMH] 2010). CBT treatment has been found to create similar neural activity changes in the brain as antidepressants using fMRI assessments, but CBT treatment effects continue after the cessation of treatment. In contrast, fMRI studies show that those treated with medication alone tend to return to baseline activity levels soon after treatment ends (DeRubeis et al. 2008).

Current commonly used classes of antidepressant medications include selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs), monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), serotonin and norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs), norepinephrine and dopamine reuptake inhibitors (NDRIs), and tetracyclic antidepressants. There are also a number of complementary treatments that are gaining empirical research support for use in combination with traditional approaches to enhance treatment outcomes. These include treatments such as exercise therapy, light therapy, vitamin B and D supplements, acupuncture, and hypnosis.

Adherence

A common symptom of depression is lack of motivation and energy which can often interfere with a patient's ability to adhere to his or her medical regimen (see ► [“Disease Management”](#)). Medically ill patients with comorbid depression may have difficulty taking their prescribed medication on time, keeping medical appointments, carrying out activities of daily living and maintaining general self-care. Patients with depression are three times more likely to struggle with treatment adherence than non-depressed patients (DiMatteo et al. 2000). Depression can also complicate the course of treatment for many medical conditions. Patients may be slower to return to work, report higher levels of stress, and struggle to adhere to doctor recommendations such as diet and exercise (DiMatteo et al. 2000).

Conclusion

Unipolar depression is a mood disorder that is characterized by low mood, loss of interest or pleasure in previously enjoyable activities, and other emotional, cognitive, physical, and behavioral symptoms. The diagnosis of depression depends on the severity of symptoms, duration, and degree of functional impairment. Other mental health disorders such as bipolar disorder and adjustment disorder may present with depressive symptoms but are diagnostically differentiated by additional symptom criteria. Depression frequently co-occurs with medical illness. Depression affects endocrine, gastrointestinal, and immune system functioning and can complicate wound healing and medical treatment. Depression is also associated with poorer medical outcomes in patients such as those with cardiovascular issues. Some illnesses, such as hypothyroidism, can present with depressive symptoms and clinicians should take care making a diagnosis when assessing for overlapping symptoms. Medically ill patients with comorbid depression may struggle with adherence to treatment recommendations due to the nature of depressive symptoms such as amotivation, lack of energy, hopelessness, and poor self-efficacy. Available treatments for unipolar depression include antidepressant medications, psychotherapies such as cognitive-behavioral therapy, and other complementary treatments that are gaining empirical support. While many treatments are effective in helping patients regain normal functioning and remission of symptoms, not all patients respond equally to treatment. Therefore, catering treatment to a patient's unique symptom presentation, considering comorbidities and symptom and treatment history, and accounting for the patient's medical status will help improve patient outcomes.

Cross-References

- [Adjustment Disorders in Health](#)
- [Comorbidity](#)
- [Dementia](#)
- [Disease Management](#)
- [Maladaptation of Symptom Behaviors to Chronic Illness](#)

References and Further Reading

- American Psychiatric Association. (2013). *Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders* (5th ed.). Washington, DC: Author.
- Bauer, M., Goetz, T., Glenn, T., & Whybrow, P. C. (2008). The thyroid-brain interaction in thyroid disorders and mood disorders. *Journal of Neuroendocrinology*, 20(10), 1101–1114.
- Carney, R. M., Freedland, K. E., Eisen, S. A., Rich, M. W., & Jaffe, A. S. (1995). Major depression and medication adherence in elderly patients with coronary artery disease. *Health Psychology*, 14(1), 88.
- Cassano, P., & Fava, M. (2002). Depression and public health: An overview. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 53(4), 849–857.
- Dayan, C. M., & Panicker, V. (2013). Hypothyroidism and depression. *European Thyroid Journal*, 2(3), 168–179.
- DeRubeis, R. J., Siegle, G. J., & Hollon, S. D. (2008). Cognitive therapy vs. medications for depression: Treatment outcomes and neural mechanisms. *Nature Reviews: Neuroscience*, 9, 788–796.
- DiMatteo, M. R., Lepper, H. S., & Croghan, T. W. (2000). Depression is a risk factor for noncompliance with medical treatment: Meta-analysis of the effects of anxiety and depression on patient adherence. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 160(14), 2101–2107.
- Dwight, M. M., Kowdley, K. V., Russo, J. E., Ciechanowski, P. S., Larson, A. M., & Katon, W. J. (2000). Depression, fatigue, and functional disability in patients with chronic hepatitis C. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 49(5), 311–317.
- Glannon, W. (2002). The psychology and physiology of depression. *Philosophy, Psychiatry, & Psychology*, 9(3), 265–269.
- Haggerty, J. J., Jr., Stern, R. A., Mason, G. A., Beckwith, J., Morey, C. E., & Prange, A. J., Jr. (1993). Subclinical hypothyroidism: A modifiable risk factor for depression? *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 150(3), 508.
- Hueston, W. J. (2001). Treatment of hypothyroidism. *American Family Physician*, 64(10), 1717–1724.
- Irwin, M., Patterson, T., Smith, T. L., Caldwell, C., Brown, S. A., Gillin, J. C., & Grant, I. (1990). Reduction of immune function in life stress and depression. *Biological Psychiatry*, 27(1), 22–30.
- Katon, W., & Ciechanowski, P. (2002). Impact of major depression on chronic medical illness. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 53(4), 859–863.
- Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K., & Glaser, R. (2002). Depression and immune function: Central pathways to morbidity and mortality. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 53(4), 873–876.
- Kirkegaard, C., & Faber, J. (1998). The role of thyroid hormones in depression. *European Journal of Endocrinology*, 138(1), 1–9.
- Krishnan, K. R. R., Delong, M., Kraemer, H., Carney, R., Spiegel, D., Gordon, C., et al. (2002). Comorbidity of depression with other medical diseases in the elderly. *Biological Psychiatry*, 52(6), 559–588.
- Lustman, P. J., Clouse, R. E., & Carney, R. M. (1989). Depression and the reporting of diabetes symptoms. *The International Journal of Psychiatry in Medicine*, 18(4), 295–303.
- Modrego, P. J., & Ferrández, J. (2004). Depression in patients with mild cognitive impairment increases the risk of developing dementia of Alzheimer type: A prospective cohort study. *Archives of Neurology*, 61(8), 1290–1293.
- National Collaborating Centre for Mental Health (UK). (2010). Depression: The treatment and management of depression in adults (updated edition). British Psychological Society. Retrieved from <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22132433>
- National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (UK). (2009). Depression in adults: Recognition and management (NICE guidelines CG90). Retrieved from <http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/CG90>
- Stipčević, T., Pivac, N., Kozarić-Kovačić, D., & Mück-Šeler, D. (2008). Thyroid activity in patients with major depression. *Collegium Antropologicum*, 32(3), 973–976.
- Sullivan, M., LaCroix, A., Spertus, J., & Hecht, J. (2000). Effects of anxiety and depression on function and symptoms in patients with coronary heart disease: A 5-year prospective study. *The American Journal of Cardiology*, 86, 1135–1140.
- Tiemeier, H., Van Tuijl, H. R., Hofman, A., Meijer, J., Kiliaan, A. J., Breteler, M. M. (2002). Vitamin B12, folate, and homocysteine in depression: The Rotterdam Study. *American Journal of Psychiatry*, 159(12), 2099–2101.
- U. S. Department of Health and Human Services, National Institutes of Health, National Institute of Mental Health. (2015). *Depression* (NIH Publication No. 34625). Retrieved from https://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/publications/depression/depression-book-let_34625.pdf
- Uomoto, J. M., & Esselman, P. C. (1995). Psychiatric disorders and functional disability in outpatients with traumatic brain injuries. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 152(10), 1493–1499.
- Walker, E. A., Gelfand, M. D., Gelfand, A. N., Creed, F., & Katon, W. J. (1996). The relationship of current psychiatric disorder to functional disability and distress in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *General Hospital Psychiatry*, 18(4), 220–229.
- Waraich, P., Goldner, E. M., Somers, J. M., & Hsu, L. (2004). Prevalence and incidence studies of mood disorders: A systematic review of the literature. *Canadian Journal of Psychiatry*, 49, 124–138.

United States Department of Labor

► Job Classification

Units of Nature

► [Ecosystems, Stable and Sustainable](#)

Univariate Analysis

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

Univariate analyses analyze one outcome variable at a time.

Cross-References

► [Multivariate Analysis](#)

References and Further Reading

Campbell, M. J., Machin, D., & Walters, S. J. (2007). *Medical statistics: A textbook for the health sciences* (4th ed.). Chichester: Wiley.

Unprotected Sex

► [Sexual Risk Behavior](#)

Upper Respiratory Infection (Mild)

► [Common Cold](#)

Upper Respiratory Infection (Mild): Cause

► [Common Cold: Cause](#)

Upper Respiratory Infection (Mild): The Stress Factor

► [Common Cold: The Stress Factor](#)

Urothelial Carcinoma of the Bladder

► [Cancer, Bladder](#)

Usability Evaluation

► [Usability Testing](#)

Usability Testing

Colleen Stiles-Shields^{1,2} and Enid Montague³
¹Loyola University, Chicago, IL, USA
²Northwestern University, The University of Chicago, Chicago, IL, USA
³DePaul University, Northwestern University, Chicago, IL, USA

Synonyms

[Usability Evaluation](#)

Definition

Usability testing is a systematic evaluation of a product with the ultimate goal of improving the product's design.

Description

Usability evaluation can be conducted by experts, without or with potential end users; this entry focuses on the latter. Through systematic observation of a planned task or scenario carried out by an actual or potential user, usability testing is a method of evaluation that involves testing users' interactions with a product and system to improve design ([Usability.gov](#)). This process is intended to ensure that a technology is intuitive and easy to use, with the importance ranging from lifesaving (e.g., in use of hospital equipment) to convenience (e.g., saving time on a task; (Tullis and Albert 2008). This process also provides actionable answers to questions that are critical for organizations, researchers, clinicians, etc., which are developing or using products. Usability standards have been developed and validated by the International Standards Organization (ISO), specifying the necessary information to take into account when evaluating the usability of an evaluated product (Tullis and Albert 2008).

In an effort to increase the visibility of software usability, the US National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) developed and validated a Common Industry Format (CIF) for reporting methodologies and results of usability testing (Stanton 2015). The CIF defines a consistent method of carrying out usability tests and makes a distinction between “formative” and “summative” usability tests. Formative tests are typically carried out during the development of a product with the test administrator and participant present, to shape or improve the product. The outputs from a formative test typically include a list of usability problems and recommendations for redesign. In contrast, summative tests are usually carried out at the end of a development stage, with the possible goals of (1) measuring/validating the usability of a product; (2) answering the question: “How usable is this product”; (3) comparing against competitor products or usability metrics; or (4) generating data to support marketing claims about usability. These tests are typically conducted in a usability lab with the participant working alone to minimize confounding variables. The outputs from a summative test typically include empirical, statistical

measures of usability such as success rates, average time to complete a task, and number of errors.

Usability testing is often iterative, applying a “test, fix, test” paradigm to the development of a product. For formative and qualitative evaluation, testing is often completed with a sample of about five users evaluating each new iteration (Lewis 1994; Nielsen and Landauer 1993; Tullis and Albert 2008). For summative and quantitative evaluation, more participants are usually needed to achieve statistical significance. With relatively small sample sizes for each iteration, usability testing provides a systematic evaluation of research questions that require the measurement of human behavior in an interaction with a technology or product (Tullis and Albert 2008).

Data Usability is not measured directly, but metrics of usability are collected. Usability metrics include the time needed to complete a task, level of satisfaction, number of errors, etc. All usability metrics must be: (1) indirectly or directly measurable, and (2) quantifiable (Tullis and Albert 2008). Usability metrics differ from other metrics because usability metrics reveal information about an interaction between a user and a technology. How this interaction is defined is typically measured via five primary attributes of usability: (1) learnability, the ease with which a user can accomplish tasks upon initial encounter; (2) efficiency, how accurately and completely a user can complete tasks in a given time; (3) memorability, how easily and proficiently a user can complete tasks after a delay in use; (4) errors, how frequently a user makes and how easily a user can recover; and (5) satisfaction, how pleasant a user finds a product (Nielsen 1993).

Surveys and Questionnaires When possible, validated surveys should be included during usability tests. A variety of validated surveys exist to measure different measures related to usability, such as ease of use, satisfaction, and usefulness (Davis 1989; Lin et al. 1997; Lund 2001). Surveys can be used after usability tasks, or at the conclusion of the entire test (when appropriate). Not all usability surveys are appropriate for every test objective, so care should be taken to

choose the correct measures. Simply disseminating a survey to a user is not considered usability testing. Rather, testing with users involves developing research questions, tasks, collecting usability measures, observing behavior, and identifying usability problems. Surveys can assist with the process of identifying usability problems, but measures on surveys alone will not direct the researcher to the usability problems.

Limitations Results from usability testing are not meant to be generalizable to other products, users, or contextual situations. The potential for bias in usability testing is a limitation in usability testing, but only when tests are not well designed; most biases are reduced with selecting the appropriate test for the product, sound sampling, and test design. Snyder (2006) argued that biases in usability testing can be minimized, but not eliminated. Therefore, possible biases must be considered in findings (Snyder 2006). Tullis and Albert (2008) generalize usability testing biases into six categories: (1) participants; (2) the types of tasks selected for evaluation; (3) the method of evaluation; (4) the artifact used for testing; (5) the physical environment; and (6) the moderator(s) (Tullis and Albert 2008). These general categories must be considered when interpreting the findings of usability testing and researchers should attempt to address these biases in the design of usability testing studies.

Strengths Metrics resulting from usability testing provide many benefits to the development and understanding of products. First, usability testing adds structure to the design process, highlighting overall issues that could lead to costly repairs (Bevan 2009). Indeed, it removes the need to make design decisions from an uninformed or “gut-feeling” perspective. Further, the metrics demonstrate if improvement is actually made as a result of design changes from one iteration to the next. Second, these data can often be collected quickly, without the need to test a product for several weeks or months (Tullis and Albert 2008). Third, usability testing research questions specify what needs to be learned about the user experience. This specificity can lead to explicit data to address questions of usability. Finally,

evaluating the usability of a product to address any notable issues increases the likelihood the product will be used (Tullis and Albert 2008). Indeed, users are less likely to engage with a product that is difficult or perceived as a mismatch with user needs (Chiu and Eysenbach 2010; Price et al. 2014). Usability testing provides multiple strengths to the design and use of a product.

Cross-References

► Scenario-Based Design

References and Further Reading

- Bevan, N. (2009). “Usability.” *Encyclopedia of database systems* (pp. 3247–3251). New York: Springer.
- Chiu, T. M., & Eysenbach, G. (2010). Stages of use: Consideration, initiation, utilization, and outcomes of an internet-mediated intervention. *BMC Medical Informatics and Decision Making*, 10(73). <https://doi.org/10.1186/1472-6947-10-73>.
- Davis, F. D. (1989). Perceived usefulness, perceived ease of use, and user acceptance of information technology. *MIS Quarterly*, 13(3), 319–340.
- Lewis, J. R. (1994). Sample sizes for usability studies: Additional considerations. *Human Factors*, 36(2), 368–378.
- Lin, H. X., Choong, Y. Y., & Salvendy, G. (1997). A proposed index of usability: A method for comparing the relative usability of different software systems. *Behaviour and Information Technology*, 16(4/5), 267–278.
- Lund, A. M. (2001). Measuring usability with the USE questionnaire. *STC Usability SIG Newsletter*, 8(2), 3–6.
- Nielsen, J. (1993). *Usability engineering*. New York: Academic.
- Nielsen, J., & Landauer, T. K. (1993). A mathematical-model of the finding of usability problems. *Human Factors in Computing Systems*, 206–213.
- Price, M., Yuen, E. K., Goetter, E. M., Herbert, J. D., Forman, E. M., Acerno, R., & Ruggiero, K. J. (2014). mHealth: A mechanism to deliver more accessible, more effective mental health care. *Clinical Psychology & Psychotherapy*, 21(5), 427–436. <https://doi.org/10.1002/cpp.1855>.
- Snyder, C. (2006). *Bias in usability testing*. Paper presented at the Boston Mini-UPA Conference, Natick, MA.
- Stanton, B. (2015). *Industry usability reporting*. Retrieved from <https://www.nist.gov/itl/iad/industry-usability-reporting>.
- Tullis, T., & Albert, B. (2008). *Measuring the user experience: Collecting, analyzing, and presenting usability metrics*. Burlington: Morgan Kaufmann Publishers.
- Usability.gov. Usability testing. *Methods*.

User-Centered Design Approaches

► Scenario-Based Design

Usual Care

Manjunath Harlapur¹ and Daichi Shimbo²

¹Center of Behavioral Cardiovascular Health,
Division of General Medicine, Columbia
University, New York, NY, USA

²Center for Behavioral Cardiovascular Health,
Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Synonyms

Control group of a randomized trial; Usual care arm

Definition

Although the definition of usual care has not been standardized, it can include the routine care received by patients for prevention or treatment of diseases.

Description

In cardiology, the type of routine care can vary by disease type and severity, the practice in which the patient is seen, health care system, and individual physician. Major task forces such from the American College of Cardiology and American Heart Association have published guidelines on the diagnosis, prevention, and treatment of several cardiovascular diseases. These guidelines are based on expert opinion as well as on the strength of the evidence. The purpose of these guidelines is to ensure that these recommendations are disseminated to the practicing cardiology community, as the type and quality of diagnostic, preventive, and treatment strategies widely varies.

In randomized trials, there has been some debate about the advantages and disadvantages of including a usual care arm as a control group. The Declaration of Helsinki states that the “benefits, risks, burdens, and effectiveness of a new method should be tested against those of the best current prophylactic, diagnostic, and therapeutic methods.” In theory, it makes sense that in a randomized controlled trial, the usual care arm should be defined by the “best current” method available. The main advantage, of course, is to test the intervention against what is currently available in evidence-based clinical practice. However, there has been disagreement on what should constitute “usual” care in a randomized controlled trial. First, in the community, usual care can sometimes include suboptimal or older practices. Thus, whether “usual care” should really be changed to “optimal care” or “evidence-based care” remains unclear. Second, the outcome in the usual care arm may be affected by the Hawthorne effect. It is difficult to blind the physicians and the patients to being in the usual care arm. The physicians or the patients may improve or modify their behavior after finding out that they are not in the active intervention arm. Third, because physician treatment patterns vary, the components of the usual care arm and their effects on the outcome are difficult to quantify. Some investigators have advocated for proposing a standardized treatment plan for patients randomized to the usual care arm. Further, differences between the active intervention arm and the usual care arm could be minimized if the usual care arm contains the proposed intervention. Finally, the types and nature of treatment typically given by physicians in the usual care arm could change during the study period.

For example, in the Antihypertensive and Lipid-Lowering Treatment to Prevent Heart Attack Trial (ALLHAT-LLT), 10,355 persons, aged 55 years or older with hypertension and moderately elevated low-density lipoprotein cholesterol levels, were randomized in an unblinded fashion to pravastatin (a statin) or to usual care. During a mean follow-up of 5 years, there was no significant difference in all-cause mortality or coronary heart disease events. ALLHAT-LLT was unique as it was one of the few trials that did not show the beneficial effects of statin therapy on

cardiovascular events in patients who were at risk for future events. The reasons for the lack of difference in outcomes between the two arms are unknown, but the inclusion of a usual care arm as a control group may have played a role. For example, ALLHAT-LLT was conducted during a period that several other randomized trials of statin therapy were published. Thus, over time, physicians could have treated patients in the control arm with statin therapy. In fact, there was a steady increase in the use of statins in the usual care arm: 8.2% at year 2, 17.1% at year 4, and 26.1% at year 6. In addition to statins, other treatments in the usual care arm could have played a role. For example, physicians could have disproportionately recommended non-pharmacologic strategies (i.e., exercise, diet, and weight reduction) to their patients in the usual care arm as well. Given that the types of and intensity of the treatments in the usual care arm were likely variable, ultimately, these reasons remain speculative. Overall, ALLHAT-LLT is one example of the potential limitations, described above that may be associated with a usual care arm.

Cross-References

- [Randomized Clinical Trial](#)
- [Randomized Controlled Trial](#)

References and Further Reading

- ALLHAT Officers and Coordinators for the ALLHAT Collaborative Research Group. (2002). Major outcomes in moderately hypercholesterolemic, hypertensive patients randomized to pravastatin vs usual care: The antihypertensive and lipid-lowering treatment to prevent heart attack trial (ALLHAT-LLT). *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288, 2998–3007.
- Smelt, A. F., et al. (2010). How usual is usual care in pragmatic intervention studies in primary care? An overview of recent trials. *British Journal of General Practice*, 60(576), e305–e318.

Usual Care Arm

- [Usual Care](#)

Uutela, Antti

Born: *March 27, 1946*

Antti Uutela

Department for Lifestyle and Health, National Institute for Health and Welfare, Helsinki, Province of Uusimaa, Finland

Biographical Information



Antti Uutela was born in Tammela, Finland, on March 27, 1946. He is Doctor of Social Sciences (social psychology) from the University of Helsinki. Retired from the position of research professor and department director at the National Public Health Institute (THL) Department of Lifestyle and Participation in 2014, he works currently as course teacher at the Universities of Helsinki and Tampere and as visiting scientist to the National Institute for Health and Welfare. He was professor of public health at the University of Tampere, Finland, 2009–2013. Earlier in his career, he worked as researcher at the Academy of Finland, as lecturer and assistant professor at University of Helsinki, and chief of laboratory at the National Public Health Institute (KTL), respectively.

Uutela was educated as a cognitive social psychologist with a special interest in the link of attitudes and behavior. The latter and interest in practical applications of social psychology led him to start working with health-related

applications in 1975, first at the Department of Social Psychology, and from 1980 at the Department of Public Health of the Helsinki University. In 1986, Uutela established a connection to the National Public Health Institute (KTL) and to the Finrisk Study. This contact was to become a signpost for his later professional career, which also included project membership in the Health 2000 Study.

When accepting the position of chief of the new Health Behavior Research Unit at National Public Health Institute (KTL) in 1994, Uutela started to look for possibilities of establishing a national member society associated with the International Society of Behavioral Medicine. This emerged rapidly, and he became the founding president of the Finnish Section of Behavioral Medicine, a section of Finnish Society of Social Medicine in 1994, the year when the section was also accepted as a full member of ISBM. Uutela has been a member of the Board of the Finnish Section till 2008.

Currently Uutela is member of the Swedish Society of Behavioral Medicine and the Society of Behavioral Medicine. He has been active in the International Society of Behavioral Medicine in several officer positions and organization of international meetings since 1996. He was the president of ISBM from 2004 to 2006, president-elect from 2002 to 2004, immediate past president and chair of the Awards Committee from 2006 to 2008, and chair of the Finance Committee of ISBM (2008–2012). He started his officer career in ISBM by becoming the treasurer of society for the period 1996–2002. On several occasions, he has represented the Finnish Section in the Governing Council. Dr. Uutela has belonged to the Editorial Board of *IJBM* from 1996 onward and been a program committee member for ISBM international congresses in 1996–2006, chair of the local organizing committee (ICBM, Helsinki 2002), and program track chair (1996–2000). He was the poster session chair for the 2008 and 2010 international meetings.

In addition to his work in behavioral medicine, Uutela has been involved in academic research and education, in several national and international committees and expert duties in health promotion,

including program chair of the Nordic Public Health Conference in 2011. He was the president of the Finnish Society of Sport Sciences LTS and a board member of the Foundation for Sport and Health Sciences (LIKES) in 1999–2011.

Major Accomplishments

Upon becoming the unit chief at KTL, Uutela assumed leadership of the working age and senior citizens' lifestyle monitoring research, which produced information for public health planning and evaluation in the general population, its subgroups and regionally. This monitoring system is one of the oldest in the world, an excellent basis for evaluation and planning of national health policy and national and international lifestyle statistics. The system has given rise to similar systems, e.g., in the Baltic countries of Europe. Uutela led the study of several projects funded by the Academy of Finland related to socioeconomic health inequalities and health promotion. From 2001 to 2014, he has participated and led intervention studies in the Good Old Age in Lahti region (GOAL) community intervention framework aimed at improving functional capacity of the aging population and preventing type 2 diabetes. He was in charge of the nutrition intervention study focusing on Finnish male conscripts (2005–2015) and also contributed to the upper primary school nutrition intervention at the National Public Health Institute. Dr. Uutela has more than 350 publications.

During his ISBM presidency, Uutela worked actively to broaden the global basis of the society: Asia, Central and Eastern Europe, and Middle and Southern America were especially targeted. In June 2005, the Governing Council of ISBM gathered in Mexico City in association with the Latin-American Regional Meeting in Behavioral Medicine. The Central European Society of Behavioral Medicine held a network meeting in Targu Mures, Romania, in November 2005. Contacts between ISBM and South America were strengthened during the president's visit to Caracas, Venezuela, in association with the Third Venezuelan Congress of Behavioral Medicine in October 2005. A Thai

Forum of Behavioral Medicine was held in Bangkok in December 2005 as a gateway to the 2006 ICBM there. Uutela with his fellow executives worked toward improvement of the administration and budgeting of ISBM. As an important item, in 2006, special funds in ISBM budgeting were devoted to developmental funds of ISBM to increase chances for global development and participation of behavioral medicine. The highly successful Bangkok ICBM, with Brian Oldenburg

and Marc Gellman as program chairs and Naiphinich Kotchabhakdi as chair of local organization, led to acceptance of the Central-Eastern Society of Behavioral Medicine as an ISBM member and to a change of by-laws regarding individual membership.

Dr. Uutela is a Knight, First Class, of the Order of the Lion of Finland from 2012, and he has been granted with the Golden Cross of Sports and Sports Culture of Finland in 2013.

V

Validity

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Definition

The primary objective of an experimental or non-experimental research study is to obtain a valid estimate of the treatment effect of interest. Validity can be divided into considerations of internal validity and external validity (Rothman et al. 2008).

Both experimental and nonexperimental studies require consideration to be paid to study design, data acquisition, data management, and analysis. If all of these are of optimum quality and there are no imperfections in the study, the study is deemed valid and the correct result is provided. Any imperfections lead to bias of various types.

Internal validity addresses the validity of inferences concerning the source population, and external validity addresses the validity of inferences to the general population, an issue also known as generalizability.

Cross-References

- [Bias](#)
- [Confounding Influence](#)
- [Experimental Designs](#)
- [Generalizability](#)
- [Nonexperimental Designs](#)
- [Statistical Inference](#)

References and Further Reading

- Kleinbaum, D. G., Sullivan, K. M., & Barker, N. D. (2007). *A pocket guide to epidemiology*. New York: Springer.
- Rothman, K. J., Greenland, S., & Lash, T. L. (2008). Validity in epidemiologic studies. In K. J. Rothman, S. Greenland, & T. L. Lash (Eds.), *Modern epidemiology* (3rd ed., pp. 128–147). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

Variability

- [Dispersion](#)
- [Variance](#)

Variance

J. Rick Turner
Campbell University College of Pharmacy and
Health Sciences, Buies Creek, NC, USA

Synonyms

[Variability](#)

Definition

Variance is a sophisticated measure of dispersion that takes into account the position of every data point about a central value, typically the mean. It is therefore a measure of the variability within a data set.

Imagine the following data set: 6, 8, 10, 12, and 14. The mean is the sum of all the values divided by the total number of values, i.e., $50/5 = 10$. How can we find a measure that will capture the totality of the dispersion of the numbers around the mean? An initial thought is to calculate the arithmetic distance each number, or score, lies from the mean, and sum these values. This leads to the following: -4 , -2 , 0 , 2 , and 4 , the sum of which is 0 . That is, the total deviation of the scores from the mean is 0 .

This is actually true for any such calculation for any data set. The mathematics of calculating the mean ensures that the sum of the deviations of any set of scores from its mean is always zero. So, this strategy does not help convey the degree of dispersion around a central value.

However, one extra step takes us to a useful strategy: This involves squaring all of the deviations. Given that a negative number multiplied by another negative number produces a positive value, we now get the following for our original data set: 16 , 4 , 0 , 4 , and 16 , which sum to 40 . This value is known as the sum of squares. If most of the scores in a data set tend to be close to the mean, the sum of squares (the variance) will be

relatively low. The converse is true when most of the scores tend to be relatively further away from the mean. It is therefore possible to have two data sets with identical means and yet very different sums of squares.

One further step is required to calculate the variance: The sum of squares is divided by the value that is one less than the number of scores in the data set. This value is called the degrees of freedom, and is discussed in the entry titled ► [“Degrees of Freedom.”](#) In this case, the sum of squares, 40 , is divided by $(5-1)$, i.e., 4 . The variance is therefore 10 , which is coincidentally the same as the mean in this case.

In most cases, one further step will be taken: the standard deviation will be calculated as the square root of the variance, as discussed in the entry titled ► [“Standard Deviation.”](#)

Cross-References

- [Degrees of Freedom](#)
- [Standard Deviation](#)

Vascular Abnormalities, Function

Jonathan Newman
Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Description

Vascular function can be described as the function of the vascular endothelium, the monolayer of cells lining the intimal surface of the entire circulatory system. The surface of the vascular endothelium in one individual is enormous and has been estimated to contain roughly 3×10^{13} cells, covering the surface of more than six tennis courts. This section will review the cardinal domains of vascular function in cardiovascular

disease; will describe putative pathogenic abnormalities in vascular function, and will briefly review measures to assess vascular function.

The regulation of vascular tone and hemostasis/coagulation are two primary domains of vascular function important in the pathogenesis of cardiovascular disease (CVD). There are other physiologically important vascular functions, including complex metabolic properties and the regulation of vascular permeability, but these domains are outside of this review. The regulation of vascular tone is a delicate balance of opposing vasoconstrictive and vasodilatory functions. The endothelial cells lining the vasculature have vasodilatory and vasoconstrictive properties and synthesize some local active molecules that have both local and systemic effects on vascular tone. The vasoconstrictive and vasodilatory properties of the endothelium that help maintain normal hemodynamics are a crucial portion of the response to local (vascular trauma, compromise) or systemic (congestive heart failure, hypertension) abnormalities. Vasodilation and vasodilatory function is reviewed elsewhere (see ► [“Vasodilation, Vasodilatory Functions”](#)). Vasoconstriction is mediated in part by the endothelium-derived molecules endothelin-1, thromboxane-A₂, and platelet activating factor. Importantly, the vasodilatory and vasoconstrictive properties of the endothelium also have anti- and prothrombotic activities, respectively. This leads to delicate balance of vascular function in which the vasodilatory properties also promote blood fluidity through the inhibition of coagulation, whereas the vasoconstrictive properties of the endothelium promote platelet activation and hemostasis. Thus, the regulation of vascular tone interacts crucially with the other primary domain of vascular function, coagulation, and hemostasis, and in most normal circumstances, the endothelium constitutively expresses an antithrombotic surface to the blood that inhibits platelet aggregation and clot formation. When the endothelium is activated or compromised, however, it is capable of quickly becoming prothrombotic, activating platelets and promoting coagulation.

Given its importance, a number of different modalities have been developed and investigated to assess vascular function.

There are, however, two main categories of assessment.

The first and “gold standard” methodology is coronary angiography (catheterization) to measure coronary circulation with infusion of vasoactive medications, such as adenosine, to measure coronary blood flow and resistance.

However, this technique is invasive, expensive, and not without risk.

Therefore, relying on the principle that endothelial dysfunction is a systemic disorder, vascular function can be measured in other arterial beds in a less invasive manner.

The most widely studied method is flow-mediated dilation (FMD) of the brachial artery using high-resolution ultrasound.

During the measurement of FMD, brachial artery diameter is measured before and after an increase in wall stress induced by reactive hyperemia (increased blood flow) seen following inflation of a sphygmomanometer cuff proximal to the brachial artery for 5 min at high pressures, up to 200 mmHg.

The amount of dilation seen largely reflects endothelial function and the availability of important vasodilatory molecules, such as nitric oxide (NO).

FMD is predictive of the extent and severity of coronary atherosclerosis and is an independent predictor of prognosis.

Brachial artery FMD is also moderately correlated with coronary artery FMD.

However, FMD is operator dependent and requires significant training.

It is also influenced by catecholamines, levels of hormones such as estrogen and progesterone, stress level, and sleep deprivation.

Further, it remains unclear whether the assessment of FMD provides information that is additional to traditional risk factors.

A recent technology that utilizes similar methods of assessing changes following reactive hyperemia is finger-pulse plethysmography.

This technology relies on changes in pulse wave amplitude following reactive hyperemia in the finger.

These changes in amplitude are filtered, amplified, displayed, and stored, and a threshold has been identified that may have utility in identifying endothelial dysfunction within the coronary circulation.

Measurement of both brachial FMD and finger-pulse plethysmography has largely been restricted to research use, but investigation into the potential clinical applications of these modalities is ongoing.

References and Readings

- Gori, T., Parker, J. D., & Manzel, T. (2010). Flow-mediated constriction: Further insight into a new measure of vascular function. *European Heart Journal*, 32, 784–787.
- Lerman, A., & Zeiher, A. M. (2005). Endothelial function: Cardiac events. *Circulation*, 111, 363–368.
- Moncada, S., & Higgs, E. A. (Eds.). (2006). *The vascular endothelium*. New York: Springer.
- Munzel, T., Sinning, C., Post, F., Warnholtz, A., & Schulz, E. (2008). Pathophysiology, diagnosis and prognostic implications of endothelial dysfunction. *Annals of Medicine*, 40, 180–196.

Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor (VEGF)

Alexandra Erdmann and Erin S. Costanzo
Department of Psychiatry, Carbone Cancer Center, University of Wisconsin-Madison, Madison, WI, USA

Definition

Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) is a key regulatory molecule that promotes growth of new blood vessels. VEGF plays an important role in normal physiological processes that require increased vascularization to bring oxygen and nutrients to tissues, including embryonic and

postnatal development and wound healing (Ferrara et al. 2003). VEGF can also contribute to disease processes. For example, upregulation of VEGF has been linked to development of intraocular neovascular syndromes, inflammatory disorders, and brain edema, among others (Ferrara et al. 2003). VEGF also plays a critical role in tumor growth and development. Specifically, VEGF recruits endothelial cells to the tumor site, allowing for growth of capillary networks that enable tumor development by increasing the supply of oxygen and nutrients essential for cell division and growth (Antoni et al. 2006; Ferrara et al. 2003). The vascularization of a tumor in its early stages allows the mass to grow beyond a critical point and to eventually metastasize, or spread through the circulatory system to other tissues and organs (Kerbel 2000). Consequently, anti-VEGF agents have been developed for cancer treatment, with promising results from recent clinical trials (e.g., Escudier et al. 2007).

Of relevance to behavioral medicine, there is evidence that stress can affect VEGF production. Specifically, stimulation of in vitro ovarian, melanoma, and nasopharyngeal tumor cell lines with stress hormones such as norepinephrine, epinephrine, and cortisol leads to increased production of VEGF. Effects appear to occur via β -adrenergic signaling pathways and can be moderated by β -blockers, such as propranolol (Lutgendorf et al. 2003; Yang et al. 2006, 2009). These results suggest a potential pathway by which stress-related psychosocial factors may affect tumor development and progression. New investigations are determining the extent to which β -blockers may be promising therapeutic options (Costanzo et al. 2011). These studies pinpoint a physiological pathway by which behavioral interventions targeting stress may have the potential to improve cancer outcomes.

Cross-References

- [Cancer, types of](#)
- [Cortisol](#)

- Cytokines
- Epinephrine
- Ovarian Cancer
- Stress

References and Readings

- Antoni, M. H., Lutgendorf, S. K., Cole, S. W., Dhabhar, F. S., Sephton, S. E., McDonald, P. G., et al. (2006). The influence of bio-behavioural factors on tumour biology: Pathways and mechanisms. *Nature Reviews Cancer*, 6, 240–248.
- Costanzo, E. S., Sood, A. K., & Lutgendorf, S. K. (2011). Biobehavioral influences on cancer progression. *Immunology and Allergy Clinics of North America*, 31, 109–132.
- Escudier, B., Pluzanska, A., Koralewski, P., Ravaud, A., Bracarda, S., Szczyluk, C., et al. (2007). Bevacizumab plus interferon alfa-2a for treatment of metastatic renal cell carcinoma: A randomized, doubleblind phase III trial. *Lancet*, 370, 2103–2111.
- Ferrara, N., Gerber, H., & LeCouter, J. (2003). The biology of VEGF and its receptors. *Nature Medicine*, 9, 669–676.
- Kerbel, R. (2000). Tumor angiogenesis: Past, present, and the near future. *Carcinogenesis (London)*, 21, 505–515.
- Lutgendorf, S. K., Cole, S., Costanzo, E., Bradley, S., Coffin, J., Jabbari, S., et al. (2003). Stress-related mediators stimulate vascular endothelial growth factor secretion by two ovarian cancer cell lines. *Clinical Cancer Research*, 9, 4514–4521.
- Yang, E. V., Kim, S. J., Donovan, E. L., Chen, M., Gross, A. C., Webster Marketon, J. I., et al. (2009). Norepinephrine upregulates VEGF, IL-8, and IL-6 expression in human melanoma tumor cell lines: Implications for stress-related enhancement of tumor progression. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity*, 23, 267–275.
- Yang, E. V., Sood, A. K., Chen, M., Li, Y., Eubank, T. D., Marsh, C. B., et al. (2006). Norepinephrine up-regulates the expression of vascular endothelial growth factor, matrix metalloproteinase (MMP)-2, and MMP-9 in nasopharyngeal carcinoma tumor cells. *Cancer Research*, 66, 10357–10364.

Vasoconstriction

Leah Rosenberg

Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Definition

Vasoconstriction is the process by which smooth muscle causes contraction and narrowing along the vessel length. The mechanism of vasoconstriction is mediated by intracellular calcium levels and a variety of calcium-binding proteins, particularly calmodulin (Barrett et al. 2010).

Vasoconstriction is a physiologic cardiovascular regulatory mechanism that has essential functions throughout the body. Vasoconstriction may be triggered locally in the vasculature or from afar by upstream mediators in response to a variety of physical and emotional stimuli. It is also an example of autoregulation, when organism homeostasis is maintained through balance of vasoconstriction and vasodilatory mechanisms. While most changes are in response to blood flow of the vascular bed or an intrinsic reaction to stretch, there are many other stimuli that induce acute and chronic changes. In the event of vascular injury or compression, there is local response thought to be mediated by serotonin released by platelets that have accumulated proximate to the injured tissue. In addition to serotonin, there are a variety of other vasoconstrictor proteins that have systemic effects.

Several mechanisms have been developed to measure vasoconstriction in the central as well as peripheral vasculature. These are mostly utilized in research settings and have been put into mainstream clinical practice. However, the noninvasive measurement of vascular tone may soon prove to have indications for identifying patients at increased risk for complications like heart attack and stroke.

Vascular Headache

- Migraine Headache

Cross-References

► [Coronary Vasoconstriction](#)

References and Readings

Barrett, K. E., Barman, S. M., Boitano, S., & Brooks, H. (2010). Chapter 33. Cardiovascular regulatory mechanisms. In K. E. Barrett, S. M. Barman, S. Boitano, & H. Brooks (Eds.), *Ganong's review of medical physiology* (23rd ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill.

Vasodilation, Vasodilatory Functions

Jonathan Newman
Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Definition

Vasodilation refers to the opening or enlargement of blood vessels as a result of relaxation in the smooth muscle cells lining the arteries and to a lesser extent, the veins of the human body. Vasodilation is largely the reverse of the vasoconstriction, which refers to the narrowing of the same blood vessels throughout the human body.

Description

In general, vasodilation leads to a decrease in resistance in that vascular structure and a subsequent increase in blood flow. This relationship can be illustrated by examining the hemodynamic relationships of total peripheral resistance (TPR). Total peripheral resistance is equal to the difference between mean arterial pressure (MAP) and mean venous pressure (MVP), divided by the cardiac output (CO), represented by the equation: $TPR = (MAP - MVP)/CO$. In general, resistance in tubular structures, like blood vessels, is inversely proportional to the radius of that tube (blood vessel) raised to the 4th power

(Resistance = $1/\text{radius}^4$). Therefore, any increase in the radius of a blood vessel produces a significant decrease in the resistance of the vessel in question. In general, vasodilation works to decrease TPR through the actions of local and systemic factors that relax the smooth muscle cells in and around arteries and arterioles, increasing the size of blood vessels through a change in their radius.

Vasodilation plays an important role in the maintenance of body temperature through the vasodilation of superficial blood vessels and the release of heat into the cooler air surface surrounding the human body. Vasodilation is mediated by local or paracrine factors secreted by the endothelial cells themselves such as nitric oxide, bradykinin, potassium, and adenosine diphosphate (a breakdown product of working muscles). Vasodilatory function has an important role in the pathophysiology and treatment of cardiovascular disease and impaired vasodilation, and vasodilatory function has been demonstrated to be an important component of atherosclerotic coronary artery disease (see ► [“Vascular Abnormalities, Function”](#)). Impaired vasodilation is thought to reflect reduced nitric oxide bioavailability. Further, the promotion or stimulation of vasodilation with different cardioactive medications has proven therapeutic benefit in conditions such as mitral regurgitation, aortic regurgitation, hypertension, coronary artery disease, and congestive heart failure.

In general, the stimulation of vasodilation may help to reduce the amount of regurgitant blood flow seen in aortic and mitral regurgitation. Acutely, intravenous vasodilation in these conditions may reduce ventricular pressures and increase forward flow, potentially improving ventricular function. It is not clear if the hemodynamic improvement seen with vasodilator use in regurgitant valvular lesions is due to the reductions in blood pressure alone or through a combination of factors. In heart failure, the use of vasodilators encompasses both arterial and venous vasodilation, typically with agents such as hydralazine (arteriolar dilation) and nitrates (venodilation). The next effect of the use of these two vasodilators is to reduce the amount of

a forward (preload) and “backward” (afterload) pressure on the heart, thereby reducing myocardial work and improving function. The antihypertensive effect of vasodilators is due mostly to the reduction arterial tone and therefore blood pressure. In coronary disease, nitrates can have profound anti-ischemic effects through their actions as both arterio- and venodilators, though the main effects of vasodilation in patients with coronary disease may be through decreasing ventricular filling (preload) which decreases wall tension, cardiac work, and hence myocardial oxygen demand, and may in turn lessen anginal symptoms.

In conclusion, vasodilation and vasodilatory function is an important component in both normal cardiovascular function and in the pathogenesis of disease. As described, the promotion of vasodilation is a useful therapeutic target for the treatment of a wide range of cardiovascular diseases.

Vasopressin

George J. Trachte
Academic Health Center, School of Medicine-
Duluth Campus, University of Minnesota,
Duluth, MN, USA

Background

Vasopressin has numerous behavioral influences such as reinforcing bonding between mating pairs, enhancing memory, and promoting aggressive behavior. It also regulates the osmolarity of blood and influences blood pressure.

Physiological Relevance

Vasopressin is essential for bond formation in a number of species. Mating bonds occurring in normally monogamous rodents are ablated by blockade of brain vasopressin V_{1a} receptors. Vasopressin is suspected to have a similar role in

humans. Memory also is enhanced by vasopressin in a number of species but the physiological relevance to memory remains to be determined in humans. Finally, vasopressin constricts blood vessels to elevate blood pressure and this action is important in hypovolemic states.

Vasopressin is present in all terrestrial animals, presumably to concentrate urine to retain water. Vasopressin absence results in a condition called diabetes insipidus, characterized by excretion of large volumes of dilute urine and the need to consume large quantities of water to survive.

Vasopressin actions are mediated by at least three separate receptors termed V_{1a} , V_{1b} , and V_2 . The V_{1a} receptor mediates vasoconstrictor effects of vasopressin whereas V_2 receptors mediate the renal effects to concentrate urine. Both V_{1a} and V_{1b} receptors are present in the brain and account for behavioral effects of vasopressin. Receptor mutations in both mice and humans have greatly assisted in defining the roles of the receptor subtypes in various vasopressin actions.

Control of Release/Secretion

Vasopressin is synthesized in the supraoptic and paraventricular nuclei of the hypothalamus and is transported to the posterior pituitary gland within magnocellular neurons. It is synthesized as a 168 amino acid preprohormone that is converted to a 145 amino acid prohormone with the 9 amino acids of the amino terminal representing the final vasopressin molecule. Vasopressin is stored in the posterior pituitary and released in response to plasma hyperosmolarity, sexual activity, or hypertension.

Localization/Molecular Biology

The preprovasopressin gene is located on chromosome 20 in humans and expressed in hypothalamic nuclei. Vasopressin receptors are expressed in high levels in brain regions associated with emotional regulation or sensory integration, such as the amygdala and thalamus.

Behavioral Actions

Vasopressin has at least three prominent behavioral actions, including promotion of pair bonding, improvement of memory, and increased aggression toward sexual rivals. The pair bonding data are derived primarily from monogamous rodents who fail to develop pair bonds when vasopressin V_{1a} receptors are blocked. Similar actions are suspected in humans and vasopressin is referred to as a “bonding” hormone. Memory also is improved in humans and other species by vasopressin infusions, whereas, V_{1a} receptor antagonists impair memory. Finally, vasopressin increases aggression in males toward other males with this behavior attributable to the V_{1b} receptor in rodents.

Alterations in V_{1a} receptor levels have been associated with autism and schizophrenia whereas V_{1b} receptor mutations have been associated with excessive aggression in humans. Excessive aggression also correlates with high cerebrospinal vasopressin concentrations.

Ultimately, vasopressin is viewed as a monogamy hormone, enhancing bonding with a mate and children while reinforcing protective or aggressive behaviors.

Vegetative Nervous System

- ▶ [Autonomic Nervous System \(ANS\)](#)

Venereal Diseases

- ▶ [Sexually Transmitted Diseases \(STDs\)](#)

Ventromedial Nucleus

- ▶ [Hypothalamus](#)

Video Applications

- ▶ [Williams LifeSkills Program](#)

Videogames

- ▶ [Health Gaming](#)

Vigilance

- ▶ [Coffee Drinking, Effects of Caffeine](#)

Viral Hepatitis

- ▶ [Hepatitis C and Cognitive Functioning](#)

Virtual Communities

- ▶ [Social Networking Sites](#)

Virtual Humans

- ▶ [Digital Relational Agents](#)

Virtual Reality

Carly M. Goldstein^{1,2} and Stephanie P. Goldstein²

¹The Weight Control and Diabetes Research Center, The Miriam Hospital, Providence, RI, USA

²Warren Alpert Medical School, Brown University, Providence, RI, USA

Synonyms

[Artificial environment](#); [Artificial intelligence](#); [Computerized simulation](#); [VR](#)

Definition

Virtual reality is computer technology that approximates virtual worlds, allowing the user to explore and interact in a reality or a sci-fi environment. It may include augmentative devices like headsets or handsets, but some virtual reality is available solely on a desktop or laptop computer (e.g., *Second Life*). Well-known virtual reality programs include *Sega VR*, *Google Street View*, and *Oculus Rift*. For the purposes of behavioral medicine, virtual reality can be used to foster self-management, provide psychoeducation or exposure exercises, and practice behavioral skills.

Description

Virtual reality can include haptic systems, which send vibrations into the hands or body to create the illusion of grabbing, touching, or movement. The tactile information is frequently called force feedback. Some systems include multi-room displays, allowing the user to walk through space to explore and interact. Hardware that composes the system typically includes gyroscopes, small and large screens, motion sensors, headphones, and processors. Augmented reality, a related term, blends what the user sees in real life with the virtual experience. Social media platforms (e.g., *Instagram*, *Snapchat*, *Facebook*) use augmented reality to create special effects when the user takes a picture or video; these are frequently referred to as filters or face lenses. Virtual worlds consist of a platform that allows individuals to create virtual representations of themselves (i.e., avatars) that are capable of interaction and exploration.

One of the earliest virtual reality systems was the *View-Master*; paper and film cartridges were inserted into a set of viewing goggles. Users could see a still scene mapped on top of their visible world. Another early technology was the *Aspen Movie Map* created at Massachusetts Institute of Technology in 1978; it allowed users to walk through *Aspen, Colorado*, in different seasons. In 1992, Louis Rosenberg created *Virtual Fixtures*, which was a body-like system that enabled

sight, sound, and touch for the US Air Force. These early developments informed the virtual realities available today.

There are several modern-day VR platforms such as *PlayStation VR*, *HTC VR*, and *Oculus Rift*. *Oculus Rift* has received attention for its quality and value (as it was purchased for \$2 billion by Facebook to support its development). *Oculus Rift* was released on March 28, 2016, and consists of a headset display with position tracking system and 3D audio capability with headphones. It is primarily used for gaming and entertainment and has had no formal use in the healthcare industry yet.

Virtual reality is used in medical training, armed forces training, marketing, fine arts, video games, and entertainment. Surgeons have used virtual reality to practice risky operations and to model intricate vascular structures. It is also used in occupational health to safely test hazardous processes, like disease containment.

In a patient population, virtual reality has been most widely used to facilitate exposure in treatments of anxiety (Powers and Emmelkamp 2008). Virtual reality has also been used, although less extensively, in medical settings to assist patients in coping with medical procedures and operations (Robertson et al. 2017). In the developing field of neurorehabilitation, it has been evaluated as a modality for enhancing cognitive and motor performance in patients with cerebral palsy, stroke, and traumatic brain injury using force feedback and practicing a variety of activities in low-risk, naturalistic environments (Dascal et al. 2017). This is an especially valuable application as the world's population continues to age and be affected by cognitive impairment, which can limit independence and quality of life.

Virtual reality has been implemented in hospital settings to facilitate distraction among patients with acute and chronic pain (Garcia-Palacios et al. 2015; Murray et al. 2009; van Twillert et al. 2007). Hopefully, similar interventions can be translated to aid healthcare providers in treating opioid abuse and dependence in other patients with chronic pain (Wiederhold et al. 2014). Virtual reality has also been used with cancer patients to reduce cancer-related psychological symptoms

during chemotherapy and other painful procedures with children and adults (Chirico et al. 2016). Research has evaluated several uses of virtual reality to address obesity and disordered eating through simulations that target body image, exposure to cues that trigger binge eating, and practice making healthy eating decisions (Marco et al. 2013; Riva et al. 2000; Thomas et al. 2015). There have also been preliminary investigations on the use of virtual reality to facilitate cue exposure in conjunction with cognitive behavioral treatment for tobacco (Culbertson et al. 2012) and alcohol use disorders (Lee et al. 2009).

As evidenced by a growing body of literature in this area, there are several advantages to using virtual reality in behavioral medicine that include the power to control stimulus presentation and response measurement, safe assessment of hazardous situations, generalization of learning, standardization of protocol, and increased user participation (Schultheis and Rizzo 2001). There are also presently numerous limitations to using virtual reality in behavioral medicine. First, virtual reality systems are very costly to make, and the necessary costs typically far exceed funds provided by many departments or grant mechanisms. Additionally, behavioral medicine professionals are rarely trained in how to communicate with developers, who are usually completely naïve to behavioral medicine concepts. It may also be difficult to disseminate a large volume of hardware for an adequately powered research trial and many research trials can suffer from methodological flaws (McCann et al. 2014). Conversely, virtual reality that solely uses desktop computers may overwhelm patients with more impressive expectations if their expectations are not managed at the start of use. Finally, patients may have limited exposure to using the necessary technology if specialized hardware is a part of the system. Future virtual reality interventions for behavioral medicine topic areas should be feasible, cost-efficient, and innovative. These interventions should build on the literature of successful applications in anxiety disorders and medical training.

Virtual reality is poised to have a significant impact on the field of behavioral medicine and patient care, but current progress has been

thwarted by costs and a lack of history of developers and behavioral medicine specialists' collaboration. Forays into behavioral medicine thus far have been fruitful, and future advances should model the successes seen in virtual reality to other applications like surgery, gaming, and occupational health. Given the recent commercial availability of Oculus Rift, Facebook's acquisition of the company for a large sum, and the virtual/augmented reality being built into commonplace technologies (e.g., smartphone) and marketing campaigns, the role of virtual reality is expanding not only in everyday life but also in chronic disease management and patient care. Virtual reality is becoming a part of common popular culture, and this technology acceptance can be applied to helping communities become healthier and thrive.

Cross-References

- [Behavior Therapy](#)
- [Digital Health Coaching](#)
- [Digital Relational Agents](#)
- [Online Therapy and E-Counseling](#)
- [Self-Management](#)
- [Telehealth](#)

References and Further Reading

- Burdea Grigore, C., & Coiffet, P. (1994). *Virtual reality technology*. London: Wiley-Interscience.
- Chirico, A., Lucidi, F., De Laurentis, M., Milanese, C., Napoli, A., & Giordano, A. (2016). Virtual reality in health system: Beyond entertainment. A mini-review on the efficacy of VR during cancer treatment. *Journal of Cellular Physiology*, 231(2), 275–287.
- Culbertson, C. S., Shulenberg, S., De La Garza, R., Newton, T. F., & Brody, A. L. (2012). Virtual reality cue exposure therapy for the treatment of tobacco dependence. *Journal of Cyber Therapy and Rehabilitation*, 5(1), 57–64.
- Dascal, J., Reid, M., IsHak, W. W., Spiegel, B., Recacho, J., Rosen, B., & Danovitch, I. (2017). Virtual reality and medical inpatients: A systematic review of randomized, controlled trials. *Innovations in Clinical Neuroscience*, 14(1–2), 14–21.
- García-Palacios, A., Herrero, R., Vizcaíno, Y., Belmonte, M. A., Castilla, D., Molinari, G., . . . , & Botella, C. (2015). Integrating virtual reality with activity

- management for the treatment of fibromyalgia: Acceptability and preliminary efficacy. *Clinical Journal of Pain*, 31(6), 564–572.
- Gigante, M. A. (1993). Virtual reality: Definitions, history and applications. In R. A. Earnshaw, M. A. Gigante, & H. Jones (Eds.), *Virtual reality systems* (pp. 3–14). London: Academic.
- Lee, S. H., Han, D. H., Oh, S., Lyoo, I. K., Lee, Y. S., Renshaw, P. F., & Lukas, S. E. (2009). Quantitative electroencephalographic (qEEG) correlates of craving during virtual reality therapy in alcohol-dependent patients. *Pharmacology, Biochemistry, and Behavior*, 91(3), 393–397.
- Marco, J. H., Perpina, C., & Botella, C. (2013). Effectiveness of cognitive behavioral therapy supported by virtual reality in the treatment of body image in eating disorders: One year follow-up. *Psychiatry Research*, 209(3), 619–625.
- Mazuryk, T., & Gervautz, M. (1996). *Virtual reality, history, applications, technology and future* (pp. 1–72). Vienna: Institute of Computer Graphics, Vienna University of Technology.
- McCann, R. A., Armstrong, C. M., Skopp, N. A., Edwards-Stewart, A., Smolenski, D. J., June, J. D., . . . , & Reger, G. M. (2014). Virtual reality exposure therapy for the treatment of anxiety disorders: An evaluation of research quality. *Journal of Anxiety Disorders*, 28(6), 625–631.
- Murray, C. D., Pettifer, S., Howard, T., Patchick, E., Caillette, F., & Murray, J. (2009). Virtual solutions to phantom problems: Using immersive virtual reality to treat phantom limb pain. In C. D. Murray (Ed.), *Amputation, prosthesis use, and phantom limb pain* (pp. 175–196). New York: Springer.
- Parsons, T. D., & Rizzo, A. A. (2008). Affective outcomes of virtual reality exposure therapy for anxiety and specific phobias: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Behavior Therapy and Experimental Psychiatry*, 39(3), 250–261.
- Powers, M. B., & Emmelkamp, P. M. (2008). Virtual reality exposure therapy for anxiety disorders: A meta-analysis. *Journal of Anxiety Disorders*, 22(3), 561–569.
- Riva, G., Bacchetta, M., Baruffi, M., Rinaldi, S., Vincelli, F., & Molinari, E. (2000). Virtual reality-based experimental cognitive treatment of obesity and binge-eating disorders. *Clinical Psychology & Psychotherapy*, 7(3), 209–219.
- Robertson, A., Khan, R., Fick, D., Robertson, W. B., Gunaratne, D. R., Yapa, S., . . . , & Rajan, R. (2017). *The effect of virtual reality in reducing preoperative anxiety in patients prior to arthroscopic knee surgery: A randomised controlled trial*. In: 2017 I.E. 5th international conference on serious games and applications for health (SeGAH), IEEE, Perth, pp. 1–7.
- Schultheis, M. T., & Rizzo, A. A. (2001). The application of virtual reality technology in rehabilitation. *Rehabilitation Psychology*, 46(3), 296–311.
- Stone, R. (2001). Haptic feedback: A brief history from telepresence to virtual reality. In R. Murray-Smith (Ed.), *Haptic human-computer interaction* (Vol. 2058, pp. 1–16). Heidelberg: Springer.
- Thomas, J. G., Spitalnick, J. S., Hadley, W., Bond, D. S., & Wing, R. R. (2015). Development of and feedback on a fully automated virtual reality system for online training in weight management skills. *Journal of Diabetes Science and Technology*, 9(1), 145–148. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1932296814557326>.
- van Twillert, B., Bremer, M., & Faber, A. W. (2007). Computer-generated virtual reality to control pain and anxiety in pediatric and adult burn patients during wound dressing changes. *Journal of Burn Care & Research*, 28(5), 694–702.
- Wiederhold, B. K., & Wiederhold, M. D. (2005). *Virtual reality therapy for anxiety disorders: Advances in evaluation and treatment*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.
- Wiederhold, B. K., Riva, G., & Wiederhold, M. D. (2014). How can virtual reality interventions help reduce prescription opioid drug misuse? *Cyberpsychology, Behavior and Social Networking*, 17(6), 331–332.

Visceral Adiposity

► Central Adiposity

Visceral Nervous System

► Autonomic Nervous System (ANS)

Visible Difference

► Body Image and Appearance-Altering Conditions

Visualization

► Guided Imagery

Vital Exhaustion

Douglas Carroll
School of Sport and Exercise Sciences,
The University of Birmingham, Edgbaston,
Birmingham, UK

Definition

Vital exhaustion is a prodromal constellation of symptoms including physical exhaustion and feelings of hopelessness preceding major coronary heart disease events such as myocardial infarction.

Description

Vital exhaustion was a concept first proposed by Appels some 25 years ago. Appels argued that exhaustion was not simply premonitory to cardiac events, reflecting established pathology and representing early warnings, the historic clinical view. Rather, he contended that the syndrome of vital exhaustion was casually related to subsequent events. The causal pathway was hypothesized to be the neuroendocrine mechanisms typically invoked as the link between psychosocial exposures and heart disease. Support for a causal role for vital exhaustion was gleaned from a number of subsequent observational epidemiological studies demonstrating an association between measure of exhaustion and subsequent all-cause mortality and cardiac disease mortality and morbidity. Unfortunately, such evidence is necessarily only indicative and provides insufficient surety of the direction of causation. Reverse causation, where heart disease that has not yet been formally diagnosed leads to symptoms of exhaustion, must remain a possibility. A growing literature illustrates how the inflammatory processes implicated in atherosclerosis may contribute to feeling of fatigue and depression. In addition, confounding by some unmeasured or poorly measured variable in these observational studies cannot be wholly dismissed.

The proper test of causation is intervention: a randomized control trial, whether patients are randomly allocated to a exhaustion treatment invention or to a condition in which no such treatment is available. Some 5 years ago, Appels and his colleagues reported the outcome of such an intervention. Participants were over 700 cardiac disease patients who had undergone successful angioplasty, a procedure for the surgical repair of block coronary arteries. Patients were randomized to a 6-month exhaustion intervention comprising among other things relaxation training and stress management, or to usual care. At the 18-month, but not the 6-month, follow-up, fewer intervention than usual care patients reported feeling exhausted and fewer were depressed. However, the intervention did not reduce the likelihood of patients having a recurrent cardiac disease event.

Cross-References

- [Depression](#)
- [Heart Disease](#)

References and Further Reading

- Appels, A., & Mulder, P. (1989). Fatigue and heart disease. The association between “vital exhaustion” and past, present, and future heart disease. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 33, 727–738.
- Appels, A., Bar, F., van der Pol, G., Erdman, R., Assman, M., Trijsburg, W., et al. (2005). Effects of treating exhaustion in angioplasty patients on new coronary events. Results of the randomised Exhaustion Intervention Trial (EXIT). *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 67, 217–223.
- Carroll, D., Phillips, A. C., & Macleod, J. (2006). Intervening for exhaustion. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 61, 9–10.

Vital Status

- [Mortality](#)

Vitality

Christiane A. Hoppmann¹ and Denis Gerstorf²

¹Department of Psychology, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, Canada

²Institute of Psychology, Humboldt University, Berlin, Germany

Definition

The concept of active life expectancy revolves around the fundamental question of how many of the years added to life through advances in average life expectancy are spent in reasonably good health. A comprehensive and multifaceted view of health considers a variety of different physical, mental, and psychological health aspects.

Description

Overview

Human life expectancies have almost doubled over the last century. As a result, an unprecedented number of individuals can expect to reach old age. This historically new situation challenges us to better understand the factors that may contribute to vitality in old age. This entry aims to shed light on two important questions: First, it introduces the concept of active life expectancy to address the fundamental question of how many of those years added to life are spent in reasonably good health. Second, it argues for a comprehensive multifaceted view on vitality in old age that takes into account important psychological variables, including well-being, social engagement, and cognitive functioning. It concludes by alluding to key challenges that this line of work has to confront in the future.

Active Life Expectancy

Recent increases in human life expectancies and longevity are a great achievement, due to many different factors including improved public health and medical advances in Western countries

(► [Longevity](#)). Those demographic trends also pose important societal challenges such as the question whether the gains in quantity of life are accompanied by gains in (or at least maintenance of) quality of life. A central construct in this regard is active (or healthy) life expectancy, which is frequently defined as the number of years individuals can expect to live without chronic disability (Crimmins et al. 1996). Research using this concept has advanced our knowledge regarding segments of the population who benefit or who are excluded from such trends. This line of inquiry has also helped put some of the earlier enthusiasm about increasing longevity into perspective. For example, although women can typically expect to live longer than men, they often spend a greater portion of their lives in disabling conditions. Likewise, individuals with higher socioeconomic status do not only live longer, but they also enjoy old age in better health than individuals with lower socioeconomic status. Moreover, there are notable racial differences in active life expectancies with African Americans typically spending more years with disabilities than non-Blacks in the United States (Crimmins et al. 1996). More generally, research on active life expectancy has revealed important insights into which demographic strata can be expected to spend the years added to life in reasonably good health and which strata do not.

Apart from identifying key population-level predictors of vitality, this line of research has also fueled important discussions about big-picture trends. Different propositions have been put forward regarding future changes in morbidity-mortality dynamics. The probably most prominent example is the compression of morbidity hypothesis (Fries 1980), according to which increases in active life expectancy occur at a faster rate than increases in life expectancy. As a consequence, the years people spend in ill health are compressed into an increasingly shorter period at the very end of life. Conversely, other scholars have proposed that further increases in longevity would result in increased disease prevalence, ultimately leading to an expansion of morbidity (Gruenberg 1977). Thirty years later, the verdict is still out. It appears as if individual perceptions

of the years spent in good health are indeed increasing at the population level. In contrast, trends for the years spent in disability differ by severity. Years spent with severe disabilities are declining, whereas years spent with less severe forms are on the rise (Christensen et al. 2009). More generally, some researchers are skeptical about the possibility to successfully compress morbidity (e.g., Crimmins et al. 1996) whereas others report promising findings regarding delayed disabilities among more recently born cohorts of older adults (e.g., Manton et al. 2008). Taken together, the epidemiological literature has posed big-picture questions regarding how increasing longevity impacts disease prevalence and has raised awareness to tremendous heterogeneity in how well older adults from different backgrounds can expect to live their last years of life.

Psychological Indicators of Vitality

A comprehensive understanding of vitality in old age fundamentally depends on how health is defined. Specifically, it has been proposed that the time is due to move away from disease-centered definitions of health (Ryff and Singer 2000). For example, the WHO defines health as “a state of complete physical, mental and social well-being” (Official Records of the World Health Organization 1948). This definition dovetails with notions of successful aging that emphasize the importance of older adults maintaining their cognitive and physical functioning as well as actively engaging with life (Rowe and Kahn 1997). To provide a more holistic account of health with aging, social scientists have thus embarked on a search for psychological factors that contribute to a more comprehensive understanding of vitality in old age that goes beyond the mere absence of disease. For example, it has been shown that emotional well-being is closely linked with physical health (Pressman and Cohen 2005). In a similar vein, social relationships seem to be associated with older adults’ physical and mental health (Hoppmann and Gerstorf 2009), and associations between cognitive functioning and physical health in old age are a well-established research finding (Schaie 2005). Hence, psychological

research promises to broaden the scope of what constitutes vitality in old age by pointing to the important role of such diverse factors as emotional well-being, motivational processes, and cognition.

In addition to such normative accounts of vitality, there is also a rich literature on interindividual differences in self-regulatory processes. Importantly, this line of research takes into account that older adults may be able to maintain their well-being when confronted with losses in functional health. For example, it has been shown that strategies of selective optimization with compensation, self-efficacy, and control processes are positively associated with health in old age (e.g., Baltes and Smith 2004; Seeman et al. 1999; Wrosch et al. 2004).

Identifying key psychological factors that distinguish older adults who spend their final years in reasonably good health from those who suffer from disease is important because it allows us to move beyond a recognition of well-established risk factors of late-life disability (e.g., being male, low socioeconomic status, member of a minority) that are in fact unalterable. Hence, recognizing that psychological constructs are key ingredients of or central contributors to vitality in old age may offer important insight into factors that may be amenable to intervention and where growth might be possible until old age (Ryff and Singer 2000).

Future Directions

In a final step, we would like to highlight two key societal challenges that are intrinsically linked with the concept of vitality. First, it is going to become increasingly important to recognize the practical implications of (changes in) vitality. For example, many developed countries currently face a heated debate about whether or not to increase mandatory retirement age. Importantly, it seems as if more flexible and individualized retirement decisions are necessary so as to accommodate the specific needs of the aging population. Some older adults may simply not be well enough to continue working beyond age 65, whereas other

65+ year olds may benefit from staying in the work force for longer and would profit from work-related cognitive stimulation and social participation (Pinquart and Schindler 2007).

Second, it is well possible that positive secular trends that have repeatedly been reported for earlier points in life such as retirement age may be offset or even reversed in more advanced ages or at the end of life. In fact, there is empirical evidence that later-born cohorts may experience steeper end-of-life declines in cognitive abilities than earlier-born cohorts (Gerstorf et al. 2011). One way to interpret such results is that members of later-born cohorts may have survived diseases that would have resulted in death among members of earlier-born cohorts. However, the previously higher levels of (cognitive) functioning were not maintained for this manufactured survival time (Olshansky et al. 2002). More generally, it remains unclear if it will ultimately be possible to successfully compress morbidity into increasingly shorter time periods at the end of life. We have to keep in mind that humans were not designed to enjoy such long post-reproductive lives as it is often the case today and that chance plays a much greater role in determining health during the post-reproductive as compared to the reproductive years of life (Finch and Kirkwood 2000).

Cross-References

► [Longevity](#)

References and Readings

- Baltes, P. B., & Smith, J. (2004). Lifespan psychology: From developmental contextualism to developmental biocultural co-constructivism. *Research in Human Development, 1*, 123–144.
- Christensen, K., Doblhammer, G., Rau, R., & Vaupel, J. W. (2009). Ageing populations: The challenges ahead. *Lancet, 374*, 1196–1208.
- Crimmins, E. M., Hayward, M. D., & Saito, Y. (1996). Differentials in active life expectancy in the older population of the United States. *Journals of Gerontology: Series B, Psychological Sciences and Social Sciences, 51*, 111–120.
- Finch, C. E., & Kirkwood, T. B. L. (2000). *Chance, development, and aging*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Fries, J. F. (1980). Aging, natural death, and the compression of morbidity. *New England Journal of Medicine, 303*, 1369–1370.
- Gerstorf, D., Ram, N., Hoppmann, C. A., Willis, S. L., & Schaie, K. W. (2011). Cohort differences in cognitive aging and terminal decline in the Seattle Longitudinal Study. *Developmental Psychology, 47*(4), 1026–1041.
- Gruenberg, E. F. (1977). The failures of success. *Milbank Memorial Fund Quarterly/Health and Society, 55*, 3–24.
- Hoppmann, C., & Gerstorf, D. (2009). Spousal interrelations in old age – A mini review. *Gerontology, 55*(449), 459.
- Manton, K. G., Gu, X., & Lowrimore, G. R. (2008). Cohort changes in active life expectancy in the U.S. elderly population: Experience from the 1982–2004 national long-term care study. *Journals of Gerontology: Series B, Psychological Sciences and Social Sciences, 63*, 269–281.
- Olshansky, S. J., Hayflick, L., & Carnes, B. A. (2002). Position statement on human aging. *Journals of Gerontology Series A: Medical and Biological Sciences, 57A*, B292–B297.
- Pinquart, M., & Schindler, I. (2007). Changes of life satisfaction in the transition to retirement: A latent-class approach. *Psychology and Aging, 22*, 442–455.
- Pressman, S. D., & Cohen, S. (2005). Does positive affect influence health? *Psychological Bulletin, 131*, 925–971.
- Rowe, J. W., & Kahn, R. L. (1997). Successful aging. *The Gerontologist, 37*, 433–440.
- Ryff, C. D., & Singer, B. (2000). Interpersonal flourishing: A positive health agenda for the new millennium. *Personality and Social Psychology Review, 4*, 30–44.
- Schaie, K. W. (2005). *Developmental influences on intelligence: The Seattle longitudinal study*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Seeman, T. E., Unger, J. B., McAvay, G., & Mendes de Leon, C. F. (1999). Self-efficacy beliefs and perceived declines in functional ability: MacArthur Studies of Successful Aging. *Journals of Gerontology: Series B, Psychological Sciences and Social Sciences, 54B*, P214–P222.
- World Health Organization. (1948). *Official records*, No. 2. New York.
- Wrosch, C., Schulz, R., & Heckhausen, J. (2004). Health stresses and depressive symptomatology in the elderly: A control-process approach. *Current Directions in Psychological Science, 13*, 17–20. American Psychological Society.

VO₂max Test

► [Maximal Exercise Stress Test](#)

Vocal Group

► Singing and Health

Vocational Assessment

Jeong Han Kim
Department of Clinical Counseling and Mental
Health, Texas Tech University Health Science
Center, Lubbock, TX, USA

Synonyms

Career assessment; Career evaluation; Vocational
evaluation

Definition and Description

Vocational assessment is a continuing process for systematically gathering and synthesizing valid information of the individuals' needs that is relevant to the career goal. Although incidental and casual sources of data have influence, it is a proactive and intentional activity. To provide a brief but sufficient introduction to vocational assessment, this chapter addresses (1) unique characteristics of vocational assessment, (2) assessment types, (3) labor market analysis, (4) assessor's role and function, (5) disability accommodation, and (6) multicultural concerns.

Characteristics of Vocational Assessment

The unique characteristic of vocational assessment is that the constructs relevant to vocational assessments are multidimensional and include both innate (e.g., personality, intelligence) and learned dispositions (e.g., value, interest, character, transferable skills). When the assessment is used to determine service eligibility or the

qualification for a job, the nature of vocational assessment is diagnostic. On the other hand, when it used for general career guidance and planning, the nature of assessment is more evaluative. Evaluation and assessment often used interchangeably; however, in specific, two terms are not identical. The term evaluation has a broader meaning with the emphasis on the collaborative relationship, while assessment is often used for the purpose of diagnosis.

Types of Vocational Assessment

Vocational assessment can be classified broadly into the following type: (1) achievement and intelligence, (2) aptitude test, (3) personality, (4) career interest, (5) work values, and (6) transferable skills.

First, in achievement and intelligence, norm-referenced standardized tests are often used as it provides an individual's achievement/intelligence in comparison to the norm population. Assessment in this area includes the Wide Range Achievement Test, Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale, Woodcock-Johnson Intelligence Test, and so on.

Second, aptitude tests measure one's capability to perform a certain task without pre-owned knowledge and often include General Aptitude Test Battery (GATB), the Minnesota Clerical Test, and Career Ability Placement Survey.

Third, personality assessment provide information regarding a pattern of an individual behavior in a certain situation. For example, it provides supplemental information (e.g., social/peer relationship, problem solving style), but the need must be carefully determined depending on the client's situation.

Fourth, career interest test is often built based on career theory such as Holland's Hexagon (Holland 1997) that include Realistic (do-ers), Investigative (thinker), Artistic (creator), Social (helper), Enterprising (persuader), and Conventional (organizer). Results from career interest test are often associated with the six occupational areas in terms of designing career plan and

intervention. Commonly used career interest inventories are Career Assessment Inventory, Career Occupational Preference System Inventory, the Strong-Campbell Interest Inventory, and the Minnesota Vocational Interest Inventory.

Fifth, work values are traits and qualities that an individual search in the career (Zunker 2016) and reflects individual's attitude, beliefs, and feelings in regard to specific occupation (Ros et al. 1999).

Sixth, transferrable skills are developed through various life experiences such as previous career, education, and social interaction and often include skills in communication, time management, dependability, problem-solving, and conflict resolution. Transferrable skills are important in that those skills can be used in various job setting (Bolton and Parker 2001).

In addition, work sample and situational assessment are often administered for an individual with disabilities. Work samples are designed to provide a reference point to objectively evaluate individual's capability to perform a certain job task. Examples include, but not limited to, assessment of client performance level in dexterity, spatial perception, mechanical assembly skills, physical and mobility training, and eye-hand-foot coordination. Situational assessment is given in a real employment setting, allowing an evaluator can gather on-the-job related data. Work samples and situation assessment are relatively more often used with persons with disabilities (Szymanski and Parker 2010).

Labor Market Information

Results from the vocational assessment often related to the labor market information. Three most common labor market databases are Occupational Information Network (O'NET), *Dictionary of Occupational Titles* (DOT), and *Occupational Handbook* (OOT). These database offer information, but not limited to, on the job task/description, technology skills, knowledge, work activities, work context, qualification, wage, projected growth, and job opening.

Role and Function

Various roles and functions are required. First of all, a test administer should be aware of issues relevant to test anxiety. Being professionally considerate so that a client can freely show their assets, strengths, and weakness at their best is important. Such competency is particularly important in semi- or unstructured assessment as in some cases an individual is not able to make a sound judgment on their capacity and interest. In regard to that, basic counseling skills such as probing, listening, and attending skills are always important. In a situation when families or others are involved in vocational assessment, facilitating communication is a function expected to test administered. Although assessment is often used for the purpose of diagnosis and evaluation of certain disposition, assessment itself also has therapeutic function. It is because assessment increases self-awareness, important in career development. Besides these skills, abilities to become accurate, constructive, objective, comprehensive, and considerate are important qualities recommended for career assessment.

Disability Accommodation

Equity is important in the assessment and requires that appropriate assessment be available to all individuals with disability in accessible manner. It further indicates the importance of focusing on ability, not the disability, of an individual. Disability accommodation is important in ensuring equity and often includes extended time, alternative format (reading instruction instead of written instruction), letting an individual answer verbally depending on their disability types, and modifications of standardized test. As equitable does not mean ideal, it is important to individualize test accommodation. To do so, vocational assessor and evaluator need to understand the physical and functional aspects of disability in relation to assessment. The use of accommodation also needs to be taken into consideration for proper interpretation (Ekstrom and Smith 2002).

Multicultural Concerns

Cultural competency is important in that a construct tested in the assessment may have different meaning across cultures. Although the use of instrument with construct equivalence and cross-cultural validity is important, in reality, it is not always easy to prepare such an instrument. At minimum to be culturally responsive, test administrators are recommended to improve professional competencies in their cultural knowledge, self-awareness on their own bias and prejudice (Sue and Sue 2013), and culturally relevant skills. As culture is not a fixed-term and changes over time, there is no endpoint in the development of cultural competency. It is ideal for test administrator to see cultural competence from a virtue perspective and to deliver their best effort in a consistent manner.

Cross-References

► [Readiness for Return-to-Work \(RRTW\)](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bolton, B. F., & Parker, R. M. (2001). *Handbook of measurement and evaluation in rehabilitation*. Austin: PRO-ED, Inc..
- Ekstrom, R. B., & Smith, D. K. (2002). *Assessing individuals with disabilities in educational, employment, and counseling settings*. Washington: American Psychological Association.
- Holland, J. L. (1997). *Making vocational choices: A theory of vocational personalities and work environments* (3rd ed.). Odessa: Psychological Assessment Resources.
- Ros, M., Schwartz, S. H., & Surkiss, S. (1999). *Basic individual values, and the meaning of work*. *Applied Psychology-An International Review*, 48, 49–71.
- Sue, W. D., & Sue, D. (2013). *Counseling the culturally diverse: Theory and practice*. New Jersey: Wiley.
- Szymanski, E. M., & Parker, R. M. (2010). *Work and disability*. Austin: PRO-ED, Inc..
- Zunker, V. G. (2016). *Career counseling: A holistic approach*. Belmont: Brooks/Cole.

Vocational Evaluation

► [Vocational Assessment](#)

Vocational Rehabilitation

Michiel F. Reneman¹ and Douglas P. Gross²

¹Department of Rehabilitation Medicine, University of Groningen, University Medical Center Groningen, Groningen, The Netherlands

²Department of Physical Therapy, University of Alberta, Edmonton, AB, Canada

Definition

Vocational rehabilitation (VR) is defined as a multiprofessional evidence-based approach to optimize work participation that includes various services and activities provided in different settings to working age individuals with health-related impairments, limitations, or restrictions in work functioning (Escorpizo et al. 2011). While this definition is comprehensive, it is also quite complex. In simple language, VR can also be defined as “anything that helps someone with a health problem to stay at, return to, and remain in work” (Waddell et al. 2008b).

Description

A comprehensive review of VR for workers with common health problems highlighted that VR for workers with chronic musculoskeletal pain conditions (CMPC) can be effective for promoting work outcomes (Waddell et al. 2008b). Work outcomes may be very diverse and includes staying at work, modified work, temporarily or permanently working, returning to work (RTW) or a combination of these. For years the strongest evidence was on low back pain, but recent evidence shows that the same principles apply to most common CMPC such as neck, shoulder, or arm pain/complaints. It was also demonstrated that from a societal perspective, VR in patients with CMSC has a good business case, indicating that society as a whole may benefit from investment in VR. Although estimates vary, a ratio of 1:5 was mentioned: for every currency unit invested in VR, the societal return will be fivefold (Waddell et al. 2008b). An

overview of evidence of effectiveness for VR for other health conditions is outside the scope of this entry. Effective principles, as described below, however, may also apply to VR in other health conditions.

VR principles and interventions are fundamentally the same for work related and other comparable (nonwork related) health conditions, irrespective of whether they are classified as injury, condition, or disease. Healthcare has a key role, but VR is not a matter of healthcare alone. Employers also have a key role – there is strong evidence that proactive company approaches to sickness, including temporary provision of modified work and accommodations, are effective and cost-effective (Franché et al. 2005), although there is less evidence on VR in small and medium enterprises. Overall, the evidence shows that effective VR depends on work- and worker-focused healthcare and accommodating workplaces; both are necessary as they are interdependent and must be coordinated simultaneously (Waddell et al. 2008b).

Stepped-Care Approach and Differential Care

The concept of early intervention is central to vocational rehabilitation, because the longer a worker is off work, the greater the obstacle to return to work and the more challenging vocational rehabilitation becomes. It is simpler, more effective, and cost-effective to prevent people with a health condition from developing long-term sickness absence. A “stepped-care approach” starts with monodisciplinary, low-intensity, low-cost interventions which will be adequate for most sick or injured workers (e.g., physical therapy, education, RTW coaching), and provides progressively more intensive and structured interventions for those who need additional help to return to work, such as multidisciplinary VR. This approach allocates resources most appropriately and efficiently to meet individual and payers’ needs. Effective VR depends on communication and coordination between the key

players – particularly the individual, healthcare, and the workplace.

Given that VR is about helping people with health problems stay at, return to, and/or remain in work, the question is how to make sure that everyone of working age receives the help they require. This should start from the needs of people with health problems at various stages; build on the evidence about effective interventions; and consider potential resources and the practicalities of how these interventions might be delivered. From this perspective, there are three broad types of workers, who are differentiated mainly by duration out of work, and who have correspondingly different needs: workers who are absent short term (less than 6 weeks), intermediate (between 6 weeks and 12 months), and long term (more than 3 months) (Franché et al. 2005). There is also a fourth type of worker that has recently started to gain attention: those workers who manage to stay at work despite a health condition (de Vries et al. 2012).

For workers with subacute disorders and sick leave for more than 4–8 weeks, multidisciplinary VR programs in occupational settings may be an option to offer to workers who need additional help to return to work. However, within the stepped care approach, diagnostic triaging is needed to screen those who can benefit and to screen out those who will not benefit, for example whose course of recovery may still be considered favorable without health care interventions. At this stage, the advice for VR will be a trade-off between prognosis, costs, and benefits. Those with a prognosis that is unfavorable based on bio-, psycho-, or social factors may, even though the time off work may be limited, may still be advised to follow vocational rehabilitation. The “risk” that the individual worker will regain normal work without help care interventions, because of the favorable prognosis based purely on limited time off work, should be weighed against the risk of not regaining work because of unfavorable other prognostic factors (“too much, too soon, too costly” vs. “too late”). At this point in time, however, validated instruments to assist with these decisions are unavailable.

Multidisciplinary Vocational Rehabilitation

For workers who are out of work more than about 6 months, multidisciplinary VR is recommended (Waddell et al. 2008b; Airaksinen et al. 2006). There is strong evidence that multidisciplinary VR is effective to facilitate work outcomes (Waddell et al. 2008b; Airaksinen et al. 2006). However, there are also major challenges that accompany VR. Even though its effectiveness has been established, the effect sizes are rather modest (Waddell et al. 2008b; Airaksinen et al. 2006). This means that the average worker will benefit somewhat from VR, but there is a large variety of results: from no benefit at all, to complete recovery of work outcomes. Theoretically, average effect sizes should increase when workers who will not benefit from these programs will not be offered such a program, or should be offered a different program that will provide better results. This requires reliable and valid screening tools that would be able to differentiate, but these tools are presently in development stages.

Multidisciplinary VR is delivered in many different shapes and forms. Literature describes a huge variety of content, disciplines, and dosage, and the optimum components for each individual worker is currently unknown. It is currently regarded as one of the main challenges in this field. It requires a set of diagnostic instruments that can validly distinguish subgroups of workers in need of specific content (“what works for whom”). Perhaps because of the absence of these instruments, many VR programs contain a more or less standard mix of content (mostly consisting of physical exercises, cognitive behavioral therapy or principles, education, graded activities) delivered by more or less standard disciplines (physical therapy, occupational therapy, psychology), with durations varying from a few hours/weeks to 100 h or more delivered over several months (Waterschoot et al. 2014). Theoretically, content, disciplines, and dosage that add nothing to the results can be removed from these programs, leading to similar effectiveness and improved cost-effectiveness. However, at this point, strong evidence-based recommendations for specific content (van Tulder et al. 2006) or dosage (Waterschoot et al. 2014) cannot be given.

Effective Principles

Even though detailed recommendations about effective components of VR cannot be given, effective principles can be derived from the literature. Realizing that differences exist between jurisdictions with all its different barriers and facilitators, these principles can be used to tailor VR to the needs of the individual worker and within the context of work. An overarching principle is that it depends on work-focused healthcare and accommodating workplaces. To make a real and lasting difference, both need to be addressed and coordinated. The main principles are (Main et al. 2008): the presence of a return to work (RTW) coordinator, the principle of graded activity and graded exposure to work, including modified work, and a biopsychosocial orientation of the VR team.

Most VR programs benefit from RTW coordinator or case manager, who serves as liaison between the worker, the work, health care, benefits office, and other stakeholders. The effectiveness of communication between health care and the workplace has been established (Franché et al. 2005). The role of RTW coordinator as key to the program’s success, and the competencies of the RTW coordinator may be more important than professional background (Gardner et al. 2010).

The second principle for VR is that of graded activity and graded exposure to work, including modified work. During VR, the worker should increase activities according to schedule that the worker and the VR team codevelop. This plan involves a gradual progressing of activities, regardless of daily fluctuations in pain intensity. “Activities” may involve exercise, physical activities, and sports activities, but also work related activities. Preferably, if jurisdictions allow for this, this should involve modified work (Franché et al. 2005). Modifications can be duties, tasks, hours, days, etc., based on shared decision by the worker and supervisor, often guided by the RTW coordinator (Lambeek et al. 2010). If modified work is not an option, VR programs may involve simulated work activities performed at the rehabilitation clinic. These simulated work activities should follow the same principles of codevelopment and gradual increase of workload towards a predefined endpoint.

As a general principle, the VR team and its members typically embrace the biopsychosocial model to guide their functional diagnostic and treatment approach (Waddell et al. 2008b). One of the key principles of VR is to address dysfunctional beliefs and behavior. There is extensive clinical evidence that symptoms may originate from a health condition, but the development of chronic symptoms and disability also depends on psychosocial factors. There is now broad agreement that understanding and management of human illness and disability must take account of biological, psychological, and social dimensions – a biopsychosocial model. It is an individual-centered model that considers the person, their health problem, and their social context: biological refers to the physical or mental health condition; psychological recognizes that personal/psychological factors also influence functioning; social recognizes the importance of the social context, pressures, and constraints on illness behavior and functioning. These elements are often described and dealt with separately. In reality, functioning depends on complex interactions between the individual, the health condition, and the environment in a dynamic social process over time (Waddell et al. 2008a; Bartys et al. 2017).

Cross-References

- [Occupational Rehabilitation](#)
- [Return to Work](#)

References and Further Reading

- Airaksinen, O., Brox, J. I., Cedraschi, C., Hildebrandt, J., Klaber-Moffett, J., Kovacs, F., et al. (2006). Chapter 4. European guidelines for the management of chronic nonspecific low back pain. *European Spine Journal*, 15(Suppl 2), S192–S300.
- Bartys, S., Frederiksen, P., & Bendix, T., Burton, K. (2017). System influences on work disability due to low back pain: An international evidence synthesis. *Health Policy*, 121(8), 903–912. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.healthpol.2017.05.011>
- Escorpizo, R., Reneman, M. F., Ekholm, J., Fritz, J., Krupa, T., Marnetoft, S. U., et al. (2011). A conceptual definition of vocational rehabilitation based on the ICF: Building a shared global model.

- Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 21(2), 126–133.
- Franché, R. L., Cullen, K., Clarke, J., Irvin, E., Sinclair, S., Frank, J., et al. (2005). Workplace-based return-to-work interventions: A systematic review of the quantitative literature. *Journal of Occupational Rehabilitation*, 15(4), 607–631.
- Gardner, B. T., Pransky, G., Shaw, W. S., Nha Hong, Q., & Loisel, P. (2010). Researcher perspectives on competencies of return-to-work coordinators. *Disability and Rehabilitation*, 32(1), 72–78.
- Lambeek, L. C., Bosmans, J. E., Van Royen, B. J., Van Tulder, M. W., Van Mechelen, W., & Anema, J. R. (2010). Effect of integrated care for sick listed patients with chronic low back pain: Economic evaluation alongside a randomised controlled trial. *British Medical Journal*, 341, c6414.
- Main, C., Sullivan, M. J. L., & Watson, P. J. (Eds.). (2008). *Pain management: practical applications of the biopsychosocial perspective in clinical and occupational settings* (2nd ed.). London: Elsevier Limited.
- van Tulder, M., Becker, A., Bekkering, T., Breen, A., del Real, M. T., Hutchinson, A., et al. (2006). Chapter 3. European guidelines for the management of acute nonspecific low back pain in primary care. *European Spine Journal*, 15(Suppl 2), S169–S191.
- de Vries, H. J., Reneman, M. F., Groothoff, J. W., Geertzen, J. H., & Brouwer, S. (2012). Factors promoting staying at work in people with chronic nonspecific musculoskeletal pain: A systematic review. *Disability and Rehabilitation*, 34(6), 443–458.
- Waddell, G., Burton, K., & Aylward, M. (2008a). A biopsychosocial model of sickness and disability. *The Guides Newsletter*, Chicago: American Medical Association, 1–13.
- Waddell, G., Burton, A. K., & Kendall, N. A. S. (Eds.). (2008b). *Vocational rehabilitation – What works, for whom, and when? Report for the Vocational rehabilitation Task Group*. London: TSO.
- Waterschoot, F. P., Dijkstra, P. U., Hollak, N., de Vries, H. J., Geertzen, J. H., & Reneman, M. F. (2014). Dose or content? Effectiveness of pain rehabilitation programs for patients with chronic low back pain: A systematic review. *Pain*, 155(1), 179–189.

VR

- [Virtual Reality](#)

Vulnerabilities

- [Cardiovascular Risk Factors](#)

Waist Circumference

- [Waist Girth](#)
- [Waist Size](#)

Waist Circumference (WC)

Tavis S. Campbell, Jillian A. Johnson and
Kristin A. Zernicke
Department of Psychology, University of Calgary,
Calgary, AB, Canada

Synonyms

[Girth](#)

Definition

Waist circumference (WC) is considered a measure of the relative health risk associated with excess abdominal fat. Abdominal fat contains higher amounts of visceral fat, a fat that is produced by the liver, turned into cholesterol, and released into the bloodstream where it can form plaque on artery walls. Excess abdominal fat is associated with high cholesterol, high blood pressure, and cardiovascular disease.

Waist circumference may be a better indicator of obesity-related diseases than body mass index

(BMI) (Cawley 2006), especially among certain populations (e.g., elderly persons). Certain ethnic groups are genetically predisposed to store more fat in the abdomen, even at healthy weights (e.g., non-Hispanic blacks, people of Asian descent).

It is measured by first locating the upper hipbone and lowest rib, followed by placing the end of a measuring tape between these two points and wrapping horizontally around the abdomen.

Men with a waist circumference greater than 102 cm (40 in.) and women with a waist circumference exceeding 88 cm (35 in.) are considered to be at increased risk for developing obesity-related health problems, including type II diabetes, hypertension, and cardiovascular disease.

Cross-References

- [Body Mass Index](#)

References and Readings

- Cawley, J. H. (2006). *Beyond BMI: The value of more accurate measures of fatness and obesity in social science research*. Cambridge, MA: National Bureau of Economic Research.
- Heart and Stroke Foundation (2010, January). *Healthy waists*. Retrieved April 8, 2011 from <http://www.heartandstroke.com/site/c.ikIQLcMWJtE/b.3876195/>
- National Heart Lung and Blood Institute (2011, April). *Assessing your weight and health risk*. Retrieved April 8, 2011 from http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/public/heart/obesity/lose_wt/risk.htm

Waist Girth

Christopher Shaw
Deakin University, Melbourne, VIC, Australia

Synonyms

[Waist circumference](#)

Definition

Waist girth is related to abdominal visceral fat and predicts a number of disease risk factors associated with obesity.

Description

Obesity which is explained by an increase in body fat is associated with a clustering of risk factors known as the metabolic syndrome and originates from an imbalance between energy intake and energy expenditure. However, there is substantial evidence that body fat distribution rather than total fat mass per se plays a more important role in the development of such risk factors. Gynoid obesity (commonly referred to as “pear shaped”) reflects adipose tissue accumulation around the hips and buttocks, whereas android obesity (more commonly referred to as “apple shaped”) reflects increased abdominal fat deposition. Android obesity increases with age, is more prominent in males, and poses a significantly greater risk for the development of hypertension, dyslipidemia, insulin resistance, atherosclerosis, type 2 diabetes, coronary artery disease, and certain types of cancer and higher rates of mortality than gynoid obesity. Girth measurements can be used to assess such differences in body fat distribution, and measurement of waist girth specifically represents abdominal obesity. Therefore, it may be a more relevant measure for anyone looking to use simple

anthropometric measurements to predict the risk of obesity-related diseases across populations or in response to interventions over time. A variety of gender and age-specific equations are also available to predict body fat percentage from waist girth measurements.

The measurement of waist girth can be used in conjunction with hip circumference to measure waist-hip ratio which is a common method used to predict many health hazards associated with obesity. However, waist girth is more predictive of obesity-related risk factors than waist-to-hip ratio as it is a more accurate reflection of deep visceral adipose tissue (Roche et al. 1996). Furthermore, waist girth measurements also correlate well with the gold standard CT or MRI techniques for the measurement of visceral abdominal fat. The reason that this adipose tissue site is such a risk factor is complex but is likely related to it being more active to lipolytic stimuli such as catecholamines, expression of adrenoreceptors and receptors for insulin, glucocorticoids, and testosterone. Abdominal fat also expresses and releases a multitude of peptides and inflammatory cytokines which are also likely to be involved.

The standardized measurement of waist girth is described by the American College of Sports Medicine (*ACSM's Guidelines for Exercise Testing and Prescription*, 2006). Measurements should be made with a flexible, inelastic tape without compression of the subcutaneous adipose tissue. Measurements should be performed with the participant standing with their feet together and arms by their side. A horizontal measure is then taken at the narrowest part of the torso, typically between the bottom of the ribs and the iliac crest. Duplicate measures should be taken and repeated if the variation exceeds 5 mm.

Waist girth alone, or in combination with other anthropometric measures, has been used to classify and evaluate disease risk. However, different cut off points have been suggested depending on the specific population studied. For example, a waist circumference over 99 cm for males and over 89 cm for females is associated with a high risk for the development of obesity-related disease

(American College of Sports Medicine 2006). Further, a disease risk classification is also available taking into account both BMI and waist circumference (see McArdle et al. 2001). This describes a higher risk of disease when a BMI over 25 kg/m² is combined with a waist circumference greater than 102 or 88 cm for males and females, respectively.

Cross-References

- [Waist Circumference](#)
- [Waist Size](#)

References and Further Reading

- American College of Sports Medicine. (2006). *ACSM's guidelines for exercise testing and prescription* (7th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- McArdle, W. D., Katch, F. I., & Katch, V. L. (2001). *Exercise physiology: Energy, nutrition and human performance* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.
- Roche, A. F., Heymsfield, S. B., & Lohman, T. G. (1996). *Human body composition*. Champaign: Human Kinetics.

Waist Size

Kazuo Hara
Department of Metabolic Diseases, Graduate
School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo,
Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

[Waist circumference](#)

Definition

There are several lines of evidence that suggest subjects with a large waist size are at increased

risk of developing type 2 diabetes and cardiovascular diseases, even after adjustment for body mass index (BMI), an indicator of total adiposity (Hu et al. 2007; Winter et al. 2008; Yusuf et al. 2005). The large waist size reflects accumulation of excess abdominal fat, also known as central obesity, and is reported to be a primary risk factor for glucose intolerance, dyslipidemia, and high blood pressure, which together is now defined as metabolic syndrome (Kadowaki et al. 2006). Therefore, the measurement of waist size is essential for the screening of metabolic syndrome. Two international definitions for metabolic syndrome are currently used in daily practice, one provided by the International Diabetes Federation (IDF) ([IDF World-wide Definition of the Metabolic Syndrome](#)) and the other by the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) (Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults 2001). The former criterion requires waist size above a certain cut point for a diagnosis of metabolic syndrome, whereas the latter one does not require a large waist size if the subject has three or more of the following: raised fasting plasma glucose concentrations, elevated blood pressure, elevated levels of triglycerides, and/or reduced levels of high-density lipoproteins.

The IDF recommends that the cut point for waist size used to define central obesity should vary according to ethnic group, and they proposed the following European-specific cut points for waist size: 94 and 80 cm for men and women, respectively (Alberti et al. 2005). Nonetheless, further extensive investigations must be performed before more suitable cut points can be established for use in clinical practice to accurately predict cardiovascular diseases.

The method of measurement must also be standardized. Waist size is usually measured at a level midway between the lowest rib and the iliac crest (Han et al. 1995). However, the waist size is measured at the umbilical level in some countries, such as Japan, for screening metabolic syndrome (Matsuzawa 2005). It is essential that the subjects

being measured are not holding their breath and that the tape measure is not at an angle around their waist.

Cross-References

- [Obesity](#)
- [Waist to Hip Ratio](#)

References and Further Reading

- Alberti, K. G., Zimmet, P., Shaw, J., & IDF Epidemiology Task Force Consensus Group. (2005). The metabolic syndrome – A new worldwide definition. *Lancet*, 366(9491), 1059–1062.
- Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults. (2001). Executive summary of the third report of the national cholesterol education program (NCEP) expert panel on detection, evaluation, and treatment of high blood cholesterol in adults (adult treatment panel III). *Journal of American Medical Association*, 285(19), 2486–2497.
- Han, T. S., van Leer, E. M., Seidell, J. C., & Lean, M. E. (1995). Waist circumference action levels in the identification of cardiovascular risk factors: Prevalence study in a random sample. *British Medical Journal*, 311(7017), 1401–1405.
- Hu, G., Tuomilehto, J., Silventoinen, K., Sarti, C., Männistö, S., & Jousilahti, P. (2007). Body mass index, waist circumference, and waist-hip ratio on the risk of total and type-specific stroke. *Archives of Internal Medicine*, 167(13), 1420–1427.
- IDF Worldwide Definition of the Metabolic Syndrome. Retrieved from <http://www.idf.org/idf-worldwide-definition-metabolic-syndrome>
- Kadowaki, T., Yamauchi, T., Kubota, N., Hara, K., Ueki, K., & Tobe, K. (2006). Adiponectin and adiponectin receptors in insulin resistance, diabetes, and the metabolic syndrome. *Journal of Clinical Investigation*, 116(7), 1784–1792.
- Matsuzawa, Y. (2005). Metabolic syndrome – Definition and diagnostic criteria in Japan. *Journal of Atherosclerosis and Thrombosis*, 12(6), 301.
- Winter, Y., Rohrmann, S., Linseisen, J., Lanczik, O., Ringleb, P. A., Hebebrand, J., et al. (2008). Contribution of obesity and abdominal fat mass to risk of stroke and transient ischemic attacks. *Stroke*, 39(12), 3145–3151.
- Yusuf, S., Hawken, S., Ounpuu, S., Bautista, L., Franzosi, M. G., Commerford, P., et al. (2005). Obesity and the risk of myocardial infarction in 27,000 participants from 52 countries: A case-control study. *Lancet*, 366(9497), 1640–1649.

Waist to Hip Ratio

Kazuo Hara

Department of Metabolic Diseases, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Synonyms

WHR

Definition

The waist hip ratio (WHR) is the ratio of waist circumference to hip circumference. It was reported that the mortality and the risk of coronary artery disease are positively correlated with WHR both in men and women (Lapidus et al. 1984; Larsson et al. 1984). It is well documented that subjects with high WHR and upper body obesity present insulin resistance (Peiris et al. 1986). According to the standard defined by World Health Organization (WHO) in 1999 about metabolic syndrome, in which type 2 diabetes mellitus, glucose tolerance, and insulin resistance are required items, obesity is defined as WHR >0.9 in men and WHR >0.85 in women (World Health Organization 1999).

Cross-References

- [Obesity](#)
- [Waist Size](#)

References and Further Reading

- Lapidus, L., Bengtsson, C., Larsson, B., Pennert, K., Rybo, E., & Sjöström, L. (1984). Distribution of adipose tissue and risk of cardiovascular disease and death: A 12 year follow up of participants in the population study of women in Gothenburg, Sweden. *British Medical Journal*, 289, 1257–1261.

- Larsson, B., Svardsudd, K., Welin, L., Wilhelmsen, L., Björntorp, P., & Tibblin, G. (1984). Abdominal adipose tissue distribution, obesity, and risk of cardiovascular disease and death: 13 year follow up of participants in the study of men born in 1913. *British Medical Journal*, 288, 1401–1404.
- Peiris, A. N., Mueller, R. A., Smith, G. A., Struve, M. F., & Kissebah, A. H. (1986). Splanchnic insulin metabolism in obesity. Influence of body fat distribution. *Journal of Clinical Investigation*, 78(6), 1648–1657.
- World Health Organization. (1999). *Definition, diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus and its complication. Part 1: Diagnosis and classification of diabetes mellitus*. Geneva: Department of Non-communicable Disease Surveillance.

Warmth

- [Interpersonal Circumplex](#)

Water Pill

- [Diuretic](#)

Ways of Coping Checklist (WCCL)

Susan Folkman
Department of Medicine, School of Medicine,
University of California San Francisco,
San Mateo, CA, USA

Definition

The Ways of Coping Checklist (WCCL) is a measure of coping based on Lazarus and Folkman's (1984) stress and coping theory. The WCCL contains 66 items that describe thoughts and acts that people use to deal with the internal and/or external demands of specific stressful encounters. Usually the encounter is described by the subject in an interview or in a brief written description saying

who was involved, where it took place, and what happened. Sometimes a particular encounter, such as a medical treatment or an academic examination, is selected by the investigator as the focus of the questionnaire. Subjects respond on a 4-point Likert scale (0 = does not apply and/or not used; 3 = used a great deal), the extent to which the item was used in the specific stressful encounter.

Subscales

Factor analysis of data from a study of stressful encounters reported by a community sample of middle-aged married couples indicated eight scales: planful problem-solving, positive reappraisal, seeking social support, distancing, self-controlling, escape-avoidance, accepting responsibility, and confrontive coping (Folkman et al. 1986). The eight scales use 50 of the 66 items. The additional items are retained on the WCCL because some investigators find them useful. Subsequent factor analyses indicated variability in factor structure. Some factors such as planful problem-solving, positive reappraisal, escape-avoidance, and distancing are relatively stable. Other factors such as self-controlling, accepting responsibility, seeking social support, and confrontive coping are less stable. For a critical review of the WCCL, see Schwarzer and Schwarzer (1996).

Scoring

There are two systems for scoring the WCCL. The "Raw Score" method is to sum the ratings for each scale. This method provides a score for amount of each type of coping used in the specified event.

The "Relative Score" method, introduced by Vitaliano et al. (1987), controls for the variability in scale length. Relative scores are computed by first obtaining the mean item score for each scale. Once the mean effort (ME) is obtained for each scale, the relative effort is calculated by dividing the ME for the particular scale by the sum of the MEs for each of the scales.

Interpretation

The WCCL is descriptive, not diagnostic. Typically, scores are correlated with outcomes of interest, such as depressive symptoms, distress, positive mood, or a relevant behavior.

Investigators ask if there are population norms for comparison purposes. Stress and coping theory (Lazarus and Folkman 1984) views coping as contextual, which means that there is no “standard” amount of coping that can be used as a norm. For example, certain types of coping (e.g., planful problem-solving) are used more in situations that are controllable while other types (e.g., distancing) are used more in situations that have to be accepted.

The Ways of Coping Checklist can be obtained through Mind Garden Publishers (www.mindgarden.com).

References and Readings

- Folkman, S., Lazarus, R. S., Gruen, R. J., & DeLongis, A. (1986). Appraisal, coping, health status, and psychological symptoms. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 50, 571–579.
- Lazarus, R. S., & Folkman, S. (1984). *Stress, appraisal, and coping*. New York: Springer.
- Schwarzer, R., & Schwarzer, C. (1996). A critical survey of coping instruments. In M. Zeidner & N. S. Endler (Eds.), *Handbook of coping: Theory, research, applications* (pp. 107–132). Oxford, UK: Wiley.
- Vitaliano, P. P., Maiuro, R. D., Russo, J., & Becker, J. (1987). Raw versus relative scores in the assessment of coping strategies. *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 10, 1–18.

Wearable Fitness Trackers

- [Physical Activity Monitors](#)

Web-Based Studies

- [Internet-Based Studies](#)

Weight

- [Body Mass Index](#)
- [Lifestyle Changes](#)

Weight Loss

- [Lifestyle Changes](#)

Weight Loss Surgery

- [Bariatric Surgery](#)

Weight: Control, Gain/Loss/Reduction, Maintenance, Monitoring

Shuji Inada

Department of Stress Science and Psychosomatic Medicine, Graduate School of Medicine, The University of Tokyo, Tokyo, Japan

Definition

Weight is the mass of one's body. Weight is usually measured by a scale in kilograms, which are base units of mass in the international systems of unit. Weight is used as barometer of adiposity or condition of nutrition or index of growth in children. Weight is useful for intrapersonal comparisons, while body mass index (in adults) or Rohrer's index (in children), which is adjusted for body height, is used for interpersonal comparisons. Weight is also applied for index of water balance in patients who have water imbalance such as congestive heart failure or renal failure.

Since weight measured by a scale is affected by meal, urine, and stool, it is better to measure on the same time after bladder emptying and defecation.

Description

Weight Control

Weight control is to keep, increase, or decrease one’s weight within a certain range. Weight category is classified with body mass index as follows (also see ► [“Body Mass Index”](#)) (Table 1).

Since overweight and obese population is increasing, “weight control” often means “weight loss.” Weight control is essential to prevention and treatment of many diseases, especially of metabolic disease (Must et al. 1999; Strazzullo et al. 2010).

Weight Gain/Loss/Reduction/Maintenance

Weight gain/loss depends on an energy balance under a normal water balance. Energy intake is usually derived from food intake. Energy consumption includes basal metabolism, consumption for physical activity, and consumption for thermogenesis. Energy intake exceeding energy consumption results weight gain, and energy consumption exceeding energy intake results weight loss.

Diet is the most important for weight reduction, and exercise is often combined with diet. Exercise alone has minimal effect for body weight (Franz et al. 2007). Sibtramine and Orlistat are approved by FDA for use in obesity patients (see ► [“Obesity: Prevention and Treatment”](#)). Bariatric surgery is performed to severe obese patients (see ► [“Bariatric Surgery”](#)).

Behavioral therapy is applied to weight management and achieves preferable short-term outcome. Behavioral management of obesity

includes self-monitoring of diet, physical activity, and/or body weight; stimulus control; cognitive restructuring; goal setting; and problem solving (Johnston et al. 2007).

Maintenance of reduced weight is more difficult than weight reduction. Some regain of weight is inevitable for nonsurgical weight-loss therapy (Franz et al. 2007).

Monitoring

Self-monitoring is an important element of behavioral weight-loss program. Self-monitoring of dietary intake, physical activity, and/or body weight achieves self-evaluation of the weight-loss behavior, one’s awareness of weight and behavior, and self-reinforcement of preferable behavior (Burke et al. 2011). While paper-pencil diaries are conventionally used for self-monitoring, internet-based diaries or PDA-based diaries are recently developed for easier recording and less-biased data recording (Burke et al. 2011; Fukuo et al. 2009).

Cross-References

- [Bariatric Surgery](#)
- [Basal Metabolic Rate](#)
- [Body Mass Index](#)
- [Obesity: Prevention and Treatment](#)
- [Self-monitoring](#)

References and Readings

Burke, L. E., Wang, J., & Sevick, M. A. (2011). Self-monitoring in weight loss: A systemic review of the literature. *Journal of American Dietetic Association, 111*, 92–102.

Franz, M. J., vanWormer, J. J., Crain, A. L., Boucher, J. L., Histon, T., Caplan, W., et al. (2007). Weight-loss outcomes: A systematic review and meta-analysis of weight-loss clinical trials with a minimum 1-year follow-up. *Journal of American Dietetic Association, 107*, 1755–1767.

Fukuo, W., Yoshiuchi, K., Ohashi, K., Togashi, H., Sekine, R., Kikuchi, H., et al. (2009). Development of a handheld personal digital assistant-based food diary with food photographs for Japanese subjects. *Journal of American Dietetic Association, 109*, 1232–1236.

Weight: Control, Gain/Loss/Reduction, Maintenance, Monitoring, Table 1 The international classification of adult underweight, overweight, and obesity according to BMI (WHO 2006)

Classification	Principal cutoff point
Underweight	<18.5
Normal	18.5–24.99
Overweight	25–29.99
Obese class I	30–34.99
Obese class II	35–39.99
Obese class III	>40

- Johnston, C. A., Tyler, C., & Foreyt, J. P. (2007). Behavioral management of obesity. *Current Atherosclerosis Reports*, 9, 448–453.
- Must, A., Spadano, J., Coakley, E. H., Field, A. E., Colditz, G., & Dietz, W. H. (1999). The disease burden associated with overweight and obesity. *Journal of American Medical Association*, 282, 1523–1529.
- Strazzullo, P., D'Elia, L., Cairella, G., Garbagnati, F., Cappuccio, F. P., & Scalfi, L. (2010). Excess body weight and incidence of stroke meta-analysis of prospective studies with 2 million participants. *Stroke*, 41, e418–e426.
- WHO. (2006). *Global database on body mass index*. Retrieved January 31, 2011, from <http://apps.who.int/bmi/index.jsp>

$\{Y_1, \dots, Y_N\}$ be the population values and $\{y_1, \dots, y_n\}$ be the sample values. We define the

overall sampling fraction as $f = \frac{n}{N}$. Then $\bar{Y} =$

$\frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N Y_i$ the population mean, can be estimated by the statistic,

$$\bar{y} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n y_i$$

Under this SRS design, each sample observation, y_i , contributes equally to the estimate, $\bar{y}$, of the population mean.

More complicated sampling designs, such as stratified sampling, may be chosen by investigators for various reasons including potential efficiency and the ability to use different sampling methods for different strata. In stratified sampling, the population is grouped by some characteristic (such as gender, geographic location, or age category), and a sample is selected within each subgroup separately. In this stratified design, the probability of selecting an individual is likely not the same for all individuals, but rather depends on the individual's subgroup (stratum). For example, in a study of illicit drug use among adolescents in a particular city, the population could be stratified into two age groups, middle school and high school. The probability of selection of a particular student will depend on the sample size and population size within that student's age group. Therefore, the sample statistics using a stratified design must be weighted to account for the unequal selection probability of observations.

To compute a weighted sample mean for a stratified sample, first consider the partition of the population into H mutually exclusive strata. Let N_h = the population size in the h^{th} stratum, n_h = the sample size in the h^{th} stratum so that $N = \sum_{h=1}^H N_h$ and $n = \sum_{h=1}^H n_h$. The stratum specific sampling fraction is $f_h = \frac{n_h}{N_h}$. We can compute each stratum-specific mean, $\bar{y}_h$, as the average of

Weighted Sample

Jane Monaco

Department of Biostatistics, The University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, Chapel Hill, NC, USA

Definition

In a weighted sample, not all sample observations contribute equally to the estimate of a population parameter.

Investigators are often interested in estimating quantities (such as means, counts, or proportions) in a population by using a representative sample selected from that population. Probability samples, defined as samples in which each sampling unit has a known, nonzero probability of selection based on the sampling design, allow investigators to compute estimates of population parameters. The most straightforward type of probability sampling design, a simple random sample (SRS), is a selection method in which each sample has the same probability of being selected. In an SRS, the probability of selection of each member in the population is the same.

The estimation of the population mean is straightforward for the SRS design. Let n = sample size, N = population size. Also, let

the n_h units in the h^{th} stratum. The weighted sample mean is computed as weighted sum of the stratum specific means: $\bar{y}_w = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{h=1}^H N_h \bar{y}_h$. This weighted sample mean can be shown to provide an unbiased estimate of the population mean, $\bar{Y}$.

Cross-References

► [Probability](#)

References and Further Reading

- Foreman, E. K. (1991). *Survey sampling principles*. New York: M. Dekker.
- Kish, L. (1965). *Survey sampling*. New York: Wiley.
- Korn, E. L., & Graubard, B. I. (1995). Examples of differing weighted and unweighted estimates from a sample survey. *The American Statistician*, 49(3), 291–295.

Weiss, Stephen M.

Stephen M. Weiss
Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Biographical Information

Stephen Weiss was born in northern New Jersey on June 17, 1937. He received his B.A. in Psychology from the University of Maryland (1959) and his Master's (AM) in Psychology from Temple University (1961). He completed his clinical psychology internship and residency in the Department of Medical Psychology at the University of Oregon Medical School (1962–1963) and received his PhD in Psychology (doctoral minor: Cultural Anthropology) from the University of Arizona (1965). Returning to school after nearly 30 years, he completed his MPH in

International Health at Johns Hopkins University School of Hygiene and Public Health in 1993.

Weiss has had several “careers” over the past 45+ years. He began his academic career with appointments including the following: assistant professor, University of Arizona (1964–1967); assistant professor, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine (1967–1970); associate professor and professor (adjunct), Uniformed Services University of the Health Sciences (1978–1993); and adjunct appointments at the Johns Hopkins University School of Hygiene and Public Health (1976–1998) and the NIH Graduate School (Foundation for Advanced Education in the Sciences) (1979–1994). During “intermissions” in his academic career, Weiss spent 5 years (1969–1974) with the US peace corps (including 2 years in the Ivory Coast in West Africa as director of Training for Africa) as deputy director to the Family Health International AIDS Control and Prevention Project (1991–1993) and nearly 20 years at NIH, directing the behavioral medicine program at the National Heart, Lung and Blood Institute (NHLBI: 1974–1991) and as senior advisor at the National Institute of Mental Health (1993). He joined the faculty of the University of Miami School of Medicine in late 1993 as professor in the Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, serving as vice chair for research from 2002 to 2009.

Major Accomplishments

Throughout his career(s), Weiss has focused his professional and scientific energies on one principal issue: to better understand how biological, behavioral, and psychosocial factors *interact* in the etiology, treatment, and prevention of chronic illness.

The first 30 years were focused on cardiovascular health and disease. Beginning with his doctoral dissertation, “Psychological Adjustment Following Open Heart Surgery,” he continued

this work at Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine and subsequently at NHLBI. His program development mandate at NIH enabled him to advance the “biobehavioral” perspective in behavioral and biomedical science venues. For example, when he arrived at NIH (1974), there was *very* little biobehavioral research related to the prevention and control of chronic disease. Upon becoming acquainted with the NIH system of “peer review,” it became obvious that one of the principal reasons for this concerned the *lack* of “peer review” for grant applications attempting to combine biological and behavioral perspectives. He demonstrated the need for a “Behavioral Medicine” study section to the senior officials responsible for grant review by screening over 7,000 grant applications from a single review cycle and identifying over 50 applications requiring both behavioral and biomedical review expertise. Established the following year (Joseph Matarazzo was the first Chair), the Behavioral Medicine study section soon proved its relevance to the NIH mission and was permanently chartered after a 3-year trial period.

During this same period, Weiss, with the active participation of a small group of similarly inclined “biobehaviorists” (e.g., Neal Miller, Joseph Matarazzo, Redford Williams, Neil Schneiderman, Gary Schwartz, Herbert Benson, Margaret Chesney, Thomas Coates, and Judith Rodin to name but a few), convened several conferences and workshops which stimulated the establishment of the fields of behavioral medicine (e.g., the Yale Conference on Behavioral Medicine; the Institute of Medicine/National Academy of Sciences Working Group on Behavioral Medicine) and health psychology (e.g., the Arden House Conference on Education and Training in Health Psychology).

These activities led to the formation and growth of several professional organizations (including the Society of Behavioral Medicine; the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research; the Division of Health Psychology of the American Psychological Association; the International Society of Behavioral Medicine). He served as President of each of these organizations and was

instrumental in establishing new scientific journals representing these areas during his stewardship of these organizations (e.g., *Journal of Behavioral Medicine*; *Annals of Behavioral Medicine*; *Health Psychology*; *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*).

Discussions between Weiss and David Hamburg, president of the Institute of Medicine of the National Academy of Sciences, in the late 1970s concerning the importance of the biobehavioral perspective in understanding the multifaceted, multilayered nature of chronic illness stimulated two major “health and behavior” efforts by the Institute of Medicine (IOM) to highlight the need for expanding NIH research efforts in this area. Two seminal volumes were published by the IOM Committee on Health and Behavior over a 20-year period synthesizing important scientific findings and providing direction for future research. Weiss served as consultant to this Committee, as well as being invited to provide testimony to several related IOM committees in the ensuing years.

During the 1980s, Weiss became active in international health scientific exchanges, participating as scientific liaison to the US-USSR Scientific Exchange in Cardiovascular Behavioral Medicine for over 10 years, and in a similar capacity with the US-Israel Scientific Exchanges on Hypertension and Coronary Heart Disease. He returned to the Johns Hopkins University School of Hygiene and Public Health to complete the MPH in International Health, a course of study that had important implications for his professional career direction. During this program, he became acutely aware of the growing catastrophe of the HIV/AIDS pandemic, particularly in the developing world. Based on this experience (and his newly minted MPH degree), he set out to explore what role he might play in challenging this public health disaster in Africa, where he had spent 2 years in the early 1970s working with the US peace corps.

Retiring from the NIH in 1991, Dr. Weiss began to search for a meaningful professional direction in HIV/AIDS. He spent 2 years with Family Health International and NIMH in HIV/AIDS administrative and program advisory

capacities. Recognizing the major differences in the epidemics in the developed vs. developing worlds, he realized that new and unique approaches would be required to establish effective prevention strategies for HIV transmission. It took several years, however, before sufficient momentum was achieved in scientific circles to stimulate the NIH to establish an aggressive extramural research program in the search for new barriers to sexual transmission of the virus.

The advent of the female condom and growing interest in chemical barriers (microbicides) stimulated the need for a “critical mass” of research to answer important questions of safety, efficacy, acceptability, and effectiveness of these new sexual barrier products. Designation of HIV/AIDS as a “threat to our national security” by former President Clinton produced a “sea change” in the federal government’s willingness to invest in international studies and demonstration projects to contain the epidemic in the developing world.

The critical need to develop *acceptable* barrier products for the varied populations at high risk of HIV infection suggested that biological efficacy must be coupled with product acceptability studies to ultimately demonstrate the effectiveness and impact of such strategies in containing the epidemic. He received NIH funding to address many of these issues in the USA, Africa, and India. In addition to being P.I. on two large-scale US trials of behavioral interventions with HIV+ women, over the last 16 years, he also has been funded to conduct several studies in Zambia with HIV+ and HIV– men, women, and couples and also to serve as PI, Co-PI, Protocol Co-Chair, and site investigator for an additional five studies on sexual risk reduction and medication adherence in Zambia, South Africa, and India.

Since settling in Miami nearly 20 years ago, Weiss has continued to lead an active professional life. Nonetheless, he still has made time for his passion for flying (commercial license, instrument, multiengine, with over 5,600 flight hours), as well as the occasional fishing trip on his small boat. He has four grown children and nine growing grandchildren, whom he and his wife, Deborah, visit regularly, thanks to his aging, but trusty,

Beech Bonanza. He has served as mentor to many junior faculty, residents, and fellows within the medical school through his “Grantsmanship 101” seminar and open invitations to join his research program. He has authored/coauthored over 120 papers, monographs, and scientific reviews, in addition to 10 edited volumes on health and behavior. He currently serves on the editorial boards of several scientific journals and health publications and regularly participates as a reviewer on NIH study sections.

When asked what the single most influential factor in his professional preparation was, Weiss answered with one word: *mentorship*. He attributes the guidance he received from strong mentors like Joe Matarazzo and Neal Miller, his psychologist role models during graduate training, as instrumental in preparing him for the many challenges he has faced in his varied, multifaceted professional journey.

Cross-References

- [Behavioral Medicine](#)
- [HIV Infection](#)

References and Readings

- Jones, D. L., Weiss, S. M., Chitalu, N., et al. (2008). Acceptability and use of sexual barrier products and lubricants among HIV-seropositive Zambian men. *AIDS Patient Care and STDs*, 22, 1015–1020.
- Kapiga, S., Kelly, C., Weiss, S., Daley, T., Peterson, L., Leburg, C., et al. (2009). Risk factors for incidence of sexually transmitted infections among women in South Africa, Tanzania and Zambia: Results from HPTN 055 study. *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, 36(4), 199–206.
- Lopez, E. J., Jones, D. L., Villar-Loubet, O. M., Arheart, K. L., & Weiss, S. M. (2010). Violence, coping, and consistent medication adherence in HIV-positive couples. *AIDS Education and Prevention*, 22, 61–68.
- Schneiderman, N., Weiss, S. M., & Kaufmann, P. G. (Eds.). (1989). *Handbook of research methods in cardiovascular behavioral medicine*. New York: Springer.
- Schwartz, G., & Weiss, S. (1977). What is behavioral medicine. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 39(6), 377–381.
- Weiss, S. M. (1966). Psychological adjustment following open heart surgery. *The Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease*, 143(4), 363–368.

- Weiss, S. M., Fielding, J., & Baum, A. (Eds.). (1991). *Perspectives in behavioral medicine: Health at work* (p. 219). Hillsdale: Erlbaum.
- Weiss, S. M., Jones, D. L., Lopez, M., Villar-Loubet, O., & Chitalu, N. (2011a). The many faces of translational research: A tale of two studies. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 1, 327–330.
- Weiss, S. M., Tobin, J. N., Antoni, M., Ironson, G., Ishii, M., Vaughn, A., et al. (2011b). Enhancing the health of women living with HIV: The SMART/EST women's project. *International Journal of Women's Health*, 3, 63–77.

Welfare

- [Well-Being: Physical, Psychological, and Social](#)

Well-Being

- [Williams LifeSkills Program](#)

Well-Being Technologies

- [Quality of Life Technologies](#)

Well-Being: Physical, Psychological, and Social

Sarah D. Pressman¹, Tara Kraft² and Stephanie Bowlin²

¹Psychology and Social Behaviour, University of California, Irvine, CA, USA

²Department of Psychology, University of Kansas, Lawrence, KS, USA

Synonyms

[Happiness](#); [Health](#); [Positive emotions](#); [Welfare](#); [Wellness](#)

Definition

Well-being is a multifaceted construct best described as a state of physical, psychological, and social health.

Description

Well-being is a broad term that encompasses what it means to be functioning as a healthy person across multiple domains. Although words like “well-being (WB),” “health,” and “happiness” permeate scientific literature, they are frequently variably defined from one study to the next, with many researchers relying on a single construct, such as “happiness” or “high quality of life” to provide an adequate definition. Rather than constricting WB to one equivocal definition, a review of the literature suggests that it is most comprehensively defined and productively discussed as a combination of the following three components: psychological well-being (PsWB), social well-being (SWB), and physical well-being (PWB).

Psychological Well-Being (PsWB)

Psychological well-being (PsWB) and “happiness” have historically been synonymous and equally indefinite in literature across academic disciplines. Contemporary scientific definitions of PsWB, however, encompass three substantial, coherent domains: emotional experience, cognitive evaluation of life satisfaction, and human flourishing (e.g., Diener et al. 2002; Keyes et al. 2002). Although PsWB is frequently referred to as synonymous with subjective WB (a cognitive evaluation of satisfaction with life), some models of PsWB consider cognitive evaluation a related yet distinct subcomponent of a larger construct of PsWB. Both models will be further discussed below.

Early in the study of emotion, Bradburn (1969) clarified that the absence of negative emotion does not indicate the presence of positive emotion;

thus, experiencing both frequent positive emotion and infrequent negative emotion is essential to *feeling* “happy.” Instruments to measure positive and negative emotion at both the short-term “state” and long-term “trait” level ask individuals to rate the degree to which they experience a range of emotions, varying in valence (e.g., happy vs. sad) and arousal (e.g., excitement vs. calm) and have led to valuable research on emotion. For example, Fredrickson’s (2001) notable “broaden and build” theory states that positive emotions increase WB by broadening our cognitive range and building lasting resources that can be utilized in times of need. For example, when experiencing positive emotion, individuals are able to identify a wider range of activities they would like to engage in and are more likely to set and reach goals. Furthermore, the manipulation and natural expression of positive emotion in experimental settings has been shown to improve post-stress cardiovascular recovery, possibly resulting in protective effects against the negative physiological consequences of stress.

As outlined above, PsWB frequently involves and is debatably defined as a cognitive evaluation of satisfaction with life (for a review, see Diener et al. 1999) partnered with positive and negative emotion ratings. This model of PsWB is based on ratings of WB from the respondent’s own perspective. For example, although an outside person may judge circumstances to be unfortunate, if a respondent reports high life satisfaction, he or she has high subjective WB. Furthermore, this model assumes that this report has some amount of stability over time; however, reports can vary with momentary experience and events. Measures connecting these two evaluative components are associated with many positive outcomes, such as hope, optimism, and greater income. Interestingly, twin studies have revealed correlations between genes and PsWB, indicating a possible genetic influence on the “set point” for happiness. Since a variety of factors (e.g., genetics, culture, age, gender, emotional experience) can influence life satisfaction ratings, Diener and colleagues have suggested that “happiness” is best understood through a discussion of the factors that influence subjective WB.

Ryff (1989) has differentially argued that PsWB includes happiness (“hedonic” WB or the experience of pleasure) and “eudaimonic” WB. Eudaimonic WB is concerned with human flourishing and encompasses constructs related to engagement with and evaluation of challenging life events, including self-acceptance, purpose and meaning in life, sense of mastery over one’s environment, positive interpersonal relationships, personal growth, and autonomy. Proponents of this approach argue that this combination of factors provides a more complete picture of happiness or “optimal” WB than emotional or cognitive/evaluative WB components alone and have found this optimal balance to increase with age, education, and the presence of certain personality characteristics (i.e., high extraversion and conscientiousness). While Ryff’s work suggests that a comprehensive discussion of PsWB must consider the combination of factors that influence both subjective WB and human flourishing more broadly, it is somewhat problematic when contemplating research questions attempting to determine the critical components of WB. For example, interpersonal relationships (a component of eudaimonic WB) may have independent pathways (e.g., neuroanatomy, hormonal) to PWB as compared to more emotional constructs within eudaimonia (e.g., autonomy, acceptance) whose paths may have more in common with hedonic measures. It seems important then to consider these subcomponents and their differential mechanisms separately in order to understand how PsWB “gets under the skin” to alter physical health.

Social Well-Being (SWB)

Humans are inherently social creatures who evolved in groups that helped ensure the survival of the species. As a result, there is a deeply engrained need to belong and feel supported. When these social needs are met, individuals experience SWB. There is no firmly agreed upon definition of SWB, but generally it can be considered to be a *multifactorial* construct that includes different components of the social environment

that when evaluated together result in an overall positive assessment of one's social life. No single measure completely captures SWB, and as a result, many different types of social characteristics must be considered.

The most basic measures of the social environment are collected via integration measures that assess the extent to which people feel like they belong to their communities. This is typically measured by measures that enumerate important social roles (e.g., spouse, close friend). This work has a rich history dating back to the industrial revolution when Durkheim noted that individuals were more likely to commit suicide upon leaving their families for industrial positions in other cities. Since then, the finding that isolated individuals are at risk for detrimental health outcomes is one of the most pervasive and robust in health psychology. For example, an early study from Alameda County, CA (Berkman and Syme 1979), revealed that those who lacked ties to others were up to three times more likely to die over a 9-year follow-up. Broader social networks (e.g., online networks of friends) are generally less strongly tied to WB since the presence of distant social contacts has less of an immediate and regular impact on one's life. What seems to be critical is the support and resources that your network provides. Related then is the concept of social support or the perception that emotional and objective resources (e.g., information, tangible aid) are available if and when negative events occur. Research has indicated that those who report having support in times of need have lower physiological stress responses, better immune function, and overall better health and resilience to health problems, resulting in broad WB benefits.

Other work focuses more closely on the perception and quality of social ties. For example, loneliness is an indicator of low SWB but can be relatively independent from objective network size. The hallmark of loneliness is not being alone but the accompanying distress related to the *perception* of isolation. The relationships approach would state that SWB is present when an individual can have satisfactory close

relationships and also shows evidence of secure attachment (i.e., a strong emotional bond between two people). If a romantic partner is missing or an individual is insecurely attached, then high SWB would not be expected. There are a number of other related constructs, such as feelings of love and intimacy, social acceptance, and measures of social conflict and hostility, that are also tied to positive and negative appraisals of WB. When considering these feelings and perceptions or relationships, it is critical to also consider differences in social needs. For example, individuals high in extraversion will have greater needs for regular social contact than someone low on this personality trait. By definition, extraverts feel "better" when in the presence of social others and may therefore require greater interaction to achieve SWB as compared to their more introverted counterparts.

Finally, the social milieu contributes to SWB. Groups (e.g., clubs, volunteer groups, religious organizations) provide important feelings of belongingness, support, and contribution, which promote SWB. Those individuals who endorse group membership roles as well as those who report engaging in various social activities generally have higher WB. Beyond close groups, the broader environment also impacts SWB. Social capital describes the resources available to individuals through their membership in their community (e.g., civic associations, civic engagement, perceptions of trust, and sharing in the community). Higher social capital leads to belonging and increased social participation and has been tied to crime prevention and better societal health. This type of social engagement is critical for SWB as it likely has a trickle-down effect onto many of the previously discussed measures.

From the above examples, it is clear that SWB arises from a number of places. It is unlikely that any one characteristic uniquely predicts SWB. It is also important to consider the interaction between internal factors (e.g., attachment style, personality) and external characteristics of the social environment. Two individuals may live in the same social environment yet experience their

social world in different manners, illustrating the importance of individual perception. Future research should consider which components are most critical to SWB and study more closely the interactions between different measurement types in terms of how they predict WB outcomes.

Physical Well-Being

Physical health researchers generally adhere to a medical model that conceptualizes health as the absence of disease, despite the definition in 1948 by the World Health Organization for health as “a state of complete physical, mental and social WB and *not* merely the absence of disease or infirmity.” Physical well-being (PWB) then, is something more than “not sick” and may even reflect individuals realizing their fullest wellness potential, as echoed by the model of positive health by Seligman (2008). Compatible with the PWB model, the wellness continuum model (Sheridan and Radmacher 1992) anchors one end of their model by disease, disability, and death and the other end by optimal human functioning where a person is maximally healthy, has resources for resisting disease, and is capable of experiencing joy (Sheridan and Radmacher 2003). If the medical model idea of health were captured in the continuum model, it would end at the neutral/zero point with no room or definition of WB beyond “disease absent.” Despite multiple models suggesting that there is something beyond the absence of illness, health is still primarily measured by the presence or absence of symptoms, illness and disease, physiological markers, and reports of physical health typically topping off at “I feel very healthy.” Reports of positive physical functioning beyond this “zero” mark are not typically gathered by health practitioners or researchers.

To determine *objective* wellness, researchers and practitioners frequently rely on assessments of biomarkers to determine disease status and risk. These might include factors like immune function, endocrine hormones, or cardiovascular function, which are important indicators of disease

status. While there are general guidelines about what levels indicate “healthy” functioning, these are not frequently tied to current WB. For example, someone may be hypertensive as assessed by blood pressure readings, be a genetic carrier of a serious disease, or even have a blocked artery, but still report feeling healthy and asymptomatic. Furthermore, while biological markers are *possible* correlates of physical health, conclusive statements often cannot be drawn based on physiological measures alone (e.g., lowered immune cell counts). This raises the importance of *subjective* assessments of health when considering PWB.

Self-rated health (SRH), a formalized measure of subjective health, has been used in research studies and suggests that individuals have insight into their health beyond the capabilities of biological measurement tools. Specifically, the commonly used Short-Form Health Survey (SF-36; Ware and Sherbourne 1992) asks questions such as, “In general, would you say your health is excellent, very good, fair, or poor?” Several of these questions take into account individual perspectives concerning what “health” means to the individual and even ask for reports comparative to the past. Additionally, questions such as “Have you felt calm/peaceful/full of pep/happy?” are tapping physical health via constructs that influence reports of PWB but are not direct physical measures. Interestingly, poor SRH is independently associated with increased mortality in diverse socioeconomic groups, age groups, in men and women, over time, even after accounting for objective health status at baseline (e.g., Lekander et al. 2004). Researchers are now investigating whether these nonspecific “sickness” symptoms (weakness, listlessness, decreased motivation) are mediated by stress-induced dysfunctional immune patterns (e.g., high inflammation). Given that positive traits and events are tied to healthy immune function (for further reading, see Pressman and Cohen 2005), it is plausible that positive reports of SRH are occurring via generalized positive feelings that alter the perception of the body and that these positive feelings are representative of an objectively healthy physiology.

At this point, the full mapping of these connections with SRH, biomarkers, emotion, and objective longitudinal health outcomes has not been done.

Problematic in definitions based on biomarkers and disease indicators is determining whether individuals suffering from chronic illness can have high PWB. Based on biological assessment, if an individual is diagnosed with cancer, they have low PWB. However, cancer patients frequently survive their cancer, find benefit in the experience of their illness, build relationships with others, and become optimistic about their future. During treatment, they will clearly experience poor PWB (e.g., side effects of radiation or chemotherapy); however, at some point, they will begin to recover. Self-report measures of PWB may be able to track this based on changes in perceptions of symptoms and health; however, biological measures may be more deficient at determining at what point the person's PWB is on the positive end of the spectrum (i.e., it is unlikely that PWB can be measured by a simple assessment of circulating cancer cells). To truly understand WB in this population and many others, it is clear that there is a need for PWB tools that assess both "harder" biological outcomes partnered with "softer" self-report measures.

Conclusions and Future Directions

Although themes of happiness, physical health, and social involvement have long been studied in philosophy, social psychology theory, and cultural analysis, it has only been in the last 10 years that WB has seen an upswing in interdisciplinary scientific study. Because of this, the scientific community is still working on definitions and operationalizations of critical constructs in the field. Currently, significant overlap exists between WB measures making it difficult to separate and understand these constructs. For example, individuals with serious illness by definition have poor PWB, but it is also likely that PsWB and SWB additionally suffer since illness will

block engagement in activities that promote these WB types. Similarly, current measures of depression and loneliness frequently include questions tapping *both* PsWB and SWB revealing the extent to which these constructs overlap. Measures need to be improved to reflect the specific underlying components of WB in order to better understand the unique ways that these different WBs impact one another as well as outside outcomes. Finally, it is also critical to consider that in many cases, there is benefit to the overlap of these constructs. When considering interventions to improve PWB, it is frequently via SWB (e.g., support) and PsWB (e.g., relaxation) that impressive improvements are seen, ranging from physiological alterations to increased life span. There is clearly therapeutic value to considering ALL types of WB and the interrelations that they have with one another. A thorough understanding of the underlying constructs of WB will enable scientists, health professionals, and individuals of all walks of life to better promote and increase WB at multiple levels, with implications for both personal health and public policy decisions.

Cross-References

- [Emotions: Positive and Negative](#)
- [Happiness and Health](#)
- [SF-36](#)

References and Further Reading

- Berkman, L. F., & Syme, L. (1979). Social networks, host resistance, and mortality: A nine-year follow-up study of Alameda County residents. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 109, 186–204.
- Bradburn, N. M. (1969). *The structure of psychological well-being*. Chicago: Aldine.
- Cacioppo, J. T., & Patrick, B. (2008). *Loneliness: Human nature and the need for social connection*. New York: W.W. Norton.
- Cohen, S., Underwood, L. G., & Gottlieb, B. H. (2000). *Social support measurement and intervention: A guide for health and social scientists*. New York: Oxford University Press.

- Diener, E., Suh, E. M., Lucas, R. E., & Smith, H. L. (1999). Subjective well-being: Three decades of progress. *Psychological Bulletin*, 125, 276–302.
- Diener, E., Lucas, R. E., & Oishi, S. (2002). Subjective well-being: The science of happiness and life satisfaction. In C. R. Snyder & S. J. Lopez (Eds.), *Handbook of positive psychology* (pp. 63–73). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Fredrickson, B. L. (2001). The role of positive emotions in positive psychology: The broaden-and-build theory of positive emotions. *American Psychologist*, 56, 218–226.
- Fredrickson, B. (2002). Positive emotions. In C. R. Snyder & S. J. Lopez (Eds.), *Handbook of positive psychology* (pp. 120–134). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Keyes, C. L. M., Shmotkin, D., & Ryff, C. D. (2002). Optimizing well-being: The empirical encounter of two traditions. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 82, 1007–1022.
- Lekander, M., Elofsson, S., Neve, I. M., Hansson, L. O., & Unden, A. L. (2004). Self-rated health is related to levels of circulating cytokines. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 66, 559–563.
- Lyubomirsky, S., King, L., & Diener, E. (2005). The benefits of frequent positive affect: Does happiness lead to success? *Psychological Bulletin*, 131, 803–855.
- Pressman, S. D., & Cohen, S. (2005). Does positive affect influence health? *Psychological Bulletin*, 131, 925–971.
- Putnam, R. D. (1985). *Bowling alone: The collapse and revival of American community*. New York: Simon & Schuster.
- Ryff, C. (1989). Happiness is everything, or is it? Explorations on the meaning of psychological well-being. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 57, 1069–1081.
- Seligman, M. E. P. (2008). Positive health. *Applied Psychology*, 57, 3–18.
- Sheridan, C. L., & Radmacher, S. A. (1992). *Health psychology: Challenging the biomedical model*. New York: Wiley.
- Sheridan, C. L., & Radmacher, S. A. (2003). Significance of psychosocial factors to health and disease. In L. A. Schein, H. S. Bernard, H. I. Spitz, & P. R. Muskin (Eds.), *Psychosocial treatment for medical conditions: Principles and techniques*. New York: Brunner-Routledge.
- Ware, J. E., & Sherbourne, C. D. (1992). The MOS 36-item short-form health survey (SF-36): I. Conceptual framework and item selection. *Medical Care*, 30, 473–483.

Wellness

► [Well-Being: Physical, Psychological, and Social](#)

Wellness Coaching

► [Digital Health Coaching](#)

Whitehall Study

Mark Hamer

Epidemiology and Public Health, Division of Population Health, University College London, London, UK

Definition

The original Whitehall study of British civil servants began in 1967 and showed a steep inverse association between social class, as assessed by grade of employment, and mortality from a wide range of diseases. The Whitehall II study was later established in 1985 to identify causal pathways linking socioeconomic position to pathophysiological changes and clinical disease. The Whitehall II is an ongoing prospective cohort study of 10,308 British white-collar workers employed in the civil service (Marmot et al. 1991). The study is primarily interested in the pathways explaining social inequalities via characteristics of the work environment, such as job strain, and health-related behaviors including physical activity, smoking, and diet. Data are collected at regular intervals through a combination of self-administered questionnaires and clinical examination. In the 20 years separating the two studies, there has been no diminution in social class difference in morbidity; there remains an inverse association between

Wellbutrin®

► [Bupropion \(Wellbutrin, Zyban\)](#)

employment grade and prevalence of common diseases such as heart disease, cancer, and respiratory diseases. Self-perceived health status and symptoms are worse in participants from lower-status jobs. There are also clear employment-grade differences in health-risk behaviors including smoking, diet, and exercise, in economic circumstances, in possible effects of early-life environment as reflected by height, in social circumstances at work (e.g., monotonous work characterized by low control and low satisfaction), and in social supports. These key findings appear to partly explain the social disparities in health (Stringhini et al. 2010). The Whitehall II study currently has available data for nearly 30 years of follow-up, and many of the participants are now in their seventh and eighth decades of life. Thus, the focus of the study is gradually shifting toward aging since many of the participants are now retired from full-time employment.

Social position can be viewed as an indicator of chronic lifetime stress exposure since people of lower social status tend to experience adverse psychosocial factors including greater financial strain, lower control at work, chronic neighborhood and domestic stresses, and more limited social networks. The Whitehall psychobiology studies have been conducted in healthy subsamples ($N = 250\text{--}500$) of the main study cohort, in 2001 and 2006, and were specifically undertaken to examine the biological processes that might explain the association between psychosocial stress and coronary heart disease (Hamer et al. 2010; Steptoe et al. 2002). In these studies, healthy men and women from the Whitehall II cohort (stratified by grade of employment as a marker of social status) underwent psychophysiological stress testing involving measurement of cardiovascular and biological responses to laboratory-induced mental stressors. Results suggested that lower social status individuals were characterized not so much by heightened cardiovascular responsiveness, but by impaired poststress recovery, or sustained activation after termination of stressors. Results from the most recent study have suggested that stress responsivity is also associated with subclinical coronary

atherosclerosis. Population-based psychophysiological studies with detailed biological measures have contributed to a better understanding about stress and disease pathways.

Cross-References

- [Heart Disease and Cardiovascular Reactivity](#)
- [Psychophysiological Reactivity](#)
- [Psychophysiological Recovery](#)

References and Further Reading

- Hamer, M., O'Donnell, K., Lahiri, A., & Steptoe, A. (2010). Salivary cortisol responses to mental stress are associated with coronary artery calcification in healthy men and women. *European Heart Journal*, 31, 424–429.
- Marmot, M. G., Davey Smith, G., Stansfeld, S., Patel, C., North, F., Head, J., et al. (1991). Health inequalities among British civil servants: The Whitehall II study. *Lancet*, 337, 1387–1393.
- Steptoe, A., Feldman, P. J., Kunz, S., Owen, N., Willemsen, G., & Marmot, M. (2002). Stress responsivity and socioeconomic status: A mechanism for increased cardiovascular disease risk? *European Heart Journal*, 23, 1757–1763.
- Stringhini, S., Sabia, S., Shipley, M., Brunner, E., Nabi, H., Kivimaki, M., et al. (2010). Association of socioeconomic position with health behaviors and mortality. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 303, 1159–1166.

Whole Health

- [Integrative Medicine](#)

Whole-Genome Association Study (WGAS)

- [Genome-Wide Association Study \(GWAS\)](#)

WHR

- [Waist to Hip Ratio](#)

Williams LifeSkills Program

Virginia P. Williams¹ and Redford B. Williams²

¹Williams LifeSkills, Inc., Durham, NC, USA

²Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Division of Behavioral Medicine, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Synonyms

Cognitive-behavioral stress management training; Coping skills training; Hardiness; Heart patients; Incarcerated youths; Online training; Pastors; Resilience; Resilience training; Teens; Telephone coaching; Video applications; Well-being

Definition

Williams LifeSkills is a protocol-driven manualized training program that aims to improve stress coping and interpersonal relationship skills. It focuses on acquiring ten skills in two categories: (1) six skills for handling problematic situations (logkeeping, think before you act to decide between action and deflection, deflection, problem-solving, assertion, and saying no) and (2) four skills for improving relationships with others and oneself (speaking, listening, empathy, and increasing positives over negatives). The program has been evaluated in several clinical trials, with resulting evidence of its efficacy on psychosocial and biological markers. There are several delivery options. The initial standard was face-to-face workshops of 5–12 participants, with a trained facilitator. The video version consists of a 70-min video covering the ten skills, with an accompanying workbook; this video/workshop can be incorporated into a workshop or used as a stand-alone intervention, with or without telephone coaching by a trained facilitator. There is also an online version, either freestanding or with submission of exercises. One-on-one coaching is another option. The initial program has been expanded to include a number of specialized versions that maintain focus on the ten skills: for

caregivers with a relative with Alzheimer's, teens delivered by high school teachers, a specialized teen version for incarcerated youths, pastors who otherwise are usually supporting others, and heart patients.

Description

The Williams LifeSkills copyrighted program evolved over the last two decades as a means of translating research by Redford Williams and others (Williams 2008) that has documented the health-damaging effects of psychosocial factors like hostility/anger, depression, social isolation, job stress, and stressful life situations into a behavioral intervention that can reduce levels, and hopefully the health-damaging effects, of these psychosocial risk factors. Williams LifeSkills, Inc., was founded as a commercial entity in 1996 by Redford and Virginia Williams with the goals of developing and refining this behavioral intervention, doing research to test its efficacy and effectiveness in both controlled and observational clinical trials, and marketing behavioral intervention products shown to work in this research. The founders of Williams LifeSkills have written three books for a lay audience that also serve to describe the program as it evolved (Williams and William 1993, 1997, 2006). While the programs are presented as wellness training for increasing participants' effectiveness in the increasingly stress-filled modern world, they also provide a first-level intervention for individuals with mild to moderate anxiety, depression, and hostility. The intervention has also been used with outpatients with a wide variety of diagnoses, both to help them cope with their illness and to reduce distress over other issues in their lives.

The face-to-face workshop has been used extensively in the United States, Brazil, Singapore, Hungary, and China. Intervention groups are quite varied in these varied settings: some examples are medical students, college students, heart patients, corporate employees, pastors, and health professionals. High school and middle school students, as well as young violent offenders, also have been incorporated into a

general intervention for heart patients in Germany. Facilitators are initially trained for at least 5 days, spending the first 2 days as participants and the last 3 days focusing on practicing supervision of the interactive sections of the program. There is an accompanying participant text (about 40 pages long) and a workbook (about 15 pages long), so the text can either be given to a participant or used again. Participants begin by learning to write up log entries, emphasizing the objective facts, their thoughts and feelings, behaviors, and consequences. They then apply their own examples to practice the other skills. The program thus involves iteration without repetition, since new layers of training are being added. Facilitators are trained to encourage participation, within a set of ground rules, and to emphasize improvement through practice, rather than aiming for perfection. The entire program is designed to fit together, with algorithms to address which skills to apply. As a result, the program can be used in almost any situation a participant might face.

The generic LifeSkills program has also been adapted for specific groups. The LifeSkills course for caregivers focuses on a special video created to address problems particular to caring for someone with a disabling memory disorder. A 121-page workbook accompanies the video. Also part of the program is a manual for five sessions of telephone coaching by a LifeSkills facilitator. All of the materials are oriented to the ten LifeSkills. There is an adaptation for teens in which the emphasis is on issues faced by teens. There is an extensive Facilitator's Manual for high school teachers, which is incorporated into the week-long training that prepares them to deliver the training to students in the high school setting. Teens can either report a personal log entry or draw a role-playing card. Separate packets of cards accompany each skill. Teens have a special text and workbook. The teen program has been modified for incarcerated teens. The same general format is used as in the school program, but the role-playing cards are different. Some of the illustrations and workbook examples also are modified. In the United States, prison educators are trained to be the facilitators. In China, the program

is being tested, using psychiatrists and psychologists as facilitators. The program for medical personnel has assumed different forms in the United States, Hungary, and China. The program for heart patients also has assumed different forms in the United States and Singapore (also adapted a number of clinical trials that have documented the efficacy of the LifeSkills program in its various forms in the United States and Canada). The first study to document benefits of an early version – based on *Anger Kills* (Williams and William 1993) – of the LifeSkills workshop was a small randomized controlled trial (RCT) in males following a heart attack. Results showed that hostility after the end of training as assessed by both structured interview and questionnaire and resting diastolic blood pressure were reduced significantly more in patients in the active arm than those randomized to usual care (Gidron et al. 1999). Both these improvements were maintained or enhanced at follow-up 2 months later. Because this study was conducted in Canada, it was possible to do a follow-up assessment of the clinical course over the 6 months post-training. Compared to usual care, men in the active arm showed significant reductions in both hospital stay and medical care costs over the 6 months follow-up (Davidson et al. 2007). Another RCT evaluating benefits of the LifeSkills video found significantly larger reductions in both trait anxiety and perceived stress among the active arm participants compared to those randomized to wait list control, both 2 weeks after the end of training and after 6 months follow-up (Kirby et al. 2006). In an RCT evaluating the LifeSkills workshop augmented by the LifeSkills video, hypertensive employees of a large urban medical center who were randomized to LifeSkills training showed significantly larger, clinically significant decreases in systolic blood pressure compared to those receiving usual care according to JNC-7 guidelines (Clemow et al. 2018). A controlled (alternating assignment to active vs. wait list arms), clinical trial of the LifeSkills video adapted for use by caregivers of a relative with Alzheimer's disease showed that those in the LifeSkills for Caregivers video arm, who also

received weekly telephone coaching calls, showed significantly larger decreases in depressive symptoms, trait anxiety, perceived stress, and systolic and diastolic blood pressure that were maintained or enhanced at 6 months follow-up (Williams et al. 2010). In addition to replicating findings of psychosocial improvement following LifeSkills training, this study extends the demonstration of benefits to include a potential biological mechanism whereby stress damages health – higher blood pressure.

The LifeSkills program has also been adapted for use in Singapore, China, and Hungary. In Singapore, Bishop et al. (2005) conducted a RCT of the LifeSkills workshop in a sample of 59 male Singaporean (60% Chinese) patients following coronary bypass surgery. In addition to robust improvements with regard to both negative and positive psychosocial risk factors, blood pressure and heart rate at both rest and in response to anger recall were significantly decreased in men randomized to LifeSkills workshop training, with all improvements maintained or enhanced at 3 months follow-up. Effect sizes for these psychosocial and cardiovascular improvements in the LifeSkills workshop arm were moderate to large. In China the focus to date has been on students (Li et al. 2012; Chen et al. 2013; Zhang et al. 2015). In Hungary, an observational trial of the LifeSkills workshop by Stauder et al. (2010) found that distressed persons in the Budapest metro area who participated in the workshop showed a pattern of psychosocial improvements that is remarkably similar to those observed by Bishop et al. (2005) on the other side of the world. Effect sizes in Hungary were similarly moderate to large. Dr. Stauder and colleagues at Semmelweis University in Budapest are now conducting RCTs of the LifeSkills workshop in workplace settings in Hungary. A large-scale study in the northwest section of Hungary is now underway to train 6000 teachers in 300 schools in LifeSkills, with additional modules on conflict training, aggression management and prevention, bullying management and prevention, motivation increase, and burnout prevention in the school setting.

Evidence for the effectiveness of Williams LifeSkills products in real-world settings comes from two observational trials. In one, conducted by Campo et al. (2008), second-year medical students who participated in the WLSR workshop over a 2-day period showed significant reductions in hostility and in the use of placating and avoidant responses in difficult patient scenarios following the training. In contrast, a comparison group of second-year students the following year who did not receive WLSR training showed slight increases in both hostility and placating and avoidant responses. In an observational trial of the LifeSkills workshop among employees of one of our corporate clients, at the end of training, there were significant decreases in depressive symptoms and state and trait anxiety and increased social support; except for social support, all these improvements were maintained or enhanced at follow-up 6 months later (Williams et al. 2009).

The LifeSkills reach continues to expand, since the skills acquired contribute to resiliency and hence can be applied across a broad range of situations where potential high stress needs to be inoculated against.

Cross-References

- ▶ [Alzheimer's Disease](#)
- ▶ [Cognitive Behavioral Therapy \(CBT\)](#)
- ▶ [Coping](#)
- ▶ [Hardiness and Health](#)
- ▶ [Internet-Based Interventions](#)
- ▶ [Resilience](#)

References and Further Reading

- Bishop, G. D., Kaur, D., & Tan, V. L. M. (2005). Effects of a psychosocial skills training workshop on psychophysiological and psychosocial risk in patients undergoing coronary artery bypass grafting. *American Heart Journal*, 150, 602–609.
- Campo, A. E., Williams, V., Williams, R. B., Segundo, M. A., Lydston, D., & Weiss, S. M. (2008). Effects of LifeSkills training on medical students' performance in

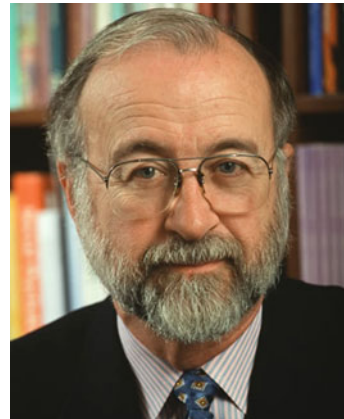
- dealing with complex clinical cases. *Academic Psychiatry*, 32(3), 188–193.
- Chen, C., Li, C., Wang, H., Joun, J., Zhou, J.-S., & Want, X.-P. (2013). Cognitive behavioral therapy to reduce overt aggression behavior in Chinese young male violent offenders. *Aggressive Behavior*, 40(4), 329–336.
- Clemow, L. P., Pickering, T. G., Davidson, K. W., & Liriano, C. (2009). Multi-component stress management for hypertensives: For whom does it work best? *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 71, A-127.
- Clemow, L. P., Pickering, T. G., Schwartz, J., Williams, V. P., Shaffer, J. A., Williams, R. B., & Gerin, W. (2018). Stress management in the workplace for employees with hypertension: A randomized controlled trial. *Translational Behavioral Medicine*, 8(5), 761–770.
- Davidson, K. W., Gidron, Y., Mostofsky, E., & Trudeau, K. J. (2007). Hospitalization cost offset of a hostility intervention for coronary heart disease patients. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 75, 657–662.
- Gidron, Y., Davidson, K. W., & Bata, I. (1999). The short-term effects of a hostility-reduction intervention on male coronary heart disease patients. *Health Psychology*, 18, 416–420.
- Kirby, E. D., Williams, V. P., Hocking, M. C., Lane, J. D., & Williams, R. B. (2006). Psychosocial benefits of three formats of a standardized behavioral stress management program. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 68, 816–823.
- Li, C., Chu, F., Wang, H., & Wang, X.-p. (2012). Efficacy of Williams LifeSkills training for improving psychological health: A pilot comparison study of Chinese medical students. *Asia-Pacific Psychiatry*, 6(2), 161–169.
- Stauder, A., Konkoly Thege, B., Kovács, M. E., Balog, P., Williams, V. P., & Williams, R. B. (2010). Worldwide stress: Different problems, similar solutions? Cultural adaptation and evaluation of a standardized stress management program in Hungary. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 17, 25–32.
- Williams, R. B. (2008). Psychosocial and biobehavioral factors and their interplay in coronary heart disease. *Annual Review of Clinical Psychology*, 4, 349–365.
- Williams, R. B., & William, V. P. (1993). *Anger kills: Seventeen strategies for controlling the hostility that can harm your health*. New York: Times Books. Trade paperback edition published by Harper-Collins, Spring, 1994.
- Williams, V. P., & Williams, R. B. (1997). *LifeSkills: 8 Simple ways to build stronger relationships, communicate more clearly, improve your health, and even the health of those around you*. New York: Times Books/Random House. Paperback, Apr 1999.
- Williams, R. B., & Williams, V. P. (2006). *In control*. New York: Rodale Books.
- Williams, V. P., Brenner, S. L., Helms, M. J., & Williams, R. B. (2009). Coping skills training to reduce psychosocial risk factors for medical disorders: A field trial evaluating effectiveness in multiple worksites. *Journal of Occupational Health*, 51, 437–442.
- Williams, V. P., Bishop-Fitzpatrick, L., Lane, J. D., Gwyther, L. P., Ballard, E. L., Vendittelli, A. P., et al. (2010). Video-based coping skills to reduce health risk and improve psychological and physical well-being in Alzheimer's disease family caregivers. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 72(9), 897–904.
- Zhang, S., Wang, H., Chen, C., Zhou, J. G., & Wang, X.-P. (2015). Efficacy of Williams LifeSkills training in improving psychological health of Chinese male juvenile violent offenders. *Neuroscience Bulletin*, 31(1), 53–60.

Williams Redford B. Jr.

Redford B. Williams

Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences, Division of Behavioral Medicine, Duke University, Durham, NC, USA

Biographical Information



Redford B. Williams, Jr., was born in Raleigh, NC, on December 14, 1940. Following graduation from Northampton High School in Eastville, Virginia, in June 1959, he entered Harvard College, receiving his A.B. degree in 1963. He married Virginia Carter Parrott in 1963, and they have two children and three grandchildren. Williams received his M.D. degree from Yale in 1967, where he completed his internship and residency in internal medicine in 1970. Following 2 years as

a clinical associate at NIMH in Bethesda, MD, he was appointed assistant professor in the Departments of Psychiatry and Medicine at Duke University Medical Center, Durham, NC, in 1972, advancing to the rank of professor in 1978. Since 1985, he has been director of the Behavioral Medicine Research Center at Duke. He was named Head, Division of Behavioral Medicine in the Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences at Duke in 1990. In 1991, he was appointed professor of Psychology at Duke and adjunct professor of Epidemiology in the School of Public Health at the University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill. He has served on several Medical Center committees over the years, including the Awards Committee (Chair), the Conflict of Interest Committee, and the Department of Psychiatry and Behavioral Sciences Appointments, Promotion, and Tenure Committee. Williams has been continuously funded by the NIH since receiving a Research Scientist Development Award from NIMH in 1974; he has been principal investigator on a program project grant from the NHLBI that began in 1986, continuing till April, 2015. In 1996, he collaborated with Virginia Parrott Williams to found Williams LifeSkills, Inc., a company with the mission of developing, testing, and marketing behavioral intervention products aimed at reducing the health-damaging effects of psychosocial risk factors such as hostility, depression, and social isolation. Williams has served as the president of the leading scientific societies in the field of psychosomatic/behavioral medicine, including the Society of Behavioral Medicine (1983–1984), the American Psychosomatic Society (1992–1993), the Academy of Behavioral Medicine Research (1995–1996), and the International Society of Behavioral Medicine (2006–2008). He was the inaugural recipient of the Society of Behavioral Medicine's Distinguished Scientist Award (1992). Williams is grateful for the mentorship he has received from George Goethals, Stan King, and John Spiegel at Harvard; Pat McKegney and Mickey Willard at Yale; Irv Kopin and Lyman Wynne at NIMH; Bud Busse and Saul Schanberg at Duke; and numerous colleagues and students at each step along the way over the years.

Major Accomplishments

Beginning with publication of two papers in 1965–1967 reporting effects of interview variables on blood pressure reactivity that were found in his research as a medical student at Yale, Williams has been continuously engaged in research aimed at identifying psychosocial factors that increase risk of cardiovascular disease and the biobehavioral mechanisms that mediate that risk. In the mid-1970s, following training in the assessment of type A behavior by Ray Rosenman and Meyer Friedman, Williams began a still ongoing project that initially pinpointed hostility as the toxic core of the type A behavior pattern. Working over the ensuing years with his Duke psychiatry and cardiology colleagues, Williams has made important contributions to our understanding of the role played by psychosocial factors such as hostility, depression, social isolation, and low socioeconomic status in the pathogenesis and course of cardiovascular disease, as well as the role of mediators such as increased sympathetic and HPA axis function, decreased parasympathetic function, and unhealthy lifestyle behaviors.

In the mid-1980s, Williams began the process of translating research findings on the health-damaging effects of psychosocial risk factors into behavioral interventions to prevent and/or ameliorate those effects. He has collaborated with his spouse of 48 years, Virginia Parrott Williams, to develop the Williams LifeSkills coping skills training program and evaluate its effects on psychosocial risk factors and biobehavioral mechanisms. Published clinical trials have documented a broad range of benefits of this program: decreased levels of hostility, anger, depression, anxiety, and perceived stress; decreased levels of blood pressure and heart rate at rest and during lab challenge; and increased levels of satisfaction with social support and satisfaction with life. These benefits persist over 6 months after the end of training and have been observed in distressed groups like patients following coronary artery bypass surgery and caregivers of a relative with Alzheimer's disease and in diverse cultural settings ranging from the USA to Singapore, to China, and to Hungary.

Beginning in the late 1990s, Williams has extended the focus of his research to include a search for genetic variants that increase one's vulnerability to the effects of environmental stressors on psychosocial risk factors and biobehavioral mechanisms. Based on his hypothesis that dysregulated central nervous system, serotonin plays an important role in the clustering of psychosocial and biobehavioral risk factors in certain individuals; this work focused initially on genes that regulate serotonin functions. A typical finding emerging in this ongoing work is an association between the more functional long allele of the serotonin promoter 5HTTLPR polymorphism and increased cardiovascular reactivity to acute mental stress, suggesting that the long allele will be associated with increased risk of coronary heart disease – a prediction that has been confirmed in three independent case-control studies in Asia and Europe. Williams and his colleagues at Duke and elsewhere are currently working to test the hypothesis that genetic variants found associated – whether directly or via gene x environment interactions – with predispose endophenotypes such as increased neuroendocrine, sympathetic nervous system, and cardiovascular reactivity to stress, and increased expression of the metabolic syndrome are also associated with incidence of cardiovascular disease and/or type 2 diabetes in large cohorts of both healthy persons and persons with coronary heart disease.

Another important contribution over the years has been Williams' mentoring of students and postdoctoral fellows who have gone on to make their own important contributions to the field of behavioral medicine: Norman Anderson, Gary Bennett, James Blumenthal, Beverly Brummett, Shin Fukudo, Jim Lane, Linda Luecken, Marcelus Merritt, Len Poon, and Ed Suarez.

Cross-References

► [Williams LifeSkills Program](#)

References and Readings

Anderson, N. B., Muranaka, M., Williams, R. B., Lane, J. D., & Houseworth, S. J. (1988). Racial differences in

- blood pressure and forearm vascular responses to the cold face stimulus. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 50, 57–63.
- Barefoot, J. C., Dahlstrom, W. G., & Williams, R. B. (1983). Hostility, CHD incidence and total mortality: A 25-year follow-up study of 255 physicians. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 45, 59–63.
- Brummett, B. H., Boyle, S. H., Siegler, I. C., Kuhn, C., Ashley-Koch, A., Jonassaint, C. R., et al. (2008a). Effects of environmental stress and gender on associations among symptoms of depression and the serotonin transporter gene linked polymorphic region (5-HTTLPR). *Behavior Genetics*, 38, 34–43.
- Brummett, B. H., Muller, C. L., Collins, A. L., Boyle, S. H., Kuhn, C. M., Siegler, I. C., et al. (2008b). 5-HTTLPR and gender moderate changes in negative affect responses to tryptophan infusion. *Behavior Genetics*, 38, 476–483.
- Brummett, B. H., Babyak, M. A., Siegler, I. C., Shanahan, M., Harris, K. M., Elder, G. H., et al. (2011). Systolic blood pressure, socioeconomic status, and biobehavioral risk factors in a nationally representative US young adult sample. *Hypertension*, 58, 161–166.
- Fukudo, S., Lane, J. D., Anderson, N. B., Kuhn, C. M., Schanberg, S. M., McCown, N., et al. (1992). Accentuated vagal antagonism of beta-adrenergic effects on ventricular repolarization: Differential responses between Type A and Type B men. *Circulation*, 85, 2045–2053.
- Kirby, E. D., Williams, V. P., Hocking, M. C., Lane, J. D., & Williams, R. B. (2006). Psychosocial benefits of three formats of a standardized behavioral stress management program. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 68, 816–823.
- Kring, S. I., Brummett, B. H., Barefoot, J., Garrett, M. E., Ashley-Koch, A. E., Boyle, S. H., et al. (2010). Impact of psychological stress on the associations between apolipoprotein E variants and metabolic traits: Findings in an American sample of caregivers and controls. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 72(5), 427–433.
- McKegney, F. P., & Williams, R. B. (1967). Psychological aspects of hypertension: II. The differential influence of interview variables on blood pressure. *The American Journal of Psychiatry*, 123, 1539–1543.
- Siegler, I. C., Peterson, B. L., Barefoot, J. C., & Williams, R. B., Jr. (1992). Hostility during late adolescence predicts coronary risk factors at mid-life. *American Journal of Epidemiology*, 136, 146–154.
- Stauder, A., Konkoly Thege, B., Kovács, M. E., Balog, P., Williams, V. P., & Williams, R. B. (2010). Worldwide stress: Different problems, similar solutions? Cultural adaptation and evaluation of a standardized stress management program in Hungary. *International Journal of Behavioral Medicine*, 17, 25–32.
- Williams, R. B. (1994). Neurobiology, cellular and molecular biology, and psychosomatic medicine. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 56, 308–315.
- Williams, R. B., & Chesney, M. A. (1993). Psychosocial factors and prognosis in established coronary artery disease. The need for research on interventions.

- Journal of the American Medical Association*, 270, 1860–1861.
- Williams, R. B., & Eichelman, R. (1971). Social setting: Influence upon physiological responses to electric shock in the rat. *Science*, 174, 613–614.
- Williams, R. B., & McKegney, F. P. (1965). Psychological aspects of hypertension: I. The influence of experimental interview variables on blood pressure. *The Yale Journal of Biology and Medicine*, 38, 265–273.
- Williams, R. B., & William, V. P. (1993). *Anger kills: Seventeen strategies for controlling the hostility that can harm your health*. New York: Times Books. Trade paperback edition published by Harper-Collins. Spring, 1994.
- Williams, V. P., & Williams, R. B. (1998). *LIFESKILLS: 8 simple ways to build stronger relationships, communicate more clearly, improve your health, and even the health of those around you*. New York: Times Books/Random House, Spring. Paperback. April, 1999.
- Williams, R. B., Kimball, C. P., & Willard, H. N. (1973). The influence of interpersonal interaction upon diastolic blood pressure. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 34, 194–198.
- Williams, R. B., Bittker, T. E., Buchsbaum, M. S., & Wynne, L. C. (1975). Cardiovascular and neurophysiologic correlates of sensory intake and rejection: I. Effect of cognitive tasks. *Psychophysiology*, 12, 427–433.
- Williams, R. B., Haney, T. L., Blumenthal, J. A., & Kong, Y. (1980). Type A behavior, hostility, and coronary atherosclerosis. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 42, 539–549.
- Williams, R. B., Lane, J. D., Kuhn, C. M., Melosh, W., White, A. D., & Schanberg, S. M. (1982). Type A behavior and elevated physiological and neuroendocrine responses to cognitive tasks. *Science*, 218, 483–485.
- Williams, R. B., Barefoot, J. C., Califf, R. M., Haney, T. L., Saunders, W. B., Pryor, D. B., et al. (1992). Prognostic importance of social and economic resources among medically treated patients with angiographically documented coronary artery disease. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 267, 520–524.
- Williams, R. B., Barefoot, J. C., Blumenthal, J. A., Helms, M. J., Luecken, L., Pieper, C. F., et al. (1997). Psychosocial correlates of job strain in a sample of working women. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 54, 543–548.
- Williams, R. B., Marchuk, D. A., Gadde, K. M., Barefoot, J. C., Grichnik, K., Helms, M. J., et al. (2003). Serotonin-related gene polymorphisms and central nervous system serotonin function. *Neuropsychopharmacology*, 28, 533–541.
- Williams, R. B., Marchuk, D. A., Siegler, I. C., Barefoot, J. C., Helms, M. J., Brummett, B. H., et al. (2008). Childhood socioeconomic status and serotonin transporter gene polymorphism enhance cardiovascular reactivity to mental stress. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 70, 32–39.
- Williams, V. P., Bishop-Fitzpatrick, L., Lane, J. D., Gwyther, L. P., Ballard, E. L., Vendittelli, A. P., et al. (2010a). Video-based coping skills to reduce health risk and improve psychological and physical well-being in Alzheimer's disease family caregivers. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 72(9), 897–904.
- Williams, R. B., Surwit, R. S., Siegler, I. C., Ashley-Koch, A. E., Collins, A. L., Helms, M. J., et al. (2010b). Central nervous system serotonin and clustering of hostility, psychosocial, metabolic and cardiovascular endophenotypes in men. *Psychosomatic Medicine*, 72, 601–607.

Willingness-to-Pay (WTP)

- [Benefit Evaluation in Health Economic Studies](#)

Wish for a Hastened Death

- [End-of-Life](#)

Women's Cardiovascular Health

- [Women's Health](#)

Women's Health

Michael O'Hara
Department of Psychology, University of Iowa,
Iowa City, IA, USA

Synonyms

[Women's cardiovascular health](#); [Women's mental health](#); [Women's reproductive health](#); [Women's well-being](#)

Definition

A recent Institute of Medicine committee approached women's health as a concept that has

expanded beyond the reproductive system and includes "... health conditions that are specific to women, are more common or more serious in women, have distinct causes or manifestations in women, have different outcomes or treatments in women, or have high morbidity or mortality in women (pp. 2–3)" (Institute of Medicine [IOM] 2010). Examples of these conditions include breast cancer, cardiovascular disease, cervical cancer, depression, HIV/AIDS, and osteoporosis, among others.

Description

History

Historically, women's health referred to women's reproductive health – the menstrual cycle, pregnancy, labor, delivery, and menopause. It is only in the past three decades that women's health has been understood to include the full complement of women's health concerns. For example, it was common for women of reproductive potential to be excluded from clinical trials because of the possibility of unknown teratogenic effects of the medication under study. In fact, in 1977, the FDA restricted women of childbearing potential from being in clinical trials. This policy was only reversed in 1993. Moreover, it was assumed that results of clinical trials with men could be extrapolated to women. This was an untested assumption that is now known to be untrue. Additionally, investigators were concerned that the hormonal fluctuations associated with the menstrual cycle would influence study findings in unknown ways. For all of these reasons, the great bulk of health research until recently has either excluded women or included them in small numbers or has not analyzed the data for sex differences. These deficiencies are slowly being remedied.

There have been a number of important milestones in women's health. For example, the publication of *Our Bodies, Ourselves* in 1970 by the Boston Women's Health Book Collective was a landmark event in women advocating for women's health. This organization and its work continue today. It argues that it has brought

several key ideas into the public discourse on women's health (Our Bodies Ourselves [OBOS] 2011).

- That women, as informed health consumers, are catalysts for social change
- That women can become their own health experts, particularly through discussing issues of health and sexuality with each other
- That health consumers have a right to know about controversies surrounding medical practices and about where consensus among medical experts may be forming
- That women comprise the largest segment of health workers, health consumers, and health decision-makers for their families and communities, but are underrepresented in positions of influence and policy making
- That a pathology/disease approach to normal life events (birthing, menopause, aging, death) is not an effective way in which to consider health or structure a health system

Change in traditional concepts of women's health did not occur quickly, and it was not until 1980s that clear recognition of the importance of a women's health perspective came into focus. In the forward to a seminal 1985 Public Health Service Task Force report on women's health, Edward Brandt, assistant secretary for health said "This report does not focus strictly on the diseases and problems unique to women in the traditional sense, that is, reproductive problems, but rather is devoted to assessing the problems of women's health, in the context of the lives women in America lead today (p. 74)." Going on the report states: "Good health requires a safe and healthful physical and social environment, an adequate income, safe housing, good nutrition, access to preventive and treatment services appropriate to the persons to be served, and a population that is educated and motivated to maintain healthful behaviors" (p. 77).

In 1990, the Congressional Caucus for Women's Issues (CCWI) pushed through legislation entitled the Women's Health Equity Act. This act created the Office for Women's Health Research at the NIH. It also created a gynecology research program and a Center for Women's Health Research at the NIH. Finally, it required

the NIH director to report on progress on women's health and research and that a database be developed of research on women's health and to require the inclusion of women and minorities in NIH trials. The authors of the bill pointed to the then recent Harvard study of 22,000 men (and no women), which demonstrated that daily aspirin could prevent heart attacks as a case of blatant discrimination against women. The CCWI continued to be very active in subsequent congressional sessions in pushing through many additional laws aimed at improving women's health and including women in biomedical research.

Subsequent to the to the Women's Health Equity Act, there has been a great deal of legislation that bears on improving women's health through improved services and research. Most recently, the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (Public Law 111-148) formally codified the Office of Women's Health Research at the NIH, and it formally established an Office of Women's Health in the director's office of the Agency for Health Care Research and Quality (AHRQ), Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), Food and Drug Administration (FDA), Health Resources and Services Administration (HRSA), and Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMSA). Additionally, it also established a Department of Health and Human Services Coordinating Committee on Women's Health and a National Women's Health Information Center.

Advocacy Matters: The Example of Breast Cancer

Until the 1970s, there was very little public discussion of breast cancer. Often, it was a cause of shame in families. There were several important landmarks in the 1970s that set the stage for the current strong advocacy around breast cancer prevention and treatment. Already mentioned, *Our Body, Ourselves*, helped set the stage for women taking control of their health. In 1974, the first lady, Betty Ford, was diagnosed with breast cancer. She spoke about her experiences in public, and this encouraged others to do the same. At about the time, Rose Kushner, a journalist, was

diagnosed with breast cancer. She objected to the then common practice in which a tumor biopsy and radical mastectomy were performed in a single surgical operation while the patient was under anesthesia. Instead she insisted on a two-step procedure in which biopsies and surgery were undertaken as separate procedures, allowing a woman time to consider her options. This was very unpopular with the medical establishment. However, through persistent advocacy, her efforts resulted in a 1977 NIH panel (of which she was a member), concluding that the two-step procedure that she recommended should be adopted, and that in primary breast cancer, the standard treatment should be a total simple mastectomy rather than the more common radical mastectomy.

The first major advocacy organization was the Susan G. Komen Breast Cancer Foundation in 1982. The work of the Foundation has been described as priming the market (step 1), which means drawing attention to breast cancer through personal stories and by communicating the impact of breast cancer in stark and concrete terms (Braun 2003). Important in this effort was portraying that there was hope in the form of prevention and effective treatment. In a related manner, efforts were made to engage consumers (step 2) by sponsoring activities, such as the "Race for the Cure" established in 1983. These activities brought positive media attention and raised money for further advocacy. Political action (step 3) in 1980s and 1990s led to a number of legislative, regulatory, and funding accomplishments, for example, the army took on the task of breast cancer research; the Breast and Cervical Cancer Early Detection Program was established; and federal funding for breast cancer research increased fivefold in the 1990s. Currently, over \$700,000,000 dollars in federal funds is allocated to breast cancer research each year. The final step in breast cancer advocacy is that the movement has gone mainstream (step 4). There is little question that breast cancer is firmly entrenched in the American consciousness. The ubiquitous pink ribbons and strong support for breast cancer research in the congress and the strong corporate support and the continuing proliferation of strong national and local

advocacy groups speak to the effectiveness of breast cancer advocacy by women over the past 30 years.

Progress in Women's Health Research

In 2010, the Institute of Medicine released a report entitled *Women's Health Research: Progress, Pitfalls, and Priorities*. The committee considered some select diseases of importance to women and characterized the nature of progress that has been made in prevention and treatment. Breast cancer, cervical cancer, and cardiovascular disease are conditions on which research has contributed to major progress. For example, the age-adjusted mortality from invasive breast cancer dropped from 33.1 per 100,000 women in 1990 to 22.8 per 100,000 in 2007 due to increased screening and improved adjuvant therapies. Despite these gains, the incidence of breast cancer is higher today than in 1975. However, there has been a significant decrease in estrogen-positive breast cancers since 2002, probably because of the large decline in hormone replacement therapy for menopause.

HIV/AIDS is an example of a condition in which scientific research has led to some progress in women's health despite the early heavy research emphasis on men. The proportion of AIDS cases represented by women has been increasing steadily since 1985, and women now represent about 27% of cases. Like the case for men, prevention entails decreasing high-risk sexual behavior. However, women suffer from their own high-risk sexual behavior as well as that of their partner, which makes prevention more challenging. Antiretroviral therapy has made a tremendous impact for women (as well as men). However, women seem to be less tolerant of the side effects of these therapies, and treatment toxicity remains a significant problem for women suffering from HIV/AIDS. Treatment and side effects for pregnant women and the offspring can also be problematic.

Autoimmune disorders as a group are common (third only to cardiovascular disease and cancer). Examples of autoimmune disorders include diabetes, thyroid disease, Graves' disease, lupus, rheumatoid arthritis, and multiple sclerosis. They affect 5–8% of population, but over 78% of those

affected are women. Advances in knowledge have occurred over the past 20 years, but these advances have not led to treatment advances beyond the treatment of symptoms. These disorders do not have the mortality associated with cardiovascular disease and cancer, but they are associated with significant morbidity and reduced quality of life.

Women's Mental Health

Mental health problems represent a significant burden for women. For example, globally, among women aged 15–44 years, unipolar depressive disorders are the second leading cause of disability (measured in disability-adjusted life years) after HIV/AIDS. Moreover, schizophrenia, bipolar affective disorder, suicide attempts, and panic disorder are in the top 15 conditions causing disability in young women. Depressive and anxiety disorders are much more common in women than men – for depression, the ratio is approximately 2 to 1 around the world. These disorders are found in all societies, not just the societies in the developed nations. In addition to the suffering experienced by women due to mental health problems, there is a large and increasing literature linking maternal mental health problems to behavioral and mental health problems in the offspring. Effective pharmacological and psychotherapeutic interventions exist for depressive and anxiety disorders. Nevertheless, women often go untreated in part because of lack of access but also because the women's depressive and anxiety disorders are often undetected in primary care settings such as prenatal and postnatal health care and routine gynecological care. Major initiatives are underway to develop more effective methods of detecting depression and anxiety among women and primary care and to provide more efficacious and accessible treatment for these women.

Cross-References

- [Breast Cancer](#)
- [Cardiovascular Disease](#)
- [Clinical Trial](#)

- ▶ Depression
- ▶ Diabetes
- ▶ Menopause
- ▶ Panic Disorder
- ▶ Pregnancy

References and Readings

- Boston Women's Health Book Collective. (1973). *Our bodies, ourselves: A book by and for women*. New York: Simon and Schuster.
- Braun, S. (2003). The history of breast cancer advocacy. *The Breast Journal*, 9, S101–S103.
- Institute of Medicine (IOM). (2010). *Women's health research: Progress, pitfalls, and promise*. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press.
- National Cancer Institute. (2011). *Cancer research funding*. From <http://www.cancer.gov/cancertopics/factsheet/NCI/research-funding>. Accessed 23 Apr 2011.
- Our Bodies Ourselves. (2011). From <http://www.ourbodiesourselves.org/about/default.asp>. Accessed 17 Apr 2011.
- US Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). (1985). Women's health. Report of the public health service task force on women's health issues. *Public Health Reports*, 100, 73–106.
- World Health Organization (WHO). (1946). *Preamble to the constitution of the World Health Organization as adopted by the International Health conference*, New York, June, 19–22, 1946; Signed on 22 July 1946 by the Representatives of 61 States (Official Records of the World Health Organization, No. 2, p. 100) and Entered into Force on April 7, 1948. From <http://www.who.int/about/definition/en/print.html>. Accessed 17 Apr 2011.
- World Health Organization (WHO). (2001). *The world health report: 2001: Mental health: New understanding, new hope*. Geneva: Author.

Women's Health Initiative (WHI)

Jonathan Newman
Columbia University, New York, NY, USA

Definition

The Women's Health Initiative (WHI) is a long-term, domestic health study that has focused on preventing heart disease, colorectal cancer, and

osteoporotic fractures in post-menopausal women, all of which are major causes of death and disability in older women.

Description

The WHI is a multimillion-dollar study sponsored by the National Institutes of Health (NIH) and the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, involving 161,308 women aged 50–79. The study has two major parts: a set of randomized clinical trials and an observational component. The WHI clinical trials (CT) include three overlapping components: the hormone therapy (HT) trials, dietary modification (DM) trials, and the calcium and vitamin D (CaD) trial. Each trial is a randomized comparison among postmenopausal women, age 50–79 at enrollment, who could be randomized into one, two, or three of the CT trials. Women who declined or were unable to participate were invited to participate in the observational study (OS), including 93,976 participants.

The HT trial is one of the most noteworthy within the WHI, and it consists of two separate trials, one for women who were post-hysterectomy at the time randomization (estrogen-alone trial) and one for women with a uterus (estrogen plus progestin trial). Both the hormone therapy trials and the CaD trial had a 1:1 double-blinded, placebo-controlled randomization, while the DM trial randomized 40% of women to a sustained low-fat diet and 60% to self-selected dietary behavior.

After 5.6 years of follow-up, the estrogen plus progestin (E+P) trial was stopped in 2002 because of increased risks of cardiovascular disease and breast cancer among women randomized to active treatment. While at a lower risk for colon cancer and fracture, women on estrogen and progestin had a higher risk of heart disease, stroke, blood clots, and certain types of breast cancer. After stopping the E+P trial, the WHI continued to follow up the women involved. Three years after stopping hormone therapy with estrogen and progestin, the women no longer had an increased risk of cardiovascular disease nor a lower risk of colon cancer compared to women who were randomized

to placebo. Further follow-up revealed a nearly twofold increase in the incidence of breast cancer among women who had taken this hormone combination for 5 or more years. However, once estrogen and progestin hormone therapy was stopped, the risk of breast cancer decreased significantly, independent of rates of mammography in the population as a whole during this time.

The estrogen-alone trial was stopped in 2004 after 6.8 years of follow-up. It was found that estrogen alone did not affect the risk of heart disease; however, the risk of stroke was increased by 12 cases per 10,000 women taking estrogen alone and tended to increase the incidence of deep vein thrombosis as well. Similar to the results of the E+P HT trial, estrogen alone decreased the occurrence of both hip and total bone fractures. Colorectal cancer rates were unaffected, and there was a small suggestion of a reduction in breast cancer incidence. In a follow-up study, there was an indication that estrogen alone might decrease the amount of coronary artery calcium, a useful subclinical marker of atherosclerotic risk. Taking into account all the diseases studied during the estrogen-alone trial, the WHI investigators concluded that estrogen should not be used to prevent heart disease specifically, nor chronic diseases overall in postmenopausal women without a uterus.

The DM trials, while largely negative in terms of the effects of fat and caloric restriction on either breast or colorectal cancer in postmenopausal women, did suggest that reductions in saturated and trans fat, along with higher intakes of fruit and vegetables, may have a protective effect on the incidence of cardiovascular disease in these women. The separate CaD trials, while failing to show a protective effect of calcium and vitamin D on the occurrence of hip fracture in all postmenopausal women, did find a protective effect on the occurrence of hip fractures in women over the age of 60. The WHI trialists have recognized that the dose of calcium and vitamin D may have been insufficient to prevent hip fractures and may have contributed to the largely negative findings of this trial. Further, in the CaD trial, there were no beneficial effects of calcium and vitamin D on the occurrence of colon cancer. However, there were

small (1%) but significant protective effects on maintenance of bone mineral density seen in women taking calcium plus vitamin D supplements.

References and Readings

- Beresford, S., Johnson, K., Ritenbaugh, C., Lasser, N., Snetselaar, L., Black, H., Anderson, G., Assaf, A., Bassford, T., Bowen, D., Brunner, R., Brzyski, R., Caan, B., Chlebowski, R., et al. (2006). Low-fat dietary pattern and risk of colorectal cancer: The women's health initiative randomized controlled dietary modification trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 295, 643–654.
- Jackson, R., LaCroix, A., Gass, M., Wallace, R., Robbins, J., Lewis, C., Bassford, T., Beresford, S., Black, H., Blanchette, P., Bonds, D., Brunner, R., Bryzski, R., Caan, B., et al. (2006). Calcium plus vitamin D supplementation and the risk of fractures. *NEJM*, 354(7), 669–683.
- The Women's Health Initiative Steering Committee. (2004). Effects of conjugated equine estrogen in postmenopausal women with hysterectomy. The women's health initiative randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 291, 1701–1712.
- The Writing Group for the WHI Investigators. (2002). Risks and benefits of estrogen plus progestin in healthy postmenopausal women: Principal results of the Women's health initiative randomized controlled trial. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, 288(3), 321–333.

Women's Mental Health

- [Women's Health](#)

Women's Reproductive Health

- [Women's Health](#)

Women's Well-Being

- [Women's Health](#)

Work

- ▶ [Job Diagnostic Survey](#)

Work Autonomy

- ▶ [Job Satisfaction/Dissatisfaction](#)

Work Engagement

- ▶ [Job Demands](#)

Work Fulfillment/Non-fulfillment

- ▶ [Job Satisfaction/Dissatisfaction](#)

Work Performance Feedback

- ▶ [Job Satisfaction/Dissatisfaction](#)

Work Rehabilitation

- ▶ [Occupational Rehabilitation](#)

Work Satisfaction/Dissatisfaction

- ▶ [Job Satisfaction/Dissatisfaction](#)

Work Tasks

- ▶ [Workload](#)

Work, Lipids, and Fibrinogen (WOLF) Study

William Whang
Division of Cardiology, Columbia University
Medical Center, New York, NY, USA

Definition

The WOLF study is a prospective cohort study that was started to analyze the role of adverse occupational conditions in cardiovascular risk and disease development in employed Swedish men and women. Occupational health units carried out baseline screening of employees from approximately 60 companies from 1992 to 1998, including a clinical exam and blood samples. The initial study of 10,382 subjects from WOLF found no associations between job strain and serum total cholesterol and plasma fibrinogen (Alfredsson et al. 2002). Additional studies have examined relationships between cardiac risk and leisure time (Fransson et al. 2003) and managerial leadership behaviors (Nyberg et al. 2009).

References and Further Reading

- Alfredsson, L., Hammar, N., Fransson, E., et al. (2002). Job strain and major risk factors for coronary heart disease among employed males and females in a Swedish study on work, lipids and fibrinogen. *Scandinavian Journal of Work, Environment & Health*, 28, 238–248.
- Fransson, E. I., Alfredsson, L. S., de Faire, U. H., Knutsson, A., & Westerholm, P. J. (2003). Leisure time, occupational and household physical activity, and risk factors for cardiovascular disease in working men and women: The WOLF study. *Scandinavian Journal of Public Health*, 31, 324–333.
- Nyberg, A., Alfredsson, L., Theorell, T., Westerlund, H., Vahtera, J., & Kivimaki, M. (2009). Managerial leadership and ischaemic heart disease among employees: The Swedish WOLF study. *Occupational and Environmental Medicine*, 66, 51–55.

Working Memory

David Pearson

School of Psychology, University of Aberdeen,
Aberdeen, UK

Definition

The term “working memory” describes temporary memory systems involved in tasks such as reasoning, learning, and understanding. Examples of everyday tasks that rely on working memory include performing mental arithmetic or remembering a shopping list. While linked to the concept of short-term memory (STM), theories of working memory place greater emphasis on simultaneous storage and processing of information. Memory systems responsible for STM can be regarded as forming part of an overall working memory system. Working memory not only temporarily stores information but also manipulates it during complex cognitive activities. Theories of working memory are highly influential in the fields of cognitive psychology, neuroscience, and behavioral medicine.

Description

An influential model of working memory is the multicomponent approach first proposed by Baddeley and Hitch in Baddeley and Hitch 1974. The original model was tripartite in nature and comprised three separate, limited-capacity components: the phonological loop, the visuospatial sketchpad, and the central executive. The phonological loop and sketchpad are modality-specific “slave systems” that enable individuals to retain verbal speech-based material and visuospatial material, respectively. The phonological loop consists of a passive phonological store containing information that is rehearsed by

an active articulatory mechanism closely linked to the production of speech (Baddeley 2007). A similar distinction has been made within the visuospatial component between a passive visual store and an active spatial mechanism involved during the planning and execution of movement (Logie 2003; Pearson 2007). Both the phonological loop and sketchpad are controlled by the central executive, a modality-free system responsible for strategic cognitive control, the coordination of tasks carried out in parallel, and scheduling and planning during multitasking (Law et al. 2006; Logie et al. 2004). The original tripartite model was subsequently modified with the addition of a fourth component, the episodic buffer, which functions to bind together information from working memory and long-term memory into unitary multimodal representations (Baddeley 2000).

An alternative to the multicomponent approach regards working memory as an activated portion of long-term memory rather than as a separate system. According to Cowan (1999), working memory comprises a set of cognitive processes that maintain information in a highly accessible state. Working memory representations are embedded within long-term memory, with the activation of representations controlled by attentional processes. The focus of attention is capacity limited and able to hold up to four activated representations (Cowan 2005). The temporary activation of representations in working memory can be maintained by either continued attention or rehearsal in a verbal subsystem (Cowan 1999).

The interaction between storage and processing in working memory is further explored by the time-based resource sharing model proposed by Barrouillet et al. (2004). In this model, rehearsal in working memory is carried out by an attentional mechanism also implicated during concurrent processing. Rehearsal must therefore take place during small time intervals in which task processing does not place demands upon attention. Forgetting in working memory is predicted by the model to increase with overall cognitive load, in which both the rate of individual

processing steps during a task and their duration have a high density.

Theories of working memory have widespread application in behavioral medicine. Evidence suggests that schizophrenia is linked to a reduced ability to maintain information in working memory (Park und Holzman 1992), with deficits also being found in patients' biological relatives (Myles-Worsley und Park 2002). Working memory deficits have also been documented in patients suffering from bipolar affective disorder (Hammar und Ardal 2009), Asperger's syndrome (Cui et al. 2010), multiple sclerosis (McCarthy et al. 2005), Alzheimer's disease (MacPherson et al. 2007), and attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (Holmes et al. 2010). Working memory has also been linked with theories of craving and addiction (Kavangh et al. 2005) and the occurrence of intrusive memories associated with post-traumatic stress disorder (Holmes et al. 2004; Pearson et al. 2012; Pearson und Sawyer 2011).

Cross-References

- [Executive Function](#)
- [Post Traumatic Stress Disorder](#)

References and Readings

- Baddeley, A. D. (2000). The episodic buffer: A new component of working memory? *Trends in Cognitive Sciences*, 4(11), 417–423.
- Baddeley, A. D. (2007). *Working memory, thought, and action*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Baddeley, A. D., & Hitch, G. J. (1974). Working memory. In G. Bower (Ed.), *The psychology of learning and motivation* (Vol. VIII, pp. 47–90). New York: Academic Press.
- Barrouillet, P., Bernardin, S., & Camos, V. (2004). Time constraints and resource sharing in adults' working memory spans. *Journal of Experimental Psychology: General*, 133, 83–100.
- Cowan, N. (1999). An embedded-processes model of working memory. In A. M. P. Shah (Ed.), *Models of working memory* (pp. 62–101). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Cowan, N. (2005). *Working memory capacity*. Hove: Psychology Press.
- Cui, J. F., Gao, D. G., Chen, Y. H., Zou, X. B., & Wang, Y. (2010). Working memory in early-school-age children with Asperger's Syndrome. *Journal of Autism and Developmental Disorders*, 40(8), 958–967.
- Hammar, A., & Ardal, G. (2009). Cognitive functioning in major depression – a summary. *Frontiers in Human Neuroscience*, 3, 26.
- Holmes, E. A., Brewin, C. R., & Hennessy, R. G. (2004). Trauma films, information processing, and intrusive memory development. *Journal of Experimental Psychology: General*, 133(1), 3–22.
- Holmes, J., Gathercole, S. E., Place, M., Alloway, T. P., Elliott, J. G., & Hilton, K. A. (2010). The diagnostic utility of executive function assessments in the identification of ADHD in children. *Child and Adolescent Mental Health*, 15(1), 37–43.
- Kavangh, D. J., Andrade, J., & May, J. (2005). Imaginary relish and exquisite torture: The elaborated intrusion theory of desire. *Psychological Review*, 112(2), 446–467.
- Law, A. S., Logie, R. H., & Pearson, D. G. (2006). The impact of secondary tasks on multitasking in a virtual environment. *Acta Psychologica*, 122(1), 27–44.
- Logie, R. H. (2003). Spatial and visual working memory: A mental workspace. In D. Irwin & B. H. Ross (Eds.), *The psychology of learning and motivation* (Vol. 42, pp. 37–38). New York: Academic Press.
- Logie, R. H., Cocchini, G., Della Sala, S., & Baddeley, A. D. (2004). Is there a specific executive capacity for dual task coordination? Evidence from Alzheimer's disease. *Neuropsychology*, 18(3), 504–513.
- MacPherson, S. E., Della Sala, S., Logie, R. H., & Wilcock, G. K. (2007). Specific AD impairment in concurrent performance of two memory tasks. *Cortex*, 43(7), 858–865.
- McCarthy, M., Beaumont, J. G., Thompson, R., & Peacock, S. (2005). Modality-specific aspects of sustained and divided attentional performance in multiple sclerosis. *Archives of Clinical Neuropsychology*, 20(6), 705–718.
- Myles-Worsley, M., & Park, S. (2002). Spatial working memory deficits in schizophrenia patients and their first degree relatives from Palau, Micronesia. *American Journal of Medical Genetics*, 114(6), 609–615.
- Park, S., & Holzman, P. S. (1992). Schizophrenics show spatial working memory deficits. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 49(12), 231–246.
- Pearson, D. G. (2007). Visuospatial rehearsal processes in working memory. In N. Osaka, R. H. Logie, & M. D'Esposito (Eds.), *The cognitive neuroscience of working memory* (pp. 231–246). Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Pearson, D. G., & Sawyer, T. (2011). Effects of dual task interference on memory intrusions for affective images.

International Journal of Cognitive Therapy, 4(2), 122–133.

Pearson, D. G., Ross, F. D. C., & Webster, V. L. (2012). The importance of context: Evidence that contextual representations increase intrusive memories. *Journal of Behavior Therapy and Experimental Psychiatry*, 43, 573–580.

Workload

Karen Jacobs¹, Miranda Hellman²,
Jacqueline Markowitz¹ and Ellen Wuest²

¹Occupational Therapy, College of Health and Rehabilitation Science, Sargent College, Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

²Boston University, Boston, MA, USA

Synonyms

[Work tasks](#)

Definition

There is no one widely accepted definition of workload. Hart and Staveland (1988) describe workload as “the perceived relationship between the amount of mental processing capability or resources and the amount required by the task.” Another definition is that it represents the relationship between a group or individual human operator and task demands. In simpler terms, it is the volume of work expected of a person. According to Wickens (1984), “the main objective of assessing and predicting workload is to achieve evenly distributed, manageable workload and to avoid overload or underload.”

It can be measured in terms of many factors such as the amount of work accomplished over a period of time (number of hours worked or the

number of assignments in a course), level of production, or the physical or cognitive demands of the work being performed (working with a person who speaks a different language than your own). There can be constraints to reaching one’s workload such as lack of resources, motivation, and sufficient amount of time.

Cross-References

► [Social Support](#)

References and Readings

- Hart, S. G., & Staveland, L. E. (1988). Development of NASA-TLX (Task Load Index): Results of empirical and theoretical research. In P. A. Hancock & N. Meshkati (Eds.), *Human mental workload* (pp. 77–106). New York: Elsevier Science Publishers B.V (North Holland).
- Spector, P., & Jex, S. (1998). Development of four self-report measures of job stressors and strain: Interpersonal conflict at work scale, organizational constraints scale, quantitative workload inventory, and physical symptoms inventory. *Journal of Occupational Health Psychology*, 3(4), 4356–4367.
- Wickens, C. D. (1984). Processing resources in attention. In R. Parasuraman & D. R. Davies (Eds.), *Varieties of attention* (pp. 63–102). New York: Academic.

Work-Related Health

- [Occupational Health](#)
- [Organizational Health Psychology](#)

Work-Related Stress

- [Job Related to Health](#)

Worksite Health Promotion

Ellinor K. Olander
City, University of London, London, UK

Synonyms

[Organizational health promotion](#)

Definition

Worksite health promotion refers to interventions/programs implemented in the workplace that aim to promote health and improve employee well-being.

There are numerous benefits associated with implementing interventions/programs in the worksite setting including a great potential to reach a large number of individuals, provision of existing social support for behavior change, or existing infrastructure making it easy to contact individuals or assess their behavior/health. Examples of worksite health promotion programs include those that target smoking, physical activity, stress management, weight reduction, and nutrition. Most worksite health promotion programs target individual behavior (such as encouraging individuals to stop smoking); others may target the physical environment (e.g., encouraging stair instead of elevator use) or organizational change/policy (such as not selling unhealthy food in the worksite restaurant).

Cross-References

- [Nutrition](#)
- [Physical Activity](#)
- [Smoking Cessation](#)

References and Further Readings

- Chenoweth, D. (2006). *Worksite health promotion* (2nd ed.). Champaign: Human Kinetics.
- O'Donnell, M. P. (2001). *Health promotion in the workplace* (3rd ed.). Albany: Delmar Cengage Learning.
- Pronk, N. P. (Ed.). (2009). *ACSM's worksite health handbook: A guide to building healthy and productive companies (American College of Sports Med)* (2nd ed.). Champaign: Human Kinetics.

World Health Organization (WHO)

Shekhar Saxena and M. Taghi Yasamy
Department of Mental Health and Substance Abuse, World Health Organization, Geneva, Switzerland

Basic Information

The World Health Organization (WHO) was established in 1948 and is the directing and coordinating authority on international health within the United Nation's system (World Health Organization 2006). It is responsible for providing leadership on global health matters, shaping the health research agenda, setting norms and standards, articulating evidence-based policy options, providing technical support to countries, and monitoring and assessing health trends (About WHO n.d.).

WHO's constitution echoes a clear understanding about psychosocial aspects of health. It states that "Health is a state of complete physical, mental and social well-being and not merely the absence of disease or infirmity" (World Health Organization 2007). It also lays emphasis from the beginning on the "happiness, harmonious relations and security to all people. . ." (World Health Organization 2007).

Major Impact on the Field

WHO has a strong relationship with the Ministries of Health of the member states, and this provides an opportunity for advocating for mental health and integration of mental health into general health-care systems of countries.

For decades, WHO has been generating tools and data on epidemiology of mental disorders, classification of mental disorders, and mapping available resources and services. WHO's ATLAS Mental Health and the WHO Assessment Instrument for Mental Health systems (WHO_AIMS) are well-known resources which are being widely used by mental health planners and policy makers across the globe (http://www.who.int/mental_health/evidence/atlas/en/; Saxena et al. 2006; WHO_AIMS n.d.).

In 2001, when Dr. Gro Harlem Brundtland was the Director General, WHO's theme was chosen "mental health, stop exclusion, dare to care." The World Health Report title was selected as "Mental Health: New Understanding, New Hope." The report focused on the fact that mental health is crucial to the overall well-being of individuals, societies, and countries. The report advocated the policies that were required to ensure that stigma and discrimination are broken down and that effective intervention and treatment are put in place (WHO 2001).

WHO promotes the rights of people with mental illness and supports participation of service users at all stages of planning, implementation, and evaluation of mental health interventions (Funk 2005). WHO has also produced intervention guidelines for a wide range of mental, neurological, and substance abuse disorders. In 2008, WHO's Director General launched the Mental Health Gap Action Programme (mhGAP) (World Health Organization 2008) and in 2010 the mhGAP Intervention Guide (World Health Organization 2010). The program and the related guidelines and tools will help poor resource countries in providing basic evidence-based mental health care through nonspecialized health providers.

WHO is also currently developing the International Classification of Diseases (ICD-11) and is

collaborating with a wide group of professionals including psychologists to develop the mental and behavioral disorders chapter in ICD-11.

Cross-References

- ▶ Health Care
- ▶ Health Care Access
- ▶ Health Care System
- ▶ Health Care Utilization
- ▶ Health Economics
- ▶ Health Policy/Health-Care Policy
- ▶ Health Promotion and Disease Prevention
- ▶ Lifestyle, Healthy
- ▶ Prevention: Primary, Secondary, Tertiary
- ▶ Primary Care
- ▶ Primary Care Providers
- ▶ Public Health
- ▶ Quality of Life
- ▶ Quality-Adjusted Life Years (QALYs)
- ▶ Reproductive Health
- ▶ Risk Factors and Their Management
- ▶ Tobacco Control

References and Further Reading

- About WHO. (n.d.). Retrieved March 1, 2011, from <http://www.who.int/about/en/>
- Funk, M. (2005). Advocacy for mental health: Roles for consumer and family organizations and governments. *Health Promotion International*, 21(1), 70–75.
- Saxena, S., Sharan, P., Garrido, M., & Saraceno, B. (2006). World Health Organization's Mental Health Atlas 2005: Implications for policy development. *World Psychiatry*, 5(3), 179–184.
- WHO. (2001). *The world health report 2001 – Mental health: New understanding, new hope*. Geneva: WHO.
- WHO_AIMS. (n.d.). *General information*. Retrieved May 25, 2011, from http://www.who.int/mental_health/evidence/WHO-AIMS/en/
- World Health Organization. (2006). *Working for health: An introduction to World Health Organization*. Geneva: World Health Organization.
- World Health Organization. (2007). *Basic documents* (46th ed.). Geneva: World Health Organization.
- World Health Organization. (2008). *mhGAP: Mental Health GAP Action Programme: Scaling up care for mental, neurological and substance use disorders*. Geneva: World Health Organization.
- World Health Organization. (2010). *mhGAP intervention guide for mental, neurological and substance use*

disorders in non-specialized health settings. Version 1.0. Geneva: World Health Organization.
 World Health Organization. (n.d.). *Project atlas: Resources for mental health*. Retrieved May 25, 2011, from http://www.who.int/mental_health/evidence/atlas/en/

Worldview

► Meaning (Purpose)

Worry

J. F. Brosschot and Bart Verkuil
 Clinical, Health and Neuro Psychology, Leiden
 University, Leiden, The Netherlands

Synonyms

Intrusive thoughts; Perseverative cognition;
 Repetitive thinking; Rumination

Definition

Worry is defined as “a chain of thoughts and images, negatively affect-laden and relatively uncontrollable. The worry process represents an attempt to engage in mental problem-solving on an issue whose outcome is uncertain but contains the possibility of one or more negative outcomes. Consequently, worry relates closely to fear process” (Borkovec et al. 1983). Worry can impact health in several ways. First, it is a form of the so-called perseverative cognition (see term), which is defined as “the ongoing cognitive representation of psychological stressors (threat)” (Brosschot et al. 2006). Perseverative cognition is believed to be responsible for a large part of the health impact of psychological stressors, because it prolongs the physiological responses to these stressors. Second, disease-specific worry can lead to maladaptive outcomes in the long or short term, for example, in the aftermath of surgery or other

intrusive medical treatments (Verkuil et al. 2010). Third, severe worry about illness can take the form of the anxiety disorder hypochondriasis, or disorders such as somatization or somatoform disorders. In a milder form of illness, worry can increase the number and severity of medically unexplained symptoms, presumably via the excessive activation of illness-related memory networks, that bias perception and behavior in the direction of experiencing and reporting symptoms (Brosschot 2002; Brown 2004). Fourth, a symptom-specific, catastrophizing form, for example “pain catastrophizing,” appears to play a role in the maintenance and exacerbation of symptoms. Catastrophizing thoughts about a symptom such as pain may drive the vicious circle that leads from pain to catastrophizing to immobility to more pain, etc. (Vlaeyen and Linton 2000). Last but not least worry and related perseverative thinking styles, such as rumination, play a causal or maintaining role in several forms of psychopathology (Watkins 2008).

Cross-References

- Anxiety and Its Measurement
- Intrusive Thoughts
- Negative Thoughts
- Perseverative Cognition

References and Further Readings

- Borkovec, T. D., Robinson, E., Pruzinsky, T., & DePree, J. A. (1983). Preliminary exploration of worry: Some characteristics and processes. *Behavior Research and Therapy*, 21, 9–16.
- Brosschot, J. F. (2002). Cognitive-emotional sensitization and somatic health complaints. *Scandinavian Journal of Psychology*, 43, 113–121.
- Brosschot, J. F., Gerin, W., & Thayer, J. F. (2006). The perseverative cognition hypothesis: A review of worry, prolonged stress-related physiological activation, and health. *Journal of Psychosomatic Research*, 60, 113–124.
- Brown, R. J. (2004). Psychological mechanisms of medically unexplained symptoms: An integrative conceptual model. *Psychological Bulletin*, 130, 793–812.
- Verkuil, B., Brosschot, J. F., Gebhardt, W., & Thayer, J. F. (2010). When worries make you sick: A review of

perseverative cognition, the default stress response and somatic health. *Journal of Experimental Psychopathology*, 1(1), 87–118.

Vlaeyen, J. W., & Linton, S. J. (2000). Fear-avoidance and its consequences in chronic musculoskeletal pain: A state of the art. *Pain*, 85(3), 317–332.

Watkins, E. R. (2008). Constructive and unconstructive repetitive thought. *Psychological Bulletin*, 134(2), 163–206.

Worship

► Prayer

Wound Healing

Christopher G. Engeland
Department of Biobehavioral Health,
The Pennsylvania State University, University
Park, PA, USA

Synonyms

Tissue repair

Definition

Wound healing pertains to the repair and regeneration of damaged tissue.

Stages of Wound Healing

Tissue repair involves three interdependent and overlapping phases:

1. The inflammatory phase (hours to days) in which blood flow to the injured area is decreased, a blood clot forms, inflammatory cells (e.g., neutrophils, monocytes) are recruited to the site of injury, and bacterial clearance occurs.
2. The proliferative phase (days to weeks) in which fibroblasts, epithelial cells, and

endothelial cells are recruited and proliferate for the rebuilding process which involves wound contraction, reepithelialization, and angiogenesis (i.e., formation of new blood vessels).

3. The remodeling phase (weeks to months) in which the connective tissue matrix begun in the previous phase is fully formed and restructured (for review, see Engeland and Marucha 2009). Psychological stress can impair healing through its effects on each of these phases.

Description

Overview

It is generally accepted that a patient's state of mind can modulate immune responses (for reviews, see Christian et al. 2009; Hawkey et al. 2007), affecting factors such as healing rates and surgical outcomes. Numerous psychological factors such as stress, anxiety, depression, hostility, and anger can relate to poor healing, such as slowed wound closure which increases the risk of infection and other complications. Conversely, factors such as positive mood, optimism, conscientiousness, positive social interactions, and emotional stability can improve healing outcomes.

Stress Pathways

The primary effects of stress on wound healing occur through central activation of the hypothalamic pituitary adrenal (HPA) axis and the sympathetic nervous system (SNS). HPA activation promotes the systemic release of glucocorticoids (GCs) (e.g., cortisol in humans) from the adrenal glands. GCs are potently anti-inflammatory and immunosuppressant and act as the body's main brake on inflammation. By dysregulating the release and function of GCs, chronic stress can result in higher inflammatory reactions following immune activation (e.g., response to injury). Activation of the SNS by stress results in vasoconstriction (caused by norepinephrine), which limits blood flow to the site of injury resulting in hypoxia and lowering available nutrient supplies to tissues. Vasoconstriction may also delay the

arrival of immune cells, such as neutrophils and monocytes, to the site of injury further impeding the healing process. In addition, norepinephrine (released during stress) reduces the capacity of macrophages to kill bacteria. Through these two pathways, stress can dysregulate immune function and alter early wound repair. The end result is impaired bacterial clearance, prolonged inflammation, higher risk of infection, and greater post-surgical (or post-injury) complications (for reviews, see Marucha and Engeland 2007; Engeland and Marucha 2009).

Stress and Anxiety

Since 1995, numerous studies have demonstrated that stress negatively affects healing, and this notion is now widely accepted. Stressors such as caregiving for a patient with Alzheimer's disease and university examinations, along with preoperative and perceived stress, have each been shown to slow dermal healing (for reviews, see Devries et al. 2007; Engeland and Graham 2011). For instance, stress associated with caregiving slowed the healing of skin wounds by 24%. Such delays are typically accompanied by elevated cortisol levels and reduced inflammation, and similar stress-induced changes have been mirrored in animal research (Engeland and Marucha 2009). Aside from skin, stress affects mucosal inflammation and is a known risk factor for periodontal disease. Stress from university examinations in American dental students slowed the healing of experimental oral mucosal wounds by 40%. It is of note that a stressor as predictable and transient as examinations should delay healing to such a degree in professional students. Interestingly, stress appears to delay healing in mucosal tissues by increasing early inflammation, rather than by inhibiting inflammation as has been shown in skin wounds (Engeland and Graham 2011). Clinically, efforts should be made to reduce both pre- and postsurgical stress and to avoid scheduling elective surgery during or shortly after a period of stress (e.g., university examinations).

Depression and Other Behavioral Constructs

Psychosocial factors other than stress and anxiety also affect immunity. Higher depressive symptoms, marital disagreements, lower levels of

anger control, and higher levels of hostility have all been related to slower healing in skin. Similarly, subclinical depression (dysphoria) relates to slower healing of mucosal wounds. Conversely, higher positive mood, optimism, conscientiousness, positive social interactions, and emotional stability relate to faster healing times in skin (for review, see Engeland and Graham 2011), suggesting a positive role for behavioral interventions on wound healing (see below).

Pain

Pain usually accompanies healing and can be viewed as a unique stressor with both physiological and psychological components. Pain can alter immunity directly by promoting cytokine release and indirectly through activation of stress pathways and changes in behavior. Through these different mechanisms, pain exacerbates the negative effects of stress on healing. Greater pain from elective gastric bypass surgery has been related to slower healing of an experimental skin wound placed on the day of surgery. Importantly, pain and stress are not additive but synergistic in their effects. Not only does each negatively affect healing, but each promotes the other through physiological and immune responses and through changes in mood and behavior. For instance, pain can lead to maladaptive health behaviors such as loss of sleep, inactivity, and alcohol use, each of which has been linked with poorer healing. Not only pain, but also its anticipation, can be a tangible source of anxiety for surgical patients, as well as concerns about the healing process. Efforts to minimize not only pain, but also these sources of anxiety, are encouraged (for review, see Engeland and Graham 2011).

Aging

It is known that ageing alters skin morphology. Aged skin undergoes reductions in vascularization, granulation tissue, collagen, elastin, mast cells, fibroblasts, and epidermal turnover, the latter of which is reduced ~50% as one ages from 20 to 70 years. In general, the elderly have slower healing times, increased rates of infection and wound dehiscence, and reduced wound strength. This is primarily caused by reductions in reepithelialization, angiogenesis, macrophage

infiltration, and collagen deposition. In women, menopause exacerbates these effects. It is important to note that wound healing is slowed but not impaired in the elderly, and the eventual healing outcome is similar to that of young adults. This appears to hold true for mucosal healing as well. Also, for reasons unknown, wounds in the aged heal better aesthetically with less scarring. However, risk factors for impaired healing occur more commonly in the elderly, such as comorbidity, malnutrition, immobility, and obesity. Psychological stress is also more common in the aged and negatively impacts tissue healing to a greater degree than in young adults. Prior to surgery, when possible, each of these risk factors for impaired healing should be tested for, treated, and monitored to ensure maximal healing outcomes. In the elderly, especially, the presence of any of these risk factors should serve as a red flag to the clinician (for review, see Engeland and Gajendrareddy 2011).

Chronic Wounds

Most wound healing studies have been conducted in a controlled laboratory setting on acute wounds which heal relatively quickly (for a review of wound healing models, see Bosch et al. 2011). Clinical studies, which involve more naturally occurring wounds (e.g., diabetic foot ulcers, surgical wounds, accidents), provide valuable information about how such factors affect larger and more chronic wounds where poor outcomes may have more serious implications. Higher levels of depression and anxiety have been related to slower healing of chronic leg ulcers, with patients who scored in the top 50% of these measures being four times more likely to be categorized as slow healers. Thus, psychological stress has been shown to exert negative effects on the healing of both acute and chronic (nonhealing) wounds.

Skin Barrier Recovery

The skin is an essential barrier for providing resistance to pathogens and limiting water loss. This barrier plays an important factor in numerous skin diseases (e.g., psoriasis, atopic dermatitis) and in dermal healing. Repair to this barrier can be evaluated through tape stripping, in which cellophane

tape is repeatedly applied to and removed from a dermal area (e.g., forearm). An evaporimeter is then used to assess transepidermal water loss (TEWL) over time. Stress from public speaking (i.e., Trier social stress test) slows barrier recovery times and is associated with increased levels of cortisol and inflammation. Similar delays in barrier recovery times have been demonstrated with stress stemming from marital dissolution, university examinations, and sleep deprivation. Higher positive mood relates to faster recovery times, indicating the negative effect of stress on skin barrier repair can be buffered by positive emotion. Skin barrier function, which is an important factor in numerous skin diseases (e.g., psoriasis, atopic dermatitis) and in dermal healing, undergoes slower recovery/repair during times of stress (for review, see Engeland and Graham 2011).

Health Behaviors

Stress and pain can affect wound healing indirectly through behavioral alterations such as poor sleep and nutrition, reduced exercise, increased consumption of alcohol or nicotine, and self-neglect (for review, see Guo and DiPietro 2010). For example, sleep deprivation can disrupt macrophage/lymphocyte functions and alter inflammation, thereby hindering immunity. Such changes can themselves promote stress, often in the form of anxiety or depression, which further impact on health creating a downward spiral effect. Smoking, which often increases during times of stress, reduces vitamin C and oxygen levels in blood, impairs collagen deposition and macrophage function, and alters turnover of the extracellular matrix during healing. It has been shown that smoking intervention 6–8 weeks before surgery reduces postoperative morbidity including wound-related complications. In addition, interventions aimed at lowering stress prior to surgeries such as patient education, massage therapy, and relaxation with guided imagery can have positive effects on postsurgical outcomes. Similarly, a 4-week exercise regimen was shown to speed healing rates by 25% in experimental skin wounds, independent of perceived stress. Emotional disclosure interventions, which involve participants writing about traumatic

personal events, have been shown to positively affect immunity and speed up the healing of experimental wounds in skin. Such expressive writing appears to accelerate healing times compared to control subjects that write about time management (for reviews, see Engeland and Marucha 2009; Engeland and Graham 2011). Given the impact that such behaviors and interventions have on health, reducing negative behaviors, facilitating positive behaviors, and reducing stress levels around surgery will help to optimize immune responses, tissue repair, and postsurgical outcomes.

Cross-References

- [Aging](#)
- [Anxiety](#)
- [Corticosteroids](#)
- [Depression](#)
- [Pain](#)
- [Stress](#)

References and Further Readings

- Bosch, J. A., Engeland, C. G., & Burns, V. E. (2011). Psychoneuroimmunology in vivo: Methods and principles. In J. Decety & J. T. Cacioppo (Eds.), *The Oxford handbook of social neuroscience* (pp. 134–148). New York: Oxford University Press.
- Christian, L. M., Deichert, N. T., Gouin, J. P., Graham, J. E., & Kiecolt-Glaser, J. K. (2009). Psychological influences on endocrine and immune function. In G. G. Berntson & J. T. Cacioppo (Eds.), *Handbook of neuroscience for the behavioral sciences* (pp. 1260–1279). Hoboken: Wiley.
- Devries, A. C., Craft, T. K., Glasper, E. R., Neigh, G. N., & Alexander, J. K. (2007). 2006 Curt P. Richter award winner social influences on stress responses and health. *Psychoneuroendocrinology*, 32, 587–603.
- Engeland, C. G., & Gajendrareddy, P. K. (2011). Wound healing in the elderly. In M. Katlic (Ed.), *Cardiothoracic surgery in the elderly: Evidence based practice* (pp. 259–270). Berlin: Springer.
- Engeland, C. G., & Graham, J. E. (2011). Psychoneuroimmunological aspects of wound healing and the role of pain. In D. Upton (Ed.), *Psychological impact of pain in patients with wounds* (pp. 87–114). London: Wounds UK Limited, A Schofield Healthcare Media Company.
- Engeland, C. G., & Marucha, P. T. (2009). Wound healing and stress. In R. D. Granstein & T. A. Luger (Eds.), *Neuroimmunology of the skin: Basic science to clinical relevance* (pp. 233–247). Berlin: Springer.
- Guo, S., & DiPietro, L. A. (2010). Factors affecting wound healing. *Journal of Dental Research*, 89(3), 219–229.
- Hawkey, L. C., Bosch, J. A., Engeland, C. G., Cacioppo, J. T., & Marucha, P. T. (2007). Loneliness, dysphoria, stress, and immunity: A role for cytokines. In N. P. Plotnikoff, R. E. Faith, & A. J. Murgo (Eds.), *Cytokines: Stress and immunity*. Boca Raton: CRC Press.
- Marucha, P. T., & Engeland, C. G. (2007). Stress, neuroendocrine hormones, and wound healing: Human models. In R. Ader, D. Felten, & N. Cohen (Eds.), *Psychoneuroimmunology* (pp. 825–835). San Diego: Academic.

Written Disclosure

- [Expressive Writing and Health](#)

X

X-Ray Computed Tomography

- ▶ CAT Scan
- ▶ Computerized Axial Tomography (CAT) Scan

Y

Years of Potential Life Lost (YPLL)

► [Life Years Lost](#)

Yoga

Melissa M. A. Buttner
Department of Psychology, University of Iowa,
Iowa City, IA, USA

Definition

Yoga is an ancient tradition originating in India and is derived from a Sanskrit word meaning “to yoke” or “to unite” (Desikachar 1999). In Western culture, yoga is considered a form of physical activity and, more recently, a mind-body intervention designed to support overall health and well-being. In its full expression, yoga integrates three basic components: breath (*pranayama*), physical poses (*asanas*), and meditation (*dhyana*).

Description

Origins

Yogic philosophy traces back to 3000 BCE, with roots spanning four periods known as the Vedic (2000–600 BC), Preclassical (600–200 BC),

Classical (200 BC), and Postclassical periods (Feuerstein 2001). The Preclassical period is associated with the emergence of the *Upanishads* (200 texts influencing Hindu philosophy) and the creation of the *Bhagavad Gita*, considered to be among yoga’s oldest written texts. It was during this time that the foundations of meditation and the concept of *samadhi* (a path to enlightenment) surfaced (Feuerstein 2001). Patanjali’s *Yoga Sutras* was compiled during the Classical period (Iyengar 1993) and contains 196 sutras describing raja yoga and its underlying eight-limbed path, or *ashtanga* yoga: *yama* (ethical guidelines), *niyama* (spiritual observances), *asana* (physical poses), *pranayama* (breathing exercises), *pratyahara* (control of the senses), *dharana* (concentration), *dhyana* (meditation), and *samadhi* (state of bliss) (Iyengar 2001). During the Postclassical period, *Hatha* yoga emerged, the most common form of yoga practiced in Western culture today (Feuerstein 2001).

Complementary and Alternative Medicine (CAM)

Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) is a form of medicine consisting of systems, practices, and consumer products that are outside the realm of traditional or conventional forms of medicine (Barnes et al. 2008). Acceptance of this nontraditional form of medicine is growing. Findings from a 2008 survey on Americans’ use of CAM published by the National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine

(NCCAM) showed that *yoga* was one of the top ten most commonly used CAM therapies among adults, with 6.1% indicating use of *yoga* in the past year (Barnes et al. 2008). Preference for *yoga* as a CAM option over that of conventional forms of medicine may be associated with characteristics including decreased stigma, a more gentle form of treatment with minimal side effects, and flexibility in personalizing treatment (Uebelacker et al. 2010).

Yoga's Role in Behavioral Medicine

The past few decades have witnessed a confluence of Western medical science and psychological theories with ideas from Eastern practices such as *yoga*, which has led to the recent emergence of *yoga* as a mind-body intervention. In contrast with traditional forms of medicine, *yoga* offers a holistic approach to treating physical and mental health issues (Hayes and Chase 2010) and is currently being used to address various health conditions (see Table 1 for a detailed list). Recent reviews of the *yoga* literature suggest that *yoga* has beneficial effects on pain syndromes, cardiovascular, autoimmune and immune conditions, and on pregnancy (Field 2011). Further, there is evidence to suggest that *yoga* yields physiological benefits as evidenced in studies showing links between *yoga* and decreased heart rate and blood pressure, as well as physical effects, such as weight loss and increased muscle tone (Field 2011). More well-established physiological effects of *yoga* include stress reduction (Ross and Thomas 2010), with psychological effects evidenced by increased mindfulness and reduced symptoms of depression and anxiety (Field 2011; Uebelacker et al. 2010) (see Figs. 1 and 2 for illustrations of *yoga* poses).

ADHD attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, *OCD* obsessive compulsive disorder, *PTSD* post-traumatic stress disorder, *PNS* parasympathetic nervous system, *SNS* sympathetic nervous system

Stress

Stress has adverse effects as evidenced in many health conditions. Empirical evidence for *yoga* in combating these adverse effects suggests that controlled breathing helps to focus and relax the mind

Yoga, Table 1 Application of *yoga* as a therapeutic intervention

Psychological	Physical	Physiological
Anxiety	Arthritis	High blood pressure
ADHD	Cancer	High cortisol levels
Depression	Carpal tunnel syndrome	Increased heart rate
Eating disorders	Diabetes	PNS/SNS activity
OCD	Epilepsy	Poor circulation
Perimenopausal symptoms	Infertility	
Premenstrual syndrome	Insomnia	
PTSD	Irritable bowel syndrome	
Stress	Multiple sclerosis	
	Obesity	
	Pain (chronic)	
	Pregnancy (complications)	
	Sciatica	
	Scoliosis	
	Sinusitis	

through activation of the autonomic nervous system (ANS), which may work to counteract stress (Harinath et al. 2004). To understand the role of stress in disease and the effects of relaxation associated with a *yoga* practice in prevention and recovery, it is important to understand the function of the ANS. The ANS is responsible for regulating the heart, intestines, and other internal organs through a synergistic relationship between the sympathetic nervous system (SNS) and the parasympathetic nervous system (PNS) (McCall 2007). In general, when activity is high in the SNS, it will be low in the PNS, and vice versa. The SNS, along with the stress hormones cortisol and adrenaline, is responsible for generating a response to stressful situations, leading to physiological changes such as increased heart rate and blood pressure (McCall 2007). Increased mobilization of energy and additional blood and oxygen flowing to the body will enable a person to respond to the stressor, otherwise known as the

Yoga, Fig. 1 *Warrior II Pose (Virabhadrasana II)* requires weight bearing and helps to strengthen and stretch the legs and ankles, stimulates abdominal organs, and increases stamina. This pose is recommended for carpal tunnel syndrome, flat feet, osteoporosis, and sciatica (McCall 2007)



Yoga, Fig. 2 *Cobra Pose (Bhujangasana)* helps to strengthen the spine, stretch the chest and lungs, shoulders, and abdomen. It is recommended for stress, fatigue, and sciatica (McCall 2007)



classic “fight or flight” response (McCall 2007). Conversely, the PNS slows the heart rate and lowers blood pressure to support recovery from a stressful situation, thereby functioning as a restorative mechanism that is often referred to as the “relaxation response” (Benson 2000).

The three basic components of yoga – physical postures, breathing, and meditation – interact with

the PNS and SNS as potential mechanisms by which yoga has a calming effect on the nervous system, potentially leading to decreased stress reactivity (Ross and Thomas 2010). For example, ujjayi breathing (a form of slow yoga breathing characterized by an oceanic sound) is hypothesized to increase activation of the PNS, leading to a calm but alert state while simultaneously

having a restorative effect on the body (McCall 2007). Practicing more rigorous forms of breathing (e.g., *kapalabhati* breathing) and poses (e.g., sun salutations) triggers a sympathetic response similar to that found in traditional forms of aerobic activity. In contrast to a typical aerobic workout, however, a more invigorating yoga practice followed by a sequence of relaxing poses will stimulate the PNS and restore energy (McCall 2007).

Mindfulness

The most commonly used definition of *mindfulness* is that of Jon Kabat-Zinn's, who defined it as "paying attention in a particular way: on purpose, in the present moment and nonjudgmentally" (Kabat-Zinn 1994, p. 4). Support for mindfulness as an agent of change comes by way of its role as an active component of evidence-based psychotherapies (e.g., acceptance and commitment therapy and mindfulness-based cognitive therapy). The practice of mindfulness allows one to experience disengaging from evaluative thinking in the presence of negative stimuli through cultivation of an attitude of curiosity and attention to ongoing reactions to emotions, thoughts, and feelings (Shapiro et al. 2008). In depressed patients, for example, a repetitive focus on negative feelings (rumination) is a typical way of responding and is implicated in the onset and maintenance of depression. *Mindfulness* cultivated in a yoga practice may counteract ruminative thinking by offering participants an alternative focus, such as the breath and physical sensations experienced in the body (Uebelacker et al. 2010). Through a regular yoga practice, yoga practitioners naturally begin to adopt a lifestyle guided by yogic philosophies such as self-acceptance, compassion, and spirituality. In general, the more one commits to the practice, the greater the benefits tend to be, and healthier habits begin to form (McCall 2007).

Yoga Styles

There is a preponderance of *Hatha* yoga styles practiced in the West today, with popular forms including *Anusara*, *Ashtanga*, *Bikram*, *Iyengar*, *Power*, *Vinyasa flow*, and *Viniyoga*. Most styles

generally incorporate mindfulness with physical activity. Yoga, however, is distinct from traditional forms of physical activity with its focus on breath, and the intentional linking of breath with movement of the body through a sequence of postures (McCall 2007). In addition, there are some forms of *Hatha* yoga that focus on the therapeutic application of poses for various medical conditions, including *Anusara*, *Iyengar*, and *Viniyoga*.

Anusara yoga was developed by John Friend who integrated his Iyengar background with a "heart-centered" approach to teaching (Friend 2006). The focus in this style of yoga is on the physical poses and precision of alignment; however, chanting, pranayama, and meditation are also woven into many classes (Friend 2006). Although the application of *Anusara* yoga is not well established in the empirical literature, characteristics such as a focus on alignment may support its use as a therapeutic tool (McCall 2007).

Iyengar yoga, developed by B.K.S. Iyengar, is rooted in Patanjali's *Yoga Sutras* and is known for its therapeutic application based on a large body of literature supporting the benefits of Iyengar yoga and its emphasis on precision and alignment (Iyengar 1995). Iyengar yoga is often employed in research trials examining the effectiveness of yoga for treating mood disorders such as depression and anxiety. This particular style of yoga incorporates the use of props (bolsters, blankets, blocks) to make yoga accessible to beginners, despite limited experience and flexibility, and to help assist in guiding the student into the posture (Iyengar 2001). In this style of yoga, the poses are typically held for a longer duration of time relative to other forms of yoga such as *Vinyasa flow*. It is thought that holding the poses allows for proper alignment that is the hallmark of Iyengar yoga (Iyengar 2001). Yoga therapy performed according to this lineage of yoga can only be performed by instructors certified at a Junior Intermediate II level or above (see IYNAUS website for instructors and their level of certification). Iyengar yoga is known to have the highest standards in terms of teacher training and certification. Benefits of Iyengar yoga can be seen with many

health conditions, ranging from depression to stress-related illnesses (Shapiro et al. 2007).

Viniyoga is a highly therapeutic and gentle style of yoga founded by T.K.V. Desikachar, in which poses and sequences are modified according to the needs of the student (Desikachar 1999). Students practicing this style of yoga will flow from one pose to the next, holding the poses for a brief period of time, minimizing the risk of injury and making this style of yoga suitable for students with chronic diseases (McCall 2007). In addition, pranayama breathing and chanting are integrated into a typical class.

Application of Yoga

Currently, there is no reliable system for identifying the most effective style of yoga for any one individual. Despite the number of studies examining the beneficial effects of yoga, most studies do not compare different styles of yoga or the mechanisms of action by which one particular style of yoga is effective (Uebelacker et al. 2010). In general, it is recommended that the elements of a yoga class (e.g., relaxation, rigorous flow with challenging poses), in addition to the quality of instruction, be considered when starting a yoga practice (McCall 2007). The length of a yoga class may range from 60 to 90 minute, with each posture being held for a few seconds to 1 minute, depending on the style of yoga.

For physically fit individuals with no serious medical conditions contraindicated with yoga, most yoga classes are appropriate. For beginning students, learning yoga in a group environment or through private instruction with a certified instructor is preferable; however, individuals may also learn using audiotapes or DVDs. Individuals presenting with serious medical conditions seeking yoga as a form of therapy should consult with a certified yoga instructor specializing in the medical issue being treated (Shapiro et al. 2008). An increasing number of classes are now being offered that are tailored to the needs of specific populations, such as pregnant and postpartum women. Women practicing yoga during and after pregnancy are advised to attend classes with an instructor knowledgeable in providing modifications specific to the perinatal

population. If a woman established a rigorous yoga practice prior to conceiving, it is recommended that she transition to a gentler style of yoga until after childbirth (McCall 2007).

Cross-References

- Exercise
- Interventions and Strategies to Promote Physical Activity
- Meditation
- Mindfulness
- Physical Activity and Health

References and Readings

- Barnes, P. M., Bloom, B., & Nahin, R. (2008). *Complementary and alternative medicine use among adults and children: United States, 2007* (CDC National Health Statistics Report No. 12). Accessed 27 November 2010.
- Benson, H. (2000). *The relaxation response*. New York: Harper Paperbacks.
- Cope, S. (2006). *The wisdom of yoga: A seeker's guide to extraordinary living*. New York: Bantam Dell.
- Desikachar, T. K. V. (1999). *The heart of yoga: Developing a personal practice* (revised ed.). Rochester: Inner Traditions International.
- Feuerstein, G. (2001). *The yoga tradition: Its history, literature, philosophy and practice*. Prescott: Hohm Press.
- Field, T. (2011). Yoga clinical research review. *Complementary Therapies in Clinical Practice*, 17, 1–8.
- Friend, J. (2006). *Anusara yoga teacher training manual* (9th ed.). The Woodlands: Anusara.
- Harinath, K., Malhotra, A. S., Pal, K., Prasad, R., Kumar, R., Kain, T. C., Rai, L., & Sawhney, R. C. (2004). Effects of Hatha yoga and Omkar meditation on cardiorespiratory performance, psychologic profile, and melatonin secretion. *Journal of Alternative and Complementary Medicine*, 10, 261–268.
- Hayes, S. C. (1999). *Acceptance and commitment therapy: An experiential approach to behavior change*. New York: Guilford Press.
- Hayes, M., & Chase, S. (2010). Prescribing yoga. *Primary Care*, 37, 31–47.
- International Association of Yoga Therapists. Accessed 29 November 2010.
- Iyengar, B. K. S. (1993). *Light on the yoga sutras of Patanjali*. London: Aquarian Press.
- Iyengar, B. K. S. (1995). *Light on yoga*. New York: Schocken Books.

- Iyengar, B. K. S. (2001). *Yoga: The path to holistic health*. London: Dorling Kindersley.
- Iyengar Yoga National Association of the United States (IYNAUS). Retrieved from www.iyngaus.org. Accessed 29 November 2010
- Kabat-Zinn, J. (1994). *Wherever you go, there you are: Mindfulness meditation in everyday life*. New York: Hyperion.
- Kripalu Center for Yoga and Health. Retrieved from www.kripalu.org. Accessed 29 November 2010.
- McCall, T. (2007). *Yoga as medicine: The yogic prescription for health and healing*. New York: Bantam Dell.
- National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM). Retrieved from <http://nccam.nih.gov/>. Accessed 29 November 2010.
- Ross, A., & Thomas, S. (2010). The health benefits of yoga and exercise: A review of comparison studies. *The Journal of Alternative and Complementary Medicine*, 16, 3–12.
- Shapiro, D., Cook, I. A., Davydov, D. M., Ottaviani, C., Leuchter, A. F., & Abrams, M. (2007). Yoga as a complementary treatment of depression: Effects of traits and moods on treatment outcome. *Evidence-based Complementary and Alternative Medicine: eCAM*, 4, 493–502. <https://doi.org/10.1093/ecam/nell14>.
- Shapiro, S. L., Oman, D., Thoresen, C. E., Plante, T. G., & Flinders, T. (2008). Cultivating mindfulness: Effects on well-being. *Journal of Clinical Psychology*, 64, 840–862.
- Uebelacker, L. A., Epstein-Lubow, G., Gaudiano, B. A., Tremont, G., Battle, C. L., & Miller, I. W. (2010). Hatha yoga for depression: Critical review of the evidence for efficacy, plausible mechanisms of action, and directions for future research. *Journal of Psychiatric Practice*, 16, 22–33.
- Yoga Alliance. Retrieved from www.yogaalliance.org. Accessed 29 November 2010.
- Yoga Journal*. Retrieved from www.yogajournal.com. Accessed 29 November 2010.
- Yoga Research and Education Center (YREC). Retrieved from <http://www.yrec.org/>. Accessed 29 November 2010.

Youth Life Orientation Test (Y-LOT)

► Optimism and Pessimism: Measurement

Z

Z Distribution

- [Standard Normal \(Z\) Distribution](#)

Zoloft®

- [Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors \(SSRIs\)](#)

Zung Depression Inventory

Maria Kleinstäuber
Department of Clinical Psychology and
Psychotherapy, Philipps University, Marburg,
Germany

Synonyms

[Zung depression rating scale \(ZDRS\)](#); [Zung depression scale](#); [Zung self-assessment depression scale](#); [Zung self-rating depression scale \(SDS\)](#)

Definition

The Zung Depression Inventory (SDS) is a 20-item self-rating scale which was constructed

to simply measure affective, cognitive, behavioral, and somatic symptoms of patients whose primary diagnosis is a depressive disorder (Zung 1965). The SDS was the first self-rating scale which allows to assess depression specifically as a psychiatric disorder. The scale was developed on the basis of the most commonly found diagnostic criteria of depression and patient interviews.

Description

Structure of the SDS

Half of the SDS items are worded positively, and half are phrased negatively. Subjects rate each item according to how they felt during the preceding week. The response categories range from (1) “none or a little of the time” to (4) “most or all of the time.” The scale takes on average 5 min to complete. An index for the SDS is derived by summing the item scores. This summary score is then divided by a maximum possible score of 80. The SDS index ranges from 0.25 to 1. The following cutoffs are recommended by the author of the scale: Individuals with an index below 0.62 are considered normal, with an index of 0.62–0.74 are considered to suffer from a mild depression, and with an index of 0.75–0.86 are considered to suffer from a moderate to marked depression. Indices of 0.87 and above indicate severe depression. The SDS is available in about 30 languages (e.g., Brazilian, Arabic, Spanish, etc.).

Psychometric Properties of the SDS

The little available data examining the reliability of the SDS reveals satisfactory *split-half reliability* ($r = 0.73$) and *internal consistency* (Cronbach's $\alpha = 0.79$). *Concurrent validity* of the scale could be demonstrated by correlating the SDS with other standardized self-rating scales of depression like the Beck Depression Inventory and the Depression Scale of the Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory. Results of correlations between the SDS and clinician-rated instruments like the Hamilton Rating Scale for Depression are less consistent. The authors of the original SDS have not proposed a factorial structure for their scale. However a meta-analysis by Shafer (2006) demonstrated that a substantial number of included studies showed that factors of well-being/positive symptoms (nine items) and depressed affect/negative symptoms (eight items) are the most identifiable factors of SDS. Partly also a third component – somatic symptoms/appetite (three items) – was identified. These results indicate that factorial structure of SDS is not invariant. Sensitivity of the SDS in differentiating between depressed and non-depressed subjects was found to be adequate. The influence of different demographical variables on the SDS index was also examined. There seem to be higher SDS scores for individuals being older than 64 or younger than 20 years in non-patient groups. Associations between SDS score and age in psychiatric populations could not be demonstrated clearly. Women in patient as well as non-patient groups seem to have slightly higher scores than males. Furthermore, SDS scores are slightly negatively correlated with education (range: $r = -0.08$ to -0.28). In summary, evidence of validity supports the use of the SDS as *screening tool* but not as a diagnostic measure of depressive disorder.

Equations for Converting Scores Between SDS and Other Well-Validated Depression Self-Rating Scales

There are several well-validated depression self-rating scales which can be applied in research and clinical settings, including SDS. Although these scales differ in regard to emphasis on individual

symptoms, they commonly address the criteria of Major Depression defined in the 4th edition of the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders. Accordingly, since they all assess the same construct, they reveal high intercorrelations (between $0.7 \leq r \leq 0.9$). Consequently, Hawley et al. (2013) generated equations in order to translate scores of a specific depression scale into a score of another scale. For example, the equation for predicting a score of SDS from a score of Montgomery-Åsberg Depression Rating Scale (MÅDRS) is $\text{SDS} = 0.795 * \text{MÅDRS} - 16.8$. For the Patient Health Questionnaire-9 (PHQ-9), the equivalent equation is as follows: $\text{SDS} = 1.325 * \text{PHQ-9} + 34.34$.

Applications of SDS

The SDS has not only been used in psychiatric settings and in clinical research to monitor for treatment effectiveness or to assess psychopathological profiles but also in behavioral medical settings. In particular, SDS has been administered in a large number of studies to assess depressive symptoms in patients with somatic diseases, e.g., cancer; diabetes; cardiovascular diseases; in patients with functional somatic syndromes, such as irritable bowel syndrome, temporomandibular joint dysfunction, or burning mouth syndrome; and in patients suffering from chronic pain. Specific difficulties have to be considered when the SDS is used for screening depressive symptoms in medically ill patients. For example, somatic symptoms of depression can be confounded with symptoms of the organic illness or side effects of medication. This can lead to an overestimation of depression (e.g., fatigue or insomnia can also be a symptom of cancer or can be a side effect of pain medication). Especially in diseases influencing cognitive functions, the use of reverse coding introduces complexity (e.g., especially in patients suffering from Parkinson's disease who have difficulty in set-shifting).

Cross-References

- [Beck Depression Inventory \(BDI\)](#)
- [Reliability and Validity](#)

References and Further Reading

- Hawley, C. J., Gale, T. M., Smith, P. S. J., Jain, S., Farag, A., Kondan, R., Avent, C., & Graham, J. (2013). Equations for converting scores between depression scales (MADRS, SRS, PHQ-9 and BDI-II): Good statistical, but weak idiographic, validity. *Human Psychopharmacology: Clinical and Experimental*, 28, 544–551. <https://doi.org/10.1002/hup.2341>.
- Hedlund, J. L., & Vieweg, B. W. (1979). The Zung self-rating depression scale: A comprehensive review. *Journal of Operational Psychiatry*, 10(1), 51–64.
- Shafer, A. B. (2006). Meta-analysis of the factor structures of four depression questionnaires: Beck, CES-D, Hamilton, and Zung. *Journal of Clinical Psychology*, 62, 123–146. <https://doi.org/10.1002/jclp.20213>.
- Zung, W. W. (1965). A self-rating depression scale. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 12(1), 63–70. <https://doi.org/10.1001/archpsyc.1965.01720310065008>.
- Zung, W. W. (1967). Factors influencing the self-rating depression scale. *Archives of General Psychiatry*, 16(5), 543–547.
- Zung, W. W. (1986). Zung self-rating depression scale and depression status inventory. In N. Sartorius & T. A. Ban (Eds.), *Assessment of depression* (pp. 221–231). New York: Springer.

Zung Depression Rating Scale (ZDRS)

- [Zung Depression Inventory](#)

Zung Depression Scale

- [Zung Depression Inventory](#)

Zung Self-Assessment Depression Scale

- [Zung Depression Inventory](#)

Zung Self-Rating Depression Scale (SDS)

- [Zung Depression Inventory](#)

Zyban®

- [Bupropion \(Wellbutrin, Zyban\)](#)